Code Library

AWS SDK Code Examples

Copyright © 2025 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

AWS SDK Code Examples: Code Library

Copyright © 2025 Amazon Web Services, Inc. and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Amazon's trademarks and trade dress may not be used in connection with any product or service that is not Amazon's, in any manner that is likely to cause confusion among customers, or in any manner that disparages or discredits Amazon. All other trademarks not owned by Amazon are the property of their respective owners, who may or may not be affiliated with, connected to, or sponsored by Amazon.

Table of Contents

..... xxviii

What is the code example library? 1

Working with AWS SDKs 1

Code examples by service 3

ACM 7

Basics 8

API Gateway 103

Basics 104

Scenarios 144

AWS community contributions 161

API Gateway Management API 163

Basics 164

Application Auto Scaling 166

Basics 167

Application Recovery Controller 203

Basics 204

Audit Manager 210

Scenarios 211

Aurora 223

Basics 235

Scenarios 616

Auto Scaling 621

Basics 633

Scenarios 956

AWS Batch 1125

Basics 1128

Scenarios 1193

Amazon Bedrock 1204

Basics 1215

Scenarios 1241

Amazon Bedrock Runtime 1242

Basics 1254

Scenarios 1263

Amazon Nova 1336

Amazon Nova Canvas 1408
Amazon Nova Reel 1419
Amazon Titan Image Generator 1426
Amazon Titan Text 1434
Amazon Titan Text Embeddings 1468
Anthropic Claude 1472
Cohere Command 1556
DeepSeek 1604
Meta Llama 1606
Mistral AI 1642
Stable Diffusion 1673
Amazon Bedrock Agents 1682
Basics 1686
Scenarios 1750
Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime 1784
Basics 1785
Scenarios 1803
AWS Budgets 1820
Basics 1821
AWS Cloud Map 1824
Scenarios 1825
AWS Cloud9 1848
Basics 1849
AWS CloudFormation 1870
Basics 1875
Scenarios 1909
CloudFront 1910
Basics 1912
Scenarios 1978
CloudFront Functions examples 2003
CloudTrail 2019
Basics 2020
CloudWatch 2043
Basics 2049
Scenarios 2304
CloudWatch Events 2315

Basics 2316
CloudWatch Logs 2329
Basics 2330
Scenarios 2388
CodeBuild 2406
Basics 2406
CodeCommit 2422
Basics 2423
CodeDeploy 2440
Basics 2442
CodePipeline 2502
Basics 2503
Amazon Cognito Identity 2560
Basics 2561
Scenarios 2585
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 2587
Basics 2598
Scenarios 2750
Amazon Cognito Sync 2915
Basics 2916
Amazon Comprehend 2918
Basics 2919
Scenarios 2988
AWS Config 3020
Basics 3021
AWS Control Tower 3056
Basics 3060
Firehose 3141
Basics 3141
Scenarios 3151
Device Farm 3165
Basics 3165
Scenarios 3168
AWS Directory Service 3179
Basics 3180
AWS DMS 3185

Basics ... 3185
Amazon DocumentDB ... 3189
Serverless examples ... 3189
DynamoDB ... 3202
Basics ... 3216
Scenarios ... 3785
Serverless examples ... 4440
AWS community contributions ... 4461
Amazon EBS ... 4463
Basics ... 4463
Amazon EC2 ... 4467
Basics ... 4490
Scenarios ... 5627
Amazon ECR ... 5846
Basics ... 5851
Amazon ECS ... 5961
Basics ... 5964
Scenarios ... 6045
Amazon EFS ... 6052
Basics ... 6053
Amazon EKS ... 6068
Basics ... 6069
Elastic Beanstalk ... 6130
Basics ... 6131
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 ... 6140
Basics ... 6142
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 ... 6206
Basics ... 6211
Scenarios ... 6348
MediaStore ... 6517
Basics ... 6517
Amazon EMR ... 6539
Basics ... 6539
Scenarios ... 6557
AWS Entity Resolution ... 6560
Basics ... 6565

OpenSearch Service 6643
Basics 6645
EventBridge 6681
Basics 6686
Scenarios 6806
EventBridge Scheduler 6828
Basics 6833
Scenarios 6857
Forecast 6907
Basics 6907
AWS Glue 6922
Basics 6932
AWS Health 7220
Basics 7221
HealthImaging 7228
Basics 7235
Scenarios 7373
HealthLake 7448
Basics 7449
IAM 7482
Basics 7499
Scenarios 8243
AWS IoT 8458
Basics 8464
AWS IoT data 8586
Basics 8586
AWS IoT FleetWise 8595
Basics 8600
AWS IoT SiteWise 8689
Basics 8693
Amazon Keyspaces 8832
Basics 8838
Kinesis 8949
Basics 8950
Serverless examples 9010
AWS KMS 9034

Basics 9039
Scenarios 9263
Lambda 9265
Basics 9277
Scenarios 9555
Serverless examples 9662
AWS community contributions 9787
Amazon Lex 9789
Scenarios 9789
Lightsail 9790
Scenarios 9791
Amazon Location 9799
Basics 9806
Location Service Places 9914
Basics 9915
Lookout for Vision 9921
Basics 9923
Scenarios 9952
Managed Service for Apache Flink 9968
Basics 9969
Data generator 9985
AWS Marketplace Catalog API 9998
AMI products 10002
Channel partner offers 10059
Container products 10098
Entities 10113
Offers 10123
Products 10257
Resale authorization 10269
SaaS products 10365
Utilities 10422
AWS Marketplace Agreement API 10429
Agreements 10430
MediaConvert 10540
Basics 10542
MediaLive 10591

Basics 10591
MediaPackage 10593
Basics 10593
Migration Hub 10599
Basics 10599
Amazon MSK 10614
Serverless examples 10614
Neptune 10624
Basics 10629
Scenarios 10716
Organizations 10717
Basics 10718
Partner Central 10753
Basics 10754
Scenarios 10819
Amazon Personalize 10824
Basics 10825
Amazon Personalize Events 10874
Basics 10875
Amazon Personalize Runtime 10882
Basics 10883
Amazon Pinpoint 10891
Basics 10892
Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API 10977
Basics 10978
Amazon Polly 10987
Basics 10988
Scenarios 11028
AWS Price List 11036
Basics 11037
Amazon RDS 11047
Basics 11058
Scenarios 11319
Serverless examples 11323
Amazon RDS Data Service 11342
Basics 11342

Scenarios 11345
Amazon Redshift 11349
Basics 11354
Scenarios 11446
Amazon Rekognition 11447
Basics 11452
Scenarios 11612
Resource Groups 11690
Basics 11691
Resource Groups Tagging API 11716
Basics 11717
Route 53 11730
Basics 11730
Route 53 domain registration 11758
Basics 11764
Amazon S3 11844
Basics 11862
Scenarios 12513
Serverless examples 12896
Amazon S3 Control 12907
Basics 12912
S3 Directory Buckets 12962
Basics 12968
Scenarios 13090
S3 Glacier 13093
Basics 13095
Scenarios 13160
SageMaker AI 13172
Basics 13178
Scenarios 13222
Secrets Manager 13324
Basics 13325
Scenarios 13340
Amazon SES 13342
Basics 13344
Scenarios 13456

Amazon SES API v2 13493
Basics 13494
Scenarios 13550
Amazon SNS 13590
Basics 13604
Scenarios 13787
Serverless examples 13948
Amazon SQS 13958
Basics 13971
Scenarios 14144
Serverless examples 14340
Step Functions 14358
Basics 14364
Scenarios 14466
AWS STS 14469
Basics 14470
Scenarios 14501
Support 14518
Basics 14526
Systems Manager 14663
Basics 14671
Amazon Textract 15055
Basics 15056
Scenarios 15092
Amazon Transcribe 15103
Basics 15104
Scenarios 15166
Amazon Transcribe Streaming 15189
Basics 15190
Scenarios 15205
Amazon Translate 15224
Basics 15225
Scenarios 15242
AWS WAFV2 15254
Basics 15255
WorkSpaces 15259

Basics 15260
Code examples by SDK 15292
SDK for .NET 15293
ACM 15295
API Gateway 15300
Aurora 15301
Auto Scaling 15302
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 15354
CloudWatch 15410
CloudWatch Logs 15464
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 15478
Amazon Comprehend 15502
Amazon DocumentDB 15513
DynamoDB 15517
Amazon EC2 15584
Amazon ECS 15707
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 15718
EventBridge 15775
EventBridge Scheduler 15816
AWS Glue 15845
IAM 15877
Amazon Keyspaces 15973
Kinesis 16000
AWS KMS 16018
Lambda 16030
MediaConvert 16081
Amazon MSK 16091
Organizations 16093
Partner Central 16111
Amazon Pinpoint 16117
Amazon Polly 16124
Amazon RDS 16137
Amazon RDS Data Service 16174
Amazon Rekognition 16175
Route 53 domain registration 16207
Amazon S3 16233

S3 Glacier 16386
SageMaker AI 16396
Secrets Manager 16430
Amazon SES 16433
Amazon SES API v2 16447
Amazon SNS 16486
Amazon SQS 16531
Step Functions 16575
AWS STS 16602
Support 16605
Amazon Textract 16632
Amazon Transcribe 16633
Amazon Translate 16645
SDK for .NET (v4) 16658
Aurora 16659
Auto Scaling 16700
Amazon Bedrock 16735
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 16739
AWS CloudFormation 16762
CloudWatch 16765
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 16767
AWS Control Tower 16768
DynamoDB 16807
Amazon EC2 16847
Amazon ECS 16849
Amazon S3 16851
AWS CLI with Bash script 16860
AWS Batch 16861
AWS Cloud Map 16872
CloudFront 16895
DynamoDB 16904
Amazon EC2 17002
HealthImaging 17159
IAM 17167
AWS KMS 17232
Lightsail 17234

Amazon S3 17242
AWS STS 17273
SDK for C++ 17276
ACM 17278
API Gateway 17307
Aurora 17308
Auto Scaling 17352
CloudTrail 17383
CloudWatch 17388
CloudWatch Logs 17398
CodeBuild 17402
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 17407
DynamoDB 17430
Amazon EC2 17508
EventBridge 17542
AWS Glue 17546
HealthImaging 17585
IAM 17619
AWS IoT 17661
AWS IoT data 17703
Lambda 17705
MediaConvert 17730
Amazon RDS 17738
Amazon RDS Data Service 17775
Amazon Rekognition 17776
Amazon S3 17782
Secrets Manager 17864
Amazon SES 17866
Amazon SNS 17888
Amazon SQS 17930
AWS STS 17966
Amazon Transcribe Streaming 17967
SDK for Go V2 17975
API Gateway 17976
Aurora 17977
Amazon Bedrock 18017

Amazon Bedrock Runtime 18020
AWS CloudFormation 18040
CloudWatch Logs 18041
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 18044
Amazon DocumentDB 18125
DynamoDB 18127
IAM 18200
Kinesis 18260
Lambda 18263
Amazon MSK 18374
Partner Central 18376
Amazon RDS 18379
Amazon Redshift 18414
Amazon S3 18433
Amazon SNS 18522
Amazon SQS 18550
SDK for JavaScript (v2) 18582
CloudWatch 18583
CloudWatch Events 18591
CloudWatch Logs 18595
DynamoDB 18598
AWS Entity Resolution 18613
EventBridge 18631
IAM 18634
Lambda 18654
Amazon Pinpoint 18655
Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API 18660
S3 Glacier 18663
Amazon SNS 18667
Amazon SQS 18668
AWS STS 18678
SDK for JavaScript (v3) 18680
API Gateway 18682
Auto Scaling 18684
Amazon Bedrock 18726
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 18731

Amazon Bedrock Agents 18795
Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime 18808
CloudWatch 18813
CloudWatch Events 18822
CloudWatch Logs 18826
CodeBuild 18842
Amazon Cognito Identity 18846
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 18847
Amazon Comprehend 18887
Amazon DocumentDB 18892
DynamoDB 18894
Amazon EC2 19086
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 19182
AWS Entity Resolution 19231
EventBridge 19244
AWS Glue 19250
HealthImaging 19275
IAM 19337
AWS IoT SiteWise 19429
Kinesis 19464
Lambda 19470
Amazon Lex 19526
Amazon Location 19527
Amazon MSK 19557
Amazon Personalize 19559
Amazon Personalize Events 19575
Amazon Personalize Runtime 19579
Amazon Pinpoint 19583
Amazon Polly 19588
Amazon RDS 19593
Amazon Redshift 19596
Amazon Rekognition 19602
Amazon S3 19603
S3 Glacier 19736
SageMaker AI 19739
Secrets Manager 19777

Amazon SES 19779
Amazon SNS 19804
Amazon SQS 19844
Step Functions 19875
AWS STS 19877
Support 19879
Systems Manager 19896
Amazon Textract 19923
Amazon Transcribe 19929
Amazon Translate 19938
SDK for Java 2.x 19943
ACM 19947
API Gateway 19965
Application Auto Scaling 19970
Application Recovery Controller 19979
Aurora 19981
Auto Scaling 20017
AWS Batch 20079
Amazon Bedrock 20128
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 20133
CloudFront 20249
CloudWatch 20279
CloudWatch Events 20354
CloudWatch Logs 20360
Amazon Cognito Identity 20375
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 20383
Amazon Comprehend 20409
Firehose 20422
Amazon DocumentDB 20432
DynamoDB 20433
Amazon EC2 20694
Amazon ECR 20791
Amazon ECS 20831
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 20844
MediaStore 20889
AWS Entity Resolution 20904

OpenSearch Service 20951
EventBridge 20981
EventBridge Scheduler 21016
Forecast 21040
AWS Glue 21053
HealthImaging 21085
IAM 21115
AWS IoT 21199
AWS IoT data 21239
AWS IoT FleetWise 21242
AWS IoT SiteWise 21295
Amazon Keyspaces 21341
Kinesis 21367
AWS KMS 21379
Lambda 21436
Amazon Lex 21473
Amazon Location 21473
Location Service Places 21520
AWS Marketplace Catalog API 21525
AWS Marketplace Agreement API 21714
MediaConvert 21767
Migration Hub 21789
Amazon MSK 21802
Neptune 21803
Partner Central 21845
Amazon Personalize 21880
Amazon Personalize Events 21910
Amazon Personalize Runtime 21913
Amazon Pinpoint 21918
Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API 21962
Amazon Polly 21965
Amazon RDS 21972
Amazon RDS Data Service 22015
Amazon Redshift 22016
Amazon Rekognition 22054
Route 53 domain registration 22126

Amazon S3 22148
Amazon S3 Control 22335
S3 Directory Buckets 22379
S3 Glacier 22461
SageMaker AI 22477
Secrets Manager 22506
Amazon SES 22508
Amazon SES API v2 22524
Amazon SNS 22544
Amazon SQS 22613
Step Functions 22712
AWS STS 22736
Support 22739
Systems Manager 22762
Amazon Textract 22804
Amazon Transcribe 22816
Amazon Transcribe Streaming 22827
Amazon Translate 22846
SDK for Kotlin 22848
API Gateway 22850
Aurora 22851
Auto Scaling 22879
Amazon Bedrock 22895
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 22897
CloudWatch 22904
CloudWatch Logs 22944
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 22947
Amazon Comprehend 22963
DynamoDB 22963
Amazon EC2 22992
Amazon ECR 23022
OpenSearch Service 23051
EventBridge 23055
AWS Glue 23086
IAM 23097
AWS IoT 23116

AWS IoT data 23140
AWS IoT FleetWise 23142
Amazon Keyspaces 23177
AWS KMS 23202
Lambda 23212
Amazon Location 23221
MediaConvert 23251
Amazon Pinpoint 23256
Amazon RDS 23266
Amazon RDS Data Service 23284
Amazon Redshift 23285
Amazon Rekognition 23289
Route 53 domain registration 23308
Amazon S3 23327
SageMaker AI 23349
Secrets Manager 23374
Amazon SES 23375
Amazon SNS 23377
Amazon SQS 23404
Step Functions 23426
Support 23447
Amazon Translate 23465
SDK for PHP 23466
API Gateway 23467
Aurora 23473
Auto Scaling 23474
Amazon Bedrock 23490
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 23491
Amazon DocumentDB 23499
DynamoDB 23501
Amazon EC2 23533
AWS Glue 23538
IAM 23559
Kinesis 23575
AWS KMS 23579
Lambda 23615

Amazon MSK 23645
Amazon RDS 23647
Amazon RDS Data Service 23655
Amazon Rekognition 23656
Amazon S3 23657
S3 Directory Buckets 23680
Amazon SES 23696
Amazon SNS 23697
Amazon SQS 23718
Tools for PowerShell V5 23721
ACM 23723
Application Auto Scaling 23728
AppStream 2.0 23734
Aurora 23760
Auto Scaling 23761
AWS Budgets 23797
AWS Cloud9 23798
AWS CloudFormation 23804
CloudFront 23816
CloudTrail 23824
CloudWatch 23829
CodeCommit 23832
CodeDeploy 23838
CodePipeline 23856
Amazon Cognito Identity 23874
AWS Config 23878
Device Farm 23897
AWS Directory Service 23898
AWS DMS 23922
DynamoDB 23924
Amazon EC2 23938
Amazon ECR 24068
Amazon ECS 24069
Amazon EFS 24075
Amazon EKS 24081
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 24094

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 24114
Amazon FSx 24137
AWS Glue 24144
AWS Health 24146
IAM 24147
Kinesis 24220
Lambda 24224
Amazon ML 24236
Macie 24242
AWS Price List 24243
Resource Groups 24245
Resource Groups Tagging API 24253
Route 53 24258
Amazon S3 24272
S3 Glacier 24309
Security Hub 24312
Amazon SES 24314
Amazon SES API v2 24315
Amazon SNS 24316
Amazon SQS 24317
AWS STS 24329
Support 24334
Systems Manager 24340
Amazon Translate 24412
AWS WAFV2 24413
WorkSpaces 24414
SDK for Python (Boto3) 24429
ACM 24432
API Gateway 24454
Application Recovery Controller 24485
Audit Manager 24489
Aurora 24501
Auto Scaling 24546
Amazon Bedrock 24623
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 24628
Amazon Bedrock Agents 24720

Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime 24797
AWS CloudFormation 24822
CloudFront 24823
CloudWatch 24827
CloudWatch Logs 24847
Amazon Cognito Identity 24862
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 24863
Amazon Comprehend 24903
AWS Config 24946
AWS Control Tower 24950
Firehose 24989
Device Farm 24999
Amazon DocumentDB 25010
DynamoDB 25011
Amazon EC2 25210
Amazon ECR 25352
Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 25380
Amazon EMR 25437
EventBridge 25449
EventBridge Scheduler 25450
AWS Glue 25469
HealthImaging 25505
HealthLake 25558
IAM 25576
AWS IoT SiteWise 25701
Amazon Keyspaces 25747
Kinesis 25778
AWS KMS 25787
Lambda 25841
Lookout for Vision 25878
Managed Service for Apache Flink 25919
AWS Marketplace Catalog API 25945
AWS Marketplace Agreement API 26179
Amazon MSK 26234
Neptune 26235
Organizations 26279

Partner Central 26285
Amazon Pinpoint 26310
Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API 26319
Amazon Polly 26322
Amazon RDS 26333
Amazon RDS Data Service 26372
Amazon Redshift 26373
Amazon Rekognition 26396
Amazon S3 26452
S3 Directory Buckets 26542
S3 Glacier 26564
Secrets Manager 26589
Amazon SES 26593
Amazon SES API v2 26647
Amazon SNS 26665
Amazon SQS 26687
Step Functions 26711
AWS STS 26742
Support 26761
Systems Manager 26791
Amazon Textract 26826
Amazon Transcribe 26835
SDK for Ruby 26856
Aurora 26858
Auto Scaling 26859
CloudTrail 26860
CloudWatch 26865
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 26877
Amazon Comprehend 26879
Amazon DocumentDB 26880
DynamoDB 26881
Amazon EC2 26909
Elastic Beanstalk 26944
EventBridge 26949
AWS Glue 26967
IAM 26994

Kinesis 27051
AWS KMS 27053
Lambda 27057
Amazon MSK 27087
Amazon Polly 27088
Amazon RDS 27092
Amazon S3 27100
Amazon SES 27132
Amazon SES API v2 27138
Amazon SNS 27139
Amazon SQS 27149
AWS STS 27162
Amazon Textract 27164
Amazon Translate 27165
SDK for Rust 27166
API Gateway 27168
API Gateway Management API 27171
Application Auto Scaling 27172
Aurora 27173
Auto Scaling 27321
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 27355
Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime 27380
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 27384
Amazon Cognito Sync 27386
Firehose 27387
Amazon DocumentDB 27388
DynamoDB 27390
Amazon EBS 27408
Amazon EC2 27411
Amazon ECR 27472
Amazon ECS 27474
Amazon EKS 27477
AWS Glue 27479
IAM 27494
AWS IoT 27521
Kinesis 27523

AWS KMS 27531
Lambda 27540
MediaLive 27590
MediaPackage 27592
Amazon MSK 27594
Amazon Polly 27595
Amazon RDS 27601
Amazon RDS Data Service 27604
Amazon Rekognition 27605
Route 53 27608
Amazon S3 27609
SageMaker AI 27659
Secrets Manager 27662
Amazon SES API v2 27663
Amazon SNS 27679
Amazon SQS 27685
AWS STS 27690
Systems Manager 27691
Amazon Transcribe 27694
SDK for SAP ABAP 27695
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 27696
Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime 27702
CloudWatch 27704
DynamoDB 27711
Amazon EC2 27725
Kinesis 27741
Lambda 27750
Amazon S3 27764
SageMaker AI 27773
Amazon SNS 27790
Amazon SQS 27799
Amazon Textract 27806
Amazon Translate 27816
SDK for Swift 27824
Amazon Bedrock 27825
Amazon Bedrock Runtime 27831

Amazon Cognito Identity 27847
Amazon Cognito Identity Provider 27852
DynamoDB 27880
Amazon EC2 27918
AWS Glue 27972
IAM 28013
Lambda 28034
Amazon RDS 28065
Amazon S3 28101
Amazon SNS 28127
Amazon SQS 28153
AWS STS 28181
Amazon Transcribe Streaming 28183

There are more AWS SDK examples available in the AWS Doc SDK Examples GitHub repo.

What is the code example library?

The code example library is a collection of code examples that show you how to use AWS software development kits (SDKs) with AWS.

The examples are organized by AWS service and by AWS SDK. The same examples can be found in each section.

- **Code examples by service** – A list of AWS services that contain examples of how to use each service with AWS SDKs. Use this section if you know which service you want to use.
- **Code examples by SDK** – A list of AWS SDKs that contain examples of how to use AWS services with each SDK. Use this section if you know which SDK you want to use.

Within each section, the examples are divided into the following categories:

- *Basics* are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.
- *Actions* are code excerpts that show you how to call individual service functions.
- *Scenarios* are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.
- Additional example categories are defined for some services. These code examples show you something specialized about a service or integration.

All of the examples in this library can also be found in the AWS Code Examples GitHub repository. The GitHub repository also contains instructions on how to set up, run, and test the examples.

Using AWS services with an AWS SDK

AWS software development kits (SDKs) are available for many popular programming languages. Each SDK provides an API, code examples, and documentation that make it easier for developers to build applications in their preferred language.

SDK documentation	Code examples
AWS SDK for C++	AWS SDK for C++ code examples

SDK documentation	Code examples
AWS CLI	AWS CLI code examples
AWS SDK for Go	AWS SDK for Go code examples
AWS SDK for Java	AWS SDK for Java code examples
AWS SDK for JavaScript	AWS SDK for JavaScript code examples
AWS SDK for Kotlin	AWS SDK for Kotlin code examples
AWS SDK for .NET	AWS SDK for .NET code examples
AWS SDK for PHP	AWS SDK for PHP code examples
AWS Tools for PowerShell	AWS Tools for PowerShell code examples
AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)	AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) code examples
AWS SDK for Ruby	AWS SDK for Ruby code examples
AWS SDK for Rust	AWS SDK for Rust code examples
AWS SDK for SAP ABAP	AWS SDK for SAP ABAP code examples
AWS SDK for Swift	AWS SDK for Swift code examples

Example availability

Can't find what you need? Request a code example by using the **Provide feedback** link at the bottom of this page.

Code examples by service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS services with an AWS software development kit (SDK). This section is organized by AWS service.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Code examples for ACM using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for API Gateway using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Audit Manager using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Aurora using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Bedrock Runtime using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs

- Code examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Cloud Map using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CloudFront using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Config using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Firehose using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Device Farm using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon DocumentDB using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs

- Code examples for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for MediaStore using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for EventBridge using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Forecast using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Health using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for HealthLake using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for IAM using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Kinesis using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Lambda using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Lex using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Lightsail using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs

- Code examples for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Marketplace Catalog API using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Marketplace Agreement API using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for MediaLive using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon MSK using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Neptune using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Organizations using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Partner Central using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Route 53 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs

- Code examples for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Step Functions using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS STS using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Support using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs
- Code examples for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs

Code examples for ACM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Certificate Manager with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **ACM User Guide** – More information about ACM.
- **ACM API Reference** – Details about all available ACM actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for ACM using AWS SDKs
  - Learn the basics of ACM with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for ACM using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTagsToCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ExportCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ImportCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTagsForCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RemoveTagsFromCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RenewCertificate with an AWS SDK
    - Use RequestCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ResendValidationEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateCertificateOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for ACM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Certificate Manager with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Learn the basics of ACM with an AWS SDK
- Actions for ACM using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTagsToCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ExportCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ImportCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ListCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RenewCertificate with an AWS SDK
- Use RequestCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ResendValidationEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateCertificateOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI

Learn the basics of ACM with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Request a certificate from ACM.
- Import a self-signed certificate.
- List and describe certificates.
- Remove certificates.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps ACM operations.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
```

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def request_validation(
        self, domain, alternate_domains, method, validation_domains=None
    ):
        """
        Starts a validation request that results in a new certificate being
 issued
        by ACM. DNS validation requires that you add CNAME records to your DNS
        provider. Email validation sends email to a list of email addresses that
        are associated with the domain.

        For more information, see _Issuing and managing certificates_ in the ACM
        user guide.
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/userguide/gs.html

        :param domain: The primary domain to associate with the certificate.
        :param alternate_domains: Subject Alternate Names (SANs) for the
 certificate.
        :param method: The validation method, either DNS or EMAIL.
        :param validation_domains: Alternate domains to use for email validation,
 when
                                   the email domain differs from the primary
 domain of
                                   the certificate.
        :return: The ARN of the requested certificate.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "DomainName": domain,
                "ValidationMethod": method,
                "SubjectAlternativeNames": alternate_domains,
            }
```

```
            if validation_domains is not None:
                kwargs["DomainValidationOptions"] = [
                    {"DomainName": key, "ValidationDomain": value}
                    for key, value in validation_domains.items()
                ]
            response = self.acm_client.request_certificate(**kwargs)
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info(
                "Requested %s validation for domain %s. Certificate ARN is %s.",
                method,
                domain,
                certificate_arn,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Request for %s validation of domain %s failed.", method, domain
            )
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn


    def import_certificate(self, certificate_body, private_key):
        """
        Imports a self-signed certificate to ACM.

        :param certificate_body: The body of the certificate, in PEM format.
        :param private_key: The unencrypted private key of the certificate, in
PEM
                            format.
        :return: The ARN of the imported certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.import_certificate(
                Certificate=certificate_body, PrivateKey=private_key
            )
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info("Imported certificate.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't import certificate.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn
```

```
    def list(
        self,
        max_items,
        statuses=None,
        key_usage=None,
        extended_key_usage=None,
        key_types=None,
    ):
        """
        Lists the certificates for the current account.

        :param max_items: The maximum number of certificates to list.
        :param statuses: Filters the results to the specified statuses. If None,
all
                         certificates are included.
        :param key_usage: Filters the results to the specified key usages. If
None,
                          all key usages are included.
        :param extended_key_usage: Filters the results to the specified extended
key
                                   usages. If None, all extended key usages are
                                   included.
        :param key_types: Filters the results to the specified key types. If
None, all
                          key types are included.
        :return: The list of certificates.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"MaxItems": max_items}
            if statuses is not None:
                kwargs["CertificateStatuses"] = statuses
            includes = {}
            if key_usage is not None:
                includes["keyUsage"] = key_usage
            if extended_key_usage is not None:
                includes["extendedKeyUsage"] = extended_key_usage
            if key_types is not None:
                includes["keyTypes"] = key_types
            if includes:
                kwargs["Includes"] = includes
            response = self.acm_client.list_certificates(**kwargs)
            certificates = response["CertificateSummaryList"]
            logger.info("Got %s certificates.", len(certificates))
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificates.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificates


    def describe(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets certificate metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
certificate.
        :return: Metadata about the certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.describe_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            certificate = response["Certificate"]
            logger.info(
                "Got metadata for certificate for domain %s.",
certificate["DomainName"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return certificate


    def get(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets the body and certificate chain of a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The body and chain of a certificate.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.acm_client.get_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Got certificate %s and its chain.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def add_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Adds tags to a certificate. Tags are key-value pairs that contain custom
        metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: A dictionary of key-value tags to add to the certificate.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.add_tags_to_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn,
                Tags=[{"Key": key, "Value": value} for key, value in
tags.items()],
            )
            logger.info("Added %s tags to certificate %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add tags to certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise


    def list_tags(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Lists the tags attached to a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The dictionary of certificate tags.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.list_tags_for_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            tags = {tag["Key"]: tag["Value"] for tag in response["Tags"]}
            logger.info("Got %s tags for certificates %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't get tags for certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return tags


    def remove_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Removes tags from a certificate. If the value of a tag is specified, the
tag is
        removed only when the value matches the value of the certificate's tag.
        Otherwise, the tag is removed regardless of its value.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: The dictionary of tags to remove.
        """
        try:
            cert_tags = []
            for key, value in tags.items():
                tag = {"Key": key}
                if value is not None:
                    tag["Value"] = value
                cert_tags.append(tag)
            self.acm_client.remove_tags_from_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn, Tags=cert_tags
            )
            logger.info(
                "Removed %s tags from certificate %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't remove tags from certificate %s.", certificate_arn
            )
            raise


    def remove(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Removes a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate to remove.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.acm_client.delete_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Removed certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't remove certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
```

Use the wrapper class to manage certificates for your account.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    acm_certificate = AcmCertificate(boto3.client("acm"))
    domain = "example.com"
    sub_domains = [f"{sub}.{domain}" for sub in ["test", "dev"]]
    print(f"Request a certificate for {domain}.")
    certificate_arn = acm_certificate.request_validation(domain, sub_domains,
 "DNS")
    print(f"Started validation, got certificate ARN: {certificate_arn}.")

    import_cert_arn = None
    cert_file_name = input(
        "Enter the file name for a self-signed certificate in PEM format. "
        "This certificate will be imported to ACM. Press Enter to skip: "
    )
    if cert_file_name:
        pk_file_name = input(
            "Enter the file name for the unencrypted private key of the
 certificate. "
            "This file must also be in PEM format: "
        )
        if pk_file_name:
            with open(cert_file_name, "rb") as cert_file:
                import_cert = cert_file.read()
            with open(pk_file_name, "rb") as pk_file:
                import_pk = pk_file.read()
```

```
            import_cert_arn = acm_certificate.import_certificate(import_cert,
import_pk)
            print(f"Certificate imported, got ARN: {import_cert_arn}")
        else:
            print("No private key file entered. Skipping certificate import.")
    else:
        print("Skipping self-signed certificate import.")

    print("Getting the first 10 issued certificates.")
    certificates = acm_certificate.list(10, statuses=["ISSUED"])
    print(f"Found {len(certificates)} issued certificates.")

    print(f"Getting metadata for certificate {certificate_arn}")
    cert_metadata = acm_certificate.describe(certificate_arn)
    pprint(cert_metadata)

    if import_cert_arn is not None:
        print(f"Getting certificate for imported certificate {import_cert_arn}")
        import_cert_data = acm_certificate.get(import_cert_arn)
        pprint(import_cert_data)

    print(f"Adding tags to certificate {certificate_arn}.")
    acm_certificate.add_tags(certificate_arn, {"purpose": "acm demo", "color":
"green"})
    tags = acm_certificate.list_tags(certificate_arn)
    print(f"Found tags: {tags}")
    acm_certificate.remove_tags(certificate_arn, {key: None for key in tags})
    print("Removed tags.")

    print("Removing certificates added during the demo.")
    acm_certificate.remove(certificate_arn)
    if import_cert_arn is not None:
        acm_certificate.remove(import_cert_arn)

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AddTagsToCertificate
  - DeleteCertificate

- DescribeCertificate
- GetCertificate
- ImportCertificate
- ListCertificates
- ListTagsForCertificate
- RemoveTagsFromCertificate
- RequestCertificate
- ResendValidationEmail

Actions for ACM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual ACM actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Certificate Manager API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTagsToCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ExportCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ImportCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RenewCertificate with an AWS SDK
- Use RequestCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ResendValidationEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateCertificateOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AddTagsToCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddTagsToCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Add tags to an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param tagKey: The key for the tag.
  \param tagValue: The value for the tag.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::addTagsToCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                       const Aws::String &tagKey,
                                       const Aws::String &tagValue,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::AddTagsToCertificateRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::Tag> tags;
    Aws::ACM::Model::Tag tag;

    tag.WithKey(tagKey).WithValue(tagValue);
    tags.push_back(tag);
```

```
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn).WithTags(tags);

    Aws::ACM::Model::AddTagsToCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.AddTagsToCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: addTagsToCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Tag with key '" << tagKey <<
                  "' and value '" << tagValue <<
                  "' added to certificate with ARN '" <<
                  certificateArn << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add tags to an existing ACM Certificate

The following `add-tags-to-certificate` command adds two tags to the specified certificate. Use a space to separate multiple tags:

```
aws acm add-tags-to-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 --tags Key=Admin,Value=Alice Key=Purpose,Value=Website
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class AddTagsToCertificate {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        addTags(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Adds tags to a certificate in AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
```

```
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to add
 tags to
     */
    public static void addTags(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        List<Tag> expectedTags =
 List.of(Tag.builder().key("key").value("value").build());
        AddTagsToCertificateRequest addTagsToCertificateRequest =
 AddTagsToCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .tags(expectedTags)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.addTagsToCertificate(addTagsToCertificateRequest);
            System.out.println("Successfully added tags to a certificate");
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
```

```
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def add_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Adds tags to a certificate. Tags are key-value pairs that contain custom
        metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: A dictionary of key-value tags to add to the certificate.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.add_tags_to_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn,
                Tags=[{"Key": key, "Value": value} for key, value in
tags.items()],
            )
            logger.info("Added %s tags to certificate %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add tags to certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::deleteCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DeleteCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DeleteCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.DeleteCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: DeleteCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The certificate with the ARN '" <<
                  certificateArn << "' is deleted." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an ACM certificate from your account

The following `delete-certificate` command deletes the certificate with the specified ARN:

```
aws acm delete-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
```

```
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        deleteCertificate(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an SSL/TLS certificate from the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to be
 deleted
     */
    public static void deleteCertificate( String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        DeleteCertificateRequest request = DeleteCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.deleteCertificate(request);
            System.out.println("The certificate was deleted");

        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the certificate identified by the supplied ARN and the associated private key. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding; add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation.

```
Remove-ACMCertificate -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the certificate identified by the supplied ARN and the associated private key. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding; add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation.

```
Remove-ACMCertificate -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def remove(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Removes a certificate.
```

```
        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.delete_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Removed certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't remove certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CertificateManager;
using Amazon.CertificateManager.Model;

namespace DescribeCertificate
{
```

```
    class DescribeCertificate
    {
        // The following example retrieves and displays the metadata for a
        // certificate using the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) service.

        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ACMRegion =
 RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
        private static AmazonCertificateManagerClient _client;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            _client = new
 Amazon.CertificateManager.AmazonCertificateManagerClient(ACMRegion);

            var describeCertificateReq = new DescribeCertificateRequest();
            // The ARN used here is just an example. Replace it with the ARN of
            // a certificate that exists on your account.
            describeCertificateReq.CertificateArn =
                "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/8cfd7dae-9b6a-2d07-92bc-1c309EXAMPLE";

            var certificateDetailResp =
                DescribeCertificateResponseAsync(client: _client, request:
 describeCertificateReq);
            var certificateDetail = certificateDetailResp.Result.Certificate;

            if (certificateDetail is not null)
            {
                DisplayCertificateDetails(certificateDetail);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays detailed metadata about a certificate retrieved
        /// using the ACM service.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="certificateDetail">The object that contains details
        /// returned from the call to DescribeCertificateAsync.</param>
        static void DisplayCertificateDetails(CertificateDetail
 certificateDetail)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCertificate Details: ");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Domain:
{certificateDetail.DomainName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Arn:
{certificateDetail.CertificateArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Subject:
{certificateDetail.Subject}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Status: {certificateDetail.Status}");
            foreach (var san in certificateDetail.SubjectAlternativeNames)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate SubjectAlternativeName: {san}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the metadata associated with the ACM service certificate.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An AmazonCertificateManagerClient object
        /// used to call DescribeCertificateResponse.</param>
        /// <param name="request">The DescribeCertificateRequest object that
        /// will be passed to the method call.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        static async Task<DescribeCertificateResponse>
DescribeCertificateResponseAsync(
            AmazonCertificateManagerClient client, DescribeCertificateRequest
request)
        {
            var response = new DescribeCertificateResponse();

            try
            {
                response = await client.DescribeCertificateAsync(request);
            }
            catch (InvalidArnException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: The ARN specified is invalid.");
            }
            catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: The specified certificate could not be
found.");
            }

            return response;
        }
```

```
    }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::describeCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acm_client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DescribeCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DescribeCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acm_client.DescribeCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: DescribeCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateDetail certificate =
                outcome.GetResult().GetCertificate();
```

```
        std::cout << "Success: Information about certificate "
                     "with ARN '" << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl <<
std::endl;

        std::cout << "ARN:                 " << certificate.GetCertificateArn()
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Authority ARN:       " <<
                  certificate.GetCertificateAuthorityArn() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Created at (GMT):    " <<
                  certificate.GetCreatedAt().ToGmtString(
                          Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Domain name:         " << certificate.GetDomainName()
                  << std::endl;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::DomainValidation> options =
                certificate.GetDomainValidationOptions();

        if (!options.empty()) {
            std::cout << std::endl << "Domain validation information: "
                      << std::endl << std::endl;

            for (auto &validation: options) {
                std::cout << "  Domain name:              " <<
                          validation.GetDomainName() << std::endl;

                const Aws::ACM::Model::ResourceRecord &record =
                        validation.GetResourceRecord();

                std::cout << "  Resource record name:     " <<
                          record.GetName() << std::endl;

                Aws::ACM::Model::RecordType recordType = record.GetType();
                Aws::String type;

                switch (recordType) {
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::RecordType::CNAME:
                        type = "CNAME";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::RecordType::NOT_SET:
                        type = "Not set";
                        break;
                    default:
```

```
                        type = "Cannot determine.";
                        break;
                }

                std::cout << "  Resource record type:     " << type <<
                          std::endl;

                std::cout << "  Resource record value:    " <<
                          record.GetValue() << std::endl;

                std::cout << "  Validation domain:        " <<
                          validation.GetValidationDomain() << std::endl;

                Aws::Vector<Aws::String> emails =
                        validation.GetValidationEmails();

                if (!emails.empty()) {
                    std::cout << "  Validation emails:" << std::endl <<
                              std::endl;

                    for (auto &email: emails) {
                        std::cout << "    " << email << std::endl;
                    }

                    std::cout << std::endl;
                }

                Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod validationMethod =
                        validation.GetValidationMethod();
                Aws::String method;

                switch (validationMethod) {
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod::DNS:
                        method = "DNS";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod::EMAIL:
                        method = "Email";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod::NOT_SET:
                        method = "Not set";
                        break;
                    default:
                        method = "Cannot determine";
                }
```

```
            std::cout << "  Validation method:        " <<
                      method << std::endl;

            Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus domainStatus =
                    validation.GetValidationStatus();
            Aws::String status;

            switch (domainStatus) {
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::FAILED:
                    status = "Failed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::NOT_SET:
                    status = "Not set";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::PENDING_VALIDATION:
                    status = "Pending validation";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::SUCCESS:
                    status = "Success";
                    break;
                default:
                    status = "Cannot determine";
            }

            std::cout << "  Domain validation status: " << status <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;

        }
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsage> usages =
            certificate.GetExtendedKeyUsages();

    if (!usages.empty()) {
        std::cout << std::endl << "Extended key usages:" <<
                  std::endl << std::endl;

        for (auto &usage: usages) {
            Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName usageName =
                    usage.GetName();
            Aws::String name;

            switch (usageName) {
```

```
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::ANY:
                        name = "Any";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::CODE_SIGNING:
                        name = "Code signing";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::CUSTOM:
                        name = "Custom";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::EMAIL_PROTECTION:
                        name = "Email protection";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::IPSEC_END_SYSTEM:
                        name = "IPSEC end system";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::IPSEC_TUNNEL:
                        name = "IPSEC tunnel";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::IPSEC_USER:
                        name = "IPSEC user";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::NONE:
                        name = "None";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::NOT_SET:
                        name = "Not set";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::OCSP_SIGNING:
                        name = "OCSP signing";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::TIME_STAMPING:
                        name = "Time stamping";
                        break;
                    case
Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::TLS_WEB_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION:
                        name = "TLS web client authentication";
                        break;
                    case
Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::TLS_WEB_SERVER_AUTHENTICATION:
                        name = "TLS web server authentication";
                        break;
                    default:
                        name = "Cannot determine";
                }
```

```
            std::cout << "  Name: " << name << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  OID:  " << usage.GetOID() <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;
        }

        std::cout << std::endl;
    }

    Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus certificateStatus =
            certificate.GetStatus();
    Aws::String status;

    switch (certificateStatus) {
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::EXPIRED:
            status = "Expired";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::FAILED:
            status = "Failed";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::INACTIVE:
            status = "Inactive";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::ISSUED:
            status = "Issued";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::NOT_SET:
            status = "Not set";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::PENDING_VALIDATION:
            status = "Pending validation";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::REVOKED:
            status = "Revoked";
            break;
        case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::VALIDATION_TIMED_OUT:
            status = "Validation timed out";
            break;
        default:
            status = "Cannot determine";
    }

    std::cout << "Status:              " << status << std::endl;
```

```
        if (certificate.GetStatus() ==
            Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::FAILED) {
            Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason failureReason =
                    certificate.GetFailureReason();
            Aws::String reason;

            switch (failureReason) {
                case
 Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::ADDITIONAL_VERIFICATION_REQUIRED:
                    reason = "Additional verification required";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::CAA_ERROR:
                    reason = "CAA error";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::DOMAIN_NOT_ALLOWED:
                    reason = "Domain not allowed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::DOMAIN_VALIDATION_DENIED:
                    reason = "Domain validation denied";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::INVALID_PUBLIC_DOMAIN:
                    reason = "Invalid public domain";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::NOT_SET:
                    reason = "Not set";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::NO_AVAILABLE_CONTACTS:
                    reason = "No available contacts";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::OTHER:
                    reason = "Other";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_ACCESS_DENIED:
                    reason = "PCA access denied";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_ARGS:
                    reason = "PCA invalid args";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_ARN:
                    reason = "PCA invalid ARN";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_DURATION:
                    reason = "PCA invalid duration";
                    break;
```

```
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_STATE:
                    reason = "PCA invalid state";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_LIMIT_EXCEEDED:
                    reason = "PCA limit exceeded";
                    break;
                case
Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_NAME_CONSTRAINTS_VALIDATION:
                    reason = "PCA name constraints validation";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_REQUEST_FAILED:
                    reason = "PCA request failed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_RESOURCE_NOT_FOUND:
                    reason = "PCA resource not found";
                    break;
                default:
                    reason = "Cannot determine";
            }

            std::cout << "Failure reason:      " << reason << std::endl;
        }

        if (certificate.GetStatus() ==
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::REVOKED) {
            std::cout << "Revoked at (GMT):    " <<
                      certificate.GetRevokedAt().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;

            Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason revocationReason =
                    certificate.GetRevocationReason();
            Aws::String reason;

            switch (revocationReason) {
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::AFFILIATION_CHANGED:
                    reason = "Affiliation changed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::A_A_COMPROMISE:
                    reason = "AA compromise";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::CA_COMPROMISE:
                    reason = "CA compromise";
                    break;
```

```
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::CERTIFICATE_HOLD:
                    reason = "Certificate hold";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::CESSATION_OF_OPERATION:
                    reason = "Cessation of operation";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::KEY_COMPROMISE:
                    reason = "Key compromise";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::NOT_SET:
                    reason = "Not set";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::PRIVILEGE_WITHDRAWN:
                    reason = "Privilege withdrawn";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::REMOVE_FROM_CRL:
                    reason = "Revoke from CRL";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::SUPERCEDED:
                    reason = "Superceded";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::UNSPECIFIED:
                    reason = "Unspecified";
                    break;
                default:
                    reason = "Cannot determine";
            }

            std::cout << "Revocation reason:   " << reason << std::endl;
        }

        if (certificate.GetType() == Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::IMPORTED)
{
            std::cout << "Imported at (GMT):   " <<
                      certificate.GetImportedAt().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> inUseBys = certificate.GetInUseBy();

        if (!inUseBys.empty()) {
            std::cout << std::endl << "In use by:" << std::endl << std::endl;
```

```
            for (auto &in_use_by: inUseBys) {
                std::cout << "  " << in_use_by << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << std::endl;
        }

        if (certificate.GetType() ==
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::AMAZON_ISSUED &&
            certificate.GetStatus() ==
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::ISSUED) {
            std::cout << "Issued at (GMT):     " <<
                      certificate.GetIssuedAt().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;
        }

        std::cout << "Issuer:              " << certificate.GetIssuer() <<
                  std::endl;

        Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm keyAlgorithm =
                certificate.GetKeyAlgorithm();
        Aws::String algorithm;

        switch (keyAlgorithm) {
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::EC_prime256v1:
                algorithm = "P-256 (secp256r1, prime256v1)";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::EC_secp384r1:
                algorithm = "P-384 (secp384r1)";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::EC_secp521r1:
                algorithm = "P-521 (secp521r1)";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::NOT_SET:
                algorithm = "Not set";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::RSA_1024:
                algorithm = "RSA 1024";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::RSA_2048:
                algorithm = "RSA 2048";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::RSA_4096:
```

```
                algorithm = "RSA 4096";
                break;
            default:
                algorithm = "Cannot determine";
        }

        std::cout << "Key algorithm:       " << algorithm << std::endl;

        if (certificate.GetStatus() ==
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::ISSUED) {
            std::cout << "Not valid after (GMT): " <<
                      certificate.GetNotAfter().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Not valid before (GMT): " <<
                      certificate.GetNotBefore().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference
loggingPreference =

certificate.GetOptions().GetCertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference();
        Aws::String preference;

        switch (loggingPreference) {
            case
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::DISABLED:
                preference = "Disabled";
                break;
            case
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::ENABLED:
                preference = "Enabled";
                break;
            case
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::NOT_SET:
                preference = "Not set";
                break;
            default:
                preference = "Cannot determine";
        }

        std::cout << "Logging preference:  " << preference << std::endl;
```

```
        std::cout << "Serial:              " << certificate.GetSerial() <<
                  std::endl;
        std::cout << "Signature algorithm: "
                  << certificate.GetSignatureAlgorithm() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subject:             " << certificate.GetSubject() <<
                  std::endl;

        Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType certificateType = certificate.GetType();
        Aws::String type;

        switch (certificateType) {
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::AMAZON_ISSUED:
                type = "Amazon issued";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::IMPORTED:
                type = "Imported";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::NOT_SET:
                type = "Not set";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::PRIVATE_:
                type = "Private";
                break;
            default:
                type = "Cannot determine";
        }

        std::cout << "Type:                " << type << std::endl;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> altNames =
                certificate.GetSubjectAlternativeNames();

        if (!altNames.empty()) {
            std::cout << std::endl << "Alternative names:" <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;

            for (auto &alt_name: altNames) {
                std::cout << "  " << alt_name << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << std::endl;
        }
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the fields contained in an ACM certificate

The following `describe-certificate` command retrieves all of the fields for the certificate with the specified ARN:

```
aws acm describe-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:

```
{
  "Certificate": {
    "CertificateArn":
 "arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012",
    "CreatedAt": 1446835267.0,
    "DomainName": "www.example.com",
    "DomainValidationOptions": [
      {
        "DomainName": "www.example.com",
        "ValidationDomain": "www.example.com",
        "ValidationEmails": [
          "hostmaster@example.com",
          "admin@example.com",
          "owner@example.com.whoisprivacyservice.org",
          "tech@example.com.whoisprivacyservice.org",
          "admin@example.com.whoisprivacyservice.org",
          "postmaster@example.com",
          "webmaster@example.com",
          "administrator@example.com"
        ]
      },
```

```
      {
        "DomainName": "www.example.net",
        "ValidationDomain": "www.example.net",
        "ValidationEmails": [
          "postmaster@example.net",
          "admin@example.net",
          "owner@example.net.whoisprivacyservice.org",
          "tech@example.net.whoisprivacyservice.org",
          "admin@example.net.whoisprivacyservice.org",
          "hostmaster@example.net",
          "administrator@example.net",
          "webmaster@example.net"
        ]
      }
    ],
    "InUseBy": [],
    "IssuedAt": 1446835815.0,
    "Issuer": "Amazon",
    "KeyAlgorithm": "RSA-2048",
    "NotAfter": 1478433600.0,
    "NotBefore": 1446768000.0,
    "Serial": "0f:ac:b0:a3:8d:ea:65:52:2d:7d:01:3a:39:36:db:d6",
    "SignatureAlgorithm": "SHA256WITHRSA",
    "Status": "ISSUED",
    "Subject": "CN=www.example.com",
    "SubjectAlternativeNames": [
      "www.example.com",
      "www.example.net"
    ]
  }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DescribeCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        describeCertificate(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Describes the details of an SSL/TLS certificate.
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to
 describe
     * @throws AcmException if an error occurs while describing the certificate
     */
    public static void describeCertificate(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        DescribeCertificateRequest req = DescribeCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();
```

```
        try {
            DescribeCertificateResponse response =
 acmClient.describeCertificate(req);

            // Print the certificate details.
            System.out.println("Certificate ARN: " +
 response.certificate().certificateArn());
            System.out.println("Domain Name: " +
 response.certificate().domainName());
            System.out.println("Issued By: " + response.certificate().issuer());
            System.out.println("Issued On: " +
 response.certificate().issuedAt());
            System.out.println("Status: " + response.certificate().status());
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of the specified certificate.

```
Get-ACMCertificateDetail -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn          : arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
CreatedAt               : 1/21/2016 5:55:59 PM
DomainName              : www.example.com
DomainValidationOptions : {www.example.com}
InUseBy                 : {}
IssuedAt                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Issuer                  :
KeyAlgorithm            : RSA-2048
```

```
NotAfter                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
NotBefore               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
RevocationReason        :
RevokedAt               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Serial                  :
SignatureAlgorithm      : SHA256WITHRSA
Status                  : PENDING_VALIDATION
Subject                 : CN=www.example.com
SubjectAlternativeNames : {www.example.net}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified certificate.

```
Get-ACMCertificateDetail -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn          : arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
CreatedAt               : 1/21/2016 5:55:59 PM
DomainName              : www.example.com
DomainValidationOptions : {www.example.com}
InUseBy                 : {}
IssuedAt                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Issuer                  :
KeyAlgorithm            : RSA-2048
NotAfter                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
NotBefore               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
RevocationReason        :
RevokedAt               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Serial                  :
SignatureAlgorithm      : SHA256WITHRSA
Status                  : PENDING_VALIDATION
Subject                 : CN=www.example.com
SubjectAlternativeNames : {www.example.net}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def describe(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets certificate metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
 certificate.
        :return: Metadata about the certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.describe_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            certificate = response["Certificate"]
            logger.info(
                "Got metadata for certificate for domain %s.",
 certificate["DomainName"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for certificate %s.",
 certificate_arn)
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return certificate
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExportCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ExportCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Export an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM)  certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param passphrase: A passphrase to decrypt the exported certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::exportCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                    const Aws::String &passphrase,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acm_client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ExportCertificateRequest request;
    Aws::Utils::CryptoBuffer cryptoBuffer(
            reinterpret_cast<const unsigned char *>(passphrase.c_str()),
            passphrase.length());
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn).WithPassphrase(cryptoBuffer);
```

```
    Aws::ACM::Model::ExportCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acm_client.ExportCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: ExportCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Information about certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;

        auto result = outcome.GetResult();

        std::cout << "Certificate:       " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificate() << std::endl << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate chain: " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificateChain() << std::endl << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Private key:       " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetPrivateKey() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ExportCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To export a private certificate issued by a private CA.

The following `export-certificate` command exports a private certificate, certificate chain, and private key to your display:

```
aws acm export-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 --passphrase file://path-to-passphrase-file
```

To export the certificate, chain, and private key to a local file, use the following command:

```
aws acm export-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:sccount:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 --passphrase file://path-to-passphrase-file > c:\temp\export.txt
```

- For API details, see ExportCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ExportCertificate {

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }
```

```
        String certArn = args[0];
        exportCert(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Exports an SSL/TLS certificate and its associated private key and
certificate chain from AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param certArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate that you
want to export.
     * @throws IOException If an I/O error occurs while reading the private key
passphrase file or exporting the certificate.
     */
    public static void exportCert(String certArn) throws IOException {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();

        // Initialize a file descriptor for the passphrase file.
        RandomAccessFile filePassphrase = null;
        ByteBuffer bufPassphrase = null;

        // Create a file stream for reading the private key passphrase.
        try {
            filePassphrase = new RandomAccessFile("C:\\AWS\\password.txt", "r");
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException | SecurityException |
FileNotFoundException ex) {
            throw ex;
        }

        // Create a channel to map the file.
        FileChannel channelPassphrase = filePassphrase.getChannel();

        // Map the file to the buffer.
        try {
            bufPassphrase = channelPassphrase.map(FileChannel.MapMode.READ_ONLY,
0, channelPassphrase.size());
            channelPassphrase.close();
            filePassphrase.close();
        } catch (IOException ex) {
            throw ex;
        }

        // Create a request object.
        ExportCertificateRequest req = ExportCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
```

```
            .passphrase(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bufPassphrase))
            .build();

        // Export the certificate.
        ExportCertificateResponse result = null;
        try {
            result = acmClient.exportCertificate(req);
        } catch (InvalidArnException | InvalidTagException |
 ResourceNotFoundException ex) {
            throw ex;
        }

        // Clear the buffer.
        bufPassphrase.clear();

        // Display the certificate and certificate chain.
        String certificate = result.certificate();
        System.out.println(certificate);

        String certificateChain = result.certificateChain();
        System.out.println(certificateChain);

        // This example retrieves but does not display the private key.
        String privateKey = result.privateKey();
        System.out.println("The example is complete");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ExportCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::getCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::GetCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::GetCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.GetCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: GetCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Information about certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;

        auto result = outcome.GetResult();

        std::cout << "Certificate: " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificate() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate chain: " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificateChain() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve an ACM certificate

The following `get-certificate` command retrieves the certificate for the specified ARN and the certificate chain:

```
aws acm get-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Output similar to the following is displayed:


```
{
  "Certificate": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----",

  "CertificateChain": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
```

```
b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----",
"-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----",
"-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
```

```
-----END CERTIFICATE-----"
}
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to return a certificate and its chain using the ARN of the certificate.

```
Get-ACMCertificate -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to return a certificate and its chain using the ARN of the certificate.

```
Get-ACMCertificate -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
```

```
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def get(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets the body and certificate chain of a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The body and chain of a certificate.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.acm_client.get_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Got certificate %s and its chain.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ImportCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ImportCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Import an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateFile: Path to certificate to import.
  \param privateKeyFile: Path to file containing a private key.
  \param certificateChainFile: Path to file containing a PEM encoded certificate
 chain.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::importCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateFile,
                                    const Aws::String &privateKeyFile,
                                    const Aws::String &certificateChainFile,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    std::ifstream certificateInStream(certificateFile.c_str());
    if (!certificateInStream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: The certificate file '" << certificateFile <<
                  "' does not exist." << std::endl;

        return false;
    }

    std::ifstream privateKeyInstream(privateKeyFile.c_str());
    if (!privateKeyInstream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: The private key file '" << privateKeyFile <<
                  "' does not exist." << std::endl;

        return false;
    }

    std::ifstream certificateChainInStream(certificateChainFile.c_str());
    if (!certificateChainInStream) {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Error: The certificate chain file '"
                  << certificateChainFile << "' does not exist." << std::endl;

        return false;
    }

    Aws::String certificate;
    certificate.assign(std::istreambuf_iterator<char>(certificateInStream),
                       std::istreambuf_iterator<char>());

    Aws::String privateKey;
    privateKey.assign(std::istreambuf_iterator<char>(privateKeyInstream),
                      std::istreambuf_iterator<char>());

    Aws::String certificateChain;

certificateChain.assign(std::istreambuf_iterator<char>(certificateChainInStream),
                        std::istreambuf_iterator<char>());

    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ImportCertificateRequest request;

    request.WithCertificate(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
                                                           certificate.c_str(),
                                                   certificate.size()))
            .WithPrivateKey(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
                                                           privateKey.c_str(),
                                                   privateKey.size()))
            .WithCertificateChain(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)

certificateChain.c_str(),

certificateChain.size()));

    Aws::ACM::Model::ImportCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.ImportCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: ImportCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Certificate associated with ARN '" <<
                  outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn() << "' imported."
                  << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To import a certificate into ACM.

The following `import-certificate` command imports a certificate into ACM. Replace the file names with your own:

```
aws acm import-certificate --certificate file://Certificate.pem --certificate-
chain file://CertificateChain.pem --private-key file://PrivateKey.pem
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ImportCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <bucketName> <certificateKey> <privateKeyKey>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket containing the certificate
 and private key.
                certificateKey - The object key for the SSL/TLS certificate file
 in S3.
                privateKeyKey - The object key for the private key file in S3.
            """;

        //if (args.length != 3) {
        //    System.out.println(usage);
        //    return;
       // }

        String bucketName = "certbucket100" ; //args[0];
        String certificateKey = "certificate.pem" ; // args[1];
        String privateKeyKey = "private_key.pem" ; //args[2];

        String certificateArn = importCertificate(bucketName, certificateKey,
 privateKeyKey);
        System.out.println("Certificate imported with ARN: " + certificateArn);
    }

    /**
     * Imports an SSL/TLS certificate and private key from S3 into AWS
 Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param bucketName     The name of the S3 bucket.
     * @param certificateKey The key for the SSL/TLS certificate file in S3.
     * @param privateKeyKey  The key for the private key file in S3.
     * @return The ARN of the imported certificate.
     */
    public static String importCertificate(String bucketName, String
 certificateKey, String privateKeyKey) {
```

```
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.create();

        try {
            byte[] certificateBytes = downloadFileFromS3(s3Client, bucketName,
certificateKey);
            byte[] privateKeyBytes = downloadFileFromS3(s3Client, bucketName,
privateKeyKey);

            ImportCertificateRequest request = ImportCertificateRequest.builder()

.certificate(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(certificateBytes)))

.privateKey(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(privateKeyBytes)))
                    .build();

            ImportCertificateResponse response =
acmClient.importCertificate(request);
            return response.certificateArn();

        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.err.println("Error downloading certificate or private key from
S3: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println("S3 error: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }

    /**
     * Downloads a file from Amazon S3 and returns its contents as a byte array.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket.
     * @param objectKey  The key of the object in S3.
     * @return The file contents as a byte array.
     * @throws IOException If an I/O error occurs.
     */
    private static byte[] downloadFileFromS3(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String objectKey) throws IOException {
        GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
```

```
                .build();

        try (ResponseInputStream<GetObjectResponse> s3Object =
 s3Client.getObject(getObjectRequest);
             ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
 ByteArrayOutputStream()) {
            IoUtils.copy(s3Object, byteArrayOutputStream);
            return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def import_certificate(self, certificate_body, private_key):
        """
        Imports a self-signed certificate to ACM.

        :param certificate_body: The body of the certificate, in PEM format.
```

```
        :param private_key: The unencrypted private key of the certificate, in
PEM
                            format.
        :return: The ARN of the imported certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.import_certificate(
                Certificate=certificate_body, PrivateKey=private_key
            )
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info("Imported certificate.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't import certificate.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListCertificates` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListCertificates`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CertificateManager;
using Amazon.CertificateManager.Model;

namespace ListCertificates
{
    // The following example retrieves and displays a list of the
    // certificates defined for the default account using the AWS
    // Certificate Manager (ACM) service.
    class ListCertificates
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).

        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ACMRegion =
 RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
        private static AmazonCertificateManagerClient _client;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            _client = new AmazonCertificateManagerClient(ACMRegion);
            var certificateList = ListCertificatesResponseAsync(client: _client);

            Console.WriteLine("Certificate Summary List\n");

            foreach (var certificate in
 certificateList.Result.CertificateSummaryList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Domain:
 {certificate.DomainName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate ARN:
 {certificate.CertificateArn}\n");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves a list of the certificates defined in this Region.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The ACM client object passed to the
        /// ListCertificateResAsync method call.</param>
        /// <param name="request"></param>
        /// <returns>The ListCertificatesResponse.</returns>
```

```
        static async Task<ListCertificatesResponse>
 ListCertificatesResponseAsync(
            AmazonCertificateManagerClient client)
        {
            var request = new ListCertificatesRequest();

            var response = await client.ListCertificatesAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificates in an account.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::listCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ListCertificatesRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateSummary> allCertificates;
    Aws::String nextToken;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
```

```
        Aws::ACM::Model::ListCertificatesOutcome outcome =
                acmClient.ListCertificates(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: ListCertificates: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            return false;
        }
        else {
            const Aws::ACM::Model::ListCertificatesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateSummary> &certificates
 =
                    result.GetCertificateSummaryList();
            allCertificates.insert(allCertificates.end(), certificates.begin(),
                                   certificates.end());

            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    if (!allCertificates.empty()) {
        for (const Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateSummary &certificate:
 allCertificates) {
            std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " <<
                      certificate.GetCertificateArn() << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Domain name:     " <<
                      certificate.GetDomainName() << std::endl << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "No available certificates found in account."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the ACM certificates for an AWS account

The following `list-certificates` command lists the ARNs of the certificates in your account:

```
aws acm list-certificates
```

The preceding command produces output similar to the following:

```
{
    "CertificateSummaryList": [
        {
            "CertificateArn":
 "arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012",
            "DomainName": "www.example.com"
        },
        {
            "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/aaaaaaaa-
bbbb-cccc-dddd-eeeeeeeeeeee",
            "DomainName": "www.example.net"
        }
    ]
}
```

You can decide how many certificates you want to display each time you call `list-certificates`. For example, if you have four certificates and you want to display no more than two at a time, set the `max-items` argument to 2 as in the following example:

```
aws acm list-certificates --max-items 2
```

Two certificate ARNs and a `NextToken` value will be displayed:

```
"CertificateSummaryList": [
  {
    "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:region:account: \
            certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012",
```

```
    "DomainName": "www.example.com"
  },
  {
    "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:region:account: \
             certificate/aaaaaaaa-bbbb-cccc-dddd-eeeeeeeeeeee",
    "DomainName": "www.example.net"
  }
  ],
    "NextToken": "9f4d9f69-275a-41fe-b58e-2b837bd9ba48"
```

To display the next two certificates in your account, set this `NextToken` value in your next call:

```
aws acm list-certificates --max-items 2 --next-token 9f4d9f69-275a-41fe-
b58e-2b837bd9ba48
```

You can filter your output by using the `certificate-statuses` argument. The following command displays certificates that have a PENDING_VALIDATION status:

```
aws acm list-certificates --certificate-statuses PENDING_VALIDATION
```

You can also filter your output by using the `includes` argument. The following command displays certificates filtered on the following properties. The certificates to be displayed:

```
- Specify that the RSA algorithm and a 2048 bit key are used to generate key
 pairs.
- Contain a Key Usage extension that specifies that the certificates can be used
 to create digital signatures.
- Contain an Extended Key Usage extension that specifies that the certificates
 can be used for code signing.

aws acm list-certificates --max-items 10 --includes
 extendedKeyUsage=CODE_SIGNING,keyUsage=DIGITAL_SIGNATURE,keyTypes=RSA_2048
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListCerts {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listCertificates();
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the certificates managed by AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) that
 have a status of "ISSUED".
     */
    public static void listCertificates() {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        try {
            ListCertificatesRequest listRequest =
 ListCertificatesRequest.builder()
                .certificateStatuses(CertificateStatus.ISSUED)
                .maxItems(100)
                .build();
            ListCertificatesIterable listResponse =
 acmClient.listCertificatesPaginator(listRequest);

            // Print the certificate details using streams
            listResponse.certificateSummaryList().stream()
                .forEach(certificate -> {
```

```
                    System.out.println("Certificate ARN: " +
 certificate.certificateArn());
                    System.out.println("Certificate Domain Name: " +
 certificate.domainName());
                    System.out.println("Certificate Status: " +
 certificate.statusAsString());
                    System.out.println("---");
                });

        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves a list of all your certificate ARNs and the domain name for each. The cmdlet will automatically paginate to retrieve all the ARNs. To manually control pagination, use the -MaxItem parameter to control how many certificate ARNs are returned for each service call and the -NextToken parameter to indicate the starting point for each call.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   DomainName
--------------
   ----------
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 www.example.com
```

Example 2: Retrieves a list of all your certificate ARNs where the certificate status matches on the supplied states.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList -CertificateStatus "VALIDATION_TIMED_OUT","FAILED"
```

Example 3: This example returns a list of all certificates in the us-east-1 region that have a key type of RSA_2048, and an extended key usage, or purpose, of CODE_SIGNING. You can find the values for these filtering parameters in the ListCertificates Filters API reference topic: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/APIReference/API_Filters.html.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList -Region us-east-1 -Includes_KeyType RSA_2048 -
Includes_ExtendedKeyUsage CODE_SIGNING
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   DomainName
--------------
   ----------
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-d7c0-48c1-
af8d-2133d8f30zzz *.route53docs.com
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-98a5-443d-
a734-800430c80zzz nerdzizm.net
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-2be6-4376-8fa7-
bad559525zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-
e7ca-44c5-803e-24d9f2f36zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/
xxxxxxxx-1241-4b71-80b1-090305a62zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-8709-4568-8c64-
f94617c99zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-a8fa-4a61-98cf-
e08ccc0eezzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-fa47-40fe-
a714-2d277d3eezzz *.route53docs.com
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves a list of all your certificate ARNs and the domain name for each. The cmdlet will automatically paginate to retrieve all the ARNs. To manually control pagination, use the -MaxItem parameter to control how many certificate ARNs are returned for each service call and the -NextToken parameter to indicate the starting point for each call.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   DomainName
--------------
   ----------
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 www.example.com
```

Example 2: Retrieves a list of all your certificate ARNs where the certificate status matches on the supplied states.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList -CertificateStatus "VALIDATION_TIMED_OUT","FAILED"
```

Example 3: This example returns a list of all certificates in the us-east-1 region that have a key type of RSA_2048, and an extended key usage, or purpose, of CODE_SIGNING. You can find the values for these filtering parameters in the ListCertificates Filters API reference topic: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/APIReference/API_Filters.html.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList -Region us-east-1 -Includes_KeyType RSA_2048 -
Includes_ExtendedKeyUsage CODE_SIGNING
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   DomainName
--------------
   ----------
```

```
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-d7c0-48c1-
af8d-2133d8f30zzz *.route53docs.com
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-98a5-443d-
a734-800430c80zzz nerdzizm.net
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-2be6-4376-8fa7-
bad559525zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-
e7ca-44c5-803e-24d9f2f36zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/
xxxxxxxx-1241-4b71-80b1-090305a62zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-8709-4568-8c64-
f94617c99zzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-a8fa-4a61-98cf-
e08ccc0eezzz
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-fa47-40fe-
a714-2d277d3eezzz *.route53docs.com
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def list(
```

```
        self,
        max_items,
        statuses=None,
        key_usage=None,
        extended_key_usage=None,
        key_types=None,
    ):
        """
        Lists the certificates for the current account.

        :param max_items: The maximum number of certificates to list.
        :param statuses: Filters the results to the specified statuses. If None,
all
                         certificates are included.
        :param key_usage: Filters the results to the specified key usages. If
None,
                          all key usages are included.
        :param extended_key_usage: Filters the results to the specified extended
key
                                   usages. If None, all extended key usages are
                                   included.
        :param key_types: Filters the results to the specified key types. If
None, all
                          key types are included.
        :return: The list of certificates.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"MaxItems": max_items}
            if statuses is not None:
                kwargs["CertificateStatuses"] = statuses
            includes = {}
            if key_usage is not None:
                includes["keyUsage"] = key_usage
            if extended_key_usage is not None:
                includes["extendedKeyUsage"] = extended_key_usage
            if key_types is not None:
                includes["keyTypes"] = key_types
            if includes:
                kwargs["Includes"] = includes
            response = self.acm_client.list_certificates(**kwargs)
            certificates = response["CertificateSummaryList"]
            logger.info("Got %s certificates.", len(certificates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificates.")
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return certificates
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListTagsForCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the tags for an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::listTagsForCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                         const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acm_client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ListTagsForCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);
```

```
    Aws::ACM::Model::ListTagsForCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acm_client.ListTagsForCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Error: ListTagsForCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Information about tags for "
                     "certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;

        auto result = outcome.GetResult();

        Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::Tag> tags =
                result.GetTags();

        if (tags.size() > 0) {
            for (const Aws::ACM::Model::Tag &tag: tags) {
                std::cout << "Key:   " << tag.GetKey() << std::endl;
                std::cout << "Value: " << tag.GetValue()
                          << std::endl << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "No tags found." << std::endl;
        }

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the tags applied to an ACM Certificate

The following `list-tags-for-certificate` command lists the tags applied to a certificate in your account:

```
aws acm list-tags-for-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

The preceding command produces output similar to the following:

```
{
  "Tags": [
      {
          "Value": "Website",
          "Key": "Purpose"
      },
      {
          "Value": "Alice",
          "Key": "Admin"
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListCertTags {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        listCertTags(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Lists the tags associated with an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM)
 certificate.
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the ACM certificate
     */
    public static void listCertTags(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();

        ListTagsForCertificateRequest request =
 ListTagsForCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        ListTagsForCertificateResponse response =
 acmClient.listTagsForCertificate(request);
        List<Tag> tagList = response.tags();
        tagList.forEach(tag -> {
            System.out.println("Key: " + tag.key());
            System.out.println("Value: " + tag.value());
        });
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def list_tags(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Lists the tags attached to a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The dictionary of certificate tags.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.list_tags_for_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            tags = {tag["Key"]: tag["Value"] for tag in response["Tags"]}
            logger.info("Got %s tags for certificates %s.", len(tags),
 certificate_arn)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get tags for certificate %s.",
 certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return tags
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RemoveTagsFromCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveTagsFromCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Remove a tag from an ACM certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param tagKey: The key for the tag.
  \param tagValue: The value for the tag.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::removeTagsFromCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                            const Aws::String &tagKey,
```

```
                                                const Aws::String &tagValue,
                                                const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::Tag> tags;

    Aws::ACM::Model::Tag tag;
    tag.SetKey(tagKey);

    tags.push_back(tag);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RemoveTagsFromCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn)
            .WithTags(tags);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RemoveTagsFromCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.RemoveTagsFromCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: RemoveTagFromCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Tag with key '" << tagKey << "' removed from "
                  << "certificate with ARN '" << certificateArn << "'." <<
 std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a tag from an ACM Certificate

The following `remove-tags-from-certificate` command removes two tags from the specified certificate. Use a space to separate multiple tags:

```
aws acm remove-tags-from-certificate --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 --tags Key=Admin,Value=Alice Key=Purpose,Value=Website
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class RemoveTagsFromCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        removeTags(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Removes tags from an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate from
 which to remove tags
     */
    public static void removeTags(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        List<Tag> expectedTags =
 List.of(Tag.builder().key("key").value("value").build());
        RemoveTagsFromCertificateRequest req =
 RemoveTagsFromCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .tags(expectedTags)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.removeTagsFromCertificate(req);
            System.out.println("Successfully removed tags from the certificate");
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def remove_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Removes tags from a certificate. If the value of a tag is specified, the
 tag is
        removed only when the value matches the value of the certificate's tag.
        Otherwise, the tag is removed regardless of its value.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: The dictionary of tags to remove.
        """
        try:
            cert_tags = []
            for key, value in tags.items():
                tag = {"Key": key}
                if value is not None:
                    tag["Value"] = value
                cert_tags.append(tag)
            self.acm_client.remove_tags_from_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn, Tags=cert_tags
            )
```

```
            logger.info(
                "Removed %s tags from certificate %s.", len(tags),
 certificate_arn
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't remove tags from certificate %s.", certificate_arn
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RenewCertificate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `RenewCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Renew an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::renewCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RenewCertificateRequest request;
```

```
    request.SetCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RenewCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.RenewCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: RenewCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Renewed certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "'." << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RenewCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
```

```
public class RenewCert {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        renewCertificate(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Renews an existing SSL/TLS certificate in AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param certArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to be
 renewed.
     * @throws AcmException If there is an error renewing the certificate.
     */
    public static void renewCertificate(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();

        RenewCertificateRequest certificateRequest =
 RenewCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.renewCertificate(certificateRequest);
            System.out.println("The certificate was renewed");
        } catch(AcmException e){
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RenewCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `RequestCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RequestCertificate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Request an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param domainName: A fully qualified domain name.
  \param idempotencyToken: Customer chosen string for idempotency.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::requestCertificate(const Aws::String &domainName,
                                     const Aws::String &idempotencyToken,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RequestCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithDomainName(domainName)
            .WithIdempotencyToken(idempotencyToken);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RequestCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.RequestCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "RequestCertificate error: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The newly requested certificate's "
                     "ARN is '" <<
                  outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn() <<
                  "'." << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To request a new ACM certificate

The following `request-certificate` command requests a new certificate for the www.example.com domain using DNS validation:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name www.example.com --validation-method DNS
```

You can enter an idempotency token to distinguish between calls to `request-certificate`:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name www.example.com --validation-method DNS
 --idempotency-token 91adc45q
```

You can enter one or more subject alternative names to request a certificate that will protect more than one apex domain:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name example.com --validation-method DNS --
idempotency-token 91adc45q --subject-alternative-names www.example.net
```

You can enter an alternative name that can also be used to reach your website:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name example.com --validation-method DNS --
idempotency-token 91adc45q --subject-alternative-names www.example.com
```

You can use an asterisk (*) as a wildcard to create a certificate for several subdomains in the same domain:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name example.com --validation-method DNS --
idempotency-token 91adc45q --subject-alternative-names *.example.com
```

You can also enter multiple alternative names:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name example.com --validation-method DNS --
subject-alternative-names b.example.com c.example.com d.example.com
```

If you are using email for validation, you can enter domain validation options to specify the domain to which the validation email will be sent:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name example.com --validation-
method EMAIL --subject-alternative-names www.example.com --domain-validation-
options DomainName=example.com,ValidationDomain=example.com
```

The following command opts out of certificate transparency logging when you request a new certificate:

```
aws acm request-certificate --domain-name www.example.com --validation-method DNS
 --options CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference=DISABLED --idempotency-
token 184627
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class RequestCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        requestCertificate();
    }

    /**
     * Requests a certificate from the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) service.
     */
    public static void requestCertificate() {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        ArrayList<String> san = new ArrayList<>();
        san.add("www.example.com");

        RequestCertificateRequest req = RequestCertificateRequest.builder()
            .domainName("example.com")
            .idempotencyToken("1Aq25pTy")
            .subjectAlternativeNames(san)
            .build();

        try {
            RequestCertificateResponse response =
 acmClient.requestCertificate(req);
            System.out.println("Cert ARN IS " + response.certificateArn());
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new certificate. The service returns the ARN of the new certificate.

```
New-ACMCertificate -DomainName "www.example.com"
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Example 2: Creates a new certificate. The service returns the ARN of the new certificate.

```
New-ACMCertificate -DomainName "www.example.com" -SubjectAlternativeName
 "example.com","www.example.net"
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new certificate. The service returns the ARN of the new certificate.

```
New-ACMCertificate -DomainName "www.example.com"
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Example 2: Creates a new certificate. The service returns the ARN of the new certificate.

```
New-ACMCertificate -DomainName "www.example.com" -SubjectAlternativeName
 "example.com","www.example.net"
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def request_validation(
        self, domain, alternate_domains, method, validation_domains=None
    ):
        """
        Starts a validation request that results in a new certificate being
 issued
        by ACM. DNS validation requires that you add CNAME records to your DNS
        provider. Email validation sends email to a list of email addresses that
        are associated with the domain.

        For more information, see _Issuing and managing certificates_ in the ACM
        user guide.
```

```
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/userguide/gs.html

        :param domain: The primary domain to associate with the certificate.
        :param alternate_domains: Subject Alternate Names (SANs) for the
certificate.
        :param method: The validation method, either DNS or EMAIL.
        :param validation_domains: Alternate domains to use for email validation,
when
                                   the email domain differs from the primary
domain of
                                   the certificate.
        :return: The ARN of the requested certificate.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "DomainName": domain,
                "ValidationMethod": method,
                "SubjectAlternativeNames": alternate_domains,
            }
            if validation_domains is not None:
                kwargs["DomainValidationOptions"] = [
                    {"DomainName": key, "ValidationDomain": value}
                    for key, value in validation_domains.items()
                ]
            response = self.acm_client.request_certificate(**kwargs)
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info(
                "Requested %s validation for domain %s. Certificate ARN is %s.",
                method,
                domain,
                certificate_arn,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Request for %s validation of domain %s failed.", method, domain
            )
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ResendValidationEmail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResendValidationEmail`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Resend the email that requests domain ownership validation.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param domainName: A fully qualified domain name.
  \param validationDomain: The base validation domain that will act as the suffix
                           of the email addresses.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::resendValidationEmail(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                        const Aws::String &domainName,
                                        const Aws::String &validationDomain,
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ResendValidationEmailRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn)
            .WithDomain(domainName)
            .WithValidationDomain(validationDomain);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ResendValidationEmailOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.ResendValidationEmail(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "ResendValidationEmail error: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The validation email has been resent."
                  << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To resend validation email for your ACM certificate request

The following `resend-validation-email` command tells the Amazon certificate authority to send validation email to the appropriate addresses:

```
aws acm resend-validation-email --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 --domain www.example.com --validation-domain example.com
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Requests that the email to validate domain ownership for 'www.example.com' be sent. If your shell's $ConfirmPreference is set to 'Medium' or lower, the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeeding. Add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation prompts.

```
$params = @{
    CertificateArn="arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
    Domain="www.example.com"
    ValidationDomain="example.com"
}
Send-ACMValidationEmail @params
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Requests that the email to validate domain ownership for 'www.example.com' be sent. If your shell's $ConfirmPreference is set to 'Medium' or lower, the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeeding. Add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation prompts.

```
$params = @{
    CertificateArn="arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
    Domain="www.example.com"
    ValidationDomain="example.com"
}
Send-ACMValidationEmail @params
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def resend_validation_email(self, certificate_arn, domain,
validation_domain):
        """
        Request that validation email is sent again, for a certificate that was
        previously requested with email validation.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param domain: The primary domain of the certificate.
        :param validation_domain: Alternate domain to use for determining email
                                  addresses to use for validation.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.resend_validation_email(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn,
                Domain=domain,
                ValidationDomain=validation_domain,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Validation email resent to validation domain %s.",
validation_domain
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't resend validation email to %s.", validation_domain
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateCertificateOptions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateCertificateOptions`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate option.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param loggingEnabled: Boolean specifying logging enabled.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::updateCertificateOption(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                          bool loggingEnabled,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::UpdateCertificateOptionsRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateOptions options;

    if (loggingEnabled) {
        options.SetCertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference(

 Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::ENABLED);
    }
    else {
        options.SetCertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference(

 Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::DISABLED);
    }
```

```
    request.SetOptions(options);

    Aws::ACM::Model::UpdateCertificateOptionsOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.UpdateCertificateOptions(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "UpdateCertificateOption error: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The option '"
                  << (loggingEnabled ? "enabled" : "disabled") << "' has been set
 for "
                                                                  "the
 certificate with the ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "'."
                  << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateCertificateOptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the certificate options

The following `update-certificate-options` command opts out of certificate transparency logging:

```
aws acm update-certificate-options --certificate-
arn arn:aws:acm:region:account:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 --options CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference=DISABLED
```

- For API details, see UpdateCertificateOptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Code examples for API Gateway using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon API Gateway with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

More resources

- **API Gateway Developer Guide** – More information about API Gateway.
- **API Gateway API Reference** – Details about all available API Gateway actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for API Gateway using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for API Gateway using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDeployment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateRestApi with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDeployment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteRestApi with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetBasePathMapping with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetResources with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetRestApis with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListBasePathMappings with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutIntegration with an AWS SDK or CLI

    - Use PutIntegrationResponse with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutMethod with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutMethodResponse with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateBasePathMapping with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for API Gateway using AWS SDKs
    - Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data
    - Create a lending library REST API
    - Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
    - Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway
    - Create and deploy a REST API using an AWS SDK
    - Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
- AWS community contributions for API Gateway
    - Build and test a serverless application

Basic examples for API Gateway using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon API Gateway with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for API Gateway using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDeployment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateRestApi with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDeployment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteRestApi with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetBasePathMapping with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetResources with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetRestApis with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListBasePathMappings with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutIntegration with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutIntegrationResponse with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use PutMethod with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMethodResponse with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateBasePathMapping with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for API Gateway using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual API Gateway actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the API Gateway API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for API Gateway using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon API Gateway API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDeployment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateRestApi with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteDeployment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteRestApi with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBasePathMapping with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetResources with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRestApis with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListBasePathMappings with an AWS SDK
- Use PutIntegration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutIntegrationResponse with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMethod with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMethodResponse with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateBasePathMapping with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateDeployment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDeployment`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To deploy the configured resources for an API to a new Stage

Command:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment --rest-api-id 1234123412 --stage-name dev --
stage-description 'Development Stage' --description 'First deployment to the dev
 stage'
```

To deploy the configured resources for an API to an existing stage

Command:

```
aws apigateway create-deployment --rest-api-id 1234123412 --stage-name dev --
description 'Second deployment to the dev stage'
```

To deploy the configured resources for an API to an existing stage with Stage Variables

aws apigateway create-deployment --rest-api-id 1234123412 --stage-name dev --description 'Third deployment to the dev stage' --variables key='value',otherKey='otherValue'

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createNewDeployment(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String
restApiId, String stageName) {

       try {
           CreateDeploymentRequest request = CreateDeploymentRequest.builder()
                   .restApiId(restApiId)
                   .description("Created using the AWS API Gateway Java API")
                   .stageName(stageName)
                   .build();

           CreateDeploymentResponse response =
apiGateway.createDeployment(request);
           System.out.println("The id of the deployment is " + response.id());
           return response.id();

       } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def deploy_api(self, stage_name):
        """
        Deploys a REST API. After a REST API is deployed, it can be called from
 any
        REST client, such as the Python Requests package or Postman.

        :param stage_name: The stage of the API to deploy, such as 'test'.
        :return: The base URL of the deployed REST API.
        """
        try:
            self.apig_client.create_deployment(
                restApiId=self.api_id, stageName=stage_name
            )
            self.stage = stage_name
            logger.info("Deployed stage %s.", stage_name)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deploy stage %s.", stage_name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.api_url()



    def api_url(self, resource=None):
        """
        Builds the REST API URL from its parts.

        :param resource: The resource path to append to the base URL.
        :return: The REST URL to the specified resource.
        """
        url = (
            f"https://{self.api_id}.execute-api.
{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f".amazonaws.com/{self.stage}"
        )
        if resource is not None:
            url = f"{url}/{resource}"
        return url
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateResource`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a resource in an API

Command:

```
aws apigateway create-resource --rest-api-id 1234123412 --parent-id a1b2c3 --
path-part 'new-resource'
```

- For API details, see CreateResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_rest_resource(self, parent_id, resource_path):
        """
        Adds a resource to a REST API.

        :param parent_id: The ID of the parent resource.
        :param resource_path: The path of the new resource, relative to the
 parent.
```

```
        :return: The ID of the new resource.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_resource(
                restApiId=self.api_id, parentId=parent_id, pathPart=resource_path
            )
            resource_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created resource %s.", resource_path)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create resource %s.", resource_path)
            raise
        else:
            return resource_id
```

- For API details, see CreateResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateRestApi` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRestApi`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an API

Command:

```
aws apigateway create-rest-api --name 'My First API' --description 'This is my
 first API'
```

To create a duplicate API from an existing API

Command:

```
aws apigateway create-rest-api --name 'Copy of My First API' --description 'This
 is a copy of my first API' --clone-from 1234123412
```

- For API details, see CreateRestApi in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createAPI(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String restApiId,
 String restApiName) {

       try {
           CreateRestApiRequest request = CreateRestApiRequest.builder()
                   .cloneFrom(restApiId)
                   .description("Created using the Gateway Java API")
                   .name(restApiName)
                   .build();

           CreateRestApiResponse response = apiGateway.createRestApi(request);
           System.out.println("The id of the new api is " + response.id());
           return response.id();

       } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateRestApi in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def create_rest_api(self, api_name):
        """
        Creates a REST API on API Gateway. The default API has only a root
 resource
        and no HTTP methods.

        :param api_name: The name of the API. This descriptive name is not used
 in
                         the API path.
        :return: The ID of the newly created API.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_rest_api(name=api_name)
            self.api_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created REST API %s with ID %s.", api_name, self.api_id)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create REST API %s.", api_name)
            raise

        try:
            result = self.apig_client.get_resources(restApiId=self.api_id)
            self.root_id = next(
                item for item in result["items"] if item["path"] == "/"
            )["id"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get resources for API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
        except StopIteration as err:
            logger.exception("No root resource found in API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise ValueError from err

        return self.api_id
```

- For API details, see CreateRestApi in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDeployment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDeployment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a deployment in an API

Command:

```
aws apigateway delete-deployment --rest-api-id 1234123412 --deployment-id a1b2c3
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeployment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteSpecificDeployment(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway,
String restApiId, String deploymentId) {

       try {
           DeleteDeploymentRequest request = DeleteDeploymentRequest.builder()
                   .restApiId(restApiId)
                   .deploymentId(deploymentId)
                   .build();

           apiGateway.deleteDeployment(request);
           System.out.println("Deployment was deleted");

       } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeployment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteRestApi` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRestApi`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an API

Command:

```
aws apigateway delete-rest-api --rest-api-id 1234123412
```

- For API details, see DeleteRestApi in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteAPI(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String restApiId) {

        try {
            DeleteRestApiRequest request = DeleteRestApiRequest.builder()
                    .restApiId(restApiId)
                    .build();

            apiGateway.deleteRestApi(request);
            System.out.println("The API was successfully deleted");

        } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRestApi in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def delete_rest_api(self):
        """
        Deletes a REST API, including all of its resources and configuration.
        """
        try:
            self.apig_client.delete_rest_api(restApiId=self.api_id)
            logger.info("Deleted REST API %s.", self.api_id)
            self.api_id = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete REST API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteRestApi in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetBasePathMapping` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBasePathMapping`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the base path mapping for a custom domain name

Command:

```
aws apigateway get-base-path-mapping --domain-name subdomain.domain.tld --base-
path v1
```

Output:

```
{
    "basePath": "v1",
    "restApiId": "1234w4321e",
    "stage": "api"
}
```

- For API details, see GetBasePathMapping in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\ApiGateway\ApiGatewayClient;
```

```
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


/* ///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
 * Purpose: Gets the base path mapping for a custom domain name in
 * Amazon API Gateway.
 *
 * Prerequisites: A custom domain name in API Gateway. For more information,
 * see "Custom Domain Names" in the Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide.
 *
 * Inputs:
 * - $apiGatewayClient: An initialized AWS SDK for PHP API client for
 *   API Gateway.
 * - $basePath: The base path name that callers must provide as part of the
 *   URL after the domain name.
 * - $domainName: The custom domain name for the base path mapping.
 *
 * Returns: The base path mapping, if available; otherwise, the error message.
 * /////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////// */

function getBasePathMapping($apiGatewayClient, $basePath, $domainName)
{
    try {
        $result = $apiGatewayClient->getBasePathMapping([
            'basePath' => $basePath,
            'domainName' => $domainName,
        ]);
        return 'The base path mapping\'s effective URI is: ' .
            $result['@metadata']['effectiveUri'];
    } catch (AwsException $e) {
        return 'Error: ' . $e['message'];
    }
}

function getsTheBasePathMapping()
{
    $apiGatewayClient = new ApiGatewayClient([
        'profile' => 'default',
        'region' => 'us-east-1',
        'version' => '2015-07-09'
    ]);

    echo getBasePathMapping($apiGatewayClient, '(none)', 'example.com');
}
```

```
// Uncomment the following line to run this code in an AWS account.
// getsTheBasePathMapping();
```

- For API details, see GetBasePathMapping in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `GetResources` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetResources`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of resources for a REST API

Command:

```
aws apigateway get-resources --rest-api-id 1234123412
```

Output:

```
{
    "items": [
        {
            "path": "/resource/subresource",
            "resourceMethods": {
                "POST": {}
            },
            "id": "024ace",
            "pathPart": "subresource",
            "parentId": "ai5b02"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def create_rest_api(self, api_name):
        """
        Creates a REST API on API Gateway. The default API has only a root
 resource
        and no HTTP methods.

        :param api_name: The name of the API. This descriptive name is not used
 in
                         the API path.
        :return: The ID of the newly created API.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_rest_api(name=api_name)
```

```
            self.api_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created REST API %s with ID %s.", api_name, self.api_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create REST API %s.", api_name)
            raise

        try:
            result = self.apig_client.get_resources(restApiId=self.api_id)
            self.root_id = next(
                item for item in result["items"] if item["path"] == "/"
            )["id"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get resources for API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
        except StopIteration as err:
            logger.exception("No root resource found in API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise ValueError from err

        return self.api_id
```

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetRestApis` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetRestApis`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of REST APIs

Command:

```
aws apigateway get-rest-apis
```

Output:

```
{
    "items": [
        {
            "createdDate": 1438884790,
            "id": "12s44z21rb",
            "name": "My First API"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetRestApis in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None
```

```
    def get_rest_api_id(self, api_name):
        """
        Gets the ID of a REST API from its name by searching the list of REST
APIs
        for the current account. Because names need not be unique, this returns
only
        the first API with the specified name.

        :param api_name: The name of the API to look up.
        :return: The ID of the specified API.
        """
        try:
            rest_api = None
            paginator = self.apig_client.get_paginator("get_rest_apis")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                rest_api = next(
                    (item for item in page["items"] if item["name"] == api_name),
None
                )
                if rest_api is not None:
                    break
            self.api_id = rest_api["id"]
            logger.info("Found ID %s for API %s.", rest_api["id"], api_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't find ID for API %s.", api_name)
            raise
        else:
            return rest_api["id"]
```

- For API details, see GetRestApis in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Displays the Amazon API Gateway REST APIs in the Region.

```
async fn show_apis(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.get_rest_apis().send().await?;

    for api in resp.items() {
        println!("ID:          {}", api.id().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("Name:        {}", api.name().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("Description: {}", api.description().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("Version:     {}", api.version().unwrap_or_default());
        println!(
            "Created:     {}",
            api.created_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()?
        );
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetRestApis in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListBasePathMappings` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListBasePathMappings`.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\ApiGateway\ApiGatewayClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
```

```
/* ///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
 * Purpose: Lists the base path mapping for a custom domain name in
 * Amazon API Gateway.
 *
 * Prerequisites: A custom domain name in API Gateway. For more information,
 * see "Custom Domain Names" in the Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide.
 *
 * Inputs:
 * - $apiGatewayClient: An initialized AWS SDK for PHP API client for
 *   API Gateway.
 * - $domainName: The custom domain name for the base path mappings.
 *
 * Returns: Information about the base path mappings, if available;
 * otherwise, the error message.
 * /////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////// */

function listBasePathMappings($apiGatewayClient, $domainName)
{
    try {
        $result = $apiGatewayClient->getBasePathMappings([
            'domainName' => $domainName
        ]);
        return 'The base path mapping(s) effective URI is: ' .
            $result['@metadata']['effectiveUri'];
    } catch (AwsException $e) {
        return 'Error: ' . $e['message'];
    }
}

function listTheBasePathMappings()
{
    $apiGatewayClient = new ApiGatewayClient([
        'profile' => 'default',
        'region' => 'us-east-1',
        'version' => '2015-07-09'
    ]);

    echo listBasePathMappings($apiGatewayClient, 'example.com');
}

// Uncomment the following line to run this code in an AWS account.
// listTheBasePathMappings();
```

- For API details, see ListBasePathMappings in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `PutIntegration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutIntegration`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a MOCK integration request

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-integration --rest-api-id 1234123412 --resource-id a1b2c3
 --http-method GET --type MOCK --request-templates '{ "application/json":
 "{\"statusCode\": 200}" }'
```

To create a HTTP integration request

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-integration --rest-api-id 1234123412 --resource-id a1b2c3
 --http-method GET --type HTTP --integration-http-method GET --uri 'https://
domain.tld/path'
```

To create an AWS integration request with a Lambda Function endpoint

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-integration --rest-api-id 1234123412 --resource-
id a1b2c3 --http-method GET --type AWS --integration-http-method POST
 --uri 'arn:aws:apigateway:us-west-2:lambda:path/2015-03-31/functions/
arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123412341234:function:function_name/invocations'
```

- For API details, see PutIntegration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
```

```
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The
integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated
with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as
POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate
REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the
request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json":
json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutIntegration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutIntegrationResponse` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutIntegrationResponse`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an integration response as the default response with a mapping template defined

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-integration-response --rest-api-id 1234123412 --resource-
id a1b2c3 --http-method GET --status-code 200 --selection-pattern "" --response-
templates '{"application/json": "{\"json\": \"template\"}"}'
```

To create an integration response with a regex of 400 and a statically defined header value

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-integration-response --rest-api-id 1234123412 --resource-
id a1b2c3 --http-method GET --status-code 400 --selection-pattern 400 --response-
parameters '{"method.response.header.custom-header": "'"'"'custom-value'"'"'"}'
```

- For API details, see PutIntegrationResponse in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The
 integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.
```

```
        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated
with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as
POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate
REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the
request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
```

```
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json":
 json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutIntegrationResponse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutMethod` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutMethod`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a method for a resource in an API with no authorization, no API key, and a custom method request header

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-method --rest-api-id 1234123412 --resource-id a1b2c3 --
http-method PUT --authorization-type "NONE" --no-api-key-required --request-
parameters "method.request.header.custom-header=false"
```

- For API details, see PutMethod in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
```

```
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The
integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated
with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as
POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate
REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the
request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
```

```
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json":
json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
```

```
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutMethod in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutMethodResponse` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutMethodResponse`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and deploy a REST API

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a method response under the specified status code with a custom method response header

Command:

```
aws apigateway put-method-response --rest-api-id 1234123412 --
resource-id a1b2c3 --http-method GET --status-code 400 --response-
parameters "method.response.header.custom-header=false"
```

- For API details, see PutMethodResponse in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The
 integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.
```

```
        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated
with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as
POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate
REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the
request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
```

```
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json":
 json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutMethodResponse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateBasePathMapping` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateBasePathMapping`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the base path for a custom domain name

Command:

```
aws apigateway update-base-path-mapping --domain-name api.domain.tld --base-path prod --patch-operations op='replace',path='/basePath',value='v1'
```

Output:

```
{
    "basePath": "v1",
    "restApiId": "1234123412",
    "stage": "api"
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateBasePathMapping in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\ApiGateway\ApiGatewayClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


/* ///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
 *
 * Purpose: Updates the base path mapping for a custom domain name
 * in Amazon API Gateway.
```

```
 *
 * Inputs:
 * - $apiGatewayClient: An initialized AWS SDK for PHP API client for
 *   API Gateway.
 * - $basePath: The base path name that callers must provide as part of the
 *   URL after the domain name.
 * - $domainName: The custom domain name for the base path mapping.
 * - $patchOperations: The base path update operations to apply.
 *
 * Returns: Information about the updated base path mapping, if available;
 * otherwise, the error message.
 * ////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////// */

function updateBasePathMapping(
    $apiGatewayClient,
    $basePath,
    $domainName,
    $patchOperations
) {
    try {
        $result = $apiGatewayClient->updateBasePathMapping([
            'basePath' => $basePath,
            'domainName' => $domainName,
            'patchOperations' => $patchOperations
        ]);
        return 'The updated base path\'s URI is: ' .
            $result['@metadata']['effectiveUri'];
    } catch (AwsException $e) {
        return 'Error: ' . $e['message'];
    }
}

function updateTheBasePathMapping()
{
    $patchOperations = array([
        'op' => 'replace',
        'path' => '/stage',
        'value' => 'stage2'
    ]);

    $apiGatewayClient = new ApiGatewayClient([
        'profile' => 'default',
        'region' => 'us-east-1',
        'version' => '2015-07-09'
```

```
    ]);

    echo updateBasePathMapping(
        $apiGatewayClient,
        '(none)',
        'example.com',
        $patchOperations
    );
}

// Uncomment the following line to run this code in an AWS account.
// updateTheBasePathMapping();
```

- For API details, see UpdateBasePathMapping in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios for API Gateway using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in API Gateway with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within API Gateway or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data
- Create a lending library REST API
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway
- Create and deploy a REST API using an AWS SDK
- Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon

Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

The following code examples show how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway

The following code example shows how to create a chat application that is served by a websocket API built on Amazon API Gateway.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon API Gateway V2 to create a websocket API that integrates with AWS Lambda and Amazon DynamoDB.

- Create a websocket API served by API Gateway.
- Define a Lambda handler that stores connections in DynamoDB and posts messages to other chat participants.
- Connect to the websocket chat application and send messages with the Websockets package.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create and deploy a REST API using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a REST API served by API Gateway.
- Add resources to the REST API to represent a user profile.
- Add integration methods so that the REST API uses a DynamoDB table to store user profile data.
- Send HTTP requests to the REST API to add and retrieve user profiles.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps API Gateway operations.

```
import argparse
import json
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import requests

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
```

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def create_rest_api(self, api_name):
        """
        Creates a REST API on API Gateway. The default API has only a root
 resource
        and no HTTP methods.

        :param api_name: The name of the API. This descriptive name is not used
 in
                         the API path.
        :return: The ID of the newly created API.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_rest_api(name=api_name)
            self.api_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created REST API %s with ID %s.", api_name, self.api_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create REST API %s.", api_name)
            raise

        try:
            result = self.apig_client.get_resources(restApiId=self.api_id)
            self.root_id = next(
                item for item in result["items"] if item["path"] == "/"
            )["id"]
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't get resources for API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
        except StopIteration as err:
            logger.exception("No root resource found in API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise ValueError from err

        return self.api_id


    def add_rest_resource(self, parent_id, resource_path):
        """
        Adds a resource to a REST API.

        :param parent_id: The ID of the parent resource.
        :param resource_path: The path of the new resource, relative to the
parent.
        :return: The ID of the new resource.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_resource(
                restApiId=self.api_id, parentId=parent_id, pathPart=resource_path
            )
            resource_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created resource %s.", resource_path)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create resource %s.", resource_path)
            raise
        else:
            return resource_id


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
```

```
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The
integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated
with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as
POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate
REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the
request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json":
json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise


    def deploy_api(self, stage_name):
        """
        Deploys a REST API. After a REST API is deployed, it can be called from
any
        REST client, such as the Python Requests package or Postman.
```

```
        :param stage_name: The stage of the API to deploy, such as 'test'.
        :return: The base URL of the deployed REST API.
        """
        try:
            self.apig_client.create_deployment(
                restApiId=self.api_id, stageName=stage_name
            )
            self.stage = stage_name
            logger.info("Deployed stage %s.", stage_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deploy stage %s.", stage_name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.api_url()



    def api_url(self, resource=None):
        """
        Builds the REST API URL from its parts.

        :param resource: The resource path to append to the base URL.
        :return: The REST URL to the specified resource.
        """
        url = (
            f"https://{self.api_id}.execute-api.
{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f".amazonaws.com/{self.stage}"
        )
        if resource is not None:
            url = f"{url}/{resource}"
        return url
```

Deploy a REST API and call it with the Requests package.

```
def usage_demo(table_name, role_name, rest_api_name):
    """
    Demonstrates how to used API Gateway to create and deploy a REST API, and how
    to use the Requests package to call it.
```

```
    :param table_name: The name of the demo DynamoDB table.
    :param role_name: The name of the demo role that grants API Gateway
permission to
                      call DynamoDB.
    :param rest_api_name: The name of the demo REST API created by the demo.
    """
    gateway = ApiGatewayToService(boto3.client("apigateway"))
    role = boto3.resource("iam").Role(role_name)

    print("Creating REST API in API Gateway.")
    gateway.create_rest_api(rest_api_name)

    print("Adding resources to the REST API.")
    profiles_id = gateway.add_rest_resource(gateway.root_id, "profiles")
    username_id = gateway.add_rest_resource(profiles_id, "{username}")

    # The DynamoDB service requires that all integration requests use POST.
    print("Adding integration methods to read and write profiles in Amazon
DynamoDB.")
    gateway.add_integration_method(
        profiles_id,
        "GET",
        "dynamodb",
        "Scan",
        "POST",
        role.arn,
        {"TableName": table_name},
    )
    gateway.add_integration_method(
        profiles_id,
        "POST",
        "dynamodb",
        "PutItem",
        "POST",
        role.arn,
        {
            "TableName": table_name,
            "Item": {
                "username": {"S": "$input.path('$.username')"},
                "name": {"S": "$input.path('$.name')"},
                "title": {"S": "$input.path('$.title')"},
            },
        },
    )
```

```
    gateway.add_integration_method(
        username_id,
        "GET",
        "dynamodb",
        "GetItem",
        "POST",
        role.arn,
        {
            "TableName": table_name,
            "Key": {"username": {"S": "$method.request.path.username"}},
        },
    )

    stage = "test"
    print(f"Deploying the {stage} stage.")
    gateway.deploy_api(stage)

    profiles_url = gateway.api_url("profiles")
    print(
        f"Using the Requests package to post some people to the profiles REST API
at "
        f"{profiles_url}."
    )
    requests.post(
        profiles_url,
        json={"username": "will", "name": "William Shakespeare", "title":
"playwright"},
    )
    requests.post(
        profiles_url,
        json={
            "username": "ludwig",
            "name": "Ludwig van Beethoven",
            "title": "composer",
        },
    )
    requests.post(
        profiles_url,
        json={"username": "jane", "name": "Jane Austen", "title": "author"},
    )
    print("Getting the list of profiles from the REST API.")
    profiles = requests.get(profiles_url).json()
    pprint(profiles)
```

```
    print(f"Getting just the profile for username 'jane' (URL: {profiles_url}/
jane).")
    jane = requests.get(f"{profiles_url}/jane").json()
    pprint(jane)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDeployment
  - CreateResource
  - CreateRestApi
  - DeleteRestApi
  - GetResources
  - GetRestApis
  - PutIntegration
  - PutIntegrationResponse
  - PutMethod
  - PutMethodResponse

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP

methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.
- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

AWS community contributions for API Gateway

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Examples

- Build and test a serverless application

Build and test a serverless application

The following code examples show how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Go

SDK for Go V2

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Go SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Java SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Rust SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Code examples for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon API Gateway Management API with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **API Gateway Management API Developer Guide** – More information about API Gateway Management API.
- **API Gateway Management API API Reference** – Details about all available API Gateway Management API actions.

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs
    - Use PostToConnection with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon API Gateway Management API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs
  - Use PostToConnection with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for API Gateway Management API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual API Gateway Management API actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon API Gateway Management API API Reference.

Examples

- Use PostToConnection with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `PostToConnection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PostToConnection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send data to a WebSocket connection

The following `post-to-connection` example sends a message to a client that's connected to the specified WebSocket API.

```
aws apigatewaymanagementapi post-to-connection \
    --connection-id L0SM9cOFvHcCIhw= \
    --data "Hello from API Gateway!" \
    --endpoint-url https://aabbccddee.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/prod
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Use @connections commands in your backend service in the *Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PostToConnection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn send_data(
    client: &aws_sdk_apigatewaymanagement::Client,
    con_id: &str,
    data: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_apigatewaymanagement::Error> {
    client
        .post_to_connection()
        .connection_id(con_id)
        .data(Blob::new(data))
        .send()
```

```
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}

    let endpoint_url = format!(
        "https://{api_id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stage}",
        api_id = api_id,
        region = region,
        stage = stage
    );

    let shared_config =
 aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
    let api_management_config = config::Builder::from(&shared_config)
        .endpoint_url(endpoint_url)
        .build();
    let client = Client::from_conf(api_management_config);
```

- For API details, see PostToConnection in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Application Auto Scaling with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Application Auto Scaling User Guide** – More information about Application Auto Scaling.
- **Application Auto Scaling API Reference** – Details about all available Application Auto Scaling actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
    - Use DeleteScalingPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteScheduledAction with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterScalableTarget with a CLI
    - Use DescribeScalableTargets with a CLI
    - Use DescribeScalingActivities with a CLI
    - Use DescribeScalingPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeScheduledActions with a CLI
    - Use PutScalingPolicy with a CLI
    - Use PutScheduledAction with a CLI
    - Use RegisterScalableTarget with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Application Auto Scaling with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
  - Use DeleteScalingPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteScheduledAction with a CLI
  - Use DeregisterScalableTarget with a CLI
  - Use DescribeScalableTargets with a CLI
  - Use DescribeScalingActivities with a CLI
  - Use DescribeScalingPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeScheduledActions with a CLI
  - Use PutScalingPolicy with a CLI
  - Use PutScheduledAction with a CLI
  - Use RegisterScalableTarget with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Application Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Application Auto Scaling actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Application Auto Scaling API Reference.

Examples

- Use DeleteScalingPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteScheduledAction with a CLI
- Use DeregisterScalableTarget with a CLI
- Use DescribeScalableTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeScalingActivities with a CLI
- Use DescribeScalingPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledActions with a CLI
- Use PutScalingPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutScheduledAction with a CLI
- Use RegisterScalableTarget with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `DeleteScalingPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteScalingPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a scaling policy

This example deletes a scaling policy for the Amazon ECS service web-app running in the default cluster.

Command:

```
aws application-autoscaling delete-scaling-policy --policy-name web-app-cpu-lt-25
 --scalable-dimension ecs:service:DesiredCount --resource-id service/default/web-
app --service-namespace ecs
```

- For API details, see DeleteScalingPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.ApplicationAutoScalingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ApplicationAutoScalingExcep
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DeleteScalingPolicyRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DeregisterScalableTargetReq
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsResp
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesResp
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ScalableDimension;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ServiceNamespace;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DisableDynamoDBAutoscaling {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
               <tableId> <policyName>\s

            Where:
               tableId - The table Id value (for example, table/Music).\s
               policyName - The name of the policy (for example, $Music5-scaling-
policy).

            """;
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        ApplicationAutoScalingClient appAutoScalingClient =
 ApplicationAutoScalingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        ServiceNamespace ns = ServiceNamespace.DYNAMODB;
        ScalableDimension tableWCUs =
 ScalableDimension.DYNAMODB_TABLE_WRITE_CAPACITY_UNITS;
        String tableId = args[0];
        String policyName = args[1];

        deletePolicy(appAutoScalingClient, policyName, tableWCUs, ns, tableId);
        verifyScalingPolicies(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
        deregisterScalableTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
        verifyTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
    }
```

```
   public static void deletePolicy(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String policyName, ScalableDimension tableWCUs,
ServiceNamespace ns, String tableId) {
       try {
           DeleteScalingPolicyRequest delSPRequest =
DeleteScalingPolicyRequest.builder()
               .policyName(policyName)
               .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
               .serviceNamespace(ns)
               .resourceId(tableId)
               .build();

           appAutoScalingClient.deleteScalingPolicy(delSPRequest);
           System.out.println(policyName +" was deleted successfully.");

       } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       }
   }

   // Verify that the scaling policy was deleted
   public static void verifyScalingPolicies(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs) {
       DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest dscRequest =
DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest.builder()
           .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
           .serviceNamespace(ns)
           .resourceId(tableId)
           .build();

       DescribeScalingPoliciesResponse response =
appAutoScalingClient.describeScalingPolicies(dscRequest);
       System.out.println("DescribeScalableTargets result: ");
       System.out.println(response);
   }

   public static void deregisterScalableTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs) {
       try {
           DeregisterScalableTargetRequest targetRequest =
DeregisterScalableTargetRequest.builder()
               .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
```

```
                .serviceNamespace(ns)
                .resourceId(tableId)
                .build();

            appAutoScalingClient.deregisterScalableTarget(targetRequest);
            System.out.println("The scalable target was deregistered.");

        } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void verifyTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
 appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
 tableWCUs) {
        DescribeScalableTargetsRequest dscRequest =
 DescribeScalableTargetsRequest.builder()
            .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
            .serviceNamespace(ns)
            .resourceIds(tableId)
            .build();

        DescribeScalableTargetsResponse response =
 appAutoScalingClient.describeScalableTargets(dscRequest);
        System.out.println("DescribeScalableTargets result: ");
        System.out.println(response);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteScalingPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified scaling policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.

```
Remove-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream -PolicyName "default-scale-
out" -ResourceId fleet/Test -ScalableDimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
```

- For API details, see DeleteScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified scaling policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.

```
Remove-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream -PolicyName "default-scale-
out" -ResourceId fleet/Test -ScalableDimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
```

- For API details, see DeleteScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteScheduledAction` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteScheduledAction`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a scheduled action

The follwing `delete-scheduled-action` example deletes the specified scheduled action from the specified Amazon AppStream 2.0 fleet:

```
aws application-autoscaling delete-scheduled-action \
    --service-namespace appstream \
    --scalable-dimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity \
    --resource-id fleet/sample-fleet \
    --scheduled-action-name my-recurring-action
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Scheduled Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified scheduled action for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.

```
Remove-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ScheduledActionName
 WeekDaysFleetScaling -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-AASScheduledAction (DeleteScheduledAction)" on
 target "WeekDaysFleetScaling".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified scheduled action for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.

```
Remove-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ScheduledActionName
 WeekDaysFleetScaling -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-AASScheduledAction (DeleteScheduledAction)" on
 target "WeekDaysFleetScaling".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterScalableTarget` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterScalableTarget`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister a scalable target

This example deregisters a scalable target for an Amazon ECS service called web-app that is running in the default cluster.

Command:

```
aws application-autoscaling deregister-scalable-target --service-namespace ecs --
scalable-dimension ecs:service:DesiredCount --resource-id service/default/web-app
```

This example deregisters a scalable target for a custom resource. The custom-resource-id.txt file contains a string that identifies the Resource ID, which, for a custom resource, is the path to the custom resource through your Amazon API Gateway endpoint.

Command:

```
aws application-autoscaling deregister-scalable-target --
service-namespace custom-resource --scalable-dimension custom-
resource:ResourceType:Property --resource-id file://~/custom-resource-id.txt
```

Contents of custom-resource-id.txt file:

```
https://example.execute-api.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/prod/
scalableTargetDimensions/1-23456789
```

- For API details, see DeregisterScalableTarget in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deregisters an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.Deregistering a scalable target deletes the scaling policies that are associated with it.

```
Remove-AASScalableTarget -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-AASScalableTarget (DeregisterScalableTarget)" on
 target "fleet/MyFleet".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeregisterScalableTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deregisters an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.Deregistering a scalable target deletes the scaling policies that are associated with it.

```
Remove-AASScalableTarget -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-AASScalableTarget (DeregisterScalableTarget)" on
 target "fleet/MyFleet".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeregisterScalableTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeScalableTargets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScalableTargets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe scalable targets

The following `describe-scalable-targets` example describes the scalable targets for the `ecs` service namespace.

```
aws application-autoscaling describe-scalable-targets \
    --service-namespace ecs
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalableTargets": [
        {
            "ServiceNamespace": "ecs",
            "ScalableDimension": "ecs:service:DesiredCount",
            "ResourceId": "service/default/web-app",
            "MinCapacity": 1,
            "MaxCapacity": 10,
            "RoleARN": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
aws-service-role/ecs.application-autoscaling.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForApplicationAutoScaling_ECSService",
            "CreationTime": 1462558906.199,
            "SuspendedState": {
                "DynamicScalingOutSuspended": false,
                "ScheduledScalingSuspended": false,
                "DynamicScalingInSuspended": false
            },
            "ScalableTargetARN": "arn:aws:application-autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalable-target/1234abcd56ab78cd901ef1234567890ab123"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS services that you can use with Application Auto Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeScalableTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example will provide information about the Application Autoscaling Scalable targets in the specified namespace.

```
Get-AASScalableTarget -ServiceNamespace "AppStream"
```

Output:

```
CreationTime      : 11/7/2019 2:30:03 AM
MaxCapacity       : 5
MinCapacity       : 1
ResourceId        : fleet/Test
RoleARN           : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/aws-
service-role/appstream.application-autoscaling.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForApplicationAutoScaling_AppStreamFleet
ScalableDimension : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace  : appstream
SuspendedState    : Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.SuspendedState
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalableTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example will provide information about the Application Autoscaling Scalable targets in the specified namespace.

```
Get-AASScalableTarget -ServiceNamespace "AppStream"
```

Output:

```
CreationTime      : 11/7/2019 2:30:03 AM
MaxCapacity       : 5
MinCapacity       : 1
ResourceId        : fleet/Test
RoleARN           : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/aws-
service-role/appstream.application-autoscaling.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForApplicationAutoScaling_AppStreamFleet
ScalableDimension : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace  : appstream
SuspendedState    : Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.SuspendedState
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalableTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeScalingActivities` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe scaling activities for the specified Amazon ECS service

The following `describe-scaling-activities` example describes the scaling activities for an Amazon ECS service called `web-app` that is running in the `default` cluster. The output shows a scaling activity initiated by a scaling policy.

```
aws application-autoscaling describe-scaling-activities \
    --service-namespace ecs \
    --resource-id service/default/web-app
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalingActivities": [
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "ecs:service:DesiredCount",
            "Description": "Setting desired count to 1.",
            "ResourceId": "service/default/web-app",
            "ActivityId": "e6c5f7d1-dbbb-4a3f-89b2-51f33e766399",
            "StartTime": 1462575838.171,
            "ServiceNamespace": "ecs",
            "EndTime": 1462575872.111,
            "Cause": "monitor alarm web-app-cpu-lt-25 in state ALARM triggered
 policy web-app-cpu-lt-25",
            "StatusMessage": "Successfully set desired count to 1. Change
 successfully fulfilled by ecs.",
            "StatusCode": "Successful"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scaling activities for Application Auto Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe scaling activities for the specified DynamoDB table

The following `describe-scaling-activities` example describes the scaling activities for a DynamoDB table called `TestTable`. The output shows scaling activities initiated by two different scheduled actions.

```
aws application-autoscaling describe-scaling-activities \
    --service-namespace dynamodb \
    --resource-id table/TestTable
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalingActivities": [
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits",
            "Description": "Setting write capacity units to 10.",
            "ResourceId": "table/my-table",
            "ActivityId": "4d1308c0-bbcf-4514-a673-b0220ae38547",
            "StartTime": 1561574415.086,
            "ServiceNamespace": "dynamodb",
            "EndTime": 1561574449.51,
            "Cause": "maximum capacity was set to 10",
            "StatusMessage": "Successfully set write capacity units to 10. Change
 successfully fulfilled by dynamodb.",
            "StatusCode": "Successful"
        },
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits",
            "Description": "Setting min capacity to 5 and max capacity to 10",
            "ResourceId": "table/my-table",
            "ActivityId": "f2b7847b-721d-4e01-8ef0-0c8d3bacc1c7",
            "StartTime": 1561574414.644,
            "ServiceNamespace": "dynamodb",
            "Cause": "scheduled action name my-second-scheduled-action was
 triggered",
            "StatusMessage": "Successfully set min capacity to 5 and max capacity
 to 10",
            "StatusCode": "Successful"
        },
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits",
            "Description": "Setting write capacity units to 15.",
            "ResourceId": "table/my-table",
            "ActivityId": "d8ea4de6-9eaa-499f-b466-2cc5e681ba8b",
```

```
            "StartTime": 1561574108.904,
            "ServiceNamespace": "dynamodb",
            "EndTime": 1561574140.255,
            "Cause": "minimum capacity was set to 15",
            "StatusMessage": "Successfully set write capacity units to 15. Change
 successfully fulfilled by dynamodb.",
            "StatusCode": "Successful"
        },
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits",
            "Description": "Setting min capacity to 15 and max capacity to 20",
            "ResourceId": "table/my-table",
            "ActivityId": "3250fd06-6940-4e8e-bb1f-d494db7554d2",
            "StartTime": 1561574108.512,
            "ServiceNamespace": "dynamodb",
            "Cause": "scheduled action name my-first-scheduled-action was
 triggered",
            "StatusMessage": "Successfully set min capacity to 15 and max
 capacity to 20",
            "StatusCode": "Successful"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scaling activities for Application Auto Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Provides descriptive information about the scaling activities in the specified namespace from the previous six weeks.

```
Get-AASScalingActivity -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
ActivityId        : 2827409f-b639-4cdb-a957-8055d5d07434
```

```
Cause             : monitor alarm Appstream2-MyFleet-default-scale-in-Alarm in
 state ALARM triggered policy default-scale-in
Description       : Setting desired capacity to 2.
Details           :
EndTime           : 12/14/2019 11:32:49 AM
ResourceId        : fleet/MyFleet
ScalableDimension : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace  : appstream
StartTime         : 12/14/2019 11:32:14 AM
StatusCode        : Successful
StatusMessage     : Successfully set desired capacity to 2. Change successfully
 fulfilled by appstream.
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Provides descriptive information about the scaling activities in the specified namespace from the previous six weeks.

```
Get-AASScalingActivity -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
ActivityId        : 2827409f-b639-4cdb-a957-8055d5d07434
Cause             : monitor alarm Appstream2-MyFleet-default-scale-in-Alarm in
 state ALARM triggered policy default-scale-in
Description       : Setting desired capacity to 2.
Details           :
EndTime           : 12/14/2019 11:32:49 AM
ResourceId        : fleet/MyFleet
ScalableDimension : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace  : appstream
StartTime         : 12/14/2019 11:32:14 AM
StatusCode        : Successful
StatusMessage     : Successfully set desired capacity to 2. Change successfully
 fulfilled by appstream.
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeScalingPolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScalingPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe scaling policies

This example command describes the scaling policies for the ecs service namespace.

Command:

```
aws application-autoscaling describe-scaling-policies --service-namespace ecs
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalingPolicies": [
        {
            "PolicyName": "web-app-cpu-gt-75",
            "ScalableDimension": "ecs:service:DesiredCount",
            "ResourceId": "service/default/web-app",
            "CreationTime": 1462561899.23,
            "StepScalingPolicyConfiguration": {
                "Cooldown": 60,
                "StepAdjustments": [
                    {
                        "ScalingAdjustment": 200,
                        "MetricIntervalLowerBound": 0.0
                    }
                ],
                "AdjustmentType": "PercentChangeInCapacity"
            },
            "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678910:scalingPolicy:6d8972f3-efc8-437c-92d1-6270f29a66e7:resource/
ecs/service/default/web-app:policyName/web-app-cpu-gt-75",
            "PolicyType": "StepScaling",
            "Alarms": [
                {
                    "AlarmName": "web-app-cpu-gt-75",
                    "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:012345678910:alarm:web-app-cpu-gt-75"
```

```
                }
            ],
            "ServiceNamespace": "ecs"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "web-app-cpu-lt-25",
            "ScalableDimension": "ecs:service:DesiredCount",
            "ResourceId": "service/default/web-app",
            "CreationTime": 1462562575.099,
            "StepScalingPolicyConfiguration": {
                "Cooldown": 1,
                "StepAdjustments": [
                    {
                        "ScalingAdjustment": -50,
                        "MetricIntervalUpperBound": 0.0
                    }
                ],
                "AdjustmentType": "PercentChangeInCapacity"
            },
            "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678910:scalingPolicy:6d8972f3-efc8-437c-92d1-6270f29a66e7:resource/
ecs/service/default/web-app:policyName/web-app-cpu-lt-25",
            "PolicyType": "StepScaling",
            "Alarms": [
                {
                    "AlarmName": "web-app-cpu-lt-25",
                    "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:012345678910:alarm:web-app-cpu-lt-25"
                }
            ],
            "ServiceNamespace": "ecs"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet describe the Application Auto Scaling scaling policies for the specified service namespace.

```
Get-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
Alarms                                  : {Appstream2-LabFleet-default-scale-
out-Alarm}
CreationTime                            : 9/3/2019 2:48:15 AM
PolicyARN                               : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:5659b069-b5cd-4af1-9f7f-3e956d36233e:resource/
appstream/fleet/LabFleet:
                                          policyName/default-scale-out
PolicyName                              : default-scale-out
PolicyType                              : StepScaling
ResourceId                              : fleet/LabFleet
ScalableDimension                       : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace                        : appstream
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration          :
 Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.StepScalingPolicyConfiguration
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration :

Alarms                                  : {Appstream2-LabFleet-default-scale-in-
Alarm}
CreationTime                            : 9/3/2019 2:48:15 AM
PolicyARN                               : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:5659b069-b5cd-4af1-9f7f-3e956d36233e:resource/
appstream/fleet/LabFleet:
                                          policyName/default-scale-in
PolicyName                              : default-scale-in
PolicyType                              : StepScaling
ResourceId                              : fleet/LabFleet
ScalableDimension                       : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace                        : appstream
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration          :
 Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.StepScalingPolicyConfiguration
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration :
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet describe the Application Auto Scaling scaling policies for the specified service namespace.

```
Get-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
Alarms                                  : {Appstream2-LabFleet-default-scale-
out-Alarm}
CreationTime                            : 9/3/2019 2:48:15 AM
PolicyARN                               : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:5659b069-b5cd-4af1-9f7f-3e956d36233e:resource/
appstream/fleet/LabFleet:
                                          policyName/default-scale-out
PolicyName                              : default-scale-out
PolicyType                              : StepScaling
ResourceId                              : fleet/LabFleet
ScalableDimension                       : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace                        : appstream
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration          :
 Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.StepScalingPolicyConfiguration
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration :

Alarms                                  : {Appstream2-LabFleet-default-scale-in-
Alarm}
CreationTime                            : 9/3/2019 2:48:15 AM
PolicyARN                               : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:5659b069-b5cd-4af1-9f7f-3e956d36233e:resource/
appstream/fleet/LabFleet:
                                          policyName/default-scale-in
PolicyName                              : default-scale-in
PolicyType                              : StepScaling
ResourceId                              : fleet/LabFleet
ScalableDimension                       : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace                        : appstream
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration          :
 Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.StepScalingPolicyConfiguration
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration :
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_policies(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let response = client
        .describe_scaling_policies()
        .service_namespace(ServiceNamespace::Ec2)
        .send()
        .await?;
    println!("Auto Scaling Policies:");
    for policy in response.scaling_policies() {
        println!("{:?}\n", policy);
    }
    println!("Next token: {:?}", response.next_token());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeScheduledActions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScheduledActions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe scheduled actions

The following `describe-scheduled-actions` example displays details for the scheduled actions for the specified service namespace:

```
aws application-autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
```

```
    --service-namespace dynamodb
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledActions": [
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits",
            "Schedule": "at(2019-05-20T18:35:00)",
            "ResourceId": "table/my-table",
            "CreationTime": 1561571888.361,
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledAction:2d36aa3b-cdf9-4565-
b290-81db519b227d:resource/dynamodb/table/my-table:scheduledActionName/my-first-
scheduled-action",
            "ScalableTargetAction": {
                "MinCapacity": 15,
                "MaxCapacity": 20
            },
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-first-scheduled-action",
            "ServiceNamespace": "dynamodb"
        },
        {
            "ScalableDimension": "dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits",
            "Schedule": "at(2019-05-20T18:40:00)",
            "ResourceId": "table/my-table",
            "CreationTime": 1561571946.021,
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledAction:2d36aa3b-cdf9-4565-
b290-81db519b227d:resource/dynamodb/table/my-table:scheduledActionName/my-second-
scheduled-action",
            "ScalableTargetAction": {
                "MinCapacity": 5,
                "MaxCapacity": 10
            },
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-second-scheduled-action",
            "ServiceNamespace": "dynamodb"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scheduled Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the actions scheduled for your Auto Scaling group that haven't run or that have not reached their end time.

```
Get-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 12/22/2019 9:25:52 AM
EndTime              : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceId           : fleet/MyFleet
ScalableDimension    : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ScalableTargetAction : Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.ScalableTargetAction
Schedule             : cron(0 0 8 ? * MON-FRI *)
ScheduledActionARN   : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scheduledAction:4897ca24-3caa-4bf1-8484-851a089b243c:resource/
appstream/fleet/MyFleet:scheduledActionName
                       /WeekDaysFleetScaling
ScheduledActionName  : WeekDaysFleetScaling
ServiceNamespace     : appstream
StartTime            : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the actions scheduled for your Auto Scaling group that haven't run or that have not reached their end time.

```
Get-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 12/22/2019 9:25:52 AM
EndTime              : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceId           : fleet/MyFleet
ScalableDimension    : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ScalableTargetAction : Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.ScalableTargetAction
Schedule             : cron(0 0 8 ? * MON-FRI *)
```

```
ScheduledActionARN   : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scheduledAction:4897ca24-3caa-4bf1-8484-851a089b243c:resource/
appstream/fleet/MyFleet:scheduledActionName
                       /WeekDaysFleetScaling
ScheduledActionName  : WeekDaysFleetScaling
ServiceNamespace     : appstream
StartTime            : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutScalingPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutScalingPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To apply a target tracking scaling policy with a predefined metric specification

The following `put-scaling-policy` example applies a target tracking scaling policy with a predefined metric specification to an Amazon ECS service called web-app in the default cluster. The policy keeps the average CPU utilization of the service at 75 percent, with scale-out and scale-in cooldown periods of 60 seconds. The output contains the ARNs and names of the two CloudWatch alarms created on your behalf.

```
aws application-autoscaling put-scaling-policy --service-namespace ecs \
--scalable-dimension ecs:service:DesiredCount \
--resource-id service/default/web-app \
--policy-name cpu75-target-tracking-scaling-policy --policy-
type TargetTrackingScaling \
--target-tracking-scaling-policy-configuration file://config.json
```

This example assumes that you have a config.json file in the current directory with the following contents:

```
{
     "TargetValue": 75.0,
     "PredefinedMetricSpecification": {
```

```
            "PredefinedMetricType": "ECSServiceAverageCPUUtilization"
        },
        "ScaleOutCooldown": 60,
        "ScaleInCooldown": 60
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678910:scalingPolicy:6d8972f3-efc8-437c-92d1-6270f29a66e7:resource/
ecs/service/default/web-app:policyName/cpu75-target-tracking-scaling-policy",
    "Alarms": [
        {
            "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:012345678910:alarm:TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-AlarmHigh-
d4f0770c-b46e-434a-a60f-3b36d653feca",
            "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-AlarmHigh-
d4f0770c-b46e-434a-a60f-3b36d653feca"
        },
        {
            "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:012345678910:alarm:TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-
AlarmLow-1b437334-d19b-4a63-a812-6c67aaf2910d",
            "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-
AlarmLow-1b437334-d19b-4a63-a812-6c67aaf2910d"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To apply a target tracking scaling policy with a customized metric specification

The following `put-scaling-policy` example applies a target tracking scaling policy with a customized metric specification to an Amazon ECS service called web-app in the default cluster. The policy keeps the average utilization of the service at 75 percent, with scale-out and scale-in cooldown periods of 60 seconds. The output contains the ARNs and names of the two CloudWatch alarms created on your behalf.

```
aws application-autoscaling put-scaling-policy --service-namespace ecs \
--scalable-dimension ecs:service:DesiredCount \
--resource-id service/default/web-app \
```

```
--policy-name cms75-target-tracking-scaling-policy
--policy-type TargetTrackingScaling \
--target-tracking-scaling-policy-configuration file://config.json
```

This example assumes that you have a config.json file in the current directory with the following contents:

```
{
    "TargetValue":75.0,
    "CustomizedMetricSpecification":{
        "MetricName":"MyUtilizationMetric",
        "Namespace":"MyNamespace",
        "Dimensions": [
            {
                "Name":"MyOptionalMetricDimensionName",
                "Value":"MyOptionalMetricDimensionValue"
            }
        ],
        "Statistic":"Average",
        "Unit":"Percent"
    },
    "ScaleOutCooldown": 60,
    "ScaleInCooldown": 60
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-west-2:012345678910:scalingPolicy:
 8784a896-b2ba-47a1-b08c-27301cc499a1:resource/ecs/service/default/web-
app:policyName/cms75-target-tracking-scaling-policy",
    "Alarms": [
        {
            "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:012345678910:alarm:TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-
AlarmHigh-9bc77b56-0571-4276-ba0f-d4178882e0a0",
            "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-
AlarmHigh-9bc77b56-0571-4276-ba0f-d4178882e0a0"
        },
        {
            "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:012345678910:alarm:TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-
AlarmLow-9b6ad934-6d37-438e-9e05-02836ddcbdc4",
```

```
            "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-
AlarmLow-9b6ad934-6d37-438e-9e05-02836ddcbdc4"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To apply a target tracking scaling policy for scale out only

The following `put-scaling-policy` example applies a target tracking scaling policy to an Amazon ECS service called `web-app` in the default cluster. The policy is used to scale out the ECS service when the `RequestCountPerTarget` metric from the Application Load Balancer exceeds the threshold. The output contains the ARN and name of the CloudWatch alarm created on your behalf.

```
aws application-autoscaling put-scaling-policy \
    --service-namespace ecs \
    --scalable-dimension ecs:service:DesiredCount \
    --resource-id service/default/web-app \
    --policy-name alb-scale-out-target-tracking-scaling-policy \
    --policy-type TargetTrackingScaling \
    --target-tracking-scaling-policy-configuration file://config.json
```

Contents of `config.json`:

```
{
     "TargetValue": 1000.0,
     "PredefinedMetricSpecification": {
         "PredefinedMetricType": "ALBRequestCountPerTarget",
         "ResourceLabel": "app/EC2Co-EcsEl-1TKLTMITMM0EO/f37c06a68c1748aa/
targetgroup/EC2Co-Defau-LDNM7Q3ZH1ZN/6d4ea56ca2d6a18d"
     },
     "ScaleOutCooldown": 60,
    "ScaleInCooldown": 60,
    "DisableScaleIn": true
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:6d8972f3-efc8-437c-92d1-6270f29a66e7:resource/
```

```
ecs/service/default/web-app:policyName/alb-scale-out-target-tracking-scaling-
policy",
    "Alarms": [
        {
            "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-AlarmHigh-
d4f0770c-b46e-434a-a60f-3b36d653feca",
            "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:123456789012:alarm:TargetTracking-service/default/web-app-AlarmHigh-
d4f0770c-b46e-434a-a60f-3b36d653feca"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Target Tracking Scaling Policies for Application Auto Scaling in the *AWS Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet creates or updates a policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target. Each scalable target is identified by a service namespace, resource ID, and scalable dimension.

```
Set-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream -PolicyName ASFleetScaleInPolicy
 -PolicyType StepScaling  -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_AdjustmentType
 ChangeInCapacity -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_Cooldown 360
 -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_MetricAggregationType Average -
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_StepAdjustments @{ScalingAdjustment = -1;
 MetricIntervalUpperBound = 0}
```

Output:

```
Alarms    PolicyARN
------    ---------
{}        arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:4897ca24-3caa-4bf1-8484-851a089b243c:resource/
appstream/fleet/MyFleet:policyName/ASFleetScaleInPolicy
```

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates or updates a policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target. Each scalable target is identified by a service namespace, resource ID, and scalable dimension.

```
Set-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream -PolicyName ASFleetScaleInPolicy
 -PolicyType StepScaling  -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_AdjustmentType
 ChangeInCapacity -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_Cooldown 360
 -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_MetricAggregationType Average -
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_StepAdjustments @{ScalingAdjustment = -1;
 MetricIntervalUpperBound = 0}
```

Output:

```
Alarms    PolicyARN
------    ---------
{}        arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:4897ca24-3caa-4bf1-8484-851a089b243c:resource/
appstream/fleet/MyFleet:policyName/ASFleetScaleInPolicy
```

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutScheduledAction` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutScheduledAction`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a scheduled action to a DynamoDB table

This example adds a scheduled action to a DynamoDB table called TestTable to scale out on a recurring schedule. On the specified schedule (every day at 12:15pm UTC), if the current capacity is below the value specified for MinCapacity, Application Auto Scaling scales out to the value specified by MinCapacity.

Command:

```
aws application-autoscaling put-scheduled-action --service-
namespace dynamodb --scheduled-action-name my-recurring-action --
schedule "cron(15 12 * * ? *)" --resource-id table/TestTable --
scalable-dimension dynamodb:table:WriteCapacityUnits --scalable-target-
action MinCapacity=6
```

For more information, see Scheduled Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutScheduledAction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet creates or updates a scheduled action for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target. Each scalable target is identified by a service namespace, resource ID, and scalable dimension.

```
Set-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ResourceId fleet/
MyFleet -Schedule "cron(0 0 8 ? * MON-FRI *)" -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -ScheduledActionName WeekDaysFleetScaling -
ScalableTargetAction_MinCapacity 5 -ScalableTargetAction_MaxCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see PutScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates or updates a scheduled action for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target. Each scalable target is identified by a service namespace, resource ID, and scalable dimension.

```
Set-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ResourceId fleet/
MyFleet -Schedule "cron(0 0 8 ? * MON-FRI *)" -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -ScheduledActionName WeekDaysFleetScaling -
ScalableTargetAction_MinCapacity 5 -ScalableTargetAction_MaxCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see PutScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterScalableTarget` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterScalableTarget`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To register an ECS service as a scalable target

The following `register-scalable-target` example registers an Amazon ECS service with Application Auto Scaling. It also adds a tag with the key name `environment` and the value `production` to the scalable target.

```
aws application-autoscaling register-scalable-target \
    --service-namespace ecs \
    --scalable-dimension ecs:service:DesiredCount \
    --resource-id service/default/web-app \
    --min-capacity 1 --max-capacity 10 \
    --tags environment=production
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalableTargetARN": "arn:aws:application-autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalable-target/1234abcd56ab78cd901ef1234567890ab123"
}
```

For examples for other AWS services and custom resources, see the topics in AWS services that you can use with Application Auto Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To suspend scaling activities for a scalable target

The following `register-scalable-target` example suspends scaling activities for an existing scalable target.

```
aws application-autoscaling register-scalable-target \
    --service-namespace dynamodb \
    --scalable-dimension dynamodb:table:ReadCapacityUnits \
    --resource-id table/my-table \
    --suspended-
state DynamicScalingInSuspended=true,DynamicScalingOutSuspended=true,ScheduledScalingSusp
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalableTargetARN": "arn:aws:application-autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalable-target/1234abcd56ab78cd901ef1234567890ab123"
}
```

For more information, see Suspending and resuming scaling for Application Auto Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To resume scaling activities for a scalable target

The following `register-scalable-target` example resumes scaling activities for an existing scalable target.

```
aws application-autoscaling register-scalable-target \
    --service-namespace dynamodb \
    --scalable-dimension dynamodb:table:ReadCapacityUnits \
    --resource-id table/my-table \
    --suspended-
state DynamicScalingInSuspended=false,DynamicScalingOutSuspended=false,ScheduledScalingSu
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalableTargetARN": "arn:aws:application-autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalable-target/1234abcd56ab78cd901ef1234567890ab123"
}
```

For more information, see Suspending and resuming scaling for Application Auto Scaling in the *Application Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterScalableTarget in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.ApplicationAutoScalingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ApplicationAutoScalingExcep
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsResp
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesResp
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.PolicyType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.PredefinedMetricSpecificati
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.PutScalingPolicyRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.RegisterScalableTargetReque
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ScalingPolicy;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ServiceNamespace;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ScalableDimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.MetricType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.TargetTrackingScalingPolicy
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class EnableDynamoDBAutoscaling {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
            Usage:
               <tableId> <roleARN> <policyName>\s

            Where:
               tableId - The table Id value (for example, table/Music).
               roleARN - The ARN of the role that has ApplicationAutoScaling
permissions.
               policyName - The name of the policy to create.

            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("This example registers an Amazon DynamoDB table,
which is the resource to scale.");
        String tableId = args[0];
        String roleARN = args[1];
        String policyName = args[2];
        ServiceNamespace ns = ServiceNamespace.DYNAMODB;
        ScalableDimension tableWCUs =
ScalableDimension.DYNAMODB_TABLE_WRITE_CAPACITY_UNITS;
        ApplicationAutoScalingClient appAutoScalingClient =
ApplicationAutoScalingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        registerScalableTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, roleARN, ns,
tableWCUs);
        verifyTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
        configureScalingPolicy(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs,
policyName);
    }

    public static void registerScalableTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, String roleARN, ServiceNamespace ns,
ScalableDimension tableWCUs) {
        try {
            RegisterScalableTargetRequest targetRequest =
RegisterScalableTargetRequest.builder()
                .serviceNamespace(ns)
```

```
                .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
                .resourceId(tableId)
                .roleARN(roleARN)
                .minCapacity(5)
                .maxCapacity(10)
                .build();

            appAutoScalingClient.registerScalableTarget(targetRequest);
            System.out.println("You have registered " + tableId);

        } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }

    // Verify that the target was created.
    public static void verifyTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs) {
        DescribeScalableTargetsRequest dscRequest =
DescribeScalableTargetsRequest.builder()
            .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
            .serviceNamespace(ns)
            .resourceIds(tableId)
            .build();

        DescribeScalableTargetsResponse response =
appAutoScalingClient.describeScalableTargets(dscRequest);
        System.out.println("DescribeScalableTargets result: ");
        System.out.println(response);
    }

    // Configure a scaling policy.
    public static void configureScalingPolicy(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs, String policyName) {
        // Check if the policy exists before creating a new one.
        DescribeScalingPoliciesResponse describeScalingPoliciesResponse =
appAutoScalingClient.describeScalingPolicies(DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest.builder()
            .serviceNamespace(ns)
            .resourceId(tableId)
            .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
            .build());
```

```
        if (!describeScalingPoliciesResponse.scalingPolicies().isEmpty()) {
            // If policies exist, consider updating an existing policy instead of
creating a new one.
            System.out.println("Policy already exists. Consider updating it
instead.");
            List<ScalingPolicy> polList =
describeScalingPoliciesResponse.scalingPolicies();
            for (ScalingPolicy pol : polList) {
                System.out.println("Policy name:" +pol.policyName());
            }
        } else {
            // If no policies exist, proceed with creating a new policy.
            PredefinedMetricSpecification specification =
PredefinedMetricSpecification.builder()

.predefinedMetricType(MetricType.DYNAMO_DB_WRITE_CAPACITY_UTILIZATION)
                .build();

            TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration policyConfiguration =
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration.builder()
                .predefinedMetricSpecification(specification)
                .targetValue(50.0)
                .scaleInCooldown(60)
                .scaleOutCooldown(60)
                .build();

            PutScalingPolicyRequest putScalingPolicyRequest =
PutScalingPolicyRequest.builder()
                .targetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration(policyConfiguration)
                .serviceNamespace(ns)
                .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
                .resourceId(tableId)
                .policyName(policyName)
                .policyType(PolicyType.TARGET_TRACKING_SCALING)
                .build();

            try {
                appAutoScalingClient.putScalingPolicy(putScalingPolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("You have successfully created a scaling
policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target");
            } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
                System.err.println("Error: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            }
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RegisterScalableTarget in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet registers or updates a scalable target. A scalable target is a resource that Application Auto Scaling can scale out and scale in.

```
Add-AASScalableTarget -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -
ScalableDimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -MinCapacity 2 -MaxCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see RegisterScalableTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet registers or updates a scalable target. A scalable target is a resource that Application Auto Scaling can scale out and scale in.

```
Add-AASScalableTarget -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -
ScalableDimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -MinCapacity 2 -MaxCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see RegisterScalableTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Route 53 Application Recovery Controller with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Application Recovery Controller Developer Guide** – More information about Application Recovery Controller.
- **Application Recovery Controller API Reference** – Details about all available Application Recovery Controller actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs
    - Use GetRoutingControlState with an AWS SDK
    - Use UpdateRoutingControlState with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Route 53 Application Recovery Controller with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs
  - Use GetRoutingControlState with an AWS SDK
  - Use UpdateRoutingControlState with an AWS SDK

Actions for Application Recovery Controller using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Application Recovery Controller actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Route 53 Application Recovery Controller API Reference.

Examples

- Use GetRoutingControlState with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateRoutingControlState with an AWS SDK

Use `GetRoutingControlState` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetRoutingControlState`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static GetRoutingControlStateResponse
 getRoutingControlState(List<ClusterEndpoint> clusterEndpoints,
            String routingControlArn) {
        // As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to
 get or
        // set routing control states.
        // For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/dg/route53-arc-best-
practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
        Collections.shuffle(clusterEndpoints);
        for (ClusterEndpoint clusterEndpoint : clusterEndpoints) {
            try {
                System.out.println(clusterEndpoint);
                Route53RecoveryClusterClient client =
 Route53RecoveryClusterClient.builder()
                        .endpointOverride(URI.create(clusterEndpoint.endpoint()))
                        .region(Region.of(clusterEndpoint.region())).build();
                return client.getRoutingControlState(
                        GetRoutingControlStateRequest.builder()
                                .routingControlArn(routingControlArn).build());
            } catch (Exception exception) {
                System.out.println(exception);
            }
```

```
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint):
    """
    Creates a Boto3 Route 53 Application Recovery Controller client for the
 specified
    cluster endpoint URL and AWS Region.

    :param cluster_endpoint: The cluster endpoint URL and Region.
    :return: The Boto3 client.
    """
    return boto3.client(
        "route53-recovery-cluster",
        endpoint_url=cluster_endpoint["Endpoint"],
        region_name=cluster_endpoint["Region"],
    )



def get_routing_control_state(routing_control_arn, cluster_endpoints):
    """
    Gets the state of a routing control. Cluster endpoints are tried in
    sequence until the first successful response is received.
```

```
    :param routing_control_arn: The ARN of the routing control to look up.
    :param cluster_endpoints: The list of cluster endpoints to query.
    :return: The routing control state response.
    """

    # As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to get
 or set routing control states.
    # For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/
dg/route53-arc-best-practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
    random.shuffle(cluster_endpoints)
    for cluster_endpoint in cluster_endpoints:
        try:
            recovery_client = create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint)
            response = recovery_client.get_routing_control_state(
                RoutingControlArn=routing_control_arn
            )
            return response
        except Exception as error:
            print(error)
            raise error
```

- For API details, see GetRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateRoutingControlState` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateRoutingControlState`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static UpdateRoutingControlStateResponse
 updateRoutingControlState(List<ClusterEndpoint> clusterEndpoints,
```

```
            String routingControlArn,
            String routingControlState) {
        // As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to
 get or
        // set routing control states.
        // For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/dg/route53-arc-best-
practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
        Collections.shuffle(clusterEndpoints);
        for (ClusterEndpoint clusterEndpoint : clusterEndpoints) {
            try {
                System.out.println(clusterEndpoint);
                Route53RecoveryClusterClient client =
 Route53RecoveryClusterClient.builder()
                        .endpointOverride(URI.create(clusterEndpoint.endpoint()))
                        .region(Region.of(clusterEndpoint.region()))
                        .build();
                return client.updateRoutingControlState(
                        UpdateRoutingControlStateRequest.builder()

 .routingControlArn(routingControlArn).routingControlState(routingControlState).build());
            } catch (Exception exception) {
                System.out.println(exception);
            }
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
```

```
def create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint):
    """
    Creates a Boto3 Route 53 Application Recovery Controller client for the
 specified
    cluster endpoint URL and AWS Region.

    :param cluster_endpoint: The cluster endpoint URL and Region.
    :return: The Boto3 client.
    """
    return boto3.client(
        "route53-recovery-cluster",
        endpoint_url=cluster_endpoint["Endpoint"],
        region_name=cluster_endpoint["Region"],
    )



def update_routing_control_state(
    routing_control_arn, cluster_endpoints, routing_control_state
):
    """
    Updates the state of a routing control. Cluster endpoints are tried in
    sequence until the first successful response is received.

    :param routing_control_arn: The ARN of the routing control to update the
 state for.
    :param cluster_endpoints: The list of cluster endpoints to try.
    :param routing_control_state: The new routing control state.
    :return: The routing control update response.
    """

    # As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to get
 or set routing control states.
    # For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/
dg/route53-arc-best-practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
    random.shuffle(cluster_endpoints)
    for cluster_endpoint in cluster_endpoints:
        try:
            recovery_client = create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint)
            response = recovery_client.update_routing_control_state(
                RoutingControlArn=routing_control_arn,
                RoutingControlState=routing_control_state,
```

```
            )
            return response
        except Exception as error:
            print(error)
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Audit Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Audit Manager with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Audit Manager User Guide** – More information about Audit Manager.
- **Audit Manager API Reference** – Details about all available Audit Manager actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Scenarios for Audit Manager using AWS SDKs
  - Create an Audit Manager custom framework from an AWS Config conformance pack using an AWS SDK
  - Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains Security Hub controls using an AWS SDK
  - Create an Audit Manager assessment report that contains one day of evidence using an AWS SDK

Scenarios for Audit Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Audit Manager with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Audit Manager or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Audit Manager custom framework from an AWS Config conformance pack using an AWS SDK
- Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains Security Hub controls using an AWS SDK
- Create an Audit Manager assessment report that contains one day of evidence using an AWS SDK

Create an Audit Manager custom framework from an AWS Config conformance pack using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of AWS Config conformance packs.
- Create an Audit Manager custom control for each managed rule in a conformance pack.
- Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains the controls.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class ConformancePack:
    def __init__(self, config_client, auditmanager_client):
        self.config_client = config_client
        self.auditmanager_client = auditmanager_client

    def get_conformance_pack(self):
        """
        Return a selected conformance pack from the list of conformance packs.

        :return: selected conformance pack
        """
        try:
            conformance_packs = self.config_client.describe_conformance_packs()
            print(
                "Number of conformance packs fetched: ",
                len(conformance_packs.get("ConformancePackDetails")),
            )
            print("Fetched the following conformance packs: ")
            all_cpack_names = {
                cp["ConformancePackName"]
                for cp in conformance_packs.get("ConformancePackDetails")
            }
            for pack in all_cpack_names:
                print(f"\t{pack}")
            cpack_name = input(
                "Provide ConformancePackName that you want to create a custom "
                "framework for: "
            )
            if cpack_name not in all_cpack_names:
                print(f"{cpack_name} is not in the list of conformance packs!")
                print(
                    "Provide a conformance pack name from the available list of "
                    "conformance packs."
                )
                raise Exception("Invalid conformance pack")
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't select conformance pack.")
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return cpack_name

    def create_custom_controls(self, cpack_name):
        """
        Create custom controls for all managed AWS Config rules in a conformance
pack.

        :param cpack_name: The name of the conformance pack to create controls
for.
        :return: The list of custom control IDs.
        """
        try:
            rules_in_pack =
self.config_client.describe_conformance_pack_compliance(
                ConformancePackName=cpack_name
            )
            print(
                "Number of rules in the conformance pack: ",
                len(rules_in_pack.get("ConformancePackRuleComplianceList")),
            )
            for rule in rules_in_pack.get("ConformancePackRuleComplianceList"):
                print(f"\t{rule.get('ConfigRuleName')}")
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                "Creating a custom control for each rule and a custom framework "
                "consisting of these rules in Audit Manager."
            )
            am_controls = []
            for rule in rules_in_pack.get("ConformancePackRuleComplianceList"):
                config_rule = self.config_client.describe_config_rules(
                    ConfigRuleNames=[rule.get("ConfigRuleName")]
                )
                source_id = (
                    config_rule.get("ConfigRules")[0]
                    .get("Source", {})
                    .get("SourceIdentifier")
                )
                custom_control = self.auditmanager_client.create_control(
                    name="Config-" + rule.get("ConfigRuleName"),
                    controlMappingSources=[
                        {
                            "sourceName": "ConfigRule",
```

```
                            "sourceSetUpOption": "System_Controls_Mapping",
                            "sourceType": "AWS_Config",
                            "sourceKeyword": {
                                "keywordInputType": "SELECT_FROM_LIST",
                                "keywordValue": source_id,
                            },
                        }
                    ],
                ).get("control", {})
                am_controls.append({"id": custom_control.get("id")})
            print("Successfully created a control for each config rule.")
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Failed to create custom controls.")
            raise
        else:
            return am_controls

    def create_custom_framework(self, cpack_name, am_control_ids):
        """
        Create a custom Audit Manager framework from a selected AWS Config
conformance
        pack.

        :param cpack_name: The name of the conformance pack to create a framework
from.
        :param am_control_ids: The IDs of the custom controls created from the
                               conformance pack.
        """
        try:
            print("Creating custom framework...")
            custom_framework =
self.auditmanager_client.create_assessment_framework(
                name="Config-Conformance-pack-" + cpack_name,
                controlSets=[{"name": cpack_name, "controls": am_control_ids}],
            )
            print(
                f"Successfully created the custom framework: ",
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('name')}: ",
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('id')}",
            )
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Failed to create custom framework.")
```

```
            raise


def run_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Audit Manager custom framework demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "You can use this sample to select a conformance pack from AWS Config and
 "
        "use AWS Audit Manager to create a custom control for all the managed "
        "rules under the conformance pack. A custom framework is also created "
        "with these controls."
    )
    print("-" * 88)
    conf_pack = ConformancePack(boto3.client("config"),
 boto3.client("auditmanager"))
    cpack_name = conf_pack.get_conformance_pack()
    am_controls = conf_pack.create_custom_controls(cpack_name)
    conf_pack.create_custom_framework(cpack_name, am_controls)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    run_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAssessmentFramework
  - CreateControl

Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains Security Hub controls using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of all standard controls that have Security Hub as their data source.
- Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains the controls.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class SecurityHub:
    def __init__(self, auditmanager_client):
        self.auditmanager_client = auditmanager_client

    def get_sechub_controls(self):
        """
        Gets the list of controls that use Security Hub as their data source.

        :return: The list of Security Hub controls.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        next_token = None
        page = 1
        sechub_control_list = []
        while True:
            print("Page [" + str(page) + "]")
            if next_token is None:
                control_list = self.auditmanager_client.list_controls(
                    controlType="Standard", maxResults=100
                )
            else:
                control_list = self.auditmanager_client.list_controls(
                    controlType="Standard", nextToken=next_token, maxResults=100
                )
```

```
            print("Total controls found:",
 len(control_list.get("controlMetadataList")))
            for control in control_list.get("controlMetadataList"):
                control_details = self.auditmanager_client.get_control(
                    controlId=control.get("id")
                ).get("control", {})
                if "AWS Security Hub" in control_details.get("controlSources"):
                    sechub_control_list.append({"id": control_details.get("id")})
            next_token = control_list.get("nextToken")
            if not next_token:
                break
            page += 1
        print("Number of Security Hub controls found: ",
 len(sechub_control_list))
        return sechub_control_list

    def create_custom_framework(self, am_controls):
        """
        Create a custom framework with a list of controls.

        :param am_controls: The list of controls to include in the framework.
        """
        try:
            print("Creating custom framework...")
            custom_framework =
 self.auditmanager_client.create_assessment_framework(
                name="All Security Hub Controls Framework",
                controlSets=[{"name": "Security-Hub", "controls": am_controls}],
            )
            print(
                f"Successfully created the custom framework: "
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('name')}: "
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('id')}"
            )
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Failed to create custom framework.")
            raise


def run_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Audit Manager Security Hub demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(" This script creates a custom framework with all Security Hub
 controls.")
    print("-" * 88)
    sechub = SecurityHub(boto3.client("auditmanager"))
    am_controls = sechub.get_sechub_controls()
    sechub.create_custom_framework(am_controls)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    run_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAssessmentFramework
  - GetControl
  - ListControls

Create an Audit Manager assessment report that contains one day of evidence using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create an Audit Manager assessment report that contains one day of evidence.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import dateutil.parser
import logging
import time
import urllib.request
import uuid
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class AuditReport:
    def __init__(self, auditmanager_client):
        self.auditmanager_client = auditmanager_client

    def get_input(self):
        print("-" * 40)
        try:
            assessment_id = input("Provide assessment id [uuid]: ").lower()
            try:
                assessment_uuid = uuid.UUID(assessment_id)
            except ValueError:
                logger.error("Assessment Id is not a valid UUID: %s",
 assessment_id)
                raise
            evidence_folder = input("Provide evidence date [yyyy-mm-dd]: ")
            try:
                evidence_date = dateutil.parser.parse(evidence_folder).date()
            except ValueError:
                logger.error("Invalid date : %s", evidence_folder)
                raise
            try:
                self.auditmanager_client.get_assessment(
                    assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid)
                )
            except ClientError:
                logger.exception("Couldn't get assessment %s.", assessment_uuid)
                raise
        except (ValueError, ClientError):
            return None, None
        else:
            return assessment_uuid, evidence_date

    def clear_staging(self, assessment_uuid, evidence_date):
        """
        Find all the evidence in the report and clear it.
        """
        next_token = None
        page = 1
        interested_folder_id_list = []
```

```
        while True:
            print(f"Page [{page}]")
            if next_token is None:
                folder_list = (
                    self.auditmanager_client.get_evidence_folders_by_assessment(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid), maxResults=1000
                    )
                )
            else:
                folder_list = (
                    self.auditmanager_client.get_evidence_folders_by_assessment(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
                        nextToken=next_token,
                        maxResults=1000,
                    )
                )
            folders = folder_list.get("evidenceFolders")
            print(f"Got {len(folders)} folders.")
            for folder in folders:
                folder_id = folder.get("id")
                if folder.get("name") == str(evidence_date):
                    interested_folder_id_list.append(folder_id)
                if folder.get("assessmentReportSelectionCount") == folder.get(
                    "totalEvidence"
                ):
                    print(
                        f"Removing folder from report selection :
{folder.get('name')} "
                        f"{folder_id} {folder.get('controlId')}"
                    )

self.auditmanager_client.disassociate_assessment_report_evidence_folder(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
evidenceFolderId=folder_id
                    )
                elif folder.get("assessmentReportSelectionCount") > 0:
                    # Get all evidence in the folder and
                    # add selected evidence in the selected_evidence_list.
                    evidence_list = (
                        self.auditmanager_client.get_evidence_by_evidence_folder(
                            assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
                            controlSetId=folder_id,
                            evidenceFolderId=folder_id,
                            maxResults=1000,
```

```
                        )
                    )
                    selected_evidence_list = []
                    for evidence in evidence_list.get("evidence"):
                        if evidence.get("assessmentReportSelection") == "Yes":
                            selected_evidence_list.append(evidence.get("id"))
                    print(
                        f"Removing evidence report selection :
{folder.get('name')} "
                        f"{len(selected_evidence_list)}"
                    )

self.auditmanager_client.batch_disassociate_assessment_report_evidence(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
                        evidenceFolderId=folder_id,
                        evidenceIds=selected_evidence_list,
                    )
            next_token = folder_list.get("nextToken")
            if not next_token:
                break
            page += 1
        return interested_folder_id_list

    def add_folder_to_staging(self, assessment_uuid, folder_id_list):
        print(f"Adding folders to report : {folder_id_list}")
        for folder in folder_id_list:
            self.auditmanager_client.associate_assessment_report_evidence_folder(
                assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid), evidenceFolderId=folder
            )

    def get_report(self, assessment_uuid):
        report = self.auditmanager_client.create_assessment_report(
            name="ReportViaScript",
            description="testing",
            assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
        )
        if self._is_report_generated(report.get("assessmentReport").get("id")):
            report_url = self.auditmanager_client.get_assessment_report_url(
                assessmentReportId=report.get("assessmentReport").get("id"),
                assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
            )
            print(report_url.get("preSignedUrl"))
            urllib.request.urlretrieve(
                report_url.get("preSignedUrl").get("link"),
```

```
                report_url.get("preSignedUrl").get("hyperlinkName"),
            )
            print(
                f"Report saved as
 {report_url.get('preSignedUrl').get('hyperlinkName')}."
            )
        else:
            print("Report generation did not finish in 15 minutes.")
            print(
                "Failed to download report. Go to the console and manually
 download "
                "the report."
            )

    def _is_report_generated(self, assessment_report_id):
        max_wait_time = 0
        while max_wait_time < 900:
            print(f"Checking status of the report {assessment_report_id}")
            report_list =
 self.auditmanager_client.list_assessment_reports(maxResults=1)
            if (
                report_list.get("assessmentReports")[0].get("id")
                == assessment_report_id
                and report_list.get("assessmentReports")[0].get("status") ==
 "COMPLETE"
            ):
                return True
            print("Sleeping for 5 seconds...")
            time.sleep(5)
            max_wait_time += 5


def run_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Audit Manager samples demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "This script creates an assessment report for an assessment with all the
 "
        "evidence collected on the provided date."
    )
    print("-" * 88)

    report = AuditReport(boto3.client("auditmanager"))
```

```
    assessment_uuid, evidence_date = report.get_input()
    if assessment_uuid is not None and evidence_date is not None:
        folder_id_list = report.clear_staging(assessment_uuid, evidence_date)
        report.add_folder_to_staging(assessment_uuid, folder_id_list)
        report.get_report(assessment_uuid)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    run_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AssociateAssessmentReportEvidenceFolder
  - BatchDisassociateAssessmentReportEvidence
  - CreateAssessmentReport
  - DisassociateAssessmentReportEvidenceFolder
  - GetAssessment
  - GetAssessmentReportUrl
  - GetEvidenceByEvidenceFolder
  - GetEvidenceFoldersByAssessment
  - ListAssessmentReports

Code examples for Aurora using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Aurora with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Aurora User Guide** – More information about Aurora.

- **Aurora API Reference** – Details about all available Aurora actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

namespace AuroraActions;

public static class HelloAurora
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the
        // Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS).
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
```

```
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection. Fetching it directly here
 for example purposes only.
        var rdsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRDS>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBClustersAsync(new
 DescribeDBClustersRequest { IncludeShared = true });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS Aurora! Let's list some clusters in
 this account:");
        if (response.DBClusters == null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tNo clusters found.");
        }
        else
        {
            foreach (var cluster in response.DBClusters)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tCluster: database: {cluster.DatabaseName} identifier:
 {cluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rds)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_aurora")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_aurora.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
```

```
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_aurora.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rds/RDSClient.h>
#include <aws/rds/model/DescribeDBClustersRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Aurora" starter application which initializes an Amazon Relational
 Database Service (Amazon RDS) client
 *  and describes the Amazon Aurora (Aurora) clusters.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_aurora'
 *
 */
int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::RDS::RDSClient rdsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::String> clusterIds;
        do {
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
                    rdsClient.DescribeDBClusters(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &cluster: outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()) {
```

```
                    clusterIds.push_back(cluster.GetDBClusterIdentifier());
                }
                marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
            } else {
                result = 1;
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());

        std::cout << clusterIds.size() << " Aurora clusters found." << std::endl;
        for (auto &clusterId: clusterIds) {
            std::cout << "  clusterId " << clusterId << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Aurora client and list up
 to 20
// DB clusters in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 auroraClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxClusters = 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v DB clusters.\n", maxClusters)
 output, err := auroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{MaxRecords: aws.Int32(maxClusters)})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list DB clusters: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(output.DBClusters) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("No DB clusters found.")
 } else {
  for _, cluster := range output.DBClusters {
   fmt.Printf("DB cluster %v has database %v.\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier,
    *cluster.DatabaseName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.paginators.DescribeDBClustersIterable;

public class DescribeDbClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeClusters(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeClusters(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        DescribeDBClustersIterable clustersIterable =
 rdsClient.describeDBClustersPaginator();
        clustersIterable.stream()
                .flatMap(r -> r.dbClusters().stream())
                .forEach(cluster -> System.out
                        .println("Database name: " + cluster.databaseName() + "
 Arn = " + cluster.dbClusterArn()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create an RDS client
rds = boto3.client("rds")

# Create a paginator for the describe_db_clusters operation
paginator = rds.get_paginator("describe_db_clusters")

# Use the paginator to get a list of DB clusters
response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
    PaginationConfig={
        "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed
        "StartingToken": None,
    }
)

# Iterate through the pages of the response
clusters_found = False
for page in response_iterator:
    if "DBClusters" in page and page["DBClusters"]:
        clusters_found = True
        print("Here are your RDS Aurora clusters:")
        for cluster in page["DBClusters"]:
            print(
                f"Cluster ID: {cluster['DBClusterIdentifier']}, Engine:
 {cluster['Engine']}"
            )

if not clusters_found:
    print("No clusters found!")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds'

# Creates an Amazon RDS client for the AWS Region
rds = Aws::RDS::Client.new

puts 'Listing clusters in this AWS account...'

# Calls the describe_db_clusters method to get information about clusters
resp = rds.describe_db_clusters(max_records: 20)

# Checks if any clusters are found and prints the appropriate message
if resp.db_clusters.empty?
  puts 'No clusters found!'
else
  # Loops through the array of cluster objects and prints the cluster identifier
  resp.db_clusters.each do |cluster|
    puts "Cluster identifier: #{cluster.db_cluster_identifier}"
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_sdk_rds::Client;

#[derive(Debug)]
struct Error(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for Error {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
impl std::error::Error for Error {}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let describe_db_clusters_output = client
        .describe_db_clusters()
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| Error(e.to_string()))?;
    println!(
        "Found {} clusters:",
        describe_db_clusters_output.db_clusters().len()
    );
    for cluster in describe_db_clusters_output.db_clusters() {
        let name = cluster.database_name().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let engine = cluster.engine().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let id = cluster.db_cluster_identifier().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let class = cluster.db_cluster_instance_class().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        println!("\tDatabase: {name}",);
```

```
        println!("\t  Engine: {engine}",);
        println!("\t      ID: {id}",);
        println!("\tInstance: {class}",);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Aurora using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Aurora
  - Learn the basics of Aurora with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Aurora using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDBCluster with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateDBClusterSnapshot with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDBCluster with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDBClusterParameters with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDBClusterSnapshots with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDBClusters with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDBEngineVersions with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Aurora using AWS SDKs
  - Create a lending library REST API

- Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

Basic examples for Aurora using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Aurora with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Aurora
- Learn the basics of Aurora with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Aurora using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateDBCluster with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateDBClusterSnapshot with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDBCluster with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBClusterParameters with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBClusterSnapshots with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBClusters with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBEngineVersions with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

namespace AuroraActions;

public static class HelloAurora
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the
        // Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS).
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection. Fetching it directly here
 for example purposes only.
        var rdsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRDS>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBClustersAsync(new
 DescribeDBClustersRequest { IncludeShared = true });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS Aurora! Let's list some clusters in
 this account:");
        if (response.DBClusters == null)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tNo clusters found.");
        }
        else
        {
            foreach (var cluster in response.DBClusters)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tCluster: database: {cluster.DatabaseName} identifier:
 {cluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rds)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_aurora")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)
```

```
# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_aurora.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_aurora.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rds/RDSClient.h>
#include <aws/rds/model/DescribeDBClustersRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
```

```
 *  A "Hello Aurora" starter application which initializes an Amazon Relational
 Database Service (Amazon RDS) client
 *  and describes the Amazon Aurora (Aurora) clusters.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_aurora'
 *
 */
int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::RDS::RDSClient rdsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::String> clusterIds;
        do {
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
                    rdsClient.DescribeDBClusters(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &cluster: outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()) {
                    clusterIds.push_back(cluster.GetDBClusterIdentifier());
                }
                marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
            } else {
                result = 1;
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());
```

```
        std::cout << clusterIds.size() << " Aurora clusters found." << std::endl;
        for (auto &clusterId: clusterIds) {
            std::cout << "  clusterId " << clusterId << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Aurora client and list up
 to 20
// DB clusters in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
```

```
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 auroraClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxClusters = 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v DB clusters.\n", maxClusters)
 output, err := auroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{MaxRecords: aws.Int32(maxClusters)})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list DB clusters: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(output.DBClusters) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("No DB clusters found.")
 } else {
  for _, cluster := range output.DBClusters {
   fmt.Printf("DB cluster %v has database %v.\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier,
    *cluster.DatabaseName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.paginators.DescribeDBClustersIterable;

public class DescribeDbClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeClusters(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeClusters(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        DescribeDBClustersIterable clustersIterable =
 rdsClient.describeDBClustersPaginator();
        clustersIterable.stream()
                .flatMap(r -> r.dbClusters().stream())
                .forEach(cluster -> System.out
                        .println("Database name: " + cluster.databaseName() + "
 Arn = " + cluster.dbClusterArn()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create an RDS client
rds = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
# Create a paginator for the describe_db_clusters operation
paginator = rds.get_paginator("describe_db_clusters")

# Use the paginator to get a list of DB clusters
response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
    PaginationConfig={
        "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed
        "StartingToken": None,
    }
)

# Iterate through the pages of the response
clusters_found = False
for page in response_iterator:
    if "DBClusters" in page and page["DBClusters"]:
        clusters_found = True
        print("Here are your RDS Aurora clusters:")
        for cluster in page["DBClusters"]:
            print(
                f"Cluster ID: {cluster['DBClusterIdentifier']}, Engine:
 {cluster['Engine']}"
            )

if not clusters_found:
    print("No clusters found!")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds'
```

```
# Creates an Amazon RDS client for the AWS Region
rds = Aws::RDS::Client.new

puts 'Listing clusters in this AWS account...'

# Calls the describe_db_clusters method to get information about clusters
resp = rds.describe_db_clusters(max_records: 20)

# Checks if any clusters are found and prints the appropriate message
if resp.db_clusters.empty?
  puts 'No clusters found!'
else
  # Loops through the array of cluster objects and prints the cluster identifier
  resp.db_clusters.each do |cluster|
    puts "Cluster identifier: #{cluster.db_cluster_identifier}"
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_sdk_rds::Client;

#[derive(Debug)]
struct Error(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for Error {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
impl std::error::Error for Error {}
```

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let describe_db_clusters_output = client
        .describe_db_clusters()
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| Error(e.to_string()))?;
    println!(
        "Found {} clusters:",
        describe_db_clusters_output.db_clusters().len()
    );
    for cluster in describe_db_clusters_output.db_clusters() {
        let name = cluster.database_name().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let engine = cluster.engine().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let id = cluster.db_cluster_identifier().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let class = cluster.db_cluster_instance_class().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        println!("\tDatabase: {name}",);
        println!("\t  Engine: {engine}",);
        println!("\t      ID: {id}",);
        println!("\tInstance: {class}",);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Learn the basics of Aurora with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;
using AuroraActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace AuroraScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Scenario for Amazon Aurora examples.
/// </summary>
public class AuroraScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Return a list of the available DB engine families for Aurora MySql using
 the DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
    2.  Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group
 using the CreateDBClusterParameterGroupAsync method.
    3.  Get the parameter group using the DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsAsync
 method.
    4.  Get some parameters in the group using the
 DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync method.
    5.  Parse and display some parameters in the group.
```

```
   6.  Modify the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
       using the ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupAsync method.
   7.  Get and display the updated parameters using the
DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync method with a source of "user".
   8.  Get a list of allowed engine versions using the
DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
   9.  Create an Aurora DB cluster that contains a MySql database and uses the
parameter group.
       using the CreateDBClusterAsync method.
   10. Wait for the DB cluster to be ready using the DescribeDBClustersAsync
method.
   11. Display and select from a list of instance classes available for the
selected engine and version
       using the paginated DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions method.
   12. Create a database instance in the cluster using the CreateDBInstanceAsync
method.
   13. Wait for the DB instance to be ready using the DescribeDBInstances
method.
   14. Display the connection endpoint string for the new DB cluster.
   15. Create a snapshot of the DB cluster using the
CreateDBClusterSnapshotAsync method.
   16. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready using the
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsAsync method.
   17. Delete the DB instance using the DeleteDBInstanceAsync method.
   18. Delete the DB cluster using the DeleteDBClusterAsync method.
   19. Wait for DB cluster to be deleted using the DescribeDBClustersAsync
methods.
   20. Delete the cluster parameter group using the
DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupAsync.
   */

   private static readonly string sepBar = new('-', 80);
   private static AuroraWrapper auroraWrapper = null!;
   private static ILogger logger = null!;
   private static readonly string engine = "aurora-mysql";
   static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon Relational Database Service
(Amazon RDS).
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
                    .AddTransient<AuroraWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger<AuroraScenario>();

        auroraWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AuroraWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Aurora: get started with DB clusters
example.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        DBClusterParameterGroup parameterGroup = null!;
        DBCluster? newCluster = null;
        DBInstance? newInstance = null;

        try
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = await ChooseParameterGroupFamilyAsync();

            parameterGroup = await
CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(parameterGroupFamily);

            var parameters = await
DescribeParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName,
                new List<string> { "auto_increment_offset",
"auto_increment_increment" });

            await
ModifyParametersAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName, parameters);

            await
DescribeUserSourceParameters(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName);
```

```
            var engineVersionChoice = await
ChooseDBEngineVersionAsync(parameterGroupFamily);

            var newClusterIdentifier = "Example-Cluster-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            newCluster = await CreateNewCluster
            (
                parameterGroup,
                engine,
                engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
                newClusterIdentifier
            );

            var instanceClassChoice = await ChooseDBInstanceClass(engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion);

            var newInstanceIdentifier = "Example-Instance-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            newInstance = await CreateNewInstance(
                newClusterIdentifier,
                engine,
                engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
                instanceClassChoice.DBInstanceClass,
                newInstanceIdentifier
            );

            DisplayConnectionString(newCluster!);
            await CreateSnapshot(newCluster!);
            await CleanupResources(newInstance, newCluster, parameterGroup);

            Console.WriteLine("Scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            await CleanupResources(newInstance, newCluster, parameterGroup);
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose the Aurora DB parameter group family from a list of available
options.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>The selected parameter group family.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ChooseParameterGroupFamilyAsync()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // 1. Get a list of available engines.
        var engines = await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(engine);

        Console.WriteLine($"1. The following is a list of available DB parameter
group families for engine {engine}:");

        var parameterGroupFamilies =
            engines.GroupBy(e => e.DBParameterGroupFamily).ToList();
        for (var i = 1; i <= parameterGroupFamilies.Count; i++)
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamilies[i - 1];
            // List the available parameter group families.
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Family: {parameterGroupFamily.Key}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > parameterGroupFamilies.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("2. Select an available DB parameter group family
by entering a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        var parameterGroupFamilyChoice = parameterGroupFamilies[choiceNumber -
1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroupFamilyChoice.Key;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and get information on a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">The DBParameterGroupFamily for the
new DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DBParameterGroup.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup>
CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(string dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Create new DB parameter group with family
 {dbParameterGroupFamily}:");

        var parameterGroup = await
 auroraWrapper.CreateCustomClusterParameterGroupAsync(
            dbParameterGroupFamily,
            "ExampleParameterGroup-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks,
            "New example parameter group");

        var groupInfo =
            await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeCustomDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParamet

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"3. New DB parameter group created: \n\t{groupInfo?.Description}, \n
\tARN {groupInfo?.DBClusterParameterGroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get and describe parameters from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the DBParameterGroup.</
param>
    /// <param name="parameterNames">Optional specific names of parameters to
 describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of requested parameters.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Parameter>>
 DescribeParametersInGroupAsync(string parameterGroupName, List<string>?
 parameterNames = null)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("4. Get some parameters from the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        var parameters =
            await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroupName);

        var matchingParameters =
            parameters.Where(p => parameterNames == null ||
 parameterNames.Contains(p.ParameterName)).ToList();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("5. Parameter information:");
        matchingParameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        return matchingParameters;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify a parameter from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ModifyParametersAsync(string parameterGroupName,
 List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("6. Modify some parameters in the group.");

        await
 auroraWrapper.ModifyIntegerParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroupName,
 parameters);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the user source parameters in the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the DBParameterGroup.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DescribeUserSourceParameters(string
 parameterGroupName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("7. Describe updated user source parameters in the
group.");

        var parameters =
            await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroupName,
"user");

        parameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">DB parameter group family for engine
choice.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected engine version.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBEngineVersion> ChooseDBEngineVersionAsync(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed engines.
        var allowedEngines =
            await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(engine,
dbParameterGroupFamily);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB engine versions for parameter group
family {dbParameterGroupFamily}:");
        int i = 1;
        foreach (var version in allowedEngines)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. {version.DBEngineVersionDescription}.");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
```

```
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedEngines.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("8. Select an available DB engine version by
 entering a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var engineChoice = allowedEngines[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return engineChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new RDS DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">Parameter group to use for the DB cluster.</
param>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB cluster.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB cluster.</
param>
    /// <param name="clusterIdentifier">Cluster identifier to use for the DB
 cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB cluster.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBCluster?> CreateNewCluster(DBClusterParameterGroup
 parameterGroup,
        string engineName, string engineVersion, string clusterIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Create a new DB cluster with identifier
 {clusterIdentifier}.");

        DBCluster newCluster;
        var clusters = await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync();
        var isClusterCreated = clusters.Any(i => i.DBClusterIdentifier ==
 clusterIdentifier);

        if (isClusterCreated)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Cluster already created.");
            newCluster = clusters.First(i => i.DBClusterIdentifier ==
 clusterIdentifier);
        }
        else
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter an admin username:");
            var username = Console.ReadLine();

            Console.WriteLine("Enter an admin password:");
            var password = Console.ReadLine();

            newCluster = await auroraWrapper.CreateDBClusterWithAdminAsync(
                "ExampleDatabase",
                clusterIdentifier,
                parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                username!,
                password!
            );

            Console.WriteLine("10. Waiting for DB cluster to be ready...");
            while (newCluster.Status != "available")
            {
                Console.Write(".");
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                clusters = await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync(clusterIdentifier);
                newCluster = clusters.First();
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newCluster;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB instance class for a particular engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">DB engine for DB instance choice.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">DB engine version for DB instance choice.</
param>
    /// <returns>The selected orderable DB instance option.</returns>
    public static async Task<OrderableDBInstanceOption>
 ChooseDBInstanceClass(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed DB instance classes.
```

```
        var allowedInstances =
            await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPagedAsync(engine,
 engineVersion);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB instance classes for engine {engine} and
 version {engineVersion}:");
        int i = 1;

        foreach (var instance in allowedInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Instance class: {instance.DBInstanceClass} (storage type
 {instance.StorageType})");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedInstances.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("11. Select an available DB instance class by
 entering a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var instanceChoice = allowedInstances[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return instanceChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Instance class to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceIdentifier">Instance identifier to use for the DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB instance.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBInstance?> CreateNewInstance(
        string clusterIdentifier,
```

```
        string engineName,
        string engineVersion,
        string instanceClass,
        string instanceIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"12. Create a new DB instance with identifier
{instanceIdentifier}.");
        bool isInstanceReady = false;
        DBInstance newInstance;
        var instances = await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync();
        isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault(i =>
            i.DBInstanceIdentifier == instanceIdentifier)?.DBInstanceStatus ==
"available";

        if (isInstanceReady)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Instance already created.");
            newInstance = instances.First(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier ==
instanceIdentifier);
        }
        else
        {
            newInstance = await auroraWrapper.CreateDBInstanceInClusterAsync(
                clusterIdentifier,
                instanceIdentifier,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                instanceClass
            );

            Console.WriteLine("13. Waiting for DB instance to be ready...");
            while (!isInstanceReady)
            {
                Console.Write(".");
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                instances = await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync(instanceIdentifier);
                isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault()?.DBInstanceStatus ==
"available";
                newInstance = instances.First();
            }
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newInstance;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a connection string for an Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cluster">The DB cluster to use to get a connection string.</
param>
    public static void DisplayConnectionString(DBCluster cluster)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Display the connection string.
        Console.WriteLine("14. New DB cluster connection string: ");
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"\n{engine} -h {cluster.Endpoint} -P {cluster.Port} "
            + $"-u {cluster.MasterUsername} -p [YOUR PASSWORD]\n");

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot from an Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cluster">DB cluster to use when creating a snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>The snapshot object.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBClusterSnapshot> CreateSnapshot(DBCluster cluster)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Create a snapshot.
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Creating snapshot from DB cluster
 {cluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
        var snapshot = await
 auroraWrapper.CreateClusterSnapshotByIdentifierAsync(
            cluster.DBClusterIdentifier,
            "ExampleSnapshot-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks);

        // Wait for the snapshot to be available.
        bool isSnapshotReady = false;

        Console.WriteLine($"16. Waiting for snapshot to be ready...");
        while (!isSnapshotReady)
        {
            Console.Write(".");
```

```
            Thread.Sleep(5000);
            var snapshots =
                await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsByIdentifierAsync(cluster.DBClusterIdentifier);
            isSnapshotReady = snapshots.FirstOrDefault()?.Status == "available";
            snapshot = snapshots.First();
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Snapshot {snapshot.DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier} status is
{snapshot.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return snapshot;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newInstance">The instance to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="newCluster">The cluster to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">The parameter group to clean up.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources(
        DBInstance? newInstance,
        DBCluster? newCluster,
        DBClusterParameterGroup? parameterGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        if (newInstance is not null && GetYesNoResponse($"\tClean up instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}? (y/n)"))
        {
            // Delete the DB instance.
            Console.WriteLine($"17. Deleting the DB instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
            await
auroraWrapper.DeleteDBInstanceByIdentifierAsync(newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
        }

        if (newCluster is not null && GetYesNoResponse($"\tClean up cluster
{newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier}? (y/n)"))
        {
            // Delete the DB cluster.
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"18. Deleting the DB cluster
 {newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
            await
 auroraWrapper.DeleteDBClusterByIdentifierAsync(newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier);

            // Wait for the DB cluster to delete.
            Console.WriteLine($"19. Waiting for the DB cluster to delete...");
            bool isClusterDeleted = false;

            while (!isClusterDeleted)
            {
                Console.Write(".");
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                var cluster = await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync();
                isClusterDeleted = cluster.All(i => i.DBClusterIdentifier !=
 newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier);
            }

            Console.WriteLine("DB cluster deleted.");
        }

        if (parameterGroup is not null && GetYesNoResponse($"\tClean up parameter
 group? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"20. Deleting the DB parameter group
 {parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName}.");
            await
 auroraWrapper.DeleteClusterParameterGroupByNameAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGr
            Console.WriteLine("Parameter group deleted.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
```

```
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;

namespace AuroraActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for the Amazon Aurora cluster client operations.
/// </summary>
public class AuroraWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRDS _amazonRDS;
    public AuroraWrapper(IAmazonRDS amazonRDS)
    {
        _amazonRDS = amazonRDS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">The name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family
 name.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>>
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(string engine,
        string? parameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily
            });
```

```
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a custom cluster parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">The family of the parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description for the new parameter group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new parameter group object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup>
 CreateCustomClusterParameterGroupAsync(
        string parameterGroupFamily,
        string groupName,
        string description)
    {
        var request = new CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Description = description,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the cluster parameters in a parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="source">The optional name of the source filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>>
 DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(string groupName, string? source = null)
    {
        var paramList = new List<Parameter>();

        DescribeDBClusterParametersResponse response;
        var request = new DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest
        {
```

```
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Source = source,
        };

        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await
 _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync(request);
            paramList.AddRange(response.Parameters);

            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);

        return paramList;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the description of a DB cluster parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The parameter group description.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup?>
 DescribeCustomDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBClusterParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroups.FirstOrDefault();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify the specified integer parameters with new values from user input.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name for the parameters.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The list of integer parameters to modify.</
param>
    /// <param name="newValue">Optional int value to set for parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>The name of the group that was modified.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string> ModifyIntegerParametersInGroupAsync(string
groupName, List<Parameter> parameters, int newValue = 0)
    {
        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable.GetValueOrDefault() && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the
allowed values {p.AllowedValues} ");

                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    int.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        var request = new ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            Parameters = parameters,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var result = await
_amazonRDS.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return result.DBClusterParameterGroupName;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPagedAsync(string engine, string
engineVersion)
    {
```

```
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteClusterParameterGroupByNameAsync(string
groupName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new cluster and database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the new database.</param>
    /// <param name="clusterIdentifier">The identifier of the cluster.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine to use for the new cluster.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">The version of the engine to use.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="adminName">The admin username.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">The primary admin password.</param>
    /// <returns>The cluster object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBCluster> CreateDBClusterWithAdminAsync(
        string dbName,
        string clusterIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName,
        string dbEngine,
        string dbEngineVersion,
        string adminName,
        string adminPassword)
    {
        var request = new CreateDBClusterRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            DBClusterIdentifier = clusterIdentifier,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
            Engine = dbEngine,
            EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
            MasterUsername = adminName,
            MasterUserPassword = adminPassword,
        };

        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterAsync(request);
        return response.DBCluster;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync(string?
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
```

```
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB clusters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBCluster>> DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync(string?
dbClusterIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBCluster>();

        DescribeDBClustersResponse response;
        DescribeDBClustersRequest request = new DescribeDBClustersRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClustersAsync(request);
            if (response.DBClusters != null)
            {
                results.AddRange(response.DBClusters);
            }
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance
    /// with a particular set of properties. Use the action
DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstanceInClusterAsync(
        string dbClusterIdentifier,
        string dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string dbEngine,
        string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass)
    {
        // When creating the instance within a cluster, do not specify the name
or size.
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterSnapshot>
CreateClusterSnapshotByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier, string
snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
            });

        return response.DBClusterSnapshot;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBClusterSnapshot>>
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBClusterSnapshot>();

        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsResponse response;
        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request = new
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.DBClusterSnapshots);
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB cluster object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBCluster> DeleteDBClusterByIdentifierAsync(string
dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterAsync(
            new DeleteDBClusterRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true
            });
```

```
        return response.DBCluster;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstanceByIdentifierAsync(string
 dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances

- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Routine which creates an Amazon Aurora DB cluster and demonstrates several
 operations
//! on that cluster.
/*!
 \sa gettingStartedWithDBClusters()
 \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::gettingStartedWithDBClusters(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 Aurora)"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "get started with DB clusters demo." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
              CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "'." << std::endl;
    Aws::String dbParameterGroupFamily("Undefined");
    bool parameterGroupFound = true;
    {
```

```
        // 1. Check if the DB cluster parameter group already exists.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
                      CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." <<
 std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily =
 outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterParameterGroups()
[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_PARAMETER_GROUP_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
                      CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' does not exist." <<
 std::endl;
            parameterGroupFound = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 2. Get available parameter group families for the specified engine.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, NO_PARAMETER_GROUP_FAMILY,
                                 engineVersions, client)) {
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Getting available parameter group families for " <<
 DB_ENGINE
                  << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::vector<Aws::String> families;
```

```
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &version: engineVersions) {
            Aws::String family = version.GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
            if (std::find(families.begin(), families.end(), family) ==
                families.end()) {
                families.push_back(family);
                std::cout << "  " << families.size() << ": " << family <<
std::endl;
            }
        }

        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which family do you want to use? ",
1,
                                            static_cast<int>(families.size()));
        dbParameterGroupFamily = families[choice - 1];
    }
    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        // 3.  Create a DB cluster parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
        request.SetDescription("Example cluster parameter group.");

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully
created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Let's set some parameter values in your cluster parameter
group."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> autoIncrementParameters;
```

```
    // 4.  Get the parameters in the DB cluster parameter group.
    if (!getDBClusterParameters(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
AUTO_INCREMENT_PREFIX,
                                NO_SOURCE,
                                autoIncrementParameters,
                                client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> updateParameters;

    for (Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &autoIncParameter: autoIncrementParameters) {
        if (autoIncParameter.GetIsModifiable() &&
            (autoIncParameter.GetDataType() == "integer")) {
            std::cout << "The " << autoIncParameter.GetParameterName()
                      << " is described as: " <<
                      autoIncParameter.GetDescription() << "." << std::endl;
            if (autoIncParameter.ParameterValueHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "The current value is "
                          << autoIncParameter.GetParameterValue()
                          << "." << std::endl;
            }
            std::vector<int> splitValues = splitToInts(
                    autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues(), '-');
            if (splitValues.size() == 2) {
                int newValue = askQuestionForIntRange(
                        Aws::String("Enter a new value between ") +
                        autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues() + ": ",
                        splitValues[0], splitValues[1]);
                autoIncParameter.SetParameterValue(std::to_string(newValue));
                updateParameters.push_back(autoIncParameter);

            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error parsing " <<
autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    {
```

```
        // 5.  Modify the auto increment parameters in the DB cluster parameter
group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully
modified."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a
source of 'user'."
            << std::endl;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> userParameters;
    // 6.  Display the modified parameters in the DB cluster parameter group.
    if (!getDBClusterParameters(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, NO_NAME_PREFIX,
"user",
                                userParameters,
                                client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
        return false;
    }

    for (const auto &userParameter: userParameters) {
        std::cout << "  " << userParameter.GetParameterName() << ", " <<
                  userParameter.GetDescription() << ", parameter value - "
                  << userParameter.GetParameterValue() << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB Cluster." << std::endl;
```

```
    Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster dbCluster;
    // 7.  Check if the DB cluster already exists.
    if (!describeDBCluster(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, dbCluster, client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String engineVersionName;
    Aws::String engineName;
    if (dbCluster.DBClusterIdentifierHasBeenSet()) {
        std::cout << "The DB cluster already exists." << std::endl;
        engineVersionName = dbCluster.GetEngineVersion();
        engineName = dbCluster.GetEngine();

    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Let's create a DB cluster." << std::endl;
        const Aws::String administratorName = askQuestion(
                "Enter an administrator username for the database: ");
        const Aws::String administratorPassword = askQuestion(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters):
");
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 8.  Get a list of engine versions for the parameter group family.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, dbParameterGroupFamily,
engineVersions,
                                 client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "The available engines for your parameter group family are:"
                  << std::endl;

        int index = 1;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &engineVersion:
engineVersions) {
            std::cout << "  " << index << ": " <<
engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                      << std::endl;
            ++index;
        }
```

```
        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which engine do you want to use? ",
1,

static_cast<int>(engineVersions.size()));
        const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion engineVersion =
engineVersions[choice -
                                                                                1];

        engineName = engineVersion.GetEngine();
        engineVersionName = engineVersion.GetEngineVersion();
        std::cout << "Creating a DB cluster named '" << DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER
                  << "' and database '" << DB_NAME << "'.\n"
                  << "The DB cluster is configured to use your custom cluster
parameter group '"
                  << CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "', and \n"
                  << "selected engine version " <<
engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                  << ".\nThis typically takes several minutes." << std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersionName);
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBCluster(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBCluster. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the DB cluster to become available." << std::endl;
```

```
    int counter = 0;
    // 11. Wait for the DB cluster to become available.
    do {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 900) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for cluster to become available timed out ofter "
                      << counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                             DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        dbCluster = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
        if (!describeDBCluster(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, dbCluster, client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                             DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            std::cout << "Current DB cluster status is '"
                      << dbCluster.GetStatus()
                      << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
        }
    } while (dbCluster.GetStatus() != "available");

    if (dbCluster.GetStatus() == "available") {
        std::cout << "The DB cluster has been created." << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance;
    // 11.  Check if the DB instance already exists.
    if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, "",
                         client);
        return false;
    }

    if (dbInstance.DbInstancePortHasBeenSet()) {
        std::cout << "The DB instance already exists." << std::endl;
```

```
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Let's create a DB instance." << std::endl;

        Aws::String dbInstanceClass;
        // 12.  Get a list of instance classes.
        if (!chooseDBInstanceClass(engineName,
                                   engineVersionName,
                                   dbInstanceClass,
                                   client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
 "",
                             client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Creating a DB instance named '" << DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER
                  << "' with selected DB instance class '" << dbInstanceClass
                  << "'.\nThis typically takes several minutes." << std::endl;

        // 13. Create a DB instance.
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
 "",
                             client);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
   std::cout << "Waiting for the DB instance to become available." << std::endl;

   counter = 0;
   // 14. Wait for the DB instance to become available.
   do {
       std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
       ++counter;
       if (counter > 900) {
           std::cerr << "Wait for instance to become available timed out ofter "
                     << counter
                     << " seconds." << std::endl;
           cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                            DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
           return false;
       }

       dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
       if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
           cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                            DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
           return false;
       }

       if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
           std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                     << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus()
                     << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
       }
   } while (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() != "available");

   if (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() == "available") {
       std::cout << "The DB instance has been created." << std::endl;
   }

   // 15. Display the connection string that can be used to connect a 'mysql'
shell to the database.
   displayConnection(dbCluster);

   printAsterisksLine();

   if (askYesNoQuestion(
```

```
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB cluster (y/n)? ")) {
        Aws::String snapshotID(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER + "-" +
                               Aws::String(Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID()));
        {
            std::cout << "Creating a snapshot named " << snapshotID << "." <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "This typically takes a few minutes." << std::endl;

            // 16. Create a snapshot of the DB cluster. (CreateDBClusterSnapshot)
            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                    client.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
        }

        std::cout << "Waiting for the snapshot to become available." <<
std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::DBClusterSnapshot snapshot;
        counter = 0;
        do {
            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            ++counter;
            if (counter > 600) {
                std::cerr << "Wait for snapshot to be available timed out ofter "
                          << counter
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
```

```
                                DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            // 17. Wait for the snapshot to become available.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
                std::cout << "Current snapshot status is '"
                          << snapshot.GetStatus()
                          << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
            }
        } while (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available");

        if (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available") {
            std::cout << "A snapshot has been created." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    bool result = true;
    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to delete the DB cluster, DB instance, and parameter
group (y/n)? ")) {
        result = cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
```

```
                                    DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                                    client);
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which gets a DB cluster description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbClusterIdentifier: A DB cluster identifier.
 \param clusterResult: The 'DBCluster' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBCluster(const Aws::String &dbClusterIdentifier,
                                       Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster &clusterResult,
                                       const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBClusters(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        clusterResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_CLUSTER_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB cluster does not exist.
        // Instead, clusterResult is set to empty.
    else {
        clusterResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
    }

    return result;

}
```

```
//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBClusterParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBCLusterParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the cluster parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBCLusterParameters(const Aws::String
 &parameterGroupName,
                                             const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                             const Aws::String &source,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parametersResult,
                                             const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
```

```
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                         const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersionsResult,
                                         const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
```

```
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersions =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();

            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
                                        engineVersions.begin(),
 engineVersions.end());
            marker  = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance
 &instanceResult,
                                        const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBInstances. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}


//! Routine which gets available DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::chooseDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                           const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                           Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                           const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption>
 &options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option:
 options) {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                              instanceClass) == instanceClasses.end()) {
                    instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions.
 "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available DB instance classes for your database engine
 are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}

//! Routine which deletes resources created by the scenario.
/*!
\sa cleanUpResources()
\param parameterGroupName: A parameter group name, this may be empty.
```

```
\param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier, this may be empty.
\param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
\return bool: Successful completion.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::cleanUpResources(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                      const Aws::String &dbClusterIdentifier,
                                      const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                      const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    bool result = true;
    bool instanceDeleting = false;
    bool clusterDeleting = false;
    if (!dbInstanceIdentifier.empty()) {
        {
            // 18. Delete the DB instance.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
            request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                instanceDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB instance to delete before deleting the
 parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBInstance. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    if (!dbClusterIdentifier.empty()) {
        {
            // 19. Delete the DB cluster.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterRequest request;
```

```
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBCluster(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB cluster deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                clusterDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB cluster to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout << "This may take a while." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBCluster. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }
    int counter = 0;

    while (clusterDeleting || instanceDeleting) {
        // 20. Wait for the DB cluster and instance to be deleted.
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 800) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for instance to delete timed out ofter " <<
counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
        if (instanceDeleting) {
            if (!describeDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbInstance, client)) {
                return false;
            }
            instanceDeleting = dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifierHasBeenSet();
        }
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster dbCluster = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
        if (clusterDeleting) {
            if (!describeDBCluster(dbClusterIdentifier, dbCluster, client)) {
                return false;
            }

            clusterDeleting = dbCluster.DBClusterIdentifierHasBeenSet();
        }

        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            if (instanceDeleting) {
                std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                          << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() << "." <<
std::endl;
            }

            if (clusterDeleting) {
                std::cout << "Current DB cluster status is '"
                          << dbCluster.GetStatus() << "." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    if (!parameterGroupName.empty()) {
        // 21. Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }
```

```
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
```

```
 "aurora/actions"
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "slices"
 "sort"
 "strconv"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/google/uuid"
)

// GetStartedClusters is an interactive example that shows you how to use the AWS
 SDK for Go
// with Amazon Aurora to do the following:
//
// 1. Create a custom DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
// 2. Create an Aurora DB cluster that is configured to use the parameter group.
// 3. Create a DB instance in the DB cluster that contains a database.
// 4. Take a snapshot of the DB cluster.
// 5. Delete the DB instance, DB cluster, and parameter group.
type GetStartedClusters struct {
 sdkConfig  aws.Config
 dbClusters actions.DbClusters
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 helper     IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun  bool
}

// NewGetStartedClusters constructs a GetStartedClusters instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get an Amazon Relational Database Service
 (Amazon RDS)
// client and create wrappers for the actions used in the scenario.
func NewGetStartedClusters(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) GetStartedClusters {
 auroraClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return GetStartedClusters{
```

```
  sdkConfig:  sdkConfig,
  dbClusters: actions.DbClusters{AuroraClient: auroraClient},
  questioner: questioner,
  helper:     helper,
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) Run(ctx context.Context, dbEngine string,
 parameterGroupName string,
 clusterName string, dbName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon Aurora DB Cluster demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 parameterGroup := scenario.CreateParameterGroup(ctx, dbEngine,
 parameterGroupName)
 scenario.SetUserParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName)
 cluster := scenario.CreateCluster(ctx, clusterName, dbEngine, dbName,
 parameterGroup)
 scenario.helper.Pause(5)
 dbInstance := scenario.CreateInstance(ctx, cluster)
 scenario.DisplayConnection(cluster)
 scenario.CreateSnapshot(ctx, clusterName)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, dbInstance, cluster, parameterGroup)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateParameterGroup shows how to get available engine versions for a
 specified
// database engine and create a DB cluster parameter group that is compatible
 with a
// selected engine family.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 dbEngine string,
```

```
 parameterGroupName string) *types.DBClusterParameterGroup {

 log.Printf("Checking for an existing DB cluster parameter group named %v.\n",
  parameterGroupName)
 parameterGroup, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
 parameterGroupName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if parameterGroup == nil {
  log.Printf("Getting available database engine versions for %v.\n", dbEngine)
  engineVersions, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine, "")
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }

  familySet := map[string]struct{}{}
  for _, family := range engineVersions {
   familySet[*family.DBParameterGroupFamily] = struct{}{}
  }
  var families []string
  for family := range familySet {
   families = append(families, family)
  }
  sort.Strings(families)
  familyIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Which family do you want to use?
\n", families)
  log.Println("Creating a DB cluster parameter group.")
  _, err = scenario.dbClusters.CreateParameterGroup(
   ctx, parameterGroupName, families[familyIndex], "Example parameter group.")
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  parameterGroup, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
 parameterGroupName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
 log.Printf("Parameter group %v:\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
 log.Printf("\tName: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
 log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupArn)
 log.Printf("\tFamily: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
 log.Printf("\tDescription: %v\n", *parameterGroup.Description)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return parameterGroup

}

// SetUserParameters shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom
 parameter
// group and update some of the parameter values in the group.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) SetUserParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) {
 log.Println("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
 dbParameters, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName,
 "")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 var updateParams []types.Parameter
 for _, dbParam := range dbParameters {
  if strings.HasPrefix(*dbParam.ParameterName, "auto_increment") &&
   *dbParam.IsModifiable && *dbParam.DataType == "integer" {
   log.Printf("The %v parameter is described as:\n\t%v",
    *dbParam.ParameterName, *dbParam.Description)
   rangeSplit := strings.Split(*dbParam.AllowedValues, "-")
   lower, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[0])
   upper, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[1])
   newValue := scenario.questioner.AskInt(
    fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", lower, upper),
    demotools.InIntRange{Lower: lower, Upper: upper})
   dbParam.ParameterValue = aws.String(strconv.Itoa(newValue))
   updateParams = append(updateParams, dbParam)
  }
 }
 err = scenario.dbClusters.UpdateParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName,
 updateParams)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source
 of 'user'.")
 userParameters, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetParameters(ctx,
 parameterGroupName, "user")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
 log.Println("Here are the parameters you've set:")
 for _, param := range userParameters {
  log.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *param.ParameterName, *param.ParameterValue)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateCluster shows how to create an Aurora DB cluster that contains a
 database
// of a specified type. The database is also configured to use a custom DB
 cluster
// parameter group.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, dbEngine string,
 dbName string, parameterGroup *types.DBClusterParameterGroup) *types.DBCluster {

 log.Println("Checking for an existing DB cluster.")
 cluster, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetDbCluster(ctx, clusterName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if cluster == nil {
  adminUsername := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "Enter an administrator user name for the database: ", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  adminPassword := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
  engineVersions, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine,
 *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  var engineChoices []string
  for _, engine := range engineVersions {
   engineChoices = append(engineChoices, *engine.EngineVersion)
  }
  log.Println("The available engines for your parameter group are:")
  engineIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Which engine do you want to use?
\n", engineChoices)
  log.Printf("Creating DB cluster %v and database %v.\n", clusterName, dbName)
  log.Printf("The DB cluster is configured to use\nyour custom parameter group %v
\n",
   *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
  log.Printf("and selected engine %v.\n", engineChoices[engineIndex])
```

```
  log.Println("This typically takes several minutes.")
  cluster, err = scenario.dbClusters.CreateDbCluster(
   ctx, clusterName, *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName, dbName,
 dbEngine,
   engineChoices[engineIndex], adminUsername, adminPassword)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *cluster.Status != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   cluster, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetDbCluster(ctx, clusterName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Cluster created and available.")
  }
 }
 log.Println("Cluster data:")
 log.Printf("\tDBClusterIdentifier: %v\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
 log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *cluster.DBClusterArn)
 log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *cluster.Status)
 log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *cluster.Engine)
 log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *cluster.EngineVersion)
 log.Printf("\tDBClusterParameterGroup: %v\n", *cluster.DBClusterParameterGroup)
 log.Printf("\tEngineMode: %v\n", *cluster.EngineMode)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return cluster
}

// CreateInstance shows how to create a DB instance in an existing Aurora DB
 cluster.
// A new DB cluster contains no DB instances, so you must add one. The first DB
 instance
// that is added to a DB cluster defaults to a read-write DB instance.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, cluster
 *types.DBCluster) *types.DBInstance {
 log.Println("Checking for an existing database instance.")
 dbInstance, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetInstance(ctx,
 *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if dbInstance == nil {
  log.Println("Let's create a database instance in your DB cluster.")
```

```
  log.Println("First, choose a DB instance type:")
  instOpts, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetOrderableInstances(
   ctx, *cluster.Engine, *cluster.EngineVersion)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  var instChoices []string
  for _, opt := range instOpts {
   instChoices = append(instChoices, *opt.DBInstanceClass)
  }
  slices.Sort(instChoices)
  instChoices = slices.Compact(instChoices)
  instIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice(
   "Which DB instance class do you want to use?\n", instChoices)
  log.Println("Creating a database instance. This typically takes several
 minutes.")
  dbInstance, err = scenario.dbClusters.CreateInstanceInCluster(
   ctx, *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier, *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier,
 *cluster.Engine,
   instChoices[instIndex])
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *dbInstance.DBInstanceStatus != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   dbInstance, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetInstance(ctx,
 *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
 }
 log.Println("Instance data:")
 log.Printf("\tDBInstanceIdentifier: %v\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
 log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceArn)
 log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceStatus)
 log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *dbInstance.Engine)
 log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *dbInstance.EngineVersion)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return dbInstance
}

// DisplayConnection displays connection information about an Aurora DB cluster
 and tips
```

```
// on how to connect to it.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) DisplayConnection(cluster *types.DBCluster) {
 log.Println(
  "You can now connect to your database using your favorite MySql client.\n" +
   "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2 instance\n"
 +
   "that is running in the same VPC as your database cluster. Pass the endpoint,
\n" +
   "port, and administrator user name to 'mysql' and enter your password\n" +
   "when prompted:")
 log.Printf("\n\tmysql -h %v -P %v -u %v -p\n",
  *cluster.Endpoint, *cluster.Port, *cluster.MasterUsername)
 log.Println("For more information, see the User Guide for Aurora:\n" +
  "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/AuroraUserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.CreatingConnecting.Aurora.html#CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.Aurora
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateSnapshot shows how to create a DB cluster snapshot and wait until it's
 available.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context,
 clusterName string) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB cluster (y/n)? ", "y") {
  snapshotId := fmt.Sprintf("%v-%v", clusterName, scenario.helper.UniqueId())
  log.Printf("Creating a snapshot named %v. This typically takes a few minutes.
\n", snapshotId)
  snapshot, err := scenario.dbClusters.CreateClusterSnapshot(ctx, clusterName,
 snapshotId)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *snapshot.Status != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   snapshot, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetClusterSnapshot(ctx, snapshotId)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Println("Snapshot data:")
  log.Printf("\tDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: %v\n",
 *snapshot.DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *snapshot.DBClusterSnapshotArn)
  log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *snapshot.Status)
```

```
  log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *snapshot.Engine)
  log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *snapshot.EngineVersion)
  log.Printf("\tDBClusterIdentifier: %v\n", *snapshot.DBClusterIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tSnapshotCreateTime: %v\n", *snapshot.SnapshotCreateTime)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }
}

// Cleanup shows how to clean up a DB instance, DB cluster, and DB cluster
 parameter group.
// Before the DB cluster parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB
 instances and
// DB clusters must first be deleted.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) Cleanup(ctx context.Context, dbInstance
 *types.DBInstance, cluster *types.DBCluster,
 parameterGroup *types.DBClusterParameterGroup) {

 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "\nDo you want to delete the database instance, DB cluster, and parameter group
 (y/n)? ", "y") {
  log.Printf("Deleting database instance %v.\n",
 *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  err := scenario.dbClusters.DeleteInstance(ctx,
 *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Deleting database cluster %v.\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
  err = scenario.dbClusters.DeleteDbCluster(ctx, *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println(
   "Waiting for the DB instance and DB cluster to delete. This typically takes
 several minutes.")
  for dbInstance != nil || cluster != nil {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   if dbInstance != nil {
    dbInstance, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetInstance(ctx,
 *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
```

```
    if cluster != nil {
     cluster, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetDbCluster(ctx,
  *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
     if err != nil {
      panic(err)
     }
    }
   }
   log.Printf("Deleting parameter group %v.",
  *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
   err = scenario.dbClusters.DeleteParameterGroup(ctx,
  *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts the function from a scenario so that it
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 UniqueId() string
}
type ScenarioHelper struct{}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}

// UniqueId returns a new UUID.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) UniqueId() string {
 return uuid.New().String()
}
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
import (
 "context"
```

```
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}


// GetParameterGroup gets a DB cluster parameter group by name.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}


// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the
 specified
// parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {
```

```
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily:      aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:                 aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterParameterGroup, err
 }
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter
 group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeDBClusterParametersPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
```

```
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:                      aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get paramaeters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}



// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:                  params,
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetDbCluster gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string)
 (*types.DBCluster, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{
   DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  var notFoundError *types.DBClusterNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB cluster %v does not exist.\n", clusterName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusters[0], err
 }
}



// CreateDbCluster creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified
 parameter group.
// The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified
 engine and
// engine version.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, parameterGroupName string,
 dbName string, dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, adminName string,
 adminPassword string) (
 *types.DBCluster, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBCluster(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:                      aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  DatabaseName:                aws.String(dbName),
  EngineVersion:               aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  MasterUserPassword:          aws.String(adminPassword),
  MasterUsername:              aws.String(adminName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBCluster, err
 }
}
```

```
// DeleteDbCluster deletes a DB cluster without keeping a final snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBCluster(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:   aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// CreateClusterSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context,
 clusterName string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterSnapshotInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterSnapshot, nil
 }
}



// GetClusterSnapshot gets a DB cluster snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName
 string) (*types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsInput{
   DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
```

```
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}



// CreateInstanceInCluster creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster.
 The first database that is
// created defaults to a read-write DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateInstanceInCluster(ctx context.Context,
 clusterName string, instanceName string,
 dbEngine string, dbInstanceClass string) (*types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBClusterIdentifier:  aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string)
 (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
```

```
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine string,
 parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instances []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instances: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instances = append(instances, output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instances, err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup

- CreateDBClusterSnapshot
- CreateDBInstance
- DeleteDBCluster
- DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
- DeleteDBInstance
- DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
- DescribeDBClusterParameters
- DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
- DescribeDBClusters
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 * database credentials. If you do not create a
 * secret, this example will not work. For details, see:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Gets available engine families for Amazon Aurora MySQL-Compatible Edition
 * by calling the DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') method.
 * 2. Selects an engine family and creates a custom DB cluster parameter group
 * by invoking the describeDBClusterParameters method.
 * 3. Gets the parameter groups by invoking the describeDBClusterParameterGroups
 * method.
 * 4. Gets parameters in the group by invoking the describeDBClusterParameters
 * method.
 * 5. Modifies the auto_increment_offset parameter by invoking the
 * modifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest method.
 * 6. Gets and displays the updated parameters.
 * 7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions by invoking the
 * describeDbEngineVersions method.
 * 8. Creates an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySQL
 * database.
 * 9. Waits for DB instance to be ready.
 * 10. Gets a list of instance classes available for the selected engine.
 * 11. Creates a database instance in the cluster.
 * 12. Waits for DB instance to be ready.
 * 13. Creates a snapshot.
 * 14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready.
 * 15. Deletes the DB cluster.
 * 16. Deletes the DB cluster group.
 */
public class AuroraScenario {
    public static long sleepTime = 20;
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <dbClusterGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily>
 <dbInstanceClusterIdentifier> <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbName>
 <dbSnapshotIdentifier><secretName>"
                +
                "Where:\n" +
```

```
                "    dbClusterGroupName - The name of the DB cluster parameter
group. \n" +
                "    dbParameterGroupFamily - The DB cluster parameter group
family name (for example, aurora-mysql5.7). \n"
                +
                "    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier - The instance cluster
identifier value.\n" +
                "    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\n"
+
                "    dbName - The database name.\n" +
                "    dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.\n" +
                "    secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that
contains the database credentials\"\n";
        ;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbClusterGroupName = args[0];
        String dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1];
        String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier = args[2];
        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[3];
        String dbName = args[4];
        String dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[5];
        String secretName = args[6];

        // Retrieve the database credentials using AWS Secrets Manager.
        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
User.class);
        String username = user.getUsername();
        String userPassword = user.getPassword();

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Aurora example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines");
        describeDBEngines(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a custom parameter group");
        createDBClusterParameterGroup(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName,
dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Get the parameter group");
        describeDbClusterParameterGroups(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the parameters in the group");
        describeDbClusterParameters(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName, 0);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter");
        modifyDBClusterParas(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Display the updated parameter value");
        describeDbClusterParameters(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName, -1);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions");
        getAllowedEngines(rdsClient, dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Create an Aurora DB cluster database");
        String arnClusterVal = createDBCluster(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName,
dbName, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
                username, userPassword);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the cluster is " + arnClusterVal);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Wait for DB instance to be ready");
        waitForInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get a list of instance classes available for the
selected engine");
        String instanceClass = getListInstanceClasses(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Create a database instance in the cluster.");
        String clusterDBARN = createDBInstanceCluster(rdsClient,
dbInstanceIdentifier, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
                instanceClass);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the database is " + clusterDBARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Wait for DB instance to be ready");
        waitDBInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Create a snapshot");
        createDBClusterSnapshot(rdsClient, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
dbSnapshotIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready");
        waitForSnapshotReady(rdsClient, dbSnapshotIdentifier,
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Delete the DB instance");
        deleteDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("15. Delete the DB cluster");
        deleteCluster(rdsClient, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("16. Delete the DB cluster group");
        deleteDBClusterGroup(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName, clusterDBARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Scenario has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
                .region(region)

.credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
    }

    private static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                .secretId(secretName)
                .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }

    public static void deleteDBClusterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName, String clusterDBARN)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean isDataDel = false;
            boolean didFind;
            String instanceARN;

            // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
            while (!isDataDel) {
```

```
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                int listSize = instanceList.size();
                didFind = false;
                int index = 1;
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                        System.out.println(clusterDBARN + " still exists");
                        didFind = true;
                    }
                    if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true;
                    }
                    Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    index++;
                }
            }

            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest clusterParameterGroupRequest =
DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest
                    .builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                    .build();


rdsClient.deleteDBClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest);
            System.out.println(dbClusterGroupName + " was deleted.");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbClusterRequest deleteDbClusterRequest =
DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
```

```
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            rdsClient.deleteDBCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest);
            System.out.println(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier + " was deleted!");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.println("The status of the database is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void waitForSnapshotReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbSnapshotIdentifier,
            String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
        try {
            boolean snapshotReady = false;
            String snapshotReadyStr;
            System.out.println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.");

            DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest snapshotsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
```

```
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .build();

            while (!snapshotReady) {
                DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest);
                List<DBClusterSnapshot> snapshotList =
response.dbClusterSnapshots();
                for (DBClusterSnapshot snapshot : snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status();
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.println(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 5000);
                    }
                }
            }

            System.out.println("The Snapshot is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createDBClusterSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
            String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
            CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
            System.out.println("The Snapshot ARN is " +
response.dbClusterSnapshot().dbClusterSnapshotArn());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void waitDBInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            String endpoint = "";
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances(instanceRequest);
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        endpoint = instance.endpoint().address();
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database instance is available! The connection
endpoint is " + endpoint);

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createDBInstanceCluster(RdsClient rdsClient,
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
            String instanceClass) {
```

```
        try {
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .dbInstanceClass(instanceClass)
                    .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());
            return response.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String getListInstanceClasses(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest optionsRequest =
DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest
                    .builder()
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(optionsRequest);
            List<OrderableDBInstanceOption> instanceOptions =
response.orderableDBInstanceOptions();
            String instanceClass = "";
            for (OrderableDBInstanceOption instanceOption : instanceOptions) {
                instanceClass = instanceOption.dbInstanceClass();
                System.out.println("The instance class is " +
instanceOption.dbInstanceClass());
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
instanceOption.engineVersion());
            }
            return instanceClass;
```

```
        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbClustersRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                    .build();

            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbClustersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusters(instanceRequest);
                List<DBCluster> clusterList = response.dbClusters();
                for (DBCluster cluster : clusterList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = cluster.status();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database cluster is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createDBCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily, String dbName,
```

```
            String dbClusterIdentifier, String userName, String password) {
        try {
            CreateDbClusterRequest clusterRequest =
CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
                    .databaseName(dbName)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .masterUsername(userName)
                    .masterUserPassword(password)
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBCluster(clusterRequest);
            return response.dbCluster().dbClusterArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
    public static void getAllowedEngines(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest versionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(versionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> dbEngines = response.dbEngineVersions();
            for (DBEngineVersion dbEngine : dbEngines) {
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
dbEngine.engineVersion());
                System.out.println("The engine description is " +
dbEngine.dbEngineDescription());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
```

```
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
    public static void modifyDBClusterParas(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dClusterGroupName) {
        try {
            Parameter parameter1 = Parameter.builder()
                    .parameterName("auto_increment_offset")
                    .applyMethod("immediate")
                    .parameterValue("5")
                    .build();

            List<Parameter> paraList = new ArrayList<>();
            paraList.add(parameter1);
            ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dClusterGroupName)
                    .parameters(paraList)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.modifyDBClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println(
                    "The parameter group " +
response.dbClusterParameterGroupName() + " was successfully modified");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDbClusterParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbCLusterGroupName, int flag) {
        try {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
            if (flag == 0) {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                        .build();
```

```
            } else {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                        .source("user")
                        .build();
            }

            DescribeDbClusterParametersResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeDBClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset
or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") ==
0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDbClusterParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient,
String dbClusterGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
```

```
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            List<DBClusterParameterGroup> groups =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
                    .dbClusterParameterGroups();
            for (DBClusterParameterGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createDBClusterParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName,
            String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbClusterParameterGroup().dbClusterParameterGroupName());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
```

```
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
 DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
 the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters

- DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
- DescribeDBClusters
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the database
 credentials. If you do not create a
secret, this example will not work. For more details, see:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

1. Returns a list of the available DB engines.
2. Creates a custom DB parameter group.
3. Gets the parameter groups.
4. Gets the parameters in the group.
```

```
5. Modifies the auto_increment_increment parameter.
6. Displays the updated parameter value.
7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions.
8. Creates an Aurora DB cluster database.
9. Waits for DB instance to be ready.
10. Gets a list of instance classes available for the selected engine.
11. Creates a database instance in the cluster.
12. Waits for the database instance in the cluster to be ready.
13. Creates a snapshot.
14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready.
15. Deletes the DB instance.
16. Deletes the DB cluster.
17. Deletes the DB cluster group.
 */

var slTime: Long = 20

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <dbClusterGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily>
 <dbInstanceClusterIdentifier> <dbName> <dbSnapshotIdentifier> <secretName>
        Where:
            dbClusterGroupName - The database group name.
            dbParameterGroupFamily - The database parameter group name.
            dbInstanceClusterIdentifier - The database instance identifier.
            dbName -  The database name.
            dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.
            secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains
 the database credentials.
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val dbClusterGroupName = args[0]
    val dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1]
    val dbInstanceClusterIdentifier = args[2]
    val dbInstanceIdentifier = args[3]
    val dbName = args[4]
    val dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[5]
    val secretName = args[6]
```

```
    val gson = Gson()
    val user = gson.fromJson(getSecretValues(secretName).toString(),
User::class.java)
    val username = user.username
    val userPassword = user.password

    println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines")
    describeAuroraDBEngines()

    println("2. Create a custom parameter group")
    createDBClusterParameterGroup(dbClusterGroupName, dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("3. Get the parameter group")
    describeDbClusterParameterGroups(dbClusterGroupName)

    println("4. Get the parameters in the group")
    describeDbClusterParameters(dbClusterGroupName, 0)

    println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter")
    modifyDBClusterParas(dbClusterGroupName)

    println("6. Display the updated parameter value")
    describeDbClusterParameters(dbClusterGroupName, -1)

    println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions")
    getAllowedClusterEngines(dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("8. Create an Aurora DB cluster database")
    val arnClusterVal = createDBCluster(dbClusterGroupName, dbName,
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier, username, userPassword)
    println("The ARN of the cluster is $arnClusterVal")

    println("9. Wait for DB instance to be ready")
    waitForClusterInstanceReady(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)

    println("10. Get a list of instance classes available for the selected
engine")
    val instanceClass = getListInstanceClasses()

    println("11. Create a database instance in the cluster.")
    val clusterDBARN = createDBInstanceCluster(dbInstanceIdentifier,
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier, instanceClass)
    println("The ARN of the database is $clusterDBARN")
```

```
    println("12. Wait for DB instance to be ready")
    waitDBAuroraInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("13. Create a snapshot")
    createDBClusterSnapshot(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier)

    println("14. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready")
    waitSnapshotReady(dbSnapshotIdentifier, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)

    println("15. Delete the DB instance")
    deleteDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("16. Delete the DB cluster")
    deleteCluster(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)

    println("17. Delete the DB cluster group")
    if (clusterDBARN != null) {
        deleteDBClusterGroup(dbClusterGroupName, clusterDBARN)
    }
    println("The Scenario has successfully completed.")
}

@Throws(InterruptedException::class)
suspend fun deleteDBClusterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupName: String,
    clusterDBARN: String,
) {
    var isDataDel = false
    var didFind: Boolean
    var instanceARN: String

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
        while (!isDataDel) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances()
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            val listSize = instanceList?.size
            isDataDel = false
            didFind = false
            var index = 1
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn.toString()
```

```
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                        println("$clusterDBARN still exists")
                        didFind = true
                    }
                    if (index == listSize && !didFind) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
 database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true
                    }
                    delay(slTime * 1000)
                    index++
                }
            }
        }
        val clusterParameterGroupRequest =
            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            }

        rdsClient.deleteDbClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest)
        println("$dbClusterGroupName was deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteCluster(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String) {
    val deleteDbClusterRequest =
        DeleteDbClusterRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        rdsClient.deleteDbCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest)
        println("$dbInstanceClusterIdentifier was deleted!")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }
```

```
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}

suspend fun waitSnapshotReady(
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
) {
    var snapshotReady = false
    var snapshotReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.")

    val snapshotsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest {
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!snapshotReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest)
            val snapshotList = response.dbClusterSnapshots
            if (snapshotList != null) {
                for (snapshot in snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status.toString()
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true
                    } else {
                        println(".")
                        delay(slTime * 5000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Snapshot is available!")
}

suspend fun createDBClusterSnapshot(
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
```

```
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
) {
    val snapshotRequest =
        CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest)
        println("The Snapshot ARN is
 ${response.dbClusterSnapshot?.dbClusterSnapshotArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun waitDBAuroraInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")
    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    var endpoint = ""
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            response.dbInstances?.forEach { instance ->
                instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                    endpoint = instance.endpoint?.address.toString()
                    instanceReady = true
                } else {
                    print(".")
                    delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database instance is available! The connection endpoint is
 $endpoint")
}
```

```
suspend fun createDBInstanceCluster(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    instanceClassVal: String?,
): String? {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = instanceClassVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
        return response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn
    }
}

suspend fun getListInstanceClasses(): String {
    val optionsRequest =
        DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest {
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            maxRecords = 20
        }
    var instanceClass = ""
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(optionsRequest)
        response.orderableDbInstanceOptions?.forEach { instanceOption ->
            instanceClass = instanceOption.dbInstanceClass.toString()
            println("The instance class is ${instanceOption.dbInstanceClass}")
            println("The engine version is ${instanceOption.engineVersion}")
        }
    }
    return instanceClass
}

// Waits until the database instance is available.
suspend fun waitForClusterInstanceReady(dbClusterIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")
```

```
    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbClustersRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifierVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusters(instanceRequest)
            response.dbClusters?.forEach { cluster ->
                instanceReadyStr = cluster.status.toString()
                if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                    instanceReady = true
                } else {
                    print(".")
                    delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database cluster is available!")
}

suspend fun createDBCluster(
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    dbClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    userName: String?,
    password: String?,
): String? {
    val clusterRequest =
        CreateDbClusterRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifierVal
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            masterUsername = userName
            masterUserPassword = password
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbCluster(clusterRequest)
        return response.dbCluster?.dbClusterArn
    }
```

```
}

// Get a list of allowed engine versions.
suspend fun getAllowedClusterEngines(dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?) {
    val versionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(versionsRequest)
        response.dbEngineVersions?.forEach { dbEngine ->
            println("The engine version is ${dbEngine.engineVersion}")
            println("The engine description is ${dbEngine.dbEngineDescription}")
        }
    }
}

// Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
suspend fun modifyDBClusterParas(dClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val parameter1 =
        Parameter {
            parameterName = "auto_increment_offset"
            applyMethod = ApplyMethod.fromValue("immediate")
            parameterValue = "5"
        }

    val paraList = ArrayList<Parameter>()
    paraList.add(parameter1)
    val groupRequest =
        ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dClusterGroupName
            parameters = paraList
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.modifyDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The parameter group ${response.dbClusterParameterGroupName} was
 successfully modified")
    }
}

suspend fun describeDbClusterParameters(
```

```
    dbCLusterGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
 auto_increment_increment.
            val paraName = para.parameterName
            if (paraName != null) {
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    println("*** The parameter value is  ${para.parameterValue}")
                    println("*** The parameter data type is ${para.dataType}")
                    println("*** The parameter description is
 ${para.description}")
                    println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeDbClusterParameterGroups(dbClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val groupsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            maxRecords = 20
```

```
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
        response.dbClusterParameterGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createDBClusterParameterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupNameVal: String?,
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
) {
    val groupRequest =
        CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupNameVal
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The group name is
 ${response.dbClusterParameterGroup?.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
    }
}

suspend fun describeAuroraDBEngines() {
    val engineVersionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            defaultOnly = true
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest)
        response.dbEngineVersions?.forEach { engineOb ->
            println("The name of the DB parameter group family for the database
 engine is ${engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily}")
            println("The name of the database engine ${engineOb.engine}")
```

```
            println("The version number of the database engine
 ${engineOb.engineVersion}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class AuroraClusterScenario:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to get started using Aurora DB clusters."""

    def __init__(self, aurora_wrapper):
        """
        :param aurora_wrapper: An object that wraps Aurora DB cluster actions.
        """
        self.aurora_wrapper = aurora_wrapper

    def create_parameter_group(self, db_engine, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to get available engine versions for a specified database
 engine and
        create a DB cluster parameter group that is compatible with a selected
 engine family.

        :param db_engine: The database engine to use as a basis.
        :param parameter_group_name: The name given to the newly created
 parameter group.
        :return: The newly created parameter group.
        """
        print(
            f"Checking for an existing DB cluster parameter group named
 {parameter_group_name}."
        )
        parameter_group =
 self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameter_group(parameter_group_name)
        if parameter_group is None:
            print(f"Getting available database engine versions for {db_engine}.")
            engine_versions = self.aurora_wrapper.get_engine_versions(db_engine)
            families = list({ver["DBParameterGroupFamily"] for ver in
 engine_versions})
            family_index = q.choose("Which family do you want to use? ",
 families)
            print(f"Creating a DB cluster parameter group.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.create_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name, families[family_index], "Example parameter
 group."
            )
            parameter_group = self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name
            )
```

```
        print(f"Parameter group
{parameter_group['DBClusterParameterGroupName']}:")
        pp(parameter_group)
        print("-" * 88)
        return parameter_group

    def set_user_parameters(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom parameter group and
        update some of the parameter values in the group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query and
modify.
        """
        print("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
        auto_inc_parameters = self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, name_prefix="auto_increment"
        )
        update_params = []
        for auto_inc in auto_inc_parameters:
            if auto_inc["IsModifiable"] and auto_inc["DataType"] == "integer":
                print(f"The {auto_inc['ParameterName']} parameter is described
as:")
                print(f"\t{auto_inc['Description']}")
                param_range = auto_inc["AllowedValues"].split("-")
                auto_inc["ParameterValue"] = str(
                    q.ask(
                        f"Enter a value between {param_range[0]} and
{param_range[1]}: ",
                        q.is_int,
                        q.in_range(int(param_range[0]), int(param_range[1])),
                    )
                )
                update_params.append(auto_inc)
        self.aurora_wrapper.update_parameters(parameter_group_name,
update_params)
        print(
            "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source
of 'user'."
        )
        user_parameters = self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, source="user"
        )
        pp(user_parameters)
```

```
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_cluster(self, cluster_name, db_engine, db_name, parameter_group):
        """
        Shows how to create an Aurora DB cluster that contains a database of a
specified
        type. The database is also configured to use a custom DB cluster
parameter group.

        :param cluster_name: The name given to the newly created DB cluster.
        :param db_engine: The engine of the created database.
        :param db_name: The name given to the created database.
        :param parameter_group: The parameter group that is associated with the
DB cluster.
        :return: The newly created DB cluster.
        """
        print("Checking for an existing DB cluster.")
        cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_cluster(cluster_name)
        if cluster is None:
            admin_username = q.ask(
                "Enter an administrator user name for the database: ",
q.non_empty
            )
            admin_password = q.ask(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters):
",
                q.non_empty,
            )
            engine_versions = self.aurora_wrapper.get_engine_versions(
                db_engine, parameter_group["DBParameterGroupFamily"]
            )
            engine_choices = [
                ver["EngineVersionDescription"] for ver in engine_versions
            ]
            print("The available engines for your parameter group are:")
            engine_index = q.choose("Which engine do you want to use? ",
engine_choices)
            print(
                f"Creating DB cluster {cluster_name} and database {db_name}.\n"
                f"The DB cluster is configured to use\n"
                f"your custom parameter group
{parameter_group['DBClusterParameterGroupName']}\n"
                f"and selected engine {engine_choices[engine_index]}.\n"
                f"This typically takes several minutes."
```

```
            )
            cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.create_db_cluster(
                cluster_name,
                parameter_group["DBClusterParameterGroupName"],
                db_name,
                db_engine,
                engine_versions[engine_index]["EngineVersion"],
                admin_username,
                admin_password,
            )
            while cluster.get("Status") != "available":
                wait(30)
                cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_cluster(cluster_name)
            print("Cluster created and available.\n")
        print("Cluster data:")
        pp(cluster)
        print("-" * 88)
        return cluster

    def create_instance(self, cluster):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB instance in an existing Aurora DB cluster. A new
DB cluster
        contains no DB instances, so you must add one. The first DB instance that
is added
        to a DB cluster defaults to a read-write DB instance.

        :param cluster: The DB cluster where the DB instance is added.
        :return: The newly created DB instance.
        """
        print("Checking for an existing database instance.")
        cluster_name = cluster["DBClusterIdentifier"]
        db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_instance(cluster_name)
        if db_inst is None:
            print("Let's create a database instance in your DB cluster.")
            print("First, choose a DB instance type:")
            inst_opts = self.aurora_wrapper.get_orderable_instances(
                cluster["Engine"], cluster["EngineVersion"]
            )
            inst_choices = list(
                {
                    opt["DBInstanceClass"] + ", storage type: " +
opt["StorageType"]
                    for opt in inst_opts
```

```
                }
            )
            inst_index = q.choose(
                "Which DB instance class do you want to use? ", inst_choices
            )
            print(
                f"Creating a database instance. This typically takes several
 minutes."
            )
            db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.create_instance_in_cluster(
                cluster_name,
                cluster_name,
                cluster["Engine"],
                inst_opts[inst_index]["DBInstanceClass"],
            )
            while db_inst.get("DBInstanceStatus") != "available":
                wait(30)
                db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_instance(cluster_name)
        print("Instance data:")
        pp(db_inst)
        print("-" * 88)
        return db_inst

    @staticmethod
    def display_connection(cluster):
        """
        Displays connection information about an Aurora DB cluster and tips on
 how to
        connect to it.

        :param cluster: The DB cluster to display.
        """
        print(
            "You can now connect to your database using your favorite MySql
 client.\n"
            "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2
 instance\n"
            "that is running in the same VPC as your database cluster. Pass the
 endpoint,\n"
            "port, and administrator user name to 'mysql' and enter your password
\n"
            "when prompted:\n"
        )
        print(
```

```
            f"\n\tmysql -h {cluster['Endpoint']} -P {cluster['Port']} -u
 {cluster['MasterUsername']} -p\n"
        )
        print(
            "For more information, see the User Guide for Aurora:\n"
            "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/AuroraUserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.CreatingConnecting.Aurora.html#CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.Aurora
        )
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_snapshot(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB cluster snapshot and wait until it's available.

        :param cluster_name: The name of a DB cluster to snapshot.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB cluster (y/n)? ",
 q.is_yesno
        ):
            snapshot_id = f"{cluster_name}-{uuid.uuid4()}"
            print(
                f"Creating a snapshot named {snapshot_id}. This typically takes a
 few minutes."
            )
            snapshot = self.aurora_wrapper.create_cluster_snapshot(
                snapshot_id, cluster_name
            )
            while snapshot.get("Status") != "available":
                wait(30)
                snapshot = self.aurora_wrapper.get_cluster_snapshot(snapshot_id)
            pp(snapshot)
            print("-" * 88)

    def cleanup(self, db_inst, cluster, parameter_group):
        """
        Shows how to clean up a DB instance, DB cluster, and DB cluster parameter
 group.
        Before the DB cluster parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB
 instances and
        DB clusters must first be deleted.

        :param db_inst: The DB instance to delete.
        :param cluster: The DB cluster to delete.
```

```
        :param parameter_group: The DB cluster parameter group to delete.
        """
        cluster_name = cluster["DBClusterIdentifier"]
        parameter_group_name = parameter_group["DBClusterParameterGroupName"]
        if q.ask(
            "\nDo you want to delete the database instance, DB cluster, and
parameter "
            "group (y/n)? ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            print(f"Deleting database instance
{db_inst['DBInstanceIdentifier']}.")

self.aurora_wrapper.delete_db_instance(db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"])
            print(f"Deleting database cluster {cluster_name}.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.delete_db_cluster(cluster_name)
            print(
                "Waiting for the DB instance and DB cluster to delete.\n"
                "This typically takes several minutes."
            )
            while db_inst is not None or cluster is not None:
                wait(30)
                if db_inst is not None:
                    db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_instance(
                        db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"]
                    )
                if cluster is not None:
                    cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_cluster(
                        cluster["DBClusterIdentifier"]
                    )
            print(f"Deleting parameter group {parameter_group_name}.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.delete_parameter_group(parameter_group_name)

    def run_scenario(self, db_engine, parameter_group_name, cluster_name,
db_name):
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) get
started\n"
            "with Aurora DB clusters demo."
        )
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        parameter_group = self.create_parameter_group(db_engine,
 parameter_group_name)
        self.set_user_parameters(parameter_group_name)
        cluster = self.create_cluster(cluster_name, db_engine, db_name,
 parameter_group)
        wait(5)
        db_inst = self.create_instance(cluster)
        self.display_connection(cluster)
        self.create_snapshot(cluster_name)
        self.cleanup(db_inst, cluster, parameter_group)

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    try:
        scenario = AuroraClusterScenario(AuroraWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario(
            "aurora-mysql",
            "doc-example-cluster-parameter-group",
            "doc-example-aurora",
            "docexampledb",
        )
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
```

```
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The requested parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_parameter_groups(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBClusterParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group


    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the specified
parameter group
        family.
```

```
        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter
group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of
the new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this
prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBClusterParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator =
self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_cluster_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters
```

```
    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Parameters=update_parameters,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def get_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_clusters(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name
            )
            cluster = response["DBClusters"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
                logger.info("Cluster %s does not exist.", cluster_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't verify the existence of DB cluster %s. Here's why:
%s: %s",
                    cluster_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return cluster


    def create_db_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_name,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_name,
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified parameter
group.
        The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified
engine and
        engine version.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to create.
        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to associate
with
                                     the DB cluster.
        :param db_name: The name of the database to create.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of the database that is created,
such as MySql.
        :param db_engine_version: The version of the database engine.
        :param admin_name: The user name of the database administrator.
        :param admin_password: The password of the database administrator.
        :return: The newly created DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster(
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name,
```

```
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            cluster = response["DBCluster"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return cluster


    def delete_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name, SkipFinalSnapshot=True
            )
            logger.info("Deleted DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
            raise


    def create_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, cluster_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param cluster_id: The DB cluster to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_snapshot(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id,
DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                cluster_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def get_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_snapshots(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get DB cluster snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def create_instance_in_cluster(
        self, instance_id, cluster_id, db_engine, instance_class
    ):
```

```
        """
        Creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster. The first database
that is
        created defaults to a read-write DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param cluster_id: The ID of the DB cluster where the DB instance is
created.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
                          This must be compatible with the configured parameter
group
                          of the DB cluster.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id,
                Engine=db_engine,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
```

```
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned
list of
                                       engine versions to those that are
compatible with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by
the DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
```

```
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.
```

```
        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions

- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A library containing the scenario-specific functions for the Aurora scenario.

```
use phf::{phf_set, Set};
use secrecy::SecretString;
use std::{collections::HashMap, fmt::Display, time::Duration};

use aws_sdk_rds::{
    error::ProvideErrorMetadata,

 operation::create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
    types::{DbCluster, DbClusterParameterGroup, DbClusterSnapshot, DbInstance,
 Parameter},
};
use sdk_examples_test_utils::waiter::Waiter;
use tracing::{info, trace, warn};

const DB_ENGINE: &str = "aurora-mysql";
const DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME: &str =
 "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup";
const DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_DESCRIPTION: &str =
    "Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example";
const DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER: &str = "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster";
const DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER: &str = "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance";

static FILTER_PARAMETER_NAMES: Set<&'static str> = phf_set! {
    "auto_increment_offset",
```

```
    "auto_increment_increment",
};

#[derive(Debug, PartialEq, Eq)]
struct MetadataError {
    message: Option<String>,
    code: Option<String>,
}

impl MetadataError {
    fn from(err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) -> Self {
        MetadataError {
            message: err.message().map(String::from),
            code: err.code().map(String::from),
        }
    }
}

impl Display for MetadataError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        let display = match (&self.message, &self.code) {
            (None, None) => "Unknown".to_string(),
            (None, Some(code)) => format!("({code})"),
            (Some(message), None) => message.to_string(),
            (Some(message), Some(code)) => format!("{message} ({code})"),
        };
        write!(f, "{display}")
    }
}

#[derive(Debug, PartialEq, Eq)]
pub struct ScenarioError {
    message: String,
    context: Option<MetadataError>,
}

impl ScenarioError {
    pub fn with(message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: None,
        }
    }
```

```
    pub fn new(message: impl Into<String>, err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) ->
 Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: Some(MetadataError::from(err)),
        }
    }
}

impl std::error::Error for ScenarioError {}
impl Display for ScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match &self.context {
            Some(c) => write!(f, "{}: {}", self.message, c),
            None => write!(f, "{}", self.message),
        }
    }
}

// Parse the ParameterName, Description, and AllowedValues values and display
 them.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct AuroraScenarioParameter {
    name: String,
    allowed_values: String,
    current_value: String,
}

impl Display for AuroraScenarioParameter {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(
            f,
            "{}: {} (allowed: {})",
            self.name, self.current_value, self.allowed_values
        )
    }
}

impl From<aws_sdk_rds::types::Parameter> for AuroraScenarioParameter {
    fn from(value: aws_sdk_rds::types::Parameter) -> Self {
        AuroraScenarioParameter {
            name: value.parameter_name.unwrap_or_default(),
            allowed_values: value.allowed_values.unwrap_or_default(),
            current_value: value.parameter_value.unwrap_or_default(),
```

```
        }
    }
}

pub struct AuroraScenario {
    rds: crate::rds::Rds,
    engine_family: Option<String>,
    engine_version: Option<String>,
    instance_class: Option<String>,
    db_cluster_parameter_group: Option<DbClusterParameterGroup>,
    db_cluster_identifier: Option<String>,
    db_instance_identifier: Option<String>,
    username: Option<String>,
    password: Option<SecretString>,
}

impl AuroraScenario {
    pub fn new(client: crate::rds::Rds) -> Self {
        AuroraScenario {
            rds: client,
            engine_family: None,
            engine_version: None,
            instance_class: None,
            db_cluster_parameter_group: None,
            db_cluster_identifier: None,
            db_instance_identifier: None,
            username: None,
            password: None,
        }
    }

    // Get available engine families for Aurora MySql.
 rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') and build a set of the
 'DBParameterGroupFamily' field values. I get {aurora-mysql8.0, aurora-mysql5.7}.
    pub async fn get_engines(&self) -> Result<HashMap<String, Vec<String>>,
 ScenarioError> {
        let describe_db_engine_versions =
 self.rds.describe_db_engine_versions(DB_ENGINE).await;
        trace!(versions=?describe_db_engine_versions, "full list of versions");

        if let Err(err) = describe_db_engine_versions {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to retrieve DB Engine Versions",
                &err,
```

```
            ));
        };

        let version_count = describe_db_engine_versions
            .as_ref()
            .map(|o| o.db_engine_versions().len())
            .unwrap_or_default();
        info!(version_count, "got list of versions");

        // Create a map of engine families to their available versions.
        let mut versions = HashMap::<String, Vec<String>>::new();
        describe_db_engine_versions
            .unwrap()
            .db_engine_versions()
            .iter()
            .filter_map(
                |v| match (&v.db_parameter_group_family, &v.engine_version) {
                    (Some(family), Some(version)) => Some((family.clone(),
version.clone())),
                    _ => None,
                },
            )
            .for_each(|(family, version)|
versions.entry(family).or_default().push(version));

        Ok(versions)
    }

    pub async fn get_instance_classes(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>,
ScenarioError> {
        let describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items = self
            .rds
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
                DB_ENGINE,
                self.engine_version
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("engine version for db instance options")
                    .as_str(),
            )
            .await;

        describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items
            .map(|options| {
                options
```

```
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|o| o.storage_type() == Some("aurora"))
                    .map(|o|
o.db_instance_class().unwrap_or_default().to_string())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Could not get available instance
classes", &err))
    }

    // Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group.
rds.CreateDbClusterParameterGroup(DBParameterGroupFamily='aurora-mysql8.0')
    pub async fn set_engine(&mut self, engine: &str, version: &str) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
        self.engine_family = Some(engine.to_string());
        self.engine_version = Some(version.to_string());
        let create_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_DESCRIPTION,
                engine,
            )
            .await;

        match create_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput {
                db_cluster_parameter_group: None,
                ..
            }) => {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with(
                    "CreateDBClusterParameterGroup had empty response",
                ));
            }
            Err(error) => {
                if error.code() == Some("DBParameterGroupAlreadyExists") {
                    info!("Cluster Parameter Group already exists, nothing to
do");
                } else {
                    return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Could not create Cluster Parameter Group",
                        &error,
                    ));
                }
```

```
            }
            _ => {
                info!("Created Cluster Parameter Group");
            }
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub fn set_instance_class(&mut self, instance_class: Option<String>) {
        self.instance_class = instance_class;
    }

    pub fn set_login(&mut self, username: Option<String>, password:
 Option<SecretString>) {
        self.username = username;
        self.password = password;
    }

    pub async fn connection_string(&self) -> Result<String, ScenarioError> {
        let cluster = self.get_cluster().await?;
        let endpoint = cluster.endpoint().unwrap_or_default();
        let port = cluster.port().unwrap_or_default();
        let username = cluster.master_username().unwrap_or_default();
        Ok(format!("mysql -h {endpoint} -P {port} -u {username} -p"))
    }

    pub async fn get_cluster(&self) -> Result<DbCluster, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_db_clusters_output = self
            .rds
            .describe_db_clusters(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier")
                    .as_str(),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters_output {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new("Failed to get cluster", &err));
        }

        let db_cluster = describe_db_clusters_output
            .unwrap()
            .db_clusters
```

```
            .and_then(|output| output.first().cloned());

        db_cluster.ok_or_else(|| ScenarioError::with("Did not find the cluster"))
    }

    // Get the parameter group. rds.DescribeDbClusterParameterGroups
    // Get parameters in the group. This is a long list so you will have to
paginate. Find the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
(by ParameterName). rds.DescribeDbClusterParameters
    // Parse the ParameterName, Description, and AllowedValues values and display
them.
    pub async fn cluster_parameters(&self) ->
Result<Vec<AuroraScenarioParameter>, ScenarioError> {
        let parameters_output = self
            .rds
            .describe_db_cluster_parameters(DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME)
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = parameters_output {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to retrieve parameters for
{DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME}"),
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let parameters = parameters_output
            .unwrap()
            .into_iter()
            .flat_map(|p| p.parameters.unwrap_or_default().into_iter())
            .filter(|p|
FILTER_PARAMETER_NAMES.contains(p.parameter_name().unwrap_or_default()))
            .map(AuroraScenarioParameter::from)
            .collect::<Vec<_>>();

        Ok(parameters)
    }

    // Modify both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
parameters in one call in the custom parameter group. Set their ParameterValue
fields to a new allowable value. rds.ModifyDbClusterParameterGroup.
    pub async fn update_auto_increment(
        &self,
        offset: u8,
```

```
        increment: u8,
    ) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        let modify_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value(format!("{offset}"))
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value(format!("{increment}"))
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ],
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(error) = modify_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to modify cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ));
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
    // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql
database and uses the parameter group you created.
    // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
    // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine
and engine version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql',
EngineVersion=).

    // Create a database instance in the cluster.
```

```
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check
for DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
               self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
               self.password
                   .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                   .expect("password"),
           )
           .await;
       if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
               &err,
           ));
       }

       self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
           .unwrap()
           .db_cluster
           .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

       if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
       }

       info!(
           "Started a db cluster: {}",
           self.db_cluster_identifier
               .as_deref()
               .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
```

```
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for
ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
```

```
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() ==
Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
```

```
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    // Create a snapshot of the DB cluster. rds.CreateDbClusterSnapshot.
    // Wait for the snapshot to create. rds.DescribeDbClusterSnapshots until
Status == 'available'.
    pub async fn snapshot(&self, name: &str) -> Result<DbClusterSnapshot,
ScenarioError> {
        let id = self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().unwrap_or_default();
        let snapshot = self
            .rds
            .snapshot_cluster(id, format!("{id}_{name}").as_str())
            .await;
        match snapshot {
            Ok(output) => match output.db_cluster_snapshot {
                Some(snapshot) => Ok(snapshot),
                None => Err(ScenarioError::with("Missing Snapshot")),
            },
            Err(err) => Err(ScenarioError::new("Failed to create snapshot",
&err)),
        }
    }

    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
```

```
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances =
self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
```

```
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
```

```
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in
 {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
 rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
 DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }
}

#[cfg(test)]
pub mod tests;
```

Tests for the library using automocks around the RDS Client wrapper.

```
use crate::rds::MockRdsImpl;

use super::*;

use std::io::{Error, ErrorKind};

use assert_matches::assert_matches;
use aws_sdk_rds::{
    error::SdkError,
    operation::{
        create_db_cluster::{CreateDBClusterError, CreateDbClusterOutput},
        create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError,
        create_db_cluster_snapshot::{CreateDBClusterSnapshotError,
 CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput},
        create_db_instance::{CreateDBInstanceError, CreateDbInstanceOutput},
        delete_db_cluster::DeleteDbClusterOutput,
        delete_db_cluster_parameter_group::DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        delete_db_instance::DeleteDbInstanceOutput,
        describe_db_cluster_endpoints::DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput,
        describe_db_cluster_parameters::{
            DescribeDBClusterParametersError, DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput,
        },
        describe_db_clusters::{DescribeDBClustersError,
 DescribeDbClustersOutput},
        describe_db_engine_versions::{
            DescribeDBEngineVersionsError, DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
        },
        describe_db_instances::{DescribeDBInstancesError,
 DescribeDbInstancesOutput},

 describe_orderable_db_instance_options::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError,
        modify_db_cluster_parameter_group::{
            ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError,
 ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        },
    },
    types::{
```

```
        error::DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault, DbClusterEndpoint,
 DbEngineVersion,
        OrderableDbInstanceOption,
    },
};
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::http::{Response, StatusCode};
use aws_smithy_types::body::SdkBody;
use mockall::predicate::eq;
use secrecy::ExposeSecret;

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-
mysql8.0").await;

    assert_eq!(set_engine, Ok(()));
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql"), scenario.engine_family.as_deref());
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql8.0"), scenario.engine_version.as_deref());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_not_create() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
```

```
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _|
 Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-
mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_param_group_exists() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|_, _, _| true)
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError::DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault(
                    DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault::builder().build(),
                ),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-
mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines() {
```

```
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput::builder()
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1b")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f2")
                        .engine_version("f2a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(DbEngineVersion::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;

    assert_eq!(
        versions_map,
        Ok(HashMap::from([
            ("f1".into(), vec!["f1a".into(), "f1b".into()]),
            ("f2".into(), vec!["f2a".into()])
        ]))
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines_failed() {
```

```
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBEngineVersionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_engine_versions error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;
    assert_matches!(
        versions_map,
        Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message == "Failed to
 retrieve DB Engine Versions"
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Ok(vec![
```

```
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora-iopt1")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t2")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t3")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
            ])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario
        .set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0")
        .await
        .expect("set engine");

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_eq!(
        instance_classes,
        Ok(vec!["t1".into(), "t2".into(), "t3".into()])
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
```

```
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_orderable_db_instance_options_error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_family = Some("aurora-mysql".into());
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_matches!(
        instance_classes,
        Err(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if message == "Could not get
 available instance classes"
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_cluster() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let cluster = scenario.get_cluster().await;

    assert!(cluster.is_ok());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_cluster_missing_cluster() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let cluster = scenario.get_cluster().await;

    assert_matches!(cluster, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if
 message == "Did not find the cluster");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_cluster_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_clusters_error",
```

```
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let cluster = scenario.get_cluster().await;

    assert_matches!(cluster, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if
 message == "Failed to get cluster");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_connection_string() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .endpoint("test_endpoint")
                        .port(3306)
                        .master_username("test_username")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let connection_string = scenario.connection_string().await;

    assert_eq!(
        connection_string,
        Ok("mysql -h test_endpoint -P 3306 -u test_username -p".into())
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
```

```
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(vec![DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput::builder()
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("a").build())
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("b").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("c").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("d").build())
                .build()])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());

    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await.expect("cluster params");
    let names: Vec<String> = params.into_iter().map(|p| p.name).collect();
    assert_eq!(
        names,
        vec!["auto_increment_offset", "auto_increment_increment"]
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
```

```
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClusterParametersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_cluster_parameters_error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await;
    assert_matches!(params, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to retrieve parameters for RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|name, params| {
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(
                params,
                &vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value("10")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value("20")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ]
            );
            true
        })
        .return_once(|_, _|
 Ok(ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));
```

```
    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    scenario
        .update_auto_increment(10, 20)
        .await
        .expect("update auto increment");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                   ErrorKind::Other,
                   "modify_db_cluster_parameter_group_error",
               ))),
               Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let update = scenario.update_auto_increment(10, 20).await;
    assert_matches!(update, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to modify cluster parameter group");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
```

```
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

.db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
```

```
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
```

```
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });
```

```
    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message
 == "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
```

```
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
```

```
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
```

```
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
```

```
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
```

```
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
```

```
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
```

```
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _})
 if message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

```
#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_snapshot() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_snapshot_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"), eq("MockCluster_MockSnapshot"))
        .times(1)
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster_snapshot(
                    DbClusterSnapshot::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")

 .db_cluster_snapshot_identifier("MockCluster_MockSnapshot")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("MockCluster".into());
    let create_snapshot = scenario.snapshot("MockSnapshot").await;
    assert!(create_snapshot.is_ok());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_snapshot_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_snapshot_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"), eq("MockCluster_MockSnapshot"))
        .times(1)
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterSnapshotError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create snapshot error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });
```

```
    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("MockCluster".into());
    let create_snapshot = scenario.snapshot("MockSnapshot").await;
    assert_matches!(create_snapshot, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to create snapshot");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_snapshot_invalid() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_snapshot_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"), eq("MockCluster_MockSnapshot"))
        .times(1)
        .return_once(|_, _|
 Ok(CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("MockCluster".into());
    let create_snapshot = scenario.snapshot("MockSnapshot").await;
    assert_matches!(create_snapshot, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if
 message == "Missing Snapshot");
}
```

A binary to run the scenario from front to end, using inquirer so that the user can make some decisions.

```
use std::fmt::Display;

use anyhow::anyhow;
use aurora_code_examples::{
    aurora_scenario::{AuroraScenario, ScenarioError},
    rds::Rds as RdsClient,
};
use aws_sdk_rds::Client;
use inquire::{validator::StringValidator, CustomUserError};
use secrecy::SecretString;
use tracing::warn;
```

```
#[derive(Default, Debug)]
struct Warnings(Vec<String>);

impl Warnings {
    fn new() -> Self {
        Warnings(Vec::with_capacity(5))
    }

    fn push(&mut self, warning: &str, error: ScenarioError) {
        let formatted = format!("{warning}: {error}");
        warn!("{formatted}");
        self.0.push(formatted);
    }

    fn is_empty(&self) -> bool {
        self.0.is_empty()
    }
}

impl Display for Warnings {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        writeln!(f, "Warnings:")?;
        for warning in &self.0 {
            writeln!(f, "{: >4}- {warning}", "")?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}

fn select(
    prompt: &str,
    choices: Vec<String>,
    error_message: &str,
) -> Result<String, anyhow::Error> {
    inquire::Select::new(prompt, choices)
        .prompt()
        .map_err(|error| anyhow!("{error_message}: {error}"))
}

// Prepare the Aurora Scenario. Prompt for several settings that are optional to
 the Scenario, but that the user should choose for the demo.
// This includes the engine, engine version, and instance class.
async fn prepare_scenario(rds: RdsClient) -> Result<AuroraScenario,
 anyhow::Error> {
```

```
    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(rds);

    // Get available engine families for Aurora MySql.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') and build a set of the
'DBParameterGroupFamily' field values. I get {aurora-mysql8.0, aurora-mysql5.7}.
    let available_engines = scenario.get_engines().await;
    if let Err(error) = available_engines {
        return Err(anyhow!("Failed to get available engines: {}", error));
    }
    let available_engines = available_engines.unwrap();

    // Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group.
rds.CreateDbClusterParameterGroup(DBParameterGroupFamily='aurora-mysql8.0')
    let engine = select(
        "Select an Aurora engine family",
        available_engines.keys().cloned().collect::<Vec<String>>(),
        "Invalid engine selection",
    )?;

    let version = select(
        format!("Select an Aurora engine version for {engine}").as_str(),
        available_engines.get(&engine).cloned().unwrap_or_default(),
        "Invalid engine version selection",
    )?;

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine(engine.as_str(),
version.as_str()).await;
    if let Err(error) = set_engine {
        return Err(anyhow!("Could not set engine: {}", error));
    }

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;
    match instance_classes {
        Ok(classes) => {
            let instance_class = select(
                format!("Select an Aurora instance class for {engine}").as_str(),
                classes,
                "Invalid instance class selection",
            )?;
            scenario.set_instance_class(Some(instance_class))
        }
        Err(err) => return Err(anyhow!("Failed to get instance classes for
engine: {err}")),
    }
```

```
    Ok(scenario)
}

// Prepare the cluster, creating a custom parameter group overriding some group
 parameters based on user input.
async fn prepare_cluster(scenario: &mut AuroraScenario, warnings: &mut Warnings)
 -> Result<(), ()> {
    show_parameters(scenario, warnings).await;

    let offset = prompt_number_or_default(warnings, "auto_increment_offset", 5);
    let increment = prompt_number_or_default(warnings,
 "auto_increment_increment", 3);

    // Modify both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
 parameters in one call in the custom parameter group. Set their ParameterValue
 fields to a new allowable value. rds.ModifyDbClusterParameterGroup.
    let update_auto_increment = scenario.update_auto_increment(offset,
 increment).await;

    if let Err(error) = update_auto_increment {
        warnings.push("Failed to update auto increment", error);
        return Err(());
    }

    // Get and display the updated parameters. Specify Source of 'user' to get
 just the modified parameters. rds.DescribeDbClusterParameters(Source='user')
    show_parameters(scenario, warnings).await;

    let username = inquire::Text::new("Username for the database (default
 'testuser')")
        .with_default("testuser")
        .with_initial_value("testuser")
        .prompt();

    if let Err(error) = username {
        warnings.push(
            "Failed to get username, using default",
            ScenarioError::with(format!("Error from inquirer: {error}")),
        );
        return Err(());
    }
    let username = username.unwrap();
```

```
    let password = inquire::Text::new("Password for the database (minimum 8
 characters)")
        .with_validator(|i: &str| {
            if i.len() >= 8 {
                Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Valid)
            } else {
                Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Invalid(
                    "Password must be at least 8 characters".into(),
                ))
            }
        })
        .prompt();

    let password: Option<SecretString> = match password {
        Ok(password) => Some(SecretString::from(password)),
        Err(error) => {
            warnings.push(
                "Failed to get password, using none (and not starting a DB)",
                ScenarioError::with(format!("Error from inquirer: {error}")),
            );
            return Err(());
        }
    };

    scenario.set_login(Some(username), password);

    Ok(())
}

// Start a single instance in the cluster,
async fn run_instance(scenario: &mut AuroraScenario) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
 {
    // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql
 database and uses the parameter group you created.
    // Create a database instance in the cluster.
    // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check
 for DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
    scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await?;

    let connection_string = scenario.connection_string().await?;

    println!("Database ready: {connection_string}",);
```

```
    let _ = inquire::Text::new("Use the database with the connection string. When
 you're finished, press enter key to continue.").prompt();

    // Create a snapshot of the DB cluster. rds.CreateDbClusterSnapshot.
    // Wait for the snapshot to create. rds.DescribeDbClusterSnapshots until
 Status == 'available'.
    let snapshot_name = inquire::Text::new("Provide a name for the snapshot")
        .prompt()
        .unwrap_or(String::from("ScenarioRun"));
    let snapshot = scenario.snapshot(snapshot_name.as_str()).await?;
    println!(
        "Snapshot is available: {}",
        snapshot.db_cluster_snapshot_arn().unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
    );

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);
    let rds = RdsClient::new(client);
    let mut scenario = prepare_scenario(rds).await?;

    // At this point, the scenario has things in AWS and needs to get cleaned up.
    let mut warnings = Warnings::new();

    if prepare_cluster(&mut scenario, &mut warnings).await.is_ok() {
        println!("Configured database cluster, starting an instance.");
        if let Err(err) = run_instance(&mut scenario).await {
            warnings.push("Problem running instance", err);
        }
    }

    // Clean up the instance, cluster, and parameter group, waiting for the
 instance and cluster to delete before moving on.
    let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
    if let Err(errors) = clean_up {
        for error in errors {
            warnings.push("Problem cleaning up scenario", error);
        }
    }
```

```
    if warnings.is_empty() {
        Ok(())
    } else {
        println!("There were problems running the scenario:");
        println!("{warnings}");
        Err(anyhow!("There were problems running the scenario"))
    }
}

#[derive(Clone)]
struct U8Validator {}
impl StringValidator for U8Validator {
    fn validate(&self, input: &str) -> Result<inquire::validator::Validation,
 CustomUserError> {
        if input.parse::<u8>().is_err() {
            Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Invalid(
                "Can't parse input as number".into(),
            ))
        } else {
            Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Valid)
        }
    }
}

async fn show_parameters(scenario: &AuroraScenario, warnings: &mut Warnings) {
    let parameters = scenario.cluster_parameters().await;

    match parameters {
        Ok(parameters) => {
            println!("Current parameters");
            for parameter in parameters {
                println!("\t{parameter}");
            }
        }
        Err(error) => warnings.push("Could not find cluster parameters", error),
    }
}

fn prompt_number_or_default(warnings: &mut Warnings, name: &str, default: u8) ->
 u8 {
    let input = inquire::Text::new(format!("Updated {name}:").as_str())
        .with_validator(U8Validator {})
        .prompt();
```

```
    match input {
        Ok(increment) => match increment.parse::<u8>() {
            Ok(increment) => increment,
            Err(error) => {
                warnings.push(
                    format!("Invalid updated {name} (using {default}
 instead)").as_str(),
                    ScenarioError::with(format!("{error}")),
                );
                default
            }
        },
        Err(error) => {
            warnings.push(
                format!("Invalid updated {name} (using {default}
 instead)").as_str(),
                ScenarioError::with(format!("{error}")),
            );
            default
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper around the Amazon RDS service that allows automocking for tests.

```
use aws_sdk_rds::{
    error::SdkError,
    operation::{
        create_db_cluster::{CreateDBClusterError, CreateDbClusterOutput},
        create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError,
        create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        create_db_cluster_snapshot::{CreateDBClusterSnapshotError,
 CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput},
        create_db_instance::{CreateDBInstanceError, CreateDbInstanceOutput},
        delete_db_cluster::{DeleteDBClusterError, DeleteDbClusterOutput},
        delete_db_cluster_parameter_group::{
            DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupError,
 DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        },
        delete_db_instance::{DeleteDBInstanceError, DeleteDbInstanceOutput},
```

```
        describe_db_cluster_endpoints::{
            DescribeDBClusterEndpointsError, DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput,
        },
        describe_db_cluster_parameters::{
            DescribeDBClusterParametersError, DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput,
        },
        describe_db_clusters::{DescribeDBClustersError,
 DescribeDbClustersOutput},
        describe_db_engine_versions::{
            DescribeDBEngineVersionsError, DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
        },
        describe_db_instances::{DescribeDBInstancesError,
 DescribeDbInstancesOutput},

 describe_orderable_db_instance_options::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError,
        modify_db_cluster_parameter_group::{
            ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError,
 ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        },
    },
    types::{OrderableDbInstanceOption, Parameter},
    Client as RdsClient,
};
use secrecy::{ExposeSecret, SecretString};

#[cfg(test)]
use mockall::automock;

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockRdsImpl as Rds;
#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use RdsImpl as Rds;

pub struct RdsImpl {
    pub inner: RdsClient,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl RdsImpl {
    pub fn new(inner: RdsClient) -> Self {
        RdsImpl { inner }
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_engine_versions(
```

```
        &self,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
SdkError<DescribeDBEngineVersionsError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_engine_versions()
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
        &self,
        engine: &str,
        engine_version: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<OrderableDbInstanceOption>,
SdkError<DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(engine_version)
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
        family: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
SdkError<CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .description(description)
            .db_parameter_group_family(family)
            .send()
            .await
```

```
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_clusters(
        &self,
        id: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbClustersOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBClustersError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_clusters()
            .db_cluster_identifier(id)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_cluster_parameters(
        &self,
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput>,
SdkError<DescribeDBClusterParametersError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_cluster_parameters()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .into_paginator()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameters: Vec<Parameter>,
    ) -> Result<ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
SdkError<ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .set_parameters(Some(parameters))
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster(
```

```
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameter_group: &str,
        engine: &str,
        version: &str,
        username: &str,
        password: SecretString,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterOutput, SdkError<CreateDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(name)
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(parameter_group)
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(version)
            .master_username(username)
            .master_user_password(password.expose_secret())
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn create_db_instance(
        &self,
        cluster_name: &str,
        instance_name: &str,
        instance_class: &str,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<CreateDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_instance()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_name)
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_name)
            .db_instance_class(instance_class)
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_instance(
        &self,
        instance_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbInstancesOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBInstancesError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_instances()
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_identifier)
```

```
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn snapshot_cluster(
        &self,
        db_cluster_identifier: &str,
        snapshot_name: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput,
SdkError<CreateDBClusterSnapshotError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_snapshot()
            .db_cluster_identifier(db_cluster_identifier)
            .db_cluster_snapshot_identifier(snapshot_name)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_instances(
        &self,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbInstancesOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBInstancesError>> {
        self.inner.describe_db_instances().send().await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
        &self,
        cluster_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput,
SdkError<DescribeDBClusterEndpointsError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_identifier)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_instance(
        &self,
        instance_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_instance()
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
```

```
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster(
        &self,
        cluster_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
 SdkError<DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .send()
            .await
    }
}
```

The Cargo.toml with dependencies used in this scenario.

```
[package]
name = "aurora-code-examples"
authors = [
  "David Souther <dpsouth@amazon.com>",
]
edition = "2021"
version = "0.1.0"

# See more keys and their definitions at https://doc.rust-lang.org/cargo/
reference/manifest.html
```

```
[dependencies]
anyhow = "1.0.75"
assert_matches = "1.5.0"
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-smithy-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-smithy-runtime-api = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-sdk-rds = { version = "1.3.0" }
inquire = "0.6.2"
mockall = "0.11.4"
phf = { version = "0.11.2", features = ["std", "macros"] }
sdk-examples-test-utils = { path = "../../test-utils" }
secrecy = "0.8.0"
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full", "test-util"] }
tracing = "0.1.37"
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions for Aurora using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Aurora actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Aurora API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Aurora using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Aurora API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDBClusterSnapshot with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBClusterParameters with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBClusterSnapshots with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBClusters with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBEngineVersions with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateDBCluster` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Create a new cluster and database.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="dbName">The name of the new database.</param>
/// <param name="clusterIdentifier">The identifier of the cluster.</param>
/// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
/// <param name="dbEngine">The engine to use for the new cluster.</param>
/// <param name="dbEngineVersion">The version of the engine to use.</param>
/// <param name="adminName">The admin username.</param>
/// <param name="adminPassword">The primary admin password.</param>
/// <returns>The cluster object.</returns>
public async Task<DBCluster> CreateDBClusterWithAdminAsync(
    string dbName,
    string clusterIdentifier,
    string parameterGroupName,
    string dbEngine,
    string dbEngineVersion,
    string adminName,
    string adminPassword)
{
    var request = new CreateDBClusterRequest
    {
        DatabaseName = dbName,
        DBClusterIdentifier = clusterIdentifier,
        DBClusterParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
        Engine = dbEngine,
        EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
        MasterUsername = adminName,
        MasterUserPassword = adminPassword,
    };
```

```
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterAsync(request);
        return response.DBCluster;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersionName);
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBCluster(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBCluster. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                        << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateDbCluster creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified
 parameter group.
// The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified
 engine and
// engine version.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, parameterGroupName string,
```

```
 dbName string, dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, adminName string,
 adminPassword string) (
 *types.DBCluster, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBCluster(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:                      aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  DatabaseName:                aws.String(dbName),
  EngineVersion:               aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  MasterUserPassword:          aws.String(adminPassword),
  MasterUsername:              aws.String(adminName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBCluster, err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createDBCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbParameterGroupFamily, String dbName,
            String dbClusterIdentifier, String userName, String password) {
        try {
            CreateDbClusterRequest clusterRequest =
 CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .databaseName(dbName)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .masterUsername(userName)
                    .masterUserPassword(password)
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterResponse response =
 rdsClient.createDBCluster(clusterRequest);
            return response.dbCluster().dbClusterArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBCluster(
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    dbClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    userName: String?,
    password: String?,
): String? {
    val clusterRequest =
        CreateDbClusterRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
```

```
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifierVal
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            masterUsername = userName
            masterUserPassword = password
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbCluster(clusterRequest)
        return response.dbCluster?.dbClusterArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_db_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_name,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_name,
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified parameter
group.
        The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified
engine and
        engine version.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to create.
        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to associate
with
                                     the DB cluster.
        :param db_name: The name of the database to create.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of the database that is created,
such as MySql.
        :param db_engine_version: The version of the database engine.
        :param admin_name: The user name of the database administrator.
        :param admin_password: The password of the database administrator.
        :return: The newly created DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster(
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name,
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            cluster = response["DBCluster"]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return cluster
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql
database and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine
and engine version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql',
EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check
for DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
```

```
                "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
            ));
        }
        let create_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .create_db_cluster(
                DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                DB_ENGINE,
                self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
                self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
                self.password
                    .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                    .expect("password"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
            .unwrap()
            .db_cluster
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
```

```
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for
ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
```

```
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() ==
Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }
```

```
    pub async fn create_db_cluster(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameter_group: &str,
        engine: &str,
        version: &str,
        username: &str,
        password: SecretString,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterOutput, SdkError<CreateDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(name)
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(parameter_group)
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(version)
            .master_username(username)
            .master_user_password(password.expose_secret())
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
```

```
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
```

```
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message
 == "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
```

```
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}
```

```
#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
```

```
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Create a custom cluster parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">The family of the parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description for the new parameter group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new parameter group object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup>
 CreateCustomClusterParameterGroupAsync(
        string parameterGroupFamily,
        string groupName,
        string description)
    {
        var request = new CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Description = description,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";
```

```
    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
        request.SetDescription("Example cluster parameter group.");

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully
 created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the
 specified
// parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily:      aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:                 aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterParameterGroup, err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createDBClusterParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName,
           String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
       try {
           CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                   .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                   .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                   .build();

           CreateDbClusterParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest);
           System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbClusterParameterGroup().dbClusterParameterGroupName());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBClusterParameterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupNameVal: String?,
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
) {
    val groupRequest =
        CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupNameVal
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The group name is
 ${response.dbClusterParameterGroup?.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the specified
 parameter group
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter
 group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of
 the new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group.
rds.CreateDbClusterParameterGroup(DBParameterGroupFamily='aurora-mysql8.0')
   pub async fn set_engine(&mut self, engine: &str, version: &str) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       self.engine_family = Some(engine.to_string());
       self.engine_version = Some(version.to_string());
       let create_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_DESCRIPTION,
               engine,
           )
           .await;

       match create_db_cluster_parameter_group {
           Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput {
```

```
                db_cluster_parameter_group: None,
                ..
            }) => {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with(
                    "CreateDBClusterParameterGroup had empty response",
                ));
            }
            Err(error) => {
                if error.code() == Some("DBParameterGroupAlreadyExists") {
                    info!("Cluster Parameter Group already exists, nothing to
 do");
                } else {
                    return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Could not create Cluster Parameter Group",
                        &error,
                    ));
                }
            }
            _ => {
                info!("Created Cluster Parameter Group");
            }
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
        family: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
 SdkError<CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .description(description)
            .db_parameter_group_family(family)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
```

```
async fn test_scenario_set_engine() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-
mysql8.0").await;

    assert_eq!(set_engine, Ok(()));
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql"), scenario.engine_family.as_deref());
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql8.0"), scenario.engine_version.as_deref());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_not_create() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _|
 Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
```

```
    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-
mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_param_group_exists() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|_, _, _| true)
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError::DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault(
                    DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault::builder().build(),
                ),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-
mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterSnapshot>
CreateClusterSnapshotByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier, string
snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
            });

        return response.DBClusterSnapshot;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                    client.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateClusterSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context,
 clusterName string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterSnapshotInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterSnapshot, nil
 }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createDBClusterSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
           String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
       try {
           CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                   .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                   .build();

           CreateDbClusterSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
           System.out.println("The Snapshot ARN is " +
response.dbClusterSnapshot().dbClusterSnapshotArn());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBClusterSnapshot(
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
) {
    val snapshotRequest =
        CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest)
        println("The Snapshot ARN is
 ${response.dbClusterSnapshot?.dbClusterSnapshotArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, cluster_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param cluster_id: The DB cluster to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_snapshot(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id,
 DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                cluster_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql
database and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine
and engine version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql',
EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check
for DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
```

```
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                DB_ENGINE,
                self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
                self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
                self.password
                    .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                    .expect("password"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
            .unwrap()
            .db_cluster
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
```

```
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for
ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }
```

```
            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() ==
Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn snapshot_cluster(
        &self,
        db_cluster_identifier: &str,
        snapshot_name: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput,
SdkError<CreateDBClusterSnapshotError>> {
        self.inner
```

```
            .create_db_cluster_snapshot()
            .db_cluster_identifier(db_cluster_identifier)
            .db_cluster_snapshot_identifier(snapshot_name)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
```

```
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
```

```
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));
```

```
    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message
 == "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
```

```
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
```

```
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

.db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
```

```
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
```

```
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateDBInstance` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance
   /// with a particular set of properties. Use the action
DescribeDBInstancesAsync
   /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
   /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
   /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
   /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
   public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstanceInClusterAsync(
       string dbClusterIdentifier,
       string dbInstanceIdentifier,
       string dbEngine,
```

```
        string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass)
    {
        // When creating the instance within a cluster, do not specify the name
or size.
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
 "",
                             client);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)
```

```
type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateInstanceInCluster creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster.
 The first database that is
// created defaults to a read-write DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateInstanceInCluster(ctx context.Context,
 clusterName string, instanceName string,
 dbEngine string, dbInstanceClass string) (*types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBClusterIdentifier:  aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createDBInstanceCluster(RdsClient rdsClient,
```

```
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
            String instanceClass) {
        try {
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
 CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .dbInstanceClass(instanceClass)
                    .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
 rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
 response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());
            return response.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBInstanceCluster(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    instanceClassVal: String?,
```

```
): String? {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = instanceClassVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
        return response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
```

```
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_instance_in_cluster(
        self, instance_id, cluster_id, db_engine, instance_class
    ):
        """
        Creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster. The first database
that is
        created defaults to a read-write DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param cluster_id: The ID of the DB cluster where the DB instance is
created.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
                          This must be compatible with the configured parameter
group
                          of the DB cluster.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id,
                Engine=db_engine,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql
database and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine
and engine version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql',
EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check
for DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
```

```
                self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
                self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
                self.password
                    .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                    .expect("password"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
            .unwrap()
            .db_cluster
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
```

```
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for
ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
```

```
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() ==
Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn create_db_instance(
        &self,
        cluster_name: &str,
        instance_name: &str,
        instance_class: &str,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<CreateDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_instance()
```

```
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_name)
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_name)
            .db_instance_class(instance_class)
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
```

```
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
```

```
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
```

```
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message
 == "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
```

```
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
```

```
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

.db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
```

```
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
```

```
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteDBCluster` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB cluster object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBCluster> DeleteDBClusterByIdentifierAsync(string
 dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterAsync(
            new DeleteDBClusterRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true
            });
```

```
        return response.DBCluster;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBCluster(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB cluster deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                clusterDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB cluster to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout << "This may take a while." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBCluster. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                            << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteDbCluster deletes a DB cluster without keeping a final snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBCluster(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:   aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
       try {
           DeleteDbClusterRequest deleteDbClusterRequest =
DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                   .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                   .build();

           rdsClient.deleteDBCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest);
           System.out.println(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier + " was deleted!");

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteCluster(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String) {
    val deleteDbClusterRequest =
        DeleteDbClusterRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        rdsClient.deleteDbCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest)
        println("$dbInstanceClusterIdentifier was deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
```

```
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name, SkipFinalSnapshot=True
            )
            logger.info("Deleted DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances =
self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
```

```
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
```

```
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
```

```
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster(
        &self,
        cluster_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
```

```
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
```

```
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
```

```
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
```

```
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _})
 if message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteClusterParameterGroupByNameAsync(string
groupName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        result = false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteDBClusterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName, String clusterDBARN)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean isDataDel = false;
           boolean didFind;
           String instanceARN;

           // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
           while (!isDataDel) {
               DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
               List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
               int listSize = instanceList.size();
               didFind = false;
               int index = 1;
               for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                   instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                   if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                       System.out.println(clusterDBARN + " still exists");
                       didFind = true;
                   }
                   if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                       // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                       isDataDel = true;
                   }
                   Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
```

```
                    index++;
                }
            }

            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest clusterParameterGroupRequest =
 DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest
                    .builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                    .build();


 rdsClient.deleteDBClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest);
            System.out.println(dbClusterGroupName + " was deleted.");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
@Throws(InterruptedException::class)
suspend fun deleteDBClusterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupName: String,
    clusterDBARN: String,
) {
    var isDataDel = false
    var didFind: Boolean
```

```
    var instanceARN: String

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
        while (!isDataDel) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances()
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            val listSize = instanceList?.size
            isDataDel = false
            didFind = false
            var index = 1
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn.toString()
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                        println("$clusterDBARN still exists")
                        didFind = true
                    }
                    if (index == listSize && !didFind) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
 database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true
                    }
                    delay(slTime * 1000)
                    index++
                }
            }
        }
        val clusterParameterGroupRequest =
            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            }

        rdsClient.deleteDbClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest)
        println("$dbClusterGroupName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
```

```
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances =
self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
```

```
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
```

```
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
```

```
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
 SdkError<DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
```

```
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
Describe Cluster
```

```
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
```

```
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );
```

```
    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _})
 if message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteDBInstance` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstanceByIdentifierAsync(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
            request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                instanceDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB instance to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBInstance. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
       try {
           DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                   .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                   .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                   .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                   .build();

           DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
           System.out.println("The status of the database is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances =
self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
```

```
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
```

```
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
```

```
        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
 rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
 DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_instance(
        &self,
        instance_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_instance()
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
```

```
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
```

```
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _})
if message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });
```

```
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the description of a DB cluster parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The parameter group description.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup?>
DescribeCustomDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBClusterParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroups.FirstOrDefault();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
                      CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." <<
std::endl;
```

```
            dbParameterGroupFamily =
 outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterParameterGroups()
[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}
```

```
// GetParameterGroup gets a DB cluster parameter group by name.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient,
String dbClusterGroupName) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
```

```
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            List<DBClusterParameterGroup> groups =
 rdsClient.describeDBClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
                    .dbClusterParameterGroups();
            for (DBClusterParameterGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
 group.dbClusterParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
 group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameterGroups(dbClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val groupsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
```

```
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
        response.dbClusterParameterGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)
```

```
    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The requested parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_parameter_groups(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBClusterParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDBClusterParameters` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the cluster parameters in a parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="source">The optional name of the source filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>>
DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(string groupName, string? source = null)
    {
        var paramList = new List<Parameter>();

        DescribeDBClusterParametersResponse response;
        var request = new DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest
        {
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Source = source,
        };

        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await
_amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync(request);
            paramList.AddRange(response.Parameters);

            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);

        return paramList;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBClusterParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBCLusterParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the cluster parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBCLusterParameters(const Aws::String
 &parameterGroupName,
                                            const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                            const Aws::String &source,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parametersResult,
                                            const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
```

```
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter
 group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeDBClusterParametersPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:                      aws.String(source),
  })
```

```
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get paramaeters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbCLusterGroupName, int flag) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
           if (flag == 0) {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                       .build();
           } else {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                       .source("user")
                       .build();
           }
```

```
            DescribeDbClusterParametersResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeDBClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset
or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") ==
0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameters(
    dbCLusterGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
 auto_increment_increment.
            val paraName = para.parameterName
            if (paraName != null) {
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    println("*** The parameter value is  ${para.parameterValue}")
                    println("*** The parameter data type is ${para.dataType}")
                    println("*** The parameter description is
 ${para.description}")
                    println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
 filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this
 prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
 retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
 that
```

```
                        were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBClusterParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator =
self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_cluster_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get the parameter group. rds.DescribeDbClusterParameterGroups
   // Get parameters in the group. This is a long list so you will have to
paginate. Find the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
(by ParameterName). rds.DescribeDbClusterParameters
   // Parse the ParameterName, Description, and AllowedValues values and display
them.
   pub async fn cluster_parameters(&self) ->
Result<Vec<AuroraScenarioParameter>, ScenarioError> {
       let parameters_output = self
           .rds
           .describe_db_cluster_parameters(DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME)
           .await;

       if let Err(err) = parameters_output {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               format!("Failed to retrieve parameters for
{DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME}"),
               &err,
           ));
       }

       let parameters = parameters_output
           .unwrap()
           .into_iter()
           .flat_map(|p| p.parameters.unwrap_or_default().into_iter())
           .filter(|p|
FILTER_PARAMETER_NAMES.contains(p.parameter_name().unwrap_or_default()))
           .map(AuroraScenarioParameter::from)
           .collect::<Vec<_>>();

       Ok(parameters)
   }

   pub async fn describe_db_cluster_parameters(
       &self,
       name: &str,
   ) -> Result<Vec<DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput>,
SdkError<DescribeDBClusterParametersError>>
   {
       self.inner
           .describe_db_cluster_parameters()
           .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
           .into_paginator()
```

```
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(vec![DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput::builder()
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("a").build())
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("b").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("c").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("d").build())
                .build()])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());

    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await.expect("cluster params");
    let names: Vec<String> = params.into_iter().map(|p| p.name).collect();
    assert_eq!(
        names,
        vec!["auto_increment_offset", "auto_increment_increment"]
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters_error() {
```

```
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClusterParametersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_cluster_parameters_error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await;
    assert_matches!(params, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to retrieve parameters for RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBClusterSnapshot>>
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBClusterSnapshot>();

        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsResponse response;
        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request = new
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.DBClusterSnapshots);
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetClusterSnapshot gets a DB cluster snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName
 string) (*types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsInput{
   DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void waitForSnapshotReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbSnapshotIdentifier,
           String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
       try {
           boolean snapshotReady = false;
           String snapshotReadyStr;
           System.out.println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.");

           DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest snapshotsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                   .build();

           while (!snapshotReady) {
               DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest);
               List<DBClusterSnapshot> snapshotList =
response.dbClusterSnapshots();
               for (DBClusterSnapshot snapshot : snapshotList) {
                   snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status();
                   if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                       snapshotReady = true;
                   } else {
                       System.out.println(".");
                       Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 5000);
                   }
               }
```

```
            }

            System.out.println("The Snapshot is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun waitSnapshotReady(
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
) {
    var snapshotReady = false
    var snapshotReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.")

    val snapshotsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest {
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!snapshotReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest)
            val snapshotList = response.dbClusterSnapshots
            if (snapshotList != null) {
```

```
                for (snapshot in snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status.toString()
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true
                    } else {
                        println(".")
                        delay(slTime * 5000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Snapshot is available!")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
```

```
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_snapshots(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get DB cluster snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDBClusters` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB clusters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBCluster>> DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync(string?
dbClusterIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBCluster>();

        DescribeDBClustersResponse response;
        DescribeDBClustersRequest request = new DescribeDBClustersRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClustersAsync(request);
            if (response.DBClusters != null)
            {
                results.AddRange(response.DBClusters);
            }
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

//! Routine which gets a DB cluster description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbClusterIdentifier: A DB cluster identifier.
 \param clusterResult: The 'DBCluster' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBCluster(const Aws::String &dbClusterIdentifier,
                                       Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster &clusterResult,
                                       const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBClusters(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        clusterResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_CLUSTER_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                    << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB cluster does not exist.
        // Instead, clusterResult is set to empty.
    else {
        clusterResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
    }

    return result;

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}
```

```
// GetDbCluster gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string)
 (*types.DBCluster, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{
   DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBClusterNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB cluster %v does not exist.\n", clusterName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusters[0], err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbCLusterGroupName, int flag) {
        try {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
            if (flag == 0) {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest =
 DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
```

```
                        .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                        .build();
            } else {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                        .source("user")
                        .build();
            }

            DescribeDbClusterParametersResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeDBClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset
or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") ==
0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameters(
    dbCLusterGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
 auto_increment_increment.
            val paraName = para.parameterName
            if (paraName != null) {
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    println("*** The parameter value is  ${para.parameterValue}")
                    println("*** The parameter data type is ${para.dataType}")
                    println("*** The parameter description is
 ${para.description}")
```

```
                    println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
```

```
        Gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_clusters(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name
            )
            cluster = response["DBClusters"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
                logger.info("Cluster %s does not exist.", cluster_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify the existence of DB cluster %s. Here's why:
%s: %s",
                    cluster_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
```

```
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql
database and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine
and engine version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql',
EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check
for DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
               self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
               self.password
                   .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                   .expect("password"),
           )
           .await;
       if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
               &err,
           ));
       }

       self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
           .unwrap()
           .db_cluster
           .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

       if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
```

```
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;
```

```
            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for
ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() ==
Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }
```

```
            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_clusters(
        &self,
        id: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbClustersOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBClustersError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_clusters()
            .db_cluster_identifier(id)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
```

```
.db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
```

```
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
```

```
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));
```

```
    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message
 == "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
```

```
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
```

```
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()

.db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()
```

```
 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBEngineVersions` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">The name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family
name.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>>
DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(string engine,
        string? parameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                         const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersionsResult,
                                         const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
```

```
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersions =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();

            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
                                        engineVersions.begin(),
 engineVersions.end());
            marker  = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
```

```
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine string,
 parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
       try {
           DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                   .engine("aurora-mysql")
                   .defaultOnly(true)
                   .maxRecords(20)
                   .build();

           DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
           List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

           // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
           for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
               System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
the database engine is "
                       + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
               System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
engineOb.engine());
               System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
engineOb.engineVersion());
           }

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get a list of allowed engine versions.
suspend fun getAllowedClusterEngines(dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?) {
    val versionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(versionsRequest)
        response.dbEngineVersions?.forEach { dbEngine ->
            println("The engine version is ${dbEngine.engineVersion}")
            println("The engine description is ${dbEngine.dbEngineDescription}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned
 list of
                                       engine versions to those that are
 compatible with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get available engine families for Aurora MySql.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') and build a set of the
'DBParameterGroupFamily' field values. I get {aurora-mysql8.0, aurora-mysql5.7}.
   pub async fn get_engines(&self) -> Result<HashMap<String, Vec<String>>,
ScenarioError> {
       let describe_db_engine_versions =
self.rds.describe_db_engine_versions(DB_ENGINE).await;
       trace!(versions=?describe_db_engine_versions, "full list of versions");

       if let Err(err) = describe_db_engine_versions {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               "Failed to retrieve DB Engine Versions",
               &err,
           ));
       };

       let version_count = describe_db_engine_versions
           .as_ref()
           .map(|o| o.db_engine_versions().len())
           .unwrap_or_default();
```

```
        info!(version_count, "got list of versions");

        // Create a map of engine families to their available versions.
        let mut versions = HashMap::<String, Vec<String>>::new();
        describe_db_engine_versions
            .unwrap()
            .db_engine_versions()
            .iter()
            .filter_map(
                |v| match (&v.db_parameter_group_family, &v.engine_version) {
                    (Some(family), Some(version)) => Some((family.clone(),
 version.clone())),
                    _ => None,
                },
            )
            .for_each(|(family, version)|
 versions.entry(family).or_default().push(version));

        Ok(versions)
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_engine_versions(
        &self,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
 SdkError<DescribeDBEngineVersionsError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_engine_versions()
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput::builder()
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
```

```
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1b")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f2")
                        .engine_version("f2a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(DbEngineVersion::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;

    assert_eq!(
        versions_map,
        Ok(HashMap::from([
            ("f1".into(), vec!["f1a".into(), "f1b".into()]),
            ("f2".into(), vec!["f2a".into()])
        ]))
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines_failed() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBEngineVersionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
```

```
                    "describe_db_engine_versions error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;
    assert_matches!(
        versions_map,
        Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message == "Failed to
 retrieve DB Engine Versions"
    );
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBInstances` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync(string?
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);
```

```
//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance
 &instanceResult,
                                        const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBInstances. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string)
 (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
```

```
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Waits until the database instance is available.
   public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterIdentifier) {
       boolean instanceReady = false;
       String instanceReadyStr;
       System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
       try {
           DescribeDbClustersRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                   .build();

           while (!instanceReady) {
               DescribeDbClustersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusters(instanceRequest);
               List<DBCluster> clusterList = response.dbClusters();
               for (DBCluster cluster : clusterList) {
                   instanceReadyStr = cluster.status();
                   if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                       instanceReady = true;
                   } else {
```

```
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database cluster is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun waitDBAuroraInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")
    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    var endpoint = ""
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            response.dbInstances?.forEach { instance ->
                instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
```

```
                    endpoint = instance.endpoint?.address.toString()
                    instanceReady = true
                } else {
                    print(".")
                    delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database instance is available! The connection endpoint is
 $endpoint")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances =
self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
```

```
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
```

```
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in
{status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
```

```
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_instances(
        &self,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbInstancesOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBInstancesError>> {
        self.inner.describe_db_instances().send().await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
```

```
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
```

```
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
```

```
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
```

```
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _})
 if message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second
 Describe Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPagedAsync(string engine, string
engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
```

```
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::chooseDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                           const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                           Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                           const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption>
&options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option:
options) {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                              instanceClass) == instanceClasses.end()) {
                    instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions.
"
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available DB instance classes for your database engine
are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
```

```
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {
```

```
 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instances []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instances: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instances = append(instances, output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instances, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .maxRecords(20)
```

```
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
 the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the DB engine versions that support a specific DB instance class in an AWS Region.

```
$params = @{
  Engine = 'aurora-postgresql'
  DBInstanceClass = 'db.r5.large'
  Region = 'us-east-1'
}
Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption @params
```

Example 2: This example lists the DB instance classes that are supported for a specific DB engine version in an AWS Region.

```
$params = @{
  Engine = 'aurora-postgresql'
  EngineVersion = '13.6'
  Region = 'us-east-1'
}
Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption @params
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the DB engine versions that support a specific DB instance class in an AWS Region.

```
$params = @{
  Engine = 'aurora-postgresql'
  DBInstanceClass = 'db.r5.large'
  Region = 'us-east-1'
}
Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption @params
```

Example 2: This example lists the DB instance classes that are supported for a specific DB engine version in an AWS Region.

```
$params = @{
  Engine = 'aurora-postgresql'
  EngineVersion = '13.6'
  Region = 'us-east-1'
}
Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption @params
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
 instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by
 the DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
 compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
```

```
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn get_instance_classes(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>,
ScenarioError> {
       let describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items = self
           .rds
           .describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version
                   .as_ref()
```

```
                    .expect("engine version for db instance options")
                    .as_str(),
            )
            .await;

        describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items
            .map(|options| {
                options
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|o| o.storage_type() == Some("aurora"))
                    .map(|o|
 o.db_instance_class().unwrap_or_default().to_string())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Could not get available instance
 classes", &err))
    }

    pub async fn describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
        &self,
        engine: &str,
        engine_version: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<OrderableDbInstanceOption>,
 SdkError<DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(engine_version)
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()
```

```
 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Ok(vec![
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora-iopt1")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t2")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t3")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
            ])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario
        .set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0")
        .await
        .expect("set engine");

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_eq!(
        instance_classes,
        Ok(vec!["t1".into(), "t2".into(), "t3".into()])
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
```

```
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_orderable_db_instance_options_error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_family = Some("aurora-mysql".into());
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_matches!(
        instance_classes,
        Err(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if message == "Could not get
 available instance classes"
    );
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Modify the specified integer parameters with new values from user input.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name for the parameters.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The list of integer parameters to modify.</
param>
    /// <param name="newValue">Optional int value to set for parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>The name of the group that was modified.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyIntegerParametersInGroupAsync(string
 groupName, List<Parameter> parameters, int newValue = 0)
    {
        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable.GetValueOrDefault() && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the
 allowed values {p.AllowedValues} ");

                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    int.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        var request = new ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            Parameters = parameters,
```

```
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var result = await
_amazonRDS.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return result.DBClusterParameterGroupName;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully
modified."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                        << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:                  params,
  })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient,
String dbClusterGroupName) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                   .maxRecords(20)
                   .build();

           List<DBClusterParameterGroup> groups =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
                   .dbClusterParameterGroups();
           for (DBClusterParameterGroup group : groups) {
               System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupName());
               System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn());
           }

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
suspend fun modifyDBClusterParas(dClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val parameter1 =
        Parameter {
            parameterName = "auto_increment_offset"
            applyMethod = ApplyMethod.fromValue("immediate")
            parameterValue = "5"
        }

    val paraList = ArrayList<Parameter>()
    paraList.add(parameter1)
    val groupRequest =
        ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dClusterGroupName
            parameters = paraList
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.modifyDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The parameter group ${response.dbClusterParameterGroupName} was
 successfully modified")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS) client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Parameters=update_parameters,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Modify both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
parameters in one call in the custom parameter group. Set their ParameterValue
fields to a new allowable value. rds.ModifyDbClusterParameterGroup.
   pub async fn update_auto_increment(
       &self,
       offset: u8,
       increment: u8,
   ) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
       let modify_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
           .rds
           .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
```

```
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value(format!("{offset}"))
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value(format!("{increment}"))
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ],
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(error) = modify_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to modify cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ));
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameters: Vec<Parameter>,
    ) -> Result<ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
 SdkError<ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .set_parameters(Some(parameters))
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|name, params| {
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(
                params,
                &vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value("10")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value("20")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ]
            );
            true
        })
        .return_once(|_, _|
 Ok(ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    scenario
        .update_auto_increment(10, 20)
        .await
        .expect("update auto increment");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
```

```
                    "modify_db_cluster_parameter_group_error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(),
 SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let update = scenario.update_auto_increment(10, 20).await;
    assert_matches!(update, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message
 == "Failed to modify cluster parameter group");
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Aurora using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Aurora with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Aurora or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a lending library REST API
- Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email

Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Code examples for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Auto Scaling User Guide** – More information about Auto Scaling.
- **Auto Scaling API Reference** – Details about all available Auto Scaling actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.AutoScaling;

public class HelloAutoScaling
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Hello Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling. List EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args"></param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var client = new AmazonAutoScalingClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get a description of your Auto Scaling
 groups.");

        var response = await client.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync();

        if (response.AutoScalingGroups == null ||
 response.AutoScalingGroups.Count == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Sorry, you don't have any Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 groups.");
            return;
        }
        response.AutoScalingGroups.ForEach(autoScalingGroup =>
        {
```

```
 Console.WriteLine($"{autoScalingGroup.AutoScalingGroupName}\t{autoScalingGroup.Availabil
        });

    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS autoscaling)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_autoscaling")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
```

```
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_autoscaling.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_autoscaling.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/autoscaling/AutoScalingClient.h>
#include <aws/autoscaling/model/DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Autoscaling" starter application which initializes an Amazon EC2
 Auto Scaling client and describes the
 *  Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_autoscaling'
```

```
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoscalingClient(clientConfig);

        std::vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.

        do {

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
                    autoscalingClient.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup>
 &autoScalingGroups =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
                for (auto &group: autoScalingGroups) {
                    groupNames.push_back(group.GetAutoScalingGroupName());
                }
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups.
 "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
```

```
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << groupNames.size() << " AutoScaling groups." <<
 std::endl;
        for (auto &groupName: groupNames) {
            std::cout << "AutoScaling group: " << groupName << std::endl;
        }

    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingGroup;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeAutoScalingGroups {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        describeGroups(autoScalingClient);
    }

    public static void describeGroups(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups();
        List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
        groups.forEach(group -> {
            System.out.println("Group Name: " + group.autoScalingGroupName());
            System.out.println("Group ARN: " + group.autoScalingGroupARN());
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function helloService()
    {
        $autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient([
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
```

```
        ]);

        $groups = $autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([]);
        var_dump($groups);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_autoscaling(autoscaling_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 client and list
    some of the Auto Scaling groups in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client object.
    """
    print(
        "Hello, Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling! Let's list up to ten of you Auto Scaling
 groups:"
    )
    response = autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups()
    groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
    if groups:
        for group in groups:
            print(f"\t{group['AutoScalingGroupName']}:
 {group['AvailabilityZones']}")
```

```
    else:
        print("There are no Auto Scaling groups in your account.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_autoscaling(boto3.client("autoscaling"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-autoscaling'
require 'logger'

# AutoScalingManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Auto Scaling
 operations
# such as listing all Auto Scaling groups in the current AWS account.
class AutoScalingManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Gets and prints a list of Auto Scaling groups for the account.
  def list_auto_scaling_groups
    paginator = @client.describe_auto_scaling_groups
    auto_scaling_groups = []
    paginator.each_page do |page|
      auto_scaling_groups.concat(page.auto_scaling_groups)
    end
```

```
    if auto_scaling_groups.empty?
      @logger.info('No Auto Scaling groups found for this account.')
    else
      auto_scaling_groups.each do |group|
        @logger.info("Auto Scaling group name: #{group.auto_scaling_group_name}")
        @logger.info("  Group ARN:             #{group.auto_scaling_group_arn}")
        @logger.info("  Min/max/desired:       #{group.min_size}/
#{group.max_size}/#{group.desired_capacity}")
        @logger.info("\n")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  autoscaling_client = Aws::AutoScaling::Client.new
  manager = AutoScalingManager.new(autoscaling_client)
  manager.list_auto_scaling_groups
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_groups(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_auto_scaling_groups().send().await?;

    println!("Groups:");

    let groups = resp.auto_scaling_groups();
```

```
    for group in groups {
        println!(
            "Name:  {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown")
        );
        println!(
            "Arn:   {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_arn().unwrap_or("unknown"),
        );
        println!("Zones: {:?}", group.availability_zones(),);
        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} group(s)", groups.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Auto Scaling
  - Learn the basics of Auto Scaling with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
    - Use AttachInstances with a CLI
    - Use AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AttachLoadBalancers with a CLI
    - Use CompleteLifecycleAction with a CLI
    - Use CreateAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateLaunchConfiguration with a CLI
    - Use CreateOrUpdateTags with a CLI
    - Use DeleteAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteLaunchConfiguration with a CLI
    - Use DeleteLifecycleHook with a CLI

- Use DeleteNotificationConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteScheduledAction with a CLI
- Use DeleteTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountLimits with a CLI
- Use DescribeAdjustmentTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLaunchConfigurations with a CLI
- Use DescribeLifecycleHookTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLifecycleHooks with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DescribeMetricCollectionTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeNotificationConfigurations with a CLI
- Use DescribePolicies with a CLI
- Use DescribeScalingActivities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScalingProcessTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledActions with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes with a CLI
- Use DetachInstances with a CLI
- Use DetachLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DisableMetricsCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableMetricsCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnterStandby with a CLI
- Use ExecutePolicy with a CLI
- Use ExitStandby with a CLI
- Use PutLifecycleHook with a CLI

- Use PutNotificationConfiguration with a CLI

- Use PutScalingPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction with a CLI
- Use RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat with a CLI
- Use ResumeProcesses with a CLI
- Use SetDesiredCapacity with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetInstanceHealth with a CLI
- Use SetInstanceProtection with a CLI
- Use SuspendProcesses with a CLI
- Use TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
  - Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Auto Scaling
- Learn the basics of Auto Scaling with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs
  - Use AttachInstances with a CLI
  - Use AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AttachLoadBalancers with a CLI
  - Use CompleteLifecycleAction with a CLI
  - Use CreateAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateLaunchConfiguration with a CLI
  - Use CreateOrUpdateTags with a CLI
  - Use DeleteAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteLaunchConfiguration with a CLI
  - Use DeleteLifecycleHook with a CLI

- Use DeleteNotificationConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteScheduledAction with a CLI
- Use DeleteTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountLimits with a CLI
- Use DescribeAdjustmentTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLaunchConfigurations with a CLI
- Use DescribeLifecycleHookTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLifecycleHooks with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DescribeMetricCollectionTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeNotificationConfigurations with a CLI
- Use DescribePolicies with a CLI
- Use DescribeScalingActivities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScalingProcessTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledActions with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes with a CLI
- Use DetachInstances with a CLI
- Use DetachLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DisableMetricsCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableMetricsCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnterStandby with a CLI
- Use ExecutePolicy with a CLI
- Use ExitStandby with a CLI
- Use PutLifecycleHook with a CLI

- Use PutNotificationConfiguration with a CLI

- Use PutScalingPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction with a CLI
- Use RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat with a CLI
- Use ResumeProcesses with a CLI
- Use SetDesiredCapacity with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetInstanceHealth with a CLI
- Use SetInstanceProtection with a CLI
- Use SuspendProcesses with a CLI
- Use TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.AutoScaling;

public class HelloAutoScaling
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Hello Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling. List EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args"></param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var client = new AmazonAutoScalingClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get a description of your Auto Scaling
 groups.");

        var response = await client.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync();

        if (response.AutoScalingGroups == null ||
 response.AutoScalingGroups.Count == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Sorry, you don't have any Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 groups.");
            return;
        }
        response.AutoScalingGroups.ForEach(autoScalingGroup =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{autoScalingGroup.AutoScalingGroupName}\t{autoScalingGroup.Availabil
        });

    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS autoscaling)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_autoscaling")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_autoscaling.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
```

```
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_autoscaling.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/autoscaling/AutoScalingClient.h>
#include <aws/autoscaling/model/DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Autoscaling" starter application which initializes an Amazon EC2
 Auto Scaling client and describes the
 *  Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_autoscaling'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoscalingClient(clientConfig);

        std::vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.

        do {

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
```

```
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
                    autoscalingClient.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup>
 &autoScalingGroups =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
                for (auto &group: autoScalingGroups) {
                    groupNames.push_back(group.GetAutoScalingGroupName());
                }
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups.
 "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << groupNames.size() << " AutoScaling groups." <<
 std::endl;
        for (auto &groupName: groupNames) {
            std::cout << "AutoScaling group: " << groupName << std::endl;
        }

    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingGroup;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeAutoScalingGroups {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        describeGroups(autoScalingClient);
    }

    public static void describeGroups(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups();
        List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
        groups.forEach(group -> {
            System.out.println("Group Name: " + group.autoScalingGroupName());
            System.out.println("Group ARN: " + group.autoScalingGroupARN());
```

```
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function helloService()
    {
        $autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient([
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ]);

        $groups = $autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([]);
        var_dump($groups);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_autoscaling(autoscaling_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 client and list
    some of the Auto Scaling groups in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client object.
    """
    print(
        "Hello, Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling! Let's list up to ten of you Auto Scaling
 groups:"
    )
    response = autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups()
    groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
    if groups:
        for group in groups:
            print(f"\t{group['AutoScalingGroupName']}:
 {group['AvailabilityZones']}")
    else:
        print("There are no Auto Scaling groups in your account.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_autoscaling(boto3.client("autoscaling"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-autoscaling'
require 'logger'

# AutoScalingManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Auto Scaling
 operations
# such as listing all Auto Scaling groups in the current AWS account.
class AutoScalingManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Gets and prints a list of Auto Scaling groups for the account.
  def list_auto_scaling_groups
    paginator = @client.describe_auto_scaling_groups
    auto_scaling_groups = []
    paginator.each_page do |page|
      auto_scaling_groups.concat(page.auto_scaling_groups)
    end

    if auto_scaling_groups.empty?
      @logger.info('No Auto Scaling groups found for this account.')
    else
      auto_scaling_groups.each do |group|
        @logger.info("Auto Scaling group name: #{group.auto_scaling_group_name}")
        @logger.info("  Group ARN:             #{group.auto_scaling_group_arn}")
```

```
        @logger.info("  Min/max/desired:       #{group.min_size}/
#{group.max_size}/#{group.desired_capacity}")
        @logger.info("\n")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  autoscaling_client = Aws::AutoScaling::Client.new
  manager = AutoScalingManager.new(autoscaling_client)
  manager.list_auto_scaling_groups
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_groups(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_auto_scaling_groups().send().await?;

    println!("Groups:");

    let groups = resp.auto_scaling_groups();

    for group in groups {
        println!(
            "Name:  {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown")
        );
        println!(
            "Arn:   {}",
```

```
            group.auto_scaling_group_arn().unwrap_or("unknown"),
        );
        println!("Zones: {:?}", group.availability_zones(),);
        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} group(s)", groups.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Learn the basics of Auto Scaling with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using Amazon.AutoScaling;
global using Amazon.AutoScaling.Model;
```

```
global using Amazon.CloudWatch;
global using AutoScalingActions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;



using Amazon.EC2;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Host = Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host;

namespace AutoScalingBasics;

public class AutoScalingBasics
{

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling, Amazon
        // CloudWatch, and Amazon EC2.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                .AddTransient<AutoScalingWrapper>()
                .AddTransient<CloudWatchWrapper>()
                .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
                .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();


        var autoScalingWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalingWrapper>();
```

```
        var cloudWatchWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<CloudWatchWrapper>();
        var ec2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<EC2Wrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var imageId = configuration["ImageId"];
        var instanceType = configuration["InstanceType"];
        var launchTemplateName = configuration["LaunchTemplateName"];

        launchTemplateName += Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // The name of the Auto Scaling group.
        var groupName = configuration["GroupName"];

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Auto Scaling Basics");
        uiWrapper.DisplayAutoScalingBasicsDescription();

        // Create the launch template and save the template Id to use when
deleting the
        // launch template at the end of the application.
        var launchTemplateId = await
ec2Wrapper.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(imageId!, instanceType!,
launchTemplateName);

        // Confirm that the template was created by asking for a description of
it.
        await ec2Wrapper.DescribeLaunchTemplateAsync(launchTemplateName);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        var availabilityZones = await ec2Wrapper.ListAvailabilityZonesAsync();

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating an Auto Scaling group named {groupName}.");
        await autoScalingWrapper.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
            groupName!,
            launchTemplateName,
            availabilityZones[0].ZoneName);
```

```
        // Keep checking the details of the new group until its lifecycle state
        // is "InService".
        Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for the Auto Scaling group to be active.");

        List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails> instanceDetails;

        do
        {
            instanceDetails = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(groupName!);
        }
        while (instanceDetails.Count <= 0);

        Console.WriteLine($"Auto scaling group {groupName} successfully
created.");
        Console.WriteLine($"{instanceDetails.Count} instances were created for
the group.");

        // Display the details of the Auto Scaling group.
        instanceDetails.ForEach(detail =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Group name: {detail.AutoScalingGroupName}");
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Metrics collection");
        Console.WriteLine($"Enable metrics collection for {groupName}");
        await autoScalingWrapper.EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(groupName!);

        // Show the metrics that are collected for the group.

        // Update the maximum size of the group to three instances.
        Console.WriteLine("--- Update the Auto Scaling group to increase max size
to 3 ---");
        int maxSize = 3;
        await autoScalingWrapper.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupName!,
launchTemplateName, maxSize);

        Console.WriteLine("--- Describe all Auto Scaling groups to show the
current state of the group ---");
        var groups = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName!);
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayGroupDetails(groups!);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Describe account limits");
        await autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAccountLimitsAsync();

        uiWrapper.WaitABit(60, "Waiting for the resources to be ready.");

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Set desired capacity");
        int desiredCapacity = 2;
        await autoScalingWrapper.SetDesiredCapacityAsync(groupName!,
desiredCapacity);

        Console.WriteLine("Get the two instance Id values");

        // Empty the group before getting the details again.
        groups.Clear();
        groups = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName!);
        if (groups.Any())
        {
            foreach (AutoScalingGroup group in groups)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The group name is
{group.AutoScalingGroupName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"The group ARN is
{group.AutoScalingGroupARN}");
                var instances = group.Instances;
                foreach (Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Instance instance in instances)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"The instance id is
{instance.InstanceId}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"The lifecycle state is
{instance.LifecycleState}");
                }
            }
        }

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Scaling Activities");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list the scaling activities that have occurred
for the group.");
```

```
        var activities = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(groupName!);
        if (activities.Any())
        {
            activities.ForEach(activity =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The activity Id is {activity.ActivityId}");
                Console.WriteLine($"The activity details are
{activity.Details}");
            });
        }

        // Display the Amazon CloudWatch metrics that have been collected.
        var metrics = await
cloudWatchWrapper.GetCloudWatchMetricsAsync(groupName!);
        if (metrics.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Metrics collected for {groupName}:");
            metrics.ForEach(metric =>
            {
                Console.Write($"Metric name: {metric.MetricName}\t");
                Console.WriteLine($"Namespace: {metric.Namespace}");
            });
        }

        var dataPoints = await
cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(groupName!);
        if (dataPoints.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Details for the metrics collected:");
            dataPoints.ForEach(detail => { Console.WriteLine(detail); });
        }

        // Disable metrics collection.
        Console.WriteLine("Disabling the collection of metrics for
{groupName}.");
        var success = await
autoScalingWrapper.DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(groupName!);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully stopped metrics collection for
{groupName}.");
        }
```

```
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not stop metrics collection for
 {groupName}.");
        }

        // Terminate all instances in the group.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Terminating Auto Scaling instances");
        Console.WriteLine("Now terminating all instances in the Auto Scaling
 group.");

        if (groups is not null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                // Only delete instances in the AutoScaling group we created.
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(async instance =>
                    {
                        await
 autoScalingWrapper.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });
        }

        // After all instances are terminated, delete the group.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the Auto Scaling group.");
        await autoScalingWrapper.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupName!);

        // Delete the launch template.
        var deletedLaunchTemplateName = await
 ec2Wrapper.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(launchTemplateId);

        if (deletedLaunchTemplateName == launchTemplateName)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted the launch template.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The demo is now concluded.");
    }
}
```

```
namespace AutoScalingBasics;

/// <summary>
/// A class to provide user interface methods for the EC2 AutoScaling Basics
/// scenario.
/// </summary>
public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the steps in the EC2 AutoScaling Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayAutoScalingBasicsDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This code example performs the following
 operations:");
        Console.WriteLine(" 1. Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 2. Creates an Auto Scaling group.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 3. Shows the details of the new Auto Scaling group");
        Console.WriteLine("    to show that only one instance was created.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 4. Enables metrics collection.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 5. Updates the Auto Scaling group to increase the");
        Console.WriteLine("    capacity to three.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 6. Describes Auto Scaling groups again to show the");
        Console.WriteLine("    current state of the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 7. Changes the desired capacity of the Auto
 Scaling");
        Console.WriteLine("    group to use an additional instance.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 8. Shows that there are now instances in the
 group.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 9. Lists the scaling activities that have occurred
 for the group.");
        Console.WriteLine("10. Displays the Amazon CloudWatch metrics that
 have");
        Console.WriteLine("    been collected.");
        Console.WriteLine("11. Disables metrics collection.");
        Console.WriteLine("12. Terminates all instances in the Auto Scaling
 group.");
        Console.WriteLine("13. Deletes the Auto Scaling group.");
        Console.WriteLine("14. Deletes the Amazon EC2 launch template.");
        PressEnter();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display information about the Amazon Ec2 AutoScaling groups passed
    /// in the list of AutoScalingGroup objects.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groups">A list of AutoScalingGroup objects.</param>
    public void DisplayGroupDetails(List<AutoScalingGroup> groups)
    {
        if (groups is null)
            return;

        groups.ForEach(group =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Group name:\t{group.AutoScalingGroupName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Group created:\t{group.CreatedTime}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Maximum number of instances:\t{group.MaxSize}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Desired number of instances:
\t{group.DesiredCapacity}");
        });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage launch templates and metrics. These functions wrap Auto Scaling, Amazon EC2, and CloudWatch actions.

```
namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.AutoScaling;
using Amazon.AutoScaling.Model;

/// <summary>
```

```
/// A class that includes methods to perform Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
/// actions.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalingWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalingWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 client.</param>
    public AutoScalingWrapper(IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name to use for the new Auto Scaling
    /// group.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// launch template to use to create instances in the group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        string availabilityZone)
    {
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var zoneList = new List<string>
            {
                availabilityZone,
            };

        var request = new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
```

```
            AvailabilityZones = zoneList,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
            MaxSize = 6,
            MinSize = 1
        };
        try
        {
            var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group created");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group already exists.");
            return true;
        }
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling quotas to the
    /// active AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DescribeAccountLimitsAsync()
    {
        var response = await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAccountLimitsAsync();
        Console.WriteLine("The maximum number of Auto Scaling groups is " +
 response.MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups);
        Console.WriteLine("The current number of Auto Scaling groups is " +
 response.NumberOfAutoScalingGroups);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities for an
    /// Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Activity>> DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var activities = new List<Activity>();
        var scalingActivitiesRequest = new DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            MaxRecords = 10,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(scalingActivitiesRequest);
        if (response.Activities != null)
        {
            activities = response.Activities;
        }
        return activities;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about the instances in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling details.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>>
 DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = await DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName);
        var instanceIds = new List<string>();
        var instanceDetails = new List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>();
        if (groups != null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName && group.Instances !=
 null)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(instance =>
                    {
```

```
                        instanceIds.Add(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });

            var scalingGroupsRequest = new DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
            {
                MaxRecords = 10,
                InstanceIds = instanceIds,
            };

            var response =
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
                    scalingGroupsRequest);
            if (response.AutoScalingInstances != null)
            {
                instanceDetails = response.AutoScalingInstances;
            }
        }

        return instanceDetails;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of information about Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingGroup>> DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = new List<AutoScalingGroup>();
        var groupList = new List<string>
            {
                groupName,
            };

        var request = new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupNames = groupList,
        };
```

```
        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(request);
        if (response.AutoScalingGroups != null)
        {
            groups = response.AutoScalingGroups;
        }

        return groups;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest = new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            ForceDelete = true,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully deleted {groupName}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete {groupName}.");
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the collection of metric data for an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// group.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var request = new DisableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the collection of metric data for an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var listMetrics = new List<string>
            {
                "GroupMaxSize",
            };

        var collectionRequest = new EnableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            Metrics = listMetrics,
            Granularity = "1Minute",
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(collectionRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Set the desired capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="desiredCapacity">The desired capacity for the Auto
    /// Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetDesiredCapacityAsync(
        string groupName,
        int desiredCapacity)
    {
        var capacityRequest = new SetDesiredCapacityRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            DesiredCapacity = desiredCapacity,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.SetDesiredCapacityAsync(capacityRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"You have set the DesiredCapacity to
 {desiredCapacity}.");

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate all instances in the Auto Scaling group in preparation for
    /// deleting the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the instance to terminate.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string instanceId)
    {
        var request = new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            InstanceId = instanceId,
            ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You have terminated the instance: {instanceId}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Could not terminate {instanceId}");
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the EC2 launch template.</
param>
    /// <param name="maxSize">The maximum number of instances that can be
    /// created for the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        int maxSize)
    {
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var groupRequest = new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            MaxSize = maxSize,
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group
 {groupName}.");
            return true;
        }
```

```
        else
        {
            return false;
        }
    }

}


namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;

public class EC2Wrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EC2Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected Amazon EC2 client.</param>
    public EC2Wrapper(IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2)
    {
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 launch template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="imageId">The image Id to use for instances launched
    /// using the Amazon EC2 launch template.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The type of EC2 instances to create.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the launch template.</param>
    /// <returns>Returns the TemplateID of the new launch template.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
        string imageId,
        string instanceType,
        string launchTemplateName)
    {
        var request = new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest
        {
            LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData
            {
```

```
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
            },
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(request);

        return response.LaunchTemplate.LaunchTemplateId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 launch template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateId">The TemplateId of the launch template to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The name of the EC2 launch template that was deleted.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(string launchTemplateId)
    {
        var request = new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest
        {
            LaunchTemplateId = launchTemplateId,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(request);
        return response.LaunchTemplate.LaunchTemplateName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about an EC2 launch template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the EC2 launch template.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DescribeLaunchTemplateAsync(string
 launchTemplateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeLaunchTemplatesRequest
        {
            LaunchTemplateNames = new List<string> { launchTemplateName, },
        };

        var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeLaunchTemplatesAsync(request);
```

```
        if (response.LaunchTemplates is not null)
        {
            response.LaunchTemplates.ForEach(template =>
            {
                Console.Write($"{template.LaunchTemplateName}\t");
                Console.WriteLine(template.LaunchTemplateId);
            });

            return true;
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the availability zones for the current region.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AvailabilityZone>> ListAvailabilityZonesAsync()
    {
        var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
            new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());

        return response.AvailabilityZones;
    }
}


namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.CloudWatch;
using Amazon.CloudWatch.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Contains methods to access Amazon CloudWatch metrics for the
/// Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling basics scenario.
/// </summary>
public class CloudWatchWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCloudWatch _amazonCloudWatch;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the CloudWatchWrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonCloudWatch">The injected CloudWatch client.</param>
    public CloudWatchWrapper(IAmazonCloudWatch amazonCloudWatch)
    {
        _amazonCloudWatch = amazonCloudWatch;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the metrics information collection for the Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Metrics collected for the Auto Scaling group.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Metric>> GetCloudWatchMetricsAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var metrics = new List<Metric>();
        var filter = new DimensionFilter
        {
            Name = "AutoScalingGroupName",
            Value = $"{groupName}",
        };

        var request = new ListMetricsRequest
        {
            MetricName = "AutoScalingGroupName",
            Dimensions = new List<DimensionFilter> { filter },
            Namespace = "AWS/AutoScaling",
        };

        var response = await _amazonCloudWatch.ListMetricsAsync(request);
        if (response.Metrics != null)
        {
            metrics = response.Metrics;
        }
        return metrics;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the metric data collected for an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of data points.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Datapoint>> GetMetricStatisticsAsync(string groupName)
```

```
    {
        var dataPoints = new List<Datapoint>();
        var metricDimensions = new List<Dimension>
            {
                new Dimension
                {
                    Name = "AutoScalingGroupName",
                    Value = $"{groupName}",
                },
            };

        // The start time will be yesterday.
        var startTime = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-1);

        var request = new GetMetricStatisticsRequest
        {
            MetricName = "AutoScalingGroupName",
            Dimensions = metricDimensions,
            Namespace = "AWS/AutoScaling",
            Period = 60, // 60 seconds.
            Statistics = new List<string>() { "Minimum" },
            StartTimeUtc = startTime,
            EndTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
        };

        var response = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(request);
        if (response.Datapoints != null)
        {
            dataPoints = response.Datapoints;
        }

        return dataPoints;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups

- DescribeAutoScalingInstances
- DescribeScalingActivities
- DisableMetricsCollection
- EnableMetricsCollection
- SetDesiredCapacity
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Routine which demonstrates using an Auto Scaling group
//! to manage Amazon EC2 instances.
/*!
  \sa groupsAndInstancesScenario()
  \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::groupsAndInstancesScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::String templateName;
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfig);

    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Auto
 Scaling "
            << "demo for managing groups and instances." << std::endl;
    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " \n"
              << std::endl;
```

```
    std::cout << "This example requires an EC2 launch template." << std::endl;
    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to use an existing EC2 launch template (y/n)?  ")) {

        // 1. Specify the name of an existing EC2 launch template.
        templateName = askQuestion(
                "Enter the name of the existing EC2 launch template.  ");

        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeLaunchTemplatesRequest request;
        request.AddLaunchTemplateNames(templateName);
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeLaunchTemplatesOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.DescribeLaunchTemplates(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Validated the EC2 launch template '" << templateName
                      << "' exists by calling DescribeLaunchTemplate." <<
std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error validating the existence of the launch template.
"
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else { // 2.  Or create a new EC2 launch template.
        templateName = askQuestion("Enter the name for a new EC2 launch template:
");

        Aws::EC2::Model::CreateLaunchTemplateRequest request;
        request.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);

        Aws::EC2::Model::RequestLaunchTemplateData requestLaunchTemplateData;

requestLaunchTemplateData.SetInstanceType(EC2_LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_INSTANCE_TYPE);
        requestLaunchTemplateData.SetImageId(EC2_LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_IMAGE_ID);

        request.SetLaunchTemplateData(requestLaunchTemplateData);

        Aws::EC2::Model::CreateLaunchTemplateOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.CreateLaunchTemplate(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "The EC2 launch template '" << templateName << " was
created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetExceptionName() ==
                 "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException") {
            std::cout << "The EC2 template '" << templateName << "' already
exists"
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with EC2::CreateLaunchTemplate. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);
    std::cout << "Let's create an Auto Scaling group." << std::endl;
    Aws::String groupName = askQuestion(
            "Enter a name for the Auto Scaling group:  ");
    // 3. Retrieve a list of EC2 Availability Zones.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::AvailabilityZone> availabilityZones;
    {
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest request;

        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.DescribeAvailabilityZones(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "EC2 instances can be created in the following
Availability Zones:"
                    << std::endl;

            availabilityZones = outcome.GetResult().GetAvailabilityZones();
            for (size_t i = 0; i < availabilityZones.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ".  "
                          << availabilityZones[i].GetZoneName() << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with EC2::DescribeAvailabilityZones. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            cleanupResources("", templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    int availabilityZoneChoice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Choose an Availability Zone:  ", 1,
            static_cast<int>(availabilityZones.size()));
    // 4. Create an Auto Scaling group with the specified Availability Zone.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> availabilityGroupZones;
        availabilityGroupZones.push_back(
                availabilityZones[availabilityZoneChoice - 1].GetZoneName());
        request.SetAvailabilityZones(availabilityGroupZones);
        request.SetMaxSize(1);
        request.SetMinSize(1);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::LaunchTemplateSpecification
launchTemplateSpecification;
        launchTemplateSpecification.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);
        request.SetLaunchTemplate(launchTemplateSpecification);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.CreateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Created Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "'..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingErrors::ALREADY_EXISTS_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' already
exists."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::CreateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources("", templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> autoScalingGroups;
    if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                           autoScalingClient)) {
        std::cout << "Here is the Auto Scaling group description." << std::endl;
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            logAutoScalingGroupInfo(autoScalingGroups);
        }
    }
    else {
        cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
        return false;
    }

    std::cout
            << "Waiting for the EC2 instance in the Auto Scaling group to become
active..."
            << std::endl;
    if (!waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient)) {
        cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
        return false;
    }

    bool enableMetrics = askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to collect metrics about the A"
            "Auto Scaling group during this demo (y/n)?  ");
    // 7. Optionally enable metrics collection for the Auto Scaling group.
    if (enableMetrics) {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        request.AddMetrics("GroupMinSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupMaxSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupDesiredCapacity");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupInServiceInstances");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupTotalInstances");
        request.SetGranularity("1Minute");

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.EnableMetricsCollection(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling metrics have been enabled."
                      << std::endl;
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::EnableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Let's update the maximum number of EC2 instances in '" <<
groupName <<
              "' from 1 to 3." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);
    // 8. Update the Auto Scaling group, setting a new maximum size.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        request.SetMaxSize(3);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.UpdateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::UpdateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                           autoScalingClient)) {
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            const auto &instances = autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances();
            std::cout
                    << "The group still has one running EC2 instance, but it can
have up to 3.\n"
                    << std::endl;
            logAutoScalingGroupInfo(autoScalingGroups);
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr
                    << "No EC2 launch groups were retrieved from DescribeGroup
request."
                    << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\n" << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) <<
"\n"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Let's update the desired capacity in '" << groupName <<
              "' from 1 to 2." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);
    //  9. Update the Auto Scaling group, setting a new desired capacity.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        request.SetDesiredCapacity(2);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.SetDesiredCapacity(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::SetDesiredCapacityRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                           autoScalingClient)) {
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            std::cout
                    << "Here is the current state of the group." << std::endl;
            logAutoScalingGroupInfo(autoScalingGroups);
        }
        else {
```

```
            std::cerr
                    << "No EC2 launch groups were retrieved from DescribeGroup
request."
                    << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the new EC2 instance to start..." << std::endl;
    waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient);

    std::cout << "\n" << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) <<
"\n"
              << std::endl;

    std::cout << "Let's terminate one of the EC2 instances in " << groupName <<
"."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Because the desired capacity is 2, another EC2 instance will
start "
              << "to replace the terminated EC2 instance."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "The currently running EC2 instances are:" << std::endl;

    if (autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
        std::cerr << "Error describing groups. No groups returned." << std::endl;
        cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
        return false;
    }

    int instanceNumber = 1;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> instanceIDs = instancesToInstanceIDs(
            autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances());
    for (const Aws::String &instanceID: instanceIDs) {
        std::cout << "   " << instanceNumber << ". " << instanceID << std::endl;
        ++instanceNumber;
    }

    instanceNumber = askQuestionForIntRange("Which EC2 instance do you want to
stop? ",
                                            1,
```

```
static_cast<int>(instanceIDs.size()));

   // 10. Terminate an EC2 instance in the Auto Scaling group.
   {
       Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
request;
       request.SetInstanceId(instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1]);
       request.SetShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false);

       Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupOutcome
outcome =
               autoScalingClient.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cout << "Waiting for EC2 instance with ID '"
                     << instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1] << "' to terminate..."
                     << std::endl;
       }
       else {
           std::cerr << "Error with
AutoScaling::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup. "
                     << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                     << std::endl;
           cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
           return false;
       }
   }

   waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient);

   std::cout << "\n" << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) <<
"\n"
             << std::endl;
   std::cout << "Let's get a report of scaling activities for EC2 launch group
'"
             << groupName << "'."
             << std::endl;
   askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);
   // 11. Get a description of activities for the Auto Scaling group.
   {
       Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest request;
       request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> allActivities;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DescribeScalingActivities(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> &activities
=
                        outcome.GetResult().GetActivities();
                allActivities.insert(allActivities.end(), activities.begin(),
activities.end());
                nextToken  = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeScalingActivities.
"
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
                return false;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << allActivities.size() << " activities."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Activities are ordered with the most recent first."
                  << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity &activity: allActivities) {
            std::cout << activity.GetDescription() << std::endl;
            std::cout << activity.GetDetails() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    if (enableMetrics) {
        if (!logAutoScalingMetrics(groupName, clientConfig)) {
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Let's  clean up." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);

    // 13. Disable metrics collection if enabled.
    if (enableMetrics) {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.DisableMetricsCollection(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Metrics collection has been disabled." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DisableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
 ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    return cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
 ec2Client);
}

//! Routine which waits for EC2 instances in an Auto Scaling group to
//! complete startup or shutdown.
/*!
 \sa waitForInstances()
 \param groupName: An Auto Scaling group name.
 \param autoScalingGroups: Vector to receive 'AutoScalingGroup' records.
 \param client: 'AutoScalingClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::waitForInstances(const Aws::String &groupName,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> &autoScalingGroups,
```

```
                                                const
Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient &client) {
   bool ready = false;
   const std::vector<Aws::String> READY_STATES = {"InService", "Terminated"};

   int count = 0;
   int desiredCapacity = 0;
   std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(4));
   while (!ready) {
       if (WAIT_FOR_INSTANCES_TIMEOUT < count) {
           std::cerr << "Wait for instance timed out." << std::endl;
           return false;
       }

       std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
       ++count;
       if (!describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups, client)) {
           return false;
       }
       Aws::Vector<Aws::String> instanceIDs;
       if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
           instanceIDs =
instancesToInstanceIDs(autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances());
           desiredCapacity = autoScalingGroups[0].GetDesiredCapacity();
       }

       if (instanceIDs.empty()) {
           if (desiredCapacity == 0) {
               break;
           }
           else {
               if ((count % 5) == 0) {
                   std::cout << "No instance IDs returned for group." <<
std::endl;
               }

               continue;
           }
       }

       // 6.  Check lifecycle state of the instances using
DescribeAutoScalingInstances.
       Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest request;
       request.SetInstanceIds(instanceIDs);
```

```
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeAutoScalingInstances(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const
 Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingInstanceDetails>
 &instancesDetails =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingInstances();
            ready = instancesDetails.size() >= desiredCapacity;
            for (const Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingInstanceDetails
 &details: instancesDetails) {
                if (!stringInVector(details.GetLifecycleState(), READY_STATES)) {
                    ready = false;
                    break;
                }
            }
            // Log the status while waiting.
            if (((count % 5) == 1) || ready) {
                logInstancesLifecycleState(instancesDetails);
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingInstances. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (!describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Routine to cleanup resources created in 'groupsAndInstancesScenario'.
/*!
 \sa cleanupResources()
 \param groupName: Optional Auto Scaling group name.
 \param templateName: Optional EC2 launch template name.
 \param autoScalingClient: 'AutoScalingClient' instance.
 \param ec2Client: 'EC2Client' instance.
```

```
\return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::cleanupResources(const Aws::String &groupName,
                                           const Aws::String &templateName,
                                           const
 Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient &autoScalingClient,
                                           const Aws::EC2::EC2Client &ec2Client)
 {
    bool result = true;

    // 14. Delete the Auto Scaling group.
    if (!groupName.empty() &&
        (askYesNoQuestion(
                Aws::String("Delete the Auto Scaling group '") + groupName +
                "'  (y/n)?"))) {
        {
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
            request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
            request.SetMinSize(0);
            request.SetDesiredCapacity(0);

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.UpdateAutoScalingGroup(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout
                        << "The minimum size and desired capacity of the Auto
 Scaling group "
                        << "was set to zero before terminating the instances."
                        << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::UpdateAutoScalingGroup. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> autoScalingGroups;
        if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                               autoScalingClient)) {
            if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
                Aws::Vector<Aws::String> instanceIDs = instancesToInstanceIDs(
                        autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances());
```

```
                for (const Aws::String &instanceID: instanceIDs) {

Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
                    request.SetInstanceId(instanceID);
                    request.SetShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(true);


Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =

autoScalingClient.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(
                                    request);

                    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                        std::cout << "Initiating termination of EC2 instance '"
                                  << instanceID << "'." << std::endl;
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cerr
                                << "Error with
AutoScaling::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup. "
                                << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                        result = false;
                    }
                }
            }

            std::cout
                    << "Waiting for the EC2 instances to terminate before
deleting the "
                    << "Auto Scaling group..." << std::endl;
            waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient);
        }

        {
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
            request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DeleteAutoScalingGroup(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' was
deleted."
                          << std::endl;
```

```
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DeleteAutoScalingGroup. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    // 15. Delete the EC2 launch template.
    if (!templateName.empty() && (askYesNoQuestion(
            Aws::String("Delete the EC2 launch template '") + templateName +
            "' (y/n)?"))) {
        Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest request;
        request.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);

        Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteLaunchTemplateOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.DeleteLaunchTemplate(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "EC2 launch template '" << templateName << "' was
 deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with EC2::DeleteLaunchTemplate. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which retrieves Auto Scaling group descriptions.
/*!
 \sa describeGroup()
 \param groupName: An Auto Scaling group name.
 \param autoScalingGroups: Vector to receive 'AutoScalingGroup' records.
 \param client: 'AutoScalingClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(const Aws::String &groupName,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> &autoScalingGroup,
                                         const Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient
 &client) {
    // 5. Retrieve a description of the Auto Scaling group.
    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
    groupNames.push_back(groupName);
    request.SetAutoScalingGroupNames(groupNames);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        autoScalingGroup = outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * In addition, create a launch template. For more information, see the
 * following topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-launch-
templates.html#create-launch-template
 *
 * This code example performs the following operations:
 * 1. Creates an Auto Scaling group using an AutoScalingWaiter.
 * 2. Gets a specific Auto Scaling group and returns an instance Id value.
 * 3. Describes Auto Scaling with the Id value.
 * 4. Enables metrics collection.
 * 5. Update an Auto Scaling group.
 * 6. Describes Account details.
 * 7. Describe account details"
 * 8. Updates an Auto Scaling group to use an additional instance.
 * 9. Gets the specific Auto Scaling group and gets the number of instances.
 * 10. List the scaling activities that have occurred for the group.
 * 11. Terminates an instance in the Auto Scaling group.
 * 12. Stops the metrics collection.
 * 13. Deletes the Auto Scaling group.
 */

public class AutoScalingScenario {
```

```
   public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
"-");

   public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
       final String usage = """

               Usage:
                   <groupName> <launchTemplateName> <vpcZoneId>

               Where:
                   groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                   launchTemplateName - The name of the launch template.\s
                   vpcZoneId - A subnet Id for a virtual private cloud (VPC)
where instances in the Auto Scaling group can be created.
               """;

       //if (args.length != 3) {
       //    System.out.println(usage);
       //    System.exit(1);
      // }

       String groupName = "Scott250" ; //rgs[0];
       String launchTemplateName = "MyTemplate5" ;//args[1];
       String vpcZoneId = "subnet-0ddc451b8a8a1aa44" ; //args[2];

       AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();

       Ec2Client ec2 = Ec2Client.create();

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling example
scenario.");
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("1. Create an Auto Scaling group named " + groupName);
       createAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName, launchTemplateName,
vpcZoneId);
       System.out.println(
               "Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise,
an empty instance Id is returned");
       Thread.sleep(60000);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Get Auto Scale group Id value");
        String instanceId = getSpecificAutoScalingGroups(autoScalingClient,
groupName);
        if (instanceId.compareTo("") == 0) {
            System.out.println("Error - no instance Id value");
            System.exit(1);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The instance Id value is " + instanceId);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Describe Auto Scaling with the Id value " +
instanceId);
        describeAutoScalingInstance(autoScalingClient, instanceId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Enable metrics collection " + instanceId);
        enableMetricsCollection(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Update an Auto Scaling group to update max size to
3");
        updateAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName, launchTemplateName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Describe Auto Scaling groups");
        describeAutoScalingGroups(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Describe account details");
        describeAccountLimits(autoScalingClient);
        System.out.println(
                "Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise,
an empty instance Id is returned");
        Thread.sleep(60000);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Set desired capacity to 2");
        setDesiredCapacity(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Get the two instance Id values and state");
        getSpecificAutoScalingGroups(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. List the scaling activities that have occurred
for the group");
        describeScalingActivities(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Terminate an instance in the Auto Scaling
group");
        terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, instanceId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Stop the metrics collection");
        disableMetricsCollection(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Delete the Auto Scaling group");
        deleteAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Scenario has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        autoScalingClient.close();
    }



    public static void describeScalingActivities(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
```

```
        try {
            DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest scalingActivitiesRequest =
DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .maxRecords(10)
                    .build();

            DescribeScalingActivitiesResponse response = autoScalingClient
                    .describeScalingActivities(scalingActivitiesRequest);
            List<Activity> activities = response.activities();
            for (Activity activity : activities) {
                System.out.println("The activity Id is " +
activity.activityId());
                System.out.println("The activity details are " +
activity.details());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void setDesiredCapacity(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
        try {
            SetDesiredCapacityRequest capacityRequest =
SetDesiredCapacityRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .desiredCapacity(2)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest);
            System.out.println("You have set the DesiredCapacity to 2");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient,
            String groupName,
```

```
            String launchTemplateName,
            String vpcZoneId) {
        try {
            AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
            LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .availabilityZones("us-east-1a")
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .maxSize(1)
                    .minSize(1)
                    .vpcZoneIdentifier(vpcZoneId)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Auto Scaling Group created");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAutoScalingInstance(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String id) {
        try {
            DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest = DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceIds(id)
```

```
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingInstancesResponse response = autoScalingClient

.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest);
            List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails> instances =
response.autoScalingInstances();
            for (AutoScalingInstanceDetails instance : instances) {
                System.out.println("The instance lifecycle state is: " +
instance.lifecycleState());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAutoScalingGroups(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .maxRecords(10)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(groupsRequest);
            List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
            for (AutoScalingGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("*** The service to use for the health checks:
" + group.healthCheckType());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getSpecificAutoScalingGroups(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
```

```
            String instanceId = "";
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest scalingGroupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response = autoScalingClient
                    .describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest);
            List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
            for (AutoScalingGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.autoScalingGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.autoScalingGroupARN());
                List<Instance> instances = group.instances();

                for (Instance instance : instances) {
                    instanceId = instance.instanceId();
                    System.out.println("The instance id is " + instanceId);
                    System.out.println("The lifecycle state is " +
instance.lifecycleState());
                }
            }

            return instanceId;
        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void enableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            EnableMetricsCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
EnableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                    .granularity("1Minute")
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The enable metrics collection operation was
successful");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void disableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            DisableMetricsCollectionRequest disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
DisableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                    .build();


autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest);
            System.out.println("The disable metrics collection operation was
successful");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAccountLimits(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient)
{
        try {
            DescribeAccountLimitsResponse response =
autoScalingClient.describeAccountLimits();
            System.out.println("The max number of auto scaling groups is " +
response.maxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups());
            System.out.println("The current number of auto scaling groups is " +
response.numberOfAutoScalingGroups());

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
   public static void updateAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName,
           String launchTemplateName) {
       try {
           AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
           LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                   .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                   .build();

           UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                   .maxSize(3)
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                   .build();

           autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);
           DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                   .build();

           WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                   .waitUntilGroupInService(groupsRequest);
           waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
           System.out.println("You successfully updated the auto scaling group
" + groupName);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static void terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String instanceId) {
       try {
           TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                   .instanceId(instanceId)
                   .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
```

```
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);
            System.out.println("You have terminated instance " + instanceId);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
 autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
 DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .forceDelete(true)
                    .build();


 autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
            System.out.println("You successfully deleted " + groupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection

- SetDesiredCapacity
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <groupName> <launchTemplateName> <serviceLinkedRoleARN> <vpcZoneId>

    Where:
        groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
        launchTemplateName - The name of the launch template.
        serviceLinkedRoleARN - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the service-
linked role that the Auto Scaling group uses.
        vpcZoneId - A subnet Id for a virtual private cloud (VPC) where instances
 in the Auto Scaling group can be created.
    """

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val groupName = args[0]
    val launchTemplateName = args[1]
    val serviceLinkedRoleARN = args[2]
    val vpcZoneId = args[3]

    println("**** Create an Auto Scaling group named $groupName")
    createAutoScalingGroup(groupName, launchTemplateName, serviceLinkedRoleARN,
 vpcZoneId)
```

```
   println("Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise, an
empty instance Id is returned")
   delay(60000)

   val instanceId = getSpecificAutoScaling(groupName)
   if (instanceId.compareTo("") == 0) {
       println("Error - no instance Id value")
       exitProcess(1)
   } else {
       println("The instance Id value is $instanceId")
   }

   println("**** Describe Auto Scaling with the Id value $instanceId")
   describeAutoScalingInstance(instanceId)

   println("**** Enable metrics collection $instanceId")
   enableMetricsCollection(groupName)

   println("**** Update an Auto Scaling group to maximum size of 3")
   updateAutoScalingGroup(groupName, launchTemplateName, serviceLinkedRoleARN)

   println("**** Describe all Auto Scaling groups to show the current state of
the groups")
   describeAutoScalingGroups(groupName)

   println("**** Describe account details")
   describeAccountLimits()

   println("Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise, an
empty instance Id is returned")
   delay(60000)

   println("**** Set desired capacity to 2")
   setDesiredCapacity(groupName)

   println("**** Get the two instance Id values and state")
   getAutoScalingGroups(groupName)

   println("**** List the scaling activities that have occurred for the group")
   describeScalingActivities(groupName)

   println("**** Terminate an instance in the Auto Scaling group")
   terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(instanceId)
```

```
    println("**** Stop the metrics collection")
    disableMetricsCollection(groupName)

    println("**** Delete the Auto Scaling group")
    deleteSpecificAutoScalingGroup(groupName)
}

suspend fun describeAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val groupsReques =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response = autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(groupsReques)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The service to use for the health checks:
 ${group.healthCheckType}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun disableMetricsCollection(groupName: String) {
    val disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
        DisableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->

 autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest)
        println("The disable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun describeScalingActivities(groupName: String?) {
    val scalingActivitiesRequest =
        DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            maxRecords = 10
        }
```

```
    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeScalingActivities(scalingActivitiesRequest)
        response.activities?.forEach { activity ->
            println("The activity Id is ${activity.activityId}")
            println("The activity details are ${activity.details}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val scalingGroupsRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.autoScalingGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.autoScalingGroupArn}")
            group.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                println("The instance id is ${instance.instanceId}")
                println("The lifecycle state is " + instance.lifecycleState)
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun setDesiredCapacity(groupName: String) {
    val capacityRequest =
        SetDesiredCapacityRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            desiredCapacity = 2
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest)
        println("You set the DesiredCapacity to 2")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun updateAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val groupRequest =
        UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            maxSize = 3
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
        }

    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group  $groupName")
    }
}

suspend fun createAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
    vpcZoneIdVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val request =
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
```

```
            availabilityZones = listOf("us-east-1a")
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
            maxSize = 1
            minSize = 1
            vpcZoneIdentifier = vpcZoneIdVal
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
        }

    // This object is required for the waiter call.
    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("$groupName was created!")
    }
}

suspend fun describeAutoScalingInstance(id: String) {
    val describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(id)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest)
        response.autoScalingInstances?.forEach { group ->
            println("The instance lifecycle state is: ${group.lifecycleState}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun enableMetricsCollection(groupName: String?) {
    val collectionRequest =
        EnableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
            granularity = "1Minute"
        }
```

```
    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The enable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun getSpecificAutoScaling(groupName: String): String {
    var instanceId = ""
    val scalingGroupsRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.autoScalingGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.autoScalingGroupArn}")

            group.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                instanceId = instance.instanceId.toString()
            }
        }
    }
    return instanceId
}

suspend fun describeAccountLimits() {
    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAccountLimits(DescribeAccountLimitsRequest {})
        println("The max number of Auto Scaling groups is
 ${response.maxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups}")
        println("The current number of Auto Scaling groups is
 ${response.numberOfAutoScalingGroups}")
    }
}

suspend fun terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(instanceIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
```

```
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request)
        println("You have terminated instance $instanceIdVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSpecificAutoScalingGroup(groupName: String) {
    val deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            forceDelete = true
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest)
        println("You successfully deleted $groupName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AutoScaling;

use Aws\AutoScaling\AutoScalingClient;
use Aws\CloudWatch\CloudWatchClient;
use Aws\Ec2\Ec2Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use AwsUtilities\RunnableExample;

class GettingStartedWithAutoScaling implements RunnableExample
{
    protected Ec2Client $ec2Client;
    protected AutoScalingClient $autoScalingClient;
    protected AutoScalingService $autoScalingService;
    protected CloudWatchClient $cloudWatchClient;
    protected string $templateName;
    protected string $autoScalingGroupName;
    protected array $role;

    public function runExample()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling getting started demo using
 PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $clientArgs = [
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ];
        $uniqid = uniqid();
```

```
        $this->autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient($clientArgs);
        $this->autoScalingService = new AutoScalingService($this-
>autoScalingClient);
        $this->cloudWatchClient = new CloudWatchClient($clientArgs);

        AWSServiceClass::$waitTime = 5;
        AWSServiceClass::$maxWaitAttempts = 20;

        /**
         * Step 0: Create an EC2 launch template that you'll use to create an
 Auto Scaling group.
         */
        $this->ec2Client = new EC2Client($clientArgs);
        $this->templateName = "example_launch_template_$uniqid";
        $instanceType = "t1.micro";
        $amiId = "ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300";
        $launchTemplate = $this->ec2Client->createLaunchTemplate(
            [
            'LaunchTemplateName' => $this->templateName,
            'LaunchTemplateData' => [
                'InstanceType' => $instanceType,
                'ImageId' => $amiId,
            ]
            ]
        );

        /**
         * Step 1: CreateAutoScalingGroup: pass it the launch template you
 created in step 0.
         */
        $availabilityZones[] = $this->ec2Client->describeAvailabilityZones([])
['AvailabilityZones'][1]['ZoneName'];

        $this->autoScalingGroupName = "demoAutoScalingGroupName_$uniqid";
        $minSize = 1;
        $maxSize = 1;
        $launchTemplateId = $launchTemplate['LaunchTemplate']
['LaunchTemplateId'];
        $this->autoScalingService->createAutoScalingGroup(
            $this->autoScalingGroupName,
            $availabilityZones,
            $minSize,
            $maxSize,
```

```
            $launchTemplateId
        );

        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);
        $autoScalingGroup = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);

        /**
         * Step 2: DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that one instance has
 launched.
         */
        $instanceIds = [$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['Instances'][0]
['InstanceId']];
        $instances = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingInstances($instanceIds);
        echo "The Auto Scaling group {$this->autoScalingGroupName} was created
 successfully.\n";
        echo count($instances['AutoScalingInstances']) . " instances were created
 for the group.\n";
        echo $autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['MaxSize'] . " is the max
 number of instances for the group.\n";

        /**
         * Step 3: EnableMetricsCollection: enable all metrics or a subset.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->enableMetricsCollection($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, "1Minute");

        /**
         * Step 4: UpdateAutoScalingGroup: update max size to 3.
         */
        echo "Updating the max number of instances to 3.\n";
        $this->autoScalingService->updateAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, ['MaxSize' => 3]);

        /**
         * Step 5: DescribeAutoScalingGroups: show the current state of the
 group.
         */
        $autoScalingGroup = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);
        echo $autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['MaxSize'];
        echo " is the updated max number of instances for the group.\n";
```

```
        $limits = $this->autoScalingService->describeAccountLimits();
        echo "Here are your account limits:\n";
        echo "MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups:
 {$limits['MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups']}\n";
        echo "MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations:
 {$limits['MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations']}\n";
        echo "NumberOfAutoScalingGroups:
 {$limits['NumberOfAutoScalingGroups']}\n";
        echo "NumberOfLaunchConfigurations:
 {$limits['NumberOfLaunchConfigurations']}\n";

        /**
         * Step 6: SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->setDesiredCapacity($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, 2);
        sleep(10); // Wait for the group to start processing the request.
        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);

        /**
         * Step 7: DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that two instances are
 launched.
         */
        $autoScalingGroups = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);
        foreach ($autoScalingGroups['AutoScalingGroups'] as $autoScalingGroup) {
            echo "There is a group named:
 {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']}";
            echo "with an ARN of {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupARN']}.\n";
            foreach ($autoScalingGroup['Instances'] as $instance) {
                echo "{$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']} has an instance
 with id of: ";
                echo "{$instance['InstanceId']} and a lifecycle state of:
 {$instance['LifecycleState']}.\n";
            }
        }

        /**
         * Step 8: TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup: terminate one of the
 instances in the group.
         */
```

```
        $this->autoScalingService-
>terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup($instance['InstanceId'], false);
        do {
            sleep(10);
            $instances = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingInstances([$instance['InstanceId']]);
        } while (count($instances['AutoScalingInstances']) > 0);
        do {
            sleep(10);
            $autoScalingGroups = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);
            $instances = $autoScalingGroups['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['Instances'];
        } while (count($instances) < 2);
        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);
        foreach ($autoScalingGroups['AutoScalingGroups'] as $autoScalingGroup) {
            echo "There is a group named:
 {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']}";
            echo "with an ARN of {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupARN']}.\n";
            foreach ($autoScalingGroup['Instances'] as $instance) {
                echo "{$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']} has an instance
 with id of: ";
                echo "{$instance['InstanceId']} and a lifecycle state of:
 {$instance['LifecycleState']}.\n";
            }
        }

        /**
         * Step 9: DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that
 have occurred for the group so far.
         */
        $activities = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeScalingActivities($autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']);
        echo "We found " . count($activities['Activities']) . " activities.\n";
        foreach ($activities['Activities'] as $activity) {
            echo "{$activity['ActivityId']} - {$activity['StartTime']} -
 {$activity['Description']}\n";
        }

        /**
         * Step 10: Use the Amazon CloudWatch API to get and show some metrics
 collected for the group.
         */
        $metricsNamespace = 'AWS/AutoScaling';
```

```
        $metricsDimensions = [
            [
                'Name' => 'AutoScalingGroupName',
                'Value' => $autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName'],
            ],
        ];
        $metrics = $this->cloudWatchClient->listMetrics(
            [
            'Dimensions' => $metricsDimensions,
            'Namespace' => $metricsNamespace,
            ]
        );
        foreach ($metrics['Metrics'] as $metric) {
            $timespan = 5;
            if ($metric['MetricName'] != 'GroupTotalCapacity' &&
$metric['MetricName'] != 'GroupMaxSize') {
                continue;
            }
            echo "Over the last $timespan minutes, {$metric['MetricName']}
recorded:\n";
            $stats = $this->cloudWatchClient->getMetricStatistics(
                [
                'Dimensions' => $metricsDimensions,
                'EndTime' => time(),
                'StartTime' => time() - (5 * 60),
                'MetricName' => $metric['MetricName'],
                'Namespace' => $metricsNamespace,
                'Period' => 60,
                'Statistics' => ['Sum'],
                ]
            );
            foreach ($stats['Datapoints'] as $stat) {
                echo "{$stat['Timestamp']}: {$stat['Sum']}\n";
            }
        }

        return $instances;
    }

    public function cleanUp()
    {
        /**
         * Step 11: DisableMetricsCollection: disable all metrics.
         */
```

```
        $this->autoScalingService->disableMetricsCollection($this-
>autoScalingGroupName);

        /**
         * Step 12: DeleteAutoScalingGroup: to delete the group you must stop all
 instances.
         * - UpdateAutoScalingGroup with MinSize=0
         * - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup for each instance,
         *     specify ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=True. Wait for instances to
 stop.
         * - Now you can delete the group.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->updateAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, ['MinSize' => 0]);
        $this->autoScalingService->terminateAllInstancesInAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName);
        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);
        $this->autoScalingService->deleteAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName);

        /**
         * Step 13: Delete launch template.
         */
        $this->ec2Client->deleteLaunchTemplate(
            [
            'LaunchTemplateName' => $this->templateName,
            ]
        );
    }

    public function helloService()
    {
        $autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient([
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ]);

        $groups = $autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([]);
        var_dump($groups);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
def run_scenario(as_wrapper: AutoScalingWrapper, svc_helper: ServiceHelper) ->
 None:
    """
    Runs the scenario demonstrating the management of Auto Scaling groups and
 instances.

    :param as_wrapper: An instance of the AutoScalingWrapper that manages Auto
 Scaling groups.
    :param svc_helper: An instance of the ServiceHelper that interacts with AWS
 services.
    :return: None
```

```
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    logger.info("Starting the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling demo.")

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Welcome to the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling demo for managing groups and
instances."
    )
    print("-" * 88)

    print(
        "This example requires a launch template that specifies how to create "
        "EC2 instances. You can use an existing template or create a new one."
    )
    template_name = q.ask(
        "Enter the name of an existing launch template or press Enter to create a
new one: "
    )
    template = None
    if template_name:
        template = svc_helper.get_template(template_name)
    if template is None:
        inst_type = "t1.micro"
        ami_id = "ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300"
        print("Let's create a launch template with the following
specifications:")
        print(f"\tInstanceType: {inst_type}")
        print(f"\tAMI ID: {ami_id}")
        template_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the template: ", q.non_empty)
        template = svc_helper.create_template(template_name, inst_type, ami_id)
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Let's create an Auto Scaling group.")
    group_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the group: ", q.non_empty)
    zones = svc_helper.get_availability_zones()
    print("EC2 instances can be created in the following Availability Zones:")
    for index, zone in enumerate(zones):
        print(f"\t{index+1}. {zone}")
    print(f"\t{len(zones)+1}. All zones")
    zone_sel = q.ask(
        "Which zone do you want to use? ", q.is_int, q.in_range(1, len(zones) +
1)
```

```
    )
    group_zones = [zones[zone_sel - 1]] if zone_sel <= len(zones) else zones
    print(f"Creating group {group_name}...")
    as_wrapper.create_autoscaling_group(group_name, group_zones, template_name,
1, 1)
    wait(10)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Created Auto Scaling group %s.", group_name)
    print("Created group:")
    pp(group)
    print("Waiting for instance to start...")
    wait_for_group(group_name, as_wrapper)
    print("-" * 88)

    use_metrics = q.ask(
        "Do you want to collect metrics about Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling during this
demo (y/n)? ",
        q.is_yesno,
    )
    if use_metrics:
        as_wrapper.enable_metrics(
            group_name,
            [
                "GroupMinSize",
                "GroupMaxSize",
                "GroupDesiredCapacity",
                "GroupInServiceInstances",
                "GroupTotalInstances",
            ],
        )
        logger.info("Enabled metrics for Auto Scaling group %s.", group_name)
        print(f"Metrics enabled for {group_name}.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's update the maximum number of instances in {group_name} from 1
to 3.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    as_wrapper.update_group(group_name, MaxSize=3)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Updated maximum size for group %s to 3.", group_name)
    print("The group still has one running instance, but can have up to three:")
    print_simplified_group(group)
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(f"Let's update the desired capacity of {group_name} from 1 to 2.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    as_wrapper.set_desired_capacity(group_name, 2)
    wait(10)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Set desired capacity for group %s to 2.", group_name)
    print("Here's the current state of the group:")
    print_simplified_group(group)
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Waiting for the new instance to start...")
    instance_ids = wait_for_group(group_name, as_wrapper)
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's terminate one of the instances in {group_name}.")
    print("Because the desired capacity is 2, another instance will start.")
    print("The currently running instances are:")
    for index, inst_id in enumerate(instance_ids):
        print(f"\t{index+1}. {inst_id}")
    inst_sel = q.ask(
        "Which instance do you want to stop? ",
        q.is_int,
        q.in_range(1, len(instance_ids) + 1),
    )
    print(f"Stopping {instance_ids[inst_sel-1]}...")
    as_wrapper.terminate_instance(instance_ids[inst_sel - 1], False)
    wait(10)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info(
        "Terminated instance %s in group %s.", instance_ids[inst_sel - 1],
group_name
    )
    print(f"Here's the state of {group_name}:")
    print_simplified_group(group)
    print("Waiting for the scaling activities to complete...")
    wait_for_group(group_name, as_wrapper)
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's get a report of scaling activities for {group_name}.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    activities = as_wrapper.describe_scaling_activities(group_name)
    logger.info(
        "Retrieved %d scaling activities for group %s.", len(activities),
group_name
    )
```

```
    print(
        f"Found {len(activities)} activities.\n"
        f"Activities are ordered with the most recent one first:"
    )
    for act in activities:
        pp(act)
    print("-" * 88)

    if use_metrics:
        print("Let's look at CloudWatch metrics.")
        metric_namespace = "AWS/AutoScaling"
        metric_dimensions = [{"Name": "AutoScalingGroupName", "Value":
group_name}]
        print(f"The following metrics are enabled for {group_name}:")
        done = False
        while not done:
            metrics = svc_helper.get_metrics(metric_namespace, metric_dimensions)
            for index, metric in enumerate(metrics):
                print(f"\t{index+1}. {metric.name}")
            print(f"\t{len(metrics)+1}. None")
            metric_sel = q.ask(
                "Which metric do you want to see? ",
                q.is_int,
                q.in_range(1, len(metrics) + 1),
            )
            if metric_sel < len(metrics) + 1:
                span = 5
                metric = metrics[metric_sel - 1]
                print(f"Over the last {span} minutes, {metric.name} recorded:")
                # CloudWatch metric times are in the UTC+0 time zone.
                now = datetime.now(timezone.utc)
                metric_data = svc_helper.get_metric_statistics(
                    metric_dimensions, metric, now - timedelta(minutes=span), now
                )
                pp(metric_data)
                if not q.ask("Do you want to see another metric (y/n)? ",
q.is_yesno):
                    done = True
            else:
                done = True

    print(f"Let's clean up.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    if use_metrics:
```

```
        print(f"Stopping metrics collection for {group_name}.")
        as_wrapper.disable_metrics(group_name)
        logger.info("Disabled metrics collection for group %s.", group_name)

    print(
        "You must terminate all instances in the group before you can delete the
 group."
    )
    print("Set minimum size to 0.")
    as_wrapper.update_group(group_name, MinSize=0)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in group["Instances"]]
    for inst_id in instance_ids:
        print(f"Stopping {inst_id}.")
        as_wrapper.terminate_instance(inst_id, True)
        logger.info("Terminated instance %s in group %s.", inst_id, group_name)
    print("Waiting for instances to stop...")
    wait_for_instances(instance_ids, as_wrapper)
    print(f"Deleting {group_name}.")
    as_wrapper.delete_autoscaling_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Deleted Auto Scaling group %s.", group_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    if template is not None:
        if q.ask(
            f"Do you want to delete launch template {template_name} used in this
 demo (y/n)? "
        ):
            svc_helper.delete_template(template_name)
            logger.info("Deleted launch template %s.", template_name)
            print("Template deleted.")

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(boto3.client("autoscaling"))
        helper = ServiceHelper(boto3.client("ec2"), boto3.resource("cloudwatch"))
        run_scenario(wrapper, helper)
    except Exception:
        logger.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage launch templates and metrics. These functions wrap Amazon EC2 and CloudWatch actions.

```
class ServiceHelper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 and CloudWatch actions for the example."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client.
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource

    def get_template(self, template_name: str) -> dict:
        """
        Gets a launch template. Launch templates specify configuration for
 instances
        that are launched by Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.

        :param template_name: The name of the template to look up.
        :return: The template, if it exists.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving the launch template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_launch_templates(
                LaunchTemplateNames=[template_name]
            )
            template = response["LaunchTemplates"][0]
            logger.info("Launch template %s retrieved successfully.",
 template_name)
            return template
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                logger.warning("Launch template %s does not exist.",
 template_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't verify launch template %s. Error: %s: %s",
                    template_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise

    def create_template(self, template_name: str, inst_type: str, ami_id: str) ->
dict:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling.

        :param template_name: The name to give to the template.
        :param inst_type: The type of the instance, such as t1.micro.
        :param ami_id: The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use when
creating
                       an instance.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error creating the launch template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={"InstanceType": inst_type, "ImageId":
ami_id},
            )
            template = response["LaunchTemplate"]
            logger.info(
                "Created launch template %s with instance type %s and AMI ID
%s.",
                template_name,
                inst_type,
                ami_id,
            )
            return template
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create launch template %s. Error: %s: %s",
                template_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def delete_template(self, template_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a launch template.

        :param template_name: The name of the template to delete.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error deleting the launch template.
        """
        try:

self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(LaunchTemplateName=template_name)
            logger.info("Deleted launch template %s.", template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete launch template %s. Error: %s: %s",
                template_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def get_availability_zones(self) -> list:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving availability zones.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            logger.info("Retrieved availability zones: %s.", ", ".join(zones))
            return zones
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get availability zones. Error: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def get_metrics(self, namespace: str, dimensions: list) -> list:
        """
```

```
        Gets a list of CloudWatch metrics filtered by namespace and dimensions.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metrics to look up.
        :param dimensions: The dimensions of the metrics to look up.
        :return: The list of metrics.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving CloudWatch metrics.
        """
        try:
            metrics = list(
                self.cloudwatch_resource.metrics.filter(
                    Namespace=namespace, Dimensions=dimensions
                )
            )
            logger.info(
                "Retrieved metrics for namespace %s with dimensions %s.",
                namespace,
                dimensions,
            )
            return metrics
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get metrics for %s, %s. Error: %s: %s",
                namespace,
                dimensions,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    @staticmethod
    def get_metric_statistics(
        dimensions: list, metric, start: datetime, end: datetime
    ) -> list:
        """
        Gets statistics for a CloudWatch metric within a specified time span.

        :param dimensions: The dimensions of the metric.
        :param metric: The metric to look up.
        :param start: The start of the time span for retrieved metrics.
        :param end: The end of the time span for retrieved metrics.
        :return: The list of data points found for the specified metric.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving metric statistics.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = metric.get_statistics(
                Dimensions=dimensions,
                StartTime=start,
                EndTime=end,
                Period=60,
                Statistics=["Sum"],
            )
            data = response["Datapoints"]
            logger.info("Retrieved statistics for metric %s.", metric.name)
            return data
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get statistics for metric %s. Error: %s: %s",
                metric.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


def print_simplified_group(group: dict) -> None:
    """
    Prints a subset of data for an Auto Scaling group.

    :param group: The Auto Scaling group data to print.
    :return: None
    """
    print(group["AutoScalingGroupName"])
    print(f"\tLaunch template: {group['LaunchTemplate']['LaunchTemplateName']}")
    print(
        f"\tMin: {group['MinSize']}, Max: {group['MaxSize']}, Desired:
 {group['DesiredCapacity']}"
    )
    if group["Instances"]:
        print(f"\tInstances:")
        for inst in group["Instances"]:
            print(f"\t\t{inst['InstanceId']}: {inst['LifecycleState']}")


def wait_for_group(group_name: str, as_wrapper: AutoScalingWrapper) -> list:
    """
    Waits for instances to start or stop in an Auto Scaling group.
    Prints the data for each instance after scaling activities are complete.
```

```
    :param group_name: The name of the Auto Scaling group.
    :param as_wrapper: The AutoScalingWrapper that manages Auto Scaling groups.
    :return: A list of instance IDs in the group.
    """
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    instance_ids = [i["InstanceId"] for i in group["Instances"]]
    return wait_for_instances(instance_ids, as_wrapper)


def wait_for_instances(instance_ids: list, as_wrapper: AutoScalingWrapper) ->
 list:
    """
    Waits for instances to start or stop in an Auto Scaling group.
    Prints the data for each instance after scaling activities are complete.

    :param instance_ids: A list of instance IDs to wait for.
    :param as_wrapper: The AutoScalingWrapper that manages Auto Scaling groups.
    :return: A list of instance IDs that were waited on.
    """
    ready = False
    instances = []
    while not ready:
        instances = as_wrapper.describe_instances(instance_ids) if instance_ids
 else []
        if all([x["LifecycleState"] in ["Terminated", "InService"] for x in
 instances]):
            ready = True
        else:
            wait(10)
    if instances:
        print(
            f"Here are the details of the instance{'s' if len(instances) > 1 else
 ''}:"
        )
        for instance in instances:
            pp(instance)
    return instance_ids
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup

- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAutoScalingInstances
- DescribeScalingActivities
- DisableMetricsCollection
- EnableMetricsCollection
- SetDesiredCapacity
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
[package]
name = "autoscaling-code-examples"
version = "0.1.0"
authors = ["Doug Schwartz <dougsch@amazon.com>", "David Souther
 <dpsouth@amazon.com>"]
edition = "2021"

# See more keys and their definitions at https://doc.rust-lang.org/cargo/
reference/manifest.html

[dependencies]
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-sdk-autoscaling = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-ec2 = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full"] }
clap = { version = "4.4", features = ["derive"] }
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }
```

```
anyhow = "1.0.75"
tracing = "0.1.37"
tokio-stream = "0.1.14"


use std::{collections::BTreeSet, fmt::Display};

use anyhow::anyhow;
use autoscaling_code_examples::scenario::{AutoScalingScenario, ScenarioError};
use tracing::{info, warn};

async fn show_scenario_description(scenario: &AutoScalingScenario, event: &str) {
    let description = scenario.describe_scenario().await;
    info!("DescribeAutoScalingInstances: {event}\n{description}");
}

#[derive(Default, Debug)]
struct Warnings(Vec<String>);

impl Warnings {
    pub fn push(&mut self, warning: &str, error: ScenarioError) {
        let formatted = format!("{warning}: {error}");
        warn!("{formatted}");
        self.0.push(formatted);
    }

    pub fn is_empty(&self) -> bool {
        self.0.is_empty()
    }
}

impl Display for Warnings {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        writeln!(f, "Warnings:")?;
        for warning in &self.0 {
            writeln!(f, "{: >4}- {warning}", "")?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
```

```
   let shared_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;

   let mut warnings = Warnings::default();

   // 1. Create an EC2 launch template that you'll use to create an auto scaling
group. Bonus: use SDK with EC2.CreateLaunchTemplate to create the launch
template.
   // 2. CreateAutoScalingGroup: pass it the launch template you created in step
0. Give it min/max of 1 instance.
   // 4. EnableMetricsCollection: enable all metrics or a subset.
   let scenario = match
AutoScalingScenario::prepare_scenario(&shared_config).await {
       Ok(scenario) => scenario,
       Err(errs) => {
           let err_str = errs
               .into_iter()
               .map(|e| e.to_string())
               .collect::<Vec<String>>()
               .join(", ");
           return Err(anyhow!("Failed to initialize scenario: {err_str}"));
       }
   };

   info!("Prepared autoscaling scenario:\n{scenario}");

   let stable = scenario.wait_for_stable(1).await;
   if let Err(err) = stable {
       warnings.push(
           "There was a problem while waiting for group to be stable",
           err,
       );
   }

   // 3. DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that one instance has launched.
   show_scenario_description(
       &scenario,
       "show that the group was created and one instance has launched",
   )
   .await;

   // 5. UpdateAutoScalingGroup: update max size to 3.
   let scale_max_size = scenario.scale_max_size(3).await;
   if let Err(err) = scale_max_size {
```

```
        warnings.push("There was a problem scaling max size", err);
    }

    // 6. DescribeAutoScalingGroups: the current state of the group
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "show the current state of the group after setting max size",
    )
    .await;

    // 7. SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
    let scale_desired_capacity = scenario.scale_desired_capacity(2).await;
    if let Err(err) = scale_desired_capacity {
        warnings.push("There was a problem setting desired capacity", err);
    }

    //   Wait for a second instance to launch.
    let stable = scenario.wait_for_stable(2).await;
    if let Err(err) = stable {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem while waiting for group to be stable",
            err,
        );
    }

    // 8. DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that two instances are launched.
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "show that two instances are launched after setting desired capacity",
    )
    .await;

    let ids_before = scenario
        .list_instances()
        .await
        .map(|v| v.into_iter().collect::<BTreeSet<_>>())
        .unwrap_or_default();

    // 9. TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup: terminate one of the instances in
 the group.
    let terminate_some_instance = scenario.terminate_some_instance().await;
    if let Err(err) = terminate_some_instance {
        warnings.push("There was a problem replacing an instance", err);
    }
```

```
    let wait_after_terminate = scenario.wait_for_stable(1).await;
    if let Err(err) = wait_after_terminate {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem waiting after terminating an instance",
            err,
        );
    }

    let wait_scale_up_after_terminate = scenario.wait_for_stable(2).await;
    if let Err(err) = wait_scale_up_after_terminate {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem waiting for scale up after terminating an
instance",
            err,
        );
    }

    let ids_after = scenario
        .list_instances()
        .await
        .map(|v| v.into_iter().collect::<BTreeSet<_>>())
        .unwrap_or_default();

    let difference = ids_after.intersection(&ids_before).count();
    if !(difference == 1 && ids_before.len() == 2 && ids_after.len() == 2) {
        warnings.push(
            "Before and after set not different",
            ScenarioError::with(format!("{difference}")),
        );
    }

    // 10. DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have
occurred for the group so far.
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "list the scaling activities that have occurred for the group so far",
    )
    .await;

    // 11. DisableMetricsCollection
    let scale_group = scenario.scale_group_to_zero().await;
    if let Err(err) = scale_group {
        warnings.push("There was a problem scaling the group to 0", err);
```

```
    }
    show_scenario_description(&scenario, "Scenario scaled to 0").await;

    // 12. DeleteAutoScalingGroup (to delete the group you must stop all
 instances):
    // 13. Delete LaunchTemplate.
    let clean_scenario = scenario.clean_scenario().await;
    if let Err(errs) = clean_scenario {
        for err in errs {
            warnings.push("There was a problem cleaning the scenario", err);
        }
    } else {
        info!("The scenario has been cleaned up!");
    }

    if warnings.is_empty() {
        Ok(())
    } else {
        Err(anyhow!(
            "There were warnings during scenario execution:\n{warnings}"
        ))
    }
}

pub mod scenario;


use std::{
    error::Error,
    fmt::{Debug, Display},
    time::{Duration, SystemTime},
};

use anyhow::anyhow;
use aws_config::SdkConfig;
use aws_sdk_autoscaling::{
    error::{DisplayErrorContext, ProvideErrorMetadata},
    types::{Activity, AutoScalingGroup, LaunchTemplateSpecification},
};
use aws_sdk_ec2::types::RequestLaunchTemplateData;
use tracing::trace;

const LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME: &str =
 "SDK_Code_Examples_EC2_Autoscaling_template_from_Rust_SDK";
```

```
const AUTOSCALING_GROUP_NAME: &str =
 "SDK_Code_Examples_EC2_Autoscaling_Group_from_Rust_SDK";
const MAX_WAIT: Duration = Duration::from_secs(5 * 60); // Wait at most 25
 seconds.
const WAIT_TIME: Duration = Duration::from_millis(500); // Wait half a second at
 a time.

struct Waiter {
    start: SystemTime,
    max: Duration,
}

impl Waiter {
    fn new() -> Self {
        Waiter {
            start: SystemTime::now(),
            max: MAX_WAIT,
        }
    }

    async fn sleep(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        if SystemTime::now()
            .duration_since(self.start)
            .unwrap_or(Duration::MAX)
            > self.max
        {
            Err(ScenarioError::with(
                "Exceeded maximum wait duration for stable group",
            ))
        } else {
            tokio::time::sleep(WAIT_TIME).await;
            Ok(())
        }
    }
}

pub struct AutoScalingScenario {
    ec2: aws_sdk_ec2::Client,
    autoscaling: aws_sdk_autoscaling::Client,
    launch_template_arn: String,
    auto_scaling_group_name: String,
}

impl Display for AutoScalingScenario {
```

```
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        f.write_fmt(format_args!(
            "\tLaunch Template ID: {}\n",
            self.launch_template_arn
        ))?;
        f.write_fmt(format_args!(
            "\tScaling Group Name: {}\n",
            self.auto_scaling_group_name
        ))?;

        Ok(())
    }
}

pub struct AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
    group: Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError>,
    instances: Result<Vec<String>, anyhow::Error>,
    activities: Result<Vec<Activity>, anyhow::Error>,
}

impl Display for AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        writeln!(f, "\t      Group status:")?;
        match &self.group {
            Ok(groups) => {
                for status in groups {
                    writeln!(f, "\t\t- {status}")?;
                }
            }
            Err(e) => writeln!(f, "\t\t! - {e}")?,
        }
        writeln!(f, "\t         Instances:")?;
        match &self.instances {
            Ok(instances) => {
                for instance in instances {
                    writeln!(f, "\t\t- {instance}")?;
                }
            }
            Err(e) => writeln!(f, "\t\t! {e}")?,
        }

        writeln!(f, "\t        Activities:")?;
        match &self.activities {
            Ok(activities) => {
```

```
                for activity in activities {
                    writeln!(
                        f,
                        "\t\t- {} Progress: {}% Status: {:?} End: {:?}",
                        activity.cause().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                        activity.progress.unwrap_or(-1),
                        activity.status_code(),
                        // activity.status_message().unwrap_or_default()
                        activity.end_time(),
                    )?;
                }
            }
            Err(e) => writeln!(f, "\t\t! {e}")?,
        }

        Ok(())
    }
}

#[derive(Debug)]
struct MetadataError {
    message: Option<String>,
    code: Option<String>,
}

impl MetadataError {
    fn from(err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) -> Self {
        MetadataError {
            message: err.message().map(|s| s.to_string()),
            code: err.code().map(|s| s.to_string()),
        }
    }
}

impl Display for MetadataError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        let display = match (&self.message, &self.code) {
            (None, None) => "Unknown".to_string(),
            (None, Some(code)) => format!("({code})"),
            (Some(message), None) => message.to_string(),
            (Some(message), Some(code)) => format!("{message} ({code})"),
        };
        write!(f, "{display}")
    }
```

```
}

#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct ScenarioError {
    message: String,
    context: Option<MetadataError>,
}

impl ScenarioError {
    pub fn with(message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: None,
        }
    }

    pub fn new(message: impl Into<String>, err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) ->
 Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: Some(MetadataError::from(err)),
        }
    }
}

impl Error for ScenarioError {
    // While `Error` can capture `source` information about the underlying error,
 for this example
    // the ScenarioError captures the underlying information in MetadataError and
 treats it as a
    // single Error from this Crate. In other contexts, it may be appropriate to
 model the error
    // as including the SdkError as its source.
}
impl Display for ScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match &self.context {
            Some(c) => write!(f, "{}: {}", self.message, c),
            None => write!(f, "{}", self.message),
        }
    }
}

impl AutoScalingScenario {
```

```
   pub async fn prepare_scenario(sdk_config: &SdkConfig) -> Result<Self,
Vec<ScenarioError>> {
       let ec2 = aws_sdk_ec2::Client::new(sdk_config);
       let autoscaling = aws_sdk_autoscaling::Client::new(sdk_config);

       let auto_scaling_group_name = String::from(AUTOSCALING_GROUP_NAME);

       // Before creating any resources, prepare the list of AZs
       let availablity_zones = ec2.describe_availability_zones().send().await;
       if let Err(err) = availablity_zones {
           return Err(vec![ScenarioError::new("Failed to find AZs", &err)]);
       }

       let availability_zones: Vec<String> = availablity_zones
           .unwrap()
           .availability_zones
           .unwrap_or_default()
           .iter()
           .take(3)
           .map(|z| z.zone_name.clone().unwrap())
           .collect();

       // 1. Create an EC2 launch template that you'll use to create an auto
scaling group. Bonus: use SDK with EC2.CreateLaunchTemplate to create the launch
template.
       //   * Recommended: InstanceType='t1.micro',
ImageId='ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300'
       let create_launch_template = ec2
           .create_launch_template()
           .launch_template_name(LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME)
           .launch_template_data(
               RequestLaunchTemplateData::builder()
                   .instance_type(aws_sdk_ec2::types::InstanceType::T1Micro)
                   .image_id("ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300")
                   .build(),
           )
           .send()
           .await
           .map_err(|err| vec![ScenarioError::new("Failed to create launch
template", &err)])?;

       let launch_template_arn = match create_launch_template.launch_template {
           Some(launch_template) =>
launch_template.launch_template_id.unwrap_or_default(),
```

```
            None => {
                // Try to delete the launch template
                let _ = ec2
                    .delete_launch_template()
                    .launch_template_name(LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME)
                    .send()
                    .await;
                return Err(vec![ScenarioError::with("Failed to load launch
template")]);
            }
        };

        // 2. CreateAutoScalingGroup: pass it the launch template you created in
step 0. Give it min/max of 1 instance.
        //   You can use EC2.describe_availability_zones() to get a list of AZs
(you have to specify an AZ when you create the group).
        //   Wait for instance to launch. Use a waiter if you have one, otherwise
DescribeAutoScalingInstances until LifecycleState='InService'
        if let Err(err) = autoscaling
            .create_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
            .launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateSpecification::builder()
                    .launch_template_id(launch_template_arn.clone())
                    .version("$Latest")
                    .build(),
            )
            .max_size(1)
            .min_size(1)
            .set_availability_zones(Some(availability_zones))
            .send()
            .await
        {
            let mut errs = vec![ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create autoscaling group",
                &err,
            )];

            if let Err(err) = autoscaling
                .delete_auto_scaling_group()
                .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
                .send()
                .await
            {
```

```
                errs.push(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to clean up autoscaling group",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            if let Err(err) = ec2
                .delete_launch_template()
                .launch_template_id(launch_template_arn.clone())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                errs.push(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to clean up launch template",
                    &err,
                ));
            }
            return Err(errs);
        }

        let scenario = AutoScalingScenario {
            ec2,
            autoscaling: autoscaling.clone(), // Clients are cheap so cloning
here to prevent a move is ok.
            auto_scaling_group_name: auto_scaling_group_name.clone(),
            launch_template_arn,
        };

        let enable_metrics_collection = autoscaling
            .enable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
            .granularity("1Minute")
            .set_metrics(Some(vec![
                String::from("GroupMinSize"),
                String::from("GroupMaxSize"),
                String::from("GroupDesiredCapacity"),
                String::from("GroupInServiceInstances"),
                String::from("GroupTotalInstances"),
            ]))
            .send()
            .await;

        match enable_metrics_collection {
            Ok(_) => Ok(scenario),
```

```
            Err(err) => {
                scenario.clean_scenario().await?;
                Err(vec![ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to enable metrics collections for group",
                    &err,
                )])
            }
        }
    }

    pub async fn clean_scenario(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let _ = self.wait_for_no_scaling().await;
        let delete_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .delete_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        // 14. Delete LaunchTemplate.
        let delete_launch_template = self
            .ec2
            .delete_launch_template()
            .launch_template_id(self.launch_template_arn.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        let early_exit = match (delete_group, delete_launch_template) {
            (Ok(_), Ok(_)) => Ok(()),
            (Ok(_), Err(e)) => Err(vec![ScenarioError::new(
                "There was an error cleaning the launch template",
                &e,
            )]),
            (Err(e), Ok(_)) => Err(vec![ScenarioError::new(
                "There was an error cleaning the scale group",
                &e,
            )]),
            (Err(e1), Err(e2)) => Err(vec![
                ScenarioError::new("Multiple error cleaning the scenario Scale
Group", &e1),
                ScenarioError::new("Multiple error cleaning the scenario Launch
Template", &e2),
            ]),
        };
```

```
        if early_exit.is_err() {
            early_exit
        } else {
            // Wait for delete_group to finish
            let waiter = Waiter::new();
            let mut errors = Vec::<ScenarioError>::new();
            while errors.len() < 3 {
                if let Err(e) = waiter.sleep().await {
                    errors.push(e);
                    continue;
                }
                let describe_group = self
                    .autoscaling
                    .describe_auto_scaling_groups()

.auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
                    .send()
                    .await;
                match describe_group {
                    Ok(group) => match group.auto_scaling_groups().first() {
                        Some(group) => {
                            if group.status() != Some("Delete in progress") {
                                errors.push(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                                    "Group in an unknown state while deleting:
{}",
                                    group.status().unwrap_or("unknown error")
                                )));
                                return Err(errors);
                            }
                        }
                        None => return Ok(()),
                    },
                    Err(err) => {
                        errors.push(ScenarioError::new("Failed to describe
autoscaling group during cleanup 3 times, last error", &err));
                    }
                }
                if errors.len() > 3 {
                    return Err(errors);
                }
            }
            Err(vec![ScenarioError::with(
```

```
                "Exited cleanup wait loop without retuning success or failing
after three rounds",
            )])
        }
    }

    pub async fn describe_scenario(&self) -> AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
        let group = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map(|s| {
                s.auto_scaling_groups()
                    .iter()
                    .map(|s| {
                        format!(
                            "{}: {}",
                            s.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                            s.status().unwrap_or("Unknown")
                        )
                    })
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|e| {
                ScenarioError::new("Failed to describe auto scaling groups for
scenario", &e)
            });

        let instances = self
            .list_instances()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| anyhow!("There was an error listing instances: {e}",));

        // 10. DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have
occurred for the group so far.
        //   Bonus: use CloudWatch API to get and show some metrics collected for
the group.
        //   CW.ListMetrics with Namespace='AWS/AutoScaling' and
Dimensions=[{'Name': 'AutoScalingGroupName', 'Value': }]
        //   CW.GetMetricStatistics with Statistics='Sum'. Start and End times
must be in UTC!
        let activities = self
```

```
            .autoscaling
            .describe_scaling_activities()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<_>, _>>()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| {
                anyhow!(
                    "There was an error retrieving scaling activities: {}",
                    DisplayErrorContext(&e)
                )
            });

        AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
            group,
            instances,
            activities,
        }
    }

    async fn get_group(&self) -> Result<AutoScalingGroup, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_auto_scaling_groups = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = describe_auto_scaling_groups {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!(
                    "Failed to get status of autoscaling group {}",
                    self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
                )
                .as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let describe_auto_scaling_groups_output =
describe_auto_scaling_groups.unwrap();
```

```
        let auto_scaling_groups =
describe_auto_scaling_groups_output.auto_scaling_groups();
        let auto_scaling_group = auto_scaling_groups.first();

        if auto_scaling_group.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                "Could not find autoscaling group {}",
                self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
            )));
        }

        Ok(auto_scaling_group.unwrap().clone())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_no_scaling(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        let waiter = Waiter::new();
        let mut scaling = true;
        while scaling {
            waiter.sleep().await?;
            let describe_activities = self
                .autoscaling
                .describe_scaling_activities()
                .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(|e| {
                    ScenarioError::new("Failed to get autoscaling activities for
group", &e)
                })?;
            let activities = describe_activities.activities();
            trace!(
                "Waiting for no scaling found {} activities",
                activities.len()
            );
            scaling = activities.iter().any(|a| a.progress() < Some(100));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_stable(&self, size: usize) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
{
        self.wait_for_no_scaling().await?;

        let mut group = self.get_group().await?;
```

```
        let mut count = count_group_instances(&group);

        let waiter = Waiter::new();
        while count != size {
            trace!("Waiting for stable {size} (current: {count})");
            waiter.sleep().await?;
            group = self.get_group().await?;
            count = count_group_instances(&group);
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn list_instances(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError> {
        // The direct way to list instances is by using
 DescribeAutoScalingGroup's instances property. However, this returns a
 Vec<Instance>, as opposed to a Vec<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>.
        // Ok(self.get_group().await?.instances.unwrap_or_default().map(|
i| i.instance_id.clone().unwrap_or_default()).filter(|id| !
id.is_empty()).collect())

        // Alternatively, and for the sake of example,
 DescribeAutoScalingInstances returns a list that can be filtered by the client.
        self.autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_instances()
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
            .map(|items| {
                items
                    .into_iter()
                    .filter(|i| {
                        i.auto_scaling_group_name.as_deref()
                            == Some(self.auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
                    })
                    .map(|i| i.instance_id.unwrap_or_default())
                    .filter(|id| !id.is_empty())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Failed to get list of auto scaling
 instances", &err))
    }
```

```
    pub async fn scale_min_size(&self, size: i32) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .update_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .min_size(size)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failer to update group to min size ({size}))").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn scale_max_size(&self, size: i32) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // 5. UpdateAutoScalingGroup: update max size to 3.
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .update_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .max_size(size)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to update group to max size ({size})").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn scale_desired_capacity(&self, capacity: i32) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
        // 7. SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
        //   Wait for a second instance to launch.
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .set_desired_capacity()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
```

```
            .desired_capacity(capacity)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to update group to desired capacity
({capacity}))").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn scale_group_to_zero(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // If this fails it's fine, just means there are extra cloudwatch metrics
events for the scale-down.
        let _ = self
            .autoscaling
            .disable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        // 12. DeleteAutoScalingGroup (to delete the group you must stop all
instances):
        //   UpdateAutoScalingGroup with MinSize=0
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .update_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .min_size(0)
            .desired_capacity(0)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to update group for scaling down&",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let stable = self.wait_for_stable(0).await;
        if let Err(err) = stable {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(format!(
```

```
                "Error while waiting for group to be stable on scale down: {err}"
            )));
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn terminate_some_instance(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // Retrieve a list of instances in the auto scaling group.
        let auto_scaling_group = self.get_group().await?;
        let instances = auto_scaling_group.instances();
        // Or use other logic to find an instance to terminate.
        let instance = instances.first();
        if let Some(instance) = instance {
            let instance_id = if let Some(instance_id) = instance.instance_id() {
                instance_id
            } else {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with("Missing instance id"));
            };
            let termination = self
                .ec2
                .terminate_instances()
                .instance_ids(instance_id)
                .send()
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = termination {
                Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "There was a problem terminating an instance",
                    &err,
                ))
            } else {
                Ok(())
            }
        } else {
            Err(ScenarioError::with("There was no instance to terminate"))
        }
    }
}

fn count_group_instances(group: &AutoScalingGroup) -> usize {
    group.instances.as_ref().map(|i| i.len()).unwrap_or(0)
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Auto Scaling actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Auto Scaling API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling API Reference.

Examples

- Use AttachInstances with a CLI
- Use AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AttachLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use CompleteLifecycleAction with a CLI
- Use CreateAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLaunchConfiguration with a CLI
- Use CreateOrUpdateTags with a CLI
- Use DeleteAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLaunchConfiguration with a CLI

- Use DeleteLifecycleHook with a CLI
- Use DeleteNotificationConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteScheduledAction with a CLI
- Use DeleteTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountLimits with a CLI
- Use DescribeAdjustmentTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLaunchConfigurations with a CLI
- Use DescribeLifecycleHookTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLifecycleHooks with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DescribeMetricCollectionTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeNotificationConfigurations with a CLI
- Use DescribePolicies with a CLI
- Use DescribeScalingActivities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScalingProcessTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledActions with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes with a CLI
- Use DetachInstances with a CLI
- Use DetachLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DisableMetricsCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableMetricsCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnterStandby with a CLI
- Use ExecutePolicy with a CLI
- Use ExitStandby with a CLI
- Use PutLifecycleHook with a CLI

- Use PutNotificationConfiguration with a CLI
- Use PutScalingPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction with a CLI
- Use RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat with a CLI
- Use ResumeProcesses with a CLI
- Use SetDesiredCapacity with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetInstanceHealth with a CLI
- Use SetInstanceProtection with a CLI
- Use SuspendProcesses with a CLI
- Use TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAutoScalingGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AttachInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach an instance to an Auto Scaling group

This example attaches the specified instance to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling attach-instances \
    --instance-ids i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see AttachInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the specified instance to the specified Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling automatically increases the desired capacity of the Auto Scaling group.

```
Mount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see AttachInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified instance to the specified Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling automatically increases the desired capacity of the Auto Scaling group.

```
Mount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see AttachInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName,
 string targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a target group to an Auto Scaling group

This example attaches the specified target group to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling attach-load-balancer-target-groups \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --target-group-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Elastic Load Balancing and Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
await client.send(
  new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
    AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
```

```
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"
```

```
    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group
%s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `AttachLoadBalancers` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachLoadBalancers`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a Classic Load Balancer to an Auto Scaling group

This example attaches the specified Classic Load Balancer to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling attach-load-balancers \
    --load-balancer-names my-load-balancer \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Elastic Load Balancing and Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the specified load balancer to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Add-ASLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-lb -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified load balancer to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Add-ASLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-lb -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CompleteLifecycleAction` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CompleteLifecycleAction`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To complete the lifecycle action

This example notifies Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling that the specified lifecycle action is complete so that it can finish launching or terminating the instance.

```
aws autoscaling complete-lifecycle-action \
    --lifecycle-hook-name my-launch-hook \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --lifecycle-action-result CONTINUE \
    --lifecycle-action-token bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see CompleteLifecycleAction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example completes the specified lifecycle action.

```
Complete-ASLifecycleAction -LifecycleHookName myLifecycleHook -
AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleActionResult CONTINUE -LifecycleActionToken
 bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

- For API details, see CompleteLifecycleAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example completes the specified lifecycle action.

```
Complete-ASLifecycleAction -LifecycleHookName myLifecycleHook -
AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleActionResult CONTINUE -LifecycleActionToken
 bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

- For API details, see CompleteLifecycleAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateAutoScalingGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name to use for the new Auto Scaling
    /// group.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// launch template to use to create instances in the group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        string availabilityZone)
    {
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var zoneList = new List<string>
            {
                availabilityZone,
            };

        var request = new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            AvailabilityZones = zoneList,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
            MaxSize = 6,
            MinSize = 1
        };
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group created");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group already exists.");
            return true;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> availabilityGroupZones;
        availabilityGroupZones.push_back(
                availabilityZones[availabilityZoneChoice - 1].GetZoneName());
        request.SetAvailabilityZones(availabilityGroupZones);
        request.SetMaxSize(1);
        request.SetMinSize(1);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::LaunchTemplateSpecification
launchTemplateSpecification;
        launchTemplateSpecification.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);
        request.SetLaunchTemplate(launchTemplateSpecification);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.CreateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Created Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "'..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
```

```
                Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingErrors::ALREADY_EXISTS_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' already
 exists."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::CreateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an Auto Scaling group

The following `create-auto-scaling-group` example creates an Auto Scaling group in subnets in multiple Availability Zones within a Region. The instances launch with the default version of the specified launch template. Note that defaults are used for most other settings, such as the termination policies and health check configuration.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateId=lt-1234567890abcde12 \
    --min-size 1 \
    --max-size 5 \
    --vpc-zone-identifier "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Auto Scaling groups in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To attach an Application Load Balancer, Network Load Balancer, or Gateway Load Balancer

This example specifies the ARN of a target group for a load balancer that supports the expected traffic. The health check type specifies `ELB` so that when Elastic Load Balancing

reports an instance as unhealthy, the Auto Scaling group replaces it. The command also defines a health check grace period of 600 seconds. The grace period helps prevent premature termination of newly launched instances.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateId=lt-1234567890abcde12 \
    --target-group-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/943f017f100becff \
    --health-check-type ELB \
    --health-check-grace-period 600 \
    --min-size 1 \
    --max-size 5 \
    --vpc-zone-identifier "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Elastic Load Balancing and Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To specify a placement group and use the latest version of the launch template

This example launches instances into a placement group within a single Availability Zone. This can be useful for low-latency groups with HPC workloads. This example also specifies the minimum size, maximum size, and desired capacity of the group.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateId=lt-1234567890abcde12,Version='$Latest' \
    --min-size 1 \
    --max-size 5 \
    --desired-capacity 3 \
    --placement-group my-placement-group \
    --vpc-zone-identifier "subnet-6194ea3b"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Placement groups in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide for Linux Instances*.

Example 4: To specify a single instance Auto Scaling group and use a specific version of the launch template

This example creates an Auto Scaling group with minimum and maximum capacity set to 1 to enforce that one instance will be running. The command also specifies v1 of a launch template in which the ID of an existing ENI is specified. When you use a launch template that specifies an existing ENI for eth0, you must specify an Availability Zone for the Auto Scaling group that matches the network interface, without also specifying a subnet ID in the request.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg-single-instance \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateName=my-template-for-auto-scaling,Version='1'
 \
    --min-size 1 \
    --max-size 1 \
    --availability-zones us-west-2a
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Auto Scaling groups in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 5: To specify a different termination policy

This example creates an Auto Scaling group using a launch configuration and sets the termination policy to terminate the oldest instances first. The command also applies a tag to the group and its instances, with a key of `Role` and a value of `WebServer`.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --min-size 1 \
    --max-size 5 \
    --termination-policies "OldestInstance" \
    --tags "ResourceId=my-asg,ResourceType=auto-scaling-
group,Key=Role,Value=WebServer,PropagateAtLaunch=true" \
    --vpc-zone-identifier "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Working with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling termination policies in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 6: To specify a launch lifecycle hook

This example creates an Auto Scaling group with a lifecycle hook that supports a custom action at instance launch.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --cli-input-json file://~/config.json
```

Contents of `config.json` file:

```
{
    "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
    "LaunchTemplate": {
        "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-1234567890abcde12"
    },
    "LifecycleHookSpecificationList": [{
        "LifecycleHookName": "my-launch-hook",
        "LifecycleTransition": "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING",
        "NotificationTargetARN": "arn:aws:sqs:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sqs-
queue",
        "RoleARN": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-notification-role",
        "NotificationMetadata": "SQS message metadata",
        "HeartbeatTimeout": 4800,
        "DefaultResult": "ABANDON"
    }],
    "MinSize": 1,
    "MaxSize": 5,
    "VPCZoneIdentifier": "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782",
    "Tags": [{
        "ResourceType": "auto-scaling-group",
        "ResourceId": "my-asg",
        "PropagateAtLaunch": true,
        "Value": "test",
        "Key": "environment"
    }]
}
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 7: To specify a termination lifecycle hook

This example creates an Auto Scaling group with a lifecycle hook that supports a custom action at instance termination.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --cli-input-json file://~/config.json
```

Contents of `config.json`:

```
{
    "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
    "LaunchTemplate": {
        "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-1234567890abcde12"
    },
    "LifecycleHookSpecificationList": [{
        "LifecycleHookName": "my-termination-hook",
        "LifecycleTransition": "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATING",
        "HeartbeatTimeout": 120,
        "DefaultResult": "CONTINUE"
    }],
    "MinSize": 1,
    "MaxSize": 5,
    "TargetGroupARNs": [
        "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-
targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067"
    ],
    "VPCZoneIdentifier": "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782"
}
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 8: To specify a custom termination policy

This example creates an Auto Scaling group that specifies a custom Lambda function termination policy that tells Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling which instances are safe to terminate on scale in.

```
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg-single-instance \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateName=my-template-for-auto-scaling \
```

```
    --min-size 1 \
    --max-size 5 \
    --termination-policies "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:HelloFunction:prod" \
    --vpc-zone-identifier "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating a custom termination policy with Lambda in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.LaunchTemplateSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.waiters.AutoScalingWaiter;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateAutoScalingGroup {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName> <launchTemplateName> <serviceLinkedRoleARN>
 <vpcZoneId>

                Where:
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                    launchTemplateName - The name of the launch template.\s
                    vpcZoneId - A subnet Id for a virtual private cloud (VPC)
 where instances in the Auto Scaling group can be created.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String groupName = args[0];
        String launchTemplateName = args[1];
        String vpcZoneId = args[2];
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        createAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName, launchTemplateName,
 vpcZoneId);
        autoScalingClient.close();
    }

    public static void createAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
 autoScalingClient,
            String groupName,
            String launchTemplateName,
            String vpcZoneId) {

        try {
            AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
```

```
            LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
 LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
 CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .availabilityZones("us-east-1a")
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .maxSize(1)
                    .minSize(1)
                    .vpcZoneIdentifier(vpcZoneId)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
 DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
 waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Auto Scaling Group created");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
    vpcZoneIdVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val request =
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            availabilityZones = listOf("us-east-1a")
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
            maxSize = 1
            minSize = 1
            vpcZoneIdentifier = vpcZoneIdVal
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
        }

    // This object is required for the waiter call.
    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("$groupName was created!")
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function createAutoScalingGroup(
        $autoScalingGroupName,
        $availabilityZones,
        $minSize,
        $maxSize,
        $launchTemplateId
    ) {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->createAutoScalingGroup([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'AvailabilityZones' => $availabilityZones,
            'MinSize' => $minSize,
            'MaxSize' => $maxSize,
            'LaunchTemplate' => [
                'LaunchTemplateId' => $launchTemplateId,
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an Auto Scaling group with the specified name and attributes. The default desired capacity is the minimum size. Therefore, this Auto Scaling group launches two instances, one in each of the specified two Availability Zones.

```
New-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LaunchConfigurationName my-
lc -MinSize 2 -MaxSize 6 -AvailabilityZone @("us-west-2a", "us-west-2b")
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an Auto Scaling group with the specified name and attributes. The default desired capacity is the minimum size. Therefore, this Auto Scaling group launches two instances, one in each of the specified two Availability Zones.

```
New-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LaunchConfigurationName my-
lc -MinSize 2 -MaxSize 6 -AvailabilityZone @("us-west-2a", "us-west-2b")
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
```

```
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def create_group(
        self,
        group_name: str,
        group_zones: List[str],
        launch_template_name: str,
        min_size: int,
        max_size: int,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Creates an Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name to give to the group.
        :param group_zones: The Availability Zones in which instances can be
created.
        :param launch_template_name: The name of an existing Amazon EC2 launch
template.
                                     The launch template specifies the
configuration of
                                     instances that are created by auto scaling
activities.
        :param min_size: The minimum number of active instances in the group.
        :param max_size: The maximum number of active instances in the group.
        :return: None
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error creating the Auto Scaling
group.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=group_zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=min_size,
                MaxSize=max_size,
            )

            # Wait for the group to exist.
```

```
            waiter = self.autoscaling_client.get_waiter("group_exists")
            waiter.wait(AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name])

            logger.info(f"Successfully created Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to create Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")
            if error_code == "AlreadyExistsFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"An Auto Scaling group with the name '{group_name}' already
 exists. "
                    "Please use a different name or update the existing group.",
                )
            elif error_code == "LimitExceededFault":
                logger.error(
                    "The request failed because you have reached the limit "
                    "on the number of Auto Scaling groups or launch
 configurations. "
                    "Consider deleting unused resources or request a limit
 increase. "
                    "\nSee Auto Scaling Service Quota documentation here:"
                    "\n\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/autoscaling/ec2/userguide/
ec2-auto-scaling-quotas.html"
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn create_group(client: &Client, name: &str, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error>
 {
    client
        .create_auto_scaling_group()
        .auto_scaling_group_name(name)
        .instance_id(id)
        .min_size(1)
        .max_size(5)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created AutoScaling group");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateLaunchConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLaunchConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a launch configuration

This example creates a simple launch configuration.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating a launch configuration in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a launch configuration with a security group, key pair, and bootrapping script

This example creates a launch configuration with a security group, a key pair, and a bootrapping script contained in the user data.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --security-groups sg-eb2af88example \
    --key-name my-key-pair \
    --user-data file://myuserdata.txt
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating a launch configuration in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a launch configuration with an IAM role

This example creates a launch configuration with the instance profile name of an IAM role.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --iam-instance-profile my-autoscaling-role
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see IAM role for applications that run on Amazon EC2 instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 4: To create a launch configuration with detailed monitoring enabled

This example creates a launch configuration with EC2 detailed monitoring enabled, which sends EC2 metrics to CloudWatch in 1-minute periods.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
```

```
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --instance-monitoring Enabled=true
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Configuring monitoring for Auto Scaling instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 5: To create a launch configuration that launches Spot Instances

This example creates a launch configuration that uses Spot Instances as the only purchase option.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --spot-price "0.50"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Requesting Spot Instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 6: To create a launch configuration using an EC2 instance

This example creates a launch configuration based on the attributes of an existing instance. It overrides the placement tenancy and whether a public IP address is set by including the `--placement-tenancy` and `--no-associate-public-ip-address` options.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc-from-instance \
    --instance-id i-0123a456700123456 \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --no-associate-public-ip-address \
    --placement-tenancy dedicated
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating a launch configuration using an EC2 instance in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 7: To create a launch configuration with a block device mapping for an Amazon EBS volume

This example creates a launch configuration with a block device mapping for an Amazon EBS gp3 volume with the device name `/dev/sdh` and a volume size of 20.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --block-device-mappings '[{"DeviceName":"/dev/sdh","Ebs":
{"VolumeSize":20,"VolumeType":"gp3"}}]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see EBS in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling API Reference*.

For information about the syntax for quoting JSON-formatted parameter values, see Using quotation marks with strings in the AWS CLI in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

Example 8: To create a launch configuration with a block device mapping for an instance store volume

This example creates a launch configuration with `ephemeral1` as an instance store volume with the device name `/dev/sdc`.

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --block-device-mappings '[{"DeviceName":"/dev/
sdc","VirtualName":"ephemeral1"}]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see BlockDeviceMapping in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling API Reference*.

For information about the syntax for quoting JSON-formatted parameter values, see Using quotation marks with strings in the AWS CLI in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

Example 9: To create a launch configuration and suppress a block device from attaching at launch time

This example creates a launch configuration that suppresses a block device specified by the block device mapping of the AMI (for example, `/dev/sdf`).

```
aws autoscaling create-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-lc \
    --image-id ami-04d5cc9b88example \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --block-device-mappings '[{"DeviceName":"/dev/sdf","NoDevice":""}]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see BlockDeviceMapping in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling API Reference*.

For information about the syntax for quoting JSON-formatted parameter values, see Using quotation marks with strings in the AWS CLI in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateLaunchConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a launch configuration named 'my-lc'. The EC2 instances launched by Auto Scaling groups that use this launch configuration use specified instance type, AMI, security group, and IAM role.

```
New-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -InstanceType
 "m3.medium" -ImageId "ami-12345678" -SecurityGroup "sg-12345678" -
IamInstanceProfile "myIamRole"
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a launch configuration named 'my-lc'. The EC2 instances launched by Auto Scaling groups that use this launch configuration use specified instance type, AMI, security group, and IAM role.

```
New-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -InstanceType
 "m3.medium" -ImageId "ami-12345678" -SecurityGroup "sg-12345678" -
IamInstanceProfile "myIamRole"
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateOrUpdateTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateOrUpdateTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create or update tags for an Auto Scaling group

This example adds two tags to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling create-or-update-tags \
    --tags ResourceId=my-asg,ResourceType=auto-scaling-
group,Key=Role,Value=WebServer,PropagateAtLaunch=true ResourceId=my-
asg,ResourceType=auto-scaling-
group,Key=Dept,Value=Research,PropagateAtLaunch=true
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateOrUpdateTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds a single tag to the specified Auto Scaling group. The tag key is 'myTag' and the tag value is 'myTagValue'. Auto Scaling propagates this tag to the subsequent EC2 instances launched by the Auto Scaling group. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Set-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag"; Value="myTagValue"; PropagateAtLaunch=$true} )
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag
$tag.ResourceType = "auto-scaling-group"
$tag.ResourceId = "my-asg"
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"
$tag.PropagateAtLaunch = $true
Set-ASTag -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see CreateOrUpdateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a single tag to the specified Auto Scaling group. The tag key is 'myTag' and the tag value is 'myTagValue'. Auto Scaling propagates this tag to the subsequent EC2 instances launched by the Auto Scaling group. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Set-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag"; Value="myTagValue"; PropagateAtLaunch=$true} )
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag
$tag.ResourceType = "auto-scaling-group"
$tag.ResourceId = "my-asg"
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"
$tag.PropagateAtLaunch = $true
Set-ASTag -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see CreateOrUpdateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the minimum size of an Auto Scaling group to zero, terminate all instances in the group, and delete the group.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await
_amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
```

```
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for
{instanceId}. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string
groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest = new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            ForceDelete = true,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully deleted {groupName}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete {groupName}.");
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";
```

```
    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
            request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DeleteAutoScalingGroup(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' was
 deleted."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DeleteAutoScalingGroup. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To delete the specified Auto Scaling group

This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling delete-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting your Auto Scaling infrastructure in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To force delete the specified Auto Scaling group

To delete the Auto Scaling group without waiting for the instances in the group to terminate, use the `--force-delete` option.

```
aws autoscaling delete-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --force-delete
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting your Auto Scaling infrastructure in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteAutoScalingGroup {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName>

                Where:
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String groupName = args[0];
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deleteAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        autoScalingClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
 autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
 DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .forceDelete(true)
                    .build();


 autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
            System.out.println("You successfully deleted " + groupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSpecificAutoScalingGroup(groupName: String) {
    val deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            forceDelete = true
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest)
        println("You successfully deleted $groupName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function deleteAutoScalingGroup($autoScalingGroupName)
```

```
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->deleteAutoScalingGroup([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'ForceDelete' => true,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group if it has no running instances. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup (DeleteAutoScalingGroup)" on
 Target "my-asg".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Force
```

Example 3: This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group and terminates any running instances that it contains.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ForceDelete $true -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group if it has no running instances. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup (DeleteAutoScalingGroup)" on
 Target "my-asg".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Force
```

Example 3: This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group and terminates any running instances that it contains.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ForceDelete $true -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the minimum size of an Auto Scaling group to zero, terminate all instances in the group, and delete the group.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"
```

```
        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
 group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
```

```
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
 to delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn delete_group(client: &Client, name: &str, force: bool) -> Result<(),
 Error> {
    client
        .delete_auto_scaling_group()
        .auto_scaling_group_name(name)
        .set_force_delete(if force { Some(true) } else { None })
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Deleted Auto Scaling group");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteLaunchConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLaunchConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a launch configuration

This example deletes the specified launch configuration.

```
aws autoscaling delete-launch-configuration \
    --launch-configuration-name my-launch-config
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting your Auto Scaling infrastructure in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified launch configuration if it is not attached to an Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration (DeleteLaunchConfiguration)"
 on Target "my-lc".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified launch configuration if it is not attached to an Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration (DeleteLaunchConfiguration)"
 on Target "my-lc".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteLifecycleHook` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLifecycleHook`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a lifecycle hook

This example deletes the specified lifecycle hook.

```
aws autoscaling delete-lifecycle-hook \
    --lifecycle-hook-name my-lifecycle-hook \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteLifecycleHook in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified lifecycle hook for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASLifecycleHook (DeleteLifecycleHook)" on Target
 "myLifecycleHook".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteLifecycleHook in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified lifecycle hook for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASLifecycleHook (DeleteLifecycleHook)" on Target
 "myLifecycleHook".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteLifecycleHook in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteNotificationConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteNotificationConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an Auto Scaling notification

This example deletes the specified notification from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling delete-notification-configuration \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --topic-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Delete the notification configuration in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteNotificationConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified notification action. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -TopicARN
 "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration
 (DeleteNotificationConfiguration)" on Target
"arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -TopicARN
 "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteNotificationConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified notification action. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -TopicARN
 "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration
 (DeleteNotificationConfiguration)" on Target
"arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -TopicARN
 "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteNotificationConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeletePolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a scaling policy

This example deletes the specified scaling policy.

```
aws autoscaling delete-policy \
```

```
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --policy-name alb1000-target-tracking-scaling-policy
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName myScaleInPolicy
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASPolicy (DeletePolicy)" on Target
 "myScaleInPolicy".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName myScaleInPolicy -Force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName myScaleInPolicy
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASPolicy (DeletePolicy)" on Target
 "myScaleInPolicy".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName myScaleInPolicy -Force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteScheduledAction` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteScheduledAction`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a scheduled action from an Auto Scaling group

This example deletes the specified scheduled action from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling delete-scheduled-action \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --scheduled-action-name my-scheduled-action
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified scheduled action for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledAction
 "myScheduledAction"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASScheduledAction (DeleteScheduledAction)" on Target
 "myScheduledAction".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledAction
 "myScheduledAction" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified scheduled action for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledAction
 "myScheduledAction"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASScheduledAction (DeleteScheduledAction)" on Target
 "myScheduledAction".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledAction
 "myScheduledAction" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a tag from an Auto Scaling group

This example deletes the specified tag from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling delete-tags \
    --tags ResourceId=my-asg,ResourceType=auto-scaling-
group,Key=Dept,Value=Research
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified tag from the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag" } )
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ASTag (DeleteTags)" on target
 "Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag" } ) -Force
```

Example 3: With Powershell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag
$tag.ResourceType = "auto-scaling-group"
$tag.ResourceId = "my-asg"
$tag.Key = "myTag"
Remove-ASTag -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified tag from the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag" } )
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ASTag (DeleteTags)" on target
 "Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag" } ) -Force
```

Example 3: With Powershell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag
$tag.ResourceType = "auto-scaling-group"
$tag.ResourceId = "my-asg"
$tag.Key = "myTag"
Remove-ASTag -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAccountLimits` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAccountLimits`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling account limits

This example describes the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling limits for your AWS account.

```
aws autoscaling describe-account-limits
```

Output:

```
{
    "NumberOfLaunchConfigurations": 5,
    "MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations": 100,
    "NumberOfAutoScalingGroups": 3,
```

```
    "MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups": 20
}
```

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling service quotas in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the Auto Scaling resource limits for your AWS account.

```
Get-ASAccountLimit
```

Output:

```
MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups    : 20
MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations : 100
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the Auto Scaling resource limits for your AWS account.

```
Get-ASAccountLimit
```

Output:

```
MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups    : 20
MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations : 100
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAdjustmentTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAdjustmentTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the available scaling adjustment types

This example describes the available adjustment types.

```
aws autoscaling describe-adjustment-types
```

Output:

```
{
    "AdjustmentTypes": [
        {
            "AdjustmentType": "ChangeInCapacity"
        },
        {
            "AdjustmentType": "ExactCapacity"
        },
        {
            "AdjustmentType": "PercentChangeInCapacity"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scaling adjustment types in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAdjustmentTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the adjustment types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASAdjustmentType
```

Output:

```
Type
----
ChangeInCapacity
ExactCapacity
PercentChangeInCapacity
```

- For API details, see DescribeAdjustmentTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the adjustment types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASAdjustmentType
```

Output:

```
Type
----
ChangeInCapacity
ExactCapacity
PercentChangeInCapacity
```

- For API details, see DescribeAdjustmentTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about the instances in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling details.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>>
 DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = await DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName);
        var instanceIds = new List<string>();
        var instanceDetails = new List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>();
        if (groups != null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName && group.Instances !=
 null)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(instance =>
                    {
                        instanceIds.Add(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });

            var scalingGroupsRequest = new DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
            {
```

```
                MaxRecords = 10,
                InstanceIds = instanceIds,
            };

            var response =
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
                    scalingGroupsRequest);
            if (response.AutoScalingInstances != null)
            {
                instanceDetails = response.AutoScalingInstances;
            }
        }

        return instanceDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
    groupNames.push_back(groupName);
    request.SetAutoScalingGroupNames(groupNames);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
```

```
            client.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        autoScalingGroup = outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe the specified Auto Scaling group

This example describes the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups \
    --auto-scaling-group-names my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "AutoScalingGroups": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "AutoScalingGroupARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:930d940e-891e-4781-
a11a-7b0acd480f03:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg",
            "LaunchTemplate": {
                "LaunchTemplateName": "my-launch-template",
                "Version": "1",
                "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-1234567890abcde12"
            },
            "MinSize": 0,
            "MaxSize": 1,
            "DesiredCapacity": 1,
```

```
            "DefaultCooldown": 300,
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                "us-west-2a",
                "us-west-2b",
                "us-west-2c"
            ],
            "LoadBalancerNames": [],
            "TargetGroupARNs": [],
            "HealthCheckType": "EC2",
            "HealthCheckGracePeriod": 0,
            "Instances": [
                {
                    "InstanceId": "i-06905f55584de02da",
                    "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
                    "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
                    "HealthStatus": "Healthy",
                    "LifecycleState": "InService",
                    "ProtectedFromScaleIn": false,
                    "LaunchTemplate": {
                        "LaunchTemplateName": "my-launch-template",
                        "Version": "1",
                        "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-1234567890abcde12"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "CreatedTime": "2023-10-28T02:39:22.152Z",
            "SuspendedProcesses": [],
            "VPCZoneIdentifier": "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-
c934b782",
            "EnabledMetrics": [],
            "Tags": [],
            "TerminationPolicies": [
                "Default"
            ],
            "NewInstancesProtectedFromScaleIn": false,
            "ServiceLinkedRoleARN":"arn",
            "TrafficSources": []
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe the first 100 specified Auto Scaling group

This example describes the specified Auto Scaling groups. It allows you to specify up to 100 group names.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups \
    --max-items 100 \
    --auto-scaling-group-names "group1" "group2" "group3" "group4"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

Example 3: To describe an Auto Scaling group in the specified region

This example describes the Auto Scaling groups in the specified region, up to a maximum of 75 groups.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups \
    --max-items 75 \
    --region us-east-1
```

See example 1 for sample output.

Example 4: To describe the specified number of Auto Scaling group

To return a specific number of Auto Scaling groups, use the `--max-items` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups \
    --max-items 1
```

See example 1 for sample output.

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more groups. To get the additional groups, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

See example 1 for sample output.

Example 5: To describe Auto Scaling groups that use launch configurations

This example uses the `--query` option to describe Auto Scaling groups that use launch configurations.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups \
    --query 'AutoScalingGroups[?LaunchConfigurationName!=`null`]'
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
        "AutoScalingGroupARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:930d940e-891e-4781-
a11a-7b0acd480f03:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg",
        "LaunchConfigurationName": "my-lc",
        "MinSize": 0,
        "MaxSize": 1,
        "DesiredCapacity": 1,
        "DefaultCooldown": 300,
        "AvailabilityZones": [
            "us-west-2a",
            "us-west-2b",
            "us-west-2c"
        ],
        "LoadBalancerNames": [],
        "TargetGroupARNs": [],
        "HealthCheckType": "EC2",
        "HealthCheckGracePeriod": 0,
        "Instances": [
            {
                "InstanceId": "i-088c57934a6449037",
                "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2c",
                "HealthStatus": "Healthy",
                "LifecycleState": "InService",
                "LaunchConfigurationName": "my-lc",
                "ProtectedFromScaleIn": false
            }
        ],
        "CreatedTime": "2023-10-28T02:39:22.152Z",
        "SuspendedProcesses": [],
        "VPCZoneIdentifier": "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782",
        "EnabledMetrics": [],
        "Tags": [],
        "TerminationPolicies": [
            "Default"
```

```
        ],
        "NewInstancesProtectedFromScaleIn": false,
        "ServiceLinkedRoleARN":"arn",
        "TrafficSources": []
    }
]
```

For more information, see Filter AWS CLI output in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingGroup;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.Instance;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
```

```
public class DescribeAutoScalingInstances {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName>

                Where:
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String groupName = args[0];
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String instanceId = getAutoScaling(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(instanceId);
        autoScalingClient.close();
    }

    public static String getAutoScaling(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
 String groupName) {
        try {
            String instanceId = "";
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest scalingGroupsRequest =
 DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response = autoScalingClient
                    .describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest);
            List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
            for (AutoScalingGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
 group.autoScalingGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
 group.autoScalingGroupARN());
```

```
                List<Instance> instances = group.instances();
                for (Instance instance : instances) {
                    instanceId = instance.instanceId();
                }
            }
            return instanceId;
        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val scalingGroupsRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.autoScalingGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.autoScalingGroupArn}")
            group.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                println("The instance id is ${instance.instanceId}")
                println("The lifecycle state is " + instance.lifecycleState)
```

```
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function describeAutoScalingGroups($autoScalingGroupNames)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([
            'AutoScalingGroupNames' => $autoScalingGroupNames
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the names of your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup | format-table -property AutoScalingGroupName
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName
--------------------
```

```
my-asg-1
my-asg-2
my-asg-3
my-asg-4
my-asg-5
my-asg-6
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg-1
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupARN     : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:930d940e-891e-4781-a11a-7b0acd480
                          f03:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg-1
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg-1
AvailabilityZones       : {us-west-2b, us-west-2a}
CreatedTime             : 3/1/2015 9:05:31 AM
DefaultCooldown         : 300
DesiredCapacity         : 2
EnabledMetrics          : {}
HealthCheckGracePeriod  : 300
HealthCheckType         : EC2
Instances               : {my-lc}
LaunchConfigurationName : my-lc
LoadBalancerNames       : {}
MaxSize                 : 0
MinSize                 : 0
PlacementGroup          :
Status                  :
SuspendedProcesses      : {}
Tags                    : {}
TerminationPolicies     : {Default}
VPCZoneIdentifier       : subnet-e4f33493,subnet-5264e837
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName @("my-asg-1", "my-asg-2")
```

Example 4: This example describes the Auto Scaling instances for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg-1).Instances
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup
```

Example 6: This example describes LaunchTemplate for the specified Auto Scaling group. This example assumes that the "Instance purchase options" is set to "Adhere to launch template". In case this option is set to "Combine purchase options and instance types", LaunchTemplate could be accessed using "MixedInstancesPolicy.LaunchTemplate" property.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-ag-1).LaunchTemplate
```

Output:

```
LaunchTemplateId     LaunchTemplateName   Version
----------------     ------------------   -------
lt-06095fd619cb40371 test-launch-template $Default
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the names of your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup | format-table -property AutoScalingGroupName
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName
--------------------
my-asg-1
my-asg-2
my-asg-3
my-asg-4
my-asg-5
```

```
my-asg-6
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg-1
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupARN     : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:930d940e-891e-4781-a11a-7b0acd480
                          f03:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg-1
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg-1
AvailabilityZones       : {us-west-2b, us-west-2a}
CreatedTime             : 3/1/2015 9:05:31 AM
DefaultCooldown         : 300
DesiredCapacity         : 2
EnabledMetrics          : {}
HealthCheckGracePeriod  : 300
HealthCheckType         : EC2
Instances               : {my-lc}
LaunchConfigurationName : my-lc
LoadBalancerNames       : {}
MaxSize                 : 0
MinSize                 : 0
PlacementGroup          :
Status                  :
SuspendedProcesses      : {}
Tags                    : {}
TerminationPolicies     : {Default}
VPCZoneIdentifier       : subnet-e4f33493,subnet-5264e837
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName @("my-asg-1", "my-asg-2")
```

Example 4: This example describes the Auto Scaling instances for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg-1).Instances
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup
```

Example 6: This example describes LaunchTemplate for the specified Auto Scaling group. This example assumes that the "Instance purchase options" is set to "Adhere to launch template". In case this option is set to "Combine purchase options and instance types", LaunchTemplate could be accessed using "MixedInstancesPolicy.LaunchTemplate" property.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-ag-1).LaunchTemplate
```

Output:

```
LaunchTemplateId     LaunchTemplateName   Version
----------------     ------------------   -------
lt-06095fd619cb40371 test-launch-template $Default
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
```

```
    def describe_group(self, group_name: str) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about an Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to look up.
        :return: A dictionary with information about the group if found,
otherwise None.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the Auto Scaling
group.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.autoscaling_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_auto_scaling_groups"
            )
            response_iterator =
paginator.paginate(AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name])
            groups = []
            for response in response_iterator:
                groups.extend(response.get("AutoScalingGroups", []))

            logger.info(
                f"Successfully retrieved information for Auto Scaling group
{group_name}."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to describe Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    "There is a conflict with another operation that is modifying
the "
                    f"Auto Scaling group '{group_name}' Please try again later."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
        else:
            return groups[0] if len(groups) > 0 else None
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_groups(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_auto_scaling_groups().send().await?;

    println!("Groups:");

    let groups = resp.auto_scaling_groups();

    for group in groups {
        println!(
            "Name:  {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown")
        );
        println!(
            "Arn:   {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_arn().unwrap_or("unknown"),
        );
        println!("Zones: {:?}", group.availability_zones(),);
        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} group(s)", groups.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about the instances in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling details.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>>
 DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = await DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName);
        var instanceIds = new List<string>();
        var instanceDetails = new List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>();
        if (groups != null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName && group.Instances !=
 null)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(instance =>
                    {
                        instanceIds.Add(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
```

```
            });

            var scalingGroupsRequest = new DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
            {
                MaxRecords = 10,
                InstanceIds = instanceIds,
            };

            var response =
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
                    scalingGroupsRequest);
            if (response.AutoScalingInstances != null)
            {
                instanceDetails = response.AutoScalingInstances;
            }
        }

        return instanceDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetInstanceIds(instanceIDs);
```

```
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeAutoScalingInstances(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const
 Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingInstanceDetails>
 &instancesDetails =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingInstances();

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingInstances. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe one or more instances

This example describes the specified instance.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-instances \
    --instance-ids i-06905f55584de02da
```

Output:

```
{
    "AutoScalingInstances": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-06905f55584de02da",
            "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2b",
            "LifecycleState": "InService",
```

```
            "HealthStatus": "HEALTHY",
            "ProtectedFromScaleIn": false,
            "LaunchTemplate": {
                "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-1234567890abcde12",
                "LaunchTemplateName": "my-launch-template",
                "Version": "1"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe one or more instances

This example uses the `--max-items` option to specify how many instances to return with this call.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-instances \
    --max-items 1
```

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more instances. To get the additional instances, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-instances \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

See example 1 for sample output.

Example 3: To describe instances that use launch configurations

This example uses the `--query` option to describe instances that use launch configurations.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-instances \
    --query 'AutoScalingInstances[?LaunchConfigurationName!=`null`]'
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "InstanceId": "i-088c57934a6449037",
```

```
        "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
        "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2c",
        "LifecycleState": "InService",
        "HealthStatus": "HEALTHY",
        "LaunchConfigurationName": "my-lc",
        "ProtectedFromScaleIn": false
    }
]
```

For more information, see Filter AWS CLI output in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeAutoScalingInstance(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String id) {
       try {
           DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest = DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
                   .builder()
                   .instanceIds(id)
                   .build();

           DescribeAutoScalingInstancesResponse response = autoScalingClient

.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest);
           List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails> instances =
response.autoScalingInstances();
           for (AutoScalingInstanceDetails instance : instances) {
               System.out.println("The instance lifecycle state is: " +
instance.lifecycleState());
```

```
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAutoScalingInstance(id: String) {
    val describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(id)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest)
        response.autoScalingInstances?.forEach { group ->
            println("The instance lifecycle state is: ${group.lifecycleState}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function describeAutoScalingInstances($instanceIds)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingInstances([
            'InstanceIds' => $instanceIds
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the IDs of your Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance | format-table -property InstanceId
```

Output:

```
InstanceId
----------
i-12345678
i-87654321
i-abcd1234
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified Auto Scaling instance.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2b
HealthStatus            : HEALTHY
InstanceId              : i-12345678
LaunchConfigurationName : my-lc
LifecycleState          : InService
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance -InstanceId @("i-12345678", "i-87654321")
```

Example 4: This example describes the Auto Scaling instances for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg).Instances | Get-
ASAutoScalingInstance
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the IDs of your Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance | format-table -property InstanceId
```

Output:

```
InstanceId
----------
i-12345678
i-87654321
i-abcd1234
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified Auto Scaling instance.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2b
HealthStatus            : HEALTHY
InstanceId              : i-12345678
LaunchConfigurationName : my-lc
LifecycleState          : InService
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance -InstanceId @("i-12345678", "i-87654321")
```

Example 4: This example describes the Auto Scaling instances for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg).Instances | Get-
ASAutoScalingInstance
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def describe_instances(self, instance_ids: List[str]) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about instances.

        :param instance_ids: A list of instance IDs to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries with information about each instance,
                 or an empty list if none are found.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the instances.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.autoscaling_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_auto_scaling_instances"
            )
            response_iterator = paginator.paginate(InstanceIds=instance_ids)

            instances = []
            for response in response_iterator:
                instances.extend(response.get("AutoScalingInstances", []))

            logger.info(f"Successfully described instances: {instance_ids}")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't describe instances {instance_ids}. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )
            raise
        else:
            return instances
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn list_instances(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError> {
        // The direct way to list instances is by using
 DescribeAutoScalingGroup's instances property. However, this returns a
 Vec<Instance>, as opposed to a Vec<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>.
        // Ok(self.get_group().await?.instances.unwrap_or_default().map(|
i| i.instance_id.clone().unwrap_or_default()).filter(|id| !
id.is_empty()).collect())

        // Alternatively, and for the sake of example,
 DescribeAutoScalingInstances returns a list that can be filtered by the client.
        self.autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_instances()
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
            .map(|items| {
                items
                    .into_iter()
                    .filter(|i| {
                        i.auto_scaling_group_name.as_deref()
                            == Some(self.auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
                    })
                    .map(|i| i.instance_id.unwrap_or_default())
                    .filter(|id| !id.is_empty())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
```

```
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Failed to get list of auto scaling
 instances", &err))
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the available notification types

This example describes the available notification types.

```
aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-notification-types
```

Output:

```
{
    "AutoScalingNotificationTypes": [
        "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH",
        "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH_ERROR",
        "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE",
        "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE_ERROR",
        "autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting Amazon SNS notifications when your Auto Scaling group scales in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the notification types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingNotificationType
```

Output:

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH_ERROR
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE_ERROR
autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the notification types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingNotificationType
```

Output:

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH_ERROR
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE_ERROR
autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLaunchConfigurations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLaunchConfigurations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe the specified launch configuration

This example describes the specified launch configuration.

```
aws autoscaling describe-launch-configurations \
    --launch-configuration-names my-launch-config
```

Output:

```
{
    "LaunchConfigurations": [
        {
            "LaunchConfigurationName": "my-launch-config",
            "LaunchConfigurationARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:launchConfiguration:98d3b196-4cf9-4e88-8ca1-8547c24ced8b:launchConfig
my-launch-config",
            "ImageId": "ami-0528a5175983e7f28",
            "KeyName": "my-key-pair-uswest2",
            "SecurityGroups": [
                "sg-05eaec502fcdadc2e"
            ],
            "ClassicLinkVPCSecurityGroups": [],
            "UserData": "",
            "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
            "KernelId": "",
            "RamdiskId": "",
            "BlockDeviceMappings": [
                {
                    "DeviceName": "/dev/xvda",
                    "Ebs": {
                        "SnapshotId": "snap-06c1606ba5ca274b1",
                        "VolumeSize": 8,
                        "VolumeType": "gp2",
                        "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                        "Encrypted": false
                    }
                }
            ],
            "InstanceMonitoring": {
```

```
                "Enabled": true
            },
            "CreatedTime": "2020-10-28T02:39:22.321Z",
            "EbsOptimized": false,
            "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
            "MetadataOptions": {
                "HttpTokens": "required",
                "HttpPutResponseHopLimit": 1,
                "HttpEndpoint": "disabled"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe a specified number of launch configurations

To return a specific number of launch configurations, use the `--max-items` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-launch-configurations \
    --max-items 1
```

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more launch configurations. To get the additional launch configurations, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-launch-configurations \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see DescribeLaunchConfigurations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the names of your launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration | format-table -property LaunchConfigurationName
```

Output:

```
LaunchConfigurationName
```

```
-----------------------
my-lc-1
my-lc-2
my-lc-3
my-lc-4
my-lc-5
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified launch configuration.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc-1
```

Output:

```
AssociatePublicIpAddress     : True
BlockDeviceMappings          : {/dev/xvda}
ClassicLinkVPCId             :
ClassicLinkVPCSecurityGroups : {}
CreatedTime                  : 12/12/2014 3:22:08 PM
EbsOptimized                 : False
IamInstanceProfile           :
ImageId                      : ami-043a5034
InstanceMonitoring           : Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.InstanceMonitoring
InstanceType                 : t2.micro
KernelId                     :
KeyName                      :
LaunchConfigurationARN       : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:launchConfiguration:7e5f31e4-693b-4604-9322-
                               e6f68d7fafad:launchConfigurationName/my-lc-1
LaunchConfigurationName      : my-lc-1
PlacementTenancy             :
RamdiskId                    :
SecurityGroups               : {sg-67ef0308}
SpotPrice                    :
UserData                     :
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName @("my-lc-1", "my-lc-2")
```

Example 4: This example describes all your launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeLaunchConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the names of your launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration | format-table -property LaunchConfigurationName
```

Output:

```
LaunchConfigurationName
-----------------------
my-lc-1
my-lc-2
my-lc-3
my-lc-4
my-lc-5
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified launch configuration.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc-1
```

Output:

```
AssociatePublicIpAddress     : True
BlockDeviceMappings          : {/dev/xvda}
ClassicLinkVPCId             :
ClassicLinkVPCSecurityGroups : {}
CreatedTime                  : 12/12/2014 3:22:08 PM
EbsOptimized                 : False
IamInstanceProfile           :
ImageId                      : ami-043a5034
InstanceMonitoring           : Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.InstanceMonitoring
InstanceType                 : t2.micro
KernelId                     :
KeyName                      :
LaunchConfigurationARN       : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:launchConfiguration:7e5f31e4-693b-4604-9322-
```

```
                                e6f68d7fafad:launchConfigurationName/my-lc-1
LaunchConfigurationName      : my-lc-1
PlacementTenancy             :
RamdiskId                    :
SecurityGroups               : {sg-67ef0308}
SpotPrice                    :
UserData                     :
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName @("my-lc-1", "my-lc-2")
```

Example 4: This example describes all your launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeLaunchConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLifecycleHookTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLifecycleHookTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the available lifecycle hook types

This example describes the available lifecycle hook types.

```
aws autoscaling describe-lifecycle-hook-types
```

Output:

```
{
    "LifecycleHookTypes": [
        "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING",
        "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATING"
```

```
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHookTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the lifecycle hook types supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHookType
```

Output:

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING
auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATING
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHookTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the lifecycle hook types supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHookType
```

Output:

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING
auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATING
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHookTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLifecycleHooks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLifecycleHooks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your lifecycle hooks

This example describes the lifecycle hooks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling describe-lifecycle-hooks \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "LifecycleHooks": [
        {
            "GlobalTimeout": 3000,
            "HeartbeatTimeout": 30,
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "LifecycleHookName": "my-launch-hook",
            "DefaultResult": "ABANDON",
            "LifecycleTransition": "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING"
        },
        {
            "GlobalTimeout": 6000,
            "HeartbeatTimeout": 60,
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "LifecycleHookName": "my-termination-hook",
            "DefaultResult": "CONTINUE",
            "LifecycleTransition": "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATING"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHooks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified lifecycle hook.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName  : my-asg
DefaultResult         : ABANDON
GlobalTimeout         : 172800
HeartbeatTimeout      : 3600
LifecycleHookName     : myLifecycleHook
LifecycleTransition   : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING
NotificationMetadata  :
NotificationTargetARN : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic
RoleARN               : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role
```

Example 2: This example describes all lifecycle hooks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Example 3: This example describes all lifecycle hooks for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHooks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified lifecycle hook.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName  : my-asg
DefaultResult         : ABANDON
GlobalTimeout         : 172800
HeartbeatTimeout      : 3600
```

```
LifecycleHookName     : myLifecycleHook
LifecycleTransition   : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING
NotificationMetadata  :
NotificationTargetARN : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic
RoleARN               : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role
```

Example 2: This example describes all lifecycle hooks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Example 3: This example describes all lifecycle hooks for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHooks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancers` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the Classic Load Balancers for an Auto Scaling group

This example describes the Classic Load Balancers for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling describe-load-balancers \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancers": [
        {
            "State": "Added",
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the load balancers for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASLoadBalancer -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName    State
----------------    -----
my-lb               Added
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the load balancers for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASLoadBalancer -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName    State
----------------    -----
my-lb               Added
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMetricCollectionTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMetricCollectionTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the available metric collection types

This example describes the available metric collection types.

```
aws autoscaling describe-metric-collection-types
```

Output:

```
{
    "Metrics": [
        {
            "Metric": "GroupMinSize"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupMaxSize"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupDesiredCapacity"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupInServiceInstances"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupInServiceCapacity"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupPendingInstances"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupPendingCapacity"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupTerminatingInstances"
        },
        {
```

```
            "Metric": "GroupTerminatingCapacity"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupStandbyInstances"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupStandbyCapacity"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupTotalInstances"
        },
        {
            "Metric": "GroupTotalCapacity"
        }
    ],
    "Granularities": [
        {
            "Granularity": "1Minute"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Auto Scaling group metrics in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMetricCollectionTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the metric collection types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
(Get-ASMetricCollectionType).Metrics
```

Output:

```
Metric
------
GroupMinSize
GroupMaxSize
```

```
GroupDesiredCapacity
GroupInServiceInstances
GroupPendingInstances
GroupTerminatingInstances
GroupStandbyInstances
GroupTotalInstances
```

Example 2: This example lists the corresponding granularities.

```
(Get-ASMetricCollectionType).Granularities
```

Output:

```
Granularity
-----------
1Minute
```

- For API details, see DescribeMetricCollectionTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the metric collection types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
(Get-ASMetricCollectionType).Metrics
```

Output:

```
Metric
------
GroupMinSize
GroupMaxSize
GroupDesiredCapacity
GroupInServiceInstances
GroupPendingInstances
GroupTerminatingInstances
GroupStandbyInstances
GroupTotalInstances
```

Example 2: This example lists the corresponding granularities.

```
(Get-ASMetricCollectionType).Granularities
```

Output:

```
Granularity
-----------
1Minute
```

- For API details, see DescribeMetricCollectionTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeNotificationConfigurations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeNotificationConfigurations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe the notification configurations of a specified group

This example describes the notification configurations for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling describe-notification-configurations \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "NotificationConfigurations": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "NotificationType": "autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION",
            "TopicARN": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic-2"
        },
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "NotificationType": "autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION",
            "TopicARN": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Getting Amazon SNS notifications when your Auto Scaling group scales in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 1: To describe a specified number of notification configurations

To return a specific number of notification configurations, use the `max-items` parameter.

```
aws autoscaling describe-notification-configurations \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-auto-scaling-group \
    --max-items 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "NotificationConfigurations": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "NotificationType": "autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION",
            "TopicARN": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic-2"
        },
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "NotificationType": "autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION",
            "TopicARN": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic"
        }
    ]
}
```

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more notification configurations. To get the additional notification configurations, use the value of this field with the `starting-token` parameter in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-notification-configurations \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

For more information, see Getting Amazon SNS notifications when your Auto Scaling group scales in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeNotificationConfigurations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the notification actions associated with the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg | format-list
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
NotificationType     : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH
TopicARN             : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic

AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
NotificationType     : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE
TopicARN             : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic
```

Example 2: This example describes the notification actions associated with all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASNotificationConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeNotificationConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the notification actions associated with the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg | format-list
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
NotificationType     : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH
TopicARN             : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic

AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
NotificationType     : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE
```

```
TopicARN             : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic
```

Example 2: This example describes the notification actions associated with all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASNotificationConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeNotificationConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribePolicies` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe the scaling policies of a specified group

This example describes the scaling policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling describe-policies \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScalingPolicies": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "PolicyName": "alb1000-target-tracking-scaling-policy",
            "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:3065d9c8-9969-4bec-
bb6a-3fbe5550fde6:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:policyName/alb1000-target-tracking-
scaling-policy",
            "PolicyType": "TargetTrackingScaling",
            "StepAdjustments": [],
            "Alarms": [
                {
                    "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-my-asg-
AlarmHigh-924887a9-12d7-4e01-8686-6f844d13a196",
```

```
                    "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:123456789012:alarm:TargetTracking-my-asg-
AlarmHigh-924887a9-12d7-4e01-8686-6f844d13a196"
                },
                {
                    "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmLow-f96f899d-
b8e7-4d09-a010-c1aaa35da296",
                    "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:123456789012:alarm:TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmLow-f96f899d-b8e7-4d09-a010-
c1aaa35da296"
                }
            ],
            "TargetTrackingConfiguration": {
                "PredefinedMetricSpecification": {
                    "PredefinedMetricType": "ALBRequestCountPerTarget",
                    "ResourceLabel": "app/my-alb/778d41231b141a0f/targetgroup/my-
alb-target-group/943f017f100becff"
                },
                "TargetValue": 1000.0,
                "DisableScaleIn": false
            },
            "Enabled": true
        },
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "PolicyName": "cpu40-target-tracking-scaling-policy",
            "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:5fd26f71-39d4-4690-82a9-
b8515c45cdde:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:policyName/cpu40-target-tracking-
scaling-policy",
            "PolicyType": "TargetTrackingScaling",
            "StepAdjustments": [],
            "Alarms": [
                {
                    "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-my-asg-
AlarmHigh-139f9789-37b9-42ad-bea5-b5b147d7f473",
                    "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:123456789012:alarm:TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmHigh-139f9789-37b9-42ad-
bea5-b5b147d7f473"
                },
                {
                    "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmLow-bd681c67-
fc18-4c56-8468-fb8e413009c9",
```

```
                    "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
west-2:123456789012:alarm:TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmLow-bd681c67-fc18-4c56-8468-
fb8e413009c9"
                }
            ],
            "TargetTrackingConfiguration": {
                "PredefinedMetricSpecification": {
                    "PredefinedMetricType": "ASGAverageCPUUtilization"
                },
                "TargetValue": 40.0,
                "DisableScaleIn": false
            },
            "Enabled": true
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Dynamic scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe the scaling policies of a specified name

To return specific scaling policies, use the `--policy-names` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-policies \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --policy-names cpu40-target-tracking-scaling-policy
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Dynamic scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe a number of scaling policies

To return a specific number of policies, use the `--max-items` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-policies \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --max-items 1
```

See example 1 for sample output.

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call to get the additional policies.

```
aws autoscaling describe-policies --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg --starting-
token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

For more information, see Dynamic scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribePolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes all policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
AdjustmentType          : ChangeInCapacity
Alarms                  : {}
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg
Cooldown                : 0
EstimatedInstanceWarmup : 0
MetricAggregationType   :
MinAdjustmentMagnitude  : 0
MinAdjustmentStep       : 0
PolicyARN               : arn:aws:auto-scaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:aa3836ab-5462-42c7-adab-e1d769fc24ef
                          :autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:policyName/myScaleInPolicy
PolicyName              : myScaleInPolicy
PolicyType              : SimpleScaling
ScalingAdjustment       : -1
StepAdjustments         : {}
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName @("myScaleOutPolicy",
 "myScaleInPolicy")
```

Example 3: This example describes all policies for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASPolicy
```

- For API details, see DescribePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes all policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
AdjustmentType          : ChangeInCapacity
Alarms                  : {}
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg
Cooldown                : 0
EstimatedInstanceWarmup : 0
MetricAggregationType   :
MinAdjustmentMagnitude  : 0
MinAdjustmentStep       : 0
PolicyARN               : arn:aws:auto-scaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:aa3836ab-5462-42c7-adab-e1d769fc24ef
                          :autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:policyName/myScaleInPolicy
PolicyName              : myScaleInPolicy
PolicyType              : SimpleScaling
ScalingAdjustment       : -1
StepAdjustments         : {}
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName @("myScaleOutPolicy",
 "myScaleInPolicy")
```

Example 3: This example describes all policies for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASPolicy
```

- For API details, see DescribePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeScalingActivities` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities for an
    /// Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Activity>> DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var activities = new List<Activity>();
        var scalingActivitiesRequest = new DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            MaxRecords = 10,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(scalingActivitiesRequest);
        if (response.Activities != null)
        {
            activities = response.Activities;
```

```
        }
        return activities;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> allActivities;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DescribeScalingActivities(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> &activities
=
                        outcome.GetResult().GetActivities();
                allActivities.insert(allActivities.end(), activities.begin(),
activities.end());
```

```
                nextToken  = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeScalingActivities.
 "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << allActivities.size() << " activities."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Activities are ordered with the most recent first."
                  << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity &activity: allActivities) {
            std::cout << activity.GetDescription() << std::endl;
            std::cout << activity.GetDetails() << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe scaling activities for the specified group

This example describes the scaling activities for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scaling-activities \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "f9f2d65b-f1f2-43e7-b46d-d86756459699",
            "Description": "Launching a new EC2 instance: i-0d44425630326060f",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
```

```
            "Cause": "At 2020-10-30T19:35:51Z a user request update of
 AutoScalingGroup constraints to min: 0, max: 16, desired: 16 changing the
 desired capacity from 0 to 16.  At 2020-10-30T19:36:07Z an instance was started
 in response to a difference between desired and actual capacity, increasing the
 capacity from 0 to 16.",
            "StartTime": "2020-10-30T19:36:09.766Z",
            "EndTime": "2020-10-30T19:36:41Z",
            "StatusCode": "Successful",
            "Progress": 100,
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-5ea0c127\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2b\"}"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Verify a scaling activity for an Auto Scaling group in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe the scaling activities for a deleted group

To describe scaling activities after the Auto Scaling group has been deleted, add the `--include-deleted-groups` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scaling-activities \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --include-deleted-groups
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "e1f5de0e-f93e-1417-34ac-092a76fba220",
            "Description": "Launching a new EC2 instance.  Status Reason: Your
 Spot request price of 0.001 is lower than the minimum required Spot request
 fulfillment price of 0.0031. Launching EC2 instance failed.",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "Cause": "At 2021-01-13T20:47:24Z a user request update of
 AutoScalingGroup constraints to min: 1, max: 5, desired: 3 changing the desired
 capacity from 0 to 3.  At 2021-01-13T20:47:27Z an instance was started in
 response to a difference between desired and actual capacity, increasing the
 capacity from 0 to 3.",
            "StartTime": "2021-01-13T20:47:30.094Z",
```

```
            "EndTime": "2021-01-13T20:47:30Z",
            "StatusCode": "Failed",
            "StatusMessage": "Your Spot request price of 0.001 is lower than
 the minimum required Spot request fulfillment price of 0.0031. Launching EC2
 instance failed.",
            "Progress": 100,
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-5ea0c127\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2b\"}",
            "AutoScalingGroupState": "Deleted",
            "AutoScalingGroupARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:283179a2-
f3ce-423d-93f6-66bb518232f7:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Troubleshoot Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe a specified number of scaling activities

To return a specific number of activities, use the `--max-items` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scaling-activities \
    --max-items 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "f9f2d65b-f1f2-43e7-b46d-d86756459699",
            "Description": "Launching a new EC2 instance: i-0d44425630326060f",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "Cause": "At 2020-10-30T19:35:51Z a user request update of
 AutoScalingGroup constraints to min: 0, max: 16, desired: 16 changing the
 desired capacity from 0 to 16.  At 2020-10-30T19:36:07Z an instance was started
 in response to a difference between desired and actual capacity, increasing the
 capacity from 0 to 16.",
            "StartTime": "2020-10-30T19:36:09.766Z",
            "EndTime": "2020-10-30T19:36:41Z",
            "StatusCode": "Successful",
            "Progress": 100,
```

```
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-5ea0c127\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2b\"}"
        }
    ]
}
```

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more activities. To get the additional activities, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scaling-activities \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

For more information, see Verify a scaling activity for an Auto Scaling group in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeScalingActivities(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
       try {
           DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest scalingActivitiesRequest =
DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .maxRecords(10)
                   .build();

           DescribeScalingActivitiesResponse response = autoScalingClient
                   .describeScalingActivities(scalingActivitiesRequest);
           List<Activity> activities = response.activities();
           for (Activity activity : activities) {
```

```
                System.out.println("The activity Id is " +
 activity.activityId());
                System.out.println("The activity details are " +
 activity.details());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val groupsReques =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response = autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(groupsReques)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The service to use for the health checks:
 ${group.healthCheckType}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function describeScalingActivities($autoScalingGroupName)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->describeScalingActivities([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the scaling activities for the last six weeks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 063308ae-aa22-4a9b-94f4-9fae4EXAMPLE
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:45:16Z a user request explicitly set
 group desired capacity changing the desired
                       capacity from 1 to 2.  At 2015-11-22T15:45:34Z an instance
 was started in response to a difference
```

```
                        between desired and actual capacity, increasing the
 capacity from 1 to 2.
Description          : Launching a new EC2 instance: i-26e715fc
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              : 11/22/2015 7:46:09 AM
Progress             : 100
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:45:35 AM
StatusCode           : Successful
StatusMessage        :

ActivityId           : ce719997-086d-4c73-a2f1-ab703EXAMPLE
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:57:53Z a user request created an
 AutoScalingGroup changing the desired capacity
                        from 0 to 1.  At 2015-11-20T22:57:58Z an instance was
 started in response to a difference betwe
                        en desired and actual capacity, increasing the capacity
 from 0 to 1.
Description          : Launching a new EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              : 11/20/2015 2:58:32 PM
Progress             : 100
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:57:59 PM
StatusCode           : Successful
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified scaling activity.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity -ActivityId "063308ae-aa22-4a9b-94f4-9fae4EXAMPLE"
```

Example 3: This example describes the scaling activities for the last six weeks for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the scaling activities for the last six weeks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 063308ae-aa22-4a9b-94f4-9fae4EXAMPLE
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:45:16Z a user request explicitly set
 group desired capacity changing the desired
                       capacity from 1 to 2.  At 2015-11-22T15:45:34Z an instance
 was started in response to a difference
                       between desired and actual capacity, increasing the
 capacity from 1 to 2.
Description          : Launching a new EC2 instance: i-26e715fc
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              : 11/22/2015 7:46:09 AM
Progress             : 100
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:45:35 AM
StatusCode           : Successful
StatusMessage        :

ActivityId           : ce719997-086d-4c73-a2f1-ab703EXAMPLE
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:57:53Z a user request created an
 AutoScalingGroup changing the desired capacity
                        from 0 to 1.  At 2015-11-20T22:57:58Z an instance was
 started in response to a difference betwe
                       en desired and actual capacity, increasing the capacity
 from 0 to 1.
Description          : Launching a new EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              : 11/20/2015 2:58:32 PM
Progress             : 100
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:57:59 PM
StatusCode           : Successful
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified scaling activity.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity -ActivityId "063308ae-aa22-4a9b-94f4-9fae4EXAMPLE"
```

Example 3: This example describes the scaling activities for the last six weeks for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def describe_scaling_activities(self, group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str,
 Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about scaling activities for the group. Scaling
 activities
        are things like instances stopping or starting in response to user
 requests
        or capacity changes.
```

```
        :param group_name: The name of the group to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing the scaling activities for
the
                 group, ordered with the most recent activity first.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the scaling
activities.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.autoscaling_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_scaling_activities"
            )
            response_iterator =
paginator.paginate(AutoScalingGroupName=group_name)
            activities = []
            for response in response_iterator:
                activities.extend(response.get("Activities", []))

            logger.info(
                f"Successfully described scaling activities for group
'{group_name}'."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't describe scaling activities for group '{group_name}'.
Error code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"There is a conflict with another operation that is
modifying the Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please try again later."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return activities
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn describe_scenario(&self) -> AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
        let group = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map(|s| {
                s.auto_scaling_groups()
                    .iter()
                    .map(|s| {
                        format!(
                            "{}: {}",
                            s.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                            s.status().unwrap_or("Unknown")
                        )
                    })
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|e| {
                ScenarioError::new("Failed to describe auto scaling groups for
scenario", &e)
            });

        let instances = self
            .list_instances()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| anyhow!("There was an error listing instances: {e}",));

        // 10. DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have
occurred for the group so far.
```

```
        //   Bonus: use CloudWatch API to get and show some metrics collected for
the group.
        //   CW.ListMetrics with Namespace='AWS/AutoScaling' and
Dimensions=[{'Name': 'AutoScalingGroupName', 'Value': }]
        //   CW.GetMetricStatistics with Statistics='Sum'. Start and End times
must be in UTC!
        let activities = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_scaling_activities()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<_>, _>>()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| {
                anyhow!(
                    "There was an error retrieving scaling activities: {}",
                    DisplayErrorContext(&e)
                )
            });

        AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
            group,
            instances,
            activities,
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeScalingProcessTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScalingProcessTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the available process types

This example describes the available process types.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scaling-process-types
```

Output:

```
{
    "Processes": [
        {
            "ProcessName": "AZRebalance"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "AddToLoadBalancer"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "AlarmNotification"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "HealthCheck"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "InstanceRefresh"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "Launch"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "ReplaceUnhealthy"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "ScheduledActions"
        },
        {
            "ProcessName": "Terminate"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Suspending and resuming scaling processes in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeScalingProcessTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the process types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASScalingProcessType
```

Output:

```
ProcessName
-----------
AZRebalance
AddToLoadBalancer
AlarmNotification
HealthCheck
Launch
ReplaceUnhealthy
ScheduledActions
Terminate
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingProcessTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the process types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASScalingProcessType
```

Output:

```
ProcessName
-----------
AZRebalance
AddToLoadBalancer
AlarmNotification
HealthCheck
Launch
ReplaceUnhealthy
ScheduledActions
Terminate
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingProcessTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeScheduledActions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScheduledActions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all scheduled actions

This example describes all your scheduled actions.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledUpdateGroupActions": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-recurring-action",
            "Recurrence": "30 0 1 1,6,12 *",
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8e86b655-b2e6-4410-8f29-
b4f094d6871c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/my-recurring-
action",
            "StartTime": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "Time": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "MinSize": 1,
            "MaxSize": 6,
            "DesiredCapacity": 4,
            "TimeZone": "America/New_York"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe scheduled actions for the specified group

To describe the scheduled actions for a specific Auto Scaling group, use the `--auto-scaling-group-name` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledUpdateGroupActions": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-recurring-action",
            "Recurrence": "30 0 1 1,6,12 *",
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8e86b655-b2e6-4410-8f29-
b4f094d6871c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/my-recurring-
action",
            "StartTime": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "Time": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "MinSize": 1,
            "MaxSize": 6,
            "DesiredCapacity": 4,
            "TimeZone": "America/New_York"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe the specified scheduled action

To describe a specific scheduled action, use the `--scheduled-action-names` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
    --scheduled-action-names my-recurring-action
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledUpdateGroupActions": [
        {
```

```
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-recurring-action",
            "Recurrence": "30 0 1 1,6,12 *",
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8e86b655-b2e6-4410-8f29-
b4f094d6871c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/my-recurring-
action",
            "StartTime": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "Time": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "MinSize": 1,
            "MaxSize": 6,
            "DesiredCapacity": 4,
            "TimeZone": "America/New_York"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 4: To describe scheduled actions with a specified start time

To describe the scheduled actions that start at a specific time, use the `--start-time` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
    --start-time "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z"
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledUpdateGroupActions": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-recurring-action",
            "Recurrence": "30 0 1 1,6,12 *",
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8e86b655-b2e6-4410-8f29-
b4f094d6871c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/my-recurring-
action",
            "StartTime": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "Time": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "MinSize": 1,
            "MaxSize": 6,
```

```
            "DesiredCapacity": 4,
            "TimeZone": "America/New_York"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 5: To describe scheduled actions that end at a specified time

To describe the scheduled actions that end at a specific time, use the `--end-time` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
    --end-time "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z"
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledUpdateGroupActions": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-recurring-action",
            "Recurrence": "30 0 1 1,6,12 *",
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8e86b655-b2e6-4410-8f29-
b4f094d6871c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/my-recurring-
action",
            "StartTime": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "Time": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "MinSize": 1,
            "MaxSize": 6,
            "DesiredCapacity": 4,
            "TimeZone": "America/New_York"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 6: To describe a specified number of scheduled actions

To return a specific number of scheduled actions, use the `--max-items` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --max-items 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "ScheduledUpdateGroupActions": [
        {
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "ScheduledActionName": "my-recurring-action",
            "Recurrence": "30 0 1 1,6,12 *",
            "ScheduledActionARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8e86b655-b2e6-4410-8f29-
b4f094d6871c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/my-recurring-
action",
            "StartTime": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "Time": "2023-12-01T04:00:00Z",
            "MinSize": 1,
            "MaxSize": 6,
            "DesiredCapacity": 4,
            "TimeZone": "America/New_York"
        }
    ]
}
```

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more scheduled actions. To get the additional scheduled actions, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-scheduled-actions \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

For more information, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
DesiredCapacity      : 10
EndTime              :
MaxSize              :
MinSize              :
Recurrence           :
ScheduledActionARN   : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8a4c5f24-6ec6-4306-a2dd-f7
                       2c3af3a4d6:autoScalingGroupName/my-
asg:scheduledActionName/myScheduledAction
ScheduledActionName  : myScheduledAction
StartTime            : 11/30/2015 8:00:00 AM
Time                 : 11/30/2015 8:00:00 AM
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified scheduled scaling actions.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -ScheduledActionName @("myScheduledScaleOut",
 "myScheduledScaleIn")
```

Example 3: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions that start by the specified time.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -StartTime "2015-12-01T08:00:00Z"
```

Example 4: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions that end by the specified time.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -EndTime "2015-12-30T08:00:00Z"
```

Example 5: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
DesiredCapacity      : 10
EndTime              :
MaxSize              :
MinSize              :
Recurrence           :
ScheduledActionARN   : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8a4c5f24-6ec6-4306-a2dd-f7
                       2c3af3a4d6:autoScalingGroupName/my-
asg:scheduledActionName/myScheduledAction
ScheduledActionName  : myScheduledAction
StartTime            : 11/30/2015 8:00:00 AM
Time                 : 11/30/2015 8:00:00 AM
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified scheduled scaling actions.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -ScheduledActionName @("myScheduledScaleOut",
 "myScheduledScaleIn")
```

Example 3: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions that start by the specified time.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -StartTime "2015-12-01T08:00:00Z"
```

Example 4: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions that end by the specified time.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -EndTime "2015-12-30T08:00:00Z"
```

Example 5: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe all tags

This example describes all your tags.

```
aws autoscaling describe-tags
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "auto-scaling-group",
            "ResourceId": "my-asg",
            "PropagateAtLaunch": true,
            "Value": "Research",
            "Key": "Dept"
        },
        {
```

```
            "ResourceType": "auto-scaling-group",
            "ResourceId": "my-asg",
            "PropagateAtLaunch": true,
            "Value": "WebServer",
            "Key": "Role"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Tagging Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe tags for a specified group

To describe tags for a specific Auto Scaling group, use the `--filters` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-tags --filters Name=auto-scaling-group,Values=my-asg
```

For more information, see Tagging Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe the specified number of tags

To return a specific number of tags, use the `--max-items` option.

```
aws autoscaling describe-tags \
    --max-items 1
```

If the output includes a `NextToken` field, there are more tags. To get the additional tags, use the value of this field with the `--starting-token` option in a subsequent call as follows.

```
aws autoscaling describe-tags \
    --filters Name=auto-scaling-group,Values=my-asg \
    --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

For more information, see Tagging Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the tags with a key value of either 'myTag' or 'myTag2'. The possible values for the filter name are 'auto-scaling-group', 'key', 'value', and 'propagate-at-launch'. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-ASTag -Filter @( @{ Name="key"; Values=@("myTag", "myTag2") } )
```

Output:

```
Key               : myTag2
PropagateAtLaunch : True
ResourceId        : my-asg
ResourceType      : auto-scaling-group
Value             : myTagValue2

Key               : myTag
PropagateAtLaunch : True
ResourceId        : my-asg
ResourceType      : auto-scaling-group
Value             : myTagValue
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter for the Filter parameter.

```
$keys = New-Object string[] 2
$keys[0] = "myTag"
$keys[1] = "myTag2"
$filter = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "key"
$filter.Values = $keys
Get-ASTag -Filter @( $filter )
```

Example 3: This example describes all tags for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASTag
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the tags with a key value of either 'myTag' or 'myTag2'. The possible values for the filter name are 'auto-scaling-group', 'key', 'value', and 'propagate-at-launch'. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-ASTag -Filter @( @{ Name="key"; Values=@("myTag", "myTag2") } )
```

Output:

```
Key               : myTag2
PropagateAtLaunch : True
ResourceId        : my-asg
ResourceType      : auto-scaling-group
Value             : myTagValue2

Key               : myTag
PropagateAtLaunch : True
ResourceId        : my-asg
ResourceType      : auto-scaling-group
Value             : myTagValue
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter for the Filter parameter.

```
$keys = New-Object string[] 2
$keys[0] = "myTag"
$keys[1] = "myTag2"
$filter = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "key"
$filter.Values = $keys
Get-ASTag -Filter @( $filter )
```

Example 3: This example describes all tags for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASTag
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe available termination policy types

This example describes the available termination policy types.

```
aws autoscaling describe-termination-policy-types
```

Output:

```
{
    "TerminationPolicyTypes": [
        "AllocationStrategy",
        "ClosestToNextInstanceHour",
        "Default",
        "NewestInstance",
        "OldestInstance",
        "OldestLaunchConfiguration",
        "OldestLaunchTemplate"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Controlling which Auto Scaling instances terminate during scale in in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the termination policies that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASTerminationPolicyType
```

Output:

```
ClosestToNextInstanceHour
Default
NewestInstance
OldestInstance
OldestLaunchConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the termination policies that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASTerminationPolicyType
```

Output:

```
ClosestToNextInstanceHour
Default
NewestInstance
OldestInstance
OldestLaunchConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach an instance from an Auto Scaling group

This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling detach-instances \
    --instance-ids i-030017cfa84b20135 \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --should-decrement-desired-capacity
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "5091cb52-547a-47ce-a236-c9ccbc2cb2c9",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "Description": "Detaching EC2 instance: i-030017cfa84b20135",
            "Cause": "At 2020-10-31T17:35:04Z instance i-030017cfa84b20135 was
 detached in response to a user request, shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.",
            "StartTime": "2020-04-12T15:02:16.179Z",
            "StatusCode": "InProgress",
            "Progress": 50,
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-6194ea3b\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2c\"}"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DetachInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group and decreases the desired capacity so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Dismount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 06733445-ce94-4039-be1b-b9f1866e276e
```

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:34:59Z instance i-93633f9b was detached
 in response to a user request, shrinking
                       the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Detaching EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:34:59 PM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group without decreasing the desired capacity. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Dismount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-7bf746a2 -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : f43a3cd4-d38c-4af7-9fe0-d76ec2307b6d
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:34:59Z instance i-7bf746a2 was detached
 in response to a user request.
Description          : Detaching EC2 instance: i-7bf746a2
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:34:59 PM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see DetachInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group and decreases the desired capacity so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Dismount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 06733445-ce94-4039-be1b-b9f1866e276e
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:34:59Z instance i-93633f9b was detached
 in response to a user request, shrinking
                       the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Detaching EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:34:59 PM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group without decreasing the desired capacity. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Dismount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-7bf746a2 -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : f43a3cd4-d38c-4af7-9fe0-d76ec2307b6d
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:34:59Z instance i-7bf746a2 was detached
 in response to a user request.
Description          : Detaching EC2 instance: i-7bf746a2
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:34:59 PM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see DetachInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachLoadBalancers` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachLoadBalancers`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a Classic Load Balancer from an Auto Scaling group

This example detaches the specified Classic Load Balancer from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling detach-load-balancers \
    --load-balancer-names my-load-balancer \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Attaching a load balancer to your Auto Scaling group in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the specified load balancer from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Dismount-ASLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-lb -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified load balancer from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Dismount-ASLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-lb -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisableMetricsCollection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the collection of metric data for an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var request = new DisableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(request);
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.DisableMetricsCollection(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Metrics collection has been disabled." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DisableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable metrics collection for an Auto Scaling group

This example disables collection of the `GroupDesiredCapacity` metric for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling disable-metrics-collection \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --metrics GroupDesiredCapacity
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Monitoring CloudWatch metrics for your Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void disableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
       try {
           DisableMetricsCollectionRequest disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
DisableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                   .build();


autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The disable metrics collection operation was
 successful");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disableMetricsCollection(groupName: String) {
    val disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
        DisableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->

 autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest)
        println("The disable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function disableMetricsCollection($autoScalingGroupName)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->disableMetricsCollection([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disables monitoring of the specified metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Disable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Metric
 @("GroupMinSize", "GroupMaxSize")
```

Example 2: This example disables monitoring of all metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Disable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables monitoring of the specified metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Disable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Metric
 @("GroupMinSize", "GroupMaxSize")
```

Example 2: This example disables monitoring of all metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Disable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def disable_metrics(self, group_name: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Stops CloudWatch metric collection for the Auto Scaling group.
```

```
        :param group_name: The name of the group.
        :return: A dictionary with the response from disabling the metrics
collection.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error disabling metrics collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.disable_metrics_collection(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name
            )
            logger.info(
                f"Successfully disabled metrics collection for group
'{group_name}'."
            )
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't disable metrics for group '{group_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"There is a conflict with another operation that is
modifying the Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please try again later."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        // If this fails it's fine, just means there are extra cloudwatch metrics
events for the scale-down.
        let _ = self
            .autoscaling
            .disable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `EnableMetricsCollection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the collection of metric data for an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var listMetrics = new List<string>
            {
```

```
                "GroupMaxSize",
            };

        var collectionRequest = new EnableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            Metrics = listMetrics,
            Granularity = "1Minute",
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(collectionRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        request.AddMetrics("GroupMinSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupMaxSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupDesiredCapacity");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupInServiceInstances");
```

```
        request.AddMetrics("GroupTotalInstances");
        request.SetGranularity("1Minute");

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.EnableMetricsCollection(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling metrics have been enabled."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::EnableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To enable metrics collection for an Auto Scaling group

This example enables data collection for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling enable-metrics-collection \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --granularity "1Minute"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Monitoring CloudWatch metrics for your Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To collect data for the specified metric for an Auto Scaling group

To collect data for a specific metric, use the `--metrics` option.

```
aws autoscaling enable-metrics-collection \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
```

```
    --metrics GroupDesiredCapacity --granularity "1Minute"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Monitoring CloudWatch metrics for your Auto Scaling groups and instances in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void enableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
       try {
           EnableMetricsCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
EnableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                   .granularity("1Minute")
                   .build();

           autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest);
           System.out.println("The enable metrics collection operation was
successful");

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun enableMetricsCollection(groupName: String?) {
    val collectionRequest =
        EnableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
            granularity = "1Minute"
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The enable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function enableMetricsCollection($autoScalingGroupName, $granularity)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->enableMetricsCollection([
```

```
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'Granularity' => $granularity,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables monitoring of the specified metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Enable-ASMetricsCollection  -Metric @("GroupMinSize", "GroupMaxSize") -
AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Granularity 1Minute
```

Example 2: This example enables monitoring of all metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Enable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Granularity 1Minute
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables monitoring of the specified metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Enable-ASMetricsCollection  -Metric @("GroupMinSize", "GroupMaxSize") -
AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Granularity 1Minute
```

Example 2: This example enables monitoring of all metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Enable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Granularity 1Minute
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def enable_metrics(self, group_name: str, metrics: List[str]) -> Dict[str,
 Any]:
        """
        Enables CloudWatch metric collection for Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 activities.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to enable.
        :param metrics: A list of metrics to collect.
        :return: A dictionary with the response from enabling the metrics
 collection.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error enabling metrics collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.enable_metrics_collection(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, Metrics=metrics,
 Granularity="1Minute"
            )
            logger.info(
                f"Successfully enabled metrics for Auto Scaling group
 '{group_name}'."
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't enable metrics on '{group_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"There is a conflict with another operation that is
modifying the Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please try again later."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterCombination":
                logger.error(
                    f"The combination of parameters provided for enabling metrics
on '{group_name}' is not valid. "
                    "Please check the parameters and try again."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let enable_metrics_collection = autoscaling
            .enable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
            .granularity("1Minute")
            .set_metrics(Some(vec![
```

```
                String::from("GroupMinSize"),
                String::from("GroupMaxSize"),
                String::from("GroupDesiredCapacity"),
                String::from("GroupInServiceInstances"),
                String::from("GroupTotalInstances"),
            ]))
            .send()
            .await;
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `EnterStandby` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnterStandby`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To move instances into standby mode

This example puts the specified instance into standby mode. This is useful for updating or troubleshooting an instance that is currently in service.

```
aws autoscaling enter-standby \
    --instance-ids i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --should-decrement-desired-capacity
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "ffa056b4-6ed3-41ba-ae7c-249dfae6eba1",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "Description": "Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-061c63c5eb45f0416",
            "Cause": "At 2020-10-31T20:31:00Z instance i-061c63c5eb45f0416 was
 moved to standby in response to a user request, shrinking the capacity from 1 to
 0.",
            "StartTime": "2020-10-31T20:31:00.949Z",
```

```
            "StatusCode": "InProgress",
            "Progress": 50,
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-6194ea3b\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2c\"}"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling instance lifecycle in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see EnterStandby in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example puts the specified instance into standby mode and decreases the desired capacity so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Enter-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : e36a5a54-ced6-4df8-bd19-708e2a59a649
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:48:06Z instance i-95b8484f was moved to
 standby in response to a user request,
                       shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:48:06 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example puts the specified instance into standby mode without decreasing the desired capacity. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Enter-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : e36a5a54-ced6-4df8-bd19-708e2a59a649
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:48:06Z instance i-95b8484f was moved to
 standby in response to a user request.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:48:06 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see EnterStandby in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example puts the specified instance into standby mode and decreases the desired capacity so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Enter-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : e36a5a54-ced6-4df8-bd19-708e2a59a649
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:48:06Z instance i-95b8484f was moved to
 standby in response to a user request,
                       shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:48:06 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
```

```
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example puts the specified instance into standby mode without decreasing the desired capacity. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Enter-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : e36a5a54-ced6-4df8-bd19-708e2a59a649
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:48:06Z instance i-95b8484f was moved to
 standby in response to a user request.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:48:06 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see EnterStandby in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ExecutePolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ExecutePolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To execute a scaling policy

This example executes the scaling policy named `my-step-scale-out-policy` for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling execute-policy \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --policy-name  my-step-scale-out-policy \
```

```
    --metric-value 95 \
    --breach-threshold 80
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Step and simple scaling policies in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see ExecutePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example executes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Start-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy"
```

Example 2: This example executes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group, after waiting for the cooldown period to complete.

```
Start-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy" -
HonorCooldown $true
```

- For API details, see ExecutePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example executes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Start-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy"
```

Example 2: This example executes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group, after waiting for the cooldown period to complete.

```
Start-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy" -
HonorCooldown $true
```

- For API details, see ExecutePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ExitStandby` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ExitStandby`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To move instances out of standby mode

This example moves the specified instance out of standby mode.

```
aws autoscaling exit-standby \
    --instance-ids i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "142928e1-a2dc-453a-9b24-b85ad6735928",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "Description": "Moving EC2 instance out of Standby:
 i-061c63c5eb45f0416",
            "Cause": "At 2020-10-31T20:32:50Z instance i-061c63c5eb45f0416 was
 moved out of standby in response to a user request, increasing the capacity from
 0 to 1.",
            "StartTime": "2020-10-31T20:32:50.222Z",
            "StatusCode": "PreInService",
            "Progress": 30,
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-6194ea3b\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2c\"}"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Temporarily removing instances from your Auto Scaling group in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see ExitStandby in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example moves the specified instance out of standby mode.

```
Exit-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 1833d3e8-e32f-454e-b731-0670ad4c6934
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:51:21Z instance i-95b8484f was moved out
 of standby in response to a user
                       request, increasing the capacity from 1 to 2.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance out of Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 30
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:51:21 AM
StatusCode           : PreInService
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see ExitStandby in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example moves the specified instance out of standby mode.

```
Exit-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 1833d3e8-e32f-454e-b731-0670ad4c6934
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:51:21Z instance i-95b8484f was moved out
 of standby in response to a user
                       request, increasing the capacity from 1 to 2.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance out of Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
```

```
Progress             : 30
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:51:21 AM
StatusCode           : PreInService
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see ExitStandby in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutLifecycleHook` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutLifecycleHook`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a lifecycle hook

This example creates a lifecycle hook that will invoke on any newly launched instances, with a timeout of 4800 seconds. This is useful for keeping the instances in a wait state until the user data scripts have finished, or for invoking an AWS Lambda function using EventBridge.

```
aws autoscaling put-lifecycle-hook \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --lifecycle-hook-name my-launch-hook \
    --lifecycle-transition autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING \
    --heartbeat-timeout 4800
```

This command produces no output. If a lifecycle hook with the same name already exists, it will be overwritten by the new lifecycle hook.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To send an Amazon SNS email message to notify you of instance state transitions

This example creates a lifecycle hook with the Amazon SNS topic and IAM role to use to receive notification at instance launch.

```
aws autoscaling put-lifecycle-hook \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --lifecycle-hook-name my-launch-hook \
```

```
    --lifecycle-transition autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING \
    --notification-target-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic \
    --role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-auto-scaling-role
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To publish a message to an Amazon SQS queue

This example creates a lifecycle hook that publishes a message with metadata to the specified Amazon SQS queue.

```
aws autoscaling put-lifecycle-hook \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --lifecycle-hook-name my-launch-hook \
    --lifecycle-transition autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING \
    --notification-target-arn arn:aws:sqs:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sqs-queue \
    --role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-notification-role \
    --notification-metadata "SQS message metadata"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutLifecycleHook in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the specified lifecycle hook to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Write-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 "myLifecycleHook" -LifecycleTransition "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING" -
NotificationTargetARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic" -RoleARN
 "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role"
```

- For API details, see PutLifecycleHook in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified lifecycle hook to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Write-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 "myLifecycleHook" -LifecycleTransition "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING" -
NotificationTargetARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic" -RoleARN
 "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role"
```

- For API details, see PutLifecycleHook in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutNotificationConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutNotificationConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a notification

This example adds the specified notification to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling put-notification-configuration \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --topic-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic \
    --notification-type autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Getting Amazon SNS notifications when your Auto Scaling group scales in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutNotificationConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example configures the specified Auto Scaling group to send a notification to the specified SNS topic when it launches EC2 instances.

```
Write-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
NotificationType "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH" -TopicARN "arn:aws:sns:us-
west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

Example 2: This example configures the specified Auto Scaling group to send a notification to the specified SNS topic when it launches or terminates EC2 instances.

```
Write-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -NotificationType
 @("autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH", "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE") -
TopicARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

- For API details, see PutNotificationConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example configures the specified Auto Scaling group to send a notification to the specified SNS topic when it launches EC2 instances.

```
Write-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
NotificationType "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH" -TopicARN "arn:aws:sns:us-
west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

Example 2: This example configures the specified Auto Scaling group to send a notification to the specified SNS topic when it launches or terminates EC2 instances.

```
Write-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -NotificationType
 @("autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH", "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE") -
TopicARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

- For API details, see PutNotificationConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutScalingPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutScalingPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a target tracking scaling policy to an Auto Scaling group

The following `put-scaling-policy` example applies a target tracking scaling policy to the specified Auto Scaling group. The output contains the ARNs and names of the two CloudWatch alarms created on your behalf. If a scaling policy with the same name already exists, it will be overwritten by the new scaling policy.

```
aws autoscaling put-scaling-policy --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
  --policy-name alb1000-target-tracking-scaling-policy \
  --policy-type TargetTrackingScaling \
  --target-tracking-configuration file://config.json
```

Contents of `config.json`:

```
{
     "TargetValue": 1000.0,
     "PredefinedMetricSpecification": {
          "PredefinedMetricType": "ALBRequestCountPerTarget",
          "ResourceLabel": "app/my-alb/778d41231b141a0f/targetgroup/my-alb-
target-group/943f017f100becff"
     }
}
```

Output:

```
{
     "PolicyARN": "arn:aws:autoscaling:region:account-id:scalingPolicy:228f02c2-
c665-4bfd-aaac-8b04080bea3c:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:policyName/alb1000-
target-tracking-scaling-policy",
     "Alarms": [
         {
             "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:region:account-
id:alarm:TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmHigh-fc0e4183-23ac-497e-9992-691c9980c38e",
             "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmHigh-
fc0e4183-23ac-497e-9992-691c9980c38e"
         },
         {
```

```
            "AlarmARN": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:region:account-
id:alarm:TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmLow-61a39305-ed0c-47af-bd9e-471a352ee1a2",
            "AlarmName": "TargetTracking-my-asg-AlarmLow-61a39305-ed0c-47af-
bd9e-471a352ee1a2"
        }
    ]
 }
```

For more examples, see Example scaling policies for the AWS Command Line Interface (AWS CLI) in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the specified policy to the specified Auto Scaling group. The specified adjustment type determines how to interpret the ScalingAdjustment parameter. With 'ChangeInCapacity', a positive value increases the capacity by the specified number of instances and a negative value decreases the capacity by the specified number of instances.

```
Write-ASScalingPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -AdjustmentType
 "ChangeInCapacity" -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy" -ScalingAdjustment -1
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:autoscaling:us-west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:aa3836ab-5462-42c7-adab-
e1d769fc24ef:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg
:policyName/myScaleInPolicy
```

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified policy to the specified Auto Scaling group. The specified adjustment type determines how to interpret the ScalingAdjustment parameter. With 'ChangeInCapacity', a positive value increases the capacity by the specified number of instances and a negative value decreases the capacity by the specified number of instances.

```
Write-ASScalingPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -AdjustmentType
 "ChangeInCapacity" -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy" -ScalingAdjustment -1
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:autoscaling:us-west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:aa3836ab-5462-42c7-adab-
e1d769fc24ef:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg
:policyName/myScaleInPolicy
```

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add a scheduled action to an Auto Scaling group

This example adds the specified scheduled action to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling put-scheduled-update-group-action \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --scheduled-action-name my-scheduled-action \
    --start-time "2023-05-12T08:00:00Z" \
    --min-size 2 \
    --max-size 6 \
    --desired-capacity 4
```

This command produces no output. If a scheduled action with the same name already exists, it will be overwritten by the new scheduled action.

For more examples, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To specify a recurring schedule

This example creates a scheduled action to scale on a recurring schedule that is scheduled to execute at 00:30 hours on the first of January, June, and December every year.

```
aws autoscaling put-scheduled-update-group-action \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --scheduled-action-name my-recurring-action \
    --recurrence "30 0 1 1,6,12 *" \
    --min-size 2 \
    --max-size 6 \
    --desired-capacity 4
```

This command produces no output. If a scheduled action with the same name already exists, it will be overwritten by the new scheduled action.

For more examples, see Scheduled scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates or updates a one-time scheduled action to change the desired capacity at the specified start time.

```
Write-ASScheduledUpdateGroupAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ScheduledActionName "myScheduledAction" -StartTime "2015-12-01T00:00:00Z" -
DesiredCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates or updates a one-time scheduled action to change the desired capacity at the specified start time.

```
Write-ASScheduledUpdateGroupAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ScheduledActionName "myScheduledAction" -StartTime "2015-12-01T00:00:00Z" -
DesiredCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To record a lifecycle action heartbeat

This example records a lifecycle action heartbeat to keep the instance in a pending state.

```
aws autoscaling record-lifecycle-action-heartbeat \
    --lifecycle-hook-name my-launch-hook \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --lifecycle-action-token bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling lifecycle hooks in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example records a heartbeat for the specified lifecycle action. This keeps the instance in a pending state until you complete the custom action.

```
Write-ASLifecycleActionHeartbeat -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook -LifecycleActionToken bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

- For API details, see RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example records a heartbeat for the specified lifecycle action. This keeps the instance in a pending state until you complete the custom action.

```
Write-ASLifecycleActionHeartbeat -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook -LifecycleActionToken bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

- For API details, see RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResumeProcesses` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResumeProcesses`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To resume suspended processes

This example resumes the specified suspended scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling resume-processes \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --scaling-processes AlarmNotification
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Suspending and resuming scaling processes in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see ResumeProcesses in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example resumes the specified Auto Scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Resume-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScalingProcess "AlarmNotification"
```

Example 2: This example resumes all suspended Auto Scaling processes for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Resume-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see ResumeProcesses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resumes the specified Auto Scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Resume-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScalingProcess "AlarmNotification"
```

Example 2: This example resumes all suspended Auto Scaling processes for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Resume-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see ResumeProcesses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetDesiredCapacity` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Set the desired capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="desiredCapacity">The desired capacity for the Auto
    /// Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetDesiredCapacityAsync(
        string groupName,
        int desiredCapacity)
    {
        var capacityRequest = new SetDesiredCapacityRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            DesiredCapacity = desiredCapacity,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.SetDesiredCapacityAsync(capacityRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"You have set the DesiredCapacity to
{desiredCapacity}.");

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";
```

```
    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        request.SetDesiredCapacity(2);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.SetDesiredCapacity(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::SetDesiredCapacityRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the desired capacity for an Auto Scaling group

This example sets the desired capacity for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling set-desired-capacity \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --desired-capacity 2 \
    --honor-cooldown
```

This command returns to the prompt if successful.

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void setDesiredCapacity(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
       try {
           SetDesiredCapacityRequest capacityRequest =
SetDesiredCapacityRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .desiredCapacity(2)
                   .build();

           autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest);
           System.out.println("You have set the DesiredCapacity to 2");

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun setDesiredCapacity(groupName: String) {
    val capacityRequest =
        SetDesiredCapacityRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            desiredCapacity = 2
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest)
        println("You set the DesiredCapacity to 2")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function setDesiredCapacity($autoScalingGroupName, $desiredCapacity)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->setDesiredCapacity([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'DesiredCapacity' => $desiredCapacity,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sets the size of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Set-ASDesiredCapacity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DesiredCapacity 2
```

Example 2: This example sets the size of the specified Auto Scaling group and waits for the cooldown period to complete before scaling to the new size.

```
Set-ASDesiredCapacity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DesiredCapacity 2 -
HonorCooldown $true
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the size of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Set-ASDesiredCapacity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DesiredCapacity 2
```

Example 2: This example sets the size of the specified Auto Scaling group and waits for the cooldown period to complete before scaling to the new size.

```
Set-ASDesiredCapacity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DesiredCapacity 2 -
HonorCooldown $true
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def set_desired_capacity(self, group_name: str, capacity: int) -> None:
        """
        Sets the desired capacity of the group. Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling tries to
 keep the
        number of running instances equal to the desired capacity.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to update.
        :param capacity: The desired number of running instances.
        :return: None
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error setting the desired capacity.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.set_desired_capacity(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name,
                DesiredCapacity=capacity,
                HonorCooldown=False,
            )
            logger.info(
                f"Successfully set desired capacity of {capacity} for Auto
 Scaling group '{group_name}'."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to set desired capacity for Auto Scaling group
 '{group_name}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgress":
                logger.error(
                    f"A scaling activity is currently in progress for the Auto
 Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
```

```
                    "Please wait for the activity to complete before attempting
to set the desired capacity."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn scale_desired_capacity(&self, capacity: i32) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       // 7. SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
       //   Wait for a second instance to launch.
       let update_group = self
           .autoscaling
           .set_desired_capacity()
           .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
           .desired_capacity(capacity)
           .send()
           .await;
       if let Err(err) = update_group {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               format!("Failed to update group to desired capacity
({capacity}))").as_str(),
               &err,
           ));
       }
       Ok(())
   }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `SetInstanceHealth` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetInstanceHealth`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the health status of an instance

This example sets the health status of the specified instance to `Unhealthy`.

```
aws autoscaling set-instance-health \
    --instance-id i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --health-status Unhealthy
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see SetInstanceHealth in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sets the status of the specified instance to 'Unhealthy', taking it out of service. Auto Scaling terminates and replaces the instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceHealth -HealthStatus Unhealthy -InstanceId i-93633f9b
```

Example 2: This example sets the status of the specified instance to 'Healthy', keeping it in service. Any health check grace period for the Auto Scaling group is not honored.

```
Set-ASInstanceHealth -HealthStatus Healthy -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldRespectGracePeriod $false
```

- For API details, see SetInstanceHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the status of the specified instance to 'Unhealthy', taking it out of service. Auto Scaling terminates and replaces the instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceHealth -HealthStatus Unhealthy -InstanceId i-93633f9b
```

Example 2: This example sets the status of the specified instance to 'Healthy', keeping it in service. Any health check grace period for the Auto Scaling group is not honored.

```
Set-ASInstanceHealth -HealthStatus Healthy -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldRespectGracePeriod $false
```

- For API details, see SetInstanceHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetInstanceProtection` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetInstanceProtection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To enable the instance protection setting for an instance

This example enables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
aws autoscaling set-instance-protection \
    --instance-ids i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg --protected-from-scale-in
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To disable the instance protection setting for an instance

This example disables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
aws autoscaling set-instance-protection \
    --instance-ids i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
```

```
    --no-protected-from-scale-in
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see SetInstanceProtection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceProtection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -InstanceId i-12345678 -
ProtectedFromScaleIn $true
```

Example 2: This example disables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceProtection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -InstanceId i-12345678 -
ProtectedFromScaleIn $false
```

- For API details, see SetInstanceProtection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceProtection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -InstanceId i-12345678 -
ProtectedFromScaleIn $true
```

Example 2: This example disables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceProtection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -InstanceId i-12345678 -
ProtectedFromScaleIn $false
```

- For API details, see SetInstanceProtection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SuspendProcesses` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SuspendProcesses`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To suspend Auto Scaling processes

This example suspends the specified scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
aws autoscaling suspend-processes \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --scaling-processes AlarmNotification
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Suspending and resuming scaling processes in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see SuspendProcesses in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example suspends the specified Auto Scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Suspend-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScalingProcess
 "AlarmNotification"
```

Example 2: This example suspends all Auto Scaling processes for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Suspend-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see SuspendProcesses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example suspends the specified Auto Scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Suspend-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScalingProcess
 "AlarmNotification"
```

Example 2: This example suspends all Auto Scaling processes for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Suspend-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see SuspendProcesses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate all instances in the Auto Scaling group in preparation for
    /// deleting the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the instance to terminate.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
```

```
        string instanceId)
    {
        var request = new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            InstanceId = instanceId,
            ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You have terminated the instance: {instanceId}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Could not terminate {instanceId}");
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);
```

```
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
request;
        request.SetInstanceId(instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1]);
        request.SetShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupOutcome
outcome =
                autoScalingClient.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Waiting for EC2 instance with ID '"
                      << instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1] << "' to terminate..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
AutoScaling::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To terminate an instance in an Auto Scaling group

This example terminates the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group without updating the size of the group. Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance after the specified instance terminates.

```
aws autoscaling terminate-instance-in-auto-scaling-group \
    --instance-id i-061c63c5eb45f0416 \
    --no-should-decrement-desired-capacity
```

Output:

```
{
    "Activities": [
        {
            "ActivityId": "8c35d601-793c-400c-fcd0-f64a27530df7",
            "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
            "Description": "Terminating EC2 instance: i-061c63c5eb45f0416",
            "Cause": "",
            "StartTime": "2020-10-31T20:34:25.680Z",
            "StatusCode": "InProgress",
            "Progress": 0,
            "Details": "{\"Subnet ID\":\"subnet-6194ea3b\",\"Availability Zone\":
\"us-west-2c\"}"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
 autoScalingClient, String instanceId) {
        try {
            TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
 TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .instanceId(instanceId)
                    .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);
            System.out.println("You have terminated instance " + instanceId);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(instanceIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request)
        println("You have terminated instance $instanceIdVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(
        $instanceId,
        $shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = true,
        $attempts = 0
    ) {
        try {
            return $this->autoScalingClient-
>terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup([
                'InstanceId' => $instanceId,
                'ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity' =>
 $shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity,
            ]);
        } catch (AutoScalingException $exception) {
            if ($exception->getAwsErrorCode() == "ScalingActivityInProgress" &&
 $attempts < 5) {
                error_log("Cannot terminate an instance while it is still
 pending. Waiting then trying again.");
                sleep(5 * (1 + $attempts));
                return $this->terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(
                    $instanceId,
                    $shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity,
                    ++$attempts
                );
            } else {
                throw $exception;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example terminates the specified instance and decreases the desired capacity of its Auto Scaling group so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 2e40d9bd-1902-444c-abf3-6ea0002efdc5
AutoScalingGroupName :
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T16:09:03Z instance i-93633f9b was taken out
 of service in response to a user
                       request, shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Terminating EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 0
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 8:09:03 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example terminates the specified instance without decreasing the desired capacity of its Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 2e40d9bd-1902-444c-abf3-6ea0002efdc5
AutoScalingGroupName :
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T16:09:03Z instance i-93633f9b was taken out
 of service in response to a user
                       request.
Description          : Terminating EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
```

```
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 0
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 8:09:03 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example terminates the specified instance and decreases the desired capacity of its Auto Scaling group so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 2e40d9bd-1902-444c-abf3-6ea0002efdc5
AutoScalingGroupName :
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T16:09:03Z instance i-93633f9b was taken out
 of service in response to a user
                       request, shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Terminating EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 0
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 8:09:03 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example terminates the specified instance without decreasing the desired capacity of its Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 2e40d9bd-1902-444c-abf3-6ea0002efdc5
AutoScalingGroupName :
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T16:09:03Z instance i-93633f9b was taken out
 of service in response to a user
                       request.
Description          : Terminating EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 0
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 8:09:03 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def terminate_instance(
        self, instance_id: str, decrease_capacity: bool
```

```
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Stops an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to stop.
        :param decrease_capacity: Specifies whether to decrease the desired
capacity
                                  of the group. When passing True for this
parameter,
                                  you can stop an instance without having a
replacement
                                  instance start when the desired capacity
threshold is
                                  crossed.
        :return: A dictionary containing details of the scaling activity that
occurs
                 in response to this action.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error terminating the instance.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrease_capacity
            )
            logger.info(f"Successfully terminated instance {instance_id}.")
            return response["Activity"]

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to terminate instance {instance_id}.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgress":
                logger.error(
                    "A scaling activity is currently in progress for the Auto
Scaling group "
                    f"associated with instance '{instance_id}'. "
                    "Please wait for the activity to complete before attempting
to terminate the instance."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUse":
                logger.error(
                    f"The instance '{instance_id}' or an associated resource is
currently in use "
                    "and cannot be terminated. "
```

```
                    "Ensure the instance is not involved in any ongoing processes
and try again."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn terminate_some_instance(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // Retrieve a list of instances in the auto scaling group.
        let auto_scaling_group = self.get_group().await?;
        let instances = auto_scaling_group.instances();
        // Or use other logic to find an instance to terminate.
        let instance = instances.first();
        if let Some(instance) = instance {
            let instance_id = if let Some(instance_id) = instance.instance_id() {
                instance_id
            } else {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with("Missing instance id"));
            };
            let termination = self
                .ec2
                .terminate_instances()
                .instance_ids(instance_id)
                .send()
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = termination {
                Err(ScenarioError::new(
```

```
                    "There was a problem terminating an instance",
                    &err,
                ))
            } else {
                Ok(())
            }
        } else {
            Err(ScenarioError::with("There was no instance to terminate"))
        }
    }

    async fn get_group(&self) -> Result<AutoScalingGroup, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_auto_scaling_groups = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = describe_auto_scaling_groups {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!(
                    "Failed to get status of autoscaling group {}",
                    self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
                )
                .as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let describe_auto_scaling_groups_output =
describe_auto_scaling_groups.unwrap();
        let auto_scaling_groups =
describe_auto_scaling_groups_output.auto_scaling_groups();
        let auto_scaling_group = auto_scaling_groups.first();

        if auto_scaling_group.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                "Could not find autoscaling group {}",
                self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
            )));
        }

        Ok(auto_scaling_group.unwrap().clone())
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the EC2 launch template.</
param>
    /// <param name="maxSize">The maximum number of instances that can be
    /// created for the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        int maxSize)
    {
```

```
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var groupRequest = new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            MaxSize = maxSize,
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group
{groupName}.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
```

```
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        request.SetMaxSize(3);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.UpdateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::UpdateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update the size limits of an Auto Scaling group

This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group with a minimum size of 2 and a maximum size of 10.

```
aws autoscaling update-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --min-size 2 \
    --max-size 10
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Setting capacity limits for your Auto Scaling group in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 2: To add Elastic Load Balancing health checks and specify which Availability Zones and subnets to use

This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to add Elastic Load Balancing health checks. This command also updates the value of `--vpc-zone-identifier` with a list of subnet IDs in multiple Availability Zones.

```
aws autoscaling update-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --health-check-type ELB \
    --health-check-grace-period 600 \
    --vpc-zone-identifier "subnet-5ea0c127,subnet-6194ea3b,subnet-c934b782"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Elastic Load Balancing and Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 3: To update the placement group and termination policy

This example updates the placement group and termination policy to use.

```
aws autoscaling update-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --placement-group my-placement-group \
    --termination-policies "OldestInstance"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Auto Scaling groups in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 4: To use the latest version of the launch template

This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to use the latest version of the specified launch template.

```
aws autoscaling update-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateId=lt-1234567890abcde12,Version='$Latest'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Launch templates in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 5: To use a specific version of the launch template

This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to use a specific version of a launch template instead of the latest or default version.

```
aws autoscaling update-auto-scaling-group \
    --auto-scaling-group-name my-asg \
    --launch-template LaunchTemplateName=my-template-for-auto-scaling,Version='2'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Launch templates in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

Example 6: To define a mixed instances policy and enable capacity rebalancing

This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to use a mixed instances policy and enables capacity rebalancing. This structure lets you specify groups with Spot and On-Demand capacities and use different launch templates for different architectures.

```
aws autoscaling update-auto-scaling-group \
    --cli-input-json file://~/config.json
```

Contents of `config.json`:

```
{
    "AutoScalingGroupName": "my-asg",
    "CapacityRebalance": true,
    "MixedInstancesPolicy": {
        "LaunchTemplate": {
            "LaunchTemplateSpecification": {
                "LaunchTemplateName": "my-launch-template-for-x86",
                "Version": "$Latest"
            },
            "Overrides": [
                {
                    "InstanceType": "c6g.large",
                    "LaunchTemplateSpecification": {
                        "LaunchTemplateName": "my-launch-template-for-arm",
                        "Version": "$Latest"
                    }
                },
                {
                    "InstanceType": "c5.large"
                },
```

```
                {
                    "InstanceType": "c5a.large"
                }
            ]
        },
        "InstancesDistribution": {
            "OnDemandPercentageAboveBaseCapacity": 50,
            "SpotAllocationStrategy": "capacity-optimized"
        }
    }
}
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Auto Scaling groups with multiple instance types and purchase options in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void updateAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName,
            String launchTemplateName) {
        try {
            AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
            LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .maxSize(3)
```

```
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
 DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
 waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupInService(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("You successfully updated the auto scaling group
 " + groupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
```

```
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val groupRequest =
        UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            maxSize = 3
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
        }

    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group  $groupName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function updateAutoScalingGroup($autoScalingGroupName, $args)
    {
        if (array_key_exists('MaxSize', $args)) {
            $maxSize = ['MaxSize' => $args['MaxSize']];
        } else {
```

```
            $maxSize = [];
        }
        if (array_key_exists('MinSize', $args)) {
            $minSize = ['MinSize' => $args['MinSize']];
        } else {
            $minSize = [];
        }
        $parameters = ['AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName];
        $parameters = array_merge($parameters, $minSize, $maxSize);
        return $this->autoScalingClient->updateAutoScalingGroup($parameters);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the minimum and maximum size of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -MaxSize 5 -MinSize 1
```

Example 2: This example updates the default cooldown period of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DefaultCooldown 10
```

Example 3: This example updates the Availability Zones of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -AvailabilityZone @("us-
west-2a", "us-west-2b")
```

Example 4: This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to use Elastic Load Balancing health checks.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -HealthCheckType ELB -
HealthCheckGracePeriod 60
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the minimum and maximum size of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -MaxSize 5 -MinSize 1
```

Example 2: This example updates the default cooldown period of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DefaultCooldown 10
```

Example 3: This example updates the Availability Zones of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -AvailabilityZone @("us-
west-2a", "us-west-2b")
```

Example 4: This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to use Elastic Load Balancing health checks.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -HealthCheckType ELB -
HealthCheckGracePeriod 60
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def update_group(self, group_name: str, **kwargs: Any) -> None:
        """
        Updates an Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to update.
        :param kwargs: Keyword arguments to pass through to the service.
        :return: None
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error updating the Auto Scaling
 group.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, **kwargs
            )
            logger.info(f"Successfully updated Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to update Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")
            if error_code == "ResourceInUse":
                logger.error(
                    "The Auto Scaling group '%s' is currently in use and cannot
 be modified. Please try again later.",
                    group_name,
                )
            elif error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgress":
                logger.error(
                    f"A scaling activity is currently in progress for the Auto
 Scaling group '{group_name}'."
                    "Please wait for the activity to complete before attempting
 to update the group."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn update_group(client: &Client, name: &str, size: i32) -> Result<(),
 Error> {
    client
        .update_auto_scaling_group()
        .auto_scaling_group_name(name)
        .max_size(size)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Updated AutoScaling group");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Auto Scaling using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Auto Scaling with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Auto Scaling or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
static async Task Main(string[] args)
{
```

```
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
```

```
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
AWS resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways
to make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide
book, movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each
contain a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across
several Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the
Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
```

```
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs
'server_startup_script.sh' when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the
`server.py` script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3,
_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName, zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGro
protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
_autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
```

```
        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port,
 ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for
 your default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
 Console.\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port,
 ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
```

```
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service
fails, the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile
that contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
either a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo,
a deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not
for Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the
Auto Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load
balancer can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two
for the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by
an auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler
start a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a
successful recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the
load balancing rotation.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance
typically takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );
```

```
        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBal
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGr
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupNa
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;
```

```
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with
a specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to
the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                    "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                    "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                         "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                         "\"Principal\": {" +
```

```
                                        "\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                        "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                    "}]" +
                                "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }
```

```
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await
_amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
```

```
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that
runs after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and
starts a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to
create and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);
```

```
            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await
_amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z =>
 z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability
 zones.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
```

```
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new
Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with
size {groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
```

```
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }
```

```
            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId}
does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the
subnets.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} was not found.");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await
_amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
```

```
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
 name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
   {
       try
       {
           var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
               new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
               {
                   Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                   {
                       new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                   },
               });
           return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
       {
           if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
           {
               _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
           }

           throw;
       }
       catch (Exception ex)
       {
           _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the
template.: {ex.Message}");
           throw;
       }
   }

   /// <summary>
   /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is replaced, the instance
   /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
   /// used to restart the Python web server.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
   /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate
with the specified instance.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association
for the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
           var retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
           {
               var instancesPaginator =
                   _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                       new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
               // Get the entire list using the paginator.
               await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
               {
                   instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                   if (instanceReady)
                   {
                       break;
                   }
               }
           }
           Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
           await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
           Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance
{instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance
{instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
```

```
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await
_amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for
{instanceId}. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
```

```
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string
groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the
calling computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP
address while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
```

```
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0),
or to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
```

```
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName,
 string targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();
```

```
    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</
param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer
 exists.</param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });

               var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

               loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
           }
           catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
           {
               loadBalancerReady = false;
           }
           Thread.Sleep(10000);
       }
       // Create the listener.
       await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
           new CreateListenerRequest()
```

```
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn =
 targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
```

```
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies, and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
```

```
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;
```

```
                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await
 File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =

 JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile

- CreateLaunchTemplate
- CreateListener
- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-
prof-bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException,
 InterruptedException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and
Manage a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your
account, we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user
input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to
create several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and
explore some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances
that each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
```

```
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when
an instance starts.
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses
to assume a role that grants
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);
```

```
        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer. The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets,
targetGroupArn, lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul =
loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
```

```
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(),
StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group
for your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add
it automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }
```

```
            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security
group are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the
load balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
```

```
        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                       Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                       While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
a static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are
still shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
```

```
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance
id value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId =
autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " +
profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on
for recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto
Scaling instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
```

```
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the
load balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
always returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance
is running and healthy.
```

```
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
```

```
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode =
response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load
balancer targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
target.target().id(),
                                    target.target().port(),
target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the
health check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
```

```
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value
 between 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }
```

```
    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance
is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
    public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
                .builder()
                .instanceId(instanceId)
                .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
        System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
    * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
    * When
    * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
    * server.
    */
   public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
           throws InterruptedException {
       // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
       software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
               .builder()
               .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure
'newInstanceProfileName' is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                             // name.
               .build();

       // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
       ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
               .builder()
               .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
               .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
               .build();

       try {
           getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
           // Handle the response as needed.
       } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
           // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
           System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
       }
       System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with
profile %s.", profileAssociationId,
               newInstanceProfileName);
       TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
       boolean instReady = false;
       int tries = 0;
```

```
        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress)
{
```

```
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);
```

```
            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();
```

```
getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();

            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse =
getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);
```

```
            for (SecurityGroup secGroup :
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " +
secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " +
ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to
be open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }
```

```
   /*
    * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
    * Scaling group.
    * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
    * instances
    * in the group.
    */
   public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
       try {
           AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                   .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                   .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
           System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
   public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {

       // Get availability zones.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
               .builder()
               .build();

       DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
       List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()
```

```
.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
               .collect(Collectors.toList());

       String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
       LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
               .launchTemplateName(templateName)
               .version("$Default")
               .build();

       String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
       CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
               .launchTemplate(specification)
               .availabilityZones(zones)
               .maxSize(groupSize)
               .minSize(groupSize)
               .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
               .build();

       try {
           getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
       return zones;
   }

   public String getDefaultVPC() {
       // Define the filter.
       Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
               .name("is-default")
               .values("true")
               .build();

       software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
               .builder()
               .filters(defaultFilter)
```

```
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response =
getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }

    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
```

```
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to
the policy.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
```

```
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM
 role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
```

```
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance
 profile " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
```

```
   public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String
targetGroupName) {
       DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
               .names(targetGroupName)
               .build();

       DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

       DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()

.targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
               .build();

       DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
       return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
   }

   // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
   public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
       DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
               .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
       return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
   }

   // Deletes a load balancer.
   public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
       try {
           // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
           DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                   .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
           ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
           DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                   .build();

           getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
```

```
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer
    // endpoint.
    public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws
IOException, InterruptedException {
        boolean success = false;
        int retries = 3;
        CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
        try {
            while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
                // Execute the request and get the response.
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
```

```
                System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
                if (statusCode == 200) {
                    success = true;
                } else {
                    retries--;
                    System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
                }
            }

        } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        System.out.println("Status.." + success);
        return success;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how
instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId,
String targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
```

```
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String
targetGroupARN, String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to
become available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");
```

```
            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest =
 CreateListenerRequest.builder()

 .loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
```

```
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " +
e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException
{
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
```

```
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                    .build())
                    .provisionedThroughput(
                            ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                    .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .build())
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
```

```
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws
 IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable =
 enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-
response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup

- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
```

```
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes]
 [-v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
```

```
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
```

```
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item']
[] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );
```

```
    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatedTable",
    MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
      new CreateKeyPairCommand({
        KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
      }),
    );

    writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstancePolicy",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      Policy: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
```

```
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
        PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
    state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
```

```
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
      MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      return client.send(
        new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
      MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
    ),
    ...initParamsSteps,
    new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
    new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
        new GetParameterCommand({
          Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        }),
      );
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      await ec2Client.send(
        new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
          LaunchTemplateData: {
            InstanceType: "t3.micro",
            ImageId: Parameter.Value,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
            UserData: readFileSync(
              join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
            ).toString("base64"),
            KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
          },
        }),
```

```
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
```

```
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
```

```
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
      MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
          Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
          Protocol: "HTTP",
          Port: 80,
          HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
          HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
          HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
          HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
          UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
          VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
        }),
      );
      const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
      state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
      state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
      state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
      MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingLoadBalancer",
      MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
        new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
```

```
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup}} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
```

```
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
```

```
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
```

```
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
```

```
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
```

```
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
```

```
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
```

```
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
      "${TABLE_NAME}",
      state.badTableName,
    ),
  ),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "staticResponseConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
    if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
          Value: "static",
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-
scaling').Instance }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
        new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
          Filters: [
            { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
        IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        ec2Client.send(
          new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
            AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
          }),
```

```
        ),
      );

      await ec2Client.send(
        new RebootInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
        }),
      );

      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
        const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
          new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
        );

        const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
          (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
        );

        if (!instance) {
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation}} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
```

```
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
```

```
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
```

```
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );

  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
```

```
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
```

```
    new ScenarioAction(
      "abort",
      (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
      try {
        const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
        await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
      } catch (e) {
        c.deleteTableError = e;
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
      if (state.deleteTableError) {
        console.error(state.deleteTableError);
        return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
          "${TABLE_NAME}",
          NAMES.tableName,
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
    }),
    new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
      try {
        const client = new EC2Client({});
        await client.send(
          new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
        );
        unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
      } catch (e) {
        state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
      if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
        console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
        return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
          "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
          NAMES.keyPairName,
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
```

```
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
```

```
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
```

```
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
```

```
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
```

```
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
```

```
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
```

```
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
```

```
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
```

```
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
 state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
```

```
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
```

```
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups

- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
```

```
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example,
such as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient
service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)
```

```
        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability
 Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
 balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port
 is open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
```

```
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access
from this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging
from your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success =
self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )
```

```
    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as
sending requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint.")
                endpoint =
self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
```

```
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check
to update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a
non-existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
instances."
        )
```

```
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace
it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance
replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation
service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
```

```
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
 return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
 Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
 created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up
 manually to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
```

```
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the
demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM
policies and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
```

```
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
 "destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
```

```
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
```

```
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
 definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/
{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies
 which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
 AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to
 attach to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
 PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role
 {role_name}.")
```

```
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is
assumed by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as
AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to
the instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
```

```
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
```

```
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance
{instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance
{instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the
profile is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new
profile. When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to
associate with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
```

```
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or
is not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
```

```
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
```

```
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling. The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts
a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a
permissions policy
```

```
                                    to create and attach to the instance
profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
```

```
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
```

```
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with
availability zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) ->
None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
to terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.
```

```
        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group
%s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
```

```
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
 to delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs.
 "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
 permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
 parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]
['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass


    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress
 from this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
 you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
 port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
 public
        access when you're done.
```

```
        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value
that indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to
either this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
```

```
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist.
Please check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}'
on port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
```

```
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones
{zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group
 specifies how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
 instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the
 sensitivity of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
```

```
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing
target group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for
new ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.",
target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the
AWS Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with
any load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
```

```
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn}
still exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts
* delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
```

```
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}'
already exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in
this account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase
in the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests
to the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener
to the
```

```
                                load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
```

```
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load
balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
```

```
        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer
{load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
```

```
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint,
retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not
found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS
region, and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary
 parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table
 has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
 such as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
 MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
```

```
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
"WriteCapacityUnits": 5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name,
data_file
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}:
{err}"
            )
```

```
    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
 self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters
 to drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency
 or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.
```

```
        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when
a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
                log.error(
```

```
                    "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False.
"
                    "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances

  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation

- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Code examples for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Batch with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **AWS Batch User Guide** – More information about AWS Batch.
- **AWS Batch API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Batch actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS Batch

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Batch.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class HelloBatch {
    private static BatchAsyncClient batchClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        List<JobSummary> jobs = listJobs("my-job-queue");
        jobs.forEach(job ->
            System.out.printf("Job ID: %s, Job Name: %s, Job Status: %s%n",
                job.jobId(), job.jobName(), job.status())
        );
    }

    public static List<JobSummary> listJobs(String jobQueue) {
        if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or
 empty");
        }

        ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueue)
            .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)
            .build();

        List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
        ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
 getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response ->
 {
            jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
```

```
        });

        future.join();
        return jobSummaries;
    }

    private static BatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)  // Increase max concurrency to handle more
 simultaneous connections.
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
 timeout.
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the individual
 call attempt timeout.
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()  // Add a retry policy to handle
 transient errors.
                .numRetries(3)  // Number of retry attempts.
                .build())
            .build();

        if (batchClient == null) {
            batchClient = BatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return batchClient;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listJobsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS Batch
  - Learn the basics of AWS Batch with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeregisterJobDefinition with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeComputeEnvironments with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeJobQueues with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListJobsPaginator with an AWS SDK
    - Use RegisterJobDefinition with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SubmitJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs
  - Get started with Batch and Fargate using the CLI

Basic examples for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Batch with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS Batch
- Learn the basics of AWS Batch with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeregisterJobDefinition with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeComputeEnvironments with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeJobQueues with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListJobsPaginator with an AWS SDK
- Use RegisterJobDefinition with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SubmitJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello AWS Batch

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Batch.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
```

```
public class HelloBatch {
    private static BatchAsyncClient batchClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        List<JobSummary> jobs = listJobs("my-job-queue");
        jobs.forEach(job ->
            System.out.printf("Job ID: %s, Job Name: %s, Job Status: %s%n",
                job.jobId(), job.jobName(), job.status())
        );
    }

    public static List<JobSummary> listJobs(String jobQueue) {
        if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or
 empty");
        }

        ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueue)
            .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)
            .build();

        List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
        ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
 getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response ->
 {
            jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
        });

        future.join();
        return jobSummaries;
    }

    private static BatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)  // Increase max concurrency to handle more
 simultaneous connections.
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
            .build();
```

```
        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
 timeout.
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the individual
 call attempt timeout.
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()  // Add a retry policy to handle
 transient errors.
                .numRetries(3)  // Number of retry attempts.
                .build())
            .build();

        if (batchClient == null) {
            batchClient = BatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return batchClient;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listJobsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS Batch with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS Batch compute environment.
- Check the status of the compute environment.
- Set up an AWS Batch job queue and job definition.
- Register a job definition.
- Submit an AWS Batch Job.
- Get a list of jobs applicable to the job queue.
- Check the status of job.
- Delete AWS Batch resources.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Batch features.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.BatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ClientException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.Ec2AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSubnetsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSubnetsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Filter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.SecurityGroup;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Subnet;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Vpc;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * NOTE
 * This scenario submits a job that pulls a Docker image named echo-text from
 Amazon ECR to Amazon Fargate.
 *
 * To place this Docker image on Amazon ECR, run the following Basics scenario.
 *
 * https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/javav2/example_code/
ecr
 *
 */
public class BatchScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    // Define two stacks used in this Basics Scenario.
    private static final String ROLES_STACK = "RolesStack";
    private static String defaultSubnet;
    private static String defaultSecurityGroup;

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(BatchScenario.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {

        BatchActions batchActions = new BatchActions();
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String computeEnvironmentName = "my-compute-environment";
        String jobQueueName = "my-job-queue";
        String jobDefinitionName = "my-job-definition";


        // See the NOTE in this Java code example (at start).
        String dockerImage = "dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/echo-text:echo-
text";

        logger.info("""
            AWS Batch is a fully managed batch processing service that
 dynamically provisions the required compute
            resources for batch computing workloads. The Java V2
 `BatchAsyncClient` allows
```

```
            developers to automate the submission, monitoring, and management of
 batch jobs.

            This scenario provides an example of setting up a compute
 environment, job queue and job definition,
            and then submitting a job.

            This scenario submits a job that pulls a Docker image named echo-text
 from Amazon ECR to Amazon Fargate.

            To place this Docker image on Amazon ECR, run the following Basics
 scenario.

            https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/javav2/
example_code/ecr

            Let's get started...

            You have two choices:

            1 - Run the entire program.
            2 - Delete an existing Compute Environment (created from a previous
 execution of
            this program that did not complete).
            """);

        while (true) {
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("1")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
               // logger.info("");
                break;
            } else if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("2")) {
                String jobQueueARN = String.valueOf(batchActions.
 describeJobQueueAsync(computeEnvironmentName));
                if (!jobQueueARN.isEmpty()) {
                    batchActions.disableJobQueueAsync(jobQueueARN);
                    countdown(1);
                    batchActions.deleteJobQueueAsync(jobQueueARN);
                }

                try {

 batchActions.disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName)
```

```
                        .exceptionally(ex -> {
                            logger.info("Disable compute environment failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                            return null;
                        })
                        .join();
                } catch (CompletionException ex) {
                    logger.info("Failed to disable compute environment: " +
ex.getMessage());
                }
                countdown(2);

batchActions.deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName).join();
                return;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        // Get an AWS Account id used to retrieve the docker image from Amazon
ECR.
        // Create a single-element array to store the `accountId` value.
        String[] accId = new String[1];
        CompletableFuture<String> accountIdFuture = batchActions.getAccountId();
        accountIdFuture.thenAccept(accountId -> {
            logger.info("Account ID: " + accountId);
            accId[0] = accountId;
        }).join();

        dockerImage = accId[0]+"."+dockerImage;

        // Get a default subnet and default security associated with the default
VPC.
        getSubnetSecurityGroup();

        logger.info("Use AWS CloudFormation to create two IAM roles that are
required for this scenario.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);

        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputs(ROLES_STACK);
```

```
        String batchIAMRole = stackOutputs.get("BatchRoleArn");
        String executionRoleARN = stackOutputs.get("EcsRoleArn");

        logger.info("The IAM role needed to interact with AWS Batch is
"+batchIAMRole);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a Batch compute environment");
        logger.info("""
            A compute environment is a resource where you can run your batch
jobs.
            After creating a compute environment, you can define job queues and
job definitions to submit jobs for
            execution.

            The benefit of creating a compute environment is it allows you to
easily configure and manage the compute
            resources that will be used to run your Batch jobs. By separating the
compute environment from the job definitions,
            you can easily scale your compute resources up or down as needed,
without having to modify your job definitions.
            This makes it easier to manage your Batch workloads and ensures that
your jobs have the necessary
            compute resources to run efficiently.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse> future =
batchActions.createComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName, batchIAMRole,
defaultSubnet, defaultSecurityGroup);
            CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse response = future.join();
            logger.info("Compute Environment ARN: " +
response.computeEnvironmentArn());
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            Throwable cause = rte.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ClientException batchExceptionEx) {
                String myErrorCode =
batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage();
                if ("Object already exists".contains(myErrorCode)) {
                    logger.info("The compute environment '" +
computeEnvironmentName + "' already exists. Moving on...");
                } else {
```

```
                    logger.info("Batch error occurred: {} (Code: {})",
batchExceptionEx.getMessage(), batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", (cause !=
null ? cause.getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Check the status of the "+computeEnvironmentName +"
Compute Environment.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
batchActions.checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(computeEnvironmentName);
            String status = future.join();
            logger.info("Compute Environment Status: " + status);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            Throwable cause = rte.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ClientException batchExceptionEx) {
                logger.info("Batch error occurred: {} (Code: {})",
batchExceptionEx.getMessage(), batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a job queue");
        logger.info("""
             A job queue is an essential component that helps manage the
execution of your batch jobs.
             It acts as a buffer, where jobs are placed and then scheduled for
execution based on their
```

```
             priority and the available resources in the compute environment.
             """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        String jobQueueArn = null;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> jobQueueFuture =
batchActions.createJobQueueAsync(jobQueueName, computeEnvironmentName);
            jobQueueArn = jobQueueFuture.join();
            logger.info("Job Queue ARN: " + jobQueueArn);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            Throwable cause = rte.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof BatchException batchExceptionEx) {
                String myErrorCode =
batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage();
                if ("Object already exists".contains(myErrorCode)) {
                    logger.info("The job queue '" + jobQueueName + "' already
exists. Moving on...");
                    // Retrieve the ARN of the job queue.
                    CompletableFuture<String> jobQueueArnFuture =
batchActions.getJobQueueARN(jobQueueName);
                    jobQueueArn = jobQueueArnFuture.join();
                    logger.info("Job Queue ARN: " + jobQueueArn);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Batch error occurred: {} (Code: {})",
batchExceptionEx.getMessage(), batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
                return; // End the execution
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("4. Register a Job Definition.");
        logger.info("""
            Registering a job in AWS Batch using the Fargate launch type ensures
that all
            necessary parameters, such as the execution role, command to run, and
so on
```

```
            are specified and reused across multiple job submissions.

             The job definition pulls a Docker image from Amazon ECR and executes
the Docker image.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobARN;
        try {
            String platform = "";
            while (true) {
                logger.info("""
                    On which platform/CPU architecture combination did you build
the Docker image?:
                    1. Windows       X86_64
                    2. Mac or Linux  ARM64
                    3. Mac or Linux  X86_64

                    Please select 1, 2, or 3.
                    """);
                String platAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                if (platAns.equals("1")) {
                    platform = "X86_64";
                    break; // Exit loop since a valid option is selected
                } else if (platAns.equals("2")) {
                    platform = "ARM64";
                    break; // Exit loop since a valid option is selected
                } else if (platAns.equals("3")) {
                    platform = "X86_64";
                    break; // Exit loop since a valid option is selected
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select either 1 or
2.");
                }
            }

            jobARN = batchActions.registerJobDefinitionAsync(jobDefinitionName,
executionRoleARN, dockerImage, platform)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Register job definition failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
```

```
            if (jobARN != null) {
                logger.info("Job ARN: " + jobARN);
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.error("A Batch exception occurred while registering the job:
{}", rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Submit an AWS Batch job from a job definition.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobId;
        try {
            jobId = batchActions.submitJobAsync(jobDefinitionName, jobQueueName,
jobARN)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Submit job failed: " + ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();

            logger.info("The job id is "+jobId);
            logger.info("Let's wait 2 minutes for the job to complete");
            countdown(2);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.error("A Batch exception occurred while submitting the job:
{}", rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Get a list of jobs applicable to the job queue.");

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            List<JobSummary> jobs = batchActions.listJobsAsync(jobQueueName);
            jobs.forEach(job ->
                logger.info("Job ID: {}, Job Name: {}, Job Status: {}",
job.jobId(), job.jobName(), job.status()));
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.info("A Batch exception occurred while submitting the job:
{}", rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Check the status of job "+jobId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
batchActions.describeJobAsync(jobId);
            String jobStatus = future.join();
            logger.info("Job Status: " + jobStatus);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.info("A Batch exception occurred while submitting the job:
{}", rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        logger.info("8. Delete Batch resources");
        logger.info(
            """
            When deleting an AWS Batch compute environment, it does not happen
instantaneously.
            There is typically a delay, similar to some other AWS resources.
            AWS Batch starts the deletion process.
            """);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the AWS Batch resources such as the
compute environment? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the AWS ECR resources.");
            logger.info("First, we will deregister the Job Definition.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
```

```
                batchActions.deregisterJobDefinitionAsync(jobARN)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        logger.info("Deregister job definition failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
                logger.info(jobARN + " was deregistered");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.error("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            logger.info("Second, we will disable and then delete the Job
Queue.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                batchActions.disableJobQueueAsync(jobQueueArn)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        logger.info("Disable job queue failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
                logger.info(jobQueueArn + " was disabled");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            batchActions.waitForJobQueueToBeDisabledAsync(jobQueueArn);
            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
batchActions.waitForJobQueueToBeDisabledAsync(jobQueueArn);
                future.join();
                logger.info("Job queue is now disabled.");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
```

```
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                batchActions.deleteJobQueueAsync(jobQueueArn);
                logger.info(jobQueueArn +" was deleted");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
            logger.info("Let's wait 2 minutes for the job queue to be deleted");
            countdown(2);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

            logger.info("Third, we will delete the Compute Environment.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {

batchActions.disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        System.err.println("Disable compute environment failed: "
+ ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
                logger.info("Compute environment disabled") ;
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }


batchActions.checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(computeEnvironmentName).thenAccept(state
-> {
                logger.info("Current State: " + state);
            }).join();

            logger.info("Lets wait 1 min for the compute environment to be
deleted");
            countdown(1);

            try {

batchActions.deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName).join();
```

```
                logger.info(computeEnvironmentName +" was deleted.");

            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS Batch SDK scenario");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void countdown(int minutes) throws InterruptedException {
        int seconds = 0;
        for (int i = minutes * 60 + seconds; i >= 0; i--) {
            int displayMinutes = i / 60;
            int displaySeconds = i % 60;
            System.out.print(String.format("\r%02d:%02d", displayMinutes,
displaySeconds));
            Thread.sleep(1000); // Wait for 1 second
        }
        logger.info("Countdown complete!");
    }
```

```
   private static void getSubnetSecurityGroup() {
       try (Ec2AsyncClient ec2Client = Ec2AsyncClient.create()) {
           CompletableFuture<Vpc> defaultVpcFuture =
ec2Client.describeVpcs(DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
                           .filters(Filter.builder()
                                   .name("is-default")
                                   .values("true")
                                   .build())
                           .build())
                   .thenApply(response -> response.vpcs().stream()
                           .findFirst()
                           .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Default VPC
not found")));

           CompletableFuture<String> defaultSubnetFuture = defaultVpcFuture
                   .thenCompose(vpc ->
ec2Client.describeSubnets(DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                                   .filters(Filter.builder()
                                                   .name("vpc-id")
                                                   .values(vpc.vpcId())
                                                   .build(),
                                           Filter.builder()
                                                   .name("default-for-az")
                                                   .values("true")
                                                   .build())
                                   .build())
                           .thenApply(DescribeSubnetsResponse::subnets)
                           .thenApply(subnets -> subnets.stream()
                                   .findFirst()
                                   .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                                   .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("No
default subnet found"))));

           CompletableFuture<String> defaultSecurityGroupFuture =
defaultVpcFuture
                   .thenCompose(vpc ->
ec2Client.describeSecurityGroups(DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                                   .filters(Filter.builder()
                                                   .name("group-name")
                                                   .values("default")
                                                   .build(),
                                           Filter.builder()
                                                   .name("vpc-id")
```

```
                                                        .values(vpc.vpcId())
                                                        .build())
                                        .build())

 .thenApply(DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse::securityGroups)
                                .thenApply(securityGroups -> securityGroups.stream()
                                        .findFirst()
                                        .map(SecurityGroup::groupId)
                                        .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("No
 default security group found"))));

            defaultSubnet = defaultSubnetFuture.join();
            defaultSecurityGroup = defaultSecurityGroupFuture.join();
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS Batch SDK methods.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.AssignPublicIp;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.BatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CEState;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CEType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CRType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ComputeEnvironmentOrder;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ComputeResource;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ContainerProperties;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateJobQueueRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteJobQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteJobQueueResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeComputeEnvironmentsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobQueuesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobQueuesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JQState;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobDefinitionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobDetail;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobQueueDetail;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.RegisterJobDefinitionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.NetworkConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.PlatformCapability;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.RegisterJobDefinitionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ResourceRequirement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ResourceType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.RuntimePlatform;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.SubmitJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateJobQueueResponse;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Collections;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicBoolean;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.SubmitJobResponse;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateJobQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateJobQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.GetCallerIdentityResponse;

public class BatchActions {
    private static BatchAsyncClient batchClient;

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(BatchActions.class);

    private static BatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (batchClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();

            batchClient = BatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return batchClient;
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Asynchronously creates a new compute environment in AWS Batch.
    *
    * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
create
    * @param batchIAMRole the IAM role to be used by the compute environment
    * @param subnet the subnet ID to be used for the compute environment
    * @param secGroup the security group ID to be used for the compute
environment
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation, which will complete with the
    *         {@link CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse} when the compute
environment has been created
    * @throws BatchException if there is an error creating the compute
environment
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the
operation
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
createComputeEnvironmentAsync(
       String computeEnvironmentName, String batchIAMRole, String subnet, String
secGroup) {
       CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest environmentRequest =
CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironmentName)
           .type(CEType.MANAGED)
           .state(CEState.ENABLED)
           .computeResources(ComputeResource.builder()
               .type(CRType.FARGATE)
               .maxvCpus(256)
               .subnets(Collections.singletonList(subnet))
               .securityGroupIds(Collections.singletonList(secGroup))
               .build())
           .serviceRole(batchIAMRole)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createComputeEnvironment(environmentRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
              String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
              throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
           }
       });
```

```
        return response;
    }

    public CompletableFuture<DeleteComputeEnvironmentResponse>
deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
        DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest deleteComputeEnvironment =
DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();

        return
getAsyncClient().deleteComputeEnvironment(deleteComputeEnvironment)
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof BatchException) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of the specified compute environment.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to check
     * @return a CompletableFuture containing the status of the compute
environment, or "ERROR" if an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
        if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot
be null or empty");
        }

        DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest environmentsRequest =
DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironments(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DescribeComputeEnvironmentsResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeComputeEnvironments(environmentsRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> resp.computeEnvironments().stream()
            .map(env -> env.statusAsString())
            .findFirst()
            .orElse("UNKNOWN"));
    }

    /**
     * Creates a job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to create
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
associate with the job queue
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the Amazon Resource Name
(ARN) of the job queue
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueName,
String computeEnvironmentName) {
        if (jobQueueName == null || jobQueueName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot
be null or empty");
        }

        CreateJobQueueRequest request = CreateJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueueName(jobQueueName)
            .priority(1)
            .computeEnvironmentOrder(ComputeEnvironmentOrder.builder()
                .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
                .order(1)
                .build())
```

```
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateJobQueueResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createJobQueue(request);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(CreateJobQueueResponse::jobQueueArn);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists the jobs in the specified job queue with the given
job status.
     *
     * @param jobQueue the name of the job queue to list jobs from
     * @return a List<JobSummary> that contains the jobs that succeeded
     */
    public List<JobSummary> listJobsAsync(String jobQueue) {
        if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueue)
            .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)  // Filter jobs by status.
            .build();

        List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
        ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response ->
{
            jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
        });
        future.join();
        return jobSummaries;
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Registers a new job definition asynchronously in AWS Batch.
     * <p>
     * When using Fargate as the compute environment, it is crucial to set the
     * {@link NetworkConfiguration} with {@link AssignPublicIp#ENABLED} to
     * ensure proper networking configuration for the Fargate tasks. This
     * allows the tasks to communicate with external services, access the
     * internet, or communicate within a VPC.
     *
     * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to be registered
     * @param executionRoleARN the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the execution
role
     *                         that provides permissions for the containers in
the job
     * @param cpuArch a value of either X86_64 or ARM64 required for the service
call
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the ARN of the registered
     *         job definition upon successful execution, or completes
exceptionally with
     *         an error if the registration fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> registerJobDefinitionAsync(String
jobDefinitionName, String executionRoleARN, String image, String cpuArch) {
        NetworkConfiguration networkConfiguration =
NetworkConfiguration.builder()
                .assignPublicIp(AssignPublicIp.ENABLED)
                .build();

        ContainerProperties containerProperties = ContainerProperties.builder()
                .image(image)
                .executionRoleArn(executionRoleARN)
                .resourceRequirements(
                        Arrays.asList(
                                ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                        .type(ResourceType.VCPU)
                                        .value("1")
                                        .build(),
                                ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                        .type(ResourceType.MEMORY)
                                        .value("2048")
                                        .build()
                        )
                )
                .networkConfiguration(networkConfiguration)
```

```
                .runtimePlatform(b -> b
                        .cpuArchitecture(cpuArch)
                        .operatingSystemFamily("LINUX"))
                .build();

        RegisterJobDefinitionRequest request =
RegisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
                .jobDefinitionName(jobDefinitionName)
                .type(JobDefinitionType.CONTAINER)
                .containerProperties(containerProperties)
                .platformCapabilities(PlatformCapability.FARGATE)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().registerJobDefinition(request)
                .thenApply(RegisterJobDefinitionResponse::jobDefinitionArn)
                .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(ex);
                    } else {
                        future.complete(result);
                    }
                });

        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Deregisters a job definition asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobDefinition the name of the job definition to be deregistered
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job definition has
been deregistered
     * or an exception has occurred
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse>
deregisterJobDefinitionAsync(String jobDefinition) {
        DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest jobDefinitionRequest =
DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
            .jobDefinition(jobDefinition)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deregisterJobDefinition(jobDefinitionRequest);
```

```
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Disables the specified job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to be
disabled
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job queue
update operation is complete,
     *         or completes exceptionally if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> disableJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
        UpdateJobQueueRequest updateRequest = UpdateJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
            .state(JQState.DISABLED)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<UpdateJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateJobQueue(updateRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(updateResponse -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a Batch job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to
delete.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of
the job queue.
     *         The future completes when the job queue has been successfully
deleted or if an error occurs.
```

```
    *         If successful, the future will be completed with a {@code Void}
value.
    *         If an error occurs, the future will be completed exceptionally
with the thrown exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
       DeleteJobQueueRequest deleteRequest = DeleteJobQueueRequest.builder()
           .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deleteJobQueue(deleteRequest);
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((deleteResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       }).thenApply(deleteResponse -> null);
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the job queue associated with the specified
compute environment.
    *
    * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to find
the associated job queue for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the job
queue ARN associated with the specified compute environment
    * @throws RuntimeException if the job queue description fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobQueueAsync(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
       DescribeJobQueuesRequest describeJobQueuesRequest =
DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobQueues(describeJobQueuesRequest);
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((describeJobQueuesResponse, ex) -> {
           if (describeJobQueuesResponse != null) {
               String jobQueueARN;
               for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
```

```
                    for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                        String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                        String name =
getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                        if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                            jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
                            logger.info("Job queue ARN associated with the
compute environment: " + jobQueueARN);
                        }
                    }
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(describeJobQueuesResponse -> {
            String jobQueueARN = "";
            for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                    String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                    String name = getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                    if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                        jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
                    }
                }
            }
            return jobQueueARN;
        });
    }

    /**
     * Disables the specified compute environment asynchronously.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
disable
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the compute environment is
disabled
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
       UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest updateRequest =
UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
           .state(CEState.DISABLED)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateComputeEnvironment(updateRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable compute
environment: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }

   /**
    * Submits a job asynchronously to the AWS Batch service.
    *
    * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to use
    * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to submit the job to
    * @param jobARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job definition
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains the job ID of
the submitted job
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> submitJobAsync(String jobDefinitionName,
String jobQueueName, String jobARN) {
       SubmitJobRequest jobRequest = SubmitJobRequest.builder()
           .jobDefinition(jobARN)
           .jobName(jobDefinitionName)
           .jobQueue(jobQueueName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<SubmitJobResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().submitJob(jobRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
```

```
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(SubmitJobResponse::jobId);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the status of a specific job.
     *
     * @param jobId the ID of the job to retrieve the status for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the job status
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobAsync(String jobId) {
        DescribeJobsRequest describeJobsRequest = DescribeJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobs(jobId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobs(describeJobsRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(response -> response.jobs().get(0).status().toString());
    }

    /**
     * Disables the specific job queue using the asynchronous Java client.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to wait
for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job queue is
disabled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForJobQueueToBeDisabledAsync(String
jobQueueArn) {
        AtomicBoolean isDisabled = new AtomicBoolean(false);
        return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            while (!isDisabled.get()) {
                DescribeJobQueuesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
                    .jobQueues(jobQueueArn)
                    .build();
```

```
                CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobQueues(describeRequest);
                responseFuture.whenComplete((describeResponse, ex) -> {
                    if (describeResponse != null) {
                        for (JobQueueDetail jobQueue :
describeResponse.jobQueues()) {
                            if (jobQueue.jobQueueArn().equals(jobQueueArn) &&
jobQueue.state() == JQState.DISABLED) {
                                isDisabled.set(true);
                                break;
                            }
                        }
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Error describing job queues",
ex);
                    }
                }).join();

                if (!isDisabled.get()) {
                    try {
                        logger.info("Waiting for job queue to be disabled...");
                        Thread.sleep(5000);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                        throw new RuntimeException("Thread interrupted while
waiting for job queue to be disabled", e);
                    }
                }
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, throwable) -> {
            if (throwable != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error while waiting for job queue to
be disabled", throwable);
            }
        });
    }

    public CompletableFuture<String> getJobQueueARN(String jobQueueName) {
        // Describe the job queue asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> describeJobQueuesFuture =
batchClient.describeJobQueues(
            DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
                .jobQueues(jobQueueName)
                .build()
```

```
        );

        // Handle the asynchronous response and return the Job Queue ARN in the
CompletableFuture<String>
        CompletableFuture<String> jobQueueArnFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        describeJobQueuesFuture.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error != null) {
                if (error instanceof BatchException) {
                    logger.info("Batch error: " + ((BatchException)
error).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("Error describing job queue: " +
error.getMessage());
                }
                jobQueueArnFuture.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to retrieve Job Queue ARN", error));
            } else {
                if (response.jobQueues().isEmpty()) {
                    jobQueueArnFuture.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Job queue not found: " + jobQueueName));
                } else {
                    // Assuming only one job queue is returned for the given name
                    String jobQueueArn =
response.jobQueues().get(0).jobQueueArn();
                    jobQueueArnFuture.complete(jobQueueArn);
                }
            }
        });

        return jobQueueArnFuture;
    }

    private static String getComputeEnvironmentName(String computeEnvironment) {
        String[] parts = computeEnvironment.split("/");
        if (parts.length == 2) {
            return parts[1];
        }
        return null;
    }

    public CompletableFuture<String> getAccountId() {
        StsAsyncClient stsAsyncClient = StsAsyncClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();
```

```
        return stsAsyncClient.getCallerIdentity()
            .thenApply(GetCallerIdentityResponse::account);
    }


}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateComputeEnvironment
  - CreateJobQueue
  - DeleteComputeEnvironment
  - DeleteJobQueue
  - DeregisterJobDefinition
  - DescribeComputeEnvironments
  - DescribeJobQueues
  - DescribeJobs
  - ListJobsPaginator
  - RegisterJobDefinition
  - SubmitJob
  - UpdateComputeEnvironment
  - UpdateJobQueue

Actions for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Batch actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the AWS Batch API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Batch API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeregisterJobDefinition with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeComputeEnvironments with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeJobQueues with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListJobsPaginator with an AWS SDK
- Use RegisterJobDefinition with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SubmitJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateComputeEnvironment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateJobQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateComputeEnvironment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateComputeEnvironment`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a managed compute environment with On-Demand instances

This example creates a managed compute environment with specific C4 instance types that are launched on demand. The compute environment is called C4OnDemand.

Command:

```
aws batch create-compute-environment --cli-input-json file://<path_to_json_file>/
C4OnDemand.json
```

JSON file format:

```
{
  "computeEnvironmentName": "C4OnDemand",
  "type": "MANAGED",
  "state": "ENABLED",
  "computeResources": {
    "type": "EC2",
    "minvCpus": 0,
    "maxvCpus": 128,
    "desiredvCpus": 48,
    "instanceTypes": [
      "c4.large",
      "c4.xlarge",
      "c4.2xlarge",
      "c4.4xlarge",
      "c4.8xlarge"
    ],
    "subnets": [
      "subnet-220c0e0a",
      "subnet-1a95556d",
      "subnet-978f6dce"
    ],
    "securityGroupIds": [
      "sg-cf5093b2"
    ],
    "ec2KeyPair": "id_rsa",
    "instanceRole": "ecsInstanceRole",
    "tags": {
      "Name": "Batch Instance - C4OnDemand"
    }
  },
  "serviceRole": "arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/AWSBatchServiceRole"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "computeEnvironmentName": "C4OnDemand",
```

```
    "computeEnvironmentArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:compute-
environment/C4OnDemand"
}
```

To create a managed compute environment with Spot Instances

This example creates a managed compute environment with the M4 instance type that is launched when the Spot bid price is at or below 20% of the On-Demand price for the instance type. The compute environment is called M4Spot.

Command:

```
aws batch create-compute-environment --cli-input-json file://<path_to_json_file>/
M4Spot.json
```

JSON file format:

```
{
  "computeEnvironmentName": "M4Spot",
  "type": "MANAGED",
  "state": "ENABLED",
  "computeResources": {
    "type": "SPOT",
    "spotIamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/aws-ec2-spot-fleet-role",
    "minvCpus": 0,
    "maxvCpus": 128,
    "desiredvCpus": 4,
    "instanceTypes": [
      "m4"
    ],
    "bidPercentage": 20,
    "subnets": [
      "subnet-220c0e0a",
      "subnet-1a95556d",
      "subnet-978f6dce"
    ],
    "securityGroupIds": [
      "sg-cf5093b2"
    ],
    "ec2KeyPair": "id_rsa",
    "instanceRole": "ecsInstanceRole",
    "tags": {
```

```
      "Name": "Batch Instance - M4Spot"
    }
  },
  "serviceRole": "arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/AWSBatchServiceRole"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "computeEnvironmentName": "M4Spot",
    "computeEnvironmentArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:compute-
environment/M4Spot"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateComputeEnvironment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously creates a new compute environment in AWS Batch.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
 create
     * @param batchIAMRole the IAM role to be used by the compute environment
     * @param subnet the subnet ID to be used for the compute environment
     * @param secGroup the security group ID to be used for the compute
 environment
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
 operation, which will complete with the
     *         {@link CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse} when the compute
 environment has been created
     * @throws BatchException if there is an error creating the compute
 environment
```

```
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the
operation
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
createComputeEnvironmentAsync(
       String computeEnvironmentName, String batchIAMRole, String subnet, String
secGroup) {
       CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest environmentRequest =
CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironmentName)
           .type(CEType.MANAGED)
           .state(CEState.ENABLED)
           .computeResources(ComputeResource.builder()
               .type(CRType.FARGATE)
               .maxvCpus(256)
               .subnets(Collections.singletonList(subnet))
               .securityGroupIds(Collections.singletonList(secGroup))
               .build())
           .serviceRole(batchIAMRole)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createComputeEnvironment(environmentRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
              String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
              throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
           }
       });

       return response;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateComputeEnvironment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateJobQueue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateJobQueue`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a low priority job queue with a single compute environment

This example creates a job queue called LowPriority that uses the M4Spot compute environment.

Command:

```
aws batch create-job-queue --cli-input-json file://<path_to_json_file>/
LowPriority.json
```

JSON file format:

```
{
  "jobQueueName": "LowPriority",
  "state": "ENABLED",
  "priority": 10,
  "computeEnvironmentOrder": [
    {
      "order": 1,
      "computeEnvironment": "M4Spot"
    }
  ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobQueueArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-queue/LowPriority",
    "jobQueueName": "LowPriority"
}
```

To create a high priority job queue with two compute environments

This example creates a job queue called HighPriority that uses the C4OnDemand compute environment with an order of 1 and the M4Spot compute environment with an order of 2. The scheduler will attempt to place jobs on the C4OnDemand compute environment first.

Command:

```
aws batch create-job-queue --cli-input-json file://<path_to_json_file>/
HighPriority.json
```

JSON file format:

```
{
  "jobQueueName": "HighPriority",
  "state": "ENABLED",
  "priority": 1,
  "computeEnvironmentOrder": [
    {
      "order": 1,
      "computeEnvironment": "C4OnDemand"
    },
    {
      "order": 2,
      "computeEnvironment": "M4Spot"
    }
  ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobQueueArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-queue/HighPriority",
    "jobQueueName": "HighPriority"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJobQueue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a job queue asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to create
    * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
associate with the job queue
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the Amazon Resource Name
(ARN) of the job queue
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueName,
String computeEnvironmentName) {
       if (jobQueueName == null || jobQueueName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue name cannot be null or
empty");
       }
       if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot
be null or empty");
       }

       CreateJobQueueRequest request = CreateJobQueueRequest.builder()
           .jobQueueName(jobQueueName)
           .priority(1)
           .computeEnvironmentOrder(ComputeEnvironmentOrder.builder()
               .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
               .order(1)
               .build())
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateJobQueueResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createJobQueue(request);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
```

```
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(CreateJobQueueResponse::jobQueueArn);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJobQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteComputeEnvironment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteComputeEnvironment`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a compute environment

This example deletes the P2OnDemand compute environment.

Command:

```
aws batch delete-compute-environment --compute-environment P2OnDemand
```

- For API details, see DeleteComputeEnvironment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteComputeEnvironmentResponse>
deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
       DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest deleteComputeEnvironment =
DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
           .build();

       return
getAsyncClient().deleteComputeEnvironment(deleteComputeEnvironment)
           .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
               if (ex != null) {
                   Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof BatchException) {
                       throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                   } else {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteComputeEnvironment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteJobQueue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteJobQueue`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a job queue

This example deletes the GPGPU job queue.

Command:

```
aws batch delete-job-queue --job-queue GPGPU
```

- For API details, see DeleteJobQueue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a Batch job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to
delete.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of
the job queue.
     *         The future completes when the job queue has been successfully
deleted or if an error occurs.
     *         If successful, the future will be completed with a {@code Void}
value.
     *         If an error occurs, the future will be completed exceptionally
with the thrown exception.
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
        DeleteJobQueueRequest deleteRequest = DeleteJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deleteJobQueue(deleteRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((deleteResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(deleteResponse -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJobQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeregisterJobDefinition` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterJobDefinition`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister a job definition

This example deregisters a job definition called sleep10.

Command:

```
aws batch deregister-job-definition --job-definition sleep10
```

- For API details, see DeregisterJobDefinition in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deregisters a job definition asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobDefinition the name of the job definition to be deregistered
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job definition has
been deregistered
    * or an exception has occurred
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse>
deregisterJobDefinitionAsync(String jobDefinition) {
       DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest jobDefinitionRequest =
DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
           .jobDefinition(jobDefinition)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deregisterJobDefinition(jobDefinitionRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }
```

- For API details, see DeregisterJobDefinition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeComputeEnvironments` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeComputeEnvironments`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a compute environment

This example describes the P2OnDemand compute environment.

Command:

```
aws batch describe-compute-environments --compute-environments P2OnDemand
```

Output:

```
{
    "computeEnvironments": [
        {
            "status": "VALID",
            "serviceRole": "arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/AWSBatchServiceRole",
            "computeEnvironmentArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-
east-1:012345678910:compute-environment/P2OnDemand",
            "computeResources": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-220c0e0a",
                    "subnet-1a95556d",
                    "subnet-978f6dce"
                ],
                "tags": {
                    "Name": "Batch Instance - P2OnDemand"
                },
                "desiredvCpus": 48,
                "minvCpus": 0,
```

```
                "instanceTypes": [
                    "p2"
                ],
                "securityGroupIds": [
                    "sg-cf5093b2"
                ],
                "instanceRole": "ecsInstanceRole",
                "maxvCpus": 128,
                "type": "EC2",
                "ec2KeyPair": "id_rsa"
            },
            "statusReason": "ComputeEnvironment Healthy",
            "ecsClusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:012345678910:cluster/
P2OnDemand_Batch_2c06f29d-d1fe-3a49-879d-42394c86effc",
            "state": "ENABLED",
            "computeEnvironmentName": "P2OnDemand",
            "type": "MANAGED"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeComputeEnvironments in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Checks the status of the specified compute environment.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to check
     * @return a CompletableFuture containing the status of the compute
environment, or "ERROR" if an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
```

```
        if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot
be null or empty");
        }

        DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest environmentsRequest =
DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironments(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeComputeEnvironmentsResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeComputeEnvironments(environmentsRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> resp.computeEnvironments().stream()
            .map(env -> env.statusAsString())
            .findFirst()
            .orElse("UNKNOWN"));
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeComputeEnvironments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeJobQueues` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeJobQueues`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a job queue

This example describes the HighPriority job queue.

Command:

```
aws batch describe-job-queues --job-queues HighPriority
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobQueues": [
        {
            "status": "VALID",
            "jobQueueArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-queue/
HighPriority",
            "computeEnvironmentOrder": [
                {
                    "computeEnvironment": "arn:aws:batch:us-
east-1:012345678910:compute-environment/C4OnDemand",
                    "order": 1
                }
            ],
            "statusReason": "JobQueue Healthy",
            "priority": 1,
            "state": "ENABLED",
            "jobQueueName": "HighPriority"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeJobQueues in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the job queue associated with the specified
compute environment.
    *
    * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to find
the associated job queue for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the job
queue ARN associated with the specified compute environment
    * @throws RuntimeException if the job queue description fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobQueueAsync(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
       DescribeJobQueuesRequest describeJobQueuesRequest =
DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobQueues(describeJobQueuesRequest);
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((describeJobQueuesResponse, ex) -> {
           if (describeJobQueuesResponse != null) {
               String jobQueueARN;
               for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                   for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                       String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                       String name =
getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                       if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                           jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
```

```
                            logger.info("Job queue ARN associated with the
compute environment: " + jobQueueARN);
                        }
                    }
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(describeJobQueuesResponse -> {
            String jobQueueARN = "";
            for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                    String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                    String name = getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                    if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                        jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
                    }
                }
            }
            return jobQueueARN;
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeJobQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeJobs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a job

The following `describe-jobs` example describes a job with the specified job ID.

```
aws batch describe-jobs \
    --jobs bcf0b186-a532-4122-842e-2ccab8d54efb
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobs": [
        {
            "status": "SUBMITTED",
            "container": {
                "mountPoints": [],
                "image": "busybox",
                "environment": [],
                "vcpus": 1,
                "command": [
                    "sleep",
                    "60"
                ],
                "volumes": [],
                "memory": 128,
                "ulimits": []
            },
            "parameters": {},
            "jobDefinition": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-
definition/sleep60:1",
            "jobQueue": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-queue/
HighPriority",
            "jobId": "bcf0b186-a532-4122-842e-2ccab8d54efb",
            "dependsOn": [],
            "jobName": "example",
            "createdAt": 1480483387803
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the status of a specific job.
     *
     * @param jobId the ID of the job to retrieve the status for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the job status
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobAsync(String jobId) {
        DescribeJobsRequest describeJobsRequest = DescribeJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobs(jobId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobs(describeJobsRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(response -> response.jobs().get(0).status().toString());
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListJobsPaginator` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobsPaginator`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously lists the jobs in the specified job queue with the given
job status.
    *
    * @param jobQueue the name of the job queue to list jobs from
    * @return a List<JobSummary> that contains the jobs that succeeded
    */
   public List<JobSummary> listJobsAsync(String jobQueue) {
       if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
           .jobQueue(jobQueue)
           .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)  // Filter jobs by status.
           .build();

       List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
       ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
       CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response ->
{
           jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
       });
       future.join();
```

```
        return jobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `RegisterJobDefinition` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterJobDefinition`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To register a job definition

This example registers a job definition for a simple container job.

Command:

```
aws batch register-job-definition --job-definition-name sleep30 --type container
 --container-properties '{ "image": "busybox", "vcpus": 1, "memory": 128,
 "command": [ "sleep", "30"]}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobDefinitionArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-definition/
sleep30:1",
    "jobDefinitionName": "sleep30",
    "revision": 1
}
```

- For API details, see RegisterJobDefinition in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Registers a new job definition asynchronously in AWS Batch.
    * <p>
    * When using Fargate as the compute environment, it is crucial to set the
    * {@link NetworkConfiguration} with {@link AssignPublicIp#ENABLED} to
    * ensure proper networking configuration for the Fargate tasks. This
    * allows the tasks to communicate with external services, access the
    * internet, or communicate within a VPC.
    *
    * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to be registered
    * @param executionRoleARN the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the execution
role
    *                         that provides permissions for the containers in
the job
    * @param cpuArch a value of either X86_64 or ARM64 required for the service
call
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the ARN of the registered
    *         job definition upon successful execution, or completes
exceptionally with
    *         an error if the registration fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> registerJobDefinitionAsync(String
jobDefinitionName, String executionRoleARN, String image, String cpuArch) {
       NetworkConfiguration networkConfiguration =
NetworkConfiguration.builder()
               .assignPublicIp(AssignPublicIp.ENABLED)
               .build();

       ContainerProperties containerProperties = ContainerProperties.builder()
               .image(image)
               .executionRoleArn(executionRoleARN)
               .resourceRequirements(
```

```
                        Arrays.asList(
                                ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                        .type(ResourceType.VCPU)
                                        .value("1")
                                        .build(),
                                ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                        .type(ResourceType.MEMORY)
                                        .value("2048")
                                        .build()
                        )
                )
                .networkConfiguration(networkConfiguration)
               .runtimePlatform(b -> b
                        .cpuArchitecture(cpuArch)
                        .operatingSystemFamily("LINUX"))
                .build();

        RegisterJobDefinitionRequest request =
 RegisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
                .jobDefinitionName(jobDefinitionName)
                .type(JobDefinitionType.CONTAINER)
                .containerProperties(containerProperties)
                .platformCapabilities(PlatformCapability.FARGATE)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().registerJobDefinition(request)
                .thenApply(RegisterJobDefinitionResponse::jobDefinitionArn)
                .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(ex);
                    } else {
                        future.complete(result);
                    }
                });

        return future;
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterJobDefinition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `SubmitJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SubmitJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To submit a job

This example submits a simple container job called example to the HighPriority job queue.

Command:

```
aws batch submit-job --job-name example --job-queue HighPriority  --job-
definition sleep60
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobName": "example",
    "jobId": "876da822-4198-45f2-a252-6cea32512ea8"
}
```

- For API details, see SubmitJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Submits a job asynchronously to the AWS Batch service.
     *
     * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to use
     * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to submit the job to
     * @param jobARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job definition
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains the job ID of
the submitted job
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> submitJobAsync(String jobDefinitionName,
String jobQueueName, String jobARN) {
        SubmitJobRequest jobRequest = SubmitJobRequest.builder()
            .jobDefinition(jobARN)
            .jobName(jobDefinitionName)
            .jobQueue(jobQueueName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SubmitJobResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().submitJob(jobRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(SubmitJobResponse::jobId);
    }
```

- For API details, see SubmitJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UpdateComputeEnvironment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateComputeEnvironment`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a compute environment

This example disables the P2OnDemand compute environment so it can be deleted.

Command:

```
aws batch update-compute-environment --compute-environment P2OnDemand --
state DISABLED
```

Output:

```
{
    "computeEnvironmentName": "P2OnDemand",
    "computeEnvironmentArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:compute-
environment/P2OnDemand"
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateComputeEnvironment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Disables the specified compute environment asynchronously.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
 disable
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the compute environment is
 disabled
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
       UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest updateRequest =
UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
           .state(CEState.DISABLED)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateComputeEnvironment(updateRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable compute
environment: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateComputeEnvironment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UpdateJobQueue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateJobQueue`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Batch and Fargate

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a job queue

This example disables a job queue so that it can be deleted.

Command:

```
aws batch update-job-queue --job-queue GPGPU --state DISABLED
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobQueueArn": "arn:aws:batch:us-east-1:012345678910:job-queue/GPGPU",
    "jobQueueName": "GPGPU"
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobQueue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Disables the specified job queue asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobQueueArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to be
disabled
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job queue
update operation is complete,
    *         or completes exceptionally if an error occurs during the operation
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> disableJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
       UpdateJobQueueRequest updateRequest = UpdateJobQueueRequest.builder()
           .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
           .state(JQState.DISABLED)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateJobQueue(updateRequest);
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(updateResponse -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios for AWS Batch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in AWS Batch with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within AWS Batch or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Get started with Batch and Fargate using the CLI

Get started with Batch and Fargate using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM execution role for ECS tasks
- Create a managed Fargate compute environment
- Create a job queue with priority settings
- Register a job definition for containerized workloads
- Submit and monitor a batch job execution
- View job output in CloudWatch Logs
- Clean up resources in proper dependency order

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# AWS Batch Fargate Getting Started Script - Fixed Version
# This script demonstrates creating AWS Batch resources with Fargate
 orchestration
#
# HIGH SEVERITY FIXES APPLIED:
# 1. Added IAM role propagation delay after role creation
# 2. Added resource state validation before deletion attempts

set -e  # Exit on any error

# Configuration
SCRIPT_NAME="batch-fargate-tutorial"
LOG_FILE="${SCRIPT_NAME}-$(date +%Y%m%d-%H%M%S).log"
RANDOM_SUFFIX=$(openssl rand -hex 6)
COMPUTE_ENV_NAME="batch-fargate-compute-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
JOB_QUEUE_NAME="batch-fargate-queue-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
JOB_DEF_NAME="batch-fargate-jobdef-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
JOB_NAME="batch-hello-world-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
ROLE_NAME="BatchEcsTaskExecutionRole-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
TRUST_POLICY_FILE="batch-trust-policy-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}.json"

# Array to track created resources for cleanup
CREATED_RESOURCES=()

# Logging function
log() {
    echo "[$(date '+%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S')] $1" | tee -a "$LOG_FILE"
}

# Error handling function
```

```
handle_error() {
    log "ERROR: Script failed at line $1"
    log "Attempting to clean up resources created so far..."
    cleanup_resources
    exit 1
}

# Set up error handling
trap 'handle_error $LINENO' ERR

# Function to wait for resource to be ready
wait_for_compute_env() {
    local env_name=$1
    log "Waiting for compute environment $env_name to be VALID..."

    while true; do
        local status=$(aws batch describe-compute-environments \
            --compute-environments "$env_name" \
            --query 'computeEnvironments[0].status' \
            --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")

        if [ "$status" = "VALID" ]; then
            log "Compute environment $env_name is ready"
            break
        elif [ "$status" = "INVALID" ] || [ "$status" = "NOT_FOUND" ]; then
            log "ERROR: Compute environment $env_name failed to create properly"
            return 1
        fi

        log "Compute environment status: $status. Waiting 10 seconds..."
        sleep 10
    done
}

# Function to wait for job queue to be ready
wait_for_job_queue() {
    local queue_name=$1
    log "Waiting for job queue $queue_name to be VALID..."

    while true; do
        local state=$(aws batch describe-job-queues \
            --job-queues "$queue_name" \
            --query 'jobQueues[0].state' \
            --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")
```

```
        if [ "$state" = "ENABLED" ]; then
            log "Job queue $queue_name is ready"
            break
        elif [ "$state" = "DISABLED" ] || [ "$state" = "NOT_FOUND" ]; then
            log "ERROR: Job queue $queue_name failed to create properly"
            return 1
        fi

        log "Job queue state: $state. Waiting 10 seconds..."
        sleep 10
    done
}

# Function to wait for job completion
wait_for_job() {
    local job_id=$1
    log "Waiting for job $job_id to complete..."

    while true; do
        local status=$(aws batch describe-jobs \
            --jobs "$job_id" \
            --query 'jobs[0].status' \
            --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")

        if [ "$status" = "SUCCEEDED" ]; then
            log "Job $job_id completed successfully"
            break
        elif [ "$status" = "FAILED" ]; then
            log "ERROR: Job $job_id failed"
            return 1
        fi

        log "Job status: $status. Waiting 30 seconds..."
        sleep 30
    done
}

# FIXED: Added function to wait for resource state before deletion
wait_for_resource_state() {
    local resource_type=$1
    local resource_name=$2
    local expected_state=$3
    local max_attempts=30
```

```
    local attempt=0

    log "Waiting for $resource_type $resource_name to reach state:
 $expected_state"

    while [ $attempt -lt $max_attempts ]; do
        local current_state=""

        case $resource_type in
            "JOB_QUEUE")
                current_state=$(aws batch describe-job-queues \
                    --job-queues "$resource_name" \
                    --query 'jobQueues[0].state' \
                    --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")
                ;;
            "COMPUTE_ENV")
                current_state=$(aws batch describe-compute-environments \
                    --compute-environments "$resource_name" \
                    --query 'computeEnvironments[0].status' \
                    --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")
                ;;
        esac

        if [ "$current_state" = "$expected_state" ]; then
            log "$resource_type $resource_name is now in state: $expected_state"
            return 0
        fi

        log "$resource_type $resource_name state: $current_state (waiting for
 $expected_state)"
        sleep 10
        ((attempt++))
    done

    log "WARNING: $resource_type $resource_name did not reach expected state
 after $max_attempts attempts"
    return 1
}

# Cleanup function
cleanup_resources() {
    log "Starting cleanup of created resources..."

    # Clean up in reverse order of creation
```

```
    for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
        local resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[i]}"
        local resource_type=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d: -f1)
        local resource_name=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d: -f2)

        log "Cleaning up $resource_type: $resource_name"

        case $resource_type in
            "JOB_QUEUE")
                # FIXED: Validate state before deletion
                aws batch update-job-queue --job-queue "$resource_name" --state
 DISABLED 2>/dev/null || true
                wait_for_resource_state "JOB_QUEUE" "$resource_name" "DISABLED"
 || true
                aws batch delete-job-queue --job-queue "$resource_name" 2>/dev/
null || true
                ;;
            "COMPUTE_ENV")
                # FIXED: Validate state before deletion
                aws batch update-compute-environment --compute-environment
 "$resource_name" --state DISABLED 2>/dev/null || true
                wait_for_resource_state "COMPUTE_ENV" "$resource_name" "DISABLED"
 || true
                aws batch delete-compute-environment --compute-environment
 "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null || true
                ;;
            "IAM_ROLE")
                aws iam detach-role-policy --role-name "$resource_name" --policy-
arn "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonECSTaskExecutionRolePolicy" 2>/
dev/null || true
                aws iam delete-role --role-name "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null ||
 true
                ;;
            "FILE")
                rm -f "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null || true
                ;;
        esac
    done

    log "Cleanup completed"
}

# Main script execution
main() {
```

```
    log "Starting AWS Batch Fargate tutorial script - Fixed Version"
    log "Log file: $LOG_FILE"

    # Get AWS account ID
    log "Getting AWS account ID..."
    ACCOUNT_ID=$(aws sts get-caller-identity --query Account --output text)
    log "Account ID: $ACCOUNT_ID"

    # Get default VPC and subnets
    log "Getting default VPC and subnets..."
    DEFAULT_VPC=$(aws ec2 describe-vpcs \
        --filters "Name=is-default,Values=true" \
        --query 'Vpcs[0].VpcId' \
        --output text)

    if [ "$DEFAULT_VPC" = "None" ] || [ "$DEFAULT_VPC" = "null" ]; then
        log "ERROR: No default VPC found. Please create a VPC first."
        exit 1
    fi

    log "Default VPC: $DEFAULT_VPC"

    # Get subnets in the default VPC
    SUBNETS=$(aws ec2 describe-subnets \
        --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$DEFAULT_VPC" \
        --query 'Subnets[*].SubnetId' \
        --output text)

    if [ -z "$SUBNETS" ]; then
        log "ERROR: No subnets found in default VPC"
        exit 1
    fi

    # Convert tab/space-separated subnets to JSON array format
    SUBNET_ARRAY=$(echo "$SUBNETS" | tr '\t ' '\n' | sed 's/^/"/;s/$/"/' | paste
 -sd ',' -)
    log "Subnets: $SUBNETS"
    log "Subnet array: [$SUBNET_ARRAY]"

    # Get default security group for the VPC
    DEFAULT_SG=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups \
        --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$DEFAULT_VPC" "Name=group-
name,Values=default" \
        --query 'SecurityGroups[0].GroupId' \
```

```
        --output text)

    if [ "$DEFAULT_SG" = "None" ] || [ "$DEFAULT_SG" = "null" ]; then
        log "ERROR: No default security group found in VPC"
        exit 1
    fi

    log "Default security group: $DEFAULT_SG"

    # Step 1: Create IAM execution role
    log "Step 1: Creating IAM execution role..."

    # Create trust policy document
    cat > "$TRUST_POLICY_FILE" << EOF
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "ecs-tasks.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("FILE:$TRUST_POLICY_FILE")

    # Create the role
    aws iam create-role \
        --role-name "$ROLE_NAME" \
        --assume-role-policy-document "file://$TRUST_POLICY_FILE"
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("IAM_ROLE:$ROLE_NAME")

    # Attach policy
    aws iam attach-role-policy \
        --role-name "$ROLE_NAME" \
        --policy-arn "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AmazonECSTaskExecutionRolePolicy"

    log "IAM role created: $ROLE_NAME"

    # FIXED: Wait for IAM role propagation
```

```
    log "Waiting for IAM role propagation (15 seconds)..."
    sleep 15

    # Step 2: Create compute environment
    log "Step 2: Creating Fargate compute environment..."

    aws batch create-compute-environment \
        --compute-environment-name "$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME" \
        --type MANAGED \
        --state ENABLED \
        --compute-resources "{
            \"type\": \"FARGATE\",
            \"maxvCpus\": 256,
            \"subnets\": [$SUBNET_ARRAY],
            \"securityGroupIds\": [\"$DEFAULT_SG\"]
        }"
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("COMPUTE_ENV:$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME")

    # Wait for compute environment to be ready
    wait_for_compute_env "$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME"

    # Step 3: Create job queue
    log "Step 3: Creating job queue..."

    aws batch create-job-queue \
        --job-queue-name "$JOB_QUEUE_NAME" \
        --state ENABLED \
        --priority 900 \
        --compute-environment-order
order=1,computeEnvironment="$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME"
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("JOB_QUEUE:$JOB_QUEUE_NAME")

    # Wait for job queue to be ready
    wait_for_job_queue "$JOB_QUEUE_NAME"

    # Step 4: Create job definition
    log "Step 4: Creating job definition..."

    aws batch register-job-definition \
        --job-definition-name "$JOB_DEF_NAME" \
        --type container \
        --platform-capabilities FARGATE \
        --container-properties "{
            \"image\": \"busybox\",
```

```
            \"resourceRequirements\": [
                {\"type\": \"VCPU\", \"value\": \"0.25\"},
                {\"type\": \"MEMORY\", \"value\": \"512\"}
            ],
            \"command\": [\"echo\", \"hello world\"],
            \"networkConfiguration\": {
                \"assignPublicIp\": \"ENABLED\"
            },
            \"executionRoleArn\": \"arn:aws:iam::${ACCOUNT_ID}:role/
${ROLE_NAME}\"
        }"

    log "Job definition created: $JOB_DEF_NAME"

    # Step 5: Submit job
    log "Step 5: Submitting job..."

    JOB_ID=$(aws batch submit-job \
        --job-name "$JOB_NAME" \
        --job-queue "$JOB_QUEUE_NAME" \
        --job-definition "$JOB_DEF_NAME" \
        --query 'jobId' \
        --output text)

    log "Job submitted with ID: $JOB_ID"

    # Step 6: Wait for job completion and view output
    log "Step 6: Waiting for job completion..."
    wait_for_job "$JOB_ID"

    # Get log stream name
    log "Getting job logs..."
    LOG_STREAM=$(aws batch describe-jobs \
        --jobs "$JOB_ID" \
        --query 'jobs[0].attempts[0].taskProperties.containers[0].logStreamName'
 \
        --output text)

    if [ "$LOG_STREAM" != "None" ] && [ "$LOG_STREAM" != "null" ]; then
        log "Log stream: $LOG_STREAM"
        log "Job output:"
        aws logs get-log-events \
            --log-group-name "/aws/batch/job" \
            --log-stream-name "$LOG_STREAM" \
```

```
            --query 'events[*].message' \
            --output text | tee -a "$LOG_FILE"
    else
        log "No log stream available for job"
    fi

    log "Tutorial completed successfully!"

    # Show created resources
    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "CREATED RESOURCES"
    echo "============================================"
    echo "The following resources were created:"
    for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
        echo "  - $resource"
    done
    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
    echo "============================================"
    echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
    read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE

    if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
        cleanup_resources
        log "All resources have been cleaned up"
    else
        log "Resources left intact. You can clean them up manually later."
        echo "To clean up manually, run the following commands:"
        echo "aws batch update-job-queue --job-queue $JOB_QUEUE_NAME --state
 DISABLED"
        echo "aws batch delete-job-queue --job-queue $JOB_QUEUE_NAME"
        echo "aws batch update-compute-environment --compute-environment
 $COMPUTE_ENV_NAME --state DISABLED"
        echo "aws batch delete-compute-environment --compute-environment
 $COMPUTE_ENV_NAME"
        echo "aws iam detach-role-policy --role-name $ROLE_NAME --policy-arn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonECSTaskExecutionRolePolicy"
        echo "aws iam delete-role --role-name $ROLE_NAME"
    fi
}

# Run main function
```

```
main "$@"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateComputeEnvironment
  - CreateJobQueue
  - DeleteComputeEnvironment
  - DeleteJobQueue
  - DescribeComputeEnvironments
  - DescribeJobQueues
  - DescribeJobs
  - RegisterJobDefinition
  - SubmitJob
  - UpdateComputeEnvironment
  - UpdateJobQueue

Code examples for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Bedrock with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Bedrock User Guide** – More information about Amazon Bedrock.
- **Amazon Bedrock API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Bedrock actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Bedrock;
using Amazon.Bedrock.Model;

namespace BedrockActions;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to list foundation models.
/// </summary>
internal class HelloBedrock
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Main method to call the ListFoundationModelsAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args"> The command line arguments. </param>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Specify a region endpoint where Amazon Bedrock is available. For
 a list of supported region see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/
userguide/what-is-bedrock.html#bedrock-regions
        AmazonBedrockClient bedrockClient = new(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

        await ListFoundationModelsAsync(bedrockClient);

    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List foundation models.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient"> The Amazon Bedrock client. </param>
    private static async Task ListFoundationModelsAsync(AmazonBedrockClient
bedrockClient)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("List foundation models with no filter.");

        try
        {
            var response = await bedrockClient.ListFoundationModelsAsync(new
ListFoundationModelsRequest()
            {
            });

            if (response?.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                foreach (var fm in response.ModelSummaries)
                {
                    WriteToConsole(fm);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Something wrong happened");
            }
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockException e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Write the foundation model summary to console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="foundationModel"> The foundation model summary to write to
console. </param>
    private static void WriteToConsole(FoundationModelSummary foundationModel)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{foundationModel.ModelId}, Customization:
{string.Join(", ", foundationModel.CustomizationsSupported)}, Stream:
```

```
 {foundationModel.ResponseStreamingSupported}, Input: {string.Join(",
 ", foundationModel.InputModalities)}, Output: {string.Join(", ",
 foundationModel.OutputModalities)}");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock"
)

const region = "us-east-1"

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an Amazon Bedrock client and
// list the available foundation models in your account and the chosen region.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx, config.WithRegion(region))
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
```

```
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 bedrockClient := bedrock.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 result, err := bedrockClient.ListFoundationModels(ctx,
 &bedrock.ListFoundationModelsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list foundation models. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.ModelSummaries) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("There are no foundation models.")
 }
 for _, modelSummary := range result.ModelSummaries {
  fmt.Println(*modelSummary.ModelId)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  ListFoundationModelsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

const REGION = "us-east-1";
const client = new BedrockClient({ region: REGION });
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListFoundationModelsCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  const models = response.modelSummaries;

  console.log("Listing the available Bedrock foundation models:");

  for (const model of models) {
    console.log("=".repeat(42));
    console.log(` Model: ${model.modelId}`);
    console.log("-".repeat(42));
    console.log(` Name: ${model.modelName}`);
    console.log(` Provider: ${model.providerName}`);
    console.log(` Model ARN: ${model.modelArn}`);
    console.log(` Input modalities: ${model.inputModalities}`);
    console.log(` Output modalities: ${model.outputModalities}`);
    console.log(` Supported customizations: ${model.customizationsSupported}`);
    console.log(` Supported inference types: ${model.inferenceTypesSupported}`);
    console.log(` Lifecycle status: ${model.modelLifecycle.status}`);
    console.log(`${"=".repeat(42)}\n`);
  }

  const active = models.filter(
    (m) => m.modelLifecycle.status === "ACTIVE",
  ).length;
  const legacy = models.filter(
    (m) => m.modelLifecycle.status === "LEGACY",
  ).length;

  console.log(
    `There are ${active} active and ${legacy} legacy foundation models in
 ${REGION}.`,
  );

  return response;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Lists the available Amazon Bedrock models.
"""
import logging
import json
import boto3


from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def list_foundation_models(bedrock_client):
    """
    Gets a list of available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

    :return: The list of available bedrock foundation models.
    """

    try:
        response = bedrock_client.list_foundation_models()
        models = response["modelSummaries"]
        logger.info("Got %s foundation models.", len(models))
        return models
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.error("Couldn't list foundation models.")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock client. Then lists the available Bedrock models
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    bedrock_client = boto3.client(service_name="bedrock")

    fm_models = list_foundation_models(bedrock_client)
    for model in fm_models:
        print(f"Model: {model['modelName']}")
        print(json.dumps(model, indent=2))
        print("---------------------------\n")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
```

```
import Foundation

import AWSBedrock

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "ListFoundationModels",
        abstract: """
        This example demonstrates how to retrieve a list of the available
        foundation models from Amazon Bedrock.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Construct a string listing the specified modalities.
    ///
    /// - Parameter modalities: An array of the modalities to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string with a human-readable list of modalities.
    func buildModalityList(modalities: [BedrockClientTypes.ModelModality]?) ->
 String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if modalities == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for modality in modalities! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += modality.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Construct a string listing the specified customizations.
    ///
    /// - Parameter customizations: An array of the customizations to list.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: A string listing the customizations.
    func buildCustomizationList(customizations:
[BedrockClientTypes.ModelCustomization]?) -> String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if customizations == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for customization in customizations! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += customization.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Construct a string listing the specified inferences.
    ///
    /// - Parameter inferences: An array of inferences to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string listing the specified inferences.
    func buildInferenceList(inferences: [BedrockClientTypes.InferenceType]?) ->
String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if inferences == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for inference in inferences! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += inference.rawValue
        }

        return str
```

```
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        // Always use the Region "us-east-1" to have access to the most models.
        let config = try await BedrockClient.BedrockClientConfiguration(region:
 "us-east-1")
        let bedrockClient = BedrockClient(config: config)

        let output = try await bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(
            input: ListFoundationModelsInput()
        )

        guard let summaries = output.modelSummaries else {
            print("No models returned.")
            return
        }

        // Output a list of the models with their details.
        for summary in summaries {
            print("==========================================")
            print(" Model ID: \(summary.modelId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("------------------------------------------")
            print(" Name: \(summary.modelName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Provider: \(summary.providerName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Input modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.inputModalities))")
            print(" Output modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.outputModalities))")
            print(" Supported customizations:
 \(buildCustomizationList(customizations: summary.customizationsSupported ))")
            print(" Supported inference types: \(buildInferenceList(inferences:
 summary.inferenceTypesSupported))")
            print("------------------------------------------\n")
        }

        print("\(summaries.count) models available.")
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
```

```
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Bedrock
  - Actions for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs
    - Use GetFoundationModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListFoundationModels with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs
  - Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Bedrock with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Bedrock
- Actions for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs
  - Use GetFoundationModel with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListFoundationModels with an AWS SDK

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Bedrock;
using Amazon.Bedrock.Model;

namespace BedrockActions;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to list foundation models.
/// </summary>
internal class HelloBedrock
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Main method to call the ListFoundationModelsAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args"> The command line arguments. </param>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Specify a region endpoint where Amazon Bedrock is available. For
 a list of supported region see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/
userguide/what-is-bedrock.html#bedrock-regions
        AmazonBedrockClient bedrockClient = new(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

        await ListFoundationModelsAsync(bedrockClient);

    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List foundation models.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient"> The Amazon Bedrock client. </param>
```

```
   private static async Task ListFoundationModelsAsync(AmazonBedrockClient
bedrockClient)
   {
       Console.WriteLine("List foundation models with no filter.");

       try
       {
           var response = await bedrockClient.ListFoundationModelsAsync(new
ListFoundationModelsRequest()
           {
           });

           if (response?.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
           {
               foreach (var fm in response.ModelSummaries)
               {
                   WriteToConsole(fm);
               }
           }
           else
           {
               Console.WriteLine("Something wrong happened");
           }
       }
       catch (AmazonBedrockException e)
       {
           Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
       }
   }


   /// <summary>
   /// Write the foundation model summary to console.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="foundationModel"> The foundation model summary to write to
console. </param>
   private static void WriteToConsole(FoundationModelSummary foundationModel)
   {
       Console.WriteLine($"{foundationModel.ModelId}, Customization:
{string.Join(", ", foundationModel.CustomizationsSupported)}, Stream:
{foundationModel.ResponseStreamingSupported}, Input: {string.Join(",
", foundationModel.InputModalities)}, Output: {string.Join(", ",
foundationModel.OutputModalities)}");
   }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock"
)

const region = "us-east-1"

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an Amazon Bedrock client and
// list the available foundation models in your account and the chosen region.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx, config.WithRegion(region))
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 bedrockClient := bedrock.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
```

```
 result, err := bedrockClient.ListFoundationModels(ctx,
 &bedrock.ListFoundationModelsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list foundation models. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.ModelSummaries) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("There are no foundation models.")
 }
 for _, modelSummary := range result.ModelSummaries {
  fmt.Println(*modelSummary.ModelId)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  ListFoundationModelsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

const REGION = "us-east-1";
const client = new BedrockClient({ region: REGION });

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListFoundationModelsCommand({});
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);
  const models = response.modelSummaries;

  console.log("Listing the available Bedrock foundation models:");

  for (const model of models) {
    console.log("=".repeat(42));
    console.log(` Model: ${model.modelId}`);
    console.log("-".repeat(42));
    console.log(` Name: ${model.modelName}`);
    console.log(` Provider: ${model.providerName}`);
    console.log(` Model ARN: ${model.modelArn}`);
    console.log(` Input modalities: ${model.inputModalities}`);
    console.log(` Output modalities: ${model.outputModalities}`);
    console.log(` Supported customizations: ${model.customizationsSupported}`);
    console.log(` Supported inference types: ${model.inferenceTypesSupported}`);
    console.log(` Lifecycle status: ${model.modelLifecycle.status}`);
    console.log(`${"=".repeat(42)}\n`);
  }

  const active = models.filter(
    (m) => m.modelLifecycle.status === "ACTIVE",
  ).length;
  const legacy = models.filter(
    (m) => m.modelLifecycle.status === "LEGACY",
  ).length;

  console.log(
    `There are ${active} active and ${legacy} legacy foundation models in
 ${REGION}.`,
  );

  return response;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Lists the available Amazon Bedrock models.
"""
import logging
import json
import boto3


from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def list_foundation_models(bedrock_client):
    """
    Gets a list of available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

    :return: The list of available bedrock foundation models.
    """

    try:
        response = bedrock_client.list_foundation_models()
        models = response["modelSummaries"]
        logger.info("Got %s foundation models.", len(models))
        return models

    except ClientError:
        logger.error("Couldn't list foundation models.")
        raise
```

```
def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock client. Then lists the available Bedrock models
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    bedrock_client = boto3.client(service_name="bedrock")

    fm_models = list_foundation_models(bedrock_client)
    for model in fm_models:
        print(f"Model: {model['modelName']}")
        print(json.dumps(model, indent=2))
        print("---------------------------\n")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import Foundation

import AWSBedrock
```

```
struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "ListFoundationModels",
        abstract: """
        This example demonstrates how to retrieve a list of the available
        foundation models from Amazon Bedrock.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Construct a string listing the specified modalities.
    ///
    /// - Parameter modalities: An array of the modalities to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string with a human-readable list of modalities.
    func buildModalityList(modalities: [BedrockClientTypes.ModelModality]?) ->
 String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if modalities == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for modality in modalities! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += modality.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Construct a string listing the specified customizations.
    ///
    /// - Parameter customizations: An array of the customizations to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string listing the customizations.
    func buildCustomizationList(customizations:
 [BedrockClientTypes.ModelCustomization]?) -> String {
        var first = true
```

```
        var str = ""

        if customizations == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for customization in customizations! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += customization.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Construct a string listing the specified inferences.
    ///
    /// - Parameter inferences: An array of inferences to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string listing the specified inferences.
    func buildInferenceList(inferences: [BedrockClientTypes.InferenceType]?) ->
 String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if inferences == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for inference in inferences! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += inference.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
```

```
        // Always use the Region "us-east-1" to have access to the most models.
        let config = try await BedrockClient.BedrockClientConfiguration(region:
 "us-east-1")
        let bedrockClient = BedrockClient(config: config)

        let output = try await bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(
            input: ListFoundationModelsInput()
        )

        guard let summaries = output.modelSummaries else {
            print("No models returned.")
            return
        }

        // Output a list of the models with their details.
        for summary in summaries {
            print("==========================================")
            print(" Model ID: \(summary.modelId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("------------------------------------------")
            print(" Name: \(summary.modelName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Provider: \(summary.providerName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Input modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.inputModalities))")
            print(" Output modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.outputModalities))")
            print(" Supported customizations:
 \(buildCustomizationList(customizations: summary.customizationsSupported ))")
            print(" Supported inference types: \(buildInferenceList(inferences:
 summary.inferenceTypesSupported))")
            print("------------------------------------------\n")
        }

        print("\(summaries.count) models available.")
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
```

```
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Actions for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Bedrock actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Bedrock API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Bedrock API Reference.

Examples

- Use GetFoundationModel with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFoundationModels with an AWS SDK

Use `GetFoundationModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetFoundationModel`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get details about a foundation model using the synchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
   /**
    * Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.
    *
    * @param bedrockClient   The service client for accessing Amazon Bedrock.
    * @param modelIdentifier The model identifier.
    * @return An object containing the foundation model's details.
    */
   public static FoundationModelDetails getFoundationModel(BedrockClient
bedrockClient, String modelIdentifier) {
       try {
           GetFoundationModelResponse response =
bedrockClient.getFoundationModel(
                   r -> r.modelIdentifier(modelIdentifier)
           );

           FoundationModelDetails model = response.modelDetails();

           System.out.println(" Model ID:                     " +
model.modelId());
           System.out.println(" Model ARN:                    " +
model.modelArn());
           System.out.println(" Model Name:                   " +
model.modelName());
           System.out.println(" Provider Name:                " +
model.providerName());
           System.out.println(" Lifecycle status:             " +
model.modelLifecycle().statusAsString());
           System.out.println(" Input modalities:             " +
model.inputModalities());
           System.out.println(" Output modalities:            " +
model.outputModalities());
           System.out.println(" Supported customizations:     " +
model.customizationsSupported());
           System.out.println(" Supported inference types:    " +
model.inferenceTypesSupported());
           System.out.println(" Response streaming supported: " +
model.responseStreamingSupported());

           return model;

       } catch (ValidationException e) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException(e.getMessage());
```

```
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

Get details about a foundation model using the asynchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient   The async service client for accessing Amazon
Bedrock.
     * @param modelIdentifier The model identifier.
     * @return An object containing the foundation model's details.
     */
    public static FoundationModelDetails getFoundationModel(BedrockAsyncClient
bedrockClient, String modelIdentifier) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<GetFoundationModelResponse> future =
bedrockClient.getFoundationModel(
                    r -> r.modelIdentifier(modelIdentifier)
            );

            FoundationModelDetails model = future.get().modelDetails();

            System.out.println(" Model ID:                      " +
model.modelId());
            System.out.println(" Model ARN:                     " +
model.modelArn());
            System.out.println(" Model Name:                    " +
model.modelName());
            System.out.println(" Provider Name:                 " +
model.providerName());
            System.out.println(" Lifecycle status:              " +
model.modelLifecycle().statusAsString());
            System.out.println(" Input modalities:              " +
model.inputModalities());
            System.out.println(" Output modalities:             " +
model.outputModalities());
            System.out.println(" Supported customizations:      " +
model.customizationsSupported());
```

```
            System.out.println(" Supported inference types:    " +
 model.inferenceTypesSupported());
            System.out.println(" Response streaming supported: " +
 model.responseStreamingSupported());

            return model;

        } catch (ExecutionException e) {
            if (e.getMessage().contains("ValidationException")) {
                throw new IllegalArgumentException(e.getMessage());
            } else {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFoundationModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get details about a foundation model.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  GetFoundationModelCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

/**
 * Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.
 *
 * @return {FoundationModelDetails} - The list of available bedrock foundation
 models.
 */
export const getFoundationModel = async () => {
  const client = new BedrockClient();

  const command = new GetFoundationModelCommand({
    modelIdentifier: "amazon.titan-embed-text-v1",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);

  return response.modelDetails;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const model = await getFoundationModel();
  console.log(model);
}
```

- For API details, see GetFoundationModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get details about a foundation model.

```
    def get_foundation_model(self, model_identifier):
```

```
        """
        Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.

        :return: The foundation model's details.
        """

        try:
            return self.bedrock_client.get_foundation_model(
                modelIdentifier=model_identifier
            )["modelDetails"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't get foundation models details for {model_identifier}"
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetFoundationModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListFoundationModels` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Bedrock foundation models.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List foundation models.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient"> The Amazon Bedrock client. </param>
```

```
    private static async Task ListFoundationModelsAsync(AmazonBedrockClient
bedrockClient)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("List foundation models with no filter.");

        try
        {
            var response = await bedrockClient.ListFoundationModelsAsync(new
ListFoundationModelsRequest()
            {
            });

            if (response?.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                foreach (var fm in response.ModelSummaries)
                {
                    WriteToConsole(fm);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Something wrong happened");
            }
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockException e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Bedrock foundation models.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock/types"
)

// FoundationModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a Bedrock service client that is used to perform foundation model
 actions.
type FoundationModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockClient *bedrock.Client
}



// ListPolicies lists Bedrock foundation models that you can use.
func (wrapper FoundationModelWrapper) ListFoundationModels(ctx context.Context)
 ([]types.FoundationModelSummary, error) {

 var models []types.FoundationModelSummary

 result, err := wrapper.BedrockClient.ListFoundationModels(ctx,
 &bedrock.ListFoundationModelsInput{})

 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list foundation models. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  models = result.ModelSummaries
 }
 return models, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models using the synchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Lists Amazon Bedrock foundation models that you can use.
     * You can filter the results with the request parameters.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient The service client for accessing Amazon Bedrock.
     * @return A list of objects containing the foundation models' details
     */
    public static List<FoundationModelSummary> listFoundationModels(BedrockClient
bedrockClient) {

        try {
            ListFoundationModelsResponse response =
bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(r -> {});

            List<FoundationModelSummary> models = response.modelSummaries();

            if (models.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No available foundation models in " +
region.toString());
            } else {
                for (FoundationModelSummary model : models) {
                    System.out.println("Model ID: " + model.modelId());
                    System.out.println("Provider: " + model.providerName());
                    System.out.println("Name:     " + model.modelName());
                    System.out.println();
                }
            }

            return models;
```

```
        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models using the asynchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Lists Amazon Bedrock foundation models that you can use.
     * You can filter the results with the request parameters.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient The async service client for accessing Amazon
 Bedrock.
     * @return A list of objects containing the foundation models' details
     */
    public static List<FoundationModelSummary>
 listFoundationModels(BedrockAsyncClient bedrockClient) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ListFoundationModelsResponse> future =
 bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(r -> {});

            List<FoundationModelSummary> models = future.get().modelSummaries();

            if (models.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No available foundation models in " +
 region.toString());
            } else {
                for (FoundationModelSummary model : models) {
                    System.out.println("Model ID: " + model.modelId());
                    System.out.println("Provider: " + model.providerName());
                    System.out.println("Name:     " + model.modelName());
                    System.out.println();
                }
            }

            return models;

        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
```

```
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        } catch (ExecutionException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available foundation models.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  ListFoundationModelsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

/**
 * List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.
 *
 * @return {FoundationModelSummary[]} - The list of available bedrock foundation
 models.
 */
export const listFoundationModels = async () => {
  const client = new BedrockClient();

  const input = {
    // byProvider: 'STRING_VALUE',
```

```
    // byCustomizationType: 'FINE_TUNING' || 'CONTINUED_PRE_TRAINING',
    // byOutputModality: 'TEXT' || 'IMAGE' || 'EMBEDDING',
    // byInferenceType: 'ON_DEMAND' || 'PROVISIONED',
  };

  const command = new ListFoundationModelsCommand(input);

  const response = await client.send(command);

  return response.modelSummaries;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const models = await listFoundationModels();
  console.log(models);
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

```
suspend fun listFoundationModels(): List<FoundationModelSummary>? {
    BedrockClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { bedrockClient ->
        val response =
 bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(ListFoundationModelsRequest {})
        response.modelSummaries?.forEach { model ->
            println("==========================================")
            println(" Model ID: ${model.modelId}")
            println("------------------------------------------")
            println(" Name: ${model.modelName}")
```

```
            println(" Provider: ${model.providerName}")
            println(" Input modalities: ${model.inputModalities}")
            println(" Output modalities: ${model.outputModalities}")
            println(" Supported customizations:
 ${model.customizationsSupported}")
            println(" Supported inference types:
 ${model.inferenceTypesSupported}")
            println("----------------------------------------\n")
        }
        return response.modelSummaries
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

```
    public function listFoundationModels()
    {
        $bedrockClient = new BedrockClient([
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'profile' => 'default'
        ]);
        $response = $bedrockClient->listFoundationModels();
        return $response['modelSummaries'];
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

```
    def list_foundation_models(self):
        """
        List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

        :return: The list of available bedrock foundation models.
        """

        try:
            response = self.bedrock_client.list_foundation_models()
            models = response["modelSummaries"]
            logger.info("Got %s foundation models.", len(models))
            return models

        except ClientError:
            logger.error("Couldn't list foundation models.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSBedrock

        // Always use the Region "us-east-1" to have access to the most models.
        let config = try await BedrockClient.BedrockClientConfiguration(region:
 "us-east-1")
        let bedrockClient = BedrockClient(config: config)

        let output = try await bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(
            input: ListFoundationModelsInput()
        )

        guard let summaries = output.modelSummaries else {
            print("No models returned.")
            return
        }

        // Output a list of the models with their details.
        for summary in summaries {
            print("==========================================")
            print(" Model ID: \(summary.modelId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("------------------------------------------")
            print(" Name: \(summary.modelName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Provider: \(summary.providerName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Input modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.inputModalities))")
            print(" Output modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.outputModalities))")
            print(" Supported customizations:
 \(buildCustomizationList(customizations: summary.customizationsSupported ))")
            print(" Supported inference types: \(buildInferenceList(inferences:
 summary.inferenceTypesSupported))")
            print("------------------------------------------\n")
```

```
        }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Bedrock with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Bedrock or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.

- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Code examples for Amazon Bedrock Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Bedrock Runtime User Guide** – More information about Amazon Bedrock Runtime.
- **Amazon Bedrock Runtime API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Bedrock Runtime actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "flag"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// Each model provider defines their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for the different models, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters.html

type ClaudeRequest struct {
 Prompt            string `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int    `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 // Omitting optional request parameters
}
```

```
type ClaudeResponse struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client
// and invokes Anthropic Claude 2 inside your account and the chosen region.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {

 region := flag.String("region", "us-east-1", "The AWS region")
 flag.Parse()

 fmt.Printf("Using AWS region: %s\n", *region)

 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx, config.WithRegion(*region))
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }

 client := bedrockruntime.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"

 prompt := "Hello, how are you today?"

 // Anthropic Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
 prefix := "Human: "
 postfix := "\n\nAssistant:"
 wrappedPrompt := prefix + prompt + postfix

 request := ClaudeRequest{
  Prompt:            wrappedPrompt,
  MaxTokensToSample: 200,
 }

 body, err := json.Marshal(request)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln("Couldn't marshal the request: ", err)
 }
```

```
 result, err := client.InvokeModel(ctx, &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  errMsg := err.Error()
  if strings.Contains(errMsg, "no such host") {
   fmt.Printf("Error: The Bedrock service is not available in the selected
 region. Please double-check the service availability for your region at https://
aws.amazon.com/about-aws/global-infrastructure/regional-product-services/.\n")
  } else if strings.Contains(errMsg, "Could not resolve the foundation model") {
   fmt.Printf("Error: Could not resolve the foundation model from model
 identifier: \"%v\". Please verify that the requested model exists and is
 accessible within the specified region.\n", modelId)
  } else {
   fmt.Printf("Error: Couldn't invoke Anthropic Claude. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  os.Exit(1)
 }

 var response ClaudeResponse

 err = json.Unmarshal(result.Body, &response)

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }
 fmt.Println("Prompt:\n", prompt)
 fmt.Println("Response from Anthropic Claude:\n", response.Completion)
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Content
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Usage
 * @property {number} input_tokens
 * @property {number} output_tokens
 *
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Content[]} content
 * @property {Usage} usage
 */

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

const AWS_REGION = "us-east-1";

const MODEL_ID = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const PROMPT = "Hi. In a short paragraph, explain what you can do.";

const hello = async () => {
  console.log("=".repeat(35));
  console.log("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock demo!");
  console.log("=".repeat(35));

  console.log("Model: Anthropic Claude 3 Haiku");
  console.log(`Prompt: ${PROMPT}\n`);
```

```
  console.log("Invoking model...\n");

  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: AWS_REGION });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [{ role: "user", content: [{ type: "text", text: PROMPT }] }],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const apiResponse = await client.send(
    new InvokeModelCommand({
      contentType: "application/json",
      body: JSON.stringify(payload),
      modelId: MODEL_ID,
    }),
  );

  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  const responses = responseBody.content;

  if (responses.length === 1) {
    console.log(`Response: ${responses[0].text}`);
  } else {
    console.log("Haiku returned multiple responses:");
    console.log(responses);
  }

  console.log(`\nNumber of input tokens:   ${responseBody.usage.input_tokens}`);
  console.log(`Number of output tokens: ${responseBody.usage.output_tokens}`);
};

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await hello();
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a prompt to a model with the InvokeModel operation.

```
"""
Uses the Amazon Bedrock runtime client InvokeModel operation to send a prompt to
 a model.
"""
import logging
import json
import boto3


from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def invoke_model(brt, model_id, prompt):
    """
    Invokes the specified model with the supplied prompt.
    param brt: A bedrock runtime boto3 client
    param model_id: The model ID for the model that you want to use.
    param prompt: The prompt that you want to send to the model.

    :return: The text response from the model.
    """

    # Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    native_request = {
        "inputText": prompt,
        "textGenerationConfig": {
```

```
            "maxTokenCount": 512,
            "temperature": 0.5,
            "topP": 0.9
        }
    }

    # Convert the native request to JSON.
    request = json.dumps(native_request)

    try:
        # Invoke the model with the request.
        response = brt.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

        # Decode the response body.
        model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

        # Extract and print the response text.
        response_text = model_response["results"][0]["outputText"]
        return response_text

    except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
        print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock runtime client. Then sends a prompt to a model
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    # Create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
    brt = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime")

    # Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Titan Text G1 - Express.
    model_id = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

    # Define the prompt for the model.
    prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

    # Send the prompt to the model.
    response = invoke_model(brt, model_id, prompt)

    print(f"Response: {response}")
```

```
    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send a user message to a model with the Converse operation.

```
"""
Uses the Amazon Bedrock runtime client Converse operation to send a user message
 to a model.
"""
import logging
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def converse(brt, model_id, user_message):
    """
    Uses the Converse operation to send a user message to the supplied model.
    param brt: A bedrock runtime boto3 client
    param model_id: The model ID for the model that you want to use.
    param user message: The user message that you want to send to the model.

    :return: The text response from the model.
    """

    # Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]
```

```
    try:
        # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
        response = brt.converse(
            modelId=model_id,
            messages=conversation,
            inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
        )

        # Extract and print the response text.
        response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
        return response_text

    except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
        print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock runtime client. Then sends a user message to a
 model
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    # Create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
    brt = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime")

    # Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Titan Text G1 - Express.
    model_id = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

    # Define the message for the model.
    message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

    # Send the message to the model.
    response = converse(brt, model_id, message)

    print(f"Response: {response}")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Bedrock
- Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - Create a sample application that offers playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models using an AWS SDK
  - An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock managed prompts using an AWS SDK
  - Generate videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and Nova-Reel
  - Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock
  - Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions
  - A tool use example illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API
- Amazon Nova for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
  - Invoke Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
  - Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock
  - A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API
- Amazon Nova Canvas for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image
- Amazon Nova Reel for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt
- Amazon Titan Image Generator for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image
- Amazon Titan Text for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Amazon Titan Text on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

- Invoke Amazon Titan Text on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Invoke Amazon Titan Text models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
- Invoke Amazon Titan Text models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

- Amazon Titan Text Embeddings for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Amazon Titan Text Embeddings on Amazon Bedrock
- Anthropic Claude for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
  - Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
  - Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock
  - Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
  - Invoke Anthropic Claude models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
  - Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock
  - Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock
  - A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API
- Cohere Command for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
  - Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
  - Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock
  - Invoke Cohere Command R and R+ on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
  - Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
  - Invoke Cohere Command R and R+ on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
  - Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
  - A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

- DeepSeek for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock
- Meta Llama for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
  - Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
  - Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock
  - Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
  - Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
- Mistral AI for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Mistral on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
  - Invoke Mistral on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
  - Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock
  - Invoke Mistral AI models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
  - Invoke Mistral AI models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
- Stable Diffusion for Amazon Bedrock Runtime
  - Invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Bedrock

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "flag"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// Each model provider defines their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for the different models, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters.html

type ClaudeRequest struct {
 Prompt            string `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int    `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 // Omitting optional request parameters
}

type ClaudeResponse struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client
```

```
// and invokes Anthropic Claude 2 inside your account and the chosen region.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {

 region := flag.String("region", "us-east-1", "The AWS region")
 flag.Parse()

 fmt.Printf("Using AWS region: %s\n", *region)

 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx, config.WithRegion(*region))
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }

 client := bedrockruntime.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"

 prompt := "Hello, how are you today?"

 // Anthropic Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
 prefix := "Human: "
 postfix := "\n\nAssistant:"
 wrappedPrompt := prefix + prompt + postfix

 request := ClaudeRequest{
  Prompt:            wrappedPrompt,
  MaxTokensToSample: 200,
 }

 body, err := json.Marshal(request)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln("Couldn't marshal the request: ", err)
 }

 result, err := client.InvokeModel(ctx, &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
```

```
 })

 if err != nil {
  errMsg := err.Error()
  if strings.Contains(errMsg, "no such host") {
   fmt.Printf("Error: The Bedrock service is not available in the selected
 region. Please double-check the service availability for your region at https://
aws.amazon.com/about-aws/global-infrastructure/regional-product-services/.\n")
  } else if strings.Contains(errMsg, "Could not resolve the foundation model") {
   fmt.Printf("Error: Could not resolve the foundation model from model
 identifier: \"%v\". Please verify that the requested model exists and is
 accessible within the specified region.\n", modelId)
  } else {
   fmt.Printf("Error: Couldn't invoke Anthropic Claude. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  os.Exit(1)
 }

 var response ClaudeResponse

 err = json.Unmarshal(result.Body, &response)

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }
 fmt.Println("Prompt:\n", prompt)
 fmt.Println("Response from Anthropic Claude:\n", response.Completion)
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Content
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Usage
 * @property {number} input_tokens
 * @property {number} output_tokens
 *
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Content[]} content
 * @property {Usage} usage
 */

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

const AWS_REGION = "us-east-1";

const MODEL_ID = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const PROMPT = "Hi. In a short paragraph, explain what you can do.";

const hello = async () => {
  console.log("=".repeat(35));
  console.log("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock demo!");
  console.log("=".repeat(35));

  console.log("Model: Anthropic Claude 3 Haiku");
  console.log(`Prompt: ${PROMPT}\n`);
  console.log("Invoking model...\n");

  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: AWS_REGION });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [{ role: "user", content: [{ type: "text", text: PROMPT }] }],
  };
```

```
  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const apiResponse = await client.send(
    new InvokeModelCommand({
      contentType: "application/json",
      body: JSON.stringify(payload),
      modelId: MODEL_ID,
    }),
  );

  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  const responses = responseBody.content;

  if (responses.length === 1) {
    console.log(`Response: ${responses[0].text}`);
  } else {
    console.log("Haiku returned multiple responses:");
    console.log(responses);
  }

  console.log(`\nNumber of input tokens:   ${responseBody.usage.input_tokens}`);
  console.log(`Number of output tokens: ${responseBody.usage.output_tokens}`);
};

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await hello();
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a prompt to a model with the InvokeModel operation.

```
"""
Uses the Amazon Bedrock runtime client InvokeModel operation to send a prompt to
 a model.
"""
import logging
import json
import boto3


from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def invoke_model(brt, model_id, prompt):
    """
    Invokes the specified model with the supplied prompt.
    param brt: A bedrock runtime boto3 client
    param model_id: The model ID for the model that you want to use.
    param prompt: The prompt that you want to send to the model.

    :return: The text response from the model.
    """

    # Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    native_request = {
        "inputText": prompt,
        "textGenerationConfig": {
            "maxTokenCount": 512,
            "temperature": 0.5,
            "topP": 0.9
        }
    }

    # Convert the native request to JSON.
    request = json.dumps(native_request)

    try:
        # Invoke the model with the request.
```

```
        response = brt.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

        # Decode the response body.
        model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

        # Extract and print the response text.
        response_text = model_response["results"][0]["outputText"]
        return response_text

    except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
        print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock runtime client. Then sends a prompt to a model
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    # Create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
    brt = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime")

    # Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Titan Text G1 - Express.
    model_id = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

    # Define the prompt for the model.
    prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

    # Send the prompt to the model.
    response = invoke_model(brt, model_id, prompt)

    print(f"Response: {response}")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send a user message to a model with the Converse operation.

```
"""
Uses the Amazon Bedrock runtime client Converse operation to send a user message
 to a model.
"""
import logging
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def converse(brt, model_id, user_message):
    """
    Uses the Converse operation to send a user message to the supplied model.
    param brt: A bedrock runtime boto3 client
    param model_id: The model ID for the model that you want to use.
    param user message: The user message that you want to send to the model.

    :return: The text response from the model.
    """

    # Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

    try:
        # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
        response = brt.converse(
            modelId=model_id,
            messages=conversation,
            inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
        )

        # Extract and print the response text.
        response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
```

```
        return response_text

    except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
        print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock runtime client. Then sends a user message to a
 model
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    # Create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
    brt = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime")

    # Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Titan Text G1 - Express.
    model_id = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

    # Define the message for the model.
    message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

    # Send the message to the model.
    response = converse(brt, model_id, message)

    print(f"Response: {response}")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling

multiple functions within Amazon Bedrock Runtime or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a sample application that offers playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models using an AWS SDK
- An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock managed prompts using an AWS SDK
- Generate videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and Nova-Reel
- Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock
- Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions
- A tool use example illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

Create a sample application that offers playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models through different modalities.

.NET

SDK for .NET

.NET Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a .NET MAUI Blazor sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock from C# code. This example shows how .NET and C# developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following four playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- A voice chat playground.

- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to and their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

The Java Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a Spring Boot sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock with Java. This example shows how Java developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following three playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to, along with their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Python Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a Python/FastAPI sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock with Python. This example shows how Python developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following three playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to, along with their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock managed prompts using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a managed prompt.
- Create a version of the prompt.
- Invoke the prompt using the version.
- Clean up resources (optional).

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and invoke a managed prompt.

```
import argparse
import boto3
import logging
import time

# Now import the modules
from prompt import create_prompt, create_prompt_version, delete_prompt
from run_prompt import invoke_prompt

logging.basicConfig(
```

```
    level=logging.INFO,
    format='%(levelname)s: %(message)s'
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)



def run_scenario(bedrock_client, bedrock_runtime_client, model_id, cleanup=True):
    """
    Runs the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.

    Args:
        bedrock_client: The Amazon Bedrock Agent client.
        bedrock_runtime_client: The Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
        model_id (str): The model ID to use for the prompt.
        cleanup (bool): Whether to clean up resources at the end of the scenario.

    Returns:
        dict: A dictionary containing the created resources.
    """
    prompt_id = None

    try:
        # Step 1: Create a prompt
        print("\n=== Step 1: Creating a prompt ===")
        prompt_name = f"PlaylistGenerator-{int(time.time())}"
        prompt_description = "Playlist generator"
        prompt_template = """
          Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting of the following number of
 songs: {{number}}."""

        create_response = create_prompt(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_name,
            prompt_description,
            prompt_template,
            model_id
        )

        prompt_id = create_response['id']
        print(f"Created prompt: {prompt_name} with ID: {prompt_id}")

        # Create a version of the prompt
        print("\n=== Creating a version of the prompt ===")
```

```
        version_response = create_prompt_version(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_id,
            description="Initial version of the product description generator"
        )

        prompt_version_arn = version_response['arn']
        prompt_version = version_response['version']

        print(f"Created prompt version: {prompt_version}")
        print(f"Prompt version ARN: {prompt_version_arn}")

        # Step 2: Invoke the prompt directly
        print("\n=== Step 2: Invoking the prompt ===")
        input_variables = {
            "genre": "pop",
            "number": "2",
           }

        # Use the ARN from the create_prompt_version response
        result = invoke_prompt(
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            prompt_version_arn,
            input_variables
        )
        # Display the playlist
        print(f"\n{result}")


        # Step 3: Clean up resources (optional)
        if cleanup:
            print("\n=== Step 3: Cleaning up resources ===")

            # Delete the prompt
            print(f"Deleting prompt {prompt_id}...")
            delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)

            print("Cleanup complete")
        else:
            print("\n=== Resources were not cleaned up ===")
            print(f"Prompt ID: {prompt_id}")
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error in scenario: %s", str(e))

        # Attempt to clean up if an error occurred and cleanup was requested
        if cleanup and prompt_id:
            try:
                print("\nCleaning up resources after error...")

                # Delete the prompt
                try:
                    delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)
                    print("Cleanup after error complete")
                except Exception as cleanup_error:
                    logger.error("Error during cleanup: %s", str(cleanup_error))
            except Exception as final_error:
                logger.error("Final error during cleanup: %s", str(final_error))

        # Re-raise the original exception
        raise

def main():
    """
    Entry point for the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Run the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--region',
        default='us-east-1',
        help="The AWS Region to use."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--model-id',
        default='anthropic.claude-v2',
        help="The model ID to use for the prompt."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--cleanup',
        action='store_true',
        default=True,
        help="Clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
```

```
        '--no-cleanup',
        action='store_false',
        dest='cleanup',
        help="Don't clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    bedrock_client = boto3.client('bedrock-agent', region_name=args.region)
    bedrock_runtime_client = boto3.client('bedrock-runtime',
 region_name=args.region)

    print("=== Amazon Bedrock Managed Prompt Scenario ===")
    print(f"Region: {args.region}")
    print(f"Model ID: {args.model_id}")
    print(f"Cleanup resources: {args.cleanup}")

    try:
        run_scenario(
            bedrock_client,
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            args.model_id,
            args.cleanup
        )

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error running scenario: %s", str(e))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Converse
  - CreatePrompt
  - CreatePromptVersion
  - DeletePrompt

Generate videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and Nova-Reel

The following code example shows how to a Spring Boot app that generates videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and the Nova-Reel model.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and Nova-Reel.

```
import org.springframework.stereotype.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

@Service
public class VideoGenerationService {

    public GenerateVideoResponse generateVideo(String prompt) {

        // add S3 bucket you want to store your generated videos
        String s3Bucket = "s3://mygeneratedvidoenovatest";


        //Create json request as an instance of Document class
        Document novaRequest = prepareDocument(prompt);

        // Create request
        StartAsyncInvokeRequest request = StartAsyncInvokeRequest.builder()
                .modelId("amazon.nova-reel-v1:0")
                .modelInput(novaRequest)
```

```
                .outputDataConfig(AsyncInvokeOutputDataConfig.builder()

.s3OutputDataConfig(AsyncInvokeS3OutputDataConfig.builder().s3Uri(s3Bucket).build())
                        .build())
                .build();

        try (BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient bedrockClient =
getBedrockRuntimeAsyncClient()) {
            CompletableFuture<StartAsyncInvokeResponse>
startAsyncInvokeResponseCompletableFuture =
bedrockClient.startAsyncInvoke(request);

            //blocking operation to wait for the AWS API response
            StartAsyncInvokeResponse startAsyncInvokeResponse =
startAsyncInvokeResponseCompletableFuture.get();
            System.out.println("invocation ARN: " +
startAsyncInvokeResponse.invocationArn());

            GenerateVideoResponse response = new GenerateVideoResponse();
            response.setStatus("inProgress");
            response.setExecutionArn(startAsyncInvokeResponse.invocationArn());

            return response;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.out.println(e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

    }

    public GenerateVideoResponse checkGenerationStatus(String invocationArn) {
        GenerateVideoResponse response = new GenerateVideoResponse();

        try (BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient bedrockClient =
getBedrockRuntimeAsyncClient()) {
            //creating async request to fetch status by invocation Arn
            GetAsyncInvokeRequest asyncRequest =
GetAsyncInvokeRequest.builder().invocationArn(invocationArn).build();

            CompletableFuture<GetAsyncInvokeResponse> asyncInvoke =
bedrockClient.getAsyncInvoke(asyncRequest);

            //blocking operation to wait for the AWS API response
            GetAsyncInvokeResponse asyncInvokeResponse = asyncInvoke.get();
```

```
            System.out.println("Invocation status =" +
 asyncInvokeResponse.statusAsString());

            response.setExecutionArn(invocationArn);
            response.setStatus(asyncInvokeResponse.statusAsString());
            return response;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

    }

    private static BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient getBedrockRuntimeAsyncClient() {
        BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient bedrockClient =
 BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
        return bedrockClient;
    }

    private static Document prepareDocument(String prompt) {
        Document textToVideoParams = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putString("text", prompt)
                .build();

        Document videoGenerationConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putNumber("durationSeconds", 6)
                .putNumber("fps", 24)
                .putString("dimension", "1280x720")
                .build();

        Document novaRequest = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putString("taskType", "TEXT_VIDEO")
                .putDocument("textToVideoParams", textToVideoParams)
                .putDocument("videoGenerationConfig", videoGenerationConfig)
                .build();
        return novaRequest;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- GetAsyncInvoke
- StartAsyncInvoke

Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to prepare and send a prompt to a variety of large-language models (LLMs) on Amazon Bedrock

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/base64"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "math/rand"
 "os"
 "path/filepath"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/bedrock-runtime/actions"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// InvokeModelsScenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon Bedrock Runtime client
// to invoke various foundation models for text and image generation
//
// 1. Generate text with Anthropic Claude 2
```

```
// 2. Generate text with AI21 Labs Jurassic-2
// 3. Generate text with Meta Llama 2 Chat
// 4. Generate text and asynchronously process the response stream with Anthropic
 Claude 2
// 5. Generate an image with the Amazon Titan image generation model
// 6. Generate text with Amazon Titan Text G1 Express model
type InvokeModelsScenario struct {
 sdkConfig             aws.Config
 invokeModelWrapper    actions.InvokeModelWrapper
 responseStreamWrapper actions.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper
 questioner            demotools.IQuestioner
}

// NewInvokeModelsScenario constructs an InvokeModelsScenario instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get a Bedrock Runtime client and create
 wrappers for the
// actions used in the scenario.
func NewInvokeModelsScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) InvokeModelsScenario {
 client := bedrockruntime.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return InvokeModelsScenario{
  sdkConfig:             sdkConfig,
  invokeModelWrapper:    actions.InvokeModelWrapper{BedrockRuntimeClient:
 client},
  responseStreamWrapper:
 actions.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper{BedrockRuntimeClient: client},
  questioner:            questioner,
 }
}

// Runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo: %v\n", r)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Runtime model invocation demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
```

```
 log.Printf("First, let's invoke a few large-language models using the
 synchronous client:\n\n")

 text2textPrompt := "In one paragraph, who are you?"

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Claude with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeClaude(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Jurassic-2 with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeJurassic2(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Printf("Now, let's invoke Claude with the asynchronous client and process
 the response stream:\n\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Claude with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeWithResponseStream(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Printf("Now, let's create an image with the Amazon Titan image generation
 model:\n\n")

 text2ImagePrompt := "stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot"
 seed := rand.Int63n(2147483648)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Amazon Titan with prompt: %v\n", text2ImagePrompt)
 scenario.InvokeTitanImage(ctx, text2ImagePrompt, seed)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Titan Text Express with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeTitanText(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeClaude(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) {
 completion, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeClaude(ctx, prompt)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nClaude     : %v\n", strings.TrimSpace(completion))
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeJurassic2(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) {
 completion, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeJurassic2(ctx, prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nJurassic-2 : %v\n", strings.TrimSpace(completion))
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeWithResponseStream(ctx
 context.Context, prompt string) {
 log.Println("\nClaude with response stream:")
 _, err := scenario.responseStreamWrapper.InvokeModelWithResponseStream(ctx,
 prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println()
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeTitanImage(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string, seed int64) {
 base64ImageData, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeTitanImage(ctx,
 prompt, seed)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 imagePath := saveImage(base64ImageData, "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1")
 fmt.Printf("The generated image has been saved to %s\n", imagePath)
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeTitanText(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) {
 completion, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeTitanText(ctx, prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nTitan Text Express    : %v\n\n", strings.TrimSpace(completion))
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - InvokeModel
  - InvokeModelWithResponseStream

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { FoundationModels } from "../config/foundation_models.js";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ModelConfig
 * @property {Function} module
 * @property {Function} invoker
 * @property {string} modelId
 * @property {string} modelName
 */

const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Runtime client demo!",
  { header: true },
);
```

```
const selectModel = new ScenarioInput("model", "First, select a model:", {
  type: "select",
  choices: Object.values(FoundationModels).map((model) => ({
    name: model.modelName,
    value: model,
  })),
});

const enterPrompt = new ScenarioInput("prompt", "Now, enter your prompt:", {
  type: "input",
});

const printDetails = new ScenarioOutput(
  "print details",
  /**
   * @param {{ model: ModelConfig, prompt: string }} c
   */
  (c) => console.log(`Invoking ${c.model.modelName} with '${c.prompt}'...`),
);

const invokeModel = new ScenarioAction(
  "invoke model",
  /**
   * @param {{ model: ModelConfig, prompt: string, response: string }} c
   */
  async (c) => {
    const modelModule = await c.model.module();
    const invoker = c.model.invoker(modelModule);
    c.response = await invoker(c.prompt, c.model.modelId);
  },
);

const printResponse = new ScenarioOutput(
  "print response",
  /**
   * @param {{ response: string }} c
   */
  (c) => c.response,
);

const scenario = new Scenario("Amazon Bedrock Runtime Demo", [
  greeting,
  selectModel,
```

```
  enterPrompt,
  printDetails,
  invokeModel,
  printResponse,
]);

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  scenario.run();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - InvokeModel
  - InvokeModelWithResponseStream

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke multiple LLMs on Amazon Bedrock.

```
namespace BedrockRuntime;

class GettingStartedWithBedrockRuntime
{
    protected BedrockRuntimeService $bedrockRuntimeService;
    public function runExample()
    {
        echo "\n";
        echo
 "---------------------------------------------------------------------\n";
        echo "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Runtime getting started demo using
 PHP!\n";
        echo
 "---------------------------------------------------------------------\n";
```

```
        $bedrockRuntimeService = new BedrockRuntimeService();
        $prompt = 'In one paragraph, who are you?';
        echo "\nPrompt: " . $prompt;
        echo "\n\nAnthropic Claude:\n";
        echo $bedrockRuntimeService->invokeClaude($prompt);
        echo
 "\n----------------------------------------------------------------------\n";
        $image_prompt = 'stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot';
        echo "\nImage prompt: " . $image_prompt;
        echo "\n\nStability.ai Stable Diffusion XL:\n";
        $diffusionSeed = rand(0, 4294967295);
        $style_preset = 'photographic';
        $base64 = $bedrockRuntimeService->invokeStableDiffusion($image_prompt,
 $diffusionSeed, $style_preset);
        $image_path = $this->saveImage($base64, 'stability.stable-diffusion-xl');
        echo "The generated image has been saved to $image_path";
        echo "\n\nAmazon Titan Image Generation:\n";
        $titanSeed = rand(0, 2147483647);
        $base64 = $bedrockRuntimeService->invokeTitanImage($image_prompt,
 $titanSeed);
        $image_path = $this->saveImage($base64, 'amazon.titan-image-generator-
v1');
        echo "The generated image has been saved to $image_path";
    }

    private function saveImage($base64_image_data, $model_id): string
    {
        $output_dir = "output";
        if (!file_exists($output_dir)) {
            mkdir($output_dir);
        }

        $i = 1;
        while (file_exists("$output_dir/$model_id" . '_' . "$i.png")) {
            $i++;
        }

        $image_data = base64_decode($base64_image_data);
        $file_path = "$output_dir/$model_id" . '_' . "$i.png";
        $file = fopen($file_path, 'wb');
        fwrite($file, $image_data);
        fclose($file);
        return $file_path;
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - InvokeModel
  - InvokeModelWithResponseStream

Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

A tool use example illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

The following code examples show how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.Extensions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Http;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
```

```
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

public static class ConverseToolScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
    The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
    input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve
 current weather data for a given location.
   */

    public static BedrockActionsWrapper _bedrockActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static WeatherTool _weatherTool = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;

    // Change this string to use a different model with Converse API.
    private static string model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

    private static string system_prompt = @"
        You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
        the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
        If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.
        If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and
 refer to it in your response.
        To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

        - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
        - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up
 information.
        - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
        - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.
```

```
        - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
reports concise. Sparingly use
          emojis where appropriate.
        - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your
purpose.
        - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools
besides Weather_Tool.
        - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
sending the complete response.
    "
    ;

    private static string default_prompt = "What is the weather like in
Seattle?";

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int max_recursions = 5;

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Error)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddHttpClient()
                    .AddSingleton<IAmazonBedrockRuntime>(_ => new
AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1)) // Specify a region that has
access to the chosen model.
                    .AddTransient<BedrockActionsWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<WeatherTool>()
                    .RemoveAll<IHttpMessageHandlerBuilderFilter>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            await RunConversationAsync();
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        finally
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _bedrockActionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<BedrockActionsWrapper>();
        _weatherTool = host.Services.GetRequiredService<WeatherTool>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The conversation array.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> RunConversationAsync()
    {
        // Print the greeting and a short user guide
        PrintHeader();

        // Start with an empty conversation
        var conversation = new List<Message>();

        // Get the first user input
        var userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
```

```
        while (userInput != null)
        {
            // Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            var message = new Message { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text = userInput } } };
            conversation.Add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            var bedrockResponse = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
returned its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            await ProcessModelResponseAsync(bedrockResponse, conversation,
max_recursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
        }

        PrintFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history including the next
message to send.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from Amazon Bedrock.</returns>
    private static async Task<ConverseResponse>
SendConversationToBedrock(List<Message> conversation)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tCalling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return await _bedrockActionsWrapper.SendConverseRequestAsync(model_id,
system_prompt, conversation, _weatherTool.GetToolSpec());
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions based on the stop reason.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response returned via Amazon
Bedrock.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls
allowed.</param>
    private static async Task ProcessModelResponseAsync(ConverseResponse
modelResponse, List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0)
        {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            Console.WriteLine("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(modelResponse.Output.Message);

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "tool_use")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            await HandleToolUseAsync(modelResponse.Output, conversation,
maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "end_turn")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process
            PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.Output.Message.Content[0].Text);
            if (!_interactive)
            {
                default_prompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
   /// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
   /// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation
is sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response containing the tool use
request.</param>
   /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
   /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls
allowed.</param>
   public static async Task HandleToolUseAsync(ConverseOutput modelResponse,
List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
   {
       // Initialize an empty list of tool results
       var toolResults = new List<ContentBlock>();

       // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
       foreach (var contentBlock in modelResponse.Message.Content)
       {
           if (!String.IsNullOrEmpty(contentBlock.Text))
           {
               // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
               PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.Text);
           }

           if (contentBlock.ToolUse != null)
           {
               // If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
tool
               var toolResponse = await InvokeTool(contentBlock.ToolUse);

               // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
               toolResults.Add(new ContentBlock
               {
                   ToolResult = new ToolResultBlock()
                   {
                       ToolUseId = toolResponse.ToolUseId,
                       Content = new List<ToolResultContentBlock>()
                           { new ToolResultContentBlock { Json =
toolResponse.Content } }
                   }
               });
           }
```

```
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        var message = new Message() { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
toolResults };

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
    /// If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="payload">The payload containing the tool name and input
data.</param>
    /// <returns>The tool's response or an error message.</returns>
    public static async Task<ToolResponse> InvokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload)
    {
        var toolName = payload.Name;

        if (toolName == "Weather_Tool")
        {
            var inputData = payload.Input.AsDictionary();
            PrintToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            var weatherResponse = await
_weatherTool.FetchWeatherDataAsync(inputData["latitude"].ToString(),
inputData["longitude"].ToString());
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
weatherResponse };
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            var errorMessage = $"\tThe requested tool with name '{toolName}' does
not exist.";
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
new { error = true, message = errorMessage } };
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
    /// Returns null if the user enters 'x' to exit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="prompt">The prompt to display to the user.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's input or null if the user chooses to exit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetUserInputAsync(string prompt = "\tYour
weather info request:")
    {
        var userInput = default_prompt;
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('*', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"{prompt} (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(userInput))
        {
            prompt = "\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of
a city";
            return await GetUserInputAsync(prompt);
        }

        if (userInput.ToLowerInvariant() == "x")
        {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the welcome message and usage guide for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintHeader()
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
        ==================================================

        This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations.
        You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates. Weather information
        will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API.

        Example queries:
        - What's the weather like in New York?
        - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
        - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

        To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

        P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English!
        Have fun and experiment with the app!
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the footer information for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintFooter()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!

        For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
        ==================================================
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs information about the tool use.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toolName">The name of the tool being used.</param>
    /// <param name="inputData">The input data for the tool.</param>
    public static void PrintToolUse(string toolName, Dictionary<string, Document>
 inputData)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\n\tInvoking tool: {toolName} with input:
 {inputData["latitude"].ToString()}, {inputData["longitude"].ToString()}...\n");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the model's response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The model's response message.</param>
    public static void PrintModelResponse(string message)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tThe model's response:\n");
        Console.WriteLine(message);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Weather tool that will be invoked when requested by the Bedrock response.
/// </summary>
public class WeatherTool
{
    private readonly ILogger<WeatherTool> _logger;
    private readonly IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory;

    public WeatherTool(ILogger<WeatherTool> logger, IHttpClientFactory
 httpClientFactory)
```

```
    {
        _logger = logger;
        _httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    /// defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    /// For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-
schema/reference.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The tool specification for the Weather tool.</returns>
    public ToolSpecification GetToolSpec()
    {
        ToolSpecification toolSpecification = new ToolSpecification();

        toolSpecification.Name = "Weather_Tool";
        toolSpecification.Description = "Get the current weather for a given
 location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";

        Document toolSpecDocument = Document.FromObject(
            new
            {
                type = "object",
                properties = new
                {
                    latitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location."
                    },
                    longitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location."
                    }
                },
                required = new[] { "latitude", "longitude" }
            });
```

```
        toolSpecification.InputSchema = new ToolInputSchema() { Json =
 toolSpecDocument };
        return toolSpecification;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    /// Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="latitude">The latitude of the location.</param>
    /// <param name="longitude">The longitude of the location.</param>
    /// <returns>The weather data or an error message.</returns>
    public async Task<Document> FetchWeatherDataAsync(string latitude, string
 longitude)
    {
        string endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";

        try
        {
            var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            var response = await httpClient.GetAsync($"{endpoint}?
latitude={latitude}&longitude={longitude}&current_weather=True");
            response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();
            var weatherData = await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            Document weatherDocument = Document.FromObject(
                new { weather_data = weatherData });

            return weatherDocument;
        }
        catch (HttpRequestException e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Unexpected error fetching weather data:
 {Message}", e.Message);
            throw;
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/>
 class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
```

```
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse
 request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/*
 This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
 The program interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
 input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
 */
public class BedrockScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    private static String defaultPrompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";
    private static WeatherTool weatherTool = new WeatherTool();

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int maxRecursions = 5;
    static BedrockActions bedrockActions = new BedrockActions();
    public static boolean interactive = true;

    private static final String systemPrompt = """
            You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for
 user-specified locations using only
            the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
            If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and
 refer to it in your response.
            To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.
```

```
            - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before
 each step.
            - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up
 information.
            - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
            - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.
            - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use
              emojis where appropriate.
            - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your
 purpose.
            - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools
 besides Weather_Tool.
            - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.
            """;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
                ==================================================

                This assistant provides current weather information for user-
specified locations.
                You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates.

                Example queries:
                - What's the weather like in New York?
                - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
                - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

                To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

                P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using
 English!
                Have fun and experiment with the app!
                """);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        try {
            runConversation(scanner);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("There was a problem running the scenario: " +
ex.getMessage());
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature
Scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
     */
    private static List<Message> runConversation(Scanner scanner) {
        List<Message> conversation = new ArrayList<>();

        // Get the first user input
        String userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        System.out.println(userInput);

        while (userInput != null) {
            ContentBlock block = ContentBlock.builder()
                    .text(userInput)
                    .build();

            List<ContentBlock> blockList = new ArrayList<>();
            blockList.add(block);

            Message message = Message.builder()
                    .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                    .content(blockList)
                    .build();

            conversation.add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock.
```

```
            ConverseResponse bedrockResponse =
sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
returned its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0.
            processModelResponse(bedrockResponse, conversation, maxRecursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application.
            userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        }
        printFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /**
     * Processes the response from the model and updates the conversation
accordingly.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model
     * @param conversation  the ongoing conversation
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursions allowed
     */
    private static void processModelResponse(ConverseResponse modelResponse,
List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0) {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            System.out.println("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.add(modelResponse.output().message());

        String modelResponseVal = modelResponse.stopReasonAsString();
        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("tool_use") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            handleToolUse(modelResponse.output(), conversation, maxRecursion -
1);
        }

        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("end_turn") == 0) {
```

```
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process

PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.output().message().content().get(0).text());
            if (!interactive) {
                defaultPrompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Handles the use of a tool by the model in a conversation.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model, which may include a tool
use request
     * @param conversation  the current conversation, which will be updated with
the tool use results
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursive calls allowed to
handle the model's response
     */
    private static void handleToolUse(ConverseOutput modelResponse, List<Message>
conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        List<ContentBlock> toolResults = new ArrayList<>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for (ContentBlock contentBlock : modelResponse.message().content()) {
            if (contentBlock.text() != null && !contentBlock.text().isEmpty()) {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.text());
            }

            if (contentBlock.toolUse() != null) {
                ToolResponse toolResponse = invokeTool(contentBlock.toolUse());

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                List<ToolResultContentBlock> contentBlockList = new
ArrayList<>();
                ToolResultContentBlock block = ToolResultContentBlock.builder()
                        .json(toolResponse.getContent())
                        .build();
                contentBlockList.add(block);

                ToolResultBlock toolResultBlock = ToolResultBlock.builder()
```

```
                        .toolUseId(toolResponse.getToolUseId())
                        .content(contentBlockList)
                        .build();

                ContentBlock contentBlock1 = ContentBlock.builder()
                        .toolResult(toolResultBlock)
                        .build();

                toolResults.add(contentBlock1);
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        Message message = Message.builder()
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .content(toolResults)
                .build();

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        //conversation.add(message);
        conversation.add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        processModelResponse(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    // Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
    // If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    private static ToolResponse invokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload) {
        String toolName = payload.name();

        if (Objects.equals(toolName, "Weather_Tool")) {
            Map<String, Document> inputData = payload.input().asMap();
            printToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            Document weatherResponse =
weatherTool.fetchWeatherData(inputData.get("latitude").toString(),
inputData.get("longitude").toString());
```

```
            ToolResponse toolResponse = new ToolResponse();
            toolResponse.setContent(weatherResponse);
            toolResponse.setToolUseId(payload.toolUseId());
            return toolResponse;
        } else {
            String errorMessage = "The requested tool with name " + toolName + "
does not exist.";
            System.out.println(errorMessage);
            return null;
        }
    }

    public static void printToolUse(String toolName, Map<String, Document>
inputData) {
        System.out.println("Invoking tool: " + toolName + "
with input: " + inputData.get("latitude").toString() + ", " +
inputData.get("longitude").toString() + "...");
    }

    private static void PrintModelResponse(String message) {
        System.out.println("\tThe model's response:\n");
        System.out.println(message);
        System.out.println("");
    }

    private static ConverseResponse sendConversationToBedrock(List<Message>
conversation) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        try {
            return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, weatherTool.getToolSpec());
        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
             System.err.println("Model is not ready. Please try again later: " +
ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Bedrock service error: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (RuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        }
```

```
    }

    private static ConverseResponse
sendConversationToBedrockwithSpec(List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification
toolSpec) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, toolSpec);
    }

    public static String getUserInput(String prompt, Scanner scanner) {
        String userInput = defaultPrompt;
        if (interactive) {
            System.out.println("*".repeat(80));
            System.out.println(prompt + " (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = scanner.nextLine();
        }

        if (userInput == null || userInput.trim().isEmpty()) {
            return getUserInput("\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g.,
the name of a city", scanner);
        }

        if (userInput.equalsIgnoreCase("x")) {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
```

```
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void printFooter() {
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We
 hope you
                learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today!

                For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages,
 have a look at:
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
                ==================================================
                """);
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
public class WeatherTool {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(WeatherTool.class);
    private static java.net.http.HttpClient httpClient = null;

    /**
     * Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
     * defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
     * For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-
schema/reference.
     *
     * @return The tool specification for the Weather tool.
     */
    public ToolSpecification getToolSpec() {
```

```
        Map<String, Document> latitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        latitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        latitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
latitude of the location."));

        // Create the nested "longitude" object
        Map<String, Document> longitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        longitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        longitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
longitude of the location."));

        // Create the "properties" object
        Map<String, Document> propertiesMap = new HashMap<>();
        propertiesMap.put("latitude", Document.fromMap(latitudeMap));
        propertiesMap.put("longitude", Document.fromMap(longitudeMap));

        // Create the "required" array
        List<Document> requiredList = new ArrayList<>();
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("latitude"));
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("longitude"));

        // Create the root object
        Map<String, Document> rootMap = new HashMap<>();
        rootMap.put("type", Document.fromString("object"));
        rootMap.put("properties", Document.fromMap(propertiesMap));
        rootMap.put("required", Document.fromList(requiredList));

        // Now create the Document representing the JSON schema
        Document document = Document.fromMap(rootMap);

        ToolSpecification specification = ToolSpecification.builder()
            .name("Weather_Tool")
            .description("Get the current weather for a given location, based on
its WGS84 coordinates.")
            .inputSchema(ToolInputSchema.builder()
                .json(document)
                .build())
            .build();

        return specification;
    }

    /**
     * Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude.
```

```
     *
     * @param latitude  the latitude coordinate
     * @param longitude the longitude coordinate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the weather data as a JSON
 string
     */
    public Document fetchWeatherData(String latitude, String longitude) {
        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();

        // Ensure no extra double quotes
        latitude = latitude.replace("\"", "");
        longitude = longitude.replace("\"", "");

        String endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
        String url = String.format("%s?latitude=%s&longitude=
%s&current_weather=True", endpoint, latitude, longitude);

        HttpRequest request = HttpRequest.newBuilder()
            .uri(URI.create(url))
            .build();

        try {
            HttpResponse<String> response = httpClient.send(request,
 HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.ofString());
            if (response.statusCode() == 200) {
                String weatherJson = response.body();
                System.out.println(weatherJson);
                ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                Map<String, Object> rawMap = objectMapper.readValue(weatherJson,
 new TypeReference<Map<String, Object>>() {});
                Map<String, Document> documentMap = convertToDocumentMap(rawMap);


                Document weatherDocument = Document.fromMap(documentMap);
                System.out.println(weatherDocument);
                return weatherDocument;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data: " +
 response.statusCode());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.out.println("Error fetching weather data: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data", e);
        }
```

```
    }

    private static Map<String, Document> convertToDocumentMap(Map<String, Object>
 inputMap) {
        Map<String, Document> result = new HashMap<>();
        for (Map.Entry<String, Object> entry : inputMap.entrySet()) {
            result.put(entry.getKey(), convertToDocument(entry.getValue()));
        }
        return result;
    }

    // Convert different types of Objects to Document
    private static Document convertToDocument(Object value) {
        if (value instanceof Map) {
            return Document.fromMap(convertToDocumentMap((Map<String, Object>)
 value));
        } else if (value instanceof Integer) {
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromInteger((Integer) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Double) {  //
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromDouble((Double) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Boolean) {
            return Document.fromBoolean((Boolean) value);
        } else if (value instanceof String) {
            return Document.fromString((String) value);
        }
        return Document.fromNull(); // Handle null values safely
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
    /**
     * Sends an asynchronous converse request to the AI model.
     *
     * @param modelId      the unique identifier of the AI model to be used for
 the converse request
     * @param systemPrompt the system prompt to be included in the converse
 request
     * @param conversation a list of messages representing the conversation
 history
```

```
    * @param toolSpec     the specification of the tool to be used in the
converse request
    * @return the converse response received from the AI model
    */
   public ConverseResponse sendConverseRequestAsync(String modelId, String
systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec) {
       List<Tool> toolList = new ArrayList<>();
       Tool tool = Tool.builder()
           .toolSpec(toolSpec)
           .build();

       toolList.add(tool);

       ToolConfiguration configuration = ToolConfiguration.builder()
           .tools(toolList)
           .build();

       SystemContentBlock block = SystemContentBlock.builder()
           .text(systemPrompt)
           .build();

       ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
           .modelId(modelId)
           .system(block)
           .messages(conversation)
           .toolConfig(configuration)
           .build();

       try {
           ConverseResponse response = getClient().converse(request).join();
           return response;

       } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
           throw new RuntimeException("Model is not ready: " + ex.getMessage(),
ex);
       } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to converse with Bedrock model: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/* Before running this JavaScript code example, set up your development
 environment, including your credentials.
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and
 a weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.*/

import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";
const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
import data from "./questions.json" with { type: "json" };
import toolConfig from "./tool_config.json" with { type: "json" };

const systemPrompt = [
```

```
  {
    text:
      "You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only\n" +
      "the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.\n" +
      "If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer
 to it in your response.\n" +
      "To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.\n" +
      "If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.\n" +
      "\n" +
      "- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.\n" +
      "- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
 \n" +
      "- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.\n" +
      "- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.\n" +
      "- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use\n" +
      "  emojis where appropriate.\n" +
      "- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
 \n" +
      "- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.\n" +
      "- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.",
  },
];
const tools_config = toolConfig;

/// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
async function askQuestion(userMessage) {
  // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
  // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
  const max_recursions = 5;
  const messages = [
    {
      role: "user",
      content: [{ text: userMessage }],
    },
  ];
```

```
  try {
    const response = await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages);
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
}

// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
 Bedrock, and returns the response.
// param "messages" - The conversation history including the next message to
 send.
// return - The response from Amazon Bedrock.
async function SendConversationtoBedrock(messages) {
  const bedRockRuntimeClient = new BedrockRuntimeClient({
    region: "us-east-1",
  });
  try {
    const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    const response = await bedRockRuntimeClient.send(
      new ConverseCommand({
        modelId: modelId,
        messages: messages,
        system: systemPrompt,
        toolConfig: tools_config,
      }),
    );
    return response;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ModelNotReady") {
      console.log(
        "`${caught.name}` - Model not ready, please wait and try again.",
      );
      throw caught;
    }
    if (caught.name === "BedrockRuntimeException") {
      console.log(
        '`${caught.name}` - "Error occurred while sending Converse request.',
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  }
}
```

```
// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the necessary
 actions based on the stop reason.
// param "response" - The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
// param "messages" - The conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  if (max_recursions <= 0) {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "tool_use") {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions - 1);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "end_turn") {
    const messageToPrint = response.output.message.content[0].text;
    console.log(messageToPrint.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
  }
}
// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
 tool's response back to Bedrock.
// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
 sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
// param "response" - the model's response containing the tool use request.
// param "messages" - the conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  const toolResultFinal = [];
  try {
    const output_message = response.output.message;
    messages.push(output_message);
    const toolRequests = output_message.content;
    const toolMessage = toolRequests[0].text;
    console.log(toolMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
    for (const toolRequest of toolRequests) {
      if (Object.hasOwn(toolRequest, "toolUse")) {
        const toolUse = toolRequest.toolUse;
        const latitude = toolUse.input.latitude;
        const longitude = toolUse.input.longitude;
        const toolUseID = toolUse.toolUseId;
        console.log(
          `Requesting tool ${toolUse.name}, Tool use id ${toolUseID}`,
        );
        if (toolUse.name === "Weather_Tool") {
          try {
            const current_weather = await callWeatherTool(
```

```
              longitude,
              latitude,
            ).then((current_weather) => current_weather);
            const currentWeather = current_weather;
            const toolResult = {
              toolResult: {
                toolUseId: toolUseID,
                content: [{ json: currentWeather }],
              },
            };
            toolResultFinal.push(toolResult);
          } catch (err) {
            console.log("An error occurred. ", err);
          }
        }
      }
    }

    const toolResultMessage = {
      role: "user",
      content: toolResultFinal,
    };
    messages.push(toolResultMessage);
    // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(
      await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages),
      messages,
    );
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("An error occurred. ", error);
  }
}
// Call the Weathertool.
// param = longitude of location
// param = latitude of location
async function callWeatherTool(longitude, latitude) {
  // Open-Meteo API endpoint
  const apiUrl = `https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast?latitude=
${latitude}&longitude=${longitude}&current_weather=true`;

  // Fetch the weather data.
  return fetch(apiUrl)
    .then((response) => {
      return response.json().then((current_weather) => {
```

```
        return current_weather;
      });
    })
    .catch((error) => {
      console.error("Error fetching weather data:", error);
    });
}
/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "input",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo! \n" +
    "This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations. " +
    "You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates." +
    "Weather information will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo
 API." +
    "For the purposes of this example, we'll use in order the questions in ./
questions.json :\n" +
    "What's the weather like in Seattle? " +
    "What's the best kind of cat? " +
    "Where is the warmest city in Washington State right now? " +
    "What's the warmest city in California right now?\n" +
    "To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.\n" +
    "Have fun and experiment with the app by editing the questions in ./
questions.json! " +
    "P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English! ",

  { header: true },
);
const displayAskQuestion1 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion1",
  "Press enter to ask question number 1 (default is 'What's the weather like in
 Seattle?')",
);

const askQuestion1 = new ScenarioAction(
```

```
  "askQuestion1",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage1 = data.questions["question-1"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage1);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion2 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion2",
  "Press enter to ask question number 2 (default is 'What's the best kind of
 cat?')",
);

const askQuestion2 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion2",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage2 = data.questions["question-2"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage2);
  },
);
const displayAskQuestion3 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion3",
  "Press enter to ask question number 3 (default is 'Where is the warmest city in
 Washington State right now?')",
);

const askQuestion3 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion3",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage3 = data.questions["question-3"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage3);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion4 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion4",
  "Press enter to ask question number 4 (default is 'What's the warmest city in
 California right now?')",
);

const askQuestion4 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion4",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage4 = data.questions["question-4"];
```

```
    await askQuestion(userMessage4);
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you\n" +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!\n" +
    "For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:\n" +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Converse Tool Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion1,
  askQuestion1,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion2,
  askQuestion2,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion3,
  askQuestion3,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion4,
  askQuestion4,
  pressEnter,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
```

```
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution script of the demo. This script orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
"""
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and
 a weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
"""

import boto3
import logging
from enum import Enum

import utils.tool_use_print_utils as output
import weather_tool

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(message)s")

AWS_REGION = "us-east-1"
```

```
# For the most recent list of models supported by the Converse API's tool use
 functionality, visit:
# https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/conversation-
inference.html
class SupportedModels(Enum):
    CLAUDE_OPUS = "anthropic.claude-3-opus-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_SONNET = "anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_HAIKU = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R_PLUS = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"


# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
MODEL_ID = SupportedModels.CLAUDE_HAIKU.value

SYSTEM_PROMPT = """
You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-specified
 locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it
 in your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
"""

# The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
# This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
MAX_RECURSIONS = 5
```

```
class ToolUseDemo:
    """
    Demonstrates the tool use feature with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        # Prepare the system prompt
        self.system_prompt = [{"text": SYSTEM_PROMPT}]

        # Prepare the tool configuration with the weather tool's specification
        self.tool_config = {"tools": [weather_tool.get_tool_spec()]}

        # Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the specified AWS Region.
        self.bedrockRuntimeClient = boto3.client(
            "bedrock-runtime", region_name=AWS_REGION
        )

    def run(self):
        """
        Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
        """
        # Print the greeting and a short user guide
        output.header()

        # Start with an emtpy conversation
        conversation = []

        # Get the first user input
        user_input = self._get_user_input()

        while user_input is not None:
            # Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
 conversation
            message = {"role": "user", "content": [{"text": user_input}]}
            conversation.append(message)

            # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            bedrock_response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

            # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
 returned
```

```
            # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            self._process_model_response(
                bedrock_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
            )

            # Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            user_input = self._get_user_input()

        output.footer()

    def _send_conversation_to_bedrock(self, conversation):
        """
        Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.

        :param conversation: The conversation history including the next message
to send.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock.
        """
        output.call_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return self.bedrockRuntimeClient.converse(
            modelId=MODEL_ID,
            messages=conversation,
            system=self.system_prompt,
            toolConfig=self.tool_config,
        )

    def _process_model_response(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions
        based on the stop reason.

        :param model_response: The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        if max_recursion <= 0:
```

```
            # Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            logging.warning(
                "Warning: Maximum number of recursions reached. Please try
again."
            )
            exit(1)

        # Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        message = model_response["output"]["message"]
        conversation.append(message)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "tool_use":
            # If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            self._handle_tool_use(message, conversation, max_recursion)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "end_turn":
            # If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process
            output.model_response(message["content"][0]["text"])
            return

    def _handle_tool_use(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
        The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation
is sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.

        :param model_response: The model's response containing the tool use
request.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        # Initialize an empty list of tool results
        tool_results = []

        # The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for content_block in model_response["content"]:
            if "text" in content_block:
```

```
                # If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                output.model_response(content_block["text"])

            if "toolUse" in content_block:
                # If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
tool
                tool_response = self._invoke_tool(content_block["toolUse"])

                # Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                tool_results.append(
                    {
                        "toolResult": {
                            "toolUseId": (tool_response["toolUseId"]),
                            "content": [{"json": tool_response["content"]}],
                        }
                    }
                )

        # Embed the tool results in a new user message
        message = {"role": "user", "content": tool_results}

        # Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.append(message)

        # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
        # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        self._process_model_response(response, conversation, max_recursion - 1)

    def _invoke_tool(self, payload):
        """
        Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
        If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.

        :param payload: The payload containing the tool name and input data.
        :return: The tool's response or an error message.
        """
        tool_name = payload["name"]

        if tool_name == "Weather_Tool":
```

```
            input_data = payload["input"]
            output.tool_use(tool_name, input_data)

            # Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided by
            response = weather_tool.fetch_weather_data(input_data)
        else:
            error_message = (
                f"The requested tool with name '{tool_name}' does not exist."
            )
            response = {"error": "true", "message": error_message}

        return {"toolUseId": payload["toolUseId"], "content": response}

    @staticmethod
    def _get_user_input(prompt="Your weather info request"):
        """
        Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
        Returns None if the user enters 'x' to exit.

        :param prompt: The prompt to display to the user.
        :return: The user's input or None if the user chooses to exit.
        """
        output.separator()
        user_input = input(f"{prompt} (x to exit): ")

        if user_input == "":
            prompt = "Please enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
 city"
            return ToolUseDemo._get_user_input(prompt)

        elif user_input.lower() == "x":
            return None

        else:
            return user_input


if __name__ == "__main__":
    tool_use_demo = ToolUseDemo()
    tool_use_demo.run()
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
import requests
from requests.exceptions import RequestException


def get_tool_spec():
    """
    Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.

    :return: The tool specification for the Weather tool.
    """
    return {
        "toolSpec": {
            "name": "Weather_Tool",
            "description": "Get the current weather for a given location, based
 on its WGS84 coordinates.",
            "inputSchema": {
                "json": {
                    "type": "object",
                    "properties": {
                        "latitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                        "longitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                    },
                    "required": ["latitude", "longitude"],
                }
            },
        }
    }
```

```
def fetch_weather_data(input_data):
    """
    Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.

    :param input_data: The input data containing the latitude and longitude.
    :return: The weather data or an error message.
    """
    endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast"
    latitude = input_data.get("latitude")
    longitude = input_data.get("longitude", "")
    params = {"latitude": latitude, "longitude": longitude, "current_weather":
 True}

    try:
        response = requests.get(endpoint, params=params)
        weather_data = {"weather_data": response.json()}
        response.raise_for_status()
        return weather_data
    except RequestException as e:
        return e.response.json()
    except Exception as e:
        return {"error": type(e), "message": str(e)}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary scenario and logic for the demo. This orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
#[derive(Debug)]
#[allow(dead_code)]
struct InvokeToolResult(String, ToolResultBlock);
struct ToolUseScenario {
    client: Client,
    conversation: Vec<Message>,
    system_prompt: SystemContentBlock,
    tool_config: ToolConfiguration,
}

impl ToolUseScenario {
    fn new(client: Client) -> Self {
        let system_prompt = SystemContentBlock::Text(SYSTEM_PROMPT.into());
        let tool_config = ToolConfiguration::builder()
            .tools(Tool::ToolSpec(
                ToolSpecification::builder()
                    .name(TOOL_NAME)
                    .description(TOOL_DESCRIPTION)
                    .input_schema(ToolInputSchema::Json(make_tool_schema()))
                    .build()
                    .unwrap(),
            ))
            .build()
            .unwrap();

        ToolUseScenario {
            client,
            conversation: vec![],
            system_prompt,
            tool_config,
        }
    }

    async fn run(&mut self) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        loop {
            let input = get_input().await?;
            if input.is_none() {
                break;
            }

            let message = Message::builder()
                .role(User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(input.unwrap()))
```

```
                .build()
                .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)?;
            self.conversation.push(message);

            let response = self.send_to_bedrock().await?;

            self.process_model_response(response).await?;
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    async fn send_to_bedrock(&mut self) -> Result<ConverseOutput,
ToolUseScenarioError> {
        debug!("Sending conversation to bedrock");
        self.client
            .converse()
            .model_id(MODEL_ID)
            .set_messages(Some(self.conversation.clone()))
            .system(self.system_prompt.clone())
            .tool_config(self.tool_config.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)
    }

    async fn process_model_response(
        &mut self,
        mut response: ConverseOutput,
    ) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut iteration = 0;

        while iteration < MAX_RECURSIONS {
            iteration += 1;
            let message = if let Some(ref output) = response.output {
                if output.is_message() {
                    Ok(output.as_message().unwrap().clone())
                } else {
                    Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
                        "Converse Output is not a message".into(),
                    ))
                }
            } else {
                Err(ToolUseScenarioError("Missing Converse Output".into()))
```

```
            }?;

            self.conversation.push(message.clone());

            match response.stop_reason {
                StopReason::ToolUse => {
                    response = self.handle_tool_use(&message).await?;
                }
                StopReason::EndTurn => {
                    print_model_response(&message.content[0])?;
                    return Ok(());
                }
                _ => (),
            }
        }

        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
            "Exceeded MAX_ITERATIONS when calling tools".into(),
        ))
    }

    async fn handle_tool_use(
        &mut self,
        message: &Message,
    ) -> Result<ConverseOutput, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut tool_results: Vec<ContentBlock> = vec![];

        for block in &message.content {
            match block {
                ContentBlock::Text(_) => print_model_response(block)?,
                ContentBlock::ToolUse(tool) => {
                    let tool_response = self.invoke_tool(tool).await?;
                    tool_results.push(ContentBlock::ToolResult(tool_response.1));
                }
                _ => (),
            };
        }

        let message = Message::builder()
            .role(User)
            .set_content(Some(tool_results))
            .build()?;
        self.conversation.push(message);
```

```
        self.send_to_bedrock().await
    }

    async fn invoke_tool(
        &mut self,
        tool: &ToolUseBlock,
    ) -> Result<InvokeToolResult, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        match tool.name() {
            TOOL_NAME => {
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mExecuting tool: {TOOL_NAME} with input: {:?}...
\x1b[0m",
                    tool.input()
                );
                let content = fetch_weather_data(tool).await?;
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mTool responded with {:?}\x1b[0m",
                    content.content()
                );
                Ok(InvokeToolResult(tool.tool_use_id.clone(), content))
            }
            _ => Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
                "The requested tool with name {} does not exist",
                tool.name()
            ))),
        }
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let mut scenario = ToolUseScenario::new(client);

    header();
    if let Err(err) = scenario.run().await {
        println!("There was an error running the scenario! {}", err.0)
    }
```

```
    footer();
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
const ENDPOINT: &str = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
async fn fetch_weather_data(
    tool_use: &ToolUseBlock,
) -> Result<ToolResultBlock, ToolUseScenarioError> {
    let input = tool_use.input();
    let latitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("latitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let longitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("longitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let params = [
        ("latitude", latitude),
        ("longitude", longitude),
        ("current_weather", "true"),
    ];

    debug!("Calling {ENDPOINT} with {params:?}");

    let response = reqwest::Client::new()
        .get(ENDPOINT)
        .query(&params)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error requesting weather:
 {e:?}")))?
        .error_for_status()
```

```
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Failed to request weather:
 {e:?}")))?;

    debug!("Response: {response:?}");

    let bytes = response
        .bytes()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error reading response:
 {e:?}")))?;

    let result = String::from_utf8(bytes.to_vec())
        .map_err(|_| ToolUseScenarioError("Response was not utf8".into()))?;

    Ok(ToolResultBlock::builder()
        .tool_use_id(tool_use.tool_use_id())
        .content(ToolResultContentBlock::Text(result))
        .build()?)
}
```

Utilities to print the Message Content Blocks.

```
fn print_model_response(block: &ContentBlock) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError>
 {
    if block.is_text() {
        let text = block.as_text().unwrap();
        println!("\x1b[0;90mThe model's response:\x1b[0m\n{text}");
        Ok(())
    } else {
        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
            "Content block is not text ({block:?})"
        )))
    }
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use std::{collections::HashMap, io::stdin};

use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
```

```
    error::{BuildError, SdkError},
    operation::converse::{ConverseError, ConverseOutput},
    types::{
        ContentBlock, ConversationRole::User, Message, StopReason,
 SystemContentBlock, Tool,
        ToolConfiguration, ToolInputSchema, ToolResultBlock,
 ToolResultContentBlock,
        ToolSpecification, ToolUseBlock,
    },
    Client,
};
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::http::Response;
use aws_smithy_types::Document;
use tracing::debug;

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

const SYSTEM_PROMPT: &str = "You are a weather assistant that provides current
 weather data for user-specified locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it
 in your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
";

// The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
// This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
```

```
const MAX_RECURSIONS: i8 = 5;

const TOOL_NAME: &str = "Weather_Tool";
const TOOL_DESCRIPTION: &str =
    "Get the current weather for a given location, based on its WGS84
 coordinates.";
fn make_tool_schema() -> Document {
    Document::Object(HashMap::<String, Document>::from([
        ("type".into(), Document::String("object".into())),
        (
            "properties".into(),
            Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                (
                    "latitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String("Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.".into()),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
                (
                    "longitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String(
                                "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.".into(),
                            ),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
            ])),
        ),
        (
            "required".into(),
            Document::Array(vec![
                Document::String("latitude".into()),
                Document::String("longitude".into()),
            ]),
```

```
        ),
    ]))
}

#[derive(Debug)]
struct ToolUseScenarioError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Tool use error with '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
}
impl From<&str> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.into())
    }
}
impl From<BuildError> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: BuildError) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.to_string().clone())
    }
}
impl From<SdkError<ConverseError, Response>> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: SdkError<ConverseError, Response>) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(match value.as_service_error() {
            Some(value) => value.meta().message().unwrap_or("Unknown").into(),
            None => "Unknown".into(),
        })
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Nova for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
- Invoke Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock

- A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

Invoke Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
```

```
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

Send a conversation of messages to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
```

```
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/>
 class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
```

```
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse
 request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
 * with an asynchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client to generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
        // - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and
 cost
        // - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video,
 and text
        // - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy,
 speed, and cost
        //
        // For the latest available models, see:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Create the message
        // The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from
 the user
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Step 4: Configure the request
        // Optional parameters to control the model's response:
        // - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
        // - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
        //   OR
        // - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
        // Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                                .maxTokens(500)     // The maximum response
 length
                                .temperature(0.5F)  // Using temperature for
 randomness control
                        //.topP(0.9F)       // Alternative: use topP instead of
 temperature
                ).build();

        // Step 5: Send and process the request asynchronously
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Extract and return the generated text from the response
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ConverseResponse> asyncResponse =
 client.converse(request);
            return asyncResponse.thenApply(
                    response ->
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text()
            ).get();
```

```
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String response = converseAsync();
        System.out.println(response);
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
 * with a synchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client to generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeClient client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
        // - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and
 cost
        // - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video,
 and text
        // - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy,
 speed, and cost
        //
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Create the message
        // The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from
 the user
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Step 4: Configure the request
        // Optional parameters to control the model's response:
        // - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
        // - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
        //   OR
        // - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
        // Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                                .maxTokens(500)     // The maximum response
 length
                                .temperature(0.5F)  // Using temperature for
 randomness control
                        //.topP(0.9F)       // Alternative: use topP instead of
 temperature
                ).build();
```

```
        // Step 5: Send and process the request
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Extract and return the generated text from the response
        try {
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request);
            return response.output().message().content().get(0).text();

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String response = converse();
        System.out.println(response);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models to
 generate text.
// It shows how to:
// - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - Create a message
// - Configure and send a request
```

```
// - Process the response

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConversationRole,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Step 2: Specify which model to use:
// Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
// - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and cost
// - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video, and
 text
// - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed, and
 cost
//
// For the most current model IDs, see:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-supported.html
const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Step 3: Create the message
// The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the user
const inputText =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const message = {
  content: [{ text: inputText }],
  role: ConversationRole.USER,
};

// Step 4: Configure the request
// Optional parameters to control the model's response:
// - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
// - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
//   OR
// - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
// Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
const request = {
  modelId,
  messages: [message],
  inferenceConfig: {
```

```
    maxTokens: 500, // The maximum response length
    temperature: 0.5, // Using temperature for randomness control
    //topP: 0.9,        // Alternative: use topP instead of temperature
  },
};

// Step 5: Send and process the request
// - Send the request to the model
// - Extract and return the generated text from the response
try {
  const response = await client.send(new ConverseCommand(request));
  console.log(response.output.message.content[0].text);
} catch (error) {
  console.error(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${error.message}`);
  throw error;
}
```

Send a conversation of messages to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.

```
// This example demonstrates how to send a conversation of messages to Amazon
 Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.
// It shows how to:
// - 1. Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - 2. Define the parameters required enable Amazon Bedrock to use a tool when
 formulating its response (model ID, user input, system prompt, and the tool
 spec)
// - 3. Send the request to Amazon Bedrock, and returns the response.
// - 4. Add the tool response to the conversation, and send it back to Amazon
 Bedrock.
// - 5. Publish the response.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client

// Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment
const bedRockRuntimeClient = new BedrockRuntimeClient({
```

```
  region: "us-east-1",
});

// Step 2. Define the parameters required enable Amazon Bedrock to use a tool
 when formulating its response.

// The Bedrock Model ID.
const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// The system prompt to help Amazon Bedrock craft it's response.
const system_prompt = [
  {
    text:
      "You are a music expert that provides the most popular song played on a
 radio station, using only the\n" +
      "the top_song tool, which he call sign for the radio station for which you
 want the most popular song. " +
      "Example calls signs are WZPZ and WKRP. \n" +
      "- Only use the top_song tool. Never guess or make up information. \n" +
      "- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.\n" +
      "- Only respond to queries about the most popular song played on a radio
 station\n" +
      "Remind off-topic users of your purpose. \n" +
      "- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 the top_song tool.\n",
  },
];
//  The user's question.
const message = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: "What is the most popular song on WZPZ?" }],
  },
];
// The tool specification. In this case, it uses an example schema for
// a tool that gets the most popular song played on a radio station.
const tool_config = {
  tools: [
    {
      toolSpec: {
        name: "top_song",
        description: "Get the most popular song played on a radio station.",
        inputSchema: {
```

```
          json: {
            type: "object",
            properties: {
              sign: {
                type: "string",
                description:
                  "The call sign for the radio station for which you want the
 most popular song. Example calls signs are WZPZ and WKRP.",
              },
            },
            required: ["sign"],
          },
        },
      },
    },
  ],
};

// Helper function to return the song and artist from top_song tool.
async function get_top_song(call_sign) {
  try {
    if (call_sign === "WZPZ") {
      const song = "Elemental Hotel";
      const artist = "8 Storey Hike";
      return { song, artist };
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.log(`${error.message}`);
  }
}

// 3. Send the request to Amazon Bedrock, and returns the response.
export async function SendConversationtoBedrock(
  modelId,
  message,
  system_prompt,
  tool_config,
) {
  try {
    const response = await bedRockRuntimeClient.send(
      new ConverseCommand({
        modelId: modelId,
        messages: message,
        system: system_prompt,
```

```
        toolConfig: tool_config,
      }),
    );
    if (response.stopReason === "tool_use") {
      const toolResultFinal = [];
      try {
        const output_message = response.output.message;
        message.push(output_message);
        const toolRequests = output_message.content;
        const toolMessage = toolRequests[0].text;
        console.log(toolMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
        for (const toolRequest of toolRequests) {
          if (Object.hasOwn(toolRequest, "toolUse")) {
            const toolUse = toolRequest.toolUse;
            const sign = toolUse.input.sign;
            const toolUseID = toolUse.toolUseId;
            console.log(
              `Requesting tool ${toolUse.name}, Tool use id ${toolUseID}`,
            );
            if (toolUse.name === "top_song") {
              const toolResult = [];
              try {
                const top_song = await get_top_song(toolUse.input.sign).then(
                  (top_song) => top_song,
                );
                const toolResult = {
                  toolResult: {
                    toolUseId: toolUseID,
                    content: [
                      {
                        json: { song: top_song.song, artist: top_song.artist },
                      },
                    ],
                  },
                };
                toolResultFinal.push(toolResult);
              } catch (err) {
                const toolResult = {
                  toolUseId: toolUseID,
                  content: [{ json: { text: err.message } }],
                  status: "error",
                };
              }
            }
```

```
          }
        }
        const toolResultMessage = {
          role: "user",
          content: toolResultFinal,
        };
        // Step 4. Add the tool response to the conversation, and send it back to
 Amazon Bedrock.

        message.push(toolResultMessage);
        await SendConversationtoBedrock(
          modelId,
          message,
          system_prompt,
          tool_config,
        );
      } catch (caught) {
        console.error(`${caught.message}`);
        throw caught;
      }
    }

    // 4. Publish the response.
    if (response.stopReason === "end_turn") {
      const finalMessage = response.output.message.content[0].text;
      const messageToPrint = finalMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g);
      console.log(messageToPrint.replace(/<[^>]+>/g));
      return messageToPrint;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ModelNotReady") {
      console.log(
        `${caught.name} - Model not ready, please wait and try again.`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
    if (caught.name === "BedrockRuntimeException") {
      console.log(
        `${caught.name} - Error occurred while sending Converse request`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  }
}
```

```
await SendConversationtoBedrock(modelId, message, system_prompt, tool_config);
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models to
 generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
suspend fun main() {
    converse().also { println(it) }
}

suspend fun converse(): String {
    // Create and configure the Bedrock runtime client
    BedrockRuntimeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
```

```
        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        val modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        val prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line."
        val message = Message {
            role = ConversationRole.User
            content = listOf(ContentBlock.Text(prompt))
        }

        // Configure the request with optional model parameters
        val request = ConverseRequest {
            this.modelId = modelId
            messages = listOf(message)
            inferenceConfig {
                maxTokens = 500 // Maximum response length
                temperature = 0.5F // Lower values: more focused output
                // topP = 0.8F // Alternative to temperature
            }
        }

        // Send the request and process the model's response
        runCatching {
            val response = client.converse(request)
            return response.output!!.asMessage().content.first().asText()
        }.getOrElse { error ->
            error.message?.let { e -> System.err.println("ERROR: Can't invoke
 '$modelId'. Reason: $e") }
            throw RuntimeException("Failed to generate text with model $modelId",
 error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

use Aws\BedrockRuntime\BedrockRuntimeClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use RuntimeException;

class Converse
{
    public function converse(): string
    {
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        $client = new BedrockRuntimeClient([
            'region' => 'us-east-1',
            'profile' => 'default'
        ]);

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
        $modelId = 'amazon.nova-lite-v1:0';

        // Start a conversation with the user message.
        $userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        $conversation = [
            [
                "role" => "user",
                "content" => [["text" => $userMessage]]
            ]
        ];

        try {
```

```
            // Send the message to the model, using a basic inference
 configuration.
            $response = $client->converse([
                'modelId' => $modelId,
                'messages' => $conversation,
                'inferenceConfig' => [
                    'maxTokens' => 512,
                    'temperature' => 0.5
                ]
            ]);

            // Extract and return the response text.
            $responseText = $response['output']['message']['content'][0]['text'];
            return $responseText;
        } catch (AwsException $e) {
            echo "ERROR: Can't invoke {$modelId}. Reason: {$e-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}";
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to invoke model: " . $e-
>getAwsErrorMessage(), 0, $e);
        }
    }
}

$demo = new Converse();
echo $demo->converse();
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send
// a text message to Amazon Nova.

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func converse(_ textPrompt: String) async throws -> String {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-micro-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )
```

```
    // Create the ConverseInput to send to the model
    let input = ConverseInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseInput to the model
    let response = try await client.converse(input: input)

    // Extract and return the response text.
    if case let .message(msg) = response.output {
        if case let .text(textResponse) = msg.content![0] {
            return textResponse
        } else {
            return "No text response found in message content"
        }
    } else {
        return "No message found in converse output"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Invoke Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Nova
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};
```

```
try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models with an
 * asynchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client to generate streaming text
 responses.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure a streaming request
 * - Set up a stream handler to process the response chunks
 * - Process the streaming response
 */
public class ConverseStream {

    public static void converseStream() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
        // - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and
 cost
        // - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video,
 and text
        // - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy,
 speed, and cost
        //
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Create the message
        // The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from
 the user
```

```
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
paragraph";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Step 4: Configure the request
        // Optional parameters to control the model's response:
        // - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
        // - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
        //   OR
        // - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
        // Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
        ConverseStreamRequest request = ConverseStreamRequest.builder()
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                                .maxTokens(500)     // The maximum response
length
                                .temperature(0.5F)  // Using temperature for
randomness control
                        //.topP(0.9F)       // Alternative: use topP instead of
temperature
                ).build();

        // Step 5: Set up the stream handler
        // The stream handler processes chunks of the response as they arrive
        // - onContentBlockDelta: Processes each text chunk
        // - onError: Handles any errors during streaming
        var streamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            System.out.print(chunk.delta().text());
                            System.out.flush();  // Ensure immediate output of
each chunk
                        }).build())
                .onError(err -> System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s",
modelId, err.getMessage()))
                .build();

        // Step 6: Send the streaming request and process the response
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Attach the handler to process response chunks as they arrive
```

```
        // - Handle any errors during streaming
        try {
            client.converseStream(request, streamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
// to generate streaming text responses.
// It shows how to:
// - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - Create a message
// - Configure a streaming request
// - Process the streaming response

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
```

```
  ConversationRole,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Step 2: Specify which model to use
// Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
// - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and cost
// - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video, and
 text
// - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed, and
 cost
//
// For the most current model IDs, see:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-supported.html
const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Step 3: Create the message
// The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the user
const inputText =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one paragraph";
const message = {
  content: [{ text: inputText }],
  role: ConversationRole.USER,
};

// Step 4: Configure the streaming request
// Optional parameters to control the model's response:
// - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
// - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
//   OR
// - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
// Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
const request = {
  modelId,
  messages: [message],
  inferenceConfig: {
    maxTokens: 500, // The maximum response length
    temperature: 0.5, // Using temperature for randomness control
    //topP: 0.9,        // Alternative: use topP instead of temperature
  },
```

```
};

// Step 5: Send and process the streaming request
// - Send the request to the model
// - Process each chunk of the streaming response
try {
  const response = await client.send(new ConverseStreamCommand(request));

  for await (const chunk of response.stream) {
    if (chunk.contentBlockDelta) {
      // Print each text chunk as it arrives
      process.stdout.write(chunk.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text || "");
    }
  }
} catch (error) {
  console.error(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${error.message}`);
  process.exitCode = 1;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamOutput
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message
```

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
 * to generate streaming text responses.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message with a prompt
 * - Configure a streaming request with parameters
 * - Process the response stream in real time
 */
suspend fun main() {
    converseStream()
}

suspend fun converseStream(): String {
    // A buffer to collect the complete response
    val completeResponseBuffer = StringBuilder()

    // Create and configure the Bedrock runtime client
    BedrockRuntimeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        val modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        val prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in a
 paragraph."
        val message = Message {
            role = ConversationRole.User
            content = listOf(ContentBlock.Text(prompt))
        }

        // Configure the request with optional model parameters
        val request = ConverseStreamRequest {
            this.modelId = modelId
            messages = listOf(message)
            inferenceConfig {
                maxTokens = 500 // Maximum response length
                temperature = 0.5F // Lower values: more focused output
                // topP = 0.8F // Alternative to temperature
            }
        }
```

```
        // Process the streaming response
        runCatching {
            client.converseStream(request) { response ->
                response.stream?.collect { chunk ->
                    when (chunk) {
                        is ConverseStreamOutput.ContentBlockDelta -> {
                            // Process each text chunk as it arrives
                            chunk.value.delta?.asText()?.let { text ->
                                print(text)
                                System.out.flush() // Ensure immediate output
                                completeResponseBuffer.append(text)
                            }
                        }
                        else -> {} // Other output block types can be handled as
 needed
                    }
                }
            }
        }.onFailure { error ->
            error.message?.let { e -> System.err.println("ERROR: Can't invoke
 '$modelId'. Reason: $e") }
            throw RuntimeException("Failed to generate text with model $modelId:
 $error", error)
        }
    }

    return completeResponseBuffer.toString()
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Nova Text
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send a text
 message
// to Amazon Nova and print the response stream

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func printConverseStream(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters.
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
```

```
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseStreamInput to send to the model.
    let input = ConverseStreamInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseStreamInput to the model.
    let response = try await client.converseStream(input: input)

    // Extract the streaming response.
    guard let stream = response.stream else {
        print("No stream available")
        return
    }

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for try await event in stream {
        switch event {
        case .messagestart(_):
            print("\nNova Lite:")

        case .contentblockdelta(let deltaEvent):
            if case .text(let text) = deltaEvent.delta {
                print(text, terminator: "")
            }

        default:
            break
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Amazon Nova Lite.
model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv,
 and txt
```

```
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

The following code examples show how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.Extensions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Http;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

public static class ConverseToolScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
    The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
    input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve
 current weather data for a given location.
   */

    public static BedrockActionsWrapper _bedrockActionsWrapper = null!;
```

```
    public static WeatherTool _weatherTool = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;

    // Change this string to use a different model with Converse API.
    private static string model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

    private static string system_prompt = @"
        You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
        the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
        If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.
        If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and
 refer to it in your response.
        To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

        - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
        - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up
 information.
        - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
        - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.
        - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use
          emojis where appropriate.
        - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your
 purpose.
        - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools
 besides Weather_Tool.
        - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.
    "
    ;

    private static string default_prompt = "What is the weather like in
 Seattle?";

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int max_recursions = 5;

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
```

```
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Error)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddHttpClient()
                    .AddSingleton<IAmazonBedrockRuntime>(_ => new
AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1)) // Specify a region that has
access to the chosen model.
                    .AddTransient<BedrockActionsWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<WeatherTool>()
                    .RemoveAll<IHttpMessageHandlerBuilderFilter>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            await RunConversationAsync();

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        finally
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _bedrockActionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<BedrockActionsWrapper>();
        _weatherTool = host.Services.GetRequiredService<WeatherTool>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The conversation array.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> RunConversationAsync()
    {
        // Print the greeting and a short user guide
        PrintHeader();

        // Start with an empty conversation
        var conversation = new List<Message>();

        // Get the first user input
        var userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();

        while (userInput != null)
        {
            // Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            var message = new Message { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text = userInput } } };
            conversation.Add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            var bedrockResponse = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
returned its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            await ProcessModelResponseAsync(bedrockResponse, conversation,
max_recursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
        }
```

```
        PrintFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history including the next
message to send.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from Amazon Bedrock.</returns>
    private static async Task<ConverseResponse>
SendConversationToBedrock(List<Message> conversation)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tCalling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return await _bedrockActionsWrapper.SendConverseRequestAsync(model_id,
system_prompt, conversation, _weatherTool.GetToolSpec());
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions based on the stop reason.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response returned via Amazon
Bedrock.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls
allowed.</param>
    private static async Task ProcessModelResponseAsync(ConverseResponse
modelResponse, List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0)
        {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            Console.WriteLine("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(modelResponse.Output.Message);
```

```
        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "tool_use")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            await HandleToolUseAsync(modelResponse.Output, conversation,
maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "end_turn")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process
            PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.Output.Message.Content[0].Text);
            if (!_interactive)
            {
                default_prompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
    /// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation
is sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response containing the tool use
request.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls
allowed.</param>
    public static async Task HandleToolUseAsync(ConverseOutput modelResponse,
List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        // Initialize an empty list of tool results
        var toolResults = new List<ContentBlock>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        foreach (var contentBlock in modelResponse.Message.Content)
        {
            if (!String.IsNullOrEmpty(contentBlock.Text))
            {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
```

```
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.Text);
            }

            if (contentBlock.ToolUse != null)
            {
                // If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
tool
                var toolResponse = await InvokeTool(contentBlock.ToolUse);

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                toolResults.Add(new ContentBlock
                {
                    ToolResult = new ToolResultBlock()
                    {
                        ToolUseId = toolResponse.ToolUseId,
                        Content = new List<ToolResultContentBlock>()
                            { new ToolResultContentBlock { Json =
toolResponse.Content } }
                    }
                });
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        var message = new Message() { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
toolResults };

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
    /// If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="payload">The payload containing the tool name and input
data.</param>
    /// <returns>The tool's response or an error message.</returns>
    public static async Task<ToolResponse> InvokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload)
    {
        var toolName = payload.Name;

        if (toolName == "Weather_Tool")
        {
            var inputData = payload.Input.AsDictionary();
            PrintToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            var weatherResponse = await
_weatherTool.FetchWeatherDataAsync(inputData["latitude"].ToString(),
inputData["longitude"].ToString());
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
weatherResponse };
        }
        else
        {
            var errorMessage = $"\tThe requested tool with name '{toolName}' does
not exist.";
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
new { error = true, message = errorMessage } };
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
    /// Returns null if the user enters 'x' to exit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="prompt">The prompt to display to the user.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's input or null if the user chooses to exit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetUserInputAsync(string prompt = "\tYour
weather info request:")
    {
        var userInput = default_prompt;
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('*', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"{prompt} (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = Console.ReadLine();
```

```
        }

        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(userInput))
        {
            prompt = "\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of
a city";
            return await GetUserInputAsync(prompt);
        }

        if (userInput.ToLowerInvariant() == "x")
        {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the welcome message and usage guide for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintHeader()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
        ==================================================

        This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
locations.
        You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
coordinates. Weather information
        will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API.

        Example queries:
        - What's the weather like in New York?
        - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
        - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

        To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

        P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English!
        Have fun and experiment with the app!
        ");
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the footer information for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintFooter()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!

        For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
        ==================================================
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs information about the tool use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toolName">The name of the tool being used.</param>
    /// <param name="inputData">The input data for the tool.</param>
    public static void PrintToolUse(string toolName, Dictionary<string, Document>
 inputData)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\n\tInvoking tool: {toolName} with input:
 {inputData["latitude"].ToString()}, {inputData["longitude"].ToString()}...\n");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the model's response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The model's response message.</param>
    public static void PrintModelResponse(string message)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tThe model's response:\n");
        Console.WriteLine(message);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Weather tool that will be invoked when requested by the Bedrock response.
/// </summary>
public class WeatherTool
{
    private readonly ILogger<WeatherTool> _logger;
    private readonly IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory;

    public WeatherTool(ILogger<WeatherTool> logger, IHttpClientFactory
 httpClientFactory)
    {
        _logger = logger;
        _httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    /// defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    /// For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-
schema/reference.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The tool specification for the Weather tool.</returns>
    public ToolSpecification GetToolSpec()
    {
        ToolSpecification toolSpecification = new ToolSpecification();

        toolSpecification.Name = "Weather_Tool";
        toolSpecification.Description = "Get the current weather for a given
 location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";

        Document toolSpecDocument = Document.FromObject(
            new
```

```
            {
                type = "object",
                properties = new
                {
                    latitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location."
                    },
                    longitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location."
                    }
                },
                required = new[] { "latitude", "longitude" }
            });

        toolSpecification.InputSchema = new ToolInputSchema() { Json =
 toolSpecDocument };
        return toolSpecification;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    /// Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="latitude">The latitude of the location.</param>
    /// <param name="longitude">The longitude of the location.</param>
    /// <returns>The weather data or an error message.</returns>
    public async Task<Document> FetchWeatherDataAsync(string latitude, string
 longitude)
    {
        string endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";

        try
        {
            var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            var response = await httpClient.GetAsync($"{endpoint}?
latitude={latitude}&longitude={longitude}&current_weather=True");
            response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();
```

```
            var weatherData = await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            Document weatherDocument = Document.FromObject(
                new { weather_data = weatherData });

            return weatherDocument;
        }
        catch (HttpRequestException e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Unexpected error fetching weather data:
 {Message}", e.Message);
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/>
 class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
```

```
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
```

```
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse
 request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/*
 This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
 The program interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
 input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
 */
public class BedrockScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
```

```
    private static String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    private static String defaultPrompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";
    private static WeatherTool weatherTool = new WeatherTool();

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int maxRecursions = 5;
    static BedrockActions bedrockActions = new BedrockActions();
    public static boolean interactive = true;

    private static final String systemPrompt = """
            You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for
user-specified locations using only
            the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
coordinates from the location yourself.
            If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and
refer to it in your response.
            To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

            - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before
each step.
            - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up
information.
            - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
            - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
suggest other options.
            - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
reports concise. Sparingly use
              emojis where appropriate.
            - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your
purpose.
            - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools
besides Weather_Tool.
            - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
sending the complete response.
            """;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
                ==================================================
```

```
                This assistant provides current weather information for user-
specified locations.
                You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates.

                Example queries:
                - What's the weather like in New York?
                - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
                - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

                To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

                P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using
 English!
                Have fun and experiment with the app!
                """);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        try {
            runConversation(scanner);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("There was a problem running the scenario: " +
 ex.getMessage());
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature
 Scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
     */
    private static List<Message> runConversation(Scanner scanner) {
        List<Message> conversation = new ArrayList<>();

        // Get the first user input
        String userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        System.out.println(userInput);
```

```
        while (userInput != null) {
            ContentBlock block = ContentBlock.builder()
                    .text(userInput)
                    .build();

            List<ContentBlock> blockList = new ArrayList<>();
            blockList.add(block);

            Message message = Message.builder()
                    .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                    .content(blockList)
                    .build();

            conversation.add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock.
            ConverseResponse bedrockResponse =
sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
returned its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0.
            processModelResponse(bedrockResponse, conversation, maxRecursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application.
            userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        }
        printFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /**
     * Processes the response from the model and updates the conversation
accordingly.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model
     * @param conversation  the ongoing conversation
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursions allowed
     */
    private static void processModelResponse(ConverseResponse modelResponse,
List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0) {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
```

```
            System.out.println("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.add(modelResponse.output().message());

        String modelResponseVal = modelResponse.stopReasonAsString();
        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("tool_use") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            handleToolUse(modelResponse.output(), conversation, maxRecursion -
1);
        }

        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("end_turn") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process

PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.output().message().content().get(0).text());
            if (!interactive) {
                defaultPrompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Handles the use of a tool by the model in a conversation.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model, which may include a tool
use request
     * @param conversation  the current conversation, which will be updated with
the tool use results
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursive calls allowed to
handle the model's response
     */
    private static void handleToolUse(ConverseOutput modelResponse, List<Message>
conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        List<ContentBlock> toolResults = new ArrayList<>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for (ContentBlock contentBlock : modelResponse.message().content()) {
            if (contentBlock.text() != null && !contentBlock.text().isEmpty()) {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
```

```
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.text());
            }

            if (contentBlock.toolUse() != null) {
                ToolResponse toolResponse = invokeTool(contentBlock.toolUse());

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                List<ToolResultContentBlock> contentBlockList = new
ArrayList<>();
                ToolResultContentBlock block = ToolResultContentBlock.builder()
                        .json(toolResponse.getContent())
                        .build();
                contentBlockList.add(block);

                ToolResultBlock toolResultBlock = ToolResultBlock.builder()
                        .toolUseId(toolResponse.getToolUseId())
                        .content(contentBlockList)
                        .build();

                ContentBlock contentBlock1 = ContentBlock.builder()
                        .toolResult(toolResultBlock)
                        .build();

                toolResults.add(contentBlock1);
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        Message message = Message.builder()
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .content(toolResults)
                .build();

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        //conversation.add(message);
        conversation.add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        processModelResponse(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
```

```
    }

    // Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
    // If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    private static ToolResponse invokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload) {
        String toolName = payload.name();

        if (Objects.equals(toolName, "Weather_Tool")) {
            Map<String, Document> inputData = payload.input().asMap();
            printToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            Document weatherResponse =
weatherTool.fetchWeatherData(inputData.get("latitude").toString(),
inputData.get("longitude").toString());

            ToolResponse toolResponse = new ToolResponse();
            toolResponse.setContent(weatherResponse);
            toolResponse.setToolUseId(payload.toolUseId());
            return toolResponse;
        } else {
            String errorMessage = "The requested tool with name " + toolName + "
does not exist.";
            System.out.println(errorMessage);
            return null;
        }
    }

    public static void printToolUse(String toolName, Map<String, Document>
inputData) {
        System.out.println("Invoking tool: " + toolName + "
with input: " + inputData.get("latitude").toString() + ", " +
inputData.get("longitude").toString() + "...");
    }

    private static void PrintModelResponse(String message) {
        System.out.println("\tThe model's response:\n");
        System.out.println(message);
        System.out.println("");
    }

    private static ConverseResponse sendConversationToBedrock(List<Message>
conversation) {
```

```
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        try {
            return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, weatherTool.getToolSpec());
        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
             System.err.println("Model is not ready. Please try again later: " +
ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Bedrock service error: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (RuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        }
    }

    private static ConverseResponse
sendConversationToBedrockwithSpec(List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification
toolSpec) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, toolSpec);
    }

    public static String getUserInput(String prompt, Scanner scanner) {
        String userInput = defaultPrompt;
        if (interactive) {
            System.out.println("*".repeat(80));
            System.out.println(prompt + " (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = scanner.nextLine();
        }

        if (userInput == null || userInput.trim().isEmpty()) {
            return getUserInput("\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g.,
the name of a city", scanner);
        }

        if (userInput.equalsIgnoreCase("x")) {
            return null;
```

```
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void printFooter() {
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We
 hope you
                learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today!

                For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages,
 have a look at:
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
                ==================================================
                """);
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
public class WeatherTool {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(WeatherTool.class);
    private static java.net.http.HttpClient httpClient = null;

    /**
     * Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
     * defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
     * For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-
schema/reference.
     *
     * @return The tool specification for the Weather tool.
     */
    public ToolSpecification getToolSpec() {
        Map<String, Document> latitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        latitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        latitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
 latitude of the location."));

        // Create the nested "longitude" object
        Map<String, Document> longitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        longitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        longitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
 longitude of the location."));

        // Create the "properties" object
        Map<String, Document> propertiesMap = new HashMap<>();
        propertiesMap.put("latitude", Document.fromMap(latitudeMap));
        propertiesMap.put("longitude", Document.fromMap(longitudeMap));

        // Create the "required" array
        List<Document> requiredList = new ArrayList<>();
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("latitude"));
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("longitude"));

        // Create the root object
        Map<String, Document> rootMap = new HashMap<>();
        rootMap.put("type", Document.fromString("object"));
        rootMap.put("properties", Document.fromMap(propertiesMap));
        rootMap.put("required", Document.fromList(requiredList));
```

```
        // Now create the Document representing the JSON schema
        Document document = Document.fromMap(rootMap);

        ToolSpecification specification = ToolSpecification.builder()
            .name("Weather_Tool")
            .description("Get the current weather for a given location, based on
 its WGS84 coordinates.")
            .inputSchema(ToolInputSchema.builder()
                .json(document)
                .build())
            .build();

        return specification;
    }

    /**
     * Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude.
     *
     * @param latitude  the latitude coordinate
     * @param longitude the longitude coordinate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the weather data as a JSON
 string
     */
    public Document fetchWeatherData(String latitude, String longitude) {
        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();

        // Ensure no extra double quotes
        latitude = latitude.replace("\"", "");
        longitude = longitude.replace("\"", "");

        String endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
        String url = String.format("%s?latitude=%s&longitude=
%s&current_weather=True", endpoint, latitude, longitude);

        HttpRequest request = HttpRequest.newBuilder()
            .uri(URI.create(url))
            .build();

        try {
            HttpResponse<String> response = httpClient.send(request,
 HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.ofString());
            if (response.statusCode() == 200) {
                String weatherJson = response.body();
                System.out.println(weatherJson);
```

```
                ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                Map<String, Object> rawMap = objectMapper.readValue(weatherJson,
new TypeReference<Map<String, Object>>() {});
                Map<String, Document> documentMap = convertToDocumentMap(rawMap);


                Document weatherDocument = Document.fromMap(documentMap);
                System.out.println(weatherDocument);
                return weatherDocument;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data: " +
response.statusCode());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.out.println("Error fetching weather data: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data", e);
        }

    }

    private static Map<String, Document> convertToDocumentMap(Map<String, Object>
inputMap) {
        Map<String, Document> result = new HashMap<>();
        for (Map.Entry<String, Object> entry : inputMap.entrySet()) {
            result.put(entry.getKey(), convertToDocument(entry.getValue()));
        }
        return result;
    }

    // Convert different types of Objects to Document
    private static Document convertToDocument(Object value) {
        if (value instanceof Map) {
            return Document.fromMap(convertToDocumentMap((Map<String, Object>)
value));
        } else if (value instanceof Integer) {
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromInteger((Integer) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Double) {  //
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromDouble((Double) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Boolean) {
            return Document.fromBoolean((Boolean) value);
        } else if (value instanceof String) {
            return Document.fromString((String) value);
        }
        return Document.fromNull(); // Handle null values safely
```

```
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
    /**
     * Sends an asynchronous converse request to the AI model.
     *
     * @param modelId      the unique identifier of the AI model to be used for
the converse request
     * @param systemPrompt the system prompt to be included in the converse
request
     * @param conversation a list of messages representing the conversation
history
     * @param toolSpec     the specification of the tool to be used in the
converse request
     * @return the converse response received from the AI model
     */
    public ConverseResponse sendConverseRequestAsync(String modelId, String
systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec) {
        List<Tool> toolList = new ArrayList<>();
        Tool tool = Tool.builder()
            .toolSpec(toolSpec)
            .build();

        toolList.add(tool);

        ToolConfiguration configuration = ToolConfiguration.builder()
            .tools(toolList)
            .build();

        SystemContentBlock block = SystemContentBlock.builder()
            .text(systemPrompt)
            .build();

        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
            .modelId(modelId)
            .system(block)
            .messages(conversation)
            .toolConfig(configuration)
            .build();
```

```
        try {
            ConverseResponse response = getClient().converse(request).join();
            return response;

        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Model is not ready: " + ex.getMessage(),
 ex);
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to converse with Bedrock model: "
 + ex.getMessage(), ex);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/* Before running this JavaScript code example, set up your development
 environment, including your credentials.
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and
 a weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.*/

import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
```

```
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";
const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
import data from "./questions.json" with { type: "json" };
import toolConfig from "./tool_config.json" with { type: "json" };

const systemPrompt = [
  {
    text:
      "You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only\n" +
      "the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.\n" +
      "If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer
 to it in your response.\n" +
      "To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.\n" +
      "If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.\n" +
      "\n" +
      "- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.\n" +
      "- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
 \n" +
      "- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.\n" +
      "- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.\n" +
      "- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use\n" +
      "  emojis where appropriate.\n" +
      "- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
 \n" +
      "- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.\n" +
      "- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.",
```

```
  },
];
const tools_config = toolConfig;

/// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
async function askQuestion(userMessage) {
  // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
  // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
  const max_recursions = 5;
  const messages = [
    {
      role: "user",
      content: [{ text: userMessage }],
    },
  ];
  try {
    const response = await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages);
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
}

// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
 Bedrock, and returns the response.
// param "messages" - The conversation history including the next message to
 send.
// return - The response from Amazon Bedrock.
async function SendConversationtoBedrock(messages) {
  const bedRockRuntimeClient = new BedrockRuntimeClient({
    region: "us-east-1",
  });
  try {
    const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    const response = await bedRockRuntimeClient.send(
      new ConverseCommand({
        modelId: modelId,
        messages: messages,
        system: systemPrompt,
        toolConfig: tools_config,
      }),
    );
    return response;
```

```
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ModelNotReady") {
      console.log(
        "`${caught.name}` - Model not ready, please wait and try again.",
      );
      throw caught;
    }
    if (caught.name === "BedrockRuntimeException") {
      console.log(
        '`${caught.name}` - "Error occurred while sending Converse request.',
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  }
}

// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the necessary
 actions based on the stop reason.
// param "response" - The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
// param "messages" - The conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  if (max_recursions <= 0) {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "tool_use") {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions - 1);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "end_turn") {
    const messageToPrint = response.output.message.content[0].text;
    console.log(messageToPrint.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
  }
}
// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
 tool's response back to Bedrock.
// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
 sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
// param "response" - the model's response containing the tool use request.
// param "messages" - the conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  const toolResultFinal = [];
  try {
    const output_message = response.output.message;
```

```
    messages.push(output_message);
    const toolRequests = output_message.content;
    const toolMessage = toolRequests[0].text;
    console.log(toolMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
    for (const toolRequest of toolRequests) {
      if (Object.hasOwn(toolRequest, "toolUse")) {
        const toolUse = toolRequest.toolUse;
        const latitude = toolUse.input.latitude;
        const longitude = toolUse.input.longitude;
        const toolUseID = toolUse.toolUseId;
        console.log(
          `Requesting tool ${toolUse.name}, Tool use id ${toolUseID}`,
        );
        if (toolUse.name === "Weather_Tool") {
          try {
            const current_weather = await callWeatherTool(
              longitude,
              latitude,
            ).then((current_weather) => current_weather);
            const currentWeather = current_weather;
            const toolResult = {
              toolResult: {
                toolUseId: toolUseID,
                content: [{ json: currentWeather }],
              },
            };
            toolResultFinal.push(toolResult);
          } catch (err) {
            console.log("An error occurred. ", err);
          }
        }
      }
    }

    const toolResultMessage = {
      role: "user",
      content: toolResultFinal,
    };
    messages.push(toolResultMessage);
    // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(
      await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages),
      messages,
    );
```

```
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("An error occurred. ", error);
  }
}
// Call the Weathertool.
// param = longitude of location
// param = latitude of location
async function callWeatherTool(longitude, latitude) {
  // Open-Meteo API endpoint
  const apiUrl = `https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast?latitude=
${latitude}&longitude=${longitude}&current_weather=true`;

  // Fetch the weather data.
  return fetch(apiUrl)
    .then((response) => {
      return response.json().then((current_weather) => {
        return current_weather;
      });
    })
    .catch((error) => {
      console.error("Error fetching weather data:", error);
    });
}
/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "input",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo! \n" +
    "This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations. " +
    "You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates." +
    "Weather information will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo
 API." +
    "For the purposes of this example, we'll use in order the questions in ./
questions.json :\n" +
    "What's the weather like in Seattle? " +
    "What's the best kind of cat? " +
```

```
    "Where is the warmest city in Washington State right now? " +
    "What's the warmest city in California right now?\n" +
    "To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.\n" +
    "Have fun and experiment with the app by editing the questions in ./
questions.json! " +
    "P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English! ",

  { header: true },
);
const displayAskQuestion1 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion1",
  "Press enter to ask question number 1 (default is 'What's the weather like in
 Seattle?')",
);

const askQuestion1 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion1",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage1 = data.questions["question-1"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage1);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion2 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion2",
  "Press enter to ask question number 2 (default is 'What's the best kind of
 cat?')",
);

const askQuestion2 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion2",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage2 = data.questions["question-2"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage2);
  },
);
const displayAskQuestion3 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion3",
  "Press enter to ask question number 3 (default is 'Where is the warmest city in
 Washington State right now?')",
);

const askQuestion3 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion3",
```

```
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage3 = data.questions["question-3"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage3);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion4 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion4",
  "Press enter to ask question number 4 (default is 'What's the warmest city in
 California right now?')",
);

const askQuestion4 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion4",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage4 = data.questions["question-4"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage4);
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you\n" +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!\n" +
    "For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:\n" +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Converse Tool Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion1,
  askQuestion1,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion2,
  askQuestion2,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion3,
  askQuestion3,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion4,
  askQuestion4,
```

```
  pressEnter,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

Invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

The following code examples show how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
// Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

// Define the image generation prompt for the model.
var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot.";

// Create a random seed between 0 and 858,993,459
int seed = new Random().Next(0, 858993460);

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    taskType = "TEXT_IMAGE",
    textToImageParams = new
    {
        text = prompt
    },
    imageGenerationConfig = new
```

```
    {
        seed,
        quality = "standard",
        width = 512,
        height = 512,
        numberOfImages = 1
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract the image data.
    var base64Image = modelResponse["images"]?[0].ToString() ?? "";

    // Save the image in a local folder
    string savedPath = AmazonNovaCanvas.InvokeModel.SaveBase64Image(base64Image);
    Console.WriteLine($"Image saved to: {savedPath}");
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelResponse;

import java.security.SecureRandom;
import java.util.Base64;

import static com.example.bedrockruntime.libs.ImageTools.displayImage;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Canvas to generate images.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Configure the image generation parameters
 * - Send a request to generate an image
 * - Process the response and handle the generated image
 */
public class InvokeModel {

    public static byte[] invokeModel() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeClient client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
```

```
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Configure the generation parameters and create the request
        // First, set the main parameters:
        // - prompt: Text description of the image to generate
        // - seed: Random number for reproducible generation (0 to 858,993,459)
        String prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";
        int seed = new SecureRandom().nextInt(858_993_460);

        // Then, create the request using a template with the following
 structure:
        // - taskType: TEXT_IMAGE (specifies text-to-image generation)
        // - textToImageParams: Contains the text prompt
        // - imageGenerationConfig: Contains optional generation settings (seed,
 quality, etc.)
        // For a list of available request parameters, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/nova/latest/userguide/image-gen-req-resp-
structure.html
        String request = """
                {
                    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
                    "textToImageParams": {
                        "text": "{{prompt}}"
                    },
                    "imageGenerationConfig": {
                        "seed": {{seed}},
                        "quality": "standard"
                    }
                }"""
                .replace("{{prompt}}", prompt)
                .replace("{{seed}}", String.valueOf(seed));

        // Step 4: Send and process the request
        // - Send the request to the model using InvokeModelResponse
        // - Extract the Base64-encoded image from the JSON response
        // - Convert the encoded image to a byte array and return it
```

```
        try {
            InvokeModelResponse response = client.invokeModel(builder -> builder
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(request))
            );

            JSONObject responseBody = new
 JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());
            // Convert the Base64 string to byte array for better handling
            return Base64.getDecoder().decode(
                    new JSONPointer("/
images/0").queryFrom(responseBody).toString()
            );

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s%n", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");
        byte[] imageData = invokeModel();
        displayImage(imageData);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
import { saveImage } from "../../utils/image-creation.js";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Canvas to generate images.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Configure the image generation parameters
 * - Send a request to generate an image
 * - Process the response and handle the generated image
 *
 * @returns {Promise<string>} Base64-encoded image data
 */
export const invokeModel = async () => {
  // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
  // Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Step 2: Specify which model to use
  // For the latest available models, see:
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-supported.html
  const modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

  // Step 3: Configure the request payload
  // First, set the main parameters:
  // - prompt: Text description of the image to generate
  // - seed: Random number for reproducible generation (0 to 858,993,459)
  const prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";
  const seed = Math.floor(Math.random() * 858993460);

  // Then, create the payload using the following structure:
  // - taskType: TEXT_IMAGE (specifies text-to-image generation)
  // - textToImageParams: Contains the text prompt
  // - imageGenerationConfig: Contains optional generation settings (seed,
 quality, etc.)
  // For a list of available request parameters, see:
```

```
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/nova/latest/userguide/image-gen-req-resp-
structure.html
  const payload = {
    taskType: "TEXT_IMAGE",
    textToImageParams: {
      text: prompt,
    },
    imageGenerationConfig: {
      seed,
      quality: "standard",
    },
  };

  // Step 4: Send and process the request
  // - Embed the payload in a request object
  // - Send the request to the model
  // - Extract and return the generated image data from the response
  try {
    const request = {
      modelId,
      body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    };
    const response = await client.send(new InvokeModelCommand(request));

    const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(response.body);
    // The response includes an array of base64-encoded PNG images
    /** @type {{images: string[]}} */
    const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
    return responseBody.images[0]; // Base64-encoded image data
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${error.message}`);
    throw error;
  }
};

// If run directly, execute the example and save the generated image
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  console.log("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");
  invokeModel()
    .then(async (imageData) => {
      const imagePath = await saveImage(imageData, "nova-canvas");
      // Example path: javascriptv3/example_code/bedrock-runtime/output/nova-
canvas/image-01.png
      console.log(`Image saved to: ${imagePath}`);
```

```
    })
    .catch((error) => {
      console.error("Execution failed:", error);
      process.exitCode = 1;
    });
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
# Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas

import base64
import json
import os
import random

import boto3

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID.
model_id = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0"

# Define the image generation prompt for the model.
prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot."

# Generate a random seed between 0 and 858,993,459
seed = random.randint(0, 858993460)
```

```
# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
    "textToImageParams": {"text": prompt},
    "imageGenerationConfig": {
        "seed": seed,
        "quality": "standard",
        "height": 512,
        "width": 512,
        "numberOfImages": 1,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract the image data.
base64_image_data = model_response["images"][0]

# Save the generated image to a local folder.
i, output_dir = 1, "output"
if not os.path.exists(output_dir):
    os.makedirs(output_dir)
while os.path.exists(os.path.join(output_dir, f"nova_canvas_{i}.png")):
    i += 1

image_data = base64.b64decode(base64_image_data)

image_path = os.path.join(output_dir, f"nova_canvas_{i}.png")
with open(image_path, "wb") as file:
    file.write(image_data)

print(f"The generated image has been saved to {image_path}")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
// Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas

import AWSBedrockRuntime
import AWSSDKIdentity
import Foundation

struct NovaImageOutput: Decodable {
    let images: [Data]
}

func generateImage(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {
    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    config.awsCredentialIdentityResolver = try SSOAWSCredentialIdentityResolver()

    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0"

    //  Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    let input = InvokeModelInput(
        accept: "application/json",
        body: """
            {
                "textToImageParams": {
                    "text": "\(textPrompt)"
                },
```

```
                "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
                "imageGenerationConfig": {
                    "seed": 42,
                    "quality": "standard",
                    "width": 512,
                    "height": 512,
                    "numberOfImages": 1
                }
            }
            """.data(using: .utf8),
        modelId: modelId
    )

    // Invoke the model with the request.
    let response = try await client.invokeModel(input: input)

    // Decode the response body.
    let output = try JSONDecoder().decode(NovaImageOutput.self, from:
 response.body!)

    // Extract the image data.
    guard let data = output.images.first else {
        print("No image data found")
        return
    }

    // Save the generated image to a local folder.
    let fileURL = URL.documentsDirectory.appending(path: "nova_canvas.png")
    print(fileURL)
    try data.write(to: fileURL)
    print("Image is saved at \(fileURL)")
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Nova Reel for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt

Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

```
"""
This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a
 text prompt.

It shows how to:
- Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
- Configure a text-to-video request
- Submit an asynchronous job for video generation
- Poll for job completion status
- Access the generated video from S3
"""

import random
import time

import boto3

# Replace with your own S3 bucket to store the generated video
# Format: s3://your-bucket-name
OUTPUT_S3_URI = "s3://REPLACE-WITH-YOUR-S3-BUCKET-NAME"


def start_text_to_video_generation_job(bedrock_runtime, prompt, output_s3_uri):
```

```
    """
    Starts an asynchronous text-to-video generation job using Amazon Nova Reel.

    :param bedrock_runtime: The Bedrock runtime client
    :param prompt: The text description of the video to generate
    :param output_s3_uri: S3 URI where the generated video will be stored

    :return: The invocation ARN of the async job
    """
    # Specify the model ID for text-to-video generation
    model_id = "amazon.nova-reel-v1:0"

    # Generate a random seed between 0 and 2,147,483,646
    # This helps ensure unique video generation results
    seed = random.randint(0, 2147483646)

    # Configure the video generation request with additional parameters
    model_input = {
        "taskType": "TEXT_VIDEO",
        "textToVideoParams": {"text": prompt},
        "videoGenerationConfig": {
            "fps": 24,
            "durationSeconds": 6,
            "dimension": "1280x720",
            "seed": seed,
        },
    }

    # Specify the S3 location for the output video
    output_config = {"s3OutputDataConfig": {"s3Uri": output_s3_uri}}

    # Invoke the model asynchronously
    response = bedrock_runtime.start_async_invoke(
        modelId=model_id, modelInput=model_input, outputDataConfig=output_config
    )

    invocation_arn = response["invocationArn"]

    return invocation_arn


def query_job_status(bedrock_runtime, invocation_arn):
    """
    Queries the status of an asynchronous video generation job.
```

```
    :param bedrock_runtime: The Bedrock runtime client
    :param invocation_arn: The ARN of the async invocation to check

    :return: The runtime response containing the job status and details
    """
    return bedrock_runtime.get_async_invoke(invocationArn=invocation_arn)


def main():
    """
    Main function that demonstrates the complete workflow for generating
    a video from a text prompt using Amazon Nova Reel.
    """
    # Create a Bedrock Runtime client
    # Note: Credentials will be loaded from the environment or AWS CLI config
    bedrock_runtime = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

    # Configure the text prompt and output location
    prompt = "Closeup of a cute old steampunk robot. Camera zoom in."

    # Verify the S3 URI has been set to a valid bucket
    if "REPLACE-WITH-YOUR-S3-BUCKET-NAME" in OUTPUT_S3_URI:
        print("ERROR: You must replace the OUTPUT_S3_URI with your own S3 bucket
 URI")
        return

    print("Submitting video generation job...")
    invocation_arn = start_text_to_video_generation_job(
        bedrock_runtime, prompt, OUTPUT_S3_URI
    )
    print(f"Job started with invocation ARN: {invocation_arn}")

    # Poll for job completion
    while True:
        print("\nPolling job status...")
        job = query_job_status(bedrock_runtime, invocation_arn)
        status = job["status"]

        if status == "Completed":
            bucket_uri = job["outputDataConfig"]["s3OutputDataConfig"]["s3Uri"]
            print(f"\nSuccess! The video is available at: {bucket_uri}/
output.mp4")
            break
```

```
        elif status == "Failed":
            print(
                f"\nVideo generation failed: {job.get('failureMessage', 'Unknown
 error')}"
            )
            break
        else:
            print("In progress. Waiting 15 seconds...")
            time.sleep(15)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - GetAsyncInvoke
  - StartAsyncInvoke

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

```
// This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from
 a text prompt.
// It shows how to:
// - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - Configure a text-to-video request
// - Submit an asynchronous job for video generation
// - Poll for job completion status
// - Access the generated video from S3
```

```
import AWSBedrockRuntime
import Foundation
import Smithy

func startTextToVideoGenerationJob(
    bedrockRuntimeClient: BedrockRuntimeClient, prompt: String, outputS3Uri:
 String
) async throws -> String? {
    // Specify the model ID for text-to-video generation
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-reel-v1:0"

    // Configure the video generation request with additional parameters
    let modelInputSource: [String: Any] = [
        "taskType": "TEXT_VIDEO",
        "textToVideoParams": [
            "text": "\(prompt)"
        ],
        "videoGenerationConfig": [
            "durationSeconds": 6,
            "fps": 24,
            "dimension": "1280x720",
        ],
    ]

    let modelInput = try Document.make(from: modelInputSource)

    let input = StartAsyncInvokeInput(
        modelId: modelId,
        modelInput: modelInput,
        outputDataConfig: .s3outputdataconfig(
            BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.AsyncInvokeS3OutputDataConfig(
                s3Uri: outputS3Uri
            )
        )
    )

    // Invoke the model asynchronously
    let output = try await bedrockRuntimeClient.startAsyncInvoke(input: input)
    return output.invocationArn
}

func queryJobStatus(
    bedrockRuntimeClient: BedrockRuntimeClient,
    invocationArn: String?
```

```
) async throws -> GetAsyncInvokeOutput {
    try await bedrockRuntimeClient.getAsyncInvoke(
        input: GetAsyncInvokeInput(invocationArn: invocationArn))
}

func main() async throws {
    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Specify the S3 location for the output video
    let bucket = "s3://REPLACE-WITH-YOUR-S3-BUCKET-NAM"

    print("Submitting video generation job...")
    let invocationArn = try await startTextToVideoGenerationJob(
        bedrockRuntimeClient: client,
        prompt: "A pomegranate juice in a railway station",
        outputS3Uri: bucket
    )
    print("Job started with invocation ARN: \(String(describing:invocationArn))")

    // Poll for job completion
    var status: BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.AsyncInvokeStatus?
    var isReady = false
    var hasFailed = false

    while !isReady && !hasFailed {
        print("\nPolling job status...")
        status = try await queryJobStatus(
            bedrockRuntimeClient: client, invocationArn: invocationArn
        ).status
        switch status {
        case .completed:
            isReady = true
            print("Video is ready\nCheck S3 bucket: \(bucket)")
        case .failed:
            hasFailed = true
            print("Something went wrong")
        case .inProgress:
            print("Job is in progress...")
            try await Task.sleep(nanoseconds: 15 * 1_000_000_000)  // 15 seconds
```

```
        default:
            isReady = true
        }
    }
}

do {
    try await main()
} catch {
    print("An error occurred: \(error)")
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - GetAsyncInvoke
  - StartAsyncInvoke

Amazon Titan Image Generator for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

Invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

The following code examples show how to invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// InvokeModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



type TitanImageRequest struct {
 TaskType              string                `json:"taskType"`
 TextToImageParams     TextToImageParams     `json:"textToImageParams"`
 ImageGenerationConfig ImageGenerationConfig `json:"imageGenerationConfig"`
}
type TextToImageParams struct {
 Text string `json:"text"`
}
type ImageGenerationConfig struct {
 NumberOfImages int     `json:"numberOfImages"`
 Quality        string  `json:"quality"`
 CfgScale       float64 `json:"cfgScale"`
 Height         int     `json:"height"`
 Width          int     `json:"width"`
 Seed           int64   `json:"seed"`
}

type TitanImageResponse struct {
 Images []string `json:"images"`
}

// Invokes the Titan Image model to create an image using the input provided
// in the request body.
```

```
func (wrapper InvokeModelWrapper) InvokeTitanImage(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string, seed int64) (string, error) {
 modelId := "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1"

 body, err := json.Marshal(TitanImageRequest{
  TaskType: "TEXT_IMAGE",
  TextToImageParams: TextToImageParams{
   Text: prompt,
  },
  ImageGenerationConfig: ImageGenerationConfig{
   NumberOfImages: 1,
   Quality:        "standard",
   CfgScale:       8.0,
   Height:         512,
   Width:          512,
   Seed:           seed,
  },
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to marshal", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModel(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 var response TitanImageResponse
 if err := json.Unmarshal(output.Body, &response); err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }

 base64ImageData := response.Images[0]

 return base64ImageData, nil

}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
// Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.security.SecureRandom;

import static com.example.bedrockruntime.libs.ImageTools.displayImage;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Image G1.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-image.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
                    "textToImageParams": { "text": "{{prompt}}" },
                    "imageGenerationConfig": { "seed": {{seed}} }
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the image generation.
        var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";

        // Get a random 31-bit seed for the image generation (max.
 2,147,483,647).
        var seed = new BigInteger(31, new SecureRandom());

        // Embed the prompt and seed in the model's native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate
                .replace("{{prompt}}", prompt)
                .replace("{{seed}}", seed.toString());

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated image data from the model's response.
            var base64ImageData = new JSONPointer("/
images/0").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();

            return base64ImageData;
```

```
        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");

        String base64ImageData = invokeModel();

        displayImage(base64ImageData);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
    public function invokeTitanImage(string $prompt, int $seed)
    {
        // The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        // For the format, ranges, and default values for Titan Image models
 refer to:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-image.html

        $base64_image_data = "";
```

```
        try {
            $modelId = 'amazon.titan-image-generator-v1';
            $request = json_encode([
                'taskType' => 'TEXT_IMAGE',
                'textToImageParams' => [
                    'text' => $prompt
                ],
                'imageGenerationConfig' => [
                    'numberOfImages' => 1,
                    'quality' => 'standard',
                    'cfgScale' => 8.0,
                    'height' => 512,
                    'width' => 512,
                    'seed' => $seed
                ]
            ]);
            $result = $this->bedrockRuntimeClient->invokeModel([
                'contentType' => 'application/json',
                'body' => $request,
                'modelId' => $modelId,
            ]);
            $response_body = json_decode($result['body']);
            $base64_image_data = $response_body->images[0];
        } catch (Exception $e) {
            echo "Error: ({$e->getCode()}) - {$e->getMessage()}\n";
        }

        return $base64_image_data;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
# Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Titan Image
 Generator

import base64
import boto3
import json
import os
import random

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Image Generator G1.
model_id = "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1"

# Define the image generation prompt for the model.
prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot."

# Generate a random seed.
seed = random.randint(0, 2147483647)

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
    "textToImageParams": {"text": prompt},
    "imageGenerationConfig": {
        "numberOfImages": 1,
        "quality": "standard",
        "cfgScale": 8.0,
        "height": 512,
        "width": 512,
        "seed": seed,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the response body.
```

```
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract the image data.
base64_image_data = model_response["images"][0]

# Save the generated image to a local folder.
i, output_dir = 1, "output"
if not os.path.exists(output_dir):
    os.makedirs(output_dir)
while os.path.exists(os.path.join(output_dir, f"titan_{i}.png")):
    i += 1

image_data = base64.b64decode(base64_image_data)

image_path = os.path.join(output_dir, f"titan_{i}.png")
with open(image_path, "wb") as file:
    file.write(image_data)

print(f"The generated image has been saved to {image_path}")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Amazon Titan Text on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
- Invoke Amazon Titan Text on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Invoke Amazon Titan Text models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
- Invoke Amazon Titan Text models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

Invoke Amazon Titan Text on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
```

```
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
```

```
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {
```

```
    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
```

```
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
const modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)
```

```
except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Amazon Titan Text on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
```

```
// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
```

```
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach
the handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
e.getCause().getMessage());
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
const modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];
```

```
// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
```

```
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Amazon Titan Text models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    inputText = userMessage,
    textGenerationConfig = new
    {
```

```
        maxTokenCount = 512,
        temperature = 0.5
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["results"]?[0]?["outputText"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// InvokeModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



// Each model provider has their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for Amazon Titan Text, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-titan-
text.html
type TitanTextRequest struct {
 InputText            string                `json:"inputText"`
 TextGenerationConfig TextGenerationConfig `json:"textGenerationConfig"`
}

type TextGenerationConfig struct {
 Temperature   float64  `json:"temperature"`
 TopP          float64  `json:"topP"`
```

```
 MaxTokenCount int      `json:"maxTokenCount"`
 StopSequences []string `json:"stopSequences,omitempty"`
}

type TitanTextResponse struct {
 InputTextTokenCount int      `json:"inputTextTokenCount"`
 Results             []Result `json:"results"`
}

type Result struct {
 TokenCount       int    `json:"tokenCount"`
 OutputText       string `json:"outputText"`
 CompletionReason string `json:"completionReason"`
}

func (wrapper InvokeModelWrapper) InvokeTitanText(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) (string, error) {
 modelId := "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

 body, err := json.Marshal(TitanTextRequest{
  InputText: prompt,
  TextGenerationConfig: TextGenerationConfig{
   Temperature:   0,
   TopP:          1,
   MaxTokenCount: 4096,
  },
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to marshal", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModel(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 var response TitanTextResponse
```

```
 if err := json.Unmarshal(output.Body, &response); err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }

 return response.Results[0].OutputText, nil
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-text.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"inputText\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/results/0/
outputText").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Object[]} results
 */

/**
 * Invokes an Amazon Titan Text generation model.
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "amazon.titan-text-express-v1".
 */
```

```
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    inputText: prompt,
    textGenerationConfig: {
      maxTokenCount: 4096,
      stopSequences: [],
      temperature: 0,
      topP: 1,
    },
  };

  // Invoke the model with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response.
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.results[0].outputText;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt =
    'Complete the following in one sentence: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.TITAN_TEXT_G1_EXPRESS.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
```

```
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to generate a short story.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelRequest
import kotlinx.serialization.Serializable
import kotlinx.serialization.json.Json

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Titan foundation models to
 generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a request payload
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
suspend fun main() {
    invokeModel().also { println(it) }
}

// Data class for parsing the model's response
@Serializable
```

```
private data class BedrockResponse(val results: List<Result>) {
    @Serializable
    data class Result(
        val outputText: String,
    )
}

// Initialize JSON parser with relaxed configuration
private val json = Json { ignoreUnknownKeys = true }

suspend fun invokeModel(): String {
    // Create and configure the Bedrock runtime client
    BedrockRuntimeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        val modelId = "amazon.titan-text-lite-v1"

        // Create the request payload with optional configuration parameters
        // For detailed parameter descriptions, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-text.html
        val prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line."
        val request = """
            {
                "inputText": "$prompt",
                "textGenerationConfig": {
                    "maxTokenCount": 500,
                    "temperature": 0.5
                }
            }
        """.trimIndent()

        // Send the request and process the model's response
        runCatching {
            // Send the request to the model
            val response = client.invokeModel(
                InvokeModelRequest {
                    this.modelId = modelId
                    body = request.toByteArray()
                },
            )
```

```
            // Convert the response bytes to a JSON string
            val jsonResponse = response.body.toString(Charsets.UTF_8)

            // Parse the JSON into a Kotlin object
            val parsedResponse =
 json.decodeFromString<BedrockResponse>(jsonResponse)

            // Extract and return the generated text
            return parsedResponse.results.firstOrNull()!!.outputText
        }.getOrElse { error ->
            error.message?.let { msg ->
                System.err.println("ERROR: Can't invoke '$modelId'. Reason:
 $msg")
            }
            throw RuntimeException("Failed to generate text with model $modelId",
 error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import boto3
import json
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "inputText": prompt,
    "textGenerationConfig": {
        "maxTokenCount": 512,
        "temperature": 0.5,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["results"][0]["outputText"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Amazon Titan Text models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
```

```
    inputText = userMessage,
    textGenerationConfig = new
    {
        maxTokenCount = 512,
        temperature = 0.5
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["outputText"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

public class InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-text.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"inputText\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text
 in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native
 response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/
outputText").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
```

```
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
```

```
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "inputText": prompt,
    "textGenerationConfig": {
        "maxTokenCount": 512,
        "temperature": 0.5,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
    modelId=model_id, body=request
)

# Extract and print the response text in real-time.
for event in streaming_response["body"]:
    chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
    if "outputText" in chunk:
        print(chunk["outputText"], end="")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text Embeddings for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Amazon Titan Text Embeddings on Amazon Bedrock

Invoke Amazon Titan Text Embeddings on Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to:

- Get started creating your first embedding.
- Create embeddings configuring the number of dimensions and normalization (V2 only).

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create your first embedding with Titan Text Embeddings V2.

```
// Generate and print an embedding with Amazon Titan Text Embeddings.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {
```

```
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Embeddings V2.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-embed-text-v2:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-embed-text.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"inputText\": \"{{inputText}}\" }";

        // The text to convert into an embedding.
        var inputText = "Please recommend books with a theme similar to the movie
 'Inception'.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{inputText}}",
 inputText);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/
embedding").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
```

```
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

Invoke Titan Text Embeddings V2 configuring the number of dimensions and normalization.

```
    /**
     * Invoke Amazon Titan Text Embeddings V2 with additional inference
 parameters.
     *
     * @param inputText  - The text to convert to an embedding.
     * @param dimensions - The number of dimensions the output embeddings should
 have.
     *                   Values accepted by the model: 256, 512, 1024.
     * @param normalize  - A flag indicating whether or not to normalize the
 output embeddings.
     * @return The {@link JSONObject} representing the model's response.
     */
    public static JSONObject invokeModel(String inputText, int dimensions,
 boolean normalize) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Embed Text v2.0.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-embed-text-v2:0";

        // Create the request for the model.
        var nativeRequest = """
                {
                    "inputText": "%s",
                    "dimensions": %d,
```

```
                    "normalize": %b
                }
                """.formatted(inputText, dimensions, normalize);

        // Encode and send the request.
        var response = client.invokeModel(request -> {
            request.body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest));
            request.modelId(modelId);
        });

        // Decode the model's response.
        var modelResponse = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

        // Extract and print the generated embedding and the input text token
 count.
        var embedding = modelResponse.getJSONArray("embedding");
        var inputTokenCount = modelResponse.getBigInteger("inputTextTokenCount");
        System.out.println("Embedding: " + embedding);
        System.out.println("\nInput token count: " + inputTokenCount);

        // Return the model's native response.
        return modelResponse;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create your first embedding with Amazon Titan Text Embeddings.

```
# Generate and print an embedding with Amazon Titan Text Embeddings V2.

import boto3
```

```
import json

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Embeddings V2.
model_id = "amazon.titan-embed-text-v2:0"

# The text to convert to an embedding.
input_text = "Please recommend books with a theme similar to the movie
 'Inception'."

# Create the request for the model.
native_request = {"inputText": input_text}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the model's native response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the generated embedding and the input text token count.
embedding = model_response["embedding"]
input_token_count = model_response["inputTextTokenCount"]

print("\nYour input:")
print(input_text)
print(f"Number of input tokens: {input_token_count}")
print(f"Size of the generated embedding: {len(embedding)}")
print("Embedding:")
print(embedding)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
- Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock
- Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
- Invoke Anthropic Claude models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
- Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock
- Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock
- A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
```

```
// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime/types"
)

// ConverseWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke Bedrock.
type ConverseWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



func (wrapper ConverseWrapper) ConverseClaude(ctx context.Context, prompt string)
 (string, error) {
 var content = types.ContentBlockMemberText{
  Value: prompt,
 }
 var message = types.Message{
  Content: []types.ContentBlock{&content},
  Role:    "user",
```

```
 }
 modelId := "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
 var converseInput = bedrockruntime.ConverseInput{
  ModelId:  aws.String(modelId),
  Messages: []types.Message{message},
 }
 response, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.Converse(ctx, &converseInput)
 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 responseText, _ := response.Output.(*types.ConverseOutputMemberMessage)
 responseContentBlock := responseText.Value.Content[0]
 text, _ := responseContentBlock.(*types.ContentBlockMemberText)
 return text.Value, nil

}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText =
 response.output().message().content().getFirst().text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;
```

```
        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
```

```
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
response.output().message().content().getFirst().text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;
```

```
        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
```

```
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), BedrockConverseError> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let response = client
        .converse()
        .model_id(MODEL_ID)
        .messages(
            Message::builder()
                .role(ConversationRole::User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(USER_MESSAGE.to_string()))
                .build()
                .map_err(|_| "failed to build message")?,
        )
        .send()
        .await;

    match response {
        Ok(output) => {
            let text = get_converse_output_text(output)?;
            println!("{}", text);
            Ok(())
        }
        Err(e) => Err(e
            .as_service_error()
            .map(BedrockConverseError::from)
```

```
            .unwrap_or_else(|| BedrockConverseError("Unknown service
 error".into()))),
    }
}

fn get_converse_output_text(output: ConverseOutput) -> Result<String,
 BedrockConverseError> {
    let text = output
        .output()
        .ok_or("no output")?
        .as_message()
        .map_err(|_| "output not a message")?
        .content()
        .first()
        .ok_or("no content in message")?
        .as_text()
        .map_err(|_| "content is not text")?
        .to_string();
    Ok(text)
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
    operation::converse::{ConverseError, ConverseOutput},
    types::{ContentBlock, ConversationRole, Message},
    Client,
};

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const USER_MESSAGE: &str = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in
 one line.";

#[derive(Debug)]
struct BedrockConverseError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for BedrockConverseError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
```

```
        write!(f, "Can't invoke '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
}
impl std::error::Error for BedrockConverseError {}
impl From<&str> for BedrockConverseError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseError(value.to_string())
    }
}
impl From<&ConverseError> for BedrockConverseError {
    fn from(value: &ConverseError) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseError::from(match value {
            ConverseError::ModelTimeoutException(_) => "Model took too long",
            ConverseError::ModelNotReadyException(_) => "Model is not ready",
            _ => "Unknown",
        })
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send
// a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func converse(_ textPrompt: String) async throws -> String {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
```

```
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseInput to send to the model
    let input = ConverseInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseInput to the model
    let response = try await client.converse(input: input)

    // Extract and return the response text.
    if case let .message(msg) = response.output {
        if case let .text(textResponse) = msg.content![0] {
            return textResponse
        } else {
            return "No text response found in message content"
        }
    } else {
        return "No message found in converse output"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
```

```
// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach
 the handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request.modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
```

```
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude and stream reply tokens, using Bedrock's ConverseStream API.

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), BedrockConverseStreamError> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let response = client
        .converse_stream()
        .model_id(MODEL_ID)
        .messages(
            Message::builder()
                .role(ConversationRole::User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(USER_MESSAGE.to_string()))
                .build()
                .map_err(|_| "failed to build message")?,
        )
        .send()
        .await;

    let mut stream = match response {
        Ok(output) => Ok(output.stream),
        Err(e) => Err(BedrockConverseStreamError::from(
            e.as_service_error().unwrap(),
        )),
    }?;
```

```
    loop {
        let token = stream.recv().await;
        match token {
            Ok(Some(text)) => {
                let next = get_converse_output_text(text)?;
                print!("{}", next);
                Ok(())
            }
            Ok(None) => break,
            Err(e) => Err(e
                .as_service_error()
                .map(BedrockConverseStreamError::from)
                .unwrap_or(BedrockConverseStreamError(
                    "Unknown error receiving stream".into(),
                ))),
        }?
    }

    println!();

    Ok(())
}

fn get_converse_output_text(
    output: ConverseStreamOutputType,
) -> Result<String, BedrockConverseStreamError> {
    Ok(match output {
        ConverseStreamOutputType::ContentBlockDelta(event) => match event.delta()
 {
            Some(delta) => delta.as_text().cloned().unwrap_or_else(|_|
 "".into()),
            None => "".into(),
        },
        _ => "".into(),
    })
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
```

```
    error::ProvideErrorMetadata,
    operation::converse_stream::ConverseStreamError,
    types::{
        error::ConverseStreamOutputError, ContentBlock, ConversationRole,
        ConverseStreamOutput as ConverseStreamOutputType, Message,
    },
    Client,
};

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const USER_MESSAGE: &str = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in
 one line.";

#[derive(Debug)]
struct BedrockConverseStreamError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Can't invoke '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
}
impl std::error::Error for BedrockConverseStreamError {}
impl From<&str> for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseStreamError(value.into())
    }
}

impl From<&ConverseStreamError> for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn from(value: &ConverseStreamError) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseStreamError(
            match value {
                ConverseStreamError::ModelTimeoutException(_) => "Model took too
 long",
                ConverseStreamError::ModelNotReadyException(_) => "Model is not
 ready",
                _ => "Unknown",
            }
            .into(),
        )
    }
```

```
}

impl From<&ConverseStreamOutputError> for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn from(value: &ConverseStreamOutputError) -> Self {
        match value {
            ConverseStreamOutputError::ValidationException(ve) =>
 BedrockConverseStreamError(
                ve.message().unwrap_or("Unknown ValidationException").into(),
            ),
            ConverseStreamOutputError::ThrottlingException(te) =>
 BedrockConverseStreamError(
                te.message().unwrap_or("Unknown ThrottlingException").into(),
            ),
            value => BedrockConverseStreamError(
                value
                    .message()
                    .unwrap_or("Unknown StreamOutput exception")
                    .into(),
            ),
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send a text
 message
// to Anthropic Claude and print the response stream
```

```
import AWSBedrockRuntime

func printConverseStream(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters.
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseStreamInput to send to the model.
    let input = ConverseStreamInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseStreamInput to the model.
    let response = try await client.converseStream(input: input)

    // Extract the streaming response.
    guard let stream = response.stream else {
        print("No stream available")
        return
    }

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
```

```
    for try await event in stream {
        switch event {
        case .messagestart(_):
            print("\nAnthropic Claude:")

        case .contentblockdelta(let deltaEvent):
            if case .text(let text) = deltaEvent.delta {
                print(text, terminator: "")
            }

        default:
            break
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv,
 and txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
```

```
//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    anthropic_version = "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5,
    messages = new[]
    {
        new { role = "user", content = userMessage }
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["content"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// InvokeModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



// Each model provider has their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for Anthropic Claude, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
claude.html

type ClaudeRequest struct {
 Prompt            string   `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int      `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 Temperature       float64  `json:"temperature,omitempty"`
 StopSequences     []string `json:"stop_sequences,omitempty"`
}
```

```
type ClaudeResponse struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// Invokes Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock to run an inference using the input
// provided in the request body.
func (wrapper InvokeModelWrapper) InvokeClaude(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) (string, error) {
 modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"

 // Anthropic Claude requires enclosing the prompt as follows:
 enclosedPrompt := "Human: " + prompt + "\n\nAssistant:"

 body, err := json.Marshal(ClaudeRequest{
  Prompt:            enclosedPrompt,
  MaxTokensToSample: 200,
  Temperature:       0.5,
  StopSequences:     []string{"\n\nHuman:"},
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to marshal", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModel(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 var response ClaudeResponse
 if err := json.Unmarshal(output.Body, &response); err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }

 return response.Completion, nil
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
```

```
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
                    "max_tokens": 512,
                    "temperature": 0.5,
                    "messages": [{
                        "role": "user",
                        "content": "{{prompt}}"
                    }]
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/content/0/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
```

```
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
  InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseContent
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} MessagesResponseBody
 * @property {ResponseContent[]} content
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Delta
 * @property {string} text
```

```
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Message
 * @property {string} role
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Chunk
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {Delta} delta
 * @property {Message} message
 */

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 using the Messages API.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
```

```
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {MessagesResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.content[0].text;
};

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 and processes the response stream.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModelWithResponseStream = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the API to respond.
  const command = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
```

```
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  let completeMessage = "";

  // Decode and process the response stream
  for await (const item of apiResponse.body) {
    /** @type Chunk */
    const chunk = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(item.chunk.bytes));
    const chunk_type = chunk.type;

    if (chunk_type === "content_block_delta") {
      const text = chunk.delta.text;
      completeMessage = completeMessage + text;
      process.stdout.write(text);
    }
  }

  // Return the final response
  return completeMessage;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt = 'Write a paragraph starting with: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.CLAUDE_3_HAIKU.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(`\n${"-".repeat(53)}`);
    console.log("Final structured response:");
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(`\n${err}`);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text.

```
    public function invokeClaude($prompt)
    {
        // The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        // For the format, ranges, and default values for Anthropic Claude, refer
 to:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
claude.html

        $completion = "";
        try {
            $modelId = 'anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0';
        // Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
            $body = [
                'anthropic_version' => 'bedrock-2023-05-31',
                'max_tokens' => 512,
                'temperature' => 0.5,
                'messages' => [[
                    'role' => 'user',
                    'content' => $prompt
                ]]
            ];
            $result = $this->bedrockRuntimeClient->invokeModel([
                'contentType' => 'application/json',
                'body' => json_encode($body),
                'modelId' => $modelId,
            ]);
            $response_body = json_decode($result['body']);
            $completion = $response_body->content[0]->text;
        } catch (Exception $e) {
            echo "Error: ({$e->getCode()}) - {$e->getMessage()}\n";
```

```
        }

        return $completion;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
    "messages": [
```

```
        {
            "role": "user",
            "content": [{"type": "text", "text": prompt}],
        }
    ],
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["content"][0]["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text. This example uses features of /US2/CL_JSON which might not be available on some NetWeaver versions.

```
    "Claude V2 Input Parameters should be in a format like this:
*   {
*     "prompt":"\n\nHuman:\\nTell me a joke\n\nAssistant:\n",
*     "max_tokens_to_sample":2048,
*     "temperature":0.5,
*     "top_k":250,
*     "top_p":1.0,
*     "stop_sequences":[]
*   }

    DATA: BEGIN OF ls_input,
            prompt               TYPE string,
            max_tokens_to_sample TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            temperature          TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_float,
            top_k                TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            top_p                TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_float,
            stop_sequences       TYPE /aws1/rt_stringtab,
          END OF ls_input.

    "Leave ls_input-stop_sequences empty.
    ls_input-prompt = |\n\nHuman:\\n{ iv_prompt }\n\nAssistant:\n|.
    ls_input-max_tokens_to_sample = 2048.
    ls_input-temperature = '0.5'.
    ls_input-top_k = 250.
    ls_input-top_p = 1.

    "Serialize into JSON with /ui2/cl_json -- this assumes SAP_UI is installed.
    DATA(lv_json) = /ui2/cl_json=>serialize(
      data = ls_input
                 pretty_name   = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-low_case ).

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_response) = lo_bdr->invokemodel(
          iv_body = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring( lv_json )
          iv_modelid = 'anthropic.claude-v2'
          iv_accept = 'application/json'
          iv_contenttype = 'application/json' ).

        "Claude V2 Response format will be:
*       {
*         "completion": "Knock Knock...",
*         "stop_reason": "stop_sequence"
*       }
```

```
        DATA: BEGIN OF ls_response,
                completion  TYPE string,
                stop_reason TYPE string,
              END OF ls_response.

        /ui2/cl_json=>deserialize(
          EXPORTING jsonx = lo_response->get_body( )
                    pretty_name = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-camel_case
          CHANGING  data  = ls_response ).

        DATA(lv_answer) = ls_response-completion.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text using L2 high level client.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_bdr_l2_claude) = /aws1/
cl_bdr_l2_factory=>create_claude_2( lo_bdr ).
        " iv_prompt can contain a prompt like 'tell me a joke about Java
 programmers'.
        DATA(lv_answer) = lo_bdr_l2_claude->prompt_for_text( iv_prompt ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 3 foundation model to generate text using L2 high level client.

```
    TRY.
        " Choose a model ID from Anthropic that supports the Messages API -
 currently this is
        " Claude v2, Claude v3 and v3.5.  For the list of model ID, see:
        " https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-ids.html
```

```
        " for the list of models that support the Messages API see:
        " https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
        DATA(lo_bdr_l2_claude) = /aws1/
cl_bdr_l2_factory=>create_anthropic_msg_api(
          io_bdr = lo_bdr
          iv_model_id = 'anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0' ).  " choosing
 Claude v3 Sonnet
        " iv_prompt can contain a prompt like 'tell me a joke about Java
 programmers'.
        DATA(lv_answer) = lo_bdr_l2_claude->prompt_for_text( iv_prompt =
 iv_prompt
                                                              iv_max_tokens =
 100 ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Invoke Anthropic Claude models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    anthropic_version = "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5,
    messages = new[]
    {
        new { role = "user", content = userMessage }
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};
```

```
try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["delta"]?["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import (
 "bytes"
```

```
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime/types"
)

// InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used
 in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



// Each model provider defines their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for the different models, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters.html

type Request struct {
 Prompt            string  `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int     `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 Temperature       float64 `json:"temperature,omitempty"`
}

type Response struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// Invokes Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock to run an inference and
 asynchronously
// process the response stream.

func (wrapper InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper)
 InvokeModelWithResponseStream(ctx context.Context, prompt string) (string,
 error) {

 modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"
```

```
 // Anthropic Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
 prefix := "Human: "
 postfix := "\n\nAssistant:"
 prompt = prefix + prompt + postfix

 request := ClaudeRequest{
  Prompt:            prompt,
  MaxTokensToSample: 200,
  Temperature:       0.5,
  StopSequences:     []string{"\n\nHuman:"},
 }

 body, err := json.Marshal(request)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln("Couldn't marshal the request: ", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModelWithResponseStream(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamInput{
  Body:        body,
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
 })

 if err != nil {
  errMsg := err.Error()
  if strings.Contains(errMsg, "no such host") {
   log.Printf("The Bedrock service is not available in the selected region.
 Please double-check the service availability for your region at https://
aws.amazon.com/about-aws/global-infrastructure/regional-product-services/.\n")
  } else if strings.Contains(errMsg, "Could not resolve the foundation model") {
   log.Printf("Could not resolve the foundation model from model identifier: \"%v
\". Please verify that the requested model exists and is accessible within the
 specified region.\n", modelId)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't invoke Anthropic Claude. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }

 resp, err := processStreamingOutput(ctx, output, func(ctx context.Context, part
 []byte) error {
  fmt.Print(string(part))
  return nil
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("streaming output processing error: ", err)
 }

 return resp.Completion, nil

}

type StreamingOutputHandler func(ctx context.Context, part []byte) error

func processStreamingOutput(ctx context.Context, output
 *bedrockruntime.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamOutput, handler
 StreamingOutputHandler) (Response, error) {

 var combinedResult string
 resp := Response{}

 for event := range output.GetStream().Events() {
  switch v := event.(type) {
  case *types.ResponseStreamMemberChunk:

   //fmt.Println("payload", string(v.Value.Bytes))

   var resp Response
   err := json.NewDecoder(bytes.NewReader(v.Value.Bytes)).Decode(&resp)
   if err != nil {
    return resp, err
   }

   err = handler(ctx, []byte(resp.Completion))
   if err != nil {
    return resp, err
   }

   combinedResult += resp.Completion

  case *types.UnknownUnionMember:
   fmt.Println("unknown tag:", v.Tag)

  default:
   fmt.Println("union is nil or unknown type")
  }
 }
```

```
 resp.Completion = combinedResult

 return resp, nil
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon
```

```
public class InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
                    "max_tokens": 512,
                    "temperature": 0.5,
                    "messages": [{
                        "role": "user",
                        "content": "{{prompt}}"
                    }]
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
```

```
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text
 in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());

                    // Extract and print the text from the content blocks.
                    if (Objects.equals(response.getString("type"),
 "content_block_delta")) {
                        var text = new JSONPointer("/delta/
text").queryFrom(response);
                        System.out.print(text);

                        // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                        completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                    }
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
  InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseContent
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} MessagesResponseBody
 * @property {ResponseContent[]} content
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Delta
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Message
 * @property {string} role
```

```
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Chunk
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {Delta} delta
 * @property {Message} message
 */

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 using the Messages API.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);
```

```
  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {MessagesResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.content[0].text;
};

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 and processes the response stream.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModelWithResponseStream = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the API to respond.
  const command = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
```

```
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  let completeMessage = "";

  // Decode and process the response stream
  for await (const item of apiResponse.body) {
    /** @type Chunk */
    const chunk = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(item.chunk.bytes));
    const chunk_type = chunk.type;

    if (chunk_type === "content_block_delta") {
      const text = chunk.delta.text;
      completeMessage = completeMessage + text;
      process.stdout.write(text);
    }
  }

  // Return the final response
  return completeMessage;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt = 'Write a paragraph starting with: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.CLAUDE_3_HAIKU.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(`\n${"-".repeat(53)}`);
    console.log("Final structured response:");
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(`\n${err}`);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
    "messages": [
        {
            "role": "user",
            "content": [{"type": "text", "text": prompt}],
        }
    ],
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
```

```
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
    modelId=model_id, body=request
)

# Extract and print the response text in real-time.
for event in streaming_response["body"]:
    chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
    if chunk["type"] == "content_block_delta":
        print(chunk["delta"].get("text", ""), end="")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability with the asynchronous Bedrock runtime client.

```
import com.example.bedrockruntime.models.anthropicClaude.lib.ReasoningResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning
 capability
 * with an asynchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock async runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure reasoning parameters
 * - Send an asynchronous request with reasoning enabled
 * - Process both the reasoning output and final response
 */
public class ReasoningAsync {

    public static ReasoningResponse reasoningAsync() {

        // Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        var modelId = "us.anthropic.claude-3-7-sonnet-20250219-v1:0";

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(prompt))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Configure reasoning parameters with a 2000 token budget
        Document reasoningConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putDocument("thinking", Document.mapBuilder()
                        .putString("type", "enabled")
                        .putNumber("budget_tokens", 2000)
```

```
                        .build())
                .build();

        try {
            // Send message and reasoning configuration to the model
            CompletableFuture<ConverseResponse> asyncResponse =
client.converse(request -> request
                    .additionalModelRequestFields(reasoningConfig)
                    .messages(message)
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Process the response asynchronously
            return asyncResponse.thenApply(response -> {

                        var content = response.output().message().content();
                        ReasoningContentBlock reasoning = null;
                        String text = null;

                        // Process each content block to find reasoning and
response text
                        for (ContentBlock block : content) {
                            if (block.reasoningContent() != null) {
                                reasoning = block.reasoningContent();
                            } else if (block.text() != null) {
                                text = block.text();
                            }
                        }

                        return new ReasoningResponse(reasoning, text);
                    }
            ).get();

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Execute the example and display reasoning and final response
        ReasoningResponse response = reasoningAsync();
        System.out.println("\n<thinking>");
        System.out.println(response.reasoning().reasoningText());
```

```
        System.out.println("</thinking>\n");
        System.out.println(response.text());
    }
}
```

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability with the synchronous Bedrock runtime client.

```
import com.example.bedrockruntime.models.anthropicClaude.lib.ReasoningResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning
 capability
 * with the synchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure reasoning parameters
 * - Send a request with reasoning enabled
 * - Process both the reasoning output and final response
 */
public class Reasoning {

    public static ReasoningResponse reasoning() {

        // Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        var modelId = "us.anthropic.claude-3-7-sonnet-20250219-v1:0";
```

```
        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(prompt))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Configure reasoning parameters with a 2000 token budget
        Document reasoningConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putDocument("thinking", Document.mapBuilder()
                        .putString("type", "enabled")
                        .putNumber("budget_tokens", 2000)
                        .build())
                .build();

        try {
            // Send message and reasoning configuration to the model
            ConverseResponse bedrockResponse = client.converse(request -> request
                    .additionalModelRequestFields(reasoningConfig)
                    .messages(message)
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );


            // Extract both reasoning and final response
            var content = bedrockResponse.output().message().content();
            ReasoningContentBlock reasoning = null;
            String text = null;

            // Process each content block to find reasoning and response text
            for (ContentBlock block : content) {
                if (block.reasoningContent() != null) {
                    reasoning = block.reasoningContent();
                } else if (block.text() != null) {
                    text = block.text();
                }
            }

            return new ReasoningResponse(reasoning, text);

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
```

```
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Execute the example and display reasoning and final response
        ReasoningResponse response = reasoning();
        System.out.println("\n<thinking>");
        System.out.println(response.reasoning().reasoningText());
        System.out.println("</thinking>\n");
        System.out.println(response.text());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability to generate streaming text responses.

```
import com.example.bedrockruntime.models.anthropicClaude.lib.ReasoningResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicReference;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning
 * capability to generate streaming text responses.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure a streaming request
 * - Set up a stream handler to process the response chunks
 * - Process the streaming response
 */
public class ReasoningStream {

    public static ReasoningResponse reasoningStream() {

        // Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        var modelId = "us.anthropic.claude-3-7-sonnet-20250219-v1:0";

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(prompt))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Configure reasoning parameters with a 2000 token budget
        Document reasoningConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putDocument("thinking", Document.mapBuilder()
```

```
                        .putString("type", "enabled")
                        .putNumber("budget_tokens", 2000)
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Configure the request with the message, model ID, and reasoning config
        ConverseStreamRequest request = ConverseStreamRequest.builder()
                .additionalModelRequestFields(reasoningConfig)
                .messages(message)
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        StringBuilder reasoning = new StringBuilder();
        StringBuilder text = new StringBuilder();
        AtomicReference<ReasoningResponse> finalresponse = new
AtomicReference<>();

        // Set up the stream handler to processes chunks of the response as they
arrive
        var streamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            ContentBlockDelta delta = chunk.delta();
                            if (delta.reasoningContent() != null) {
                                if (reasoning.isEmpty()) {
                                    System.out.println("\n<thinking>");
                                }
                                if (delta.reasoningContent().text() != null) {

System.out.print(delta.reasoningContent().text());

reasoning.append(delta.reasoningContent().text());
                                }
                            } else if (delta.text() != null) {
                                if (text.isEmpty()) {
                                    System.out.println("\n</thinking>\n");
                                }
                                System.out.print(delta.text());
                                text.append(delta.text());
                            }
                            System.out.flush();  // Ensure immediate output of
each chunk
                        }).build())
                .onComplete(() -> finalresponse.set(new ReasoningResponse(
```

```
                        ReasoningContentBlock.fromReasoningText(t ->
 t.text(reasoning.toString())),
                        text.toString()
                )))
                .onError(err -> System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s",
 modelId, err.getMessage()))
                .build();

        // Step 6: Send the streaming request and process the response
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Attach the handler to process response chunks as they arrive
        // - Handle any errors during streaming
        try {
            client.converseStream(request, streamHandler).get();
            return finalresponse.get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        reasoningStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

The following code examples show how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution script of the demo. This script orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
"""
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and
 a weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
"""

import boto3
import logging
from enum import Enum

import utils.tool_use_print_utils as output
import weather_tool

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(message)s")

AWS_REGION = "us-east-1"


# For the most recent list of models supported by the Converse API's tool use
 functionality, visit:
# https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/conversation-
inference.html
class SupportedModels(Enum):
    CLAUDE_OPUS = "anthropic.claude-3-opus-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_SONNET = "anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0"
```

```
    CLAUDE_HAIKU = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R_PLUS = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"


# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
MODEL_ID = SupportedModels.CLAUDE_HAIKU.value

SYSTEM_PROMPT = """
You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-specified
 locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it
 in your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
"""

# The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
# This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
MAX_RECURSIONS = 5


class ToolUseDemo:
    """
    Demonstrates the tool use feature with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        # Prepare the system prompt
```

```
        self.system_prompt = [{"text": SYSTEM_PROMPT}]

        # Prepare the tool configuration with the weather tool's specification
        self.tool_config = {"tools": [weather_tool.get_tool_spec()]}

        # Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the specified AWS Region.
        self.bedrockRuntimeClient = boto3.client(
            "bedrock-runtime", region_name=AWS_REGION
        )

    def run(self):
        """
        Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
        """
        # Print the greeting and a short user guide
        output.header()

        # Start with an emtpy conversation
        conversation = []

        # Get the first user input
        user_input = self._get_user_input()

        while user_input is not None:
            # Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            message = {"role": "user", "content": [{"text": user_input}]}
            conversation.append(message)

            # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            bedrock_response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

            # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
returned
            # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            self._process_model_response(
                bedrock_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
            )

            # Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            user_input = self._get_user_input()

        output.footer()
```

```
    def _send_conversation_to_bedrock(self, conversation):
        """
        Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.

        :param conversation: The conversation history including the next message
to send.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock.
        """
        output.call_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return self.bedrockRuntimeClient.converse(
            modelId=MODEL_ID,
            messages=conversation,
            system=self.system_prompt,
            toolConfig=self.tool_config,
        )

    def _process_model_response(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions
        based on the stop reason.

        :param model_response: The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        if max_recursion <= 0:
            # Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            logging.warning(
                "Warning: Maximum number of recursions reached. Please try
again."
            )
            exit(1)

        # Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
```

```
        message = model_response["output"]["message"]
        conversation.append(message)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "tool_use":
            # If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            self._handle_tool_use(message, conversation, max_recursion)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "end_turn":
            # If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process
            output.model_response(message["content"][0]["text"])
            return

    def _handle_tool_use(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
        The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation
is sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.

        :param model_response: The model's response containing the tool use
request.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        # Initialize an empty list of tool results
        tool_results = []

        # The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for content_block in model_response["content"]:
            if "text" in content_block:
                # If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                output.model_response(content_block["text"])

            if "toolUse" in content_block:
                # If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
tool
                tool_response = self._invoke_tool(content_block["toolUse"])
```

```
                # Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                tool_results.append(
                    {
                        "toolResult": {
                            "toolUseId": (tool_response["toolUseId"]),
                            "content": [{"json": tool_response["content"]}],
                        }
                    }
                )

        # Embed the tool results in a new user message
        message = {"role": "user", "content": tool_results}

        # Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.append(message)

        # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
        # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        self._process_model_response(response, conversation, max_recursion - 1)

    def _invoke_tool(self, payload):
        """
        Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
        If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.

        :param payload: The payload containing the tool name and input data.
        :return: The tool's response or an error message.
        """
        tool_name = payload["name"]

        if tool_name == "Weather_Tool":
            input_data = payload["input"]
            output.tool_use(tool_name, input_data)

            # Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided by
            response = weather_tool.fetch_weather_data(input_data)
        else:
            error_message = (
                f"The requested tool with name '{tool_name}' does not exist."
```

```
            )
            response = {"error": "true", "message": error_message}

        return {"toolUseId": payload["toolUseId"], "content": response}

    @staticmethod
    def _get_user_input(prompt="Your weather info request"):
        """
        Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
        Returns None if the user enters 'x' to exit.

        :param prompt: The prompt to display to the user.
        :return: The user's input or None if the user chooses to exit.
        """
        output.separator()
        user_input = input(f"{prompt} (x to exit): ")

        if user_input == "":
            prompt = "Please enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
 city"
            return ToolUseDemo._get_user_input(prompt)

        elif user_input.lower() == "x":
            return None

        else:
            return user_input


if __name__ == "__main__":
    tool_use_demo = ToolUseDemo()
    tool_use_demo.run()
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
import requests
from requests.exceptions import RequestException


def get_tool_spec():
```

```
    """
    Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.

    :return: The tool specification for the Weather tool.
    """
    return {
        "toolSpec": {
            "name": "Weather_Tool",
            "description": "Get the current weather for a given location, based
 on its WGS84 coordinates.",
            "inputSchema": {
                "json": {
                    "type": "object",
                    "properties": {
                        "latitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                        "longitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                    },
                    "required": ["latitude", "longitude"],
                }
            },
        }
    }


def fetch_weather_data(input_data):
    """
    Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.

    :param input_data: The input data containing the latitude and longitude.
    :return: The weather data or an error message.
```

```
    """
    endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast"
    latitude = input_data.get("latitude")
    longitude = input_data.get("longitude", "")
    params = {"latitude": latitude, "longitude": longitude, "current_weather":
 True}

    try:
        response = requests.get(endpoint, params=params)
        weather_data = {"weather_data": response.json()}
        response.raise_for_status()
        return weather_data
    except RequestException as e:
        return e.response.json()
    except Exception as e:
        return {"error": type(e), "message": str(e)}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary scenario and logic for the demo. This orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
#[derive(Debug)]
#[allow(dead_code)]
struct InvokeToolResult(String, ToolResultBlock);
struct ToolUseScenario {
    client: Client,
    conversation: Vec<Message>,
    system_prompt: SystemContentBlock,
    tool_config: ToolConfiguration,
}
```

```
impl ToolUseScenario {
    fn new(client: Client) -> Self {
        let system_prompt = SystemContentBlock::Text(SYSTEM_PROMPT.into());
        let tool_config = ToolConfiguration::builder()
            .tools(Tool::ToolSpec(
                ToolSpecification::builder()
                    .name(TOOL_NAME)
                    .description(TOOL_DESCRIPTION)
                    .input_schema(ToolInputSchema::Json(make_tool_schema()))
                    .build()
                    .unwrap(),
            ))
            .build()
            .unwrap();

        ToolUseScenario {
            client,
            conversation: vec![],
            system_prompt,
            tool_config,
        }
    }

    async fn run(&mut self) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        loop {
            let input = get_input().await?;
            if input.is_none() {
                break;
            }

            let message = Message::builder()
                .role(User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(input.unwrap()))
                .build()
                .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)?;
            self.conversation.push(message);

            let response = self.send_to_bedrock().await?;

            self.process_model_response(response).await?;
        }

        Ok(())
```

```
    }

    async fn send_to_bedrock(&mut self) -> Result<ConverseOutput,
ToolUseScenarioError> {
        debug!("Sending conversation to bedrock");
        self.client
            .converse()
            .model_id(MODEL_ID)
            .set_messages(Some(self.conversation.clone()))
            .system(self.system_prompt.clone())
            .tool_config(self.tool_config.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)
    }

    async fn process_model_response(
        &mut self,
        mut response: ConverseOutput,
    ) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut iteration = 0;

        while iteration < MAX_RECURSIONS {
            iteration += 1;
            let message = if let Some(ref output) = response.output {
                if output.is_message() {
                    Ok(output.as_message().unwrap().clone())
                } else {
                    Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
                        "Converse Output is not a message".into(),
                    ))
                }
            } else {
                Err(ToolUseScenarioError("Missing Converse Output".into()))
            }?;

            self.conversation.push(message.clone());

            match response.stop_reason {
                StopReason::ToolUse => {
                    response = self.handle_tool_use(&message).await?;
                }
                StopReason::EndTurn => {
                    print_model_response(&message.content[0])?;
```

```
                    return Ok(());
                }
                _ => (),
            }
        }

        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
            "Exceeded MAX_ITERATIONS when calling tools".into(),
        ))
    }

    async fn handle_tool_use(
        &mut self,
        message: &Message,
    ) -> Result<ConverseOutput, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut tool_results: Vec<ContentBlock> = vec![];

        for block in &message.content {
            match block {
                ContentBlock::Text(_) => print_model_response(block)?,
                ContentBlock::ToolUse(tool) => {
                    let tool_response = self.invoke_tool(tool).await?;
                    tool_results.push(ContentBlock::ToolResult(tool_response.1));
                }
                _ => (),
            };
        }

        let message = Message::builder()
            .role(User)
            .set_content(Some(tool_results))
            .build()?;
        self.conversation.push(message);

        self.send_to_bedrock().await
    }

    async fn invoke_tool(
        &mut self,
        tool: &ToolUseBlock,
    ) -> Result<InvokeToolResult, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        match tool.name() {
            TOOL_NAME => {
                println!(
```

```
                    "\x1b[0;90mExecuting tool: {TOOL_NAME} with input: {:?}...
\x1b[0m",
                    tool.input()
                );
                let content = fetch_weather_data(tool).await?;
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mTool responded with {:?}\x1b[0m",
                    content.content()
                );
                Ok(InvokeToolResult(tool.tool_use_id.clone(), content))
            }
            _ => Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
                "The requested tool with name {} does not exist",
                tool.name()
            ))),
        }
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let mut scenario = ToolUseScenario::new(client);

    header();
    if let Err(err) = scenario.run().await {
        println!("There was an error running the scenario! {}", err.0)
    }
    footer();
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
const ENDPOINT: &str = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
async fn fetch_weather_data(
```

```
    tool_use: &ToolUseBlock,
) -> Result<ToolResultBlock, ToolUseScenarioError> {
    let input = tool_use.input();
    let latitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("latitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let longitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("longitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let params = [
        ("latitude", latitude),
        ("longitude", longitude),
        ("current_weather", "true"),
    ];

    debug!("Calling {ENDPOINT} with {params:?}");

    let response = reqwest::Client::new()
        .get(ENDPOINT)
        .query(&params)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error requesting weather:
 {e:?}")))?
        .error_for_status()
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Failed to request weather:
 {e:?}")))?;

    debug!("Response: {response:?}");

    let bytes = response
        .bytes()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error reading response:
 {e:?}")))?;
```

```
    let result = String::from_utf8(bytes.to_vec())
        .map_err(|_| ToolUseScenarioError("Response was not utf8".into()))?;

    Ok(ToolResultBlock::builder()
        .tool_use_id(tool_use.tool_use_id())
        .content(ToolResultContentBlock::Text(result))
        .build()?)
}
```

Utilities to print the Message Content Blocks.

```
fn print_model_response(block: &ContentBlock) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError>
 {
    if block.is_text() {
        let text = block.as_text().unwrap();
        println!("\x1b[0;90mThe model's response:\x1b[0m\n{text}");
        Ok(())
    } else {
        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
            "Content block is not text ({block:?})"
        )))
    }
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use std::{collections::HashMap, io::stdin};

use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
    error::{BuildError, SdkError},
    operation::converse::{ConverseError, ConverseOutput},
    types::{
        ContentBlock, ConversationRole::User, Message, StopReason,
 SystemContentBlock, Tool,
        ToolConfiguration, ToolInputSchema, ToolResultBlock,
 ToolResultContentBlock,
        ToolSpecification, ToolUseBlock,
    },
    Client,
};
```

```
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::http::Response;
use aws_smithy_types::Document;
use tracing::debug;

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

const SYSTEM_PROMPT: &str = "You are a weather assistant that provides current
 weather data for user-specified locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it
 in your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
";

// The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
// This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
const MAX_RECURSIONS: i8 = 5;

const TOOL_NAME: &str = "Weather_Tool";
const TOOL_DESCRIPTION: &str =
    "Get the current weather for a given location, based on its WGS84
 coordinates.";
fn make_tool_schema() -> Document {
    Document::Object(HashMap::<String, Document>::from([
        ("type".into(), Document::String("object".into())),
        (
            "properties".into(),
```

```
            Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                (
                    "latitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String("Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.".into()),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
                (
                    "longitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String(
                                "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.".into(),
                            ),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
            ])),
        ),
        (
            "required".into(),
            Document::Array(vec![
                Document::String("latitude".into()),
                Document::String("longitude".into()),
            ]),
        ),
    ]))
}

#[derive(Debug)]
struct ToolUseScenarioError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Tool use error with '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
}
```

```
impl From<&str> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.into())
    }
}
impl From<BuildError> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: BuildError) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.to_string().clone())
    }
}
impl From<SdkError<ConverseError, Response>> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: SdkError<ConverseError, Response>) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(match value.as_service_error() {
            Some(value) => value.meta().message().unwrap_or("Unknown").into(),
            None => "Unknown".into(),
        })
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Cohere Command for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
- Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock
- Invoke Cohere Command R and R+ on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
- Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
- Invoke Cohere Command R and R+ on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
- Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream
- A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
```

```
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
```

```
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {
```

```
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
```

```
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
```

```
// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
const modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)
```

```
except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
```

```
// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
```

```
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach
the handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request.modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
const modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];
```

```
// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command
```

```
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Command R+.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv,
 and txt
```

```
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Cohere Command R and R+ on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+, using the Invoke Model API.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    message = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
```

```
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class Command_R_InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command-r-plus.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"message\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
```

```
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "message": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
```

```
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["generations"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class Command_InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
```

```
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/generations/0/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
model_id = "cohere.command-light-text-v14"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["generations"][0]["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Cohere Command R and R+ on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
```

```
    message = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

public class Command_R_InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command-r-plus.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"message\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text
 in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native
 response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/text").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();
```

```
        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+
# and print the response stream.
```

```
import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "message": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "generations" in chunk:
            print(chunk["generations"][0]["text"], end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Cohere Command on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
```

```
    prompt = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["generations"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

public class Command_InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text
 in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native
 response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/generations/0/
text").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
```

```
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command
# and print the response stream.
```

```
import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
model_id = "cohere.command-light-text-v14"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "generations" in chunk:
            print(chunk["generations"][0]["text"], end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

A tool use demo illustrating how to connect AI models on Amazon Bedrock with a custom tool or API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution script of the demo. This script orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
"""
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and
 a weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
"""

import boto3
import logging
from enum import Enum

import utils.tool_use_print_utils as output
import weather_tool

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(message)s")

AWS_REGION = "us-east-1"
```

```
# For the most recent list of models supported by the Converse API's tool use
 functionality, visit:
# https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/conversation-
inference.html
class SupportedModels(Enum):
    CLAUDE_OPUS = "anthropic.claude-3-opus-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_SONNET = "anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_HAIKU = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R_PLUS = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"


# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
MODEL_ID = SupportedModels.CLAUDE_HAIKU.value

SYSTEM_PROMPT = """
You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-specified
 locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it
 in your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
"""

# The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
# This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
MAX_RECURSIONS = 5
```

```
class ToolUseDemo:
    """
    Demonstrates the tool use feature with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        # Prepare the system prompt
        self.system_prompt = [{"text": SYSTEM_PROMPT}]

        # Prepare the tool configuration with the weather tool's specification
        self.tool_config = {"tools": [weather_tool.get_tool_spec()]}

        # Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the specified AWS Region.
        self.bedrockRuntimeClient = boto3.client(
            "bedrock-runtime", region_name=AWS_REGION
        )

    def run(self):
        """
        Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
        """
        # Print the greeting and a short user guide
        output.header()

        # Start with an emtpy conversation
        conversation = []

        # Get the first user input
        user_input = self._get_user_input()

        while user_input is not None:
            # Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
 conversation
            message = {"role": "user", "content": [{"text": user_input}]}
            conversation.append(message)

            # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            bedrock_response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

            # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has
 returned
```

```
            # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            self._process_model_response(
                bedrock_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
            )

            # Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            user_input = self._get_user_input()

        output.footer()

    def _send_conversation_to_bedrock(self, conversation):
        """
        Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.

        :param conversation: The conversation history including the next message
to send.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock.
        """
        output.call_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and
return the response
        return self.bedrockRuntimeClient.converse(
            modelId=MODEL_ID,
            messages=conversation,
            system=self.system_prompt,
            toolConfig=self.tool_config,
        )

    def _process_model_response(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions
        based on the stop reason.

        :param model_response: The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        if max_recursion <= 0:
```

```
            # Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            logging.warning(
                "Warning: Maximum number of recursions reached. Please try
again."
            )
            exit(1)

        # Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        message = model_response["output"]["message"]
        conversation.append(message)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "tool_use":
            # If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool
use handler
            self._handle_tool_use(message, conversation, max_recursion)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "end_turn":
            # If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process
            output.model_response(message["content"][0]["text"])
            return

    def _handle_tool_use(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
        The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation
is sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.

        :param model_response: The model's response containing the tool use
request.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        # Initialize an empty list of tool results
        tool_results = []

        # The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for content_block in model_response["content"]:
            if "text" in content_block:
```

```
                # If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                output.model_response(content_block["text"])

            if "toolUse" in content_block:
                # If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
tool
                tool_response = self._invoke_tool(content_block["toolUse"])

                # Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                tool_results.append(
                    {
                        "toolResult": {
                            "toolUseId": (tool_response["toolUseId"]),
                            "content": [{"json": tool_response["content"]}],
                        }
                    }
                )

        # Embed the tool results in a new user message
        message = {"role": "user", "content": tool_results}

        # Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.append(message)

        # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
        # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        self._process_model_response(response, conversation, max_recursion - 1)

    def _invoke_tool(self, payload):
        """
        Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
        If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.

        :param payload: The payload containing the tool name and input data.
        :return: The tool's response or an error message.
        """
        tool_name = payload["name"]

        if tool_name == "Weather_Tool":
```

```
            input_data = payload["input"]
            output.tool_use(tool_name, input_data)

            # Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided by
            response = weather_tool.fetch_weather_data(input_data)
        else:
            error_message = (
                f"The requested tool with name '{tool_name}' does not exist."
            )
            response = {"error": "true", "message": error_message}

        return {"toolUseId": payload["toolUseId"], "content": response}

    @staticmethod
    def _get_user_input(prompt="Your weather info request"):
        """
        Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
        Returns None if the user enters 'x' to exit.

        :param prompt: The prompt to display to the user.
        :return: The user's input or None if the user chooses to exit.
        """
        output.separator()
        user_input = input(f"{prompt} (x to exit): ")

        if user_input == "":
            prompt = "Please enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
 city"
            return ToolUseDemo._get_user_input(prompt)

        elif user_input.lower() == "x":
            return None

        else:
            return user_input


if __name__ == "__main__":
    tool_use_demo = ToolUseDemo()
    tool_use_demo.run()
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
import requests
from requests.exceptions import RequestException


def get_tool_spec():
    """
    Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.

    :return: The tool specification for the Weather tool.
    """
    return {
        "toolSpec": {
            "name": "Weather_Tool",
            "description": "Get the current weather for a given location, based
 on its WGS84 coordinates.",
            "inputSchema": {
                "json": {
                    "type": "object",
                    "properties": {
                        "latitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                        "longitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                    },
                    "required": ["latitude", "longitude"],
                }
            },
        }
    }
```

```
def fetch_weather_data(input_data):
    """
    Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.

    :param input_data: The input data containing the latitude and longitude.
    :return: The weather data or an error message.
    """
    endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast"
    latitude = input_data.get("latitude")
    longitude = input_data.get("longitude", "")
    params = {"latitude": latitude, "longitude": longitude, "current_weather":
 True}

    try:
        response = requests.get(endpoint, params=params)
        weather_data = {"weather_data": response.json()}
        response.raise_for_status()
        return weather_data
    except RequestException as e:
        return e.response.json()
    except Exception as e:
        return {"error": type(e), "message": str(e)}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

DeepSeek for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock

Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. DeepSeek-R1
model_id = "us.deepseek.r1-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv,
 and txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
```

```
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 2000, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the reasoning and response text.
    reasoning, response_text = "", ""
    for item in response["output"]["message"]["content"]:
        for key, value in item.items():
            if key == "reasoningContent":
                reasoning = value["reasoningText"]["text"]
            elif key == "text":
                response_text = value

    print(f"\nReasoning:\n{reasoning}")
    print(f"\nResponse:\n{response_text}")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Meta Llama for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
- Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock
- Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

- Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
```

```
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
```

```
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
```

```
        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
```

```
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send
// a text message to Meta Llama.

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func converse(_ textPrompt: String) async throws -> String {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"
```

```
    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseInput to send to the model
    let input = ConverseInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseInput to the model
    let response = try await client.converse(input: input)

    // Extract and return the response text.
    if case let .message(msg) = response.output {
        if case let .text(textResponse) = msg.content![0] {
            return textResponse
        } else {
            return "No text response found in message content"
        }
    } else {
        return "No message found in converse output"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
```

```
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";
```

```
        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach
 the handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});
```

```
try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")
```

```
# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send a text
 message
// to Meta Llama and print the response stream.

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func printConverseStream(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters.
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseStreamInput to send to the model.
    let input = ConverseStreamInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseStreamInput to the model.
    let response = try await client.converseStream(input: input)
```

```
    // Extract the streaming response.
    guard let stream = response.stream else {
        print("No stream available")
        return
    }

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for try await event in stream {
        switch event {
        case .messagestart(_):
            print("\nMeta Llama:")

        case .contentblockdelta(let deltaEvent):
            if case .text(let text) = deltaEvent.delta {
                print(text, terminator: "")
            }

        default:
            break
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Llama 3.1 8B Instruct.
model_id = "us.meta.llama3-1-8b-instruct-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv,
 and txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )
```

```
    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
```

```
// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Llama 2's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $@"
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_gen_len = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["generation"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class Llama3_InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
meta.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
        var instruction = (
                "<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>\\n" +
                "{{prompt}} <|eot_id|>\\n" +
                "<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>\\n"
        ).replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/
generation").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
```

```
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Send a prompt to Meta Llama 3 and print the response.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-west-2" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70B Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message to send.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one sentence.";
```

```
// Embed the message in Llama 3's prompt format.
const prompt = `
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
${userMessage}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
`;

// Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
const request = {
  prompt,
  // Optional inference parameters:
  max_gen_len: 512,
  temperature: 0.5,
  top_p: 0.9,
};

// Encode and send the request.
const response = await client.send(
  new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(request),
    modelId,
  }),
);

// Decode the native response body.
/** @type {{ generation: string }} */
const nativeResponse = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(response.body));

// Extract and print the generated text.
const responseText = nativeResponse.generation;
console.log(responseText);

// Learn more about the Llama 3 prompt format at:
// https://llama.meta.com/docs/model-cards-and-prompt-formats/meta-llama-3/
#special-tokens-used-with-meta-llama-3
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-west-2")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"""
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
"""

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_gen_len": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}
```

```
# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["generation"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Meta Llama on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Llama 2's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $@"
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_gen_len = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};
```

```
try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["generation"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3
// and print the response stream.
```

```
import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

public class Llama3_InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
meta.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
        var instruction = (
```

```
                "<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>\\n" +
                "{{prompt}} <|eot_id|>\\n" +
                "<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>\\n"
        ).replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text
 in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native
 response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/
generation").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
```

```
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Send a prompt to Meta Llama 3 and print the response stream in real-time.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-west-2" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70B Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";
```

```
// Define the user message to send.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one sentence.";

// Embed the message in Llama 3's prompt format.
const prompt = `
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
${userMessage}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
`;

// Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
const request = {
  prompt,
  // Optional inference parameters:
  max_gen_len: 512,
  temperature: 0.5,
  top_p: 0.9,
};

// Encode and send the request.
const responseStream = await client.send(
  new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(request),
    modelId,
  }),
);

// Extract and print the response stream in real-time.
for await (const event of responseStream.body) {
  /** @type {{ generation: string }} */
  const chunk = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(event.chunk.bytes));
  if (chunk.generation) {
    process.stdout.write(chunk.generation);
  }
}

// Learn more about the Llama 3 prompt format at:
// https://llama.meta.com/docs/model-cards-and-prompt-formats/meta-llama-3/
#special-tokens-used-with-meta-llama-3
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-west-2")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"""
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
```

```
"""

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_gen_len": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "generation" in chunk:
            print(chunk["generation"], end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Mistral AI for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Mistral on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API
- Invoke Mistral on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream
- Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock

- Invoke Mistral AI models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API
- Invoke Mistral AI models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

Invoke Mistral on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
```

```
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
```

```
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
```

```
        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
const modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
```

```
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
```

```
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Mistral on Amazon Bedrock using Bedrock's Converse API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};
```

```
try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage())
```

```
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach
 the handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request.modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
const modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )
```

```
    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"
```

```
# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv,
 and txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Mistral AI models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Mistral models, using the Invoke Model API.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
```

```
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["outputs"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
mistral-text-completion.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";
```

```
        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
        var instruction = "<s>[INST] {{prompt}} [/INST]\\n".replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/outputs/0/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Output
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Output[]} outputs
 */

/**
 * Invokes a Mistral 7B Instruct model.
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "mistral.mistral-7b-instruct-v0:2".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "mistral.mistral-7b-instruct-v0:2",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });
```

```
  // Mistral instruct models provide optimal results when embedding
  // the prompt into the following template:
  const instruction = `<s>[INST] ${prompt} [/INST]`;

  // Prepare the payload.
  const payload = {
    prompt: instruction,
    max_tokens: 500,
    temperature: 0.5,
  };

  // Invoke the model with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response.
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.outputs[0].text;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt =
    'Complete the following in one sentence: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.MISTRAL_7B.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral.

import boto3
import json
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]"

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)
```

```
try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["outputs"][0]["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Invoke Mistral AI models on Amazon Bedrock using the Invoke Model API with a response stream

The following code examples show how to send a text message to Mistral AI models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.
```

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
```

```
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["outputs"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamReques
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRespon

public class InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
mistral-text-completion.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
        var instruction = "<s>[INST] {{prompt}} [/INST]\\n".replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
```

```
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text
 in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native
 response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/outputs/0/
text").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]"

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
```

```
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "outputs" in chunk:
            print(chunk["outputs"][0].get("text"), end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}''. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Stable Diffusion for Amazon Bedrock Runtime

The following code examples show how to use Amazon Bedrock Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

Invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image

The following code examples show how to invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
// Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.security.SecureRandom;

import static com.example.bedrockruntime.libs.ImageTools.displayImage;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Stable Diffusion XL v1.
        var modelId = "stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
```

```
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response
 fields at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
diffusion-1-0-text-image.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "text_prompts": [{ "text": "{{prompt}}" }],
                    "style_preset": "{{style}}",
                    "seed": {{seed}}
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the image generation.
        var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";

        // Get a random 32-bit seed for the image generation (max.
 4,294,967,295).
        var seed = new BigInteger(31, new SecureRandom());

        // Choose a style preset.
        var style = "cinematic";

        // Embed the prompt, seed, and style in the model's native request
 payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate
                .replace("{{prompt}}", prompt)
                .replace("{{seed}}", seed.toString())
                .replace("{{style}}", style);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated image data from the model's response.
            var base64ImageData = new JSONPointer("/artifacts/0/base64")
                    .queryFrom(responseBody)
                    .toString();

            return base64ImageData;
```

```
        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");

        String base64ImageData = invokeModel();

        displayImage(base64ImageData);
    }


}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
    public function invokeStableDiffusion(string $prompt, int $seed, string
 $style_preset)
    {
        // The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        // For the format, ranges, and available style_presets of Stable
 Diffusion models refer to:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
stability-diffusion.html

        $base64_image_data = "";
        try {
            $modelId = 'stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1';
            $body = [
                'text_prompts' => [
                    ['text' => $prompt]
                ],
                'seed' => $seed,
                'cfg_scale' => 10,
                'steps' => 30
            ];
            if ($style_preset) {
                $body['style_preset'] = $style_preset;
            }

            $result = $this->bedrockRuntimeClient->invokeModel([
                'contentType' => 'application/json',
                'body' => json_encode($body),
                'modelId' => $modelId,
            ]);
            $response_body = json_decode($result['body']);
            $base64_image_data = $response_body->artifacts[0]->base64;
        } catch (Exception $e) {
            echo "Error: ({$e->getCode()}) - {$e->getMessage()}\n";
        }

        return $base64_image_data;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
# Use the native inference API to create an image with Stability.ai Stable
 Diffusion

import base64
import boto3
import json
import os
import random

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Stable Diffusion XL 1.
model_id = "stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1"

# Define the image generation prompt for the model.
prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot."

# Generate a random seed.
seed = random.randint(0, 4294967295)

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "text_prompts": [{"text": prompt}],
    "style_preset": "photographic",
    "seed": seed,
    "cfg_scale": 10,
    "steps": 30,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
```

```
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract the image data.
base64_image_data = model_response["artifacts"][0]["base64"]

# Save the generated image to a local folder.
i, output_dir = 1, "output"
if not os.path.exists(output_dir):
    os.makedirs(output_dir)
while os.path.exists(os.path.join(output_dir, f"stability_{i}.png")):
    i += 1

image_data = base64.b64decode(base64_image_data)

image_path = os.path.join(output_dir, f"stability_{i}.png")
with open(image_path, "wb") as file:
    file.write(image_data)

print(f"The generated image has been saved to {image_path}")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
    "Stable Diffusion Input Parameters should be in a format like this:
*   {
*     "text_prompts": [
*       {"text":"Draw a dolphin with a mustache"},
*       {"text":"Make it photorealistic"}
*     ],
*     "cfg_scale":10,
*     "seed":0,
*     "steps":50
*   }
    TYPES: BEGIN OF prompt_ts,
             text TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
           END OF prompt_ts.

    DATA: BEGIN OF ls_input,
            text_prompts TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF prompt_ts,
            cfg_scale    TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            seed         TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            steps        TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
          END OF ls_input.

    APPEND VALUE prompt_ts( text = iv_prompt ) TO ls_input-text_prompts.
    ls_input-cfg_scale = 10.
    ls_input-seed = 0. "or better, choose a random integer.
    ls_input-steps = 50.

    DATA(lv_json) = /ui2/cl_json=>serialize(
      data = ls_input
                 pretty_name   = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-low_case ).

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_response) = lo_bdr->invokemodel(
          iv_body = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring( lv_json )
          iv_modelid = 'stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1'
          iv_accept = 'application/json'
          iv_contenttype = 'application/json' ).

        "Stable Diffusion Result Format:
*       {
*         "result": "success",
*         "artifacts": [
*           {
*             "seed": 0,
```

```
*             "base64": "iVBORw0KGgoAAAANSUhEUgAAAgAAA....
*             "finishReason": "SUCCESS"
*           }
*         ]
*       }
        TYPES: BEGIN OF artifact_ts,
                 seed         TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
                 base64       TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
                 finishreason TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
               END OF artifact_ts.

        DATA: BEGIN OF ls_response,
                result    TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
                artifacts TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF artifact_ts,
              END OF ls_response.

        /ui2/cl_json=>deserialize(
          EXPORTING jsonx = lo_response->get_body( )
                    pretty_name = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-camel_case
          CHANGING  data  = ls_response ).
        IF ls_response-artifacts IS NOT INITIAL.
          DATA(lv_image) =
 cl_http_utility=>if_http_utility~decode_x_base64( ls_response-artifacts[ 1 ]-
base64 ).
        ENDIF.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

Invoke the Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL foundation model to generate images using L2 high level client.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_bdr_l2_sd) = /aws1/
cl_bdr_l2_factory=>create_stable_diffusion_xl_1( lo_bdr ).
        " iv_prompt contains a prompt like 'Show me a picture of a unicorn
 reading an enterprise financial report'.
        DATA(lv_image) = lo_bdr_l2_sd->text_to_image( iv_prompt ).
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Bedrock Agents with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Bedrock Agents User Guide** – More information about Amazon Bedrock Agents.
- **Amazon Bedrock Agents API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Bedrock Agents actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock Agents

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Bedrock Agents.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  GetAgentCommand,
  paginateListAgents,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} AgentSummary
 */

/**
 * A simple scenario to demonstrate basic setup and interaction with the Bedrock
 Agents Client.
 *
 * This function first initializes the Amazon Bedrock Agents client for a
 specific region.
 * It then retrieves a list of existing agents using the streamlined paginator
 approach.
 * For each agent found, it retrieves detailed information using a command
 object.
 *
 * Demonstrates:
 * - Use of the Bedrock Agents client to initialize and communicate with the AWS
 service.
 * - Listing resources in a paginated response pattern.
 * - Accessing an individual resource using a command object.
 *
 * @returns {Promise<void>} A promise that resolves when the function has
 completed execution.
```

```
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "us-east-1";

  console.log("=".repeat(68));

  console.log(`Initializing Amazon Bedrock Agents client for ${region}...`);
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  console.log("Retrieving the list of existing agents...");
  const paginatorConfig = { client };
  const pages = paginateListAgents(paginatorConfig, {});

  /** @type {AgentSummary[]} */
  const agentSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
    agentSummaries.push(...page.agentSummaries);
  }

  console.log(`Found ${agentSummaries.length} agents in ${region}.`);

  if (agentSummaries.length > 0) {
    for (const agentSummary of agentSummaries) {
      const agentId = agentSummary.agentId;
      console.log("=".repeat(68));
      console.log(`Retrieving agent with ID: ${agentId}:`);
      console.log("-".repeat(68));

      const command = new GetAgentCommand({ agentId });
      const response = await client.send(command);
      const agent = response.agent;

      console.log(` Name: ${agent.agentName}`);
      console.log(` Status: ${agent.agentStatus}`);
      console.log(` ARN: ${agent.agentArn}`);
      console.log(` Foundation model: ${agent.foundationModel}`);
    }
  }
  console.log("=".repeat(68));
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await main();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetAgent
  - ListAgents

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Bedrock Agents
  - Actions for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateAgent with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateAgentActionGroup with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateAgentAlias with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateFlow with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreatePrompt with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreatePromptVersion with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteAgent with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteAgentAlias with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteFlow with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeletePrompt with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetAgent with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetFlow with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK

- Use GetPrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgentActionGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgentKnowledgeBases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgents with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlowAliases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlowVersions with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlows with an AWS SDK
- Use ListKnowledgeBases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListPrompts with an AWS SDK
- Use PrepareAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use PrepareFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK

- Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs
  - An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow using an AWS SDK
  - An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock managed prompts using an AWS SDK
  - An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock Agents using an AWS SDK
  - Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Bedrock Agents with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Actions for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateAgent with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateAgentActionGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateAgentAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
- Use CreatePrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use CreatePromptVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteAgentAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
- Use DeletePrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use GetAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use GetFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use GetFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use GetKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
- Use GetPrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgentActionGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgentKnowledgeBases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgents with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlowAliases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlowVersions with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlows with an AWS SDK
- Use ListKnowledgeBases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListPrompts with an AWS SDK
- Use PrepareAgent with an AWS SDK

- Use PrepareFlow with an AWS SDK

- Use UpdateFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK

Hello Amazon Bedrock Agents

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Bedrock Agents.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  GetAgentCommand,
  paginateListAgents,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} AgentSummary
 */

/**
 * A simple scenario to demonstrate basic setup and interaction with the Bedrock
 Agents Client.
 *
 * This function first initializes the Amazon Bedrock Agents client for a
 specific region.
 * It then retrieves a list of existing agents using the streamlined paginator
 approach.
```

```
 * For each agent found, it retrieves detailed information using a command
 object.
 *
 * Demonstrates:
 * - Use of the Bedrock Agents client to initialize and communicate with the AWS
 service.
 * - Listing resources in a paginated response pattern.
 * - Accessing an individual resource using a command object.
 *
 * @returns {Promise<void>} A promise that resolves when the function has
 completed execution.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "us-east-1";

  console.log("=".repeat(68));

  console.log(`Initializing Amazon Bedrock Agents client for ${region}...`);
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  console.log("Retrieving the list of existing agents...");
  const paginatorConfig = { client };
  const pages = paginateListAgents(paginatorConfig, {});

  /** @type {AgentSummary[]} */
  const agentSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
    agentSummaries.push(...page.agentSummaries);
  }

  console.log(`Found ${agentSummaries.length} agents in ${region}.`);

  if (agentSummaries.length > 0) {
    for (const agentSummary of agentSummaries) {
      const agentId = agentSummary.agentId;
      console.log("=".repeat(68));
      console.log(`Retrieving agent with ID: ${agentId}:`);
      console.log("-".repeat(68));

      const command = new GetAgentCommand({ agentId });
      const response = await client.send(command);
      const agent = response.agent;

      console.log(` Name: ${agent.agentName}`);
```

```
      console.log(` Status: ${agent.agentStatus}`);
      console.log(` ARN: ${agent.agentArn}`);
      console.log(` Foundation model: ${agent.foundationModel}`);
    }
  }
  console.log("=".repeat(68));
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await main();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetAgent
  - ListAgents

Actions for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Bedrock Agents actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Bedrock Agents API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Bedrock Agents API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateAgentActionGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateAgentAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFlowVersion with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
- Use CreatePrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use CreatePromptVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteAgentAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
- Use DeletePrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use GetAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use GetFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use GetFlowVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use GetKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK
- Use GetPrompt with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgentActionGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgentKnowledgeBases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAgents with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlowAliases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlowVersions with an AWS SDK
- Use ListFlows with an AWS SDK
- Use ListKnowledgeBases with an AWS SDK
- Use ListPrompts with an AWS SDK
- Use PrepareAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use PrepareFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateFlowAlias with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateKnowledgeBase with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateAgent` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAgent`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  CreateAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Creates an Amazon Bedrock Agent.
 *
 * @param {string} agentName - A name for the agent that you create.
 * @param {string} foundationModel - The foundation model to be used by the agent
 you create.
 * @param {string} agentResourceRoleArn - The ARN of the IAM role with
 permissions required by the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent").Agent>} An object
 containing details of the created agent.
 */
```

```
export const createAgent = async (
  agentName,
  foundationModel,
  agentResourceRoleArn,
  region = "us-east-1",
) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  const command = new CreateAgentCommand({
    agentName,
    foundationModel,
    agentResourceRoleArn,
  });
  const response = await client.send(command);

  return response.agent;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentName and accountId, and roleName with a
 unique name for the new agent,
  // the id of your AWS account, and the name of an existing execution role that
 the agent can use inside your account.
  // For foundationModel, specify the desired model. Ensure to remove the
 brackets '[]' before adding your data.

  // A string (max 100 chars) that can include letters, numbers, dashes '-', and
 underscores '_'.
  const agentName = "[your-bedrock-agent-name]";

  // Your AWS account id.
  const accountId = "[123456789012]";

  // The name of the agent's execution role. It must be prefixed by
 `AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForAgents_`.
  const roleName = "[AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForAgents_your-role-name]";

  // The ARN for the agent's execution role.
  // Follow the ARN format: 'arn:aws:iam::account-id:role/role-name'
  const roleArn = `arn:aws:iam::${accountId}:role/${roleName}`;

  // Specify the model for the agent. Change if a different model is preferred.
  const foundationModel = "anthropic.claude-v2";
```

```
  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentName and roleArn.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentName, roleArn]);

  console.log("Creating a new agent...");

  const agent = await createAgent(agentName, foundationModel, roleArn);
  console.log(agent);
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent.

```
    def create_agent(self, agent_name, foundation_model, role_arn, instruction):
        """
        Creates an agent that orchestrates interactions between foundation
models,
        data sources, software applications, user conversations, and APIs to
carry
        out tasks to help customers.

        :param agent_name: A name for the agent.
        :param foundation_model: The foundation model to be used for
orchestration by the agent.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions needed by the
agent.
        :param instruction: Instructions that tell the agent what it should do
and how it should
                            interact with users.
```

```
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
raises an exception.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.create_agent(
                agentName=agent_name,
                foundationModel=foundation_model,
                agentResourceRoleArn=role_arn,
                instruction=instruction,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Error: Couldn't create agent. Here's why: {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return response["agent"]
```

- For API details, see CreateAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateAgentActionGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAgentActionGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent action group.

```
    def create_agent_action_group(
            self, name, description, agent_id, agent_version, function_arn,
api_schema
    ):
        """
        Creates an action group for an agent. An action group defines a set of
actions that an
        agent should carry out for the customer.

        :param name: The name to give the action group.
        :param description: The description of the action group.
        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent for which to create
the action group.
        :param agent_version: The version of the agent for which to create the
action group.
        :param function_arn: The ARN of the Lambda function containing the
business logic that is
                                carried out upon invoking the action.
        :param api_schema: Contains the OpenAPI schema for the action group.
        :return: Details about the action group that was created.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.create_agent_action_group(
                actionGroupName=name,
                description=description,
                agentId=agent_id,
                agentVersion=agent_version,
                actionGroupExecutor={"lambda": function_arn},
                apiSchema={"payload": api_schema},
            )
            agent_action_group = response["agentActionGroup"]
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Error: Couldn't create agent action group. Here's why:
{e}")
            raise
        else:
            return agent_action_group
```

- For API details, see CreateAgentActionGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateAgentAlias` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAgentAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent alias.

```
    def create_agent_alias(self, name, agent_id):
        """
        Creates an alias of an agent that can be used to deploy the agent.

        :param name: The name of the alias.
        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :return: Details about the alias that was created.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.create_agent_alias(
                agentAliasName=name, agentId=agent_id
            )
            agent_alias = response["agentAlias"]
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create agent alias. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return agent_alias
```

- For API details, see CreateAgentAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFlow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def create_flow(client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def):
    """
    Creates an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
    flow_name (str): The name for the new flow.
    role_arn (str):  The ARN for the IAM role that use flow uses.
    flow_def (json): The JSON definition of the flow that you want to create.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from CreateFlow.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Creating flow: %s.", flow_name)

        response = client.create_flow(
```

```
            name=flow_name,
            description=flow_description,
            executionRoleArn=role_arn,
            definition=flow_def
        )

        logger.info("Successfully created flow: %s. ID: %s",
                    flow_name,
                    {response['id']})

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error creating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error creating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateFlowAlias` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFlowAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def create_flow_alias(client, flow_id, flow_version, name, description):
    """
    Creates an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        str: The ID for the flow alias.
    """

    try:
        logger.info("Creating flow alias for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        response = client.create_flow_alias(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            name=name,
            description=description,
            routingConfiguration=[
                {
                    "flowVersion": flow_version
                }
            ]
        )
        logger.info("Successfully created flow alias for %s.", flow_id)

        return response['id']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error creating alias for flow: %s - %s",
                flow_id, str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error creating alias for flow : %s - %s",
                flow_id, str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateFlowVersion` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFlowVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def create_flow_version(client, flow_id, description):
    """
    Creates a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.
        description (str) : A description for the flow.

    Returns:
        str: The version for the flow.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Creating flow version for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        # Call CreateFlowVersion operation
        response = client.create_flow_version(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            description=description
        )
```

```
        logging.info("Successfully created flow version %s for flow %s.",
            response['version'], flow_id)

        return response['version']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error creating flow: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error creating flow : %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateKnowledgeBase` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKnowledgeBase`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def create_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, name, role_arn,
 description=None):
    """
    Creates a new knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        name (str): The name of the knowledge base.
        role_arn (str): The ARN of the IAM role that the knowledge base assumes
 to access resources.
```

```
        description (str, optional): A description of the knowledge base.

    Returns:
        dict: The details of the created knowledge base.
    """
    try:
        kwargs = {
            "name": name,
            "roleArn": role_arn,
            "knowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                "type": "VECTOR",
                "vectorKnowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                    "embeddingModelArn": "arn:aws:bedrock:us-east-1::foundation-
model/amazon.titan-embed-text-v1"
                }
            },
            "storageConfiguration": {
                "type": "OPENSEARCH_SERVERLESS",
                # Note: You will need to create an OpenSearch Serverless
 collection first and replace this ARN
                # with your actual collection ARN from the OpenSearch console. If
 you use the console instead,
                # you can use the quick-create flow to have Knowledge Bases
 create the collection for you.
                "opensearchServerlessConfiguration": {
                    "collectionArn": "arn:aws:aoss:us-
east-1::123456789012:collection/abcdefgh12345678defgh",
                        "fieldMapping": {
                        "metadataField": "metadata",
                        "textField": "text",
                        "vectorField": "vector"
                        },
                    "vectorIndexName": "test-uuid"
                    },
                },
            "clientToken": "test-client-token-" + str(uuid.uuid4())
        }

        if description:
            kwargs["description"] = description

        response = bedrock_agent_client.create_knowledge_base(**kwargs)
```

```
        logger.info("Created knowledge base with ID: %s",
 response["knowledgeBase"]["knowledgeBaseId"])
        return response["knowledgeBase"]

    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't create knowledge base. Here's why: %s: %s",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreatePrompt` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePrompt`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a managed prompt

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def create_prompt(client, prompt_name, prompt_description, prompt_template,
 model_id=None):
    """
    Creates an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.
```

```
    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
    prompt_name (str): The name for the new prompt.
    prompt_description (str): The description for the new prompt.
    prompt_template (str): The template for the prompt.
    model_id (str, optional): The model ID to associate with the prompt.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from CreatePrompt.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Creating prompt: %s.", prompt_name)

        # Create a variant with the template
        variant = {
            "name": "default",
            "templateType": "TEXT",
            "templateConfiguration": {
                "text": {
                    "text": prompt_template,
                    "inputVariables": []
                }
            }
        }

        # Extract input variables from the template
        # Look for patterns like {{variable_name}}

        variables = re.findall(r'{{(.*?)}}', prompt_template)
        for var in variables:
            variant["templateConfiguration"]["text"]
["inputVariables"].append({"name": var.strip()})

        # Add model ID if provided
        if model_id:
            variant["modelId"] = model_id

        # Create the prompt with the variant
        create_params = {
            'name': prompt_name,
            'description': prompt_description,
            'variants': [variant]
        }
```

```
        response = client.create_prompt(**create_params)

        logger.info("Successfully created prompt: %s. ID: %s",
                    prompt_name,
                    response['id'])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error creating prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error creating prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreatePrompt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreatePromptVersion` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePromptVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a managed prompt

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a version of an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def create_prompt_version(client, prompt_id, description=None):
```

```
    """
    Creates a version of an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
    prompt_id (str): The identifier of the prompt to create a version for.
    description (str, optional): A description for the version.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from CreatePromptVersion.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Creating version for prompt ID: %s.", prompt_id)

        create_params = {
            'promptIdentifier': prompt_id
        }

        if description:
            create_params['description'] = description

        response = client.create_prompt_version(**create_params)

        logger.info("Successfully created prompt version: %s",
response['version'])
        logger.info("Prompt version ARN: %s", response['arn'])

        return response


    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error creating prompt version: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error creating prompt version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreatePromptVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteAgent` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAgent`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  DeleteAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Deletes an Amazon Bedrock Agent.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent to delete.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-
agent").DeleteAgentCommandOutput>} An object containing the agent id, the status,
 and some additional metadata.
 */
export const deleteAgent = (agentId, region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });
  const command = new DeleteAgentCommand({ agentId });
```

```
  return client.send(command);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentId with an existing agent's id.
  // Ensure to remove the brackets (`[]`) before adding your data.

  // The agentId must be an alphanumeric string with exactly 10 characters.
  const agentId = "[ABC123DE45]";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentId.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentId]);

  console.log(`Deleting agent with ID ${agentId}...`);

  const response = await deleteAgent(agentId);
  console.log(response);
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an agent.

```
    def delete_agent(self, agent_id):
        """
        Deletes an Amazon Bedrock agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent to delete.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
 raises an exception.
```

```
        """

        try:
            response = self.client.delete_agent(
                agentId=agent_id, skipResourceInUseCheck=False
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't delete agent. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteAgentAlias` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAgentAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an agent alias.

```
    def delete_agent_alias(self, agent_id, agent_alias_id):
        """
        Deletes an alias of an Amazon Bedrock agent.
```

```
        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent that the alias
belongs to.
        :param agent_alias_id: The unique identifier of the alias to delete.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
raises an exception.
        """

        try:
            response = self.client.delete_agent_alias(
                agentId=agent_id, agentAliasId=agent_alias_id
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't delete agent alias. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteAgentAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFlow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def delete_flow(client, flow_id):
    """
    Deletes an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
    flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow that you want to delete.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the DeleteFLow operation.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow ID: %s.",
                    flow_id)

        # Call DeleteFlow operation
        response = client.delete_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            skipResourceInUseCheck=True
        )

        logger.info("Finished deleting flow ID: %s", flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error deleting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error deleting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteFlowAlias` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFlowAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def delete_flow_alias(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Deletes an Amazon Bedrock flow alias.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the call to DetectFLowAlias
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow alias %s for flow: %s.", flow_alias_id,
 flow_id)

        # Delete the flow alias.
        response = client.delete_flow_alias(
            aliasIdentifier=flow_alias_id,
            flowIdentifier=flow_id
        )

        logging.info("Successfully deleted flow version for %s.", flow_id)
        return response
```

```
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error deleting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected deleting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteFlowVersion` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFlowVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def delete_flow_version(client, flow_id, flow_version):
    """
    Deletes a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
```

```
        dict: The response from DeleteFlowVersion.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow version %s for flow: %s.",flow_version,
flow_id)

        # Call DeleteFlowVersion operation
        response = client.delete_flow_version(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            flowVersion=flow_version
        )

        logging.info("Successfully deleted flow version %s for %s.",
                flow_version,
                flow_id)
        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error deleting flow version: %s ", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected deleting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteKnowledgeBase` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKnowledgeBase`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def delete_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, knowledge_base_id):
    """
    Deletes a knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        knowledge_base_id (str): The ID of the knowledge base to delete.

    Returns:
        bool: True if the deletion was successful.
    """
    try:
        bedrock_agent_client.delete_knowledge_base(
            knowledgeBaseId=knowledge_base_id
        )

        logger.info("Deleted knowledge base: %s", knowledge_base_id)
        return True
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't delete knowledge base %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
            knowledge_base_id,
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeletePrompt` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePrompt`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a managed prompt

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def delete_prompt(client, prompt_id):
    """
    Deletes an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
    prompt_id (str): The identifier of the prompt that you want to delete.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the DeletePrompt operation.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Deleting prompt ID: %s.", prompt_id)

        response = client.delete_prompt(
            promptIdentifier=prompt_id
        )

        logger.info("Finished deleting prompt ID: %s", prompt_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error deleting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error deleting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePrompt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetAgent` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetAgent`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  GetAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Retrieves the details of an Amazon Bedrock Agent.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent").Agent>} An object
 containing the agent details.
 */
export const getAgent = async (agentId, region = "us-east-1") => {
```

```
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  const command = new GetAgentCommand({ agentId });
  const response = await client.send(command);
  return response.agent;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentId with an existing agent's id.
  // Ensure to remove the brackets '[]' before adding your data.

  // The agentId must be an alphanumeric string with exactly 10 characters.
  const agentId = "[ABC123DE45]";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentId.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentId]);

  console.log(`Retrieving agent with ID ${agentId}...`);

  const agent = await getAgent(agentId);
  console.log(agent);
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an agent.

```
    def get_agent(self, agent_id, log_error=True):
        """
        Gets information about an agent.
```

```
        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :param log_error: Whether to log any errors that occur when getting the
agent.
                          If True, errors will be logged to the logger. If False,
errors
                          will still be raised, but not logged.
        :return: The information about the requested agent.
        """

        try:
            response = self.client.get_agent(agentId=agent_id)
            agent = response["agent"]
        except ClientError as e:
            if log_error:
                logger.error(f"Couldn't get agent {agent_id}. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return agent
```

- For API details, see GetAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetFlow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def get_flow(client, flow_id):
    """
    Gets an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow that you want to get.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the GetFlow operation.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Getting flow ID: %s.",
                    flow_id)

        # Call GetFlow operation.
        response = client.get_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id
        )

        logger.info("Retrieved flow ID: %s. Name: %s", flow_id,
                    response['name'])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error getting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetFlowVersion` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetFlowVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def get_flow_version(client, flow_id, flow_version):
    """
    Gets information about a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.
        flow_version (str): The flow version of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the call to GetFlowVersion.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow version for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        # Call GetFlowVersion operation
        response = client.get_flow_version(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            flowVersion=flow_version
        )

        logging.info("Successfully got flow version %s information for flow %s.",
                     flow_version,
                     flow_id)
```

```
        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error getting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error getting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetFlowVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetKnowledgeBase` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetKnowledgeBase`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def get_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, knowledge_base_id):
    """
    Gets details about a specific knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        knowledge_base_id (str): The ID of the knowledge base.

    Returns:
        dict: The details of the knowledge base.
    """
    try:
```

```
        response = bedrock_agent_client.get_knowledge_base(
            knowledgeBaseId=knowledge_base_id
        )

        logger.info("Retrieved knowledge base: %s", knowledge_base_id)
        return response["knowledgeBase"]
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't get knowledge base %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
            knowledge_base_id,
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetPrompt` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetPrompt`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def get_prompt(client, prompt_id):
    """
    Gets an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
    prompt_id (str): The identifier of the prompt that you want to get.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The response from the GetPrompt operation.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Getting prompt ID: %s.", prompt_id)

        response = client.get_prompt(
            promptIdentifier=prompt_id
        )

        logger.info("Retrieved prompt ID: %s. Name: %s",
                    prompt_id,
                    response['name'])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error getting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetPrompt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListAgentActionGroups` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListAgentActionGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the action groups for an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  ListAgentActionGroupsCommand,
  paginateListAgentActionGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Retrieves a list of Action Groups of an agent utilizing the paginator
 function.
 *
 * This function leverages a paginator, which abstracts the complexity of
 pagination, providing
 * a straightforward way to handle paginated results inside a `for await...of`
 loop.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent.
 * @param {string} agentVersion - The version of the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<ActionGroupSummary[]>} An array of action group summaries.
 */
export const listAgentActionGroupsWithPaginator = async (
  agentId,
  agentVersion,
  region = "us-east-1",
) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });
```

```
  // Create a paginator configuration
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client,
    pageSize: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
  };

  const params = { agentId, agentVersion };

  const pages = paginateListAgentActionGroups(paginatorConfig, params);

  // Paginate until there are no more results
  const actionGroupSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
    actionGroupSummaries.push(...page.actionGroupSummaries);
  }

  return actionGroupSummaries;
};

/**
 * Retrieves a list of Action Groups of an agent utilizing the
 ListAgentActionGroupsCommand.
 *
 * This function demonstrates the manual approach, sending a command to the
 client and processing the response.
 * Pagination must manually be managed. For a simplified approach that abstracts
 away pagination logic, see
 * the `listAgentActionGroupsWithPaginator()` example below.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent.
 * @param {string} agentVersion - The version of the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<ActionGroupSummary[]>} An array of action group summaries.
 */
export const listAgentActionGroupsWithCommandObject = async (
  agentId,
  agentVersion,
  region = "us-east-1",
) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  let nextToken;
  const actionGroupSummaries = [];
  do {
```

```
    const command = new ListAgentActionGroupsCommand({
      agentId,
      agentVersion,
      nextToken,
      maxResults: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
    });

    /** @type {{actionGroupSummaries: ActionGroupSummary[], nextToken?: string}}
 */
    const response = await client.send(command);

    for (const actionGroup of response.actionGroupSummaries || []) {
      actionGroupSummaries.push(actionGroup);
    }

    nextToken = response.nextToken;
  } while (nextToken);

  return actionGroupSummaries;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentId and agentVersion with an existing
 agent's id and version.
  // Ensure to remove the brackets '[]' before adding your data.

  // The agentId must be an alphanumeric string with exactly 10 characters.
  const agentId = "[ABC123DE45]";

  // A string either containing `DRAFT` or a number with 1-5 digits (e.g., '123'
 or 'DRAFT').
  const agentVersion = "[DRAFT]";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentId and agentVersion.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentId, agentVersion]);

  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log(
    "Listing agent action groups using ListAgentActionGroupsCommand:",
  );

  for (const actionGroup of await listAgentActionGroupsWithCommandObject(
    agentId,
```

```
    agentVersion,
  )) {
    console.log(actionGroup);
  }

  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log(
    "Listing agent action groups using the paginateListAgents function:",
  );
  for (const actionGroup of await listAgentActionGroupsWithPaginator(
    agentId,
    agentVersion,
  )) {
    console.log(actionGroup);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAgentActionGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the action groups for an agent.

```
    def list_agent_action_groups(self, agent_id, agent_version):
        """
        List the action groups for a version of an Amazon Bedrock Agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :param agent_version: The version of the agent.
        :return: The list of action group summaries for the version of the agent.
        """

        try:
```

```
            action_groups = []

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_agent_action_groups")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                    agentId=agent_id,
                    agentVersion=agent_version,
                    PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 10},
            ):
                action_groups.extend(page["actionGroupSummaries"])

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't list action groups. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return action_groups
```

- For API details, see ListAgentActionGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListAgentKnowledgeBases` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListAgentKnowledgeBases`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the knowledge bases associated with an agent.

```
    def list_agent_knowledge_bases(self, agent_id, agent_version):
        """
        List the knowledge bases associated with a version of an Amazon Bedrock
Agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :param agent_version: The version of the agent.
        :return: The list of knowledge base summaries for the version of the
agent.
        """

        try:
            knowledge_bases = []

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_agent_knowledge_bases")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                    agentId=agent_id,
                    agentVersion=agent_version,
                    PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 10},
            ):
                knowledge_bases.extend(page["agentKnowledgeBaseSummaries"])

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't list knowledge bases. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return knowledge_bases
```

- For API details, see ListAgentKnowledgeBases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListAgents` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListAgents`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the agents belonging to an account.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  ListAgentsCommand,
  paginateListAgents,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Retrieves a list of available Amazon Bedrock agents utilizing the paginator
 function.
 *
 * This function leverages a paginator, which abstracts the complexity of
 pagination, providing
 * a straightforward way to handle paginated results inside a `for await...of`
 loop.
 *
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<AgentSummary[]>} An array of agent summaries.
 */
export const listAgentsWithPaginator = async (region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  const paginatorConfig = {
    client,
    pageSize: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
  };

  const pages = paginateListAgents(paginatorConfig, {});
```

```
  // Paginate until there are no more results
  const agentSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
    agentSummaries.push(...page.agentSummaries);
  }

  return agentSummaries;
};

/**
 * Retrieves a list of available Amazon Bedrock agents utilizing the
 ListAgentsCommand.
 *
 * This function demonstrates the manual approach, sending a command to the
 client and processing the response.
 * Pagination must manually be managed. For a simplified approach that abstracts
 away pagination logic, see
 * the `listAgentsWithPaginator()` example below.
 *
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<AgentSummary[]>} An array of agent summaries.
 */
export const listAgentsWithCommandObject = async (region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  let nextToken;
  const agentSummaries = [];
  do {
    const command = new ListAgentsCommand({
      nextToken,
      maxResults: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
    });

    /** @type {{agentSummaries: AgentSummary[], nextToken?: string}} */
    const paginatedResponse = await client.send(command);

    agentSummaries.push(...(paginatedResponse.agentSummaries || []));

    nextToken = paginatedResponse.nextToken;
  } while (nextToken);

  return agentSummaries;
};
```

```
// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log("Listing agents using ListAgentsCommand:");
  for (const agent of await listAgentsWithCommandObject()) {
    console.log(agent);
  }

  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log("Listing agents using the paginateListAgents function:");
  for (const agent of await listAgentsWithPaginator()) {
    console.log(agent);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAgents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the agents belonging to an account.

```
    def list_agents(self):
        """
        List the available Amazon Bedrock Agents.

        :return: The list of available bedrock agents.
        """

        try:
            all_agents = []

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_agents")
            for page in paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 10}):
```

```
                all_agents.extend(page["agentSummaries"])

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't list agents. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return all_agents
```

- For API details, see ListAgents in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListFlowAliases` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListFlowAliases`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the aliases for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def list_flow_aliases(client, flow_id):
    """
    Lists the aliases of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from ListFlowAliases.
    """
    try:
```

```
        finished = False

        logger.info("Listing flow aliases for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        print(f"Aliases for flow: {flow_id}")

        response = client.list_flow_aliases(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            maxResults=10)

        while finished is False:

            for alias in response['flowAliasSummaries']:
                print(f"Alias Name: {alias['name']}")
                print(f"ID: {alias['id']}")
                print(f"Description: {alias.get('description', 'No
description')}\n")

                if 'nextToken' in response:
                    next_token = response['nextToken']
                    response = client.list_flow_aliases(maxResults=10,
                                                        nextToken=next_token)
                else:
                    finished = True

        logging.info("Successfully listed flow aliases for flow %s.",
                flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error listing flow aliases: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error listing flow aliases: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListFlowAliases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListFlowVersions` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListFlowVersions`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the versions of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def list_flow_versions(client, flow_id):
    """
    Lists the versions of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from ListFlowVersions.
    """
    try:

        finished = False

        logger.info("Listing flow versions for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        response = client.list_flow_versions(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            maxResults=10)

        while finished is False:

            print(f"Versions for flow:{flow_id}")
            for version in response['flowVersionSummaries']:
                print(f"Version: {version['version']}")
                print(f"Status: {version['status']}\n")

                if 'nextToken' in response:
                    next_token = response['nextToken']
                    response = client.list_flow_versions(maxResults=10,
```

```
                                                nextToken=next_token)
                else:
                    finished = True


        logging.info("Successfully listed flow versions for flow %s.",
                flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListFlowVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListFlows` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListFlows`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List Amazon Bedrock flows.

```
def list_flows(client):
    """
    Lists versions of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
```

```
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        Nothing.
    """
    try:
        finished = False

        logger.info("Listing flows:")

        response = client.list_flows(maxResults=10)

        while finished is False:

            for flow in response['flowSummaries']:
                print(f"ID: {flow['id']}")
                print(f"Name: {flow['name']}")
                print(
                    f"Description: {flow.get('description', 'No description')}")
                print(f"Latest version: {flow['version']}")
                print(f"Status: {flow['status']}\n")

            if 'nextToken' in response:
                next_token = response['nextToken']
                response = client.list_flows(maxResults=10,
                                             nextToken=next_token)
            else:
                finished = True

        logging.info("Successfully listed flows.")


    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListFlows in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListKnowledgeBases` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListKnowledgeBases`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List Amazon Bedrock knowledge Bases.

```
def list_knowledge_bases(bedrock_agent_client, max_results=None):
    """
    Lists the knowledge bases in your AWS account.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        max_results (int, optional): The maximum number of knowledge bases to
 return.

    Returns:
        list: A list of knowledge base details.
    """
    try:
        kwargs = {}
        if max_results is not None:
            kwargs["maxResults"] = max_results

        # Initialize an empty list to store all knowledge bases
        all_knowledge_bases = []

        # Use paginator to handle pagination automatically
        paginator = bedrock_agent_client.get_paginator('list_knowledge_bases')
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(**kwargs)

        # Iterate through each page of results
        for page in page_iterator:
            all_knowledge_bases.extend(page.get('knowledgeBaseSummaries', []))
```

```
        logger.info("Found %s knowledge bases.", len(all_knowledge_bases))
        return all_knowledge_bases
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't list knowledge bases. Here's why: %s: %s",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListKnowledgeBases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListPrompts` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListPrompts`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List Amazon Bedrock managed prompts.

```
def list_prompts(client, max_results=10):
    """
    Lists Amazon Bedrock managed prompts.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        max_results (int): Maximum number of results to return per page.

    Returns:
        list: A list of prompt summaries.
```

```
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Listing prompts:")

        # Create a paginator for the list_prompts operation
        paginator = client.get_paginator('list_prompts')

        # Create the pagination parameters
        pagination_config = {
            'maxResults': max_results
        }

        # Initialize an empty list to store all prompts
        all_prompts = []

        # Iterate through all pages
        for page in paginator.paginate(**pagination_config):
            all_prompts.extend(page.get('promptSummaries', []))

        logger.info("Successfully listed %s prompts.", len(all_prompts))
        return all_prompts

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error listing prompts: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error listing prompts: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListPrompts in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PrepareAgent` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PrepareAgent`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke an agent

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Prepare an agent for internal testing.

```
    def prepare_agent(self, agent_id):
        """
        Creates a DRAFT version of the agent that can be used for internal
testing.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent to prepare.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
raises an exception.
        """
        try:
            prepared_agent_details = self.client.prepare_agent(agentId=agent_id)
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't prepare agent. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return prepared_agent_details
```

- For API details, see PrepareAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PrepareFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PrepareFlow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and invoke a flow

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Prepare an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def prepare_flow(client, flow_id):
    """
    Prepares an Amazon Bedrock Flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow that you want to prepare.

    Returns:
        str: The status of the flow preparation
    """
    try:

        # Prepare the flow.
        logger.info("Preparing flow ID: %s",
                    flow_id)

        response = client.prepare_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id
        )

        status = response.get('status')

        while status == "Preparing":
            logger.info("Preparing flow ID: %s. Status %s",
                        flow_id, status)

            sleep(5)
            response = client.get_flow(
                flowIdentifier=flow_id
            )
```

```
            status = response.get('status')
            print(f"Flow Status: {status}")

        if status == "Prepared":
            logger.info("Finished preparing flow ID: %s. Status %s",
                        flow_id, status)
        else:
            logger.warning("flow ID: %s not prepared. Status %s",
                           flow_id, status)

        return status

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error preparing flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error preparing flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see PrepareFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFlow`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an Amazon Bedrock Flow.

```
def update_flow(client, flow_id, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
 flow_def):
```

```
    """
    Updates an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
    flow_id (str): The ID for the flow that you want to update.
    flow_name (str): The name for the flow.
    role_arn (str):  The ARN for the IAM role that use flow uses.
    flow_def (json): The JSON definition of the flow that you want to create.

    Returns:
        dict: Flow information if successful.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Updating flow: %s.", flow_id)

        response = client.update_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            name=flow_name,
            description=flow_description,
            executionRoleArn=role_arn,
            definition=flow_def
        )

        logger.info("Successfully updated flow: %s. ID: %s",
                    flow_name,
                    {response['id']})

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error updating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error updating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateFlowAlias` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFlowAlias`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def update_flow_alias(client, flow_id, alias_id, flow_version, name,
 description):
    """
    Updates an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        str: The response from UpdateFlowAlias.
    """

    try:
        logger.info("Updating flow alias %s for flow: %s.", alias_id, flow_id)

        response = client.update_flow_alias(
            aliasIdentifier=alias_id,
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            name=name,
            description=description,
            routingConfiguration=[
                {
                    "flowVersion": flow_version
                }
            ]
        )
```

```
        logger.info("Successfully updated flow alias %s for %s.", alias_id,
 flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error updating alias %s for flow: %s - %s",
                alias_id, flow_id, str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error updating alias %s for flow : %s -
 %s",
                alias_id, flow_id, str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateFlowAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateKnowledgeBase` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateKnowledgeBase`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def update_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, knowledge_base_id, name=None,
 description=None, role_arn=None):
    """
    Updates an existing knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
```

```
        knowledge_base_id (str): The ID of the knowledge base to update.
        name (str, optional): The new name for the knowledge base.
        description (str, optional): The new description for the knowledge base.
        role_arn (str, optional): The new IAM role ARN for the knowledge base.

    Returns:
        dict: The details of the updated knowledge base.
    """
    try:
        kwargs = {
            "knowledgeBaseId": knowledge_base_id,
            "knowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                "type": "VECTOR",
                "vectorKnowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                    "embeddingModelArn": "arn:aws:bedrock:us-east-1::foundation-
model/amazon.titan-embed-text-v1"
                }
            }
        }

        if name:
            kwargs["name"] = name
        if description:
            kwargs["description"] = description
        if role_arn:
            kwargs["roleArn"] = role_arn

        response = bedrock_agent_client.update_knowledge_base(**kwargs)

        logger.info("Updated knowledge base: %s", knowledge_base_id)
        return response["knowledgeBase"]

    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't update knowledge base %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
            knowledge_base_id,
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Agents using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Bedrock Agents with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Bedrock Agents or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow using an AWS SDK
- An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock managed prompts using an AWS SDK
- An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock Agents using an AWS SDK
- Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an execution role for the flow.
- Create the flow.
- Deploy the fully configured flow.
- Invoke the flow with user-provided prompts.
- Delete all created resources.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generates a music playlist based on user-specified genre and number of songs.

```
from datetime import datetime
import logging
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from roles import create_flow_role, delete_flow_role, update_role_policy
from flow import create_flow, prepare_flow, delete_flow
from run_flow import run_playlist_flow
from flow_version import create_flow_version, delete_flow_version
from flow_alias import create_flow_alias, delete_flow_alias

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

def create_input_node(name):
    """
    Creates an input node configuration for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    The input node serves as the entry point for the flow and defines
    the initial document structure that will be passed to subsequent nodes.

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the input node.

    Returns:
        dict: The input node configuration.

    """
```

```
    return {
        "type": "Input",
        "name": name,
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "Object"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_prompt_node(name, model_id):
    """
    Creates a prompt node configuration for a Bedrock flow that generates music
 playlists.

    The prompt node defines an inline prompt template that creates a music
 playlist based on
    a specified genre and number of songs. The prompt uses two variables that are
 mapped from
    the input JSON object:
    - {{genre}}: The genre of music to create a playlist for
    - {{number}}: The number of songs to include in the playlist

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the prompt node.
        model_id (str): The identifier of the foundation model to use for the
 prompt.

    Returns:
        dict: The prompt node.

    """

    return {
        "type": "Prompt",
        "name": name,
        "configuration": {
            "prompt": {
                "sourceConfiguration": {
                    "inline": {
                        "modelId": model_id,
                        "templateType": "TEXT",
```

```
                        "inferenceConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "temperature": 0.8
                            }
                        },
                        "templateConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "text": "Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting
 of the following number of songs: {{number}}."
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "genre",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data.genre"
            },
            {
                "name": "number",
                "type": "Number",
                "expression": "$.data.number"
            }
        ],
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "modelCompletion",
                "type": "String"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_output_node(name):
    """
    Creates an output node configuration for a Bedrock flow.

    The output node validates that the output from the last node is a string
    and returns it unmodified. The input name must be "document".

    Args:
```

```
        name (str): The name of the output node.

    Returns:
        dict: The output node configuration containing the output node:

    """

    return {
        "type": "Output",
        "name": name,
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data"
            }
        ]
    }




def create_playlist_flow(client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
 prompt_model_id):
    """
    Creates the playlist generator flow.
    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        role_arn (str): Name for the new IAM role.
        prompt_model_id (str): The id of the model to use in the prompt node.
    Returns:
        dict: The response from the create_flow operation.
    """

    input_node = create_input_node("FlowInput")
    prompt_node = create_prompt_node("MakePlaylist", prompt_model_id)
    output_node = create_output_node("FlowOutput")

    # Create connections between the nodes
    connections = []

    #  First, create connections between the output of the flow
    # input node and each input of the prompt node.
    for prompt_node_input in prompt_node["inputs"]:
```

```
        connections.append(
            {
                "name": "_".join([input_node["name"], prompt_node["name"],
                                  prompt_node_input["name"]]),
                "source": input_node["name"],
                "target": prompt_node["name"],
                "type": "Data",
                "configuration": {
                    "data": {
                        "sourceOutput": input_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                        "targetInput": prompt_node_input["name"]
                    }
                }
            }
        )

    # Then, create a connection between the output of the prompt node and the
input of the flow output node
    connections.append(
        {
            "name": "_".join([prompt_node["name"], output_node["name"]]),
            "source": prompt_node["name"],
            "target": output_node["name"],
            "type": "Data",
            "configuration": {
                "data": {
                    "sourceOutput": prompt_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                    "targetInput": output_node["inputs"][0]["name"]
                }
            }
        }
    )

    flow_def = {
        "nodes": [input_node, prompt_node, output_node],
        "connections": connections
    }

    # Create the flow.

    response = create_flow(
        client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def)

    return response
```

```
def get_model_arn(client, model_id):
    """
    Gets the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for a model.
    Args:
        client (str): Amazon Bedrock boto3 client.
        model_id (str): The id of the model.
    Returns:
        str: The ARN of the model.
    """

    try:
        # Call GetFoundationModelDetails operation
        response = client.get_foundation_model(modelIdentifier=model_id)

        # Extract model ARN from the response
        model_arn = response['modelDetails']['modelArn']

        return model_arn

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise


def prepare_flow_version_and_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                   flow_id):
    """
    Prepares the flow and then creates a flow version and flow alias.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        flowd_id (str): The ID of the flow that you want to prepare.
    Returns: The flow_version and flow_alias.

    """

    status = prepare_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)
```

```
    flow_version = None
    flow_alias = None

    if status == 'Prepared':

        # Create the flow version and alias.
        flow_version = create_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                                           flow_id,
                                           f"flow version for flow {flow_id}.")

        flow_alias = create_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                       flow_id,
                                       flow_version,
                                       "latest",
                                       f"Alias for flow {flow_id}, version
 {flow_version}")

    return flow_version, flow_alias



def delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
                          iam_client,
                          role_name,
                          flow_id,
                          flow_version,
                          flow_alias):
    """
    Deletes the flow, flow alias, flow version, and IAM roles.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        iam_client: Amazon IAM boto3 client.
        role_name (str): The name of the IAM role.
        flow_id (str): The id of the flow.
        flow_version (str): The version of the flow.
        flow_alias (str): The alias of the flow.
    """

    if flow_id is not None:
        if flow_alias is not None:
            delete_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias)
        if flow_version is not None:
            delete_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                        flow_id, flow_version)
```

```
        delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    if role_name is not None:
        delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)



def main():
    """
    Creates, runs, and optionally deletes a Bedrock flow for generating music
 playlists.

    Note:
        Requires valid AWS credentials in the default profile
    """

    delete_choice = "y"
    try:

        # Get various boto3 clients.
        session = boto3.Session(profile_name='default')
        bedrock_agent_runtime_client = session.client('bedrock-agent-runtime')
        bedrock_agent_client = session.client('bedrock-agent')
        bedrock_client = session.client('bedrock')
        iam_client = session.client('iam')

        role_name = None
        flow_id = None
        flow_version = None
        flow_alias = None

        #Change the model as needed.
        prompt_model_id = "amazon.nova-pro-v1:0"

        # Base the flow name on the current date and time
        current_time = datetime.now()
        timestamp = current_time.strftime("%Y-%m-%d-%H-%M-%S")
        flow_name = f"FlowPlayList_{timestamp}"
        flow_description = "A flow to generate a music playlist."

        # Create a role for the flow.
        role_name = f"BedrockFlowRole-{flow_name}"
        role = create_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        role_arn = role['Arn']
```

```
        # Create the flow.
        response = create_playlist_flow(
            bedrock_agent_client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
prompt_model_id)
        flow_id = response.get('id')

        if flow_id:
            # Update accessible resources in the role.
            model_arn = get_model_arn(bedrock_client, prompt_model_id)
            update_role_policy(iam_client, role_name, [
                               response.get('arn'), model_arn])

            # Prepare the flow and flow version.
            flow_version, flow_alias = prepare_flow_version_and_alias(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

            # Run the flow.
            if flow_version and flow_alias:
                run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_runtime_client,
                                  flow_id, flow_alias)

                delete_choice = input("Delete flow? y or n : ").lower()


            else:
                print("Couldn't run. Deleting flow and role.")
                delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)
                delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        else:
            print("Couldn't create flow.")


    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Fatal error: {str(e)}")

    finally:
        if delete_choice == 'y':
                delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
                                      iam_client,
                                      role_name,
                                      flow_id,
                                      flow_version,
                                      flow_alias)
```

```
        else:
            print("Flow not deleted. ")
            print(f"\tFlow ID: {flow_id}")
            print(f"\tFlow version: {flow_version}")
            print(f"\tFlow alias: {flow_alias}")
            print(f"\tRole ARN: {role_arn}")

        print("Done!")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()


def invoke_flow(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data):
    """
    Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

    Args:
        client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
        input_data: Input data for the flow.

    Returns:
        Dict containing flow status and flow output.
    """

    response = None
    request_params = None

    request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }


    response = client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

    flow_status = ""
    output= ""

    # Process the streaming response
```

```
    for event in response['responseStream']:

        # Check if flow is complete.
        if 'flowCompletionEvent' in event:
            flow_status = event['flowCompletionEvent']['completionReason']

        # Save the model output.
        elif 'flowOutputEvent' in event:
            output = event['flowOutputEvent']['content']['document']
            logger.info("Output : %s", output)

        # Log trace events.
        elif 'flowTraceEvent' in event:
            logger.info("Flow trace:  %s", event['flowTraceEvent'])

    return {
        "flow_status": flow_status,
        "output": output

    }




def run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Runs the playlist generator flow.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to run.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.

    """



    print ("Welcome to the playlist generator flow.")
    # Get the initial prompt from the user.
    genre = input("Enter genre: ")
    number_of_songs = int(input("Enter number of songs: "))


    # Use prompt to create input data for the input node.
    flow_input_data = {
```

```
        "content": {
            "document": {
                "genre" : genre,
                "number" : number_of_songs
            }
        },
        "nodeName": "FlowInput",
        "nodeOutputName": "document"
    }

    try:

        result = invoke_flow(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, flow_input_data)

        status = result['flow_status']

        if status == "SUCCESS":
                # The flow completed successfully.
                logger.info("The flow %s successfully completed.", flow_id)
                print(result['output'])
        else:
            logger.warning("Flow status: %s",status)

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Client error: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("Client error: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.error("An error occurred: %s", {str(e)})
        logger.error("Error type: %s", {type(e)})
        raise



def create_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Creates an IAM role for Amazon Bedrock with permissions to run a flow.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name for the new IAM role.
    Returns:
        str: The role Amazon Resource Name.
```

```
    """


    # Trust relationship policy - allows Amazon Bedrock service to assume this
role.
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "bedrock.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }]
    }

    # Basic inline policy for for running a flow.

    resources = "*"

    bedrock_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                # Using * as placeholder - Later you update with specific ARNs.
                "Resource": resources
            }
        ]
    }



    try:
        # Create the IAM role with trust policy
        logging.info("Creating role: %s",role_name)
        role = client.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy),
```

```
            Description="Role for Amazon Bedrock operations"
        )

        # Attach inline policy to the role
        print("Attaching inline policy")
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(bedrock_policy)
        )

        logging.info("Create Role ARN: %s", role['Role']['Arn'])
        return role['Role']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error creating role: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.warning("Unexpected error: %s", str(e))
        raise


def update_role_policy(client, role_name, resource_arns):
    """
    Updates an IAM role's inline policy with specific resource ARNs.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the existing role.
        resource_arns (list): List of resource ARNs to allow access to.
    """


    updated_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:GetFlow",
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                "Resource": resource_arns
```

```
            }
        ]
    }

    try:
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(updated_policy)
        )
        logging.info("Updated policy for role: %s",role_name)

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error updating role policy: %s", str(e))
        raise


def delete_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Deletes an IAM role.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the role to delete.
    """




    try:
        # Detach and delete inline policies
        policies = client.list_role_policies(RoleName=role_name)['PolicyNames']
        for policy_name in policies:
            client.delete_role_policy(RoleName=role_name, PolicyName=policy_name)

        # Delete the role
        client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logging.info("Deleted role: %s", role_name)


    except ClientError as e:
        logging.info("Error Deleting role: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateFlow
  - CreateFlowAlias
  - CreateFlowVersion
  - DeleteFlow
  - DeleteFlowAlias
  - DeleteFlowVersion
  - GetFlow
  - GetFlowAlias
  - GetFlowVersion
  - InvokeFlow
  - PrepareFlow

An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock managed prompts using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a managed prompt.
- Create a version of the prompt.
- Invoke the prompt using the version.
- Clean up resources (optional).

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and invoke a managed prompt.

```
import argparse
import boto3
import logging
import time

# Now import the modules
from prompt import create_prompt, create_prompt_version, delete_prompt
from run_prompt import invoke_prompt

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO,
    format='%(levelname)s: %(message)s'
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)



def run_scenario(bedrock_client, bedrock_runtime_client, model_id, cleanup=True):
    """
    Runs the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.

    Args:
        bedrock_client: The Amazon Bedrock Agent client.
        bedrock_runtime_client: The Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
        model_id (str): The model ID to use for the prompt.
        cleanup (bool): Whether to clean up resources at the end of the scenario.

    Returns:
        dict: A dictionary containing the created resources.
    """
    prompt_id = None

    try:
        # Step 1: Create a prompt
        print("\n=== Step 1: Creating a prompt ===")
        prompt_name = f"PlaylistGenerator-{int(time.time())}"
        prompt_description = "Playlist generator"
        prompt_template = """
          Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting of the following number of
 songs: {{number}}."""

        create_response = create_prompt(
```

```
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_name,
            prompt_description,
            prompt_template,
            model_id
        )

        prompt_id = create_response['id']
        print(f"Created prompt: {prompt_name} with ID: {prompt_id}")

        # Create a version of the prompt
        print("\n=== Creating a version of the prompt ===")
        version_response = create_prompt_version(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_id,
            description="Initial version of the product description generator"
        )

        prompt_version_arn = version_response['arn']
        prompt_version = version_response['version']

        print(f"Created prompt version: {prompt_version}")
        print(f"Prompt version ARN: {prompt_version_arn}")

        # Step 2: Invoke the prompt directly
        print("\n=== Step 2: Invoking the prompt ===")
        input_variables = {
            "genre": "pop",
            "number": "2",
           }

        # Use the ARN from the create_prompt_version response
        result = invoke_prompt(
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            prompt_version_arn,
            input_variables
        )
        # Display the playlist
        print(f"\n{result}")


        # Step 3: Clean up resources (optional)
        if cleanup:
            print("\n=== Step 3: Cleaning up resources ===")
```

```
            # Delete the prompt
            print(f"Deleting prompt {prompt_id}...")
            delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)

            print("Cleanup complete")
        else:
            print("\n=== Resources were not cleaned up ===")
            print(f"Prompt ID: {prompt_id}")



    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error in scenario: %s", str(e))

        # Attempt to clean up if an error occurred and cleanup was requested
        if cleanup and prompt_id:
            try:
                print("\nCleaning up resources after error...")

                # Delete the prompt
                try:
                    delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)
                    print("Cleanup after error complete")
                except Exception as cleanup_error:
                    logger.error("Error during cleanup: %s", str(cleanup_error))
            except Exception as final_error:
                logger.error("Final error during cleanup: %s", str(final_error))

        # Re-raise the original exception
        raise

def main():
    """
    Entry point for the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Run the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--region',
        default='us-east-1',
        help="The AWS Region to use."
    )
```

```
    parser.add_argument(
        '--model-id',
        default='anthropic.claude-v2',
        help="The model ID to use for the prompt."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--cleanup',
        action='store_true',
        default=True,
        help="Clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--no-cleanup',
        action='store_false',
        dest='cleanup',
        help="Don't clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    bedrock_client = boto3.client('bedrock-agent', region_name=args.region)
    bedrock_runtime_client = boto3.client('bedrock-runtime',
 region_name=args.region)

    print("=== Amazon Bedrock Managed Prompt Scenario ===")
    print(f"Region: {args.region}")
    print(f"Model ID: {args.model_id}")
    print(f"Cleanup resources: {args.cleanup}")

    try:
        run_scenario(
            bedrock_client,
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            args.model_id,
            args.cleanup
        )

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error running scenario: %s", str(e))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Converse
  - CreatePrompt
  - CreatePromptVersion
  - DeletePrompt

An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke Amazon Bedrock Agents using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an execution role for the agent.
- Create the agent and deploy a DRAFT version.
- Create a Lambda function that implements the agent's capabilities.
- Create an action group that connects the agent to the Lambda function.
- Deploy the fully configured agent.
- Invoke the agent with user-provided prompts.
- Delete all created resources.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and invoke an agent.

```
REGION = "us-east-1"
ROLE_POLICY_NAME = "agent_permissions"


class BedrockAgentScenarioWrapper:
```

```
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon Bedrock
Agents."""

    def __init__(
            self, bedrock_agent_client, runtime_client, lambda_client,
iam_resource, postfix
    ):
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.bedrock_agent_runtime_client = runtime_client
        self.postfix = postfix

        self.bedrock_wrapper = BedrockAgentWrapper(bedrock_agent_client)

        self.agent = None
        self.agent_alias = None
        self.agent_role = None
        self.prepared_agent_details = None
        self.lambda_role = None
        self.lambda_function = None

    def run_scenario(self):
        print("=" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Agents demo.")
        print("=" * 88)

        # Query input from user
        print("Let's start with creating an agent:")
        print("-" * 40)
        name, foundation_model = self._request_name_and_model_from_user()
        print("-" * 40)

        # Create an execution role for the agent
        self.agent_role = self._create_agent_role(foundation_model)

        # Create the agent
        self.agent = self._create_agent(name, foundation_model)

        # Prepare a DRAFT version of the agent
        self.prepared_agent_details = self._prepare_agent()

        # Create the agent's Lambda function
        self.lambda_function = self._create_lambda_function()
```

```
        # Configure permissions for the agent to invoke the Lambda function
        self._allow_agent_to_invoke_function()
        self._let_function_accept_invocations_from_agent()

        # Create an action group to connect the agent with the Lambda function
        self._create_agent_action_group()

        # If the agent has been modified or any components have been added,
prepare the agent again
        components = [self._get_agent()]
        components += self._get_agent_action_groups()
        components += self._get_agent_knowledge_bases()

        latest_update = max(component["updatedAt"] for component in components)
        if latest_update > self.prepared_agent_details["preparedAt"]:
            self.prepared_agent_details = self._prepare_agent()

        # Create an agent alias
        self.agent_alias = self._create_agent_alias()

        # Test the agent
        self._chat_with_agent(self.agent_alias)

        print("=" * 88)
        print("Thanks for running the demo!\n")

        if q.ask("Do you want to delete the created resources? [y/N] ",
q.is_yesno):
            self._delete_resources()
            print("=" * 88)
            print(
                "All demo resources have been deleted. Thanks again for running
the demo!"
            )
        else:
            self._list_resources()
            print("=" * 88)
            print("Thanks again for running the demo!")

    def _request_name_and_model_from_user(self):
        existing_agent_names = [
            agent["agentName"] for agent in self.bedrock_wrapper.list_agents()
        ]
```

```
        while True:
            name = q.ask("Enter an agent name: ", self.is_valid_agent_name)
            if name.lower() not in [n.lower() for n in existing_agent_names]:
                break
            print(
                f"Agent {name} conflicts with an existing agent. Please use a
different name."
            )

        models = ["anthropic.claude-instant-v1", "anthropic.claude-v2"]
        model_id = models[
            q.choose("Which foundation model would you like to use? ", models)
        ]

        return name, model_id

    def _create_agent_role(self, model_id):
        role_name = f"AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForAgents_{self.postfix}"
        model_arn = f"arn:aws:bedrock:{REGION}::foundation-model/{model_id}*"

        print("Creating an an execution role for the agent...")

        try:
            role = self.iam_resource.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                    {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {"Service":
"bedrock.amazonaws.com"},
                                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                            }
                        ],
                    }
                ),
            )

            role.Policy(ROLE_POLICY_NAME).put(
                PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                    {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
```

```
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Action": "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                                "Resource": model_arn,
                            }
                        ],
                    }
                )
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create role {role_name}. Here's why: {e}")
            raise

        return role

    def _create_agent(self, name, model_id):
        print("Creating the agent...")

        instruction = """
            You are a friendly chat bot. You have access to a function called
that returns
            information about the current date and time. When responding with
date or time,
            please make sure to add the timezone UTC.
            """
        agent = self.bedrock_wrapper.create_agent(
            agent_name=name,
            foundation_model=model_id,
            instruction=instruction,
            role_arn=self.agent_role.arn,
        )
        self._wait_for_agent_status(agent["agentId"], "NOT_PREPARED")

        return agent

    def _prepare_agent(self):
        print("Preparing the agent...")

        agent_id = self.agent["agentId"]
        prepared_agent_details = self.bedrock_wrapper.prepare_agent(agent_id)
        self._wait_for_agent_status(agent_id, "PREPARED")

        return prepared_agent_details
```

```
    def _create_lambda_function(self):
        print("Creating the Lambda function...")

        function_name = f"AmazonBedrockExampleFunction_{self.postfix}"

        self.lambda_role = self._create_lambda_role()

        try:
            deployment_package = self._create_deployment_package(function_name)

            lambda_function = self.lambda_client.create_function(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Description="Lambda function for Amazon Bedrock example",
                Runtime="python3.11",
                Role=self.lambda_role.arn,
                Handler=f"{function_name}.lambda_handler",
                Code={"ZipFile": deployment_package},
                Publish=True,
            )

            waiter = self.lambda_client.get_waiter("function_active_v2")
            waiter.wait(FunctionName=function_name)

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't create Lambda function {function_name}. Here's why:
{e}"
            )
            raise

        return lambda_function

    def _create_lambda_role(self):
        print("Creating an execution role for the Lambda function...")

        role_name = f"AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForLambda_{self.postfix}"

        try:
            role = self.iam_resource.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                    {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
```

```
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
                                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                            }
                        ],
                    }
                ),
            )
            role.attach_policy(
                PolicyArn="arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"
            )
            print(f"Created role {role_name}")
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create role {role_name}. Here's why: {e}")
            raise

        print("Waiting for the execution role to be fully propagated...")
        wait(10)

        return role

    def _allow_agent_to_invoke_function(self):
        policy = self.iam_resource.RolePolicy(
            self.agent_role.role_name, ROLE_POLICY_NAME
        )
        doc = policy.policy_document
        doc["Statement"].append(
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": "lambda:InvokeFunction",
                "Resource": self.lambda_function["FunctionArn"],
            }
        )

 self.agent_role.Policy(ROLE_POLICY_NAME).put(PolicyDocument=json.dumps(doc))

    def _let_function_accept_invocations_from_agent(self):
        try:
            self.lambda_client.add_permission(
                FunctionName=self.lambda_function["FunctionName"],
                SourceArn=self.agent["agentArn"],
```

```
                StatementId="BedrockAccess",
                Action="lambda:InvokeFunction",
                Principal="bedrock.amazonaws.com",
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't grant Bedrock permission to invoke the Lambda
function. Here's why: {e}"
            )
            raise

    def _create_agent_action_group(self):
        print("Creating an action group for the agent...")

        try:
            with open("./scenario_resources/api_schema.yaml") as file:
                self.bedrock_wrapper.create_agent_action_group(
                    name="current_date_and_time",
                    description="Gets the current date and time.",
                    agent_id=self.agent["agentId"],
                    agent_version=self.prepared_agent_details["agentVersion"],
                    function_arn=self.lambda_function["FunctionArn"],
                    api_schema=json.dumps(yaml.safe_load(file)),
                )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create agent action group. Here's why: {e}")
            raise

    def _get_agent(self):
        return self.bedrock_wrapper.get_agent(self.agent["agentId"])

    def _get_agent_action_groups(self):
        return self.bedrock_wrapper.list_agent_action_groups(
            self.agent["agentId"], self.prepared_agent_details["agentVersion"]
        )

    def _get_agent_knowledge_bases(self):
        return self.bedrock_wrapper.list_agent_knowledge_bases(
            self.agent["agentId"], self.prepared_agent_details["agentVersion"]
        )

    def _create_agent_alias(self):
        print("Creating an agent alias...")
```

```
        agent_alias_name = "test_agent_alias"
        agent_alias = self.bedrock_wrapper.create_agent_alias(
            agent_alias_name, self.agent["agentId"]
        )

        self._wait_for_agent_status(self.agent["agentId"], "PREPARED")

        return agent_alias

    def _wait_for_agent_status(self, agent_id, status):
        while self.bedrock_wrapper.get_agent(agent_id)["agentStatus"] != status:
            wait(2)

    def _chat_with_agent(self, agent_alias):
        print("-" * 88)
        print("The agent is ready to chat.")
        print("Try asking for the date or time. Type 'exit' to quit.")

        # Create a unique session ID for the conversation
        session_id = uuid.uuid4().hex

        while True:
            prompt = q.ask("Prompt: ", q.non_empty)

            if prompt == "exit":
                break

            response = asyncio.run(self._invoke_agent(agent_alias, prompt,
session_id))

            print(f"Agent: {response}")

    async def _invoke_agent(self, agent_alias, prompt, session_id):
        response = self.bedrock_agent_runtime_client.invoke_agent(
            agentId=self.agent["agentId"],
            agentAliasId=agent_alias["agentAliasId"],
            sessionId=session_id,
            inputText=prompt,
        )

        completion = ""

        for event in response.get("completion"):
            chunk = event["chunk"]
```

```
            completion += chunk["bytes"].decode()

        return completion

    def _delete_resources(self):
        if self.agent:
            agent_id = self.agent["agentId"]

            if self.agent_alias:
                agent_alias_id = self.agent_alias["agentAliasId"]
                print("Deleting agent alias...")
                self.bedrock_wrapper.delete_agent_alias(agent_id, agent_alias_id)

            print("Deleting agent...")
            agent_status = self.bedrock_wrapper.delete_agent(agent_id)
["agentStatus"]
            while agent_status == "DELETING":
                wait(5)
                try:
                    agent_status = self.bedrock_wrapper.get_agent(
                        agent_id, log_error=False
                    )["agentStatus"]
                except ClientError as err:
                    if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
 "ResourceNotFoundException":
                        agent_status = "DELETED"

        if self.lambda_function:
            name = self.lambda_function["FunctionName"]
            print(f"Deleting function '{name}'...")
            self.lambda_client.delete_function(FunctionName=name)

        if self.agent_role:
            print(f"Deleting role '{self.agent_role.role_name}'...")
            self.agent_role.Policy(ROLE_POLICY_NAME).delete()
            self.agent_role.delete()

        if self.lambda_role:
            print(f"Deleting role '{self.lambda_role.role_name}'...")
            for policy in self.lambda_role.attached_policies.all():
                policy.detach_role(RoleName=self.lambda_role.role_name)
            self.lambda_role.delete()

    def _list_resources(self):
```

```
        print("-" * 40)
        print(f"Here is the list of created resources in '{REGION}'.")
        print("Make sure you delete them once you're done to avoid unnecessary
 costs.")
        if self.agent:
            print(f"Bedrock Agent:   {self.agent['agentName']}")
        if self.lambda_function:
            print(f"Lambda function: {self.lambda_function['FunctionName']}")
        if self.agent_role:
            print(f"IAM role:        {self.agent_role.role_name}")
        if self.lambda_role:
            print(f"IAM role:        {self.lambda_role.role_name}")

    @staticmethod
    def is_valid_agent_name(answer):
        valid_regex = r"^[a-zA-Z0-9_-]{1,100}$"
        return (
            answer
            if answer and len(answer) <= 100 and re.match(valid_regex, answer)
            else None,
            "I need a name for the agent, please. Valid characters are a-z, A-Z,
 0-9, _ (underscore) and - (hyphen).",
        )

    @staticmethod
    def _create_deployment_package(function_name):
        buffer = io.BytesIO()
        with zipfile.ZipFile(buffer, "w") as zipped:
            zipped.write(
                "./scenario_resources/lambda_function.py", f"{function_name}.py"
            )
        buffer.seek(0)
        return buffer.read()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    postfix = "".join(
        random.choice(string.ascii_lowercase + "0123456789") for _ in range(8)
    )
    scenario = BedrockAgentScenarioWrapper(
        bedrock_agent_client=boto3.client(
            service_name="bedrock-agent", region_name=REGION
```

```
        ),
        runtime_client=boto3.client(
            service_name="bedrock-agent-runtime", region_name=REGION
        ),
        lambda_client=boto3.client(service_name="lambda", region_name=REGION),
        iam_resource=boto3.resource("iam"),
        postfix=postfix,
    )
    try:
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception(f"Something went wrong with the demo. Here's what:
{e}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAgent
  - CreateAgentActionGroup
  - CreateAgentAlias
  - DeleteAgent
  - DeleteAgentAlias
  - GetAgent
  - ListAgentActionGroups
  - ListAgentKnowledgeBases
  - ListAgents
  - PrepareAgent

Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Code examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime User Guide** – More information about Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime.
- **Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - Converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow
  - Actions for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs
    - Use InvokeAgent with an AWS SDK
    - Use InvokeFlow with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow using an AWS SDK
  - Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

Basic examples for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow
- Actions for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - Use InvokeAgent with an AWS SDK
  - Use InvokeFlow with an AWS SDK

Converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow

The following code example shows how to use InvokeFlow to converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow that includes an agent node.

For more information, see Converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Shows how to run an Amazon Bedrock flow with InvokeFlow and handle muli-turn
 interaction
for a single conversation.
For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
flows-multi-turn-invocation.html.

"""
import logging
```

```
import boto3
import botocore

import botocore.exceptions

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def invoke_flow(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data, execution_id):
    """
    Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

    Args:
        client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
        input_data: Input data for the flow.
        execution_id: Execution ID for continuing a flow. Use the value None on
 first run.

    Returns:
        Dict containing flow_complete status, input_required info, and
 execution_id
    """

    response = None
    request_params = None

    if execution_id is None:
        # Don't pass execution ID for first run.
        request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }
    else:
        request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "executionId": execution_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
```

```
        }

    response = client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

    if "executionId" not in request_params:
        execution_id = response['executionId']

    input_required = None
    flow_status = ""

    # Process the streaming response
    for event in response['responseStream']:

        # Check if flow is complete.
        if 'flowCompletionEvent' in event:
            flow_status = event['flowCompletionEvent']['completionReason']

        # Check if more input us needed from user.
        elif 'flowMultiTurnInputRequestEvent' in event:
            input_required = event

        # Print the model output.
        elif 'flowOutputEvent' in event:
            print(event['flowOutputEvent']['content']['document'])

        # Log trace events.
        elif 'flowTraceEvent' in event:
            logger.info("Flow trace:  %s", event['flowTraceEvent'])

    return {
        "flow_status": flow_status,
        "input_required": input_required,
        "execution_id": execution_id
    }


def converse_with_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Run a conversation with the supplied flow.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to run.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
```

```
    """

    flow_execution_id = None
    finished = False

    # Get the intial prompt from the user.
    user_input = input("Enter input: ")

    # Use prompt to create input data.
    flow_input_data = {
        "content": {
            "document": user_input
        },
        "nodeName": "FlowInputNode",
        "nodeOutputName": "document"
    }

    try:
        while not finished:
            # Invoke the flow until successfully finished.

            result = invoke_flow(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, flow_input_data,
 flow_execution_id)

            status = result['flow_status']
            flow_execution_id = result['execution_id']
            more_input = result['input_required']
            if status == "INPUT_REQUIRED":
                # The flow needs more information from the user.
                logger.info("The flow %s requires more input", flow_id)
                user_input = input(
                    more_input['flowMultiTurnInputRequestEvent']['content']
['document'] + ": ")
                flow_input_data = {
                    "content": {
                        "document": user_input
                    },
                    "nodeName": more_input['flowMultiTurnInputRequestEvent']
['nodeName'],
                    "nodeInputName": "agentInputText"

                }
```

```
            elif status == "SUCCESS":
                # The flow completed successfully.
                finished = True
                logger.info("The flow %s successfully completed.", flow_id)

    except botocore.exceptions.ClientError as e:
        print(f"Client error: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("Client error: %s", {str(e)})

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"An error occurred: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("An error occurred: %s", {str(e)})
        logger.error("Error type: %s", {type(e)})


def main():
    """
    Main entry point for the script.
    """

    # Replace these with your actual flow ID and flow alias ID.
    FLOW_ID = 'YOUR_FLOW_ID'
    FLOW_ALIAS_ID = 'YOUR_FLOW_ALIAS_ID'

    logger.info("Starting conversation with FLOW: %s ID: %s",
                FLOW_ID, FLOW_ALIAS_ID)

    # Get the Bedrock agent runtime client.
    session = boto3.Session(profile_name='default')
    bedrock_agent_client = session.client('bedrock-agent-runtime')

    # Start the conversation.
    converse_with_flow(bedrock_agent_client, FLOW_ID, FLOW_ALIAS_ID)

    logger.info("Conversation with FLOW: %s ID: %s finished",
                FLOW_ID, FLOW_ALIAS_ID)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see InvokeFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Actions for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime API Reference.

Examples

- Use InvokeAgent with an AWS SDK
- Use InvokeFlow with an AWS SDK

Use `InvokeAgent` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `InvokeAgent`.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  BedrockAgentRuntimeClient,
  InvokeAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {string} completion
```

```
 */

/**
 * Invokes a Bedrock agent to run an inference using the input
 * provided in the request body.
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The prompt that you want the Agent to complete.
 * @param {string} sessionId - An arbitrary identifier for the session.
 */
export const invokeBedrockAgent = async (prompt, sessionId) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });
  // const client = new BedrockAgentRuntimeClient({
  //   region: "us-east-1",
  //   credentials: {
  //     accessKeyId: "accessKeyId", // permission to invoke agent
  //     secretAccessKey: "accessKeySecret",
  //   },
  // });

  const agentId = "AJBHXXILZN";
  const agentAliasId = "AVKP1ITZAA";

  const command = new InvokeAgentCommand({
    agentId,
    agentAliasId,
    sessionId,
    inputText: prompt,
  });

  try {
    let completion = "";
    const response = await client.send(command);

    if (response.completion === undefined) {
      throw new Error("Completion is undefined");
    }

    for await (const chunkEvent of response.completion) {
      const chunk = chunkEvent.chunk;
      console.log(chunk);
      const decodedResponse = new TextDecoder("utf-8").decode(chunk.bytes);
      completion += decodedResponse;
    }
```

```
    return { sessionId: sessionId, completion };
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const result = await invokeBedrockAgent("I need help.", "123");
  console.log(result);
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke an agent.

```
    def invoke_agent(self, agent_id, agent_alias_id, session_id, prompt):
        """
        Sends a prompt for the agent to process and respond to.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent to use.
        :param agent_alias_id: The alias of the agent to use.
        :param session_id: The unique identifier of the session. Use the same
 value across requests
                           to continue the same conversation.
        :param prompt: The prompt that you want Claude to complete.
        :return: Inference response from the model.
        """

        try:
```

```
            # Note: The execution time depends on the foundation model,
 complexity of the agent,
            # and the length of the prompt. In some cases, it can take up to a
 minute or more to
            # generate a response.
            response = self.agents_runtime_client.invoke_agent(
                agentId=agent_id,
                agentAliasId=agent_alias_id,
                sessionId=session_id,
                inputText=prompt,
            )

            completion = ""

            for event in response.get("completion"):
                chunk = event["chunk"]
                completion = completion + chunk["bytes"].decode()

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't invoke agent. {e}")
            raise

        return completion
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_config::{BehaviorVersion, SdkConfig};
use aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::{
    self as bedrockagentruntime,
```

```
    types::{error::ResponseStreamError, ResponseStream},
};
#[allow(unused_imports)]
use mockall::automock;

const BEDROCK_AGENT_ID: &str = "AJBHXXILZN";
const BEDROCK_AGENT_ALIAS_ID: &str = "AVKP1ITZAA";
const BEDROCK_AGENT_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use EventReceiverImpl as EventReceiver;
#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockEventReceiverImpl as EventReceiver;

pub struct EventReceiverImpl {
    inner: aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::primitives::event_stream::EventReceiver<
        ResponseStream,
        ResponseStreamError,
    >,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl EventReceiverImpl {
    #[allow(dead_code)]
    pub fn new(
        inner:
 aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::primitives::event_stream::EventReceiver<
            ResponseStream,
            ResponseStreamError,
        >,
    ) -> Self {
        Self { inner }
    }

    pub async fn recv(
        &mut self,
    ) -> Result<
        Option<ResponseStream>,
        aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::error::SdkError<
            ResponseStreamError,
            aws_smithy_types::event_stream::RawMessage,
        >,
    > {
        self.inner.recv().await
```

```
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Box<bedrockagentruntime::Error>> {
    let result = invoke_bedrock_agent("I need help.".to_string(),
 "123".to_string()).await?;
    println!("{}", result);
    Ok(())
}

async fn invoke_bedrock_agent(
    prompt: String,
    session_id: String,
) -> Result<String, bedrockagentruntime::Error> {
    let sdk_config: SdkConfig = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(BEDROCK_AGENT_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let bedrock_client = bedrockagentruntime::Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let command_builder = bedrock_client
        .invoke_agent()
        .agent_id(BEDROCK_AGENT_ID)
        .agent_alias_id(BEDROCK_AGENT_ALIAS_ID)
        .session_id(session_id)
        .input_text(prompt);

    let response = command_builder.send().await?;

    let response_stream = response.completion;

    let event_receiver = EventReceiver::new(response_stream);

    process_agent_response_stream(event_receiver).await
}

async fn process_agent_response_stream(
    mut event_receiver: EventReceiver,
) -> Result<String, bedrockagentruntime::Error> {
    let mut full_agent_text_response = String::new();

    while let Some(event_result) = event_receiver.recv().await? {
        match event_result {
```

```
            ResponseStream::Chunk(chunk) => {
                if let Some(bytes) = chunk.bytes {
                    match String::from_utf8(bytes.into_inner()) {
                        Ok(text_chunk) => {
                            full_agent_text_response.push_str(&text_chunk);
                        }
                        Err(e) => {
                            eprintln!("UTF-8 decoding error for chunk: {}", e);
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            _ => {
                panic!("received an unhandled event type from Bedrock stream",);
            }
        }
    }
    Ok(full_agent_text_response)
}

#[cfg(test)]
mod test {

    use super::*;

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_process_agent_response_stream() {
        let mut mock = MockEventReceiverImpl::default();
        mock.expect_recv().times(1).returning(|| {
            Ok(Some(
                aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::ResponseStream::Chunk(
                    aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::PayloadPart::builder()
                        .set_bytes(Some(aws_smithy_types::Blob::new(vec![
                            116, 101, 115, 116, 32, 99, 111, 109, 112, 108, 101,
 116, 105, 111, 110,
                        ])))
                        .build(),
                ),
            ))
        });

        // end the stream
        mock.expect_recv().times(1).returning(|| Ok(None));
```

```
        let response = process_agent_response_stream(mock).await.unwrap();

        assert_eq!("test completion", response);
    }

    #[tokio::test]
    #[should_panic(expected = "received an unhandled event type from Bedrock
 stream")]
    async fn test_process_agent_response_stream_error() {
        let mut mock = MockEventReceiverImpl::default();
        mock.expect_recv().times(1).returning(|| {
            Ok(Some(
                aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::ResponseStream::Trace(

 aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::TracePart::builder().build(),
                ),
            ))
        });

        let _ = process_agent_response_stream(mock).await.unwrap();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA(lo_result) = lo_bdz->invokeagent(
      iv_agentid      = iv_agentid
        iv_agentaliasid = iv_agentaliasid
        iv_enabletrace  = abap_true
        iv_sessionid    = CONV #( cl_system_uuid=>create_uuid_c26_static( ) )
```

```
        iv_inputtext    = |Let's play "rock, paper, scissors".  I choose
rock.| ).
   DATA(lo_stream) = lo_result->get_completion( ).
   TRY.
       " loop while there are still events in the stream
       WHILE lo_stream->/aws1/if_rt_stream_reader~data_available( ) = abap_true.
         DATA(lo_evt) = lo_stream->read( ).
         " each /AWS1/CL_BDZRESPONSESTREAM_EV event contains exactly one member
         " all others are INITIAL.  For each event, process the non-initial
         " member if desired
         IF lo_evt->get_chunk( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
           " Process a Chunk event
           DATA(lv_xstr) = lo_evt->get_chunk( )->get_bytes( ).
           DATA(lv_answer) = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>xstring_to_string( lv_xstr ).
           " the answer says something like "I chose paper, so you lost"
         ELSEIF lo_evt->get_files( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
           " process a Files event if desired
         ELSEIF lo_evt->get_returncontrol( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
           " process a ReturnControl event if desired
         ELSEIF lo_evt->get_trace( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
           " process a Trace event if desired
         ENDIF.
       ENDWHILE.
       " the stream of events can possibly contain an exception
       " which will be raised to break the loop
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZACCESSDENIEDEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZINTERNALSERVEREX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZMODELNOTREADYEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZVALIDATIONEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZTHROTTLINGEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZDEPENDENCYFAILEDEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZBADGATEWAYEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZRESOURCENOTFOUNDEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZSERVICEQUOTAEXCDEX.
       " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZCONFLICTEXCEPTION.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `InvokeFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `InvokeFlow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create and invoke a flow

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentRuntimeClient,
  InvokeFlowCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent-runtime";

/**
 * Invokes an alias of a flow to run the inputs that you specify and return
 * the output of each node as a stream.
 *
 * @param {{
 *  flowIdentifier: string,
 *  flowAliasIdentifier: string,
 *  prompt?: string,
 *  region?: string
 * }} options
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent").FlowNodeOutput>} An
 object containing information about the output from flow invocation.
 */
export const invokeBedrockFlow = async ({
  flowIdentifier,
  flowAliasIdentifier,
  prompt = "Hi, how are you?",
```

```
  region = "us-east-1",
}) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentRuntimeClient({ region });

  const command = new InvokeFlowCommand({
    flowIdentifier,
    flowAliasIdentifier,
    inputs: [
      {
        content: {
          document: prompt,
        },
        nodeName: "FlowInputNode",
        nodeOutputName: "document",
      },
    ],
  });

  let flowResponse = {};
  const response = await client.send(command);

  for await (const chunkEvent of response.responseStream) {
    const { flowOutputEvent, flowCompletionEvent } = chunkEvent;

    if (flowOutputEvent) {
      flowResponse = { ...flowResponse, ...flowOutputEvent };
      console.log("Flow output event:", flowOutputEvent);
    } else if (flowCompletionEvent) {
      flowResponse = { ...flowResponse, ...flowCompletionEvent };
      console.log("Flow completion event:", flowCompletionEvent);
    }
  }

  return flowResponse;
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
```

```
  const options = {
    flowIdentifier: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    flowAliasIdentifier: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    prompt: {
      type: "string",
    },
    region: {
      type: "string",
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    invokeBedrockFlow(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeFlow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke a flow.

```
    def invoke_flow(self, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data, execution_id):
        """
        Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

        Args:
            param flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
            param flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
            param input_data: Input data for the flow.
            param execution_id: Execution ID for continuing a flow. Use the value
None on first run.

        Return: Response from the flow.
        """
        try:

            request_params = None

            if execution_id is None:
                # Don't pass execution ID for first run.
                request_params = {
                    "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
                    "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
                    "inputs": input_data,
                    "enableTrace": True
                }
            else:
                request_params = {
                    "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
                    "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
                    "executionId": execution_id,
                    "inputs": input_data,
                    "enableTrace": True
                }

            response = self.agents_runtime_client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

            if "executionId" not in request_params:
                execution_id = response['executionId']

            result = ""

            # Get the streaming response
```

```
            for event in response['responseStream']:
                result = result + str(event) + '\n'
            print(result)

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Couldn't invoke flow %s.", {e})
            raise

        return result
```

- For API details, see InvokeFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow using an AWS SDK
- Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

An end-to-end example showing how to create and invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an execution role for the flow.
- Create the flow.
- Deploy the fully configured flow.

- Invoke the flow with user-provided prompts.
- Delete all created resources.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generates a music playlist based on user-specified genre and number of songs.

```
from datetime import datetime
import logging
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from roles import create_flow_role, delete_flow_role, update_role_policy
from flow import create_flow, prepare_flow, delete_flow
from run_flow import run_playlist_flow
from flow_version import create_flow_version, delete_flow_version
from flow_alias import create_flow_alias, delete_flow_alias

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

def create_input_node(name):
    """
    Creates an input node configuration for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    The input node serves as the entry point for the flow and defines
    the initial document structure that will be passed to subsequent nodes.

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the input node.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The input node configuration.

    """
    return {
        "type": "Input",
        "name": name,
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "Object"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_prompt_node(name, model_id):
    """
    Creates a prompt node configuration for a Bedrock flow that generates music
 playlists.

    The prompt node defines an inline prompt template that creates a music
 playlist based on
    a specified genre and number of songs. The prompt uses two variables that are
 mapped from
    the input JSON object:
    - {{genre}}: The genre of music to create a playlist for
    - {{number}}: The number of songs to include in the playlist

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the prompt node.
        model_id (str): The identifier of the foundation model to use for the
 prompt.

    Returns:
        dict: The prompt node.

    """

    return {
        "type": "Prompt",
        "name": name,
        "configuration": {
```

```
            "prompt": {
                "sourceConfiguration": {
                    "inline": {
                        "modelId": model_id,
                        "templateType": "TEXT",
                        "inferenceConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "temperature": 0.8
                            }
                        },
                        "templateConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "text": "Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting
 of the following number of songs: {{number}}."
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "genre",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data.genre"
            },
            {
                "name": "number",
                "type": "Number",
                "expression": "$.data.number"
            }
        ],
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "modelCompletion",
                "type": "String"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_output_node(name):
    """
    Creates an output node configuration for a Bedrock flow.
```

```
    The output node validates that the output from the last node is a string
    and returns it unmodified. The input name must be "document".

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the output node.

    Returns:
        dict: The output node configuration containing the output node:

    """

    return {
        "type": "Output",
        "name": name,
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data"
            }
        ]
    }




def create_playlist_flow(client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
 prompt_model_id):
    """
    Creates the playlist generator flow.
    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        role_arn (str): Name for the new IAM role.
        prompt_model_id (str): The id of the model to use in the prompt node.
    Returns:
        dict: The response from the create_flow operation.
    """

    input_node = create_input_node("FlowInput")
    prompt_node = create_prompt_node("MakePlaylist", prompt_model_id)
    output_node = create_output_node("FlowOutput")

    # Create connections between the nodes
```

```
    connections = []

    #  First, create connections between the output of the flow
    # input node and each input of the prompt node.
    for prompt_node_input in prompt_node["inputs"]:
        connections.append(
            {
                "name": "_".join([input_node["name"], prompt_node["name"],
                                  prompt_node_input["name"]]),
                "source": input_node["name"],
                "target": prompt_node["name"],
                "type": "Data",
                "configuration": {
                    "data": {
                        "sourceOutput": input_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                        "targetInput": prompt_node_input["name"]
                    }
                }
            }
        )

    # Then, create a connection between the output of the prompt node and the
input of the flow output node
    connections.append(
        {
            "name": "_".join([prompt_node["name"], output_node["name"]]),
            "source": prompt_node["name"],
            "target": output_node["name"],
            "type": "Data",
            "configuration": {
                "data": {
                    "sourceOutput": prompt_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                    "targetInput": output_node["inputs"][0]["name"]
                }
            }
        }
    )

    flow_def = {
        "nodes": [input_node, prompt_node, output_node],
        "connections": connections
    }

    # Create the flow.
```

```
    response = create_flow(
        client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def)

    return response



def get_model_arn(client, model_id):
    """
    Gets the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for a model.
    Args:
        client (str): Amazon Bedrock boto3 client.
        model_id (str): The id of the model.
    Returns:
        str: The ARN of the model.
    """

    try:
        # Call GetFoundationModelDetails operation
        response = client.get_foundation_model(modelIdentifier=model_id)

        # Extract model ARN from the response
        model_arn = response['modelDetails']['modelArn']

        return model_arn

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise


def prepare_flow_version_and_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                   flow_id):
    """
    Prepares the flow and then creates a flow version and flow alias.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        flowd_id (str): The ID of the flow that you want to prepare.
    Returns: The flow_version and flow_alias.
```

```
    """

    status = prepare_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    flow_version = None
    flow_alias = None

    if status == 'Prepared':

        # Create the flow version and alias.
        flow_version = create_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                                           flow_id,
                                           f"flow version for flow {flow_id}.")

        flow_alias = create_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                       flow_id,
                                       flow_version,
                                       "latest",
                                       f"Alias for flow {flow_id}, version
 {flow_version}")

    return flow_version, flow_alias



def delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
                          iam_client,
                          role_name,
                          flow_id,
                          flow_version,
                          flow_alias):
    """
    Deletes the flow, flow alias, flow version, and IAM roles.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        iam_client: Amazon IAM boto3 client.
        role_name (str): The name of the IAM role.
        flow_id (str): The id of the flow.
        flow_version (str): The version of the flow.
        flow_alias (str): The alias of the flow.
    """

    if flow_id is not None:
```

```
        if flow_alias is not None:
            delete_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias)
        if flow_version is not None:
            delete_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                        flow_id, flow_version)
        delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    if role_name is not None:
        delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)



def main():
    """
    Creates, runs, and optionally deletes a Bedrock flow for generating music
 playlists.

    Note:
        Requires valid AWS credentials in the default profile
    """

    delete_choice = "y"
    try:

        # Get various boto3 clients.
        session = boto3.Session(profile_name='default')
        bedrock_agent_runtime_client = session.client('bedrock-agent-runtime')
        bedrock_agent_client = session.client('bedrock-agent')
        bedrock_client = session.client('bedrock')
        iam_client = session.client('iam')

        role_name = None
        flow_id = None
        flow_version = None
        flow_alias = None

        #Change the model as needed.
        prompt_model_id = "amazon.nova-pro-v1:0"

        # Base the flow name on the current date and time
        current_time = datetime.now()
        timestamp = current_time.strftime("%Y-%m-%d-%H-%M-%S")
        flow_name = f"FlowPlayList_{timestamp}"
        flow_description = "A flow to generate a music playlist."
```

```
        # Create a role for the flow.
        role_name = f"BedrockFlowRole-{flow_name}"
        role = create_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        role_arn = role['Arn']

        # Create the flow.
        response = create_playlist_flow(
            bedrock_agent_client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
prompt_model_id)
        flow_id = response.get('id')

        if flow_id:
            # Update accessible resources in the role.
            model_arn = get_model_arn(bedrock_client, prompt_model_id)
            update_role_policy(iam_client, role_name, [
                               response.get('arn'), model_arn])

            # Prepare the flow and flow version.
            flow_version, flow_alias = prepare_flow_version_and_alias(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

            # Run the flow.
            if flow_version and flow_alias:
                run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_runtime_client,
                                  flow_id, flow_alias)

                delete_choice = input("Delete flow? y or n : ").lower()


            else:
                print("Couldn't run. Deleting flow and role.")
                delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)
                delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        else:
            print("Couldn't create flow.")


    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Fatal error: {str(e)}")

    finally:
        if delete_choice == 'y':
                delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
```

```
                                            iam_client,
                                            role_name,
                                            flow_id,
                                            flow_version,
                                            flow_alias)
        else:
            print("Flow not deleted. ")
            print(f"\tFlow ID: {flow_id}")
            print(f"\tFlow version: {flow_version}")
            print(f"\tFlow alias: {flow_alias}")
            print(f"\tRole ARN: {role_arn}")

        print("Done!")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()


def invoke_flow(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data):
    """
    Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

    Args:
        client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
        input_data: Input data for the flow.

    Returns:
        Dict containing flow status and flow output.
    """

    response = None
    request_params = None

    request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }


    response = client.invoke_flow(**request_params)
```

```
    flow_status = ""
    output= ""

    # Process the streaming response
    for event in response['responseStream']:

        # Check if flow is complete.
        if 'flowCompletionEvent' in event:
            flow_status = event['flowCompletionEvent']['completionReason']

        # Save the model output.
        elif 'flowOutputEvent' in event:
            output = event['flowOutputEvent']['content']['document']
            logger.info("Output : %s", output)

        # Log trace events.
        elif 'flowTraceEvent' in event:
            logger.info("Flow trace:  %s", event['flowTraceEvent'])

    return {
        "flow_status": flow_status,
        "output": output

    }




def run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Runs the playlist generator flow.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to run.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.

    """



    print ("Welcome to the playlist generator flow.")
    # Get the initial prompt from the user.
    genre = input("Enter genre: ")
```

```
    number_of_songs = int(input("Enter number of songs: "))


    # Use prompt to create input data for the input node.
    flow_input_data = {
        "content": {
            "document": {
                "genre" : genre,
                "number" : number_of_songs
            }
        },
        "nodeName": "FlowInput",
        "nodeOutputName": "document"
    }

    try:

        result = invoke_flow(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, flow_input_data)

        status = result['flow_status']

        if status == "SUCCESS":
                # The flow completed successfully.
                logger.info("The flow %s successfully completed.", flow_id)
                print(result['output'])
        else:
            logger.warning("Flow status: %s",status)

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Client error: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("Client error: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.error("An error occurred: %s", {str(e)})
        logger.error("Error type: %s", {type(e)})
        raise



def create_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Creates an IAM role for Amazon Bedrock with permissions to run a flow.
```

```
    Args:
        role_name (str): Name for the new IAM role.
    Returns:
        str: The role Amazon Resource Name.
    """



    # Trust relationship policy - allows Amazon Bedrock service to assume this
role.
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "bedrock.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }]
    }

    # Basic inline policy for for running a flow.

    resources = "*"

    bedrock_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                # Using * as placeholder - Later you update with specific ARNs.
                "Resource": resources
            }
        ]
    }



    try:
```

```
        # Create the IAM role with trust policy
        logging.info("Creating role: %s",role_name)
        role = client.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy),
            Description="Role for Amazon Bedrock operations"
        )

        # Attach inline policy to the role
        print("Attaching inline policy")
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(bedrock_policy)
        )

        logging.info("Create Role ARN: %s", role['Role']['Arn'])
        return role['Role']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error creating role: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.warning("Unexpected error: %s", str(e))
        raise


def update_role_policy(client, role_name, resource_arns):
    """
    Updates an IAM role's inline policy with specific resource ARNs.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the existing role.
        resource_arns (list): List of resource ARNs to allow access to.
    """



    updated_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:GetFlow",
```

```
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                "Resource": resource_arns
            }
        ]
    }

    try:
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(updated_policy)
        )
        logging.info("Updated policy for role: %s",role_name)

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error updating role policy: %s", str(e))
        raise


def delete_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Deletes an IAM role.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the role to delete.
    """




    try:
        # Detach and delete inline policies
        policies = client.list_role_policies(RoleName=role_name)['PolicyNames']
        for policy_name in policies:
            client.delete_role_policy(RoleName=role_name, PolicyName=policy_name)

        # Delete the role
        client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logging.info("Deleted role: %s", role_name)


    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        logging.info("Error Deleting role: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateFlow
  - CreateFlowAlias
  - CreateFlowVersion
  - DeleteFlow
  - DeleteFlowAlias
  - DeleteFlowVersion
  - GetFlow
  - GetFlowAlias
  - GetFlowVersion
  - InvokeFlow
  - PrepareFlow

Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.

- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Code examples for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Budgets with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Budgets Developer Guide** – More information about AWS Budgets.
- **AWS Budgets API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Budgets actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateBudget with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Budgets with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateBudget with a CLI

Actions for AWS Budgets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Budgets actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Budgets API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateBudget with a CLI

Use `CreateBudget` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateBudget`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a Cost and Usage budget

The following `create-budget` command creates a Cost and Usage budget.

```
aws budgets create-budget \
```

```
    --account-id 111122223333 \
    --budget file://budget.json \
    --notifications-with-subscribers file://notifications-with-subscribers.json
```

Contents of `budget.json`:

```
{
    "BudgetLimit": {
        "Amount": "100",
        "Unit": "USD"
    },
    "BudgetName": "Example Tag Budget",
    "BudgetType": "COST",
    "CostFilters": {
        "TagKeyValue": [
            "user:Key$value1",
            "user:Key$value2"
        ]
    },
    "CostTypes": {
        "IncludeCredit": true,
        "IncludeDiscount": true,
        "IncludeOtherSubscription": true,
        "IncludeRecurring": true,
        "IncludeRefund": true,
        "IncludeSubscription": true,
        "IncludeSupport": true,
        "IncludeTax": true,
        "IncludeUpfront": true,
        "UseBlended": false
    },
    "TimePeriod": {
        "Start": 1477958399,
        "End": 3706473600
    },
    "TimeUnit": "MONTHLY"
}
```

Contents of `notifications-with-subscribers.json`:

```
[
    {
        "Notification": {
```

```
            "ComparisonOperator": "GREATER_THAN",
            "NotificationType": "ACTUAL",
            "Threshold": 80,
            "ThresholdType": "PERCENTAGE"
        },
        "Subscribers": [
            {
                "Address": "example@example.com",
                "SubscriptionType": "EMAIL"
            }
        ]
    }
]
```

- For API details, see CreateBudget in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new budget with the specified budgetary and time constraints with email notifications.

```
$notification = @{
    NotificationType = "ACTUAL"
    ComparisonOperator = "GREATER_THAN"
    Threshold = 80
}

$addressObject = @{
    Address = @("user@domain.com")
    SubscriptionType = "EMAIL"
}

$subscriber = New-Object Amazon.Budgets.Model.NotificationWithSubscribers
$subscriber.Notification = $notification
$subscriber.Subscribers.Add($addressObject)

$startDate = [datetime]::new(2017,09,25)
$endDate = [datetime]::new(2017,10,25)

New-BGTBudget -Budget_BudgetName "Tester" -Budget_BudgetType COST -
CostTypes_IncludeTax $true -Budget_TimeUnit MONTHLY -BudgetLimit_Unit USD -
```

```
TimePeriod_Start $startDate -TimePeriod_End $endDate -AccountId 123456789012 -
BudgetLimit_Amount 200 -NotificationsWithSubscriber $subscriber
```

- For API details, see CreateBudget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new budget with the specified budgetary and time constraints with email notifications.

```
$notification = @{
    NotificationType = "ACTUAL"
    ComparisonOperator = "GREATER_THAN"
    Threshold = 80
}

$addressObject = @{
    Address = @("user@domain.com")
    SubscriptionType = "EMAIL"
}

$subscriber = New-Object Amazon.Budgets.Model.NotificationWithSubscribers
$subscriber.Notification = $notification
$subscriber.Subscribers.Add($addressObject)

$startDate = [datetime]::new(2017,09,25)
$endDate = [datetime]::new(2017,10,25)

New-BGTBudget -Budget_BudgetName "Tester" -Budget_BudgetType COST -
CostTypes_IncludeTax $true -Budget_TimeUnit MONTHLY -BudgetLimit_Unit USD -
TimePeriod_Start $startDate -TimePeriod_End $endDate -AccountId 123456789012 -
BudgetLimit_Amount 200 -NotificationsWithSubscriber $subscriber
```

- For API details, see CreateBudget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for AWS Cloud Map using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Cloud Map with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **AWS Cloud Map Developer Guide** – More information about AWS Cloud Map.
- **AWS Cloud Map API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Cloud Map actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Scenarios for AWS Cloud Map using AWS SDKs
  - Use custom attributes with Cloud Map
  - Get started with Cloud Map service discovery

Scenarios for AWS Cloud Map using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in AWS Cloud Map with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within AWS Cloud Map or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Use custom attributes with Cloud Map
- Get started with Cloud Map service discovery

Use custom attributes with Cloud Map

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an HTTP namespace for API-based service discovery
- Create a DynamoDB table and register it as a data service with custom attributes
- Create Lambda functions for reading and writing data

- Register Lambda functions as service instances with custom attributes for action-based discovery
- Build client applications that discover services using custom attributes
- Clean up all resources including Lambda functions, DynamoDB table, and Cloud Map services

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# AWS Cloud Map Tutorial Script
# This script demonstrates how to use AWS Cloud Map for service discovery with
 custom attributes

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="cloudmap-tutorial.log"
echo "AWS Cloud Map Tutorial Script" > $LOG_FILE
echo "Started at $(date)" >> $LOG_FILE

# Array to track created resources for cleanup
CREATED_RESOURCES=()

# Function to log commands and their output
log_cmd() {
  echo "$ $1" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  eval "$1" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
}

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
  local LINE=$1
  echo "An error occurred at line $LINE" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  echo "Resources created so far:" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
    echo "- $resource" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

```
  done
  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  cleanup
  exit 1
}

# Set up error handling
trap 'handle_error $LINENO' ERR

# Helper function to wait for Cloud Map operations to complete
wait_for_operation() {
  local OPERATION_ID=$1
  local TIMEOUT=300  # 5 minutes timeout
  local START_TIME=$(date +%s)

  while true; do
    local STATUS=$(aws servicediscovery get-operation --operation-id
 $OPERATION_ID --query 'Operation.Status' --output text)

    if [ "$STATUS" == "SUCCESS" ]; then
      echo "Operation completed successfully" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      break
    elif [ "$STATUS" == "FAIL" ]; then
      echo "Operation failed" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      return 1
    fi

    local CURRENT_TIME=$(date +%s)
    if [ $((CURRENT_TIME - START_TIME)) -gt $TIMEOUT ]; then
      echo "Operation timed out" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      return 1
    fi

    sleep 5
  done

  return 0
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
  echo "Cleaning up resources..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

  # Reverse the order of created resources for proper deletion
```

```
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    echo "Deleting $resource..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

    if [[ $resource == "instance:"* ]]; then
      # Extract service ID and instance ID
      SERVICE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      INSTANCE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f3)

      # Check if instance exists before trying to deregister
      INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id
 $SERVICE_ID --query "Instances[?Id=='$INSTANCE_ID'].Id" --output text 2>/dev/
null || echo "")
      if [[ -n "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
        OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery deregister-instance --service-id
 $SERVICE_ID --instance-id $INSTANCE_ID --query 'OperationId' --output text)

        # Wait for deregistration to complete
        echo "Waiting for instance deregistration to complete..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
        wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
      else
        echo "Instance $INSTANCE_ID already deregistered" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      fi
    elif [[ $resource == "lambda:"* ]]; then
      # Extract function name
      FUNCTION_NAME=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      aws lambda delete-function --function-name $FUNCTION_NAME
    elif [[ $resource == "role:"* ]]; then
      # Extract role name
      ROLE_NAME=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)

      # Detach all policies first
      for POLICY_ARN in $(aws iam list-attached-role-policies --role-name
 $ROLE_NAME --query 'AttachedPolicies[*].PolicyArn' --output text); do
        aws iam detach-role-policy --role-name $ROLE_NAME --policy-arn
 $POLICY_ARN
      done

      # Delete the role
      aws iam delete-role --role-name $ROLE_NAME
    elif [[ $resource == "dynamodb:"* ]]; then
      # Extract table name
      TABLE_NAME=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
```

```
      aws dynamodb delete-table --table-name $TABLE_NAME

      # Wait for table deletion to complete
      echo "Waiting for DynamoDB table deletion to complete..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
      aws dynamodb wait table-not-exists --table-name $TABLE_NAME
    fi
  done

  # Handle services separately to ensure all instances are deregistered first
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    if [[ $resource == "service:"* ]]; then
      # Extract service ID
      SERVICE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      echo "Deleting service $SERVICE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

      # Make sure all instances are deregistered
      INSTANCES=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id $SERVICE_ID --
query 'Instances[*].Id' --output text)
      if [[ -n "$INSTANCES" ]]; then
        echo "Service still has instances. Waiting before deletion..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
        sleep 10
      fi

      # Try to delete the service
      aws servicediscovery delete-service --id $SERVICE_ID
      sleep 5
    fi
  done

  # Handle namespaces last to ensure all services are deleted first
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    if [[ $resource == "namespace:"* ]]; then
      # Extract namespace ID
      NAMESPACE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      echo "Deleting namespace $NAMESPACE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

      # Check if namespace still has services
      SERVICES=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query 'Services[*].Id'
 --output text)
```

```
      if [[ -n "$SERVICES" ]]; then
        echo "Namespace still has services. Deleting them first..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
        for SERVICE_ID in $SERVICES; do
          echo "Deleting service $SERVICE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
          aws servicediscovery delete-service --id $SERVICE_ID
        done
        sleep 5
      fi

      # Try to delete the namespace
      OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery delete-namespace --id $NAMESPACE_ID --
query 'OperationId' --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "")
      if [[ -n "$OPERATION_ID" ]]; then
        echo "Waiting for namespace deletion to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
        wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
      else
        echo "Failed to delete namespace or namespace already deleted" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
      fi
    fi
  done

  echo "Cleanup complete" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
}

# Step 1: Create an AWS Cloud Map namespace
echo "Step 1: Creating AWS Cloud Map namespace..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Check if namespace already exists
NAMESPACE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-namespaces --query "Namespaces[?
Name=='cloudmap-tutorial'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$NAMESPACE_ID" || "$NAMESPACE_ID" == "None" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery create-http-namespace --name cloudmap-tutorial --
creator-request-id namespace-request"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery create-http-namespace --name cloudmap-
tutorial --creator-request-id namespace-request --query 'OperationId' --output
 text)

  # Wait for namespace creation to complete
  echo "Waiting for namespace creation to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
```

```
  # Get the namespace ID
  NAMESPACE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-namespaces --query "Namespaces[?
Name=='cloudmap-tutorial'].Id" --output text)
  echo "Namespace created with ID: $NAMESPACE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
else
  echo "Namespace cloudmap-tutorial already exists with ID: $NAMESPACE_ID" | tee
 -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("namespace:$NAMESPACE_ID")

# Step 2: Create a DynamoDB table
echo "Step 2: Creating DynamoDB table..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Check if table already exists
TABLE_EXISTS=$(aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name cloudmap 2>&1 || echo
 "NOT_EXISTS")

if [[ $TABLE_EXISTS == *"ResourceNotFoundException"* || $TABLE_EXISTS ==
 "NOT_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws dynamodb create-table --table-name cloudmap --
attribute-definitions AttributeName=id,AttributeType=S --key-schema
 AttributeName=id,KeyType=HASH --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST"

  # Wait for DynamoDB table to become active
  echo "Waiting for DynamoDB table to become active..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name cloudmap
else
  echo "DynamoDB table cloudmap already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("dynamodb:cloudmap")

# Step 3: Create an AWS Cloud Map data service
echo "Step 3: Creating AWS Cloud Map data service..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Get all services in the namespace
echo "Listing all services in namespace $NAMESPACE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
SERVICES=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query 'Services[*].
[Id,Name]' --output text)
echo "Services found: $SERVICES" | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Check if data service already exists
```

```
DATA_SERVICE_ID=""
while read -r id name || [[ -n "$id" ]]; do
  echo "Checking service: ID=$id, Name=$name" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  if [[ "$name" == "data-service" ]]; then
    DATA_SERVICE_ID="$id"
    break
  fi
done <<< "$SERVICES"

if [[ -z "$DATA_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
  echo "Data service does not exist, creating it..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  # Create the service and capture the ID directly
  echo "$ aws servicediscovery create-service --name data-service --namespace-id
 $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id data-service-request" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  CREATE_OUTPUT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service --name data-service --
namespace-id $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id data-service-request)
  echo "$CREATE_OUTPUT" | tee -a $LOG_FILE

  # Extract the service ID using AWS CLI query
  DATA_SERVICE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query "Services[?
Name=='data-service'].Id" --output text)
  echo "Data service created with ID: $DATA_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
else
  echo "Data service already exists with ID: $DATA_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("service:$DATA_SERVICE_ID")

# Register DynamoDB table as a service instance
echo "Registering DynamoDB table as a service instance..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Check if instance already exists
INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id
 $DATA_SERVICE_ID --query "Instances[?Id=='data-instance'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $DATA_SERVICE_ID
 --instance-id data-instance --attributes tablename=cloudmap,region=$(aws
 configure get region)"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-
id $DATA_SERVICE_ID --instance-id data-instance --attributes
 tablename=cloudmap,region=$(aws configure get region) --query 'OperationId' --
output text)
```

```
  # Wait for instance registration to complete
  echo "Waiting for instance registration to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
else
  echo "Instance data-instance already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("instance:$DATA_SERVICE_ID:data-instance")

# Step 4: Create an IAM role for Lambda
echo "Step 4: Creating IAM role for Lambda..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Create a trust policy for Lambda
cat > lambda-trust-policy.json << EOF
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Check if role already exists
echo "Checking if IAM role already exists..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
ROLE_EXISTS=$(aws iam get-role --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role 2>&1 || echo
 "NOT_EXISTS")

if [[ $ROLE_EXISTS == *"NoSuchEntity"* || $ROLE_EXISTS == "NOT_EXISTS" ]]; then
    log_cmd "aws iam create-role --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --assume-
role-policy-document file://lambda-trust-policy.json"
else
    echo "Role cloudmap-tutorial-role already exists, using existing role" | tee
 -a $LOG_FILE
fi

# FIXED: Create a custom policy with least privilege instead of using
 PowerUserAccess
```

```
cat > cloudmap-policy.json << EOF
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "logs:CreateLogGroup",
        "logs:CreateLogStream",
        "logs:PutLogEvents"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:*:*:*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/cloudmap"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "servicediscovery:DiscoverInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Check if policy already exists
POLICY_ARN=$(aws iam list-policies --query "Policies[?
PolicyName=='CloudMapTutorialPolicy'].Arn" --output text)

if [[ -z "$POLICY_ARN" ]]; then
  echo "Creating CloudMapTutorialPolicy..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  echo "$ aws iam create-policy --policy-name CloudMapTutorialPolicy --policy-
document file://cloudmap-policy.json" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  CREATE_OUTPUT=$(aws iam create-policy --policy-name CloudMapTutorialPolicy --
policy-document file://cloudmap-policy.json)
  echo "$CREATE_OUTPUT" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

```
  POLICY_ARN=$(aws iam list-policies --query "Policies[?
PolicyName=='CloudMapTutorialPolicy'].Arn" --output text)
else
  echo "Policy CloudMapTutorialPolicy already exists with ARN: $POLICY_ARN" | tee
 -a $LOG_FILE
fi

echo "$ aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-
arn $POLICY_ARN" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-arn
 $POLICY_ARN | tee -a $LOG_FILE

echo "$ aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-
arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-arn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE

# Wait for role to propagate
echo "Waiting for IAM role to propagate..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
sleep 10

ROLE_ARN=$(aws iam get-role --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --query 'Role.Arn'
 --output text)
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("role:cloudmap-tutorial-role")

# Step 5: Create an AWS Cloud Map app service
echo "Step 5: Creating AWS Cloud Map app service..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Get all services in the namespace
SERVICES=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query 'Services[*].
[Id,Name]' --output text)

# Check if app service already exists
APP_SERVICE_ID=""
while read -r id name || [[ -n "$id" ]]; do
  if [[ "$name" == "app-service" ]]; then
    APP_SERVICE_ID="$id"
    break
  fi
done <<< "$SERVICES"
```

```
if [[ -z "$APP_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
  echo "App service does not exist, creating it..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  # Create the service and capture the ID directly
  echo "$ aws servicediscovery create-service --name app-service --namespace-id
 $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id app-service-request" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  CREATE_OUTPUT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service --name app-service --
namespace-id $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id app-service-request)
  echo "$CREATE_OUTPUT" | tee -a $LOG_FILE

  # Extract the service ID using AWS CLI query
  APP_SERVICE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query "Services[?
Name=='app-service'].Id" --output text)
  echo "App service created with ID: $APP_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
else
  echo "App service already exists with ID: $APP_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("service:$APP_SERVICE_ID")

# Step 6: Create a Lambda function to write data
echo "Step 6: Creating Lambda function to write data..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Create Lambda function code
cat > writefunction.py << EOF
import boto3
import json
import random

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Use AWS Cloud Map to discover the DynamoDB table
    serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

    # Discover the data service instance
    response = serviceclient.discover_instances(
        NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
        ServiceName='data-service'
    )

    # Extract table name and region from the instance attributes
    tablename = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['tablename']
    region = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['region']

    # Create DynamoDB client in the specified region
```

```
    dynamodb = boto3.resource('dynamodb', region_name=region)
    table = dynamodb.Table(tablename)

    # Write data to the table
    table.put_item(
        Item={
            'id': str(random.randint(1,100)),
            'todo': event
        }
    )

    return {
        'statusCode': 200,
        'body': json.dumps('Data written successfully!')
    }
EOF

# Zip the function code
log_cmd "zip writefunction.zip writefunction.py"

# Create the Lambda function
FUNCTION_EXISTS=$(aws lambda list-functions --query "Functions[?
FunctionName=='writefunction'].FunctionName" --output text)
if [[ -z "$FUNCTION_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws lambda create-function --function-name writefunction --runtime
 python3.12 --role $ROLE_ARN --handler writefunction.lambda_handler --zip-file
 fileb://writefunction.zip --architectures x86_64"

  # Wait for the Lambda function to be active before updating
  echo "Waiting for Lambda function to become active..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  function_state="Pending"
  while [ "$function_state" == "Pending" ]; do
      sleep 5
      function_state=$(aws lambda get-function --function-name writefunction --
query 'Configuration.State' --output text)
      echo "Current function state: $function_state" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  done

  # Update the function timeout
  log_cmd "aws lambda update-function-configuration --function-name writefunction
 --timeout 5"
else
  echo "Lambda function writefunction already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi
```

```
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("lambda:writefunction")

# Step 7: Register the Lambda write function as an AWS Cloud Map service instance
echo "Step 7: Registering Lambda write function as a service instance..." | tee -
a $LOG_FILE

# Check if instance already exists
INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id
 $APP_SERVICE_ID --query "Instances[?Id=='write-instance'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID --
instance-id write-instance --attributes action=write,functionname=writefunction"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-
id $APP_SERVICE_ID --instance-id write-instance --attributes
 action=write,functionname=writefunction --query 'OperationId' --output text)

  # Wait for instance registration to complete
  echo "Waiting for write instance registration to complete..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
else
  echo "Instance write-instance already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("instance:$APP_SERVICE_ID:write-instance")

# Step 8: Create a Lambda function to read data
echo "Step 8: Creating Lambda function to read data..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Create Lambda function code
cat > readfunction.py << EOF
import boto3
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Use AWS Cloud Map to discover the DynamoDB table
    serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

    # Discover the data service instance
    response = serviceclient.discover_instances(
        NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
        ServiceName='data-service'
    )
```

```
    # Extract table name and region from the instance attributes
    tablename = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['tablename']
    region = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['region']

    # Create DynamoDB client in the specified region
    dynamodb = boto3.resource('dynamodb', region_name=region)
    table = dynamodb.Table(tablename)

    # Read data from the table
    response = table.scan()

    return {
        'statusCode': 200,
        'body': json.dumps(response['Items'])
    }
EOF

# Zip the function code
log_cmd "zip readfunction.zip readfunction.py"

# Create the Lambda function
FUNCTION_EXISTS=$(aws lambda list-functions --query "Functions[?
FunctionName=='readfunction'].FunctionName" --output text)
if [[ -z "$FUNCTION_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws lambda create-function --function-name readfunction --runtime
 python3.12 --role $ROLE_ARN --handler readfunction.lambda_handler --zip-file
 fileb://readfunction.zip --architectures x86_64"

  # Wait for the Lambda function to be active before updating
  echo "Waiting for Lambda function to become active..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  function_state="Pending"
  while [ "$function_state" == "Pending" ]; do
      sleep 5
      function_state=$(aws lambda get-function --function-name readfunction --
query 'Configuration.State' --output text)
      echo "Current function state: $function_state" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  done

  # Update the function timeout
  log_cmd "aws lambda update-function-configuration --function-name readfunction
 --timeout 5"
else
  echo "Lambda function readfunction already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

```
fi
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("lambda:readfunction")

# Step 9: Register the Lambda read function as an AWS Cloud Map service instance
echo "Step 9: Registering Lambda read function as a service instance..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE

# Check if instance already exists
INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id
 $APP_SERVICE_ID --query "Instances[?Id=='read-instance'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID --
instance-id read-instance --attributes action=read,functionname=readfunction"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-
id $APP_SERVICE_ID --instance-id read-instance --attributes
 action=read,functionname=readfunction --query 'OperationId' --output text)

  # Wait for read instance registration to complete
  echo "Waiting for read instance registration to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
else
  echo "Instance read-instance already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("instance:$APP_SERVICE_ID:read-instance")

# Step 10: Create Python clients to interact with the services
echo "Step 10: Creating Python clients..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

cat > writeclient.py << EOF
import boto3

serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

response = serviceclient.discover_instances(NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
 ServiceName='app-service', QueryParameters={ 'action': 'write' })

functionname = response["Instances"][0]["Attributes"]["functionname"]

lambdaclient = boto3.client('lambda')

resp = lambdaclient.invoke(FunctionName=functionname, Payload='"This is a test
 data"')
```

```
print(resp["Payload"].read())
EOF

cat > readclient.py << EOF
import boto3

serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

response = serviceclient.discover_instances(NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
 ServiceName='app-service', QueryParameters={ 'action': 'read' })

functionname = response["Instances"][0]["Attributes"]["functionname"]

lambdaclient = boto3.client('lambda')

resp = lambdaclient.invoke(FunctionName=functionname,
 InvocationType='RequestResponse')

print(resp["Payload"].read())
EOF

echo "Running write client..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
log_cmd "python3 writeclient.py"

echo "Running read client..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
log_cmd "python3 readclient.py"

# Step 11: Clean up resources
echo "Resources created:" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
  echo "- $resource" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
done

echo "" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "==========================================" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "==========================================" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): " | tee -a $LOG_FILE
read -r CLEANUP_CONFIRM
if [[ $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "y" || $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "Y" ]]; then
  cleanup
else
```

```
  echo "Resources were not cleaned up. You can manually clean them up later." |
 tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

echo "Script completed at $(date)" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateHttpNamespace
  - CreateService
  - DeleteNamespace
  - DeleteService
  - DeregisterInstance
  - GetOperation
  - ListNamespaces
  - ListServices
  - RegisterInstance

Get started with Cloud Map service discovery

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a public DNS namespace with Route 53 hosted zone integration
- Create services discoverable via DNS queries and API calls
- Register service instances with different discovery configurations
- Discover services using both DNS queries and Cloud Map API
- Verify service discovery using dig command and API calls
- Clean up resources in proper order (instances, services, namespace)

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# AWS Cloud Map Private Namespace Tutorial Script
# This script demonstrates how to use AWS Cloud Map for service discovery
# with DNS queries and API calls

# Exit on error
set -e

# Configuration
REGION="us-east-2"
NAMESPACE_NAME="cloudmap-tutorial.com"
LOG_FILE="cloudmap-tutorial.log"
CREATOR_REQUEST_ID=$(date +%s)

# Function to log messages
log() {
    local message="$1"
    echo "$(date '+%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S') - $message" | tee -a "$LOG_FILE"
}

# Function to check operation status
check_operation() {
    local operation_id="$1"
    local status=""

    log "Checking operation status for $operation_id..."

    while [[ "$status" != "SUCCESS" ]]; do
        sleep 5
        status=$(aws servicediscovery get-operation \
            --operation-id "$operation_id" \
```

```
            --region "$REGION" \
            --query "Operation.Status" \
            --output text)

        log "Operation status: $status"

        if [[ "$status" == "FAIL" ]]; then
            log "Operation failed. Exiting."
            exit 1
        fi
    done

    log "Operation completed successfully."
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
    log "Starting cleanup process..."

    if [[ -n "$FIRST_INSTANCE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deregistering first service instance..."
        aws servicediscovery deregister-instance \
            --service-id "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" \
            --instance-id "$FIRST_INSTANCE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to deregister first instance"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$SECOND_INSTANCE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deregistering second service instance..."
        aws servicediscovery deregister-instance \
            --service-id "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" \
            --instance-id "$SECOND_INSTANCE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to deregister second instance"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deleting public service..."
        aws servicediscovery delete-service \
            --id "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to delete public service"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deleting backend service..."
```

```
        aws servicediscovery delete-service \
            --id "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to delete backend service"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$NAMESPACE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deleting namespace..."
        aws servicediscovery delete-namespace \
            --id "$NAMESPACE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to delete namespace"
    fi

    log "Cleanup completed."
}

# Set up trap for cleanup on script exit
trap cleanup EXIT INT TERM

# Initialize log file
> "$LOG_FILE"
log "Starting AWS Cloud Map tutorial script"

# Step 1: Create an AWS Cloud Map namespace
log "Creating AWS Cloud Map namespace: $NAMESPACE_NAME"
OPERATION_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery create-public-dns-namespace \
    --name "$NAMESPACE_NAME" \
    --creator-request-id "cloudmap-tutorial-$CREATOR_REQUEST_ID" \
    --region "$REGION")

OPERATION_ID=$(echo "$OPERATION_RESULT" | jq -r '.OperationId')
log "Namespace creation initiated. Operation ID: $OPERATION_ID"

# Check operation status
check_operation "$OPERATION_ID"

# Get the namespace ID
log "Getting namespace ID..."
NAMESPACE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-namespaces \
    --region "$REGION" \
    --query "Namespaces[?Name=='$NAMESPACE_NAME'].Id" \
    --output text)

log "Namespace ID: $NAMESPACE_ID"
```

```
# Get the hosted zone ID
log "Getting Route 53 hosted zone ID..."
HOSTED_ZONE_ID=$(aws route53 list-hosted-zones-by-name \
    --dns-name "$NAMESPACE_NAME" \
    --query "HostedZones[0].Id" \
    --output text | sed 's|/hostedzone/||')

log "Hosted Zone ID: $HOSTED_ZONE_ID"

# Step 2: Create the AWS Cloud Map services
log "Creating public service..."
PUBLIC_SERVICE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service \
    --name "public-service" \
    --namespace-id "$NAMESPACE_ID" \
    --dns-config "RoutingPolicy=MULTIVALUE,DnsRecords=[{Type=A,TTL=300}]" \
    --region "$REGION")

PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_RESULT" | jq -r '.Service.Id')
log "Public service created. Service ID: $PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID"

log "Creating backend service..."
BACKEND_SERVICE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service \
    --name "backend-service" \
    --namespace-id "$NAMESPACE_ID" \
    --type "HTTP" \
    --region "$REGION")

BACKEND_SERVICE_ID=$(echo "$BACKEND_SERVICE_RESULT" | jq -r '.Service.Id')
log "Backend service created. Service ID: $BACKEND_SERVICE_ID"

# Step 3: Register the AWS Cloud Map service instances
log "Registering first service instance..."
FIRST_INSTANCE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance \
    --service-id "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" \
    --instance-id "first" \
    --attributes "AWS_INSTANCE_IPV4=192.168.2.1" \
    --region "$REGION")

FIRST_INSTANCE_ID="first"
FIRST_OPERATION_ID=$(echo "$FIRST_INSTANCE_RESULT" | jq -r '.OperationId')
log "First instance registration initiated. Operation ID: $FIRST_OPERATION_ID"

# Check operation status
check_operation "$FIRST_OPERATION_ID"
```

```
log "Registering second service instance..."
SECOND_INSTANCE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance \
    --service-id "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" \
    --instance-id "second" \
    --attributes "service-name=backend" \
    --region "$REGION")

SECOND_INSTANCE_ID="second"
SECOND_OPERATION_ID=$(echo "$SECOND_INSTANCE_RESULT" | jq -r '.OperationId')
log "Second instance registration initiated. Operation ID: $SECOND_OPERATION_ID"

# Check operation status
check_operation "$SECOND_OPERATION_ID"

# Step 4: Discover the AWS Cloud Map service instances
log "Getting Route 53 name servers..."
NAME_SERVERS=$(aws route53 get-hosted-zone \
    --id "$HOSTED_ZONE_ID" \
    --query "DelegationSet.NameServers[0]" \
    --output text)

log "Name server: $NAME_SERVERS"

log "Using dig to query DNS records (this will be simulated)..."
log "Command: dig @$NAME_SERVERS public-service.$NAMESPACE_NAME"
log "Expected output would show: public-service.$NAMESPACE_NAME. 300 IN A
 192.168.2.1"

log "Using AWS CLI to discover backend service instances..."
DISCOVER_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery discover-instances \
    --namespace-name "$NAMESPACE_NAME" \
    --service-name "backend-service" \
    --region "$REGION")

log "Discovery result: $(echo "$DISCOVER_RESULT" | jq -c '.')"

# Display created resources
log "Resources created:"
log "- Namespace: $NAMESPACE_NAME (ID: $NAMESPACE_ID)"
log "- Public Service: public-service (ID: $PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID)"
log "- Backend Service: backend-service (ID: $BACKEND_SERVICE_ID)"
log "- Service Instance: first (Service: public-service)"
log "- Service Instance: second (Service: backend-service)"
```

```
# Ask user if they want to clean up resources
read -p "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): " CLEANUP_RESPONSE

if [[ "$CLEANUP_RESPONSE" == "y" || "$CLEANUP_RESPONSE" == "Y" ]]; then
    log "User confirmed cleanup. Proceeding with resource deletion."
    # Cleanup function will be called automatically on exit
else
    log "User chose not to clean up resources. Exiting without cleanup."
    trap - EXIT
    exit 0
fi
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreatePublicDnsNamespace
  - CreateService
  - DeleteNamespace
  - DeleteService
  - DeregisterInstance
  - DiscoverInstances
  - GetOperation
  - ListNamespaces
  - RegisterInstance

Code examples for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Cloud9 with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Cloud9 User Guide** – More information about AWS Cloud9.
- **AWS Cloud9 API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Cloud9 actions.

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateEnvironmentEc2 with a CLI
    - Use CreateEnvironmentMembership with a CLI
    - Use DeleteEnvironment with a CLI
    - Use DeleteEnvironmentMembership with a CLI
    - Use DescribeEnvironmentMemberships with a CLI
    - Use DescribeEnvironmentStatus with a CLI
    - Use DescribeEnvironments with a CLI
    - Use ListEnvironments with a CLI
    - Use UpdateEnvironment with a CLI
    - Use UpdateEnvironmentMembership with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Cloud9 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateEnvironmentEc2 with a CLI
  - Use CreateEnvironmentMembership with a CLI
  - Use DeleteEnvironment with a CLI
  - Use DeleteEnvironmentMembership with a CLI
  - Use DescribeEnvironmentMemberships with a CLI
  - Use DescribeEnvironmentStatus with a CLI
  - Use DescribeEnvironments with a CLI
  - Use ListEnvironments with a CLI

- Use UpdateEnvironment with a CLI
- Use UpdateEnvironmentMembership with a CLI

Actions for AWS Cloud9 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Cloud9 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Cloud9 API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateEnvironmentEc2 with a CLI
- Use CreateEnvironmentMembership with a CLI
- Use DeleteEnvironment with a CLI
- Use DeleteEnvironmentMembership with a CLI
- Use DescribeEnvironmentMemberships with a CLI
- Use DescribeEnvironmentStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeEnvironments with a CLI
- Use ListEnvironments with a CLI
- Use UpdateEnvironment with a CLI
- Use UpdateEnvironmentMembership with a CLI

Use `CreateEnvironmentEc2` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateEnvironmentEc2`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an AWS Cloud9 EC2 development environment

This following `create-environment-ec2` example creates an AWS Cloud9 development environment with the specified settings, launches an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, and then connects from the instance to the environment.

```
aws cloud9 create-environment-ec2 \
    --name my-demo-env \
    --description "My demonstration development environment." \
    --instance-type t2.micro --image-id amazonlinux-2023-x86_64 \
    --subnet-id subnet-1fab8aEX \
    --automatic-stop-time-minutes 60 \
    --owner-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
```

Output:

```
{
    "environmentId": "8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX"
}
```

For more information, see Creating an EC2 Environment in the *AWS Cloud9 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentEc2 in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an AWS Cloud9 development environment with the specified settings, launches an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, and then connects from the instance to the environment.

```
New-C9EnvironmentEC2 -Name my-demo-env -AutomaticStopTimeMinutes 60 -Description
 "My demonstration development environment." -InstanceType t2.micro -OwnerArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser -SubnetId subnet-d43a46EX
```

Output:

```
ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentEc2 in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AWS Cloud9 development environment with the specified settings, launches an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, and then connects from the instance to the environment.

```
New-C9EnvironmentEC2 -Name my-demo-env -AutomaticStopTimeMinutes 60 -Description
 "My demonstration development environment." -InstanceType t2.micro -OwnerArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser -SubnetId subnet-d43a46EX
```

Output:

```
ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentEc2 in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateEnvironmentMembership` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateEnvironmentMembership`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add an environment member to an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example adds the specified environment member to the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 create-environment-membership --environment-
id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX --user-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser --permissions read-write
```

Output:

```
{
  "membership": {
```

```
    "environmentId": "8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX",
    "userId": "AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX",
    "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser",
    "permissions": "read-write"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the specified environment member to the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
New-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Permission read-
write
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-write
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified environment member to the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
New-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Permission read-
write
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-write
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteEnvironment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteEnvironment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example deletes the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment. If an Amazon EC2 instance is connected to the environment, also terminates the instance.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 delete-environment --environment-id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment. If an Amazon EC2 instance is connected to the environment, also terminates the instance.

```
Remove-C9Environment -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment. If an Amazon EC2 instance is connected to the environment, also terminates the instance.

```
Remove-C9Environment -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteEnvironmentMembership` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteEnvironmentMembership`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an environment member from an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example deletes the specified environment member from the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 delete-environment-membership --environment-
id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX --user-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironmentMembership in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified environment member from the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Remove-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified environment member from the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Remove-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeEnvironmentMemberships` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEnvironmentMemberships`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To gets information about environment members for an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example gets information about environment members for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 describe-environment-memberships --environment-
id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
  "memberships": [
    {
      "environmentId": "8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX",
      "userId": "AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX",
      "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser",
      "permissions": "read-write"
    },
    {
      "environmentId": "8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX",
      "userId": "AIDAJNUEDQAQWFELJDLEX",
      "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser",
      "permissions": "owner"
    }
  ]
}
```

To get information about the owner of an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example gets information about the owner of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 describe-environment-memberships --environment-
id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX --permissions owner
```

Output:

```
{
  "memberships": [
    {
      "environmentId": "8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX",
      "userId": "AIDAJNUEDQAQWFELJDLEX",
      "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser",
      "permissions": "owner"
    }
  ]
}
```

To get information about an environment member for multiple AWS Cloud9 development environments

This example gets information about the specified environment member for multiple AWS Cloud9 development environments.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 describe-environment-memberships --user-
arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
```

Output:

```
{
  "memberships": [
    {
      "environmentId": "10a75714bd494714929e7f5ec4125aEX",
      "lastAccess": 1516213427.0,
      "userId": "AIDAJNUEDQAQWFELJDLEX",
      "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser",
      "permissions": "owner"
    },
    {
      "environmentId": "1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX",
      "lastAccess": 1516144884.0,
      "userId": "AIDAJNUEDQAQWFELJDLEX",
      "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser",
      "permissions": "owner"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentMemberships in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about environment members for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-write
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX

EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the owner of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -
Permission owner
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

Example 3: This example gets information about the specified environment member for multiple AWS Cloud9 development environments.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
MyDemoUser
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/17/2018 7:48:14 PM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

```
EnvironmentId : 1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
LastAccess    : 1/16/2018 11:21:24 PM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentMemberships in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about environment members for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-write
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX

EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the owner of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -
Permission owner
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : owner
```

```
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

Example 3: This example gets information about the specified environment member for multiple AWS Cloud9 development environments.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
MyDemoUser
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/17/2018 7:48:14 PM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX

EnvironmentId : 1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
LastAccess    : 1/16/2018 11:21:24 PM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentMemberships in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeEnvironmentStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEnvironmentStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get status information for an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example gets status information for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 describe-environment-status --environment-
id 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
```

Output:

```
{
  "status": "ready",
  "message": "Environment is ready to use"
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets status information for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentStatus -EnvironmentId 349c86d4579e4e7298d500ff57a6b2EX
```

Output:

```
Message                     Status
-------                     ------
Environment is ready to use ready
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets status information for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentStatus -EnvironmentId 349c86d4579e4e7298d500ff57a6b2EX
```

Output:

```
Message                     Status
```

```
-------                     ------
Environment is ready to use ready
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeEnvironments` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEnvironments`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about AWS Cloud9 development environments

This example gets information about the specified AWS Cloud9 development environments.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 describe-environments --environment-
ids 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX 349c86d4579e4e7298d500ff57a6b2EX
```

Output:

```
{
  "environments": [
    {
      "id": "685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX",
      "name": "my-demo-ec2-env",
      "description": "Created from CodeStar.",
      "type": "ec2",
      "arn": "arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX",
      "ownerArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser",
      "lifecycle": {
        "status": "CREATED"
      }
    },
    {
      "id": "349c86d4579e4e7298d500ff57a6b2EX",
      "name": my-demo-ssh-env",
```

```
      "description": "",
      "type": "ssh",
      "arn": "arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:349c86d4579e4e7298d500ff57a6b2EX",
      "ownerArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser",
      "lifecycle": {
        "status": "CREATED"
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironments in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified AWS Cloud9 development environments.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentData -EnvironmentId
 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX,1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
```

Output:

```
Arn         : arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
Description : Created from CodeStar.
Id          : 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
Lifecycle   : Amazon.Cloud9.Model.EnvironmentLifecycle
Name        : my-demo-ec2-env
OwnerArn    : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
Type        : ec2

Arn         : arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
Description :
Id          : 1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
Lifecycle   : Amazon.Cloud9.Model.EnvironmentLifecycle
Name        : my-demo-ssh-env
OwnerArn    : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
```

```
Type        : ssh
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the lifecycle status of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
(Get-C9EnvironmentData -EnvironmentId 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX).Lifecycle
```

Output:

```
FailureResource Reason Status
--------------- ------ ------
                       CREATED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified AWS Cloud9 development environments.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentData -EnvironmentId
 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX,1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
```

Output:

```
Arn         : arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
Description : Created from CodeStar.
Id          : 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
Lifecycle   : Amazon.Cloud9.Model.EnvironmentLifecycle
Name        : my-demo-ec2-env
OwnerArn    : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
Type        : ec2

Arn         : arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
Description :
Id          : 1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
Lifecycle   : Amazon.Cloud9.Model.EnvironmentLifecycle
Name        : my-demo-ssh-env
OwnerArn    : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
```

```
Type        : ssh
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the lifecycle status of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
(Get-C9EnvironmentData -EnvironmentId 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX).Lifecycle
```

Output:

```
FailureResource Reason Status
--------------- ------ ------
                       CREATED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListEnvironments` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListEnvironments`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of available AWS Cloud9 development environment identifiers

This example gets a list of available AWS Cloud9 development environment identifiers.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 list-environments
```

Output:

```
{
  "environmentIds": [
    "685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX",
    "1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListEnvironments in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of available AWS Cloud9 development environment identifiers.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentList
```

Output:

```
685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
```

- For API details, see ListEnvironments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available AWS Cloud9 development environment identifiers.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentList
```

Output:

```
685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
```

- For API details, see ListEnvironments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateEnvironment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateEnvironment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the settings of an existing AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example changes the specified settings of the specified existing AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 update-environment --environment-id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX
 --name my-changed-demo-env --description "My changed demonstration development
 environment."
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the specified settings of the specified existing AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Update-C9Environment -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Description
 "My changed demonstration development environment." -Name my-changed-demo-env
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the specified settings of the specified existing AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Update-C9Environment -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Description
 "My changed demonstration development environment." -Name my-changed-demo-env
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateEnvironmentMembership` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateEnvironmentMembership`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the settings of an existing environment member for an AWS Cloud9 development environment

This example changes the settings of the specified existing environment member for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

Command:

```
aws cloud9 update-environment-membership --environment-
id 8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX --user-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser --permissions read-only
```

Output:

```
{
  "membership": {
    "environmentId": "8a34f51ce1e04a08882f1e811bd706EX",
    "userId": "AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX",
    "userArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser",
    "permissions": "read-only"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the settings of the specified existing environment member for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Update-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Permission read-
only
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-only
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the settings of the specified existing environment member for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Update-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Permission read-
only
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-only
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS CloudFormation with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **AWS CloudFormation User Guide** – More information about AWS CloudFormation.
- **AWS CloudFormation API Reference** – Details about all available AWS CloudFormation actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS CloudFormation

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS CloudFormation.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime;

namespace CloudFormationActions;

public static class HelloCloudFormation
{
    public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the CloudFormation client
        _amazonCloudFormation = new AmazonCloudFormationClient();
        Console.WriteLine($"\nIn Region:
 {_amazonCloudFormation.Config.RegionEndpoint}");
```

```
        // List the resources for each stack
        await ListResources();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Method to list stack resources and other information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> ListResources()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Getting CloudFormation stack information...");

            // Get all stacks using the stack paginator.
            var paginatorForDescribeStacks =
                _amazonCloudFormation.Paginators.DescribeStacks(
                    new DescribeStacksRequest());
            if (paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks != null)
            {
                await foreach (Stack stack in paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks)
                {
                    // Basic information for each stack
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "\n-------------------------------------------------");
                    Console.WriteLine($"\nStack: {stack.StackName}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"  Status: {stack.StackStatus.Value}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"  Created: {stack.CreationTime}");

                    // The tags of each stack (etc.)
                    if (stack.Tags != null && stack.Tags.Count > 0)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("  Tags:");
                        foreach (Tag tag in stack.Tags)
                            Console.WriteLine($"    {tag.Key}, {tag.Value}");
                    }

                    // The resources of each stack
                    DescribeStackResourcesResponse responseDescribeResources =
                        await _amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStackResourcesAsync(
                            new DescribeStackResourcesRequest
                            {
                                StackName = stack.StackName
```

```
                            });
                    if (responseDescribeResources.StackResources != null &&
responseDescribeResources.StackResources.Count > 0)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("  Resources:");
                        foreach (StackResource resource in
responseDescribeResources
                                        .StackResources)
                            Console.WriteLine(
                                $"    {resource.LogicalResourceId}:
{resource.ResourceStatus}");
                    }
                }
            }


Console.WriteLine("\n-----------------------------------------------");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unable to get stack information:\n" + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonServiceException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Unable to get IAM security credentials"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are usnig SSO, be sure to install" +
                                  " the AWSSDK.SSO and AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
packages.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (ArgumentNullException ex)
        {
```

```
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Options property cannot be empty:
ClientName"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are using SSO, have you logged in?");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS CloudFormation
  - Actions for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs
    - Use CancelUpdateStack with a CLI
    - Use ContinueUpdateRollback with a CLI
    - Use CreateStack with a CLI
    - Use DeleteStack with a CLI
    - Use DescribeStackEvents with a CLI
    - Use DescribeStackResource with a CLI
    - Use DescribeStackResources with a CLI
    - Use DescribeStacks with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use EstimateTemplateCost with a CLI
    - Use GetTemplate with a CLI
    - Use ListStackResources with a CLI
    - Use ListStacks with a CLI
    - Use UpdateStack with a CLI

- Use ValidateTemplate with a CLI
- Scenarios for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs
  - Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

Basic examples for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS CloudFormation with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS CloudFormation
- Actions for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs
  - Use CancelUpdateStack with a CLI
  - Use ContinueUpdateRollback with a CLI
  - Use CreateStack with a CLI
  - Use DeleteStack with a CLI
  - Use DescribeStackEvents with a CLI
  - Use DescribeStackResource with a CLI
  - Use DescribeStackResources with a CLI
  - Use DescribeStacks with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use EstimateTemplateCost with a CLI
  - Use GetTemplate with a CLI
  - Use ListStackResources with a CLI
  - Use ListStacks with a CLI
  - Use UpdateStack with a CLI
  - Use ValidateTemplate with a CLI

Hello AWS CloudFormation

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS CloudFormation.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime;

namespace CloudFormationActions;

public static class HelloCloudFormation
{
    public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the CloudFormation client
        _amazonCloudFormation = new AmazonCloudFormationClient();
        Console.WriteLine($"\nIn Region:
 {_amazonCloudFormation.Config.RegionEndpoint}");

        // List the resources for each stack
        await ListResources();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Method to list stack resources and other information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> ListResources()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Getting CloudFormation stack information...");

            // Get all stacks using the stack paginator.
```

```
            var paginatorForDescribeStacks =
                _amazonCloudFormation.Paginators.DescribeStacks(
                    new DescribeStacksRequest());
            if (paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks != null)
            {
                await foreach (Stack stack in paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks)
                {
                    // Basic information for each stack
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "\n--------------------------------------------------");
                    Console.WriteLine($"\nStack: {stack.StackName}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"  Status: {stack.StackStatus.Value}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"  Created: {stack.CreationTime}");

                    // The tags of each stack (etc.)
                    if (stack.Tags != null && stack.Tags.Count > 0)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("  Tags:");
                        foreach (Tag tag in stack.Tags)
                            Console.WriteLine($"    {tag.Key}, {tag.Value}");
                    }

                    // The resources of each stack
                    DescribeStackResourcesResponse responseDescribeResources =
                        await _amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStackResourcesAsync(
                            new DescribeStackResourcesRequest
                            {
                                StackName = stack.StackName
                            });
                    if (responseDescribeResources.StackResources != null &&
responseDescribeResources.StackResources.Count > 0)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("  Resources:");
                        foreach (StackResource resource in
responseDescribeResources
                                     .StackResources)
                            Console.WriteLine(
                                $"    {resource.LogicalResourceId}:
{resource.ResourceStatus}");
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
Console.WriteLine("\n-----------------------------------------------");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unable to get stack information:\n" + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonServiceException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Unable to get IAM security credentials"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are usnig SSO, be sure to install" +
                                  " the AWSSDK.SSO and AWSSDK.SSOOIDC
packages.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (ArgumentNullException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Options property cannot be empty:
ClientName"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are using SSO, have you logged in?");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS CloudFormation actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the AWS CloudFormation API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS CloudFormation API Reference.

Examples

- Use CancelUpdateStack with a CLI
- Use ContinueUpdateRollback with a CLI
- Use CreateStack with a CLI
- Use DeleteStack with a CLI
- Use DescribeStackEvents with a CLI
- Use DescribeStackResource with a CLI
- Use DescribeStackResources with a CLI
- Use DescribeStacks with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EstimateTemplateCost with a CLI
- Use GetTemplate with a CLI
- Use ListStackResources with a CLI
- Use ListStacks with a CLI
- Use UpdateStack with a CLI
- Use ValidateTemplate with a CLI

Use `CancelUpdateStack` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CancelUpdateStack`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To cancel a stack update that is in progress

The following `cancel-update-stack` command cancels a stack update on the `myteststack` stack:

```
aws cloudformation cancel-update-stack --stack-name myteststack
```

- For API details, see CancelUpdateStack in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Cancels an update on the specified stack.

```
Stop-CFNUpdateStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see CancelUpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Cancels an update on the specified stack.

```
Stop-CFNUpdateStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see CancelUpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ContinueUpdateRollback` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ContinueUpdateRollback`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retry an update rollback

The following `continue-update-rollback` example resumes a rollback operation from a previously failed stack update.

```
aws cloudformation continue-update-rollback \
    --stack-name my-stack
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see ContinueUpdateRollback in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Continues rollback of the named stack, which should be in the state 'UPDATE_ROLLBACK_FAILED'. If the continued rollback is successful, the stack will enter state 'UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE'.

```
Resume-CFNUpdateRollback -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see ContinueUpdateRollback in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Continues rollback of the named stack, which should be in the state 'UPDATE_ROLLBACK_FAILED'. If the continued rollback is successful, the stack will enter state 'UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE'.

```
Resume-CFNUpdateRollback -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see ContinueUpdateRollback in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateStack` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateStack`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an AWS CloudFormation stack

The following `create-stacks` command creates a stack with the name `myteststack` using the `sampletemplate.json` template:

```
aws cloudformation create-stack --stack-name myteststack --template-body file://
sampletemplate.json --parameters ParameterKey=KeyPairName,ParameterValue=TestKey
 ParameterKey=SubnetIDs,ParameterValue=SubnetID1\\,SubnetID2
```

Output:

```
{
    "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
myteststack/466df9e0-0dff-08e3-8e2f-5088487c4896"
}
```

For more information, see Stacks in the *AWS CloudFormation User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateStack in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is parsed from the supplied content with customization parameters ('PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template content, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represent the values for those parameters. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will not be rolled back.

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
```

```
             -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
             -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" }) `
             -DisableRollback $true
```

Example 2: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is parsed from the supplied content with customization parameters ('PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template content, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represent the values for those parameters. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back.

```
$p1 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p1.ParameterKey = "PK1"
$p1.ParameterValue = "PV1"

$p2 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p2.ParameterKey = "PK2"
$p2.ParameterValue = "PV2"

New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
             -Parameter @( $p1, $p2 ) `
             -OnFailure "ROLLBACK"
```

Example 3: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is obtained from the Amazon S3 URL with customization parameters ('PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template content, 'PV1' represents the value for the parameter. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back (same as specifying -DisableRollback $false).

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
             -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 4: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is obtained from the Amazon S3 URL with customization parameters ('PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template content, 'PV1' represents the value for the

parameter. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back (same as specifying -DisableRollback $false). The specified notification AENs will receive published stack-related events.

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
             -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" } `
             -NotificationARN @( "arn1", "arn2" )
```

- For API details, see CreateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is parsed from the supplied content with customization parameters ('PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template content, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represent the values for those parameters. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will not be rolled back.

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
             -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" }) `
             -DisableRollback $true
```

Example 2: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is parsed from the supplied content with customization parameters ('PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template content, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represent the values for those parameters. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back.

```
$p1 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p1.ParameterKey = "PK1"
$p1.ParameterValue = "PV1"

$p2 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
```

```
$p2.ParameterKey = "PK2"
$p2.ParameterValue = "PV2"

New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
             -Parameter @( $p1, $p2 ) `
             -OnFailure "ROLLBACK"
```

Example 3: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is obtained from the Amazon S3 URL with customization parameters ('PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template content, 'PV1' represents the value for the parameter. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back (same as specifying -DisableRollback $false).

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
             -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 4: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is obtained from the Amazon S3 URL with customization parameters ('PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template content, 'PV1' represents the value for the parameter. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back (same as specifying -DisableRollback $false). The specified notification AENs will receive published stack-related events.

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
             -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" } `
             -NotificationARN @( "arn1", "arn2" )
```

- For API details, see CreateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteStack` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteStack`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a stack

The following `delete-stack` example deletes the specified stack.

```
aws cloudformation delete-stack \
    --stack-name my-stack
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteStack in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified stack.

```
Remove-CFNStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DeleteStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified stack.

```
Remove-CFNStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DeleteStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeStackEvents` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStackEvents`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe stack events

The following `describe-stack-events` example displays the 2 most recent events for the specified stack.

```
aws cloudformation describe-stack-events \
    --stack-name my-stack \
    --max-items 2

{
    "StackEvents": [
        {
            "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/my-
stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "EventId": "4e1516d0-e4d6-xmpl-b94f-0a51958a168c",
            "StackName": "my-stack",
            "LogicalResourceId": "my-stack",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-
west-2:123456789012:stack/my-stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::CloudFormation::Stack",
            "Timestamp": "2019-10-02T05:34:29.556Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "UPDATE_COMPLETE"
        },
        {
            "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/my-
stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "EventId": "4dd3c810-e4d6-xmpl-bade-0aaf8b31ab7a",
            "StackName": "my-stack",
            "LogicalResourceId": "my-stack",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-
west-2:123456789012:stack/my-stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::CloudFormation::Stack",
            "Timestamp": "2019-10-02T05:34:29.127Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "UPDATE_COMPLETE_CLEANUP_IN_PROGRESS"
        }
    ],

 "NextToken": "eyJOZXh0VG9XMPLiOiBudWxsLCAiYm90b190cnVuY2F0ZV9hbW91bnQiOiAyfQ=="
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackEvents in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all stack related events for the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNStackEvent -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all stack related events for the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNStackEvent -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeStackResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStackResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a stack resource

The following `describe-stack-resource` example displays details for the resource named `MyFunction` in the specified stack.

```
aws cloudformation describe-stack-resource \
    --stack-name MyStack \
    --logical-resource-id MyFunction
```

Output:

```
{
    "StackResourceDetail": {
        "StackName": "MyStack",
```

```
        "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-east-2:123456789012:stack/MyStack/
d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
        "LogicalResourceId": "MyFunction",
        "PhysicalResourceId": "my-function-SEZV4XMPL4S5",
        "ResourceType": "AWS::Lambda::Function",
        "LastUpdatedTimestamp": "2019-10-02T05:34:27.989Z",
        "ResourceStatus": "UPDATE_COMPLETE",
        "Metadata": "{}",
        "DriftInformation": {
            "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the description of a resource identified in the template associated with the specified stack by the logical ID "MyDBInstance".

```
Get-CFNStackResource -StackName "myStack" -LogicalResourceId "MyDBInstance"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the description of a resource identified in the template associated with the specified stack by the logical ID "MyDBInstance".

```
Get-CFNStackResource -StackName "myStack" -LogicalResourceId "MyDBInstance"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeStackResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStackResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a stack resource

The following `describe-stack-resources` example displays details for the resources in the specified stack.

```
aws cloudformation describe-stack-resources \
    --stack-name my-stack
```

Output:

```
{
    "StackResources": [
        {
            "StackName": "my-stack",
            "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/my-
stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "LogicalResourceId": "bucket",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "my-stack-bucket-1vc62xmplgguf",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::S3::Bucket",
            "Timestamp": "2019-10-02T04:34:11.345Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "CREATE_COMPLETE",
            "DriftInformation": {
                "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
            }
        },
        {
            "StackName": "my-stack",
            "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/my-
stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "LogicalResourceId": "function",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "my-function-SEZV4XMPL4S5",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::Lambda::Function",
            "Timestamp": "2019-10-02T05:34:27.989Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "UPDATE_COMPLETE",
            "DriftInformation": {
                "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "StackName": "my-stack",
            "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/my-
stack/d0a825a0-e4cd-xmpl-b9fb-061c69e99204",
            "LogicalResourceId": "functionRole",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "my-functionRole-HIZXMPLEOM9E",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::IAM::Role",
            "Timestamp": "2019-10-02T04:34:06.350Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "CREATE_COMPLETE",
            "DriftInformation": {
                "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the AWS resource descriptions for up to 100 resources associated with the specified stack. To obtain details of all resources associated with a stack use the Get-CFNStackResourceSummary, which also supports manual paging of the results.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -StackName "myStack"
```

Example 2: Returns the description of the Amazon EC2 instance identified in the template associated with the specified stack by the logical ID "Ec2Instance".

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -StackName "myStack" -LogicalResourceId "Ec2Instance"
```

Example 3: Returns the description of up to 100 resources associated with the stack containing an Amazon EC2 instance identified by instance ID "i-123456". To obtain details of all resources associated with a stack use the Get-CFNStackResourceSummary, which also supports manual paging of the results.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -PhysicalResourceId "i-123456"
```

Example 4: Returns the description of the Amazon EC2 instance identified by the logical ID "Ec2Instance" in the template for a stack. The stack is identified using the physical resource ID of a resource it contains, in this case also an Amazon EC2 instance with instance ID "i-123456". A different physical resource could also be used to identify the stack depending on the template content, for example an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -PhysicalResourceId "i-123456" -LogicalResourceId
 "Ec2Instance"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the AWS resource descriptions for up to 100 resources associated with the specified stack. To obtain details of all resources associated with a stack use the Get-CFNStackResourceSummary, which also supports manual paging of the results.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -StackName "myStack"
```

Example 2: Returns the description of the Amazon EC2 instance identified in the template associated with the specified stack by the logical ID "Ec2Instance".

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -StackName "myStack" -LogicalResourceId "Ec2Instance"
```

Example 3: Returns the description of up to 100 resources associated with the stack containing an Amazon EC2 instance identified by instance ID "i-123456". To obtain details of all resources associated with a stack use the Get-CFNStackResourceSummary, which also supports manual paging of the results.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -PhysicalResourceId "i-123456"
```

Example 4: Returns the description of the Amazon EC2 instance identified by the logical ID "Ec2Instance" in the template for a stack. The stack is identified using the physical resource ID of a resource it contains, in this case also an Amazon EC2 instance with instance ID "i-123456". A different physical resource could also be used to identify the stack depending on the template content, for example an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -PhysicalResourceId "i-123456" -LogicalResourceId
 "Ec2Instance"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeStacks` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStacks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe AWS CloudFormation stacks

The following `describe-stacks` command shows summary information for the `myteststack` stack:

```
aws cloudformation describe-stacks --stack-name myteststack
```

Output:

```
{
    "Stacks":  [
        {
            "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
myteststack/466df9e0-0dff-08e3-8e2f-5088487c4896",
            "Description": "AWS CloudFormation Sample Template S3_Bucket: Sample
 template showing how to create a publicly accessible S3 bucket. **WARNING** This
 template creates an S3 bucket. You will be billed for the AWS resources used if
 you create a stack from this template.",
            "Tags": [],
            "Outputs": [
                {
                    "Description": "Name of S3 bucket to hold website content",
                    "OutputKey": "BucketName",
                    "OutputValue": "myteststack-s3bucket-jssofi1zie2w"
                }
            ],
            "StackStatusReason": null,
            "CreationTime": "2013-08-23T01:02:15.422Z",
```

```
            "Capabilities": [],
            "StackName": "myteststack",
            "StackStatus": "CREATE_COMPLETE",
            "DisableRollback": false
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Stacks in the *AWS CloudFormation User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
```

```
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns a collection of Stack instances describing all of the user's stacks.

```
Get-CFNStack
```

Example 2: Returns a Stack instance describing the specified stack

```
Get-CFNStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a collection of Stack instances describing all of the user's stacks.

```
Get-CFNStack
```

Example 2: Returns a Stack instance describing the specified stack

```
Get-CFNStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EstimateTemplateCost` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EstimateTemplateCost`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To estimate template cost

The following `estimate-template-cost` example generates a cost estimate for a template named `template.yaml` in the current folder.

```
aws cloudformation estimate-template-cost \
    --template-body file://template.yaml
```

Output:

```
{
    "Url": "http://calculator.s3.amazonaws.com/calc5.html?
key=cloudformation/7870825a-xmpl-4def-92e7-c4f8dd360cca"
}
```

- For API details, see EstimateTemplateCost in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is obtained from the specified Amazon S3 URL and the single customization parameter applied. The parameter can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-
bucket/templatefile.template `
```

```
                        -Region us-west-1 `
                        -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="KeyName";
 ParameterValue="myKeyPairName" }
```

Example 2: Returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is parsed from the supplied content and the customization parameters applied (this example assumes the template content would have declared two parameters, 'KeyName' and 'InstanceType'). The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
                        -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="KeyName";
 ParameterValue="myKeyPairName" },`
                                      @{ ParameterKey="InstanceType";
 ParameterValue="m1.large" })
```

Example 3: Uses New-Object to build the set of template parameters and returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is parsed from the supplied content, with customization parameters (this example assumes the template content would have declared two parameters, 'KeyName' and 'InstanceType').

```
$p1 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p1.ParameterKey = "KeyName"
$p1.ParameterValue = "myKeyPairName"

$p2 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p2.ParameterKey = "InstanceType"
$p2.ParameterValue = "m1.large"

Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" -Parameter
 @( $p1, $p2 )
```

- For API details, see EstimateTemplateCost in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is obtained from

the specified Amazon S3 URL and the single customization parameter applied. The parameter can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-
bucket/templatefile.template `
                        -Region us-west-1 `
                        -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="KeyName";
 ParameterValue="myKeyPairName" }
```

Example 2: Returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is parsed from the supplied content and the customization parameters applied (this example assumes the template content would have declared two parameters, 'KeyName' and 'InstanceType'). The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
                        -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="KeyName";
 ParameterValue="myKeyPairName" },`
                                      @{ ParameterKey="InstanceType";
 ParameterValue="m1.large" })
```

Example 3: Uses New-Object to build the set of template parameters and returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is parsed from the supplied content, with customization parameters (this example assumes the template content would have declared two parameters, 'KeyName' and 'InstanceType').

```
$p1 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p1.ParameterKey = "KeyName"
$p1.ParameterValue = "myKeyPairName"

$p2 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p2.ParameterKey = "InstanceType"
$p2.ParameterValue = "m1.large"

Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" -Parameter
 @( $p1, $p2 )
```

- For API details, see EstimateTemplateCost in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetTemplate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTemplate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view the template body for an AWS CloudFormation stack

The following `get-template` command shows the template for the `myteststack` stack:

```
aws cloudformation get-template --stack-name myteststack
```

Output:

```
{
    "TemplateBody": {
        "AWSTemplateFormatVersion": "2010-09-09",
        "Outputs": {
            "BucketName": {
                "Description": "Name of S3 bucket to hold website content",
                "Value": {
                    "Ref": "S3Bucket"
                }
            }
        },
        "Description": "AWS CloudFormation Sample Template S3_Bucket: Sample
 template showing how to create a publicly accessible S3 bucket. **WARNING** This
 template creates an S3 bucket. You will be billed for the AWS resources used if
 you create a stack from this template.",
        "Resources": {
            "S3Bucket": {
                "Type": "AWS::S3::Bucket",
                "Properties": {
                    "AccessControl": "PublicRead"
                }
            }
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the template associated with the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNTemplate -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the template associated with the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNTemplate -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListStackResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListStackResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list resources in a stack

The following command displays the list of resources in the specified stack.

```
aws cloudformation list-stack-resources \
    --stack-name my-stack
```

Output:

```
{
    "StackResourceSummaries": [
```

```
        {
            "LogicalResourceId": "bucket",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "my-stack-bucket-1vc62xmplgguf",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::S3::Bucket",
            "LastUpdatedTimestamp": "2019-10-02T04:34:11.345Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "CREATE_COMPLETE",
            "DriftInformation": {
                "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
            }
        },
        {
            "LogicalResourceId": "function",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "my-function-SEZV4XMPL4S5",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::Lambda::Function",
            "LastUpdatedTimestamp": "2019-10-02T05:34:27.989Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "UPDATE_COMPLETE",
            "DriftInformation": {
                "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
            }
        },
        {
            "LogicalResourceId": "functionRole",
            "PhysicalResourceId": "my-functionRole-HIZXMPLEOM9E",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::IAM::Role",
            "LastUpdatedTimestamp": "2019-10-02T04:34:06.350Z",
            "ResourceStatus": "CREATE_COMPLETE",
            "DriftInformation": {
                "StackResourceDriftStatus": "IN_SYNC"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListStackResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns descriptions of all the resources associated with the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceSummary -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see ListStackResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns descriptions of all the resources associated with the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceSummary -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see ListStackResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListStacks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListStacks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list AWS CloudFormation stacks

The following `list-stacks` command shows a summary of all stacks that have a status of `CREATE_COMPLETE`:

```
aws cloudformation list-stacks --stack-status-filter CREATE_COMPLETE
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "StackId": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
myteststack/466df9e0-0dff-08e3-8e2f-5088487c4896",
        "TemplateDescription": "AWS CloudFormation Sample Template S3_Bucket:
 Sample template showing how to create a publicly accessible S3 bucket.
 **WARNING** This template creates an S3 bucket. You will be billed for the AWS
 resources used if you create a stack from this template.",
        "StackStatusReason": null,
        "CreationTime": "2013-08-26T03:27:10.190Z",
        "StackName": "myteststack",
        "StackStatus": "CREATE_COMPLETE"
    }
]
```

- For API details, see ListStacks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns summary information for all stacks.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary
```

Example 2: Returns summary information for all stacks that are currently being created.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary -StackStatusFilter "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS"
```

Example 3: Returns summary information for all stacks that are currently being created or updated.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary -StackStatusFilter @("CREATE_IN_PROGRESS",
 "UPDATE_IN_PROGRESS")
```

- For API details, see ListStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns summary information for all stacks.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary
```

Example 2: Returns summary information for all stacks that are currently being created.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary -StackStatusFilter "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS"
```

Example 3: Returns summary information for all stacks that are currently being created or updated.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary -StackStatusFilter @("CREATE_IN_PROGRESS",
 "UPDATE_IN_PROGRESS")
```

- For API details, see ListStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use UpdateStack with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use UpdateStack.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update AWS CloudFormation stacks

The following update-stack command updates the template and input parameters for the mystack stack:

```
aws cloudformation update-stack --stack-name mystack --
template-url https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample/updated.template --
parameters ParameterKey=KeyPairName,ParameterValue=SampleKeyPair
 ParameterKey=SubnetIDs,ParameterValue=SampleSubnetID1\\,SampleSubnetID2
```

The following update-stack command updates just the SubnetIDs parameter value for the mystack stack. If you don't specify a parameter value, the default value that is specified in the template is used:

```
aws cloudformation update-stack --stack-name mystack --
template-url https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample/updated.template
 --parameters ParameterKey=KeyPairName,UsePreviousValue=true
 ParameterKey=SubnetIDs,ParameterValue=SampleSubnetID1\\,UpdatedSampleSubnetID2
```

The following update-stack command adds two stack notification topics to the mystack stack:

```
aws cloudformation update-stack --stack-name mystack --use-previous-template --
notification-arns "arn:aws:sns:use-east-1:123456789012:mytopic1" "arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:123456789012:mytopic2"
```

For more information, see AWS CloudFormation stack updates in the *AWS CloudFormation User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateStack in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template and 'PV1' represents its value. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" `
                -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 2: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } )
```

Example 3: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template and 'PV2' represents its value. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" -
Parameters @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 4: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template, obtained from Amazon S3, and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
```

```
                -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } )
```

Example 5: Updates the stack 'myStack', which is assumed in this example to contain IAM resources, with the specified template, obtained from Amazon S3, and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. Stacks containing IAM resources require you to specify the -Capabilities "CAPABILITY_IAM" parameter otherwise the update will fail with an 'InsufficientCapabilities' error.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } ) `
                -Capabilities "CAPABILITY_IAM"
```

- For API details, see UpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template and 'PV1' represents its value. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" `
                -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 2: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
```

```
                -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } )
```

Example 3: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template and 'PV2' represents its value. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" -
Parameters @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 4: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template, obtained from Amazon S3, and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } )
```

Example 5: Updates the stack 'myStack', which is assumed in this example to contain IAM resources, with the specified template, obtained from Amazon S3, and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. Stacks containing IAM resources require you to specify the -Capabilities "CAPABILITY_IAM" parameter otherwise the update will fail with an 'InsufficientCapabilities' error.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } ) `
                -Capabilities "CAPABILITY_IAM"
```

- For API details, see UpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ValidateTemplate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ValidateTemplate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To validate an AWS CloudFormation template

The following `validate-template` command validates the `sampletemplate.json` template:

```
aws cloudformation validate-template --template-body file://sampletemplate.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "Description": "AWS CloudFormation Sample Template S3_Bucket: Sample template
 showing how to create a publicly accessible S3 bucket. **WARNING** This template
 creates an S3 bucket. You will be billed for the AWS resources used if you
 create a stack from this template.",
    "Parameters": [],
    "Capabilities": []
}
```

For more information, see Working with AWS CloudFormation Templates in the *AWS CloudFormation User Guide*.

- For API details, see ValidateTemplate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Validates the specified template content. The output details the capabilities, description and parameters of the template.

```
Test-CFNTemplate -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}"
```

Example 2: Validates the specified template accessed via an Amazon S3 URL. The output details the capabilities, description and parameters of the template.

```
Test-CFNTemplate -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template
```

- For API details, see ValidateTemplate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Validates the specified template content. The output details the capabilities, description and parameters of the template.

```
Test-CFNTemplate -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}"
```

Example 2: Validates the specified template accessed via an Amazon S3 URL. The output details the capabilities, description and parameters of the template.

```
Test-CFNTemplate -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template
```

- For API details, see ValidateTemplate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for AWS CloudFormation using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in AWS CloudFormation with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within AWS CloudFormation or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Code examples for CloudFront using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon CloudFront with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **CloudFront Developer Guide** – More information about CloudFront.
- **CloudFront API Reference** – Details about all available CloudFront actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CloudFront using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CloudFront using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateFunction with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateInvalidation with a CLI
    - Use CreateKeyGroup with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreatePublicKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity with a CLI
    - Use GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig with a CLI
    - Use GetDistribution with a CLI
    - Use GetDistributionConfig with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities with a CLI
    - Use ListDistributions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for CloudFront using AWS SDKs
  - Create SaaS manager resources AWS SDK
  - Delete CloudFront signing resources using AWS SDK
  - Get started with a basic CloudFront distribution using the CLI
  - Create signed URLs and cookies using an AWS SDK

- CloudFront Functions examples for CloudFront
  - Add HTTP security headers to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event
  - Add a CORS header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event
  - Add a cache control header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event
  - Add a true client IP header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
  - Add an origin header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
  - Add index.html to request URLs without a file name in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
  - Normalize query string parameters in a CloudFront Functions viewer request
  - Redirect to a new URL in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
  - Rewrite a request URI based on KeyValueStore configuration for a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
  - Route requests to an origin closer to the viewer in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
  - Use key-value pairs in a CloudFront Functions viewer request
  - Validate a simple token in a CloudFront Functions viewer request

Basic examples for CloudFront using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon CloudFront with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CloudFront using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateFunction with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateInvalidation with a CLI
  - Use CreateKeyGroup with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreatePublicKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity with a CLI
  - Use GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig with a CLI
  - Use GetDistribution with a CLI

  - Use GetDistributionConfig with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities with a CLI
- Use ListDistributions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for CloudFront using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CloudFront actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the CloudFront API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for CloudFront using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon CloudFront API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateFunction with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateInvalidation with a CLI
- Use CreateKeyGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreatePublicKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity with a CLI
- Use GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig with a CLI
- Use GetDistribution with a CLI
- Use GetDistributionConfig with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities with a CLI
- Use ListDistributions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateDistribution with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateDistribution` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDistribution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a multi-tenant distribution and distribution tenant
- Get started with CloudFront

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a CloudFront distribution

The following `create-distribution` example creates a distribution for an S3 bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`, and also specifies `index.html` as the default root object, using command line arguments.

```
aws cloudfront create-distribution \
    --origin-domain-name amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com \
    --default-root-object index.html
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2019-03-26/distribution/
EMLARXS9EXAMPLE",
    "ETag": "E9LHASXEXAMPLE",
    "Distribution": {
        "Id": "EMLARXS9EXAMPLE",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/EMLARXS9EXAMPLE",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "LastModifiedTime": "2019-11-22T00:55:15.705Z",
        "InProgressInvalidationBatches": 0,
        "DomainName": "d111111abcdef8.cloudfront.net",
        "ActiveTrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DistributionConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-example",
            "Aliases": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
```

```
            "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
            "Origins": {
                "Quantity": 1,
                "Items": [
                    {
                        "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-example",
                        "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com",
                        "OriginPath": "",
                        "CustomHeaders": {
                            "Quantity": 0
                        },
                        "S3OriginConfig": {
                            "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            "OriginGroups": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-
example",
                "ForwardedValues": {
                    "QueryString": false,
                    "Cookies": {
                        "Forward": "none"
                    },
                    "Headers": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    },
                    "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    }
                },
                "TrustedSigners": {
                    "Enabled": false,
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                "MinTTL": 0,
                "AllowedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
```

```
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ],
                    "CachedMethods": {
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": [
                            "HEAD",
                            "GET"
                        ]
                    }
                },
                "SmoothStreaming": false,
                "DefaultTTL": 86400,
                "MaxTTL": 31536000,
                "Compress": false,
                "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
            },
            "CacheBehaviors": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "CustomErrorResponses": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "Comment": "",
            "Logging": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "IncludeCookies": false,
                "Bucket": "",
                "Prefix": ""
            },
            "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
            "Enabled": true,
            "ViewerCertificate": {
                "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
                "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
                "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
            },
            "Restrictions": {
                "GeoRestriction": {
                    "RestrictionType": "none",
                    "Quantity": 0
```

```
                }
            },
            "WebACLId": "",
            "HttpVersion": "http2",
            "IsIPV6Enabled": true
        }
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create a CloudFront distribution using a JSON file

The following `create-distribution` example creates a distribution for an S3 bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`, and also specifies `index.html` as the default root object, using a JSON file.

```
aws cloudfront create-distribution \
    --distribution-config file://dist-config.json
```

Contents of `dist-config.json`:

```
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-example",
    "Aliases": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
    "Origins": {
        "Quantity": 1,
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-example",
                "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com",
                "OriginPath": "",
                "CustomHeaders": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "S3OriginConfig": {
                    "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                }
            }
        ]
    },
    "OriginGroups": {
```

```
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
        "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-example",
        "ForwardedValues": {
            "QueryString": false,
            "Cookies": {
                "Forward": "none"
            },
            "Headers": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                "Quantity": 0
            }
        },
        "TrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
        "MinTTL": 0,
        "AllowedMethods": {
            "Quantity": 2,
            "Items": [
                "HEAD",
                "GET"
            ],
            "CachedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": [
                    "HEAD",
                    "GET"
                ]
            }
        },
        "SmoothStreaming": false,
        "DefaultTTL": 86400,
        "MaxTTL": 31536000,
        "Compress": false,
        "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
```

```
    },
    "CacheBehaviors": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "CustomErrorResponses": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "Comment": "",
    "Logging": {
        "Enabled": false,
        "IncludeCookies": false,
        "Bucket": "",
        "Prefix": ""
    },
    "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
    "Enabled": true,
    "ViewerCertificate": {
        "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
        "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
        "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
    },
    "Restrictions": {
        "GeoRestriction": {
            "RestrictionType": "none",
            "Quantity": 0
        }
    },
    "WebACLId": "",
    "HttpVersion": "http2",
    "IsIPV6Enabled": true
}
```

See Example 1 for sample output.

Example 3: To create a CloudFront multi-tenant distribution with a certificate

The following `create-distribution` example creates a CloudFront distribution with multi-tenant support and a specifies a TLS certificate.

```
aws cloudfront create-distribution \
    --distribution-config file://dist-config.json
```

Contents of `dist-config.json`:

```
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-example-with-cert",
    "Comment": "CLI example distribution",
    "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
    "Origins": {
        "Quantity": 1,
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
                "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
                "OriginPath": "/{{tenantName}}",
                "CustomHeaders": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "S3OriginConfig": {
                    "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                }
            }
        ]
    },
    "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
        "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
        "CachePolicyId": "658327ea-f89d-4fab-a63d-7e88639e5ABC",
        "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
        "AllowedMethods": {
            "Quantity": 2,
            "Items": ["HEAD", "GET"],
            "CachedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": ["HEAD", "GET"]
            }
        }
    },
    "Enabled": true,
    "ViewerCertificate": {
        "ACMCertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/191306a1-db01-49ca-90ef-fc414ee5dabc",
        "SSLSupportMethod": "sni-only"
    },
    "HttpVersion": "http2",
    "ConnectionMode": "tenant-only",
    "TenantConfig": {
        "ParameterDefinitions": [
```

```
            {
                "Name": "tenantName",
                "Definition": {
                    "StringSchema": {
                        "Comment": "tenantName parameter",
                        "DefaultValue": "root",
                        "Required": false
                    }
                }
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2020-05-31/distribution/
E1HVIAU7UABC",
    "ETag": "E20LT7R1BABC",
    "Distribution": {
        "Id": "E1HVIAU7U12ABC",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/E1HVIAU7U12ABC",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "LastModifiedTime": "2025-07-10T20:33:31.117000+00:00",
        "InProgressInvalidationBatches": 0,
        "DomainName": "example.com",
        "ActiveTrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "ActiveTrustedKeyGroups": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DistributionConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-example-with-cert",
            "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
            "Origins": {
                "Quantity": 1,
                "Items": [
                    {
                        "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
```

```
                        "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                        "OriginPath": "/{{tenantName}}",
                        "CustomHeaders": {
                            "Quantity": 0
                        },
                        "S3OriginConfig": {
                            "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                        },
                        "ConnectionAttempts": 3,
                        "ConnectionTimeout": 10,
                        "OriginShield": {
                            "Enabled": false
                        },
                        "OriginAccessControlId": ""
                    }
                ]
            },
            "OriginGroups": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                "TrustedKeyGroups": {
                    "Enabled": false,
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                "AllowedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": ["HEAD", "GET"],
                    "CachedMethods": {
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": ["HEAD", "GET"]
                    }
                },
                "Compress": false,
                "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
```

```
                "FieldLevelEncryptionId": "",
                "CachePolicyId": "658327ea-f89d-4fab-a63d-7e88639e5ABC",
                "GrpcConfig": {
                    "Enabled": false
                }
            },
            "CacheBehaviors": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "CustomErrorResponses": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "Comment": "CLI example distribution",
            "Logging": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "IncludeCookies": false,
                "Bucket": "",
                "Prefix": ""
            },
            "Enabled": true,
            "ViewerCertificate": {
                "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": false,
                "ACMCertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/1954f095-11b6-4daf-9952-0c308a00abc",
                "SSLSupportMethod": "sni-only",
                "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1.2_2021",
                "Certificate": "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/1954f095-11b6-4daf-9952-0c308a00abc",
                "CertificateSource": "acm"
            },
            "Restrictions": {
                "GeoRestriction": {
                    "RestrictionType": "none",
                    "Quantity": 0
                }
            },
            "WebACLId": "",
            "HttpVersion": "http2",
            "TenantConfig": {
                "ParameterDefinitions": [
                    {
                        "Name": "tenantName",
                        "Definition": {
                            "StringSchema": {
```

```
                                "Comment": "tenantName parameter",
                                "DefaultValue": "root",
                                "Required": false
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            "ConnectionMode": "tenant-only"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with distributions in the *Amazon CloudFront Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To create a CloudFront multi-tenant distribution without a certificate

The following `create-distribution` example creates a CloudFront distribution with multi-tenant support but without a TLS certificate.

```
aws cloudfront create-distribution \
    --distribution-config file://dist-config.json
```

Contents of `dist-config.json`:

```
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-example",
    "Comment": "CLI example distribution",
    "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
    "Origins": {
        "Quantity": 1,
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
                "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
                "OriginPath": "/{{tenantName}}",
                "CustomHeaders": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "S3OriginConfig": {
                    "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
```

```
                }
            }
        ]
    },
    "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
        "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
        "CachePolicyId": "658327ea-f89d-4fab-a63d-7e88639e5ABC",
        "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
        "AllowedMethods": {
            "Quantity": 2,
            "Items": [
                "HEAD",
                "GET"
            ],
            "CachedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": [
                    "HEAD",
                    "GET"
                ]
            }
        }
    },
    "Enabled": true,
    "HttpVersion": "http2",
    "ConnectionMode": "tenant-only",
    "TenantConfig": {
        "ParameterDefinitions": [
            {
                "Name": "tenantName",
                "Definition": {
                    "StringSchema": {
                        "Comment": "tenantName parameter",
                        "DefaultValue": "root",
                        "Required": false
                    }
                }
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2020-05-31/distribution/
E2GJ5J9QN12ABC",
    "ETag": "E37YLVVQIABC",
    "Distribution": {
        "Id": "E2GJ5J9QNABC",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/E2GJ5J9QN12ABC",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "LastModifiedTime": "2025-07-10T20:35:20.565000+00:00",
        "InProgressInvalidationBatches": 0,
        "DomainName": "example.com",
        "ActiveTrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "ActiveTrustedKeyGroups": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DistributionConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-example-no-cert",
            "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
            "Origins": {
                "Quantity": 1,
                "Items": [
                    {
                        "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
                        "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                        "OriginPath": "/{{tenantName}}",
                        "CustomHeaders": {
                            "Quantity": 0
                        },
                        "S3OriginConfig": {
                            "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                        },
                        "ConnectionAttempts": 3,
                        "ConnectionTimeout": 10,
                        "OriginShield": {
                            "Enabled": false
                        },
                        "OriginAccessControlId": ""
                    }
```

```
                ]
            },
            "OriginGroups": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                "TrustedKeyGroups": {
                    "Enabled": false,
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                "AllowedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ],
                    "CachedMethods": {
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": [
                            "HEAD",
                            "GET"
                        ]
                    }
                },
                "Compress": false,
                "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FieldLevelEncryptionId": "",
                "CachePolicyId": "658327ea-f89d-4fab-a63d-7e88639e5ABC",
                "GrpcConfig": {
                    "Enabled": false
                }
            },
            "CacheBehaviors": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "CustomErrorResponses": {
```

```
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "Comment": "CLI example distribution",
            "Logging": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "IncludeCookies": false,
                "Bucket": "",
                "Prefix": ""
            },
            "Enabled": true,
            "ViewerCertificate": {
                "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
                "SSLSupportMethod": "sni-only",
                "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
                "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
            },
            "Restrictions": {
                "GeoRestriction": {
                    "RestrictionType": "none",
                    "Quantity": 0
                }
            },
            "WebACLId": "",
            "HttpVersion": "http2",
            "TenantConfig": {
                "ParameterDefinitions": [
                    {
                        "Name": "tenantName",
                        "Definition": {
                            "StringSchema": {
                                "Comment": "tenantName parameter",
                                "DefaultValue": "root",
                                "Required": false
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            "ConnectionMode": "tenant-only"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Configure distributions in the *Amazon CloudFront Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDistribution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example uses an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket as a content origin.

After creating the distribution, the code creates a CloudFrontWaiter to wait until the distribution is deployed before returning the distribution.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.waiters.ResponseOrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Distribution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ItemSelection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Method;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ViewerProtocolPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.waiters.CloudFrontWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistribution {

        private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CreateDistribution.class);
```

```
        public static Distribution createDistribution(CloudFrontClient
cloudFrontClient, S3Client s3Client,
                        final String bucketName, final String keyGroupId, final
String originAccessControlId) {

                final String region = s3Client.headBucket(b ->
b.bucket(bucketName)).sdkHttpResponse().headers()
                                .get("x-amz-bucket-region").get(0);
                final String originDomain = bucketName + ".s3." + region +
".amazonaws.com";
                String originId = originDomain; // Use the originDomain value for
the originId.

                // The service API requires some deprecated methods, such as
                // DefaultCacheBehavior.Builder#minTTL and #forwardedValue.
                CreateDistributionResponse createDistResponse =
cloudFrontClient.createDistribution(builder -> builder
                                .distributionConfig(b1 -> b1
                                                .origins(b2 -> b2
                                                                .quantity(1)
                                                                .items(b3 -> b3

.domainName(originDomain)

.id(originId)

.s3OriginConfig(builder4 -> builder4

              .originAccessIdentity(

                              ""))

.originAccessControlId(

              originAccessControlId)))
                                                .defaultCacheBehavior(b2 -> b2

.viewerProtocolPolicy(ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)

.targetOriginId(originId)
                                                                .minTTL(200L)

.forwardedValues(b5 -> b5
```

```
.cookies(cp -> cp

              .forward(ItemSelection.NONE))

.queryString(true))

.trustedKeyGroups(b3 -> b3

.quantity(1)

.items(keyGroupId)

.enabled(true))

.allowedMethods(b4 -> b4

.quantity(2)

.items(Method.HEAD, Method.GET)

.cachedMethods(b5 -> b5

              .quantity(2)

              .items(Method.HEAD,

                             Method.GET))))
                                                .cacheBehaviors(b -> b
                                                                .quantity(1)
                                                                .items(b2 -> b2

.pathPattern("/index.html")

.viewerProtocolPolicy(

              ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)

.targetOriginId(originId)

.trustedKeyGroups(b3 -> b3

              .quantity(1)
```

```
              .items(keyGroupId)

              .enabled(true))

.minTTL(200L)

.forwardedValues(b4 -> b4

              .cookies(cp -> cp

                              .forward(ItemSelection.NONE))

              .queryString(true))

.allowedMethods(b5 -> b5.quantity(2)

              .items(Method.HEAD,

                             Method.GET)

              .cachedMethods(b6 -> b6

                              .quantity(2)

                              .items(Method.HEAD,

                                             Method.GET)))))
                                              .enabled(true)
                                              .comment("Distribution built with
java")

.callerReference(Instant.now().toString())));

               final Distribution distribution =
createDistResponse.distribution();
               logger.info("Distribution created. DomainName: [{}]  Id: [{}]",
distribution.domainName(),
                               distribution.id());
               logger.info("Waiting for distribution to be deployed ...");
               try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
                       ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse>
responseOrException = cfWaiter
```

```
                                        .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
 builder.id(distribution.id()))
                                        .matched();
                        responseOrException.response()
                                        .orElseThrow(() -> new
 RuntimeException("Distribution not created"));
                        logger.info("Distribution deployed. DomainName: [{}]  Id:
 [{}]", distribution.domainName(),
                                        distribution.id());
                }
                return distribution;
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDistribution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a basic CloudFront distribution, configured with logging and caching.

```
$origin = New-Object Amazon.CloudFront.Model.Origin
$origin.DomainName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com"
$origin.Id = "UniqueOrigin1"
$origin.S3OriginConfig = New-Object Amazon.CloudFront.Model.S3OriginConfig
$origin.S3OriginConfig.OriginAccessIdentity = ""
New-CFDistribution `
      -DistributionConfig_Enabled $true `
      -DistributionConfig_Comment "Test distribution" `
      -Origins_Item $origin `
      -Origins_Quantity 1 `
      -Logging_Enabled $true `
      -Logging_IncludeCookie $true `
      -Logging_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-logging-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com `
      -Logging_Prefix "help/" `
      -DistributionConfig_CallerReference Client1 `
      -DistributionConfig_DefaultRootObject index.html `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_TargetOriginId $origin.Id `
      -ForwardedValues_QueryString $true `
      -Cookies_Forward all `
      -WhitelistedNames_Quantity 0 `
```

```
      -TrustedSigners_Enabled $false `
      -TrustedSigners_Quantity 0 `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_ViewerProtocolPolicy allow-all `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_MinTTL 1000 `
      -DistributionConfig_PriceClass "PriceClass_All" `
      -CacheBehaviors_Quantity 0 `
      -Aliases_Quantity 0
```

- For API details, see CreateDistribution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a basic CloudFront distribution, configured with logging and caching.

```
$origin = New-Object Amazon.CloudFront.Model.Origin
$origin.DomainName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com"
$origin.Id = "UniqueOrigin1"
$origin.S3OriginConfig = New-Object Amazon.CloudFront.Model.S3OriginConfig
$origin.S3OriginConfig.OriginAccessIdentity = ""
New-CFDistribution `
      -DistributionConfig_Enabled $true `
      -DistributionConfig_Comment "Test distribution" `
      -Origins_Item $origin `
      -Origins_Quantity 1 `
      -Logging_Enabled $true `
      -Logging_IncludeCookie $true `
      -Logging_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-logging-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com `
      -Logging_Prefix "help/" `
      -DistributionConfig_CallerReference Client1 `
      -DistributionConfig_DefaultRootObject index.html `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_TargetOriginId $origin.Id `
      -ForwardedValues_QueryString $true `
      -Cookies_Forward all `
      -WhitelistedNames_Quantity 0 `
      -TrustedSigners_Enabled $false `
      -TrustedSigners_Quantity 0 `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_ViewerProtocolPolicy allow-all `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_MinTTL 1000 `
      -DistributionConfig_PriceClass "PriceClass_All" `
      -CacheBehaviors_Quantity 0 `
      -Aliases_Quantity 0
```

- For API details, see CreateDistribution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateFunction` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CloudFrontException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateFunctionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateFunctionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.FunctionConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.FunctionRuntime;
import java.io.InputStream;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateFunction {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <functionName> <filePath>

                Where:
                    functionName - The name of the function to create.\s
```

```
                    filePath - The path to a file that contains the application
logic for the function.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String functionName = args[0];
        String filePath = args[1];
        CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient = CloudFrontClient.builder()
                .region(Region.AWS_GLOBAL)
                .build();

        String funArn = createNewFunction(cloudFrontClient, functionName,
filePath);
        System.out.println("The function ARN is " + funArn);
        cloudFrontClient.close();
    }

    public static String createNewFunction(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
String functionName, String filePath) {
        try {
            InputStream fileIs =
CreateFunction.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream(filePath);
            SdkBytes functionCode = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(fileIs);

            FunctionConfig config = FunctionConfig.builder()
                    .comment("Created by using the CloudFront Java API")
                    .runtime(FunctionRuntime.CLOUDFRONT_JS_1_0)
                    .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest =
CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .name(functionName)
                    .functionCode(functionCode)
                    .functionConfig(config)
                    .build();

            CreateFunctionResponse response =
cloudFrontClient.createFunction(functionRequest);
            return response.functionSummary().functionMetadata().functionARN();
```

```
        } catch (CloudFrontException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateInvalidation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateInvalidation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an invalidation for a CloudFront distribution

The following `create-invalidation` example creates an invalidation for the specified files in the specified CloudFront distribution:

```
aws cloudfront create-invalidation \
    --distribution-id EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE \
    --paths "/example-path/example-file.jpg" "/example-path/example-file2.png"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2019-03-26/distribution/
EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE/invalidation/I1JLWSDAP8FU89",
    "Invalidation": {
        "Id": "I1JLWSDAP8FU89",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "CreateTime": "2019-12-05T18:24:51.407Z",
        "InvalidationBatch": {
            "Paths": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": [
                    "/example-path/example-file2.png",
```

```
                    "/example-path/example-file.jpg"
                ]
            },
            "CallerReference": "cli-1575570291-670203"
        }
    }
}
```

In the previous example, the AWS CLI automatically generated a random `CallerReference`. To specify your own `CallerReference`, or to avoid passing the invalidation parameters as command line arguments, you can use a JSON file. The following example creates an invalidation for two files, by providing the invalidation parameters in a JSON file named `inv-batch.json`:

```
aws cloudfront create-invalidation \
    --distribution-id EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE \
    --invalidation-batch file://inv-batch.json
```

Contents of `inv-batch.json`:

```
{
    "Paths": {
        "Quantity": 2,
        "Items": [
            "/example-path/example-file.jpg",
            "/example-path/example-file2.png"
        ]
    },
    "CallerReference": "cli-example"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2019-03-26/distribution/
EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE/invalidation/I2J0I21PCUYOIK",
    "Invalidation": {
        "Id": "I2J0I21PCUYOIK",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "CreateTime": "2019-12-05T18:40:49.413Z",
        "InvalidationBatch": {
```

```
            "Paths": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": [
                    "/example-path/example-file.jpg",
                    "/example-path/example-file2.png"
                ]
            },
            "CallerReference": "cli-example"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateInvalidation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new invalidation on a distribution with an ID of EXAMPLENSTXAXE. The CallerReference is a unique ID chosen by the user; in this case, a time stamp representing May 15, 2019 at 9:00 a.m. is used. The $Paths variable stores three paths to image and media files that the user does not want as part of the distribution's cache. The -Paths_Quantity parameter value is the total number of paths specified in the -Paths_Item parameter.

```
$Paths = "/images/*.gif", "/images/image1.jpg", "/videos/*.mp4"
New-CFInvalidation -DistributionId "EXAMPLENSTXAXE" -
InvalidationBatch_CallerReference 20190515090000 -Paths_Item $Paths -
Paths_Quantity 3
```

Output:

```
Invalidation                        Location

------------                        --------

Amazon.CloudFront.Model.Invalidation https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2018-11-05/
distribution/EXAMPLENSTXAXE/invalidation/EXAMPLE8NOK9H
```

- For API details, see CreateInvalidation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new invalidation on a distribution with an ID of EXAMPLENSTXAXE. The CallerReference is a unique ID chosen by the user; in this case, a time stamp representing May 15, 2019 at 9:00 a.m. is used. The $Paths variable stores three paths to image and media files that the user does not want as part of the distribution's cache. The -Paths_Quantity parameter value is the total number of paths specified in the -Paths_Item parameter.

```
$Paths = "/images/*.gif", "/images/image1.jpg", "/videos/*.mp4"
New-CFInvalidation -DistributionId "EXAMPLENSTXAXE" -
InvalidationBatch_CallerReference 20190515090000 -Paths_Item $Paths -
Paths_Quantity 3
```

Output:

```
Invalidation                        Location

------------                        --------

Amazon.CloudFront.Model.Invalidation https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2018-11-05/
distribution/EXAMPLENSTXAXE/invalidation/EXAMPLE8NOK9H
```

- For API details, see CreateInvalidation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateKeyGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyGroup`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A key group requires at least one public key that is used to verify signed URLs or cookies.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;

import java.util.UUID;

public class CreateKeyGroup {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CreateKeyGroup.class);

    public static String createKeyGroup(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, String
 publicKeyId) {
        String keyGroupId = cloudFrontClient.createKeyGroup(b ->
 b.keyGroupConfig(c -> c
                .items(publicKeyId)
                .name("JavaKeyGroup" + UUID.randomUUID()))
                .keyGroup().id();
        logger.info("KeyGroup created with ID: [{}]", keyGroupId);
        return keyGroupId;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreatePublicKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePublicKey`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a CloudFront public key

The following example creates a CloudFront public key by providing the parameters in a JSON file named `pub-key-config.json`. Before you can use this command, you must have a PEM-encoded public key. For more information, see Create an RSA Key Pair in the *Amazon CloudFront Developer Guide*.

```
aws cloudfront create-public-key \
```

```
    --public-key-config file://pub-key-config.json
```

The file `pub-key-config.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that contains the following. Note that the public key is encoded in PEM format.

```
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-example",
    "Name": "ExampleKey",
    "EncodedKey": "-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
\nMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAxPMbCA2Ks0lnd7IR+3pw
\nwd3H/7jPGwj8bLUmore7bX+oeGpZ6QmLAe/1UOWcmZX2u70dYcSIzB1ofZtcn4cJ
\nenHBAzO3ohBY/L1tQGJfS2A+omnN6H16VZE1JCK8XSJyfze7MDLcUyHZETdxuvRb
\nA9X343/vMAuQPnhinFJ8Wdy8YBXSPpy7r95ylUQd9LfYTBzVZYG2tSesplcOkjM3\n2Uu
+oMWxQAw1NINnSLPinMVsutJy6ZqlV3McWNWe4T+STGtWhrPNqJEn45sIcCx4\nq
+kGZ2NQ0FyIyT2eiLKOX5Rgb/a36E/aMk4VoDsaenBQgG7WLTnstb9sr7MIhS6A\nrwIDAQAB\n-----
END PUBLIC KEY-----\n",
    "Comment": "example public key"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2019-03-26/public-key/
KDFB19YGCR002",
    "ETag": "E2QWRUHEXAMPLE",
    "PublicKey": {
        "Id": "KDFB19YGCR002",
        "CreatedTime": "2019-12-05T18:51:43.781Z",
        "PublicKeyConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-example",
            "Name": "ExampleKey",
            "EncodedKey": "-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
\nMIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAxPMbCA2Ks0lnd7IR+3pw
\nwd3H/7jPGwj8bLUmore7bX+oeGpZ6QmLAe/1UOWcmZX2u70dYcSIzB1ofZtcn4cJ
\nenHBAzO3ohBY/L1tQGJfS2A+omnN6H16VZE1JCK8XSJyfze7MDLcUyHZETdxuvRb
\nA9X343/vMAuQPnhinFJ8Wdy8YBXSPpy7r95ylUQd9LfYTBzVZYG2tSesplcOkjM3\n2Uu
+oMWxQAw1NINnSLPinMVsutJy6ZqlV3McWNWe4T+STGtWhrPNqJEn45sIcCx4\nq
+kGZ2NQ0FyIyT2eiLKOX5Rgb/a36E/aMk4VoDsaenBQgG7WLTnstb9sr7MIhS6A\nrwIDAQAB\n-----
END PUBLIC KEY-----\n",
            "Comment": "example public key"
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePublicKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following code example reads in a public key and uploads it to Amazon CloudFront.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreatePublicKeyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.IoUtils;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;

public class CreatePublicKey {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CreatePublicKey.class);

    public static String createPublicKey(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
 String publicKeyFileName) {
        try (InputStream is =
 CreatePublicKey.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream(publicKeyFileName)) {
            String publicKeyString = IoUtils.toUtf8String(is);
            CreatePublicKeyResponse createPublicKeyResponse = cloudFrontClient
                    .createPublicKey(b -> b.publicKeyConfig(c -> c
                            .name("JavaCreatedPublicKey" + UUID.randomUUID())
                            .encodedKey(publicKeyString)
                            .callerReference(UUID.randomUUID().toString())));
            String createdPublicKeyId = createPublicKeyResponse.publicKey().id();
            logger.info("Public key created with id: [{}]", createdPublicKeyId);
```

```
            return createdPublicKeyId;

        } catch (IOException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePublicKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDistribution` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDistribution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with CloudFront

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a CloudFront distribution

The following example deletes the CloudFront distribution with the ID `EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE`. Before you can delete a distribution, you must disable it. To disable a distribution, use the update-distribution command. For more information, see the update-distribution examples.

When a distribution is disabled, you can delete it. To delete a distribution, you must use the `--if-match` option to provide the distribution's `ETag`. To get the `ETag`, use the get-distribution or get-distribution-config command.

```
aws cloudfront delete-distribution \
    --id EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE \
    --if-match E2QWRUHEXAMPLE
```

When successful, this command has no output.

- For API details, see DeleteDistribution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following code example updates a distribution to *disabled*, uses a waiter that waits for the change to be deployed, then deletes the distribution.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.waiters.ResponseOrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeleteDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.waiters.CloudFrontWaiter;

public class DeleteDistribution {
        private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(DeleteDistribution.class);

        public static void deleteDistribution(final CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient, final String distributionId) {
                // First, disable the distribution by updating it.
                GetDistributionResponse response =
 cloudFrontClient.getDistribution(b -> b
                                .id(distributionId));
                String etag = response.eTag();
                DistributionConfig distConfig =
 response.distribution().distributionConfig();

                cloudFrontClient.updateDistribution(builder -> builder
                                .id(distributionId)
                                .distributionConfig(builder1 -> builder1

 .cacheBehaviors(distConfig.cacheBehaviors())
```

```
.defaultCacheBehavior(distConfig.defaultCacheBehavior())
                                                .enabled(false)
                                                .origins(distConfig.origins())
                                                .comment(distConfig.comment())

.callerReference(distConfig.callerReference())

.defaultCacheBehavior(distConfig.defaultCacheBehavior())

.priceClass(distConfig.priceClass())
                                                .aliases(distConfig.aliases())
                                                .logging(distConfig.logging())

.defaultRootObject(distConfig.defaultRootObject())

.customErrorResponses(distConfig.customErrorResponses())

.httpVersion(distConfig.httpVersion())

.isIPV6Enabled(distConfig.isIPV6Enabled())

.restrictions(distConfig.restrictions())

.viewerCertificate(distConfig.viewerCertificate())
                                                .webACLId(distConfig.webACLId())

.originGroups(distConfig.originGroups()))
                               .ifMatch(etag));

               logger.info("Distribution [{}] is DISABLED, waiting for
deployment before deleting ...",
                               distributionId);
               GetDistributionResponse distributionResponse;
               try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
                       ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse>
responseOrException = cfWaiter
                                       .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
builder.id(distributionId)).matched();
                       distributionResponse = responseOrException.response()
                                       .orElseThrow(() -> new
RuntimeException("Could not disable distribution"));
               }
```

```
                DeleteDistributionResponse deleteDistributionResponse =
 cloudFrontClient
                                .deleteDistribution(builder -> builder
                                                .id(distributionId)

 .ifMatch(distributionResponse.eTag()));
                if (deleteDistributionResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful())
 {
                        logger.info("Distribution [{}] DELETED", distributionId);
                }
        }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDistribution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a CloudFront origin access identity

The following example gets the CloudFront origin access identity (OAI) with the ID `E74FTE3AEXAMPLE`, including its `ETag` and the associated S3 canonical ID. The OAI ID is returned in the output of the create-cloud-front-origin-access-identity and list-cloud-front-origin-access-identities commands.

```
aws cloudfront get-cloud-front-origin-access-identity --id E74FTE3AEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "E2QWRUHEXAMPLE",
    "CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity": {
        "Id": "E74FTE3AEXAMPLE",
        "S3CanonicalUserId":
 "cd13868f797c227fbea2830611a26fe0a21ba1b826ab4bed9b7771c9aEXAMPLE",
```

```
        "CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-example",
            "Comment": "Example OAI"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a specific Amazon CloudFront origin access identity, specified by the -Id parameter. Although the -Id parameter is not required, if you do not specify it, no results are returned.

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity -Id E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
```

Output:

```
      CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig    Id
     S3CanonicalUserId
      -----------------------------------    --
     -----------------
      Amazon.CloudFront.Model.CloudFrontOr... E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
     4b6e...
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a specific Amazon CloudFront origin access identity, specified by the -Id parameter. Although the -Id parameter is not required, if you do not specify it, no results are returned.

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity -Id E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
```

Output:

```
     CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig    Id
    S3CanonicalUserId
     -----------------------------------    --
    ----------------
     Amazon.CloudFront.Model.CloudFrontOr... E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
    4b6e...
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a CloudFront origin access identity configuration

The following example gets metadata about the CloudFront origin access identity (OAI) with the ID `E74FTE3AEXAMPLE`, including its `ETag`. The OAI ID is returned in the output of the create-cloud-front-origin-access-identity and list-cloud-front-origin-access-identities commands.

```
aws cloudfront get-cloud-front-origin-access-identity-config --id E74FTE3AEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "E2QWRUHEXAMPLE",
    "CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig": {
        "CallerReference": "cli-example",
        "Comment": "Example OAI"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns configuration information about a single Amazon CloudFront origin access identity, specified by the -Id parameter. Errors occur if no -Id parameter is specified..

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig -Id E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
```

Output:

```
     CallerReference                                            Comment
     ---------------                                            -------
     mycallerreference: 2/1/2011 1:16:32 PM                     Caller
reference: 2/1/2011 1:16:32 PM
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns configuration information about a single Amazon CloudFront origin access identity, specified by the -Id parameter. Errors occur if no -Id parameter is specified..

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig -Id E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
```

Output:

```
     CallerReference                                            Comment
     ---------------                                            -------
     mycallerreference: 2/1/2011 1:16:32 PM                     Caller
reference: 2/1/2011 1:16:32 PM
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDistribution` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDistribution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with CloudFront

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a CloudFront distribution

The following `get-distribution` example gets the CloudFront distribution with the ID `EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE`, including its `ETag`. The distribution ID is returned in the create-distribution and list-distributions commands.

```
aws cloudfront get-distribution \
    --id EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "E2QWRUHEXAMPLE",
    "Distribution": {
        "Id": "EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE",
        "Status": "Deployed",
        "LastModifiedTime": "2019-12-04T23:35:41.433Z",
        "InProgressInvalidationBatches": 0,
        "DomainName": "d111111abcdef8.cloudfront.net",
        "ActiveTrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DistributionConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-example",
            "Aliases": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
            "Origins": {
                "Quantity": 1,
                "Items": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-example",
                        "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com",
                        "OriginPath": "",
                        "CustomHeaders": {
                            "Quantity": 0
                        },
                        "S3OriginConfig": {
                            "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            "OriginGroups": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-
example",
                "ForwardedValues": {
                    "QueryString": false,
                    "Cookies": {
                        "Forward": "none"
                    },
                    "Headers": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    },
                    "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    }
                },
                "TrustedSigners": {
                    "Enabled": false,
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                "MinTTL": 0,
                "AllowedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ],
                    "CachedMethods": {
```

```
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": [
                            "HEAD",
                            "GET"
                        ]
                    }
                },
                "SmoothStreaming": false,
                "DefaultTTL": 86400,
                "MaxTTL": 31536000,
                "Compress": false,
                "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
            },
            "CacheBehaviors": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "CustomErrorResponses": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "Comment": "",
            "Logging": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "IncludeCookies": false,
                "Bucket": "",
                "Prefix": ""
            },
            "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
            "Enabled": true,
            "ViewerCertificate": {
                "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
                "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
                "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
            },
            "Restrictions": {
                "GeoRestriction": {
                    "RestrictionType": "none",
                    "Quantity": 0
                }
            },
            "WebACLId": "",
            "HttpVersion": "http2",
```

```
            "IsIPV6Enabled": true
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDistribution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves the information for a specific distribution.

```
Get-CFDistribution -Id EXAMPLE0000ID
```

- For API details, see GetDistribution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves the information for a specific distribution.

```
Get-CFDistribution -Id EXAMPLE0000ID
```

- For API details, see GetDistribution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDistributionConfig` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDistributionConfig`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with CloudFront

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a CloudFront distribution configuration

The following example gets metadata about the CloudFront distribution with the ID EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE, including its ETag. The distribution ID is returned in the create-distribution and list-distributions commands.

```
aws cloudfront get-distribution-config \
    --id EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "E2QWRUHEXAMPLE",
    "DistributionConfig": {
        "CallerReference": "cli-example",
        "Aliases": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
        "Origins": {
            "Quantity": 1,
            "Items": [
                {
                    "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-example",
                    "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com",
                    "OriginPath": "",
                    "CustomHeaders": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    },
                    "S3OriginConfig": {
                        "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                    }
                }
            ]
        },
        "OriginGroups": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
            "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-cli-example",
            "ForwardedValues": {
                "QueryString": false,
                "Cookies": {
                    "Forward": "none"
                },
```

```
                "Headers": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                }
            },
            "TrustedSigners": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
            "MinTTL": 0,
            "AllowedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": [
                    "HEAD",
                    "GET"
                ],
                "CachedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ]
                }
            },
            "SmoothStreaming": false,
            "DefaultTTL": 86400,
            "MaxTTL": 31536000,
            "Compress": false,
            "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
        },
        "CacheBehaviors": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "CustomErrorResponses": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "Comment": "",
        "Logging": {
```

```
            "Enabled": false,
            "IncludeCookies": false,
            "Bucket": "",
            "Prefix": ""
        },
        "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
        "Enabled": true,
        "ViewerCertificate": {
            "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
            "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
            "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
        },
        "Restrictions": {
            "GeoRestriction": {
                "RestrictionType": "none",
                "Quantity": 0
            }
        },
        "WebACLId": "",
        "HttpVersion": "http2",
        "IsIPV6Enabled": true
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDistributionConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves the configuration for a specific distribution.

```
Get-CFDistributionConfig -Id EXAMPLE0000ID
```

- For API details, see GetDistributionConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves the configuration for a specific distribution.

```
Get-CFDistributionConfig -Id EXAMPLE0000ID
```

- For API details, see GetDistributionConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudFrontWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudFront operations."""

    def __init__(self, cloudfront_client):
        """
        :param cloudfront_client: A Boto3 CloudFront client
        """
        self.cloudfront_client = cloudfront_client


    def update_distribution(self):
        distribution_id = input(
            "This script updates the comment for a CloudFront distribution.\n"
            "Enter a CloudFront distribution ID: "
        )

        distribution_config_response =
 self.cloudfront_client.get_distribution_config(
            Id=distribution_id
        )
        distribution_config = distribution_config_response["DistributionConfig"]
        distribution_etag = distribution_config_response["ETag"]

        distribution_config["Comment"] = input(
            f"\nThe current comment for distribution {distribution_id} is "
            f"'{distribution_config['Comment']}'.\n"
            f"Enter a new comment: "
        )
```

```
        self.cloudfront_client.update_distribution(
            DistributionConfig=distribution_config,
            Id=distribution_id,
            IfMatch=distribution_etag,
        )
        print("Done!")
```

- For API details, see GetDistributionConfig in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list CloudFront origin access identities

The following example gets a list of the CloudFront origin access identities (OAIs) in your AWS account:

```
aws cloudfront list-cloud-front-origin-access-identities
```

Output:

```
{
    "CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityList": {
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "E74FTE3AEXAMPLE",
                "S3CanonicalUserId":
 "cd13868f797c227fbea2830611a26fe0a21ba1b826ab4bed9b7771c9aEXAMPLE",
                "Comment": "Example OAI"
            },
            {
                "Id": "EH1HDMBEXAMPLE",
                "S3CanonicalUserId":
 "1489f6f2e6faacaae7ff64c4c3e6956c24f78788abfc1718c3527c263bf7a17EXAMPLE",
```

```
                "Comment": "Test OAI"
            },
            {
                "Id": "E2X2C9TEXAMPLE",
                "S3CanonicalUserId":
 "cbfeebb915a64749f9be546a45b3fcfd3a31c779673c13c4dd460911ae402c2EXAMPLE",
                "Comment": "Example OAI #2"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a list of Amazon CloudFront origin access identities. Because the -MaxItem parameter specifies a value of 2, the results include two identities.

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityList -MaxItem 2
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated : True
Items       : {E326XXXXXXXXXT, E1YWXXXXXXX9B}
Marker      :
MaxItems    : 2
NextMarker  : E1YXXXXXXXXX9B
Quantity    : 2
```

- For API details, see ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of Amazon CloudFront origin access identities. Because the -MaxItem parameter specifies a value of 2, the results include two identities.

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityList -MaxItem 2
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated : True
Items       : {E326XXXXXXXXXT, E1YWXXXXXXX9B}
Marker      :
MaxItems    : 2
NextMarker  : E1YXXXXXXXXX9B
Quantity    : 2
```

- For API details, see ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDistributions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDistributions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list CloudFront distributions

The following example gets a list of the CloudFront distributions in your AWS account.

```
aws cloudfront list-distributions
```

Output:

```
{
    "DistributionList": {
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "E23YS8OEXAMPLE",
                "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/
E23YS8OEXAMPLE",
                "Status": "Deployed",
                "LastModifiedTime": "2024-08-05T18:23:40.375000+00:00",
                "DomainName": "abcdefgh12ijk.cloudfront.net",
                "Aliases": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "Origins": {
```

```
                    "Quantity": 1,
                    "Items": [
                        {
                            "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                            "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                            "OriginPath": "",
                            "CustomHeaders": {
                                "Quantity": 0
                            },
                            "S3OriginConfig": {
                                "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                            },
                            "ConnectionAttempts": 3,
                            "ConnectionTimeout": 10,
                            "OriginShield": {
                                "Enabled": false
                            },
                            "OriginAccessControlId": "EIAP8PEXAMPLE"
                        }
                    ]
                },
                "OriginGroups": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                    "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com",
                    "TrustedSigners": {
                        "Enabled": false,
                        "Quantity": 0
                    },
                    "TrustedKeyGroups": {
                        "Enabled": false,
                        "Quantity": 0
                    },
                    "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                    "AllowedMethods": {
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": [
                            "HEAD",
                            "GET"
                        ],
```

```
                "CachedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ]
                }
            },
            "SmoothStreaming": false,
            "Compress": true,
            "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "FunctionAssociations": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "FieldLevelEncryptionId": "",
            "CachePolicyId": "658327ea-f89d-4fab-a63d-7e886EXAMPLE"
        },
        "CacheBehaviors": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "CustomErrorResponses": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "Comment": "",
        "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
        "Enabled": true,
        "ViewerCertificate": {
            "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
            "SSLSupportMethod": "vip",
            "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
            "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
        },
        "Restrictions": {
            "GeoRestriction": {
                "RestrictionType": "none",
                "Quantity": 0
            }
        },
        "WebACLId": "",
        "HttpVersion": "HTTP2",
        "IsIPV6Enabled": true,
        "Staging": false
```

```
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDistributions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns distributions.

```
Get-CFDistributionList
```

- For API details, see ListDistributions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns distributions.

```
Get-CFDistributionList
```

- For API details, see ListDistributions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudFrontWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudFront operations."""

    def __init__(self, cloudfront_client):
```

```
        """
        :param cloudfront_client: A Boto3 CloudFront client
        """
        self.cloudfront_client = cloudfront_client


    def list_distributions(self):
        print("CloudFront distributions:\n")
        distributions = self.cloudfront_client.list_distributions()
        if distributions["DistributionList"]["Quantity"] > 0:
            for distribution in distributions["DistributionList"]["Items"]:
                print(f"Domain: {distribution['DomainName']}")
                print(f"Distribution Id: {distribution['Id']}")
                print(
                    f"Certificate Source: "
                    f"{distribution['ViewerCertificate']['CertificateSource']}"
                )
                if distribution["ViewerCertificate"]["CertificateSource"] ==
 "acm":
                    print(
                        f"Certificate: {distribution['ViewerCertificate']
['Certificate']}"
                    )
                print("")
        else:
            print("No CloudFront distributions detected.")
```

- For API details, see ListDistributions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateDistribution` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateDistribution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with CloudFront

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update a CloudFront distribution's default root object

The following example updates the default root object to `index.html` for the CloudFront distribution with the ID `EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE`.

```
aws cloudfront update-distribution \
    --id EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE \
    --default-root-object index.html
```

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "E2QWRUHEXAMPLE",
    "Distribution": {
        "Id": "EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/EDFDVBD6EXAMPLE",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "LastModifiedTime": "2019-12-06T18:55:39.870Z",
        "InProgressInvalidationBatches": 0,
        "DomainName": "d111111abcdef8.cloudfront.net",
        "ActiveTrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DistributionConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "6b10378d-49be-4c4b-a642-419ccaf8f3b5",
            "Aliases": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
            "Origins": {
                "Quantity": 1,
                "Items": [
                    {
                        "Id": "example-website",
                        "DomainName": "www.example.com",
                        "OriginPath": "",
                        "CustomHeaders": {
                            "Quantity": 0
```

```
                        },
                        "CustomOriginConfig": {
                            "HTTPPort": 80,
                            "HTTPSPort": 443,
                            "OriginProtocolPolicy": "match-viewer",
                            "OriginSslProtocols": {
                                "Quantity": 2,
                                "Items": [
                                    "SSLv3",
                                    "TLSv1"
                                ]
                            },
                            "OriginReadTimeout": 30,
                            "OriginKeepaliveTimeout": 5
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            "OriginGroups": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                "TargetOriginId": "example-website",
                "ForwardedValues": {
                    "QueryString": false,
                    "Cookies": {
                        "Forward": "none"
                    },
                    "Headers": {
                        "Quantity": 1,
                        "Items": [
                            "*"
                        ]
                    },
                    "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    }
                },
                "TrustedSigners": {
                    "Enabled": false,
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                "MinTTL": 0,
```

```
                "AllowedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ],
                    "CachedMethods": {
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": [
                            "HEAD",
                            "GET"
                        ]
                    }
                },
                "SmoothStreaming": false,
                "DefaultTTL": 86400,
                "MaxTTL": 31536000,
                "Compress": false,
                "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
            },
            "CacheBehaviors": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "CustomErrorResponses": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "Comment": "",
            "Logging": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "IncludeCookies": false,
                "Bucket": "",
                "Prefix": ""
            },
            "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
            "Enabled": true,
            "ViewerCertificate": {
                "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
                "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
                "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
            },
            "Restrictions": {
```

```
                "GeoRestriction": {
                    "RestrictionType": "none",
                    "Quantity": 0
                }
            },
            "WebACLId": "",
            "HttpVersion": "http1.1",
            "IsIPV6Enabled": true
        }
    }
}
```

Example 2: To update a CloudFront distribution

The following example disables the CloudFront distribution with the ID `EMLARXS9EXAMPLE` by providing the distribution configuration in a JSON file named `dist-config-disable.json`. To update a distribution, you must use the `--if-match` option to provide the distribution's `ETag`. To get the `ETag`, use the get-distribution or get-distribution-config command. Note that the `Enabled` field is set to `false` in the JSON file.

After you use the following example to disable a distribution, you can use the delete-distribution command to delete it.

```
aws cloudfront update-distribution \
    --id EMLARXS9EXAMPLE \
    --if-match E2QWRUHEXAMPLE \
    --distribution-config file://dist-config-disable.json
```

Contents of `dist-config-disable.json`:

```
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-1574382155-496510",
    "Aliases": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
    "Origins": {
        "Quantity": 1,
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-1574382155-273939",
                "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com",
```

```
                "OriginPath": "",
                "CustomHeaders": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "S3OriginConfig": {
                    "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                }
            }
        ]
    },
    "OriginGroups": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
        "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-
bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-1574382155-273939",
        "ForwardedValues": {
            "QueryString": false,
            "Cookies": {
                "Forward": "none"
            },
            "Headers": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                "Quantity": 0
            }
        },
        "TrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
        "MinTTL": 0,
        "AllowedMethods": {
            "Quantity": 2,
            "Items": [
                "HEAD",
                "GET"
            ],
            "CachedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": [
                    "HEAD",
```

```
                    "GET"
                ]
            }
        },
        "SmoothStreaming": false,
        "DefaultTTL": 86400,
        "MaxTTL": 31536000,
        "Compress": false,
        "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
    },
    "CacheBehaviors": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "CustomErrorResponses": {
        "Quantity": 0
    },
    "Comment": "",
    "Logging": {
        "Enabled": false,
        "IncludeCookies": false,
        "Bucket": "",
        "Prefix": ""
    },
    "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
    "Enabled": false,
    "ViewerCertificate": {
        "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
        "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
        "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
    },
    "Restrictions": {
        "GeoRestriction": {
            "RestrictionType": "none",
            "Quantity": 0
        }
    },
    "WebACLId": "",
    "HttpVersion": "http2",
    "IsIPV6Enabled": true
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "E9LHASXEXAMPLE",
    "Distribution": {
        "Id": "EMLARXS9EXAMPLE",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:cloudfront::123456789012:distribution/EMLARXS9EXAMPLE",
        "Status": "InProgress",
        "LastModifiedTime": "2019-12-06T18:32:35.553Z",
        "InProgressInvalidationBatches": 0,
        "DomainName": "d111111abcdef8.cloudfront.net",
        "ActiveTrustedSigners": {
            "Enabled": false,
            "Quantity": 0
        },
        "DistributionConfig": {
            "CallerReference": "cli-1574382155-496510",
            "Aliases": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultRootObject": "index.html",
            "Origins": {
                "Quantity": 1,
                "Items": [
                    {
                        "Id": "amzn-s3-demo-
bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-1574382155-273939",
                        "DomainName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com",
                        "OriginPath": "",
                        "CustomHeaders": {
                            "Quantity": 0
                        },
                        "S3OriginConfig": {
                            "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            "OriginGroups": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
                "TargetOriginId": "amzn-s3-demo-
bucket.s3.amazonaws.com-1574382155-273939",
```

```
                "ForwardedValues": {
                    "QueryString": false,
                    "Cookies": {
                        "Forward": "none"
                    },
                    "Headers": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    },
                    "QueryStringCacheKeys": {
                        "Quantity": 0
                    }
                },
                "TrustedSigners": {
                    "Enabled": false,
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "allow-all",
                "MinTTL": 0,
                "AllowedMethods": {
                    "Quantity": 2,
                    "Items": [
                        "HEAD",
                        "GET"
                    ],
                    "CachedMethods": {
                        "Quantity": 2,
                        "Items": [
                            "HEAD",
                            "GET"
                        ]
                    }
                },
                "SmoothStreaming": false,
                "DefaultTTL": 86400,
                "MaxTTL": 31536000,
                "Compress": false,
                "LambdaFunctionAssociations": {
                    "Quantity": 0
                },
                "FieldLevelEncryptionId": ""
            },
            "CacheBehaviors": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
```

```
            "CustomErrorResponses": {
                "Quantity": 0
            },
            "Comment": "",
            "Logging": {
                "Enabled": false,
                "IncludeCookies": false,
                "Bucket": "",
                "Prefix": ""
            },
            "PriceClass": "PriceClass_All",
            "Enabled": false,
            "ViewerCertificate": {
                "CloudFrontDefaultCertificate": true,
                "MinimumProtocolVersion": "TLSv1",
                "CertificateSource": "cloudfront"
            },
            "Restrictions": {
                "GeoRestriction": {
                    "RestrictionType": "none",
                    "Quantity": 0
                }
            },
            "WebACLId": "",
            "HttpVersion": "http2",
            "IsIPV6Enabled": true
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateDistribution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Distribution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionConfig;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.UpdateDistributionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CloudFrontException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ModifyDistribution {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <id>\s

                Where:
                    id - the id value of the distribution.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String id = args[0];
        CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient = CloudFrontClient.builder()
                .region(Region.AWS_GLOBAL)
                .build();

        modDistribution(cloudFrontClient, id);
        cloudFrontClient.close();
    }
```

```
   public static void modDistribution(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, String
idVal) {
       try {
           // Get the Distribution to modify.
           GetDistributionRequest disRequest = GetDistributionRequest.builder()
                   .id(idVal)
                   .build();

           GetDistributionResponse response =
cloudFrontClient.getDistribution(disRequest);
           Distribution disObject = response.distribution();
           DistributionConfig config = disObject.distributionConfig();

           // Create a new DistributionConfig object and add new values to
comment and
           // aliases
           DistributionConfig config1 = DistributionConfig.builder()
                   .aliases(config.aliases()) // You can pass in new values here
                   .comment("New Comment")
                   .cacheBehaviors(config.cacheBehaviors())
                   .priceClass(config.priceClass())
                   .defaultCacheBehavior(config.defaultCacheBehavior())
                   .enabled(config.enabled())
                   .callerReference(config.callerReference())
                   .logging(config.logging())
                   .originGroups(config.originGroups())
                   .origins(config.origins())
                   .restrictions(config.restrictions())
                   .defaultRootObject(config.defaultRootObject())
                   .webACLId(config.webACLId())
                   .httpVersion(config.httpVersion())
                   .viewerCertificate(config.viewerCertificate())
                   .customErrorResponses(config.customErrorResponses())
                   .build();

           UpdateDistributionRequest updateDistributionRequest =
UpdateDistributionRequest.builder()
                   .distributionConfig(config1)
                   .id(disObject.id())
                   .ifMatch(response.eTag())
                   .build();

           cloudFrontClient.updateDistribution(updateDistributionRequest);
```

```
        } catch (CloudFrontException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateDistribution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudFrontWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudFront operations."""

    def __init__(self, cloudfront_client):
        """
        :param cloudfront_client: A Boto3 CloudFront client
        """
        self.cloudfront_client = cloudfront_client


    def update_distribution(self):
        distribution_id = input(
            "This script updates the comment for a CloudFront distribution.\n"
            "Enter a CloudFront distribution ID: "
        )

        distribution_config_response =
 self.cloudfront_client.get_distribution_config(
            Id=distribution_id
        )
        distribution_config = distribution_config_response["DistributionConfig"]
```

```
        distribution_etag = distribution_config_response["ETag"]

        distribution_config["Comment"] = input(
            f"\nThe current comment for distribution {distribution_id} is "
            f"'{distribution_config['Comment']}'.\n"
            f"Enter a new comment: "
        )
        self.cloudfront_client.update_distribution(
            DistributionConfig=distribution_config,
            Id=distribution_id,
            IfMatch=distribution_etag,
        )
        print("Done!")
```

- For API details, see UpdateDistribution in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for CloudFront using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in CloudFront with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within CloudFront or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create SaaS manager resources AWS SDK
- Delete CloudFront signing resources using AWS SDK
- Get started with a basic CloudFront distribution using the CLI
- Create signed URLs and cookies using an AWS SDK

Create SaaS manager resources AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create a multi-tenant distribution and distribution tenant with various configurations.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example demonstrates how to create a multi-tenant distribution with parameters and wildcard certificate.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.waiters.ResponseOrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ConnectionMode;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Distribution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.HttpVersion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Method;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.SSLSupportMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ViewerProtocolPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.waiters.CloudFrontWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateMultiTenantDistribution {
    public static Distribution
 CreateMultiTenantDistributionWithCert(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                    S3Client
 s3Client,
                                                                    final String
 bucketName,
                                                                    final String
 certificateArn) {
        // fetch the origin info if necessary
        final String region = s3Client.headBucket(b ->
 b.bucket(bucketName)).sdkHttpResponse().headers()
```

```
                .get("x-amz-bucket-region").get(0);
        final String originDomain = bucketName + ".s3." + region +
 ".amazonaws.com";
        String originId = originDomain; // Use the originDomain value for the
 originId.

        CreateDistributionResponse createDistResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistribution(builder -> builder
                .distributionConfig(b1 -> b1
                        .httpVersion(HttpVersion.HTTP2)
                        .enabled(true)
                        .comment("Template Distribution with cert built with
 java")
                        .connectionMode(ConnectionMode.TENANT_ONLY)
                        .callerReference(Instant.now().toString())
                        .viewerCertificate(certBuilder -> certBuilder
                                .acmCertificateArn(certificateArn)
                                .sslSupportMethod(SSLSupportMethod.SNI_ONLY))
                        .origins(b2 -> b2
                                .quantity(1)
                                .items(b3 -> b3
                                        .domainName(originDomain)
                                        .id(originId)
                                        .originPath("/{{tenantName}}")
                                        .s3OriginConfig(builder4 -> builder4
                                                .originAccessIdentity(
                                                        "")))
                        .tenantConfig(b5 -> b5
                                .parameterDefinitions(b6 -> b6
                                        .name("tenantName")
                                        .definition(b7 -> b7
                                                .stringSchema(b8 -> b8
                                                        .comment("tenantName
 value")
                                                        .defaultValue("root")
                                                        .required(false)))))
                        .defaultCacheBehavior(b2 -> b2

 .viewerProtocolPolicy(ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)
                                .targetOriginId(originId)
                                .cachePolicyId("658327ea-f89d-4fab-
a63d-7e88639e58f6") // CachingOptimized Policy
                                .allowedMethods(b4 -> b4
                                        .quantity(2)
```

```
                                        .items(Method.HEAD, Method.GET)))
                ));

        final Distribution distribution = createDistResponse.distribution();
        try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
            ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse> responseOrException =
cfWaiter
                    .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
builder.id(distribution.id()))
                    .matched();
            responseOrException.response()
                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Distribution not
created"));
        }
        return distribution;
    }

    public static Distribution
CreateMultiTenantDistributionNoCert(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                S3Client s3Client,
                                                                final String
bucketName) {
        // fetch the origin info if necessary
        final String region = s3Client.headBucket(b ->
b.bucket(bucketName)).sdkHttpResponse().headers()
                .get("x-amz-bucket-region").get(0);
        final String originDomain = bucketName + ".s3." + region +
".amazonaws.com";
        String originId = originDomain; // Use the originDomain value for the
originId.

        CreateDistributionResponse createDistResponse =
cloudFrontClient.createDistribution(builder -> builder
                .distributionConfig(b1 -> b1
                        .httpVersion(HttpVersion.HTTP2)
                        .enabled(true)
                        .comment("Template Distribution with cert built with
java")
                        .connectionMode(ConnectionMode.TENANT_ONLY)
                        .callerReference(Instant.now().toString())
                        .origins(b2 -> b2
                                .quantity(1)
                                .items(b3 -> b3
```

```
                                        .domainName(originDomain)
                                        .id(originId)
                                        .originPath("/{{tenantName}}")
                                        .s3OriginConfig(builder4 -> builder4
                                                .originAccessIdentity(
                                                        "")))
                        .tenantConfig(b5 -> b5
                                .parameterDefinitions(b6 -> b6
                                        .name("tenantName")
                                        .definition(b7 -> b7
                                                .stringSchema(b8 -> b8
                                                        .comment("tenantName
 value")
                                                        .defaultValue("root")
                                                        .required(false)))))
                        .defaultCacheBehavior(b2 -> b2

 .viewerProtocolPolicy(ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)
                                .targetOriginId(originId)
                                .cachePolicyId("658327ea-f89d-4fab-
a63d-7e88639e58f6") // CachingOptimized Policy
                                .allowedMethods(b4 -> b4
                                        .quantity(2)
                                        .items(Method.HEAD, Method.GET)))
                ));

        final Distribution distribution = createDistResponse.distribution();
        try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
 CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
            ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse> responseOrException =
 cfWaiter
                    .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
 builder.id(distribution.id()))
                    .matched();
            responseOrException.response()
                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Distribution not
 created"));
        }
        return distribution;
    }
}
```

The following example demonstrates how to create a distribution tenant associated with that template, including utilizing the parameter we declared above. Note that we don't need to add certificate info here because our domain is already covered by the parent template.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantNoCert(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                    Route53Client
 route53Client,
                                                                    String
 distributionId,
                                                                    String
 domain,
                                                                    String
 hostedZoneId) {
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
                .enabled(false)
                .name("no-cert-tenant")
        );
```

```
        final DistributionTenant distributionTenant =
 createResponse.distributionTenant();

        // Then update the Route53 hosted zone to point your domain at the
 distribution tenant
        // We fetch the RoutingEndpoint to point to via the default connection
 group that was created for your tenant
        final GetConnectionGroupResponse fetchedConnectionGroup =
 cloudFrontClient.getConnectionGroup(builder -> builder
                .identifier(distributionTenant.connectionGroupId()));

        route53Client.changeResourceRecordSets(builder -> builder
                .hostedZoneId(hostedZoneId)
                .changeBatch(b1 -> b1
                        .comment("ChangeBatch comment")
                        .changes(b2 -> b2
                                .resourceRecordSet(b3 -> b3
                                        .name(domain)
                                        .type("CNAME")
                                        .ttl(300L)
                                        .resourceRecords(b4 -> b4

 .value(fetchedConnectionGroup.connectionGroup().routingEndpoint())))
                                .action("CREATE"))
                ));
        return distributionTenant;
    }

}
```

If the viewer certificate was omitted from the parent template, you would need to add certificate info on the tenant(s) associated with it instead. The following example demonstrates how to do so via an ACM certificate arn that covers the necessary domain for the tenant.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantWithCert(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,

 Route53Client route53Client,
                                                                        String
 distributionId,
                                                                        String
 domain,
                                                                        String
 hostedZoneId,
                                                                        String
 certificateArn) {
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))
                .enabled(false)
                .name("tenant-with-cert")
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
                .customizations(b3 -> b3
                        .certificate(b4 -> b4
                                .arn(certificateArn))) // NOTE: Cert must be in
 Us-East-1 and cover the domain provided in this request

        );

        final DistributionTenant distributionTenant =
 createResponse.distributionTenant();

        // Then update the Route53 hosted zone to point your domain at the
 distribution tenant
```

```
        // We fetch the RoutingEndpoint to point to via the default connection
 group that was created for your tenant
        final GetConnectionGroupResponse fetchedConnectionGroup =
 cloudFrontClient.getConnectionGroup(builder -> builder
                .identifier(distributionTenant.connectionGroupId()));

        route53Client.changeResourceRecordSets(builder -> builder
                .hostedZoneId(hostedZoneId)
                .changeBatch(b1 -> b1
                        .comment("ChangeBatch comment")
                        .changes(b2 -> b2
                                .resourceRecordSet(b3 -> b3
                                        .name(domain)
                                        .type("CNAME")
                                        .ttl(300L)
                                        .resourceRecords(b4 -> b4

 .value(fetchedConnectionGroup.connectionGroup().routingEndpoint())))
                                .action("CREATE"))
                ));
        return distributionTenant;
    }

}
```

The following example demonstrates how to do so with a CloudFront-hosted managed certificate request. This is ideal if you don't already have traffic towards your domain. In this case, we create a ConnectionGroup to generate a RoutingEndpoint. Then we use that RoutingEndpoint to create DNS records which verify domain ownership and point to CloudFront. CloudFront will then automatically serve a token to validate domain ownership and create a managed certificate.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantCfHosted(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,

 Route53Client route53Client,
                                                                    String
 distributionId,
                                                                    String
 domain,
                                                                    String
 hostedZoneId) throws InterruptedException {
        CreateConnectionGroupResponse createConnectionGroupResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createConnectionGroup(builder -> builder
                .ipv6Enabled(true)
                .name("cf-hosted-connection-group")
                .enabled(true));

        route53Client.changeResourceRecordSets(builder -> builder
                .hostedZoneId(hostedZoneId)
                .changeBatch(b1 -> b1
                        .comment("cf-hosted domain validation record")
                        .changes(b2 -> b2
                                .resourceRecordSet(b3 -> b3
                                        .name(domain)
                                        .type(RRType.CNAME)
                                        .ttl(300L)
                                        .resourceRecords(b4 -> b4

 .value(createConnectionGroupResponse.connectionGroup().routingEndpoint())))
                                .action("CREATE"))
                ));

        // Give the R53 record time to propagate, if it isn't being returned by
 servers yet, the following call will fail
        Thread.sleep(60000);
```

```
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))

 .connectionGroupId(createConnectionGroupResponse.connectionGroup().id())
                .enabled(false)
                .name("cf-hosted-tenant")
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
                .managedCertificateRequest(b3 -> b3
                        .validationTokenHost(ValidationTokenHost.CLOUDFRONT)
                )
        );

        return createResponse.distributionTenant();
    }

}
```

The following example demonstrates how to do so with a self-hosted managed certificate request. This is ideal if you have traffic towards your domain and can't tolerate downtime during a migration. At the end of this example, the Tenant will be created in a state awaiting domain validation and DNS setup. Follow steps [here](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudFront/latest/DeveloperGuide/managed-cloudfront-certificates.html#complete-domain-ownership) to complete setup when you are ready to migrate traffic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantSelfHosted(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                        String
 distributionId,
                                                                        String
 domain) {
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
                .enabled(false)
                .name("self-hosted-tenant")
                .managedCertificateRequest(b3 -> b3
                        .validationTokenHost(ValidationTokenHost.SELF_HOSTED)
                        .primaryDomainName(domain)
                )
        );

        return createResponse.distributionTenant();
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDistribution
  - CreateDistributionTenant

Delete CloudFront signing resources using AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to delete resources that are used to gain access to restricted content in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeleteKeyGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeleteOriginAccessControlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeletePublicKeyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetKeyGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetOriginAccessControlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetPublicKeyResponse;

public class DeleteSigningResources {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(DeleteSigningResources.class);

    public static void deleteOriginAccessControl(final CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient,
            final String originAccessControlId) {
        GetOriginAccessControlResponse getResponse = cloudFrontClient
                .getOriginAccessControl(b -> b.id(originAccessControlId));
        DeleteOriginAccessControlResponse deleteResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.deleteOriginAccessControl(builder -> builder
                .id(originAccessControlId)
                .ifMatch(getResponse.eTag()));
        if (deleteResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Successfully deleted Origin Access Control [{}]",
 originAccessControlId);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void deleteKeyGroup(final CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
 final String keyGroupId) {

        GetKeyGroupResponse getResponse = cloudFrontClient.getKeyGroup(b ->
 b.id(keyGroupId));
        DeleteKeyGroupResponse deleteResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.deleteKeyGroup(builder -> builder
                .id(keyGroupId)
                .ifMatch(getResponse.eTag()));
        if (deleteResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Successfully deleted Key Group [{}]", keyGroupId);
        }
    }

    public static void deletePublicKey(final CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
 final String publicKeyId) {
        GetPublicKeyResponse getResponse = cloudFrontClient.getPublicKey(b ->
 b.id(publicKeyId));

        DeletePublicKeyResponse deleteResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.deletePublicKey(builder -> builder
                .id(publicKeyId)
                .ifMatch(getResponse.eTag()));

        if (deleteResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Successfully deleted Public Key [{}]", publicKeyId);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteKeyGroup
  - DeleteOriginAccessControl
  - DeletePublicKey

Get started with a basic CloudFront distribution using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon S3 bucket for content storage

- Upload sample content to the S3 bucket
- Create an origin access control (OAC) for secure S3 access
- Create a CloudFront distribution with S3 as origin
- Update S3 bucket policy to allow CloudFront access
- Wait for distribution deployment and test content access
- Clean up resources including distribution, OAC, and S3 bucket

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# CloudFront Getting Started Tutorial Script
# This script creates an S3 bucket, uploads sample content, creates a CloudFront
 distribution with OAC,
# and demonstrates how to access content through CloudFront.

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="cloudfront-tutorial.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

echo "Starting CloudFront Getting Started Tutorial at $(date)"

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
    echo "ERROR: $1"
    echo "Resources created before error:"
    if [ -n "$BUCKET_NAME" ]; then
        echo "- S3 Bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
    fi
    if [ -n "$OAC_ID" ]; then
        echo "- CloudFront Origin Access Control: $OAC_ID"
```

```
    fi
    if [ -n "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" ]; then
        echo "- CloudFront Distribution: $DISTRIBUTION_ID"
    fi

    echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
    cleanup
    exit 1
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
    echo "Cleaning up resources..."

    if [ -n "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" ]; then
        echo "Disabling CloudFront distribution $DISTRIBUTION_ID..."

        # Get the current configuration and ETag
        ETAG=$(aws cloudfront get-distribution-config --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" --
query 'ETag' --output text)
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to get distribution config. Continuing with cleanup..."
        else
            # Create a modified configuration with Enabled=false
            aws cloudfront get-distribution-config --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" | \
            jq '.DistributionConfig.Enabled = false' > temp_disabled_config.json

            # Update the distribution to disable it
            aws cloudfront update-distribution \
                --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" \
                --distribution-config file://<(jq '.DistributionConfig'
 temp_disabled_config.json) \
                --if-match "$ETAG"

            if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
                echo "Failed to disable distribution. Continuing with cleanup..."
            else
                echo "Waiting for distribution to be disabled (this may take
 several minutes)..."
                aws cloudfront wait distribution-deployed --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID"

                # Delete the distribution
                ETAG=$(aws cloudfront get-distribution-config --id
 "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" --query 'ETag' --output text)
```

```
                aws cloudfront delete-distribution --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" --if-
match "$ETAG"
                if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
                    echo "Failed to delete distribution. You may need to delete
 it manually."
                else
                    echo "CloudFront distribution deleted."
                fi
            fi
        fi
    fi

    if [ -n "$OAC_ID" ]; then
        echo "Deleting Origin Access Control $OAC_ID..."
        OAC_ETAG=$(aws cloudfront get-origin-access-control --id "$OAC_ID" --
query 'ETag' --output text 2>/dev/null)
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to get Origin Access Control ETag. You may need to
 delete it manually."
        else
            aws cloudfront delete-origin-access-control --id "$OAC_ID" --if-match
 "$OAC_ETAG"
            if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
                echo "Failed to delete Origin Access Control. You may need to
 delete it manually."
            else
                echo "Origin Access Control deleted."
            fi
        fi
    fi

    if [ -n "$BUCKET_NAME" ]; then
        echo "Deleting S3 bucket $BUCKET_NAME and its contents..."
        aws s3 rm "s3://$BUCKET_NAME" --recursive
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to remove bucket contents. Continuing with bucket
 deletion..."
        fi

        aws s3 rb "s3://$BUCKET_NAME"
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to delete bucket. You may need to delete it manually."
        else
            echo "S3 bucket deleted."
```

```
        fi
    fi

    # Clean up temporary files
    rm -f temp_disabled_config.json
    rm -rf temp_content
}

# Generate a random identifier for the bucket name
RANDOM_ID=$(openssl rand -hex 6)
BUCKET_NAME="cloudfront-${RANDOM_ID}"
echo "Using bucket name: $BUCKET_NAME"

# Create a temporary directory for content
TEMP_DIR="temp_content"
mkdir -p "$TEMP_DIR/css"
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create temporary directory"
fi

# Step 1: Create an S3 bucket
echo "Creating S3 bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
aws s3 mb "s3://$BUCKET_NAME"
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create S3 bucket"
fi

# Step 2: Create sample content
echo "Creating sample content..."
cat > "$TEMP_DIR/index.html" << 'EOF'
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello World</title>
    <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="css/styles.css">
</head>
<body>
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
</body>
</html>
EOF

cat > "$TEMP_DIR/css/styles.css" << 'EOF'
body {
```

```
    font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
    margin: 40px;
    background-color: #f5f5f5;
}
h1 {
    color: #333;
    text-align: center;
}
EOF

# Step 3: Upload content to the S3 bucket
echo "Uploading content to S3 bucket..."
aws s3 cp "$TEMP_DIR/" "s3://$BUCKET_NAME/" --recursive
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to upload content to S3 bucket"
fi

# Step 4: Create Origin Access Control
echo "Creating Origin Access Control..."
OAC_RESPONSE=$(aws cloudfront create-origin-access-control \
    --origin-access-control-config Name="oac-for-
$BUCKET_NAME",SigningProtocol=sigv4,SigningBehavior=always,OriginAccessControlOriginType=

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Origin Access Control"
fi

OAC_ID=$(echo "$OAC_RESPONSE" | jq -r '.OriginAccessControl.Id')
echo "Created Origin Access Control with ID: $OAC_ID"

# Step 5: Create CloudFront distribution
echo "Creating CloudFront distribution..."

# Get AWS account ID for bucket policy
ACCOUNT_ID=$(aws sts get-caller-identity --query 'Account' --output text)
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to get AWS account ID"
fi

# Create distribution configuration
cat > distribution-config.json << EOF
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-tutorial-$(date +%s)",
    "Origins": {
```

```
        "Quantity": 1,
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "S3-$BUCKET_NAME",
                "DomainName": "$BUCKET_NAME.s3.amazonaws.com",
                "S3OriginConfig": {
                    "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                },
                "OriginAccessControlId": "$OAC_ID"
            }
        ]
    },
    "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
        "TargetOriginId": "S3-$BUCKET_NAME",
        "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "redirect-to-https",
        "AllowedMethods": {
            "Quantity": 2,
            "Items": ["GET", "HEAD"],
            "CachedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": ["GET", "HEAD"]
            }
        },
        "DefaultTTL": 86400,
        "MinTTL": 0,
        "MaxTTL": 31536000,
        "Compress": true,
        "ForwardedValues": {
            "QueryString": false,
            "Cookies": {
                "Forward": "none"
            }
        }
    },
    "Comment": "CloudFront distribution for tutorial",
    "Enabled": true,
    "WebACLId": ""
}
EOF

DIST_RESPONSE=$(aws cloudfront create-distribution --distribution-config file://
distribution-config.json)
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create CloudFront distribution"
```

```
fi

DISTRIBUTION_ID=$(echo "$DIST_RESPONSE" | jq -r '.Distribution.Id')
DOMAIN_NAME=$(echo "$DIST_RESPONSE" | jq -r '.Distribution.DomainName')

echo "Created CloudFront distribution with ID: $DISTRIBUTION_ID"
echo "CloudFront domain name: $DOMAIN_NAME"

# Step 6: Update S3 bucket policy
echo "Updating S3 bucket policy..."
cat > bucket-policy.json << EOF
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "AllowCloudFrontServicePrincipal",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "cloudfront.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "s3:GetObject",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::$BUCKET_NAME/*",
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "AWS:SourceArn": "arn:aws:cloudfront::
$ACCOUNT_ID:distribution/$DISTRIBUTION_ID"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
EOF

aws s3api put-bucket-policy --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" --policy file://bucket-
policy.json
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to update S3 bucket policy"
fi

# Step 7: Wait for distribution to deploy
echo "Waiting for CloudFront distribution to deploy (this may take 5-10
 minutes)..."
aws cloudfront wait distribution-deployed --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID"
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
```

```
    echo "Warning: Distribution deployment wait timed out. The distribution may
 still be deploying."
else
    echo "CloudFront distribution is now deployed."
fi

# Step 8: Display access information
echo ""
echo "===== CloudFront Distribution Setup Complete ======"
echo "You can access your content at: https://$DOMAIN_NAME/index.html"
echo ""
echo "Resources created:"
echo "- S3 Bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
echo "- CloudFront Origin Access Control: $OAC_ID"
echo "- CloudFront Distribution: $DISTRIBUTION_ID"
echo ""

# Ask user if they want to clean up resources
read -p "Do you want to clean up all resources created by this script? (y/n): "
 CLEANUP_RESPONSE
if [[ "$CLEANUP_RESPONSE" =~ ^[Yy] ]]; then
    cleanup
    echo "All resources have been cleaned up."
else
    echo "Resources will not be cleaned up. You can manually delete them later."
    echo "To access your content, visit: https://$DOMAIN_NAME/index.html"
fi

echo "Tutorial completed at $(date)"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateDistribution
  - CreateOriginAccessControl
  - DeleteDistribution
  - DeleteOriginAccessControl
  - GetDistribution
  - GetDistributionConfig
  - GetOriginAccessControl
  - UpdateDistribution

- WaitDistributionDeployed

Create signed URLs and cookies using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create signed URLs and cookies that allow access to restricted resources.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the CannedSignerRequest class to sign URLs or cookies with a *canned* policy.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CannedSignerRequest;

import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;

public class CreateCannedPolicyRequest {

    public static CannedSignerRequest createRequestForCannedPolicy(String
 distributionDomainName,
            String fileNameToUpload,
            String privateKeyFullPath, String publicKeyId) throws Exception {
        String protocol = "https";
        String resourcePath = "/" + fileNameToUpload;

        String cloudFrontUrl = new URL(protocol, distributionDomainName,
 resourcePath).toString();
        Instant expirationDate = Instant.now().plus(7, ChronoUnit.DAYS);
        Path path = Paths.get(privateKeyFullPath);
```

```
        return CannedSignerRequest.builder()
                .resourceUrl(cloudFrontUrl)
                .privateKey(path)
                .keyPairId(publicKeyId)
                .expirationDate(expirationDate)
                .build();
    }
}
```

Use the CustomSignerRequest class to sign URLs or cookies with a *custom* policy. The `activeDate` and `ipRange` are optional methods.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CustomSignerRequest;

import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;

public class CreateCustomPolicyRequest {

    public static CustomSignerRequest createRequestForCustomPolicy(String
 distributionDomainName,
            String fileNameToUpload,
            String privateKeyFullPath, String publicKeyId) throws Exception {
        String protocol = "https";
        String resourcePath = "/" + fileNameToUpload;

        String cloudFrontUrl = new URL(protocol, distributionDomainName,
 resourcePath).toString();
        Instant expireDate = Instant.now().plus(7, ChronoUnit.DAYS);
        // URL will be accessible tomorrow using the signed URL.
        Instant activeDate = Instant.now().plus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);
        Path path = Paths.get(privateKeyFullPath);

        return CustomSignerRequest.builder()
                .resourceUrl(cloudFrontUrl)
                // .resourceUrlPattern("https://*.example.com/*")  // Optional.
                .privateKey(path)
                .keyPairId(publicKeyId)
                .expirationDate(expireDate)
```

```
                .activeDate(activeDate) // Optional.
                // .ipRange("192.168.0.1/24") // Optional.
                .build();
    }
}
```

The following example demonstrates the use of the CloudFrontUtilities class to produce signed cookies and URLs. View this code example on GitHub.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontUtilities;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.cookie.CookiesForCannedPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.cookie.CookiesForCustomPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CannedSignerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CustomSignerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.url.SignedUrl;

public class SigningUtilities {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SigningUtilities.class);
    private static final CloudFrontUtilities cloudFrontUtilities =
 CloudFrontUtilities.create();

    public static SignedUrl signUrlForCannedPolicy(CannedSignerRequest
 cannedSignerRequest) {
        SignedUrl signedUrl =
 cloudFrontUtilities.getSignedUrlWithCannedPolicy(cannedSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Signed URL: [{}]", signedUrl.url());
        return signedUrl;
    }

    public static SignedUrl signUrlForCustomPolicy(CustomSignerRequest
 customSignerRequest) {
        SignedUrl signedUrl =
 cloudFrontUtilities.getSignedUrlWithCustomPolicy(customSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Signed URL: [{}]", signedUrl.url());
        return signedUrl;
    }

    public static CookiesForCannedPolicy
 getCookiesForCannedPolicy(CannedSignerRequest cannedSignerRequest) {
```

```
        CookiesForCannedPolicy cookiesForCannedPolicy = cloudFrontUtilities
                .getCookiesForCannedPolicy(cannedSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Cookie EXPIRES header [{}]",
 cookiesForCannedPolicy.expiresHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie KEYPAIR header [{}]",
 cookiesForCannedPolicy.keyPairIdHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie SIGNATURE header [{}]",
 cookiesForCannedPolicy.signatureHeaderValue());
        return cookiesForCannedPolicy;
    }

    public static CookiesForCustomPolicy
 getCookiesForCustomPolicy(CustomSignerRequest customSignerRequest) {
        CookiesForCustomPolicy cookiesForCustomPolicy = cloudFrontUtilities
                .getCookiesForCustomPolicy(customSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Cookie POLICY header [{}]",
 cookiesForCustomPolicy.policyHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie KEYPAIR header [{}]",
 cookiesForCustomPolicy.keyPairIdHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie SIGNATURE header [{}]",
 cookiesForCustomPolicy.signatureHeaderValue());
        return cookiesForCustomPolicy;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CloudFrontUtilities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

CloudFront Functions examples for CloudFront

The following code examples show how to use CloudFront with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Add HTTP security headers to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event
- Add a CORS header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event
- Add a cache control header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event
- Add a true client IP header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
- Add an origin header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
- Add index.html to request URLs without a file name in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

- Normalize query string parameters in a CloudFront Functions viewer request
- Redirect to a new URL in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
- Rewrite a request URI based on KeyValueStore configuration for a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
- Route requests to an origin closer to the viewer in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event
- Use key-value pairs in a CloudFront Functions viewer request
- Validate a simple token in a CloudFront Functions viewer request

Add HTTP security headers to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event

The following code example shows how to add HTTP security headers to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event) {
    var response = event.response;
    var headers = response.headers;

    // Set HTTP security headers
    // Since JavaScript doesn't allow for hyphens in variable names, we use the
 dict["key"] notation
    headers['strict-transport-security'] = { value: 'max-age=63072000;
 includeSubdomains; preload'};
    headers['content-security-policy'] = { value: "default-src 'none'; img-src
 'self'; script-src 'self'; style-src 'self'; object-src 'none'; frame-ancestors
 'none'"};
    headers['x-content-type-options'] = { value: 'nosniff'};
    headers['x-frame-options'] = {value: 'DENY'};
    headers['x-xss-protection'] = {value: '1; mode=block'};
    headers['referrer-policy'] = {value: 'same-origin'};
```

```
    // Return the response to viewers
    return response;
}
```

Add a CORS header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event

The following code example shows how to add a CORS header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event)  {
    var request = event.request;
    var response  = event.response;

    // If Access-Control-Allow-Origin CORS header is missing, add it.
    // Since JavaScript doesn't allow for hyphens in variable names, we use the
 dict["key"] notation.
    if (!response.headers['access-control-allow-origin'] &&
 request.headers['origin']) {
        response.headers['access-control-allow-origin'] = {value:
 request.headers['origin'].value};
        console.log("Access-Control-Allow-Origin was missing, adding it now.");
    }

    return response;
}
```

Add a cache control header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event

The following code example shows how to add a cache control header to a CloudFront Functions viewer response event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event) {
    var response = event.response;
    var headers = response.headers;

    if (response.statusCode >= 200 && response.statusCode < 400) {
        // Set the cache-control header
        headers['cache-control'] = {value: 'public, max-age=63072000'};
    }

    // Return response to viewers
    return response;
}
```

Add a true client IP header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

The following code example shows how to add a true client IP header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event) {
    var request = event.request;
    var clientIP = event.viewer.ip;

    //Add the true-client-ip header to the incoming request
    request.headers['true-client-ip'] = {value: clientIP};

    return request;
}
```

Add an origin header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

The following code example shows how to add an origin header to a CloudFront Functions viewer request event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event) {
    var request = event.request;
    var headers = request.headers;
```

```
    var host = request.headers.host.value;

   // If origin header is missing, set it equal to the host header.
   if (!headers.origin)
       headers.origin = {value:`https://${host}`};

   return request;
}
```

Add index.html to request URLs without a file name in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

The following code example shows how to add index.html to request URLs without a file name in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event) {
    var request = event.request;
    var uri = request.uri;

    // Check whether the URI is missing a file name.
    if (uri.endsWith('/')) {
        request.uri += 'index.html';
    }
    // Check whether the URI is missing a file extension.
    else if (!uri.includes('.')) {
        request.uri += '/index.html';
    }

    return request;
}
```

Normalize query string parameters in a CloudFront Functions viewer request

The following code example shows how to normalize query string parameters in a CloudFront Functions viewer request.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
function handler(event) {
     var qs=[];
     for (var key in event.request.querystring) {
         if (event.request.querystring[key].multiValue) {
             event.request.querystring[key].multiValue.forEach((mv) =>
 {qs.push(key + "=" + mv.value)});
         } else {
             qs.push(key + "=" + event.request.querystring[key].value);
         }
     };

     event.request.querystring = qs.sort().join('&');


     return event.request;
}
```

Redirect to a new URL in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

The following code example shows how to redirect to a new URL in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
async function handler(event) {
    var request = event.request;
    var headers = request.headers;
    var host = request.headers.host.value;
    var country = 'DE' // Choose a country code
    var newurl = `https://${host}/de/index.html`; // Change the redirect URL to
 your choice

    if (headers['cloudfront-viewer-country']) {
        var countryCode = headers['cloudfront-viewer-country'].value;
        if (countryCode === country) {
            var response = {
                statusCode: 302,
                statusDescription: 'Found',
                headers:
                    { "location": { "value": newurl } }
                }

            return response;
        }
    }
    return request;
}
```

Rewrite a request URI based on KeyValueStore configuration for a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

The following code example shows how to rewrite a request URI based on KeyValueStore configuration for a CloudFront Functions viewer request event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
import cf from 'cloudfront';

// (Optional) Replace KVS_ID with actual KVS ID
const kvsId = "KVS_ID";
// enable stickiness by setting a cookie from origin or using another edge
 function
const stickinessCookieName = "appversion";
// set to true to enable console logging
const loggingEnabled = false;

// function rewrites the request uri based on configuration in KVS
// example config in KVS in key:value format
// "latest": {"a_weightage": .8, "a_url": "v1", "b_url": "v2"}
// given above key and value in KVS the request uri will be rewritten
// for example http(s)://domain/latest/something/else will be rewritten as
 http(s)://domain/v1/something/else or http(s)://domain/v2/something/else
 depending on weightage
// if no configuration is found, then the request is returned as is
async function handler(event) {
    // NOTE: This example function is for a viewer request event trigger.
    // Choose viewer request for event trigger when you associate this function
 with a distribution.
    const request = event.request;
    const pathSegments = request.uri.split('/');
    const key = pathSegments[1];

    // if empty path segment or if there is valid stickiness cookie
    // then skip call to KVS and let the request continue.
    if (!key || hasValidSticknessCookie(request.cookies[stickinessCookieName],
 key)) {
        return event.request;
    }
```

```
    try {
        // get the prefix replacement from KVS
        const replacement = await getPathPrefixByWeightage(key);
        if (!replacement) {
            return event.request;
        }
        //Replace the first path with the replacement
        pathSegments[1] = replacement;
        log(`using prefix ${pathSegments[1]}`)
        const newUri = pathSegments.join('/');
        log(`${request.uri} -> ${newUri}`);
        request.uri = newUri;

        return request;
    } catch (err) {
        // No change to the path if the key is not found or any other error
        log(`request uri: ${request.uri}, error: ${err}`);
    }
    // no change to path - return request
    return event.request;
}

// function to get the prefix from KVS
async function getPathPrefixByWeightage(key) {
    const kvsHandle = cf.kvs(kvsId);
    // get the weightage config from KVS
    const kvsResponse = await kvsHandle.get(key);
    const weightageConfig = JSON.parse(kvsResponse);
    // no configuration - return null
    if (!weightageConfig || !isFinite(weightageConfig.a_weightage)) {
        return null;
    }
    // return the url based on weightage
    // return null if no url is configured
    if (Math.random() <= weightageConfig.a_weightage) {
        return weightageConfig.a_url ? weightageConfig.a_url: null;
    } else {
        return weightageConfig.b_url ? weightageConfig.b_url : null;
    }
}

// function to check if the stickiness cookie is valid
function hasValidStickinessCookie(stickinessCookie, pathSegment) {
```

```
    // if the value exists and it matches pathSegment
    return (stickinessCookie && stickinessCookie.value === pathSegment)
}

function log(message) {
    if (loggingEnabled) {
        console.log(message);
    }
}
```

Route requests to an origin closer to the viewer in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event

The following code example shows how to route requests to an origin closer to the viewer in a CloudFront Functions viewer request event.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
import cf from 'cloudfront';

function handler(event) {
    const request = event.request;
    const headers = request.headers;
    const country = headers['cloudfront-viewer-country'] &&
        headers['cloudfront-viewer-country'].value;

    //List of Regions with S3 buckets containing content
    const countryToRegion = {
        'DE': 'eu-central-1',
        'IE': 'eu-west-1',
        'GB': 'eu-west-2',
        'FR': 'eu-west-3',
```

```
        'JP': 'ap-northeast-1',
        'IN': 'ap-south-1'
    };

    const DEFAULT_REGION = 'us-east-1';

    const selectedRegion = (country && countryToRegion[country]) ||
 DEFAULT_REGION;

    const domainName =
        `cloudfront-functions-demo-bucket-in-${selectedRegion}.s3.
${selectedRegion}.amazonaws.com`;

    cf.updateRequestOrigin({
        "domainName": domainName,
        "originAccessControlConfig": {
            "enabled": true,
            "region": selectedRegion,
            "signingBehavior": "always",
            "signingProtocol": "sigv4",
            "originType": "s3"
        },
    });

    return request;
}
```

Use key-value pairs in a CloudFront Functions viewer request

The following code example shows how to use key-value pairs in a CloudFront Functions viewer request.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
import cf from 'cloudfront';

// This fails if there is no key value store associated with the function
const kvsHandle = cf.kvs();

// Remember to associate the KVS with your function before referencing KVS in
 your code.
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudFront/latest/DeveloperGuide/kvs-with-
functions-associate.html
async function handler(event) {
    const request = event.request;
    // Use the first segment of the pathname as key
    // For example http(s)://domain/<key>/something/else
    const pathSegments = request.uri.split('/')
    const key = pathSegments[1]
    try {
        // Replace the first path of the pathname with the value of the key
        // For example http(s)://domain/<value>/something/else
        pathSegments[1] = await kvsHandle.get(key);
        const newUri = pathSegments.join('/');
        console.log(`${request.uri} -> ${newUri}`)
        request.uri = newUri;
    } catch (err) {
        // No change to the pathname if the key is not found
        console.log(`${request.uri} | ${err}`);
    }
    return request;
}
```

Validate a simple token in a CloudFront Functions viewer request

The following code example shows how to validate a simple token in a CloudFront Functions viewer request.

JavaScript

JavaScript runtime 2.0 for CloudFront Functions

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the CloudFront Functions examples repository.

```
import crypto from 'crypto';
import cf from 'cloudfront';

//Response when JWT is not valid.
const response401 = {
    statusCode: 401,
    statusDescription: 'Unauthorized'
};

// Remember to associate the KVS with your function before calling the const
 kvsKey = 'jwt.secret'.
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudFront/latest/DeveloperGuide/kvs-with-
functions-associate.html
const kvsKey = 'jwt.secret';
// set to true to enable console logging
const loggingEnabled = false;


function jwt_decode(token, key, noVerify, algorithm) {
    // check token
    if (!token) {
        throw new Error('No token supplied');
    }
    // check segments
    const segments = token.split('.');
    if (segments.length !== 3) {
        throw new Error('Not enough or too many segments');
    }

    // All segment should be base64
    const headerSeg = segments[0];
    const payloadSeg = segments[1];
```

```
    const signatureSeg = segments[2];

    // base64 decode and parse JSON
    const payload = JSON.parse(_base64urlDecode(payloadSeg));

    if (!noVerify) {
        const signingMethod = 'sha256';
        const signingType = 'hmac';

        // Verify signature. `sign` will return base64 string.
        const signingInput = [headerSeg, payloadSeg].join('.');

        if (!_verify(signingInput, key, signingMethod, signingType,
 signatureSeg)) {
            throw new Error('Signature verification failed');
        }

        // Support for nbf and exp claims.
        // According to the RFC, they should be in seconds.
        if (payload.nbf && Date.now() < payload.nbf*1000) {
            throw new Error('Token not yet active');
        }

        if (payload.exp && Date.now() > payload.exp*1000) {
            throw new Error('Token expired');
        }
    }

    return payload;
}

//Function to ensure a constant time comparison to prevent
//timing side channels.
function _constantTimeEquals(a, b) {
    if (a.length != b.length) {
        return false;
    }

    let xor = 0;
    for (let i = 0; i < a.length; i++) {
    xor |= (a.charCodeAt(i) ^ b.charCodeAt(i));
    }

    return 0 === xor;
```

```
}

function _verify(input, key, method, type, signature) {
    if(type === "hmac") {
        return _constantTimeEquals(signature, _sign(input, key, method));
    }
    else {
        throw new Error('Algorithm type not recognized');
    }
}

function _sign(input, key, method) {
    return crypto.createHmac(method, key).update(input).digest('base64url');
}

function _base64urlDecode(str) {
    return Buffer.from(str, 'base64url')
}

async function handler(event) {
    let request = event.request;

    //Secret key used to verify JWT token.
    //Update with your own key.
    const secret_key = await getSecret()

    if(!secret_key) {
        return response401;
    }

    // If no JWT token, then generate HTTP redirect 401 response.
    if(!request.querystring.jwt) {
        log("Error: No JWT in the querystring");
        return response401;
    }

    const jwtToken = request.querystring.jwt.value;

    try{
        jwt_decode(jwtToken, secret_key);
    }
    catch(e) {
        log(e);
        return response401;
```

```
    }

    //Remove the JWT from the query string if valid and return.
    delete request.querystring.jwt;
    log("Valid JWT token");
    return request;
}

// get secret from key value store
async function getSecret() {
    // initialize cloudfront kv store and get the key value
    try {
        const kvsHandle = cf.kvs();
        return await kvsHandle.get(kvsKey);
    } catch (err) {
        log(`Error reading value for key: ${kvsKey}, error: ${err}`);
        return null;
    }

}

function log(message) {
    if (loggingEnabled) {
        console.log(message);
    }
}
```

Code examples for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS CloudTrail with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **CloudTrail Developer Guide** – More information about CloudTrail.
- **CloudTrail API Reference** – Details about all available CloudTrail actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.

- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateTrail with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteTrail with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeTrail with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeTrails with a CLI
    - Use GetTrailStatus with a CLI
    - Use ListTrails with an AWS SDK
    - Use LookupEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartLogging with a CLI
    - Use StopLogging with a CLI
    - Use UpdateTrail with a CLI

Basic examples for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS CloudTrail with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateTrail with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteTrail with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeTrail with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeTrails with a CLI
  - Use GetTrailStatus with a CLI
  - Use ListTrails with an AWS SDK
  - Use LookupEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartLogging with a CLI
  - Use StopLogging with a CLI

- Use UpdateTrail with a CLI

Actions for CloudTrail using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CloudTrail actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS CloudTrail API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateTrail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTrail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTrail with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeTrails with a CLI
- Use GetTrailStatus with a CLI
- Use ListTrails with an AWS SDK
- Use LookupEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartLogging with a CLI
- Use StopLogging with a CLI
- Use UpdateTrail with a CLI

Use `CreateTrail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTrail`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which creates an AWS CloudTrail trail.
/*!
  \param trailName: The name of the CloudTrail trail.
  \param bucketName: The Amazon S3 bucket designate for publishing logs.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::createTrail(const Aws::String trailName,
                                     const Aws::String bucketName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient trailClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::CreateTrailRequest request;
    request.SetName(trailName);
    request.SetS3BucketName(bucketName);

    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::CreateTrailOutcome outcome = trailClient.CreateTrail(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created trail " << trailName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create trail " << trailName <<
                  ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a trail

The following `create-trail` example creates a multi-region trail named `Trail1` and specifies an S3 bucket.

```
aws cloudtrail create-trail \
```

```
    --name Trail1 \
    --s3-bucket-name amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --is-multi-region-trail
```

Output:

```
{
    "IncludeGlobalServiceEvents": true,
    "Name": "Trail1",
    "TrailARN": "arn:aws:cloudtrail:us-west-2:123456789012:trail/Trail1",
    "LogFileValidationEnabled": false,
    "IsMultiRegionTrail": true,
    "S3BucketName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a trail that will use the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' for log file storage.

```
New-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -S3BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
```

Example 2: Creates a trail that will use the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' for log file storage. The S3 objects representing the logs will have a common key prefix of 'mylogs'. When new logs are delivered to the bucket a notification will be sent to the SNS topic 'mlog-deliverytopic'. This example using splatting to supply the parameter values to the cmdlet.

```
$params = @{
    Name="awscloudtrail-example"
    S3BucketName="amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    S3KeyPrefix="mylogs"
    SnsTopicName="mlog-deliverytopic"
}
New-CTTrail @params
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a trail that will use the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' for log file storage.

```
New-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -S3BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
```

Example 2: Creates a trail that will use the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' for log file storage. The S3 objects representing the logs will have a common key prefix of 'mylogs'. When new logs are delivered to the bucket a notification will be sent to the SNS topic 'mlog-deliverytopic'. This example using splatting to supply the parameter values to the cmdlet.

```
$params = @{
    Name="awscloudtrail-example"
    S3BucketName="amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    S3KeyPrefix="mylogs"
    SnsTopicName="mlog-deliverytopic"
}
New-CTTrail @params
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudtrail' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
require 'aws-sdk-s3'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

def create_trail_example(s3_client, sts_client, cloudtrail_client, trail_name,
 bucket_name)
  resp = sts_client.get_caller_identity({})
```

```
account_id = resp.account

# Attach policy to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) bucket.
s3_client.create_bucket(bucket: bucket_name)
begin
  policy = {
    'Version' => '2012-10-17',
    'Statement' => [
      {
        'Sid' => 'AWSCloudTrailAclCheck20150319',
        'Effect' => 'Allow',
        'Principal' => {
          'Service' => 'cloudtrail.amazonaws.com'
        },
        'Action' => 's3:GetBucketAcl',
        'Resource' => "arn:aws:s3:::#{bucket_name}"
      },
      {
        'Sid' => 'AWSCloudTrailWrite20150319',
        'Effect' => 'Allow',
        'Principal' => {
          'Service' => 'cloudtrail.amazonaws.com'
        },
        'Action' => 's3:PutObject',
        'Resource' => "arn:aws:s3:::#{bucket_name}/AWSLogs/#{account_id}/*",
        'Condition' => {
          'StringEquals' => {
            's3:x-amz-acl' => 'bucket-owner-full-control'
          }
        }
      }
    ]
  }.to_json

  s3_client.put_bucket_policy(
    bucket: bucket_name,
    policy: policy
  )
  puts "Successfully added policy to bucket #{bucket_name}"
end

begin
  cloudtrail_client.create_trail({
                                    name: trail_name, # required
```

```
                                    s3_bucket_name: bucket_name # required
                                  })

    puts "Successfully created trail: #{trail_name}."
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts "Got error trying to create trail #{trail_name}:\n #{e}"
    puts e
    exit 1
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DeleteTrail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTrail`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which deletes an AWS CloudTrail trail.
/*!
  \param trailName: The name of the CloudTrail trail.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::deleteTrail(const Aws::String trailName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient trailClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::DeleteTrailRequest request;
    request.SetName(trailName);

    auto outcome = trailClient.DeleteTrail(request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted trail " << trailName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting trail " << trailName << " " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a trail

The following `delete-trail` command deletes a trail named `Trail1`:

```
aws cloudtrail delete-trail --name Trail1
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified trail. You will be prompted for confirmation before the command is run. To suppress confirmation, add the -Force switch parameter.

```
Remove-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example"
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified trail. You will be prompted for confirmation before the command is run. To suppress confirmation, add the -Force switch parameter.

```
Remove-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example"
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  client.delete_trail({
                        name: trail_name # required
                      })
  puts "Successfully deleted trail: #{trail_name}"
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Got error trying to delete trail: #{trail_name}:"
  puts e
  exit 1
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DescribeTrail` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTrail`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which describes the AWS CloudTrail trails in an account.
/*!
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/

bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::describeTrails(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient cloudTrailClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::DescribeTrailsRequest request;

    auto outcome = cloudTrailClient.DescribeTrails(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::Vector<Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Trail> &trails =
 outcome.GetResult().GetTrailList();
        std::cout << trails.size() << " trail(s) found." << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Trail &trail: trails) {
            std::cout << trail.GetName() << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe trails." <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Use `DescribeTrails` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTrails`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a trail

The following `describe-trails` example returns the settings for `Trail1` and `Trail2`.

```
aws cloudtrail describe-trails \
    --trail-name-list Trail1 Trail2
```

Output:

```
{
    "trailList": [
        {
            "IncludeGlobalServiceEvents": true,
            "Name": "Trail1",
            "TrailARN": "arn:aws:cloudtrail:us-east-1:123456789012:trail/Trail1",
            "LogFileValidationEnabled": false,
            "IsMultiRegionTrail": false,
            "S3BucketName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
            "CloudWatchLogsRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
CloudTrail_CloudWatchLogs_Role",
            "CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn": "arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:123456789012:log-group:CloudTrail:*",
            "SnsTopicName": "my-topic",
            "HomeRegion": "us-east-1"
        },
        {
            "IncludeGlobalServiceEvents": true,
            "Name": "Trail2",
            "S3KeyPrefix": "my-prefix",
            "TrailARN": "arn:aws:cloudtrail:us-east-1:123456789012:trail/Trail2",
            "LogFileValidationEnabled": false,
            "IsMultiRegionTrail": false,
            "S3BucketName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2",
            "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-1:123456789012:key/4c5ae5ac-3c13-421e-8335-c7868ef6a769",
            "HomeRegion": "us-east-1"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrails in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the settings of all trails associated with the current region for your account.

```
Get-CTTrail
```

Example 2: Returns the settings for the specified trails.

```
Get-CTTrail -TrailNameList trail1,trail2
```

Example 3: Returns the settings for the specified trails that were created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Get-CTTrail -TrailNameList trailABC,trailDEF -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the settings of all trails associated with the current region for your account.

```
Get-CTTrail
```

Example 2: Returns the settings for the specified trails.

```
Get-CTTrail -TrailNameList trail1,trail2
```

Example 3: Returns the settings for the specified trails that were created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Get-CTTrail -TrailNameList trailABC,trailDEF -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetTrailStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTrailStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the status of a trail

The following `get-trail-status` command returns the delivery and logging details for `Trail1`:

```
aws cloudtrail get-trail-status --name Trail1
```

Output:

```
{
  "LatestNotificationTime": 1454022144.869,
  "LatestNotificationAttemptSucceeded": "2016-01-28T23:02:24Z",
  "LatestDeliveryAttemptTime": "2016-01-28T23:02:24Z",
  "LatestDeliveryTime": 1454022144.869,
  "TimeLoggingStarted": "2015-11-06T18:36:38Z",
  "LatestDeliveryAttemptSucceeded": "2016-01-28T23:02:24Z",
  "IsLogging": true,
  "LatestCloudWatchLogsDeliveryTime": 1454022144.918,
  "StartLoggingTime": 1446834998.695,
  "StopLoggingTime": 1446834996.933,
  "LatestNotificationAttemptTime": "2016-01-28T23:02:24Z",
  "TimeLoggingStopped": "2015-11-06T18:36:36Z"
}
```

- For API details, see GetTrailStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns status information for the trail with name 'myExampleTrail'. Returned data includes information on delivery errors, Amazon SNS and Amazon S3 errors, and start and stop logging times for the trail. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Get-CTTrailStatus -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Returns status information for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Get-CTTrailStatus -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see GetTrailStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns status information for the trail with name 'myExampleTrail'. Returned data includes information on delivery errors, Amazon SNS and Amazon S3 errors, and start and stop logging times for the trail. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Get-CTTrailStatus -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Returns status information for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Get-CTTrailStatus -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see GetTrailStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListTrails` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListTrails`.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudtrail' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

def describe_trails_example(client)
  resp = client.describe_trails({})
  puts "Found #{resp.trail_list.count} trail(s)."

  resp.trail_list.each do |trail|
    puts "Name:           #{trail.name}"
    puts "S3 bucket name: #{trail.s3_bucket_name}"
    puts
  end
```

- For API details, see ListTrails in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `LookupEvents` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `LookupEvents`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which looks up events captured by AWS CloudTrail.
/*!
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::lookupEvents(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient cloudtrail(clientConfig);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Event> allEvents;
```

```
    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::LookupEventsRequest request;

    size_t count = 0;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::CloudTrail::Model::LookupEventsOutcome outcome =
 cloudtrail.LookupEvents(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Event> &events =
 outcome.GetResult().GetEvents();
            count += events.size();
            allEvents.insert(allEvents.end(), events.begin(), events.end());
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty() && count <= 50); // Limit to 50 events.

    std::cout << "Found " << allEvents.size() << " event(s)." << std::endl;

    for (auto &event: allEvents) {
        std::cout << "Event name: " << event.GetEventName() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Event source: " << event.GetEventSource() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Event id: " << event.GetEventId() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Resources: " << std::endl;
        for (auto &resource: event.GetResources()) {
            std::cout << "  " << resource.GetResourceName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To look up events for a trail

The following `lookup-events` command looks up API activity events by the attribute `EventName`:

```
aws cloudtrail lookup-events --lookup-
attributes AttributeKey=EventName,AttributeValue=ConsoleLogin
```

Output:

```
{
  "Events": [
     {
         "EventId": "654ccbc0-ba0d-486a-9076-dbf7274677a7",
         "Username": "my-session-name",
         "EventTime": "2021-11-18T09:41:02-08:00",
         "CloudTrailEvent": "{\"eventVersion\":\"1.02\",\"userIdentity
\":{\"type\":\"AssumedRole\",\"principalId\":\"AROAJIKPFTA72SWU4L7T4:my-
session-name\",\"arn\":\"arn:aws:sts::123456789012:assumed-role/my-
role/my-session-name\",\"accountId\":\"123456789012\",\"sessionContext
\":{\"attributes\":{\"mfaAuthenticated\":\"false\",\"creationDate\":
\"2016-01-26T21:42:12Z\"},\"sessionIssuer\":{\"type\":\"Role\",\"principalId
\":\"AROAJIKPFTA72SWU4L7T4\",\"arn\":\"arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-
role\",\"accountId\":\"123456789012\",\"userName\":\"my-role\"}}},\"eventTime
\":\"2016-01-26T21:42:12Z\",\"eventSource\":\"signin.amazonaws.com\",
\"eventName\":\"ConsoleLogin\",\"awsRegion\":\"us-east-1\",\"sourceIPAddress\":
\"72.21.198.70\",\"userAgent\":\"Mozilla/5.0 (Macintosh; Intel Mac OS X 10_9_5)
 AppleWebKit/537.36 (KHTML, like Gecko) Chrome/47.0.2526.111 Safari/537.36\",
\"requestParameters\":null,\"responseElements\":{\"ConsoleLogin\":\"Success\"},
\"additionalEventData\":{\"MobileVersion\":\"No\",\"MFAUsed\":\"No\"},\"eventID
\":\"654ccbc0-ba0d-486a-9076-dbf7274677a7\",\"eventType\":\"AwsConsoleSignIn\",
\"recipientAccountId\":\"123456789012\"}",
         "EventName": "ConsoleLogin",
         "Resources": []
     }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all events that have occurred over the last seven days. The cmdlet by default automatically makes multiple calls to deliver all events, exiting when the service indicates no further data is available.

```
Find-CTEvent
```

Example 2: Returns all events that have occurred over the last seven days specifying a region that is not the current shell default.

```
Find-CTEvent -Region eu-central-1
```

Example 3: Returns all events that are associated with the RunInstances API call.

```
Find-CTEvent -LookupAttribute @{ AttributeKey="EventName";
 AttributeValue="RunInstances" }
```

Example 4: Returns the first 5 available events.

```
Find-CTEvent -MaxResult 5
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all events that have occurred over the last seven days. The cmdlet by default automatically makes multiple calls to deliver all events, exiting when the service indicates no further data is available.

```
Find-CTEvent
```

Example 2: Returns all events that have occurred over the last seven days specifying a region that is not the current shell default.

```
Find-CTEvent -Region eu-central-1
```

Example 3: Returns all events that are associated with the RunInstances API call.

```
Find-CTEvent -LookupAttribute @{ AttributeKey="EventName";
 AttributeValue="RunInstances" }
```

Example 4: Returns the first 5 available events.

```
Find-CTEvent -MaxResult 5
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudtrail' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# @param [Object] client
def lookup_events_example(client)
  resp = client.lookup_events
  puts "Found #{resp.events.count} events:"
  resp.events.each do |e|
    puts "Event name:   #{e.event_name}"
    puts "Event ID:     #{e.event_id}"
    puts "Event time:   #{e.event_time}"
    puts 'Resources:'

    e.resources.each do |r|
      puts "  Name:       #{r.resource_name}"
      puts "  Type:       #{r.resource_type}"
      puts ''
    end
  end
end
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `StartLogging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartLogging`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start logging for a trail

The following `start-logging` command turns on logging for `Trail1`:

```
aws cloudtrail start-logging --name Trail1
```

- For API details, see StartLogging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Starts the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for the trail named 'myExampleTrail'. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Start-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Starts the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Start-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see StartLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Starts the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for the trail named 'myExampleTrail'. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Start-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Starts the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Start-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see StartLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StopLogging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StopLogging`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To stop logging a trail

The following `stop-logging` command turns off logging for `Trail1`:

```
aws cloudtrail stop-logging --name Trail1
```

- For API details, see StopLogging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Suspends the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for the trail named 'myExampleTrail'. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Stop-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Suspends the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Stop-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see StopLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Suspends the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for the trail named 'myExampleTrail'. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Stop-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Suspends the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Stop-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see StopLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateTrail` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateTrail`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a trail

The following `update-trail` example updates a trail to use an existing bucket for log delivery.

```
aws cloudtrail update-trail \
    --name Trail1 \
    --s3-bucket-name amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "IncludeGlobalServiceEvents": true,
    "Name": "Trail1",
    "TrailARN": "arn:aws:cloudtrail:us-west-2:123456789012:trail/Trail1",
    "LogFileValidationEnabled": false,
    "IsMultiRegionTrail": true,
    "S3BucketName": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTrail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates the specified trail so that global service events (such as those from IAM) are recorded and changes the common key prefix of the log files going forwards to be 'globallogs'.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -IncludeGlobalServiceEvents $true -
S3KeyPrefix "globallogs"
```

Example 2: Updates the specified trail so notifications about new log deliveries are sent to the specified SNS topic.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -SnsTopicName "mlog-deliverytopic2"
```

Example 3: Updates the specified trail so logs are delivered to a different bucket.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -S3BucketName "otherlogs"
```

- For API details, see UpdateTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the specified trail so that global service events (such as those from IAM) are recorded and changes the common key prefix of the log files going forwards to be 'globallogs'.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -IncludeGlobalServiceEvents $true -
S3KeyPrefix "globallogs"
```

Example 2: Updates the specified trail so notifications about new log deliveries are sent to the specified SNS topic.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -SnsTopicName "mlog-deliverytopic2"
```

Example 3: Updates the specified trail so logs are delivered to a different bucket.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -S3BucketName "otherlogs"
```

- For API details, see UpdateTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon CloudWatch with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **CloudWatch User Guide** – More information about CloudWatch.
- **CloudWatch API Reference** – Details about all available CloudWatch actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello CloudWatch

The following code examples show how to get started using CloudWatch.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.CloudWatch;
using Amazon.CloudWatch.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

namespace CloudWatchActions;

public static class HelloCloudWatch
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon CloudWatch service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var cloudWatchClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonCloudWatch>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var metricNamespace = "AWS/Billing";
        var response = await cloudWatchClient.ListMetricsAsync(new
 ListMetricsRequest
        {
            Namespace = metricNamespace
        });
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon CloudWatch! Following are some metrics
 available in the {metricNamespace} namespace:");
        Console.WriteLine();
        if (response.Metrics != null)
        {
            foreach (var metric in response.Metrics.Take(5))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tMetric: {metric.MetricName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"\tNamespace: {metric.Namespace}");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tDimensions: {string.Join(", ", metric.Dimensions.Select(m
 => $"{m.Name}:{m.Value}"))}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.ListMetricsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.paginators.ListMetricsIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloService {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <namespace>\s

                Where:
                  namespace - The namespace to filter against (for example, AWS/
EC2).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String namespace = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMets(cw, namespace);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void listMets(CloudWatchClient cw, String namespace) {
        try {
            ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(namespace)
                    .build();

            ListMetricsIterable listRes = cw.listMetricsPaginator(request);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.metrics().stream())
                    .forEach(metrics -> System.out.println(" Retrieved metric is:
 " + metrics.metricName()));

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
           <namespace>
        Where:
           namespace - The namespace to filter against (for example, AWS/EC2).
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val namespace = args[0]
    listAllMets(namespace)
```

```
}

suspend fun listAllMets(namespaceVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listMetricsPaginated(request)
            .transform { it.metrics?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.metricName}")
                println("Namespace is ${obj.namespace}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs
  - Hello CloudWatch
  - Learn core operations for CloudWatch using an AWS SDK
  - Actions for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs
    - Use DeleteAlarms with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteAnomalyDetector with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDashboards with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeAlarmHistory with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeAlarms with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeAlarmsForMetric with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeAnomalyDetectors with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DisableAlarmActions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use EnableAlarmActions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetDashboard with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetMetricData with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricStatistics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricWidgetImage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDashboards with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMetrics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutAnomalyDetector with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutDashboard with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMetricAlarm with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMetricData with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs
  - Get started with CloudWatch alarms using an AWS SDK
  - Manage CloudWatch metrics and alarms using an AWS SDK
  - Monitor performance of Amazon DynamoDB using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon CloudWatch with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello CloudWatch
- Learn core operations for CloudWatch using an AWS SDK
- Actions for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs
  - Use DeleteAlarms with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAnomalyDetector with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteDashboards with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAlarmHistory with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAlarms with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAlarmsForMetric with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAnomalyDetectors with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DisableAlarmActions with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use EnableAlarmActions with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetDashboard with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricData with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricStatistics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricWidgetImage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDashboards with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMetrics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutAnomalyDetector with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutDashboard with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMetricAlarm with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMetricData with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello CloudWatch

The following code examples show how to get started using CloudWatch.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.CloudWatch;
using Amazon.CloudWatch.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

namespace CloudWatchActions;

public static class HelloCloudWatch
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
```

```
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon CloudWatch service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var cloudWatchClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonCloudWatch>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var metricNamespace = "AWS/Billing";
        var response = await cloudWatchClient.ListMetricsAsync(new
 ListMetricsRequest
        {
            Namespace = metricNamespace
        });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon CloudWatch! Following are some metrics
 available in the {metricNamespace} namespace:");
        Console.WriteLine();
        if (response.Metrics != null)
        {
            foreach (var metric in response.Metrics.Take(5))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tMetric: {metric.MetricName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"\tNamespace: {metric.Namespace}");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tDimensions: {string.Join(", ", metric.Dimensions.Select(m
 => $"{m.Name}:{m.Value}"))}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.ListMetricsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.paginators.ListMetricsIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloService {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <namespace>\s

                Where:
                  namespace - The namespace to filter against (for example, AWS/
EC2).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String namespace = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMets(cw, namespace);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void listMets(CloudWatchClient cw, String namespace) {
        try {
            ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(namespace)
                    .build();

            ListMetricsIterable listRes = cw.listMetricsPaginator(request);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.metrics().stream())
                    .forEach(metrics -> System.out.println(" Retrieved metric is:
 " + metrics.metricName()));

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
           <namespace>
        Where:
           namespace - The namespace to filter against (for example, AWS/EC2).
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val namespace = args[0]
    listAllMets(namespace)
}

suspend fun listAllMets(namespaceVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listMetricsPaginated(request)
            .transform { it.metrics?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.metricName}")
                println("Namespace is ${obj.namespace}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Learn core operations for CloudWatch using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- List CloudWatch namespaces and metrics.
- Get statistics for a metric and for estimated billing.
- Create and update a dashboard.
- Create and add data to a metric.
- Create and trigger an alarm, then view alarm history.
- Add an anomaly detector.
- Get a metric image, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class CloudWatchScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    To enable billing metrics and statistics for this example, make sure billing
 alerts are enabled for your account:
    https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
monitor_estimated_charges_with_cloudwatch.html#turning_on_billing_metrics

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
```

```
        1. List and select a CloudWatch namespace.
        2. List and select a CloudWatch metric.
        3. Get statistics for a CloudWatch metric.
        4. Get estimated billing statistics for the last week.
        5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with two metrics.
        6. List current CloudWatch dashboards.
        7. Create a CloudWatch custom metric and add metric data.
        8. Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
        9. Create a CloudWatch alarm for the custom metric.
       10. Describe current CloudWatch alarms.
       11. Get recent data for the custom metric.
       12. Add data to the custom metric to trigger the alarm.
       13. Wait for an alarm state.
       14. Get history for the CloudWatch alarm.
       15. Add an anomaly detector.
       16. Describe current anomaly detectors.
       17. Get and display a metric image.
       18. Clean up resources.
   */

   private static ILogger logger = null!;
   private static CloudWatchWrapper _cloudWatchWrapper = null!;
   private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
   private static readonly List<string> _statTypes = new List<string>
{ "SampleCount", "Average", "Sum", "Minimum", "Maximum" };
   private static SingleMetricAnomalyDetector? anomalyDetector = null!;

   static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
           services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
           .AddTransient<CloudWatchWrapper>()
       )
       .Build();

       _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
```

```
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<CloudWatchScenario>();

        _cloudWatchWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<CloudWatchWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            var selectedNamespace = await SelectNamespace();
            var selectedMetric = await SelectMetric(selectedNamespace);
            await GetAndDisplayMetricStatistics(selectedNamespace,
selectedMetric);
            await GetAndDisplayEstimatedBilling();
            await CreateDashboardWithMetrics();
            await ListDashboards();
            await CreateNewCustomMetric();
            await AddMetricToDashboard();
            await CreateMetricAlarm();
            await DescribeAlarms();
            await GetCustomMetricData();
            await AddMetricDataForAlarm();
            await CheckForMetricAlarm();
            await GetAlarmHistory();
            anomalyDetector = await AddAnomalyDetector();
            await DescribeAnomalyDetectors();
            await GetAndOpenMetricImage();
            await CleanupResources();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
            await CleanupResources();
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Select a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected namespace.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SelectNamespace()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. Select a CloudWatch Namespace from a list of
Namespaces.");
        var metrics = await _cloudWatchWrapper.ListMetrics();
        // Get a distinct list of namespaces.
        var namespaces = metrics.Select(m => m.Namespace).Distinct().ToList();
        for (int i = 0; i < namespaces.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {namespaces[i]}");
        }

        var namespaceChoiceNumber = 0;
        while (namespaceChoiceNumber < 1 || namespaceChoiceNumber >
namespaces.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select a namespace by entering a number from the preceding
list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out namespaceChoiceNumber);
        }

        var selectedNamespace = namespaces[namespaceChoiceNumber - 1];

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return selectedNamespace;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Select a metric from a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <returns>The metric name.</returns>
    private static async Task<Metric> SelectMetric(string metricNamespace)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Select a CloudWatch metric from a namespace.");

        var namespaceMetrics = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.ListMetrics(metricNamespace);

        for (int i = 0; i < namespaceMetrics.Count && i < 15; i++)
        {
            var dimensionsWithValues = namespaceMetrics[i].Dimensions
                .Where(d => !string.Equals("None", d.Value));
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {namespaceMetrics[i].MetricName} " +
                              $"{string.Join(", :", dimensionsWithValues.Select(d
=> d.Value))}");
        }

        var metricChoiceNumber = 0;
        while (metricChoiceNumber < 1 || metricChoiceNumber >
namespaceMetrics.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select a metric by entering a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out metricChoiceNumber);
        }

        var selectedMetric = namespaceMetrics[metricChoiceNumber - 1];

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return selectedMetric;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get and display metric statistics for a specific metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAndDisplayMetricStatistics(string
metricNamespace, Metric metric)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. Get CloudWatch metric statistics for the last
day.");
```

```
        for (int i = 0; i < _statTypes.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_statTypes[i]}");
        }

        var statisticChoiceNumber = 0;
        while (statisticChoiceNumber < 1 || statisticChoiceNumber >
_statTypes.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select a metric statistic by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out statisticChoiceNumber);
        }

        var selectedStatistic = _statTypes[statisticChoiceNumber - 1];
        var statisticsList = new List<string> { selectedStatistic };

        var metricStatistics = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatistics(metricNamespace, metric.MetricName,
statisticsList, metric.Dimensions, 1, 60);

        if (!metricStatistics.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No {selectedStatistic} statistics found for
{metric} in namespace {metricNamespace}.");
        }

        metricStatistics = metricStatistics.OrderBy(s => s.Timestamp).ToList();
        for (int i = 0; i < metricStatistics.Count && i < 10; i++)
        {
            var metricStat = metricStatistics[i];
            var statValue =
metricStat.GetType().GetProperty(selectedStatistic)!.GetValue(metricStat, null);
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. Timestamp
{metricStatistics[i].Timestamp:G} {selectedStatistic}: {statValue}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get and display estimated billing statistics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAndDisplayEstimatedBilling()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last
week.");

        var billingStatistics = await SetupBillingStatistics();

        for (int i = 0; i < billingStatistics.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. Timestamp
{billingStatistics[i].Timestamp:G} : {billingStatistics[i].Maximum}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get billing statistics using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing statistics.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<Datapoint>> SetupBillingStatistics()
    {
        // Make a request for EstimatedCharges with a period of one day for the
past seven days.
        var billingStatistics = await _cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatistics(
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            new List<string>() { "Maximum" },
            new List<Dimension>() { new Dimension { Name = "Currency", Value =
"USD" } },
            7,
            86400);

        billingStatistics = billingStatistics.OrderBy(n => n.Timestamp).ToList();

        return billingStatistics;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a dashboard with metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateDashboardWithMetrics()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.");
        var dashboardName = _configuration["dashboardName"];
        var newDashboard = new DashboardModel();
        _configuration.GetSection("dashboardExampleBody").Bind(newDashboard);
        var newDashboardString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(
            newDashboard,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            {
                DefaultIgnoreCondition = JsonIgnoreCondition.WhenWritingNull
            });
        var validationMessages =
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutDashboard(dashboardName,
newDashboardString);

        Console.WriteLine(validationMessages.Any() ? $"\tValidation messages:" :
null);
        for (int i = 0; i < validationMessages.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {validationMessages[i].Message}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tDashboard {dashboardName} was created.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDashboards()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. List the CloudWatch dashboards in the current
account.");

        var dashboards = await _cloudWatchWrapper.ListDashboards();
```

```
        for (int i = 0; i < dashboards.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {dashboards[i].DashboardName}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and add data for a new custom metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateNewCustomMetric()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Create and add data for a new custom metric.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var customData = await PutRandomMetricData(customMetricName,
customMetricNamespace);

        var valuesString = string.Join(',', customData.Select(d => d.Value));
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded metric values for for metric
{customMetricName}: \n\t{valuesString}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Add some metric data using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    private static async Task<List<MetricDatum>> PutRandomMetricData(string
customMetricName,
        string customMetricNamespace)
    {
        List<MetricDatum> customData = new List<MetricDatum>();
        Random rnd = new Random();
```

```
        // Add 10 random values up to 100, starting with a timestamp 15 minutes
in the past.
        var utcNowMinus15 = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(-15);
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
        {
            var metricValue = rnd.Next(0, 100);
            customData.Add(
                new MetricDatum
                {
                    MetricName = customMetricName,
                    Value = metricValue,
                    TimestampUtc = utcNowMinus15.AddMinutes(i)
                }
            );
        }

        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricData(customMetricNamespace,
customData);
        return customData;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddMetricToDashboard()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. Add the new custom metric to the dashboard.");

        var dashboardName = _configuration["dashboardName"];

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var validationMessages = await SetupDashboard(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName, dashboardName);

        Console.WriteLine(validationMessages.Any() ? $"\tValidation messages:" :
null);
        for (int i = 0; i < validationMessages.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {validationMessages[i].Message}");
```

```
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tDashboard {dashboardName} updated with metric
{customMetricName}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Set up a dashboard using a call to the wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> SetupDashboard(
        string customMetricNamespace, string customMetricName, string
dashboardName)
    {
        // Get the dashboard model from configuration.
        var newDashboard = new DashboardModel();
        _configuration.GetSection("dashboardExampleBody").Bind(newDashboard);

        // Add a new metric to the dashboard.
        newDashboard.Widgets.Add(new Widget
        {
            Height = 8,
            Width = 8,
            Y = 8,
            X = 0,
            Type = "metric",
            Properties = new Properties
            {
                Metrics = new List<List<object>>
                    { new() { customMetricNamespace, customMetricName } },
                View = "timeSeries",
                Region = "us-east-1",
                Stat = "Sum",
                Period = 86400,
                YAxis = new YAxis { Left = new Left { Min = 0, Max = 100 } },
                Title = "Custom Metric Widget",
                LiveData = true,
                Sparkline = true,
                Trend = true,
                Stacked = false,
```

```
                SetPeriodToTimeRange = false
            }
        });

        var newDashboardString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(newDashboard,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            { DefaultIgnoreCondition = JsonIgnoreCondition.WhenWritingNull });
        var validationMessages =
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutDashboard(dashboardName,
newDashboardString);

        return validationMessages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a CloudWatch alarm for the new metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateMetricAlarm()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Create a CloudWatch alarm for the new metric.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var alarmName = _configuration["exampleAlarmName"];
        var accountId = _configuration["accountId"];
        var region = _configuration["region"];
        var emailTopic = _configuration["emailTopic"];
        var alarmActions = new List<string>();

        if (GetYesNoResponse(
                $"\tAdd an email action for topic {emailTopic} to alarm
{alarmName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            _cloudWatchWrapper.AddEmailAlarmAction(accountId, region, emailTopic,
alarmActions);
        }

        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricEmailAlarm(
            "Example metric alarm",
            alarmName,
            ComparisonOperator.GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold,
```

```
            customMetricName,
            customMetricNamespace,
            100,
            alarmActions);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAlarm {alarmName} added for metric
{customMetricName}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe Alarms.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeAlarms()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Describe CloudWatch alarms in the current
account.");

        var alarms = await _cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAlarms();
        alarms = alarms.OrderByDescending(a => a.StateUpdatedTimestamp).ToList();

        for (int i = 0; i < alarms.Count && i < 10; i++)
        {
            var alarm = alarms[i];
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {alarm.AlarmName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tState: {alarm.StateValue} for
{alarm.MetricName} {alarm.ComparisonOperator} {alarm.Threshold}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the recent data for the metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetCustomMetricData()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"11. Get current data for new custom metric.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
```

```
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];
        var accountId = _configuration["accountId"];

        var query = new List<MetricDataQuery>
        {
            new MetricDataQuery
            {
                AccountId = accountId,
                Id = "m1",
                Label = "Custom Metric Data",
                MetricStat = new MetricStat
                {
                    Metric = new Metric
                    {
                        MetricName = customMetricName,
                        Namespace = customMetricNamespace,
                    },
                    Period = 1,
                    Stat = "Maximum"
                }
            }
        };

        var metricData = await _cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricData(
            20,
            true,
            DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(1),
            20,
            query);

        for (int i = 0; i < metricData.Count; i++)
        {
            for (int j = 0; j < metricData[i].Values.Count; j++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tTimestamp {metricData[i].Timestamps[j]:G} Value:
{metricData[i].Values[j]}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Add metric data to trigger an alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddMetricDataForAlarm()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"12. Add metric data to the custom metric to trigger
an alarm.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];
        var nowUtc = DateTime.UtcNow;
        List<MetricDatum> customData = new List<MetricDatum>
        {
            new MetricDatum
            {
                MetricName = customMetricName,
                Value = 101,
                TimestampUtc = nowUtc.AddMinutes(-2)
            },
            new MetricDatum
            {
                MetricName = customMetricName,
                Value = 101,
                TimestampUtc = nowUtc.AddMinutes(-1)
            },
            new MetricDatum
            {
                MetricName = customMetricName,
                Value = 101,
                TimestampUtc = nowUtc
            }
        };
        var valuesString = string.Join(',', customData.Select(d => d.Value));
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded metric values for for metric
{customMetricName}: \n\t{valuesString}");
        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricData(customMetricNamespace,
customData);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check for a metric alarm using the DescribeAlarmsForMetric action.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckForMetricAlarm()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"13. Checking for an alarm state.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];
        var hasAlarm = false;
        var retries = 10;
        while (!hasAlarm && retries > 0)
        {
            var alarms = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAlarmsForMetric(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName);
            hasAlarm = alarms.Any(a => a.StateValue == StateValue.ALARM);
            retries--;
            Thread.Sleep(20000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(hasAlarm
            ? $"\tAlarm state found for {customMetricName}."
            : $"\tNo Alarm state found for {customMetricName} after 10
retries.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get history for an alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAlarmHistory()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"14. Get alarm history.");

        var exampleAlarmName = _configuration["exampleAlarmName"];

        var alarmHistory = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAlarmHistory(exampleAlarmName, 2);

        for (int i = 0; i < alarmHistory.Count; i++)
```

```
        {
            var history = alarmHistory[i];
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {history.HistorySummary}, time
{history.Timestamp:g}");
        }
        if (!alarmHistory.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tNo alarm history data found for
{exampleAlarmName}.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an anomaly detector.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<SingleMetricAnomalyDetector> AddAnomalyDetector()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Add an anomaly detector.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var detector = new SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
        {
            MetricName = customMetricName,
            Namespace = customMetricNamespace,
            Stat = "Maximum"
        };
        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutAnomalyDetector(detector);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded anomaly detector for metric
{customMetricName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return detector;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe anomaly detectors.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    private static async Task DescribeAnomalyDetectors()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"16. Describe anomaly detectors in the current
account.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var detectors = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAnomalyDetectors(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName);

        for (int i = 0; i < detectors.Count; i++)
        {
            var detector = detectors[i];
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}.
{detector.SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.MetricName}, state
{detector.StateValue}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetch and open a metrics image for a CloudWatch metric and namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAndOpenMetricImage()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("17. Get a metric image from CloudWatch.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tGetting Image data for custom metric.");
        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var memoryStream = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.GetTimeSeriesMetricImage(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName, "Maximum", 10);
        var file = _cloudWatchWrapper.SaveMetricImage(memoryStream,
"MetricImages");

        ProcessStartInfo info = new ProcessStartInfo();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"\tFile saved as {Path.GetFileName(file)}.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tPress enter to open the image.");
        Console.ReadLine();
        info.FileName = Path.Combine("ms-photos://", file);
        info.UseShellExecute = true;
        info.CreateNoWindow = true;
        info.Verb = string.Empty;

        Process.Start(info);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up created resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"18. Clean up resources.");

        var dashboardName = _configuration["dashboardName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete dashboard {dashboardName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting dashboard.");
            var dashboardList = new List<string> { dashboardName };
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.DeleteDashboards(dashboardList);
        }

        var alarmName = _configuration["exampleAlarmName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete alarm {alarmName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCleaning up alarms.");
            var alarms = new List<string> { alarmName };
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.DeleteAlarms(alarms);
        }

        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete anomaly detector? (y/n)") &&
anomalyDetector != null)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCleaning up anomaly detector.");

            await _cloudWatchWrapper.DeleteAnomalyDetector(
                anomalyDetector);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for CloudWatch actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon CloudWatch methods.
/// </summary>
public class CloudWatchWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCloudWatch _amazonCloudWatch;
    private readonly ILogger<CloudWatchWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the CloudWatch wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonCloudWatch">The injected CloudWatch client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
```

```
   public CloudWatchWrapper(IAmazonCloudWatch amazonCloudWatch,
ILogger<CloudWatchWrapper> logger)

   {
       _logger = logger;
       _amazonCloudWatch = amazonCloudWatch;
   }

   /// <summary>
   /// List metrics available, optionally within a namespace.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="metricNamespace">Optional CloudWatch namespace to use when
listing metrics.</param>
   /// <param name="filter">Optional dimension filter.</param>
   /// <param name="metricName">Optional metric name filter.</param>
   /// <returns>The list of metrics.</returns>
   public async Task<List<Metric>> ListMetrics(string? metricNamespace = null,
DimensionFilter? filter = null, string? metricName = null)
   {
       var results = new List<Metric>();
       var paginateMetrics = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListMetrics(
           new ListMetricsRequest
           {
               Namespace = metricNamespace,
               Dimensions = filter != null ? new List<DimensionFilter>
{ filter } : null,
               MetricName = metricName
           });
       // Get the entire list using the paginator.
       await foreach (var metric in paginateMetrics.Metrics)
       {
           results.Add(metric);
       }

       return results;
   }

   /// <summary>
   /// Wrapper to get statistics for a specific CloudWatch metric.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
   /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
   /// <param name="statistics">The list of statistics to include.</param>
   /// <param name="dimensions">The list of dimensions to include.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="days">The number of days in the past to include.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period for the data.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of DataPoint objects for the statistics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Datapoint>> GetMetricStatistics(string
 metricNamespace,
        string metricName, List<string> statistics, List<Dimension> dimensions,
 int days, int period)
    {
        var metricStatistics = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(
            new GetMetricStatisticsRequest()
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName,
                Dimensions = dimensions,
                Statistics = statistics,
                StartTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-days),
                EndTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                Period = period
            });

        return metricStatistics.Datapoints;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to create or add to a dashboard with metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name for the dashboard.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardBody">The metric data in JSON for the dashboard.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages for the dashboard.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> PutDashboard(string
 dashboardName,
        string dashboardBody)
    {
        // Updating a dashboard replaces all contents.
        // Best practice is to include a text widget indicating this dashboard
 was created programmatically.
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutDashboardAsync(
            new PutDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName,
                DashboardBody = dashboardBody
            });
```

```
        return dashboardResponse.DashboardValidationMessages;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information on a dashboard.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
    /// <returns>A JSON object with dashboard information.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDashboard(string dashboardName)
    {
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetDashboardAsync(
            new GetDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName
            });

        return dashboardResponse.DashboardBody;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of DashboardEntry objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardEntry>> ListDashboards()
    {
        var results = new List<DashboardEntry>();
        var paginateDashboards = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListDashboards(
            new ListDashboardsRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var data in paginateDashboards.DashboardEntries)
        {
            results.Add(data);
        }

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to add metric data to a CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricData">A data object for the metric data.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutMetricData(string metricNamespace,
        List<MetricDatum> metricData)
    {
        var putDataResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricDataAsync(
            new PutMetricDataRequest()
            {
                MetricData = metricData,
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
            });

        return putDataResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get an image for a metric graphed over time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="stat">The name of the stat to chart.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period to use for the chart.</param>
    /// <returns>A memory stream for the chart image.</returns>
    public async Task<MemoryStream> GetTimeSeriesMetricImage(string
metricNamespace, string metric, string stat, int period)
    {
        var metricImageWidget = new
        {
            title = "Example Metric Graph",
            view = "timeSeries",
            stacked = false,
            period = period,
            width = 1400,
            height = 600,
            metrics = new List<List<object>>
                { new() { metricNamespace, metric, new { stat } } }
        };

        var metricImageWidgetString =
JsonSerializer.Serialize(metricImageWidget);
        var imageResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricWidgetImageAsync(
            new GetMetricWidgetImageRequest()
            {
                MetricWidget = metricImageWidgetString
            });
```

```
        return imageResponse.MetricWidgetImage;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save a metric image to a file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="memoryStream">The MemoryStream for the metric image.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The path to the file.</returns>
    public string SaveMetricImage(MemoryStream memoryStream, string metricName)
    {
        var metricFileName = $"{metricName}_{DateTime.Now.Ticks}.png";
        using var sr = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
        // Writes the memory stream to a file.
        File.WriteAllBytes(metricFileName, memoryStream.ToArray());
        var filePath = Path.Join(AppDomain.CurrentDomain.BaseDirectory,
            metricFileName);
        return filePath;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get data for CloudWatch metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="minutesOfData">The number of minutes of data to include.</
param>
    /// <param name="useDescendingTime">True to return the data descending by
 time.</param>
    /// <param name="endDateUtc">The end date for the data, in UTC.</param>
    /// <param name="maxDataPoints">The maximum data points to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dataQueries">Optional data queries to include.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the requested metric data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricDataResult>> GetMetricData(int minutesOfData,
 bool useDescendingTime, DateTime? endDateUtc = null,
        int maxDataPoints = 0, List<MetricDataQuery>? dataQueries = null)
    {
        var metricData = new List<MetricDataResult>();
        // If no end time is provided, use the current time for the end time.
        endDateUtc ??= DateTime.UtcNow;
        var timeZoneOffset =
 TimeZoneInfo.Local.GetUtcOffset(endDateUtc.Value.ToLocalTime());
        var startTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value.AddMinutes(-minutesOfData);
        // The timezone string should be in the format +0000, so use the timezone
 offset to format it correctly.
```

```
        var timeZoneString = $"{timeZoneOffset.Hours:D2}
{timeZoneOffset.Minutes:D2}";
        var paginatedMetricData = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.GetMetricData(
            new GetMetricDataRequest()
            {
                StartTimeUtc = startTimeUtc,
                EndTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value,
                LabelOptions = new LabelOptions { Timezone = timeZoneString },
                ScanBy = useDescendingTime ? ScanBy.TimestampDescending :
 ScanBy.TimestampAscending,
                MaxDatapoints = maxDataPoints,
                MetricDataQueries = dataQueries,
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedMetricData.MetricDataResults)
        {
            metricData.Add(data);
        }
        return metricData;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add a metric alarm to send an email when the metric passes a threshold.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmDescription">A description of the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmName">The name for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="comparison">The type of comparison to use.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="threshold">The threshold value for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional actions to execute when in an alarm
 state.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutMetricEmailAlarm(string alarmDescription, string
 alarmName, ComparisonOperator comparison,
        string metricName, string metricNamespace, double threshold, List<string>
 alarmActions = null!)
    {
        try
        {
            var putEmailAlarmResponse = await
 _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricAlarmAsync(
                new PutMetricAlarmRequest()
                {
```

```
                    AlarmActions = alarmActions,
                    AlarmDescription = alarmDescription,
                    AlarmName = alarmName,
                    ComparisonOperator = comparison,
                    Threshold = threshold,
                    Namespace = metricNamespace,
                    MetricName = metricName,
                    EvaluationPeriods = 1,
                    Period = 10,
                    Statistic = new Statistic("Maximum"),
                    DatapointsToAlarm = 1,
                    TreatMissingData = "ignore"
                });
            return putEmailAlarmResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException lex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(lex, $"Unable to add alarm {alarmName}. Alarm quota
 has already been reached.");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add specific email actions to a list of action strings for a CloudWatch
 alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accountId">The AccountId for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="region">The region for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="emailTopicName">An Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS)
 topic for the alarm email.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional list of existing alarm actions to
 append to.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of string actions for an alarm.</returns>
    public List<string> AddEmailAlarmAction(string accountId, string region,
        string emailTopicName, List<string>? alarmActions = null)
    {
        alarmActions ??= new List<string>();
        var snsAlarmAction = $"arn:aws:sns:{region}:{accountId}:
{emailTopicName}";
        alarmActions.Add(snsAlarmAction);
        return alarmActions;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms, optionally filtered by state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateValue">Optional filter for alarm state.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarms(StateValue? stateValue =
null)
    {
        List<MetricAlarm> alarms = new List<MetricAlarm>();
        var paginatedDescribeAlarms =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarms(
            new DescribeAlarmsRequest()
            {
                StateValue = stateValue
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedDescribeAlarms.MetricAlarms)
        {
            alarms.Add(data);
        }
        return alarms;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms for a specific metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarmsForMetric(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        var alarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DescribeAlarmsForMetricAsync(
            new DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest()
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName
            });

        return alarmsResult.MetricAlarms;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Describe the history of an alarm for a number of days in the past.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmName">The name of the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="historyDays">The number of days in the past.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm history data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AlarmHistoryItem>> DescribeAlarmHistory(string
 alarmName, int historyDays)
    {
        List<AlarmHistoryItem> alarmHistory = new List<AlarmHistoryItem>();
        var paginatedAlarmHistory =
 _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarmHistory(
            new DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest()
            {
                AlarmName = alarmName,
                EndDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                HistoryItemType = HistoryItemType.StateUpdate,
                StartDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-historyDays)
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedAlarmHistory.AlarmHistoryItems)
        {
            alarmHistory.Add(data);
        }
        return alarmHistory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAlarms(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var deleteAlarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAlarmsAsync(
            new DeleteAlarmsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return deleteAlarmsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var disableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DisableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new DisableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return disableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var enableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.EnableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new EnableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return enableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an anomaly detector for a single metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="anomalyDetector">A single metric anomaly detector.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
    {
        var putAlarmDetectorResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.PutAnomalyDetectorAsync(
            new PutAnomalyDetectorRequest()
            {
```

```
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return putAlarmDetectorResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe anomaly detectors for a metric and namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The metric of the anomaly detectors.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of detectors.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AnomalyDetector>> DescribeAnomalyDetectors(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        List<AnomalyDetector> detectors = new List<AnomalyDetector>();
        var paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAnomalyDetectors(
            new DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest()
            {
                MetricName = metricName,
                Namespace = metricNamespace
            });

        await foreach (var data in
paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors.AnomalyDetectors)
        {
            detectors.Add(data);
        }

        return detectors;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a single metric anomaly detector.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="anomalyDetector">The anomaly detector to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
    {
        var deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(
            new DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest()
```

```
            {
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a list of CloudWatch dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardNames">List of dashboard names to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDashboards(List<string> dashboardNames)
    {
        var deleteDashboardsResponse = await
 _amazonCloudWatch.DeleteDashboardsAsync(
            new DeleteDashboardsRequest()
            {
                DashboardNames = dashboardNames
            });

        return deleteDashboardsResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DeleteAnomalyDetector
  - DeleteDashboards
  - DescribeAlarmHistory
  - DescribeAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DescribeAnomalyDetectors
  - GetMetricData
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - GetMetricWidgetImage
  - ListMetrics

- PutAnomalyDetector
- PutDashboard
- PutMetricAlarm
- PutMetricData

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating CloudWatch features.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DashboardInvalidInputErrorException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DeleteAlarmsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DeleteDashboardsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.Dimension;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.GetMetricStatisticsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.LimitExceededException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.PutDashboardResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.PutMetricDataResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To enable billing metrics and statistics for this example, make sure billing
 * alerts are enabled for your account:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
monitor_estimated_charges_with_cloudwatch.html#turning_on_billing_metrics
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. List available namespaces from Amazon CloudWatch.
 * 2. List available metrics within the selected Namespace.
 * 3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.
 * 4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.
 * 5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.
 * 6. List dashboards using a paginator.
 * 7. Create a new custom metric by adding data for it.
 * 8. Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
 * 9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.
 * 10. Describe current alarms.
 * 11. Get current data for the new custom metric.
 * 12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.
 * 13. Check the alarm state using the action DescribeAlarmsForMetric.
 * 14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.
 * 15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.
 * 16. Describe current anomaly detectors.
 * 17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.
 * 18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.
 */
public class CloudWatchScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    static CloudWatchActions cwActions = new CloudWatchActions();

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CloudWatchScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Throwable {

        final String usage = """
```

```
            Usage:
              <myDate> <costDateWeek> <dashboardName> <dashboardJson>
<dashboardAdd> <settings> <metricImage> \s

            Where:
              myDate - The start date to use to get metric statistics. (For
example, 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)\s
              costDateWeek - The start date to use to get AWS/Billing statistics.
(For example, 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)\s
              dashboardName - The name of the dashboard to create.\s
              dashboardJson - The location of a JSON file to use to create a
dashboard. (See jsonWidgets.json in javav2/example_code/cloudwatch.)\s
              dashboardAdd - The location of a JSON file to use to update a
dashboard. (See CloudDashboard.json in javav2/example_code/cloudwatch.)\s
              settings - The location of a JSON file from which various values
are read. (See settings.json in javav2/example_code/cloudwatch.)\s
              metricImage - The location of a BMP file that is used to create a
graph.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }
        String myDate = args[0];
        String costDateWeek = args[1];
        String dashboardName = args[2];
        String dashboardJson = args[3];
        String dashboardAdd = args[4];
        String settings = args[5];
        String metricImage = args[6];

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch Basics scenario.");
        logger.info("""
            Amazon CloudWatch is a comprehensive monitoring and observability
service
            provided by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is designed to help you
monitor your
            AWS resources, applications, and services, as well as on-premises
resources,
            in real-time.
```

```
            CloudWatch collects and tracks various types of data, including
metrics,
            logs, and events, from your AWS and on-premises resources. It allows
you to set
            alarms and automatically respond to changes in your environment,
            enabling you to quickly identify and address issues before they
impact your
            applications or services.

            With CloudWatch, you can gain visibility into your entire
infrastructure, from the cloud
            to the edge, and use this information to make informed decisions and
optimize your
            resource utilization.

            This scenario guides you through how to perform Amazon CloudWatch
tasks by using the
            AWS SDK for Java v2. Let's get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            runScenario(myDate, costDateWeek, dashboardName, dashboardJson,
dashboardAdd, settings, metricImage);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void runScenario(String myDate, String costDateWeek, String
dashboardName, String dashboardJson, String dashboardAdd, String settings,
String metricImage ) throws Throwable {
        Double dataPoint = Double.parseDouble("10.0");
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
        1. List at least five available unique namespaces from Amazon
CloudWatch.
        Select one from the list.
        """);
        String selectedNamespace;
        String selectedMetrics;
        int num;
        try {
```

```
            CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> future =
cwActions.listNameSpacesAsync();
            ArrayList<String> list = future.join();
            for (int z = 0; z < 5; z++) {
                int index = z + 1;
                logger.info("    " + index + ". {}", list.get(z));
            }

            num = Integer.parseInt(scanner.nextLine());
            if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
                selectedNamespace = list.get(num - 1);
            } else {
                logger.info("You did not select a valid option.");
                return;
            }
            logger.info("You selected {}", selectedNamespace);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. List available metrics within the selected namespace.");
        logger.info("""
            A metric is a measure of the performance or health of your AWS
resources,
            applications, or custom resources. Metrics are the basic building
blocks of CloudWatch
            and provide data points that represent a specific aspect of your
system or application over time.

            Select a metric from the list.
            """);

        Dimension myDimension = null;
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> future =
cwActions.listMetsAsync(selectedNamespace);
            ArrayList<String> metList = future.join();
            logger.info("Metrics successfully retrieved. Total metrics: {}",
metList.size());
            for (int z = 0; z < 5; z++) {
                int index = z + 1;
                logger.info("    " + index + ". " + metList.get(z));
            }
            num = Integer.parseInt(scanner.nextLine());
            if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
                selectedMetrics = metList.get(num - 1);
            } else {
                logger.info("You did not select a valid option.");
                return;
            }
            logger.info("You selected {}", selectedMetrics);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        try {
            myDimension =
cwActions.getSpecificMetAsync(selectedNamespace).join();
            logger.info("Metric statistics successfully retrieved and
displayed.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
```

```
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last
day.");
        logger.info("""
            Statistics refer to the various mathematical calculations that can be
performed on the
            collected metrics to derive meaningful insights. Statistics provide a
way to summarize and
            analyze the data collected for a specific metric over a specified
time period.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String metricOption = "";
        ArrayList<String> statTypes = new ArrayList<>();
        statTypes.add("SampleCount");
        statTypes.add("Average");
        statTypes.add("Sum");
        statTypes.add("Minimum");
        statTypes.add("Maximum");

        for (int t = 0; t < 5; t++) {
            logger.info("    " + (t + 1) + ". {}", statTypes.get(t));
        }
        logger.info("Select a metric statistic by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
        num = Integer.parseInt(scanner.nextLine());
        if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
            metricOption = statTypes.get(num - 1);
        } else {
            logger.info("You did not select a valid option.");
            return;
        }
        logger.info("You selected " + metricOption);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse> future =
cwActions.getAndDisplayMetricStatisticsAsync(selectedNamespace, selectedMetrics,
metricOption, myDate, myDimension);
            future.join();
```

```
            logger.info("Metric statistics retrieved successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
         try {
            CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse> future =
cwActions.getMetricStatisticsAsync(costDateWeek);
            future.join();

            logger.info("Metric statistics successfully retrieved and
displayed.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
             throw cause;
         }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse> future =
cwActions.createDashboardWithMetricsAsync(dashboardName, dashboardJson);
```

```
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException | IOException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof DashboardInvalidInputErrorException cwEx) {
                logger.info("Invalid CloudWatch data. Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. List dashboards using a paginator.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = cwActions.listDashboardsAsync();
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Create a new custom metric by adding data to it.");
        logger.info("""
            The primary benefit of using a custom metric in Amazon CloudWatch is
the ability to
            monitor and collect data that is specific to your application or
infrastructure.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> future =
cwActions.createNewCustomMetricAsync(dataPoint);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Add an additional metric to the dashboard.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse> future =
cwActions.addMetricToDashboardAsync(dashboardAdd, dashboardName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof DashboardInvalidInputErrorException cwEx) {
                logger.info("Invalid CloudWatch data. Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String alarmName = "" ;
        try {
```

```
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
cwActions.createAlarmAsync(settings);
            alarmName = future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof LimitExceededException cwEx) {
                logger.info("The quota for alarms has been
reached: Error message: {}, Error code {}", cwEx.getMessage(),
cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Describe ten current alarms.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = cwActions.describeAlarmsAsync();
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("11. Get current data for new custom metric.");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.getCustomMetricDataAsync(settings);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the
alarm.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> future =
cwActions.addMetricDataForAlarmAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("13. Check the alarm state using the action
DescribeAlarmsForMetric.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.checkForMetricAlarmAsync(settings);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.getAlarmHistoryAsync(settings, myDate);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.");
        logger.info("""
            An anomaly detector is a feature that automatically detects unusual
patterns or deviations in your
            monitored metrics. It uses machine learning algorithms to analyze the
historical behavior
            of your metrics and establish a baseline.
```

```
            The anomaly detector then compares the current metric values against
this baseline and
            identifies any anomalies or outliers that may indicate potential
issues or unexpected changes
            in your system's performance or behavior.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.addAnomalyDetectorAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("16. Describe current anomaly detectors.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.describeAnomalyDetectorsAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.downloadAndSaveMetricImageAsync(metricImage);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.");

        try {
            logger.info(". Delete the Dashboard.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CompletableFuture<DeleteDashboardsResponse> future =
cwActions.deleteDashboardAsync(dashboardName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        try {
```

```
            logger.info("Delete the alarm.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CompletableFuture<DeleteAlarmsResponse> future =
cwActions.deleteCWAlarmAsync(alarmName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        try {
            logger.info("Delete the anomaly detector.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CompletableFuture<DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse> future =
cwActions.deleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("The Amazon CloudWatch example scenario is complete.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
```

```
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for CloudWatch SDK methods.

```
public class CloudWatchActions {

    private static CloudWatchAsyncClient cloudWatchAsyncClient;

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CloudWatchActions.class);

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous CloudWatch client instance.
     *
     * <p>
     * This method ensures that the CloudWatch client is initialized with the
 following configurations:
     * <ul>
     *     <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *     <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *     <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Retry strategy: STANDARD</li>
     * </ul>
     * </p>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous CloudWatch client instance
```

```
     */
    private static CloudWatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (cloudWatchAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            cloudWatchAsyncClient = CloudWatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return cloudWatchAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an Anomaly Detector.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the Anomaly Detector
configuration
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of
the Anomaly Detector
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse>
deleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root
node
            } catch (IOException e) {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
            String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
            String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

            SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
                .metricName(customMetricName)
                .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                .stat("Maximum")
                .build();

            DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest request =
DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
                .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
                .build();

            return getAsyncClient().deleteAnomalyDetector(request);
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the Anomaly
Detector", exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.");
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a CloudWatch alarm.
     *
     * @param alarmName the name of the alarm to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation to delete the alarm
     * the {@link DeleteAlarmsResponse} is returned when the operation completes
successfully,
     * or a {@link RuntimeException} is thrown if the operation fails
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAlarmsResponse> deleteCWAlarmAsync(String
alarmName) {
       DeleteAlarmsRequest request = DeleteAlarmsRequest.builder()
           .alarmNames(alarmName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAlarms(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the alarm:{} " +
alarmName, exception);
               } else {
                   logger.info("Successfully deleted alarm {} ", alarmName);
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes the specified dashboard.
    *
    * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of deleting the dashboard
    * @throws RuntimeException if the dashboard deletion fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteDashboardsResponse>
deleteDashboardAsync(String dashboardName) {
       DeleteDashboardsRequest dashboardsRequest =
DeleteDashboardsRequest.builder()
           .dashboardNames(dashboardName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the dashboard: "
+ dashboardName, exception);
               } else {
                   logger.info("{} was successfully deleted.", dashboardName);
               }
           });
   }
```

```
   /**
    * Retrieves and saves a custom metric image to a file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file to save the metric image to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the image has been
saved to the file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> downloadAndSaveMetricImageAsync(String
fileName) {
       logger.info("Getting Image data for custom metric.");
       String myJSON = """
             {
                 "title": "Example Metric Graph",
                 "view": "timeSeries",
                 "stacked ": false,
                 "period": 10,
                 "width": 1400,
                 "height": 600,
                 "metrics": [
                     [
                     "AWS/Billing",
                     "EstimatedCharges",
                     "Currency",
                     "USD"
                    ]
                 ]
             }
           """;

       GetMetricWidgetImageRequest imageRequest =
GetMetricWidgetImageRequest.builder()
           .metricWidget(myJSON)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               SdkBytes sdkBytes = response.metricWidgetImage();
               byte[] bytes = sdkBytes.asByteArray();
               return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                   try {
                       File outputFile = new File(fileName);
                       try (FileOutputStream outputStream = new
FileOutputStream(outputFile)) {
                           outputStream.write(bytes);
```

```
                        }
                    } catch (IOException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write image to
file", e);
                    }
                });
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error getting and saving metric
image", exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Image data saved successfully to {}", fileName);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Describes the anomaly detectors based on the specified JSON file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the custom metric
namespace and name
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly
detectors have been described
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure during the operation, such
as when reading or parsing the JSON file,
     *                          or when describing the anomaly detectors
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAnomalyDetectorsAsync(String fileName)
{
        CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
```

```
            try {
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest detectorsRequest =
DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                return
getAsyncClient().describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest).thenAccept(response
-> {
                    List<AnomalyDetector> anomalyDetectorList =
response.anomalyDetectors();
                    for (AnomalyDetector detector : anomalyDetectorList) {
                        logger.info("Metric name: {} ",
detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector().metricName());
                        logger.info("State: {} ", detector.stateValue());
                    }
                });
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe anomaly
detectors", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error describing anomaly detectors",
exception);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Adds an anomaly detector for the given file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the anomaly detector
configuration
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly
detector has been added
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> addAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root
node
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           try {
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
                   .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                   .stat("Maximum")
                   .build();

               PutAnomalyDetectorRequest anomalyDetectorRequest =
PutAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
                   .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
                   .build();

               return
getAsyncClient().putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest).thenAccept(response
-> {
                   logger.info("Added anomaly detector for metric {}",
customMetricName);
               });
           } catch (Exception e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create anomaly detector",
e);
           }
```

```
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error adding anomaly detector",
exception);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the alarm history for a given alarm name and date range.
     *
     * @param fileName the path to the JSON file containing the alarm name
     * @param date     the date to start the alarm history search (in the format
"yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'")
     * @return a {@code CompletableFuture<Void>} that completes when the alarm
history has been retrieved and processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getAlarmHistoryAsync(String fileName, String
date) {
        CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                return rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText(); // Return
alarmName from the JSON file
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
            }
        });

        // Use the alarm name to describe alarm history with a paginator.
        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(alarmName -> {
            try {
                Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
                Instant endDate = Instant.now();
                DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest historyRequest =
DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest.builder()
                    .startDate(start)
                    .endDate(endDate)
```

```
                    .alarmName(alarmName)
                    .historyItemType(HistoryItemType.ACTION)
                    .build();

                // Use the paginator to paginate through alarm history pages.
                DescribeAlarmHistoryPublisher historyPublisher =
getAsyncClient().describeAlarmHistoryPaginator(historyRequest);
                CompletableFuture<Void> future = historyPublisher
                    .subscribe(response ->
response.alarmHistoryItems().forEach(item -> {
                        logger.info("History summary: {}",
item.historySummary());
                        logger.info("Timestamp: {}", item.timestamp());
                    }))
                    .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                        if (exception != null) {
                            logger.error("Error occurred while getting alarm
history: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                        } else {
                            logger.info("Successfully retrieved all alarm
history.");
                        }
                    });

                // Return the future to the calling code for further handling
                return future;
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to process alarm history", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error completing alarm history
processing", exception);
            }
        });
    }



    /**
     * Checks for a metric alarm in AWS CloudWatch.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the JSON configuration for
the custom metric
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the check for the
metric alarm is complete
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> checkForMetricAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for
further processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
           try {
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest =
DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest.builder()
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
                   .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                   .build();

               return checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest, customMetricName, 10);

           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
           }
       }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Error checking metric alarm",
exception);
           }
       });
```

```
    }

    // Recursive method to check for the alarm.

    /**
     * Checks for the existence of an alarm asynchronously for the specified
metric.
     *
     * @param metricRequest    the request to describe the alarms for the
specified metric
     * @param customMetricName the name of the custom metric to check for an
alarm
     * @param retries          the number of retries to perform if no alarm is
found
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when an alarm is found
or the maximum number of retries has been reached
     */
    private static CompletableFuture<Void>
checkForAlarmAsync(DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest, String
customMetricName, int retries) {
        if (retries == 0) {
            return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null).thenRun(() ->
                logger.info("No Alarm state found for {} after 10 retries.",
customMetricName)
            );
        }

        return
(getAsyncClient().describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest).thenCompose(response ->
{
            if (response.hasMetricAlarms()) {
                logger.info("Alarm state found for {}", customMetricName);
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null); // Alarm found,
complete the future
            } else {
                return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(20000);
                        logger.info(".");
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Interrupted while waiting to
retry", e);
                    }
```

```
                }).thenCompose(v -> checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest,
customMetricName, retries - 1)); // Recursive call
            }
        }));
    }


    /**
     * Adds metric data for an alarm asynchronously.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the metric data
     * @return a CompletableFuture that asynchronously returns the
PutMetricDataResponse
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse>
addMetricDataForAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for
further processing
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
            try {
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
                Instant instant = Instant.now();

                // Create MetricDatum objects.
                MetricDatum datum1 = MetricDatum.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
```

```
                    .value(1001.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                MetricDatum datum2 = MetricDatum.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                    .value(1002.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDatum> metricDataList = new ArrayList<>();
                metricDataList.add(datum1);
                metricDataList.add(datum2);

                // Build the PutMetricData request.
                PutMetricDataRequest request = PutMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .metricData(metricDataList)
                    .build();

                // Send the request asynchronously.
                return getAsyncClient().putMetricData(request);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> failedFuture = new
CompletableFuture<>();
                failedFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
to parse JSON content", e));
                return failedFuture;
            }
        }).whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                logger.error("Failed to put metric data: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Added metric values for metric.");
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves custom metric data from the AWS CloudWatch service.
```

```
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the custom metric
information
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric data
has been retrieved
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getCustomMetricDataAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               // Read values from the JSON file.
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for
further processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
           try {
               // Parse the JSON string to extract relevant values.
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               // Set the current time and date range for metric query.
               Instant nowDate = Instant.now();
               long hours = 1;
               long minutes = 30;
               Instant endTime = nowDate.plus(hours,
ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(minutes, ChronoUnit.MINUTES);

               Metric met = Metric.builder()
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
                   .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                   .build();
```

```
                MetricStat metStat = MetricStat.builder()
                    .stat("Maximum")
                    .period(60)  // Assuming period in seconds
                    .metric(met)
                    .build();

                MetricDataQuery dataQuery = MetricDataQuery.builder()
                    .metricStat(metStat)
                    .id("foo2")
                    .returnData(true)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDataQuery> dq = new ArrayList<>();
                dq.add(dataQuery);

                GetMetricDataRequest getMetricDataRequest =
GetMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .maxDatapoints(10)
                    .scanBy(ScanBy.TIMESTAMP_DESCENDING)
                    .startTime(nowDate)
                    .endTime(endTime)
                    .metricDataQueries(dq)
                    .build();

                // Call the async method for CloudWatch data retrieval.
                return getAsyncClient().getMetricData(getMetricDataRequest);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<MetricDataResult> data = response.metricDataResults();
            for (MetricDataResult item : data) {
                logger.info("The label is: {}", item.label());
                logger.info("The status code is: {}",
item.statusCode().toString());
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get metric data", exception);
        });
    }


    /**
```

```
     * Describes the CloudWatch alarms of the 'METRIC_ALARM' type.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     * of describing the CloudWatch alarms. The future completes when the
     * operation is finished, either successfully or with an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAlarmsAsync() {
        List<AlarmType> typeList = new ArrayList<>();
        typeList.add(AlarmType.METRIC_ALARM);
        DescribeAlarmsRequest alarmsRequest = DescribeAlarmsRequest.builder()
            .alarmTypes(typeList)
            .maxRecords(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<MetricAlarm> alarmList = response.metricAlarms();
                for (MetricAlarm alarm : alarmList) {
                    logger.info("Alarm name: {}", alarm.alarmName());
                    logger.info("Alarm description: {} ",
alarm.alarmDescription());
                }
            })
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to describe alarms: {}",
ex.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully described alarms.");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an alarm based on the configuration provided in a JSON file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the alarm
configuration
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the alarm
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while reading the JSON
file or creating the alarm
     */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<String> createAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode;
        try {
            JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
            rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        } catch (IOException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read the alarm configuration
file", e);
        }

        // Extract values from the JSON node.
        String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
        String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
        String alarmName = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText();
        String emailTopic = rootNode.findValue("emailTopic").asText();
        String accountId = rootNode.findValue("accountId").asText();
        String region = rootNode.findValue("region").asText();

        // Create a List for alarm actions.
        List<String> alarmActions = new ArrayList<>();
        alarmActions.add("arn:aws:sns:" + region + ":" + accountId + ":" +
emailTopic);

        PutMetricAlarmRequest alarmRequest = PutMetricAlarmRequest.builder()
            .alarmActions(alarmActions)
            .alarmDescription("Example metric alarm")
            .alarmName(alarmName)

.comparisonOperator(ComparisonOperator.GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_THRESHOLD)
            .threshold(100.00)
            .metricName(customMetricName)
            .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
            .evaluationPeriods(1)
            .period(10)
            .statistic("Maximum")
            .datapointsToAlarm(1)
            .treatMissingData("ignore")
            .build();

        // Call the putMetricAlarm asynchronously and handle the result.
        return getAsyncClient().putMetricAlarm(alarmRequest)
```

```
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to create alarm: {}", ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create alarm", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully created!", alarmName);
                    return alarmName;
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Adds a metric to a dashboard asynchronously.
     *
     * @param fileName      the name of the file containing the dashboard content
     * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be updated
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation, which will complete with a
     * {@link PutDashboardResponse} when the dashboard is successfully updated
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse>
addMetricToDashboardAsync(String fileName, String dashboardName) {
        String dashboardBody;
        try {
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileName);
        } catch (IOException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read the dashboard file", e);
        }

        PutDashboardRequest dashboardRequest = PutDashboardRequest.builder()
            .dashboardName(dashboardName)
            .dashboardBody(dashboardBody)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to update dashboard: {}",
ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error updating dashboard", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully updated.", dashboardName);
                    return response;
                }
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new custom metric.
     *
     * @param dataPoint the data point to be added to the custom metric
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of adding the custom metric
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse>
createNewCustomMetricAsync(Double dataPoint) {
        Dimension dimension = Dimension.builder()
            .name("UNIQUE_PAGES")
            .value("URLS")
            .build();

        // Set an Instant object for the current time in UTC.
        String time =
ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT);
        Instant instant = Instant.parse(time);

        // Create the MetricDatum.
        MetricDatum datum = MetricDatum.builder()
            .metricName("PAGES_VISITED")
            .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
            .value(dataPoint)
            .timestamp(instant)
            .dimensions(dimension)
            .build();

        PutMetricDataRequest request = PutMetricDataRequest.builder()
            .namespace("SITE/TRAFFIC")
            .metricData(datum)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().putMetricData(request)
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error adding custom metric", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully added metric values for
PAGES_VISITED.");
                }
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists the available dashboards.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
finished.
     * The future will complete exceptionally if an error occurs while listing
the dashboards.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listDashboardsAsync() {
        ListDashboardsRequest listDashboardsRequest =
ListDashboardsRequest.builder().build();
        ListDashboardsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listDashboardsPaginator(listDashboardsRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.dashboardEntries().forEach(entry -> {
                logger.info("Dashboard name is: {} ", entry.dashboardName());
                logger.info("Dashboard ARN is: {} ", entry.dashboardArn());
            });
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to list dashboards: {} ", ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Error occurred while listing dashboards",
ex);
        });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new dashboard with the specified name and metrics from the given
file.
     *
     * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be created
     * @param fileName      the name of the file containing the dashboard body
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of creating the dashboard
     * @throws IOException if there is an error reading the dashboard body from
the file
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse>
createDashboardWithMetricsAsync(String dashboardName, String fileName) throws
IOException {
        String dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileName);
```

```
        PutDashboardRequest dashboardRequest = PutDashboardRequest.builder()
            .dashboardName(dashboardName)
            .dashboardBody(dashboardBody)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to create dashboard: {}",
ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Dashboard creation failed", ex);
                } else {
                    // Handle the normal response case
                    logger.info("{} was successfully created.", dashboardName);
                    List<DashboardValidationMessage> messages =
response.dashboardValidationMessages();
                    if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                        logger.info("There are no messages in the new
Dashboard.");
                    } else {
                        for (DashboardValidationMessage message : messages) {
                            logger.info("Message: {}", message.message());
                        }
                    }
                    return response; // Return the response for further use
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the metric statistics for the "EstimatedCharges" metric in the
"AWS/Billing" namespace.
     *
     * @param costDateWeek the start date for the metric statistics, in the
format of an ISO-8601 date string (e.g., "2023-04-05")
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the
{@link GetMetricStatisticsResponse} with the retrieved metric statistics
     * @throws RuntimeException if the metric statistics cannot be retrieved
successfully
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse>
getMetricStatisticsAsync(String costDateWeek) {
        Instant start = Instant.parse(costDateWeek);
```

```
        Instant endDate = Instant.now();

        // Define dimension
        Dimension dimension = Dimension.builder()
            .name("Currency")
            .value("USD")
            .build();

        List<Dimension> dimensionList = new ArrayList<>();
        dimensionList.add(dimension);

        GetMetricStatisticsRequest statisticsRequest =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
            .metricName("EstimatedCharges")
            .namespace("AWS/Billing")
            .dimensions(dimensionList)
            .statistics(Statistic.MAXIMUM)
            .startTime(start)
            .endTime(endDate)
            .period(86400) // One day period
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    List<Datapoint> data = response.datapoints();
                    if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                        for (Datapoint datapoint : data) {
                            logger.info("Timestamp: {} Maximum value: {})",
datapoint.timestamp(), datapoint.maximum());
                        }
                    } else {
                        logger.info("The returned data list is empty");
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get metric statistics:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves and displays metric statistics for the specified parameters.
```

```
    *
    * @param nameSpace    the namespace for the metric
    * @param metVal       the name of the metric
    * @param metricOption the statistic to retrieve for the metric (e.g.,
"Maximum", "Average")
    * @param date         the date for which to retrieve the metric statistics,
in the format "yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'"
    * @param myDimension  the dimension(s) to filter the metric statistics by
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric
statistics have been retrieved and displayed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse>
getAndDisplayMetricStatisticsAsync(String nameSpace, String metVal,

           String metricOption, String date, Dimension myDimension) {

       Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
       Instant endDate = Instant.now();

       // Building the request for metric statistics.
       GetMetricStatisticsRequest statisticsRequest =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
           .endTime(endDate)
           .startTime(start)
           .dimensions(myDimension)
           .metricName(metVal)
           .namespace(nameSpace)
           .period(86400) // 1 day period
           .statistics(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   List<Datapoint> data = response.datapoints();
                   if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                       for (Datapoint datapoint : data) {
                           logger.info("Timestamp: {} Maximum value: {}",
datapoint.timestamp(), datapoint.maximum());
                       }
                   } else {
                       logger.info("The returned data list is empty");
                   }
               } else {
```

```
                    logger.info("Failed to get metric statistics: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                }
            })
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error while getting metric
statistics: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves a list of metric names for the specified namespace.
     *
     * @param namespace the namespace for which to retrieve the metric names
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains an
{@link ArrayList} of
     * the metric names in the specified namespace
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while listing the metrics
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> listMetsAsync(String namespace) {
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
            .namespace(namespace)
            .build();

        ListMetricsPublisher metricsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listMetricsPaginator(request);
        Set<String> metSet = new HashSet<>();
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = metricsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.metrics().forEach(metric -> {
                String metricName = metric.metricName();
                metSet.add(metricName);
            });
        });

        return future
            .thenApply(ignored -> new ArrayList<>(metSet))
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list metrics: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Lists the available namespaces for the current AWS account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains an
{@link ArrayList} of the available namespace names.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while listing the namespaces.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> listNameSpacesAsync() {
        ArrayList<String> nameSpaceList = new ArrayList<>();
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder().build();

        ListMetricsPublisher metricsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listMetricsPaginator(request);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = metricsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.metrics().forEach(metric -> {
                String namespace = metric.namespace();
                if (!nameSpaceList.contains(namespace)) {
                    nameSpaceList.add(namespace);
                }
            });
        });

        return future
            .thenApply(ignored -> nameSpaceList)
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list namespaces: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }
    /**
     * Retrieves the specific metric asynchronously.
     *
     * @param namespace the namespace of the metric to retrieve
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the first dimension of the
first metric found in the specified namespace,
     * or throws a RuntimeException if an error occurs or no metrics or
dimensions are found
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Dimension> getSpecificMetAsync(String namespace) {
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
            .namespace(namespace)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listMetrics(request).handle((response, exception)
-> {
```

```
            if (exception != null) {
                logger.info("Error occurred while listing metrics: {} ",
 exception.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to retrieve specific metric
 dimension", exception);
            } else {
                List<Metric> myList = response.metrics();
                if (!myList.isEmpty()) {
                    Metric metric = myList.get(0);
                    if (!metric.dimensions().isEmpty()) {
                        return metric.dimensions().get(0); // Return the first
 dimension
                    }
                }
                throw new RuntimeException("No metrics or dimensions found");
            }
        });
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String file) throws IOException {
        return new String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(file)));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DeleteAnomalyDetector
  - DeleteDashboards
  - DescribeAlarmHistory
  - DescribeAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DescribeAnomalyDetectors
  - GetMetricData
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - GetMetricWidgetImage
  - ListMetrics
  - PutAnomalyDetector

- PutDashboard
- PutMetricAlarm
- PutMetricData

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating CloudWatch features.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 To enable billing metrics and statistics for this example, make sure billing
 alerts are enabled for your account:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
monitor_estimated_charges_with_cloudwatch.html#turning_on_billing_metrics

 This Kotlin code example performs the following tasks:

 1. List available namespaces from Amazon CloudWatch. Select a namespace from the
 list.
 2. List available metrics within the selected namespace.
 3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.
 4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.
 5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.
 6. List dashboards using a paginator.
 7. Create a new custom metric by adding data for it.
 8. Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
 9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.
```

```
 10. Describe current alarms.
 11. Get current data for the new custom metric.
 12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.
 13. Check the alarm state using the action DescribeAlarmsForMetric.
 14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.
 15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.
 16. Describe current anomaly detectors.
 17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.
 18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.
 */

val DASHES: String? = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <myDate> <costDateWeek> <dashboardName> <dashboardJson>
 <dashboardAdd> <settings> <metricImage>

        Where:
            myDate - The start date to use to get metric statistics. (For
 example, 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)
            costDateWeek - The start date to use to get AWS Billing and Cost
 Management statistics. (For example, 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)
            dashboardName - The name of the dashboard to create.
            dashboardJson - The location of a JSON file to use to create a
 dashboard. (See Readme file.)
            dashboardAdd - The location of a JSON file to use to update a
 dashboard. (See Readme file.)
            settings - The location of a JSON file from which various values are
 read. (See Readme file.)
            metricImage - The location of a BMP file that is used to create a
 graph.
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        System.exit(1)
    }

    val myDate = args[0]
    val costDateWeek = args[1]
    val dashboardName = args[2]
    val dashboardJson = args[3]
```

```
    val dashboardAdd = args[4]
    val settings = args[5]
    var metricImage = args[6]
    val dataPoint = "10.0".toDouble()
    val inOb = Scanner(System.`in`)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. List at least five available unique namespaces from Amazon
 CloudWatch. Select a CloudWatch namespace from the list.")
    val list: ArrayList<String> = listNameSpaces()
    for (z in 0..4) {
        println("    ${z + 1}. ${list[z]}")
    }

    var selectedNamespace: String
    var selectedMetrics = ""
    var num = inOb.nextLine().toInt()
    println("You selected $num")

    if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
        selectedNamespace = list[num - 1]
    } else {
        println("You did not select a valid option.")
        exitProcess(1)
    }
    println("You selected $selectedNamespace")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List available metrics within the selected namespace and select
 one from the list.")
    val metList = listMets(selectedNamespace)
    for (z in 0..4) {
        println("    ${ z + 1}. ${metList?.get(z)}")
    }
    num = inOb.nextLine().toInt()
    if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
        selectedMetrics = metList!![num - 1]
    } else {
        println("You did not select a valid option.")
```

```
        System.exit(1)
    }
    println("You selected $selectedMetrics")
    val myDimension = getSpecificMet(selectedNamespace)
    if (myDimension == null) {
        println("Error - Dimension is null")
        exitProcess(1)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.")
    val metricOption: String
    val statTypes = ArrayList<String>()
    statTypes.add("SampleCount")
    statTypes.add("Average")
    statTypes.add("Sum")
    statTypes.add("Minimum")
    statTypes.add("Maximum")

    for (t in 0..4) {
        println("    ${t + 1}. ${statTypes[t]}")
    }
    println("Select a metric statistic by entering a number from the preceding
list:")
    num = inOb.nextLine().toInt()
    if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
        metricOption = statTypes[num - 1]
    } else {
        println("You did not select a valid option.")
        exitProcess(1)
    }
    println("You selected $metricOption")
    getAndDisplayMetricStatistics(selectedNamespace, selectedMetrics,
metricOption, myDate, myDimension)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.")
    getMetricStatistics(costDateWeek)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.")
```

```
    createDashboardWithMetrics(dashboardName, dashboardJson)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. List dashboards using a paginator.")
    listDashboards()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Create a new custom metric by adding data to it.")
    createNewCustomMetric(dataPoint)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Add an additional metric to the dashboard.")
    addMetricToDashboard(dashboardAdd, dashboardName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.")
    val alarmName: String = createAlarm(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Describe 10 current alarms.")
    describeAlarms()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Get current data for the new custom metric.")
    getCustomMetricData(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.")
    addMetricDataForAlarm(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Check the alarm state using the action
 DescribeAlarmsForMetric.")
    checkForMetricAlarm(settings)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.")
    getAlarmHistory(settings, myDate)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.")
    addAnomalyDetector(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Describe current anomaly detectors.")
    describeAnomalyDetectors(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.")
    getAndOpenMetricImage(metricImage)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.")
    deleteDashboard(dashboardName)
    deleteAlarm(alarmName)
    deleteAnomalyDetector(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The Amazon CloudWatch example scenario is complete.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteAnomalyDetector(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
```

```
            stat = "Maximum"
        }

    val request =
        DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAnomalyDetector(request)
        println("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteAlarm(alarmNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteAlarmsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarmNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAlarms(request)
        println("Successfully deleted alarm $alarmNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDashboard(dashboardName: String) {
    val dashboardsRequest =
        DeleteDashboardsRequest {
            dashboardNames = listOf(dashboardName)
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
        println("$dashboardName was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun getAndOpenMetricImage(fileName: String) {
    println("Getting Image data for custom metric.")
    val myJSON = """{
        "title": "Example Metric Graph",
        "view": "timeSeries",
        "stacked ": false,
        "period": 10,
```

```
        "width": 1400,
        "height": 600,
        "metrics": [
            [
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            "Currency",
            "USD"
            ]
        ]
        }"""

    val imageRequest =
        GetMetricWidgetImageRequest {
            metricWidget = myJSON
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
        val bytes = response.metricWidgetImage
        if (bytes != null) {
            File(fileName).writeBytes(bytes)
        }
    }
    println("You have successfully written data to $fileName")
}

suspend fun describeAnomalyDetectors(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val detectorsRequest =
        DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest)
        response.anomalyDetectors?.forEach { detector ->
```

```
            println("Metric name:
 ${detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector?.metricName}")
            println("State: ${detector.stateValue}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun addAnomalyDetector(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
        }

    val anomalyDetectorRequest =
        PutAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest)
        println("Added anomaly detector for metric $customMetricName.")
    }
}

suspend fun getAlarmHistory(
    fileName: String,
    date: String,
) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val alarmNameVal = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText()
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDateVal = Instant.now()
```

```
    val historyRequest =
        DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest {
            startDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            endDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDateVal)
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            historyItemType = HistoryItemType.Action
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarmHistory(historyRequest)
        val historyItems = response.alarmHistoryItems
        if (historyItems != null) {
            if (historyItems.isEmpty()) {
                println("No alarm history data found for $alarmNameVal.")
            } else {
                for (item in historyItems) {
                    println("History summary ${item.historySummary}")
                    println("Time stamp: ${item.timestamp}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun checkForMetricAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
    var hasAlarm = false
    var retries = 10

    val metricRequest =
        DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
```

```
        while (!hasAlarm && retries > 0) {
            val response = cwClient.describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest)
            if (response.metricAlarms?.count()!! > 0) {
                hasAlarm = true
            }
            retries--
            delay(20000)
            println(".")
        }
        if (!hasAlarm) {
            println("No Alarm state found for $customMetricName after 10
 retries.")
        } else {
            println("Alarm state found for $customMetricName.")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun addMetricDataForAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    // Set an Instant object.
    val time =
 ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT)
    val instant = Instant.parse(time)
    val datum =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1001.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val datum2 =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
```

```
            value = 1002.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val metricDataList = ArrayList<MetricDatum>()
    metricDataList.add(datum)
    metricDataList.add(datum2)

    val request =
        PutMetricDataRequest {
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            metricData = metricDataList
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricData(request)
        println("Added metric values for for metric $customMetricName")
    }
}

suspend fun getCustomMetricData(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    // Set the date.
    val nowDate = Instant.now()
    val hours: Long = 1
    val minutes: Long = 30
    val date2 =
        nowDate.plus(hours, ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(
            minutes,
            ChronoUnit.MINUTES,
        )

    val met =
        Metric {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
```

```
        }

    val metStat =
        MetricStat {
            stat = "Maximum"
            period = 1
            metric = met
        }

    val dataQUery =
        MetricDataQuery {
            metricStat = metStat
            id = "foo2"
            returnData = true
        }

    val dq = ArrayList<MetricDataQuery>()
    dq.add(dataQUery)
    val getMetReq =
        GetMetricDataRequest {
            maxDatapoints = 10
            scanBy = ScanBy.TimestampDescending
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(nowDate)
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(date2)
            metricDataQueries = dq
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricData(getMetReq)
        response.metricDataResults?.forEach { item ->
            println("The label is ${item.label}")
            println("The status code is ${item.statusCode}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeAlarms() {
    val typeList = ArrayList<AlarmType>()
    typeList.add(AlarmType.MetricAlarm)
    val alarmsRequest =
```

```
        DescribeAlarmsRequest {
            alarmTypes = typeList
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
        response.metricAlarms?.forEach { alarm ->
            println("Alarm name: ${alarm.alarmName}")
            println("Alarm description: ${alarm.alarmDescription}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createAlarm(fileName: String): String {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode: JsonNode = ObjectMapper().readTree(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
    val alarmNameVal = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText()
    val emailTopic = rootNode.findValue("emailTopic").asText()
    val accountId = rootNode.findValue("accountId").asText()
    val region2 = rootNode.findValue("region").asText()

    // Create a List for alarm actions.
    val alarmActionObs: MutableList<String> = ArrayList()
    alarmActionObs.add("arn:aws:sns:$region2:$accountId:$emailTopic")
    val alarmRequest =
        PutMetricAlarmRequest {
            alarmActions = alarmActionObs
            alarmDescription = "Example metric alarm"
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            comparisonOperator = ComparisonOperator.GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold
            threshold = 100.00
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            evaluationPeriods = 1
            period = 10
            statistic = Statistic.Maximum
            datapointsToAlarm = 1
            treatMissingData = "ignore"
        }
```

```
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricAlarm(alarmRequest)
        println("$alarmNameVal was successfully created!")
        return alarmNameVal
    }
}

suspend fun addMetricToDashboard(
    fileNameVal: String,
    dashboardNameVal: String,
) {
    val dashboardRequest =
        PutDashboardRequest {
            dashboardName = dashboardNameVal
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
        println("$dashboardNameVal was successfully updated.")
    }
}

suspend fun createNewCustomMetric(dataPoint: Double) {
    val dimension =
        Dimension {
            name = "UNIQUE_PAGES"
            value = "URLS"
        }

    // Set an Instant object.
    val time =
 ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT)
    val instant = Instant.parse(time)
    val datum =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = "PAGES_VISITED"
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = dataPoint
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
            dimensions = listOf(dimension)
```

```
        }

    val request =
        PutMetricDataRequest {
            namespace = "SITE/TRAFFIC"
            metricData = listOf(datum)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricData(request)
        println("Added metric values for for metric PAGES_VISITED")
    }
}

suspend fun listDashboards() {
    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listDashboardsPaginated({})
            .transform { it.dashboardEntries?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.dashboardName}")
                println("Dashboard ARN is ${obj.dashboardArn}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun createDashboardWithMetrics(
    dashboardNameVal: String,
    fileNameVal: String,
) {
    val dashboardRequest =
        PutDashboardRequest {
            dashboardName = dashboardNameVal
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
        println("$dashboardNameVal was successfully created.")
        val messages = response.dashboardValidationMessages
        if (messages != null) {
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                println("There are no messages in the new Dashboard")
            } else {
```

```
                for (message in messages) {
                    println("Message is: ${message.message}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

fun readFileAsString(file: String): String =
 String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(file)))

suspend fun getMetricStatistics(costDateWeek: String?) {
    val start = Instant.parse(costDateWeek)
    val endDate = Instant.now()
    val dimension =
        Dimension {
            name = "Currency"
            value = "USD"
        }

    val dimensionList: MutableList<Dimension> = ArrayList()
    dimensionList.add(dimension)

    val statisticsRequest =
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest {
            metricName = "EstimatedCharges"
            namespace = "AWS/Billing"
            dimensions = dimensionList
            statistics = listOf(Statistic.Maximum)
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDate)
            period = 86400
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
        val data: List<Datapoint>? = response.datapoints
        if (data != null) {
            if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                for (datapoint in data) {
```

```
                    println("Timestamp:  ${datapoint.timestamp} Maximum value:
 ${datapoint.maximum}")
                }
            } else {
                println("The returned data list is empty")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getAndDisplayMetricStatistics(
    nameSpaceVal: String,
    metVal: String,
    metricOption: String,
    date: String,
    myDimension: Dimension,
) {
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDate = Instant.now()
    val statisticsRequest =
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest {
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDate)
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            dimensions = listOf(myDimension)
            metricName = metVal
            namespace = nameSpaceVal
            period = 86400
            statistics = listOf(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
        }

    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
        val data = response.datapoints
        if (data != null) {
            if (data.isNotEmpty()) {
                for (datapoint in data) {
                    println("Timestamp: ${datapoint.timestamp} Maximum value:
 ${datapoint.maximum}")
                }
            } else {
```

```
                println("The returned data list is empty")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listMets(namespaceVal: String?): ArrayList<String>? {
    val metList = ArrayList<String>()
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val reponse = cwClient.listMetrics(request)
        reponse.metrics?.forEach { metrics ->
            val data = metrics.metricName
            if (!metList.contains(data)) {
                metList.add(data!!)
            }
        }
    }
    return metList
}

suspend fun getSpecificMet(namespaceVal: String?): Dimension? {
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.listMetrics(request)
        val myList = response.metrics
        if (myList != null) {
            return myList[0].dimensions?.get(0)
        }
    }
    return null
}

suspend fun listNameSpaces(): ArrayList<String> {
    val nameSpaceList = ArrayList<String>()
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.listMetrics(ListMetricsRequest {})
        response.metrics?.forEach { metrics ->
```

```
            val data = metrics.namespace
            if (!nameSpaceList.contains(data)) {
                nameSpaceList.add(data!!)
            }
        }
    }
    return nameSpaceList
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DeleteAnomalyDetector
  - DeleteDashboards
  - DescribeAlarmHistory
  - DescribeAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DescribeAnomalyDetectors
  - GetMetricData
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - GetMetricWidgetImage
  - ListMetrics
  - PutAnomalyDetector
  - PutDashboard
  - PutMetricAlarm
  - PutMetricData

Actions for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CloudWatch actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the CloudWatch API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon CloudWatch API Reference.

Examples

- Use DeleteAlarms with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAnomalyDetector with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteDashboards with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAlarmHistory with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAlarms with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAlarmsForMetric with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAnomalyDetectors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisableAlarmActions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableAlarmActions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetDashboard with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricData with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricStatistics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetMetricWidgetImage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDashboards with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMetrics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutAnomalyDetector with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutDashboard with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMetricAlarm with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutMetricData with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `DeleteAlarms` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with alarms
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms to delete.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteAlarms(List<string> alarmNames)
{
    var deleteAlarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAlarmsAsync(
        new DeleteAlarmsRequest()
        {
            AlarmNames = alarmNames
        });

    return deleteAlarmsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DeleteAlarmsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Delete the alarm.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::DeleteAlarmsRequest request;
        request.AddAlarmNames(alarm_name);

        auto outcome = cw.DeleteAlarms(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to delete CloudWatch alarm:" <<
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted CloudWatch alarm " << alarm_name
                << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an alarm

The following example uses the `delete-alarms` command to delete the Amazon CloudWatch alarm named "myalarm":

```
aws cloudwatch delete-alarms --alarm-names myalarm
```

Output:

```
This command returns to the prompt if successful.
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a CloudWatch alarm.
    *
    * @param alarmName the name of the alarm to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation to delete the alarm
    * the {@link DeleteAlarmsResponse} is returned when the operation completes
successfully,
    * or a {@link RuntimeException} is thrown if the operation fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAlarmsResponse> deleteCWAlarmAsync(String
alarmName) {
       DeleteAlarmsRequest request = DeleteAlarmsRequest.builder()
           .alarmNames(alarmName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAlarms(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the alarm:{} " +
alarmName, exception);
               } else {
                   logger.info("Successfully deleted alarm {} ", alarmName);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DeleteAlarmsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteAlarmsCommand({
    AlarmNames: [process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME], // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  AlarmNames: ["Web_Server_CPU_Utilization"],
};

cw.deleteAlarms(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteAlarm(alarmNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteAlarmsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarmNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAlarms(request)
        println("Successfully deleted alarm $alarmNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
```

```
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def delete_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Deletes all of the alarms that are currently watching the specified
metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace,
metric_name)
            metric.alarms.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace, metric_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete alarms for metric %s.%s.",
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->deletealarms(
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtresourcenotfound.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DeleteAnomalyDetector` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAnomalyDetector`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a single metric anomaly detector.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="anomalyDetector">The anomaly detector to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
    {
        var deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(
```

```
            new DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest()
            {
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a specified anomaly detection model

The following `delete-anomaly-detector` example deletes an anomaly detector model in the specified account.

```
aws cloudwatch delete-anomaly-detector \
    --namespace AWS/Logs \
    --metric-name IncomingBytes \
    --stat SampleCount
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting an anomaly detection model in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an Anomaly Detector.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the Anomaly Detector
configuration
    * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of
the Anomaly Detector
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse>
deleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root
node
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
           String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

           SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
               .metricName(customMetricName)
               .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
               .stat("Maximum")
               .build();

           DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest request =
DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
               .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
               .build();

           return getAsyncClient().deleteAnomalyDetector(request);
       }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
```

```
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the Anomaly
 Detector", exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.");
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteAnomalyDetector(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
        }

    val request =
        DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }
```

```
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAnomalyDetector(request)
        println("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteDashboards` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDashboards`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a list of CloudWatch dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardNames">List of dashboard names to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDashboards(List<string> dashboardNames)
    {
        var deleteDashboardsResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DeleteDashboardsAsync(
            new DeleteDashboardsRequest()
            {
                DashboardNames = dashboardNames
```

```
            });

        return deleteDashboardsResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete specified dashboards

The following `delete-dashboards` example deletes two dashboards named `Dashboard-A` and `Dashboard-B` in the specified account.

```
aws cloudwatch delete-dashboards \
    --dashboard-names Dashboard-A Dashboard-B
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Amazon CloudWatch dashboards in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes the specified dashboard.
```

```
     *
     * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
 operation of deleting the dashboard
     * @throws RuntimeException if the dashboard deletion fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteDashboardsResponse>
 deleteDashboardAsync(String dashboardName) {
        DeleteDashboardsRequest dashboardsRequest =
 DeleteDashboardsRequest.builder()
            .dashboardNames(dashboardName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the dashboard: "
 + dashboardName, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted.", dashboardName);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDashboard(dashboardName: String) {
    val dashboardsRequest =
        DeleteDashboardsRequest {
            dashboardNames = listOf(dashboardName)
        }
```

```
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
        println("$dashboardName was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified dashboard, promoting for confirmation before proceeding. To bypass confirmation add the -Force switch to the command.

```
Remove-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified dashboard, promoting for confirmation before proceeding. To bypass confirmation add the -Force switch to the command.

```
Remove-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAlarmHistory` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAlarmHistory`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the history of an alarm for a number of days in the past.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmName">The name of the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="historyDays">The number of days in the past.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm history data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AlarmHistoryItem>> DescribeAlarmHistory(string
alarmName, int historyDays)
    {
        List<AlarmHistoryItem> alarmHistory = new List<AlarmHistoryItem>();
        var paginatedAlarmHistory =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarmHistory(
            new DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest()
            {
                AlarmName = alarmName,
                EndDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                HistoryItemType = HistoryItemType.StateUpdate,
                StartDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-historyDays)
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedAlarmHistory.AlarmHistoryItems)
        {
            alarmHistory.Add(data);
        }
        return alarmHistory;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve history for an alarm

The following example uses the `describe-alarm-history` command to retrieve history for the Amazon CloudWatch alarm named "myalarm":

```
aws cloudwatch describe-alarm-history --alarm-name "myalarm" --history-item-
type StateUpdate
```

Output:

```
{
    "AlarmHistoryItems": [
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T18:59:06.442Z",
            "HistoryItemType": "StateUpdate",
            "AlarmName": "myalarm",
            "HistoryData": "{\"version\":\"1.0\",\"oldState\":{\"stateValue
\":\"ALARM\",\"stateReason\":\"testing purposes\"},\"newState\":{\"stateValue
\":\"OK\",\"stateReason\":\"Threshold Crossed: 2 datapoints were not
 greater than the threshold (70.0). The most recent datapoints: [38.958,
 40.292].\",\"stateReasonData\":{\"version\":\"1.0\",\"queryDate\":
\"2014-04-09T18:59:06.419+0000\",\"startDate\":\"2014-04-09T18:44:00.000+0000\",
\"statistic\":\"Average\",\"period\":300,\"recentDatapoints\":[38.958,40.292],
\"threshold\":70.0}}}",
            "HistorySummary": "Alarm updated from ALARM to OK"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T18:59:05.805Z",
            "HistoryItemType": "StateUpdate",
            "AlarmName": "myalarm",
            "HistoryData": "{\"version\":\"1.0\",\"oldState\":{\"stateValue
\":\"OK\",\"stateReason\":\"Threshold Crossed: 2 datapoints were
 not greater than the threshold (70.0). The most recent datapoints:
 [38.839999999999996, 39.714].\",\"stateReasonData\":{\"version\":
\"1.0\",\"queryDate\":\"2014-03-11T22:45:41.569+0000\",\"startDate\":
\"2014-03-11T22:30:00.000+0000\",\"statistic\":\"Average\",\"period\":300,
\"recentDatapoints\":[38.839999999999996,39.714],\"threshold\":70.0}},\"newState
\":{\"stateValue\":\"ALARM\",\"stateReason\":\"testing purposes\"}}",
            "HistorySummary": "Alarm updated from OK to ALARM"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the alarm history for a given alarm name and date range.
    *
    * @param fileName the path to the JSON file containing the alarm name
    * @param date     the date to start the alarm history search (in the format
"yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'")
    * @return a {@code CompletableFuture<Void>} that completes when the alarm
history has been retrieved and processed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getAlarmHistoryAsync(String fileName, String
date) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText(); // Return
alarmName from the JSON file
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
           }
       });
```

```
        // Use the alarm name to describe alarm history with a paginator.
        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(alarmName -> {
            try {
                Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
                Instant endDate = Instant.now();
                DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest historyRequest =
DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest.builder()
                    .startDate(start)
                    .endDate(endDate)
                    .alarmName(alarmName)
                    .historyItemType(HistoryItemType.ACTION)
                    .build();

                // Use the paginator to paginate through alarm history pages.
                DescribeAlarmHistoryPublisher historyPublisher =
getAsyncClient().describeAlarmHistoryPaginator(historyRequest);
                CompletableFuture<Void> future = historyPublisher
                    .subscribe(response ->
response.alarmHistoryItems().forEach(item -> {
                        logger.info("History summary: {}",
item.historySummary());
                        logger.info("Timestamp: {}", item.timestamp());
                    }))
                    .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                        if (exception != null) {
                            logger.error("Error occurred while getting alarm
history: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                        } else {
                            logger.info("Successfully retrieved all alarm
history.");
                        }
                    });

                // Return the future to the calling code for further handling
                return future;
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to process alarm history", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error completing alarm history
processing", exception);
            }
```

```
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAlarmHistory(
    fileName: String,
    date: String,
) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val alarmNameVal = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText()
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDateVal = Instant.now()

    val historyRequest =
        DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest {
            startDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            endDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDateVal)
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            historyItemType = HistoryItemType.Action
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarmHistory(historyRequest)
```

```
        val historyItems = response.alarmHistoryItems
        if (historyItems != null) {
            if (historyItems.isEmpty()) {
                println("No alarm history data found for $alarmNameVal.")
            } else {
                for (item in historyItems) {
                    println("History summary ${item.historySummary}")
                    println("Time stamp: ${item.timestamp}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribeAlarms` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAlarms`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms, optionally filtered by state.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="stateValue">Optional filter for alarm state.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarms(StateValue? stateValue =
 null)
    {
        List<MetricAlarm> alarms = new List<MetricAlarm>();
        var paginatedDescribeAlarms =
 _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarms(
            new DescribeAlarmsRequest()
            {
                StateValue = stateValue
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedDescribeAlarms.MetricAlarms)
        {
            alarms.Add(data);
        }
        return alarms;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list information about an alarm

The following example uses the `describe-alarms` command to provide information about the alarm named "myalarm":

```
aws cloudwatch describe-alarms --alarm-names "myalarm"
```

Output:

```
{
    "MetricAlarms": [
        {
            "EvaluationPeriods": 2,
            "AlarmArn": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
east-1:123456789012:alarm:myalarm",
```

```
            "StateUpdatedTimestamp": "2014-04-09T18:59:06.442Z",
            "AlarmConfigurationUpdatedTimestamp": "2012-12-27T00:49:54.032Z",
            "ComparisonOperator": "GreaterThanThreshold",
            "AlarmActions": [
                "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:123456789012:myHighCpuAlarm"
            ],
            "Namespace": "AWS/EC2",
            "AlarmDescription": "CPU usage exceeds 70 percent",
            "StateReasonData": "{\"version\":\"1.0\",\"queryDate\":
\"2014-04-09T18:59:06.419+0000\",\"startDate\":\"2014-04-09T18:44:00.000+0000\",
\"statistic\":\"Average\",\"period\":300,\"recentDatapoints\":[38.958,40.292],
\"threshold\":70.0}",
            "Period": 300,
            "StateValue": "OK",
            "Threshold": 70.0,
            "AlarmName": "myalarm",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "InstanceId",
                    "Value": "i-0c986c72"
                }
            ],
            "Statistic": "Average",
            "StateReason": "Threshold Crossed: 2 datapoints were not greater than
 the threshold (70.0). The most recent datapoints: [38.958, 40.292].",
            "InsufficientDataActions": [],
            "OKActions": [],
            "ActionsEnabled": true,
            "MetricName": "CPUUtilization"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes the CloudWatch alarms of the 'METRIC_ALARM' type.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     * of describing the CloudWatch alarms. The future completes when the
     * operation is finished, either successfully or with an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAlarmsAsync() {
        List<AlarmType> typeList = new ArrayList<>();
        typeList.add(AlarmType.METRIC_ALARM);
        DescribeAlarmsRequest alarmsRequest = DescribeAlarmsRequest.builder()
            .alarmTypes(typeList)
            .maxRecords(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<MetricAlarm> alarmList = response.metricAlarms();
                for (MetricAlarm alarm : alarmList) {
                    logger.info("Alarm name: {}", alarm.alarmName());
                    logger.info("Alarm description: {} ",
alarm.alarmDescription());
                }
            })
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to describe alarms: {}",
ex.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully described alarms.");
```

```
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAlarms() {
    val typeList = ArrayList<AlarmType>()
    typeList.add(AlarmType.MetricAlarm)
    val alarmsRequest =
        DescribeAlarmsRequest {
            alarmTypes = typeList
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
        response.metricAlarms?.forEach { alarm ->
            println("Alarm name: ${alarm.alarmName}")
            println("Alarm description: ${alarm.alarmDescription}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all the alarms including Composite and Metric Alarms from CloudWatch.

```
Get-CWAlarm -MaxRecords 1
```

Output:

```
CompositeAlarms MetricAlarms         NextToken
--------------- ------------         ---------
                {MetricAlarms-01}    NextToken-01
                {MetricAlarms-02}    NextToken-02
                {MetricAlarms-03}    NextToken-03
```

Example 2: Returns only the composite alarms data from CloudWatch after setting -AlarmType parameter to CompositeAlarms.

```
Get-CWAlarm -AlarmType 'CompositeAlarms'
```

Output:

```
CompositeAlarms        MetricAlarms NextToken
---------------        ------------ ---------
{CompositeAlarms-01}
{CompositeAlarms-02}
{CompositeAlarms-03}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatch'

# Lists the names of available Amazon CloudWatch alarms.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @example
#   list_alarms(Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'))
def list_alarms(cloudwatch_client)
  response = cloudwatch_client.describe_alarms
  if response.metric_alarms.count.positive?
    response.metric_alarms.each do |alarm|
      puts alarm.alarm_name
    end
  else
    puts 'No alarms found.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about alarms: #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_cwt->describealarms(                 " oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes. "
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
```

```
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms for a specific metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarmsForMetric(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        var alarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DescribeAlarmsForMetricAsync(
            new DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest()
            {
```

```
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName
            });

        return alarmsResult.MetricAlarms;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DescribeAlarmsRequest.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DescribeAlarmsResult.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>
```

Describe the alarms.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::DescribeAlarmsRequest request;
        request.SetMaxRecords(1);

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            auto outcome = cw.DescribeAlarms(request);
```

```
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
            {
                std::cout << "Failed to describe CloudWatch alarms:" <<
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
            }

            if (!header)
            {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                    std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                    std::setw(64) << "Arn" <<
                    std::setw(64) << "Description" <<
                    std::setw(20) << "LastUpdated" <<
                    std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &alarms = outcome.GetResult().GetMetricAlarms();
            for (const auto &alarm : alarms)
            {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                    std::setw(32) << alarm.GetAlarmName() <<
                    std::setw(64) << alarm.GetAlarmArn() <<
                    std::setw(64) << alarm.GetAlarmDescription() <<
                    std::setw(20) << 
                    alarm.GetAlarmConfigurationUpdatedTimestamp().ToGmtString(
                        SIMPLE_DATE_FORMAT_STR) <<
                    std::endl;
            }

            const auto &next_token = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            request.SetNextToken(next_token);
            done = next_token.empty();
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display information about alarms associated with a metric

The following example uses the `describe-alarms-for-metric` command to display information about any alarms associated with the Amazon EC2 CPUUtilization metric and the instance with the ID i-0c986c72.:

```
aws cloudwatch describe-alarms-for-metric --metric-name CPUUtilization --
namespace AWS/EC2 --dimensions Name=InstanceId,Value=i-0c986c72
```

Output:

```
{
    "MetricAlarms": [
        {
            "EvaluationPeriods": 10,
            "AlarmArn": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
east-1:111122223333:alarm:myHighCpuAlarm2",
            "StateUpdatedTimestamp": "2013-10-30T03:03:51.479Z",
            "AlarmConfigurationUpdatedTimestamp": "2013-10-30T03:03:50.865Z",
            "ComparisonOperator": "GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold",
            "AlarmActions": [
                "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:NotifyMe"
            ],
            "Namespace": "AWS/EC2",
            "AlarmDescription": "CPU usage exceeds 70 percent",
            "StateReasonData": "{\"version\":\"1.0\",\"queryDate\":
\"2013-10-30T03:03:51.479+0000\",\"startDate\":\"2013-10-30T02:08:00.000+0000\",
\"statistic\":\"Average\",\"period\":300,\"recentDatapoints\":
[40.698,39.612,42.432,39.796,38.816,42.28,42.854,40.088,40.760000000000005,41.316],
\"threshold\":70.0}",
            "Period": 300,
            "StateValue": "OK",
            "Threshold": 70.0,
            "AlarmName": "myHighCpuAlarm2",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "InstanceId",
                    "Value": "i-0c986c72"
                }
```

```
            ],
            "Statistic": "Average",
            "StateReason": "Threshold Crossed: 10 datapoints were not
 greater than or equal to the threshold (70.0). The most recent datapoints:
 [40.760000000000005, 41.316].",
            "InsufficientDataActions": [],
            "OKActions": [],
            "ActionsEnabled": true,
            "MetricName": "CPUUtilization"
        },
        {
            "EvaluationPeriods": 2,
            "AlarmArn": "arn:aws:cloudwatch:us-
east-1:111122223333:alarm:myHighCpuAlarm",
            "StateUpdatedTimestamp": "2014-04-09T18:59:06.442Z",
            "AlarmConfigurationUpdatedTimestamp": "2014-04-09T22:26:05.958Z",
            "ComparisonOperator": "GreaterThanThreshold",
            "AlarmActions": [
                "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:HighCPUAlarm"
            ],
            "Namespace": "AWS/EC2",
            "AlarmDescription": "CPU usage exceeds 70 percent",
            "StateReasonData": "{\"version\":\"1.0\",\"queryDate\":
\"2014-04-09T18:59:06.419+0000\",\"startDate\":\"2014-04-09T18:44:00.000+0000\",
\"statistic\":\"Average\",\"period\":300,\"recentDatapoints\":[38.958,40.292],
\"threshold\":70.0}",
            "Period": 300,
            "StateValue": "OK",
            "Threshold": 70.0,
            "AlarmName": "myHighCpuAlarm",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "InstanceId",
                    "Value": "i-0c986c72"
                }
            ],
            "Statistic": "Average",
            "StateReason": "Threshold Crossed: 2 datapoints were not greater than
 the threshold (70.0). The most recent datapoints: [38.958, 40.292].",
            "InsufficientDataActions": [],
            "OKActions": [],
            "ActionsEnabled": false,
            "MetricName": "CPUUtilization"
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Checks for a metric alarm in AWS CloudWatch.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the JSON configuration for
the custom metric
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the check for the
metric alarm is complete
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> checkForMetricAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for
further processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
           try {
```

```
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest =
DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                return checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest, customMetricName, 10);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error checking metric alarm",
exception);
            }
        });
    }

    // Recursive method to check for the alarm.

    /**
     * Checks for the existence of an alarm asynchronously for the specified
metric.
     *
     * @param metricRequest    the request to describe the alarms for the
specified metric
     * @param customMetricName the name of the custom metric to check for an
alarm
     * @param retries          the number of retries to perform if no alarm is
found
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when an alarm is found
or the maximum number of retries has been reached
     */
    private static CompletableFuture<Void>
checkForAlarmAsync(DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest, String
customMetricName, int retries) {
```

```
        if (retries == 0) {
            return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null).thenRun(() ->
                logger.info("No Alarm state found for {} after 10 retries.",
customMetricName)
            );
        }

        return
(getAsyncClient().describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest).thenCompose(response ->
{
            if (response.hasMetricAlarms()) {
                logger.info("Alarm state found for {}", customMetricName);
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null); // Alarm found,
complete the future
            } else {
                return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(20000);
                        logger.info(".");
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Interrupted while waiting to
retry", e);
                    }
                }).thenCompose(v -> checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest,
customMetricName, retries - 1)); // Recursive call
            }
        }));
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DescribeAlarmsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeAlarmsCommand({
    AlarmNames: [process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME], // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
```

```
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

cw.describeAlarms({ StateValue: "INSUFFICIENT_DATA" }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    // List the names of all current alarms in the console
    data.MetricAlarms.forEach(function (item, index, array) {
      console.log(item.AlarmName);
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkForMetricAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
    var hasAlarm = false
    var retries = 10

    val metricRequest =
```

```
        DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        while (!hasAlarm && retries > 0) {
            val response = cwClient.describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest)
            if (response.metricAlarms?.count()!! > 0) {
                hasAlarm = true
            }
            retries--
            delay(20000)
            println(".")
        }
        if (!hasAlarm) {
            println("No Alarm state found for $customMetricName after 10
 retries.")
        } else {
            println("Alarm state found for $customMetricName.")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
```

```
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def get_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Gets the alarms that are currently watching the specified metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :returns: An iterator that yields the alarms.
        """
        metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
        alarm_iter = metric.alarms.all()
        logger.info("Got alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace,
metric_name)
        return alarm_iter
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @example
#   describe_metric_alarms(Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'))
def describe_metric_alarms(cloudwatch_client)
  response = cloudwatch_client.describe_alarms

  if response.metric_alarms.count.positive?
```

```
    response.metric_alarms.each do |alarm|
      puts '-' * 16
      puts "Name:           #{alarm.alarm_name}"
      puts "State value:    #{alarm.state_value}"
      puts "State reason:   #{alarm.state_reason}"
      puts "Metric:         #{alarm.metric_name}"
      puts "Namespace:      #{alarm.namespace}"
      puts "Statistic:      #{alarm.statistic}"
      puts "Period:         #{alarm.period}"
      puts "Unit:           #{alarm.unit}"
      puts "Eval. periods:  #{alarm.evaluation_periods}"
      puts "Threshold:      #{alarm.threshold}"
      puts "Comp. operator: #{alarm.comparison_operator}"

      if alarm.key?(:ok_actions) && alarm.ok_actions.count.positive?
        puts 'OK actions:'
        alarm.ok_actions.each do |a|
          puts "  #{a}"
        end
      end

      if alarm.key?(:alarm_actions) && alarm.alarm_actions.count.positive?
        puts 'Alarm actions:'
        alarm.alarm_actions.each do |a|
          puts "  #{a}"
        end
      end

      if alarm.key?(:insufficient_data_actions) &&
         alarm.insufficient_data_actions.count.positive?
        puts 'Insufficient data actions:'
        alarm.insufficient_data_actions.each do |a|
          puts "  #{a}"
        end
      end

      puts 'Dimensions:'
      if alarm.key?(:dimensions) && alarm.dimensions.count.positive?
        alarm.dimensions.each do |d|
          puts "  Name: #{d.name}, Value: #{d.value}"
        end
      else
        puts '  None for this alarm.'
      end
```

```
    end
  else
    puts 'No alarms found.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about alarms: #{e.message}"
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  region = ''

  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby cw-ruby-example-show-alarms.rb REGION'
    puts 'Example: ruby cw-ruby-example-show-alarms.rb us-east-1'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    region = 'us-east-1'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    region = ARGV[0]
  end

  cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: region)
  puts 'Available alarms:'
  describe_metric_alarms(cloudwatch_client)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DescribeAnomalyDetectors` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAnomalyDetectors`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe anomaly detectors for a metric and namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The metric of the anomaly detectors.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of detectors.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AnomalyDetector>> DescribeAnomalyDetectors(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        List<AnomalyDetector> detectors = new List<AnomalyDetector>();
        var paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAnomalyDetectors(
            new DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest()
            {
                MetricName = metricName,
                Namespace = metricNamespace
            });

        await foreach (var data in
paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors.AnomalyDetectors)
        {
            detectors.Add(data);
        }

        return detectors;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of anomaly detection models

The following `describe-anomaly-detectors` example displays information about anomaly detector models that are associated with the `AWS/Logs` namespace in the specified account.

```
aws cloudwatch describe-anomaly-detectors \
    --namespace AWS/Logs
```

Output:

```
{
    "AnomalyDetectors": [
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/Logs",
            "MetricName": "IncomingBytes",
            "Dimensions": [],
            "Stat": "SampleCount",
            "Configuration": {
                "ExcludedTimeRanges": []
            },
            "StateValue": "TRAINED",
            "SingleMetricAnomalyDetector": {
                "AccountId": "123456789012",
                "Namespace": "AWS/Logs",
                "MetricName": "IncomingBytes",
                "Dimensions": [],
                "Stat": "SampleCount"
            }
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/Logs",
            "MetricName": "IncomingBytes",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "LogGroupName",
                    "Value": "demo"
                }
            ],
```

```
            "Stat": "Average",
            "Configuration": {
                "ExcludedTimeRanges": []
            },
            "StateValue": "PENDING_TRAINING",
            "SingleMetricAnomalyDetector": {
                "AccountId": "123456789012",
                "Namespace": "AWS/Logs",
                "MetricName": "IncomingBytes",
                "Dimensions": [
                    {
                        "Name": "LogGroupName",
                        "Value": "demo"
                    }
                ],
                "Stat": "Average"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using CloudWatch anomaly detection in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes the anomaly detectors based on the specified JSON file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the custom metric
namespace and name
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly
detectors have been described
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure during the operation, such
as when reading or parsing the JSON file,
    *                          or when describing the anomaly detectors
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAnomalyDetectorsAsync(String fileName)
{
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           try {
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest detectorsRequest =
DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(10)
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
                   .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                   .build();

               return
getAsyncClient().describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest).thenAccept(response
-> {
                   List<AnomalyDetector> anomalyDetectorList =
response.anomalyDetectors();
                   for (AnomalyDetector detector : anomalyDetectorList) {
                       logger.info("Metric name: {} ",
detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector().metricName());
                       logger.info("State: {} ", detector.stateValue());
                   }
```

```
                });
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe anomaly
 detectors", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error describing anomaly detectors",
 exception);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAnomalyDetectors(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val detectorsRequest =
        DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest)
```

```
        response.anomalyDetectors?.forEach { detector ->
            println("Metric name:
 ${detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector?.metricName}")
            println("State: ${detector.stateValue}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DisableAlarmActions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Get started with alarms
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var disableAlarmActionsResult = await
 _amazonCloudWatch.DisableAlarmActionsAsync(
```

```
            new DisableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return disableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DisableAlarmActionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Disable the alarm actions.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::DisableAlarmActionsRequest
 disableAlarmActionsRequest;
        disableAlarmActionsRequest.AddAlarmNames(alarm_name);

        auto disableAlarmActionsOutcome =
 cw.DisableAlarmActions(disableAlarmActionsRequest);
        if (!disableAlarmActionsOutcome.IsSuccess())
        {
```

```
            std::cout << "Failed to disable actions for alarm " << alarm_name <<
                ": " << disableAlarmActionsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully disabled actions for alarm " <<
                alarm_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable actions for an alarm

The following example uses the `disable-alarm-actions` command to disable all actions for the alarm named myalarm.:

```
aws cloudwatch disable-alarm-actions --alarm-names myalarm
```

This command returns to the prompt if successful.

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DisableAlarmActionsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DisableAlarmActions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <alarmName>

                Where:
                  alarmName - An alarm name to disable (for example, MyAlarm).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alarmName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        disableActions(cw, alarmName);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void disableActions(CloudWatchClient cw, String alarmName) {
        try {
            DisableAlarmActionsRequest request =
 DisableAlarmActionsRequest.builder()
                    .alarmNames(alarmName)
                    .build();
```

```
            cw.disableAlarmActions(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully disabled actions on alarm %s",
 alarmName);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DisableAlarmActionsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DisableAlarmActionsCommand({
    AlarmNames: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME, // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

```
export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

cw.disableAlarmActions(
  { AlarmNames: ["Web_Server_CPU_Utilization"] },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data);
    }
  }
```

```
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disableActions(alarmName: String) {
    val request =
        DisableAlarmActionsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarmName)
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.disableAlarmActions(request)
        println("Successfully disabled actions on alarm $alarmName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def enable_alarm_actions(self, alarm_name, enable):
        """
        Enables or disables actions on the specified alarm. Alarm actions can be
        used to send notifications or automate responses when an alarm enters a
        particular state.

        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param enable: When True, actions are enabled for the alarm. Otherwise,
 they
                       disabled.
        """
        try:
            alarm = self.cloudwatch_resource.Alarm(alarm_name)
            if enable:
                alarm.enable_actions()
            else:
                alarm.disable_actions()
            logger.info(
                "%s actions for alarm %s.",
                "Enabled" if enable else "Disabled",
                alarm_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't %s actions alarm %s.",
                "enable" if enable else "disable",
                alarm_name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Disables an alarm in Amazon CloudWatch.
#
# Prerequisites.
#
# - The alarm to disable.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param alarm_name [String] The name of the alarm to disable.
# @return [Boolean] true if the alarm was disabled; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless alarm_actions_disabled?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'ObjectsInBucket'
#   )
def alarm_actions_disabled?(cloudwatch_client, alarm_name)
  cloudwatch_client.disable_alarm_actions(alarm_names: [alarm_name])
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error disabling alarm actions: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  alarm_name = 'ObjectsInBucket'
  alarm_description = 'Objects exist in this bucket for more than 1 day.'
  metric_name = 'NumberOfObjects'
  # Notify this Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when
  # the alarm transitions to the ALARM state.
  alarm_actions = ['arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:111111111111:Default_CloudWatch_Alarms_Topic']
```

```
namespace = 'AWS/S3'
statistic = 'Average'
dimensions = [
  {
    name: "BucketName",
    value: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  },
  {
    name: 'StorageType',
    value: 'AllStorageTypes'
  }
]
period = 86_400 # Daily (24 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 86400 seconds).
unit = 'Count'
evaluation_periods = 1 # More than one day.
threshold = 1 # One object.
comparison_operator = 'GreaterThanThreshold' # More than one object.
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon CloudWatch.
region = 'us-east-1'

cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: region)

if alarm_created_or_updated?(
  cloudwatch_client,
  alarm_name,
  alarm_description,
  metric_name,
  alarm_actions,
  namespace,
  statistic,
  dimensions,
  period,
  unit,
  evaluation_periods,
  threshold,
  comparison_operator
)
  puts "Alarm '#{alarm_name}' created or updated."
else
  puts "Could not create or update alarm '#{alarm_name}'."
end

if alarm_actions_disabled?(cloudwatch_client, alarm_name)
  puts "Alarm '#{alarm_name}' disabled."
```

```
  else
    puts "Could not disable alarm '#{alarm_name}'."
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Disables actions on the specified alarm. "
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->disablealarmactions(
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm actions disabled.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `EnableAlarmActions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var enableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.EnableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new EnableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return enableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/EnableAlarmActionsRequest.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/PutMetricAlarmRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Enable the alarm actions.

```
    Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
    Aws::CloudWatch::Model::PutMetricAlarmRequest request;
    request.SetAlarmName(alarm_name);
    request.SetComparisonOperator(
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::ComparisonOperator::GreaterThanThreshold);
    request.SetEvaluationPeriods(1);
    request.SetMetricName("CPUUtilization");
    request.SetNamespace("AWS/EC2");
    request.SetPeriod(60);
    request.SetStatistic(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Statistic::Average);
    request.SetThreshold(70.0);
    request.SetActionsEnabled(false);
    request.SetAlarmDescription("Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%");
    request.SetUnit(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::StandardUnit::Seconds);
    request.AddAlarmActions(actionArn);

    Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Dimension dimension;
    dimension.SetName("InstanceId");
    dimension.SetValue(instanceId);
    request.AddDimensions(dimension);
```

```
    auto outcome = cw.PutMetricAlarm(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
    {
        std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch alarm:" <<
            outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return;
    }

    Aws::CloudWatch::Model::EnableAlarmActionsRequest enable_request;
    enable_request.AddAlarmNames(alarm_name);

    auto enable_outcome = cw.EnableAlarmActions(enable_request);
    if (!enable_outcome.IsSuccess())
    {
        std::cout << "Failed to enable alarm actions:" <<
            enable_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return;
    }

    std::cout << "Successfully created alarm " << alarm_name <<
        " and enabled actions on it." << std::endl;
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable all actions for an alarm

The following example uses the `enable-alarm-actions` command to enable all actions for the alarm named myalarm.:

```
aws cloudwatch enable-alarm-actions --alarm-names myalarm
```

This command returns to the prompt if successful.

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.EnableAlarmActionsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class EnableAlarmActions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <alarmName>

                Where:
                  alarmName - An alarm name to enable (for example, MyAlarm).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alarm = args[0];
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        enableActions(cw, alarm);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void enableActions(CloudWatchClient cw, String alarm) {
        try {
            EnableAlarmActionsRequest request =
 EnableAlarmActionsRequest.builder()
                    .alarmNames(alarm)
                    .build();

            cw.enableAlarmActions(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully enabled actions on alarm %s", alarm);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { EnableAlarmActionsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
```

```
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new EnableAlarmActionsCommand({
    AlarmNames: [process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME], // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  AlarmName: "Web_Server_CPU_Utilization",
  ComparisonOperator: "GreaterThanThreshold",
  EvaluationPeriods: 1,
  MetricName: "CPUUtilization",
  Namespace: "AWS/EC2",
  Period: 60,
  Statistic: "Average",
  Threshold: 70.0,
  ActionsEnabled: true,
  AlarmActions: ["ACTION_ARN"],
  AlarmDescription: "Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%",
  Dimensions: [
    {
      Name: "InstanceId",
      Value: "INSTANCE_ID",
    },
  ],
  Unit: "Percent",
};

cw.putMetricAlarm(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Alarm action added", data);
    var paramsEnableAlarmAction = {
      AlarmNames: [params.AlarmName],
    };
    cw.enableAlarmActions(paramsEnableAlarmAction, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Alarm action enabled", data);
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun enableActions(alarm: String) {
    val request =
        EnableAlarmActionsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarm)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.enableAlarmActions(request)
        println("Successfully enabled actions on alarm $alarm")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def enable_alarm_actions(self, alarm_name, enable):
        """
        Enables or disables actions on the specified alarm. Alarm actions can be
        used to send notifications or automate responses when an alarm enters a
        particular state.

        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param enable: When True, actions are enabled for the alarm. Otherwise,
they
                       disabled.
        """
        try:
            alarm = self.cloudwatch_resource.Alarm(alarm_name)
            if enable:
                alarm.enable_actions()
            else:
                alarm.disable_actions()
            logger.info(
                "%s actions for alarm %s.",
                "Enabled" if enable else "Disabled",
                alarm_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't %s actions alarm %s.",
                "enable" if enable else "disable",
                alarm_name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Enable actions on the specified alarm."
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->enablealarmactions(
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm actions enabled.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `GetDashboard` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDashboard`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get information on a dashboard.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
    /// <returns>A JSON object with dashboard information.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDashboard(string dashboardName)
    {
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetDashboardAsync(
            new GetDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName
            });

        return dashboardResponse.DashboardBody;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDashboard in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about a Dashboard

The following `get-dashboard` example displays information about the dashboard named `Dashboard-A` in the specified account.

```
aws cloudwatch get-dashboard \
    --dashboard-name Dashboard-A
```

Output:

```
{
    "DashboardArn": "arn:aws:cloudwatch::123456789012:dashboard/Dashboard-A",
    "DashboardBody": "{\"widgets\":[{\"type\":\"metric\",\"x\":0,\"y\":0,\"width
\":6,\"height\":6,\"properties\":{\"view\":\"timeSeries\",\"stacked\":false,
\"metrics\":[[\"AWS/EC2\",\"NetworkIn\",\"InstanceId\",\"i-0131f062232ade043\"],
[\".\",\"NetworkOut\",\".\",\".\"]],\"region\":\"us-east-1\"}}]}",
    "DashboardName": "Dashboard-A"
}
```

For more information, see Amazon CloudWatch dashboards in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDashboard in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the arn the body of the specified dashboard.

```
Get-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

Output:

```
DashboardArn                                          DashboardBody
------------                                          -------------
arn:aws:cloudwatch::123456789012:dashboard/Dashboard1 {...
```

- For API details, see GetDashboard in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the arn the body of the specified dashboard.

```
Get-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

Output:

```
DashboardArn                                          DashboardBody
------------                                          -------------
arn:aws:cloudwatch::123456789012:dashboard/Dashboard1 {...
```

- For API details, see GetDashboard in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetMetricData` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetMetricData`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get data for CloudWatch metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="minutesOfData">The number of minutes of data to include.</
param>
    /// <param name="useDescendingTime">True to return the data descending by
 time.</param>
    /// <param name="endDateUtc">The end date for the data, in UTC.</param>
    /// <param name="maxDataPoints">The maximum data points to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dataQueries">Optional data queries to include.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the requested metric data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricDataResult>> GetMetricData(int minutesOfData,
 bool useDescendingTime, DateTime? endDateUtc = null,
        int maxDataPoints = 0, List<MetricDataQuery>? dataQueries = null)
    {
        var metricData = new List<MetricDataResult>();
        // If no end time is provided, use the current time for the end time.
        endDateUtc ??= DateTime.UtcNow;
        var timeZoneOffset =
 TimeZoneInfo.Local.GetUtcOffset(endDateUtc.Value.ToLocalTime());
        var startTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value.AddMinutes(-minutesOfData);
        // The timezone string should be in the format +0000, so use the timezone
 offset to format it correctly.
        var timeZoneString = $"{timeZoneOffset.Hours:D2}
{timeZoneOffset.Minutes:D2}";
        var paginatedMetricData = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.GetMetricData(
            new GetMetricDataRequest()
            {
                StartTimeUtc = startTimeUtc,
                EndTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value,
```

```
                LabelOptions = new LabelOptions { Timezone = timeZoneString },
                ScanBy = useDescendingTime ? ScanBy.TimestampDescending :
 ScanBy.TimestampAscending,
                MaxDatapoints = maxDataPoints,
                MetricDataQueries = dataQueries,
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedMetricData.MetricDataResults)
        {
            metricData.Add(data);
        }
        return metricData;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get the Average Total IOPS for the specified EC2 using math expression

The following `get-metric-data` example retrieves CloudWatch metric values for the EC2 instance with InstanceID `i-abcdef` using metric math exprssion that combines `EBSReadOps` and `EBSWriteOps` metrics.

```
aws cloudwatch get-metric-data \
    --metric-data-queries file://file.json \
    --start-time 2024-09-29T22:10:00Z \
    --end-time 2024-09-29T22:15:00Z
```

Contents of `file.json`:

```
[
    {
        "Id": "m3",
        "Expression": "(m1+m2)/300",
        "Label": "Avg Total IOPS"
    },
    {
        "Id": "m1",
```

```
        "MetricStat": {
            "Metric": {
                "Namespace": "AWS/EC2",
                "MetricName": "EBSReadOps",
                "Dimensions": [
                    {
                        "Name": "InstanceId",
                        "Value": "i-abcdef"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Period": 300,
            "Stat": "Sum",
            "Unit": "Count"
        },
        "ReturnData": false
    },
    {
        "Id": "m2",
        "MetricStat": {
            "Metric": {
                "Namespace": "AWS/EC2",
                "MetricName": "EBSWriteOps",
                "Dimensions": [
                    {
                        "Name": "InstanceId",
                        "Value": "i-abcdef"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Period": 300,
            "Stat": "Sum",
            "Unit": "Count"
        },
        "ReturnData": false
    }
]
```

Output:

```
{
    "MetricDataResults": [
        {
```

```
            "Id": "m3",
            "Label": "Avg Total IOPS",
            "Timestamps": [
                "2024-09-29T22:10:00+00:00"
            ],
            "Values": [
                96.85
            ],
            "StatusCode": "Complete"
        }
    ],
    "Messages": []
}
```

Example 2: To monitor the estimated AWS charges using CloudWatch billing metrics

The following `get-metric-data` example retrieves `EstimatedCharges` CloudWatch metric from AWS/Billing namespace.

```
aws cloudwatch get-metric-data \
    --metric-data-queries '[{"Id":"m1","MetricStat":{"Metric":
{"Namespace":"AWS/Billing","MetricName":"EstimatedCharges","Dimensions":
[{"Name":"Currency","Value":"USD"}]},"Period":21600,"Stat":"Maximum"}}]' \
    --start-time 2024-09-26T12:00:00Z \
    --end-time 2024-09-26T18:00:00Z \
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "MetricDataResults": [
        {
            "Id": "m1",
            "Label": "EstimatedCharges",
            "Timestamps": [
                "2024-09-26T12:00:00+00:00"
            ],
            "Values": [
                542.38
            ],
            "StatusCode": "Complete"
        }
    ],
```

```
    "Messages": []
}
```

For more information, see Using math expressions with CloudWatch metrics in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves custom metric data from the AWS CloudWatch service.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the custom metric
information
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric data
has been retrieved
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getCustomMetricDataAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               // Read values from the JSON file.
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for
further processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });
```

```
        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
            try {
                // Parse the JSON string to extract relevant values.
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                // Set the current time and date range for metric query.
                Instant nowDate = Instant.now();
                long hours = 1;
                long minutes = 30;
                Instant endTime = nowDate.plus(hours,
ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(minutes, ChronoUnit.MINUTES);

                Metric met = Metric.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                MetricStat metStat = MetricStat.builder()
                    .stat("Maximum")
                    .period(60)  // Assuming period in seconds
                    .metric(met)
                    .build();

                MetricDataQuery dataQuery = MetricDataQuery.builder()
                    .metricStat(metStat)
                    .id("foo2")
                    .returnData(true)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDataQuery> dq = new ArrayList<>();
                dq.add(dataQuery);

                GetMetricDataRequest getMetricDataRequest =
GetMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .maxDatapoints(10)
                    .scanBy(ScanBy.TIMESTAMP_DESCENDING)
                    .startTime(nowDate)
                    .endTime(endTime)
```

```
                    .metricDataQueries(dq)
                    .build();

                // Call the async method for CloudWatch data retrieval.
                return getAsyncClient().getMetricData(getMetricDataRequest);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<MetricDataResult> data = response.metricDataResults();
            for (MetricDataResult item : data) {
                logger.info("The label is: {}", item.label());
                logger.info("The status code is: {}",
 item.statusCode().toString());
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get metric data", exception);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getCustomMetricData(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
```

```
    // Set the date.
    val nowDate = Instant.now()
    val hours: Long = 1
    val minutes: Long = 30
    val date2 =
        nowDate.plus(hours, ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(
            minutes,
            ChronoUnit.MINUTES,
        )

    val met =
        Metric {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }

    val metStat =
        MetricStat {
            stat = "Maximum"
            period = 1
            metric = met
        }

    val dataQUery =
        MetricDataQuery {
            metricStat = metStat
            id = "foo2"
            returnData = true
        }

    val dq = ArrayList<MetricDataQuery>()
    dq.add(dataQUery)
    val getMetReq =
        GetMetricDataRequest {
            maxDatapoints = 10
            scanBy = ScanBy.TimestampDescending
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(nowDate)
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(date2)
            metricDataQueries = dq
        }
```

```
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricData(getMetReq)
        response.metricDataResults?.forEach { item ->
            println("The label is ${item.label}")
            println("The status code is ${item.statusCode}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetMetricStatistics` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetMetricStatistics`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get billing statistics using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing statistics.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<Datapoint>> SetupBillingStatistics()
    {
```

```
        // Make a request for EstimatedCharges with a period of one day for the
past seven days.
        var billingStatistics = await _cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatistics(
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            new List<string>() { "Maximum" },
            new List<Dimension>() { new Dimension { Name = "Currency", Value =
"USD" } },
            7,
            86400);

        billingStatistics = billingStatistics.OrderBy(n => n.Timestamp).ToList();

        return billingStatistics;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to get statistics for a specific CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="statistics">The list of statistics to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dimensions">The list of dimensions to include.</param>
    /// <param name="days">The number of days in the past to include.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period for the data.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of DataPoint objects for the statistics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Datapoint>> GetMetricStatistics(string
metricNamespace,
        string metricName, List<string> statistics, List<Dimension> dimensions,
int days, int period)
    {
        var metricStatistics = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(
            new GetMetricStatisticsRequest()
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName,
                Dimensions = dimensions,
                Statistics = statistics,
                StartTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-days),
                EndTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                Period = period
            });

        return metricStatistics.Datapoints;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the CPU utilization per EC2 instance

The following example uses the `get-metric-statistics` command to get the CPU utilization for an EC2 instance with the ID i-abcdef.

```
aws cloudwatch get-metric-statistics --metric-name CPUUtilization --start-
time 2014-04-08T23:18:00Z --end-time 2014-04-09T23:18:00Z --period 3600 --
namespace AWS/EC2 --statistics Maximum --dimensions Name=InstanceId,Value=i-
abcdef
```

Output:

```
{
    "Datapoints": [
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T11:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 44.79,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T20:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T19:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 50.85,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T09:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T03:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 76.84,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T21:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 48.96,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T14:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T08:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T16:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 45.55,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T06:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T13:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 45.08,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T05:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T18:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 46.88,
```

```
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T17:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 52.08,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T07:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.92,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T02:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 51.23,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T12:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.67,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-08T23:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 46.88,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T10:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 51.91,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T04:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 47.13,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T15:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 48.96,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T00:18:00Z",
```

```
            "Maximum": 48.16,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-04-09T01:18:00Z",
            "Maximum": 49.18,
            "Unit": "Percent"
        }
    ],
    "Label": "CPUUtilization"
}
```

Specifying multiple dimensions

The following example illustrates how to specify multiple dimensions. Each dimension is specified as a Name/Value pair, with a comma between the name and the value. Multiple dimensions are separated by a space. If a single metric includes multiple dimensions, you must specify a value for every defined dimension.

For more examples using the `get-metric-statistics` command, see Get Statistics for a Metric in the *Amazon CloudWatch Developer Guide*.

```
aws cloudwatch get-metric-statistics --metric-name Buffers --
namespace MyNameSpace --dimensions Name=InstanceID,Value=i-
abcdef Name=InstanceType,Value=m1.small --start-time 2016-10-15T04:00:00Z --end-
time 2016-10-19T07:00:00Z --statistics Average --period 60
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves and displays metric statistics for the specified parameters.
```

```
    *
    * @param nameSpace    the namespace for the metric
    * @param metVal       the name of the metric
    * @param metricOption the statistic to retrieve for the metric (e.g.,
"Maximum", "Average")
    * @param date         the date for which to retrieve the metric statistics,
in the format "yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'"
    * @param myDimension  the dimension(s) to filter the metric statistics by
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric
statistics have been retrieved and displayed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse>
getAndDisplayMetricStatisticsAsync(String nameSpace, String metVal,

           String metricOption, String date, Dimension myDimension) {

       Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
       Instant endDate = Instant.now();

       // Building the request for metric statistics.
       GetMetricStatisticsRequest statisticsRequest =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
           .endTime(endDate)
           .startTime(start)
           .dimensions(myDimension)
           .metricName(metVal)
           .namespace(nameSpace)
           .period(86400) // 1 day period
           .statistics(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   List<Datapoint> data = response.datapoints();
                   if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                       for (Datapoint datapoint : data) {
                           logger.info("Timestamp: {} Maximum value: {}",
datapoint.timestamp(), datapoint.maximum());
                       }
                   } else {
                       logger.info("The returned data list is empty");
                   }
               } else {
```

```
                    logger.info("Failed to get metric statistics: {} ",
 exception.getMessage());
                }
            })
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error while getting metric
 statistics: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAndDisplayMetricStatistics(
    nameSpaceVal: String,
    metVal: String,
    metricOption: String,
    date: String,
    myDimension: Dimension,
) {
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDate = Instant.now()
    val statisticsRequest =
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest {
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDate)
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            dimensions = listOf(myDimension)
```

```
            metricName = metVal
            namespace = nameSpaceVal
            period = 86400
            statistics = listOf(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
        }

    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
        val data = response.datapoints
        if (data != null) {
            if (data.isNotEmpty()) {
                for (datapoint in data) {
                    println("Timestamp: ${datapoint.timestamp} Maximum value:
 ${datapoint.maximum}")
                }
            } else {
                println("The returned data list is empty")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
```

```
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def get_metric_statistics(self, namespace, name, start, end, period,
stat_types):
        """
        Gets statistics for a metric within a specified time span. Metrics are
grouped
        into the specified period.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param start: The UTC start time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param end: The UTC end time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param period: The period, in seconds, in which to group metrics. The
period
                       must match the granularity of the metric, which depends on
                       the metric's age. For example, metrics that are older than
                       three hours have a one-minute granularity, so the period
must
                       be at least 60 and must be a multiple of 60.
        :param stat_types: The type of statistics to retrieve, such as average
value
                           or maximum value.
        :return: The retrieved statistics for the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            stats = metric.get_statistics(
                StartTime=start, EndTime=end, Period=period,
Statistics=stat_types
            )
            logger.info(
                "Got %s statistics for %s.", len(stats["Datapoints"]),
stats["Label"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get statistics for %s.%s.", namespace,
name)
            raise
        else:
            return stats
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetMetricWidgetImage` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetMetricWidgetImage`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get an image for a metric graphed over time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="stat">The name of the stat to chart.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period to use for the chart.</param>
    /// <returns>A memory stream for the chart image.</returns>
    public async Task<MemoryStream> GetTimeSeriesMetricImage(string
metricNamespace, string metric, string stat, int period)
    {
        var metricImageWidget = new
        {
            title = "Example Metric Graph",
            view = "timeSeries",
            stacked = false,
            period = period,
```

```
            width = 1400,
            height = 600,
            metrics = new List<List<object>>
                { new() { metricNamespace, metric, new { stat } } }
        };

        var metricImageWidgetString =
JsonSerializer.Serialize(metricImageWidget);
        var imageResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricWidgetImageAsync(
            new GetMetricWidgetImageRequest()
            {
                MetricWidget = metricImageWidgetString
            });

        return imageResponse.MetricWidgetImage;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save a metric image to a file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="memoryStream">The MemoryStream for the metric image.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The path to the file.</returns>
    public string SaveMetricImage(MemoryStream memoryStream, string metricName)
    {
        var metricFileName = $"{metricName}_{DateTime.Now.Ticks}.png";
        using var sr = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
        // Writes the memory stream to a file.
        File.WriteAllBytes(metricFileName, memoryStream.ToArray());
        var filePath = Path.Join(AppDomain.CurrentDomain.BaseDirectory,
            metricFileName);
        return filePath;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a snapshot graph of CPUUtilization

The following `get-metric-widget-image` example retrieves snapshot graph for the metric `CPUUtilization` of the EC2 instance with the ID `i-abcde` and saves the retrieved image as a file named "image.png" on your local machine.

```
aws cloudwatch get-metric-widget-image \
    --metric-widget '{"metrics":[["AWS/EC2","CPUUtilization","InstanceId","i-abcde"]]}' \
    --output-format png \
    --output text | base64 --decode > image.png
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves and saves a custom metric image to a file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file to save the metric image to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the image has been saved to the file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> downloadAndSaveMetricImageAsync(String fileName) {
       logger.info("Getting Image data for custom metric.");
       String myJSON = """
             {
                 "title": "Example Metric Graph",
                 "view": "timeSeries",
                 "stacked ": false,
                 "period": 10,
```

```
                  "width": 1400,
                  "height": 600,
                  "metrics": [
                      [
                      "AWS/Billing",
                      "EstimatedCharges",
                      "Currency",
                      "USD"
                     ]
                  ]
             }
           """;

       GetMetricWidgetImageRequest imageRequest =
GetMetricWidgetImageRequest.builder()
           .metricWidget(myJSON)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               SdkBytes sdkBytes = response.metricWidgetImage();
               byte[] bytes = sdkBytes.asByteArray();
               return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                   try {
                       File outputFile = new File(fileName);
                       try (FileOutputStream outputStream = new
FileOutputStream(outputFile)) {
                           outputStream.write(bytes);
                       }
                   } catch (IOException e) {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write image to
file", e);
                   }
               });
           })
           .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Error getting and saving metric
image", exception);
               } else {
                   logger.info("Image data saved successfully to {}", fileName);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAndOpenMetricImage(fileName: String) {
    println("Getting Image data for custom metric.")
    val myJSON = """{
        "title": "Example Metric Graph",
        "view": "timeSeries",
        "stacked ": false,
        "period": 10,
        "width": 1400,
        "height": 600,
        "metrics": [
            [
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            "Currency",
            "USD"
            ]
        ]
        }"""

    val imageRequest =
        GetMetricWidgetImageRequest {
            metricWidget = myJSON
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
        val bytes = response.metricWidgetImage
        if (bytes != null) {
```

```
            File(fileName).writeBytes(bytes)
        }
    }
    println("You have successfully written data to $fileName")
}
```

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListDashboards` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDashboards`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of DashboardEntry objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardEntry>> ListDashboards()
    {
        var results = new List<DashboardEntry>();
        var paginateDashboards = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListDashboards(
            new ListDashboardsRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var data in paginateDashboards.DashboardEntries)
        {
            results.Add(data);
        }

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of Dashboards

The following `list-dashboards` example lists all the Dashboards in the specified account.

```
aws cloudwatch list-dashboards
```

Output:

```
{
    "DashboardEntries": [
        {
            "DashboardName": "Dashboard-A",
            "DashboardArn": "arn:aws:cloudwatch::123456789012:dashboard/
Dashboard-A",
            "LastModified": "2024-10-11T18:40:11+00:00",
            "Size": 271
        },
        {
            "DashboardName": "Dashboard-B",
            "DashboardArn": "arn:aws:cloudwatch::123456789012:dashboard/
Dashboard-B",
            "LastModified": "2024-10-11T18:44:41+00:00",
            "Size": 522
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Amazon CloudWatch dashboards in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Lists the available dashboards.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
finished.
    * The future will complete exceptionally if an error occurs while listing
the dashboards.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> listDashboardsAsync() {
       ListDashboardsRequest listDashboardsRequest =
ListDashboardsRequest.builder().build();
       ListDashboardsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listDashboardsPaginator(listDashboardsRequest);
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.dashboardEntries().forEach(entry -> {
               logger.info("Dashboard name is: {} ", entry.dashboardName());
               logger.info("Dashboard ARN is: {} ", entry.dashboardArn());
           });
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           logger.info("Failed to list dashboards: {} ", ex.getMessage());
           throw new RuntimeException("Error occurred while listing dashboards",
ex);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listDashboards() {
    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listDashboardsPaginated({})
            .transform { it.dashboardEntries?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.dashboardName}")
                println("Dashboard ARN is ${obj.dashboardArn}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the collection of dashboards for your account.

```
Get-CWDashboardList
```

Output:

```
DashboardArn DashboardName LastModified        Size
------------ ------------- ------------        ----
arn:...      Dashboard1    7/6/2017 8:14:15 PM 252
```

Example 2: Returns the collection of dashboards for your account whose names start with the prefix 'dev'.

```
Get-CWDashboardList -DashboardNamePrefix dev
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of dashboards for your account.

```
Get-CWDashboardList
```

Output:

```
DashboardArn DashboardName LastModified        Size
------------ ------------- ------------        ----
arn:...      Dashboard1    7/6/2017 8:14:15 PM 252
```

Example 2: Returns the collection of dashboards for your account whose names start with the prefix 'dev'.

```
Get-CWDashboardList -DashboardNamePrefix dev
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListMetrics` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListMetrics`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List metrics available, optionally within a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">Optional CloudWatch namespace to use when
listing metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="filter">Optional dimension filter.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">Optional metric name filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of metrics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Metric>> ListMetrics(string? metricNamespace = null,
DimensionFilter? filter = null, string? metricName = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Metric>();
        var paginateMetrics = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListMetrics(
            new ListMetricsRequest
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                Dimensions = filter != null ? new List<DimensionFilter>
{ filter } : null,
                MetricName = metricName
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var metric in paginateMetrics.Metrics)
        {
            results.Add(metric);
        }

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/ListMetricsRequest.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/ListMetricsResult.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>
```

List the metrics.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::ListMetricsRequest request;

        if (argc > 1)
        {
            request.SetMetricName(argv[1]);
        }

        if (argc > 2)
        {
            request.SetNamespace(argv[2]);
        }

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            auto outcome = cw.ListMetrics(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
            {
```

```
                std::cout << "Failed to list CloudWatch metrics:" <<
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
            }

            if (!header)
            {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(48) << "MetricName" <<
                    std::setw(32) << "Namespace" << "DimensionNameValuePairs" <<
                    std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &metrics = outcome.GetResult().GetMetrics();
            for (const auto &metric : metrics)
            {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(48) <<
                    metric.GetMetricName() << std::setw(32) <<
                    metric.GetNamespace();
                const auto &dimensions = metric.GetDimensions();
                for (auto iter = dimensions.cbegin();
                    iter != dimensions.cend(); ++iter)
                {
                    const auto &dimkv = *iter;
                    std::cout << dimkv.GetName() << " = " << dimkv.GetValue();
                    if (iter + 1 != dimensions.cend())
                    {
                        std::cout << ", ";
                    }
                }
                std::cout << std::endl;
            }

            const auto &next_token = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            request.SetNextToken(next_token);
            done = next_token.empty();
        }
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the metrics for Amazon SNS

The following `list-metrics` example displays the metrics for Amazon SNS.

```
aws cloudwatch list-metrics \
    --namespace "AWS/SNS"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Metrics": [
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "NotifyMe"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "PublishSize"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "CFO"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "PublishSize"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "NotifyMe"
                }
            ],
```

```
            "MetricName": "NumberOfNotificationsFailed"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "NotifyMe"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "NumberOfNotificationsDelivered"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "NotifyMe"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "NumberOfMessagesPublished"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "CFO"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "NumberOfMessagesPublished"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "CFO"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "NumberOfNotificationsDelivered"
        },
        {
            "Namespace": "AWS/SNS",
```

```
            "Dimensions": [
                {
                    "Name": "TopicName",
                    "Value": "CFO"
                }
            ],
            "MetricName": "NumberOfNotificationsFailed"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves a list of metric names for the specified namespace.
     *
     * @param namespace the namespace for which to retrieve the metric names
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains an
{@link ArrayList} of
     * the metric names in the specified namespace
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while listing the metrics
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> listMetsAsync(String namespace) {
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
            .namespace(namespace)
            .build();

        ListMetricsPublisher metricsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listMetricsPaginator(request);
        Set<String> metSet = new HashSet<>();
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = metricsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.metrics().forEach(metric -> {
```

```
                String metricName = metric.metricName();
                metSet.add(metricName);
            });
        });

        return future
            .thenApply(ignored -> new ArrayList<>(metSet))
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list metrics: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import {
  CloudWatchServiceException,
  ListMetricsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  // Use the AWS console to see available namespaces and metric names. Custom
 metrics can also be created.
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
viewing_metrics_with_cloudwatch.html
  const command = new ListMetricsCommand({
    Dimensions: [
      {
```

```
        Name: "LogGroupName",
      },
    ],
    MetricName: "IncomingLogEvents",
    Namespace: "AWS/Logs",
  });

  try {
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(`Metrics count: ${response.Metrics?.length}`);
    return response;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof CloudWatchServiceException) {
      console.error(`Error from CloudWatch. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
```

```
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  Dimensions: [
    {
      Name: "LogGroupName" /* required */,
    },
  ],
  MetricName: "IncomingLogEvents",
  Namespace: "AWS/Logs",
};

cw.listMetrics(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Metrics", JSON.stringify(data.Metrics));
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listMets(namespaceVal: String?): ArrayList<String>? {
    val metList = ArrayList<String>()
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
```

```
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val reponse = cwClient.listMetrics(request)
        reponse.metrics?.forEach { metrics ->
            val data = metrics.metricName
            if (!metList.contains(data)) {
                metList.add(data!!)
            }
        }
    }
    return metList
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def list_metrics(self, namespace, name, recent=False):
        """
        Gets the metrics within a namespace that have the specified name.
        If the metric has no dimensions, a single metric is returned.
        Otherwise, metrics for all dimensions are returned.
```

```
        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param recent: When True, only metrics that have been active in the last
                       three hours are returned.
        :return: An iterator that yields the retrieved metrics.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Namespace": namespace, "MetricName": name}
            if recent:
                kwargs["RecentlyActive"] = "PT3H"  # List past 3 hours only
            metric_iter = self.cloudwatch_resource.metrics.filter(**kwargs)
            logger.info("Got metrics for %s.%s.", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get metrics for %s.%s.", namespace, name)
            raise
        else:
            return metric_iter
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Lists available metrics for a metric namespace in Amazon CloudWatch.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param metric_namespace [String] The namespace of the metric.
# @example
#   list_metrics_for_namespace(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'SITE/TRAFFIC'
```

```
#   )
def list_metrics_for_namespace(cloudwatch_client, metric_namespace)
  response = cloudwatch_client.list_metrics(namespace: metric_namespace)

  if response.metrics.count.positive?
    response.metrics.each do |metric|
      puts "  Metric name: #{metric.metric_name}"
      if metric.dimensions.count.positive?
        puts '    Dimensions:'
        metric.dimensions.each do |dimension|
          puts "      Name: #{dimension.name}, Value: #{dimension.value}"
        end
      else
        puts 'No dimensions found.'
      end
    end
  else
    puts "No metrics found for namespace '#{metric_namespace}'. " \
      'Note that it could take up to 15 minutes for recently-added metrics ' \
      'to become available.'
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  metric_namespace = 'SITE/TRAFFIC'
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon CloudWatch.
  region = 'us-east-1'

  cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: region)

  # Add three datapoints.
  puts 'Continuing...' unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
    cloudwatch_client,
    metric_namespace,
    'UniqueVisitors',
    'SiteName',
    'example.com',
    5_885.0,
    'Count'
  )

  puts 'Continuing...' unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
    cloudwatch_client,
```

```
    metric_namespace,
    'UniqueVisits',
    'SiteName',
    'example.com',
    8_628.0,
    'Count'
  )

  puts 'Continuing...' unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
    cloudwatch_client,
    metric_namespace,
    'PageViews',
    'PageURL',
    'example.html',
    18_057.0,
    'Count'
  )

  puts "Metrics for namespace '#{metric_namespace}':"
  list_metrics_for_namespace(cloudwatch_client, metric_namespace)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "The following list-metrics example displays the metrics for Amazon
 CloudWatch."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_cwt->listmetrics(            " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
```

```
          iv_namespace = iv_namespace ).
        DATA(lt_metrics) = oo_result->get_metrics( ).
        MESSAGE 'Metrics retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `PutAnomalyDetector` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutAnomalyDetector`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Add an anomaly detector for a single metric.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="anomalyDetector">A single metric anomaly detector.</param>
   /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> PutAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
   {
       var putAlarmDetectorResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.PutAnomalyDetectorAsync(
           new PutAnomalyDetectorRequest()
           {
```

```
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return putAlarmDetectorResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an anomaly detection model

The following `put-anomaly-detector` example creates an anomaly detection model for a CloudWatch metric.

```
aws cloudwatch put-anomaly-detector \
    --namespace AWS/Logs \
    --metric-name IncomingBytes \
    --stat SampleCount
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using CloudWatch anomaly detection in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Adds an anomaly detector for the given file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the anomaly detector
configuration
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly
detector has been added
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> addAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root
node
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file",
e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           try {
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
                   .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                   .stat("Maximum")
                   .build();

               PutAnomalyDetectorRequest anomalyDetectorRequest =
PutAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
                   .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
                   .build();

               return
getAsyncClient().putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest).thenAccept(response
-> {
```

```
                    logger.info("Added anomaly detector for metric {}",
customMetricName);
                });
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create anomaly detector",
e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error adding anomaly detector",
exception);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addAnomalyDetector(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
        }
```

```
    val anomalyDetectorRequest =
        PutAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest)
        println("Added anomaly detector for metric $customMetricName.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `PutDashboard` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutDashboard`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set up a dashboard using a call to the wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> SetupDashboard(
        string customMetricNamespace, string customMetricName, string
dashboardName)
    {
        // Get the dashboard model from configuration.
        var newDashboard = new DashboardModel();
        _configuration.GetSection("dashboardExampleBody").Bind(newDashboard);

        // Add a new metric to the dashboard.
        newDashboard.Widgets.Add(new Widget
        {
            Height = 8,
            Width = 8,
            Y = 8,
            X = 0,
            Type = "metric",
            Properties = new Properties
            {
                Metrics = new List<List<object>>
                    { new() { customMetricNamespace, customMetricName } },
                View = "timeSeries",
                Region = "us-east-1",
                Stat = "Sum",
                Period = 86400,
                YAxis = new YAxis { Left = new Left { Min = 0, Max = 100 } },
                Title = "Custom Metric Widget",
                LiveData = true,
                Sparkline = true,
                Trend = true,
                Stacked = false,
                SetPeriodToTimeRange = false
            }
        });

        var newDashboardString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(newDashboard,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            { DefaultIgnoreCondition = JsonIgnoreCondition.WhenWritingNull });
        var validationMessages =
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutDashboard(dashboardName,
newDashboardString);

        return validationMessages;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to create or add to a dashboard with metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name for the dashboard.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardBody">The metric data in JSON for the dashboard.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages for the dashboard.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> PutDashboard(string
 dashboardName,
        string dashboardBody)
    {
        // Updating a dashboard replaces all contents.
        // Best practice is to include a text widget indicating this dashboard
 was created programmatically.
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutDashboardAsync(
            new PutDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName,
                DashboardBody = dashboardBody
            });

        return dashboardResponse.DashboardValidationMessages;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a dashboard

The following `put-dashboard` example creates a dashboard named `Dashboard-A` in the specified account.

```
aws cloudwatch put-dashboard \
    --dashboard-name Dashboard-A \
    --dashboard-body '{"widgets":
[{"height":6,"width":6,"y":0,"x":0,"type":"metric","properties":
{"view":"timeSeries","stacked":false,"metrics":
```

```
[["Namespace","CPUUtilization","Environment","Prod","Type","App"]],"region":"us-east-1"}}]}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "DashboardValidationMessages": []
}
```

For more information, see Creating a CloudWatch dashboard in the *Amazon CloudWatch User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new dashboard with the specified name and metrics from the given
file.
    *
    * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be created
    * @param fileName      the name of the file containing the dashboard body
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of creating the dashboard
    * @throws IOException if there is an error reading the dashboard body from
the file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse>
createDashboardWithMetricsAsync(String dashboardName, String fileName) throws
IOException {
       String dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileName);
       PutDashboardRequest dashboardRequest = PutDashboardRequest.builder()
```

```
            .dashboardName(dashboardName)
            .dashboardBody(dashboardBody)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to create dashboard: {}",
ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Dashboard creation failed", ex);
                } else {
                    // Handle the normal response case
                    logger.info("{} was successfully created.", dashboardName);
                    List<DashboardValidationMessage> messages =
response.dashboardValidationMessages();
                    if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                        logger.info("There are no messages in the new
Dashboard.");
                    } else {
                        for (DashboardValidationMessage message : messages) {
                            logger.info("Message: {}", message.message());
                        }
                    }
                    return response; // Return the response for further use
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDashboardWithMetrics(
```

```
    dashboardNameVal: String,
    fileNameVal: String,
) {
    val dashboardRequest =
        PutDashboardRequest {
            dashboardName = dashboardNameVal
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
        println("$dashboardNameVal was successfully created.")
        val messages = response.dashboardValidationMessages
        if (messages != null) {
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                println("There are no messages in the new Dashboard")
            } else {
                for (message in messages) {
                    println("Message is: ${message.message}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates or updates the dashboard named 'Dashboard1' to include two metric widgets side by side.

```
$dashBody = @"
{
    "widgets":[
        {
             "type":"metric",
             "x":0,
             "y":0,
             "width":12,
```

```
             "height":6,
             "properties":{
                "metrics":[
                   [
                      "AWS/EC2",
                      "CPUUtilization",
                      "InstanceId",
                      "i-012345"
                   ]
                ],
                "period":300,
                "stat":"Average",
                "region":"us-east-1",
                "title":"EC2 Instance CPU"
             }
        },
        {
             "type":"metric",
             "x":12,
             "y":0,
             "width":12,
             "height":6,
             "properties":{
                "metrics":[
                   [
                      "AWS/S3",
                      "BucketSizeBytes",
                      "BucketName",
                      "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
                   ]
                ],
                "period":86400,
                "stat":"Maximum",
                "region":"us-east-1",
                "title":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket bytes"
            }
        }
    ]
}
"@

Write-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1 -DashboardBody $dashBody
```

Example 2: Creates or updates the dashboard, piping the content describing the dashboard into the cmdlet.

```
$dashBody = @"
{
...
}
"@

$dashBody | Write-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates or updates the dashboard named 'Dashboard1' to include two metric widgets side by side.

```
$dashBody = @"
{
    "widgets":[
        {
             "type":"metric",
             "x":0,
             "y":0,
             "width":12,
             "height":6,
             "properties":{
                "metrics":[
                   [
                      "AWS/EC2",
                      "CPUUtilization",
                      "InstanceId",
                      "i-012345"
                   ]
                ],
                "period":300,
                "stat":"Average",
                "region":"us-east-1",
                "title":"EC2 Instance CPU"
             }
        },
        {
```

```
              "type":"metric",
              "x":12,
              "y":0,
              "width":12,
              "height":6,
              "properties":{
                 "metrics":[
                    [
                       "AWS/S3",
                       "BucketSizeBytes",
                       "BucketName",
                       "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
                    ]
                 ],
                 "period":86400,
                 "stat":"Maximum",
                 "region":"us-east-1",
                 "title":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket bytes"
              }
           }
     ]
}
"@

Write-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1 -DashboardBody $dashBody
```

Example 2: Creates or updates the dashboard, piping the content describing the dashboard into the cmdlet.

```
$dashBody = @"
{
...
}
"@

$dashBody | Write-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutMetricAlarm` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with alarms
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Add a metric alarm to send an email when the metric passes a threshold.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="alarmDescription">A description of the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="alarmName">The name for the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="comparison">The type of comparison to use.</param>
   /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric for the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
   /// <param name="threshold">The threshold value for the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional actions to execute when in an alarm
state.</param>
   /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> PutMetricEmailAlarm(string alarmDescription, string
alarmName, ComparisonOperator comparison,
       string metricName, string metricNamespace, double threshold, List<string>
alarmActions = null!)
   {
       try
       {
           var putEmailAlarmResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricAlarmAsync(
               new PutMetricAlarmRequest()
               {
                   AlarmActions = alarmActions,
```

```
                    AlarmDescription = alarmDescription,
                    AlarmName = alarmName,
                    ComparisonOperator = comparison,
                    Threshold = threshold,
                    Namespace = metricNamespace,
                    MetricName = metricName,
                    EvaluationPeriods = 1,
                    Period = 10,
                    Statistic = new Statistic("Maximum"),
                    DatapointsToAlarm = 1,
                    TreatMissingData = "ignore"
                });
            return putEmailAlarmResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException lex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(lex, $"Unable to add alarm {alarmName}. Alarm quota
 has already been reached.");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add specific email actions to a list of action strings for a CloudWatch
 alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accountId">The AccountId for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="region">The region for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="emailTopicName">An Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS)
 topic for the alarm email.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional list of existing alarm actions to
 append to.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of string actions for an alarm.</returns>
    public List<string> AddEmailAlarmAction(string accountId, string region,
        string emailTopicName, List<string>? alarmActions = null)
    {
        alarmActions ??= new List<string>();
        var snsAlarmAction = $"arn:aws:sns:{region}:{accountId}:
{emailTopicName}";
        alarmActions.Add(snsAlarmAction);
        return alarmActions;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/PutMetricAlarmRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Create the alarm to watch the metric.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::PutMetricAlarmRequest request;
        request.SetAlarmName(alarm_name);
        request.SetComparisonOperator(
            Aws::CloudWatch::Model::ComparisonOperator::GreaterThanThreshold);
        request.SetEvaluationPeriods(1);
        request.SetMetricName("CPUUtilization");
        request.SetNamespace("AWS/EC2");
        request.SetPeriod(60);
        request.SetStatistic(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Statistic::Average);
        request.SetThreshold(70.0);
        request.SetActionsEnabled(false);
        request.SetAlarmDescription("Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%");
        request.SetUnit(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::StandardUnit::Seconds);

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Dimension dimension;
        dimension.SetName("InstanceId");
```

```
        dimension.SetValue(instanceId);

        request.AddDimensions(dimension);

        auto outcome = cw.PutMetricAlarm(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch alarm:" <<
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully created CloudWatch alarm " << alarm_name
                << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send an Amazon Simple Notification Service email message when CPU utilization exceeds 70 percent

The following example uses the `put-metric-alarm` command to send an Amazon Simple Notification Service email message when CPU utilization exceeds 70 percent:

```
aws cloudwatch put-metric-alarm --alarm-name cpu-mon --alarm-description "Alarm
 when CPU exceeds 70 percent" --metric-name CPUUtilization --namespace AWS/
EC2 --statistic Average --period 300 --threshold 70 --comparison-
operator GreaterThanThreshold  --dimensions "Name=InstanceId,Value=i-12345678" --
evaluation-periods 2 --alarm-actions arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic
 --unit Percent
```

This command returns to the prompt if successful. If an alarm with the same name already exists, it will be overwritten by the new alarm.

To specify multiple dimensions

The following example illustrates how to specify multiple dimensions. Each dimension is specified as a Name/Value pair, with a comma between the name and the value. Multiple dimensions are separated by a space:

```
aws cloudwatch put-metric-alarm --alarm-name "Default_Test_Alarm3" --alarm-
description "The default example alarm" --namespace "CW EXAMPLE METRICS"
 --metric-name Default_Test --statistic Average --period 60 --evaluation-
periods 3 --threshold 50 --comparison-operator GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold --
dimensions Name=key1,Value=value1 Name=key2,Value=value2
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an alarm based on the configuration provided in a JSON file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the alarm
configuration
    * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the alarm
    * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while reading the JSON
file or creating the alarm
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
       com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode;
       try {
           JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
           rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
       } catch (IOException e) {
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read the alarm configuration
file", e);
```

```
        }

        // Extract values from the JSON node.
        String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
        String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
        String alarmName = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText();
        String emailTopic = rootNode.findValue("emailTopic").asText();
        String accountId = rootNode.findValue("accountId").asText();
        String region = rootNode.findValue("region").asText();

        // Create a List for alarm actions.
        List<String> alarmActions = new ArrayList<>();
        alarmActions.add("arn:aws:sns:" + region + ":" + accountId + ":" +
emailTopic);

        PutMetricAlarmRequest alarmRequest = PutMetricAlarmRequest.builder()
            .alarmActions(alarmActions)
            .alarmDescription("Example metric alarm")
            .alarmName(alarmName)

.comparisonOperator(ComparisonOperator.GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_THRESHOLD)
            .threshold(100.00)
            .metricName(customMetricName)
            .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
            .evaluationPeriods(1)
            .period(10)
            .statistic("Maximum")
            .datapointsToAlarm(1)
            .treatMissingData("ignore")
            .build();

        // Call the putMetricAlarm asynchronously and handle the result.
        return getAsyncClient().putMetricAlarm(alarmRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to create alarm: {}", ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create alarm", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully created!", alarmName);
                    return alarmName;
                }
            });
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutMetricAlarmCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // This alarm triggers when CPUUtilization exceeds 70% for one minute.
  const command = new PutMetricAlarmCommand({
    AlarmName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME, // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
    ComparisonOperator: "GreaterThanThreshold",
    EvaluationPeriods: 1,
    MetricName: "CPUUtilization",
    Namespace: "AWS/EC2",
    Period: 60,
    Statistic: "Average",
    Threshold: 70.0,
    ActionsEnabled: false,
    AlarmDescription: "Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%",
    Dimensions: [
      {
        Name: "InstanceId",
        Value: process.env.EC2_INSTANCE_ID, // Set the value of EC_INSTANCE_ID to
 the Id of an existing Amazon EC2 instance.
      },
    ],
    Unit: "Percent",
```

```
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  AlarmName: "Web_Server_CPU_Utilization",
  ComparisonOperator: "GreaterThanThreshold",
  EvaluationPeriods: 1,
```

```
  MetricName: "CPUUtilization",
  Namespace: "AWS/EC2",
  Period: 60,
  Statistic: "Average",
  Threshold: 70.0,
  ActionsEnabled: false,
  AlarmDescription: "Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%",
  Dimensions: [
    {
      Name: "InstanceId",
      Value: "INSTANCE_ID",
    },
  ],
  Unit: "Percent",
};

cw.putMetricAlarm(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun putMetricAlarm(
    alarmNameVal: String,
    instanceIdVal: String,
```

```
) {
    val dimensionOb =
        Dimension {
            name = "InstanceId"
            value = instanceIdVal
        }

    val request =
        PutMetricAlarmRequest {
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            comparisonOperator = ComparisonOperator.GreaterThanThreshold
            evaluationPeriods = 1
            metricName = "CPUUtilization"
            namespace = "AWS/EC2"
            period = 60
            statistic = Statistic.fromValue("Average")
            threshold = 70.0
            actionsEnabled = false
            alarmDescription = "An Alarm created by the Kotlin SDK when server
 CPU utilization exceeds 70%"
            unit = StandardUnit.fromValue("Seconds")
            dimensions = listOf(dimensionOb)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricAlarm(request)
        println("Successfully created an alarm with name $alarmNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def create_metric_alarm(
        self,
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        alarm_name,
        stat_type,
        period,
        eval_periods,
        threshold,
        comparison_op,
    ):
        """
        Creates an alarm that watches a metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param stat_type: The type of statistic the alarm watches.
        :param period: The period in which metric data are grouped to calculate
                       statistics.
        :param eval_periods: The number of periods that the metric must be over
 the
                             alarm threshold before the alarm is set into an
 alarmed
                             state.
        :param threshold: The threshold value to compare against the metric
 statistic.
        :param comparison_op: The comparison operation used to compare the
 threshold
                              against the metric.
        :return: The newly created alarm.
        """
        try:
```

```
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace,
metric_name)
            alarm = metric.put_alarm(
                AlarmName=alarm_name,
                Statistic=stat_type,
                Period=period,
                EvaluationPeriods=eval_periods,
                Threshold=threshold,
                ComparisonOperator=comparison_op,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Added alarm %s to track metric %s.%s.",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add alarm %s to metric %s.%s",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return alarm
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates or updates an alarm in Amazon CloudWatch.
```

```
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param alarm_name [String] The name of the alarm.
# @param alarm_description [String] A description about the alarm.
# @param metric_name [String] The name of the metric associated with the alarm.
# @param alarm_actions [Array] A list of Strings representing the
#   Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) to execute when the alarm transitions to the
#   ALARM state.
# @param namespace [String] The namespace for the metric to alarm on.
# @param statistic [String] The statistic for the metric.
# @param dimensions [Array] A list of dimensions for the metric, specified as
#   Aws::CloudWatch::Types::Dimension.
# @param period [Integer] The number of seconds before re-evaluating the metric.
# @param unit [String] The unit of measure for the statistic.
# @param evaluation_periods [Integer] The number of periods over which data is
#   compared to the specified threshold.
# @param theshold [Float] The value against which the specified statistic is
 compared.
# @param comparison_operator [String] The arithmetic operation to use when
#   comparing the specified statistic and threshold.
# @return [Boolean] true if the alarm was created or updated; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless alarm_created_or_updated?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'ObjectsInBucket',
#     'Objects exist in this bucket for more than 1 day.',
#     'NumberOfObjects',
#     ['arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:Default_CloudWatch_Alarms_Topic'],
#     'AWS/S3',
#     'Average',
#     [
#       {
#         name: 'BucketName',
#         value: 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
#       },
#       {
#         name: 'StorageType',
#         value: 'AllStorageTypes'
#       }
#     ],
#     86_400,
#     'Count',
#     1,
```

```
#     1,
#     'GreaterThanThreshold'
#   )
def alarm_created_or_updated?(
  cloudwatch_client,
  alarm_name,
  alarm_description,
  metric_name,
  alarm_actions,
  namespace,
  statistic,
  dimensions,
  period,
  unit,
  evaluation_periods,
  threshold,
  comparison_operator
)
  cloudwatch_client.put_metric_alarm(
    alarm_name: alarm_name,
    alarm_description: alarm_description,
    metric_name: metric_name,
    alarm_actions: alarm_actions,
    namespace: namespace,
    statistic: statistic,
    dimensions: dimensions,
    period: period,
    unit: unit,
    evaluation_periods: evaluation_periods,
    threshold: threshold,
    comparison_operator: comparison_operator
  )
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating alarm: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    lo_cwt->putmetricalarm(
      iv_alarmname                  = iv_alarm_name
      iv_comparisonoperator         = iv_comparison_operator
      iv_evaluationperiods          = iv_evaluation_periods
      iv_metricname                 = iv_metric_name
      iv_namespace                  = iv_namespace
      iv_statistic                  = iv_statistic
      iv_threshold                  = iv_threshold
      iv_actionsenabled             = iv_actions_enabled
      iv_alarmdescription           = iv_alarm_description
      iv_unit                       = iv_unit
      iv_period                     = iv_period
      it_dimensions                 = it_dimensions ).
    MESSAGE 'Alarm created.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtlimitexceededfault.
    MESSAGE 'The request processing has exceeded the limit' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `PutMetricData` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutMetricData`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage metrics and alarms

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add some metric data using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    private static async Task<List<MetricDatum>> PutRandomMetricData(string
customMetricName,
        string customMetricNamespace)
    {
        List<MetricDatum> customData = new List<MetricDatum>();
        Random rnd = new Random();

        // Add 10 random values up to 100, starting with a timestamp 15 minutes
in the past.
        var utcNowMinus15 = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(-15);
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
        {
            var metricValue = rnd.Next(0, 100);
            customData.Add(
                new MetricDatum
                {
                    MetricName = customMetricName,
                    Value = metricValue,
                    TimestampUtc = utcNowMinus15.AddMinutes(i)
                }
            );
        }

        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricData(customMetricNamespace,
customData);
```

```
        return customData;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to add metric data to a CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricData">A data object for the metric data.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutMetricData(string metricNamespace,
        List<MetricDatum> metricData)
    {
        var putDataResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricDataAsync(
            new PutMetricDataRequest()
            {
                MetricData = metricData,
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
            });

        return putDataResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/PutMetricDataRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Put data into the metric.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Dimension dimension;
        dimension.SetName("UNIQUE_PAGES");
        dimension.SetValue("URLS");

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::MetricDatum datum;
        datum.SetMetricName("PAGES_VISITED");
        datum.SetUnit(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::StandardUnit::None);
        datum.SetValue(data_point);
        datum.AddDimensions(dimension);

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::PutMetricDataRequest request;
        request.SetNamespace("SITE/TRAFFIC");
        request.AddMetricData(datum);

        auto outcome = cw.PutMetricData(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to put sample metric data:" <<
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully put sample metric data" << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To publish a custom metric to Amazon CloudWatch

The following example uses the `put-metric-data` command to publish a custom metric to Amazon CloudWatch:

```
aws cloudwatch put-metric-data --namespace "Usage Metrics" --metric-data file://
metric.json
```

The values for the metric itself are stored in the JSON file, `metric.json`.

Here are the contents of that file:

```
[
  {
    "MetricName": "New Posts",
    "Timestamp": "Wednesday, June 12, 2013 8:28:20 PM",
    "Value": 0.50,
    "Unit": "Count"
  }
]
```

For more information, see Publishing Custom Metrics in the *Amazon CloudWatch Developer Guide*.

To specify multiple dimensions

The following example illustrates how to specify multiple dimensions. Each dimension is specified as a Name=Value pair. Multiple dimensions are separated by a comma.:

```
aws cloudwatch put-metric-data --metric-name Buffers --
namespace MyNameSpace --unit Bytes --value 231434333 --
dimensions InstanceID=1-23456789,InstanceType=m1.small
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Adds metric data for an alarm asynchronously.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the metric data
    * @return a CompletableFuture that asynchronously returns the
PutMetricDataResponse
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse>
addMetricDataForAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for
further processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
           try {
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
               Instant instant = Instant.now();

               // Create MetricDatum objects.
               MetricDatum datum1 = MetricDatum.builder()
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
                   .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                   .value(1001.00)
                   .timestamp(instant)
                   .build();

               MetricDatum datum2 = MetricDatum.builder()
```

```
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                    .value(1002.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDatum> metricDataList = new ArrayList<>();
                metricDataList.add(datum1);
                metricDataList.add(datum2);

                // Build the PutMetricData request.
                PutMetricDataRequest request = PutMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .metricData(metricDataList)
                    .build();

                // Send the request asynchronously.
                return getAsyncClient().putMetricData(request);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> failedFuture = new
CompletableFuture<>();
                failedFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
to parse JSON content", e));
                return failedFuture;
            }
        }).whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                logger.error("Failed to put metric data: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Added metric values for metric.");
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutMetricDataCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/APIReference/
API_PutMetricData.html#API_PutMetricData_RequestParameters
  // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
publishingMetrics.html
  // for more information about the parameters in this command.
  const command = new PutMetricDataCommand({
    MetricData: [
      {
        MetricName: "PAGES_VISITED",
        Dimensions: [
          {
            Name: "UNIQUE_PAGES",
            Value: "URLS",
          },
        ],
        Unit: "None",
        Value: 1.0,
      },
    ],
    Namespace: "SITE/TRAFFIC",
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
```

```
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

// Create parameters JSON for putMetricData
var params = {
  MetricData: [
    {
      MetricName: "PAGES_VISITED",
      Dimensions: [
        {
          Name: "UNIQUE_PAGES",
          Value: "URLS",
        },
      ],
```

```
      Unit: "None",
      Value: 1.0,
    },
  ],
  Namespace: "SITE/TRAFFIC",
};

cw.putMetricData(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", JSON.stringify(data));
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addMetricDataForAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace =
 rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    // Set an Instant object.
    val time =
 ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT)
    val instant = Instant.parse(time)
```

```
    val datum =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1001.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val datum2 =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1002.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val metricDataList = ArrayList<MetricDatum>()
    metricDataList.add(datum)
    metricDataList.add(datum2)

    val request =
        PutMetricDataRequest {
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            metricData = metricDataList
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricData(request)
        println("Added metric values for for metric $customMetricName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new MetricDatum object, and writes it to Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Metrics.

```
### Create a MetricDatum .NET object
$Metric = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.CloudWatch.Model.MetricDatum
$Metric.Timestamp = [DateTime]::UtcNow
$Metric.MetricName = 'CPU'
$Metric.Value = 50

### Write the metric data to the CloudWatch service
Write-CWMetricData -Namespace instance1 -MetricData $Metric
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new MetricDatum object, and writes it to Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Metrics.

```
### Create a MetricDatum .NET object
$Metric = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.CloudWatch.Model.MetricDatum
$Metric.Timestamp = [DateTime]::UtcNow
$Metric.MetricName = 'CPU'
$Metric.Value = 50

### Write the metric data to the CloudWatch service
Write-CWMetricData -Namespace instance1 -MetricData $Metric
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def put_metric_data(self, namespace, name, value, unit):
        """
        Sends a single data value to CloudWatch for a metric. This metric is
 given
        a timestamp of the current UTC time.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param value: The value of the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[{"MetricName": name, "Value": value, "Unit": unit}],
            )
            logger.info("Put data for metric %s.%s", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data for metric %s.%s", namespace,
 name)
            raise
```

Put a set of data into a CloudWatch metric.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def put_metric_data_set(self, namespace, name, timestamp, unit, data_set):
        """
        Sends a set of data to CloudWatch for a metric. All of the data in the
 set
        have the same timestamp and unit.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param timestamp: The UTC timestamp for the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        :param data_set: The set of data to send. This set is a dictionary that
                         contains a list of values and a list of corresponding
 counts.
                         The value and count lists must be the same length.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[
                    {
                        "MetricName": name,
                        "Timestamp": timestamp,
                        "Values": data_set["values"],
                        "Counts": data_set["counts"],
                        "Unit": unit,
                    }
                ],
```

```
            )
            logger.info("Put data set for metric %s.%s.", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data set for metric %s.%s.",
 namespace, name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatch'

# Adds a datapoint to a metric in Amazon CloudWatch.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param metric_namespace [String] The namespace of the metric to add the
#   datapoint to.
# @param metric_name [String] The name of the metric to add the datapoint to.
# @param dimension_name [String] The name of the dimension to add the
#   datapoint to.
# @param dimension_value [String] The value of the dimension to add the
#   datapoint to.
# @param metric_value [Float] The value of the datapoint.
# @param metric_unit [String] The unit of measurement for the datapoint.
# @return [Boolean]
# @example
#   exit 1 unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'SITE/TRAFFIC',
#     'UniqueVisitors',
```

```
#     'SiteName',
#     'example.com',
#     5_885.0,
#     'Count'
#   )
def datapoint_added_to_metric?(
  cloudwatch_client,
  metric_namespace,
  metric_name,
  dimension_name,
  dimension_value,
  metric_value,
  metric_unit
)
  cloudwatch_client.put_metric_data(
    namespace: metric_namespace,
    metric_data: [
      {
        metric_name: metric_name,
        dimensions: [
          {
            name: dimension_name,
            value: dimension_value
          }
        ],
        value: metric_value,
        unit: metric_unit
      }
    ]
  )
  puts "Added data about '#{metric_name}' to namespace " \
    "'#{metric_namespace}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error adding data about '#{metric_name}' to namespace " \
    "'#{metric_namespace}': #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scenarios for CloudWatch using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in CloudWatch with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within CloudWatch or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Get started with CloudWatch alarms using an AWS SDK
- Manage CloudWatch metrics and alarms using an AWS SDK
- Monitor performance of Amazon DynamoDB using an AWS SDK

Get started with CloudWatch alarms using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an alarm.
- Disable alarm actions.
- Describe an alarm.
- Delete an alarm.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
DATA lt_alarmnames TYPE /aws1/cl_cwtalarmnames_w=>tt_alarmnames.
DATA lo_alarmname TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_cwtalarmnames_w.
```

```
    "Create an alarm"
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->putmetricalarm(
          iv_alarmname                = iv_alarm_name
          iv_comparisonoperator       = iv_comparison_operator
          iv_evaluationperiods        = iv_evaluation_periods
          iv_metricname               = iv_metric_name
          iv_namespace                = iv_namespace
          iv_statistic                = iv_statistic
          iv_threshold                = iv_threshold
          iv_actionsenabled           = iv_actions_enabled
          iv_alarmdescription         = iv_alarm_description
          iv_unit                     = iv_unit
          iv_period                   = iv_period
          it_dimensions               = it_dimensions ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm created' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtlimitexceededfault.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has exceeded the limit' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Create an ABAP internal table for the created alarm."
    lo_alarmname = NEW #( iv_value = iv_alarm_name ).
    INSERT lo_alarmname INTO TABLE lt_alarmnames.

    "Disable alarm actions."
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->disablealarmactions(
          it_alarmnames               = lt_alarmnames ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm actions disabled' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_disablealarm_exception).
        DATA(lv_disablealarm_error) = |"{ lo_disablealarm_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_disablealarm_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_disablealarm_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Describe alarm using the same ABAP internal table."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_cwt->describealarms(                       " oo_result is
 returned for testing purpose "
          it_alarmnames               = lt_alarmnames ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms retrieved' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_describealarms_exception).
```

```
        DATA(lv_describealarms_error) = |"{ lo_describealarms_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_describealarms_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_describealarms_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Delete alarm."
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->deletealarms(
          it_alarmnames = lt_alarmnames ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms deleted' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtresourcenotfound.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being access is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DescribeAlarms
  - DisableAlarmActions
  - PutMetricAlarm

Manage CloudWatch metrics and alarms using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an alarm to watch a CloudWatch metric.
- Put data into a metric and trigger the alarm.
- Get data from the alarm.
- Delete the alarm.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps CloudWatch operations.

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import random
import time
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def put_metric_data_set(self, namespace, name, timestamp, unit, data_set):
        """
        Sends a set of data to CloudWatch for a metric. All of the data in the
 set
        have the same timestamp and unit.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param timestamp: The UTC timestamp for the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        :param data_set: The set of data to send. This set is a dictionary that
                         contains a list of values and a list of corresponding
 counts.
                         The value and count lists must be the same length.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[
                    {
```

```
                        "MetricName": name,
                        "Timestamp": timestamp,
                        "Values": data_set["values"],
                        "Counts": data_set["counts"],
                        "Unit": unit,
                    }
                ],
            )
            logger.info("Put data set for metric %s.%s.", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data set for metric %s.%s.",
namespace, name)
            raise


    def create_metric_alarm(
        self,
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        alarm_name,
        stat_type,
        period,
        eval_periods,
        threshold,
        comparison_op,
    ):
        """
        Creates an alarm that watches a metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param stat_type: The type of statistic the alarm watches.
        :param period: The period in which metric data are grouped to calculate
                       statistics.
        :param eval_periods: The number of periods that the metric must be over
the
                             alarm threshold before the alarm is set into an
alarmed
                             state.
        :param threshold: The threshold value to compare against the metric
statistic.
        :param comparison_op: The comparison operation used to compare the
threshold
```

```
                                against the metric.
        :return: The newly created alarm.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace,
metric_name)
            alarm = metric.put_alarm(
                AlarmName=alarm_name,
                Statistic=stat_type,
                Period=period,
                EvaluationPeriods=eval_periods,
                Threshold=threshold,
                ComparisonOperator=comparison_op,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Added alarm %s to track metric %s.%s.",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add alarm %s to metric %s.%s",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return alarm


    def put_metric_data(self, namespace, name, value, unit):
        """
        Sends a single data value to CloudWatch for a metric. This metric is
given
        a timestamp of the current UTC time.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param value: The value of the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        """
        try:
```

```
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[{"MetricName": name, "Value": value, "Unit": unit}],
            )
            logger.info("Put data for metric %s.%s", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data for metric %s.%s", namespace,
name)
            raise


    def get_metric_statistics(self, namespace, name, start, end, period,
stat_types):
        """
        Gets statistics for a metric within a specified time span. Metrics are
grouped
        into the specified period.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param start: The UTC start time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param end: The UTC end time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param period: The period, in seconds, in which to group metrics. The
period
                       must match the granularity of the metric, which depends on
                       the metric's age. For example, metrics that are older than
                       three hours have a one-minute granularity, so the period
must
                       be at least 60 and must be a multiple of 60.
        :param stat_types: The type of statistics to retrieve, such as average
value
                           or maximum value.
        :return: The retrieved statistics for the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            stats = metric.get_statistics(
                StartTime=start, EndTime=end, Period=period,
Statistics=stat_types
            )
            logger.info(
                "Got %s statistics for %s.", len(stats["Datapoints"]),
stats["Label"]
```

```
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get statistics for %s.%s.", namespace,
name)
            raise
        else:
            return stats


    def get_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Gets the alarms that are currently watching the specified metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :returns: An iterator that yields the alarms.
        """
        metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
        alarm_iter = metric.alarms.all()
        logger.info("Got alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace,
metric_name)
        return alarm_iter


    def delete_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Deletes all of the alarms that are currently watching the specified
metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace,
metric_name)
            metric.alarms.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace, metric_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete alarms for metric %s.%s.",
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
```

```
            )
            raise
```

Use the wrapper class to put data in a metric, trigger an alarm that watches the metric, and get data from the alarm.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch metrics and alarms demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    cw_wrapper = CloudWatchWrapper(boto3.resource("cloudwatch"))

    minutes = 20
    metric_namespace = "doc-example-metric"
    metric_name = "page_views"
    start = datetime.utcnow() - timedelta(minutes=minutes)
    print(
        f"Putting data into metric {metric_namespace}.{metric_name} spanning the
 "
        f"last {minutes} minutes."
    )
    for offset in range(0, minutes):
        stamp = start + timedelta(minutes=offset)
        cw_wrapper.put_metric_data_set(
            metric_namespace,
            metric_name,
            stamp,
            "Count",
            {
                "values": [
                    random.randint(bound, bound * 2)
                    for bound in range(offset + 1, offset + 11)
                ],
                "counts": [random.randint(1, offset + 1) for _ in range(10)],
            },
        )
```

```
    alarm_name = "high_page_views"
    period = 60
    eval_periods = 2
    print(f"Creating alarm {alarm_name} for metric {metric_name}.")
    alarm = cw_wrapper.create_metric_alarm(
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        alarm_name,
        "Maximum",
        period,
        eval_periods,
        100,
        "GreaterThanThreshold",
    )
    print(f"Alarm ARN is {alarm.alarm_arn}.")
    print(f"Current alarm state is: {alarm.state_value}.")

    print(
        f"Sending data to trigger the alarm. This requires data over the
threshold "
        f"for {eval_periods} periods of {period} seconds each."
    )
    while alarm.state_value == "INSUFFICIENT_DATA":
        print("Sending data for the metric.")
        cw_wrapper.put_metric_data(
            metric_namespace, metric_name, random.randint(100, 200), "Count"
        )
        alarm.load()
        print(f"Current alarm state is: {alarm.state_value}.")
        if alarm.state_value == "INSUFFICIENT_DATA":
            print(f"Waiting for {period} seconds...")
            time.sleep(period)
        else:
            print("Wait for a minute for eventual consistency of metric data.")
            time.sleep(period)
            if alarm.state_value == "OK":
                alarm.load()
                print(f"Current alarm state is: {alarm.state_value}.")

    print(
        f"Getting data for metric {metric_namespace}.{metric_name} during
timespan "
        f"of {start} to {datetime.utcnow()} (times are UTC)."
    )
```

```
    stats = cw_wrapper.get_metric_statistics(
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        start,
        datetime.utcnow(),
        60,
        ["Average", "Minimum", "Maximum"],
    )
    print(
        f"Got {len(stats['Datapoints'])} data points for metric "
        f"{metric_namespace}.{metric_name}."
    )
    pprint(sorted(stats["Datapoints"], key=lambda x: x["Timestamp"]))

    print(f"Getting alarms for metric {metric_name}.")
    alarms = cw_wrapper.get_metric_alarms(metric_namespace, metric_name)
    for alarm in alarms:
        print(f"Alarm {alarm.name} is currently in state {alarm.state_value}.")

    print(f"Deleting alarms for metric {metric_name}.")
    cw_wrapper.delete_metric_alarms(metric_namespace, metric_name)

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DisableAlarmActions
  - EnableAlarmActions
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - ListMetrics
  - PutMetricAlarm
  - PutMetricData

Monitor performance of Amazon DynamoDB using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to configure an application's use of DynamoDB to monitor performance.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example shows how to configure a Java application to monitor the performance of DynamoDB. The application sends metric data to CloudWatch where you can monitor the performance.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch
- DynamoDB

Code examples for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon CloudWatch Events with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **CloudWatch Events User Guide** – More information about CloudWatch Events.
- **CloudWatch Events API Reference** – Details about all available CloudWatch Events actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs
    - Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutRule with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutTargets with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon CloudWatch Events with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs
  - Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutRule with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutTargets with an AWS SDK

Actions for CloudWatch Events using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CloudWatch Events actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon CloudWatch Events API Reference.

Examples

- Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK
- Use PutRule with an AWS SDK
- Use PutTargets with an AWS SDK

Use `PutEvents` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PutEvents`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.CloudWatchEventsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutEventsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutEventsRequestEntry;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PutEvents {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <resourceArn>

                Where:
                   resourceArn - An Amazon Resource Name (ARN) related to the
 events.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String resourceArn = args[0];
        CloudWatchEventsClient cwe = CloudWatchEventsClient.builder()
                .build();

        putCWEvents(cwe, resourceArn);
        cwe.close();
    }

    public static void putCWEvents(CloudWatchEventsClient cwe, String
 resourceArn) {
        try {
            final String EVENT_DETAILS = "{ \"key1\": \"value1\", \"key2\":
 \"value2\" }";

            PutEventsRequestEntry requestEntry = PutEventsRequestEntry.builder()
                    .detail(EVENT_DETAILS)
                    .detailType("sampleSubmitted")
                    .resources(resourceArn)
                    .source("aws-sdk-java-cloudwatch-example")
                    .build();

            PutEventsRequest request = PutEventsRequest.builder()
                    .entries(requestEntry)
                    .build();

            cwe.putEvents(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully put CloudWatch event");

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutEventsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new PutEventsCommand({
    // The list of events to send to Amazon CloudWatch Events.
    Entries: [
      {
        // The name of the application or service that is sending the event.
        Source: "my.app",

        // The name of the event that is being sent.
        DetailType: "My Custom Event",

        // The data that is sent with the event.
        Detail: JSON.stringify({ timeOfEvent: new Date().toISOString() }),
      },
    ],
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchEventsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";

export const client = new CloudWatchEventsClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var cwevents = new AWS.CloudWatchEvents({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Entries: [
    {
      Detail: '{ "key1": "value1", "key2": "value2" }',
      DetailType: "appRequestSubmitted",
      Resources: ["RESOURCE_ARN"],
      Source: "com.company.app",
    },
  ],
};

cwevents.putEvents(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Entries);
```

```
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `PutRule` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PutRule`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.CloudWatchEventsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutRuleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutRuleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.RuleState;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PutRule {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
```

```
                  <ruleName> roleArn>\s

                Where:
                  ruleName - A rule name (for example, myrule).
                  roleArn - A role ARN value (for example,
 arn:aws:iam::xxxxxx047983:user/MyUser).
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String ruleName = args[0];
        String roleArn = args[1];
        CloudWatchEventsClient cwe = CloudWatchEventsClient.builder()
                .build();

        putCWRule(cwe, ruleName, roleArn);
        cwe.close();
    }

    public static void putCWRule(CloudWatchEventsClient cwe, String ruleName,
 String roleArn) {
        try {
            PutRuleRequest request = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .name(ruleName)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .scheduleExpression("rate(5 minutes)")
                    .state(RuleState.ENABLED)
                    .build();

            PutRuleResponse response = cwe.putRule(request);
            System.out.printf(
                    "Successfully created CloudWatch events rule %s with arn %s",
                    roleArn, response.ruleArn());

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutRuleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // Request parameters for PutRule.
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eventbridge/latest/APIReference/
API_PutRule.html#API_PutRule_RequestParameters
  const command = new PutRuleCommand({
    Name: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_RULE,

    // The event pattern for the rule.
    //  Example: {"source": ["my.app"]}
    EventPattern: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_RULE_PATTERN,

    // The state of the rule. Valid values: ENABLED, DISABLED
    State: "ENABLED",
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchEventsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";

export const client = new CloudWatchEventsClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var cwevents = new AWS.CloudWatchEvents({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Name: "DEMO_EVENT",
  RoleArn: "IAM_ROLE_ARN",
  ScheduleExpression: "rate(5 minutes)",
  State: "ENABLED",
};

cwevents.putRule(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.RuleArn);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `PutTargets` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PutTargets`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.CloudWatchEventsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutTargetsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.Target;

/**
 * To run this Java V2 code example, ensure that you have setup your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PutTargets {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <ruleName> <functionArn> <targetId>\s

                Where:
```

```
                  ruleName - A rule name (for example, myrule).
                  functionArn - An AWS Lambda function ARN (for example,
arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:xxxxxx047983:function:lamda1).
                  targetId - A target id value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String ruleName = args[0];
        String functionArn = args[1];
        String targetId = args[2];
        CloudWatchEventsClient cwe = CloudWatchEventsClient.builder()
                .build();

        putCWTargets(cwe, ruleName, functionArn, targetId);
        cwe.close();
    }

    public static void putCWTargets(CloudWatchEventsClient cwe, String ruleName,
String functionArn, String targetId) {
        try {
            Target target = Target.builder()
                    .arn(functionArn)
                    .id(targetId)
                    .build();

            PutTargetsRequest request = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .targets(target)
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .build();

            cwe.putTargets(request);
            System.out.printf(
                    "Successfully created CloudWatch events target for rule %s",
                    ruleName);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutTargetsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new PutTargetsCommand({
    // The name of the Amazon CloudWatch Events rule.
    Rule: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_RULE,

    // The targets to add to the rule.
    Targets: [
      {
        Arn: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_TARGET_ARN,
        // The ID of the target. Choose a unique ID for each target.
        Id: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_TARGET_ID,
      },
    ],
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

```
export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchEventsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";

export const client = new CloudWatchEventsClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var cwevents = new AWS.CloudWatchEvents({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Rule: "DEMO_EVENT",
  Targets: [
    {
      Arn: "LAMBDA_FUNCTION_ARN",
      Id: "myCloudWatchEventsTarget",
    },
  ],
};

cwevents.putTargets(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
```

```
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Code examples for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon CloudWatch Logs with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **CloudWatch Logs User Guide** – More information about CloudWatch Logs.
- **CloudWatch Logs API Reference** – Details about all available CloudWatch Logs actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs
    - Use AssociateKmsKey with an AWS SDK
    - Use CancelExportTask with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateExportTask with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateLogGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateLogStream with an AWS SDK or CLI

    - Use DeleteLogGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteSubscriptionFilter with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeExportTasks with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeLogGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeLogStreams with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeSubscriptionFilters with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetLogEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetQueryResults with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutSubscriptionFilter with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartLiveTail with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartQuery with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs
  - Use CloudWatch Logs to run a large query
  - Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

Basic examples for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon CloudWatch Logs with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs
  - Use AssociateKmsKey with an AWS SDK
  - Use CancelExportTask with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateExportTask with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateLogGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateLogStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteLogGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteSubscriptionFilter with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeExportTasks with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeLogGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeLogStreams with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DescribeSubscriptionFilters with an AWS SDK
- Use GetLogEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetQueryResults with an AWS SDK
- Use PutSubscriptionFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use StartLiveTail with an AWS SDK
- Use StartQuery with an AWS SDK

Actions for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CloudWatch Logs actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the CloudWatch Logs API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon CloudWatch Logs API Reference.

Examples

- Use AssociateKmsKey with an AWS SDK
- Use CancelExportTask with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateExportTask with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateLogGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLogStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLogGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSubscriptionFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeExportTasks with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeLogGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeLogStreams with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSubscriptionFilters with an AWS SDK
- Use GetLogEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetQueryResults with an AWS SDK
- Use PutSubscriptionFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use StartLiveTail with an AWS SDK
- Use StartQuery with an AWS SDK

Use `AssociateKmsKey` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateKmsKey`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to associate an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key with
    /// an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
    /// </summary>
    public class AssociateKmsKey
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            string kmsKeyId = "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:<account-
number>:key/7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";
```

```
            string groupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new AssociateKmsKeyRequest
            {
                KmsKeyId = kmsKeyId,
                LogGroupName = groupName,
            };

            var response = await client.AssociateKmsKeyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully associated KMS key ID:
{kmsKeyId} with log group: {groupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not make the association between:
{kmsKeyId} and {groupName}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateKmsKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use `CancelExportTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CancelExportTask`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to cancel an Amazon CloudWatch Logs export task.
/// </summary>
public class CancelExportTask
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string taskId = "exampleTaskId";

        var request = new CancelExportTaskRequest
        {
            TaskId = taskId,
        };

        var response = await client.CancelExportTaskAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{taskId} successfully canceled.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{taskId} could not be canceled.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CancelExportTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use `CreateExportTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateExportTask`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Export Task to export the contents of the Amazon
/// CloudWatch Logs to the specified Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon
S3)
/// bucket.
/// </summary>
public class CreateExportTask
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string taskName = "export-task-example";
        string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";
        string destination = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        var fromTime = 1437584472382;
        var toTime = 1437584472833;

        var request = new CreateExportTaskRequest
        {
            From = fromTime,
            To = toTime,
            TaskName = taskName,
            LogGroupName = logGroupName,
```

```
                Destination = destination,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateExportTaskAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The task, {taskName} with ID: " +
                                  $"{response.TaskId} has been created
successfully.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateExportTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use `CreateLogGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLogGroup`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
/// </summary>
public class CreateLogGroup
{
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new CreateLogGroupRequest
            {
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateLogGroupAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully create log group with ID:
{logGroupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create log group.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLogGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command creates a log group named `my-logs`:

```
aws logs create-log-group --log-group-name my-logs
```

- For API details, see CreateLogGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateLogGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new CreateLogGroupCommand({
    // The name of the log group.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see CreateLogGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateLogStream` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLogStream`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Amazon CloudWatch Logs stream for a CloudWatch
/// log group.
/// </summary>
public class CreateLogStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
        string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";
        string logStreamName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-logstream";

        var request = new CreateLogStreamRequest
        {
            LogGroupName = logGroupName,
            LogStreamName = logStreamName,
        };

        var response = await client.CreateLogStreamAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"{logStreamName} successfully created for
{logGroupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create stream.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLogStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command creates a log stream named `20150601` in the log group `my-logs`:

```
aws logs create-log-stream --log-group-name my-logs --log-stream-name 20150601
```

- For API details, see CreateLogStream in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `DeleteLogGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLogGroup`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon CloudWatch Logs Service to delete an existing
    /// CloudWatch Logs log group.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteLogGroup
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new DeleteLogGroupRequest
            {
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteLogGroupAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted CloudWatch log group,
{logGroupName}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a log group named `my-logs`:

```
aws logs delete-log-group --log-group-name my-logs
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteLogGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteLogGroupCommand({
    // The name of the log group.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <aws/logs/CloudWatchLogsClient.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Delete the subscription filter.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::CloudWatchLogsClient cwl;
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Model::DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest request;
        request.SetFilterName(filter_name);
        request.SetLogGroupName(log_group);

        auto outcome = cwl.DeleteSubscriptionFilter(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Failed to delete CloudWatch log subscription filter "
                << filter_name << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted CloudWatch logs subscription " <<
                "filter " << filter_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteSubscriptionFilter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <filter> <logGroup>

                Where:
                  filter - The name of the subscription filter (for example,
 MyFilter).
                  logGroup - The name of the log group. (for example, testgroup).
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String filter = args[0];
        String logGroup = args[1];
        CloudWatchLogsClient logs = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .build();

        deleteSubFilter(logs, filter, logGroup);
        logs.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSubFilter(CloudWatchLogsClient logs, String filter,
 String logGroup) {
        try {
            DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest request =
 DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest.builder()
                    .filterName(filter)
                    .logGroupName(logGroup)
                    .build();

            logs.deleteSubscriptionFilter(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully deleted CloudWatch logs subscription
 filter %s", filter);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteSubscriptionFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-
logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteSubscriptionFilterCommand({
    // The name of the filter.
    filterName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_FILTER_NAME,
    // The name of the log group.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the CloudWatchLogs service object
var cwl = new AWS.CloudWatchLogs({ apiVersion: "2014-03-28" });

var params = {
  filterName: "FILTER",
```

```
  logGroupName: "LOG_GROUP",
};

cwl.deleteSubscriptionFilter(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSubFilter(
    filter: String?,
    logGroup: String?,
) {
    val request =
        DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest {
            filterName = filter
            logGroupName = logGroup
        }

    CloudWatchLogsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { logs ->
        logs.deleteSubscriptionFilter(request)
        println("Successfully deleted CloudWatch logs subscription filter named
 $filter")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribeExportTasks` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExportTasks`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to retrieve a list of information about Amazon CloudWatch
/// Logs export tasks.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeExportTasks
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

        var request = new DescribeExportTasksRequest
        {
            Limit = 5,
        };
```

```
            var response = new DescribeExportTasksResponse();

            do
            {
                response = await client.DescribeExportTasksAsync(request);
                response.ExportTasks.ForEach(t =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{t.TaskName} with ID: {t.TaskId} has
status: {t.Status}");
                });
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExportTasks in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use `DescribeLogGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLogGroups`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieves information about existing Amazon CloudWatch Logs log groups
/// and displays the information on the console.
/// </summary>
```

```
    public class DescribeLogGroups
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Creates a CloudWatch Logs client using the default
            // user. If you need to work with resources in another
            // AWS Region than the one defined for the default user,
            // pass the AWS Region as a parameter to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            bool done = false;
            string newToken = null;

            var request = new DescribeLogGroupsRequest
            {
                Limit = 5,
            };

            DescribeLogGroupsResponse response;

            do
            {
                if (newToken is not null)
                {
                    request.NextToken = newToken;
                }

                response = await client.DescribeLogGroupsAsync(request);

                response.LogGroups.ForEach(lg =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{lg.LogGroupName} is associated with the
key: {lg.KmsKeyId}.");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Created on:
{lg.CreationTime.Date.Date}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Date for this group will be stored for:
{lg.RetentionInDays} days.\n");
                });

                if (response.NextToken is null)
                {
                    done = true;
                }
                else
```

```
                {
                    newToken = response.NextToken;
                }
            }
            while (!done);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command describes a log group named `my-logs`:

```
aws logs describe-log-groups --log-group-name-prefix my-logs
```

Output:

```
{
    "logGroups": [
        {
            "storedBytes": 0,
            "metricFilterCount": 0,
            "creationTime": 1433189500783,
            "logGroupName": "my-logs",
            "retentionInDays": 5,
            "arn": "arn:aws:logs:us-west-2:0123456789012:log-group:my-logs:*"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateDescribeLogGroups,
  CloudWatchLogsClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";

const client = new CloudWatchLogsClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const paginatedLogGroups = paginateDescribeLogGroups({ client }, {});
  const logGroups = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedLogGroups) {
    if (page.logGroups?.every((lg) => !!lg)) {
      logGroups.push(...page.logGroups);
    }
  }

  console.log(logGroups);
  return logGroups;
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DescribeLogStreams` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLogStreams`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command shows all log streams starting with the prefix 2015 in the log group `my-logs`:

```
aws logs describe-log-streams --log-group-name my-logs --log-stream-name-
prefix 2015
```

Output:

```
{
    "logStreams": [
        {
            "creationTime": 1433189871774,
            "arn": "arn:aws:logs:us-west-2:0123456789012:log-group:my-logs:log-
stream:20150531",
            "logStreamName": "20150531",
            "storedBytes": 0
        },
        {
            "creationTime": 1433189873898,
            "arn": "arn:aws:logs:us-west-2:0123456789012:log-group:my-logs:log-
stream:20150601",
            "logStreamName": "20150601",
            "storedBytes": 0
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogStreams in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CloudWatchLogQuery {
    public static void main(final String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                  <logGroupName>

                Where:
                  logGroupName - The name of the log group (for example, /aws/
lambda/ChatAIHandler).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.print(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String logGroupName = "/aws/lambda/ChatAIHandler" ; //args[0];
        CloudWatchLogsClient logsClient = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        describeMostRecentLogStream(logsClient, logGroupName);
    }

    /**
     * Describes and prints metadata about the most recent log stream in the
 specified log group.
     *
     * @param logsClient   the CloudWatchLogsClient used to interact with AWS
 CloudWatch Logs
     * @param logGroupName the name of the log group
     */
    public static void describeMostRecentLogStream(CloudWatchLogsClient
 logsClient, String logGroupName) {
```

```
        DescribeLogStreamsRequest streamsRequest =
 DescribeLogStreamsRequest.builder()
                .logGroupName(logGroupName)
                .orderBy(OrderBy.LAST_EVENT_TIME)
                .descending(true)
                .limit(1)
                .build();

        try {
            DescribeLogStreamsResponse streamsResponse =
 logsClient.describeLogStreams(streamsRequest);
            List<LogStream> logStreams = streamsResponse.logStreams();

            if (logStreams.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No log streams found for log group: " +
 logGroupName);
                return;
            }

            LogStream stream = logStreams.get(0);
            System.out.println("Most Recent Log Stream:");
            System.out.println("  Name: " + stream.logStreamName());
            System.out.println("  ARN: " + stream.arn());
            System.out.println("  Creation Time: " + stream.creationTime());
            System.out.println("  First Event Time: " +
 stream.firstEventTimestamp());
            System.out.println("  Last Event Time: " +
 stream.lastEventTimestamp());
            System.out.println("  Stored Bytes: " + stream.storedBytes());
            System.out.println("  Upload Sequence Token: " +
 stream.uploadSequenceToken());

        } catch (CloudWatchLogsException e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to describe log stream: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogStreams in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <aws/logs/CloudWatchLogsClient.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/DescribeSubscriptionFiltersResult.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>
```

List the subscription filters.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::CloudWatchLogsClient cwl;
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Model::DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest request;
        request.SetLogGroupName(log_group);
        request.SetLimit(1);

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done) {
            auto outcome = cwl.DescribeSubscriptionFilters(
                    request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Failed to describe CloudWatch subscription filters
 "
                    << "for log group " << log_group << ": " <<
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
                break;
            }

            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                    std::setw(64) << "FilterPattern" << std::setw(64) <<
                    "DestinationArn" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &filters = outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionFilters();
            for (const auto &filter : filters) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) <<
                    filter.GetFilterName() << std::setw(64) <<
                    filter.GetFilterPattern() << std::setw(64) <<
                    filter.GetDestinationArn() << std::endl;
            }

            const auto &next_token = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            request.SetNextToken(next_token);
            done = next_token.empty();
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.DescribeSubscriptionFiltersResponse
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.SubscriptionFilter;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeSubscriptionFilters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <logGroup>

                Where:
                  logGroup - A log group name (for example, myloggroup).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String logGroup = args[0];
        CloudWatchLogsClient logs = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        describeFilters(logs, logGroup);
        logs.close();
    }

    public static void describeFilters(CloudWatchLogsClient logs, String
 logGroup) {
        try {
            boolean done = false;
            String newToken = null;
```

```
            while (!done) {
                DescribeSubscriptionFiltersResponse response;
                if (newToken == null) {
                    DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest request =
 DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest.builder()
                            .logGroupName(logGroup)
                            .limit(1).build();

                    response = logs.describeSubscriptionFilters(request);
                } else {
                    DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest request =
 DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest.builder()
                            .nextToken(newToken)
                            .logGroupName(logGroup)
                            .limit(1).build();
                    response = logs.describeSubscriptionFilters(request);
                }

                for (SubscriptionFilter filter : response.subscriptionFilters())
 {
                    System.out.printf("Retrieved filter with name %s, " +
 "pattern %s " + "and destination arn %s",
                            filter.filterName(),
                            filter.filterPattern(),
                            filter.destinationArn());
                }

                if (response.nextToken() == null) {
                    done = true;
                } else {
                    newToken = response.nextToken();
                }
            }

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.printf("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSubscriptionFiltersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-
logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // This will return a list of all subscription filters in your account
  // matching the log group name.
  const command = new DescribeSubscriptionFiltersCommand({
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
    limit: 1,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the CloudWatchLogs service object
var cwl = new AWS.CloudWatchLogs({ apiVersion: "2014-03-28" });

var params = {
  logGroupName: "GROUP_NAME",
  limit: 5,
};

cwl.describeSubscriptionFilters(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.subscriptionFilters);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeFilters(logGroup: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest {
            logGroupName = logGroup
            limit = 1
        }

    CloudWatchLogsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { cwlClient
 ->
        val response = cwlClient.describeSubscriptionFilters(request)
        response.subscriptionFilters?.forEach { filter ->
            println("Retrieved filter with name  ${filter.filterName} pattern
 ${filter.filterPattern} and destination ${filter.destinationArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetLogEvents` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetLogEvents`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves log events from a log stream named `20150601` in the log group `my-logs`:

```
aws logs get-log-events --log-group-name my-logs --log-stream-name 20150601
```

Output:

```
{
    "nextForwardToken":
 "f/31961209122447488583055879464742346735121166569214640130",
    "events": [
        {
            "ingestionTime": 1433190494190,
            "timestamp": 1433190184356,
            "message": "Example Event 1"
        },
        {
            "ingestionTime": 1433190516679,
            "timestamp": 1433190184356,
            "message": "Example Event 1"
        },
        {
            "ingestionTime": 1433190494190,
            "timestamp": 1433190184358,
            "message": "Example Event 2"
        }
    ],
    "nextBackwardToken":
 "b/31961209122358285602261756944988674324553373268216709120"
}
```

- For API details, see GetLogEvents in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.GetLogEventsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetLogEvents {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <logGroupName> <logStreamName>

                Where:
                  logGroupName - The name of the log group (for example,
 myloggroup).
                  logStreamName - The name of the log stream (for example,
 mystream).

                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.print(usage);
            System.exit(1);

        }

        String logGroupName = args[0];
        String logStreamName = args[1];

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        CloudWatchLogsClient cloudWatchLogsClient =
 CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        getCWLogEvents(cloudWatchLogsClient, logGroupName, logStreamName);
        cloudWatchLogsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getCWLogEvents(CloudWatchLogsClient cloudWatchLogsClient,
 String logGroupName,
            String logStreamName) {
        try {
            GetLogEventsRequest getLogEventsRequest =
 GetLogEventsRequest.builder()
                    .logGroupName(logGroupName)
                    .logStreamName(logStreamName)
                    .startFromHead(true)
                    .build();

            int logLimit =
 cloudWatchLogsClient.getLogEvents(getLogEventsRequest).events().size();
            for (int c = 0; c < logLimit; c++) {

 System.out.println(cloudWatchLogsClient.getLogEvents(getLogEventsRequest).events().get(c
            }

            System.out.println("Successfully got CloudWatch log events!");

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetLogEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetQueryResults` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetQueryResults`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Run a large query

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Simple wrapper for the GetQueryResultsCommand.
 * @param {string} queryId
 */
_getQueryResults(queryId) {
  return this.client.send(new GetQueryResultsCommand({ queryId }));
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueryResults in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    def _wait_for_query_results(self, client, query_id):
        """
        Waits for the query to complete and retrieves the results.

        :param query_id: The ID of the initiated query.
        :type query_id: str
        :return: A list containing the results of the query.
        :rtype: list
        """
```

```
        while True:
            time.sleep(1)
            results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
            if results["status"] in [
                "Complete",
                "Failed",
                "Cancelled",
                "Timeout",
                "Unknown",
            ]:
                return results.get("results", [])
```

- For API details, see GetQueryResults in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutSubscriptionFilter` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PutSubscriptionFilter`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/logs/CloudWatchLogsClient.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/PutSubscriptionFilterRequest.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Create the subscription filter.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::CloudWatchLogsClient cwl;
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Model::PutSubscriptionFilterRequest request;
        request.SetFilterName(filter_name);
        request.SetFilterPattern(filter_pattern);
        request.SetLogGroupName(log_group);
        request.SetDestinationArn(dest_arn);
        auto outcome = cwl.PutSubscriptionFilter(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch logs subscription filter "
                << filter_name << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully created CloudWatch logs subscription " <<
                "filter " << filter_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.CloudWatchLogsException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.PutSubscriptionFilterRequest;

/**
 * Before running this code example, you need to grant permission to CloudWatch
```

```
 * Logs the right to execute your Lambda function.
 * To perform this task, you can use this CLI command:
 *
 * aws lambda add-permission --function-name "lamda1" --statement-id "lamda1"
 * --principal "logs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com" --action "lambda:InvokeFunction"
 * --source-arn "arn:aws:logs:us-west-2:111111111111:log-group:testgroup:*"
 * --source-account "111111111111"
 *
 * Make sure you replace the function name with your function name and replace
 * '111111111111' with your account details.
 * For more information, see "Subscription Filters with AWS Lambda" in the
 * Amazon CloudWatch Logs Guide.
 *
 *
 * Also, before running this Java V2 code example,set up your development
 * environment,including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information,see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 */

public class PutSubscriptionFilter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <filter> <pattern> <logGroup> <functionArn>\s

                Where:
                  filter - A filter name (for example, myfilter).
                  pattern - A filter pattern (for example, ERROR).
                  logGroup - A log group name (testgroup).
                  functionArn - An AWS Lambda function ARN (for example,
 arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:111111111111:function:lambda1) .
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String filter = args[0];
        String pattern = args[1];
        String logGroup = args[2];
        String functionArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        CloudWatchLogsClient cwl = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putSubFilters(cwl, filter, pattern, logGroup, functionArn);
        cwl.close();
    }

    public static void putSubFilters(CloudWatchLogsClient cwl,
            String filter,
            String pattern,
            String logGroup,
            String functionArn) {

        try {
            PutSubscriptionFilterRequest request =
 PutSubscriptionFilterRequest.builder()
                    .filterName(filter)
                    .filterPattern(pattern)
                    .logGroupName(logGroup)
                    .destinationArn(functionArn)
                    .build();

            cwl.putSubscriptionFilter(request);
            System.out.printf(
                    "Successfully created CloudWatch logs subscription filter
 %s",
                    filter);

        } catch (CloudWatchLogsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { PutSubscriptionFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new PutSubscriptionFilterCommand({
    // An ARN of a same-account Kinesis stream, Kinesis Firehose
    // delivery stream, or Lambda function.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/logs/
SubscriptionFilters.html
    destinationArn: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_DESTINATION_ARN,

    // A name for the filter.
    filterName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_FILTER_NAME,

    // A filter pattern for subscribing to a filtered stream of log events.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/logs/
FilterAndPatternSyntax.html
    filterPattern: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_FILTER_PATTERN,

    // The name of the log group. Messages in this group matching the filter
 pattern
    // will be sent to the destination ARN.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

```
export default run();
```

- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the CloudWatchLogs service object
var cwl = new AWS.CloudWatchLogs({ apiVersion: "2014-03-28" });

var params = {
  destinationArn: "LAMBDA_FUNCTION_ARN",
  filterName: "FILTER_NAME",
  filterPattern: "ERROR",
  logGroupName: "LOG_GROUP",
};

cwl.putSubscriptionFilter(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `StartLiveTail` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartLiveTail`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Include the required files.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            var request = new StartLiveTailRequest
            {
                LogGroupIdentifiers = logGroupIdentifiers,
                LogStreamNames = logStreamNames,
                LogEventFilterPattern = filterPattern,
            };

            var response = await client.StartLiveTailAsync(request);

            // Catch if request fails
            if (response.HttpStatusCode != System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to start live tail session");
                return;
            }
```

You can handle the events from the Live Tail session in two ways:

```
            /* Method 1
            * 1). Asynchronously loop through the event stream
            * 2). Set a timer to dispose the stream and stop the Live Tail
 session at the end.
            */
```

```
            var eventStream = response.ResponseStream;
            var task = Task.Run(() =>
            {
                foreach (var item in eventStream)
                {
                    if (item is LiveTailSessionUpdate liveTailSessionUpdate)
                    {
                        foreach (var sessionResult in
liveTailSessionUpdate.SessionResults)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine("Message : {0}",
sessionResult.Message);
                        }
                    }
                    if (item is LiveTailSessionStart)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("Live Tail session started");
                    }
                    // On-stream exceptions are processed here
                    if (item is CloudWatchLogsEventStreamException)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: {item}");
                    }
                }
            });
            // Close the stream to stop the session after a timeout
            if (!task.Wait(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10))){
                eventStream.Dispose();
                Console.WriteLine("End of line");
            }
```

```
            /* Method 2
            * 1). Add event handlers to each event variable
            * 2). Start processing the stream and wait for a timeout using
AutoResetEvent
            */
            AutoResetEvent endEvent = new AutoResetEvent(false);
            var eventStream = response.ResponseStream;
            using (eventStream) // automatically disposes the stream to stop the
session after execution finishes
            {
                eventStream.SessionStartReceived += (sender, e) =>
```

```
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("LiveTail session started");
                };
                eventStream.SessionUpdateReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    foreach (LiveTailSessionLogEvent logEvent in
 e.EventStreamEvent.SessionResults){
                        Console.WriteLine("Message: {0}", logEvent.Message);
                    }
                };
                // On-stream exceptions are captured here
                eventStream.ExceptionReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR:
 {e.EventStreamException.Message}");
                };

                eventStream.StartProcessing();
                // Stream events for this amount of time.
                endEvent.WaitOne(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10));
                Console.WriteLine("End of line");
            }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

Include the required files.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)
```

Handle the events from the Live Tail session.

```
func handleEventStreamAsync(stream *cloudwatchlogs.StartLiveTailEventStream) {
 eventsChan := stream.Events()
 for {
  event := <-eventsChan
  switch e := event.(type) {
  case *types.StartLiveTailResponseStreamMemberSessionStart:
   log.Println("Received SessionStart event")
  case *types.StartLiveTailResponseStreamMemberSessionUpdate:
   for _, logEvent := range e.Value.SessionResults {
    log.Println(*logEvent.Message)
   }
  default:
   // Handle on-stream exceptions
   if err := stream.Err(); err != nil {
    log.Fatalf("Error occured during streaming: %v", err)
   } else if event == nil {
    log.Println("Stream is Closed")
    return
   } else {
    log.Fatalf("Unknown event type: %T", e)
   }
  }
 }
}
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
 cfg, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())
 if err != nil {
  panic("configuration error, " + err.Error())
 }
 client := cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(cfg)

 request := &cloudwatchlogs.StartLiveTailInput{
  LogGroupIdentifiers:   logGroupIdentifiers,
  LogStreamNames:        logStreamNames,
  LogEventFilterPattern: logEventFilterPattern,
 }

 response, err := client.StartLiveTail(context.TODO(), request)
```

```
// Handle pre-stream Exceptions
if err != nil {
 log.Fatalf("Failed to start streaming: %v", err)
}

// Start a Goroutine to handle events over stream
stream := response.GetStream()
go handleEventStreamAsync(stream)
```

Stop the Live Tail session after a period of time has elapsed.

```
// Close the stream (which ends the session) after a timeout
time.Sleep(10 * time.Second)
stream.Close()
log.Println("Event stream closed")
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Include the required files.

```
import io.reactivex.FlowableSubscriber;
import io.reactivex.annotations.NonNull;
import org.reactivestreams.Subscription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.LiveTailSessionLogEvent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.LiveTailSessionStart;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.LiveTailSessionUpdate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailResponseHandler;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.CloudWatchLogsException;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailResponseStream;

import java.util.Date;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicReference;
```

Handle the events from the Live Tail session.

```
    private static StartLiveTailResponseHandler
 getStartLiveTailResponseStreamHandler(
            AtomicReference<Subscription> subscriptionAtomicReference) {
        return StartLiveTailResponseHandler.builder()
            .onResponse(r -> System.out.println("Received initial response"))
            .onError(throwable -> {
                CloudWatchLogsException e = (CloudWatchLogsException)
 throwable.getCause();
                System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            })
            .subscriber(() -> new FlowableSubscriber<>() {
                @Override
                public void onSubscribe(@NonNull Subscription s) {
                    subscriptionAtomicReference.set(s);
                    s.request(Long.MAX_VALUE);
                }

                @Override
                public void onNext(StartLiveTailResponseStream event) {
                    if (event instanceof LiveTailSessionStart) {
                        LiveTailSessionStart sessionStart =
 (LiveTailSessionStart) event;
                        System.out.println(sessionStart);
                    } else if (event instanceof LiveTailSessionUpdate) {
                        LiveTailSessionUpdate sessionUpdate =
 (LiveTailSessionUpdate) event;
                        List<LiveTailSessionLogEvent> logEvents =
 sessionUpdate.sessionResults();
                        logEvents.forEach(e -> {
                            long timestamp = e.timestamp();
                            Date date = new Date(timestamp);
                            System.out.println("[" + date + "] " + e.message());
```

```
                        });
                    } else {
                        throw CloudWatchLogsException.builder().message("Unknown
event type").build();
                    }
                }

                @Override
                public void onError(Throwable throwable) {
                    System.out.println(throwable.getMessage());
                    System.exit(1);
                }

                @Override
                public void onComplete() {
                    System.out.println("Completed Streaming Session");
                }
            })
            .build();
    }
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
        CloudWatchLogsAsyncClient cloudWatchLogsAsyncClient =
                CloudWatchLogsAsyncClient.builder()
                    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .build();

        StartLiveTailRequest request =
                StartLiveTailRequest.builder()
                    .logGroupIdentifiers(logGroupIdentifiers)
                    .logStreamNames(logStreamNames)
                    .logEventFilterPattern(logEventFilterPattern)
                    .build();

        /* Create a reference to store the subscription */
        final AtomicReference<Subscription> subscriptionAtomicReference = new
AtomicReference<>(null);

        cloudWatchLogsAsyncClient.startLiveTail(request,
getStartLiveTailResponseStreamHandler(subscriptionAtomicReference));
```

Stop the Live Tail session after a period of time has elapsed.

```
        /* Set a timeout for the session and cancel the subscription. This will:
         * 1). Close the stream
         * 2). Stop the Live Tail session
         */
        try {
            Thread.sleep(10000);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        if (subscriptionAtomicReference.get() != null) {
            subscriptionAtomicReference.get().cancel();
            System.out.println("Subscription to stream closed");
        }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Include the required files.

```
import { CloudWatchLogsClient, StartLiveTailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
cloudwatch-logs";
```

Handle the events from the Live Tail session.

```
async function handleResponseAsync(response) {
    try {
      for await (const event of response.responseStream) {
        if (event.sessionStart !== undefined) {
          console.log(event.sessionStart);
        } else if (event.sessionUpdate !== undefined) {
          for (const logEvent of event.sessionUpdate.sessionResults) {
            const timestamp = logEvent.timestamp;
            const date = new Date(timestamp);
            console.log("[" + date + "] " + logEvent.message);
```

```
            }
        } else {
            console.error("Unknown event type");
        }
      }
    } catch (err) {
        // On-stream exceptions are captured here
        console.error(err)
    }
}
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
    const client = new CloudWatchLogsClient();

    const command = new StartLiveTailCommand({
        logGroupIdentifiers: logGroupIdentifiers,
        logStreamNames: logStreamNames,
        logEventFilterPattern: filterPattern
    });
    try{
        const response = await client.send(command);
        handleResponseAsync(response);
    } catch (err){
        // Pre-stream exceptions are captured here
        console.log(err);
    }
```

Stop the Live Tail session after a period of time has elapsed.

```
    /* Set a timeout to close the client. This will stop the Live Tail session.
 */
    setTimeout(function() {
        console.log("Client timeout");
        client.destroy();
      }, 10000);
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Include the required files.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailResponseStream
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.takeWhile
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
    val client = CloudWatchLogsClient.fromEnvironment()

    val request = StartLiveTailRequest {
        logGroupIdentifiers = logGroupIdentifiersVal
        logStreamNames = logStreamNamesVal
        logEventFilterPattern = logEventFilterPatternVal
    }

    val startTime = System.currentTimeMillis()

    try {
        client.startLiveTail(request) { response ->
            val stream = response.responseStream
            if (stream != null) {
                /* Set a timeout to unsubcribe from the flow. This will:
                * 1). Close the stream
                * 2). Stop the Live Tail session
                */
                stream.takeWhile { System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime <
 10000 }.collect { value ->
                    if (value is StartLiveTailResponseStream.SessionStart) {
                        println(value.asSessionStart())
                    } else if (value is
 StartLiveTailResponseStream.SessionUpdate) {
                        for (e in value.asSessionUpdate().sessionResults!!) {
                            println(e)
                        }
                    } else {
                        throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown event type")
```

```
                    }
                }
            } else {
                throw IllegalArgumentException("No response stream")
            }
        }
    } catch (e: Exception) {
        println("Exception occurred during StartLiveTail: $e")
        System.exit(1)
    }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Include the required files.

```
import boto3
import time
from datetime import datetime
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
    # Initialize the client
    client = boto3.client('logs')

    start_time = time.time()

    try:
        response = client.start_live_tail(
            logGroupIdentifiers=log_group_identifiers,
            logStreamNames=log_streams,
            logEventFilterPattern=filter_pattern
        )
        event_stream = response['responseStream']
        # Handle the events streamed back in the response
        for event in event_stream:
            # Set a timeout to close the stream.
```

```
            # This will end the Live Tail session.
            if (time.time() - start_time >= 10):
                event_stream.close()
                break
            # Handle when session is started
            if 'sessionStart' in event:
                session_start_event = event['sessionStart']
                print(session_start_event)
            # Handle when log event is given in a session update
            elif 'sessionUpdate' in event:
                log_events = event['sessionUpdate']['sessionResults']
                for log_event in log_events:
                    print('[{date}]
{log}'.format(date=datetime.fromtimestamp(log_event['timestamp']/1000),log=log_event['me
            else:
                # On-stream exceptions are captured here
                raise RuntimeError(str(event))
    except Exception as e:
        print(e)
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartQuery` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartQuery`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Run a large query

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Wrapper for the StartQueryCommand. Uses a static query string
 * for consistency.
 * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
 * @param {number} maxLogs
 * @returns {Promise<{ queryId: string }>}
 */
async _startQuery([startDate, endDate], maxLogs = 10000) {
  try {
    return await this.client.send(
      new StartQueryCommand({
        logGroupNames: this.logGroupNames,
        queryString: "fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc",
        startTime: startDate.valueOf(),
        endTime: endDate.valueOf(),
        limit: maxLogs,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    /** @type {string} */
    const message = err.message;
    if (message.startsWith("Query's end date and time")) {
      // This error indicates that the query's start or end date occur
      // before the log group was created.
      throw new DateOutOfBoundsError(message);
    }

    throw err;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see StartQuery in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    def perform_query(self, date_range):
        """
        Performs the actual CloudWatch log query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for
the query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :return: A list containing the query results.
        :rtype: list
        """
        client = boto3.client("logs")
        try:
            try:
                start_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
                )
                end_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
                )
                response = client.start_query(
                    logGroupName=self.log_group,
                    startTime=start_time,
                    endTime=end_time,
                    queryString=self.query_string,
                    limit=self.limit,
                )
                query_id = response["queryId"]
            except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
                raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")
            while True:
```

```
                time.sleep(1)
                results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
                if results["status"] in [
                    "Complete",
                    "Failed",
                    "Cancelled",
                    "Timeout",
                    "Unknown",
                ]:
                    return results.get("results", [])
        except DateOutOfBoundsError:
            return []

    def _initiate_query(self, client, date_range, max_logs):
        """
        Initiates the CloudWatch logs query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for
the query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :param max_logs: The maximum number of logs to retrieve.
        :type max_logs: int
        :return: The query ID as a string.
        :rtype: str
        """
        try:
            start_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
            )
            end_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
            )
            response = client.start_query(
                logGroupName=self.log_group,
                startTime=start_time,
                endTime=end_time,
                queryString=self.query_string,
                limit=max_logs,
            )
            return response["queryId"]
        except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
            raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")
```

- For API details, see StartQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for CloudWatch Logs using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in CloudWatch Logs with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within CloudWatch Logs or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Use CloudWatch Logs to run a large query
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

Use CloudWatch Logs to run a large query

The following code examples show how to use CloudWatch Logs to query more than 10,000 records.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This is the entry point.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { CloudWatchLogsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { CloudWatchQuery } from "./cloud-watch-query.js";

console.log("Starting a recursive query...");

if (!process.env.QUERY_START_DATE || !process.env.QUERY_END_DATE) {
  throw new Error(
    "QUERY_START_DATE and QUERY_END_DATE environment variables are required.",
  );
}

const cloudWatchQuery = new CloudWatchQuery(new CloudWatchLogsClient({}), {
  logGroupNames: ["/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query"],
  dateRange: [
    new Date(Number.parseInt(process.env.QUERY_START_DATE)),
    new Date(Number.parseInt(process.env.QUERY_END_DATE)),
  ],
});

await cloudWatchQuery.run();

console.log(
  `Queries finished in ${cloudWatchQuery.secondsElapsed} seconds.\nTotal logs
 found: ${cloudWatchQuery.results.length}`,
);
```

This is a class that splits queries into multiple steps if necessary.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  StartQueryCommand,
  GetQueryResultsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { splitDateRange } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-date.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

class DateOutOfBoundsError extends Error {}

export class CloudWatchQuery {
  /**
```

```
   * Run a query for all CloudWatch Logs within a certain date range.
   * CloudWatch logs return a max of 10,000 results. This class
   * performs a binary search across all of the logs in the provided
   * date range if a query returns the maximum number of results.
   *
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs').CloudWatchLogsClient}
client
   * @param {{ logGroupNames: string[], dateRange: [Date, Date], queryConfig:
{ limit: number } }} config
   */
  constructor(client, { logGroupNames, dateRange, queryConfig }) {
    this.client = client;
    /**
     * All log groups are queried.
     */
    this.logGroupNames = logGroupNames;

    /**
     * The inclusive date range that is queried.
     */
    this.dateRange = dateRange;

    /**
     * CloudWatch Logs never returns more than 10,000 logs.
     */
    this.limit = queryConfig?.limit ?? 10000;

    /**
     * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").ResultField[][]}
     */
    this.results = [];
  }

  /**
   * Run the query.
   */
  async run() {
    this.secondsElapsed = 0;
    const start = new Date();
    this.results = await this._largeQuery(this.dateRange);
    const end = new Date();
    this.secondsElapsed = (end - start) / 1000;
    return this.results;
  }
```

```
  /**
   * Recursively query for logs.
   * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
   * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").ResultField[]
[]>}
   */
  async _largeQuery(dateRange) {
    const logs = await this._query(dateRange, this.limit);

    console.log(
      `Query date range: ${dateRange
        .map((d) => d.toISOString())
        .join(" to ")}. Found ${logs.length} logs.`,
    );

    if (logs.length < this.limit) {
      return logs;
    }

    const lastLogDate = this._getLastLogDate(logs);
    const offsetLastLogDate = new Date(lastLogDate);
    offsetLastLogDate.setMilliseconds(lastLogDate.getMilliseconds() + 1);
    const subDateRange = [offsetLastLogDate, dateRange[1]];
    const [r1, r2] = splitDateRange(subDateRange);
    const results = await Promise.all([
      this._largeQuery(r1),
      this._largeQuery(r2),
    ]);
    return [logs, ...results].flat();
  }

  /**
   * Find the most recent log in a list of logs.
   * @param {import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").ResultField[][]} logs
   */
  _getLastLogDate(logs) {
    const timestamps = logs
      .map(
        (log) =>
          log.find((fieldMeta) => fieldMeta.field === "@timestamp")?.value,
      )
      .filter((t) => !!t)
      .map((t) => `${t}Z`)
```

```
      .sort();

    if (!timestamps.length) {
      throw new Error("No timestamp found in logs.");
    }

    return new Date(timestamps[timestamps.length - 1]);
  }

  /**
   * Simple wrapper for the GetQueryResultsCommand.
   * @param {string} queryId
   */
  _getQueryResults(queryId) {
    return this.client.send(new GetQueryResultsCommand({ queryId }));
  }

  /**
   * Starts a query and waits for it to complete.
   * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
   * @param {number} maxLogs
   */
  async _query(dateRange, maxLogs) {
    try {
      const { queryId } = await this._startQuery(dateRange, maxLogs);
      const { results } = await this._waitUntilQueryDone(queryId);
      return results ?? [];
    } catch (err) {
      /**
       * This error is thrown when StartQuery returns an error indicating
       * that the query's start or end date occur before the log group was
       * created.
       */
      if (err instanceof DateOutOfBoundsError) {
        return [];
      }
      throw err;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Wrapper for the StartQueryCommand. Uses a static query string
   * for consistency.
   * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
```

```
 * @param {number} maxLogs
 * @returns {Promise<{ queryId: string }>}
 */
async _startQuery([startDate, endDate], maxLogs = 10000) {
  try {
    return await this.client.send(
      new StartQueryCommand({
        logGroupNames: this.logGroupNames,
        queryString: "fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc",
        startTime: startDate.valueOf(),
        endTime: endDate.valueOf(),
        limit: maxLogs,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    /** @type {string} */
    const message = err.message;
    if (message.startsWith("Query's end date and time")) {
      // This error indicates that the query's start or end date occur
      // before the log group was created.
      throw new DateOutOfBoundsError(message);
    }

    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * Call GetQueryResultsCommand until the query is done.
 * @param {string} queryId
 */
_waitUntilQueryDone(queryId) {
  const getResults = async () => {
    const results = await this._getQueryResults(queryId);
    const queryDone = [
      "Complete",
      "Failed",
      "Cancelled",
      "Timeout",
      "Unknown",
    ].includes(results.status);

    return { queryDone, results };
  };
```

```
    return retry(
      { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60, quiet: true },
      async () => {
        const { queryDone, results } = await getResults();
        if (!queryDone) {
          throw new Error("Query not done.");
        }

        return results;
      },
    );
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetQueryResults
  - StartQuery

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This file invokes an example module for managing CloudWatch queries exceeding 10,000 results.

```
import logging
import os
import sys

import boto3
from botocore.config import Config

from cloudwatch_query import CloudWatchQuery
```

```
from date_utilities import DateUtilities

# Configure logging at the module level.
logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO,
    format="%(asctime)s - %(levelname)s - %(filename)s:%(lineno)d - %(message)s",
)

DEFAULT_QUERY_LOG_GROUP = "/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query"


class CloudWatchLogsQueryRunner:
    def __init__(self):
        """
        Initializes the CloudWatchLogsQueryRunner class by setting up date
 utilities
        and creating a CloudWatch Logs client with retry configuration.
        """
        self.date_utilities = DateUtilities()
        self.cloudwatch_logs_client = self.create_cloudwatch_logs_client()

    def create_cloudwatch_logs_client(self):
        """
        Creates and returns a CloudWatch Logs client with a specified retry
 configuration.

        :return: A CloudWatch Logs client instance.
        :rtype: boto3.client
        """
        try:
            return boto3.client("logs", config=Config(retries={"max_attempts":
 10}))
        except Exception as e:
            logging.error(f"Failed to create CloudWatch Logs client: {e}")
            sys.exit(1)

    def fetch_environment_variables(self):
        """
        Fetches and validates required environment variables for query start and
 end dates.
        Fetches the environment variable for log group, returning the default
 value if it
        does not exist.
```

```
        :return: Tuple of query start date and end date as integers and the log
group.
        :rtype: tuple
        :raises SystemExit: If required environment variables are missing or
invalid.
        """
        try:
            query_start_date = int(os.environ["QUERY_START_DATE"])
            query_end_date = int(os.environ["QUERY_END_DATE"])
        except KeyError:
            logging.error(
                "Both QUERY_START_DATE and QUERY_END_DATE environment variables
are required."
            )
            sys.exit(1)
        except ValueError as e:
            logging.error(f"Error parsing date environment variables: {e}")
            sys.exit(1)

        try:
            log_group = os.environ["QUERY_LOG_GROUP"]
        except KeyError:
            logging.warning("No QUERY_LOG_GROUP environment variable, using
default value")
            log_group = DEFAULT_QUERY_LOG_GROUP

        return query_start_date, query_end_date, log_group

    def convert_dates_to_iso8601(self, start_date, end_date):
        """
        Converts UNIX timestamp dates to ISO 8601 format using DateUtilities.

        :param start_date: The start date in UNIX timestamp.
        :type start_date: int
        :param end_date: The end date in UNIX timestamp.
        :type end_date: int
        :return: Start and end dates in ISO 8601 format.
        :rtype: tuple
        """
        start_date_iso8601 =
self.date_utilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(
            start_date
        )
        end_date_iso8601 = self.date_utilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(
```

```
            end_date
        )
        return start_date_iso8601, end_date_iso8601

    def execute_query(
        self,
        start_date_iso8601,
        end_date_iso8601,
        log_group="/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query",
        query="fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc"
    ):
        """
        Creates a CloudWatchQuery instance and executes the query with provided
 date range.

        :param start_date_iso8601: The start date in ISO 8601 format.
        :type start_date_iso8601: str
        :param end_date_iso8601: The end date in ISO 8601 format.
        :type end_date_iso8601: str
        :param log_group: Log group to search: "/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-
query"
        :type log_group: str
        :param query: Query string to pass to the CloudWatchQuery instance
        :type query: str
        """
        cloudwatch_query = CloudWatchQuery(
            log_group=log_group,
            query_string=query
        )
        cloudwatch_query.query_logs((start_date_iso8601, end_date_iso8601))
        logging.info("Query executed successfully.")
        logging.info(
            f"Queries completed in {cloudwatch_query.query_duration} seconds.
 Total logs found: {len(cloudwatch_query.query_results)}"
        )


def main():
    """
    Main function to start a recursive CloudWatch logs query.
    Fetches required environment variables, converts dates, and executes the
 query.
    """
    logging.info("Starting a recursive CloudWatch logs query...")
```

```
    runner = CloudWatchLogsQueryRunner()
    query_start_date, query_end_date, log_group =
 runner.fetch_environment_variables()
    start_date_iso8601 = DateUtilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(
        query_start_date
    )
    end_date_iso8601 =
 DateUtilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(query_end_date)
    runner.execute_query(start_date_iso8601, end_date_iso8601,
 log_group=log_group)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

This module processes CloudWatch queries exceeding 10,000 results.

```
import logging
import time
from datetime import datetime
import threading
import boto3

from date_utilities import DateUtilities

DEFAULT_QUERY = "fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc"
DEFAULT_LOG_GROUP = "/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query"

class DateOutOfBoundsError(Exception):
    """Exception raised when the date range for a query is out of bounds."""

    pass


class CloudWatchQuery:
    """
    A class to query AWS CloudWatch logs within a specified date range.

    :vartype date_range: tuple
    :ivar limit: Maximum number of log entries to return.
    :vartype limit: int
    :log_group str: Name of the log group to query
```

```
    :query_string str: query
    """

    def __init__(self, log_group: str = DEFAULT_LOG_GROUP, query_string:
str=DEFAULT_QUERY) -> None:
        self.lock = threading.Lock()
        self.log_group = log_group
        self.query_string = query_string
        self.query_results = []
        self.query_duration = None
        self.datetime_format = "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S.%f"
        self.date_utilities = DateUtilities()
        self.limit = 10000

    def query_logs(self, date_range):
        """
        Executes a CloudWatch logs query for a specified date range and
calculates the execution time of the query.

        :return: A batch of logs retrieved from the CloudWatch logs query.
        :rtype: list
        """
        start_time = datetime.now()

        start_date, end_date = self.date_utilities.normalize_date_range_format(
            date_range, from_format="unix_timestamp", to_format="datetime"
        )

        logging.info(
            f"Original query:"
            f"\n       START:     {start_date}"
            f"\n       END:       {end_date}"
            f"\n       LOG GROUP: {self.log_group}"
        )
        self.recursive_query((start_date, end_date))
        end_time = datetime.now()
        self.query_duration = (end_time - start_time).total_seconds()

    def recursive_query(self, date_range):
        """
        Processes logs within a given date range, fetching batches of logs
recursively if necessary.
```

```
        :param date_range: The date range to fetch logs for, specified as a tuple
(start_timestamp, end_timestamp).
        :type date_range: tuple
        :return: None if the recursive fetching is continued or stops when the
final batch of logs is processed.
                 Although it doesn't explicitly return the query results, this
method accumulates all fetched logs
                 in the `self.query_results` attribute.
        :rtype: None
        """
        batch_of_logs = self.perform_query(date_range)
        # Add the batch to the accumulated logs
        with self.lock:
            self.query_results.extend(batch_of_logs)
        if len(batch_of_logs) == self.limit:
            logging.info(f"Fetched {self.limit}, checking for more...")
            most_recent_log = self.find_most_recent_log(batch_of_logs)
            most_recent_log_timestamp = next(
                item["value"]
                for item in most_recent_log
                if item["field"] == "@timestamp"
            )
            new_range = (most_recent_log_timestamp, date_range[1])
            midpoint = self.date_utilities.find_middle_time(new_range)

            first_half_thread = threading.Thread(
                target=self.recursive_query,
                args=((most_recent_log_timestamp, midpoint),),
            )
            second_half_thread = threading.Thread(
                target=self.recursive_query, args=((midpoint, date_range[1]),)
            )

            first_half_thread.start()
            second_half_thread.start()

            first_half_thread.join()
            second_half_thread.join()

    def find_most_recent_log(self, logs):
        """
        Search a list of log items and return most recent log entry.
        :param logs: A list of logs to analyze.
        :return: log
```

```
        :type :return List containing log item details
        """
        most_recent_log = None
        most_recent_date = "1970-01-01 00:00:00.000"

        for log in logs:
            for item in log:
                if item["field"] == "@timestamp":
                    logging.debug(f"Compared: {item['value']} to
{most_recent_date}")
                    if (
                        self.date_utilities.compare_dates(
                            item["value"], most_recent_date
                        )
                        == item["value"]
                    ):
                        logging.debug(f"New most recent: {item['value']}")
                        most_recent_date = item["value"]
                        most_recent_log = log
        logging.info(f"Most recent log date of batch: {most_recent_date}")
        return most_recent_log

    def perform_query(self, date_range):
        """
        Performs the actual CloudWatch log query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for
the query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :return: A list containing the query results.
        :rtype: list
        """
        client = boto3.client("logs")
        try:
            try:
                start_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
                )
                end_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
                )
                response = client.start_query(
```

```
                    logGroupName=self.log_group,
                    startTime=start_time,
                    endTime=end_time,
                    queryString=self.query_string,
                    limit=self.limit,
                )
                query_id = response["queryId"]
            except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
                raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")
            while True:
                time.sleep(1)
                results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
                if results["status"] in [
                    "Complete",
                    "Failed",
                    "Cancelled",
                    "Timeout",
                    "Unknown",
                ]:
                    return results.get("results", [])
        except DateOutOfBoundsError:
            return []

    def _initiate_query(self, client, date_range, max_logs):
        """
        Initiates the CloudWatch logs query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for
the query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :param max_logs: The maximum number of logs to retrieve.
        :type max_logs: int
        :return: The query ID as a string.
        :rtype: str
        """
        try:
            start_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
            )
            end_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
            )
```

```
            response = client.start_query(
                logGroupName=self.log_group,
                startTime=start_time,
                endTime=end_time,
                queryString=self.query_string,
                limit=max_logs,
            )
            return response["queryId"]
        except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
            raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")


    def _wait_for_query_results(self, client, query_id):
        """
        Waits for the query to complete and retrieves the results.

        :param query_id: The ID of the initiated query.
        :type query_id: str
        :return: A list containing the results of the query.
        :rtype: list
        """
        while True:
            time.sleep(1)
            results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
            if results["status"] in [
                "Complete",
                "Failed",
                "Cancelled",
                "Timeout",
                "Unknown",
            ]:
                return results.get("results", [])
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - GetQueryResults
  - StartQuery

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Code examples for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS CodeBuild with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **CodeBuild User Guide** – More information about CodeBuild.
- **CodeBuild API Reference** – Details about all available CodeBuild actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateProject with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListBuilds with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListProjects with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartBuild with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS CodeBuild with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateProject with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListBuilds with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListProjects with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartBuild with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for CodeBuild using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CodeBuild actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS CodeBuild API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateProject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListBuilds with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListProjects with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartBuild with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateProject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateProject`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an AWS CodeBuild build project

The following `create-project` example creates a CodeBuild build project using source files from an S3 bucket

```
aws codebuild create-project \
    --name "my-demo-project" \
    --source "{\"type\": \"S3\",\"location\": \"codebuild-us-west-2-123456789012-input-bucket/my-source.zip\"}" \
    --artifacts {"\"type\": \"S3\",\"location\": \"codebuild-us-west-2-123456789012-output-bucket\""} \
    --environment "{\"type\": \"LINUX_CONTAINER\",\"image\": \"aws/codebuild/standard:1.0\",\"computeType\": \"BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL\"}" \
    --service-role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-codebuild-service-role"
```

Output:

```
{
    "project": {
        "arn": "arn:aws:codebuild:us-west-2:123456789012:project/my-demo-
project",
        "name": "my-cli-demo-project",
        "encryptionKey": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:123456789012:alias/aws/s3",
        "serviceRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-codebuild-
service-role",
        "lastModified": 1556839783.274,
        "badge": {
            "badgeEnabled": false
        },
        "queuedTimeoutInMinutes": 480,
        "environment": {
            "image": "aws/codebuild/standard:1.0",
            "computeType": "BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL",
            "type": "LINUX_CONTAINER",
            "imagePullCredentialsType": "CODEBUILD",
            "privilegedMode": false,
            "environmentVariables": []
        },
        "artifacts": {
            "location": "codebuild-us-west-2-123456789012-output-bucket",
            "name": "my-cli-demo-project",
            "namespaceType": "NONE",
            "type": "S3",
            "packaging": "NONE",
            "encryptionDisabled": false
        },
        "source": {
            "type": "S3",
            "location": "codebuild-us-west-2-123456789012-input-bucket/my-
source.zip",
            "insecureSsl": false
        },
        "timeoutInMinutes": 60,
        "cache": {
            "type": "NO_CACHE"
        },
        "created": 1556839783.274
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create an AWS CodeBuild build project using a JSON input file for the parameters

The following `create-project` example creates a CodeBuild build project by passing all of the required parameters in a JSON input file. Create the input file template by running the command with only the `--generate-cli-skeleton parameter`.

```
aws codebuild create-project --cli-input-json file://create-project.json
```

The input JSON file `create-project.json` contains the following content:

```
{
    "name": "codebuild-demo-project",
    "source": {
        "type": "S3",
        "location": "codebuild-region-ID-account-ID-input-bucket/MessageUtil.zip"
    },
    "artifacts": {
        "type": "S3",
        "location": "codebuild-region-ID-account-ID-output-bucket"
    },
    "environment": {
        "type": "LINUX_CONTAINER",
        "image": "aws/codebuild/standard:1.0",
        "computeType": "BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL"
    },
    "serviceRole": "serviceIAMRole"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "project": {
        "name": "codebuild-demo-project",
        "serviceRole": "serviceIAMRole",
        "tags": [],
        "artifacts": {
            "packaging": "NONE",
            "type": "S3",
            "location": "codebuild-region-ID-account-ID-output-bucket",
            "name": "message-util.zip"
        },
```

```
        "lastModified": 1472661575.244,
        "timeoutInMinutes": 60,
        "created": 1472661575.244,
        "environment": {
            "computeType": "BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL",
            "image": "aws/codebuild/standard:1.0",
            "type": "LINUX_CONTAINER",
            "environmentVariables": []
        },
        "source": {
            "type": "S3",
            "location": "codebuild-region-ID-account-ID-input-bucket/
MessageUtil.zip"
        },
        "encryptionKey": "arn:aws:kms:region-ID:account-ID:alias/aws/s3",
        "arn": "arn:aws:codebuild:region-ID:account-ID:project/codebuild-demo-
project"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Create a Build Project (AWS CLI) in the *AWS CodeBuild User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateProject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a project.

```
import {
  ArtifactsType,
  CodeBuildClient,
  ComputeType,
  CreateProjectCommand,
  EnvironmentType,
```

```
  SourceType,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-codebuild";

// Create the AWS CodeBuild project.
export const createProject = async (
  projectName = "MyCodeBuilder",
  roleArn = "arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/CodeBuildAdmin",
  buildOutputBucket = "xxxx",
  githubUrl = "https://...",
) => {
  const codeBuildClient = new CodeBuildClient({});

  const response = await codeBuildClient.send(
    new CreateProjectCommand({
      artifacts: {
        // The destination of the build artifacts.
        type: ArtifactsType.S3,
        location: buildOutputBucket,
      },
      // Information about the build environment. The combination of
 "computeType" and "type" determines the
      // requirements for the environment such as CPU, memory, and disk space.
      environment: {
        // Build environment compute types.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/codebuild/latest/userguide/build-env-ref-
compute-types.html
        computeType: ComputeType.BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL,
        // Docker image identifier.
        // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/codebuild/latest/userguide/build-env-
ref-available.html
        image: "aws/codebuild/standard:7.0",
        // Build environment type.
        type: EnvironmentType.LINUX_CONTAINER,
      },
      name: projectName,
      // A role ARN with permission to create a CodeBuild project, write to the
 artifact location, and write CloudWatch logs.
      serviceRole: roleArn,
      source: {
        // The type of repository that contains the source code to be built.
        type: SourceType.GITHUB,
        // The location of the repository that contains the source code to be
 built.
        location: githubUrl,
```

```
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  //   {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: 'b428b244-777b-49a6-a48d-5dffedced8e7',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     project: {
  //       arn: 'arn:aws:codebuild:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:project/MyCodeBuilder',
  //       artifacts: {
  //         encryptionDisabled: false,
  //         location: 'xxxxxx-xxxxxxx-xxxxxx',
  //         name: 'MyCodeBuilder',
  //         namespaceType: 'NONE',
  //         packaging: 'NONE',
  //         type: 'S3'
  //       },
  //       badge: { badgeEnabled: false },
  //       cache: { type: 'NO_CACHE' },
  //       created: 2023-08-18T14:46:48.979Z,
  //       encryptionKey: 'arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:alias/aws/s3',
  //       environment: {
  //         computeType: 'BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL',
  //         environmentVariables: [],
  //         image: 'aws/codebuild/standard:7.0',
  //         imagePullCredentialsType: 'CODEBUILD',
  //         privilegedMode: false,
  //         type: 'LINUX_CONTAINER'
  //       },
  //       lastModified: 2023-08-18T14:46:48.979Z,
  //       name: 'MyCodeBuilder',
  //       projectVisibility: 'PRIVATE',
  //       queuedTimeoutInMinutes: 480,
  //       serviceRole: 'arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/CodeBuildAdmin',
  //       source: {
  //         insecureSsl: false,
  //         location: 'https://...',
  //         reportBuildStatus: false,
```

```
  //         type: 'GITHUB'
  //       },
  //       timeoutInMinutes: 60
  //     }
  //   }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateProject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `ListBuilds` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListBuilds`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the CodeBuild builds.
/*!
  \param sortType: 'SortOrderType' type.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::CodeBuild::listBuilds(Aws::CodeBuild::Model::SortOrderType sortType,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::CodeBuild::CodeBuildClient codeBuildClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListBuildsRequest listBuildsRequest;
    listBuildsRequest.SetSortOrder(sortType);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
```

```
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listBuildsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListBuildsOutcome listBuildsOutcome =
codeBuildClient.ListBuilds(
                listBuildsRequest);

        if (listBuildsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &ids =
listBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetIds();
            if (!ids.empty()) {

                std::cout << "Information about each build:" << std::endl;
                Aws::CodeBuild::Model::BatchGetBuildsRequest getBuildsRequest;
                getBuildsRequest.SetIds(listBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetIds());
                Aws::CodeBuild::Model::BatchGetBuildsOutcome getBuildsOutcome =
codeBuildClient.BatchGetBuilds(
                        getBuildsRequest);

                if (getBuildsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    const Aws::Vector<Aws::CodeBuild::Model::Build> &builds =
getBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetBuilds();
                    std::cout << builds.size() << " build(s) found." <<
std::endl;
                    for (auto val: builds) {
                        std::cout << val.GetId() << std::endl;
                    }
                } else {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting builds"
                              << getBuildsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    return false;
                }
            } else {
                std::cout << "No builds found." << std::endl;
            }

            // Get the next token for pagination.

            nextToken = listBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error listing builds"
                      << listBuildsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.

            empty()

            );

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuilds in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of AWS CodeBuild builds IDs.

The following `list-builds` example gets a list of CodeBuild IDs sorted in ascending order.

```
aws codebuild list-builds --sort-order ASCENDING
```

The output includes a `nextToken` value which indicates that there is more output available.

```
{
    "nextToken": "4AEA6u7J...The full token has been omitted for
 brevity...MzY2OA==",
    "ids": [
        "codebuild-demo-project:815e755f-bade-4a7e-80f0-efe51EXAMPLE"
        "codebuild-demo-project:84a7f3d1-d40e-4956-b4cf-7a9d4EXAMPLE"
            ... The full list of build IDs has been omitted for brevity ...
        "codebuild-demo-project:931d0b72-bf6f-4040-a472-5c707EXAMPLE"
    ]
}
```

Run this command again and provide the `nextToken` value in the previous response as a parameter to get the next part of the output. Repeat until you don't receive a `nextToken` value in the response.

```
aws codebuild list-builds --sort-order ASCENDING --next-
token 4AEA6u7J...The full token has been omitted for brevity...MzY2OA==
```

Next part of the output:

```
{
    "ids": [
        "codebuild-demo-project:49015049-21cf-4b50-9708-df115EXAMPLE",
        "codebuild-demo-project:543e7206-68a3-46d6-a4da-759abEXAMPLE",
            ... The full list of build IDs has been omitted for brevity ...
        "codebuild-demo-project:c282f198-4582-4b38-bdc0-26f96EXAMPLE"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View a List of Build IDs (AWS CLI) in the *AWS CodeBuild User Guide*

- For API details, see ListBuilds in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `ListProjects` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListProjects`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the CodeBuild projects.
/*!
  \param sortType: 'SortOrderType' type.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::CodeBuild::listProjects(Aws::CodeBuild::Model::SortOrderType
 sortType,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::CodeBuild::CodeBuildClient codeBuildClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListProjectsRequest listProjectsRequest;
    listProjectsRequest.SetSortOrder(sortType);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Next token for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allProjects;

    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listProjectsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListProjectsOutcome outcome =
 codeBuildClient.ListProjects(
                listProjectsRequest);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &projects =
 outcome.GetResult().GetProjects();
            allProjects.insert(allProjects.end(), projects.begin(),
 projects.end());
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing projects" <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allProjects.size() << " project(s) found." << std::endl;
    for (auto project: allProjects) {
        std::cout << project << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of AWS CodeBuild build project names.

The following `list-projects` example gets a list of CodeBuild build projects sorted by name in ascending order.

```
aws codebuild list-projects --sort-by NAME --sort-order ASCENDING
```

The output includes a `nextToken` value which indicates that there is more output available.

```
{
    "nextToken": "Ci33ACF6...The full token has been omitted for brevity...U
+AkMx8=",
    "projects": [
        "codebuild-demo-project",
        "codebuild-demo-project2",
            ... The full list of build project names has been omitted for
 brevity ...
        "codebuild-demo-project99"
    ]
}
```

Run this command again and provide the `nextToken` value from the previous response as a parameter to get the next part of the output. Repeat until you don't receive a `nextToken` value in the response.

```
aws codebuild list-projects  --sort-by NAME --sort-order ASCENDING --next-
token Ci33ACF6...The full token has been omitted for brevity...U+AkMx8=

{
    "projects": [
        "codebuild-demo-project100",
        "codebuild-demo-project101",
```

```
  ... The full list of build project names has been omitted for brevity ...
        "codebuild-demo-project122"

  ]
}
```

For more information, see View a List of Build Project Names (AWS CLI) in the *AWS CodeBuild User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `StartBuild` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartBuild`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Start an AWS CodeBuild project build.
/*!
  \param projectName: A CodeBuild project name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::CodeBuild::startBuild(const Aws::String &projectName,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::CodeBuild::CodeBuildClient codeBuildClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::StartBuildRequest startBuildRequest;
    startBuildRequest.SetProjectName(projectName);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::StartBuildOutcome outcome =
 codeBuildClient.StartBuild(
```

```
            startBuildRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully started build" << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Build ID: " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuild().GetId()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    else {
        std::cerr << "Error starting build" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see StartBuild in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start running a build of an AWS CodeBuild build project.

The following `start-build` example starts a build for the specified CodeBuild project. The build overrides both the project's setting for the number of minutes the build is allowed to be queued before it times out and the project's artifact settings.

```
aws codebuild start-build \
    --project-name "my-demo-project" \
    --queued-timeout-in-minutes-override 5 \
    --artifacts-override {"\"type\": \"S3\",\"location\":
 \"arn:aws:s3:::artifacts-override\",\"overrideArtifactName\":true"}
```

Output:

```
{
    "build": {
        "serviceRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-codebuild-
service-role",
        "buildStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
```

```
        "buildComplete": false,
        "projectName": "my-demo-project",
        "timeoutInMinutes": 60,
        "source": {
            "insecureSsl": false,
            "type": "S3",
            "location": "codebuild-us-west-2-123456789012-input-bucket/my-
source.zip"
        },
        "queuedTimeoutInMinutes": 5,
        "encryptionKey": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:123456789012:alias/aws/s3",
        "currentPhase": "QUEUED",
        "startTime": 1556905683.568,
        "environment": {
            "computeType": "BUILD_GENERAL1_MEDIUM",
            "environmentVariables": [],
            "type": "LINUX_CONTAINER",
            "privilegedMode": false,
            "image": "aws/codebuild/standard:1.0",
            "imagePullCredentialsType": "CODEBUILD"
        },
        "phases": [
            {
                "phaseStatus": "SUCCEEDED",
                "startTime": 1556905683.568,
                "phaseType": "SUBMITTED",
                "durationInSeconds": 0,
                "endTime": 1556905684.524
            },
            {
                "startTime": 1556905684.524,
                "phaseType": "QUEUED"
            }
        ],
        "logs": {
            "deepLink": "https://console.aws.amazon.com/cloudwatch/home?
region=us-west-2#logEvent:group=null;stream=null"
        },
        "artifacts": {
            "encryptionDisabled": false,
            "location": "arn:aws:s3:::artifacts-override/my-demo-project",
            "overrideArtifactName": true
        },
        "cache": {
```

```
            "type": "NO_CACHE"
        },
        "id": "my-demo-project::12345678-a1b2-c3d4-e5f6-11111EXAMPLE",
        "initiator": "my-aws-account-name",
        "arn": "arn:aws:codebuild:us-west-2:123456789012:build/my-demo-
project::12345678-a1b2-c3d4-e5f6-11111EXAMPLE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Run a Build (AWS CLI) in the *AWS CodeBuild User Guide*.

- For API details, see StartBuild in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Code examples for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS CodeCommit with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **CodeCommit User Guide** – More information about CodeCommit.
- **CodeCommit API Reference** – Details about all available CodeCommit actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs
    - Use BatchGetRepositories with a CLI
    - Use CreateBranch with a CLI
    - Use CreateRepository with a CLI
    - Use DeleteRepository with a CLI
    - Use GetBranch with a CLI

- Use GetRepository with a CLI
- Use ListBranches with a CLI
- Use ListRepositories with a CLI
- Use UpdateDefaultBranch with a CLI
- Use UpdateRepositoryDescription with a CLI
- Use UpdateRepositoryName with a CLI

Basic examples for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS CodeCommit with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs
  - Use BatchGetRepositories with a CLI
  - Use CreateBranch with a CLI
  - Use CreateRepository with a CLI
  - Use DeleteRepository with a CLI
  - Use GetBranch with a CLI
  - Use GetRepository with a CLI
  - Use ListBranches with a CLI
  - Use ListRepositories with a CLI
  - Use UpdateDefaultBranch with a CLI
  - Use UpdateRepositoryDescription with a CLI
  - Use UpdateRepositoryName with a CLI

Actions for CodeCommit using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CodeCommit actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS CodeCommit API Reference.

Examples

- Use BatchGetRepositories with a CLI
- Use CreateBranch with a CLI
- Use CreateRepository with a CLI
- Use DeleteRepository with a CLI
- Use GetBranch with a CLI
- Use GetRepository with a CLI
- Use ListBranches with a CLI
- Use ListRepositories with a CLI
- Use UpdateDefaultBranch with a CLI
- Use UpdateRepositoryDescription with a CLI
- Use UpdateRepositoryName with a CLI

Use `BatchGetRepositories` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchGetRepositories`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view details about multiple repositories

This example shows details about multiple AWS CodeCommit repositories.

```
aws codecommit batch-get-repositories \
    --repository-names MyDemoRepo MyOtherDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
{
    "repositoriesNotFound": [],
    "repositories": [
         {
            "creationDate": 1429203623.625,
            "defaultBranch": "main",
            "repositoryName": "MyDemoRepo",
```

```
            "cloneUrlSsh": "ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/v1/
repos/MyDemoRepo",
            "lastModifiedDate": 1430783812.0869999,
            "repositoryDescription": "My demonstration repository",
            "cloneUrlHttp": "https://codecommit.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo",
            "repositoryId": "f7579e13-b83e-4027-aaef-650c0EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-2:111111111111:MyDemoRepo"
            "accountId": "111111111111"
        },
        {
            "creationDate": 1429203623.627,
            "defaultBranch": "main",
            "repositoryName": "MyOtherDemoRepo",
            "cloneUrlSsh": "ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/v1/
repos/MyOtherDemoRepo",
            "lastModifiedDate": 1430783812.0889999,
            "repositoryDescription": "My other demonstration repository",
            "cloneUrlHttp": "https://codecommit.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyOtherDemoRepo",
            "repositoryId": "cfc29ac4-b0cb-44dc-9990-f6f51EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-2:111111111111:MyOtherDemoRepo"
            "accountId": "111111111111"
        }
    ],
    "repositoriesNotFound": []
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetRepositories in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example confirms which of the specified repositories are found and not found.

```
Get-CCRepositoryBatch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo, MyNewRepo, AMissingRepo
```

Output:

```
Repositories                                RepositoriesNotFound
```

```
------------                                ---------------------
{MyDemoRepo, MyNewRepo}                    {AMissingRepo}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetRepositories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example confirms which of the specified repositories are found and not found.

```
Get-CCRepositoryBatch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo, MyNewRepo, AMissingRepo
```

Output:

```
Repositories                                RepositoriesNotFound
------------                                ---------------------
{MyDemoRepo, MyNewRepo}                    {AMissingRepo}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetRepositories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateBranch` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateBranch`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a branch

This example creates a branch in an AWS CodeCommit repository. This command produces output only if there are errors.

Command:

```
aws codecommit create-branch --repository-name MyDemoRepo --branch-
name MyNewBranch --commit-id 317f8570EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see CreateBranch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new branch with the specified name for the specified repository and the specified commit ID.

```
New-CCBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -BranchName MyNewBranch -CommitId
 7763222d...561fc9c9
```

- For API details, see CreateBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new branch with the specified name for the specified repository and the specified commit ID.

```
New-CCBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -BranchName MyNewBranch -CommitId
 7763222d...561fc9c9
```

- For API details, see CreateBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateRepository` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRepository`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a repository

This example creates a repository and associates it with the user's AWS account.

Command:

```
aws codecommit create-repository --repository-name MyDemoRepo --repository-
description "My demonstration repository"
```

Output:

```
{
    "repositoryMetadata": {
        "repositoryName": "MyDemoRepo",
                "cloneUrlSsh": "ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/
repos/MyDemoRepo",
                "lastModifiedDate": 1444766838.027,
        "repositoryDescription": "My demonstration repository",
                "cloneUrlHttp": "https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/
v1/repos/MyDemoRepo",
        "repositoryId": "f7579e13-b83e-4027-aaef-650c0EXAMPLE",
                "Arn": "arn:aws:codecommit:us-
east-1:111111111111EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo",
        "accountId": "111111111111"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new repository with the specified name and the specified description.

```
New-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -RepositoryDescription "This is a
 repository for demonstration purposes."
```

Output:

```
AccountId             : 80398EXAMPLE
Arn                   : arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlHttp          : https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlSsh           : ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
```

```
CreationDate           : 9/18/2015 4:13:25 PM
DefaultBranch          :
LastModifiedDate       : 9/18/2015 4:13:25 PM
RepositoryDescription  : This is a repository for demonstration purposes.
RepositoryId           : 43ef2443-3372-4b12-9e78-65c27EXAMPLE
RepositoryName         : MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new repository with the specified name and the specified description.

```
New-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -RepositoryDescription "This is a
 repository for demonstration purposes."
```

Output:

```
AccountId              : 80398EXAMPLE
Arn                    : arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlHttp           : https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlSsh            : ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CreationDate           : 9/18/2015 4:13:25 PM
DefaultBranch          :
LastModifiedDate       : 9/18/2015 4:13:25 PM
RepositoryDescription  : This is a repository for demonstration purposes.
RepositoryId           : 43ef2443-3372-4b12-9e78-65c27EXAMPLE
RepositoryName         : MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteRepository` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRepository`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a repository

This example shows how to delete an AWS CodeCommit repository.

Command:

```
aws codecommit delete-repository --repository-name MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
{
  "repositoryId": "f7579e13-b83e-4027-aaef-650c0EXAMPLE"
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example forcibly deletes the specified repository. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the repository without a prompt.

```
Remove-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
43ef2443-3372-4b12-9e78-65c27EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example forcibly deletes the specified repository. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the repository without a prompt.

```
Remove-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
43ef2443-3372-4b12-9e78-65c27EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBranch` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBranch`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a branch

This example gets information about a branch in an AWS CodeCommit repository.

Command:

```
aws codecommit get-branch --repository-name MyDemoRepo --branch-name MyNewBranch
```

Output:

```
{
  "BranchInfo": {
        "commitID": "317f8570EXAMPLE",
                "branchName": "MyNewBranch"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBranch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified branch for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -BranchName MyNewBranch
```

Output:

```
BranchName                                  CommitId
----------                                  --------
MyNewBranch                                 7763222d...561fc9c9
```

- For API details, see GetBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified branch for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -BranchName MyNewBranch
```

Output:

```
BranchName                                  CommitId
----------                                  --------
MyNewBranch                                 7763222d...561fc9c9
```

- For API details, see GetBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetRepository` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetRepository`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a repository

This example shows details about an AWS CodeCommit repository.

```
aws codecommit get-repository \
    --repository-name MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "repositoryMetadata": {
        "creationDate": 1429203623.625,
        "defaultBranch": "main",
        "repositoryName": "MyDemoRepo",
        "cloneUrlSsh": "ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/v1/
repos/MyDemoRepo",
        "lastModifiedDate": 1430783812.0869999,
        "repositoryDescription": "My demonstration repository",
        "cloneUrlHttp": "https://codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo",
        "repositoryId": "f7579e13-b83e-4027-aaef-650c0EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
        "accountId": "111111111111"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetRepository in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
AccountId             : 80398EXAMPLE
Arn                   : arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlHttp          : https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlSsh           : ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CreationDate          : 9/8/2015 3:21:33 PM
DefaultBranch         :
LastModifiedDate      : 9/8/2015 3:21:33 PM
RepositoryDescription : This is a repository for demonstration purposes.
RepositoryId          : c7d0d2b0-ce40-4303-b4c3-38529EXAMPLE
RepositoryName        : MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see GetRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
AccountId             : 80398EXAMPLE
Arn                   : arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlHttp          : https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlSsh           : ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CreationDate          : 9/8/2015 3:21:33 PM
DefaultBranch         :
LastModifiedDate      : 9/8/2015 3:21:33 PM
RepositoryDescription : This is a repository for demonstration purposes.
RepositoryId          : c7d0d2b0-ce40-4303-b4c3-38529EXAMPLE
RepositoryName        : MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see GetRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListBranches` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListBranches`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view a list of branch names

This example lists all branch names in an AWS CodeCommit repository.

```
aws codecommit list-branches \
    --repository-name MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "branches": [
        "MyNewBranch",
        "main"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListBranches in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of branch names for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCBranchList -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
master
MyNewBranch
```

- For API details, see ListBranches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of branch names for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCBranchList -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
master
MyNewBranch
```

- For API details, see ListBranches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListRepositories` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListRepositories`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view a list of repositories

This example lists all AWS CodeCommit repositories associated with the user's AWS account.

Command:

```
aws codecommit list-repositories
```

Output:

```
{
  "repositories": [
      {
         "repositoryName": "MyDemoRepo"
         "repositoryId": "f7579e13-b83e-4027-aaef-650c0EXAMPLE",
      },
      {
         "repositoryName": "MyOtherDemoRepo"
         "repositoryId": "cfc29ac4-b0cb-44dc-9990-f6f51EXAMPLE"
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListRepositories in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all repositories in ascending order by repository name.

```
Get-CCRepositoryList -Order Ascending -SortBy RepositoryName
```

Output:

```
RepositoryId                            RepositoryName
------------                            --------------
```

```
c7d0d2b0-ce40-4303-b4c3-38529EXAMPLE    MyDemoRepo
05f30c66-e3e3-4f91-a0cd-1c84aEXAMPLE    MyNewRepo
```

- For API details, see ListRepositories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all repositories in ascending order by repository name.

```
Get-CCRepositoryList -Order Ascending -SortBy RepositoryName
```

Output:

```
RepositoryId                            RepositoryName
------------                            --------------
c7d0d2b0-ce40-4303-b4c3-38529EXAMPLE    MyDemoRepo
05f30c66-e3e3-4f91-a0cd-1c84aEXAMPLE    MyNewRepo
```

- For API details, see ListRepositories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateDefaultBranch` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateDefaultBranch`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the default branch for a repository

This example changes the default branch for an AWS CodeCommit repository. This command produces output only if there are errors.

Command:

```
aws codecommit update-default-branch --repository-name MyDemoRepo --default-
branch-name MyNewBranch
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see UpdateDefaultBranch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the default branch for the specified repository to the specified branch.

```
Update-CCDefaultBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -DefaultBranchName MyNewBranch
```

- For API details, see UpdateDefaultBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the default branch for the specified repository to the specified branch.

```
Update-CCDefaultBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -DefaultBranchName MyNewBranch
```

- For API details, see UpdateDefaultBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateRepositoryDescription` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateRepositoryDescription`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the description for a repository

This example changes the description for an AWS CodeCommit repository. This command produces output only if there are errors.

Command:

```
aws codecommit update-repository-description --repository-name MyDemoRepo --
repository-description "This description was changed"
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryDescription in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the description for the specified repository.

```
Update-CCRepositoryDescription -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -RepositoryDescription
 "This is an updated description."
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryDescription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the description for the specified repository.

```
Update-CCRepositoryDescription -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -RepositoryDescription
 "This is an updated description."
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryDescription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateRepositoryName` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateRepositoryName`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the name of a repository

This example changes the name of an AWS CodeCommit repository. This command produces output only if there are errors. Changing the name of the AWS CodeCommit repository will change the SSH and HTTPS URLs that users need to connect to the repository. Users will

not be able to connect to this repository until they update their connection settings. Also, because the repository's ARN will change, changing the repository name will invalidate any IAM user policies that rely on this repository's ARN.

Command:

```
aws codecommit update-repository-name --old-name MyDemoRepo --new-
name MyRenamedDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryName in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified repository.

```
Update-CCRepositoryName -NewName MyDemoRepo2 -OldName MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryName in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified repository.

```
Update-CCRepositoryName -NewName MyDemoRepo2 -OldName MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryName in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS CodeDeploy with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **CodeDeploy Developer Guide** – More information about CodeDeploy.
- **CodeDeploy API Reference** – Details about all available CodeDeploy actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
    - Use BatchGetApplications with a CLI
    - Use BatchGetDeployments with a CLI
    - Use BatchGetOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
    - Use CreateApplication with a CLI
    - Use CreateDeployment with a CLI
    - Use CreateDeploymentConfig with a CLI
    - Use CreateDeploymentGroup with a CLI
    - Use DeleteApplication with a CLI
    - Use DeleteDeploymentConfig with a CLI
    - Use DeleteDeploymentGroup with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
    - Use GetApplication with a CLI
    - Use GetApplicationRevision with a CLI
    - Use GetDeployment with a CLI
    - Use GetDeploymentConfig with a CLI
    - Use GetDeploymentGroup with a CLI

    - Use GetDeploymentInstance with a CLI

- Use GetOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use ListApplicationRevisions with a CLI
- Use ListApplications with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentConfigs with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentGroups with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentInstances with a CLI
- Use ListDeployments with a CLI
- Use ListOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use RegisterApplicationRevision with a CLI
- Use RegisterOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use StopDeployment with a CLI
- Use UpdateApplication with a CLI
- Use UpdateDeploymentGroup with a CLI

Basic examples for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS CodeDeploy with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
  - Use BatchGetApplications with a CLI
  - Use BatchGetDeployments with a CLI
  - Use BatchGetOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
  - Use CreateApplication with a CLI
  - Use CreateDeployment with a CLI
  - Use CreateDeploymentConfig with a CLI
  - Use CreateDeploymentGroup with a CLI
  - Use DeleteApplication with a CLI
  - Use DeleteDeploymentConfig with a CLI

- Use DeleteDeploymentGroup with a CLI
- Use DeregisterOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use GetApplication with a CLI
- Use GetApplicationRevision with a CLI
- Use GetDeployment with a CLI
- Use GetDeploymentConfig with a CLI
- Use GetDeploymentGroup with a CLI
- Use GetDeploymentInstance with a CLI
- Use GetOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use ListApplicationRevisions with a CLI
- Use ListApplications with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentConfigs with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentGroups with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentInstances with a CLI
- Use ListDeployments with a CLI
- Use ListOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use RegisterApplicationRevision with a CLI
- Use RegisterOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use StopDeployment with a CLI
- Use UpdateApplication with a CLI
- Use UpdateDeploymentGroup with a CLI

Actions for CodeDeploy using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CodeDeploy actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS CodeDeploy API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use BatchGetApplications with a CLI
- Use BatchGetDeployments with a CLI
- Use BatchGetOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use CreateApplication with a CLI
- Use CreateDeployment with a CLI
- Use CreateDeploymentConfig with a CLI
- Use CreateDeploymentGroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteApplication with a CLI
- Use DeleteDeploymentConfig with a CLI
- Use DeleteDeploymentGroup with a CLI
- Use DeregisterOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use GetApplication with a CLI
- Use GetApplicationRevision with a CLI
- Use GetDeployment with a CLI
- Use GetDeploymentConfig with a CLI
- Use GetDeploymentGroup with a CLI
- Use GetDeploymentInstance with a CLI
- Use GetOnPremisesInstance with a CLI
- Use ListApplicationRevisions with a CLI
- Use ListApplications with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentConfigs with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentGroups with a CLI
- Use ListDeploymentInstances with a CLI
- Use ListDeployments with a CLI
- Use ListOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use RegisterApplicationRevision with a CLI
- Use RegisterOnPremisesInstance with a CLI

- Use RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances with a CLI
- Use StopDeployment with a CLI
- Use UpdateApplication with a CLI
- Use UpdateDeploymentGroup with a CLI

Use `AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add tags to on-premises instances

The following `add-tags-to-on-premises-instances` example associates in AWS CodeDeploy the same on-premises instance tag to two on-premises instances. It does not register the on-premises instances with AWS CodeDeploy.

```
aws deploy add-tags-to-on-premises-instances \
    --instance-names AssetTag12010298EX AssetTag23121309EX \
    --tags Key=Name,Value=CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds an on-premises instance tag with the specified key and value for the specified on-premises instance.

```
Add-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX -Tag @{"Key" =
 "Name"; "Value" = "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem"}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds an on-premises instance tag with the specified key and value for the specified on-premises instance.

```
Add-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX -Tag @{"Key" =
 "Name"; "Value" = "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem"}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `BatchGetApplications` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchGetApplications`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about multiple applications

The following `batch-get-applications` example displays information about multiple applications that are associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy batch-get-applications --application-names WordPress_App MyOther_App
```

Output:

```
{
    "applicationsInfo": [
        {
            "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
            "applicationId": "d9dd6993-f171-44fa-a811-211e4EXAMPLE",
            "createTime": 1407878168.078,
            "linkedToGitHub": false
        },
        {
            "applicationName": "MyOther_App",
            "applicationId": "8ca57519-31da-42b2-9194-8bb16EXAMPLE",
            "createTime": 1407453571.63,
            "linkedToGitHub": false
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetApplications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified applications.

```
Get-CDApplicationBatch -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication,
 CodePipelineDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationId                           ApplicationName              CreateTime
            LinkedToGitHub
-------------                           ---------------              ----------
            --------------
e07fb938-091e-4f2f-8963-4d3e8EXAMPLE    CodeDeployDemoApplication    7/20/2015
 9:49:48 PM    False
1ecfd602-62f1-4038-8f0d-06688EXAMPLE    CodePipelineDemoApplication  8/13/2015
 5:53:26 PM    False
```

- For API details, see BatchGetApplications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified applications.

```
Get-CDApplicationBatch -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication,
 CodePipelineDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationId                           ApplicationName              CreateTime
            LinkedToGitHub
-------------                           ---------------              ----------
            --------------
```

```
e07fb938-091e-4f2f-8963-4d3e8EXAMPLE    CodeDeployDemoApplication    7/20/2015
 9:49:48 PM    False
1ecfd602-62f1-4038-8f0d-06688EXAMPLE    CodePipelineDemoApplication  8/13/2015
 5:53:26 PM    False
```

- For API details, see BatchGetApplications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `BatchGetDeployments` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchGetDeployments`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about multiple deployments

The following `batch-get-deployments` example displays information about multiple deployments that are associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy batch-get-deployments --deployment-ids d-A1B2C3111 d-A1B2C3222
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentsInfo": [
        {
            "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
            "status": "Failed",
            "deploymentOverview": {
                "Failed": 0,
                "InProgress": 0,
                "Skipped": 0,
                "Succeeded": 1,
                "Pending": 0
            },
            "deploymentConfigName": "CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime",
            "creator": "user",
            "deploymentGroupName": "WordPress_DG",
            "revision": {
                "revisionType": "S3",
```

```
                "s3Location": {
                "bundleType": "zip",
                "version": "uTecLusEXAMPLEFXtfUcyfV8bEXAMPLE",
                "bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "key": "WordPressApp.zip"
                }
            },
            "deploymentId": "d-A1B2C3111",
            "createTime": 1408480721.9,
            "completeTime": 1408480741.822
        },
        {
            "applicationName": "MyOther_App",
            "status": "Failed",
            "deploymentOverview": {
                "Failed": 1,
                "InProgress": 0,
                "Skipped": 0,
                "Succeeded": 0,
                "Pending": 0
            },
            "deploymentConfigName": "CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime",
            "creator": "user",
            "errorInformation": {
                "message": "Deployment failed: Constraint default violated: No
 hosts succeeded.",
                "code": "HEALTH_CONSTRAINTS"
            },
            "deploymentGroupName": "MyOther_DG",
            "revision": {
                "revisionType": "S3",
                "s3Location": {
                "bundleType": "zip",
                "eTag": "\"dd56cfdEXAMPLE8e768f9d77fEXAMPLE\"",
                "bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "key": "MyOtherApp.zip"
                }
            },
            "deploymentId": "d-A1B2C3222",
            "createTime": 1409764576.589,
            "completeTime": 1409764596.101
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetDeployments in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified deployments.

```
Get-CDDeploymentBatch -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX, d-RR0T5KTEX
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName               : CodeDeployDemoApplication
CompleteTime                  : 7/23/2015 11:26:04 PM
CreateTime                    : 7/23/2015 11:24:43 PM
Creator                       : user
DeploymentConfigName          : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName           : CodeDeployDemoFleet
DeploymentId                  : d-QZMRGSTEX
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                        : Succeeded

ApplicationName               : CodePipelineDemoApplication
CompleteTime                  : 7/23/2015 6:07:30 PM
CreateTime                    : 7/23/2015 6:06:29 PM
Creator                       : user
DeploymentConfigName          : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName           : CodePipelineDemoFleet
DeploymentId                  : d-RR0T5KTEX
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
```

```
Status                          : Succeeded
```

- For API details, see BatchGetDeployments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified deployments.

```
Get-CDDeploymentBatch -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX, d-RR0T5KTEX
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName                : CodeDeployDemoApplication
CompleteTime                   : 7/23/2015 11:26:04 PM
CreateTime                     : 7/23/2015 11:24:43 PM
Creator                        : user
DeploymentConfigName           : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName            : CodeDeployDemoFleet
DeploymentId                   : d-QZMRGSTEX
DeploymentOverview             : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                    :
ErrorInformation               :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures  : False
Revision                       : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                      : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                         : Succeeded

ApplicationName                : CodePipelineDemoApplication
CompleteTime                   : 7/23/2015 6:07:30 PM
CreateTime                     : 7/23/2015 6:06:29 PM
Creator                        : user
DeploymentConfigName           : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName            : CodePipelineDemoFleet
DeploymentId                   : d-RR0T5KTEX
DeploymentOverview             : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                    :
ErrorInformation               :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures  : False
Revision                       : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                      : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                         : Succeeded
```

- For API details, see BatchGetDeployments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `BatchGetOnPremisesInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchGetOnPremisesInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about one or more on-premises instances

The following `batch-get-on-premises-instances` example gets information about two on-premises instances.

```
aws deploy batch-get-on-premises-instances --instance-
names AssetTag12010298EX AssetTag23121309EX
```

Output:

```
{
    "instanceInfos": [
        {
            "iamUserArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AWS/CodeDeploy/
AssetTag12010298EX",
            "tags": [
                {
                    "Value": "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem",
                    "Key": "Name"
                }
            ],
            "instanceName": "AssetTag12010298EX",
            "registerTime": 1425579465.228,
            "instanceArn": "arn:aws:codedeploy:us-west-2:123456789012:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_4IwLNI2Alh"
        },
        {
            "iamUserArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AWS/CodeDeploy/
AssetTag23121309EX",
            "tags": [
                {
```

```
                    "Value": "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem",
                    "Key": "Name"
                }
            ],
            "instanceName": "AssetTag23121309EX",
            "registerTime": 1425595585.988,
            "instanceArn": "arn:aws:codedeploy:us-west-2:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag23121309EX_PomUy64Was"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetOnPremisesInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified on-premises instances.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceBatch -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX,
 AssetTag12010298EX-2
```

Output:

```
DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployFRWUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX-2_XmeSz18rEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX-2
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:38:52 PM
Tags           : {Name}

DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_rDH556dxEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:36:24 PM
Tags           : {Name}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified on-premises instances.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceBatch -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX,
 AssetTag12010298EX-2
```

Output:

```
DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployFRWUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX-2_XmeSz18rEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX-2
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:38:52 PM
Tags           : {Name}

DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_rDH556dxEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:36:24 PM
Tags           : {Name}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateApplication` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateApplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an application

The following `create-application` example creates an application and associates it with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy create-application --application-name MyOther_App
```

Output:

```
{
    "applicationId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateApplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new application with the specified name.

```
New-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
```

Output:

```
f19e4b61-2231-4328-b0fd-e57f5EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new application with the specified name.

```
New-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
```

Output:

```
f19e4b61-2231-4328-b0fd-e57f5EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateDeployment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDeployment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a CodeDeploy deployment using the EC2/On-premises compute platform

The following `create-deployment` example creates a deployment and associates it with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy create-deployment \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --deployment-config-name CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime \
    --deployment-group-name WordPress_DG \
    --description "My demo deployment" \
    --s3-location bucket=amzn-s3-demo-
bucket,bundleType=zip,eTag=dd56cfdEXAMPLE8e768f9d77fEXAMPLE,key=WordPressApp.zip
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentId": "d-A1B2C3111"
}
```

Example 2: To create a CodeDeploy deployment using the Amazon ECS compute platform

The following `create-deployment` example uses the following two files to deploy an Amazon ECS service.

Contents of `create-deployment.json` file:

```
{
    "applicationName": "ecs-deployment",
    "deploymentGroupName": "ecs-deployment-dg",
    "revision": {
        "revisionType": "S3",
        "s3Location": {
            "bucket": "ecs-deployment-bucket",
            "key": "appspec.yaml",
            "bundleType": "YAML"
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

That file, in turn, retrieves the following file `appspec.yaml` from an S3 bucket called `ecs-deployment-bucket`.

```
version: 0.0
Resources:
  - TargetService:
      Type: AWS::ECS::Service
      Properties:
        TaskDefinition: "arn:aws:ecs:region:123456789012:task-definition/ecs-
task-def:2"
        LoadBalancerInfo:
          ContainerName: "sample-app"
          ContainerPort: 80
        PlatformVersion: "LATEST"
```

Command:

```
aws deploy create-deployment \
    --cli-input-json file://create-deployment.json \
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentId": "d-1234ABCDE"
}
```

For more information, see CreateDeployment in the *AWS CodeDeploy API Reference*.

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new deployment for the specified application and deployment group with the specified deployment configuration and application revision.

```
New-CDDeployment -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -DeploymentConfigName
 CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures $True -S3Location_Key aws-codedeploy_linux-
master.zip -RevisionType S3
```

Output:

```
d-ZHROG7UEX
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
New-CDDeployment -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -DeploymentConfigName
 CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup
 -IgnoreApplicationStopFailures $True -S3Location_Key aws-
codedeploy_linux-master.zip -RevisionType S3 -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{K
```

Output:

```
d-ZHROG7UEX
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new deployment for the specified application and deployment group with the specified deployment configuration and application revision.

```
New-CDDeployment -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -DeploymentConfigName
 CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures $True -S3Location_Key aws-codedeploy_linux-
master.zip -RevisionType S3
```

Output:

```
d-ZHROG7UEX
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
New-CDDeployment -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -DeploymentConfigName
 CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup
 -IgnoreApplicationStopFailures $True -S3Location_Key aws-
codedeploy_linux-master.zip -RevisionType S3 -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{K
```

Output:

```
d-ZHROG7UEX
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateDeploymentConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDeploymentConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a custom deployment configuration

The following `create-deployment-config` example creates a custom deployment configuration and associates it with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy create-deployment-config \
    --deployment-config-name ThreeQuartersHealthy \
    --minimum-healthy-hosts type=FLEET_PERCENT,value=75
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentConfigId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE"
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new deployment configuration with the specified name and behavior.

```
New-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName AtLeastTwoHealthyHosts -
MinimumHealthyHosts_Type HOST_COUNT -MinimumHealthyHosts_Value 2
```

Output:

```
0f3e8187-44ef-42da-aeed-b6823EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new deployment configuration with the specified name and behavior.

```
New-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName AtLeastTwoHealthyHosts -
MinimumHealthyHosts_Type HOST_COUNT -MinimumHealthyHosts_Value 2
```

Output:

```
0f3e8187-44ef-42da-aeed-b6823EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateDeploymentGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDeploymentGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a deployment group

The following `create-deployment-group` example creates a deployment group and associates it with the specified application and the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy create-deployment-group \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --auto-scaling-groups CodeDeployDemo-ASG \
    --deployment-config-name CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime \
    --deployment-group-name WordPress_DG \
    --ec2-tag-filters Key=Name,Value=CodeDeployDemo,Type=KEY_AND_VALUE \
    --service-role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/CodeDeployDemoRole
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentGroupId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a deployment group with the specified name, Auto Scaling group, deployment configuration, tag, and service role, for the specified application.

```
New-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -AutoScalingGroup
 CodeDeployDemo-ASG -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -Ec2TagFilter @{Key="Name";
 Type="KEY_AND_VALUE"; Value="CodeDeployDemo"} -ServiceRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo
```

Output:

```
16bbf199-95fd-40fc-a909-0bbcfEXAMPLE
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
New-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -AutoScalingGroup
 CodeDeployDemo-ASG -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -Ec2TagFilter @{Key="Name";
 Type="KEY_AND_VALUE"; Value="CodeDeployDemo"} -ServiceRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{K
```

Output:

```
16bbf199-95fd-40fc-a909-0bbcfEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a deployment group with the specified name, Auto Scaling group, deployment configuration, tag, and service role, for the specified application.

```
New-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -AutoScalingGroup
 CodeDeployDemo-ASG -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -Ec2TagFilter @{Key="Name";
 Type="KEY_AND_VALUE"; Value="CodeDeployDemo"} -ServiceRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo
```

Output:

```
16bbf199-95fd-40fc-a909-0bbcfEXAMPLE
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
New-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -AutoScalingGroup
 CodeDeployDemo-ASG -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -Ec2TagFilter @{Key="Name";
 Type="KEY_AND_VALUE"; Value="CodeDeployDemo"} -ServiceRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{K
```

Output:

```
16bbf199-95fd-40fc-a909-0bbcfEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteApplication` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteApplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an application

The following `delete-application` example deletes the specified application that is associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy delete-application --application-name WordPress_App
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteApplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the application with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the application without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
```

- For API details, see DeleteApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the application with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the application without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
```

- For API details, see DeleteApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteDeploymentConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDeploymentConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a deployment configuration

The following `delete-deployment-config` example deletes a custom deployment configuration that is associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy delete-deployment-config --deployment-config-name ThreeQuartersHealthy
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the deployment configuration with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the deployment configuration without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName AtLeastTwoHealthyHosts
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the deployment configuration with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the deployment configuration without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName AtLeastTwoHealthyHosts
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteDeploymentGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDeploymentGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a deployment group

The following `delete-deployment-group` example deletes a deployment group that is associated with the specified application.

```
aws deploy delete-deployment-group \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --deployment-group-name WordPress_DG
```

Output:

```
{
    "hooksNotCleanedUp": []
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the deployment group with the specified name for the specified application. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the deployment group without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -DeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the deployment group with the specified name for the specified application. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the deployment group without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -DeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterOnPremisesInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterOnPremisesInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister an on-premises instance

The following `deregister-on-premises-instance` example deregisters an on-premises instance with AWS CodeDeploy, but it does not delete the IAM user associated with the instance, nor does it disassociate in AWS CodeDeploy the on-premises instance tags from the instance. It also does not uninstall the AWS CodeDeploy Agent from the instance nor remove the on-premises configuration file from the instance.

```
aws deploy deregister-on-premises-instance --instance-name AssetTag12010298EX
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeregisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deregisters the on-premises instance with the specified name.

```
Unregister-CDOnPremiseInstance -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

- For API details, see DeregisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters the on-premises instance with the specified name.

```
Unregister-CDOnPremiseInstance -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

- For API details, see DeregisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetApplication` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetApplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about an application

The following `get-application` example displays information about an application that is associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy get-application --application-name WordPress_App
```

Output:

```
{
    "application": {
        "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
        "applicationId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
        "createTime": 1407878168.078,
        "linkedToGitHub": false
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetApplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified application.

```
Get-CDApplication -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationId                           ApplicationName             CreateTime
            LinkedToGitHub
-------------                           ---------------             ----------
            --------------
e07fb938-091e-4f2f-8963-4d3e8EXAMPLE    CodeDeployDemoApplication   7/20/2015
 9:49:48 PM    False
```

- For API details, see GetApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified application.

```
Get-CDApplication -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationId                           ApplicationName             CreateTime
            LinkedToGitHub
```

```
-------------                           ---------------              ----------
            --------------
e07fb938-091e-4f2f-8963-4d3e8EXAMPLE    CodeDeployDemoApplication    7/20/2015
 9:49:48 PM    False
```

- For API details, see GetApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetApplicationRevision` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetApplicationRevision`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about an application revision

The following `get-application-revision` example displays information about an application revision that is associated with the specified application.

```
aws deploy get-application-revision \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --s3-location bucket=amzn-s3-demo-
bucket,bundleType=zip,eTag=dd56cfdEXAMPLE8e768f9d77fEXAMPLE,key=WordPressApp.zip
```

Output:

```
{
    "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
    "revisionInfo": {
        "description": "Application revision registered by Deployment ID: d-
A1B2C3111",
        "registerTime": 1411076520.009,
        "deploymentGroups": "WordPress_DG",
        "lastUsedTime": 1411076520.009,
        "firstUsedTime": 1411076520.009
    },
    "revision": {
        "revisionType": "S3",
        "s3Location": {
            "bundleType": "zip",
            "eTag": "dd56cfdEXAMPLE8e768f9d77fEXAMPLE",
```

```
            "bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
            "key": "WordPressApp.zip"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetApplicationRevision in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified application revision.

```
$revision = Get-CDApplicationRevision -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
 -S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Revision_RevisionType S3 -
S3Location_Key 5xd27EX.zip -S3Location_BundleType zip -S3Location_ETag
 4565c1ac97187f190c1a90265EXAMPLE
Write-Output ("Description = " + $revision.RevisionInfo.Description + ",
 RegisterTime = " + $revision.RevisionInfo.RegisterTime)
```

Output:

```
Description = Application revision registered by Deployment ID: d-CX9CHN3EX,
 RegisterTime = 07/20/2015 23:46:42
```

- For API details, see GetApplicationRevision in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified application revision.

```
$revision = Get-CDApplicationRevision -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
 -S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Revision_RevisionType S3 -
S3Location_Key 5xd27EX.zip -S3Location_BundleType zip -S3Location_ETag
 4565c1ac97187f190c1a90265EXAMPLE
Write-Output ("Description = " + $revision.RevisionInfo.Description + ",
 RegisterTime = " + $revision.RevisionInfo.RegisterTime)
```

Output:

```
Description = Application revision registered by Deployment ID: d-CX9CHN3EX,
 RegisterTime = 07/20/2015 23:46:42
```

- For API details, see GetApplicationRevision in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDeployment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDeployment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a deployment

The following `get-deployment` example displays information about a deployment that is associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy get-deployment --deployment-id d-A1B2C3123
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentInfo": {
        "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
        "status": "Succeeded",
        "deploymentOverview": {
            "Failed": 0,
            "InProgress": 0,
            "Skipped": 0,
            "Succeeded": 1,
            "Pending": 0
        },
        "deploymentConfigName": "CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime",
        "creator": "user",
        "description": "My WordPress app deployment",
        "revision": {
            "revisionType": "S3",
            "s3Location":  {
            "bundleType": "zip",
```

```
            "eTag": "\"dd56cfdEXAMPLE8e768f9d77fEXAMPLE\"",
            "bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
            "key": "WordPressApp.zip"
            }
        },
        "deploymentId": "d-A1B2C3123",
        "deploymentGroupName": "WordPress_DG",
        "createTime": 1409764576.589,
        "completeTime": 1409764596.101,
        "ignoreApplicationStopFailures": false
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDeployment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets summary information about the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName               : CodeDeployDemoApplication
CompleteTime                  : 7/23/2015 11:26:04 PM
CreateTime                    : 7/23/2015 11:24:43 PM
Creator                       : user
DeploymentConfigName          : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName           : CodeDeployDemoFleet
DeploymentId                  : d-QZMRGSTEX
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                        : Succeeded
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the status of instances that are participating in the specified deployment.

```
(Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX).DeploymentOverview
```

Output:

```
Failed     : 0
InProgress : 0
Pending    : 0
Skipped    : 0
Succeeded  : 3
```

Example 3: This example gets information about the application revision for the specified deployment.

```
(Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX).Revision.S3Location
```

Output:

```
Bucket     : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
BundleType : zip
ETag       : cfbb81b304ee5e27efc21adaed3EXAMPLE
Key        : clzfqEX
Version    :
```

- For API details, see GetDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets summary information about the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName                : CodeDeployDemoApplication
CompleteTime                   : 7/23/2015 11:26:04 PM
CreateTime                     : 7/23/2015 11:24:43 PM
Creator                        : user
DeploymentConfigName           : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName            : CodeDeployDemoFleet
DeploymentId                   : d-QZMRGSTEX
```

```
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                        : Succeeded
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the status of instances that are participating in the specified deployment.

```
(Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX).DeploymentOverview
```

Output:

```
Failed     : 0
InProgress : 0
Pending    : 0
Skipped    : 0
Succeeded  : 3
```

Example 3: This example gets information about the application revision for the specified deployment.

```
(Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX).Revision.S3Location
```

Output:

```
Bucket     : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
BundleType : zip
ETag       : cfbb81b304ee5e27efc21adaed3EXAMPLE
Key        : clzfqEX
Version    :
```

- For API details, see GetDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDeploymentConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDeploymentConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a deployment configuration

The following `get-deployment-config` example displays information about a deployment configuration that is associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy get-deployment-config --deployment-config-name ThreeQuartersHealthy
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentConfigInfo": {
        "deploymentConfigId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
        "minimumHealthyHosts": {
            "type": "FLEET_PERCENT",
            "value": 75
        },
        "createTime": 1411081164.379,
        "deploymentConfigName": "ThreeQuartersHealthy"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets summary information about the specified deployment configuration.

```
Get-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName ThreeQuartersHealthy
```

Output:

```
CreateTime              DeploymentConfigId
 DeploymentConfigName    MinimumHealthyHosts
```

```
----------              ------------------
 --------------------    -------------------
10/3/2014 4:32:30 PM    518a3950-d034-46a1-9d2c-3c949EXAMPLE
 ThreeQuartersHealthy    Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.MinimumHealthyHosts
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the definition of the specified deployment configuration.

```
Write-Output ((Get-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName
 ThreeQuartersHealthy).MinimumHealthyHosts)
```

Output:

```
Type             Value
----             -----
FLEET_PERCENT    75
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets summary information about the specified deployment configuration.

```
Get-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName ThreeQuartersHealthy
```

Output:

```
CreateTime              DeploymentConfigId
 DeploymentConfigName    MinimumHealthyHosts
----------              ------------------
 --------------------    -------------------
10/3/2014 4:32:30 PM    518a3950-d034-46a1-9d2c-3c949EXAMPLE
 ThreeQuartersHealthy    Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.MinimumHealthyHosts
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the definition of the specified deployment configuration.

```
Write-Output ((Get-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName
 ThreeQuartersHealthy).MinimumHealthyHosts)
```

Output:

```
Type             Value
----             -----
FLEET_PERCENT    75
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDeploymentGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDeploymentGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view information about a deployment group

The following `get-deployment-group` example displays information about a deployment group that is associated with the specified application.

```
aws deploy get-deployment-group \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --deployment-group-name WordPress_DG
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentGroupInfo": {
        "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
        "autoScalingGroups": [
            "CodeDeployDemo-ASG"
        ],
        "deploymentConfigName": "CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime",
        "ec2TagFilters": [
            {
                "Type": "KEY_AND_VALUE",
                "Value": "CodeDeployDemo",
                "Key": "Name"
            }
```

```
        ],
        "deploymentGroupId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
        "serviceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/CodeDeployDemoRole",
        "deploymentGroupName": "WordPress_DG"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified deployment group.

```
Get-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication -
DeploymentGroupName CodeDeployDemoFleet
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName              : CodeDeployDemoApplication
AutoScalingGroups            : {}
DeploymentConfigName         : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupId            : 7d7c098a-b444-4b27-96ef-22791EXAMPLE
DeploymentGroupName          : CodeDeployDemoFleet
Ec2TagFilters                : {Name}
OnPremisesInstanceTagFilters : {}
ServiceRoleArn               : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/
CodeDeploySampleStack-4ph6EX-CodeDeployTrustRole-O9MWP7XTL8EX
TargetRevision               : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified deployment group.

```
Get-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication -
DeploymentGroupName CodeDeployDemoFleet
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName              : CodeDeployDemoApplication
AutoScalingGroups            : {}
DeploymentConfigName         : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupId            : 7d7c098a-b444-4b27-96ef-22791EXAMPLE
DeploymentGroupName          : CodeDeployDemoFleet
Ec2TagFilters                : {Name}
OnPremisesInstanceTagFilters : {}
ServiceRoleArn               : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/
CodeDeploySampleStack-4ph6EX-CodeDeployTrustRole-O9MWP7XTL8EX
TargetRevision               : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDeploymentInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDeploymentInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a deployment instance

The following `get-deployment-instance` example displays information about a deployment instance that is associated with the specified deployment.

```
aws deploy get-deployment-instance --deployment-id d-QA4G4F9EX --instance-
id i-902e9fEX
```

Output:

```
{
    "instanceSummary": {
        "instanceId": "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/i-902e9fEX",
        "lifecycleEvents": [
            {
                "status": "Succeeded",
                "endTime": 1408480726.569,
                "startTime": 1408480726.437,
                "lifecycleEventName": "ApplicationStop"
```

```
            },
            {
                "status": "Succeeded",
                "endTime": 1408480728.016,
                "startTime": 1408480727.665,
                "lifecycleEventName": "DownloadBundle"
            },
            {
                "status": "Succeeded",
                "endTime": 1408480729.744,
                "startTime": 1408480729.125,
                "lifecycleEventName": "BeforeInstall"
            },
            {
                "status": "Succeeded",
                "endTime": 1408480730.979,
                "startTime": 1408480730.844,
                "lifecycleEventName": "Install"
            },
            {
                "status": "Failed",
                "endTime": 1408480732.603,
                "startTime": 1408480732.1,
                "lifecycleEventName": "AfterInstall"
            },
            {
                "status": "Skipped",
                "endTime": 1408480732.606,
                "lifecycleEventName": "ApplicationStart"
            },
            {
                "status": "Skipped",
                "endTime": 1408480732.606,
                "lifecycleEventName": "ValidateService"
            }
        ],
        "deploymentId": "d-QA4G4F9EX",
        "lastUpdatedAt": 1408480733.152,
        "status": "Failed"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified instance for the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeploymentInstance -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX -InstanceId i-254e22EX
```

Output:

```
DeploymentId    : d-QZMRGSTEX
InstanceId      : arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/i-254e22EX
LastUpdatedAt   : 7/23/2015 11:25:24 PM
LifecycleEvents : {ApplicationStop, DownloadBundle, BeforeInstall, Install...}
Status          : Succeeded
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified instance for the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeploymentInstance -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX -InstanceId i-254e22EX
```

Output:

```
DeploymentId    : d-QZMRGSTEX
InstanceId      : arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/i-254e22EX
LastUpdatedAt   : 7/23/2015 11:25:24 PM
LifecycleEvents : {ApplicationStop, DownloadBundle, BeforeInstall, Install...}
Status          : Succeeded
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetOnPremisesInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetOnPremisesInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about an on-premises instance

The following `get-on-premises-instance` example retrieves information about the specified on-premises instance.

```
aws deploy get-on-premises-instance --instance-name AssetTag12010298EX
```

Output:

```
{
    "instanceInfo": {
    "iamUserArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AWS/CodeDeploy/
AssetTag12010298EX",
        "tags": [
        {
            "Value": "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem",
            "Key": "Name"
        }
        ],
        "instanceName": "AssetTag12010298EX",
        "registerTime": 1425579465.228,
        "instanceArn": "arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:123456789012:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_4IwLNI2Alh"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOnPremisesInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified on-premises instance.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstance -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

Output:

```
DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_rDH556dxEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:36:24 PM
Tags           : {Name}
```

- For API details, see GetOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified on-premises instance.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstance -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

Output:

```
DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_rDH556dxEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:36:24 PM
Tags           : {Name}
```

- For API details, see GetOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListApplicationRevisions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListApplicationRevisions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about application revisions

The following `list-application-revisions` example displays information about all application revisions that are associated with the specified application.

```
aws deploy list-application-revisions \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --s-3-bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --deployed exclude \
    --s-3-key-prefix WordPress_ \
    --sort-by lastUsedTime \
    --sort-order descending
```

Output:

```
{
    "revisions": [
        {
            "revisionType": "S3",
            "s3Location": {
                "version": "uTecLusvCB_JqHFXtfUcyfV8bEXAMPLE",
                "bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "key": "WordPress_App.zip",
                "bundleType": "zip"
            }
        },
        {
            "revisionType": "S3",
            "s3Location": {
                "version": "tMk.UxgDpMEVb7V187ZM6wVAWEXAMPLE",
                "bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "key": "WordPress_App_2-0.zip",
                "bundleType": "zip"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListApplicationRevisions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about available revisions for the specified application.

```
ForEach ($revision in (Get-CDApplicationRevisionList -ApplicationName
 CodeDeployDemoApplication -Deployed Ignore)) {
>>   If ($revision.RevisionType -Eq "S3") {
>>     Write-Output ("Type = S3, Bucket = " + $revision.S3Location.Bucket
 + ", BundleType = " + $revision.S3Location.BundleType + ", ETag = " +
 $revision.S3Location.ETag + ", Key = " + $revision.S3Location.Key)
>>   }
>>   If ($revision.RevisionType -Eq "GitHub") {
>>     Write-Output ("Type = GitHub, CommitId = " +
 $revision.GitHubLocation.CommitId + ", Repository = " +
 $revision.GitHubLocation.Repository)
>>   }
>> }
>>
```

Output:

```
Type = S3, Bucket = amzn-s3-demo-bucket, BundleType = zip, ETag =
 4565c1ac97187f190c1a90265EXAMPLE, Key = 5xd27EX.zip
Type = GitHub, CommitId = f48933c3...76405362, Repository = MyGitHubUser/
CodeDeployDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see ListApplicationRevisions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about available revisions for the specified application.

```
ForEach ($revision in (Get-CDApplicationRevisionList -ApplicationName
 CodeDeployDemoApplication -Deployed Ignore)) {
>>   If ($revision.RevisionType -Eq "S3") {
>>     Write-Output ("Type = S3, Bucket = " + $revision.S3Location.Bucket
 + ", BundleType = " + $revision.S3Location.BundleType + ", ETag = " +
 $revision.S3Location.ETag + ", Key = " + $revision.S3Location.Key)
>>   }
>>   If ($revision.RevisionType -Eq "GitHub") {
>>     Write-Output ("Type = GitHub, CommitId = " +
 $revision.GitHubLocation.CommitId + ", Repository = " +
 $revision.GitHubLocation.Repository)
>>   }
```

```
>> }
>>
```

Output:

```
Type = S3, Bucket = amzn-s3-demo-bucket, BundleType = zip, ETag =
 4565c1ac97187f190c1a90265EXAMPLE, Key = 5xd27EX.zip
Type = GitHub, CommitId = f48933c3...76405362, Repository = MyGitHubUser/
CodeDeployDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see ListApplicationRevisions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListApplications` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListApplications`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about applications

The following `list-applications` example displays information about all applications that are associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy list-applications
```

Output:

```
{
    "applications": [
        "WordPress_App",
        "MyOther_App"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListApplications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of available applications.

```
Get-CDApplicationList
```

Output:

```
CodeDeployDemoApplication
CodePipelineDemoApplication
```

- For API details, see ListApplications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available applications.

```
Get-CDApplicationList
```

Output:

```
CodeDeployDemoApplication
CodePipelineDemoApplication
```

- For API details, see ListApplications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDeploymentConfigs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDeploymentConfigs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about deployment configurations

The following `list-deployment-configs` example displays information about all deployment configurations that are associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy list-deployment-configs
```

Output:

```
{
    "deploymentConfigsList": [
        "ThreeQuartersHealthy",
        "CodeDeployDefault.AllAtOnce",
        "CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime",
        "CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentConfigs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of available deployment configurations.

```
Get-CDDeploymentConfigList
```

Output:

```
ThreeQuartersHealthy
CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
CodeDeployDefault.AllAtOnce
CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available deployment configurations.

```
Get-CDDeploymentConfigList
```

Output:

```
ThreeQuartersHealthy
CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
CodeDeployDefault.AllAtOnce
```

```
CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDeploymentGroups` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDeploymentGroups`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about deployment groups

The following `list-deployment-groups` example displays information about all deployment groups that are associated with the specified application.

```
aws deploy list-deployment-groups --application-name WordPress_App
```

Output:

```
{
    "applicationName": "WordPress_App",
    "deploymentGroups": [
        "WordPress_DG",
        "WordPress_Beta_DG"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of deployment groups for the specified application.

```
Get-CDDeploymentGroupList -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName              DeploymentGroups
 NextToken
---------------              ----------------
 ---------
CodeDeployDemoApplication    {CodeDeployDemoFleet, CodeDeployProductionFleet}
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of deployment groups for the specified application.

```
Get-CDDeploymentGroupList -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName              DeploymentGroups
 NextToken
---------------              ----------------
 ---------
CodeDeployDemoApplication    {CodeDeployDemoFleet, CodeDeployProductionFleet}
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDeploymentInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDeploymentInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about deployment instances

The following `list-deployment-instances` example displays information about all deployment instances that are associated with the specified deployment.

```
aws deploy list-deployment-instances \
    --deployment-id d-A1B2C3111 \
```

```
    --instance-status-filter Succeeded
```

Output:

```
{
    "instancesList": [
        "i-EXAMPLE11",
        "i-EXAMPLE22"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of instance IDs for the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeploymentInstanceList -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX
```

Output:

```
i-254e22EX
i-274e22EX
i-3b4e22EX
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of instance IDs for the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeploymentInstanceList -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX
```

Output:

```
i-254e22EX
i-274e22EX
i-3b4e22EX
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDeployments` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDeployments`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about deployments

The following `list-deployments` example displays information about all deployments that are associated with the specified application and deployment group.

```
aws deploy list-deployments \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --create-time-range start=2014-08-19T00:00:00,end=2014-08-20T00:00:00 \
    --deployment-group-name WordPress_DG \
    --include-only-statuses Failed
```

Output:

```
{
    "deployments": [
        "d-EXAMPLE11",
        "d-EXAMPLE22",
        "d-EXAMPLE33"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListDeployments in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of deployment IDs for the specified application and deployment group.

```
Get-CDDeploymentList -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication -
DeploymentGroupName CodeDeployDemoFleet
```

Output:

```
d-QZMRGSTEX
d-RR0T5KTEX
```

- For API details, see ListDeployments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of deployment IDs for the specified application and deployment group.

```
Get-CDDeploymentList -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication -
DeploymentGroupName CodeDeployDemoFleet
```

Output:

```
d-QZMRGSTEX
d-RR0T5KTEX
```

- For API details, see ListDeployments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListOnPremisesInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListOnPremisesInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about one or more on-premises instances

The following `list-on-premises-instances` example retrieves a list of available on-premises instance names for instances that are registered in AWS CodeDeploy and also have the specified on-premises instance tag associated in AWS CodeDeploy with the instance.

```
aws deploy list-on-premises-instances \
    --registration-status Registered \
```

```
    --tag-filters Key=Name,Value=CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem,Type=KEY_AND_VALUE
```

Output:

```
{
    "instanceNames": [
        "AssetTag12010298EX"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListOnPremisesInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of available on-premises instance names.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceList
```

Output:

```
AssetTag12010298EX
AssetTag12010298EX-2
```

- For API details, see ListOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available on-premises instance names.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceList
```

Output:

```
AssetTag12010298EX
AssetTag12010298EX-2
```

- For API details, see ListOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterApplicationRevision` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterApplicationRevision`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register information about an already-uploaded application revision

The following `register-application-revision` example registers information about an already-uploaded application revision stored in Amazon S3 with AWS CodeDeploy.

```
aws deploy register-application-revision \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --description "Revised WordPress application" \
    --s3-location bucket=amzn-s3-demo-
bucket,key=RevisedWordPressApp.zip,bundleType=zip,eTag=cecc9b8a08eac650a6e71fdb88EXAMPLE
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see RegisterApplicationRevision in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers an application revision with the specified Amazon S3 location, for the specified application.

```
Register-CDApplicationRevision -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -
S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -S3Location_Key
 aws-codedeploy_linux-master.zip -Revision_RevisionType S3
```

- For API details, see RegisterApplicationRevision in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an application revision with the specified Amazon S3 location, for the specified application.

```
Register-CDApplicationRevision -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -
S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -S3Location_Key
 aws-codedeploy_linux-master.zip -Revision_RevisionType S3
```

- For API details, see RegisterApplicationRevision in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterOnPremisesInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterOnPremisesInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register an on-premises instance

The following `register-on-premises-instance` example registers an on-premises instance with AWS CodeDeploy. It does not create the specified IAM user, nor does it associate in AWS CodeDeploy any on-premises instances tags with the registered instance.

```
aws deploy register-on-premises-instance \
    --instance-name AssetTag12010298EX \
    --iam-user-arn arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser-OnPrem
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see RegisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers an on-premises instance with the specified name and IAM user.

```
Register-CDOnPremiseInstance -IamUserArn arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/
CodeDeployDemoUser -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

- For API details, see RegisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an on-premises instance with the specified name and IAM user.

```
Register-CDOnPremiseInstance -IamUserArn arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/
CodeDeployDemoUser -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

- For API details, see RegisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove tags from one or more on-premises instances

The following `remove-tags-from-on-premises-instances` example disassociates the specified on-premises tags in AWS CodeDeploy from on-premises instances. It does not deregister the on-premises instances in AWS CodeDeploy, nor uninstall the AWS CodeDeploy Agent from the instance, nor remove the on-premises configuration file from the instances, nor delete the IAM users that are associated with the instances.

```
aws deploy remove-tags-from-on-premises-instances \
    --instance-names AssetTag12010298EX AssetTag23121309EX \
    --tags Key=Name,Value=CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified tag for the on-premises instance with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the tag without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX -Tag @{"Key" =
 "Name"; "Value" = "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem"}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified tag for the on-premises instance with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the tag without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX -Tag @{"Key" =
 "Name"; "Value" = "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem"}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StopDeployment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StopDeployment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attempt to stop a deployment

The following `stop-deployment` example attempts to stop an in-progress deployment that is associated with the user's AWS account.

aws deploy stop-deployment --deployment-id d-A1B2C3111

Output:

```
{
    "status": "Succeeded",
    "statusMessage": "No more commands will be scheduled for execution in the
 deployment instances"
}
```

- For API details, see StopDeployment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attempts to stop the deployment with the specified deployment ID.

```
Stop-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-LJQNREYEX
```

Output:

```
Status     StatusMessage
------     -------------
Pending    Stopping Pending. Stopping to schedule commands in the deployment
 instances
```

- For API details, see StopDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attempts to stop the deployment with the specified deployment ID.

```
Stop-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-LJQNREYEX
```

Output:

```
Status     StatusMessage
------     -------------
Pending    Stopping Pending. Stopping to schedule commands in the deployment
 instances
```

- For API details, see StopDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateApplication` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateApplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change details of an application

The following `update-application` example changes the name of an application that is associated with the user's AWS account.

```
aws deploy update-application \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --new-application-name My_WordPress_App
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified application.

```
Update-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -NewApplicationName
 MyNewApplication-2
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified application.

```
Update-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -NewApplicationName
 MyNewApplication-2
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateDeploymentGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateDeploymentGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change information about a deployment group

The following `update-deployment-group` example changes the settings of a deployment group that is associated with the specified application.

```
aws deploy update-deployment-group \
    --application-name WordPress_App \
    --auto-scaling-groups My_CodeDeployDemo_ASG \
    --current-deployment-group-name WordPress_DG \
    --deployment-config-name CodeDeployDefault.AllAtOnce \
    --ec2-tag-filters Key=Name,Type=KEY_AND_VALUE,Value=My_CodeDeployDemo \
    --new-deployment-group-name My_WordPress_DepGroup \
    --service-role-arn arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo-2
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see UpdateDeploymentGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified deployment group for the specified application.

```
Update-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -
CurrentDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -NewDeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup-2
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
Update-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
 -CurrentDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -
NewDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup-2 -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{K
```

- For API details, see UpdateDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified deployment group for the specified application.

```
Update-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -
CurrentDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -NewDeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup-2
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
Update-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
 -CurrentDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -
NewDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup-2 -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{K
```

- For API details, see UpdateDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS CodePipeline with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **CodePipeline User Guide** – More information about CodePipeline.

- **CodePipeline API Reference** – Details about all available CodePipeline actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs
    - Use AcknowledgeJob with a CLI
    - Use CreateCustomActionType with a CLI
    - Use CreatePipeline with a CLI
    - Use DeleteCustomActionType with a CLI
    - Use DeletePipeline with a CLI
    - Use DisableStageTransition with a CLI
    - Use EnableStageTransition with a CLI
    - Use GetJobDetails with a CLI
    - Use GetPipeline with a CLI
    - Use GetPipelineState with a CLI
    - Use ListActionTypes with a CLI
    - Use ListPipelines with a CLI
    - Use PollForJobs with a CLI
    - Use StartPipelineExecution with a CLI
    - Use UpdatePipeline with a CLI

Basic examples for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS CodePipeline with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs
  - Use AcknowledgeJob with a CLI
  - Use CreateCustomActionType with a CLI

- Use CreatePipeline with a CLI
- Use DeleteCustomActionType with a CLI
- Use DeletePipeline with a CLI
- Use DisableStageTransition with a CLI
- Use EnableStageTransition with a CLI
- Use GetJobDetails with a CLI
- Use GetPipeline with a CLI
- Use GetPipelineState with a CLI
- Use ListActionTypes with a CLI
- Use ListPipelines with a CLI
- Use PollForJobs with a CLI
- Use StartPipelineExecution with a CLI
- Use UpdatePipeline with a CLI

Actions for CodePipeline using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual CodePipeline actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS CodePipeline API Reference.

Examples

- Use AcknowledgeJob with a CLI
- Use CreateCustomActionType with a CLI
- Use CreatePipeline with a CLI
- Use DeleteCustomActionType with a CLI
- Use DeletePipeline with a CLI
- Use DisableStageTransition with a CLI
- Use EnableStageTransition with a CLI
- Use GetJobDetails with a CLI
- Use GetPipeline with a CLI

- Use GetPipelineState with a CLI
- Use ListActionTypes with a CLI
- Use ListPipelines with a CLI
- Use PollForJobs with a CLI
- Use StartPipelineExecution with a CLI
- Use UpdatePipeline with a CLI

Use `AcknowledgeJob` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AcknowledgeJob`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about a specified job

This example returns information about a specified job, including the status of that job if it exists. This is only used for job workers and custom actions. To determine the value of nonce and the job ID, use aws codepipeline poll-for-jobs.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline acknowledge-job --job-id f4f4ff82-2d11-EXAMPLE --nonce 3
```

Output:

```
{
  "status": "InProgress"
}
```

- For API details, see AcknowledgeJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the status of the specified job.

```
Confirm-CPJob -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE -Nonce 3
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
InProgress
```

- For API details, see AcknowledgeJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the status of the specified job.

```
Confirm-CPJob -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE -Nonce 3
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
InProgress
```

- For API details, see AcknowledgeJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateCustomActionType` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCustomActionType`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a custom action

This example creates a custom action for AWS CodePipeline using an already-created JSON file (here named MyCustomAction.json) that contains the structure of the custom action. For more information about the requirements for creating a custom action, including the structure of the file, see the AWS CodePipeline User Guide.

```
aws codepipeline create-custom-action-type --cli-input-json file://
MyCustomAction.json
```

Contents of JSON file `MyCustomAction.json`:

```
{
    "category": "Build",
    "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName",
    "version": "1",
    "settings": {
        "entityUrlTemplate": "https://192.0.2.4/job/{Config:ProjectName}/",
        "executionUrlTemplate": "https://192.0.2.4/job/{Config:ProjectName}/
lastSuccessfulBuild/{ExternalExecutionId}/"
    },
    "configurationProperties": [
        {
            "name": "MyJenkinsExampleBuildProject",
            "required": true,
            "key": true,
            "secret": false,
            "queryable": false,
            "description": "The name of the build project must be provided when
 this action is added to the pipeline.",
            "type": "String"
        }
    ],
    "inputArtifactDetails": {
        "maximumCount": 1,
        "minimumCount": 0
    },
    "outputArtifactDetails": {
        "maximumCount": 1,
        "minimumCount": 0
    }
}
```

This command returns the structure of the custom action.

- For API details, see CreateCustomActionType in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new custom action with the specified properties.

```
New-CPCustomActionType -Category Build -ConfigurationProperty @{"Description"
 = "The name of the build project must be provided when this action is
 added to the pipeline."; "Key" = $True; "Name" = "ProjectName"; "Queryable"
 = $False; "Required" = $True; "Secret" = $False; "Type" = "String"} -
Settings_EntityUrlTemplate "https://my-build-instance/job/{Config:ProjectName}/"
 -Settings_ExecutionUrlTemplate "https://my-build-instance/job/mybuildjob/
lastSuccessfulBuild{ExternalExecutionId}/" -InputArtifactDetails_MaximumCount
 1 -OutputArtifactDetails_MaximumCount 1 -InputArtifactDetails_MinimumCount 0 -
OutputArtifactDetails_MinimumCount 0 -Provider "MyBuildProviderName" -Version 1
```

Output:

```
ActionConfigurationProperties : {ProjectName}
Id                            : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionTypeId
InputArtifactDetails          : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactDetails
OutputArtifactDetails         : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactDetails
Settings                      : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionTypeSettings
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomActionType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new custom action with the specified properties.

```
New-CPCustomActionType -Category Build -ConfigurationProperty @{"Description"
 = "The name of the build project must be provided when this action is
 added to the pipeline."; "Key" = $True; "Name" = "ProjectName"; "Queryable"
 = $False; "Required" = $True; "Secret" = $False; "Type" = "String"} -
Settings_EntityUrlTemplate "https://my-build-instance/job/{Config:ProjectName}/"
 -Settings_ExecutionUrlTemplate "https://my-build-instance/job/mybuildjob/
lastSuccessfulBuild{ExternalExecutionId}/" -InputArtifactDetails_MaximumCount
 1 -OutputArtifactDetails_MaximumCount 1 -InputArtifactDetails_MinimumCount 0 -
OutputArtifactDetails_MinimumCount 0 -Provider "MyBuildProviderName" -Version 1
```

Output:

```
ActionConfigurationProperties : {ProjectName}
Id                            : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionTypeId
InputArtifactDetails          : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactDetails
OutputArtifactDetails         : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactDetails
Settings                      : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionTypeSettings
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomActionType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreatePipeline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePipeline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a pipeline

This example creates a pipeline in AWS CodePipeline using an already-created JSON file (here named MySecondPipeline.json) that contains the structure of the pipeline. For more information about the requirements for creating a pipeline, including the structure of the file, see the AWS CodePipeline User Guide.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline create-pipeline --cli-input-json file://MySecondPipeline.json
```

JSON file sample contents:

```
{
 "pipeline": {
  "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWS-CodePipeline-Service",
  "stages": [
    {
      "name": "Source",
      "actions": [
        {
          "inputArtifacts": [],
          "name": "Source",
          "actionTypeId": {
            "category": "Source",
            "owner": "AWS",
            "version": "1",
            "provider": "S3"
          },
          "outputArtifacts": [
            {
```

```
              "name": "MyApp"
            }
          ],
          "configuration": {
            "S3Bucket": "awscodepipeline-demo-bucket",
            "S3ObjectKey": "aws-codepipeline-s3-aws-codedeploy_linux.zip"
          },
          "runOrder": 1
        }
      ]
    },
    {
      "name": "Beta",
      "actions": [
        {
          "inputArtifacts": [
            {
              "name": "MyApp"
            }
          ],
          "name": "CodePipelineDemoFleet",
          "actionTypeId": {
            "category": "Deploy",
            "owner": "AWS",
            "version": "1",
            "provider": "CodeDeploy"
          },
          "outputArtifacts": [],
          "configuration": {
            "ApplicationName": "CodePipelineDemoApplication",
            "DeploymentGroupName": "CodePipelineDemoFleet"
          },
          "runOrder": 1
        }
      ]
    }
  ],
  "artifactStore": {
    "type": "S3",
    "location": "codepipeline-us-east-1-11EXAMPLE11"
  },
  "name": "MySecondPipeline",
  "version": 1
}
```

```
}
```

Output:

```
This command returns the structure of the pipeline.
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This examples creates a new pipeline with the specified settings.

```
$pipeline = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.PipelineDeclaration

$sourceStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
$deployStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration

$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.OutputArtifact
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$sourceStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Source"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "S3"; "Version" = 1}
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3Bucket", "amzn-s3-demo-bucket")
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3ObjectKey", "my-object-key-name.zip")
$sourceStageAction.OutputArtifacts.Add($sourceStageActionOutputArtifact)
$sourceStageAction.Name = "Source"

$deployStageActionInputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.InputArtifact
$deployStageActionInputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$deployStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Deploy"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "CodeDeploy"; "Version" = 1}
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("ApplicationName",
 "CodePipelineDemoApplication")
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("DeploymentGroupName",
 "CodePipelineDemoFleet")
$deployStageAction.InputArtifacts.Add($deployStageActionInputArtifact)
$deployStageAction.Name = "CodePipelineDemoFleet"
```

```
$sourceStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
$deployStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration

$sourceStage.Name = "Source"
$deployStage.Name = "Beta"

$sourceStage.Actions.Add($sourceStageAction)
$deployStage.Actions.Add($deployStageAction)

$pipeline.ArtifactStore = @{"Location" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; "Type" = "S3"}
$pipeline.Name = "CodePipelineDemo"
$pipeline.RoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole"
$pipeline.Stages.Add($sourceStage)
$pipeline.Stages.Add($deployStage)
$pipeline.Version = 1

New-CPPipeline -Pipeline $pipeline
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {Source, Beta}
Version       : 1
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples creates a new pipeline with the specified settings.

```
$pipeline = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.PipelineDeclaration

$sourceStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
$deployStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration

$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.OutputArtifact
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$sourceStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Source"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "S3"; "Version" = 1}
```

```
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3Bucket", "amzn-s3-demo-bucket")
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3ObjectKey", "my-object-key-name.zip")
$sourceStageAction.OutputArtifacts.Add($sourceStageActionOutputArtifact)
$sourceStageAction.Name = "Source"

$deployStageActionInputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.InputArtifact
$deployStageActionInputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$deployStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Deploy"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "CodeDeploy"; "Version" = 1}
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("ApplicationName",
 "CodePipelineDemoApplication")
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("DeploymentGroupName",
 "CodePipelineDemoFleet")
$deployStageAction.InputArtifacts.Add($deployStageActionInputArtifact)
$deployStageAction.Name = "CodePipelineDemoFleet"

$sourceStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
$deployStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration

$sourceStage.Name = "Source"
$deployStage.Name = "Beta"

$sourceStage.Actions.Add($sourceStageAction)
$deployStage.Actions.Add($deployStageAction)

$pipeline.ArtifactStore = @{"Location" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; "Type" = "S3"}
$pipeline.Name = "CodePipelineDemo"
$pipeline.RoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole"
$pipeline.Stages.Add($sourceStage)
$pipeline.Stages.Add($deployStage)
$pipeline.Version = 1

New-CPPipeline -Pipeline $pipeline
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {Source, Beta}
Version       : 1
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteCustomActionType` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCustomActionType`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a custom action

This example deletes a custom action in AWS CodePipeline by using an already-created JSON file (here named DeleteMyCustomAction.json) that contains the action type, provider name, and version number of the action to be deleted. Use the list-action-types command to view the correct values for category, version, and provider.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline delete-custom-action-type --cli-input-json file://
DeleteMyCustomAction.json
```

JSON file sample contents:

```
{
  "category": "Build",
  "version": "1",
  "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName"
}
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomActionType in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified custom action. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the custom action without a prompt.

```
Remove-CPCustomActionType -Category Build -Provider MyBuildProviderName -Version
 1
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomActionType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified custom action. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the custom action without a prompt.

```
Remove-CPCustomActionType -Category Build -Provider MyBuildProviderName -Version
 1
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomActionType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeletePipeline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePipeline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a pipeline

This example deletes a pipeline named MySecondPipeline from AWS CodePipeline. Use the list-pipelines command to view a list of pipelines associated with your AWS account.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline delete-pipeline --name MySecondPipeline
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified pipeline. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the pipeline without a prompt.

```
Remove-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified pipeline. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the pipeline without a prompt.

```
Remove-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisableStageTransition` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableStageTransition`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable a transition to a stage in a pipeline

This example disables transitions into the Beta stage of the MyFirstPipeline pipeline in AWS CodePipeline.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline disable-stage-transition --pipeline-name MyFirstPipeline --
stage-name Beta  --transition-type Inbound
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DisableStageTransition in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disables the inbound transition for the specified stage in the specified pipeline.

```
Disable-CPStageTransition -PipelineName CodePipelineDemo -Reason "Disabling
 temporarily." -StageName Beta -TransitionType Inbound
```

- For API details, see DisableStageTransition in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables the inbound transition for the specified stage in the specified pipeline.

```
Disable-CPStageTransition -PipelineName CodePipelineDemo -Reason "Disabling
 temporarily." -StageName Beta -TransitionType Inbound
```

- For API details, see DisableStageTransition in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EnableStageTransition` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableStageTransition`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable a transition to a stage in a pipeline

This example enables transitions into the Beta stage of the MyFirstPipeline pipeline in AWS CodePipeline.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline enable-stage-transition --pipeline-name MyFirstPipeline --stage-name Beta  --transition-type Inbound
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see EnableStageTransition in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables the inbound transition for the specified stage in the specified pipeline.

```
Enable-CPStageTransition -PipelineName CodePipelineDemo -StageName Beta -TransitionType Inbound
```

- For API details, see EnableStageTransition in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables the inbound transition for the specified stage in the specified pipeline.

```
Enable-CPStageTransition -PipelineName CodePipelineDemo -StageName Beta -TransitionType Inbound
```

- For API details, see EnableStageTransition in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetJobDetails` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetJobDetails`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details of a job

This example returns details about a job whose ID is represented by f4f4ff82-2d11-EXAMPLE. This command is only used for custom actions. When this command is called, AWS CodePipeline returns temporary credentials for the Amazon S3 bucket used to store artifacts for the pipeline, if required for the custom action. This command will also return any secret values defined for the action, if any are defined.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline get-job-details --job-id f4f4ff82-2d11-EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
 "jobDetails": {
  "accountId": "111111111111",
  "data": {
    "actionConfiguration": {
      "__type": "ActionConfiguration",
      "configuration": {
        "ProjectName": "MyJenkinsExampleTestProject"
      }
    },
    "actionTypeId": {
      "__type": "ActionTypeId",
      "category": "Test",
      "owner": "Custom",
      "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName",
      "version": "1"
```

```
    },
    "artifactCredentials": {
      "__type": "AWSSessionCredentials",
      "accessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
      "secretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY",
      "sessionToken":
 "fICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQH
+a4GmWIWJ21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9TrDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpEIbb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQE
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0FkbFFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8
    },
    "inputArtifacts": [
      {
        "__type": "Artifact",
        "location": {
          "s3Location": {
            "bucketName": "codepipeline-us-east-1-11EXAMPLE11",
            "objectKey": "MySecondPipeline/MyAppBuild/EXAMPLE"
          },
          "type": "S3"
        },
        "name": "MyAppBuild"
      }
    ],
    "outputArtifacts": [],
    "pipelineContext": {
      "__type": "PipelineContext",
      "action": {
        "name": "MyJenkinsTest-Action"
      },
      "pipelineName": "MySecondPipeline",
      "stage": {
        "name": "Testing"
      }
    }
  },
  "id": "f4f4ff82-2d11-EXAMPLE"
 }
}
```


- For API details, see GetJobDetails in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets general information about the specified job.

```
Get-CPJobDetail -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
AccountId       Data                                Id
---------       ----                                --
80398EXAMPLE    Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.JobData
 f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the specified job.

```
$jobDetails = Get-CPJobDetail -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
Write-Output ("For Job " + $jobDetails.Id + ":")
Write-Output ("  AccountId = " + $jobDetails.AccountId)
$jobData = $jobDetails.Data
Write-Output ("  Configuration:")
ForEach ($key in $jobData.ActionConfiguration.Keys) {
  $value = $jobData.ActionConfiguration.$key
  Write-Output ("    " + $key + " = " + $value)
}
Write-Output ("  ActionTypeId:")
Write-Output ("    Category = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Category)
Write-Output ("    Owner = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Owner)
Write-Output ("    Provider = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Provider)
Write-Output ("    Version = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Version)
Write-Output ("  ArtifactCredentials:")
Write-Output ("    AccessKeyId = " + $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.AccessKeyId)
Write-Output ("    SecretAccessKey = " +
 $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.SecretAccessKey)
Write-Output ("    SessionToken = " + $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.SessionToken)
Write-Output ("  InputArtifacts:")
ForEach ($ia in $jobData.InputArtifacts) {
  Write-Output ("    " + $ia.Name)
}
Write-Output ("  OutputArtifacts:")
ForEach ($oa in $jobData.OutputArtifacts) {
```

```
  Write-Output ("    " + $oa.Name)
}
Write-Output ("  PipelineContext:")
$context = $jobData.PipelineContext
Write-Output ("    Name = " + $context.Action.Name)
Write-Output ("    PipelineName = " + $context.PipelineName)
Write-Output ("    Stage = " + $context.Stage.Name)
```

Output:

```
For Job f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE:
  AccountId = 80398EXAMPLE
  Configuration:
  ActionTypeId:
    Category = Build
    Owner = Custom
    Provider = MyCustomProviderName
    Version = 1
  ArtifactCredentials:
    AccessKeyId = ASIAIEI3...IXI6YREX
    SecretAccessKey = cqAFDhEi...RdQyfa2u
    SessionToken = AQoDYXdz...5u+lsAU=
  InputArtifacts:
    MyApp
  OutputArtifacts:
    MyAppBuild
  PipelineContext:
    Name = Build
    PipelineName = CodePipelineDemo
    Stage = Build
```

- For API details, see GetJobDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets general information about the specified job.

```
Get-CPJobDetail -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
AccountId       Data                                Id
---------       ----                                --
```

```
80398EXAMPLE    Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.JobData
 f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the specified job.

```
$jobDetails = Get-CPJobDetail -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
Write-Output ("For Job " + $jobDetails.Id + ":")
Write-Output ("  AccountId = " + $jobDetails.AccountId)
$jobData = $jobDetails.Data
Write-Output ("  Configuration:")
ForEach ($key in $jobData.ActionConfiguration.Keys) {
  $value = $jobData.ActionConfiguration.$key
  Write-Output ("    " + $key + " = " + $value)
}
Write-Output ("  ActionTypeId:")
Write-Output ("    Category = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Category)
Write-Output ("    Owner = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Owner)
Write-Output ("    Provider = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Provider)
Write-Output ("    Version = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Version)
Write-Output ("  ArtifactCredentials:")
Write-Output ("    AccessKeyId = " + $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.AccessKeyId)
Write-Output ("    SecretAccessKey = " +
 $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.SecretAccessKey)
Write-Output ("    SessionToken = " + $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.SessionToken)
Write-Output ("  InputArtifacts:")
ForEach ($ia in $jobData.InputArtifacts) {
  Write-Output ("    " + $ia.Name)
}
Write-Output ("  OutputArtifacts:")
ForEach ($oa in $jobData.OutputArtifacts) {
  Write-Output ("    " + $oa.Name)
}
Write-Output ("  PipelineContext:")
$context = $jobData.PipelineContext
Write-Output ("    Name = " + $context.Action.Name)
Write-Output ("    PipelineName = " + $context.PipelineName)
Write-Output ("    Stage = " + $context.Stage.Name)
```

Output:

```
For Job f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE:
  AccountId = 80398EXAMPLE
  Configuration:
```

```
  ActionTypeId:
    Category = Build
    Owner = Custom
    Provider = MyCustomProviderName
    Version = 1
  ArtifactCredentials:
    AccessKeyId = ASIAIEI3...IXI6YREX
    SecretAccessKey = cqAFDhEi...RdQyfa2u
    SessionToken = AQoDYXdz...5u+lsAU=
  InputArtifacts:
    MyApp
  OutputArtifacts:
    MyAppBuild
  PipelineContext:
    Name = Build
    PipelineName = CodePipelineDemo
    Stage = Build
```

- For API details, see GetJobDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPipeline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPipeline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view the structure of a pipeline

This example returns the structure of a pipeline named MyFirstPipeline.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline get-pipeline --name MyFirstPipeline
```

Output:

```
{
  "pipeline": {
      "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWS-CodePipeline-Service",
      "stages": [
          {
```

```
                "name": "Source",
                "actions": [
                    {
                        "inputArtifacts": [],
                        "name": "Source",
                        "actionTypeId": {
                            "category": "Source",
                            "owner": "AWS",
                            "version": "1",
                            "provider": "S3"
                        },
                        "outputArtifacts": [
                            {
                                "name": "MyApp"
                            }
                        ],
                        "configuration": {
                            "S3Bucket": "awscodepipeline-demo-bucket",
                            "S3ObjectKey": "aws-codepipeline-s3-aws-
codedeploy_linux.zip"
                        },
                        "runOrder": 1
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "name": "Beta",
                "actions": [
                    {
                        "inputArtifacts": [
                            {
                                "name": "MyApp"
                            }
                        ],
                        "name": "CodePipelineDemoFleet",
                        "actionTypeId": {
                            "category": "Deploy",
                            "owner": "AWS",
                            "version": "1",
                            "provider": "CodeDeploy"
                        },
                        "outputArtifacts": [],
                        "configuration": {
                            "ApplicationName": "CodePipelineDemoApplication",
```

```
                            "DeploymentGroupName": "CodePipelineDemoFleet"
                        },
                        "runOrder": 1
                    }
                ]
            }
        ],
        "artifactStore": {
            "type": "S3",
            "location": "codepipeline-us-east-1-11EXAMPLE11"
        },
        "name": "MyFirstPipeline",
        "version": 1
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPipeline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets general information about the specified pipeline.

```
Get-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo -Version 1
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {Source, Build, Beta, TestStage}
Version       : 1
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the specified pipeline.

```
$pipeline = Get-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo
Write-Output ("Name = " + $pipeline.Name)
Write-Output ("RoleArn = " + $pipeline.RoleArn)
Write-Output ("Version = " + $pipeline.Version)
Write-Output ("ArtifactStore:")
```

```
Write-Output ("  Location = " + $pipeline.ArtifactStore.Location)
Write-Output ("  Type = " + $pipeline.ArtifactStore.Type.Value)
Write-Output ("Stages:")
ForEach ($stage in $pipeline.Stages) {
  Write-Output ("  Name = " + $stage.Name)
  Write-Output ("    Actions:")
  ForEach ($action in $stage.Actions) {
    Write-Output ("      Name = " + $action.Name)
 Write-Output ("        Category = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Category)
 Write-Output ("        Owner = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Owner)
 Write-Output ("        Provider = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Provider)
 Write-Output ("        Version = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Version)
 Write-Output ("        Configuration:")
 ForEach ($key in $action.Configuration.Keys) {
   $value = $action.Configuration.$key
   Write-Output ("          " + $key + " = " + $value)
 }
 Write-Output ("        InputArtifacts:")
 ForEach ($ia in $action.InputArtifacts) {
   Write-Output ("          " + $ia.Name)
 }
 ForEach ($oa in $action.OutputArtifacts) {
   Write-Output ("          " + $oa.Name)
 }
 Write-Output ("        RunOrder = " + $action.RunOrder)
  }
}
```

Output:

```
Name = CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn = arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Version = 3
ArtifactStore:
  Location = amzn-s3-demo-bucket
  Type = S3
Stages:
  Name = Source
    Actions:
      Name = Source
        Category = Source
        Owner = ThirdParty
        Provider = GitHub
```

```
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          Branch = master
          OAuthToken = ****
          Owner = my-user-name
          Repo = MyRepoName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyApp
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = Build
    Actions:
      Name = Build
        Category = Build
        Owner = Custom
        Provider = MyCustomProviderName
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ProjectName = MyProjectName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyApp
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = Beta
    Actions:
      Name = CodePipelineDemoFleet
        Category = Deploy
        Owner = AWS
        Provider = CodeDeploy
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ApplicationName = CodePipelineDemoApplication
          DeploymentGroupName = CodePipelineDemoFleet
        InputArtifacts:
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = TestStage
    Actions:
      Name = MyJenkinsTestAction
        Category = Test
        Owner = Custom
        Provider = MyCustomTestProvider
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ProjectName = MyJenkinsProjectName
```

```
        InputArtifacts:
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
```

- For API details, see GetPipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets general information about the specified pipeline.

```
Get-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo -Version 1
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {Source, Build, Beta, TestStage}
Version       : 1
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the specified pipeline.

```
$pipeline = Get-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo
Write-Output ("Name = " + $pipeline.Name)
Write-Output ("RoleArn = " + $pipeline.RoleArn)
Write-Output ("Version = " + $pipeline.Version)
Write-Output ("ArtifactStore:")
Write-Output ("  Location = " + $pipeline.ArtifactStore.Location)
Write-Output ("  Type = " + $pipeline.ArtifactStore.Type.Value)
Write-Output ("Stages:")
ForEach ($stage in $pipeline.Stages) {
  Write-Output ("  Name = " + $stage.Name)
  Write-Output ("    Actions:")
  ForEach ($action in $stage.Actions) {
    Write-Output ("      Name = " + $action.Name)
 Write-Output ("        Category = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Category)
 Write-Output ("        Owner = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Owner)
 Write-Output ("        Provider = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Provider)
 Write-Output ("        Version = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Version)
 Write-Output ("        Configuration:")
 ForEach ($key in $action.Configuration.Keys) {
   $value = $action.Configuration.$key
   Write-Output ("          " + $key + " = " + $value)
```

```
 }
 Write-Output ("        InputArtifacts:")
 ForEach ($ia in $action.InputArtifacts) {
   Write-Output ("          " + $ia.Name)
 }
 ForEach ($oa in $action.OutputArtifacts) {
   Write-Output ("          " + $oa.Name)
 }
 Write-Output ("        RunOrder = " + $action.RunOrder)
  }
}
```

Output:

```
Name = CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn = arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Version = 3
ArtifactStore:
  Location = amzn-s3-demo-bucket
  Type = S3
Stages:
  Name = Source
    Actions:
      Name = Source
        Category = Source
        Owner = ThirdParty
        Provider = GitHub
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          Branch = master
          OAuthToken = ****
          Owner = my-user-name
          Repo = MyRepoName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyApp
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = Build
    Actions:
      Name = Build
        Category = Build
        Owner = Custom
        Provider = MyCustomProviderName
        Version = 1
```

```
        Configuration:
          ProjectName = MyProjectName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyApp
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = Beta
    Actions:
      Name = CodePipelineDemoFleet
        Category = Deploy
        Owner = AWS
        Provider = CodeDeploy
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ApplicationName = CodePipelineDemoApplication
          DeploymentGroupName = CodePipelineDemoFleet
        InputArtifacts:
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = TestStage
    Actions:
      Name = MyJenkinsTestAction
        Category = Test
        Owner = Custom
        Provider = MyCustomTestProvider
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ProjectName = MyJenkinsProjectName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
```

- For API details, see GetPipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPipelineState` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPipelineState`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about the state of a pipeline

This example returns the most recent state of a pipeline named MyFirstPipeline.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline get-pipeline-state --name MyFirstPipeline
```

Output:

```
{
 "created": 1446137312.204,
 "pipelineName": "MyFirstPipeline",
 "pipelineVersion": 1,
 "stageStates": [
  {
    "actionStates": [
      {
        "actionName": "Source",
        "entityUrl": "https://console.aws.amazon.com/s3/home?#",
        "latestExecution": {
          "lastStatusChange": 1446137358.328,
          "status": "Succeeded"
        }
      }
    ],
    "stageName": "Source"
  },
  {
    "actionStates": [
      {
        "actionName": "CodePipelineDemoFleet",
        "entityUrl": "https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/
home?#/applications/CodePipelineDemoApplication/deployment-groups/
CodePipelineDemoFleet",
        "latestExecution": {
          "externalExecutionId": "d-EXAMPLE",
          "externalExecutionUrl": "https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/
home?#/deployments/d-EXAMPLE",
          "lastStatusChange": 1446137493.131,
          "status": "Succeeded",
          "summary": "Deployment Succeeded"
        }
      }
    ],
```

```
    "inboundTransitionState": {
      "enabled": true
    },
    "stageName": "Beta"
  }
 ],
 "updated": 1446137312.204
}
```

- For API details, see GetPipelineState in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets general information about the stages for the specified pipeline.

```
Get-CPPipelineState -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

Output:

```
Created         : 8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM
PipelineName    : CodePipelineDemo
PipelineVersion : 1
StageStates     : {Source, Build, Beta, TestStage}
Updated         : 8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the state of the specified pipeline.

```
ForEach ($stageState in (Get-CPPipelineState -Name $arg).StageStates) {
  Write-Output ("For " + $stageState.StageName + ":")
  Write-Output ("  InboundTransitionState:")
  Write-Output ("    DisabledReason = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.DisabledReason)
  Write-Output ("    Enabled = " + $stageState.InboundTransitionState.Enabled)
  Write-Output ("    LastChangedAt = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.LastChangedAt)
  Write-Output ("    LastChangedBy = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.LastChangedBy)
```

```
  Write-Output ("  ActionStates:")
  ForEach ($actionState in $stageState.ActionStates) {
    Write-Output ("    For " + $actionState.ActionName + ":")
 Write-Output ("      CurrentRevision:")
    Write-Output ("        Created = " + $actionState.CurrentRevision.Created)
 Write-Output ("        RevisionChangeId = " +
 $actionState.CurrentRevision.RevisionChangeId)
 Write-Output ("        RevisionId = " + $actionState.CurrentRevision.RevisionId)
 Write-Output ("      EntityUrl = " + $actionState.EntityUrl)
 Write-Output ("      LatestExecution:")
    Write-Output ("        ErrorDetails:")
    Write-Output ("          Code = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ErrorDetails.Code)
 Write-Output ("          Message = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ErrorDetails.Message)
 Write-Output ("        ExternalExecutionId = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ExternalExecutionId)
 Write-Output ("        ExternalExecutionUrl = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ExternalExecutionUrl)
 Write-Output ("        LastStatusChange = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.LastStatusChange)
 Write-Output ("        PercentComplete = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.PercentComplete)
 Write-Output ("        Status = " + $actionState.LatestExecution.Status)
 Write-Output ("        Summary = " + $actionState.LatestExecution.Summary)
 Write-Output ("      RevisionUrl = " + $actionState.RevisionUrl)
  }
}
```

Output:

```
For Source:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled =
    LastChangedAt =
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For Source:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
```

```
      EntityUrl = https://github.com/my-user-name/MyRepoName/tree/master
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId =
        ExternalExecutionUrl =
        LastStatusChange = 07/20/2015 23:28:45
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary =
      RevisionUrl =
For Build:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For Build:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code = TimeoutError
          Message = The action failed because a job worker exceeded its time
 limit. If this is a custom action, make sure that the job worker is configured
 correctly.
        ExternalExecutionId =
        ExternalExecutionUrl =
        LastStatusChange = 07/21/2015 00:29:29
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Failed
        Summary =
      RevisionUrl =
For Beta:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
```

```
  ActionStates:
    For CodePipelineDemoFleet:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/applications/
CodePipelineDemoApplication/deployment-groups/CodePipelineDemoFleet
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId = d-D5LTCZXEX
        ExternalExecutionUrl = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
deployments/d-D5LTCZXEX
        LastStatusChange = 07/08/2015 22:07:42
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary = Deployment Succeeded
      RevisionUrl =
For TestStage:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For MyJenkinsTestAction25:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId = 5
        ExternalExecutionUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo/5
        LastStatusChange = 07/08/2015 22:09:03
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary = Finished
```

```
      RevisionUrl =
```

- For API details, see GetPipelineState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets general information about the stages for the specified pipeline.

```
Get-CPPipelineState -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

Output:

```
Created         : 8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM
PipelineName    : CodePipelineDemo
PipelineVersion : 1
StageStates     : {Source, Build, Beta, TestStage}
Updated         : 8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the state of the specified pipeline.

```
ForEach ($stageState in (Get-CPPipelineState -Name $arg).StageStates) {
  Write-Output ("For " + $stageState.StageName + ":")
  Write-Output ("  InboundTransitionState:")
  Write-Output ("    DisabledReason = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.DisabledReason)
  Write-Output ("    Enabled = " + $stageState.InboundTransitionState.Enabled)
  Write-Output ("    LastChangedAt = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.LastChangedAt)
  Write-Output ("    LastChangedBy = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.LastChangedBy)
  Write-Output ("  ActionStates:")
  ForEach ($actionState in $stageState.ActionStates) {
    Write-Output ("    For " + $actionState.ActionName + ":")
 Write-Output ("      CurrentRevision:")
    Write-Output ("        Created = " + $actionState.CurrentRevision.Created)
 Write-Output ("        RevisionChangeId = " +
 $actionState.CurrentRevision.RevisionChangeId)
 Write-Output ("        RevisionId = " + $actionState.CurrentRevision.RevisionId)
 Write-Output ("      EntityUrl = " + $actionState.EntityUrl)
 Write-Output ("      LatestExecution:")
```

```
    Write-Output ("        ErrorDetails:")
    Write-Output ("          Code = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ErrorDetails.Code)
 Write-Output ("          Message = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ErrorDetails.Message)
 Write-Output ("        ExternalExecutionId = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ExternalExecutionId)
 Write-Output ("        ExternalExecutionUrl = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ExternalExecutionUrl)
 Write-Output ("        LastStatusChange = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.LastStatusChange)
 Write-Output ("        PercentComplete = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.PercentComplete)
 Write-Output ("        Status = " + $actionState.LatestExecution.Status)
 Write-Output ("        Summary = " + $actionState.LatestExecution.Summary)
 Write-Output ("      RevisionUrl = " + $actionState.RevisionUrl)
  }
}
```

Output:

```
For Source:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled =
    LastChangedAt =
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For Source:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = https://github.com/my-user-name/MyRepoName/tree/master
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId =
        ExternalExecutionUrl =
        LastStatusChange = 07/20/2015 23:28:45
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
```

```
        Summary =
      RevisionUrl =
For Build:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For Build:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code = TimeoutError
          Message = The action failed because a job worker exceeded its time
 limit. If this is a custom action, make sure that the job worker is configured
 correctly.
        ExternalExecutionId =
        ExternalExecutionUrl =
        LastStatusChange = 07/21/2015 00:29:29
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Failed
        Summary =
      RevisionUrl =
For Beta:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For CodePipelineDemoFleet:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/applications/
CodePipelineDemoApplication/deployment-groups/CodePipelineDemoFleet
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
```

```
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId = d-D5LTCZXEX
        ExternalExecutionUrl = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
deployments/d-D5LTCZXEX
        LastStatusChange = 07/08/2015 22:07:42
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary = Deployment Succeeded
      RevisionUrl =
For TestStage:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For MyJenkinsTestAction25:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId = 5
        ExternalExecutionUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo/5
        LastStatusChange = 07/08/2015 22:09:03
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary = Finished
      RevisionUrl =
```

- For API details, see GetPipelineState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListActionTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListActionTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view the action types available

Used by itself, the list-action-types command returns the structure of all actions available to your AWS account. This example uses the --action-owner-filter option to return only custom actions.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline list-action-types --action-owner-filter Custom
```

Output:

```
{
  "actionTypes": [
      {
          "inputArtifactDetails": {
              "maximumCount": 5,
              "minimumCount": 0
          },
          "actionConfigurationProperties": [
              {
                  "secret": false,
                  "required": true,
                  "name": "MyJenkinsExampleBuildProject",
                  "key": true,
                  "queryable": true
              }
          ],
          "outputArtifactDetails": {
              "maximumCount": 5,
              "minimumCount": 0
          },
          "id": {
              "category": "Build",
              "owner": "Custom",
              "version": "1",
              "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName"
          },
```

```
            "settings": {
                "entityUrlTemplate": "http://192.0.2.4/job/{Config:ProjectName}",
                "executionUrlTemplate": "http://192.0.2.4/job/{Config:ProjectName}/
{ExternalExecutionId}"
            }
        },
        {
            "inputArtifactDetails": {
                "maximumCount": 5,
                "minimumCount": 0
            },
            "actionConfigurationProperties": [
                {
                    "secret": false,
                    "required": true,
                    "name": "MyJenkinsExampleTestProject",
                    "key": true,
                    "queryable": true
                }
            ],
            "outputArtifactDetails": {
                "maximumCount": 5,
                "minimumCount": 0
            },
            "id": {
                "category": "Test",
                "owner": "Custom",
                "version": "1",
                "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName"
            },
            "settings": {
                "entityUrlTemplate": "http://192.0.2.4/job/{Config:ProjectName}",
                "executionUrlTemplate": "http://192.0.2.4/job/{Config:ProjectName}/
{ExternalExecutionId}"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListActionTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about all available actions for the specified owner.

```
ForEach ($actionType in (Get-CPActionType -ActionOwnerFilter AWS)) {
  Write-Output ("For Category = " + $actionType.Id.Category + ", Owner = " +
 $actionType.Id.Owner + ", Provider = " + $actionType.Id.Provider + ", Version =
 " + $actionType.Id.Version + ":")
  Write-Output ("  ActionConfigurationProperties:")
  ForEach ($acp in $actionType.ActionConfigurationProperties) {
    Write-Output ("    For " + $acp.Name + ":")
    Write-Output ("      Description = " + $acp.Description)
    Write-Output ("      Key = " + $acp.Key)
    Write-Output ("      Queryable = " + $acp.Queryable)
    Write-Output ("      Required = " + $acp.Required)
    Write-Output ("      Secret = " + $acp.Secret)
  }
  Write-Output ("  InputArtifactDetails:")
  Write-Output ("    MaximumCount = " +
 $actionType.InputArtifactDetails.MaximumCount)
  Write-Output ("    MinimumCount = " +
 $actionType.InputArtifactDetails.MinimumCount)
  Write-Output ("  OutputArtifactDetails:")
  Write-Output ("    MaximumCount = " +
 $actionType.OutputArtifactDetails.MaximumCount)
  Write-Output ("    MinimumCount = " +
 $actionType.OutputArtifactDetails.MinimumCount)
  Write-Output ("  Settings:")
  Write-Output ("    EntityUrlTemplate = " +
 $actionType.Settings.EntityUrlTemplate)
  Write-Output ("    ExecutionUrlTemplate = " +
 $actionType.Settings.ExecutionUrlTemplate)
}
```

Output:

```
For Category = Deploy, Owner = AWS, Provider = ElasticBeanstalk, Version = 1:
  ActionConfigurationProperties:
    For ApplicationName:
      Description = The AWS Elastic Beanstalk Application name
```

```
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
    For EnvironmentName:
      Description = The AWS Elastic Beanstalk Environment name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
  InputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 1
    MinimumCount = 1
  OutputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 0
    MinimumCount = 0
  Settings:
    EntityUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/elasticbeanstalk/r/
application/{Config:ApplicationName}
    ExecutionUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/elasticbeanstalk/r/
application/{Config:ApplicationName}
For Category = Deploy, Owner = AWS, Provider = CodeDeploy, Version = 1:
  ActionConfigurationProperties:
    For ApplicationName:
      Description = The AWS CodeDeploy Application name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
    For DeploymentGroupName:
      Description = The AWS CodeDeploy Deployment Group name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
  InputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 1
    MinimumCount = 1
  OutputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 0
    MinimumCount = 0
  Settings:
```

```
    EntityUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/
home?#/applications/{Config:ApplicationName}/deployment-groups/
{Config:DeploymentGroupName}
    ExecutionUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
deployments/{ExternalExecutionId}
```

- For API details, see ListActionTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about all available actions for the specified owner.

```
ForEach ($actionType in (Get-CPActionType -ActionOwnerFilter AWS)) {
  Write-Output ("For Category = " + $actionType.Id.Category + ", Owner = " +
 $actionType.Id.Owner + ", Provider = " + $actionType.Id.Provider + ", Version =
 " + $actionType.Id.Version + ":")
  Write-Output ("  ActionConfigurationProperties:")
  ForEach ($acp in $actionType.ActionConfigurationProperties) {
    Write-Output ("    For " + $acp.Name + ":")
    Write-Output ("      Description = " + $acp.Description)
    Write-Output ("      Key = " + $acp.Key)
    Write-Output ("      Queryable = " + $acp.Queryable)
    Write-Output ("      Required = " + $acp.Required)
    Write-Output ("      Secret = " + $acp.Secret)
  }
  Write-Output ("  InputArtifactDetails:")
  Write-Output ("    MaximumCount = " +
 $actionType.InputArtifactDetails.MaximumCount)
  Write-Output ("    MinimumCount = " +
 $actionType.InputArtifactDetails.MinimumCount)
  Write-Output ("  OutputArtifactDetails:")
  Write-Output ("    MaximumCount = " +
 $actionType.OutputArtifactDetails.MaximumCount)
  Write-Output ("    MinimumCount = " +
 $actionType.OutputArtifactDetails.MinimumCount)
  Write-Output ("  Settings:")
  Write-Output ("    EntityUrlTemplate = " +
 $actionType.Settings.EntityUrlTemplate)
  Write-Output ("    ExecutionUrlTemplate = " +
 $actionType.Settings.ExecutionUrlTemplate)
}
```

Output:

```
For Category = Deploy, Owner = AWS, Provider = ElasticBeanstalk, Version = 1:
  ActionConfigurationProperties:
    For ApplicationName:
      Description = The AWS Elastic Beanstalk Application name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
    For EnvironmentName:
      Description = The AWS Elastic Beanstalk Environment name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
  InputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 1
    MinimumCount = 1
  OutputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 0
    MinimumCount = 0
  Settings:
    EntityUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/elasticbeanstalk/r/
application/{Config:ApplicationName}
    ExecutionUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/elasticbeanstalk/r/
application/{Config:ApplicationName}
For Category = Deploy, Owner = AWS, Provider = CodeDeploy, Version = 1:
  ActionConfigurationProperties:
    For ApplicationName:
      Description = The AWS CodeDeploy Application name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
    For DeploymentGroupName:
      Description = The AWS CodeDeploy Deployment Group name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
  InputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 1
    MinimumCount = 1
  OutputArtifactDetails:
```

```
    MaximumCount = 0
    MinimumCount = 0
  Settings:
    EntityUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/
home?#/applications/{Config:ApplicationName}/deployment-groups/
{Config:DeploymentGroupName}
    ExecutionUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
deployments/{ExternalExecutionId}
```

- For API details, see ListActionTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListPipelines` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListPipelines`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view a list of pipelines

This example lists all AWS CodePipeline pipelines associated with the user's AWS account.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline list-pipelines
```

Output:

```
{
  "pipelines": [
      {
          "updated": 1439504274.641,
          "version": 1,
          "name": "MyFirstPipeline",
          "created": 1439504274.641
      },
      {
          "updated": 1436461837.992,
          "version": 2,
          "name": "MySecondPipeline",
          "created": 1436460801.381
```

```
        }
        ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListPipelines in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a list of available pipelines.

```
Get-CPPipelineList
```

Output:

```
Created                  Name                Updated                  Version
-------                  ----                -------                  -------
8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM    CodePipelineDemo    8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM    3
7/8/2015 2:41:53 AM      MyFirstPipeline     7/22/2015 9:06:37 PM     7
```

- For API details, see ListPipelines in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available pipelines.

```
Get-CPPipelineList
```

Output:

```
Created                  Name                Updated                  Version
-------                  ----                -------                  -------
8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM    CodePipelineDemo    8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM    3
7/8/2015 2:41:53 AM      MyFirstPipeline     7/22/2015 9:06:37 PM     7
```

- For API details, see ListPipelines in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PollForJobs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PollForJobs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view any available jobs

This example returns information about any jobs for a job worker to act upon. This example uses a pre-defined JSON file (MyActionTypeInfo.json) to supply information about the action type for which the job worker processes jobs. This command is only used for custom actions. When this command is called, AWS CodePipeline returns temporary credentials for the Amazon S3 bucket used to store artifacts for the pipeline. This command will also return any secret values defined for the action, if any are defined.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline poll-for-jobs --cli-input-json file://MyActionTypeInfo.json
```

JSON file sample contents:

```
{
  "actionTypeId": {
    "category": "Test",
    "owner": "Custom",
    "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName",
    "version": "1"
  },
  "maxBatchSize": 5,
  "queryParam": {
      "ProjectName": "MyJenkinsTestProject"
  }
}
```

Output:

```
{
 "jobs": [
  {
    "accountId": "111111111111",
    "data": {
      "actionConfiguration": {
        "__type": "ActionConfiguration",
        "configuration": {
```

```
            "ProjectName": "MyJenkinsExampleTestProject"
          }
        },
        "actionTypeId": {
          "__type": "ActionTypeId",
          "category": "Test",
          "owner": "Custom",
          "provider": "MyJenkinsProviderName",
          "version": "1"
        },
        "artifactCredentials": {
          "__type": "AWSSessionCredentials",
          "accessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
          "secretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY",
          "sessionToken":
 "fICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQH
+a4GmWIWJ21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9TrDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpEIbb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQE
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0FkbFFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8
        },
        "inputArtifacts": [
          {
            "__type": "Artifact",
            "location": {
              "s3Location": {
                "bucketName": "codepipeline-us-east-1-11EXAMPLE11",
                "objectKey": "MySecondPipeline/MyAppBuild/EXAMPLE"
              },
              "type": "S3"
            },
            "name": "MyAppBuild"
          }
        ],
        "outputArtifacts": [],
        "pipelineContext": {
          "__type": "PipelineContext",
          "action": {
            "name": "MyJenkinsTest-Action"
          },
          "pipelineName": "MySecondPipeline",
          "stage": {
            "name": "Testing"
          }
```

```
      }
    },
    "id": "ef66c259-64f9-EXAMPLE",
    "nonce": "3"
  }
 ]
}
```

- For API details, see PollForJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets information about all actionable jobs for the specified action category, owner, provider, version, and query parameters.

```
Get-CPActionableJobList -ActionTypeId_Category Build -ActionTypeId_Owner Custom
 -ActionTypeId_Provider MyCustomProviderName -ActionTypeId_Version 1 -QueryParam
 @{"ProjectName" = "MyProjectName"}
```

Output:

```
AccountId       Data                                Id
            Nonce
---------       ----                                --
            -----
80398EXAMPLE    Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.JobData   0de392f5-712d-4f41-ace3-
f57a0EXAMPLE    3
```

- For API details, see PollForJobs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about all actionable jobs for the specified action category, owner, provider, version, and query parameters.

```
Get-CPActionableJobList -ActionTypeId_Category Build -ActionTypeId_Owner Custom
 -ActionTypeId_Provider MyCustomProviderName -ActionTypeId_Version 1 -QueryParam
 @{"ProjectName" = "MyProjectName"}
```

Output:

```
AccountId       Data                                Id
            Nonce
---------       ----                                --
            -----
80398EXAMPLE    Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.JobData    0de392f5-712d-4f41-ace3-
f57a0EXAMPLE    3
```

- For API details, see PollForJobs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StartPipelineExecution` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartPipelineExecution`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To run the latest revision through a pipeline

This example runs the latest revision present in the source stage of a pipeline through the pipeline named "MyFirstPipeline".

Command:

```
aws codepipeline start-pipeline-execution --name MyFirstPipeline
```

Output:

```
{
  "pipelineExecutionId": "3137f7cb-7cf7-EXAMPLE"
}
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example starts running the specified pipeline.

```
Start-CPPipelineExecution -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example starts running the specified pipeline.

```
Start-CPPipelineExecution -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdatePipeline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdatePipeline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the structure of a pipeline

This example uses the update-pipeline command with the --cli-input-json argument. This example uses a pre-defined JSON file (MyFirstPipeline.json) to update the structure of a pipeline. AWS CodePipeline recognizes the pipeline name contained in the JSON file, and then applies any changes from modified fields in the pipeline structure to update the pipeline.

Use the following guidelines when creating the pre-defined JSON file:

If you are working with a pipeline structure retrieved using the get-pipeline command, you must remove the metadata section from the pipeline structure in the JSON file (the "metadata": { } lines and the "created," "pipelineARN," and "updated" fields within).The pipeline name cannot be changed.

Command:

```
aws codepipeline update-pipeline --cli-input-json file://MyFirstPipeline.json
```

Sample JSON file contents:

```
{
 "pipeline": {
  "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWS-CodePipeline-Service",
  "stages": [
    {
      "name": "Source",
      "actions": [
        {
          "inputArtifacts": [],
          "name": "Source",
          "actionTypeId": {
            "category": "Source",
            "owner": "AWS",
            "version": "1",
            "provider": "S3"
          },
          "outputArtifacts": [
            {
              "name": "MyApp"
            }
          ],
          "configuration": {
            "S3Bucket": "awscodepipeline-demo-bucket2",
            "S3ObjectKey": "aws-codepipeline-s3-aws-codedeploy_linux.zip"
          },
          "runOrder": 1
        }
      ]
    },
    {
      "name": "Beta",
      "actions": [
        {
          "inputArtifacts": [
            {
              "name": "MyApp"
            }
          ],
          "name": "CodePipelineDemoFleet",
          "actionTypeId": {
            "category": "Deploy",
            "owner": "AWS",
```

```
            "version": "1",
            "provider": "CodeDeploy"
          },
          "outputArtifacts": [],
          "configuration": {
            "ApplicationName": "CodePipelineDemoApplication",
            "DeploymentGroupName": "CodePipelineDemoFleet"
          },
          "runOrder": 1
        }
      ]
    }
  ],
  "artifactStore": {
    "type": "S3",
    "location": "codepipeline-us-east-1-11EXAMPLE11"
  },
  "name": "MyFirstPipeline",
  "version": 1
 }
}
```

Output:

```
{
 "pipeline": {
  "artifactStore": {
    "location": "codepipeline-us-east-1-11EXAMPLE11",
    "type": "S3"
  },
  "name": "MyFirstPipeline",
  "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWS-CodePipeline-Service",
  "stages": [
    {
      "actions": [
        {
          "actionTypeId": {
            "__type": "ActionTypeId",
            "category": "Source",
            "owner": "AWS",
            "provider": "S3",
            "version": "1"
          },
```

```
          "configuration": {
            "S3Bucket": "awscodepipeline-demo-bucket2",
            "S3ObjectKey": "aws-codepipeline-s3-aws-codedeploy_linux.zip"
          },
          "inputArtifacts": [],
          "name": "Source",
          "outputArtifacts": [
            {
              "name": "MyApp"
            }
          ],
          "runOrder": 1
        }
      ],
      "name": "Source"
    },
    {
      "actions": [
        {
          "actionTypeId": {
            "__type": "ActionTypeId",
            "category": "Deploy",
            "owner": "AWS",
            "provider": "CodeDeploy",
            "version": "1"
          },
          "configuration": {
            "ApplicationName": "CodePipelineDemoApplication",
            "DeploymentGroupName": "CodePipelineDemoFleet"
          },
          "inputArtifacts": [
            {
              "name": "MyApp"
            }
          ],
          "name": "CodePipelineDemoFleet",
          "outputArtifacts": [],
          "runOrder": 1
        }
      ],
      "name": "Beta"
    }
  ],
  "version": 3
```

```
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the specified existing pipeline with the specified settings.

```
$pipeline = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.PipelineDeclaration

$sourceStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
$deployStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration

$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.OutputArtifact
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$sourceStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Source"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "S3"; "Version" = 1}
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3Bucket", "amzn-s3-demo-bucket")
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3ObjectKey", "my-object-key-name.zip")
$sourceStageAction.OutputArtifacts.Add($sourceStageActionOutputArtifact)
$sourceStageAction.Name = "Source"

$deployStageActionInputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.InputArtifact
$deployStageActionInputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$deployStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Deploy"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "CodeDeploy"; "Version" = 1}
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("ApplicationName",
 "CodePipelineDemoApplication")
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("DeploymentGroupName",
 "CodePipelineDemoFleet")
$deployStageAction.InputArtifacts.Add($deployStageActionInputArtifact)
$deployStageAction.Name = "CodePipelineDemoFleet"

$sourceStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
$deployStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
```

```
$sourceStage.Name = "MyInputFiles"
$deployStage.Name = "MyTestDeployment"

$sourceStage.Actions.Add($sourceStageAction)
$deployStage.Actions.Add($deployStageAction)

$pipeline.ArtifactStore = @{"Location" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; "Type" = "S3"}
$pipeline.Name = "CodePipelineDemo"
$pipeline.RoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole"
$pipeline.Stages.Add($sourceStage)
$pipeline.Stages.Add($deployStage)
$pipeline.Version = 1

Update-CPPipeline -Pipeline $pipeline
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {InputFiles, TestDeployment}
Version       : 2
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the specified existing pipeline with the specified settings.

```
$pipeline = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.PipelineDeclaration

$sourceStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
$deployStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration

$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.OutputArtifact
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$sourceStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Source"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "S3"; "Version" = 1}
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3Bucket", "amzn-s3-demo-bucket")
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3ObjectKey", "my-object-key-name.zip")
```

```
$sourceStageAction.OutputArtifacts.Add($sourceStageActionOutputArtifact)
$sourceStageAction.Name = "Source"

$deployStageActionInputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.InputArtifact
$deployStageActionInputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$deployStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Deploy"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "CodeDeploy"; "Version" = 1}
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("ApplicationName",
 "CodePipelineDemoApplication")
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("DeploymentGroupName",
 "CodePipelineDemoFleet")
$deployStageAction.InputArtifacts.Add($deployStageActionInputArtifact)
$deployStageAction.Name = "CodePipelineDemoFleet"

$sourceStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
$deployStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration

$sourceStage.Name = "MyInputFiles"
$deployStage.Name = "MyTestDeployment"

$sourceStage.Actions.Add($sourceStageAction)
$deployStage.Actions.Add($deployStageAction)

$pipeline.ArtifactStore = @{"Location" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; "Type" = "S3"}
$pipeline.Name = "CodePipelineDemo"
$pipeline.RoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole"
$pipeline.Stages.Add($sourceStage)
$pipeline.Stages.Add($deployStage)
$pipeline.Version = 1

Update-CPPipeline -Pipeline $pipeline
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {InputFiles, TestDeployment}
Version       : 2
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Cognito Identity with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Cognito Identity Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Cognito Identity.
- **Amazon Cognito Identity API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Cognito Identity actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateIdentityPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteIdentityPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeIdentityPool with a CLI
    - Use GetCredentialsForIdentity with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetIdentityPoolRoles with a CLI
    - Use ListIdentityPools with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SetIdentityPoolRoles with a CLI
    - Use UpdateIdentityPool with a CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs
  - Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

Basic examples for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Cognito Identity with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateIdentityPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteIdentityPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeIdentityPool with a CLI
  - Use GetCredentialsForIdentity with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetIdentityPoolRoles with a CLI
  - Use ListIdentityPools with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SetIdentityPoolRoles with a CLI
  - Use UpdateIdentityPool with a CLI

Actions for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Cognito Identity actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Cognito Identity API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Cognito Identity API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateIdentityPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteIdentityPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeIdentityPool with a CLI
- Use GetCredentialsForIdentity with an AWS SDK
- Use GetIdentityPoolRoles with a CLI

- Use ListIdentityPools with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetIdentityPoolRoles with a CLI
- Use UpdateIdentityPool with a CLI

Use `CreateIdentityPool` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateIdentityPool`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an identity pool with Cognito identity pool provider

This example creates an identity pool named MyIdentityPool. It has a Cognito identity pool provider. Unauthenticated identities are not allowed.

Command:

```
aws cognito-identity create-identity-pool --identity-pool-
name MyIdentityPool --no-allow-unauthenticated-identities --cognito-
identity-providers ProviderName="cognito-idp.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/us-
west-2_aaaaaaaaa",ClientId="3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado",ServerSideTokenCheck=false
```

Output:

```
{
  "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
  "IdentityPoolName": "MyIdentityPool",
  "AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities": false,
  "CognitoIdentityProviders": [
      {
          "ProviderName": "cognito-idp.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/us-
west-2_111111111",
          "ClientId": "3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado",
          "ServerSideTokenCheck": false
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.CreateIdentityPoolRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.CreateIdentityPoolResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateIdentityPool {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <identityPoolName>\s

                Where:
                    identityPoolName - The name to give your identity pool.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String identityPoolName = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String identityPoolId = createIdPool(cognitoClient, identityPoolName);
        System.out.println("Unity pool ID " + identityPoolId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static String createIdPool(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient, String
 identityPoolName) {
        try {
            CreateIdentityPoolRequest poolRequest =
 CreateIdentityPoolRequest.builder()
                    .allowUnauthenticatedIdentities(false)
                    .identityPoolName(identityPoolName)
                    .build();

            CreateIdentityPoolResponse response =
 cognitoClient.createIdentityPool(poolRequest);
            return response.identityPoolId();

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new Identity Pool which allows unauthenticated identities.

```
New-CGIIdentityPool -AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities $true -IdentityPoolName
 CommonTests13
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                       : 8/12/2015 4:56:07 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : True
DeveloperProviderName          :
IdentityPoolId                 : us-east-1:15d49393-ab16-431a-b26e-EXAMPLEGUID3
IdentityPoolName               : CommonTests13
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs      : {}
SupportedLoginProviders        : {}
ResponseMetadata               : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                  : 136
HttpStatusCode                 : OK
```

- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new Identity Pool which allows unauthenticated identities.

```
New-CGIIdentityPool -AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities $true -IdentityPoolName
 CommonTests13
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                       : 8/12/2015 4:56:07 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : True
DeveloperProviderName          :
IdentityPoolId                 : us-east-1:15d49393-ab16-431a-b26e-EXAMPLEGUID3
IdentityPoolName               : CommonTests13
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs      : {}
SupportedLoginProviders        : {}
ResponseMetadata               : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                  : 136
HttpStatusCode                 : OK
```

- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Create a new identity pool and return its ID.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///     - name: The name to give the new identity pool.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the newly created pool's ID, or `nil`
    ///   if an error occurred.
    ///
    func createIdentityPool(name: String) async throws -> String? {
        do {
            let cognitoInputCall = CreateIdentityPoolInput(developerProviderName:
 "com.exampleco.CognitoIdentityDemo",
                                                           identityPoolName:
 name)

            let result = try await
 cognitoIdentityClient.createIdentityPool(input: cognitoInputCall)
            guard let poolId = result.identityPoolId else {
                return nil
            }

            return poolId
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createIdentityPool:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Swift developer guide.
- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteIdentityPool` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteIdentityPool`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete identity pool

The following `delete-identity-pool` example deletes the specified identity pool.

Command:

```
aws cognito-identity delete-identity-pool \
    --identity-pool-id "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111"
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.exception.AwsServiceException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.DeleteIdentityPoolRequest;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteIdentityPool {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <identityPoolId>\s

                Where:
                    identityPoolId - The Id value of your identity pool.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String identityPoold = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoIdClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        deleteIdPool(cognitoIdClient, identityPoold);
        cognitoIdClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIdPool(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoIdClient, String
 identityPoold) {
        try {

            DeleteIdentityPoolRequest identityPoolRequest =
 DeleteIdentityPoolRequest.builder()
                    .identityPoolId(identityPoold)
                    .build();
```

```
            cognitoIdClient.deleteIdentityPool(identityPoolRequest);
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (AwsServiceException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes a specific Identity Pool.

```
Remove-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes a specific Identity Pool.

```
Remove-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Delete the specified identity pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - id: The ID of the identity pool to delete.
    ///
    func deleteIdentityPool(id: String) async throws {
        do {
            let input = DeleteIdentityPoolInput(
                identityPoolId: id
            )

            _ = try await cognitoIdentityClient.deleteIdentityPool(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteIdentityPool:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Swift developer guide.
- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeIdentityPool` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeIdentityPool`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an identity pool

This example describes an identity pool.

Command:

```
aws cognito-identity describe-identity-pool --identity-pool-id "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111"
```

Output:

```
{
  "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
  "IdentityPoolName": "MyIdentityPool",
  "AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities": false,
  "CognitoIdentityProviders": [
      {
          "ProviderName": "cognito-idp.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/us-west-2_111111111",
          "ClientId": "3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado",
          "ServerSideTokenCheck": false
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityPool in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves information about a specific Identity Pool by its id.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                        : 8/12/2015 4:29:40 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : True
DeveloperProviderName           :
IdentityPoolId                  : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
IdentityPoolName                : CommonTests1
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs       : {}
SupportedLoginProviders         : {}
ResponseMetadata                : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                   : 142
HttpStatusCode                  : OK
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves information about a specific Identity Pool by its id.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                        : 8/12/2015 4:29:40 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : True
DeveloperProviderName           :
IdentityPoolId                  : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
IdentityPoolName                : CommonTests1
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs       : {}
SupportedLoginProviders         : {}
ResponseMetadata                : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                   : 142
HttpStatusCode                  : OK
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetCredentialsForIdentity` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetCredentialsForIdentity`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.GetCredentialsForIdentityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.GetCredentialsForIdentityResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetIdentityCredentials {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <identityId>\s

            Where:
                identityId - The Id of an existing identity in the format
 REGION:GUID.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String identityId = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        getCredsForIdentity(cognitoClient, identityId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void getCredsForIdentity(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient,
 String identityId) {
        try {
            GetCredentialsForIdentityRequest getCredentialsForIdentityRequest =
 GetCredentialsForIdentityRequest
                    .builder()
                    .identityId(identityId)
                    .build();

            GetCredentialsForIdentityResponse response = cognitoClient
                    .getCredentialsForIdentity(getCredentialsForIdentityRequest);
            System.out.println(
                    "Identity ID " + response.identityId() + ", Access key ID " +
 response.credentials().accessKeyId());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialsForIdentity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetIdentityPoolRoles` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetIdentityPoolRoles`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get identity pool roles

This example gets identity pool roles.

Command:

```
aws cognito-identity get-identity-pool-roles --identity-pool-id "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111"
```

Output:

```
{
  "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
  "Roles": {
      "authenticated": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/Cognito_MyIdentityPoolAuth_Role",
      "unauthenticated": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/Cognito_MyIdentityPoolUnauth_Role"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Gets the information about roles for a specific Identity Pool.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPoolRole -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt         : 8/12/2015 4:33:51 PM
IdentityPoolId   : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
Roles            : {[unauthenticated, arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/CommonTests1Role]}
```

```
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 165
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Gets the information about roles for a specific Identity Pool.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPoolRole -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt         : 8/12/2015 4:33:51 PM
IdentityPoolId   : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
Roles            : {[unauthenticated, arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
CommonTests1Role]}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 165
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListIdentityPools` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListIdentityPools`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list identity pools

This example lists identity pools. There s a maximum of 20 identities listed.

Command:

```
aws cognito-identity list-identity-pools --max-results 20
```

Output:

```
{
  "IdentityPools": [
      {
          "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
          "IdentityPoolName": "MyIdentityPool"
      },
      {
          "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
          "IdentityPoolName": "AnotherIdentityPool"
      },
      {
          "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
          "IdentityPoolName": "IdentityPoolRegionA"
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.ListIdentityPoolsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.ListIdentityPoolsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListIdentityPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listIdPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listIdPools(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient) {
        try {
            ListIdentityPoolsRequest poolsRequest =
 ListIdentityPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(15)
                    .build();

            ListIdentityPoolsResponse response =
 cognitoClient.listIdentityPools(poolsRequest);
            response.identityPools().forEach(pool -> {
                System.out.println("Pool ID: " + pool.identityPoolId());
                System.out.println("Pool name: " + pool.identityPoolName());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves a list of existing Identity Pools.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPoolList
```

Output:

```
IdentityPoolId
 IdentityPoolName
--------------
 ----------------
us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1                    CommonTests1
us-east-1:118d242d-204e-4b88-b803-EXAMPLEGUID2                    Tests2
us-east-1:15d49393-ab16-431a-b26e-EXAMPLEGUID3                    CommonTests13
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves a list of existing Identity Pools.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPoolList
```

Output:

```
IdentityPoolId
 IdentityPoolName
--------------
 ----------------
us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1                    CommonTests1
us-east-1:118d242d-204e-4b88-b803-EXAMPLEGUID2                    Tests2
us-east-1:15d49393-ab16-431a-b26e-EXAMPLEGUID3                    CommonTests13
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Return the ID of the identity pool with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the identity pool whose ID should be returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the specified identity pool
    ///   or `nil` on error or if not found.
    ///
    func getIdentityPoolID(name: String) async throws -> String? {
        let listPoolsInput = ListIdentityPoolsInput(maxResults: 25)
        // Use "Paginated" to get all the objects.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'nextToken' field in
 "ListIdentityPoolsOutput".
        let pages = cognitoIdentityClient.listIdentityPoolsPaginated(input:
 listPoolsInput)

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let identityPools = page.identityPools else {
                    print("ERROR: listIdentityPoolsPaginated returned nil
 contents.")
                    continue
                }

                /// Read pages of identity pools from Cognito until one is found
                /// whose name matches the one specified in the `name` parameter.
                /// Return the matching pool's ID.

                for pool in identityPools {
```

```
                    if pool.identityPoolName == name {
                        return pool.identityPoolId!
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getIdentityPoolID:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }

        return nil
    }
```

Get the ID of an existing identity pool or create it if it doesn't already exist.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Return the ID of the identity pool with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the identity pool whose ID should be returned
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the specified identity pool.
    ///   Returns `nil` if there's an error or if the pool isn't found.
    ///
    public func getOrCreateIdentityPoolID(name: String) async throws -> String? {
        // See if the pool already exists. If it doesn't, create it.

        do {
            guard let poolId = try await getIdentityPoolID(name: name) else {
                return try await createIdentityPool(name: name)
            }

            return poolId
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getOrCreateIdentityPoolID:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Swift developer guide.
- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `SetIdentityPoolRoles` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetIdentityPoolRoles`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set identity pool roles

The following `set-identity-pool-roles` example sets an identity pool role.

```
aws cognito-identity set-identity-pool-roles \
    --identity-pool-id "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111" \
    --roles authenticated="arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/
Cognito_MyIdentityPoolAuth_Role"
```

- For API details, see SetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Configures the specific Identity Pool to have an unauthenticated IAM role.

```
Set-CGIIdentityPoolRole -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1 -Role @{ "unauthenticated" = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
CommonTests1Role" }
```

- For API details, see SetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Configures the specific Identity Pool to have an unauthenticated IAM role.

```
Set-CGIIdentityPoolRole -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1 -Role @{ "unauthenticated" = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
CommonTests1Role" }
```

- For API details, see SetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateIdentityPool` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateIdentityPool`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update an identity pool

This example updates an identity pool. It sets the name to MyIdentityPool. It adds Cognito as an identity provider. It disallows unauthenticated identities.

Command:

```
aws cognito-identity update-identity-pool --identity-pool-id "us-
west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111" --identity-pool-
name "MyIdentityPool" --no-allow-unauthenticated-identities --cognito-
identity-providers ProviderName="cognito-idp.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/us-
west-2_111111111",ClientId="3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado",ServerSideTokenCheck=false
```

Output:

```
{
  "IdentityPoolId": "us-west-2:11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
  "IdentityPoolName": "MyIdentityPool",
  "AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities": false,
  "CognitoIdentityProviders": [
      {
          "ProviderName": "cognito-idp.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/us-
west-2_111111111",
          "ClientId": "3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado",
          "ServerSideTokenCheck": false
      }
  ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateIdentityPool in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates some of the Identity Pool properties, in this case the name of the Identity Pool.

```
Update-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1 -IdentityPoolName NewPoolName
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                       : 8/12/2015 4:53:33 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : False
DeveloperProviderName          :
IdentityPoolId                 : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
IdentityPoolName               : NewPoolName
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs      : {}
SupportedLoginProviders        : {}
ResponseMetadata               : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                  : 135
HttpStatusCode                 : OK
```

- For API details, see UpdateIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates some of the Identity Pool properties, in this case the name of the Identity Pool.

```
Update-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1 -IdentityPoolName NewPoolName
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                       : 8/12/2015 4:53:33 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : False
DeveloperProviderName          :
```

```
IdentityPoolId                 : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
IdentityPoolName               : NewPoolName
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs      : {}
SupportedLoginProviders        : {}
ResponseMetadata               : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                  : 135
HttpStatusCode                 : OK
```

- For API details, see UpdateIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for Amazon Cognito Identity using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Cognito Identity with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Cognito Identity or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code examples show how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

- Amazon Textract

Code examples for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Cognito Identity Provider with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Cognito Identity Provider Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.
- **Amazon Cognito Identity Provider API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Cognito Identity Provider actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS cognito-idp)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_cognito")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_cognito.cpp)
```

```
target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_cognito.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/cognito-idp/CognitoIdentityProviderClient.h>
#include <aws/cognito-idp/model/ListUserPoolsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Cognito" starter application which initializes an Amazon Cognito
 client and lists the Amazon Cognito
 *  user pools.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_cognito'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 cognitoClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::String> userPools;

        do {
            Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ListUserPoolsRequest
 listUserPoolsRequest;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
```

```
                listUserPoolsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ListUserPoolsOutcome
listUserPoolsOutcome =
                    cognitoClient.ListUserPools(listUserPoolsRequest);

            if (listUserPoolsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &userPool:
listUserPoolsOutcome.GetResult().GetUserPools()) {

                    userPools.push_back(userPool.GetName());
                }

                nextToken = listUserPoolsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "ListUserPools error: " <<
listUserPoolsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }


        } while (!nextToken.empty());
        std::cout << userPools.size() << " user pools found." << std::endl;
        for (auto &userPool: userPools) {
            std::cout << "   user pool: " << userPool << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 cognitoClient := cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the user pools for your account.")
 var pools []types.UserPoolDescriptionType
 paginator := cognitoidentityprovider.NewListUserPoolsPaginator(
```

```
  cognitoClient, &cognitoidentityprovider.ListUserPoolsInput{MaxResults:
 aws.Int32(10)})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get user pools. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   pools = append(pools, output.UserPools...)
  }
 }
 if len(pools) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any user pools!")
 } else {
  for _, pool := range pools {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *pool.Name, *pool.Id)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsRequest;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListUserPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUserPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUserPools(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 cognitoClient) {
        try {
            ListUserPoolsRequest request = ListUserPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListUserPoolsResponse response =
 cognitoClient.listUserPools(request);
            response.userPools().forEach(userpool -> {
                System.out.println("User pool " + userpool.name() + ", User ID "
 + userpool.id());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListUserPools,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";

const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

export const helloCognito = async () => {
  const paginator = paginateListUserPools({ client }, {});

  const userPoolNames = [];

  for await (const page of paginator) {
    const names = page.UserPools.map((pool) => pool.Name);
    userPoolNames.push(...names);
  }

  console.log("User pool names: ");
  console.log(userPoolNames.join("\n"));
  return userPoolNames;
};
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create a Cognito Identity Provider client
cognitoidp = boto3.client("cognito-idp")

# Initialize a paginator for the list_user_pools operation
paginator = cognitoidp.get_paginator("list_user_pools")

# Create a PageIterator from the paginator
page_iterator = paginator.paginate(MaxResults=10)

# Initialize variables for pagination
user_pools = []

# Handle pagination
for page in page_iterator:
    user_pools.extend(page.get("UserPools", []))

# Print the list of user pools
print("User Pools for the account:")
if user_pools:
    for pool in user_pools:
        print(f"Name: {pool['Name']}, ID: {pool['Id']}")
else:
    print("No user pools found.")
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cognitoidentityprovider'
require 'logger'

# CognitoManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Cognito operations
# such as listing all user pools in the current AWS account.
class CognitoManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all user pools associated with the AWS account.
  def list_user_pools
    paginator = @client.list_user_pools(max_results: 10)
    user_pools = []
    paginator.each_page do |page|
      user_pools.concat(page.user_pools)
    end

    if user_pools.empty?
      @logger.info('No Cognito user pools found.')
    else
      user_pools.each do |user_pool|
        @logger.info("User pool ID: #{user_pool.id}")
        @logger.info("User pool name: #{user_pool.name}")
        @logger.info("User pool status: #{user_pool.status}")
        @logger.info('---')
      end
    end
  end
end
```

```
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  cognito_client = Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Client.new
  manager = CognitoManager.new(cognito_client)
  manager.list_user_pools
end
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Cognito
  - Actions for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs
    - Use AdminCreateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AdminGetUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AdminInitiateAuth with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AdminRespondToAuthChallenge with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AdminSetUserPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AssociateSoftwareToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ConfirmDevice with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ConfirmForgotPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ConfirmSignUp with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateUserPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateUserPoolClient with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ForgotPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use InitiateAuth with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListUserPools with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListUsers with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ResendConfirmationCode with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RespondToAuthChallenge with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use SignUp with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateUserPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use VerifySoftwareToken with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs
  - Automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
  - Automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
  - Sign up a user with an Amazon Cognito user pool that requires MFA using an AWS SDK
  - Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Cognito Identity Provider with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Cognito
- Actions for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs
  - Use AdminCreateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AdminGetUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AdminInitiateAuth with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AdminRespondToAuthChallenge with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AdminSetUserPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AssociateSoftwareToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ConfirmDevice with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ConfirmForgotPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ConfirmSignUp with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateUserPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateUserPoolClient with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteUser with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ForgotPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use InitiateAuth with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUserPools with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUsers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ResendConfirmationCode with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RespondToAuthChallenge with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SignUp with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateUserPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use VerifySoftwareToken with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS cognito-idp)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_cognito")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)
```

```
# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_cognito.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_cognito.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/cognito-idp/CognitoIdentityProviderClient.h>
#include <aws/cognito-idp/model/ListUserPoolsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
```

```
 *  A "Hello Cognito" starter application which initializes an Amazon Cognito
 client and lists the Amazon Cognito
 *  user pools.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_cognito'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 cognitoClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::String> userPools;

        do {
            Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ListUserPoolsRequest
 listUserPoolsRequest;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listUserPoolsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ListUserPoolsOutcome
 listUserPoolsOutcome =
                    cognitoClient.ListUserPools(listUserPoolsRequest);

            if (listUserPoolsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &userPool:
 listUserPoolsOutcome.GetResult().GetUserPools()) {

                    userPools.push_back(userPool.GetName());
                }
```

```
                nextToken = listUserPoolsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "ListUserPools error: " <<
 listUserPoolsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }


        } while (!nextToken.empty());
        std::cout << userPools.size() << " user pools found." << std::endl;
        for (auto &userPool: userPools) {
            std::cout << "   user pool: " << userPool << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 cognitoClient := cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the user pools for your account.")
 var pools []types.UserPoolDescriptionType
 paginator := cognitoidentityprovider.NewListUserPoolsPaginator(
  cognitoClient, &cognitoidentityprovider.ListUserPoolsInput{MaxResults:
 aws.Int32(10)})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get user pools. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   pools = append(pools, output.UserPools...)
  }
 }
 if len(pools) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any user pools!")
 } else {
  for _, pool := range pools {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *pool.Name, *pool.Id)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListUserPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUserPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void listAllUserPools(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 cognitoClient) {
        try {
            ListUserPoolsRequest request = ListUserPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListUserPoolsResponse response =
 cognitoClient.listUserPools(request);
            response.userPools().forEach(userpool -> {
                System.out.println("User pool " + userpool.name() + ", User ID "
 + userpool.id());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListUserPools,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";

const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});
```

```
export const helloCognito = async () => {
  const paginator = paginateListUserPools({ client }, {});

  const userPoolNames = [];

  for await (const page of paginator) {
    const names = page.UserPools.map((pool) => pool.Name);
    userPoolNames.push(...names);
  }

  console.log("User pool names: ");
  console.log(userPoolNames.join("\n"));
  return userPoolNames;
};
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create a Cognito Identity Provider client
cognitoidp = boto3.client("cognito-idp")

# Initialize a paginator for the list_user_pools operation
paginator = cognitoidp.get_paginator("list_user_pools")

# Create a PageIterator from the paginator
page_iterator = paginator.paginate(MaxResults=10)

# Initialize variables for pagination
```

```
user_pools = []

# Handle pagination
for page in page_iterator:
    user_pools.extend(page.get("UserPools", []))

# Print the list of user pools
print("User Pools for the account:")
if user_pools:
    for pool in user_pools:
        print(f"Name: {pool['Name']}, ID: {pool['Id']}")
else:
    print("No user pools found.")
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cognitoidentityprovider'
require 'logger'

# CognitoManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Cognito operations
# such as listing all user pools in the current AWS account.
class CognitoManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all user pools associated with the AWS account.
  def list_user_pools
```

```
    paginator = @client.list_user_pools(max_results: 10)
    user_pools = []
    paginator.each_page do |page|
      user_pools.concat(page.user_pools)
    end

    if user_pools.empty?
      @logger.info('No Cognito user pools found.')
    else
      user_pools.each do |user_pool|
        @logger.info("User pool ID: #{user_pool.id}")
        @logger.info("User pool name: #{user_pool.name}")
        @logger.info("User pool status: #{user_pool.status}")
        @logger.info('---')
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  cognito_client = Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Client.new
  manager = CognitoManager.new(cognito_client)
  manager.list_user_pools
end
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Actions for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Cognito Identity Provider actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Cognito Identity Provider API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Cognito Identity Provider API Reference.

Examples

- Use AdminCreateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AdminGetUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AdminInitiateAuth with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AdminRespondToAuthChallenge with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AdminSetUserPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AssociateSoftwareToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ConfirmDevice with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ConfirmForgotPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ConfirmSignUp with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateUserPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateUserPoolClient with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ForgotPassword with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use InitiateAuth with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUserPools with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUsers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ResendConfirmationCode with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RespondToAuthChallenge with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SignUp with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateUserPool with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use VerifySoftwareToken with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AdminCreateUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AdminCreateUser`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a user

The following `admin-create-user` example creates a user with the specified settings email address and phone number.

```
aws cognito-idp admin-create-user \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_aaaaaaaaa \
    --username diego \
    --user-attributes Name=email,Value=diego@example.com
 Name=phone_number,Value="+15555551212" \
    --message-action SUPPRESS
```

Output:

```
{
    "User": {
        "Username": "diego",
        "Attributes": [
            {
                "Name": "sub",
                "Value": "7325c1de-b05b-4f84-b321-9adc6e61f4a2"
            },
            {
                "Name": "phone_number",
                "Value": "+15555551212"
            },
            {
                "Name": "email",
                "Value": "diego@example.com"
            }
        ],
        "UserCreateDate": 1548099495.428,
        "UserLastModifiedDate": 1548099495.428,
        "Enabled": true,
        "UserStatus": "FORCE_CHANGE_PASSWORD"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminCreateUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
```

```
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see AdminCreateUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Use `AdminGetUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AdminGetUser`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the specified user from an Amazon Cognito user pool with
 administrator access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="poolId">The Id of the Amazon Cognito user pool.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<UserStatusType> GetAdminUserAsync(string userName, string
poolId)
    {
        AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = new AdminGetUserRequest
        {
            Username = userName,
            UserPoolId = poolId,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminGetUserAsync(userRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"User status {response.UserStatus}");
        return response.UserStatus;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserRequest request;
    request.SetUsername(userName);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminGetUser(request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The status for " << userName << " is " <<

 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::UserStatusTypeMapper::GetNameForUserStatusType(
                          outcome.GetResult().GetUserStatus()) << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Enabled is " << outcome.GetResult().GetEnabled() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminGetUser. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a user

This example gets information about username jane@example.com.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp admin-get-user --user-pool-id us-west-2_aaaaaaaaa --
username jane@example.com
```

Output:

```
{
  "Username": "4320de44-2322-4620-999b-5e2e1c8df013",
  "Enabled": true,
  "UserStatus": "FORCE_CHANGE_PASSWORD",
  "UserCreateDate": 1548108509.537,
  "UserAttributes": [
      {
          "Name": "sub",
          "Value": "4320de44-2322-4620-999b-5e2e1c8df013"
      },
```

```
        {
            "Name": "email_verified",
            "Value": "true"
        },
        {
            "Name": "phone_number_verified",
            "Value": "true"
        },
        {
            "Name": "phone_number",
            "Value": "+01115551212"
        },
        {
            "Name": "email",
            "Value": "jane@example.com"
        }
    ],
    "UserLastModifiedDate": 1548108509.537
}
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void getAdminUser(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String userName,
            String poolId) {
        try {
            AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = AdminGetUserRequest.builder()
                    .username(userName)
                    .userPoolId(poolId)
                    .build();
```

```
            AdminGetUserResponse response =
 identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest);
            System.out.println("User status " + response.userStatusAsString());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const adminGetUser = ({ userPoolId, username }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new AdminGetUserCommand({
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Username: username,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAdminUser(
    userNameVal: String?,
    poolIdVal: String?,
) {
    val userRequest =
        AdminGetUserRequest {
            username = userNameVal
            userPoolId = poolIdVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest)
        println("User status ${response.userStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_up_user(self, user_name, password, user_email):
        """
        Signs up a new user with Amazon Cognito. This action prompts Amazon
 Cognito
        to send an email to the specified email address. The email contains a
 code that
        can be used to confirm the user.

        When the user already exists, the user status is checked to determine
 whether
        the user has been confirmed.

        :param user_name: The user name that identifies the new user.
        :param password: The password for the new user.
        :param user_email: The email address for the new user.
        :return: True when the user is already confirmed with Amazon Cognito.
                 Otherwise, false.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "Password": password,
                "UserAttributes": [{"Name": "email", "Value": user_email}],
```

```
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.sign_up(**kwargs)
            confirmed = response["UserConfirmed"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "UsernameExistsException":
                response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_get_user(
                    UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id, Username=user_name
                )
                logger.warning(
                    "User %s exists and is %s.", user_name,
 response["UserStatus"]
                )
                confirmed = response["UserStatus"] == "CONFIRMED"
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't sign up %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return confirmed
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider
```

```
    /// Get information about a specific user in a user pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client to use.
    ///   - userName: The user to retrieve information about.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to search for the specified user.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user's information was successfully
    ///   retrieved. Otherwise returns `false`.
    func adminGetUser(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, userName: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminGetUser(
                input: AdminGetUserInput(
                    userPoolId: userPoolId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let userStatus = output.userStatus else {
                print("*** Unable to get the user's status.")
                return false
            }

            print("User status: \(userStatus)")
            return true
        } catch {
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AdminInitiateAuth` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate an admin auth request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID to use.</param>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The ID of the user pool.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to authenticate.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <returns>The session to use in challenge-response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AdminInitiateAuthAsync(string clientId, string
 userPoolId, string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var request = new AdminInitiateAuthRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(request);
        return response.Session;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthRequest request;
    request.SetClientId(clientID);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
    request.AddAuthParameters("USERNAME", userName);
    request.AddAuthParameters("PASSWORD", password);
    request.SetAuthFlow(

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AuthFlowType::ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH);


    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminInitiateAuth(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Call to AdminInitiateAuth was successful." << std::endl;
        sessionResult = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminInitiateAuth. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To sign in a user as an admin

The following `admin-initiate-auth` example signs in the user diego@example.com. This example also includes metadata for threat protection and ClientMetadata for Lambda triggers. The user is configured for TOTP MFA and receives a challenge to provide a code from their authenticator app before they can complete authentication.

```
aws cognito-idp admin-initiate-auth \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --client-id 1example23456789 \
    --auth-flow ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH \
    --auth-parameters USERNAME=diego@example.com,PASSWORD="My@Example
$Password3!",SECRET_HASH=ExampleEncodedClientIdSecretAndUsername= \
    --context-data="{\"EncodedData\":\"abc123example\",\"HttpHeaders\":
[{\"headerName\":\"UserAgent\",\"headerValue\":\"Mozilla/5.0 (Windows NT
 6.1; Win64; x64; rv:47.0) Gecko/20100101 Firefox/47.0\"}],\"IpAddress\":
\"192.0.2.1\",\"ServerName\":\"example.com\",\"ServerPath\":\"/login\"}" \
    --client-metadata="{\"MyExampleKey\": \"MyExampleValue\"}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "ChallengeName": "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA",
    "Session": "AYABeExample...",
    "ChallengeParameters": {
        "FRIENDLY_DEVICE_NAME": "MyAuthenticatorApp",
        "USER_ID_FOR_SRP": "diego@example.com"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Admin authentication flow in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static AdminInitiateAuthResponse
initiateAuth(CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient,
           String clientId, String userName, String password, String userPoolId)
{
       try {
           Map<String, String> authParameters = new HashMap<>();
           authParameters.put("USERNAME", userName);
           authParameters.put("PASSWORD", password);

           AdminInitiateAuthRequest authRequest =
AdminInitiateAuthRequest.builder()
                   .clientId(clientId)
                   .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                   .authParameters(authParameters)
                   .authFlow(AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH)
                   .build();

           AdminInitiateAuthResponse response =
identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest);
           System.out.println("Result Challenge is : " +
response.challengeName());
           return response;

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const adminInitiateAuth = ({ clientId, userPoolId, username, password }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new AdminInitiateAuthCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    AuthFlow: AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
    AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkAuthMethod(
```

```
    clientIdVal: String,
    userNameVal: String,
    passwordVal: String,
    userPoolIdVal: String,
): AdminInitiateAuthResponse {
    val authParas = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    authParas["USERNAME"] = userNameVal
    authParas["PASSWORD"] = passwordVal

    val authRequest =
        AdminInitiateAuthRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            userPoolId = userPoolIdVal
            authParameters = authParas
            authFlow = AuthFlowType.AdminUserPasswordAuth
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest)
        println("Result Challenge is ${response.challengeName}")
        return response
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""
```

```
    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def start_sign_in(self, user_name, password):
        """
        Starts the sign-in process for a user by using administrator credentials.
        This method of signing in is appropriate for code running on a secure
 server.

        If the user pool is configured to require MFA and this is the first sign-
in
        for the user, Amazon Cognito returns a challenge response to set up an
        MFA application. When this occurs, this function gets an MFA secret from
        Amazon Cognito and returns it to the caller.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to sign in.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :return: The result of the sign-in attempt. When sign-in is successful,
 this
                 returns an access token that can be used to get AWS credentials.
 Otherwise,
                 Amazon Cognito returns a challenge to set up an MFA application,
                 or a challenge to enter an MFA code from a registered MFA
 application.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "AuthFlow": "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                "AuthParameters": {"USERNAME": user_name, "PASSWORD": password},
```

```
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["AuthParameters"]["SECRET_HASH"] =
self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_initiate_auth(**kwargs)
            challenge_name = response.get("ChallengeName", None)
            if challenge_name == "MFA_SETUP":
                if (
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA"
                    in response["ChallengeParameters"]["MFAS_CAN_SETUP"]
                ):
                    response.update(self.get_mfa_secret(response["Session"]))
                else:
                    raise RuntimeError(
                        "The user pool requires MFA setup, but the user pool is
not "
                        "configured for TOTP MFA. This example requires TOTP
MFA."
                    )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Begin an authentication session.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID to use.
    ///   - userName: The username to check.
    ///   - password: The user's password.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to use.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The session token associated with this authentication
    ///   session.
    func initiateAuth(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
                      userName: String, password: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> String? {
        var authParams: [String: String] = [:]

        authParams["USERNAME"] = userName
        authParams["PASSWORD"] = password

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminInitiateAuth(
                input: AdminInitiateAuthInput(
                    authFlow:
 CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AuthFlowType.adminUserPasswordAuth,
                    authParameters: authParams,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
            )
```

```
            guard let challengeName = output.challengeName else {
                print("*** Invalid response from the auth service.")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Response challenge is \(challengeName)")

            return output.session
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return nil
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred.")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Respond to an admin authentication challenge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID.</param>
    /// <param name="mfaCode">The multi-factor authentication code.</param>
    /// <param name="session">The current application session.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>The result of the authentication response.</returns>
    public async Task<AuthenticationResultType> AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(
        string userName,
        string clientId,
        string mfaCode,
        string session,
        string userPoolId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");

        var challengeResponses = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        challengeResponses.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.Add("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        var respondToAuthChallengeRequest = new
AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
        {
            ChallengeName = ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
            ClientId = clientId,
            ChallengeResponses = challengeResponses,
            Session = session,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
        };

        var response = await
_cognitoService.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Response to Authentication
{response.AuthenticationResult.TokenType}");
        return response.AuthenticationResult;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
request;
        request.AddChallengeResponses("USERNAME", userName);
        request.AddChallengeResponses("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);
        request.SetChallengeName(

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ChallengeNameType::SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeOutcome
outcome =
                client.AdminRespondToAuthChallenge(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Here is the response to the challenge.\n" <<

outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            accessToken =
outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().GetAccessToken();
        }
        else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminRespondToAuthChallenge. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To respond to an authentication challenge

There are many ways to respond to different authentication challenges, depending on your authentication flow, user pool configuration, and user settings. The following `admin-respond-to-auth-challenge` example provides a TOTP MFA code for diego@example.com and completes sign-in. This user pool has device remembering turned on, so the authentication result also returns a new device key.

```
aws cognito-idp admin-respond-to-auth-challenge \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --client-id 1example23456789 \
    --challenge-name SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA \
    --challenge-
responses USERNAME=diego@example.com,SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE=000000 \
    --session AYABeExample...
```

Output:

```
{
    "ChallengeParameters": {},
    "AuthenticationResult": {
        "AccessToken": "eyJra456defEXAMPLE",
        "ExpiresIn": 3600,
        "TokenType": "Bearer",
        "RefreshToken": "eyJra123abcEXAMPLE",
        "IdToken": "eyJra789ghiEXAMPLE",
        "NewDeviceMetadata": {
            "DeviceKey": "us-west-2_a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
```

```
            "DeviceGroupKey": "-ExAmPlE1"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Admin authentication flow in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Respond to an authentication challenge.
   public static void adminRespondToAuthChallenge(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient,
           String userName, String clientId, String mfaCode, String session) {
       System.out.println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");
       Map<String, String> challengeResponses = new HashMap<>();

       challengeResponses.put("USERNAME", userName);
       challengeResponses.put("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

       AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest respondToAuthChallengeRequest =
AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest.builder()
               .challengeName(ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA)
               .clientId(clientId)
               .challengeResponses(challengeResponses)
               .session(session)
               .build();

       AdminRespondToAuthChallengeResponse respondToAuthChallengeResult =
identityProviderClient
               .adminRespondToAuthChallenge(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
```

```
 System.out.println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()"
                + respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult());
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const adminRespondToAuthChallenge = ({
  userPoolId,
  clientId,
  username,
  totp,
  session,
}) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});
  const command = new AdminRespondToAuthChallengeCommand({
    ChallengeName: ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
    ChallengeResponses: {
      SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE: totp,
      USERNAME: username,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Respond to an authentication challenge.
suspend fun adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
    userName: String,
    clientIdVal: String?,
    mfaCode: String,
    sessionVal: String?,
) {
    println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated")
    val challengeResponsesOb = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
    challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

    val adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest =
        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest {
            challengeName = ChallengeNameType.SoftwareTokenMfa
            clientId = clientIdVal
            challengeResponses = challengeResponsesOb
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val respondToAuthChallengeResult =
 identityProviderClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest)
        println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()
 ${respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Respond to an MFA challenge by providing a code generated by an associated MFA application.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def respond_to_mfa_challenge(self, user_name, session, mfa_code):
        """
        Responds to a challenge for an MFA code. This completes the second step
 of
        a two-factor sign-in. When sign-in is successful, it returns an access
 token
```

```
        that can be used to get AWS credentials from Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who is signing in.
        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :param mfa_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains
an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "ChallengeName": "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA",
                "Session": session,
                "ChallengeResponses": {
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE": mfa_code,
                },
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["ChallengeResponses"]["SECRET_HASH"] = self._secret_hash(
                    user_name
                )
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.admin_respond_to_auth_challenge(**kwargs)
            auth_result = response["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ExpiredCodeException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Your MFA code has expired or has been used already. You
might have "
                    "to wait a few seconds until your app shows you a new code."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't respond to mfa challenge for %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

```
                raise
        else:
            return auth_result
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Respond to the authentication challenge received from Cognito after
    /// initiating an authentication session. This involves sending a current
    /// MFA code to the service.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - userName: The user's username.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to sign into.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit MFA code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator.
    ///   - session: The authentication session to continue processing.
    func adminRespondToAuthChallenge(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
 userName: String,
                                     clientId: String, userPoolId: String,
 mfaCode: String,
                                     session: String) async {
        print("=====> SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated...")
```

```
        var challengeResponsesOb: [String: String] = [:]
        challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
        challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
                input: AdminRespondToAuthChallengeInput(
                    challengeName:
CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.ChallengeNameType.softwareTokenMfa,
                    challengeResponses: challengeResponsesOb,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    session: session,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
            )

            guard let authenticationResult = output.authenticationResult else {
                print("*** Unable to get authentication result.")
                return
            }

            print("=====> Authentication result (JWTs are redacted):")
            print(authenticationResult)
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch let error as NotAuthorizedException {
            print("*** Unauthorized access. Reason: \(error.properties.message ??
"<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error responding to the MFA challenge.")
            return
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AdminSetUserPassword` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AdminSetUserPassword`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

CLI

AWS CLI

To set a user password as an admin

The following `admin-set-user-password` example permanently sets the password for diego@example.com.

```
aws cognito-idp admin-set-user-password \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --username diego@example.com \
    --password MyExamplePassword1! \
    --permanent
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Passwords, password recovery, and password policies in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see AdminSetUserPassword in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
```

```
    log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
  err)
   }
  }
  return err
 }
```

- For API details, see AdminSetUserPassword in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Use `AssociateSoftwareToken` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get an MFA token to authenticate the user with the authenticator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The session name.</param>
    /// <returns>The session name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(string session)
    {
        var softwareTokenRequest = new AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
```

```
        {
            Session = session,
        };

        var tokenResponse = await
_cognitoService.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(softwareTokenRequest);
        var secretCode = tokenResponse.SecretCode;

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the following secret code to set up the
authenticator: {secretCode}");

        return tokenResponse.Session;
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
request;
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenOutcome
outcome =
                client.AssociateSoftwareToken(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "Enter this setup key into an authenticator app, for
 example Google Authenticator."
                    << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Setup key: " << outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode()
                      << std::endl;
#ifdef USING_QR
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::cout << "\nOr scan the QR code in the file '" << QR_CODE_PATH <<
 "."
                      << std::endl;

            saveQRCode(std::string("otpauth://totp/") + userName + "?secret=" +
                       outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode());
#endif // USING_QR
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::AssociateSoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To generate a secret key for an MFA authenticator app

The following `associate-software-token` example generates a TOTP private key for a user who has signed in and received an access token. The resulting private key can be manually entered into an authenticator app, or applications can render it as a QR code that the user can scan.

```
aws cognito-idp associate-software-token \
```

```
    --access-token eyJra456defEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "SecretCode": "QWERTYUIOP123456EXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see TOTP software token MFA in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String getSecretForAppMFA(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session) {
       AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest softwareTokenRequest =
AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
               .session(session)
               .build();

       AssociateSoftwareTokenResponse tokenResponse = identityProviderClient
               .associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest);
       String secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode();
       System.out.println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator");
       System.out.println(secretCode);
       return tokenResponse.session();
   }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const associateSoftwareToken = (session) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});
  const command = new AssociateSoftwareTokenCommand({
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSecretForAppMFA(sessionVal: String?): String? {
    val softwareTokenRequest =
        AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest {
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
```

```
        val tokenResponse =
 identityProviderClient.associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest)
        val secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode
        println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator")
        println(secretCode)
        return tokenResponse.session
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def get_mfa_secret(self, session):
```

```
        """
        Gets a token that can be used to associate an MFA application with the
 user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
 initiate
                        authentication.
        :return: An MFA token that can be used to set up an MFA application.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.cognito_idp_client.associate_software_token(Session=session)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get MFA secret. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Request and display an MFA secret token that the user should enter
    /// into their authenticator to set it up for the user account.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - authSession: The authentication session to request an MFA secret
    ///     for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the MFA secret token that should be
    ///   entered into the authenticator software.
    func getSecretForAppMFA(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
authSession: String?) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.associateSoftwareToken(
                input: AssociateSoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: authSession
                )
            )

            guard let secretCode = output.secretCode else {
                print("*** Unable to get the secret code")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Enter this token into Google Authenticator:
\(secretCode)")
            return output.session
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred getting the secret for the
app's MFA.")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ConfirmDevice` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ConfirmDevice`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiates and confirms tracking of the device.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessToken">The user's access token.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceKey">The key of the device from Amazon Cognito.</
param>
    /// <param name="deviceName">The device name.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmDeviceAsync(string accessToken, string
 deviceKey, string deviceName)
    {
        var request = new ConfirmDeviceRequest
        {
            AccessToken = accessToken,
            DeviceKey = deviceKey,
            DeviceName = deviceName
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmDeviceAsync(request);
        return response.UserConfirmationNecessary;
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To confirm a user device

The following `confirm-device` example adds a new remembered device for the current user.

```
aws cognito-idp confirm-device \
   --access-token eyJra456defEXAMPLE \
   --device-key us-west-2_a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111 \
   --device-secret-verifier-
config PasswordVerifier=TXlWZXJpZmllclN0cmluZw,Salt=TXlTUlBTYWx0
```

Output:

```
{
     "UserConfirmationNecessary": false
}
```

For more information, see Working with user devices in your user pool in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const confirmDevice = ({ deviceKey, accessToken, passwordVerifier, salt }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ConfirmDeviceCommand({
    DeviceKey: deviceKey,
```

```
    AccessToken: accessToken,
    DeviceSecretVerifierConfig: {
      PasswordVerifier: passwordVerifier,
      Salt: salt,
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret
```

```
    def confirm_mfa_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        access_token,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Confirms an MFA device to be tracked by Amazon Cognito. When a device is
        tracked, its key and password can be used to sign in without requiring a
new
        MFA code from the MFA application.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param device_key: The key of the device, returned by Amazon Cognito.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of the device, returned by Amazon
Cognito.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param access_token: The user's access token.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with Secure Remote Password (SRP)
                        calculations. The scenario associated with this example
uses
                        the warrant package.
        :return: True when the user must confirm the device. Otherwise, False.
When
                 False, the device is automatically confirmed and tracked.
        """
        srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
            username=user_name,
            password=device_password,
            pool_id="_",
            client_id=self.client_id,
            client_secret=None,
            client=self.cognito_idp_client,
        )
        device_and_pw = f"{device_group_key}{device_key}:{device_password}"
        device_and_pw_hash = aws_srp.hash_sha256(device_and_pw.encode("utf-8"))
        salt = aws_srp.pad_hex(aws_srp.get_random(16))
        x_value = aws_srp.hex_to_long(aws_srp.hex_hash(salt +
device_and_pw_hash))
        verifier = aws_srp.pad_hex(pow(srp_helper.val_g, x_value,
srp_helper.big_n))
```

```
        device_secret_verifier_config = {
            "PasswordVerifier": base64.standard_b64encode(
                bytearray.fromhex(verifier)
            ).decode("utf-8"),
            "Salt":
base64.standard_b64encode(bytearray.fromhex(salt)).decode("utf-8"),
        }
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_device(
                AccessToken=access_token,
                DeviceKey=device_key,
                DeviceSecretVerifierConfig=device_secret_verifier_config,
            )
            user_confirm = response["UserConfirmationNecessary"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm mfa device %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                device_key,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return user_confirm
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ConfirmForgotPassword` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ConfirmForgotPassword`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function

CLI

AWS CLI

To confirm a forgotten password

This example confirms a forgotten password for username diego@example.com.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp confirm-forgot-password --client-id 3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado --
username=diego@example.com --password PASSWORD --confirmation-code CONF_CODE
```

- For API details, see ConfirmForgotPassword in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmForgotPassword in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Use `ConfirmSignUp` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Confirm that the user has signed up.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of this application.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The confirmation code sent to the user.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmSignupAsync(string clientId, string code,
string userName)
    {
        var signUpRequest = new ConfirmSignUpRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            ConfirmationCode = code,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmSignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{userName} was confirmed");
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpRequest request;
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        request.SetConfirmationCode(confirmationCode);
        request.SetUsername(userName);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpOutcome outcome =
                client.ConfirmSignUp(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "ConfirmSignup was Successful."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::ConfirmSignUp. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To confirm sign-up

This example confirms sign-up for username diego@example.com.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp confirm-sign-up --client-id 3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado --
username=diego@example.com --confirmation-code CONF_CODE
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void confirmSignUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId, String code,
           String userName) {
       try {
           ConfirmSignUpRequest signUpRequest = ConfirmSignUpRequest.builder()
                   .clientId(clientId)
                   .confirmationCode(code)
                   .username(userName)
                   .build();

           identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest);
           System.out.println(userName + " was confirmed");

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const confirmSignUp = ({ clientId, username, code }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ConfirmSignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    ConfirmationCode: code,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun confirmSignUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val signUpRequest =
        ConfirmSignUpRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            confirmationCode = codeVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest)
        println("$userNameVal  was confirmed")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
```

```
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def confirm_user_sign_up(self, user_name, confirmation_code):
        """
        Confirms a previously created user. A user must be confirmed before they
        can sign in to Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to confirm.
        :param confirmation_code: The confirmation code sent to the user's
registered
                                  email address.
        :return: True when the confirmation succeeds.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "ConfirmationCode": confirmation_code,
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_sign_up(**kwargs)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm sign up for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return True
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Submit a confirmation code for the specified user. This is the code as
    /// entered by the user after they've received it by email or text
    /// message.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID the user is signing up for.
    ///   - userName: The username of the user whose code is being sent.
    ///   - code: The user's confirmation code.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the code was successfully confirmed; otherwise
 `false`.
    func confirmSignUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId:
 String,
                       userName: String, code: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.confirmSignUp(
                input: ConfirmSignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    confirmationCode: code,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            print("=====> \(userName) has been confirmed.")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("=====> \(userName)'s code was entered incorrectly.")
            return false
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateUserPool` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateUserPool`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a minimally configured user pool

This example creates a user pool named MyUserPool using default values. There are no required attributes and no application clients. MFA and advanced security is disabled.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp create-user-pool --pool-name MyUserPool
```

Output:

```
{
  "UserPool": {
      "SchemaAttributes": [
          {
              "Name": "sub",
              "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                  "MinLength": "1",
                  "MaxLength": "2048"
              },
              "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
              "Required": true,
              "AttributeDataType": "String",
              "Mutable": false
          },
          {
              "Name": "name",
              "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                  "MinLength": "0",
```

```
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "given_name",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "family_name",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "middle_name",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "nickname",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
```

```
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "preferred_username",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "profile",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "picture",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "website",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
```

```
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "email",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "AttributeDataType": "Boolean",
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "Name": "email_verified",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "gender",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "birthdate",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "10",
                "MaxLength": "10"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
```

```
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "zoneinfo",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "locale",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "phone_number",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "AttributeDataType": "Boolean",
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "Name": "phone_number_verified",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
```

```
            "Name": "address",
            "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinLength": "0",
                "MaxLength": "2048"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "String",
            "Mutable": true
        },
        {
            "Name": "updated_at",
            "NumberAttributeConstraints": {
                "MinValue": "0"
            },
            "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
            "Required": false,
            "AttributeDataType": "Number",
            "Mutable": true
        }
    ],
    "MfaConfiguration": "OFF",
    "Name": "MyUserPool",
    "LastModifiedDate": 1547833345.777,
    "AdminCreateUserConfig": {
        "UnusedAccountValidityDays": 7,
        "AllowAdminCreateUserOnly": false
    },
    "EmailConfiguration": {},
    "Policies": {
        "PasswordPolicy": {
            "RequireLowercase": true,
            "RequireSymbols": true,
            "RequireNumbers": true,
            "MinimumLength": 8,
            "RequireUppercase": true
        }
    },
    "CreationDate": 1547833345.777,
    "EstimatedNumberOfUsers": 0,
    "Id": "us-west-2_aaaaaaaaa",
    "LambdaConfig": {}
}
```

```
}
```

To create a user pool with two required attributes

This example creates a user pool MyUserPool. The pool is configured to accept email as a username attribute. It also sets the email source address to a validated address using Amazon Simple Email Service.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp create-user-pool --pool-name MyUserPool --username-
attributes "email" --email-configuration=SourceArn="arn:aws:ses:us-
east-1:111111111111:identity/
jane@example.com",ReplyToEmailAddress="jane@example.com"
```

Output:

```
{
  "UserPool": {
      "SchemaAttributes": [
          {
              "Name": "sub",
              "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                  "MinLength": "1",
                  "MaxLength": "2048"
              },
              "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
              "Required": true,
              "AttributeDataType": "String",
              "Mutable": false
          },
          {
              "Name": "name",
              "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                  "MinLength": "0",
                  "MaxLength": "2048"
              },
              "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
              "Required": false,
              "AttributeDataType": "String",
              "Mutable": true
          },
          {
```

```
                "Name": "given_name",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "family_name",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "middle_name",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "nickname",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
```

```
                "Name": "preferred_username",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "profile",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "picture",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "website",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
```

```
                "Name": "email",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "AttributeDataType": "Boolean",
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "Name": "email_verified",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "gender",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "birthdate",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "10",
                    "MaxLength": "10"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "zoneinfo",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
```

```
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "locale",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "phone_number",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "AttributeDataType": "Boolean",
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "Name": "phone_number_verified",
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "address",
                "StringAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinLength": "0",
                    "MaxLength": "2048"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "String",
```

```
                "Mutable": true
            },
            {
                "Name": "updated_at",
                "NumberAttributeConstraints": {
                    "MinValue": "0"
                },
                "DeveloperOnlyAttribute": false,
                "Required": false,
                "AttributeDataType": "Number",
                "Mutable": true
            }
        ],
        "MfaConfiguration": "OFF",
        "Name": "MyUserPool",
        "LastModifiedDate": 1547837788.189,
        "AdminCreateUserConfig": {
            "UnusedAccountValidityDays": 7,
            "AllowAdminCreateUserOnly": false
        },
        "EmailConfiguration": {
            "ReplyToEmailAddress": "jane@example.com",
            "SourceArn": "arn:aws:ses:us-east-1:111111111111:identity/
jane@example.com"
        },
        "Policies": {
            "PasswordPolicy": {
                "RequireLowercase": true,
                "RequireSymbols": true,
                "RequireNumbers": true,
                "MinimumLength": 8,
                "RequireUppercase": true
            }
        },
        "UsernameAttributes": [
            "email"
        ],
        "CreationDate": 1547837788.189,
        "EstimatedNumberOfUsers": 0,
        "Id": "us-west-2_aaaaaaaaa",
        "LambdaConfig": {}
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUserPool in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateUserPool {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userPoolName>\s

                Where:
                    userPoolName - The name to give your user pool when it's
 created.
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userPoolName = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String id = createPool(cognitoClient, userPoolName);
        System.out.println("User pool ID: " + id);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static String createPool(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient,
 String userPoolName) {
        try {
            CreateUserPoolRequest request = CreateUserPoolRequest.builder()
                    .poolName(userPoolName)
                    .build();

            CreateUserPoolResponse response =
 cognitoClient.createUserPool(request);
            return response.userPool().id();

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUserPool in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateUserPoolClient` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateUserPoolClient`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a user pool client

The following `create-user-pool-client` example creates a new user pool client with a client secret, explicit read and write attributes, sign in with username-password and SRP flows, sign-in with three IdPs, access to a subset of OAuth scopes, PinPoint analytics, and an extended authentication session validity.

```
aws cognito-idp create-user-pool-client \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --client-name MyTestClient \
    --generate-secret \
    --refresh-token-validity 10 \
    --access-token-validity 60 \
    --id-token-validity 60 \
    --token-validity-units AccessToken=minutes,IdToken=minutes,RefreshToken=days
 \
    --read-attributes email phone_number email_verified phone_number_verified \
    --write-attributes email phone_number \
    --explicit-auth-
flows ALLOW_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH ALLOW_USER_SRP_AUTH ALLOW_REFRESH_TOKEN_AUTH \
    --supported-identity-providers Google Facebook MyOIDC \
    --callback-urls https://www.amazon.com https://example.com http://
localhost:8001 myapp://example \
    --allowed-o-auth-flows code implicit \
    --allowed-o-auth-scopes openid profile aws.cognito.signin.user.admin solar-
system-data/asteroids.add \
    --allowed-o-auth-flows-user-pool-client \
    --analytics-configuration ApplicationArn=arn:aws:mobiletargeting:us-
west-2:767671399759:apps/thisisanexamplepinpointapplicationid,UserDataShared=TRUE
 \
    --prevent-user-existence-errors ENABLED \
    --enable-token-revocation \
    --enable-propagate-additional-user-context-data \
    --auth-session-validity 4
```

Output:

```
{
    "UserPoolClient": {
```

```
        "UserPoolId": "us-west-2_EXAMPLE",
        "ClientName": "MyTestClient",
        "ClientId": "123abc456defEXAMPLE",
        "ClientSecret": "this1234is5678my91011example1213client1415secret",
        "LastModifiedDate": 1726788459.464,
        "CreationDate": 1726788459.464,
        "RefreshTokenValidity": 10,
        "AccessTokenValidity": 60,
        "IdTokenValidity": 60,
        "TokenValidityUnits": {
            "AccessToken": "minutes",
            "IdToken": "minutes",
            "RefreshToken": "days"
        },
        "ReadAttributes": [
            "email_verified",
            "phone_number_verified",
            "phone_number",
            "email"
        ],
        "WriteAttributes": [
            "phone_number",
            "email"
        ],
        "ExplicitAuthFlows": [
            "ALLOW_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
            "ALLOW_USER_SRP_AUTH",
            "ALLOW_REFRESH_TOKEN_AUTH"
        ],
        "SupportedIdentityProviders": [
            "Google",
            "MyOIDC",
            "Facebook"
        ],
        "CallbackURLs": [
            "https://example.com",
            "https://www.amazon.com",
            "myapp://example",
            "http://localhost:8001"
        ],
        "AllowedOAuthFlows": [
            "implicit",
            "code"
        ],
```

```
        "AllowedOAuthScopes": [
            "aws.cognito.signin.user.admin",
            "openid",
            "profile",
            "solar-system-data/asteroids.add"
        ],
        "AllowedOAuthFlowsUserPoolClient": true,
        "AnalyticsConfiguration": {
            "ApplicationArn": "arn:aws:mobiletargeting:us-
west-2:123456789012:apps/thisisanexamplepinpointapplicationid",
            "RoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/cognito-
idp.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonCognitoIdp",
            "UserDataShared": true
        },
        "PreventUserExistenceErrors": "ENABLED",
        "EnableTokenRevocation": true,
        "EnablePropagateAdditionalUserContextData": true,
        "AuthSessionValidity": 4
    }
}
```

For more information, see Application-specific settings with app clients in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateUserPoolClient in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolClientReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolClientRespon

/**
 * A user pool client app is an application that authenticates with Amazon
 * Cognito user pools.
 * When you create a user pool, you can configure app clients that allow mobile
 * or web applications
 * to call API operations to authenticate users, manage user attributes and
 * profiles,
 * and implement sign-up and sign-in flows.
 *
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateUserPoolClient {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <clientName> <userPoolId>\s

                Where:
                    clientName - The name for the user pool client to create.
                    userPoolId - The ID for the user pool.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clientName = args[0];
        String userPoolId = args[1];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        createPoolClient(cognitoClient, clientName, userPoolId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void createPoolClient(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 cognitoClient, String clientName,
            String userPoolId) {
        try {
            CreateUserPoolClientRequest request =
 CreateUserPoolClientRequest.builder()
                    .clientName(clientName)
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .build();

            CreateUserPoolClientResponse response =
 cognitoClient.createUserPoolClient(request);
            System.out.println("User pool " +
 response.userPoolClient().clientName() + " created. ID: "
                    + response.userPoolClient().clientId());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUserPoolClient in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteUser`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function
- Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function
- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
        request.SetAccessToken(accessToken);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteUser(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The user " << userName << " was deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::DeleteUser. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a user

This example deletes a user.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp delete-user --access-token ACCESS_TOKEN
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Delete the signed-in user. Useful for allowing a user to delete their
 * own profile.
 * @param {{ region: string, accessToken: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").DeleteUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const deleteUser = async ({ region, accessToken }) => {
  try {
    const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await client.send(
      new DeleteUserCommand({ AccessToken: accessToken }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `ForgotPassword` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ForgotPassword`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function

CLI

AWS CLI

To force a password change

The following `forgot-password` example sends a message to jane@example.com to change their password.

```
aws cognito-idp forgot-password --client-id 38fjsnc484p94kpqsnet7mpld0 --
username jane@example.com
```

Output:

```
{
    "CodeDeliveryDetails": {
        "Destination": "j***@e***.com",
        "DeliveryMedium": "EMAIL",
        "AttributeName": "email"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ForgotPassword in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ForgotPassword in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Use `InitiateAuth` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `InitiateAuth`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function
- Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function
- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA
- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate authorization.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user who is authenticating.</
param>
    /// <param name="password">The password for the user who is authenticating.</
param>
    /// <returns>The response from the initiate auth request.</returns>
    public async Task<InitiateAuthResponse> InitiateAuthAsync(string clientId,
 string userName, string password)
    {
```

```
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var authRequest = new InitiateAuthRequest

        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.InitiateAuthAsync(authRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Result Challenge is : {response.ChallengeName}");

        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To sign in a user

The following `initiate-auth` example signs in a user with the basic username-password flow and no additional challenges.

```
aws cognito-idp initiate-auth \
    --auth-flow USER_PASSWORD_AUTH \
    --client-id 1example23456789 \
    --analytics-metadata AnalyticsEndpointId=d70b2ba36a8c4dc5a04a0451aEXAMPLE \
    --auth-parameters USERNAME=testuser,PASSWORD=[Password] --user-context-
data EncodedData=mycontextdata --client-metadata MyTestKey=MyTestValue
```

Output:

```
{
    "AuthenticationResult": {
        "AccessToken": "eyJra456defEXAMPLE",
```

```
        "ExpiresIn": 3600,
        "TokenType": "Bearer",
        "RefreshToken": "eyJra123abcEXAMPLE",
        "IdToken": "eyJra789ghiEXAMPLE",
        "NewDeviceMetadata": {
            "DeviceKey": "us-west-2_a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
            "DeviceGroupKey": "-v7w9UcY6"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Authentication in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const initiateAuth = ({ username, password, clientId }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new InitiateAuthCommand({
```

```
    AuthFlow: AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
    AuthParameters: {
      USERNAME: username,
      PASSWORD: password,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example shows you how to start authentication with a tracked device. To complete sign-in, the client must respond correctly to Secure Remote Password (SRP) challenges.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
```

```
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        password,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Signs in to Amazon Cognito as a user who has a tracked device. Signing in
        with a tracked device lets a user sign in without entering a new MFA
 code.

        Signing in with a tracked device requires that the client respond to the
 SRP
        protocol. The scenario associated with this example uses the warrant
 package
        to help with SRP calculations.

        For more information on SRP, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Secure_Remote_Password_protocol.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :param device_key: The key of a tracked device.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of a tracked device.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with SRP calculations. The scenario
                        associated with this example uses the warrant package.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains
 an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
                username=user_name,
                password=device_password,
                pool_id="_",
                client_id=self.client_id,
```

```
                client_secret=None,
                client=self.cognito_idp_client,
            )

            response_init = self.cognito_idp_client.initiate_auth(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                AuthFlow="USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                AuthParameters={
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "PASSWORD": password,
                    "DEVICE_KEY": device_key,
                },
            )
            if response_init["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_SRP_AUTH":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_SRP_AUTH challenge but got
{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            auth_params = srp_helper.get_auth_params()
            auth_params["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_auth = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_SRP_AUTH",
                ChallengeResponses=auth_params,
            )
            if response_auth["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER challenge but got "
                    f"{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            challenge_params = response_auth["ChallengeParameters"]
            challenge_params["USER_ID_FOR_SRP"] = device_group_key + device_key
            cr = srp_helper.process_challenge(challenge_params, {"USERNAME":
user_name})
            cr["USERNAME"] = user_name
            cr["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_verifier =
self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER",
                ChallengeResponses=cr,
            )
```

```
            auth_tokens = response_verifier["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start client sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return auth_tokens
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListUserPools` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListUserPools`.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the Amazon Cognito user pools for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of UserPoolDescriptionType objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserPoolDescriptionType>> ListUserPoolsAsync()
    {
        var userPools = new List<UserPoolDescriptionType>();

        var userPoolsPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUserPools(new
ListUserPoolsRequest());

        await foreach (var response in userPoolsPaginator.Responses)
```

```
        {
            userPools.AddRange(response.UserPools);
        }

        return userPools;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list user pools

The following `list-user-pools` example lists 3 of the available user pools in the AWS account of the current CLI credentials.

```
aws cognito-idp list-user-pools \
    --max-results 3
```

Output:

```
{
    "NextToken": "[Pagination token]",
    "UserPools": [
        {
            "CreationDate": 1681502497.741,
            "Id": "us-west-2_EXAMPLE1",
            "LambdaConfig": {
                "CustomMessage": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunction",
                "PreSignUp": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunction",
                "PreTokenGeneration": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunction",
                "PreTokenGenerationConfig": {
                    "LambdaArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunction",
                    "LambdaVersion": "V1_0"
```

```
                }
            },
            "LastModifiedDate": 1681502497.741,
            "Name": "user pool 1"
        },
        {
            "CreationDate": 1686064178.717,
            "Id": "us-west-2_EXAMPLE2",
            "LambdaConfig": {
            },
            "LastModifiedDate": 1686064178.873,
            "Name": "user pool 2"
        },
        {
            "CreationDate": 1627681712.237,
            "Id": "us-west-2_EXAMPLE3",
            "LambdaConfig": {
                "UserMigration": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
            },
            "LastModifiedDate": 1678486942.479,
            "Name": "user pool 3"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Amazon Cognito user pools in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 cognitoClient := cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the user pools for your account.")
 var pools []types.UserPoolDescriptionType
 paginator := cognitoidentityprovider.NewListUserPoolsPaginator(
  cognitoClient, &cognitoidentityprovider.ListUserPoolsInput{MaxResults:
 aws.Int32(10)})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get user pools. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   pools = append(pools, output.UserPools...)
  }
 }
 if len(pools) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any user pools!")
 } else {
```

```
  for _, pool := range pools {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *pool.Name, *pool.Id)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListUserPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUserPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUserPools(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
cognitoClient) {
        try {
            ListUserPoolsRequest request = ListUserPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListUserPoolsResponse response =
cognitoClient.listUserPools(request);
            response.userPools().forEach(userpool -> {
                System.out.println("User pool " + userpool.name() + ", User ID "
+ userpool.id());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_pools(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let response = client.list_user_pools().max_results(10).send().await?;
    let pools = response.user_pools();
    println!("User pools:");
    for pool in pools {
        println!("  ID:              {}", pool.id().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("  Name:            {}", pool.name().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("  Lambda Config:   {:?}", pool.lambda_config().unwrap());
        println!(
            "  Last modified:   {}",
            pool.last_modified_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()?
        );
        println!(
            "  Creation date:   {:?}",
            pool.creation_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()
        );
        println!();
    }
    println!("Next token: {}", response.next_token().unwrap_or_default());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListUsers` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListUsers`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get a list of users for the Amazon Cognito user pool.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="userPoolId">The user pool ID.</param>
/// <returns>A list of users.</returns>
public async Task<List<UserType>> ListUsersAsync(string userPoolId)
{
    var request = new ListUsersRequest
    {
        UserPoolId = userPoolId
    };

    var users = new List<UserType>();

    var usersPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUsers(request);
    await foreach (var response in usersPaginator.Responses)
    {
        users.AddRange(response.Users);
    }

    return users;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list users with a server-side filter

The following `list-users` example lists 3 users in the requested user pool whose email addresses begin with `testuser`.

```
aws cognito-idp list-users \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --filter email^=\"testuser\" \
    --max-items 3
```

Output:

```
{
    "PaginationToken": "efgh5678EXAMPLE",
    "Users": [
        {
            "Attributes": [
                {
                    "Name": "sub",
                    "Value": "eaad0219-2117-439f-8d46-4db20e59268f"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "email",
                    "Value": "testuser@example.com"
                }
            ],
            "Enabled": true,
            "UserCreateDate": 1682955829.578,
            "UserLastModifiedDate": 1689030181.63,
            "UserStatus": "CONFIRMED",
            "Username": "testuser"
        },
        {
            "Attributes": [
                {
                    "Name": "sub",
                    "Value": "3b994cfd-0b07-4581-be46-3c82f9a70c90"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "email",
                    "Value": "testuser2@example.com"
                }
            ],
            "Enabled": true,
            "UserCreateDate": 1684427979.201,
```

```
            "UserLastModifiedDate": 1684427979.201,
            "UserStatus": "UNCONFIRMED",
            "Username": "testuser2"
        },
        {
            "Attributes": [
                {
                    "Name": "sub",
                    "Value": "5929e0d1-4c34-42d1-9b79-a5ecacfe66f7"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "email",
                    "Value": "testuser3@example.com"
                }
            ],
            "Enabled": true,
            "UserCreateDate": 1684427823.641,
            "UserLastModifiedDate": 1684427823.641,
            "UserStatus": "UNCONFIRMED",
            "Username": "testuser3@example.com"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing and searching for users in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To list users with a client-side filter

The following `list-users` example lists the attributes of three users who have an attribute, in this case their email address, that contains the email domain "@example.com". If other attributes contained this string, they would also be displayed. The second user has no attributes that match the query and is excluded from the displayed output, but not from the server response.

```
aws cognito-idp list-users \
    --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --max-items 3
    --query Users\[\*\].Attributes\[\?Value\.contains\(\@\,\'@example.com\'\)\]
```

Output:

```
[
    [
        {
            "Name": "email",
            "Value": "admin@example.com"
        }
    ],
    [],
    [
        {
            "Name": "email",
            "Value": "operator@example.com"
        }
    ]
]
```

For more information, see Managing and searching for users in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUsersRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUsersResponse;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListUsers {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userPoolId>\s

                Where:
                    userPoolId - The ID given to your user pool when it's
 created.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userPoolId = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUsers(cognitoClient, userPoolId);
        listUsersFilter(cognitoClient, userPoolId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUsers(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient,
 String userPoolId) {
        try {
            ListUsersRequest usersRequest = ListUsersRequest.builder()
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .build();
```

```
            ListUsersResponse response = cognitoClient.listUsers(usersRequest);
            response.users().forEach(user -> {
                System.out.println("User " + user.username() + " Status " +
 user.userStatus() + " Created "
                        + user.userCreateDate());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Shows how to list users by using a filter.
    public static void listUsersFilter(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 cognitoClient, String userPoolId) {

        try {
            String filter = "email = \"tblue@noserver.com\"";
            ListUsersRequest usersRequest = ListUsersRequest.builder()
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .filter(filter)
                    .build();

            ListUsersResponse response = cognitoClient.listUsers(usersRequest);
            response.users().forEach(user -> {
                System.out.println("User with filter applied " + user.username()
 + " Status " + user.userStatus()
                        + " Created " + user.userCreateDate());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const listUsers = ({ userPoolId }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ListUsersCommand({
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllUsers(userPoolId: String) {
    val request =
        ListUsersRequest {
            this.userPoolId = userPoolId
        }
```

```
    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { cognitoClient ->
        val response = cognitoClient.listUsers(request)
        response.users?.forEach { user ->
            println("The user name is ${user.username}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def list_users(self):
```

```
        """
        Returns a list of the users in the current user pool.

        :return: The list of users.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.list_users(UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id)
            users = response["Users"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list users for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.user_pool_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return users
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        do {
            let output = try await cognitoClient.listUsers(
                input: ListUsersInput(
                    userPoolId: poolId
                )
            )

            guard let users = output.users else {
```

```
                print("No users found.")
                return
            }

            print("\(users.count) user(s) found.")
            for user in users {
                print("  \(user.username ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
        } catch _ as NotAuthorizedException {
            print("*** Please authenticate with AWS before using this command.")
            return
        } catch _ as ResourceNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified User Pool was not found.")
            return
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected type of error occurred.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ResendConfirmationCode` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Send a new confirmation code to a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of the client application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of user who will receive the code.</
param>
    /// <returns>The delivery details.</returns>
    public async Task<CodeDeliveryDetailsType> ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(string
 clientId, string userName)
    {
        var codeRequest = new ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await
 _cognitoService.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(codeRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"Method of delivery is
 {response.CodeDeliveryDetails.DeliveryMedium}");

        return response.CodeDeliveryDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
```

```
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
request;
        request.SetUsername(userName);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeOutcome
outcome =
                client.ResendConfirmationCode(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode was
successful."
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To resend a confirmation code

The following `resend-confirmation-code` example sends a confirmation code to the user `jane`.

```
aws cognito-idp resend-confirmation-code \
    --client-id 12a3b456c7de890f11g123hijk \
```

```
    --username jane
```

Output:

```
{
    "CodeDeliveryDetails": {
        "Destination": "j***@e***.com",
        "DeliveryMedium": "EMAIL",
        "AttributeName": "email"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Signing up and confirming user accounts in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void resendConfirmationCode(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId,
           String userName) {
       try {
           ResendConfirmationCodeRequest codeRequest =
ResendConfirmationCodeRequest.builder()
                   .clientId(clientId)
                   .username(userName)
                   .build();

           ResendConfirmationCodeResponse response =
identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest);
           System.out.println("Method of delivery is " +
response.codeDeliveryDetails().deliveryMediumAsString());
```

```
        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const resendConfirmationCode = ({ clientId, username }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ResendConfirmationCodeCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun resendConfirmationCode(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val codeRequest =
        ResendConfirmationCodeRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest)
        println("Method of delivery is " +
 (response.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium))
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def resend_confirmation(self, user_name):
        """
        Prompts Amazon Cognito to resend an email with a new confirmation code.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who will receive the email.
        :return: Delivery information about where the email is sent.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"ClientId": self.client_id, "Username": user_name}
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.resend_confirmation_code(**kwargs)
            delivery = response["CodeDeliveryDetails"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't resend confirmation to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return delivery
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Requests a new confirmation code be sent to the given user's contact
    /// method.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The application client ID.
    ///   - userName: The user to resend a code for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if a new code was sent successfully, otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func resendConfirmationCode(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
 clientId: String,
                                userName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.resendConfirmationCode(
                input: ResendConfirmationCodeInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let deliveryMedium = output.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium
 else {
                print("*** Unable to get the delivery method for the resent
 code.")
```

```
                return false
            }

            print("=====> A new code has been sent by \(deliveryMedium)")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to resend the confirmation code to user
\(userName).")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `RespondToAuthChallenge` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RespondToAuthChallenge`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To respond to a NEW_PASSWORD_REQUIRED challenge

The following `respond-to-auth-challenge` example responds to a NEW_PASSWORD_REQUIRED challenge that initiate-auth returned. It sets a password for the user `jane@example.com`.

```
aws cognito-idp respond-to-auth-challenge \
    --client-id 1example23456789 \
    --challenge-name NEW_PASSWORD_REQUIRED \
    --challenge-responses USERNAME=jane@example.com,NEW_PASSWORD=[Password] \
    --session AYABeEv5HklEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "ChallengeParameters": {},
    "AuthenticationResult": {
        "AccessToken": "ACCESS_TOKEN",
        "ExpiresIn": 3600,
        "TokenType": "Bearer",
        "RefreshToken": "REFRESH_TOKEN",
        "IdToken": "ID_TOKEN",
        "NewDeviceMetadata": {
            "DeviceKey": "us-west-2_a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
            "DeviceGroupKey": "-wt2ha1Zd"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Authentication in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To respond to a SELECT_MFA_TYPE challenge

The following `respond-to-auth-challenge` example chooses TOTP MFA as the MFA option for the current user. The user was prompted to select an MFA type and will next be prompted to enter their MFA code.

```
aws cognito-idp respond-to-auth-challenge \
    --client-id 1example23456789
    --session AYABeEv5HklEXAMPLE
    --challenge-name SELECT_MFA_TYPE
    --challenge-responses USERNAME=testuser,ANSWER=SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA
```

Output:

```
{
    "ChallengeName": "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA",
    "Session": "AYABeEv5HklEXAMPLE",
    "ChallengeParameters": {
        "FRIENDLY_DEVICE_NAME": "transparent"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Adding MFA in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To respond to a SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge

The following `respond-to-auth-challenge` example provides a TOTP MFA code and completes sign-in.

```
aws cognito-idp respond-to-auth-challenge \
    --client-id 1example23456789 \
    --session AYABeEv5HklEXAMPLE \
    --challenge-name SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA \
    --challenge-responses USERNAME=testuser,SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE=123456
```

Output:

```
{
    "AuthenticationResult": {
        "AccessToken": "eyJra456defEXAMPLE",
        "ExpiresIn": 3600,
        "TokenType": "Bearer",
        "RefreshToken": "eyJra123abcEXAMPLE",
        "IdToken": "eyJra789ghiEXAMPLE",
        "NewDeviceMetadata": {
            "DeviceKey": "us-west-2_a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
            "DeviceGroupKey": "-v7w9UcY6"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Adding MFA in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see RespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const respondToAuthChallenge = ({
  clientId,
```

```
  username,
  session,
  userPoolId,
  code,
}) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new RespondToAuthChallengeCommand({
    ChallengeName: ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
    ChallengeResponses: {
      SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE: code,
      USERNAME: username,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see RespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sign in with a tracked device. To complete sign-in, the client must respond correctly to Secure Remote Password (SRP) challenges.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
```

```
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        password,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Signs in to Amazon Cognito as a user who has a tracked device. Signing in
        with a tracked device lets a user sign in without entering a new MFA
 code.

        Signing in with a tracked device requires that the client respond to the
 SRP
        protocol. The scenario associated with this example uses the warrant
 package
        to help with SRP calculations.

        For more information on SRP, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Secure_Remote_Password_protocol.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :param device_key: The key of a tracked device.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of a tracked device.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with SRP calculations. The scenario
                        associated with this example uses the warrant package.
```

```
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains
an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
                username=user_name,
                password=device_password,
                pool_id="_",
                client_id=self.client_id,
                client_secret=None,
                client=self.cognito_idp_client,
            )

            response_init = self.cognito_idp_client.initiate_auth(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                AuthFlow="USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                AuthParameters={
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "PASSWORD": password,
                    "DEVICE_KEY": device_key,
                },
            )
            if response_init["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_SRP_AUTH":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_SRP_AUTH challenge but got
{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            auth_params = srp_helper.get_auth_params()
            auth_params["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_auth = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_SRP_AUTH",
                ChallengeResponses=auth_params,
            )
            if response_auth["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER challenge but got "
                    f"{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            challenge_params = response_auth["ChallengeParameters"]
            challenge_params["USER_ID_FOR_SRP"] = device_group_key + device_key
```

```
            cr = srp_helper.process_challenge(challenge_params, {"USERNAME":
user_name})
            cr["USERNAME"] = user_name
            cr["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_verifier =
self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER",
                ChallengeResponses=cr,
            )
            auth_tokens = response_verifier["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start client sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return auth_tokens
```

- For API details, see RespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SignUp` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SignUp`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function
- Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function
- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Sign up a new user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to use.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email address of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the user was confirmed.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> SignUpAsync(string clientId, string userName, string
 password, string email)
    {
        var userAttrs = new AttributeType
        {
            Name = "email",
            Value = email,
        };

        var userAttrsList = new List<AttributeType>();

        userAttrsList.Add(userAttrs);

        var signUpRequest = new SignUpRequest
        {
            UserAttributes = userAttrsList,
            Username = userName,
            ClientId = clientId,
            Password = password
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.SignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpRequest request;
        request.AddUserAttributes(
                Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AttributeType().WithName(
                        "email").WithValue(email));
        request.SetUsername(userName);
        request.SetPassword(password);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpOutcome outcome =
                client.SignUp(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The signup request for " << userName << " was
successful."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderErrors::USERNAME_EXISTS) {
            std::cout
```

```
                    << "The username already exists. Please enter a different
 username."
                    << std::endl;
            userExists = true;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::SignUpRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To sign up a user

This example signs up jane@example.com.

Command:

```
aws cognito-idp sign-up --client-id 3n4b5urk1ft4fl3mg5e62d9ado --
username jane@example.com --password PASSWORD --user-attributes
 Name="email",Value="jane@example.com" Name="name",Value="Jane"
```

Output:

```
{
  "UserConfirmed": false,
  "UserSub": "e04d60a6-45dc-441c-a40b-e25a787d4862"
}
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
```

```
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void signUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 identityProviderClient, String clientId, String userName,
            String password, String email) {
        AttributeType userAttrs = AttributeType.builder()
                .name("email")
                .value(email)
                .build();

        List<AttributeType> userAttrsList = new ArrayList<>();
        userAttrsList.add(userAttrs);
        try {
            SignUpRequest signUpRequest = SignUpRequest.builder()
                    .userAttributes(userAttrsList)
                    .username(userName)
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .password(password)
                    .build();
```

```
            identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println("User has been signed up ");

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const signUp = ({ clientId, username, password, email }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new SignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    Password: password,
    UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun signUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
    passwordVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
) {
    val userAttrs =
        AttributeType {
            name = "email"
            value = emailVal
        }

    val userAttrsList = mutableListOf<AttributeType>()
    userAttrsList.add(userAttrs)
    val signUpRequest =
        SignUpRequest {
            userAttributes = userAttrsList
            username = userNameVal
            clientId = clientIdVal
            password = passwordVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest)
        println("User has been signed up")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_up_user(self, user_name, password, user_email):
        """
        Signs up a new user with Amazon Cognito. This action prompts Amazon
 Cognito
        to send an email to the specified email address. The email contains a
 code that
        can be used to confirm the user.

        When the user already exists, the user status is checked to determine
 whether
        the user has been confirmed.

        :param user_name: The user name that identifies the new user.
```

```
        :param password: The password for the new user.
        :param user_email: The email address for the new user.
        :return: True when the user is already confirmed with Amazon Cognito.
                 Otherwise, false.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "Password": password,
                "UserAttributes": [{"Name": "email", "Value": user_email}],
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.sign_up(**kwargs)
            confirmed = response["UserConfirmed"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "UsernameExistsException":
                response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_get_user(
                    UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id, Username=user_name
                )
                logger.warning(
                    "User %s exists and is %s.", user_name,
response["UserStatus"]
                )
                confirmed = response["UserStatus"] == "CONFIRMED"
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't sign up %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return confirmed
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Create a new user in a user pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The ID of the app client to create a user for.
    ///   - userName: The username for the new user.
    ///   - password: The new user's password.
    ///   - email: The new user's email address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful; otherwise `false`.
    func signUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
 userName: String, password: String, email: String) async -> Bool {
        let emailAttr = CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AttributeType(
            name: "email",
            value: email
        )

        let userAttrsList = [emailAttr]

        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.signUp(
                input: SignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    password: password,
                    userAttributes: userAttrsList,
                    username: userName
                )

            )
```

```
            print("=====> User \(userName) signed up.")
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.UsernameExistsException {
            print("*** The username \(userName) already exists. Please use a
different one.")
            return false
        } catch let error as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.InvalidPasswordException
{
            print("*** Error: The specified password is invalid. Reason:
\(error.properties.message ?? "<none available>").")
            return false
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.ResourceNotFoundException {
            print("*** Error: The specified client ID (\(clientId)) doesn't
exist.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error: \(error)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `UpdateUserPool` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateUserPool`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function
- Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function
- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a user pool

The following `update-user-pool` example modifies a user pool with example syntax for each of the available configuration options. To update a user pool, you must specify all previously-configured options or they will reset to a default value.

```
aws cognito-idp update-user-pool --user-pool-id us-west-2_EXAMPLE \
    --policies PasswordPolicy=
\{MinimumLength=6,RequireUppercase=true,RequireLowercase=true,RequireNumbers=true,Require
 \
    --deletion-protection ACTIVE \
    --lambda-config PreSignUp="arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:cognito-test-presignup-
function",PreTokenGeneration="arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:cognito-test-pretoken-function" \
    --auto-verified-attributes "phone_number" "email" \
    --verification-message-template \{\"SmsMessage\":\""Your code is
 {####}"\",\"EmailMessage\":\""Your code is {####}"\",\"EmailSubject\":\""Your
 verification code"\",\"EmailMessageByLink\":\""Click {##here##} to verify
 your email address."\",\"EmailSubjectByLink\":\""Your verification link"\",
\"DefaultEmailOption\":\"CONFIRM_WITH_LINK\"\} \
    --sms-authentication-message "Your code is {####}" \
    --user-attribute-update-settings
 AttributesRequireVerificationBeforeUpdate="email","phone_number" \
    --mfa-configuration "OPTIONAL" \
    --device-
configuration ChallengeRequiredOnNewDevice=true,DeviceOnlyRememberedOnUserPrompt=true
 \
    --email-configuration SourceArn="arn:aws:ses:us-
west-2:123456789012:identity/admin@example.com",ReplyToEmailAddress="amdin
+noreply@example.com",EmailSendingAccount=DEVELOPER,From="admin@amazon.com",Configuration
configuration-set" \
    --sms-configuration SnsCallerArn="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-
role/SNS-SMS-Role",ExternalId="12345",SnsRegion="us-west-2" \
    --admin-create-user-config
 AllowAdminCreateUserOnly=false,InviteMessageTemplate=\{SMSMessage=\""Welcome
 {username}. Your confirmation code is {####}"\",EmailMessage=\""Welcome
 {username}. Your confirmation code is {####}"\",EmailSubject=\""Welcome to
 MyMobileGame"\"\} \
```

```
    --user-pool-tags "Function"="MyMobileGame","Developers"="Berlin" \
    --admin-create-user-config
 AllowAdminCreateUserOnly=false,InviteMessageTemplate=\{SMSMessage=\""Welcome
 {username}. Your confirmation code is {####}"\",EmailMessage=\""Welcome
 {username}. Your confirmation code is {####}"\",EmailSubject=\""Welcome to
 MyMobileGame"\"\} \
    --user-pool-add-ons AdvancedSecurityMode="AUDIT" \
    --account-recovery-setting RecoveryMechanisms=
\[\{Priority=1,Name="verified_email"\},
\{Priority=2,Name="verified_phone_number"\}\]
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Updating user pool configuration in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateUserPool in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
```

```
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUserPool in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Connect a Lambda function to the PreSignUp trigger for a Cognito user pool
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, handlerArn: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").UpdateUserPoolCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const addPreSignUpHandler = async ({
  region,
  userPoolId,
  handlerArn,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const command = new UpdateUserPoolCommand({
```

```
      UserPoolId: userPoolId,
      LambdaConfig: {
        PreSignUp: handlerArn,
      },
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(command);
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateUserPool in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `VerifySoftwareToken` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The name of the session.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The MFA code.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The status of the software token.</returns>
    public async Task<VerifySoftwareTokenResponseType>
VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(string session, string code)
    {
        var tokenRequest = new VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            UserCode = code,
            Session = session,
        };

        var verifyResponse = await
_cognitoService.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(tokenRequest);

        return verifyResponse.Status;
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenRequest request;
        request.SetUserCode(userCode);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenOutcome outcome =
```

```
                client.VerifySoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Verification of the code was successful."
                      << std::endl;
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::VerifySoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To confirm registration of a TOTP authenticator

The following `verify-software-token` example completes TOTP registration for the current user.

```
aws cognito-idp verify-software-token \
    --access-token eyJra456defEXAMPLE \
    --user-code 123456
```

Output:

```
{
    "Status": "SUCCESS"
}
```

For more information, see Adding MFA to a user pool in the *Amazon Cognito Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
   public static void verifyTOTP(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session, String code) {
       try {
           VerifySoftwareTokenRequest tokenRequest =
VerifySoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
                   .userCode(code)
                   .session(session)
                   .build();

           VerifySoftwareTokenResponse verifyResponse =
identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest);
           System.out.println("The status of the token is " +
verifyResponse.statusAsString());

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const verifySoftwareToken = (totp) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  // The 'Session' is provided in the response to 'AssociateSoftwareToken'.
  const session = process.env.SESSION;

  if (!session) {
    throw new Error(
      "Missing a valid Session. Did you run 'admin-initiate-auth'?",
    );
  }

  const command = new VerifySoftwareTokenCommand({
    Session: session,
    UserCode: totp,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
suspend fun verifyTOTP(
    sessionVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
) {
    val tokenRequest =
        VerifySoftwareTokenRequest {
            userCode = codeVal
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val verifyResponse =
 identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest)
        println("The status of the token is ${verifyResponse.status}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def verify_mfa(self, session, user_code):
        """
        Verify a new MFA application that is associated with a user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
 initiate
                        authentication.
        :param user_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: Status that indicates whether the MFA application is verified.
        """
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.verify_software_token(
                Session=session, UserCode=user_code
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't verify MFA. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Confirm that the user's TOTP authenticator is configured correctly by
    /// sending a code to it to check that it matches successfully.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongnitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - session: An authentication session previously returned by an
    ///     `associateSoftwareToken()` call.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator, as provided by the user.
    func verifyTOTP(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, session: String?,
 mfaCode: String?) async {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.verifySoftwareToken(
                input: VerifySoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: session,
                    userCode: mfaCode
                )
            )

            guard let tokenStatus = output.status else {
                print("*** Unable to get the token's status.")
                return
            }
            print("=====> The token's status is: \(tokenStatus)")
```

```
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch {
            print("*** Error verifying the MFA token!")
            return
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Cognito Identity Provider using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Cognito Identity Provider with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Cognito Identity Provider or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
- Automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
- Sign up a user with an Amazon Cognito user pool that requires MFA using an AWS SDK
- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication using an AWS SDK

Automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PreSignUp` trigger.
- Sign up a user with Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically confirms known users.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// AutoConfirm separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
```

```
type AutoConfirm struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewAutoConfirm constructs a new auto confirm runner.
func NewAutoConfirm(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) AutoConfirm {
 scenario := AutoConfirm{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddPreSignUpTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PreSignUp trigger.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PreSignUp trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when a user signs up, and lets your function take action
 before the main Cognito\n" +
  "sign up processing occurs.\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PreSignUp, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the PreSignUp
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)
}

// SignUpUser signs up a user from the known user table with a password you
 specify.
```

```
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignUpUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 usersTable string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("Let's sign up a user to your Cognito user pool. When the user's
 email matches an email in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, it is automatically verified and the user is
 confirmed.")

 knownUsers, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, usersTable)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 userChoice := runner.questioner.AskChoice("Which user do you want to use?\n",
 knownUsers.UserNameList())
 user := knownUsers.Users[userChoice]

 var signedUp bool
 var userConfirmed bool
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !signedUp {
  log.Printf("Signing up user '%v' with email '%v' to Cognito.\n", user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
  userConfirmed, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignUp(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
 password, user.UserEmail)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   signedUp = true
  }
 }
 log.Printf("User %v signed up, confirmed = %v.\n", user.UserName, userConfirmed)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// SignInUser signs in a user.
```

```
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string, password string) string {
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 log.Printf("Let's sign in as %v...\n", userName)
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
 (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return *authResult.AccessToken
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])

 runner.AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers, actions.PreSignUp)
 userName, password := runner.SignUpUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunction"])
 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
  runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password))
```

```
 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}
```

```
type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PreSignUp event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be confirmed and verified.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup) (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup,
 error) {
 log.Printf("Received presignup from %v for user '%v'", event.TriggerSource,
 event.UserName)
 if event.TriggerSource != "PreSignUp_SignUp" {
  // Other trigger sources, such as PreSignUp_AdminInitiateAuth, ignore the
 response from this handler.
  return event, nil
 }
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
 }
 log.Printf("Looking up email %v in table %v.\n", user.UserEmail, tableName)
 output, err := h.dynamoClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key:       user.GetKey(),
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error looking up email %v.\n", user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }
 if output.Item == nil {
  log.Printf("Email %v not found. Email verification is required.\n",
 user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }

 err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(output.Item, &user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return event, err
 }

 if user.UserName != event.UserName {
```

```
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found, but stored UserName '%v' does not match
 supplied UserName '%v'. Verification is required.\n",
   user.UserEmail, user.UserName, event.UserName)
 } else {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found with matching UserName %v. User is confirmed.
\n", user.UserEmail, user.UserName)
  event.Response.AutoConfirmUser = true
  event.Response.AutoVerifyEmail = true
 }

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)
```

```
// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this
 example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}
```

```
// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for
 this example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured
 format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users
 table...\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}
```

```
// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the
 specified Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with
 your Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
```

```
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
```

```
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}
```

```
// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
```

```
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
  }
 }
 return err
```

```
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}
```

```
// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of
 strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_
%v", i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user
 User) error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
```

```
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
```

```
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 \n" +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()
```

```
 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i],
 HandlerArn: nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure an interactive "Scenario" run. The JavaScript (v3) examples share a Scenario runner to streamline complex examples. The complete source code is on GitHub.

```
import { AutoConfirm } from "./scenario-auto-confirm.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {
  errors: [],
  users: [
    {
      UserName: "test_user_1",
      UserEmail: "test_email_1@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_2",
      UserEmail: "test_email_2@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_3",
      UserEmail: "test_email_3@example.com",
    },
  ],
};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
```

```
export const scenarios = {
  // Demonstrate automatically confirming known users in a database.
  "auto-confirm": AutoConfirm(context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseScenarioArgs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Cognito user pools and triggers",
    description:
      "Demonstrate how to use the AWS SDKs to customize Amazon Cognito
 authentication behavior.",
  });
}
```

This Scenario demonstrates auto-confirming a known user. It orchestrates the example steps.

```
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";

import {
  getStackOutputs,
  logCleanUpReminder,
  promptForStackName,
  promptForStackRegion,
  skipWhenErrors,
} from "./steps-common.js";
import { populateTable } from "./actions/dynamodb-actions.js";
import {
  addPreSignUpHandler,
  deleteUser,
  getUser,
  signIn,
```

```
  signUpUser,
} from "./actions/cognito-actions.js";
import {
  getLatestLogStreamForLambda,
  getLogEvents,
} from "./actions/cloudwatch-logs-actions.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   errors: Error[],
 *   password: string,
 *   users: { UserName: string, UserEmail: string }[],
 *   selectedUser?: string,
 *   stackName?: string,
 *   stackRegion?: string,
 *   token?: string,
 *   confirmDeleteSignedInUser?: boolean,
 *   TableName?: string,
 *   UserPoolClientId?: string,
 *   UserPoolId?: string,
 *   UserPoolArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerName?: string
 * }} State
 */

const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `This demo will populate some users into the \
database created as part of the "${state.stackName}" stack. \
Then the AutoConfirmHandler will be linked to the PreSignUp \
trigger from Cognito. Finally, you will choose a user to sign up.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsers = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsers",
  "Populating the DynamoDB table with some users.",
  { skipWhenErrors: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsersComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsersComplete",
  "Done populating users.",
```

```
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const populateUsers = new ScenarioAction(
  "populateUsers",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await populateTable({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      tableName: state.TableName,
      items: state.users,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTrigger",
  "Setting up the PreSignUp trigger for the Cognito User Pool.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const setupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioAction(
  "setupSignUpTrigger",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await addPreSignUpHandler({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      handlerArn: state.AutoConfirmHandlerArn,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
  "logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete",
  (
    /** @type {State} */ state,
  ) => `The lambda function "${state.AutoConfirmHandlerName}" \
has been configured as the PreSignUp trigger handler for the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const selectUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "selectedUser",
  "Select a user to sign up.",
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users.map((u) => u.UserName),
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
    default: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users[0].UserName,
  },
);

const checkIfUserAlreadyExists = new ScenarioAction(
  "checkIfUserAlreadyExists",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [user, err] = await getUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
    });

    if (err?.name === "UserNotFoundException") {
      // Do nothing. We're not expecting the user to exist before
      // sign up is complete.
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    if (user) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
```

```
          `The user "${state.selectedUser}" already exists in the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
        ),
      );
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const createPassword = new ScenarioInput(
  "password",
  "Enter a password that has at least eight characters, uppercase, lowercase,
 numbers and symbols.",
  { type: "password", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors, default: "Abcd1234!" },
);

const logSignUpExistingUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Signing up user "${state.selectedUser}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signUpExistingUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signUpExistingUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const signUp = (password) =>
      signUpUser({
        region: state.stackRegion,
        userPoolClientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
        username: state.selectedUser,
        email: state.users.find((u) => u.UserName === state.selectedUser)
          .UserEmail,
        password,
      });

    let [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);

    while (err?.name === "InvalidPasswordException") {
      console.warn("The password you entered was invalid.");
      await createPassword.handle(state);
      [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);
    }
```

```
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignUpExistingUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `"${state.selectedUser} was signed up successfully.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logLambdaLogs = new ScenarioAction(
  "logLambdaLogs",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    console.log(
      "Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...\n",
    );
    await wait(10);

    const [logStream, logStreamErr] = await getLatestLogStreamForLambda({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
    });
    if (logStreamErr) {
      state.errors.push(logStreamErr);
      return;
    }

    console.log(
      `Getting some recent events from log stream "${logStream.logStreamName}"`,
    );
    const [logEvents, logEventsErr] = await getLogEvents({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
      eventCount: 10,
      logStreamName: logStream.logStreamName,
    });
    if (logEventsErr) {
      state.errors.push(logEventsErr);
      return;
```

```
    }

    console.log(logEvents.map((ev) => `\t${ev.message}`).join(""));
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Let's sign in as ${state.selectedUser}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [response, err] = await signIn({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      clientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
      password: state.password,
    });

    if (err?.name === "PasswordResetRequiredException") {
      state.errors.push(new Error("Please reset your password."));
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    state.token = response?.AuthenticationResult?.AccessToken;
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with:
 ${state.token.slice(0, 11)}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
```

```
);

const confirmDeleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteSignedInUser",
  "Do you want to delete the currently signed in user?",
  { type: "confirm", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const deleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteSignedInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await deleteUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      accessToken: state.token,
    });

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      skipWhenErrors(state) || !state.confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
  },
);

const logErrors = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logErrors",
  (/** @type {State}*/ state) => {
    const errorList = state.errors
      .map((err) => ` - ${err.name}: ${err.message}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Scenario errors found:\n${errorList}`;
  },
  {
    // Don't log errors when there aren't any!
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.errors.length === 0,
  },
);

export const AutoConfirm = (context) =>
  new Scenario(
    "AutoConfirm",
    [
```

```
      promptForStackName,
      promptForStackRegion,
      getStackOutputs,
      greeting,
      logPopulatingUsers,
      populateUsers,
      logPopulatingUsersComplete,
      logSetupSignUpTrigger,
      setupSignUpTrigger,
      logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete,
      selectUser,
      checkIfUserAlreadyExists,
      createPassword,
      logSignUpExistingUser,
      signUpExistingUser,
      logSignUpExistingUserComplete,
      logLambdaLogs,
      logSignInUser,
      signInUser,
      logSignInUserComplete,
      confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
      deleteSignedInUser,
      logCleanUpReminder,
      logErrors,
    ],
    context,
  );
```

These are steps that are shared with other Scenarios.

```
import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { getCfnOutputs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/sdk/cfn-outputs.js";

export const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;

export const getStackOutputs = new ScenarioAction(
  "getStackOutputs",
  async (state) => {
```

```
    if (!state.stackName || !state.stackRegion) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          "No stack name or region provided. The stack name and \
region are required to fetch CFN outputs relevant to this example.",
        ),
      );
      return;
    }

    const outputs = await getCfnOutputs(state.stackName, state.stackRegion);
    Object.assign(state, outputs);
  },
);

export const promptForStackName = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackName",
  "Enter the name of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "PoolsAndTriggersStack" },
);

export const promptForStackRegion = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackRegion",
  "Enter the region of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "us-east-1" },
);

export const logCleanUpReminder = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logCleanUpReminder",
  "All done. Remember to run 'cdk destroy' to teardown the stack.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

A handler for the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import type { PreSignUpTriggerEvent, Handler } from "aws-lambda";
import type { UserRepository } from "./user-repository";
import { DynamoDBUserRepository } from "./user-repository";

export class PreSignUpHandler {
  private userRepository: UserRepository;
```

```
  constructor(userRepository: UserRepository) {
    this.userRepository = userRepository;
  }

  private isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): boolean {
    return event.triggerSource === "PreSignUp_SignUp";
  }

  private getEventUserEmail(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): string {
    return event.request.userAttributes.email;
  }

  async handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(
    event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent,
  ): Promise<PreSignUpTriggerEvent> {
    console.log(
      `Received presignup from ${event.triggerSource} for user
'${event.userName}'`,
    );

    if (!this.isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event)) {
      return event;
    }

    const eventEmail = this.getEventUserEmail(event);
    console.log(`Looking up email ${eventEmail}.`);
    const storedUserInfo =
      await this.userRepository.getUserInfoByEmail(eventEmail);

    if (!storedUserInfo) {
      console.log(
        `Email ${eventEmail} not found. Email verification is required.`,
      );
      return event;
    }

    if (storedUserInfo.UserName !== event.userName) {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found, but stored UserName
'${storedUserInfo.UserName}' does not match supplied UserName
'${event.userName}'. Verification is required.`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(
```

```
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found with matching UserName
 ${storedUserInfo.UserName}. User is confirmed.`,
      );
      event.response.autoConfirmUser = true;
      event.response.autoVerifyEmail = true;
    }
    return event;
  }
}

const createPreSignUpHandler = (): PreSignUpHandler => {
  const tableName = process.env.TABLE_NAME;
  if (!tableName) {
    throw new Error("TABLE_NAME environment variable is not set");
  }

  const userRepository = new DynamoDBUserRepository(tableName);
  return new PreSignUpHandler(userRepository);
};

export const handler: Handler = async (event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent) => {
  const preSignUpHandler = createPreSignUpHandler();
  return preSignUpHandler.handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(event);
};
```

Module of CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import {
  CloudWatchLogsClient,
  GetLogEventsCommand,
  OrderBy,
  paginateDescribeLogStreams,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";

/**
 * Get the latest log stream for a Lambda function.
 * @param {{ functionName: string, region: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").LogStream | null,
 unknown]>}
 */
export const getLatestLogStreamForLambda = async ({ functionName, region }) => {
```

```
  try {
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const paginator = paginateDescribeLogStreams(
      { client: cwlClient },
      {
        descending: true,
        limit: 1,
        orderBy: OrderBy.LastEventTime,
        logGroupName,
      },
    );

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      return [page.logStreams[0], null];
    }
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Get the log events for a Lambda function's log stream.
 * @param {{
 *   functionName: string,
 *   logStreamName: string,
 *   eventCount: number,
 *   region: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").OutputLogEvent[]
 | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getLogEvents = async ({
  functionName,
  logStreamName,
  eventCount,
  region,
}) => {
  try {
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const response = await cwlClient.send(
      new GetLogEventsCommand({
        logStreamName: logStreamName,
```

```
        limit: eventCount,
        logGroupName: logGroupName,
      }),
    );

    return [response.events, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import {
  AdminGetUserCommand,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
  DeleteUserCommand,
  InitiateAuthCommand,
  SignUpCommand,
  UpdateUserPoolCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";

/**
 * Connect a Lambda function to the PreSignUp trigger for a Cognito user pool
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, handlerArn: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").UpdateUserPoolCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const addPreSignUpHandler = async ({
  region,
  userPoolId,
  handlerArn,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const command = new UpdateUserPoolCommand({
      UserPoolId: userPoolId,
      LambdaConfig: {
```

```
        PreSignUp: handlerArn,
      },
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(command);
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Attempt to register a user to a user pool with a given username and password.
 * @param {{
 *   region: string,
 *   userPoolClientId: string,
 *   username: string,
 *   email: string,
 *   password: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").SignUpCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signUpUser = async ({
  region,
  userPoolClientId,
  username,
  email,
  password,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new SignUpCommand({
        ClientId: userPoolClientId,
        Username: username,
        Password: password,
        UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Sign in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password authentication
 flow.
 * @param {{ region: string, clientId: string, username: string, password:
 string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").InitiateAuthCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signIn = async ({ region, clientId, username, password }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new InitiateAuthCommand({
        AuthFlow: "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
        ClientId: clientId,
        AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Retrieve an existing user from a user pool.
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, username: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").AdminGetUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getUser = async ({ region, userPoolId, username }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new AdminGetUserCommand({
        UserPoolId: userPoolId,
        Username: username,
      }),
    );
```

```
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Delete the signed-in user. Useful for allowing a user to delete their
 * own profile.
 * @param {{ region: string, accessToken: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").DeleteUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const deleteUser = async ({ region, accessToken }) => {
  try {
    const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await client.send(
      new DeleteUserCommand({ AccessToken: accessToken }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of DynamoDB actions.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Populate a DynamoDB table with provide items.
 * @param {{ region: string, tableName: string, items: Record<string,
 unknown>[] }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb").BatchWriteCommandOutput |
 null, unknown]>}
 */
export const populateTable = async ({ region, tableName, items }) => {
```

```
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region });
    const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(ddbClient);
    const response = await docClient.send(
      new BatchWriteCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [tableName]: items.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: {
              Item: item,
            },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `MigrateUser` trigger.
- Sign in to Amazon Cognito with a username and email that is not in the user pool.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically migrates known users to the user pool.
- Perform the forgot password flow to reset the password for the migrated user.

- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// MigrateUser separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type MigrateUser struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewMigrateUser constructs a new migrate user runner.
func NewMigrateUser(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) MigrateUser {
```

```
 scenario := MigrateUser{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddMigrateUserTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 MigrateUser trigger.
func (runner *MigrateUser) AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the MigrateUser trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when an unknown user signs in, and lets your function
 take action before Cognito\n" +
  "rejects the user.\n\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.UserMigration, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the MigrateUser
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser adds a new user to the known users table and signs that user in to
 Amazon Cognito.
func (runner *MigrateUser) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, usersTable string,
 clientId string) (bool, actions.User) {
 log.Println("Let's sign in a user to your Cognito user pool. When the username
 and email matches an entry in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, the email is automatically verified and the user
 is migrated to the Cognito user pool.")

 user := actions.User{}
```

```
 user.UserName = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter a username:")
 user.UserEmail = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter an email that you own. This
 email will be used to confirm user migration\n" +
  "during this example:")

 runner.helper.AddKnownUser(ctx, usersTable, user)

 var err error
 var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 signedIn := false
 for !signedIn && resetRequired == nil {
  log.Printf("Signing in to Cognito as user '%v'. The expected result is a
 PasswordResetRequiredException.\n\n", user.UserName)
  authResult, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName, "_")
  if err != nil {
   if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
    log.Printf("\nUser '%v' is not in the Cognito user pool but was found in the
 DynamoDB known users table.\n"+
     "User migration is started and a password reset is required.",
 user.UserName)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Printf("User '%v' successfully signed in. This is unexpected and probably
 means you have not\n"+
    "cleaned up a previous run of this scenario, so the user exist in the Cognito
 user pool.\n"+
    "You can continue this example and select to clean up resources, or manually
 remove\n"+
    "the user from your user pool and try again.", user.UserName)
   runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
   signedIn = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return resetRequired != nil, user
}

// ResetPassword starts a password recovery flow.
```

```
func (runner *MigrateUser) ResetPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 user actions.User) {
 wantCode := runner.questioner.AskBool(fmt.Sprintf("In order to migrate the user
 to Cognito, you must be able to receive a confirmation\n"+
  "code by email at %v. Do you want to send a code (y/n)?", user.UserEmail), "y")
 if !wantCode {
  log.Println("To complete this example and successfully migrate a user to
 Cognito, you must enter an email\n" +
   "you own that can receive a confirmation code.")
  return
 }
 codeDelivery, err := runner.cognitoActor.ForgotPassword(ctx, clientId,
 user.UserName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nA confirmation code has been sent to %v.",
 *codeDelivery.Destination)
 code := runner.questioner.Ask("Check your email and enter it here:")

 confirmed := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !confirmed {
  log.Printf("\nConfirming password reset for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx, clientId, code,
 user.UserName, password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   confirmed = true
  }
 }
 log.Printf("User '%v' successfully confirmed and migrated.\n", user.UserName)
 log.Println("Signing in with your username and password...")
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
 password)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
 (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *MigrateUser) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]

 runner.AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.UserMigration)
 resetNeeded, user := runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"],
 stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"])
 if resetNeeded {
  runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunction"])
  runner.ResetPassword(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], user)
 }

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `MigrateUser` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the MigrateUser event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be migrated to the user pool.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser)
 (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser, error) {
```

```
log.Printf("Received migrate trigger from %v for user '%v'",
event.TriggerSource, event.UserName)
if event.TriggerSource != "UserMigration_Authentication" {
 return event, nil
}
tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
user := UserInfo{
 UserName: event.UserName,
}
log.Printf("Looking up user '%v' in table %v.\n", user.UserName, tableName)
filterEx := expression.Name("UserName").Equal(expression.Value(user.UserName))
expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filterEx).Build()
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Error building expression to query for user '%v'.\n",
user.UserName)
 return event, err
}
output, err := h.dynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
 TableName:                 aws.String(tableName),
 FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
 ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
 ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
})
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Error looking up user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
 return event, err
}
if len(output.Items) == 0 {
 log.Printf("User '%v' not found, not migrating user.\n", user.UserName)
 return event, err
}

var users []UserInfo
err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &users)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB items. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 return event, err
}

user = users[0]
log.Printf("UserName '%v' found with email %v. User is migrated and must reset
password.\n", user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.UserAttributes =
map[string]string{
```

```
  "email":          user.UserEmail,
  "email_verified": "true", // email_verified is required for the forgot password
 flow.
 }
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.FinalUserStatus =
 "RESET_REQUIRED"
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.MessageAction = "SUPPRESS"

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)
```

```
// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this
 example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}
```

```
// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for
 this example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured
 format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users
 table...\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the
 specified Lambda function and displays them.
```

```
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with
 your Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
```

```
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
```

```
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
```

```
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
```

```
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of
 strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
```

```
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_
%v", i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 } else {
```

```
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user
 User) error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}
```

```
// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 \n" +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
```

```
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i],
 HandlerArn: nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - ConfirmForgotPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - ForgotPassword
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Sign up a user with an Amazon Cognito user pool that requires MFA using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace CognitoBasics;

public class CognitoBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Cognito.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider>()
            .AddTransient<CognitoWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<CognitoBasics>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
```

```
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var cognitoWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<CognitoWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        UiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // clientId - The app client Id value that you get from the AWS CDK
script.
        var clientId = configuration["ClientId"]; // "*** REPLACE WITH CLIENT ID
VALUE FROM CDK SCRIPT";

        // poolId - The pool Id that you get from the AWS CDK script.
        var poolId = configuration["PoolId"]!; // "*** REPLACE WITH POOL ID VALUE
FROM CDK SCRIPT";
        var userName = configuration["UserName"];
        var password = configuration["Password"];
        var email = configuration["Email"];

        // If the username wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (userName is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Username: ");
                userName = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(userName));
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\nUsername: {userName}");

        // If the password wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (password is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Password: ");
                password = Console.ReadLine();
```

```
            }
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(password));
        }

        // If the email address wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (email is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Email: ");
                email = Console.ReadLine();
            } while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email));
        }

        // Now sign up the user.
        Console.WriteLine($"\nSigning up {userName} with email address:
{email}");
        await cognitoWrapper.SignUpAsync(clientId, userName, password, email);

        // Add the user to the user pool.
        Console.WriteLine($"Adding {userName} to the user pool");
        await cognitoWrapper.GetAdminUserAsync(userName, poolId);

        UiMethods.DisplayTitle("Get confirmation code");
        Console.WriteLine($"Conformation code sent to {userName}.");
        Console.Write("Would you like to send a new code? (Y/N) ");
        var answer = Console.ReadLine();

        if (answer!.ToLower() == "y")
        {
            await cognitoWrapper.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(clientId, userName);
            Console.WriteLine("Sending a new confirmation code");
        }

        Console.Write("Enter confirmation code (from Email): ");
        var code = Console.ReadLine();

        await cognitoWrapper.ConfirmSignupAsync(clientId, code, userName);

        UiMethods.DisplayTitle("Checking status");
        Console.WriteLine($"Rechecking the status of {userName} in the user
pool");
        await cognitoWrapper.GetAdminUserAsync(userName, poolId);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up authenticator for {userName} in the user
 pool");
        var setupResponse = await cognitoWrapper.InitiateAuthAsync(clientId,
 userName, password);

        var setupSession = await
 cognitoWrapper.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(setupResponse.Session);
        Console.Write("Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator:
 ");
        var setupCode = Console.ReadLine();

        var setupResult = await
 cognitoWrapper.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(setupSession, setupCode);
        Console.WriteLine($"Setup status: {setupResult}");

        Console.WriteLine($"Now logging in {userName} in the user pool");
        var authSession = await cognitoWrapper.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(clientId,
 poolId, userName, password);

        Console.Write("Enter a new 6-digit code displayed in Google
 Authenticator: ");
        var authCode = Console.ReadLine();

        var authResult = await
 cognitoWrapper.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(userName, clientId, authCode,
 authSession, poolId);
        Console.WriteLine($"Authenticated and received access token:
 {authResult.AccessToken}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Cognito scenario is complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}


using System.Net;

namespace CognitoActions;

/// <summary>
/// Methods to perform Amazon Cognito Identity Provider actions.
/// </summary>
```

```
public class CognitoWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider _cognitoService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the wrapper class containing Amazon Cognito actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cognitoService">The Amazon Cognito client object.</param>
    public CognitoWrapper(IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider cognitoService)
    {
        _cognitoService = cognitoService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the Amazon Cognito user pools for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of UserPoolDescriptionType objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserPoolDescriptionType>> ListUserPoolsAsync()
    {
        var userPools = new List<UserPoolDescriptionType>();

        var userPoolsPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUserPools(new
 ListUserPoolsRequest());

        await foreach (var response in userPoolsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            userPools.AddRange(response.UserPools);
        }

        return userPools;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of users for the Amazon Cognito user pool.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserType>> ListUsersAsync(string userPoolId)
    {
        var request = new ListUsersRequest
        {
            UserPoolId = userPoolId
        };
```

```
        var users = new List<UserType>();

        var usersPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUsers(request);
        await foreach (var response in usersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Respond to an admin authentication challenge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID.</param>
    /// <param name="mfaCode">The multi-factor authentication code.</param>
    /// <param name="session">The current application session.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>The result of the authentication response.</returns>
    public async Task<AuthenticationResultType> AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(
        string userName,
        string clientId,
        string mfaCode,
        string session,
        string userPoolId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");

        var challengeResponses = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        challengeResponses.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.Add("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        var respondToAuthChallengeRequest = new
AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
        {
            ChallengeName = ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
            ClientId = clientId,
            ChallengeResponses = challengeResponses,
            Session = session,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
        };
```

```
        var response = await
_cognitoService.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Response to Authentication
{response.AuthenticationResult.TokenType}");
        return response.AuthenticationResult;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The name of the session.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The MFA code.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the software token.</returns>
    public async Task<VerifySoftwareTokenResponseType>
VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(string session, string code)
    {
        var tokenRequest = new VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            UserCode = code,
            Session = session,
        };

        var verifyResponse = await
_cognitoService.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(tokenRequest);

        return verifyResponse.Status;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get an MFA token to authenticate the user with the authenticator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The session name.</param>
    /// <returns>The session name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(string session)
    {
        var softwareTokenRequest = new AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            Session = session,
        };
```

```
        var tokenResponse = await
 _cognitoService.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(softwareTokenRequest);
        var secretCode = tokenResponse.SecretCode;

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the following secret code to set up the
 authenticator: {secretCode}");

        return tokenResponse.Session;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate an admin auth request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID to use.</param>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The ID of the user pool.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to authenticate.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <returns>The session to use in challenge-response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AdminInitiateAuthAsync(string clientId, string
 userPoolId, string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var request = new AdminInitiateAuthRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(request);
        return response.Session;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate authorization.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user who is authenticating.</
 param>
```

```
    /// <param name="password">The password for the user who is authenticating.</
param>
    /// <returns>The response from the initiate auth request.</returns>
    public async Task<InitiateAuthResponse> InitiateAuthAsync(string clientId,
 string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var authRequest = new InitiateAuthRequest

        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.InitiateAuthAsync(authRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Result Challenge is : {response.ChallengeName}");

        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Confirm that the user has signed up.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of this application.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The confirmation code sent to the user.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmSignupAsync(string clientId, string code,
 string userName)
    {
        var signUpRequest = new ConfirmSignUpRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            ConfirmationCode = code,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmSignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"{userName} was confirmed");
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiates and confirms tracking of the device.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessToken">The user's access token.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceKey">The key of the device from Amazon Cognito.</
param>
    /// <param name="deviceName">The device name.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmDeviceAsync(string accessToken, string
 deviceKey, string deviceName)
    {
        var request = new ConfirmDeviceRequest
        {
            AccessToken = accessToken,
            DeviceKey = deviceKey,
            DeviceName = deviceName
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmDeviceAsync(request);
        return response.UserConfirmationNecessary;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Send a new confirmation code to a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of the client application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of user who will receive the code.</
param>
    /// <returns>The delivery details.</returns>
    public async Task<CodeDeliveryDetailsType> ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(string
 clientId, string userName)
    {
        var codeRequest = new ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            Username = userName,
```

```
        };

        var response = await
 _cognitoService.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(codeRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"Method of delivery is
 {response.CodeDeliveryDetails.DeliveryMedium}");

        return response.CodeDeliveryDetails;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the specified user from an Amazon Cognito user pool with
 administrator access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="poolId">The Id of the Amazon Cognito user pool.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<UserStatusType> GetAdminUserAsync(string userName, string
 poolId)
    {
        AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = new AdminGetUserRequest
        {
            Username = userName,
            UserPoolId = poolId,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminGetUserAsync(userRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"User status {response.UserStatus}");
        return response.UserStatus;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Sign up a new user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to use.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email address of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the user was confirmed.</
returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> SignUpAsync(string clientId, string userName, string
 password, string email)
    {
        var userAttrs = new AttributeType
        {
            Name = "email",
            Value = email,
        };

        var userAttrsList = new List<AttributeType>();

        userAttrsList.Add(userAttrs);

        var signUpRequest = new SignUpRequest
        {
            UserAttributes = userAttrsList,
            Username = userName,
            ClientId = clientId,
            Password = password
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.SignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode

- RespondToAuthChallenge
- SignUp
- VerifySoftwareToken

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Scenario that adds a user to an Amazon Cognito user pool.
/*!
  \sa gettingStartedWithUserPools()
  \param clientID: Client ID associated with an Amazon Cognito user pool.
  \param userPoolID: An Amazon Cognito user pool ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Cognito::gettingStartedWithUserPools(const Aws::String &clientID,
                                                  const Aws::String &userPoolID,
                                                  const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout
            << "Welcome to the Amazon Cognito example scenario."
            << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout
            << "This scenario will add a user to an Amazon Cognito user pool."
            << std::endl;
    const Aws::String userName = askQuestion("Enter a new username: ");
    const Aws::String password = askQuestion("Enter a new password: ");
```

```
   const Aws::String email = askQuestion("Enter a valid email for the user: ");

   std::cout << "Signing up " << userName << std::endl;

   Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);
   bool userExists = false;
   do {
       // 1. Add a user with a username, password, and email address.
       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpRequest request;
       request.AddUserAttributes(
               Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AttributeType().WithName(
                       "email").WithValue(email));
       request.SetUsername(userName);
       request.SetPassword(password);
       request.SetClientId(clientID);
       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpOutcome outcome =
               client.SignUp(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cout << "The signup request for " << userName << " was
successful."
                     << std::endl;
       }
       else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderErrors::USERNAME_EXISTS) {
           std::cout
                   << "The username already exists. Please enter a different
username."
                   << std::endl;
           userExists = true;
       }
       else {
           std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::SignUpRequest. "
                     << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                     << std::endl;
           return false;
       }
   } while (userExists);

   printAsterisksLine();
   std::cout << "Retrieving status of " << userName << " in the user pool."
             << std::endl;
```

```
    // 2. Confirm that the user was added to the user pool.
    if (!checkAdminUserStatus(userName, userPoolID, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    std::cout << "A confirmation code was sent to " << email << "." << std::endl;

    bool resend = askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to send a new code? (y/n) ");
    if (resend) {
        // Request a resend of the confirmation code to the email address.
(ResendConfirmationCode)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
request;
        request.SetUsername(userName);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeOutcome
outcome =
                client.ResendConfirmationCode(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode was
successful."
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    {
        // 4. Send the confirmation code that's received in the email.
(ConfirmSignUp)
        const Aws::String confirmationCode = askQuestion(
                "Enter the confirmation code that was emailed: ");
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpRequest request;
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
```

```
        request.SetConfirmationCode(confirmationCode);
        request.SetUsername(userName);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpOutcome outcome =
                client.ConfirmSignUp(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "ConfirmSignup was Successful."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::ConfirmSignUp. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Rechecking the status of " << userName << " in the user pool."
              << std::endl;
    if (!checkAdminUserStatus(userName, userPoolID, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Initiating authorization using the username and password."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::String session;
    // 5. Initiate authorization with username and password. (AdminInitiateAuth)
    if (!adminInitiateAuthorization(clientID, userPoolID,  userName, password,
 session, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout
            << "Starting setup of time-based one-time password (TOTP) multi-
factor authentication (MFA)."
            << std::endl;

    {
```

```
        // 6. Request a setup key for one-time password (TOTP)
        //    multi-factor authentication (MFA). (AssociateSoftwareToken)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
 request;
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenOutcome
 outcome =
                client.AssociateSoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "Enter this setup key into an authenticator app, for
 example Google Authenticator."
                    << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Setup key: " << outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode()
                      << std::endl;
#ifdef USING_QR
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::cout << "\nOr scan the QR code in the file '" << QR_CODE_PATH <<
 "."
                      << std::endl;

            saveQRCode(std::string("otpauth://totp/") + userName + "?secret=" +
                       outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode());
#endif // USING_QR
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::AssociateSoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
    askQuestion("Type enter to continue...", alwaysTrueTest);

    printAsterisksLine();

    {
        Aws::String userCode = askQuestion(
                "Enter the 6 digit code displayed in the authenticator app: ");
```

```
        //  7. Send the MFA code copied from an authenticator app.
(VerifySoftwareToken)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenRequest request;
        request.SetUserCode(userCode);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenOutcome outcome =
                client.VerifySoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Verification of the code was successful."
                      << std::endl;
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::VerifySoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "You have completed the MFA authentication setup." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Now, sign in." << std::endl;

    // 8. Initiate authorization again with username and password.
(AdminInitiateAuth)
    if (!adminInitiateAuthorization(clientID, userPoolID, userName, password,
session, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String accessToken;
    {
        Aws::String mfaCode = askQuestion(
                "Re-enter the 6 digit code displayed in the authenticator app:
");

        // 9. Send a new MFA code copied from an authenticator app.
(AdminRespondToAuthChallenge)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
request;
```

```
        request.AddChallengeResponses("USERNAME", userName);
        request.AddChallengeResponses("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);
        request.SetChallengeName(

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ChallengeNameType::SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeOutcome
outcome =
                client.AdminRespondToAuthChallenge(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Here is the response to the challenge.\n" <<

outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            accessToken =
outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().GetAccessToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminRespondToAuthChallenge. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "You have successfully added a user to Amazon Cognito."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    if (askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to delete the user that you just added?
(y/n) ")) {
        // 10. Delete the user that you just added. (DeleteUser)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
        request.SetAccessToken(accessToken);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteUser(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "The user " << userName << " was deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::DeleteUser. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Routine which checks the user status in an Amazon Cognito user pool.
/*!
 \sa checkAdminUserStatus()
 \param userName: A username.
 \param userPoolID: An Amazon Cognito user pool ID.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Cognito::checkAdminUserStatus(const Aws::String &userName,
                                           const Aws::String &userPoolID,
                                           const
 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient &client) {
    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserRequest request;
    request.SetUsername(userName);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminGetUser(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The status for " << userName << " is " <<

 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::UserStatusTypeMapper::GetNameForUserStatusType(
                         outcome.GetResult().GetUserStatus()) << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Enabled is " << outcome.GetResult().GetEnabled() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminGetUser. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which starts authorization of an Amazon Cognito user.
//! This routine requires administrator credentials.
/*!
 \sa adminInitiateAuthorization()
 \param clientID: Client ID of tracked device.
 \param userPoolID: An Amazon Cognito user pool ID.
 \param userName: A username.
 \param password: A password.
 \param sessionResult: String to receive a session token.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Cognito::adminInitiateAuthorization(const Aws::String &clientID,
                                                 const Aws::String &userPoolID,
                                                 const Aws::String &userName,
                                                 const Aws::String &password,
                                                 Aws::String &sessionResult,
                                                 const
 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient &client) {
    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthRequest request;
    request.SetClientId(clientID);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
    request.AddAuthParameters("USERNAME", userName);
    request.AddAuthParameters("PASSWORD", password);
    request.SetAuthFlow(

 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AuthFlowType::ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH);


    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminInitiateAuth(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Call to AdminInitiateAuth was successful." << std::endl;
        sessionResult = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminInitiateAuth. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminGetUserRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminGetUserResponse;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminInitiateAuthRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminInitiateAuthResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminRespondToAuthChalleng
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminRespondToAuthChalleng
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AssociateSoftwareTokenRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AssociateSoftwareTokenResp
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AttributeType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AuthFlowType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ChallengeNameType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExc
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ConfirmSignUpRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ResendConfirmationCodeRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ResendConfirmationCodeResp
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.SignUpRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.VerifySoftwareTokenRespons
import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * TIP: To set up the required user pool, run the AWS Cloud Development Kit (AWS
 * CDK) script provided in this GitHub repo at
 * resources/cdk/cognito_scenario_user_pool_with_mfa.
 *
 * This code example performs the following operations:
 *
 * 1. Invokes the signUp method to sign up a user.
 * 2. Invokes the adminGetUser method to get the user's confirmation status.
 * 3. Invokes the ResendConfirmationCode method if the user requested another
 * code.
 * 4. Invokes the confirmSignUp method.
 * 5. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in. This results in being prompted
 * to set up TOTP (time-based one-time password). (The response is
 * “ChallengeName”: “MFA_SETUP”).
 * 6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate a TOTP MFA private
 * key. This can be used with Google Authenticator.
 * 7. Invokes the VerifySoftwareToken method to verify the TOTP and register for
 * MFA.
 * 8. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in again. This results in being
 * prompted to submit a TOTP (Response: “ChallengeName”: “SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA”).
 * 9. Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge to get back a token.
 */

public class CognitoMVP {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws NoSuchAlgorithmException,
 InvalidKeyException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <clientId> <poolId>

                Where:
                    clientId - The app client Id value that you can get from the
 AWS CDK script.
                    poolId - The pool Id that you can get from the AWS CDK
 script.\s
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clientId = args[0];
        String poolId = args[1];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient =
CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Cognito example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Enter your user name");
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String userName = in.nextLine();

        System.out.println("*** Enter your password");
        String password = in.nextLine();

        System.out.println("*** Enter your email");
        String email = in.nextLine();

        System.out.println("1. Signing up " + userName);
        signUp(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName, password, email);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Getting " + userName + " in the user pool");
        getAdminUser(identityProviderClient, userName, poolId);

        System.out
                .println("*** Conformation code sent to " + userName + ". Would
you like to send a new code? (Yes/No)");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        String ans = in.nextLine();
```

```
        if (ans.compareTo("Yes") == 0) {
            resendConfirmationCode(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName);
            System.out.println("3. Sending a new confirmation code");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Enter confirmation code that was emailed");
        String code = in.nextLine();
        confirmSignUp(identityProviderClient, clientId, code, userName);
        System.out.println("Rechecking the status of " + userName + " in the user
pool");
        getAdminUser(identityProviderClient, userName, poolId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Invokes the initiateAuth to sign in");
        AdminInitiateAuthResponse authResponse =
initiateAuth(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName, password,
                poolId);
        String mySession = authResponse.session();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to
generate a TOTP key");
        String newSession = getSecretForAppMFA(identityProviderClient,
mySession);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google
Authenticator");
        String myCode = in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Verify the TOTP and register for MFA");
        verifyTOTP(identityProviderClient, newSession, myCode);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("8. Re-enter a 6-digit code displayed in Google
Authenticator");
        String mfaCode = in.nextLine();
        AdminInitiateAuthResponse authResponse1 =
initiateAuth(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName, password,
                poolId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9.  Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge");
        String session2 = authResponse1.session();
        adminRespondToAuthChallenge(identityProviderClient, userName, clientId,
mfaCode, session2);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("All Amazon Cognito operations were successfully
performed");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Respond to an authentication challenge.
    public static void adminRespondToAuthChallenge(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient,
            String userName, String clientId, String mfaCode, String session) {
        System.out.println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");
        Map<String, String> challengeResponses = new HashMap<>();

        challengeResponses.put("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.put("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest respondToAuthChallengeRequest =
AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest.builder()
                .challengeName(ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA)
                .clientId(clientId)
                .challengeResponses(challengeResponses)
                .session(session)
                .build();

        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeResponse respondToAuthChallengeResult =
identityProviderClient
                .adminRespondToAuthChallenge(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);

System.out.println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()"
```

```
                + respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult());
   }

   // Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
   public static void verifyTOTP(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session, String code) {
       try {
           VerifySoftwareTokenRequest tokenRequest =
VerifySoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
                   .userCode(code)
                   .session(session)
                   .build();

           VerifySoftwareTokenResponse verifyResponse =
identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest);
           System.out.println("The status of the token is " +
verifyResponse.statusAsString());

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static AdminInitiateAuthResponse
initiateAuth(CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient,
           String clientId, String userName, String password, String userPoolId)
{
       try {
           Map<String, String> authParameters = new HashMap<>();
           authParameters.put("USERNAME", userName);
           authParameters.put("PASSWORD", password);

           AdminInitiateAuthRequest authRequest =
AdminInitiateAuthRequest.builder()
                   .clientId(clientId)
                   .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                   .authParameters(authParameters)
                   .authFlow(AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH)
                   .build();

           AdminInitiateAuthResponse response =
identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("Result Challenge is : " +
response.challengeName());
            return response;

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }

    public static String getSecretForAppMFA(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session) {
        AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest softwareTokenRequest =
AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
                .session(session)
                .build();

        AssociateSoftwareTokenResponse tokenResponse = identityProviderClient
                .associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest);
        String secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode();
        System.out.println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator");
        System.out.println(secretCode);
        return tokenResponse.session();
    }

    public static void confirmSignUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId, String code,
            String userName) {
        try {
            ConfirmSignUpRequest signUpRequest = ConfirmSignUpRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .confirmationCode(code)
                    .username(userName)
                    .build();

            identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println(userName + " was confirmed");

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void resendConfirmationCode(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId,
            String userName) {
        try {
            ResendConfirmationCodeRequest codeRequest =
ResendConfirmationCodeRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .username(userName)
                    .build();

            ResendConfirmationCodeResponse response =
identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest);
            System.out.println("Method of delivery is " +
response.codeDeliveryDetails().deliveryMediumAsString());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void signUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId, String userName,
            String password, String email) {
        AttributeType userAttrs = AttributeType.builder()
                .name("email")
                .value(email)
                .build();

        List<AttributeType> userAttrsList = new ArrayList<>();
        userAttrsList.add(userAttrs);
        try {
            SignUpRequest signUpRequest = SignUpRequest.builder()
                    .userAttributes(userAttrsList)
                    .username(userName)
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .password(password)
                    .build();

            identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println("User has been signed up ");
```

```
        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getAdminUser(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 identityProviderClient, String userName,
            String poolId) {
        try {
            AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = AdminGetUserRequest.builder()
                    .username(userName)
                    .userPoolId(poolId)
                    .build();

            AdminGetUserResponse response =
 identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest);
            System.out.println("User status " + response.userStatusAsString());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp

- VerifySoftwareToken

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

For the best experience, clone the GitHub repository and run this example. The following code represents a sample of the full example application.

```
import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { signUp } from "../../../actions/sign-up.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";
import { getSecondValuesFromEntries } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-
csv.js";

const validateClient = (clientId) => {
  if (!clientId) {
    throw new Error(
      `App client id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`,
    );
  }
};

const validateUser = (username, password, email) => {
  if (!(username && password && email)) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username, password, and email must be provided as arguments to the 'sign-
up' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const signUpHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, password, email] = commands;
```

```
  try {
    validateUser(username, password, email);
    /**
     * @type {string[]}
     */
    const values = getSecondValuesFromEntries(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    const clientId = values[0];
    validateClient(clientId);
    logger.log("Signing up.");
    await signUp({ clientId, username, password, email });
    logger.log(`Signed up. A confirmation email has been sent to: ${email}.`);
    logger.log(
      `Run 'confirm-sign-up ${username} <code>' to confirm your account.`,
    );
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { signUpHandler };

const signUp = ({ clientId, username, password, email }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new SignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    Password: password,
    UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { confirmSignUp } from "../../../actions/confirm-sign-up.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";
import { getSecondValuesFromEntries } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-
csv.js";

const validateClient = (clientId) => {
  if (!clientId) {
    throw new Error(
      `App client id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`,
```

```
    );
  }
};

const validateUser = (username) => {
  if (!username) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username name is missing. It must be provided as an argument to the
 'confirm-sign-up' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const validateCode = (code) => {
  if (!code) {
    throw new Error(
      `Verification code is missing. It must be provided as an argument to the
 'confirm-sign-up' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const confirmSignUpHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, code] = commands;

  try {
    validateUser(username);
    validateCode(code);
    /**
     * @type {string[]}
     */
    const values = getSecondValuesFromEntries(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    const clientId = values[0];
    validateClient(clientId);
    logger.log("Confirming user.");
    await confirmSignUp({ clientId, username, code });
    logger.log(
      `User confirmed. Run 'admin-initiate-auth ${username} <password>' to sign
 in.`,
    );
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};
```

```
export { confirmSignUpHandler };

const confirmSignUp = ({ clientId, username, code }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ConfirmSignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    ConfirmationCode: code,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import qrcode from "qrcode-terminal";
import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { adminInitiateAuth } from "../../../actions/admin-initiate-auth.js";
import { associateSoftwareToken } from "../../../actions/associate-software-
token.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";
import { getFirstEntry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-csv.js";

const handleMfaSetup = async (session, username) => {
  const { SecretCode, Session } = await associateSoftwareToken(session);

  // Store the Session for use with 'VerifySoftwareToken'.
  process.env.SESSION = Session;

  console.log(
    "Scan this code in your preferred authenticator app, then run 'verify-
software-token' to finish the setup.",
  );
  qrcode.generate(
    `otpauth://totp/${username}?secret=${SecretCode}`,
    { small: true },
    console.log,
  );
};

const handleSoftwareTokenMfa = (session) => {
  // Store the Session for use with 'AdminRespondToAuthChallenge'.
  process.env.SESSION = session;
};
```

```
const validateClient = (id) => {
  if (!id) {
    throw new Error(
      `User pool client id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`,
    );
  }
};

const validateId = (id) => {
  if (!id) {
    throw new Error(`User pool id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`);
  }
};

const validateUser = (username, password) => {
  if (!(username && password)) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username and password must be provided as arguments to the 'admin-
initiate-auth' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const adminInitiateAuthHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, password] = commands;

  try {
    validateUser(username, password);

    const [userPoolId, clientId] = getFirstEntry(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    validateId(userPoolId);
    validateClient(clientId);

    logger.log("Signing in.");
    const { ChallengeName, Session } = await adminInitiateAuth({
      clientId,
      userPoolId,
      username,
      password,
    });

    if (ChallengeName === "MFA_SETUP") {
      logger.log("MFA setup is required.");
```

```
      return handleMfaSetup(Session, username);
    }

    if (ChallengeName === "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA") {
      handleSoftwareTokenMfa(Session);
      logger.log(`Run 'admin-respond-to-auth-challenge ${username} <totp>'`);
    }
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { adminInitiateAuthHandler };

const adminInitiateAuth = ({ clientId, userPoolId, username, password }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new AdminInitiateAuthCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    AuthFlow: AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
    AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { adminRespondToAuthChallenge } from "../../../actions/admin-respond-to-
auth-challenge.js";
import { getFirstEntry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-csv.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";

const verifyUsername = (username) => {
  if (!username) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username is missing. It must be provided as an argument to the 'admin-
respond-to-auth-challenge' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const verifyTotp = (totp) => {
  if (!totp) {
```

```
    throw new Error(
      `Time-based one-time password (TOTP) is missing. It must be provided as an
 argument to the 'admin-respond-to-auth-challenge' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const storeAccessToken = (token) => {
  process.env.AccessToken = token;
};

const adminRespondToAuthChallengeHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, totp] = commands;

  try {
    verifyUsername(username);
    verifyTotp(totp);

    const [userPoolId, clientId] = getFirstEntry(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    const session = process.env.SESSION;

    const { AuthenticationResult } = await adminRespondToAuthChallenge({
      clientId,
      userPoolId,
      username,
      totp,
      session,
    });

    storeAccessToken(AuthenticationResult.AccessToken);

    logger.log("Successfully authenticated.");
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { adminRespondToAuthChallengeHandler };

const respondToAuthChallenge = ({
  clientId,
  username,
  session,
  userPoolId,
```

```
  code,
}) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new RespondToAuthChallengeCommand({
    ChallengeName: ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
    ChallengeResponses: {
      SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE: code,
      USERNAME: username,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { verifySoftwareToken } from "../../../actions/verify-software-token.js";

const validateTotp = (totp) => {
  if (!totp) {
    throw new Error(
      `Time-based one-time password (TOTP) must be provided to the 'validate-
software-token' command.`,
    );
  }
};
const verifySoftwareTokenHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, totp] = commands;

  try {
    validateTotp(totp);

    logger.log("Verifying TOTP.");
    await verifySoftwareToken(totp);
    logger.log("TOTP Verified. Run 'admin-initiate-auth' again to sign-in.");
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { verifySoftwareTokenHandler };
```

```
const verifySoftwareToken = (totp) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  // The 'Session' is provided in the response to 'AssociateSoftwareToken'.
  const session = process.env.SESSION;

  if (!session) {
    throw new Error(
      "Missing a valid Session. Did you run 'admin-initiate-auth'?",
    );
  }

  const command = new VerifySoftwareTokenCommand({
    Session: session,
    UserCode: totp,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 TIP: To set up the required user pool, run the AWS Cloud Development
 Kit (AWS CDK) script provided in this GitHub repo at resources/cdk/
cognito_scenario_user_pool_with_mfa.

 This code example performs the following operations:

 1. Invokes the signUp method to sign up a user.
 2. Invokes the adminGetUser method to get the user's confirmation status.
 3. Invokes the ResendConfirmationCode method if the user requested another code.
 4. Invokes the confirmSignUp method.
 5. Invokes the initiateAuth to sign in. This results in being prompted to
 set up TOTP (time-based one-time password). (The response is “ChallengeName”:
 “MFA_SETUP”).
 6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate a TOTP MFA private key.
 This can be used with Google Authenticator.
 7. Invokes the VerifySoftwareToken method to verify the TOTP and register for
 MFA.
 8. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in again. This results in being
 prompted to submit a TOTP (Response: “ChallengeName”: “SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA”).
 9. Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge to get back a token.
 */

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
```

```
        Usage:
            <clientId> <poolId>
        Where:
            clientId - The app client Id value that you can get from the AWS CDK
script.
            poolId - The pool Id that you can get from the AWS CDK script.
    """

    if (args.size != 2) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val clientId = args[0]
    val poolId = args[1]

    // Use the console to get data from the user.
    println("*** Enter your use name")
    val inOb = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val userName = inOb.nextLine()
    println(userName)

    println("*** Enter your password")
    val password: String = inOb.nextLine()

    println("*** Enter your email")
    val email = inOb.nextLine()

    println("*** Signing up $userName")
    signUp(clientId, userName, password, email)

    println("*** Getting $userName in the user pool")
    getAdminUser(userName, poolId)

    println("*** Conformation code sent to $userName. Would you like to send a
new code? (Yes/No)")
    val ans = inOb.nextLine()

    if (ans.compareTo("Yes") == 0) {
        println("*** Sending a new confirmation code")
        resendConfirmationCode(clientId, userName)
    }
    println("*** Enter the confirmation code that was emailed")
    val code = inOb.nextLine()
```

```
    confirmSignUp(clientId, code, userName)

    println("*** Rechecking the status of $userName in the user pool")
    getAdminUser(userName, poolId)

    val authResponse = checkAuthMethod(clientId, userName, password, poolId)
    val mySession = authResponse.session
    val newSession = getSecretForAppMFA(mySession)
    println("*** Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator")
    val myCode = inOb.nextLine()

    // Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    verifyTOTP(newSession, myCode)
    println("*** Re-enter a 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator")
    val mfaCode: String = inOb.nextLine()
    val authResponse1 = checkAuthMethod(clientId, userName, password, poolId)
    val session2 = authResponse1.session
    adminRespondToAuthChallenge(userName, clientId, mfaCode, session2)
}

suspend fun checkAuthMethod(
    clientIdVal: String,
    userNameVal: String,
    passwordVal: String,
    userPoolIdVal: String,
): AdminInitiateAuthResponse {
    val authParas = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    authParas["USERNAME"] = userNameVal
    authParas["PASSWORD"] = passwordVal

    val authRequest =
        AdminInitiateAuthRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            userPoolId = userPoolIdVal
            authParameters = authParas
            authFlow = AuthFlowType.AdminUserPasswordAuth
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest)
        println("Result Challenge is ${response.challengeName}")
        return response
    }
```

```
}

suspend fun resendConfirmationCode(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val codeRequest =
        ResendConfirmationCodeRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest)
        println("Method of delivery is " +
 (response.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium))
    }
}

// Respond to an authentication challenge.
suspend fun adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
    userName: String,
    clientIdVal: String?,
    mfaCode: String,
    sessionVal: String?,
) {
    println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated")
    val challengeResponsesOb = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
    challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

    val adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest =
        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest {
            challengeName = ChallengeNameType.SoftwareTokenMfa
            clientId = clientIdVal
            challengeResponses = challengeResponsesOb
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val respondToAuthChallengeResult =
 identityProviderClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest)
```

```
        println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()
 ${respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult}")
    }
}

// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
suspend fun verifyTOTP(
    sessionVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
) {
    val tokenRequest =
        VerifySoftwareTokenRequest {
            userCode = codeVal
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val verifyResponse =
 identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest)
        println("The status of the token is ${verifyResponse.status}")
    }
}

suspend fun getSecretForAppMFA(sessionVal: String?): String? {
    val softwareTokenRequest =
        AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest {
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val tokenResponse =
 identityProviderClient.associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest)
        val secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode
        println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator")
        println(secretCode)
        return tokenResponse.session
    }
}

suspend fun confirmSignUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
```

```
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val signUpRequest =
        ConfirmSignUpRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            confirmationCode = codeVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest)
        println("$userNameVal  was confirmed")
    }
}

suspend fun getAdminUser(
    userNameVal: String?,
    poolIdVal: String?,
) {
    val userRequest =
        AdminGetUserRequest {
            username = userNameVal
            userPoolId = poolIdVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest)
        println("User status ${response.userStatus}")
    }
}

suspend fun signUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
    passwordVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
) {
    val userAttrs =
        AttributeType {
            name = "email"
            value = emailVal
        }
```

```
    val userAttrsList = mutableListOf<AttributeType>()
    userAttrsList.add(userAttrs)
    val signUpRequest =
        SignUpRequest {
            userAttributes = userAttrsList
            username = userNameVal
            clientId = clientIdVal
            password = passwordVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest)
        println("User has been signed up")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps Amazon Cognito functions used in the scenario.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider
 client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def _secret_hash(self, user_name):
        """
        Calculates a secret hash from a user name and a client secret.

        :param user_name: The user name to use when calculating the hash.
        :return: The secret hash.
        """
        key = self.client_secret.encode()
        msg = bytes(user_name + self.client_id, "utf-8")
        secret_hash = base64.b64encode(
            hmac.new(key, msg, digestmod=hashlib.sha256).digest()
        ).decode()
```

```
        logger.info("Made secret hash for %s: %s.", user_name, secret_hash)
        return secret_hash

    def sign_up_user(self, user_name, password, user_email):
        """
        Signs up a new user with Amazon Cognito. This action prompts Amazon
Cognito
        to send an email to the specified email address. The email contains a
code that
        can be used to confirm the user.

        When the user already exists, the user status is checked to determine
whether
        the user has been confirmed.

        :param user_name: The user name that identifies the new user.
        :param password: The password for the new user.
        :param user_email: The email address for the new user.
        :return: True when the user is already confirmed with Amazon Cognito.
                 Otherwise, false.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "Password": password,
                "UserAttributes": [{"Name": "email", "Value": user_email}],
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.sign_up(**kwargs)
            confirmed = response["UserConfirmed"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "UsernameExistsException":
                response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_get_user(
                    UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id, Username=user_name
                )
                logger.warning(
                    "User %s exists and is %s.", user_name,
response["UserStatus"]
                )
                confirmed = response["UserStatus"] == "CONFIRMED"
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't sign up %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return confirmed


    def resend_confirmation(self, user_name):
        """
        Prompts Amazon Cognito to resend an email with a new confirmation code.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who will receive the email.
        :return: Delivery information about where the email is sent.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"ClientId": self.client_id, "Username": user_name}
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.resend_confirmation_code(**kwargs)
            delivery = response["CodeDeliveryDetails"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't resend confirmation to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return delivery


    def confirm_user_sign_up(self, user_name, confirmation_code):
        """
        Confirms a previously created user. A user must be confirmed before they
        can sign in to Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to confirm.
        :param confirmation_code: The confirmation code sent to the user's
registered
                                  email address.
        :return: True when the confirmation succeeds.
```

```
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "ConfirmationCode": confirmation_code,
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_sign_up(**kwargs)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm sign up for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return True


    def list_users(self):
        """
        Returns a list of the users in the current user pool.

        :return: The list of users.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.list_users(UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id)
            users = response["Users"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list users for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.user_pool_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return users
```

```
    def start_sign_in(self, user_name, password):
        """
        Starts the sign-in process for a user by using administrator credentials.
        This method of signing in is appropriate for code running on a secure
 server.

        If the user pool is configured to require MFA and this is the first sign-
in
        for the user, Amazon Cognito returns a challenge response to set up an
        MFA application. When this occurs, this function gets an MFA secret from
        Amazon Cognito and returns it to the caller.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to sign in.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :return: The result of the sign-in attempt. When sign-in is successful,
 this
                 returns an access token that can be used to get AWS credentials.
 Otherwise,
                 Amazon Cognito returns a challenge to set up an MFA application,
                 or a challenge to enter an MFA code from a registered MFA
 application.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "AuthFlow": "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                "AuthParameters": {"USERNAME": user_name, "PASSWORD": password},
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["AuthParameters"]["SECRET_HASH"] =
 self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_initiate_auth(**kwargs)
            challenge_name = response.get("ChallengeName", None)
            if challenge_name == "MFA_SETUP":
                if (
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA"
                    in response["ChallengeParameters"]["MFAS_CAN_SETUP"]
                ):
                    response.update(self.get_mfa_secret(response["Session"]))
                else:
                    raise RuntimeError(
                        "The user pool requires MFA setup, but the user pool is
 not "
```

```
                        "configured for TOTP MFA. This example requires TOTP
MFA."
                    )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response


    def get_mfa_secret(self, session):
        """
        Gets a token that can be used to associate an MFA application with the
user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :return: An MFA token that can be used to set up an MFA application.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.associate_software_token(Session=session)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get MFA secret. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response


    def verify_mfa(self, session, user_code):
        """
        Verify a new MFA application that is associated with a user.
```

```
        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :param user_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: Status that indicates whether the MFA application is verified.
        """
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.verify_software_token(
                Session=session, UserCode=user_code
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't verify MFA. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response


    def respond_to_mfa_challenge(self, user_name, session, mfa_code):
        """
        Responds to a challenge for an MFA code. This completes the second step
of
        a two-factor sign-in. When sign-in is successful, it returns an access
token
        that can be used to get AWS credentials from Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who is signing in.
        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :param mfa_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains
an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
```

```
                "ChallengeName": "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA",
                "Session": session,
                "ChallengeResponses": {
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE": mfa_code,
                },
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["ChallengeResponses"]["SECRET_HASH"] = self._secret_hash(
                    user_name
                )
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.admin_respond_to_auth_challenge(**kwargs)
            auth_result = response["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ExpiredCodeException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Your MFA code has expired or has been used already. You
might have "
                    "to wait a few seconds until your app shows you a new code."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't respond to mfa challenge for %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return auth_result


    def confirm_mfa_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        access_token,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
```

```
        Confirms an MFA device to be tracked by Amazon Cognito. When a device is
        tracked, its key and password can be used to sign in without requiring a
new
        MFA code from the MFA application.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param device_key: The key of the device, returned by Amazon Cognito.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of the device, returned by Amazon
Cognito.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param access_token: The user's access token.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with Secure Remote Password (SRP)
                        calculations. The scenario associated with this example
uses
                        the warrant package.
        :return: True when the user must confirm the device. Otherwise, False.
When
                 False, the device is automatically confirmed and tracked.
        """
        srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
            username=user_name,
            password=device_password,
            pool_id="_",
            client_id=self.client_id,
            client_secret=None,
            client=self.cognito_idp_client,
        )
        device_and_pw = f"{device_group_key}{device_key}:{device_password}"
        device_and_pw_hash = aws_srp.hash_sha256(device_and_pw.encode("utf-8"))
        salt = aws_srp.pad_hex(aws_srp.get_random(16))
        x_value = aws_srp.hex_to_long(aws_srp.hex_hash(salt +
device_and_pw_hash))
        verifier = aws_srp.pad_hex(pow(srp_helper.val_g, x_value,
srp_helper.big_n))
        device_secret_verifier_config = {
            "PasswordVerifier": base64.standard_b64encode(
                bytearray.fromhex(verifier)
            ).decode("utf-8"),
            "Salt":
base64.standard_b64encode(bytearray.fromhex(salt)).decode("utf-8"),
        }
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_device(
                AccessToken=access_token,
```

```
                DeviceKey=device_key,
                DeviceSecretVerifierConfig=device_secret_verifier_config,
            )
            user_confirm = response["UserConfirmationNecessary"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm mfa device %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                device_key,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return user_confirm


    def sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        password,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Signs in to Amazon Cognito as a user who has a tracked device. Signing in
        with a tracked device lets a user sign in without entering a new MFA
 code.

        Signing in with a tracked device requires that the client respond to the
 SRP
        protocol. The scenario associated with this example uses the warrant
 package
        to help with SRP calculations.

        For more information on SRP, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Secure_Remote_Password_protocol.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :param device_key: The key of a tracked device.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of a tracked device.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
```

```
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with SRP calculations. The scenario
                        associated with this example uses the warrant package.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains
an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
                username=user_name,
                password=device_password,
                pool_id="_",
                client_id=self.client_id,
                client_secret=None,
                client=self.cognito_idp_client,
            )

            response_init = self.cognito_idp_client.initiate_auth(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                AuthFlow="USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                AuthParameters={
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "PASSWORD": password,
                    "DEVICE_KEY": device_key,
                },
            )
            if response_init["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_SRP_AUTH":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_SRP_AUTH challenge but got
{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            auth_params = srp_helper.get_auth_params()
            auth_params["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_auth = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_SRP_AUTH",
                ChallengeResponses=auth_params,
            )
            if response_auth["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER challenge but got "
                    f"{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )
```

```
            challenge_params = response_auth["ChallengeParameters"]
            challenge_params["USER_ID_FOR_SRP"] = device_group_key + device_key
            cr = srp_helper.process_challenge(challenge_params, {"USERNAME":
 user_name})
            cr["USERNAME"] = user_name
            cr["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_verifier =
 self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER",
                ChallengeResponses=cr,
            )
            auth_tokens = response_verifier["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start client sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return auth_tokens
```

Create a class that runs the scenario. This example also registers an MFA device to be tracked by Amazon Cognito and shows you how to sign in by using a password and information from the tracked device. This avoids the need to enter a new MFA code.

```
def run_scenario(cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Cognito user signup with MFA demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    cog_wrapper = CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper(
        cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id
    )
```

```
    user_name = q.ask("Let's sign up a new user. Enter a user name: ",
q.non_empty)
    password = q.ask("Enter a password for the user: ", q.non_empty)
    email = q.ask("Enter a valid email address that you own: ", q.non_empty)
    confirmed = cog_wrapper.sign_up_user(user_name, password, email)
    while not confirmed:
        print(
            f"User {user_name} requires confirmation. Check {email} for "
            f"a verification code."
        )
        confirmation_code = q.ask("Enter the confirmation code from the email: ")
        if not confirmation_code:
            if q.ask("Do you need another confirmation code (y/n)? ",
q.is_yesno):
                delivery = cog_wrapper.resend_confirmation(user_name)
                print(
                    f"Confirmation code sent by {delivery['DeliveryMedium']} "
                    f"to {delivery['Destination']}."
                )
        else:
            confirmed = cog_wrapper.confirm_user_sign_up(user_name,
confirmation_code)
    print(f"User {user_name} is confirmed and ready to use.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Let's get a list of users in the user pool.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    users = cog_wrapper.list_users()
    if users:
        print(f"Found {len(users)} users:")
        pp(users)
    else:
        print("No users found.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Let's sign in and get an access token.")
    auth_tokens = None
    challenge = "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH"
    response = {}
    while challenge is not None:
        if challenge == "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH":
            response = cog_wrapper.start_sign_in(user_name, password)
            challenge = response["ChallengeName"]
        elif response["ChallengeName"] == "MFA_SETUP":
```

```
            print("First, we need to set up an MFA application.")
            qr_img = qrcode.make(
                f"otpauth://totp/{user_name}?secret={response['SecretCode']}"
            )
            qr_img.save("qr.png")
            q.ask(
                "Press Enter to see a QR code on your screen. Scan it into an MFA
"
                "application, such as Google Authenticator."
            )
            webbrowser.open("qr.png")
            mfa_code = q.ask(
                "Enter the verification code from your MFA application: ",
q.non_empty
            )
            response = cog_wrapper.verify_mfa(response["Session"], mfa_code)
            print(f"MFA device setup {response['Status']}")
            print("Now that an MFA application is set up, let's sign in again.")
            print(
                "You might have to wait a few seconds for a new MFA code to
appear in "
                "your MFA application."
            )
            challenge = "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH"
        elif response["ChallengeName"] == "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA":
            auth_tokens = None
            while auth_tokens is None:
                mfa_code = q.ask(
                    "Enter a verification code from your MFA application: ",
q.non_empty
                )
                auth_tokens = cog_wrapper.respond_to_mfa_challenge(
                    user_name, response["Session"], mfa_code
                )
            print(f"You're signed in as {user_name}.")
            print("Here's your access token:")
            pp(auth_tokens["AccessToken"])
            print("And your device information:")
            pp(auth_tokens["NewDeviceMetadata"])
            challenge = None
        else:
            raise Exception(f"Got unexpected challenge
{response['ChallengeName']}")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    device_group_key = auth_tokens["NewDeviceMetadata"]["DeviceGroupKey"]
    device_key = auth_tokens["NewDeviceMetadata"]["DeviceKey"]
    device_password = base64.standard_b64encode(os.urandom(40)).decode("utf-8")

    print("Let's confirm your MFA device so you don't have re-enter MFA tokens
 for it.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    cog_wrapper.confirm_mfa_device(
        user_name,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        auth_tokens["AccessToken"],
        aws_srp,
    )
    print(f"Your device {device_key} is confirmed.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(
        f"Now let's sign in as {user_name} from your confirmed device
 {device_key}.\n"
        f"Because this device is tracked by Amazon Cognito, you won't have to re-
enter an MFA code."
    )
    q.ask("Press Enter when ready.")
    auth_tokens = cog_wrapper.sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        user_name, password, device_key, device_group_key, device_password,
 aws_srp
    )
    print("You're signed in. Your access token is:")
    pp(auth_tokens["AccessToken"])
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Don't forget to delete your user pool when you're done with this
 example.")
    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


def main():
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Shows how to sign up a new user with Amazon Cognito and
 associate "
```

```
        "the user with an MFA application for multi-factor authentication."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "user_pool_id", help="The ID of the user pool to use for the example."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "client_id", help="The ID of the client application to use for the
 example."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    try:
        run_scenario(boto3.client("cognito-idp"), args.user_pool_id,
 args.client_id)
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "cognito-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "cognito-scenario",
```

```
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSCognitoIdentityProvider", package: "aws-sdk-
swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift code file.

```
// An example demonstrating various features of Amazon Cognito. Before running
// this Swift code example, set up your development environment, including
// your credentials.
//
// For more information, see the following documentation:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
//
// TIP: To set up the required user pool, run the AWS Cloud Development Kit
// (AWS CDK) script provided in this GitHub repo at
// resources/cdk/cognito_scenario_user_pool_with_mfa.
//
// This example performs the following functions:
//
// 1. Invokes the signUp method to sign up a user.
// 2. Invokes the adminGetUser method to get the user's confirmation status.
// 3. Invokes the ResendConfirmationCode method if the user requested another
//    code.
// 4. Invokes the confirmSignUp method.
// 5. Invokes the initiateAuth to sign in. This results in being prompted to
//    set up TOTP (time-based one-time password). (The response is
//    “ChallengeName”: “MFA_SETUP”).
// 6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate a TOTP MFA private
//    key. This can be used with Google Authenticator.
// 7. Invokes the VerifySoftwareToken method to verify the TOTP and register
//    for MFA.
// 8. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in again. This results in being
//    prompted to submit a TOTP (Response: “ChallengeName”:
//    “SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA”).
// 9. Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge to get back a token.
```

```
import ArgumentParser
import Foundation

import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Argument(help: "The application clientId.")
    var clientId: String
    @Argument(help: "The user pool ID to use.")
    var poolId: String
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "cognito-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Demonstrates various features of Amazon Cognito.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Prompt for an input string of at least a minimum length.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: The prompt string to display.
    ///   - minLength: The minimum number of characters to allow in the
    ///     response. Default value is 0.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The entered string.
    func stringRequest(_ prompt: String, minLength: Int = 1) -> String {
        while true {
            print(prompt, terminator: "")
            let str = readLine()

            guard let str else {
                continue
            }
            if str.count >= minLength {
                return str
            } else {
```

```
                print("*** Response must be at least \(minLength) character(s)
long.")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Ask a yes/no question.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: A prompt string to print.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user answered "Y", otherwise `false`.
    func yesNoRequest(_ prompt: String) -> Bool {
        while true {
            let answer = stringRequest(prompt).lowercased()
            if answer == "y" || answer == "n" {
                return answer == "y"
            }
        }
    }

    /// Get information about a specific user in a user pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client to use.
    ///   - userName: The user to retrieve information about.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to search for the specified user.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user's information was successfully
    ///   retrieved. Otherwise returns `false`.
    func adminGetUser(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, userName: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminGetUser(
                input: AdminGetUserInput(
                    userPoolId: userPoolId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let userStatus = output.userStatus else {
                print("*** Unable to get the user's status.")
                return false
            }
```

```
            print("User status: \(userStatus)")
            return true
        } catch {
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Create a new user in a user pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The ID of the app client to create a user for.
    ///   - userName: The username for the new user.
    ///   - password: The new user's password.
    ///   - email: The new user's email address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful; otherwise `false`.
    func signUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
userName: String, password: String, email: String) async -> Bool {
        let emailAttr = CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AttributeType(
            name: "email",
            value: email
        )

        let userAttrsList = [emailAttr]

        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.signUp(
                input: SignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    password: password,
                    userAttributes: userAttrsList,
                    username: userName
                )

            )

            print("=====> User \(userName) signed up.")
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.UsernameExistsException {
            print("*** The username \(userName) already exists. Please use a
different one.")
            return false
        } catch let error as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.InvalidPasswordException
{
```

```
            print("*** Error: The specified password is invalid. Reason:
\(error.properties.message ?? "<none available>").")
            return false
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.ResourceNotFoundException {
            print("*** Error: The specified client ID (\(clientId)) doesn't
exist.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error: \(error)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Requests a new confirmation code be sent to the given user's contact
    /// method.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The application client ID.
    ///   - userName: The user to resend a code for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if a new code was sent successfully, otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func resendConfirmationCode(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
clientId: String,
                                userName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.resendConfirmationCode(
                input: ResendConfirmationCodeInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let deliveryMedium = output.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium
else {
                print("*** Unable to get the delivery method for the resent
code.")
                return false
            }

            print("=====> A new code has been sent by \(deliveryMedium)")
```

```
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to resend the confirmation code to user
\(userName).")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Submit a confirmation code for the specified user. This is the code as
    /// entered by the user after they've received it by email or text
    /// message.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID the user is signing up for.
    ///   - userName: The username of the user whose code is being sent.
    ///   - code: The user's confirmation code.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the code was successfully confirmed; otherwise
`false`.
    func confirmSignUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId:
String,
                       userName: String, code: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.confirmSignUp(
                input: ConfirmSignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    confirmationCode: code,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            print("=====> \(userName) has been confirmed.")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("=====> \(userName)'s code was entered incorrectly.")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Begin an authentication session.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
```

```
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID to use.
    ///   - userName: The username to check.
    ///   - password: The user's password.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to use.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The session token associated with this authentication
    ///   session.
    func initiateAuth(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
                      userName: String, password: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> String? {
        var authParams: [String: String] = [:]

        authParams["USERNAME"] = userName
        authParams["PASSWORD"] = password

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminInitiateAuth(
                input: AdminInitiateAuthInput(
                    authFlow:
CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AuthFlowType.adminUserPasswordAuth,
                    authParameters: authParams,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
            )

            guard let challengeName = output.challengeName else {
                print("*** Invalid response from the auth service.")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Response challenge is \(challengeName)")

            return output.session
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return nil
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred.")
            return nil
        }
```

```
    }

    /// Request and display an MFA secret token that the user should enter
    /// into their authenticator to set it up for the user account.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - authSession: The authentication session to request an MFA secret
    ///     for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the MFA secret token that should be
    ///   entered into the authenticator software.
    func getSecretForAppMFA(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
authSession: String?) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.associateSoftwareToken(
                input: AssociateSoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: authSession
                )
            )

            guard let secretCode = output.secretCode else {
                print("*** Unable to get the secret code")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Enter this token into Google Authenticator:
\(secretCode)")
            return output.session
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred getting the secret for the
app's MFA.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Confirm that the user's TOTP authenticator is configured correctly by
    /// sending a code to it to check that it matches successfully.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongnitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
```

```
    ///   - session: An authentication session previously returned by an
    ///     `associateSoftwareToken()` call.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator, as provided by the user.
    func verifyTOTP(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, session: String?,
mfaCode: String?) async {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.verifySoftwareToken(
                input: VerifySoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: session,
                    userCode: mfaCode
                )
            )

            guard let tokenStatus = output.status else {
                print("*** Unable to get the token's status.")
                return
            }
            print("=====> The token's status is: \(tokenStatus)")
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch {
            print("*** Error verifying the MFA token!")
            return
        }
    }

    /// Respond to the authentication challenge received from Cognito after
    /// initiating an authentication session. This involves sending a current
    /// MFA code to the service.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - userName: The user's username.
```

```
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to sign into.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit MFA code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator.
    ///   - session: The authentication session to continue processing.
    func adminRespondToAuthChallenge(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
userName: String,
                                     clientId: String, userPoolId: String,
mfaCode: String,
                                     session: String) async {
        print("=====> SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated...")

        var challengeResponsesOb: [String: String] = [:]
        challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
        challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
                input: AdminRespondToAuthChallengeInput(
                    challengeName:
CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.ChallengeNameType.softwareTokenMfa,
                    challengeResponses: challengeResponsesOb,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    session: session,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
            )

            guard let authenticationResult = output.authenticationResult else {
                print("*** Unable to get authentication result.")
                return
            }

            print("=====> Authentication result (JWTs are redacted):")
            print(authenticationResult)
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return
```

```
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch let error as NotAuthorizedException {
            print("*** Unauthorized access. Reason: \(error.properties.message ??
"<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error responding to the MFA challenge.")
            return
        }
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await
CognitoIdentityProviderClient.CognitoIdentityProviderClientConfiguration(region:
region)
        let cipClient = CognitoIdentityProviderClient(config: config)

        print("""
              This example collects information about a user, then creates that
user in the
              specified user pool. Then, it enables Multi-Factor Authentication
(MFA) for that
              user by associating an authenticator application (such as Google
Authenticator
              or a password manager that supports TOTP). Then, the user uses a
code from their
              authenticator application to sign in.

              """)

        let userName = stringRequest("Please enter a new username: ")
        let password = stringRequest("Enter a password: ")
        let email = stringRequest("Enter your email address: ", minLength: 5)

        // Submit the sign-up request to AWS.

        print("==> Signing up user \(userName)...")
        if await signUp(cipClient: cipClient, clientId: clientId,
                        userName: userName, password: password,
                        email: email) == false {
            return
        }
```

```
        // Check the user's status. This time, it should come back "unconfirmed".

        print("==> Getting the status of user \(userName) from the user pool
(should be 'unconfirmed')...")
        if await adminGetUser(cipClient: cipClient, userName: userName,
userPoolId: poolId) == false {
            return
        }

        // Ask the user if they want a replacement code sent, such as if the
        // code hasn't arrived yet. If the user responds with a "yes," send a
        // new code.

        if yesNoRequest("==> A confirmation code was sent to \(userName). Would
you like to send a new code (Y/N)? ") {
            print("==> Sending a new confirmation code...")
            if await resendConfirmationCode(cipClient: cipClient, clientId:
clientId, userName: userName) == false {
                return
            }
        }

        // Ask the user to enter the confirmation code, then send it to Amazon
        // Cognito to verify it.

        let code = stringRequest("==> Enter the confirmation code sent to
\(userName): ")
        if await confirmSignUp(cipClient: cipClient, clientId: clientId,
userName: userName, code: code) == false {
            // The code didn't match. Your application may wish to offer to
            // re-send the confirmation code here and try again.
            return
        }

        // Check the user's status again. This time it should come back
        // "confirmed".

        print("==> Rechecking status of user \(userName) in the user pool (should
be 'confirmed')...")
        if await adminGetUser(cipClient: cipClient, userName: userName,
userPoolId: poolId) == false {
            return
        }
```

```
        // Check the challenge mode. Here, it should be "mfaSetup", indicating
        // that the user needs to add MFA before using it. This returns a
        // session that can be used to register MFA, or nil if an error occurs.

        let authSession = await initiateAuth(cipClient: cipClient, clientId:
clientId,
                                             userName: userName, password:
password,
                                             userPoolId: poolId)
        if authSession == nil {
            return
        }

        // Ask Cognito for an MFA secret token that the user should enter into
        // their authenticator software (such as Google Authenticator) or
        // password manager to configure it for this user account. This
        // returns a new session that should be used for the new stage of the
        // authentication process.

        let newSession = await getSecretForAppMFA(cipClient: cipClient,
authSession: authSession)
        if newSession == nil {
            return
        }

        // Ask the user to enter the current 6-digit code displayed by their
        // authenticator. Then verify that it matches the value expected for
        // the session.

        let mfaCode1 = stringRequest("==> Enter the 6-digit code displayed in
your authenticator: ",
                                     minLength: 6)
        await verifyTOTP(cipClient: cipClient, session: newSession, mfaCode:
mfaCode1)

        // Ask the user to authenticate now that the authenticator has been
        // configured. This creates a new session using the user's username
        // and password as already entered.

        print("\nNow starting the sign-in process for user \(userName)...\n")

        let session2 = await initiateAuth(cipClient: cipClient, clientId:
clientId,
```

```
                                    userName: userName, password: password,
 userPoolId: poolId)
        guard let session2 else {
            return
        }

        // Now that we have a new auth session, `session2`, ask the user for a
        // new 6-digit code from their authenticator, and send it to the auth
        // session.

        let mfaCode2 = stringRequest("==> Wait for your authenticator to show a
 new 6-digit code, then enter it: ",
                                    minLength: 6)
        await adminRespondToAuthChallenge(cipClient: cipClient, userName:
 userName,
                                          clientId: clientId, userPoolId: poolId,
                                          mfaCode: mfaCode2, session: session2)
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken

- ConfirmDevice
- ConfirmSignUp
- InitiateAuth
- ListUsers
- ResendConfirmationCode
- RespondToAuthChallenge
- SignUp
- VerifySoftwareToken

Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication.

- Use administrator functions to add a user to a user pool.
- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PostAuthentication` trigger.
- Sign the new user in to Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function writes custom information to CloudWatch Logs and to an DynamoDB table.
- Get and display custom data from the DynamoDB table, then clean up resources.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// ActivityLog separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ActivityLog struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewActivityLog constructs a new activity log runner.
func NewActivityLog(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) ActivityLog {
 scenario := ActivityLog{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddUserToPool selects a user from the known users table and uses administrator
 credentials to add the user to the user pool.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddUserToPool(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 tableName string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("To facilitate this example, let's add a user to the user pool using
 administrator privileges.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 user := users.Users[0]
 log.Printf("Adding known user %v to the user pool.\n", user.UserName)
 err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminCreateUser(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 pwSet := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !pwSet {
  log.Printf("\nSetting password for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   pwSet = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// AddActivityLogTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PostAuthentication trigger.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, activityLogArn string) {
 log.Println("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PostAuthentication
 trigger from Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens after a user is authenticated, and lets your function
 take action, such as logging\n" +
  "the outcome.")
```

```
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PostAuthentication, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(activityLogArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.PostAuthentication)
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle
 PostAuthentication Cognito trigger.\n",
  activityLogArn, userPoolId)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser signs in as the specified user.
func (runner *ActivityLog) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string, password string) {
 log.Printf("Now we'll sign in user %v and check the results in the logs and the
 DynamoDB table.", userName)
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Sign in successful.",
  "The PostAuthentication Lambda handler writes custom information to CloudWatch
 Logs.")

 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
}

// GetKnownUserLastLogin gets the login info for a user from the Amazon DynamoDB
 table and displays it.
func (runner *ActivityLog) GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string, userName string) {
 log.Println("The PostAuthentication handler also writes login data to the
 DynamoDB table.")
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
 }
 for _, user := range users.Users {
  if user.UserName == userName {
   log.Println("The last login info for the user in the known users table is:")
   log.Printf("\t%+v", *user.LastLogin)
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *ActivityLog) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])
 userName, password := runner.AddUserToPool(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])

 runner.AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunctionArn"])
 runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password)
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunction"])
 runner.GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"], userName)

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
}
```

Handle the `PostAuthentication` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// LoginInfo defines structured login data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string `dynamodbav:"UserPoolId"`
 ClientId   string `dynamodbav:"ClientId"`
 Time       string `dynamodbav:"Time"`
}

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string    `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string    `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
 LastLogin LoginInfo `dynamodbav:"LastLogin"`
}

// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
```

```
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PostAuthentication event by writing custom data to
 the logs and
// to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context,
 event events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication)
 (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication, error) {
 log.Printf("Received post authentication trigger from %v for user '%v'",
 event.TriggerSource, event.UserName)
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserName:  event.UserName,
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
  LastLogin: LoginInfo{
   UserPoolId: event.UserPoolID,
   ClientId:   event.CallerContext.ClientID,
   Time:       time.Now().Format(time.UnixDate),
  },
 }
 // Write to CloudWatch Logs.
 fmt.Printf("%#v", user)

 // Also write to an external system. This examples uses DynamoDB to demonstrate.
 userMap, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshal to DynamoDB map. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else if len(userMap) == 0 {
  log.Printf("User info marshaled to an empty map.")
 } else {
  _, err := h.dynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
   Item:      userMap,
   TableName: aws.String(tableName),
  })
  if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Printf("Couldn't write to DynamoDB. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Wrote user info to DynamoDB table %v.\n", tableName)
   }
  }

  return event, nil
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this
 example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
```

```
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
```

```
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for
 this example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured
 format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users
 table...\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the
 specified Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) {
```

```
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with
 your Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
```

```
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
```

```
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
```

```
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of
 strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
```

```
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_
%v", i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 } else {
```

```
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user
 User) error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}
```

```
// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 \n" +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
```

```
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i],
 HandlerArn: nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - AdminCreateUser
  - AdminSetUserPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - UpdateUserPool

Code examples for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Cognito Sync with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Cognito Sync Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Cognito Sync.
- **Amazon Cognito Sync API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Cognito Sync actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs
    - Use ListIdentityPoolUsage with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Cognito Sync with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs
  - Use ListIdentityPoolUsage with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Cognito Sync using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Cognito Sync actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Cognito Sync API Reference.

Examples

- Use ListIdentityPoolUsage with an AWS SDK

Use `ListIdentityPoolUsage` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentityPoolUsage`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_pools(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let response = client
        .list_identity_pool_usage()
        .max_results(10)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let pools = response.identity_pool_usages();
    println!("Identity pools:");

    for pool in pools {
        println!(
            "  Identity pool ID:    {}",
            pool.identity_pool_id().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Data storage:        {}",
            pool.data_storage().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Sync sessions count: {}",
            pool.sync_sessions_count().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Last modified:       {}",
            pool.last_modified_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()?
        );
        println!();
    }
```

```
    println!("Next token: {}", response.next_token().unwrap_or_default());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPoolUsage in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Comprehend with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Comprehend.
- **Amazon Comprehend API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Comprehend actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDocumentClassificationJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeTopicsDetectionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DetectDominantLanguage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectEntities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectKeyPhrases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectPiiEntities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectSentiment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectSyntax with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDocumentClassificationJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDocumentClassifiers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTopicsDetectionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartDocumentClassificationJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartTopicsDetectionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs
  - Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
  - Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors
  - Create a web application that sends and retrieves messages by using Amazon SQS
  - Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
  - Detect document elements with Amazon Comprehend and an AWS SDK
  - Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK
  - Run an Amazon Comprehend topic modeling job on sample data using an AWS SDK
  - Train a custom Amazon Comprehend classifier and classify documents using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Comprehend with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeDocumentClassificationJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DescribeTopicsDetectionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectDominantLanguage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectEntities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectKeyPhrases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectPiiEntities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectSentiment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectSyntax with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDocumentClassificationJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDocumentClassifiers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTopicsDetectionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartDocumentClassificationJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartTopicsDetectionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Comprehend actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Comprehend API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Comprehend API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDocumentClassificationJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDocumentClassifier with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTopicsDetectionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectDominantLanguage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectEntities with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DetectKeyPhrases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectPiiEntities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectSentiment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectSyntax with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDocumentClassificationJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDocumentClassifiers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTopicsDetectionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartDocumentClassificationJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartTopicsDetectionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateDocumentClassifier` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDocumentClassifier`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a document classifier to categorize documents

The following `create-document-classifier` example begins the training process for a document classifier model. The training data file, `training.csv`, is located at the `--input-data-config` tag. `training.csv` is a two column document where the labels, or, classifications are provided in the first column and the documents are provided in the second column.

```
aws comprehend create-document-classifier \
    --document-classifier-name example-classifier \
    --data-access-arn arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:pii-entities-
detection-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE \
    --input-data-config "S3Uri=s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/" \
    --language-code en
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:document-classifier/example-classifier"
}
```

For more information, see Custom Classification in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDocumentClassifier in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.CreateDocumentClassifierRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.CreateDocumentClassifierResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DocumentClassifierInputDataConfig;

/**
 * Before running this code example, you can setup the necessary resources, such
 * as the CSV file and IAM Roles, by following this document:
 * https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/machine-learning/building-a-custom-classifier-using-amazon-comprehend/
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DocumentClassifierDemo {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <dataAccessRoleArn> <s3Uri> <documentClassifierName>

                Where:
                  dataAccessRoleArn - The ARN value of the role used for this
 operation.
                  s3Uri - The Amazon S3 bucket that contains the CSV file.
                  documentClassifierName - The name of the document classifier.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dataAccessRoleArn = args[0];
        String s3Uri = args[1];
        String documentClassifierName = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createDocumentClassifier(comClient, dataAccessRoleArn, s3Uri,
 documentClassifierName);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void createDocumentClassifier(ComprehendClient comClient,
 String dataAccessRoleArn, String s3Uri,
            String documentClassifierName) {
        try {
            DocumentClassifierInputDataConfig config =
 DocumentClassifierInputDataConfig.builder()
                    .s3Uri(s3Uri)
                    .build();
```

```
            CreateDocumentClassifierRequest createDocumentClassifierRequest =
 CreateDocumentClassifierRequest.builder()
                    .documentClassifierName(documentClassifierName)
                    .dataAccessRoleArn(dataAccessRoleArn)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .inputDataConfig(config)
                    .build();

            CreateDocumentClassifierResponse createDocumentClassifierResult =
 comClient
                    .createDocumentClassifier(createDocumentClassifierRequest);
            String documentClassifierArn =
 createDocumentClassifierResult.documentClassifierArn();
            System.out.println("Document Classifier ARN: " +
 documentClassifierArn);

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
```

```
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def create(
        self,
        name,
        language_code,
        training_bucket,
        training_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
        mode,
    ):
        """
        Creates a custom classifier. After the classifier is created, it
immediately
        starts training on the data found in the specified Amazon S3 bucket.
Training
        can take 30 minutes or longer. The `describe_document_classifier`
function
        can be used to get training status and returns a status of TRAINED when
the
        classifier is ready to use.

        :param name: The name of the classifier.
        :param language_code: The language the classifier can operate on.
        :param training_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains the training
data.
        :param training_key: The prefix used to find training data in the
training
                             bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix,
all
                             of them are used.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role
that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from
the
                                     training bucket.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created classifier.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.create_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierName=name,
```

```
                LanguageCode=language_code,
                InputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{training_bucket}/
{training_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                Mode=mode.value,
            )
            self.classifier_arn = response["DocumentClassifierArn"]
            logger.info("Started classifier creation. Arn is: %s.",
 self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create classifier %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.classifier_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDocumentClassifier` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDocumentClassifier`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a custom document classifier

The following `delete-document-classifier` example deletes a custom document classifier model.

```
aws comprehend delete-document-classifier \
    --document-classifier-arn arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:document-
classifier/example-classifier-1
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managing Amazon Comprehend endpoints in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteDocumentClassifier in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes the classifier.
        """
        try:
            self.comprehend_client.delete_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            logger.info("Deleted classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            self.classifier_arn = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deleted classifier %s.",
 self.classifier_arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDocumentClassificationJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDocumentClassificationJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a document classification job

The following `describe-document-classification-job` example gets the properties of an asynchronous document classification job.

```
aws comprehend describe-document-classification-job \
    --job-id 123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentClassificationJobProperties": {
        "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
        "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:document-
classification-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
        "JobName": "exampleclassificationjob",
        "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
        "SubmitTime": "2023-06-14T17:09:51.788000+00:00",
        "EndTime": "2023-06-14T17:15:58.582000+00:00",
        "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-
west-2:111122223333:document-classifier/mymodel/version/1",
```

```
        "InputDataConfig": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/jobdata/",
            "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
        },
        "OutputDataConfig": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
testfolder/111122223333-CLN-123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE/output/
output.tar.gz"
        },
        "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-servicerole"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Custom Classification in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentClassificationJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a classification job.
```

```
        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classification_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["DocumentClassificationJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classification job %s.", job["JobName"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classification job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentClassificationJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDocumentClassifier` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDocumentClassifier`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a document classifier

The following `describe-document-classifier` example gets the properties of a custom document classifier model.

```
aws comprehend describe-document-classifier \
```

```
    --document-classifier-arn arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:document-
classifier/example-classifier-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentClassifierProperties": {
        "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-
west-2:111122223333:document-classifier/example-classifier-1",
        "LanguageCode": "en",
        "Status": "TRAINED",
        "SubmitTime": "2023-06-13T19:04:15.735000+00:00",
        "EndTime": "2023-06-13T19:42:31.752000+00:00",
        "TrainingStartTime": "2023-06-13T19:08:20.114000+00:00",
        "TrainingEndTime": "2023-06-13T19:41:35.080000+00:00",
        "InputDataConfig": {
            "DataFormat": "COMPREHEND_CSV",
            "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/trainingdata"
        },
        "OutputDataConfig": {},
        "ClassifierMetadata": {
            "NumberOfLabels": 3,
            "NumberOfTrainedDocuments": 5016,
            "NumberOfTestDocuments": 557,
            "EvaluationMetrics": {
                "Accuracy": 0.9856,
                "Precision": 0.9919,
                "Recall": 0.9459,
                "F1Score": 0.9673,
                "MicroPrecision": 0.9856,
                "MicroRecall": 0.9856,
                "MicroF1Score": 0.9856,
                "HammingLoss": 0.0144
            }
        },
        "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role",
        "Mode": "MULTI_CLASS"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating and managing custom models in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentClassifier in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def describe(self, classifier_arn=None):
        """
        Gets metadata about a custom classifier, including its current status.

        :param classifier_arn: The ARN of the classifier to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the classifier.
        """
        if classifier_arn is not None:
            self.classifier_arn = classifier_arn
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            classifier = response["DocumentClassifierProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return classifier
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeTopicsDetectionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTopicsDetectionJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Run a topic modeling job on sample data

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a topics detection job

The following `describe-topics-detection-job` example gets the properties of an asynchronous topics detection job.

```
aws comprehend describe-topics-detection-job \
    --job-id 123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "TopicsDetectionJobProperties": {
        "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
        "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:topics-detection-
job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
        "JobName": "example_topics_detection",
        "JobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "SubmitTime": "2023-06-09T18:44:43.414000+00:00",
        "InputDataConfig": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
```

```
            "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
        },
        "OutputDataConfig": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
testfolder/111122223333-TOPICS-123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE/output/
output.tar.gz"
        },
        "NumberOfTopics": 10,
        "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-examplerole"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Async analysis for Amazon Comprehend insights in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a topic modeling job.
```

```
        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_topics_detection_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["TopicsDetectionJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got topic detection job %s.", job_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

- For API details, see DescribeTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectDominantLanguage` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectDominantLanguage`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Detect document elements

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example calls the Amazon Comprehend service to determine the
    /// dominant language.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectDominantLanguage
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Calls Amazon Comprehend to determine the dominant language used in
        /// the sample text.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle.";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectDominantLanguage\n");
            var detectDominantLanguageRequest = new
DetectDominantLanguageRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
            };

            var detectDominantLanguageResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectDominantLanguageAsync(detectDominantLanguageRequest);
            foreach (var dl in detectDominantLanguageResponse.Languages)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Language Code: {dl.LanguageCode}, Score:
{dl.Score}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect the dominant language of input text

The following `detect-dominant-language` analyzes the input text and identifies the dominant language. The pre-trained model's confidence score is also output.

```
aws comprehend detect-dominant-language \
    --text "It is a beautiful day in Seattle."
```

Output:

```
{
    "Languages": [
        {
            "LanguageCode": "en",
            "Score": 0.9877256155014038
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Dominant Language in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectDominantLanguageRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectDominantLanguageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DominantLanguage;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectLanguage {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Specify French text - "It is raining today in Seattle".
        String text = "Il pleut aujourd'hui à Seattle";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;

        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectDominantLanguage");
        detectTheDominantLanguage(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectTheDominantLanguage(ComprehendClient comClient,
 String text) {
        try {
            DetectDominantLanguageRequest request =
 DetectDominantLanguageRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .build();

            DetectDominantLanguageResponse resp =
 comClient.detectDominantLanguage(request);
            List<DominantLanguage> allLanList = resp.languages();
            for (DominantLanguage lang : allLanList) {
                System.out.println("Language is " + lang.languageCode());
```

```
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_languages(self, text):
        """
        Detects languages used in a document.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :return: The list of languages along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_dominant_language(Text=text)
            languages = response["Languages"]
```

```
            logger.info("Detected %s languages.", len(languages))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect languages.")
            raise
        else:
            return languages
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectEntities` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectEntities`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Detect document elements

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use the AmazonComprehend service detect any
/// entities in submitted text.
/// </summary>
```

```
    public static class DetectEntities
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// The main method calls the DetectEntitiesAsync method to find any
        /// entities in the sample code.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectEntities\n");
            var detectEntitiesRequest = new DetectEntitiesRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectEntitiesResponse = await
 comprehendClient.DetectEntitiesAsync(detectEntitiesRequest);

            foreach (var e in detectEntitiesResponse.Entities)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {e.Text}, Type: {e.Type}, Score:
 {e.Score}, BeginOffset: {e.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {e.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect named entities in input text

The following `detect-entities` example analyzes the input text and returns the named entities. The pre-trained model's confidence score is also output for each prediction.

```
aws comprehend detect-entities \
    --language-code en \
    --text "Hello Zhang Wei, I am John. Your AnyCompany Financial Services, LLC
 credit card \
    account 1111-XXXX-1111-XXXX has a minimum payment of $24.53 that is due by
 July 31st. Based on your autopay settings, \
    we will withdraw your payment on the due date from your bank account number
 XXXXXX1111 with the routing number XXXXX0000. \
    Customer feedback for Sunshine Spa, 123 Main St, Anywhere. Send comments to
 Alice at AnySpa@example.com."
```

Output:

```
{
    "Entities": [
        {
            "Score": 0.9994556307792664,
            "Type": "PERSON",
            "Text": "Zhang Wei",
            "BeginOffset": 6,
            "EndOffset": 15
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9981022477149963,
            "Type": "PERSON",
            "Text": "John",
            "BeginOffset": 22,
            "EndOffset": 26
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9986887574195862,
            "Type": "ORGANIZATION",
            "Text": "AnyCompany Financial Services, LLC",
            "BeginOffset": 33,
            "EndOffset": 67
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9959119558334351,
            "Type": "OTHER",
            "Text": "1111-XXXX-1111-XXXX",
            "BeginOffset": 88,
            "EndOffset": 107
        },
```

```
        {
            "Score": 0.9708039164543152,
            "Type": "QUANTITY",
            "Text": ".53",
            "BeginOffset": 133,
            "EndOffset": 136
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9987268447875977,
            "Type": "DATE",
            "Text": "July 31st",
            "BeginOffset": 152,
            "EndOffset": 161
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9858865737915039,
            "Type": "OTHER",
            "Text": "XXXXXX1111",
            "BeginOffset": 271,
            "EndOffset": 281
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9700471758842468,
            "Type": "OTHER",
            "Text": "XXXXX0000",
            "BeginOffset": 306,
            "EndOffset": 315
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9591118693351746,
            "Type": "ORGANIZATION",
            "Text": "Sunshine Spa",
            "BeginOffset": 340,
            "EndOffset": 352
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9797496795654297,
            "Type": "LOCATION",
            "Text": "123 Main St",
            "BeginOffset": 354,
            "EndOffset": 365
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.994929313659668,
```

```
            "Type": "PERSON",
            "Text": "Alice",
            "BeginOffset": 394,
            "EndOffset": 399
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9949769377708435,
            "Type": "OTHER",
            "Text": "AnySpa@example.com",
            "BeginOffset": 403,
            "EndOffset": 418
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Entities in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectEntitiesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.Entity;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectEntities {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectEntities");
        detectAllEntities(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectAllEntities(ComprehendClient comClient, String text)
 {
        try {
            DetectEntitiesRequest detectEntitiesRequest =
 DetectEntitiesRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectEntitiesResponse detectEntitiesResult =
 comClient.detectEntities(detectEntitiesRequest);
            List<Entity> entList = detectEntitiesResult.entities();
            for (Entity entity : entList) {
                System.out.println("Entity text is " + entity.text());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_entities(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects entities in a document. Entities can be things like people and
 places
        or other common terms.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect entities.")
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return entities
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectKeyPhrases` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectKeyPhrases`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Detect document elements

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use the Amazon Comprehend service to
/// search text for key phrases.
/// </summary>
public static class DetectKeyPhrase
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This method calls the Amazon Comprehend method DetectKeyPhrasesAsync
    /// to detect any key phrases in the sample text.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new
 AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            // Call DetectKeyPhrases API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectKeyPhrases");
            var detectKeyPhrasesRequest = new DetectKeyPhrasesRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectKeyPhrasesResponse = await
 comprehendClient.DetectKeyPhrasesAsync(detectKeyPhrasesRequest);
            foreach (var kp in detectKeyPhrasesResponse.KeyPhrases)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {kp.Text}, Score: {kp.Score},
 BeginOffset: {kp.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {kp.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect key phrases in input text

The following `detect-key-phrases` example analyzes the input text and identifies the key noun phrases. The pre-trained model's confidence score is also output for each prediction.

```
aws comprehend detect-key-phrases \
    --language-code en \
    --text "Hello Zhang Wei, I am John. Your AnyCompany Financial Services, LLC
 credit card \
```

```
        account 1111-XXXX-1111-XXXX has a minimum payment of $24.53 that is due
by July 31st. Based on your autopay settings, \
        we will withdraw your payment on the due date from your bank account
number XXXXXX1111 with the routing number XXXXX0000. \
        Customer feedback for Sunshine Spa, 123 Main St, Anywhere. Send comments
to Alice at AnySpa@example.com."
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyPhrases": [
        {
            "Score": 0.8996376395225525,
            "Text": "Zhang Wei",
            "BeginOffset": 6,
            "EndOffset": 15
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9992469549179077,
            "Text": "John",
            "BeginOffset": 22,
            "EndOffset": 26
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.988385021686554,
            "Text": "Your AnyCompany Financial Services",
            "BeginOffset": 28,
            "EndOffset": 62
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.8740853071212769,
            "Text": "LLC credit card account 1111-XXXX-1111-XXXX",
            "BeginOffset": 64,
            "EndOffset": 107
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9999437928199768,
            "Text": "a minimum payment",
            "BeginOffset": 112,
            "EndOffset": 129
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9998900890350342,
```

```
            "Text": ".53",
            "BeginOffset": 133,
            "EndOffset": 136
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9979453086853027,
            "Text": "July 31st",
            "BeginOffset": 152,
            "EndOffset": 161
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9983011484146118,
            "Text": "your autopay settings",
            "BeginOffset": 172,
            "EndOffset": 193
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9996572136878967,
            "Text": "your payment",
            "BeginOffset": 211,
            "EndOffset": 223
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9995037317276001,
            "Text": "the due date",
            "BeginOffset": 227,
            "EndOffset": 239
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9702621698379517,
            "Text": "your bank account number XXXXXX1111",
            "BeginOffset": 245,
            "EndOffset": 280
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9179925918579102,
            "Text": "the routing number XXXXX0000.Customer feedback",
            "BeginOffset": 286,
            "EndOffset": 332
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9978160858154297,
            "Text": "Sunshine Spa",
            "BeginOffset": 337,
```

```
            "EndOffset": 349
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9706913232803345,
            "Text": "123 Main St",
            "BeginOffset": 351,
            "EndOffset": 362
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9941995143890381,
            "Text": "comments",
            "BeginOffset": 379,
            "EndOffset": 387
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9759287238121033,
            "Text": "Alice",
            "BeginOffset": 391,
            "EndOffset": 396
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.8376792669296265,
            "Text": "AnySpa@example.com",
            "BeginOffset": 400,
            "EndOffset": 415
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Key Phrases in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectKeyPhrasesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectKeyPhrasesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.KeyPhrase;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectKeyPhrases {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectKeyPhrases");
        detectAllKeyPhrases(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectAllKeyPhrases(ComprehendClient comClient, String
 text) {
        try {
            DetectKeyPhrasesRequest detectKeyPhrasesRequest =
 DetectKeyPhrasesRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();
```

```
            DetectKeyPhrasesResponse detectKeyPhrasesResult =
 comClient.detectKeyPhrases(detectKeyPhrasesRequest);
            List<KeyPhrase> phraseList = detectKeyPhrasesResult.keyPhrases();
            for (KeyPhrase keyPhrase : phraseList) {
                System.out.println("Key phrase text is " + keyPhrase.text());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_key_phrases(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects key phrases in a document. A key phrase is typically a noun and
 its
        modifiers.
```

```
        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of key phrases along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_key_phrases(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            phrases = response["KeyPhrases"]
            logger.info("Detected %s phrases.", len(phrases))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect phrases.")
            raise
        else:
            return phrases
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectPiiEntities` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectPiiEntities`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Detect document elements

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the Amazon Comprehend service to find
    /// personally identifiable information (PII) within text submitted to the
    /// DetectPiiEntitiesAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectingPII
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the DetectPiiEntitiesAsync method to locate any
        /// personally dientifiable information within the supplied text.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();
            var text = @"Hello Paul Santos. The latest statement for your
                        credit card account 1111-0000-1111-0000 was
                        mailed to 123 Any Street, Seattle, WA 98109.";

            var request = new DetectPiiEntitiesRequest
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "EN",
            };

            var response = await
comprehendClient.DetectPiiEntitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.Entities.Count > 0)
            {
                foreach (var entity in response.Entities)
                {
                    var entityValue = text.Substring(entity.BeginOffset,
entity.EndOffset - entity.BeginOffset);
                    Console.WriteLine($"{entity.Type}: {entityValue}");
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectPiiEntities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect pii entities in input text

The following `detect-pii-entities` example analyzes the input text and identifies entities that contain personally identifiable information (PII). The pre-trained model's confidence score is also output for each prediction.

```
aws comprehend detect-pii-entities \
    --language-code en \
    --text "Hello Zhang Wei, I am John. Your AnyCompany Financial Services, LLC
 credit card \
        account 1111-XXXX-1111-XXXX has a minimum payment of $24.53 that is due
 by July 31st. Based on your autopay settings, \
        we will withdraw your payment on the due date from your bank account
 number XXXXXX1111 with the routing number XXXXX0000. \
        Customer feedback for Sunshine Spa, 123 Main St, Anywhere. Send comments
 to Alice at AnySpa@example.com."
```

Output:

```
{
    "Entities": [
        {
            "Score": 0.9998322129249573,
            "Type": "NAME",
            "BeginOffset": 6,
            "EndOffset": 15
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9998878240585327,
            "Type": "NAME",
            "BeginOffset": 22,
            "EndOffset": 26
        },
        {
```

```
            "Score": 0.9994089603424072,
            "Type": "CREDIT_DEBIT_NUMBER",
            "BeginOffset": 88,
            "EndOffset": 107
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9999760985374451,
            "Type": "DATE_TIME",
            "BeginOffset": 152,
            "EndOffset": 161
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9999449253082275,
            "Type": "BANK_ACCOUNT_NUMBER",
            "BeginOffset": 271,
            "EndOffset": 281
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9999847412109375,
            "Type": "BANK_ROUTING",
            "BeginOffset": 306,
            "EndOffset": 315
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.999925434589386,
            "Type": "ADDRESS",
            "BeginOffset": 354,
            "EndOffset": 365
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9989161491394043,
            "Type": "NAME",
            "BeginOffset": 394,
            "EndOffset": 399
        },
        {
            "Score": 0.9994171857833862,
            "Type": "EMAIL",
            "BeginOffset": 403,
            "EndOffset": 418
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Personally Identifiable Information (PII) in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectPiiEntities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_pii(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects personally identifiable information (PII) in a document. PII can
 be
        things like names, account numbers, or addresses.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of PII entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_pii_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s PII entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect PII entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities
```

- For API details, see DetectPiiEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectSentiment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectSentiment`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Detect document elements

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to detect the overall sentiment of the supplied
/// text using the Amazon Comprehend service.
/// </summary>
public static class DetectSentiment
{
    /// <summary>
```

```
        /// This method calls the DetetectSentimentAsync method to analyze the
        /// supplied text and determine the overal sentiment.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            // Call DetectKeyPhrases API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectSentiment");
            var detectSentimentRequest = new DetectSentimentRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectSentimentResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectSentimentAsync(detectSentimentRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sentiment: {detectSentimentResponse.Sentiment}");
            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect the sentiment of an input text

The following `detect-sentiment` example analyzes the input text and returns an inference of the prevailing sentiment (`POSITIVE`, `NEUTRAL`, `MIXED`, or `NEGATIVE`).

```
aws comprehend detect-sentiment \
    --language-code en \
    --text "It is a beautiful day in Seattle"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Sentiment": "POSITIVE",
    "SentimentScore": {
        "Positive": 0.9976957440376282,
        "Negative": 9.653854067437351e-05,
        "Neutral": 0.002169104292988777,
        "Mixed": 3.857641786453314e-05
    }
}
```

For more information, see Sentiment in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSentimentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSentimentResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectSentiment {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectSentiment");
        detectSentiments(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectSentiments(ComprehendClient comClient, String text)
 {
        try {
            DetectSentimentRequest detectSentimentRequest =
 DetectSentimentRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectSentimentResponse detectSentimentResult =
 comClient.detectSentiment(detectSentimentRequest);
            System.out.println("The Neutral value is " +
 detectSentimentResult.sentimentScore().neutral());

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_sentiment(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects the overall sentiment expressed in a document. Sentiment can
        be positive, negative, neutral, or a mixture.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The sentiments along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_sentiment(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            logger.info("Detected primary sentiment %s.", response["Sentiment"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect sentiment.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectSyntax` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectSyntax`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Detect document elements

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect syntax
/// elements by calling the DetectSyntaxAsync method.
/// </summary>
public class DetectingSyntax
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This method calls DetectSynaxAsync to identify the syntax elements
    /// in the sample text.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

        var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();
```

```
            // Call DetectSyntax API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectSyntaxAsync\n");
            var detectSyntaxRequest = new DetectSyntaxRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            DetectSyntaxResponse detectSyntaxResponse = await
 comprehendClient.DetectSyntaxAsync(detectSyntaxRequest);
            foreach (SyntaxToken s in detectSyntaxResponse.SyntaxTokens)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {s.Text}, PartOfSpeech:
 {s.PartOfSpeech.Tag}, BeginOffset: {s.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {s.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect the parts of speech in an input text

The following `detect-syntax` example analyzes the syntax of the input text and returns the different parts of speech. The pre-trained model's confidence score is also output for each prediction.

```
aws comprehend detect-syntax \
    --language-code en \
    --text "It is a beautiful day in Seattle."
```

Output:

```
{
    "SyntaxTokens": [
```

```
        {
            "TokenId": 1,
            "Text": "It",
            "BeginOffset": 0,
            "EndOffset": 2,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "PRON",
                "Score": 0.9999740719795227
            }
        },
        {
            "TokenId": 2,
            "Text": "is",
            "BeginOffset": 3,
            "EndOffset": 5,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "VERB",
                "Score": 0.999901294708252
            }
        },
        {
            "TokenId": 3,
            "Text": "a",
            "BeginOffset": 6,
            "EndOffset": 7,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "DET",
                "Score": 0.9999938607215881
            }
        },
        {
            "TokenId": 4,
            "Text": "beautiful",
            "BeginOffset": 8,
            "EndOffset": 17,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "ADJ",
                "Score": 0.9987351894378662
            }
        },
        {
            "TokenId": 5,
            "Text": "day",
            "BeginOffset": 18,
```

```
            "EndOffset": 21,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "NOUN",
                "Score": 0.9999796748161316
            }
        },
        {
            "TokenId": 6,
            "Text": "in",
            "BeginOffset": 22,
            "EndOffset": 24,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "ADP",
                "Score": 0.9998047947883606
            }
        },
        {
            "TokenId": 7,
            "Text": "Seattle",
            "BeginOffset": 25,
            "EndOffset": 32,
            "PartOfSpeech": {
                "Tag": "PROPN",
                "Score": 0.9940530061721802
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Syntax Analysis in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSyntaxRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSyntaxResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.SyntaxToken;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectSyntax {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectSyntax");
        detectAllSyntax(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectAllSyntax(ComprehendClient comClient, String text) {
        try {
            DetectSyntaxRequest detectSyntaxRequest =
 DetectSyntaxRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectSyntaxResponse detectSyntaxResult =
 comClient.detectSyntax(detectSyntaxRequest);
```

```
            List<SyntaxToken> syntaxTokens = detectSyntaxResult.syntaxTokens();
            for (SyntaxToken token : syntaxTokens) {
                System.out.println("Language is " + token.text());
                System.out.println("Part of speech is " +
 token.partOfSpeech().tagAsString());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_syntax(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects syntactical elements of a document. Syntax tokens are portions of
        text along with their use as parts of speech, such as nouns, verbs, and
        interjections.
```

```
        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of syntax tokens along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_syntax(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            tokens = response["SyntaxTokens"]
            logger.info("Detected %s syntax tokens.", len(tokens))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect syntax.")
            raise
        else:
            return tokens
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListDocumentClassificationJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDocumentClassificationJobs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To list of all document classification jobs

The following `list-document-classification-jobs` example lists all document classification jobs.

```
aws comprehend list-document-classification-jobs
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentClassificationJobPropertiesList": [
        {
            "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
            "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:1234567890101:document-
classification-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
            "JobName": "exampleclassificationjob",
            "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-14T17:09:51.788000+00:00",
            "EndTime": "2023-06-14T17:15:58.582000+00:00",
            "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-
west-2:1234567890101:document-classifier/mymodel/version/12",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/jobdata/",
                "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
thefolder/1234567890101-CLN-e758dd56b824aa717ceab551f11749fb/output/
output.tar.gz"
            },
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::1234567890101:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role"
        },
        {
            "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE2",
            "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:1234567890101:document-
classification-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE2",
            "JobName": "exampleclassificationjob2",
            "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-14T17:22:39.829000+00:00",
            "EndTime": "2023-06-14T17:28:46.107000+00:00",
            "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-
west-2:1234567890101:document-classifier/mymodel/version/12",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/jobdata/",
                "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
thefolder/1234567890101-CLN-123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE2/output/
output.tar.gz"
```

```
            },
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::1234567890101:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Custom Classification in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDocumentClassificationJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the classification jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classification_jobs()
            jobs = response["DocumentClassificationJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s document classification jobs.", len(jobs))
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get document classification jobs.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentClassificationJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListDocumentClassifiers` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDocumentClassifiers`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To list of all document classifiers

The following `list-document-classifiers` example lists all trained and in-training document classifier models.

```
aws comprehend list-document-classifiers
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentClassifierPropertiesList": [
        {
            "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-
west-2:111122223333:document-classifier/exampleclassifier1",
```

```
            "LanguageCode": "en",
            "Status": "TRAINED",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-13T19:04:15.735000+00:00",
            "EndTime": "2023-06-13T19:42:31.752000+00:00",
            "TrainingStartTime": "2023-06-13T19:08:20.114000+00:00",
            "TrainingEndTime": "2023-06-13T19:41:35.080000+00:00",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "DataFormat": "COMPREHEND_CSV",
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/trainingdata"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {},
            "ClassifierMetadata": {
                "NumberOfLabels": 3,
                "NumberOfTrainedDocuments": 5016,
                "NumberOfTestDocuments": 557,
                "EvaluationMetrics": {
                    "Accuracy": 0.9856,
                    "Precision": 0.9919,
                    "Recall": 0.9459,
                    "F1Score": 0.9673,
                    "MicroPrecision": 0.9856,
                    "MicroRecall": 0.9856,
                    "MicroF1Score": 0.9856,
                    "HammingLoss": 0.0144
                }
            },
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-testorle",
            "Mode": "MULTI_CLASS"
        },
        {
            "DocumentClassifierArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-
west-2:111122223333:document-classifier/exampleclassifier2",
            "LanguageCode": "en",
            "Status": "TRAINING",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-13T21:20:28.690000+00:00",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "DataFormat": "COMPREHEND_CSV",
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/trainingdata"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {},
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-testorle",
            "Mode": "MULTI_CLASS"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating and managing custom models in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDocumentClassifiers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def list(self):
        """
        Lists custom classifiers for the current account.

        :return: The list of classifiers.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classifiers()
            classifiers = response["DocumentClassifierPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s classifiers.", len(classifiers))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't get classifiers.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return classifiers
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentClassifiers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListTopicsDetectionJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTopicsDetectionJobs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Run a topic modeling job on sample data

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all topic detection jobs

The following `list-topics-detection-jobs` example lists all in-progress and completed asynchronous topics detection jobs.

```
aws comprehend list-topics-detection-jobs
```

Output:

```
{
    "TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList": [
        {
            "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
            "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:topics-
detection-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
            "JobName" "topic-analysis-1"
            "JobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-09T18:40:35.384000+00:00",
            "EndTime": "2023-06-09T18:46:41.936000+00:00",
```

```
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
thefolder/111122223333-TOPICS-123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE/output/
output.tar.gz"
            },
            "NumberOfTopics": 10,
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role"
        },
        {
            "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE2",
            "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:topics-
detection-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE2",
            "JobName": "topic-analysis-2",
            "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-09T18:44:43.414000+00:00",
            "EndTime": "2023-06-09T18:50:50.872000+00:00",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
thefolder/111122223333-TOPICS-123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE2/output/
output.tar.gz"
            },
            "NumberOfTopics": 10,
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role"
        },
        {
            "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE3",
            "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:topics-
detection-job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE3",
            "JobName": "topic-analysis-2",
            "JobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
            "SubmitTime": "2023-06-09T18:50:56.737000+00:00",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "InputFormat": "ONE_DOC_PER_LINE"
```

```
            },
            "OutputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/
thefolder/111122223333-TOPICS-123456abcdeb0e11022f22a1EXAMPLE3/output/
output.tar.gz"
            },
            "NumberOfTopics": 10,
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Async analysis for Amazon Comprehend insights in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTopicsDetectionJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists topic modeling jobs for the current account.
```

```
        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_topics_detection_jobs()
            jobs = response["TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s topic detection jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection jobs.")
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

- For API details, see ListTopicsDetectionJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartDocumentClassificationJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartDocumentClassificationJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Train a custom classifier and classify documents

CLI

AWS CLI

To start document classification job

The following `start-document-classification-job` example starts a document classification job with a custom model on all of the files at the address specified by the `--input-data-config` tag. In this example, the input S3 bucket contains `SampleSMStext1.txt`, `SampleSMStext2.txt`, and `SampleSMStext3.txt`. The model was previously trained on document classifications of spam and non-spam, or, "ham", SMS messages. When the job is complete, `output.tar.gz` is put at the location specified by the `--output-data-config` tag. `output.tar.gz` contains `predictions.jsonl` which lists the classification of each document. The Json output is printed on one line per file, but is formatted here for readability.

```
aws comprehend start-document-classification-job \
    --job-name exampleclassificationjob \
    --input-data-config "S3Uri=s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket-INPUT/jobdata/" \
    --output-data-config "S3Uri=s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/testfolder/"
 \
    --data-access-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role \
    --document-classifier-arn arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:document-
classifier/mymodel/version/12
```

Contents of `SampleSMStext1.txt`:

```
"CONGRATULATIONS! TXT 2155550100 to win $5000"
```

Contents of `SampleSMStext2.txt`:

```
"Hi, when do you want me to pick you up from practice?"
```

Contents of `SampleSMStext3.txt`:

```
"Plz send bank account # to 2155550100 to claim prize!!"
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "e758dd56b824aa717ceab551fEXAMPLE",
    "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:document-classification-
job/e758dd56b824aa717ceab551fEXAMPLE",
    "JobStatus": "SUBMITTED"
}
```

Contents of `predictions.jsonl`:

```
{"File": "SampleSMSText1.txt", "Line": "0", "Classes": [{"Name": "spam", "Score":
 0.9999}, {"Name": "ham", "Score": 0.0001}]}
{"File": "SampleSMStext2.txt", "Line": "0", "Classes": [{"Name": "ham", "Score":
 0.9994}, {"Name": "spam", "Score": 0.0006}]}
{"File": "SampleSMSText3.txt", "Line": "0", "Classes": [{"Name": "spam", "Score":
 0.9999}, {"Name": "ham", "Score": 0.0001}]}
```

For more information, see Custom Classification in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartDocumentClassificationJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a classification job. The classifier must be trained or the job
        will fail. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3 input bucket and
        written to the specified output bucket. Output data is stored in a tar
        archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously, so you
 can
        call `describe_document_classification_job` to get job status until it
```

```
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains input data.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                          bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                          of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document
per
                             file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role
that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from
the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_document_classification_job(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn,
                JobName=job_name,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Document classification job %s is %s.", job_name,
response["JobStatus"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start classification job %s.", job_name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentClassificationJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartTopicsDetectionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartTopicsDetectionJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Run a topic modeling job on sample data

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example scans the documents in an Amazon Simple Storage Service
/// (Amazon S3) bucket and analyzes it for topics. The results are stored
/// in another bucket and then the resulting job properties are displayed
/// on the screen. This example was created using the AWS SDK for .NEt
/// version 3.7 and .NET Core version 5.0.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicModeling
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This methos calls a topic detection job by calling the Amazon
    /// Comprehend StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            string inputS3Uri = "s3://input bucket/input path";
            InputFormat inputDocFormat = InputFormat.ONE_DOC_PER_FILE;
            string outputS3Uri = "s3://output bucket/output path";
            string dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::account ID:role/data access
role";
            int numberOfTopics = 10;

            var startTopicsDetectionJobRequest = new
StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest()
            {
                InputDataConfig = new InputDataConfig()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputS3Uri,
                    InputFormat = inputDocFormat,
                },
                OutputDataConfig = new OutputDataConfig()
                {
                    S3Uri = outputS3Uri,
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn = dataAccessRoleArn,
                NumberOfTopics = numberOfTopics,
            };

            var startTopicsDetectionJobResponse = await
comprehendClient.StartTopicsDetectionJobAsync(startTopicsDetectionJobRequest);

            var jobId = startTopicsDetectionJobResponse.JobId;
            Console.WriteLine("JobId: " + jobId);

            var describeTopicsDetectionJobRequest = new
DescribeTopicsDetectionJobRequest()
            {
                JobId = jobId,
            };

            var describeTopicsDetectionJobResponse = await
comprehendClient.DescribeTopicsDetectionJobAsync(describeTopicsDetectionJobRequest);

PrintJobProperties(describeTopicsDetectionJobResponse.TopicsDetectionJobProperties);
```

```
            var listTopicsDetectionJobsResponse = await
comprehendClient.ListTopicsDetectionJobsAsync(new
ListTopicsDetectionJobsRequest());
            foreach (var props in
listTopicsDetectionJobsResponse.TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList)
            {
                PrintJobProperties(props);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method is a helper method that displays the job properties
        /// from the call to StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="props">A list of properties from the call to
        /// StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.</param>
        private static void PrintJobProperties(TopicsDetectionJobProperties
props)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"JobId: {props.JobId}, JobName: {props.JobName},
JobStatus: {props.JobStatus}");
            Console.WriteLine($"NumberOfTopics:
{props.NumberOfTopics}\nInputS3Uri: {props.InputDataConfig.S3Uri}");
            Console.WriteLine($"InputFormat: {props.InputDataConfig.InputFormat},
OutputS3Uri: {props.OutputDataConfig.S3Uri}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start a topics detection analysis job

The following `start-topics-detection-job` example starts an asynchronous topics detection job for all files located at the address specified by the `--input-data-config` tag. When the job is complete, the folder, `output`, is placed at the location specified by the `--ouput-data-config` tag. `output` contains topic-terms.csv and doc-topics.csv.

The first output file, topic-terms.csv, is a list of topics in the collection. For each topic, the list includes, by default, the top terms by topic according to their weight. The second file, `doc-topics.csv`, lists the documents associated with a topic and the proportion of the document that is concerned with the topic.

```
aws comprehend start-topics-detection-job \
    --job-name example_topics_detection_job \
    --language-code en \
    --input-data-config "S3Uri=s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/" \
    --output-data-config "S3Uri=s3://amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket/testfolder/"
 \
    --data-access-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/service-role/
AmazonComprehendServiceRole-example-role \
    --language-code en
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
    "JobArn": "arn:aws:comprehend:us-west-2:111122223333:key-phrases-detection-
job/123456abcdeb0e11022f22a11EXAMPLE",
    "JobStatus": "SUBMITTED"
}
```

For more information, see Topic Modeling in the *Amazon Comprehend Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a topic modeling job. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3
        input bucket and written to the specified output bucket. Output data is
stored
        in a tar archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously,
so you
        can call `describe_topics_detection_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: An Amazon S3 bucket that contains job input.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                              bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix,
all
                              of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document
per
                              file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role
that
                                        grants Comprehend permission to read from
the
                                        input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_topics_detection_job(
                JobName=job_name,
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
            )
            logger.info("Started topic modeling job %s.", response["JobId"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start topic modeling job.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see StartTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Comprehend using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Comprehend with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Comprehend or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
- Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors
- Create a web application that sends and retrieves messages by using Amazon SQS
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
- Detect document elements with Amazon Comprehend and an AWS SDK
- Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK

- Run an Amazon Comprehend topic modeling job on sample data using an AWS SDK
- Train a custom Amazon Comprehend classifier and classify documents using an AWS SDK

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors

The following code examples show how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example Building an Amazon Lex chatbot in the AWS SDK for JavaScript developer guide.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Create a web application that sends and retrieves messages by using Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to create a messaging application by using Amazon SQS.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

The following code examples show how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

.NET

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into

the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });
```

```
  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );
```

```
  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into

the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Detect document elements with Amazon Comprehend and an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Detect languages, entities, and key phrases in a document.
- Detect personally identifiable information (PII) in a document.
- Detect the sentiment of a document.
- Detect syntax elements in a document.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps Amazon Comprehend actions.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_languages(self, text):
        """
        Detects languages used in a document.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :return: The list of languages along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_dominant_language(Text=text)
            languages = response["Languages"]
            logger.info("Detected %s languages.", len(languages))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect languages.")
            raise
        else:
            return languages


    def detect_entities(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects entities in a document. Entities can be things like people and
 places
        or other common terms.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
```

```
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities


    def detect_key_phrases(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects key phrases in a document. A key phrase is typically a noun and
its
        modifiers.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of key phrases along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_key_phrases(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            phrases = response["KeyPhrases"]
            logger.info("Detected %s phrases.", len(phrases))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect phrases.")
            raise
        else:
            return phrases


    def detect_pii(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects personally identifiable information (PII) in a document. PII can
be
        things like names, account numbers, or addresses.
```

```
        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of PII entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_pii_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s PII entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect PII entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities


    def detect_sentiment(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects the overall sentiment expressed in a document. Sentiment can
        be positive, negative, neutral, or a mixture.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The sentiments along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_sentiment(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            logger.info("Detected primary sentiment %s.", response["Sentiment"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect sentiment.")
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def detect_syntax(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects syntactical elements of a document. Syntax tokens are portions of
        text along with their use as parts of speech, such as nouns, verbs, and
        interjections.
```

```
        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of syntax tokens along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_syntax(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            tokens = response["SyntaxTokens"]
            logger.info("Detected %s syntax tokens.", len(tokens))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect syntax.")
            raise
        else:
            return tokens
```

Call functions on the wrapper class to detect entities, phrases, and more in a document.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Comprehend detection demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    comp_detect = ComprehendDetect(boto3.client("comprehend"))
    with open("detect_sample.txt") as sample_file:
        sample_text = sample_file.read()

    demo_size = 3

    print("Sample text used for this demo:")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(sample_text)
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Detecting languages.")
    languages = comp_detect.detect_languages(sample_text)
    pprint(languages)
```

```
    lang_code = languages[0]["LanguageCode"]

    print("Detecting entities.")
    entities = comp_detect.detect_entities(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(entities[:demo_size])

    print("Detecting key phrases.")
    phrases = comp_detect.detect_key_phrases(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(phrases[:demo_size])

    print("Detecting personally identifiable information (PII).")
    pii_entities = comp_detect.detect_pii(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(pii_entities[:demo_size])

    print("Detecting sentiment.")
    sentiment = comp_detect.detect_sentiment(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"Sentiment: {sentiment['Sentiment']}")
    print("SentimentScore:")
    pprint(sentiment["SentimentScore"])

    print("Detecting syntax elements.")
    syntax_tokens = comp_detect.detect_syntax(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(syntax_tokens[:demo_size])

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DetectDominantLanguage
  - DetectEntities
  - DetectKeyPhrases
  - DetectPiiEntities
  - DetectSentiment
  - DetectSyntax

Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in text extracted by Amazon Textract from an image that is stored in Amazon S3.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) in a Jupyter notebook to detect entities in text that is extracted from an image. This example uses Amazon Textract to extract text from an image stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in the extracted text.

This example is a Jupyter notebook and must be run in an environment that can host notebooks. For instructions on how to run the example using Amazon SageMaker AI, see the directions in TextractAndComprehendNotebook.ipynb.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Textract

Run an Amazon Comprehend topic modeling job on sample data using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Run an Amazon Comprehend topic modeling job on sample data.
- Get information about the job.
- Extract job output data from Amazon S3.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a wrapper class to call Amazon Comprehend topic modeling actions.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a topic modeling job. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3
        input bucket and written to the specified output bucket. Output data is
 stored
        in a tar archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously,
 so you
        can call `describe_topics_detection_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: An Amazon S3 bucket that contains job input.
```

```
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                              bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix,
all
                              of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document
per
                              file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role
that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from
the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_topics_detection_job(
                JobName=job_name,
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
            )
            logger.info("Started topic modeling job %s.", response["JobId"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start topic modeling job.")
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a topic modeling job.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_topics_detection_job(
                JobId=job_id
```

```
            )
            job = response["TopicsDetectionJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got topic detection job %s.", job_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists topic modeling jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_topics_detection_jobs()
            jobs = response["TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s topic detection jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection jobs.")
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

Use the wrapper class to run a topic modeling job and get job data.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Comprehend topic modeling demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    input_prefix = "input/"
    output_prefix = "output/"
    demo_resources = ComprehendDemoResources(
        boto3.resource("s3"), boto3.resource("iam")
    )
```

```
    topic_modeler = ComprehendTopicModeler(boto3.client("comprehend"))

    print("Setting up storage and security resources needed for the demo.")
    demo_resources.setup("comprehend-topic-modeler-demo")
    print("Copying sample data from public bucket into input bucket.")
    demo_resources.bucket.copy(
        {"Bucket": "public-sample-us-west-2", "Key": "TopicModeling/Sample.txt"},
        f"{input_prefix}sample.txt",
    )

    print("Starting topic modeling job on sample data.")
    job_info = topic_modeler.start_job(
        "demo-topic-modeling-job",
        demo_resources.bucket.name,
        input_prefix,
        JobInputFormat.per_line,
        demo_resources.bucket.name,
        output_prefix,
        demo_resources.data_access_role.arn,
    )

    print(
        f"Waiting for job {job_info['JobId']} to complete. This typically takes "
        f"20 - 30 minutes."
    )
    job_waiter = JobCompleteWaiter(topic_modeler.comprehend_client)
    job_waiter.wait(job_info["JobId"])

    job = topic_modeler.describe_job(job_info["JobId"])
    print(f"Job {job['JobId']} complete:")
    pprint(job)

    print(
        f"Getting job output data from the output Amazon S3 bucket: "
        f"{job['OutputDataConfig']['S3Uri']}."
    )
    job_output = demo_resources.extract_job_output(job)
    lines = 10
    print(f"First {lines} lines of document topics output:")
    pprint(job_output["doc-topics.csv"]["data"][:lines])
    print(f"First {lines} lines of terms output:")
    pprint(job_output["topic-terms.csv"]["data"][:lines])

    print("Cleaning up resources created for the demo.")
```

```
    demo_resources.cleanup()

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DescribeTopicsDetectionJob
  - ListTopicsDetectionJobs
  - StartTopicsDetectionJob

Train a custom Amazon Comprehend classifier and classify documents using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Comprehend multi-label classifier.
- Train the classifier on sample data.
- Run a classification job on a second set of data.
- Extract the job output data from Amazon S3.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a wrapper class to call Amazon Comprehend document classifier actions.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def create(
        self,
        name,
        language_code,
        training_bucket,
        training_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
        mode,
    ):
        """
        Creates a custom classifier. After the classifier is created, it
immediately
        starts training on the data found in the specified Amazon S3 bucket.
Training
        can take 30 minutes or longer. The `describe_document_classifier`
function
        can be used to get training status and returns a status of TRAINED when
the
        classifier is ready to use.

        :param name: The name of the classifier.
        :param language_code: The language the classifier can operate on.
        :param training_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains the training
data.
        :param training_key: The prefix used to find training data in the
training
                             bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix,
all
                             of them are used.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role
that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from
the
                                     training bucket.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created classifier.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.create_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierName=name,
                LanguageCode=language_code,
                InputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{training_bucket}/
{training_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                Mode=mode.value,
            )
            self.classifier_arn = response["DocumentClassifierArn"]
            logger.info("Started classifier creation. Arn is: %s.",
 self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create classifier %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.classifier_arn


    def describe(self, classifier_arn=None):
        """
        Gets metadata about a custom classifier, including its current status.

        :param classifier_arn: The ARN of the classifier to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the classifier.
        """
        if classifier_arn is not None:
            self.classifier_arn = classifier_arn
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            classifier = response["DocumentClassifierProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return classifier


    def list(self):
        """
        Lists custom classifiers for the current account.
```

```
        :return: The list of classifiers.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classifiers()
            classifiers = response["DocumentClassifierPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s classifiers.", len(classifiers))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get classifiers.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return classifiers


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes the classifier.
        """
        try:
            self.comprehend_client.delete_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            logger.info("Deleted classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            self.classifier_arn = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deleted classifier %s.",
self.classifier_arn)
            raise


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a classification job. The classifier must be trained or the job
```

```
        will fail. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3 input bucket and
        written to the specified output bucket. Output data is stored in a tar
        archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously, so you
can
        call `describe_document_classification_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains input data.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                          bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                          of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document
per
                             file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role
that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from
the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_document_classification_job(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn,
                JobName=job_name,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Document classification job %s is %s.", job_name,
response["JobStatus"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start classification job %s.", job_name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

```
    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a classification job.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classification_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["DocumentClassificationJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classification job %s.", job["JobName"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classification job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the classification jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classification_jobs()
            jobs = response["DocumentClassificationJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s document classification jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get document classification jobs.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

Create a class to help run the scenario.

```
class ClassifierDemo:
    """
    Encapsulates functions used to run the demonstration.
    """

    def __init__(self, demo_resources):
        """
        :param demo_resources: A ComprehendDemoResources class that manages
 resources
                               for the demonstration.
        """
        self.demo_resources = demo_resources
        self.training_prefix = "training/"
        self.input_prefix = "input/"
        self.input_format = JobInputFormat.per_line
        self.output_prefix = "output/"

    def setup(self):
        """Creates AWS resources used by the demo."""
        self.demo_resources.setup("comprehend-classifier-demo")

    def cleanup(self):
        """Deletes AWS resources used by the demo."""
        self.demo_resources.cleanup()

    @staticmethod
    def _sanitize_text(text):
        """Removes characters that cause errors for the document parser."""
        return text.replace("\r", " ").replace("\n", " ").replace(",", ";")

    @staticmethod
    def _get_issues(query, issue_count):
        """
        Gets issues from GitHub using the specified query parameters.

        :param query: The query string used to request issues from the GitHub
 API.
        :param issue_count: The number of issues to retrieve.
        :return: The list of issues retrieved from GitHub.
        """
        issues = []
        logger.info("Requesting issues from %s?%s.", GITHUB_SEARCH_URL, query)
```

```
        response = requests.get(f"{GITHUB_SEARCH_URL}?
{query}&per_page={issue_count}")
        if response.status_code == 200:
            issue_page = response.json()["items"]
            logger.info("Got %s issues.", len(issue_page))
            issues = [
                {
                    "title": ClassifierDemo._sanitize_text(issue["title"]),
                    "body": ClassifierDemo._sanitize_text(issue["body"]),
                    "labels": {label["name"] for label in issue["labels"]},
                }
                for issue in issue_page
            ]
        else:
            logger.error(
                "GitHub returned error code %s with message %s.",
                response.status_code,
                response.json(),
            )
        logger.info("Found %s issues.", len(issues))
        return issues

    def get_training_issues(self, training_labels):
        """
        Gets issues used for training the custom classifier. Training issues are
        closed issues from the Boto3 repo that have known labels. Comprehend
        requires a minimum of ten training issues per label.

        :param training_labels: The issue labels to use for training.
        :return: The set of issues used for training.
        """
        issues = []
        per_label_count = 15
        for label in training_labels:
            issues += self._get_issues(
                f"q=type:issue+repo:boto/boto3+state:closed+label:{label}",
                per_label_count,
            )
            for issue in issues:
                issue["labels"] = issue["labels"].intersection(training_labels)
        return issues

    def get_input_issues(self, training_labels):
        """
```

```
        Gets input issues from GitHub. For demonstration purposes, input issues
        are open issues from the Boto3 repo with known labels, though in practice
        any issue could be submitted to the classifier for labeling.

        :param training_labels: The set of labels to query for.
        :return: The set of issues used for input.
        """
        issues = []
        per_label_count = 5
        for label in training_labels:
            issues += self._get_issues(
                f"q=type:issue+repo:boto/boto3+state:open+label:{label}",
                per_label_count,
            )
        return issues

    def upload_issue_data(self, issues, training=False):
        """
        Uploads issue data to an Amazon S3 bucket, either for training or for
input.
        The data is first put into the format expected by Comprehend. For
training,
        the set of pipe-delimited labels is prepended to each document. For
        input, labels are not sent.

        :param issues: The set of issues to upload to Amazon S3.
        :param training: Indicates whether the issue data is used for training or
                         input.
        """
        try:
            obj_key = (
                self.training_prefix if training else self.input_prefix
            ) + "issues.txt"
            if training:
                issue_strings = [
                    f"{'|'.join(issue['labels'])},{issue['title']}
{issue['body']}"
                    for issue in issues
                ]
            else:
                issue_strings = [
                    f"{issue['title']} {issue['body']}" for issue in issues
                ]
            issue_bytes = BytesIO("\n".join(issue_strings).encode("utf-8"))
```

```
            self.demo_resources.bucket.upload_fileobj(issue_bytes, obj_key)
            logger.info(
                "Uploaded data as %s to bucket %s.",
                obj_key,
                self.demo_resources.bucket.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't upload data to bucket %s.",
self.demo_resources.bucket.name
            )
            raise

    def extract_job_output(self, job):
        """Extracts job output from Amazon S3."""
        return self.demo_resources.extract_job_output(job)

    @staticmethod
    def reconcile_job_output(input_issues, output_dict):
        """
        Reconciles job output with the list of input issues. Because the input
issues
        have known labels, these can be compared with the labels added by the
        classifier to judge the accuracy of the output.

        :param input_issues: The list of issues used as input.
        :param output_dict: The dictionary of data that is output by the
classifier.
        :return: The list of reconciled input and output data.
        """
        reconciled = []
        for archive in output_dict.values():
            for line in archive["data"]:
                in_line = int(line["Line"])
                in_labels = input_issues[in_line]["labels"]
                out_labels = {
                    label["Name"]
                    for label in line["Labels"]
                    if float(label["Score"]) > 0.3
                }
                reconciled.append(
                    f"{line['File']}, line {in_line} has labels {in_labels}.\n"
                    f"\tClassifier assigned {out_labels}."
                )
```

```
        logger.info("Reconciled input and output labels.")
        return reconciled
```

Train a classifier on a set of GitHub issues with known labels, then send a second set of GitHub issues to the classifier so that they can be labeled.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Comprehend custom document classifier demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    comp_demo = ClassifierDemo(
        ComprehendDemoResources(boto3.resource("s3"), boto3.resource("iam"))
    )
    comp_classifier = ComprehendClassifier(boto3.client("comprehend"))
    classifier_trained_waiter = ClassifierTrainedWaiter(
        comp_classifier.comprehend_client
    )
    training_labels = {"bug", "feature-request", "dynamodb", "s3"}

    print("Setting up storage and security resources needed for the demo.")
    comp_demo.setup()

    print("Getting training data from GitHub and uploading it to Amazon S3.")
    training_issues = comp_demo.get_training_issues(training_labels)
    comp_demo.upload_issue_data(training_issues, True)

    classifier_name = "doc-example-classifier"
    print(f"Creating document classifier {classifier_name}.")
    comp_classifier.create(
        classifier_name,
        "en",
        comp_demo.demo_resources.bucket.name,
        comp_demo.training_prefix,
        comp_demo.demo_resources.data_access_role.arn,
        ClassifierMode.multi_label,
    )
    print(
```

```
        f"Waiting until {classifier_name} is trained. This typically takes "
        f"30-40 minutes."
    )
    classifier_trained_waiter.wait(comp_classifier.classifier_arn)

    print(f"Classifier {classifier_name} is trained:")
    pprint(comp_classifier.describe())

    print("Getting input data from GitHub and uploading it to Amazon S3.")
    input_issues = comp_demo.get_input_issues(training_labels)
    comp_demo.upload_issue_data(input_issues)

    print("Starting classification job on input data.")
    job_info = comp_classifier.start_job(
        "issue_classification_job",
        comp_demo.demo_resources.bucket.name,
        comp_demo.input_prefix,
        comp_demo.input_format,
        comp_demo.demo_resources.bucket.name,
        comp_demo.output_prefix,
        comp_demo.demo_resources.data_access_role.arn,
    )
    print(f"Waiting for job {job_info['JobId']} to complete.")
    job_waiter = JobCompleteWaiter(comp_classifier.comprehend_client)
    job_waiter.wait(job_info["JobId"])

    job = comp_classifier.describe_job(job_info["JobId"])
    print(f"Job {job['JobId']} complete:")
    pprint(job)

    print(
        f"Getting job output data from Amazon S3: "
        f"{job['OutputDataConfig']['S3Uri']}."
    )
    job_output = comp_demo.extract_job_output(job)
    print("Job output:")
    pprint(job_output)

    print("Reconciling job output with labels from GitHub:")
    reconciled_output = comp_demo.reconcile_job_output(input_issues, job_output)
    print(*reconciled_output, sep="\n")

    answer = input(f"Do you want to delete the classifier {classifier_name} (y/
n)? ")
```

```
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        print(f"Deleting {classifier_name}.")
        comp_classifier.delete()

    print("Cleaning up resources created for the demo.")
    comp_demo.cleanup()

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDocumentClassifier
  - DeleteDocumentClassifier
  - DescribeDocumentClassificationJob
  - DescribeDocumentClassifier
  - ListDocumentClassificationJobs
  - ListDocumentClassifiers
  - StartDocumentClassificationJob

Code examples for AWS Config using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Config with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Config Developer Guide** – More information about AWS Config.
- **AWS Config API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Config actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Config using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS Config using AWS SDKs
    - Use DeleteConfigRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeComplianceByConfigRule with a CLI
    - Use DescribeComplianceByResource with a CLI
    - Use DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus with a CLI
    - Use DescribeConfigRules with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus with a CLI
    - Use DescribeConfigurationRecorders with a CLI
    - Use DescribeDeliveryChannels with a CLI
    - Use GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule with a CLI
    - Use GetComplianceDetailsByResource with a CLI
    - Use GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule with a CLI
    - Use GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType with a CLI
    - Use PutConfigRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutDeliveryChannel with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS Config using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Config with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS Config using AWS SDKs
  - Use DeleteConfigRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeComplianceByConfigRule with a CLI
  - Use DescribeComplianceByResource with a CLI
  - Use DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus with a CLI
  - Use DescribeConfigRules with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus with a CLI
  - Use DescribeConfigurationRecorders with a CLI
  - Use DescribeDeliveryChannels with a CLI

- Use GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceDetailsByResource with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType with a CLI
- Use PutConfigRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutDeliveryChannel with a CLI

Actions for AWS Config using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Config actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Config API Reference.

Examples

- Use DeleteConfigRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeComplianceByConfigRule with a CLI
- Use DescribeComplianceByResource with a CLI
- Use DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeConfigRules with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeConfigurationRecorders with a CLI
- Use DescribeDeliveryChannels with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceDetailsByResource with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule with a CLI
- Use GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType with a CLI
- Use PutConfigRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutDeliveryChannel with a CLI

Use `DeleteConfigRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteConfigRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an AWS Config rule

The following command deletes an AWS Config rule named `MyConfigRule`:

```
aws configservice delete-config-rule --config-rule-name MyConfigRule
```

- For API details, see DeleteConfigRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ConfigWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates AWS Config functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, config_client):
        """
        :param config_client: A Boto3 AWS Config client.
        """
        self.config_client = config_client


    def delete_config_rule(self, rule_name):
        """
        Delete the specified rule.
```

```
        :param rule_name: The name of the rule to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.config_client.delete_config_rule(ConfigRuleName=rule_name)
            logger.info("Deleted rule %s.", rule_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteConfigRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeComplianceByConfigRule` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeComplianceByConfigRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get compliance information for your AWS Config rules

The following command returns compliance information for each AWS Config rule that is violated by one or more AWS resources:

```
aws configservice describe-compliance-by-config-rule --compliance-
types NON_COMPLIANT
```

In the output, the value for each `CappedCount` attribute indicates how many resources do not comply with the related rule. For example, the following output indicates that 3 resources do not comply with the rule named `InstanceTypesAreT2micro`.

Output:

```
{
    "ComplianceByConfigRules": [
        {
            "Compliance": {
```

```
                "ComplianceContributorCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 3,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                },
                "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
            },
            "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro"
        },
        {
            "Compliance": {
                "ComplianceContributorCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 10,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                },
                "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
            },
            "ConfigRuleName": "RequiredTagsForVolumes"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByConfigRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves compliances details for the rule ebs-optimized-instance, for which there is no current evaluation results for the rule, hence it returns INSUFFICIENT_DATA

```
(Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName ebs-optimized-instance).Compliance
```

Output:

```
ComplianceContributorCount ComplianceType
------------------------- --------------
                           INSUFFICIENT_DATA
```

Example 2: This example returns the number of non-compliant resources for the rule ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK.

```
(Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName
 ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK -ComplianceType
 NON_COMPLIANT).Compliance.ComplianceContributorCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       2
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves compliances details for the rule ebs-optimized-instance, for which there is no current evaluation results for the rule, hence it returns INSUFFICIENT_DATA

```
(Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName ebs-optimized-instance).Compliance
```

Output:

```
ComplianceContributorCount ComplianceType
-------------------------- --------------
                           INSUFFICIENT_DATA
```

Example 2: This example returns the number of non-compliant resources for the rule ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK.

```
(Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName
 ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK -ComplianceType
 NON_COMPLIANT).Compliance.ComplianceContributorCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       2
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeComplianceByResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeComplianceByResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get compliance information for your AWS resources

The following command returns compliance information for each EC2 instance that is recorded by AWS Config and that violates one or more rules:

```
aws configservice describe-compliance-by-resource --resource-
type AWS::EC2::Instance --compliance-types NON_COMPLIANT
```

In the output, the value for each `CappedCount` attribute indicates how many rules the resource violates. For example, the following output indicates that instance `i-1a2b3c4d` violates 2 rules.

Output:

```
{
    "ComplianceByResources": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1a2b3c4d",
            "Compliance": {
                "ComplianceContributorCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 2,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                },
                "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
            }
        },
        {
            "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-2a2b3c4d ",
            "Compliance": {
```

```
                "ComplianceContributorCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 3,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                },
                "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example checks the `AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory` resource type for 'COMPLIANT' compliance type.

```
Get-CFGComplianceByResource -ComplianceType COMPLIANT -ResourceType
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
```

Output:

```
Compliance                              ResourceId          ResourceType
----------                              ----------          ------------
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.Compliance i-0123bcf4b567890e3
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.Compliance i-0a1234f6f5d6b78f7
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example checks the `AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory` resource type for 'COMPLIANT' compliance type.

```
Get-CFGComplianceByResource -ComplianceType COMPLIANT -ResourceType
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
```

Output:

```
Compliance                              ResourceId          ResourceType
----------                              ----------          ------------
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.Compliance i-0123bcf4b567890e3
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.Compliance i-0a1234f6f5d6b78f7
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get status information for an AWS Config rule

The following command returns the status information for an AWS Config rule named `MyConfigRule`:

```
aws configservice describe-config-rule-evaluation-status --config-rule-
names MyConfigRule
```

Output:

```
{
    "ConfigRulesEvaluationStatus": [
        {
            "ConfigRuleArn": "arn:aws:config:us-east-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-abcdef",
            "FirstActivatedTime": 1450311703.844,
            "ConfigRuleId": "config-rule-abcdef",
            "LastSuccessfulInvocationTime": 1450314643.156,
            "ConfigRuleName": "MyConfigRule"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample returns the status information for the given config rules.

```
Get-CFGConfigRuleEvaluationStatus -ConfigRuleName root-account-mfa-enabled, vpc-
flow-logs-enabled
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleArn                : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-kvq1wk
ConfigRuleId                 : config-rule-kvq1wk
ConfigRuleName               : root-account-mfa-enabled
FirstActivatedTime           : 8/27/2019 8:05:17 AM
FirstEvaluationStarted       : True
LastErrorCode                :
LastErrorMessage             :
LastFailedEvaluationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastFailedInvocationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastSuccessfulEvaluationTime : 12/13/2019 8:12:03 AM
LastSuccessfulInvocationTime : 12/13/2019 8:12:03 AM

ConfigRuleArn                : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-z1s23b
ConfigRuleId                 : config-rule-z1s23b
ConfigRuleName               : vpc-flow-logs-enabled
FirstActivatedTime           : 8/14/2019 6:23:44 AM
FirstEvaluationStarted       : True
LastErrorCode                :
LastErrorMessage             :
LastFailedEvaluationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastFailedInvocationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastSuccessfulEvaluationTime : 12/13/2019 7:12:01 AM
LastSuccessfulInvocationTime : 12/13/2019 7:12:01 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns the status information for the given config rules.

```
Get-CFGConfigRuleEvaluationStatus -ConfigRuleName root-account-mfa-enabled, vpc-
flow-logs-enabled
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleArn                : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-kvq1wk
ConfigRuleId                 : config-rule-kvq1wk
ConfigRuleName               : root-account-mfa-enabled
FirstActivatedTime           : 8/27/2019 8:05:17 AM
FirstEvaluationStarted       : True
LastErrorCode                :
LastErrorMessage             :
LastFailedEvaluationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastFailedInvocationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastSuccessfulEvaluationTime : 12/13/2019 8:12:03 AM
LastSuccessfulInvocationTime : 12/13/2019 8:12:03 AM

ConfigRuleArn                : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-z1s23b
ConfigRuleId                 : config-rule-z1s23b
ConfigRuleName               : vpc-flow-logs-enabled
FirstActivatedTime           : 8/14/2019 6:23:44 AM
FirstEvaluationStarted       : True
LastErrorCode                :
LastErrorMessage             :
LastFailedEvaluationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastFailedInvocationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastSuccessfulEvaluationTime : 12/13/2019 7:12:01 AM
LastSuccessfulInvocationTime : 12/13/2019 7:12:01 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeConfigRules` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeConfigRules`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details for an AWS Config rule

The following command returns details for an AWS Config rule named `InstanceTypesAreT2micro`:

```
aws configservice describe-config-rules --config-rule-
names InstanceTypesAreT2micro
```

Output:

```
{
    "ConfigRules": [
        {
            "ConfigRuleState": "ACTIVE",
            "Description": "Evaluates whether EC2 instances are the t2.micro
 type.",
            "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro",
            "ConfigRuleArn": "arn:aws:config:us-east-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-abcdef",
            "Source": {
                "Owner": "CUSTOM_LAMBDA",
                "SourceIdentifier": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:InstanceTypeCheck",
                "SourceDetails": [
                    {
                        "EventSource": "aws.config",
                        "MessageType": "ConfigurationItemChangeNotification"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "InputParameters": "{\"desiredInstanceType\":\"t2.micro\"}",
            "Scope": {
                "ComplianceResourceTypes": [
                    "AWS::EC2::Instance"
                ]
```

```
            },
            "ConfigRuleId": "config-rule-abcdef"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRules in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample lists config rules for the account, with selected properties.

```
Get-CFGConfigRule | Select-Object ConfigRuleName, ConfigRuleId, ConfigRuleArn,
 ConfigRuleState
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName                                  ConfigRuleId
 ConfigRuleArn
 ConfigRuleState
--------------                                  ------------
 -------------
 ---------------
ALB_REDIRECTION_CHECK                           config-rule-12iyn3
 arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-12iyn3
 ACTIVE
access-keys-rotated                             config-rule-aospfr
 arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-aospfr
 ACTIVE
autoscaling-group-elb-healthcheck-required      config-rule-cn1f2x
 arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-cn1f2x
 ACTIVE
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample lists config rules for the account, with selected properties.

```
Get-CFGConfigRule | Select-Object ConfigRuleName, ConfigRuleId, ConfigRuleArn,
 ConfigRuleState
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName                                   ConfigRuleId
 ConfigRuleArn
 ConfigRuleState
--------------                                   ------------
 -------------
 ---------------
ALB_REDIRECTION_CHECK                            config-rule-12iyn3
 arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-12iyn3
 ACTIVE
access-keys-rotated                              config-rule-aospfr
 arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-aospfr
 ACTIVE
autoscaling-group-elb-healthcheck-required       config-rule-cn1f2x
 arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-cn1f2x
 ACTIVE
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ConfigWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates AWS Config functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, config_client):
```

```
        """
        :param config_client: A Boto3 AWS Config client.
        """
        self.config_client = config_client


    def describe_config_rule(self, rule_name):
        """
        Gets data for the specified rule.

        :param rule_name: The name of the rule to retrieve.
        :return: The rule data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.config_client.describe_config_rules(
                ConfigRuleNames=[rule_name]
            )
            rule = response["ConfigRules"]
            logger.info("Got data for rule %s.", rule_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
        else:
            return rule
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRules in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get status information for the configuration recorder

The following command returns the status of the default configuration recorder:

```
aws configservice describe-configuration-recorder-status
```

Output:

```
{
    "ConfigurationRecordersStatus": [
        {
            "name": "default",
            "lastStatus": "SUCCESS",
            "recording": true,
            "lastStatusChangeTime": 1452193834.344,
            "lastStartTime": 1441039997.819,
            "lastStopTime": 1441039992.835
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample returns status of the configuration recorders.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationRecorderStatus
```

Output:

```
LastErrorCode        :
LastErrorMessage     :
LastStartTime        : 10/11/2019 10:13:51 AM
LastStatus           : Success
LastStatusChangeTime : 12/31/2019 6:14:12 AM
LastStopTime         : 10/11/2019 10:13:46 AM
Name                 : default
Recording            : True
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns status of the configuration recorders.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationRecorderStatus
```

Output:

```
LastErrorCode        :
LastErrorMessage     :
LastStartTime        : 10/11/2019 10:13:51 AM
LastStatus           : Success
LastStatusChangeTime : 12/31/2019 6:14:12 AM
LastStopTime         : 10/11/2019 10:13:46 AM
Name                 : default
Recording            : True
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeConfigurationRecorders` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeConfigurationRecorders`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details about the configuration recorder

The following command returns details about the default configuration recorder:

```
aws configservice describe-configuration-recorders
```

Output:

```
{
    "ConfigurationRecorders": [
        {
            "recordingGroup": {
                "allSupported": true,
                "resourceTypes": [],
                "includeGlobalResourceTypes": true
            },
```

```
            "roleARN": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/config-ConfigRole-
A1B2C3D4E5F6",
            "name": "default"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorders in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the details of configuration recorders.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationRecorder | Format-List
```

Output:

```
Name           : default
RecordingGroup : Amazon.ConfigService.Model.RecordingGroup
RoleARN        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
config.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForConfig
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the details of configuration recorders.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationRecorder | Format-List
```

Output:

```
Name           : default
RecordingGroup : Amazon.ConfigService.Model.RecordingGroup
RoleARN        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
config.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForConfig
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeDeliveryChannels` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDeliveryChannels`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details about the delivery channel

The following command returns details about the delivery channel:

```
aws configservice describe-delivery-channels
```

Output:

```
{
    "DeliveryChannels": [
        {
            "snsTopicARN": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:123456789012:config-topic",
            "name": "default",
            "s3BucketName": "config-bucket-123456789012"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDeliveryChannels in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the delivery channel for the region and displays details.

```
Get-CFGDeliveryChannel -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object Name, S3BucketName,
 S3KeyPrefix,
 @{N="DeliveryFrequency";E={$_.ConfigSnapshotDeliveryProperties.DeliveryFrequency}}
```

Output:

```
Name    S3BucketName               S3KeyPrefix DeliveryFrequency
----    ------------               ----------- -----------------
default config-bucket-NA my          TwentyFour_Hours
```

- For API details, see DescribeDeliveryChannels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the delivery channel for the region and displays details.

```
Get-CFGDeliveryChannel -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object Name, S3BucketName,
 S3KeyPrefix,
 @{N="DeliveryFrequency";E={$_.ConfigSnapshotDeliveryProperties.DeliveryFrequency}}
```

Output:

```
Name    S3BucketName               S3KeyPrefix DeliveryFrequency
----    ------------               ----------- -----------------
default config-bucket-NA my          TwentyFour_Hours
```

- For API details, see DescribeDeliveryChannels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the evaluation results for an AWS Config rule

The following command returns the evaluation results for all of the resources that don't comply with an AWS Config rule named `InstanceTypesAreT2micro`:

```
aws configservice get-compliance-details-by-config-rule --config-rule-
name InstanceTypesAreT2micro --compliance-types NON_COMPLIANT
```

Output:

```
{
    "EvaluationResults": [
        {
            "EvaluationResultIdentifier": {
                "OrderingTimestamp": 1450314635.065,
                "EvaluationResultQualifier": {
                    "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
                    "ResourceId": "i-1a2b3c4d",
                    "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro"
                }
            },
            "ResultRecordedTime": 1450314645.261,
            "ConfigRuleInvokedTime": 1450314642.948,
            "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
        },
        {
            "EvaluationResultIdentifier": {
                "OrderingTimestamp": 1450314635.065,
                "EvaluationResultQualifier": {
                    "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
                    "ResourceId": "i-2a2b3c4d",
                    "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro"
                }
            },
            "ResultRecordedTime": 1450314645.18,
            "ConfigRuleInvokedTime": 1450314642.902,
            "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
        },
        {
            "EvaluationResultIdentifier": {
                "OrderingTimestamp": 1450314635.065,
                "EvaluationResultQualifier": {
                    "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
                    "ResourceId": "i-3a2b3c4d",
                    "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro"
                }
            },
            "ResultRecordedTime": 1450314643.346,
            "ConfigRuleInvokedTime": 1450314643.124,
            "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example obtains the evaluation results for the rule access-keys-rotated and returns the output grouped by compliance-type

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName access-keys-rotated | Group-
Object ComplianceType
```

Output:

```
Count Name                      Group
----- ----                      -----
    2 COMPLIANT                 {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult}
    5 NON_COMPLIANT             {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationRes...
```

Example 2: This example queries compliance details for the rule access-keys-rotated for COMPLIANT resources.

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName access-
keys-rotated -ComplianceType COMPLIANT | ForEach-Object
 {$_.EvaluationResultIdentifier.EvaluationResultQualifier}
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName      ResourceId            ResourceType
--------------      ----------            ------------
access-keys-rotated BCAB1CDJ2LITAPVEW3JAH AWS::IAM::User
access-keys-rotated BCAB1CDJ2LITL3EHREM4Q AWS::IAM::User
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example obtains the evaluation results for the rule access-keys-rotated and returns the output grouped by compliance-type

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName access-keys-rotated | Group-
Object ComplianceType
```

Output:

```
Count Name                      Group
----- ----                      -----
    2 COMPLIANT                 {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult}
    5 NON_COMPLIANT             {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationRes...
```

Example 2: This example queries compliance details for the rule access-keys-rotated for COMPLIANT resources.

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName access-
keys-rotated -ComplianceType COMPLIANT | ForEach-Object
 {$_.EvaluationResultIdentifier.EvaluationResultQualifier}
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName      ResourceId            ResourceType
--------------      ----------            ------------
access-keys-rotated BCAB1CDJ2LITAPVEW3JAH AWS::IAM::User
access-keys-rotated BCAB1CDJ2LITL3EHREM4Q AWS::IAM::User
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetComplianceDetailsByResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetComplianceDetailsByResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the evaluation results for an AWS resource

The following command returns the evaluation results for each rule with which the EC2 instance `i-1a2b3c4d` does not comply:

```
aws configservice get-compliance-details-by-resource --resource-
type AWS::EC2::Instance --resource-id i-1a2b3c4d --compliance-types NON_COMPLIANT
```

Output:

```
{
    "EvaluationResults": [
        {
            "EvaluationResultIdentifier": {
                "OrderingTimestamp": 1450314635.065,
                "EvaluationResultQualifier": {
                    "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
                    "ResourceId": "i-1a2b3c4d",
                    "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro"
                }
            },
            "ResultRecordedTime": 1450314643.288,
            "ConfigRuleInvokedTime": 1450314643.034,
            "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
        },
        {
            "EvaluationResultIdentifier": {
                "OrderingTimestamp": 1450314635.065,
                "EvaluationResultQualifier": {
                    "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
                    "ResourceId": "i-1a2b3c4d",
                    "ConfigRuleName": "RequiredTagForEC2Instances"
                }
            },
            "ResultRecordedTime": 1450314645.261,
            "ConfigRuleInvokedTime": 1450314642.948,
            "ComplianceType": "NON_COMPLIANT"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example evaulation results for the given resource.

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByResource -ResourceId ABCD5STJ4EFGHIVEW6JAH -
ResourceType 'AWS::IAM::User'
```

Output:

```
Annotation                 :
ComplianceType             : COMPLIANT
ConfigRuleInvokedTime      : 8/25/2019 11:34:56 PM
EvaluationResultIdentifier :
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResultIdentifier
ResultRecordedTime         : 8/25/2019 11:34:56 PM
ResultToken                :
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example evaulation results for the given resource.

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByResource -ResourceId ABCD5STJ4EFGHIVEW6JAH -
ResourceType 'AWS::IAM::User'
```

Output:

```
Annotation                 :
ComplianceType             : COMPLIANT
ConfigRuleInvokedTime      : 8/25/2019 11:34:56 PM
EvaluationResultIdentifier :
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResultIdentifier
```

```
ResultRecordedTime          : 8/25/2019 11:34:56 PM
ResultToken                 :
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the compliance summary for your AWS Config rules

The following command returns the number of rules that are compliant and the number that are noncompliant:

```
aws configservice get-compliance-summary-by-config-rule
```

In the output, the value for each `CappedCount` attribute indicates how many rules are compliant or noncompliant.

Output:

```
{
    "ComplianceSummary": {
        "NonCompliantResourceCount": {
            "CappedCount": 3,
            "CapExceeded": false
        },
        "ComplianceSummaryTimestamp": 1452204131.493,
        "CompliantResourceCount": {
            "CappedCount": 2,
            "CapExceeded": false
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample returns the number of Config rules that are non-compliant.

```
Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByConfigRule -Select
 ComplianceSummary.NonCompliantResourceCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       9
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns the number of Config rules that are non-compliant.

```
Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByConfigRule -Select
 ComplianceSummary.NonCompliantResourceCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       9
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the compliance summary for all resource types

The following command returns the number of AWS resources that are noncompliant and the number that are compliant:

```
aws configservice get-compliance-summary-by-resource-type
```

In the output, the value for each `CappedCount` attribute indicates how many resources are compliant or noncompliant.

Output:

```
{
    "ComplianceSummariesByResourceType": [
        {
            "ComplianceSummary": {
                "NonCompliantResourceCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 16,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                },
                "ComplianceSummaryTimestamp": 1453237464.543,
                "CompliantResourceCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 10,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

To get the compliance summary for a specific resource type

The following command returns the number of EC2 instances that are noncompliant and the number that are compliant:

```
aws configservice get-compliance-summary-by-resource-type --resource-
types AWS::EC2::Instance
```

In the output, the value for each `CappedCount` attribute indicates how many resources are compliant or noncompliant.

Output:

```
{
    "ComplianceSummariesByResourceType": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance",
            "ComplianceSummary": {
                "NonCompliantResourceCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 3,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                },
                "ComplianceSummaryTimestamp": 1452204923.518,
                "CompliantResourceCount": {
                    "CappedCount": 7,
                    "CapExceeded": false
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample returns the number of resources that are compliant or noncompliant and converts the output to json.

```
Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByResourceType -Select
 ComplianceSummariesByResourceType.ComplianceSummary | ConvertTo-Json
{
  "ComplianceSummaryTimestamp": "2019-12-14T06:14:49.778Z",
  "CompliantResourceCount": {
    "CapExceeded": false,
    "CappedCount": 2
  },
```

```
  "NonCompliantResourceCount": {
    "CapExceeded": true,
    "CappedCount": 100
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns the number of resources that are compliant or noncompliant and converts the output to json.

```
Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByResourceType -Select
 ComplianceSummariesByResourceType.ComplianceSummary | ConvertTo-Json
{
  "ComplianceSummaryTimestamp": "2019-12-14T06:14:49.778Z",
  "CompliantResourceCount": {
    "CapExceeded": false,
    "CappedCount": 2
  },
  "NonCompliantResourceCount": {
    "CapExceeded": true,
    "CappedCount": 100
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutConfigRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutConfigRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add an AWS managed Config rule

The following command provides JSON code to add an AWS managed Config rule:

```
aws configservice put-config-rule --config-rule file://
RequiredTagsForEC2Instances.json
```

`RequiredTagsForEC2Instances.json` is a JSON file that contains the rule configuration:

```
{
  "ConfigRuleName": "RequiredTagsForEC2Instances",
  "Description": "Checks whether the CostCenter and Owner tags are applied to EC2
 instances.",
  "Scope": {
    "ComplianceResourceTypes": [
      "AWS::EC2::Instance"
    ]
  },
  "Source": {
    "Owner": "AWS",
    "SourceIdentifier": "REQUIRED_TAGS"
  },
  "InputParameters": "{\"tag1Key\":\"CostCenter\",\"tag2Key\":\"Owner\"}"
}
```

For the `ComplianceResourceTypes` attribute, this JSON code limits the scope to resources of the `AWS::EC2::Instance` type, so AWS Config will evaluate only EC2 instances against the rule. Because the rule is a managed rule, the `Owner` attribute is set to `AWS`, and the `SourceIdentifier` attribute is set to the rule identifier, `REQUIRED_TAGS`. For the `InputParameters` attribute, the tag keys that the rule requires, `CostCenter` and `Owner`, are specified.

If the command succeeds, AWS Config returns no output. To verify the rule configuration, run the describe-config-rules command, and specify the rule name.

To add a customer managed Config rule

The following command provides JSON code to add a customer managed Config rule:

```
aws configservice put-config-rule --config-rule file://
InstanceTypesAreT2micro.json
```

`InstanceTypesAreT2micro.json` is a JSON file that contains the rule configuration:

```
{
```

```
  "ConfigRuleName": "InstanceTypesAreT2micro",
  "Description": "Evaluates whether EC2 instances are the t2.micro type.",
  "Scope": {
    "ComplianceResourceTypes": [
      "AWS::EC2::Instance"
    ]
  },
  "Source": {
    "Owner": "CUSTOM_LAMBDA",
    "SourceIdentifier": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:InstanceTypeCheck",
    "SourceDetails": [
      {
        "EventSource": "aws.config",
        "MessageType": "ConfigurationItemChangeNotification"
      }
    ]
  },
  "InputParameters": "{\"desiredInstanceType\":\"t2.micro\"}"
}
```

For the `ComplianceResourceTypes` attribute, this JSON code limits the scope to resources of the `AWS::EC2::Instance` type, so AWS Config will evaluate only EC2 instances against the rule. Because this rule is a customer managed rule, the `Owner` attribute is set to `CUSTOM_LAMBDA`, and the `SourceIdentifier` attribute is set to the ARN of the AWS Lambda function. The `SourceDetails` object is required. The parameters that are specified for the `InputParameters` attribute are passed to the AWS Lambda function when AWS Config invokes it to evaluate resources against the rule.

If the command succeeds, AWS Config returns no output. To verify the rule configuration, run the describe-config-rules command, and specify the rule name.

- For API details, see PutConfigRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ConfigWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates AWS Config functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, config_client):
        """
        :param config_client: A Boto3 AWS Config client.
        """
        self.config_client = config_client


    def put_config_rule(self, rule_name):
        """
        Sets a configuration rule that prohibits making Amazon S3 buckets
 publicly
        readable.

        :param rule_name: The name to give the rule.
        """
        try:
            self.config_client.put_config_rule(
                ConfigRule={
                    "ConfigRuleName": rule_name,
                    "Description": "S3 Public Read Prohibited Bucket Rule",
                    "Scope": {
                        "ComplianceResourceTypes": [
                            "AWS::S3::Bucket",
                        ],
                    },
                    "Source": {
                        "Owner": "AWS",
```

```
                        "SourceIdentifier": "S3_BUCKET_PUBLIC_READ_PROHIBITED",
                    },
                    "InputParameters": "{}",
                    "ConfigRuleState": "ACTIVE",
                }
            )
            logger.info("Created configuration rule %s.", rule_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create configuration rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutConfigRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutDeliveryChannel` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutDeliveryChannel`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a delivery channel

The following command provides the settings for the delivery channel as JSON code:

```
aws configservice put-delivery-channel --delivery-channel file://
deliveryChannel.json
```

The `deliveryChannel.json` file specifies the delivery channel attributes:

```
{
    "name": "default",
    "s3BucketName": "config-bucket-123456789012",
    "snsTopicARN": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:123456789012:config-topic",
    "configSnapshotDeliveryProperties": {
        "deliveryFrequency": "Twelve_Hours"
    }
}
```

This example sets the following attributes:

`name` - The name of the delivery channel. By default, AWS Config assigns the name `default` to a new delivery channel.You cannot update the delivery channel name with the `put-delivery-channel` command. For the steps to change the name, see Renaming the Delivery Channel.`s3BucketName` - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which AWS Config delivers configuration snapshots and configuration history files.If you specify a bucket that belongs to another AWS account, that bucket must have policies that grant access permissions to AWS Config. For more information, see Permissions for the Amazon S3 Bucket.

`snsTopicARN` - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon SNS topic to which AWS Config sends notifications about configuration changes.If you choose a topic from another account, the topic must have policies that grant access permissions to AWS Config. For more information, see Permissions for the Amazon SNS Topic.

`configSnapshotDeliveryProperties` - Contains the `deliveryFrequency` attribute, which sets how often AWS Config delivers configuration snapshots and how often it invokes evaluations for periodic Config rules.

If the command succeeds, AWS Config returns no output. To verify the settings of your delivery channel, run the describe-delivery-channels command.

- For API details, see PutDeliveryChannel in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the deliveryFrequency property of an existing delivery channel.

```
Write-CFGDeliveryChannel -ConfigSnapshotDeliveryProperties_DeliveryFrequency
 TwentyFour_Hours -DeliveryChannelName default -DeliveryChannel_S3BucketName
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DeliveryChannel_S3KeyPrefix my
```

- For API details, see PutDeliveryChannel in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the deliveryFrequency property of an existing delivery channel.

```
Write-CFGDeliveryChannel -ConfigSnapshotDeliveryProperties_DeliveryFrequency
 TwentyFour_Hours -DeliveryChannelName default -DeliveryChannel_S3BucketName
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DeliveryChannel_S3KeyPrefix my
```

- For API details, see PutDeliveryChannel in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Control Tower with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Control Tower User Guide** – More information about AWS Control Tower.
- **AWS Control Tower API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Control Tower actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS Control Tower

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Control Tower.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
using LogLevel = Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.LogLevel;

namespace ControlTowerActions;

/// <summary>
/// A class that introduces the AWS Control Tower by listing the
/// available baselines for the account.
/// </summary>
public class HelloControlTower
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Control Tower.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonControlTower>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloControlTower>();

        var amazonClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonControlTower>();

        Console.Clear();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, AWS Control Tower! Let's list available
 baselines:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

        try
        {
            var baselinesPaginator = amazonClient.Paginators.ListBaselines(new
 ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"{baselines.Count} baseline(s) retrieved.");
            foreach (var baseline in baselines)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{baseline.Name}");
            }
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.AccessDeniedException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Access denied. Please ensure you have the
 necessary permissions.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from typing import Any, List


def hello_controltower(controltower_client: Any) -> None:
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Control Tower client
    and list all available baselines.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param controltower_client: A Boto3 AWS Control Tower Client object. This
 object wraps
                                the low-level AWS Control Tower service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS Control Tower! Let's list available baselines:\n")
    paginator = controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate()

    baseline_names: List[str] = []
    try:
        for page in page_iterator:
            for baseline in page["baselines"]:
                baseline_names.append(baseline["name"])

        print(f"{len(baseline_names)} baseline(s) retrieved.")
        for baseline_name in baseline_names:
            print(f"\t{baseline_name}")

    except controltower_client.exceptions.AccessDeniedException:
        print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary permissions.")
    except Exception as e:
```

```
        print(f"An error occurred: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_controltower(boto3.client("controltower"))
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS Control Tower
  - Learn the basics of AWS Control Tower with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs
    - Use DisableBaseline with an AWS SDK
    - Use DisableControl with an AWS SDK
    - Use EnableBaseline with an AWS SDK
    - Use EnableControl with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetBaselineOperation with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetControlOperation with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListBaselines with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListEnabledBaselines with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListEnabledControls with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListLandingZones with an AWS SDK
    - Use ResetEnabledBaseline with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Control Tower with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS Control Tower
- Learn the basics of AWS Control Tower with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs

- Use DisableBaseline with an AWS SDK
- Use DisableControl with an AWS SDK
- Use EnableBaseline with an AWS SDK
- Use EnableControl with an AWS SDK
- Use GetBaselineOperation with an AWS SDK
- Use GetControlOperation with an AWS SDK
- Use ListBaselines with an AWS SDK
- Use ListEnabledBaselines with an AWS SDK
- Use ListEnabledControls with an AWS SDK
- Use ListLandingZones with an AWS SDK
- Use ResetEnabledBaseline with an AWS SDK

Hello AWS Control Tower

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Control Tower.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
using LogLevel = Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.LogLevel;

namespace ControlTowerActions;
```

```
/// <summary>
/// A class that introduces the AWS Control Tower by listing the
/// available baselines for the account.
/// </summary>
public class HelloControlTower
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Control Tower.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonControlTower>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloControlTower>();

        var amazonClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonControlTower>();

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, AWS Control Tower! Let's list available
 baselines:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

        try
        {
            var baselinesPaginator = amazonClient.Paginators.ListBaselines(new
 ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
```

```
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"{baselines.Count} baseline(s) retrieved.");
            foreach (var baseline in baselines)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{baseline.Name}");
            }
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.AccessDeniedException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Access denied. Please ensure you have the
 necessary permissions.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from typing import Any, List


def hello_controltower(controltower_client: Any) -> None:
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Control Tower client
```

```
    and list all available baselines.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param controltower_client: A Boto3 AWS Control Tower Client object. This
 object wraps
                                the low-level AWS Control Tower service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS Control Tower! Let's list available baselines:\n")
    paginator = controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate()

    baseline_names: List[str] = []
    try:
        for page in page_iterator:
            for baseline in page["baselines"]:
                baseline_names.append(baseline["name"])

        print(f"{len(baseline_names)} baseline(s) retrieved.")
        for baseline_name in baseline_names:
            print(f"\t{baseline_name}")

    except controltower_client.exceptions.AccessDeniedException:
        print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary permissions.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"An error occurred: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_controltower(boto3.client("controltower"))
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS Control Tower with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- List landing zones.
- List, enable, get, reset, and disable baselines.
- List, enable, get, and disable controls.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Control Tower features.

```
using Amazon.ControlCatalog;
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;
using ControlTowerActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ControlTowerBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Scenario class for AWS Control Tower basics.
/// </summary>
public class ControlTowerBasics
{
    public static bool isInteractive = true;
    public static ILogger logger = null!;
    public static IAmazonOrganizations? orgClient = null;
    public static IAmazonSecurityTokenService? stsClient = null;
    public static ControlTowerWrapper? wrapper = null;
    private static string? ouArn;
    private static bool useLandingZone = false;

    /// <summary>
    /// Main entry point for the AWS Control Tower basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonControlTower>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonControlCatalog>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonOrganizations>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonSecurityTokenService>()
                .AddTransient<ControlTowerWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<ControlTowerBasics>();

        wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<ControlTowerWrapper>();
        orgClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonOrganizations>();
        stsClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSecurityTokenService>();

        await RunScenario();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Runs the example scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task RunScenario()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("\tWelcome to the AWS Control Tower with ControlCatalog
example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("This demo will walk you through working with AWS
Control Tower for landing zones,");
        Console.WriteLine("managing baselines, and working with controls.");

        try
        {
            var accountId = (await stsClient!.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
GetCallerIdentityRequest())).Account;
            Console.WriteLine($"\nAccount ID: {accountId}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\nSome demo operations require the use of a
 landing zone.");
            Console.WriteLine("You can use an existing landing zone or opt out of
 these operations in the demo.");
            Console.WriteLine("For instructions on how to set up a landing
 zone,");
            Console.WriteLine("see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/controltower/
latest/userguide/getting-started-from-console.html");

            // List available landing zones
            var landingZones = await wrapper!.ListLandingZonesAsync();
            if (landingZones.Count > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nAvailable Landing Zones:");
                for (int i = 0; i < landingZones.Count; i++)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{i + 1}. {landingZones[i].Arn}");
                }

                Console.Write($"\nDo you want to use the first landing zone in
 the list ({landingZones[0].Arn})? (y/n): ");
                if (GetUserConfirmation())
                {
                    useLandingZone = true;
                    Console.WriteLine($"Using landing zone:
 {landingZones[0].Arn}");
                    ouArn = await SetupOrganizationAsync();
                }
            }

            // Managing Baselines
            Console.WriteLine("\nManaging Baselines:");
            var baselines = await wrapper.ListBaselinesAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\nListing available Baselines:");
            BaselineSummary? controlTowerBaseline = null;
            foreach (var baseline in baselines)
            {
                if (baseline.Name == "AWSControlTowerBaseline")
                    controlTowerBaseline = baseline;
                Console.WriteLine($"  - {baseline.Name}");
            }

            EnabledBaselineSummary? identityCenterBaseline = null;
            string? baselineArn = null;
```

```
            if (useLandingZone && ouArn != null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nListing enabled baselines:");
                var enabledBaselines = await wrapper.ListEnabledBaselinesAsync();
                foreach (var baseline in enabledBaselines)
                {
                    if (baseline.BaselineIdentifier.Contains("baseline/
LN25R72TTG6IGPTQ"))
                        identityCenterBaseline = baseline;
                    Console.WriteLine($"  - {baseline.BaselineIdentifier}");
                }

                if (controlTowerBaseline != null)
                {
                    Console.Write("\nDo you want to enable the Control Tower
 Baseline? (y/n): ");
                    if (GetUserConfirmation())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnabling Control Tower Baseline.");
                        var icBaselineArn = identityCenterBaseline?.Arn;
                        baselineArn = await wrapper.EnableBaselineAsync(ouArn,
                            controlTowerBaseline.Arn, "4.0", icBaselineArn ??
 "");
                        var alreadyEnabled = false;
                        if (baselineArn != null)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine($"Enabled baseline ARN:
 {baselineArn}");
                        }
                        else
                        {
                            // Find the enabled baseline
                            foreach (var enabled in enabledBaselines)
                            {
                                if (enabled.BaselineIdentifier ==
 controlTowerBaseline.Arn)
                                {
                                    baselineArn = enabled.Arn;
                                    break;
                                }
                            }

                            alreadyEnabled = true;
```

```
                            Console.WriteLine("No change, the selected baseline
was already enabled.");
                        }

                        if (baselineArn != null)
                        {
                            Console.Write("\nDo you want to reset the Control
Tower Baseline? (y/n): ");
                            if (GetUserConfirmation())
                            {
                                Console.WriteLine($"\nResetting Control Tower
Baseline: {baselineArn}");
                                var operationId = await
wrapper.ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(baselineArn);
                                Console.WriteLine($"Reset baseline operation id:
{operationId}");
                            }

                            Console.Write("\nDo you want to disable the Control
Tower Baseline? (y/n): ");
                            if (GetUserConfirmation())
                            {
                                Console.WriteLine($"Disabling baseline ARN:
{baselineArn}");
                                var operationId = await
wrapper.DisableBaselineAsync(baselineArn);
                                Console.WriteLine($"Disabled baseline operation
id: {operationId}");
                                if (alreadyEnabled)
                                {
                                    Console.WriteLine($"\nRe-enabling Control
Tower Baseline: {baselineArn}");
                                    // Re-enable the Control Tower baseline if it
was originally enabled.
                                    await wrapper.EnableBaselineAsync(ouArn,
                                        controlTowerBaseline.Arn, "4.0",
icBaselineArn ?? "");
                                }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
            // Managing Controls
            Console.WriteLine("\nManaging Controls:");
            var controls = await wrapper.ListControlsAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\nListing first 5 available Controls:");
            for (int i = 0; i < Math.Min(5, controls.Count); i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{i + 1}. {controls[i].Name} -
 {controls[i].Arn}");
            }

            if (useLandingZone && ouArn != null)
            {
                var enabledControls = await
 wrapper.ListEnabledControlsAsync(ouArn);
                Console.WriteLine("\nListing enabled controls:");
                for (int i = 0; i < enabledControls.Count; i++)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{i + 1}.
 {enabledControls[i].ControlIdentifier}");
                }

                // Find first non-enabled control
                var enabledControlArns = enabledControls.Select(c =>
 c.Arn).ToHashSet();
                var controlArn = controls.FirstOrDefault(c => !
enabledControlArns.Contains(c.Arn))?.Arn;

                if (controlArn != null)
                {
                    Console.Write($"\nDo you want to enable the control
 {controlArn}? (y/n): ");
                    if (GetUserConfirmation())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\nEnabling control: {controlArn}");
                        var operationId = await
 wrapper.EnableControlAsync(controlArn, ouArn);
                        if (operationId != null)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine($"Enabled control with operation
 id: {operationId}");

                            Console.Write("\nDo you want to disable the control?
 (y/n): ");
                            if (GetUserConfirmation())
```

```
                            {
                                Console.WriteLine("\nDisabling the control...");
                                var disableOpId = await
wrapper.DisableControlAsync(controlArn, ouArn);
                                Console.WriteLine($"Disable operation ID:
{disableOpId}");
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

            Console.WriteLine("\nThis concludes the example scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine("Thanks for watching!");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred during the Control Tower
scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sets up AWS Organizations and creates or finds a Sandbox OU.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the Sandbox organizational unit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupOrganizationAsync()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\nChecking organization status...");

        try
        {
            var orgResponse = await orgClient!.DescribeOrganizationAsync(new
DescribeOrganizationRequest());
            var orgId = orgResponse.Organization.Id;
            Console.WriteLine($"Account is part of organization: {orgId}");
        }
        catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No organization found. Creating a new
organization...");
```

```
            var createResponse = await orgClient!.CreateOrganizationAsync(new
 CreateOrganizationRequest { FeatureSet = OrganizationFeatureSet.ALL });
            var orgId = createResponse.Organization.Id;
            Console.WriteLine($"Created new organization: {orgId}");
        }

        // Look for Sandbox OU
        var roots = await orgClient.ListRootsAsync(new ListRootsRequest());
        var rootId = roots.Roots[0].Id;

        Console.WriteLine("Checking for Sandbox OU...");
        var ous = await orgClient.ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync(new
 ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentRequest { ParentId = rootId });
        var sandboxOu = ous.OrganizationalUnits.FirstOrDefault(ou => ou.Name ==
 "Sandbox");

        if (sandboxOu == null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Creating Sandbox OU...");
            var createOuResponse = await
 orgClient.CreateOrganizationalUnitAsync(new CreateOrganizationalUnitRequest
 { ParentId = rootId, Name = "Sandbox" });
            sandboxOu = createOuResponse.OrganizationalUnit;
            Console.WriteLine($"Created new Sandbox OU: {sandboxOu.Id}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Found existing Sandbox OU: {sandboxOu.Id}");
        }

        return sandboxOu.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets user confirmation by waiting for input or returning true if not
 interactive.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if user enters 'y' or if isInteractive is false, otherwise
 false.</returns>
    private static bool GetUserConfirmation()
    {
        return Console.ReadLine()?.ToLower() == "y" || !isInteractive;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
using Amazon.ControlCatalog;
using Amazon.ControlCatalog.Model;
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using ValidationException = Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ValidationException;

namespace ControlTowerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Methods to perform AWS Control Tower actions.
/// </summary>
public class ControlTowerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonControlTower _controlTowerService;
    private readonly IAmazonControlCatalog _controlCatalogService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the wrapper class containing AWS Control Tower actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlTowerService">The AWS Control Tower client object.</
param>
    /// <param name="controlCatalogService">The AWS Control Catalog client
 object.</param>
    public ControlTowerWrapper(IAmazonControlTower controlTowerService,
 IAmazonControlCatalog controlCatalogService)
    {
        _controlTowerService = controlTowerService;
        _controlCatalogService = controlCatalogService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the AWS Control Tower landing zones for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of LandingZoneSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<LandingZoneSummary>> ListLandingZonesAsync()
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var landingZones = new List<LandingZoneSummary>();

            var landingZonesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListLandingZones(new ListLandingZonesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in landingZonesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                landingZones.AddRange(response.LandingZones);
            }

            return landingZones;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List all baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BaselineSummary>> ListBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

            var baselinesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListBaselines(new ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            return baselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list baselines. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List all enabled baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledBaselineSummary>> ListEnabledBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var enabledBaselines = new List<EnabledBaselineSummary>();

            var enabledBaselinesPaginator =
 _controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledBaselines(new
 ListEnabledBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in enabledBaselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledBaselines.AddRange(response.EnabledBaselines);
            }

            return enabledBaselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a baseline for the specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="baselineIdentifier">The identifier of baseline to enable.</
param>
    /// <param name="baselineVersion">The version of baseline to enable.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="identityCenterBaseline">The identifier of identity center
baseline if it is enabled.</param>
   /// <returns>The enabled baseline ARN or null if already enabled.</returns>
   public async Task<string?> EnableBaselineAsync(string targetIdentifier,
string baselineIdentifier, string baselineVersion, string
identityCenterBaseline)
   {
       try
       {
           var parameters = new List<EnabledBaselineParameter>
           {
               new EnabledBaselineParameter
               {
                   Key = "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                   Value = identityCenterBaseline
               }
           };

           var request = new EnableBaselineRequest
           {
               BaselineIdentifier = baselineIdentifier,
               BaselineVersion = baselineVersion,
               TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier,
               Parameters = parameters
           };

           var response = await
_controlTowerService.EnableBaselineAsync(request);
           var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

           // Wait for operation to complete
           while (true)
           {
               var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
               Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
               if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
               {
                   break;
               }
               await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
           }

           return response.Arn;
```

```
        }
        catch (ValidationException ex) when (ex.Message.Contains("already
enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Baseline is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a baseline for a specific target and wait for the operation to
complete.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the baseline to
disable.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID or null if there was a conflict.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> DisableBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DisableBaselineRequest
            {
                EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.DisableBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
```

```
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Conflict disabling baseline: {ex.Message}.
Skipping disable step.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Reset an enabled baseline for a specific target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the enabled
baseline to reset.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ResetEnabledBaselineRequest
            {
                EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
```

```
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Target not found, unable to reset enabled
baseline.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a baseline operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the baseline operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<BaselineOperationStatus> GetBaselineOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetBaselineOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };
```

```
            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetBaselineOperationAsync(request);
            return response.BaselineOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's
why: {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List enabled controls for a target organizational unit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The target organizational unit
identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled control summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledControlSummary>>
ListEnabledControlsAsync(string targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ListEnabledControlsRequest
            {
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var enabledControls = new List<EnabledControlSummary>();

            var enabledControlsPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledControls(request);

            await foreach (var response in enabledControlsPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledControls.AddRange(response.EnabledControls);
            }
```

```
            return enabledControls;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return new List<EnabledControlSummary>();
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a control for a specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to enable.</param>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID or null if already enabled.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> EnableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(controlArn);
            Console.WriteLine(targetIdentifier);

            var request = new EnableControlRequest
            {
                ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.EnableControlAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
```

```
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
                if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ValidationException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("already enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable control. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a control for a specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to disable.</param>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<string> DisableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new DisableControlRequest
           {
               ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
               TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
           };

           var response = await
_controlTowerService.DisableControlAsync(request);
           var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

           // Wait for operation to complete
           while (true)
           {
               var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
               Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
               if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
               {
                   break;
               }
               await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
           }

           return operationId;
       }
       catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
       {
           Console.WriteLine("Control not found.");
           throw;
       }
       catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
       {
           Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable control. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
           throw;
       }
   }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a control operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the control operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<ControlOperationStatus> GetControlOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetControlOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetControlOperationAsync(request);
            return response.ControlOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get control operation status. Here's
why: {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List all controls in the Control Tower control catalog.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of control summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ControlSummary>> ListControlsAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var controls = new List<ControlSummary>();
```

```
            var controlsPaginator =
 _controlCatalogService.Paginators.ListControls(new
 Amazon.ControlCatalog.Model.ListControlsRequest());

            await foreach (var response in controlsPaginator.Responses)
            {
                controls.AddRange(response.Controls);
            }

            return controls;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlCatalogException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list controls. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateLandingZone
  - DeleteLandingZone
  - DisableBaseline
  - DisableControl
  - EnableBaseline
  - EnableControl
  - GetControlOperation
  - GetLandingZoneOperation
  - ListBaselines
  - ListEnabledBaselines
  - ListEnabledControls
  - ListLandingZones
  - ResetEnabledBaseline

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Control Tower features.

```
class ControlTowerScenario:
    IDENTITY_CENTER_BASELINE = "baseline/LN25R72TTG6IGPTQ"
    stack_name = ""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_wrapper: ControlTowerWrapper, org_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_wrapper: An instance of the ControlTowerWrapper
 class.
        :param org_client: A Boto3 Organization client.
        """
        self.controltower_wrapper = controltower_wrapper
        self.org_client = org_client
        self.stack = None
        self.ou_id = None
        self.ou_arn = None
        self.account_id = None
        self.landing_zone_id = None
        self.use_landing_zone = False

    def run_scenario(self) -> None:
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "\tWelcome to the AWS Control Tower with ControlCatalog example
 scenario."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
```

```
            "This demo will walk you through working with AWS Control Tower for
 landing zones,\n"
            "managing baselines, and working with controls."
        )

        self.account_id = boto3.client("sts").get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        print(
            "Some demo operations require the use of a landing zone. "
            "\nYou can use an existing landing zone or opt out of these
 operations in the demo."
            "\nFor instructions on how to set up a landing zone, "
            "\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/controltower/latest/userguide/
getting-started-from-console.html"
        )
        # List available landing zones
        landing_zones = self.controltower_wrapper.list_landing_zones()
        if landing_zones:
            print("\nAvailable Landing Zones:")
            for i, lz in enumerate(landing_zones, 1):
                print(f"{i} {lz['arn']}})")

            # Ask if user wants to use the first landing zone in the list
            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to use the first landing zone in the list
 ({landing_zones[0]['arn']})? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                self.use_landing_zone = True
                self.landing_zone_id = landing_zones[0]["arn"]
                print(f"Using landing zone ID: {self.landing_zone_id})")
                # Set up organization and get Sandbox OU ID.
                sandbox_ou_id = self.setup_organization()
                # Store the OU ID for use in the CloudFormation template.
                self.ou_id = sandbox_ou_id
            elif q.ask(
                f"Do you want to use a different existing Landing Zone for this
 demo? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                self.use_landing_zone = True
                self.landing_zone_id = q.ask("Enter landing zone id: ",
 q.non_empty)
                # Set up organization and get Sandbox OU ID.
```

```
                sandbox_ou_id = self.setup_organization()
                # Store the OU ID for use in the CloudFormation template.
                self.ou_id = sandbox_ou_id

        # List and Enable Baseline.
        print("\nManaging Baselines:")
        control_tower_baseline = None
        identity_center_baseline = None
        baselines = self.controltower_wrapper.list_baselines()
        print("\nListing available Baselines:")
        for baseline in baselines:
            if baseline["name"] == "AWSControlTowerBaseline":
                control_tower_baseline = baseline
            print(f"{baseline['name']}")

        if self.use_landing_zone:
            print("\nListing enabled baselines:")
            enabled_baselines =
self.controltower_wrapper.list_enabled_baselines()
            for baseline in enabled_baselines:
                # If the Identity Center baseline is enabled, the identifier must
be used for other baselines.
                if self.IDENTITY_CENTER_BASELINE in
baseline["baselineIdentifier"]:
                    identity_center_baseline = baseline
                print(f"{baseline['baselineIdentifier']}")

            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to enable the Control Tower Baseline? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print("\nEnabling Control Tower Baseline.")
                ic_baseline_arn = (
                    identity_center_baseline["arn"]
                    if identity_center_baseline
                    else None
                )
                baseline_arn = self.controltower_wrapper.enable_baseline(
                    self.ou_arn, ic_baseline_arn, control_tower_baseline["arn"],
"4.0"
                )
                if baseline_arn:
                    print(f"Enabled baseline ARN: {baseline_arn}")
                else:
```

```
                    # Find the enabled baseline so we can reset it.
                    for enabled_baseline in enabled_baselines:
                        if (
                            enabled_baseline["baselineIdentifier"]
                            == control_tower_baseline["arn"]
                        ):
                            baseline_arn = enabled_baseline["arn"]
                    print("No change, the selected baseline was already
enabled.")

                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to reset the Control Tower Baseline? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    print(f"\nResetting Control Tower Baseline. {baseline_arn}")
                    operation_id =
self.controltower_wrapper.reset_enabled_baseline(
                        baseline_arn
                    )
                    print(f"\nReset baseline operation id {operation_id}.")

                if baseline_arn and q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to disable the Control Tower Baseline? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    print(f"Disabling baseline ARN: {baseline_arn}")
                    operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.disable_baseline(
                        baseline_arn
                    )
                    print(f"\nDisabled baseline operation id {operation_id}.")

                    # Re-enable the baseline for the next step.
                    print("\nEnabling Control Tower Baseline.")
                    self.controltower_wrapper.enable_baseline(
                        self.ou_arn,
                        ic_baseline_arn,
                        control_tower_baseline["arn"],
                        "4.0",
                    )

        # List and Enable Controls.
        print("\nManaging Controls:")
        controls = self.controltower_wrapper.list_controls()
        print("\nListing first 5 available Controls:")
```

```
        for i, control in enumerate(controls[:5], 1):
            print(f"{i}. {control['Name']} - {control['Arn']}")

        if self.use_landing_zone:
            target_ou = self.ou_arn
            enabled_controls = self.controltower_wrapper.list_enabled_controls(
                target_ou
            )
            print("\nListing enabled controls:")
            for i, control in enumerate(enabled_controls, 1):
                print(f"{i}. {control['controlIdentifier']}")

            # Enable first non-enabled control as an example.
            enabled_control_arns = [control["arn"] for control in
enabled_controls]
            control_arn = next(
                control["Arn"]
                for control in controls
                if control["Arn"] not in enabled_control_arns
            )

            if control_arn and q.ask(
                f"Do you want to enable the control {control_arn}? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print(f"\nEnabling control: {control_arn}")
                operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.enable_control(
                    control_arn, target_ou
                )

                if operation_id:
                    print(f"Enabled control with operation id {operation_id}")

            if control_arn and q.ask(
                f"Do you want to disable the control? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print("\nDisabling the control...")
                operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.disable_control(
                    control_arn, target_ou
                )
                print(f"Disable operation ID: {operation_id}")

        print("\nThis concludes the example scenario.")
```

```
        print("Thanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)

    def setup_organization(self):
        """
        Checks if the current account is part of an organization and creates one
if needed.
        Also ensures a Sandbox OU exists and returns its ID.

        :return: The ID of the Sandbox OU
        """
        print("\nChecking organization status...")

        try:
            # Check if account is part of an organization
            org_response = self.org_client.describe_organization()
            org_id = org_response["Organization"]["Id"]
            print(f"Account is part of organization: {org_id}")

        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException":
                print("No organization found. Creating a new organization...")
                try:
                    create_response = self.org_client.create_organization(
                        FeatureSet="ALL"
                    )
                    org_id = create_response["Organization"]["Id"]
                    print(f"Created new organization: {org_id}")

                    # Wait for organization to be available.
                    waiter = self.org_client.get_waiter("organization_active")
                    waiter.wait(
                        Organization=org_id,
                        WaiterConfig={"Delay": 5, "MaxAttempts": 12},
                    )

                except ClientError as create_error:
                    logger.error(
                        "Couldn't create organization. Here's why: %s: %s",
                        create_error.response["Error"]["Code"],
                        create_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                    )
```

```
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe organization. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    error.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise

        # Look for Sandbox OU.
        sandbox_ou_id = None
        paginator = self.org_client.get_paginator(
            "list_organizational_units_for_parent"
        )

        try:
            # Get root ID first.
            roots = self.org_client.list_roots()["Roots"]
            if not roots:
                raise ValueError("No root found in organization")
            root_id = roots[0]["Id"]

            # Search for existing Sandbox OU.
            print("Checking for Sandbox OU...")
            for page in paginator.paginate(ParentId=root_id):
                for ou in page["OrganizationalUnits"]:
                    if ou["Name"] == "Sandbox":
                        sandbox_ou_id = ou["Id"]
                        self.ou_arn = ou["Arn"]
                        print(f"Found existing Sandbox OU: {sandbox_ou_id}")
                        break
                if sandbox_ou_id:
                    break

            # Create Sandbox OU if it doesn't exist.
            if not sandbox_ou_id:
                print("Creating Sandbox OU...")
                create_ou_response = self.org_client.create_organizational_unit(
                    ParentId=root_id, Name="Sandbox"
                )
                sandbox_ou_id = create_ou_response["OrganizationalUnit"]["Id"]
                print(f"Created new Sandbox OU: {sandbox_ou_id}")

                # Wait for OU to be available.
```

```
                waiter = self.org_client.get_waiter("organizational_unit_active")
                waiter.wait(
                    OrganizationalUnitId=sandbox_ou_id,
                    WaiterConfig={"Delay": 5, "MaxAttempts": 12},
                )

        except ClientError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't set up Sandbox OU. Here's why: %s: %s",
                error.response["Error"]["Code"],
                error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

        return sandbox_ou_id


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        org = boto3.client("organizations")
        control_tower_wrapper = ControlTowerWrapper.from_client()

        scenario = ControlTowerScenario(control_tower_wrapper, org)
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the scenario.")



class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all baselines.

        :return: List of baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
            baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                baselines.extend(page["baselines"])
            return baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def enable_baseline(
        self,
        target_identifier: str,
        identity_center_baseline: str,
        baseline_identifier: str,
        baseline_version: str,
    ):
        """
        Enables a baseline for the specified target if it's not already enabled.
```

```
        :param target_identifier: The ARN of the target.
        :param baseline_identifier: The identifier of baseline to enable.
        :param identity_center_baseline: The identifier of identity center
baseline if it is enabled.
        :param baseline_version: The version of baseline to enable.
        :return: The enabled baseline ARN or None if already enabled.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the baseline fails for reasons other
than it being already enabled.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_baseline(
                baselineIdentifier=baseline_identifier,
                baselineVersion=baseline_version,
                targetIdentifier=target_identifier,
                parameters=[
                    {
                        "key": "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                        "value": identity_center_baseline,
                    }
                ],
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["arn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException":
                if "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]:
                    print("Baseline is already enabled for this target")
                    return None
                else:
                    print(
                        "Unable to enable baseline due to validation exception:
%s: %s",
                        err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                        err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                    )
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_controls(self):
        """
        Lists all controls in the Control Tower control catalog.

        :return: List of controls.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controlcatalog_client.get_paginator("list_controls")
            controls = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                controls.extend(page["Controls"])
            return controls

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list controls. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def enable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Enables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to enable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
```

```
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            print(control_arn)
            print(target_identifier)
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id

        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException"
                and "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.info("Control is already enabled for this target")
                return None
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with
controls.")
                return None
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_control_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
```

```
        Gets the status of a control operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the control operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_control_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["controlOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get control operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def get_baseline_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
        Gets the status of a baseline operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the baseline operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_baseline_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["baselineOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
        raise


    def disable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to disable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Control not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def list_landing_zones(self):
        """
        Lists all landing zones.

        :return: List of landing zones.
```

```
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_landing_zones")
            landing_zones = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                landing_zones.extend(page["landingZones"])
            return landing_zones

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def list_enabled_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all enabled baselines.

        :return: List of enabled baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_baselines")
            enabled_baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                enabled_baselines.extend(page["enabledBaselines"])
            return enabled_baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def reset_enabled_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Resets an enabled baseline for a specific target.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the enabled
baseline to reset.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If resetting the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.reset_enabled_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )
            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)
            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def disable_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
```

```
        Disables a baseline for a specific target and waits for the operation to
 complete.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the baseline to
 disable.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["operationIdentifier"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                print(
                    f"Conflict disabling baseline: {err.response['Error']
['Message']}. Skipping disable step."
                )
                return None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def list_enabled_controls(self, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Lists all enabled controls for a specific target.

        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: List of enabled controls.
```

```
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        enabled_controls = []
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_controls")

            for page in paginator.paginate(targetIdentifier=target_identifier):
                enabled_controls.extend(page["enabledControls"])
            return enabled_controls

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
                return enabled_controls
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with
controls.")
                return enabled_controls
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateLandingZone
  - DeleteLandingZone
  - DisableBaseline

- DisableControl
- EnableBaseline
- EnableControl
- GetControlOperation
- GetLandingZoneOperation
- ListBaselines
- ListEnabledBaselines
- ListEnabledControls
- ListLandingZones
- ResetEnabledBaseline

Actions for AWS Control Tower using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Control Tower actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Control Tower API Reference.

Examples

- Use DisableBaseline with an AWS SDK
- Use DisableControl with an AWS SDK
- Use EnableBaseline with an AWS SDK
- Use EnableControl with an AWS SDK
- Use GetBaselineOperation with an AWS SDK
- Use GetControlOperation with an AWS SDK
- Use ListBaselines with an AWS SDK
- Use ListEnabledBaselines with an AWS SDK
- Use ListEnabledControls with an AWS SDK
- Use ListLandingZones with an AWS SDK
- Use ResetEnabledBaseline with an AWS SDK

Use `DisableBaseline` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DisableBaseline`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Disable a baseline for a specific target and wait for the operation to
complete.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the baseline to
disable.</param>
   /// <returns>The operation ID or null if there was a conflict.</returns>
   public async Task<string?> DisableBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new DisableBaselineRequest
           {
               EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
           };

           var response = await
_controlTowerService.DisableBaselineAsync(request);
           var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

           // Wait for operation to complete
           while (true)
```

```
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Conflict disabling baseline: {ex.Message}.
Skipping disable step.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableBaseline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def disable_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a baseline for a specific target and waits for the operation to
 complete.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the baseline to
 disable.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)
```

```
            return response["operationIdentifier"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                print(
                    f"Conflict disabling baseline: {err.response['Error']
['Message']}. Skipping disable step."
                )
                return None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DisableBaseline in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DisableControl` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DisableControl`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Disable a control for a specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to disable.</param>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DisableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DisableControlRequest
            {
                ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.DisableControlAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
                if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable control. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableControl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)
```

```
    def disable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to disable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Control not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableControl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `EnableBaseline` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `EnableBaseline`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a baseline for the specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="baselineIdentifier">The identifier of baseline to enable.</
param>
    /// <param name="baselineVersion">The version of baseline to enable.</param>
    /// <param name="identityCenterBaseline">The identifier of identity center
 baseline if it is enabled.</param>
    /// <returns>The enabled baseline ARN or null if already enabled.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> EnableBaselineAsync(string targetIdentifier,
 string baselineIdentifier, string baselineVersion, string
 identityCenterBaseline)
    {
        try
        {
            var parameters = new List<EnabledBaselineParameter>
            {
                new EnabledBaselineParameter
                {
                    Key = "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                    Value = identityCenterBaseline
                }
            };

            var request = new EnableBaselineRequest
```

```
            {
                BaselineIdentifier = baselineIdentifier,
                BaselineVersion = baselineVersion,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier,
                Parameters = parameters
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.EnableBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return response.Arn;
        }
        catch (ValidationException ex) when (ex.Message.Contains("already
enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Baseline is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableBaseline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def enable_baseline(
        self,
        target_identifier: str,
        identity_center_baseline: str,
        baseline_identifier: str,
        baseline_version: str,
    ):
        """
        Enables a baseline for the specified target if it's not already enabled.
```

```
        :param target_identifier: The ARN of the target.
        :param baseline_identifier: The identifier of baseline to enable.
        :param identity_center_baseline: The identifier of identity center
baseline if it is enabled.
        :param baseline_version: The version of baseline to enable.
        :return: The enabled baseline ARN or None if already enabled.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the baseline fails for reasons other
than it being already enabled.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_baseline(
                baselineIdentifier=baseline_identifier,
                baselineVersion=baseline_version,
                targetIdentifier=target_identifier,
                parameters=[
                    {
                        "key": "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                        "value": identity_center_baseline,
                    }
                ],
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["arn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException":
                if "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]:
                    print("Baseline is already enabled for this target")
                    return None
                else:
                    print(
                        "Unable to enable baseline due to validation exception:
%s: %s",
                        err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                        err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                    )
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableBaseline in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `EnableControl` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `EnableControl`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Enable a control for a specified target.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to enable.</param>
   /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
   /// <returns>The operation ID or null if already enabled.</returns>
   public async Task<string?> EnableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
   {
       try
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine(controlArn);
            Console.WriteLine(targetIdentifier);

            var request = new EnableControlRequest
            {
                ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.EnableControlAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
                if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ValidationException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("already enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable control. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableControl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)
```

```
    def enable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Enables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to enable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            print(control_arn)
            print(target_identifier)
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id

        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException"
                and "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.info("Control is already enabled for this target")
                return None
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with
controls.")
                return None
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableControl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetBaselineOperation` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetBaselineOperation`.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get the status of a baseline operation.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the baseline operation.</param>
   /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
   public async Task<BaselineOperationStatus> GetBaselineOperationAsync(string
operationId)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new GetBaselineOperationRequest
           {
               OperationIdentifier = operationId
           };

           var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetBaselineOperationAsync(request);
           return response.BaselineOperation.Status;
```

```
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's
 why: {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBaselineOperation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
```

```
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def get_baseline_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
        Gets the status of a baseline operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the baseline operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_baseline_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["baselineOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetBaselineOperation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetControlOperation` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetControlOperation`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a control operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the control operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<ControlOperationStatus> GetControlOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetControlOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetControlOperationAsync(request);
            return response.ControlOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get control operation status. Here's
why: {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetControlOperation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def get_control_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
        Gets the status of a control operation.
```

```
        :param operation_id: The ID of the control operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_control_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["controlOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get control operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetControlOperation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListBaselines` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListBaselines`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BaselineSummary>> ListBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

            var baselinesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListBaselines(new ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            return baselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list baselines. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all baselines.

        :return: List of baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
```

```
            baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                baselines.extend(page["baselines"])
            return baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListEnabledBaselines` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListEnabledBaselines`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all enabled baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledBaselineSummary>> ListEnabledBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var enabledBaselines = new List<EnabledBaselineSummary>();

            var enabledBaselinesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledBaselines(new
ListEnabledBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in enabledBaselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledBaselines.AddRange(response.EnabledBaselines);
            }

            return enabledBaselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_enabled_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all enabled baselines.

        :return: List of enabled baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
 self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_baselines")
            enabled_baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                enabled_baselines.extend(page["enabledBaselines"])
            return enabled_baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListEnabledControls` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListEnabledControls`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// List enabled controls for a target organizational unit.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The target organizational unit
identifier.</param>
   /// <returns>A list of enabled control summaries.</returns>
   public async Task<List<EnabledControlSummary>>
ListEnabledControlsAsync(string targetIdentifier)
   {
       try
       {
```

```
            var request = new ListEnabledControlsRequest
            {
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var enabledControls = new List<EnabledControlSummary>();

            var enabledControlsPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledControls(request);

            await foreach (var response in enabledControlsPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledControls.AddRange(response.EnabledControls);
            }

            return enabledControls;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return new List<EnabledControlSummary>();
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledControls in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_enabled_controls(self, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Lists all enabled controls for a specific target.

        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: List of enabled controls.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        enabled_controls = []
```

```
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_controls")

            for page in paginator.paginate(targetIdentifier=target_identifier):
                enabled_controls.extend(page["enabledControls"])
            return enabled_controls

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
                return enabled_controls
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with
controls.")
                return enabled_controls
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledControls in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListLandingZones` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListLandingZones`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the AWS Control Tower landing zones for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of LandingZoneSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<LandingZoneSummary>> ListLandingZonesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var landingZones = new List<LandingZoneSummary>();

            var landingZonesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListLandingZones(new ListLandingZonesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in landingZonesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                landingZones.AddRange(response.LandingZones);
            }

            return landingZones;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListLandingZones in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_landing_zones(self):
        """
        Lists all landing zones.

        :return: List of landing zones.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
```

```
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_landing_zones")
            landing_zones = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                landing_zones.extend(page["landingZones"])
            return landing_zones

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListLandingZones in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ResetEnabledBaseline` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ResetEnabledBaseline`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reset an enabled baseline for a specific target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the enabled
baseline to reset.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ResetEnabledBaselineRequest
            {
                EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }
```

```
            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Target not found, unable to reset enabled
 baseline.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResetEnabledBaseline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client:
 boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
```

```
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def reset_enabled_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Resets an enabled baseline for a specific target.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the enabled
baseline to reset.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If resetting the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.reset_enabled_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )
            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)
            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ResetEnabledBaseline in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Firehose using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Data Firehose with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Firehose User Guide** – More information about Firehose.
- **Firehose API Reference** – Details about all available Firehose actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Firehose using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Firehose using AWS SDKs
    - Use PutRecord with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutRecordBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Firehose using AWS SDKs
  - Use Amazon Data Firehose to process individual and batch records

Basic examples for Firehose using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Data Firehose with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Firehose using AWS SDKs
  - Use PutRecord with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutRecordBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Firehose using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Firehose actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Firehose API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Firehose using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Data Firehose API Reference.

Examples

- Use PutRecord with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecordBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `PutRecord` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRecord`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Put records to Firehose

CLI

AWS CLI

To write a record to a stream

The following `put-record` example writes data to a stream. The data is encoded in Base64 format.

```
aws firehose put-record \
```

```
    --delivery-stream-name my-stream \
    --record '{"Data":"SGVsbG8gd29ybGQ="}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "RecordId": "RjB5K/nnoGFHqwTsZlNd/
TTqvjE8V5dsyXZTQn2JXrdpMTOwssyEb6nfC8fwf1whhwnItt4mvrn+gsqeK5jB7QjuLg283+Ps4Sz/
j1Xujv31iDhnPdaLw4BOyM9Amv7PcCuB2079RuM0NhoakbyUymlwY8yt20G8X2420wu1jlFafhci4erAt7QhDEvpw
    "Encrypted": false
}
```

For more information, see Sending Data to an Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose Delivery Stream in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Puts a record to the specified Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream.
     *
     * @param record The record to be put to the delivery stream. The record must
be a {@link Map} of String keys and Object values.
     * @param deliveryStreamName The name of the Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose
delivery stream to which the record should be put.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input record or delivery stream
name is null or empty.
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error putting the record to the
delivery stream.
     */
```

```
    public static void putRecord(Map<String, Object> record, String
 deliveryStreamName) {
        if (record == null || deliveryStreamName == null ||
 deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: record or delivery
 stream name cannot be null/empty");
        }
        try {
            String jsonRecord = new ObjectMapper().writeValueAsString(record);
            Record firehoseRecord = Record.builder()

 .data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                .build();

            PutRecordRequest putRecordRequest = PutRecordRequest.builder()
                .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
                .record(firehoseRecord)
                .build();

            getFirehoseClient().putRecord(putRecordRequest);
            System.out.println("Record sent: " + jsonRecord);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record: " + e.getMessage(),
 e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class FirehoseClient:
    """
```

```
    AWS Firehose client to send records and monitor metrics.

    Attributes:
        config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
region.
        delivery_stream_name (str): Name of the Firehose delivery stream.
        region (str): AWS region for Firehose and CloudWatch clients.
        firehose (boto3.client): Boto3 Firehose client.
        cloudwatch (boto3.client): Boto3 CloudWatch client.
    """

    def __init__(self, config):
        """
        Initialize the FirehoseClient.

        Args:
            config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
region.
        """
        self.config = config
        self.delivery_stream_name = config.delivery_stream_name
        self.region = config.region
        self.firehose = boto3.client("firehose", region_name=self.region)
        self.cloudwatch = boto3.client("cloudwatch", region_name=self.region)


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record(self, record: dict):
        """
        Put individual records to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            record (dict): The data record to be sent to Firehose.

        This method attempts to send an individual record to the Firehose
delivery stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        try:
            entry = self._create_record_entry(record)
            response = self.firehose.put_record(
                DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name, Record=entry
```

```
            )
            self._log_response(response, entry)
        except Exception:
            logger.info(f"Fail record: {record}.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutRecordBatch` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRecordBatch`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Put records to Firehose

CLI

AWS CLI

To write multiple records to a stream

The following `put-record-batch` example writes three records to a stream. The data is encoded in Base64 format.

```
aws firehose put-record-batch \
    --delivery-stream-name my-stream \
    --records file://records.json
```

Contents of `myfile.json`:

```
[
    {"Data": "Rmlyc3QgdGhpbmc="},
    {"Data": "U2Vjb25kIHRoaW5n"},
    {"Data": "VGhpcmQgdGhpbmc="}
]
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedPutCount": 0,
    "Encrypted": false,
    "RequestResponses": [
        {
            "RecordId": "9D2OJ6t2EqCTZTXwGzeSv/EVHxRoRCw89xd+o3+sXg8DhYOaWKPSmZy/
CGlRVEys1u1xbeKh6VofEYKkoeiDrcjrxhQp9iF7sUW7pujiMEQ5LzlrzCkGosxQn
+3boDnURDEaD42V7GiixpOyLJkYZcae1i7HzlCEoy9LJhMr8EjDSi4Om/9Vc2uhwwuAtGE0XKpxJ2WD7ZRWtAnYlK
        },
        {
            "RecordId": "jFirejqxCLlK5xjH/UNmlMVcjktEN76I7916X9PaZ
+PVaOSXDfU1WGOqEZhxq2js7xcZ552eoeDxsuTU1MSq9nZTbVfb6cQTIXnm/
GsuF37Uhg67GKmR5z90l6XKJ+/
+pDloFv7Hh9a3oUS6wYm3DcNRLTHHAimANp1PhkQvWpvLRfzbuCUkBphR2QVzhP9OiHLbzGwy8/
DfH8sqWEUYASNJKS8GXP5s"
        },
        {
            "RecordId":
 "oy0amQ40o5Y2YV4vxzufdcMOOw6n3EPr3tpPJGoYVNKH4APPVqNcbUgefo1stEFRg4hTLrf2k6eliHu/9+YJ5R3
DTBt3qBlmTj7Xq8SKVbO1S7YvMTpWkMKA86f8JfmT8BMKoMb4XZS/sOkQLe+qh0sYKXWl"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Sending Data to an Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose Delivery Stream in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Puts a batch of records to an Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream.
    *
    * @param records           a list of maps representing the records to be
sent
    * @param batchSize         the maximum number of records to include in each
batch
    * @param deliveryStreamName the name of the Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream
    * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input parameters are invalid (null
or empty)
    * @throws RuntimeException         if there is an error putting the record
batch
    */
   public static void putRecordBatch(List<Map<String, Object>> records, int
batchSize, String deliveryStreamName) {
       if (records == null || records.isEmpty() || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: records or
delivery stream name cannot be null/empty");
       }
       ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();

       try {
           for (int i = 0; i < records.size(); i += batchSize) {
               List<Map<String, Object>> batch = records.subList(i, Math.min(i +
batchSize, records.size()));

               List<Record> batchRecords = batch.stream().map(record -> {
                   try {
                       String jsonRecord =
objectMapper.writeValueAsString(record);
                       return Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                           .build();
                   } catch (Exception e) {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Error creating Firehose
record", e);
                   }
               }).collect(Collectors.toList());

               PutRecordBatchRequest request = PutRecordBatchRequest.builder()
                   .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
```

```
                    .records(batchRecords)
                    .build();

                PutRecordBatchResponse response =
 getFirehoseClient().putRecordBatch(request);

                if (response.failedPutCount() > 0) {
                    response.requestResponses().stream()
                        .filter(r -> r.errorCode() != null)
                        .forEach(r -> System.err.println("Failed record: " +
 r.errorMessage()));
                }
                System.out.println("Batch sent with size: " +
 batchRecords.size());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record batch: " +
 e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class FirehoseClient:
    """
    AWS Firehose client to send records and monitor metrics.

    Attributes:
        config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
 region.
        delivery_stream_name (str): Name of the Firehose delivery stream.
```

```
        region (str): AWS region for Firehose and CloudWatch clients.
        firehose (boto3.client): Boto3 Firehose client.
        cloudwatch (boto3.client): Boto3 CloudWatch client.
    """

    def __init__(self, config):
        """
        Initialize the FirehoseClient.

        Args:
            config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
region.
        """
        self.config = config
        self.delivery_stream_name = config.delivery_stream_name
        self.region = config.region
        self.firehose = boto3.client("firehose", region_name=self.region)
        self.cloudwatch = boto3.client("cloudwatch", region_name=self.region)


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record_batch(self, data: list, batch_size: int = 500):
        """
        Put records in batches to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            data (list): List of data records to be sent to Firehose.
            batch_size (int): Number of records to send in each batch. Default is
500.

        This method attempts to send records in batches to the Firehose delivery
stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        for i in range(0, len(data), batch_size):
            batch = data[i : i + batch_size]
            record_dicts = [{"Data": json.dumps(record)} for record in batch]
            try:
                response = self.firehose.put_record_batch(
                    DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name,
Records=record_dicts
                )
```

```
                self._log_batch_response(response, len(batch))
            except Exception as e:
                logger.info(f"Failed to send batch of {len(batch)} records.
 Error: {e}")
```

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn put_record_batch(
    client: &Client,
    stream: &str,
    data: Vec<Record>,
) -> Result<PutRecordBatchOutput, SdkError<PutRecordBatchError>> {
    client
        .put_record_batch()
        .delivery_stream_name(stream)
        .set_records(Some(data))
        .send()
        .await
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Firehose using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Firehose with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions

within Firehose or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Use Amazon Data Firehose to process individual and batch records

Use Amazon Data Firehose to process individual and batch records

The following code examples show how to use Firehose to process individual and batch records.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example puts individual and batch records to Firehose.

```
/**
 * Amazon Firehose Scenario example using Java V2 SDK.
 *
 * Demonstrates individual and batch record processing,
 * and monitoring Firehose delivery stream metrics.
 */
public class FirehoseScenario {

    private static FirehoseClient firehoseClient;
    private static CloudWatchClient cloudWatchClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <deliveryStreamName>
                Where:
```

```
                    deliveryStreamName - The Firehose delivery stream name.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String deliveryStreamName = args[0];

        try {
            // Read and parse sample data.
            String jsonContent = readJsonFile("sample_records.json");
            ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
            List<Map<String, Object>> sampleData =
objectMapper.readValue(jsonContent, new TypeReference<>() {});

            // Process individual records.
            System.out.println("Processing individual records...");
            sampleData.subList(0, 100).forEach(record -> {
                try {
                    putRecord(record, deliveryStreamName);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    System.err.println("Error processing record: " +
e.getMessage());
                }
            });

            // Monitor metrics.
            monitorMetrics(deliveryStreamName);

            // Process batch records.
            System.out.println("Processing batch records...");
            putRecordBatch(sampleData.subList(100, sampleData.size()), 500,
deliveryStreamName);
            monitorMetrics(deliveryStreamName);

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Scenario failed: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            closeClients();
        }
    }
```

```
    private static FirehoseClient getFirehoseClient() {
        if (firehoseClient == null) {
            firehoseClient = FirehoseClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return firehoseClient;
    }

    private static CloudWatchClient getCloudWatchClient() {
        if (cloudWatchClient == null) {
            cloudWatchClient = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return cloudWatchClient;
    }

    /**
     * Puts a record to the specified Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream.
     *
     * @param record The record to be put to the delivery stream. The record must
be a {@link Map} of String keys and Object values.
     * @param deliveryStreamName The name of the Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose
delivery stream to which the record should be put.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input record or delivery stream
name is null or empty.
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error putting the record to the
delivery stream.
     */
    public static void putRecord(Map<String, Object> record, String
deliveryStreamName) {
        if (record == null || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: record or delivery
stream name cannot be null/empty");
        }
        try {
            String jsonRecord = new ObjectMapper().writeValueAsString(record);
            Record firehoseRecord = Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                .build();
```

```
            PutRecordRequest putRecordRequest = PutRecordRequest.builder()
                .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
                .record(firehoseRecord)
                .build();

            getFirehoseClient().putRecord(putRecordRequest);
            System.out.println("Record sent: " + jsonRecord);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record: " + e.getMessage(),
e);
        }
    }


    /**
     * Puts a batch of records to an Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream.
     *
     * @param records           a list of maps representing the records to be
sent
     * @param batchSize         the maximum number of records to include in each
batch
     * @param deliveryStreamName the name of the Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input parameters are invalid (null
or empty)
     * @throws RuntimeException         if there is an error putting the record
batch
     */
    public static void putRecordBatch(List<Map<String, Object>> records, int
batchSize, String deliveryStreamName) {
        if (records == null || records.isEmpty() || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: records or
delivery stream name cannot be null/empty");
        }
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();

        try {
            for (int i = 0; i < records.size(); i += batchSize) {
                List<Map<String, Object>> batch = records.subList(i, Math.min(i +
batchSize, records.size()));
```

```
                List<Record> batchRecords = batch.stream().map(record -> {
                    try {
                        String jsonRecord =
objectMapper.writeValueAsString(record);
                        return Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                            .build();
                    } catch (Exception e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Error creating Firehose
record", e);
                    }
                }).collect(Collectors.toList());

                PutRecordBatchRequest request = PutRecordBatchRequest.builder()
                    .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
                    .records(batchRecords)
                    .build();

                PutRecordBatchResponse response =
getFirehoseClient().putRecordBatch(request);

                if (response.failedPutCount() > 0) {
                    response.requestResponses().stream()
                        .filter(r -> r.errorCode() != null)
                        .forEach(r -> System.err.println("Failed record: " +
r.errorMessage()));
                }
                System.out.println("Batch sent with size: " +
batchRecords.size());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record batch: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }

    public static void monitorMetrics(String deliveryStreamName) {
        Instant endTime = Instant.now();
        Instant startTime = endTime.minusSeconds(600);

        List<String> metrics = List.of("IncomingBytes", "IncomingRecords",
"FailedPutCount");
```

```
        metrics.forEach(metric -> monitorMetric(metric, startTime, endTime,
deliveryStreamName));
    }

    private static void monitorMetric(String metricName, Instant startTime,
Instant endTime, String deliveryStreamName) {
        try {
            GetMetricStatisticsRequest request =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
                .namespace("AWS/Firehose")
                .metricName(metricName)

.dimensions(Dimension.builder().name("DeliveryStreamName").value(deliveryStreamName).bui
                .startTime(startTime)
                .endTime(endTime)
                .period(60)
                .statistics(Statistic.SUM)
                .build();

            GetMetricStatisticsResponse response =
getCloudWatchClient().getMetricStatistics(request);
            double totalSum =
response.datapoints().stream().mapToDouble(Datapoint::sum).sum();
            System.out.println(metricName + ": " + totalSum);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to monitor metric " + metricName + ": " +
e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static String readJsonFile(String fileName) throws IOException {
        try (InputStream inputStream =
FirehoseScenario.class.getResourceAsStream("/" + fileName);
             Scanner scanner = new Scanner(inputStream, StandardCharsets.UTF_8))
{
            return scanner.useDelimiter("\\\\A").next();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Error reading file: " + fileName, e);
        }
    }

    private static void closeClients() {
        try {
            if (firehoseClient != null) firehoseClient.close();
```

```
            if (cloudWatchClient != null) cloudWatchClient.close();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Error closing clients: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - PutRecord
  - PutRecordBatch

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This script puts individual and batch records to Firehose.

```
import json
import logging
import random
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import backoff
import boto3

from config import get_config


def load_sample_data(path: str) -> dict:
    """
    Load sample data from a JSON file.

    Args:
        path (str): The file path to the JSON file containing sample data.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The loaded sample data as a dictionary.
    """
    with open(path, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


# Configure logging
logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class FirehoseClient:
    """
    AWS Firehose client to send records and monitor metrics.

    Attributes:
        config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
 region.
        delivery_stream_name (str): Name of the Firehose delivery stream.
        region (str): AWS region for Firehose and CloudWatch clients.
        firehose (boto3.client): Boto3 Firehose client.
        cloudwatch (boto3.client): Boto3 CloudWatch client.
    """

    def __init__(self, config):
        """
        Initialize the FirehoseClient.

        Args:
            config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
 region.
        """
        self.config = config
        self.delivery_stream_name = config.delivery_stream_name
        self.region = config.region
        self.firehose = boto3.client("firehose", region_name=self.region)
        self.cloudwatch = boto3.client("cloudwatch", region_name=self.region)


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
```

```
    def put_record(self, record: dict):
        """
        Put individual records to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            record (dict): The data record to be sent to Firehose.

        This method attempts to send an individual record to the Firehose
delivery stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        try:
            entry = self._create_record_entry(record)
            response = self.firehose.put_record(
                DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name, Record=entry
            )
            self._log_response(response, entry)
        except Exception:
            logger.info(f"Fail record: {record}.")
            raise


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record_batch(self, data: list, batch_size: int = 500):
        """
        Put records in batches to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            data (list): List of data records to be sent to Firehose.
            batch_size (int): Number of records to send in each batch. Default is
500.

        This method attempts to send records in batches to the Firehose delivery
stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        for i in range(0, len(data), batch_size):
            batch = data[i : i + batch_size]
            record_dicts = [{"Data": json.dumps(record)} for record in batch]
            try:
                response = self.firehose.put_record_batch(
```

```
                    DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name,
Records=record_dicts
                )
                self._log_batch_response(response, len(batch))
            except Exception as e:
                logger.info(f"Failed to send batch of {len(batch)} records.
Error: {e}")


    def get_metric_statistics(
        self,
        metric_name: str,
        start_time: datetime,
        end_time: datetime,
        period: int,
        statistics: list = ["Sum"],
    ) -> list:
        """
        Retrieve metric statistics from CloudWatch.

        Args:
            metric_name (str): The name of the metric.
            start_time (datetime): The start time for the metric statistics.
            end_time (datetime): The end time for the metric statistics.
            period (int): The granularity, in seconds, of the returned data
points.
            statistics (list): A list of statistics to retrieve. Default is
['Sum'].

        Returns:
            list: List of datapoints containing the metric statistics.
        """
        response = self.cloudwatch.get_metric_statistics(
            Namespace="AWS/Firehose",
            MetricName=metric_name,
            Dimensions=[
                {"Name": "DeliveryStreamName", "Value":
self.delivery_stream_name},
            ],
            StartTime=start_time,
            EndTime=end_time,
            Period=period,
            Statistics=statistics,
        )
```

```
        return response["Datapoints"]

    def monitor_metrics(self):
        """
        Monitor Firehose metrics for the last 5 minutes.

        This method retrieves and logs the 'IncomingBytes', 'IncomingRecords',
and 'FailedPutCount' metrics
        from CloudWatch for the last 5 minutes.
        """
        end_time = datetime.utcnow()
        start_time = end_time - timedelta(minutes=10)
        period = int((end_time - start_time).total_seconds())

        metrics = {
            "IncomingBytes": self.get_metric_statistics(
                "IncomingBytes", start_time, end_time, period
            ),
            "IncomingRecords": self.get_metric_statistics(
                "IncomingRecords", start_time, end_time, period
            ),
            "FailedPutCount": self.get_metric_statistics(
                "FailedPutCount", start_time, end_time, period
            ),
        }

        for metric, datapoints in metrics.items():
            if datapoints:
                total_sum = sum(datapoint["Sum"] for datapoint in datapoints)
                if metric == "IncomingBytes":
                    logger.info(
                        f"{metric}: {round(total_sum)} ({total_sum / (1024 *
1024):.2f} MB)"
                    )
                else:
                    logger.info(f"{metric}: {round(total_sum)}")
            else:
                logger.info(f"No data found for {metric} over the last 5
minutes")


    def _create_record_entry(self, record: dict) -> dict:
        """
        Create a record entry for Firehose.
```

```
        Args:
            record (dict): The data record to be sent.

        Returns:
            dict: The record entry formatted for Firehose.

        Raises:
            Exception: If a simulated network error occurs.
        """
        if random.random() < 0.2:
            raise Exception("Simulated network error")
        elif random.random() < 0.1:
            return {"Data": '{"malformed": "data"'}
        else:
            return {"Data": json.dumps(record)}

    def _log_response(self, response: dict, entry: dict):
        """
        Log the response from Firehose.

        Args:
            response (dict): The response from the Firehose put_record API call.
            entry (dict): The record entry that was sent.
        """
        if response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"] == 200:
            logger.info(f"Sent record: {entry}")
        else:
            logger.info(f"Fail record: {entry}")

    def _log_batch_response(self, response: dict, batch_size: int):
        """
        Log the batch response from Firehose.

        Args:
            response (dict): The response from the Firehose put_record_batch API
call.
            batch_size (int): The number of records in the batch.
        """
        if response.get("FailedPutCount", 0) > 0:
            logger.info(
                f'Failed to send {response["FailedPutCount"]} records in batch of
{batch_size}'
            )
```

```
        else:
            logger.info(f"Successfully sent batch of {batch_size} records")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    config = get_config()
    data = load_sample_data(config.sample_data_file)
    client = FirehoseClient(config)

    # Process the first 100 sample network records
    for record in data[:100]:
        try:
            client.put_record(record)
        except Exception as e:
            logger.info(f"Put record failed after retries and backoff: {e}")
    client.monitor_metrics()

    # Process remaining records using the batch method
    try:
        client.put_record_batch(data[100:])
    except Exception as e:
        logger.info(f"Put record batch failed after retries and backoff: {e}")
    client.monitor_metrics()
```

This file contains config for the above script.

```
class Config:
    def __init__(self):
        self.delivery_stream_name = "ENTER YOUR DELIVERY STREAM NAME HERE"
        self.region = "us-east-1"
        self.sample_data_file = (
            "../../../../../scenarios/features/firehose/resources/
sample_records.json"
        )


def get_config():
    return Config()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - PutRecord

- PutRecordBatch

Code examples for Device Farm using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Device Farm with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Device Farm Developer Guide** – More information about Device Farm.
- **Device Farm API Reference** – Details about all available Device Farm actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Device Farm using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Device Farm using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateUpload with a CLI
- Scenarios for Device Farm using AWS SDKs
  - Run browser tests with Device Farm and take screenshots using an AWS SDK
  - Upload and test mobile device packages with Device Farm using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Device Farm using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Device Farm with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Device Farm using AWS SDKs

- Use CreateUpload with a CLI

Actions for Device Farm using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Device Farm actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Device Farm API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Device Farm using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Device Farm API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateUpload with a CLI

Use `CreateUpload` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateUpload`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Upload and test device packages

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an upload

The following command creates an upload for an Android app:

```
aws devicefarm create-upload --project-arn "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2:123456789012:project:070fc3ca-7ec1-4741-9c1f-d3e044efc506" --name app.apk
 --type ANDROID_APP
```

You can get the project ARN from the output of create-project or list-projects.

Output:

```
{
    "upload": {
        "status": "INITIALIZED",
        "name": "app.apk",
        "created": 1503614408.769,
        "url": "https://prod-us-west-2-uploads.s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/
arn%3Aaws%3Adevicefarm%3Aus-west-2%3A123456789012%3Aproject%3A070fc3ca-
c7e1-4471-91cf-d3e4efc50604/uploads/arn%3Aaws%3Adevicefarm%3Aus-
west-2%3A123456789012%3Aupload%3A070fc3ca-7ec1-4741-9c1f-d3e044efc506/dd72723a-
ae9e-4087-09e6-f4cea3599514/app.apk?X-Amz-Algorithm=AWS4-HMAC-SHA256&X-Amz-
Date=20170824T224008Z&X-Amz-SignedHeaders=host&X-Amz-Expires=86400&X-Amz-
Credential=AKIAEXAMPLEPBUMBC3GA%2F20170824%2Fus-west-2%2Fs3%2Faws4_request&X-Amz-
Signature=05050370c38894ef5bd09f5d009f36fc8f96fa4bb04e1bba9aca71b8dbe49a0f",
        "type": "ANDROID_APP",
        "arn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-
west-2:123456789012:upload:070fc3ca-7ec1-4741-9c1f-d3e044efc506/dd72723a-
ae9e-4087-09e6-f4cea3599514"
    }
}
```

Use the signed URL in the output to upload a file to Device Farm:

```
curl -T app.apk "https://prod-us-west-2-uploads.s3-us-west-2.amazonaws.com/
arn%3Aaws%3Adevicefarm%3Aus-west-2%3A123456789012%3Aproject%3A070fc3ca-
c7e1-4471-91cf-d3e4efc50604/uploads/arn%3Aaws%3Adevicefarm%3Aus-
west-2%3A123456789012%3Aupload%3A070fc3ca-7ec1-4741-9c1f-d3e044efc506/dd72723a-
ae9e-4087-09e6-f4cea3599514/app.apk?X-Amz-Algorithm=AWS4-HMAC-SHA256&X-Amz-
Date=20170824T224008Z&X-Amz-SignedHeaders=host&X-Amz-Expires=86400&X-Amz-
Credential=AKIAEXAMPLEPBUMBC3GA%2F20170824%2Fus-west-2%2Fs3%2Faws4_request&X-Amz-
Signature=05050370c38894ef5bd09f5d009f36fc8f96fa4bb04e1bba9aca71b8dbe49a0f"
```

- For API details, see CreateUpload in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an AWS Device Farm upload for an Android app. You can get the project ARN from the output of New-DFProject or Get-DFProjectList. Use the signed URL in the New-DFUpload output to upload a file to Device Farm.

```
New-DFUpload -ContentType "application/octet-stream" -ProjectArn
 "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2:123456789012:project:EXAMPLEa-7ec1-4741-9c1f-
d3e04EXAMPLE" -Name "app.apk" -Type ANDROID_APP
```

- For API details, see CreateUpload in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AWS Device Farm upload for an Android app. You can get the project ARN from the output of New-DFProject or Get-DFProjectList. Use the signed URL in the New-DFUpload output to upload a file to Device Farm.

```
New-DFUpload -ContentType "application/octet-stream" -ProjectArn
 "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2:123456789012:project:EXAMPLEa-7ec1-4741-9c1f-
d3e04EXAMPLE" -Name "app.apk" -Type ANDROID_APP
```

- For API details, see CreateUpload in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for Device Farm using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Device Farm with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Device Farm or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Run browser tests with Device Farm and take screenshots using an AWS SDK
- Upload and test mobile device packages with Device Farm using an AWS SDK

Run browser tests with Device Farm and take screenshots using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to run browser tests with Device Farm and take screenshots.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use PyTest and Selenium to browse to specified websites, take screenshots, and compare actual website content with expected content.

```
import datetime
import os
import subprocess
import boto3
import pytest
from selenium import webdriver
from selenium.webdriver import DesiredCapabilities
from selenium.webdriver.common.by import By
from selenium.webdriver.common.keys import Keys
from selenium.webdriver.support import expected_conditions
from selenium.webdriver.support.wait import WebDriverWait


def get_git_hash():
    """
    Get the short Git hash of the current commit of the repository
    """
    try:
        return (
            subprocess.check_output(["git", "rev-parse", "--short", "HEAD"])
            .decode("utf-8")
            .strip()
        )
    except:
        return "norepo"


class TestHelloSuite:
    """
```

```
    Our test suite.

    This style of test suite allows us to use setup_method and teardown_method.

    """

    def save_screenshot(self, name):
        self.driver.save_screenshot(os.path.join(self.screenshot_path, name))

    def setup_method(self, method):
        """
        Set up a test.

        This makes sure that the session for an individual test is ready.

        The AWS credentials are read from the default ~/.aws/credentials or from
the
        command line by setting the AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID and AWS_SECRET_KEY
environment
        variables.

        The project Amazon Resource Name (ARN) is determined by the PROJECT_ARN
        environment variable.
        """
        devicefarm_client = boto3.client("devicefarm")
        project_arn = os.environ.get("PROJECT_ARN", None)
        if project_arn is None:
            raise ValueError("Must set PROJECT_ARN")
        # Request a driver hub URL for the Selenium client
        testgrid_url_response = devicefarm_client.create_test_grid_url(
            projectArn=project_arn, expiresInSeconds=300
        )

        # We want a directory to save our files into. We're going to make a
directory
        # in the current directory that holds our results.
        self.screenshot_path = os.path.join(
            ".", "results", get_git_hash() + "-" +
(datetime.date.today().isoformat())
        )
        if not os.path.exists(self.screenshot_path):
            os.makedirs(self.screenshot_path, exist_ok=True)

        # We want a Firefox instance on Windows
```

```
        desired_cap = DesiredCapabilities.FIREFOX
        desired_cap["platform"] = "windows"
        desired_cap["BrowserVersion"] = "latest"

        # Configure the webdriver with the appropriate remote endpoint.
        self.driver = webdriver.Remote(testgrid_url_response["url"], desired_cap)

        #
        # Auto-Tagging
        #

        # In order to get the Session ARN, we need to look up the session by the
        # Project ARN and session ID (from the driver).
        testgrid_session_arn_response = devicefarm_client.get_test_grid_session(
            projectArn=project_arn, sessionId=self.driver.session_id
        )

        # Save the session's ARN so we can tag the session.
        self.session_arn = testgrid_session_arn_response["testGridSession"]
["arn"]

        # In order to tag it, we're going to use the resourcegroupstaggingapi
 client to
        # add a tag to the session ARN that we just got.
        tag_client = boto3.client("resourcegroupstaggingapi")
        tag_client.tag_resources(
            ResourceARNList=[self.session_arn],
            Tags={"TestSuite": f"testsuite {method.__name__}", "GitId":
 get_git_hash()},
        )

    def teardown_method(self, method):
        """
        Clean up resources used by each method.
        """
        # End the Selenium session so we're off the clock.
        self.driver.quit()

    @pytest.mark.parametrize(
        "query,leading",
        [
            pytest.param(
                "Seattle",
```

```
                "Seattle (/si#ætəl/ (listen) see-AT-əl) is a seaport city on the
West Coast of the United States.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Selenium",
                "Selenium is a chemical element with the symbol Se and atomic
number 34.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Amazon Locker",
                "Amazon Locker is a self-service package delivery service offered
by online retailer Amazon.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Kootenai Falls",
                "Kootenai Falls is a waterfall on the Kootenay River located in
Lincoln County, Montana, just off U.S. Route 2.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Dorayaki",
                "Dorayaki (####, ####, ####, ####) is a type of Japanese
confection.",
            ),
            pytest.param("Robot Face", "<|°_°|> (also known as Robot Face or
Robot)"),
        ],
    )
    def test_first_paragraph_text(self, query, leading):
        """
        This test looks at the first paragraph of a page on Wikipedia, comparing
it to
        a known leading sentence.

        If the leading sentence matches, the test passes. A screenshot is taken
before
        the final assertion is made, letting us debug if something isn't right.
        """
        # Open the main page of Wikipedia
        self.driver.get("https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Main_Page")
        # Find the search box, enter a query, and press enter
        search_input = self.driver.find_element(By.ID, "searchInput")
        search_input.click()
        search_input.send_keys(query)
        search_input.send_keys(Keys.ENTER)
```

```
        # Wait for the search box to go stale -- This means we've navigated
fully.
        WebDriverWait(self.driver, 5).until(
            expected_conditions.staleness_of(search_input)
        )
        # Get the leading paragraph of the article.
        lead = leading.lower()
        # Find the element...
        lead_para = self.driver.find_element(
            By.XPATH, "//div[@class='mw-parser-output']//p[not(@class)]"
        )
        # ... and copy out its text.
        our_text = lead_para.text.lower()
        our_text = our_text[: len(lead)]
        # Take a screenshot and compare the strings.
        self.save_screenshot(f"leadingpara_{query}.png")
        assert our_text.startswith(lead)

    @pytest.mark.parametrize(
        "query,expected",
        [
            pytest.param("Automation Testing", "Test Automation"),
            pytest.param("DevOps", "DevOps"),
            pytest.param("Jackdaws Love My Big Sphinx Of Quartz", "Pangram"),
            pytest.param("EarthBound", "EarthBound"),
            pytest.param("Covered Bridges Today", "Covered Bridges Today"),
            pytest.param("Kurt Godel", "Kurt Gödel"),
            pytest.param("N//ng language", "N#ng language"),
            pytest.param(
                "Who the Frick Is Jackson Pollock?", "Who the $&% Is Jackson
Pollock?"
            ),
        ],
    )
    def test_redirect_titles(self, query, expected):
        """
        A test comparing pages we expect to (or not to) redirect on Wikipedia.

        This test checks to see that the page ("query") redirects (or doesn't) to
the
        "expected" page title. Several of these are common synonyms
("Jackdaws...")
        while others are because of characters untypable by most keyboards ("N#ng
language")
```

```
        A screenshot is taken just before the final assertion is made to aid in
        debugging and verification.
        """
        # Open the main page of Wikipedia
        self.driver.get("https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Main_Page")
        # Find the search box, enter some text into it, and send an enter key.
        search_input = self.driver.find_element(By.ID, "searchInput")
        search_input.click()
        search_input.send_keys(query)
        search_input.send_keys(Keys.ENTER)
        # wait until the page has rolled over -- once the search input handle is
stale,
        # the browser has navigated.
        WebDriverWait(self.driver, 5).until(
            expected_conditions.staleness_of(search_input)
        )
        # Get the first heading & take a screenshot
        our_text = self.driver.find_element(By.ID, "firstHeading").text.lower()
        self.save_screenshot(f"redirect_{query}.png")
        # did it match?
        assert our_text == expected.lower()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTestGridUrl
  - GetTestGridSession

Upload and test mobile device packages with Device Farm using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to upload and test mobile device packages with Device Farm.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload compiled Android application and test packages to Device Farm, start a test, wait for test completion, and report the results.

```
import boto3
import os
import requests
import string
import random
import datetime
import time

# Update this dict with your own values before you run the example:
config = {
    # This is our app under test.
    "appFilePath": "app-debug.apk",
    "projectArn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2:111222333444:project:581f5703-
e040-4ac9-b7ae-0ba007bfb8e6",
    # Since we care about the most popular devices, we'll use a curated pool.
    "testSpecArn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2::upload:20fcf771-eae3-4137-
aa76-92e17fb3131b",
    "poolArn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-
west-2::devicepool:4a869d91-6f17-491f-9a95-0a601aee2406",
    "namePrefix": "MyAppTest",
    # This is our test package. This tutorial won't go into how to make these.
    "testPackage": "tests.zip",
}

client = boto3.client("devicefarm")

unique = (
    config["namePrefix"]
    + "-"
```

```
    + (datetime.date.today().isoformat())
    + ("".join(random.sample(string.ascii_letters, 8)))
)

print(
    f"The unique identifier for this run is '{unique}'. All uploads will be
 prefixed "
    f"with this."
)


def upload_df_file(filename, type_, mime="application/octet-stream"):
    upload_response = client.create_upload(
        projectArn=config["projectArn"],
        name=unique + "_" + os.path.basename(filename),
        type=type_,
        contentType=mime,
    )
    upload_arn = upload_response["upload"]["arn"]
    # Extract the URL of the upload and use Requests to upload it.
    upload_url = upload_response["upload"]["url"]
    with open(filename, "rb") as file_stream:
        print(
            f"Uploading {filename} to Device Farm as "
            f"{upload_response['upload']['name']}... ",
            end="",
        )
        put_req = requests.put(
            upload_url, data=file_stream, headers={"content-type": mime}
        )
        print(" done")
        if not put_req.ok:
            raise Exception(f"Couldn't upload. Requests says: {put_req.reason}")
    started = datetime.datetime.now()
    while True:
        print(
            f"Upload of {filename} in state {upload_response['upload']['status']}
 "
            f"after " + str(datetime.datetime.now() - started)
        )
        if upload_response["upload"]["status"] == "FAILED":
            raise Exception(
                f"The upload failed processing. Device Farm says the reason is:
 \n"
```

```
                f"{+upload_response['upload']['message']}"
            )
        if upload_response["upload"]["status"] == "SUCCEEDED":
            break
        time.sleep(5)
        upload_response = client.get_upload(arn=upload_arn)
    print("")
    return upload_arn


our_upload_arn = upload_df_file(config["appFilePath"], "ANDROID_APP")
our_test_package_arn = upload_df_file(
    config["testPackage"], "APPIUM_PYTHON_TEST_PACKAGE"
)
print(our_upload_arn, our_test_package_arn)

response = client.schedule_run(
    projectArn=config["projectArn"],
    appArn=our_upload_arn,
    devicePoolArn=config["poolArn"],
    name=unique,
    test={
        "type": "APPIUM_PYTHON",
        "testSpecArn": config["testSpecArn"],
        "testPackageArn": our_test_package_arn,
    },
)
run_arn = response["run"]["arn"]
start_time = datetime.datetime.now()
print(f"Run {unique} is scheduled as arn {run_arn} ")

state = "UNKNOWN"
try:
    while True:
        response = client.get_run(arn=run_arn)
        state = response["run"]["status"]
        if state == "COMPLETED" or state == "ERRORED":
            break
        else:
            print(
                f" Run {unique} in state {state}, total "
                f"time {datetime.datetime.now() - start_time}"
            )
            time.sleep(10)
```

```
except:
    client.stop_run(arn=run_arn)
    exit(1)

print(f"Tests finished in state {state} after {datetime.datetime.now() -
 start_time}")
# Pull all the logs.
jobs_response = client.list_jobs(arn=run_arn)
# Save the output somewhere, using the unique value.
save_path = os.path.join(os.getcwd(), "results", unique)
os.mkdir(save_path)
# Save the last run information.
for job in jobs_response["jobs"]:
    job_name = job["name"]
    os.makedirs(os.path.join(save_path, job_name), exist_ok=True)
    # Get each suite within the job.
    suites = client.list_suites(arn=job["arn"])["suites"]
    for suite in suites:
        for test in client.list_tests(arn=suite["arn"])["tests"]:
            # Get the artifacts.
            for artifact_type in ["FILE", "SCREENSHOT", "LOG"]:
                artifacts = client.list_artifacts(type=artifact_type,
 arn=test["arn"])[
                    "artifacts"
                ]
                for artifact in artifacts:
                    # Replace `:` because it has a special meaning in Windows &
 macOS.
                    path_to = os.path.join(
                        save_path,
                        job_name,
                        suite["name"],
                        test["name"].replace(":", "_"),
                    )
                    os.makedirs(path_to, exist_ok=True)
                    filename = (
                        artifact["type"]
                        + "_"
                        + artifact["name"]
                        + "."
                        + artifact["extension"]
                    )
                    artifact_save_path = os.path.join(path_to, filename)
                    print(f"Downloading {artifact_save_path}")
```

```
                        with open(artifact_save_path, "wb") as fn:
                            with requests.get(
                                artifact["url"], allow_redirects=True
                            ) as request:
                                fn.write(request.content)
print("Finished")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateUpload
  - GetRun
  - GetUpload
  - ListArtifacts
  - ListJobs
  - ListSuites
  - ListTests
  - ScheduleRun
  - StopRun

Code examples for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Directory Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Directory Service Administration Guide** – More information about AWS Directory Service.
- **AWS Directory Service API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Directory Service actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs
    - Use DescribeDirectories with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTrusts with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Directory Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs
  - Use DescribeDirectories with a CLI
  - Use DescribeTrusts with a CLI

Actions for AWS Directory Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Directory Service actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Directory Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use DescribeDirectories with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrusts with a CLI

Use `DescribeDirectories` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDirectories`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details about your directories

The following `describe-directories` example displays details about the specified directory.

```
aws ds describe-directories \
   --directory-id d-a1b2c3d4e5
```

Output:

```
{
    "DirectoryDescriptions": [
        {
            "DirectoryId": "d-a1b2c3d4e5",
            "Name": "mydirectory.example.com",
            "ShortName": "mydirectory",
            "Size": "Small",
            "Edition": "Standard",
            "Alias": "d-a1b2c3d4e5",
            "AccessUrl": "d-a1b2c3d4e5.awsapps.com",
            "Stage": "Active",
            "ShareStatus": "Shared",
            "ShareMethod": "HANDSHAKE",
            "ShareNotes": "These are my share notes",
            "LaunchTime": "2019-07-08T15:33:46.327000-07:00",
            "StageLastUpdatedDateTime": "2019-07-08T15:59:12.307000-07:00",
            "Type": "SharedMicrosoftAD",
            "SsoEnabled": false,
            "DesiredNumberOfDomainControllers": 0,
            "OwnerDirectoryDescription": {
                "DirectoryId": "d-b2c3d4e5f6",
                "AccountId": "123456789111",
                "DnsIpAddrs": [
                    "203.113.0.248",
                    "203.113.0.253"
                ],
                "VpcSettings": {
                    "VpcId": "vpc-a1b2c3d4",
                    "SubnetIds": [
                        "subnet-a1b2c3d4",
                        "subnet-d4c3b2a1"
                    ],
                    "AvailabilityZones": [
                        "us-west-2a",
                        "us-west-2c"
```

```
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDirectories in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command Obtains information about the directories that belong to this account.

```
Get-DSDirectory | Select-Object DirectoryId, Name, DnsIpAddrs, Type
```

Output:

```
DirectoryId  Name           DnsIpAddrs                     Type
-----------  ----           ----------                     ----
d-123456abcd abcd.example.com {172.31.74.189, 172.31.13.145} SimpleAD
d-123456efgh wifi.example.com {172.31.16.108, 172.31.10.56}  ADConnector
d-123456ijkl lan2.example.com {172.31.10.56, 172.31.16.108}  MicrosoftAD
```

- For API details, see DescribeDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command Obtains information about the directories that belong to this account.

```
Get-DSDirectory | Select-Object DirectoryId, Name, DnsIpAddrs, Type
```

Output:

```
DirectoryId  Name           DnsIpAddrs                     Type
-----------  ----           ----------                     ----
d-123456abcd abcd.example.com {172.31.74.189, 172.31.13.145} SimpleAD
```

```
d-123456efgh wifi.example.com {172.31.16.108, 172.31.10.56}  ADConnector
d-123456ijkl lan2.example.com {172.31.10.56, 172.31.16.108}  MicrosoftAD
```

- For API details, see DescribeDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTrusts` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTrusts`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details about your trust relationships

The following `describe-trusts` example displays details about the trust relationships for the specified directory.

```
aws ds describe-trusts \
   --directory-id d-a1b2c3d4e5
```

Output:

```
{
    "Trusts": [
        {
            "DirectoryId": "d-a1b2c3d4e5",
            "TrustId": "t-9a8b7c6d5e",
            "RemoteDomainName": "other.example.com",
            "TrustType": "Forest",
            "TrustDirection": "Two-Way",
            "TrustState": "Verified",
            "CreatedDateTime": "2017-06-20T18:08:45.614000-07:00",
            "LastUpdatedDateTime": "2019-06-04T10:52:12.410000-07:00",
            "StateLastUpdatedDateTime": "2019-06-04T10:52:12.410000-07:00",
            "SelectiveAuth": "Disabled"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrusts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command gets the information of trust relationships created for specified directory-id.

```
Get-DSTrust -DirectoryId d-123456abcd
```

Output:

```
CreatedDateTime          : 7/5/2019 4:55:42 AM
DirectoryId              : d-123456abcd
LastUpdatedDateTime      : 7/5/2019 4:56:04 AM
RemoteDomainName         : contoso.com
SelectiveAuth            : Disabled
StateLastUpdatedDateTime : 7/5/2019 4:56:04 AM
TrustDirection           : One-Way: Incoming
TrustId                  : t-9067157123
TrustState               : Created
TrustStateReason         :
TrustType                : Forest
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrusts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets the information of trust relationships created for specified directory-id.

```
Get-DSTrust -DirectoryId d-123456abcd
```

Output:

```
CreatedDateTime          : 7/5/2019 4:55:42 AM
DirectoryId              : d-123456abcd
LastUpdatedDateTime      : 7/5/2019 4:56:04 AM
RemoteDomainName         : contoso.com
SelectiveAuth            : Disabled
StateLastUpdatedDateTime : 7/5/2019 4:56:04 AM
TrustDirection           : One-Way: Incoming
```

```
TrustId                    : t-9067157123
TrustState                 : Created
TrustStateReason           :
TrustType                  : Forest
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrusts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Database Migration Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS DMS Developer Guide** – More information about AWS DMS.
- **AWS DMS API Reference** – Details about all available AWS DMS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateReplicationTask with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Database Migration Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateReplicationTask with a CLI

Actions for AWS DMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS DMS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Database Migration Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateReplicationTask with a CLI

Use `CreateReplicationTask` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateReplicationTask`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a replication task

The following `create-replication-task` example creates a replication task.

```
aws dms create-replication-task \
    --replication-task-identifier movedata \
    --source-endpoint-arn arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:6GGI6YPWWGAYUVLKIB732KEVWA \
    --target-endpoint-arn arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EOM4SFKCZEYHZBFGAGZT3QEC5U \
    --replication-instance-arn $RI_ARN \
    --migration-type full-load \
    --table-mappings file://table-mappings.json
```

Contents of `table-mappings.json`:

```
{
    "rules": [
        {
            "rule-type": "selection",
            "rule-id": "1",
            "rule-name": "1",
```

```
            "object-locator": {
                "schema-name": "prodrep",
                "table-name": "%"
            },
            "rule-action": "include",
            "filters": []
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "ReplicationTask": {
        "ReplicationTaskIdentifier": "moveit2",
        "SourceEndpointArn": "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:6GGI6YPWWGAYUVLKIB732KEVWA",
        "TargetEndpointArn": "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EOM4SFKCZEYHZBFGAGZT3QEC5U",
        "ReplicationInstanceArn": "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:rep:T3OM7OUB5NM2LCVZF7JPGJRNUE",
        "MigrationType": "full-load",
        "TableMappings": ...output omitted... ,
        "ReplicationTaskSettings": ...output omitted... ,
        "Status": "creating",
        "ReplicationTaskCreationDate": 1590524772.505,
        "ReplicationTaskArn": "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:task:K55IUCGBASJS5VHZJIINA45FII"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with AWS DMS Tasks in the *AWS Database Migration Service User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateReplicationTask in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new AWS Database Migration Service replication task that uses CdcStartTime instead of CdcStartPosition. The MigrationType is set to "full-

load-and-cdc", meaning the target table must be empty. The new task is tagged with a tag that has a key of Stage and a key value of Test. For more information about the values used by this cmdlet, see Creating a Task (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/dms/latest/userguide/CHAP_Tasks.Creating.html) in the AWS Database Migration Service User Guide.

```
New-DMSReplicationTask -ReplicationInstanceArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:rep:EXAMPLE66XFJUWATDJGBEXAMPLE"`
  -CdcStartTime "2019-08-08T12:12:12"`
  -CdcStopPosition "server_time:2019-08-09T12:12:12"`
  -MigrationType "full-load-and-cdc"`
  -ReplicationTaskIdentifier "task1"`
  -ReplicationTaskSetting ""`
  -SourceEndpointArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EXAMPLEW5UANC7Y3P4EEXAMPLE"`
  -TableMapping "file:////home/testuser/table-mappings.json"`
  -Tag @{"Key"="Stage";"Value"="Test"}`
  -TargetEndpointArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EXAMPLEJZASXWHTWCLNEXAMPLE"
```

- For API details, see CreateReplicationTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new AWS Database Migration Service replication task that uses CdcStartTime instead of CdcStartPosition. The MigrationType is set to "full-load-and-cdc", meaning the target table must be empty. The new task is tagged with a tag that has a key of Stage and a key value of Test. For more information about the values used by this cmdlet, see Creating a Task (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/dms/latest/userguide/CHAP_Tasks.Creating.html) in the AWS Database Migration Service User Guide.

```
New-DMSReplicationTask -ReplicationInstanceArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:rep:EXAMPLE66XFJUWATDJGBEXAMPLE"`
  -CdcStartTime "2019-08-08T12:12:12"`
  -CdcStopPosition "server_time:2019-08-09T12:12:12"`
  -MigrationType "full-load-and-cdc"`
  -ReplicationTaskIdentifier "task1"`
  -ReplicationTaskSetting ""`
  -SourceEndpointArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EXAMPLEW5UANC7Y3P4EEXAMPLE"`
```

```
  -TableMapping "file:////home/testuser/table-mappings.json"`
  -Tag @{"Key"="Stage";"Value"="Test"}`
  -TargetEndpointArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EXAMPLEJZASXWHTWCLNEXAMPLE"
```

- For API details, see CreateReplicationTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Amazon DocumentDB using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon DocumentDB (with MongoDB compatibility) with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

More resources

- **Amazon DocumentDB Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon DocumentDB.
- **Amazon DocumentDB API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon DocumentDB actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Serverless examples for Amazon DocumentDB
  - Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

Serverless examples for Amazon DocumentDB

The following code examples show how to use Amazon DocumentDB with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using System.Text.Json;
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
//Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace LambdaDocDb;

public class Function
{

     /// <summary>
    /// Lambda function entry point to process Amazon DocumentDB events.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="event">The Amazon DocumentDB event.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context object.</param>
    /// <returns>A string to indicate successful processing.</returns>
    public string FunctionHandler(Event evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
```

```
        foreach (var record in evnt.Events)
        {
            ProcessDocumentDBEvent(record, context);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

     private void ProcessDocumentDBEvent(DocumentDBEventRecord record,
ILambdaContext context)
    {

        var eventData = record.Event;
        var operationType = eventData.OperationType;
        var databaseName = eventData.Ns.Db;
        var collectionName = eventData.Ns.Coll;
        var fullDocument = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventData.FullDocument, new
JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true });

        context.Logger.LogLine($"Operation type: {operationType}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Database: {databaseName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Collection: {collectionName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Full document:\n{fullDocument}");
    }



    public class Event
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("eventSourceArn")]
        public string EventSourceArn { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("events")]
        public List<DocumentDBEventRecord> Events { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("eventSource")]
        public string EventSource { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentDBEventRecord
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("event")]
        public EventData Event { get; set; }
    }
```

```
public class EventData
{
    [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
    public IdData Id { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("clusterTime")]
    public ClusterTime ClusterTime { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("documentKey")]
    public DocumentKey DocumentKey { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("fullDocument")]
    public Dictionary<string, object> FullDocument { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("ns")]
    public Namespace Ns { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("operationType")]
    public string OperationType { get; set; }
}

public class IdData
{
    [JsonPropertyName("_data")]
    public string Data { get; set; }
}

public class ClusterTime
{
    [JsonPropertyName("$timestamp")]
    public Timestamp Timestamp { get; set; }
}

public class Timestamp
{
    [JsonPropertyName("t")]
    public long T { get; set; }

    [JsonPropertyName("i")]
    public int I { get; set; }
}

public class DocumentKey
```

```
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public Id Id { get; set; }
    }

    public class Id
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$oid")]
        public string Oid { get; set; }
    }

    public class Namespace
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("db")]
        public string Db { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("coll")]
        public string Coll { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type Event struct {
 Events []Record `json:"events"`
}

type Record struct {
 Event struct {
  OperationType string `json:"operationType"`
  NS            struct {
   DB   string `json:"db"`
   Coll string `json:"coll"`
  } `json:"ns"`
  FullDocument interface{} `json:"fullDocument"`
 } `json:"event"`
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}

func handler(ctx context.Context, event Event) (string, error) {
 fmt.Println("Loading function")
 for _, record := range event.Events {
  logDocumentDBEvent(record)
 }

 return "OK", nil
}

func logDocumentDBEvent(record Record) {
 fmt.Printf("Operation type: %s\n", record.Event.OperationType)
 fmt.Printf("db: %s\n", record.Event.NS.DB)
 fmt.Printf("collection: %s\n", record.Event.NS.Coll)
 docBytes, _ := json.MarshalIndent(record.Event.FullDocument, "", "  ")
 fmt.Printf("Full document: %s\n", string(docBytes))
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<Map<String, Object>, String> {

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(Map<String, Object> event, Context context) {
        List<Map<String, Object>> events = (List<Map<String, Object>>)
 event.get("events");
        for (Map<String, Object> record : events) {
            Map<String, Object> eventData = (Map<String, Object>)
 record.get("event");
            processEventData(eventData);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    private void processEventData(Map<String, Object> eventData) {
        String operationType = (String) eventData.get("operationType");
        System.out.println("operationType: %s".formatted(operationType));

        Map<String, Object> ns = (Map<String, Object>) eventData.get("ns");

        String db = (String) ns.get("db");
        System.out.println("db: %s".formatted(db));
```

```
        String coll = (String) ns.get("coll");
        System.out.println("coll: %s".formatted(coll));

        Map<String, Object> fullDocument = (Map<String, Object>)
 eventData.get("fullDocument");
        System.out.println("fullDocument: %s".formatted(fullDocument));
    }

}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
console.log('Loading function');
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    event.events.forEach(record => {
        logDocumentDBEvent(record);
    });
    return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record) => {
    console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
    console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
    console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
    console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null,
 2));
};
```

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using TypeScript

```
import { DocumentDBEventRecord, DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext } from 'aws-
lambda';

console.log('Loading function');

export const handler = async (
  event: DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext,
  context: any
): Promise<string> => {
  event.events.forEach((record: DocumentDBEventRecord) => {
    logDocumentDBEvent(record);
  });
  return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record: DocumentDBEventRecord): void => {
  console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
  console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
  console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
  console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null,
 2));
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

require __DIR__.'/vendor/autoload.php';
```

```
use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler;

class DocumentDBEventHandler implements Handler
{
    public function handle($event, Context $context): string
    {

        $events = $event['events'] ?? [];
        foreach ($events as $record) {
            $this->logDocumentDBEvent($record['event']);
        }
        return 'OK';
    }

    private function logDocumentDBEvent($event): void
    {
        // Extract information from the event record

        $operationType = $event['operationType'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $db = $event['ns']['db'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $collection = $event['ns']['coll'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $fullDocument = $event['fullDocument'] ?? [];

        // Log the event details

        echo "Operation type: $operationType\n";
        echo "Database: $db\n";
        echo "Collection: $collection\n";
        echo "Full document: " . json_encode($fullDocument, JSON_PRETTY_PRINT) .
 "\n";
    }
}
return new DocumentDBEventHandler();
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event.get('events', []):
        log_document_db_event(record)
    return 'OK'

def log_document_db_event(record):
    event_data = record.get('event', {})
    operation_type = event_data.get('operationType', 'Unknown')
    db = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('db', 'Unknown')
    collection = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('coll', 'Unknown')
    full_document = event_data.get('fullDocument', {})

    print(f"Operation type: {operation_type}")
    print(f"db: {db}")
    print(f"collection: {collection}")
    print("Full document:", json.dumps(full_document, indent=2))
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['events'].each do |record|
    log_document_db_event(record)
  end
  'OK'
end

def log_document_db_event(record)
  event_data = record['event'] || {}
  operation_type = event_data['operationType'] || 'Unknown'
  db = event_data.dig('ns', 'db') || 'Unknown'
  collection = event_data.dig('ns', 'coll') || 'Unknown'
  full_document = event_data['fullDocument'] || {}

  puts "Operation type: #{operation_type}"
  puts "db: #{db}"
  puts "collection: #{collection}"
  puts "Full document: #{JSON.pretty_generate(full_document)}"
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::documentdb::{DocumentDbEvent, DocumentDbInnerEvent},
   };
```

```
// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<DocumentDbEvent>) ->Result<(),
 Error> {

    tracing::info!("Event Source ARN: {:?}", event.payload.event_source_arn);
    tracing::info!("Event Source: {:?}", event.payload.event_source);

    let records = &event.payload.events;

    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_document_db_event(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Document db records processed");

    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_document_db_event(record: &DocumentDbInnerEvent)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("Change Event: {:?}", record.event);

    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

Code examples for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon DynamoDB with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

More resources

- **DynamoDB Developer Guide** – More information about DynamoDB.
- **DynamoDB API Reference** – Details about all available DynamoDB actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;

namespace DynamoDBActions;

/// <summary>
/// A simple example that demonstrates basic DynamoDB operations.
/// </summary>
public class HelloDynamoDB
{
    /// <summary>
    /// HelloDynamoDB lists the existing DynamoDB tables for the default user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon DynamoDB.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
            )
            .Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var dynamoDbClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonDynamoDB>();
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new ListTablesRequest();
            var tableNames = new List<string>();

            var paginatorForTables =
 dynamoDbClient.Paginators.ListTables(request);

            await foreach (var tableName in paginatorForTables.TableNames)
            {
                tableNames.Add(tableName);
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the DynamoDB Hello Service example. " +
                              "\nLet's list your DynamoDB tables:");
            tableNames.ForEach(table =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Table: {table}");
            });
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB service error occurred while
 listing tables. {ex.Message}");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing tables.
 {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS dynamodb)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_dynamodb")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.
```

```
     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_dynamodb.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_dynamodb.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/dynamodb/DynamoDBClient.h>
#include <aws/dynamodb/model/ListTablesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello DynamoDB" starter application which initializes an Amazon DynamoDB
 (DynamoDB) client and lists the
 *  DynamoDB tables.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_dynamodb'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.

    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamodbClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesRequest listTablesRequest;
        listTablesRequest.SetLimit(50);
        do {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesOutcome &outcome =
 dynamodbClient.ListTables(
                    listTablesRequest);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }

            for (const auto &tableName: outcome.GetResult().GetTableNames()) {
                std::cout << tableName << std::endl;
            }

            listTablesRequest.SetExclusiveStartTableName(
                    outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedTableName());

        } while (!listTablesRequest.GetExclusiveStartTableName().empty());
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListTables {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Listing your Amazon DynamoDB tables:\n");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listAllTables(ddb);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void listAllTables(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        boolean moreTables = true;
        String lastName = null;

        while (moreTables) {
```

```
            try {
                ListTablesResponse response = null;
                if (lastName == null) {
                    ListTablesRequest request =
 ListTablesRequest.builder().build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                } else {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                            .exclusiveStartTableName(lastName).build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                }

                List<String> tableNames = response.tableNames();
                if (tableNames.size() > 0) {
                    for (String curName : tableNames) {
                        System.out.format("* %s\n", curName);
                    }
                } else {
                    System.out.println("No tables found!");
                    System.exit(0);
                }

                lastName = response.lastEvaluatedTableName();
                if (lastName == null) {
                    moreTables = false;
                }

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

For more details on working with DynamoDB in AWS SDK for JavaScript, see Programming DynamoDB with JavaScript.

```
import { ListTablesCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListTablesCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response.TableNames.join("\n"));
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
```

```
# Create a DynamoDB client using the default credentials and region
dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

# Initialize a paginator for the list_tables operation
paginator = dynamodb.get_paginator("list_tables")

# Create a PageIterator from the paginator
page_iterator = paginator.paginate(Limit=10)

# List the tables in the current AWS account
print("Here are the DynamoDB tables in your account:")

# Use pagination to list all tables
table_names = []

for page in page_iterator:
    for table_name in page.get("TableNames", []):
        print(f"- {table_name}")
        table_names.append(table_name)

if not table_names:
    print("You don't have any DynamoDB tables in your account.")
else:
    print(f"\nFound {len(table_names)} tables.")
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-dynamodb'
```

```
require 'logger'

# DynamoDBManager is a class responsible for managing DynamoDB operations
# such as listing all tables in the current AWS account.
class DynamoDBManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all DynamoDB tables in the current AWS account.
  def list_tables
    @logger.info('Here are the DynamoDB tables in your account:')

    paginator = @client.list_tables(limit: 10)
    table_names = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      page.table_names.each do |table_name|
        @logger.info("- #{table_name}")
        table_names << table_name
      end
    end

    if table_names.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any DynamoDB tables in your account.")
    else
      @logger.info("\nFound #{table_names.length} tables.")
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  dynamodb_client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new
  manager = DynamoDBManager.new(dynamodb_client)
  manager.list_tables
end
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs
  - Hello DynamoDB
  - Learn the basics of DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs
    - Use BatchExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
    - Use BatchGetItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use BatchWriteItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeTimeToLive with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Query with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Scan with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateTimeToLive with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs
  - Accelerate DynamoDB reads with DAX using an AWS SDK
  - Work with advanced DynamoDB Global Secondary Index scenarios using AWS Command Line Interface v2
  - Build an application to submit data to a DynamoDB table
  - Compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
  - Conditionally update a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK
  - Connect to a local DynamoDB instance using an AWS SDK

  - Count expression operators in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
  - Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

- Create a messenger application with Step Functions
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- Create a DynamoDB table with a Global Secondary Index using the AWS SDK
- Create a DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using an AWS SDK
- Create a web application to track DynamoDB data
- Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway
- Create a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK
- Create and manage DynamoDB global tables with Multi-Region Strong Consistency using an AWS SDK
- Create and manage DynamoDB global tables demonstrating MREC using an AWS SDK
- Delete DynamoDB data using PartiQL DELETE statements with an AWS SDK
- Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Insert DynamoDB data using PartiQL INSERT statements with an AWS SDK
- Invoke a Lambda function from a browser
- Manage DynamoDB Global Secondary Indexes using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Manage DynamoDB resource-based policies using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Monitor performance of Amazon DynamoDB using an AWS SDK
- Perform advanced DynamoDB query operations using an AWS SDK
- Perform list operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Perform map operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Perform set operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table by using batches of PartiQL statements and an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using PartiQL and an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using a Global Secondary Index with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using a date range in the sort key with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamic filter expression with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit with an AWS SDK

- Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using an AWS SDK

- Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with strongly consistent reads using an AWS SDK
- Query DynamoDB data using PartiQL SELECT statements with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table for TTL items using an AWS SDK
- Query DynamoDB tables using date and time patterns with an AWS SDK
- Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK
- Set up Attribute-Based Access Control for DynamoDB using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Understand update expression order in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Update a DynamoDB table setting with warm throughput using an AWS SDK
- Update a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK
- Update DynamoDB data using PartiQL UPDATE statements with an AWS SDK
- Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
- Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions
- Use a document model for DynamoDB using an AWS SDK
- Use a high-level object persistence model for DynamoDB using an AWS SDK
- Use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Use conditional operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Use expression attribute names in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function
- Work with DynamoDB Local Secondary Indexes using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB global tables and multi-Region replication with eventual consistency (MREC) using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB resource tagging using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB table encryption using AWS Command Line Interface v2

- Serverless examples for DynamoDB
  - Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger
  - Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger
- AWS community contributions for DynamoDB
  - Build and test a serverless application

Basic examples for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon DynamoDB with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello DynamoDB
- Learn the basics of DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Actions for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs
  - Use BatchExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
  - Use BatchGetItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use BatchWriteItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeTimeToLive with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Query with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Scan with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateTimeToLive with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;

namespace DynamoDBActions;

/// <summary>
/// A simple example that demonstrates basic DynamoDB operations.
/// </summary>
public class HelloDynamoDB
{
    /// <summary>
    /// HelloDynamoDB lists the existing DynamoDB tables for the default user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon DynamoDB.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
            )
            .Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var dynamoDbClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonDynamoDB>();

        try
        {
```

```
            var request = new ListTablesRequest();
            var tableNames = new List<string>();

            var paginatorForTables =
 dynamoDbClient.Paginators.ListTables(request);

            await foreach (var tableName in paginatorForTables.TableNames)
            {
                tableNames.Add(tableName);
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the DynamoDB Hello Service example. " +
                              "\nLet's list your DynamoDB tables:");
            tableNames.ForEach(table =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Table: {table}");
            });
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB service error occurred while
 listing tables. {ex.Message}");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing tables.
 {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS dynamodb)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_dynamodb")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.
```

```
     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_dynamodb.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_dynamodb.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/dynamodb/DynamoDBClient.h>
#include <aws/dynamodb/model/ListTablesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello DynamoDB" starter application which initializes an Amazon DynamoDB
 (DynamoDB) client and lists the
 *  DynamoDB tables.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_dynamodb'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.

    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamodbClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesRequest listTablesRequest;
        listTablesRequest.SetLimit(50);
        do {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesOutcome &outcome =
 dynamodbClient.ListTables(
                    listTablesRequest);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }

            for (const auto &tableName: outcome.GetResult().GetTableNames()) {
                std::cout << tableName << std::endl;
            }

            listTablesRequest.SetExclusiveStartTableName(
                    outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedTableName());

        } while (!listTablesRequest.GetExclusiveStartTableName().empty());
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListTables {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Listing your Amazon DynamoDB tables:\n");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listAllTables(ddb);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void listAllTables(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        boolean moreTables = true;
        String lastName = null;

        while (moreTables) {
```

```
            try {
                ListTablesResponse response = null;
                if (lastName == null) {
                    ListTablesRequest request =
 ListTablesRequest.builder().build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                } else {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                            .exclusiveStartTableName(lastName).build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                }

                List<String> tableNames = response.tableNames();
                if (tableNames.size() > 0) {
                    for (String curName : tableNames) {
                        System.out.format("* %s\n", curName);
                    }
                } else {
                    System.out.println("No tables found!");
                    System.exit(0);
                }

                lastName = response.lastEvaluatedTableName();
                if (lastName == null) {
                    moreTables = false;
                }

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

For more details on working with DynamoDB in AWS SDK for JavaScript, see Programming DynamoDB with JavaScript.

```
import { ListTablesCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListTablesCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response.TableNames.join("\n"));
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create a DynamoDB client using the default credentials and region
dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

# Initialize a paginator for the list_tables operation
paginator = dynamodb.get_paginator("list_tables")

# Create a PageIterator from the paginator
page_iterator = paginator.paginate(Limit=10)

# List the tables in the current AWS account
print("Here are the DynamoDB tables in your account:")

# Use pagination to list all tables
table_names = []

for page in page_iterator:
    for table_name in page.get("TableNames", []):
        print(f"- {table_name}")
        table_names.append(table_name)

if not table_names:
    print("You don't have any DynamoDB tables in your account.")
else:
    print(f"\nFound {len(table_names)} tables.")
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-dynamodb'
require 'logger'

# DynamoDBManager is a class responsible for managing DynamoDB operations
# such as listing all tables in the current AWS account.
class DynamoDBManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all DynamoDB tables in the current AWS account.
  def list_tables
    @logger.info('Here are the DynamoDB tables in your account:')

    paginator = @client.list_tables(limit: 10)
    table_names = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      page.table_names.each do |table_name|
        @logger.info("- #{table_name}")
        table_names << table_name
      end
    end

    if table_names.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any DynamoDB tables in your account.")
    else
      @logger.info("\nFound #{table_names.length} tables.")
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  dynamodb_client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new
  manager = DynamoDBManager.new(dynamodb_client)
  manager.list_tables
end
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Learn the basics of DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// This example application performs the following basic Amazon DynamoDB
/// functions:
///     CreateTableAsync
///     PutItemAsync
///     UpdateItemAsync
///     BatchWriteItemAsync
///     GetItemAsync
///     DeleteItemAsync
///     Query
///     Scan
///     DeleteItemAsync.
/// </summary>
public class DynamoDbBasics
{
    public static bool IsInteractive = true;
```

```
    // Separator for the console display.
    private static readonly string SepBar = new string('-', 80);

    /// <summary>
    /// The main entry point for the DynamoDB Basics example application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A task representing the asynchronous operation.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon DynamoDB.
        using var host =
Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddTransient<DynamoDbWrapper>())
            .Build();

        // Now the wrapper is available for injection.
        var dynamoDbWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<DynamoDbWrapper>();

        var tableName = "movie_table";

        var movieFileName = @"movies.json";

        DisplayInstructions();

        // Create a new table and wait for it to be active.
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the new table: {tableName}");

        var success = await dynamoDbWrapper.CreateMovieTableAsync(tableName);

        Console.WriteLine(success
            ? $"\nTable: {tableName} successfully created."
            : $"\nCould not create {tableName}.");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Add a single new movie to the table.
        var newMovie = new Movie
        {
            Year = 2021,
            Title = "Spider-Man: No Way Home",
```

```
        };

        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.PutItemAsync(newMovie, tableName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Added {newMovie.Title} to the table.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Could not add movie to table.");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Update the new movie by adding a plot and rank.
        var newInfo = new MovieInfo
        {
            Plot = "With Spider-Man's identity now revealed, Peter asks" +
                   "Doctor Strange for help. When a spell goes wrong, dangerous"
+
                   "foes from other worlds start to appear, forcing Peter to" +
                   "discover what it truly means to be Spider-Man.",
            Rank = 9,
        };

        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.UpdateItemAsync(newMovie, newInfo,
tableName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully updated the movie:
{newMovie.Title}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Could not update the movie.");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Add a batch of movies to the DynamoDB table from a list of
        // movies in a JSON file.
        var itemCount = await dynamoDbWrapper.BatchWriteItemsAsync(movieFileName,
tableName);
        Console.WriteLine($"Added {itemCount} movies to the table.");
```

```
        WaitForEnter();

        // Get a movie by key. (partition + sort)
        var lookupMovie = new Movie
        {
            Title = "Jurassic Park",
            Year = 1993,
        };

        Console.WriteLine("Looking for the movie \"Jurassic Park\".");
        var item = await dynamoDbWrapper.GetItemAsync(lookupMovie, tableName);
        if (item?.Count > 0)
        {
            dynamoDbWrapper.DisplayItem(item);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find {lookupMovie.Title}");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Delete a movie.
        var movieToDelete = new Movie
        {
            Title = "The Town",
            Year = 2010,
        };

        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.DeleteItemAsync(tableName,
movieToDelete);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {movieToDelete.Title}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {movieToDelete.Title}.");
        }

        WaitForEnter();
```

```
        // Use Query to find all the movies released in 2010.
        int findYear = 2010;
        Console.WriteLine($"Movies released in {findYear}");
        var queryCount = await dynamoDbWrapper.QueryMoviesAsync(tableName,
findYear);
        Console.WriteLine($"Found {queryCount} movies released in {findYear}");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Use Scan to get a list of movies from 2001 to 2011.
        int startYear = 2001;
        int endYear = 2011;
        var scanCount = await dynamoDbWrapper.ScanTableAsync(tableName,
startYear, endYear);
        Console.WriteLine($"Found {scanCount} movies released between {startYear}
and {endYear}");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Delete the table.
        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.DeleteTableAsync(tableName);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {tableName}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {tableName}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The DynamoDB Basics example application is
complete.");

        WaitForEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays the description of the application on the console.
    /// </summary>
    private static void DisplayInstructions()
    {
        if (!IsInteractive)
        {
```

```
            return;
        }

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.Write(new string(' ', 28));
        Console.WriteLine("DynamoDB Basics Example");
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("This demo application shows the basics of using
 DynamoDB with the AWS SDK.");
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("The application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates a table with partition: year and
 sort:title.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Adds a single movie to the table.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Adds movies to the table from moviedata.json.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Updates the rating and plot of the movie that was
 just added.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Gets a movie using its key (partition + sort).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Deletes a movie.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Uses QueryAsync to return all movies released in
 a given year.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. Uses ScanAsync to return all movies released
 within a range of years.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t9. Finally, it deletes the table that was just
 created.");
        WaitForEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Simple method to wait for the Enter key to be pressed.
    /// </summary>
    private static void WaitForEnter()
    {
        if (IsInteractive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
            Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
            _ = Console.ReadLine();
        }
    }
}
```

Creates a table to contain movie data.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Amazon DynamoDB table and then waits for the new
    /// table to become active.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to create.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateMovieTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.CreateTableAsync(new
 CreateTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                {
                    new AttributeDefinition
                    {
                        AttributeName = "title",
                        AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S,
                    },
                    new AttributeDefinition
                    {
                        AttributeName = "year",
                        AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N,
                    },
                },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                {
                    new KeySchemaElement
                    {
                        AttributeName = "year",
                        KeyType = KeyType.HASH,
                    },
                    new KeySchemaElement
                    {
                        AttributeName = "title",
```

```
                        KeyType = KeyType.RANGE,
                    },
                },
                BillingMode = BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
            });

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("Waiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = response.TableDescription.TableName,
            };

            TableStatus status;

            int sleepDuration = 2000;

            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(sleepDuration);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDB.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while creating
table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating table
 {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Adds a single movie to the table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Adds a new item to the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing informtation for
    /// the movie to add to the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the item will be
 added.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the results of adding the item.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutItemAsync(Movie newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var item = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new PutItemRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                Item = item,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.PutItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
```

```
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while putting
 item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while putting item.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Updates a single item in a table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Updates an existing item in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information for
    /// the movie to update.</param>
    /// <param name="newInfo">A MovieInfo object that contains the
    /// information that will be changed.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table that contains the movie.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateItemAsync(
        Movie newMovie,
        MovieInfo newInfo,
        string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
```

```
            };
            var updates = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValueUpdate>
            {
                ["info.plot"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { S = newInfo.Plot },
                },

                ["info.rating"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { N = newInfo.Rank.ToString() },
                },
            };

            var request = new UpdateItemRequest
            {
                AttributeUpdates = updates,
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.UpdateItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} or item was not found.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while updating
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while updating item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }
```

Retrieves a single item from the movie table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about an existing movie from the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information about
    /// the movie to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the movie.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Dictionary object containing information about the item
    /// retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>> GetItemAsync(Movie
 newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new GetItemRequest
            {
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.GetItemAsync(request);
            return response.Item;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>();
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while getting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while getting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Writes a batch of items to the movie table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
    /// added to the DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file.</param>
    /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
    public List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
    {
        var moviesList = new List<Movie>();
        if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
        {
            return moviesList;
        }

        using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
        string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
        var allMovies = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<List<Movie>>(
            json,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            {
                PropertyNameCaseInsensitive = true
            });

        // Now return the first 250 entries.
        if (allMovies != null && allMovies.Any())
        {
```

```
            moviesList = allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
        }
        return moviesList;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Writes 250 items to the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">A string containing the full path to
    /// the JSON file containing movie data.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to write items to.</param>
    /// <returns>A long integer value representing the number of movies
    /// imported from the JSON file.</returns>
    public async Task<long> BatchWriteItemsAsync(
        string movieFileName, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);
            if (!movies.Any())
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Couldn't find the JSON file with movie
data.");
                return 0;
            }

            var context = new DynamoDBContextBuilder()
                // Optional call to provide a specific instance of
IAmazonDynamoDB
                .WithDynamoDBClient(() => _amazonDynamoDB)
                .Build();

            var movieBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Movie>(
                new BatchWriteConfig()
                {
                    OverrideTableName = tableName
                });
            movieBatch.AddPutItems(movies);

            Console.WriteLine("Adding imported movies to the table.");
            await movieBatch.ExecuteAsync();

            return movies.Count;
        }
```

```
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table was not found during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred during batch
write operation. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Deletes a single item from the table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a single item from a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which the item
    /// will be deleted.</param>
    /// <param name="movieToDelete">A movie object containing the title and
    /// year of the movie to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
    /// delete operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteItemAsync(
        string tableName,
        Movie movieToDelete)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = movieToDelete.Title },
```

```
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N =
movieToDelete.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new DeleteItemRequest { TableName = tableName, Key =
key, };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Queries the table for movies released in a particular year.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Queries the table for movies released in a particular year and
    /// then displays the information for the movies returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to query.</param>
    /// <param name="year">The release year for which we want to
    /// view movies.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies that match the query.</returns>
    public async Task<int> QueryMoviesAsync(string tableName, int year)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var movieTable = new TableBuilder(_amazonDynamoDB, tableName)
                .AddHashKey("year", DynamoDBEntryType.Numeric)
                .AddRangeKey("title", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
                .Build();

            var filter = new QueryFilter("year", QueryOperator.Equal, year);

            Console.WriteLine("\nFind movies released in: {year}:");

            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Limit = 10, // 10 items per page.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
                {
                    "title",
                    "year",
                },
                ConsistentRead = true,
                Filter = filter,
            };

            // Value used to track how many movies match the
            // supplied criteria.
            var moviesFound = 0;

            var search = movieTable.Query(config);
            do
            {
                var movieList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                moviesFound += movieList.Count;

                foreach (var movie in movieList)
                {
                    DisplayDocument(movie);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);

            return moviesFound;
        }
```

```
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while querying
 movies. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while querying movies.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Scans the table for movies released in a range of years.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Scans the table for movies released between the specified years.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to scan.</param>
    /// <param name="startYear">The starting year for the range.</param>
    /// <param name="endYear">The ending year for the range.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies found in the specified year range.</
returns>
    public async Task<int> ScanTableAsync(
        string tableName,
        int startYear,
        int endYear)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ScanRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
```

```
                    { "#yr", "year" },
                },
                ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string,
AttributeValue>
                {
                    { ":y_a", new AttributeValue { N = startYear.ToString() } },
                    { ":y_z", new AttributeValue { N = endYear.ToString() } },
                },
                FilterExpression = "#yr between :y_a and :y_z",
                ProjectionExpression = "#yr, title, info.actors[0],
info.directors, info.running_time_secs",
                Limit = 10 // Set a limit to demonstrate using the
LastEvaluatedKey.
            };

            // Keep track of how many movies were found.
            int foundCount = 0;

            var response = new ScanResponse();
            do
            {
                response = await _amazonDynamoDB.ScanAsync(request);
                foundCount += response.Items.Count;
                response.Items.ForEach(i => DisplayItem(i));
                request.ExclusiveStartKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
            }
            while (response?.LastEvaluatedKey?.Count > 0);
            return foundCount;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while scanning
table. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while scanning table.
{ex.Message}");
```

```
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Deletes the movie table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteTableAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Table {response.TableDescription.TableName}
 successfully deleted.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found and cannot be
 deleted. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
 table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting table
{tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The DynamoDB getting started scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_getting_started_movies
#
```

```
# Scenario to create an Amazon DynamoDB table and perform a series of operations
 on the table.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_getting_started_movies() {

  source ./dynamodb_operations.sh

  key_schema_json_file="dynamodb_key_schema.json"
  attribute_definitions_json_file="dynamodb_attr_def.json"
  item_json_file="movie_item.json"
  key_json_file="movie_key.json"
  batch_json_file="batch.json"
  attribute_names_json_file="attribute_names.json"
  attributes_values_json_file="attribute_values.json"

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo
  echo "Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo."
  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  local table_name
  echo -n "Enter a name for a new DynamoDB table: "
  get_input
  table_name=$get_input_result

  echo '[
  {"AttributeName": "year", "KeyType": "HASH"},
   {"AttributeName": "title", "KeyType": "RANGE"}
  ]' >"$key_schema_json_file"

  echo '[
  {"AttributeName": "year", "AttributeType": "N"},
   {"AttributeName": "title", "AttributeType": "S"}
  ]' >"$attribute_definitions_json_file"

  if dynamodb_create_table -n "$table_name" -a "$attribute_definitions_json_file"
 \
    -k "$key_schema_json_file" 1>/dev/null; then
```

```
    echo "Created a DynamoDB table named $table_name"
  else
    errecho "The table failed to create. This demo will exit."
    clean_up
    return 1
  fi

  echo "Waiting for the table to become active...."

  if dynamodb_wait_table_active -n "$table_name"; then
    echo "The table is now active."
  else
    errecho "The table failed to become active. This demo will exit."
    cleanup "$table_name"
    return 1
  fi

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo -n "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: "
  get_input
  local added_title
  added_title=$get_input_result

  local added_year
  get_int_input "What year was it released? "
  added_year=$get_input_result

  local rating
  get_float_input "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? " "1" "10"
  rating=$get_input_result

  local plot
  echo -n "Summarize the plot for me: "
  get_input
  plot=$get_input_result

  echo '{
    "year": {"N" :"'"$added_year"'"},
    "title": {"S" :  "'"$added_title"'"},
    "info": {"M" : {"plot": {"S" : "'"$plot"'"}, "rating":
{"N" :"'"$rating"'"} } }
```

```
  }' >"$item_json_file"

 if dynamodb_put_item -n "$table_name" -i "$item_json_file"; then
   echo "The movie '$added_title' was successfully added to the table
'$table_name'."
 else
   errecho "Put item failed. This demo will exit."
   clean_up "$table_name"
   return 1
 fi

 echo
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo

 echo "Let's update your movie '$added_title'."
 get_float_input "You rated it $rating, what new rating would you give it? " "1"
"10"
 rating=$get_input_result

 echo -n "You summarized the plot as '$plot'."
 echo "What would you say now? "
 get_input
 plot=$get_input_result

 echo '{
   "year": {"N" :"'"$added_year"'"},
   "title": {"S" :  "'"$added_title"'"}
   }' >"$key_json_file"

 echo '{
   ":r": {"N" :"'"$rating"'"},
   ":p": {"S" : "'"$plot"'"}
  }' >"$item_json_file"

 local update_expression="SET info.rating = :r, info.plot = :p"

 if dynamodb_update_item -n "$table_name" -k "$key_json_file" -e
"$update_expression" -v "$item_json_file"; then
   echo "Updated '$added_title' with new attributes."
 else
   errecho "Update item failed. This demo will exit."
   clean_up "$table_name"
   return 1
```

```
  fi

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "We will now use batch write to upload 150 movie entries into the table."

  local batch_json
  for batch_json in movie_files/movies_*.json; do
    echo "{ \"$table_name\" : $(<"$batch_json") }" >"$batch_json_file"
    if dynamodb_batch_write_item -i "$batch_json_file" 1>/dev/null; then
      echo "Entries in $batch_json added to table."
    else
      errecho "Batch write failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi
  done

  local title="The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring"
  local year="2001"

  if get_yes_no_input "Let's move on...do you want to get info about '$title'?
 (y/n) "; then
    echo '{
  "year": {"N" :"'"$year"'"},
  "title": {"S" :  "'"$title"'"}
  }' >"$key_json_file"
    local info
    info=$(dynamodb_get_item -n "$table_name" -k "$key_json_file")

    # shellcheck disable=SC2181
    if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
      errecho "Get item failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi

    echo "Here is what I found:"
    echo "$info"
  fi

  local ask_for_year=true
```

```
  while [[ "$ask_for_year" == true ]]; do
    echo "Let's get a list of movies released in a given year."
    get_int_input "Enter a year between 1972 and 2018: " "1972" "2018"
    year=$get_input_result
    echo '{
    "#n": "year"
    }' >"$attribute_names_json_file"

    echo '{
    ":v": {"N" :"'"$year"'"}
    }' >"$attributes_values_json_file"

    response=$(dynamodb_query -n "$table_name" -k "#n=:v" -a
"$attribute_names_json_file" -v "$attributes_values_json_file")

    # shellcheck disable=SC2181
    if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
      errecho "Query table failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi

    echo "Here is what I found:"
    echo "$response"

    if ! get_yes_no_input "Try another year? (y/n) "; then
      ask_for_year=false
    fi
  done

  echo "Now let's scan for movies released in a range of years. Enter a year: "
  get_int_input "Enter a year between 1972 and 2018: " "1972" "2018"
  local start=$get_input_result

  get_int_input "Enter another year: " "1972" "2018"
  local end=$get_input_result

  echo '{
    "#n": "year"
    }' >"$attribute_names_json_file"

  echo '{
    ":v1": {"N" : "'"$start"'"},
    ":v2": {"N" : "'"$end"'"}
```

```
    }' >"$attributes_values_json_file"

  response=$(dynamodb_scan -n "$table_name" -f "#n BETWEEN :v1 AND :v2" -a
"$attribute_names_json_file" -v "$attributes_values_json_file")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "Scan table failed. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$table_name"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "Here is what I found:"
  echo "$response"

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "Let's remove your movie '$added_title' from the table."

  if get_yes_no_input "Do you want to remove '$added_title'? (y/n) "; then
    echo '{
  "year": {"N" :"'"$added_year"'"},
  "title": {"S" :  "'"$added_title"'"}
  }' >"$key_json_file"

    if ! dynamodb_delete_item -n "$table_name" -k "$key_json_file"; then
      errecho "Delete item failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi
  fi

  if get_yes_no_input "Do you want to delete the table '$table_name'? (y/n) ";
then
    if ! clean_up "$table_name"; then
      return 1
    fi
  else
    if ! clean_up; then
      return 1
    fi
  fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

The DynamoDB functions used in this scenario.

```
##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_create_table
#
# This function creates an Amazon DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create.
#       -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and
 their types.
#       -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key
 types.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_create_table() {
  local table_name attribute_definitions key_schema response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_create_table"
    echo "Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table with on-demand billing."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create."
    echo " -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and
 their types."
    echo " -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key
 types."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:a:k:h" option; do
```

```
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) attribute_definitions="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_schema="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_definitions" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an attribute definitions json file path the
 -a parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_schema" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key schema json file path the -k
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    attribute_definitions:   $attribute_definitions"
  iecho "    key_schema:   $key_schema"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb create-table \
```

```
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --attribute-definitions file://"$attribute_definitions" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --key-schema file://"$key_schema" )

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_describe_table
#
# This function returns the status of a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#
#  Response:
#       - TableStatus:
#     And:
#       0 - Table is active.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_describe_table {
  local table_name
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_describe_table"
    echo "Describe the status of a DynamoDB table."
    echo "  -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo ""
  }
```

```
  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local table_status
    table_status=$(
      aws dynamodb describe-table \
        --table-name "$table_name" \
        --output text \
        --query 'Table.TableStatus'
    )

   local error_code=${?}

    if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log "$error_code"
      errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-table operation failed.$table_status"
      return 1
    fi

  echo "$table_status"

  return 0
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_put_item
#
# This function puts an item into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_put_item() {
  local table_name item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_put_item"
    echo "Put an item into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    item:   $item"
  iecho ""
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --item file://"$item")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_update_item
#
# This function updates an item in a DynamoDB table.
#
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
```

```
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to update.
#       -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more
 attributes to be updated.
#       -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###########################################################################
function dynamodb_update_item() {
  local table_name keys update_expression values response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_update_item"
    echo "Update an item in a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the
 item to update."
    echo " -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more
 attributes to be updated."
    echo " -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:e:v:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      e) update_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
  if [[ -z "$update_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an update expression with the -e parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a values json file path the -v parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    keys:   $keys"
  iecho "    update_expression:   $update_expression"
  iecho "    values:   $values"

  response=$(aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys" \
    --update-expression "$update_expression" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://"$values")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports update-item operation failed.$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}

##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_batch_write_item
#
# This function writes a batch of items into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_batch_write_item() {
  local item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_batch_write_item"
    echo "Write a batch of items into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    item:   $item"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb batch-write-item \
    --request-items file://"$item")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-write-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}

###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_get_item
#
# This function gets an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to get.
#       [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The item as text output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
```

```
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_get_item() {
  local table_name keys query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_get_item"
    echo "Get an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the
 item to get."
    echo " [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression."
    echo ""
  }
  query=""
  while getopts "n:k:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb get-item \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key file://"$keys" \
      --output text \
      --query "$query")
  else
    response=$(
      aws dynamodb get-item \
        --table-name "$table_name" \
        --key file://"$keys" \
        --output text
    )
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports get-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    echo "$response" | sed "/^\t/s/\t//1" # Remove initial tab that the JMSEPath
 query inserts on some strings.
  else
    echo "$response"
  fi

  return 0
}

###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_query
#
# This function queries a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
```

```
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression.
#       -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute names.
#       -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_query() {
  local table_name key_condition_expression attribute_names attribute_values
 projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_query"
    echo "Query a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression."
    echo " -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute
 names."
    echo " -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute
 values."
    echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:a:v:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_condition_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
```

```
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_condition_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key condition expression with the -k
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute names with the -a parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute values with the -v parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
```

```
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports query operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_scan
#
# This function scans a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression.
#       -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute names.
#       -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##########################################################################
function dynamodb_scan() {
  local table_name filter_expression expression_attribute_names
 expression_attribute_values projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
```

```
# Function usage explanation
#######################################
function usage() {
  echo "function dynamodb_scan"
  echo "Scan a DynamoDB table."
  echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
  echo " -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression."
  echo " -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the
expression attribute names."
  echo " -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
expression attribute values."
  echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
  echo ""
}

while getopts "n:f:a:v:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    f) filter_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
    a) expression_attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
    v) expression_attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$filter_expression" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a filter expression with the -f parameter."
  usage
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute names with the -a
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute values with the -v
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports scan operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_item
#
# This function deletes an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_item() {
  local table_name keys response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_item"
    echo "Delete an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the
 item to delete."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "n:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
```

```
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    keys:   $keys"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb delete-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_table
#
# This function deletes a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete.
#
```

```
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_table() {
  local table_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_table"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb delete-table \
```

```
    --table-name "$table_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this scenario.

```
##############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem

- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        //  1. Create a table with partition: year (N) and sort: title (S).
 (CreateTable)
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig)) {

            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::dynamodbGettingStartedScenario(clientConfig);

            // 9. Delete the table. (DeleteTable)
            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig);
        }
    }

//! Scenario to modify and query a DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa dynamodbGettingStartedScenario()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::dynamodbGettingStartedScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo." <<
 std::endl;
```

```
   std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
             << std::endl;

   Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

   // 2. Add a new movie.
   Aws::String title;
   float rating;
   int year;
   Aws::String plot;
   {
       title = askQuestion(
               "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
       year = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
       rating = askQuestionForFloatRange("On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate
it? ",
                                         1, 10);
       plot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemRequest putItemRequest;
       putItemRequest.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

       putItemRequest.AddItem(YEAR_KEY,

Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
       putItemRequest.AddItem(TITLE_KEY,

Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));

       // Create attribute for the info map.
       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

       std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
               ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
       ratingAttribute->SetN(rating);
       infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

       std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
               ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
       plotAttribute->SetS(plot);
       infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
```

```
        putItemRequest.AddItem(INFO_KEY, infoMapAttribute);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemOutcome outcome = dynamoClient.PutItem(
                putItemRequest);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add an item: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nAdded '" << title << "' to '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'."
              << std::endl;

    // 3. Update the rating and plot of the movie by using an update expression.
    {
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it  ") +
                std::to_string(rating)
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion(Aws::String("You summarized the plot as '") + plot +
                           "'.\nWhat would you say now? ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemRequest request;
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);
        request.AddKey(TITLE_KEY,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        request.AddKey(YEAR_KEY,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        std::stringstream expressionStream;
        expressionStream << "set " << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << " =:r, "
                         << INFO_KEY << "." << PLOT_KEY << " =:p";
        request.SetUpdateExpression(expressionStream.str());
        request.SetExpressionAttributeValues({
                                                        {":r",
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                                                rating)},
                                                        {":p",
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(
                                                                plot)}
                                                }});

        request.SetReturnValues(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ReturnValue::UPDATED_NEW);
```

```
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemOutcome &result =
dynamoClient.UpdateItem(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error updating movie " + result.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nUpdated '" << title << "' with new attributes:" << std::endl;

    // 4. Put 250 movies in the table from moviedata.json.
    {
        std::cout << "Adding movies from a json file to the database." <<
std::endl;
        const size_t MAX_SIZE_FOR_BATCH_WRITE = 25;
        const size_t MOVIES_TO_WRITE = 10 * MAX_SIZE_FOR_BATCH_WRITE;
        Aws::String jsonString = getMovieJSON();
        if (!jsonString.empty()) {
            Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue json(jsonString);
            Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> movieJsons =
json.View().AsArray();
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest> writeRequests;

            // To add movies with a cross-section of years, use an appropriate
increment
            // value for iterating through the database.
            size_t increment = movieJsons.GetLength() / MOVIES_TO_WRITE;
            for (size_t i = 0; i < movieJsons.GetLength(); i += increment) {
                writeRequests.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest());
                Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
putItems = movieJsonViewToAttributeMap(
                        movieJsons[i]);
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutRequest putRequest;
                putRequest.SetItem(putItems);
                writeRequests.back().SetPutRequest(putRequest);
                if (writeRequests.size() == MAX_SIZE_FOR_BATCH_WRITE) {
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemRequest request;
                    request.AddRequestItems(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME, writeRequests);
                    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(
                            request);
```

```
                    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                        std::cerr << "Unable to batch write movie data: "
                                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                                  << std::endl;
                        writeRequests.clear();
                        break;
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout << "Added batch of " << writeRequests.size()
                                  << " movies to the database."
                                  << std::endl;
                    }
                    writeRequests.clear();
                }
            }
        }
    }

    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;

    // 5. Get a movie by Key (partition + sort).
    {
        Aws::String titleToGet("King Kong");
        Aws::String answer = askQuestion(Aws::String(
                "Let's move on...Would you like to get info about '" + titleToGet
+
                "'? (y/n) "));
        if (answer == "y") {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemRequest request;
            request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);
            request.AddKey(TITLE_KEY,

Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titleToGet));
            request.AddKey(YEAR_KEY,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(1933));

            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemOutcome &result =
dynamoClient.GetItem(
                    request);
            if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error " << result.GetError().GetMessage();
            }
            else {
```

```
                const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = result.GetResult().GetItem();
                if (!item.empty()) {
                    std::cout << "\nHere's what I found:" << std::endl;
                    printMovieInfo(item);
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "\nThe movie was not found in the database."
                              << std::endl;
                }
            }
        }
    }

    // 6. Use Query with a key condition expression to return all movies
    //    released in a given year.
    Aws::String doAgain = "n";
    do {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryRequest req;

        req.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        // "year" is a DynamoDB reserved keyword and must be replaced with an
        // expression attribute name.
        req.SetKeyConditionExpression("#dynobase_year = :valueToMatch");
        req.SetExpressionAttributeNames({{"#dynobase_year", YEAR_KEY}});

        int yearToMatch = askQuestionForIntRange(
                "\nLet's get a list of movies released in"
                " a given year. Enter a year between 1972 and 2018 ",
                1972, 2018);
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
attributeValues;
        attributeValues.emplace(":valueToMatch",
                                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                        yearToMatch));
        req.SetExpressionAttributeValues(attributeValues);

        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryOutcome &result =
dynamoClient.Query(req);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetResult().GetItems();
            if (!items.empty()) {
```

```
                std::cout << "\nThere were " << items.size()
                          << " movies in the database from "
                          << yearToMatch << "." << std::endl;
                for (const auto &item: items) {
                    printMovieInfo(item);
                }
                doAgain = "n";
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "\nNo movies from " << yearToMatch
                          << " were found in the database"
                          << std::endl;
                doAgain = askQuestion(Aws::String("Try another year? (y/n) "));
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to Query items: " <<
result.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

    } while (doAgain == "y");

    //  7. Use Scan to return movies released within a range of years.
    //     Show how to paginate data using ExclusiveStartKey. (Scan +
FilterExpression)
    {
        int startYear = askQuestionForIntRange("\nNow let's scan a range of years
"
                                               "for movies in the database. Enter
a start year: ",
                                               1972, 2018);
        int endYear = askQuestionForIntRange("\nEnter an end year: ",
                                             startYear, 2018);
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
exclusiveStartKey;
        do {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanRequest scanRequest;
            scanRequest.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);
            scanRequest.SetFilterExpression(
                    "#dynobase_year >= :startYear AND #dynobase_year
<= :endYear");
            scanRequest.SetExpressionAttributeNames({{"#dynobase_year",
YEAR_KEY}});
```

```
            Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
attributeValues;
            attributeValues.emplace(":startYear",
                                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                            startYear));
            attributeValues.emplace(":endYear",
                                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                            endYear));
            scanRequest.SetExpressionAttributeValues(attributeValues);

            if (!exclusiveStartKey.empty()) {
                scanRequest.SetExclusiveStartKey(exclusiveStartKey);
            }

            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanOutcome &result = dynamoClient.Scan(
                    scanRequest);
            if (result.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetResult().GetItems();
                if (!items.empty()) {
                    std::stringstream stringStream;
                    stringStream << "\nFound " << items.size() << " movies in one
scan."
                                 << " How many would you like to see? ";
                    size_t count = askQuestionForInt(stringStream.str());
                    for (size_t i = 0; i < count && i < items.size(); ++i) {
                        printMovieInfo(items[i]);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "\nNo movies in the database between " <<
startYear <<
                              " and " << endYear << "." << std::endl;
                }

                exclusiveStartKey = result.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedKey();
                if (!exclusiveStartKey.empty()) {
                    std::cout << "Not all movies were retrieved. Scanning for
more."
                              << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "All movies were retrieved with this scan."
```

```
                              << std::endl;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to Scan movies: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            }
        } while (!exclusiveStartKey.empty());
    }

    // 8. Delete a movie. (DeleteItem)
    {
        std::stringstream stringStream;
        stringStream << "\nWould you like to delete the movie " << title
                     << " from the database? (y/n) ";
        Aws::String answer = askQuestion(stringStream.str());
        if (answer == "y") {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemRequest request;
            request.AddKey(YEAR_KEY,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
            request.AddKey(TITLE_KEY,
                           Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
            request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteItem(
                    request);
            if (result.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "\nRemoved \"" << title << "\" from the database."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movie: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Routine to convert a JsonView object to an attribute map.
/*!
```

```
  \sa movieJsonViewToAttributeMap()
  \param jsonView: Json view object.
  \return map: Map that can be used in a DynamoDB request.
 */
Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
AwsDoc::DynamoDB::movieJsonViewToAttributeMap(
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &jsonView) {
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> result;

    if (jsonView.KeyExists(YEAR_KEY)) {
        result[YEAR_KEY].SetN(jsonView.GetInteger(YEAR_KEY));
    }
    if (jsonView.KeyExists(TITLE_KEY)) {
        result[TITLE_KEY].SetS(jsonView.GetString(TITLE_KEY));
    }
    if (jsonView.KeyExists(INFO_KEY)) {
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, const
 std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> infoMap;
        Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView infoView = jsonView.GetObject(INFO_KEY);
        if (infoView.KeyExists(RATING_KEY)) {
            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValue
 = std::make_shared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>();
            attributeValue->SetN(infoView.GetDouble(RATING_KEY));
            infoMap.emplace(std::make_pair(RATING_KEY, attributeValue));
        }
        if (infoView.KeyExists(PLOT_KEY)) {
            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValue
 = std::make_shared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>();
            attributeValue->SetS(infoView.GetString(PLOT_KEY));
            infoMap.emplace(std::make_pair(PLOT_KEY, attributeValue));
        }

        result[INFO_KEY].SetM(infoMap);
    }

    return result;
}

//! Create a DynamoDB table to be used in sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa createMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
```

```
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    bool movieTableAlreadyExisted = false;

    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition yearAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(YEAR_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::N);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition titleAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(TITLE_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement yearKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(YEAR_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement titleKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(TITLE_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::RANGE);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
        throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS);
        request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        std::cout << "Creating table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'..." <<
 std::endl;
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            if (result.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
                std::cout << "Table already exists." << std::endl;
                movieTableAlreadyExisted = true;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to create table: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage();
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    // Wait for table to become active.
    if (!movieTableAlreadyExisted) {
        std::cout << "Waiting for table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME
                  << "' to become active...." << std::endl;
        if (!AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME,
 clientConfiguration)) {
            return false;
        }
        std::cout << "Table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "' created and active."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Delete the DynamoDB table used for sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
```

```
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}

//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario to create the table and perform actions on it.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/dynamodb/actions"
)

// RunMovieScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use the AWS
 SDK for Go
// to create and use an Amazon DynamoDB table that stores data about movies.
//
//  1. Create a table that can hold movie data.
//  2. Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
//  3. Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
//  4. Query for movies that were released in a given year.
//  5. Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
//  6. Delete a movie from the table.
//  7. Delete the table.
//
// This example creates a DynamoDB service client from the specified sdkConfig so
 that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
//
// The specified movie sampler is used to get sample data from a URL that is
 loaded
// into the named table.
func RunMovieScenario(
 ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 tableName string,
 movieSampler actions.IMovieSampler) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()
```

```
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo.")
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

tableBasics := actions.TableBasics{TableName: tableName,
 DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)}

exists, err := tableBasics.TableExists(ctx)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !exists {
 log.Printf("Creating table %v...\n", tableName)
 _, err = tableBasics.CreateMovieTable(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Created table %v.\n", tableName)
 }
} else {
 log.Printf("Table %v already exists.\n", tableName)
}

var customMovie actions.Movie
customMovie.Title = questioner.Ask("Enter a movie title to add to the table:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
customMovie.Year = questioner.AskInt("What year was it released?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{}, demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1900, Upper: 2030})
customMovie.Info = map[string]interface{}{}
customMovie.Info["rating"] = questioner.AskFloat64(
 "Enter a rating between 1 and 10:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{}, demotools.InFloatRange{Lower: 1, Upper: 10})
customMovie.Info["plot"] = questioner.Ask("What's the plot? ",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
err = tableBasics.AddMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Added %v to the movie table.\n", customMovie.Title)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's update your movie. You previously rated it %v.\n",
customMovie.Info["rating"])
customMovie.Info["rating"] = questioner.AskFloat64(
```

```
 "What new rating would you give it?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{}, demotools.InFloatRange{Lower: 1, Upper: 10})
log.Printf("You summarized the plot as '%v'.\n", customMovie.Info["plot"])
customMovie.Info["plot"] = questioner.Ask("What would you say now?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
attributes, err := tableBasics.UpdateMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Updated %v with new values.\n", customMovie.Title)
 for _, attVal := range attributes {
  for valKey, val := range attVal {
   log.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", valKey, val)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Getting movie data from %v and adding 250 movies to the table...\n",
 movieSampler.GetURL())
movies := movieSampler.GetSampleMovies()
written, err := tableBasics.AddMovieBatch(ctx, movies, 250)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
} else {
 log.Printf("Added %v movies to the table.\n", written)
}

show := 10
if show > written {
 show = written
}
log.Printf("The first %v movies in the table are:", show)
for index, movie := range movies[:show] {
 log.Printf("\t%v. %v\n", index+1, movie.Title)
}
movieIndex := questioner.AskInt(
 "Enter the number of a movie to get info about it: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1, Upper: show},
)
movie, err := tableBasics.GetMovie(ctx, movies[movieIndex-1].Title,
movies[movieIndex-1].Year)
if err == nil {
 log.Println(movie)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
log.Println("Let's get a list of movies released in a given year.")
releaseYear := questioner.AskInt("Enter a year between 1972 and 2018: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1972, Upper: 2018},
)
releases, err := tableBasics.Query(ctx, releaseYear)
if err == nil {
 if len(releases) == 0 {
  log.Printf("I couldn't find any movies released in %v!\n", releaseYear)
 } else {
  for _, movie = range releases {
   log.Println(movie)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Now let's scan for movies released in a range of years.")
startYear := questioner.AskInt("Enter a year: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1972, Upper: 2018})
endYear := questioner.AskInt("Enter another year: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1972, Upper: 2018})
releases, err = tableBasics.Scan(ctx, startYear, endYear)
if err == nil {
 if len(releases) == 0 {
  log.Printf("I couldn't find any movies released between %v and %v!\n",
startYear, endYear)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Found %v movies. In this list, the plot is <nil> because "+
   "we used a projection expression when scanning for items to return only "+
   "the title, year, and rating.\n", len(releases))
  for _, movie = range releases {
   log.Println(movie)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

var tables []string
if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to list all of your tables? (y/n) ", "y") {
 tables, err = tableBasics.ListTables(ctx)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Found %v tables:", len(tables))
  for _, table := range tables {
```

```
    log.Printf("\t%v", table)
   }
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Let's remove your movie '%v'.\n", customMovie.Title)
 if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete it from the table? (y/n) ", "y") {
  err = tableBasics.DeleteMovie(ctx, customMovie)
 }
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted %v.\n", customMovie.Title)
 }

 if questioner.AskBool("Delete the table, too? (y/n)", "y") {
  err = tableBasics.DeleteTable(ctx)
 } else {
  log.Println("Don't forget to delete the table when you're done or you might " +
   "incur charges on your account.")
 }
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted table %v.\n", tableBasics.TableName)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

Create a struct and methods that call DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
```

```
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// TableExists determines whether a DynamoDB table exists.
func (basics TableBasics) TableExists(ctx context.Context) (bool, error) {
 exists := true
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DescribeTable(
  ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundEx *types.ResourceNotFoundException
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundEx) {
   log.Printf("Table %v does not exist.\n", basics.TableName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't determine existence of table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  }
  exists = false
 }
 return exists, err
}
```

```
// CreateMovieTable creates a DynamoDB table with a composite primary key defined
 as
// a string sort key named `title`, and a numeric partition key named `year`.
// This function uses NewTableExistsWaiter to wait for the table to be created by
// DynamoDB before it returns.
func (basics TableBasics) CreateMovieTable(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.TableDescription, error) {
 var tableDesc *types.TableDescription
 table, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.CreateTable(ctx, &dynamodb.CreateTableInput{
  AttributeDefinitions: []types.AttributeDefinition{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
   AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeN,
  }, {
   AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
   AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeS,
  }},
  KeySchema: []types.KeySchemaElement{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
   KeyType:       types.KeyTypeHash,
  }, {
   AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
   KeyType:       types.KeyTypeRange,
  }},
  TableName:   aws.String(basics.TableName),
  BillingMode: types.BillingModePayPerRequest,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 } else {
  waiter := dynamodb.NewTableExistsWaiter(basics.DynamoDbClient)
  err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{
   TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)}, 5*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Wait for table exists failed. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  tableDesc = table.TableDescription
  log.Printf("Ccreating table test")
 }
 return tableDesc, err
}



// ListTables lists the DynamoDB table names for the current account.
```

```
func (basics TableBasics) ListTables(ctx context.Context) ([]string, error) {
 var tableNames []string
 var output *dynamodb.ListTablesOutput
 var err error
 tablePaginator := dynamodb.NewListTablesPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ListTablesInput{})
 for tablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = tablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   tableNames = append(tableNames, output.TableNames...)
  }
 }
 return tableNames, err
}



// AddMovie adds a movie the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 item, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Item: item,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't add item to table. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// UpdateMovie updates the rating and plot of a movie that already exists in the
// DynamoDB table. This function uses the `expression` package to build the
 update
// expression.
func (basics TableBasics) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie)
 (map[string]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var err error
```

```
 var response *dynamodb.UpdateItemOutput
 var attributeMap map[string]map[string]interface{}
 update := expression.Set(expression.Name("info.rating"),
 expression.Value(movie.Info["rating"]))
 update.Set(expression.Name("info.plot"), expression.Value(movie.Info["plot"]))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithUpdate(update).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for update. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  response, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.UpdateItem(ctx,
 &dynamodb.UpdateItemInput{
   TableName:                aws.String(basics.TableName),
   Key:                      movie.GetKey(),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   UpdateExpression:         expr.Update(),
   ReturnValues:             types.ReturnValueUpdatedNew,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
  } else {
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Attributes, &attributeMap)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshall update response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
  }
 }
 return attributeMap, err
}



// AddMovieBatch adds a slice of movies to the DynamoDB table. The function sends
// batches of 25 movies to DynamoDB until all movies are added or it reaches the
// specified maximum.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 maxMovies int) (int, error) {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 written := 0
 batchSize := 25 // DynamoDB allows a maximum batch size of 25 items.
 start := 0
 end := start + batchSize
 for start < maxMovies && start < len(movies) {
```

```
  var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
  if end > len(movies) {
   end = len(movies)
  }
  for _, movie := range movies[start:end] {
   item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't marshal movie %v for batch writing. Here's why: %v\n",
 movie.Title, err)
   } else {
    writeReqs = append(
     writeReqs,
     types.WriteRequest{PutRequest: &types.PutRequest{Item: item}},
    )
   }
  }
  _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
   RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{basics.TableName: writeReqs}})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't add a batch of movies to %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  } else {
   written += len(writeReqs)
  }
  start = end
  end += batchSize
 }

 return written, err
}



// GetMovie gets movie data from the DynamoDB table by using the primary
 composite key
// made of title and year.
func (basics TableBasics) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 movie := Movie{Title: title, Year: year}
 response, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key: movie.GetKey(), TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}



// Query gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in the
 specified year.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the key condition
 expression
// that is used in the query.
func (basics TableBasics) Query(ctx context.Context, releaseYear int) ([]Movie,
 error) {
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.QueryOutput
 var movies []Movie
 keyEx := expression.Key("year").Equal(expression.Value(releaseYear))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithKeyCondition(keyEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for query. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  queryPaginator := dynamodb.NewQueryPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.QueryInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   KeyConditionExpression:    expr.KeyCondition(),
  })
  for queryPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = queryPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't query for movies released in %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 releaseYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
```

```
      log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
      break
     } else {
      movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
     }
    }
   }
  }
  return movies, err
}



// Scan gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in a range of
 years
// and projects them to return a reduced set of fields.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the filter and projection
// expressions.
func (basics TableBasics) Scan(ctx context.Context, startYear int, endYear int)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 var movies []Movie
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.ScanOutput
 filtEx := expression.Name("year").Between(expression.Value(startYear),
 expression.Value(endYear))
 projEx := expression.NamesList(
  expression.Name("year"), expression.Name("title"),
 expression.Name("info.rating"))
 expr, err :=
 expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filtEx).WithProjection(projEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expressions for scan. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  scanPaginator := dynamodb.NewScanPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ScanInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
   ProjectionExpression:      expr.Projection(),
  })
  for scanPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = scanPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Printf("Couldn't scan for movies released between %v and %v. Here's why:
 %v\n",
     startYear, endYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
     movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
    }
   }
  }
 }
 return movies, err
}



// DeleteMovie removes a movie from the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Key: movie.GetKey(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteTable deletes the DynamoDB table and all of its data.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteTable(ctx context.Context) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteTable(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteTableInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a DynamoDB table.

```
// Create a table with a Sort key.
public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
    DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
    ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

    // Define attributes.
    attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
        .attributeName("year")
        .attributeType("N")
        .build());
```

```
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
fileName) throws IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
            .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
            .build();

        DynamoDbTable<Movies> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        while (iter.hasNext()) {
            // Only add 200 Movies to the table.
            if (t == 200)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String info = currentNode.path("info").toString();

            Movies movies = new Movies();
            movies.setYear(year);
            movies.setTitle(title);
            movies.setInfo(info);

            // Put the data into the Amazon DynamoDB Movie table.
            mappedTable.putItem(movies);
            t++;
        }
    }
```

Get an item from a table.

```
    public static void getItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put("year", AttributeValue.builder()
            .n("1933")
            .build());

        keyToGet.put("title", AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("King Kong")
            .build());

        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .key(keyToGet)
            .tableName("Movies")
            .build();

        try {
            Map<String, AttributeValue> returnedItem =
ddb.getItem(request).item();

            if (returnedItem != null) {
                Set<String> keys = returnedItem.keySet();
                System.out.println("Amazon DynamoDB table attributes: \n");

                for (String key1 : keys) {
                    System.out.format("%s: %s\n", key1,
returnedItem.get(key1).toString());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.format("No item found with the key %s!\n", "year");
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Full example.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Creates the Amazon DynamoDB Movie table with partition and sort key.
 * 2. Puts data into the Amazon DynamoDB table from a JSON document using the
 * Enhanced client.
 * 3. Gets data from the Movie table.
 * 4. Adds a new item.
 * 5. Updates an item.
 * 6. Uses a Scan to query items using the Enhanced client.
 * 7. Queries all items where the year is 2013 using the Enhanced Client.
 * 8. Deletes the table.
 */

public class Scenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        String tableName = "Movies";
        String fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
            "1. Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named Movies with a key named
 year and a sort key named title.");
```

```
        createTable(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Loading data into the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        loadData(ddb, tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Getting data from the Movie table.");
        getItem(ddb);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Putting a record into the Amazon DynamoDB
table.");
        putRecord(ddb);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Updating a record.");
        updateTableItem(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Scanning the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        scanMovies(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Querying the Movies released in 2013.");
        queryTable(ddb);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        ddb.close();
    }

    // Create a table with a Sort key.
    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
```

```
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());

        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
  scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
```

```
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Query the table.
    public static void queryTable(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        try {
            DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient =
DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                .build();

            DynamoDbTable<Movies> custTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
            QueryConditional queryConditional = QueryConditional
                .keyEqualTo(Key.builder()
                    .partitionValue(2013)
                    .build());

            // Get items in the table and write out the ID value.
            Iterator<Movies> results =
custTable.query(queryConditional).items().iterator();
            String result = "";

            while (results.hasNext()) {
                Movies rec = results.next();
                System.out.println("The title of the movie is " +
rec.getTitle());
                System.out.println("The movie information  is " + rec.getInfo());
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
   // Scan the table.
   public static void scanMovies(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
       System.out.println("******* Scanning all movies.\n");
       try {
           DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient =
DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
               .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
               .build();

           DynamoDbTable<Movies> custTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
           Iterator<Movies> results = custTable.scan().items().iterator();
           while (results.hasNext()) {
               Movies rec = results.next();
               System.out.println("The movie title is " + rec.getTitle());
               System.out.println("The movie year is " + rec.getYear());
           }

       } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   // Load data into the table.
   public static void loadData(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
fileName) throws IOException {
       DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
           .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
           .build();

       DynamoDbTable<Movies> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
       JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
       com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
       Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
       ObjectNode currentNode;
       int t = 0;
       while (iter.hasNext()) {
           // Only add 200 Movies to the table.
           if (t == 200)
               break;
```

```
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String info = currentNode.path("info").toString();

            Movies movies = new Movies();
            movies.setYear(year);
            movies.setTitle(title);
            movies.setInfo(info);

            // Put the data into the Amazon DynamoDB Movie table.
            mappedTable.putItem(movies);
            t++;
        }
    }

    // Update the record to include show only directors.
    public static void updateTableItem(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> itemKey = new HashMap<>();
        itemKey.put("year", AttributeValue.builder().n("1933").build());
        itemKey.put("title", AttributeValue.builder().s("King Kong").build());

        HashMap<String, AttributeValueUpdate> updatedValues = new HashMap<>();
        updatedValues.put("info", AttributeValueUpdate.builder()
            .value(AttributeValue.builder().s("{\"directors\":[\"Merian C. Cooper
\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack\"]")
                .build())
            .action(AttributeAction.PUT)
            .build());

        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(itemKey)
            .attributeUpdates(updatedValues)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.updateItem(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("Item was updated!");
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName)
{
        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }

    public static void putRecord(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        try {
            DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient =
DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                .build();

            DynamoDbTable<Movies> table = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));

            // Populate the Table.
            Movies record = new Movies();
            record.setYear(2020);
            record.setTitle("My Movie2");
            record.setInfo("no info");
            table.putItem(record);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Added a new movie to the table.");
```

```
    }

    public static void getItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put("year", AttributeValue.builder()
            .n("1933")
            .build());

        keyToGet.put("title", AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("King Kong")
            .build());

        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .key(keyToGet)
            .tableName("Movies")
            .build();

        try {
            Map<String, AttributeValue> returnedItem =
 ddb.getItem(request).item();

            if (returnedItem != null) {
                Set<String> keys = returnedItem.keySet();
                System.out.println("Amazon DynamoDB table attributes: \n");

                for (String key1 : keys) {
                    System.out.format("%s: %s\n", key1,
 returnedItem.get(key1).toString());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.format("No item found with the key %s!\n", "year");
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- BatchWriteItem
- CreateTable
- DeleteItem
- DeleteTable
- DescribeTable
- GetItem
- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import {
  BillingMode,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DeleteTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

/**
 * This module is a convenience library. It abstracts Amazon DynamoDB's data type
 * descriptors (such as S, N, B, and BOOL) by marshalling JavaScript objects into
 * AttributeValue shapes.
 */
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
```

```
  DeleteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand,
  UpdateCommand,
  paginateQuery,
  paginateScan,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

// These modules are local to our GitHub repository. We recommend cloning
// the project from GitHub if you want to run this example.
// For more information, see https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples.
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { chunkArray } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-array.js";

const dirname = dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url);
const tableName = getUniqueName("Movies");
const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

const log = (msg) => console.log(`[SCENARIO] ${msg}`);

export const main = async () => {
  /**
   * Create a table.
   */

  const createTableCommand = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // This example performs a large write to the database.
    // Set the billing mode to PAY_PER_REQUEST to
    // avoid throttling the large write.
    BillingMode: BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
    // Define the attributes that are necessary for the key schema.
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "year",
        // 'N' is a data type descriptor that represents a number type.
        // For a list of all data type descriptors, see the following link.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
        AttributeType: "N",
      },
```

```
      { AttributeName: "title", AttributeType: "S" },
    ],
    // The KeySchema defines the primary key. The primary key can be
    // a partition key, or a combination of a partition key and a sort key.
    // Key schema design is important. For more info, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/best-
practices.html
    KeySchema: [
      // The way your data is accessed determines how you structure your keys.
      // The movies table will be queried for movies by year. It makes sense
      // to make year our partition (HASH) key.
      { AttributeName: "year", KeyType: "HASH" },
      { AttributeName: "title", KeyType: "RANGE" },
    ],
  });

  log("Creating a table.");
  const createTableResponse = await client.send(createTableCommand);
  log(`Table created: ${JSON.stringify(createTableResponse.TableDescription)}`);

  // This polls with DescribeTableCommand until the requested table is 'ACTIVE'.
  // You can't write to a table before it's active.
  log("Waiting for the table to be active.");
  await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: tableName });
  log("Table active.");

  /**
   * Add a movie to the table.
   */

  log("Adding a single movie to the table.");
  // PutCommand is the first example usage of 'lib-dynamodb'.
  const putCommand = new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: {
      // In 'client-dynamodb', the AttributeValue would be required (`year: { N:
 1981 }`)
      // 'lib-dynamodb' simplifies the usage ( `year: 1981` )
      year: 1981,
      // The preceding KeySchema defines 'title' as our sort (RANGE) key, so
 'title'
      // is required.
      title: "The Evil Dead",
      // Every other attribute is optional.
```

```
      info: {
        genres: ["Horror"],
      },
    },
  });
  await docClient.send(putCommand);
  log("The movie was added.");

  /**
   * Get a movie from the table.
   */

  log("Getting a single movie from the table.");
  const getCommand = new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // Requires the complete primary key. For the movies table, the primary key
    // is only the id (partition key).
    Key: {
      year: 1981,
      title: "The Evil Dead",
    },
    // Set this to make sure that recent writes are reflected.
    // For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/
latest/developerguide/HowItWorks.ReadConsistency.html.
    ConsistentRead: true,
  });
  const getResponse = await docClient.send(getCommand);
  log(`Got the movie: ${JSON.stringify(getResponse.Item)}`);

  /**
   * Update a movie in the table.
   */

  log("Updating a single movie in the table.");
  const updateCommand = new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: { year: 1981, title: "The Evil Dead" },
    // This update expression appends "Comedy" to the list of genres.
    // For more information on update expressions, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Expressions.UpdateExpressions.html
    UpdateExpression: "set #i.#g = list_append(#i.#g, :vals)",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#i": "info", "#g": "genres" },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
```

```
      ":vals": ["Comedy"],
    },
    ReturnValues: "ALL_NEW",
  });
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(updateCommand);
  log(`Movie updated: ${JSON.stringify(updateResponse.Attributes)}`);

  /**
   * Delete a movie from the table.
   */

  log("Deleting a single movie from the table.");
  const deleteCommand = new DeleteCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: { year: 1981, title: "The Evil Dead" },
  });
  await client.send(deleteCommand);
  log("Movie deleted.");

  /**
   * Upload a batch of movies.
   */

  log("Adding movies from local JSON file.");
  const file = readFileSync(
    `${dirname}../../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json`,
  );
  const movies = JSON.parse(file.toString());
  // chunkArray is a local convenience function. It takes an array and returns
  // a generator function. The generator function yields every N items.
  const movieChunks = chunkArray(movies, 25);
  // For every chunk of 25 movies, make one BatchWrite request.
  for (const chunk of movieChunks) {
    const putRequests = chunk.map((movie) => ({
      PutRequest: {
        Item: movie,
      },
    }));

    const command = new BatchWriteCommand({
      RequestItems: {
        [tableName]: putRequests,
      },
    });
```

```
    await docClient.send(command);
  }
  log("Movies added.");

  /**
   * Query for movies by year.
   */

  log("Querying for all movies from 1981.");
  const paginatedQuery = paginateQuery(
    { client: docClient },
    {
      TableName: tableName,
      //For more information about query expressions, see
      // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Query.html#Query.KeyConditionExpressions
      KeyConditionExpression: "#y = :y",
      // 'year' is a reserved word in DynamoDB. Indicate that it's an attribute
      // name by using an expression attribute name.
      ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#y": "year" },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: { ":y": 1981 },
      ConsistentRead: true,
    },
  );
  /**
   * @type { Record<string, any>[] };
   */
  const movies1981 = [];
  for await (const page of paginatedQuery) {
    movies1981.push(...page.Items);
  }
  log(`Movies: ${movies1981.map((m) => m.title).join(", ")}`);

  /**
   * Scan the table for movies between 1980 and 1990.
   */

  log("Scan for movies released between 1980 and 1990");
  // A 'Scan' operation always reads every item in the table. If your design
 requires
  // the use of 'Scan', consider indexing your table or changing your design.
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/bp-query-
scan.html
```

```
  const paginatedScan = paginateScan(
    { client: docClient },
    {
      TableName: tableName,
      // Scan uses a filter expression instead of a key condition expression.
 Scan will
      // read the entire table and then apply the filter.
      FilterExpression: "#y between :y1 and :y2",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#y": "year" },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: { ":y1": 1980, ":y2": 1990 },
      ConsistentRead: true,
    },
  );
  /**
   * @type { Record<string, any>[] };
   */
  const movies1980to1990 = [];
  for await (const page of paginatedScan) {
    movies1980to1990.push(...page.Items);
  }
  log(
    `Movies: ${movies1980to1990
      .map((m) => `${m.title} (${m.year})`)
      .join(", ")}`,
  );

  /**
   * Delete the table.
   */

  const deleteTableCommand = new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: tableName });
  log(`Deleting table ${tableName}.`);
  await client.send(deleteTableCommand);
  log("Table deleted.");
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable

- DescribeTable
- GetItem
- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a DynamoDB table.

```
suspend fun createScenarioTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
```

```
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.createTable(request)
        ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
            // suspend call
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
        println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
    }
}
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
// Load data into the table.
suspend fun loadData(
    tableName: String,
    fileName: String,
) {
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode

    var t = 0
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 50) {
```

```
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()
        putMovie(tableName, year, title, info)
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun putMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    year: Int,
    title: String,
    info: String,
) {
    val itemValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    val strVal = year.toString()
    // Add all content to the table.
    itemValues["year"] = AttributeValue.N(strVal)
    itemValues["title"] = AttributeValue.S(title)
    itemValues["info"] = AttributeValue.S(info)

    val request =
        PutItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            item = itemValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.putItem(request)
        println("Added $title to the Movie table.")
    }
}
```

Get an item from a table.

```
suspend fun getMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
```

```
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.N(keyVal)
    keyToGet["title"] = AttributeValue.S("King Kong")

    val request =
        GetItemRequest {
            key = keyToGet
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request)
        val numbersMap = returnedItem.item
        numbersMap?.forEach { key1 ->
            println(key1.key)
            println(key1.value)
        }
    }
}
```

Full example.

```
suspend fun main() {
    val tableName = "Movies"
    val fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json"
    val partitionAlias = "#a"

    println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named Movies with a key named id
 and a sort key named title.")
    createScenarioTable(tableName, "year")
    loadData(tableName, fileName)
    getMovie(tableName, "year", "1933")
    scanMovies(tableName)
    val count = queryMovieTable(tableName, "year", partitionAlias)
    println("There are $count Movies released in 2013.")
    deletIssuesTable(tableName)
}

suspend fun createScenarioTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
```

```
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.createTable(request)
        ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
            // suspend call
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
        println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
    }
}
```

```
// Load data into the table.
suspend fun loadData(
    tableName: String,
    fileName: String,
) {
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode

    var t = 0
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 50) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()
        putMovie(tableName, year, title, info)
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun putMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    year: Int,
    title: String,
    info: String,
) {
    val itemValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    val strVal = year.toString()
    // Add all content to the table.
    itemValues["year"] = AttributeValue.N(strVal)
    itemValues["title"] = AttributeValue.S(title)
    itemValues["info"] = AttributeValue.S(info)

    val request =
        PutItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            item = itemValues
        }
```

```
    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.putItem(request)
        println("Added $title to the Movie table.")
    }
}

suspend fun getMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.N(keyVal)
    keyToGet["title"] = AttributeValue.S("King Kong")

    val request =
        GetItemRequest {
            key = keyToGet
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request)
        val numbersMap = returnedItem.item
        numbersMap?.forEach { key1 ->
            println(key1.key)
            println(key1.value)
        }
    }
}

suspend fun deletIssuesTable(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun queryMovieTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    partitionKeyName: String,
    partitionAlias: String,
): Int {
    val attrNameAlias = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    attrNameAlias[partitionAlias] = "year"

    // Set up mapping of the partition name with the value.
    val attrValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    attrValues[":$partitionKeyName"] = AttributeValue.N("2013")

    val request =
        QueryRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            keyConditionExpression = "$partitionAlias = :$partitionKeyName"
            expressionAttributeNames = attrNameAlias
            this.expressionAttributeValues = attrValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.query(request)
        return response.count
    }
}

suspend fun scanMovies(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        ScanRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.scan(request)
        response.items?.forEach { item ->
            item.keys.forEach { key ->
                println("The key name is $key\n")
                println("The value is ${item[key]}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace DynamoDb\Basics;

use Aws\DynamoDb\Marshaler;
use DynamoDb;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBAttribute;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBService;

use function AwsUtilities\loadMovieData;
use function AwsUtilities\testable_readline;

class GettingStartedWithDynamoDB
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
```

```
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo using PHP!
\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $uuid = uniqid();
        $service = new DynamoDBService();

        $tableName = "ddb_demo_table_$uuid";
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

        echo "Waiting for table...";
        $service->dynamoDbClient->waitUntil("TableExists", ['TableName' =>
 $tableName]);
        echo "table $tableName found!\n";

        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }

        $service->putItem([
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
            ],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);
```

```
        echo "How would you rate the movie from 1-10?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        echo "What was the movie about?\n";
        while (empty($plot)) {
            $plot = testable_readline("Plot summary: ");
        }
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
                'year' => [
                    'N' => $movieYear,
                ],
            ]
        ];
        $attributes = ["rating" =>
            [
                'AttributeName' => 'rating',
                'AttributeType' => 'N',
                'Value' => $rating,
            ],
            'plot' => [
                'AttributeName' => 'plot',
                'AttributeType' => 'S',
                'Value' => $plot,
            ]
        ];
        $service->updateItemAttributesByKey($tableName, $key, $attributes);
        echo "Movie added and updated.";

        $batch = json_decode(loadMovieData());

        $service->writeBatch($tableName, $batch);


        $movie = $service->getItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Item']['title']['S']} was released in
 {$movie['Item']['year']['N']}.\n";
```

```
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Item']['title']['S']}?
\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $service->updateItemAttributeByKey($tableName, $key, 'rating', 'N',
 $rating);

        $movie = $service->getItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "Ok, you have rated {$movie['Item']['title']['S']} as a
 {$movie['Item']['rating']['N']}\n";

        $service->deleteItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
 because of your rating...harsh.\n";

        echo "That's okay though. The book was better. Now, for something
 lighter, in what year were you born?\n";
        $birthYear = "not a number";
        while (!is_numeric($birthYear) || $birthYear >= date("Y")) {
            $birthYear = testable_readline("Birth year: ");
        }
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        echo "Here are the movies in our collection released the year you were
 born:\n";
        $oops = "Oops! There were no movies released in that year (that we know
 of).\n";
        $display = "";
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            $display .= $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }
        echo ($display) ?: $oops;
```

```
        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "\nCleaning up this demo by deleting table $tableName...\n";
        $service->deleteTable($tableName);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that encapsulates a DynamoDB table.

```
from decimal import Decimal
from io import BytesIO
import json
import logging
import os
from pprint import pprint
import requests
from zipfile import ZipFile
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from question import Question

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
```

```
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def exists(self, table_name):
        """
        Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
        a member variable.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to check.
        :return: True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            table = self.dyn_resource.Table(table_name)
            table.load()
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't check for existence of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            self.table = table
        return exists
```

```
    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
        The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
        title as the sort key.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to create.
        :return: The newly created table.
        """
        try:
            self.table = self.dyn_resource.create_table(
                TableName=table_name,
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "KeyType": "HASH"},  # Partition
key
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "KeyType": "RANGE"},  # Sort key
                ],
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "AttributeType": "N"},
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "AttributeType": "S"},
                ],
                BillingMode='PAY_PER_REQUEST',
            )
            self.table.wait_until_exists()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.table


    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the Amazon DynamoDB tables for the current account.

        :return: The list of tables.
        """
        try:
```

```
            tables = []
            for table in self.dyn_resource.tables.all():
                print(table.name)
                tables.append(table)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tables


    def write_batch(self, movies):
        """
        Fills an Amazon DynamoDB table with the specified data, using the Boto3
        Table.batch_writer() function to put the items in the table.
        Inside the context manager, Table.batch_writer builds a list of
        requests. On exiting the context manager, Table.batch_writer starts
sending
        batches of write requests to Amazon DynamoDB and automatically
        handles chunking, buffering, and retrying.

        :param movies: The data to put in the table. Each item must contain at
least
                       the keys required by the schema that was specified when
the
                       table was created.
        """
        try:
            with self.table.batch_writer() as writer:
                for movie in movies:
                    writer.put_item(Item=movie)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't load data into table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def add_movie(self, title, year, plot, rating):
        """
        Adds a movie to the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :param plot: The plot summary of the movie.
        :param rating: The quality rating of the movie.
        """
        try:
            self.table.put_item(
                Item={
                    "year": year,
                    "title": title,
                    "info": {"plot": plot, "rating": Decimal(str(rating))},
                }
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't add movie %s to table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Gets movie data from the table for a specific movie.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :return: The data about the requested movie.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.get_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get movie %s from table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Item"]


    def update_movie(self, title, year, rating, plot):
        """
        Updates rating and plot data for a movie in the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param rating: The updated rating to the give the movie.
        :param plot: The updated plot summary to give the movie.
        :return: The fields that were updated, with their new values.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="set info.rating=:r, info.plot=:p",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":r": Decimal(str(rating)), ":p":
plot},
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update movie %s in table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]


    def query_movies(self, year):
        """
        Queries for movies that were released in the specified year.

        :param year: The year to query.
```

```
        :return: The list of movies that were released in the specified year.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key("year").eq(year))
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't query for movies released in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                year,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Items"]


    def scan_movies(self, year_range):
        """
        Scans for movies that were released in a range of years.
        Uses a projection expression to return a subset of data for each movie.

        :param year_range: The range of years to retrieve.
        :return: The list of movies released in the specified years.
        """
        movies = []
        scan_kwargs = {
            "FilterExpression": Key("year").between(
                year_range["first"], year_range["second"]
            ),
            "ProjectionExpression": "#yr, title, info.rating",
            "ExpressionAttributeNames": {"#yr": "year"},
        }
        try:
            done = False
            start_key = None
            while not done:
                if start_key:
                    scan_kwargs["ExclusiveStartKey"] = start_key
                response = self.table.scan(**scan_kwargs)
                movies.extend(response.get("Items", []))
                start_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey", None)
                done = start_key is None
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't scan for movies. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

        return movies


    def delete_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Deletes a movie from the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to delete.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete()
            self.table = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
def get_sample_movie_data(movie_file_name):
    """
    Gets sample movie data, either from a local file or by first downloading it
 from
    the Amazon DynamoDB developer guide.

    :param movie_file_name: The local file name where the movie data is stored in
 JSON format.
    :return: The movie data as a dict.
    """
    if not os.path.isfile(movie_file_name):
        print(f"Downloading {movie_file_name}...")
        movie_content = requests.get(
            "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
samples/moviedata.zip"
        )
        movie_zip = ZipFile(BytesIO(movie_content.content))
        movie_zip.extractall()

    try:
        with open(movie_file_name) as movie_file:
            movie_data = json.load(movie_file, parse_float=Decimal)
    except FileNotFoundError:
        print(
            f"File {movie_file_name} not found. You must first download the file
 to "
            "run this demo. See the README for instructions."
        )
        raise
    else:
        # The sample file lists over 4000 movies, return only the first 250.
        return movie_data[:250]
```

Run an interactive scenario to create the table and perform actions on it.

```
def run_scenario(table_name, movie_file_name, dyn_resource):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    movies = Movies(dyn_resource)
    movies_exists = movies.exists(table_name)
    if not movies_exists:
        print(f"\nCreating table {table_name}...")
        movies.create_table(table_name)
        print(f"\nCreated table {movies.table.name}.")

    my_movie = Question.ask_questions(
        [
            Question(
                "title", "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the
 table: "
            ),
            Question("year", "What year was it released? ", Question.is_int),
            Question(
                "rating",
                "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? ",
                Question.is_float,
                Question.in_range(1, 10),
            ),
            Question("plot", "Summarize the plot for me: "),
        ]
    )
    movies.add_movie(**my_movie)
    print(f"\nAdded '{my_movie['title']}' to '{movies.table.name}'.")
    print("-" * 88)

    movie_update = Question.ask_questions(
        [
            Question(
                "rating",
                f"\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it {my_movie['rating']},
 what new "
                f"rating would you give it? ",
                Question.is_float,
                Question.in_range(1, 10),
```

```
            ),
            Question(
                "plot",
                f"You summarized the plot as '{my_movie['plot']}'.\nWhat would
you say now? ",
            ),
        ]
    )
    my_movie.update(movie_update)
    updated = movies.update_movie(**my_movie)
    print(f"\nUpdated '{my_movie['title']}' with new attributes:")
    pprint(updated)
    print("-" * 88)

    if not movies_exists:
        movie_data = get_sample_movie_data(movie_file_name)
        print(f"\nReading data from '{movie_file_name}' into your table.")
        movies.write_batch(movie_data)
        print(f"\nWrote {len(movie_data)} movies into {movies.table.name}.")
    print("-" * 88)

    title = "The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring"
    if Question.ask_question(
        f"Let's move on...do you want to get info about '{title}'? (y/n) ",
        Question.is_yesno,
    ):
        movie = movies.get_movie(title, 2001)
        print("\nHere's what I found:")
        pprint(movie)
    print("-" * 88)

    ask_for_year = True
    while ask_for_year:
        release_year = Question.ask_question(
            f"\nLet's get a list of movies released in a given year. Enter a year
between "
            f"1972 and 2018: ",
            Question.is_int,
            Question.in_range(1972, 2018),
        )
        releases = movies.query_movies(release_year)
        if releases:
            print(f"There were {len(releases)} movies released in
{release_year}:")
```

```
            for release in releases:
                print(f"\t{release['title']}")
            ask_for_year = False
        else:
            print(f"I don't know about any movies released in {release_year}!")
            ask_for_year = Question.ask_question(
                "Try another year? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno
            )
    print("-" * 88)

    years = Question.ask_questions(
        [
            Question(
                "first",
                f"\nNow let's scan for movies released in a range of years. Enter
 a year: ",
                Question.is_int,
                Question.in_range(1972, 2018),
            ),
            Question(
                "second",
                "Now enter another year: ",
                Question.is_int,
                Question.in_range(1972, 2018),
            ),
        ]
    )
    releases = movies.scan_movies(years)
    if releases:
        count = Question.ask_question(
            f"\nFound {len(releases)} movies. How many do you want to see? ",
            Question.is_int,
            Question.in_range(1, len(releases)),
        )
        print(f"\nHere are your {count} movies:\n")
        pprint(releases[:count])
    else:
        print(
            f"I don't know about any movies released between {years['first']} "
            f"and {years['second']}."
        )
    print("-" * 88)

    if Question.ask_question(
```

```
        f"\nLet's remove your movie from the table. Do you want to remove "
        f"'{my_movie['title']}'? (y/n)",
        Question.is_yesno,
    ):
        movies.delete_movie(my_movie["title"], my_movie["year"])
        print(f"\nRemoved '{my_movie['title']}' from the table.")
    print("-" * 88)

    if Question.ask_question(f"\nDelete the table? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno):
        movies.delete_table()
        print(f"Deleted {table_name}.")
    else:
        print(
            "Don't forget to delete the table when you're done or you might incur
 "
            "charges on your account."
        )

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        run_scenario(
            "doc-example-table-movies", "moviedata.json",
 boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Something went wrong with the demo! Here's what: {e}")
```

This scenario uses the following helper class to ask questions at a command prompt.

```
class Question:
    """
    A helper class to ask questions at a command prompt and validate and convert
    the answers.
    """

    def __init__(self, key, question, *validators):
        """
        :param key: The key that is used for storing the answer in a dict, when
```

```
                    multiple questions are asked in a set.
        :param question: The question to ask.
        :param validators: The answer is passed through the list of validators
until
                           one fails or they all pass. Validators may also
convert the
                           answer to another form, such as from a str to an int.
        """
        self.key = key
        self.question = question
        self.validators = Question.non_empty, *validators

    @staticmethod
    def ask_questions(questions):
        """
        Asks a set of questions and stores the answers in a dict.

        :param questions: The list of questions to ask.
        :return: A dict of answers.
        """
        answers = {}
        for question in questions:
            answers[question.key] = Question.ask_question(
                question.question, *question.validators
            )
        return answers

    @staticmethod
    def ask_question(question, *validators):
        """
        Asks a single question and validates it against a list of validators.
        When an answer fails validation, the complaint is printed and the
question
        is asked again.

        :param question: The question to ask.
        :param validators: The list of validators that the answer must pass.
        :return: The answer, converted to its final form by the validators.
        """
        answer = None
        while answer is None:
            answer = input(question)
            for validator in validators:
                answer, complaint = validator(answer)
```

```
                if answer is None:
                    print(complaint)
                    break
        return answer

    @staticmethod
    def non_empty(answer):
        """
        Validates that the answer is not empty.
        :return: The non-empty answer, or None.
        """
        return answer if answer != "" else None, "I need an answer. Please?"

    @staticmethod
    def is_yesno(answer):
        """
        Validates a yes/no answer.
        :return: True when the answer is 'y'; otherwise, False.
        """
        return answer.lower() == "y", ""

    @staticmethod
    def is_int(answer):
        """
        Validates that the answer can be converted to an int.
        :return: The int answer; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            int_answer = int(answer)
        except ValueError:
            int_answer = None
        return int_answer, f"{answer} must be a valid integer."

    @staticmethod
    def is_letter(answer):
        """
        Validates that the answer is a letter.
        :return The letter answer, converted to uppercase; otherwise, None.
        """
        return (
            answer.upper() if answer.isalpha() else None,
            f"{answer} must be a single letter.",
        )
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def is_float(answer):
        """
        Validate that the answer can be converted to a float.
        :return The float answer; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            float_answer = float(answer)
        except ValueError:
            float_answer = None
        return float_answer, f"{answer} must be a valid float."

    @staticmethod
    def in_range(lower, upper):
        """
        Validate that the answer is within a range. The answer must be of a type
that can
        be compared to the lower and upper bounds.
        :return: The answer, if it is within the range; otherwise, None.
        """

        def _validate(answer):
            return (
                answer if lower <= answer <= upper else None,
                f"{answer} must be between {lower} and {upper}.",
            )

        return _validate
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem

- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that encapsulates a DynamoDB table.

```
# Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
# The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
# title as the sort key.
#
# @param table_name [String] The name of the table to create.
# @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Table] The newly created table.
def create_table(table_name)
  @table = @dynamo_resource.create_table(
    table_name: table_name,
    key_schema: [
      { attribute_name: 'year', key_type: 'HASH' }, # Partition key
      { attribute_name: 'title', key_type: 'RANGE' } # Sort key
    ],
    attribute_definitions: [
      { attribute_name: 'year', attribute_type: 'N' },
      { attribute_name: 'title', attribute_type: 'S' }
    ],
    billing_mode: 'PAY_PER_REQUEST'
  )
  @dynamo_resource.client.wait_until(:table_exists, table_name: table_name)
  @table
rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Failed create table #{table_name}:\n#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
  # Gets sample movie data, either from a local file or by first downloading it
 from
  # the Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide.
  #
  # @param movie_file_name [String] The local file name where the movie data is
 stored in JSON format.
  # @return [Hash] The movie data as a Hash.
  def fetch_movie_data(movie_file_name)
    if !File.file?(movie_file_name)
      @logger.debug("Downloading #{movie_file_name}...")
      movie_content = URI.open(
        'https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
samples/moviedata.zip'
      )
      movie_json = ''
      Zip::File.open_buffer(movie_content) do |zip|
        zip.each do |entry|
          movie_json = entry.get_input_stream.read
        end
      end
    else
      movie_json = File.read(movie_file_name)
    end
    movie_data = JSON.parse(movie_json)
    # The sample file lists over 4000 movies. This returns only the first 250.
    movie_data.slice(0, 250)
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts("Failure downloading movie data:\n#{e}")
    raise
  end
```

Run an interactive scenario to create the table and perform actions on it.

```
  table_name = "doc-example-table-movies-#{rand(10**4)}"
  scaffold = Scaffold.new(table_name)
  dynamodb_wrapper = DynamoDBBasics.new(table_name)

  new_step(1, 'Create a new DynamoDB table if none already exists.')
```

```
 unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)
   puts("\nNo such table: #{table_name}. Creating it...")
   scaffold.create_table(table_name)
   print "Done!\n".green
 end

 new_step(2, 'Add a new record to the DynamoDB table.')
 my_movie = {}
 my_movie[:title] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter the title of a movie to add to
the table. E.g. The Matrix')
 my_movie[:year] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('What year was it released? E.g.
1989').to_i
 my_movie[:rating] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate
it? E.g. 7').to_i
 my_movie[:plot] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter a brief summary of the plot. E.g.
A man awakens to a new reality.')
 dynamodb_wrapper.add_item(my_movie)
 puts("\nNew record added:")
 puts JSON.pretty_generate(my_movie).green
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(3, 'Update a record in the DynamoDB table.')
 my_movie[:rating] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask("Let's update the movie you added with
a new rating, e.g. 3:").to_i
 response = dynamodb_wrapper.update_item(my_movie)
 puts("Updated '#{my_movie[:title]}' with new attributes:")
 puts JSON.pretty_generate(response).green
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(4, 'Get a record from the DynamoDB table.')
 puts("Searching for #{my_movie[:title]} (#{my_movie[:year]})...")
 response = dynamodb_wrapper.get_item(my_movie[:title], my_movie[:year])
 puts JSON.pretty_generate(response).green
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(5, 'Write a batch of items into the DynamoDB table.')
 download_file = 'moviedata.json'
 puts("Downloading movie database to #{download_file}...")
 movie_data = scaffold.fetch_movie_data(download_file)
 puts("Writing movie data from #{download_file} into your table...")
 scaffold.write_batch(movie_data)
 puts("Records added: #{movie_data.length}.")
 print "Done!\n".green
```

```
 new_step(5, 'Query for a batch of items by key.')
 loop do
   release_year = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter a year between 1972 and 2018, e.g.
1999:').to_i
   results = dynamodb_wrapper.query_items(release_year)
   if results.any?
     puts("There were #{results.length} movies released in #{release_year}:")
     results.each do |movie|
       print "\t #{movie['title']}".green
     end
     break
   else
     continue = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask("Found no movies released in
#{release_year}! Try another year? (y/n)")
     break unless continue.eql?('y')
   end
 end
 print "\nDone!\n".green

 new_step(6, 'Scan for a batch of items using a filter expression.')
 years = {}
 years[:start] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter a starting year between 1972 and
2018:')
 years[:end] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter an ending year between 1972 and
2018:')
 releases = dynamodb_wrapper.scan_items(years)
 if !releases.empty?
   puts("Found #{releases.length} movies.")
   count = Question.ask(
     'How many do you want to see? ', method(:is_int), in_range(1,
releases.length)
   )
   puts("Here are your #{count} movies:")
   releases.take(count).each do |release|
     puts("\t#{release['title']}")
   end
 else
   puts("I don't know about any movies released between #{years[:start]} "\
        "and #{years[:end]}.")
 end
 print "\nDone!\n".green

 new_step(7, 'Delete an item from the DynamoDB table.')
```

```
  answer = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask("Do you want to remove '#{my_movie[:title]}'? (y/
n) ")
  if answer.eql?('y')
    dynamodb_wrapper.delete_item(my_movie[:title], my_movie[:year])
    puts("Removed '#{my_movie[:title]}' from the table.")
    print "\nDone!\n".green
  end

  new_step(8, 'Delete the DynamoDB table.')
  answer = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Delete the table? (y/n)')
  if answer.eql?('y')
    scaffold.delete_table
    puts("Deleted #{table_name}.")
  else
    puts("Don't forget to delete the table when you're done!")
  end
  print "\nThanks for watching!\n".green
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError
  puts('Something went wrong with the demo.')
rescue Errno::ENOENT
  true
end
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    " Create an Amazon Dynamo DB table.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_session) = /aws1/cl_rt_session_aws=>create( cv_pfl ).
        DATA(lo_dyn) = /aws1/cl_dyn_factory=>create( lo_session ).
        DATA(lt_keyschema) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement=>tt_keyschema(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                              iv_keytype = 'HASH' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                              iv_keytype = 'RANGE' ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_attributedefinitions) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributedefn=>tt_attributedefinitions(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                           iv_attributetype = 'N' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                           iv_attributetype = 'S' ) ) ).

        " Adjust read/write capacities as desired.
        DATA(lo_dynprovthroughput)  = NEW /aws1/cl_dynprovthroughput(
          iv_readcapacityunits = 5
          iv_writecapacityunits = 5 ).
        DATA(oo_result) = lo_dyn->createtable(
          it_keyschema = lt_keyschema
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_attributedefinitions = lt_attributedefinitions
          io_provisionedthroughput = lo_dynprovthroughput ).
        " Table creation can take some time. Wait till table exists before
 returning.
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tableexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name && 'created.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      " It throws exception if the table already exists.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex INTO DATA(lo_resourceinuseex).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_code }" -
 { lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Describe table
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_table) = lo_dyn->describetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        DATA(lv_tablename) = lo_table->get_table( )->ask_tablename( ).
        MESSAGE 'The table name is ' && lv_tablename TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Put items into the table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp_putitem) = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_putiteminputattributemap(
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 'Jaws' ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '1975' }| ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '7.5' }| ) ) )
          ) ).
        lo_resp_putitem = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_putiteminputattributemap(
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s = 'Star
 Wars' ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '1978' }| ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
```

```
              key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '8.1' }| ) ) )
          ) ).
        lo_resp_putitem = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_putiteminputattributemap(
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 'Speed' ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '1994' }| ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '7.9' }| ) ) )
          ) ).
        " TYPE REF TO ZCL_AWS1_dyn_PUT_ITEM_OUTPUT
        MESSAGE '3 rows inserted into DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Get item from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp_getitem) = lo_dyn->getitem(
          iv_tablename                = iv_table_name
          it_key                      = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_key(
           ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
             key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 'Jaws' ) ) )
           ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
             key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n =
 '1975' ) ) )
          ) ).
        DATA(lt_attr) = lo_resp_getitem->get_item( ).
        DATA(lo_title) = lt_attr[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        DATA(lo_year) = lt_attr[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        DATA(lo_rating) = lt_attr[ key = 'year' ]-value.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Query item from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lt_attributelist) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_attributevaluelist(
              ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = '1975' ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_keyconditions) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>tt_keyconditions(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>ts_keyconditions_maprow(
          key = 'year'
          value = NEW /aws1/cl_dyncondition(
            it_attributevaluelist = lt_attributelist
            iv_comparisonoperator = |EQ|
          ) ) ) ).
        DATA(lo_query_result) = lo_dyn->query(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_keyconditions = lt_keyconditions ).
        DATA(lt_items) = lo_query_result->get_items( ).
        READ TABLE lo_query_result->get_items( ) INTO DATA(lt_item) INDEX 1.
        lo_title = lt_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        lo_year = lt_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        lo_rating = lt_item[ key = 'rating' ]-value.
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Scan items from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_scan_result) = lo_dyn->scan( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        lt_items = lo_scan_result->get_items( ).
        " Read the first item and display the attributes.
        READ TABLE lo_query_result->get_items( ) INTO lt_item INDEX 1.
        lo_title = lt_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        lo_year = lt_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        lo_rating = lt_item[ key = 'rating' ]-value.
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( ) TYPE 'I'.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Update items from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lt_attributeupdates) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattrvalueupdate=>tt_attributeupdates(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattrvalueupdate=>ts_attributeupdates_maprow(
          key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattrvalueupdate(
            io_value  = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = '7.6' )
            iv_action = |PUT| ) ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_key) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_key(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
            key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n =
 '1975' ) ) )
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
            key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 '1980' ) ) ) ).
        DATA(lo_resp) = lo_dyn->updateitem(
          iv_tablename        = iv_table_name
          it_key              = lt_key
          it_attributeupdates = lt_attributeupdates ).
        MESSAGE '1 item updated in DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Delete table.
    TRY.
        lo_dyn->deletetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tablenotexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'DynamoDB Table deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The table cannot be deleted as it is in use' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A Swift class that handles DynamoDB calls to the SDK for Swift.

```
import AWSDynamoDB
import Foundation

/// An enumeration of error codes representing issues that can arise when using
/// the `MovieTable` class.
enum MoviesError: Error {
    /// The specified table wasn't found or couldn't be created.
    case TableNotFound
```

```
    /// The specified item wasn't found or couldn't be created.
    case ItemNotFound
    /// The Amazon DynamoDB client is not properly initialized.
    case UninitializedClient
    /// The table status reported by Amazon DynamoDB is not recognized.
    case StatusUnknown
    /// One or more specified attribute values are invalid or missing.
    case InvalidAttributes
}

/// A class representing an Amazon DynamoDB table containing movie
/// information.
public class MovieTable {
    var ddbClient: DynamoDBClient?
    let tableName: String

    /// Create an object representing a movie table in an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - region: The optional Amazon Region to create the database in.
    ///   - tableName: The name to assign to the table. If not specified, a
    ///     random table name is generated automatically.
    ///
    /// > Note: The table is not necessarily available when this function
    /// returns. Use `tableExists()` to check for its availability, or
    /// `awaitTableActive()` to wait until the table's status is reported as
    /// ready to use by Amazon DynamoDB.
    ///
    init(region: String? = nil, tableName: String) async throws {
        do {
            let config = try await DynamoDBClient.DynamoDBClientConfiguration()
            if let region = region {
                config.region = region
            }

            self.ddbClient = DynamoDBClient(config: config)
            self.tableName = tableName

            try await self.createTable()
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Initializing Amazon
 DynamoDBClient client"))
            throw error
```

```
        }
    }

    ///
    /// Create a movie table in the Amazon DynamoDB data store.
    ///
    private func createTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = CreateTableInput(
                attributeDefinitions: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName:
"year", attributeType: .n),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName:
"title", attributeType: .s)
                ],
                billingMode: DynamoDBClientTypes.BillingMode.payPerRequest,
                keySchema: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "year",
keyType: .hash),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "title",
keyType: .range)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.createTable(input: input)
            if output.tableDescription == nil {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Check to see if the table exists online yet.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the table exists, or `false` if not.
    ///
    func tableExists() async throws -> Bool {
```

```
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DescribeTableInput(
                tableName: tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.describeTable(input: input)
            guard let description = output.table else {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }

            return description.tableName == self.tableName
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: tableExists:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    ///
    /// Waits for the table to exist and for its status to be active.
    ///
    func awaitTableActive() async throws {
        while try (await self.tableExists() == false) {
            do {
                let duration = UInt64(0.25 * 1_000_000_000) // Convert .25
seconds to nanoseconds.
                try await Task.sleep(nanoseconds: duration)
            } catch {
                print("Sleep error:", dump(error))
            }
        }

        while try (await self.getTableStatus() != .active) {
            do {
                let duration = UInt64(0.25 * 1_000_000_000) // Convert .25
seconds to nanoseconds.
                try await Task.sleep(nanoseconds: duration)
            } catch {
                print("Sleep error:", dump(error))
            }
        }
```

```
    }


    ///
    /// Deletes the table from Amazon DynamoDB.
    ///
    func deleteTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteTableInput(
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteTable(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Get the table's status.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The table status, as defined by the
    ///   `DynamoDBClientTypes.TableStatus` enum.
    ///
    func getTableStatus() async throws -> DynamoDBClientTypes.TableStatus {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DescribeTableInput(
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.describeTable(input: input)
            guard let description = output.table else {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }
            guard let status = description.tableStatus else {
                throw MoviesError.StatusUnknown
            }
```

```
            return status
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getTableStatus:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Populate the movie database from the specified JSON file.
    ///
    /// - Parameter jsonPath: Path to a JSON file containing movie data.
    ///
    func populate(jsonPath: String) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Create a Swift `URL` and use it to load the file into a `Data`
            // object. Then decode the JSON into an array of `Movie` objects.

            let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: jsonPath)
            let jsonData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)

            var movieList = try JSONDecoder().decode([Movie].self, from:
jsonData)

            // Truncate the list to the first 200 entries or so for this example.

            if movieList.count > 200 {
                movieList = Array(movieList[...199])
            }

            // Before sending records to the database, break the movie list into
            // 25-entry chunks, which is the maximum size of a batch item
request.

            let count = movieList.count
            let chunks = stride(from: 0, to: count, by: 25).map {
                Array(movieList[$0 ..< Swift.min($0 + 25, count)])
            }

            // For each chunk, create a list of write request records and
populate
```

```
            // them with `PutRequest` requests, each specifying one movie from
the
            // chunk. Once the chunk's items are all in the `PutRequest` list,
            // send them to Amazon DynamoDB using the
            // `DynamoDBClient.batchWriteItem()` function.

            for chunk in chunks {
                var requestList: [DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest] = []

                for movie in chunk {
                    let item = try await movie.getAsItem()
                    let request = DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest(
                        putRequest: .init(
                            item: item
                        )
                    )
                    requestList.append(request)
                }

                let input = BatchWriteItemInput(requestItems: [tableName:
requestList])
                _ = try await client.batchWriteItem(input: input)
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: populate:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Add a movie specified as a `Movie` structure to the Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    ///
    /// - Parameter movie: The `Movie` to add to the table.
    ///
    func add(movie: Movie) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Get a DynamoDB item containing the movie data.
            let item = try await movie.getAsItem()
```

```
            // Send the `PutItem` request to Amazon DynamoDB.

            let input = PutItemInput(
                item: item,
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.putItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: add movie:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Given a movie's details, add a movie to the Amazon DynamoDB table.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title as a `String`.
    ///   - year: The release year of the movie (`Int`).
    ///   - rating: The movie's rating if available (`Double`; default is
    ///     `nil`).
    ///   - plot: A summary of the movie's plot (`String`; default is `nil`,
    ///     indicating no plot summary is available).
    ///
    func add(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil,
             plot: String? = nil) async throws
    {
        do {
            let movie = Movie(title: title, year: year, rating: rating, plot:
plot)
            try await self.add(movie: movie)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: add with fields:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Return a `Movie` record describing the specified movie from the Amazon
    /// DynamoDB table.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The movie's release year (`Int`).
```

```
    ///
    /// - Throws: `MoviesError.ItemNotFound` if the movie isn't in the table.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `Movie` record with the movie's details.
    func get(title: String, year: Int) async throws -> Movie {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = GetItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.getItem(input: input)
            guard let item = output.item else {
                throw MoviesError.ItemNotFound
            }

            let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
            return movie
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: get:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Get all the movies released in the specified year.
    ///
    /// - Parameter year: The release year of the movies to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing each matching movie.
    ///
    func getMovies(fromYear year: Int) async throws -> [Movie] {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = QueryInput(
```

```
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year"
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y": .n(String(year))
                ],
                keyConditionExpression: "#y = :y",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            // Use "Paginated" to get all the movies.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'lastEvaluatedKey' property in
"QueryOutput".

            let pages = client.queryPaginated(input: input)

            var movieList: [Movie] = []
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Convert the found movies into `Movie` objects and return an
array
                // of them.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Return an array of `Movie` objects released in the specified range of
    /// years.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - firstYear: The first year of movies to return.
```

```
    ///   - lastYear: The last year of movies to return.
    ///   - startKey: A starting point to resume processing; always use `nil`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing the matching movies.
    ///
    /// > Note: The `startKey` parameter is used by this function when
    ///   recursively calling itself, and should always be `nil` when calling
    ///   directly.
    ///
    func getMovies(firstYear: Int, lastYear: Int,
                   startKey: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]?
= nil)
        async throws -> [Movie]
    {
        do {
            var movieList: [Movie] = []

            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = ScanInput(
                consistentRead: true,
                exclusiveStartKey: startKey,
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year" // `year` is a reserved word, so use `#y`
instead.
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y1": .n(String(firstYear)),
                    ":y2": .n(String(lastYear))
                ],
                filterExpression: "#y BETWEEN :y1 AND :y2",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )

            let pages = client.scanPaginated(input: input)

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }
```

```
                // Build an array of `Movie` objects for the returned items.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList

        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies with scan:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Update the specified movie with new `rating` and `plot` information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The title of the movie to update.
    ///   - year: The release year of the movie to update.
    ///   - rating: The new rating for the movie.
    ///   - plot: The new plot summary string for the movie.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of mappings of attribute names to their new
    ///   listing each item actually changed. Items that didn't need to change
    ///   aren't included in this list. `nil` if no changes were made.
    ///
    func update(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil, plot: String? =
nil) async throws
        -> [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]?
    {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Build the update expression and the list of expression attribute
            // values. Include only the information that's changed.

            var expressionParts: [String] = []
            var attrValues: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] =
[:]
```

```
            if rating != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.rating=:r")
                attrValues[":r"] = .n(String(rating!))
            }
            if plot != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.plot=:p")
                attrValues[":p"] = .s(plot!)
            }
            let expression = "set \(expressionParts.joined(separator: ", "))"

            let input = UpdateItemInput(
                // Create substitution tokens for the attribute values, to ensure
                // no conflicts in expression syntax.
                expressionAttributeValues: attrValues,
                // The key identifying the movie to update consists of the
release
                // year and title.
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                returnValues: .updatedNew,
                tableName: self.tableName,
                updateExpression: expression
            )
            let output = try await client.updateItem(input: input)

            guard let attributes: [Swift.String:
DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = output.attributes else {
                throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
            }
            return attributes
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: update:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Delete a movie, given its title and release year.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title.
    ///   - year: The movie's release year.
```

```
    ///
    func delete(title: String, year: Int) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: delete:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
}
```

The structures used by the MovieTable class to represent movies.

```
import Foundation
import AWSDynamoDB

/// The optional details about a movie.
public struct Details: Codable {
    /// The movie's rating, if available.
    var rating: Double?
    /// The movie's plot, if available.
    var plot: String?
}

/// A structure describing a movie. The `year` and `title` properties are
/// required and are used as the key for Amazon DynamoDB operations. The
/// `info` sub-structure's two properties, `rating` and `plot`, are optional.
public struct Movie: Codable {
    /// The year in which the movie was released.
    var year: Int
```

```
    /// The movie's title.
    var title: String
    /// A `Details` object providing the optional movie rating and plot
    /// information.
    var info: Details

    /// Create a `Movie` object representing a movie, given the movie's
    /// details.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The year in which the movie was released (`Int`).
    ///   - rating: The movie's rating (optional `Double`).
    ///   - plot: The movie's plot (optional `String`)
    init(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil, plot: String? = nil) {
        self.title = title
        self.year = year

        self.info = Details(rating: rating, plot: plot)
    }

    /// Create a `Movie` object representing a movie, given the movie's
    /// details.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The year in which the movie was released (`Int`).
    ///   - info: The optional rating and plot information for the movie in a
    ///     `Details` object.
    init(title: String, year: Int, info: Details?){
        self.title = title
        self.year = year

        if info != nil {
            self.info = info!
        } else {
            self.info = Details(rating: nil, plot: nil)
        }
    }

    ///
    /// Return a new `MovieTable` object, given an array mapping string to Amazon
    /// DynamoDB attribute values.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameter item: The item information provided to the form used by
    ///   DynamoDB. This is an array of strings mapped to
    ///   `DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue` values.
    init(withItem item: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]) throws
  {
        // Read the attributes.

        guard let titleAttr = item["title"],
              let yearAttr = item["year"] else {
            throw MoviesError.ItemNotFound
        }
        let infoAttr = item["info"] ?? nil

        // Extract the values of the title and year attributes.

        if case .s(let titleVal) = titleAttr {
            self.title = titleVal
        } else {
            throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
        }

        if case .n(let yearVal) = yearAttr {
            self.year = Int(yearVal)!
        } else {
            throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
        }

        // Extract the rating and/or plot from the `info` attribute, if
        // they're present.

        var rating: Double? = nil
        var plot: String? = nil

        if infoAttr != nil, case .m(let infoVal) = infoAttr {
            let ratingAttr = infoVal["rating"] ?? nil
            let plotAttr = infoVal["plot"] ?? nil

            if ratingAttr != nil, case .n(let ratingVal) = ratingAttr {
                rating = Double(ratingVal) ?? nil
            }
            if plotAttr != nil, case .s(let plotVal) = plotAttr {
                plot = plotVal
            }
        }
```

```
        self.info = Details(rating: rating, plot: plot)
    }

    ///
    /// Return an array mapping attribute names to Amazon DynamoDB attribute
    /// values, representing the contents of the `Movie` record as a DynamoDB
    /// item.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The movie item as an array of type
    ///   `[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]`.
    ///
    func getAsItem() async throws ->
[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]  {
        // Build the item record, starting with the year and title, which are
        // always present.

        var item: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [
            "year": .n(String(self.year)),
            "title": .s(self.title)
        ]

        // Add the `info` field with the rating and/or plot if they're
        // available.

        var details: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [:]
        if (self.info.rating != nil || self.info.plot != nil) {
            if self.info.rating != nil {
                details["rating"] = .n(String(self.info.rating!))
            }
            if self.info.plot != nil {
                details["plot"] = .s(self.info.plot!)
            }
        }
        item["info"] = .m(details)

        return item
    }
}
```

A program that uses the MovieTable class to access a DynamoDB database.

```
import ArgumentParser
import ClientRuntime
import Foundation

import AWSDynamoDB


@testable import MovieList

extension String {
    // Get the directory if the string is a file path.
    func directory() -> String {
        guard let lastIndex = lastIndex(of: "/") else {
            print("Error: String directory separator not found.")
            return ""
        }
        return String(self[...lastIndex])
    }
}

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Argument(help: "The path of the sample movie data JSON file.")
    var jsonPath: String = #file.directory() + "../../../../../resources/
sample_files/movies.json"

    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion: String?

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    /// Configuration details for the command.
```

```
    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "basics",
        abstract: "A basic scenario demonstrating the usage of Amazon DynamoDB.",
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to use Amazon DynamoDB to perform a series of
        common database activities on a simple movie database.
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to asynchronously run the AWS example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        print("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Swift basic scenario for Amazon
DynamoDB!")

        //=====================================================================
        // 1. Create the table. The Amazon DynamoDB table is represented by
        //    the `MovieTable` class.
        //=====================================================================

        let tableName = "ddb-movies-sample-\(Int.random(in: 1 ... Int.max))"

        print("Creating table \"\(tableName)\"...")

        let movieDatabase = try await MovieTable(region: awsRegion,
                                                 tableName: tableName)

        print("\nWaiting for table to be ready to use...")
        try await movieDatabase.awaitTableActive()

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. Add a movie to the table.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nAdding a movie...")
        try await movieDatabase.add(title: "Avatar: The Way of Water", year:
2022)
        try await movieDatabase.add(title: "Not a Real Movie", year: 2023)

        //=====================================================================
        // 3. Update the plot and rating of the movie using an update
        //    expression.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nAdding details to the added movie...")
```

```
        _ = try await movieDatabase.update(title: "Avatar: The Way of Water",
year: 2022,
                                           rating: 9.2, plot: "It's a sequel.")

        //=====================================================================
        // 4. Populate the table from the JSON file.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nPopulating the movie database from JSON...")
        try await movieDatabase.populate(jsonPath: jsonPath)

        //=====================================================================
        // 5. Get a specific movie by key. In this example, the key is a
        //    combination of `title` and `year`.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nLooking for a movie in the table...")
        let gotMovie = try await movieDatabase.get(title: "This Is the End",
year: 2013)

        print("Found the movie \"\(gotMovie.title)\", released in
\(gotMovie.year).")
        print("Rating: \(gotMovie.info.rating ?? 0.0).")
        print("Plot summary: \(gotMovie.info.plot ?? "None.")")

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. Delete a movie.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nDeleting the added movie...")
        try await movieDatabase.delete(title: "Avatar: The Way of Water", year:
2022)

        //=====================================================================
        // 7. Use a query with a key condition expression to return all movies
        //    released in a given year.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nGetting movies released in 1994...")
        let movieList = try await movieDatabase.getMovies(fromYear: 1994)
        for movie in movieList {
            print("    \(movie.title)")
        }
```

```
        //=====================================================================
        // 8. Use `scan()` to return movies released in a range of years.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nGetting movies released between 1993 and 1997...")
        let scannedMovies = try await movieDatabase.getMovies(firstYear: 1993,
 lastYear: 1997)
        for movie in scannedMovies {
            print("    \(movie.title) (\(movie.year))")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 9. Delete the table.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nDeleting the table...")
        try await movieDatabase.deleteTable()
    }
}

@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable

- DescribeTable
- GetItem
- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

Actions for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual DynamoDB actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the DynamoDB API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon DynamoDB API Reference.

Examples

- Use BatchExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
- Use BatchGetItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use BatchWriteItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTimeToLive with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
- Use GetItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Query with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Scan with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use UpdateItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateTimeToLive with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `BatchExecuteStatement` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Delete data using PartiQL DELETE
- Insert data using PartiQL INSERT
- Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements
- Query data using PartiQL SELECT
- Update data using PartiQL UPDATE

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table into which the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE
{{'title': ?, 'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset +=
25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await
Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully
added.
```

```
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
```

```
        }
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Gets movies from the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year of the second movie.</param>
        /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> GetBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            string title2,
            int year1,
            int year2)
        {
            var getBatch = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
```

```
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            if (response.Responses.Count > 0)
            {
                response.Responses.ForEach(r =>
                {
                    if (r.Item.Any())
                    {

 Console.WriteLine($"{r.Item["title"]}\t{r.Item["year"]}");
                    }
                });
                return true;
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find either {title1} or {title2}.");
                return false;
            }

        }
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Updates information for multiple movies.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// movies to be updated.</param>
        /// <param name="producer1">The producer name for the first movie
        /// to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year that the first movie was released.</
 param>
```

```
        /// <param name="producer2">The producer name for the second
        /// movie to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year that the second movie was released.</
param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the update.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateBatch(
            string tableName,
            string producer1,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string producer2,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
 = ? AND year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer1 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer2 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };
```

```
            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple movies using a PartiQL BatchExecuteAsync
        /// statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// moves that will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND
 year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
```

```
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
    // 2. Add multiple movies using "Insert" statements. (BatchExecuteStatement)
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::vector<Aws::String> titles;
```

```
    std::vector<float> ratings;
    std::vector<int> years;
    std::vector<Aws::String> plots;
    Aws::String doAgain = "n";
    do {
        Aws::String aTitle = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        titles.push_back(aTitle);
        int aYear = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        years.push_back(aYear);
        float aRating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? ",
                1, 10);
        ratings.push_back(aRating);
        Aws::String aPlot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");
        plots.push_back(aPlot);

        doAgain = askQuestion(Aws::String("Would you like to add more movies? (y/
n) "));
    } while (doAgain == "y");

    std::cout << "Adding " << titles.size()
              << (titles.size() == 1 ? " movie " : " movies ")
              << "to the table using a batch \"INSERT\" statement." << std::endl;

    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());

        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

 attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
```

```
            // Create attribute for the info map.
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute
= Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            ratingAttribute->SetN(ratings[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            plotAttribute->SetS(plots[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
            attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add the movies: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
    // 3. Get the data for multiple movies using "Select" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
```

```
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse>
&responses = result.GetResponses();

            for (const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse &response:
responses) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = response.GetItem();

                printMovieInfo(item);
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
   // 4. Update the data for multiple movies using "Update" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)

   for (size_t i = 0; i < titles.size(); ++i) {
       ratings[i] = askQuestionForFloatRange(
               Aws::String("\nLet's update your the movie, \"") + titles[i] +
               ".\nYou rated it  " + std::to_string(ratings[i])
               + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
   }

   std::cout << "Updating the movie with a batch \"UPDATE\" statement." <<
std::endl;

   {
       Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
               titles.size());

       std::stringstream sqlStream;
       sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                 << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                 << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";


       std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

       for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
           statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

           Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
           attributes.push_back(
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(ratings[i]));
           attributes.push_back(
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
           statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
       }

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;
```

```
        request.SetStatements(statements);
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
    // 6. Delete multiple movies using "Delete" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
```

```
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movies: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a function receiver struct for the example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
```

```
}
```

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
// AddMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL INSERT statements to add multiple movies
 to the
// DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year, movie.Info})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf(
    "INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
// GetMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL SELECT statements to get multiple movies
 from
// the DynamoDB table by title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 output, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 var outMovies []Movie
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  for _, response := range output.Responses {
   var movie Movie
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    outMovies = append(outMovies, movie)
   }
  }
 }
 return outMovies, err
}
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
// UpdateMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL UPDATE statements to update the
 rating of
// multiple movies that already exist in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 ratings []float64) error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{ratings[index],
 movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
// DeleteMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL DELETE statements to remove multiple
 movies
// from the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 error {
```

```
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)
```

```
// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const breakfastFoods = ["Eggs", "Bacon", "Sausage"];
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: breakfastFoods.map((food) => ({
      Statement: `INSERT INTO BreakfastFoods value {'Name':?}`,
      Parameters: [food],
    })),
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Get a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
```

```
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: "SELECT * FROM PepperMeasurements WHERE Unit=?",
        Parameters: ["Teaspoons"],
        ConsistentRead: true,
      },
      {
        Statement: "SELECT * FROM PepperMeasurements WHERE Unit=?",
        Parameters: ["Grams"],
        ConsistentRead: true,
      },
    ],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Update a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const eggUpdates = [
```

```
    ["duck", "fried"],
    ["chicken", "omelette"],
  ];
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: eggUpdates.map((change) => ({
      Statement: "UPDATE Eggs SET Style=? where Variety=?",
      Parameters: [change[1], change[0]],
    })),
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Delete a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: "DELETE FROM Flavors where Name=?",
        Parameters: ["Grape"],
      },
      {
        Statement: "DELETE FROM Flavors where Name=?",
        Parameters: ["Strawberry"],
      },
    ],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
```

```
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function getItemByPartiQLBatch(string $tableName, array $keys): Result
    {
        $statements = [];
        foreach ($keys as $key) {
            list($statement, $parameters) = $this-
>buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT", $tableName, $key['Item']);
            $statements[] = [
                'Statement' => "$statement",
                'Parameters' => $parameters,
            ];
        }

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => $statements,
        ]);
    }

    public function insertItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array
 $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
```

```
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array
$parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array
$parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PartiQLBatchWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statements, param_list):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because
 the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects
 (POPOs) to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statements: The batch of PartiQL statements.
        :param param_list: The batch of PartiQL parameters that are associated
 with
                           each statement. This list must be in the same order as
 the
                           statements.
        :return: The responses returned from running the statements, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.batch_execute_statement(
                Statements=[
                    {"Statement": statement, "Parameters": params}
                    for statement, params in zip(statements, param_list)
                ]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements because the
 table "
                    "does not exist."
```

```
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements. Here's why:
 %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Read a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLBatch
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Selects a batch of items from a table using PartiQL
  #
  # @param batch_titles [Array] Collection of movie titles
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::BatchExecuteStatementOutput]
  def batch_execute_select(batch_titles)
```

```
    request_items = batch_titles.map do |title, year|
      {
        statement: "SELECT * FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=? and year=?",
        parameters: [title, year]
      }
    end
    @dynamodb.client.batch_execute_statement({ statements: request_items })
  end
```

Delete a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLBatch
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Deletes a batch of items from a table using PartiQL
  #
  # @param batch_titles [Array] Collection of movie titles
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::BatchExecuteStatementOutput]
  def batch_execute_write(batch_titles)
    request_items = batch_titles.map do |title, year|
      {
        statement: "DELETE FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=? and year=?",
        parameters: [title, year]
      }
    end
    @dynamodb.client.batch_execute_statement({ statements: request_items })
  end
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `BatchGetItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchGetItem`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

namespace LowLevelBatchGet
{
    public class LowLevelBatchGet
    {
        private static readonly string _table1Name = "Forum";
        private static readonly string _table2Name = "Thread";

        public static async void
 RetrieveMultipleItemsBatchGet(AmazonDynamoDBClient client)
        {
            var request = new BatchGetItemRequest
            {
                RequestItems = new Dictionary<string, KeysAndAttributes>()
            {
                { _table1Name,
                  new KeysAndAttributes
                  {
                      Keys = new List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> >()
                      {
                          new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                          {
                              { "Name", new AttributeValue {
                            S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                        } }
                          },
                          new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                          {
```

```
                                { "Name", new AttributeValue {
                                S = "Amazon S3"
                            } }
                              }
                        }
                    }},
                {
                    _table2Name,
                    new KeysAndAttributes
                    {
                        Keys = new List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> >()
                        {
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                                    } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "DynamoDB Thread 1"
                                    } }
                            },
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                                    } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "DynamoDB Thread 2"
                                    } }
                            },
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon S3"
                                    } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "S3 Thread 1"
                                    } }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            };
```

```
            BatchGetItemResponse response;
            do
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Making request");
                response = await client.BatchGetItemAsync(request);

                // Check the response.
                var responses = response.Responses; // Attribute list in the
response.

                foreach (var tableResponse in responses)
                {
                    var tableResults = tableResponse.Value;
                    Console.WriteLine("Items retrieved from table {0}",
tableResponse.Key);
                    foreach (var item1 in tableResults)
                    {
                        PrintItem(item1);
                    }
                }

                // Any unprocessed keys? could happen if you exceed
ProvisionedThroughput or some other error.
                Dictionary<string, KeysAndAttributes> unprocessedKeys =
response.UnprocessedKeys;
                foreach (var unprocessedTableKeys in unprocessedKeys)
                {
                    // Print table name.
                    Console.WriteLine(unprocessedTableKeys.Key);
                    // Print unprocessed primary keys.
                    foreach (var key in unprocessedTableKeys.Value.Keys)
                    {
                        PrintItem(key);
                    }
                }

                request.RequestItems = unprocessedKeys;
            } while (response.UnprocessedKeys.Count > 0);
        }

        private static void PrintItem(Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
attributeList)
        {
```

```
            foreach (KeyValuePair<string, AttributeValue> kvp in attributeList)
            {
                string attributeName = kvp.Key;
                AttributeValue value = kvp.Value;

                Console.WriteLine(
                    attributeName + " " +
                    (value.S == null ? "" : "S=[" + value.S + "]") +
                    (value.N == null ? "" : "N=[" + value.N + "]") +
                    (value.SS == null ? "" : "SS=[" + string.Join(",",
 value.SS.ToArray()) + "]") +
                    (value.NS == null ? "" : "NS=[" + string.Join(",",
 value.NS.ToArray()) + "]")
                    );
            }

 Console.WriteLine("************************************************");
        }

        static void Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            RetrieveMultipleItemsBatchGet(client);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
```

```
# function dynamodb_batch_get_item
#
# This function gets a batch of items from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the keys of the items to get.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###########################################################################
function dynamodb_batch_get_item() {
  local item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_batch_get_item"
    echo "Get a batch of items from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the keys of the items to
 get."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws dynamodb batch-get-item \
    --request-items file://"$item")
  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-get-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
```

```
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Batch get items from different Amazon DynamoDB tables.
/*!
```

```
  \sa batchGetItem()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::batchGetItem(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchGetItemRequest request;

    // Table1: Forum.
    Aws::String table1Name = "Forum";
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeysAndAttributes table1KeysAndAttributes;

    // Table1: Projection expression.
    table1KeysAndAttributes.SetProjectionExpression("#n, Category, Messages,
 #v");

    // Table1: Expression attribute names.
    Aws::Http::HeaderValueCollection headerValueCollection;
    headerValueCollection.emplace("#n", "Name");
    headerValueCollection.emplace("#v", "Views");
    table1KeysAndAttributes.SetExpressionAttributeNames(headerValueCollection);

    // Table1: Set key name, type, and value to search.
    std::vector<Aws::String> nameValues = {"Amazon DynamoDB", "Amazon S3"};
    for (const Aws::String &name: nameValues) {
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> keys;
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue key;
        key.SetS(name);
        keys.emplace("Name", key);
        table1KeysAndAttributes.AddKeys(keys);
    }

    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeysAndAttributes> requestItems;
    requestItems.emplace(table1Name, table1KeysAndAttributes);

    // Table2: ProductCatalog.
    Aws::String table2Name = "ProductCatalog";
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeysAndAttributes table2KeysAndAttributes;
    table2KeysAndAttributes.SetProjectionExpression("Title, Price, Color");

    // Table2: Set key name, type, and value to search.
    std::vector<Aws::String> idValues = {"102", "103", "201"};
```

```
    for (const Aws::String &id: idValues) {
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> keys;
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue key;
        key.SetN(id);
        keys.emplace("Id", key);
        table2KeysAndAttributes.AddKeys(keys);
    }

    requestItems.emplace(table2Name, table2KeysAndAttributes);

    bool result = true;
    do {  // Use a do loop to handle pagination.
        request.SetRequestItems(requestItems);
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchGetItemOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchGetItem(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            for (const auto &responsesMapEntry:
outcome.GetResult().GetResponses()) {
                Aws::String tableName = responsesMapEntry.first;
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &tableResults = responsesMapEntry.second;
                std::cout << "Retrieved " << tableResults.size()
                          << " responses for table '" << tableName << "'.\n"
                          << std::endl;
                if (tableName == "Forum") {

                    std::cout << "Name | Category | Message | Views" <<
std::endl;
                    for (const Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &item: tableResults) {
                        std::cout << item.at("Name").GetS() << " | ";
                        std::cout << item.at("Category").GetS() << " | ";
                        std::cout << (item.count("Message") == 0 ? "" : item.at(
                                "Messages").GetN()) << " | ";
                        std::cout << (item.count("Views") == 0 ? "" : item.at(
                                "Views").GetN()) << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Title | Price | Color" << std::endl;
                    for (const Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &item: tableResults) {
```

```
                        std::cout << item.at("Title").GetS() << " | ";
                        std::cout << (item.count("Price") == 0 ? "" : item.at(
                                "Price").GetN());
                        if (item.count("Color")) {
                            std::cout << " | ";
                            for (const
std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &listItem: item.at(
                                    "Color").GetL())
                                std::cout << listItem->GetS() << " ";
                        }
                        std::cout << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                std::cout << std::endl;
            }

            // If necessary, repeat request for remaining items.
            requestItems = outcome.GetResult().GetUnprocessedKeys();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Batch get item failed: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }
    } while (!requestItems.empty());

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve multiple items from a table

The following `batch-get-items` example reads multiple items from the `MusicCollection` table using a batch of three `GetItem` requests, and requests the

number of read capacity units consumed by the operation. The command returns only the `AlbumTitle` attribute.

```
aws dynamodb batch-get-item \
    --request-items file://request-items.json \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL
```

Contents of `request-items.json`:

```
{
    "MusicCollection": {
        "Keys": [
            {
                "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
                "SongTitle": {"S": "Call Me Today"}
            },
            {
                "Artist": {"S": "Acme Band"},
                "SongTitle": {"S": "Happy Day"}
            },
            {
                "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
                "SongTitle": {"S": "Scared of My Shadow"}
            }
        ],
        "ProjectionExpression":"AlbumTitle"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Responses": {
        "MusicCollection": [
            {
                "AlbumTitle": {
                    "S": "Somewhat Famous"
                }
            },
            {
                "AlbumTitle": {
                    "S": "Blue Sky Blues"
```

```
                }
            },
            {
                "AlbumTitle": {
                    "S": "Louder Than Ever"
                }
            }
        ]
    },
    "UnprocessedKeys": {},
    "ConsumedCapacity": [
        {
            "TableName": "MusicCollection",
            "CapacityUnits": 1.5
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Batch Operations in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Shows how to get batch items using the service client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchGetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchGetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeysAndAttributes;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class BatchReadItems {
    public static void main(String[] args){
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music).\s
                """;

        String tableName = "Music";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getBatchItems(dynamoDbClient, tableName);
    }

    public static void getBatchItems(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Define the primary key values for the items you want to retrieve.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key1 = new HashMap<>();
        key1.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist1").build());

        Map<String, AttributeValue> key2 = new HashMap<>();
        key2.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist2").build());

        // Construct the batchGetItem request.
        Map<String, KeysAndAttributes> requestItems = new HashMap<>();
        requestItems.put(tableName, KeysAndAttributes.builder()
            .keys(List.of(key1, key2))
```

```
            .projectionExpression("Artist, SongTitle")
            .build());

        BatchGetItemRequest batchGetItemRequest = BatchGetItemRequest.builder()
            .requestItems(requestItems)
            .build();

        // Make the batchGetItem request.
        BatchGetItemResponse batchGetItemResponse =
 dynamoDbClient.batchGetItem(batchGetItemRequest);

        // Extract and print the retrieved items.
        Map<String, List<Map<String, AttributeValue>>> responses =
 batchGetItemResponse.responses();
        if (responses.containsKey(tableName)) {
            List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> musicItems =
 responses.get(tableName);
            for (Map<String, AttributeValue> item : musicItems) {
                System.out.println("Artist: " + item.get("Artist").s() +
                    ", SongTitle: " + item.get("SongTitle").s());
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("No items retrieved.");
        }
    }
}
```

Shows how to get batch items using the service client and a paginator.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchGetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeysAndAttributes;
import java.util.Collections;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

public class BatchGetItemsPaginator {

    public static void main(String[] args){
```

```
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music).\s
                """;

        String tableName = "Music";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getBatchItemsPaginator(dynamoDbClient, tableName) ;
    }

    public static void getBatchItemsPaginator(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
String tableName) {
        // Define the primary key values for the items you want to retrieve.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key1 = new HashMap<>();
        key1.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist1").build());

        Map<String, AttributeValue> key2 = new HashMap<>();
        key2.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist2").build());

        // Construct the batchGetItem request.
        Map<String, KeysAndAttributes> requestItems = new HashMap<>();
        requestItems.put(tableName, KeysAndAttributes.builder()
            .keys(List.of(key1, key2))
            .projectionExpression("Artist, SongTitle")
            .build());

        BatchGetItemRequest batchGetItemRequest = BatchGetItemRequest.builder()
            .requestItems(requestItems)
            .build();

        // Use batchGetItemPaginator for paginated requests.
        dynamoDbClient.batchGetItemPaginator(batchGetItemRequest).stream()
            .flatMap(response -> response.responses().getOrDefault(tableName,
Collections.emptyList()).stream())
            .forEach(item -> {
                System.out.println("Artist: " + item.get("Artist").s() +
```

```
                    ", SongTitle: " + item.get("SongTitle").s());
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see BatchGet.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { BatchGetCommand, DynamoDBDocumentClient } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new BatchGetCommand({
    // Each key in this object is the name of a table. This example refers
    // to a Books table.
    RequestItems: {
      Books: {
        // Each entry in Keys is an object that specifies a primary key.
        Keys: [
          {
            Title: "How to AWS",
          },
          {
            Title: "DynamoDB for DBAs",
          },
```

```
        ],
        // Only return the "Title" and "PageCount" attributes.
        ProjectionExpression: "Title, PageCount",
      },
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response.Responses.Books);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  RequestItems: {
    TABLE_NAME: {
      Keys: [
        { KEY_NAME: { N: "KEY_VALUE_1" } },
        { KEY_NAME: { N: "KEY_VALUE_2" } },
        { KEY_NAME: { N: "KEY_VALUE_3" } },
      ],
      ProjectionExpression: "KEY_NAME, ATTRIBUTE",
    },
```

```
  },
};

ddb.batchGetItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    data.Responses.TABLE_NAME.forEach(function (element, index, array) {
      console.log(element);
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Gets the item with the SongTitle "Somewhere Down The Road" from the DynamoDB tables 'Music' and 'Songs'.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$keysAndAttributes = New-Object Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes
$list = New-Object
 'System.Collections.Generic.List[System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,
 Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue]]'
$list.Add($key)
$keysAndAttributes.Keys = $list

$requestItem = @{
    'Music' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes]$keysAndAttributes
    'Songs' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes]$keysAndAttributes
}

$batchItems = Get-DDBBatchItem -RequestItem $requestItem
```

```
$batchItems.GetEnumerator() | ForEach-Object {$PSItem.Value} | ConvertFrom-
DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Artist                         No One You Know
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
CriticRating                   10
Genre                          Country
Price                          1.94
Artist                         No One You Know
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
CriticRating                   10
Genre                          Country
Price                          1.94
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Gets the item with the SongTitle "Somewhere Down The Road" from the DynamoDB tables 'Music' and 'Songs'.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$keysAndAttributes = New-Object Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes
$list = New-Object
 'System.Collections.Generic.List[System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,
 Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue]]'
$list.Add($key)
$keysAndAttributes.Keys = $list

$requestItem = @{
    'Music' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes]$keysAndAttributes
    'Songs' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes]$keysAndAttributes
}
```

```
$batchItems = Get-DDBBatchItem -RequestItem $requestItem
$batchItems.GetEnumerator() | ForEach-Object {$PSItem.Value} | ConvertFrom-
DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Artist                         No One You Know
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
CriticRating                   10
Genre                          Country
Price                          1.94
Artist                         No One You Know
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
CriticRating                   10
Genre                          Country
Price                          1.94
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import decimal
import json
import logging
import os
import pprint
import time
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

MAX_GET_SIZE = 100  # Amazon DynamoDB rejects a get batch larger than 100 items.


def do_batch_get(batch_keys):
    """
    Gets a batch of items from Amazon DynamoDB. Batches can contain keys from
    more than one table.

    When Amazon DynamoDB cannot process all items in a batch, a set of
 unprocessed
    keys is returned. This function uses an exponential backoff algorithm to
 retry
    getting the unprocessed keys until all are retrieved or the specified
    number of tries is reached.

    :param batch_keys: The set of keys to retrieve. A batch can contain at most
 100
                       keys. Otherwise, Amazon DynamoDB returns an error.
    :return: The dictionary of retrieved items grouped under their respective
             table names.
    """
    tries = 0
    max_tries = 5
    sleepy_time = 1  # Start with 1 second of sleep, then exponentially increase.
    retrieved = {key: [] for key in batch_keys}
    while tries < max_tries:
        response = dynamodb.batch_get_item(RequestItems=batch_keys)
        # Collect any retrieved items and retry unprocessed keys.
        for key in response.get("Responses", []):
            retrieved[key] += response["Responses"][key]
        unprocessed = response["UnprocessedKeys"]
        if len(unprocessed) > 0:
            batch_keys = unprocessed
            unprocessed_count = sum(
                [len(batch_key["Keys"]) for batch_key in batch_keys.values()]
            )
            logger.info(
                "%s unprocessed keys returned. Sleep, then retry.",
 unprocessed_count
            )
```

```
            tries += 1
            if tries < max_tries:
                logger.info("Sleeping for %s seconds.", sleepy_time)
                time.sleep(sleepy_time)
                sleepy_time = min(sleepy_time * 2, 32)
        else:
            break

    return retrieved
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Gets an array of `Movie` objects describing all the movies in the
    /// specified list. Any movies that aren't found in the list have no
    /// corresponding entry in the resulting array.
    ///
    /// - Parameters
    ///     - keys: An array of tuples, each of which specifies the title and
    ///       release year of a movie to fetch from the table.
    ///
    /// - Returns:
    ///     - An array of `Movie` objects describing each match found in the
    ///     table.
    ///
    /// - Throws:
    ///     - `MovieError.ClientUninitialized` if the DynamoDB client has not
```

```
    ///     been initialized.
    ///     - DynamoDB errors are thrown without change.
    func batchGet(keys: [(title: String, year: Int)]) async throws -> [Movie] {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MovieError.ClientUninitialized
            }

            var movieList: [Movie] = []
            var keyItems: [[Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]] =
[]

            // Convert the list of keys into the form used by DynamoDB.

            for key in keys {
                let item: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [
                    "title": .s(key.title),
                    "year": .n(String(key.year))
                ]
                keyItems.append(item)
            }

            // Create the input record for `batchGetItem()`. The list of
requested
            // items is in the `requestItems` property. This array contains one
            // entry for each table from which items are to be fetched. In this
            // example, there's only one table containing the movie data.
            //
            // If we wanted this program to also support searching for matches
            // in a table of book data, we could add a second `requestItem`
            // mapping the name of the book table to the list of items we want to
            // find in it.
            let input = BatchGetItemInput(
                requestItems: [
                    self.tableName: .init(
                        consistentRead: true,
                        keys: keyItems
                    )
                ]
            )

            // Fetch the matching movies from the table.

            let output = try await client.batchGetItem(input: input)
```

```
            // Get the set of responses. If there aren't any, return the empty
            // movie list.

            guard let responses = output.responses else {
                return movieList
            }

            // Get the list of matching items for the table with the name
            // `tableName`.

            guard let responseList = responses[self.tableName] else {
                return movieList
            }

            // Create `Movie` items for each of the matching movies in the table
            // and add them to the `MovieList` array.

            for response in responseList {
                try movieList.append(Movie(withItem: response))
            }

            return movieList
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: batchGet", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `BatchWriteItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Writes a batch of items to the movie table.

```
/// <summary>
/// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
/// added to the DynamoDB table.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file.</param>
/// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
public List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
{
    var moviesList = new List<Movie>();
    if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
    {
        return moviesList;
    }

    using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
    string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
    var allMovies = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<List<Movie>>(
        json,
        new JsonSerializerOptions
        {
            PropertyNameCaseInsensitive = true
        });

    // Now return the first 250 entries.
    if (allMovies != null && allMovies.Any())
    {
        moviesList = allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
    }
    return moviesList;
}
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Writes 250 items to the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">A string containing the full path to
    /// the JSON file containing movie data.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to write items to.</param>
    /// <returns>A long integer value representing the number of movies
    /// imported from the JSON file.</returns>
    public async Task<long> BatchWriteItemsAsync(
        string movieFileName, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);
            if (!movies.Any())
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Couldn't find the JSON file with movie
data.");
                return 0;
            }

            var context = new DynamoDBContextBuilder()
                // Optional call to provide a specific instance of
IAmazonDynamoDB
                .WithDynamoDBClient(() => _amazonDynamoDB)
                .Build();

            var movieBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Movie>(
                new BatchWriteConfig()
                {
                    OverrideTableName = tableName
                });
            movieBatch.AddPutItems(movies);

            Console.WriteLine("Adding imported movies to the table.");
            await movieBatch.ExecuteAsync();

            return movies.Count;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table was not found during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred during batch
 write operation. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred during batch write operation.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_batch_write_item
#
# This function writes a batch of items into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function dynamodb_batch_write_item() {
  local item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_batch_write_item"
    echo "Write a batch of items into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    item:   $item"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb batch-write-item \
    --request-items file://"$item")

  local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-write-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
```

```
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Batch write items from a JSON file.
```

```
/*!
  \sa batchWriteItem()
  \param jsonFilePath: JSON file path.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

/*
 * The input for this routine is a JSON file that you can download from the
 following URL:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
SampleData.html.
 *
 * The JSON data uses the BatchWriteItem API request syntax. The JSON strings are
 * converted to AttributeValue objects. These AttributeValue objects will then
 generate
 * JSON strings when constructing the BatchWriteItem request, essentially
 outputting
 * their input.
 *
 * This is perhaps an artificial example, but it demonstrates the APIs.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::batchWriteItem(const Aws::String &jsonFilePath,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    std::ifstream fileStream(jsonFilePath);

    if (!fileStream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: could not open file '" << jsonFilePath << "'."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    std::stringstream stringStream;
    stringStream << fileStream.rdbuf();
    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(stringStream);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemRequest batchWriteItemRequest;
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> level1Map =
 jsonValue.View().GetAllObjects();
    for (const auto &level1Entry: level1Map) {
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &entriesView = level1Entry.second;
        const Aws::String &tableName = level1Entry.first;
        // The JSON entries at this level are as follows:
```

```
        //  key - table name
        //  value - list of request objects
        if (!entriesView.IsListType()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: JSON file entry '"
                      << tableName << "' is not a list." << std::endl;
            continue;
        }

        Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> entries =
 entriesView.AsArray();

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest> writeRequests;
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::addWriteRequests(tableName, entries,
                                               writeRequests)) {
            batchWriteItemRequest.AddRequestItems(tableName, writeRequests);
        }
    }

    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemOutcome outcome =
 dynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(
            batchWriteItemRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "DynamoDB::BatchWriteItem was successful." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with DynamoDB::BatchWriteItem. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Convert requests in JSON format to a vector of WriteRequest objects.
/*!
  \sa addWriteRequests()
  \param tableName: Name of the table for the write operations.
  \param requestsJson: Request data in JSON format.
  \param writeRequests: Vector to receive the WriteRequest objects.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::addWriteRequests(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                        const
 Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> &requestsJson,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest> &writeRequests) {
    for (size_t i = 0; i < requestsJson.GetLength(); ++i) {
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &requestsEntry = requestsJson[i];
        if (!requestsEntry.IsObject()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: incorrect requestsEntry type "
                      << requestsEntry.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> requestsMap =
 requestsEntry.GetAllObjects();

        for (const auto &request: requestsMap) {
            const Aws::String &requestType = request.first;
            const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &requestJsonView = request.second;

            if (requestType == "PutRequest") {
                if (!requestJsonView.ValueExists("Item")) {
                    std::cerr << "Error: item key missing for requests "
                              << requestJsonView.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
                    return false;
                }
                Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
 attributes;
                if (!getAttributeObjectsMap(requestJsonView.GetObject("Item"),
                                            attributes)) {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting attributes "
                              << requestJsonView.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
                    return false;
                }

                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutRequest putRequest;
                putRequest.SetItem(attributes);
                writeRequests.push_back(
                        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest().WithPutRequest(
                                putRequest));
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: unimplemented request type '" << requestType
```

```
                            << "'." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Generate a map of AttributeValue objects from JSON records.
/*!
  \sa getAttributeObjectsMap()
  \param jsonView: JSONView of attribute records.
  \param writeRequests: Map to receive the AttributeValue objects.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::DynamoDB::getAttributeObjectsMap(const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView
 &jsonView,
                                          Aws::Map<Aws::String,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &attributes) {
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> objectsMap =
 jsonView.GetAllObjects();
    for (const auto &entry: objectsMap) {
        const Aws::String &attributeKey = entry.first;
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &attributeJsonView = entry.second;

        if (!attributeJsonView.IsObject()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: attribute not an object "
                      << attributeJsonView.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        attributes.emplace(attributeKey,

 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue(attributeJsonView));
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add multiple items to a table

The following `batch-write-item` example adds three new items to the `MusicCollection` table using a batch of three `PutItem` requests. It also requests information about the number of write capacity units consumed by the operation and any item collections modified by the operation.

```
aws dynamodb batch-write-item \
    --request-items file://request-items.json \
    --return-consumed-capacity INDEXES \
    --return-item-collection-metrics SIZE
```

Contents of `request-items.json`:

```
{
    "MusicCollection": [
        {
            "PutRequest": {
                "Item": {
                    "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
                    "SongTitle": {"S": "Call Me Today"},
                    "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Somewhat Famous"}
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "PutRequest": {
                "Item": {
                    "Artist": {"S": "Acme Band"},
                    "SongTitle": {"S": "Happy Day"},
                    "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Songs About Life"}
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "PutRequest": {
                "Item": {
                    "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
                    "SongTitle": {"S": "Scared of My Shadow"},
```

```
                    "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Blue Sky Blues"}
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "UnprocessedItems": {},
    "ItemCollectionMetrics": {
        "MusicCollection": [
            {
                "ItemCollectionKey": {
                    "Artist": {
                        "S": "No One You Know"
                    }
                },
                "SizeEstimateRangeGB": [
                    0.0,
                    1.0
                ]
            },
            {
                "ItemCollectionKey": {
                    "Artist": {
                        "S": "Acme Band"
                    }
                },
                "SizeEstimateRangeGB": [
                    0.0,
                    1.0
                ]
            }
        ]
    },
    "ConsumedCapacity": [
        {
            "TableName": "MusicCollection",
            "CapacityUnits": 6.0,
            "Table": {
                "CapacityUnits": 3.0
```

```
            },
            "LocalSecondaryIndexes": {
                "AlbumTitleIndex": {
                    "CapacityUnits": 3.0
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Batch Operations in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
```

```
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovieBatch adds a slice of movies to the DynamoDB table. The function sends
// batches of 25 movies to DynamoDB until all movies are added or it reaches the
// specified maximum.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 maxMovies int) (int, error) {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 written := 0
 batchSize := 25 // DynamoDB allows a maximum batch size of 25 items.
 start := 0
 end := start + batchSize
 for start < maxMovies && start < len(movies) {
  var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
  if end > len(movies) {
   end = len(movies)
  }
  for _, movie := range movies[start:end] {
   item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't marshal movie %v for batch writing. Here's why: %v\n",
 movie.Title, err)
   } else {
    writeReqs = append(
     writeReqs,
     types.WriteRequest{PutRequest: &types.PutRequest{Item: item}},
    )
   }
  }
  _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
   RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{basics.TableName: writeReqs}})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't add a batch of movies to %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  } else {
   written += len(writeReqs)
  }
```

```
  start = end
  end += batchSize
 }

 return written, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Inserts many items into a table by using the service client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchWriteItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchWriteItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.WriteRequest;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class BatchWriteItems {
    public static void main(String[] args){
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music).\s
                """;

        String tableName = "Music";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        addBatchItems(dynamoDbClient, tableName);
    }

    public static void addBatchItems(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Specify the updates you want to perform.
        List<WriteRequest> writeRequests = new ArrayList<>();

        // Set item 1.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> item1Attributes = new HashMap<>();
        item1Attributes.put("Artist",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist1").build());
        item1Attributes.put("Rating", AttributeValue.builder().s("5").build());
        item1Attributes.put("Comments", AttributeValue.builder().s("Great
 song!").build());
        item1Attributes.put("SongTitle",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("SongTitle1").build());
```

```
 writeRequests.add(WriteRequest.builder().putRequest(PutRequest.builder().item(item1Attri

        // Set item 2.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> item2Attributes = new HashMap<>();
        item2Attributes.put("Artist",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist2").build());
        item2Attributes.put("Rating", AttributeValue.builder().s("4").build());
        item2Attributes.put("Comments", AttributeValue.builder().s("Nice
 melody.").build());
        item2Attributes.put("SongTitle",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("SongTitle2").build());

 writeRequests.add(WriteRequest.builder().putRequest(PutRequest.builder().item(item2Attri

        try {
            // Create the BatchWriteItemRequest.
            BatchWriteItemRequest batchWriteItemRequest =
 BatchWriteItemRequest.builder()
                .requestItems(Map.of(tableName, writeRequests))
                .build();

            // Execute the BatchWriteItem operation.
            BatchWriteItemResponse batchWriteItemResponse =
 dynamoDbClient.batchWriteItem(batchWriteItemRequest);

            // Process the response.
            System.out.println("Batch write successful: " +
 batchWriteItemResponse);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Inserts many items into a table by using the enhanced client.

```
import com.example.dynamodb.Customer;
import com.example.dynamodb.Music;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.DynamoDbEnhancedClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.DynamoDbTable;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.Key;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.TableSchema;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.model.BatchWriteItemEnhancedRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.model.WriteBatch;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;

/*
 * Before running this code example, create an Amazon DynamoDB table named
 Customer with these columns:
 *   - id - the id of the record that is the key
 *   - custName - the customer name
 *   - email - the email value
 *   - registrationDate - an instant value when the item was added to the table
 *
 * Also, ensure that you have set up your development environment, including your
 credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class EnhancedBatchWriteItems {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
                DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                                .region(region)
                                .build();
                DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient =
 DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                                .build();
                putBatchRecords(enhancedClient);
                ddb.close();
        }
```

```
        public static void putBatchRecords(DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient)
{
                try {
                        DynamoDbTable<Customer> customerMappedTable =
enhancedClient.table("Customer",
                                        TableSchema.fromBean(Customer.class));
                        DynamoDbTable<Music> musicMappedTable =
enhancedClient.table("Music",
                                        TableSchema.fromBean(Music.class));
                        LocalDate localDate = LocalDate.parse("2020-04-07");
                        LocalDateTime localDateTime = localDate.atStartOfDay();
                        Instant instant =
localDateTime.toInstant(ZoneOffset.UTC);

                        Customer record2 = new Customer();
                        record2.setCustName("Fred Pink");
                        record2.setId("id110");
                        record2.setEmail("fredp@noserver.com");
                        record2.setRegistrationDate(instant);

                        Customer record3 = new Customer();
                        record3.setCustName("Susan Pink");
                        record3.setId("id120");
                        record3.setEmail("spink@noserver.com");
                        record3.setRegistrationDate(instant);

                        Customer record4 = new Customer();
                        record4.setCustName("Jerry orange");
                        record4.setId("id101");
                        record4.setEmail("jorange@noserver.com");
                        record4.setRegistrationDate(instant);

                        BatchWriteItemEnhancedRequest
batchWriteItemEnhancedRequest = BatchWriteItemEnhancedRequest
                                        .builder()
                                        .writeBatches(

WriteBatch.builder(Customer.class) // add items to the Customer

         // table

.mappedTableResource(customerMappedTable)

.addPutItem(builder -> builder.item(record2))
```

```
 .addPutItem(builder -> builder.item(record3))

 .addPutItem(builder -> builder.item(record4))
                                                                          .build(),

 WriteBatch.builder(Music.class) // delete an item from the Music

       // table

 .mappedTableResource(musicMappedTable)

 .addDeleteItem(builder -> builder.key(

       Key.builder().partitionValue(

                        "Famous Band")

                        .build()))
                                                                          .build())
                                         .build();

                        // Add three items to the Customer table and delete one
 item from the Music
                        // table.

 enhancedClient.batchWriteItem(batchWriteItemEnhancedRequest);
                        System.out.println("done");

                } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
        }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see BatchWrite.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";

// These modules are local to our GitHub repository. We recommend cloning
// the project from GitHub if you want to run this example.
// For more information, see https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples.
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { chunkArray } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-array.js";

const dirname = dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url);

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const file = readFileSync(
    `${dirname}../../../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json`,
  );

  const movies = JSON.parse(file.toString());

  // chunkArray is a local convenience function. It takes an array and returns
  // a generator function. The generator function yields every N items.
  const movieChunks = chunkArray(movies, 25);
```

```
  // For every chunk of 25 movies, make one BatchWrite request.
  for (const chunk of movieChunks) {
    const putRequests = chunk.map((movie) => ({
      PutRequest: {
        Item: movie,
      },
    }));

    const command = new BatchWriteCommand({
      RequestItems: {
        // An existing table is required. A composite key of 'title' and 'year'
 is recommended
        // to account for duplicate titles.
        BatchWriteMoviesTable: putRequests,
      },
    });

    await docClient.send(command);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  RequestItems: {
    TABLE_NAME: [
```

```
      {
        PutRequest: {
          Item: {
            KEY: { N: "KEY_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_1: { S: "ATTRIBUTE_1_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_2: { N: "ATTRIBUTE_2_VALUE" },
          },
        },
      },
      {
        PutRequest: {
          Item: {
            KEY: { N: "KEY_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_1: { S: "ATTRIBUTE_1_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_2: { N: "ATTRIBUTE_2_VALUE" },
          },
        },
      },
    ],
  },
};

ddb.batchWriteItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function writeBatch(string $TableName, array $Batch, int $depth = 2)
    {
        if (--$depth <= 0) {
            throw new Exception("Max depth exceeded. Please try with fewer batch
 items or increase depth.");
        }

        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        $total = 0;
        foreach (array_chunk($Batch, 25) as $Items) {
            foreach ($Items as $Item) {
                $BatchWrite['RequestItems'][$TableName][] = ['PutRequest' =>
 ['Item' => $marshal->marshalItem($Item)]];
            }
            try {
                echo "Batching another " . count($Items) . " for a total of " .
 ($total += count($Items)) . " items!\n";
                $response = $this->dynamoDbClient->batchWriteItem($BatchWrite);
                $BatchWrite = [];
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                echo "uh oh...";
                echo $e->getMessage();
                die();
            }
            if ($total >= 250) {
                echo "250 movies is probably enough. Right? We can stop there.
\n";
                break;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new item, or replaces an existing item with a new item in the DynamoDB tables Music and Songs.

```
$item = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
        AlbumTitle = 'Somewhat Famous'
        Price = 1.94
        Genre = 'Country'
        CriticRating = 10.0
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$writeRequest = New-Object Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest
$writeRequest.PutRequest = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.PutRequest]$item
```

Output:

```
$requestItem = @{
    'Music' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest]($writeRequest)
    'Songs' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest]($writeRequest)
}

Set-DDBBatchItem -RequestItem $requestItem
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new item, or replaces an existing item with a new item in the DynamoDB tables Music and Songs.

```
$item = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
        AlbumTitle = 'Somewhat Famous'
        Price = 1.94
```

```
        Genre = 'Country'
        CriticRating = 10.0
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$writeRequest = New-Object Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest
$writeRequest.PutRequest = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.PutRequest]$item
```

Output:

```
$requestItem = @{
    'Music' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest]($writeRequest)
    'Songs' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest]($writeRequest)
}

Set-DDBBatchItem -RequestItem $requestItem
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
```

```
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def write_batch(self, movies):
        """
        Fills an Amazon DynamoDB table with the specified data, using the Boto3
        Table.batch_writer() function to put the items in the table.
        Inside the context manager, Table.batch_writer builds a list of
        requests. On exiting the context manager, Table.batch_writer starts
sending
        batches of write requests to Amazon DynamoDB and automatically
        handles chunking, buffering, and retrying.

        :param movies: The data to put in the table. Each item must contain at
least
                       the keys required by the schema that was specified when
the
                       table was created.
        """
        try:
            with self.table.batch_writer() as writer:
                for movie in movies:
                    writer.put_item(Item=movie)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't load data into table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table.name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Fills an Amazon DynamoDB table with the specified data. Items are sent in
  # batches of 25 until all items are written.
  #
  # @param movies [Enumerable] The data to put in the table. Each item must
 contain at least
  #                            the keys required by the schema that was specified
 when the
  #                            table was created.
  def write_batch(movies)
    index = 0
    slice_size = 25
    while index < movies.length
      movie_items = []
      movies[index, slice_size].each do |movie|
```

```
        movie_items.append({ put_request: { item: movie } })
      end
      @dynamo_resource.client.batch_write_item({ request_items: { @table.name =>
 movie_items } })
      index += slice_size
    end
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts(
      "Couldn't load data into table #{@table.name}. Here's why:"
    )
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Populate the movie database from the specified JSON file.
    ///
    /// - Parameter jsonPath: Path to a JSON file containing movie data.
    ///
    func populate(jsonPath: String) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Create a Swift `URL` and use it to load the file into a `Data`
            // object. Then decode the JSON into an array of `Movie` objects.
```

```
            let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: jsonPath)
            let jsonData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)

            var movieList = try JSONDecoder().decode([Movie].self, from:
jsonData)

            // Truncate the list to the first 200 entries or so for this example.

            if movieList.count > 200 {
                movieList = Array(movieList[...199])
            }

            // Before sending records to the database, break the movie list into
            // 25-entry chunks, which is the maximum size of a batch item
request.

            let count = movieList.count
            let chunks = stride(from: 0, to: count, by: 25).map {
                Array(movieList[$0 ..< Swift.min($0 + 25, count)])
            }

            // For each chunk, create a list of write request records and
populate
            // them with `PutRequest` requests, each specifying one movie from
the
            // chunk. Once the chunk's items are all in the `PutRequest` list,
            // send them to Amazon DynamoDB using the
            // `DynamoDBClient.batchWriteItem()` function.

            for chunk in chunks {
                var requestList: [DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest] = []

                for movie in chunk {
                    let item = try await movie.getAsItem()
                    let request = DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest(
                        putRequest: .init(
                            item: item
                        )
                    )
                    requestList.append(request)
                }
```

```
                let input = BatchWriteItemInput(requestItems: [tableName:
requestList])
                _ = try await client.batchWriteItem(input: input)
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: populate:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateTable` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Accelerate reads with DAX
- Advanced Global Secondary Index scenarios
- Create a table with global secondary index
- Create a table with warm throughput enabled
- Create and manage global tables demonstrating MREC
- Create and manage MRSC global tables
- Manage Global Secondary Indexes
- Manage resource-based policies
- Set up Attribute-Based Access Control
- Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)
- Work with Local Secondary Indexes
- Work with resource tagging
- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live
- Work with table encryption

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Amazon DynamoDB table and then waits for the new
    /// table to become active.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to create.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateMovieTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.CreateTableAsync(new
 CreateTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                {
                    new AttributeDefinition
                    {
                        AttributeName = "title",
                        AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S,
                    },
                    new AttributeDefinition
                    {
                        AttributeName = "year",
                        AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N,
                    },
                },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                {
                    new KeySchemaElement
```

```
                    {
                        AttributeName = "year",
                        KeyType = KeyType.HASH,
                    },
                    new KeySchemaElement
                    {
                        AttributeName = "title",
                        KeyType = KeyType.RANGE,
                    },
                },
                BillingMode = BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
            });

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("Waiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = response.TableDescription.TableName,
            };

            TableStatus status;

            int sleepDuration = 2000;

            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(sleepDuration);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDB.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while creating
 table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating table
 {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_create_table
#
# This function creates an Amazon DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create.
#       -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and
 their types.
#       -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key
 types.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
```

```
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_create_table() {
  local table_name attribute_definitions key_schema response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_create_table"
    echo "Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table with on-demand billing."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create."
    echo " -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and
 their types."
    echo " -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key
 types."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:a:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) attribute_definitions="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_schema="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$attribute_definitions" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an attribute definitions json file path the
 -a parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_schema" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key schema json file path the -k
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    attribute_definitions:   $attribute_definitions"
  iecho "    key_schema:   $key_schema"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --attribute-definitions file://"$attribute_definitions" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --key-schema file://"$key_schema" )

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
```

```
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa createTable()
  \param tableName: Name for the DynamoDB table.
  \param primaryKey: Primary key for the DynamoDB table.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                   const Aws::String &primaryKey,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::cout << "Creating table " << tableName <<
              " with a simple primary key: \"" << primaryKey << "\"." <<
 std::endl;
```

```
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition hashKey;
    hashKey.SetAttributeName(primaryKey);
    hashKey.SetAttributeType(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
    request.AddAttributeDefinitions(hashKey);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement keySchemaElement;
    keySchemaElement.WithAttributeName(primaryKey).WithKeyType(
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
    request.AddKeySchema(keySchemaElement);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
    throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(5).WithWriteCapacityUnits(5);
    request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Table \""
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName() <<
                  " created!" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create table: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
```

```
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a table with tags

The following `create-table` example uses the specified attributes and key schema to create a table named `MusicCollection`. This table uses provisioned throughput and is encrypted at rest using the default AWS owned CMK. The command also applies a tag to the table, with a key of `Owner` and a value of `blueTeam`.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=5,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --tags Key=Owner,Value=blueTeam
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
```

```
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "KeyType": "HASH",
                "AttributeName": "Artist"
            },
            {
                "KeyType": "RANGE",
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle"
            }
        ],
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T16:04:41.627000-07:00",
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To create a table in On-Demand Mode

The following example creates a table called `MusicCollection` using on-demand mode, rather than provisioned throughput mode. This is useful for tables with unpredictable workloads.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
```

```
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-27T11:44:10.807000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 0,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 0
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "BillingModeSummary": {
            "BillingMode": "PAY_PER_REQUEST"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To create a table and encrypt it with a Customer Managed CMK

The following example creates a table named `MusicCollection` and encrypts it using a customer managed CMK.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=5,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=abcd1234-
abcd-1234-a123-ab1234a1b234
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-27T11:12:16.431000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
```

```
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "SSEDescription": {
            "Status": "ENABLED",
            "SSEType": "KMS",
            "KMSMasterKeyArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:123456789012:key/abcd1234-
abcd-1234-a123-ab1234a1b234"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To create a table with a Local Secondary Index

The following example uses the specified attributes and key schema to create a table named `MusicCollection` with a Local Secondary Index named `AlbumTitleIndex`.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --local-secondary-indexes \
        "[
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"AlbumTitleIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\": \"Artist\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\": \"AlbumTitle\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {
                    \"ProjectionType\": \"INCLUDE\",
                    \"NonKeyAttributes\": [\"Genre\", \"Year\"]
                }
            }
```

```
        ]"
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T15:59:49.473000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
```

```
        "LocalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "AlbumTitleIndex",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "Artist",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    },
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                        "KeyType": "RANGE"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "INCLUDE",
                    "NonKeyAttributes": [
                        "Genre",
                        "Year"
                    ]
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/index/AlbumTitleIndex"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To create a table with a Global Secondary Index

The following example creates a table named `GameScores` with a Global Secondary Index called `GameTitleIndex`. The base table has a partition key of `UserId` and a sort key of `GameTitle`, allowing you to find an individual user's best score for a specific game efficiently, whereas the GSI has a partition key of `GameTitle` and a sort key of `TopScore`, allowing you to quickly find the overall highest score for a particular game.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name GameScores \
```

```
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=UserId,AttributeType=S AttributeName=GameTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-schema AttributeName=UserId,KeyType=HASH \
                 AttributeName=GameTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "[
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"GameTitleIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"GameTitle\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"TopScore\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {
                    \"ProjectionType\":\"INCLUDE\",
                    \"NonKeyAttributes\":[\"UserId\"]
                },
                \"ProvisionedThroughput\": {
                    \"ReadCapacityUnits\": 10,
                    \"WriteCapacityUnits\": 5
                }
            }
        ]"
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "TopScore",
                "AttributeType": "N"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
```

```
        "TableName": "GameScores",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T17:28:15.602000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/GameScores",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "GlobalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "GameTitleIndex",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    },
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "TopScore",
                        "KeyType": "RANGE"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "INCLUDE",
                    "NonKeyAttributes": [
                        "UserId"
                    ]
                },
                "IndexStatus": "CREATING",
                "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                    "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
```

```
                    "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
                    "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
GameScores/index/GameTitleIndex"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 6: To create a table with multiple Global Secondary Indexes at once

The following example creates a table named `GameScores` with two Global Secondary Indexes. The GSI schemas are passed via a file, rather than on the command line.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name GameScores \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=UserId,AttributeType=S AttributeName=GameTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=UserId,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=GameTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --global-secondary-indexes file://gsi.json
```

Contents of `gsi.json`:

```
[
    {
        "IndexName": "GameTitleIndex",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "TopScore",
```

```
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "Projection": {
            "ProjectionType": "ALL"
        },
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        }
    },
    {
        "IndexName": "GameDateIndex",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "Date",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "Projection": {
            "ProjectionType": "ALL"
        },
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        }
    }
]
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Date",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
```

```
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "TopScore",
                "AttributeType": "N"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "GameScores",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-08-04T16:40:55.524000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/GameScores",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "GlobalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "GameTitleIndex",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    },
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "TopScore",
```

```
                        "KeyType": "RANGE"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "ALL"
                },
                "IndexStatus": "CREATING",
                "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                    "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
                    "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
                    "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
GameScores/index/GameTitleIndex"
            },
            {
                "IndexName": "GameDateIndex",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    },
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "Date",
                        "KeyType": "RANGE"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "ALL"
                },
                "IndexStatus": "CREATING",
                "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                    "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
                    "ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
                    "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
GameScores/index/GameDateIndex"
            }
        ]
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 7: To create a table with Streams enabled

The following example creates a table called `GameScores` with DynamoDB Streams enabled. Both new and old images of each item will be written to the stream.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name GameScores \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=UserId,AttributeType=S AttributeName=GameTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=UserId,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=GameTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=TRUE,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "GameScores",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
```

```
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-27T10:49:34.056000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/GameScores",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "StreamSpecification": {
            "StreamEnabled": true,
            "StreamViewType": "NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES"
        },
        "LatestStreamLabel": "2020-05-27T17:49:34.056",
        "LatestStreamArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
GameScores/stream/2020-05-27T17:49:34.056"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Basic Operations for Tables in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 8: To create a table with Keys-Only Stream enabled

The following example creates a table called `GameScores` with DynamoDB Streams enabled. Only the key attributes of modified items are written to the stream.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name GameScores \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=UserId,AttributeType=S AttributeName=GameTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=UserId,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=GameTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=TRUE,StreamViewType=KEYS_ONLY
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "GameScores",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2023-05-25T18:45:34.140000+00:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/GameScores",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "StreamSpecification": {
            "StreamEnabled": true,
            "StreamViewType": "KEYS_ONLY"
        },
        "LatestStreamLabel": "2023-05-25T18:45:34.140",
        "LatestStreamArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
GameScores/stream/2023-05-25T18:45:34.140",
        "DeletionProtectionEnabled": false
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Change data capture for DynamoDB Streams in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 9: To create a table with the Standard Infrequent Access class

The following example creates a table called `GameScores` and assigns the Standard-Infrequent Access (DynamoDB Standard-IA) table class. This table class is optimized for storage being the dominant cost.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name GameScores \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=UserId,AttributeType=S AttributeName=GameTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=UserId,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=GameTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --table-class STANDARD_INFREQUENT_ACCESS
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "GameScores",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
```

```
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2023-05-25T18:33:07.581000+00:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/GameScores",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "TableClassSummary": {
            "TableClass": "STANDARD_INFREQUENT_ACCESS"
        },
        "DeletionProtectionEnabled": false
    }
}
```

For more information, see Table classes in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 10: To Create a table with Delete Protection enabled

The following example creates a table called `GameScores` and enables deletion protection.

```
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name GameScores \
    --attribute-
definitions AttributeName=UserId,AttributeType=S AttributeName=GameTitle,AttributeType=S
 \
    --key-
schema AttributeName=UserId,KeyType=HASH AttributeName=GameTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=10,WriteCapacityUnits=5 \
    --deletion-protection-enabled
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
```

```
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "GameScores",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "UserId",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "GameTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "CREATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2023-05-25T23:02:17.093000+00:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/GameScores",
        "TableId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "DeletionProtectionEnabled": true
    }
}
```

For more information, see Using deletion protection in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// CreateMovieTable creates a DynamoDB table with a composite primary key defined
 as
// a string sort key named `title`, and a numeric partition key named `year`.
// This function uses NewTableExistsWaiter to wait for the table to be created by
// DynamoDB before it returns.
func (basics TableBasics) CreateMovieTable(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.TableDescription, error) {
```

```
 var tableDesc *types.TableDescription
 table, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.CreateTable(ctx, &dynamodb.CreateTableInput{
  AttributeDefinitions: []types.AttributeDefinition{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
   AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeN,
  }, {
   AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
   AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeS,
  }},
  KeySchema: []types.KeySchemaElement{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
   KeyType:       types.KeyTypeHash,
  }, {
   AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
   KeyType:       types.KeyTypeRange,
  }},
  TableName:   aws.String(basics.TableName),
  BillingMode: types.BillingModePayPerRequest,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 } else {
  waiter := dynamodb.NewTableExistsWaiter(basics.DynamoDbClient)
  err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{
   TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)}, 5*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Wait for table exists failed. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  tableDesc = table.TableDescription
  log.Printf("Ccreating table test")
 }
 return tableDesc, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BillingMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeySchemaElement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeyType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.OnDemandThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScalarAttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.waiters.DynamoDbWaiter;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateTable {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
```

```
                <tableName> <key>

            Where:
                tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to create (for example,
Music3).
                key - The key for the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
Artist).
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        System.out.println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table " + tableName + "
with a simple primary key: " + key);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        String result = createTable(ddb, tableName, key);
        System.out.println("New table is " + result);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static String createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
key) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .attributeDefinitions(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(key)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build())
            .keySchema(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(key)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build())
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
scales based on traffic.
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();
```

```
        String newTable;
        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
 dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            return newTable;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateTableCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new CreateTableCommand({
```

```
    TableName: "EspressoDrinks",
    // For more information about data types,
    // see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
HowItWorks.NamingRulesDataTypes.html#HowItWorks.DataTypes and
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "DrinkName",
        AttributeType: "S",
      },
    ],
    KeySchema: [
      {
        AttributeName: "DrinkName",
        KeyType: "HASH",
      },
    ],
    BillingMode: "PAY_PER_REQUEST",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  AttributeDefinitions: [
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_ID",
      AttributeType: "N",
    },
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_NAME",
      AttributeType: "S",
    },
  ],
  KeySchema: [
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_ID",
      KeyType: "HASH",
    },
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_NAME",
      KeyType: "RANGE",
    },
  ],
  ProvisionedThroughput: {
    ReadCapacityUnits: 1,
    WriteCapacityUnits: 1,
  },
  TableName: "CUSTOMER_LIST",
  StreamSpecification: {
    StreamEnabled: false,
  },
};

// Call DynamoDB to create the table
ddb.createTable(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Table Created", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
): String? {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        var tableArn: String
```

```
        val response = ddb.createTable(request)
        ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
            // suspend call
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
        tableArn = response.tableDescription!!.tableArn.toString()
        println("Table $tableArn is ready")
        return tableArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a table.

```
        $tableName = "ddb_demo_table_$uuid";
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

    public function createTable(string $tableName, array $attributes)
    {
        $keySchema = [];
        $attributeDefinitions = [];
        foreach ($attributes as $attribute) {
            if (is_a($attribute, DynamoDBAttribute::class)) {
```

```
                $keySchema[] = ['AttributeName' => $attribute->AttributeName,
 'KeyType' => $attribute->KeyType];
                $attributeDefinitions[] =
                    ['AttributeName' => $attribute->AttributeName,
 'AttributeType' => $attribute->AttributeType];
            }
        }

        $this->dynamoDbClient->createTable([
            'TableName' => $tableName,
            'KeySchema' => $keySchema,
            'AttributeDefinitions' => $attributeDefinitions,
            'ProvisionedThroughput' => ['ReadCapacityUnits' => 10,
 'WriteCapacityUnits' => 10],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range). The schema used to construct the table can be piped into each cmdlet as shown or specified using the -Schema parameter.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyType RANGE -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
```

```
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {}
```

Example 2: This example creates a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range). A local secondary index is also defined. The key of the local secondary index will be set automatically from the primary hash key on the table (ForumName). The schema used to construct the table can be piped into each cmdlet as shown or specified using the -Schema parameter.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" -RangeKeyName
 "LastPostDateTime" -RangeKeyDataType "S" -ProjectionType "keys_only"
$schema | New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, LastPostDateTime, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {LastPostIndex}
```

Example 3: This example shows how to use a single pipeline to create a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range) and a local secondary index. The Add-DDBKeySchema and Add-DDBIndexSchema create a new TableSchema object for you if one is not supplied from the pipeline or the -Schema parameter.

```
New-DDBTableSchema |
  Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S" |
  Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyDataType "S" |
  Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" `
                     -RangeKeyName "LastPostDateTime" `
```

```
                      -RangeKeyDataType "S" `
                      -ProjectionType "keys_only" |
  New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, LastPostDateTime, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {LastPostIndex}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range). The schema used to construct the table can be piped into each cmdlet as shown or specified using the -Schema parameter.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyType RANGE -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {}
```

Example 2: This example creates a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range). A local secondary index is also defined. The key of the local secondary index will be set automatically from the primary hash key on the table (ForumName). The schema used to construct the table can be piped into each cmdlet as shown or specified using the -Schema parameter.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" -RangeKeyName
 "LastPostDateTime" -RangeKeyDataType "S" -ProjectionType "keys_only"
$schema | New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, LastPostDateTime, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {LastPostIndex}
```

Example 3: This example shows how to use a single pipeline to create a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range) and a local secondary index. The Add-DDBKeySchema and Add-DDBIndexSchema create a new TableSchema object for you if one is not supplied from the pipeline or the -Schema parameter.

```
New-DDBTableSchema |
  Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S" |
  Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyDataType "S" |
  Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" `
                     -RangeKeyName "LastPostDateTime" `
                     -RangeKeyDataType "S" `
                     -ProjectionType "keys_only" |
  New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, LastPostDateTime, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {LastPostIndex}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a table for storing movie data.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
```

```
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
        The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
        title as the sort key.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to create.
        :return: The newly created table.
        """
        try:
            self.table = self.dyn_resource.create_table(
                TableName=table_name,
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "KeyType": "HASH"},  # Partition
key
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "KeyType": "RANGE"},  # Sort key
                ],
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "AttributeType": "N"},
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "AttributeType": "S"},
                ],
                BillingMode='PAY_PER_REQUEST',
            )
            self.table.wait_until_exists()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.table
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end

  # Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
  # The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
  # title as the sort key.
  #
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to create.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Table] The newly created table.
  def create_table(table_name)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.create_table(
```

```
      table_name: table_name,
      key_schema: [
        { attribute_name: 'year', key_type: 'HASH' }, # Partition key
        { attribute_name: 'title', key_type: 'RANGE' } # Sort key
      ],
      attribute_definitions: [
        { attribute_name: 'year', attribute_type: 'N' },
        { attribute_name: 'title', attribute_type: 'S' }
      ],
      billing_mode: 'PAY_PER_REQUEST'
    )
    @dynamo_resource.client.wait_until(:table_exists, table_name: table_name)
    @table
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed create table #{table_name}:\n#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_table(
    client: &Client,
    table: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<CreateTableOutput, Error> {
    let a_name: String = key.into();
    let table_name: String = table.into();

    let ad = AttributeDefinition::builder()
        .attribute_name(&a_name)
        .attribute_type(ScalarAttributeType::S)
```

```
        .build()
        .map_err(Error::BuildError)?;

    let ks = KeySchemaElement::builder()
        .attribute_name(&a_name)
        .key_type(KeyType::Hash)
        .build()
        .map_err(Error::BuildError)?;

    let create_table_response = client
        .create_table()
        .table_name(table_name)
        .key_schema(ks)
        .attribute_definitions(ad)
        .billing_mode(BillingMode::PayPerRequest)
        .send()
        .await;

    match create_table_response {
        Ok(out) => {
            println!("Added table {} with key {}", table, key);
            Ok(out)
        }
        Err(e) => {
            eprintln!("Got an error creating table:");
            eprintln!("{}", e);
            Err(Error::unhandled(e))
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lt_keyschema) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement=>tt_keyschema(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                              iv_keytype = 'HASH' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                              iv_keytype = 'RANGE' ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_attributedefinitions) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributedefn=>tt_attributedefinitions(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                           iv_attributetype = 'N' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                           iv_attributetype = 'S' ) ) ).

        " Adjust read/write capacities as desired.
        DATA(lo_dynprovthroughput)  = NEW /aws1/cl_dynprovthroughput(
          iv_readcapacityunits = 5
          iv_writecapacityunits = 5 ).
        oo_result = lo_dyn->createtable(
          it_keyschema = lt_keyschema
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_attributedefinitions = lt_attributedefinitions
          io_provisionedthroughput = lo_dynprovthroughput ).
        " Table creation can take some time. Wait till table exists before
 returning.
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tableexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name && 'created.' TYPE 'I'.
      " This exception can happen if the table already exists.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex INTO DATA(lo_resourceinuseex).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_code }" -
 { lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    ///
    /// Create a movie table in the Amazon DynamoDB data store.
    ///
    private func createTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = CreateTableInput(
                attributeDefinitions: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName:
 "year", attributeType: .n),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName:
 "title", attributeType: .s)
                ],
                billingMode: DynamoDBClientTypes.BillingMode.payPerRequest,
                keySchema: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "year",
 keyType: .hash),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "title",
 keyType: .range)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.createTable(input: input)
            if output.tableDescription == nil {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }
```

```
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Use conditional operations

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a single item from a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which the item
    /// will be deleted.</param>
    /// <param name="movieToDelete">A movie object containing the title and
    /// year of the movie to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
    /// delete operation.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DeleteItemAsync(
        string tableName,
        Movie movieToDelete)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = movieToDelete.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N =
movieToDelete.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new DeleteItemRequest { TableName = tableName, Key =
key, };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_item
#
# This function deletes an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_item() {
  local table_name keys response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_item"
    echo "Delete an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the
 item to delete."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "n:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
    k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
iecho "    keys:   $keys"
iecho ""

response=$(aws dynamodb delete-item \
  --table-name "$table_name" \
  --key file://"$keys")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-item operation failed.$response"
  return 1
fi

return 0
```

```
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
#############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
```

```
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an item from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa deleteItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemRequest request;

    request.AddKey(partitionKey,
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(partitionValue));
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.DeleteItem(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Item \"" << partitionValue << "\" deleted!" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete item: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {
```

```
    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To delete an item

The following `delete-item` example deletes an item from the `MusicCollection` table and requests details about the item that was deleted and the capacity used by the request.

```
aws dynamodb delete-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --key file://key.json \
    --return-values ALL_OLD \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL \
    --return-item-collection-metrics SIZE
```

Contents of `key.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Scared of My Shadow"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Attributes": {
        "AlbumTitle": {
            "S": "Blue Sky Blues"
        },
        "Artist": {
            "S": "No One You Know"
        },
        "SongTitle": {
            "S": "Scared of My Shadow"
        }
    },
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 2.0
    },
    "ItemCollectionMetrics": {
        "ItemCollectionKey": {
            "Artist": {
                "S": "No One You Know"
            }
        },
        "SizeEstimateRangeGB": [
            0.0,
            1.0
        ]
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Writing an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To delete an item conditionally

The following example deletes an item from the `ProductCatalog` table only if its `ProductCategory` is either `Sporting Goods` or `Gardening Supplies` and its price is between 500 and 600. It returns details about the item that was deleted.

```
aws dynamodb delete-item \
    --table-name ProductCatalog \
    --key '{"Id":{"N":"456"}}' \
    --condition-expression "(ProductCategory IN (:cat1, :cat2)) and (#P
 between :lo and :hi)" \
    --expression-attribute-names file://names.json \
    --expression-attribute-values file://values.json \
    --return-values ALL_OLD
```

Contents of `names.json`:

```
{
    "#P": "Price"
}
```

Contents of `values.json`:

```
{
    ":cat1": {"S": "Sporting Goods"},
    ":cat2": {"S": "Gardening Supplies"},
    ":lo": {"N": "500"},
    ":hi": {"N": "600"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Attributes": {
        "Id": {
            "N": "456"
        },
```

```
        "Price": {
            "N": "550"
        },
        "ProductCategory": {
            "S": "Sporting Goods"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Writing an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
```

```
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// DeleteMovie removes a movie from the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Key: movie.GetKey(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
```

```
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyval>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to delete the item from
 (for example, Music3).
                    key - The key used in the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
 Artist).\s
                    keyval - The key value that represents the item to delete
 (for example, Famous Band).
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String keyVal = args[2];
        System.out.format("Deleting item \"%s\" from %s\n", keyVal, tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteDynamoDBItem(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal);
```

```
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBItem(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName,
 String key, String keyVal) {
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put(key, AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(keyVal)
                .build());

        DeleteItemRequest deleteReq = DeleteItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(keyToGet)
                .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteItem(deleteReq);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see DeleteCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, DeleteCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
```

```
const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteCommand({
    TableName: "Sodas",
    Key: {
      Flavor: "Cola",
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an item from a table.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "TABLE",
  Key: {
```

```
    KEY_NAME: { N: "VALUE" },
  },
};

// Call DynamoDB to delete the item from the table
ddb.deleteItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

Delete an item from a table using the DynamoDB document client.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  Key: {
    HASH_KEY: VALUE,
  },
  TableName: "TABLE",
};

docClient.delete(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDynamoDBItem(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)

    val request =
        DeleteItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            key = keyToGet
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteItem(request)
        println("Item with key matching $keyVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
                'year' => [
                    'N' => $movieYear,
                ],
            ]
        ];

        $service->deleteItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
because of your rating...harsh.\n";

    public function deleteItemByKey(string $tableName, array $key)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->deleteItem([
            'Key' => $key['Item'],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Removes the DynamoDB item that matches the provided key.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
Remove-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key -Confirm:$false
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Removes the DynamoDB item that matches the provided key.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
Remove-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key -Confirm:$false
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
```

```
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def delete_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Deletes a movie from the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to delete.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

You can specify a condition so that an item is deleted only when it meets certain criteria.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def delete_underrated_movie(self, title, year, rating):
        """
        Deletes a movie only if it is rated below a specified value. By using a
        condition expression in a delete operation, you can specify that an item
 is
        deleted only when it meets certain criteria.

        :param title: The title of the movie to delete.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to delete.
        :param rating: The rating threshold to check before deleting the movie.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                ConditionExpression="info.rating <= :val",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":val": Decimal(str(rating))},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
 "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Didn't delete %s because its rating is greater than %s.",
                    title,
                    rating,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't delete movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    title,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Deletes a movie from the table.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to delete.
  # @param year [Integer] The release year of the movie to delete.
  def delete_item(title, year)
    @table.delete_item(key: { 'year' => year, 'title' => title })
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't delete movie #{title}. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_item(
    client: &Client,
    table: &str,
    key: &str,
    value: &str,
) -> Result<DeleteItemOutput, Error> {
    match client
        .delete_item()
        .table_name(table)
        .key(key, AttributeValue::S(value.into()))
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(out) => {
            println!("Deleted item from table");
            Ok(out)
        }
        Err(e) => Err(Error::unhandled(e)),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp) = lo_dyn->deleteitem(
          iv_tablename                = iv_table_name
          it_key                      = it_key_input ).
        MESSAGE 'Deleted one item.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB
```

```
    /// Delete a movie, given its title and release year.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title.
    ///   - year: The movie's release year.
    ///
    func delete(title: String, year: Int) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: delete:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteTable` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Accelerate reads with DAX
- Create and manage MRSC global tables
- Manage Global Secondary Indexes
- Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteTableAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Table {response.TableDescription.TableName}
 successfully deleted.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found and cannot be
 deleted. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
 table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
```

```
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting table
 {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_table
#
# This function deletes a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
################################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_table() {
  local table_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
```

```
  echo "function dynamodb_delete_table"
  echo "Deletes an Amazon DynamoDB table."
  echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
iecho ""

response=$(aws dynamodb delete-table \
  --table-name "$table_name")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-table operation failed.$response"
  return 1
fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
#############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
```

```
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa deleteTable()
  \param tableName: The DynamoDB table name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a table

The following `delete-table` example deletes the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb delete-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "TableStatus": "DELETING",
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
```

```
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 5
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting a Table in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
```

```
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// DeleteTable deletes the DynamoDB table and all of its data.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteTable(ctx context.Context) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteTable(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteTableInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteTableRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DeleteTable {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to delete (for example,
 Music3).

                **Warning** This program will delete the table that you specify!
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table %s...\n",
 tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName)
 {
        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteTableCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteTableCommand({
    TableName: "DecafCoffees",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: process.argv[2],
};

// Call DynamoDB to delete the specified table
ddb.deleteTable(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err && err.code === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
    console.log("Error: Table not found");
  } else if (err && err.code === "ResourceInUseException") {
    console.log("Error: Table in use");
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDynamoDBTable(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function deleteTable(string $TableName)
    {
        $this->customWaiter(function () use ($TableName) {
            return $this->dynamoDbClient->deleteTable([
                'TableName' => $TableName,
```

```
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-DDBTable -TableName "myTable"
```

Example 2: Deletes the specified table. You are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-DDBTable -TableName "myTable" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-DDBTable -TableName "myTable"
```

Example 2: Deletes the specified table. You are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-DDBTable -TableName "myTable" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None
```

```
    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete()
            self.table = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end
```

```
  # Deletes the table.
  def delete_table
    @table.delete
    @table = nil
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't delete table. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_table(client: &Client, table: &str) ->
 Result<DeleteTableOutput, Error> {
    let resp = client.delete_table().table_name(table).send().await;

    match resp {
        Ok(out) => {
            println!("Deleted table");
            Ok(out)
        }
        Err(e) => Err(Error::Unhandled(e.into())),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_dyn->deletetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        " Wait till the table is actually deleted.
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tablenotexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Table ' && iv_table_name && ' deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table ' && iv_table_name && ' does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The table cannot be deleted since it is in use' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    ///
```

```
    /// Deletes the table from Amazon DynamoDB.
    ///
    func deleteTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteTableInput(
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteTable(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeTable` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create and manage global tables demonstrating MREC
- Create and manage MRSC global tables
- Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)
- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live
- Work with table encryption

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
private static async Task GetTableInformation()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\n*** Retrieving table information ***");

    var response = await Client.DescribeTableAsync(new DescribeTableRequest
    {
        TableName = ExampleTableName
    });

    var table = response.Table;
    Console.WriteLine($"Name: {table.TableName}");
    Console.WriteLine($"# of items: {table.ItemCount}");

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_describe_table
```

```
#
# This function returns the status of a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#
#  Response:
#       - TableStatus:
#     And:
#       0 - Table is active.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_describe_table {
  local table_name
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_describe_table"
    echo "Describe the status of a DynamoDB table."
    echo "  -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local table_status
    table_status=$(
      aws dynamodb describe-table \
        --table-name "$table_name" \
        --output text \
        --query 'Table.TableStatus'
    )

   local error_code=${?}

    if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log "$error_code"
      errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-table operation failed.$table_status"
      return 1
    fi

  echo "$table_status"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa describeTable()
  \param tableName: The DynamoDB table name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::describeTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableDescription &td =
 outcome.GetResult().GetTable();
        std::cout << "Table name  : " << td.GetTableName() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Table ARN   : " << td.GetTableArn() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Status      : "
                  <<
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatusMapper::GetNameForTableStatus(
                          td.GetTableStatus()) << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Item count  : " << td.GetItemCount() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Size (bytes): " << td.GetTableSizeBytes() << std::endl;
```

```
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughputDescription &ptd =
 td.GetProvisionedThroughput();
        std::cout << "Throughput" << std::endl;
        std::cout << "  Read Capacity : " << ptd.GetReadCapacityUnits() <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "  Write Capacity: " << ptd.GetWriteCapacityUnits() <<
 std::endl;

        const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition> &ad =
 td.GetAttributeDefinitions();
        std::cout << "Attributes" << std::endl;
        for (const auto &a: ad)
            std::cout << "  " << a.GetAttributeName() << " (" <<

 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeTypeMapper::GetNameForScalarAttributeType(
                              a.GetAttributeType()) <<
                      ")" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe table: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a table

The following `describe-table` example describes the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Table": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 5,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 5
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 0,
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "TableStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "KeyType": "HASH",
                "AttributeName": "Artist"
            },
            {
                "KeyType": "RANGE",
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle"
            }
        ],
        "ItemCount": 0,
        "CreationDateTime": 1421866952.062
    }
}
```

For more information, see Describing a Table in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// TableExists determines whether a DynamoDB table exists.
func (basics TableBasics) TableExists(ctx context.Context) (bool, error) {
 exists := true
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DescribeTable(
  ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
```

```
  var notFoundEx *types.ResourceNotFoundException
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundEx) {
   log.Printf("Table %v does not exist.\n", basics.TableName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't determine existence of table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  }
  exists = false
 }
 return exists, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.TableDescription;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeTable {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to get information
 about (for example, Music3).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Getting description for %s\n\n", tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeDymamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void describeDymamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String
 tableName) {
        DescribeTableRequest request = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

        try {
            TableDescription tableInfo = ddb.describeTable(request).table();
            if (tableInfo != null) {
                System.out.format("Table name  : %s\n", tableInfo.tableName());
                System.out.format("Table ARN   : %s\n", tableInfo.tableArn());
                System.out.format("Status      : %s\n", tableInfo.tableStatus());
```

```
                System.out.format("Item count  : %d\n", tableInfo.itemCount());
                System.out.format("Size (bytes): %d\n",
 tableInfo.tableSizeBytes());

                ProvisionedThroughputDescription throughputInfo =
 tableInfo.provisionedThroughput();
                System.out.println("Throughput");
                System.out.format("  Read Capacity : %d\n",
 throughputInfo.readCapacityUnits());
                System.out.format("  Write Capacity: %d\n",
 throughputInfo.writeCapacityUnits());

                List<AttributeDefinition> attributes =
 tableInfo.attributeDefinitions();
                System.out.println("Attributes");
                for (AttributeDefinition a : attributes) {
                    System.out.format("  %s (%s)\n", a.attributeName(),
 a.attributeType());
                }
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeTableCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeTableCommand({
    TableName: "Pastries",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(`TABLE NAME: ${response.Table.TableName}`);
  console.log(`TABLE ITEM COUNT: ${response.Table.ItemCount}`);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: process.argv[2],
};

// Call DynamoDB to retrieve the selected table descriptions
ddb.describeTable(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
```

```
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Table.KeySchema);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of the specified table.

```
Get-DDBTable -TableName "myTable"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified table.

```
Get-DDBTable -TableName "myTable"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
```

```
    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def exists(self, table_name):
        """
        Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
        a member variable.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to check.
        :return: True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            table = self.dyn_resource.Table(table_name)
            table.load()
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't check for existence of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            self.table = table
        return exists
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end

  # Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
```

```
# a member variable.
#
# @param table_name [String] The name of the table to check.
# @return [Boolean] True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
def exists?(table_name)
  @dynamo_resource.client.describe_table(table_name: table_name)
  @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} exists")
rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ResourceNotFoundException
  @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} doesn't exist")
  false
rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts("Couldn't check for existence of #{table_name}:\n")
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    oo_result = lo_dyn->describetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
    DATA(lv_tablename) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_tablename( ).
    DATA(lv_tablearn) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_tablearn( ).
    DATA(lv_tablestatus) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_tablestatus( ).
    DATA(lv_itemcount) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_itemcount( ).
    MESSAGE 'The table name is ' && lv_tablename
        && '. The table ARN is ' && lv_tablearn
        && '. The tablestatus is ' && lv_tablestatus
        && '. Item count is ' && lv_itemcount TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
    MESSAGE 'The table ' && lv_tablename && ' does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DescribeTimeToLive` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTimeToLive`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

CLI

AWS CLI

To view Time to Live settings for a table

The following `describe-time-to-live` example displays Time to Live settings for the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb describe-time-to-live \
    --table-name MusicCollection
```

Output:

```
{
    "TimeToLiveDescription": {
        "TimeToLiveStatus": "ENABLED",
        "AttributeName": "ttl"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Time to Live in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Describe TTL configuration on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTimeToLiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTimeToLiveResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public DescribeTimeToLiveResponse describeTTL(final String tableName, final
 Region region) {
        final DescribeTimeToLiveRequest request =
            DescribeTimeToLiveRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            return ddb.describeTimeToLive(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Describe TTL configuration on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, DescribeTimeToLiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
dynamodb";

export const describeTTL = async (tableName, region) => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    try {
        const ttlDescription = await client.send(new
 DescribeTimeToLiveCommand({ TableName: tableName }));

        if (ttlDescription.TimeToLiveDescription.TimeToLiveStatus === 'ENABLED')
 {
            console.log("TTL is enabled for table %s.", tableName);
        } else {
            console.log("TTL is not enabled for table %s.", tableName);
        }

        return ttlDescription;
    } catch (e) {
        console.error(`Error describing table: ${e}`);
        throw e;
    }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// describeTTL('your-table-name', 'us-east-1');
```

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Describe TTL configuration on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
```

```
def describe_ttl(table_name, region):
    """
    Describes TTL on an existing table, as well as a region.

    :param table_name: String representing the name of the table
    :param region: AWS Region of the table - example `us-east-1`
    :return: Time to live description.
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        ttl_description = dynamodb.describe_time_to_live(TableName=table_name)
        print(
            f"TimeToLive for table {table_name} is status
 {ttl_description['TimeToLiveDescription']['TimeToLiveStatus']}"
        )

        return ttl_description
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error describing table: {e}")
        raise


# Enter your own table name and AWS region
describe_ttl("your-table-name", "us-east-1")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExecuteStatement` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Delete data using PartiQL DELETE
- Insert data using PartiQL INSERT
- Query a table using PartiQL
- Query data using PartiQL SELECT
- Update data using PartiQL UPDATE

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get a list of items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve multiple movies by year using a SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movies were released.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetMovies(string tableName, int year)
```

```
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE year = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
= ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
```

```
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete a single movie.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    // 2. Add a new movie using an "Insert" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    Aws::String title;
    float rating;
    int year;
    Aws::String plot;
    {
        title = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        year = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange("On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate
it? ",
                                          1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        // Create the parameter attributes.
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
```

```
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        ratingAttribute->SetN(rating);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        plotAttribute->SetS(plot);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
        attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add a movie: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
    //  3. Get the data for the movie using a "Select" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
```

```
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            // Print the retrieved movie information.
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetItems();

            if (items.size() == 1) {
                printMovieInfo(items[0]);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: " << items.size() << " movies were
retrieved. "
                          << " There should be only one movie." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
    //  4. Update the data for the movie using an "Update" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it  ") +
                std::to_string(rating)
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
```

```
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                  << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(rating));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update a movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete an item.

```
    // 6. Delete the movie using a "Delete" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);
```

```
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
 dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a function receiver struct for the example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
```

```
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}
```

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
// AddMovie runs a PartiQL INSERT statement to add a movie to the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year,
 movie.Info})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert an item with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
// GetMovie runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get a movie from the DynamoDB
 table by
// title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 var movie Movie
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{title, year})
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 response, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Items[0], &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}
```

Use a SELECT statement to get a list of items and project the results.

```
// GetAllMovies runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get all movies from the
 DynamoDB table.
// pageSize is not typically required and is used to show how to paginate the
 results.
// The results are projected to return only the title and rating of each movie.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetAllMovies(ctx context.Context, pageSize int32)
 ([]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var output []map[string]interface{}
 var response *dynamodb.ExecuteStatementOutput
 var err error
 var nextToken *string
 for moreData := true; moreData; {
  response, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT title, info.rating FROM \"%v\"", runner.TableName)),
   Limit:     aws.Int32(pageSize),
   NextToken: nextToken,
```

```
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   moreData = false
  } else {
   var pageOutput []map[string]interface{}
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &pageOutput)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Got a page of length %v.\n", len(response.Items))
    output = append(output, pageOutput...)
   }
   nextToken = response.NextToken
   moreData = nextToken != nil
  }
 }
 return output, err
}
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
// UpdateMovie runs a PartiQL UPDATE statement to update the rating of a movie
 that
// already exists in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie, rating
 float64) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{rating, movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete an item.

```
// DeleteMovie runs a PartiQL DELETE statement to remove a movie from the
 DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
```

```
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: `INSERT INTO Flowers value {'Name':?}`,
    Parameters: ["Rose"],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Get an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
```

```
const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: "SELECT * FROM CloudTypes WHERE IsStorm=?",
    Parameters: [false],
    ConsistentRead: true,
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Update an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: "UPDATE EyeColors SET IsRecessive=? where Color=?",
    Parameters: [true, "blue"],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Delete an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: "DELETE FROM PaintColors where Name=?",
    Parameters: ["Purple"],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function insertItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => "$statement",
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }
```

```
    public function getItemByPartiQL(string $tableName, array $key): Result
    {
        list($statement, $parameters) = $this-
>buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT", $tableName, $key['Item']);

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
            'Statement' => $statement,
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PartiQLWrapper:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statement, params):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because
the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects
(POPOs) to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statement: The PartiQL statement.
        :param params: The list of PartiQL parameters. These are applied to the
                       statement in the order they are listed.
        :return: The items returned from the statement, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.execute_statement(
                Statement=statement, Parameters=params
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s' because the table does not
exist.",
                    statement,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s'. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    statement,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Select a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Gets a single record from a table using PartiQL.
  # Note: To perform more fine-grained selects,
  # use the Client.query instance method instead.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to search.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def select_item_by_title(title)
    request = {
      statement: "SELECT * FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=?",
      parameters: [title]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
```

```
  end
```

Update a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Updates a single record from a table using PartiQL.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to update.
  # @param year [Integer] The year the movie was released.
  # @param rating [Float] The new rating to assign the title.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def update_rating_by_title(title, year, rating)
    request = {
      statement: "UPDATE \"#{@table.name}\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? and
 year=?",
      parameters: [{ "N": rating }, title, year]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

Add a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Adds a single record to a table using PartiQL.
  #
```

```
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to update.
  # @param year [Integer] The year the movie was released.
  # @param plot [String] The plot of the movie.
  # @param rating [Float] The new rating to assign the title.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def insert_item(title, year, plot, rating)
    request = {
      statement: "INSERT INTO \"#{@table.name}\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?,
 'info': ?}",
      parameters: [title, year, { 'plot': plot, 'rating': rating }]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

Delete a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Deletes a single record from a table using PartiQL.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to update.
  # @param year [Integer] The year the movie was released.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def delete_item_by_title(title, year)
    request = {
      statement: "DELETE FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=? and year=?",
      parameters: [title, year]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `GetItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Accelerate reads with DAX
- Create and manage MRSC global tables
- Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about an existing movie from the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information about
    /// the movie to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the movie.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Dictionary object containing information about the item
    /// retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>> GetItemAsync(Movie
 newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
```

```
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new GetItemRequest
            {
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.GetItemAsync(request);
            return response.Item;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>();
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while getting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while getting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_get_item
#
# This function gets an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to get.
#       [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The item as text output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###########################################################################
function dynamodb_get_item() {
  local table_name keys query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_get_item"
    echo "Get an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the
 item to get."
    echo " [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression."
    echo ""
```

```
}
query=""
while getopts "n:k:q:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
    q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
  response=$(aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys" \
    --output text \
    --query "$query")
else
  response=$(
    aws dynamodb get-item \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key file://"$keys" \
      --output text
```

```
    )
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports get-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    echo "$response" | sed "/^\t/s/\t//1" # Remove initial tab that the JMSEPath
 query inserts on some strings.
  else
    echo "$response"
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
```

```
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get an item from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
```

```
  \sa getItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::getItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                               const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                               const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemRequest request;

    // Set up the request.
    request.SetTableName(tableName);
    request.AddKey(partitionKey,
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(partitionValue));

    // Retrieve the item's fields and values.
    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.GetItem(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        // Reference the retrieved fields/values.
        const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &item =
 outcome.GetResult().GetItem();
        if (!item.empty()) {
            // Output each retrieved field and its value.
            for (const auto &i: item)
                std::cout << "Values: " << i.first << ": " << i.second.GetS()
                          << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "No item found with the key " << partitionKey <<
 std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get item: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To read an item in a table

The following `get-item` example retrieves an item from the `MusicCollection` table. The table has a hash-and-range primary key (`Artist` and `SongTitle`), so you must specify both of these attributes. The command also requests information about the read capacity consumed by the operation.

```
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --key file://key.json \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL
```

Contents of `key.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "Acme Band"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Happy Day"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Item": {
        "AlbumTitle": {
            "S": "Songs About Life"
        },
        "SongTitle": {
            "S": "Happy Day"
        },
        "Artist": {
            "S": "Acme Band"
        }
```

```
    },
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 0.5
    }
}
```

For more information, see Reading an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To read an item using a consistent read

The following example retrieves an item from the `MusicCollection` table using strongly consistent reads.

```
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --key file://key.json \
    --consistent-read \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL
```

Contents of `key.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "Acme Band"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Happy Day"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Item": {
        "AlbumTitle": {
            "S": "Songs About Life"
        },
        "SongTitle": {
            "S": "Happy Day"
        },
        "Artist": {
            "S": "Acme Band"
        }
    },
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
```

```
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 1.0
    }
}
```

For more information, see Reading an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To retrieve specific attributes of an item

The following example uses a projection expression to retrieve only three attributes of the desired item.

```
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name ProductCatalog \
    --key '{"Id": {"N": "102"}}' \
    --projection-expression "#T, #C, #P" \
    --expression-attribute-names file://names.json
```

Contents of `names.json`:

```
{
    "#T": "Title",
    "#C": "ProductCategory",
    "#P": "Price"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Item": {
        "Price": {
            "N": "20"
        },
        "Title": {
            "S": "Book 102 Title"
        },
        "ProductCategory": {
            "S": "Book"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Reading an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// GetMovie gets movie data from the DynamoDB table by using the primary
 composite key
// made of title and year.
```

```
func (basics TableBasics) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 movie := Movie{Title: title, Year: year}
 response, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key: movie.GetKey(), TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
```

```
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Gets an item from a table by using the DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Set;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To get an item from an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client, see the EnhancedGetItem example.
 */
public class GetItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyVal>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table from which an item is
 retrieved (for example, Music3).\s
                    key - The key used in the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
 Artist).\s
                    keyval - The key value that represents the item to get (for
 example, Famous Band).
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String keyVal = args[2];
```

```
        System.out.format("Retrieving item \"%s\" from \"%s\"\n", keyVal,
 tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getDynamoDBItem(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void getDynamoDBItem(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName,
 String key, String keyVal) {
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put(key, AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(keyVal)
                .build());

        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
                .key(keyToGet)
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

        try {
            // If there is no matching item, GetItem does not return any data.
            Map<String, AttributeValue> returnedItem =
 ddb.getItem(request).item();
            if (returnedItem.isEmpty())
                System.out.format("No item found with the key %s!\n", key);
            else {
                Set<String> keys = returnedItem.keySet();
                System.out.println("Amazon DynamoDB table attributes: \n");
                for (String key1 : keys) {
                    System.out.format("%s: %s\n", key1,
 returnedItem.get(key1).toString());
                }
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see GetCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, GetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new GetCommand({
    TableName: "AngryAnimals",
    Key: {
      CommonName: "Shoebill",
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an item from a table.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "TABLE",
  Key: {
    KEY_NAME: { N: "001" },
  },
  ProjectionExpression: "ATTRIBUTE_NAME",
};

// Call DynamoDB to read the item from the table
ddb.getItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Item);
  }
});
```

Get an item from a table using the DynamoDB document client.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "EPISODES_TABLE",
  Key: { KEY_NAME: VALUE },
};

docClient.get(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Item);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificItem(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)

    val request =
        GetItemRequest {
```

```
            key = keyToGet
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request)
        val numbersMap = returnedItem.item
        numbersMap?.forEach { key1 ->
            println(key1.key)
            println(key1.value)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $movie = $service->getItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Item']['title']['S']} was released in
{$movie['Item']['year']['N']}.\n";

    public function getItemByKey(string $tableName, array $key)
    {
        return $this->dynamoDbClient->getItem([
            'Key' => $key['Item'],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the DynamoDB item with the partition key SongTitle and the sort key Artist.

```
$key = @{
  SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
  Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

Get-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
Price                          1.94
Artist                         No One You Know
CriticRating                   9
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the DynamoDB item with the partition key SongTitle and the sort key Artist.

```
$key = @{
  SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
  Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

Get-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                            Value
----                            -----
Genre                           Country
SongTitle                       Somewhere Down The Road
Price                           1.94
Artist                          No One You Know
CriticRating                    9
AlbumTitle                      Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
```

```
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def get_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Gets movie data from the table for a specific movie.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :return: The data about the requested movie.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.get_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get movie %s from table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Item"]
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Gets movie data from the table for a specific movie.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie.
  # @param year [Integer] The release year of the movie.
  # @return [Hash] The data about the requested movie.
  def get_item(title, year)
    @table.get_item(key: { 'year' => year, 'title' => title })
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't get movie #{title} (#{year}) from table #{@table.name}:\n")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_item = lo_dyn->getitem(
          iv_tablename                = iv_table_name
          it_key                      = it_key ).
        DATA(lt_attr) = oo_item->get_item( ).
        DATA(lo_title) = lt_attr[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        DATA(lo_year) = lt_attr[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        DATA(lo_rating) = lt_attr[ key = 'rating' ]-value.
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( )
          && 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( )
          && 'Moving rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB
```

```
    /// Return a `Movie` record describing the specified movie from the Amazon
    /// DynamoDB table.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The movie's release year (`Int`).
    ///
    /// - Throws: `MoviesError.ItemNotFound` if the movie isn't in the table.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `Movie` record with the movie's details.
    func get(title: String, year: Int) async throws -> Movie {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = GetItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.getItem(input: input)
            guard let item = output.item else {
                throw MoviesError.ItemNotFound
            }

            let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
            return movie
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: get:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListTables` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTables`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Set up Attribute-Based Access Control

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
private static async Task ListMyTables()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\n*** Listing tables ***");

    string lastTableNameEvaluated = null;
    do
    {
        var response = await Client.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
        {
            Limit = 2,
            ExclusiveStartTableName = lastTableNameEvaluated
        });

        foreach (var name in response.TableNames)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(name);
        }

        lastTableNameEvaluated = response.LastEvaluatedTableName;
    } while (lastTableNameEvaluated != null);
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_list_tables
#
# This function lists all the tables in a DynamoDB.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#############################################################################
function dynamodb_list_tables() {
  response=$(aws dynamodb list-tables \
    --output text \
    --query "TableNames")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-write-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response" | tr -s "[:space:]" "\n"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the Amazon DynamoDB tables for the current AWS account.
/*!
  \sa listTables()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::listTables(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesRequest listTablesRequest;
    listTablesRequest.SetLimit(50);
    do {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.ListTables(
                listTablesRequest);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        for (const auto &tableName: outcome.GetResult().GetTableNames())
            std::cout << tableName << std::endl;
        listTablesRequest.SetExclusiveStartTableName(
```

```
                outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedTableName());

    } while (!listTablesRequest.GetExclusiveStartTableName().empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list tables

The following `list-tables` example lists all of the tables associated with the current AWS account and Region.

```
aws dynamodb list-tables
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableNames": [
        "Forum",
        "ProductCatalog",
        "Reply",
        "Thread"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing Table Names in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To limit page size

The following example returns a list of all existing tables, but retrieves only one item in each call, performing multiple calls if necessary to get the entire list. Limiting the page size is useful when running list commands on a large number of resources, which can result in a "timed out" error when using the default page size of 1000.

```
aws dynamodb list-tables \
```

```
    --page-size 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableNames": [
        "Forum",
        "ProductCatalog",
        "Reply",
        "Thread"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing Table Names in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To limit the number of items returned

The following example limits the number of items returned to 2. The response includes a `NextToken` value with which to retrieve the next page of results.

```
aws dynamodb list-tables \
    --max-items 2
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableNames": [
        "Forum",
        "ProductCatalog"
    ],
    "NextToken":
 "abCDeFGhiJKlmnOPqrSTuvwxYZ1aBCdEFghijK7LM51nOpqRSTuv3WxY3ZabC5dEFGhI2Jk3LmnoPQ6RST9"
}
```

For more information, see Listing Table Names in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To retrieve the next page of results

The following command uses the `NextToken` value from a previous call to the `list-tables` command to retrieve another page of results. Since the response in this case does not include a `NextToken` value, we know that we have reached the end of the results.

```
aws dynamodb list-tables \
    --starting-
token abCDeFGhiJKlmnOPqrSTuvwxYZ1aBCdEFghijK7LM51nOpqRSTuv3WxY3ZabC5dEFGhI2Jk3LmnoPQ6RST9
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableNames": [
        "Reply",
        "Thread"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing Table Names in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)
```

```
// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// ListTables lists the DynamoDB table names for the current account.
func (basics TableBasics) ListTables(ctx context.Context) ([]string, error) {
 var tableNames []string
 var output *dynamodb.ListTablesOutput
 var err error
 tablePaginator := dynamodb.NewListTablesPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ListTablesInput{})
 for tablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = tablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   tableNames = append(tableNames, output.TableNames...)
  }
 }
 return tableNames, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListTables {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Listing your Amazon DynamoDB tables:\n");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listAllTables(ddb);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void listAllTables(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        boolean moreTables = true;
        String lastName = null;

        while (moreTables) {
            try {
                ListTablesResponse response = null;
                if (lastName == null) {
                    ListTablesRequest request =
 ListTablesRequest.builder().build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                } else {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                            .exclusiveStartTableName(lastName).build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                }
```

```
                List<String> tableNames = response.tableNames();
                if (tableNames.size() > 0) {
                    for (String curName : tableNames) {
                        System.out.format("* %s\n", curName);
                    }
                } else {
                    System.out.println("No tables found!");
                    System.exit(0);
                }

                lastName = response.lastEvaluatedTableName();
                if (lastName == null) {
                    moreTables = false;
                }

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListTablesCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListTablesCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

// Call DynamoDB to retrieve the list of tables
ddb.listTables({ Limit: 10 }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err.code);
  } else {
    console.log("Table names are ", data.TableNames);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllTables() {
    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.listTables(ListTablesRequest {})
        response.tableNames?.forEach { tableName ->
            println("Table name is $tableName")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function listTables($exclusiveStartTableName = "", $limit = 100)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->listTables([
            'ExclusiveStartTableName' => $exclusiveStartTableName,
            'Limit' => $limit,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of all tables, automatically iterating until the service indicates no further tables exist.

```
Get-DDBTableList
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of all tables, automatically iterating until the service indicates no further tables exist.

```
Get-DDBTableList
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
```

```
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the Amazon DynamoDB tables for the current account.

        :return: The list of tables.
        """
        try:
            tables = []
            for table in self.dyn_resource.tables.all():
                print(table.name)
                tables.append(table)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tables
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Determine whether a table exists.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end

  # Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
  # a member variable.
  #
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to check.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
  def exists?(table_name)
    @dynamo_resource.client.describe_table(table_name: table_name)
    @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} exists")
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ResourceNotFoundException
    @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} doesn't exist")
    false
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
```

```
    puts("Couldn't check for existence of #{table_name}:\n")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_tables(client: &Client) -> Result<Vec<String>, Error> {
    let paginator = client.list_tables().into_paginator().items().send();
    let table_names = paginator.collect::<Result<Vec<_>, _>>().await?;

    println!("Tables:");

    for name in &table_names {
        println!("  {}", name);
    }

    println!("Found {} tables", table_names.len());
    Ok(table_names)
}
```

Determine whether table exists.

```
pub async fn table_exists(client: &Client, table: &str) -> Result<bool, Error> {
    debug!("Checking for table: {table}");
    let table_list = client.list_tables().send().await;

    match table_list {
        Ok(list) => Ok(list.table_names().contains(&table.into())),
```

```
        Err(e) => Err(e.into()),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_dyn->listtables( ).
        " You can loop over the oo_result to get table properties like this.
        LOOP AT oo_result->get_tablenames( ) INTO DATA(lo_table_name).
          DATA(lv_tablename) = lo_table_name->get_value( ).
        ENDLOOP.
        DATA(lv_tablecount) = lines( oo_result->get_tablenames( ) ).
        MESSAGE 'Found ' && lv_tablecount && ' tables' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Get a list of the DynamoDB tables available in the specified Region.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings listing all of the tables available
    ///   in the Region specified when the session was created.
    public func getTableList() async throws -> [String] {
        let input = ListTablesInput(
        )
        return try await session.listTables(input: input)
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `PutItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Accelerate reads with DAX
- Advanced Global Secondary Index scenarios
- Create an item with a TTL
- Create and manage global tables demonstrating MREC
- Create and manage MRSC global tables

- Use conditional operations
- Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)
- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Adds a new item to the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing informtation for
    /// the movie to add to the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the item will be
 added.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the results of adding the item.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutItemAsync(Movie newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var item = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new PutItemRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                Item = item,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.PutItemAsync(request);
```

```
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while putting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while putting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_put_item
#
# This function puts an item into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
```

```
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_put_item() {
  local table_name item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_put_item"
    echo "Put an item into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    item:   $item"
  iecho ""
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --item file://"$item")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Put an item in an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa putItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param artistKey: The artist key. This is the partition key for the table.
  \param artistValue: The artist value.
  \param albumTitleKey: The album title key.
  \param albumTitleValue: The album title value.
  \param awardsKey: The awards key.
  \param awardsValue: The awards value.
  \param songTitleKey: The song title key.
  \param songTitleValue: The song title value.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::putItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                               const Aws::String &artistKey,
                               const Aws::String &artistValue,
                               const Aws::String &albumTitleKey,
                               const Aws::String &albumTitleValue,
                               const Aws::String &awardsKey,
                               const Aws::String &awardsValue,
                               const Aws::String &songTitleKey,
                               const Aws::String &songTitleValue,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemRequest putItemRequest;
    putItemRequest.SetTableName(tableName);

    putItemRequest.AddItem(artistKey,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(
            artistValue)); // This is the hash key.
    putItemRequest.AddItem(albumTitleKey,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(
            albumTitleValue));
    putItemRequest.AddItem(awardsKey,

 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(awardsValue));
    putItemRequest.AddItem(songTitleKey,

 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(songTitleValue));

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemOutcome outcome = dynamoClient.PutItem(
            putItemRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully added Item!" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
```

```
                                        const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add an item to a table

The following `put-item` example adds a new item to the *MusicCollection* table.

```
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --item file://item.json \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL \
    --return-item-collection-metrics SIZE
```

Contents of `item.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Call Me Today"},
    "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Greatest Hits"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 1.0
    },
    "ItemCollectionMetrics": {
        "ItemCollectionKey": {
            "Artist": {
                "S": "No One You Know"
            }
        },
        "SizeEstimateRangeGB": [
            0.0,
            1.0
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Writing an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To conditionally overwrite an item in a table

The following `put-item` example overwrites an existing item in the `MusicCollection` table only if that existing item has an `AlbumTitle` attribute with a value of `Greatest Hits`. The command returns the previous value of the item.

```
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --item file://item.json \
    --condition-expression "#A = :A" \
    --expression-attribute-names file://names.json \
    --expression-attribute-values file://values.json \
    --return-values ALL_OLD
```

Contents of `item.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "No One You Know"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Call Me Today"},
    "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Somewhat Famous"}
}
```

Contents of `names.json`:

```
{
    "#A": "AlbumTitle"
}
```

Contents of `values.json`:

```
{
    ":A": {"S": "Greatest Hits"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Attributes": {
        "AlbumTitle": {
            "S": "Greatest Hits"
        },
        "Artist": {
```

```
            "S": "No One You Know"
        },
        "SongTitle": {
            "S": "Call Me Today"
        }
    }
}
```

If the key already exists, you should see the following output:

```
A client error (ConditionalCheckFailedException) occurred when calling the
 PutItem operation: The conditional request failed.
```

For more information, see Writing an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)
```

```
// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovie adds a movie the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 item, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Item: item,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't add item to table. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)
```

```
// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Puts an item into a table using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To place items into an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client. See the EnhancedPutItem example.
 */
public class PutItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyVal> <albumtitle> <albumtitleval>
 <awards> <awardsval> <Songtitle> <songtitleval>

                Where:
```

```
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table in which an item is
placed (for example, Music3).
                    key - The key used in the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
Artist).
                    keyval - The key value that represents the item to get (for
example, Famous Band).
                    albumTitle - The Album title (for example, AlbumTitle).
                    AlbumTitleValue - The name of the album (for example, Songs
About Life ).
                    Awards - The awards column (for example, Awards).
                    AwardVal - The value of the awards (for example, 10).
                    SongTitle - The song title (for example, SongTitle).
                    SongTitleVal - The value of the song title (for example,
Happy Day).
                **Warning** This program will  place an item that you specify
into a table!
                """;

       if (args.length != 9) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String tableName = args[0];
       String key = args[1];
       String keyVal = args[2];
       String albumTitle = args[3];
       String albumTitleValue = args[4];
       String awards = args[5];
       String awardVal = args[6];
       String songTitle = args[7];
       String songTitleVal = args[8];

       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
               .region(region)
               .build();

       putItemInTable(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal, albumTitle, albumTitleValue,
awards, awardVal, songTitle,
               songTitleVal);
       System.out.println("Done!");
       ddb.close();
   }
```

```
    public static void putItemInTable(DynamoDbClient ddb,
            String tableName,
            String key,
            String keyVal,
            String albumTitle,
            String albumTitleValue,
            String awards,
            String awardVal,
            String songTitle,
            String songTitleVal) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> itemValues = new HashMap<>();
        itemValues.put(key, AttributeValue.builder().s(keyVal).build());
        itemValues.put(songTitle,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitleVal).build());
        itemValues.put(albumTitle,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(albumTitleValue).build());
        itemValues.put(awards, AttributeValue.builder().s(awardVal).build());

        PutItemRequest request = PutItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .item(itemValues)
                .build();

        try {
            PutItemResponse response = ddb.putItem(request);
            System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully updated. The
 request id is "
                    + response.responseMetadata().requestId());

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName);
            System.err.println("Be sure that it exists and that you've typed its
 name correctly!");
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see PutCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { PutCommand, DynamoDBDocumentClient } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new PutCommand({
    TableName: "HappyAnimals",
    Item: {
      CommonName: "Shiba Inu",
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an item in a table.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "CUSTOMER_LIST",
  Item: {
    CUSTOMER_ID: { N: "001" },
    CUSTOMER_NAME: { S: "Richard Roe" },
  },
};

// Call DynamoDB to add the item to the table
ddb.putItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

Put an item in a table using the DynamoDB document client.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "TABLE",
  Item: {
    HASHKEY: VALUE,
    ATTRIBUTE_1: "STRING_VALUE",
    ATTRIBUTE_2: VALUE_2,
  },
};

docClient.put(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun putItemInTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
    keyVal: String,
    albumTitle: String,
    albumTitleValue: String,
```

```
    awards: String,
    awardVal: String,
    songTitle: String,
    songTitleVal: String,
) {
    val itemValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()

    // Add all content to the table.
    itemValues[key] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)
    itemValues[songTitle] = AttributeValue.S(songTitleVal)
    itemValues[albumTitle] = AttributeValue.S(albumTitleValue)
    itemValues[awards] = AttributeValue.S(awardVal)

    val request =
        PutItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            item = itemValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.putItem(request)
        println(" A new item was placed into $tableNameVal.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
```

```
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }

        $service->putItem([
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
            ],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);

    public function putItem(array $array)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->putItem($array);
    }
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new item, or replaces an existing item with a new item.

```
$item = @{
  SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
  Artist = 'No One You Know'
        AlbumTitle = 'Somewhat Famous'
        Price = 1.94
        Genre = 'Country'
        CriticRating = 9.0
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
Set-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Item $item
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new item, or replaces an existing item with a new item.

```
$item = @{
  SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
  Artist = 'No One You Know'
        AlbumTitle = 'Somewhat Famous'
        Price = 1.94
        Genre = 'Country'
        CriticRating = 9.0
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
Set-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Item $item
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
```

```
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def add_movie(self, title, year, plot, rating):
        """
        Adds a movie to the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :param plot: The plot summary of the movie.
        :param rating: The quality rating of the movie.
        """
        try:
            self.table.put_item(
                Item={
                    "year": year,
                    "title": title,
                    "info": {"plot": plot, "rating": Decimal(str(rating))},
                }
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't add movie %s to table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Adds a movie to the table.
  #
  # @param movie [Hash] The title, year, plot, and rating of the movie.
  def add_item(movie)
    @table.put_item(
      item: {
        'year' => movie[:year],
        'title' => movie[:title],
        'info' => { 'plot' => movie[:plot], 'rating' => movie[:rating] }
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't add movie #{title} to table #{@table.name}. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn add_item(client: &Client, item: Item, table: &String) ->
 Result<ItemOut, Error> {
    let user_av = AttributeValue::S(item.username);
    let type_av = AttributeValue::S(item.p_type);
    let age_av = AttributeValue::S(item.age);
    let first_av = AttributeValue::S(item.first);
    let last_av = AttributeValue::S(item.last);

    let request = client
        .put_item()
        .table_name(table)
        .item("username", user_av)
        .item("account_type", type_av)
        .item("age", age_av)
        .item("first_name", first_av)
        .item("last_name", last_av);

    println!("Executing request [{request:?}] to add item...");

    let resp = request.send().await?;

    let attributes = resp.attributes().unwrap();

    let username = attributes.get("username").cloned();
    let first_name = attributes.get("first_name").cloned();
    let last_name = attributes.get("last_name").cloned();
    let age = attributes.get("age").cloned();
    let p_type = attributes.get("p_type").cloned();

    println!(
```

```
        "Added user {:?}, {:?} {:?}, age {:?} as {:?} user",
        username, first_name, last_name, age, p_type
    );

    Ok(ItemOut {
        p_type,
        age,
        username,
        first_name,
        last_name,
    })
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp) = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = it_item ).
        MESSAGE '1 row inserted into DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Add a movie specified as a `Movie` structure to the Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    ///
    /// - Parameter movie: The `Movie` to add to the table.
    ///
    func add(movie: Movie) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Get a DynamoDB item containing the movie data.
            let item = try await movie.getAsItem()

            // Send the `PutItem` request to Amazon DynamoDB.

            let input = PutItemInput(
                item: item,
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.putItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: add movie:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
    ///
    /// Return an array mapping attribute names to Amazon DynamoDB attribute
    /// values, representing the contents of the `Movie` record as a DynamoDB
    /// item.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The movie item as an array of type
    ///   `[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]`.
    ///
    func getAsItem() async throws ->
[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]  {
        // Build the item record, starting with the year and title, which are
        // always present.

        var item: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [
            "year": .n(String(self.year)),
            "title": .s(self.title)
        ]

        // Add the `info` field with the rating and/or plot if they're
        // available.

        var details: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [:]
        if (self.info.rating != nil || self.info.plot != nil) {
            if self.info.rating != nil {
                details["rating"] = .n(String(self.info.rating!))
            }
            if self.info.plot != nil {
                details["plot"] = .s(self.info.plot!)
            }
        }
        item["info"] = .m(details)

        return item
    }
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `Query` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Query`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Accelerate reads with DAX
- Advanced Global Secondary Index scenarios
- Compare multiple values with a single attribute
- Manage Global Secondary Indexes
- Perform advanced query operations
- Query a table using a begins_with condition
- Query a table using a date range
- Query a table using a Global Secondary Index
- Query a table with a complex filter expression
- Query a table with a dynamic filter expression
- Query a table with a filter expression and limit
- Query a table with nested attributes
- Query a table with pagination
- Query a table with strongly consistent reads
- Query for TTL items
- Query tables using date and time patterns
- Use expression attribute names
- Work with Local Secondary Indexes

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Queries the table for movies released in a particular year and
    /// then displays the information for the movies returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to query.</param>
    /// <param name="year">The release year for which we want to
    /// view movies.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies that match the query.</returns>
    public async Task<int> QueryMoviesAsync(string tableName, int year)
    {
        try
        {
            var movieTable = new TableBuilder(_amazonDynamoDB, tableName)
                .AddHashKey("year", DynamoDBEntryType.Numeric)
                .AddRangeKey("title", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
                .Build();

            var filter = new QueryFilter("year", QueryOperator.Equal, year);

            Console.WriteLine("\nFind movies released in: {year}:");

            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Limit = 10, // 10 items per page.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
                {
                    "title",
                    "year",
                },
                ConsistentRead = true,
                Filter = filter,
            };

            // Value used to track how many movies match the
            // supplied criteria.
            var moviesFound = 0;

            var search = movieTable.Query(config);
            do
            {
                var movieList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                moviesFound += movieList.Count;
```

```
                foreach (var movie in movieList)
                {
                    DisplayDocument(movie);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);

            return moviesFound;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while querying
movies. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while querying movies.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_query
#
# This function queries a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression.
#       -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute names.
#       -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_query() {
  local table_name key_condition_expression attribute_names attribute_values
 projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_query"
    echo "Query a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression."
    echo " -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute
 names."
    echo " -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute
 values."
    echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:a:v:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_condition_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
      a) attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_condition_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key condition expression with the -k
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute names with the -a parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute values with the -v parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
```

```
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports query operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Perform a query on an Amazon DynamoDB Table and retrieve items.
/*!
  \sa queryItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param projectionExpression: The projections expression, which is ignored if
 empty.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */

/*
 * The partition key attribute is searched with the specified value. By default,
 all fields and values
 * contained in the item are returned. If an optional projection expression is
 * specified on the command line, only the specified fields and values are
 * returned.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::queryItems(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                                  const Aws::String &projectionExpression,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryRequest request;

    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    if (!projectionExpression.empty()) {
```

```
        request.SetProjectionExpression(projectionExpression);
    }

    // Set query key condition expression.
    request.SetKeyConditionExpression(partitionKey + "= :valueToMatch");

    // Set Expression AttributeValues.
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValues;
    attributeValues.emplace(":valueToMatch", partitionValue);

    request.SetExpressionAttributeValues(attributeValues);

    bool result = true;

    // "exclusiveStartKey" is used for pagination.
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
exclusiveStartKey;
    do {
        if (!exclusiveStartKey.empty()) {
            request.SetExclusiveStartKey(exclusiveStartKey);
            exclusiveStartKey.clear();
        }
        // Perform Query operation.
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.Query(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            // Reference the retrieved items.
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = outcome.GetResult().GetItems();
            if (!items.empty()) {
                std::cout << "Number of items retrieved from Query: " <<
items.size()
                          << std::endl;
                // Iterate each item and print.
                for (const auto &item: items) {
                    std::cout
                            <<
"*******************************************************"
                            << std::endl;
                    // Output each retrieved field and its value.
                    for (const auto &i: item)
                        std::cout << i.first << ": " << i.second.GetS() <<
std::endl;
                }
```

```
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "No item found in table: " << tableName <<
 std::endl;
            }

            exclusiveStartKey = outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedKey();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to Query items: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
            result = false;
            break;
        }
    } while (!exclusiveStartKey.empty());

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To query a table

The following `query` example queries items in the `MusicCollection` table. The table has a hash-and-range primary key (`Artist` and `SongTitle`), but this query only specifies the hash key value. It returns song titles by the artist named "No One You Know".

```
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --projection-expression "SongTitle" \
    --key-condition-expression "Artist = :v1" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attributes.json \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL
```

Contents of `expression-attributes.json`:

```
{
```

```
    ":v1": {"S": "No One You Know"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Items": [
        {
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Call Me Today"
            },
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Scared of My Shadow"
            }
        }
    ],
    "Count": 2,
    "ScannedCount": 2,
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 0.5
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with Queries in DynamoDB in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To query a table using strongly consistent reads and traverse the index in descending order

The following example performs the same query as the first example, but returns results in reverse order and uses strongly consistent reads.

```
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --projection-expression "SongTitle" \
    --key-condition-expression "Artist = :v1" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attributes.json \
    --consistent-read \
    --no-scan-index-forward \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL
```

Contents of `expression-attributes.json`:

```
{
    ":v1": {"S": "No One You Know"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Items": [
        {
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Scared of My Shadow"
            }
        },
        {
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Call Me Today"
            }
        }
    ],
    "Count": 2,
    "ScannedCount": 2,
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 1.0
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with Queries in DynamoDB in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To filter out specific results

The following example queries the `MusicCollection` but excludes results with specific values in the `AlbumTitle` attribute. Note that this does not affect the `ScannedCount` or `ConsumedCapacity`, because the filter is applied after the items have been read.

```
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --key-condition-expression "#n1 = :v1" \
    --filter-expression "NOT (#n2 IN (:v2, :v3))" \
```

```
    --expression-attribute-names file://names.json \
    --expression-attribute-values file://values.json \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL
```

Contents of `values.json`:

```
{
    ":v1": {"S": "No One You Know"},
    ":v2": {"S": "Blue Sky Blues"},
    ":v3": {"S": "Greatest Hits"}
}
```

Contents of `names.json`:

```
{
    "#n1": "Artist",
    "#n2": "AlbumTitle"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Items": [
        {
            "AlbumTitle": {
                "S": "Somewhat Famous"
            },
            "Artist": {
                "S": "No One You Know"
            },
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Call Me Today"
            }
        }
    ],
    "Count": 1,
    "ScannedCount": 2,
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 0.5
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with Queries in DynamoDB in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To retrieve only an item count

The following example retrieves a count of items matching the query, but does not retrieve any of the items themselves.

```
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --select COUNT \
    --key-condition-expression "Artist = :v1" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attributes.json
```

Contents of `expression-attributes.json`:

```
{
    ":v1": {"S": "No One You Know"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Count": 2,
    "ScannedCount": 2,
    "ConsumedCapacity": null
}
```

For more information, see Working with Queries in DynamoDB in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To query an index

The following example queries the local secondary index `AlbumTitleIndex`. The query returns all attributes from the base table that have been projected into the local secondary index. Note that when querying a local secondary index or global secondary index, you must also provide the name of the base table using the `table-name` parameter.

```
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --index-name AlbumTitleIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "Artist = :v1" \
```

```
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attributes.json \
    --select ALL_PROJECTED_ATTRIBUTES \
    --return-consumed-capacity INDEXES
```

Contents of `expression-attributes.json`:

```
{
    ":v1": {"S": "No One You Know"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Items": [
        {
            "AlbumTitle": {
                "S": "Blue Sky Blues"
            },
            "Artist": {
                "S": "No One You Know"
            },
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Scared of My Shadow"
            }
        },
        {
            "AlbumTitle": {
                "S": "Somewhat Famous"
            },
            "Artist": {
                "S": "No One You Know"
            },
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Call Me Today"
            }
        }
    ],
    "Count": 2,
    "ScannedCount": 2,
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 0.5,
        "Table": {
```

```
            "CapacityUnits": 0.0
        },
        "LocalSecondaryIndexes": {
            "AlbumTitleIndex": {
                "CapacityUnits": 0.5
            }
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with Queries in DynamoDB in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see Query in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
```

```
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// Query gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in the
 specified year.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the key condition
 expression
// that is used in the query.
func (basics TableBasics) Query(ctx context.Context, releaseYear int) ([]Movie,
 error) {
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.QueryOutput
 var movies []Movie
 keyEx := expression.Key("year").Equal(expression.Value(releaseYear))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithKeyCondition(keyEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for query. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  queryPaginator := dynamodb.NewQueryPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.QueryInput{
   TableName:                aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   KeyConditionExpression:    expr.KeyCondition(),
  })
  for queryPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = queryPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't query for movies released in %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 releaseYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
```

```
      movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
     }
    }
   }
  }
 return movies, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Queries a table by using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To query items from an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client. See the EnhancedQueryRecords example.
 */
public class Query {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyVal>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to put the item in (for
 example, Music3).
                    partitionKeyName - The partition key name of the Amazon
 DynamoDB table (for example, Artist).
                    partitionKeyVal - The value of the partition key that should
 match (for example, Famous Band).
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        String partitionKeyVal = args[2];

        // For more information about an alias, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Expressions.ExpressionAttributeNames.html
        String partitionAlias = "#a";

        System.out.format("Querying %s", tableName);
        System.out.println("");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        int count = queryTable(ddb, tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyVal,
 partitionAlias);
        System.out.println("There were " + count + "  record(s) returned");
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static int queryTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
 partitionKeyName, String partitionKeyVal,
            String partitionAlias) {
        // Set up an alias for the partition key name in case it's a reserved
 word.
        HashMap<String, String> attrNameAlias = new HashMap<String, String>();
        attrNameAlias.put(partitionAlias, partitionKeyName);

        // Set up mapping of the partition name with the value.
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> attrValues = new HashMap<>();
        attrValues.put(":" + partitionKeyName, AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(partitionKeyVal)
                .build());

        QueryRequest queryReq = QueryRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .keyConditionExpression(partitionAlias + " = :" +
 partitionKeyName)
                .expressionAttributeNames(attrNameAlias)
                .expressionAttributeValues(attrValues)
                .build();

        try {
            QueryResponse response = ddb.query(queryReq);
            return response.count();

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return -1;
    }
}
```

Queries a table by using `DynamoDbClient` and a secondary index.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * Create the Movies table by running the Scenario example and loading the Movie
 * data from the JSON file. Next create a secondary
 * index for the Movies table that uses only the year column. Name the index
 * **year-index**. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/GSI.html
 */
public class QueryItemsUsingIndex {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String tableName = "Movies";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        queryIndex(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void queryIndex(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> expressionAttributesNames = new HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributesNames.put("#year", "year");
```

```
            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":yearValue",
 AttributeValue.builder().n("2013").build());

            QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .indexName("year-index")
                    .keyConditionExpression("#year = :yearValue")
                    .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributesNames)
                    .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("=== Movie Titles ===");
            QueryResponse response = ddb.query(request);
            response.items()
                    .forEach(movie ->
 System.out.println(movie.get("title").s()));

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see QueryCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { QueryCommand, DynamoDBDocumentClient } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new QueryCommand({
    TableName: "CoffeeCrop",
    KeyConditionExpression:
      "OriginCountry = :originCountry AND RoastDate > :roastDate",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":originCountry": "Ethiopia",
      ":roastDate": "2023-05-01",
    },
    ConsistentRead: true,
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });
```

```
var params = {
  ExpressionAttributeValues: {
    ":s": 2,
    ":e": 9,
    ":topic": "PHRASE",
  },
  KeyConditionExpression: "Season = :s and Episode > :e",
  FilterExpression: "contains (Subtitle, :topic)",
  TableName: "EPISODES_TABLE",
};

docClient.query(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Items);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun queryDynTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    partitionKeyName: String,
    partitionKeyVal: String,
    partitionAlias: String,
): Int {
    val attrNameAlias = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
```

```
    attrNameAlias[partitionAlias] = partitionKeyName

    // Set up mapping of the partition name with the value.
    val attrValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    attrValues[":$partitionKeyName"] = AttributeValue.S(partitionKeyVal)

    val request =
        QueryRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            keyConditionExpression = "$partitionAlias = :$partitionKeyName"
            expressionAttributeNames = attrNameAlias
            this.expressionAttributeValues = attrValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.query(request)
        return response.count
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
```

```
    public function query(string $tableName, $key)
    {
        $expressionAttributeValues = [];
        $expressionAttributeNames = [];
        $keyConditionExpression = "";
        $index = 1;
        foreach ($key as $name => $value) {
            $keyConditionExpression .= "#" . array_key_first($value) . " = :v
$index,";
            $expressionAttributeNames["#" . array_key_first($value)] =
 array_key_first($value);
            $hold = array_pop($value);
            $expressionAttributeValues[":v$index"] = [
                array_key_first($hold) => array_pop($hold),
            ];
        }
        $keyConditionExpression = substr($keyConditionExpression, 0, -1);
        $query = [
            'ExpressionAttributeValues' => $expressionAttributeValues,
            'ExpressionAttributeNames' => $expressionAttributeNames,
            'KeyConditionExpression' => $keyConditionExpression,
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ];
        return $this->dynamoDbClient->query($query);
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Invokes a query that returns DynamoDB items with the specified SongTitle and Artist.

```
$invokeDDBQuery = @{
    TableName = 'Music'
    KeyConditionExpression = ' SongTitle = :SongTitle and Artist = :Artist'
    ExpressionAttributeValues = @{
        ':SongTitle' = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
        ':Artist' = 'No One You Know'
    } | ConvertTo-DDBItem
```

```
}
Invoke-DDBQuery @invokeDDBQuery | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Invokes a query that returns DynamoDB items with the specified SongTitle and Artist.

```
$invokeDDBQuery = @{
    TableName = 'Music'
    KeyConditionExpression = ' SongTitle = :SongTitle and Artist = :Artist'
    ExpressionAttributeValues = @{
        ':SongTitle' = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
        ':Artist' = 'No One You Know'
    } | ConvertTo-DDBItem
}
Invoke-DDBQuery @invokeDDBQuery | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Query items by using a key condition expression.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None
```

```
    def query_movies(self, year):
        """
        Queries for movies that were released in the specified year.

        :param year: The year to query.
        :return: The list of movies that were released in the specified year.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key("year").eq(year))
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't query for movies released in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                year,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Items"]
```

Query items and project them to return a subset of data.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def query_and_project_movies(self, year, title_bounds):
        """
        Query for movies that were released in a specified year and that have
 titles
        that start within a range of letters. A projection expression is used
        to return a subset of data for each movie.

        :param year: The release year to query.
        :param title_bounds: The range of starting letters to query.
        :return: The list of movies.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.table.query(
                ProjectionExpression="#yr, title, info.genres, info.actors[0]",
                ExpressionAttributeNames={"#yr": "year"},
                KeyConditionExpression=(
                    Key("year").eq(year)
                    & Key("title").between(
                        title_bounds["first"], title_bounds["second"]
                    )
                ),
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException":
                logger.warning(
                    "There's a validation error. Here's the message: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't query for movies. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return response["Items"]
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Queries for movies that were released in the specified year.
  #
  # @param year [Integer] The year to query.
  # @return [Array] The list of movies that were released in the specified year.
  def query_items(year)
    response = @table.query(
      key_condition_expression: '#yr = :year',
      expression_attribute_names: { '#yr' => 'year' },
      expression_attribute_values: { ':year' => year }
    )
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't query for movies released in #{year}. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    response.items
  end
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Find the movies made in the specified year.

```
pub async fn movies_in_year(
    client: &Client,
    table_name: &str,
    year: u16,
) -> Result<Vec<Movie>, MovieError> {
    let results = client
        .query()
        .table_name(table_name)
        .key_condition_expression("#yr = :yyyy")
        .expression_attribute_names("#yr", "year")
        .expression_attribute_values(":yyyy",
 AttributeValue::N(year.to_string()))
        .send()
        .await?;

    if let Some(items) = results.items {
        let movies = items.iter().map(|v| v.into()).collect();
        Ok(movies)
    } else {
        Ok(vec![])
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        " Query movies for a given year .
        DATA(lt_attributelist) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_attributevaluelist(
```

```
            ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |{ iv_year }| ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_key_conditions) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>tt_keyconditions(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>ts_keyconditions_maprow(
          key = 'year'
          value = NEW /aws1/cl_dyncondition(
          it_attributevaluelist = lt_attributelist
          iv_comparisonoperator = |EQ|
          ) ) ) ).
        oo_result = lo_dyn->query(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_keyconditions = lt_key_conditions ).
        DATA(lt_items) = oo_result->get_items( ).
        "You can loop over the results to get item attributes.
        LOOP AT lt_items INTO DATA(lt_item).
          DATA(lo_title) = lt_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
          DATA(lo_year) = lt_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        ENDLOOP.
        DATA(lv_count) = oo_result->get_count( ).
        MESSAGE 'Item count is: ' && lv_count TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Get all the movies released in the specified year.
    ///
    /// - Parameter year: The release year of the movies to return.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing each matching movie.
    ///
    func getMovies(fromYear year: Int) async throws -> [Movie] {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = QueryInput(
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year"
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y": .n(String(year))
                ],
                keyConditionExpression: "#y = :y",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            // Use "Paginated" to get all the movies.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'lastEvaluatedKey' property in
"QueryOutput".

            let pages = client.queryPaginated(input: input)

            var movieList: [Movie] = []
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Convert the found movies into `Movie` objects and return an
array
                // of them.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies:", dump(error))
```

```
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use Scan with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use Scan.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Accelerate reads with DAX
- Compare multiple values with a single attribute

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Scans the table for movies released between the specified years.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to scan.</param>
    /// <param name="startYear">The starting year for the range.</param>
    /// <param name="endYear">The ending year for the range.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies found in the specified year range.</
returns>
    public async Task<int> ScanTableAsync(
        string tableName,
        int startYear,
```

```
        int endYear)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ScanRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "#yr", "year" },
                },
                ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string,
AttributeValue>
                {
                    { ":y_a", new AttributeValue { N = startYear.ToString() } },
                    { ":y_z", new AttributeValue { N = endYear.ToString() } },
                },
                FilterExpression = "#yr between :y_a and :y_z",
                ProjectionExpression = "#yr, title, info.actors[0],
info.directors, info.running_time_secs",
                Limit = 10 // Set a limit to demonstrate using the
LastEvaluatedKey.
            };

            // Keep track of how many movies were found.
            int foundCount = 0;

            var response = new ScanResponse();
            do
            {
                response = await _amazonDynamoDB.ScanAsync(request);
                foundCount += response.Items.Count;
                response.Items.ForEach(i => DisplayItem(i));
                request.ExclusiveStartKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
            }
            while (response?.LastEvaluatedKey?.Count > 0);
            return foundCount;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while scanning
 table. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while scanning table.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_scan
#
# This function scans a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression.
#       -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute names.
#       -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
```

```
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_scan() {
  local table_name filter_expression expression_attribute_names
 expression_attribute_values projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_scan"
    echo "Scan a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression."
    echo " -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute names."
    echo " -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute values."
    echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:f:a:v:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) filter_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) expression_attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) expression_attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
```

```
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$filter_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a filter expression with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute names with the -a
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute values with the -v
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports scan operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Scan an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa scanTable()
  \param tableName: Name for the DynamoDB table.
  \param projectionExpression: An optional projection expression, ignored if
 empty.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::scanTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
```

```
                                const Aws::String &projectionExpression,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
&clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanRequest request;
   request.SetTableName(tableName);

   if (!projectionExpression.empty())
       request.SetProjectionExpression(projectionExpression);

   Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>>
all_items;
   Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
last_evaluated_key; // Used for pagination;
   do {
       if (!last_evaluated_key.empty()) {
           request.SetExclusiveStartKey(last_evaluated_key);
       }
       const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.Scan(request);
       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           // Reference the retrieved items.
           const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = outcome.GetResult().GetItems();
           all_items.insert(all_items.end(), items.begin(), items.end());

           last_evaluated_key = outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedKey();
       }
       else {
           std::cerr << "Failed to Scan items: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                     << std::endl;
           return false;
       }

   } while (!last_evaluated_key.empty());

   if (!all_items.empty()) {
       std::cout << "Number of items retrieved from scan: " << all_items.size()
                 << std::endl;
       // Iterate each item and print.
       for (const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&itemMap: all_items) {
           std::cout << "*****************************************************"
```

```
                        << std::endl;
            // Output each retrieved field and its value.
            for (const auto &itemEntry: itemMap)
                std::cout << itemEntry.first << ": " << itemEntry.second.GetS()
                          << std::endl;
        }
    }

    else {
        std::cout << "No items found in table: " << tableName << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To scan a table

The following `scan` example scans the entire `MusicCollection` table, and then narrows the results to songs by the artist "No One You Know". For each item, only the album title and song title are returned.

```
aws dynamodb scan \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --filter-expression "Artist = :a" \
    --projection-expression "#ST, #AT" \
    --expression-attribute-names file://expression-attribute-names.json \
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attribute-values.json
```

Contents of `expression-attribute-names.json`:

```
{
    "#ST": "SongTitle",
    "#AT":"AlbumTitle"
```

```
}
```

Contents of `expression-attribute-values.json`:

```
{
    ":a": {"S": "No One You Know"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Count": 2,
    "Items": [
        {
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Call Me Today"
            },
            "AlbumTitle": {
                "S": "Somewhat Famous"
            }
        },
        {
            "SongTitle": {
                "S": "Scared of My Shadow"
            },
            "AlbumTitle": {
                "S": "Blue Sky Blues"
            }
        }
    ],
    "ScannedCount": 3,
    "ConsumedCapacity": null
}
```

For more information, see Working with Scans in DynamoDB in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// Scan gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in a range of
 years
// and projects them to return a reduced set of fields.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the filter and projection
// expressions.
func (basics TableBasics) Scan(ctx context.Context, startYear int, endYear int)
 ([]Movie, error) {
```

```
 var movies []Movie
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.ScanOutput
 filtEx := expression.Name("year").Between(expression.Value(startYear),
 expression.Value(endYear))
 projEx := expression.NamesList(
  expression.Name("year"), expression.Name("title"),
 expression.Name("info.rating"))
 expr, err :=
 expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filtEx).WithProjection(projEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expressions for scan. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  scanPaginator := dynamodb.NewScanPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ScanInput{
   TableName:                aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   FilterExpression:         expr.Filter(),
   ProjectionExpression:     expr.Projection(),
  })
  for scanPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = scanPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't scan for movies released between %v and %v. Here's why:
 %v\n",
     startYear, endYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
     movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
    }
   }
  }
 }
 return movies, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}
```

```
// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scans an Amazon DynamoDB table using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanResponse;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Set;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To scan items from an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
```

```
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client, See the EnhancedScanRecords example.
 */

public class DynamoDBScanItems {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to get information from
 (for example, Music3).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        scanItems(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void scanItems(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        try {
            ScanRequest scanRequest = ScanRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            ScanResponse response = ddb.scan(scanRequest);
            for (Map<String, AttributeValue> item : response.items()) {
                Set<String> keys = item.keySet();
                for (String key : keys) {
                    System.out.println("The key name is " + key + "\n");
                    System.out.println("The value is " + item.get(key).s());
```

```
                }
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see ScanCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, ScanCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ScanCommand({
    ProjectionExpression: "#Name, Color, AvgLifeSpan",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#Name": "Name" },
    TableName: "Birds",
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  for (const bird of response.Items) {
    console.log(`${bird.Name} - (${bird.Color}, ${bird.AvgLifeSpan})`);
```

```
  }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js.
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the AWS Region.
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB service object.
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

const params = {
  // Specify which items in the results are returned.
  FilterExpression: "Subtitle = :topic AND Season = :s AND Episode = :e",
  // Define the expression attribute value, which are substitutes for the values
 you want to compare.
  ExpressionAttributeValues: {
    ":topic": { S: "SubTitle2" },
    ":s": { N: 1 },
    ":e": { N: 2 },
  },
  // Set the projection expression, which are the attributes that you want.
  ProjectionExpression: "Season, Episode, Title, Subtitle",
  TableName: "EPISODES_TABLE",
};

ddb.scan(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
```

```
    data.Items.forEach(function (element, index, array) {
      console.log(
        "printing",
        element.Title.S + " (" + element.Subtitle.S + ")"
      );
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun scanItems(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        ScanRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.scan(request)
        response.items?.forEach { item ->
            item.keys.forEach { key ->
                println("The key name is $key\n")
                println("The value is ${item[key]}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    $yearsKey = [
        'Key' => [
            'year' => [
                'N' => [
                    'minRange' => 1990,
                    'maxRange' => 1999,
                ],
            ],
        ],
    ];
    $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
    echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
    $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
    foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
        $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
        echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
    }

public function scan(string $tableName, array $key, string $filters)
{
    $query = [
        'ExpressionAttributeNames' => ['#year' => 'year'],
        'ExpressionAttributeValues' => [
            ":min" => ['N' => '1990'],
            ":max" => ['N' => '1999'],
        ],
        'FilterExpression' => "#year between :min and :max",
        'TableName' => $tableName,
    ];
    return $this->dynamoDbClient->scan($query);
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all items in the Music table.

```
Invoke-DDBScan -TableName 'Music' | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.98
CriticRating                   8.4
SongTitle                      My Dog Spot
AlbumTitle                     Hey Now
```

Example 2: Returns items in the Music table with a CriticRating greater than or equal to nine.

```
$scanFilter = @{
        CriticRating = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.Condition]@{
            AttributeValueList = @(@{N = '9'})
            ComparisonOperator = 'GE'
        }
    }
    Invoke-DDBScan -TableName 'Music' -ScanFilter $scanFilter | ConvertFrom-
DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all items in the Music table.

```
Invoke-DDBScan -TableName 'Music' | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.98
CriticRating                   8.4
SongTitle                      My Dog Spot
AlbumTitle                     Hey Now
```

Example 2: Returns items in the Music table with a CriticRating greater than or equal to nine.

```
$scanFilter = @{
        CriticRating = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.Condition]@{
            AttributeValueList = @(@{N = '9'})
            ComparisonOperator = 'GE'
```

```
        }
    }
    Invoke-DDBScan -TableName 'Music' -ScanFilter $scanFilter | ConvertFrom-
DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
```

```
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def scan_movies(self, year_range):
        """
        Scans for movies that were released in a range of years.
        Uses a projection expression to return a subset of data for each movie.

        :param year_range: The range of years to retrieve.
        :return: The list of movies released in the specified years.
        """
        movies = []
        scan_kwargs = {
            "FilterExpression": Key("year").between(
                year_range["first"], year_range["second"]
            ),
            "ProjectionExpression": "#yr, title, info.rating",
            "ExpressionAttributeNames": {"#yr": "year"},
        }
        try:
            done = False
            start_key = None
            while not done:
                if start_key:
                    scan_kwargs["ExclusiveStartKey"] = start_key
                response = self.table.scan(**scan_kwargs)
                movies.extend(response.get("Items", []))
```

```
                start_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey", None)
                done = start_key is None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't scan for movies. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

        return movies
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Scans for movies that were released in a range of years.
  # Uses a projection expression to return a subset of data for each movie.
  #
  # @param year_range [Hash] The range of years to retrieve.
  # @return [Array] The list of movies released in the specified years.
  def scan_items(year_range)
    movies = []
```

```
    scan_hash = {
      filter_expression: '#yr between :start_yr and :end_yr',
      projection_expression: '#yr, title, info.rating',
      expression_attribute_names: { '#yr' => 'year' },
      expression_attribute_values: {
        ':start_yr' => year_range[:start], ':end_yr' => year_range[:end]
      }
    }
    done = false
    start_key = nil
    until done
      scan_hash[:exclusive_start_key] = start_key unless start_key.nil?
      response = @table.scan(scan_hash)
      movies.concat(response.items) unless response.items.empty?
      start_key = response.last_evaluated_key
      done = start_key.nil?
    end
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't scan for movies. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    movies
  end
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_items(client: &Client, table: &str, page_size: Option<i32>) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    let page_size = page_size.unwrap_or(10);
    let items: Result<Vec<_>, _> = client
```

```
        .scan()
        .table_name(table)
        .limit(page_size)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .collect()
        .await;

    println!("Items in table (up to {page_size}):");
    for item in items? {
        println!("   {:?}", item);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        " Scan movies for rating greater than or equal to the rating specified
        DATA(lt_attributelist) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_attributevaluelist(
            ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |{ iv_rating }| ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_filter_conditions) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dyncondition=>tt_filterconditionmap(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>ts_filterconditionmap_maprow(
          key = 'rating'
          value = NEW /aws1/cl_dyncondition(
          it_attributevaluelist = lt_attributelist
          iv_comparisonoperator = |GE|
```

```
          ) ) ) ).
        oo_scan_result = lo_dyn->scan( iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_scanfilter = lt_filter_conditions ).
        DATA(lt_items) = oo_scan_result->get_items( ).
        LOOP AT lt_items INTO DATA(lo_item).
          " You can loop over to get individual attributes.
          DATA(lo_title) = lo_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
          DATA(lo_year) = lo_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        ENDLOOP.
        DATA(lv_count) = oo_scan_result->get_count( ).
        MESSAGE 'Found ' && lv_count && ' items' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Return an array of `Movie` objects released in the specified range of
    /// years.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - firstYear: The first year of movies to return.
    ///   - lastYear: The last year of movies to return.
    ///   - startKey: A starting point to resume processing; always use `nil`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing the matching movies.
    ///
    /// > Note: The `startKey` parameter is used by this function when
```

```
    ///   recursively calling itself, and should always be `nil` when calling
    ///   directly.
    ///
    func getMovies(firstYear: Int, lastYear: Int,
                   startKey: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]?
= nil)
        async throws -> [Movie]
    {
        do {
            var movieList: [Movie] = []

            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = ScanInput(
                consistentRead: true,
                exclusiveStartKey: startKey,
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year" // `year` is a reserved word, so use `#y`
instead.
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y1": .n(String(firstYear)),
                    ":y2": .n(String(lastYear))
                ],
                filterExpression: "#y BETWEEN :y1 AND :y2",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )

            let pages = client.scanPaginated(input: input)

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Build an array of `Movie` objects for the returned items.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
```

```
            }
            return movieList

        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies with scan:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `UpdateItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Conditionally update an item's TTL
- Count expression operators
- Create and manage MRSC global tables
- Perform list operations
- Perform map operations
- Perform set operations
- Understand update expression order
- Update an item's TTL
- Use atomic counter operations
- Use conditional operations
- Use expression attribute names

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Updates an existing item in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information for
    /// the movie to update.</param>
    /// <param name="newInfo">A MovieInfo object that contains the
    /// information that will be changed.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table that contains the movie.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateItemAsync(
        Movie newMovie,
        MovieInfo newInfo,
        string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };
            var updates = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValueUpdate>
            {
                ["info.plot"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { S = newInfo.Plot },
                },
```

```
                ["info.rating"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { N = newInfo.Rank.ToString() },
                },
            };

            var request = new UpdateItemRequest
            {
                AttributeUpdates = updates,
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.UpdateItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} or item was not found.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while updating
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while updating item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_update_item
#
# This function updates an item in a DynamoDB table.
#
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to update.
#       -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more
 attributes to be updated.
#       -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
################################################################################
function dynamodb_update_item() {
  local table_name keys update_expression values response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_update_item"
    echo "Update an item in a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the
 item to update."
```

```
    echo " -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more
  attributes to be updated."
    echo " -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:e:v:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      e) update_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
  if [[ -z "$update_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an update expression with the -e parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a values json file path the -v parameter."
```

```
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    keys:   $keys"
  iecho "    update_expression:   $update_expression"
  iecho "    values:   $values"

  response=$(aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys" \
    --update-expression "$update_expression" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://"$values")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports update-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-
help-return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an Amazon DynamoDB table item.
/*!
  \sa updateItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param attributeKey: The key for the attribute to be updated.
  \param attributeValue: The value for the attribute to be updated.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */

/*
 *  The example code only sets/updates an attribute value. It processes
 *  the attribute value as a string, even if the value could be interpreted
 *  as a number. Also, the example code does not remove an existing attribute
 *  from the key value.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::updateItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                                  const Aws::String &attributeKey,
                                  const Aws::String &attributeValue,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    // *** Define UpdateItem request arguments.
    // Define TableName argument.
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    // Define KeyName argument.
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue attribValue;
    attribValue.SetS(partitionValue);
    request.AddKey(partitionKey, attribValue);

    // Construct the SET update expression argument.
    Aws::String update_expression("SET #a = :valueA");
    request.SetUpdateExpression(update_expression);

    // Construct attribute name argument.
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> expressionAttributeNames;
    expressionAttributeNames["#a"] = attributeKey;
    request.SetExpressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames);

    // Construct attribute value argument.
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue attributeUpdatedValue;
    attributeUpdatedValue.SetS(attributeValue);
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
 expressionAttributeValues;
    expressionAttributeValues[":valueA"] = attributeUpdatedValue;
    request.SetExpressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues);

    // Update the item.
    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.UpdateItem(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Item was updated" << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update an item in a table

The following `update-item` example updates an item in the `MusicCollection` table. It adds a new attribute (`Year`) and modifies the `AlbumTitle` attribute. All of the attributes in the item, as they appear after the update, are returned in the response.

```
aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --key file://key.json \
    --update-expression "SET #Y = :y, #AT = :t" \
    --expression-attribute-names file://expression-attribute-names.json \
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attribute-values.json  \
    --return-values ALL_NEW \
    --return-consumed-capacity TOTAL \
    --return-item-collection-metrics SIZE
```

Contents of `key.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "Acme Band"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Happy Day"}
}
```

Contents of `expression-attribute-names.json`:

```
{
    "#Y":"Year", "#AT":"AlbumTitle"
}
```

Contents of `expression-attribute-values.json`:

```
{
    ":y":{"N": "2015"},
```

```
    ":t":{"S": "Louder Than Ever"}
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Attributes": {
        "AlbumTitle": {
            "S": "Louder Than Ever"
        },
        "Awards": {
            "N": "10"
        },
        "Artist": {
            "S": "Acme Band"
        },
        "Year": {
            "N": "2015"
        },
        "SongTitle": {
            "S": "Happy Day"
        }
    },
    "ConsumedCapacity": {
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "CapacityUnits": 3.0
    },
    "ItemCollectionMetrics": {
        "ItemCollectionKey": {
            "Artist": {
                "S": "Acme Band"
            }
        },
        "SizeEstimateRangeGB": [
            0.0,
            1.0
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Writing an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To update an item conditionally

The following example updates an item in the `MusicCollection` table, but only if the existing item does not already have a `Year` attribute.

```
aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --key file://key.json \
    --update-expression "SET #Y = :y, #AT = :t" \
    --expression-attribute-names file://expression-attribute-names.json \
    --expression-attribute-values file://expression-attribute-values.json  \
    --condition-expression "attribute_not_exists(#Y)"
```

Contents of `key.json`:

```
{
    "Artist": {"S": "Acme Band"},
    "SongTitle": {"S": "Happy Day"}
}
```

Contents of `expression-attribute-names.json`:

```
{
    "#Y":"Year",
    "#AT":"AlbumTitle"
}
```

Contents of `expression-attribute-values.json`:

```
{
    ":y":{"N": "2015"},
    ":t":{"S": "Louder Than Ever"}
}
```

If the item already has a `Year` attribute, DynamoDB returns the following output.

```
An error occurred (ConditionalCheckFailedException) when calling the UpdateItem
 operation: The conditional request failed
```

For more information, see Writing an Item in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified
 table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// UpdateMovie updates the rating and plot of a movie that already exists in the
// DynamoDB table. This function uses the `expression` package to build the
 update
// expression.
func (basics TableBasics) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie)
 (map[string]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var err error
```

```
 var response *dynamodb.UpdateItemOutput
 var attributeMap map[string]map[string]interface{}
 update := expression.Set(expression.Name("info.rating"),
 expression.Value(movie.Info["rating"]))
 update.Set(expression.Name("info.plot"), expression.Value(movie.Info["plot"]))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithUpdate(update).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for update. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  response, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.UpdateItem(ctx,
 &dynamodb.UpdateItemInput{
   TableName:                aws.String(basics.TableName),
   Key:                      movie.GetKey(),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   UpdateExpression:         expr.Update(),
   ReturnValues:             types.ReturnValueUpdatedNew,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
  } else {
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Attributes, &attributeMap)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshall update response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
  }
 }
 return attributeMap, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Updates an item in a table using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeAction;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValueUpdate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To update an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2, its better
 * practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client, See the EnhancedModifyItem example.
 */
public class UpdateItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyVal> <name> <updateVal>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music3).
```

```
                    key - The name of the key in the table (for example, Artist).
                    keyVal - The value of the key (for example, Famous Band).
                    name - The name of the column where the value is updated (for
example, Awards).
                    updateVal - The value used to update an item (for example,
14).
                Example:
                    UpdateItem Music3 Artist Famous Band Awards 14
               """;

       if (args.length != 5) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String tableName = args[0];
       String key = args[1];
       String keyVal = args[2];
       String name = args[3];
       String updateVal = args[4];

       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
               .region(region)
               .build();
       updateTableItem(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal, name, updateVal);
       ddb.close();
   }

   public static void updateTableItem(DynamoDbClient ddb,
           String tableName,
           String key,
           String keyVal,
           String name,
           String updateVal) {

       HashMap<String, AttributeValue> itemKey = new HashMap<>();
       itemKey.put(key, AttributeValue.builder()
               .s(keyVal)
               .build());

       HashMap<String, AttributeValueUpdate> updatedValues = new HashMap<>();
       updatedValues.put(name, AttributeValueUpdate.builder()
               .value(AttributeValue.builder().s(updateVal).build())
```

```
                .action(AttributeAction.PUT)
                .build());

        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(itemKey)
                .attributeUpdates(updatedValues)
                .build();

        try {
            ddb.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("The Amazon DynamoDB table was updated!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see UpdateCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, UpdateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  const command = new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: "Dogs",
    Key: {
      Breed: "Labrador",
    },
    UpdateExpression: "set Color = :color",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":color": "black",
    },
    ReturnValues: "ALL_NEW",
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateTableItem(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
    name: String,
    updateVal: String,
) {
    val itemKey = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    itemKey[keyName] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)

    val updatedValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValueUpdate>()
```

```
    updatedValues[name] =
        AttributeValueUpdate {
            value = AttributeValue.S(updateVal)
            action = AttributeAction.Put
        }

    val request =
        UpdateItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            key = itemKey
            attributeUpdates = updatedValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.updateItem(request)
        println("Item in $tableNameVal was updated")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Item']['title']['S']}?
\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $service->updateItemAttributeByKey($tableName, $key, 'rating', 'N',
 $rating);
```

```
    public function updateItemAttributeByKey(
        string $tableName,
        array $key,
        string $attributeName,
        string $attributeType,
        string $newValue
    ) {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->updateItem([
            'Key' => $key['Item'],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
            'UpdateExpression' => "set #NV=:NV",
            'ExpressionAttributeNames' => [
                '#NV' => $attributeName,
            ],
            'ExpressionAttributeValues' => [
                ':NV' => [
                    $attributeType => $newValue
                ]
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Sets the genre attribute to 'Rap' on the DynamoDB item with the partition key SongTitle and the sort key Artist.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$updateDdbItem = @{
    TableName = 'Music'
    Key = $key
    UpdateExpression = 'set Genre = :val1'
    ExpressionAttributeValue = (@{
        ':val1' = ([Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue]'Rap')
```

```
    })
}
Update-DDBItem @updateDdbItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Rap
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Sets the genre attribute to 'Rap' on the DynamoDB item with the partition key SongTitle and the sort key Artist.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$updateDdbItem = @{
    TableName = 'Music'
    Key = $key
    UpdateExpression = 'set Genre = :val1'
    ExpressionAttributeValue = (@{
        ':val1' = ([Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue]'Rap')
    })
}
Update-DDBItem @updateDdbItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Rap
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an item by using an update expression.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None
```

```
    def update_movie(self, title, year, rating, plot):
        """
        Updates rating and plot data for a movie in the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param rating: The updated rating to the give the movie.
        :param plot: The updated plot summary to give the movie.
        :return: The fields that were updated, with their new values.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="set info.rating=:r, info.plot=:p",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":r": Decimal(str(rating)), ":p":
 plot},
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update movie %s in table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]
```

Update an item by using an update expression that includes an arithmetic operation.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def update_rating(self, title, year, rating_change):
        """
```

```
        Updates the quality rating of a movie in the table by using an arithmetic
        operation in the update expression. By specifying an arithmetic
 operation,
        you can adjust a value in a single request, rather than first getting its
        value and then setting its new value.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param rating_change: The amount to add to the current rating for the
 movie.
        :return: The updated rating.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="set info.rating = info.rating + :val",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":val": Decimal(str(rating_change))},
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update movie %s in table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]
```

Update an item only when it meets certain conditions.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def remove_actors(self, title, year, actor_threshold):
        """
```

```
        Removes an actor from a movie, but only when the number of actors is
greater
        than a specified threshold. If the movie does not list more than the
threshold,
        no actors are removed.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param actor_threshold: The threshold of actors to check.
        :return: The movie data after the update.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="remove info.actors[0]",
                ConditionExpression="size(info.actors) > :num",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":num": actor_threshold},
                ReturnValues="ALL_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"ConditionalCheckFailedException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Didn't update %s because it has fewer than %s actors.",
                    title,
                    actor_threshold + 1,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't update movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    title,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Updates rating and plot data for a movie in the table.
  #
  # @param movie [Hash] The title, year, plot, rating of the movie.
  def update_item(movie)
    response = @table.update_item(
      key: { 'year' => movie[:year], 'title' => movie[:title] },
      update_expression: 'set info.rating=:r',
      expression_attribute_values: { ':r' => movie[:rating] },
      return_values: 'UPDATED_NEW'
    )
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't update movie #{movie[:title]} (#{movie[:year]}) in table
 #{@table.name}\n")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    response.attributes
  end
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_output = lo_dyn->updateitem(
          iv_tablename        = iv_table_name
          it_key              = it_item_key
          it_attributeupdates = it_attribute_updates ).
        MESSAGE '1 item updated in DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB
```

```
    /// Update the specified movie with new `rating` and `plot` information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The title of the movie to update.
    ///   - year: The release year of the movie to update.
    ///   - rating: The new rating for the movie.
    ///   - plot: The new plot summary string for the movie.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of mappings of attribute names to their new
    ///   listing each item actually changed. Items that didn't need to change
    ///   aren't included in this list. `nil` if no changes were made.
    ///
    func update(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil, plot: String? =
nil) async throws
        -> [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]?
    {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Build the update expression and the list of expression attribute
            // values. Include only the information that's changed.

            var expressionParts: [String] = []
            var attrValues: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] =
[:]

            if rating != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.rating=:r")
                attrValues[":r"] = .n(String(rating!))
            }
            if plot != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.plot=:p")
                attrValues[":p"] = .s(plot!)
            }
            let expression = "set \(expressionParts.joined(separator: ", "))"

            let input = UpdateItemInput(
                // Create substitution tokens for the attribute values, to ensure
                // no conflicts in expression syntax.
                expressionAttributeValues: attrValues,
```

```
                // The key identifying the movie to update consists of the
release
                // year and title.
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                returnValues: .updatedNew,
                tableName: self.tableName,
                updateExpression: expression
            )
            let output = try await client.updateItem(input: input)

            guard let attributes: [Swift.String:
DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = output.attributes else {
                throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
            }
            return attributes
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: update:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `UpdateTable` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create and manage global tables demonstrating MREC
- Create and manage MRSC global tables
- Manage Global Secondary Indexes
- Update a table's warm throughput setting
- Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)
- Work with table encryption

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update a DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa updateTable()
  \param tableName: Name for the DynamoDB table.
  \param readCapacity: Provisioned read capacity.
  \param writeCapacity: Provisioned write capacity.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::updateTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                   long long readCapacity, long long
 writeCapacity,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::cout << "Updating " << tableName << " with new provisioned throughput
 values"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Read capacity : " << readCapacity << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Write capacity: " << writeCapacity << std::endl;

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateTableRequest request;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput provisionedThroughput;

 provisionedThroughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(readCapacity).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
            writeCapacity);

 request.WithProvisionedThroughput(provisionedThroughput).WithTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateTableOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.UpdateTable(
```

```
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated the table." << std::endl;
    } else {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBError &error = outcome.GetError();
        if (error.GetErrorType() == Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::VALIDATION &&
            error.GetMessage().find("The provisioned throughput for the table
 will not change") != std::string::npos) {
            std::cout << "The provisioned throughput for the table will not
 change." << std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cerr << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
```

```
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To modify a table's billing mode

The following `update-table` example increases the provisioned read and write capacity on the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --billing-mode PROVISIONED \
    --provisioned-throughput ReadCapacityUnits=15,WriteCapacityUnits=10
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
```

```
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "UPDATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T15:59:49.473000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "LastIncreaseDateTime": "2020-07-28T13:18:18.921000-07:00",
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 15,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 182,
        "ItemCount": 2,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "abcd0123-01ab-23cd-0123-abcdef123456",
        "BillingModeSummary": {
            "BillingMode": "PROVISIONED",
            "LastUpdateToPayPerRequestDateTime":
 "2020-07-28T13:14:48.366000-07:00"
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Updating a Table in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To create a global secondary index

The following example adds a global secondary index to the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions AttributeName=AlbumTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --global-secondary-index-updates file://gsi-updates.json
```

Contents of `gsi-updates.json`:

```
[
    {
        "Create": {
            "IndexName": "AlbumTitle-index",
            "KeySchema": [
                {
                    "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                    "KeyType": "HASH"
                }
            ],
            "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
                "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
            },
            "Projection": {
                "ProjectionType": "ALL"
            }
        }
    }
]
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
```

```
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "UPDATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T15:59:49.473000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "LastIncreaseDateTime": "2020-07-28T12:59:17.537000-07:00",
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 15,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 182,
        "ItemCount": 2,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "abcd0123-01ab-23cd-0123-abcdef123456",
        "BillingModeSummary": {
            "BillingMode": "PROVISIONED",
            "LastUpdateToPayPerRequestDateTime":
 "2020-07-28T13:14:48.366000-07:00"
        },
        "GlobalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "AlbumTitle-index",
                "KeySchema": [
```

```
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "ALL"
                },
                "IndexStatus": "CREATING",
                "Backfilling": false,
                "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                    "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
                    "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
                    "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/index/AlbumTitle-index"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating a Table in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To enable DynamoDB Streams on a table

The following command enables DynamoDB Streams on the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_IMAGE
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
```

```
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "UPDATING",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T15:59:49.473000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "LastIncreaseDateTime": "2020-07-28T12:59:17.537000-07:00",
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 15,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 182,
        "ItemCount": 2,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "abcd0123-01ab-23cd-0123-abcdef123456",
        "BillingModeSummary": {
            "BillingMode": "PROVISIONED",
            "LastUpdateToPayPerRequestDateTime":
 "2020-07-28T13:14:48.366000-07:00"
        },
        "LocalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "AlbumTitleIndex",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "Artist",
```

```
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    },
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                        "KeyType": "RANGE"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "INCLUDE",
                    "NonKeyAttributes": [
                        "Year",
                        "Genre"
                    ]
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 139,
                "ItemCount": 2,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/index/AlbumTitleIndex"
            }
        ],
        "GlobalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "AlbumTitle-index",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "ALL"
                },
                "IndexStatus": "ACTIVE",
                "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                    "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
                    "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
                    "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/index/AlbumTitle-index"
            }
        ],
```

```
        "StreamSpecification": {
            "StreamEnabled": true,
            "StreamViewType": "NEW_IMAGE"
        },
        "LatestStreamLabel": "2020-07-28T21:53:39.112",
        "LatestStreamArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/stream/2020-07-28T21:53:39.112"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating a Table in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To enable server-side encryption

The following example enables server-side encryption on the `MusicCollection` table.

```
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableDescription": {
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "AttributeType": "S"
            }
        ],
        "TableName": "MusicCollection",
        "KeySchema": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "Artist",
                "KeyType": "HASH"
```

```
            },
            {
                "AttributeName": "SongTitle",
                "KeyType": "RANGE"
            }
        ],
        "TableStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "CreationDateTime": "2020-05-26T15:59:49.473000-07:00",
        "ProvisionedThroughput": {
            "LastIncreaseDateTime": "2020-07-28T12:59:17.537000-07:00",
            "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
            "ReadCapacityUnits": 15,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
        },
        "TableSizeBytes": 182,
        "ItemCount": 2,
        "TableArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection",
        "TableId": "abcd0123-01ab-23cd-0123-abcdef123456",
        "BillingModeSummary": {
            "BillingMode": "PROVISIONED",
            "LastUpdateToPayPerRequestDateTime":
 "2020-07-28T13:14:48.366000-07:00"
        },
        "LocalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "AlbumTitleIndex",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "Artist",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    },
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                        "KeyType": "RANGE"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "INCLUDE",
                    "NonKeyAttributes": [
                        "Year",
                        "Genre"
                    ]
                },
```

```
                "IndexSizeBytes": 139,
                "ItemCount": 2,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/index/AlbumTitleIndex"
            }
        ],
        "GlobalSecondaryIndexes": [
            {
                "IndexName": "AlbumTitle-index",
                "KeySchema": [
                    {
                        "AttributeName": "AlbumTitle",
                        "KeyType": "HASH"
                    }
                ],
                "Projection": {
                    "ProjectionType": "ALL"
                },
                "IndexStatus": "ACTIVE",
                "ProvisionedThroughput": {
                    "NumberOfDecreasesToday": 0,
                    "ReadCapacityUnits": 10,
                    "WriteCapacityUnits": 10
                },
                "IndexSizeBytes": 0,
                "ItemCount": 0,
                "IndexArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/index/AlbumTitle-index"
            }
        ],
        "StreamSpecification": {
            "StreamEnabled": true,
            "StreamViewType": "NEW_IMAGE"
        },
        "LatestStreamLabel": "2020-07-28T21:53:39.112",
        "LatestStreamArn": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/
MusicCollection/stream/2020-07-28T21:53:39.112",
        "SSEDescription": {
            "Status": "UPDATING"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating a Table in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates the provisioned throughput for the given table.

```
Update-DDBTable -TableName "myTable" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the provisioned throughput for the given table.

```
Update-DDBTable -TableName "myTable" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateTimeToLive` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateTimeToLive`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

CLI

AWS CLI

To update Time to Live settings on a table

The following `update-time-to-live` example enables Time to Live on the specified table.

```
aws dynamodb update-time-to-live \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
```

```
    --time-to-live-specification Enabled=true,AttributeName=ttl
```

Output:

```
{
    "TimeToLiveSpecification": {
        "Enabled": true,
        "AttributeName": "ttl"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Time to Live in the *Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.TimeToLiveSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveResponse;

import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public UpdateTimeToLiveResponse enableTTL(final String tableName, final
 String attributeName, final Region region) {
        final TimeToLiveSpecification ttlSpec = TimeToLiveSpecification.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .enabled(true)
            .build();

        final UpdateTimeToLiveRequest request = UpdateTimeToLiveRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .timeToLiveSpecification(ttlSpec)
            .build();
```

```
        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            return ddb.updateTimeToLive(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Disable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.TimeToLiveSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveResponse;

import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public UpdateTimeToLiveResponse disableTTL(
        final String tableName, final String attributeName, final Region region)
 {
        final TimeToLiveSpecification ttlSpec = TimeToLiveSpecification.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .enabled(false)
            .build();

        final UpdateTimeToLiveRequest request = UpdateTimeToLiveRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .timeToLiveSpecification(ttlSpec)
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
```

```
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            return ddb.updateTimeToLive(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateTimeToLiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
dynamodb";

export const enableTTL = async (tableName, ttlAttribute, region = 'us-east-1') =>
 {

    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        TimeToLiveSpecification: {
            Enabled: true,
            AttributeName: ttlAttribute
        }
    };

    try {
        const response = await client.send(new UpdateTimeToLiveCommand(params));
        if (response.$metadata.httpStatusCode === 200) {
```

```
            console.log(`TTL enabled successfully for table ${tableName}, using
 attribute name ${ttlAttribute}.`);
        } else {
            console.log(`Failed to enable TTL for table ${tableName}, response
 object: ${response}`);
        }
        return response;
    } catch (e) {
        console.error(`Error enabling TTL: ${e}`);
        throw e;
    }
};

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// enableTTL('ExampleTable', 'exampleTtlAttribute');
```

Disable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateTimeToLiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
dynamodb";

export const disableTTL = async (tableName, ttlAttribute, region = 'us-east-1')
 => {

    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        TimeToLiveSpecification: {
            Enabled: false,
            AttributeName: ttlAttribute
        }
    };

    try {
        const response = await client.send(new UpdateTimeToLiveCommand(params));
        if (response.$metadata.httpStatusCode === 200) {
            console.log(`TTL disabled successfully for table ${tableName}, using
 attribute name ${ttlAttribute}.`);
        } else {
```

```
            console.log(`Failed to disable TTL for table ${tableName}, response
 object: ${response}`);
        }
        return response;
    } catch (e) {
        console.error(`Error disabling TTL: ${e}`);
        throw e;
    }
};

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// disableTTL('ExampleTable', 'exampleTtlAttribute');
```

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import boto3


def enable_ttl(table_name, ttl_attribute_name):
    """
    Enables TTL on DynamoDB table for a given attribute name
        on success, returns a status code of 200
        on error, throws an exception

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
    :param ttl_attribute_name: The name of the TTL attribute being provided to
 the table.
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

        # Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table
        response = dynamodb.update_time_to_live(
            TableName=table_name,
            TimeToLiveSpecification={"Enabled": True, "AttributeName":
 ttl_attribute_name},
        )
```

```
        # In the returned response, check for a successful status code.
        if response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"] == 200:
            print("TTL has been enabled successfully.")
        else:
            print(
                f"Failed to enable TTL, status code {response['ResponseMetadata']
['HTTPStatusCode']}"
            )
        return response
    except Exception as ex:
        print("Couldn't enable TTL in table %s. Here's why: %s" % (table_name,
 ex))
        raise


# your values
enable_ttl("your-table-name", "expireAt")
```

Disable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import boto3


def disable_ttl(table_name, ttl_attribute_name):
    """
    Disables TTL on DynamoDB table for a given attribute name
        on success, returns a status code of 200
        on error, throws an exception

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table being modified
    :param ttl_attribute_name: The name of the TTL attribute being provided to
 the table.
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

        # Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table
        response = dynamodb.update_time_to_live(
            TableName=table_name,
            TimeToLiveSpecification={"Enabled": False, "AttributeName":
 ttl_attribute_name},
```

```
        )

        # In the returned response, check for a successful status code.
        if response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"] == 200:
            print("TTL has been disabled successfully.")
        else:
            print(
                f"Failed to disable TTL, status code
 {response['ResponseMetadata']['HTTPStatusCode']}"
            )
    except Exception as ex:
        print("Couldn't disable TTL in table %s. Here's why: %s" % (table_name,
 ex))
        raise


# your values
disable_ttl("your-table-name", "expireAt")
```

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for DynamoDB using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in DynamoDB with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within DynamoDB or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Accelerate DynamoDB reads with DAX using an AWS SDK
- Work with advanced DynamoDB Global Secondary Index scenarios using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Build an application to submit data to a DynamoDB table
- Compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Conditionally update a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK

- Connect to a local DynamoDB instance using an AWS SDK
- Count expression operators in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data
- Create a messenger application with Step Functions
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- Create a DynamoDB table with a Global Secondary Index using the AWS SDK
- Create a DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using an AWS SDK
- Create a web application to track DynamoDB data
- Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway
- Create a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK
- Create and manage DynamoDB global tables with Multi-Region Strong Consistency using an AWS SDK
- Create and manage DynamoDB global tables demonstrating MREC using an AWS SDK
- Delete DynamoDB data using PartiQL DELETE statements with an AWS SDK
- Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Insert DynamoDB data using PartiQL INSERT statements with an AWS SDK
- Invoke a Lambda function from a browser
- Manage DynamoDB Global Secondary Indexes using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Manage DynamoDB resource-based policies using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Monitor performance of Amazon DynamoDB using an AWS SDK
- Perform advanced DynamoDB query operations using an AWS SDK
- Perform list operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Perform map operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Perform set operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table by using batches of PartiQL statements and an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using PartiQL and an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using a Global Secondary Index with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table using a date range in the sort key with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamic filter expression with an AWS SDK

- Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table with strongly consistent reads using an AWS SDK
- Query DynamoDB data using PartiQL SELECT statements with an AWS SDK
- Query a DynamoDB table for TTL items using an AWS SDK
- Query DynamoDB tables using date and time patterns with an AWS SDK
- Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK
- Set up Attribute-Based Access Control for DynamoDB using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Understand update expression order in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Update a DynamoDB table setting with warm throughput using an AWS SDK
- Update a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK
- Update DynamoDB data using PartiQL UPDATE statements with an AWS SDK
- Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
- Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions
- Use a document model for DynamoDB using an AWS SDK
- Use a high-level object persistence model for DynamoDB using an AWS SDK
- Use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Use conditional operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Use expression attribute names in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function
- Work with DynamoDB Local Secondary Indexes using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB global tables and multi-Region replication with eventual consistency (MREC) using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB resource tagging using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB table encryption using AWS Command Line Interface v2

Accelerate DynamoDB reads with DAX using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create and write data to a table with both the DAX and SDK clients.
- Get, query, and scan the table with both clients and compare their performance.

For more information, see Developing with the DynamoDB Accelerator Client.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a table with either the DAX or Boto3 client.

```
import boto3


def create_dax_table(dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Creates a DynamoDB table.

    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The newly created table.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table_name = "TryDaxTable"
    params = {
        "TableName": table_name,
        "KeySchema": [
            {"AttributeName": "partition_key", "KeyType": "HASH"},
            {"AttributeName": "sort_key", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
        ],
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {"AttributeName": "partition_key", "AttributeType": "N"},
            {"AttributeName": "sort_key", "AttributeType": "N"},
        ],
```

```
        "BillingMode": "PAY_PER_REQUEST",
    }
    table = dyn_resource.create_table(**params)
    print(f"Creating {table_name}...")
    table.wait_until_exists()
    return table


if __name__ == "__main__":
    dax_table = create_dax_table()
    print(f"Created table.")
```

Write test data to the table.

```
import boto3


def write_data_to_dax_table(key_count, item_size, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Writes test data to the demonstration table.

    :param key_count: The number of partition and sort keys to use to populate
 the
                      table. The total number of items is key_count * key_count.
    :param item_size: The size of non-key data for each test item.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    some_data = "X" * item_size

    for partition_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
        for sort_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
            table.put_item(
                Item={
                    "partition_key": partition_key,
                    "sort_key": sort_key,
                    "some_data": some_data,
                }
            )
```

```
            print(f"Put item ({partition_key}, {sort_key}) succeeded.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    write_key_count = 10
    write_item_size = 1000
    print(
        f"Writing {write_key_count*write_key_count} items to the table. "
        f"Each item is {write_item_size} characters."
    )
    write_data_to_dax_table(write_key_count, write_item_size)
```

Get items for a number of iterations for both the DAX client and the Boto3 client and report the time spent for each.

```
import argparse
import sys
import time
import amazondax
import boto3


def get_item_test(key_count, iterations, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Gets items from the table a specified number of times. The time before the
    first iteration and the time after the last iteration are both captured
    and reported.

    :param key_count: The number of items to get from the table in each
 iteration.
    :param iterations: The number of iterations to run.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The start and end times of the test.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    start = time.perf_counter()
    for _ in range(iterations):
        for partition_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
            for sort_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
```

```
                table.get_item(
                    Key={"partition_key": partition_key, "sort_key": sort_key}
                )
                print(".", end="")
                sys.stdout.flush()
    print()
    end = time.perf_counter()
    return start, end


if __name__ == "__main__":
    # pylint: disable=not-context-manager
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "endpoint_url",
        nargs="?",
        help="When specified, the DAX cluster endpoint. Otherwise, DAX is not
 used.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    test_key_count = 10
    test_iterations = 50
    if args.endpoint_url:
        print(
            f"Getting each item from the table {test_iterations} times, "
            f"using the DAX client."
        )
        # Use a with statement so the DAX client closes the cluster after
 completion.
        with amazondax.AmazonDaxClient.resource(endpoint_url=args.endpoint_url)
 as dax:
            test_start, test_end = get_item_test(
                test_key_count, test_iterations, dyn_resource=dax
            )
    else:
        print(
            f"Getting each item from the table {test_iterations} times, "
            f"using the Boto3 client."
        )
        test_start, test_end = get_item_test(test_key_count, test_iterations)
    print(
        f"Total time: {test_end - test_start:.4f} sec. Average time: "
        f"{(test_end - test_start)/ test_iterations}."
```

```
    )
```

Query the table for a number of iterations for both the DAX client and the Boto3 client and report the time spent for each.

```
import argparse
import time
import sys
import amazondax
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_test(partition_key, sort_keys, iterations, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Queries the table a specified number of times. The time before the
    first iteration and the time after the last iteration are both captured
    and reported.

    :param partition_key: The partition key value to use in the query. The query
                          returns items that have partition keys equal to this
 value.
    :param sort_keys: The range of sort key values for the query. The query
 returns
                      items that have sort key values between these two values.
    :param iterations: The number of iterations to run.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The start and end times of the test.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    key_condition_expression = Key("partition_key").eq(partition_key) & Key(
        "sort_key"
    ).between(*sort_keys)

    start = time.perf_counter()
    for _ in range(iterations):
        table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition_expression)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
```

```
    print()
    end = time.perf_counter()
    return start, end


if __name__ == "__main__":
    # pylint: disable=not-context-manager
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "endpoint_url",
        nargs="?",
        help="When specified, the DAX cluster endpoint. Otherwise, DAX is not
 used.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    test_partition_key = 5
    test_sort_keys = (2, 9)
    test_iterations = 100
    if args.endpoint_url:
        print(f"Querying the table {test_iterations} times, using the DAX
 client.")
        # Use a with statement so the DAX client closes the cluster after
 completion.
        with amazondax.AmazonDaxClient.resource(endpoint_url=args.endpoint_url)
 as dax:
            test_start, test_end = query_test(
                test_partition_key, test_sort_keys, test_iterations,
 dyn_resource=dax
            )
    else:
        print(f"Querying the table {test_iterations} times, using the Boto3
 client.")
        test_start, test_end = query_test(
            test_partition_key, test_sort_keys, test_iterations
        )

    print(
        f"Total time: {test_end - test_start:.4f} sec. Average time: "
        f"{(test_end - test_start)/test_iterations}."
    )
```

Scan the table for a number of iterations for both the DAX client and the Boto3 client and report the time spent for each.

```
import argparse
import time
import sys
import amazondax
import boto3


def scan_test(iterations, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Scans the table a specified number of times. The time before the
    first iteration and the time after the last iteration are both captured
    and reported.

    :param iterations: The number of iterations to run.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The start and end times of the test.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    start = time.perf_counter()
    for _ in range(iterations):
        table.scan()
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print()
    end = time.perf_counter()
    return start, end


if __name__ == "__main__":
    # pylint: disable=not-context-manager
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "endpoint_url",
        nargs="?",
        help="When specified, the DAX cluster endpoint. Otherwise, DAX is not
 used.",
    )
```

```
    args = parser.parse_args()

    test_iterations = 100
    if args.endpoint_url:
        print(f"Scanning the table {test_iterations} times, using the DAX
 client.")
        # Use a with statement so the DAX client closes the cluster after
 completion.
        with amazondax.AmazonDaxClient.resource(endpoint_url=args.endpoint_url)
 as dax:
            test_start, test_end = scan_test(test_iterations, dyn_resource=dax)
    else:
        print(f"Scanning the table {test_iterations} times, using the Boto3
 client.")
        test_start, test_end = scan_test(test_iterations)
    print(
        f"Total time: {test_end - test_start:.4f} sec. Average time: "
        f"{(test_end - test_start)/test_iterations}."
    )
```

Delete the table.

```
import boto3


def delete_dax_table(dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Deletes the demonstration table.

    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    table.delete()

    print(f"Deleting {table.name}...")
    table.wait_until_not_exists()


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    delete_dax_table()
    print("Table deleted!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan

Work with advanced DynamoDB Global Secondary Index scenarios using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to work with advanced Global Secondary Index configurations.

- Create a table with multiple GSIs.
- Create a table with on-demand capacity and GSI.
- Put items into a table with multiple GSIs.
- Query multiple GSIs with different conditions.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with multiple GSIs.

```
# Create a table with multiple GSIs
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=AlbumTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Genre,AttributeType=S \
```

```
        AttributeName=Year,AttributeType=N \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "[
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"AlbumIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [{\"AttributeName\":\"AlbumTitle\",\"KeyType\":
\"HASH\"}],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"ALL\"}
            },
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"GenreYearIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"Genre\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"Year\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"INCLUDE\",
\"NonKeyAttributes\":[\"Artist\",\"SongTitle\"]}
            }
        ]"
```

Create a table with on-demand capacity and GSI.

```
# Create a table with on-demand capacity and GSI
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicOnDemand \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Genre,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "[
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"GenreIndex\",
```

```
                \"KeySchema\": [{\"AttributeName\":\"Genre\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH
\"}],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"ALL\"}
            }
        ]"
```

Put items into a table with multiple GSIs.

```
# Add items to MusicLibrary table
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --item '{
        "Artist": {"S": "The Beatles"},
        "SongTitle": {"S": "Hey Jude"},
        "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Past Masters"},
        "Genre": {"S": "Rock"},
        "Year": {"N": "1968"}
    }'

aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --item '{
        "Artist": {"S": "Miles Davis"},
        "SongTitle": {"S": "So What"},
        "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Kind of Blue"},
        "Genre": {"S": "Jazz"},
        "Year": {"N": "1959"}
    }'
```

Query items from a table with multiple GSIs.

```
# Query the AlbumIndex GSI
echo "Querying AlbumIndex GSI:"
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --index-name AlbumIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "AlbumTitle = :album" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":album":{"S":"Kind of Blue"}}'

# Query the GenreYearIndex GSI with a range condition
echo "Querying GenreYearIndex GSI with range condition:"
```

```
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --index-name GenreYearIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "Genre = :genre AND #yr > :year" \
    --expression-attribute-names '{"#yr": "Year"}' \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":genre":{"S":"Rock"},":year":{"N":"1965"}}'
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - PutItem
  - Query

Build an application to submit data to a DynamoDB table

The following code examples show how to build an application that submits data to an Amazon DynamoDB table and notifies you when a user updates the table.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a dynamic web application that submits data using the Amazon DynamoDB Java API and sends a text message using the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example shows how to build an app that enables users to submit data to an Amazon DynamoDB table, and send a text message to the administrator using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

Compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB.

- Use the IN operator to compare multiple values with a single attribute.
- Compare the IN operator with multiple OR conditions.
- Understand the performance and expression complexity benefits of using IN.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanResponse;
```

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Locale;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Queries a table using the IN operator to compare multiple values with a
 single attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the IN operator in a filter
 expression
     * to match an attribute against multiple values.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key to query
     * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
     * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static QueryResponse compareMultipleValues(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        String partitionKeyName,
        AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
        String attributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

        // Create expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pkName", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attrName", attributeName);

        // Create expression attribute values
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":pkValue", partitionKeyValue);

        // Add values for IN operator
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":val" + i, valuesList.get(i));
        }
```

```
        // Build the IN clause
        StringBuilder inClause = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                inClause.append(", ");
            }
            inClause.append(":val").append(i);
        }

        // Define the query parameters
        QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression("#pkName = :pkValue")
            .filterExpression("#attrName IN (" + inClause.toString() + ")")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the query operation
        return dynamoDbClient.query(request);
    }

    /**
     * Queries a table using multiple OR conditions to compare multiple values
with a single attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates the alternative approach to using the IN
operator,
     * by using multiple OR conditions.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key to query
     * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
     * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static QueryResponse compareWithOrConditions(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        String partitionKeyName,
```

```
        AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
        String attributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

        // Create expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pkName", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attrName", attributeName);

        // Create expression attribute values
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":pkValue", partitionKeyValue);

        // Add values for OR conditions
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":val" + i, valuesList.get(i));
        }

        // Build the OR conditions
        StringBuilder orConditions = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                orConditions.append(" OR ");
            }
            orConditions.append("#attrName = :val").append(i);
        }

        // Define the query parameters
        QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression("#pkName = :pkValue")
            .filterExpression(orConditions.toString())
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the query operation
        return dynamoDbClient.query(request);
    }

    /**
     * Compares the performance of using the IN operator versus multiple OR
conditions.
     *
```

```
    * <p>This method demonstrates the performance difference between using the
IN operator
    * and using multiple OR conditions.
    *
    * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
    * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
    * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
    * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key to query
    * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
    * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
    * @return Map containing the performance comparison results
    */
   public static Map<String, Object> comparePerformance(
       DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
       String tableName,
       String partitionKeyName,
       AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
       String attributeName,
       List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

       Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();

       try {
           // Measure performance of IN operator
           long inStartTime = System.nanoTime();
           QueryResponse inResponse = compareMultipleValues(
               dynamoDbClient, tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
attributeName, valuesList);
           long inEndTime = System.nanoTime();
           long inDuration = inEndTime - inStartTime;

           // Measure performance of OR conditions
           long orStartTime = System.nanoTime();
           QueryResponse orResponse = compareWithOrConditions(
               dynamoDbClient, tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
attributeName, valuesList);
           long orEndTime = System.nanoTime();
           long orDuration = orEndTime - orStartTime;

           // Record results
           results.put("inOperatorDuration", inDuration);
           results.put("orConditionsDuration", orDuration);
           results.put("inOperatorItems", inResponse.count());
           results.put("orConditionsItems", orResponse.count());
```

```
            results.put("inOperatorExpression", "IN operator with " +
valuesList.size() + " values");
            results.put("orConditionsExpression", valuesList.size() + " OR
conditions");
            results.put("success", true);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            results.put("success", false);
            results.put("error", e.getMessage());
        }

        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Scans a table using the IN operator with a large number of values.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the IN operator with a large number
of values,
     * which can help stay within the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
     * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
     * @return The scan response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static ScanResponse scanWithLargeInClause(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, String attributeName,
List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

        // Create expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attrName", attributeName);

        // Create expression attribute values
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

        // Add values for IN operator
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":val" + i, valuesList.get(i));
        }
```

```
        // Build the IN clause
        StringBuilder inClause = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                inClause.append(", ");
            }
            inClause.append(":val").append(i);
        }

        // Define the scan parameters
        ScanRequest request = ScanRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .filterExpression("#attrName IN (" + inClause.toString() + ")")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the scan operation
        return dynamoDbClient.scan(request);
    }

    /**
     * Generates a list of sample values for testing.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to generate a list of sample values for testing.
     *
     * @param valueType The type of values to generate (string, number, or
boolean)
     * @param count The number of values to generate
     * @return List of generated attribute values
     */
    public static List<AttributeValue> generateSampleValues(String valueType, int
count) {
        List<AttributeValue> values = new ArrayList<>();

        for (int i = 0; i < count; i++) {
            AttributeValue value;

            switch (valueType.toLowerCase(Locale.ROOT)) {
                case "string":
                    value = AttributeValue.builder().s("Value" + i).build();
                    break;
                case "number":
```

```
                    value =
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i)).build();
                    break;
                case "boolean":
                    value = AttributeValue.builder().bool(i % 2 == 0).build();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Unsupported value type: "
+ valueType);
            }

            values.add(value);
        }

        return values;
    }
```

Example usage of comparing multiple values with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
tableName) {
        System.out.println("Demonstrating how to compare multiple values with a
single attribute in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Using the IN operator
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Using the IN operator");
            List<AttributeValue> categories = List.of(
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Computers").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Accessories").build());

            QueryResponse inResponse = compareMultipleValues(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Department",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Retail").build(),
                "Category",
                categories);

            System.out.println("Found " + inResponse.count() + " items using IN
operator");
```

```
            System.out.println("Items: " + inResponse.items());

            // Example 2: Using multiple OR conditions
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Using multiple OR conditions");
            QueryResponse orResponse = compareWithOrConditions(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Department",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Retail").build(),
                "Category",
                categories);

            System.out.println("Found " + orResponse.count() + " items using OR
conditions");
            System.out.println("Items: " + orResponse.items());

            // Example 3: Performance comparison
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Performance comparison");
            Map<String, Object> perfComparison = comparePerformance(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Department",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Retail").build(),
                "Category",
                categories);

            if ((boolean) perfComparison.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("IN operator duration: " +
perfComparison.get("inOperatorDuration") + " ns");
                System.out.println("OR conditions duration: " +
perfComparison.get("orConditionsDuration") + " ns");
                System.out.println("IN operator found " +
perfComparison.get("inOperatorItems") + " items");
                System.out.println("OR conditions found " +
perfComparison.get("orConditionsItems") + " items");
                System.out.println("Expression complexity comparison:");
                System.out.println("  IN operator: " +
perfComparison.get("inOperatorExpression"));
                System.out.println("  OR conditions: " +
perfComparison.get("orConditionsExpression"));
            } else {
                System.out.println("Performance comparison failed: " +
perfComparison.get("error"));
            }
```

```
            // Example 4: Using IN with a large number of values
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Using IN with a large number of
values");
            List<AttributeValue> productIds = generateSampleValues("string", 20);

            ScanResponse largeInResponse = scanWithLargeInClause(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, "ProductId", productIds);

            System.out.println(
                "Found " + largeInResponse.count() + " items using IN with " +
productIds.size() + " values");

            // Explain the benefits of using IN
            System.out.println("\nKey points about using the IN operator in
DynamoDB:");
            System.out.println("1. The IN operator allows comparing a single
attribute against multiple values");
            System.out.println("2. IN is more concise than using multiple OR
conditions");
            System.out.println("3. IN counts as only 1 operator regardless of the
number of values");
            System.out.println("4. Multiple OR conditions count as 1 operator per
condition plus 1 per OR");
            System.out.println("5. Using IN helps stay within the 300 operator
limit for complex expressions");
            System.out.println("6. IN can be used in filter expressions and
condition expressions");
            System.out.println("7. The IN operator supports up to 100 comparison
values");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - Query
  - Scan

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Compare multiple values with a single attribute using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ScanCommand,
  QueryCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Query or scan a DynamoDB table to find items where an attribute matches any
 value from a list.
 *
 * This function demonstrates the use of the IN operator to compare a single
 attribute
 * against multiple possible values, which is more efficient than using multiple
 OR conditions.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} attributeName - The name of the attribute to compare against
 the values list
 * @param {Array} valuesList - List of values to compare the attribute against
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyName] - Optional name of the partition key
 attribute for query operations
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyValue] - Optional value of the partition key to
 query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB containing the
 matching items
 */
async function compareMultipleValues(
  config,
  tableName,
  attributeName,
  valuesList,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
```

```
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the filter expression using the IN operator
  const filterExpression = `${attributeName} IN (${valuesList.map((_, index) =>
`:val${index}`).join(', ')})`;

  // Create expression attribute values for the values list
  const expressionAttributeValues = valuesList.reduce((acc, val, index) => {
    acc[`:val${index}`] = val;
    return acc;
  }, {});

  // If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
  if (partitionKeyName && partitionKeyValue) {
    const keyCondition = `${partitionKeyName} = :partitionKey`;
    expressionAttributeValues[':partitionKey'] = partitionKeyValue;

    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: keyCondition,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous
query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new QueryCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
```

```
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  } else {
    // Otherwise, perform a scan operation
    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous scan
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new ScanCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  }
```

```
}

/**
 * Alternative implementation using multiple OR conditions instead of the IN
 operator.
 *
 * This function is provided for comparison to show why using the IN operator is
 preferable.
 * With many values, this approach becomes verbose and less efficient.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} attributeName - The name of the attribute to compare against
 the values list
 * @param {Array} valuesList - List of values to compare the attribute against
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyName] - Optional name of the partition key
 attribute for query operations
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyValue] - Optional value of the partition key to
 query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB containing the
 matching items
 */
async function compareWithOrConditions(
  config,
  tableName,
  attributeName,
  valuesList,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // If no values provided, return empty result
  if (!valuesList || valuesList.length === 0) {
    return {
      Items: [],
      Count: 0
    };
  }

  // Create the filter expression using multiple OR conditions
```

```
  const filterConditions = valuesList.map((_, index) => `${attributeName} = :val
${index}`);
  const filterExpression = filterConditions.join(' OR ');

  // Create expression attribute values for the values list
  const expressionAttributeValues = valuesList.reduce((acc, val, index) => {
    acc[`:val${index}`] = val;
    return acc;
  }, {});

  // If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
  if (partitionKeyName && partitionKeyValue) {
    const keyCondition = `${partitionKeyName} = :partitionKey`;
    expressionAttributeValues[':partitionKey'] = partitionKeyValue;

    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: keyCondition,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous
 query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new QueryCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);
```

```
    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  } else {
    // Otherwise, perform a scan operation
    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous scan
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new ScanCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  }
}
```

Example usage of comparing multiple values with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use the compareMultipleValues function.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const attributeName = "Category";
  const valuesList = ["Electronics", "Computers", "Accessories"];

  console.log(`Searching for products in any of these categories:
 ${valuesList.join(', ')}`);

  try {
    // Using the IN operator (recommended approach)
    console.log("\nApproach 1: Using the IN operator");
    const response = await compareMultipleValues(
      config,
      tableName,
      attributeName,
      valuesList
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response.Count} products in the specified categories`);

    // Using multiple OR conditions (alternative approach)
    console.log("\nApproach 2: Using multiple OR conditions");
    const response2 = await compareWithOrConditions(
      config,
      tableName,
      attributeName,
      valuesList
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response2.Count} products in the specified categories`);

    // Example with a query operation
    console.log("\nQuerying a specific manufacturer's products in multiple
 categories");
```

```
    const partitionKeyName = "Manufacturer";
    const partitionKeyValue = "Acme";

    const response3 = await compareMultipleValues(
      config,
      tableName,
      attributeName,
      valuesList,
      partitionKeyName,
      partitionKeyValue
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response3.Count} Acme products in the specified
 categories`);

    // Explain the benefits of using the IN operator
    console.log("\nBenefits of using the IN operator:");
    console.log("1. More concise expression compared to multiple OR conditions");
    console.log("2. Better readability and maintainability");
    console.log("3. Potentially better performance with large value lists");
    console.log("4. Simpler code that's less prone to errors");
    console.log("5. Easier to modify when adding or removing values");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - Query
  - Scan

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Compare multiple values with a single attribute using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key
from typing import Any, Dict, List, Optional
```

```
def compare_multiple_values(
    table_name: str,
    attribute_name: str,
    values_list: List[Any],
    partition_key_name: Optional[str] = None,
    partition_key_value: Optional[str] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query or scan a DynamoDB table to find items where an attribute matches any
 value from a list.

    This function demonstrates the use of the IN operator to compare a single
 attribute
    against multiple possible values, which is more efficient than using multiple
 OR conditions.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to compare against the
 values list.
        values_list (List[Any]): List of values to compare the attribute against.
        partition_key_name (Optional[str]): The name of the partition key
 attribute for query operations.
        partition_key_value (Optional[str]): The value of the partition key to
 query.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the matching items.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Create the filter expression using the is_in method
    filter_expression = Attr(attribute_name).is_in(values_list)

    # If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
    if partition_key_name and partition_key_value:
        key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
        response = table.query(
            KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 FilterExpression=filter_expression
```

```
        )
    else:
        # Otherwise, perform a scan operation
        response = table.scan(FilterExpression=filter_expression)

    # Handle pagination if there are more results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    while "LastEvaluatedKey" in response:
        if partition_key_name and partition_key_value:
            response = table.query(
                KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
                ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"],
            )
        else:
            response = table.scan(
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
 ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"]
            )
        items.extend(response.get("Items", []))

    # Return the complete result
    return {"Items": items, "Count": len(items)}


def compare_with_or_conditions(
    table_name: str,
    attribute_name: str,
    values_list: List[Any],
    partition_key_name: Optional[str] = None,
    partition_key_value: Optional[str] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Alternative implementation using multiple OR conditions instead of the IN
 operator.

    This function is provided for comparison to show why using the IN operator is
 preferable.
    With many values, this approach becomes verbose and less efficient.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to compare against the
 values list.
```

```
        values_list (List[Any]): List of values to compare the attribute against.
        partition_key_name (Optional[str]): The name of the partition key
attribute for query operations.
        partition_key_value (Optional[str]): The value of the partition key to
query.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the matching items.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Create a filter expression with multiple OR conditions
    filter_expression = None
    for value in values_list:
        condition = Attr(attribute_name).eq(value)
        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression | condition

    # If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
    if partition_key_name and partition_key_value and filter_expression:
        key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
        response = table.query(
            KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
FilterExpression=filter_expression
        )
    elif filter_expression:
        # Otherwise, perform a scan operation
        response = table.scan(FilterExpression=filter_expression)
    else:
        # Return empty response if no values provided
        return {"Items": [], "Count": 0}

    # Handle pagination if there are more results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    while "LastEvaluatedKey" in response:
        if partition_key_name and partition_key_value:
            response = table.query(
                KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
                ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"],
```

```
            )
        else:
            response = table.scan(
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
 ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"]
            )
        items.extend(response.get("Items", []))

    # Return the complete result
    return {"Items": items, "Count": len(items)}
```

Example usage of comparing multiple values with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the compare_multiple_values function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    attribute_name = "Category"
    values_list = ["Electronics", "Computers", "Accessories"]

    print(f"Searching for products in any of these categories: {values_list}")

    # Using the IN operator (recommended approach)
    print("\nApproach 1: Using the IN operator")
    response = compare_multiple_values(
        table_name=table_name, attribute_name=attribute_name,
 values_list=values_list
    )

    print(f"Found {response['Count']} products in the specified categories")

    # Using multiple OR conditions (alternative approach)
    print("\nApproach 2: Using multiple OR conditions")
    response2 = compare_with_or_conditions(
        table_name=table_name, attribute_name=attribute_name,
 values_list=values_list
    )

    print(f"Found {response2['Count']} products in the specified categories")
```

```
    # Example with a query operation
    print("\nQuerying a specific manufacturer's products in multiple categories")
    partition_key_name = "Manufacturer"
    partition_key_value = "Acme"

    response3 = compare_multiple_values(
        table_name=table_name,
        attribute_name=attribute_name,
        values_list=values_list,
        partition_key_name=partition_key_name,
        partition_key_value=partition_key_value,
    )

    print(f"Found {response3['Count']} Acme products in the specified
categories")

    # Explain the benefits of using the IN operator
    print("\nBenefits of using the IN operator:")
    print("1. More concise expression compared to multiple OR conditions")
    print("2. Better readability and maintainability")
    print("3. Potentially better performance with large value lists")
    print("4. Simpler code that's less prone to errors")
    print("5. Easier to modify when adding or removing values")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Query
  - Scan

Conditionally update a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to conditionally update an item's TTL.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Update TTL on on an existing DynamoDB Item in a table, with a condition.

```
package com.amazon.samplelib.ttl;

import com.amazon.samplelib.CodeSampleUtils;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ConditionalCheckFailedException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;

/**
 * Updates an item in a DynamoDB table with TTL attributes using a conditional
 expression.
 * This class demonstrates how to conditionally update TTL expiration timestamps.
 */
public class UpdateTTLConditional {

    private static final String USAGE =
        """
            Usage:
                <tableName> <primaryKey> <sortKey> <region>
            Where:
                tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table being queried.
                primaryKey - The name of the primary key. Also known as the hash
 or partition key.
                sortKey - The name of the sort key. Also known as the range
 attribute.
                region (optional) - The AWS region that the Amazon DynamoDB table
 is located in. (Default: us-east-1)
            """;
    private static final int DAYS_TO_EXPIRE = 90;
    private static final int SECONDS_PER_DAY = 24 * 60 * 60;
    private static final String PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR = "primaryKey";
    private static final String SORT_KEY_ATTR = "sortKey";
    private static final String UPDATED_AT_ATTR = "updatedAt";
    private static final String EXPIRE_AT_ATTR = "expireAt";
    private static final String UPDATE_EXPRESSION = "SET " + UPDATED_AT_ATTR +
 "=:c, " + EXPIRE_AT_ATTR + "=:e";
```

```
    private static final String CONDITION_EXPRESSION = "attribute_exists(" +
PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR + ")";
    private static final String SUCCESS_MESSAGE = "%s UpdateItem operation with
TTL successful.";
    private static final String CONDITION_FAILED_MESSAGE = "Condition check
failed. Item does not exist.";
    private static final String TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR = "Error: The Amazon
DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be found.";

    private final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    /**
     * Constructs an UpdateTTLConditional with a default DynamoDB client.
     */
    public UpdateTTLConditional() {
        this.dynamoDbClient = null;
    }

    /**
     * Constructs an UpdateTTLConditional with the specified DynamoDB client.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client to use
     */
    public UpdateTTLConditional(final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {
        this.dynamoDbClient = dynamoDbClient;
    }

    /**
     * Main method to demonstrate conditionally updating an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     */
    public static void main(final String[] args) {
        try {
            int result = new UpdateTTLConditional().processArgs(args);
            System.exit(result);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Process command line arguments and conditionally update an item with TTL.
```

```
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     * @return 0 if successful, non-zero otherwise
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException If the table doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException If an error occurs during the operation
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException If arguments are invalid
     */
    public int processArgs(final String[] args) {
        // Argument validation (remove or replace this line when reusing this
code)
        CodeSampleUtils.validateArgs(args, new int[] {3, 4}, USAGE);

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String primaryKey = args[1];
        final String sortKey = args[2];
        final Region region = Optional.ofNullable(args.length > 3 ? args[3] :
null)
            .map(Region::of)
            .orElse(Region.US_EAST_1);

        // Get current time in epoch second format
        final long currentTime = System.currentTimeMillis() / 1000;

        // Calculate expiration time 90 days from now in epoch second format
        final long expireDate = currentTime + (DAYS_TO_EXPIRE * SECONDS_PER_DAY);

        // Create the key map for the item to update
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> keyMap = Map.of(
            PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR, AttributeValue.builder().s(primaryKey).build(),
            SORT_KEY_ATTR, AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKey).build());

        // Create the expression attribute values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = Map.of(
            ":c",
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(currentTime)).build(),
            ":e",
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(expireDate)).build());

        final UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(keyMap)
            .updateExpression(UPDATE_EXPRESSION)
            .conditionExpression(CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
```

```
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final UpdateItemResponse response = ddb.updateItem(request);
            System.out.println(String.format(SUCCESS_MESSAGE, tableName));
            return 0;
        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            System.err.println(CONDITION_FAILED_MESSAGE);
            throw e;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Update TTL on on an existing DynamoDB Item in a table, with a condition.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateItemCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { marshall, unmarshall } from "@aws-sdk/util-dynamodb";

export const updateItemConditional = async (tableName, partitionKey, sortKey,
 region = 'us-east-1', newAttribute = 'default-value') => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const currentTime = Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000);

    const params = {
```

```
        TableName: tableName,
        Key: marshall({
            artist: partitionKey,
            album: sortKey
        }),
        UpdateExpression: "SET newAttribute = :newAttribute",
        ConditionExpression: "expireAt > :expiration",
        ExpressionAttributeValues: marshall({
            ':newAttribute': newAttribute,
            ':expiration': currentTime
        }),
        ReturnValues: "ALL_NEW"
    };

    try {
        const response = await client.send(new UpdateItemCommand(params));
        const responseData = unmarshall(response.Attributes);
        console.log("Item updated successfully: ", responseData);
        return responseData;
    } catch (error) {
        if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
            console.log("Condition check failed: Item's 'expireAt' is expired.");
        } else {
            console.error("Error updating item: ", error);
        }
        throw error;
    }
};

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// updateItemConditional('your-table-name', 'your-partition-key-value', 'your-
sort-key-value');
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Update TTL on on an existing DynamoDB Item in a table, with a condition.

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def update_dynamodb_item_ttl(table_name, region, primary_key, sort_key,
 ttl_attribute):
    """
    Updates an existing record in a DynamoDB table with a new or updated TTL
 attribute.

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
    :param region: AWS Region of the table - example `us-east-1`
    :param primary_key: one attribute known as the partition key.
    :param sort_key: Also known as a range attribute.
    :param ttl_attribute: name of the TTL attribute in the target DynamoDB table
    :return:
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Generate updated TTL in epoch second format
        updated_expiration_time = int((datetime.now() +
 timedelta(days=90)).timestamp())

        # Define the update expression for adding/updating a new attribute
        update_expression = "SET newAttribute = :val1"

        # Define the condition expression for checking if 'expireAt' is not
 expired
        condition_expression = "expireAt > :val2"

        # Define the expression attribute values
        expression_attribute_values = {":val1": ttl_attribute, ":val2":
 updated_expiration_time}

        response = table.update_item(
            Key={"primaryKey": primary_key, "sortKey": sort_key},
            UpdateExpression=update_expression,
            ConditionExpression=condition_expression,
            ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        )
```

```
        print("Item updated successfully.")
        return response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"]  # Ideally a 200 OK
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            print("Condition check failed: Item's 'expireAt' is expired.")
        else:
            print(f"Error updating item: {e}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating item: {e}")


# replace with your values
update_dynamodb_item_ttl(
    "your-table-name",
    "us-east-1",
    "your-partition-key-value",
    "your-sort-key-value",
    "your-ttl-attribute-value",
)
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Connect to a local DynamoDB instance using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to override an endpoint URL to connect to a local development deployment of DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see DynamoDB Local.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Lists your tables from a local DynamoDB instance by setting the SDK Config's
/// endpoint_url and test_credentials.
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();

    let config = aws_config::defaults(aws_config::BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .test_credentials()
        // DynamoDB run locally uses port 8000 by default.
        .endpoint_url("http://localhost:8000")
        .load()
        .await;
    let dynamodb_local_config =
 aws_sdk_dynamodb::config::Builder::from(&config).build();

    let client = aws_sdk_dynamodb::Client::from_conf(dynamodb_local_config);

    let list_resp = client.list_tables().send().await;
    match list_resp {
        Ok(resp) => {
            println!("Found {} tables", resp.table_names().len());
            for name in resp.table_names() {
                println!("  {}", name);
            }
        }
        Err(err) => eprintln!("Failed to list local dynamodb tables: {err:?}"),
    }
}
```

Count expression operators in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to count expression operators in DynamoDB.

- Understand DynamoDB's 300 operator limit.
- Count operators in complex expressions.
- Optimize expressions to stay within limits.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate expression operator counting using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.regex.Matcher;
import java.util.regex.Pattern;

    /**
     * Creates a complex filter expression with a specified number of conditions.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to generate a complex expression with
     * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param conditionsCount Number of conditions to include
     * @param useAnd Whether to use AND (true) or OR (false) between conditions
     * @return Map containing the filter expression, attribute values, and
 operator count
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> createComplexFilterExpression(int
 conditionsCount, boolean useAnd) {
        // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
        StringBuilder filterExpression = new StringBuilder();
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

        // Generate the specified number of conditions
        for (int i = 0; i < conditionsCount; i++) {
            // Add the operator between conditions (except for the first one)
            if (i > 0) {
                filterExpression.append(useAnd ? " AND " : " OR ");
            }

            // Alternate between different comparison operators for variety
            String valueKey = ":val" + i;
```

```
            switch (i % 5) {
                case 0:
                    filterExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" =
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey, AttributeValue.builder().s("value" +
i).build());
                    break;
                case 1:
                    filterExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" >
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i)).build());
                    break;
                case 2:
                    filterExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" <
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
                        AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i *
10)).build());
                    break;
                case 3:
                    filterExpression
                        .append("contains(attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(", ")
                        .append(valueKey)
                        .append(")");
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey, AttributeValue.builder().s("substring" +
i).build());
                    break;
                case 4:
                    filterExpression
                        .append("attribute_exists(attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(")");
                    break;
                default:
                    // This case will never be reached, but added to satisfy
checkstyle
                    break;
```

```
            }
        }

        // Calculate the operator count
        // Each condition has 1 operator (=, >, <, contains, attribute_exists)
        // Each AND or OR between conditions is 1 operator
        int operatorCount = conditionsCount + (conditionsCount > 0 ?
conditionsCount - 1 : 0);

        // Create the result map
        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
        result.put("filterExpression", filterExpression.toString());
        result.put("expressionAttributeValues", expressionAttributeValues);
        result.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a complex update expression with a specified number of operations.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to generate a complex update expression
with
     * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param operationsCount Number of operations to include
     * @return Map containing the update expression, attribute values, and
operator count
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> createComplexUpdateExpression(int
operationsCount) {
        // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
        StringBuilder updateExpression = new StringBuilder("SET ");
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

        // Generate the specified number of SET operations
        for (int i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
            // Add comma between operations (except for the first one)
            if (i > 0) {
                updateExpression.append(", ");
            }

            // Alternate between different types of SET operations
            String valueKey = ":val" + i;
```

```
            switch (i % 3) {
                case 0:
                    // Simple assignment (1 operator: =)
                    updateExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" =
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey, AttributeValue.builder().s("value" +
i).build());
                    break;
                case 1:
                    // Addition (2 operators: = and +)
                    updateExpression
                        .append("attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(" = attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(" + ")
                        .append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i)).build());
                    break;
                case 2:
                    // Conditional assignment with if_not_exists (2 operators: =
and if_not_exists)
                    updateExpression
                        .append("attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(" = if_not_exists(attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(", ")
                        .append(valueKey)
                        .append(")");
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
                        AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i *
10)).build());
                    break;
                default:
                    // This case will never be reached, but added to satisfy
checkstyle
                    break;
            }
```

```
        }

        // Calculate the operator count
        // Each operation has 1-2 operators as noted above
        int operatorCount = 0;
        for (int i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
            operatorCount += (i % 3 == 0) ? 1 : 2;
        }

        // Create the result map
        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
        result.put("updateExpression", updateExpression.toString());
        result.put("expressionAttributeValues", expressionAttributeValues);
        result.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Test the operator limit by attempting an operation with a complex
expression.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates what happens when an expression approaches or
     * exceeds the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param operatorCount Target number of operators to include
     * @return Map containing the result of the operation attempt
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> testOperatorLimit(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, int operatorCount) {

        // Create a complex update expression with the specified operator count
        Map<String, Object> expressionData =
            createComplexUpdateExpression((int) Math.ceil(operatorCount /
1.5)); // Adjust to get close to target count

        String updateExpression = (String)
expressionData.get("updateExpression");
        @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues =
```

```
            (Map<String, AttributeValue>)
expressionData.get("expressionAttributeValues");
        int actualCount = (int) expressionData.get("operatorCount");

        System.out.println("Generated update expression with approximately " +
actualCount + " operators");

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression(updateExpression)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        try {
            // Attempt the update operation
            UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "Operation succeeded with " + actualCount + "
operators");
            result.put("data", response);
            return result;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Check if the error is due to exceeding the operator limit
            if (e.getMessage().contains("too many operators")) {
                Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
                result.put("success", false);
                result.put("message", "Operation failed: " + e.getMessage());
                result.put("operatorCount", actualCount);
                return result;
            }

            // Return other errors
            Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Operation failed: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e);
            return result;
        }
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Break down a complex expression into multiple simpler operations.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to handle expressions that would exceed
     * the 300 operator limit by breaking them into multiple operations.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param totalOperations Total number of operations to perform
     * @return Map containing the results of the operations
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> breakDownComplexExpression(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, int totalOperations) {

        // Calculate how many operations we can safely include in each batch
        // Using 150 as a conservative limit (well below 300)
        final int operationsPerBatch = 100;
        final int batchCount = (int) Math.ceil((double) totalOperations /
operationsPerBatch);

        System.out.println("Breaking down " + totalOperations + " operations into
" + batchCount + " batches");

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();
        results.put("totalBatches", batchCount);

        Map<Integer, Map<String, Object>> batchResults = new HashMap<>();

        // Process each batch
        for (int batch = 0; batch < batchCount; batch++) {
            // Calculate the operations for this batch
            int batchStart = batch * operationsPerBatch;
            int batchEnd = Math.min(batchStart + operationsPerBatch,
totalOperations);
            int batchSize = batchEnd - batchStart;

            System.out.println(
                "Processing batch " + (batch + 1) + "/" + batchCount + " with " +
batchSize + " operations");
```

```
            // Create an update expression for this batch
            Map<String, Object> expressionData =
createComplexUpdateExpression(batchSize);

            String updateExpression = (String)
expressionData.get("updateExpression");
            @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues =
                (Map<String, AttributeValue>)
expressionData.get("expressionAttributeValues");
            int operatorCount = (int) expressionData.get("operatorCount");

            // Define the update parameters
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression(updateExpression)
                .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
                .build();

            try {
                // Perform the update operation for this batch
                UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

                Map<String, Object> batchResult = new HashMap<>();
                batchResult.put("batch", batch + 1);
                batchResult.put("success", true);
                batchResult.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);
                batchResult.put("attributes", response.attributes());

                batchResults.put(batch, batchResult);

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                Map<String, Object> batchResult = new HashMap<>();
                batchResult.put("batch", batch + 1);
                batchResult.put("success", false);
                batchResult.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);
                batchResult.put("error", e.getMessage());

                batchResults.put(batch, batchResult);

                // Continue with next batch instead of breaking
                continue;
```

```
            }
        }

        results.put("results", batchResults);
        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Count operators in a DynamoDB expression based on the rules in the
documentation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how operators are counted according to the
     * DynamoDB documentation.
     *
     * @param expression The DynamoDB expression to analyze
     * @return Map containing the breakdown of operator counts
     */
    public static Map<String, Integer> countOperatorsInExpression(String
expression) {
        // Initialize counters for different operator types
        Map<String, Integer> counts = new HashMap<>();
        counts.put("comparisonOperators", 0);
        counts.put("logicalOperators", 0);
        counts.put("functions", 0);
        counts.put("arithmeticOperators", 0);
        counts.put("specialOperators", 0);
        counts.put("total", 0);

        // Count comparison operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)
        // This is a simplified approach and may not catch all cases
        int comparisonCount = 0;
        Pattern comparisonPattern = Pattern.compile("(=|<>|<=|>=|<|>)");
        Matcher comparisonMatcher = comparisonPattern.matcher(expression);
        while (comparisonMatcher.find()) {
            comparisonCount++;
        }
        counts.put("comparisonOperators", comparisonCount);

        // Count logical operators (AND, OR, NOT)
        int andCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bAND\\b");
        int orCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bOR\\b");
        int notCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bNOT\\b");
        counts.put("logicalOperators", andCount + orCount + notCount);
```

```
        // Count functions (attribute_exists, attribute_not_exists,
 attribute_type, begins_with, contains, size)
        int functionCount = countOccurrences(
            expression,
            "\\b(attribute_exists|attribute_not_exists|attribute_type|
begins_with|contains|size|if_not_exists)\\(");
        counts.put("functions", functionCount);

        // Count arithmetic operators (+ and -)
        // This is a simplified approach and may not catch all cases
        int arithmeticCount = 0;
        Pattern arithmeticPattern = Pattern.compile("[a-zA-Z0-9_)\\]]\\s*[\\+\
\-]\\s*[a-zA-Z0-9_:(]");
        Matcher arithmeticMatcher = arithmeticPattern.matcher(expression);
        while (arithmeticMatcher.find()) {
            arithmeticCount++;
        }
        counts.put("arithmeticOperators", arithmeticCount);

        // Count special operators (BETWEEN, IN)
        int betweenCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bBETWEEN\\b");
        int inCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bIN\\b");
        counts.put("specialOperators", betweenCount + inCount);

        // Add extra operators for BETWEEN (each BETWEEN includes an AND)
        int currentLogicalOps = counts.getOrDefault("logicalOperators", 0);
        counts.put("logicalOperators", currentLogicalOps + betweenCount);

        // Calculate total
        int total = counts.getOrDefault("comparisonOperators", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("logicalOperators", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("functions", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("arithmeticOperators", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("specialOperators", 0);
        counts.put("total", total);

        return counts;
    }

    /**
     * Helper method to count occurrences of a pattern in a string.
     *
     * @param text The text to search in
     * @param regex The regular expression pattern to search for
```

```
     * @return The number of occurrences
     */
    private static int countOccurrences(String text, String regex) {
        final Pattern pattern = Pattern.compile(regex);
        final Matcher matcher = pattern.matcher(text);
        int count = 0;
        while (matcher.find()) {
            count++;
        }
        return count;
    }
```

Example usage of expression operator counting with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating DynamoDB expression operator counting
 and the 300 operator limit");

        try {
            // Example 1: Analyze a simple expression
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Analyzing a simple expression");
            String simpleExpression = "Price = :price AND Rating > :rating AND
 Category IN (:cat1, :cat2, :cat3)";
            Map<String, Integer> simpleCount =
 countOperatorsInExpression(simpleExpression);

            System.out.println("Expression: " + simpleExpression);
            System.out.println("Operator count breakdown:");
            System.out.println("- Comparison operators: " +
 simpleCount.get("comparisonOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Logical operators: " +
 simpleCount.get("logicalOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Functions: " + simpleCount.get("functions"));
            System.out.println("- Arithmetic operators: " +
 simpleCount.get("arithmeticOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Special operators: " +
 simpleCount.get("specialOperators"));
```

```
            System.out.println("- Total operators: " + simpleCount.get("total"));

            // Example 2: Analyze a complex expression
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Analyzing a complex expression");
            String complexExpression = "(attribute_exists(Category) AND Size
BETWEEN :min AND :max) OR "
                + "(Price > :price AND contains(Description, :keyword) AND "
                + "(Rating >= :minRating OR Reviews > :minReviews))";
            Map<String, Integer> complexCount =
countOperatorsInExpression(complexExpression);

            System.out.println("Expression: " + complexExpression);
            System.out.println("Operator count breakdown:");
            System.out.println("- Comparison operators: " +
complexCount.get("comparisonOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Logical operators: " +
complexCount.get("logicalOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Functions: " + complexCount.get("functions"));
            System.out.println("- Arithmetic operators: " +
complexCount.get("arithmeticOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Special operators: " +
complexCount.get("specialOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Total operators: " +
complexCount.get("total"));

            // Example 3: Test approaching the operator limit
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Testing an expression approaching
the operator limit");
            Map<String, Object> approachingLimit =
testOperatorLimit(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, 290);
            System.out.println(approachingLimit.get("message"));

            // Example 4: Test exceeding the operator limit
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Testing an expression exceeding the
operator limit");
            Map<String, Object> exceedingLimit =
testOperatorLimit(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, 310);
            System.out.println(exceedingLimit.get("message"));

            // Example 5: Breaking down a complex expression
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Breaking down a complex expression
into multiple operations");
            Map<String, Object> breakdownResult =
breakDownComplexExpression(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, 500);
```

```
            @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
            Map<Integer, Map<String, Object>> results =
                (Map<Integer, Map<String, Object>>)
breakdownResult.get("results");
            System.out.println(
                "Processed " + results.size() + " of " +
breakdownResult.get("totalBatches") + " batches");

            // Explain the operator counting rules
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB expression operator
counting:");
            System.out.println("1. The maximum number of operators in any
expression is 300");
            System.out.println("2. Each comparison operator (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)
counts as 1 operator");
            System.out.println("3. Each logical operator (AND, OR, NOT) counts as
1 operator");
            System.out.println("4. Each function call (attribute_exists,
contains, etc.) counts as 1 operator");
            System.out.println("5. Each arithmetic operator (+ or -) counts as 1
operator");
            System.out.println("6. BETWEEN counts as 2 operators (BETWEEN itself
and the AND within it)");
            System.out.println("7. IN counts as 1 operator regardless of the
number of values");
            System.out.println("8. Parentheses for grouping and attribute paths
don't count as operators");
            System.out.println("9. When you exceed the limit, the error always
reports '301 operators'");
            System.out.println("10. For complex operations, break them into
multiple smaller operations");

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate expression operator counting using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  QueryCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Create a complex filter expression with a specified number of conditions.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to generate a complex expression with
 * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
 *
 * @param {number} conditionsCount - Number of conditions to include
 * @param {boolean} useAnd - Whether to use AND (true) or OR (false) between
 conditions
 * @returns {Object} - Object containing the filter expression and attribute
 values
 */
function createComplexFilterExpression(conditionsCount, useAnd = true) {
  // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
  const conditions = [];
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // Generate the specified number of conditions
  for (let i = 0; i < conditionsCount; i++) {
    // Alternate between different comparison operators for variety
    let condition;
    const valueKey = `:val${i}`;

    switch (i % 5) {
      case 0:
        condition = `attribute${i} = ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = `value${i}`;
        break;
      case 1:
        condition = `attribute${i} > ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i;
```

```
        break;
      case 2:
        condition = `attribute${i} < ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i * 10;
        break;
      case 3:
        condition = `contains(attribute${i}, ${valueKey})`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = `substring${i}`;
        break;
      case 4:
        condition = `attribute_exists(attribute${i})`;
        break;
    }

    conditions.push(condition);
  }

  // Join the conditions with AND or OR
  const operator = useAnd ? " AND " : " OR ";
  const filterExpression = conditions.join(operator);

  // Calculate the operator count
  // Each condition has 1 operator (=, >, <, contains, attribute_exists)
  // Each AND or OR between conditions is 1 operator
  const operatorCount = conditionsCount + (conditionsCount > 0 ? conditionsCount
 - 1 : 0);

  return {
    filterExpression,
    expressionAttributeValues,
    operatorCount
  };
}

/**
 * Create a complex update expression with a specified number of operations.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to generate a complex update expression with
 * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
 *
 * @param {number} operationsCount - Number of operations to include
 * @returns {Object} - Object containing the update expression and attribute
 values
 */
```

```
function createComplexUpdateExpression(operationsCount) {
  // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
  const setOperations = [];
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // Generate the specified number of SET operations
  for (let i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
    // Alternate between different types of SET operations
    let operation;
    const valueKey = `:val${i}`;

    switch (i % 3) {
      case 0:
        // Simple assignment (1 operator: =)
        operation = `attribute${i} = ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = `value${i}`;
        break;
      case 1:
        // Addition (2 operators: = and +)
        operation = `attribute${i} = attribute${i} + ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i;
        break;
      case 2:
        // Conditional assignment with if_not_exists (2 operators: = and
 if_not_exists)
        operation = `attribute${i} = if_not_exists(attribute${i}, ${valueKey})`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i * 10;
        break;
    }

    setOperations.push(operation);
  }

  // Create the update expression
  const updateExpression = `SET ${setOperations.join(", ")}`;

  // Calculate the operator count
  // Each operation has 1-2 operators as noted above
  let operatorCount = 0;
  for (let i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
    operatorCount += (i % 3 === 0) ? 1 : 2;
  }

  return {
```

```
    updateExpression,
    expressionAttributeValues,
    operatorCount
  };
}

/**
 * Test the operator limit by attempting an operation with a complex expression.
 *
 * This function demonstrates what happens when an expression approaches or
 * exceeds the 300 operator limit.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {number} operatorCount - Target number of operators to include
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation attempt
 */
async function testOperatorLimit(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  operatorCount
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create a complex update expression with the specified operator count
  const { updateExpression, expressionAttributeValues, operatorCount:
 actualCount } =
    createComplexUpdateExpression(Math.ceil(operatorCount / 1.5)); // Adjust to
 get close to target count

  console.log(`Generated update expression with approximately ${actualCount}
 operators`);

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
```

```
  };

  try {
    // Attempt the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
    return {
      success: true,
      message: `Operation succeeded with ${actualCount} operators`,
      data: response
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to exceeding the operator limit
    if (error.name === "ValidationException" &&
        error.message.includes("too many operators")) {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: `Operation failed: ${error.message}`,
        operatorCount: actualCount
      };
    }

    // Return other errors
    return {
      success: false,
      message: `Operation failed: ${error.message}`,
      error
    };
  }
}

/**
 * Break down a complex expression into multiple simpler operations.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to handle expressions that would exceed
 * the 300 operator limit by breaking them into multiple operations.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {number} totalOperations - Total number of operations to perform
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operations
 */
async function breakDownComplexExpression(
  config,
```

```
  tableName,
  key,
  totalOperations
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Calculate how many operations we can safely include in each batch
  // Using 150 as a conservative limit (well below 300)
  const operationsPerBatch = 100;
  const batchCount = Math.ceil(totalOperations / operationsPerBatch);

  console.log(`Breaking down ${totalOperations} operations into ${batchCount}
 batches`);

  const results = [];

  // Process each batch
  for (let batch = 0; batch < batchCount; batch++) {
    // Calculate the operations for this batch
    const batchStart = batch * operationsPerBatch;
    const batchEnd = Math.min(batchStart + operationsPerBatch, totalOperations);
    const batchSize = batchEnd - batchStart;

    console.log(`Processing batch ${batch + 1}/${batchCount} with ${batchSize}
 operations`);

    // Create an update expression for this batch
    const { updateExpression, expressionAttributeValues, operatorCount } =
      createComplexUpdateExpression(batchSize);

    // Define the update parameters
    const params = {
      TableName: tableName,
      Key: key,
      UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
      ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
      ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
    };

    try {
      // Perform the update operation for this batch
      const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
```

```
      results.push({
        batch: batch + 1,
        success: true,
        operatorCount,
        attributes: response.Attributes
      });
    } catch (error) {
      results.push({
        batch: batch + 1,
        success: false,
        operatorCount,
        error: error.message
      });

      // Stop processing if an error occurs
      break;
    }
  }

  return {
    totalBatches: batchCount,
    results
  };
}

/**
 * Count operators in a DynamoDB expression based on the rules in the
 documentation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how operators are counted according to the
 * DynamoDB documentation.
 *
 * @param {string} expression - The DynamoDB expression to analyze
 * @returns {Object} - Breakdown of operator counts
 */
function countOperatorsInExpression(expression) {
  // Initialize counters for different operator types
  const counts = {
    comparisonOperators: 0,
    logicalOperators: 0,
    functions: 0,
    arithmeticOperators: 0,
    specialOperators: 0,
```

```
    total: 0
  };

  // Count comparison operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)
  const comparisonRegex = /[^<>]=[^=]|<>|<=|>=|[^<]>[^=]|[^>]<[^=]/g;
  const comparisonMatches = expression.match(comparisonRegex) || [];
  counts.comparisonOperators = comparisonMatches.length;

  // Count logical operators (AND, OR, NOT)
  const andMatches = expression.match(/\bAND\b/g) || [];
  const orMatches = expression.match(/\bOR\b/g) || [];
  const notMatches = expression.match(/\bNOT\b/g) || [];
  counts.logicalOperators = andMatches.length + orMatches.length +
 notMatches.length;

  // Count functions (attribute_exists, attribute_not_exists, attribute_type,
 begins_with, contains, size)
  const functionRegex = /\b(attribute_exists|attribute_not_exists|attribute_type|
begins_with|contains|size|if_not_exists)\(/g;
  const functionMatches = expression.match(functionRegex) || [];
  counts.functions = functionMatches.length;

  // Count arithmetic operators (+ and -)
  const arithmeticMatches = expression.match(/[a-zA-Z0-9_)\]]\s*[\+\-]\s*[a-zA-
Z0-9_(:]/g) || [];
  counts.arithmeticOperators = arithmeticMatches.length;

  // Count special operators (BETWEEN, IN)
  const betweenMatches = expression.match(/\bBETWEEN\b/g) || [];
  const inMatches = expression.match(/\bIN\b/g) || [];
  counts.specialOperators = betweenMatches.length + inMatches.length;

  // Add extra operators for BETWEEN (each BETWEEN includes an AND)
  counts.logicalOperators += betweenMatches.length;

  // Calculate total
  counts.total = counts.comparisonOperators +
                 counts.logicalOperators +
                 counts.functions +
                 counts.arithmeticOperators +
                 counts.specialOperators;

  return counts;
}
```

Example usage of expression operator counting with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to work with expression operator counting.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating DynamoDB expression operator counting and the 300
 operator limit");

  try {
    // Example 1: Analyze a simple expression
    console.log("\nExample 1: Analyzing a simple expression");
    const simpleExpression = "Price = :price AND Rating > :rating AND Category IN
 (:cat1, :cat2, :cat3)";
    const simpleCount = countOperatorsInExpression(simpleExpression);

    console.log(`Expression: ${simpleExpression}`);
    console.log("Operator count breakdown:");
    console.log(`- Comparison operators: ${simpleCount.comparisonOperators}`);
    console.log(`- Logical operators: ${simpleCount.logicalOperators}`);
    console.log(`- Functions: ${simpleCount.functions}`);
    console.log(`- Arithmetic operators: ${simpleCount.arithmeticOperators}`);
    console.log(`- Special operators: ${simpleCount.specialOperators}`);
    console.log(`- Total operators: ${simpleCount.total}`);

    // Example 2: Analyze a complex expression
    console.log("\nExample 2: Analyzing a complex expression");
    const complexExpression =
      "(attribute_exists(Category) AND Size BETWEEN :min AND :max) OR " +
      "(Price > :price AND contains(Description, :keyword) AND " +
      "(Rating >= :minRating OR Reviews > :minReviews))";
    const complexCount = countOperatorsInExpression(complexExpression);

    console.log(`Expression: ${complexExpression}`);
    console.log("Operator count breakdown:");
    console.log(`- Comparison operators: ${complexCount.comparisonOperators}`);
```

```
   console.log(`- Logical operators: ${complexCount.logicalOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Functions: ${complexCount.functions}`);
   console.log(`- Arithmetic operators: ${complexCount.arithmeticOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Special operators: ${complexCount.specialOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Total operators: ${complexCount.total}`);

   // Example 3: Test approaching the operator limit
   console.log("\nExample 3: Testing an expression approaching the operator
limit");
   const approachingLimit = await testOperatorLimit(config, tableName, key,
290);
   console.log(approachingLimit.message);

   // Example 4: Test exceeding the operator limit
   console.log("\nExample 4: Testing an expression exceeding the operator
limit");
   const exceedingLimit = await testOperatorLimit(config, tableName, key, 310);
   console.log(exceedingLimit.message);

   // Example 5: Breaking down a complex expression
   console.log("\nExample 5: Breaking down a complex expression into multiple
operations");
   const breakdownResult = await breakDownComplexExpression(config, tableName,
key, 500);
   console.log(`Processed ${breakdownResult.results.length} of
${breakdownResult.totalBatches} batches`);

   // Explain the operator counting rules
   console.log("\nKey points about DynamoDB expression operator counting:");
   console.log("1. The maximum number of operators in any expression is 300");
   console.log("2. Each comparison operator (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=) counts as 1
operator");
   console.log("3. Each logical operator (AND, OR, NOT) counts as 1 operator");
   console.log("4. Each function call (attribute_exists, contains, etc.) counts
as 1 operator");
   console.log("5. Each arithmetic operator (+ or -) counts as 1 operator");
   console.log("6. BETWEEN counts as 2 operators (BETWEEN itself and the AND
within it)");
   console.log("7. IN counts as 1 operator regardless of the number of values");
   console.log("8. Parentheses for grouping and attribute paths don't count as
operators");
   console.log("9. When you exceed the limit, the error always reports '301
operators'");
```

```
    console.log("10. For complex operations, break them into multiple smaller
 operations");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate expression operator counting using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, List, Optional, Tuple



def create_complex_filter_expression(
    attribute_name: str, values: List[Any], use_or: bool = True
) -> Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]:
    """
    Create a complex filter expression with multiple conditions.

    This function demonstrates how to build a complex filter expression
    and count the number of operators used.

    Args:
        attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to filter on.
        values (List[Any]): List of values to compare against.
        use_or (bool, optional): Whether to use OR between conditions. Defaults
 to True.

    Returns:
        Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]: A tuple containing:
            - The filter expression string
            - Expression attribute values
            - Expression attribute names
```

```
            - The number of operators used
    """
    if not values:
        return "", {}, {}, 0

    # Initialize expression components
    filter_expression = ""
    expression_attribute_values = {}
    expression_attribute_names = {"#attr": attribute_name}
    operator_count = 0

    # Build the filter expression
    for i, value in enumerate(values):
        value_placeholder = f":val{i}"
        expression_attribute_values[value_placeholder] = value

        if i > 0:
            # Add OR or AND operator between conditions
            filter_expression += " OR " if use_or else " AND "
            operator_count += 1  # Count the OR/AND operator

        # Add the condition
        filter_expression += f"#attr = {value_placeholder}"
        operator_count += 1  # Count the = operator

    return (
        filter_expression,
        expression_attribute_values,
        expression_attribute_names,
        operator_count,
    )


def create_nested_filter_expression(
    depth: int, conditions_per_level: int
) -> Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]:
    """
    Create a deeply nested filter expression with multiple conditions.

    This function demonstrates how to build a complex nested filter expression
    and count the number of operators used.

    Args:
        depth (int): The depth of nesting.
```

```
        conditions_per_level (int): Number of conditions at each level.

    Returns:
        Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]: A tuple containing:
            - The filter expression string
            - Expression attribute values
            - Expression attribute names
            - The number of operators used
    """
    if depth <= 0 or conditions_per_level <= 0:
        return "", {}, {}, 0

    # Initialize expression components
    expression_attribute_values = {}
    expression_attribute_names = {}
    operator_count = 0

    def build_nested_expression(current_depth: int, prefix: str) -> str:
        nonlocal operator_count

        if current_depth <= 0:
            return ""

        # Build conditions at this level
        conditions = []
        for i in range(conditions_per_level):
            attr_name = f"attr{prefix}_{i}"
            attr_placeholder = f"#attr{prefix}_{i}"
            val_placeholder = f":val{prefix}_{i}"

            expression_attribute_names[attr_placeholder] = attr_name
            expression_attribute_values[val_placeholder] = i

            conditions.append(f"{attr_placeholder} = {val_placeholder}")
            operator_count += 1  # Count the = operator

        # Join conditions with AND
        level_expression = " AND ".join(conditions)
        operator_count += max(0, len(conditions) - 1)  # Count the AND operators

        # If not at the deepest level, add nested expressions
        if current_depth > 1:
            nested_expr = build_nested_expression(current_depth - 1,
f"{prefix}_{current_depth}")
```

```
            if nested_expr:
                level_expression = f"({level_expression}) OR ({nested_expr})"
                operator_count += 1  # Count the OR operator

        return level_expression

    # Build the expression starting from the top level
    filter_expression = build_nested_expression(depth, "1")

    return (
        filter_expression,
        expression_attribute_values,
        expression_attribute_names,
        operator_count,
    )


def count_operators_in_update_expression(update_expression: str) -> int:
    """
    Count the number of operators in an update expression.

    This function demonstrates how to count operators in an update expression
    based on DynamoDB's rules.

    Args:
        update_expression (str): The update expression to analyze.

    Returns:
        int: The number of operators in the expression.
    """
    operator_count = 0

    # Count SET operations
    if "SET" in update_expression:
        set_section = (
            update_expression.split("SET")[1].split("REMOVE")[0].split("ADD")
[0].split("DELETE")[0]
        )

        # Count assignment operators (=)
        operator_count += set_section.count("=")

        # Count arithmetic operators (+, -)
        operator_count += set_section.count("+")
```

```
        operator_count += set_section.count("-")

        # Count list_append function calls (each counts as 1 operator)
        operator_count += set_section.lower().count("list_append")

        # Count if_not_exists function calls (each counts as 1 operator)
        operator_count += set_section.lower().count("if_not_exists")

    # Count REMOVE operations (no additional operators)

    # Count ADD operations (each ADD counts as 1 operator)
    if "ADD" in update_expression:
        add_section = (
            update_expression.split("ADD")[1].split("DELETE")[0].split("SET")
[0].split("REMOVE")[0]
        )
        operator_count += add_section.count(",") + 1

    # Count DELETE operations (each DELETE counts as 1 operator)
    if "DELETE" in update_expression:
        delete_section = (
            update_expression.split("DELETE")[1].split("SET")[0].split("ADD")
[0].split("REMOVE")[0]
        )
        operator_count += delete_section.count(",") + 1

    return operator_count


def count_operators_in_condition_expression(condition_expression: str) -> int:
    """
    Count the number of operators in a condition expression.

    This function demonstrates how to count operators in a condition expression
    based on DynamoDB's rules.

    Args:
        condition_expression (str): The condition expression to analyze.

    Returns:
        int: The number of operators in the expression.
    """
    operator_count = 0
```

```
    # Count comparison operators
    comparison_operators = ["=", "<>", "<", "<=", ">", ">="]
    for op in comparison_operators:
        operator_count += condition_expression.count(op)

    # Count logical operators
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count(" AND ")
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count(" OR ")
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count("NOT ")

    # Count BETWEEN operator (counts as 2: BETWEEN + AND)
    between_count = condition_expression.upper().count(" BETWEEN ")
    operator_count += between_count * 2

    # Count IN operator (counts as 1 regardless of number of values)
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count(" IN ")

    # Count functions (each counts as 1 operator)
    functions = [
        "attribute_exists",
        "attribute_not_exists",
        "attribute_type",
        "begins_with",
        "contains",
        "size",
    ]
    for func in functions:
        operator_count += condition_expression.lower().count(func)

    return operator_count


# Note: This function is for demonstration purposes only and should be called
 from example_usage()
# It's not meant to be used directly as a test function
def _test_expression_limit(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], operator_count: int, attribute_name:
 str = "TestAttribute"
) -> Tuple[bool, Optional[str]]:
    """
    Test if an expression with a specific number of operators exceeds the limit.

    This function demonstrates how to test the 300 operator limit by creating
    an expression with a specified number of operators.
```

```
    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        operator_count (int): The number of operators to include in the
expression.
        attribute_name (str, optional): The name of the attribute to update.
Defaults to "TestAttribute".

    Returns:
        Tuple[bool, Optional[str]]: A tuple containing:
            - A boolean indicating if the operation succeeded
            - The error message if it failed, None otherwise
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Create an update expression with the specified number of operators
    update_expression = f"SET #{attribute_name} = :val0"
    expression_attribute_names = {f"#{attribute_name}": attribute_name}
    expression_attribute_values = {":val0": 0}

    # Add additional SET operations to reach the desired operator count
    # Each assignment adds 1 operator
    for i in range(1, operator_count):
        attr_name = f"{attribute_name}{i}"
        attr_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
        val_placeholder = f":val{i}"

        update_expression += f", {attr_placeholder} = {val_placeholder}"
        expression_attribute_names[attr_placeholder] = attr_name
        expression_attribute_values[val_placeholder] = i

    try:
        # Attempt the update operation
        table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression=update_expression,
            ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
            ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        )
        return True, None
    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        error_message = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if "expression contains too many operators" in error_message.lower():
            return False, error_message
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

Example usage of expression operator counting with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the expression operator counting functions."""

    print("Example 1: Creating a complex filter expression with multiple
 conditions")
    attribute_name = "Status"
    values = ["Active", "Pending", "Processing", "Shipped", "Delivered"]

    filter_expr, expr_attr_vals, expr_attr_names, op_count =
 create_complex_filter_expression(
        attribute_name=attribute_name, values=values, use_or=True
    )

    print(f"Filter Expression: {filter_expr}")
    print(f"Expression Attribute Values: {expr_attr_vals}")
    print(f"Expression Attribute Names: {expr_attr_names}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {op_count}")

    print("\nExample 2: Creating a nested filter expression")
    nested_expr, nested_vals, nested_names, nested_count =
 create_nested_filter_expression(
        depth=3, conditions_per_level=2
    )

    print(f"Nested Filter Expression: {nested_expr}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {nested_count}")

    print("\nExample 3: Counting operators in an update expression")
```

```
    update_expression = "SET #name = :name, #age = :age + :increment,
#address.#city = :city, #status = if_not_exists(#status, :default_status) REMOVE
#old_field ADD #counter :value DELETE #set_attr :set_val"
    update_op_count = count_operators_in_update_expression(update_expression)

    print(f"Update Expression: {update_expression}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {update_op_count}")

    print("\nExample 4: Counting operators in a condition expression")
    condition_expression = "(#status = :active OR #status = :pending) AND #price
BETWEEN :min_price AND :max_price AND attribute_exists(#category) AND NOT
(#stock <= :min_stock)"
    condition_op_count =
count_operators_in_condition_expression(condition_expression)

    print(f"Condition Expression: {condition_expression}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {condition_op_count}")

    print("\nExample 5: Testing the 300 operator limit")

    # This is just for demonstration - in a real application, you would use your
actual table
    # Note: This function is renamed to _test_expression_limit to avoid pytest
trying to run it
    print("In a real application, you would test with _test_expression_limit
function")
    print("Expression with 250 operators would be under the limit")
    print("Expression with 350 operators would exceed the 300 operator limit")

    print("\nOperator Counting Rules in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Comparison Operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=): 1 operator each")
    print("2. Logical Operators (AND, OR, NOT): 1 operator each")
    print("3. BETWEEN: 2 operators (BETWEEN + AND)")
    print("4. IN: 1 operator (regardless of number of values)")
    print("5. Functions (attribute_exists, begins_with, etc.): 1 operator each")
    print("6. Arithmetic Operators (+, -): 1 operator each")
    print("7. SET assignments (=): 1 operator each")
    print("8. ADD and DELETE operations: 1 operator each")

    print("\nStrategies for Working Within the 300 Operator Limit:")
    print("1. Break operations into multiple requests")
    print("2. Use DynamoDB Transactions for complex operations")
    print("3. Optimize data model to reduce query complexity")
    print("4. Use application-side filtering for less critical filters")
```

```
    print("5. Consider using IN operator instead of multiple OR conditions")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create a messenger application with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

The following code examples show how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SNS

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a DynamoDB table with a Global Secondary Index using the AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create a table with global secondary index.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Create DynamoDB table with Global Secondary Index using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GlobalSecondaryIndex;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeySchemaElement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeyType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.Projection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProjectionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScalarAttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.waiters.DynamoDbWaiter;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    public void createTable() {
        try {
            // Attribute definitions
            final List<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new
 ArrayList<>();
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(TITLE_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(CREATE_DATE_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
```

```
                .attributeName(DUE_DATE_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());

            // Key schema for table
            final List<KeySchemaElement> tableKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            tableKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build()); // Partition key
            tableKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(TITLE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                .build()); // Sort key

            // Initial provisioned throughput settings for the indexes
            final ProvisionedThroughput ptIndex = ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                .readCapacityUnits(1L)
                .writeCapacityUnits(1L)
                .build();

            // CreateDateIndex
            final List<KeySchemaElement> createDateKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            createDateKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(CREATE_DATE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build());
            createDateKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                .build());

            final Projection createDateProjection = Projection.builder()
                .projectionType(ProjectionType.INCLUDE)
                .nonKeyAttributes(DESCRIPTION_ATTR, STATUS_ATTR)
                .build();

            final GlobalSecondaryIndex createDateIndex =
GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                .indexName(CREATE_DATE_INDEX)
                .keySchema(createDateKeySchema)
                .projection(createDateProjection)
                .provisionedThroughput(ptIndex)
                .build();
```

```
            // TitleIndex
            final List<KeySchemaElement> titleKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            titleKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(TITLE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build());
            titleKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                .build());

            final Projection titleProjection =

Projection.builder().projectionType(ProjectionType.KEYS_ONLY).build();

            final GlobalSecondaryIndex titleIndex =
GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                .indexName(TITLE_INDEX)
                .keySchema(titleKeySchema)
                .projection(titleProjection)
                .provisionedThroughput(ptIndex)
                .build();

            // DueDateIndex
            final List<KeySchemaElement> dueDateKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            dueDateKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(DUE_DATE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build());

            final Projection dueDateProjection =
                Projection.builder().projectionType(ProjectionType.ALL).build();

            final GlobalSecondaryIndex dueDateIndex =
GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                .indexName(DUE_DATE_INDEX)
                .keySchema(dueDateKeySchema)
                .projection(dueDateProjection)
                .provisionedThroughput(ptIndex)
                .build();

            final CreateTableRequest createTableRequest =
CreateTableRequest.builder()
```

```
                .tableName(TABLE_NAME)
                .keySchema(tableKeySchema)
                .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
                .globalSecondaryIndexes(createDateIndex, titleIndex,
dueDateIndex)
                .provisionedThroughput(ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                    .readCapacityUnits(1L)
                    .writeCapacityUnits(1L)
                    .build())
                .build();

            System.out.println("Creating table " + TABLE_NAME + "...");
            dynamoDbClient.createTable(createTableRequest);

            // Wait for table to become active
            System.out.println("Waiting for " + TABLE_NAME + " to become
ACTIVE...");
            final DynamoDbWaiter waiter = dynamoDbClient.waiter();
            final DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
                DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(TABLE_NAME).build();

            final WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
                waiter.waitUntilTableExists(describeTableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(response ->
System.out.println("Table is now ready for use"));

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error creating table: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a table with warm throughput enabled.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Create DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GlobalSecondaryIndex;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeySchemaElement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeyType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.Projection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScalarAttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.WarmThroughput;

    public static WarmThroughput buildWarmThroughput(final Long
 readUnitsPerSecond, final Long writeUnitsPerSecond) {
        return WarmThroughput.builder()
            .readUnitsPerSecond(readUnitsPerSecond)
            .writeUnitsPerSecond(writeUnitsPerSecond)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Builds a ProvisionedThroughput object with the specified read and write
 capacity units.
     *
     * @param readCapacityUnits The read capacity units
     * @param writeCapacityUnits The write capacity units
     * @return A configured ProvisionedThroughput object
     */
    public static ProvisionedThroughput buildProvisionedThroughput(
        final Long readCapacityUnits, final Long writeCapacityUnits) {
        return ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
            .readCapacityUnits(readCapacityUnits)
            .writeCapacityUnits(writeCapacityUnits)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Builds an AttributeDefinition with the specified name and type.
```

```
     *
     * @param attributeName The attribute name
     * @param scalarAttributeType The attribute type
     * @return A configured AttributeDefinition
     */
    private static AttributeDefinition buildAttributeDefinition(
        final String attributeName, final ScalarAttributeType
scalarAttributeType) {
        return AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .attributeType(scalarAttributeType)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Builds a KeySchemaElement with the specified name and key type.
     *
     * @param attributeName The attribute name
     * @param keyType The key type (HASH or RANGE)
     * @return A configured KeySchemaElement
     */
    private static KeySchemaElement buildKeySchemaElement(final String
attributeName, final KeyType keyType) {
        return KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .keyType(keyType)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a DynamoDB table with the specified configuration including warm
throughput settings.
     *
     * @param ddb The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the table to create
     * @param partitionKey The partition key attribute name
     * @param sortKey The sort key attribute name
     * @param miscellaneousKeyAttribute Additional key attribute name for GSI
     * @param nonKeyAttribute Non-key attribute to include in GSI projection
     * @param tableReadCapacityUnits Read capacity units for the table
     * @param tableWriteCapacityUnits Write capacity units for the table
     * @param tableWarmReadUnitsPerSecond Warm read units per second for the
table
```

```
    * @param tableWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond Warm write units per second for the
table
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexName The name of the GSI to create
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexReadCapacityUnits Read capacity units for the
GSI
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexWriteCapacityUnits Write capacity units for the
GSI
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexWarmReadUnitsPerSecond Warm read units per
second for the GSI
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond Warm write units per
second for the GSI
    */
   public static void createDynamoDBTable(
       final DynamoDbClient ddb,
       final String tableName,
       final String partitionKey,
       final String sortKey,
       final String miscellaneousKeyAttribute,
       final String nonKeyAttribute,
       final Long tableReadCapacityUnits,
       final Long tableWriteCapacityUnits,
       final Long tableWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
       final Long tableWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond,
       final String globalSecondaryIndexName,
       final Long globalSecondaryIndexReadCapacityUnits,
       final Long globalSecondaryIndexWriteCapacityUnits,
       final Long globalSecondaryIndexWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
       final Long globalSecondaryIndexWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond) {

       // Define the table attributes
       final AttributeDefinition partitionKeyAttribute =
buildAttributeDefinition(partitionKey, ScalarAttributeType.S);
       final AttributeDefinition sortKeyAttribute =
buildAttributeDefinition(sortKey, ScalarAttributeType.S);
       final AttributeDefinition miscellaneousKeyAttributeDefinition =
           buildAttributeDefinition(miscellaneousKeyAttribute,
ScalarAttributeType.N);
       final AttributeDefinition[] attributeDefinitions = {
           partitionKeyAttribute, sortKeyAttribute,
miscellaneousKeyAttributeDefinition
       };

       // Define the table key schema
```

```
        final KeySchemaElement partitionKeyElement =
buildKeySchemaElement(partitionKey, KeyType.HASH);
        final KeySchemaElement sortKeyElement = buildKeySchemaElement(sortKey,
KeyType.RANGE);
        final KeySchemaElement[] keySchema = {partitionKeyElement,
sortKeyElement};

        // Define the provisioned throughput for the table
        final ProvisionedThroughput provisionedThroughput =
            buildProvisionedThroughput(tableReadCapacityUnits,
tableWriteCapacityUnits);

        // Define the Global Secondary Index (GSI)
        final KeySchemaElement globalSecondaryIndexPartitionKeyElement =
buildKeySchemaElement(sortKey, KeyType.HASH);
        final KeySchemaElement globalSecondaryIndexSortKeyElement =
            buildKeySchemaElement(miscellaneousKeyAttribute, KeyType.RANGE);
        final KeySchemaElement[] gsiKeySchema = {
            globalSecondaryIndexPartitionKeyElement,
globalSecondaryIndexSortKeyElement
        };

        final Projection gsiProjection = Projection.builder()
            .projectionType(PROJECTION_TYPE_INCLUDE)
            .nonKeyAttributes(nonKeyAttribute)
            .build();

        final ProvisionedThroughput gsiProvisionedThroughput =
            buildProvisionedThroughput(globalSecondaryIndexReadCapacityUnits,
globalSecondaryIndexWriteCapacityUnits);

        // Define the warm throughput for the Global Secondary Index (GSI)
        final WarmThroughput gsiWarmThroughput = buildWarmThroughput(
            globalSecondaryIndexWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
globalSecondaryIndexWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond);

        final GlobalSecondaryIndex globalSecondaryIndex =
GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
            .indexName(globalSecondaryIndexName)
            .keySchema(gsiKeySchema)
            .projection(gsiProjection)
            .provisionedThroughput(gsiProvisionedThroughput)
            .warmThroughput(gsiWarmThroughput)
            .build();
```

```
        // Define the warm throughput for the table
        final WarmThroughput tableWarmThroughput =
            buildWarmThroughput(tableWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
 tableWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond);

        final CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .keySchema(keySchema)
            .provisionedThroughput(provisionedThroughput)
            .globalSecondaryIndexes(globalSecondaryIndex)
            .warmThroughput(tableWarmThroughput)
            .build();

        final CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
        System.out.println(response);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Create DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, CreateTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export async function createDynamoDBTableWithWarmThroughput(
  tableName,
  partitionKey,
  sortKey,
  miscKeyAttr,
  nonKeyAttr,
  tableProvisionedReadUnits,
  tableProvisionedWriteUnits,
  tableWarmReads,
  tableWarmWrites,
  indexName,
  indexProvisionedReadUnits,
  indexProvisionedWriteUnits,
```

```
  indexWarmReads,
  indexWarmWrites,
  region = "us-east-1"
) {
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region: region });
    const command = new CreateTableCommand({
      TableName: tableName,
      AttributeDefinitions: [
          { AttributeName: partitionKey, AttributeType: "S" },
          { AttributeName: sortKey, AttributeType: "S" },
          { AttributeName: miscKeyAttr, AttributeType: "N" },
      ],
      KeySchema: [
          { AttributeName: partitionKey, KeyType: "HASH" },
          { AttributeName: sortKey, KeyType: "RANGE" },
      ],
      ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: tableProvisionedReadUnits,
          WriteCapacityUnits: tableProvisionedWriteUnits,
      },
      WarmThroughput: {
          ReadUnitsPerSecond: tableWarmReads,
          WriteUnitsPerSecond: tableWarmWrites,
      },
      GlobalSecondaryIndexes: [
          {
            IndexName: indexName,
            KeySchema: [
                { AttributeName: sortKey, KeyType: "HASH" },
                { AttributeName: miscKeyAttr, KeyType: "RANGE" },
            ],
            Projection: {
                ProjectionType: "INCLUDE",
                NonKeyAttributes: [nonKeyAttr],
            },
            ProvisionedThroughput: {
                ReadCapacityUnits: indexProvisionedReadUnits,
                WriteCapacityUnits: indexProvisionedWriteUnits,
            },
            WarmThroughput: {
                ReadUnitsPerSecond: indexWarmReads,
                WriteUnitsPerSecond: indexWarmWrites,
            },
```

```
          },
      ],
    });
    const response = await ddbClient.send(command);
    console.log(response);
    return response;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error creating table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
/*
createDynamoDBTableWithWarmThroughput(
  'example-table',
  'pk',
  'sk',
  'gsiKey',
  'data',
  10, 10, 5, 5,
  'example-index',
  5, 5, 2, 2
);
*/
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from boto3 import client
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def create_dynamodb_table_warm_throughput(
    table_name,
    partition_key,
```

```
    sort_key,
    misc_key_attr,
    non_key_attr,
    table_provisioned_read_units,
    table_provisioned_write_units,
    table_warm_reads,
    table_warm_writes,
    gsi_name,
    gsi_provisioned_read_units,
    gsi_provisioned_write_units,
    gsi_warm_reads,
    gsi_warm_writes,
    region_name="us-east-1",
):
    """
    Creates a DynamoDB table with a warm throughput setting configured.

    :param table_name: The name of the table to be created.
    :param partition_key: The partition key for the table being created.
    :param sort_key: The sort key for the table being created.
    :param misc_key_attr: A miscellaneous key attribute for the table being
 created.
    :param non_key_attr: A non-key attribute for the table being created.
    :param table_provisioned_read_units: The newly created table's provisioned
 read capacity units.
    :param table_provisioned_write_units: The newly created table's provisioned
 write capacity units.
    :param table_warm_reads: The read units per second setting for the table's
 warm throughput.
    :param table_warm_writes: The write units per second setting for the table's
 warm throughput.
    :param gsi_name: The name of the Global Secondary Index (GSI) to be created
 on the table.
    :param gsi_provisioned_read_units: The configured Global Secondary Index
 (GSI) provisioned read capacity units.
    :param gsi_provisioned_write_units: The configured Global Secondary Index
 (GSI) provisioned write capacity units.
    :param gsi_warm_reads: The read units per second setting for the Global
 Secondary Index (GSI)'s warm throughput.
    :param gsi_warm_writes: The write units per second setting for the Global
 Secondary Index (GSI)'s warm throughput.
    :param region_name: The AWS Region name to target. defaults to us-east-1
    """
    try:
```

```
        ddb = client("dynamodb", region_name=region_name)

        # Define the table attributes
        attribute_definitions = [
            {"AttributeName": partition_key, "AttributeType": "S"},
            {"AttributeName": sort_key, "AttributeType": "S"},
            {"AttributeName": misc_key_attr, "AttributeType": "N"},
        ]

        # Define the table key schema
        key_schema = [
            {"AttributeName": partition_key, "KeyType": "HASH"},
            {"AttributeName": sort_key, "KeyType": "RANGE"},
        ]

        # Define the provisioned throughput for the table
        provisioned_throughput = {
            "ReadCapacityUnits": table_provisioned_read_units,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": table_provisioned_write_units,
        }

        # Define the global secondary index
        gsi_key_schema = [
            {"AttributeName": sort_key, "KeyType": "HASH"},
            {"AttributeName": misc_key_attr, "KeyType": "RANGE"},
        ]
        gsi_projection = {"ProjectionType": "INCLUDE", "NonKeyAttributes":
[non_key_attr]}
        gsi_provisioned_throughput = {
            "ReadCapacityUnits": gsi_provisioned_read_units,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": gsi_provisioned_write_units,
        }
        gsi_warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": gsi_warm_reads,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": gsi_warm_writes,
        }
        global_secondary_indexes = [
            {
                "IndexName": gsi_name,
                "KeySchema": gsi_key_schema,
                "Projection": gsi_projection,
                "ProvisionedThroughput": gsi_provisioned_throughput,
                "WarmThroughput": gsi_warm_throughput,
            }
```

```
        ]

        # Define the warm throughput for the table
        warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": table_warm_reads,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": table_warm_writes,
        }

        # Create the DynamoDB client and create the table
        response = ddb.create_table(
            TableName=table_name,
            AttributeDefinitions=attribute_definitions,
            KeySchema=key_schema,
            ProvisionedThroughput=provisioned_throughput,
            GlobalSecondaryIndexes=global_secondary_indexes,
            WarmThroughput=warm_throughput,
        )

        print(response)
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error creating table: {e}")
        raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB .NET API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in Amazon DynamoDB and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service

(Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in a DynamoDB table.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example in the AWS Code Examples Repository on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway

The following code example shows how to create a chat application that is served by a websocket API built on Amazon API Gateway.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon API Gateway V2 to create a websocket API that integrates with AWS Lambda and Amazon DynamoDB.

- Create a websocket API served by API Gateway.
- Define a Lambda handler that stores connections in DynamoDB and posts messages to other chat participants.
- Connect to the websocket chat application and send messages with the Websockets package.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create an item with TTL.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
package com.amazon.samplelib.ttl;

import com.amazon.samplelib.CodeSampleUtils;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;

/**
 * Creates an item in a DynamoDB table with TTL attributes.
 * This class demonstrates how to add TTL expiration timestamps to DynamoDB
 items.
 */
public class CreateTTL {

    private static final String USAGE =
        """
            Usage:
                <tableName> <primaryKey> <sortKey> <region>
            Where:
                tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table being queried.
                primaryKey - The name of the primary key. Also known as the hash
 or partition key.
                sortKey - The name of the sort key. Also known as the range
 attribute.
                region (optional) - The AWS region that the Amazon DynamoDB table
 is located in. (Default: us-east-1)
            """;
```

```
    private static final int DAYS_TO_EXPIRE = 90;
    private static final int SECONDS_PER_DAY = 24 * 60 * 60;
    private static final String PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR = "primaryKey";
    private static final String SORT_KEY_ATTR = "sortKey";
    private static final String CREATION_DATE_ATTR = "creationDate";
    private static final String EXPIRE_AT_ATTR = "expireAt";
    private static final String SUCCESS_MESSAGE = "%s PutItem operation with TTL
successful.";
    private static final String TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR = "Error: The Amazon
DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be found.";

    private final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    /**
     * Constructs a CreateTTL instance with the specified DynamoDB client.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client to use
     */
    public CreateTTL(final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {
        this.dynamoDbClient = dynamoDbClient;
    }

    /**
     * Constructs a CreateTTL with a default DynamoDB client.
     */
    public CreateTTL() {
        this.dynamoDbClient = null;
    }

    /**
     * Main method to demonstrate creating an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     */
    public static void main(final String[] args) {
        try {
            int result = new CreateTTL().processArgs(args);
            System.exit(result);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Process command line arguments and create an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     * @return 0 if successful, non-zero otherwise
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException If the table doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException If an error occurs during the operation
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException If arguments are invalid
     */
    public int processArgs(final String[] args) {
        // Argument validation (remove or replace this line when reusing this
code)
        CodeSampleUtils.validateArgs(args, new int[] {3, 4}, USAGE);

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String primaryKey = args[1];
        final String sortKey = args[2];
        final Region region = Optional.ofNullable(args.length > 3 ? args[3] :
null)
            .map(Region::of)
            .orElse(Region.US_EAST_1);

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final CreateTTL createTTL = new CreateTTL(ddb);
            createTTL.createItemWithTTL(tableName, primaryKey, sortKey);
            return 0;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates an item in the specified table with TTL attributes.
     *
     * @param tableName The name of the table
     * @param primaryKeyValue The value for the primary key
     * @param sortKeyValue The value for the sort key
     * @return The response from the PutItem operation
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException If the table doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException If an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public PutItemResponse createItemWithTTL(
```

```
        final String tableName, final String primaryKeyValue, final String
 sortKeyValue) {
        // Get current time in epoch second format
        final long createDate = System.currentTimeMillis() / 1000;

        // Calculate expiration time 90 days from now in epoch second format
        final long expireDate = createDate + (DAYS_TO_EXPIRE * SECONDS_PER_DAY);

        final Map<String, AttributeValue> itemMap = new HashMap<>();
        itemMap.put(
            PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(primaryKeyValue).build());
        itemMap.put(SORT_KEY_ATTR,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKeyValue).build());
        itemMap.put(
            CREATION_DATE_ATTR,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(createDate)).build());
        itemMap.put(
            EXPIRE_AT_ATTR,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(expireDate)).build());

        final PutItemRequest request =
            PutItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).item(itemMap).build();

        try {
            final PutItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.putItem(request);
            System.out.println(String.format(SUCCESS_MESSAGE, tableName));
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DynamoDBClient, PutItemCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export function createDynamoDBItem(table_name, region, partition_key, sort_key) {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    // Get the current time in epoch second format
    const current_time = Math.floor(new Date().getTime() / 1000);

    // Calculate the expireAt time (90 days from now) in epoch second format
    const expire_at = Math.floor((new Date().getTime() + 90 * 24 * 60 * 60 *
 1000) / 1000);

    // Create DynamoDB item
    const item = {
        'partitionKey': {'S': partition_key},
        'sortKey': {'S': sort_key},
        'createdAt': {'N': current_time.toString()},
        'expireAt': {'N': expire_at.toString()}
    };

    const putItemCommand = new PutItemCommand({
        TableName: table_name,
        Item: item,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
            ReadCapacityUnits: 1,
            WriteCapacityUnits: 1,
        },
    });

    client.send(putItemCommand, function(err, data) {
        if (err) {
            console.log("Exception encountered when creating item %s, here's what
 happened: ", data, err);
            throw err;
        } else {
            console.log("Item created successfully: %s.", data);
            return data;
```

```
        }
    });
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// createDynamoDBItem('your-table-name', 'us-east-1', 'your-partition-key-value',
 'your-sort-key-value');
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3


def create_dynamodb_item(table_name, region, primary_key, sort_key):
    """
    Creates a DynamoDB item with an attached expiry attribute.

    :param table_name: Table name for the boto3 resource to target when creating
 an item
    :param region: string representing the AWS region. Example: `us-east-1`
    :param primary_key: one attribute known as the partition key.
    :param sort_key: Also known as a range attribute.
    :return: Void (nothing)
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Get the current time in epoch second format
        current_time = int(datetime.now().timestamp())

        # Calculate the expiration time (90 days from now) in epoch second format
        expiration_time = int((datetime.now() + timedelta(days=90)).timestamp())

        item = {
            "primaryKey": primary_key,
            "sortKey": sort_key,
```

```
            "creationDate": current_time,
            "expireAt": expiration_time,
        }
        response = table.put_item(Item=item)

        print("Item created successfully.")
        return response
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating item: {e}")
        raise e


# Use your own values
create_dynamodb_item(
    "your-table-name", "us-west-2", "your-partition-key-value", "your-sort-key-
value"
)
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create and manage DynamoDB global tables with Multi-Region Strong Consistency using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create and manage DynamoDB global tables with Multi-Region Strong Consistency (MRSC).

- Create a table with Multi-Region Strong Consistency.
- Verify MRSC configuration and replica status.
- Test strong consistency across Regions with immediate reads.
- Perform conditional writes with MRSC guarantees.
- Clean up MRSC global table resources.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with Multi-Region Strong Consistency.

```
# Step 1: Create a new table in us-east-2 (primary region for MRSC)
```

```
# Note: Table must be empty when enabling MRSC
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --region us-east-2

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name MusicTable --region us-east-2

# Step 2: Add replica and witness with Multi-Region Strong Consistency
# MRSC requires exactly three replicas in supported regions
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --replica-updates '[{"Create": {"RegionName": "us-east-1"}}]' \
    --global-table-witness-updates '[{"Create": {"RegionName": "us-west-2"}}]' \
    --multi-region-consistency STRONG \
    --region us-east-2
```

Verify MRSC configuration and replica status.

```
# Verify the global table configuration and MRSC setting
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --region us-east-2 \
    --query 'Table.
{TableName:TableName,TableStatus:TableStatus,MultiRegionConsistency:MultiRegionConsistenc
{Region:RegionName,Status:ReplicaStatus}}'
```

Test strong consistency with immediate reads across Regions.

```
# Write an item to the primary region
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --item '{"Artist": {"S":"The Beatles"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Hey Jude"},"Album":
 {"S":"The Beatles 1967-1970"},"Year": {"N":"1968"}}' \
```

```
    --region us-east-2

# Read the item from replica region to verify strong consistency (cannot read or
 write to witness)
# No wait time needed - MRSC provides immediate consistency
echo "Reading from us-east-1 (immediate consistency):"
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"The Beatles"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Hey Jude"}}' \
    --consistent-read \
    --region us-east-1
```

Perform conditional writes with MRSC guarantees.

```
# Perform a conditional update from a different region
# This demonstrates that conditions work consistently across all regions
aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"The Beatles"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Hey Jude"}}' \
    --update-expression "SET #rating = :rating" \
    --condition-expression "attribute_exists(Artist)" \
    --expression-attribute-names '{"#rating": "Rating"}' \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":rating": {"N":"5"}}' \
    --region us-east-1
```

Clean up MRSC global table resources.

```
# Remove replica tables (must be done before deleting the primary table)
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --replica-updates '[{"Delete": {"RegionName": "us-east-1"}}]' \
    --global-table-witness-updates '[{"Delete": {"RegionName": "us-west-2"}}]' \
    --region us-east-2

# Wait for replicas to be deleted
echo "Waiting for replicas to be deleted..."
sleep 30

# Delete the primary table
aws dynamodb delete-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
```

```
    --region us-east-2
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - UpdateItem
  - UpdateTable

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Create a regional table ready for MRSC conversion using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static CreateTableResponse createRegionalTable(final DynamoDbClient
dynamoDbClient, final String tableName) {

       if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
       }
       if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       try {
           LOGGER.info("Creating regional table: " + tableName + " (must be
empty for MRSC)");

           CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
               .tableName(tableName)
               .attributeDefinitions(
                   AttributeDefinition.builder()
                       .attributeName("Artist")
                       .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                       .build(),
```

```
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build())
                .keySchema(
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                        .build(),
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                        .build())
                .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST)
                .build();

            CreateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.createTable(createTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Regional table creation initiated. Status: "
                + response.tableDescription().tableStatus());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to create regional table: " + tableName + " - "
+ e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to create regional table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Convert a regional table to MRSC with replicas and witness using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse convertToMRSCWithWitness(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
        final Region witnessRegion) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
```

```
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (witnessRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Witness region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Converting table to MRSC with replica in " +
replicaRegion.id() + " and witness in "
                + witnessRegion.id());

            // Create replica update using ReplicationGroupUpdate
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicaUpdate =
ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .create(CreateReplicationGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(replicaRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            // Create witness update
            GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate witnessUpdate =
GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate.builder()
                .create(CreateGlobalTableWitnessGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(witnessRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(List.of(replicaUpdate))
                .globalTableWitnessUpdates(List.of(witnessUpdate))
                .multiRegionConsistency(MultiRegionConsistency.STRONG)
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("MRSC conversion initiated. Status: "
```

```
                + response.tableDescription().tableStatus());
            LOGGER.info("UpdateTableResponse full object: " + response);
            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to convert table to MRSC: " + tableName + " - "
+ e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to convert table to MRSC: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Describe an MRSC global table configuration using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static DescribeTableResponse describeMRSCTable(final DynamoDbClient
dynamoDbClient, final String tableName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Describing MRSC global table: " + tableName);

            DescribeTableRequest request =
                DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

            DescribeTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.describeTable(request);

            LOGGER.info("Table status: " + response.table().tableStatus());
            LOGGER.info("Multi-region consistency: " +
response.table().multiRegionConsistency());

            if (response.table().replicas() != null
                && !response.table().replicas().isEmpty()) {
```

```
                LOGGER.info("Number of replicas: " +
response.table().replicas().size());
                response.table()
                    .replicas()
                    .forEach(replica -> LOGGER.info(
                        "Replica region: " + replica.regionName() + ", Status: "
+ replica.replicaStatus()));
            }

            if (response.table().globalTableWitnesses() != null
                && !response.table().globalTableWitnesses().isEmpty()) {
                LOGGER.info("Number of witnesses: "
                    + response.table().globalTableWitnesses().size());
                response.table()
                    .globalTableWitnesses()
                    .forEach(witness -> LOGGER.info(
                        "Witness region: " + witness.regionName() + ", Status: "
+ witness.witnessStatus()));
            }

            return response;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Table not found: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Table not found: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to describe table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to describe table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Add test items to verify MRSC strong consistency using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static PutItemResponse putTestItem(
```

```
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final String artist,
        final String songTitle,
        final String album,
        final String year) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Adding test item to MRSC global table: " + tableName);

            Map<String, AttributeValue> item = new HashMap<>();
            item.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s(artist).build());
            item.put("SongTitle", AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitle).build());

            if (album != null && !album.trim().isEmpty()) {
                item.put("Album", AttributeValue.builder().s(album).build());
            }
            if (year != null && !year.trim().isEmpty()) {
                item.put("Year", AttributeValue.builder().n(year).build());
            }

            PutItemRequest putItemRequest =
                PutItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).item(item).build();

            PutItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.putItem(putItemRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Test item added successfully with strong consistency");

            return response;
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to add test item to table: " + tableName + " -
" + e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to add test item to table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Read items with consistent reads from MRSC replicas using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static GetItemResponse getItemWithConsistentRead(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final String
artist, final String songTitle) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Reading item from MRSC global table with consistent
read: " + tableName);

            Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
            key.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s(artist).build());
            key.put("SongTitle", AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitle).build());

            GetItemRequest getItemRequest = GetItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
```

```
                .consistentRead(true)
                .build();

            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(getItemRequest);

            if (response.hasItem()) {
                LOGGER.info("Item found with strong consistency - no wait time
needed");
            } else {
                LOGGER.info("Item not found");
            }

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to read item from table: " + tableName + " - "
+ e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to read item from table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Perform conditional updates with MRSC guarantees using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateItemResponse performConditionalUpdate(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final String artist,
        final String songTitle,
        final String rating) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
```

```
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (rating == null || rating.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Rating cannot be null or empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Performing conditional update on MRSC global table: " +
tableName);

            Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
            key.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s(artist).build());
            key.put("SongTitle", AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitle).build());

            Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#rating", "Rating");

            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributeValues.put(
                ":rating", AttributeValue.builder().n(rating).build());

            UpdateItemRequest updateItemRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #rating = :rating")
                .conditionExpression("attribute_exists(Artist)")
                .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
                .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(updateItemRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Conditional update successful - demonstrates strong
consistency");

            return response;

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            LOGGER.warning("Conditional check failed: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to perform conditional update: " + tableName +
" - " + e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to perform conditional update: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Wait for MRSC replicas and witnesses to become active using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void waitForMRSCReplicasActive(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final int
maxWaitTimeSeconds)
        throws InterruptedException {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (maxWaitTimeSeconds <= 0) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Max wait time must be positive");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for MRSC replicas and witnesses to become
active: " + tableName);

            final long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
            final long maxWaitTimeMillis = maxWaitTimeSeconds * 1000L;
            int backoffSeconds = 5; // Start with 5 second intervals
            final int maxBackoffSeconds = 30; // Cap at 30 seconds

            while (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime < maxWaitTimeMillis) {
                DescribeTableResponse response =
describeMRSCTable(dynamoDbClient, tableName);

                boolean allActive = true;
```

```
                StringBuilder statusReport = new StringBuilder();

                if (response.table().multiRegionConsistency() == null
                    || !MultiRegionConsistency.STRONG
                        .toString()

.equals(response.table().multiRegionConsistency().toString())) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport
                        .append("MultiRegionConsistency: ")
                        .append(response.table().multiRegionConsistency())
                        .append(" ");
                }
                if (response.table().replicas() == null
                    || response.table().replicas().isEmpty()) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport.append("No replicas found. ");
                }
                if (response.table().globalTableWitnesses() == null
                    || response.table().globalTableWitnesses().isEmpty()) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport.append("No witnesses found. ");
                }

                // Check table status
                if (!"ACTIVE".equals(response.table().tableStatus().toString()))
{
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport
                        .append("Table: ")
                        .append(response.table().tableStatus())
                        .append(" ");
                }

                // Check replica status
                if (response.table().replicas() != null) {
                    for (var replica : response.table().replicas()) {
                        if (!"ACTIVE".equals(replica.replicaStatus().toString()))
{
                            allActive = false;
                            statusReport
                                .append("Replica(")
                                .append(replica.regionName())
                                .append("): ")
```

```
                                .append(replica.replicaStatus())
                                .append(" ");
                        }
                    }
                }

                // Check witness status
                if (response.table().globalTableWitnesses() != null) {
                    for (var witness : response.table().globalTableWitnesses()) {
                        if (!"ACTIVE".equals(witness.witnessStatus().toString()))
{
                            allActive = false;
                            statusReport
                                .append("Witness(")
                                .append(witness.regionName())
                                .append("): ")
                                .append(witness.witnessStatus())
                                .append(" ");
                        }
                    }
                }

                if (allActive) {
                    LOGGER.info("All MRSC replicas and witnesses are now active:
" + tableName);
                    return;
                }

                LOGGER.info("Waiting for MRSC components to become active.
Status: " + statusReport.toString());
                LOGGER.info("Next check in " + backoffSeconds + " seconds...");

                tempWait(backoffSeconds);

                // Exponential backoff with cap
                backoffSeconds = Math.min(backoffSeconds * 2, maxBackoffSeconds);
            }

            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Timeout waiting for MRSC replicas to become active
after " + maxWaitTimeSeconds + " seconds")
                .build();

        } catch (DynamoDbException | InterruptedException e) {
```

```
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to wait for MRSC replicas to become active: " +
tableName + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Clean up MRSC replicas and witnesses using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse cleanupMRSCReplicas(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
        final Region witnessRegion) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (witnessRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Witness region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Cleaning up MRSC replicas and witnesses for table: " +
tableName);

            // Remove replica using ReplicationGroupUpdate
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicaUpdate =
ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .delete(DeleteReplicationGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(replicaRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            // Remove witness
```

```
            GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate witnessUpdate =
GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate.builder()
                .delete(DeleteGlobalTableWitnessGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(witnessRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(List.of(replicaUpdate))
                .globalTableWitnessUpdates(List.of(witnessUpdate))
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("MRSC cleanup initiated - removing replica and witness.
Response: " + response);

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to cleanup MRSC replicas: " + tableName + " - "
+ e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to cleanup MRSC replicas: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Complete MRSC workflow demonstration using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void demonstrateCompleteMRSCWorkflow(
        final DynamoDbClient primaryClient,
        final DynamoDbClient replicaClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
        final Region witnessRegion)
        throws InterruptedException {

        if (primaryClient == null) {
```

```
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Primary DynamoDB client cannot be
null");
        }
        if (replicaClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica DynamoDB client cannot be
null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (witnessRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Witness region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("=== Starting Complete MRSC Workflow Demonstration ===");

            // Step 1: Create an empty single-Region table
            LOGGER.info("Step 1: Creating empty single-Region table");
            createRegionalTable(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Use the existing GlobalTableOperations method for basic table
waiting
            LOGGER.info("Intermediate step: Waiting for table [" + tableName + "]
to become active before continuing");
            GlobalTableOperations.waitForTableActive(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Step 2: Convert to MRSC with replica and witness
            LOGGER.info("Step 2: Converting to MRSC with replica and witness");
            convertToMRSCWithWitness(primaryClient, tableName, replicaRegion,
witnessRegion);

            // Wait for MRSC conversion to complete using MRSC-specific waiter
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for MRSC conversion to complete...");
            waitForMRSCReplicasActive(primaryClient, tableName);

            LOGGER.info("Intermediate step: Waiting for table [" + tableName + "]
to become active before continuing");
            GlobalTableOperations.waitForTableActive(primaryClient, tableName);
```

```
            // Step 3: Verify MRSC configuration
            LOGGER.info("Step 3: Verifying MRSC configuration");
            describeMRSCTable(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Step 4: Test strong consistency with data operations
            LOGGER.info("Step 4: Testing strong consistency with data
operations");

            // Add test item to primary region
            putTestItem(primaryClient, tableName, "The Beatles", "Hey Jude", "The
Beatles 1967-1970", "1968");

            // Immediately read from replica region (no wait needed with MRSC)
            LOGGER.info("Reading from replica region immediately (strong
consistency):");
            GetItemResponse getResponse =
                getItemWithConsistentRead(replicaClient, tableName, "The
Beatles", "Hey Jude");

            if (getResponse.hasItem()) {
                LOGGER.info("# Strong consistency verified - item immediately
available in replica region");
            } else {
                LOGGER.warning("# Item not found in replica region");
            }

            // Test conditional update from replica region
            LOGGER.info("Testing conditional update from replica region:");
            performConditionalUpdate(replicaClient, tableName, "The Beatles",
"Hey Jude", "5");
            LOGGER.info("# Conditional update successful - demonstrates strong
consistency");

            // Step 5: Cleanup
            LOGGER.info("Step 5: Cleaning up resources");
            cleanupMRSCReplicas(primaryClient, tableName, replicaRegion,
witnessRegion);

            // Wait for cleanup to complete using basic table waiter
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for replica cleanup to complete...");
            GlobalTableOperations.waitForTableActive(primaryClient, tableName);

            // "Halt" until replica/witness cleanup is complete
```

```
            DescribeTableResponse cleanupVerification =
describeMRSCTable(primaryClient, tableName);
            int backoffSeconds = 5; // Start with 5 second intervals
            while (cleanupVerification.table().multiRegionConsistency() != null)
{
                LOGGER.info("Waiting additional time (" + backoffSeconds + "
seconds) for MRSC cleanup to complete...");
                tempWait(backoffSeconds);

                // Exponential backoff with cap
                backoffSeconds = Math.min(backoffSeconds * 2, 30);
                cleanupVerification = describeMRSCTable(primaryClient,
tableName);
            }

            // Delete the primary table
            deleteTable(primaryClient, tableName);

            LOGGER.info("=== MRSC Workflow Demonstration Complete ===");
            LOGGER.info("");
            LOGGER.info("Key benefits of Multi-Region Strong Consistency
(MRSC):");
            LOGGER.info("- Immediate consistency across all regions (no eventual
consistency delays)");
            LOGGER.info("- Simplified application logic (no need to handle
eventual consistency)");
            LOGGER.info("- Support for conditional writes and transactions across
regions");
            LOGGER.info("- Consistent read operations from any region without
waiting");

        } catch (DynamoDbException | InterruptedException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("MRSC workflow failed: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable

- GetItem
- PutItem
- UpdateItem
- UpdateTable

Create and manage DynamoDB global tables demonstrating MREC using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create and manage DynamoDB global tables with replicas across multiple Regions.

- Create a table with Global Secondary Index and DynamoDB Streams.
- Add replicas in different Regions to create a global table.
- Remove replicas from a global table.
- Add test items to verify replication across Regions.
- Describe global table configuration and replica status.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Create a table with Global Secondary Index and DynamoDB Streams using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static CreateTableResponse createTableWithGSI(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final String
indexName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (indexName == null || indexName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Index name cannot be null or
empty");
```

```
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Creating table: " + tableName + " with GSI: " +
indexName);

            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .attributeDefinitions(
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build(),
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build())
                .keySchema(
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                        .build(),
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                        .build())
                .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST)
                .globalSecondaryIndexes(GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                    .indexName(indexName)
                    .keySchema(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                        .build())
                    .projection(

Projection.builder().projectionType(ProjectionType.ALL).build())
                    .build())
                .streamSpecification(StreamSpecification.builder()
                    .streamEnabled(true)
                    .streamViewType(StreamViewType.NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES)
                    .build())
                .build();
```

```
            CreateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.createTable(createTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Table creation initiated. Status: "
                + response.tableDescription().tableStatus());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to create table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Wait for a table to become active using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void waitForTableActive(final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
final String tableName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for table to become active: " + tableName);

            try (DynamoDbWaiter waiter =
                DynamoDbWaiter.builder().client(dynamoDbClient).build()) {
                DescribeTableRequest request =
                    DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

                waiter.waitUntilTableExists(request);
                LOGGER.info("Table is now active: " + tableName);
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to wait for table to become active: " +
tableName + " - " + e.getMessage());
```

```
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Add a replica to create or extend a global table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse addReplica(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
        final String indexName,
        final Long readCapacity) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (indexName == null || indexName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Index name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (readCapacity == null || readCapacity <= 0) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Read capacity must be a positive
number");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Adding replica in region: " + replicaRegion.id() + " for
table: " + tableName);

            // Create a ReplicationGroupUpdate for adding a replica
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicationGroupUpdate =
ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .create(builder -> builder.regionName(replicaRegion.id())
                    .globalSecondaryIndexes(ReplicaGlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                        .indexName(indexName)
```

```
.provisionedThroughputOverride(ProvisionedThroughputOverride.builder()
                            .readCapacityUnits(readCapacity)
                            .build())
                        .build())
                    .build())
                .build();

            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(replicationGroupUpdate)
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Replica addition initiated in region: " +
replicaRegion.id());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to add replica in region: " +
replicaRegion.id() + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Remove a replica from a global table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse removeReplica(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final Region
replicaRegion) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
```

```
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Removing replica in region: " + replicaRegion.id() + "
for table: " + tableName);

            // Create a ReplicationGroupUpdate for removing a replica
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicationGroupUpdate =
ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .delete(builder ->
builder.regionName(replicaRegion.id()).build())
                .build();

            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(replicationGroupUpdate)
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Replica removal initiated in region: " +
replicaRegion.id());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to remove replica in region: " +
replicaRegion.id() + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Add test items to verify replication using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static PutItemResponse putTestItem(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final String
artist, final String songTitle) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
```

```
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Adding test item to table: " + tableName);

            Map<String,
software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue> item = new
HashMap<>();
            item.put(
                "Artist",

software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue.builder()
                    .s(artist)
                    .build());
            item.put(
                "SongTitle",

software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue.builder()
                    .s(songTitle)
                    .build());

            PutItemRequest putItemRequest =
                PutItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).item(item).build();

            PutItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.putItem(putItemRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Test item added successfully");

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to add test item to table: " + tableName + " -
" + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Describe global table configuration and replicas using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static DescribeTableResponse describeTable(final DynamoDbClient
dynamoDbClient, final String tableName) {

       if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
       }
       if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       try {
           LOGGER.info("Describing table: " + tableName);

           DescribeTableRequest request =
               DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

           DescribeTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.describeTable(request);

           LOGGER.info("Table status: " + response.table().tableStatus());
           if (response.table().replicas() != null
               && !response.table().replicas().isEmpty()) {
               LOGGER.info("Number of replicas: " +
response.table().replicas().size());
               response.table()
                   .replicas()
                   .forEach(replica -> LOGGER.info(
                       "Replica region: " + replica.regionName() + ", Status: "
+ replica.replicaStatus()));
           }

           return response;

       } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
           LOGGER.severe("Table not found: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
           throw e;
       } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
```

```
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to describe table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Complete example of global table operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(final Region sourceRegion, final Region
replicaRegion) {

        String tableName = "Music";
        String indexName = "SongTitleIndex";
        Long readCapacity = 15L;

        // Create DynamoDB client for the source region
        try (DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient =
            DynamoDbClient.builder().region(sourceRegion).build()) {

            try {
                // Step 1: Create the initial table with GSI and streams
                LOGGER.info("Step 1: Creating table in source region: " +
sourceRegion.id());
                createTableWithGSI(dynamoDbClient, tableName, indexName);

                // Step 2: Wait for table to become active
                LOGGER.info("Step 2: Waiting for table to become active");
                waitForTableActive(dynamoDbClient, tableName);

                // Step 3: Add replica in destination region
                LOGGER.info("Step 3: Adding replica in region: " +
replicaRegion.id());
                addReplica(dynamoDbClient, tableName, replicaRegion, indexName,
readCapacity);

                // Step 4: Wait a moment for replica creation to start
                Thread.sleep(5000);

                // Step 5: Describe table to view replica information
                LOGGER.info("Step 5: Describing table to view replicas");
                describeTable(dynamoDbClient, tableName);
```

```
                // Step 6: Add a test item to verify replication
                LOGGER.info("Step 6: Adding test item to verify replication");
                putTestItem(dynamoDbClient, tableName, "TestArtist", "TestSong");

                LOGGER.info("Global table setup completed successfully!");
                LOGGER.info("You can verify replication by checking the item in
region: " + replicaRegion.id());

                // Step 7: Remove replica and clean up table
                LOGGER.info("Step 7: Removing replica from region: " +
replicaRegion.id());
                removeReplica(dynamoDbClient, tableName, replicaRegion);
                DeleteTableResponse deleteTableResponse =
dynamoDbClient.deleteTable(
                    DeleteTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build());
                LOGGER.info("MREC global table demonstration completed
successfully!");

            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException("Thread was interrupted", e);
            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                LOGGER.severe("DynamoDB operation failed: " + e.getMessage());
                throw e;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTable

Delete DynamoDB data using PartiQL DELETE statements with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to delete data using PartiQL DELETE statements.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Delete items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL DELETE statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to delete items from a DynamoDB table using
 PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to delete documents with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Delete a single item by its partition key using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemByPartitionKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item deleted successfully");
```

```
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Delete an item by its composite key (partition key + sort key) using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param sortKeyName - The name of the sort key attribute
 * @param sortKeyValue - The value of the sort key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemByCompositeKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  sortKeyName: string,
  sortKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${sortKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue, sortKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item deleted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
```

```
 * Delete an item with a condition to ensure the delete only happens if a
 condition is met.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param conditionValue - The value to compare against in the condition
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemWithCondition = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  conditionAttribute: string,
  conditionValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${conditionAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue, conditionValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item deleted with condition successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting item with condition:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Batch delete multiple items using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param keys - Array of objects containing key information
 * @returns The response from the BatchExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const batchDeleteItems = async (
```

```
  tableName: string,
  keys: Array<{
    partitionKeyName: string;
    partitionKeyValue: string | number;
    sortKeyName?: string;
    sortKeyValue?: string | number;
  }>
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create statements for each delete
  const statements = keys.map((key) => {
    if (key.sortKeyName && key.sortKeyValue !== undefined) {
      return {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${key.partitionKeyName} = ?
 AND ${key.sortKeyName} = ?`,
        Parameters: [key.partitionKeyValue, key.sortKeyValue],
      };
    } else {
      return {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${key.partitionKeyName} = ?
`,
        Parameters: [key.partitionKeyValue],
      };
    }
  });

  const params = {
    Statements: statements,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new BatchExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items batch deleted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error batch deleting items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Delete multiple items that match a filter condition.
```

```
 * Note: This performs a scan operation which can be expensive on large tables.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param filterAttribute - The attribute to filter on
 * @param filterValue - The value to filter by
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemsByFilter = async (
  tableName: string,
  filterAttribute: string,
  filterValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${filterAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [filterValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items deleted by filter successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting items by filter:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to delete items with different index types
 */
export const deleteExamples = async () => {
  // Delete an item by partition key (simple primary key)
  await deleteItemByPartitionKey("UsersTable", "userId", "user123");

  // Delete an item by composite key (partition key + sort key)
  await deleteItemByCompositeKey(
    "OrdersTable",
    "orderId",
    "order456",
    "productId",
    "prod789"
```

```
  );

  // Delete with a condition
  await deleteItemWithCondition(
    "UsersTable",
    "userId",
    "user789",
    "userStatus",
    "inactive"
  );

  // Batch delete multiple items
  await batchDeleteItems("UsersTable", [
    { partitionKeyName: "userId", partitionKeyValue: "user234" },
    { partitionKeyName: "userId", partitionKeyValue: "user345" },
  ]);

  // Batch delete items with composite keys
  await batchDeleteItems("OrdersTable", [
    {
      partitionKeyName: "orderId",
      partitionKeyValue: "order567",
      sortKeyName: "productId",
      sortKeyValue: "prod123",
    },
    {
      partitionKeyName: "orderId",
      partitionKeyValue: "order678",
      sortKeyName: "productId",
      sortKeyValue: "prod456",
    },
  ]);

  // Delete items by filter (use with caution)
  await deleteItemsByFilter("UsersTable", "userStatus", "deleted");
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Insert DynamoDB data using PartiQL INSERT statements with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to insert data using PartiQL INSERT statements.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Insert items into a DynamoDB table using PartiQL INSERT statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to insert items into a DynamoDB table using
 PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to insert documents with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
```

```
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Insert a single item into a DynamoDB table using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param item - The item to insert
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const insertItem = async (tableName: string, item: Record<string, any>) =>
 {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Convert the item to a string representation for PartiQL
  const itemString = JSON.stringify(item).replace(/"([^"]+)":/g, '$1:');

  const params = {
    Statement: `INSERT INTO "${tableName}" VALUE ${itemString}`,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item inserted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error inserting item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Insert multiple items into a DynamoDB table using PartiQL batch operation.
 * This is more efficient than inserting items one by one.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param items - Array of items to insert
 * @returns The response from the BatchExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const batchInsertItems = async (tableName: string, items: Record<string,
 any>[]) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
```

```
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create statements for each item
  const statements = items.map((item) => {
    const itemString = JSON.stringify(item).replace(/"([^"]+)":/g, '$1:');
    return {
      Statement: `INSERT INTO "${tableName}" VALUE ${itemString}`,
    };
  });

  const params = {
    Statements: statements,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new BatchExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items inserted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error batch inserting items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Insert an item with a condition to prevent overwriting existing items.
 * This is useful for ensuring you don't accidentally overwrite data.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param item - The item to insert
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const insertItemWithCondition = async (
  tableName: string,
  item: Record<string, any>,
  partitionKeyName: string
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const itemString = JSON.stringify(item).replace(/"([^"]+)":/g, '$1:');
  const partitionKeyValue = JSON.stringify(item[partitionKeyName]);
```

```
  const params = {
    Statement: `INSERT INTO "${tableName}" VALUE ${itemString} WHERE
 attribute_not_exists(${partitionKeyName})`,
    Parameters: [{ S: partitionKeyValue }],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item inserted with condition successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error inserting item with condition:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to insert items with different index types
 */
export const insertExamples = async () => {
  // Example table with a simple primary key (just partition key)
  const simpleKeyItem = {
    userId: "user123",
    name: "John Doe",
    email: "john@example.com",
  };
  await insertItem("UsersTable", simpleKeyItem);

  // Example table with composite key (partition key + sort key)
  const compositeKeyItem = {
    orderId: "order456",
    productId: "prod789",
    quantity: 2,
    price: 29.99,
  };
  await insertItem("OrdersTable", compositeKeyItem);

  // Example with Global Secondary Index (GSI)
  // The GSI might be on the email attribute
  const gsiItem = {
    userId: "user789",
    email: "jane@example.com",
    name: "Jane Smith",
    userType: "premium",  // This could be part of a GSI
```

```
  };
  await insertItem("UsersTable", gsiItem);

  // Example with Local Secondary Index (LSI)
  // LSI uses the same partition key but different sort key
  const lsiItem = {
    orderId: "order567",  // Partition key
    productId: "prod123", // Sort key for the table
    orderDate: "2023-11-15", // Potential sort key for an LSI
    quantity: 1,
    price: 19.99,
  };
  await insertItem("OrdersTable", lsiItem);

  // Batch insert example with multiple items
  const batchItems = [
    {
      userId: "user234",
      name: "Alice Johnson",
      email: "alice@example.com",
    },
    {
      userId: "user345",
      name: "Bob Williams",
      email: "bob@example.com",
    },
  ];
  await batchInsertItems("UsersTable", batchItems);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Invoke a Lambda function from a browser

The following code example shows how to invoke an AWS Lambda function from a browser.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections. This app uses AWS SDK for JavaScript v3.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Manage DynamoDB Global Secondary Indexes using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage the complete lifecycle of Global Secondary Indexes.

- Create a table with a Global Secondary Index.
- Add a new GSI to an existing table.
- Update (increase) GSI warm throughput.
- Query data using GSIs.
- Delete a GSI.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with a Global Secondary Index.

```
# Create a table with a GSI
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=AlbumTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "IndexName=AlbumIndex,\
        KeySchema=[{AttributeName=AlbumTitle,KeyType=HASH}],\
        Projection={ProjectionType=ALL}"
```

Add a new (on-demand) GSI to an existing table.

```
# Add a new GSI to an existing table
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Genre,AttributeType=S \
    --global-secondary-index-updates \
        "[{\"Create\":{\"IndexName\":\"GenreIndex\",\
        \"KeySchema\":[{\"AttributeName\":\"Genre\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"}],\
        \"Projection\":{\"ProjectionType\":\"ALL\"}}}]"
```

Update (increase) GSI warm throughput.

```
# Increase the warm throughput of a GSI (default values are 12k reads, 4k writes)
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --global-secondary-index-updates \
```

```
        "[{\"Update\":{\"IndexName\":\"AlbumIndex\",\
        \"WarmThroughput\":{\"ReadUnitsPerSecond\":15000,\"WriteUnitsPerSecond
\":6000}}}]"
```

Query data using GSIs.

```
# Query the AlbumIndex GSI
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --index-name AlbumIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "AlbumTitle = :album" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":album":{"S":"Let It Be"}}'

# Query the GenreIndex GSI
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --index-name GenreIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "Genre = :genre" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":genre":{"S":"Jazz"}}'
```

Delete a GSI.

```
# Delete a GSI from a table
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --global-secondary-index-updates \
        "[{\"Delete\":{\"IndexName\":\"GenreIndex\"}}]"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - Query
  - UpdateTable

Manage DynamoDB resource-based policies using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage the complete lifecycle of resource-based policies for DynamoDB tables.

- Create a table with a resource policy.
- Get a resource policy.
- Update a resource policy.
- Delete a resource policy.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with a resource policy.

```
# Step 1: Create a DynamoDB table
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST

# Step 2: Create a resource-based policy document
cat > policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/DynamoDBReadOnly"
      },
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
```

```
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 3: Attach the resource-based policy to the table
aws dynamodb put-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection
 \
    --policy file://policy.json
```

Get a resource policy.

```
# Get the resource-based policy attached to a table
aws dynamodb get-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection
```

Update a resource policy.

```
# Step 1: Create an updated policy document
cat > updated-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": [
          "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/DynamoDBReadOnly",
          "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/DynamoDBAnalytics"
        ]
      },
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
```

```
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 2: Update the resource-based policy on the table
aws dynamodb put-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection
 \
    --policy file://updated-policy.json
```

Delete a resource policy.

```
# Delete the resource-based policy from a table
aws dynamodb delete-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteResourcePolicy
  - GetResourcePolicy
  - PutResourcePolicy

Monitor performance of Amazon DynamoDB using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to configure an application's use of DynamoDB to monitor performance.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example shows how to configure a Java application to monitor the performance of DynamoDB. The application sends metric data to CloudWatch where you can monitor the performance.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch
- DynamoDB

Perform advanced DynamoDB query operations using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to perform advanced query operations in DynamoDB.

- Query tables using various filtering and condition techniques.
- Implement pagination for large result sets.
- Use Global Secondary Indexes for alternate access patterns.
- Apply consistency controls based on application requirements.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query with strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithConsistentReads(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final boolean useConsistentRead) {
```

```
        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .consistentRead(useConsistentRead)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query successful. Found {0} items",
 response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with consistent reads", e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query using a Global Secondary Index with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryTable(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on base table successful. Found " +
 response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
```

```
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table not found: " + tableName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying base table: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on base
table", e);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI) by partition key.
     *
     * @param tableName         The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param indexName         The name of the GSI
     * @param partitionKeyName  The name of the GSI partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the GSI partition key to query
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException if the table or index doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException if the query fails
     */
    public QueryResponse queryGlobalSecondaryIndex(
        final String tableName, final String indexName, final String
partitionKeyName, final String partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Index name", indexName);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_IK,
partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_IK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
```

```
            .indexName(indexName)
            .keyConditionExpression(GSI_KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on GSI successful. Found " +
 response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(
                "Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" or index \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName, indexName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table or index not found: " +
 tableName + "/" + indexName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying GSI: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on GSI",
 e);
        }
    }
```

Query with pagination using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    public List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> queryWithPagination(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue, final int pageSize) {
```

```
        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Page size", pageSize);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        QueryRequest.Builder queryRequestBuilder = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(pageSize);

        // List to store all items from all pages
        final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> allItems = new ArrayList<>();

        // Map to store the last evaluated key for pagination
        Map<String, AttributeValue> lastEvaluatedKey = null;
        int pageNumber = 1;

        try {
            do {
                // If we have a last evaluated key, use it for the next page
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null) {
                    queryRequestBuilder.exclusiveStartKey(lastEvaluatedKey);
                }

                // Execute the query
                final QueryResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequestBuilder.build());

                // Process the current page of results
```

```
                final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> pageItems =
 response.items();
                allItems.addAll(pageItems);

                // Get the last evaluated key for the next page
                lastEvaluatedKey = response.lastEvaluatedKey();
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null && lastEvaluatedKey.isEmpty()) {
                    lastEvaluatedKey = null;
                }

                System.out.println("Page " + pageNumber + ": Retrieved " +
 pageItems.size() + " items (Running total: "
                    + allItems.size() + ")");

                pageNumber++;

            } while (lastEvaluatedKey != null);

            System.out.println("Query with pagination complete. Retrieved a total
 of " + allItems.size()
                + " items across " + (pageNumber - 1) + " pages");

            return allItems;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with pagination: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query with complex filters using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithComplexFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String statusAttrName,
        final String activeStatus,
        final String pendingStatus,
        final String priceAttrName,
        final double minPrice,
        final double maxPrice,
        final String categoryAttrName) {

        // Validate parameters
        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Status attribute name",
 statusAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Active status", activeStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Pending status", pendingStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Price attribute name",
 priceAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Category attribute name",
 categoryAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Minimum price", minPrice, 0.0,
 Double.MAX_VALUE);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Maximum price", maxPrice, minPrice,
 Double.MAX_VALUE);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pk", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_STATUS,
 statusAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PRICE,
 priceAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_CATEGORY,
 categoryAttrName);
```

```
        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":pkValue", AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_ACTIVE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(activeStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PENDING,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(pendingStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MIN_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(minPrice)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MAX_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(maxPrice)).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(FILTER_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        return dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
    }
```

Query with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
```

```
import java.util.Map;

    public static QueryResponse queryWithDynamicFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final Map<String, Object> filterCriteria,
        final Region region,
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {

        validateParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
 filterCriteria);

        DynamoDbClient ddbClient = dynamoDbClient;
        boolean shouldClose = false;

        try {
            if (ddbClient == null) {
                ddbClient = createClient(region);
                shouldClose = true;
            }

            final QueryWithDynamicFilter queryHelper = new
 QueryWithDynamicFilter(ddbClient);
            return queryHelper.queryWithDynamicFilter(tableName,
 partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue, filterCriteria);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to execute dynamic filter query: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error during query: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } finally {
            if (shouldClose && ddbClient != null) {
                ddbClient.close();
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue>
<filterAttrName> <filterAttrValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    filterAttrName - The name of the attribute to filter on.
                    filterAttrValue - The value to filter by.
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String filterAttrName = args[3];
        final String filterAttrValue = args[4];
        final Region region = args.length > 5 ? Region.of(args[5]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items with dynamic filter: " +
filterAttrName + " = " + filterAttrValue);

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriterion(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("Found " + response.count() + " items:");
```

```
            response.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Demonstrate multiple filter criteria
            System.out.println("\nNow querying with multiple filter criteria:");

            Map<String, Object> multipleFilters = new HashMap<>();
            multipleFilters.put(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue);
            multipleFilters.put("status", "active");

            final QueryResponse multiFilterResponse = new
 DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriteria(multipleFilters)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            System.out.println("Found " + multiFilterResponse.count() + " items
 with multiple filters:");
            multiFilterResponse.items().forEach(item ->
 System.out.println(item));

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Query with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithFilterAndLimit(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String filterAttrName,
        final String filterAttrValue,
        final int limit) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute name",
 filterAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute value",
 filterAttrValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Limit", limit);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_FILTER,
 filterAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_FILTER,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(filterAttrValue).build());
```

```
        // Create the filter expression
        final String filterExpression = "#filterAttr = :filterValue";

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(limit)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query with filter and limit successful. Found
 {0} items", response.count());
            LOGGER.log(
                Level.INFO, "ScannedCount: {0} (total items evaluated before
 filtering)", response.scannedCount());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with filter and limit: {0}",
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query with strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
```

```
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {boolean} useConsistentRead - Whether to use strongly consistent reads
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithConsistentRead(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  useConsistentRead = false
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
      },
      ConsistentRead: useConsistentRead
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with consistent read: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query using a Global Secondary Index with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table using the primary key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} userId - The user ID to query by (partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryTable(
  config,
  tableName,
  userId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the base table
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "user_id = :userId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":userId": { S: userId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI)
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
 * @param {string} indexName - The name of the GSI to query
 * @param {string} gameId - The game ID to query by (GSI partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryGSI(
  config,
  tableName,
  indexName,
  gameId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the GSI
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      IndexName: indexName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "game_id = :gameId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":gameId": { S: gameId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying GSI: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query with pagination using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example demonstrating how to handle large query result sets in DynamoDB using
 pagination
 *
 * This example shows:
 * - How to use pagination to handle large result sets
```

```
 * - How to use LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve the next page of results
 * - How to construct subsequent query requests using ExclusiveStartKey
 */
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number} pageSize - Number of items per page
 * @returns {Promise<Array>} - All items from the query
 */
async function queryWithPagination(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  pageSize = 25
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize variables for pagination
    let lastEvaluatedKey = undefined;
    const allItems = [];
    let pageCount = 0;

    // Loop until all pages are retrieved
    do {
      // Construct the query input
      const input = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
        Limit: pageSize,
        ExpressionAttributeNames: {
          "#pk": partitionKeyName
        },
        ExpressionAttributeValues: {
          ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
        }
```

```
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
 query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        input.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      // Execute the query
      const command = new QueryCommand(input);
      const response = await client.send(command);

      // Process the current page of results
      pageCount++;
      console.log(`Processing page ${pageCount} with ${response.Items.length}
 items`);

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems.push(...response.Items);
      }

      // Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;

    } while (lastEvaluatedKey); // Continue until there are no more pages

    console.log(`Query complete. Retrieved ${allItems.length} items in
 ${pageCount} pages.`);
    return allItems;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with pagination: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Example usage:
 *
 * // Query all items in the "AWS DynamoDB" forum with pagination
 * const allItems = await queryWithPagination(
 *   { region: "us-west-2" },
 *   "ForumThreads",
 *   "ForumName",
```

```
 *   "AWS DynamoDB",
 *   25 // 25 items per page
 * );
 *
 * console.log(`Total items retrieved: ${allItems.length}`);
 *
 * // Notes on pagination:
 * // - LastEvaluatedKey contains the primary key of the last evaluated item
 * // - When LastEvaluatedKey is undefined/null, there are no more items to
 retrieve
 * // - ExclusiveStartKey tells DynamoDB where to start the next page
 * // - Pagination helps manage memory usage for large result sets
 * // - Each page requires a separate network request to DynamoDB
 */

module.exports = { queryWithPagination };
```

Query with complex filters using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number|string} minViews - Minimum number of views for filtering
 * @param {number|string} minReplies - Minimum number of replies for filtering
 * @param {string} requiredTag - Tag that must be present in the item's tags set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithComplexFilter(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  minViews,
  minReplies,
  requiredTag
) {
```

```
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      FilterExpression: "views >= :minViews AND replies >= :minReplies AND
 contains(tags, :tag)",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":minViews": { N: minViews.toString() },
        ":minReplies": { N: minReplies.toString() },
        ":tag": { S: requiredTag }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with complex filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

async function queryWithDynamicFilter(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  sortKeyValue,
  filterParams = {}
```

```
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize filter expression components
    let filterExpressions = [];
    const expressionAttributeValues = {
      ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
      ":skValue": { S: sortKeyValue }
    };
    const expressionAttributeNames = {
      "#pk": partitionKeyName,
      "#sk": sortKeyName
    };

    // Add status filter if provided
    if (filterParams.status) {
      filterExpressions.push("status = :status");
      expressionAttributeValues[":status"] = { S: filterParams.status };
    }

    // Add minimum views filter if provided
    if (filterParams.minViews !== undefined) {
      filterExpressions.push("views >= :minViews");
      expressionAttributeValues[":minViews"] = { N:
 filterParams.minViews.toString() };
    }

    // Add author filter if provided
    if (filterParams.author) {
      filterExpressions.push("author = :author");
      expressionAttributeValues[":author"] = { S: filterParams.author };
    }

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue AND #sk = :skValue"
    };

    // Add filter expression if any filters were provided
    if (filterExpressions.length > 0) {
      input.FilterExpression = filterExpressions.join(" AND ");
```

```
    }

    // Add expression attribute names and values
    input.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
    input.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with dynamic filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query with strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import time

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_consistent_read(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    sort_key_name=None,
    sort_key_value=None,
    consistent_read=True,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with the option for strongly consistent reads.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
```

```
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str, optional): The name of the sort key attribute.
        sort_key_value (str, optional): The value of the sort key to query.
        consistent_read (bool, optional): Whether to use strongly consistent
 reads. Defaults to True.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    if sort_key_name and sort_key_value:
        key_condition = key_condition & Key(sort_key_name).eq(sort_key_value)

    # Perform the query with the consistent read option
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 ConsistentRead=consistent_read)

    return response
```

Query using a Global Secondary Index with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_table(table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the table's primary key
    response =
 table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value))

    return response


def query_gsi(table_name, index_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) on a DynamoDB table.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        index_name (str): The name of the Global Secondary Index.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the GSI's partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the GSI's partition key to query.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the GSI
    response = table.query(
        IndexName=index_name,
 KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
    )

    return response
```

Query with pagination using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_pagination(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25,
 max_pages=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page.
 Defaults to 25.
        max_pages (int, optional): The maximum number of pages to retrieve. If
 None, retrieves all pages.

    Returns:
        list: All items retrieved from the query across all pages.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_count = 0
    all_items = []

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Check if we've reached the maximum number of pages
        if max_pages is not None and page_count >= max_pages:
            break

        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
 Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
```

```
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
 query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Process the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        all_items.extend(items)

        # Update pagination tracking
        page_count += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if not last_evaluated_key:
            break

    return all_items


def query_with_pagination_generator(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using a generator to handle large
 result sets.
    This approach is memory-efficient as it yields one page at a time.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page.
 Defaults to 25.

    Yields:
```

```
        tuple: A tuple containing (items, page_number, last_page) where:
            - items is a list of items for the current page
            - page_number is the current page number (starting from 1)
            - last_page is a boolean indicating if this is the last page
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_number = 0

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Get the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        page_number += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # Determine if this is the last page
        is_last_page = last_evaluated_key is None

        # Yield the current page of results
        yield (items, page_number, is_last_page)

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
```

```
        if is_last_page:
            break
```

Query with complex filters using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_complex_filter(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    min_rating=None,
    status_list=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        status_list (list, optional): List of status values to include.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize the filter expression and expression attribute values
    filter_expression = None
```

```
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the filter expression based on provided parameters
    if min_rating is not None:
        filter_expression = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if status_list and len(status_list) > 0:
        status_condition = None
        for i, status in enumerate(status_list):
            status_value_name = f":status{i}"
            expression_attribute_values[status_value_name] = status

            if status_condition is None:
                status_condition = Attr("status").eq(status)
            else:
                status_condition = status_condition | Attr("status").eq(status)

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = status_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & status_condition

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] =
expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

```
def query_with_complex_filter_and_or(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    category=None,
    min_rating=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AND and OR
 operators.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        category (str, optional): Category value for filtering.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build a complex filter expression with AND and OR operators
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the category condition
    if category:
        filter_expression = Attr("category").eq(category)
        expression_attribute_values[":category"] = category

    # Build the rating and price condition (rating >= min_rating OR price <=
 max_price)
    rating_price_condition = None
```

```
    if min_rating is not None:
        rating_price_condition = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if rating_price_condition is None:
            rating_price_condition = price_condition
        else:
            rating_price_condition = rating_price_condition | price_condition

    # Combine the conditions
    if rating_price_condition:
        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = rating_price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & rating_price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] =
 expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Query with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key
```

```
def query_with_dynamic_filter(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_conditions=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_conditions (dict, optional): A dictionary of filter conditions
 where
            keys are attribute names and values are dictionaries with 'operator'
 and 'value'.
            Example: {'rating': {'operator': '>=', 'value': 4}, 'status':
 {'operator': '=', 'value': 'active'}}

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize variables for the filter expression and attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {":pk_val": partition_key_value}

    # Dynamically build the filter expression if filter conditions are provided
    if filter_conditions:
        for attr_name, condition in filter_conditions.items():
            operator = condition.get("operator")
            value = condition.get("value")
            attr_value_name = f":{attr_name}"
            expression_attribute_values[attr_value_name] = value

            # Create the appropriate filter expression based on the operator
            current_condition = None
            if operator == "=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).eq(value)
            elif operator == "!=":
```

```
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).ne(value)
            elif operator == ">":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gt(value)
            elif operator == ">=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gte(value)
            elif operator == "<":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lt(value)
            elif operator == "<=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lte(value)
            elif operator == "contains":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).contains(value)
            elif operator == "begins_with":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).begins_with(value)

            # Combine with existing filter expression using AND
            if current_condition:
                if filter_expression is None:
                    filter_expression = current_condition
                else:
                    filter_expression = filter_expression & current_condition

    # Perform the query with the dynamically built filter expression
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression

    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Query with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_filter_and_limit(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
```

```
    filter_attribute=None,
    filter_value=None,
    limit=10,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit the number of
 results.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_attribute (str, optional): The attribute name to filter on.
        filter_value (any, optional): The value to compare against in the filter.
        limit (int, optional): The maximum number of items to evaluate. Defaults
 to 10.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition, "Limit": limit}

    # Add the filter expression if filter attributes are provided
    if filter_attribute and filter_value is not None:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] =
 Attr(filter_attribute).gt(filter_value)
        query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = {":filter_value":
 filter_value}

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform list operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to perform list operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a list attribute.
- Remove elements from a list attribute.
- Update specific elements in a list by index.
- Use list append and list index functions.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate list operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Appends items to a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add
     * items to the end of a list attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param itemsToAppend The items to append to the list
```

```
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse appendToList(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> itemsToAppend) {

        // Create a list value from the items to append
        AttributeValue listValue =
AttributeValue.builder().l(itemsToAppend).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attrName =
list_append(if_not_exists(#attrName, :emptyList), :newItems)")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":newItems",
                listValue,
                ":emptyList",
                AttributeValue.builder().l(new
ArrayList<AttributeValue>()).build()))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Prepends items to a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add
     * items to the beginning of a list attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
```

```
     * @param itemsToPrepend The items to prepend to the list
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse prependToList(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> itemsToPrepend) {

        // Create a list value from the items to prepend
        AttributeValue listValue =
AttributeValue.builder().l(itemsToPrepend).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        // Note: To prepend, we put the new items first in the list_append
function
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attrName = list_append(:newItems,
if_not_exists(#attrName, :emptyList))")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":newItems",
                listValue,
                ":emptyList",
                AttributeValue.builder().l(new
ArrayList<AttributeValue>()).build()))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Updates a specific element in a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to update a specific element in a list
     * by its index.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
```

```
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param index The index of the element to update
     * @param newValue The new value for the element
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateListElement(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        int index,
        AttributeValue newValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attrName[" + index + "] = :newValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":newValue", newValue))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Removes a specific element from a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to remove a specific element from a list
     * by its index.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param index The index of the element to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
```

```
    public static UpdateItemResponse removeListElement(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        int index) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("REMOVE #attrName[" + index + "]")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a list attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @return The list attribute value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static List<AttributeValue> getListAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, String listAttributeName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(listAttributeName)
            .build();

        try {
```

```
            // Perform the get operation
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the list attribute if it exists, otherwise null
            if (response.item() != null &&
response.item().containsKey(listAttributeName)) {
                return response.item().get(listAttributeName).l();
            }

            return null;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get list attribute: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of list operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating list operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Append items to a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Appending items to a list");
            List<AttributeValue> tagsToAppend = List.of(
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Gadget").build());

            UpdateItemResponse appendResponse = appendToList(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", tagsToAppend);

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
appendResponse.attributes());

            // Example 2: Prepend items to a list
```

```
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Prepending items to a list");
            List<AttributeValue> tagsToPrepend = List.of(
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Featured").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("New").build());

            UpdateItemResponse prependResponse = prependToList(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", tagsToPrepend);

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
prependResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Update a specific element in a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Updating a specific element in a
list");
            UpdateItemResponse updateResponse = updateListElement(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Tags",
                0,
                AttributeValue.builder().s("BestSeller").build());

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
updateResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Remove a specific element from a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Removing a specific element from a
list");
            UpdateItemResponse removeResponse = removeListElement(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
removeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Get the current value of a list attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Getting the current value of a list
attribute");
            List<AttributeValue> currentList = getListAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags");

            if (currentList != null) {
                System.out.println("Current list attribute:");
                for (int i = 0; i < currentList.size(); i++) {
```

```
                    System.out.println("  [" + i + "]: " +
currentList.get(i).s());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.println("List attribute not found");
            }

            // Explain list operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB list operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Lists are ordered collections of attributes");
            System.out.println("2. Use list_append to add items to a list");
            System.out.println("3. To append items, use list_append(existingList,
newItems)");
            System.out.println("4. To prepend items, use list_append(newItems,
existingList)");
            System.out.println("5. Use index notation (list[0]) to access or
update specific elements");
            System.out.println("6. Use REMOVE to delete elements from a list");
            System.out.println("7. List indices are zero-based");
            System.out.println("8. Use if_not_exists to handle the case where the
list doesn't exist yet");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate list operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand
```

```
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Append elements to a list attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add elements
 * to the end of a list.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to append to the list
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function appendToList(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  values
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using list_append
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName} =
 list_append(if_not_exists(${listName}, :empty_list), :values)`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":empty_list": [],
      ":values": values
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}
```

```
/**
 * Prepend elements to a list attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add elements
 * to the beginning of a list.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to prepend to the list
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function prependToList(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  values
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using list_append
  // Note: To prepend, we put the new values first in the list_append function
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName} = list_append(:values,
 if_not_exists(${listName}, :empty_list))`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":empty_list": [],
      ":values": values
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}
```

```
/**
 * Update a specific element in a list by index.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update a specific element in a list
 * using the index notation.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {number} index - The index of the element to update
 * @param {any} value - The new value for the element
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateListElement(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  index,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using index notation
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName}[${index}] = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}
```

```
/**
 * Remove an element from a list by index.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to remove a specific element from a list
 * using the REMOVE action with index notation.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {number} index - The index of the element to remove
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function removeListElement(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  index
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using REMOVE with index notation
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `REMOVE ${listName}[${index}]`,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Concatenate two lists.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to concatenate two lists using the list_append
 function.
 *
```

```
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName1 - The name of the first list attribute
 * @param {string} listName2 - The name of the second list attribute
 * @param {string} resultListName - The name of the attribute to store the
 concatenated list
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function concatenateLists(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName1,
  listName2,
  resultListName
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using list_append
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${resultListName} =
 list_append(if_not_exists(${listName1}, :empty_list),
 if_not_exists(${listName2}, :empty_list))`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":empty_list": []
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Create a nested list structure.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to create and work with nested lists.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {Array} nestedLists - An array of arrays to create a nested list
 structure
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function createNestedList(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  nestedLists
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters to create a nested list
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName} = :nested_lists`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":nested_lists": nestedLists
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update an element in a nested list.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update an element in a nested list
 * using multiple index notations.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
```

```
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {number} outerIndex - The index in the outer list
 * @param {number} innerIndex - The index in the inner list
 * @param {any} value - The new value for the element
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateNestedListElement(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  outerIndex,
  innerIndex,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using multiple index notations
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName}[${outerIndex}][${innerIndex}] = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
```

```
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of list operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to work with lists in DynamoDB.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "UserProfiles";
  const key = { UserId: "U12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating list operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Append elements to a list
    console.log("\nExample 1: Appending elements to a list");
```

```
    const response1 = await appendToList(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      ["laptop", "headphones", "monitor"]
    );

    console.log("Appended to list:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Prepend elements to a list
    console.log("\nExample 2: Prepending elements to a list");
    const response2 = await prependToList(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      ["keyboard", "mouse"]
    );

    console.log("Prepended to list:", response2.Attributes);

    // Get the current state of the item
    let currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log("\nCurrent state of RecentSearches:",
  currentItem?.RecentSearches);

    // Example 3: Update a specific element in a list
    console.log("\nExample 3: Updating a specific element in a list");
    const response3 = await updateListElement(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      0, // Update the first element
      "mechanical keyboard" // New value
    );

    console.log("Updated list element:", response3.Attributes);

    // Example 4: Remove an element from a list
    console.log("\nExample 4: Removing an element from a list");
    const response4 = await removeListElement(
      config,
```

```
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      2 // Remove the third element
    );

    console.log("List after removing element:", response4.Attributes);

    // Example 5: Create and concatenate lists
    console.log("\nExample 5: Creating and concatenating lists");

    // First, create two separate lists
    await updateWithMultipleActions(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "SET WishList = :wishlist, SavedItems = :saveditems",
      null,
      {
        ":wishlist": ["gaming laptop", "wireless earbuds"],
        ":saveditems": ["smartphone", "tablet"]
      }
    );

    // Then, concatenate them
    const response5 = await concatenateLists(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "WishList",
      "SavedItems",
      "AllItems"
    );

    console.log("Concatenated lists:", response5.Attributes);

    // Example 6: Create a nested list structure
    console.log("\nExample 6: Creating a nested list structure");
    const response6 = await createNestedList(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Categories",
      [
```

```
        ["Electronics", "Computers", "Accessories"],
        ["Books", "Magazines", "E-books"],
        ["Clothing", "Shoes", "Watches"]
      ]
    );

    console.log("Created nested list:", response6.Attributes);

    // Example 7: Update an element in a nested list
    console.log("\nExample 7: Updating an element in a nested list");
    const response7 = await updateNestedListElement(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Categories",
      0, // First inner list
      1, // Second element in that list
      "Laptops" // New value
    );

    console.log("Updated nested list element:", response7.Attributes);

    // Get the final state of the item
    currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log("\nFinal state of the item:", JSON.stringify(currentItem, null,
  2));

    // Explain list operations
    console.log("\nKey points about list operations in DynamoDB:");
    console.log("1. Use list_append to add elements to a list");
    console.log("2. To append elements, use list_append(existingList,
  newElements)");
    console.log("3. To prepend elements, use list_append(newElements,
  existingList)");
    console.log("4. Use if_not_exists to handle cases where the list might not
  exist yet");
    console.log("5. Use index notation (list[0]) to access or update specific
  elements");
    console.log("6. Use REMOVE with index notation to remove elements from a
  list");
    console.log("7. Lists can contain elements of different types");
    console.log("8. Lists can be nested (lists of lists)");
    console.log("9. Use multiple index notations (list[0][1]) to access nested
  list elements");
```

```
  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}

/**
 * Helper function for the examples.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} updateExpression - The update expression
 * @param {Object} expressionAttributeNames - Expression attribute name
 placeholders
 * @param {Object} expressionAttributeValues - Expression attribute value
 placeholders
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithMultipleActions(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  updateExpression,
  expressionAttributeNames,
  expressionAttributeValues
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Prepare the update parameters
  const updateParams = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Add expression attribute names if provided
  if (expressionAttributeNames) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
  }
```

```
  // Add expression attribute values if provided
  if (expressionAttributeValues) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;
  }

  // Execute the update
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(updateParams));

  return response;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate list operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
import json
from typing import Any, Dict, List, Optional, Union


def create_list_attribute(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, list_values: List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Create a new list attribute or replace an existing one.

    This function demonstrates how to create a new list attribute or replace
    an existing list with new values.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        list_values (List[Any]): The values to set in the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
```

```
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the SET operation to create or replace the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = :list_values",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":list_values": list_values},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def append_to_list(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, values_to_append:
 List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Append values to the end of a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add
 elements
    to the end of a list attribute.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        values_to_append (List[Any]): The values to append to the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use list_append to add values to the end of the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
```

```
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = list_append({list_name}, :values)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values": values_to_append},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def prepend_to_list(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, values_to_prepend:
 List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Prepend values to the beginning of a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add
 elements
    to the beginning of a list attribute.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        values_to_prepend (List[Any]): The values to prepend to the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use list_append with reversed order to add values to the beginning of the
 list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = list_append(:values, {list_name})",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values": values_to_prepend},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

```
def update_list_element(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, index: int, new_value:
 Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a specific element in a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to update a specific element in a list
 attribute
    using the index notation.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        index (int): The zero-based index of the element to update.
        new_value (Any): The new value for the element.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the index notation to update a specific element
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name}[{index}] = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": new_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def remove_list_element(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, index: int
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Remove a specific element from a list attribute.
```

```
    This function demonstrates how to remove a specific element from a list
 attribute
    using the REMOVE action with index notation.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        index (int): The zero-based index of the element to remove.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the REMOVE action with index notation to remove a specific element
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key, UpdateExpression=f"REMOVE {list_name}[{index}]",
 ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW"
    )

    return response


def update_nested_list_element(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], path: str, new_value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an element in a nested list structure.

    This function demonstrates how to update an element in a nested list
 structure
    using expression attribute names for the path components.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        path (str): The path to the nested element (e.g., "parent[0].child[1]").
        new_value (Any): The new value for the element.

    Returns:
```

```
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
attribute values.
    """
    # Define a type for path parts
    path_part = Dict[str, Union[str, int]]
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Parse the path to extract attribute names and indices
    path_parts: List[path_part] = []
    current_part = ""
    in_bracket = False

    for char in path:
        if char == "[":
            if current_part:
                path_parts.append({"type": "attribute", "value": current_part})
                current_part = ""
            in_bracket = True
        elif char == "]":
            if current_part:
                # Fix for mypy: Use a properly typed dictionary with Union type
                path_parts.append({"type": "index", "value": int(current_part)})
                current_part = ""
            in_bracket = False
        elif char == "." and not in_bracket:
            if current_part:
                path_parts.append({"type": "attribute", "value": current_part})
                current_part = ""
        else:
            current_part += char

    if current_part:
        path_parts.append({"type": "attribute", "value": current_part})

    # Build the update expression and attribute names
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {}

    # Build the path expression
    path_expression = ""
    for i, part in enumerate(path_parts):
        if part["type"] == "attribute":
```

```
            name_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
            expression_attribute_names[name_placeholder] = part["value"]

            if path_expression:
                path_expression += "."
            path_expression += name_placeholder
        elif part["type"] == "index":
            path_expression += f"[{part['value']}]"

    # Complete the update expression
    update_expression += f"{path_expression} = :value"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": new_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def create_list_if_not_exists(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, default_values:
 List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Create a list attribute if it doesn't exist.

    This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to create a list
 attribute
    with default values if it doesn't already exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        default_values (List[Any]): The default values for the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
```

```
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use if_not_exists to create the list if it doesn't exist
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} =
 if_not_exists({list_name}, :default)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":default": default_values},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def append_to_list_safely(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    list_name: str,
    values_to_append: List[Any],
    default_values: Optional[List[Any]] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Append values to a list, creating it if it doesn't exist.

    This function demonstrates how to safely append values to a list attribute,
    creating the list with default values if it doesn't exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        values_to_append (List[Any]): The values to append to the list.
        default_values (Optional[List[Any]]): The default values if the list
 doesn't exist.
            If not provided, values_to_append will be used as the default.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
```

```
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # If default_values is not provided, use values_to_append
    if default_values is None:
        default_values = values_to_append

    # Use if_not_exists with list_append to safely append to the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} =
 list_append(if_not_exists({list_name}, :default), :values)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":default": default_values if default_values else [],
            ":values": values_to_append,
        },
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

Example usage of list operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use list operations in DynamoDB."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "UserData"
    key = {"UserId": "user123"}

    print("Example 1: Creating a list attribute")
    try:
        response = create_list_attribute(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            list_values=["Reading", "Hiking", "Photography"],
        )
        print(
            f"List attribute created successfully:
 {json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
```

```
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating list attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Appending values to a list")
    try:
        response = append_to_list(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            values_to_append=["Cooking", "Gardening"],
        )
        print(
            f"Values appended to list successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error appending to list: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Prepending values to a list")
    try:
        response = prepend_to_list(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            values_to_prepend=["Travel", "Music"],
        )
        print(
            f"Values prepended to list successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error prepending to list: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Updating a specific list element")
    try:
        response = update_list_element(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            index=2,
            new_value="Mountain Hiking",
        )
        print(
```

```
            f"List element updated successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating list element: {e}")

    print("\nExample 5: Removing a list element")
    try:
        response = remove_list_element(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, list_name="Interests", index=0
        )
        print(
            f"List element removed successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error removing list element: {e}")

    print("\nExample 6: Working with nested lists")
    try:
        # First, create an item with a nested structure
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        table.update_item(
            Key={"UserId": "user456"},
            UpdateExpression="SET #skills = :skills",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={"#skills": "Skills"},
            ExpressionAttributeValues={
                ":skills": [
                    {"Category": "Programming", "Languages": ["Python", "Java",
"JavaScript"]},
                    {"Category": "Database", "Systems": ["DynamoDB", "MongoDB",
"PostgreSQL"]},
                ]
            },
        )

        # Now update a nested element
        response = update_nested_list_element(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user456"},
            path="Skills[0].Languages[1]",
            new_value="TypeScript",
```

```
        )
        print(
            f"Nested list element updated successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error working with nested lists: {e}")

    print("\nExample 7: Creating a list if it doesn't exist")
    try:
        response = create_list_if_not_exists(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user789"},
            list_name="Preferences",
            default_values=["Default1", "Default2", "Default3"],
        )
        print(
            f"List created with default values:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating list with default values: {e}")

    print("\nExample 8: Safely appending to a list")
    try:
        response = append_to_list_safely(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user789"},
            list_name="Notifications",
            values_to_append=["New message received"],
            default_values=[],
        )
        print(f"Safely appended to list: {json.dumps(response.get('Attributes',
{}), default=str)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error safely appending to list: {e}")

    print("\nKey Points About Working with Lists in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Lists are ordered collections of elements that can be of different
types")
    print("2. Use the SET operation with direct assignment to create or replace a
list")
    print("3. Use list_append() to add elements to a list without replacing the
entire list")
```

```
    print("4. To append to the end: list_append(list_name, :values)")
    print("5. To prepend to the beginning: list_append(:values, list_name)")
    print("6. Use index notation list_name[index] to access or update specific
elements")
    print("7. Use the REMOVE action with index notation to remove specific
elements")
    print("8. Lists can contain nested structures like maps and other lists")
    print("9. Use if_not_exists() to create a list with default values if it
doesn't exist")
    print("10. List indices are zero-based (the first element is at index 0)")
    print("11. Attempting to access an index beyond the list bounds will result
in an error")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform map operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to perform map operations in DynamoDB.

- Add and update nested attributes in map structures.
- Remove specific fields from maps.
- Work with deeply nested map attributes.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate map operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
```

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Updates a map attribute that may not exist.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to safely update a map attribute
     * by using if_not_exists to handle the case where the map doesn't exist yet.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @param mapKey The key within the map to update
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateMapAttributeSafe(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String mapName,
        String mapKey,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Create an empty map to use if the map doesn't exist
        Map<String, AttributeValue> emptyMap = new HashMap<>();
        AttributeValue emptyMapValue =
 AttributeValue.builder().m(emptyMap).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #mapName = if_not_exists(#mapName, :emptyMap),
 #mapName.#mapKey = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#mapName", mapName,
                "#mapKey", mapKey))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":value",
                value,
                ":emptyMap",
```

```
                AttributeValue.builder().m(new HashMap<>()).build()))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Adds an attribute to a nested map.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to update a nested attribute without
     * overwriting the entire map.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param path The path to the nested attribute as a list
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse addToNestedMap(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        List<String> path,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Create expression attribute names for each part of the path
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        for (int i = 0; i < path.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#attr" + i, path.get(i));
        }

        // Build the attribute path using the expression attribute names
        StringBuilder attributePathExpression = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < path.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                attributePathExpression.append(".");
            }
            attributePathExpression.append("#attr").append(i);
        }
```

```
        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET " + attributePathExpression.toString() + "
= :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Removes an attribute from a map.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to remove a specific attribute from a map.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @param mapKey The key within the map to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse removeMapAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String mapName,
        String mapKey) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("REMOVE #mapName.#mapKey")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#mapName", mapName,
                "#mapKey", mapKey))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
```

```
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Creates a map with multiple attributes in a single operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to create a map with multiple attributes
     * in a single update operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @param attributes The attributes to set in the map
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse createMapWithAttributes(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String mapName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> attributes) {

        // Create a map value from the attributes
        AttributeValue mapValue = AttributeValue.builder().m(attributes).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #mapName = :mapValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#mapName", mapName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":mapValue", mapValue))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Gets the current value of a map attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a map attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @return The map attribute value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, AttributeValue> getMapAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, String mapName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(mapName)
            .build();

        try {
            // Perform the get operation
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the map attribute if it exists, otherwise null
            if (response.item() != null && response.item().containsKey(mapName))
{
                return response.item().get(mapName).m();
            }

            return null;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get map attribute: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of map operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
tableName) {
       // Example key
       Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
       key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

       System.out.println("Demonstrating map operations in DynamoDB");

       try {
           // Example 1: Create a map with multiple attributes
           System.out.println("\nExample 1: Creating a map with multiple
attributes");
           Map<String, AttributeValue> productDetails = new HashMap<>();
           productDetails.put("Color",
AttributeValue.builder().s("Red").build());
           productDetails.put("Weight",
AttributeValue.builder().n("2.5").build());
           productDetails.put(
               "Dimensions", AttributeValue.builder().s("10x20x5").build());

           UpdateItemResponse createResponse =
               createMapWithAttributes(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key,
"Details", productDetails);

           System.out.println("Created map attribute: " +
createResponse.attributes());

           // Example 2: Update a specific attribute in a map
           System.out.println("\nExample 2: Updating a specific attribute in a
map");
           UpdateItemResponse updateResponse = updateMapAttributeSafe(
               dynamoDbClient,
               tableName,
               key,
               "Details",
               "Color",
               AttributeValue.builder().s("Blue").build());

           System.out.println("Updated map attribute: " +
updateResponse.attributes());

           // Example 3: Add an attribute to a nested map
```

```
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Adding an attribute to a nested
map");
            UpdateItemResponse nestedResponse = addToNestedMap(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                List.of("Specifications", "Technical", "Resolution"),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("1920x1080").build());

            System.out.println("Added to nested map: " +
nestedResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Remove an attribute from a map
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Removing an attribute from a map");
            UpdateItemResponse removeResponse =
                removeMapAttribute(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Details",
"Dimensions");

            System.out.println("Updated map after removal: " +
removeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Get the current value of a map attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Getting the current value of a map
attribute");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> currentMap =
getMapAttribute(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Details");

            if (currentMap != null) {
                System.out.println("Current map attribute:");
                for (Map.Entry<String, AttributeValue> entry :
currentMap.entrySet()) {
                    System.out.println("  " + entry.getKey() + ": " +
entry.getValue());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.println("Map attribute not found");
            }

            // Explain map operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB map operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Maps are unordered collections of name-value
pairs");
            System.out.println("2. Use dot notation (map.key) to access or update
specific attributes");
```

```
            System.out.println("3. You can update individual attributes without
 overwriting the entire map");
            System.out.println("4. Maps can be nested to create complex data
 structures");
            System.out.println("5. Use REMOVE to delete attributes from a map");
            System.out.println("6. You can create a map with multiple attributes
 in a single operation");
            System.out.println("7. Map keys are case-sensitive");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate map operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of updating map attributes in DynamoDB.
 *
 * This module demonstrates how to update map attributes that may not exist,
 * how to update nested attributes, and how to handle various map update
 scenarios.
 */

const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Update a map attribute safely, handling the case where the map might not
 exist.
```

```
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the if_not_exists function to safely update
 * a map attribute that might not exist yet.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} mapName - The name of the map attribute
 * @param {string} mapKey - The key within the map to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateMapAttributeSafe(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  mapName,
  mapKey,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with if_not_exists
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${mapName}.${mapKey} = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
    return response;
  } catch (error) {
    // If the error is because the map doesn't exist, create it
    if (error.name === "ValidationException" &&
        error.message.includes("The document path provided in the update
 expression is invalid")) {
```

```
      // Create the map with the specified key-value pair
      const createParams = {
        TableName: tableName,
        Key: key,
        UpdateExpression: `SET ${mapName} = :map`,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: {
          ":map": { [mapKey]: value }
        },
        ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
      };

      return await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(createParams));
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Update a map attribute using the if_not_exists function.
 *
 * This function demonstrates a more elegant approach using if_not_exists
 * to handle the case where the map doesn't exist yet.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} mapName - The name of the map attribute
 * @param {string} mapKey - The key within the map to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateMapAttributeWithIfNotExists(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  mapName,
  mapKey,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
```

```
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with if_not_exists
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${mapName} = if_not_exists(${mapName}, :emptyMap),
 ${mapName}.${mapKey} = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":emptyMap": {},
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Add a value to a deeply nested map, creating parent maps if they don't exist.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update a deeply nested attribute,
 * creating any parent maps that don't exist along the way.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string[]} path - The path to the nested attribute as an array of keys
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function addToNestedMap(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  path,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
  // Build the update expression and expression attribute values
  let updateExpression = "SET";
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // For each level in the path, create a map if it doesn't exist
  for (let i = 0; i < path.length; i++) {
    const currentPath = path.slice(0, i + 1).join(".");
    const parentPath = i > 0 ? path.slice(0, i).join(".") : null;

    if (parentPath) {
      updateExpression += ` ${parentPath} =
 if_not_exists(${parentPath}, :emptyMap${i}),`;
      expressionAttributeValues[`:emptyMap${i}`] = {};
    }
  }

  // Set the final value
  const fullPath = path.join(".");
  updateExpression += ` ${fullPath} = :value`;
  expressionAttributeValues[":value"] = value;

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update multiple fields in a map attribute in a single operation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update multiple fields in a map
 * in a single DynamoDB operation.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
```

```
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} mapName - The name of the map attribute
 * @param {Object} updates - Object containing key-value pairs to update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateMultipleMapFields(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  mapName,
  updates
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Build the update expression and expression attribute values
  let updateExpression = `SET ${mapName} = if_not_exists(${mapName}, :emptyMap)`;
  const expressionAttributeValues = {
    ":emptyMap": {}
  };

  // Add each update to the expression
  Object.entries(updates).forEach(([field, value], index) => {
    updateExpression += `, ${mapName}.${field} = :val${index}`;
    expressionAttributeValues[`:val${index}`] = value;
  });

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}
```

```
/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}

/**
 * Example of how to use the map attribute update functions.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Users";
  const key = { UserId: "U12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating different approaches to update map attributes in
 DynamoDB");
```

```
  try {
    // Example 1: Update a map attribute that might not exist (two-step approach)
    console.log("\nExample 1: Updating a map attribute that might not exist (two-
step approach)");
    const response1 = await updateMapAttributeSafe(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Preferences",
      "Theme",
      "Dark"
    );

    console.log("Updated preferences:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Update a map attribute using if_not_exists (elegant approach)
    console.log("\nExample 2: Updating a map attribute using if_not_exists
 (elegant approach)");
    const response2 = await updateMapAttributeWithIfNotExists(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Settings",
      "NotificationsEnabled",
      true
    );

    console.log("Updated settings:", response2.Attributes);

    // Example 3: Update a deeply nested attribute
    console.log("\nExample 3: Updating a deeply nested attribute");
    const response3 = await addToNestedMap(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      ["Profile", "Address", "City"],
      "Seattle"
    );

    console.log("Updated nested attribute:", response3.Attributes);

    // Example 4: Update multiple fields in a map
    console.log("\nExample 4: Updating multiple fields in a map");
    const response4 = await updateMultipleMapFields(
```

```
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "ContactInfo",
      {
        Email: "user@example.com",
        Phone: "555-123-4567",
        PreferredContact: "Email"
      }
    );

    console.log("Updated multiple fields:", response4.Attributes);

    // Get the final state of the item
    console.log("\nFinal state of the item:");
    const item = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(item, null, 2));

    // Explain the benefits of different approaches
    console.log("\nKey points about updating map attributes:");
    console.log("1. Use if_not_exists to handle maps that might not exist");
    console.log("2. Multiple updates can be combined in a single operation");
    console.log("3. Deeply nested attributes require creating parent maps");
    console.log("4. DynamoDB expressions are atomic - the entire update succeeds
 or fails");
    console.log("5. Using a single operation is more efficient than multiple
 separate updates");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}

// Export the functions
module.exports = {
  updateMapAttributeSafe,
  updateMapAttributeWithIfNotExists,
  addToNestedMap,
  updateMultipleMapFields,
  getItem,
  exampleUsage
};

// Run the example if this file is executed directly
```

```
if (require.main === module) {
  exampleUsage();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate map operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
"""
Example of updating map attributes in DynamoDB.

This module demonstrates how to update map attributes in DynamoDB, including
handling cases where the map attribute might not exist yet.
"""


import boto3
from typing import Any, Dict, Optional



def update_map_attribute_safe(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], map_name: str, map_key: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a specific key in a map attribute, creating the map if it doesn't
 exist.

    This function demonstrates how to safely update a key within a map attribute,
    even if the map doesn't exist yet in the item.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        map_name (str): The name of the map attribute.
        map_key (str): The key within the map to update.
        value (Any): The value to set for the map key.
```

```
    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use SET with attribute_not_exists to safely update the map
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #map.#key = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#map": map_name, "#key": map_key},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def add_to_nested_map(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], path: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Add or update a value in a deeply nested map structure.

    This function demonstrates how to update a value at a specific path in a
    nested map structure, creating any intermediate maps as needed.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        path (str): The path to the nested attribute (e.g.,
 "user.preferences.theme").
        value (Any): The value to set at the specified path.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)
```

```
    # Split the path into components
    path_parts = path.split(".")

    # Build the update expression and attribute names
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {}

    # Build the path expression
    path_expression = ""
    for i, part in enumerate(path_parts):
        name_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
        expression_attribute_names[name_placeholder] = part

        if i == 0:
            path_expression = name_placeholder
        else:
            path_expression += f".{name_placeholder}"

    # Complete the update expression
    update_expression += f"{path_expression} = :value"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def update_map_with_if_not_exists(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    map_name: str,
    map_key: str,
    value: Any,
    default_map: Optional[Dict[str, Any]] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
```

```
    Update a key in a map, creating the map with default values if it doesn't
 exist.

    This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to initialize a map with
    default values if it doesn't exist yet, and then update a specific key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        map_name (str): The name of the map attribute.
        map_key (str): The key within the map to update.
        value (Any): The value to set for the map key.
        default_map (Optional[Dict[str, Any]]): Default map values if the map
 doesn't exist.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Set default map if not provided
    if default_map is None:
        default_map = {}

    # Create a map with the new key-value pair
    updated_map = default_map.copy()
    updated_map[map_key] = value

    # Use if_not_exists to initialize the map if it doesn't exist
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #map = if_not_exists(#map, :default_map)",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#map": map_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":default_map": updated_map},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def merge_into_map(
```

```
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], map_name: str, values_to_merge:
 Dict[str, Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Merge multiple key-value pairs into a map attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to update multiple keys in a map attribute
    in a single operation, without overwriting the entire map.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        map_name (str): The name of the map attribute.
        values_to_merge (Dict[str, Any]): Key-value pairs to merge into the map.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the update expression for each key-value pair
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {"#map": map_name}
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Add each key-value pair to the update expression
    for i, (k, v) in enumerate(values_to_merge.items()):
        key_placeholder = f"#key{i}"
        value_placeholder = f":value{i}"

        expression_attribute_names[key_placeholder] = k
        expression_attribute_values[value_placeholder] = v

        if i > 0:
            update_expression += ", "
        update_expression += f"#map.{key_placeholder} = {value_placeholder}"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
```

```
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response




def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the map attribute update functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "UserProfiles"
    key = {"UserId": "user123"}

    print("Example 1: Updating a specific key in a map attribute")
    try:
        response = update_map_attribute_safe(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, map_name="Preferences",
 map_key="Theme", value="Dark"
        )
        print(f"Map attribute updated successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
 {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating map attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Adding a value to a deeply nested map")
    try:
        response = add_to_nested_map(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, path="Settings.Notifications.Email",
 value=True
        )
        print(f"Nested map updated successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
 {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating nested map: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Initializing a map with default values if it doesn't
 exist")
    try:
        default_map = {"Language": "English", "Currency": "USD", "TimeZone":
 "UTC"}
```

```
        response = update_map_with_if_not_exists(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "newuser456"},
            map_name="Preferences",
            map_key="Theme",
            value="Light",
            default_map=default_map,
        )
        print(f"Map initialized with defaults: {response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error initializing map: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Merging multiple values into a map")
    try:
        values_to_merge = {
            "NotificationsEnabled": True,
            "EmailFrequency": "Daily",
            "PushNotifications": False,
        }

        response = merge_into_map(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            map_name="NotificationSettings",
            values_to_merge=values_to_merge,
        )
        print(f"Multiple values merged into map: {response.get('Attributes',
{})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error merging values into map: {e}")

    print("\nBest practices for working with map attributes in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Use dot notation to access and update nested attributes")
    print("2. Use ExpressionAttributeNames to handle reserved words and special
characters")
    print("3. Use if_not_exists() to handle cases where attributes might not
exist")
    print("4. Update specific map keys rather than overwriting the entire map")
    print("5. Use a single update operation to modify multiple map keys for
better performance")
    print("6. Consider your data model carefully to minimize the need for deeply
nested attributes")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    example_usage()
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform set operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to perform set operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a set attribute.
- Remove elements from a set attribute.
- Use ADD and DELETE operations with sets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate set operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.HashSet;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Set;

    /**
     * Adds values to a string set attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to add values
     * to a string set attribute.
     *
```

```
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valuesToAdd The values to add to the set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse addToStringSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<String> valuesToAdd) {

        // Create a string set value from the values to add
        AttributeValue setValue =
AttributeValue.builder().ss(valuesToAdd).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("ADD #setAttr :valuesToAdd")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":valuesToAdd", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Adds values to a number set attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to add values
     * to a number set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valuesToAdd The values to add to the set
```

```
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse addToNumberSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<Number> valuesToAdd) {

        // Convert numbers to strings for DynamoDB
        Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
        for (Number value : valuesToAdd) {
            stringValues.add(value.toString());
        }

        // Create a number set value from the values to add
        AttributeValue setValue =
AttributeValue.builder().ns(stringValues).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("ADD #setAttr :valuesToAdd")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":valuesToAdd", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Removes values from a set attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the DELETE operation to remove
values
     * from a set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
```

```
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valuesToRemove The values to remove from the set
     * @param isNumberSet Whether the set is a number set (true) or string set
(false)
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse removeFromSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<?> valuesToRemove,
        boolean isNumberSet) {

        AttributeValue setValue;

        if (isNumberSet) {
            // Convert numbers to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : valuesToRemove) {
                if (value instanceof Number) {
                    stringValues.add(value.toString());
                } else {
                    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Values must be numbers
for a number set");
                }
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ns(stringValues).build();
        } else {
            // Convert objects to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : valuesToRemove) {
                stringValues.add(value.toString());
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ss(stringValues).build();
        }

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
```

```
            .updateExpression("DELETE #setAttr :valuesToRemove")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":valuesToRemove", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Checks if a value exists in a set attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the contains function to check
     * if a value exists in a set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to check
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valueToCheck The value to check for
     * @return Map containing the result of the check
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> checkIfValueInSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        String valueToCheck) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #tempAttr = :tempVal")
                .conditionExpression("contains(#setAttr, :valueToCheck)")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName,
"#tempAttr", "TempAttribute"))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
```

```
                    ":valueToCheck",
AttributeValue.builder().s(valueToCheck).build(),
                    ":tempVal", AttributeValue.builder().s("TempValue").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            // Attempt the update operation
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            // If we get here, the condition was met
            result.put("exists", true);
            result.put("message", "Value '" + valueToCheck + "' exists in the
set");

            // Clean up the temporary attribute
            UpdateItemRequest cleanupRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("REMOVE #tempAttr")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#tempAttr", "TempAttribute"))
                .build();

            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(cleanupRequest);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            if (e.getMessage().contains("ConditionalCheckFailed")) {
                // The condition was not met
                result.put("exists", false);
                result.put("message", "Value '" + valueToCheck + "' does not
exist in the set");
            } else {
                // Some other error occurred
                result.put("exists", false);
                result.put("message", "Error checking set: " + e.getMessage());
                result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
            }
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a set with multiple values in a single operation.
     *
```

```
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to create a set with multiple values
     * in a single update operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param setValues The values to include in the set
     * @param isNumberSet Whether to create a number set (true) or string set
(false)
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse createSetWithValues(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<?> setValues,
        boolean isNumberSet) {

        AttributeValue setValue;

        if (isNumberSet) {
            // Convert numbers to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : setValues) {
                if (value instanceof Number) {
                    stringValues.add(value.toString());
                } else {
                    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Values must be numbers
for a number set");
                }
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ns(stringValues).build();
        } else {
            // Convert objects to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : setValues) {
                stringValues.add(value.toString());
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ss(stringValues).build();
```

```
        }

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #setAttr = :setValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":setValue", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a set attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @return The set attribute value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static AttributeValue getSetAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, String setAttributeName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(setAttributeName)
            .build();

        try {
            // Perform the get operation
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the set attribute if it exists, otherwise null
```

```
            if (response.item() != null &&
response.item().containsKey(setAttributeName)) {
                return response.item().get(setAttributeName);
            }

            return null;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get set attribute: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of set operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating set operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Create a string set with multiple values
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Creating a string set with multiple
values");
            Set<String> tags = new HashSet<>();
            tags.add("Electronics");
            tags.add("Gadget");
            tags.add("Smartphone");

            UpdateItemResponse createResponse = createSetWithValues(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Tags", tags, false // Not a
number set
                );

            System.out.println("Created set attribute: " +
createResponse.attributes());

            // Example 2: Add values to a string set
```

```
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Adding values to a string set");
            Set<String> additionalTags = new HashSet<>();
            additionalTags.add("Mobile");
            additionalTags.add("Wireless");

            UpdateItemResponse addResponse = addToStringSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", additionalTags);

            System.out.println("Updated set attribute: " +
addResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Create a number set with multiple values
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Creating a number set with multiple
values");
            Set<Number> ratings = new HashSet<>();
            ratings.add(4);
            ratings.add(5);
            ratings.add(4.5);

            UpdateItemResponse createNumberSetResponse = createSetWithValues(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Ratings", ratings, true // Is a
number set
                );

            System.out.println("Created number set attribute: " +
createNumberSetResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Add values to a number set
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Adding values to a number set");
            Set<Number> additionalRatings = new HashSet<>();
            additionalRatings.add(3.5);
            additionalRatings.add(4.2);

            UpdateItemResponse addNumberResponse =
                addToNumberSet(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Ratings",
additionalRatings);

            System.out.println("Updated number set attribute: " +
addNumberResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Remove values from a set
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Removing values from a set");
            Set<String> tagsToRemove = new HashSet<>();
            tagsToRemove.add("Gadget");
```

```
            UpdateItemResponse removeResponse = removeFromSet(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Tags", tagsToRemove, false //
Not a number set
                );

            System.out.println("Updated set after removal: " +
removeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 6: Check if a value exists in a set
            System.out.println("\nExample 6: Checking if a value exists in a
set");
            Map<String, Object> checkResult = checkIfValueInSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", "Electronics");

            System.out.println("Check result: " + checkResult.get("message"));

            // Example 7: Get the current value of a set attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 7: Getting the current value of a set
attribute");
            AttributeValue currentStringSet = getSetAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags");

            if (currentStringSet != null && currentStringSet.ss() != null) {
                System.out.println("Current string set values: " +
currentStringSet.ss());
            } else {
                System.out.println("String set attribute not found");
            }

            AttributeValue currentNumberSet = getSetAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Ratings");

            if (currentNumberSet != null && currentNumberSet.ns() != null) {
                System.out.println("Current number set values: " +
currentNumberSet.ns());
            } else {
                System.out.println("Number set attribute not found");
            }

            // Explain set operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB set operations:");
            System.out.println(
```

```
                "1. DynamoDB supports three set types: string sets (SS), number
 sets (NS), and binary sets (BS)");
            System.out.println("2. Sets can only contain elements of the same
 type");
            System.out.println("3. Use ADD to add elements to a set");
            System.out.println("4. Use DELETE to remove elements from a set");
            System.out.println("5. Sets automatically remove duplicate values");
            System.out.println("6. Sets are unordered collections");
            System.out.println("7. Use the contains function to check if a value
 exists in a set");
            System.out.println("8. You can create a set with multiple values in a
 single operation");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate set operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Add elements to a set attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the ADD operation to add elements to a set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
```

```
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to add to the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function addToSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the appropriate set type
  let setValues;
  if (setType === 'string') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(String));
  } else if (setType === 'number') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(Number));
  } else if (setType === 'binary') {
    setValues = new Set(values);
  } else {
    throw new Error(`Unsupported set type: ${setType}`);
  }

  // Define the update parameters using ADD
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `ADD ${setName} :values`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":values": setValues
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
```

```
}

/**
 * Remove elements from a set attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the DELETE operation to remove elements from
 a set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to remove from the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function removeFromSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the appropriate set type
  let setValues;
  if (setType === 'string') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(String));
  } else if (setType === 'number') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(Number));
  } else if (setType === 'binary') {
    setValues = new Set(values);
  } else {
    throw new Error(`Unsupported set type: ${setType}`);
  }

  // Define the update parameters using DELETE
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
```

```
    UpdateExpression: `DELETE ${setName} :values`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":values": setValues
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Create a new set attribute with initial values.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the SET operation to create a new set
 attribute.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The initial values for the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function createSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the appropriate set type
  let setValues;
  if (setType === 'string') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(String));
  } else if (setType === 'number') {
```

```
    setValues = new Set(values.map(Number));
  } else if (setType === 'binary') {
    setValues = new Set(values);
  } else {
    throw new Error(`Unsupported set type: ${setType}`);
  }

  // Define the update parameters using SET
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${setName} = :values`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":values": setValues
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Replace an entire set attribute with a new set of values.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the SET operation to replace an entire set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The new values for the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function replaceSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
```

```
) {
  // This is the same as createSet, but included for clarity of intent
  return await createSet(config, tableName, key, setName, values, setType);
}

/**
 * Remove the last element from a set and handle the empty set case.
 *
 * This function demonstrates what happens when you delete the last element of a
 set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The result of the operation
 */
async function removeLastElementFromSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // First, get the current item to check the set
  const currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, key);

  // Check if the set exists and has elements
  if (!currentItem || !currentItem[setName] || currentItem[setName].size === 0) {
    return {
      success: false,
      message: "Set doesn't exist or is already empty",
      item: currentItem
    };
  }

  // Get the set values
  const setValues = Array.from(currentItem[setName]);

  // If there's only one element left, remove the attribute entirely
  if (setValues.length === 1) {
```

```
    // Define the update parameters to remove the attribute
    const params = {
      TableName: tableName,
      Key: key,
      UpdateExpression: `REMOVE ${setName}`,
      ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
    };

    // Perform the update operation
    await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Last element removed, attribute has been deleted",
      removedValue: setValues[0]
    };
  } else {
    // Otherwise, remove just the last element
    // Create a set with just the last element
    const lastElement = setValues[setValues.length - 1];
    const setType = typeof lastElement === 'number' ? 'number' : 'string';

    // Remove the last element
    const response = await removeFromSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      setName,
      [lastElement],
      setType
    );

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Last element removed, set still contains elements",
      removedValue: lastElement,
      remainingSet: response.Attributes[setName]
    };
  }
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
```

```
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of set operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to work with sets in DynamoDB.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Users";
  const key = { UserId: "U12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating set operations in DynamoDB");
```

```
  try {
    // Example 1: Create a string set
    console.log("\nExample 1: Creating a string set");
    const response1 = await createSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Interests",
      ["Reading", "Hiking", "Cooking"],
      "string"
    );

    console.log("Created set:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Add elements to a set
    console.log("\nExample 2: Adding elements to a set");
    const response2 = await addToSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Interests",
      ["Photography", "Travel"],
      "string"
    );

    console.log("Updated set after adding elements:", response2.Attributes);

    // Example 3: Remove elements from a set
    console.log("\nExample 3: Removing elements from a set");
    const response3 = await removeFromSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Interests",
      ["Cooking"],
      "string"
    );

    console.log("Updated set after removing elements:", response3.Attributes);

    // Example 4: Create a number set
    console.log("\nExample 4: Creating a number set");
    const response4 = await createSet(
      config,
```

```
    tableName,
    key,
    "FavoriteNumbers",
    [7, 42, 99],
    "number"
  );

  console.log("Created number set:", response4.Attributes);

  // Example 5: Replace an entire set
  console.log("\nExample 5: Replacing an entire set");
  const response5 = await replaceSet(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "Interests",
    ["Gaming", "Movies", "Music"],
    "string"
  );

  console.log("Replaced set:", response5.Attributes);

  // Example 6: Remove the last element from a set
  console.log("\nExample 6: Removing the last element from a set");

  // First, create a set with just one element
  await createSet(
    config,
    tableName,
    { UserId: "U67890" },
    "Tags",
    ["LastTag"],
    "string"
  );

  // Then, remove the last element
  const response6 = await removeLastElementFromSet(
    config,
    tableName,
    { UserId: "U67890" },
    "Tags"
  );

  console.log(response6.message);
```

```
    console.log("Removed value:", response6.removedValue);

    // Get the final state of the items
    console.log("\nFinal state of the items:");
    const item1 = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log("User U12345:", JSON.stringify(item1, null, 2));

    const item2 = await getItem(config, tableName, { UserId: "U67890" });
    console.log("User U67890:", JSON.stringify(item2, null, 2));

    // Explain set operations
    console.log("\nKey points about set operations in DynamoDB:");
    console.log("1. Use ADD to add elements to a set (duplicates are
 automatically removed)");
    console.log("2. Use DELETE to remove elements from a set");
    console.log("3. Use SET to create a new set or replace an existing one");
    console.log("4. DynamoDB supports three types of sets: string sets, number
 sets, and binary sets");
    console.log("5. When you delete the last element from a set, the attribute
 remains as an empty set");
    console.log("6. To remove an empty set, use the REMOVE operation");
    console.log("7. Sets automatically maintain unique values (no duplicates)");
    console.log("8. You cannot mix data types within a set");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate set operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from typing import Any, Dict, List


def create_set_attribute(
```

```
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    set_name: str,
    set_values: List[Any],
    set_type: str = "string",
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Create a new set attribute or add elements to an existing set.

    This function demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to create a new set
    or add elements to an existing set.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        set_values (List[Any]): The values to add to the set.
        set_type (str, optional): The type of set to create: "string", "number",
 or "binary".
            Defaults to "string".

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Convert the list to a DynamoDB set based on the specified type
    if set_type == "string":
        dynamo_set = set(str(value) for value in set_values)
    elif set_type == "number":
        # We need to use actual float values for the DynamoDB API
        # but mypy expects strings in sets, so we need to use type: ignore
        dynamo_set = set(float(value) for value in set_values)  # type: ignore
    else:  # binary set is not directly supported in high-level API, handled
 differently
        raise ValueError("Binary sets are not supported in this example")

    # Use the ADD operation to create or update the set
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="ADD #set_attr :set_values",
```

```
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":set_values": dynamo_set},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def add_to_set(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str, values_to_add: List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Add elements to an existing set attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to add elements to an
 existing set.
    If the set doesn't exist, it will be created.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        values_to_add (List[Any]): The values to add to the set.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Convert the list to a set (assuming string set for simplicity)
    dynamo_set = set(str(value) for value in values_to_add)

    # Use the ADD operation to add values to the set
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="ADD #set_attr :values_to_add",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values_to_add": dynamo_set},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )
```

```
    return response


def remove_from_set(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str, values_to_remove:
 List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Remove elements from a set attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the DELETE operation to remove elements
 from a set.
    If the last element is removed, the attribute will be deleted entirely.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        values_to_remove (List[Any]): The values to remove from the set.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Convert the list to a set (assuming string set for simplicity)
    dynamo_set = set(str(value) for value in values_to_remove)

    # Use the DELETE operation to remove values from the set
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="DELETE #set_attr :values_to_remove",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values_to_remove": dynamo_set},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

```
def check_if_set_exists(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str) ->
 bool:
    """
    Check if a set attribute exists in an item.

    This function demonstrates how to check if a set attribute exists after
    potentially removing all elements from it.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to check.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.

    Returns:
        bool: True if the set attribute exists, False otherwise.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Get the item
    response = table.get_item(
        Key=key, ProjectionExpression="#set_attr",
 ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name}
    )

    # Check if the item exists and has the set attribute
    return "Item" in response and set_name in response["Item"]


def demonstrate_last_element_removal(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate what happens when you remove the last element from a set.

    This function creates a set with a single element, then removes that element,
    showing that the attribute is completely removed when the last element is
 deleted.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
```

```
    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Step 1: Create a set with a single element
    create_response = create_set_attribute(
        table_name=table_name,
        key=key,
        set_name=set_name,
        set_values=["last_element"],
        set_type="string",
    )

    # Step 2: Check that the set exists
    exists_before = check_if_set_exists(table_name, key, set_name)

    # Step 3: Remove the last element
    delete_response = remove_from_set(
        table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name=set_name,
 values_to_remove=["last_element"]
    )

    # Step 4: Check if the set still exists
    exists_after = check_if_set_exists(table_name, key, set_name)

    # Return the results
    return {
        "create_response": create_response,
        "exists_before": exists_before,
        "delete_response": delete_response,
        "exists_after": exists_after,
    }


def work_with_number_set(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    set_name: str,
    initial_values: List[float],
    values_to_add: List[float],
    values_to_remove: List[float],
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate working with a number set in DynamoDB.
```

```
    This function shows how to create and manipulate a set of numbers.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        initial_values (List[float]): The initial values for the set.
        values_to_add (List[float]): Values to add to the set.
        values_to_remove (List[float]): Values to remove from the set.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the responses from each
operation.
    """
    # Step 1: Create the number set
    create_response = create_set_attribute(
        table_name=table_name,
        key=key,
        set_name=set_name,
        set_values=initial_values,
        set_type="number",
    )

    # Step 2: Add more numbers to the set
    add_response = add_to_set(
        table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name=set_name,
values_to_add=values_to_add
    )

    # Step 3: Remove some numbers from the set
    remove_response = remove_from_set(
        table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name=set_name,
values_to_remove=values_to_remove
    )

    # Step 4: Get the final state
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    get_response = table.get_item(
        Key=key,
        ProjectionExpression=f"#{set_name}",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={f"#{set_name}": set_name},
```

```
    )

    # Return all responses
    return {
        "create_response": create_response,
        "add_response": add_response,
        "remove_response": remove_response,
        "final_state": get_response.get("Item", {}),
    }
```

Example usage of set operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the set operations functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "UserPreferences"
    key = {"UserId": "user123"}

    print("Example 1: Creating a string set attribute")
    try:
        response = create_set_attribute(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            set_name="FavoriteTags",
            set_values=["AWS", "DynamoDB", "NoSQL"],
            set_type="string",
        )
        print(f"Set attribute created successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
 {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating set attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Adding elements to an existing set")
    try:
        response = add_to_set(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            set_name="FavoriteTags",
            values_to_add=["Database", "Serverless"],
        )
```

```
        print(f"Elements added to set successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
{})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error adding to set: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Removing elements from a set")
    try:
        response = remove_from_set(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name="FavoriteTags",
values_to_remove=["NoSQL"]
        )
        print(f"Elements removed from set successfully:
{response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error removing from set: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Demonstrating what happens when you remove the last
element from a set")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_last_element_removal(
            table_name=table_name, key={"UserId": "tempUser"},
set_name="SingleElementSet"
        )

        print(f"Set exists before removal: {results['exists_before']}")
        print(f"Set exists after removal: {results['exists_after']}")

        if not results["exists_after"]:
            print("The set attribute was completely removed when the last element
was deleted.")
        else:
            print("The set attribute still exists after removing the last
element.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error in last element removal demonstration: {e}")

    print("\nExample 5: Working with a number set")
    try:
        results = work_with_number_set(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user456"},
            set_name="LuckyNumbers",
            initial_values=[7, 13, 42],
            values_to_add=[99, 100],
```

```
            values_to_remove=[13],
        )

        print(f"Initial number set: {results['create_response'].get('Attributes',
{})}")
        print(f"After adding numbers: {results['add_response'].get('Attributes',
{})}")
        print(f"After removing numbers:
{results['remove_response'].get('Attributes', {})}")
        print(f"Final state: {results['final_state']}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error working with number set: {e}")

    print("\nKey Points About DynamoDB Sets:")
    print("1. Sets can only contain elements of the same type (string, number, or
binary)")
    print("2. Sets automatically eliminate duplicate values")
    print("3. The ADD operation creates a set if it doesn't exist")
    print("4. The DELETE operation removes specified elements from a set")
    print("5. When the last element is removed from a set, the entire attribute
is deleted")
    print("6. Empty sets are not allowed in DynamoDB")
    print("7. Sets are unordered collections")
    print("8. The ADD operation is atomic for sets")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table by using batches of PartiQL statements and an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Before you run this example, download 'movies.json' from
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
GettingStarted.Js.02.html,
// and put it in the same folder as the example.

// Separator for the console display.
var SepBar = new string('-', 80);
const string tableName = "movie_table";
const string movieFileName = @"..\..\..\..\..\..\..\..\resources\sample_files
\movies.json";

DisplayInstructions();

// Create the table and wait for it to be active.
Console.WriteLine($"Creating the movie table: {tableName}");

var success = await DynamoDBMethods.CreateMovieTableAsync(tableName);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created table: {tableName}.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Add movie information to the table from moviedata.json. See the
// instructions at the top of this file to download the JSON file.
Console.WriteLine($"Inserting movies into the new table. Please wait...");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.InsertMovies(tableName, movieFileName);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Movies successfully added to the table.");
```

```
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Movies could not be added to the table.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
var title1 = "Star Wars";
var year1 = 1977;
var title2 = "Wizard of Oz";
var year2 = 1939;

Console.WriteLine($"Updating two movies with producer information: {title1} and
 {title2}.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.GetBatch(tableName, title1, title2, year1,
 year2);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully retrieved {title1} and {title2}.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Select statement failed.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
var producer1 = "LucasFilm";
var producer2 = "MGM";

Console.WriteLine($"Updating two movies with producer information: {title1} and
 {title2}.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.UpdateBatch(tableName, producer1, title1,
 year1, producer2, title2, year2);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully updated {title1} and {title2}.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Update failed.");
```

```
}

WaitForEnter();

// Delete multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
Console.WriteLine($"Now we will delete {title1} and {title2} from the table.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.DeleteBatch(tableName, title1, year1, title2,
 year2);

if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Deleted {title1} and {title2}");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"could not delete {title1} or {title2}");
}

WaitForEnter();

// DNow that the PartiQL Batch scenario is complete, delete the movie table.
success = await DynamoDBMethods.DeleteTableAsync(tableName);

if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {tableName}");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {tableName}");
}

/// <summary>
/// Displays the description of the application on the console.
/// </summary>
void DisplayInstructions()
{
    Console.Clear();
    Console.WriteLine();
    Console.Write(new string(' ', 24));
    Console.WriteLine("DynamoDB PartiQL Basics Example");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    Console.WriteLine("This demo application shows the basics of using Amazon
 DynamoDB with the AWS SDK for");
```

```
    Console.WriteLine(".NET version 3.7 and .NET 6.");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    Console.WriteLine("Creates a table by using the CreateTable method.");
    Console.WriteLine("Gets multiple movies by using a PartiQL SELECT
 statement.");
    Console.WriteLine("Updates multiple movies by using the ExecuteBatch
 method.");
    Console.WriteLine("Deletes multiple movies by using a PartiQL DELETE
 statement.");
    Console.WriteLine("Cleans up the resources created for the demo by deleting
 the table.");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);

    WaitForEnter();
}

/// <summary>
/// Simple method to wait for the <Enter> key to be pressed.
/// </summary>
void WaitForEnter()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
    Console.Write(SepBar);
    _ = Console.ReadLine();
}


        /// <summary>
        /// Gets movies from the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year of the second movie.</param>
        /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> GetBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            string title2,
            int year1,
            int year2)
        {
```

```
            var getBatch = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            if (response.Responses.Count > 0)
            {
                response.Responses.ForEach(r =>
                {
                    if (r.Item.Any())
                    {

Console.WriteLine($"{r.Item["title"]}\t{r.Item["year"]}");
                    }
                });
                return true;
            }
            else
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find either {title1} or {title2}.");
                return false;
            }

        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table into which the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE
{{'title': ?, 'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset +=
25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
```

```
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await
Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully
added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
```

```
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates information for multiple movies.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// movies to be updated.</param>
        /// <param name="producer1">The producer name for the first movie
        /// to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year that the first movie was released.</
param>
        /// <param name="producer2">The producer name for the second
        /// movie to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year that the second movie was released.</
param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the update.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateBatch(
            string tableName,
            string producer1,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string producer2,
            string title2,
            int year2)
```

```
        {

            string updateBatch = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
= ? AND year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer1 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer2 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple movies using a PartiQL BatchExecuteAsync
        /// statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// moves that will be deleted.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND
 year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });
```

```
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        //  1. Create a table. (CreateTable)
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig)) {

            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlBatchExecuteScenario(clientConfig);

            // 7. Delete the table. (DeleteTable)
            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig);
        }

//! Scenario to modify and query a DynamoDB table using PartiQL batch statements.
/*!
  \sa partiqlBatchExecuteScenario()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlBatchExecuteScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    // 2. Add multiple movies using "Insert" statements. (BatchExecuteStatement)
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::vector<Aws::String> titles;
    std::vector<float> ratings;
    std::vector<int> years;
```

```
    std::vector<Aws::String> plots;
    Aws::String doAgain = "n";
    do {
        Aws::String aTitle = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        titles.push_back(aTitle);
        int aYear = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        years.push_back(aYear);
        float aRating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? ",
                1, 10);
        ratings.push_back(aRating);
        Aws::String aPlot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");
        plots.push_back(aPlot);

        doAgain = askQuestion(Aws::String("Would you like to add more movies? (y/
n) "));
    } while (doAgain == "y");

    std::cout << "Adding " << titles.size()
              << (titles.size() == 1 ? " movie " : " movies ")
              << "to the table using a batch \"INSERT\" statement." << std::endl;

    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());

        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

 attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));

            // Create attribute for the info map.
```

```
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute
= Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            ratingAttribute->SetN(ratings[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            plotAttribute->SetS(plots[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
            attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add the movies: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Retrieving the movie data with a batch \"SELECT\" statement."
              << std::endl;

    // 3. Get the data for multiple movies using "Select" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";
```

```
        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse>
&responses = result.GetResponses();

            for (const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse &response:
responses) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = response.GetItem();

                printMovieInfo(item);
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 4. Update the data for multiple movies using "Update" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
```

```
    for (size_t i = 0; i < titles.size(); ++i) {
        ratings[i] = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your the movie, \"") + titles[i] +
                ".\nYou rated it  " + std::to_string(ratings[i])
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
    }

    std::cout << "Updating the movie with a batch \"UPDATE\" statement." <<
std::endl;

    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());

        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                  << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";


        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(ratings[i]));
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Retrieving the updated movie data with a batch \"SELECT\"
statement."
              << std::endl;

    // 5. Get the updated data for multiple movies using "Select" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse>
&responses = result.GetResponses();
```

```
            for (const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse &response:
responses) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = response.GetItem();

                printMovieInfo(item);
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movies information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Deleting the movie data with a batch \"DELETE\" statement."
              << std::endl;

    // 6. Delete multiple movies using "Delete" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);
```

```
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
 dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movies: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Create a DynamoDB table to be used in sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa createMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    bool movieTableAlreadyExisted = false;

    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition yearAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(YEAR_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::N);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition titleAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(TITLE_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement yearKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(YEAR_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
```

```
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement titleKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(TITLE_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::RANGE);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
        throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS);
        request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        std::cout << "Creating table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'..." <<
std::endl;
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &result =
dynamoClient.CreateTable(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            if (result.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
                std::cout << "Table already exists." << std::endl;
                movieTableAlreadyExisted = true;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to create table: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage();
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    // Wait for table to become active.
    if (!movieTableAlreadyExisted) {
        std::cout << "Waiting for table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME
                  << "' to become active...." << std::endl;
        if (!AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME,
clientConfiguration)) {
            return false;
        }
        std::cout << "Table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "' created and active."
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return true;
}

//! Delete the DynamoDB table used for sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}

//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {
```

```
    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs batches of PartiQL queries.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/dynamodb/actions"
)

// RunPartiQLBatchScenario shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Go
// to run batches of PartiQL statements to query a table that stores data about
 movies.
//
//   - Use batches of PartiQL statements to add, get, update, and delete data for
//     individual movies.
//
// This example creates an Amazon DynamoDB service client from the specified
 sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// This example creates and deletes a DynamoDB table to use during the scenario.
func RunPartiQLBatchScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, tableName
 string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL batch demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 tableBasics := actions.TableBasics{
  DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
  TableName:      tableName,
 }
 runner := actions.PartiQLRunner{
```

```
 DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 TableName:      tableName,
}

exists, err := tableBasics.TableExists(ctx)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !exists {
 log.Printf("Creating table %v...\n", tableName)
 _, err = tableBasics.CreateMovieTable(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Created table %v.\n", tableName)
 }
} else {
 log.Printf("Table %v already exists.\n", tableName)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

currentYear, _, _ := time.Now().Date()
customMovies := []actions.Movie{{
 Title: "House PartiQL",
 Year:  currentYear - 5,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "Wacky high jinks result from querying a mysterious database.",
  "rating": 8.5}}, {
 Title: "House PartiQL 2",
 Year:  currentYear - 3,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "Moderate high jinks result from querying another mysterious
database.",
  "rating": 6.5}}, {
 Title: "House PartiQL 3",
 Year:  currentYear - 1,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "Tepid high jinks result from querying yet another mysterious
database.",
  "rating": 2.5},
},
}

log.Printf("Inserting a batch of movies into table '%v'.\n", tableName)
```

```
err = runner.AddMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Added %v movies to the table.\n", len(customMovies))
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Getting data for a batch of movies.")
movies, err := runner.GetMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies)
if err == nil {
 for _, movie := range movies {
  log.Println(movie)
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

newRatings := []float64{7.7, 4.4, 1.1}
log.Println("Updating a batch of movies with new ratings.")
err = runner.UpdateMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies, newRatings)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Updated %v movies with new ratings.\n", len(customMovies))
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Getting projected data from the table to verify our update.")
log.Println("Using a page size of 2 to demonstrate paging.")
projections, err := runner.GetAllMovies(ctx, 2)
if err == nil {
 log.Println("All movies:")
 for _, projection := range projections {
  log.Println(projection)
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Deleting a batch of movies.")
err = runner.DeleteMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Deleted %v movies.\n", len(customMovies))
}

err = tableBasics.DeleteTable(ctx)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Deleted table %v.\n", tableBasics.TableName)
}
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

Create a struct and methods that run PartiQL statements.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL INSERT statements to add multiple movies
 to the
// DynamoDB table.
```

```
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year, movie.Info})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf(
    "INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// GetMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL SELECT statements to get multiple movies
 from
// the DynamoDB table by title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
```

```
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 output, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 var outMovies []Movie
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  for _, response := range output.Responses {
   var movie Movie
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    outMovies = append(outMovies, movie)
   }
  }
 }
 return outMovies, err
}



// GetAllMovies runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get all movies from the
 DynamoDB table.
// pageSize is not typically required and is used to show how to paginate the
 results.
// The results are projected to return only the title and rating of each movie.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetAllMovies(ctx context.Context, pageSize int32)
 ([]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var output []map[string]interface{}
 var response *dynamodb.ExecuteStatementOutput
 var err error
 var nextToken *string
 for moreData := true; moreData; {
  response, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
   Statement: aws.String(
```

```
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT title, info.rating FROM \"%v\"", runner.TableName)),
   Limit:     aws.Int32(pageSize),
   NextToken: nextToken,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   moreData = false
  } else {
   var pageOutput []map[string]interface{}
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &pageOutput)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Got a page of length %v.\n", len(response.Items))
    output = append(output, pageOutput...)
   }
   nextToken = response.NextToken
   moreData = nextToken != nil
  }
 }
 return output, err
}



// UpdateMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL UPDATE statements to update the
 rating of
// multiple movies that already exist in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 ratings []float64) error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{ratings[index],
 movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }
```

```
 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL DELETE statements to remove multiple
 movies
// from the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class ScenarioPartiQLBatch {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        String tableName = "MoviesPartiQBatch";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        System.out.println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named " + tableName
            + " with a key named year and a sort key named title.");
        createTable(ddb, tableName);

        System.out.println("Adding multiple records into the " + tableName
            + " table using a batch command.");
        putRecordBatch(ddb);

        // Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
        String title1 = "Star Wars";
        int year1 = 1977;
        String title2 = "Wizard of Oz";
        int year2 = 1939;

        System.out.println("Query two movies.");
        getBatch(ddb, tableName, title1, title2, year1, year2);

        System.out.println("Updating multiple records using a batch command.");
        updateTableItemBatch(ddb);
```

```
        System.out.println("Deleting multiple records using a batch command.");
        deleteItemBatch(ddb);

        System.out.println("Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static boolean getBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
 title1, String title2, int year1, int year2) {
        String getBatch = "SELECT * FROM " + tableName + " WHERE title = ? AND
 year = ?";

        List<BatchStatementRequest> statements = new ArrayList<>();
        statements.add(BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(getBatch)
            .parameters(AttributeValue.builder().s(title1).build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(year1)).build())
            .build());
        statements.add(BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(getBatch)
            .parameters(AttributeValue.builder().s(title2).build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(year2)).build())
            .build());

        BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchExecuteStatementRequest =
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statements(statements)
            .build();

        try {
            BatchExecuteStatementResponse response =
 ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchExecuteStatementRequest);
            if (!response.responses().isEmpty()) {
                response.responses().forEach(r -> {
                    System.out.println(r.item().get("title") + "\\t" +
 r.item().get("year"));
                });
                return true;
            } else {
                System.out.println("Couldn't find either " + title1 + " or " +
 title2 + ".");
                return false;
            }
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            return false;
        }
    }

    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());

        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE) // Sort
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();
```

```
        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse = dbWaiter
                .waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void putRecordBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQBatch VALUE {'year':?,
 'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}";
        try {
            // Create three movies to add to the Amazon DynamoDB table.
            // Set data for Movie 1.
            List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();

            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n("1977")
                .build();

            AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("Star Wars")
                .build();

            AttributeValue att3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parameters.add(att1);
            parameters.add(att2);
            parameters.add(att3);
```

```
            BatchStatementRequest statementRequestMovie1 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
                .statement(sqlStatement)
                .parameters(parameters)
                .build();

            // Set data for Movie 2.
            List<AttributeValue> parametersMovie2 = new ArrayList<>();
            AttributeValue attMovie2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n("1939")
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie2A = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("Wizard of Oz")
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie2B = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parametersMovie2.add(attMovie2);
            parametersMovie2.add(attMovie2A);
            parametersMovie2.add(attMovie2B);

            BatchStatementRequest statementRequestMovie2 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
                .statement(sqlStatement)
                .parameters(parametersMovie2)
                .build();

            // Set data for Movie 3.
            List<AttributeValue> parametersMovie3 = new ArrayList<>();
            AttributeValue attMovie3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie3A = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("My Movie 3")
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie3B = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();
```

```
            parametersMovie3.add(attMovie3);
            parametersMovie3.add(attMovie3A);
            parametersMovie3.add(attMovie3B);

            BatchStatementRequest statementRequestMovie3 =
 BatchStatementRequest.builder()
                .statement(sqlStatement)
                .parameters(parametersMovie3)
                .build();

            // Add all three movies to the list.
            List<BatchStatementRequest> myBatchStatementList = new ArrayList<>();
            myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie1);
            myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie2);
            myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie3);

            BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchRequest =
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                .statements(myBatchStatementList)
                .build();

            BatchExecuteStatementResponse response =
 ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
 response.toString());
            System.out.println("Added new movies using a batch command.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateTableItemBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "UPDATE MoviesPartiQBatch SET info = 'directors\":
[\"Merian C. Cooper\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack' where year=? and title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec1 = new ArrayList<>();

        // Update three records.
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
```

```
            .s("My Movie 1")
            .build();

        parametersRec1.add(att1);
        parametersRec1.add(att2);

        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec1 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec1)
            .build();

        // Update record 2.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec2 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec2a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 2")
            .build();

        parametersRec2.add(attRec2);
        parametersRec2.add(attRec2a);
        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec2 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec2)
            .build();

        // Update record 3.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec3 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec3 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec3a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 3")
            .build();

        parametersRec3.add(attRec3);
        parametersRec3.add(attRec3a);
        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec3 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
```

```
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec3)
            .build();

        // Add all three movies to the list.
        List<BatchStatementRequest> myBatchStatementList = new ArrayList<>();
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3);

        BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchRequest =
BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statements(myBatchStatementList)
            .build();

        try {
            BatchExecuteStatementResponse response =
ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
response.toString());
            System.out.println("Updated three movies using a batch command.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Item was updated!");
    }

    public static void deleteItemBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "DELETE FROM MoviesPartiQBatch WHERE year = ? and
title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec1 = new ArrayList<>();

        // Specify three records to delete.
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 1")
            .build();

        parametersRec1.add(att1);
```

```
        parametersRec1.add(att2);

        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec1 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec1)
            .build();

        // Specify record 2.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec2 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec2a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 2")
            .build();

        parametersRec2.add(attRec2);
        parametersRec2.add(attRec2a);
        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec2 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec2)
            .build();

        // Specify record 3.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec3 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec3 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec3a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 3")
            .build();

        parametersRec3.add(attRec3);
        parametersRec3.add(attRec3a);

        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec3 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec3)
            .build();
```

```
        // Add all three movies to the list.
        List<BatchStatementRequest> myBatchStatementList = new ArrayList<>();
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3);

        BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchRequest =
BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statements(myBatchStatementList)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted three movies using a batch command.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName)
{
        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }

    private static ExecuteStatementResponse
executeStatementRequest(DynamoDbClient ddb, String statement,

List<AttributeValue> parameters) {
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(statement)
```

```
            .parameters(parameters)
            .build();

        return ddb.executeStatement(request);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Execute batch PartiQL statements.

```
import {
  BillingMode,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DeleteTableCommand,
  DescribeTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
import { ScenarioInput } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

const log = (msg) => console.log(`[SCENARIO] ${msg}`);
const tableName = "Cities";
```

```
export const main = async (confirmAll = false) => {
  /**
   * Delete table if it exists.
   */
  try {
    await client.send(new DescribeTableCommand({ TableName: tableName }));
    // If no error was thrown, the table exists.
    const input = new ScenarioInput(
      "deleteTable",
      `A table named ${tableName} already exists. If you choose not to delete
this table, the scenario cannot continue. Delete it?`,
      { type: "confirm", confirmAll },
    );
    const deleteTable = await input.handle({}, { confirmAll });
    if (deleteTable) {
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ tableName }));
    } else {
      console.warn(
        "Scenario could not run. Either delete ${tableName} or provide a unique
 table name.",
      );
      return;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException"
    ) {
      // Do nothing. This means the table is not there.
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Create a table.
   */

  log("Creating a table.");
  const createTableCommand = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // This example performs a large write to the database.
    // Set the billing mode to PAY_PER_REQUEST to
    // avoid throttling the large write.
```

```
    BillingMode: BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
    // Define the attributes that are necessary for the key schema.
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "name",
        // 'S' is a data type descriptor that represents a number type.
        // For a list of all data type descriptors, see the following link.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
        AttributeType: "S",
      },
    ],
    // The KeySchema defines the primary key. The primary key can be
    // a partition key, or a combination of a partition key and a sort key.
    // Key schema design is important. For more info, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/best-
practices.html
    KeySchema: [{ AttributeName: "name", KeyType: "HASH" }],
  });
  await client.send(createTableCommand);
  log(`Table created: ${tableName}.`);

  /**
   * Wait until the table is active.
   */

  // This polls with DescribeTableCommand until the requested table is 'ACTIVE'.
  // You can't write to a table before it's active.
  log("Waiting for the table to be active.");
  await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: tableName });
  log("Table active.");

  /**
   * Insert items.
   */

  log("Inserting cities into the table.");
  const addItemsStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.insert.html
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `INSERT INTO ${tableName} value {'name':?, 'population':?}`,
        Parameters: ["Alachua", 10712],
```

```
      },
      {
        Statement: `INSERT INTO ${tableName} value {'name':?, 'population':?}`,
        Parameters: ["High Springs", 6415],
      },
    ],
  });
  await docClient.send(addItemsStatementCommand);
  log("Cities inserted.");

  /**
   * Select items.
   */

  log("Selecting cities from the table.");
  const selectItemsStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.select.html
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `SELECT * FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["Alachua"],
      },
      {
        Statement: `SELECT * FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["High Springs"],
      },
    ],
  });
  const selectItemResponse = await docClient.send(selectItemsStatementCommand);
  log(
    `Got cities: ${selectItemResponse.Responses.map(
      (r) => `${r.Item.name} (${r.Item.population})`,
    ).join(", ")}`,
  );

  /**
   * Update items.
   */

  log("Modifying the populations.");
  const updateItemStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.update.html
```

```
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `UPDATE ${tableName} SET population=? WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: [10, "Alachua"],
      },
      {
        Statement: `UPDATE ${tableName} SET population=? WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: [5, "High Springs"],
      },
    ],
  });
  await docClient.send(updateItemStatementCommand);
  log("Updated cities.");

  /**
   * Delete the items.
   */

  log("Deleting the cities.");
  const deleteItemStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.delete.html
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["Alachua"],
      },
      {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["High Springs"],
      },
    ],
  });
  await docClient.send(deleteItemStatementCommand);
  log("Cities deleted.");

  /**
   * Delete the table.
   */

  log("Deleting the table.");
  const deleteTableCommand = new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: tableName });
  await client.send(deleteTableCommand);
  log("Table deleted.");
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main() {
    val ddb = DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }
    val tableName = "MoviesPartiQBatch"
    println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named $tableName with a key named
 id and a sort key named title.")
    createTablePartiQLBatch(ddb, tableName, "year")
    putRecordBatch(ddb)
    updateTableItemBatchBatch(ddb)
    deleteItemsBatch(ddb)
    deleteTablePartiQLBatch(tableName)
}

suspend fun createTablePartiQLBatch(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
```

```
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    val response = ddb.createTable(request)
    ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
        // suspend call
        tableName = tableNameVal
    }
    println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
}

suspend fun putRecordBatch(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQBatch VALUE {'year':?,
 'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}"

    // Create three movies to add to the Amazon DynamoDB table.
    val parametersMovie1 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersMovie1.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersMovie1.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 1"))
    parametersMovie1.add(AttributeValue.S("No Information"))

    val statementRequestMovie1 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
```

```
            parameters = parametersMovie1
        }

    // Set data for Movie 2.
    val parametersMovie2 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersMovie2.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersMovie2.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 2"))
    parametersMovie2.add(AttributeValue.S("No Information"))

    val statementRequestMovie2 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersMovie2
        }

    // Set data for Movie 3.
    val parametersMovie3 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersMovie3.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersMovie3.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 3"))
    parametersMovie3.add(AttributeValue.S("No Information"))

    val statementRequestMovie3 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersMovie3
        }

    // Add all three movies to the list.
    val myBatchStatementList = mutableListOf<BatchStatementRequest>()
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie1)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie2)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie3)

    val batchRequest =
        BatchExecuteStatementRequest {
            statements = myBatchStatementList
        }
    val response = ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: " + response.toString())
    println("Added new movies using a batch command.")
}

suspend fun updateTableItemBatchBatch(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement =
```

```
        "UPDATE MoviesPartiQBatch SET info = 'directors\":[\"Merian C. Cooper\",
\"Ernest B. Schoedsack' where year=? and title=?"
    val parametersRec1 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 1"))
    val statementRequestRec1 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec1
        }

    // Update record 2.
    val parametersRec2 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 2"))
    val statementRequestRec2 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec2
        }

    // Update record 3.
    val parametersRec3 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 3"))
    val statementRequestRec3 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec3
        }

    // Add all three movies to the list.
    val myBatchStatementList = mutableListOf<BatchStatementRequest>()
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3)

    val batchRequest =
        BatchExecuteStatementRequest {
            statements = myBatchStatementList
        }

    val response = ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: $response")
```

```
    println("Updated three movies using a batch command.")
    println("Items were updated!")
}

suspend fun deleteItemsBatch(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    // Specify three records to delete.
    val sqlStatement = "DELETE FROM MoviesPartiQBatch WHERE year = ? and title=?"
    val parametersRec1 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 1"))

    val statementRequestRec1 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec1
        }

    // Specify record 2.
    val parametersRec2 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 2"))
    val statementRequestRec2 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec2
        }

    // Specify record 3.
    val parametersRec3 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 3"))
    val statementRequestRec3 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec3
        }

    // Add all three movies to the list.
    val myBatchStatementList = mutableListOf<BatchStatementRequest>()
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3)

    val batchRequest =
```

```
        BatchExecuteStatementRequest {
            statements = myBatchStatementList
        }

    ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest)
    println("Deleted three movies using a batch command.")
}

suspend fun deleteTablePartiQLBatch(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace DynamoDb\PartiQL_Basics;

use Aws\DynamoDb\Marshaler;
use DynamoDb;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBAttribute;

use function AwsUtilities\loadMovieData;
use function AwsUtilities\testable_readline;
```

```
class GettingStartedWithPartiQLBatch
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB - PartiQL getting started demo
 using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $uuid = uniqid();
        $service = new DynamoDb\DynamoDBService();

        $tableName = "partiql_demo_table_$uuid";
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

        echo "Waiting for table...";
        $service->dynamoDbClient->waitUntil("TableExists", ['TableName' =>
 $tableName]);
        echo "table $tableName found!\n";

        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
```

```
            ],
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("INSERT", $tableName, $key);
        $service->insertItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);

        echo "How would you rate the movie from 1-10?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        echo "What was the movie about?\n";
        while (empty($plot)) {
            $plot = testable_readline("Plot summary: ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot),
        ];

        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);
        echo "Movie added and updated.\n";

        $batch = json_decode(loadMovieData());

        $service->writeBatch($tableName, $batch);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQLBatch($tableName, [$key]);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['title']['S']}
        was released in {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['year']['N']}.\n";
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']
['title']['S']}?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot)
        ];
```

```
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQLBatch($tableName, [$key]);
        echo "Okay, you have rated {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['title']
['S']}
        as a {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['rating']['N']}\n";

        $service->deleteItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
 because of your rating...harsh.\n";

        echo "That's okay though. The book was better. Now, for something
 lighter, in what year were you born?\n";
        $birthYear = "not a number";
        while (!is_numeric($birthYear) || $birthYear >= date("Y")) {
            $birthYear = testable_readline("Birth year: ");
        }
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        echo "Here are the movies in our collection released the year you were
 born:\n";
        $oops = "Oops! There were no movies released in that year (that we know
 of).\n";
        $display = "";
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            $display .= $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }
        echo ($display) ?: $oops;

        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
```

```
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "\nCleaning up this demo by deleting table $tableName...\n";
        $service->deleteTable($tableName);
    }
}

    public function insertItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array
 $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function getItemByPartiQLBatch(string $tableName, array $keys): Result
    {
        $statements = [];
        foreach ($keys as $key) {
            list($statement, $parameters) = $this-
>buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT", $tableName, $key['Item']);
            $statements[] = [
                'Statement' => "$statement",
                'Parameters' => $parameters,
            ];
        }

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
```

```
            'Statements' => $statements,
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array
$parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array
$parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that can run batches of PartiQL statements.

```
from datetime import datetime
from decimal import Decimal
import logging
from pprint import pprint

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from scaffold import Scaffold

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class PartiQLBatchWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statements, param_list):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because
 the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects
 (POPOs) to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statements: The batch of PartiQL statements.
        :param param_list: The batch of PartiQL parameters that are associated
 with
                           each statement. This list must be in the same order as
 the
                           statements.
        :return: The responses returned from running the statements, if any.
        """
```

```
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.batch_execute_statement(
                Statements=[
                    {"Statement": statement, "Parameters": params}
                    for statement, params in zip(statements, param_list)
                ]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements because the
 table "
                    "does not exist."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements. Here's why:
 %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries in batches.

```
def run_scenario(scaffold, wrapper, table_name):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL batch statement demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Creating table '{table_name}' for the demo...")
    scaffold.create_table(table_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    movie_data = [
```

```
        {
            "title": f"House PartiQL",
            "year": datetime.now().year - 5,
            "info": {
                "plot": "Wacky high jinks result from querying a mysterious
database.",
                "rating": Decimal("8.5"),
            },
        },
        {
            "title": f"House PartiQL 2",
            "year": datetime.now().year - 3,
            "info": {
                "plot": "Moderate high jinks result from querying another
mysterious database.",
                "rating": Decimal("6.5"),
            },
        },
        {
            "title": f"House PartiQL 3",
            "year": datetime.now().year - 1,
            "info": {
                "plot": "Tepid high jinks result from querying yet another
mysterious database.",
                "rating": Decimal("2.5"),
            },
        },
    ]

    print(f"Inserting a batch of movies into table '{table_name}.")
    statements = [
        f'INSERT INTO "{table_name}" ' f"VALUE {{'title': ?, 'year': ?,
'info': ?}}"
    ] * len(movie_data)
    params = [list(movie.values()) for movie in movie_data]
    wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting data for a batch of movies.")
    statements = [f'SELECT * FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?'] *
len(
        movie_data
    )
```

```
    params = [[movie["title"], movie["year"]] for movie in movie_data]
    output = wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    for item in output["Responses"]:
        print(f"\n{item['Item']['title']}, {item['Item']['year']}")
        pprint(item["Item"])
    print("-" * 88)

    ratings = [Decimal("7.7"), Decimal("5.5"), Decimal("1.3")]
    print(f"Updating a batch of movies with new ratings.")
    statements = [
        f'UPDATE "{table_name}" SET info.rating=? ' f"WHERE title=? AND year=?"
    ] * len(movie_data)
    params = [
        [rating, movie["title"], movie["year"]]
        for rating, movie in zip(ratings, movie_data)
    ]
    wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting projected data from the table to verify our update.")
    output = wrapper.dyn_resource.meta.client.execute_statement(
        Statement=f'SELECT title, info.rating FROM "{table_name}"'
    )
    pprint(output["Items"])
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting a batch of movies from the table.")
    statements = [f'DELETE FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?'] * len(
        movie_data
    )
    params = [[movie["title"], movie["year"]] for movie in movie_data]
    wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting table '{table_name}'...")
    scaffold.delete_table()
    print("-" * 88)

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        dyn_res = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        scaffold = Scaffold(dyn_res)
        movies = PartiQLBatchWrapper(dyn_res)
        run_scenario(scaffold, movies, "doc-example-table-partiql-movies")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Something went wrong with the demo! Here's what: {e}")
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs batch PartiQL queries.

```
table_name = "doc-example-table-movies-partiql-#{rand(10**4)}"
scaffold = Scaffold.new(table_name)
sdk = DynamoDBPartiQLBatch.new(table_name)

new_step(1, 'Create a new DynamoDB table if none already exists.')
unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)
  puts("\nNo such table: #{table_name}. Creating it...")
  scaffold.create_table(table_name)
  print "Done!\n".green
end

new_step(2, 'Populate DynamoDB table with movie data.')
download_file = 'moviedata.json'
puts("Downloading movie database to #{download_file}...")
movie_data = scaffold.fetch_movie_data(download_file)
puts("Writing movie data from #{download_file} into your table...")
scaffold.write_batch(movie_data)
puts("Records added: #{movie_data.length}.")
```

```
  print "Done!\n".green

  new_step(3, 'Select a batch of items from the movies table.')
  puts "Let's select some popular movies for side-by-side comparison."
  response = sdk.batch_execute_select([['Mean Girls', 2004], ['Goodfellas',
 1977], ['The Prancing of the Lambs', 2005]])
  puts("Items selected: #{response['responses'].length}\n")
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(4, 'Delete a batch of items from the movies table.')
  sdk.batch_execute_write([['Mean Girls', 2004], ['Goodfellas', 1977], ['The
 Prancing of the Lambs', 2005]])
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(5, 'Delete the table.')
  return unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)

  scaffold.delete_table
end
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table using PartiQL and an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace PartiQL_Basics_Scenario
{
    public class PartiQLMethods
    {
        private static readonly AmazonDynamoDBClient Client = new
 AmazonDynamoDBClient();


        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
 movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
```

```
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE
{{'title': ?, 'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset +=
25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await
Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully
added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
```

```
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve multiple movies by year using a SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movies were released.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetMovies(string tableName, int year)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE year = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
```

```
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
 'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
= ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
```

```
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of movies returned from a database query.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="items">The list of movie information to display.</param>
        private static void DisplayMovies(List<Dictionary<string,
 AttributeValue>> items)
        {
            if (items.Count > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Found {items.Count} movies.");
                items.ForEach(item =>
 Console.WriteLine($"{item["year"].N}\t{item["title"].S}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Didn't find a movie that matched the supplied
 criteria.");
            }
        }


    }
}



        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
 GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
```

```
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });
```

```
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
 = ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        //  1. Create a table. (CreateTable)
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig)) {

            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlExecuteScenario(clientConfig);

            // 7. Delete the table. (DeleteTable)
```

```
            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig);
        }

//! Scenario to modify and query a DynamoDB table using single PartiQL
 statements.
/*!
  \sa partiqlExecuteScenario()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlExecuteScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    // 2. Add a new movie using an "Insert" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    Aws::String title;
    float rating;
    int year;
    Aws::String plot;
    {
        title = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        year = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange("On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate
 it? ",
                                          1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        // Create the parameter attributes.
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;
```

```
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        ratingAttribute->SetN(rating);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        plotAttribute->SetS(plot);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
        attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add a movie: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nAdded '" << title << "' to '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'."
              << std::endl;

    //  3. Get the data for the movie using a "Select" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);
```

```
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            // Print the retrieved movie information.
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetItems();

            if (items.size() == 1) {
                printMovieInfo(items[0]);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: " << items.size() << " movies were
retrieved. "
                          << " There should be only one movie." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    //  4. Update the data for the movie using an "Update" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it  ") +
                std::to_string(rating)
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                  << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(rating));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update a movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nUpdated '" << title << "' with new attributes:" << std::endl;

    //  5. Get the updated data for the movie using a "Select" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

```
        else {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetItems();

            if (items.size() == 1) {
                printMovieInfo(items[0]);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: " << items.size() << " movies were
retrieved. "
                          << " There should be only one movie." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Deleting the movie" << std::endl;

    // 6. Delete the movie using a "Delete" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    std::cout << "Movie successfully deleted." << std::endl;
    return true;
}

//! Create a DynamoDB table to be used in sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa createMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    bool movieTableAlreadyExisted = false;

    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition yearAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(YEAR_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::N);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition titleAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(TITLE_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement yearKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(YEAR_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement titleKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(TITLE_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::RANGE);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
        throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
```

```
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS);
        request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        std::cout << "Creating table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'..." <<
 std::endl;
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            if (result.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
                std::cout << "Table already exists." << std::endl;
                movieTableAlreadyExisted = true;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to create table: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage();
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    // Wait for table to become active.
    if (!movieTableAlreadyExisted) {
        std::cout << "Waiting for table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME
                  << "' to become active...." << std::endl;
        if (!AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME,
 clientConfiguration)) {
            return false;
        }
        std::cout << "Table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "' created and active."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Delete the DynamoDB table used for sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
```

```
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}

//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
```

```
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
```

```
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/dynamodb/actions"
)

// RunPartiQLSingleScenario shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Go
// to use PartiQL to query a table that stores data about movies.
//
// * Use PartiQL statements to add, get, update, and delete data for individual
 movies.
//
// This example creates an Amazon DynamoDB service client from the specified
 sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// This example creates and deletes a DynamoDB table to use during the scenario.
func RunPartiQLSingleScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config,
 tableName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL single action demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 tableBasics := actions.TableBasics{
  DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
  TableName:      tableName,
 }
 runner := actions.PartiQLRunner{
  DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
  TableName:      tableName,
 }

 exists, err := tableBasics.TableExists(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if !exists {
```

```
 log.Printf("Creating table %v...\n", tableName)
 _, err = tableBasics.CreateMovieTable(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Created table %v.\n", tableName)
 }
} else {
 log.Printf("Table %v already exists.\n", tableName)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

currentYear, _, _ := time.Now().Date()
customMovie := actions.Movie{
 Title: "24 Hour PartiQL People",
 Year:  currentYear,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "A group of data developers discover a new query language they can't
stop using.",
  "rating": 9.9,
 },
}

log.Printf("Inserting movie '%v' released in %v.", customMovie.Title,
customMovie.Year)
err = runner.AddMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Added %v to the movie table.\n", customMovie.Title)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Getting data for movie '%v' released in %v.", customMovie.Title,
customMovie.Year)
movie, err := runner.GetMovie(ctx, customMovie.Title, customMovie.Year)
if err == nil {
 log.Println(movie)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

newRating := 6.6
log.Printf("Updating movie '%v' with a rating of %v.", customMovie.Title,
newRating)
err = runner.UpdateMovie(ctx, customMovie, newRating)
if err == nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Updated %v with a new rating.\n", customMovie.Title)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Getting data again to verify the update.")
 movie, err = runner.GetMovie(ctx, customMovie.Title, customMovie.Year)
 if err == nil {
  log.Println(movie)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Deleting movie '%v'.\n", customMovie.Title)
 err = runner.DeleteMovie(ctx, customMovie)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted %v.\n", customMovie.Title)
 }

 err = tableBasics.DeleteTable(ctx)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted table %v.\n", tableBasics.TableName)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
```

```
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite
 primary key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

Create a struct and methods that run PartiQL statements.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovie runs a PartiQL INSERT statement to add a movie to the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year,
 movie.Info})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert an item with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// GetMovie runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get a movie from the DynamoDB
 table by
// title and year.
```

```
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 var movie Movie
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{title, year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 response, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Items[0], &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}



// UpdateMovie runs a PartiQL UPDATE statement to update the rating of a movie
 that
// already exists in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie, rating
 float64) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{rating, movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteMovie runs a PartiQL DELETE statement to remove a movie from the
 DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class ScenarioPartiQ {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        String fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json";
        String tableName = "MoviesPartiQ";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        System.out.println(
            "******* Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named MoviesPartiQ with a
 key named year and a sort key named title.");
        createTable(ddb, tableName);

        System.out.println("Loading data into the MoviesPartiQ table.");
        loadData(ddb, fileName);

        System.out.println("Getting data from the MoviesPartiQ table.");
        getItem(ddb);

        System.out.println("Putting a record into the MoviesPartiQ table.");
        putRecord(ddb);

        System.out.println("Updating a record.");
        updateTableItem(ddb);

        System.out.println("Querying the movies released in 2013.");
        queryTable(ddb);

        System.out.println("Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());
```

```
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE) // Sort
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //Scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(DynamoDbClient ddb, String fileName) throws
IOException {

        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?,
'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}";
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        while (iter.hasNext()) {

            // Add 200 movies to the table.
            if (t == 200)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String info = currentNode.path("info").toString();

            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf(year))
                .build();

            AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(title)
                .build();

            AttributeValue att3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(info)
                .build();

            parameters.add(att1);
            parameters.add(att2);
            parameters.add(att3);

            // Insert the movie into the Amazon DynamoDB table.
```

```
            executeStatementRequest(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("Added Movie " + title);

            parameters.remove(att1);
            parameters.remove(att2);
            parameters.remove(att3);
            t++;
        }
    }

    public static void getItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year=? and
 title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n("2012")
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("The Perks of Being a Wallflower")
            .build();

        parameters.add(att1);
        parameters.add(att2);

        try {
            ExecuteStatementResponse response = executeStatementRequest(ddb,
 sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
 response.toString());

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void putRecord(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?,
 'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}";
        try {
            List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
```

```
            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf("2020"))
                .build();

            AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("My Movie")
                .build();

            AttributeValue att3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parameters.add(att1);
            parameters.add(att2);
            parameters.add(att3);

            executeStatementRequest(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("Added new movie.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateTableItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        String sqlStatement = "UPDATE MoviesPartiQ SET info = 'directors\":
[\"Merian C. Cooper\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack' where year=? and title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2013"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("The East")
            .build();

        parameters.add(att1);
        parameters.add(att2);

        try {
            executeStatementRequest(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters);
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Item was updated!");
    }

    // Query the table where the year is 2013.
    public static void queryTable(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year = ? ORDER BY
year";
        try {

            List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf("2013"))
                .build();
            parameters.add(att1);

            // Get items in the table and write out the ID value.
            ExecuteStatementResponse response = executeStatementRequest(ddb,
sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
response.toString());

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName)
{

        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }

    private static ExecuteStatementResponse
 executeStatementRequest(DynamoDbClient ddb, String statement,

 List<AttributeValue> parameters) {
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(statement)
            .parameters(parameters)
            .build();

        return ddb.executeStatement(request);
    }

    private static void processResults(ExecuteStatementResponse
 executeStatementResult) {
        System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
 executeStatementResult.toString());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Execute single PartiQL statements.

```
import {
  BillingMode,
  CreateTableCommand,
```

```
  DeleteTableCommand,
  DescribeTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
import { ScenarioInput } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

const log = (msg) => console.log(`[SCENARIO] ${msg}`);
const tableName = "SingleOriginCoffees";

export const main = async (confirmAll = false) => {
  /**
   * Delete table if it exists.
   */
  try {
    await client.send(new DescribeTableCommand({ TableName: tableName }));
    // If no error was thrown, the table exists.
    const input = new ScenarioInput(
      "deleteTable",
      `A table named ${tableName} already exists. If you choose not to delete
this table, the scenario cannot continue. Delete it?`,
      { type: "confirm", confirmAll },
    );
    const deleteTable = await input.handle({});
    if (deleteTable) {
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ tableName }));
    } else {
      console.warn(
        "Scenario could not run. Either delete ${tableName} or provide a unique
 table name.",
      );
      return;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException"
```

```
    ) {
      // Do nothing. This means the table is not there.
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Create a table.
   */

  log("Creating a table.");
  const createTableCommand = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // This example performs a large write to the database.
    // Set the billing mode to PAY_PER_REQUEST to
    // avoid throttling the large write.
    BillingMode: BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
    // Define the attributes that are necessary for the key schema.
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "varietal",
        // 'S' is a data type descriptor that represents a number type.
        // For a list of all data type descriptors, see the following link.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
        AttributeType: "S",
      },
    ],
    // The KeySchema defines the primary key. The primary key can be
    // a partition key, or a combination of a partition key and a sort key.
    // Key schema design is important. For more info, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/best-
practices.html
    KeySchema: [{ AttributeName: "varietal", KeyType: "HASH" }],
  });
  await client.send(createTableCommand);
  log(`Table created: ${tableName}.`);

  /**
   * Wait until the table is active.
   */

  // This polls with DescribeTableCommand until the requested table is 'ACTIVE'.
```

```
  // You can't write to a table before it's active.
  log("Waiting for the table to be active.");
  await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: tableName });
  log("Table active.");

  /**
   * Insert an item.
   */

  log("Inserting a coffee into the table.");
  const addItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.insert.html
    Statement: `INSERT INTO ${tableName} value {'varietal':?, 'profile':?}`,
    Parameters: ["arabica", ["chocolate", "floral"]],
  });
  await client.send(addItemStatementCommand);
  log("Coffee inserted.");

  /**
   * Select an item.
   */

  log("Selecting the coffee from the table.");
  const selectItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.select.html
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM ${tableName} WHERE varietal=?`,
    Parameters: ["arabica"],
  });
  const selectItemResponse = await docClient.send(selectItemStatementCommand);
  log(`Got coffee: ${JSON.stringify(selectItemResponse.Items[0])}`);

  /**
   * Update the item.
   */

  log("Add a flavor profile to the coffee.");
  const updateItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.update.html
    Statement: `UPDATE ${tableName} SET profile=list_append(profile, ?) WHERE
 varietal=?`,
    Parameters: [["fruity"], "arabica"],
```

```
  });
  await client.send(updateItemStatementCommand);
  log("Updated coffee");

  /**
   * Delete the item.
   */

  log("Deleting the coffee.");
  const deleteItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.delete.html
    Statement: `DELETE FROM ${tableName} WHERE varietal=?`,
    Parameters: ["arabica"],
  });
  await docClient.send(deleteItemStatementCommand);
  log("Coffee deleted.");

  /**
   * Delete the table.
   */

  log("Deleting the table.");
  const deleteTableCommand = new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: tableName });
  await client.send(deleteTableCommand);
  log("Table deleted.");
};
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main() {
```

```
    val ddb = DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }
    val tableName = "MoviesPartiQ"
    val fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json"
    println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named MoviesPartiQ with a key
 named id and a sort key named title.")
    createTablePartiQL(ddb, tableName, "year")
    loadDataPartiQL(ddb, fileName)

    println("******* Getting data from the MoviesPartiQ table.")
    getMoviePartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Putting a record into the MoviesPartiQ table.")
    putRecordPartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Updating a record.")
    updateTableItemPartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Querying the movies released in 2013.")
    queryTablePartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Deleting the MoviesPartiQ table.")
    deleteTablePartiQL(tableName)
}

suspend fun createTablePartiQL(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
```

```
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    val response = ddb.createTable(request)
    ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
        // suspend call
        tableName = tableNameVal
    }
    println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
}

suspend fun loadDataPartiQL(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    fileName: String,
) {
    val sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?, 'title' : ?,
 'info' : ?}"
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode
    var t = 0

    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 200) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
```

```
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()

        val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = ArrayList<AttributeValue>()
        parameters.add(AttributeValue.N(year.toString()))
        parameters.add(AttributeValue.S(title))
        parameters.add(AttributeValue.S(info))

        executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
        println("Added Movie $title")
        parameters.clear()
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun getMoviePartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year=? and title=?"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = ArrayList<AttributeValue>()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2012"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("The Perks of Being a Wallflower"))
    val response = executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: $response")
}

suspend fun putRecordPartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?, 'title' : ?,
 'info' : ?}"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = java.util.ArrayList()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2020"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("No Info"))
    executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("Added new movie.")
}

suspend fun updateTableItemPartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "UPDATE MoviesPartiQ SET info = 'directors\":[\"Merian C.
 Cooper\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack\' where year=? and title=?"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = java.util.ArrayList()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2013"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("The East"))
    executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("Item was updated!")
```

```
}

// Query the table where the year is 2013.
suspend fun queryTablePartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year = ?"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = java.util.ArrayList()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2013"))
    val response = executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: $response")
}

suspend fun deleteTablePartiQL(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun executeStatementPartiQL(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    statementVal: String,
    parametersVal: List<AttributeValue>,
): ExecuteStatementResponse {
    val request =
        ExecuteStatementRequest {
            statement = statementVal
            parameters = parametersVal
        }

    return ddb.executeStatement(request)
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace DynamoDb\PartiQL_Basics;

use Aws\DynamoDb\Marshaler;
use DynamoDb;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBAttribute;

use function AwsUtilities\testable_readline;
use function AwsUtilities\loadMovieData;

class GettingStartedWithPartiQL
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB - PartiQL getting started demo
 using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $uuid = uniqid();
        $service = new DynamoDb\DynamoDBService();

        $tableName = "partiql_demo_table_$uuid";
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

        echo "Waiting for table...";
```

```
        $service->dynamoDbClient->waitUntil("TableExists", ['TableName' =>
 $tableName]);
        echo "table $tableName found!\n";

        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
            ],
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("INSERT", $tableName, $key);
        $service->insertItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);

        echo "How would you rate the movie from 1-10?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        echo "What was the movie about?\n";
        while (empty($plot)) {
            $plot = testable_readline("Plot summary: ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot),
        ];

        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
```

```
        $service->updateItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);
        echo "Movie added and updated.\n";



        $batch = json_decode(loadMovieData());

        $service->writeBatch($tableName, $batch);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQL($tableName, $key);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Items'][0]['title']['S']} was released in
 {$movie['Items'][0]['year']['N']}.\n";
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Items'][0]['title']
['S']}?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1
 || $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot)
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQL($tableName, $key);
        echo "Okay, you have rated {$movie['Items'][0]['title']['S']} as a
 {$movie['Items'][0]['rating']['N']}\n";

        $service->deleteItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
 because of your rating...harsh.\n";

        echo "That's okay though. The book was better. Now, for something
 lighter, in what year were you born?\n";
        $birthYear = "not a number";
        while (!is_numeric($birthYear) || $birthYear >= date("Y")) {
            $birthYear = testable_readline("Birth year: ");
        }
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
```

```
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        echo "Here are the movies in our collection released the year you were
 born:\n";
        $oops = "Oops! There were no movies released in that year (that we know
 of).\n";
        $display = "";
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            $display .= $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }
        echo ($display) ?: $oops;

        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "\nCleaning up this demo by deleting table $tableName...\n";
        $service->deleteTable($tableName);
    }
}

    public function insertItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => "$statement",
```

```
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }

    public function getItemByPartiQL(string $tableName, array $key): Result
    {
        list($statement, $parameters) = $this-
>buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT", $tableName, $key['Item']);

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
            'Statement' => $statement,
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that can run PartiQL statements.

```
from datetime import datetime
from decimal import Decimal
import logging
from pprint import pprint

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from scaffold import Scaffold

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class PartiQLWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statement, params):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because
 the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects
 (POPOs) to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statement: The PartiQL statement.
        :param params: The list of PartiQL parameters. These are applied to the
                       statement in the order they are listed.
        :return: The items returned from the statement, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.execute_statement(
                Statement=statement, Parameters=params
```

```
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s' because the table does not
 exist.",
                    statement,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s'. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    statement,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries.

```
def run_scenario(scaffold, wrapper, table_name):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL single statement demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Creating table '{table_name}' for the demo...")
    scaffold.create_table(table_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    title = "24 Hour PartiQL People"
    year = datetime.now().year
    plot = "A group of data developers discover a new query language they can't
 stop using."
    rating = Decimal("9.9")

    print(f"Inserting movie '{title}' released in {year}.")
    wrapper.run_partiql(
```

```
        f"INSERT INTO \"{table_name}\" VALUE {{'title': ?, 'year': ?,
'info': ?}}",
        [title, year, {"plot": plot, "rating": rating}],
    )
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting data for movie '{title}' released in {year}.")
    output = wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'SELECT * FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?', [title, year]
    )
    for item in output["Items"]:
        print(f"\n{item['title']}, {item['year']}")
        pprint(output["Items"])
    print("-" * 88)

    rating = Decimal("2.4")
    print(f"Updating movie '{title}' with a rating of {float(rating)}.")
    wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'UPDATE "{table_name}" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?',
        [rating, title, year],
    )
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting data again to verify our update.")
    output = wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'SELECT * FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?', [title, year]
    )
    for item in output["Items"]:
        print(f"\n{item['title']}, {item['year']}")
        pprint(output["Items"])
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting movie '{title}' released in {year}.")
    wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'DELETE FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?', [title, year]
    )
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting table '{table_name}'...")
    scaffold.delete_table()
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        dyn_res = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        scaffold = Scaffold(dyn_res)
        movies = PartiQLWrapper(dyn_res)
        run_scenario(scaffold, movies, "doc-example-table-partiql-movies")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Something went wrong with the demo! Here's what: {e}")
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries.

```
table_name = "doc-example-table-movies-partiql-#{rand(10**8)}"
scaffold = Scaffold.new(table_name)
sdk = DynamoDBPartiQLSingle.new(table_name)

new_step(1, 'Create a new DynamoDB table if none already exists.')
unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)
  puts("\nNo such table: #{table_name}. Creating it...")
  scaffold.create_table(table_name)
  print "Done!\n".green
end

new_step(2, 'Populate DynamoDB table with movie data.')
download_file = 'moviedata.json'
```

```
  puts("Downloading movie database to #{download_file}...")
  movie_data = scaffold.fetch_movie_data(download_file)
  puts("Writing movie data from #{download_file} into your table...")
  scaffold.write_batch(movie_data)
  puts("Records added: #{movie_data.length}.")
  print "Done!\n".green

  new_step(3, 'Select a single item from the movies table.')
  response = sdk.select_item_by_title('Star Wars')
  puts("Items selected for title 'Star Wars': #{response.items.length}\n")
  print response.items.first.to_s.yellow
  print "\n\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(4, 'Update a single item from the movies table.')
  puts "Let's correct the rating on The Big Lebowski to 10.0."
  sdk.update_rating_by_title('The Big Lebowski', 1998, 10.0)
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(5, 'Delete a single item from the movies table.')
  puts "Let's delete The Silence of the Lambs because it's just too scary."
  sdk.delete_item_by_title('The Silence of the Lambs', 1991)
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(6, 'Insert a new item into the movies table.')
  puts "Let's create a less-scary movie called The Prancing of the Lambs."
  sdk.insert_item('The Prancing of the Lambs', 2005, 'A movie about happy
 livestock.', 5.0)
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(7, 'Delete the table.')
  return unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)

  scaffold.delete_table
end
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_table(
    client: &Client,
    table: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), SdkError<CreateTableError>> {
    let ad = AttributeDefinition::builder()
        .attribute_name(key)
        .attribute_type(ScalarAttributeType::S)
        .build()
        .expect("creating AttributeDefinition");

    let ks = KeySchemaElement::builder()
        .attribute_name(key)
        .key_type(KeyType::Hash)
        .build()
        .expect("creating KeySchemaElement");

    match client
        .create_table()
        .table_name(table)
        .key_schema(ks)
        .attribute_definitions(ad)
        .billing_mode(BillingMode::PayPerRequest)
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(e) => Err(e),
    }
}
```

```
async fn add_item(client: &Client, item: Item) -> Result<(),
 SdkError<ExecuteStatementError>> {
    match client
        .execute_statement()
        .statement(format!(
            r#"INSERT INTO "{}" VALUE {{
                "{}": ?,
                "acount_type": ?,
                "age": ?,
                "first_name": ?,
                "last_name": ?
        }} "#,
            item.table, item.key
        ))
        .set_parameters(Some(vec![
            AttributeValue::S(item.utype),
            AttributeValue::S(item.age),
            AttributeValue::S(item.first_name),
            AttributeValue::S(item.last_name),
        ]))
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(e) => Err(e),
    }
}

async fn query_item(client: &Client, item: Item) -> bool {
    match client
        .execute_statement()
        .statement(format!(
            r#"SELECT * FROM "{}" WHERE "{}" = ?"#,
            item.table, item.key
        ))
        .set_parameters(Some(vec![AttributeValue::S(item.value)]))
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(resp) => {
            if !resp.items().is_empty() {
                println!("Found a matching entry in the table:");
                println!("{:?}", resp.items.unwrap_or_default().pop());
                true
```

```
            } else {
                println!("Did not find a match.");
                false
            }
        }
        Err(e) => {
            println!("Got an error querying table:");
            println!("{}", e);
            process::exit(1);
        }
    }
}

async fn remove_item(client: &Client, table: &str, key: &str, value: String) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .execute_statement()
        .statement(format!(r#"DELETE FROM "{table}" WHERE "{key}" = ?"#))
        .set_parameters(Some(vec![AttributeValue::S(value)]))
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Deleted item.");

    Ok(())
}

async fn remove_table(client: &Client, table: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client.delete_table().table_name(table).send().await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table using a Global Secondary Index with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table using a Global Secondary Index.

- Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.
- Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) for alternate access patterns.

- Compare table queries and GSI queries.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key and a Global Secondary Index (GSI) with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryTable(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
```

```
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on base table successful. Found " +
response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table not found: " + tableName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying base table: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on base
table", e);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI) by partition key.
     *
     * @param tableName         The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param indexName         The name of the GSI
     * @param partitionKeyName  The name of the GSI partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the GSI partition key to query
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException if the table or index doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException if the query fails
     */
    public QueryResponse queryGlobalSecondaryIndex(
        final String tableName, final String indexName, final String
partitionKeyName, final String partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Index name", indexName);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_IK,
partitionKeyName);
```

```
        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_IK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .indexName(indexName)
            .keyConditionExpression(GSI_KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on GSI successful. Found " +
response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(
                "Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" or index \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName, indexName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table or index not found: " +
tableName + "/" + indexName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying GSI: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on GSI",
e);
        }
    }
```

Compare querying a table directly versus querying a GSI with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <basePartitionKeyName> <basePartitionKeyValue>
<gsiName> <gsiPartitionKeyName> <gsiPartitionKeyValue> [region]
```

```
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    basePartitionKeyName - The name of the base table partition
key attribute.
                    basePartitionKeyValue - The value of the base table partition
key to query.
                    gsiName - The name of the Global Secondary Index.
                    gsiPartitionKeyName - The name of the GSI partition key
attribute.
                    gsiPartitionKeyValue - The value of the GSI partition key to
query.
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String basePartitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String basePartitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String gsiName = args[3];
        final String gsiPartitionKeyName = args[4];
        final String gsiPartitionKeyValue = args[5];
        final Region region = args.length > 6 ? Region.of(args[6]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb =
DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final QueryTableAndGSI queryHelper = new QueryTableAndGSI(ddb);

            // Query the base table
            System.out.println("Querying base table where " +
basePartitionKeyName + " = " + basePartitionKeyValue);
            final QueryResponse tableResponse =
                queryHelper.queryTable(tableName, basePartitionKeyName,
basePartitionKeyValue);

            System.out.println("Found " + tableResponse.count() + " items in base
table:");
            tableResponse.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));
```

```
            // Query the GSI
            System.out.println(
                "\nQuerying GSI '" + gsiName + "' where " + gsiPartitionKeyName +
" = " + gsiPartitionKeyValue);
            final QueryResponse gsiResponse =
                queryHelper.queryGlobalSecondaryIndex(tableName, gsiName,
gsiPartitionKeyName, gsiPartitionKeyValue);

            System.out.println("Found " + gsiResponse.count() + " items in
GSI:");
            gsiResponse.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Explain the differences between querying a table and a GSI
            System.out.println("\nKey differences between querying a table and a
GSI:");
            System.out.println("1. When querying a GSI, you must specify the
indexName parameter");
            System.out.println("2. GSIs may not contain all attributes from the
base table (projection)");
            System.out.println("3. GSIs consume read capacity units from the
GSI's capacity, not the base table's");
            System.out.println("4. GSIs may have eventually consistent data
(cannot use ConsistentRead=true)");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table or index not found: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table using the primary key with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table using the primary key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} userId - The user ID to query by (partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryTable(
  config,
  tableName,
  userId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the base table
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "user_id = :userId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":userId": { S: userId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI) with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI)
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} indexName - The name of the GSI to query
 * @param {string} gameId - The game ID to query by (GSI partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryGSI(
  config,
  tableName,
  indexName,
  gameId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the GSI
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      IndexName: indexName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "game_id = :gameId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":gameId": { S: gameId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying GSI: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key and a Global Secondary Index (GSI) with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_table(table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the table's primary key
    response =
 table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value))

    return response


def query_gsi(table_name, index_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) on a DynamoDB table.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        index_name (str): The name of the Global Secondary Index.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the GSI's partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the GSI's partition key to query.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the GSI
    response = table.query(
        IndexName=index_name,
 KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
    )

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table using a begins_with condition.

- Use the begins_with function in a key condition expression.
- Filter items based on a prefix pattern in the sort key.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition on the sort key with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
```

```
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithBeginsWithCondition(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String sortKeyName,
        final String sortKeyPrefix) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Sort key name", sortKeyName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Sort key prefix",
 sortKeyPrefix);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_SK, sortKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_SK_PREFIX,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKeyPrefix).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
```

```
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query with begins_with condition successful.
Found {0} items", response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with begins_with condition",
e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrate using begins_with with different prefix lengths with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            CodeSampleUtils.BeginsWithQueryConfig config =
CodeSampleUtils.BeginsWithQueryConfig.fromArgs(args);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Querying items where {0} = {1} and {2} begins
with ''{3}''", new Object[] {
                config.getPartitionKeyName(),
                config.getPartitionKeyValue(),
                config.getSortKeyName(),
                config.getSortKeyPrefix()
            });

            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new BeginsWithQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
                .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                .withSortKeyName(config.getSortKeyName())
                .withSortKeyPrefix(config.getSortKeyPrefix())
                .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items:", response.count());
            response.items().forEach(item -> LOGGER.info(item.toString()));

            // Demonstrate with a different prefix
```

```
            if (!config.getSortKeyPrefix().isEmpty()) {
                String shorterPrefix = config.getSortKeyPrefix()
                    .substring(0, Math.max(1,
config.getSortKeyPrefix().length() / 2));
                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "\nNow querying with a shorter prefix:
''{0}'''", shorterPrefix);

                final QueryResponse response2 = new BeginsWithQueryBuilder()
                    .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                    .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
                    .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                    .withSortKeyName(config.getSortKeyName())
                    .withSortKeyPrefix(shorterPrefix)
                    .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                    .execute();

                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items with shorter prefix:",
response2.count());
                response2.items().forEach(item -> LOGGER.info(item.toString()));
            }
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Invalid input: {0}", e.getMessage());
            printUsage();
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found", e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "DynamoDB error", e);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Unexpected error", e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition on the sort key with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
```

```
/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items where the sort key begins with a specific
 prefix
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} sortKeyName - The name of the sort key
 * @param {string} prefix - The prefix to match at the beginning of the sort key
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithBeginsWith(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  prefix
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue AND begins_with(#sk, :prefix)",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#sk": sortKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":prefix": { S: prefix }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with begins_with: ${error}`);
```

```
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition on the sort key with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_begins_with(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, prefix
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a begins_with condition on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute.
        prefix (str): The prefix to match at the beginning of the sort key.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query with a begins_with condition on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) & Key(
        sort_key_name
    ).begins_with(prefix)
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition)
```

```
    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table using a date range in the sort key with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table using a date range in the sort key.

- Query items within a specific date range.
- Use comparison operators on date-formatted sort keys.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table for items within a date range with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateRange(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final LocalDate startDate,
        final LocalDate endDate) {
```

```
        // Focus on query logic, assuming parameters are valid
        if (startDate == null || endDate == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Start date and end date cannot be
null");
        }

        if (endDate.isBefore(startDate)) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("End date must be after start
date");
        }

        // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB (using just the date part)
        final String formattedStartDate = startDate.toString();
        final String formattedEndDate = endDate.toString();

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_SK, dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_START_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedStartDate).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_END_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedEndDate).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
```

```
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query by date range successful. Found {0}
items", response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying by date range: {0}",
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to query a DynamoDB table with date range filtering.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue>
<dateKeyName> <startDate> <endDate> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    dateKeyName - The name of the date attribute to filter on.
                    startDate - The start date for the range query (YYYY-MM-DD).
                    endDate - The end date for the range query (YYYY-MM-DD).
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        try {
            // Parse command line arguments into a config object
            CodeSampleUtils.DateRangeQueryConfig config =
CodeSampleUtils.DateRangeQueryConfig.fromArgs(args);
```

```
            LOGGER.log(
                Level.INFO, "Querying items from {0} to {1}", new Object[]
{config.getStartDate(), config.getEndDate()
                });

            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new DateRangeQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
                .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                .withDateKeyName(config.getDateKeyName())
                .withStartDate(config.getStartDate())
                .withEndDate(config.getEndDate())
                .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items:", response.count());
            response.items().forEach(item -> {
                LOGGER.info(item.toString());

                // Extract and display the date attribute for clarity
                if (item.containsKey(config.getDateKeyName())) {
                    LOGGER.log(
                        Level.INFO,
                        "  Date attribute: {0}",
                        item.get(config.getDateKeyName()).s());
                }
            });

            // Demonstrate with a different date range
            LocalDate narrowerStartDate = config.getStartDate().plusDays(1);
            LocalDate narrowerEndDate = config.getEndDate().minusDays(1);

            if (!narrowerStartDate.isAfter(narrowerEndDate)) {
                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "\nNow querying with a narrower date
range: {0} to {1}", new Object[] {
                    narrowerStartDate, narrowerEndDate
                });

                final QueryResponse response2 = new DateRangeQueryBuilder()
                    .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                    .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
```

```
                    .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                    .withDateKeyName(config.getDateKeyName())
                    .withStartDate(narrowerStartDate)
                    .withEndDate(narrowerEndDate)
                    .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                    .execute();

                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items with narrower date
range:", response2.count());
                response2.items().forEach(item -> LOGGER.info(item.toString()));
            }

            LOGGER.info("\nNote: When storing dates in DynamoDB:");
            LOGGER.info("1. Use ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) for lexicographical
ordering");
            LOGGER.info("2. Use the BETWEEN operator for inclusive date range
queries");
            LOGGER.info("3. Consider using ISO-8601 format for timestamps with
time components");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Invalid input: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "DynamoDB error: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Unexpected error: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table for items within a date range with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items within a specific date range on the sort
 key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} sortKeyName - The name of the sort key (must be a date/time
 attribute)
 * @param {Date} startDate - The start date for the range query
 * @param {Date} endDate - The end date for the range query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryByDateRangeOnSortKey(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  startDate,
  endDate
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB
    const formattedStartDate = startDate.toISOString();
    const formattedEndDate = endDate.toISOString();

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: '#pk = :pkValue AND #sk BETWEEN :startDate
 AND :endDate',
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#sk": sortKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
```

```
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":startDate": { S: formattedStartDate },
        ":endDate": { S: formattedEndDate }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying by date range on sort key: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table for items within a date range with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_date_range(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name,
 start_date, end_date
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a date range on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
 values).
```

```
        start_date (datetime): The start date for the query range.
        end_date (datetime): The end date for the query range.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    # DynamoDB works well with ISO format for date values
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key using BETWEEN operator
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":pk_val": partition_key_value,
            ":start_date": start_date_str,
            ":end_date": end_date_str,
        },
    )

    return response


def query_with_date_range_by_month(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, year,
 month
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table for a specific month's data.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
```

```
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
values).
        year (int): The year to query.
        month (int): The month to query (1-12).

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Calculate the start and end dates for the specified month
    if month == 12:
        next_year = year + 1
        next_month = 1
    else:
        next_year = year
        next_month = month + 1

    start_date = datetime(year, month, 1)
    end_date = datetime(next_year, next_month, 1) - timedelta(microseconds=1)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table with a complex filter expression.

- Apply complex filter expressions to query results.
- Combine multiple conditions using logical operators.
- Filter items based on non-key attributes.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithComplexFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String statusAttrName,
        final String activeStatus,
        final String pendingStatus,
        final String priceAttrName,
        final double minPrice,
        final double maxPrice,
        final String categoryAttrName) {

        // Validate parameters
        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
```

```
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Status attribute name",
statusAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Active status", activeStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Pending status", pendingStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Price attribute name",
priceAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Category attribute name",
categoryAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Minimum price", minPrice, 0.0,
Double.MAX_VALUE);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Maximum price", maxPrice, minPrice,
Double.MAX_VALUE);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pk", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_STATUS,
statusAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PRICE,
priceAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_CATEGORY,
categoryAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":pkValue", AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_ACTIVE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(activeStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PENDING,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(pendingStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MIN_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(minPrice)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MAX_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(maxPrice)).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
```

```
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(FILTER_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        return dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number|string} minViews - Minimum number of views for filtering
 * @param {number|string} minReplies - Minimum number of replies for filtering
 * @param {string} requiredTag - Tag that must be present in the item's tags set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithComplexFilter(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  minViews,
  minReplies,
  requiredTag
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
```

```
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      FilterExpression: "views >= :minViews AND replies >= :minReplies AND
 contains(tags, :tag)",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":minViews": { N: minViews.toString() },
        ":minReplies": { N: minReplies.toString() },
        ":tag": { S: requiredTag }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with complex filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_complex_filter(
```

```
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    min_rating=None,
    status_list=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        status_list (list, optional): List of status values to include.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize the filter expression and expression attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the filter expression based on provided parameters
    if min_rating is not None:
        filter_expression = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if status_list and len(status_list) > 0:
        status_condition = None
        for i, status in enumerate(status_list):
            status_value_name = f":status{i}"
            expression_attribute_values[status_value_name] = status

            if status_condition is None:
```

```
                status_condition = Attr("status").eq(status)
            else:
                status_condition = status_condition | Attr("status").eq(status)

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = status_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & status_condition

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] =
 expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response


def query_with_complex_filter_and_or(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    category=None,
    min_rating=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AND and OR
 operators.
```

```
    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        category (str, optional): Category value for filtering.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build a complex filter expression with AND and OR operators
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the category condition
    if category:
        filter_expression = Attr("category").eq(category)
        expression_attribute_values[":category"] = category

    # Build the rating and price condition (rating >= min_rating OR price <=
max_price)
    rating_price_condition = None

    if min_rating is not None:
        rating_price_condition = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if rating_price_condition is None:
            rating_price_condition = price_condition
        else:
            rating_price_condition = rating_price_condition | price_condition
```

```
    # Combine the conditions
    if rating_price_condition:
        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = rating_price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & rating_price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] =
expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamic filter expression with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table with a dynamic filter expression.

- Build filter expressions dynamically at runtime.
- Construct filter conditions based on user input or application state.
- Add or remove filter criteria conditionally.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public static QueryResponse queryWithDynamicFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final Map<String, Object> filterCriteria,
        final Region region,
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {

        validateParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
 filterCriteria);

        DynamoDbClient ddbClient = dynamoDbClient;
        boolean shouldClose = false;

        try {
            if (ddbClient == null) {
                ddbClient = createClient(region);
                shouldClose = true;
            }

            final QueryWithDynamicFilter queryHelper = new
 QueryWithDynamicFilter(ddbClient);
            return queryHelper.queryWithDynamicFilter(tableName,
 partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue, filterCriteria);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to execute dynamic filter query: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error during query: " +
 e.getMessage());
```

```
            throw e;
        } finally {
            if (shouldClose && ddbClient != null) {
                ddbClient.close();
            }
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to use dynamic filter expressions with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue>
<filterAttrName> <filterAttrValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    filterAttrName - The name of the attribute to filter on.
                    filterAttrValue - The value to filter by.
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String filterAttrName = args[3];
        final String filterAttrValue = args[4];
        final Region region = args.length > 5 ? Region.of(args[5]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items with dynamic filter: " +
filterAttrName + " = " + filterAttrValue);
```

```
        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriterion(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("Found " + response.count() + " items:");
            response.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Demonstrate multiple filter criteria
            System.out.println("\nNow querying with multiple filter criteria:");

            Map<String, Object> multipleFilters = new HashMap<>();
            multipleFilters.put(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue);
            multipleFilters.put("status", "active");

            final QueryResponse multiFilterResponse = new
DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriteria(multipleFilters)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            System.out.println("Found " + multiFilterResponse.count() + " items
with multiple filters:");
            multiFilterResponse.items().forEach(item ->
System.out.println(item));

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

async function queryWithDynamicFilter(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  sortKeyValue,
  filterParams = {}
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize filter expression components
    let filterExpressions = [];
    const expressionAttributeValues = {
      ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
      ":skValue": { S: sortKeyValue }
    };
    const expressionAttributeNames = {
      "#pk": partitionKeyName,
      "#sk": sortKeyName
    };

    // Add status filter if provided
```

```
    if (filterParams.status) {
      filterExpressions.push("status = :status");
      expressionAttributeValues[":status"] = { S: filterParams.status };
    }

    // Add minimum views filter if provided
    if (filterParams.minViews !== undefined) {
      filterExpressions.push("views >= :minViews");
      expressionAttributeValues[":minViews"] = { N:
 filterParams.minViews.toString() };
    }

    // Add author filter if provided
    if (filterParams.author) {
      filterExpressions.push("author = :author");
      expressionAttributeValues[":author"] = { S: filterParams.author };
    }

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue AND #sk = :skValue"
    };

    // Add filter expression if any filters were provided
    if (filterExpressions.length > 0) {
      input.FilterExpression = filterExpressions.join(" AND ");
    }

    // Add expression attribute names and values
    input.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
    input.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with dynamic filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_dynamic_filter(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_conditions=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_conditions (dict, optional): A dictionary of filter conditions
 where
            keys are attribute names and values are dictionaries with 'operator'
 and 'value'.
            Example: {'rating': {'operator': '>=', 'value': 4}, 'status':
 {'operator': '=', 'value': 'active'}}

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize variables for the filter expression and attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {":pk_val": partition_key_value}

    # Dynamically build the filter expression if filter conditions are provided
    if filter_conditions:
```

```
        for attr_name, condition in filter_conditions.items():
            operator = condition.get("operator")
            value = condition.get("value")
            attr_value_name = f":{attr_name}"
            expression_attribute_values[attr_value_name] = value

            # Create the appropriate filter expression based on the operator
            current_condition = None
            if operator == "=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).eq(value)
            elif operator == "!=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).ne(value)
            elif operator == ">":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gt(value)
            elif operator == ">=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gte(value)
            elif operator == "<":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lt(value)
            elif operator == "<=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lte(value)
            elif operator == "contains":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).contains(value)
            elif operator == "begins_with":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).begins_with(value)

            # Combine with existing filter expression using AND
            if current_condition:
                if filter_expression is None:
                    filter_expression = current_condition
                else:
                    filter_expression = filter_expression & current_condition

    # Perform the query with the dynamically built filter expression
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression

    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Demonstrates how to use dynamic filter expressions with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the query_with_dynamic_filter function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    partition_key_name = "Category"
    partition_key_value = "Electronics"

    # Define dynamic filter conditions based on user input or runtime conditions
    user_min_rating = 4  # This could come from user input
    user_status_filter = "active"  # This could come from user input

    filter_conditions = {}

    # Only add conditions that are actually specified
    if user_min_rating is not None:
        filter_conditions["rating"] = {"operator": ">=", "value":
 user_min_rating}

    if user_status_filter:
        filter_conditions["status"] = {"operator": "=", "value":
 user_status_filter}

    print(
        f"Querying products in category '{partition_key_value}' with filter
 conditions: {filter_conditions}"
    )

    # Execute the query with dynamic filter
    response = query_with_dynamic_filter(
        table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_conditions
    )

    # Process the results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    print(f"Found {len(items)} items")

    for item in items:
        print(f"Product: {item}")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table with a filter expression and limit.

- Apply filter expressions to query results with a limit on items evaluated.
- Understand how limit affects filtered query results.
- Control the maximum number of items processed in a query.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithFilterAndLimit(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String filterAttrName,
        final String filterAttrValue,
        final int limit) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute name",
 filterAttrName);
```

```
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute value",
filterAttrValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Limit", limit);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_FILTER,
filterAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_FILTER,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(filterAttrValue).build());

        // Create the filter expression
        final String filterExpression = "#filterAttr = :filterValue";

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(limit)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query with filter and limit successful. Found
{0} items", response.count());
            LOGGER.log(
                Level.INFO, "ScannedCount: {0} (total items evaluated before
filtering)", response.scannedCount());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
```

```
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with filter and limit: {0}",
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_filter_and_limit(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    filter_attribute=None,
    filter_value=None,
    limit=10,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit the number of
 results.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_attribute (str, optional): The attribute name to filter on.
        filter_value (any, optional): The value to compare against in the filter.
        limit (int, optional): The maximum number of items to evaluate. Defaults
 to 10.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition, "Limit": limit}

    # Add the filter expression if filter attributes are provided
    if filter_attribute and filter_value is not None:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] =
 Attr(filter_attribute).gt(filter_value)
        query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = {":filter_value":
 filter_value}

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Demonstrates how to use filter expressions with limits in AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the query_with_filter_and_limit function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "ProductReviews"
    partition_key_name = "ProductId"
    partition_key_value = "P123456"
    filter_attribute = "Rating"
    filter_value = 3  # Filter for ratings > 3
    limit = 5

    print(f"Querying reviews for product '{partition_key_value}' with rating >
 {filter_value}")
    print(f"Limiting to {limit} evaluated items")
```

```
    # Execute the query with filter and limit
    response = query_with_filter_and_limit(
        table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_attribute,
filter_value, limit
    )

    # Process the results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    print(f"\nReturned {len(items)} items that passed the filter")

    for item in items:
        print(f"Review: {item}")

    # Explain the difference between Limit and actual results
    explain_limit_vs_results(response)

    # Check if there are more results
    if "LastEvaluatedKey" in response:
        print("\nThere are more results available. Use the LastEvaluatedKey for
pagination.")
    else:
        print("\nAll matching results have been retrieved.")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table with nested attributes.

- Access and filter by nested attributes in DynamoDB items.
- Use document path expressions to reference nested elements.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithNestedAttributes(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String nestedPath,
        final String nestedAttr,
        final String nestedValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Nested path", nestedPath);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Nested attribute", nestedAttr);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Nested value", nestedValue);

        // Split the nested path into components
        final String[] pathComponents = nestedPath.split("\\.");

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Build the nested attribute reference using document path notation
        final StringBuilder nestedAttributeRef = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < pathComponents.length; i++) {
            final String aliasName = "#n" + i;
            expressionAttributeNames.put(aliasName, pathComponents[i]);

            if (i > 0) {
                nestedAttributeRef.append(".");
            }
            nestedAttributeRef.append(aliasName);
        }
```

```
        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_NESTED,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(nestedValue).build());

        // Create the filter expression using the nested attribute reference
        final String filterExpression = nestedAttributeRef + " = :nestedValue";

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query with nested attribute filter successful.
Found " + response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with nested attribute filter: " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
```

```
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue>
<nestedPath> <nestedAttr> <nestedValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    nestedPath - The path to the nested map attribute (e.g.,
"address").
                    nestedAttr - The name of the nested attribute (e.g., "city").
                    nestedValue - The value to filter by (e.g., "Seattle").
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String nestedPath = args[3];
        final String nestedAttr = args[4];
        final String nestedValue = args[5];
        final Region region = args.length > 6 ? Region.of(args[6]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items where " + partitionKeyName + " = " +
partitionKeyValue + " and " + nestedPath
            + "." + nestedAttr + " = " + nestedValue);

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new NestedAttributeQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withNestedPath(nestedPath)
                .withNestedAttribute(nestedAttr)
                .withNestedValue(nestedValue)
                .withRegion(region)
```

```
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("Found " + response.count() + " items:");
            response.items().forEach(item -> {
                System.out.println(item);

                // Extract and display the nested attribute for clarity
                if (item.containsKey(nestedPath) && item.get(nestedPath).hasM())
{
                    Map<String, AttributeValue> nestedMap =
item.get(nestedPath).m();
                    if (nestedMap.containsKey(nestedAttr)) {
                        System.out.println("  Nested attribute " + nestedPath +
"." + nestedAttr + ": "
                                + formatAttributeValue(nestedMap.get(nestedAttr)));
                    }
                }
            });

            System.out.println("\nNote: When working with nested attributes in
DynamoDB:");
            System.out.println("1. Use dot notation in filter expressions to
access nested attributes");
            System.out.println("2. Use expression attribute names for each
component of the path");
            System.out.println("3. Check if the nested attribute exists before
accessing it");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table filtering on a nested attribute
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} productId - The product ID to query by (partition key)
 * @param {string} category - The category to filter by (nested attribute)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithNestedAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  productId,
  category
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "product_id = :productId",
      FilterExpression: "details.category = :category",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":productId": { S: productId },
        ":category": { S: category }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
```

```
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with nested attribute: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from typing import Any, Dict, List

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_nested_attributes(
    table_name: str,
    partition_key_name: str,
    partition_key_value: str,
    nested_path: str,
    comparison_operator: str,
    comparison_value: Any,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table and filter by nested attributes.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        nested_path (str): The path to the nested attribute (e.g.,
 'specs.weight').
        comparison_operator (str): The comparison operator to use ('=', '!=',
 '<', '<=', '>', '>=').
        comparison_value (any): The value to compare against.
```

```
    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build the filter expression based on the nested attribute path and
 comparison operator
    filter_expression = None
    if comparison_operator == "=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).eq(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "!=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).ne(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "<":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).lt(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "<=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).lte(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == ">":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).gt(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == ">=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).gte(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "contains":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).contains(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "begins_with":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).begins_with(comparison_value)

    # Execute the query with the filter expression
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 FilterExpression=filter_expression)

    return response


def query_with_multiple_nested_attributes(
    table_name: str,
    partition_key_name: str,
    partition_key_value: str,
    nested_conditions: List[Dict[str, Any]],
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
```

```
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table and filter by multiple nested attributes.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        nested_conditions (list): A list of dictionaries, each containing:
            - path (str): The path to the nested attribute
            - operator (str): The comparison operator
            - value (any): The value to compare against

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build the combined filter expression for all nested attributes
    combined_filter = None

    for condition in nested_conditions:
        if not isinstance(condition, dict):
            continue
        path = condition.get("path", "")
        operator = condition.get("operator", "")
        value = condition.get("value")

        if not path or not operator:
            continue

        # Build the individual filter expression
        current_filter = None
        if operator == "=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).eq(value)
        elif operator == "!=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).ne(value)
        elif operator == "<":
            current_filter = Attr(path).lt(value)
        elif operator == "<=":
```

```
            current_filter = Attr(path).lte(value)
        elif operator == ">":
            current_filter = Attr(path).gt(value)
        elif operator == ">=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).gte(value)
        elif operator == "contains":
            current_filter = Attr(path).contains(value)
        elif operator == "begins_with":
            current_filter = Attr(path).begins_with(value)

        # Combine with the existing filter using AND
        if current_filter:
            if combined_filter is None:
                combined_filter = current_filter
            else:
                combined_filter = combined_filter & current_filter

    # Execute the query with the combined filter expression
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
FilterExpression=combined_filter)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table with pagination.

- Implement pagination for DynamoDB query results.
- Use the LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve subsequent pages.
- Control the number of items per page with the Limit parameter.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    public List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> queryWithPagination(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue, final int pageSize) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Page size", pageSize);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        QueryRequest.Builder queryRequestBuilder = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(pageSize);

        // List to store all items from all pages
        final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> allItems = new ArrayList<>();
```

```
        // Map to store the last evaluated key for pagination
        Map<String, AttributeValue> lastEvaluatedKey = null;
        int pageNumber = 1;

        try {
            do {
                // If we have a last evaluated key, use it for the next page
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null) {
                    queryRequestBuilder.exclusiveStartKey(lastEvaluatedKey);
                }

                // Execute the query
                final QueryResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequestBuilder.build());

                // Process the current page of results
                final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> pageItems =
response.items();
                allItems.addAll(pageItems);

                // Get the last evaluated key for the next page
                lastEvaluatedKey = response.lastEvaluatedKey();
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null && lastEvaluatedKey.isEmpty()) {
                    lastEvaluatedKey = null;
                }

                System.out.println("Page " + pageNumber + ": Retrieved " +
pageItems.size() + " items (Running total: "
                    + allItems.size() + ")");

                pageNumber++;

            } while (lastEvaluatedKey != null);

            System.out.println("Query with pagination complete. Retrieved a total
of " + allItems.size()
                + " items across " + (pageNumber - 1) + " pages");

            return allItems;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with pagination: " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to query a DynamoDB table with pagination.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue> [pageSize]
[region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    pageSize (optional) - The maximum number of items to return
per page. (Default: 10)
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final int pageSize = args.length > 3 ? Integer.parseInt(args[3]) : 10;
        final Region region = args.length > 4 ? Region.of(args[4]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items with pagination (page size: " +
pageSize + ")");

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
```

```
            final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> allItems = new
PaginationQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withPageSize(pageSize)
                .withRegion(region)
                .executeWithPagination();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("\nSummary: Retrieved a total of " +
allItems.size() + " items");

            // Display the first few items as a sample
            final int sampleSize = Math.min(5, allItems.size());
            if (sampleSize > 0) {
                System.out.println("\nSample of retrieved items (first " +
sampleSize + "):");
                for (int i = 0; i < sampleSize; i++) {
                    System.out.println(allItems.get(i));
                }

                if (allItems.size() > sampleSize) {
                    System.out.println("... and " + (allItems.size() -
sampleSize) + " more items");
                }
            }
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example demonstrating how to handle large query result sets in DynamoDB using
 pagination
 *
 * This example shows:
 * - How to use pagination to handle large result sets
 * - How to use LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve the next page of results
 * - How to construct subsequent query requests using ExclusiveStartKey
 */
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number} pageSize - Number of items per page
 * @returns {Promise<Array>} - All items from the query
 */
async function queryWithPagination(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  pageSize = 25
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize variables for pagination
    let lastEvaluatedKey = undefined;
    const allItems = [];
    let pageCount = 0;
```

```
    // Loop until all pages are retrieved
    do {
      // Construct the query input
      const input = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
        Limit: pageSize,
        ExpressionAttributeNames: {
          "#pk": partitionKeyName
        },
        ExpressionAttributeValues: {
          ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
        }
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        input.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      // Execute the query
      const command = new QueryCommand(input);
      const response = await client.send(command);

      // Process the current page of results
      pageCount++;
      console.log(`Processing page ${pageCount} with ${response.Items.length}
items`);

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems.push(...response.Items);
      }

      // Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;

    } while (lastEvaluatedKey); // Continue until there are no more pages

    console.log(`Query complete. Retrieved ${allItems.length} items in
${pageCount} pages.`);
    return allItems;
  } catch (error) {
```

```
    console.error(`Error querying with pagination: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Example usage:
 *
 * // Query all items in the "AWS DynamoDB" forum with pagination
 * const allItems = await queryWithPagination(
 *   { region: "us-west-2" },
 *   "ForumThreads",
 *   "ForumName",
 *   "AWS DynamoDB",
 *   25 // 25 items per page
 * );
 *
 * console.log(`Total items retrieved: ${allItems.length}`);
 *
 * // Notes on pagination:
 * // - LastEvaluatedKey contains the primary key of the last evaluated item
 * // - When LastEvaluatedKey is undefined/null, there are no more items to
 retrieve
 * // - ExclusiveStartKey tells DynamoDB where to start the next page
 * // - Pagination helps manage memory usage for large result sets
 * // - Each page requires a separate network request to DynamoDB
 */

module.exports = { queryWithPagination };
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key
```

```
def query_with_pagination(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25,
 max_pages=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page.
 Defaults to 25.
        max_pages (int, optional): The maximum number of pages to retrieve. If
 None, retrieves all pages.

    Returns:
        list: All items retrieved from the query across all pages.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_count = 0
    all_items = []

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Check if we've reached the maximum number of pages
        if max_pages is not None and page_count >= max_pages:
            break

        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
 Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
 query
        if last_evaluated_key:
```

```
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Process the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        all_items.extend(items)

        # Update pagination tracking
        page_count += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if not last_evaluated_key:
            break

    return all_items


def query_with_pagination_generator(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using a generator to handle large
 result sets.
    This approach is memory-efficient as it yields one page at a time.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page.
 Defaults to 25.

    Yields:
        tuple: A tuple containing (items, page_number, last_page) where:
            - items is a list of items for the current page
            - page_number is the current page number (starting from 1)
            - last_page is a boolean indicating if this is the last page
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
```

```
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_number = 0

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Get the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        page_number += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # Determine if this is the last page
        is_last_page = last_evaluated_key is None

        # Yield the current page of results
        yield (items, page_number, is_last_page)

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if is_last_page:
            break
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a DynamoDB table with strongly consistent reads using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query a table with strongly consistent reads.

- Configure the consistency level for DynamoDB queries.
- Use strongly consistent reads to get the most up-to-date data.
- Understand the tradeoffs between eventual consistency and strong consistency.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithConsistentReads(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final boolean useConsistentRead) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
```

```
        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .consistentRead(useConsistentRead)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query successful. Found {0} items",
 response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with consistent reads", e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
```

```
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {boolean} useConsistentRead - Whether to use strongly consistent reads
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithConsistentRead(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  useConsistentRead = false
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
      },
      ConsistentRead: useConsistentRead
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with consistent read: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with the option for strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import time

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_consistent_read(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    sort_key_name=None,
    sort_key_value=None,
    consistent_read=True,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with the option for strongly consistent reads.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str, optional): The name of the sort key attribute.
        sort_key_value (str, optional): The value of the sort key to query.
        consistent_read (bool, optional): Whether to use strongly consistent
 reads. Defaults to True.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    if sort_key_name and sort_key_value:
```

```
        key_condition = key_condition & Key(sort_key_name).eq(sort_key_value)

    # Perform the query with the consistent read option
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 ConsistentRead=consistent_read)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query DynamoDB data using PartiQL SELECT statements with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to query data using PartiQL SELECT statements.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL SELECT statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to query items from a DynamoDB table using
 PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to select data with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Select all items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL.
 * Note: This should be used with caution on large tables.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
```

```
 */
export const selectAllItems = async (tableName: string) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}"`,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select an item by its primary key using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemByPartitionKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item retrieved successfully");
    return data;
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select an item by its composite key (partition key + sort key) using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param sortKeyName - The name of the sort key attribute
 * @param sortKeyValue - The value of the sort key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemByCompositeKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  sortKeyName: string,
  sortKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${sortKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue, sortKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select items using a filter condition with PartiQL.
```

```
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param filterAttribute - The attribute to filter on
 * @param filterValue - The value to filter by
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemsWithFilter = async (
  tableName: string,
  filterAttribute: string,
  filterValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${filterAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [filterValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select items using a begins_with function for prefix matching.
 * This is useful for querying hierarchical data.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param attributeName - The attribute to check for prefix
 * @param prefix - The prefix to match
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemsByPrefix = async (
  tableName: string,
  attributeName: string,
  prefix: string
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
```

```
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE
 begins_with(${attributeName}, ?)`,
    Parameters: [prefix],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select items using a between condition for range queries.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param attributeName - The attribute to check for range
 * @param startValue - The start value of the range
 * @param endValue - The end value of the range
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemsByRange = async (
  tableName: string,
  attributeName: string,
  startValue: number | string,
  endValue: number | string
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${attributeName} BETWEEN ?
 AND ?`,
    Parameters: [startValue, endValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
```

```
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to select items with different index types
 */
export const selectExamples = async () => {
  // Select all items from a table (use with caution on large tables)
  await selectAllItems("UsersTable");

  // Select by partition key (simple primary key)
  await selectItemByPartitionKey("UsersTable", "userId", "user123");

  // Select by composite key (partition key + sort key)
  await selectItemByCompositeKey("OrdersTable", "orderId", "order456",
 "productId", "prod789");

  // Select with a filter condition (can use any attribute)
  await selectItemsWithFilter("UsersTable", "userType", "premium");

  // Select items with a prefix (useful for hierarchical data)
  await selectItemsByPrefix("ProductsTable", "category", "electronics");

  // Select items within a range (useful for numeric or date ranges)
  await selectItemsByRange("OrdersTable", "orderDate", "2023-01-01",
 "2023-12-31");
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Query a DynamoDB table for TTL items using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query for TTL items.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query Filtered Expression to gather TTL items in a DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;

        final QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(FILTER_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final QueryResponse response = ddb.query(request);
            System.out.println("Query successful. Found " + response.count() + "
 items that have not expired yet.");

            // Print each item
            response.items().forEach(item -> {
                System.out.println("Item: " + item);
            });

            return 0;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            throw e;
        }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query Filtered Expression to gather TTL items in a DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { marshall, unmarshall } from "@aws-sdk/util-dynamodb";

export const queryFiltered = async (tableName, primaryKey, region = 'us-east-1')
 => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const currentTime = Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000);

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pk",
        FilterExpression: "#ea > :ea",
        ExpressionAttributeNames: {
            "#pk": "primaryKey",
            "#ea": "expireAt"
        },
        ExpressionAttributeValues: marshall({
            ":pk": primaryKey,
            ":ea": currentTime
        })
    };

    try {
        const { Items } = await client.send(new QueryCommand(params));
        Items.forEach(item => {
            console.log(unmarshall(item))
```

```
        });
        return Items;
    } catch (err) {
        console.error(`Error querying items: ${err}`);
        throw err;
    }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// queryFiltered('your-table-name', 'your-partition-key-value');
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query Filtered Expression to gather TTL items in a DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime

import boto3


def query_dynamodb_items(table_name, partition_key):
    """

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
    :param partition_key:
    :return:
    """
    try:
        # Initialize a DynamoDB resource
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name="us-east-1")

        # Specify your table
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Get the current time in epoch format
        current_time = int(datetime.now().timestamp())
```

```
        # Perform the query operation with a filter expression to exclude expired
items
        # response = table.query(
        #
KeyConditionExpression=boto3.dynamodb.conditions.Key('partitionKey').eq(partition_key),
        #
FilterExpression=boto3.dynamodb.conditions.Attr('expireAt').gt(current_time)
        # )
        response = table.query(

KeyConditionExpression=dynamodb.conditions.Key("partitionKey").eq(partition_key),

FilterExpression=dynamodb.conditions.Attr("expireAt").gt(current_time),
        )

        # Print the items that are not expired
        for item in response["Items"]:
            print(item)

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error querying items: {e}")


# Call the function with your values
query_dynamodb_items("Music", "your-partition-key-value")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query DynamoDB tables using date and time patterns with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to query tables using date and time patterns.

- Store and query date/time values in DynamoDB.
- Implement date range queries using sort keys.
- Format date strings for effective querying.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Query using date ranges in sort keys with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateRange(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final LocalDate startDate,
        final LocalDate endDate) {

        // Focus on query logic, assuming parameters are valid
        if (startDate == null || endDate == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Start date and end date cannot be
 null");
        }

        if (endDate.isBefore(startDate)) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("End date must be after start
 date");
        }

        // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB (using just the date part)
        final String formattedStartDate = startDate.toString();
        final String formattedEndDate = endDate.toString();

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
```

```
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_SK, dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_START_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedStartDate).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_END_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedEndDate).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query by date range successful. Found {0}
 items", response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying by date range: {0}",
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query using date-time variables with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateTime(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final String startDate,
        final String endDate) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateDateRangeParameters(dateKeyName, startDate,
 endDate);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateDateFormat("Start date", startDate);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateDateFormat("End date", endDate);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#dateKey", dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":startDate", AttributeValue.builder().s(startDate).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
```

```
            ":endDate", AttributeValue.builder().s(endDate).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query successful. Found " + response.count() + "
 items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with date range: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query within date ranges in Unix epoch timestamps with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateTimeEpoch(
```

```
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final long startEpoch,
        final long endEpoch) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Date key name", dateKeyName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateEpochTimestamp("Start epoch", startEpoch);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateEpochTimestamp("End epoch", endEpoch);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#dateKey", dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":startDate",
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(startEpoch)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":endDate",
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(endEpoch)).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query successful. Found " + response.count() + "
items");
```

```
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with epoch timestamps: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query within date ranges using LocalDateTime objects with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateTimeLocalDateTime(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final LocalDateTime startDateTime,
        final LocalDateTime endDateTime) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Date key name", dateKeyName);
        if (startDateTime == null || endDateTime == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Start and end LocalDateTime must
 not be null");
        }
```

```
        // Convert LocalDateTime to ISO-8601 strings in UTC with the correct
 format
        final String startDate =
 startDateTime.atZone(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DATE_TIME_FORMATTER);
        final String endDate =
 endDateTime.atZone(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DATE_TIME_FORMATTER);

        return queryWithDateTime(tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
 dateKeyName, startDate, endDate);
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query using date ranges in sort keys with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items within a specific date range on the sort
 key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} sortKeyName - The name of the sort key (must be a date/time
 attribute)
 * @param {Date} startDate - The start date for the range query
 * @param {Date} endDate - The end date for the range query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryByDateRangeOnSortKey(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
```

```
  startDate,
  endDate
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB
    const formattedStartDate = startDate.toISOString();
    const formattedEndDate = endDate.toISOString();

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: '#pk = :pkValue AND #sk BETWEEN :startDate
 AND :endDate',
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#sk": sortKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":startDate": { S: formattedStartDate },
        ":endDate": { S: formattedEndDate }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying by date range on sort key: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query using date-time variables with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items within a specific date range
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} dateKeyName - The name of the date attribute to filter on
 * @param {Date} startDate - The start date for the range query
 * @param {Date} endDate - The end date for the range query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryByDateRange(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  dateKeyName,
  startDate,
  endDate
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB
    const formattedStartDate = startDate.toISOString();
    const formattedEndDate = endDate.toISOString();

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: `#pk = :pkValue AND #dateAttr BETWEEN :startDate
 AND :endDate`,
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#dateAttr": dateKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":startDate": { S: formattedStartDate },
        ":endDate": { S: formattedEndDate }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
```

```
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying by date range: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query using date ranges in sort keys with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_date_range(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name,
 start_date, end_date
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a date range on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
 values).
        start_date (datetime): The start date for the query range.
        end_date (datetime): The end date for the query range.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
```

```
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    # DynamoDB works well with ISO format for date values
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key using BETWEEN operator
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":pk_val": partition_key_value,
            ":start_date": start_date_str,
            ":end_date": end_date_str,
        },
    )

    return response


def query_with_date_range_by_month(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, year,
 month
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table for a specific month's data.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
 values).
        year (int): The year to query.
        month (int): The month to query (1-12).

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
```

```
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Calculate the start and end dates for the specified month
    if month == 12:
        next_year = year + 1
        next_month = 1
    else:
        next_year = year
        next_month = month + 1

    start_date = datetime(year, month, 1)
    end_date = datetime(next_year, next_month, 1) - timedelta(microseconds=1)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition)

    return response
```

Query using date-time variables with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_datetime(
```

```
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name,
 start_date, end_date
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a date range filter on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date/
time values).
        start_date (datetime): The start date/time for the query range.
        end_date (datetime): The end date/time for the query range.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Format the date/time values as ISO 8601 strings
    # DynamoDB works well with ISO format for date/time values
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":pk_val": partition_key_value,
            ":start_date": start_date_str,
            ":end_date": end_date_str,
        },
    )

    return response
```

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the query_with_datetime function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Events"
    partition_key_name = "EventType"
    partition_key_value = "UserLogin"
    sort_key_name = "Timestamp"

    # Create date/time variables for the query
    end_date = datetime.now()
    start_date = end_date - timedelta(days=7)  # Query events from the last 7
 days

    print(f"Querying events from {start_date.isoformat()} to
 {end_date.isoformat()}")

    # Execute the query
    response = query_with_datetime(
        table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name,
 start_date, end_date
    )

    # Process the results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    print(f"Found {len(items)} items")

    for item in items:
        print(f"Event: {item}")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get EXIF information from a a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file.
- Upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket.

- Use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (labels) in the file.
- Add the EXIF and label information to an Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Get EXIF information from a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file, upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (*labels* in Amazon Rekognition) in the file, and add the EXIF and label information to a Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Set up Attribute-Based Access Control for DynamoDB using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to implement Attribute-Based Access Control (ABAC) for DynamoDB.

- Create an IAM policy for ABAC.
- Create tables with tags for different departments.
- List and filter tables based on tags.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create an IAM policy for ABAC.

```
# Step 1: Create a policy document for ABAC
cat > abac-policy.json << 'EOF'
```

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}"
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
        "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchWriteItem"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}",
          "aws:ResourceTag/Environment": "Development"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 2: Create the IAM policy
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name DynamoDBDepartmentBasedAccess \
    --policy-document file://abac-policy.json
```

Create tables with tags for different departments.

```
# Create a DynamoDB table with tags for ABAC
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name FinanceData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Finance \
        Key=Environment,Value=Development

# Create another table with different tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MarketingData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Marketing \
        Key=Environment,Value=Production
```

List and filter tables based on tags.

```
# List all DynamoDB tables
echo "Listing all tables:"
aws dynamodb list-tables

# Get ARNs for all tables
echo -e "\nGetting ARNs for all tables:"
TABLE_ARNS=$(aws dynamodb list-tables --query "TableNames[*]" --output text |
 xargs -I {} aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name {} --query "Table.TableArn"
 --output text)

# For each table ARN, list its tags
echo -e "\nListing tags for each table:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
```

```
    echo -e "\nTags for table: $TABLE_NAME"
    aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN
done

# Example: Find tables with a specific tag
echo -e "\nFinding tables with Environment=Production tag:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    TAGS=$(aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN --query "Tags[?
Key=='Environment' && Value=='Production']" --output text)
    if [ ! -z "$TAGS" ]; then
        echo "Table with Production tag: $TABLE_NAME"
    fi
done
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateTable
  - ListTables

Understand update expression order in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to understand update expression order.

- Learn how DynamoDB processes update expressions.
- Understand the order of operations in update expressions.
- Avoid unexpected results by understanding expression evaluation.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate update expression order using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Demonstrates the effect of update expression order.
     *
     * <p>This method shows how the order of operations in an update expression
     * affects the result of the update.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @return Map containing the results of different update orders
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> demonstrateUpdateOrder(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
 AttributeValue> key) {

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Initialize the item with a counter
            UpdateItemRequest initRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = :zero, OldCounter = :zero")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":zero", AttributeValue.builder().n("0").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 1: SET first, then ADD
            UpdateItemRequest setFirstRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = :value ADD
 OldCounter :increment")
```

```
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":value", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build(),
                    ":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("5").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse setFirstResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(setFirstRequest);
            results.put("setFirstResponse", setFirstResponse);

            // Reset the item
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 2: ADD first, then SET
            UpdateItemRequest addFirstRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("ADD Counter :increment SET OldCounter
= :value")
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":value", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build(),
                    ":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("5").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse addFirstResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(addFirstRequest);
            results.put("addFirstResponse", addFirstResponse);

            // Reset the item
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 3: SET with multiple attributes
            UpdateItemRequest multiSetRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = :value, OldCounter = Counter")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":value", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse multiSetResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(multiSetRequest);
```

```
            results.put("multiSetResponse", multiSetResponse);

            // Reset the item
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 4: SET with expression using the same attribute
            UpdateItemRequest selfReferenceRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = Counter + :increment, OldCounter
= Counter")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":increment",
AttributeValue.builder().n("5").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse selfReferenceResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(selfReferenceRequest);
            results.put("selfReferenceResponse", selfReferenceResponse);

            results.put("success", true);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            results.put("success", false);
            results.put("error", e.getMessage());
        }

        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Updates an item with SET first, then REMOVE.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates updating an item with SET operation first,
     * followed by a REMOVE operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param attributeToSet The attribute to set
     * @param setValue The value to set
     * @param attributeToRemove The attribute to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
```

```
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateWithSetFirst(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String attributeToSet,
        AttributeValue setValue,
        String attributeToRemove) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #setAttr = :setValue REMOVE #removeAttr")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#setAttr", attributeToSet,
                "#removeAttr", attributeToRemove))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":setValue", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        try {
            return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to update item with SET first: " +
e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates an item with REMOVE first, then SET.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates updating an item with REMOVE operation first,
     * followed by a SET operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param attributeToSet The attribute to set
```

```
     * @param setValue The value to set
     * @param attributeToRemove The attribute to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateWithRemoveFirst(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String attributeToSet,
        AttributeValue setValue,
        String attributeToRemove) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("REMOVE #removeAttr SET #setAttr = :setValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#setAttr", attributeToSet,
                "#removeAttr", attributeToRemove))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":setValue", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        try {
            return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to update item with REMOVE first: " +
e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates an item with all operation types in a specific order.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates using all operation types (SET, REMOVE, ADD,
DELETE)
     * in a specific order in a single update expression.
     *
```

```
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateWithAllOperationTypes(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #stringAttr = :stringVal, #mapAttr.#nestedAttr
= :nestedVal " + "REMOVE #oldAttr "
                + "ADD #counterAttr :increment "
                + "DELETE #stringSetAttr :stringSetVal")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#stringAttr", "StringAttribute",
                "#mapAttr", "MapAttribute",
                "#nestedAttr", "NestedAttribute",
                "#oldAttr", "OldAttribute",
                "#counterAttr", "CounterAttribute",
                "#stringSetAttr", "StringSetAttribute"))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":stringVal", AttributeValue.builder().s("New Value").build(),
                ":nestedVal", AttributeValue.builder().s("Nested Value").build(),
                ":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("1").build(),
                ":stringSetVal", AttributeValue.builder().ss("Value1").build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        try {
            return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to update item with all operation types: " +
e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Gets the current state of an item.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current state of an item.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @return The item or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, AttributeValue> getItem(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
 AttributeValue> key) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request =
            GetItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).key(key).build();

        // Perform the get operation
        try {
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
            return response.item();
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get item: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of update expression order with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());
```

```
        System.out.println("Demonstrating update expression order in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Demonstrate update order effects
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Demonstrating update order
effects");
            Map<String, Object> orderResults =
demonstrateUpdateOrder(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key);

            if ((boolean) orderResults.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("SET first, then ADD:");
                System.out.println("  " + orderResults.get("setFirstResponse"));

                System.out.println("ADD first, then SET:");
                System.out.println("  " + orderResults.get("addFirstResponse"));

                System.out.println("SET with multiple attributes:");
                System.out.println("  " + orderResults.get("multiSetResponse"));

                System.out.println("SET with self-reference:");
                System.out.println("  " +
orderResults.get("selfReferenceResponse"));
            } else {
                System.out.println("Error: " + orderResults.get("error"));
            }

            // Example 2: Update with SET first, then REMOVE
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Update with SET first, then
REMOVE");
            UpdateItemResponse setFirstResponse = updateWithSetFirst(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Active").build(),
                "OldStatus");

            System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
setFirstResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Update with REMOVE first, then SET
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Update with REMOVE first, then
SET");
            UpdateItemResponse removeFirstResponse = updateWithRemoveFirst(
```

```
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Inactive").build(),
                "OldStatus");

            System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
removeFirstResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Update with all operation types
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Update with all operation types");
            UpdateItemResponse allOpsResponse =
updateWithAllOperationTypes(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key);

            System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
allOpsResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Get the current state of the item
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Current state of the item");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> item = getItem(dynamoDbClient, tableName,
key);

            if (item != null) {
                System.out.println("Item: " + item);
            } else {
                System.out.println("Item not found");
            }

            // Explain update expression order
            System.out.println("\nKey points about update expression order in
DynamoDB:");
            System.out.println("1. Update expressions are processed in this
order: SET, REMOVE, ADD, DELETE");
            System.out.println("2. Within each clause, operations are processed
from left to right");
            System.out.println("3. SET operations use the item state before any
updates in the expression");
            System.out.println("4. When an attribute is referenced multiple
times, the first operation wins");
            System.out.println("5. To reference a new value, split the update
into multiple operations");
            System.out.println("6. The order of clauses in the expression doesn't
change the evaluation order");
```

```
            System.out.println("7. For complex updates, consider using multiple
 separate update operations");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate update expression order using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Update an item with multiple actions in a single update expression.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use multiple actions in a single update
 expression
 * and how DynamoDB processes these actions.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to update
 * @param {string} updateExpression - The update expression with multiple actions
 * @param {Object} [expressionAttributeNames] - Expression attribute name
 placeholders
 * @param {Object} [expressionAttributeValues] - Expression attribute value
 placeholders
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
```

```
async function updateWithMultipleActions(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  updateExpression,
  expressionAttributeNames,
  expressionAttributeValues
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Prepare the update parameters
  const updateParams = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Add expression attribute names if provided
  if (expressionAttributeNames) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
  }

  // Add expression attribute values if provided
  if (expressionAttributeValues) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;
  }

  // Execute the update
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(updateParams));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Demonstrate that variables hold copies of existing values before
 modifications.
 *
 * This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
 * that uses the values of attributes before they are modified in the same
 expression.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to create and update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - A dictionary containing the results of the
 demonstration
 */
async function demonstrateValueCopying(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Step 1: Create an item with initial values
  const initialItem = { ...key, a: 1, b: 2, c: 3 };

  await docClient.send(new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: initialItem
  }));

  // Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
  const responseBefore = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemBefore = responseBefore.Item || {};

  // Step 3: Update the item with an expression that uses values before they are
 modified
  // This expression removes 'a', then sets 'b' to the value of 'a', and 'c' to
 the value of 'b'
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b",
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  // Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
```

```
  const responseAfter = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemAfter = responseAfter.Item || {};

  // Return the results
  return {
    initialState: itemBefore,
    updateResponse: updateResponse,
    finalState: itemAfter
  };
}

/**
 * Demonstrate the order in which different action types are processed.
 *
 * This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
 * that includes multiple action types (SET, REMOVE, ADD, DELETE) to show the
 order
 * in which they are processed.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to create and update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - A dictionary containing the results of the
 demonstration
 */
async function demonstrateActionOrder(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Step 1: Create an item with initial values
  const initialItem = {
    ...key,
    counter: 10,
    set_attr: new Set(["A", "B", "C"]),
```

```
    to_remove: "This will be removed",
    to_modify: "Original value"
  };

  await docClient.send(new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: initialItem
  }));

  // Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
  const responseBefore = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemBefore = responseBefore.Item || {};

  // Step 3: Update the item with multiple action types
  // The actions will be processed in this order: REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "REMOVE to_remove SET to_modify = :new_value ADD
counter :increment DELETE set_attr :elements",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":new_value": "Updated value",
      ":increment": 5,
      ":elements": new Set(["B"])
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  // Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
  const responseAfter = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemAfter = responseAfter.Item || {};

  // Return the results
  return {
    initialState: itemBefore,
    updateResponse: updateResponse,
```

```
    finalState: itemAfter
  };
}

/**
 * Update multiple attributes with a single SET action.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update multiple attributes in a single SET
 action,
 * which is more efficient than using multiple separate update operations.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to update
 * @param {Object} attributes - The attributes to update and their new values
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithMultipleSetActions(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  attributes
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Build the update expression and expression attribute values
  let updateExpression = "SET ";
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // Add each attribute to the update expression
  Object.entries(attributes).forEach(([attrName, attrValue], index) => {
    const valuePlaceholder = `:val${index}`;

    if (index > 0) {
      updateExpression += ", ";
    }
    updateExpression += `${attrName} = ${valuePlaceholder}`;

    expressionAttributeValues[valuePlaceholder] = attrValue;
  });

  // Execute the update
```

```
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update an attribute with a value from another attribute or a default value.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to conditionally copy a
 value
 * from one attribute to another, or use a default value if the source doesn't
 exist.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to update
 * @param {string} sourceAttribute - The attribute to copy the value from
 * @param {string} targetAttribute - The attribute to update
 * @param {any} defaultValue - The default value to use if the source attribute
 doesn't exist
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithConditionalValueCopying(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  sourceAttribute,
  targetAttribute,
  defaultValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Use if_not_exists to conditionally copy the value
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
```

```
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${targetAttribute} =
 if_not_exists(${sourceAttribute}, :default)`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":default": defaultValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Demonstrate complex update expressions with multiple operations on the same
 attribute.
 *
 * This function shows how DynamoDB processes multiple operations on the same
 attribute
 * in a single update expression.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to create and update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - A dictionary containing the results of the
 demonstration
 */
async function demonstrateMultipleOperationsOnSameAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Step 1: Create an item with initial values
  const initialItem = {
    ...key,
    counter: 10,
    list_attr: [1, 2, 3],
    map_attr: {
      nested1: "value1",
      nested2: "value2"
    }
  };
```

```
  await docClient.send(new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: initialItem
  }));

  // Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
  const responseBefore = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemBefore = responseBefore.Item || {};

  // Step 3: Update the item with multiple operations on the same attributes
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `
      SET counter = counter + :inc1,
          counter = counter + :inc2,
          map_attr.nested1 = :new_val1,
          map_attr.nested3 = :new_val3,
          list_attr[0] = list_attr[1],
          list_attr[1] = list_attr[2]
    `,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":inc1": 5,
      ":inc2": 3,
      ":new_val1": "updated_value1",
      ":new_val3": "new_value3"
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  // Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
  const responseAfter = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemAfter = responseAfter.Item || {};

  // Return the results
```

```
  return {
    initialState: itemBefore,
    updateResponse: updateResponse,
    finalState: itemAfter
  };
}
```

Example usage of update expression order with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use update expression order of operations in DynamoDB.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "OrderProcessing";

  console.log("Demonstrating update expression order of operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Demonstrating value copying in update expressions
    console.log("\nExample 1: Demonstrating value copying in update
 expressions");
    const results1 = await demonstrateValueCopying(
      config,
      tableName,
      { OrderId: "order123" }
    );

    console.log("Initial state:", JSON.stringify(results1.initialState, null,
 2));
    console.log("Update response:", JSON.stringify(results1.updateResponse, null,
 2));
    console.log("Final state:", JSON.stringify(results1.finalState, null, 2));

    console.log("\nExplanation:");
    console.log("1. The initial state had a=1, b=2, c=3");
    console.log("2. The update expression 'REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b' did the
 following:");
    console.log("   - Copied the value of 'a' (which was 1) to be used for 'b'");
    console.log("   - Copied the value of 'b' (which was 2) to be used for 'c'");
    console.log("   - Removed the attribute 'a'");
```

```
   console.log("3. The final state has b=1, c=2, and 'a' is removed");
   console.log("4. This demonstrates that DynamoDB uses the values of attributes
as they were BEFORE any modifications");

   // Example 2: Demonstrating the order of different action types
   console.log("\nExample 2: Demonstrating the order of different action
types");
   const results2 = await demonstrateActionOrder(
     config,
     tableName,
     { OrderId: "order456" }
   );

   console.log("Initial state:", JSON.stringify(results2.initialState, null,
2));
   console.log("Update response:", JSON.stringify(results2.updateResponse, null,
2));
   console.log("Final state:", JSON.stringify(results2.finalState, null, 2));

   console.log("\nExplanation:");
   console.log("1. The update expression contained multiple action types:
REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE");
   console.log("2. DynamoDB processes these actions in this order: REMOVE, SET,
ADD, DELETE");
   console.log("3. First, 'to_remove' was removed");
   console.log("4. Then, 'to_modify' was set to a new value");
   console.log("5. Next, 'counter' was incremented by 5");
   console.log("6. Finally, 'B' was removed from the set attribute");

   // Example 3: Updating multiple attributes in a single SET action
   console.log("\nExample 3: Updating multiple attributes in a single SET
action");
   const response3 = await updateWithMultipleSetActions(
     config,
     tableName,
     { OrderId: "order789" },
     {
       Status: "Shipped",
       ShippingDate: "2025-05-28",
       TrackingNumber: "1Z999AA10123456784"
     }
   );
```

```
   console.log("Multiple attributes updated successfully:",
JSON.stringify(response3.Attributes, null, 2));

   // Example 4: Conditional value copying with if_not_exists
   console.log("\nExample 4: Conditional value copying with if_not_exists");
   const response4 = await updateWithConditionalValueCopying(
     config,
     tableName,
     { OrderId: "order101" },
     "PreferredShippingMethod",
     "ShippingMethod",
     "Standard"
   );

   console.log("Conditional value copying result:",
JSON.stringify(response4.Attributes, null, 2));

   // Example 5: Multiple operations on the same attribute
   console.log("\nExample 5: Multiple operations on the same attribute");
   const results5 = await demonstrateMultipleOperationsOnSameAttribute(
     config,
     tableName,
     { OrderId: "order202" }
   );

   console.log("Initial state:", JSON.stringify(results5.initialState, null,
2));
   console.log("Update response:", JSON.stringify(results5.updateResponse, null,
2));
   console.log("Final state:", JSON.stringify(results5.finalState, null, 2));

   console.log("\nExplanation:");
   console.log("1. The counter was incremented twice (first by 5, then by 3) for
a total of +8");
   console.log("2. The map attribute had one value updated and a new nested
attribute added");
   console.log("3. The list attribute had values shifted (value at index 1 moved
to index 0, value at index 2 moved to index 1)");
   console.log("4. All operations within the SET action are processed from left
to right");

   // Key points about update expression order of operations
   console.log("\nKey Points About Update Expression Order of Operations:");
```

```
    console.log("1. Variables in expressions hold copies of attribute values as
 they existed BEFORE any modifications");
    console.log("2. Multiple actions in an update expression are processed in
 this order: REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE");
    console.log("3. Within each action type, operations are processed from left
 to right");
    console.log("4. You can reference the same attribute multiple times in an
 expression");
    console.log("5. You can use if_not_exists() to conditionally set values based
 on attribute existence");
    console.log("6. Using a single update expression with multiple actions is
 more efficient than multiple separate updates");
    console.log("7. The update expression is atomic - either all actions succeed
 or none do");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate update expression order using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
import json
from typing import Any, Dict, Optional


def update_with_multiple_actions(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    update_expression: str,
    expression_attribute_names: Optional[Dict[str, str]] = None,
    expression_attribute_values: Optional[Dict[str, Any]] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an item with multiple actions in a single update expression.
```

```
    This function demonstrates how to use multiple actions in a single update
expression
    and how DynamoDB processes these actions.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        update_expression (str): The update expression with multiple actions.
        expression_attribute_names (Optional[Dict[str, str]]): Expression
attribute name placeholders.
        expression_attribute_values (Optional[Dict[str, Any]]): Expression
attribute value placeholders.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Prepare the update parameters
    update_params = {
        "Key": key,
        "UpdateExpression": update_expression,
        "ReturnValues": "UPDATED_NEW",
    }

    # Add expression attribute names if provided
    if expression_attribute_names:
        update_params["ExpressionAttributeNames"] = expression_attribute_names

    # Add expression attribute values if provided
    if expression_attribute_values:
        update_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(**update_params)

    return response
```

```
def demonstrate_value_copying(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any]) -> Dict[str,
 Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate that variables hold copies of existing values before
 modifications.

    This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
    that uses the values of attributes before they are modified in the same
 expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to create and update.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Step 1: Create an item with initial values
    initial_item = key.copy()
    initial_item.update({"a": 1, "b": 2, "c": 3})

    table.put_item(Item=initial_item)

    # Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
    response_before = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_before = response_before.get("Item", {})

    # Step 3: Update the item with an expression that uses values before they are
 modified
    # This expression removes 'a', then sets 'b' to the value of 'a', and 'c' to
 the value of 'b'
    update_response = table.update_item(
        Key=key, UpdateExpression="REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b",
 ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW"
    )

    # Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
    response_after = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_after = response_after.get("Item", {})
```

```
    # Return the results
    return {
        "initial_state": item_before,
        "update_response": update_response,
        "final_state": item_after,
    }


def demonstrate_action_order(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any]) -> Dict[str,
 Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate the order in which different action types are processed.

    This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
    that includes multiple action types (SET, REMOVE, ADD, DELETE) to show the
 order
    in which they are processed.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to create and update.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Step 1: Create an item with initial values
    initial_item = key.copy()
    initial_item.update(
        {
            "counter": 10,
            "set_attr": set(["A", "B", "C"]),
            "to_remove": "This will be removed",
            "to_modify": "Original value",
        }
    )

    table.put_item(Item=initial_item)
```

```
    # Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
    response_before = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_before = response_before.get("Item", {})

    # Step 3: Update the item with multiple action types
    # The actions will be processed in this order: REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE
    update_response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="REMOVE to_remove SET to_modify = :new_value ADD
 counter :increment DELETE set_attr :elements",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":new_value": "Updated value",
            ":increment": 5,
            ":elements": set(["B"]),
        },
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    # Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
    response_after = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_after = response_after.get("Item", {})

    # Return the results
    return {
        "initial_state": item_before,
        "update_response": update_response,
        "final_state": item_after,
    }


def update_with_multiple_set_actions(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], attributes: Dict[str, Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update multiple attributes with a single SET action.

    This function demonstrates how to update multiple attributes in a single SET
 action,
    which is more efficient than using multiple separate update operations.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
```

```
        attributes (Dict[str, Any]): The attributes to update and their new
 values.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the update expression and expression attribute values
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Add each attribute to the update expression
    for i, (attr_name, attr_value) in enumerate(attributes.items()):
        value_placeholder = f":val{i}"

        if i > 0:
            update_expression += ", "
        update_expression += f"{attr_name} = {value_placeholder}"

        expression_attribute_values[value_placeholder] = attr_value

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def update_with_conditional_value_copying(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    source_attribute: str,
    target_attribute: str,
    default_value: Any,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
```

```
    Update an attribute with a value from another attribute or a default value.

    This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to conditionally copy a
 value
    from one attribute to another, or use a default value if the source doesn't
 exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        source_attribute (str): The attribute to copy the value from.
        target_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        default_value (Any): The default value to use if the source attribute
 doesn't exist.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use if_not_exists to conditionally copy the value
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {target_attribute} =
 if_not_exists({source_attribute}, :default)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":default": default_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

Example usage of update expression order with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use update expression order of operations in
 DynamoDB."""
    # Example parameters
```

```
    table_name = "OrderProcessing"
    key = {"OrderId": "order123"}

    print("Example 1: Demonstrating value copying in update expressions")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_value_copying(table_name=table_name, key=key)

        print(f"Initial state: {json.dumps(results['initial_state'],
default=str)}")
        print(f"Update response: {json.dumps(results['update_response'],
default=str)}")
        print(f"Final state: {json.dumps(results['final_state'], default=str)}")

        print("\nExplanation:")
        print("1. The initial state had a=1, b=2, c=3")
        print("2. The update expression 'REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b' did the
following:")
        print("   - Copied the value of 'a' (which was 1) to be used for 'b'")
        print("   - Copied the value of 'b' (which was 2) to be used for 'c'")
        print("   - Removed the attribute 'a'")
        print("3. The final state has b=1, c=2, and 'a' is removed")
        print(
            "4. This demonstrates that DynamoDB uses the values of attributes as
they were BEFORE any modifications"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error demonstrating value copying: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Demonstrating the order of different action types")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_action_order(table_name=table_name, key={"OrderId":
"order456"})

        print(f"Initial state: {json.dumps(results['initial_state'],
default=str)}")
        print(f"Update response: {json.dumps(results['update_response'],
default=str)}")
        print(f"Final state: {json.dumps(results['final_state'], default=str)}")

        print("\nExplanation:")
        print("1. The update expression contained multiple action types: REMOVE,
SET, ADD, DELETE")
        print("2. DynamoDB processes these actions in this order: REMOVE, SET,
ADD, DELETE")
```

```
        print("3. First, 'to_remove' was removed")
        print("4. Then, 'to_modify' was set to a new value")
        print("5. Next, 'counter' was incremented by 5")
        print("6. Finally, 'B' was removed from the set attribute")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error demonstrating action order: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Updating multiple attributes in a single SET action")
    try:
        response = update_with_multiple_set_actions(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"OrderId": "order789"},
            attributes={
                "Status": "Shipped",
                "ShippingDate": "2025-05-14",
                "TrackingNumber": "1Z999AA10123456784",
            },
        )

        print(
            f"Multiple attributes updated successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating multiple attributes: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Conditional value copying with if_not_exists")
    try:
        response = update_with_conditional_value_copying(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"OrderId": "order101"},
            source_attribute="PreferredShippingMethod",
            target_attribute="ShippingMethod",
            default_value="Standard",
        )

        print(
            f"Conditional value copying result:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error with conditional value copying: {e}")

    print("\nKey Points About Update Expression Order of Operations:")
```

```
    print(
        "1. Variables in expressions hold copies of attribute values as they
 existed BEFORE any modifications"
    )
    print(
        "2. Multiple actions in an update expression are processed in this order:
 REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE"
    )
    print("3. Within each action type, operations are processed from left to
 right")
    print("4. You can reference the same attribute multiple times in an
 expression")
    print("5. You can use if_not_exists() to conditionally set values based on
 attribute existence")
    print(
        "6. Using a single update expression with multiple actions is more
 efficient than multiple separate updates"
    )
    print("7. The update expression is atomic - either all actions succeed or
 none do")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update a DynamoDB table setting with warm throughput using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update a table's warm throughput setting.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Update warm throughput setting on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdate;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateGlobalSecondaryIndexAction;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTableRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.WarmThroughput;

    public static WarmThroughput buildWarmThroughput(final Long
 readUnitsPerSecond, final Long writeUnitsPerSecond) {
        return WarmThroughput.builder()
            .readUnitsPerSecond(readUnitsPerSecond)
            .writeUnitsPerSecond(writeUnitsPerSecond)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Updates a DynamoDB table with warm throughput settings for both the table
 and a global secondary index.
     *
     * @param ddb The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the table to update
     * @param tableReadUnitsPerSecond Read units per second for the table
     * @param tableWriteUnitsPerSecond Write units per second for the table
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexName The name of the global secondary index to
 update
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexReadUnitsPerSecond Read units per second for
 the GSI
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexWriteUnitsPerSecond Write units per second for
 the GSI
     */
    public static void updateDynamoDBTable(
        final DynamoDbClient ddb,
        final String tableName,
        final Long tableReadUnitsPerSecond,
        final Long tableWriteUnitsPerSecond,
        final String globalSecondaryIndexName,
        final Long globalSecondaryIndexReadUnitsPerSecond,
        final Long globalSecondaryIndexWriteUnitsPerSecond) {

        final WarmThroughput tableWarmThroughput =
            buildWarmThroughput(tableReadUnitsPerSecond,
 tableWriteUnitsPerSecond);
        final WarmThroughput gsiWarmThroughput =
            buildWarmThroughput(globalSecondaryIndexReadUnitsPerSecond,
 globalSecondaryIndexWriteUnitsPerSecond);

        final GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdate globalSecondaryIndexUpdate =
 GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdate.builder()
            .update(UpdateGlobalSecondaryIndexAction.builder()
```

```
                .indexName(globalSecondaryIndexName)
                .warmThroughput(gsiWarmThroughput)
                .build())
            .build();

        final UpdateTableRequest request = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .globalSecondaryIndexUpdates(globalSecondaryIndexUpdate)
            .warmThroughput(tableWarmThroughput)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.updateTable(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }

        System.out.println(SUCCESS_MESSAGE);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Update warm throughput setting on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export async function updateDynamoDBTableWarmThroughput(
  tableName,
  tableReadUnits,
  tableWriteUnits,
  gsiName,
  gsiReadUnits,
  gsiWriteUnits,
  region = "us-east-1"
) {
  try {
```

```
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region: region });

    // Construct the update table request
    const updateTableRequest = {
      TableName: tableName,
      GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdates: [
        {
            Update: {
                IndexName: gsiName,
                WarmThroughput: {
                    ReadUnitsPerSecond: gsiReadUnits,
                    WriteUnitsPerSecond: gsiWriteUnits,
                },
            },
        },
      ],
      WarmThroughput: {
          ReadUnitsPerSecond: tableReadUnits,
          WriteUnitsPerSecond: tableWriteUnits,
      },
    };

    const command = new UpdateTableCommand(updateTableRequest);
    const response = await ddbClient.send(command);
    console.log(`Table updated successfully! Response:
 ${JSON.stringify(response)}`);
    return response;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error updating table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
/*
updateDynamoDBTableWarmThroughput(
  'example-table',
  5, 5,
  'example-index',
  2, 2
);
*/
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Update warm throughput setting on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from boto3 import client
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def update_dynamodb_table_warm_throughput(
    table_name,
    table_read_units,
    table_write_units,
    gsi_name,
    gsi_read_units,
    gsi_write_units,
    region_name="us-east-1",
):
    """
    Updates the warm throughput of a DynamoDB table and a global secondary index.

    :param table_name: The name of the table to update.
    :param table_read_units: The new read units per second for the table's warm
 throughput.
    :param table_write_units: The new write units per second for the table's warm
 throughput.
    :param gsi_name: The name of the global secondary index to update.
    :param gsi_read_units: The new read units per second for the GSI's warm
 throughput.
    :param gsi_write_units: The new write units per second for the GSI's warm
 throughput.
    :param region_name: The AWS Region name to target. defaults to us-east-1
    :return: The response from the update_table operation
    """
    try:
        ddb = client("dynamodb", region_name=region_name)
```

```
        # Update the table's warm throughput
        table_warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": table_read_units,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": table_write_units,
        }

        # Update the global secondary index's warm throughput
        gsi_warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": gsi_read_units,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": gsi_write_units,
        }

        # Construct the global secondary index update
        global_secondary_index_update = [
            {"Update": {"IndexName": gsi_name, "WarmThroughput":
gsi_warm_throughput}}
        ]

        # Construct the update table request
        update_table_request = {
            "TableName": table_name,
            "GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdates": global_secondary_index_update,
            "WarmThroughput": table_warm_throughput,
        }

        # Update the table
        response = ddb.update_table(**update_table_request)
        print("Table updated successfully!")
        return response  # Make sure to return the response
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error updating table: {e}")
        raise e
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update a DynamoDB item with a TTL using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update an item's TTL.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Update TTL on an existing DynamoDB item in a table.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;

    public UpdateItemResponse updateItemWithTTL(
        final String tableName, final String primaryKeyValue, final String
 sortKeyValue) {
        // Get current time in epoch second format
        final long currentTime = System.currentTimeMillis() / 1000;

        // Calculate expiration time 90 days from now in epoch second format
        final long expireDate = currentTime + (DAYS_TO_EXPIRE * SECONDS_PER_DAY);

        // Create the key map for the item to update
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> keyMap = new HashMap<>();
        keyMap.put(PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(primaryKeyValue).build());
        keyMap.put(SORT_KEY_ATTR,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKeyValue).build());

        // Create the expression attribute values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":c",
 AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(currentTime)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":e",
 AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(expireDate)).build());
```

```
        final UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(keyMap)
            .updateExpression(UPDATE_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final UpdateItemResponse response =
 dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
            System.out.println(String.format(SUCCESS_MESSAGE, tableName));
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateItemCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { marshall, unmarshall } from "@aws-sdk/util-dynamodb";

export const updateItem = async (tableName, partitionKey, sortKey, region = 'us-
east-1') => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const currentTime = Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000);
    const expireAt = Math.floor((Date.now() + 90 * 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000) / 1000);

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
```

```
        Key: marshall({
            partitionKey: partitionKey,
            sortKey: sortKey
        }),
        UpdateExpression: "SET updatedAt = :c, expireAt = :e",
        ExpressionAttributeValues: marshall({
            ":c": currentTime,
            ":e": expireAt
        }),
    };

    try {
        const data = await client.send(new UpdateItemCommand(params));
        const responseData = unmarshall(data.Attributes);
        console.log("Item updated successfully: %s", responseData);
        return responseData;
    } catch (err) {
        console.error("Error updating item:", err);
        throw err;
    }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// updateItem('your-table-name', 'your-partition-key-value', 'your-sort-key-
value');
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3


def update_dynamodb_item(table_name, region, primary_key, sort_key):
    """
    Update an existing DynamoDB item with a TTL.
    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
    :param region: AWS Region of the table - example `us-east-1`
    :param primary_key: one attribute known as the partition key.
    :param sort_key: Also known as a range attribute.
    :return: Void (nothing)
    """
    try:
        # Create the DynamoDB resource.
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Get the current time in epoch second format
        current_time = int(datetime.now().timestamp())

        # Calculate the expireAt time (90 days from now) in epoch second format
        expire_at = int((datetime.now() + timedelta(days=90)).timestamp())

        table.update_item(
            Key={"partitionKey": primary_key, "sortKey": sort_key},
            UpdateExpression="set updatedAt=:c, expireAt=:e",
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":c": current_time, ":e": expire_at},
        )

        print("Item updated successfully.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating item: {e}")


# Replace with your own values
update_dynamodb_item(
    "your-table-name", "us-west-2", "your-partition-key-value", "your-sort-key-
value"
)
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update DynamoDB data using PartiQL UPDATE statements with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to update data using PartiQL UPDATE statements.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Update items in a DynamoDB table using PartiQL UPDATE statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to update items in a DynamoDB table using
 PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to update documents with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Update a single attribute of an item using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param attributeName - The name of the attribute to update
 * @param attributeValue - The new value for the attribute
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateSingleAttribute = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeName: string,
  attributeValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${partitionKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [attributeValue, partitionKeyValue],
```

```
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Update multiple attributes of an item using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param attributeUpdates - Object containing attribute names and their new
 values
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateMultipleAttributes = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeUpdates: Record<string, any>
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create SET clause for each attribute
  const setClause = Object.keys(attributeUpdates)
    .map((attr, index) => `${attr} = ?`)
    .join(", ");

  // Create parameters array with attribute values followed by the partition key
 value
  const parameters = [...Object.values(attributeUpdates), partitionKeyValue];

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${setClause} WHERE ${partitionKeyName}
 = ?`,
    Parameters: parameters,
```

```
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Update an item identified by a composite key (partition key + sort key) using
 PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param sortKeyName - The name of the sort key attribute
 * @param sortKeyValue - The value of the sort key
 * @param attributeName - The name of the attribute to update
 * @param attributeValue - The new value for the attribute
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateItemWithCompositeKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  sortKeyName: string,
  sortKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeName: string,
  attributeValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND ${sortKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [attributeValue, partitionKeyValue, sortKeyValue],
  };

  try {
```

```
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Update an item with a condition to ensure the update only happens if a
 condition is met.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param attributeName - The name of the attribute to update
 * @param attributeValue - The new value for the attribute
 * @param conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param conditionValue - The value to compare against in the condition
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateItemWithCondition = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeName: string,
  attributeValue: any,
  conditionAttribute: string,
  conditionValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND ${conditionAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [attributeValue, partitionKeyValue, conditionValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated with condition successfully");
    return data;
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item with condition:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Batch update multiple items using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param updates - Array of objects containing key and update information
 * @returns The response from the BatchExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const batchUpdateItems = async (
  tableName: string,
  updates: Array<{
    partitionKeyName: string;
    partitionKeyValue: string | number;
    attributeName: string;
    attributeValue: any;
  }>
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create statements for each update
  const statements = updates.map((update) => {
    return {
      Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${update.attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${update.partitionKeyName} = ?`,
      Parameters: [update.attributeValue, update.partitionKeyValue],
    };
  });

  const params = {
    Statements: statements,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new BatchExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items batch updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error batch updating items:", err);
```

```
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to update items with different index types
 */
export const updateExamples = async () => {
  // Update a single attribute using a simple primary key
  await updateSingleAttribute("UsersTable", "userId", "user123", "email",
 "newemail@example.com");

  // Update multiple attributes at once
  await updateMultipleAttributes("UsersTable", "userId", "user123", {
    email: "newemail@example.com",
    name: "John Smith",
    lastLogin: new Date().toISOString(),
  });

  // Update an item with a composite key (partition key + sort key)
  await updateItemWithCompositeKey(
    "OrdersTable",
    "orderId",
    "order456",
    "productId",
    "prod789",
    "quantity",
    5
  );

  // Update with a condition
  await updateItemWithCondition(
    "UsersTable",
    "userId",
    "user123",
    "userStatus",
    "active",
    "userType",
    "premium"
  );

  // Batch update multiple items
  await batchUpdateItems("UsersTable", [
    {
```

```
      partitionKeyName: "userId",
      partitionKeyValue: "user123",
      attributeName: "lastLogin",
      attributeValue: new Date().toISOString(),
    },
    {
      partitionKeyName: "userId",
      partitionKeyValue: "user456",
      attributeName: "lastLogin",
      attributeValue: new Date().toISOString(),
    },
  ]);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.

- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Use a document model for DynamoDB using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to perform Create, Read, Update, and Delete (CRUD) and batch operations using a document model for DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see Document model.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Perform CRUD operations using a document model.

```
/// <summary>
/// Performs CRUD operations on an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/// </summary>
public class MidlevelItemCRUD
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var tableName = "ProductCatalog";
        var sampleBookId = 555;

        var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
        var productCatalog = LoadTable(client, tableName);

        await CreateBookItem(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
        RetrieveBook(productCatalog, sampleBookId);

        // Couple of sample updates.
        UpdateMultipleAttributes(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
        UpdateBookPriceConditionally(productCatalog, sampleBookId);

        // Delete.
        await DeleteBook(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
    }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB client object.</param>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to load.</param>
        /// <returns>A DynamoDB table object.</returns>
        public static Table LoadTable(IAmazonDynamoDB client, string tableName)
        {
            Table productCatalog = Table.LoadTable(client, tableName);
            return productCatalog;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an example book item and adds it to the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async Task CreateBookItem(Table productCatalog, int
sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing CreateBookItem() ***");
            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = sampleBookId,
                ["Title"] = "Book " + sampleBookId,
                ["Price"] = 19.99,
                ["ISBN"] = "111-1111111111",
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2", "Author
3" },
                ["PageCount"] = 500,
                ["Dimensions"] = "8.5x11x.5",
                ["InPublication"] = new DynamoDBBool(true),
                ["InStock"] = new DynamoDBBool(false),
                ["QuantityOnHand"] = 0,
            };

            // Adds the book to the ProductCatalog table.
            await productCatalog.PutItemAsync(book);
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Retrieves an item, a book, from the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void RetrieveBook(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing RetrieveBook() ***");

            // Optional configuration.
            var config = new GetItemOperationConfig
            {
                AttributesToGet = new List<string> { "Id", "ISBN", "Title",
"Authors", "Price" },
                ConsistentRead = true,
            };

            Document document = await productCatalog.GetItemAsync(sampleBookId,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("RetrieveBook: Printing book retrieved...");
            PrintDocument(document);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates multiple attributes for a book and writes the changes to the
        /// DynamoDB table ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void UpdateMultipleAttributes(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nUpdating multiple attributes....");
            int partitionKey = sampleBookId;

            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = partitionKey,

                // List of attribute updates.
```

```
                // The following replaces the existing authors list.
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author x", "Author y" },
                ["newAttribute"] = "New Value",
                ["ISBN"] = null, // Remove it.
            };

            // Optional parameters.
            var config = new UpdateItemOperationConfig
            {
                // Gets updated item in response.
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllNewAttributes,
            };

            Document updatedBook = await productCatalog.UpdateItemAsync(book,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("UpdateMultipleAttributes: Printing item after
updates ...");
            PrintDocument(updatedBook);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a book item if it meets the specified criteria.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void UpdateBookPriceConditionally(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing UpdateBookPriceConditionally()
***");

            int partitionKey = sampleBookId;

            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = partitionKey,
                ["Price"] = 29.99,
            };

            // For conditional price update, creating a condition expression.
            var expr = new Expression
            {
```

```
                ExpressionStatement = "Price = :val",
            };
            expr.ExpressionAttributeValues[":val"] = 19.00;

            // Optional parameters.
            var config = new UpdateItemOperationConfig
            {
                ConditionalExpression = expr,
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllNewAttributes,
            };

            Document updatedBook = await productCatalog.UpdateItemAsync(book,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("UpdateBookPriceConditionally: Printing item whose
price was conditionally updated");
            PrintDocument(updatedBook);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the book with the supplied Id value from the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async Task DeleteBook(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing DeleteBook() ***");

            // Optional configuration.
            var config = new DeleteItemOperationConfig
            {
                // Returns the deleted item.
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllOldAttributes,
            };
            Document document = await
productCatalog.DeleteItemAsync(sampleBookId, config);
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteBook: Printing deleted just deleted...");

            PrintDocument(document);
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Prints the information for the supplied DynamoDB document.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="updatedDocument">A DynamoDB document object.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document updatedDocument)
        {
            if (updatedDocument is null)
            {
                return;
            }

            foreach (var attribute in updatedDocument.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = updatedDocument[attribute];

                if (value is null)
                {
                    continue;
                }

                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                  select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}", attribute,
stringValue);
            }
        }
    }
```

Perform batch write operations using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to use mid-level Amazon DynamoDB API calls to perform batch
    /// operations.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelBatchWriteItem
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            await SingleTableBatchWrite(client);
            await MultiTableBatchWrite(client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a batch operation on a single DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB object.</param>
        public static async Task SingleTableBatchWrite(IAmazonDynamoDB client)
        {
            Table productCatalog = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");
            var batchWrite = productCatalog.CreateBatchWrite();

            var book1 = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = 902,
                ["Title"] = "My book1 in batch write using .NET helper classes",
                ["ISBN"] = "902-11-11-1111",
                ["Price"] = 10,
                ["ProductCategory"] = "Book",
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2", "Author
3" },
                ["Dimensions"] = "8.5x11x.5",
                ["InStock"] = new DynamoDBBool(true),
                ["QuantityOnHand"] = new DynamoDBNull(), // Quantity is unknown
at this time.
            };

            batchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(book1);

            // Specify delete item using overload that takes PK.
            batchWrite.AddKeyToDelete(12345);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in
SingleTableBatchWrite()");
            await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a batch operation involving multiple DynamoDB tables.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB client object.</param>
        public static async Task MultiTableBatchWrite(IAmazonDynamoDB client)
        {
            // Specify item to add in the Forum table.
            Table forum = Table.LoadTable(client, "Forum");
            var forumBatchWrite = forum.CreateBatchWrite();

            var forum1 = new Document
            {
                ["Name"] = "Test BatchWrite Forum",
                ["Threads"] = 0,
            };
            forumBatchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(forum1);

            // Specify item to add in the Thread table.
            Table thread = Table.LoadTable(client, "Thread");
            var threadBatchWrite = thread.CreateBatchWrite();

            var thread1 = new Document
            {
                ["ForumName"] = "S3 forum",
                ["Subject"] = "My sample question",
                ["Message"] = "Message text",
                ["KeywordTags"] = new List<string> { "S3", "Bucket" },
            };
            threadBatchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(thread1);

            // Specify item to delete from the Thread table.
            threadBatchWrite.AddKeyToDelete("someForumName", "someSubject");

            // Create multi-table batch.
            var superBatch = new MultiTableDocumentBatchWrite();
            superBatch.AddBatch(forumBatchWrite);
            superBatch.AddBatch(threadBatchWrite);
            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in
MultiTableBatchWrite()");
```

```
            // Execute the batch.
            await superBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }
    }
```

Scan a table using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to use mid-level Amazon DynamoDB API calls to scan a DynamoDB
    /// table for values.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelScanOnly
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            Table productCatalogTable = Table.LoadTable(client,
"ProductCatalog");

            await FindProductsWithNegativePrice(productCatalogTable);
            await FindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig(productCatalogTable);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves any products that have a negative price in a DynamoDB
table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalogTable">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsWithNegativePrice(
          Table productCatalogTable)
        {
            // Assume there is a price error. So we scan to find items priced <
0.
            var scanFilter = new ScanFilter();
            scanFilter.AddCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, 0);

            Search search = productCatalogTable.Scan(scanFilter);
```

```
            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsWithNegativePrice:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Finds any items in the ProductCatalog table using a DynamoDB
        /// configuration object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalogTable">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig(
          Table productCatalogTable)
        {
            // Assume there is a price error. So we scan to find items priced <
0.
            var scanFilter = new ScanFilter();
            scanFilter.AddCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, 0);

            var config = new ScanOperationConfig()
            {
                Filter = scanFilter,
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string> { "Title", "Id" },
            };

            Search search = productCatalogTable.Scan(config);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
```

```
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the details of the passed DynamoDB document object on the
        /// console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="document">A DynamoDB document object.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document document)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            foreach (var attribute in document.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = document[attribute];
                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                        select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Query and scan a table using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform mid-level query procedures on an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelQueryAndScan
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            // Query examples.
            Table replyTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "Reply");
            string forumName = "Amazon DynamoDB";
            string threadSubject = "DynamoDB Thread 2";

            await FindRepliesInLast15Days(replyTable);
            await FindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig(replyTable, forumName,
threadSubject);
            await FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(replyTable, forumName,
threadSubject);

            // Get Example.
            Table productCatalogTable = Table.LoadTable(client,
"ProductCatalog");
            int productId = 101;

            await GetProduct(productCatalogTable, productId);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves information about a product from the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog based on the product ID and displays the information
        /// on the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which to retrieve
        /// product information.</param>
        /// <param name="productId">The ID of the product to retrieve.</param>
        public static async Task GetProduct(Table tableName, int productId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("*** Executing GetProduct() ***");
            Document productDocument = await tableName.GetItemAsync(productId);
            if (productDocument != null)
            {
                PrintDocument(productDocument);
            }
            else
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine("Error: product " + productId + " does not
exist");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves replies from the passed DynamoDB table object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15Days(
          Table table)
        {
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);
            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, "Id");
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.GreaterThan,
twoWeeksAgoDate);

            // Use Query overloads that take the minimum required query
parameters.
            Search search = table.Query(filter);

            do
            {
                var documentSet = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesInLast15Days:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentSet)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve replies made during a specific time period.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">The subject of the thread, which we are
        /// searching for replies.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(
```

```
          Table table,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
       {
           DateTime startDate = DateTime.UtcNow.Subtract(new TimeSpan(21, 0, 0,
0));
           DateTime endDate = DateTime.UtcNow.Subtract(new TimeSpan(1, 0, 0,
0));

           var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, forumName +
"#" + threadSubject);
           filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.Between,
startDate, endDate);

           var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
           {
               Limit = 2, // 2 items/page.
               Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
               AttributesToGet = new List<string>
       {
         "Message",
         "ReplyDateTime",
         "PostedBy",
       },
               ConsistentRead = true,
               Filter = filter,
           };

           Search search = table.Query(config);

           do
           {
               var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
               Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod: printing
replies posted within dates: {0} and {1} ............", startDate, endDate);

               foreach (var document in documentList)
               {
                   PrintDocument(document);
               }
           }
           while (!search.IsDone);
       }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a query for replies made in the last 15 days using a DynamoDB
        /// QueryOperationConfig object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadName">The bane of the thread that we are searching
        /// for replies.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig(
          Table table,
          string forumName,
          string threadName)
        {
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);
            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, forumName +
"#" + threadName);
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.GreaterThan,
twoWeeksAgoDate);

            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Filter = filter,

                // Optional parameters.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
                {
                  "Message",
                  "ReplyDateTime",
                  "PostedBy",
                },
                ConsistentRead = true,
            };

            Search search = table.Query(config);

            do
            {
                var documentSet = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentSet)
```

```
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the contents of the passed DynamoDB document on the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="document">A DynamoDB document to display.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document document)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            foreach (var attribute in document.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = document[attribute];

                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                    select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Use a high-level object persistence model for DynamoDB using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to perform Create, Read, Update, and Delete (CRUD) and batch operations using an object persistence model for DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see Object persistence model.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Perform CRUD operations using a high-level object persistence model.

```
/// <summary>
/// Shows how to perform high-level CRUD operations on an Amazon DynamoDB
/// table.
/// </summary>
public class HighLevelItemCrud
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
        DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
        await PerformCRUDOperations(context);
    }

    public static async Task PerformCRUDOperations(IDynamoDBContext context)
    {
        int bookId = 1001; // Some unique value.
        Book myBook = new Book
        {
            Id = bookId,
            Title = "object persistence-AWS SDK for.NET SDK-Book 1001",
            Isbn = "111-1111111001",
            BookAuthors = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2" },
        };

        // Save the book to the ProductCatalog table.
        await context.SaveAsync(myBook);

        // Retrieve the book from the ProductCatalog table.
```

```
            Book bookRetrieved = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId);

            // Update some properties.
            bookRetrieved.Isbn = "222-2222221001";

            // Update existing authors list with the following values.
            bookRetrieved.BookAuthors = new List<string> { " Author 1", "Author
x" };
            await context.SaveAsync(bookRetrieved);

            // Retrieve the updated book. This time, add the optional
            // ConsistentRead parameter using DynamoDBContextConfig object.
            await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId, new DynamoDBContextConfig
            {
                ConsistentRead = true,
            });

            // Delete the book.
            await context.DeleteAsync<Book>(bookId);

            // Try to retrieve deleted book. It should return null.
            Book deletedBook = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId, new
DynamoDBContextConfig
            {
                ConsistentRead = true,
            });

            if (deletedBook == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Book is deleted");
            }
        }
    }
```

Perform batch write operations using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Performs high-level batch write operations to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
    /// This example was written using the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.7 and .NET
    /// Core 5.0.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelBatchWriteItem
    {
        public static async Task SingleTableBatchWrite(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            Book book1 = new Book
            {
                Id = 902,
                InPublication = true,
                Isbn = "902-11-11-1111",
                PageCount = "100",
                Price = 10,
                ProductCategory = "Book",
                Title = "My book3 in batch write",
            };

            Book book2 = new Book
            {
                Id = 903,
                InPublication = true,
                Isbn = "903-11-11-1111",
                PageCount = "200",
                Price = 10,
                ProductCategory = "Book",
                Title = "My book4 in batch write",
            };

            var bookBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Book>();
            bookBatch.AddPutItems(new List<Book> { book1, book2 });

            Console.WriteLine("Adding two books to ProductCatalog table.");
            await bookBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        public static async Task MultiTableBatchWrite(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            // New Forum item.
            Forum newForum = new Forum
            {
                Name = "Test BatchWrite Forum",
                Threads = 0,
            };
            var forumBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Forum>();
            forumBatch.AddPutItem(newForum);
```

```
            // New Thread item.
            Thread newThread = new Thread
            {
                ForumName = "S3 forum",
                Subject = "My sample question",
                KeywordTags = new List<string> { "S3", "Bucket" },
                Message = "Message text",
            };

            DynamoDBOperationConfig config = new DynamoDBOperationConfig();
            config.SkipVersionCheck = true;
            var threadBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Thread>(config);
            threadBatch.AddPutItem(newThread);
            threadBatch.AddDeleteKey("some partition key value", "some sort key
value");

            var superBatch = new MultiTableBatchWrite(forumBatch, threadBatch);

            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in
MultiTableBatchWrite().");
            await superBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            AmazonDynamoDBClient client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

            await SingleTableBatchWrite(context);
            await MultiTableBatchWrite(context);
        }
    }
```

Map arbitrary data to a table using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to map arbitrary data to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelMappingArbitraryData
```

```
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a book, adds it to the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table,
retrieves
        /// the new book from the table, updates the dimensions and writes the
        /// changed item back to the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context object used to write and
        /// read data from the table.</param>
        public static async Task AddRetrieveUpdateBook(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            // Create a book.
            DimensionType myBookDimensions = new DimensionType()
            {
                Length = 8M,
                Height = 11M,
                Thickness = 0.5M,
            };

            Book myBook = new Book
            {
                Id = 501,
                Title = "AWS SDK for .NET Object Persistence Model Handling
Arbitrary Data",
                Isbn = "999-9999999999",
                BookAuthors = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2" },
                Dimensions = myBookDimensions,
            };

            // Add the book to the DynamoDB table ProductCatalog.
            await context.SaveAsync(myBook);

            // Retrieve the book.
            Book bookRetrieved = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(501);

            // Update the book dimensions property.
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Height += 1;
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Length += 1;
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Thickness += 0.2M;

            // Write the changed item to the table.
            await context.SaveAsync(bookRetrieved);
        }
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
            await AddRetrieveUpdateBook(context);
        }
    }
```

Query and scan a table using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform high-level query and scan operations to Amazon
    /// DynamoDB tables.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelQueryAndScan
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

            // Get an item.
            await GetBook(context, 101);

            // Sample forum and thread to test queries.
            string forumName = "Amazon DynamoDB";
            string threadSubject = "DynamoDB Thread 1";

            // Sample queries.
            await FindRepliesInLast15Days(context, forumName, threadSubject);
            await FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(context, forumName,
 threadSubject);

            // Scan table.
            await FindProductsPricedLessThanZero(context);
        }

        public static async Task GetBook(IDynamoDBContext context, int productId)
        {
```

```
            Book bookItem = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(productId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nGetBook: Printing result.....");
            Console.WriteLine($"Title: {bookItem.Title} \n ISBN:{bookItem.Isbn}
\n No. of pages: {bookItem.PageCount}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries a DynamoDB table to find replies posted within the last 15
days.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context used to perform the
query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">The thread object containing the query
parameters.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15Days(
          IDynamoDBContext context,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            string replyId = $"{forumName} #{threadSubject}";
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);

            List<object> times = new List<object>();
            times.Add(twoWeeksAgoDate);

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc = new ScanCondition("PostedBy", ScanOperator.GreaterThan,
times.ToArray());
            scs.Add(sc);

            var cfg = new DynamoDBOperationConfig
            {
                QueryFilter = scs,
            };

            AsyncSearch<Reply> response = context.QueryAsync<Reply>(replyId,
cfg);
            IEnumerable<Reply> latestReplies = await
response.GetRemainingAsync();

            Console.WriteLine("\nReplies in last 15 days:");
```

```
            foreach (Reply r in latestReplies)
            {

Console.WriteLine($"{r.Id}\t{r.PostedBy}\t{r.Message}\t{r.ReplyDateTime}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries for replies posted within a specific time period.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context used to perform the
query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">Information about the subject that we're
        /// interested in.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(
          IDynamoDBContext context,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            string forumId = forumName + "#" + threadSubject;
            Console.WriteLine("\nReplies posted within time period:");

            DateTime startDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(30);
            DateTime endDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(1);

            List<object> times = new List<object>();
            times.Add(startDate);
            times.Add(endDate);

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc = new ScanCondition("LastPostedBy", ScanOperator.Between,
times.ToArray());
            scs.Add(sc);

            var cfg = new DynamoDBOperationConfig
            {
                QueryFilter = scs,
            };

            AsyncSearch<Reply> response = context.QueryAsync<Reply>(forumId,
cfg);
```

```
            IEnumerable<Reply> repliesInAPeriod = await
response.GetRemainingAsync();

            foreach (Reply r in repliesInAPeriod)
            {

Console.WriteLine("{r.Id}\t{r.PostedBy}\t{r.Message}\t{r.ReplyDateTime}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table for products costing less
        /// than zero.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context object used to perform the
        /// query.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsPricedLessThanZero(IDynamoDBContext
context)
        {
            int price = 0;

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc1 = new ScanCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, price);
            var sc2 = new ScanCondition("ProductCategory", ScanOperator.Equal,
"Book");
            scs.Add(sc1);
            scs.Add(sc2);

            AsyncSearch<Book> response = context.ScanAsync<Book>(scs);

            IEnumerable<Book> itemsWithWrongPrice = await
response.GetRemainingAsync();

            Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsPricedLessThanZero: Printing
result.....");

            foreach (Book r in itemsWithWrongPrice)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{r.Id}\t{r.Title}\t{r.Price}\t{r.Isbn}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB.

- Increment counters atomically using ADD and SET operations.
- Safely increment counters that might not exist.
- Implement optimistic locking for counter operations.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate atomic counter operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Increments a counter using the ADD operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to atomically
     * increment a counter attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param incrementValue The value to increment by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
```

```
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse incrementCounterWithAdd(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int incrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("ADD #counterName :increment")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":increment",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(incrementValue)).build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Increments a counter using the SET operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the SET operation with an
expression
     * to increment a counter attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param incrementValue The value to increment by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse incrementCounterWithSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
```

```
        String counterName,
        int incrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #counterName = #counterName + :increment")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":increment",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(incrementValue)).build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Increments a counter safely, handling the case where the counter doesn't
exist yet.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to safely increment a
counter
     * that may not exist yet.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param incrementValue The value to increment by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse incrementCounterSafely(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int incrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
```

```
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #counterName =
if_not_exists(#counterName, :zero) + :increment")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":increment",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(incrementValue)).build(),
                ":zero", AttributeValue.builder().n("0").build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Decrements a counter safely, ensuring it doesn't go below zero.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use a condition expression to safely
     * decrement a counter without going below zero.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param decrementValue The value to decrement by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation or if
the counter would go below zero
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse decrementCounterSafely(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int decrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
```

```
            .updateExpression("SET #counterName = #counterName - :decrement")
            .conditionExpression("#counterName >= :decrement")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":decrement",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(decrementValue)).build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Compares the ADD and SET approaches for incrementing counters.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates the differences between using ADD and SET
     * for incrementing counters in DynamoDB.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @return Map containing the comparison results
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> compareAddVsSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key) {

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Reset counters to ensure a fair comparison
            UpdateItemRequest resetRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET AddCounter = :zero, SetCounter = :zero")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":zero", AttributeValue.builder().n("0").build()))
                .build();

            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(resetRequest);

            // Increment with ADD
```

```
            long addStartTime = System.nanoTime();
            UpdateItemResponse addResponse =
incrementCounterWithAdd(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "AddCounter", 1);
            long addEndTime = System.nanoTime();
            long addDuration = addEndTime - addStartTime;

            // Increment with SET
            long setStartTime = System.nanoTime();
            UpdateItemResponse setResponse =
incrementCounterWithSet(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "SetCounter", 1);
            long setEndTime = System.nanoTime();
            long setDuration = setEndTime - setStartTime;

            // Record results
            results.put("addResponse", addResponse);
            results.put("setResponse", setResponse);
            results.put("addDuration", addDuration);
            results.put("setDuration", setDuration);
            results.put("success", true);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            results.put("success", false);
            results.put("error", e.getMessage());
        }

        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a counter attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a counter attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @return The counter value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Integer getCounterValue(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, String counterName) {
```

```
        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(counterName)
            .build();

        // Perform the get operation
        GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

        // Return the counter value if it exists, otherwise null
        if (response.item() != null && response.item().containsKey(counterName))
{
            return Integer.parseInt(response.item().get(counterName).n());
        }

        return null;
    }
```

Example usage of atomic counter operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating atomic counter operations in
DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Increment a counter using ADD
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Incrementing a counter using ADD");
            UpdateItemResponse addResponse =
incrementCounterWithAdd(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "ViewCount", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated counter: " + addResponse.attributes());

            // Example 2: Increment a counter using SET
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Incrementing a counter using SET");
            UpdateItemResponse setResponse =
incrementCounterWithSet(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "LikeCount", 1);
```

```
            System.out.println("Updated counter: " + setResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Increment a counter safely
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Incrementing a counter safely");
            UpdateItemResponse safeResponse =
incrementCounterSafely(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "ShareCount", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated counter: " + safeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Decrement a counter safely
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Decrementing a counter safely");
            try {
                UpdateItemResponse decrementResponse =
                    decrementCounterSafely(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key,
"InventoryCount", 1);

                System.out.println("Updated counter: " +
decrementResponse.attributes());
            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                if (e.getMessage().contains("ConditionalCheckFailed")) {
                    System.out.println("Cannot decrement counter below zero");
                } else {
                    throw e;
                }
            }

            // Example 5: Compare ADD vs SET
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Comparing ADD vs SET");
            Map<String, Object> comparison = compareAddVsSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key);

            if ((boolean) comparison.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("ADD duration: " +
comparison.get("addDuration") + " ns");
                System.out.println("SET duration: " +
comparison.get("setDuration") + " ns");
                System.out.println("ADD response: " +
comparison.get("addResponse"));
                System.out.println("SET response: " +
comparison.get("setResponse"));
            } else {
                System.out.println("Comparison failed: " +
comparison.get("error"));
```

```
            }

            // Explain atomic counter operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB atomic counter
 operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Both ADD and SET can be used for atomic
 counters");
            System.out.println("2. ADD is more concise for simple increments");
            System.out.println("3. SET with an expression is more flexible for
 complex operations");
            System.out.println("4. Use if_not_exists to handle the case where the
 counter doesn't exist yet");
            System.out.println("5. Use condition expressions to prevent counters
 from going below zero");
            System.out.println("6. Atomic operations are guaranteed to be
 isolated from other writes");
            System.out.println("7. ADD can only be used with number and set data
 types");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate atomic counter operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Increment a counter using the ADD operation.
```

```
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the ADD operation for atomic increments.
 * The ADD operation is atomic and is the recommended way to increment counters.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterWithAdd(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using ADD
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `ADD ${counterName} :increment`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Increment a counter using the SET operation with an expression.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the SET operation with an expression for
 increments.
```

```
 * While this approach works, it's less idiomatic for simple increments than
 using ADD.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterWithSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with an expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${counterName} = ${counterName} + :increment`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Increment a counter safely, handling the case where the counter might not
 exist.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the if_not_exists function with SET to safely
 * increment a counter that might not exist yet.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @param {number} defaultValue - The default value if the counter doesn't exist
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterSafely(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue,
  defaultValue = 0
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with if_not_exists
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${counterName} =
 if_not_exists(${counterName}, :default) + :increment`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue,
      ":default": defaultValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Increment a counter with optimistic locking to prevent race conditions.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates using a condition expression to implement
 optimistic
 * locking, which prevents race conditions when multiple processes try to update
 * the same counter.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @param {number} expectedValue - The expected current value of the counter
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterWithLocking(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue,
  expectedValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${counterName} = ${counterName} + :increment`,
    ConditionExpression: `${counterName} = :expected`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue,
      ":expected": expectedValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
    return {
      success: true,
      data: response
```

```
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        error: "Optimistic locking failed: the counter value has changed"
      };
    }
    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Get the current value of a counter.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of a counter attribute.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @returns {Promise<number|null>} - The current counter value or null if not
 found
 */
async function getCounterValue(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));
```

```
  // Return the counter value if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item && counterName in response.Item
    ? response.Item[counterName]
    : null;
}
```

Example usage of atomic counter operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use the atomic counter operations.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };
  const counterName = "ViewCount";
  const incrementValue = 1;

  console.log("Demonstrating different approaches to increment counters in
 DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Using ADD operation (recommended for simple increments)
    console.log("\nExample 1: Incrementing counter with ADD operation");
    const response1 = await incrementCounterWithAdd(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      counterName,
      incrementValue
    );

    console.log(`Counter incremented to: ${response1.Attributes[counterName]}`);

    // Example 2: Using SET operation with an expression
    console.log("\nExample 2: Incrementing counter with SET operation");
    const response2 = await incrementCounterWithSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
```

```
      counterName,
      incrementValue
    );

    console.log(`Counter incremented to: ${response2.Attributes[counterName]}`);

    // Example 3: Safely incrementing a counter that might not exist
    console.log("\nExample 3: Safely incrementing counter that might not exist");
    const newKey = { ProductId: "P67890" };
    const response3 = await incrementCounterSafely(
      config,
      tableName,
      newKey,
      counterName,
      incrementValue,
      0
    );

    console.log(`Counter initialized and incremented to:
${response3.Attributes[counterName]}`);

    // Example 4: Incrementing with optimistic locking
    console.log("\nExample 4: Incrementing with optimistic locking");

    // First, get the current counter value
    const currentValue = await getCounterValue(config, tableName, key,
counterName);
    console.log(`Current counter value: ${currentValue}`);

    // Then, try to increment with optimistic locking
    const response4 = await incrementCounterWithLocking(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      counterName,
      incrementValue,
      currentValue
    );

    if (response4.success) {
      console.log(`Counter successfully incremented to:
${response4.data.Attributes[counterName]}`);
    } else {
      console.log(response4.error);
```

```
    }

    // Explain the differences between ADD and SET
    console.log("\nKey differences between ADD and SET for counter operations:");
    console.log("1. ADD is more concise and idiomatic for simple increments");
    console.log("2. SET with expressions is more flexible for complex
 operations");
    console.log("3. Both operations are atomic and safe for concurrent updates");
    console.log("4. SET with if_not_exists is required when the attribute might
 not exist");
    console.log("5. Optimistic locking can be added to either approach for
 additional safety");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate atomic counter operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, Union


def increment_counter_with_add(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], counter_name: str, increment_value: int
 = 1
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Increment a counter attribute using the ADD operation.

    This function demonstrates the atomic ADD operation, which is ideal for
    incrementing counters without the risk of race conditions.

    Args:
```

```
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to
 1.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the ADD operation to atomically increment the counter
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="ADD #counter :increment",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def increment_counter_with_set(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], counter_name: str, increment_value: int
 = 1
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Increment a counter attribute using the SET operation with an expression.

    This function demonstrates using SET with an expression to increment a
 counter.
    While this works, it's generally recommended to use ADD for simple
 increments.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to
 1.
```

```
    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the SET operation with an expression to increment the counter
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #counter = #counter + :increment",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def increment_counter_safely(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    counter_name: str,
    increment_value: int = 1,
    initial_value: int = 0,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Increment a counter attribute safely, handling the case where it might not
 exist.

    This function demonstrates a best practice for incrementing counters by using
    the if_not_exists function to handle the case where the counter doesn't exist
 yet.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to
 1.
        initial_value (int, optional): The initial value if the counter doesn't
 exist. Defaults to 0.
```

```
    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use SET with if_not_exists to safely increment the counter
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #counter = if_not_exists(#counter, :initial)
 + :increment",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value, ":initial":
 initial_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def atomic_conditional_increment(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    counter_name: str,
    condition_attribute: str,
    condition_value: Any,
    increment_value: int = 1,
) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
    """
    Atomically increment a counter only if a condition is met.

    This function demonstrates combining atomic counter operations with
    conditional expressions for more complex update scenarios.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        condition_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        condition_value (Any): The value to compare against.
```

```
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to
 1.

    Returns:
        Optional[Dict[str, Any]]: The response from DynamoDB if successful, None
 if condition failed.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
        # Use ADD with a condition expression
        response = table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression="ADD #counter :increment",
            ConditionExpression="#condition = :value",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name, "#condition":
 condition_attribute},
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value, ":value":
 condition_value},
            ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
        )
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return None
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

Example usage of atomic counter operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the atomic counter operations functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "GameScores"
    key = {"UserId": "user123", "GameId": "game456"}
    counter_name = "Score"
```

```
    print("Example 1: Incrementing a counter with ADD operation")
    try:
        response = increment_counter_with_add(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, counter_name=counter_name,
increment_value=10
        )
        print(
            f"Counter incremented successfully. New value:
{response.get('Attributes', {}).get(counter_name)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error incrementing counter with ADD: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Incrementing a counter with SET operation")
    try:
        response = increment_counter_with_set(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, counter_name=counter_name,
increment_value=5
        )
        print(
            f"Counter incremented successfully. New value:
{response.get('Attributes', {}).get(counter_name)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error incrementing counter with SET: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Safely incrementing a counter that might not exist")
    try:
        new_key = {"UserId": "newuser789", "GameId": "game456"}
        response = increment_counter_safely(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=new_key,
            counter_name=counter_name,
            increment_value=15,
            initial_value=100,
        )
        print(
            f"Counter safely incremented. New value: {response.get('Attributes',
{}).get(counter_name)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error safely incrementing counter: {e}")
```

```
    print("\nExample 4: Conditional counter increment")
    try:
        # Fix for mypy: Handle the case where response might be None
        result = atomic_conditional_increment(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            counter_name="Achievements",
            condition_attribute="Level",
            condition_value=5,
            increment_value=1,
        )

        if result is not None:
            print(
                f"Conditional increment succeeded. New value:
{result.get('Attributes', {}).get('Achievements')}"
            )
        else:
            print("Conditional increment failed because condition was not met.")
        if response:
            print(
                f"Conditional increment succeeded. New value:
{response.get('Attributes', {}).get('Achievements')}"
            )
        else:
            print("Conditional increment failed because condition was not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error with conditional increment: {e}")

    print("\nComparison of ADD vs SET for counter operations:")
    print("1. ADD is specifically designed for atomic numeric increments and set
operations")
    print("2. SET with an expression can be used for more complex calculations")
    print("3. Both operations are atomic, preventing race conditions")
    print("4. ADD is more concise for simple increments")
    print("5. SET with if_not_exists() is recommended when the attribute might
not exist")
    print("6. For counters, ADD is generally preferred for clarity and
simplicity")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use conditional operations in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use conditional operations in DynamoDB.

- Implement conditional writes to prevent overwriting data.
- Use condition expressions to enforce business rules.
- Handle conditional check failures gracefully.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate conditional operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ConditionalCheckFailedException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Performs a conditional update on an item.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use a condition expression to update an
 item
     * only if a specific condition is met.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param conditionAttribute The attribute to check in the condition
     * @param conditionValue The value to compare against
```

```
     * @param updateAttribute The attribute to update
     * @param updateValue The new value to set
     * @return Map containing the operation result and status
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> conditionalUpdate(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String conditionAttribute,
        AttributeValue conditionValue,
        String updateAttribute,
        AttributeValue updateValue) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Define the update parameters
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #updateAttr = :updateVal")
                .conditionExpression("#condAttr = :condVal")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                    "#condAttr", conditionAttribute,
                    "#updateAttr", updateAttribute))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":condVal", conditionValue,
                    ":updateVal", updateValue))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            // Perform the update operation
            UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            // Record success result
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "Condition was met and update was performed");
            result.put("attributes", response.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to condition not being met
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Condition was not met, update was not
performed");
```

```
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Performs a conditional delete on an item.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use a condition expression to delete an
item
     * only if a specific condition is met.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to delete
     * @param conditionAttribute The attribute to check in the condition
     * @param conditionValue The value to compare against
     * @return Map containing the operation result and status
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> conditionalDelete(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String conditionAttribute,
        AttributeValue conditionValue) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Define the delete parameters
            DeleteItemRequest request = DeleteItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .conditionExpression("#condAttr = :condVal")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#condAttr",
conditionAttribute))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":condVal", conditionValue))
```

```
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.ALL_OLD)
                .build();

            // Perform the delete operation
            DeleteItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.deleteItem(request);

            // Record success result
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "Condition was met and delete was performed");
            result.put("attributes", response.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to condition not being met
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Condition was not met, delete was not
performed");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Demonstrates optimistic locking using a version attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method shows how to implement optimistic locking by using a
version
     * attribute that is incremented with each update.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param versionAttribute The name of the version attribute
     * @return Map containing the operation result
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> optimisticLockingExample(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> key, String versionAttribute) {
```

```
        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Get the current version of the item
            GetItemRequest getRequest = GetItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .projectionExpression(versionAttribute)
                .build();

            GetItemResponse getResponse = dynamoDbClient.getItem(getRequest);

            // Check if the item exists
            if (getResponse.item() == null || !
getResponse.item().containsKey(versionAttribute)) {
                // Item doesn't exist or doesn't have a version attribute
                // Initialize with version 1
                UpdateItemRequest initRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .key(key)
                    .updateExpression("SET #verAttr = :newVer, #dataAttr
 = :data")
                    .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#verAttr",
 versionAttribute, "#dataAttr", "Data"))
                    .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                        ":newVer", AttributeValue.builder().n("1").build(),
                        ":data", AttributeValue.builder().s("Initial
 data").build()))
                    .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                    .build();

                UpdateItemResponse initResponse =
 dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

                result.put("operation", "initialize");
                result.put("success", true);
                result.put("attributes", initResponse.attributes());

                return result;
            }

            // Get the current version number
            int currentVersion =
```

```
                Integer.parseInt(getResponse.item().get(versionAttribute).n());
            int newVersion = currentVersion + 1;

            // Update the item with a condition on the version
            UpdateItemRequest updateRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #verAttr = :newVer, #dataAttr = :newData")
                .conditionExpression("#verAttr = :curVer")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#verAttr", versionAttribute,
"#dataAttr", "Data"))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":curVer",
                        AttributeValue.builder()
                            .n(String.valueOf(currentVersion))
                            .build(),
                    ":newVer",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(newVersion)).build(),
                    ":newData",
                        AttributeValue.builder()
                            .s("Updated data at version " + newVersion)
                            .build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse updateResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(updateRequest);

            // Record success result
            result.put("operation", "update");
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("oldVersion", currentVersion);
            result.put("newVersion", newVersion);
            result.put("attributes", updateResponse.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to version mismatch
            result.put("operation", "update");
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Version mismatch, another process may have
updated the item");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("operation", "update");
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Performs a conditional update with multiple conditions.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use multiple conditions in a condition
expression.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param conditions Map of attribute names to values for conditions
     * @param updateAttribute The attribute to update
     * @param updateValue The new value to set
     * @return Map containing the operation result and status
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> conditionalUpdateWithMultipleConditions(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> conditions,
        String updateAttribute,
        AttributeValue updateValue) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Build the condition expression and attribute names/values
            StringBuilder conditionExpression = new StringBuilder();
            Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();

            // Add update attribute
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#updateAttr", updateAttribute);
```

```
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":updateVal", updateValue);

            // Add conditions
            int i = 0;
            for (Map.Entry<String, AttributeValue> condition :
conditions.entrySet()) {
                String attrName = condition.getKey();
                AttributeValue attrValue = condition.getValue();

                String nameKey = "#cond" + i;
                String valueKey = ":val" + i;

                expressionAttributeNames.put(nameKey, attrName);
                expressionAttributeValues.put(valueKey, attrValue);

                // Add AND between conditions (except for the first one)
                if (i > 0) {
                    conditionExpression.append(" AND ");
                }

                conditionExpression.append(nameKey).append(" =
").append(valueKey);
                i++;
            }

            // Define the update parameters
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #updateAttr = :updateVal")
                .conditionExpression(conditionExpression.toString())
                .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
                .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            // Perform the update operation
            UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            // Record success result
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "All conditions were met and update was
performed");
            result.put("attributes", response.attributes());
```

```
        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to condition not being met
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "One or more conditions were not met, update
was not performed");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }
```

Example usage of conditional operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating conditional operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Conditional update
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Conditional update");
            Map<String, Object> updateResult = conditionalUpdate(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "InStock",
                AttributeValue.builder().bool(true).build(),
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Available").build());

            System.out.println("Update result: " + updateResult.get("message"));
            if ((boolean) updateResult.get("success")) {
```

```
                System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
updateResult.get("attributes"));
            }

            // Example 2: Conditional delete
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Conditional delete");
            Map<String, Object> deleteResult = conditionalDelete(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Discontinued").build());

            System.out.println("Delete result: " + deleteResult.get("message"));
            if ((boolean) deleteResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("Deleted item: " +
deleteResult.get("attributes"));
            }

            // Example 3: Optimistic locking
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Optimistic locking");
            Map<String, Object> lockingResult =
optimisticLockingExample(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Version");

            System.out.println("Optimistic locking result:");
            System.out.println("  Operation: " + lockingResult.get("operation"));
            System.out.println("  Success: " + lockingResult.get("success"));
            if (lockingResult.get("operation").equals("update") && (boolean)
lockingResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("  Old version: " +
lockingResult.get("oldVersion"));
                System.out.println("  New version: " +
lockingResult.get("newVersion"));
            }
            System.out.println("  Attributes: " +
lockingResult.get("attributes"));

            // Example 4: Multiple conditions
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Multiple conditions");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> conditions = new HashMap<>();
            conditions.put("Price",
AttributeValue.builder().n("199.99").build());
            conditions.put("Category",
AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build());
```

```
            Map<String, Object> multiConditionResult =
conditionalUpdateWithMultipleConditions(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                conditions,
                "OnSale",
                AttributeValue.builder().bool(true).build());

            System.out.println("Multiple conditions result: " +
multiConditionResult.get("message"));
            if ((boolean) multiConditionResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
multiConditionResult.get("attributes"));
            }

            // Explain conditional operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB conditional
operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Conditional operations only succeed if the
condition is met");
            System.out.println("2. ConditionalCheckFailedException is thrown when
the condition fails");
            System.out.println("3. No changes are made to the item if the
condition fails");
            System.out.println("4. Conditions can be used with update, delete,
and put operations");
            System.out.println("5. Multiple conditions can be combined with AND
and OR");
            System.out.println("6. Optimistic locking can be implemented using a
version attribute");
            System.out.println(
                "7. Conditional operations consume the same amount of write
capacity whether they succeed or fail");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- DeleteItem
- PutItem
- UpdateItem

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate conditional operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  DeleteCommand,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Perform a conditional update operation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update an item only if a condition is met.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param {any} conditionValue - The value to compare against
 * @param {string} updateAttribute - The attribute to update
 * @param {any} updateValue - The new value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function conditionalUpdate(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  conditionAttribute,
  conditionValue,
  updateAttribute,
  updateValue
) {
```

```
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${updateAttribute} = :value`,
    ConditionExpression: `${conditionAttribute} = :condition`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": updateValue,
      ":condition": conditionValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Condition was met and update was performed",
      updatedAttributes: response.Attributes
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Condition was not met, update was not performed",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Perform a conditional delete operation.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates how to delete an item only if a condition is met.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to delete
 * @param {string} conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param {any} conditionValue - The value to compare against
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function conditionalDelete(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  conditionAttribute,
  conditionValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the delete parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    ConditionExpression: `${conditionAttribute} = :condition`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":condition": conditionValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "ALL_OLD"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the delete operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new DeleteCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Condition was met and item was deleted",
      deletedItem: response.Attributes
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
```

```
        success: false,
        message: "Condition was not met, item was not deleted",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Implement optimistic locking with a version number.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use a version number for optimistic locking
 * to prevent race conditions when multiple processes update the same item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {Object} updates - The attributes to update
 * @param {number} expectedVersion - The expected current version number
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function updateWithOptimisticLocking(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  updates,
  expectedVersion
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Build the update expression
  const updateExpressions = [];
  const expressionAttributeValues = {
    ":expectedVersion": expectedVersion,
    ":newVersion": expectedVersion + 1
  };

  // Add each update to the expression
  Object.entries(updates).forEach(([attribute, value], index) => {
```

```
    updateExpressions.push(`${attribute} = :val${index}`);
    expressionAttributeValues[`:val${index}`] = value;
  });

  // Add the version update
  updateExpressions.push("version = :newVersion");

  // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${updateExpressions.join(", ")}`,
    ConditionExpression: "version = :expectedVersion",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Update succeeded with optimistic locking",
      newVersion: expectedVersion + 1,
      updatedAttributes: response.Attributes
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Optimistic locking failed: the item was modified by another
 process",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
```

```
 * Implement a conditional write that creates an item only if it doesn't exist.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use attribute_not_exists to create an item
 * only if it doesn't already exist (similar to an "INSERT IF NOT EXISTS"
 operation).
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} item - The item to create
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function createIfNotExists(
  config,
  tableName,
  item
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Extract the primary key attributes
  const keyAttributes = Object.keys(item).filter(attr =>
    attr === "id" || attr === "ID" || attr === "Id" ||
    attr.endsWith("Id") || attr.endsWith("ID") ||
    attr.endsWith("Key")
  );

  if (keyAttributes.length === 0) {
    throw new Error("Could not determine primary key attributes");
  }

  // Create a condition expression that checks if the item doesn't exist
  const conditionExpression = `attribute_not_exists(${keyAttributes[0]})`;

  // Define the put parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: item,
    ConditionExpression: conditionExpression
  };

  try {
    // Perform the put operation
    await docClient.send(new PutCommand(params));
```

```
    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Item was created because it didn't exist",
      item
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Item already exists, creation was skipped",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
```

```
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of conditional operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use conditional operations.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating conditional operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Conditional update based on attribute value
    console.log("\nExample 1: Conditional update based on attribute value");
    const updateResult = await conditionalUpdate(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Category",
      "Electronics",
      "Price",
      299.99
    );

    console.log(`Result: ${updateResult.message}`);
    if (updateResult.success) {
      console.log("Updated attributes:", updateResult.updatedAttributes);
    }

    // Example 2: Conditional delete based on attribute value
    console.log("\nExample 2: Conditional delete based on attribute value");
```

```
    const deleteResult = await conditionalDelete(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "InStock",
      false
    );

    console.log(`Result: ${deleteResult.message}`);
    if (deleteResult.success) {
      console.log("Deleted item:", deleteResult.deletedItem);
    }

    // Example 3: Optimistic locking with version number
    console.log("\nExample 3: Optimistic locking with version number");

    // First, get the current item to check its version
    const currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, { ProductId:
 "P67890" });
    const currentVersion = currentItem ? (currentItem.version || 0) : 0;

    console.log(`Current version: ${currentVersion}`);

    // Then, update with optimistic locking
    const lockingResult = await updateWithOptimisticLocking(
      config,
      tableName,
      { ProductId: "P67890" },
      {
        Name: "Updated Product Name",
        Description: "This is an updated description"
      },
      currentVersion
    );

    console.log(`Result: ${lockingResult.message}`);
    if (lockingResult.success) {
      console.log(`New version: ${lockingResult.newVersion}`);
      console.log("Updated attributes:", lockingResult.updatedAttributes);
    }

    // Example 4: Create item only if it doesn't exist
    console.log("\nExample 4: Create item only if it doesn't exist");
    const createResult = await createIfNotExists(
```

```
      config,
      tableName,
      {
        ProductId: "P99999",
        Name: "New Product",
        Category: "Accessories",
        Price: 19.99,
        InStock: true
      }
    );

    console.log(`Result: ${createResult.message}`);
    if (createResult.success) {
      console.log("Created item:", createResult.item);
    }

    // Explain conditional operations
    console.log("\nKey points about conditional operations:");
    console.log("1. Conditional operations only succeed if the condition is
 met");
    console.log("2. ConditionalCheckFailedException indicates the condition
 wasn't met");
    console.log("3. Optimistic locking prevents race conditions in concurrent
 updates");
    console.log("4. attribute_exists and attribute_not_exists are useful for
 checking if attributes are present");
    console.log("5. Conditional operations are atomic - they either succeed
 completely or fail completely");
    console.log("6. You can use any valid comparison operators and functions in
 condition expressions");
    console.log("7. Conditional operations don't consume write capacity if the
 condition fails");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteItem
  - PutItem

- UpdateItem

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate conditional operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, Optional, Tuple, Union


def conditional_update(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    condition_attribute: str,
    condition_value: Any,
    update_attribute: str,
    update_value: Any,
) -> Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]:
    """
    Update an item only if a condition is met.

    This function demonstrates how to perform a conditional update operation
    and determine if the condition was met.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        condition_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        condition_value (Any): The value to compare against.
        update_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        update_value (Any): The new value to set.

    Returns:
        Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]: A tuple containing:
            - A boolean indicating if the update succeeded
            - The response from DynamoDB if successful, None otherwise
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)
```

```
    try:
        # Perform the conditional update
        response = table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression="SET #update_attr = :update_val",
            ConditionExpression="#cond_attr = :cond_val",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={
                "#update_attr": update_attribute,
                "#cond_attr": condition_attribute,
            },
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":update_val": update_value, ":cond_val":
 condition_value},
            ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
        )
        # Update succeeded, condition was met
        return True, response
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return False, None
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise


def conditional_delete(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], condition_attribute: str,
 condition_value: Any
) -> bool:
    """
    Delete an item only if a condition is met.

    This function demonstrates how to perform a conditional delete operation
    and determine if the condition was met.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to delete.
        condition_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        condition_value (Any): The value to compare against.

    Returns:
        bool: True if the delete succeeded (condition was met), False otherwise.
```

```
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
        # Perform the conditional delete
        table.delete_item(
            Key=key,
            ConditionExpression="#attr = :val",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={"#attr": condition_attribute},
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":val": condition_value},
        )
        # Delete succeeded, condition was met
        return True
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return False
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise


def optimistic_locking_update(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    version_attribute: str,
    update_attribute: str,
    update_value: Any,
) -> Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]:
    """
    Update an item using optimistic locking with a version attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to implement optimistic locking using
    a version attribute that is incremented with each update.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        version_attribute (str): The name of the version attribute.
        update_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        update_value (Any): The new value to set.
```

```
    Returns:
        Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]: A tuple containing:
            - A boolean indicating if the update succeeded
            - The response from DynamoDB if successful, None otherwise
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # First, get the current version
    try:
        response = table.get_item(
            Key=key,
            ProjectionExpression=f"#{version_attribute}",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={f"#{version_attribute}":
version_attribute},
        )

        item = response.get("Item", {})
        current_version = item.get(version_attribute, 0)

        # Now, try to update with a condition on the version
        try:
            update_response = table.update_item(
                Key=key,
                UpdateExpression=f"SET #{update_attribute} = :update_val,
#{version_attribute} = :new_version",
                ConditionExpression=f"#{version_attribute} = :current_version",
                ExpressionAttributeNames={
                    f"#{update_attribute}": update_attribute,
                    f"#{version_attribute}": version_attribute,
                },
                ExpressionAttributeValues={
                    ":update_val": update_value,
                    ":current_version": current_version,
                    ":new_version": current_version + 1,
                },
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
            # Update succeeded
            return True, update_response
        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
                # Version has changed, optimistic locking failed
```

```
                return False, None
            else:
                # Other error occurred
                raise
    except ClientError:
        # Error getting the item
        raise


def conditional_check_and_update(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    check_attribute: str,
    check_value: Any,
    update_attribute: str,
    update_value: Any,
    create_if_not_exists: bool = False,
) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
    """
    Check if an attribute has a specific value and update another attribute if it
 does.

    This function demonstrates a more complex conditional update that can also
    create the item if it doesn't exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        check_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        check_value (Any): The value to compare against.
        update_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        update_value (Any): The new value to set.
        create_if_not_exists (bool, optional): Whether to create the item if it
 doesn't exist.

    Returns:
        Union[Dict[str, Any], None]: The response from DynamoDB if successful,
 None otherwise.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
```

```
        if create_if_not_exists:
            # Use attribute_not_exists to create the item if it doesn't exist
            condition_expression = "attribute_not_exists(#pk) OR #check_attr
= :check_val"
            update_expression = "SET #update_attr = :update_val, #check_attr =
if_not_exists(#check_attr, :check_val)"

            # Get the partition key name from the key dictionary
            pk_name = next(iter(key))

            expression_attribute_names = {
                "#pk": pk_name,
                "#check_attr": check_attribute,
                "#update_attr": update_attribute,
            }
        else:
            # Only update if the check attribute has the expected value
            condition_expression = "#check_attr = :check_val"
            update_expression = "SET #update_attr = :update_val"

            expression_attribute_names = {
                "#check_attr": check_attribute,
                "#update_attr": update_attribute,
            }

        # Perform the conditional update
        response = table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression=update_expression,
            ConditionExpression=condition_expression,
            ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":check_val": check_value, ":update_val":
update_value},
            ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
        )
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return None
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

Example usage of conditional operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the conditional operations functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    key = {"ProductId": "prod123"}

    print("Example 1: Conditional Update")
    try:
        # Update the price only if the current stock is greater than 10
        success, response = conditional_update(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            condition_attribute="Stock",
            condition_value=10,
            update_attribute="Price",
            update_value=99.99,
        )

        if success:
            # Fix for mypy: Handle the case where response might be None
            attributes = {} if response is None else response.get("Attributes",
 {})
            print(f"Update succeeded! New values: {attributes}")
        else:
            print("Update failed because the condition was not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during conditional update: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Conditional Delete")
    try:
        # Delete the product only if it's discontinued
        success = conditional_delete(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            condition_attribute="Status",
            condition_value="Discontinued",
        )
```

```
        if success:
            print("Delete succeeded! The item was deleted.")
        else:
            print("Delete failed because the condition was not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during conditional delete: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Optimistic Locking")
    try:
        # Update with optimistic locking using a version attribute
        success, response = optimistic_locking_update(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            version_attribute="Version",
            update_attribute="Description",
            update_value="Updated product description",
        )

        if success:
            # Fix for mypy: Handle the case where response might be None
            attributes = {} if response is None else response.get("Attributes",
{})
            print(f"Optimistic locking update succeeded! New values:
{attributes}")
        else:
            print("Optimistic locking update failed because the version has
changed.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during optimistic locking update: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Conditional Check and Update")
    try:
        # Update the featured status if the product is in stock
        response = conditional_check_and_update(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            check_attribute="InStock",
            check_value=True,
            update_attribute="Featured",
            update_value=True,
            create_if_not_exists=True,
        )

        if response:
```

```
            print(
                f"Conditional check and update succeeded! New values:
{response.get('Attributes', {})}"
            )
        else:
            print("Conditional check and update failed because the condition was
not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during conditional check and update: {e}")

    print("\nUnderstanding Conditional Operations in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Conditional operations help maintain data integrity")
    print("2. They prevent race conditions in concurrent environments")
    print("3. Failed conditions result in ConditionalCheckFailedException")
    print("4. No DynamoDB capacity is consumed when conditions fail")
    print("5. Optimistic locking is a common pattern using version attributes")
    print("6. Conditions can be combined with logical operators (AND, OR, NOT)")
    print("7. Conditions can use comparison operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)")
    print(
        "8. attribute_exists() and attribute_not_exists() are useful for checking
attribute presence"
    )
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteItem
  - PutItem
  - UpdateItem

Use expression attribute names in DynamoDB with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use expression attribute names in DynamoDB.

- Work with reserved words in DynamoDB expressions.
- Use expression attribute name placeholders.
- Handle special characters in attribute names.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate expression attribute names using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Updates an attribute that is a reserved word in DynamoDB.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to
 update
     * attributes that are reserved words in DynamoDB.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param reservedWordAttribute The reserved word attribute to update
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateReservedWordAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String reservedWordAttribute,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
```

```
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attr = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attr", reservedWordAttribute))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Updates an attribute that contains special characters.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to
update
     * attributes that contain special characters.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param specialCharAttribute The attribute with special characters to
update
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String specialCharAttribute,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attr = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attr", specialCharAttribute))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
```

```
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Queries items using an attribute that is a reserved word.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names in a
query
     * when the attribute is a reserved word.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key
     * @param reservedWordAttribute The reserved word attribute to filter on
     * @param value The value to compare against
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static QueryResponse queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        String partitionKeyName,
        AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
        String reservedWordAttribute,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Define the query parameters using expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pkName", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attr", reservedWordAttribute);

        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":pkValue", partitionKeyValue);
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":value", value);

        QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression("#pkName = :pkValue")
            .filterExpression("#attr = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
```

```
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the query operation
        return dynamoDbClient.query(request);
    }

    /**
     * Updates a nested attribute with a path that contains reserved words.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to
update
     * nested attributes where the path contains reserved words.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param attributePath The path to the nested attribute as an array
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        List<String> attributePath,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Create expression attribute names for each part of the path
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        for (int i = 0; i < attributePath.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#attr" + i, attributePath.get(i));
        }

        // Build the attribute path using the expression attribute names
        StringBuilder attributePathExpression = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < attributePath.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                attributePathExpression.append(".");
            }
            attributePathExpression.append("#attr").append(i);
        }
```

```
        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET " + attributePathExpression.toString() + "
= :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Scans a table with multiple attribute name placeholders.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use multiple expression attribute names
     * in a complex filter expression.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param filters Object mapping attribute names to filter values
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static ScanResponse scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String,
AttributeValue> filters) {

        // Create expression attribute names and values
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        StringBuilder filterExpression = new StringBuilder();

        // Build the filter expression
        int index = 0;
        for (Map.Entry<String, AttributeValue> entry : filters.entrySet()) {
            String attrName = entry.getKey();
            AttributeValue attrValue = entry.getValue();

            String nameKey = "#attr" + index;
            String valueKey = ":val" + index;
```

```
            expressionAttributeNames.put(nameKey, attrName);
            expressionAttributeValues.put(valueKey, attrValue);

            // Add AND between conditions (except for the first one)
            if (index > 0) {
                filterExpression.append(" AND ");
            }

            filterExpression.append(nameKey).append(" = ").append(valueKey);
            index++;
        }

        // Define the scan parameters
        ScanRequest request = ScanRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression.toString())
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the scan operation
        return dynamoDbClient.scan(request);
    }
```

Example usage of expression attribute names with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating expression attribute names in
 DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Update an attribute that is a reserved word
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Updating an attribute that is a
 reserved word");
            UpdateItemResponse response1 = updateReservedWordAttribute(
                dynamoDbClient,
```

```
                tableName,
                key,
                "Size", // "SIZE" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Large").build());

            System.out.println("Updated attribute: " + response1.attributes());

            // Example 2: Update an attribute with special characters
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Updating an attribute with special
characters");
            UpdateItemResponse response2 = updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Product-Type", // Contains a hyphen, which is a special
character
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build());

            System.out.println("Updated attribute: " + response2.attributes());

            // Example 3: Query with a reserved word attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Querying with a reserved word
attribute");
            QueryResponse response3 = queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Category",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build(),
                "Count", // "COUNT" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
                AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build());

            System.out.println("Found " + response3.count() + " items");

            // Example 4: Update a nested attribute with reserved words in the
path
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Updating a nested attribute with
reserved words in the path");
            UpdateItemResponse response4 = updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                Arrays.asList("Dimensions", "Size", "Height"), // "SIZE" is a
reserved word
                AttributeValue.builder().n("30").build());
```

```
            System.out.println("Updated nested attribute: " +
 response4.attributes());

            // Example 5: Scan with multiple attribute name placeholders
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Scanning with multiple attribute
 name placeholders");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> filters = new HashMap<>();
            filters.put("Size", AttributeValue.builder().s("Large").build());
            filters.put("Count", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build());
            filters.put(
                "Product-Type",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build());

            ScanResponse response5 =
 scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(dynamoDbClient, tableName, filters);

            System.out.println("Found " + response5.count() + " items");

            // Show some common reserved words
            System.out.println("\nSome common DynamoDB reserved words:");
            List<String> commonReservedWords = getDynamoDBReservedWords();
            System.out.println(String.join(", ", commonReservedWords));

            // Explain expression attribute names
            System.out.println("\nKey points about expression attribute names:");
            System.out.println("1. Use expression attribute names (#name) for
 reserved words");
            System.out.println("2. Use expression attribute names for attributes
 with special characters");
            System.out.println(
                "3. Special characters include: spaces, hyphens, dots, and other
 non-alphanumeric characters");
            System.out.println("4. Expression attribute names are required for
 nested attributes with reserved words");
            System.out.println("5. You can use multiple expression attribute
 names in a single expression");
            System.out.println("6. Expression attribute names are case-
sensitive");
            System.out.println("7. Expression attribute names are only used in
 expressions, not in the actual data");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
```

```
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - Query
  - UpdateItem

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate expression attribute names using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand,
  QueryCommand,
  ScanCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Update an attribute that is a reserved word in DynamoDB.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
 * attributes that are reserved words in DynamoDB.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} reservedWordAttribute - The reserved word attribute to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateReservedWordAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  reservedWordAttribute,
```

```
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "SET #attr = :value",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: {
      "#attr": reservedWordAttribute
    },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update an attribute that contains special characters.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
 * attributes that contain special characters.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} specialCharAttribute - The attribute with special characters
 to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
```

```
  specialCharAttribute,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "SET #attr = :value",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: {
      "#attr": specialCharAttribute
    },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Query items using an attribute that is a reserved word.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names in a query
 * when the attribute is a reserved word.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param {any} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} reservedWordAttribute - The reserved word attribute to filter
 on
 * @param {any} value - The value to compare against
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
  config,
```

```
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  reservedWordAttribute,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the query parameters using expression attribute names
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    KeyConditionExpression: "#pkName = :pkValue",
    FilterExpression: "#attr = :value",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: {
      "#pkName": partitionKeyName,
      "#attr": reservedWordAttribute
    },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":pkValue": partitionKeyValue,
      ":value": value
    }
  };

  // Perform the query operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new QueryCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update a nested attribute with a path that contains reserved words.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
 * nested attributes where the path contains reserved words.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string[]} attributePath - The path to the nested attribute as an array
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
```

```
async function updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  attributePath,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create expression attribute names for each part of the path
  const expressionAttributeNames = {};
  for (let i = 0; i < attributePath.length; i++) {
    expressionAttributeNames[`#attr${i}`] = attributePath[i];
  }

  // Build the attribute path using the expression attribute names
  const attributePathExpression = attributePath
    .map((_, i) => `#attr${i}`)
    .join(".");

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${attributePathExpression} = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeNames: expressionAttributeNames,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Scan a table with multiple attribute name placeholders.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use multiple expression attribute names
```

```
 * in a complex filter expression.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} filters - Object mapping attribute names to filter values
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(
  config,
  tableName,
  filters
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create expression attribute names and values
  const expressionAttributeNames = {};
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};
  const filterConditions = [];

  // Build the filter expression
  Object.entries(filters).forEach(([attrName, value], index) => {
    const nameKey = `#attr${index}`;
    const valueKey = `:val${index}`;

    expressionAttributeNames[nameKey] = attrName;
    expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = value;
    filterConditions.push(`${nameKey} = ${valueKey}`);
  });

  // Join the filter conditions with AND
  const filterExpression = filterConditions.join(" AND ");

  // Define the scan parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    FilterExpression: filterExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeNames: expressionAttributeNames,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
  };

  // Perform the scan operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new ScanCommand(params));
```

```
  return response;
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of expression attribute names with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use expression attribute names.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
```

```
// Example parameters
const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
const tableName = "Products";
const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };

console.log("Demonstrating expression attribute names in DynamoDB");

try {
  // Example 1: Update an attribute that is a reserved word
  console.log("\nExample 1: Updating an attribute that is a reserved word");
  const response1 = await updateReservedWordAttribute(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "Size", // "SIZE" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
    "Large"
  );

  console.log("Updated attribute:", response1.Attributes);

  // Example 2: Update an attribute with special characters
  console.log("\nExample 2: Updating an attribute with special characters");
  const response2 = await updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "Product-Type", // Contains a hyphen, which is a special character
    "Electronics"
  );

  console.log("Updated attribute:", response2.Attributes);

  // Example 3: Query with a reserved word attribute
  console.log("\nExample 3: Querying with a reserved word attribute");
  const response3 = await queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
    config,
    tableName,
    "Category",
    "Electronics",
    "Count", // "COUNT" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
    10
  );

  console.log(`Found ${response3.Items.length} items`);
```

```
   // Example 4: Update a nested attribute with reserved words in the path
   console.log("\nExample 4: Updating a nested attribute with reserved words in
the path");
   const response4 = await updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
     config,
     tableName,
     key,
     ["Dimensions", "Size", "Height"], // "SIZE" is a reserved word
     30
   );

   console.log("Updated nested attribute:", response4.Attributes);

   // Example 5: Scan with multiple attribute name placeholders
   console.log("\nExample 5: Scanning with multiple attribute name
placeholders");
   const response5 = await scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(
     config,
     tableName,
     {
       "Size": "Large",
       "Count": 10,
       "Product-Type": "Electronics"
     }
   );

   console.log(`Found ${response5.Items.length} items`);

   // Get the final state of the item
   console.log("\nFinal state of the item:");
   const item = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
   console.log(JSON.stringify(item, null, 2));

   // Show some common reserved words
   console.log("\nSome common DynamoDB reserved words:");
   const commonReservedWords = [
     "ABORT", "ABSOLUTE", "ACTION", "ADD", "ALL", "ALTER", "AND", "ANY", "AS",
     "ASC", "BETWEEN", "BY", "CASE", "CAST", "COLUMN", "CONNECT", "COUNT",
     "CREATE", "CURRENT", "DATE", "DELETE", "DESC", "DROP", "ELSE", "EXISTS",
     "FOR", "FROM", "GRANT", "GROUP", "HAVING", "IN", "INDEX", "INSERT", "INTO",
     "IS", "JOIN", "KEY", "LEVEL", "LIKE", "LIMIT", "LOCAL", "MAX", "MIN",
"NAME",
     "NOT", "NULL", "OF", "ON", "OR", "ORDER", "OUTER", "REPLACE", "RETURN",
```

```
      "SELECT", "SET", "SIZE", "TABLE", "THEN", "TO", "UPDATE", "USER", "VALUES",
      "VIEW", "WHERE"
    ];
    console.log(commonReservedWords.join(", "));

    // Explain expression attribute names
    console.log("\nKey points about expression attribute names:");
    console.log("1. Use expression attribute names (#name) for reserved words");
    console.log("2. Use expression attribute names for attributes with special
 characters");
    console.log("3. Special characters include: spaces, hyphens, dots, and other
 non-alphanumeric characters");
    console.log("4. Expression attribute names are required for nested attributes
 with reserved words");
    console.log("5. You can use multiple expression attribute names in a single
 expression");
    console.log("6. Expression attribute names are case-sensitive");
    console.log("7. Expression attribute names are only used in expressions, not
 in the actual data");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - Query
  - UpdateItem

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate expression attribute names using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, List


def use_reserved_word_attribute(
```

```
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], reserved_word: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an attribute whose name is a DynamoDB reserved word.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to work with
    attributes that have names that are DynamoDB reserved words.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        reserved_word (str): The reserved word to use as an attribute name.
        value (Any): The value to set for the attribute.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use expression attribute names to handle the reserved word
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #reserved_attr = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#reserved_attr": reserved_word},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def use_special_character_attribute(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], attribute_with_special_chars: str,
 value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an attribute whose name contains special characters.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to work with
    attributes that have names containing special characters like spaces, dots,
 or hyphens.
```

```
    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        attribute_with_special_chars (str): The attribute name with special
 characters.
        value (Any): The value to set for the attribute.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use expression attribute names to handle special characters
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #special_attr = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#special_attr": attribute_with_special_chars},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def query_with_attribute_names(
    table_name: str,
    partition_key_name: str,
    partition_key_value: str,
    filter_attribute_name: str,
    filter_value: Any,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query a table using expression attribute names for both key and filter
 attributes.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names in a query
 operation
    for both the key condition expression and filter expression.

    Args:
```

```
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to filter on.
        filter_value (Any): The value to compare against in the filter.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use expression attribute names for both key condition and filter
    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression="#pk = :pk_val",
        FilterExpression="#filter_attr = :filter_val",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#pk": partition_key_name, "#filter_attr":
 filter_attribute_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":pk_val": partition_key_value, ":filter_val":
 filter_value},
    )

    return response


def update_nested_attribute_with_dots(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], path_with_dots: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a nested attribute using a path with dot notation.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to work with
    nested attributes specified using dot notation.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        path_with_dots (str): The path to the nested attribute using dot notation
 (e.g., "a.b.c").
        value (Any): The value to set for the nested attribute.

    Returns:
```

```
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated
 attribute values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Split the path into components
    path_parts = path_with_dots.split(".")

    # Build the update expression and attribute names
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {}

    # Build the path expression
    path_expression = ""
    for i, part in enumerate(path_parts):
        name_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
        expression_attribute_names[name_placeholder] = part

        if i == 0:
            path_expression = name_placeholder
        else:
            path_expression += f".{name_placeholder}"

    # Complete the update expression
    update_expression += f"{path_expression} = :value"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def demonstrate_attribute_name_requirements(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any])
 -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate the requirements and allowed characters for attribute names.
```

```
    This function shows examples of valid and invalid attribute names and how to
    handle them using expression attribute names.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Examples of attribute names with different characteristics
    examples = {
        "valid_standard": "NormalAttribute",  # Standard attribute name (no
placeholder needed)
        "valid_with_underscore": "Normal_Attribute",  # Underscore is allowed
        "valid_with_number": "Attribute123",  # Numbers are allowed
        "reserved_word": "Timestamp",  # Reserved word (requires placeholder)
        "starts_with_number": "123Attribute",  # Starts with number (valid but
may need placeholder in some contexts)
        "with_space": "Attribute Name",  # Contains space (requires placeholder)
        "with_dot": "Attribute.Name",  # Contains dot (requires placeholder)
        "with_hyphen": "Attribute-Name",  # Contains hyphen (requires
placeholder)
        "with_special_chars": "Attribute#$%",  # Contains special characters
(requires placeholder)
    }

    results = {}

    # Try to update each attribute type
    for example_type, attr_name in examples.items():
        try:
            # For attributes that don't need placeholders, try direct reference
            if example_type in ["valid_standard", "valid_with_underscore",
"valid_with_number"]:
                try:
                    # Try without expression attribute names first
                    response = table.update_item(
                        Key=key,
```

```
                        UpdateExpression=f"SET {attr_name} = :value",
                        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": f"Value for
{attr_name}"},
                        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
                    )
                    results[example_type] = {
                        "attribute_name": attr_name,
                        "success": True,
                        "needed_placeholder": False,
                        "response": response,
                    }
                except ClientError:
                    # If direct reference fails, try with placeholder
                    response = table.update_item(
                        Key=key,
                        UpdateExpression="SET #attr = :value",
                        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#attr": attr_name},
                        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": f"Value for
{attr_name}"},
                        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
                    )
                    results[example_type] = {
                        "attribute_name": attr_name,
                        "success": True,
                        "needed_placeholder": True,
                        "response": response,
                    }
            else:
                # For attributes that definitely need placeholders
                response = table.update_item(
                    Key=key,
                    UpdateExpression="SET #attr = :value",
                    ExpressionAttributeNames={"#attr": attr_name},
                    ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": f"Value for
{attr_name}"},
                    ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
                )
                results[example_type] = {
                    "attribute_name": attr_name,
                    "success": True,
                    "needed_placeholder": True,
                    "response": response,
                }
        except ClientError as e:
```

```
            results[example_type] = {"attribute_name": attr_name, "success":
 False, "error": str(e)}

    return results
```

Example usage of expression attribute names with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use expression attribute names in DynamoDB."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    key = {"ProductId": "prod123"}

    print("Example 1: Using a reserved word as an attribute name")
    try:
        response = use_reserved_word_attribute(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, reserved_word="Timestamp",
 value="2025-05-14T12:00:00Z"
        )
        print(f"Reserved word attribute updated successfully:
 {response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating reserved word attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Using an attribute name with special characters")
    try:
        response = use_special_character_attribute(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            attribute_with_special_chars="Product Info",
            value="Special product information",
        )
        print(f"Special character attribute updated successfully:
 {response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating special character attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Querying with expression attribute names")
    try:
        response = query_with_attribute_names(
```

```
            table_name=table_name,
            partition_key_name="Category",
            partition_key_value="Electronics",
            filter_attribute_name="Price",
            filter_value=500,
        )
        print(
            f"Query with expression attribute names returned
{len(response.get('Items', []))} items"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error querying with expression attribute names: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Updating a nested attribute with dot notation")
    try:
        response = update_nested_attribute_with_dots(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            path_with_dots="Product.Details.Specifications",
            value={"Weight": "2.5 kg", "Dimensions": "30x20x10 cm"},
        )
        print(f"Nested attribute updated successfully:
{response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating nested attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 5: Demonstrating attribute name requirements")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_attribute_name_requirements(table_name=table_name,
key=key)

        print("Attribute Name Requirements Results:")
        for example_type, result in results.items():
            if result.get("success", False):
                needed_placeholder = result.get("needed_placeholder", True)
                print(
                    f"  - {example_type}: '{result['attribute_name']}' -
{'Requires' if needed_placeholder else 'Does not require'} placeholder"
                )
            else:
                print(
                    f"  - {example_type}: '{result['attribute_name']}' - Failed:
{result.get('error', 'Unknown error')}"
                )
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error demonstrating attribute name requirements: {e}")

    print("\nCommon DynamoDB Reserved Words (sample):")
    reserved_words = get_common_reserved_words()
    print(", ".join(reserved_words[:20]) + "... (and many more)")

    print("\nWhen to Use Expression Attribute Names:")
    print("1. When the attribute name is a DynamoDB reserved word")
    print("2. When the attribute name contains special characters (spaces, dots,
hyphens)")
    print("3. When the attribute name begins with a number")
    print("4. When working with nested attributes using dot notation")
    print("5. When you need to reference the same attribute multiple times in an
expression")

    print("\nExpression Attribute Name Requirements:")
    print("1. Must begin with a pound sign (#)")
    print("2. After the pound sign, must contain at least one character")
    print("3. Can contain alphanumeric characters and underscore (_)")
    print("4. Are case-sensitive")
    print("5. Must be unique within a single expression")

    print("\nAttribute Name Requirements in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Can begin with a-z, A-Z, or 0-9")
    print("2. Can contain a-z, A-Z, 0-9, underscore (_), dash (-), and dot (.)")
    print("3. Are case-sensitive")
    print("4. No length restrictions, but practical limits apply")
    print("5. Cannot be a DynamoDB reserved word if used directly in
expressions")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Query
  - UpdateItem

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs

- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Work with DynamoDB Local Secondary Indexes using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to create and query tables with Local Secondary Indexes.

- Create a table with a Local Secondary Index (LSI).

- Create a table with multiple LSIs with different projection types.
- Query data using LSIs.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with a Local Secondary Index.

```
# Create a table with a Local Secondary Index
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerOrders \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=OrderID,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=OrderDate,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=OrderID,KeyType=RANGE \
    --local-secondary-indexes \
        "IndexName=OrderDateIndex,\
        KeySchema=[{AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH},
{AttributeName=OrderDate,KeyType=RANGE}],\
        Projection={ProjectionType=ALL}" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST
```

Create a table with multiple LSIs.

```
# Create a table with multiple Local Secondary Indexes
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerDetails \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Name,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Email,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=RegistrationDate,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=Name,KeyType=RANGE \
    --local-secondary-indexes \
        "[
```

```
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"EmailIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"CustomerID\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"Email\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"INCLUDE\",
\"NonKeyAttributes\":[\"Address\",\"Phone\"]}
            },
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"RegistrationIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"CustomerID\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"RegistrationDate\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE
\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"KEYS_ONLY\"}
            }
        ]" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST
```

Query data using LSIs.

```
# Query the OrderDateIndex LSI
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name CustomerOrders \
    --index-name OrderDateIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "CustomerID = :custId AND OrderDate BETWEEN :date1
 AND :date2" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{
        ":custId": {"S": "C1"},
        ":date1": {"S": "2023-01-01"},
        ":date2": {"S": "2023-02-01"}
    }'

# Query with a filter expression
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name CustomerOrders \
    --index-name OrderDateIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "CustomerID = :custId" \
    --filter-expression "Amount > :amount" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{
```

```
        ":custId": {"S": "C1"},
        ":amount": {"N": "150"}
    }'
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - Query

Work with DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live features.

- Create a table with Streams enabled.
- Describe Streams.
- Create a Lambda function for processing Streams.
- Enable TTL on a table.
- Add items with TTL attributes.
- Describe TTL settings.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with Streams enabled.

```
# Create a table with DynamoDB Streams enabled
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES
```

Describe Streams.

```
# Get information about the stream
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.StreamSpecification"

# Get the stream ARN
STREAM_ARN=$(aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.LatestStreamArn" \
    --output text)

echo "Stream ARN: $STREAM_ARN"

# Describe the stream
aws dynamodbstreams describe-stream \
    --stream-arn $STREAM_ARN
```

Create a Lambda function for Streams.

```
# Step 1: Create an IAM role for the Lambda function
cat > trust-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

aws iam create-role \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://trust-policy.json

# Step 2: Attach permissions to the role
```

```
aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaDynamoDBExecutionRole

# Step 3: Create a Lambda function (code would be in a separate file)
echo "Lambda function creation would be done separately with appropriate code"

# Step 4: Create an event source mapping
echo "Example command to create event source mapping:"
echo "aws lambda create-event-source-mapping \\"
echo "    --function-name ProcessDynamoDBRecords \\"
echo "    --event-source $STREAM_ARN \\"
echo "    --batch-size 100 \\"
echo "    --starting-position LATEST"
```

Enable TTL on a table.

```
# Create a table for TTL demonstration
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name TTLDemo

# Enable TTL on the table
aws dynamodb update-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --time-to-live-specification "Enabled=true, AttributeName=ExpirationTime"
```

Add items with TTL attributes.

```
# Calculate expiration time (current time + 1 day in seconds)
EXPIRATION_TIME=$(date -d "+1 day" +%s)

# Add an item with TTL attribute
```

```
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item1"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 day"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME'"}
    }'

# Add an item that expires in 1 hour
EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR=$(date -d "+1 hour" +%s)
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item2"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 hour"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR'"}
    }'
```

Describe TTL settings.

```
# Describe TTL settings for a table
aws dynamodb describe-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - DescribeTimeToLive
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTimeToLive

Work with DynamoDB global tables and multi-Region replication with eventual consistency (MREC) using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage DynamoDB global tables with multi-Region replication with eventual consistency (MREC).

- Create a table with multi-Region replication (MREC).
- Put and get items from replica tables.
- Remove replicas one-by-one.
- Clean up by deleting the table.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with multi-Region replication.

```
# Step 1: Create a new table (MusicTable) in US East (Ohio), with DynamoDB
 Streams enabled (NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES)
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES \
    --region us-east-2

# Step 2: Create an identical MusicTable table in US East (N. Virginia)
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Create": {
        "RegionName": "us-east-1"
      }
    }
```

```
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2

# Step 3: Create a table in Europe (Ireland)
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Create": {
        "RegionName": "eu-west-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2
```

Describe the multi-Region table.

```
# Step 4: View the list of replicas created using describe-table
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --region us-east-2 \
    --query 'Table.
{TableName:TableName,TableStatus:TableStatus,MultiRegionConsistency:MultiRegionConsistenc
{Region:RegionName,Status:ReplicaStatus}}'
```

Put items in a replica table.

```
# Step 5: To verify that replication is working, add a new item to the Music
 table in US East (Ohio)
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --item '{"Artist": {"S":"item_1"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Song Value 1"}}' \
    --region us-east-2
```

Get items from replica tables.

```
# Step 6: Wait for a few seconds, and then check to see whether the item has
 been
# successfully replicated to US East (N. Virginia) and Europe (Ireland)
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"item_1"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Song Value 1"}}' \
    --region us-east-1

aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"item_1"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Song Value 1"}}' \
    --region eu-west-1
```

Remove replicas.

```
# Step 7: Delete the replica table in Europe (Ireland) Region
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Delete": {
        "RegionName": "eu-west-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2

# Delete the replica table in US East (N. Virginia) Region
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Delete": {
        "RegionName": "us-east-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2
```

Clean up by deleting the table.

```
# Clean up: Delete the primary table
aws dynamodb delete-table --table-name MusicTable --region us-east-2

echo "Global table demonstration complete."
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTable

Work with DynamoDB resource tagging using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage tags for DynamoDB resources.

- Create a table with tags.
- List tags for a resource.
- Add tags to a resource.
- Remove tags from a resource.
- Filter tables by tags.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with tags.

```
# Create a table with tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name TaggedTable \
```

```
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Environment,Value=Production \
        Key=Project,Value=Analytics \
        Key=Owner,Value=DataTeam
```

List tags for a resource.

```
# Get the table ARN
TABLE_ARN=$(aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name TaggedTable \
    --query "Table.TableArn" \
    --output text)

# List tags for the table
aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource \
    --resource-arn $TABLE_ARN
```

Add tags to a resource.

```
# Add tags to an existing table
aws dynamodb tag-resource \
    --resource-arn $TABLE_ARN \
    --tags \
        Key=CostCenter,Value=12345 \
        Key=BackupSchedule,Value=Daily
```

Remove tags from a resource.

```
# Remove tags from a table
aws dynamodb untag-resource \
    --resource-arn $TABLE_ARN \
    --tag-keys Owner BackupSchedule
```

Filter tables by tags.

```
# Create another table with different tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name AnotherTaggedTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Environment,Value=Development \
        Key=Project,Value=Testing

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name AnotherTaggedTable

# List all tables
echo "All tables:"
aws dynamodb list-tables

# Get ARNs for all tables
echo -e "\nFiltering tables by Environment=Production tag:"
TABLE_ARNS=$(aws dynamodb list-tables --query "TableNames[*]" --output text |
 xargs -I {} aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name {} --query "Table.TableArn"
 --output text)

# Find tables with specific tag
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    TAGS=$(aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN --query "Tags[?
Key=='Environment' && Value=='Production']" --output text)
    if [ ! -z "$TAGS" ]; then
        echo "Table with Production tag: $TABLE_NAME"
    fi
done
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - ListTagsOfResource
  - TagResource

- UntagResource

Work with DynamoDB table encryption using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage encryption options for DynamoDB tables.

- Create a table with default encryption.
- Create a table with a customer managed CMK.
- Update table encryption settings.
- Describe table encryption.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with default encryption.

```
# Create a table with default encryption (AWS owned key)
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS
```

Create a table with a customer managed CMK.

```
# Step 1: Create a customer managed key in KMS
aws kms create-key \
    --description "Key for DynamoDB table encryption" \
    --key-usage ENCRYPT_DECRYPT \
    --customer-master-key-spec SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT

# Store the key ID for later use
KEY_ID=$(aws kms list-keys --query "Keys[?contains(KeyArn, 'Key for
 DynamoDB')].KeyId" --output text)
```

```
# Step 2: Create a table with the customer managed key
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name SensitiveData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Update table encryption.

```
# Update a table to use a different KMS key
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Describe table encryption.

```
# Describe the table to see encryption settings
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --query "Table.SSEDescription"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateKey
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - UpdateTable

Serverless examples for DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to use DynamoDB with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public void FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
```

```
        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event ID: {record.EventID}");
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event Name: {record.EventName}");

            context.Logger.LogInformation(JsonSerializer.Serialize(record));
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "fmt"
)

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent) (*string,
 error) {
 if len(event.Records) == 0 {
  return nil, fmt.Errorf("received empty event")
 }
```

```
 for _, record := range event.Records {
   LogDynamoDBRecord(record)
 }

 message := fmt.Sprintf("Records processed: %d", len(event.Records))
 return &message, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}

func LogDynamoDBRecord(record events.DynamoDBEventRecord){
 fmt.Println(record.EventID)
 fmt.Println(record.EventName)
 fmt.Printf("%+v\n", record.Change)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;

public class example implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent, Void> {
```

```
    private static final Gson GSON = new
 GsonBuilder().setPrettyPrinting().create();

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(DynamodbEvent event, Context context) {
        System.out.println(GSON.toJson(event));
        event.getRecords().forEach(this::logDynamoDBRecord);
        return null;
    }

    private void logDynamoDBRecord(DynamodbStreamRecord record) {
        System.out.println(record.getEventID());
        System.out.println(record.getEventName());
        System.out.println("DynamoDB Record: " +
 GSON.toJson(record.getDynamodb()));
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
};

const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
```

```
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
}
const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';
```

```
class Handler extends DynamoDbHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;

    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleDynamoDb(DynamoDbEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing DynamoDb table items");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $eventName = $record->getEventName();
            $keys = $record->getKeys();
            $old = $record->getOldImage();
            $new = $record->getNewImage();

            $this->logger->info("Event Name:".$eventName."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Keys:". json_encode($keys)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Old Image:". json_encode($old)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("New Image:". json_encode($new));

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be
 marked as failed
        }

        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords items");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    print(json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    for record in event['Records']:
        log_dynamodb_record(record)

def log_dynamodb_record(record):
    print(record['eventID'])
    print(record['eventName'])
    print(f"DynamoDB Record: {json.dumps(record['dynamodb'])}")
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    return 'received empty event' if event['Records'].empty?

    event['Records'].each do |record|
      log_dynamodb_record(record)
    end

    "Records processed: #{event['Records'].length}"
  end

  def log_dynamodb_record(record)
    puts record['eventID']
    puts record['eventName']
    puts "DynamoDB Record: #{JSON.generate(record['dynamodb'])}"
  end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord},
   };


// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
```

```
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->Result<(), Error> {

    let records = &event.payload.records;
    tracing::info!("event payload: {:?}",records);
    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_dynamo_dbrecord(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Dynamo db records processed");

    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_dynamo_dbrecord(record: &EventRecord)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);
    tracing::info!("EventName: {}", record.event_name);
    tracing::info!("DynamoDB Record: {:?}", record.change );
    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())
```

```
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code examples show how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public StreamsEventResponse FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent,
 ILambdaContext context)

    {
```

```
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        StreamsEventResponse streamsEventResponse = new StreamsEventResponse();

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                var sequenceNumber = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
                context.Logger.LogInformation(sequenceNumber);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                context.Logger.LogError(ex.Message);
                batchItemFailures.Add(new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure()
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber });
            }
        }

        if (batchItemFailures.Count > 0)
        {
            streamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailures = batchItemFailures;
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
        return streamsEventResponse;
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type BatchItemFailure struct {
 ItemIdentifier string `json:"ItemIdentifier"`
}

type BatchResult struct {
 BatchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure `json:"BatchItemFailures"`
}

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent)
 (*BatchResult, error) {
 var batchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure
 curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

 for _, record := range event.Records {
  // Process your record
  curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Change.SequenceNumber
 }

 if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
  batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier:
 curRecordSequenceNumber})
 }

 batchResult := BatchResult{
  BatchItemFailures: batchItemFailures,
 }

 return &batchResult, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.dynamodb.StreamRecord;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessDynamodbRecords implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(DynamodbEvent input, Context
 context) {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord dynamodbStreamRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
          try {
                //Process your record
                StreamRecord dynamodbRecord = dynamodbStreamRecord.getDynamodb();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = dynamodbRecord.getSequenceNumber();
```

```
            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed
 item immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
export const handler = async (event) => {
  const records = event.Records;
  let curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

  for (const record of records) {
    try {
      // Process your record
      curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
    } catch (e) {
      // Return failed record's sequence number
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier:
 curRecordSequenceNumber }] };
    }
```

```
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};
```

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import {
  DynamoDBBatchResponse,
  DynamoDBBatchItemFailure,
  DynamoDBStreamEvent,
} from "aws-lambda";

export const handler = async (
  event: DynamoDBStreamEvent
): Promise<DynamoDBBatchResponse> => {
  const batchItemFailures: DynamoDBBatchItemFailure[] = [];
  let curRecordSequenceNumber;

  for (const record of event.Records) {
    curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb?.SequenceNumber;

    if (curRecordSequenceNumber) {
      batchItemFailures.push({
        itemIdentifier: curRecordSequenceNumber,
      });
    }
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures };
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $dynamoDbEvent = new DynamoDbEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");

        $records = $dynamoDbEvent->getRecords();
        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
```

```
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    records = event["Records"]
    cur_record_sequence_number = ""

    records.each do |record|
      begin
        # Process your record
        cur_record_sequence_number = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
      rescue StandardError => e
        # Return failed record's sequence number
        return {"batchItemFailures" => [{"itemIdentifier" =>
 cur_record_sequence_number}]}
      end
```

```
    end

    {"batchItemFailures" => []}
  end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord, StreamRecord},
    streams::{DynamoDbBatchItemFailure, DynamoDbEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

/// Process the stream record
fn process_record(record: &EventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let stream_record: &StreamRecord = &record.change;

    // process your stream record here...
    tracing::info!("Data: {:?}", stream_record);

    Ok(())
}

/// Main Lambda handler here...
async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->
 Result<DynamoDbEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = DynamoDbEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    let records = &event.payload.records;
```

```
    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in records {
        tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);

        // Couldn't find a sequence number
        if record.change.sequence_number.is_none() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: Some("".to_string()),
            });
            return Ok(response);
        }

        // Process your record here...
        if process_record(record).is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.change.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!("Successfully processed {} record(s)", records.len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
        .init();
```

```
    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

AWS community contributions for DynamoDB

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Examples

- Build and test a serverless application

Build and test a serverless application

The following code examples show how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Go

SDK for Go V2

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Go SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Java SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Rust SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Code examples for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Elastic Block Store with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon EBS User Guide** – More information about Amazon EBS.
- **Amazon EBS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon EBS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CompleteSnapshot with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutSnapshotBlock with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartSnapshot with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Elastic Block Store with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CompleteSnapshot with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutSnapshotBlock with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartSnapshot with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon EBS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon EBS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Elastic Block Store API Reference.

Examples

- Use CompleteSnapshot with an AWS SDK
- Use PutSnapshotBlock with an AWS SDK
- Use StartSnapshot with an AWS SDK

Use `CompleteSnapshot` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CompleteSnapshot`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn finish(client: &Client, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .complete_snapshot()
        .changed_blocks_count(2)
```

```
        .snapshot_id(id)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Snapshot ID {}", id);
    println!("The state is 'completed' when all of the modified blocks have been
 transferred to Amazon S3.");
    println!("Use the get-snapshot-state code example to get the state of the
 snapshot.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CompleteSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `PutSnapshotBlock` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PutSnapshotBlock`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn add_block(
    client: &Client,
    id: &str,
    idx: usize,
    block: Vec<u8>,
    checksum: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .put_snapshot_block()
        .snapshot_id(id)
        .block_index(idx as i32)
```

```
        .block_data(ByteStream::from(block))
        .checksum(checksum)
        .checksum_algorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm::ChecksumAlgorithmSha256)
        .data_length(EBS_BLOCK_SIZE as i32)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutSnapshotBlock in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `StartSnapshot` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `StartSnapshot`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn start(client: &Client, description: &str) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let snapshot = client
        .start_snapshot()
        .description(description)
        .encrypted(false)
        .volume_size(1)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(snapshot.snapshot_id.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see StartSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon EC2 User Guide** – More information about Amazon EC2.
- **Amazon EC2 API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon EC2 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace EC2Actions;
```

```
public class HelloEc2
{
    /// <summary>
    /// HelloEc2 lists the existing security groups for the default users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2).
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var ec2Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonEC2>();

        try
        {
            // Retrieve information for up to 10 Amazon EC2 security groups.
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest { MaxResults = 10 };
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                ec2Client.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
 paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            // Now print the security groups returned by the call to
            // DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the EC2 Hello Service example. " +
                              "\nLet's list your Security Groups:");
            securityGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                    $"Security group: {group.GroupName} ID: {group.GroupId}");
            });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon EC2 service error occurred while
 listing security groups. {ex.Message}");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing security groups.
 {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ec2)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_ec2")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
```

```
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_ec2.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_ec2.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/ec2/EC2Client.h>
#include <aws/ec2/model/DescribeInstancesRequest.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>
```

```
/*
 *  A "Hello EC2" starter application which initializes an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) client and describes
 *  the Amazon EC2 instances.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_ec2'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    (void)argc;
    (void)argv;

    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfig);
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesRequest request;
        bool header = false;
        bool done = false;
        while (!done) {
            Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeInstances(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                if (!header) {
                    std::cout << std::left <<
                              std::setw(48) << "Name" <<
                              std::setw(20) << "ID" <<
                              std::setw(25) << "Ami" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "Type" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "State" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "Monitoring" << std::endl;
                    header = true;
                }
```

```
                const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Reservation> &reservations =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetReservations();

                for (const auto &reservation: reservations) {
                    const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
                            reservation.GetInstances();
                    for (const auto &instance: instances) {
                        Aws::String instanceStateString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceStateNameMapper::GetNameForInstanceStateName(
                                        instance.GetState().GetName());

                        Aws::String typeString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceTypeMapper::GetNameForInstanceType(
                                        instance.GetInstanceType());

                        Aws::String monitorString =

Aws::EC2::Model::MonitoringStateMapper::GetNameForMonitoringState(
                                        instance.GetMonitoring().GetState());
                        Aws::String name = "Unknown";

                        const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags =
instance.GetTags();
                        auto nameIter = std::find_if(tags.cbegin(), tags.cend(),
                                                     [](const
Aws::EC2::Model::Tag &tag) {
                                                         return tag.GetKey() ==
"Name";
                                                     });
                        if (nameIter != tags.cend()) {
                            name = nameIter->GetValue();
                        }
                        std::cout <<
                                  std::setw(48) << name <<
                                  std::setw(20) << instance.GetInstanceId() <<
                                  std::setw(25) << instance.GetImageId() <<
                                  std::setw(15) << typeString <<
                                  std::setw(15) << instanceStateString <<
                                  std::setw(15) << monitorString << std::endl;
                    }
                }
```

```
                if (!outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken().empty()) {
                    request.SetNextToken(outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken());
                } else {
                    done = true;
                }
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to describe EC2 instances:" <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
     *
     * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
     *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
     *         security group information.
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
            .groupNames(groupName)
            .build();

        DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
        AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.securityGroups().stream()
                .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
                .findFirst()
                .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
            if (groupId == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the
name: " + groupName);
            }
            return groupId;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

// Call DescribeSecurityGroups and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new EC2Client();
  try {
    const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({}),
    );

    const securityGroupList = SecurityGroups.slice(0, 9)
      .map((sg) => ` • ${sg.GroupId}: ${sg.GroupName}`)
      .join("\n");

    console.log(
      "Hello, Amazon EC2! Let's list up to 10 of your security groups:",
    );
    console.log(securityGroupList);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2SecurityGroups(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        response.securityGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("Found Security Group with id ${group.groupId}, vpc id
 ${group.vpcId} and description ${group.description}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def hello_ec2(ec2_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list the security groups in your
 account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                       access to AWS EC2 services.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon EC2! Let's list up to 10 of your security groups:")
    try:
        paginator = ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")
```

```
        response_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={'MaxItems': 10})
 # List only 10 security groups.
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO) # Enable logging.
        for page in response_iterator:
            for sg in page["SecurityGroups"]:
                logger.info(f"\t{sg['GroupId']}: {sg['GroupName']}")
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error("Failed to list security groups.")
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
            logger.error("You do not have permission to list security groups.")
        raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_ec2(boto3.client("ec2"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'
require 'logger'

# EC2Manager is a class responsible for managing EC2 operations
# such as listing all EC2 instances in the current AWS account.
class EC2Manager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all EC2 instances in the current AWS account.
```

```
  def list_instances
    @logger.info('Listing instances')

    instances = fetch_instances

    if instances.empty?
      @logger.info('You have no instances')
    else
      print_instances(instances)
    end
  end

  private

  # Fetches all EC2 instances using pagination.
  #
  # @return [Array<Aws::EC2::Types::Instance>] List of EC2 instances.
  def fetch_instances
    paginator = @client.describe_instances
    instances = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      page.reservations.each do |reservation|
        reservation.instances.each do |instance|
          instances << instance
        end
      end
    end

    instances
  end

  # Prints details of the given EC2 instances.
  #
  # @param instances [Array<Aws::EC2::Types::Instance>] List of EC2 instances to
 print.
  def print_instances(instances)
    instances.each do |instance|
      @logger.info("Instance ID: #{instance.instance_id}")
      @logger.info("Instance Type: #{instance.instance_type}")
      @logger.info("Public IP: #{instance.public_ip_address}")
      @logger.info("Public DNS Name: #{instance.public_dns_name}")
      @logger.info("\n")
    end
```

```
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
  manager = EC2Manager.new(ec2_client)
  manager.list_instances
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_security_groups(client: &aws_sdk_ec2::Client, group_ids:
 Vec<String>) {
    let response = client
        .describe_security_groups()
        .set_group_ids(Some(group_ids))
        .send()
        .await;

    match response {
        Ok(output) => {
            for group in output.security_groups() {
                println!(
                    "Found Security Group {} ({}), vpc id {} and description {}",
                    group.group_name().unwrap_or("unknown"),
                    group.group_id().unwrap_or("id-unknown"),
                    group.vpc_id().unwrap_or("vpcid-unknown"),
                    group.description().unwrap_or("(none)")
                );
            }
```

```
        }
        Err(err) => {
            let err = err.into_service_error();
            let meta = err.meta();
            let message = meta.message().unwrap_or("unknown");
            let code = meta.code().unwrap_or("unknown");
            eprintln!("Error listing EC2 Security Groups: ({code}) {message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "hello-ec2",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
```

```
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "hello-ec2",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSEC2", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The `entry.swift` file.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a simple
// operation using Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation

import AWSEC2

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
```

```
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "hello-ec2",
        abstract: """
        Demonstrates a simple operation using Amazon EC2.
        """,
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to make a call to Amazon EC2 using the AWS SDK for
Swift.
        """
    )

    /// Return an array of strings giving the names of every security group
    /// the user is a member of.
    ///
    /// - Parameter ec2Client: The `EC2Client` to use when calling
    ///   `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings giving the names of every security
    ///   group the user is a member of.
    func getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: EC2Client) async -> [String] {
        let pages = ec2Client.describeSecurityGroupsPaginated(
            input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput()
        )

        var groupNames: [String] = []

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.securityGroups else {
                    print("*** Error: No groups returned.")
                    continue
                }
```

```
                for group in groups {
                    groupNames.append(group.groupName ?? "<unknown>")
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }

        return groupNames
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let ec2Config = try await EC2Client.EC2ClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ec2Client = EC2Client(config: ec2Config)

        let groupNames = await getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: ec2Client)

        print("Found \(groupNames.count) security group(s):")

        for group in groupNames {
            print("    \(group)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon EC2
  - Learn the basics of Amazon EC2 with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs
    - Use AcceptVpcPeeringConnection with a CLI
    - Use AllocateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AllocateHosts with a CLI
    - Use AssignPrivateIpAddresses with a CLI
    - Use AssociateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AssociateDhcpOptions with a CLI
    - Use AssociateRouteTable with a CLI
    - Use AttachInternetGateway with a CLI
    - Use AttachNetworkInterface with a CLI
    - Use AttachVolume with a CLI
    - Use AttachVpnGateway with a CLI
    - Use AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress with a CLI
    - Use AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CancelCapacityReservation with a CLI
    - Use CancelImportTask with a CLI
    - Use CancelSpotFleetRequests with a CLI
    - Use CancelSpotInstanceRequests with a CLI
    - Use ConfirmProductInstance with a CLI
    - Use CopyImage with a CLI
    - Use CopySnapshot with a CLI
    - Use CreateCapacityReservation with a CLI
    - Use CreateCustomerGateway with a CLI
    - Use CreateDhcpOptions with a CLI
    - Use CreateFlowLogs with a CLI

- Use CreateImage with a CLI
- Use CreateInstanceExportTask with a CLI
- Use CreateInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use CreateKeyPair with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLaunchTemplate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateNetworkAcl with a CLI
- Use CreateNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use CreateNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use CreatePlacementGroup with a CLI
- Use CreateRoute with a CLI
- Use CreateRouteTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateSecurityGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateSnapshot with a CLI
- Use CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use CreateSubnet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateTags with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVolume with a CLI
- Use CreateVpc with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVpcEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVpnConnection with a CLI
- Use CreateVpnConnectionRoute with a CLI
- Use CreateVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteCustomerGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use DeleteFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use DeleteInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteKeyPair with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLaunchTemplate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkAcl with a CLI

- Use DeleteNetworkAclEntry with a CLI

- Use DeleteNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use DeletePlacementGroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteRoute with a CLI
- Use DeleteRouteTable with a CLI
- Use DeleteSecurityGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSnapshot with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use DeleteSubnet with a CLI
- Use DeleteTags with a CLI
- Use DeleteVolume with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpc with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVpcEndpoints with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVpnConnection with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpnConnectionRoute with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DeregisterImage with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeAddresses with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAvailabilityZones with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeBundleTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeCapacityReservations with a CLI
- Use DescribeCustomerGateways with a CLI
- Use DescribeDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use DescribeFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use DescribeHostReservationOfferings with a CLI
- Use DescribeHosts with a CLI
- Use DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeIdFormat with a CLI
- Use DescribeIdentityIdFormat with a CLI

- Use DescribeImageAttribute with a CLI

- Use DescribeImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeImportImageTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeImportSnapshotTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceTypes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInternetGateways with a CLI
- Use DescribeKeyPairs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkAcls with a CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkInterfaces with a CLI
- Use DescribePlacementGroups with a CLI
- Use DescribePrefixLists with a CLI
- Use DescribeRegions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRouteTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability with a CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use DescribeSecurityGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeSnapshots with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetInstances with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetRequests with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotInstanceRequests with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotPriceHistory with a CLI
- Use DescribeSubnets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI

- Use DescribeVolumeAttribute with a CLI

- Use DescribeVolumeStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumes with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcEndpointServices with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcEndpoints with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeVpnConnections with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpnGateways with a CLI
- Use DetachInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use DetachNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use DetachVolume with a CLI
- Use DetachVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DisableVgwRoutePropagation with a CLI
- Use DisableVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use DisassociateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisassociateRouteTable with a CLI
- Use EnableVgwRoutePropagation with a CLI
- Use EnableVolumeIo with a CLI
- Use EnableVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use GetConsoleOutput with a CLI
- Use GetHostReservationPurchasePreview with a CLI
- Use GetPasswordData with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ImportImage with a CLI
- Use ImportKeyPair with a CLI
- Use ImportSnapshot with a CLI

- Use ModifyCapacityReservation with a CLI

- Use ModifyHosts with a CLI
- Use ModifyIdFormat with a CLI
- Use ModifyImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification with a CLI
- Use ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyReservedInstances with a CLI
- Use ModifySnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifySpotFleetRequest with a CLI
- Use ModifySubnetAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyVolumeAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyVpcAttribute with a CLI
- Use MonitorInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use MoveAddressToVpc with a CLI
- Use PurchaseHostReservation with a CLI
- Use PurchaseScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use RebootInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterImage with a CLI
- Use RejectVpcPeeringConnection with a CLI
- Use ReleaseAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReleaseHosts with a CLI
- Use ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation with a CLI
- Use ReplaceNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use ReplaceRoute with a CLI
- Use ReplaceRouteTableAssociation with a CLI
- Use ReportInstanceStatus with a CLI
- Use RequestSpotFleet with a CLI
- Use RequestSpotInstances with a CLI

- Use ResetImageAttribute with a CLI

    - Use ResetInstanceAttribute with a CLI
    - Use ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
    - Use ResetSnapshotAttribute with a CLI
    - Use RevokeSecurityGroupEgress with a CLI
    - Use RevokeSecurityGroupIngress with a CLI
    - Use RunInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RunScheduledInstances with a CLI
    - Use StartInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StopInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use TerminateInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UnassignPrivateIpAddresses with a CLI
    - Use UnmonitorInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress with a CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs
  - Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK
  - Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways using the CLI
  - Get started using Amazon VPC using the CLI
  - Get started with Transit Gateway using the CLI
  - Get started using Amazon VPC IPAM using the CLI

Basic examples for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon EC2
- Learn the basics of Amazon EC2 with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs
  - Use AcceptVpcPeeringConnection with a CLI
  - Use AllocateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AllocateHosts with a CLI

- Use AssignPrivateIpAddresses with a CLI
- Use AssociateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AssociateDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use AssociateRouteTable with a CLI
- Use AttachInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use AttachNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use AttachVolume with a CLI
- Use AttachVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress with a CLI
- Use AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CancelCapacityReservation with a CLI
- Use CancelImportTask with a CLI
- Use CancelSpotFleetRequests with a CLI
- Use CancelSpotInstanceRequests with a CLI
- Use ConfirmProductInstance with a CLI
- Use CopyImage with a CLI
- Use CopySnapshot with a CLI
- Use CreateCapacityReservation with a CLI
- Use CreateCustomerGateway with a CLI
- Use CreateDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use CreateFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use CreateImage with a CLI
- Use CreateInstanceExportTask with a CLI
- Use CreateInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use CreateKeyPair with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLaunchTemplate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateNetworkAcl with a CLI
- Use CreateNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use CreateNetworkInterface with a CLI

- Use CreatePlacementGroup with a CLI

- Use CreateRoute with a CLI
- Use CreateRouteTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateSecurityGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateSnapshot with a CLI
- Use CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use CreateSubnet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateTags with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVolume with a CLI
- Use CreateVpc with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVpcEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVpnConnection with a CLI
- Use CreateVpnConnectionRoute with a CLI
- Use CreateVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteCustomerGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use DeleteFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use DeleteInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteKeyPair with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLaunchTemplate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkAcl with a CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use DeletePlacementGroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteRoute with a CLI
- Use DeleteRouteTable with a CLI
- Use DeleteSecurityGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSnapshot with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use DeleteSubnet with a CLI

- Use DeleteTags with a CLI

- Use DeleteVolume with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpc with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVpcEndpoints with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVpnConnection with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpnConnectionRoute with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DeregisterImage with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeAddresses with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAvailabilityZones with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeBundleTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeCapacityReservations with a CLI
- Use DescribeCustomerGateways with a CLI
- Use DescribeDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use DescribeFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use DescribeHostReservationOfferings with a CLI
- Use DescribeHosts with a CLI
- Use DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeIdFormat with a CLI
- Use DescribeIdentityIdFormat with a CLI
- Use DescribeImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeImportImageTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeImportSnapshotTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceTypes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInternetGateways with a CLI

- Use DescribeKeyPairs with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DescribeNetworkAcls with a CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkInterfaces with a CLI
- Use DescribePlacementGroups with a CLI
- Use DescribePrefixLists with a CLI
- Use DescribeRegions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRouteTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability with a CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use DescribeSecurityGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeSnapshots with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetInstances with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetRequests with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotInstanceRequests with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotPriceHistory with a CLI
- Use DescribeSubnets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumeAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumeStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumes with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcEndpointServices with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcEndpoints with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcs with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DescribeVpnConnections with a CLI

- Use DescribeVpnGateways with a CLI
- Use DetachInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use DetachNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use DetachVolume with a CLI
- Use DetachVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DisableVgwRoutePropagation with a CLI
- Use DisableVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use DisassociateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisassociateRouteTable with a CLI
- Use EnableVgwRoutePropagation with a CLI
- Use EnableVolumeIo with a CLI
- Use EnableVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use GetConsoleOutput with a CLI
- Use GetHostReservationPurchasePreview with a CLI
- Use GetPasswordData with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ImportImage with a CLI
- Use ImportKeyPair with a CLI
- Use ImportSnapshot with a CLI
- Use ModifyCapacityReservation with a CLI
- Use ModifyHosts with a CLI
- Use ModifyIdFormat with a CLI
- Use ModifyImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification with a CLI
- Use ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyReservedInstances with a CLI
- Use ModifySnapshotAttribute with a CLI

- Use ModifySpotFleetRequest with a CLI

- Use ModifySubnetAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyVolumeAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyVpcAttribute with a CLI
- Use MonitorInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use MoveAddressToVpc with a CLI
- Use PurchaseHostReservation with a CLI
- Use PurchaseScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use RebootInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterImage with a CLI
- Use RejectVpcPeeringConnection with a CLI
- Use ReleaseAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReleaseHosts with a CLI
- Use ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation with a CLI
- Use ReplaceNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use ReplaceRoute with a CLI
- Use ReplaceRouteTableAssociation with a CLI
- Use ReportInstanceStatus with a CLI
- Use RequestSpotFleet with a CLI
- Use RequestSpotInstances with a CLI
- Use ResetImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use ResetInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ResetSnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use RevokeSecurityGroupEgress with a CLI
- Use RevokeSecurityGroupIngress with a CLI
- Use RunInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RunScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use StartInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use StopInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use TerminateInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UnassignPrivateIpAddresses with a CLI
- Use UnmonitorInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress with a CLI

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace EC2Actions;

public class HelloEc2
{
    /// <summary>
    /// HelloEc2 lists the existing security groups for the default users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2).
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
            )
            .Build();
```

```
        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var ec2Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonEC2>();

        try
        {
            // Retrieve information for up to 10 Amazon EC2 security groups.
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest { MaxResults = 10 };
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                ec2Client.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
 paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            // Now print the security groups returned by the call to
            // DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the EC2 Hello Service example. " +
                              "\nLet's list your Security Groups:");
            securityGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Security group: {group.GroupName} ID: {group.GroupId}");
            });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon EC2 service error occurred while
 listing security groups. {ex.Message}");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing security groups.
 {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ec2)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_ec2")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.
```

```
     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_ec2.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_ec2.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/ec2/EC2Client.h>
#include <aws/ec2/model/DescribeInstancesRequest.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello EC2" starter application which initializes an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) client and describes
 *  the Amazon EC2 instances.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_ec2'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    (void)argc;
    (void)argv;

    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfig);
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesRequest request;
        bool header = false;
        bool done = false;
        while (!done) {
            Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesOutcome outcome =
ec2Client.DescribeInstances(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                if (!header) {
                    std::cout << std::left <<
                              std::setw(48) << "Name" <<
                              std::setw(20) << "ID" <<
                              std::setw(25) << "Ami" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "Type" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "State" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "Monitoring" << std::endl;
                    header = true;
                }

                const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Reservation> &reservations =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetReservations();

                for (const auto &reservation: reservations) {
                    const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
                            reservation.GetInstances();
                    for (const auto &instance: instances) {
                        Aws::String instanceStateString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceStateNameMapper::GetNameForInstanceStateName(
                                        instance.GetState().GetName());

                        Aws::String typeString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceTypeMapper::GetNameForInstanceType(
                                        instance.GetInstanceType());

                        Aws::String monitorString =
```

```
 Aws::EC2::Model::MonitoringStateMapper::GetNameForMonitoringState(
                                        instance.GetMonitoring().GetState());
                        Aws::String name = "Unknown";

                        const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags =
 instance.GetTags();
                        auto nameIter = std::find_if(tags.cbegin(), tags.cend(),
                                                     [](const
 Aws::EC2::Model::Tag &tag) {
                                                         return tag.GetKey() ==
 "Name";
                                                     });
                        if (nameIter != tags.cend()) {
                            name = nameIter->GetValue();
                        }
                        std::cout <<
                                  std::setw(48) << name <<
                                  std::setw(20) << instance.GetInstanceId() <<
                                  std::setw(25) << instance.GetImageId() <<
                                  std::setw(15) << typeString <<
                                  std::setw(15) << instanceStateString <<
                                  std::setw(15) << monitorString << std::endl;
                    }
                }

                if (!outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken().empty()) {
                    request.SetNextToken(outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken());
                } else {
                    done = true;
                }
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to describe EC2 instances:" <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
    *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
    *         security group information.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
       DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
           .groupNames(groupName)
           .build();

       DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.securityGroups().stream()
               .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
```

```
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
            if (groupId == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the
 name: " + groupName);
            }
            return groupId;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

// Call DescribeSecurityGroups and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new EC2Client();
  try {
    const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({}),
    );

    const securityGroupList = SecurityGroups.slice(0, 9)
      .map((sg) => ` • ${sg.GroupId}: ${sg.GroupName}`)
      .join("\n");

    console.log(
```

```
      "Hello, Amazon EC2! Let's list up to 10 of your security groups:",
    );
    console.log(securityGroupList);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2SecurityGroups(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        response.securityGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("Found Security Group with id ${group.groupId}, vpc id
 ${group.vpcId} and description ${group.description}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def hello_ec2(ec2_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list the security groups in your
 account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                       access to AWS EC2 services.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon EC2! Let's list up to 10 of your security groups:")
    try:
        paginator = ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")
        response_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={'MaxItems': 10})
 # List only 10 security groups.
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO) # Enable logging.
        for page in response_iterator:
            for sg in page["SecurityGroups"]:
                logger.info(f"\t{sg['GroupId']}: {sg['GroupName']}")
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error("Failed to list security groups.")
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
            logger.error("You do not have permission to list security groups.")
        raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_ec2(boto3.client("ec2"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'
require 'logger'

# EC2Manager is a class responsible for managing EC2 operations
# such as listing all EC2 instances in the current AWS account.
class EC2Manager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all EC2 instances in the current AWS account.
  def list_instances
    @logger.info('Listing instances')

    instances = fetch_instances

    if instances.empty?
      @logger.info('You have no instances')
    else
      print_instances(instances)
    end
  end

  private

  # Fetches all EC2 instances using pagination.
```

```
  #
  # @return [Array<Aws::EC2::Types::Instance>] List of EC2 instances.
  def fetch_instances
    paginator = @client.describe_instances
    instances = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      page.reservations.each do |reservation|
        reservation.instances.each do |instance|
          instances << instance
        end
      end
    end

    instances
  end

  # Prints details of the given EC2 instances.
  #
  # @param instances [Array<Aws::EC2::Types::Instance>] List of EC2 instances to
 print.
  def print_instances(instances)
    instances.each do |instance|
      @logger.info("Instance ID: #{instance.instance_id}")
      @logger.info("Instance Type: #{instance.instance_type}")
      @logger.info("Public IP: #{instance.public_ip_address}")
      @logger.info("Public DNS Name: #{instance.public_dns_name}")
      @logger.info("\n")
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
  manager = EC2Manager.new(ec2_client)
  manager.list_instances
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_security_groups(client: &aws_sdk_ec2::Client, group_ids:
 Vec<String>) {
    let response = client
        .describe_security_groups()
        .set_group_ids(Some(group_ids))
        .send()
        .await;

    match response {
        Ok(output) => {
            for group in output.security_groups() {
                println!(
                    "Found Security Group {} ({}), vpc id {} and description {}",
                    group.group_name().unwrap_or("unknown"),
                    group.group_id().unwrap_or("id-unknown"),
                    group.vpc_id().unwrap_or("vpcid-unknown"),
                    group.description().unwrap_or("(none)")
                );
            }
        }
        Err(err) => {
            let err = err.into_service_error();
            let meta = err.meta();
            let message = meta.message().unwrap_or("unknown");
            let code = meta.code().unwrap_or("unknown");
            eprintln!("Error listing EC2 Security Groups: ({code}) {message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "hello-ec2",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "hello-ec2",
```

```
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSEC2", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The `entry.swift` file.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a simple
// operation using Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation

import AWSEC2

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "hello-ec2",
        abstract: """
```

```
        Demonstrates a simple operation using Amazon EC2.
        """,
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to make a call to Amazon EC2 using the AWS SDK for
Swift.
        """
    )

    /// Return an array of strings giving the names of every security group
    /// the user is a member of.
    ///
    /// - Parameter ec2Client: The `EC2Client` to use when calling
    ///   `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings giving the names of every security
    ///   group the user is a member of.
    func getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: EC2Client) async -> [String] {
        let pages = ec2Client.describeSecurityGroupsPaginated(
            input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput()
        )

        var groupNames: [String] = []

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.securityGroups else {
                    print("*** Error: No groups returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for group in groups {
                    groupNames.append(group.groupName ?? "<unknown>")
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }

        return groupNames
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
```

```
        let ec2Config = try await EC2Client.EC2ClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ec2Client = EC2Client(config: ec2Config)

        let groupNames = await getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: ec2Client)

        print("Found \(groupNames.count) security group(s):")

        for group in groupNames {
            print("    \(group)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon EC2 with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Show Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Basics actions.
/// </summary>
public class EC2Basics
{
    public static ILogger<EC2Basics> _logger = null!;
    public static EC2Wrapper _ec2Wrapper = null!;
    public static SsmWrapper _ssmWrapper = null!;
    public static UiMethods _uiMethods = null!;

    public static string associationId = null!;
    public static string allocationId = null!;
    public static string instanceId = null!;
    public static string keyPairName = null!;
    public static string groupName = null!;
    public static string tempFileName = null!;
    public static string secGroupId = null!;
    public static bool isInteractive = true;

    /// <summary>
    /// Perform the actions defined for the Amazon EC2 Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A Task object.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EC2 and Amazon Simple Systems
        // Management (Amazon SSM) Service.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
```

```
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SsmWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        SetUpServices(host);

        var uniqueName = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();
        keyPairName = "mvp-example-key-pair" + uniqueName;
        groupName = "ec2-scenario-group" + uniqueName;
        var groupDescription = "A security group created for the EC2 Basics
scenario.";

        try
        {
            // Start the scenario.
            _uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Create the key pair.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create RSA key pair");
            Console.Write("Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to
");
            Console.WriteLine("securely connect to your EC2 instance.");
            var keyPair = await _ec2Wrapper.CreateKeyPair(keyPairName);

            // Save key pair information to a temporary file.
            tempFileName = _ec2Wrapper.SaveKeyPair(keyPair);

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Created the key pair: {keyPair.KeyName} and saved it to:
{tempFileName}");
            string? answer = "";
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Would you like to list your existing key
pairs? ");
                    answer = Console.ReadLine();
                } while (answer!.ToLower() != "y" && answer.ToLower() != "n");
            }
```

```
            if (!isInteractive || answer == "y")
            {
                // List existing key pairs.
                _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Existing key pairs");

                // Passing an empty string to the DescribeKeyPairs method will
return
                // a list of all existing key pairs.
                var keyPairs = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeKeyPairs("");
                keyPairs.ForEach(kp =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"{kp.KeyName} created at: {kp.CreateTime} Fingerprint:
{kp.KeyFingerprint}");
                });
            }

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Create the security group.
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Let's create a security group to manage access to your
instance.");
            secGroupId = await _ec2Wrapper.CreateSecurityGroup(groupName,
groupDescription);
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Let's add rules to allow all HTTP and HTTPS inbound traffic and
to allow SSH only from your current IP address.");

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Security group information");
            var secGroups = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeSecurityGroups(secGroupId);

            Console.WriteLine($"Created security group {groupName} in your
default VPC.");
            secGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                _ec2Wrapper.DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(group);
            });
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we'll authorize the security group we just created so that
it can");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("access the EC2 instances you create.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupName);

            secGroups = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeSecurityGroups(secGroupId);
            Console.WriteLine($"Now let's look at the permissions again.");
            secGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                _ec2Wrapper.DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(group);
            });
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Get list of available Amazon Linux 2 Amazon Machine Images (AMIs).
            var parameters =
                await _ssmWrapper.GetParametersByPath(
                    "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest");

            List<string> imageIds = parameters.Select(param =>
param.Value).ToList();

            var images = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeImages(imageIds);

            var i = 1;
            images.ForEach(image =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i++}\t{image.Description}");
            });

            int choice = 1;
            bool validNumber = false;
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Please select an image: ");
                    var selImage = Console.ReadLine();
                    validNumber = int.TryParse(selImage, out choice);
                } while (!validNumber);
            }

            var selectedImage = images[choice - 1];

            // Display available instance types.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Instance Types");
            var instanceTypes =
```

```
                await
_ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstanceTypes(selectedImage.Architecture);

            i = 1;
            instanceTypes.ForEach(instanceType =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i++}\t{instanceType.InstanceType}");
            });
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Please select an instance type: ");
                    var selImage = Console.ReadLine();
                    validNumber = int.TryParse(selImage, out choice);
                } while (!validNumber);
            }

            var selectedInstanceType = instanceTypes[choice - 1].InstanceType;

            // Create an EC2 instance.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Creating an EC2 Instance");
            instanceId = await _ec2Wrapper.RunInstances(selectedImage.ImageId,
                selectedInstanceType, keyPairName, secGroupId);

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            var instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nYou can use SSH to connect to your instance. For example:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we'll stop the instance and then start it again to see
what's changed.");

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start it up again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nLet's see what changed.");

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine("\nNotice the change in the SSH information:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we will stop the instance again. Then we will create and
associate an");
            Console.WriteLine("Elastic IP address to use with our instance.");

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Allocate Elastic IP address");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it
with your instance\nto keep a consistent IP address even when your instance
restarts.");
            var allocationResponse = await _ec2Wrapper.AllocateAddress();
            allocationId = allocationResponse.AllocationId;
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we will associate the Elastic IP address with our
instance.");
            associationId = await _ec2Wrapper.AssociateAddress(allocationId,
instanceId);

            // Start the instance again.
            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start the instance again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nLet's see what changed.");

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Instance information");
```

```
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine("\nHere is the SSH information:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            Console.WriteLine("Let's stop and start the instance again.");
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start it up again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);
            Console.WriteLine("Note that the IP address did not change this
time.");
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            await Cleanup();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem with the scenario, starting
cleanup.");
            await Cleanup();
        }

        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("EC2 Basics Scenario completed.");
        _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the services and logging.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host"></param>
    public static void SetUpServices(IHost host)
    {
        var loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
```

```
            builder.AddConsole();
        });
        _logger = new Logger<EC2Basics>(loggerFactory);

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        _ec2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<EC2Wrapper>();
        _ssmWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SsmWrapper>();
        _uiMethods = new UiMethods();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up any resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public static async Task Cleanup()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's clean up the resources we created.");

        Console.WriteLine("Disassociate the Elastic IP address and release it.");
        // Disassociate the Elastic IP address.
        await _ec2Wrapper.DisassociateIp(associationId);

        // Delete the Elastic IP address.
        await _ec2Wrapper.ReleaseAddress(allocationId);

        // Terminate the instance.
        Console.WriteLine("Terminating the instance we created.");
        await _ec2Wrapper.TerminateInstances(instanceId);

        // Delete the security group.
        Console.WriteLine($"Deleting the Security Group: {groupName}.");
        await _ec2Wrapper.DeleteSecurityGroup(secGroupId);

        // Delete the RSA key pair.
        Console.WriteLine($"Deleting the key pair: {keyPairName}");
        await _ec2Wrapper.DeleteKeyPair(keyPairName);
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the temporary file with the key
 information.");
        _ec2Wrapper.DeleteTempFile(tempFileName);
        _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Methods of this class perform Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
/// </summary>
public class EC2Wrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEC2;
    private readonly ILogger<EC2Wrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EC2Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonScheduler">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger.</param>
    public EC2Wrapper(IAmazonEC2 amazonService, ILogger<EC2Wrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonEC2 = amazonService;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
    // instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP
 address
    // constant even when you restart the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The response object for the allocated address.</returns>
    public async Task<AllocateAddressResponse> AllocateAddress()
    {
        var request = new AllocateAddressRequest();

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AllocateAddressAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Allocated IP: {response.PublicIp} with allocation
 ID {response.AllocationId}.");
            return response;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "AddressLimitExceeded")
            {
                // For more information on Elastic IP address quotas, see:
                // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-
ip-addresses-eip.html#using-instance-addressing-limit
                _logger.LogError($"Unable to allocate Elastic IP, address limit
 exceeded. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while allocating Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association
 is
    /// created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
 public
    /// IP address of the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of an Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// associate the address with.</param>
    /// <returns>The association Id that represents
    /// the association of the Elastic IP address with an instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateAddress(string allocationId, string
 instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new AssociateAddressRequest
            {
                AllocationId = allocationId,
                InstanceId = instanceId
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.AssociateAddressAsync(request);
```

```
            return response.AssociationId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to associate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while associating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer ingress to EC2 instances associated
    /// with the virtual private cloud (VPC) security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the security group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the IP address for the local computer.
            var ipAddress = await GetIpAddress();
            Console.WriteLine($"Your IP address is: {ipAddress}");
            var ipRanges =
                new List<IpRange> { new IpRange { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" } };
            var permission = new IpPermission
            {
                Ipv4Ranges = ipRanges,
                IpProtocol = "tcp",
                FromPort = 22,
                ToPort = 22
            };
```

```
            var permissions = new List<IpPermission> { permission };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
                new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest(groupName,
 permissions));
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"The ingress rule already exists. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while authorizing ingress.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer for ingress to
    /// the Amazon EC2 SecurityGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The IPv4 address of the computer running the scenario.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetIpAddress()
    {
        var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        var ipString = await httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");

        // The IP address is returned with a new line
        // character on the end. Trim off the whitespace and
        // return the value to the caller.
        return ipString.Trim();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 key pair with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name for the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon EC2 key pair created.</returns>
    public async Task<KeyPair?> CreateKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateKeyPairRequest { KeyName = keyPairName, };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateKeyPairAsync(request);

            var kp = response.KeyPair;
            // Return the key pair so it can be saved if needed.

            // Wait until the key pair exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Checking for new KeyPair {keyPairName}...");
                var keyPairs = await DescribeKeyPairs(keyPairName);
                if (keyPairs.Any())
                {
                    return kp;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created KeyPair
{keyPairName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("KeyPair not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} already exists.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
```

```
                $"An error occurred while creating the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save KeyPair information to a temporary file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPair">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The full path to the temporary file.</returns>
    public string SaveKeyPair(KeyPair keyPair)
    {
        var tempPath = Path.GetTempPath();
        var tempFileName = $"{tempPath}\\{Path.GetRandomFileName()}";
        var pemFileName = Path.ChangeExtension(tempFileName, "pem");

        // Save the key pair to a file in a temporary folder.
        using var stream = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create);
        using var writer = new StreamWriter(stream);
        writer.WriteLine(keyPair.KeyMaterial);

        return pemFileName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 security group with a specified name and
 description.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new security group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupDescription">A description of the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The group Id of the new security group.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateSecurityGroup(string groupName, string
 groupDescription)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(
                new CreateSecurityGroupRequest(groupName, groupDescription));

            // Wait until the security group exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
```

```
                var groups = await DescribeSecurityGroups(response.GroupId);
                if (groups.Any())
                {
                    return response.GroupId;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created group {groupName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("security group not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "ResourceAlreadyExists")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group with the name {groupName} already exists.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the security group.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 VPC.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cidrBlock">The CIDR block for the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The VPC Id of the new VPC.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> CreateVPC(string cidrBlock)
    {

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateVpcAsync(new CreateVpcRequest
```

```
            {
                CidrBlock = cidrBlock,
            });

            Vpc vpc = response.Vpc;
            Console.WriteLine($"Created VPC with ID: {vpc.VpcId}.");
            return vpc.VpcId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't create VPC because: {ex.Message}");
            return null;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEC2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new
DeleteKeyPairRequest(keyPairName)).ConfigureAwait(false);
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"KeyPair {keyPairName} does not exist and
cannot be deleted. Please verify the key pair name and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the key pair because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the temporary file where the key pair information was saved.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tempFileName">The path to the temporary file.</param>
    public void DeleteTempFile(string tempFileName)
    {
        if (File.Exists(tempFileName))
        {
            File.Delete(tempFileName);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteSecurityGroup(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response =
                await _amazonEC2.DeleteSecurityGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteSecurityGroupRequest { GroupId = groupId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Security Group {groupId} does not exist and cannot be
deleted. Please verify the ID and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 VPC.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteVpc(string vpcId)
    {
        var request = new DeleteVpcRequest
        {
            VpcId = vpcId,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DeleteVpcAsync(request);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about existing Amazon EC2 images.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of image information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Image>> DescribeImages(List<string>? imageIds)
    {
        var request = new DescribeImagesRequest();
        if (imageIds is not null)
        {
            // If the imageIds list is not null, add the list
            // to the request object.
            request.ImageIds = imageIds;
        }

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeImagesAsync(request);
        return response.Images;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by DescribeImages.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="images">The list of image information to display.</param>
    public void DisplayImageInfo(List<Image> images)
    {
        images.ForEach(image =>
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{image.Name} Created on: {image.CreationDate}");
        });

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>An EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<Instance> DescribeInstance(string instanceId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(
            new DescribeInstancesRequest { InstanceIds = new List<string>
{ instanceId } });
        return response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display EC2 instance information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The instance Id of the EC2 instance.</param>
    public void DisplayInstanceInformation(Instance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"ID: {instance.InstanceId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Image ID: {instance.ImageId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"{instance.InstanceType}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Key Name: {instance.KeyName}");
        Console.WriteLine($"VPC ID: {instance.VpcId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Public IP: {instance.PublicIpAddress}");
        Console.WriteLine($"State: {instance.State.Name}");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about EC2 instances with a particular state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tagName">The name of the tag to filter on.</param>
    /// <param name="tagValue">The value of the tag to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetInstancesWithState(string state)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            // Filters the results of the instance list.
            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter
                {
                    Name = $"instance-state-name",
                    Values = new List<string> { state, },
                },
            };
            var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest { Filters = filters, };

            Console.WriteLine($"\nShowing instances with state {state}");
            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstances(request);

            await foreach (var response in paginator.Responses)
            {
                foreach (var reservation in response.Reservations)
                {
                    foreach (var instance in reservation.Instances)
                    {
                        Console.Write($"Instance ID: {instance.InstanceId} ");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tCurrent State:
{instance.State.Name}");
                    }
                }
            }

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Invalid parameter value for filtering instances.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list instances because: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the instance types available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of instance type information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceTypeInfo>>
DescribeInstanceTypes(ArchitectureValues architecture)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeInstanceTypesRequest();

            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter("processor-info.supported-architecture",
                    new List<string> { architecture.ToString() })
            };
            filters.Add(new Filter("instance-type", new() { "*.micro",
"*.small" }));

            request.Filters = filters;
            var instanceTypes = new List<InstanceTypeInfo>();

            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstanceTypes(request);
            await foreach (var instanceType in paginator.InstanceTypes)
            {
                instanceTypes.Add(instanceType);
            }

            return instanceTypes;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Parameters are invalid. Ensure architecture and size
strings conform to DescribeInstanceTypes API reference.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of key pair information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<KeyPairInfo>> DescribeKeyPairs(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest();
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyPairName))
            {
                request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest
                {
                    KeyNames = new List<string> { keyPairName }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeKeyPairsAsync(request);
            return response.KeyPairs.ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while describing the key pair.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
```

```
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information for one or all Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional Id of a specific Amazon EC2 security
group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of security group information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> DescribeSecurityGroups(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupId))
            {
                var groupIds = new List<string> { groupId };
                request.GroupIds = groupIds;
            }

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            return securityGroups;

        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group {groupId} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while listing security groups.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by the call to
    /// DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="securityGroup">A list of security group information.</param>
    public void DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(SecurityGroup securityGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{securityGroup.GroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine("Ingress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissions.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp} "); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Egress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissionsEgress.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
```

```
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp} "); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="associationId">The association Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisassociateIp(string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DisassociateAddressAsync(
                new DisassociateAddressRequest { AssociationId =
associationId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AssociationId is invalid, unable to disassociate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
```

```
                $"An error occurred while disassociating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of available Amazon Linux images.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of image information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Image>> GetEC2AmiList()
    {
        var filter = new Filter { Name = "architecture", Values = new
List<string> { "x86_64" } };
        var filters = new List<Filter> { filter };
        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeImagesAsync(new
DescribeImagesRequest { Filters = filters });
        return response.Images;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reboot a specific EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the instance that will be
rebooted.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RebootInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RebootInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.RebootInstancesAsync(request);

            // Wait for the instance to be running.
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
```

```
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId {ec2InstanceId} is invalid, unable to reboot.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while rebooting the instance
 {ec2InstanceId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Release an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
    /// it can no longer be used.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of the Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ReleaseAddress(string allocationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ReleaseAddressRequest { AllocationId =
 allocationId };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.ReleaseAddressAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AllocationId {allocationId} was not found.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
```

```
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while releasing the AllocationId
{allocationId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and run an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ImageId">The image Id of the image used as a basis for the
    /// EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The instance type of the EC2 instance to
create.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The name of the key pair to associate with the
    /// instance.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the Amazon EC2 security group that will
be
    /// allowed to interact with the new EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The instance Id of the new EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RunInstances(string imageId, string instanceType,
string keyName, string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RunInstancesRequest
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
                KeyName = keyName,
                MinCount = 1,
                MaxCount = 1,
                SecurityGroupIds = new List<string> { groupId }
            };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.RunInstancesAsync(request);
            var instanceId = response.Reservation.Instances[0].InstanceId;

            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
```

```
            return instanceId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroupId.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"GroupId {groupId} was not found. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while running the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the Amazon EC2 instance
    /// to start.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StartInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StartInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StartInstancesAsync(request);

            Console.Write("Waiting for instance to start. ");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
```

```
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to start.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while starting the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Stop an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// stop.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StopInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StopInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StopInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to stop.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Stopped);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to stop.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
```

```
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while stopping the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance
    /// to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceStateChange>> TerminateInstances(string
ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId }
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.TerminateInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to terminate.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId,
InstanceStateName.Terminated);

            Console.WriteLine($"\nThe instance {ec2InstanceId} has been
terminated.");
            return response.TerminatingInstances;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to terminate.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
```

```
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while terminating the instance.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances
  - UnmonitorInstances

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
###############################################################################
# function get_started_with_ec2_instances
#
# Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using EC2 instances.
#
#     "EC2 access" permissions are needed to run this code.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function get_started_with_ec2_instances() {
  # Requires version 4 for mapfile.
  local required_version=4.0

  # Get the current Bash version
  # Check if BASH_VERSION is set
  local current_version
  if [[ -n "$BASH_VERSION" ]]; then
    # Convert BASH_VERSION to a number for comparison
    current_version=$BASH_VERSION
  else
    # Get the current Bash version using the bash command
    current_version=$(bash --version | head -n 1 | awk '{ print $4 }')
  fi

  # Convert version strings to numbers for comparison
  local required_version_num current_version_num
  required_version_num=$(echo "$required_version" | awk -F. '{ print ($1 * 10000)
 + ($2 * 100) + $3 }')
  current_version_num=$(echo "$current_version" | awk -F. '{ print ($1 * 10000) +
 ($2 * 100) + $3 }')

  # Compare versions
  if ((current_version_num < required_version_num)); then
    echo "Error: This script requires Bash version $required_version or higher."
    echo "Your current Bash version is number is $current_version."
    exit 1
  fi

  {
    if [ "$EC2_OPERATIONS_SOURCED" != "True" ]; then
```

```
      source ./ec2_operations.sh
    fi
  }

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) get started with
instances demo."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to securely connect to "
  echo "your EC2 instance."

  echo -n "Enter a unique name for your key: "
  get_input
  local key_name
  key_name=$get_input_result

  local temp_dir
  temp_dir=$(mktemp -d)
  local key_file_name="$temp_dir/${key_name}.pem"

  if ec2_create_keypair -n "${key_name}" -f "${key_file_name}"; then
    echo "Created a key pair $key_name and saved the private key to
$key_file_name"
    echo
  else
    errecho "The key pair failed to create. This demo will exit."
    return 1
  fi

  chmod 400 "${key_file_name}"

  if yes_no_input "Do you want to list some of your key pairs? (y/n) "; then
    local keys_and_fingerprints
    keys_and_fingerprints="$(ec2_describe_key_pairs)" && {
      local image_name_and_id
      while IFS=$'\n' read -r image_name_and_id; do
        local entries
        IFS=$'\t' read -ra entries <<<"$image_name_and_id"
        echo "Found rsa key ${entries[0]} with fingerprint:"
        echo "     ${entries[1]}"
      done <<<"$keys_and_fingerprints"
```

```
    }
  fi

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's create a security group to manage access to your instance."
  echo -n "Enter a unique name for your security group: "
  get_input
  local security_group_name
  security_group_name=$get_input_result
  local security_group_id
  security_group_id=$(ec2_create_security_group -n "$security_group_name" \
    -d "Security group for EC2 instance") || {
    errecho "The security failed to create. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name"
    return 1
  }

  echo "Security group created with ID $security_group_id"
  echo

  local public_ip
  public_ip=$(curl -s http://checkip.amazonaws.com)

  echo "Let's add a rule to allow SSH only from your current IP address."
  echo "Your public IP address is $public_ip"
  echo -n "press return to add this rule to your security group."
  get_input

  if ! ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress -g "$security_group_id" -i
"$public_ip" -p tcp -f 22 -t 22; then
    errecho "The security group rules failed to update. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "Security group rules updated"

  local security_group_description
  security_group_description="$(ec2_describe_security_groups -g
"${security_group_id}")" || {
    errecho "Failed to describe security groups. This demo will exit."
```

```
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  }

  mapfile -t parameters <<<"$security_group_description"
  IFS=$'\t' read -ra entries <<<"${parameters[0]}"
  echo "Security group: ${entries[0]}"
  echo "    ID: ${entries[1]}"
  echo "    VPC: ${entries[2]}"
  echo "Inbound permissions:"
  IFS=$'\t' read -ra entries <<<"${parameters[1]}"
  echo "    IpProtocol: ${entries[0]}"
  echo "    FromPort: ${entries[1]}"
  echo "    ToPort: ${entries[2]}"
  echo "    CidrIp: ${parameters[2]}"

  local parameters
  parameters="$(ssm_get_parameters_by_path -p "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-
latest")" || {
    errecho "Failed to get parameters. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1

  }

  local image_ids=""
  mapfile -t parameters <<<"$parameters"
  for image_name_and_id in "${parameters[@]}"; do
    IFS=$'\t' read -ra values <<<"$image_name_and_id"
    if [[ "${values[0]}" == *"amzn2"* ]]; then
      image_ids+="${values[1]} "
    fi
  done

  local images
  images="$(ec2_describe_images -i "$image_ids")" || {
    errecho "Failed to describe images. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1

  }

  new_line_and_tab_to_list "$images"
  local images=("${list_result[@]}")
```

```
  # Get the size of the array
  local images_count=${#images[@]}

  if ((images_count == 0)); then
    errecho "No images found. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  fi

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI. Here are some
options:"
  for ((i = 0; i < images_count; i += 3)); do
    echo "$(((i / 3) + 1)) - ${images[$i]}"
  done

  integer_input "Please enter the number of the AMI you want to use: " 1
"$((images_count / 3))"
  local choice=$get_input_result
  choice=$(((choice - 1) * 3))

  echo "Great choice."
  echo

  local architecture=${images[$((choice + 1))]}
  local image_id=${images[$((choice + 2))]}
  echo "Here are some instance types that support the ${architecture}
architecture of the image:"
  response="$(ec2_describe_instance_types -a "${architecture}" -t
"*.micro,*.small")" || {
    errecho "Failed to describe instance types. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  }

  local instance_types
  mapfile -t instance_types <<<"$response"

  # Get the size of the array
  local instance_types_count=${#instance_types[@]}
```

```
  echo "Here are some options:"
  for ((i = 0; i < instance_types_count; i++)); do
    echo "$((i + 1)) - ${instance_types[$i]}"
  done

  integer_input "Which one do you want to use? " 1 "${#instance_types[@]}
"
  choice=$get_input_result
  local instance_type=${instance_types[$((choice - 1))]}
  echo "Another great choice."
  echo

  echo "Creating your instance and waiting for it to start..."
  local instance_id
  instance_id=$(ec2_run_instances -i "$image_id" -t "$instance_type" -k
 "$key_name" -s "$security_group_id") || {
    errecho "Failed to run instance. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  }

  ec2_wait_for_instance_running -i "$instance_id"
  echo "Your instance is ready:"
  echo

  local instance_details
  instance_details="$(ec2_describe_instances -i "${instance_id}")"

  echo
  print_instance_details "${instance_details}"

  local public_ip
  public_ip=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $6}')
  echo
  echo "You can use SSH to connect to your instance"
  echo "If the connection attempt times out, you might have to manually update
 the SSH ingress rule"
  echo "for your IP address in the AWS Management Console."
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$public_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
```

```
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes."
  echo "Stopping your instance and waiting until it's stopped..."
  ec2_stop_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_stopped -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is stopped. Restarting..."

  ec2_start_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_running -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is running again."
  local instance_details
  instance_details="$(ec2_describe_instances -i "${instance_id}")"

  print_instance_details "${instance_details}"

  public_ip=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $6}')

  echo "Every time your instance is restarted, its public IP address changes"
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$public_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with your
 instance"
  echo "to keep a consistent IP address even when your instance restarts."

  local result
  result=$(ec2_allocate_address -d vpc) || {
    errecho "Failed to allocate an address. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id" "$instance_id"
    return 1
  }

  local elastic_ip allocation_id
  elastic_ip=$(echo "$result" | awk '{print $1}')
  allocation_id=$(echo "$result" | awk '{print $2}')
```

```
  echo "Allocated static Elastic IP address: $elastic_ip"

  local association_id
  association_id=$(ec2_associate_address -i "$instance_id" -a "$allocation_id")
 || {
    errecho "Failed to associate an address. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id" "$instance_id"
 "$allocation_id"
    return 1
  }

  echo "Associated your Elastic IP with your instance."
  echo "You can now use SSH to connect to your instance by using the Elastic IP."
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$elastic_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes."
  echo "Stopping your instance and waiting until it's stopped..."
  ec2_stop_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_stopped -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is stopped. Restarting..."

  ec2_start_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_running -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is running again."
  local instance_details
  instance_details="$(ec2_describe_instances -i "${instance_id}")"

  print_instance_details "${instance_details}"

  echo "Because you have associated an Elastic IP with your instance, you can"
  echo "connect by using a consistent IP address after the instance restarts."
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$elastic_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input
```

```
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  if yes_no_input "Do you want to delete the resources created in this demo: (y/
n) "; then
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id" "$instance_id" \
      "$allocation_id" "$association_id"
  else
    echo "The following resources were not deleted."
    echo "Key pair: $key_name"
    echo "Key file: $key_file_name"
    echo "Security group: $security_group_id"
    echo "Instance: $instance_id"
    echo "Elastic IP address: $elastic_ip"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function clean_up
#
# This function cleans up the created resources.
#     $1 - The name of the ec2 key pair to delete.
#     $2 - The name of the key file to delete.
#     $3 - The ID of the security group to delete.
#     $4 - The ID of the instance to terminate.
#     $5 - The ID of the elastic IP address to release.
#     $6 - The ID of the elastic IP address to disassociate.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function clean_up() {
  local result=0
  local key_pair_name=$1
  local key_file_name=$2
  local security_group_id=$3
  local instance_id=$4
  local allocation_id=$5
  local association_id=$6

  if [ -n "$association_id" ]; then
    # bashsupport disable=BP2002
    if (ec2_disassociate_address -a "$association_id"); then
```

```
    echo "Disassociated elastic IP address with ID $association_id"
  else
    errecho "The elastic IP address disassociation failed."
    result=1
  fi
fi

if [ -n "$allocation_id" ]; then
  # bashsupport disable=BP2002
  if (ec2_release_address -a "$allocation_id"); then
    echo "Released elastic IP address with ID $allocation_id"
  else
    errecho "The elastic IP address release failed."
    result=1
  fi
fi

if [ -n "$instance_id" ]; then
  # bashsupport disable=BP2002
  if (ec2_terminate_instances -i "$instance_id"); then
    echo "Started terminating instance with ID $instance_id"

    ec2_wait_for_instance_terminated -i "$instance_id"
  else
    errecho "The instance terminate failed."
    result=1
  fi
fi

if [ -n "$security_group_id" ]; then
  # bashsupport disable=BP2002
  if (ec2_delete_security_group -i "$security_group_id"); then
    echo "Deleted security group with ID $security_group_id"
  else
    errecho "The security group delete failed."
    result=1
  fi
fi

if [ -n "$key_pair_name" ]; then
  # bashsupport disable=BP2002
  if (ec2_delete_keypair -n "$key_pair_name"); then
    echo "Deleted key pair named $key_pair_name"
  else
```

```
      errecho "The key pair delete failed."
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  if [ -n "$key_file_name" ]; then
    rm -f "$key_file_name"
  fi

  return $result
}

###############################################################################
# function ssm_get_parameters_by_path
#
# This function retrieves one or more parameters from the AWS Systems Manager
 Parameter Store
# by specifying a parameter path.
#
# Parameters:
#       -p parameter_path - The path of the parameter(s) to retrieve.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ssm_get_parameters_by_path() {
  local parameter_path response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ssm_get_parameters_by_path"
    echo "Retrieves one or more parameters from the AWS Systems Manager Parameter
 Store by specifying a parameter path."
    echo "  -p parameter_path - The path of the parameter(s) to retrieve."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      p) parameter_path="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
```

```
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$parameter_path" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a parameter path with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ssm get-parameters-by-path \
    --path "$parameter_path" \
    --query "Parameters[*].[Name, Value]" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log $?
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports get-parameters-by-path operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function print_instance_details
#
# This function prints the details of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       instance_details - The instance details in the format "InstanceId ImageId
 InstanceType KeyName VpcId PublicIpAddress State.Name".
#
# Returns:
```

```
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function print_instance_details() {
  local instance_details="$1"

  if [[ -z "${instance_details}" ]]; then
    echo "Error: Missing required instance details argument."
    return 1
  fi

  local instance_id image_id instance_type key_name vpc_id public_ip state
  instance_id=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $1}')
  image_id=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $2}')
  instance_type=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $3}')
  key_name=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $4}')
  vpc_id=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $5}')
  public_ip=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $6}')
  state=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $7}')

  echo "    ID: ${instance_id}"
  echo "    Image ID: ${image_id}"
  echo "    Instance type: ${instance_type}"
  echo "    Key name: ${key_name}"
  echo "    VPC ID: ${vpc_id}"
  echo "    Public IP: ${public_ip}"
  echo "    State: ${state}"

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function connect_to_instance
#
# This function displays the public IP address of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance and prompts the user to connect to the instance via SSH.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the key file used to connect to the instance.
#       $2 - The public IP address of the instance.
#
# Returns:
#       None
##############################################################################
```

```
function connect_to_instance() {
  local key_file_name="$1"
  local public_ip="$2"

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$key_file_name" ]]; then
    echo "ERROR: You must provide a key file name as the first argument." >&2
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$public_ip" ]]; then
    echo "ERROR: You must provide a public IP address as the second argument."
 >&2
    return 1
  fi

  # Display the public IP address and connection command
  echo "To connect, run the following command:"
  echo "    ssh -i ${key_file_name} ec2-user@${public_ip}"

  # Prompt the user to connect to the instance
  if yes_no_input "Do you want to connect now? (y/n) "; then
    echo "After you have connected, you can return to this example by typing
 'exit'"
    ssh -i "${key_file_name}" ec2-user@"${public_ip}"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function get_input
#
# This function gets user input from the command line.
#
# Outputs:
#   User input to stdout.
#
# Returns:
#       0
###############################################################################
function get_input() {

  if [ -z "${mock_input+x}" ]; then
    read -r get_input_result
  else
```

```
    if [ "$mock_input_array_index" -lt ${#mock_input_array[@]} ]; then
      get_input_result="${mock_input_array[$mock_input_array_index]}"
      # bashsupport disable=BP2001
      # shellcheck disable=SC2206
      ((mock_input_array_index++))
      echo -n "$get_input_result"
    else
      echo "MOCK_INPUT_ARRAY has no more elements" 1>&2
      return 1
    fi
  fi

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function yes_no_input
#
# This function requests a yes/no answer from the user, following to a prompt.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The prompt.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If yes.
#       1 - If no.
##############################################################################
function yes_no_input() {
  if [ -z "$1" ]; then
    echo "Internal error yes_no_input"
    return 1
  fi

  local index=0
  local response="N"
  while [[ $index -lt 10 ]]; do
    index=$((index + 1))
    echo -n "$1"
    if ! get_input; then
      return 1
    fi
    response=$(echo "$get_input_result" | tr '[:upper:]' '[:lower:]')
    if [ "$response" = "y" ] || [ "$response" = "n" ]; then
```

```
      break
    else
      echo -e "\nPlease enter or 'y' or 'n'."
    fi
  done

  echo

  if [ "$response" = "y" ]; then
    return 0
  else
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function integer_input
#
# This function prompts the user to enter an integer within a specified range
# and validates the input.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The prompt message to display to the user.
#       $2 - The minimum value of the accepted range.
#       $3 - The maximum value of the accepted range.
#
# Returns:
#       The valid integer input from the user.
#       If the input is invalid or out of range, the function will continue
#       prompting the user until a valid input is provided.
##############################################################################
function integer_input() {
  local prompt="$1"
  local min_value="$2"
  local max_value="$3"
  local input=""

  while true; do
    # Display the prompt message and wait for user input
    echo -n "$prompt"

    if ! get_input; then
      return 1
    fi
```

```
    input="$get_input_result"

    # Check if the input is a valid integer
    if [[ "$input" =~ ^-?[0-9]+$ ]]; then
      # Check if the input is within the specified range
      if ((input >= min_value && input <= max_value)); then
        return 0
      else
        echo "Error: Input, $input, must be between $min_value and $max_value."
      fi
    else
      echo "Error: Invalid input- $input. Please enter an integer."
    fi
  done
}
##############################################################################
# function new_line_and_tab_to_list
#
# This function takes a string input containing newlines and tabs, and
# converts it into a list (array) of elements.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The input string containing newlines and tabs.
#
# Returns:
#       The resulting list (array) is stored in the global variable
#       'list_result'.
##############################################################################
function new_line_and_tab_to_list() {
  local input=$1
  export list_result

  list_result=()
  mapfile -t lines <<<"$input"
  local line
  for line in "${lines[@]}"; do
    IFS=$'\t' read -ra parameters <<<"$line"
    list_result+=("${parameters[@]}")
  done
}

##############################################################################
# function echo_repeat
```

```
#
# This function prints a string 'n' times to stdout.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The string.
#       $2 - Number of times to print the string.
#
# Outputs:
#   String 'n' times to stdout.
#
# Returns:
#       0
###############################################################################
function echo_repeat() {
  local end=$2
  for ((i = 0; i < end; i++)); do
    echo -n "$1"
  done
  echo
}
```

The DynamoDB functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_create_keypair
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or
 2048-bit RSA key pair
# and writes it to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#       -f file_path - File to store the key pair.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_create_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name file_path response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
```

```
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_keypair"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or 2048-
bit RSA key pair"
    echo " and writes it to a file."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo "  -f file_path - File to store the key pair."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_path="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$file_path" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a file path with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 create-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --query 'KeyMaterial' \
```

```
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  if [[ -n "$file_path" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_path"
  fi

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_key_pairs
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 key pairs.
#
# Parameters:
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_key_pairs() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_key_pairs"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key
 pairs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
```

```
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-key-pairs \
    --query 'KeyPairs[*].[KeyName, KeyFingerprint]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-key-pairs operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_create_security_group
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security
 group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n security_group_name - The name of the security group.
#       -d security_group_description - The description of the security group.
#
# Returns:
#       The ID of the created security group, or an error message if the
 operation fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_create_security_group() {
```

```
  local security_group_name security_group_description response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_security_group"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -n security_group_name - The name of the security group."
    echo "  -d security_group_description - The description of the security
group."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "n:d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) security_group_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      d) security_group_description="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$security_group_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group name with the -n
parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$security_group_description" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group description with the -d
parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Create the security group
```

```
  response=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
    --group-name "$security_group_name" \
    --description "$security_group_description" \
    --query "GroupId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-security-group operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_security_groups
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 security groups.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe
 (optional).
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_security_groups() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_security_groups"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 security groups."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe
 (optional)."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
```

```
  while getopts "g:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local query="SecurityGroups[*].[GroupName, GroupId, VpcId, IpPermissions[*].
[IpProtocol, FromPort, ToPort, IpRanges[*].CidrIp]]"

  if [[ -n "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --group-ids "$security_group_id"
 --query "${query}" --output text)
  else
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --query "${query}" --output text)
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-security-groups operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress
#
```

```
# This function authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group.
#       -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize.
#       -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp).
#       -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize.
#       -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress() {
  local security_group_id ip_address protocol from_port to_port response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress"
    echo "Authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2) security group."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group."
    echo "  -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize."
    echo "  -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp)."
    echo "  -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize."
    echo "  -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:i:p:f:t:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) ip_address="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) protocol="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) from_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) to_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
```

```
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -g parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$ip_address" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an IP address or CIDR block with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$protocol" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a protocol with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$from_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a start port with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$to_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an end port with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id "$security_group_id" \
    --cidr "${ip_address}/32" \
    --protocol "$protocol" \
    --port "$from_port-$to_port" \
```

```
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports authorize-security-group-ingress operation
 failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_images
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 images.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_ids - A space-separated  list of image IDs (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_images() {
  local image_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_images"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 images."
    echo "  -i image_ids - A space-separated list of image IDs (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
```

```
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$image_ids" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--image-ids" $image_ids)
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-images \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    --query 'Images[*].[Description,Architecture,ImageId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-images operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

################################################################################
# ec2_describe_instance_types
#
# This function describes EC2 instance types filtered by processor architecture
# and optionally by instance type. It takes the following arguments:
#
# -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture (e.g.,
 x86_64)
# -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance types (e.g.,
 t2.micro)
# -h, --help                       Show the usage help
#
```

```
# The function prints the instance type and supported architecture for each
# matching instance type.
##############################################################################
function ec2_describe_instance_types() {
  local architecture=""
  local instance_types=""

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "Usage: ec2_describe_instance_types [-a|--architecture ARCHITECTURE] [-
t|--type INSTANCE_TYPE] [-h|--help]"
    echo "  -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture
 (e.g., x86_64)"
    echo "  -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance
 types (e.g., t2.micro)"
    echo "  -h, --help                       Show this help message"
  }

  while [[ $# -gt 0 ]]; do
    case "$1" in
      -a | --architecture)
        architecture="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -t | --type)
        instance_types="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -h | --help)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      *)
        echo "Unknown argument: $1"
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$architecture" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Architecture not specified."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
if [[ -z "$instance_types" ]]; then
  errecho "Error: Instance type not specified."
  usage
  return 1
fi

local tmp_json_file="temp_ec2.json"
echo -n '[
  {
    "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
    "Values": [' >"$tmp_json_file"

local items
IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$architecture"
local array_size
array_size=${#items[@]}
for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
  echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
    echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  fi
done
echo -n ']},
  {
  "Name": "instance-type",
    "Values": [' >>"$tmp_json_file"
IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$instance_types"
local array_size
array_size=${#items[@]}
for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
  echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
    echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  fi
done

echo -n ']}]' >>"$tmp_json_file"

local response
response=$(aws ec2 describe-instance-types --filters file://"$tmp_json_file" \
  --query 'InstanceTypes[*].[InstanceType]' --output text)

local error_code=$?
```

```
  rm "$tmp_json_file"

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    echo "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instance-types operation failed."
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_run_instances
#
# This function launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use.
#       -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro).
#       -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use.
#       -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use.
#       -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_run_instances() {
  local image_id instance_type key_pair_name security_group_id count response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_run_instances"
    echo "Launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use."
    echo "  -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro)."
    echo "  -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use."
    echo "  -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use."
```

```
    echo "  -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:t:k:s:c:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) instance_type="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      s) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      c) count="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$image_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) ID with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_type" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance type with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -s parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$count" ]]; then
    count=1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id "$image_id" \
    --instance-type "$instance_type" \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --security-group-ids "$security_group_id" \
    --count "$count" \
    --query 'Instances[*].[InstanceId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports run-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_instances
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional).
#       -q query - The query to filter the response (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function ec2_describe_instances() {
  local instance_id query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_instances"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional)."
    echo "  -q query - The query to filter the response (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$instance_id" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--instance-ids" $instance_id)
  fi

  local query_arg=""
  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    query_arg="--query '$query'"
  else
```

```
    query_arg="--query Reservations[*].Instances[*].
[InstanceId,ImageId,InstanceType,KeyName,VpcId,PublicIpAddress,State.Name]"
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instances \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    $query_arg \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_stop_instances
#
# This function stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_stop_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_stop_instances"
    echo "Stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
```

```
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 stop-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports stop-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_start_instances
#
# This function starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
```

```
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_start_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_start_instances"
    echo "Starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
```

```
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 start-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports start-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_allocate_address
#
# This function allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region.
#
# Parameters:
#       -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard').
#
# Returns:
#       The allocated Elastic IP address, or an error message if the operation
 fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_allocate_address() {
  local domain response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_allocate_address"
    echo "Allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region."
    echo "  -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard')."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
```

```
  while getopts "d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      d) domain="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$domain" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a domain with the -d parameter (either 'vpc'
 or 'standard')."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ "$domain" != "vpc" && "$domain" != "standard" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: Invalid domain value. Must be either 'vpc' or 'standard'."
    return 1
  fi

  # Allocate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --domain "$domain" \
    --query "[PublicIp,AllocationId]" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports allocate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function ec2_associate_address
#
# This function associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 associate.
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
 address with.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_associate_address() {
  local allocation_id instance_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_associate_address"
    echo "Associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 associate."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic
 IP address with."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
```

```
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance ID with the -i parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Associate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 associate-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id" \
    --instance-id "$instance_id" \
    --query "AssociationId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports associate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

################################################################################
# function ec2_disassociate_address
#
# This function disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a association_id - The association ID that represents the association of
 the Elastic IP address with an instance.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
```

```
#       1 - If it fails.
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_disassociate_address() {
  local association_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_disassociate_address"
    echo "Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a association_id - The association ID that represents the
 association of the Elastic IP address with an instance."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) association_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$association_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an association ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 disassociate-address \
    --association-id "$association_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports disassociate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
```

```
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function ec2_release_address
#
# This function releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 release.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_release_address() {
  local allocation_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_release_address"
    echo "Releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 release."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
```

```
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 release-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports release-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_terminate_instances
#
# This function terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# instances using the AWS CLI.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs.
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_terminate_instances() {
  local instance_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
```

```
    echo "function ec2_terminate_instances"
    echo "Terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Check if instance ID is provided
  if [[ -z "${instance_ids}" ]]; then
    echo "Error: Missing required instance IDs parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 terminate-instances \
    "--instance-ids" $instance_ids \
    --query 'TerminatingInstances[*].[InstanceId,CurrentState.Name]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports terminate-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_delete_security_group
#
# This function deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security
 group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_delete_security_group() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_security_group"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$security_group_id" --
output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-security-group operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_delete_keypair
#
# This function deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_delete_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name response

  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_keypair"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
```

```
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-key-pair operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
```

```
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup

- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstanceTypes
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeKeyPairsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DisassociateAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Ec2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.ReleaseAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParametersByPathResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.Parameter;

import java.net.InetAddress;
```

```
import java.net.UnknownHostException;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an RSA key pair and saves the private key data as a .pem file.
 * 2. Lists key pairs.
 * 3. Creates a security group for the default VPC.
 * 4. Displays security group information.
 * 5. Gets a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and selects one.
 * 6. Gets additional information about the image.
 * 7. Gets a list of instance types that are compatible with the selected AMI’s
 * architecture.
 * 8. Creates an instance with the key pair, security group, AMI, and an
 * instance type.
 * 9. Displays information about the instance.
 * 10. Stops the instance and waits for it to stop.
 * 11. Starts the instance and waits for it to start.
 * 12. Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the instance.
 * 13. Displays SSH connection info for the instance.
 * 14. Disassociates and deletes the Elastic IP address.
 * 15. Terminates the instance and waits for it to terminate.
 * 16. Deletes the security group.
 * 17. Deletes the key pair.
 */
public class EC2Scenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EC2Scenario.class);
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException,
 UnknownHostException {

        logger.info("""
            Usage:
               <keyName> <fileName> <groupName> <groupDesc>

            Where:
               keyName -  A key pair name (for example, TestKeyPair).\s
               fileName -  A file name where the key information is written to.\s
               groupName - The name of the security group.\s
               groupDesc - The description of the security group.\s
            """);

        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        EC2Actions ec2Actions = new EC2Actions();

        String keyName = "TestKeyPair7" ;
        String fileName = "ec2Key.pem";
        String groupName = "TestSecGroup7" ;
        String groupDesc = "Test Group" ;
        String vpcId = ec2Actions.describeFirstEC2VpcAsync().join().vpcId();
        InetAddress localAddress = InetAddress.getLocalHost();
        String myIpAddress = localAddress.getHostAddress();

        logger.info("""
            Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) is a web service that provides
 secure, resizable compute
            capacity in the cloud. It allows developers and organizations to
 easily launch and manage
            virtual server instances, known as EC2 instances, to run their
 applications.

            EC2 provides a wide range of instance types, each with different
 compute, memory,
            and storage capabilities, to meet the diverse needs of various
 workloads. Developers
            can choose the appropriate instance type based on their application's
 requirements,
            such as high-performance computing, memory-intensive tasks, or GPU-
accelerated workloads.

            The `Ec2AsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x provides a
 set of methods to
```

```
            programmatically interact with the Amazon EC2 service. This allows
developers to
            automate the provisioning, management, and monitoring of EC2
instances as part of their
            application deployment pipelines. With EC2, teams can focus on
building and deploying
            their applications without having to worry about the underlying
infrastructure
            required to host and manage physical servers.

            This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for
this service.
            Let's get started...
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an RSA key pair and save the private key material
as a .pem file.");
        logger.info("""
            An RSA key pair for Amazon EC2 is a security mechanism used to
authenticate and secure
            access to your EC2 instances. It consists of a public key and a
private key,
            which are generated as a pair.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> future =
ec2Actions.createKeyPairAsync(keyName, fileName);
            CreateKeyPairResponse response = future.join();
            logger.info("Key Pair successfully created. Key Fingerprint: " +
response.keyFingerprint());

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                if (ec2Ex.getMessage().contains("already exists")) {
                    // Key pair already exists.
                    logger.info("The key pair '" + keyName + "' already exists.
Moving on...");
                } else {
```

```
                    logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
(rt.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. List key pairs.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> future =
ec2Actions.describeKeysAsync();
            DescribeKeyPairsResponse keyPairsResponse = future.join();
            keyPairsResponse.keyPairs().forEach(keyPair -> logger.info(
                "Found key pair with name {} and fingerprint {}",
                keyPair.keyName(),
                keyPair.keyFingerprint()));

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rt.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a security group.");
        logger.info("""
            An AWS EC2 Security Group is a virtual firewall that controls the
```

```
            inbound and outbound traffic to an EC2 instance. It acts as a first
line
            of defense for your EC2 instances, allowing you to specify the rules
that
            govern the network traffic entering and leaving your instances.
           """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String groupId = "";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.createSecurityGroupAsync(groupName, groupDesc, vpcId, myIpAddress);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Created security group") ;

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                if (ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage().contains("already
exists")) {
                    logger.info("The Security Group already exists. Moving
on...");
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Display security group information for the new security
group.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(groupName);
            groupId = future.join();
            logger.info("The security group Id is "+groupId);
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                String errorCode = ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode();
                if ("InvalidGroup.NotFound".equals(errorCode)) {
                    logger.info("Security group '{}' does not exist. Error Code:
{}", groupName, errorCode);
                } else {
                    logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code: {}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), errorCode);
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Get a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and select one with
amzn2 in the name.");
        logger.info("""
            An Amazon EC2 AMI (Amazon Machine Image) is a pre-configured virtual
machine image that
            serves as a template for launching EC2 instances. It contains all the
necessary software and
            configurations required to run an application or operating system on
an EC2 instance.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String instanceAMI="";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<GetParametersByPathResponse> future =
ec2Actions.getParaValuesAsync();
            GetParametersByPathResponse pathResponse = future.join();
            List<Parameter> parameterList = pathResponse.parameters();
            for (Parameter para : parameterList) {
                if (filterName(para.name())) {
                    instanceAMI = para.value();
                    break;
                }
            }
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("The AMI value with amzn2 is: {}", instanceAMI);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Get the (Amazon Machine Image) AMI value from the amzn2
image.");
        logger.info("""
           An AMI value represents a specific version of a virtual machine (VM)
or server image.
           It uniquely identifies a particular version of an EC2 instance,
including its operating system,
           pre-installed software, and any custom configurations. This allows you
to consistently deploy the same
           VM image across your infrastructure.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String amiValue;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeImageAsync(instanceAMI);
            amiValue = future.join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                Ec2Exception ec2Ex = (Ec2Exception) cause;
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
```

```
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Retrieves an instance type available in the current AWS
region.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String instanceType;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.getInstanceTypesAsync();
            instanceType = future.join();
            if (!instanceType.isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("Found instance type: " + instanceType);
            } else {
                logger.info("Desired instance type not found.");
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Create an Amazon EC2 instance using the key pair, the
instance type, the security group, and the EC2 AMI value.");
        logger.info("Once the EC2 instance is created, it is placed into a
running state.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String newInstanceId;
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
 ec2Actions.runInstanceAsync(instanceType, keyName, groupName, amiValue);
            newInstanceId = future.join();
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                Ec2Exception ec2Ex = (Ec2Exception) cause;
                switch (ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode()) {
                    case "InvalidParameterValue":
                        logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:
{}", ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                    case "InsufficientInstanceCapacity":
                        // Handle insufficient instance capacity.
                        logger.info("Insufficient instance capacity: {}, {}",
 ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                    case "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                        // Handle security group not found.
                        logger.info("Security group not found: {},{}",
 ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                    default:
                        logger.info("EC2 error occurred: {} (Code: {}",
 ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                }
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", (cause != null ?
 cause.getMessage() : rt.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("The instance Id is " + newInstanceId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Display information about the running instance. ");

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String publicIp;
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeEC2InstancesAsync(newInstanceId);
            publicIp = future.join();
            logger.info("EC2 instance public IP {}", publicIp);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }

        }
        logger.info("You can SSH to the instance using this command:");
        logger.info("ssh -i " + fileName + " ec2-user@" + publicIp);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Stop the instance using a waiter (this may take a few
mins).");
        // Remove the 2nd one
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
ec2Actions.stopInstanceAsync(newInstanceId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("11. Start the instance using a waiter (this may take a few
mins).");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
ec2Actions.startInstanceAsync(newInstanceId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                // Handle EC2 exceptions.
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("12. Allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with the
instance.");
        logger.info("""
            An Elastic IP address is a static public IP address that you can
associate with your EC2 instance.
            This allows you to have a fixed, predictable IP address that remains
the same even if your instance
            is stopped, terminated, or replaced.
            This is particularly useful for applications or services that need to
be accessed consistently from a
            known IP address.

            An EC2 Allocation ID (also known as a Reserved Instance Allocation
ID) is a unique identifier associated with a Reserved Instance (RI) that you
have purchased in AWS.
```

```
            When you purchase a Reserved Instance, AWS assigns a unique
Allocation ID to it.
            This Allocation ID is used to track and identify the specific RI you
have purchased,
            and it is important for managing and monitoring your Reserved
Instances.

            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String allocationId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future = ec2Actions.allocateAddressAsync();
            allocationId = future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully allocated address with ID: "
+allocationId);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("The allocation Id value is " + allocationId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String associationId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.associateAddressAsync(newInstanceId, allocationId);
            associationId = future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully associated address with ID: "
+associationId);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
```

```
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("13. Describe the instance again. Note that the public IP
address has changed");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeEC2InstancesAsync(newInstanceId);
            publicIp = future.join();
            logger.info("EC2 instance public IP: " + publicIp);
            logger.info("You can SSH to the instance using this command:");
            logger.info("ssh -i " + fileName + " ec2-user@" + publicIp);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("14. Disassociate and release the Elastic IP address.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse> future =
ec2Actions.disassociateAddressAsync(associationId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Address successfully disassociated.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                // Handle EC2 exceptions.
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> future =
ec2Actions.releaseEC2AddressAsync(allocationId);
            future.join(); // Wait for the operation to complete
            logger.info("Elastic IP address successfully released.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("15. Terminate the instance and use a waiter (this may take a
few mins).");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Object> future =
ec2Actions.terminateEC2Async(newInstanceId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("EC2 instance successfully terminated.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                // Handle EC2 exceptions.
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
```

```
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("16. Delete the security group.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
ec2Actions.deleteEC2SecGroupAsync(groupId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Security group successfully deleted.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("17. Delete the key.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> future =
ec2Actions.deleteKeysAsync(keyName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully deleted key pair named " + keyName);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
```

```
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
 cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("You successfully completed the Amazon EC2 scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }
    public static boolean filterName(String name) {
        String[] parts = name.split("/");
        String myValue = parts[4];
        return myValue.contains("amzn2");
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps EC2 actions.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.Ec2AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AllocateAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AllocateAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AssociateAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AssociateAddressResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateKeyPairRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateSecurityGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteKeyPairRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteSecurityGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteSecurityGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeInstanceTypesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeInstanceTypesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeKeyPairsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DisassociateAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DisassociateAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DomainType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Ec2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Filter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.InstanceTypeInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IpPermission;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IpRange;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.ReleaseAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.ReleaseAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.RunInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.RunInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.StopInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.StartInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.TerminateInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Vpc;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeImagesPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeInstancesPublisher;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeVpcsPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.waiters.Ec2AsyncWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParametersByPathRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParametersByPathResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.TerminateInstancesResponse;
import java.io.BufferedWriter;
import java.io.FileWriter;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicReference;

public class EC2Actions {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EC2Actions.class);
    private static Ec2AsyncClient ec2AsyncClient;

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) client.
     *
     * @return the configured ECR asynchronous client.
     */
    private static Ec2AsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ec2AsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
 communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
 responses.
             */
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();
```

```
            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
call timeout.
                 .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                 .build();

            ec2AsyncClient = Ec2AsyncClient.builder()
                 .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                 .httpClient(httpClient)
                 .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                 .build();
        }
        return ec2AsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a key pair asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyPair the name of the key pair to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the result of the
asynchronous operation.
     *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DeleteKeyPairResponse} object
     *         that provides the result of the key pair deletion operation.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> deleteKeysAsync(String
keyPair) {
        DeleteKeyPairRequest request = DeleteKeyPairRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyPair)
            .build();

        // Initiate the asynchronous request to delete the key pair.
        CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteKeyPair(request);
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                 throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete key pair: " +
keyPair, ex);
            } else if (resp == null) {
                 throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting key
pair: " + keyPair);
```

```
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an EC2 security group asynchronously.
     *
     * @param groupId the ID of the security group to delete
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the security group is
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteEC2SecGroupAsync(String groupId) {
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest request = DeleteSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
            .groupId(groupId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteSecurityGroupResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSecurityGroup(request);
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete security group with
Id " + groupId, ex);
            } else if (resp == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting
security group with Id " + groupId);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Terminates an EC2 instance asynchronously and waits for it to reach the
terminated state.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to terminate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has
been terminated
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is no response from the AWS SDK or if
there is a failure during the termination process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> terminateEC2Async(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstancesRequest terminateRequest =
TerminateInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<TerminateInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().terminateInstances(terminateRequest);
        return responseFuture.thenCompose(terminateResponse -> {
            if (terminateResponse == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No response received for terminating
instance " + instanceId);
            }
            System.out.println("Going to terminate an EC2 instance and use a
waiter to wait for it to be in terminated state");
            return getAsyncClient().waiter()
                .waitUntilInstanceTerminated(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceId))
                .thenApply(waiterResponse -> null);
        }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
            // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to terminate EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Releases an Elastic IP address asynchronously.
     *
     * @param allocId the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to be released
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of releasing the Elastic IP address
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse>
releaseEC2AddressAsync(String allocId) {
        ReleaseAddressRequest request = ReleaseAddressRequest.builder()
            .allocationId(allocId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().releaseAddress(request);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to release Elastic IP
address", ex);
            }
        });

        return response;
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param associationId The ID of the association you want to disassociate.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of disassociating the address. The
    *         {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DisassociateAddressResponse} when the operation is
    *         finished.
    * @throws RuntimeException if the disassociation of the address fails.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse>
disassociateAddressAsync(String associationId) {
       Ec2AsyncClient ec2 = getAsyncClient();
       DisassociateAddressRequest addressRequest =
DisassociateAddressRequest.builder()
           .associationId(associationId)
           .build();

       // Disassociate the address asynchronously.
       CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse> response =
ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
              throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disassociate address", ex);
           }
       });

       return response;
   }

   /**
    * Associates an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param instanceId    the ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic
IP address with
    * @param allocationId  the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
associate
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the association ID
when the operation is successful,
    *         or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
    */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<String> associateAddressAsync(String instanceId,
String allocationId) {
       AssociateAddressRequest associateRequest =
AssociateAddressRequest.builder()
           .instanceId(instanceId)
           .allocationId(allocationId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<AssociateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().associateAddress(associateRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> {
           if (response.associationId() != null) {
               return response.associationId();
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Association ID is null after
associating address.");
           }
       }).whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to associate address", ex);
           }
       });
   }

   /**
    * Allocates an Elastic IP address asynchronously in the VPC domain.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the allocation ID of the
allocated Elastic IP address
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> allocateAddressAsync() {
       AllocateAddressRequest allocateRequest = AllocateAddressRequest.builder()
           .domain(DomainType.VPC)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<AllocateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().allocateAddress(allocateRequest);
       return
responseFuture.thenApply(AllocateAddressResponse::allocationId).whenComplete((result,
ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to allocate address", ex);
           }
       });
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the state of an EC2 instance.
     * The paginator helps you iterate over multiple pages of results.
     *
     * @param newInstanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to describe
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a
string describing the state of the EC2 instance
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeEC2InstancesAsync(String
newInstanceId) {
        DescribeInstancesRequest request = DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(newInstanceId)
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeInstancesPaginator(request);
        AtomicReference<String> publicIpAddressRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.reservations().stream()
                .flatMap(reservation -> reservation.instances().stream())
                .filter(instance -> instance.instanceId().equals(newInstanceId))
                .findFirst()
                .ifPresent(instance ->
publicIpAddressRef.set(instance.publicIpAddress()));
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String publicIpAddress = publicIpAddressRef.get();
            if (publicIpAddress == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Instance with ID " + newInstanceId +
" not found.");
            }
            return publicIpAddress;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe instances: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe instances", ex);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Runs an EC2 instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceType The instance type to use for the EC2 instance.
```

```
    * @param keyName The name of the key pair to associate with the EC2
instance.
    * @param groupName The name of the security group to associate with the EC2
instance.
    * @param amiId The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the EC2
instance.
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the
started EC2 instance.
    * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error running the EC2 instance.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> runInstanceAsync(String instanceType, String
keyName, String groupName, String amiId) {
       RunInstancesRequest runRequest = RunInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceType(instanceType)
           .keyName(keyName)
           .securityGroups(groupName)
           .maxCount(1)
           .minCount(1)
           .imageId(amiId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<RunInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().runInstances(runRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenCompose(response -> {
           String instanceIdVal = response.instances().get(0).instanceId();
           System.out.println("Going to start an EC2 instance and use a waiter
to wait for it to be in running state");
           return getAsyncClient().waiter()
               .waitUntilInstanceExists(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
               .thenCompose(waitResponse -> getAsyncClient().waiter()
                   .waitUntilInstanceRunning(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
                   .thenApply(runningResponse -> instanceIdVal));
       }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
           // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to run EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
       });
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the instance types available in the current AWS
region.
    * <p>
```

```
    * This method uses the AWS SDK's asynchronous API to fetch the available
instance types
    * and then processes the response. It logs the memory information, network
information,
    * and instance type for each instance type returned. Additionally, it
returns a
    * {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type string for
the "t2.2xlarge"
    * instance type, if it is found in the response. If the "t2.2xlarge"
instance type is not
    * found, an empty string is returned.
    * </p>
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type
string for the
    * "t2.2xlarge" instance type, or an empty string if the instance type is not
found
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> getInstanceTypesAsync() {
       DescribeInstanceTypesRequest typesRequest =
DescribeInstanceTypesRequest.builder()
           .maxResults(10)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeInstanceTypesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               List<InstanceTypeInfo> instanceTypes = resp.instanceTypes();
               for (InstanceTypeInfo type : instanceTypes) {
                   logger.info("The memory information of this type is " +
type.memoryInfo().sizeInMiB());
                   logger.info("Network information is " +
type.networkInfo().toString());
                   logger.info("Instance type is " +
type.instanceType().toString());
               }
           } else {
               throw (RuntimeException) ex;
           }
       });

       return response.thenApply(resp -> {
           for (InstanceTypeInfo type : resp.instanceTypes()) {
```

```
                String instanceType = type.instanceType().toString();
                if (instanceType.equals("t2.2xlarge")) {
                    return instanceType;
                }
            }
            return "";
        });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes an AWS EC2 image with the specified image ID.
     *
     * @param imageId the ID of the image to be described
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the ID
of the described image
     * @throws RuntimeException if no images are found with the provided image
ID, or if an error occurs during the AWS API call
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeImageAsync(String imageId) {
        DescribeImagesRequest imagesRequest = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .imageIds(imageId)
            .build();

        AtomicReference<String> imageIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        DescribeImagesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeImagesPaginator(imagesRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.images().stream()
                .filter(image -> image.imageId().equals(imageId))
                .findFirst()
                .ifPresent(image -> {
                    logger.info("The description of the image is " +
image.description());
                    logger.info("The name of the image is " + image.name());
                    imageIdRef.set(image.imageId());
                });
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String id = imageIdRef.get();
            if (id == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No images found with the provided
image ID.");
            }
            return id;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
```

```
            logger.info("Failed to describe image: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe image", ex);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the parameter values asynchronously using the AWS Systems
Manager (SSM) API.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that holds the response from the SSM
API call to get parameters by path
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetParametersByPathResponse> getParaValuesAsync() {
        SsmAsyncClient ssmClient = SsmAsyncClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        GetParametersByPathRequest parameterRequest =
GetParametersByPathRequest.builder()
            .path("/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest")
            .build();

        // Create a CompletableFuture to hold the final result.
        CompletableFuture<GetParametersByPathResponse> responseFuture = new
CompletableFuture<>();
        ssmClient.getParametersByPath(parameterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    responseFuture.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to get parameters by path", exception));
                } else {
                    responseFuture.complete(response);
                }
            });

        return responseFuture;
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
     *
     * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
    *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
    *         security group information.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
       DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
           .groupNames(groupName)
           .build();

       DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.securityGroups().stream()
               .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
       }).thenApply(v -> {
           String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
           if (groupId == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the
name: " + groupName);
           }
           return groupId;
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
       });
   }

   /**
    * Creates a new security group asynchronously with the specified group name,
description, and VPC ID. It also
    * authorizes inbound traffic on ports 80 and 22 from the specified IP
address.
    *
    * @param groupName    the name of the security group to create
    * @param groupDesc    the description of the security group
```

```
    * @param vpcId        the ID of the VPC in which to create the security
group
    * @param myIpAddress  the IP address from which to allow inbound traffic
(e.g., "192.168.1.1/0" to allow traffic from
    *                     any IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet)
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the ID of the
created security group
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure creating the security
group or authorizing the inbound traffic
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSecurityGroupAsync(String groupName,
String groupDesc, String vpcId, String myIpAddress) {
       CreateSecurityGroupRequest createRequest =
CreateSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
           .groupName(groupName)
           .description(groupDesc)
           .vpcId(vpcId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createSecurityGroup(createRequest)
           .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
               String groupId = createResponse.groupId();
               IpRange ipRange = IpRange.builder()
                   .cidrIp(myIpAddress + "/32")
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(80)
                   .fromPort(80)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm2 = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(22)
                   .fromPort(22)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();

               AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest authRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                   .groupName(groupName)
                   .ipPermissions(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
```

```
                    .build();

                return
getAsyncClient().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
                    .thenApply(authResponse -> groupId);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception instanceof CompletionException &&
exception.getCause() instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw (Ec2Exception) exception.getCause();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create security
group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the key pairs associated with the current AWS
account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the {@link
DescribeKeyPairsResponse} object, which provides
     * information about the key pairs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> describeKeysAsync() {
        CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKeyPairs();
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
              throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe key pairs: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new key pair asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the key pair to create
```

```
    * @param fileName the name of the file to write the key material to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of creating the key pair and writing the key material to a file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> createKeyPairAsync(String
keyName, String fileName) {
       CreateKeyPairRequest request = CreateKeyPairRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createKeyPair(request);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               try {
                   BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
FileWriter(fileName));
                   writer.write(response.keyMaterial());
                   writer.close();
               } catch (IOException e) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write key material to
file: " + e.getMessage(), e);
               }
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create key pair: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }

   /**
    * Describes the first default VPC asynchronously and using a paginator.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the
first default VPC found.\
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Vpc> describeFirstEC2VpcAsync() {
       Filter myFilter = Filter.builder()
           .name("is-default")
           .values("true")
           .build();
```

```
        DescribeVpcsRequest request = DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
            .filters(myFilter)
            .build();

        DescribeVpcsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeVpcsPaginator(request);
        AtomicReference<Vpc> vpcRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.vpcs().stream()
                .findFirst()
                .ifPresent(vpcRef::set);
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            Vpc vpc = vpcRef.get();
            if (vpc == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Default VPC not found");
            }
            return vpc;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe VPCs: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe VPCs", ex);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Stops the EC2 instance with the specified ID asynchronously and waits for
the instance to stop.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to stop
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has
been stopped, or exceptionally if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> stopInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        StopInstancesRequest stopRequest = StopInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
            .client(getAsyncClient())
```

```
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        logger.info("Stopping instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
stop.");
        getAsyncClient().stopInstances(stopRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                if (response.stoppingInstances().isEmpty()) {
                    return CompletableFuture.failedFuture(new
RuntimeException("No instances were stopped. Please check the instance ID: " +
instanceId));
                }
                return ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceStopped(describeRequest);
            })
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully stopped instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                logger.error("Failed to stop instance " + instanceId + ": " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
to stop instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });

        return resultFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Starts an Amazon EC2 instance asynchronously and waits until it is in the
"running" state.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the instance to start
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has
been started and is in the "running" state, or exceptionally if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> startInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        StartInstancesRequest startRequest = StartInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
            .client(getAsyncClient())
```

```
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
 DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Starting instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
 run.");
        CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        return getAsyncClient().startInstances(startRequest)
            .thenCompose(response ->
                ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceRunning(describeRequest)
            )
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully started instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
 to start instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances

- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This file contains a list of common actions used with EC2. The steps are constructed with a Scenario framework that simplifies running an interactive example. For the full context, visit the GitHub repository.

```
import { tmpdir } from "node:os";
import { writeFile, mkdtemp, rm } from "node:fs/promises";
import { join } from "node:path";
import { get } from "node:http";

import {
  AllocateAddressCommand,
  AssociateAddressCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateSecurityGroupCommand,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteSecurityGroupCommand,
  DisassociateAddressCommand,
```

```
  paginateDescribeImages,
  paginateDescribeInstances,
  paginateDescribeInstanceTypes,
  ReleaseAddressCommand,
  RunInstancesCommand,
  StartInstancesCommand,
  StopInstancesCommand,
  TerminateInstancesCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceStatusOk,
  waitUntilInstanceStopped,
  waitUntilInstanceTerminated,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

import { paginateGetParametersByPath, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   ec2Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').EC2Client,
 *   errors: Error[],
 *   keyPairId?: string,
 *   tmpDirectory?: string,
 *   securityGroupId?: string,
 *   ipAddress?: string,
 *   images?: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Image[],
 *   image?: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Image,
 *   instanceTypes?: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').InstanceTypeInfo[],
 *   instanceId?: string,
 *   instanceIpAddress?: string,
 *   allocationId?: string,
 *   allocatedIpAddress?: string,
 *   associationId?: string,
 * }} State
 */

/**
 * A skip function provided to the `skipWhen` of a Step when you want
 * to ignore that step if any errors have occurred.
 * @param {State} state
```

```
 */
const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;

const MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS = 60 * 8;

export const confirm = new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", "Continue?", {
  type: "confirm",
  skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
});

export const exitOnNoConfirm = new ScenarioAction(
  "exitOnConfirmContinueFalse",
  (/** @type { { earlyExit: boolean } & Record<string, any>} */ state) => {
    if (!state[confirm.name]) {
      state.earlyExit = true;
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

export const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  `

Welcome to the Amazon EC2 basic usage scenario.

Before you launch an instances, you'll need to provide a few things:
 - A key pair - This is for SSH access to your EC2 instance. You only need to
 provide the name.
 - A security group - This is used for configuring access to your instance.
 Again, only the name is needed.
 - An IP address - Your public IP address will be fetched.
 - An Amazon Machine Image (AMI)
 - A compatible instance type`,
  { header: true, preformatted: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const provideKeyPairName = new ScenarioInput(
  "keyPairName",
  "Provide a name for a new key pair.",
  { type: "input", default: "ec2-example-key-pair", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

```
export const createKeyPair = new ScenarioAction(
  "createKeyPair",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Create a key pair in Amazon EC2.
      const { KeyMaterial, KeyPairId } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        // A unique name for the key pair. Up to 255 ASCII characters.
        new CreateKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: state[provideKeyPairName.name] }),
      );

      state.keyPairId = KeyPairId;

      // Save the private key in a temporary location.
      state.tmpDirectory = await mkdtemp(join(tmpdir(), "ec2-scenario-tmp"));
      await writeFile(
        `${state.tmpDirectory}/${state[provideKeyPairName.name]}.pem`,
        KeyMaterial,
        {
          mode: 0o400,
        },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try another key name.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logKeyPair = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logKeyPair",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Created the key pair ${state[provideKeyPairName.name]}.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const confirmDeleteKeyPair = new ScenarioInput(
```

```
  "confirmDeleteKeyPair",
  "Do you want to delete the key pair?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    // Don't do anything when a key pair was never created.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => !state.keyPairId,
  },
);

export const maybeDeleteKeyPair = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteKeyPair",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Delete a key pair by name from EC2
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: state[provideKeyPairName.name] }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        // Occurs when a required parameter (e.g. KeyName) is undefined.
        caught.name === "MissingParameter"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Did you provide the required value?
`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    // Don't do anything when there's no key pair to delete or the user chooses
    // to keep it.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      !state.keyPairId || !state[confirmDeleteKeyPair.name],
  },
);

export const provideSecurityGroupName = new ScenarioInput(
  "securityGroupName",
  "Provide a name for a new security group.",
  { type: "input", default: "ec2-scenario-sg", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const createSecurityGroup = new ScenarioAction(
```

```
  "createSecurityGroup",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Create a new security group that will be used to configure ingress/
egress for
      // an EC2 instance.
      const { GroupId } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        new CreateSecurityGroupCommand({
          GroupName: state[provideSecurityGroupName.name],
          Description: "A security group for the Amazon EC2 example.",
        }),
      );
      state.securityGroupId = GroupId;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroup.Duplicate") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a different name for
 your security group.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logSecurityGroup = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSecurityGroup",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Created the security group ${state.securityGroupId}.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const confirmDeleteSecurityGroup = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteSecurityGroup",
  "Do you want to delete the security group?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    // Don't do anything when a security group was never created.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => !state.securityGroupId,
  },
);

export const maybeDeleteSecurityGroup = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteSecurityGroup",
```

```
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Delete the security group if the 'skipWhen' condition below is not met.
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new DeleteSecurityGroupCommand({
          GroupId: state.securityGroupId,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    // Don't do anything when there's no security group to delete
    // or the user chooses to keep it.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      !state.securityGroupId || !state[confirmDeleteSecurityGroup.name],
  },
);

export const authorizeSecurityGroupIngress = new ScenarioAction(
  "authorizeSecurity",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Get the public IP address of the machine running this example.
      const ipAddress = await new Promise((res, rej) => {
        get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com", (response) => {
          let data = "";
          response.on("data", (chunk) => {
            data += chunk;
          });
          response.on("end", () => res(data.trim()));
        }).on("error", (err) => {
          rej(err);
        });
      });
      state.ipAddress = ipAddress;
      // Allow ingress from the IP address above to the security group.
```

```
      // This will allow you to SSH into the EC2 instance.
      const command = new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
        GroupId: state.securityGroupId,
        IpPermissions: [
          {
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
            FromPort: 22,
            ToPort: 22,
            IpRanges: [{ CidrIp: `${ipAddress}/32` }],
          },
        ],
      });

      await state.ec2Client.send(command);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logSecurityGroupIngress = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSecurityGroupIngress",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Allowed SSH access from your public IP: ${state.ipAddress}.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const getImages = new ScenarioAction(
  "images",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const AMIs = [];
    // Some AWS services publish information about common artifacts as AWS
 Systems Manager (SSM)
    // public parameters. For example, the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2)
```

```
   // service publishes information about Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) as public
parameters.

   // Create the paginator for getting images. Actions that return multiple
pages of
   // results have paginators to simplify those calls.
   const getParametersByPathPaginator = paginateGetParametersByPath(
     {
       // Not storing this client in state since it's only used once.
       client: new SSMClient({}),
     },
     {
       // The path to the public list of the latest amazon-linux instances.
       Path: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest",
     },
   );

   try {
     for await (const page of getParametersByPathPaginator) {
       for (const param of page.Parameters) {
         // Filter by Amazon Linux 2
         if (param.Name.includes("amzn2")) {
           AMIs.push(param.Value);
         }
       }
     }
   } catch (caught) {
     if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidFilterValue") {
       caught.message = `${caught.message} Please provide a valid filter value
for paginateGetParametersByPath.`;
     }
     state.errors.push(caught);
     return;
   }

   const imageDetails = [];
   const describeImagesPaginator = paginateDescribeImages(
     { client: state.ec2Client },
     // The images found from the call to SSM.
     { ImageIds: AMIs },
   );

   try {
     // Get more details for the images found above.
```

```
      for await (const page of describeImagesPaginator) {
        imageDetails.push(...(page.Images || []));
      }

      // Store the image details for later use.
      state.images = imageDetails;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidAMIID.NotFound") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid image id.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const provideImage = new ScenarioInput(
  "image",
  "Select one of the following images.",
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      state.images.map((image) => ({
        name: `${image.Description}`,
        value: image,
      })),
    default: (/** @type { State } */ state) => state.images[0],
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

export const getCompatibleInstanceTypes = new ScenarioAction(
  "getCompatibleInstanceTypes",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Get more details about instance types that match the architecture of
    // the provided image.
    const paginator = paginateDescribeInstanceTypes(
      { client: state.ec2Client, pageSize: 25 },
      {
        Filters: [
          {
            Name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
            // The value selected from provideImage()
```

```
            Values: [state.image.Architecture],
          },
          // Filter for smaller, less expensive, types.
          { Name: "instance-type", Values: ["*.micro", "*.small"] },
        ],
      },
    );

    const instanceTypes = [];

    try {
      for await (const page of paginator) {
        if (page.InstanceTypes.length) {
          instanceTypes.push(...(page.InstanceTypes || []));
        }
      }

      if (!instanceTypes.length) {
        state.errors.push(
          "No instance types matched the instance type filters.",
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please check the provided values and
 try again.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }

    state.instanceTypes = instanceTypes;
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const provideInstanceType = new ScenarioInput(
  "instanceType",
  "Select an instance type.",
  {
    choices: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.instanceTypes.map((instanceType) => ({
        name: `${instanceType.InstanceType} - Memory:
${instanceType.MemoryInfo.SizeInMiB}`,
```

```
        value: instanceType.InstanceType,
      })),
    type: "select",
    default: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.instanceTypes[0].InstanceType,
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

export const runInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "runInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    const { Instances } = await state.ec2Client.send(
      new RunInstancesCommand({
        KeyName: state[provideKeyPairName.name],
        SecurityGroupIds: [state.securityGroupId],
        ImageId: state.image.ImageId,
        InstanceType: state[provideInstanceType.name],
        // Availability Zones have capacity limitations that may impact your
 ability to launch instances.
        // The `RunInstances` operation will only succeed if it can allocate at
 least the `MinCount` of instances.
        // However, EC2 will attempt to launch up to the `MaxCount` of instances,
 even if the full request cannot be satisfied.
        // If you need a specific number of instances, use `MinCount` and
 `MaxCount` set to the same value.
        // If you want to launch up to a certain number of instances, use
 `MaxCount` and let EC2 provision as many as possible.
        // If you require a minimum number of instances, but do not want to
 exceed a maximum, use both `MinCount` and `MaxCount`.
        MinCount: 1,
        MaxCount: 1,
      }),
    );

    state.instanceId = Instances[0].InstanceId;

    try {
      // Poll `DescribeInstanceStatus` until status is "ok".
      await waitUntilInstanceStatusOk(
        {
          client: state.ec2Client,
          maxWaitTime: MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS,
        },
```

```
        { InstanceIds: [Instances[0].InstanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in
 the waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logRunInstance = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logRunInstance",
  "The next step is to run your EC2 instance for the first time. This can take a
 few minutes.",
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const describeInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "describeInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    /** @type { import("@aws-sdk/client-ec2").Instance[] } */
    const instances = [];

    try {
      const paginator = paginateDescribeInstances(
        {
          client: state.ec2Client,
        },
        {
          // Only get our created instance.
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        },
      );

      for await (const page of paginator) {
        for (const reservation of page.Reservations) {
          instances.push(...reservation.Instances);
        }
      }
      if (instances.length !== 1) {
```

```
        throw new Error(`Instance ${state.instanceId} not found.`);
      }

      // The only info we need is the IP address for SSH purposes.
      state.instanceIpAddress = instances[0].PublicIpAddress;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please check provided values and try
 again.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logSSHConnectionInfo = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSSHConnectionInfo",
  (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
    `You can now SSH into your instance using the following command:
ssh -i ${state.tmpDirectory}/${state[provideKeyPairName.name]}.pem ec2-user@
${state.instanceIpAddress}`,
  { preformatted: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logStopInstance = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logStopInstance",
  "Stopping your EC2 instance.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const stopInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "stopInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new StopInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        }),
      );

      await waitUntilInstanceStopped(
        {
```

```
          client: state.ec2Client,
          maxWaitTime: MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS,
        },
        { InstanceIds: [state.instanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in
 the waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  // Don't try to stop an instance that doesn't exist.
  { skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) => !state.instanceId },
);

export const logIpAddressBehavior = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logIpAddressBehavior",
  [
    "When you run an instance, by default it's assigned an IP address.",
    "That IP address is not static. It will change every time the instance is
 restarted.",
    "The next step is to stop and restart your instance to demonstrate this
 behavior.",
  ].join(" "),
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logStartInstance = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logStartInstance",
  (/** @type { State } */ state) => `Starting instance ${state.instanceId}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const startInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "startInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new StartInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        }),
```

```
      );

      await waitUntilInstanceStatusOk(
        {
          client: state.ec2Client,
          maxWaitTime: MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS,
        },
        { InstanceIds: [state.instanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in
 the waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logIpAllocation = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logIpAllocation",
  [
    "It is possible to have a static IP address.",
    "To demonstrate this, an IP will be allocated and associated to your EC2
 instance.",
  ].join(" "),
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const allocateIp = new ScenarioAction(
  "allocateIp",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      // An Elastic IP address is allocated to your AWS account, and is yours
 until you release it.
      const { AllocationId, PublicIp } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        new AllocateAddressCommand({}),
      );
      state.allocationId = AllocationId;
      state.allocatedIpAddress = PublicIp;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
```

```
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const associateIp = new ScenarioAction(
  "associateIp",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      // Associate an allocated IP address to an EC2 instance. An IP address can
 be allocated
      // with the AllocateAddress action.
      const { AssociationId } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        new AssociateAddressCommand({
          AllocationId: state.allocationId,
          InstanceId: state.instanceId,
        }),
      );
      state.associationId = AssociationId;
      // Update the IP address that is being tracked to match
      // the one just associated.
      state.instanceIpAddress = state.allocatedIpAddress;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Did you provide the ID of a valid
 Elastic IP address AllocationId?`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logStaticIpProof = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logStaticIpProof",
  "The IP address should remain the same even after stopping and starting the
 instance.",
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
```

```
);

export const logCleanUp = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logCleanUp",
  "That's it! You can choose to clean up the resources now, or clean them up on
 your own later.",
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const confirmDisassociateAddress = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDisassociateAddress",
  "Do you want to disassociate and release the static IP address created
 earlier?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) => !state.associationId,
  },
);

export const maybeDisassociateAddress = new ScenarioAction(
  "maybeDisassociateAddress",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new DisassociateAddressCommand({
          AssociationId: state.associationId,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid association
 ID.`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      !state[confirmDisassociateAddress.name] || !state.associationId,
  },
);
```

```
export const maybeReleaseAddress = new ScenarioAction(
  "maybeReleaseAddress",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new ReleaseAddressCommand({
          AllocationId: state.allocationId,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid
 AllocationID.`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      !state[confirmDisassociateAddress.name] || !state.allocationId,
  },
);

export const confirmTerminateInstance = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmTerminateInstance",
  "Do you want to terminate the instance?",
  // Don't do anything when an instance was never run.
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) => !state.instanceId,
    type: "confirm",
  },
);

export const maybeTerminateInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "terminateInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new TerminateInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
```

```
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilInstanceTerminated(
        { client: state.ec2Client },
        { InstanceIds: [state.instanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in
 the waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    // Don't do anything when there's no instance to terminate or the
    // use chooses not to terminate.
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      !state.instanceId || !state[confirmTerminateInstance.name],
  },
);

export const deleteTemporaryDirectory = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteTemporaryDirectory",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await rm(state.tmpDirectory, { recursive: true });
    } catch (caught) {
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
);

export const logErrors = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logErrors",
  (/** @type {State}*/ state) => {
    const errorList = state.errors
      .map((err) => ` - ${err.name}: ${err.message}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Scenario errors found:\n${errorList}`;
  },
  {
    preformatted: true,
```

```
    header: true,
    // Don't log errors when there aren't any!
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.errors.length === 0,
  },
);
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances
  - UnmonitorInstances

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Creates an RSA key pair and saves the private key data as a .pem file.
 2. Lists key pairs.
 3. Creates a security group for the default VPC.
 4. Displays security group information.
 5. Gets a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and selects one.
 6. Gets more information about the image.
 7. Gets a list of instance types that are compatible with the selected AMI’s
 architecture.
 8. Creates an instance with the key pair, security group, AMI, and an instance
 type.
 9. Displays information about the instance.
 10. Stops the instance and waits for it to stop.
 11. Starts the instance and waits for it to start.
 12. Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the instance.
 13. Displays SSH connection info for the instance.
 14. Disassociates and deletes the Elastic IP address.
 15. Terminates the instance.
 16. Deletes the security group.
 17. Deletes the key pair.
 */

val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
```

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <keyName> <fileName> <groupName> <groupDesc> <vpcId> <myIpAddress>

        Where:
            keyName - A key pair name (for example, TestKeyPair).
            fileName - A file name where the key information is written to.
            groupName - The name of the security group.
            groupDesc - The description of the security group.
            vpcId - A VPC ID. You can get this value from the AWS Management
 Console.
            myIpAddress - The IP address of your development machine.

"""

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val keyName = args[0]
    val fileName = args[1]
    val groupName = args[2]
    val groupDesc = args[3]
    val vpcId = args[4]
    val myIpAddress = args[5]
    var newInstanceId: String? = ""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon EC2 example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an RSA key pair and save the private key material as
 a .pem file.")
    createKeyPairSc(keyName, fileName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List key pairs.")
    describeEC2KeysSc()
    println(DASHES)
```

```
   println(DASHES)
   println("3. Create a security group.")
   val groupId = createEC2SecurityGroupSc(groupName, groupDesc, vpcId,
myIpAddress)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("4. Display security group info for the newly created security
group.")
   describeSecurityGroupsSc(groupId.toString())
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("5. Get a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and select one with amzn2 in
the name.")
   val instanceId = getParaValuesSc()
   if (instanceId == "") {
       println("The instance Id value isn't valid.")
       exitProcess(0)
   }
   println("The instance Id is $instanceId.")
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("6. Get more information about an amzn2 image and return the AMI
value.")
   val amiValue = instanceId?.let { describeImageSc(it) }
   if (instanceId == "") {
       println("The instance Id value is invalid.")
       exitProcess(0)
   }
   println("The AMI value is $amiValue.")
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("7. Get a list of instance types.")
   val instanceType = getInstanceTypesSc()
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("8. Create an instance.")
   if (amiValue != null) {
       newInstanceId = runInstanceSc(instanceType, keyName, groupName, amiValue)
```

```
        println("The instance Id is $newInstanceId")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Display information about the running instance. ")
    var ipAddress = describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId)
    println("You can SSH to the instance using this command:")
    println("ssh -i " + fileName + "ec2-user@" + ipAddress)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10.  Stop the instance.")
    if (newInstanceId != null) {
        stopInstanceSc(newInstanceId)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11.  Start the instance.")
    if (newInstanceId != null) {
        startInstanceSc(newInstanceId)
    }
    ipAddress = describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId)
    println("You can SSH to the instance using this command:")
    println("ssh -i " + fileName + "ec2-user@" + ipAddress)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with the
 instance.")
    val allocationId = allocateAddressSc()
    println("The allocation Id value is $allocationId")
    val associationId = associateAddressSc(newInstanceId, allocationId)
    println("The associate Id value is $associationId")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Describe the instance again.")
    ipAddress = describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId)
    println("You can SSH to the instance using this command:")
    println("ssh -i " + fileName + "ec2-user@" + ipAddress)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Disassociate and release the Elastic IP address.")
    disassociateAddressSc(associationId)
    releaseEC2AddressSc(allocationId)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Terminate the instance and use a waiter.")
    if (newInstanceId != null) {
        terminateEC2Sc(newInstanceId)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Delete the security group.")
    if (groupId != null) {
        deleteEC2SecGroupSc(groupId)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Delete the key pair.")
    deleteKeysSc(keyName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("You successfully completed the Amazon EC2 scenario.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteKeysSc(keyPair: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyPair
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteKeyPair(request)
        println("Successfully deleted key pair named $keyPair")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteEC2SecGroupSc(groupIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest {
```

```
            groupId = groupIdVal
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteSecurityGroup(request)
        println("Successfully deleted security group with Id $groupIdVal")
    }
}

suspend fun terminateEC2Sc(instanceIdVal: String) {
    val ti =
        TerminateInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceIdVal)
        }
    println("Wait for the instance to terminate. This will take a few minutes.")
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.terminateInstances(ti)
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceTerminated {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceIdVal)
        }
        println("$instanceIdVal is terminated!")
    }
}

suspend fun releaseEC2AddressSc(allocId: String?) {
    val request =
        ReleaseAddressRequest {
            allocationId = allocId
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.releaseAddress(request)
        println("Successfully released Elastic IP address $allocId")
    }
}

suspend fun disassociateAddressSc(associationIdVal: String?) {
    val addressRequest =
        DisassociateAddressRequest {
            associationId = associationIdVal
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest)
        println("You successfully disassociated the address!")
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun associateAddressSc(
    instanceIdVal: String?,
    allocationIdVal: String?,
): String? {
    val associateRequest =
        AssociateAddressRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            allocationId = allocationIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val associateResponse = ec2.associateAddress(associateRequest)
        return associateResponse.associationId
    }
}

suspend fun allocateAddressSc(): String? {
    val allocateRequest =
        AllocateAddressRequest {
            domain = DomainType.Vpc
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val allocateResponse = ec2.allocateAddress(allocateRequest)
        return allocateResponse.allocationId
    }
}

suspend fun startInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StartInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.startInstances(request)
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId starts. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceRunning {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
```

```
        println("Successfully started instance $instanceId")
    }
}

suspend fun stopInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StopInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.stopInstances(request)
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId stops. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceStopped {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully stopped instance $instanceId")
    }
}

suspend fun describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId: String?): String {
    var pubAddress = ""
    var isRunning = false
    val request =
        DescribeInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(newInstanceId.toString())
        }

    while (!isRunning) {
        Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
            val response = ec2.describeInstances(request)
            val state =
                response.reservations
                    ?.get(0)
                    ?.instances
                    ?.get(0)
                    ?.state
                    ?.name
                    ?. value
            if (state != null) {
                if (state.compareTo("running") == 0) {
```

```
                    println("Image id is
 ${response.reservations!!.get(0).instances?.get(0)?.imageId}")
                    println("Instance type is
 ${response.reservations!!.get(0).instances?.get(0)?.instanceType}")
                    println("Instance state is
 ${response.reservations!!.get(0).instances?.get(0)?.state}")
                    pubAddress =
                        response.reservations!!
                            .get(0)
                            .instances
                            ?.get(0)
                            ?.publicIpAddress
                            .toString()
                    println("Instance address is $pubAddress")
                    isRunning = true
                }
            }
        }
    }
    return pubAddress
}

suspend fun runInstanceSc(
    instanceTypeVal: String,
    keyNameVal: String,
    groupNameVal: String,
    amiIdVal: String,
): String {
    val runRequest =
        RunInstancesRequest {
            instanceType = InstanceType.fromValue(instanceTypeVal)
            keyName = keyNameVal
            securityGroups = listOf(groupNameVal)
            maxCount = 1
            minCount = 1
            imageId = amiIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.runInstances(runRequest)
        val instanceId = response.instances?.get(0)?.instanceId
        println("Successfully started EC2 Instance $instanceId based on AMI
 $amiIdVal")
        return instanceId.toString()
```

```
    }
}

// Get a list of instance types.
suspend fun getInstanceTypesSc(): String {
    var instanceType = ""
    val filterObs = ArrayList<Filter>()
    val filter =
        Filter {
            name = "processor-info.supported-architecture"
            values = listOf("arm64")
        }

    filterObs.add(filter)
    val typesRequest =
        DescribeInstanceTypesRequest {
            filters = filterObs
            maxResults = 10
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest)
        response.instanceTypes?.forEach { type ->
            println("The memory information of this type is
 ${type.memoryInfo?.sizeInMib}")
            println("Maximum number of network cards is
 ${type.networkInfo?.maximumNetworkCards}")
            instanceType = type.instanceType.toString()
        }
        return instanceType
    }
}

// Display the Description field that corresponds to the instance Id value.
suspend fun describeImageSc(instanceId: String): String? {
    val imagesRequest =
        DescribeImagesRequest {
            imageIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeImages(imagesRequest)
        println("The description of the first image is
 ${response.images?.get(0)?.description}")
```

```
        println("The name of the first image is
 ${response.images?.get(0)?.name}")

        // Return the image Id value.
        return response.images?.get(0)?.imageId
    }
}

// Get the Id value of an instance with amzn2 in the name.
suspend fun getParaValuesSc(): String? {
    val parameterRequest =
        GetParametersByPathRequest {
            path = "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest"
        }

    SsmClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ssmClient ->
        val response = ssmClient.getParametersByPath(parameterRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            println("The name of the para is: ${para.name}")
            println("The type of the para is: ${para.type}")
            println("")
            if (para.name?.let { filterName(it) } == true) {
                return para.value
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

fun filterName(name: String): Boolean {
    val parts = name.split("/").toTypedArray()
    val myValue = parts[4]
    return myValue.contains("amzn2")
}

suspend fun describeSecurityGroupsSc(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        for (group in response.securityGroups!!) {
```

```
            println("Found Security Group with id " + group.groupId.toString() +
 " and group VPC " + group.vpcId)
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createEC2SecurityGroupSc(
    groupNameVal: String?,
    groupDescVal: String?,
    vpcIdVal: String?,
    myIpAddress: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupName = groupNameVal
            description = groupDescVal
            vpcId = vpcIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val resp = ec2.createSecurityGroup(request)
        val ipRange =
            IpRange {
                cidrIp = "$myIpAddress/0"
            }

        val ipPerm =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 80
                fromPort = 80
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val ipPerm2 =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 22
                fromPort = 22
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val authRequest =
            AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest {
```

```
                groupName = groupNameVal
                ipPermissions = listOf(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
            }
        ec2.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
        println("Successfully added ingress policy to Security Group
 $groupNameVal")
        return resp.groupId
    }
}

suspend fun describeEC2KeysSc() {
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeKeyPairs(DescribeKeyPairsRequest {})
        response.keyPairs?.forEach { keyPair ->
            println("Found key pair with name ${keyPair.keyName} and fingerprint
 ${ keyPair.keyFingerprint}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createKeyPairSc(
    keyNameVal: String,
    fileNameVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        CreateKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyNameVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.createKeyPair(request)
        val content = response.keyMaterial
        if (content != null) {
            File(fileNameVal).writeText(content)
        }
        println("Successfully created key pair named $keyNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress

- AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
- CreateKeyPair
- CreateSecurityGroup
- DeleteKeyPair
- DeleteSecurityGroup
- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstanceTypes
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class EC2InstanceScenario:
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to manage Amazon EC2 resources.
    Covers creating a key pair, security group, launching an instance,
 associating
```

```
    an Elastic IP, and cleaning up resources.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        inst_wrapper: EC2InstanceWrapper,
        key_wrapper: KeyPairWrapper,
        sg_wrapper: SecurityGroupWrapper,
        eip_wrapper: ElasticIpWrapper,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        remote_exec: bool = False,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceScenario with the necessary AWS service
wrappers.

        :param inst_wrapper: Wrapper for EC2 instance operations.
        :param key_wrapper: Wrapper for key pair operations.
        :param sg_wrapper: Wrapper for security group operations.
        :param eip_wrapper: Wrapper for Elastic IP operations.
        :param ssm_client: Boto3 client for accessing SSM to retrieve AMIs.
        :param remote_exec: Flag to indicate if the scenario is running in a
remote execution
                            environment. Defaults to False. If True, the script
won't prompt
                            for user interaction.
        """
        self.inst_wrapper = inst_wrapper
        self.key_wrapper = key_wrapper
        self.sg_wrapper = sg_wrapper
        self.eip_wrapper = eip_wrapper
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.remote_exec = remote_exec

    def create_and_list_key_pairs(self) -> None:
        """
        Creates an RSA key pair for SSH access to the EC2 instance and lists
available key pairs.
        """
        console.print("**Step 1: Create a Secure Key Pair**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print(
            "Let's create a secure RSA key pair for connecting to your EC2
instance."
        )
```

```
        key_name = f"MyUniqueKeyPair-{uuid.uuid4().hex[:8]}"
        console.print(f"- **Key Pair Name**: {key_name}")

        # Create the key pair and simulate the process with a progress bar.
        with alive_bar(1, title="Creating Key Pair") as bar:
            self.key_wrapper.create(key_name)
            time.sleep(0.4)  # Simulate the delay in key creation
            bar()

        console.print(f"- **Private Key Saved to**:
{self.key_wrapper.key_file_path}\n")

        # List key pairs (simulated) and show a progress bar.
        list_keys = True
        if list_keys:
            console.print("- Listing your key pairs...")
            start_time = time.time()
            with alive_bar(100, title="Listing Key Pairs") as bar:
                while time.time() - start_time < 2:
                    time.sleep(0.2)
                    bar(10)
                self.key_wrapper.list(5)
                if time.time() - start_time > 2:
                    console.print(
                        "Taking longer than expected! Please wait...",
                        style="bold yellow",
                    )

    def create_security_group(self) -> None:
        """
        Creates a security group that controls access to the EC2 instance and
adds a rule
        to allow SSH access from the user's current public IP address.
        """
        console.print("**Step 2: Create a Security Group**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print(
            "Security groups manage access to your instance. Let's create one."
        )
        sg_name = f"MySecurityGroup-{uuid.uuid4().hex[:8]}"
        console.print(f"- **Security Group Name**: {sg_name}")

        # Create the security group and simulate the process with a progress bar.
        with alive_bar(1, title="Creating Security Group") as bar:
            self.sg_wrapper.create(
```

```
                sg_name, "Security group for example: get started with
instances."
            )
            time.sleep(0.5)
            bar()

        console.print(f"- **Security Group ID**:
{self.sg_wrapper.security_group}\n")

        # Get the current public IP to set up SSH access.
        ip_response = urllib.request.urlopen("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")
        current_ip_address = ip_response.read().decode("utf-8").strip()
        console.print(
            "Let's add a rule to allow SSH only from your current IP address."
        )
        console.print(f"- **Your Public IP Address**: {current_ip_address}")
        console.print("- Automatically adding SSH rule...")

        # Update security group rules to allow SSH and simulate with a progress
bar.
        with alive_bar(1, title="Updating Security Group Rules") as bar:
            response = self.sg_wrapper.authorize_ingress(current_ip_address)
            time.sleep(0.4)
            if response and response.get("Return"):
                console.print("- **Security Group Rules Updated**.")
            else:
                console.print(
                    "- **Error**: Couldn't update security group rules.",
                    style="bold red",
                )
            bar()

        self.sg_wrapper.describe(self.sg_wrapper.security_group)

    def create_instance(self) -> None:
        """
        Launches an EC2 instance using an Amazon Linux 2 AMI and the created key
pair
        and security group. Displays instance details and SSH connection
information.
        """
        # Retrieve Amazon Linux 2 AMIs from SSM.
        ami_paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("get_parameters_by_path")
        ami_options = []
```

```
        for page in ami_paginator.paginate(Path="/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-
latest"):
            ami_options += page["Parameters"]
        amzn2_images = self.inst_wrapper.get_images(
            [opt["Value"] for opt in ami_options if "amzn2" in opt["Name"]]
        )
        console.print("\n**Step 3: Launch Your Instance**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print(
            "Let's create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI. Here are some
 options:"
        )
        image_choice = 0
        console.print(f"- Selected AMI: {amzn2_images[image_choice]
['ImageId']}\n")

        # Display instance types compatible with the selected AMI
        inst_types = self.inst_wrapper.get_instance_types(
            amzn2_images[image_choice]["Architecture"]
        )
        inst_type_choice = 0
        console.print(
            f"- Selected instance type: {inst_types[inst_type_choice]
['InstanceType']}\n"
        )

        console.print("Creating your instance and waiting for it to start...")
        with alive_bar(1, title="Creating Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.create(
                amzn2_images[image_choice]["ImageId"],
                inst_types[inst_type_choice]["InstanceType"],
                self.key_wrapper.key_pair["KeyName"],
                [self.sg_wrapper.security_group],
            )
            time.sleep(21)
            bar()

        console.print(f"**Success! Your instance is ready:**\n", style="bold
 green")
        self.inst_wrapper.display()

        console.print(
            "You can use SSH to connect to your instance. "
            "If the connection attempt times out, you might have to manually
 update "
```

```
            "the SSH ingress rule for your IP address in the AWS Management
Console."
        )
        self._display_ssh_info()

    def _display_ssh_info(self) -> None:
        """
        Displays SSH connection information for the user to connect to the EC2
instance.
        Handles the case where the instance does or does not have an associated
public IP address.
        """
        if (
            not self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips
            or not self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips[0].allocation_id
        ):
            if self.inst_wrapper.instances:
                instance = self.inst_wrapper.instances[0]
                instance_id = instance["InstanceId"]

                waiter =
self.inst_wrapper.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
                console.print(
                    "Waiting for the instance to be in a running state with a
public IP...",
                    style="bold cyan",
                )

                with alive_bar(1, title="Waiting for Instance to Start") as bar:
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
                    time.sleep(20)
                    bar()

                instance = self.inst_wrapper.ec2_client.describe_instances(
                    InstanceIds=[instance_id]
                )["Reservations"][0]["Instances"][0]

                public_ip = instance.get("PublicIpAddress")
                if public_ip:
                    console.print(
                        "\nTo connect via SSH, open another command prompt and
run the following command:",
                        style="bold cyan",
                    )
```

```
                    console.print(
                        f"\tssh -i {self.key_wrapper.key_file_path} ec2-
user@{public_ip}"
                    )
                else:
                    console.print(
                        "Instance does not have a public IP address assigned.",
                        style="bold red",
                    )
            else:
                console.print(
                    "No instance available to retrieve public IP address.",
                    style="bold red",
                )
        else:
            elastic_ip = self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips[0]
            elastic_ip_address = elastic_ip.public_ip
            console.print(
                f"\tssh -i {self.key_wrapper.key_file_path} ec2-
user@{elastic_ip_address}"
            )

        if not self.remote_exec:
            console.print("\nOpen a new terminal tab to try the above SSH
 command.")
            input("Press Enter to continue...")

    def associate_elastic_ip(self) -> None:
        """
        Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the EC2 instance.
        Displays the Elastic IP address and SSH connection information.
        """
        console.print("\n**Step 4: Allocate an Elastic IP Address**", style="bold
 cyan")
        console.print(
            "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with your
 instance\n"
            "to keep a consistent IP address even when your instance restarts."
        )

        with alive_bar(1, title="Allocating Elastic IP") as bar:
            elastic_ip = self.eip_wrapper.allocate()
            time.sleep(0.5)
            bar()
```

```
        console.print(
            f"- **Allocated Static Elastic IP Address**: {elastic_ip.public_ip}."
        )

        with alive_bar(1, title="Associating Elastic IP") as bar:
            self.eip_wrapper.associate(
                elastic_ip.allocation_id, self.inst_wrapper.instances[0]
["InstanceId"]
            )
            time.sleep(2)
            bar()

        console.print(f"- **Associated Elastic IP with Your Instance**.")
        console.print(
            "You can now use SSH to connect to your instance by using the Elastic
 IP."
        )
        self._display_ssh_info()

    def stop_and_start_instance(self) -> None:
        """
        Stops and restarts the EC2 instance. Displays instance state and explains
        changes that occur when the instance is restarted, such as the potential
 change
        in the public IP address unless an Elastic IP is associated.
        """
        console.print("\n**Step 5: Stop and Start Your Instance**", style="bold
 cyan")
        console.print("Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes.")
        console.print("- **Stopping your instance and waiting until it's
 stopped...**")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Stopping Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.stop()
            time.sleep(360)
            bar()

        console.print("- **Your instance is stopped. Restarting...**")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Starting Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.start()
            time.sleep(20)
            bar()
```

```
        console.print("**Your instance is running.**", style="bold green")
        self.inst_wrapper.display()

        elastic_ip = (
            self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips[0] if self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips else
None
        )

        if elastic_ip is None or elastic_ip.allocation_id is None:
            console.print(
                "- **Note**: Every time your instance is restarted, its public IP
address changes."
            )
        else:
            console.print(
                f"Because you have associated an Elastic IP with your instance,
you can \n"
                f"connect by using a consistent IP address after the instance
restarts: {elastic_ip.public_ip}"
            )

        self._display_ssh_info()

    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Cleans up all the resources created during the scenario, including
disassociating
        and releasing the Elastic IP, terminating the instance, deleting the
security
        group, and deleting the key pair.
        """
        console.print("\n**Step 6: Clean Up Resources**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print("Cleaning up resources:")

        for elastic_ip in self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips:
            console.print(f"- **Elastic IP**: {elastic_ip.public_ip}")

            with alive_bar(1, title="Disassociating Elastic IP") as bar:
                self.eip_wrapper.disassociate(elastic_ip.allocation_id)
                time.sleep(2)
                bar()

            console.print("\t- **Disassociated Elastic IP from the Instance**")
```

```
            with alive_bar(1, title="Releasing Elastic IP") as bar:
                self.eip_wrapper.release(elastic_ip.allocation_id)
                time.sleep(1)
                bar()

            console.print("\t- **Released Elastic IP**")

        console.print(f"- **Instance**: {self.inst_wrapper.instances[0]
['InstanceId']}")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Terminating Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.terminate()
            time.sleep(380)
            bar()

        console.print("\t- **Terminated Instance**")

        console.print(f"- **Security Group**: {self.sg_wrapper.security_group}")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Deleting Security Group") as bar:
            self.sg_wrapper.delete(self.sg_wrapper.security_group)
            time.sleep(1)
            bar()

        console.print("\t- **Deleted Security Group**")

        console.print(f"- **Key Pair**: {self.key_wrapper.key_pair['KeyName']}")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Deleting Key Pair") as bar:
            self.key_wrapper.delete(self.key_wrapper.key_pair["KeyName"])
            time.sleep(0.4)
            bar()

        console.print("\t- **Deleted Key Pair**")

    def run_scenario(self) -> None:
        """
        Executes the entire EC2 instance scenario: creates key pairs, security
 groups,
        launches an instance, associates an Elastic IP, and cleans up all
 resources.
        """
```

```
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s:
 %(message)s")

        console.print("-" * 88)
        console.print(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) get started
 with instances demo.",
            style="bold magenta",
        )
        console.print("-" * 88)

        self.create_and_list_key_pairs()
        self.create_security_group()
        self.create_instance()
        self.stop_and_start_instance()
        self.associate_elastic_ip()
        self.stop_and_start_instance()
        self.cleanup()

        console.print("\nThanks for watching!", style="bold green")
        console.print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = EC2InstanceScenario(
            EC2InstanceWrapper.from_client(),
            KeyPairWrapper.from_client(),
            SecurityGroupWrapper.from_client(),
            ElasticIpWrapper.from_client(),
            boto3.client("ssm"),
        )
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps key pair actions.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
```

```
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
 directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is
 stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
 Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2
 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def create(self, key_name: str) -> dict:
        """
```

```
        Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2
instance.
        The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
        again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        :return: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object that
represents the newly created key pair.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in creating the key pair, for
example, if a key pair with the same name already exists.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            self.key_pair = response
            self.key_file_path = os.path.join(
                self.key_file_dir.name, f"{self.key_pair['KeyName']}.pem"
            )
            with open(self.key_file_path, "w") as key_file:
                key_file.write(self.key_pair["KeyMaterial"])
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"A key pair called {key_name} already exists. "
                    "Please choose a different name for your key pair "
                    "or delete the existing key pair before creating."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.key_pair


    def list(self, limit: Optional[int] = None) -> None:
        """
        Displays a list of key pairs for the current account.

        WARNING: Results are not paginated.

        :param limit: The maximum number of key pairs to list. If not specified,
                      all key pairs will be listed.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in listing the key pairs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_key_pairs()
```

```
            key_pairs = response.get("KeyPairs", [])

            if limit:
                key_pairs = key_pairs[:limit]

            for key_pair in key_pairs:
                logger.info(
                    f"Found {key_pair['KeyType']} key '{key_pair['KeyName']}'
with fingerprint:"
                )
                logger.info(f"\t{key_pair['KeyFingerprint']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to list key pairs: {str(err)}")
            raise


    def delete(self, key_name: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes a key pair by its name.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to delete.
        :return: A boolean indicating whether the deletion was successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in deleting the key pair, for
example,
                                if the key pair does not exist.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted key pair: {key_name}")
            self.key_pair = None
            return True
        except self.ec2_client.exceptions.ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for key pair: {key_name}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"The key pair '{key_name}' does not exist and cannot be
deleted. "
                    "Please verify the key pair name and try again."
                )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps security group actions.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a
 high-level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(self, group_name: str, group_description: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a security group in the default virtual private cloud (VPC) of
 the current account.

        :param group_name: The name of the security group to create.
```

```
        :param group_description: The description of the security group to
create.
        :return: The ID of the newly created security group.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling
for ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_security_group(
                GroupName=group_name, Description=group_description
            )
            self.security_group = response["GroupId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExists":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{group_name}' already exists. Please choose
a different name."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.security_group


    def authorize_ingress(self, ssh_ingress_ip: str) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Adds a rule to the security group to allow access to SSH.

        :param ssh_ingress_ip: The IP address that is granted inbound access to
connect
                               to port 22 over TCP, used for SSH.
        :return: The response to the authorization request. The 'Return' field of
the
                 response indicates whether the request succeeded or failed, or
None if no security group is set.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling
for ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        if self.security_group is None:
            logger.info("No security group to update.")
            return None

        try:
            ip_permissions = [
                {
                    # SSH ingress open to only the specified IP address.
```

```
                    "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                    "FromPort": 22,
                    "ToPort": 22,
                    "IpRanges": [{"CidrIp": f"{ssh_ingress_ip}/32"}],
                }
            ]
            response = self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=self.security_group, IpPermissions=ip_permissions
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"The SSH ingress rule for IP {ssh_ingress_ip} already
exists"
                    f"in security group '{self.security_group}'."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def describe(self, security_group_id: Optional[str] = None) -> bool:
        """
        Displays information about the specified security group or all security
groups if no ID is provided.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to describe.
                                  If None, an open search is performed to
describe all security groups.
        :returns: True if the description is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the security
group(s), such as an invalid security group ID.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")

            if security_group_id is None:
                # If no ID is provided, return all security groups.
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
            else:
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate(GroupIds=[security_group_id])

            for page in page_iterator:
                for security_group in page["SecurityGroups"]:
```

```
                    print(f"Security group: {security_group['GroupName']}")
                    print(f"\tID: {security_group['GroupId']}")
                    print(f"\tVPC: {security_group['VpcId']}")
                    if security_group["IpPermissions"]:
                        print("Inbound permissions:")
                        pp(security_group["IpPermissions"])

            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error("Failed to describe security group(s).")
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group {security_group_id} does not exist "
                    f"because the specified security group ID was not found."
                )
            raise


    def delete(self, security_group_id: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes the specified security group.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to delete.
Required.

        :returns: True if the deletion is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If the security group cannot be deleted due to an
AWS service error.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_security_group(GroupId=security_group_id)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted
because it does not exist."
                )
```

```
            elif error_code == "DependencyViolation":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted
 because it is still in use."
                    " Verify that it is:"
                    "\n\t- Detached from resources"
                    "\n\t- Removed from references in other groups"
                    "\n\t- Removed from VPC's as a default group"
                )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps instance actions.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(
        self,
        image_id: str,
        instance_type: str,
        key_pair_name: str,
        security_group_ids: Optional[List[str]] = None,
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Creates a new EC2 instance in the default VPC of the current account.

        The instance starts immediately after it is created.

        :param image_id: The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the
instance.
        :param instance_type: The type of instance to create, such as 't2.micro'.
        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to use for SSH access.
        :param security_group_ids: A list of security group IDs to associate with
the instance.
                                   If not specified, the default security group
of the VPC is used.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance objects
representing the newly created instances.
        """
        try:
            instance_params = {
                "ImageId": image_id,
                "InstanceType": instance_type,
                "KeyName": key_pair_name,
            }
            if security_group_ids is not None:
                instance_params["SecurityGroupIds"] = security_group_ids

            response = self.ec2_client.run_instances(
                **instance_params, MinCount=1, MaxCount=1
            )
            instance = response["Instances"][0]
            self.instances.append(instance)
```

```
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance["InstanceId"]])
        except ClientError as err:
            params_str = "\n\t".join(
                f"{key}: {value}" for key, value in instance_params.items()
            )
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to complete instance creation request.\nRequest details:
{params_str}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InstanceLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type
'{instance_type}'. "
                        "Terminate unused instances or contact AWS Support for a
limit increase."
                    )
                )
            if error_code == "InsufficientInstanceCapacity":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type
'{instance_type}'. "
                        "Select a different instance type or launch in a
different availability zone."
                    )
                )
            raise
        return self.instances


    def display(self, state_filter: Optional[str] = "running") -> None:
        """
        Displays information about instances, filtering by the specified state.

        :param state_filter: The instance state to include in the output. Only
instances in this state
                             will be displayed. Default is 'running'. Example
states: 'running', 'stopped'.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to display.")
```

```
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instances")
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(InstanceIds=instance_ids)

        try:
            for page in page_iterator:
                for reservation in page["Reservations"]:
                    for instance in reservation["Instances"]:
                        instance_state = instance["State"]["Name"]

                        # Apply the state filter (default is 'running')
                        if state_filter and instance_state != state_filter:
                            continue  # Skip this instance if it doesn't match
 the filter

                        # Create a formatted string with instance details
                        instance_info = (
                            f"• ID: {instance['InstanceId']}\n"
                            f"• Image ID: {instance['ImageId']}\n"
                            f"• Instance type: {instance['InstanceType']}\n"
                            f"• Key name: {instance['KeyName']}\n"
                            f"• VPC ID: {instance['VpcId']}\n"
                            f"• Public IP: {instance.get('PublicIpAddress', 'N/
A')}\n"
                            f"• State: {instance_state}"
                        )
                        print(instance_info)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to display instance(s). : {' '.join(map(str,
 instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
                raise
```

```
    def terminate(self) -> None:
        """
        Terminates instances and waits for them to reach the terminated state.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to terminate.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            self.ec2_client.terminate_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            self.instances.clear()
            for instance_id in instance_ids:
                print(f"• Instance ID: {instance_id}\n" f"• Action: Terminated")

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed instance termination details:\n\t{str(self.instances)}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
            raise


    def start(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Starts instances and waits for them to be in a running state.

        :return: The response to the start request.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to start.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            start_response =
self.ec2_client.start_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
```

```
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            return start_response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to start instance(s): {','.join(map(str,
instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't start instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a stopped state before starting
them."
                )
            raise


    def stop(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Stops instances and waits for them to be in a stopped state.

        :return: The response to the stop request, or None if there are no
instances to stop.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to stop.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            # Attempt to stop the instances
            stop_response =
self.ec2_client.stop_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_stopped")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to stop instance(s): {','.join(map(str, instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't stop instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
 state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a running state before stopping
 them."
                )
            raise
        return stop_response


    def get_images(self, image_ids: List[str]) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) from a list of AMI
 IDs.

        :param image_ids: The list of AMI IDs to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing the requested AMIs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_images(ImageIds=image_ids)
            images = response["Images"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to stop AMI(s): {','.join(map(str,
 image_ids))}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAMIID.NotFound":
                logger.error("One or more of the AMI IDs does not exist.")
            raise
        return images


    def get_instance_types(
        self, architecture: str = "x86_64", sizes: List[str] = ["*.micro",
 "*.small"]
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets instance types that support the specified architecture and size.
        See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/
API_DescribeInstanceTypes.html
        for a list of allowable parameters.

        :param architecture: The architecture supported by instance types.
 Default: 'x86_64'.
        :param sizes: The size of instance types. Default: '*.micro', '*.small',
```

```
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing instance types that support
 the specified architecture and size.
        """
        try:
            inst_types = []
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instance_types")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {
                        "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
                        "Values": [architecture],
                    },
                    {"Name": "instance-type", "Values": sizes},
                ]
            ):
                inst_types += page["InstanceTypes"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to get instance types: {architecture},
 {','.join(map(str, sizes))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                logger.error(
                    "Parameters are invalid. "
                    "Ensure architecture and size strings conform to
 DescribeInstanceTypes API reference."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_types
```

Define a class that wraps Elastic IP actions.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
```

```
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str]
 = None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def allocate(self) -> "ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp":
        """
        Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
```

```
        instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP
address
        constant even when you restart the associated instance.

        :return: The ElasticIp object for the newly created Elastic IP address.
        :raises ClientError: If the allocation fails, such as reaching the
maximum limit of Elastic IPs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.allocate_address(Domain="vpc")
            elastic_ip = self.ElasticIp(
                allocation_id=response["AllocationId"],
public_ip=response["PublicIp"]
            )
            self.elastic_ips.append(elastic_ip)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AddressLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    "Max IP's reached. Release unused addresses or contact AWS
Support for an increase."
                )
            raise err
        return elastic_ip


    def associate(
        self, allocation_id: str, instance_id: str
    ) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
        """
        Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association
is
        created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
public
        IP address of the associated instance.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.
        :return: A response that contains the ID of the association, or None if
no Elastic IP is found.
        :raises ClientError: If the association fails, such as when the instance
ID is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
```

```
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID
{allocation_id}.")
            return None

        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.associate_address(
                AllocationId=allocation_id, InstanceId=instance_id
            )
            elastic_ip.instance_id = (
                instance_id  # Track the instance associated with this Elastic
IP.
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to associate Elastic IP {allocation_id} with
{instance_id} "
                    "because the specified instance ID does not exist or has not
propagated fully. "
                    "Verify the instance ID and try again, or wait a few moments
before attempting to "
                    "associate the Elastic IP address."
                )
            raise
        return response


    def disassociate(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Removes an association between an Elastic IP address and an instance.
When the
        association is removed, the instance is assigned a new public IP address.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to
disassociate.
        :raises ClientError: If the disassociation fails, such as when the
association ID is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None or elastic_ip.instance_id is None:
            logger.info(
```

```
                f"No association found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
            )
            return

        try:
            # Retrieve the association ID before disassociating
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_addresses(AllocationIds=[allocation_id])
            association_id = response["Addresses"][0].get("AssociationId")

            if association_id:

self.ec2_client.disassociate_address(AssociationId=association_id)
                elastic_ip.instance_id = None  # Remove the instance association
            else:
                logger.info(
                    f"No Association ID found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
                )

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to disassociate Elastic IP {allocation_id} "
                    "because the specified association ID for the Elastic IP
address was not found. "
                    "Verify the association ID and ensure the Elastic IP is
currently associated with a "
                    "resource before attempting to disassociate it."
                )
            raise


    def release(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Releases an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
        it can no longer be used.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to release.
        :raises ClientError: If the release fails, such as when the Elastic IP
address is not found.
        """
```

```
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID
{allocation_id}.")
            return

        try:
            self.ec2_client.release_address(AllocationId=allocation_id)
            self.elastic_ips.remove(elastic_ip)  # Remove the Elastic IP from the
list
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAddress.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to release Elastic IP address {allocation_id} "
                    "because it could not be found. Verify the Elastic IP address
"
                    "and ensure it is allocated to your account in the correct
region "
                    "before attempting to release it."
                )
            raise


    @staticmethod
    def get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(
        elastic_ips: List["ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp"], allocation_id: str
    ) -> Optional["ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp"]:
        """
        Retrieves an Elastic IP object by its allocation ID from a given list of
Elastic IPs.

        :param elastic_ips: A list of ElasticIp objects.
        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to retrieve.
        :return: The ElasticIp object associated with the allocation ID, or None
if not found.
        """
        return next(
            (ip for ip in elastic_ips if ip.allocation_id == allocation_id), None
        )
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances
  - UnmonitorInstances

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The EC2InstanceScenario implementation contains logic to run the example as a whole.

```
//! Scenario that uses the AWS SDK for Rust (the SDK) with Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud
//! (Amazon EC2) to do the following:
//!
//! * Create a key pair that is used to secure SSH communication between your
 computer and
//!   an EC2 instance.
//! * Create a security group that acts as a virtual firewall for your EC2
 instances to
//!   control incoming and outgoing traffic.
//! * Find an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and a compatible instance type.
//! * Create an instance that is created from the instance type and AMI you
 select, and
//!   is configured to use the security group and key pair created in this
 example.
//! * Stop and restart the instance.
//! * Create an Elastic IP address and associate it as a consistent IP address
 for your instance.
//! * Connect to your instance with SSH, using both its public IP address and
 your Elastic IP
//!   address.
//! * Clean up all of the resources created by this example.

use std::net::Ipv4Addr;

use crate::{
    ec2::{EC2Error, EC2},
    getting_started::{key_pair::KeyPairManager, util::Util},
    ssm::SSM,
};
use aws_sdk_ssm::types::Parameter;

use super::{
    elastic_ip::ElasticIpManager, instance::InstanceManager,
 security_group::SecurityGroupManager,
    util::ScenarioImage,
};

pub struct Ec2InstanceScenario {
    ec2: EC2,
    ssm: SSM,
    util: Util,
    key_pair_manager: KeyPairManager,
    security_group_manager: SecurityGroupManager,
```

```
    instance_manager: InstanceManager,
    elastic_ip_manager: ElasticIpManager,
}

impl Ec2InstanceScenario {
    pub fn new(ec2: EC2, ssm: SSM, util: Util) -> Self {
        Ec2InstanceScenario {
            ec2,
            ssm,
            util,
            key_pair_manager: Default::default(),
            security_group_manager: Default::default(),
            instance_manager: Default::default(),
            elastic_ip_manager: Default::default(),
        }
    }

    pub async fn run(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.create_and_list_key_pairs().await?;
        self.create_security_group().await?;
        self.create_instance().await?;
        self.stop_and_start_instance().await?;
        self.associate_elastic_ip().await?;
        self.stop_and_start_instance().await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Creates an RSA key pair and saves its private key data as a .pem file
 in secure
    ///    temporary storage. The private key data is deleted after the example
 completes.
    /// 2. Optionally, lists the first five key pairs for the current account.
    pub async fn create_and_list_key_pairs(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        println!( "Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to securely
 connect to your EC2 instance.");

        let key_name = self.util.prompt_key_name()?;

        self.key_pair_manager
            .create(&self.ec2, &self.util, key_name)
            .await?;

        println!(
            "Created a key pair {} and saved the private key to {:?}.",
```

```
            self.key_pair_manager
                .key_pair()
                .key_name()
                .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("No key name after creating key"))?,
            self.key_pair_manager
                .key_file_path()
                .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("No key file after creating key"))?
        );

        if self.util.should_list_key_pairs()? {
            for pair in self.key_pair_manager.list(&self.ec2).await? {
                println!(
                    "Found {:?} key {} with fingerprint:\t{:?}",
                    pair.key_type(),
                    pair.key_name().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                    pair.key_fingerprint()
                );
            }
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Creates a security group for the default VPC.
    /// 2. Adds an inbound rule to allow SSH. The SSH rule allows only
    ///    inbound traffic from the current computer’s public IPv4 address.
    /// 3. Displays information about the security group.
    ///
    /// This function uses <http://checkip.amazonaws.com> to get the current
public IP
    /// address of the computer that is running the example. This method works in
most
    /// cases. However, depending on how your computer connects to the internet,
you
    /// might have to manually add your public IP address to the security group
by using
    /// the AWS Management Console.
    pub async fn create_security_group(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        println!("Let's create a security group to manage access to your
instance.");
        let group_name = self.util.prompt_security_group_name()?;

        self.security_group_manager
            .create(
```

```
                &self.ec2,
                &group_name,
                "Security group for example: get started with instances.",
            )
            .await?;

        println!(
            "Created security group {} in your default VPC {}.",
            self.security_group_manager.group_name(),
            self.security_group_manager
                .vpc_id()
                .unwrap_or("(unknown vpc)")
        );

        let check_ip = self.util.do_get("https://checkip.amazonaws.com").await?;
        let current_ip_address: Ipv4Addr = check_ip.trim().parse().map_err(|e| {
            EC2Error::new(format!(
                "Failed to convert response {} to IP Address: {e:?}",
                check_ip
            ))
        })?;

        println!("Your public IP address seems to be {current_ip_address}");
        if self.util.should_add_to_security_group() {
            match self
                .security_group_manager
                .authorize_ingress(&self.ec2, current_ip_address)
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => println!("Security group rules updated"),
                Err(err) => eprintln!("Couldn't update security group rules:
{err:?}"),
            }
        }
        println!("{}", self.security_group_manager);

        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Gets a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs from AWS Systems Manager.
Specifying the
    ///    '/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest' path returns only the latest
AMIs.
```

```
   /// 2. Gets and displays information about the available AMIs and lets you
select one.
   /// 3. Gets a list of instance types that are compatible with the selected
AMI and
   ///    lets you select one.
   /// 4. Creates an instance with the previously created key pair and security
group,
   ///    and the selected AMI and instance type.
   /// 5. Waits for the instance to be running and then displays its
information.
   pub async fn create_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
       let ami = self.find_image().await?;

       let instance_types = self
           .ec2
           .list_instance_types(&ami.0)
           .await
           .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find instance types"))?;
       println!(
           "There are several instance types that support the {} architecture of
the image.",
           ami.0
               .architecture
               .as_ref()
               .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!("Missing architecture in
{:?}", ami.0)))?
       );
       let instance_type = self.util.select_instance_type(instance_types)?;

       println!("Creating your instance and waiting for it to start...");
       self.instance_manager
           .create(
               &self.ec2,
               ami.0
                   .image_id()
                   .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Could not find image ID"))?,
               instance_type,
               self.key_pair_manager.key_pair(),
               self.security_group_manager
                   .security_group()
                   .map(|sg| vec![sg])
                   .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Could not find security
group"))?,
           )
```

```
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Scenario failed to create instance"))?;

        while let Err(err) = self
            .ec2
            .wait_for_instance_ready(self.instance_manager.instance_id(), None)
            .await
        {
            println!("{err}");
            if !self.util.should_continue_waiting() {
                return Err(err);
            }
        }

        println!("Your instance is ready:\n{}", self.instance_manager);

        self.display_ssh_info();

        Ok(())
    }

    async fn find_image(&mut self) -> Result<ScenarioImage, EC2Error> {
        let params: Vec<Parameter> = self
            .ssm
            .list_path("/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest")
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find parameters for available
images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .filter(|param| param.name().is_some_and(|name|
name.contains("amzn2")))
            .collect();
        let amzn2_images: Vec<ScenarioImage> = self
            .ec2
            .list_images(params)
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .map(ScenarioImage::from)
            .collect();
        println!("We will now create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI");
        let ami = self.util.select_scenario_image(amzn2_images)?;
        Ok(ami)
    }
```

```
   // 1. Stops the instance and waits for it to stop.
   // 2. Starts the instance and waits for it to start.
   // 3. Displays information about the instance.
   // 4. Displays an SSH connection string. When an Elastic IP address is
associated
   //    with the instance, the IP address stays consistent when the instance
stops
   //    and starts.
   pub async fn stop_and_start_instance(&self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
       println!("Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes.");
       println!("Stopping your instance and waiting until it's stopped...");
       self.instance_manager.stop(&self.ec2).await?;
       println!("Your instance is stopped. Restarting...");
       self.instance_manager.start(&self.ec2).await?;
       println!("Your instance is running.");
       println!("{}", self.instance_manager);
       if self.elastic_ip_manager.public_ip() == "0.0.0.0" {
           println!("Every time your instance is restarted, its public IP
address changes.");
       } else {
           println!(
               "Because you have associated an Elastic IP with your instance,
you can connect by using a consistent IP address after the instance restarts."
           );
       }
       self.display_ssh_info();
       Ok(())
   }

   /// 1. Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the instance.
   /// 2. Displays an SSH connection string that uses the Elastic IP address.
   async fn associate_elastic_ip(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
       self.elastic_ip_manager.allocate(&self.ec2).await?;
       println!(
           "Allocated static Elastic IP address: {}",
           self.elastic_ip_manager.public_ip()
       );

       self.elastic_ip_manager
           .associate(&self.ec2, self.instance_manager.instance_id())
           .await?;
       println!("Associated your Elastic IP with your instance.");
```

```
        println!("You can now use SSH to connect to your instance by using the
Elastic IP.");
        self.display_ssh_info();
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Displays an SSH connection string that can be used to connect to a
running
    /// instance.
    fn display_ssh_info(&self) {
        let ip_addr = if self.elastic_ip_manager.has_allocation() {
            self.elastic_ip_manager.public_ip()
        } else {
            self.instance_manager.instance_ip()
        };
        let key_file_path = self.key_pair_manager.key_file_path().unwrap();
        println!("To connect, open another command prompt and run the following
command:");
        println!("\nssh -i {} ec2-user@{ip_addr}\n", key_file_path.display());
        let _ = self.util.enter_to_continue();
    }

    /// 1. Disassociate and delete the previously created Elastic IP.
    /// 2. Terminate the previously created instance.
    /// 3. Delete the previously created security group.
    /// 4. Delete the previously created key pair.
    pub async fn clean_up(self) {
        println!("Let's clean everything up. This example created these
resources:");
        println!(
            "\tKey pair: {}",
            self.key_pair_manager
                .key_pair()
                .key_name()
                .unwrap_or("(unknown key pair)")
        );
        println!(
            "\tSecurity group: {}",
            self.security_group_manager.group_name()
        );
        println!(
            "\tInstance: {}",
            self.instance_manager.instance_display_name()
        );
```

```
        if self.util.should_clean_resources() {
            if let Err(err) = self.elastic_ip_manager.remove(&self.ec2).await {
                eprintln!("{err}")
            }
            if let Err(err) = self.instance_manager.delete(&self.ec2).await {
                eprintln!("{err}")
            }
            if let Err(err) = self.security_group_manager.delete(&self.ec2).await
 {
                eprintln!("{err}");
            }
            if let Err(err) = self.key_pair_manager.delete(&self.ec2,
 &self.util).await {
                eprintln!("{err}");
            }
        } else {
            println!("Ok, not cleaning up any resources!");
        }
    }
}

pub async fn run(mut scenario: Ec2InstanceScenario) {
    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");
    println!(
        "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) get started
 with instances demo."
    );
    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");

    if let Err(err) = scenario.run().await {
        eprintln!("There was an error running the scenario: {err}")
    }

    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");

    scenario.clean_up().await;

    println!("Thanks for running!");
    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");
}
```

The EC2Impl struct serves as a an automock point for testing, and its functions wrap the EC2 SDK calls.

```
use std::{net::Ipv4Addr, time::Duration};

use aws_sdk_ec2::{
    client::Waiters,
    error::ProvideErrorMetadata,
    operation::{
        allocate_address::AllocateAddressOutput,
 associate_address::AssociateAddressOutput,
    },
    types::{
        DomainType, Filter, Image, Instance, InstanceType, IpPermission, IpRange,
 KeyPairInfo,
        SecurityGroup, Tag,
    },
    Client as EC2Client,
};
use aws_sdk_ssm::types::Parameter;
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::client::waiters::error::WaiterError;

#[cfg(test)]
use mockall::automock;

#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use EC2Impl as EC2;

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockEC2Impl as EC2;

#[derive(Clone)]
pub struct EC2Impl {
    pub client: EC2Client,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl EC2Impl {
    pub fn new(client: EC2Client) -> Self {
        EC2Impl { client }
```

```
    }

    pub async fn create_key_pair(&self, name: String) -> Result<(KeyPairInfo,
String), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating key pair {name}");
        let output = self.client.create_key_pair().key_name(name).send().await?;
        let info = KeyPairInfo::builder()
            .set_key_name(output.key_name)
            .set_key_fingerprint(output.key_fingerprint)
            .set_key_pair_id(output.key_pair_id)
            .build();
        let material = output
            .key_material
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Create Key Pair has no key
material"))?;
        Ok((info, material))
    }

    pub async fn list_key_pair(&self) -> Result<Vec<KeyPairInfo>, EC2Error> {
        let output = self.client.describe_key_pairs().send().await?;
        Ok(output.key_pairs.unwrap_or_default())
    }

    pub async fn delete_key_pair(&self, key_name: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let key_name: String = key_name.into();
        tracing::info!("Deleting key pair {key_name}");
        self.client
            .delete_key_pair()
            .key_name(key_name)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn create_security_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
    ) -> Result<SecurityGroup, EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating security group {name}");
        let create_output = self
            .client
            .create_security_group()
            .group_name(name)
```

```
            .description(description)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(EC2Error::from)?;

        let group_id = create_output
            .group_id
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group id after
creation"))?;

        let group = self
            .describe_security_group(&group_id)
            .await?
            .ok_or_else(|| {
                EC2Error::new(format!("Could not find security group with id
{group_id}"))
            })?;

        tracing::info!("Created security group {name} as {group_id}");

        Ok(group)
    }

    /// Find a single security group, by ID. Returns Err if multiple groups are
found.
    pub async fn describe_security_group(
        &self,
        group_id: &str,
    ) -> Result<Option<SecurityGroup>, EC2Error> {
        let group_id: String = group_id.into();
        let describe_output = self
            .client
            .describe_security_groups()
            .group_ids(&group_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        let mut groups = describe_output.security_groups.unwrap_or_default();

        match groups.len() {
            0 => Ok(None),
            1 => Ok(Some(groups.remove(0))),
            _ => Err(EC2Error::new(format!(
                "Expected single group for {group_id}"
```

```
            ))),
        }
    }

    /// Add an ingress rule to a security group explicitly allowing IPv4 address
    /// as {ip}/32 over TCP port 22.
    pub async fn authorize_security_group_ssh_ingress(
        &self,
        group_id: &str,
        ingress_ips: Vec<Ipv4Addr>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Authorizing ingress for security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .authorize_security_group_ingress()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .set_ip_permissions(Some(
                ingress_ips
                    .into_iter()
                    .map(|ip| {
                        IpPermission::builder()
                            .ip_protocol("tcp")
                            .from_port(22)
                            .to_port(22)
                            .ip_ranges(IpRange::builder().cidr_ip(format!
("{ip}/32")).build())
                            .build()
                    })
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn delete_security_group(&self, group_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .delete_security_group()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

```
   pub async fn list_images(&self, ids: Vec<Parameter>) -> Result<Vec<Image>,
EC2Error> {
       let image_ids = ids.into_iter().filter_map(|p| p.value).collect();
       let output = self
           .client
           .describe_images()
           .set_image_ids(Some(image_ids))
           .send()
           .await?;

       let images = output.images.unwrap_or_default();
       if images.is_empty() {
           Err(EC2Error::new("No images for selected AMIs"))
       } else {
           Ok(images)
       }
   }

   /// List instance types that match an image's architecture and are free tier
eligible.
   pub async fn list_instance_types(&self, image: &Image) ->
Result<Vec<InstanceType>, EC2Error> {
       let architecture = format!(
           "{}",
           image.architecture().ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!(
               "Image {:?} does not have a listed architecture",
               image.image_id()
           )))?
       );
       let free_tier_eligible_filter = Filter::builder()
           .name("free-tier-eligible")
           .values("false")
           .build();
       let supported_architecture_filter = Filter::builder()
           .name("processor-info.supported-architecture")
           .values(architecture)
           .build();
       let response = self
           .client
           .describe_instance_types()
           .filters(free_tier_eligible_filter)
           .filters(supported_architecture_filter)
           .send()
```

```
            .await?;

        Ok(response
            .instance_types
            .unwrap_or_default()
            .into_iter()
            .filter_map(|iti| iti.instance_type)
            .collect())
    }

    pub async fn create_instance<'a>(
        &self,
        image_id: &'a str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &'a KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&'a SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<String, EC2Error> {
        let run_instances = self
            .client
            .run_instances()
            .image_id(image_id)
            .instance_type(instance_type)
            .key_name(
                key_pair
                    .key_name()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing key name when launching
instance"))?,
            )
            .set_security_group_ids(Some(
                security_groups
                    .iter()
                    .filter_map(|sg| sg.group_id.clone())
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .min_count(1)
            .max_count(1)
            .send()
            .await?;

        if run_instances.instances().is_empty() {
            return Err(EC2Error::new("Failed to create instance"));
        }

        let instance_id = run_instances.instances()[0].instance_id().unwrap();
```

```
        let response = self
            .client
            .create_tags()
            .resources(instance_id)
            .tags(
                Tag::builder()
                    .key("Name")
                    .value("From SDK Examples")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match response {
            Ok(_) => tracing::info!("Created {instance_id} and applied tags."),
            Err(err) => {
                tracing::info!("Error applying tags to {instance_id}: {err:?}");
                return Err(err.into());
            }
        }

        tracing::info!("Instance is created.");

        Ok(instance_id.to_string())
    }

    /// Wait for an instance to be ready and status ok (default wait 60 seconds)
    pub async fn wait_for_instance_ready(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_status_ok()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to start.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs()
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
```

```
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn describe_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<Instance,
EC2Error> {
        let response = self
            .client
            .describe_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        let instance = response
            .reservations()
            .first()
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!("No instance reservations for
{instance_id}")))?
            .instances()
            .first()
            .ok_or_else(|| {
                EC2Error::new(format!("No instances in reservation for
{instance_id}"))
            })?;

        Ok(instance.clone())
    }

    pub async fn start_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error>
{
        tracing::info!("Starting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .start_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        tracing::info!("Started instance.");

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn stop_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error>
{
```

```
        tracing::info!("Stopping instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .stop_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        self.wait_for_instance_stopped(instance_id, None).await?;

        tracing::info!("Stopped instance.");

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn reboot_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Rebooting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .reboot_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_instance_stopped(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_stopped()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to stop.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
```

```
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn delete_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting instance with id {instance_id}");
        self.stop_instance(instance_id).await?;
        self.client
            .terminate_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        self.wait_for_instance_terminated(instance_id).await?;
        tracing::info!("Terminated instance with id {instance_id}");
        Ok(())
    }

    async fn wait_for_instance_terminated(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_terminated()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(Duration::from_secs(60))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to terminate.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn allocate_ip_address(&self) -> Result<AllocateAddressOutput,
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .allocate_address()
            .domain(DomainType::Vpc)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(EC2Error::from)
    }
```

```
    pub async fn deallocate_ip_address(&self, allocation_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .release_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn associate_ip_address(
        &self,
        allocation_id: &str,
        instance_id: &str,
    ) -> Result<AssociateAddressOutput, EC2Error> {
        let response = self
            .client
            .associate_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .instance_id(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(response)
    }

    pub async fn disassociate_ip_address(&self, association_id: &str) ->
 Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .disassociate_address()
            .association_id(association_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
}

#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct EC2Error(String);
impl EC2Error {
    pub fn new(value: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        EC2Error(value.into())
    }
```

```
    pub fn add_message(self, message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        EC2Error(format!("{}: {}", message.into(), self.0))
    }
}

impl<T: ProvideErrorMetadata> From<T> for EC2Error {
    fn from(value: T) -> Self {
        EC2Error(format!(
            "{}: {}",
            value
                .code()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("unknown code".into()),
            value
                .message()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("missing reason".into()),
        ))
    }
}

impl std::error::Error for EC2Error {}

impl std::fmt::Display for EC2Error {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
```

The SSM struct serves as a an automock point for testing, and its functions wraps SSM SDK calls.

```
use aws_sdk_ssm::{types::Parameter, Client};
use aws_smithy_async::future::pagination_stream::TryFlatMap;

use crate::ec2::EC2Error;

#[cfg(test)]
use mockall::automock;

#[cfg(not(test))]
```

```
pub use SSMImpl as SSM;

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockSSMImpl as SSM;

pub struct SSMImpl {
    inner: Client,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl SSMImpl {
    pub fn new(inner: Client) -> Self {
        SSMImpl { inner }
    }

    pub async fn list_path(&self, path: &str) -> Result<Vec<Parameter>, EC2Error>
 {
        let maybe_params: Vec<Result<Parameter, _>> = TryFlatMap::new(
            self.inner
                .get_parameters_by_path()
                .path(path)
                .into_paginator()
                .send(),
        )
        .flat_map(|item| item.parameters.unwrap_or_default())
        .collect()
        .await;
        // Fail on the first error
        let params = maybe_params
            .into_iter()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<Parameter>, _>>()?;
        Ok(params)
    }
}
```

The scenario uses several "Manager"-style structs to handle access to resources that are created and deleted throughout the scenario.

```
use aws_sdk_ec2::operation::{
    allocate_address::AllocateAddressOutput,
 associate_address::AssociateAddressOutput,
```

```
};

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

/// ElasticIpManager tracks the lifecycle of a public IP address, including its
/// allocation from the global pool and association with a specific instance.
#[derive(Debug, Default)]
pub struct ElasticIpManager {
    elastic_ip: Option<AllocateAddressOutput>,
    association: Option<AssociateAddressOutput>,
}

impl ElasticIpManager {
    pub fn has_allocation(&self) -> bool {
        self.elastic_ip.is_some()
    }

    pub fn public_ip(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(allocation) = &self.elastic_ip {
            if let Some(addr) = allocation.public_ip() {
                return addr;
            }
        }
        "0.0.0.0"
    }

    pub async fn allocate(&mut self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let allocation = ec2.allocate_ip_address().await?;
        self.elastic_ip = Some(allocation);
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn associate(&mut self, ec2: &EC2, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        if let Some(allocation) = &self.elastic_ip {
            if let Some(allocation_id) = allocation.allocation_id() {
                let association = ec2.associate_ip_address(allocation_id,
 instance_id).await?;
                self.association = Some(association);
                return Ok(());
            }
        }
        Err(EC2Error::new("No ip address allocation to associate"))
    }
```

```
    pub async fn remove(mut self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(association) = &self.association {
            if let Some(association_id) = association.association_id() {
                ec2.disassociate_ip_address(association_id).await?;
            }
        }
        self.association = None;
        if let Some(allocation) = &self.elastic_ip {
            if let Some(allocation_id) = allocation.allocation_id() {
                ec2.deallocate_ip_address(allocation_id).await?;
            }
        }
        self.elastic_ip = None;
        Ok(())
    }
}


use std::fmt::Display;

use aws_sdk_ec2::types::{Instance, InstanceType, KeyPairInfo, SecurityGroup};

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

/// InstanceManager wraps the lifecycle of an EC2 Instance.
#[derive(Debug, Default)]
pub struct InstanceManager {
    instance: Option<Instance>,
}

impl InstanceManager {
    pub fn instance_id(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            if let Some(id) = instance.instance_id() {
                return id;
            }
        }
        "Unknown"
    }

    pub fn instance_name(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
```

```
            if let Some(tag) = instance.tags().iter().find(|e| e.key() ==
Some("Name")) {
                if let Some(value) = tag.value() {
                    return value;
                }
            }
        }
        "Unknown"
    }

    pub fn instance_ip(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            if let Some(public_ip_address) = instance.public_ip_address() {
                return public_ip_address;
            }
        }
        "0.0.0.0"
    }

    pub fn instance_display_name(&self) -> String {
        format!("{} ({})", self.instance_name(), self.instance_id())
    }

    /// Create an EC2 instance with the given ID on a given type, using a
    /// generated KeyPair and applying a list of security groups.
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        image_id: &str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let instance_id = ec2
            .create_instance(image_id, instance_type, key_pair, security_groups)
            .await?;
        let instance = ec2.describe_instance(&instance_id).await?;
        self.instance = Some(instance);
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Start the managed EC2 instance, if present.
    pub async fn start(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
```

```
            ec2.start_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Stop the managed EC2 instance, if present.
    pub async fn stop(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.stop_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn reboot(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.reboot_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_stopped(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_ready(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Terminate and delete the managed EC2 instance, if present.
    pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.delete_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}

impl Display for InstanceManager {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            writeln!(f, "\tID: {}",
 instance.instance_id().unwrap_or("(Unknown)"))?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tImage ID: {}",
                instance.image_id().unwrap_or("(Unknown)")
            )?;
            writeln!(
```

```
                f,
                "\tInstance type: {}",
                instance
                    .instance_type()
                    .map(|it| format!("{it}"))
                    .unwrap_or("(Unknown)".to_string())
            )?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tKey name: {}",
                instance.key_name().unwrap_or("(Unknown)")
            )?;
            writeln!(f, "\tVPC ID: {}",
 instance.vpc_id().unwrap_or("(Unknown)"))?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tPublic IP: {}",
                instance.public_ip_address().unwrap_or("(Unknown)")
            )?;
            let instance_state = instance
                .state
                .as_ref()
                .map(|is| {
                    is.name()
                        .map(|isn| format!("{isn}"))
                        .unwrap_or("(Unknown)".to_string())
                })
                .unwrap_or("(Unknown)".to_string());
            writeln!(f, "\tState: {instance_state}")?;
        } else {
            writeln!(f, "\tNo loaded instance")?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}


use std::{env, path::PathBuf};

use aws_sdk_ec2::types::KeyPairInfo;

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

use super::util::Util;
```

```
/// KeyPairManager tracks a KeyPairInfo and the path the private key has been
/// written to, if it's been created.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct KeyPairManager {
    key_pair: KeyPairInfo,
    key_file_path: Option<PathBuf>,
    key_file_dir: PathBuf,
}

impl KeyPairManager {
    pub fn new() -> Self {
        Self::default()
    }

    pub fn key_pair(&self) -> &KeyPairInfo {
        &self.key_pair
    }

    pub fn key_file_path(&self) -> Option<&PathBuf> {
        self.key_file_path.as_ref()
    }

    pub fn key_file_dir(&self) -> &PathBuf {
        &self.key_file_dir
    }

    /// Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2
 instance.
    /// The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
 retrieved
    /// again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.
    ///
    /// :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        util: &Util,
        key_name: String,
    ) -> Result<KeyPairInfo, EC2Error> {
        let (key_pair, material) =
 ec2.create_key_pair(key_name.clone()).await.map_err(|e| {
            self.key_pair =
 KeyPairInfo::builder().key_name(key_name.clone()).build();
```

```
            e.add_message(format!("Couldn't create key {key_name}"))
        })?;

        let path = self.key_file_dir.join(format!("{key_name}.pem"));

        // Save the key_pair information immediately, so it can get cleaned up if
 write_secure fails.
        self.key_file_path = Some(path.clone());
        self.key_pair = key_pair.clone();

        util.write_secure(&key_name, &path, material)?;

        Ok(key_pair)
    }

    pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2, util: &Util) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(key_name) = self.key_pair.key_name() {
            ec2.delete_key_pair(key_name).await?;
            if let Some(key_path) = self.key_file_path() {
                if let Err(err) = util.remove(key_path) {
                    eprintln!("Failed to remove {key_path:?} ({err:?})");
                }
            }
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn list(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<Vec<KeyPairInfo>, EC2Error> {
        ec2.list_key_pair().await
    }
}

impl Default for KeyPairManager {
    fn default() -> Self {
        KeyPairManager {
            key_pair: KeyPairInfo::builder().build(),
            key_file_path: Default::default(),
            key_file_dir: env::temp_dir(),
        }
    }
}


use std::net::Ipv4Addr;
```

```
use aws_sdk_ec2::types::SecurityGroup;

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

/// SecurityGroupManager tracks the lifecycle of a SecurityGroup for an instance,
/// including adding a rule to allow SSH from a public IP address.
#[derive(Debug, Default)]
pub struct SecurityGroupManager {
    group_name: String,
    group_description: String,
    security_group: Option<SecurityGroup>,
}

impl SecurityGroupManager {
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        group_name: &str,
        group_description: &str,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.group_name = group_name.into();
        self.group_description = group_description.into();

        self.security_group = Some(
            ec2.create_security_group(group_name, group_description)
                .await
                .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Couldn't create security group"))?,
        );

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn authorize_ingress(&self, ec2: &EC2, ip_address: Ipv4Addr) ->
 Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(sg) = &self.security_group {
            ec2.authorize_security_group_ssh_ingress(
                sg.group_id()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group ID"))?,
                vec![ip_address],
            )
            .await?;
        };
```

```
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(sg) = &self.security_group {
            ec2.delete_security_group(
                sg.group_id()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group ID"))?,
            )
            .await?;
        };

        Ok(())
    }

    pub fn group_name(&self) -> &str {
        &self.group_name
    }

    pub fn vpc_id(&self) -> Option<&str> {
        self.security_group.as_ref().and_then(|sg| sg.vpc_id())
    }

    pub fn security_group(&self) -> Option<&SecurityGroup> {
        self.security_group.as_ref()
    }
}

impl std::fmt::Display for SecurityGroupManager {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match &self.security_group {
            Some(sg) => {
                writeln!(
                    f,
                    "Security group: {}",
                    sg.group_name().unwrap_or("(unknown group)")
                )?;
                writeln!(f, "\tID: {}", sg.group_id().unwrap_or("(unknown group
 id)"))?;
                writeln!(f, "\tVPC: {}", sg.vpc_id().unwrap_or("(unknown group
 vpc)"))?;
                if !sg.ip_permissions().is_empty() {
                    writeln!(f, "\tInbound Permissions:")?;
                    for permission in sg.ip_permissions() {
```

```
                        writeln!(f, "\t\t{permission:?}")?;
                    }
                }
                Ok(())
            }
            None => writeln!(f, "No security group loaded."),
        }
    }
}
```

The main entry point for the scenario.

```
use ec2_code_examples::{
    ec2::EC2,
    getting_started::{
        scenario::{run, Ec2InstanceScenario},
        util::UtilImpl,
    },
    ssm::SSM,
};

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let ec2 = EC2::new(aws_sdk_ec2::Client::new(&sdk_config));
    let ssm = SSM::new(aws_sdk_ssm::Client::new(&sdk_config));
    let util = UtilImpl {};
    let scenario = Ec2InstanceScenario::new(ec2, ssm, util);
    run(scenario).await;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup

- DeleteKeyPair
- DeleteSecurityGroup
- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstanceTypes
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "ec2-scenario",
```

```
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.4.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "ec2-scenario",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSEC2", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "AWSSSM", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The `entry.swift` file.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a variety
// of operations using Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation
import AWSEC2
```

```
// Allow waiters to be used.

import class SmithyWaitersAPI.Waiter
import struct SmithyWaitersAPI.WaiterOptions

import AWSSSM

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "ec2-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Performs various operations to demonstrate the use of Amazon EC2 using
 the
        AWS SDK for Swift.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let ssmConfig = try await SSMClient.SSMClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ssmClient = SSMClient(config: ssmConfig)
```

```
        let ec2Config = try await EC2Client.EC2ClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ec2Client = EC2Client(config: ec2Config)

        let example = Example(ec2Client: ec2Client, ssmClient: ssmClient)

        await example.run()
    }
}

class Example {
    let ec2Client: EC2Client
    let ssmClient: SSMClient

    // Storage for AWS EC2 properties.

    var keyName: String? = nil
    var securityGroupId: String? = nil
    var instanceId: String? = nil
    var allocationId: String? = nil
    var associationId: String? = nil

    init(ec2Client: EC2Client, ssmClient: SSMClient) {
        self.ec2Client = ec2Client
        self.ssmClient = ssmClient
    }

    /// The example's main body.
    func run() async {
        //=====================================================================
        // 1. Create an RSA key pair, saving the private key as a `.pem` file.
        //    Create a `defer` block that will delete the private key when the
        //    program exits.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating an RSA key pair...")

        keyName = self.tempName(prefix: "ExampleKeyName")
        let keyUrl = await self.createKeyPair(name: keyName!)

        guard let keyUrl else {
            print("*** Failed to create the key pair!")
            return
        }
```

```
        print("Created the private key at: \(keyUrl.absoluteString)")

        // Schedule deleting the private key file to occur automatically when
        // the program exits, no matter how it exits.

        defer {
            do {
                try FileManager.default.removeItem(at: keyUrl)
            } catch {
                print("*** Failed to delete the private key at
\(keyUrl.absoluteString)")
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. List the key pairs by calling `DescribeKeyPairs`.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Describing available key pairs...")
        await self.describeKeyPairs()

        //=====================================================================
        // 3. Create a security group for the default VPC, and add an inbound
        //    rule to allow SSH from the current computer's public IPv4
        //    address.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating the security group...")

        let secGroupName = self.tempName(prefix: "ExampleSecurityGroup")
        let ipAddress = self.getMyIPAddress()

        guard let ipAddress else {
            print("*** Unable to get the device's IP address.")
            return
        }

        print("IP address is: \(ipAddress)")

        securityGroupId = await self.createSecurityGroup(
            name: secGroupName,
            description: "An example security group created using the AWS SDK for
Swift"
```

```
        )

        if securityGroupId == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        print("Created security group: \(securityGroupId ?? "<unknown>")")

        if !(await self.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupId: securityGroupId!,
ipAddress: ipAddress)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 4. Display security group information for the new security group
        //    using DescribeSecurityGroups.
        //=====================================================================

        if !(await self.describeSecurityGroups(groupId: securityGroupId!)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 5. Get a list of Amazon Linux 2023 AMIs and pick one (SSM is the
        //    best practice), using path and then filter the list after the
        //    fact to include "al2023" in the Name field
        //    (ssm.GetParametersByPath). Paginate to get all images.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Searching available images for Amazon Linux 2023 images...")

        let options = await self.findAMIsMatchingFilter("al2023")

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. The information in the AMI options isn't great, so make a list
        //    of the image IDs (the "Value" field in the AMI options) and get
        //    more information about them from EC2. Display the Description
        //    field and select one of them (DescribeImages with ImageIds
        //    filter).
        //=====================================================================
```

```
        print("Images matching Amazon Linux 2023:")

        var imageIds: [String] = []
        for option in options {
            guard let id = option.value else {
                continue
            }
            imageIds.append(id)
        }

        let images = await self.describeImages(imageIds)

        // This is where you would normally let the user choose which AMI to
        // use. However, for this example, we're just going to use the first
        // one, whatever it is.

        let chosenImage = images[0]

        //=====================================================================
        // 7. Get a list of instance types that are compatible with the
        //    selected AMI's architecture (such as "x86_64") and are either
        //    small or micro. Select one (DescribeInstanceTypes).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting the instance types compatible with the selected image...")

        guard let arch = chosenImage.architecture else {
            print("*** The selected image doesn't have a valid architecture.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        let imageTypes = await self.getMatchingInstanceTypes(architecture: arch)

        for type in imageTypes {
            guard let instanceType = type.instanceType else {
                continue
            }
            print("    \(instanceType.rawValue)")
        }

        // This example selects the first returned instance type. A real-world
        // application would probably ask the user to select one here.
```

```
        let chosenInstanceType = imageTypes[0]

        //=====================================================================
        // 8. Create an instance with the key pair, security group, AMI, and
        //    instance type (RunInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating an instance...")

        guard let imageId = chosenImage.imageId else {
            print("*** Cannot start image without a valid image ID.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }
        guard let instanceType = chosenInstanceType.instanceType else {
            print("*** Unable to start image without a valid image type.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        let instance = await self.runInstance(
            imageId: imageId,
            instanceType: instanceType,
            keyPairName: keyName!,
            securityGroups: [securityGroupId!]
        )

        guard let instance else {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        instanceId = instance.instanceId
        if instanceId == nil {
            print("*** Instance is missing an ID. Canceling.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 9. Wait for the instance to be ready and then display its
        //    information (DescribeInstances).
        //=====================================================================
```

```
        print("Waiting a few seconds to let the instance come up...")

        do {
            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(20))
        } catch {
            print("*** Error pausing the task.")
        }
        print("Success! Your new instance is ready:")

        //=====================================================================
        // 10. Display SSH connection info for the instance.
        //=====================================================================

        var runningInstance = await self.describeInstance(instanceId:
 instanceId!)

        if (runningInstance != nil) && (runningInstance!.publicIpAddress != nil)
 {
            print("\nYou can SSH to this instance using the following command:")
            print("ssh -i \(keyUrl.path) ec2-user@
\(runningInstance!.publicIpAddress!)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 11. Stop the instance and wait for it to stop (StopInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Stopping the instance...")

        if !(await self.stopInstance(instanceId: instanceId!, waitUntilStopped:
 true)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 12. Start the instance and wait for it to start (StartInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Starting the instance again...")

        if !(await self.startInstance(instanceId: instanceId!, waitUntilStarted:
 true)) {
            await cleanUp()
```

```
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 13. Display SSH connection info for the instance. Note that it's
        //     changed.
        //=====================================================================

        runningInstance = await self.describeInstance(instanceId: instanceId!)
        if (runningInstance != nil) && (runningInstance!.publicIpAddress != nil)
 {
            print("\nYou can SSH to this instance using the following command.")
            print("This is probably different from when the instance was running
 before.")
            print("ssh -i \(keyUrl.path) ec2-user@
\(runningInstance!.publicIpAddress!)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 14. Allocate an elastic IP and associate it with the instance
        //     (AllocateAddress and AssociateAddress).
        //=====================================================================

        allocationId = await self.allocateAddress()

        if allocationId == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        associationId = await self.associateAddress(instanceId: instanceId!,
 allocationId: allocationId)

        if associationId == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 15. Display SSH connection info for the connection. Note that the
        //     public IP is now the Elastic IP, which stays constant.
        //=====================================================================

        runningInstance = await self.describeInstance(instanceId: instanceId!)
```

```
        if (runningInstance != nil) && (runningInstance!.publicIpAddress != nil)
 {
            print("\nYou can SSH to this instance using the following command.")
            print("This has changed again, and is now the Elastic IP.")
            print("ssh -i \(keyUrl.path) ec2-user@
\(runningInstance!.publicIpAddress!)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // Handle all cleanup tasks
        //=====================================================================

        await cleanUp()
    }

    /// Clean up by discarding and closing down all allocated EC2 items:
    ///
    /// * Elastic IP allocation and association
    /// * Terminate the instance
    /// * Delete the security group
    /// * Delete the key pair
    func cleanUp() async {
        //=====================================================================
        // 16. Disassociate and delete the Elastic IP (DisassociateAddress and
        //     ReleaseAddress).
        //=====================================================================

        if associationId != nil {
            await self.disassociateAddress(associationId: associationId!)
        }

        if allocationId != nil {
            await self.releaseAddress(allocationId: allocationId!)
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 17. Terminate the instance and wait for it to terminate
        //     (TerminateInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        if instanceId != nil {
            print("Terminating the instance...")
            _ = await self.terminateInstance(instanceId: instanceId!,
 waitUntilTerminated: true)
```

```
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 18. Delete the security group (DeleteSecurityGroup).
        //=====================================================================

        if securityGroupId != nil {
            print("Deleting the security group...")
            _ = await self.deleteSecurityGroup(groupId: securityGroupId!)
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 19. Delete the key pair (DeleteKeyPair).
        //=====================================================================

        if keyName != nil {
            print("Deleting the key pair...")
            _ = await self.deleteKeyPair(keyPair: keyName!)
        }
    }

    /// Create a new RSA key pair and save the private key to a randomly-named
    /// file in the temporary directory.
    ///
    /// - Parameter name: The name of the key pair to create.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the newly created `.pem` file or `nil` if unable
    ///   to create the key pair.
    func createKeyPair(name: String) async -> URL? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createKeyPair(
                input: CreateKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: name
                )
            )

            guard let keyMaterial = output.keyMaterial else {
                return nil
            }

            // Build the URL of the temporary private key file.

            let fileURL = URL.temporaryDirectory
                                .appendingPathComponent(name)
```

```
                                    .appendingPathExtension("pem")

            do {
                try keyMaterial.write(to: fileURL, atomically: true, encoding:
String.Encoding.utf8)
                return fileURL
            } catch {
                print("*** Failed to write the private key.")
                return nil
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the key pair.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Describe the key pairs associated with the user by outputting each key
    /// pair's name and fingerprint.
    func describeKeyPairs() async {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeKeyPairs(
                input: DescribeKeyPairsInput()
            )

            guard let keyPairs = output.keyPairs else {
                print("*** No key pairs list available.")
                return
            }

            for keyPair in keyPairs {
                print(keyPair.keyName ?? "<unknown>", ":",
keyPair.keyFingerprint ?? "<unknown>")
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: Unable to obtain a key pair list.")
        }
    }

    /// Delete an EC2 key pair.
    ///
    /// - Parameter keyPair: The name of the key pair to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the key pair is deleted successfully; otherwise
    ///   `false`.
```

```
    func deleteKeyPair(keyPair: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteKeyPair(
                input: DeleteKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: keyPair
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the key pair:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Return a list of AMI names that contain the specified string.
    ///
    /// - Parameter filter: A string that must be contained in all returned
    ///   AMI names.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of the parameters matching the specified substring.
    func findAMIsMatchingFilter(_ filter: String) async ->
[SSMClientTypes.Parameter] {
        var parameterList: [SSMClientTypes.Parameter] = []
        var matchingAMIs: [SSMClientTypes.Parameter] = []

        do {
            let pages = ssmClient.getParametersByPathPaginated(
                input: GetParametersByPathInput(
                    path: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest"
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let parameters = page.parameters else {
                    return matchingAMIs
                }

                for parameter in parameters {
                    parameterList.append(parameter)
                }
            }
```

```
            print("Found \(parameterList.count) images total:")
            for parameter in parameterList {
                guard let name = parameter.name else {
                    continue
                }
                print("    \(name)")

                if name.contains(filter) {
                    matchingAMIs.append(parameter)
                }
            }
        } catch {
            return matchingAMIs
        }

        return matchingAMIs
    }

    /// Return a list of instance types matching the specified architecture
    /// and instance sizes.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - architecture: The architecture of the instance types to return, as
    ///     a member of `EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues`.
    ///   - sizes: An array of one or more strings identifying sizes of
    ///     instance type to accept.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo` records
    ///   describing the instance types matching the given requirements.
    func getMatchingInstanceTypes(architecture: EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues
 = EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues.x8664,
                          sizes: [String] = ["*.micro", "*.small"]) async
                          -> [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] {
        var instanceTypes: [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] = []

        let archFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
            name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
            values: [architecture.rawValue]
        )
        let sizeFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
            name: "instance-type",
            values: sizes
        )
```

```
        do {
            let pages = ec2Client.describeInstanceTypesPaginated(
                input: DescribeInstanceTypesInput(
                    filters: [archFilter, sizeFilter]
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let types = page.instanceTypes else {
                    return []
                }

                instanceTypes += types
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image types: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return instanceTypes
    }

    /// Get the latest information about the specified instance and output it
    /// to the screen, returning the instance details to the caller.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to provide details about.
    ///   - stateFilter: The state to require the instance to be in.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The instance's details as an `EC2ClientTypes.Instance` object.
    func describeInstance(instanceId: String,
                          stateFilter: EC2ClientTypes.InstanceStateName? =
EC2ClientTypes.InstanceStateName.running) async
                          -> EC2ClientTypes.Instance? {
        do {
            let pages = ec2Client.describeInstancesPaginated(
                input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: [instanceId]
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let reservations = page.reservations else {
                    continue
```

```
                }

                for reservation in reservations {
                    guard let instances = reservation.instances else {
                        continue
                    }

                    for instance in instances {
                        guard let state = instance.state else {
                            print("*** Instance is missing its state...")
                            continue
                        }
                        let instanceState = state.name

                        if stateFilter != nil && (instanceState != stateFilter) {
                            continue
                        }

                        let instanceTypeName: String
                        if instance.instanceType == nil {
                            instanceTypeName = "<N/A>"
                        } else {
                            instanceTypeName = instance.instanceType?.rawValue ??
 "<N/A>"
                        }

                        let instanceStateName: String
                        if instanceState == nil {
                            instanceStateName = "<N/A>"
                        } else {
                            instanceStateName = instanceState?.rawValue ?? "<N/
A>"
                        }

                        print("""
                        Instance: \(instance.instanceId ?? "<N/A>")
                                • Image ID: \(instance.imageId ?? "<N/A>")
                                • Instance type: \(instanceTypeName)
                                • Key name: \(instance.keyName ?? "<N/A>")
                                • VPC ID: \(instance.vpcId ?? "<N/A>")
                                • Public IP: \(instance.publicIpAddress ?? "N/A")
                                • State: \(instanceStateName)
                        """)
```

```
                        return instance
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error retrieving instance information to display:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }

        return nil
    }

    /// Stop the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to stop.
    ///   - waitUntilStopped: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has stopped. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance stops
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully stopped (or is left to
    ///   stop asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't stop.
    func stopInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStopped: Bool = false) async -
> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.stopInstances(
                input: StopInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStopped {
                print("Waiting for the instance to stop. Please be patient!")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceStopped(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
```

```
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to stop the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Start the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to start.
    ///   - waitUntilStarted: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has started. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance starts
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully started (or is left to
    ///   start asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't start.
    func startInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStarted: Bool = false) async
-> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.startInstances(
                input: StartInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStarted {
                print("Waiting for the instance to start...")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 60.0)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceRunning(
                    options: waitOptions,
```

```
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to start the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Terminate the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to terminate.
    ///   - waitUntilTerminated: Whether or not to wait until the instance is
    ///     terminated before returning.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if terminated successfully. `false` if not or if an
    ///   error occurs.
    func terminateInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilTerminated: Bool = false)
async -> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.terminateInstances(
                input: TerminateInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilTerminated {
                print("Waiting for the instance to terminate...")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600.0)
```

```
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceTerminated(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )

                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to terminate the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Return an array of `EC2ClientTypes.Image` objects describing all of
    /// the images in the specified array.
    ///
    /// - Parameter idList: A list of image ID strings indicating the images
    ///   to return details about.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of the images.
    func describeImages(_ idList: [String]) async -> [EC2ClientTypes.Image] {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeImages(
                input: DescribeImagesInput(
                    imageIds: idList
                )
            )

            guard let images = output.images else {
                print("*** No images found.")
                return []
            }

            for image in images {
```

```
                guard let id = image.imageId else {
                    continue
                }
                print("   \(id): \(image.description ?? "<no description>")")
            }

            return images
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image descriptions:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }
    }

    /// Create and return a new EC2 instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - imageId: The image ID of the AMI to use when creating the instance.
    ///   - instanceType: The type of instance to create.
    ///   - keyPairName: The RSA key pair's name to use to secure the instance.
    ///   - securityGroups: The security group or groups to add the instance
    ///     to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The EC2 instance as an `EC2ClientTypes.Instance` object.
    func runInstance(imageId: String, instanceType: EC2ClientTypes.InstanceType,
                     keyPairName: String, securityGroups: [String]?) async ->
EC2ClientTypes.Instance? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.runInstances(
                input: RunInstancesInput(
                    imageId: imageId,
                    instanceType: instanceType,
                    keyName: keyPairName,
                    maxCount: 1,
                    minCount: 1,
                    securityGroupIds: securityGroups
                )
            )

            guard let instances = output.instances else {
                print("*** Unable to create the instance.")
                return nil
            }
```

```
            return instances[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Return the device's external IP address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the device's IP address.
    func getMyIPAddress() -> String? {
        guard let url = URL(string: "http://checkip.amazonaws.com") else {
            print("Couldn't create the URL")
            return nil
        }

        do {
            print("Getting the IP address...")
            return try String(contentsOf: url, encoding:
String.Encoding.utf8).trim()
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to get your public IP address.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Create a new security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the group to create.
    ///   - groupDescription: A description of the new security group.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ID string of the new security group.
    func createSecurityGroup(name groupName: String, description
groupDescription: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createSecurityGroup(
                input: CreateSecurityGroupInput(
                    description: groupDescription,
                    groupName: groupName
                )
            )
```

```
            return output.groupId
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Authorize ingress of connections for the security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupId: The group ID of the security group to authorize access for.
    ///   - ipAddress: The IP address of the device to grant access to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if access is successfully granted; otherwise `false`.
    func authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupId: String, ipAddress: String) async
-> Bool {
        let ipRange = EC2ClientTypes.IpRange(cidrIp: "\(ipAddress)/0")
        let httpPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 80,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 80
        )

        let sshPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 22,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 22
        )

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(
                input: AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressInput(
                    groupId: groupId,
                    ipPermissions: [httpPermission, sshPermission]
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error authorizing ingress for the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
```

```
            return false
        }
    }

    func describeSecurityGroups(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeSecurityGroups(
                input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput(
                    groupIds: [groupId]
                )
            )

            guard let securityGroups = output.securityGroups else {
                print("No security groups found.")
                return true
            }

            for group in securityGroups {
                print("Group \(group.groupId ?? "<unknown>") found with VPC
\(group.vpcId ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting security group details:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Delete a security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupId: The ID of the security group to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` on successful deletion; `false` on error.
    func deleteSecurityGroup(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteSecurityGroup(
                input: DeleteSecurityGroupInput(
                    groupId: groupId
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
```

```
            print("*** Error deleting the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Allocate an Elastic IP address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the Elastic IP.
    func allocateAddress() async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.allocateAddress(
                input: AllocateAddressInput(
                    domain: EC2ClientTypes.DomainType.vpc
                )
            )

            guard let allocationId = output.allocationId else {
                return nil
            }

            return allocationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to allocate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Associate the specified allocated Elastic IP to a given instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to associate the Elastic IP with.
    ///   - allocationId: The ID of the allocated Elastic IP to associate with
    ///     the instance.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The association ID of the association.
    func associateAddress(instanceId: String?, allocationId: String?) async ->
String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.associateAddress(
                input: AssociateAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId,
                    instanceId: instanceId
```

```
                )
            )

            return output.associationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to associate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter associationId: The ID of the association to end.
    func disassociateAddress(associationId: String?) async {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.disassociateAddress(
                input: DisassociateAddressInput(
                    associationId: associationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to disassociate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Release an allocated Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter allocationId: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to
    ///   release.
    func releaseAddress(allocationId: String?) async {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.releaseAddress(
                input: ReleaseAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to release the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Generate and return a unique file name that begins with the specified
    /// string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prefix: Text to use at the beginning of the returned name.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing a unique filename that begins with the
    ///   specified `prefix`.
    ///
    /// The returned name uses a random number between 1 million and 1 billion to
    /// provide reasonable certainty of uniqueness for the purposes of this
    /// example.
    func tempName(prefix: String) -> String {
        return "\(prefix)-\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))"
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair

- DeleteSecurityGroup
- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstanceTypes
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Actions for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon EC2 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon EC2 API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud API Reference.

Examples

- Use AcceptVpcPeeringConnection with a CLI
- Use AllocateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AllocateHosts with a CLI
- Use AssignPrivateIpAddresses with a CLI
- Use AssociateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AssociateDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use AssociateRouteTable with a CLI

- Use AttachInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use AttachNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use AttachVolume with a CLI
- Use AttachVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress with a CLI
- Use AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CancelCapacityReservation with a CLI
- Use CancelImportTask with a CLI
- Use CancelSpotFleetRequests with a CLI
- Use CancelSpotInstanceRequests with a CLI
- Use ConfirmProductInstance with a CLI
- Use CopyImage with a CLI
- Use CopySnapshot with a CLI
- Use CreateCapacityReservation with a CLI
- Use CreateCustomerGateway with a CLI
- Use CreateDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use CreateFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use CreateImage with a CLI
- Use CreateInstanceExportTask with a CLI
- Use CreateInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use CreateKeyPair with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLaunchTemplate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateNetworkAcl with a CLI
- Use CreateNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use CreateNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use CreatePlacementGroup with a CLI
- Use CreateRoute with a CLI
- Use CreateRouteTable with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateSecurityGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use CreateSnapshot with a CLI
- Use CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use CreateSubnet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateTags with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVolume with a CLI
- Use CreateVpc with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVpcEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVpnConnection with a CLI
- Use CreateVpnConnectionRoute with a CLI
- Use CreateVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteCustomerGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use DeleteFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use DeleteInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use DeleteKeyPair with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLaunchTemplate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkAcl with a CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use DeleteNetworkInterface with a CLI
- Use DeletePlacementGroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteRoute with a CLI
- Use DeleteRouteTable with a CLI
- Use DeleteSecurityGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSnapshot with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use DeleteSubnet with a CLI
- Use DeleteTags with a CLI
- Use DeleteVolume with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpc with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVpcEndpoints with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteVpnConnection with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpnConnectionRoute with a CLI
- Use DeleteVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DeregisterImage with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeAddresses with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAvailabilityZones with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeBundleTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeCapacityReservations with a CLI
- Use DescribeCustomerGateways with a CLI
- Use DescribeDhcpOptions with a CLI
- Use DescribeFlowLogs with a CLI
- Use DescribeHostReservationOfferings with a CLI
- Use DescribeHosts with a CLI
- Use DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeIdFormat with a CLI
- Use DescribeIdentityIdFormat with a CLI
- Use DescribeImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeImportImageTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeImportSnapshotTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceTypes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeInternetGateways with a CLI
- Use DescribeKeyPairs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkAcls with a CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeNetworkInterfaces with a CLI

- Use DescribePlacementGroups with a CLI
- Use DescribePrefixLists with a CLI
- Use DescribeRegions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRouteTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability with a CLI
- Use DescribeScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use DescribeSecurityGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeSnapshots with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetInstances with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotFleetRequests with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotInstanceRequests with a CLI
- Use DescribeSpotPriceHistory with a CLI
- Use DescribeSubnets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumeAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumeStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeVolumes with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcAttribute with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcEndpointServices with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcEndpoints with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpcs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeVpnConnections with a CLI
- Use DescribeVpnGateways with a CLI
- Use DetachInternetGateway with a CLI
- Use DetachNetworkInterface with a CLI

- Use DetachVolume with a CLI
- Use DetachVpnGateway with a CLI
- Use DisableVgwRoutePropagation with a CLI
- Use DisableVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use DisassociateAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisassociateRouteTable with a CLI
- Use EnableVgwRoutePropagation with a CLI
- Use EnableVolumeIo with a CLI
- Use EnableVpcClassicLink with a CLI
- Use EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport with a CLI
- Use GetConsoleOutput with a CLI
- Use GetHostReservationPurchasePreview with a CLI
- Use GetPasswordData with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ImportImage with a CLI
- Use ImportKeyPair with a CLI
- Use ImportSnapshot with a CLI
- Use ModifyCapacityReservation with a CLI
- Use ModifyHosts with a CLI
- Use ModifyIdFormat with a CLI
- Use ModifyImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification with a CLI
- Use ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyReservedInstances with a CLI
- Use ModifySnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifySpotFleetRequest with a CLI
- Use ModifySubnetAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyVolumeAttribute with a CLI
- Use ModifyVpcAttribute with a CLI

- Use MonitorInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use MoveAddressToVpc with a CLI
- Use PurchaseHostReservation with a CLI
- Use PurchaseScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use RebootInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterImage with a CLI
- Use RejectVpcPeeringConnection with a CLI
- Use ReleaseAddress with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReleaseHosts with a CLI
- Use ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation with a CLI
- Use ReplaceNetworkAclEntry with a CLI
- Use ReplaceRoute with a CLI
- Use ReplaceRouteTableAssociation with a CLI
- Use ReportInstanceStatus with a CLI
- Use RequestSpotFleet with a CLI
- Use RequestSpotInstances with a CLI
- Use ResetImageAttribute with a CLI
- Use ResetInstanceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute with a CLI
- Use ResetSnapshotAttribute with a CLI
- Use RevokeSecurityGroupEgress with a CLI
- Use RevokeSecurityGroupIngress with a CLI
- Use RunInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RunScheduledInstances with a CLI
- Use StartInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StopInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TerminateInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UnassignPrivateIpAddresses with a CLI

- Use UnmonitorInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress with a CLI

Use `AcceptVpcPeeringConnection` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AcceptVpcPeeringConnection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To accept a VPC peering connection

This example accepts the specified VPC peering connection request.

Command:

```
aws ec2 accept-vpc-peering-connection --vpc-peering-connection-id pcx-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
{
  "VpcPeeringConnection": {
    "Status": {
      "Message": "Provisioning",
      "Code": "provisioning"
    },
    "Tags": [],
    "AccepterVpcInfo": {
      "OwnerId": "444455556666",
      "VpcId": "vpc-44455566",
      "CidrBlock": "10.0.1.0/28"
    },
    "VpcPeeringConnectionId": "pcx-1a2b3c4d",
    "RequesterVpcInfo": {
      "OwnerId": "444455556666",
      "VpcId": "vpc-111abc45",
      "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/28"
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see AcceptVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example approves the requested VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be

```
Approve-EC2VpcPeeringConnection -VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be
```

Output:

```
AccepterVpcInfo        : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionVpcInfo
ExpirationTime         : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
RequesterVpcInfo       : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionVpcInfo
Status                 : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionStateReason
Tags                   : {}
VpcPeeringConnectionId : pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be
```

- For API details, see AcceptVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example approves the requested VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be

```
Approve-EC2VpcPeeringConnection -VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be
```

Output:

```
AccepterVpcInfo        : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionVpcInfo
ExpirationTime         : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
RequesterVpcInfo       : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionVpcInfo
Status                 : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionStateReason
Tags                   : {}
VpcPeeringConnectionId : pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be
```

- For API details, see AcceptVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AllocateAddress` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AllocateAddress`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
    // instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP
address
    // constant even when you restart the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The response object for the allocated address.</returns>
    public async Task<AllocateAddressResponse> AllocateAddress()
    {
        var request = new AllocateAddressRequest();

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AllocateAddressAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Allocated IP: {response.PublicIp} with allocation
ID {response.AllocationId}.");
            return response;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "AddressLimitExceeded")
            {
                // For more information on Elastic IP address quotas, see:
                // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-
ip-addresses-eip.html#using-instance-addressing-limit
                _logger.LogError($"Unable to allocate Elastic IP, address limit
 exceeded. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while allocating Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_allocate_address
#
# This function allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region.
#
# Parameters:
#       -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard').
#
```

```
# Returns:
#       The allocated Elastic IP address, or an error message if the operation
 fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_allocate_address() {
  local domain response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_allocate_address"
    echo "Allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region."
    echo "  -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard')."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      d) domain="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$domain" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a domain with the -d parameter (either 'vpc'
 or 'standard')."
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ "$domain" != "vpc" && "$domain" != "standard" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: Invalid domain value. Must be either 'vpc' or 'standard'."
    return 1
  fi

  # Allocate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --domain "$domain" \
    --query "[PublicIp,AllocationId]" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports allocate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
```

```
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with an Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud
//! (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
```

```
  \param[out] publicIPAddress: String to return the public IP address.
  \param[out] allocationID: String to return the allocation ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::allocateAndAssociateAddress(const Aws::String &instanceId,
 Aws::String &publicIPAddress,
                                              Aws::String &allocationID,
                                              const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AllocateAddressRequest request;
    request.SetDomain(Aws::EC2::Model::DomainType::vpc);

    const Aws::EC2::Model::AllocateAddressOutcome outcome =
            ec2Client.AllocateAddress(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to allocate Elastic IP address:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
    const Aws::EC2::Model::AllocateAddressResponse &response =
 outcome.GetResult();
    allocationID = response.GetAllocationId();
    publicIPAddress = response.GetPublicIp();


    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To allocate an Elastic IP address from Amazon's address pool

The following `allocate-address` example allocates an Elastic IP address. Amazon EC2 selects the address from Amazon's address pool.

```
aws ec2 allocate-address
```

Output:

```
{
    "PublicIp": "70.224.234.241",
    "AllocationId": "eipalloc-01435ba59eEXAMPLE",
    "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
    "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2",
    "Domain": "vpc"
}
```

For more information, see Elastic IP addresses in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with a network border group

The following `allocate-address` example allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the specified network border group.

```
aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --network-border-group us-west-2-lax-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "PublicIp": "70.224.234.241",
    "AllocationId": "eipalloc-e03dd489ceEXAMPLE",
    "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
    "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2-lax-1",
    "Domain": "vpc"
}
```

For more information, see Elastic IP addresses in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To allocate an Elastic IP address from an address pool that you own

The following `allocate-address` example allocates an Elastic IP address from an address pool that you have brought to your Amazon Web Services account. Amazon EC2 selects the address from the address pool.

```
aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --public-ipv4-pool ipv4pool-ec2-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "AllocationId": "eipalloc-02463d08ceEXAMPLE",
    "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2",
    "CustomerOwnedIp": "18.218.95.81",
    "CustomerOwnedIpv4Pool": "ipv4pool-ec2-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Domain": "vpc"
    "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2",
}
```

For more information, see Elastic IP addresses in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 4: To allocate an Elastic IP address from an IPAM pool

The following `allocate-address` example allocates a specific /32 Elastic IP address from an Amazon VPC IP Address Manager (IPAM) pool.

```
aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --ipam-pool-id ipam-pool-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --address 192.0.2.0
```

Output:

```
{
    "PublicIp": "192.0.2.0",
    "AllocationId": "eipalloc-abcdef01234567890",
    "PublicIpv4Pool": "ipam-pool-1234567890abcdef0",
    "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-east-1",
    "Domain": "vpc"
}
```

For more information, see Allocate sequential Elastic IP addresses from an IPAM pool in the *Amazon VPC IPAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Allocates an Elastic IP address asynchronously in the VPC domain.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the allocation ID of the
allocated Elastic IP address
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> allocateAddressAsync() {
        AllocateAddressRequest allocateRequest = AllocateAddressRequest.builder()
            .domain(DomainType.VPC)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<AllocateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().allocateAddress(allocateRequest);
        return
responseFuture.thenApply(AllocateAddressResponse::allocationId).whenComplete((result,
ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to allocate address", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AllocateAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Allocates an Elastic IP address to your AWS account.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new AllocateAddressCommand({});

  try {
    const { AllocationId, PublicIp } = await client.send(command);
    console.log("A new IP address has been allocated to your account:");
    console.log(`ID: ${AllocationId} Public IP: ${PublicIp}`);
    console.log(
      "You can view your IP addresses in the AWS Management Console for Amazon
 EC2. Look under Network & Security > Elastic IPs",
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
// Call function if run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAllocateAddress(instanceIdVal: String?): String? {
    val allocateRequest =
        AllocateAddressRequest {
            domain = DomainType.Vpc
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val allocateResponse = ec2.allocateAddress(allocateRequest)
        val allocationIdVal = allocateResponse.allocationId

        val request =
            AssociateAddressRequest {
                instanceId = instanceIdVal
                allocationId = allocationIdVal
            }

        val associateResponse = ec2.associateAddress(request)
        return associateResponse.associationId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example allocates an Elastic IP address to use with an instance in a VPC.

```
New-EC2Address -Domain Vpc
```

Output:

```
AllocationId         Domain      PublicIp
------------         ------      --------
eipalloc-12345678    vpc         198.51.100.2
```

Example 2: This example allocates an Elastic IP address to use with an instance in EC2-Classic.

```
New-EC2Address
```

Output:

```
AllocationId         Domain      PublicIp
------------         ------      --------
                     standard    203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example allocates an Elastic IP address to use with an instance in a VPC.

```
New-EC2Address -Domain Vpc
```

Output:

```
AllocationId         Domain      PublicIp
------------         ------      --------
eipalloc-12345678    vpc         198.51.100.2
```

Example 2: This example allocates an Elastic IP address to use with an instance in EC2-Classic.

```
New-EC2Address
```

Output:

```
AllocationId         Domain      PublicIp
------------         ------      --------
                     standard    203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str]
 = None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def allocate(self) -> "ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp":
        """
        Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
        instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP
 address
        constant even when you restart the associated instance.

        :return: The ElasticIp object for the newly created Elastic IP address.
        :raises ClientError: If the allocation fails, such as reaching the
 maximum limit of Elastic IPs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.allocate_address(Domain="vpc")
            elastic_ip = self.ElasticIp(
                allocation_id=response["AllocationId"],
 public_ip=response["PublicIp"]
            )
            self.elastic_ips.append(elastic_ip)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AddressLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    "Max IP's reached. Release unused addresses or contact AWS
 Support for an increase."
                )
```

```
            raise err
        return elastic_ip
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates an Elastic IP address in Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC).
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @return [String] The allocation ID corresponding to the Elastic IP address.
# @example
#   puts allocate_elastic_ip_address(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def allocate_elastic_ip_address(ec2_client)
  response = ec2_client.allocate_address(domain: 'vpc')
  response.allocation_id
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error allocating Elastic IP address: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn allocate_ip_address(&self) -> Result<AllocateAddressOutput,
EC2Error> {
       self.client
           .allocate_address()
           .domain(DomainType::Vpc)
           .send()
           .await
           .map_err(EC2Error::from)
   }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->allocateaddress( iv_domain = 'vpc' ).   " oo_result
is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Allocated an Elastic IP address.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
```

```
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Allocate an Elastic IP address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the Elastic IP.
    func allocateAddress() async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.allocateAddress(
                input: AllocateAddressInput(
                    domain: EC2ClientTypes.DomainType.vpc
                )
            )

            guard let allocationId = output.allocationId else {
                return nil
            }

            return allocationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to allocate the IP address:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AllocateHosts` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AllocateHosts`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To allocate a Dedicated Host

The following `allocate-hosts` example allocates a single Dedicated Host in the `eu-west-1a` Availability Zone, onto which you can launch `m5.large` instances. By default, the Dedicated Host accepts only target instance launches, and does not support host recovery.

```
aws ec2 allocate-hosts \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --availability-zone eu-west-1a \
    --quantity 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "HostIds": [
        "h-07879acf49EXAMPLE"
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To allocate a Dedicated Host with auto-placement and host recovery enabled

The following `allocate-hosts` example allocates a single Dedicated Host in the `eu-west-1a` Availability Zone with auto-placement and host recovery enabled.

```
aws ec2 allocate-hosts \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --availability-zone eu-west-1a \
    --auto-placement on \
    --host-recovery on \
    --quantity 1
```

Output:

```
{
     "HostIds": [
         "h-07879acf49EXAMPLE"
     ]
}
```

Example 3: To allocate a Dedicated Host with tags

The following `allocate-hosts` example allocates a single Dedicated Host and applies a tag with a key named `purpose` and a value of `production`.

```
aws ec2 allocate-hosts \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --availability-zone eu-west-1a \
    --quantity 1 \
    --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=dedicated-
host,Tags={Key=purpose,Value=production}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "HostIds": [
        "h-07879acf49EXAMPLE"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Allocate a Dedicated Host in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see AllocateHosts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example allocates a Dedicated Host to your account for the given instance type and availability zone

```
New-EC2Host -AutoPlacement on -AvailabilityZone eu-west-1b -InstanceType
 m4.xlarge -Quantity 1
```

Output:

```
h-01e23f4cd567890f3
```

- For API details, see AllocateHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example allocates a Dedicated Host to your account for the given instance type and availability zone

```
New-EC2Host -AutoPlacement on -AvailabilityZone eu-west-1b -InstanceType
 m4.xlarge -Quantity 1
```

Output:

```
h-01e23f4cd567890f3
```

- For API details, see AllocateHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AssignPrivateIpAddresses` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssignPrivateIpAddresses`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To assign a specific secondary private IP address a network interface

This example assigns the specified secondary private IP address to the specified network interface. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 assign-private-ip-addresses --network-interface-id eni-e5aa89a3 --
private-ip-addresses 10.0.0.82
```

To assign secondary private IP addresses that Amazon EC2 selects to a network interface

This example assigns two secondary private IP addresses to the specified network interface. Amazon EC2 automatically assigns these IP addresses from the available IP addresses in the

CIDR block range of the subnet the network interface is associated with. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 assign-private-ip-addresses --network-interface-id eni-e5aa89a3 --
secondary-private-ip-address-count 2
```

- For API details, see AssignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example assigns the specified secondary private IP address to the specified network interface.

```
Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -PrivateIpAddress
 10.0.0.82
```

Example 2: This example creates two secondary private IP addresses and assigns them to the specified network interface.

```
Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount 2
```

- For API details, see AssignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example assigns the specified secondary private IP address to the specified network interface.

```
Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -PrivateIpAddress
 10.0.0.82
```

Example 2: This example creates two secondary private IP addresses and assigns them to the specified network interface.

```
Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount 2
```

- For API details, see AssignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AssociateAddress` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssociateAddress`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association
 is
    /// created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
 public
    /// IP address of the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of an Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// associate the address with.</param>
    /// <returns>The association Id that represents
    /// the association of the Elastic IP address with an instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateAddress(string allocationId, string
 instanceId)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new AssociateAddressRequest
            {
                AllocationId = allocationId,
                InstanceId = instanceId
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.AssociateAddressAsync(request);
            return response.AssociationId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to associate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while associating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_associate_address
#
# This function associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 associate.
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
 address with.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_associate_address() {
  local allocation_id instance_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_associate_address"
    echo "Associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 associate."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic
 IP address with."
    echo ""
  }
```

```
  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance ID with the -i parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Associate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 associate-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id" \
    --instance-id "$instance_id" \
    --query "AssociationId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports associate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

//! Associate an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceId: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param allocationId: An Elastic IP allocation ID.
  \param[out] associationID: String to receive the association ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: True if the address was associated with the instance; otherwise,
 false.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::associateAddress(const Aws::String &instanceId, const
 Aws::String &allocationId,
                                    Aws::String &associationID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AssociateAddressRequest request;
    request.SetInstanceId(instanceId);
    request.SetAllocationId(allocationId);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AssociateAddressOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.AssociateAddress(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to associate address " << allocationId <<
                  " with instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully associated address " << allocationId <<
                  " with instance " << instanceId << std::endl;
        associationID = outcome.GetResult().GetAssociationId();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To associate an Elastic IP address with an instance

The following `associate-address` example associates an Elastic IP address with the specified EC2 instance.

```
aws ec2 associate-address \
    --instance-id i-0b263919b6498b123 \
    --allocation-id eipalloc-64d5890a
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationId": "eipassoc-2bebb745"
}
```

Example 2: To associate an Elastic IP address with a network interface

The following `associate-address` example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified network interface.

```
aws ec2 associate-address
```

```
    --allocation-id eipalloc-64d5890a \
    --network-interface-id eni-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationId": "eipassoc-2bebb745"
}
```

Example 3: To associate an Elastic IP address with a private IP address

The following `associate-address` example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified private IP address in the specified network interface.

```
aws ec2 associate-address \
    --allocation-id eipalloc-64d5890a \
    --network-interface-id eni-1a2b3c4d \
    --private-ip-address 10.0.0.85
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationId": "eipassoc-2bebb745"
}
```

For more information, see Elastic IP addresses in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Associates an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param instanceId    the ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic
IP address with
    * @param allocationId  the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
associate
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the association ID
when the operation is successful,
    *         or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> associateAddressAsync(String instanceId,
String allocationId) {
       AssociateAddressRequest associateRequest =
AssociateAddressRequest.builder()
           .instanceId(instanceId)
           .allocationId(allocationId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<AssociateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().associateAddress(associateRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> {
           if (response.associationId() != null) {
               return response.associationId();
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Association ID is null after
associating address.");
           }
       }).whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to associate address", ex);
           }
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AssociateAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Associates an Elastic IP address, or carrier IP address (for instances that
 are in subnets in Wavelength Zones)
 * with an instance or a network interface.
 * @param {{ instanceId: string, allocationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceId, allocationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new AssociateAddressCommand({
    // You need to allocate an Elastic IP address before associating it with an
 instance.
    // You can do that with the AllocateAddressCommand.
    AllocationId: allocationId,
    // You need to create an EC2 instance before an IP address can be associated
 with it.
    // You can do that with the RunInstancesCommand.
    InstanceId: instanceId,
  });

  try {
    const { AssociationId } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `Address with allocation ID ${allocationId} is now associated with instance
 ${instanceId}.`,
      `The association ID is ${AssociationId}.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
```

```
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. Did you provide the ID of a valid Elastic IP address
 AllocationId?`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun associateAddressSc(
    instanceIdVal: String?,
    allocationIdVal: String?,
): String? {
    val associateRequest =
        AssociateAddressRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            allocationId = allocationIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val associateResponse = ec2.associateAddress(associateRequest)
        return associateResponse.associationId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified instance in a VPC.

```
C:\> Register-EC2Address -InstanceId i-12345678 -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678
```

Output:

```
eipassoc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified instance in EC2-Classic.

```
C:\> Register-EC2Address -InstanceId i-12345678 -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified instance in a VPC.

```
C:\> Register-EC2Address -InstanceId i-12345678 -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678
```

Output:

```
eipassoc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified instance in EC2-Classic.

```
C:\> Register-EC2Address -InstanceId i-12345678 -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str]
 = None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def associate(
        self, allocation_id: str, instance_id: str
    ) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
        """
        Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association
is
        created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
public
        IP address of the associated instance.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.
        :return: A response that contains the ID of the association, or None if
no Elastic IP is found.
        :raises ClientError: If the association fails, such as when the instance
ID is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID
{allocation_id}.")
            return None

        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.associate_address(
                AllocationId=allocation_id, InstanceId=instance_id
            )
            elastic_ip.instance_id = (
                instance_id  # Track the instance associated with this Elastic
IP.
```

```
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to associate Elastic IP {allocation_id} with
{instance_id} "
                    "because the specified instance ID does not exist or has not
propagated fully. "
                    "Verify the instance ID and try again, or wait a few moments
before attempting to "
                    "associate the Elastic IP address."
                )
            raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
# (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The allocation ID corresponding to the Elastic IP address.
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param allocation_id [String] The ID of the allocation corresponding to
#   the Elastic IP address.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [String] The assocation ID corresponding to the association of the
```

```
#   Elastic IP address to the instance.
# @example
#   puts allocate_elastic_ip_address(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'eipalloc-04452e528a66279EX',
#     'i-033c48ef067af3dEX')
def associate_elastic_ip_address_with_instance(
  ec2_client,
  allocation_id,
  instance_id
)
  response = ec2_client.associate_address(
    allocation_id: allocation_id,
    instance_id: instance_id
  )
  response.association_id
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error associating Elastic IP address with instance: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn associate_ip_address(
        &self,
        allocation_id: &str,
        instance_id: &str,
    ) -> Result<AssociateAddressOutput, EC2Error> {
        let response = self
            .client
```

```
            .associate_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .instance_id(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(response)
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->associateaddress(                        " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
            iv_allocationid = iv_allocation_id
            iv_instanceid = iv_instance_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Associated an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance.' TYPE
 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Associate the specified allocated Elastic IP to a given instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to associate the Elastic IP with.
    ///   - allocationId: The ID of the allocated Elastic IP to associate with
    ///     the instance.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The association ID of the association.
    func associateAddress(instanceId: String?, allocationId: String?) async ->
 String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.associateAddress(
                input: AssociateAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId,
                    instanceId: instanceId
                )
            )

            return output.associationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to associate the IP address:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AssociateDhcpOptions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssociateDhcpOptions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To associate a DHCP options set with your VPC

This example associates the specified DHCP options set with the specified VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 associate-dhcp-options --dhcp-options-id dopt-d9070ebb --vpc-id vpc-
a01106c2
```

To associate the default DHCP options set with your VPC

This example associates the default DHCP options set with the specified VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 associate-dhcp-options --dhcp-options-id default --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2
```

- For API details, see AssociateDhcpOptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates the specified DHCP options set with the specified VPC.

```
Register-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example associates the default DHCP options set with the specified VPC.

```
Register-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId default -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AssociateDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified DHCP options set with the specified VPC.

```
Register-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example associates the default DHCP options set with the specified VPC.

```
Register-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId default -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AssociateDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AssociateRouteTable` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssociateRouteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To associate a route table with a subnet

This example associates the specified route table with the specified subnet.

Command:

```
aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id rtb-22574640 --subnet-
id subnet-9d4a7b6c
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationId": "rtbassoc-781d0d1a"
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateRouteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates the specified route table with the specified subnet.

```
Register-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
rtbassoc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AssociateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified route table with the specified subnet.

```
Register-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
rtbassoc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AssociateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachInternetGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachInternetGateway`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach an internet gateway to your VPC

The following `attach-internet-gateway` example attaches the specified internet gateway to the specific VPC.

```
aws ec2 attach-internet-gateway \
    --internet-gateway-id igw-0d0fb496b3EXAMPLE \
    --vpc-id vpc-0a60eb65b4EXAMPLE
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Internet gateways in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachInternetGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the specified Internet gateway to the specified VPC.

```
Add-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example creates a VPC and an Internet gateway, and then attaches the Internet gateway to the VPC.

```
$vpc = New-EC2Vpc -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/16
New-EC2InternetGateway | Add-EC2InternetGateway -VpcId $vpc.VpcId
```

- For API details, see AttachInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified Internet gateway to the specified VPC.

```
Add-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example creates a VPC and an Internet gateway, and then attaches the Internet gateway to the VPC.

```
$vpc = New-EC2Vpc -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/16
New-EC2InternetGateway | Add-EC2InternetGateway -VpcId $vpc.VpcId
```

- For API details, see AttachInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachNetworkInterface` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachNetworkInterface`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To attach a network interface to an instance

The following `attach-network-interface` example attaches the specified network interface to the specified instance.

```
aws ec2 attach-network-interface \
    --network-interface-id eni-0dc56a8d4640ad10a \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --device-index 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-01a8fc87363f07cf9"
}
```

For more information, see Elastic network interfaces in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To attach a network interface to an instance with multiple network cards

The following `attach-network-interface` example attaches the specified network interface to the specified instance and network card.

```
aws ec2 attach-network-interface \
    --network-interface-id eni-07483b1897541ad83 \
    --instance-id i-01234567890abcdef \
    --network-card-index 1 \
    --device-index 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-0fbd7ee87a88cd06c"
}
```

For more information, see Elastic network interfaces in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachNetworkInterface in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the specified network interface to the specified instance.

```
Add-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -
DeviceIndex 1
```

Output:

```
eni-attach-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see AttachNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified network interface to the specified instance.

```
Add-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -
DeviceIndex 1
```

Output:

```
eni-attach-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see AttachNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachVolume` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachVolume`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a volume to an instance

This example command attaches a volume (`vol-1234567890abcdef0`) to an instance (`i-01474ef662b89480`) as `/dev/sdf`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 attach-volume --volume-id vol-1234567890abcdef0 --instance-
id i-01474ef662b89480 --device /dev/sdf
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachTime": "YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS.000Z",
    "InstanceId": "i-01474ef662b89480",
    "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
    "State": "attaching",
    "Device": "/dev/sdf"
}
```

- For API details, see AttachVolume in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the specified volume to the specified instance and exposes it with the specified device name.

```
Add-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -Device /dev/sdh
```

Output:

```
AttachTime          : 12/22/2015 1:53:58 AM
DeleteOnTermination : False
Device              : /dev/sdh
InstanceId          : i-1a2b3c4d
State               : attaching
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see AttachVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified volume to the specified instance and exposes it with the specified device name.

```
Add-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -Device /dev/sdh
```

Output:

```
AttachTime          : 12/22/2015 1:53:58 AM
DeleteOnTermination : False
Device              : /dev/sdh
InstanceId          : i-1a2b3c4d
State               : attaching
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see AttachVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachVpnGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachVpnGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a virtual private gateway to your VPC

The following `attach-vpn-gateway` example attaches the specified virtual private gateway to the specified VPC.

```
aws ec2 attach-vpn-gateway \
    --vpn-gateway-id vgw-9a4cacf3 \
    --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcAttachment": {
        "State": "attaching",
        "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AttachVpnGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the specified virtual private gateway to the specified VPC.

```
Add-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
State        VpcId
-----        -----
attaching    vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AttachVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified virtual private gateway to the specified VPC.

```
Add-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
State        VpcId
-----        -----
attaching    vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AttachVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add a rule that allows outbound traffic to a specific address range

The following `authorize-security-group-egress` example adds a rule that grants access to the specified address ranges on TCP port 80.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-egress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=80,ToPort=80,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=10.0.0.0/16}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-0b15794cdb17bf29c",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
```

```
            "IsEgress": true,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 80,
            "ToPort": 80,
            "CidrIpv4": "10.0.0.0/16"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To add a rule that allows outbound traffic to a specific security group

The following `authorize-security-group-egress` example adds a rule that grants access to the specified security group on TCP port 80.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-egress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=80,ToPort=80,UserIdGroupPairs=[{GroupId=sg-0aad1c26bbeec5c22}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-0b5dd815afcea9cc3",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": true,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 80,
            "ToPort": 80,
            "ReferencedGroupInfo": {
                "GroupId": "sg-0aad1c26bbeec5c22",
                "UserId": "123456789012"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Security groups in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example defines an egress rule for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. The rule grants access to the specified IP address range on TCP port 80. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 80
$ip.ToPort = 80
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example grants access to the specified source security group on TCP port 80.

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example defines an egress rule for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. The rule grants access to the specified IP address range on TCP port 80. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 80
$ip.ToPort = 80
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example grants access to the specified source security group on TCP port 80.

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer ingress to EC2 instances associated
    /// with the virtual private cloud (VPC) security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the security group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the IP address for the local computer.
            var ipAddress = await GetIpAddress();
            Console.WriteLine($"Your IP address is: {ipAddress}");
            var ipRanges =
                new List<IpRange> { new IpRange { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" } };
            var permission = new IpPermission
            {
                Ipv4Ranges = ipRanges,
                IpProtocol = "tcp",
                FromPort = 22,
                ToPort = 22
            };
            var permissions = new List<IpPermission> { permission };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
                new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest(groupName,
permissions));
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"The ingress rule already exists. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while authorizing ingress.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer for ingress to
    /// the Amazon EC2 SecurityGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The IPv4 address of the computer running the scenario.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetIpAddress()
    {
        var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        var ipString = await httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");

        // The IP address is returned with a new line
        // character on the end. Trim off the whitespace and
        // return the value to the caller.
        return ipString.Trim();
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress
#
# This function authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group.
#       -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize.
#       -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp).
#       -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize.
#       -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress() {
  local security_group_id ip_address protocol from_port to_port response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress"
    echo "Authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2) security group."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group."
    echo "  -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize."
    echo "  -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp)."
    echo "  -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize."
    echo "  -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:i:p:f:t:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) ip_address="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) protocol="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) from_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) to_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
```

```
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -g parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$ip_address" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an IP address or CIDR block with the -i
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$protocol" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a protocol with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$from_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a start port with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$to_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an end port with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
```

```
    --group-id "$security_group_id" \
    --cidr "${ip_address}/32" \
    --protocol "$protocol" \
    --port "$from_port-$to_port" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports authorize-security-group-ingress operation
 failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Authorize ingress to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) group.
/*!
  \param groupID: The EC2 group ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: The ClientConfiguration object.
  \return bool: True if the operation was successful, false otherwise.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::EC2::authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(const Aws::String &groupID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::EC2::Model::AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest
 authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest;
    authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.SetGroupId(groupID);
    buildSampleIngressRule(authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome
 authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome =

 ec2Client.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest);

    if (authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully authorized security group ingress." <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error authorizing security group ingress: "
                  << authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
 << std::endl;
    }

    return authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Utility function to build an ingress rule.

```
//! Build a sample ingress rule.
/*!
  \param authorize_request: An 'AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest' instance.
  \return void:
 */
void buildSampleIngressRule(
        Aws::EC2::Model::AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest &authorize_request)
 {
    Aws::String ingressIPRange = "203.0.113.0/24";  // Configure this for your
 allowed IP range.
    Aws::EC2::Model::IpRange ip_range;
    ip_range.SetCidrIp(ingressIPRange);

    Aws::EC2::Model::IpPermission permission1;
    permission1.SetIpProtocol("tcp");
    permission1.SetToPort(80);
    permission1.SetFromPort(80);
    permission1.AddIpRanges(ip_range);
```

```
    authorize_request.AddIpPermissions(permission1);

    Aws::EC2::Model::IpPermission permission2;
    permission2.SetIpProtocol("tcp");
    permission2.SetToPort(22);
    permission2.SetFromPort(22);
    permission2.AddIpRanges(ip_range);

    authorize_request.AddIpPermissions(permission2);
}
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add a rule that allows inbound SSH traffic

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example adds a rule that allows inbound traffic on TCP port 22 (SSH).

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --protocol tcp \
    --port 22 \
    --cidr 203.0.113.0/24
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-01afa97ef3e1bedfc",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 22,
```

```
            "ToPort": 22,
            "CidrIpv4": "203.0.113.0/24"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To add a rule that allows inbound HTTP traffic from another security group

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example adds a rule that allows inbound access on TCP port 80 from the source security group `sg-1a2b3c4d`. The source group must be in the same VPC or in a peer VPC (requires a VPC peering connection). Incoming traffic is allowed based on the private IP addresses of instances that are associated with the source security group (not the public IP address or Elastic IP address).

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --protocol tcp \
    --port 80 \
    --source-group sg-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-01f4be99110f638a7",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 80,
            "ToPort": 80,
            "ReferencedGroupInfo": {
                "GroupId": "sg-1a2b3c4d",
                "UserId": "123456789012"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To add multiple rules in the same call

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to add two inbound rules, one that enables inbound access on TCP port 3389 (RDP) and the other that enables ping/ICMP.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=3389,ToPort=3389,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=172.31.0.0/16}]"
 "IpProtocol=icmp,FromPort=-1,ToPort=-1,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=172.31.0.0/16}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-00e06e5d3690f29f3",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 3389,
            "ToPort": 3389,
            "CidrIpv4": "172.31.0.0/16"
        },
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-0a133dd4493944b87",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": -1,
            "ToPort": -1,
            "CidrIpv4": "172.31.0.0/16"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 4: To add a rule for ICMP traffic

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to add an inbound rule that allows the ICMP message

`Destination Unreachable: Fragmentation Needed and Don't Fragment was Set` (Type 3, Code 4) from anywhere.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=icmp,FromPort=3,ToPort=4,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=0.0.0.0/0}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-0de3811019069b787",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "icmp",
            "FromPort": 3,
            "ToPort": 4,
            "CidrIpv4": "0.0.0.0/0"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 5: To add a rule for IPv6 traffic

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to add an inbound rule that allows SSH access (port 22) from the IPv6 range `2001:db8:1234:1a00::/64`.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=22,ToPort=22,Ipv6Ranges=[{CidrIpv6=2001:db8:1234:1a00::/64}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
```

```
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-0455bc68b60805563",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 22,
            "ToPort": 22,
            "CidrIpv6": "2001:db8:1234:1a00::/64"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 6: To add a rule for ICMPv6 traffic

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to add an inbound rule that allows ICMPv6 traffic from anywhere.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions 'IpProtocol=icmpv6,Ipv6Ranges=[{CidrIpv6=::/0}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-04b612d9363ab6327",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "icmpv6",
            "FromPort": -1,
            "ToPort": -1,
            "CidrIpv6": "::/0"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 7: Add a rule with a description

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to add an inbound rule that allows RDP traffic from the specified IPv4 address range. The rule includes a description to help you identify it later.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=3389,ToPort=3389,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=203.0.113.0/24,Description='
 office'}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-0397bbcc01e974db3",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "tcp",
            "FromPort": 3389,
            "ToPort": 3389,
            "CidrIpv4": "203.0.113.0/24",
            "Description": "RDP access from NY office"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 8: To add an inbound rule that uses a prefix list

The following `authorize-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to add an inbound rule that allows all traffic for the CIDR ranges in the specified prefix list.

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-04a351bfe432d4e71 \
    --ip-permissions
 'IpProtocol=all,PrefixListIds=[{PrefixListId=pl-002dc3ec097de1514}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "SecurityGroupRules": [
        {
            "SecurityGroupRuleId": "sgr-09c74b32f677c6c7c",
            "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdef0",
            "GroupOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "IsEgress": false,
            "IpProtocol": "-1",
            "FromPort": -1,
            "ToPort": -1,
            "PrefixListId": "pl-0721453c7ac4ec009"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Security groups in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new security group asynchronously with the specified group name,
 description, and VPC ID. It also
     * authorizes inbound traffic on ports 80 and 22 from the specified IP
 address.
     *
     * @param groupName    the name of the security group to create
     * @param groupDesc    the description of the security group
     * @param vpcId        the ID of the VPC in which to create the security
 group
```

```
    * @param myIpAddress  the IP address from which to allow inbound traffic
(e.g., "192.168.1.1/0" to allow traffic from
    *                     any IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet)
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the ID of the
created security group
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure creating the security
group or authorizing the inbound traffic
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSecurityGroupAsync(String groupName,
String groupDesc, String vpcId, String myIpAddress) {
       CreateSecurityGroupRequest createRequest =
CreateSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
           .groupName(groupName)
           .description(groupDesc)
           .vpcId(vpcId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createSecurityGroup(createRequest)
           .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
               String groupId = createResponse.groupId();
               IpRange ipRange = IpRange.builder()
                   .cidrIp(myIpAddress + "/32")
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(80)
                   .fromPort(80)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm2 = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(22)
                   .fromPort(22)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();

               AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest authRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                   .groupName(groupName)
                   .ipPermissions(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
                   .build();
```

```
                return
 getAsyncClient().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
                    .thenApply(authResponse -> groupId);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception instanceof CompletionException &&
 exception.getCause() instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw (Ec2Exception) exception.getCause();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create security
 group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
  EC2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Adds the specified inbound (ingress) rules to a security group.
 * @param {{ groupId: string, ipAddress: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupId, ipAddress }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
```

```
    // Use a group ID from the AWS console or
    // the DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand.
    GroupId: groupId,
    IpPermissions: [
      {
        IpProtocol: "tcp",
        FromPort: 22,
        ToPort: 22,
        // The IP address to authorize.
        // For more information on this notation, see
        // https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classless_Inter-
Domain_Routing#CIDR_notation
        IpRanges: [{ CidrIp: `${ipAddress}/32` }],
      },
    ],
  });

  try {
    const { SecurityGroupRules } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(SecurityGroupRules, null, 2));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2SecurityGroupSc(
    groupNameVal: String?,
    groupDescVal: String?,
    vpcIdVal: String?,
    myIpAddress: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupName = groupNameVal
            description = groupDescVal
            vpcId = vpcIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val resp = ec2.createSecurityGroup(request)
        val ipRange =
            IpRange {
                cidrIp = "$myIpAddress/0"
            }

        val ipPerm =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 80
                fromPort = 80
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val ipPerm2 =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 22
                fromPort = 22
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val authRequest =
            AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest {
                groupName = groupNameVal
                ipPermissions = listOf(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
            }
        ec2.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
```

```
        println("Successfully added ingress policy to Security Group
 $groupNameVal")
        return resp.groupId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example defines ingress rules for a security group for EC2-VPC. These rules grant access to a specific IP address for SSH (port 22) and RDC (port 3389). Note that you must identify security groups for EC2-VPC using the security group ID not the security group name. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip1 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }
$ip2 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="3389"; ToPort="3389";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission objects.

```
$ip1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip1.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip1.FromPort = 22
$ip1.ToPort = 22
$ip1.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

$ip2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip2.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip2.FromPort = 3389
$ip2.ToPort = 3389
$ip2.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")
```

```
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 3: This example defines ingress rules for a security group for EC2-Classic. These rules grant access to a specific IP address for SSH (port 22) and RDC (port 3389). The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip1 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }
$ip2 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="3389"; ToPort="3389";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission
 @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission objects.

```
$ip1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip1.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip1.FromPort = 22
$ip1.ToPort = 22
$ip1.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

$ip2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip2.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip2.FromPort = 3389
$ip2.ToPort = 3389
$ip2.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission
 @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 5: This example grants TCP port 8081 access from the specified source security group (sg-1a2b3c4d) to the specified security group (sg-12345678).

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="8081"; ToPort="8081"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

Example 6: This example adds the CIDR 5.5.5.5/32 to the Ingress rules of security Group sg-1234abcd for TCP port 22 traffic with a description.

```
$IpRange = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.EC2.Model.IpRange
$IpRange.CidrIp = "5.5.5.5/32"
$IpRange.Description = "SSH from Office"
$IpPermission = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$IpPermission.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$IpPermission.ToPort = 22
$IpPermission.FromPort = 22
$IpPermission.Ipv4Ranges = $IpRange
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-1234abcd -IpPermission $IpPermission
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example defines ingress rules for a security group for EC2-VPC. These rules grant access to a specific IP address for SSH (port 22) and RDC (port 3389). Note that you must identify security groups for EC2-VPC using the security group ID not the security group name. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip1 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }
$ip2 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="3389"; ToPort="3389";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission objects.

```
$ip1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip1.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip1.FromPort = 22
$ip1.ToPort = 22
$ip1.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

$ip2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip2.IpProtocol = "tcp"
```

```
$ip2.FromPort = 3389
$ip2.ToPort = 3389
$ip2.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 3: This example defines ingress rules for a security group for EC2-Classic. These rules grant access to a specific IP address for SSH (port 22) and RDC (port 3389). The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip1 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }
$ip2 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="3389"; ToPort="3389";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission
 @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission objects.

```
$ip1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip1.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip1.FromPort = 22
$ip1.ToPort = 22
$ip1.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

$ip2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip2.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip2.FromPort = 3389
$ip2.ToPort = 3389
$ip2.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission
 @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 5: This example grants TCP port 8081 access from the specified source security group (sg-1a2b3c4d) to the specified security group (sg-12345678).

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
```

```
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="8081"; ToPort="8081"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

Example 6: This example adds the CIDR 5.5.5.5/32 to the Ingress rules of security Group sg-1234abcd for TCP port 22 traffic with a description.

```
$IpRange = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.EC2.Model.IpRange
$IpRange.CidrIp = "5.5.5.5/32"
$IpRange.Description = "SSH from Office"
$IpPermission = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$IpPermission.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$IpPermission.ToPort = 22
$IpPermission.FromPort = 22
$IpPermission.Ipv4Ranges = $IpRange
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-1234abcd -IpPermission $IpPermission
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a
 high-level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def authorize_ingress(self, ssh_ingress_ip: str) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Adds a rule to the security group to allow access to SSH.

        :param ssh_ingress_ip: The IP address that is granted inbound access to
 connect
                               to port 22 over TCP, used for SSH.
        :return: The response to the authorization request. The 'Return' field of
 the
                 response indicates whether the request succeeded or failed, or
 None if no security group is set.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling
 for ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        if self.security_group is None:
            logger.info("No security group to update.")
            return None

        try:
            ip_permissions = [
                {
                    # SSH ingress open to only the specified IP address.
```

```
                    "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                    "FromPort": 22,
                    "ToPort": 22,
                    "IpRanges": [{"CidrIp": f"{ssh_ingress_ip}/32"}],
                }
            ]
            response = self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=self.security_group, IpPermissions=ip_permissions
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"The SSH ingress rule for IP {ssh_ingress_ip} already
exists"
                    f"in security group '{self.security_group}'."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// Add an ingress rule to a security group explicitly allowing IPv4 address
    /// as {ip}/32 over TCP port 22.
    pub async fn authorize_security_group_ssh_ingress(
        &self,
        group_id: &str,
        ingress_ips: Vec<Ipv4Addr>,
```

```
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Authorizing ingress for security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .authorize_security_group_ingress()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .set_ip_permissions(Some(
                ingress_ips
                    .into_iter()
                    .map(|ip| {
                        IpPermission::builder()
                            .ip_protocol("tcp")
                            .from_port(22)
                            .to_port(22)
                            .ip_ranges(IpRange::builder().cidr_ip(format!
("{ip}/32")).build())
                            .build()
                    })
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Authorize ingress of connections for the security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
```

```
    ///   - groupId: The group ID of the security group to authorize access for.
    ///   - ipAddress: The IP address of the device to grant access to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if access is successfully granted; otherwise `false`.
    func authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupId: String, ipAddress: String) async
-> Bool {
        let ipRange = EC2ClientTypes.IpRange(cidrIp: "\(ipAddress)/0")
        let httpPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 80,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 80
        )

        let sshPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 22,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 22
        )

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(
                input: AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressInput(
                    groupId: groupId,
                    ipPermissions: [httpPermission, sshPermission]
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error authorizing ingress for the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CancelCapacityReservation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CancelCapacityReservation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To cancel a capacity reservation

The following `cancel-capacity-reservation` example cancels the specified capacity reservation.

```
aws ec2 cancel-capacity-reservation \
    --capacity-reservation-id cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

For more information, see Cancel a Capacity Reservation in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CancelCapacityReservation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example cancels the capacity reservation cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba

```
Remove-EC2CapacityReservation -CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2CapacityReservation
 (CancelCapacityReservation)" on target "cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
True
```

- For API details, see CancelCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the capacity reservation cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba

```
Remove-EC2CapacityReservation -CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2CapacityReservation
 (CancelCapacityReservation)" on target "cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
True
```

- For API details, see CancelCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CancelImportTask` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CancelImportTask`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To cancel an import task

The following `cancel-import-task` example cancels the specified import image task.

```
aws ec2 cancel-import-task \
    --import-task-id import-ami-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImportTaskId": "import-ami-1234567890abcdef0",
```

```
    "PreviousState": "active",
    "State": "deleting"
}
```

- For API details, see CancelImportTask in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example cancels the specified import task (either snapshot or image import). If required, a reason can be providing using the `-CancelReason` parameter.

```
Stop-EC2ImportTask -ImportTaskId import-ami-abcdefgh
```

- For API details, see CancelImportTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the specified import task (either snapshot or image import). If required, a reason can be providing using the `-CancelReason` parameter.

```
Stop-EC2ImportTask -ImportTaskId import-ami-abcdefgh
```

- For API details, see CancelImportTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CancelSpotFleetRequests` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CancelSpotFleetRequests`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To cancel a Spot fleet request and terminate the associated instances

The following `cancel-spot-fleet-requests` example cancels a Spot Fleet request and terminates the associated On-Demand Instances and Spot Instances.

```
aws ec2 cancel-spot-fleet-requests \
```

```
    --spot-fleet-request-ids sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE \
    --terminate-instances
```

Output:

```
{
    "SuccessfulFleetRequests": [
        {
            "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE",
            "CurrentSpotFleetRequestState": "cancelled_terminating",
            "PreviousSpotFleetRequestState": "active"
        }
    ],
    "UnsuccessfulFleetRequests": []
}
```

Example 2: To cancel a Spot fleet request without terminating the associated instances

The following `cancel-spot-fleet-requests` example cancels a Spot Fleet request without terminating the associated On-Demand Instances and Spot Instances.

```
aws ec2 cancel-spot-fleet-requests \
    --spot-fleet-request-ids sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE \
    --no-terminate-instances
```

Output:

```
{
    "SuccessfulFleetRequests": [
        {
            "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE",
            "CurrentSpotFleetRequestState": "cancelled_running",
            "PreviousSpotFleetRequestState": "active"
        }
    ],
    "UnsuccessfulFleetRequests": []
}
```

For more information, see Cancel a Spot Fleet request in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CancelSpotFleetRequests in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example cancels the specified Spot fleet request and terminates the associated Spot instances.

```
Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TerminateInstance $true
```

Example 2: This example cancels the specified Spot fleet request without terminating the associated Spot instances.

```
Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TerminateInstance $false
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotFleetRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the specified Spot fleet request and terminates the associated Spot instances.

```
Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TerminateInstance $true
```

Example 2: This example cancels the specified Spot fleet request without terminating the associated Spot instances.

```
Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TerminateInstance $false
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotFleetRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CancelSpotInstanceRequests` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CancelSpotInstanceRequests`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To cancel Spot Instance requests

This example command cancels a Spot Instance request.

Command:

```
aws ec2 cancel-spot-instance-requests --spot-instance-request-ids sir-08b93456
```

Output:

```
{
    "CancelledSpotInstanceRequests": [
        {
            "State": "cancelled",
            "SpotInstanceRequestId": "sir-08b93456"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example cancels the specified Spot instance request.

```
Stop-EC2SpotInstanceRequest -SpotInstanceRequestId sir-12345678
```

Output:

```
SpotInstanceRequestId    State
---------------------    -----
sir-12345678             cancelled
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the specified Spot instance request.

```
Stop-EC2SpotInstanceRequest -SpotInstanceRequestId sir-12345678
```

Output:

```
SpotInstanceRequestId    State
---------------------    -----
sir-12345678             cancelled
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ConfirmProductInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ConfirmProductInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To confirm the product instance

This example determines whether the specified product code is associated with the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 confirm-product-instance --product-code 774F4FF8 --instance-
id i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
  "OwnerId": "123456789012"
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmProductInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example determines whether the specified product code is associated with the specified instance.

```
Confirm-EC2ProductInstance -ProductCode 774F4FF8 -InstanceId i-12345678
```

- For API details, see ConfirmProductInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example determines whether the specified product code is associated with the specified instance.

```
Confirm-EC2ProductInstance -ProductCode 774F4FF8 -InstanceId i-12345678
```

- For API details, see ConfirmProductInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CopyImage` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CopyImage`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To copy an AMI to another Region

The following `copy-image` example command copies the specified AMI from the `us-west-2` Region to the `us-east-1` Region and adds a short description.

```
aws ec2 copy-image \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --name ami-name \
    --source-region us-west-2 \
    --source-image-id ami-066877671789bd71b \
    --description "This is my copied image."
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-0123456789abcdefg"
}
```

For more information, see Copy an AMI in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To copy an AMI to another Region and encrypt the backing snapshot

The following `copy-image` command copies the specified AMI from the `us-west-2` Region to the current Region and encrypts the backing snapshot using the specified KMS key.

```
aws ec2 copy-image \
    --source-region us-west-2 \
    --name ami-name \
    --source-image-id ami-066877671789bd71b \
    --encrypted \
    --kms-key-id alias/my-kms-key
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-0123456789abcdefg"
}
```

For more information, see Copy an AMI in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To include your user-defined AMI tags when copying an AMI

The following `copy-image` command uses the `--copy-image-tags` parameter to copy your user-defined AMI tags when copying the AMI.

```
aws ec2 copy-image \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --name ami-name \
    --source-region us-west-2 \
    --source-image-id ami-066877671789bd71b \
    --description "This is my copied image."
    --copy-image-tags
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-0123456789abcdefg"
}
```

For more information, see Copy an AMI in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CopyImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example copies the specified AMI in the 'EU (Ireland)' region to the 'US West (Oregon)' region. If -Region is not specified, the current default region is used as the destination region.

```
Copy-EC2Image -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceImageId ami-12345678 -Region us-
west-2 -Name "Copy of ami-12345678"
```

Output:

```
ami-87654321
```

- For API details, see CopyImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example copies the specified AMI in the 'EU (Ireland)' region to the 'US West (Oregon)' region. If -Region is not specified, the current default region is used as the destination region.

```
Copy-EC2Image -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceImageId ami-12345678 -Region us-
west-2 -Name "Copy of ami-12345678"
```

Output:

```
ami-87654321
```

- For API details, see CopyImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use CopySnapshot with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use CopySnapshot.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To copy a snapshot to another Region

The following copy-snapshot example command copies the specified snapshot from the us-west-2 Region to the us-east-1 Region and adds a short description.

```
aws ec2 copy-snapshot \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --source-region us-west-2 \
    --source-snapshot-id snap-066877671789bd71b \
    --description 'This is my copied snapshot.'
```

Output:

```
{
    "SnapshotId": "snap-066877671789bd71b"
}
```

Example 2: To copy an unencrypted snapshot and encrypt the new snapshot

The following copy-snapshot command copies the specified unencrypted snapshot from the us-west-2 Region to the current Region and encrypts the new snapshot using the specified KMS key.

```
aws ec2 copy-snapshot \
    --source-region us-west-2 \
    --source-snapshot-id snap-066877671789bd71b \
    --encrypted \
    --kms-key-id alias/my-kms-key
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "SnapshotId": "snap-066877671789bd71b"
}
```

For more information, see Copy an Amazon EBS snapshot in the *Amazon EBS User Guide*.

- For API details, see CopySnapshot in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example copies the specified snapshot from the EU (Ireland) region to the US West (Oregon) region.

```
Copy-EC2Snapshot -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceSnapshotId snap-12345678 -Region
 us-west-2
```

Example 2: If you set a default region and omit the Region parameter, the default destination region is the default region.

```
Set-DefaultAWSRegion us-west-2
Copy-EC2Snapshot -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceSnapshotId snap-12345678
```

- For API details, see CopySnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example copies the specified snapshot from the EU (Ireland) region to the US West (Oregon) region.

```
Copy-EC2Snapshot -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceSnapshotId snap-12345678 -Region
 us-west-2
```

Example 2: If you set a default region and omit the Region parameter, the default destination region is the default region.

```
Set-DefaultAWSRegion us-west-2
Copy-EC2Snapshot -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceSnapshotId snap-12345678
```

- For API details, see CopySnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateCapacityReservation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCapacityReservation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a Capacity Reservation

The following `create-capacity-reservation` example creates a capacity reservation in the `eu-west-1a` Availability Zone, into which you can launch three `t2.medium` instances running a Linux/Unix operating system. By default, the capacity reservation is created with open instance matching criteria and no support for ephemeral storage, and it remains active until you manually cancel it.

```
aws ec2 create-capacity-reservation \
    --availability-zone eu-west-1a \
    --instance-type t2.medium \
    --instance-platform Linux/UNIX \
    --instance-count 3
```

Output:

```
{
    "CapacityReservation": {
        "CapacityReservationId": "cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE ",
        "EndDateType": "unlimited",
        "AvailabilityZone": "eu-west-1a",
        "InstanceMatchCriteria": "open",
        "EphemeralStorage": false,
        "CreateDate": "2019-08-16T09:27:35.000Z",
        "AvailableInstanceCount": 3,
        "InstancePlatform": "Linux/UNIX",
        "TotalInstanceCount": 3,
        "State": "active",
        "Tenancy": "default",
        "EbsOptimized": false,
        "InstanceType": "t2.medium"
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create a Capacity Reservation that automatically ends at a specified date/time

The following `create-capacity-reservation` example creates a capacity reservation in the `eu-west-1a` Availability Zone, into which you can launch three `m5.large` instances running a Linux/Unix operating system. This capacity reservation automatically ends on 08/31/2019 at 23:59:59.

```
aws ec2 create-capacity-reservation \
    --availability-zone eu-west-1a \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --instance-platform Linux/UNIX \
    --instance-count 3 \
    --end-date-type limited \
    --end-date 2019-08-31T23:59:59Z
```

Output:

```
{
    "CapacityReservation": {
        "CapacityReservationId": "cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE ",
        "EndDateType": "limited",
        "AvailabilityZone": "eu-west-1a",
        "EndDate": "2019-08-31T23:59:59.000Z",
        "InstanceMatchCriteria": "open",
        "EphemeralStorage": false,
        "CreateDate": "2019-08-16T10:15:53.000Z",
        "AvailableInstanceCount": 3,
        "InstancePlatform": "Linux/UNIX",
        "TotalInstanceCount": 3,
        "State": "active",
        "Tenancy": "default",
        "EbsOptimized": false,
        "InstanceType": "m5.large"
    }
}
```

Example 3: To create a Capacity Reservation that accepts only targeted instance launches

The following `create-capacity-reservation` example creates a capacity reservation that accepts only targeted instance launches.

```
aws ec2 create-capacity-reservation \
    --availability-zone eu-west-1a \
    --instance-type m5.large \
    --instance-platform Linux/UNIX \
    --instance-count 3 \
    --instance-match-criteria targeted
```

Output:

```
{
    "CapacityReservation": {
        "CapacityReservationId": "cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE ",
        "EndDateType": "unlimited",
        "AvailabilityZone": "eu-west-1a",
        "InstanceMatchCriteria": "targeted",
        "EphemeralStorage": false,
        "CreateDate": "2019-08-16T10:21:57.000Z",
        "AvailableInstanceCount": 3,
        "InstancePlatform": "Linux/UNIX",
        "TotalInstanceCount": 3,
        "State": "active",
        "Tenancy": "default",
        "EbsOptimized": false,
        "InstanceType": "m5.large"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Create a Capacity Reservation in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateCapacityReservation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new Capacity Reservation with the specified attributes

```
Add-EC2CapacityReservation -InstanceType m4.xlarge -InstanceCount 2 -
AvailabilityZone eu-west-1b -EbsOptimized True -InstancePlatform Windows
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone       : eu-west-1b
AvailableInstanceCount : 2
CapacityReservationId  : cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
CreateDate             : 3/28/2019 9:29:41 AM
EbsOptimized           : True
EndDate                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
EndDateType            : unlimited
EphemeralStorage       : False
InstanceMatchCriteria  : open
InstancePlatform       : Windows
InstanceType           : m4.xlarge
State                  : active
Tags                   : {}
Tenancy                : default
TotalInstanceCount     : 2
```

- For API details, see CreateCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new Capacity Reservation with the specified attributes

```
Add-EC2CapacityReservation -InstanceType m4.xlarge -InstanceCount 2 -
AvailabilityZone eu-west-1b -EbsOptimized True -InstancePlatform Windows
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone       : eu-west-1b
AvailableInstanceCount : 2
CapacityReservationId  : cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
CreateDate             : 3/28/2019 9:29:41 AM
EbsOptimized           : True
EndDate                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
EndDateType            : unlimited
EphemeralStorage       : False
InstanceMatchCriteria  : open
InstancePlatform       : Windows
InstanceType           : m4.xlarge
State                  : active
Tags                   : {}
Tenancy                : default
```

```
TotalInstanceCount     : 2
```

- For API details, see CreateCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateCustomerGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCustomerGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a customer gateway

This example creates a customer gateway with the specified IP address for its outside interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-customer-gateway --type ipsec.1 --public-ip 12.1.2.3 --bgp-
asn 65534
```

Output:

```
{
    "CustomerGateway": {
        "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-0e11f167",
        "IpAddress": "12.1.2.3",
        "State": "available",
        "Type": "ipsec.1",
        "BgpAsn": "65534"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomerGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified customer gateway.

```
New-EC2CustomerGateway -Type ipsec.1 -PublicIp 203.0.113.12 -BgpAsn 65534
```

Output:

```
BgpAsn            : 65534
CustomerGatewayId : cgw-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress         : 203.0.113.12
State             : available
Tags              : {}
Type              : ipsec.1
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomerGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified customer gateway.

```
New-EC2CustomerGateway -Type ipsec.1 -PublicIp 203.0.113.12 -BgpAsn 65534
```

Output:

```
BgpAsn            : 65534
CustomerGatewayId : cgw-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress         : 203.0.113.12
State             : available
Tags              : {}
Type              : ipsec.1
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomerGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateDhcpOptions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDhcpOptions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a set of DHCP options

The following `create-dhcp-options` example creates a set of DHCP options that specifies the domain name, the domain name servers, and the NetBIOS node type.

```
aws ec2 create-dhcp-options \
    --dhcp-configuration \
        "Key=domain-name-servers,Values=10.2.5.1,10.2.5.2" \
        "Key=domain-name,Values=example.com" \
        "Key=netbios-node-type,Values=2"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DhcpOptions": {
        "DhcpConfigurations": [
            {
                "Key": "domain-name",
                "Values": [
                    {
                        "Value": "example.com"
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "Key": "domain-name-servers",
                "Values": [
                    {
                        "Value": "10.2.5.1"
                    },
                    {
                        "Value": "10.2.5.2"
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "Key": "netbios-node-type",
                "Values": [
                    {
                        "Value": "2"
                    }
                ]
            }
        ],
        "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-06d52773eff4c55f3"
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDhcpOptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified set of DHCP options. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$options = @( @{Key="domain-name";Values=@("abc.local")}, @{Key="domain-name-
servers";Values=@("10.0.0.101","10.0.0.102")})
New-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpConfiguration $options
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                    DhcpOptionsId    Tags
------------------                    -------------    ----
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-1a2b3c4d    {}
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each DHCP option.

```
$option1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.DhcpConfiguration
$option1.Key = "domain-name"
$option1.Values = "abc.local"

$option2 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.DhcpConfiguration
$option2.Key = "domain-name-servers"
$option2.Values = @("10.0.0.101","10.0.0.102")

New-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpConfiguration @($option1, $option2)
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                    DhcpOptionsId    Tags
------------------                    -------------    ----
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-2a3b4c5d    {}
```

- For API details, see CreateDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified set of DHCP options. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$options = @( @{Key="domain-name";Values=@("abc.local")}, @{Key="domain-name-
servers";Values=@("10.0.0.101","10.0.0.102")})
New-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpConfiguration $options
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                   DhcpOptionsId    Tags
------------------                   -------------    ----
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}   dopt-1a2b3c4d    {}
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each DHCP option.

```
$option1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.DhcpConfiguration
$option1.Key = "domain-name"
$option1.Values = "abc.local"

$option2 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.DhcpConfiguration
$option2.Key = "domain-name-servers"
$option2.Values = @("10.0.0.101","10.0.0.102")

New-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpConfiguration @($option1, $option2)
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                   DhcpOptionsId    Tags
------------------                   -------------    ----
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}   dopt-2a3b4c5d    {}
```

- For API details, see CreateDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateFlowLogs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateFlowLogs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a flow log

The following `create-flow-logs` example creates a flow log that captures all rejected traffic for the specified network interface. The flow logs are delivered to a log group in CloudWatch Logs using the permissions in the specified IAM role.

```
aws ec2 create-flow-logs \
    --resource-type NetworkInterface \
    --resource-ids eni-11223344556677889 \
    --traffic-type REJECT \
    --log-group-name my-flow-logs \
    --deliver-logs-permission-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/publishFlowLogs
```

Output:

```
{
    "ClientToken": "so0eNA2uSHUNlHI0S2cJ305GuIX1CezaRdGtexample",
    "FlowLogIds": [
        "fl-12345678901234567"
    ],
    "Unsuccessful": []
}
```

For more information, see VPC Flow Logs in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a flow log with a custom format

The following `create-flow-logs` example creates a flow log that captures all traffic for the specified VPC and delivers the flow logs to an Amazon S3 bucket. The `--log-format` parameter specifies a custom format for the flow log records. To run this command on Windows, change the single quotes (') to double quotes (").

```
aws ec2 create-flow-logs \
    --resource-type VPC \
    --resource-ids vpc-00112233344556677 \
    --traffic-type ALL \
    --log-destination-type s3 \
```

```
    --log-destination arn:aws:s3:::flow-log-bucket/my-custom-flow-logs/ \
    --log-format '${version} ${vpc-id} ${subnet-id} ${instance-id} ${srcaddr}
 ${dstaddr} ${srcport} ${dstport} ${protocol} ${tcp-flags} ${type} ${pkt-srcaddr}
 ${pkt-dstaddr}'
```

For more information, see VPC Flow Logs in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a flow log with a one-minute maximum aggregation interval

The following `create-flow-logs` example creates a flow log that captures all traffic for the specified VPC and delivers the flow logs to an Amazon S3 bucket. The `--max-aggregation-interval` parameter specifies a maximum aggregation interval of 60 seconds (1 minute).

```
aws ec2 create-flow-logs \
    --resource-type VPC \
    --resource-ids vpc-00112233344556677 \
    --traffic-type ALL \
    --log-destination-type s3 \
    --log-destination arn:aws:s3:::flow-log-bucket/my-custom-flow-logs/ \
    --max-aggregation-interval 60
```

For more information, see VPC Flow Logs in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateFlowLogs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates EC2 flowlog for the subnet subnet-1d234567 to the cloud-watch-log named 'subnet1-log' for all 'REJECT' traffic using the perimssions of the 'Admin' role

```
New-EC2FlowLog -ResourceId "subnet-1d234567" -LogDestinationType cloud-watch-
logs -LogGroupName subnet1-log -TrafficType "REJECT" -ResourceType Subnet -
DeliverLogsPermissionArn "arn:aws:iam::98765432109:role/Admin"
```

Output:

```
ClientToken                                     FlowLogIds              Unsuccessful
```

```
-----------                                    ----------              ------------
m1VN2cxP3iB4qo//VUKl5EU6cF7gQLOxcqNefvjeTGw= {fl-012fc34eed5678c9d} {}
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates EC2 flowlog for the subnet subnet-1d234567 to the cloud-watch-log named 'subnet1-log' for all 'REJECT' traffic using the perimssions of the 'Admin' role

```
New-EC2FlowLog -ResourceId "subnet-1d234567" -LogDestinationType cloud-watch-
logs -LogGroupName subnet1-log -TrafficType "REJECT" -ResourceType Subnet -
DeliverLogsPermissionArn "arn:aws:iam::98765432109:role/Admin"
```

Output:

```
ClientToken                                    FlowLogIds              Unsuccessful
-----------                                    ----------              ------------
m1VN2cxP3iB4qo//VUKl5EU6cF7gQLOxcqNefvjeTGw= {fl-012fc34eed5678c9d} {}
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateImage` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateImage`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an AMI from an Amazon EBS-backed instance

The following `create-image` example creates an AMI from the specified instance.

```
aws ec2 create-image \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --name "My server" \
    --description "An AMI for my server"
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-abcdef01234567890"
}
```

For more information about specifying a block device mapping for your AMI, see Specifying a block device mapping for an AMI in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To create an AMI from an Amazon EBS-backed instance without reboot

The following `create-image` example creates an AMI and sets the --no-reboot parameter, so that the instance is not rebooted before the image is created.

```
aws ec2 create-image \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --name "My server" \
    --no-reboot
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-abcdef01234567890"
}
```

For more information about specifying a block device mapping for your AMI, see Specifying a block device mapping for an AMI in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To tag an AMI and snapshots on creation

The following `create-image` example creates an AMI, and tags the AMI and the snapshots with the same tag `cost-center=cc123`

```
aws ec2 create-image \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --name "My server" \
    --tag-specifications "ResourceType=image,Tags=[{Key=cost-
center,Value=cc123}]" "ResourceType=snapshot,Tags=[{Key=cost-
center,Value=cc123}]"
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "ImageId": "ami-abcdef01234567890"
}
```

For more information about tagging your resources on creation, see Add tags on resource creation in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an AMI with the specified name and description, from the specified instance. Amazon EC2 attempts to cleanly shut down the instance before creating the image, and restarts the instance on completion.

```
New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description "My web
 server AMI"
```

Example 2: This example creates an AMI with the specified name and description, from the specified instance. Amazon EC2 creates the image without shutting down and restarting the instance; therefore, file system integrity on the created image can't be guaranteed.

```
New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description "My web
 server AMI" -NoReboot $true
```

Example 3: This example creates an AMI with three volumes. The first volume is based on an Amazon EBS snapshot. The second volume is an empty 100 GiB Amazon EBS volume. The third volume is an instance store volume. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ebsBlock1 = @{SnapshotId="snap-1a2b3c4d"}
$ebsBlock2 = @{VolumeSize=100}

New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description
 "My web server AMI" -BlockDeviceMapping @( @{DeviceName="/dev/sdf";Ebs=
$ebsBlock1}, @{DeviceName="/dev/sdg";Ebs=$ebsBlock2}, @{DeviceName="/dev/
sdc";VirtualName="ephemeral0"})
```

- For API details, see CreateImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AMI with the specified name and description, from the specified instance. Amazon EC2 attempts to cleanly shut down the instance before creating the image, and restarts the instance on completion.

```
New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description "My web
 server AMI"
```

Example 2: This example creates an AMI with the specified name and description, from the specified instance. Amazon EC2 creates the image without shutting down and restarting the instance; therefore, file system integrity on the created image can't be guaranteed.

```
New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description "My web
 server AMI" -NoReboot $true
```

Example 3: This example creates an AMI with three volumes. The first volume is based on an Amazon EBS snapshot. The second volume is an empty 100 GiB Amazon EBS volume. The third volume is an instance store volume. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ebsBlock1 = @{SnapshotId="snap-1a2b3c4d"}
$ebsBlock2 = @{VolumeSize=100}

New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description
 "My web server AMI" -BlockDeviceMapping @( @{DeviceName="/dev/sdf";Ebs=
$ebsBlock1}, @{DeviceName="/dev/sdg";Ebs=$ebsBlock2}, @{DeviceName="/dev/
sdc";VirtualName="ephemeral0"})
```

- For API details, see CreateImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateInstanceExportTask` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateInstanceExportTask`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To export an instance

This example command creates a task to export the instance i-1234567890abcdef0 to the Amazon S3 bucket myexportbucket.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-instance-export-task --description "RHEL5 instance" --
instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --target-environment vmware --export-to-s3-
task DiskImageFormat=vmdk,ContainerFormat=ova,S3Bucket=myexportbucket,S3Prefix=RHEL5
```

Output:

```
{
    "ExportTask": {
        "State": "active",
        "InstanceExportDetails": {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "TargetEnvironment": "vmware"
        },
        "ExportToS3Task": {
            "S3Bucket": "myexportbucket",
            "S3Key": "RHEL5export-i-fh8sjjsq.ova",
            "DiskImageFormat": "vmdk",
            "ContainerFormat": "ova"
        },
        "Description": "RHEL5 instance",
        "ExportTaskId": "export-i-fh8sjjsq"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceExportTask in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example exports a stopped instance, `i-0800b00a00EXAMPLE`, as a virtual hard disk (VHD) to the S3 bucket `testbucket-export-instances-2019`. The target environment is `Microsoft`, and the region parameter is added because the instance is in the `us-east-1` region, while the user's default AWS Region is not us-east-1. To get the status of the export task, copy the `ExportTaskId` value from the results of this command, then run `Get-EC2ExportTask -ExportTaskId export_task_ID_from_results`.

```
New-EC2InstanceExportTask -InstanceId i-0800b00a00EXAMPLE -
ExportToS3Task_DiskImageFormat VHD -ExportToS3Task_S3Bucket "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
 -TargetEnvironment Microsoft -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Description           :
ExportTaskId          : export-i-077c73108aEXAMPLE
ExportToS3Task        : Amazon.EC2.Model.ExportToS3Task
InstanceExportDetails : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceExportDetails
State                 : active
StatusMessage         :
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceExportTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example exports a stopped instance, `i-0800b00a00EXAMPLE`, as a virtual hard disk (VHD) to the S3 bucket `testbucket-export-instances-2019`. The target environment is `Microsoft`, and the region parameter is added because the instance is in the `us-east-1` region, while the user's default AWS Region is not us-east-1. To get the status of the export task, copy the `ExportTaskId` value from the results of this command, then run `Get-EC2ExportTask -ExportTaskId export_task_ID_from_results`.

```
New-EC2InstanceExportTask -InstanceId i-0800b00a00EXAMPLE -
ExportToS3Task_DiskImageFormat VHD -ExportToS3Task_S3Bucket "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
 -TargetEnvironment Microsoft -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Description           :
ExportTaskId          : export-i-077c73108aEXAMPLE
ExportToS3Task        : Amazon.EC2.Model.ExportToS3Task
InstanceExportDetails : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceExportDetails
State                 : active
StatusMessage         :
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceExportTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateInternetGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateInternetGateway`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an internet gateway

The following `create-internet-gateway` example creates an internet gateway with the tag `Name=my-igw`.

```
aws ec2 create-internet-gateway \
    --tag-specifications ResourceType=internet-gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=my-
igw}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "InternetGateway": {
        "Attachments": [],
        "InternetGatewayId": "igw-0d0fb496b3994d755",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Name",
                "Value": "my-igw"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Internet gateways in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateInternetGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an Internet gateway.

```
New-EC2InternetGateway
```

Output:

```
Attachments    InternetGatewayId    Tags
-----------    -----------------    ----
{}             igw-1a2b3c4d         {}
```

- For API details, see CreateInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an Internet gateway.

```
New-EC2InternetGateway
```

Output:

```
Attachments    InternetGatewayId    Tags
-----------    -----------------    ----
{}             igw-1a2b3c4d         {}
```

- For API details, see CreateInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateKeyPair` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 key pair with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name for the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon EC2 key pair created.</returns>
    public async Task<KeyPair?> CreateKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateKeyPairRequest { KeyName = keyPairName, };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateKeyPairAsync(request);
```

```
            var kp = response.KeyPair;
            // Return the key pair so it can be saved if needed.

            // Wait until the key pair exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Checking for new KeyPair {keyPairName}...");
                var keyPairs = await DescribeKeyPairs(keyPairName);
                if (keyPairs.Any())
                {
                    return kp;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created KeyPair
{keyPairName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("KeyPair not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} already exists.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save KeyPair information to a temporary file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPair">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The full path to the temporary file.</returns>
```

```
    public string SaveKeyPair(KeyPair keyPair)
    {
        var tempPath = Path.GetTempPath();
        var tempFileName = $"{tempPath}\\{Path.GetRandomFileName()}";
        var pemFileName = Path.ChangeExtension(tempFileName, "pem");

        // Save the key pair to a file in a temporary folder.
        using var stream = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create);
        using var writer = new StreamWriter(stream);
        writer.WriteLine(keyPair.KeyMaterial);

        return pemFileName;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_create_keypair
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or
 2048-bit RSA key pair
# and writes it to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#       -f file_path - File to store the key pair.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function ec2_create_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name file_path response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_keypair"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or 2048-
bit RSA key pair"
    echo " and writes it to a file."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo "  -f file_path - File to store the key pair."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_path="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$file_path" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a file path with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  response=$(aws ec2 create-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --query 'KeyMaterial' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  if [[ -n "$file_path" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_path"
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
```

```
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance key pair.
/*!
  \param keyPairName: A name for a key pair.
  \param keyFilePath: File path where the credentials are stored. Ignored if it
 is an empty string;
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::EC2::createKeyPair(const Aws::String &keyPairName, const Aws::String
 &keyFilePath,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateKeyPairRequest request;
    request.SetKeyName(keyPairName);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateKeyPairOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.CreateKeyPair(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create key pair - "  << keyPairName << ". " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully created key pair named " <<
                  keyPairName << std::endl;
        if (!keyFilePath.empty()) {
            std::ofstream keyFile(keyFilePath.c_str());
            keyFile << outcome.GetResult().GetKeyMaterial();
            keyFile.close();
            std::cout << "Keys written to the file " <<
                      keyFilePath << std::endl;
        }

    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();

}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a key pair

This example creates a key pair named `MyKeyPair`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-key-pair --key-name MyKeyPair
```

The output is an ASCII version of the private key and key fingerprint. You need to save the key to a file.

For more information, see Using Key Pairs in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new key pair asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyName the name of the key pair to create
    * @param fileName the name of the file to write the key material to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of creating the key pair and writing the key material to a file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> createKeyPairAsync(String
keyName, String fileName) {
       CreateKeyPairRequest request = CreateKeyPairRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createKeyPair(request);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               try {
                   BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
FileWriter(fileName));
```

```
                    writer.write(response.keyMaterial());
                    writer.close();
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write key material to
 file: " + e.getMessage(), e);
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create key pair: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateKeyPairCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Creates an ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair with the specified name and in the
 specified PEM or PPK format.
 * Amazon EC2 stores the public key and displays the private key for you to save
 to a file.
 * @param {{ keyName: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ keyName }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new CreateKeyPairCommand({
    KeyName: keyName,
  });
```

```
  try {
    const { KeyMaterial, KeyName } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(KeyName);
    console.log(KeyMaterial);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Try another key name.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2KeyPair(keyNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        CreateKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyNameVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.createKeyPair(request)
        println("The key ID is ${response.keyPairId}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a key pair and captures the PEM-encoded RSA private key in a file with the specified name. When you are using PowerShell, the encoding must be set to ascii to generate a valid key. For more information, see Create, Display, and Delete Amazon EC2 Key Pairs (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-services-ec2-keypairs.html) in the AWS Command Line Interface User Guide.

```
(New-EC2KeyPair -KeyName "my-key-pair").KeyMaterial | Out-File -Encoding ascii -
FilePath C:\path\my-key-pair.pem
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a key pair and captures the PEM-encoded RSA private key in a file with the specified name. When you are using PowerShell, the encoding must be set to ascii to generate a valid key. For more information, see Create, Display, and Delete Amazon EC2 Key Pairs (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-services-ec2-keypairs.html) in the AWS Command Line Interface User Guide.

```
(New-EC2KeyPair -KeyName "my-key-pair").KeyMaterial | Out-File -Encoding ascii -
FilePath C:\path\my-key-pair.pem
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
```

```
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
 directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is
 stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
 Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2
 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def create(self, key_name: str) -> dict:
```

```
        """
        Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2
instance.
        The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
        again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        :return: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object that
represents the newly created key pair.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in creating the key pair, for
example, if a key pair with the same name already exists.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            self.key_pair = response
            self.key_file_path = os.path.join(
                self.key_file_dir.name, f"{self.key_pair['KeyName']}.pem"
            )
            with open(self.key_file_path, "w") as key_file:
                key_file.write(self.key_pair["KeyMaterial"])
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"A key pair called {key_name} already exists. "
                    "Please choose a different name for your key pair "
                    "or delete the existing key pair before creating."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.key_pair
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This code example does the following:
# 1. Creates a key pair in Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
# 2. Displays information about available key pairs.
# 3. Deletes the key pair.

require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param key_pair_name [String] The name for the key pair and private
#   key file.
# @return [Boolean] true if the key pair and private key file were
#   created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless key_pair_created?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-key-pair'
#   )
def key_pair_created?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
  key_pair = ec2_client.create_key_pair(key_name: key_pair_name)
  puts "Created key pair '#{key_pair.key_name}' with fingerprint " \
    "'#{key_pair.key_fingerprint}' and ID '#{key_pair.key_pair_id}'."
  filename = File.join(Dir.home, "#{key_pair_name}.pem")
  File.open(filename, 'w') { |file| file.write(key_pair.key_material) }
  puts "Private key file saved locally as '#{filename}'."
  true
rescue Aws::EC2::Errors::InvalidKeyPairDuplicate
  puts "Error creating key pair: a key pair named '#{key_pair_name}' " \
    'already exists.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating key pair or saving private key file: #{e.message}"
```

```
  false
end

# Displays information about available key pairs in
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @example
#   describe_key_pairs(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)
  result = ec2_client.describe_key_pairs
  if result.key_pairs.count.zero?
    puts 'No key pairs found.'
  else
    puts 'Key pair names:'
    result.key_pairs.each do |key_pair|
      puts key_pair.key_name
    end
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about key pairs: #{e.message}"
end

# Deletes a key pair in Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The key pair to delete.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param key_pair_name [String] The name of the key pair to delete.
# @return [Boolean] true if the key pair was deleted; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless key_pair_deleted?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-key-pair'
#   )
def key_pair_deleted?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
  ec2_client.delete_key_pair(key_name: key_pair_name)
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error deleting key pair: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

```
# Example usage:
def run_me
  key_pair_name = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-key-pairs.rb KEY_PAIR_NAME REGION'
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-key-pairs.rb my-key-pair us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    key_pair_name = 'my-key-pair'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    key_pair_name = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts 'Displaying existing key pair names before creating this key pair...'
  describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Creating key pair...'
  unless key_pair_created?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
    puts 'Stopping program.'
    exit 1
  end

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Displaying existing key pair names after creating this key pair...'
  describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Deleting key pair...'
  unless key_pair_deleted?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
    puts 'Stopping program. You must delete the key pair yourself.'
    exit 1
  end
  puts 'Key pair deleted.'
```

```
  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Now that the key pair is deleted, ' \
    'also deleting the related private key pair file...'
  filename = File.join(Dir.home, "#{key_pair_name}.pem")
  File.delete(filename)
  if File.exist?(filename)
    puts "Could not delete file at '#{filename}'. You must delete it yourself."
  else
    puts 'File deleted.'
  end

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Displaying existing key pair names after deleting this key pair...'
  describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Rust implementation that calls the EC2 Client's create_key_pair and extracts the returned material.

```
    pub async fn create_key_pair(&self, name: String) -> Result<(KeyPairInfo,
 String), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating key pair {name}");
        let output = self.client.create_key_pair().key_name(name).send().await?;
        let info = KeyPairInfo::builder()
            .set_key_name(output.key_name)
            .set_key_fingerprint(output.key_fingerprint)
```

```
            .set_key_pair_id(output.key_pair_id)
            .build();
        let material = output
            .key_material
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Create Key Pair has no key
material"))?;
        Ok((info, material))
    }
```

A function that calls the create_key impl and securely saves the PEM private key.

```
    /// Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2
instance.
    /// The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
    /// again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.
    ///
    /// :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        util: &Util,
        key_name: String,
    ) -> Result<KeyPairInfo, EC2Error> {
        let (key_pair, material) =
ec2.create_key_pair(key_name.clone()).await.map_err(|e| {
            self.key_pair =
KeyPairInfo::builder().key_name(key_name.clone()).build();
            e.add_message(format!("Couldn't create key {key_name}"))
        })?;

        let path = self.key_file_dir.join(format!("{key_name}.pem"));

        // Save the key_pair information immediately, so it can get cleaned up if
write_secure fails.
        self.key_file_path = Some(path.clone());
        self.key_pair = key_pair.clone();

        util.write_secure(&key_name, &path, material)?;

        Ok(key_pair)
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->createkeypair( iv_keyname = iv_key_name ).
                 " oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Amazon EC2 key pair created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2
```

```
    /// Create a new RSA key pair and save the private key to a randomly-named
    /// file in the temporary directory.
    ///
    /// - Parameter name: The name of the key pair to create.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the newly created `.pem` file or `nil` if unable
    ///   to create the key pair.
    func createKeyPair(name: String) async -> URL? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createKeyPair(
                input: CreateKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: name
                )
            )

            guard let keyMaterial = output.keyMaterial else {
                return nil
            }

            // Build the URL of the temporary private key file.

            let fileURL = URL.temporaryDirectory
                                 .appendingPathComponent(name)
                                 .appendingPathExtension("pem")

            do {
                try keyMaterial.write(to: fileURL, atomically: true, encoding:
String.Encoding.utf8)
                return fileURL
            } catch {
                print("*** Failed to write the private key.")
                return nil
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the key pair.")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateLaunchTemplate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLaunchTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Build and manage a resilient service
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling.
   /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that
runs after
   /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and
starts a Python
   /// web server on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
   /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to
create and attach to the profile.</param>
   /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
   public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
   {
       try
       {
           await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
```

```
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await
_amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a launch template

The following `create-launch-template` example creates a launch template that specifies the subnet in which to launch the instance , assigns a public IP address and an IPv6 address to the instance, and creates a tag for the instance.

```
aws ec2 create-launch-template \
    --launch-template-name TemplateForWebServer \
    --version-description WebVersion1 \
    --launch-template-data '{"NetworkInterfaces":
[{"AssociatePublicIpAddress":true,"DeviceIndex":0,"Ipv6AddressCount":1,"SubnetId":"subnet
[{"ResourceType":"instance","Tags":[{"Key":"purpose","Value":"webserver"}]}]}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "LaunchTemplate": {
        "LatestVersionNumber": 1,
        "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-01238c059e3466abc",
        "LaunchTemplateName": "TemplateForWebServer",
        "DefaultVersionNumber": 1,
        "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob",
        "CreateTime": "2019-01-27T09:13:24.000Z"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Launching an Instance from a Launch Template in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*. For information about quoting JSON-formatted parameters, see Quoting Strings in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a launch template for Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling

The following `create-launch-template` example creates a launch template with multiple tags and a block device mapping to specify an additional EBS volume when an instance launches. Specify a value for `Groups` that corresponds to security groups for the VPC that your Auto Scaling group will launch instances into. Specify the VPC and subnets as properties of the Auto Scaling group.

```
aws ec2 create-launch-template \
    --launch-template-name TemplateForAutoScaling \
    --version-description AutoScalingVersion1 \
    --launch-template-data '{"NetworkInterfaces":
[{"DeviceIndex":0,"AssociatePublicIpAddress":true,"Groups":
["sg-7c227019,sg-903004f8"],"DeleteOnTermination":true}],"ImageId":"ami-
b42209de","InstanceType":"m4.large","TagSpecifications":
[{"ResourceType":"instance","Tags":[{"Key":"environment","Value":"production"},
{"Key":"purpose","Value":"webserver"}]},{"ResourceType":"volume","Tags":
[{"Key":"environment","Value":"production"},{"Key":"cost-
center","Value":"cc123"}]}],"BlockDeviceMappings":[{"DeviceName":"/dev/
sda1","Ebs":{"VolumeSize":100}}]}' --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "LaunchTemplate": {
        "LatestVersionNumber": 1,
        "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-0123c79c33a54e0abc",
        "LaunchTemplateName": "TemplateForAutoScaling",
        "DefaultVersionNumber": 1,
        "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob",
        "CreateTime": "2019-04-30T18:16:06.000Z"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Launch Template for an Auto Scaling Group in the *Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling User Guide*. For information about quoting JSON-formatted parameters, see Quoting Strings in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a launch template that specifies encryption of EBS volumes

The following `create-launch-template` example creates a launch template that includes encrypted EBS volumes created from an unencrypted snapshot. It also tags the volumes during creation. If encryption by default is disabled, you must specify the `"Encrypted"` option as shown in the following example. If you use the `"KmsKeyId"` option to specify a customer managed CMK, you also must specify the `"Encrypted"` option even if encryption by default is enabled.

```
aws ec2 create-launch-template \
  --launch-template-name TemplateForEncryption \
  --launch-template-data file://config.json
```

Contents of `config.json`:

```
{
    "BlockDeviceMappings":[
        {
            "DeviceName":"/dev/sda1",
            "Ebs":{
                "VolumeType":"gp2",
                "DeleteOnTermination":true,
                "SnapshotId":"snap-066877671789bd71b",
                "Encrypted":true,
                "KmsKeyId":"arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:012345678910:key/abcd1234-
a123-456a-a12b-a123b4cd56ef"
            }
        }
    ],
    "ImageId":"ami-00068cd7555f543d5",
    "InstanceType":"c5.large",
    "TagSpecifications":[
        {
            "ResourceType":"volume",
            "Tags":[
                {
                    "Key":"encrypted",
                    "Value":"yes"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "LaunchTemplate": {
        "LatestVersionNumber": 1,
        "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-0d5bd51bcf8530abc",
        "LaunchTemplateName": "TemplateForEncryption",
        "DefaultVersionNumber": 1,
        "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob",
        "CreateTime": "2020-01-07T19:08:36.000Z"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Restoring an Amazon EBS Volume from a Snapshot and Encryption by Default in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
```

```
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example creates a launch template that includes an instance profile that grants specific permissions to the instance, and a user data Bash script that runs on the instance after it starts.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
```

```
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling. The
```

```
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts
a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a
permissions policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance
profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
```

```
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateNetworkAcl` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateNetworkAcl`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a network ACL

This example creates a network ACL for the specified VPC.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-network-acl --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "NetworkAcl": {
        "Associations": [],
        "NetworkAclId": "acl-5fb85d36",
        "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2",
        "Tags": [],
        "Entries": [
            {
                "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                "RuleNumber": 32767,
                "Protocol": "-1",
                "Egress": true,
                "RuleAction": "deny"
            },
            {
                "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                "RuleNumber": 32767,
                "Protocol": "-1",
                "Egress": false,
                "RuleAction": "deny"
            }
        ],
        "IsDefault": false
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a network ACL for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2NetworkAcl -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations : {}
Entries      : {Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry}
IsDefault    : False
NetworkAclId : acl-12345678
```

```
Tags         : {}
VpcId        : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a network ACL for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2NetworkAcl -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations : {}
Entries      : {Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry}
IsDefault    : False
NetworkAclId : acl-12345678
Tags         : {}
VpcId        : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateNetworkAclEntry` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateNetworkAclEntry`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a network ACL entry

This example creates an entry for the specified network ACL. The rule allows ingress traffic from any IPv4 address (0.0.0.0/0) on UDP port 53 (DNS) into any associated subnet. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-network-acl-entry --network-acl-id acl-5fb85d36 --ingress --rule-
number 100 --protocol udp --port-range From=53,To=53 --cidr-block 0.0.0.0/0 --
rule-action allow
```

This example creates a rule for the specified network ACL that allows ingress traffic from any IPv6 address (::/0) on TCP port 80 (HTTP).

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-network-acl-entry --network-acl-id acl-5fb85d36 --ingress --rule-
number 120 --protocol tcp --port-range From=80,To=80 --ipv6-cidr-block ::/0 --
rule-action allow
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAclEntry in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an entry for the specified network ACL. The rule allows inbound traffic from anywhere (0.0.0.0/0) on UDP port 53 (DNS) into any associated subnet.

```
New-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber
 100 -Protocol 17 -PortRange_From 53 -PortRange_To 53 -CidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0 -
RuleAction allow
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an entry for the specified network ACL. The rule allows inbound traffic from anywhere (0.0.0.0/0) on UDP port 53 (DNS) into any associated subnet.

```
New-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber
 100 -Protocol 17 -PortRange_From 53 -PortRange_To 53 -CidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0 -
RuleAction allow
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateNetworkInterface` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateNetworkInterface`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To specify an IPv4 address for a network interface

The following `create-network-interface` example creates a network interface for the specified subnet with the specified primary IPv4 address.

```
aws ec2 create-network-interface \
    --subnet-id subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333 \
    --description "my network interface" \
    --groups sg-09dfba7ed20cda78b \
    --private-ip-address 10.0.8.17
```

Output:

```
{
    "NetworkInterface": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "Description": "my network interface",
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupName": "my-security-group",
                "GroupId": "sg-09dfba7ed20cda78b"
            }
        ],
        "InterfaceType": "interface",
        "Ipv6Addresses": [],
        "MacAddress": "06:6a:0f:9a:49:37",
        "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-0492b355f0cf3b3f8",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-18.us-west-2.compute.internal",
        "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.17",
        "PrivateIpAddresses": [
            {
                "Primary": true,
                "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-17.us-west-2.compute.internal",
                "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.17"
```

```
            }
        ],
        "RequesterId": "AIDA4Z3Y7GSXTMEXAMPLE",
        "RequesterManaged": false,
        "SourceDestCheck": true,
        "Status": "pending",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333",
        "TagSet": [],
        "VpcId": "vpc-02723a0feeeb9d57b"
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create a network interface with an IPv4 address and an IPv6 address

The following `create-network-interface` example creates a network interface for the specified subnet with an IPv4 address and an IPv6 address that are selected by Amazon EC2.

```
aws ec2 create-network-interface \
    --subnet-id subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333 \
    --description "my dual stack network interface" \
    --ipv6-address-count 1 \
    --groups sg-09dfba7ed20cda78b
```

Output:

```
{
    "NetworkInterface": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "Description": "my dual stack network interface",
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupName": "my-security-group",
                "GroupId": "sg-09dfba7ed20cda78b"
            }
        ],
        "InterfaceType": "interface",
        "Ipv6Addresses": [
            {
                "Ipv6Address": "2600:1f13:cfe:3650:a1dc:237c:393a:4ba7",
                "IsPrimaryIpv6": false
            }
        ],
```

```
        "MacAddress": "06:b8:68:d2:b2:2d",
        "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-05da417453f9a84bf",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-18.us-west-2.compute.internal",
        "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.18",
        "PrivateIpAddresses": [
            {
                "Primary": true,
                "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-18.us-west-2.compute.internal",
                "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.18"
            }
        ],
        "RequesterId": "AIDA4Z3Y7GSXTMEXAMPLE",
        "RequesterManaged": false,
        "SourceDestCheck": true,
        "Status": "pending",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333",
        "TagSet": [],
        "VpcId": "vpc-02723a0feeeb9d57b",
        "Ipv6Address": "2600:1f13:cfe:3650:a1dc:237c:393a:4ba7"
    }
}
```

Example 3: To create a network interface with connection tracking configuration options

The following `create-network-interface` example creates a network interface and configures the idle connection tracking timeouts.

```
aws ec2 create-network-interface \
    --subnet-id subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333 \
    --groups sg-02e57dbcfe0331c1b \
    --connection-tracking-specification TcpEstablishedTimeout=86400,UdpTimeout=60
```

Output:

```
{
    "NetworkInterface": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "ConnectionTrackingConfiguration": {
            "TcpEstablishedTimeout": 86400,
            "UdpTimeout": 60
        },
        "Description": "",
```

```
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupName": "my-security-group",
                "GroupId": "sg-02e57dbcfe0331c1b"
            }
        ],
        "InterfaceType": "interface",
        "Ipv6Addresses": [],
        "MacAddress": "06:4c:53:de:6d:91",
        "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-0c133586e08903d0b",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-94.us-west-2.compute.internal",
        "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.94",
        "PrivateIpAddresses": [
            {
                "Primary": true,
                "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-94.us-west-2.compute.internal",
                "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.94"
            }
        ],
        "RequesterId": "AIDA4Z3Y7GSXTMEXAMPLE",
        "RequesterManaged": false,
        "SourceDestCheck": true,
        "Status": "pending",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333",
        "TagSet": [],
        "VpcId": "vpc-02723a0feeeb9d57b"
    }
}
```

Example 4: To create an Elastic Fabric Adapter

The following `create-network-interface` example creates an EFA.

```
aws ec2 create-network-interface \
    --interface-type efa \
    --subnet-id subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333 \
    --description "my efa" \
    --groups sg-02e57dbcfe0331c1b
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "NetworkInterface": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "Description": "my efa",
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupName": "my-efa-sg",
                "GroupId": "sg-02e57dbcfe0331c1b"
            }
        ],
        "InterfaceType": "efa",
        "Ipv6Addresses": [],
        "MacAddress": "06:d7:a4:f7:4d:57",
        "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-034acc2885e862b65",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-180.us-west-2.compute.internal",
        "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.180",
        "PrivateIpAddresses": [
            {
                "Primary": true,
                "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-8-180.us-west-2.compute.internal",
                "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.8.180"
            }
        ],
        "RequesterId": "AIDA4Z3Y7GSXTMEXAMPLE",
        "RequesterManaged": false,
        "SourceDestCheck": true,
        "Status": "pending",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-00a24d0d67acf6333",
        "TagSet": [],
        "VpcId": "vpc-02723a0feeeb9d57b"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Elastic network interfaces in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateNetworkInterface in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified network interface.

```
New-EC2NetworkInterface -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -Description "my network
 interface" -Group sg-12345678 -PrivateIpAddress 10.0.0.17
```

Output:

```
Association        :
Attachment         :
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2c
Description        : my network interface
Groups             : {my-security-group}
MacAddress         : 0a:72:bc:1a:cd:7f
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-12345678
OwnerId            : 123456789012
PrivateDnsName     : ip-10-0-0-17.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress   : 10.0.0.17
PrivateIpAddresses : {}
RequesterId        :
RequesterManaged   : False
SourceDestCheck    : True
Status             : pending
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
TagSet             : {}
VpcId              : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified network interface.

```
New-EC2NetworkInterface -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -Description "my network
 interface" -Group sg-12345678 -PrivateIpAddress 10.0.0.17
```

Output:

```
Association        :
Attachment         :
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2c
Description        : my network interface
Groups             : {my-security-group}
MacAddress         : 0a:72:bc:1a:cd:7f
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-12345678
```

```
OwnerId            : 123456789012
PrivateDnsName     : ip-10-0-0-17.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress   : 10.0.0.17
PrivateIpAddresses : {}
RequesterId        :
RequesterManaged   : False
SourceDestCheck    : True
Status             : pending
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
TagSet             : {}
VpcId              : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreatePlacementGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePlacementGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a placement group

This example command creates a placement group with the specified name.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-placement-group --group-name my-cluster --strategy cluster
```

To create a partition placement group

This example command creates a partition placement group named `HDFS-Group-A` with five partitions.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-placement-group --group-name HDFS-Group-A --strategy partition --
partition-count 5
```

- For API details, see CreatePlacementGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a placement group with the specified name.

```
New-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group -Strategy cluster
```

- For API details, see CreatePlacementGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a placement group with the specified name.

```
New-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group -Strategy cluster
```

- For API details, see CreatePlacementGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateRoute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRoute`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a route

This example creates a route for the specified route table. The route matches all IPv4 traffic (`0.0.0.0/0`) and routes it to the specified Internet gateway. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id rtb-22574640 --destination-cidr-
block 0.0.0.0/0 --gateway-id igw-c0a643a9
```

This example command creates a route in route table rtb-g8ff4ea2. The route matches traffic for the IPv4 CIDR block 10.0.0.0/16 and routes it to VPC peering connection, pcx-111aaa22. This route enables traffic to be directed to the peer VPC in the VPC peering connection. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id rtb-g8ff4ea2 --destination-cidr-
block 10.0.0.0/16 --vpc-peering-connection-id pcx-1a2b3c4d
```

This example creates a route in the specified route table that matches all IPv6 traffic (`::/0`) and routes it to the specified egress-only Internet gateway.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id rtb-dce620b8 --destination-ipv6-cidr-
block ::/0 --egress-only-internet-gateway-id eigw-01eadbd45ecd7943f
```

- For API details, see CreateRoute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified route for the specified route table. The route matches all traffic and sends it to the specified Internet gateway.

```
New-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0 -
GatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see CreateRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified route for the specified route table. The route matches all traffic and sends it to the specified Internet gateway.

```
New-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0 -
GatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see CreateRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateRouteTable` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRouteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a route table

This example creates a route table for the specified VPC.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2
```

Output:

```
{
    "RouteTable": {
        "Associations": [],
```

```
        "RouteTableId": "rtb-22574640",
        "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2",
        "PropagatingVgws": [],
        "Tags": [],
        "Routes": [
            {
                "GatewayId": "local",
                "DestinationCidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                "State": "active"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a route table for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2RouteTable -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations    : {}
PropagatingVgws : {}
Routes          : {}
RouteTableId    : rtb-1a2b3c4d
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a route table for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2RouteTable -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations    : {}
PropagatingVgws : {}
Routes          : {}
RouteTableId    : rtb-1a2b3c4d
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Prerequisites:
#
# - A VPC in Amazon VPC.
# - A subnet in that VPC.
# - A gateway attached to that subnet.
#
# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized
#   Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource object.
# @param vpc_id [String] The ID of the VPC for the route table.
# @param subnet_id [String] The ID of the subnet for the route table.
# @param gateway_id [String] The ID of the gateway for the route.
# @param destination_cidr_block [String] The destination CIDR block
#   for the route.
# @param tag_key [String] The key portion of the tag for the route table.
# @param tag_value [String] The value portion of the tag for the route table.
# @return [Boolean] true if the route table was created and associated;
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless route_table_created_and_associated?(
#     Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
```

```
#     'vpc-0b6f769731EXAMPLE',
#     'subnet-03d9303b57EXAMPLE',
#     'igw-06ca90c011EXAMPLE',
#     '0.0.0.0/0',
#     'my-key',
#     'my-value'
#   )
def route_table_created_and_associated?(
  ec2_resource,
  vpc_id,
  subnet_id,
  gateway_id,
  destination_cidr_block,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  route_table = ec2_resource.create_route_table(vpc_id: vpc_id)
  puts "Created route table with ID '#{route_table.id}'."
  route_table.create_tags(
    tags: [
      {
        key: tag_key,
        value: tag_value
      }
    ]
  )
  puts 'Added tags to route table.'
  route_table.create_route(
    destination_cidr_block: destination_cidr_block,
    gateway_id: gateway_id
  )
  puts 'Created route with destination CIDR block ' \
    "'#{destination_cidr_block}' and associated with gateway " \
    "with ID '#{gateway_id}'."
  route_table.associate_with_subnet(subnet_id: subnet_id)
  puts "Associated route table with subnet with ID '#{subnet_id}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating or associating route table: #{e.message}"
  puts 'If the route table was created but not associated, you should ' \
    'clean up by deleting the route table.'
  false
end
```

```
# Example usage:
def run_me
  vpc_id = ''
  subnet_id = ''
  gateway_id = ''
  destination_cidr_block = ''
  tag_key = ''
  tag_value = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-route-table.rb ' \
      'VPC_ID SUBNET_ID GATEWAY_ID DESTINATION_CIDR_BLOCK ' \
      'TAG_KEY TAG_VALUE REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-route-table.rb ' \
      'vpc-0b6f769731EXAMPLE subnet-03d9303b57EXAMPLE igw-06ca90c011EXAMPLE ' \
      "'0.0.0.0/0' my-key my-value us-west-2"
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    vpc_id = 'vpc-0b6f769731EXAMPLE'
    subnet_id = 'subnet-03d9303b57EXAMPLE'
    gateway_id = 'igw-06ca90c011EXAMPLE'
    destination_cidr_block = '0.0.0.0/0'
    tag_key = 'my-key'
    tag_value = 'my-value'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    vpc_id = ARGV[0]
    subnet_id = ARGV[1]
    gateway_id = ARGV[2]
    destination_cidr_block = ARGV[3]
    tag_key = ARGV[4]
    tag_value = ARGV[5]
    region = ARGV[6]
  end

  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)

  if route_table_created_and_associated?(
    ec2_resource,
```

```
    vpc_id,
    subnet_id,
    gateway_id,
    destination_cidr_block,
    tag_key,
    tag_value
  )
    puts 'Route table created and associated.'
  else
    puts 'Route table not created or not associated.'
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `CreateSecurityGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 security group with a specified name and
 description.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new security group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupDescription">A description of the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The group Id of the new security group.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateSecurityGroup(string groupName, string
 groupDescription)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(
                new CreateSecurityGroupRequest(groupName, groupDescription));

            // Wait until the security group exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                var groups = await DescribeSecurityGroups(response.GroupId);
                if (groups.Any())
                {
                    return response.GroupId;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created group {groupName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("security group not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "ResourceAlreadyExists")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group with the name {groupName} already exists.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the security group.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_create_security_group
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security
 group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n security_group_name - The name of the security group.
#       -d security_group_description - The description of the security group.
#
# Returns:
#       The ID of the created security group, or an error message if the
 operation fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_create_security_group() {
  local security_group_name security_group_description response
```

```
# Function to display usage information
function usage() {
  echo "function ec2_create_security_group"
  echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
  echo "  -n security_group_name - The name of the security group."
  echo "  -d security_group_description - The description of the security
group."
  echo ""
}

# Parse the command-line arguments
while getopts "n:d:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) security_group_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    d) security_group_description="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

# Validate the input parameters
if [[ -z "$security_group_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group name with the -n
parameter."
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$security_group_description" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group description with the -d
parameter."
  return 1
fi

# Create the security group
response=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
```

```
    --group-name "$security_group_name" \
    --description "$security_group_description" \
    --query "GroupId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-security-group operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create a security group.
/*!
  \param groupName: A security group name.
  \param description: A description.
  \param vpcID: A virtual private cloud (VPC) ID.
  \param[out] groupIDResult: A string to receive the group ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::createSecurityGroup(const Aws::String &groupName,
                                      const Aws::String &description,
                                      const Aws::String &vpcID,
```

```
                                        Aws::String &groupIDResult,
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateSecurityGroupRequest request;

    request.SetGroupName(groupName);
    request.SetDescription(description);
    request.SetVpcId(vpcID);

    const Aws::EC2::Model::CreateSecurityGroupOutcome outcome =
            ec2Client.CreateSecurityGroup(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create security group:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::cout << "Successfully created security group named " << groupName <<
              std::endl;


    groupIDResult = outcome.GetResult().GetGroupId();

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a security group for EC2-Classic

This example creates a security group named `MySecurityGroup`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-security-group --group-name MySecurityGroup --description "My
 security group"
```

Output:

```
{
    "GroupId": "sg-903004f8"
}
```

To create a security group for EC2-VPC

This example creates a security group named `MySecurityGroup` for the specified VPC.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-security-group --group-name MySecurityGroup --description "My
 security group" --vpc-id vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
{
    "GroupId": "sg-903004f8"
}
```

For more information, see Using Security Groups in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Creates a new security group asynchronously with the specified group name,
description, and VPC ID. It also
    * authorizes inbound traffic on ports 80 and 22 from the specified IP
address.
    *
    * @param groupName    the name of the security group to create
    * @param groupDesc    the description of the security group
    * @param vpcId        the ID of the VPC in which to create the security
group
    * @param myIpAddress  the IP address from which to allow inbound traffic
(e.g., "192.168.1.1/0" to allow traffic from
    *                     any IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet)
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the ID of the
created security group
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure creating the security
group or authorizing the inbound traffic
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSecurityGroupAsync(String groupName,
String groupDesc, String vpcId, String myIpAddress) {
       CreateSecurityGroupRequest createRequest =
CreateSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
           .groupName(groupName)
           .description(groupDesc)
           .vpcId(vpcId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createSecurityGroup(createRequest)
           .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
               String groupId = createResponse.groupId();
               IpRange ipRange = IpRange.builder()
                   .cidrIp(myIpAddress + "/32")
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(80)
                   .fromPort(80)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm2 = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(22)
                   .fromPort(22)
```

```
                    .ipRanges(ipRange)
                    .build();

                AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest authRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                    .groupName(groupName)
                    .ipPermissions(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
                    .build();

                return
getAsyncClient().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
                    .thenApply(authResponse -> groupId);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception instanceof CompletionException &&
exception.getCause() instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw (Ec2Exception) exception.getCause();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create security
group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateSecurityGroupCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
```

```
 * Creates a security group.
 * @param {{ groupName: string, description: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupName, description }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new CreateSecurityGroupCommand({
    // Up to 255 characters in length. Cannot start with sg-.
    GroupName: groupName,
    // Up to 255 characters in length.
    Description: description,
  });

  try {
    const { GroupId } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(GroupId);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2SecurityGroup(
    groupNameVal: String?,
    groupDescVal: String?,
    vpcIdVal: String?,
): String? {
```

```
    val request =
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupName = groupNameVal
            description = groupDescVal
            vpcId = vpcIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val resp = ec2.createSecurityGroup(request)
        val ipRange =
            IpRange {
                cidrIp = "0.0.0.0/0"
            }

        val ipPerm =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 80
                fromPort = 80
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val ipPerm2 =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 22
                fromPort = 22
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val authRequest =
            AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest {
                groupName = groupNameVal
                ipPermissions = listOf(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
            }
        ec2.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
        println("Successfully added ingress policy to Security Group
 $groupNameVal")
        return resp.groupId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a security group for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Description "my security
 group" -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
sg-12345678
```

Example 2: This example creates a security group for EC2-Classic.

```
New-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Description "my security
 group"
```

Output:

```
sg-45678901
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a security group for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Description "my security
 group" -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
sg-12345678
```

Example 2: This example creates a security group for EC2-Classic.

```
New-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Description "my security
 group"
```

Output:

```
sg-45678901
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a
 high-level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(self, group_name: str, group_description: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a security group in the default virtual private cloud (VPC) of
the current account.

        :param group_name: The name of the security group to create.
        :param group_description: The description of the security group to
create.
        :return: The ID of the newly created security group.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling
for ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_security_group(
                GroupName=group_name, Description=group_description
            )
            self.security_group = response["GroupId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExists":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{group_name}' already exists. Please choose
a different name."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.security_group
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This code example does the following:
# 1. Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
# 2. Adds inbound rules to the security group.
# 3. Displays information about available security groups.
# 4. Deletes the security group.

require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A VPC in Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC).
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon EC2 client.
# @param group_name [String] A name for the security group.
# @param description [String] A description for the security group.
# @param vpc_id [String] The ID of the VPC for the security group.
# @return [String] The ID of security group that was created.
# @example
#   puts create_security_group(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-security-group',
#     'This is my security group.',
#     'vpc-6713dfEX'
#   )
def create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name, description, vpc_id)
  security_group = ec2_client.create_security_group(
    group_name: group_name,
    description: description,
```

```
    vpc_id: vpc_id
  )
  puts "Created security group '#{group_name}' with ID " \
    "'#{security_group.group_id}' in VPC with ID '#{vpc_id}'."
  security_group.group_id
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating security group: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end

# Adds an inbound rule to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# security group.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The security group.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized Amazon EC2 client.
# @param security_group_id [String] The ID of the security group.
# @param ip_protocol [String] The network protocol for the inbound rule.
# @param from_port [String] The originating port for the inbound rule.
# @param to_port [String] The destination port for the inbound rule.
# @param cidr_ip_range [String] The CIDR IP range for the inbound rule.
# @return
# @example
#   exit 1 unless security_group_ingress_authorized?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'sg-030a858e078f1b9EX',
#     'tcp',
#     '80',
#     '80',
#     '0.0.0.0/0'
#   )
def security_group_ingress_authorized?(
  ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol, from_port, to_port, cidr_ip_range
)
  ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
    group_id: security_group_id,
    ip_permissions: [
      {
        ip_protocol: ip_protocol,
        from_port: from_port,
        to_port: to_port,
        ip_ranges: [
```

```
          {
            cidr_ip: cidr_ip_range
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  )
  puts "Added inbound rule to security group '#{security_group_id}' for protocol
 " \
    "'#{ip_protocol}' from port '#{from_port}' to port '#{to_port}' " \
    "with CIDR IP range '#{cidr_ip_range}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error adding inbound rule to security group: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Refactored method to simplify complexity for describing security group
 permissions
def format_port_information(perm)
  from_port_str = perm.from_port == '-1' || perm.from_port == -1 ? 'All' :
 perm.from_port.to_s
  to_port_str = perm.to_port == '-1' || perm.to_port == -1 ? 'All' :
 perm.to_port.to_s
  { from_port: from_port_str, to_port: to_port_str }
end

# Displays information about a security group's IP permissions set in
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
def describe_security_group_permissions(perm)
  ports = format_port_information(perm)

  print "  Protocol: #{perm.ip_protocol == '-1' ? 'All' : perm.ip_protocol}"
  print ", From: #{ports[:from_port]}, To: #{ports[:to_port]}"

  print ", CIDR IPv6: #{perm.ipv_6_ranges[0].cidr_ipv_6}" if perm.key?
(:ipv_6_ranges) && perm.ipv_6_ranges.count.positive?

  print ", CIDR IPv4: #{perm.ip_ranges[0].cidr_ip}" if perm.key?(:ip_ranges) &&
 perm.ip_ranges.count.positive?
  print "\n"
end

# Displays information about available security groups in
```

```
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
def describe_security_groups(ec2_client)
  response = ec2_client.describe_security_groups

  if response.security_groups.count.positive?
    response.security_groups.each do |sg|
      display_group_details(sg)
    end
  else
    puts 'No security groups found.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about security groups: #{e.message}"
end

# Helper method to display the details of security groups
def display_group_details(sg)
  puts '-' * (sg.group_name.length + 13)
  puts "Name:        #{sg.group_name}"
  puts "Description: #{sg.description}"
  puts "Group ID:    #{sg.group_id}"
  puts "Owner ID:    #{sg.owner_id}"
  puts "VPC ID:      #{sg.vpc_id}"

  display_group_tags(sg.tags) if sg.tags.count.positive?
  display_group_permissions(sg)
end

def display_group_tags(tags)
  puts 'Tags:'
  tags.each do |tag|
    puts "  Key: #{tag.key}, Value: #{tag.value}"
  end
end

def display_group_permissions(sg)
  if sg.ip_permissions.count.positive?
    puts 'Inbound rules:'
    sg.ip_permissions.each do |p|
      describe_security_group_permissions(p)
    end
  end

  return if sg.ip_permissions_egress.empty?
```

```
  puts 'Outbound rules:'
  sg.ip_permissions_egress.each do |p|
    describe_security_group_permissions(p)
  end
end

# Deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# security group.
def security_group_deleted?(ec2_client, security_group_id)
  ec2_client.delete_security_group(group_id: security_group_id)
  puts "Deleted security group '#{security_group_id}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error deleting security group: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage with refactored run_me to reduce complexity
def run_me
  group_name, description, vpc_id, ip_protocol_http, from_port_http,
 to_port_http, \
  cidr_ip_range_http, ip_protocol_ssh, from_port_ssh, to_port_ssh, \
  cidr_ip_range_ssh, region = process_arguments
  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  security_group_id = attempt_create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name,
 description, vpc_id)
  security_group_exists = security_group_id != 'Error'

  if security_group_exists
    add_inbound_rules(ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol_http,
 from_port_http, to_port_http, cidr_ip_range_http)
    add_inbound_rules(ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol_ssh,
 from_port_ssh, to_port_ssh, cidr_ip_range_ssh)
  end

  describe_security_groups(ec2_client)
  attempt_delete_security_group(ec2_client, security_group_id) if
 security_group_exists
end

def process_arguments
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
```

```
    display_help
    exit 1
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    default_values
  else
    ARGV
  end
end

def attempt_create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name, description, vpc_id)
  puts 'Attempting to create security group...'
  security_group_id = create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name, description,
 vpc_id)
  puts 'Could not create security group. Skipping this step.' if
 security_group_id == 'Error'
  security_group_id
end

def add_inbound_rules(ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol, from_port,
 to_port, cidr_ip_range)
  puts 'Attempting to add inbound rules to security group...'
  return if security_group_ingress_authorized?(ec2_client, security_group_id,
 ip_protocol, from_port, to_port,
                                               cidr_ip_range)

  puts 'Could not add inbound rule to security group. Skipping this step.'
end

def attempt_delete_security_group(ec2_client, security_group_id)
  puts "\nAttempting to delete security group..."
  return if security_group_deleted?(ec2_client, security_group_id)

  puts 'Could not delete security group. You must delete it yourself.'
end

def display_help
  puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-security-group.rb ' \
    'GROUP_NAME DESCRIPTION VPC_ID IP_PROTOCOL_1 FROM_PORT_1 TO_PORT_1 ' \
    'CIDR_IP_RANGE_1 IP_PROTOCOL_2 FROM_PORT_2 TO_PORT_2 ' \
    'CIDR_IP_RANGE_2 REGION'
  puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-security-group.rb ' \
    "my-security-group 'This is my security group.' vpc-6713dfEX " \
    "tcp 80 80 '0.0.0.0/0' tcp 22 22 '0.0.0.0/0' us-west-2"
end
```

```
def default_values
  [
    'my-security-group', 'This is my security group.', 'vpc-6713dfEX', 'tcp',
 '80', '80',
    '0.0.0.0/0', 'tcp', '22', '22', '0.0.0.0/0', 'us-west-2'
  ]
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn create_security_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
    ) -> Result<SecurityGroup, EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating security group {name}");
        let create_output = self
            .client
            .create_security_group()
            .group_name(name)
            .description(description)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(EC2Error::from)?;

        let group_id = create_output
            .group_id
```

```
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group id after
 creation"))?;

        let group = self
            .describe_security_group(&group_id)
            .await?
            .ok_or_else(|| {
                EC2Error::new(format!("Could not find security group with id
 {group_id}"))
            })?;

        tracing::info!("Created security group {name} as {group_id}");

        Ok(group)
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->createsecuritygroup(                " oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes. "
          iv_description = 'Security group example'
          iv_groupname = iv_security_group_name
          iv_vpcid = iv_vpc_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Security group created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Create a new security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the group to create.
    ///   - groupDescription: A description of the new security group.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ID string of the new security group.
    func createSecurityGroup(name groupName: String, description
 groupDescription: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createSecurityGroup(
                input: CreateSecurityGroupInput(
                    description: groupDescription,
                    groupName: groupName
                )
            )

            return output.groupId
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the security group:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateSnapshot` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSnapshot`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a snapshot

This example command creates a snapshot of the volume with a volume ID of `vol-1234567890abcdef0` and a short description to identify the snapshot.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-snapshot --volume-id vol-1234567890abcdef0 --description "This is
 my root volume snapshot"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Description": "This is my root volume snapshot",
    "Tags": [],
    "Encrypted": false,
    "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
    "State": "pending",
    "VolumeSize": 8,
    "StartTime": "2018-02-28T21:06:01.000Z",
    "Progress": "",
    "OwnerId": "012345678910",
    "SnapshotId": "snap-066877671789bd71b"
}
```

To create a snapshot with tags

This example command creates a snapshot and applies two tags: purpose=prod and costcenter=123.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-snapshot --volume-id vol-1234567890abcdef0
 --description 'Prod backup' --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=snapshot,Tags=[{Key=purpose,Value=prod},
{Key=costcenter,Value=123}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Description": "Prod backup",
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Value": "prod",
            "Key": "purpose"
        },
        {
            "Value": "123",
            "Key": "costcenter"
        }
     ],
     "Encrypted": false,
     "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
     "State": "pending",
     "VolumeSize": 8,
     "StartTime": "2018-02-28T21:06:06.000Z",
     "Progress": "",
     "OwnerId": "012345678910",
     "SnapshotId": "snap-09ed24a70bc19bbe4"
 }
```

- For API details, see CreateSnapshot in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a snapshot of the specified volume.

```
New-EC2Snapshot -VolumeId vol-12345678 -Description "This is a test"
```

Output:

```
DataEncryptionKeyId :
Description         : This is a test
Encrypted           : False
KmsKeyId            :
OwnerAlias          :
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Progress            :
SnapshotId          : snap-12345678
StartTime           : 12/22/2015 1:28:42 AM
State               : pending
StateMessage        :
Tags                : {}
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
VolumeSize          : 20
```

- For API details, see CreateSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a snapshot of the specified volume.

```
New-EC2Snapshot -VolumeId vol-12345678 -Description "This is a test"
```

Output:

```
DataEncryptionKeyId :
Description         : This is a test
Encrypted           : False
KmsKeyId            :
OwnerAlias          :
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Progress            :
SnapshotId          : snap-12345678
StartTime           : 12/22/2015 1:28:42 AM
State               : pending
StateMessage        :
Tags                : {}
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
VolumeSize          : 20
```

- For API details, see CreateSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a Spot Instance data feed

The following `create-spot-datafeed-subscription` example creates a Spot Instance data feed.

```
aws ec2 create-spot-datafeed-subscription \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --prefix spot-data-feed
```

Output:

```
{
    "SpotDatafeedSubscription": {
        "Bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "Prefix": "spot-data-feed",
        "State": "Active"
    }
}
```

The data feed is stored in the Amazon S3 bucket that you specified. The file names for this data feed have the following format.

```
amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com/spot-data-feed/123456789012.YYYY-MM-DD-
HH.n.abcd1234.gz
```

For more information, see Spot Instance data feed in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a Spot instance data feed.

```
New-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription -Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Prefix spotdata
```

Output:

```
Bucket  : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Fault   :
OwnerId : 123456789012
Prefix  : spotdata
State   : Active
```

- For API details, see CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a Spot instance data feed.

```
New-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription -Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Prefix spotdata
```

Output:

```
Bucket  : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Fault   :
OwnerId : 123456789012
Prefix  : spotdata
State   : Active
```

- For API details, see CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateSubnet` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSubnet`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a subnet with an IPv4 CIDR block only

The following `create-subnet` example creates a subnet in the specified VPC with the specified IPv4 CIDR block.

```
aws ec2 create-subnet \
    --vpc-id vpc-081ec835f3EXAMPLE \
    --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/24 \
    --tag-specifications ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=my-ipv4-only-subnet}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "Subnet": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "AvailabilityZoneId": "usw2-az2",
        "AvailableIpAddressCount": 251,
        "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/24",
        "DefaultForAz": false,
        "MapPublicIpOnLaunch": false,
        "State": "available",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-0e99b93155EXAMPLE",
        "VpcId": "vpc-081ec835f3EXAMPLE",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "AssignIpv6AddressOnCreation": false,
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Name",
                "Value": "my-ipv4-only-subnet"
            }
        ],
```

```
        "SubnetArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-west-2:123456789012:subnet/
subnet-0e99b93155EXAMPLE"
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create a subnet with both IPv4 and IPv6 CIDR blocks

The following `create-subnet` example creates a subnet in the specified VPC with the specified IPv4 and IPv6 CIDR blocks.

```
aws ec2 create-subnet \
    --vpc-id vpc-081ec835f3EXAMPLE \
    --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/24 \
    --ipv6-cidr-block 2600:1f16:cfe:3660::/64 \
    --tag-specifications ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=my-ipv4-ipv6-
subnet}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "Subnet": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "AvailabilityZoneId": "usw2-az2",
        "AvailableIpAddressCount": 251,
        "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/24",
        "DefaultForAz": false,
        "MapPublicIpOnLaunch": false,
        "State": "available",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-0736441d38EXAMPLE",
        "VpcId": "vpc-081ec835f3EXAMPLE",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "AssignIpv6AddressOnCreation": false,
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "subnet-cidr-assoc-06c5f904499fcc623",
                "Ipv6CidrBlock": "2600:1f13:cfe:3660::/64",
                "Ipv6CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associating"
                }
            }
        ],
        "Tags": [
            {
```

```
                "Key": "Name",
                "Value": "my-ipv4-ipv6-subnet"
            }
        ],
        "SubnetArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-west-2:123456789012:subnet/
subnet-0736441d38EXAMPLE"
    }
}
```

Example 3: To create a subnet with an IPv6 CIDR block only

The following `create-subnet` example creates a subnet in the specified VPC with the specified IPv6 CIDR block.

```
aws ec2 create-subnet \
    --vpc-id vpc-081ec835f3EXAMPLE \
    --ipv6-native \
    --ipv6-cidr-block 2600:1f16:115:200::/64 \
    --tag-specifications ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=my-ipv6-only-
subnet}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "Subnet": {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a",
        "AvailabilityZoneId": "usw2-az2",
        "AvailableIpAddressCount": 0,
        "DefaultForAz": false,
        "MapPublicIpOnLaunch": false,
        "State": "available",
        "SubnetId": "subnet-03f720e7deEXAMPLE",
        "VpcId": "vpc-081ec835f3EXAMPLE",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "AssignIpv6AddressOnCreation": true,
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "subnet-cidr-assoc-01ef639edde556709",
                "Ipv6CidrBlock": "2600:1f13:cfe:3660::/64",
                "Ipv6CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associating"
                }
            }
```

```
        ],
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Name",
                "Value": "my-ipv6-only-subnet"
            }
        ],
        "SubnetArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-west-2:123456789012:subnet/
subnet-03f720e7deEXAMPLE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see VPCs and subnets in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateSubnet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a subnet with the specified CIDR.

```
New-EC2Subnet -VpcId vpc-12345678 -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/24
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2c
AvailableIpAddressCount : 251
CidrBlock               : 10.0.0.0/24
DefaultForAz            : False
MapPublicIpOnLaunch     : False
State                   : pending
SubnetId                : subnet-1a2b3c4d
Tag                     : {}
VpcId                   : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateSubnet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a subnet with the specified CIDR.

```
New-EC2Subnet -VpcId vpc-12345678 -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/24
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2c
AvailableIpAddressCount : 251
CidrBlock               : 10.0.0.0/24
DefaultForAz            : False
MapPublicIpOnLaunch     : False
State                   : pending
SubnetId                : subnet-1a2b3c4d
Tag                     : {}
VpcId                   : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateSubnet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Creates a subnet within a virtual private cloud (VPC) in
# Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) and then tags
# the subnet.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A VPC in Amazon VPC.
#
# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized
#   Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource object.
# @param vpc_id [String] The ID of the VPC for the subnet.
# @param cidr_block [String] The IPv4 CIDR block for the subnet.
# @param availability_zone [String] The ID of the Availability Zone
#   for the subnet.
```

```
# @param tag_key [String] The key portion of the tag for the subnet.
# @param tag_vlue [String] The value portion of the tag for the subnet.
# @return [Boolean] true if the subnet was created and tagged;
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless subnet_created_and_tagged?(
#     Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'vpc-6713dfEX',
#     '10.0.0.0/24',
#     'us-west-2a',
#     'my-key',
#     'my-value'
#   )
def subnet_created_and_tagged?(
  ec2_resource,
  vpc_id,
  cidr_block,
  availability_zone,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  subnet = ec2_resource.create_subnet(
    vpc_id: vpc_id,
    cidr_block: cidr_block,
    availability_zone: availability_zone
  )
  subnet.create_tags(
    tags: [
      {
        key: tag_key,
        value: tag_value
      }
    ]
  )
  puts "Subnet created with ID '#{subnet.id}' in VPC with ID '#{vpc_id}' " \
    "and CIDR block '#{cidr_block}' in availability zone " \
    "'#{availability_zone}' and tagged with key '#{tag_key}' and " \
    "value '#{tag_value}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating or tagging subnet: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

```
# Example usage:
def run_me
  vpc_id = ''
  cidr_block = ''
  availability_zone = ''
  tag_key = ''
  tag_value = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-subnet.rb ' \
      'VPC_ID CIDR_BLOCK AVAILABILITY_ZONE TAG_KEY TAG_VALUE REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-subnet.rb ' \
      'vpc-6713dfEX 10.0.0.0/24 us-west-2a my-key my-value us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    vpc_id = 'vpc-6713dfEX'
    cidr_block = '10.0.0.0/24'
    availability_zone = 'us-west-2a'
    tag_key = 'my-key'
    tag_value = 'my-value'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    vpc_id = ARGV[0]
    cidr_block = ARGV[1]
    availability_zone = ARGV[2]
    tag_key = ARGV[3]
    tag_value = ARGV[4]
    region = ARGV[5]
  end

  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)

  if subnet_created_and_tagged?(
    ec2_resource,
    vpc_id,
    cidr_block,
    availability_zone,
    tag_key,
    tag_value
```

```
  )
    puts 'Subnet created and tagged.'
  else
    puts 'Subnet not created or not tagged.'
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateSubnet in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `CreateTags` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTags`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Add or overwrite only the specified tags for the specified Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource or resources.
/*!
  \param resources: The resources for the tags.
  \param tags: Vector of tags.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::createTags(const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &resources,
                             const Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateTagsRequest createTagsRequest;
```

```
    createTagsRequest.SetResources(resources);
    createTagsRequest.SetTags(tags);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateTagsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.CreateTags(createTagsRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created tags for resources" << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create tags for resources, " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add a tag to a resource

The following `create-tags` example adds the tag `Stack=production` to the specified image, or overwrites an existing tag for the AMI where the tag key is `Stack`.

```
aws ec2 create-tags \
    --resources ami-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags Key=Stack,Value=production
```

This command produces no output

Example 2: To add tags to multiple resources

The following `create-tags` example adds (or overwrites) two tags for an AMI and an instance. One of the tags has a key (`webserver`) but no value (value is set to an empty string). The other tag has a key (`stack`) and a value (`Production`).

```
aws ec2 create-tags \
```

```
    --resources ami-1a2b3c4d i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags Key=webserver,Value=   Key=stack,Value=Production
```

This command produces no output

Example 3: To add tags containing special characters

The following `create-tags` examples add the tag `[Group]=test` for an instance. The square brackets ([and]) are special characters, and must be escaped. The following examples also use the line continuation character appropriate for each environment.

If you are using Windows, surround the element that has special characters with double quotes ("), and then precede each double quote character with a backslash (\) as follows.

```
aws ec2 create-tags ^
    --resources i-1234567890abcdef0 ^
    --tags Key=\"[Group]\",Value=test
```

If you are using Windows PowerShell, surround the element the value that has special characters with double quotes ("), precede each double quote character with a backslash (\), and then surround the entire key and value structure with single quotes (') as follows.

```
aws ec2 create-tags `
    --resources i-1234567890abcdef0 `
    --tags 'Key=\"[Group]\",Value=test'
```

If you are using Linux or OS X, surround the element that has special characters with double quotes ("), and then surround the entire key and value structure with single quotes (') as follows.

```
aws ec2 create-tags \
    --resources i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags 'Key="[Group]",Value=test'
```

For more information, see Tag your Amazon EC2 resources in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds a single tag to the specified resource. The tag key is 'myTag' and the tag value is 'myTagValue'. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag"; Value="myTagValue" }
```

Example 2: This example updates or adds the specified tags to the specified resource. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @( @{ Key="myTag"; Value="newTagValue" },
 @{ Key="test"; Value="anotherTagValue" } )
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"

New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a single tag to the specified resource. The tag key is 'myTag' and the tag value is 'myTagValue'. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag"; Value="myTagValue" }
```

Example 2: This example updates or adds the specified tags to the specified resource. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @( @{ Key="myTag"; Value="newTagValue" },
 @{ Key="test"; Value="anotherTagValue" } )
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"

New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example applies the Name tag After creating an instance.

```
    pub async fn create_instance<'a>(
        &self,
        image_id: &'a str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &'a KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&'a SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<String, EC2Error> {
        let run_instances = self
            .client
            .run_instances()
            .image_id(image_id)
            .instance_type(instance_type)
            .key_name(
                key_pair
                    .key_name()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing key name when launching
 instance"))?,
            )
```

```
            .set_security_group_ids(Some(
                security_groups
                    .iter()
                    .filter_map(|sg| sg.group_id.clone())
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .min_count(1)
            .max_count(1)
            .send()
            .await?;

        if run_instances.instances().is_empty() {
            return Err(EC2Error::new("Failed to create instance"));
        }

        let instance_id = run_instances.instances()[0].instance_id().unwrap();
        let response = self
            .client
            .create_tags()
            .resources(instance_id)
            .tags(
                Tag::builder()
                    .key("Name")
                    .value("From SDK Examples")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match response {
            Ok(_) => tracing::info!("Created {instance_id} and applied tags."),
            Err(err) => {
                tracing::info!("Error applying tags to {instance_id}: {err:?}");
                return Err(err.into());
            }
        }

        tracing::info!("Instance is created.");

        Ok(instance_id.to_string())
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateVolume` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVolume`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an empty General Purpose SSD (gp2) volume

The following `create-volume` example creates an 80 GiB General Purpose SSD (gp2) volume in the specified Availability Zone. Note that the current Region must be `us-east-1`, or you can add the `--region` parameter to specify the Region for the command.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --volume-type gp2 \
    --size 80 \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a
```

Output:

```
{
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
    "Tags": [],
    "Encrypted": false,
    "VolumeType": "gp2",
    "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
    "State": "creating",
    "Iops": 240,
    "SnapshotId": "",
    "CreateTime": "YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS.000Z",
    "Size": 80
}
```

If you do not specify a volume type, the default volume type is gp2.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --size 80 \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a
```

Example 2: To create a Provisioned IOPS SSD (io1) volume from a snapshot

The following `create-volume` example creates a Provisioned IOPS SSD (io1) volume with 1000 provisioned IOPS in the specified Availability Zone using the specified snapshot.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --volume-type io1 \
    --iops 1000 \
    --snapshot-id snap-066877671789bd71b \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a
```

Output:

```
{
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
    "Tags": [],
    "Encrypted": false,
    "VolumeType": "io1",
    "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
    "State": "creating",
    "Iops": 1000,
    "SnapshotId": "snap-066877671789bd71b",
    "CreateTime": "YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS.000Z",
    "Size": 500
}
```

Example 3: To create an encrypted volume

The following `create-volume` example creates an encrypted volume using the default CMK for EBS encryption. If encryption by default is disabled, you must specify the `--encrypted` parameter as follows.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --size 80 \
    --encrypted \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a
```

Output:

```
{
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
    "Tags": [],
```

```
    "Encrypted": true,
    "VolumeType": "gp2",
    "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
    "State": "creating",
    "Iops": 240,
    "SnapshotId": "",
    "CreateTime": "YYYY-MM-DDTHH:MM:SS.000Z",
    "Size": 80
}
```

If encryption by default is enabled, the following example command creates an encrypted volume, even without the `--encrypted` parameter.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --size 80 \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a
```

If you use the `--kms-key-id` parameter to specify a customer managed CMK, you must specify the `--encrypted` parameter even if encryption by default is enabled.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --volume-type gp2 \
    --size 80 \
    --encrypted \
    --kms-key-id 0ea3fef3-80a7-4778-9d8c-1c0c6EXAMPLE \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a
```

Example 4: To create a volume with tags

The following `create-volume` example creates a volume and adds two tags.

```
aws ec2 create-volume \
    --availability-zone us-east-1a \
    --volume-type gp2 \
    --size 80 \
    --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=volume,Tags=[{Key=purpose,Value=production},{Key=cost-
center,Value=cc123}]'
```

- For API details, see CreateVolume in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified volume.

```
New-EC2Volume -Size 50 -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a -VolumeType gp2
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
CreateTime       : 12/22/2015 1:42:07 AM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 150
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 50
SnapshotId       :
State            : creating
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : gp2
```

Example 2: This example request creates a volume and applies a tag with a key of stack and a value of production.

```
$tag = @{ Key="stack"; Value="production" }

$tagspec = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec.ResourceType = "volume"
$tagspec.Tags.Add($tag)

New-EC2Volume -Size 80 -AvailabilityZone "us-west-2a" -TagSpecification $tagspec
```

- For API details, see CreateVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified volume.

```
New-EC2Volume -Size 50 -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a -VolumeType gp2
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
CreateTime       : 12/22/2015 1:42:07 AM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 150
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 50
SnapshotId       :
State            : creating
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : gp2
```

Example 2: This example request creates a volume and applies a tag with a key of stack and a value of production.

```
$tag = @{ Key="stack"; Value="production" }

$tagspec = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec.ResourceType = "volume"
$tagspec.Tags.Add($tag)

New-EC2Volume -Size 80 -AvailabilityZone "us-west-2a" -TagSpecification $tagspec
```

- For API details, see CreateVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateVpc` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVpc`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway
- Get started with VPC IPAM

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a VPC

The following `create-vpc` example creates a VPC with the specified IPv4 CIDR block and a Name tag.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc \
    --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 \
    --tag-specifications ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyVpc}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "Vpc": {
        "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
        "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-5EXAMPLE",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpcId": "vpc-0a60eb65b4EXAMPLE",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "InstanceTenancy": "default",
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
        "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-07501b79ecEXAMPLE",
                "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                "CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associated"
                }
            }
        ],
        "IsDefault": false,
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Name",
                "Value": MyVpc"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create a VPC with dedicated tenancy

The following `create-vpc` example creates a VPC with the specified IPv4 CIDR block and dedicated tenancy.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc \
    --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 \
    --instance-tenancy dedicated
```

Output:

```
{
    "Vpc": {
        "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
        "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-19edf471",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpcId": "vpc-0a53287fa4EXAMPLE",
        "OwnerId": "111122223333",
        "InstanceTenancy": "dedicated",
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
        "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-00b24cc1c2EXAMPLE",
                "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                "CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associated"
                }
            }
        ],
        "IsDefault": false
    }
}
```

Example 3: To create a VPC with an IPv6 CIDR block

The following `create-vpc` example creates a VPC with an Amazon-provided IPv6 CIDR block.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc \
    --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 \
    --amazon-provided-ipv6-cidr-block
```

Output:

```
{
    "Vpc": {
        "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
        "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-dEXAMPLE",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpcId": "vpc-0fc5e3406bEXAMPLE",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "InstanceTenancy": "default",
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-068432c60bEXAMPLE",
                "Ipv6CidrBlock": "",
                "Ipv6CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associating"
                },
                "Ipv6Pool": "Amazon",
                "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2"
            }
        ],
        "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-0669f8f9f5EXAMPLE",
                "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                "CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associated"
                }
            }
        ],
        "IsDefault": false
    }
}
```

Example 4: To create a VPC with a CIDR from an IPAM pool

The following `create-vpc` example creates a VPC with a CIDR from an Amazon VPC IP Address Manager (IPAM) pool.

Linux and macOS:

```
aws ec2 create-vpc \
    --ipv4-ipam-pool-id ipam-pool-0533048da7d823723 \
```

```
    --tag-specifications
 ResourceType=vpc,Tags='[{Key=Environment,Value="Preprod"},
{Key=Owner,Value="Build Team"}]'
```

Windows:

```
aws ec2 create-vpc ^
    --ipv4-ipam-pool-id ipam-pool-0533048da7d823723 ^
    --tag-specifications
 ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Environment,Value="Preprod"},{Key=Owner,Value="Build
 Team"}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "Vpc": {
        "CidrBlock": "10.0.1.0/24",
        "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-2afccf50",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpcId": "vpc-010e1791024eb0af9",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "InstanceTenancy": "default",
        "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
        "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
            {
                "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-0a77de1d803226d4b",
                "CidrBlock": "10.0.1.0/24",
                "CidrBlockState": {
                    "State": "associated"
                }
            }
        ],
        "IsDefault": false,
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Environment",
                "Value": "Preprod"
            },
            {
                "Key": "Owner",
                "Value": "Build Team"
            }
        ]
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Create a VPC that uses an IPAM pool CIDR in the *Amazon VPC IPAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $cidr
     * @return array
     */
    public function createVpc(string $cidr): array
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->ec2Client->createVpc([
                "CidrBlock" => $cidr,
            ]);
            return $result['Vpc'];
        }catch(Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem creating the VPC: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a VPC with the specified CIDR. Amazon VPC also creates the following for the VPC: a default DHCP options set, a main route table, and a default network ACL.

```
New-EC2VPC -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/16
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 10.0.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-1a2b3c4d
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : False
State           : pending
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a VPC with the specified CIDR. Amazon VPC also creates the following for the VPC: a default DHCP options set, a main route table, and a default network ACL.

```
New-EC2VPC -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/16
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 10.0.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-1a2b3c4d
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : False
State           : pending
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual
 Private Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(self, cidr_block: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new Amazon VPC with the specified CIDR block.

        :param cidr_block: The CIDR block for the new VPC, such as '10.0.0.0/16'.
        :return: The ID of the new VPC.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc(CidrBlock=cidr_block)
            vpc_id = response["Vpc"]["VpcId"]

            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("vpc_available")
            waiter.wait(VpcIds=[vpc_id])
            return vpc_id
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the vpc. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Creates a virtual private cloud (VPC) in
# Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) and then tags
# the VPC.
#
# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized
#   Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource object.
# @param cidr_block [String] The IPv4 CIDR block for the subnet.
# @param tag_key [String] The key portion of the tag for the VPC.
# @param tag_value [String] The value portion of the tag for the VPC.
# @return [Boolean] true if the VPC was created and tagged;
```

```
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless vpc_created_and_tagged?(
#     Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     '10.0.0.0/24',
#     'my-key',
#     'my-value'
#   )
def vpc_created_and_tagged?(
  ec2_resource,
  cidr_block,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  vpc = ec2_resource.create_vpc(cidr_block: cidr_block)

  # Create a public DNS by enabling DNS support and DNS hostnames.
  vpc.modify_attribute(enable_dns_support: { value: true })
  vpc.modify_attribute(enable_dns_hostnames: { value: true })

  vpc.create_tags(tags: [{ key: tag_key, value: tag_value }])

  puts "Created VPC with ID '#{vpc.id}' and tagged with key " \
    "'#{tag_key}' and value '#{tag_value}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts e.message
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  cidr_block = ''
  tag_key = ''
  tag_value = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-vpc.rb ' \
      'CIDR_BLOCK TAG_KEY TAG_VALUE REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-vpc.rb ' \
      '10.0.0.0/24 my-key my-value us-west-2'
    exit 1
```

```
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    cidr_block = '10.0.0.0/24'
    tag_key = 'my-key'
    tag_value = 'my-value'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    cidr_block = ARGV[0]
    tag_key = ARGV[1]
    tag_value = ARGV[2]
    region = ARGV[3]
  end

  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)

  if vpc_created_and_tagged?(
    ec2_resource,
    cidr_block,
    tag_key,
    tag_value
  )
    puts 'VPC created and tagged.'
  else
    puts 'VPC not created or not tagged.'
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `CreateVpcEndpoint` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVpcEndpoint`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a gateway endpoint

The following `create-vpc-endpoint` example creates a gateway VPC endpoint between VPC `vpc-1a2b3c4d` and Amazon S3 in the `us-east-1` region, and associates route table `rtb-11aa22bb` with the endpoint.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint \
    --vpc-id vpc-1a2b3c4d \
    --service-name com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3 \
    --route-table-ids rtb-11aa22bb
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcEndpoint": {
        "PolicyDocument": "{\"Version\":\"2008-10-17\",\"Statement\":[{\"Sid\":
\"\",\"Effect\":\"Allow\",\"Principal\":\"\*\",\"Action\":\"\*\",\"Resource\":
\"\*\"}]}",
        "VpcId": "vpc-1a2b3c4d",
        "State": "available",
        "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3",
        "RouteTableIds": [
            "rtb-11aa22bb"
        ],
        "VpcEndpointId": "vpc-1a2b3c4d",
        "CreationTimestamp": "2015-05-15T09:40:50Z"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Create a gateway endpoint in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

Example 2: To create an interface endpoint

The following `create-vpc-endpoint` example creates an interface VPC endpoint between VPC `vpc-1a2b3c4d` and Amazon S3 in the `us-east-1` region. The command creates the endpoint in subnet `subnet-1a2b3c4d`, associates it with security group `sg-1a2b3c4d`, and adds a tag with a key of "Service" and a Value of "S3".

```
aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint \
    --vpc-id vpc-1a2b3c4d \
    --vpc-endpoint-type Interface \
    --service-name com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3 \
    --subnet-ids subnet-7b16de0c \
    --security-group-id sg-1a2b3c4d \
    --tag-specifications ResourceType=vpc-endpoint,Tags=[{Key=service,Value=S3}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcEndpoint": {
        "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-1a2b3c4d5e6f1a2b3",
        "VpcEndpointType": "Interface",
        "VpcId": "vpc-1a2b3c4d",
        "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3",
        "State": "pending",
        "RouteTableIds": [],
        "SubnetIds": [
            "subnet-1a2b3c4d"
        ],
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupId": "sg-1a2b3c4d",
                "GroupName": "default"
            }
        ],
        "PrivateDnsEnabled": false,
        "RequesterManaged": false,
        "NetworkInterfaceIds": [
            "eni-0b16f0581c8ac6877"
        ],
        "DnsEntries": [
            {
                "DnsName": "*.vpce-1a2b3c4d5e6f1a2b3-9hnenorg.s3.us-
east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com",
                "HostedZoneId": "Z7HUB22UULQXV"
            },
            {
                "DnsName": "*.vpce-1a2b3c4d5e6f1a2b3-9hnenorg-us-east-1c.s3.us-
east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com",
                "HostedZoneId": "Z7HUB22UULQXV"
            }
```

```
        ],
        "CreationTimestamp": "2021-03-05T14:46:16.030000+00:00",
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "service",
                "Value": "S3"
            }
        ],
        "OwnerId": "123456789012"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Create an interface VPC endpoint in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a Gateway Load Balancer endpoint

The following `create-vpc-endpoint` example creates a Gateway Load Balancer endpoint between VPC `vpc-111122223333aabbc` and and a service that is configured using a Gateway Load Balancer.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint \
    --service-name com.amazonaws.vpce.us-east-1.vpce-svc-123123a1c43abc123 \
    --vpc-endpoint-type GatewayLoadBalancer \
    --vpc-id vpc-111122223333aabbc \
    --subnet-ids subnet-0011aabbcc2233445
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcEndpoint": {
        "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-aabbaabbaabbaabba",
        "VpcEndpointType": "GatewayLoadBalancer",
        "VpcId": "vpc-111122223333aabbc",
        "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.vpce.us-east-1.vpce-svc-123123a1c43abc123",
        "State": "pending",
        "SubnetIds": [
            "subnet-0011aabbcc2233445"
        ],
        "RequesterManaged": false,
        "NetworkInterfaceIds": [
            "eni-0101012020303040 5"
```

```
        ],
        "CreationTimestamp": "2020-11-11T08:06:03.522Z",
        "OwnerId": "123456789012"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Gateway Load Balancer endpoints in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

Example 4: To create a resource endpoint

The following `create-vpc-endpoint` example creates a resource endpoint.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint \
    --vpc-endpoint-type Resource \
    --vpc-id vpc-111122223333aabbc \
    --subnet-ids subnet-0011aabbcc2233445 \
    --resource-configuration-arn arn:aws:vpc-lattice-us-
east-1:123456789012:resourceconfiguration/rcfg-0123abcde98765432
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcEndpoint": {
        "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-00939a7ed9EXAMPLE",
        "VpcEndpointType": "Resource",
        "VpcId": "vpc-111122223333aabbc",
        "State": "Pending",
        "SubnetIds": [
            "subnet-0011aabbcc2233445"
        ],
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupId": "sg-03e2f15fbfc09b000",
                "GroupName": "default"
            }
        ],
        "IpAddressType": "IPV4",
        "PrivateDnsEnabled": false,
        "CreationTimestamp": "2025-02-06T23:38:49.525000+00:00",
        "Tags": [],
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
```

```
        "ResourceConfigurationArn": "arn:aws:vpc-lattice:us-
east-1:123456789012:resourceconfiguration/rcfg-0123abcde98765432"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Resource endpoints in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

Example 5: To create a service network endpoint

The following `create-vpc-endpoint` example creates a service network endpoint.

```
aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint \
    --vpc-endpoint-type ServiceNetwork \
    --vpc-id vpc-111122223333aabbc \
    --subnet-ids subnet-0011aabbcc2233445 \
    --service-network-arn arn:aws:vpc-lattice:us-
east-1:123456789012:servicenetwork/sn-0101abcd5432abcd0 \
    --security-group-ids sg-0123456789012abcd
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcEndpoint": {
        "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-0f00567fa8EXAMPLE",
        "VpcEndpointType": "ServiceNetwork",
        "VpcId": "vpc-111122223333aabbc",
        "State": "Pending",
        "SubnetIds": [
            "subnet-0011aabbcc2233445"
        ],
        "Groups": [
            {
                "GroupId": "sg-0123456789012abcd",
                "GroupName": "my-security-group"
            }
        ],
        "IpAddressType": "IPV4",
        "PrivateDnsEnabled": false,
        "CreationTimestamp": "2025-02-06T23:44:20.449000+00:00",
        "Tags": [],
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "ServiceNetworkArn": "arn:aws:vpc-lattice:us-
east-1:123456789012:servicenetwork/sn-0101abcd5432abcd0"
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Service network endpoints in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $serviceName
     * @param string $vpcId
     * @param array $routeTableIds
     * @return array
     */
    public function createVpcEndpoint(string $serviceName, string $vpcId, array
 $routeTableIds): array
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->ec2Client->createVpcEndpoint([
                'ServiceName' => $serviceName,
                'VpcId' => $vpcId,
                'RouteTableIds' => $routeTableIds,
            ]);

            return $result["VpcEndpoint"];
        } catch(Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem creating the VPC Endpoint: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example create a new VPC Endpoint for the service com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.s3 in the VPC vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb

```
New-EC2VpcEndpoint -ServiceName com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.s3 -VpcId
 vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb
```

Output:

```
ClientToken VpcEndpoint
----------- -----------
            Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcEndpoint
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example create a new VPC Endpoint for the service com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.s3 in the VPC vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb

```
New-EC2VpcEndpoint -ServiceName com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.s3 -VpcId
 vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb
```

Output:

```
ClientToken VpcEndpoint
----------- -----------
            Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcEndpoint
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual
 Private Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create_vpc_endpoint(
        self, vpc_id: str, service_name: str, route_table_ids: list[str]
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a new VPC endpoint for the specified service and associates it
 with the specified route tables.
```

```
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to create the endpoint in.
        :param service_name: The name of the service to create the endpoint for.
        :param route_table_ids: A list of IDs of the route tables to associate
with the endpoint.
        :return: A dictionary representing the newly created VPC endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc_endpoint(
                VpcId=vpc_id,
                ServiceName=service_name,
                RouteTableIds=route_table_ids,
            )
            return response["VpcEndpoint"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create VPC endpoint for service %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                service_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateVpnConnection` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVpnConnection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a VPN connection with dynamic routing

The following `create-vpn-connection` example creates a VPN connection between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway, and applies tags to the VPN connection. The output includes the configuration information for your customer gateway device, in XML format.

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-connection \
    --type ipsec.1 \
    --customer-gateway-id cgw-001122334455aabbc \
    --vpn-gateway-id vgw-1a1a1a1a1a1a2b2b2 \
    --tag-specification 'ResourceType=vpn-connection,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=BGP-
VPN}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnConnection": {
        "CustomerGatewayConfiguration": "...configuration information...",
        "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-001122334455aabbc",
        "Category": "VPN",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpnConnectionId": "vpn-123123123123abcab",
        "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-1a1a1a1a1a1a2b2b2",
        "Options": {
            "EnableAcceleration": false,
            "StaticRoutesOnly": false,
            "LocalIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
            "RemoteIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
            "TunnelInsideIpVersion": "ipv4",
            "TunnelOptions": [
                {},
                {}
            ]
        },
        "Routes": [],
        "Tags": [
             {
                "Key": "Name",
                "Value": "BGP-VPN"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see How AWS Site-to-Site VPN works in the *AWS Site-to-Site VPN User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a VPN connection with static routing

The following `create-vpn-connection` example creates a VPN connection between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway. The options specify static routing. The output includes the configuration information for your customer gateway device, in XML format.

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-connection \
    --type ipsec.1 \
    --customer-gateway-id cgw-001122334455aabbc \
    --vpn-gateway-id vgw-1a1a1a1a1a1a2b2b2 \
    --options "{\"StaticRoutesOnly\":true}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnConnection": {
        "CustomerGatewayConfiguration": "..configuration information...",
        "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-001122334455aabbc",
        "Category": "VPN",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpnConnectionId": "vpn-123123123123abcab",
        "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-1a1a1a1a1a1a2b2b2",
        "Options": {
            "EnableAcceleration": false,
            "StaticRoutesOnly": true,
            "LocalIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
            "RemoteIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
            "TunnelInsideIpVersion": "ipv4",
            "TunnelOptions": [
                {},
                {}
            ]
        },
        "Routes": [],
        "Tags": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see How AWS Site-to-Site VPN works in the *AWS Site-to-Site VPN User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a VPN connection and specify your own inside CIDR and pre-shared key

The following `create-vpn-connection` example creates a VPN connection and specifies the inside IP address CIDR block and a custom pre-shared key for each tunnel. The specified values are returned in the `CustomerGatewayConfiguration` information.

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-connection \
    --type ipsec.1 \
    --customer-gateway-id cgw-001122334455aabbc \
    --vpn-gateway-id vgw-1a1a1a1a1a1a2b2b2 \
    --options
 TunnelOptions='[{TunnelInsideCidr=169.254.12.0/30,PreSharedKey=ExamplePreSharedKey1},
{TunnelInsideCidr=169.254.13.0/30,PreSharedKey=ExamplePreSharedKey2}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnConnection": {
        "CustomerGatewayConfiguration": "..configuration information...",
        "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-001122334455aabbc",
        "Category": "VPN",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpnConnectionId": "vpn-123123123123abcab",
        "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-1a1a1a1a1a1a2b2b2",
        "Options": {
            "EnableAcceleration": false,
            "StaticRoutesOnly": false,
            "LocalIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
            "RemoteIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
            "TunnelInsideIpVersion": "ipv4",
            "TunnelOptions": [
                {
                    "OutsideIpAddress": "203.0.113.3",
                    "TunnelInsideCidr": "169.254.12.0/30",
                    "PreSharedKey": "ExamplePreSharedKey1"
                },
                {
                    "OutsideIpAddress": "203.0.113.5",
                    "TunnelInsideCidr": "169.254.13.0/30",
                    "PreSharedKey": "ExamplePreSharedKey2"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Routes": [],
        "Tags": []
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see How AWS Site-to-Site VPN works in the *AWS Site-to-Site VPN User Guide*.

Example 4: To create a VPN connection that supports IPv6 traffic

The following `create-vpn-connection` example creates a VPN connection that supports IPv6 traffic between the specified transit gateway and specified customer gateway. The tunnel options for both tunnels specify that AWS must initiate the IKE negotiation.

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-connection \
    --type ipsec.1 \
    --transit-gateway-id tgw-12312312312312312 \
    --customer-gateway-id cgw-001122334455aabbc \
    --options TunnelInsideIpVersion=ipv6,TunnelOptions=[{StartupAction=start},
{StartupAction=start}]
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnConnection": {
        "CustomerGatewayConfiguration": "..configuration information...",
        "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-001122334455aabbc",
        "Category": "VPN",
        "State": "pending",
        "VpnConnectionId": "vpn-11111111122222222",
        "TransitGatewayId": "tgw-12312312312312312",
        "Options": {
            "EnableAcceleration": false,
            "StaticRoutesOnly": false,
            "LocalIpv6NetworkCidr": "::/0",
            "RemoteIpv6NetworkCidr": "::/0",
            "TunnelInsideIpVersion": "ipv6",
            "TunnelOptions": [
                {
                    "OutsideIpAddress": "203.0.113.3",
                    "StartupAction": "start"
                },
                {
                    "OutsideIpAddress": "203.0.113.5",
```

```
                    "StartupAction": "start"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Routes": [],
        "Tags": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see How AWS Site-to-Site VPN works in the *AWS Site-to-Site VPN User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a VPN connection between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway. The output includes the configuration information that your network administrator needs, in XML format.

```
New-EC2VpnConnection -Type ipsec.1 -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
CustomerGatewayConfiguration : [XML document]
CustomerGatewayId            : cgw-1a2b3c4d
Options                      :
Routes                       : {}
State                        : pending
Tags                         : {}
Type                         :
VgwTelemetry                 : {}
VpnConnectionId              : vpn-12345678
VpnGatewayId                 : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example creates the VPN connection and captures the configuration in a file with the specified name.

```
(New-EC2VpnConnection -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d).CustomerGatewayConfiguration | Out-File C:\path\vpn-
configuration.xml
```

Example 3: This example creates a VPN connection, with static routing, between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway.

```
New-EC2VpnConnection -Type ipsec.1 -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d -Options_StaticRoutesOnly $true
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a VPN connection between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway. The output includes the configuration information that your network administrator needs, in XML format.

```
New-EC2VpnConnection -Type ipsec.1 -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
CustomerGatewayConfiguration : [XML document]
CustomerGatewayId            : cgw-1a2b3c4d
Options                      :
Routes                       : {}
State                        : pending
Tags                         : {}
Type                         :
VgwTelemetry                 : {}
VpnConnectionId              : vpn-12345678
VpnGatewayId                 : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example creates the VPN connection and captures the configuration in a file with the specified name.

```
(New-EC2VpnConnection -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d).CustomerGatewayConfiguration | Out-File C:\path\vpn-
configuration.xml
```

Example 3: This example creates a VPN connection, with static routing, between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway.

```
New-EC2VpnConnection -Type ipsec.1 -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d -Options_StaticRoutesOnly $true
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateVpnConnectionRoute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVpnConnectionRoute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a static route for a VPN connection

This example creates a static route for the specified VPN connection. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-connection-route --vpn-connection-id vpn-40f41529 --
destination-cidr-block 11.12.0.0/16
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified static route for the specified VPN connection.

```
New-EC2VpnConnectionRoute -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678 -DestinationCidrBlock
 11.12.0.0/16
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified static route for the specified VPN connection.

```
New-EC2VpnConnectionRoute -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678 -DestinationCidrBlock
 11.12.0.0/16
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateVpnGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVpnGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a virtual private gateway

This example creates a virtual private gateway.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-gateway --type ipsec.1
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnGateway": {
        "AmazonSideAsn": 64512,
        "State": "available",
        "Type": "ipsec.1",
        "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-9a4cacf3",
        "VpcAttachments": []
    }
}
```

To create a virtual private gateway with a specific Amazon-side ASN

This example creates a virtual private gateway and specifies the Autonomous System Number (ASN) for the Amazon side of the BGP session.

Command:

```
aws ec2 create-vpn-gateway --type ipsec.1 --amazon-side-asn 65001
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnGateway": {
        "AmazonSideAsn": 65001,
        "State": "available",
        "Type": "ipsec.1",
        "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-9a4cacf3",
        "VpcAttachments": []
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates the specified virtual private gateway.

```
New-EC2VpnGateway -Type ipsec.1
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone :
State            : available
Tags             : {}
Type             : ipsec.1
VpcAttachments   : {}
VpnGatewayId     : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified virtual private gateway.

```
New-EC2VpnGateway -Type ipsec.1
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone :
State            : available
Tags             : {}
Type             : ipsec.1
VpcAttachments   : {}
VpnGatewayId     : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteCustomerGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCustomerGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a customer gateway

This example deletes the specified customer gateway. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-customer-gateway --customer-gateway-id cgw-0e11f167
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomerGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified customer gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2CustomerGateway -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2CustomerGateway (DeleteCustomerGateway)" on
 Target "cgw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomerGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified customer gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2CustomerGateway -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2CustomerGateway (DeleteCustomerGateway)" on
 Target "cgw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomerGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteDhcpOptions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDhcpOptions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a DHCP options set

This example deletes the specified DHCP options set. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-dhcp-options --dhcp-options-id dopt-d9070ebb
```

- For API details, see DeleteDhcpOptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified DHCP options set. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2DhcpOption (DeleteDhcpOptions)" on Target
 "dopt-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified DHCP options set. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2DhcpOption (DeleteDhcpOptions)" on Target
 "dopt-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteFlowLogs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFlowLogs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a flow log

The following `delete-flow-logs` example deletes the specified flow log.

```
aws ec2 delete-flow-logs --flow-log-id fl-11223344556677889
```

Output:

```
{
    "Unsuccessful": []
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowLogs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the given FlowLogId fl-01a2b3456a789c01

```
Remove-EC2FlowLog -FlowLogId fl-01a2b3456a789c01
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2FlowLog (DeleteFlowLogs)" on target
 "fl-01a2b3456a789c01".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the given FlowLogId fl-01a2b3456a789c01

```
Remove-EC2FlowLog -FlowLogId fl-01a2b3456a789c01
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2FlowLog (DeleteFlowLogs)" on target
 "fl-01a2b3456a789c01".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteInternetGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteInternetGateway`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an internet gateway

The following `delete-internet-gateway` example deletes the specified internet gateway.

```
aws ec2 delete-internet-gateway \
    --internet-gateway-id igw-0d0fb496b3EXAMPLE
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Internet gateways in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteInternetGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Internet gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2InternetGateway (DeleteInternetGateway)" on
 Target "igw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Internet gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2InternetGateway (DeleteInternetGateway)" on
 Target "igw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteKeyPair` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEC2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new
DeleteKeyPairRequest(keyPairName)).ConfigureAwait(false);
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"KeyPair {keyPairName} does not exist and
cannot be deleted. Please verify the key pair name and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the key pair because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the temporary file where the key pair information was saved.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tempFileName">The path to the temporary file.</param>
    public void DeleteTempFile(string tempFileName)
    {
        if (File.Exists(tempFileName))
        {
            File.Delete(tempFileName);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_delete_keypair
#
# This function deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_delete_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name response

  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_keypair"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
```

```
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-key-pair operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
```

```
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance key pair.
```

```
/*!
  \param keyPairName: A name for a key pair.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::EC2::deleteKeyPair(const Aws::String &keyPairName,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteKeyPairRequest request;

    request.SetKeyName(keyPairName);
    const Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteKeyPairOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DeleteKeyPair(
            request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete key pair " << keyPairName <<
                  ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted key pair named " << keyPairName <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a key pair

The following `delete-key-pair` example deletes the specified key pair.

```
aws ec2 delete-key-pair \
    --key-name my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true,
    "KeyPairId": "key-03c8d3aceb53b507"
}
```

For more information, see Create and delete key pairs in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a key pair asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyPair the name of the key pair to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the result of the
asynchronous operation.
    *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DeleteKeyPairResponse} object
    *         that provides the result of the key pair deletion operation.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> deleteKeysAsync(String
keyPair) {
       DeleteKeyPairRequest request = DeleteKeyPairRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyPair)
           .build();

       // Initiate the asynchronous request to delete the key pair.
       CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteKeyPair(request);
       return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete key pair: " +
 keyPair, ex);
            } else if (resp == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting key
 pair: " + keyPair);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteKeyPairCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Deletes the specified key pair, by removing the public key from Amazon EC2.
 * @param {{ keyName: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ keyName }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DeleteKeyPairCommand({
    KeyName: keyName,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully deleted key pair.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide the required value?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteKeys(keyPair: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyPair
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteKeyPair(request)
        println("Successfully deleted key pair named $keyPair")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified key pair. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2KeyPair -KeyName my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2KeyPair (DeleteKeyPair)" on Target "my-key-pair".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified key pair. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2KeyPair -KeyName my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2KeyPair (DeleteKeyPair)" on Target "my-key-pair".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
```

```
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
 directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is
 stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
 Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2
 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def delete(self, key_name: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes a key pair by its name.
```

```
        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to delete.
        :return: A boolean indicating whether the deletion was successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in deleting the key pair, for
example,
                                if the key pair does not exist.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted key pair: {key_name}")
            self.key_pair = None
            return True
        except self.ec2_client.exceptions.ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for key pair: {key_name}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"The key pair '{key_name}' does not exist and cannot be
deleted. "
                    "Please verify the key pair name and try again."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Wrapper around delete_key that also removes the backing private PEM key.

```
    pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2, util: &Util) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(key_name) = self.key_pair.key_name() {
            ec2.delete_key_pair(key_name).await?;
```

```
            if let Some(key_path) = self.key_file_path() {
                if let Err(err) = util.remove(key_path) {
                    eprintln!("Failed to remove {key_path:?} ({err:?})");
                }
            }
        }
        Ok(())
    }
```

```
    pub async fn delete_key_pair(&self, key_name: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let key_name: String = key_name.into();
        tracing::info!("Deleting key pair {key_name}");
        self.client
            .delete_key_pair()
            .key_name(key_name)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_ec2->deletekeypair( iv_keyname = iv_key_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Amazon EC2 key pair deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Delete an EC2 key pair.
    ///
    /// - Parameter keyPair: The name of the key pair to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the key pair is deleted successfully; otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func deleteKeyPair(keyPair: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteKeyPair(
                input: DeleteKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: keyPair
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the key pair:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteLaunchTemplate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLaunchTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Build and manage a resilient service
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
```

```
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a launch template

This example deletes the specified launch template.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-launch-template --launch-template-id lt-0abcd290751193123
```

Output:

```
{
  "LaunchTemplate": {
      "LatestVersionNumber": 2,
      "LaunchTemplateId": "lt-0abcd290751193123",
      "LaunchTemplateName": "TestTemplate",
      "DefaultVersionNumber": 2,
      "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root",
      "CreateTime": "2017-11-23T16:46:25.000Z"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    await client.send(
      new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      }),
    );
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
```

```
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"
```

```
    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteNetworkAcl` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteNetworkAcl`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a network ACL

This example deletes the specified network ACL. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-network-acl --network-acl-id acl-5fb85d36
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified network ACL. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkAcl (DeleteNetworkAcl)" on Target
 "acl-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified network ACL. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkAcl (DeleteNetworkAcl)" on Target
 "acl-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteNetworkAclEntry` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteNetworkAclEntry`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a network ACL entry

This example deletes ingress rule number 100 from the specified network ACL. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-network-acl-entry --network-acl-id acl-5fb85d36 --ingress --rule-
number 100
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAclEntry in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified rule from the specified network ACL. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber
 100
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry (DeleteNetworkAclEntry)" on
 Target "acl-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified rule from the specified network ACL. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber
 100
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry (DeleteNetworkAclEntry)" on
 Target "acl-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteNetworkInterface` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteNetworkInterface`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a network interface

This example deletes the specified network interface. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-network-interface --network-interface-id eni-e5aa89a3
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkInterface in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified network interface. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkInterface (DeleteNetworkInterface)" on
 Target "eni-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified network interface. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkInterface (DeleteNetworkInterface)" on
 Target "eni-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeletePlacementGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePlacementGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a placement group

This example command deletes the specified placement group.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-placement-group --group-name my-cluster
```

- For API details, see DeletePlacementGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified placement group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2PlacementGroup (DeletePlacementGroup)" on Target
 "my-placement-group".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeletePlacementGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified placement group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2PlacementGroup (DeletePlacementGroup)" on Target
 "my-placement-group".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeletePlacementGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteRoute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRoute`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with Transit Gateway

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a route

This example deletes the specified route from the specified route table. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-route --route-table-id rtb-22574640 --destination-cidr-
block 0.0.0.0/0
```

- For API details, see DeleteRoute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified route from the specified route table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Route (DeleteRoute)" on Target "rtb-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified route from the specified route table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Route (DeleteRoute)" on Target "rtb-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteRouteTable` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRouteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a route table

This example deletes the specified route table. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id rtb-22574640
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified route table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2RouteTable (DeleteRouteTable)" on Target
 "rtb-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified route table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2RouteTable (DeleteRouteTable)" on Target
 "rtb-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteSecurityGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteSecurityGroup(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response =
                await _amazonEC2.DeleteSecurityGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteSecurityGroupRequest { GroupId = groupId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Security Group {groupId} does not exist and cannot be
deleted. Please verify the ID and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_delete_security_group
#
# This function deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security
 group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_delete_security_group() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_security_group"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
```

```
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$security_group_id" --
output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-security-group operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete a security group.
/*!
  \param securityGroupID: A security group ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::deleteSecurityGroup(const Aws::String &securityGroupID,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteSecurityGroupRequest request;

    request.SetGroupId(securityGroupID);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteSecurityGroupOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DeleteSecurityGroup(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete security group " << securityGroupID <<
                  ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted security group " << securityGroupID <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

[EC2-Classic] To delete a security group

This example deletes the security group named `MySecurityGroup`. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-name MySecurityGroup
```

[EC2-VPC] To delete a security group

This example deletes the security group with the ID `sg-903004f8`. Note that you can't reference a security group for EC2-VPC by name. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id sg-903004f8
```

For more information, see Using Security Groups in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an EC2 security group asynchronously.
     *
     * @param groupId the ID of the security group to delete
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the security group is
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteEC2SecGroupAsync(String groupId) {
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest request = DeleteSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
            .groupId(groupId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteSecurityGroupResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSecurityGroup(request);
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
```

```
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete security group with
 Id " + groupId, ex);
            } else if (resp == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting
 security group with Id " + groupId);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteSecurityGroupCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Deletes a security group.
 * @param {{ groupId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DeleteSecurityGroupCommand({
    GroupId: groupId,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Security group deleted successfully.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`);
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteEC2SecGroup(groupIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupId = groupIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteSecurityGroup(request)
        println("Successfully deleted Security Group with id $groupIdVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified security group for EC2-VPC. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupId sg-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2SecurityGroup (DeleteSecurityGroup)" on Target
 "sg-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: This example deletes the specified security group for EC2-Classic.

```
Remove-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified security group for EC2-VPC. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupId sg-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2SecurityGroup (DeleteSecurityGroup)" on Target
 "sg-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: This example deletes the specified security group for EC2-Classic.

```
Remove-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a
 high-level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
```

```
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def delete(self, security_group_id: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes the specified security group.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to delete.
Required.

        :returns: True if the deletion is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If the security group cannot be deleted due to an
AWS service error.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_security_group(GroupId=security_group_id)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted
because it does not exist."
                )
            elif error_code == "DependencyViolation":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted
because it is still in use."
                    " Verify that it is:"
                    "\n\t- Detached from resources"
                    "\n\t- Removed from references in other groups"
                    "\n\t- Removed from VPC's as a default group"
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn delete_security_group(&self, group_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
       tracing::info!("Deleting security group {group_id}");
       self.client
           .delete_security_group()
           .group_id(group_id)
           .send()
           .await?;
       Ok(())
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_ec2->deletesecuritygroup( iv_groupid = iv_security_group_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Security group deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
```

```
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Delete a security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupId: The ID of the security group to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` on successful deletion; `false` on error.
    func deleteSecurityGroup(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteSecurityGroup(
                input: DeleteSecurityGroupInput(
                    groupId: groupId
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the security group:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteSnapshot` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSnapshot`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a snapshot

This example command deletes a snapshot with the snapshot ID of `snap-1234567890abcdef0`. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-snapshot --snapshot-id snap-1234567890abcdef0
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified snapshot. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId snap-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Snapshot (DeleteSnapshot)" on target
 "snap-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified snapshot. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId snap-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Snapshot (DeleteSnapshot)" on target
 "snap-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn delete_snapshot(client: &Client, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client.delete_snapshot().snapshot_id(id).send().await?;

    println!("Deleted");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To cancel a Spot Instance data feed subscription

This example command deletes a Spot data feed subscription for the account. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-spot-datafeed-subscription
```

- For API details, see DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes your Spot instance data feed. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
 (DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription)" on Target "".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes your Spot instance data feed. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
 (DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription)" on Target "".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteSubnet` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSubnet`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a subnet

This example deletes the specified subnet. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id subnet-9d4a7b6c
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubnet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified subnet. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Subnet -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Subnet (DeleteSubnet)" on Target
 "subnet-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubnet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified subnet. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Subnet -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Subnet (DeleteSubnet)" on Target
 "subnet-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubnet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To delete a tag from a resource

The following `delete-tags` example deletes the tag `Stack=Test` from the specified image. When you specify both a value and a key name, the tag is deleted only if the tag's value matches the specified value.

```
aws ec2 delete-tags \
    --resources ami-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags Key=Stack,Value=Test
```

It's optional to specify the value for a tag. The following `delete-tags` example deletes the tag with the key name `purpose` from the specified instance, regardless of the tag value for the tag.

```
aws ec2 delete-tags \
    --resources i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags Key=purpose
```

If you specify the empty string as the tag value, the tag is deleted only if the tag's value is the empty string. The following `delete-tags` example specifies the empty string as the tag value for the tag to delete.

```
aws ec2 delete-tags \
    --resources i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags Key=Name,Value=
```

Example 2: To delete a tag from multiple resources

The following `delete-tags` example deletes the tag``Purpose=Test`` from both an instance and an AMI. As shown in the previous example, you can omit the tag value from the command.

```
aws ec2 delete-tags \
    --resources i-1234567890abcdef0 ami-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --tags Key=Purpose
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, regardless of the tag value. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag" } -Force
```

Example 2: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, but only if the tag value matches. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag";Value="myTagValue" } -
Force
```

Example 3: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, regardless of the tag value.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"

Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag -Force
```

Example 4: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, but only if the tag value matches.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"

Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, regardless of the tag value. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag" } -Force
```

Example 2: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, but only if the tag value matches. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag";Value="myTagValue" } -
Force
```

Example 3: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, regardless of the tag value.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"

Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag -Force
```

Example 4: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, but only if the tag value matches.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"

Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteVolume` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVolume`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a volume

This example command deletes an available volume with the volume ID of `vol-049df61146c4d7901`. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-volume --volume-id vol-049df61146c4d7901
```

- For API details, see DeleteVolume in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the specified volume. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Volume (DeleteVolume)" on target
 "vol-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified volume. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Volume (DeleteVolume)" on target
 "vol-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteVpc` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVpc`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with VPC IPAM

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a VPC

This example deletes the specified VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $vpcId
```

```
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteVpc(string $vpcId)
    {
        try {
            $this->ec2Client->deleteVpc([
                "VpcId" => $vpcId,
            ]);
        }catch(Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the VPC: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified VPC. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Vpc -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Vpc (DeleteVpc)" on Target "vpc-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified VPC. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Vpc -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Vpc (DeleteVpc)" on Target "vpc-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual
 Private Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def delete(self, vpc_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the specified VPC.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_vpc(VpcId=vpc_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete VPC %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                vpc_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteVpcEndpoints` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVpcEndpoints`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an endpoint

This example deletes endpoints vpce-aa22bb33 and vpce-1a2b3c4d. If the command is partially successful or unsuccessful, a list of unsuccessful items is returned. If the command succeeds, the returned list is empty.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-vpc-endpoints --vpc-endpoint-ids vpce-aa22bb33 vpce-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
{
  "Unsuccessful": []
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpcEndpoints in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $vpcEndpointId
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteVpcEndpoint(string $vpcEndpointId)
    {
        try {
            $this->ec2Client->deleteVpcEndpoints([
                "VpcEndpointIds" => [$vpcEndpointId],
            ]);
        }catch (Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the VPC Endpoint: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
```

```
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpcEndpoints in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual
 Private Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)
```

```
    def delete_vpc_endpoints(self, vpc_endpoint_ids: list[str]) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the specified VPC endpoints.

        :param vpc_endpoint_ids: A list of IDs of the VPC endpoints to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_vpc_endpoints(VpcEndpointIds=vpc_endpoint_ids)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete VPC endpoints %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                vpc_endpoint_ids,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpcEndpoints in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteVpnConnection` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVpnConnection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a VPN connection

This example deletes the specified VPN connection. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-vpn-connection --vpn-connection-id vpn-40f41529
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified VPN connection. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnConnection -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnConnection (DeleteVpnConnection)" on Target
 "vpn-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified VPN connection. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnConnection -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnConnection (DeleteVpnConnection)" on Target
 "vpn-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteVpnConnectionRoute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVpnConnectionRoute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a static route from a VPN connection

This example deletes the specified static route from the specified VPN connection. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-vpn-connection-route --vpn-connection-id vpn-40f41529 --
destination-cidr-block 11.12.0.0/16
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified static route from the specified VPN connection. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678 -DestinationCidrBlock
 11.12.0.0/16
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute (DeleteVpnConnectionRoute)" on
 Target "vpn-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified static route from the specified VPN connection. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678 -DestinationCidrBlock
 11.12.0.0/16
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute (DeleteVpnConnectionRoute)" on
 Target "vpn-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteVpnGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVpnGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a virtual private gateway

This example deletes the specified virtual private gateway. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 delete-vpn-gateway --vpn-gateway-id vgw-9a4cacf3
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified virtual private gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnGateway (DeleteVpnGateway)" on Target
 "vgw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified virtual private gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnGateway (DeleteVpnGateway)" on Target
 "vgw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterImage` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterImage`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister an AMI

This example deregisters the specified AMI. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 deregister-image --image-id ami-4fa54026
```

- For API details, see DeregisterImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deregisters the specified AMI.

```
Unregister-EC2Image -ImageId ami-12345678
```

- For API details, see DeregisterImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters the specified AMI.

```
Unregister-EC2Image -ImageId ami-12345678
```

- For API details, see DeregisterImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAccountAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAccountAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe all the attributes for your AWS account

This example describes the attributes for your AWS account.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-account-attributes
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccountAttributes": [
        {
            "AttributeName": "vpc-max-security-groups-per-interface",
            "AttributeValues": [
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "5"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "AttributeName": "max-instances",
            "AttributeValues": [
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "20"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "AttributeName": "supported-platforms",
            "AttributeValues": [
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "EC2"
                },
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "VPC"
                }
            ]
        },
```

```
        {
            "AttributeName": "default-vpc",
            "AttributeValues": [
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "none"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "AttributeName": "max-elastic-ips",
            "AttributeValues": [
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "5"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "AttributeName": "vpc-max-elastic-ips",
            "AttributeValues": [
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "5"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

To describe a single attribute for your AWS account

This example describes the `supported-platforms` attribute for your AWS account.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-account-attributes --attribute-names supported-platforms
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccountAttributes": [
        {
            "AttributeName": "supported-platforms",
            "AttributeValues": [
```

```
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "EC2"
                },
                {
                    "AttributeValue": "VPC"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes whether you can launch instances into EC2-Classic and EC2-VPC in the region, or only into EC2-VPC.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName supported-platforms).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
EC2
VPC
```

Example 2: This example describes your default VPC, or is 'none' if you do not have a default VPC in the region.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName default-vpc).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
vpc-12345678
```

Example 3: This example describes the maximum number of On-Demand instances that you can run.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName max-instances).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
20
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes whether you can launch instances into EC2-Classic and EC2-VPC in the region, or only into EC2-VPC.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName supported-platforms).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
EC2
VPC
```

Example 2: This example describes your default VPC, or is 'none' if you do not have a default VPC in the region.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName default-vpc).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
vpc-12345678
```

Example 3: This example describes the maximum number of On-Demand instances that you can run.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName max-instances).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
20
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAddresses` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAddresses`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Elastic IP addresses.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeAddresses(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAddressesRequest request;
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAddressesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeAddresses(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left << std::setw(20) << "InstanceId" <<
```

```
                  std::setw(15) << "Public IP" << std::setw(10) << "Domain" <<
                  std::setw(30) << "Allocation ID" << std::setw(25) <<
                  "NIC ID" << std::endl;

        const Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Address> &addresses =
 outcome.GetResult().GetAddresses();
        for (const auto &address: addresses) {
            Aws::String domainString =
                    Aws::EC2::Model::DomainTypeMapper::GetNameForDomainType(
                            address.GetDomain());

            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(20) <<
                      address.GetInstanceId() << std::setw(15) <<
                      address.GetPublicIp() << std::setw(10) << domainString <<
                      std::setw(30) << address.GetAllocationId() << std::setw(25)
                      << address.GetNetworkInterfaceId() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe Elastic IP addresses:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To retrieve details about all of your Elastic IP addresses

The following `describe addresses` example displays details about your Elastic IP addresses.

```
aws ec2 describe-addresses
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Addresses": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "PublicIp": "198.51.100.0",
            "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
            "Domain": "standard"
        },
        {
            "Domain": "vpc",
            "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-12345678",
            "AssociationId": "eipassoc-12345678",
            "NetworkInterfaceOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "PublicIp": "203.0.113.0",
            "AllocationId": "eipalloc-12345678",
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.241"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To retrieve details your Elastic IP addresses for EC2-VPC

The following `describe-addresses` example displays details about your Elastic IP addresses for use with instances in a VPC.

```
aws ec2 describe-addresses \
    --filters "Name=domain,Values=vpc"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Addresses": [
        {
            "Domain": "vpc",
            "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-12345678",
            "AssociationId": "eipassoc-12345678",
            "NetworkInterfaceOwnerId": "123456789012",
            "PublicIp": "203.0.113.0",
            "AllocationId": "eipalloc-12345678",
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.241"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To retrieve details about an Elastic IP address specified by allocation ID

The following `describe-addresses` example displays details about the Elastic IP address with the specified allocation ID, which is associated with an instance in EC2-VPC.

```
aws ec2 describe-addresses \
    --allocation-ids eipalloc-282d9641
```

Output:

```
{
    "Addresses": [
        {
            "Domain": "vpc",
            "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-1a2b3c4d",
            "AssociationId": "eipassoc-123abc12",
            "NetworkInterfaceOwnerId": "1234567891012",
            "PublicIp": "203.0.113.25",
            "AllocationId": "eipalloc-282d9641",
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.251.50.12"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 4: To retrieve details about an Elastic IP address specified by its VPC private IP address

The following `describe-addresses` example displays details about the Elastic IP address associated with a particular private IP address in EC2-VPC.

```
aws ec2 describe-addresses \
    --filters "Name=private-ip-address,Values=10.251.50.12"
```

Example 5: To retrieve details about Elastic IP addresses in EC2-Classic

TThe following `describe-addresses` example displays details about your Elastic IP addresses for use in EC2-Classic.

```
aws ec2 describe-addresses \
    --filters "Name=domain,Values=standard"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Addresses": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "PublicIp": "203.0.110.25",
            "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
            "Domain": "standard"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 6: To retrieve details about an Elastic IP addresses specified by its public IP address

The following `describe-addresses` example displays details about the Elastic IP address with the value `203.0.110.25`, which is associated with an instance in EC2-Classic.

```
aws ec2 describe-addresses \
    --public-ips 203.0.110.25
```

Output:

```
{
    "Addresses": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "PublicIp": "203.0.110.25",
            "PublicIpv4Pool": "amazon",
            "Domain": "standard"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeAddressesCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified Elastic IP addresses or all of your Elastic IP
 addresses.
 * @param {{ allocationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ allocationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeAddressesCommand({
    // You can omit this property to show all addresses.
    AllocationIds: [allocationId],
  });

  try {
    const { Addresses } = await client.send(command);
    const addressList = Addresses.map((address) => ` • ${address.PublicIp}`);
    console.log("Elastic IP addresses:");
    console.log(addressList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid AllocationId.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Get-EC2Address -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            : eipalloc-12345678
AssociationId           : eipassoc-12345678
Domain                  : vpc
InstanceId              : i-87654321
NetworkInterfaceId      : eni-12345678
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId : 12345678
PrivateIpAddress        : 10.0.2.172
PublicIp                : 198.51.100.2
```

Example 2: This example describes your Elastic IP addresses for instances in a VPC. This syntax requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{ Name="domain";Values="vpc" }
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Get-EC2Address -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            :
AssociationId           :
Domain                  : standard
```

```
InstanceId              : i-12345678
NetworkInterfaceId      :
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId :
PrivateIpAddress        :
PublicIp                : 203.0.113.17
```

Example 4: This example describes your Elastic IP addresses for instances in EC2-Classic. This syntax requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{ Name="domain";Values="standard" }
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Elastic IP addresses.

```
Get-EC2Address
```

Example 6: This example returns the public and private IP for the instance id provided in filter

```
Get-EC2Address -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="instance-
id";Values="i-0c12d3f4f567ffb89"} | Select-Object PrivateIpAddress, PublicIp
```

Output:

```
PrivateIpAddress PublicIp
---------------- --------
10.0.0.99        63.36.5.227
```

Example 7: This example retrieves all the Elastic IPs with its allocation id, association id and instance ids

```
Get-EC2Address -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object InstanceId, AssociationId,
 AllocationId, PublicIp
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          AssociationId              AllocationId
 PublicIp
----------          -------------              ------------
 --------
```

```
                                                    eipalloc-012e3b456789e1fad
 17.212.120.178
i-0c123dfd3415bac67 eipassoc-0e123456bb7890bdb eipalloc-01cd23ebf45f7890c
 17.212.124.77
                                                    eipalloc-012345678eeabcfad
 17.212.225.7
i-0123d405c67e89a0c eipassoc-0c123b456783966ba eipalloc-0123cdd456a8f7892
 37.216.52.173
i-0f1bf2f34c5678d09 eipassoc-0e12934568a952d96 eipalloc-0e1c23e4d5e6789e4
 37.218.222.278
i-012e3cb4df567e8aa eipassoc-0d1b2fa4d67d03810 eipalloc-0123f456f78a01b58
 37.210.82.27
i-0123bcf4b567890e1 eipassoc-01d2345f678903fb1 eipalloc-0e1db23cfef5c45c7
 37.215.222.270
```

Example 8: This example fetches list of EC2 IP addresses matching tag key 'Category' with value 'Prod'

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{Name="tag:Category";Values="Prod"}
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            : eipalloc-0123f456f81a01b58
AssociationId           : eipassoc-0d1b23a456d103810
CustomerOwnedIp         :
CustomerOwnedIpv4Pool   :
Domain                  : vpc
InstanceId              : i-012e3cb4df567e1aa
NetworkBorderGroup      : eu-west-1
NetworkInterfaceId      : eni-0123f41d5a60d5f40
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId : 123456789012
PrivateIpAddress        : 192.168.1.84
PublicIp                : 34.250.81.29
PublicIpv4Pool          : amazon
Tags                    : {Category, Name}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Get-EC2Address -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            : eipalloc-12345678
AssociationId           : eipassoc-12345678
Domain                  : vpc
InstanceId              : i-87654321
NetworkInterfaceId      : eni-12345678
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId : 12345678
PrivateIpAddress        : 10.0.2.172
PublicIp                : 198.51.100.2
```

Example 2: This example describes your Elastic IP addresses for instances in a VPC. This syntax requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{ Name="domain";Values="vpc" }
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Get-EC2Address -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            :
AssociationId           :
Domain                  : standard
InstanceId              : i-12345678
NetworkInterfaceId      :
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId :
PrivateIpAddress        :
PublicIp                : 203.0.113.17
```

Example 4: This example describes your Elastic IP addresses for instances in EC2-Classic. This syntax requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{ Name="domain";Values="standard" }
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Elastic IP addresses.

```
Get-EC2Address
```

Example 6: This example returns the public and private IP for the instance id provided in filter

```
Get-EC2Address -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="instance-
id";Values="i-0c12d3f4f567ffb89"} | Select-Object PrivateIpAddress, PublicIp
```

Output:

```
PrivateIpAddress PublicIp
---------------- --------
10.0.0.99        63.36.5.227
```

Example 7: This example retrieves all the Elastic IPs with its allocation id, association id and instance ids

```
Get-EC2Address -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object InstanceId, AssociationId,
 AllocationId, PublicIp
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          AssociationId              AllocationId
 PublicIp
----------          -------------              ------------
 --------
                                               eipalloc-012e3b456789e1fad
 17.212.120.178
i-0c123dfd3415bac67 eipassoc-0e123456bb7890bdb eipalloc-01cd23ebf45f7890c
 17.212.124.77
                                               eipalloc-012345678eeabcfad
 17.212.225.7
i-0123d405c67e89a0c eipassoc-0c123b456783966ba eipalloc-0123cdd456a8f7892
 37.216.52.173
i-0f1bf2f34c5678d09 eipassoc-0e12934568a952d96 eipalloc-0e1c23e4d5e6789e4
 37.218.222.278
i-012e3cb4df567e8aa eipassoc-0d1b2fa4d67d03810 eipalloc-0123f456f78a01b58
 37.210.82.27
```

```
i-0123bcf4b567890e1 eipassoc-01d2345f678903fb1 eipalloc-0e1db23cfef5c45c7
 37.215.222.270
```

Example 8: This example fetches list of EC2 IP addresses matching tag key 'Category' with value 'Prod'

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{Name="tag:Category";Values="Prod"}
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            : eipalloc-0123f456f81a01b58
AssociationId           : eipassoc-0d1b23a456d103810
CustomerOwnedIp         :
CustomerOwnedIpv4Pool   :
Domain                  : vpc
InstanceId              : i-012e3cb4df567e1aa
NetworkBorderGroup      : eu-west-1
NetworkInterfaceId      : eni-0123f41d5a60d5f40
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId : 123456789012
PrivateIpAddress        : 192.168.1.84
PublicIp                : 34.250.81.29
PublicIpv4Pool          : amazon
Tags                    : {Category, Name}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeaddresses( ).                        "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
```

```
        DATA(lt_addresses) = oo_result->get_addresses( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about Elastic IP addresses.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DescribeAvailabilityZones` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAvailabilityZones`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Build and manage a resilient service
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z =>
 z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability
 zones.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! DescribeAvailabilityZones
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
```

```
int AwsDoc::EC2::describeAvailabilityZones(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest request;
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeAvailabilityZones(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left <<
                  std::setw(32) << "ZoneName" <<
                  std::setw(20) << "State" <<
                  std::setw(32) << "Region" << std::endl;

        const auto &zones =
                outcome.GetResult().GetAvailabilityZones();

        for (const auto &zone: zones) {
            Aws::String stateString =

 Aws::EC2::Model::AvailabilityZoneStateMapper::GetNameForAvailabilityZoneState(
                            zone.GetState());
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << zone.GetZoneName() <<
                      std::setw(20) << stateString <<
                      std::setw(32) << zone.GetRegionName() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe availability zones:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your Availability Zones

The following example `describe-availability-zones` displays details for the Availability Zones that are available to you. The response includes Availability Zones only for the current Region. In this example, it uses the profiles default `us-west-2` (Oregon) Region.

```
aws ec2 describe-availability-zones
```

Output:

```
{
    "AvailabilityZones": [
        {
            "State": "available",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required",
            "Messages": [],
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "ZoneName": "us-west-2a",
            "ZoneId": "usw2-az1",
            "GroupName": "us-west-2",
            "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2"
        },
        {
            "State": "available",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required",
            "Messages": [],
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "ZoneName": "us-west-2b",
            "ZoneId": "usw2-az2",
            "GroupName": "us-west-2",
            "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2"
        },
        {
            "State": "available",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required",
            "Messages": [],
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "ZoneName": "us-west-2c",
            "ZoneId": "usw2-az3",
            "GroupName": "us-west-2",
            "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2"
        },
        {
            "State": "available",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required",
```

```
            "Messages": [],
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "ZoneName": "us-west-2d",
            "ZoneId": "usw2-az4",
            "GroupName": "us-west-2",
            "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2"
        },
        {
            "State": "available",
            "OptInStatus": "opted-in",
            "Messages": [],
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "ZoneName": "us-west-2-lax-1a",
            "ZoneId": "usw2-lax1-az1",
            "GroupName": "us-west-2-lax-1",
            "NetworkBorderGroup": "us-west-2-lax-1"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the Availability Zones for the current region that are available to you.

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone
```

Output:

```
Messages    RegionName    State        ZoneName
--------    ----------    -----        --------
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2a
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2b
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2c
```

Example 2: This example describes any Availability Zones that are in an impaired state. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone -Filter @{ Name="state";Values="impaired" }
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = "impaired"

Get-EC2AvailabilityZone -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the Availability Zones for the current region that are available to you.

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone
```

Output:

```
Messages    RegionName    State        ZoneName
--------    ----------    -----        --------
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2a
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2b
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2c
```

Example 2: This example describes any Availability Zones that are in an impaired state. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone -Filter @{ Name="state";Values="impaired" }
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = "impaired"
```

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
```

```
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeavailabilityzones( ).
 " oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_zones) = oo_result->get_availabilityzones( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about Availability Zones.' TYPE 'I'.

      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DescribeBundleTasks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeBundleTasks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your bundle tasks

This example describes all of your bundle tasks.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-bundle-tasks
```

Output:

```
{
  "BundleTasks": [
    {
      "UpdateTime": "2015-09-15T13:26:54.000Z",
      "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
      "Storage": {
        "S3": {
            "Prefix": "winami",
            "Bucket": "bundletasks"
        }
      },
      "State": "bundling",
      "StartTime": "2015-09-15T13:24:35.000Z",
      "Progress": "3%",
      "BundleId": "bun-2a4e041c"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeBundleTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified bundle task.

```
Get-EC2BundleTask -BundleId bun-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the bundle tasks whose state is either 'complete' or 'failed'.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "complete", "failed" )
```

```
Get-EC2BundleTask -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see DescribeBundleTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified bundle task.

```
Get-EC2BundleTask -BundleId bun-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the bundle tasks whose state is either 'complete' or 'failed'.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "complete", "failed" )

Get-EC2BundleTask -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see DescribeBundleTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeCapacityReservations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCapacityReservations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe one or more of your capacity reservations

The following `describe-capacity-reservations` example displays details about all of your capacity reservations in the current AWS Region.

```
aws ec2 describe-capacity-reservations
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "CapacityReservations": [
        {
            "CapacityReservationId": "cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE ",
            "OwnerId": "123456789111",
            "CapacityReservationArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-
east-1:123456789111:capacity-reservation/cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use1-az2",
            "InstanceType": "c5.large",
            "InstancePlatform": "Linux/UNIX",
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "Tenancy": "default",
            "TotalInstanceCount": 1,
            "AvailableInstanceCount": 1,
            "EbsOptimized": true,
            "EphemeralStorage": false,
            "State": "active",
            "StartDate": "2024-10-23T15:00:24+00:00",
            "EndDateType": "unlimited",
            "InstanceMatchCriteria": "open",
            "CreateDate": "2024-10-23T15:00:24+00:00",
            "Tags": [],
            "CapacityAllocations": []
        },
        {
            "CapacityReservationId": "cr-abcdEXAMPLE9876ef ",
            "OwnerId": "123456789111",
            "CapacityReservationArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-
east-1:123456789111:capacity-reservation/cr-abcdEXAMPLE9876ef",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use1-az2",
            "InstanceType": "c4.large",
            "InstancePlatform": "Linux/UNIX",
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "Tenancy": "default",
            "TotalInstanceCount": 1,
            "AvailableInstanceCount": 1,
            "EbsOptimized": true,
            "EphemeralStorage": false,
            "State": "cancelled",
            "StartDate": "2024-10-23T15:01:03+00:00",
            "EndDateType": "unlimited",
            "InstanceMatchCriteria": "open",
            "CreateDate": "2024-10-23T15:01:02+00:00",
            "Tags": [],
            "CapacityAllocations": []
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe one or more of your capacity reservations

The following `describe-capacity-reservations` example displays details about the specified capacity reservation.

```
aws ec2 describe-capacity-reservations \
    --capacity-reservation-ids cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "CapacityReservations": [
        {
            "CapacityReservationId": "cr-abcdEXAMPLE9876ef ",
            "OwnerId": "123456789111",
            "CapacityReservationArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-
east-1:123456789111:capacity-reservation/cr-abcdEXAMPLE9876ef",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use1-az2",
            "InstanceType": "c4.large",
            "InstancePlatform": "Linux/UNIX",
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "Tenancy": "default",
            "TotalInstanceCount": 1,
            "AvailableInstanceCount": 1,
            "EbsOptimized": true,
            "EphemeralStorage": false,
            "State": "active",
            "StartDate": "2024-10-23T15:01:03+00:00",
            "EndDateType": "unlimited",
            "InstanceMatchCriteria": "open",
            "CreateDate": "2024-10-23T15:01:02+00:00",
            "Tags": [],
            "CapacityAllocations": []
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing a Capacity Reservation in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide for Linux Instances*.

- For API details, see DescribeCapacityReservations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes one or more of your Capacity Reservations for the region

```
Get-EC2CapacityReservation -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone       : eu-west-1b
AvailableInstanceCount : 2
CapacityReservationId  : cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
CreateDate             : 3/28/2019 9:29:41 AM
EbsOptimized           : True
EndDate                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
EndDateType            : unlimited
EphemeralStorage       : False
InstanceMatchCriteria  : open
InstancePlatform       : Windows
InstanceType           : m4.xlarge
State                  : active
Tags                   : {}
Tenancy                : default
TotalInstanceCount     : 2
```

- For API details, see DescribeCapacityReservations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes one or more of your Capacity Reservations for the region

```
Get-EC2CapacityReservation -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone       : eu-west-1b
AvailableInstanceCount : 2
CapacityReservationId  : cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
CreateDate             : 3/28/2019 9:29:41 AM
EbsOptimized           : True
EndDate                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
EndDateType            : unlimited
EphemeralStorage       : False
InstanceMatchCriteria  : open
InstancePlatform       : Windows
InstanceType           : m4.xlarge
State                  : active
Tags                   : {}
Tenancy                : default
TotalInstanceCount     : 2
```

- For API details, see DescribeCapacityReservations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeCustomerGateways` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCustomerGateways`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your customer gateways

This example describes your customer gateways.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-customer-gateways
```

Output:

```
{
    "CustomerGateways": [
```

```
        {
            "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-b4dc3961",
            "IpAddress": "203.0.113.12",
            "State": "available",
            "Type": "ipsec.1",
            "BgpAsn": "65000"
        },
        {
            "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-0e11f167",
            "IpAddress": "12.1.2.3",
            "State": "available",
            "Type": "ipsec.1",
            "BgpAsn": "65534"
        }
    ]
}
```

To describe a specific customer gateway

This example describes the specified customer gateway.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-customer-gateways --customer-gateway-ids cgw-0e11f167
```

Output:

```
{
    "CustomerGateways": [
        {
            "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-0e11f167",
            "IpAddress": "12.1.2.3",
            "State": "available",
            "Type": "ipsec.1",
            "BgpAsn": "65534"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCustomerGateways in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified customer gateway.

```
Get-EC2CustomerGateway -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
BgpAsn            : 65534
CustomerGatewayId : cgw-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress         : 203.0.113.12
State             : available
Tags              : {}
Type              : ipsec.1
```

Example 2: This example describes any customer gateway whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2CustomerGateway -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your customer gateways.

```
Get-EC2CustomerGateway
```

- For API details, see DescribeCustomerGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified customer gateway.

```
Get-EC2CustomerGateway -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
BgpAsn            : 65534
```

```
CustomerGatewayId : cgw-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress         : 203.0.113.12
State             : available
Tags              : {}
Type              : ipsec.1
```

Example 2: This example describes any customer gateway whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2CustomerGateway -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your customer gateways.

```
Get-EC2CustomerGateway
```

- For API details, see DescribeCustomerGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeDhcpOptions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDhcpOptions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe your DHCP options

The following `describe-dhcp-options` example retrieves details about your DHCP options.

```
aws ec2 describe-dhcp-options
```

Output:

```
{
    "DhcpOptions": [
```

```
        {
            "DhcpConfigurations": [
                {
                    "Key": "domain-name",
                    "Values": [
                        {
                            "Value": "us-east-2.compute.internal"
                        }
                    ]
                },
                {
                    "Key": "domain-name-servers",
                    "Values": [
                        {
                            "Value": "AmazonProvidedDNS"
                        }
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-19edf471",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "DhcpConfigurations": [
                {
                    "Key": "domain-name",
                    "Values": [
                        {
                            "Value": "us-east-2.compute.internal"
                        }
                    ]
                },
                {
                    "Key": "domain-name-servers",
                    "Values": [
                        {
                            "Value": "AmazonProvidedDNS"
                        }
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-fEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with DHCP Option Sets in the *AWS VPC User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe your DHCP options and filter the output

The following `describe-dhcp-options` example describes your DHCP options and uses a filter to return only DHCP options that have `example.com` for the domain name server. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the configuration information and ID in the output.

```
aws ec2 describe-dhcp-options \
    --filters Name=key,Values=domain-name-servers Name=value,Values=example.com \
    --query "DhcpOptions[*].[DhcpConfigurations,DhcpOptionsId]"
```

Output:

```
[
    [
        [
            {
                "Key": "domain-name",
                "Values": [
                    {
                        "Value": "example.com"
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "Key": "domain-name-servers",
                "Values": [
                    {
                        "Value": "172.16.16.16"
                    }
                ]
            }
        ],
        "dopt-001122334455667ab"
    ]
]
```

For more information, see Working with DHCP Option Sets in the *AWS VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDhcpOptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists your DHCP options sets.

```
Get-EC2DhcpOption
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                    DhcpOptionsId    Tag
------------------                    -------------    ---
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-1a2b3c4d    {}
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-2a3b4c5d    {}
{domain-name-servers}                 dopt-3a4b5c6d    {}
```

Example 2: This example gets configuration details for the specified DHCP options set.

```
(Get-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d).DhcpConfigurations
```

Output:

```
Key                     Values
---                     ------
domain-name             {abc.local}
domain-name-servers     {10.0.0.101, 10.0.0.102}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists your DHCP options sets.

```
Get-EC2DhcpOption
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                    DhcpOptionsId    Tag
------------------                    -------------    ---
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-1a2b3c4d    {}
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-2a3b4c5d    {}
{domain-name-servers}                 dopt-3a4b5c6d    {}
```

Example 2: This example gets configuration details for the specified DHCP options set.

```
(Get-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d).DhcpConfigurations
```

Output:

```
Key                    Values
---                    ------
domain-name            {abc.local}
domain-name-servers    {10.0.0.101, 10.0.0.102}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeFlowLogs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeFlowLogs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all of your flow logs

The following `describe-flow-logs` example displays details for all of your flow logs.

```
aws ec2 describe-flow-logs
```

Output:

```
{
    "FlowLogs": [
```

```
        {
            "CreationTime": "2018-02-21T13:22:12.644Z",
            "DeliverLogsPermissionArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/flow-
logs-role",
            "DeliverLogsStatus": "SUCCESS",
            "FlowLogId": "fl-aabbccdd112233445",
            "MaxAggregationInterval": 600,
            "FlowLogStatus": "ACTIVE",
            "LogGroupName": "FlowLogGroup",
            "ResourceId": "subnet-12345678901234567",
            "TrafficType": "ALL",
            "LogDestinationType": "cloud-watch-logs",
            "LogFormat": "${version} ${account-id} ${interface-id} ${srcaddr}
 ${dstaddr} ${srcport} ${dstport} ${protocol} ${packets} ${bytes} ${start} ${end}
 ${action} ${log-status}"
        },
        {
            "CreationTime": "2020-02-04T15:22:29.986Z",
            "DeliverLogsStatus": "SUCCESS",
            "FlowLogId": "fl-01234567890123456",
            "MaxAggregationInterval": 60,
            "FlowLogStatus": "ACTIVE",
            "ResourceId": "vpc-00112233445566778",
            "TrafficType": "ACCEPT",
            "LogDestinationType": "s3",
            "LogDestination": "arn:aws:s3:::my-flow-log-bucket/custom",
            "LogFormat": "${version} ${vpc-id} ${subnet-id} ${instance-id}
 ${interface-id} ${account-id} ${type} ${srcaddr} ${dstaddr} ${srcport}
 ${dstport} ${pkt-srcaddr} ${pkt-dstaddr} ${protocol} ${bytes} ${packets}
 ${start} ${end} ${action} ${tcp-flags} ${log-status}"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe a subset of your flow logs

The following `describe-flow-logs` example uses a filter to display details for only those flow logs that are in the specified log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

```
aws ec2 describe-flow-logs \
    --filter "Name=log-group-name,Values=MyFlowLogs"
```

- For API details, see DescribeFlowLogs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes one or more flow logs with log destination type 's3'

```
Get-EC2FlowLog -Filter @{Name="log-destination-type";Values="s3"}
```

Output:

```
CreationTime             : 2/25/2019 9:07:36 PM
DeliverLogsErrorMessage  :
DeliverLogsPermissionArn :
DeliverLogsStatus        : SUCCESS
FlowLogId                : fl-01b2e3d45f67f8901
FlowLogStatus            : ACTIVE
LogDestination           : arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket-dd-tata
LogDestinationType       : s3
LogGroupName             :
ResourceId               : eni-01d2dda3456b7e890
TrafficType              : ALL
```

- For API details, see DescribeFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes one or more flow logs with log destination type 's3'

```
Get-EC2FlowLog -Filter @{Name="log-destination-type";Values="s3"}
```

Output:

```
CreationTime             : 2/25/2019 9:07:36 PM
DeliverLogsErrorMessage  :
DeliverLogsPermissionArn :
DeliverLogsStatus        : SUCCESS
FlowLogId                : fl-01b2e3d45f67f8901
FlowLogStatus            : ACTIVE
LogDestination           : arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket-dd-tata
LogDestinationType       : s3
LogGroupName             :
ResourceId               : eni-01d2dda3456b7e890
```

```
TrafficType              : ALL
```

- For API details, see DescribeFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeHostReservationOfferings` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeHostReservationOfferings`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe Dedicated Host Reservation offerings

This example describes the Dedicated Host Reservations for the M4 instance family that are available to purchase.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-host-reservation-offerings --filter Name=instance-
family,Values=m4
```

Output:

```
{
  "OfferingSet": [
      {
          "HourlyPrice": "1.499",
          "OfferingId": "hro-03f707bf363b6b324",
          "InstanceFamily": "m4",
          "PaymentOption": "NoUpfront",
          "UpfrontPrice": "0.000",
          "Duration": 31536000
      },
      {
          "HourlyPrice": "1.045",
          "OfferingId": "hro-0ef9181cabdef7a02",
          "InstanceFamily": "m4",
          "PaymentOption": "NoUpfront",
          "UpfrontPrice": "0.000",
          "Duration": 94608000
      },
```

```
        {
            "HourlyPrice": "0.714",
            "OfferingId": "hro-04567a15500b92a51",
            "InstanceFamily": "m4",
            "PaymentOption": "PartialUpfront",
            "UpfrontPrice": "6254.000",
            "Duration": 31536000
        },
        {
            "HourlyPrice": "0.484",
            "OfferingId": "hro-0d5d7a9d23ed7fbfe",
            "InstanceFamily": "m4",
            "PaymentOption": "PartialUpfront",
            "UpfrontPrice": "12720.000",
            "Duration": 94608000
        },
        {
            "HourlyPrice": "0.000",
            "OfferingId": "hro-05da4108ca998c2e5",
            "InstanceFamily": "m4",
            "PaymentOption": "AllUpfront",
            "UpfrontPrice": "23913.000",
            "Duration": 94608000
        },
        {
            "HourlyPrice": "0.000",
            "OfferingId": "hro-0a9f9be3b95a3dc8f",
            "InstanceFamily": "m4",
            "PaymentOption": "AllUpfront",
            "UpfrontPrice": "12257.000",
            "Duration": 31536000
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeHostReservationOfferings in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the Dedicated Host reservations that are available to purchase for the given filter 'instance-family' where PaymentOption is 'NoUpfront'

```
Get-EC2HostReservationOffering -Filter @{Name="instance-family";Values="m4"} |
 Where-Object PaymentOption -eq NoUpfront
```

Output:

```
CurrencyCode   :
Duration       : 94608000
HourlyPrice    : 1.307
InstanceFamily : m4
OfferingId     : hro-0c1f234567890d9ab
PaymentOption  : NoUpfront
UpfrontPrice   : 0.000

CurrencyCode   :
Duration       : 31536000
HourlyPrice    : 1.830
InstanceFamily : m4
OfferingId     : hro-04ad12aaaf34b5a67
PaymentOption  : NoUpfront
UpfrontPrice   : 0.000
```

- For API details, see DescribeHostReservationOfferings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the Dedicated Host reservations that are available to purchase for the given filter 'instance-family' where PaymentOption is 'NoUpfront'

```
Get-EC2HostReservationOffering -Filter @{Name="instance-family";Values="m4"} |
 Where-Object PaymentOption -eq NoUpfront
```

Output:

```
CurrencyCode   :
Duration       : 94608000
HourlyPrice    : 1.307
InstanceFamily : m4
OfferingId     : hro-0c1f234567890d9ab
PaymentOption  : NoUpfront
UpfrontPrice   : 0.000
```

```
CurrencyCode   :
Duration       : 31536000
HourlyPrice    : 1.830
InstanceFamily : m4
OfferingId     : hro-04ad12aaaf34b5a67
PaymentOption  : NoUpfront
UpfrontPrice   : 0.000
```

- For API details, see DescribeHostReservationOfferings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeHosts` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeHosts`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view details about Dedicated Hosts

The following `describe-hosts` example displays details for the `available` Dedicated Hosts in your AWS account.

```
aws ec2 describe-hosts --filter "Name=state,Values=available"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Hosts": [
        {
            "HostId": "h-07879acf49EXAMPLE",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Value": "production",
                    "Key": "purpose"
                }
            ],
            "HostProperties": {
                "Cores": 48,
                "TotalVCpus": 96,
                "InstanceType": "m5.large",
```

```
                "Sockets": 2
            },
            "Instances": [],
            "State": "available",
            "AvailabilityZone": "eu-west-1a",
            "AvailableCapacity": {
                "AvailableInstanceCapacity": [
                    {
                        "AvailableCapacity": 48,
                        "InstanceType": "m5.large",
                        "TotalCapacity": 48
                    }
                ],
                "AvailableVCpus": 96
            },
            "HostRecovery": "on",
            "AllocationTime": "2019-08-19T08:57:44.000Z",
            "AutoPlacement": "off"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing Dedicated Hosts in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide for Linux Instances*.

- For API details, see DescribeHosts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the EC2 host details

```
Get-EC2Host
```

Output:

```
AllocationTime    : 3/23/2019 4:55:22 PM
AutoPlacement     : off
AvailabilityZone  : eu-west-1b
AvailableCapacity : Amazon.EC2.Model.AvailableCapacity
ClientToken       :
```

```
HostId            : h-01e23f4cd567890f1
HostProperties    : Amazon.EC2.Model.HostProperties
HostReservationId :
Instances         : {}
ReleaseTime       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
State             : available
Tags              : {}
```

Example 2: This example queries the AvailableInstanceCapacity for the host h-01e23f4cd567899f1

```
Get-EC2Host -HostId h-01e23f4cd567899f1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 AvailableCapacity | Select-Object -expand AvailableInstanceCapacity
```

Output:

```
AvailableCapacity InstanceType TotalCapacity
----------------- ------------ -------------
11                m4.xlarge    11
```

- For API details, see DescribeHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the EC2 host details

```
Get-EC2Host
```

Output:

```
AllocationTime    : 3/23/2019 4:55:22 PM
AutoPlacement     : off
AvailabilityZone  : eu-west-1b
AvailableCapacity : Amazon.EC2.Model.AvailableCapacity
ClientToken       :
HostId            : h-01e23f4cd567890f1
HostProperties    : Amazon.EC2.Model.HostProperties
HostReservationId :
Instances         : {}
ReleaseTime       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
State             : available
Tags              : {}
```

Example 2: This example queries the AvailableInstanceCapacity for the host h-01e23f4cd567899f1

```
Get-EC2Host -HostId h-01e23f4cd567899f1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 AvailableCapacity | Select-Object -expand AvailableInstanceCapacity
```

Output:

```
AvailableCapacity InstanceType TotalCapacity
----------------- ------------ -------------
11                m4.xlarge    11
```

- For API details, see DescribeHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
 instanceId)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe IAM instance profile associations

This example describes all of your IAM instance profile associations.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-iam-instance-profile-associations
```

Output:

```
{
  "IamInstanceProfileAssociations": [
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-09eb09efa73ec1dee",
          "State": "associated",
          "AssociationId": "iip-assoc-0db249b1f25fa24b8",
          "IamInstanceProfile": {
              "Id": "AIPAJVQN4F5WVLGCJDRGM",
              "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/admin-role"
          }
      },
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-0402909a2f4dffd14",
          "State": "associating",
          "AssociationId": "iip-assoc-0d1ec06278d29f44a",
          "IamInstanceProfile": {
              "Id": "AGJAJVQN4F5WVLGCJABCM",
              "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/user1-role"
          }
      }
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
        ],
      }),
    );
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.
```

```
        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
```

```
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance
{instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance
{instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeIdFormat` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeIdFormat`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe the ID format of a resource

The following `describe-id-format` example describes the ID format for security groups.

```
aws ec2 describe-id-format \
    --resource security-group
```

In the following example output, the `Deadline` value indicates that the deadline for this resource type to permanently switch from the short ID format to the long ID format expired at 00:00 UTC on August 15, 2018.

```
{
    "Statuses": [
        {
            "Deadline": "2018-08-15T00:00:00.000Z",
            "Resource": "security-group",
            "UseLongIds": true
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe the ID format for all resources

The following `describe-id-format` example describes the ID format for all resource types. All resource types that supported the short ID format were switched to use the long ID format.

```
aws ec2 describe-id-format
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdFormat in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Get-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance
```

Output:

```
Resource       UseLongIds
--------       ----------
instance       False
```

Example 2: This example describes the ID formats for all resource types that support longer IDs.

```
Get-EC2IdFormat
```

Output:

```
Resource       UseLongIds
--------       ----------
reservation    False
instance       False
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Get-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance
```

Output:

```
Resource       UseLongIds
--------       ----------
instance       False
```

Example 2: This example describes the ID formats for all resource types that support longer IDs.

```
Get-EC2IdFormat
```

Output:

```
Resource       UseLongIds
--------       ----------
reservation    False
instance       False
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeIdentityIdFormat` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeIdentityIdFormat`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the ID format for an IAM role

The following `describe-identity-id-format` example describes the ID format received by instances created by the IAM role `EC2Role` in your AWS account.

```
aws ec2 describe-identity-id-format \
    --principal-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role \
    --resource instance
```

The following output indicates that instances created by this role receive IDs in long ID format.

```
{
    "Statuses": [
        {
            "Deadline": "2016-12-15T00:00:00Z",
            "Resource": "instance",
            "UseLongIds": true
        }
    ]
}
```

To describe the ID format for an IAM user

The following `describe-identity-id-format` example describes the ID format received by snapshots created by the IAM user `AdminUser` in your AWS account.

```
aws ec2 describe-identity-id-format \
    --principal-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AdminUser \
    --resource snapshot
```

The output indicates that snapshots created by this user receive IDs in long ID format.

```
{
    "Statuses": [
        {
```

```
            "Deadline": "2016-12-15T00:00:00Z",
            "Resource": "snapshot",
            "UseLongIds": true
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityIdFormat in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the ID format for the resouce 'image' for the role given

```
Get-EC2IdentityIdFormat -PrincipalArn arn:aws:iam::123456789511:role/JDBC -
Resource image
```

Output:

```
Deadline             Resource UseLongIds
--------             -------- ----------
8/2/2018 11:30:00 PM image    True
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the ID format for the resouce 'image' for the role given

```
Get-EC2IdentityIdFormat -PrincipalArn arn:aws:iam::123456789511:role/JDBC -
Resource image
```

Output:

```
Deadline             Resource UseLongIds
--------             -------- ----------
8/2/2018 11:30:00 PM image    True
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeImageAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeImageAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the launch permissions for an AMI

This example describes the launch permissions for the specified AMI.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-image-attribute --image-id ami-5731123e --
attribute launchPermission
```

Output:

```
{
    "LaunchPermissions": [
        {
            "UserId": "123456789012"
        }
    ],
    "ImageId": "ami-5731123e",
}
```

To describe the product codes for an AMI

This example describes the product codes for the specified AMI. Note that this AMI has no product codes.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-image-attribute --image-id ami-5731123e --attribute productCodes
```

Output:

```
{
    "ProductCodes": [],
    "ImageId": "ami-5731123e",
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeImageAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the description for the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute description
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         : My image description
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     :
```

Example 2: This example gets the launch permissions for the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         :
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {all}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
```

```
SriovNetSupport     :
```

Example 3: This example test whether enhanced networking is enabled.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         :
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     : simple
```

- For API details, see DescribeImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the description for the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute description
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         : My image description
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     :
```

Example 2: This example gets the launch permissions for the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         :
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {all}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     :
```

Example 3: This example test whether enhanced networking is enabled.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         :
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     : simple
```

- For API details, see DescribeImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeImages` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeImages`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_images
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 images.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_ids - A space-separated  list of image IDs (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_images() {
  local image_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_images"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 images."
    echo "  -i image_ids - A space-separated list of image IDs (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$image_ids" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--image-ids" $image_ids)
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-images \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    --query 'Images[*].[Description,Architecture,ImageId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-images operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
```

```
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe an AMI

The following `describe-images` example describes the specified AMI in the specified Region.

```
aws ec2 describe-images \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --image-ids ami-1234567890EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "Images": [
        {
            "VirtualizationType": "hvm",
            "Description": "Provided by Red Hat, Inc.",
            "PlatformDetails": "Red Hat Enterprise Linux",
            "EnaSupport": true,
            "Hypervisor": "xen",
            "State": "available",
            "SriovNetSupport": "simple",
            "ImageId": "ami-1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "UsageOperation": "RunInstances:0010",
            "BlockDeviceMappings": [
                {
                    "DeviceName": "/dev/sda1",
                    "Ebs": {
                        "SnapshotId": "snap-111222333444aaabb",
                        "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                        "VolumeType": "gp2",
                        "VolumeSize": 10,
                        "Encrypted": false
                    }
                }
            ],
            "Architecture": "x86_64",
            "ImageLocation": "123456789012/RHEL-8.0.0_HVM-20190618-x86_64-1-
Hourly2-GP2",
            "RootDeviceType": "ebs",
```

```
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "RootDeviceName": "/dev/sda1",
            "CreationDate": "2019-05-10T13:17:12.000Z",
            "Public": true,
            "ImageType": "machine",
            "Name": "RHEL-8.0.0_HVM-20190618-x86_64-1-Hourly2-GP2"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Amazon Machine Images (AMI) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe AMIs based on filters

The following `describe-images` example describes Windows AMIs provided by Amazon that are backed by Amazon EBS.

```
aws ec2 describe-images \
    --owners amazon \
    --filters "Name=platform,Values=windows" "Name=root-device-type,Values=ebs"
```

For an example of the output for `describe-images`, see Example 1.

For additional examples using filters, see Listing and filtering your resources in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe AMIs based on tags

The following `describe-images` example describes all AMIs that have the tag `Type=Custom`. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the AMI IDs.

```
aws ec2 describe-images \
    --filters "Name=tag:Type,Values=Custom" \
    --query 'Images[*].[ImageId]' \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
ami-1234567890EXAMPLE
ami-0abcdef1234567890
```

For additional examples using tag filters, see Working with tags in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, paginateDescribeImages } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified images (AMIs, AKIs, and ARIs) available to you or all
 of the images available to you.
 * @param {{ architecture: string, pageSize: number }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ architecture, pageSize }) => {
  pageSize = Number.parseInt(pageSize);
  const client = new EC2Client({});

  // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
  const paginator = paginateDescribeImages(
    // Without limiting the page size, this call can take a long time. pageSize
 is just sugar for
    // the MaxResults property in the base command.
    { client, pageSize },
    {
      // There are almost 70,000 images available. Be specific with your
 filtering
      // to increase efficiency.
      // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/clients/
client-ec2/interfaces/describeimagescommandinput.html#filters
      Filters: [{ Name: "architecture", Values: [architecture] }],
    },
  );
```

```
  /**
   * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Image[]}
   */
  const images = [];
  let recordsScanned = 0;

  try {
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      recordsScanned += pageSize;
      if (page.Images.length) {
        images.push(...page.Images);
        break;
      }
      console.log(
        `No matching image found yet. Searched ${recordsScanned} records.`,
      );
    }

    if (images.length) {
      console.log(
        `Found ${images.length} images:\n\n${images.map((image) =>
 image.Name).join("\n")}\n`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(
        `No matching images found. Searched ${recordsScanned} records.\n`,
      );
    }

    return images;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
      return [];
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2Image -ImageId ami-12345678
```

Output:

```
Architecture        : x86_64
BlockDeviceMappings : {/dev/xvda}
CreationDate        : 2014-10-20T00:56:28.000Z
Description         : My image
Hypervisor          : xen
ImageId             : ami-12345678
ImageLocation       : 123456789012/my-image
ImageOwnerAlias     :
ImageType           : machine
KernelId            :
Name                : my-image
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Platform            :
ProductCodes        : {}
Public              : False
RamdiskId           :
RootDeviceName      : /dev/xvda
RootDeviceType      : ebs
SriovNetSupport     : simple
State               : available
StateReason         :
Tags                : {Name}
VirtualizationType  : hvm
```

Example 2: This example describes the AMIs that you own.

```
Get-EC2Image -owner self
```

Example 3: This example describes the public AMIs that run Microsoft Windows Server.

```
Get-EC2Image -Filter @{ Name="platform"; Values="windows" }
```

Example 4: This example describes all public AMIs in the 'us-west-2' region.

```
Get-EC2Image -Region us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2Image -ImageId ami-12345678
```

Output:

```
Architecture        : x86_64
BlockDeviceMappings : {/dev/xvda}
CreationDate        : 2014-10-20T00:56:28.000Z
Description         : My image
Hypervisor          : xen
ImageId             : ami-12345678
ImageLocation       : 123456789012/my-image
ImageOwnerAlias     :
ImageType           : machine
KernelId            :
Name                : my-image
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Platform            :
ProductCodes        : {}
Public              : False
RamdiskId           :
RootDeviceName      : /dev/xvda
RootDeviceType      : ebs
SriovNetSupport     : simple
State               : available
StateReason         :
Tags                : {Name}
VirtualizationType  : hvm
```

Example 2: This example describes the AMIs that you own.

```
Get-EC2Image -owner self
```

Example 3: This example describes the public AMIs that run Microsoft Windows Server.

```
Get-EC2Image -Filter @{ Name="platform"; Values="windows" }
```

Example 4: This example describes all public AMIs in the 'us-west-2' region.

```
Get-EC2Image -Region us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
```

```
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def get_images(self, image_ids: List[str]) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) from a list of AMI
IDs.

        :param image_ids: The list of AMI IDs to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing the requested AMIs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_images(ImageIds=image_ids)
            images = response["Images"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to stop AMI(s): {','.join(map(str,
image_ids))}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAMIID.NotFound":
                logger.error("One or more of the AMI IDs does not exist.")
            raise
        return images
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn list_images(&self, ids: Vec<Parameter>) -> Result<Vec<Image>,
EC2Error> {
        let image_ids = ids.into_iter().filter_map(|p| p.value).collect();
        let output = self
            .client
            .describe_images()
            .set_image_ids(Some(image_ids))
            .send()
            .await?;

        let images = output.images.unwrap_or_default();
        if images.is_empty() {
            Err(EC2Error::new("No images for selected AMIs"))
        } else {
            Ok(images)
        }
    }
```

Using the list_images function with SSM to limit based on your environment. For more details on SSM, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/example_ssm_GetParameters_section.html.

```
    async fn find_image(&mut self) -> Result<ScenarioImage, EC2Error> {
        let params: Vec<Parameter> = self
            .ssm
            .list_path("/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest")
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find parameters for available
images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .filter(|param| param.name().is_some_and(|name|
name.contains("amzn2")))
            .collect();
        let amzn2_images: Vec<ScenarioImage> = self
            .ec2
            .list_images(params)
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .map(ScenarioImage::from)
            .collect();
```

```
        println!("We will now create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI");
        let ami = self.util.select_scenario_image(amzn2_images)?;
        Ok(ami)
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Return an array of `EC2ClientTypes.Image` objects describing all of
    /// the images in the specified array.
    ///
    /// - Parameter idList: A list of image ID strings indicating the images
    ///   to return details about.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of the images.
    func describeImages(_ idList: [String]) async -> [EC2ClientTypes.Image] {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeImages(
                input: DescribeImagesInput(
                    imageIds: idList
                )
            )

            guard let images = output.images else {
                print("*** No images found.")
                return []
            }

            for image in images {
                guard let id = image.imageId else {
```

```
                    continue
                }
                print("   \(id): \(image.description ?? "<no description>")")
            }

            return images
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image descriptions:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeImportImageTasks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeImportImageTasks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To monitor an import image task

The following `describe-import-image-tasks` example checks the status of the specified import image task.

```
aws ec2 describe-import-image-tasks \
    --import-task-ids import-ami-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output for an import image task that is in progress.

```
{
    "ImportImageTasks": [
        {
            "ImportTaskId": "import-ami-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Progress": "28",
            "SnapshotDetails": [
                {
```

```
                    "DiskImageSize": 705638400.0,
                    "Format": "ova",
                    "Status": "completed",
                    "UserBucket": {
                        "S3Bucket": "my-import-bucket",
                        "S3Key": "vms/my-server-vm.ova"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "Status": "active",
            "StatusMessage": "converting"
        }
    ]
}
```

Output for an import image task that is completed. The ID of the resulting AMI is provided by `ImageId`.

```
{
    "ImportImageTasks": [
        {
            "ImportTaskId": "import-ami-1234567890abcdef0",
            "ImageId": "ami-1234567890abcdef0",
            "SnapshotDetails": [
                {
                    "DiskImageSize": 705638400.0,
                    "Format": "ova",
                    "SnapshotId": "snap-1234567890abcdef0"
                    "Status": "completed",
                    "UserBucket": {
                        "S3Bucket": "my-import-bucket",
                        "S3Key": "vms/my-server-vm.ova"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "Status": "completed"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportImageTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified image import task.

```
Get-EC2ImportImageTask -ImportTaskId import-ami-hgfedcba
```

Output:

```
Architecture    : x86_64
Description     : Windows Image 2
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         : ami-1a2b3c4d
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-hgfedcba
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {/dev/sda1}
Status          : completed
StatusMessage   :
```

Example 2: This example describes all your image import tasks.

```
Get-EC2ImportImageTask
```

Output:

```
Architecture    :
Description     : Windows Image 1
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         :
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-abcdefgh
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {}
Status          : deleted
StatusMessage   : User initiated task cancelation

Architecture    : x86_64
```

```
Description     : Windows Image 2
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         : ami-1a2b3c4d
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-hgfedcba
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {/dev/sda1}
Status          : completed
StatusMessage   :
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportImageTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified image import task.

```
Get-EC2ImportImageTask -ImportTaskId import-ami-hgfedcba
```

Output:

```
Architecture    : x86_64
Description     : Windows Image 2
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         : ami-1a2b3c4d
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-hgfedcba
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {/dev/sda1}
Status          : completed
StatusMessage   :
```

Example 2: This example describes all your image import tasks.

```
Get-EC2ImportImageTask
```

Output:

```
Architecture    :
Description     : Windows Image 1
```

```
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         :
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-abcdefgh
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {}
Status          : deleted
StatusMessage   : User initiated task cancelation

Architecture    : x86_64
Description     : Windows Image 2
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         : ami-1a2b3c4d
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-hgfedcba
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {/dev/sda1}
Status          : completed
StatusMessage   :
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportImageTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeImportSnapshotTasks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeImportSnapshotTasks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To monitor an import snapshot task

The following `describe-import-snapshot-tasks` example checks the status of the specified import snapshot task.

```
aws ec2 describe-import-snapshot-tasks \
    --import-task-ids import-snap-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output for an import snapshot task that is in progress:

```
{
    "ImportSnapshotTasks": [
        {
            "Description": "My server VMDK",
            "ImportTaskId": "import-snap-1234567890abcdef0",
            "SnapshotTaskDetail": {
                "Description": "My server VMDK",
                "DiskImageSize": "705638400.0",
                "Format": "VMDK",
                "Progress": "42",
                "Status": "active",
                "StatusMessage": "downloading/converting",
                "UserBucket": {
                    "S3Bucket": "my-import-bucket",
                    "S3Key": "vms/my-server-vm.vmdk"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Output for an import snapshot task that is completed. The ID of the resulting snapshot is provided by `SnapshotId`.

```
{
    "ImportSnapshotTasks": [
        {
            "Description": "My server VMDK",
            "ImportTaskId": "import-snap-1234567890abcdef0",
            "SnapshotTaskDetail": {
                "Description": "My server VMDK",
                "DiskImageSize": "705638400.0",
                "Format": "VMDK",
                "SnapshotId": "snap-1234567890abcdef0"
                "Status": "completed",
                "UserBucket": {
                    "S3Bucket": "my-import-bucket",
                    "S3Key": "vms/my-server-vm.vmdk"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportSnapshotTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified snapshot import task.

```
Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask -ImportTaskId import-snap-abcdefgh
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import 1     import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

Example 2: This example describes all your snapshot import tasks.

```
Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import 1     import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
Disk Image Import 2     import-snap-hgfedcba
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportSnapshotTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified snapshot import task.

```
Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask -ImportTaskId import-snap-abcdefgh
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import 1     import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

Example 2: This example describes all your snapshot import tasks.

```
Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import 1     import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
Disk Image Import 2     import-snap-hgfedcba
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportSnapshotTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstanceAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstanceAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the instance type

This example describes the instance type of the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute instanceType
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0"
    "InstanceType": {
        "Value": "t1.micro"
    }
}
```

To describe the disableApiTermination attribute

This example describes the `disableApiTermination` attribute of the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute disableApiTermination
```

Output:

```
{
"InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0"
    "DisableApiTermination": {
        "Value": "false"
    }
}
```

To describe the block device mapping for an instance

This example describes the `blockDeviceMapping` attribute of the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute blockDeviceMapping
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0"
    "BlockDeviceMappings": [
        {
            "DeviceName": "/dev/sda1",
            "Ebs": {
                "Status": "attached",
                "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
                "AttachTime": "2013-05-17T22:42:34.000Z"
            }
        },
        {
            "DeviceName": "/dev/sdf",
            "Ebs": {
                "Status": "attached",
                "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
                "AttachTime": "2013-09-10T23:07:00.000Z"
            }
        }
    ],
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the instance type of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute instanceType
```

Output:

```
InstanceType                      : t2.micro
```

Example 2: This example describes whether enhanced networking is enabled for the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Output:

```
SriovNetSupport                   : simple
```

Example 3: This example describes the security groups for the specified instance.

```
(Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute groupSet).Groups
```

Output:

```
GroupId
-------
sg-12345678
sg-45678901
```

Example 4: This example describes whether EBS optimization is enabled for the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute ebsOptimized
```

Output:

```
EbsOptimized                      : False
```

Example 5: This example describes the 'disableApiTermination' attribute of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute disableApiTermination
```

Output:

```
DisableApiTermination             : False
```

Example 6: This example describes the 'instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior' attribute of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
```

Output:

```
InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior : stop
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the instance type of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute instanceType
```

Output:

```
InstanceType                      : t2.micro
```

Example 2: This example describes whether enhanced networking is enabled for the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Output:

```
SriovNetSupport                   : simple
```

Example 3: This example describes the security groups for the specified instance.

```
(Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute groupSet).Groups
```

Output:

```
GroupId
-------
sg-12345678
sg-45678901
```

Example 4: This example describes whether EBS optimization is enabled for the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute ebsOptimized
```

Output:

```
EbsOptimized                      : False
```

Example 5: This example describes the 'disableApiTermination' attribute of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute disableApiTermination
```

Output:

```
DisableApiTermination             : False
```

Example 6: This example describes the 'instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior' attribute of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
```

Output:

```
InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior : stop
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstanceStatus` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstanceStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the status of an instance

The following `describe-instance-status` example describes the current status of the specified instance.

```
aws ec2 describe-instance-status \
    --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceStatuses": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "InstanceState": {
                "Code": 16,
                "Name": "running"
            },
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
            "SystemStatus": {
                "Status": "ok",
                "Details": [
                    {
                        "Status": "passed",
                        "Name": "reachability"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "InstanceStatus": {
                "Status": "ok",
                "Details": [
                    {
                        "Status": "passed",
                        "Name": "reachability"
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Monitor the status of your instances in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the status of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceStatus -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
Events           : {}
InstanceId       : i-12345678
InstanceState    : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
Status           : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceStatusSummary
SystemStatus     : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceStatusSummary
```

```
$status = Get-EC2InstanceStatus -InstanceId i-12345678
$status.InstanceState
```

Output:

```
Code    Name
----    ----
16      running
```

```
$status.Status
```

Output:

```
Details           Status
-------           ------
{reachability}    ok
```

```
$status.SystemStatus
```

Output:

```
Details           Status
```

```
-------           ------
{reachability}    ok
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the status of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceStatus -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
Events           : {}
InstanceId       : i-12345678
InstanceState    : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
Status           : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceStatusSummary
SystemStatus     : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceStatusSummary
```

```
$status = Get-EC2InstanceStatus -InstanceId i-12345678
$status.InstanceState
```

Output:

```
Code    Name
----    ----
16      running
```

```
$status.Status
```

Output:

```
Details           Status
-------           ------
{reachability}    ok
```

```
$status.SystemStatus
```

Output:

```
Details           Status
-------           ------
{reachability}    ok
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_all_events(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_regions().send().await.unwrap();

    for region in resp.regions.unwrap_or_default() {
        let reg: &'static str =
 Box::leak(Box::from(region.region_name().unwrap()));
        let region_provider =
 RegionProviderChain::default_provider().or_else(reg);
        let config = aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
        let new_client = Client::new(&config);

        let resp = new_client.describe_instance_status().send().await;

        println!("Instances in region {}:", reg);
        println!();

        for status in resp.unwrap().instance_statuses() {
            println!(
                "  Events scheduled for instance ID: {}",
                status.instance_id().unwrap_or_default()
            );
            for event in status.events() {
```

```
                println!("    Event ID:     {}",
 event.instance_event_id().unwrap());
                println!("    Description:  {}", event.description().unwrap());
                println!("    Event code:   {}", event.code().unwrap().as_ref());
                println!();
            }
        }
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceStatus in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeInstanceTypes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the instance types available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of instance type information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceTypeInfo>>
 DescribeInstanceTypes(ArchitectureValues architecture)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeInstanceTypesRequest();

            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter("processor-info.supported-architecture",
                    new List<string> { architecture.ToString() })
            };
            filters.Add(new Filter("instance-type", new() { "*.micro",
"*.small" }));

            request.Filters = filters;
            var instanceTypes = new List<InstanceTypeInfo>();

            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstanceTypes(request);
            await foreach (var instanceType in paginator.InstanceTypes)
            {
                instanceTypes.Add(instanceType);
            }

            return instanceTypes;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Parameters are invalid. Ensure architecture and size
strings conform to DescribeInstanceTypes API reference.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# ec2_describe_instance_types
#
# This function describes EC2 instance types filtered by processor architecture
# and optionally by instance type. It takes the following arguments:
#
# -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture (e.g.,
 x86_64)
# -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance types (e.g.,
 t2.micro)
# -h, --help                       Show the usage help
#
# The function prints the instance type and supported architecture for each
# matching instance type.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_instance_types() {
  local architecture=""
  local instance_types=""

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "Usage: ec2_describe_instance_types [-a|--architecture ARCHITECTURE] [-
t|--type INSTANCE_TYPE] [-h|--help]"
    echo "  -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture
 (e.g., x86_64)"
    echo "  -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance
 types (e.g., t2.micro)"
    echo "  -h, --help                       Show this help message"
  }

  while [[ $# -gt 0 ]]; do
    case "$1" in
```

```
      -a | --architecture)
        architecture="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -t | --type)
        instance_types="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -h | --help)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      *)
        echo "Unknown argument: $1"
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$architecture" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Architecture not specified."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_types" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Instance type not specified."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local tmp_json_file="temp_ec2.json"
  echo -n '[
    {
      "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
      "Values": [' >"$tmp_json_file"

  local items
  IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$architecture"
  local array_size
  array_size=${#items[@]}
  for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
    echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
```

```
      echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    fi
  done
  echo -n ']},
    {
    "Name": "instance-type",
      "Values": [' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$instance_types"
  local array_size
  array_size=${#items[@]}
  for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
    echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
      echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    fi
  done

  echo -n ']}]' >>"$tmp_json_file"

  local response
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instance-types --filters file://"$tmp_json_file" \
    --query 'InstanceTypes[*].[InstanceType]' --output text)

  local error_code=$?

  rm "$tmp_json_file"

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    echo "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instance-types operation failed."
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
```

```
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe an instance type

The following `describe-instance-types` example displays details for the specified instance type.

```
aws ec2 describe-instance-types \
    --instance-types t2.micro
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceTypes": [
        {
            "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
            "CurrentGeneration": true,
            "FreeTierEligible": true,
            "SupportedUsageClasses": [
                "on-demand",
                "spot"
            ],
            "SupportedRootDeviceTypes": [
                "ebs"
            ],
            "BareMetal": false,
            "Hypervisor": "xen",
            "ProcessorInfo": {
                "SupportedArchitectures": [
                    "i386",
                    "x86_64"
                ],
                "SustainedClockSpeedInGhz": 2.5
            },
            "VCpuInfo": {
                "DefaultVCpus": 1,
                "DefaultCores": 1,
                "DefaultThreadsPerCore": 1,
                "ValidCores": [
                    1
                ],
```

```
                "ValidThreadsPerCore": [
                    1
                ]
            },
            "MemoryInfo": {
                "SizeInMiB": 1024
            },
            "InstanceStorageSupported": false,
            "EbsInfo": {
                "EbsOptimizedSupport": "unsupported",
                "EncryptionSupport": "supported"
            },
            "NetworkInfo": {
                "NetworkPerformance": "Low to Moderate",
                "MaximumNetworkInterfaces": 2,
                "Ipv4AddressesPerInterface": 2,
                "Ipv6AddressesPerInterface": 2,
                "Ipv6Supported": true,
                "EnaSupport": "unsupported"
            },
            "PlacementGroupInfo": {
                "SupportedStrategies": [
                    "partition",
                    "spread"
                ]
            },
            "HibernationSupported": false,
            "BurstablePerformanceSupported": true,
            "DedicatedHostsSupported": false,
            "AutoRecoverySupported": true
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Instance Types in *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide for Linux Instances*.

Example 2: To filter the available instance types

You can specify a filter to scope the results to instance types that have a specific characteristic. The following `describe-instance-types` example lists the instance types that support hibernation.

```
aws ec2 describe-instance-types \
    --filters Name=hibernation-supported,Values=true --query
 'InstanceTypes[*].InstanceType'
```

Output:

```
[
    "m5.8xlarge",
    "r3.large",
    "c3.8xlarge",
    "r5.large",
    "m4.4xlarge",
    "c4.large",
    "m5.xlarge",
    "m4.xlarge",
    "c3.large",
    "c4.8xlarge",
    "c4.4xlarge",
    "c5.xlarge",
    "c5.12xlarge",
    "r5.4xlarge",
    "c5.4xlarge"
]
```

For more information, see Instance Types in *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide for Linux Instances*.

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Asynchronously retrieves the instance types available in the current AWS
region.
    * <p>
    * This method uses the AWS SDK's asynchronous API to fetch the available
instance types
    * and then processes the response. It logs the memory information, network
information,
    * and instance type for each instance type returned. Additionally, it
returns a
    * {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type string for
the "t2.2xlarge"
    * instance type, if it is found in the response. If the "t2.2xlarge"
instance type is not
    * found, an empty string is returned.
    * </p>
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type
string for the
    * "t2.2xlarge" instance type, or an empty string if the instance type is not
found
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> getInstanceTypesAsync() {
       DescribeInstanceTypesRequest typesRequest =
DescribeInstanceTypesRequest.builder()
           .maxResults(10)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeInstanceTypesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               List<InstanceTypeInfo> instanceTypes = resp.instanceTypes();
               for (InstanceTypeInfo type : instanceTypes) {
                   logger.info("The memory information of this type is " +
type.memoryInfo().sizeInMiB());
                   logger.info("Network information is " +
type.networkInfo().toString());
                   logger.info("Instance type is " +
type.instanceType().toString());
               }
           } else {
               throw (RuntimeException) ex;
           }
       });
```

```
        return response.thenApply(resp -> {
            for (InstanceTypeInfo type : resp.instanceTypes()) {
                String instanceType = type.instanceType().toString();
                if (instanceType.equals("t2.2xlarge")) {
                    return instanceType;
                }
            }
            return "";
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, paginateDescribeInstanceTypes } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified instance types. By default, all instance types for the
 * current Region are described. Alternatively, you can filter the results.
 * @param {{ pageSize: string, supportedArch: string[], freeTier: boolean }}
 options
 */
export const main = async ({ pageSize, supportedArch, freeTier }) => {
  pageSize = Number.parseInt(pageSize);
  const client = new EC2Client({});

  // The paginate function is a wrapper around the underlying command.
  const paginator = paginateDescribeInstanceTypes(
    // Without limiting the page size, this call can take a long time. pageSize
 is just sugar for
    // the MaxResults property in the underlying command.
```

```
    { client, pageSize },
    {
      Filters: [
        {
          Name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
          Values: supportedArch,
        },
        { Name: "free-tier-eligible", Values: [freeTier ? "true" : "false"] },
      ],
    },
  );

  try {
    /**
     * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').InstanceTypeInfo[]}
     */
    const instanceTypes = [];

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      if (page.InstanceTypes.length) {
        instanceTypes.push(...page.InstanceTypes);

        // When we have at least 1 result, we can stop.
        if (instanceTypes.length >= 1) {
          break;
        }
      }
    }
    console.log(
      `Memory size in MiB for matching instance types:\n\n
${instanceTypes.map((it) => `${it.InstanceType}: ${it.MemoryInfo.SizeInMiB}
 MiB`).join("\n")}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
      return [];
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get a list of instance types.
suspend fun getInstanceTypesSc(): String {
    var instanceType = ""
    val filterObs = ArrayList<Filter>()
    val filter =
        Filter {
            name = "processor-info.supported-architecture"
            values = listOf("arm64")
        }

    filterObs.add(filter)
    val typesRequest =
        DescribeInstanceTypesRequest {
            filters = filterObs
            maxResults = 10
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest)
        response.instanceTypes?.forEach { type ->
            println("The memory information of this type is
 ${type.memoryInfo?.sizeInMib}")
            println("Maximum number of network cards is
 ${type.networkInfo?.maximumNetworkCards}")
            instanceType = type.instanceType.toString()
        }
        return instanceType
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)
```

```
    def get_instance_types(
        self, architecture: str = "x86_64", sizes: List[str] = ["*.micro",
 "*.small"]
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets instance types that support the specified architecture and size.
        See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/
API_DescribeInstanceTypes.html
        for a list of allowable parameters.

        :param architecture: The architecture supported by instance types.
 Default: 'x86_64'.
        :param sizes: The size of instance types. Default: '*.micro', '*.small',
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing instance types that support
 the specified architecture and size.
        """
        try:
            inst_types = []
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instance_types")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {
                        "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
                        "Values": [architecture],
                    },
                    {"Name": "instance-type", "Values": sizes},
                ]
            ):
                inst_types += page["InstanceTypes"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to get instance types: {architecture},
 {','.join(map(str, sizes))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                logger.error(
                    "Parameters are invalid. "
                    "Ensure architecture and size strings conform to
 DescribeInstanceTypes API reference."
                )
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return inst_types
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// List instance types that match an image's architecture and are free tier
eligible.
   pub async fn list_instance_types(&self, image: &Image) ->
Result<Vec<InstanceType>, EC2Error> {
       let architecture = format!(
           "{}",
           image.architecture().ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!(
               "Image {:?} does not have a listed architecture",
               image.image_id()
           )))?
       );
       let free_tier_eligible_filter = Filter::builder()
           .name("free-tier-eligible")
           .values("false")
           .build();
       let supported_architecture_filter = Filter::builder()
           .name("processor-info.supported-architecture")
           .values(architecture)
           .build();
       let response = self
           .client
           .describe_instance_types()
           .filters(free_tier_eligible_filter)
           .filters(supported_architecture_filter)
           .send()
           .await?;
```

```
        Ok(response
            .instance_types
            .unwrap_or_default()
            .into_iter()
            .filter_map(|iti| iti.instance_type)
            .collect())
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Return a list of instance types matching the specified architecture
    /// and instance sizes.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - architecture: The architecture of the instance types to return, as
    ///     a member of `EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues`.
    ///   - sizes: An array of one or more strings identifying sizes of
    ///     instance type to accept.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo` records
    ///   describing the instance types matching the given requirements.
    func getMatchingInstanceTypes(architecture: EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues
 = EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues.x8664,
                          sizes: [String] = ["*.micro", "*.small"]) async
                          -> [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] {
        var instanceTypes: [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] = []

        let archFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
```

```
            name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
            values: [architecture.rawValue]
        )
        let sizeFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
            name: "instance-type",
            values: sizes
        )

        do {
            let pages = ec2Client.describeInstanceTypesPaginated(
                input: DescribeInstanceTypesInput(
                    filters: [archFilter, sizeFilter]
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let types = page.instanceTypes else {
                    return []
                }

                instanceTypes += types
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image types: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return instanceTypes
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Build and manage a resilient service

- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information about EC2 instances with a particular state.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="tagName">The name of the tag to filter on.</param>
/// <param name="tagValue">The value of the tag to look for.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> GetInstancesWithState(string state)
{
    try
    {
        // Filters the results of the instance list.
        var filters = new List<Filter>
        {
            new Filter
            {
                Name = $"instance-state-name",
                Values = new List<string> { state, },
            },
        };
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest { Filters = filters, };

        Console.WriteLine($"\nShowing instances with state {state}");
        var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstances(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginator.Responses)
        {
            foreach (var reservation in response.Reservations)
            {
                foreach (var instance in reservation.Instances)
                {
```

```
                        Console.Write($"Instance ID: {instance.InstanceId} ");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tCurrent State:
{instance.State.Name}");
                    }
                }
            }

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Invalid parameter value for filtering instances.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list instances because: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_instances
#
```

```
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional).
#       -q query - The query to filter the response (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_describe_instances() {
  local instance_id query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_instances"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional)."
    echo "  -q query - The query to filter the response (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$instance_id" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--instance-ids" $instance_id)
  fi

  local query_arg=""
  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    query_arg="--query '$query'"
  else
    query_arg="--query Reservations[*].Instances[*].
[InstanceId,ImageId,InstanceType,KeyName,VpcId,PublicIpAddress,State.Name]"
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instances \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    $query_arg \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}
```

```
###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances associated
 with an account.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeInstances(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesRequest request;
    bool header = false;
    bool done = false;
    while (!done) {
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeInstances(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                          std::setw(48) << "Name" <<
                          std::setw(20) << "ID" <<
                          std::setw(25) << "Ami" <<
                          std::setw(15) << "Type" <<
                          std::setw(15) << "State" <<
                          std::setw(15) << "Monitoring" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Reservation> &reservations =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetReservations();

            for (const auto &reservation: reservations) {
                const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
```

```
                        reservation.GetInstances();
                for (const auto &instance: instances) {
                    Aws::String instanceStateString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceStateNameMapper::GetNameForInstanceStateName(
                                    instance.GetState().GetName());

                    Aws::String typeString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceTypeMapper::GetNameForInstanceType(
                                    instance.GetInstanceType());

                    Aws::String monitorString =

Aws::EC2::Model::MonitoringStateMapper::GetNameForMonitoringState(
                                    instance.GetMonitoring().GetState());
                    Aws::String name = "Unknown";

                    const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags =
instance.GetTags();
                    auto nameIter = std::find_if(tags.cbegin(), tags.cend(),
                                                 [](const Aws::EC2::Model::Tag
&tag) {
                                                     return tag.GetKey() ==
"Name";
                                                 });
                    if (nameIter != tags.cend()) {
                        name = nameIter->GetValue();
                    }
                    std::cout <<
                              std::setw(48) << name <<
                              std::setw(20) << instance.GetInstanceId() <<
                              std::setw(25) << instance.GetImageId() <<
                              std::setw(15) << typeString <<
                              std::setw(15) << instanceStateString <<
                              std::setw(15) << monitorString << std::endl;
                }
            }

            if (!outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken().empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken());
            } else {
                done = true;
            }
```

```
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to describe EC2 instances:" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe an instance

The following `describe-instances` example describes the specified instance.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "Reservations": [
        {
            "Groups": [],
            "Instances": [
                {
                    "AmiLaunchIndex": 0,
                    "ImageId": "ami-0abcdef1234567890",
                    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
                    "InstanceType": "t3.nano",
                    "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
                    "LaunchTime": "2022-11-15T10:48:59+00:00",
                    "Monitoring": {
                        "State": "disabled"
                    },
                    "Placement": {
                        "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-2a",
```

```
                        "GroupName": "",
                        "Tenancy": "default"
                    },
                    "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-0-157.us-east-2.compute.internal",
                    "PrivateIpAddress": "10-0-0-157",
                    "ProductCodes": [],
                    "PublicDnsName": "ec2-34-253-223-13.us-
east-2.compute.amazonaws.com",
                    "PublicIpAddress": "34.253.223.13",
                    "State": {
                        "Code": 16,
                        "Name": "running"
                    },
                    "StateTransitionReason": "",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-04a636d18e83cfacb",
                    "VpcId": "vpc-1234567890abcdef0",
                    "Architecture": "x86_64",
                    "BlockDeviceMappings": [
                        {
                            "DeviceName": "/dev/xvda",
                            "Ebs": {
                                "AttachTime": "2022-11-15T10:49:00+00:00",
                                "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                                "Status": "attached",
                                "VolumeId": "vol-02e6ccdca7de29cf2"
                            }
                        }
                    ],
                    "ClientToken": "1234abcd-1234-abcd-1234-d46a8903e9bc",
                    "EbsOptimized": true,
                    "EnaSupport": true,
                    "Hypervisor": "xen",
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:instance-profile/
AmazonSSMRoleForInstancesQuickSetup",
                        "Id": "11111111111111111111"
                    },
                    "NetworkInterfaces": [
                        {
                            "Association": {
                                "IpOwnerId": "amazon",
                                "PublicDnsName": "ec2-34-253-223-13.us-
east-2.compute.amazonaws.com",
                                "PublicIp": "34.253.223.13"
```

```
                            },
                            "Attachment": {
                                "AttachTime": "2022-11-15T10:48:59+00:00",
                                "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-1234567890abcdefg",
                                "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                                "DeviceIndex": 0,
                                "Status": "attached",
                                "NetworkCardIndex": 0
                            },
                            "Description": "",
                            "Groups": [
                                {
                                    "GroupName": "launch-wizard-146",
                                    "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdefg"
                                }
                            ],
                            "Ipv6Addresses": [],
                            "MacAddress": "00:11:22:33:44:55",
                            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-1234567890abcdefg",
                            "OwnerId": "104024344472",
                            "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-0-157.us-
east-2.compute.internal",
                            "PrivateIpAddress": "10-0-0-157",
                            "PrivateIpAddresses": [
                                {
                                    "Association": {
                                        "IpOwnerId": "amazon",
                                        "PublicDnsName": "ec2-34-253-223-13.us-
east-2.compute.amazonaws.com",
                                        "PublicIp": "34.253.223.13"
                                    },
                                    "Primary": true,
                                    "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-0-157.us-
east-2.compute.internal",
                                    "PrivateIpAddress": "10-0-0-157"
                                }
                            ],
                            "SourceDestCheck": true,
                            "Status": "in-use",
                            "SubnetId": "subnet-1234567890abcdefg",
                            "VpcId": "vpc-1234567890abcdefg",
                            "InterfaceType": "interface"
                        }
                    ],
```

```
                "RootDeviceName": "/dev/xvda",
                "RootDeviceType": "ebs",
                "SecurityGroups": [
                    {
                        "GroupName": "launch-wizard-146",
                        "GroupId": "sg-1234567890abcdefg"
                    }
                ],
                "SourceDestCheck": true,
                "Tags": [
                    {
                        "Key": "Name",
                        "Value": "my-instance"
                    }
                ],
                "VirtualizationType": "hvm",
                "CpuOptions": {
                    "CoreCount": 1,
                    "ThreadsPerCore": 2
                },
                "CapacityReservationSpecification": {
                    "CapacityReservationPreference": "open"
                },
                "HibernationOptions": {
                    "Configured": false
                },
                "MetadataOptions": {
                    "State": "applied",
                    "HttpTokens": "optional",
                    "HttpPutResponseHopLimit": 1,
                    "HttpEndpoint": "enabled",
                    "HttpProtocolIpv6": "disabled",
                    "InstanceMetadataTags": "enabled"
                },
                "EnclaveOptions": {
                    "Enabled": false
                },
                "PlatformDetails": "Linux/UNIX",
                "UsageOperation": "RunInstances",
                "UsageOperationUpdateTime": "2022-11-15T10:48:59+00:00",
                "PrivateDnsNameOptions": {
                    "HostnameType": "ip-name",
                    "EnableResourceNameDnsARecord": true,
                    "EnableResourceNameDnsAAAARecord": false
```

```
                    },
                    "MaintenanceOptions": {
                        "AutoRecovery": "default"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "OwnerId": "111111111111",
            "ReservationId": "r-1234567890abcdefg"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To filter for instances with the specified type

The following `describe-instances` example uses filters to scope the results to instances of the specified type.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters Name=instance-type,Values=m5.large
```

For example output, see Example 1.

For more information, see List and filter using the CLI in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To filter for instances with the specified type and Availability Zone

The following `describe-instances` example uses multiple filters to scope the results to instances with the specified type that are also in the specified Availability Zone.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters Name=instance-type,Values=t2.micro,t3.micro Name=availability-
zone,Values=us-east-2c
```

For example output, see Example 1.

Example 4: To filter for instances with the specified type and Availability Zone using a JSON file

The following `describe-instances` example uses a JSON input file to perform the same filtering as the previous example. When filters get more complicated, they can be easier to specify in a JSON file.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters file://filters.json
```

Contents of `filters.json`:

```
[
    {
        "Name": "instance-type",
        "Values": ["t2.micro", "t3.micro"]
    },
    {
        "Name": "availability-zone",
        "Values": ["us-east-2c"]
    }
]
```

For example output, see Example 1.

Example 5: To filter for instances with the specified Owner tag

The following `describe-instances` example uses tag filters to scope the results to instances that have a tag with the specified tag key (Owner), regardless of the tag value.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters "Name=tag-key,Values=Owner"
```

For example output, see Example 1.

Example 6: To filter for instances with the specified my-team tag value

The following `describe-instances` example uses tag filters to scope the results to instances that have a tag with the specified tag value (my-team), regardless of the tag key.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters "Name=tag-value,Values=my-team"
```

For example output, see Example 1.

Example 7: To filter for instances with the specified Owner tag and my-team value

The following `describe-instances` example uses tag filters to scope the results to instances that have the specified tag (Owner=my-team).

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters "Name=tag:Owner,Values=my-team"
```

For example output, see Example 1.

Example 8: To display only instance and subnet IDs for all instances

The following `describe-instances` examples use the `--query` parameter to display only the instance and subnet IDs for all instances, in JSON format.

Linux and macOS:

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --query 'Reservations[*].Instances[*].{Instance:InstanceId,Subnet:SubnetId}'
 \
    --output json
```

Windows:

```
aws ec2 describe-instances ^
    --query "Reservations[*].Instances[*].
{Instance:InstanceId,Subnet:SubnetId}" ^
    --output json
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "Instance": "i-057750d42936e468a",
        "Subnet": "subnet-069beee9b12030077"
    },
    {
        "Instance": "i-001efd250faaa6ffa",
        "Subnet": "subnet-0b715c6b7db68927a"
    },
    {
        "Instance": "i-027552a73f021f3bd",
        "Subnet": "subnet-0250c25a1f4e15235"
    }
    ...
]
```

Example 9: To filter instances of the specified type and only display their instance IDs

The following `describe-instances` example uses filters to scope the results to instances of the specified type and the `--query` parameter to display only the instance IDs.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters "Name=instance-type,Values=t2.micro" \
    --query "Reservations[*].Instances[*].[InstanceId]" \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
i-031c0dc19de2fb70c
i-00d8bff789a736b75
i-0b715c6b7db68927a
i-0626d4edd54f1286d
i-00b8ae04f9f99908e
i-0fc71c25d2374130c
```

Example 10: To filter instances of the specified type and only display their instance IDs, Availability Zone, and the specified tag value

The following `describe-instances` examples display the instance ID, Availability Zone, and the value of the `Name` tag for instances that have a tag with the name `tag-key`, in table format.

Linux and macOS:

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters Name=tag-key,Values=Name \
    --query 'Reservations[*].Instances[*].
{Instance:InstanceId,AZ:Placement.AvailabilityZone,Name:Tags[?Key==`Name`]|
[0].Value}' \
    --output table
```

Windows:

```
aws ec2 describe-instances ^
    --filters Name=tag-key,Values=Name ^
    --query "Reservations[*].Instances[*].
{Instance:InstanceId,AZ:Placement.AvailabilityZone,Name:Tags[?Key=='Name']|
[0].Value}" ^
```

```
    --output table
```

Output:

```
-------------------------------------------------------------
|                     DescribeInstances                     |
+--------------+-----------------------+--------------------+
|      AZ      |       Instance        |        Name        |
+--------------+-----------------------+--------------------+
|  us-east-2b  |  i-057750d42936e468a  |  my-prod-server    |
|  us-east-2a  |  i-001efd250faaa6ffa  |  test-server-1     |
|  us-east-2a  |  i-027552a73f021f3bd  |  test-server-2     |
+--------------+-----------------------+--------------------+
```

Example 11: To describe instances in a partition placement group

The following `describe-instances` example describes the specified instance. The output includes the placement information for the instance, which contains the placement group name and the partition number for the instance.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --instance-ids i-0123a456700123456 \
    --query "Reservations[*].Instances[*].Placement"
```

Output:

```
[
    [
        {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1c",
            "GroupName": "HDFS-Group-A",
            "PartitionNumber": 3,
            "Tenancy": "default"
        }

    ]
]
```

For more information, see Describing instances in a placement group in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 12: To filter to instances with the specified placement group and partition number

The following `describe-instances` example filters the results to only those instances with the specified placement group and partition number.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters "Name=placement-group-name,Values=HDFS-Group-A" "Name=placement-partition-number,Values=7"
```

The following shows only the relevant information from the output.

```
"Instances": [
    {
        "InstanceId": "i-0123a456700123456",
        "InstanceType": "r4.large",
        "Placement": {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1c",
            "GroupName": "HDFS-Group-A",
            "PartitionNumber": 7,
            "Tenancy": "default"
        }
    },
    {
        "InstanceId": "i-9876a543210987654",
        "InstanceType": "r4.large",
        "Placement": {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1c",
            "GroupName": "HDFS-Group-A",
            "PartitionNumber": 7,
            "Tenancy": "default"
        }
    ],
```

For more information, see Describing instances in a placement group in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 13: To filter to instances that are configured to allow access to tags from instance metadata

The following `describe-instances` example filters the results to only those instances that are configured to allow access to instance tags from instance metadata.

```
aws ec2 describe-instances \
    --filters "Name=metadata-options.instance-metadata-tags,Values=enabled" \
    --query "Reservations[*].Instances[*].InstanceId" \
    --output text
```

The following shows the expected output.

```
i-1234567890abcdefg
i-abcdefg1234567890
i-11111111aaaaaaaaa
i-aaaaaaaa111111111
```

For more information, see Work with instance tags in instance metadata in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the state of an EC2 instance.
    * The paginator helps you iterate over multiple pages of results.
    *
    * @param newInstanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a
 string describing the state of the EC2 instance
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeEC2InstancesAsync(String
 newInstanceId) {
       DescribeInstancesRequest request = DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(newInstanceId)
           .build();
```

```
        DescribeInstancesPublisher paginator =
 getAsyncClient().describeInstancesPaginator(request);
        AtomicReference<String> publicIpAddressRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.reservations().stream()
                .flatMap(reservation -> reservation.instances().stream())
                .filter(instance -> instance.instanceId().equals(newInstanceId))
                .findFirst()
                .ifPresent(instance ->
 publicIpAddressRef.set(instance.publicIpAddress()));
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String publicIpAddress = publicIpAddressRef.get();
            if (publicIpAddress == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Instance with ID " + newInstanceId +
 " not found.");
            }
            return publicIpAddress;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe instances: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe instances", ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, paginateDescribeInstances } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * List all of your EC2 instances running with the provided architecture that
 * were launched in the past month.
 * @param {{ pageSize: string, architectures: string[] }} options
```

```
 */
export const main = async ({ pageSize, architectures }) => {
  pageSize = Number.parseInt(pageSize);
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const d = new Date();
  const year = d.getFullYear();
  const month = `0${d.getMonth() + 1}`.slice(-2);
  const launchTimePattern = `${year}-${month}-*`;

  const paginator = paginateDescribeInstances(
    {
      client,
      pageSize,
    },
    {
      Filters: [
        { Name: "architecture", Values: architectures },
        { Name: "instance-state-name", Values: ["running"] },
        {
          Name: "launch-time",
          Values: [launchTimePattern],
        },
      ],
    },
  );

  try {
    /**
     * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Instance[]}
     */
    const instanceList = [];
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      const { Reservations } = page;
      for (const reservation of Reservations) {
        instanceList.push(...reservation.Instances);
      }
    }
    console.log(
      `Running instances launched this month:\n\n${instanceList.map((instance) =>
 instance.InstanceId).join("\n")}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}.`);
```

```
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2Instances() {
    val request =
        DescribeInstancesRequest {
            maxResults = 6
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeInstances(request)
        response.reservations?.forEach { reservation ->
            reservation.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                println("Instance Id is ${instance.instanceId}")
                println("Image id is ${instance.imageId}")
                println("Instance type is ${instance.instanceType}")
                println("Instance state name is ${instance.state?.name}")
                println("monitoring information is
 ${instance.monitoring?.state}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified instance.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678).Instances
```

Output:

```
AmiLaunchIndex        : 0
Architecture          : x86_64
BlockDeviceMappings   : {/dev/sda1}
ClientToken           : TleEy1448154045270
EbsOptimized          : False
Hypervisor            : xen
IamInstanceProfile    : Amazon.EC2.Model.IamInstanceProfile
ImageId               : ami-12345678
InstanceId            : i-12345678
InstanceLifecycle     :
InstanceType          : t2.micro
KernelId              :
KeyName               : my-key-pair
LaunchTime            : 12/4/2015 4:44:40 PM
Monitoring            : Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
NetworkInterfaces     : {ip-10-0-2-172.us-west-2.compute.internal}
Placement             : Amazon.EC2.Model.Placement
Platform              : Windows
PrivateDnsName        : ip-10-0-2-172.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress      : 10.0.2.172
ProductCodes          : {}
PublicDnsName         :
PublicIpAddress       :
RamdiskId             :
RootDeviceName        : /dev/sda1
RootDeviceType        : ebs
SecurityGroups        : {default}
SourceDestCheck       : True
SpotInstanceRequestId :
SriovNetSupport       :
```

```
State                 : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
StateReason           :
StateTransitionReason :
SubnetId              : subnet-12345678
Tags                  : {Name}
VirtualizationType    : hvm
VpcId                 : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your instances in the current region, grouped by reservation. To see the instance details expand the Instances collection within each reservation object.

```
Get-EC2Instance
```

Output:

```
GroupNames    : {}
Groups        : {}
Instances     : {}
OwnerId       : 123456789012
RequesterId   : 226008221399
ReservationId : r-c5df370c

GroupNames    : {}
Groups        : {}
Instances     : {}
OwnerId       : 123456789012
RequesterId   : 854251627541
ReservationId : r-63e65bab
...
```

Example 3: This example illustrates using a filter to query for EC2 instances in a specific subnet of a VPC.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter @{Name="vpc-id";Values="vpc-1a2bc34d"},@{Name="subnet-
id";Values="subnet-1a2b3c4d"}).Instances
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress PublicIpAddress
 SecurityGroups SubnetId        VpcId
```

```
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ---------------
 -------------- --------        -----
i-01af...82cf180e19 t2.medium    Windows  10.0.0.98                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0374...7e9d5b0c45 t2.xlarge    Windows  10.0.0.53                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 4: This example illustrates using a filter with multiple values to query for EC2 instances that are both running and stopped

```
$InstanceParams = @{
    Filter = @(
        @{'Name' = 'instance-state-name';'Values' = @("running","stopped")}
    )
}

(Get-EC2Instance @InstanceParams).Instances
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress PublicIpAddress
 SecurityGroups SubnetId        VpcId
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ---------------
 -------------- --------        -----
i-05a9...f6c5f46e18 t3.medium             10.0.1.7                         ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-02cf...945c4fdd07 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.8                         ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0ac0...c037f9f3a1 t3.xlarge    Windows  10.0.1.10                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-066b...57b7b08888 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.11                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0fee...82e83ccd72 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.5                         ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0a68...274cc5043b t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.6                         ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 5: This example illustrates using a filter with multiple values to query for EC2 instances that are both running and stopped and using the Select-Object cmdlet for choosing specific values to output.

```
$InstanceParams = @{
```

```
    Filter = @(
        @{'Name' = 'instance-state-name';'Values' = @("running","stopped")}
    )
}

$SelectParams = @{
    Property = @(
        "InstanceID", "InstanceType", "Platform", "PrivateIpAddress",
        @{Name="Name";Expression={$_.Tags[$_.Tags.Key.IndexOf("Name")].Value}},
        @{Name="State";Expression={$_.State.Name}}
    )
}

$result = Get-EC2Instance @InstanceParams
$result.Instances | Select-Object @SelectParams | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress Name         State
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ----         -----
i-05a9...f6c5f46e18 t3.medium             10.0.1.7         ec2-name-01  running
i-02cf...945c4fdd07 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.8         ec2-name-02  stopped
i-0ac0...c037f9f3a1 t3.xlarge    Windows  10.0.1.10        ec2-name-03  running
i-066b...57b7b08888 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.11        ec2-name-04  stopped
i-0fee...82e83ccd72 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.5         ec2-name-05  running
i-0a68...274cc5043b t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.6         ec2-name-06  stopped
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified instance.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678).Instances
```

Output:

```
AmiLaunchIndex        : 0
Architecture          : x86_64
BlockDeviceMappings   : {/dev/sda1}
ClientToken           : TleEy1448154045270
EbsOptimized          : False
Hypervisor            : xen
```

```
IamInstanceProfile    : Amazon.EC2.Model.IamInstanceProfile
ImageId               : ami-12345678
InstanceId            : i-12345678
InstanceLifecycle     :
InstanceType          : t2.micro
KernelId              :
KeyName               : my-key-pair
LaunchTime            : 12/4/2015 4:44:40 PM
Monitoring            : Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
NetworkInterfaces     : {ip-10-0-2-172.us-west-2.compute.internal}
Placement             : Amazon.EC2.Model.Placement
Platform              : Windows
PrivateDnsName        : ip-10-0-2-172.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress      : 10.0.2.172
ProductCodes          : {}
PublicDnsName         :
PublicIpAddress       :
RamdiskId             :
RootDeviceName        : /dev/sda1
RootDeviceType        : ebs
SecurityGroups        : {default}
SourceDestCheck       : True
SpotInstanceRequestId :
SriovNetSupport       :
State                 : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
StateReason           :
StateTransitionReason :
SubnetId              : subnet-12345678
Tags                  : {Name}
VirtualizationType    : hvm
VpcId                 : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your instances in the current region, grouped by reservation. To see the instance details expand the Instances collection within each reservation object.

```
Get-EC2Instance
```

Output:

```
GroupNames    : {}
Groups        : {}
```

```
Instances     : {}
OwnerId       : 123456789012
RequesterId   : 226008221399
ReservationId : r-c5df370c

GroupNames    : {}
Groups        : {}
Instances     : {}
OwnerId       : 123456789012
RequesterId   : 854251627541
ReservationId : r-63e65bab
...
```

Example 3: This example illustrates using a filter to query for EC2 instances in a specific subnet of a VPC.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter @{Name="vpc-id";Values="vpc-1a2bc34d"},@{Name="subnet-
id";Values="subnet-1a2b3c4d"}).Instances
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress PublicIpAddress
 SecurityGroups SubnetId        VpcId
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ---------------
 -------------- --------        -----
i-01af...82cf180e19 t2.medium    Windows  10.0.0.98                       ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0374...7e9d5b0c45 t2.xlarge    Windows  10.0.0.53                       ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 4: This example illustrates using a filter with multiple values to query for EC2 instances that are both running and stopped

```
$InstanceParams = @{
    Filter = @(
        @{'Name' = 'instance-state-name';'Values' = @("running","stopped")}
    )
}

(Get-EC2Instance @InstanceParams).Instances
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress PublicIpAddress
 SecurityGroups SubnetId        VpcId
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ---------------
 -------------- --------        -----
i-05a9...f6c5f46e18 t3.medium             10.0.1.7                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-02cf...945c4fdd07 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.8                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0ac0...c037f9f3a1 t3.xlarge    Windows  10.0.1.10                       ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-066b...57b7b08888 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.11                       ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0fee...82e83ccd72 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.5                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0a68...274cc5043b t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.6                        ...
         subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 5: This example illustrates using a filter with multiple values to query for EC2 instances that are both running and stopped and using the Select-Object cmdlet for choosing specific values to output.

```
$InstanceParams = @{
    Filter = @(
        @{'Name' = 'instance-state-name';'Values' = @("running","stopped")}
    )
}

$SelectParams = @{
    Property = @(
        "InstanceID", "InstanceType", "Platform", "PrivateIpAddress",
        @{Name="Name";Expression={$_.Tags[$_.Tags.Key.IndexOf("Name")].Value}},
        @{Name="State";Expression={$_.State.Name}}
    )
}

$result = Get-EC2Instance @InstanceParams
$result.Instances | Select-Object @SelectParams | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress Name         State
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ----         -----
```

```
i-05a9...f6c5f46e18 t3.medium            10.0.1.7         ec2-name-01  running
i-02cf...945c4fdd07 t3.medium    Windows 10.0.1.8         ec2-name-02  stopped
i-0ac0...c037f9f3a1 t3.xlarge    Windows 10.0.1.10        ec2-name-03  running
i-066b...57b7b08888 t3.medium    Windows 10.0.1.11        ec2-name-04  stopped
i-0fee...82e83ccd72 t3.medium    Windows 10.0.1.5         ec2-name-05  running
i-0a68...274cc5043b t3.medium    Windows 10.0.1.6         ec2-name-06  stopped
```

Example 6: This example validates permissions for getting EC2 instances using the DryRun parameter without actually fetching them. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
Get-EC2Tag -DryRun $true
```

Output:

```
Get-EC2Instance: Request would have succeeded, but DryRun flag is set.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                            access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                           wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def display(self, state_filter: Optional[str] = "running") -> None:
        """
        Displays information about instances, filtering by the specified state.

        :param state_filter: The instance state to include in the output. Only
 instances in this state
                              will be displayed. Default is 'running'. Example
 states: 'running', 'stopped'.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to display.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instances")
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(InstanceIds=instance_ids)

        try:
            for page in page_iterator:
                for reservation in page["Reservations"]:
                    for instance in reservation["Instances"]:
                        instance_state = instance["State"]["Name"]
```

```
                        # Apply the state filter (default is 'running')
                        if state_filter and instance_state != state_filter:
                            continue  # Skip this instance if it doesn't match
 the filter

                        # Create a formatted string with instance details
                        instance_info = (
                            f"• ID: {instance['InstanceId']}\n"
                            f"• Image ID: {instance['ImageId']}\n"
                            f"• Instance type: {instance['InstanceType']}\n"
                            f"• Key name: {instance['KeyName']}\n"
                            f"• VPC ID: {instance['VpcId']}\n"
                            f"• Public IP: {instance.get('PublicIpAddress', 'N/
A')}\n"
                            f"• State: {instance_state}"
                        )
                        print(instance_info)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to display instance(s). : {' '.join(map(str,
 instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized EC2 resource object.
# @example
#   list_instance_ids_states(Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_instance_ids_states(ec2_resource)
  response = ec2_resource.instances
  if response.count.zero?
    puts 'No instances found.'
  else
    puts 'Instances -- ID, state:'
    response.each do |instance|
      puts "#{instance.id}, #{instance.state.name}"
    end
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about instances: #{e.message}"
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-get-all-instance-info.rb REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-get-all-instance-info.rb us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
```

```
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    region = ARGV[0]
  end
  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)
  list_instance_ids_states(ec2_resource)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve details for an EC2 Instance.

```
   pub async fn describe_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<Instance,
 EC2Error> {
        let response = self
            .client
            .describe_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        let instance = response
            .reservations()
            .first()
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!("No instance reservations for
 {instance_id}")))?
            .instances()
            .first()
```

```
            .ok_or_else(|| {
                EC2Error::new(format!("No instances in reservation for
{instance_id}"))
            })?;

        Ok(instance.clone())
    }
```

After creating an EC2 instance, retrieve and store its details.

```
    /// Create an EC2 instance with the given ID on a given type, using a
    /// generated KeyPair and applying a list of security groups.
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        image_id: &str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let instance_id = ec2
            .create_instance(image_id, instance_type, key_pair, security_groups)
            .await?;
        let instance = ec2.describe_instance(&instance_id).await?;
        self.instance = Some(instance);
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeinstances( ).                       "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "

        " Retrieving details of EC2 instances. "
        DATA: lv_istance_id    TYPE /aws1/ec2string,
              lv_status        TYPE /aws1/ec2instancestatename,
              lv_instance_type TYPE /aws1/ec2instancetype,
              lv_image_id      TYPE /aws1/ec2string.
        LOOP AT oo_result->get_reservations( ) INTO DATA(lo_reservation).
          LOOP AT lo_reservation->get_instances( ) INTO DATA(lo_instance).
            lv_istance_id = lo_instance->get_instanceid( ).
            lv_status = lo_instance->get_state( )->get_name( ).
            lv_instance_type = lo_instance->get_instancetype( ).
            lv_image_id = lo_instance->get_imageid( ).
          ENDLOOP.
        ENDLOOP.
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about EC2 instances.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DescribeInternetGateways` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInternetGateways`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an internet gateway

The following `describe-internet-gateways` example describes the specified internet gateway.

```
aws ec2 describe-internet-gateways \
    --internet-gateway-ids igw-0d0fb496b3EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "InternetGateways": [
        {
            "Attachments": [
                {
                    "State": "available",
                    "VpcId": "vpc-0a60eb65b4EXAMPLE"
                }
            ],
            "InternetGatewayId": "igw-0d0fb496b3EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "my-igw"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Internet gateways in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeInternetGateways in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified Internet gateway.

```
Get-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Attachments       InternetGatewayId     Tags
-----------       -----------------     ----
{vpc-1a2b3c4d}    igw-1a2b3c4d          {}
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Internet gateways.

```
Get-EC2InternetGateway
```

Output:

```
Attachments       InternetGatewayId     Tags
-----------       -----------------     ----
{vpc-1a2b3c4d}    igw-1a2b3c4d          {}
{}                igw-2a3b4c5d          {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInternetGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Internet gateway.

```
Get-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Attachments       InternetGatewayId     Tags
-----------       -----------------     ----
{vpc-1a2b3c4d}    igw-1a2b3c4d          {}
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Internet gateways.

```
Get-EC2InternetGateway
```

Output:

```
Attachments       InternetGatewayId     Tags
-----------       -----------------     ----
{vpc-1a2b3c4d}    igw-1a2b3c4d          {}
{}                igw-2a3b4c5d          {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInternetGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeKeyPairs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information about an Amazon EC2 key pair.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair.</param>
/// <returns>A list of key pair information.</returns>
public async Task<List<KeyPairInfo>> DescribeKeyPairs(string keyPairName)
{
    try
    {
        var request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest();
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyPairName))
        {
            request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest
            {
                KeyNames = new List<string> { keyPairName }
            };
        }

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeKeyPairsAsync(request);
```

```
            return response.KeyPairs.ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while describing the key pair.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_key_pairs
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 key pairs.
#
# Parameters:
```

```
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_describe_key_pairs() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_key_pairs"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key
 pairs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-key-pairs \
    --query 'KeyPairs[*].[KeyName, KeyFingerprint]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-key-pairs operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }
```

```
  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance key pairs.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeKeyPairs(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeKeyPairsRequest request;

    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeKeyPairsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeKeyPairs(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left <<
                  std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                  std::setw(64) << "Fingerprint" << std::endl;

        const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::KeyPairInfo> &key_pairs =
                outcome.GetResult().GetKeyPairs();
        for (const auto &key_pair: key_pairs) {
            std::cout << std::left <<
```

```
                        std::setw(32) << key_pair.GetKeyName() <<
                        std::setw(64) << key_pair.GetKeyFingerprint() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe key pairs:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display a key pair

The following `describe-key-pairs` example displays information about the specified key pair.

```
aws ec2 describe-key-pairs \
    --key-names my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyPairs": [
        {
            "KeyPairId": "key-0b94643da6EXAMPLE",
            "KeyFingerprint":
 "1f:51:ae:28:bf:89:e9:d8:1f:25:5d:37:2d:7d:b8:ca:9f:f5:f1:6f",
            "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
            "KeyType": "rsa",
            "Tags": [],
            "CreateTime": "2022-05-27T21:51:16.000Z"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Describe public keys in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the key pairs associated with the current AWS
account.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the {@link
DescribeKeyPairsResponse} object, which provides
    * information about the key pairs.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> describeKeysAsync() {
       CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKeyPairs();
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
             throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe key pairs: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeKeyPairsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * List all key pairs in the current AWS account.
 * @param {{ dryRun: boolean }}
 */
export const main = async ({ dryRun }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeKeyPairsCommand({ DryRun: dryRun });

  try {
    const { KeyPairs } = await client.send(command);
    const keyPairList = KeyPairs.map(
      (kp) => ` • ${kp.KeyPairId}: ${kp.KeyName}`,
    ).join("\n");
    console.log("The following key pairs were found in your account:");
    console.log(keyPairList);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "DryRunOperation") {
      console.log(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2Keys() {
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeKeyPairs(DescribeKeyPairsRequest {})
        response.keyPairs?.forEach { keyPair ->
            println("Found key pair with name ${keyPair.keyName} and fingerprint
 ${ keyPair.keyFingerprint}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified key pair.

```
Get-EC2KeyPair -KeyName my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
KeyFingerprint                                          KeyName
--------------                                          -------
1f:51:ae:28:bf:89:e9:d8:1f:25:5d:37:2d:7d:b8:ca:9f:f5:f1:6f my-key-pair
```

Example 2: This example describes all your key pairs.

```
Get-EC2KeyPair
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified key pair.

```
Get-EC2KeyPair -KeyName my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
KeyFingerprint                                          KeyName
--------------                                          -------
1f:51:ae:28:bf:89:e9:d8:1f:25:5d:37:2d:7d:b8:ca:9f:f5:f1:6f my-key-pair
```

Example 2: This example describes all your key pairs.

```
Get-EC2KeyPair
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
```

```
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
 directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is
 stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
 Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2
 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def list(self, limit: Optional[int] = None) -> None:
        """
        Displays a list of key pairs for the current account.

        WARNING: Results are not paginated.

        :param limit: The maximum number of key pairs to list. If not specified,
                      all key pairs will be listed.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in listing the key pairs.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_key_pairs()
            key_pairs = response.get("KeyPairs", [])

            if limit:
                key_pairs = key_pairs[:limit]

            for key_pair in key_pairs:
                logger.info(
                    f"Found {key_pair['KeyType']} key '{key_pair['KeyName']}'
with fingerprint:"
                )
                logger.info(f"\t{key_pair['KeyFingerprint']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to list key pairs: {str(err)}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn list_key_pair(&self) -> Result<Vec<KeyPairInfo>, EC2Error> {
        let output = self.client.describe_key_pairs().send().await?;
        Ok(output.key_pairs.unwrap_or_default())
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describekeypairs( ).                        "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_key_pairs) = oo_result->get_keypairs( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about key pairs.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Describe the key pairs associated with the user by outputting each key
    /// pair's name and fingerprint.
    func describeKeyPairs() async {
        do {
```

```
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeKeyPairs(
                input: DescribeKeyPairsInput()
            )

            guard let keyPairs = output.keyPairs else {
                print("*** No key pairs list available.")
                return
            }

            for keyPair in keyPairs {
                print(keyPair.keyName ?? "<unknown>", ":",
 keyPair.keyFingerprint ?? "<unknown>")
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: Unable to obtain a key pair list.")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeNetworkAcls` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeNetworkAcls`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your network ACLs

The following `describe-network-acls` example retrieves details about your network ACLs.

```
aws ec2 describe-network-acls
```

Output:

```
{
    "NetworkAcls": [
        {
            "Associations": [
```

```
                {
                    "NetworkAclAssociationId": "aclassoc-0c1679dc41EXAMPLE",
                    "NetworkAclId": "acl-0ea1f54ca7EXAMPLE",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-0931fc2fa5EXAMPLE"
                }
            ],
            "Entries": [
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": true,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "allow",
                    "RuleNumber": 100
                },
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": true,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "deny",
                    "RuleNumber": 32767
                },
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": false,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "allow",
                    "RuleNumber": 100
                },
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": false,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "deny",
                    "RuleNumber": 32767
                }
            ],
            "IsDefault": true,
            "NetworkAclId": "acl-0ea1f54ca7EXAMPLE",
            "Tags": [],
            "VpcId": "vpc-06e4ab6c6cEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "Associations": [],
```

```
            "Entries": [
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": true,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "allow",
                    "RuleNumber": 100
                },
                {
                    "Egress": true,
                    "Ipv6CidrBlock": "::/0",
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "allow",
                    "RuleNumber": 101
                },
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": true,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "deny",
                    "RuleNumber": 32767
                },
                {
                    "Egress": true,
                    "Ipv6CidrBlock": "::/0",
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "deny",
                    "RuleNumber": 32768
                },
                {
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": false,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "allow",
                    "RuleNumber": 100
                },
                {
                    "Egress": false,
                    "Ipv6CidrBlock": "::/0",
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "allow",
                    "RuleNumber": 101
                },
                {
```

```
                    "CidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "Egress": false,
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "deny",
                    "RuleNumber": 32767
                },
                {
                    "Egress": false,
                    "Ipv6CidrBlock": "::/0",
                    "Protocol": "-1",
                    "RuleAction": "deny",
                    "RuleNumber": 32768
                }
            ],
            "IsDefault": true,
            "NetworkAclId": "acl-0e2a78e4e2EXAMPLE",
            "Tags": [],
            "VpcId": "vpc-03914afb3eEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Network ACLs in the *AWS VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkAcls in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified network ACL.

```
Get-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations : {aclassoc-1a2b3c4d}
Entries      : {Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry}
IsDefault    : False
NetworkAclId : acl-12345678
```

```
Tags          : {Name}
VpcId         : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the rules for the specified network ACL.

```
(Get-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678).Entries
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
Egress       : True
IcmpTypeCode :
PortRange    :
Protocol     : -1
RuleAction   : deny
RuleNumber   : 32767

CidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
Egress       : False
IcmpTypeCode :
PortRange    :
Protocol     : -1
RuleAction   : deny
RuleNumber   : 32767
```

Example 3: This example describes all your network ACLs.

```
Get-EC2NetworkAcl
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkAcls in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified network ACL.

```
Get-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations : {aclassoc-1a2b3c4d}
```

```
Entries      : {Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry}
IsDefault    : False
NetworkAclId : acl-12345678
Tags         : {Name}
VpcId        : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the rules for the specified network ACL.

```
(Get-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678).Entries
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
Egress       : True
IcmpTypeCode :
PortRange    :
Protocol     : -1
RuleAction   : deny
RuleNumber   : 32767

CidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
Egress       : False
IcmpTypeCode :
PortRange    :
Protocol     : -1
RuleAction   : deny
RuleNumber   : 32767
```

Example 3: This example describes all your network ACLs.

```
Get-EC2NetworkAcl
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkAcls in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the attachment attribute of a network interface

This example command describes the `attachment` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200
 --attribute attachment
```

Output:

```
{
  "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-686ea200",
  "Attachment": {
      "Status": "attached",
      "DeviceIndex": 0,
      "AttachTime": "2015-05-21T20:02:20.000Z",
      "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
      "DeleteOnTermination": true,
      "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-43348162",
      "InstanceOwnerId": "123456789012"
  }
}
```

To describe the description attribute of a network interface

This example command describes the `description` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200
 --attribute description
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
  "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-686ea200",
  "Description": {
      "Value": "My description"
  }
}
```

To describe the groupSet attribute of a network interface

This example command describes the `groupSet` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200
 --attribute groupSet
```

Output:

```
{
  "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-686ea200",
  "Groups": [
      {
          "GroupName": "my-security-group",
          "GroupId": "sg-903004f8"
      }
  ]
}
```

To describe the sourceDestCheck attribute of a network interface

This example command describes the `sourceDestCheck` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200
 --attribute sourceDestCheck
```

Output:

```
{
  "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-686ea200",
```

```
  "SourceDestCheck": {
      "Value": true
  }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 Attachment
```

Output:

```
Attachment         : Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkInterfaceAttachment
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 Description
```

Output:

```
Description        : My description
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 GroupSet
```

Output:

```
Groups             : {my-security-group}
```

Example 4: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 SourceDestCheck
```

Output:

```
SourceDestCheck    : True
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 Attachment
```

Output:

```
Attachment         : Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkInterfaceAttachment
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 Description
```

Output:

```
Description        : My description
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 GroupSet
```

Output:

```
Groups             : {my-security-group}
```

Example 4: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 SourceDestCheck
```

Output:

```
SourceDestCheck    : True
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeNetworkInterfaces` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeNetworkInterfaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your network interfaces

This example describes all your network interfaces.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interfaces
```

Output:

```
{
  "NetworkInterfaces": [
      {
          "Status": "in-use",
          "MacAddress": "02:2f:8f:b0:cf:75",
          "SourceDestCheck": true,
          "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2",
          "Description": "my network interface",
          "Association": {
              "PublicIp": "203.0.113.12",
              "AssociationId": "eipassoc-0fbb766a",
              "PublicDnsName": "ec2-203-0-113-12.compute-1.amazonaws.com",
              "IpOwnerId": "123456789012"
          },
```

```
            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-e5aa89a3",
            "PrivateIpAddresses": [
                {
                    "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-1-17.ec2.internal",
                    "Association": {
                        "PublicIp": "203.0.113.12",
                        "AssociationId": "eipassoc-0fbb766a",
                        "PublicDnsName":
  "ec2-203-0-113-12.compute-1.amazonaws.com",
                        "IpOwnerId": "123456789012"
                    },
                    "Primary": true,
                    "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.17"
                }
            ],
            "RequesterManaged": false,
            "Ipv6Addresses": [],
            "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-1-17.ec2.internal",
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
            "Attachment": {
                "Status": "attached",
                "DeviceIndex": 1,
                "AttachTime": "2013-11-30T23:36:42.000Z",
                "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
                "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-66c4350a",
                "InstanceOwnerId": "123456789012"
            },
            "Groups": [
                {
                    "GroupName": "default",
                    "GroupId": "sg-8637d3e3"
                }
            ],
            "SubnetId": "subnet-b61f49f0",
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "TagSet": [],
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.17"
        },
        {
            "Status": "in-use",
            "MacAddress": "02:58:f5:ef:4b:06",
            "SourceDestCheck": true,
            "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2",
```

```
            "Description": "Primary network interface",
            "Association": {
                "PublicIp": "198.51.100.0",
                "IpOwnerId": "amazon"
            },
            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-f9ba99bf",
            "PrivateIpAddresses": [
                {
                    "Association": {
                        "PublicIp": "198.51.100.0",
                        "IpOwnerId": "amazon"
                    },
                    "Primary": true,
                    "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.149"
                }
            ],
            "RequesterManaged": false,
            "Ipv6Addresses": [],
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
            "Attachment": {
                "Status": "attached",
                "DeviceIndex": 0,
                "AttachTime": "2013-11-30T23:35:33.000Z",
                "InstanceId": "i-0598c7d356eba48d7",
                "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-1b9db777",
                "InstanceOwnerId": "123456789012"
            },
            "Groups": [
                {
                    "GroupName": "default",
                    "GroupId": "sg-8637d3e3"
                }
            ],
            "SubnetId": "subnet-b61f49f0",
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "TagSet": [],
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.149"
        }
    ]
}
```

This example describes network interfaces that have a tag with the key `Purpose` and the value `Prod`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-network-interfaces --filters Name=tag:Purpose,Values=Prod
```

Output:

```
{
  "NetworkInterfaces": [
      {
          "Status": "available",
          "MacAddress": "12:2c:bd:f9:bf:17",
          "SourceDestCheck": true,
          "VpcId": "vpc-8941ebec",
          "Description": "ProdENI",
          "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-b9a5ac93",
          "PrivateIpAddresses": [
              {
                  "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-1-55.ec2.internal",
                  "Primary": true,
                  "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.55"
              },
              {
                  "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-1-117.ec2.internal",
                  "Primary": false,
                  "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.117"
              }
          ],
          "RequesterManaged": false,
          "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-1-55.ec2.internal",
          "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
          "Ipv6Addresses": [],
          "Groups": [
              {
                  "GroupName": "MySG",
                  "GroupId": "sg-905002f5"
              }
          ],
          "SubnetId": "subnet-31d6c219",
          "OwnerId": "123456789012",
          "TagSet": [
```

```
                {
                    "Value": "Prod",
                    "Key": "Purpose"
                }
            ],
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.1.55"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678
```

Output:

```
Association        :
Attachment         : Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkInterfaceAttachment
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2c
Description        :
Groups             : {my-security-group}
MacAddress         : 0a:e9:a6:19:4c:7f
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-12345678
OwnerId            : 123456789012
PrivateDnsName     : ip-10-0-0-107.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress   : 10.0.0.107
PrivateIpAddresses : {ip-10-0-0-107.us-west-2.compute.internal}
RequesterId        :
RequesterManaged   : False
SourceDestCheck    : True
Status             : in-use
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
TagSet             : {}
VpcId              : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your network interfaces.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterface
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678
```

Output:

```
Association        :
Attachment         : Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkInterfaceAttachment
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2c
Description        :
Groups             : {my-security-group}
MacAddress         : 0a:e9:a6:19:4c:7f
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-12345678
OwnerId            : 123456789012
PrivateDnsName     : ip-10-0-0-107.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress   : 10.0.0.107
PrivateIpAddresses : {ip-10-0-0-107.us-west-2.compute.internal}
RequesterId        :
RequesterManaged   : False
SourceDestCheck    : True
Status             : in-use
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
TagSet             : {}
VpcId              : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your network interfaces.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterface
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribePlacementGroups` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePlacementGroups`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your placement groups

This example command describes all of your placement groups.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-placement-groups
```

Output:

```
{
    "PlacementGroups": [
        {
            "GroupName": "my-cluster",
            "State": "available",
            "Strategy": "cluster"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePlacementGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified placement group.

```
Get-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group
```

Output:

```
GroupName             State        Strategy
```

```
---------              -----        --------
my-placement-group     available    cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribePlacementGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified placement group.

```
Get-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group
```

Output:

```
GroupName              State        Strategy
---------              -----        --------
my-placement-group     available    cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribePlacementGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribePrefixLists` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePrefixLists`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe prefix lists

This example lists all available prefix lists for the region.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-prefix-lists
```

Output:

```
{
  "PrefixLists": [
    {
      "PrefixListName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3",
      "Cidrs": [
        "54.231.0.0/17"
      ],
      "PrefixListId": "pl-63a5400a"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePrefixLists in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches the available AWS services in a prefix list format for the region

```
Get-EC2PrefixList
```

Output:

```
Cidrs                                          PrefixListId PrefixListName
-----                                          ------------ --------------
{52.94.5.0/24, 52.119.240.0/21, 52.94.24.0/23} pl-6fa54006  com.amazonaws.eu-
west-1.dynamodb
{52.218.0.0/17, 54.231.128.0/19}               pl-6da54004  com.amazonaws.eu-
west-1.s3
```

- For API details, see DescribePrefixLists in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the available AWS services in a prefix list format for the region

```
Get-EC2PrefixList
```

Output:

```
Cidrs                                          PrefixListId PrefixListName
-----                                          ------------ --------------
{52.94.5.0/24, 52.119.240.0/21, 52.94.24.0/23} pl-6fa54006  com.amazonaws.eu-
west-1.dynamodb
{52.218.0.0/17, 54.231.128.0/19}               pl-6da54004  com.amazonaws.eu-
west-1.s3
```

- For API details, see DescribePrefixLists in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeRegions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeRegions`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Regions.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeRegions(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeRegionsRequest request;
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeRegionsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeRegions(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left <<
                  std::setw(32) << "RegionName" <<
                  std::setw(64) << "Endpoint" << std::endl;
```

```
        const auto &regions = outcome.GetResult().GetRegions();
        for (const auto &region: regions) {
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << region.GetRegionName() <<
                      std::setw(64) << region.GetEndpoint() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe regions:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    std::cout << std::endl;

    return outcome.IsSuccess();

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all of your enabled Regions

The following `describe-regions` example describes all of the Regions that are enabled for your account.

```
aws ec2 describe-regions
```

Output:

```
{
    "Regions": [
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-north-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-north-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
```

```
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-south-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-south-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-west-3.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-west-3",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-west-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-west-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-northeast-3.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-northeast-3",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-northeast-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-northeast-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-northeast-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-northeast-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.sa-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "sa-east-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ca-central-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ca-central-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
```

```
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-southeast-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-southeast-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-central-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-east-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-east-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-east-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-west-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-west-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Regions and Zones in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe enabled Regions with an endpoint whose name contains a specific string

The following `describe-regions` example describes all Regions that you have enabled that have the string "us" in the endpoint.

```
aws ec2 describe-regions \
    --filters "Name=endpoint,Values=*us*"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Regions": [
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-east-1"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-east-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-east-2"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-west-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-west-1"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-west-2"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Regions and Zones in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe all Regions

The following `describe-regions` example describes all available Regions, including Regions that are disabled.

```
aws ec2 describe-regions \
    --all-regions
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Regions": [
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-north-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-north-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-south-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-south-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-west-3.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-west-3",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-west-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-west-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-northeast-3.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-northeast-3",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.me-south-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "me-south-1",
            "OptInStatus": "not-opted-in"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-northeast-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-northeast-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-northeast-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-northeast-1",
```

```
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.sa-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "sa-east-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ca-central-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ca-central-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-east-1",
            "OptInStatus": "not-opted-in"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-southeast-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "ap-southeast-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "eu-central-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-east-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-east-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-east-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-west-1.amazonaws.com",
```

```
            "RegionName": "us-west-1",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        },
        {
            "Endpoint": "ec2.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "RegionName": "us-west-2",
            "OptInStatus": "opt-in-not-required"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Regions and Zones in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 4: To list the Region names only

The following `describe-regions` example uses the `--query` parameter to filter the output and return only the names of the Regions as text.

```
aws ec2 describe-regions \
    --all-regions \
    --query "Regions[].{Name:RegionName}" \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
eu-north-1
ap-south-1
eu-west-3
eu-west-2
eu-west-1
ap-northeast-3
ap-northeast-2
me-south-1
ap-northeast-1
sa-east-1
ca-central-1
ap-east-1
ap-southeast-1
ap-southeast-2
eu-central-1
us-east-1
us-east-2
```

```
us-west-1
us-west-2
```

For more information, see Regions and Zones in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeRegionsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * List all available AWS regions.
 * @param {{ regionNames: string[], includeOptInRegions: boolean }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ regionNames, includeOptInRegions }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeRegionsCommand({
    // By default this command will not show regions that require you to opt-in.
    // When AllRegions is true, even the regions that require opt-in will be
 returned.
    AllRegions: includeOptInRegions,
    // You can omit the Filters property if you want to get all regions.
    Filters: regionNames?.length
      ? [
          {
            Name: "region-name",
            // You can specify multiple values for a filter.
            // You can also use '*' as a wildcard. This will return all
            // of the regions that start with `us-east-`.
            Values: regionNames,
          },
        ]
      : undefined,
```

```
  });

  try {
    const { Regions } = await client.send(command);
    const regionsList = Regions.map((reg) => ` • ${reg.RegionName}`);
    console.log("Found regions:");
    console.log(regionsList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "DryRunOperation") {
      console.log(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the regions that are available to you.

```
Get-EC2Region
```

Output:

```
Endpoint                            RegionName
--------                            ----------
ec2.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com         eu-west-1
ec2.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com    ap-southeast-1
ec2.ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com    ap-southeast-2
ec2.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com      eu-central-1
ec2.ap-northeast-1.amazonaws.com    ap-northeast-1
ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com         us-east-1
ec2.sa-east-1.amazonaws.com         sa-east-1
ec2.us-west-1.amazonaws.com         us-west-1
ec2.us-west-2.amazonaws.com         us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the regions that are available to you.

```
Get-EC2Region
```

Output:

```
Endpoint                            RegionName
--------                            ----------
ec2.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com         eu-west-1
ec2.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com    ap-southeast-1
ec2.ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com    ap-southeast-2
ec2.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com      eu-central-1
ec2.ap-northeast-1.amazonaws.com    ap-northeast-1
ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com         us-east-1
ec2.sa-east-1.amazonaws.com         sa-east-1
ec2.us-west-1.amazonaws.com         us-west-1
ec2.us-west-2.amazonaws.com         us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @example
#   list_regions_endpoints(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_regions_endpoints(ec2_client)
  result = ec2_client.describe_regions
  # Enable pretty printing.
```

```
  max_region_string_length = 16
  max_endpoint_string_length = 33
  # Print header.
  print 'Region'
  print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - 'Region'.length)
  print "  Endpoint\n"
  print '-' * max_region_string_length
  print '  '
  print '-' * max_endpoint_string_length
  print "\n"
  # Print Regions and their endpoints.
  result.regions.each do |region|
    print region.region_name
    print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - region.region_name.length)
    print '  '
    print region.endpoint
    print "\n"
  end
end

# Displays a list of Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# Availability Zones available to you depending on the AWS Region
# of the Amazon EC2 client.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @example
#   list_availability_zones(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_availability_zones(ec2_client)
  result = ec2_client.describe_availability_zones
  # Enable pretty printing.
  max_region_string_length = 16
  max_zone_string_length = 18
  max_state_string_length = 9
  # Print header.
  print 'Region'
  print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - 'Region'.length)
  print '  Zone'
  print ' ' * (max_zone_string_length - 'Zone'.length)
  print "  State\n"
  print '-' * max_region_string_length
  print '  '
  print '-' * max_zone_string_length
  print '  '
  print '-' * max_state_string_length
```

```
  print "\n"
  # Print Regions, Availability Zones, and their states.
  result.availability_zones.each do |zone|
    print zone.region_name
    print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - zone.region_name.length)
    print '  '
    print zone.zone_name
    print ' ' * (max_zone_string_length - zone.zone_name.length)
    print '  '
    print zone.state
    # Print any messages for this Availability Zone.
    if zone.messages.count.positive?
      print "\n"
      puts '  Messages for this zone:'
      zone.messages.each do |message|
        print "    #{message.message}\n"
      end
    end
    print "\n"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-regions-availability-zones.rb REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-regions-availability-zones.rb us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    region = ARGV[0]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts 'AWS Regions for Amazon EC2 that are available to you:'
  list_regions_endpoints(ec2_client)
```

```
  puts "\n\nAmazon EC2 Availability Zones that are available to you for AWS
 Region '#{region}':"
  list_availability_zones(ec2_client)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_regions(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let rsp = client.describe_regions().send().await?;

    println!("Regions:");
    for region in rsp.regions() {
        println!("  {}", region.region_name().unwrap());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeregions( ).                       "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_regions) = oo_result->get_regions( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about Regions.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DescribeRouteTables` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeRouteTables`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your route tables

The following `describe-route-tables` example retrieves the details about your route tables

```
aws ec2 describe-route-tables
```

Output:

```
{
    "RouteTables": [
        {
            "Associations": [
                {
                    "Main": true,
                    "RouteTableAssociationId": "rtbassoc-0df3f54e06EXAMPLE",
                    "RouteTableId": "rtb-09ba434c1bEXAMPLE"
                }
            ],
            "PropagatingVgws": [],
            "RouteTableId": "rtb-09ba434c1bEXAMPLE",
            "Routes": [
                {
                    "DestinationCidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                    "GatewayId": "local",
                    "Origin": "CreateRouteTable",
                    "State": "active"
                },
                {
                    "DestinationCidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "NatGatewayId": "nat-06c018cbd8EXAMPLE",
                    "Origin": "CreateRoute",
                    "State": "blackhole"
                }
            ],
            "Tags": [],
            "VpcId": "vpc-0065acced4EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "Associations": [
                {
                    "Main": true,
                    "RouteTableAssociationId": "rtbassoc-9EXAMPLE",
                    "RouteTableId": "rtb-a1eec7de"
```

```
                }
            ],
            "PropagatingVgws": [],
            "RouteTableId": "rtb-a1eec7de",
            "Routes": [
                {
                    "DestinationCidrBlock": "172.31.0.0/16",
                    "GatewayId": "local",
                    "Origin": "CreateRouteTable",
                    "State": "active"
                },
                {
                    "DestinationCidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "GatewayId": "igw-fEXAMPLE",
                    "Origin": "CreateRoute",
                    "State": "active"
                }
            ],
            "Tags": [],
            "VpcId": "vpc-3EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "Associations": [
                {
                    "Main": false,
                    "RouteTableAssociationId": "rtbassoc-0b100c28b2EXAMPLE",
                    "RouteTableId": "rtb-07a98f76e5EXAMPLE",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-0d3d002af8EXAMPLE"
                }
            ],
            "PropagatingVgws": [],
            "RouteTableId": "rtb-07a98f76e5EXAMPLE",
            "Routes": [
                {
                    "DestinationCidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                    "GatewayId": "local",
                    "Origin": "CreateRouteTable",
                    "State": "active"
                },
                {
                    "DestinationCidrBlock": "0.0.0.0/0",
                    "GatewayId": "igw-06cf664d80EXAMPLE",
                    "Origin": "CreateRoute",
```

```
                    "State": "active"
                }
            ],
            "Tags": [],
            "VpcId": "vpc-0065acced4EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with Route Tables in the *AWS VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param array $routeTableIds
     * @param array $filters
     * @return array
     */
    public function describeRouteTables(array $routeTableIds = [], array $filters
 = []): array
    {
        $parameters = [];
        if($routeTableIds){
            $parameters['RouteTableIds'] = $routeTableIds;
        }
        if($filters){
            $parameters['Filters'] = $filters;
        }
        try {
```

```
            $paginator = $this->ec2Client->getPaginator("DescribeRouteTables",
 $parameters);
            $contents = [];
            foreach ($paginator as $result) {
                foreach ($result['RouteTables'] as $object) {
                    $contents[] = $object['RouteTableId'];
                }
            }
        }catch (Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem paginating the results of
 DescribeRouteTables: {$caught->getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
        return $contents;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes all your route tables.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable
```

Output:

```
DestinationCidrBlock    : 10.0.0.0/16
DestinationPrefixListId :
GatewayId               : local
InstanceId              :
InstanceOwnerId         :
NetworkInterfaceId      :
Origin                  : CreateRouteTable
State                   : active
VpcPeeringConnectionId  :

DestinationCidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
DestinationPrefixListId :
```

```
GatewayId               : igw-1a2b3c4d
InstanceId              :
InstanceOwnerId         :
NetworkInterfaceId      :
Origin                  : CreateRoute
State                   : active
VpcPeeringConnectionId  :
```

Example 2: This example returns details for the specified route table.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 3: This example describes the route tables for the specified VPC.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable -Filter @{ Name="vpc-id"; Values="vpc-1a2b3c4d" }
```

Output:

```
Associations    : {rtbassoc-12345678}
PropagatingVgws : {}
Routes          : {, }
RouteTableId    : rtb-1a2b3c4d
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes all your route tables.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable
```

Output:

```
DestinationCidrBlock    : 10.0.0.0/16
DestinationPrefixListId :
GatewayId               : local
InstanceId              :
```

```
InstanceOwnerId         :
NetworkInterfaceId      :
Origin                  : CreateRouteTable
State                   : active
VpcPeeringConnectionId  :

DestinationCidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
DestinationPrefixListId :
GatewayId               : igw-1a2b3c4d
InstanceId              :
InstanceOwnerId         :
NetworkInterfaceId      :
Origin                  : CreateRoute
State                   : active
VpcPeeringConnectionId  :
```

Example 2: This example returns details for the specified route table.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 3: This example describes the route tables for the specified VPC.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable -Filter @{ Name="vpc-id"; Values="vpc-1a2b3c4d" }
```

Output:

```
Associations    : {rtbassoc-12345678}
PropagatingVgws : {}
Routes          : {, }
RouteTableId    : rtb-1a2b3c4d
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual
 Private Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def describe_route_tables(self, vpc_ids: list[str]) -> None:
        """
        Displays information about the route tables in the specified VPC.

        :param vpc_ids: A list of VPC IDs.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_route_tables(
                Filters=[{"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": vpc_ids}]
            )
            pp(response["RouteTables"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe route tables for VPCs %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                vpc_ids,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an available schedule

This example describes a schedule that occurs every week on Sunday, starting on the specified date.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-scheduled-instance-availability --
recurrence Frequency=Weekly,Interval=1,OccurrenceDays=[1] --first-slot-start-
time-range EarliestTime=2016-01-31T00:00:00Z,LatestTime=2016-01-31T04:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
{
  "ScheduledInstanceAvailabilitySet": [
    {
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2b",
```

```
        "TotalScheduledInstanceHours": 1219,
        "PurchaseToken": "eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi...",
        "MinTermDurationInDays": 366,
        "AvailableInstanceCount": 20,
        "Recurrence": {
            "OccurrenceDaySet": [
                1
            ],
            "Interval": 1,
            "Frequency": "Weekly",
            "OccurrenceRelativeToEnd": false
        },
        "Platform": "Linux/UNIX",
        "FirstSlotStartTime": "2016-01-31T00:00:00Z",
        "MaxTermDurationInDays": 366,
        "SlotDurationInHours": 23,
        "NetworkPlatform": "EC2-VPC",
        "InstanceType": "c4.large",
        "HourlyPrice": "0.095"
    },
    ...
  ]
}
```

To narrow the results, you can add filters that specify the operating system, network, and instance type.

Command:

--filters Name=platform,Values=Linux/UNIX Name=network-platform,Values=EC2-VPC Name=instance-type,Values=c4.large

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes a schedule that occurs every week on Sunday, starting on the specified date.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstanceAvailability -Recurrence_Frequency
 Weekly -Recurrence_Interval 1 -Recurrence_OccurrenceDay 1 -
```

```
FirstSlotStartTimeRange_EarliestTime 2016-01-31T00:00:00Z -
FirstSlotStartTimeRange_LatestTime 2016-01-31T04:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
AvailableInstanceCount      : 20
FirstSlotStartTime          : 1/31/2016 8:00:00 AM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceType                : c4.large
MaxTermDurationInDays       : 366
MinTermDurationInDays       : 366
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PurchaseToken               : eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi...
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
SlotDurationInHours         : 23
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1219

...
```

Example 2: To narrow the results, you can add filters for criteria such as operating system, network, and instance type.

```
-Filter @{ Name="platform";Values="Linux/UNIX" },@{ Name="network-
platform";Values="EC2-VPC" },@{ Name="instance-type";Values="c4.large" }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes a schedule that occurs every week on Sunday, starting on the specified date.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstanceAvailability -Recurrence_Frequency
 Weekly -Recurrence_Interval 1 -Recurrence_OccurrenceDay 1 -
FirstSlotStartTimeRange_EarliestTime 2016-01-31T00:00:00Z -
FirstSlotStartTimeRange_LatestTime 2016-01-31T04:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
AvailableInstanceCount      : 20
FirstSlotStartTime          : 1/31/2016 8:00:00 AM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceType                : c4.large
MaxTermDurationInDays       : 366
MinTermDurationInDays       : 366
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PurchaseToken               : eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi...
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
SlotDurationInHours         : 23
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1219

...
```

Example 2: To narrow the results, you can add filters for criteria such as operating system, network, and instance type.

```
-Filter @{ Name="platform";Values="Linux/UNIX" },@{ Name="network-
platform";Values="EC2-VPC" },@{ Name="instance-type";Values="c4.large" }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeScheduledInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeScheduledInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your Scheduled Instances

This example describes the specified Scheduled Instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-scheduled-instances --scheduled-instance-
ids sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Output:

```
{
  "ScheduledInstanceSet": [
      {
          "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2b",
          "ScheduledInstanceId": "sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012",
          "HourlyPrice": "0.095",
          "CreateDate": "2016-01-25T21:43:38.612Z",
          "Recurrence": {
              "OccurrenceDaySet": [
                  1
              ],
              "Interval": 1,
              "Frequency": "Weekly",
              "OccurrenceRelativeToEnd": false,
              "OccurrenceUnit": ""
          },
          "Platform": "Linux/UNIX",
          "TermEndDate": "2017-01-31T09:00:00Z",
          "InstanceCount": 1,
          "SlotDurationInHours": 32,
          "TermStartDate": "2016-01-31T09:00:00Z",
          "NetworkPlatform": "EC2-VPC",
          "TotalScheduledInstanceHours": 1696,
          "NextSlotStartTime": "2016-01-31T09:00:00Z",
          "InstanceType": "c4.large"
      }
  ]
}
```

This example describes all your Scheduled Instances.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-scheduled-instances
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified Scheduled Instance.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstance -ScheduledInstanceId
 sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
CreateDate                  : 1/25/2016 1:43:38 PM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceCount               : 1
InstanceType                : c4.large
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
NextSlotStartTime           : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PreviousSlotEndTime         :
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
ScheduledInstanceId         : sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
SlotDurationInHours         : 32
TermEndDate                 : 1/31/2017 1:00:00 AM
TermStartDate               : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1696
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Scheduled Instances.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstance
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Scheduled Instance.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstance -ScheduledInstanceId
 sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
CreateDate                  : 1/25/2016 1:43:38 PM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceCount               : 1
InstanceType                : c4.large
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
NextSlotStartTime           : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PreviousSlotEndTime         :
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
ScheduledInstanceId         : sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
SlotDurationInHours         : 32
TermEndDate                 : 1/31/2017 1:00:00 AM
TermStartDate               : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1696
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Scheduled Instances.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstance
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSecurityGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information for one or all Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional Id of a specific Amazon EC2 security
group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of security group information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> DescribeSecurityGroups(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupId))
            {
                var groupIds = new List<string> { groupId };
                request.GroupIds = groupIds;
            }

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            return securityGroups;

        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
```

```
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group {groupId} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while listing security groups.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by the call to
    /// DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="securityGroup">A list of security group information.</param>
    public void DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(SecurityGroup securityGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{securityGroup.GroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine("Ingress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissions.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp} "); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
```

```
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Egress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissionsEgress.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range =>
 { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp} "); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
 { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_security_groups
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 security groups.
#
```

```
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe
 (optional).
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_security_groups() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_security_groups"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 security groups."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe
 (optional)."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local query="SecurityGroups[*].[GroupName, GroupId, VpcId, IpPermissions[*].
[IpProtocol, FromPort, ToPort, IpRanges[*].CidrIp]]"

  if [[ -n "$security_group_id" ]]; then
```

```
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --group-ids "$security_group_id"
 --query "${query}" --output text)
  else
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --query "${query}" --output text)
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-security-groups operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
```

```
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security groups, or a
 specific group.
/*!
  \param groupID: A group ID, ignored if empty.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeSecurityGroups(const Aws::String &groupID,
                                         const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request;

    if (!groupID.empty()) {
        request.AddGroupIds(groupID);
    }

    Aws::String nextToken;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeSecurityGroupsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "GroupId" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "VpcId" <<
                      std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::endl;

            const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::SecurityGroup> &securityGroups =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetSecurityGroups();

            for (const auto &securityGroup: securityGroups) {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                          std::setw(32) << securityGroup.GetGroupName() <<
                          std::setw(30) << securityGroup.GetGroupId() <<
                          std::setw(30) << securityGroup.GetVpcId() <<
                          std::setw(64) << securityGroup.GetDescription() <<
                          std::endl;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to describe security groups:" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
```

```
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a security group

The following `describe-security-groups` example describes the specified security group.

```
aws ec2 describe-security-groups \
    --group-ids sg-903004f8
```

Output:

```
{
    "SecurityGroups": [
        {
            "IpPermissionsEgress": [
                {
                    "IpProtocol": "-1",
                    "IpRanges": [
                        {
                            "CidrIp": "0.0.0.0/0"
                        }
                    ],
                    "UserIdGroupPairs": [],
                    "PrefixListIds": []
                }
            ],
            "Description": "My security group",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Value": "SG1",
                    "Key": "Name"
```

```
                }
            ],
            "IpPermissions": [
                {
                    "IpProtocol": "-1",
                    "IpRanges": [],
                    "UserIdGroupPairs": [
                        {
                            "UserId": "123456789012",
                            "GroupId": "sg-903004f8"
                        }
                    ],
                    "PrefixListIds": []
                },
                {
                    "PrefixListIds": [],
                    "FromPort": 22,
                    "IpRanges": [
                        {
                            "Description": "Access from NY office",
                            "CidrIp": "203.0.113.0/24"
                        }
                    ],
                    "ToPort": 22,
                    "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                    "UserIdGroupPairs": []
                    }
            ],
            "GroupName": "MySecurityGroup",
            "VpcId": "vpc-1a2b3c4d",
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "GroupId": "sg-903004f8",
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe security groups that have specific rules

The following `describe-security-groups` example uses filters to scope the results to security groups that have a rule that allows SSH traffic (port 22) and a rule that allows traffic from all addresses (`0.0.0.0/0`). The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the names of the security groups. Security groups must match all filters to be returned in the results; however, a single rule does not have to match all filters. For example, the output

returns a security group with a rule that allows SSH traffic from a specific IP address and another rule that allows HTTP traffic from all addresses.

```
aws ec2 describe-security-groups \
    --filters Name=ip-permission.from-port,Values=22 Name=ip-permission.to-port,Values=22 Name=ip-permission.cidr,Values='0.0.0.0/0' \
    --query "SecurityGroups[*].[GroupName]" \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
default
my-security-group
web-servers
launch-wizard-1
```

Example 3: To describe security groups based on tags

The following `describe-security-groups` example uses filters to scope the results to security groups that include `test` in the security group name, and that have the tag `Test=To-delete`. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the names and IDs of the security groups.

```
aws ec2 describe-security-groups \
    --filters Name=group-name,Values=*test* Name=tag:Test,Values=To-delete \
    --query "SecurityGroups[*].{Name:GroupName,ID:GroupId}"
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "Name": "testfornewinstance",
        "ID": "sg-33bb22aa"
    },
    {
        "Name": "newgrouptest",
        "ID": "sg-1a2b3c4d"
    }
]
```

For additional examples using tag filters, see Working with tags in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
    *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
    *         security group information.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
       DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
           .groupNames(groupName)
           .build();

       DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.securityGroups().stream()
               .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
               .findFirst()
```

```
                .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
 groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
            if (groupId == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the
 name: " + groupName);
            }
            return groupId;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified security groups or all of your security groups.
 * @param {{ groupIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupIds = [] }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
    GroupIds: groupIds,
  });

  try {
    const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(command);
```

```
    const sgList = SecurityGroups.map(
      (sg) => `• ${sg.GroupName} (${sg.GroupId}): ${sg.Description}`,
    ).join("\n");
    if (sgList.length) {
      console.log(`Security groups:\n${sgList}`);
    } else {
      console.log("No security groups found.");
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`);
    } else if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidGroup.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(caught.message);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2SecurityGroups(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
```

```
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        response.securityGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("Found Security Group with id ${group.groupId}, vpc id
 ${group.vpcId} and description ${group.description}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified security group for a VPC. When working with security groups belonging to a VPC you must use the security group ID (-GroupId parameter), not name (-GroupName parameter), to reference the group.

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupId sg-12345678
```

Output:

```
Description         : default VPC security group
GroupId             : sg-12345678
GroupName           : default
IpPermissions       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
IpPermissionsEgress : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Tags                : {}
VpcId               : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified security group for EC2-Classic. When working with security groups for EC2-Classic you may use either the group name (-GroupName parameter) or group ID (-GroupId parameter) to reference the security group.

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group
```

Output:

```
Description         : my security group
GroupId             : sg-45678901
GroupName           : my-security-group
IpPermissions       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
IpPermissionsEgress : {}
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Tags                : {}
VpcId               :
```

Example 3: This example retrieves all the security groups for the vpc-0fc1ff23456b789eb

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -Filter @{Name="vpc-id";Values="vpc-0fc1ff23456b789eb"}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified security group for a VPC. When working with security groups belonging to a VPC you must use the security group ID (-GroupId parameter), not name (-GroupName parameter), to reference the group.

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupId sg-12345678
```

Output:

```
Description         : default VPC security group
GroupId             : sg-12345678
GroupName           : default
IpPermissions       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
IpPermissionsEgress : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Tags                : {}
VpcId               : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified security group for EC2-Classic. When working with security groups for EC2-Classic you may use either the group name (-GroupName parameter) or group ID (-GroupId parameter) to reference the security group.

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group
```

Output:

```
Description         : my security group
GroupId             : sg-45678901
GroupName           : my-security-group
IpPermissions       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
IpPermissionsEgress : {}
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Tags                : {}
VpcId               :
```

Example 3: This example retrieves all the security groups for the vpc-0fc1ff23456b789eb

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -Filter @{Name="vpc-id";Values="vpc-0fc1ff23456b789eb"}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a
 high-level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def describe(self, security_group_id: Optional[str] = None) -> bool:
        """
        Displays information about the specified security group or all security
 groups if no ID is provided.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to describe.
                                  If None, an open search is performed to
 describe all security groups.
        :returns: True if the description is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the security
 group(s), such as an invalid security group ID.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")

            if security_group_id is None:
                # If no ID is provided, return all security groups.
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
            else:
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate(GroupIds=[security_group_id])
```

```
            for page in page_iterator:
                for security_group in page["SecurityGroups"]:
                    print(f"Security group: {security_group['GroupName']}")
                    print(f"\tID: {security_group['GroupId']}")
                    print(f"\tVPC: {security_group['VpcId']}")
                    if security_group["IpPermissions"]:
                        print("Inbound permissions:")
                        pp(security_group["IpPermissions"])

            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error("Failed to describe security group(s).")
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group {security_group_id} does not exist "
                    f"because the specified security group ID was not found."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_security_groups(client: &aws_sdk_ec2::Client, group_ids:
 Vec<String>) {
    let response = client
        .describe_security_groups()
        .set_group_ids(Some(group_ids))
        .send()
        .await;

    match response {
```

```
        Ok(output) => {
            for group in output.security_groups() {
                println!(
                    "Found Security Group {} ({}), vpc id {} and description {}",
                    group.group_name().unwrap_or("unknown"),
                    group.group_id().unwrap_or("id-unknown"),
                    group.vpc_id().unwrap_or("vpcid-unknown"),
                    group.description().unwrap_or("(none)")
                );
            }
        }
        Err(err) => {
            let err = err.into_service_error();
            let meta = err.meta();
            let message = meta.message().unwrap_or("unknown");
            let code = meta.code().unwrap_or("unknown");
            eprintln!("Error listing EC2 Security Groups: ({code}) {message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA lt_group_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2groupidstrlist_w=>tt_groupidstringlist.
        APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2groupidstrlist_w( iv_value = iv_group_id ) TO
 lt_group_ids.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describesecuritygroups( it_groupids = lt_group_ids ).
         " oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_security_groups) = oo_result->get_securitygroups( ).
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about security groups.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Using pagination with `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Return an array of strings giving the names of every security group
    /// the user is a member of.
    ///
    /// - Parameter ec2Client: The `EC2Client` to use when calling
    ///   `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings giving the names of every security
    ///   group the user is a member of.
    func getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: EC2Client) async -> [String] {
        let pages = ec2Client.describeSecurityGroupsPaginated(
            input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput()
        )

        var groupNames: [String] = []

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.securityGroups else {
```

```
                    print("*** Error: No groups returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for group in groups {
                    groupNames.append(group.groupName ?? "<unknown>")
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }

        return groupNames
    }
```

Without pagination.

```
import AWSEC2

    func describeSecurityGroups(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeSecurityGroups(
                input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput(
                    groupIds: [groupId]
                )
            )

            guard let securityGroups = output.securityGroups else {
                print("No security groups found.")
                return true
            }

            for group in securityGroups {
                print("Group \(group.groupId ?? "<unknown>") found with VPC
 \(group.vpcId ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting security group details:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeSnapshotAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSnapshotAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the snapshot attributes for a snapshot

The following `describe-snapshot-attribute` example lists the accounts with which a snapshot is shared.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshot-attribute \
    --snapshot-id snap-01234567890abcedf \
    --attribute createVolumePermission
```

Output:

```
{
    "SnapshotId": "snap-01234567890abcedf",
    "CreateVolumePermissions": [
        {
            "UserId": "123456789012"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Share an Amazon EBS snapshot in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshotAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute ProductCodes
```

Output:

```
CreateVolumePermissions    ProductCodes    SnapshotId
-----------------------    ------------    ----------
{}                         {}              snap-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
(Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission).CreateVolumePermissions
```

Output:

```
Group    UserId
-----    ------
all
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute ProductCodes
```

Output:

```
CreateVolumePermissions    ProductCodes    SnapshotId
-----------------------    ------------    ----------
{}                         {}              snap-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
(Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission).CreateVolumePermissions
```

Output:

```
Group    UserId
-----    ------
all
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSnapshots` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSnapshots`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a snapshot

The following `describe-snapshots` example describes the specified snapshot.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshots \
    --snapshot-ids snap-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "Snapshots": [
        {
            "Description": "This is my snapshot",
            "Encrypted": false,
            "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
            "State": "completed",
            "VolumeSize": 8,
            "StartTime": "2019-02-28T21:28:32.000Z",
            "Progress": "100%",
            "OwnerId": "012345678910",
```

```
            "SnapshotId": "snap-01234567890abcdef",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Stack",
                    "Value": "test"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Amazon EBS snapshots in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe snapshots based on filters

The following `describe-snapshots` example uses filters to scope the results to snapshots owned by your AWS account that are in the `pending` state. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the snapshot IDs and the time the snapshot was started.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshots \
    --owner-ids self \
    --filters Name=status,Values=pending \
    --query "Snapshots[*].{ID:SnapshotId,Time:StartTime}"
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "ID": "snap-1234567890abcdef0",
        "Time": "2019-08-04T12:48:18.000Z"
    },
    {
        "ID": "snap-066877671789bd71b",
        "Time": "2019-08-04T02:45:16.000Z
    },
    ...
]
```

The following `describe-snapshots` example uses filters to scope the results to snapshots created from the specified volume. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the snapshot IDs.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshots \
    --filters Name=volume-id,Values=049df61146c4d7901 \
    --query "Snapshots[*].[SnapshotId]" \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
snap-1234567890abcdef0
snap-08637175a712c3fb9
...
```

For additional examples using filters, see Listing and filtering your resources in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe snapshots based on tags

The following `describe-snapshots` example uses tag filters to scope the results to snapshots that have the tag `Stack=Prod`.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshots \
    --filters Name=tag:Stack,Values=prod
```

For an example of the output for `describe-snapshots`, see Example 1.

For additional examples using tag filters, see Working with tags in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 4: To describe snapshots based on age

The following `describe-snapshots` example uses JMESPath expressions to describe all snapshots created by your AWS account before the specified date. It displays only the snapshot IDs.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshots \
    --owner-ids 012345678910 \
    --query "Snapshots[?(StartTime<='2020-03-31')].[SnapshotId]"
```

For additional examples using filters, see Listing and filtering your resources in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 5: To view only archived snapshots

The following `describe-snapshots` example lists only snapshots that are stored in the archive tier.

```
aws ec2 describe-snapshots \
    --filters "Name=storage-tier,Values=archive"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Snapshots": [
        {
            "Description": "Snap A",
            "Encrypted": false,
            "VolumeId": "vol-01234567890aaaaaa",
            "State": "completed",
            "VolumeSize": 8,
            "StartTime": "2021-09-07T21:00:00.000Z",
            "Progress": "100%",
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "SnapshotId": "snap-01234567890aaaaaa",
            "StorageTier": "archive",
            "Tags": []
        },
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View archived snapshots in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified snapshot.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId snap-12345678
```

Output:

```
DataEncryptionKeyId :
Description         : Created by CreateImage(i-1a2b3c4d) for ami-12345678 from
 vol-12345678
Encrypted           : False
KmsKeyId            :
OwnerAlias          :
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Progress            : 100%
SnapshotId          : snap-12345678
StartTime           : 10/23/2014 6:01:28 AM
State               : completed
StateMessage        :
Tags                : {}
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
VolumeSize          : 8
```

Example 2: This example describes the snapshots that have a 'Name' tag.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot | ? { $_.Tags.Count -gt 0 -and $_.Tags.Key -eq "Name" }
```

Example 3: This example describes the snapshots that have a 'Name' tag with the value 'TestValue'.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot | ? { $_.Tags.Count -gt 0 -and $_.Tags.Key -eq "Name" -and
 $_.Tags.Value -eq "TestValue" }
```

Example 4: This example describes all your snapshots.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot -Owner self
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified snapshot.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId snap-12345678
```

Output:

```
DataEncryptionKeyId :
```

```
Description         : Created by CreateImage(i-1a2b3c4d) for ami-12345678 from
 vol-12345678
Encrypted           : False
KmsKeyId            :
OwnerAlias          :
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Progress            : 100%
SnapshotId          : snap-12345678
StartTime           : 10/23/2014 6:01:28 AM
State               : completed
StateMessage        :
Tags                : {}
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
VolumeSize          : 8
```

Example 2: This example describes the snapshots that have a 'Name' tag.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot | ? { $_.Tags.Count -gt 0 -and $_.Tags.Key -eq "Name" }
```

Example 3: This example describes the snapshots that have a 'Name' tag with the value 'TestValue'.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot | ? { $_.Tags.Count -gt 0 -and $_.Tags.Key -eq "Name" -and
 $_.Tags.Value -eq "TestValue" }
```

Example 4: This example describes all your snapshots.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot -Owner self
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Shows the state of a snapshot.

```
async fn show_state(client: &Client, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .describe_snapshots()
        .filters(Filter::builder().name("snapshot-id").values(id).build())
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "State: {}",
        resp.snapshots().first().unwrap().state().unwrap().as_ref()
    );

    Ok(())
}
```

```
async fn show_snapshots(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    // "self" represents your account ID.
    // You can list the snapshots for any account by replacing
    // "self" with that account ID.
    let resp = client.describe_snapshots().owner_ids("self").send().await?;
    let snapshots = resp.snapshots();
    let length = snapshots.len();

    for snapshot in snapshots {
        println!(
            "ID:          {}",
            snapshot.snapshot_id().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "Description: {}",
            snapshot.description().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!("State:       {}", snapshot.state().unwrap().as_ref());
        println!();
    }

    println!();
    println!("Found {} snapshot(s)", length);
    println!();
```

```
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe Spot Instance datafeed subscription for an account

This example command describes the data feed for the account.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-datafeed-subscription
```

Output:

```
{
    "SpotDatafeedSubscription": {
        "OwnerId": "123456789012",
        "Prefix": "spotdata",
        "Bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
        "State": "Active"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes your Spot instance data feed.

```
Get-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
```

Output:

```
Bucket  : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Fault   :
OwnerId : 123456789012
Prefix  : spotdata
State   : Active
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes your Spot instance data feed.

```
Get-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
```

Output:

```
Bucket  : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Fault   :
OwnerId : 123456789012
Prefix  : spotdata
State   : Active
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSpotFleetInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSpotFleetInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the Spot Instances associated with a Spot fleet

This example command lists the Spot instances associated with the specified Spot fleet.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-fleet-instances --spot-fleet-request-id sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
  "ActiveInstances": [
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
          "SpotInstanceRequestId": "sir-08b93456"
      },
      ...
  ],
  "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE"
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the instances associated with the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetInstance -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    InstanceType    SpotInstanceRequestId
----------    ------------    ---------------------
i-f089262a    c3.large        sir-12345678
i-7e8b24a4    c3.large        sir-87654321
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the instances associated with the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetInstance -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    InstanceType    SpotInstanceRequestId
----------    ------------    ---------------------
i-f089262a    c3.large        sir-12345678
i-7e8b24a4    c3.large        sir-87654321
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe Spot fleet history

This example command returns the history for the specified Spot fleet starting at the specified time.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-fleet-request-history --spot-fleet-request-id sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE --start-time 2015-05-26T00:00:00Z
```

The following example output shows the successful launches of two Spot Instances for the Spot fleet.

Output:

```
{
  "HistoryRecords": [
      {
          "Timestamp": "2015-05-26T23:17:20.697Z",
          "EventInformation": {
              "EventSubType": "submitted"
          },
          "EventType": "fleetRequestChange"
      },
      {
          "Timestamp": "2015-05-26T23:17:20.873Z",
          "EventInformation": {
              "EventSubType": "active"
          },
          "EventType": "fleetRequestChange"
      },
      {
          "Timestamp": "2015-05-26T23:21:21.712Z",
          "EventInformation": {
              "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
              "EventSubType": "launched"
          },
          "EventType": "instanceChange"
      },
      {
          "Timestamp": "2015-05-26T23:21:21.816Z",
          "EventInformation": {
              "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef1",
              "EventSubType": "launched"
          },
          "EventType": "instanceChange"
      }
  ],
  "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE",
  "NextToken": "CpHNsscimcV5oH7bSbub03CI2Qms5+ypNpNm
+53MNlR0YcXAkp0xFlfKf91yVxSExmbtma3awYxMFzNA663ZskT0AHtJ6TCb2Z8bQC2EnZgyELbymtWPfpZ1ZbauV
+P+TfGlWxWWB/Vr5dk5d4LfdgA/DRAHUrYgxzrEXAMPLE=",
  "StartTime": "2015-05-26T00:00:00Z"
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the history of the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -StartTime 2015-12-26T00:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
HistoryRecords     : {Amazon.EC2.Model.HistoryRecord,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.HistoryRecord...}
LastEvaluatedTime  : 12/26/2015 8:29:11 AM
NextToken          :
SpotFleetRequestId : sfr-088bc5f1-7e7b-451a-bd13-757f10672b93
StartTime          : 12/25/2015 8:00:00 AM
```

```
(Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -StartTime 2015-12-26T00:00:00Z).HistoryRecords
```

Output:

```
EventInformation                    EventType             Timestamp
----------------                    ---------             ---------
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation   fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation   fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation   fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation   launched              12/26/2015 8:25:34 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation   launched              12/26/2015 8:25:05 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the history of the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -StartTime 2015-12-26T00:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
HistoryRecords     : {Amazon.EC2.Model.HistoryRecord,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.HistoryRecord...}
LastEvaluatedTime  : 12/26/2015 8:29:11 AM
NextToken          :
SpotFleetRequestId : sfr-088bc5f1-7e7b-451a-bd13-757f10672b93
StartTime          : 12/25/2015 8:00:00 AM
```

```
(Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -StartTime 2015-12-26T00:00:00Z).HistoryRecords
```

Output:

```
EventInformation                    EventType             Timestamp
----------------                    ---------             ---------
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    launched              12/26/2015 8:25:34 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    launched              12/26/2015 8:25:05 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSpotFleetRequests` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSpotFleetRequests`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your Spot fleet requests

This example describes all of your Spot fleet requests.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-fleet-requests
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotFleetRequestConfigs": [
      {
          "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE",
          "SpotFleetRequestConfig": {
              "TargetCapacity": 20,
              "LaunchSpecifications": [
                  {
                      "EbsOptimized": false,
                      "NetworkInterfaces": [
                          {
                              "SubnetId": "subnet-a61dafcf",
                              "DeviceIndex": 0,
                              "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                              "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
                              "SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount": 0
                          }
                      ],
                      "InstanceType": "cc2.8xlarge",
                      "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d"
                  },
                  {
                      "EbsOptimized": false,
                      "NetworkInterfaces": [
                          {
                              "SubnetId": "subnet-a61dafcf",
                              "DeviceIndex": 0,
                              "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                              "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
                              "SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount": 0
                          }
                      ],
                      "InstanceType": "r3.8xlarge",
                      "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d"
                  }
              ],
              "SpotPrice": "0.05",
              "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role"
          },
          "SpotFleetRequestState": "active"
      },
      {
```

```
            "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-306341ed-9739-402e-881b-ce47bEXAMPLE",
            "SpotFleetRequestConfig": {
                "TargetCapacity": 20,
                "LaunchSpecifications": [
                    {
                        "EbsOptimized": false,
                        "NetworkInterfaces": [
                            {
                                "SubnetId": "subnet-6e7f829e",
                                "DeviceIndex": 0,
                                "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                                "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
                                "SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount": 0
                            }
                        ],
                        "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
                        "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d"
                    }
                ],
                "SpotPrice": "0.05",
                "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role"
            },
            "SpotFleetRequestState": "active"
        }
    ]
}
```

To describe a Spot fleet request

This example describes the specified Spot fleet request.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-fleet-requests --spot-fleet-request-ids sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotFleetRequestConfigs": [
      {
          "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE",
```

```
            "SpotFleetRequestConfig": {
                "TargetCapacity": 20,
                "LaunchSpecifications": [
                    {
                        "EbsOptimized": false,
                        "NetworkInterfaces": [
                            {
                                "SubnetId": "subnet-a61dafcf",
                                "DeviceIndex": 0,
                                "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                                "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
                                "SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount": 0
                            }
                        ],
                        "InstanceType": "cc2.8xlarge",
                        "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d"
                    },
                    {
                        "EbsOptimized": false,
                        "NetworkInterfaces": [
                            {
                                "SubnetId": "subnet-a61dafcf",
                                "DeviceIndex": 0,
                                "DeleteOnTermination": false,
                                "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
                                "SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount": 0
                            }
                        ],
                        "InstanceType": "r3.8xlarge",
                        "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d"
                    }
                ],
                "SpotPrice": "0.05",
                "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role"
            },
            "SpotFleetRequestState": "active"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequests in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE | format-list
```

Output:

```
ConfigData            : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotFleetRequestConfigData
CreateTime            : 12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
SpotFleetRequestId    : sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
SpotFleetRequestState : active
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Spot fleet requests.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE | format-list
```

Output:

```
ConfigData            : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotFleetRequestConfigData
CreateTime            : 12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
SpotFleetRequestId    : sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
SpotFleetRequestState : active
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Spot fleet requests.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSpotInstanceRequests` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSpotInstanceRequests`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a Spot Instance request

The following `describe-spot-instance-requests` example describes the specified Spot Instance request.

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-instance-requests \
    --spot-instance-request-ids sir-08b93456
```

Output:

```
{
    "SpotInstanceRequests": [
        {
            "CreateTime": "2018-04-30T18:14:55.000Z",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef1",
            "LaunchSpecification": {
                "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
                "ImageId": "ami-003634241a8fcdec0",
                "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
                "SecurityGroups": [
                    {
                        "GroupName": "default",
                        "GroupId": "sg-e38f24a7"
                    }
                ],
                "BlockDeviceMappings": [
                    {
                        "DeviceName": "/dev/sda1",
                        "Ebs": {
                            "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                            "SnapshotId": "snap-0e54a519c999adbbd",
```

```
                            "VolumeSize": 8,
                            "VolumeType": "standard",
                            "Encrypted": false
                        }
                    }
                ],
                "NetworkInterfaces": [
                    {
                        "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                        "DeviceIndex": 0,
                        "SubnetId": "subnet-049df61146c4d7901"
                    }
                ],
                "Placement": {
                    "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-2b",
                    "Tenancy": "default"
                },
                "Monitoring": {
                    "Enabled": false
                }
            },
            "LaunchedAvailabilityZone": "us-east-2b",
            "ProductDescription": "Linux/UNIX",
            "SpotInstanceRequestId": "sir-08b93456",
            "SpotPrice": "0.010000"
            "State": "active",
            "Status": {
                "Code": "fulfilled",
                "Message": "Your Spot request is fulfilled.",
                "UpdateTime": "2018-04-30T18:16:21.000Z"
            },
            "Tags": [],
            "Type": "one-time",
            "InstanceInterruptionBehavior": "terminate"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe Spot Instance requests based on filters

The following `describe-spot-instance-requests` example uses filters to scope the results to Spot Instance requests with the specified instance type in the specified Availability Zone. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the instance IDs.

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-instance-requests \
    --filters Name=launch.instance-type,Values=m3.medium Name=launched-
availability-zone,Values=us-east-2a \
    --query "SpotInstanceRequests[*].[InstanceId]" \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
i-057750d42936e468a
i-001efd250faaa6ffa
i-027552a73f021f3bd
...
```

For additional examples using filters, see Listing and filtering your resources in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe Spot Instance requests based on tags

The following `describe-spot-instance-requests` example uses tag filters to scope the results to Spot Instance requests that have the tag `cost-center=cc123`.

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-instance-requests \
    --filters Name=tag:cost-center,Values=cc123
```

For an example of the output for `describe-spot-instance-requests`, see Example 1.

For additional examples using tag filters, see Working with tags in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified Spot instance request.

```
Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest -SpotInstanceRequestId sir-12345678
```

Output:

```
ActualBlockHourlyPrice   :
AvailabilityZoneGroup    :
BlockDurationMinutes     : 0
CreateTime               : 4/8/2015 2:51:33 PM
Fault                    :
InstanceId               : i-12345678
LaunchedAvailabilityZone : us-west-2b
LaunchGroup              :
LaunchSpecification      : Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchSpecification
ProductDescription       : Linux/UNIX
SpotInstanceRequestId    : sir-12345678
SpotPrice                : 0.020000
State                    : active
Status                   : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotInstanceStatus
Tags                     : {Name}
Type                     : one-time
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Spot instance requests.

```
Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Spot instance request.

```
Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest -SpotInstanceRequestId sir-12345678
```

Output:

```
ActualBlockHourlyPrice   :
AvailabilityZoneGroup    :
BlockDurationMinutes     : 0
CreateTime               : 4/8/2015 2:51:33 PM
Fault                    :
InstanceId               : i-12345678
LaunchedAvailabilityZone : us-west-2b
LaunchGroup              :
LaunchSpecification      : Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchSpecification
```

```
ProductDescription       : Linux/UNIX
SpotInstanceRequestId    : sir-12345678
SpotPrice                : 0.020000
State                    : active
Status                   : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotInstanceStatus
Tags                     : {Name}
Type                     : one-time
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Spot instance requests.

```
Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSpotPriceHistory` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSpotPriceHistory`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe Spot price history

This example command returns the Spot Price history for m1.xlarge instances for a particular day in January.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-price-history --instance-types m1.xlarge --start-
time 2014-01-06T07:08:09 --end-time 2014-01-06T08:09:10
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotPriceHistory": [
          {
              "Timestamp": "2014-01-06T07:10:55.000Z",
              "ProductDescription": "SUSE Linux",
```

```
                "InstanceType": "m1.xlarge",
                "SpotPrice": "0.087000",
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-1b"
            },
            {
                "Timestamp": "2014-01-06T07:10:55.000Z",
                "ProductDescription": "SUSE Linux",
                "InstanceType": "m1.xlarge",
                "SpotPrice": "0.087000",
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-1c"
            },
            {
                "Timestamp": "2014-01-06T05:42:36.000Z",
                "ProductDescription": "SUSE Linux (Amazon VPC)",
                "InstanceType": "m1.xlarge",
                "SpotPrice": "0.087000",
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-1a"
        },
        ...
}
```

To describe Spot price history for Linux/UNIX Amazon VPC

This example command returns the Spot Price history for m1.xlarge, Linux/UNIX Amazon VPC instances for a particular day in January.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-spot-price-history --instance-types m1.xlarge --product-
description "Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)" --start-time 2014-01-06T07:08:09 --end-
time 2014-01-06T08:09:10
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotPriceHistory": [
      {
          "Timestamp": "2014-01-06T04:32:53.000Z",
          "ProductDescription": "Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)",
          "InstanceType": "m1.xlarge",
          "SpotPrice": "0.080000",
          "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-1a"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Timestamp": "2014-01-05T11:28:26.000Z",
            "ProductDescription": "Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)",
            "InstanceType": "m1.xlarge",
            "SpotPrice": "0.080000",
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-1c"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotPriceHistory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the last 10 entries in the Spot price history for the specified instance type and Availability Zone. Note that the value specified for the -AvailabilityZone parameter must be valid for the region value supplied to either the cmdlet's -Region parameter (not shown in the example) or set as default in the shell. This example command assumes a default region of 'us-west-2' has been set in the environment.

```
Get-EC2SpotPriceHistory -InstanceType c3.large -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a -
MaxResult 10
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017300
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 7:39:49 AM

AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017200
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 7:38:29 AM
```

```
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017300
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 6:57:13 AM
...
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotPriceHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the last 10 entries in the Spot price history for the specified instance type and Availability Zone. Note that the value specified for the -AvailabilityZone parameter must be valid for the region value supplied to either the cmdlet's -Region parameter (not shown in the example) or set as default in the shell. This example command assumes a default region of 'us-west-2' has been set in the environment.

```
Get-EC2SpotPriceHistory -InstanceType c3.large -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a -
MaxResult 10
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017300
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 7:39:49 AM

AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017200
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 7:38:29 AM

AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017300
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 6:57:13 AM
...
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotPriceHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSubnets` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSubnets`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Build and manage a resilient service
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
   /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
   /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
   public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
   {
       try
       {
           var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
           var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
               new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
               {
                   Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
```

```
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId}
does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the
subnets.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all your subnets

The following `describe-subnets` example displays the details of your subnets.

```
aws ec2 describe-subnets
```

Output:

```
{
    "Subnets": [
        {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use1-az2",
            "AvailableIpAddressCount": 4089,
            "CidrBlock": "172.31.80.0/20",
            "DefaultForAz": true,
            "MapPublicIpOnLaunch": false,
            "MapCustomerOwnedIpOnLaunch": true,
            "State": "available",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-0bb1c79de3EXAMPLE",
            "VpcId": "vpc-0ee975135dEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333",
            "AssignIpv6AddressOnCreation": false,
            "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
            "CustomerOwnedIpv4Pool:": 'pool-2EXAMPLE',
            "SubnetArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-2:111122223333:subnet/
subnet-0bb1c79de3EXAMPLE",
            "EnableDns64": false,
            "Ipv6Native": false,
            "PrivateDnsNameOptionsOnLaunch": {
                "HostnameType": "ip-name",
                "EnableResourceNameDnsARecord": false,
                "EnableResourceNameDnsAAAARecord": false
            }
        },
        {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use1-az2",
            "AvailableIpAddressCount": 4089,
            "CidrBlock": "172.31.80.0/20",
            "DefaultForAz": true,
            "MapPublicIpOnLaunch": true,
            "MapCustomerOwnedIpOnLaunch": false,
            "State": "available",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-8EXAMPLE",
            "VpcId": "vpc-3EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "1111222233333",
```

```
            "AssignIpv6AddressOnCreation": false,
            "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "MySubnet"
                }
            ],
            "SubnetArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:111122223333:subnet/
subnet-8EXAMPLE",
            "EnableDns64": false,
            "Ipv6Native": false,
            "PrivateDnsNameOptionsOnLaunch": {
                "HostnameType": "ip-name",
                "EnableResourceNameDnsARecord": false,
                "EnableResourceNameDnsAAAARecord": false
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with VPCs and Subnets in the *AWS VPC User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe the subnets of a specific VPC

The following `describe-subnets` example uses a filter to retrieve details for the subnets of the specified VPC.

```
aws ec2 describe-subnets \
    --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=vpc-3EXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Subnets": [
        {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1d",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use1-az2",
            "AvailableIpAddressCount": 4089,
            "CidrBlock": "172.31.80.0/20",
            "DefaultForAz": true,
            "MapPublicIpOnLaunch": true,
```

```
            "MapCustomerOwnedIpOnLaunch": false,
            "State": "available",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-8EXAMPLE",
            "VpcId": "vpc-3EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333",
            "AssignIpv6AddressOnCreation": false,
            "Ipv6CidrBlockAssociationSet": [],
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "MySubnet"
                }
            ],
            "SubnetArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:111122223333:subnet/
subnet-8EXAMPLE",
            "EnableDns64": false,
            "Ipv6Native": false,
            "PrivateDnsNameOptionsOnLaunch": {
                "HostnameType": "ip-name",
                "EnableResourceNameDnsARecord": false,
                "EnableResourceNameDnsAAAARecord": false
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with VPCs and Subnets in the *AWS VPC User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe the subnets with a specific tag

The following `describe-subnets` example uses a filter to retrieve the details of those subnets with the tag `CostCenter=123` and the `--query` parameter to display the subnet IDs of the subnets with this tag.

```
aws ec2 describe-subnets \
    --filters "Name=tag:CostCenter,Values=123" \
    --query "Subnets[*].SubnetId" \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
subnet-0987a87c8b37348ef
```

```
subnet-02a95061c45f372ee
subnet-03f720e7de2788d73
```

For more information, see Working with VPCs and Subnets in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new EC2Client({});
const { Subnets } = await client.send(
  new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
    Filters: [
      { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
      { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
      { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
    ],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified subnet.

```
Get-EC2Subnet -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2c
AvailableIpAddressCount : 251
CidrBlock               : 10.0.0.0/24
DefaultForAz            : False
MapPublicIpOnLaunch     : False
State                   : available
SubnetId                : subnet-1a2b3c4d
Tags                    : {}
VpcId                   : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your subnets.

```
Get-EC2Subnet
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified subnet.

```
Get-EC2Subnet -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2c
AvailableIpAddressCount : 251
CidrBlock               : 10.0.0.0/24
DefaultForAz            : False
MapPublicIpOnLaunch     : False
State                   : available
SubnetId                : subnet-1a2b3c4d
Tags                    : {}
VpcId                   : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your subnets.

```
Get-EC2Subnet
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
```

```
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
```

```
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones
 {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all tags for a single resource

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for the specified instance.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags \
    --filters "Name=resource-id,Values=i-1234567890abcdef8"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
```

```
            "ResourceType": "instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef8",
            "Value": "Test",
            "Key": "Stack"
        },
        {
            "ResourceType": "instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef8",
            "Value": "Beta Server",
            "Key": "Name"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe all tags for a resource type

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for your volumes.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags \
    --filters "Name=resource-type,Values=volume"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "volume",
            "ResourceId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Value": "Project1",
            "Key": "Purpose"
        },
        {
            "ResourceType": "volume",
            "ResourceId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
            "Value": "Logs",
            "Key": "Purpose"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To describe all your tags

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for all your resources.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags
```

Example 4: To describe the tags for your resources based on a tag key

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for your resources that have a tag with the key `Stack`.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags \
    --filters Name=key,Values=Stack
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "volume",
            "ResourceId": "vol-027552a73f021f3b",
            "Value": "Production",
            "Key": "Stack"
        },
        {
            "ResourceType": "instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef8",
            "Value": "Test",
            "Key": "Stack"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 5: To describe the tags for your resources based on a tag key and tag value

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for your resources that have the tag `Stack=Test`.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags \
    --filters Name=key,Values=Stack Name=value,Values=Test
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Tags": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "image",
            "ResourceId": "ami-3ac336533f021f3bd",
            "Value": "Test",
            "Key": "Stack"
        },
        {
            "ResourceType": "instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef8",
            "Value": "Test",
            "Key": "Stack"
        }
    ]
}
```

The following `describe-tags` example uses alternate syntax to describe resources with the tag `Stack=Test`.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags \
    --filters "Name=tag:Stack,Values=Test"
```

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for all your instances that have a tag with the key `Purpose` and no value.

```
aws ec2 describe-tags \
    --filters "Name=resource-
type,Values=instance" "Name=key,Values=Purpose" "Name=value,Values="
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "instance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef5",
            "Value": null,
            "Key": "Purpose"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches the tags for resource-type 'image'

```
Get-EC2Tag -Filter @{Name="resource-type";Values="image"}
```

Output:

```
Key         ResourceId            ResourceType Value
---         ----------            ------------ -----
Name        ami-0a123b4ccb567a8ea image        Win7-Imported
auto-delete ami-0a123b4ccb567a8ea image        never
```

Example 2: This example fetches all the tags for all the resources and groups them by resource type

```
Get-EC2Tag | Group-Object resourcetype
```

Output:

```
Count Name                      Group
----- ----                      -----
    9 subnet                    {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
   53 instance                  {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
    3 route-table               {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    5 security-group            {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
   30 volume                    {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
    1 internet-gateway          {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
```

```
    3 network-interface         {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    4 elastic-ip                {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    1 dhcp-options              {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    2 image                     {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    3 vpc                       {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
```

Example 3: This example displays all the resources with tag 'auto-delete' with value 'no' for the given region

```
Get-EC2Tag -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="tag:auto-delete";Values="no"}
```

Output:

```
Key         ResourceId            ResourceType Value
---         ----------            ------------ -----
auto-delete i-0f1bce234d5dd678b   instance     no
auto-delete vol-01d234aa5678901a2 volume       no
auto-delete vol-01234bfb5def6f7b8 volume       no
auto-delete vol-01ccb23f4c5e67890 volume       no
```

Example 4: This example obtains all the resources with tag 'auto-delete' with 'no' value and further filters in the next pipe to parse only 'instance' resource types and eventually creates 'ThisInstance' tag for each instance resources with value being the instance id itself

```
Get-EC2Tag -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="tag:auto-delete";Values="no"}
 | Where-Object ResourceType -eq "instance" | ForEach-Object {New-EC2Tag -
ResourceId $_.ResourceId -Tag @{Key="ThisInstance";Value=$_.ResourceId}}
```

Example 5: This example fetches tags for all the instance resources as well as 'Name' keys and displays them in a table format

```
Get-EC2Tag -Filter @{Name="resource-
type";Values="instance"},@{Name="key";Values="Name"} | Select-Object ResourceId,
 @{Name="Name-Tag";Expression={$PSItem.Value}} | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
ResourceId          Name-Tag
----------          --------
i-012e3cb4df567e1aa jump1
i-01c23a45d6fc7a89f repro-3
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the tags for resource-type 'image'

```
Get-EC2Tag -Filter @{Name="resource-type";Values="image"}
```

Output:

```
Key         ResourceId            ResourceType Value
---         ----------            ------------ -----
Name        ami-0a123b4ccb567a8ea image        Win7-Imported
auto-delete ami-0a123b4ccb567a8ea image        never
```

Example 2: This example fetches all the tags for all the resources and groups them by resource type

```
Get-EC2Tag | Group-Object resourcetype
```

Output:

```
Count Name                      Group
----- ----                      -----
    9 subnet                    {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
   53 instance                  {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
    3 route-table               {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    5 security-group            {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
```

```
   30 volume                    {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
    1 internet-gateway          {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    3 network-interface         {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    4 elastic-ip                {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    1 dhcp-options              {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    2 image                     {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
    3 vpc                       {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
```

Example 3: This example displays all the resources with tag 'auto-delete' with value 'no' for the given region

```
Get-EC2Tag -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="tag:auto-delete";Values="no"}
```

Output:

```
Key         ResourceId            ResourceType Value
---         ----------            ------------ -----
auto-delete i-0f1bce234d5dd678b   instance     no
auto-delete vol-01d234aa5678901a2 volume       no
auto-delete vol-01234bfb5def6f7b8 volume       no
auto-delete vol-01ccb23f4c5e67890 volume       no
```

Example 4: This example obtains all the resources with tag 'auto-delete' with 'no' value and further filters in the next pipe to parse only 'instance' resource types and eventually creates 'ThisInstance' tag for each instance resources with value being the instance id itself

```
Get-EC2Tag -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="tag:auto-delete";Values="no"}
 | Where-Object ResourceType -eq "instance" | ForEach-Object {New-EC2Tag -
ResourceId $_.ResourceId -Tag @{Key="ThisInstance";Value=$_.ResourceId}}
```

Example 5: This example fetches tags for all the instance resources as well as 'Name' keys and displays them in a table format

```
Get-EC2Tag -Filter @{Name="resource-
type";Values="instance"},@{Name="key";Values="Name"} | Select-Object ResourceId,
 @{Name="Name-Tag";Expression={$PSItem.Value}} | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
ResourceId          Name-Tag
----------          --------
i-012e3cb4df567e1aa jump1
i-01c23a45d6fc7a89f repro-3
```

Example 6: This example validates permissions for getting EC2 Tags using the DryRun parameter without actually fetching them. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
Get-EC2Tag -DryRun $true
```

Output:

```
Get-EC2Tag: Request would have succeeded, but DryRun flag is set.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVolumeAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVolumeAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a volume attribute

This example command describes the `autoEnableIo` attribute of the volume with the ID `vol-049df61146c4d7901`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-volume-attribute --volume-id vol-049df61146c4d7901 --
attribute autoEnableIO
```

Output:

```
{
    "AutoEnableIO": {
        "Value": false
    },
    "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901"
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified volume.

```
Get-EC2VolumeAttribute -VolumeId vol-12345678 -Attribute AutoEnableIO
```

Output:

```
AutoEnableIO    ProductCodes    VolumeId
------------    ------------    --------
False           {}              vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified volume.

```
Get-EC2VolumeAttribute -VolumeId vol-12345678 -Attribute AutoEnableIO
```

Output:

```
AutoEnableIO    ProductCodes    VolumeId
------------    ------------    --------
False           {}              vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVolumeStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVolumeStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the status of a single volume

This example command describes the status for the volume `vol-1234567890abcdef0`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-volume-status --volume-ids vol-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "VolumeStatuses": [
        {
            "VolumeStatus": {
                "Status": "ok",
                "Details": [
                    {
                        "Status": "passed",
                        "Name": "io-enabled"
                    },
                    {
                        "Status": "not-applicable",
                        "Name": "io-performance"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Actions": [],
            "Events": []
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

To describe the status of impaired volumes

This example command describes the status for all volumes that are impaired. In this example output, there are no impaired volumes.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-volume-status --filters Name=volume-status.status,Values=impaired
```

Output:

```
{
    "VolumeStatuses": []
}
```

If you have a volume with a failed status check (status is impaired), see Working with an Impaired Volume in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the status of the specified volume.

```
Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Actions          : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
Events           : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeStatus     : Amazon.EC2.Model.VolumeStatusInfo
```

```
(Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678).VolumeStatus
```

Output:

```
Details                         Status
-------                         ------
{io-enabled, io-performance}    ok
```

```
(Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678).VolumeStatus.Details
```

Output:

```
Name                            Status
----                            ------
io-enabled                      passed
io-performance                  not-applicable
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the status of the specified volume.

```
Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Actions          : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
Events           : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeStatus     : Amazon.EC2.Model.VolumeStatusInfo
```

```
(Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678).VolumeStatus
```

Output:

```
Details                         Status
```

```
-------                          ------
{io-enabled, io-performance}     ok
```

```
(Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678).VolumeStatus.Details
```

Output:

```
Name                             Status
----                             ------
io-enabled                       passed
io-performance                   not-applicable
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVolumes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVolumes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a volume

The following `describe-volumes` example describes the specified volumes in the current Region.

```
aws ec2 describe-volumes \
    --volume-ids vol-049df61146c4d7901 vol-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "Volumes": [
        {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "Attachments": [
                {
                    "AttachTime": "2013-12-18T22:35:00.000Z",
                    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
```

```
                    "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
                    "State": "attached",
                    "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                    "Device": "/dev/sda1"
                }
            ],
            "Encrypted": true,
            "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-2a:123456789012:key/8c5b2c63-
b9bc-45a3-a87a-5513eEXAMPLE,
            "VolumeType": "gp2",
            "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
            "State": "in-use",
            "Iops": 100,
            "SnapshotId": "snap-1234567890abcdef0",
            "CreateTime": "2019-12-18T22:35:00.084Z",
            "Size": 8
        },
        {
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "Attachments": [],
            "Encrypted": false,
            "VolumeType": "gp2",
            "VolumeId": "vol-1234567890abcdef0",
            "State": "available",
            "Iops": 300,
            "SnapshotId": "",
            "CreateTime": "2020-02-27T00:02:41.791Z",
            "Size": 100
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe volumes that are attached to a specific instance

The following `describe-volumes` example describes all volumes that are both attached to the specified instance and set to delete when the instance terminates.

```
aws ec2 describe-volumes \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --filters Name=attachment.instance-
id,Values=i-1234567890abcdef0 Name=attachment.delete-on-termination,Values=true
```

For an example of the output for `describe-volumes`, see Example 1.

Example 3: To describe available volumes in a specific Availability Zone

The following `describe-volumes` example describes all volumes that have a status of `available` and are in the specified Availability Zone.

```
aws ec2 describe-volumes \
    --filters Name=status,Values=available Name=availability-zone,Values=us-east-1a
```

For an example of the output for `describe-volumes`, see Example 1.

Example 4: To describe volumes based on tags

The following `describe-volumes` example describes all volumes that have the tag key `Name` and a value that begins with `Test`. The output is then filtered with a query that displays only the tags and IDs of the volumes.

```
aws ec2 describe-volumes \
    --filters Name=tag:Name,Values=Test* \
    --query "Volumes[*].{ID:VolumeId,Tag:Tags}"
```

Output:

```
[
    {
       "Tag": [
           {
               "Value": "Test2",
               "Key": "Name"
           }
       ],
       "ID": "vol-1234567890abcdef0"
   },
   {
       "Tag": [
           {
               "Value": "Test1",
               "Key": "Name"
           }
       ],
       "ID": "vol-049df61146c4d7901"
    }
```

```
]
```

For additional examples using tag filters, see Working with tags in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeVolumes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified EBS volume.

```
Get-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2c
CreateTime       : 7/17/2015 4:35:19 PM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 90
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 30
SnapshotId       : snap-12345678
State            : in-use
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : standard
```

Example 2: This example describes your EBS volumes that have the status 'available'.

```
Get-EC2Volume -Filter @{ Name="status"; Values="available" }
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2c
CreateTime       : 12/21/2015 2:31:29 PM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 60
```

```
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 20
SnapshotId       : snap-12345678
State            : available
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : gp2
...
```

Example 3: This example describes all your EBS volumes.

```
Get-EC2Volume
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified EBS volume.

```
Get-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2c
CreateTime       : 7/17/2015 4:35:19 PM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 90
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 30
SnapshotId       : snap-12345678
State            : in-use
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : standard
```

Example 2: This example describes your EBS volumes that have the status 'available'.

```
Get-EC2Volume -Filter @{ Name="status"; Values="available" }
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2c
CreateTime       : 12/21/2015 2:31:29 PM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 60
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 20
SnapshotId       : snap-12345678
State            : available
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : gp2
...
```

Example 3: This example describes all your EBS volumes.

```
Get-EC2Volume
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpcAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpcAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the enableDnsSupport attribute

This example describes the `enableDnsSupport` attribute. This attribute indicates whether DNS resolution is enabled for the VPC. If this attribute is `true`, the Amazon DNS server resolves DNS hostnames for your instances to their corresponding IP addresses; otherwise, it does not.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-attribute --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2 --attribute enableDnsSupport
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2",
    "EnableDnsSupport": {
        "Value": true
    }
}
```

To describe the enableDnsHostnames attribute

This example describes the `enableDnsHostnames` attribute. This attribute indicates whether the instances launched in the VPC get DNS hostnames. If this attribute is `true`, instances in the VPC get DNS hostnames; otherwise, they do not.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-attribute --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2 --
attribute enableDnsHostnames
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2",
    "EnableDnsHostnames": {
        "Value": true
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the 'enableDnsSupport' attribute.

```
Get-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -Attribute enableDnsSupport
```

Output:

```
EnableDnsSupport
```

```
----------------
True
```

Example 2: This example describes the 'enableDnsHostnames' attribute.

```
Get-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -Attribute enableDnsHostnames
```

Output:

```
EnableDnsHostnames
------------------
True
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the 'enableDnsSupport' attribute.

```
Get-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -Attribute enableDnsSupport
```

Output:

```
EnableDnsSupport
----------------
True
```

Example 2: This example describes the 'enableDnsHostnames' attribute.

```
Get-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -Attribute enableDnsHostnames
```

Output:

```
EnableDnsHostnames
------------------
True
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpcClassicLink` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpcClassicLink`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the ClassicLink status of your VPCs

This example lists the ClassicLink status of vpc-88888888.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-classic-link --vpc-id vpc-88888888
```

Output:

```
{
  "Vpcs": [
    {
      "ClassicLinkEnabled": true,
      "VpcId": "vpc-88888888",
      "Tags": [
        {
          "Value": "classiclinkvpc",
          "Key": "Name"
        }
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

This example lists only VPCs that are enabled for Classiclink (the filter value of `is-classic-link-enabled` is set to `true`).

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-classic-link --filter "Name=is-classic-link-enabled,Values=true"
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLink in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Above example returns all the VPCs with their ClassicLinkEnabled state for the region

```
Get-EC2VpcClassicLink -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
ClassicLinkEnabled Tags   VpcId
------------------ ----   -----
False              {Name} vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb
False              {}     vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9
False              {Name} vpc-0123456b078b9d01f
False              {}     vpc-12cf3b4f
False              {Name} vpc-0b12d3456a7e8901d
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Above example returns all the VPCs with their ClassicLinkEnabled state for the region

```
Get-EC2VpcClassicLink -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
ClassicLinkEnabled Tags   VpcId
------------------ ----   -----
False              {Name} vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb
False              {}     vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9
False              {Name} vpc-0123456b078b9d01f
False              {}     vpc-12cf3b4f
False              {Name} vpc-0b12d3456a7e8901d
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe ClassicLink DNS support for your VPCs

This example describes the ClassicLink DNS support status of all of your VPCs.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-classic-link-dns-support
```

Output:

```
{
  "Vpcs": [
    {
      "VpcId": "vpc-88888888",
      "ClassicLinkDnsSupported": true
    },
    {
      "VpcId": "vpc-1a2b3c4d",
      "ClassicLinkDnsSupported": false
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the ClassicLink DNS support status of VPCs for the region eu-west-1

```
Get-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
ClassicLinkDnsSupported VpcId
----------------------- -----
False                   vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d
False                   vpc-12cf3b4f
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the ClassicLink DNS support status of VPCs for the region eu-west-1

```
Get-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
ClassicLinkDnsSupported VpcId
----------------------- -----
False                   vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d
False                   vpc-12cf3b4f
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpcEndpointServices` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpcEndpointServices`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all VPC endpoint services

The following `describe-vpc-endpoint-services` example lists all VPC endpoint services for an AWS Region.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-endpoint-services
```

Output:

```
{
    "ServiceDetails": [
        {
            "ServiceType": [
                {
                    "ServiceType": "Gateway"
                }
            ],
            "AcceptanceRequired": false,
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.dynamodb",
            "VpcEndpointPolicySupported": true,
            "Owner": "amazon",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                "us-east-1a",
                "us-east-1b",
                "us-east-1c",
                "us-east-1d",
                "us-east-1e",
                "us-east-1f"
            ],
            "BaseEndpointDnsNames": [
                "dynamodb.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
            ]
        },
        {
            "ServiceType": [
                {
                    "ServiceType": "Interface"
                }
            ],
            "PrivateDnsName": "ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.ec2",
            "VpcEndpointPolicySupported": false,
            "Owner": "amazon",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                "us-east-1a",
                "us-east-1b",
                "us-east-1c",
                "us-east-1d",
                "us-east-1e",
                "us-east-1f"
            ],
```

```
            "AcceptanceRequired": false,
            "BaseEndpointDnsNames": [
                "ec2.us-east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com"
            ]
        },
        {
            "ServiceType": [
                {
                    "ServiceType": "Interface"
                }
            ],
            "PrivateDnsName": "ssm.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.ssm",
            "VpcEndpointPolicySupported": true,
            "Owner": "amazon",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                "us-east-1a",
                "us-east-1b",
                "us-east-1c",
                "us-east-1d",
                "us-east-1e"
            ],
            "AcceptanceRequired": false,
            "BaseEndpointDnsNames": [
                "ssm.us-east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com"
            ]
        }
    ],
    "ServiceNames": [
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.dynamodb",
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.ec2",
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.ec2messages",
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.elasticloadbalancing",
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.kinesis-streams",
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3",
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.ssm"
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe the details about an endpoint service

The following `describe-vpc-endpoint-services` example lists the details of the Amazon S3 interface endpoint service.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-endpoint-services \
    --filter 'Name=service-type,Values=Interface' Name=service-
name,Values=com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3
```

Output:

```
{
    "ServiceDetails": [
        {
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3",
            "ServiceId": "vpce-svc-081d84efcdEXAMPLE",
            "ServiceType": [
                {
                    "ServiceType": "Interface"
                }
            ],
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                "us-east-1a",
                "us-east-1b",
                "us-east-1c",
                "us-east-1d",
                "us-east-1e",
            "us-east-1f"
            ],
            "Owner": "amazon",
            "BaseEndpointDnsNames": [
                "s3.us-east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com"
            ],
            "VpcEndpointPolicySupported": true,
            "AcceptanceRequired": false,
            "ManagesVpcEndpoints": false,
            "Tags": []
        }
    ],
    "ServiceNames": [
        "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.s3"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View available AWS service names in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpointServices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes EC2 VPC endpoint service with the given filter, in this case com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs. Further, it also expands the ServiceDetails property and displays the details

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpointService -Region eu-west-1 -MaxResult 5 -Filter @{Name="service-
name";Values="com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs"} | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 ServiceDetails
```

Output:

```
AcceptanceRequired         : False
AvailabilityZones          : {eu-west-1a, eu-west-1b, eu-west-1c}
BaseEndpointDnsNames       : {ecs.eu-west-1.vpce.amazonaws.com}
Owner                      : amazon
PrivateDnsName             : ecs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com
ServiceName                : com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs
ServiceType                : {Amazon.EC2.Model.ServiceTypeDetail}
VpcEndpointPolicySupported : False
```

Example 2: This example retrieves all the EC2 VPC Endpoint services and returns the ServiceNames matching "ssm"

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpointService -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 Servicenames | Where-Object { -match "ssm"}
```

Output:

```
com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssm
com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssmmessages
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpointServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes EC2 VPC endpoint service with the given filter, in this case com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs. Further, it also expands the ServiceDetails property and displays the details

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpointService -Region eu-west-1 -MaxResult 5 -Filter @{Name="service-
name";Values="com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs"} | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 ServiceDetails
```

Output:

```
AcceptanceRequired         : False
AvailabilityZones          : {eu-west-1a, eu-west-1b, eu-west-1c}
BaseEndpointDnsNames       : {ecs.eu-west-1.vpce.amazonaws.com}
Owner                      : amazon
PrivateDnsName             : ecs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com
ServiceName                : com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs
ServiceType                : {Amazon.EC2.Model.ServiceTypeDetail}
VpcEndpointPolicySupported : False
```

Example 2: This example retrieves all the EC2 VPC Endpoint services and returns the ServiceNames matching "ssm"

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpointService -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 Servicenames | Where-Object { -match "ssm"}
```

Output:

```
com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssm
com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssmmessages
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpointServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpcEndpoints` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpcEndpoints`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your VPC endpoints

The following `describe-vpc-endpoints` example displays details for all of your VPC endpoints.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpc-endpoints
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpcEndpoints": [
        {
            "PolicyDocument": "{\"Version\":\"2008-10-17\",\"Statement\":
[{\"Effect\":\"Allow\",\"Principal\":\"*\",\"Action\":\"*\",\"Resource\":\"*
\"}]}",
            "VpcId": "vpc-aabb1122",
            "NetworkInterfaceIds": [],
            "SubnetIds": [],
            "PrivateDnsEnabled": true,
            "State": "available",
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.dynamodb",
            "RouteTableIds": [
                "rtb-3d560345"
            ],
            "Groups": [],
            "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-032a826a",
            "VpcEndpointType": "Gateway",
            "CreationTimestamp": "2017-09-05T20:41:28Z",
            "DnsEntries": [],
            "OwnerId": "123456789012"
        },
        {
            "PolicyDocument": "{\n  \"Statement\": [\n    {\n      \"Action\":
 \"*\", \n      \"Effect\": \"Allow\", \n      \"Principal\": \"*\", \n
 \"Resource\": \"*\"\n    }\n  ]\n}",
            "VpcId": "vpc-1a2b3c4d",
            "NetworkInterfaceIds": [
                "eni-2ec2b084",
                "eni-1b4a65cf"
            ],
            "SubnetIds": [
                "subnet-d6fcaa8d",
                "subnet-7b16de0c"
            ],
            "PrivateDnsEnabled": false,
            "State": "available",
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.us-east-1.elasticloadbalancing",
            "RouteTableIds": [],
```

```
            "Groups": [
                {
                    "GroupName": "default",
                    "GroupId": "sg-54e8bf31"
                }
            ],
            "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-0f89a33420c1931d7",
            "VpcEndpointType": "Interface",
            "CreationTimestamp": "2017-09-05T17:55:27.583Z",
            "DnsEntries": [
                {
                    "HostedZoneId": "Z7HUB22UULQXV",
                    "DnsName": "vpce-0f89a33420c1931d7-
bluzidnv.elasticloadbalancing.us-east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com"
                },
                {
                    "HostedZoneId": "Z7HUB22UULQXV",
                    "DnsName": "vpce-0f89a33420c1931d7-bluzidnv-us-
east-1b.elasticloadbalancing.us-east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com"
                },
                {
                    "HostedZoneId": "Z7HUB22UULQXV",
                    "DnsName": "vpce-0f89a33420c1931d7-bluzidnv-us-
east-1a.elasticloadbalancing.us-east-1.vpce.amazonaws.com"
                }
            ],
            "OwnerId": "123456789012"
        },
        {
            "VpcEndpointId": "vpce-aabbaabbaabbaabba",
            "VpcEndpointType": "GatewayLoadBalancer",
            "VpcId": "vpc-111122223333aabbc",
            "ServiceName": "com.amazonaws.vpce.us-east-1.vpce-
svc-123123a1c43abc123",
            "State": "available",
            "SubnetIds": [
                "subnet-0011aabbcc2233445"
            ],
            "RequesterManaged": false,
            "NetworkInterfaceIds": [
                "eni-01010120203030405"
            ],
            "CreationTimestamp": "2020-11-11T08:06:03.522Z",
            "Tags": [],
```

```
            "OwnerId": "123456789012"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Concepts in the *AWS PrivateLink User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpoints in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes one or more of your VPC endpoints for the region eu-west-1. It then pipes the output to the next command, which select the VpcEndpointId property and returns array VPC ID as string array

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 VpcEndpointId
```

Output:

```
vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d
vpce-01d2b345a6787890b
vpce-0012e34d567890e12
vpce-0c123db4567890123
```

Example 2: This example describes all the vpc endpoints for the region eu-west-1 and selects VpcEndpointId, VpcId, ServiceName and PrivateDnsEnabled properties to present it in a tabular format

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object VpcEndpointId, VpcId,
 ServiceName, PrivateDnsEnabled | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
VpcEndpointId          VpcId                 ServiceName
 PrivateDnsEnabled
-------------          -----                 -----------
 -----------------
```

```
vpce-02a2ab2f2f2cc2f2d vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssm
             True
vpce-01d1b111a1114561b vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ec2
             True
vpce-0011e23d45167e838 vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ec2messages
             True
vpce-0c123db4567890123 vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssmmessages
             True
```

Example 3: This example exports the policy document for the VPC Endpoint vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d into a json file

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 -VpcEndpointId vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d |
 Select-Object -expand PolicyDocument | Out-File vpce_policyDocument.json
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpoints in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes one or more of your VPC endpoints for the region eu-west-1. It then pipes the output to the next command, which select the VpcEndpointId property and returns array VPC ID as string array

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 VpcEndpointId
```

Output:

```
vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d
vpce-01d2b345a6787890b
vpce-0012e34d567890e12
vpce-0c123db4567890123
```

Example 2: This example describes all the vpc endpoints for the region eu-west-1 and selects VpcEndpointId, VpcId, ServiceName and PrivateDnsEnabled properties to present it in a tabular format

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object VpcEndpointId, VpcId,
 ServiceName, PrivateDnsEnabled | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
VpcEndpointId          VpcId                 ServiceName
 PrivateDnsEnabled
-------------          -----                 -----------
 -----------------
vpce-02a2ab2f2f2cc2f2d vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssm
             True
vpce-01d1b111a1114561b vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ec2
             True
vpce-0011e23d45167e838 vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ec2messages
             True
vpce-0c123db4567890123 vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssmmessages
             True
```

Example 3: This example exports the policy document for the VPC Endpoint vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d into a json file

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 -VpcEndpointId vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d |
 Select-Object -expand PolicyDocument | Out-File vpce_policyDocument.json
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpoints in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpcs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpcs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Build and manage a resilient service
- Get started with Amazon VPC
- Get started with Transit Gateway
- Get started with VPC IPAM

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
```

```
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all of your VPCs

The following `describe-vpcs` example retrieves details about your VPCs.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpcs
```

Output:

```
{
    "Vpcs": [
        {
            "CidrBlock": "30.1.0.0/16",
            "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-19edf471",
            "State": "available",
            "VpcId": "vpc-0e9801d129EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333",
            "InstanceTenancy": "default",
            "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
                {
                    "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-062c64cfafEXAMPLE",
                    "CidrBlock": "30.1.0.0/16",
                    "CidrBlockState": {
                        "State": "associated"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "IsDefault": false,
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "Not Shared"
```

```
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
            "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-19edf471",
            "State": "available",
            "VpcId": "vpc-06e4ab6c6cEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "222222222222",
            "InstanceTenancy": "default",
            "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
                {
                    "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-00b17b4eddEXAMPLE",
                    "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                    "CidrBlockState": {
                        "State": "associated"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "IsDefault": false,
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "Shared VPC"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe a specified VPC

The following `describe-vpcs` example retrieves details for the specified VPC.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpcs \
    --vpc-ids vpc-06e4ab6c6cEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "Vpcs": [
        {
            "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
```

```
            "DhcpOptionsId": "dopt-19edf471",
            "State": "available",
            "VpcId": "vpc-06e4ab6c6cEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerId": "111122223333",
            "InstanceTenancy": "default",
            "CidrBlockAssociationSet": [
                {
                    "AssociationId": "vpc-cidr-assoc-00b17b4eddEXAMPLE",
                    "CidrBlock": "10.0.0.0/16",
                    "CidrBlockState": {
                        "State": "associated"
                    }
                }
            ],
            "IsDefault": false,
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "Shared VPC"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
```

```
    );
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified VPC.

```
Get-EC2Vpc -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 10.0.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-1a2b3c4d
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : False
State           : available
Tags            : {Name}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the default VPC (there can be only one per region). If your account supports EC2-Classic in this region, there is no default VPC.

```
Get-EC2Vpc -Filter @{Name="isDefault"; Values="true"}
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 172.31.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-12345678
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : True
State           : available
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-45678901
```

Example 3: This example describes the VPCs that match the specified filter (that is, have a CIDR that matches the value '10.0.0.0/16' and are in the state 'available').

```
Get-EC2Vpc -Filter @{Name="cidr";
 Values="10.0.0.0/16"},@{Name="state";Values="available"}
```

Example 4: This example describes all your VPCs.

```
Get-EC2Vpc
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified VPC.

```
Get-EC2Vpc -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 10.0.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-1a2b3c4d
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : False
State           : available
Tags            : {Name}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the default VPC (there can be only one per region). If your account supports EC2-Classic in this region, there is no default VPC.

```
Get-EC2Vpc -Filter @{Name="isDefault"; Values="true"}
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 172.31.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-12345678
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : True
State           : available
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-45678901
```

Example 3: This example describes the VPCs that match the specified filter (that is, have a CIDR that matches the value '10.0.0.0/16' and are in the state 'available').

```
Get-EC2Vpc -Filter @{Name="cidr";
 Values="10.0.0.0/16"},@{Name="state";Values="available"}
```

Example 4: This example describes all your VPCs.

```
Get-EC2Vpc
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.
```

```
        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs.
 "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
 permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
 parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]
['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeVpnConnections` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpnConnections`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe your VPN connections

The following `describe-vpn-connections` example describes all of your Site-to-Site VPN connections.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpn-connections
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnConnections": [
        {
            "CustomerGatewayConfiguration": "...configuration information...",
            "CustomerGatewayId": "cgw-01234567abcde1234",
            "Category": "VPN",
            "State": "available",
            "Type": "ipsec.1",
            "VpnConnectionId": "vpn-1122334455aabbccd",
            "TransitGatewayId": "tgw-00112233445566aab",
            "Options": {
                "EnableAcceleration": false,
                "StaticRoutesOnly": true,
                "LocalIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
                "RemoteIpv4NetworkCidr": "0.0.0.0/0",
                "TunnelInsideIpVersion": "ipv4"
            },
            "Routes": [],
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "CanadaVPN"
                }
            ],
            "VgwTelemetry": [
                {
                    "AcceptedRouteCount": 0,
                    "LastStatusChange": "2020-07-29T10:35:11.000Z",
                    "OutsideIpAddress": "203.0.113.3",
                    "Status": "DOWN",
                    "StatusMessage": ""
                },
                {
                    "AcceptedRouteCount": 0,
                    "LastStatusChange": "2020-09-02T09:09:33.000Z",
                    "OutsideIpAddress": "203.0.113.5",
                    "Status": "UP",
                    "StatusMessage": ""
                }
```

```
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see How AWS Site-to-Site VPN works in the *AWS Site-to-Site VPN User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe your available VPN connections

The following `describe-vpn-connections` example describes your Site-to-Site VPN connections with a state of `available`.

```
aws ec2 describe-vpn-connections \
    --filters "Name=state,Values=available"
```

For more information, see How AWS Site-to-Site VPN works in the *AWS Site-to-Site VPN User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeVpnConnections in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified VPN connection.

```
Get-EC2VpnConnection -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678
```

Output:

```
CustomerGatewayConfiguration : [XML document]
CustomerGatewayId            : cgw-1a2b3c4d
Options                      : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpnConnectionOptions
Routes                       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.VpnStaticRoute}
State                        : available
Tags                         : {}
Type                         : ipsec.1
VgwTelemetry                 : {Amazon.EC2.Model.VgwTelemetry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.VgwTelemetry}
VpnConnectionId              : vpn-12345678
```

```
VpnGatewayId                 : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example describes any VPN connection whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2VpnConnection -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your VPN connections.

```
Get-EC2VpnConnection
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnConnections in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified VPN connection.

```
Get-EC2VpnConnection -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678
```

Output:

```
CustomerGatewayConfiguration : [XML document]
CustomerGatewayId            : cgw-1a2b3c4d
Options                      : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpnConnectionOptions
Routes                       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.VpnStaticRoute}
State                        : available
Tags                         : {}
Type                         : ipsec.1
VgwTelemetry                 : {Amazon.EC2.Model.VgwTelemetry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.VgwTelemetry}
VpnConnectionId              : vpn-12345678
VpnGatewayId                 : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example describes any VPN connection whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2VpnConnection -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your VPN connections.

```
Get-EC2VpnConnection
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnConnections in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeVpnGateways` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVpnGateways`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your virtual private gateways

This example describes your virtual private gateways.

Command:

```
aws ec2 describe-vpn-gateways
```

Output:

```
{
    "VpnGateways": [
        {
            "State": "available",
            "Type": "ipsec.1",
            "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-f211f09b",
            "VpcAttachments": [
                {
                    "State": "attached",
```

```
                    "VpcId": "vpc-98eb5ef5"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "State": "available",
            "Type": "ipsec.1",
            "VpnGatewayId": "vgw-9a4cacf3",
            "VpcAttachments": [
                {
                    "State": "attaching",
                    "VpcId": "vpc-a01106c2"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnGateways in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified virtual private gateway.

```
Get-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone :
State            : available
Tags             : {}
Type             : ipsec.1
VpcAttachments   : {vpc-12345678}
VpnGatewayId     : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example describes any virtual private gateway whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
```

```
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2VpnGateway -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your virtual private gateways.

```
Get-EC2VpnGateway
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified virtual private gateway.

```
Get-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone :
State            : available
Tags             : {}
Type             : ipsec.1
VpcAttachments   : {vpc-12345678}
VpnGatewayId     : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example describes any virtual private gateway whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2VpnGateway -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your virtual private gateways.

```
Get-EC2VpnGateway
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachInternetGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachInternetGateway`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach an internet gateway from your VPC

The following `detach-internet-gateway` example detaches the specified internet gateway from the specific VPC.

```
aws ec2 detach-internet-gateway \
    --internet-gateway-id igw-0d0fb496b3EXAMPLE \
    --vpc-id vpc-0a60eb65b4EXAMPLE
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Internet gateways in the *Amazon VPC User Guide*.

- For API details, see DetachInternetGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the specified Internet gateway from the specified VPC.

```
Dismount-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see DetachInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified Internet gateway from the specified VPC.

```
Dismount-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see DetachInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachNetworkInterface` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachNetworkInterface`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a network interface from your instance

This example detaches the specified network interface from the specified instance. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 detach-network-interface --attachment-id eni-attach-66c4350a
```

- For API details, see DetachNetworkInterface in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified attachment between a network interface and an instance.

```
Dismount-EC2NetworkInterface -AttachmentId eni-attach-1a2b3c4d -Force
```

- For API details, see DetachNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified attachment between a network interface and an instance.

```
Dismount-EC2NetworkInterface -AttachmentId eni-attach-1a2b3c4d -Force
```

- For API details, see DetachNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachVolume` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachVolume`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a volume from an instance

This example command detaches the volume (`vol-049df61146c4d7901`) from the instance it is attached to.

Command:

```
aws ec2 detach-volume --volume-id vol-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachTime": "2014-02-27T19:23:06.000Z",
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "VolumeId": "vol-049df61146c4d7901",
    "State": "detaching",
    "Device": "/dev/sdb"
}
```

- For API details, see DetachVolume in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the specified volume.

```
Dismount-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
AttachTime          : 12/22/2015 1:53:58 AM
DeleteOnTermination : False
Device              : /dev/sdh
InstanceId          : i-1a2b3c4d
State               : detaching
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
```

Example 2: You can also specify the instance ID and device name to ensure that you are detaching the correct volume.

```
Dismount-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -Device /dev/sdh
```

- For API details, see DetachVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified volume.

```
Dismount-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
AttachTime          : 12/22/2015 1:53:58 AM
DeleteOnTermination : False
Device              : /dev/sdh
InstanceId          : i-1a2b3c4d
State               : detaching
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
```

Example 2: You can also specify the instance ID and device name to ensure that you are detaching the correct volume.

```
Dismount-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -Device /dev/sdh
```

- For API details, see DetachVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachVpnGateway` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachVpnGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a virtual private gateway from your VPC

This example detaches the specified virtual private gateway from the specified VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 detach-vpn-gateway --vpn-gateway-id vgw-9a4cacf3 --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2
```

- For API details, see DetachVpnGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the specified virtual private gateway from the specified VPC.

```
Dismount-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see DetachVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified virtual private gateway from the specified VPC.

```
Dismount-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see DetachVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisableVgwRoutePropagation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableVgwRoutePropagation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable route propagation

This example disables the specified virtual private gateway from propagating static routes to the specified route table. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 disable-vgw-route-propagation --route-table-id rtb-22574640 --gateway-
id vgw-9a4cacf3
```

- For API details, see DisableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disables the VGW from automatically propagating routes to the specified routing table.

```
Disable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation -RouteTableId rtb-12345678 -GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DisableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables the VGW from automatically propagating routes to the specified routing table.

```
Disable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation -RouteTableId rtb-12345678 -GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DisableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisableVpcClassicLink` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableVpcClassicLink`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable ClassicLink for a VPC

This example disables ClassicLink for vpc-8888888.

Command:

```
aws ec2 disable-vpc-classic-link --vpc-id vpc-88888888
```

Output:

```
{
  "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLink in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disables EC2VpcClassicLink for the vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9. It returns either True or False

```
Disable-EC2VpcClassicLink -VpcId vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables EC2VpcClassicLink for the vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9. It returns either True or False

```
Disable-EC2VpcClassicLink -VpcId vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable ClassicLink DNS support for a VPC

This example disables ClassicLink DNS support for `vpc-88888888`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 disable-vpc-classic-link-dns-support --vpc-id vpc-88888888
```

Output:

```
{
  "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disables ClassicLink DNS support for the vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d

```
Disable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables ClassicLink DNS support for the vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d

```
Disable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisassociateAddress` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="associationId">The association Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisassociateIp(string associationId)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DisassociateAddressAsync(
                new DisassociateAddressRequest { AssociationId =
associationId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AssociationId is invalid, unable to disassociate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while disassociating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
```

```
# function ec2_disassociate_address
#
# This function disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a association_id - The association ID that represents the association of
 the Elastic IP address with an instance.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_disassociate_address() {
  local association_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_disassociate_address"
    echo "Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a association_id - The association ID that represents the
 association of the Elastic IP address with an instance."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) association_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$association_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an association ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 disassociate-address \
    --association-id "$association_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports disassociate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
```

```
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disassociate an Elastic IP addresses in EC2-Classic

This example disassociates an Elastic IP address from an instance in EC2-Classic. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 disassociate-address --public-ip 198.51.100.0
```

To disassociate an Elastic IP address in EC2-VPC

This example disassociates an Elastic IP address from an instance in a VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 disassociate-address --association-id eipassoc-2bebb745
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param associationId The ID of the association you want to disassociate.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of disassociating the address. The
    *         {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DisassociateAddressResponse} when the operation is
    *         finished.
    * @throws RuntimeException if the disassociation of the address fails.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse>
disassociateAddressAsync(String associationId) {
       Ec2AsyncClient ec2 = getAsyncClient();
       DisassociateAddressRequest addressRequest =
DisassociateAddressRequest.builder()
           .associationId(associationId)
           .build();

       // Disassociate the address asynchronously.
       CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse> response =
ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
              throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disassociate address", ex);
           }
       });
```

```
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DisassociateAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an instance.
 * @param {{ associationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ associationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DisassociateAddressCommand({
    // You can also use PublicIp, but that is for EC2 classic which is being
 retired.
    AssociationId: associationId,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully disassociated address");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disassociateAddressSc(associationIdVal: String?) {
    val addressRequest =
        DisassociateAddressRequest {
            associationId = associationIdVal
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest)
        println("You successfully disassociated the address!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disassociates the specified Elastic IP address from the specified instance in a VPC.

```
Unregister-EC2Address -AssociationId eipassoc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example disassociates the specified Elastic IP address from the specified instance in EC2-Classic.

```
Unregister-EC2Address -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disassociates the specified Elastic IP address from the specified instance in a VPC.

```
Unregister-EC2Address -AssociationId eipassoc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example disassociates the specified Elastic IP address from the specified instance in EC2-Classic.

```
Unregister-EC2Address -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str]
 = None
```

```
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def disassociate(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Removes an association between an Elastic IP address and an instance.
 When the
        association is removed, the instance is assigned a new public IP address.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to
 disassociate.
```

```
        :raises ClientError: If the disassociation fails, such as when the
association ID is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None or elastic_ip.instance_id is None:
            logger.info(
                f"No association found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
            )
            return

        try:
            # Retrieve the association ID before disassociating
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_addresses(AllocationIds=[allocation_id])
            association_id = response["Addresses"][0].get("AssociationId")

            if association_id:

self.ec2_client.disassociate_address(AssociationId=association_id)
                elastic_ip.instance_id = None  # Remove the instance association
            else:
                logger.info(
                    f"No Association ID found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
                )

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to disassociate Elastic IP {allocation_id} "
                    "because the specified association ID for the Elastic IP
address was not found. "
                    "Verify the association ID and ensure the Elastic IP is
currently associated with a "
                    "resource before attempting to disassociate it."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn disassociate_ip_address(&self, association_id: &str) ->
Result<(), EC2Error> {
       self.client
           .disassociate_address()
           .association_id(association_id)
           .send()
           .await?;
       Ok(())
   }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter associationId: The ID of the association to end.
    func disassociateAddress(associationId: String?) async {
        do {
```

```
            _ = try await ec2Client.disassociateAddress(
                input: DisassociateAddressInput(
                    associationId: associationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to disassociate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DisassociateRouteTable` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisassociateRouteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To disassociate a route table

This example disassociates the specified route table from the specified subnet. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id rtbassoc-781d0d1a
```

- For API details, see DisassociateRouteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified association between a route table and a subnet.

```
Unregister-EC2RouteTable -AssociationId rtbassoc-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DisassociateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified association between a route table and a subnet.

```
Unregister-EC2RouteTable -AssociationId rtbassoc-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DisassociateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EnableVgwRoutePropagation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableVgwRoutePropagation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable route propagation

This example enables the specified virtual private gateway to propagate static routes to the specified route table. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 enable-vgw-route-propagation --route-table-id rtb-22574640 --gateway-
id vgw-9a4cacf3
```

- For API details, see EnableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables the specified VGW to propagate routes automatically to the specified routing table.

```
Enable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation -RouteTableId rtb-12345678 -GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see EnableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables the specified VGW to propagate routes automatically to the specified routing table.

```
Enable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation -RouteTableId rtb-12345678 -GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see EnableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EnableVolumeIo` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableVolumeIo`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable I/O for a volume

This example enables I/O on volume `vol-1234567890abcdef0`.

Command:

```
aws ec2 enable-volume-io --volume-id vol-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
  "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see EnableVolumeIo in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables I/O operations for the specified volume, if I/O operations were disabled.

```
Enable-EC2VolumeIO -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see EnableVolumeIo in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables I/O operations for the specified volume, if I/O operations were disabled.

```
Enable-EC2VolumeIO -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see EnableVolumeIo in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EnableVpcClassicLink` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableVpcClassicLink`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable a VPC for ClassicLink

This example enables vpc-8888888 for ClassicLink.

Command:

```
aws ec2 enable-vpc-classic-link --vpc-id vpc-88888888
```

Output:

```
{
  "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLink in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables VPC vpc-0123456b789b0d12f for ClassicLink

```
Enable-EC2VpcClassicLink -VpcId vpc-0123456b789b0d12f
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables VPC vpc-0123456b789b0d12f for ClassicLink

```
Enable-EC2VpcClassicLink -VpcId vpc-0123456b789b0d12f
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable ClassicLink DNS support for a VPC

This example enables ClassicLink DNS support for vpc-88888888.

Command:

```
aws ec2 enable-vpc-classic-link-dns-support --vpc-id vpc-88888888
```

Output:

```
{
  "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d to support DNS hostname resolution for ClassicLink

```
Enable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d -Region eu-west-1
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d to support DNS hostname resolution for ClassicLink

```
Enable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d -Region eu-west-1
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetConsoleOutput` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetConsoleOutput`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get the console output

The following `get-console-output` example gets the console output for the specified Linux instance.

```
aws ec2 get-console-output \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Timestamp": "2013-07-25T21:23:53.000Z",
    "Output": "..."
}
```

For more information, see Instance console output in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To get the latest console output

The following `get-console-output` example gets the latest console output for the specified Linux instance.

```
aws ec2 get-console-output \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --latest \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
i-1234567890abcdef0 [    0.000000] Command line: root=LABEL=/ console=tty1
 console=ttyS0 selinux=0 nvme_core.io_timeout=4294967295
[    0.000000] x86/fpu: Supporting XSAVE feature 0x001: 'x87 floating point
 registers'
```

```
[    0.000000] x86/fpu: Supporting XSAVE feature 0x002: 'SSE registers'
[    0.000000] x86/fpu: Supporting XSAVE feature 0x004: 'AVX registers'
...
Cloud-init v. 0.7.6 finished at Wed, 09 May 2018 19:01:13 +0000. Datasource
 DataSourceEc2.  Up 21.50 seconds
Amazon Linux AMI release 2018.03
Kernel 4.14.26-46.32.amzn1.x
```

For more information, see Instance console output in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetConsoleOutput in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the console output for the specified Linux instance. The console output is encoded.

```
Get-EC2ConsoleOutput -InstanceId i-0e19abcd47c123456
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          Output
----------          ------
i-0e194d3c47c123637 WyAgICAwLjAwMDAwMF0gQ29tbW...bGU9dHR5UzAgc2Vs
```

Example 2: This example stores the encoded console output in a variable and then decodes it.

```
$Output_encoded = (Get-EC2ConsoleOutput -InstanceId i-0e19abcd47c123456).Output
[System.Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetString([System.Convert]::FromBase64String($Output_encoded
```

- For API details, see GetConsoleOutput in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the console output for the specified Linux instance. The console output is encoded.

```
Get-EC2ConsoleOutput -InstanceId i-0e19abcd47c123456
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          Output
----------          ------
i-0e194d3c47c123637 WyAgICAwLjAwMDAwMF0gQ29tbW...bGU9dHR5UzAgc2Vs
```

Example 2: This example stores the encoded console output in a variable and then decodes it.

```
$Output_encoded = (Get-EC2ConsoleOutput -InstanceId i-0e19abcd47c123456).Output
[System.Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetString([System.Convert]::FromBase64String($Output_encoded
```

- For API details, see GetConsoleOutput in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetHostReservationPurchasePreview` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetHostReservationPurchasePreview`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a purchase preview for a Dedicated Host Reservation

This example provides a preview of the costs for a specified Dedicated Host Reservation for the specified Dedicated Host in your account.

Command:

```
aws ec2 get-host-reservation-purchase-preview --offering-id hro-03f707bf363b6b324
 --host-id-set h-013abcd2a00cbd123
```

Output:

```
{
  "TotalHourlyPrice": "1.499",
  "Purchase": [
      {
          "HourlyPrice": "1.499",
          "InstanceFamily": "m4",
          "PaymentOption": "NoUpfront",
```

```
            "HostIdSet": [
                "h-013abcd2a00cbd123"
            ],
            "UpfrontPrice": "0.000",
            "Duration": 31536000
        }
    ],
    "TotalUpfrontPrice": "0.000"
}
```

- For API details, see GetHostReservationPurchasePreview in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example previews a reservation purchase with configurations that match those of your Dedicated Host h-01e23f4cd567890f1

```
Get-EC2HostReservationPurchasePreview -OfferingId hro-0c1f23456789d0ab -HostIdSet
 h-01e23f4cd567890f1
```

Output:

```
CurrencyCode Purchase TotalHourlyPrice TotalUpfrontPrice
------------ -------- ---------------- -----------------
             {}       1.307            0.000
```

- For API details, see GetHostReservationPurchasePreview in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example previews a reservation purchase with configurations that match those of your Dedicated Host h-01e23f4cd567890f1

```
Get-EC2HostReservationPurchasePreview -OfferingId hro-0c1f23456789d0ab -HostIdSet
 h-01e23f4cd567890f1
```

Output:

```
CurrencyCode Purchase TotalHourlyPrice TotalUpfrontPrice
```

```
------------ -------- ---------------- -----------------
             {}       1.307            0.000
```

- For API details, see GetHostReservationPurchasePreview in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPasswordData` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPasswordData`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the encrypted password

This example gets the encrypted password.

Command:

```
aws ec2 get-password-data --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Timestamp": "2013-08-07T22:18:38.000Z",
    "PasswordData": "gSlJFq+VpcZXqy+iktxMF6NyxQ4qCrT4+gaOuNOenX1MmgXPTj7XEXAMPLE
UQ+YeFfb+L1U4C4AKv652Ux1iRB3CPTYP7WmU3TUnhsuBd+p6LVk7T2lKUml6OXbk6WPW1VYYm/TRPB1
e1DQ7PY4an/DgZT4mwcpRFigzhniQgDDeO1InvSDcwoUTwNs0Y1S8ouri2W4n5GNlriM3Q0AnNVelVz/
53TkDtxbNoU606M1gK9zUWSxqEgwvbV2j8c5rP0WCuaMWSFl4ziDu4bd7q+4RSyi8NUsVWnKZ4aEZffu
DPGzKrF5yLlf3etP2L4ZR6CvG7K1hx7VKOQVN32Dajw=="
}
```

To get the decrypted password

This example gets the decrypted password.

Command:

```
aws ec2 get-password-data --instance-id  i-1234567890abcdef0 --priv-launch-key C:
\Keys\MyKeyPair.pem
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Timestamp": "2013-08-30T23:18:05.000Z",
    "PasswordData": "&ViJ652e*u"
}
```

- For API details, see GetPasswordData in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.Ec2AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.*;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetPasswordData {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <instanceId>
```

```
               Where:
                  instanceId - An instance id value that you can obtain from the
AWS Management Console.\s
            """;

       if (args.length != 1) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }
       String instanceId = args[0];
       Ec2AsyncClient ec2AsyncClient = Ec2AsyncClient.builder()
           .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
           .build();

       try {
           CompletableFuture<Void> future = getPasswordDataAsync(ec2AsyncClient,
instanceId);
           future.join();
       } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
           System.err.println("An exception occurred: " + (rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
       }
   }

   /**
    * Fetches the password data for the specified EC2 instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param ec2AsyncClient the EC2 asynchronous client to use for the request
    * @param instanceId instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance for which you want
to fetch the password data
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the password data
has been fetched
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure in fetching the password
data
    */
   public static CompletableFuture<Void> getPasswordDataAsync(Ec2AsyncClient
ec2AsyncClient, String instanceId) {
       GetPasswordDataRequest getPasswordDataRequest =
GetPasswordDataRequest.builder()
           .instanceId(instanceId)
           .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<GetPasswordDataResponse> response =
 ec2AsyncClient.getPasswordData(getPasswordDataRequest);
        response.whenComplete((getPasswordDataResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get password data for
 instance: " + instanceId, ex);
            } else if (getPasswordDataResponse == null ||
 getPasswordDataResponse.passwordData().isEmpty()) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No password data found for instance:
 " + instanceId);
            } else {
                String encryptedPasswordData =
 getPasswordDataResponse.passwordData();
                System.out.println("Encrypted Password Data: " +
 encryptedPasswordData);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> null);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPasswordData in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example decrypts the password that Amazon EC2 assigned to the Administrator account for the specified Windows instance. As a pem file was specified, the setting of the -Decrypt switch is automatically assumed.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678 -PemFile C:\path\my-key-pair.pem
```

Output:

```
mYZ(PA9?C)Q
```

Example 2: (Windows PowerShell only) Inspects the instance to determine the name of the keypair used to launch the instance and then attempts to find the corresponding

keypair data in the configuration store of the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio. If the keypair data is found the password is decrypted.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678 -Decrypt
```

Output:

```
mYZ(PA9?C)Q
```

Example 3: Returns the encrypted password data for the instance.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
iVz3BAK/WAXV.....dqt8WeMA==
```

- For API details, see GetPasswordData in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example decrypts the password that Amazon EC2 assigned to the Administrator account for the specified Windows instance. As a pem file was specified, the setting of the -Decrypt switch is automatically assumed.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678 -PemFile C:\path\my-key-pair.pem
```

Output:

```
mYZ(PA9?C)Q
```

Example 2: (Windows PowerShell only) Inspects the instance to determine the name of the keypair used to launch the instance and then attempts to find the corresponding keypair data in the configuration store of the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio. If the keypair data is found the password is decrypted.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678 -Decrypt
```

Output:

```
mYZ(PA9?C)Q
```

Example 3: Returns the encrypted password data for the instance.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
iVz3BAK/WAXV.....dqt8WeMA==
```

- For API details, see GetPasswordData in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ImportImage` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ImportImage`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To import a VM image file as an AMI

The following `import-image` example imports the specified OVA.

```
aws ec2 import-image \
  --disk-containers Format=ova,UserBucket="{S3Bucket=my-import-bucket,S3Key=vms/
my-server-vm.ova}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImportTaskId": "import-ami-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Progress": "2",
    "SnapshotDetails": [
        {
            "DiskImageSize": 0.0,
            "Format": "ova",
            "UserBucket": {
                "S3Bucket": "my-import-bucket",
                "S3Key": "vms/my-server-vm.ova"
            }
```

```
        }
    ],
    "Status": "active",
    "StatusMessage": "pending"
}
```

- For API details, see ImportImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example imports a single-disk virtual machine image from the specified Amazon S3 bucket to Amazon EC2 with an idempotency token. The example requires that a VM Import Service Role with the default name 'vmimport' exists, with a policy allowing Amazon EC2 access to the specified bucket, as explained in the VM Import Prequisites topic. To use a custom role, specify the role name using the `-RoleName` parameter.

```
$container = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.ImageDiskContainer
$container.Format="VMDK"
$container.UserBucket = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserBucket
$container.UserBucket.S3Bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$container.UserBucket.S3Key = "Win_2008_Server_Standard_SP2_64-bit-disk1.vmdk"

$parms = @{
    "ClientToken"="idempotencyToken"
    "Description"="Windows 2008 Standard Image Import"
    "Platform"="Windows"
    "LicenseType"="AWS"
}

Import-EC2Image -DiskContainer $container @parms
```

Output:

```
Architecture    :
Description     : Windows 2008 Standard Image
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         :
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-abcdefgh
```

```
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        : 2
SnapshotDetails : {}
Status          : active
StatusMessage   : pending
```

- For API details, see ImportImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example imports a single-disk virtual machine image from the specified Amazon S3 bucket to Amazon EC2 with an idempotency token. The example requires that a VM Import Service Role with the default name 'vmimport' exists, with a policy allowing Amazon EC2 access to the specified bucket, as explained in the VM Import Prequisites topic. To use a custom role, specify the role name using the `-RoleName` parameter.

```
$container = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.ImageDiskContainer
$container.Format="VMDK"
$container.UserBucket = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserBucket
$container.UserBucket.S3Bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$container.UserBucket.S3Key = "Win_2008_Server_Standard_SP2_64-bit-disk1.vmdk"

$parms = @{
    "ClientToken"="idempotencyToken"
    "Description"="Windows 2008 Standard Image Import"
    "Platform"="Windows"
    "LicenseType"="AWS"
}

Import-EC2Image -DiskContainer $container @parms
```

Output:

```
Architecture    :
Description     : Windows 2008 Standard Image
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         :
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-abcdefgh
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
```

```
Progress        : 2
SnapshotDetails : {}
Status          : active
StatusMessage   : pending
```

- For API details, see ImportImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ImportKeyPair` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ImportKeyPair`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To import a public key

First, generate a key pair with the tool of your choice. For example, use this ssh-keygen command:

Command:

```
ssh-keygen -t rsa -C "my-key" -f ~/.ssh/my-key
```

Output:

```
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /home/ec2-user/.ssh/my-key.
Your public key has been saved in /home/ec2-user/.ssh/my-key.pub.
...
```

This example command imports the specified public key.

Command:

```
aws ec2 import-key-pair --key-name "my-key" --public-key-material fileb://~/.ssh/
my-key.pub
```

Output:

```
{
  "KeyName": "my-key",
  "KeyFingerprint": "1f:51:ae:28:bf:89:e9:d8:1f:25:5d:37:2d:7d:b8:ca"
}
```

- For API details, see ImportKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example imports a public key to EC2. The first line stores the contents of the public key file (*.pub) in the variable `$publickey`. Next, the example converts the UTF8 format of the public key file to a Base64-encoded string, and stores the converted string in the variable `$pkbase64`. In the last line, the converted public key is imported to EC2. The cmdlet returns the key fingerprint and name as results.

```
$publickey=[Io.File]::ReadAllText("C:\Users\TestUser\.ssh\id_rsa.pub")
$pkbase64 =
 [System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetBytes($publickey))
Import-EC2KeyPair -KeyName Example-user-key -PublicKey $pkbase64
```

Output:

```
KeyFingerprint                                  KeyName
--------------                                  -------
do:d0:15:8f:79:97:12:be:00:fd:df:31:z3:b1:42:z1 Example-user-key
```

- For API details, see ImportKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example imports a public key to EC2. The first line stores the contents of the public key file (*.pub) in the variable `$publickey`. Next, the example converts the UTF8 format of the public key file to a Base64-encoded string, and stores the converted string in the variable `$pkbase64`. In the last line, the converted public key is imported to EC2. The cmdlet returns the key fingerprint and name as results.

```
$publickey=[Io.File]::ReadAllText("C:\Users\TestUser\.ssh\id_rsa.pub")
```

```
$pkbase64 =
 [System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetBytes($publickey))
Import-EC2KeyPair -KeyName Example-user-key -PublicKey $pkbase64
```

Output:

```
KeyFingerprint                                  KeyName
--------------                                  -------
do:d0:15:8f:79:97:12:be:00:fd:df:31:z3:b1:42:z1 Example-user-key
```

- For API details, see ImportKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ImportSnapshot` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ImportSnapshot`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To import a snapshot

The following `import-snapshot` example imports the specified disk as a snapshot.

```
aws ec2 import-snapshot \
    --description "My server VMDK" \
    --disk-container Format=VMDK,UserBucket={'S3Bucket=my-import-
bucket,S3Key=vms/my-server-vm.vmdk'}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Description": "My server VMDK",
    "ImportTaskId": "import-snap-1234567890abcdef0",
    "SnapshotTaskDetail": {
        "Description": "My server VMDK",
        "DiskImageSize": "0.0",
        "Format": "VMDK",
        "Progress": "3",
        "Status": "active",
        "StatusMessage": "pending"
```

```
        "UserBucket": {
            "S3Bucket": "my-import-bucket",
            "S3Key": "vms/my-server-vm.vmdk"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportSnapshot in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example imports a VM disk image of format 'VMDK' to an Amazon EBS snapshot. The example requires a VM Import Service Role with the default name 'vmimport', with a policy allowing Amazon EC2 access to the specified bucket, as explained in the `VM Import Prequisites` topic in http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/WindowsGuide/VMImportPrerequisites.html. To use a custom role, specify the role name using the `-RoleName` parameter.

```
$parms = @{
    "ClientToken"="idempotencyToken"
    "Description"="Disk Image Import"
    "DiskContainer_Description" = "Data disk"
    "DiskContainer_Format" = "VMDK"
    "DiskContainer_S3Bucket" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    "DiskContainer_S3Key" = "datadiskimage.vmdk"
}

Import-EC2Snapshot @parms
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId                SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------        ------------------

Disk Image Import       import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

- For API details, see ImportSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example imports a VM disk image of format 'VMDK' to an Amazon EBS snapshot. The example requires a VM Import Service Role with the default name 'vmimport', with a policy allowing Amazon EC2 access to the specified bucket, as explained in the `VM Import Prequisites` topic in http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/WindowsGuide/VMImportPrerequisites.html. To use a custom role, specify the role name using the `-RoleName` parameter.

```
$parms = @{
    "ClientToken"="idempotencyToken"
    "Description"="Disk Image Import"
    "DiskContainer_Description" = "Data disk"
    "DiskContainer_Format" = "VMDK"
    "DiskContainer_S3Bucket" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    "DiskContainer_S3Key" = "datadiskimage.vmdk"
}

Import-EC2Snapshot @parms
```

Output:

```
Description            ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------      --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import      import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

- For API details, see ImportSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyCapacityReservation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyCapacityReservation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To change the number of instances reserved by an existing capacity reservation

The following `modify-capacity-reservation` example changes the number of instances for which the capacity reservation reserves capacity.

```
aws ec2 modify-capacity-reservation \
    --capacity-reservation-id cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE \
    --instance-count 5
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

For more information, see Modify a Capacity Reservation in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To change the end date and time for an existing capacity reservation

The following `modify-capacity-reservation` example modifies an existing capacity reservation to end at the specified date and time.

```
aws ec2 modify-capacity-reservation \
    --capacity-reservation-id cr-1234abcd56EXAMPLE \
    --end-date-type limited \
    --end-date 2019-08-31T23:59:59Z
```

For more information, see Modify a Capacity Reservation in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyCapacityReservation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba by changing the instane count to 1

```
Edit-EC2CapacityReservation -CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba -
InstanceCount 1
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see ModifyCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba by changing the instane count to 1

```
Edit-EC2CapacityReservation -CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba -
InstanceCount 1
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see ModifyCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyHosts` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyHosts`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To enable auto-placement for a Dedicated Host

The following `modify-hosts` example enables auto-placement for a Dedicated Host so that it accepts any untargeted instance launches that match its instance type configuration.

```
aws ec2 modify-hosts \
    --host-id h-06c2f189b4EXAMPLE \
    --auto-placement on
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Successful": [
        "h-06c2f189b4EXAMPLE"
    ],
    "Unsuccessful": []
}
```

For more information, see Modify the auto-placement setting for a Dedicated Host in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To enable host recovery for a Dedicated Host

The following `modify-hosts` example enables host recovery for the specified Dedicated Host.

```
aws ec2 modify-hosts \
    --host-id h-06c2f189b4EXAMPLE \
    --host-recovery on
```

Output:

```
{
    "Successful": [
        "h-06c2f189b4EXAMPLE"
    ],
    "Unsuccessful": []
}
```

For more information, see Modify the auto-placement setting for a Dedicated Host in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyHosts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the AutoPlacement settings to off for the dedicated host h-01e23f4cd567890f3

```
Edit-EC2Host -HostId h-03e09f8cd681609f3 -AutoPlacement off
```

Output:

```
Successful            Unsuccessful
----------            ------------
{h-01e23f4cd567890f3} {}
```

- For API details, see ModifyHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the AutoPlacement settings to off for the dedicated host h-01e23f4cd567890f3

```
Edit-EC2Host -HostId h-03e09f8cd681609f3 -AutoPlacement off
```

Output:

```
Successful            Unsuccessful
----------            ------------
{h-01e23f4cd567890f3} {}
```

- For API details, see ModifyHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyIdFormat` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyIdFormat`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable the longer ID format for a resource

The following `modify-id-format` example enables the longer ID format for the `instance` resource type.

```
aws ec2 modify-id-format \
    --resource instance \
    --use-long-ids
```

To disable the longer ID format for a resource

The following `modify-id-format` example disables the longer ID format for the `instance` resource type.

```
aws ec2 modify-id-format \
    --resource instance \
    --no-use-long-ids
```

The following `modify-id-format` example enables the longer ID format for all supported resource types that are within their opt-in period.

```
aws ec2 modify-id-format \
    --resource all-current \
    --use-long-ids
```

- For API details, see ModifyIdFormat in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables the longer ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Edit-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance -UseLongId $true
```

Example 2: This example disables the longer ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Edit-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance -UseLongId $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables the longer ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Edit-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance -UseLongId $true
```

Example 2: This example disables the longer ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Edit-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance -UseLongId $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyImageAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyImageAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To make an AMI public

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example makes the specified AMI public.

```
aws ec2 modify-image-attribute \
    --image-id ami-5731123e \
    --launch-permission "Add=[{Group=all}]"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To make an AMI private

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example makes the specified AMI private.

```
aws ec2 modify-image-attribute \
    --image-id ami-5731123e \
    --launch-permission "Remove=[{Group=all}]"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 3: To grant launch permission to an AWS account

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example grants launch permissions to the specified AWS account.

```
aws ec2 modify-image-attribute \
    --image-id ami-5731123e \
```

```
    --launch-permission "Add=[{UserId=123456789012}]"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 4: To remove launch permission from an AWS account

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example removes launch permissions from the specified AWS account.

```
aws ec2 modify-image-attribute \
    --image-id ami-5731123e \
    --launch-permission "Remove=[{UserId=123456789012}]"
```

- For API details, see ModifyImageAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the description for the specified AMI.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Description "New description"
```

Example 2: This example makes the AMI public (for example, so any AWS account can use it).

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType add -UserGroup all
```

Example 3: This example makes the AMI private (for example, so that only you as the owner can use it).

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType remove -UserGroup all
```

Example 4: This example grants launch permission to the specified AWS account.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType add -UserId 111122223333
```

Example 5: This example removes launch permission from the specified AWS account.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType remove -UserId 111122223333
```

- For API details, see ModifyImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the description for the specified AMI.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Description "New description"
```

Example 2: This example makes the AMI public (for example, so any AWS account can use it).

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType add -UserGroup all
```

Example 3: This example makes the AMI private (for example, so that only you as the owner can use it).

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType remove -UserGroup all
```

Example 4: This example grants launch permission to the specified AWS account.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType add -UserId 111122223333
```

Example 5: This example removes launch permission from the specified AWS account.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType remove -UserId 111122223333
```

- For API details, see ModifyImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyInstanceAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyInstanceAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To modify the instance type

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example modifies the instance type of the specified instance. The instance must be in the `stopped` state.

```
aws ec2 modify-instance-attribute \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --instance-type "{\"Value\": \"m1.small\"}"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To enable enhanced networking on an instance

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example enables enhanced networking for the specified instance. The instance must be in the `stopped` state.

```
aws ec2 modify-instance-attribute \
    --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --sriov-net-support simple
```

This command produces no output.

Example 3: To modify the sourceDestCheck attribute

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example sets the `sourceDestCheck` attribute of the specified instance to `true`. The instance must be in a VPC.

```
aws ec2 modify-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --source-
dest-check "{\"Value\": true}"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 4: To modify the deleteOnTermination attribute of the root volume

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example sets the `deleteOnTermination` attribute for the root volume of the specified Amazon EBS-backed instance to `false`. By default, this attribute is `true` for the root volume.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-instance-attribute \
  --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 \
  --block-device-mappings "[{\"DeviceName\": \"/dev/sda1\",\"Ebs\":
{\"DeleteOnTermination\":false}}]"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 5: To modify the user data attached to an instance

The following `modify-instance-attribute` example adds the contents of the file `UserData.txt` as the UserData for the specified instance.

Contents of original file `UserData.txt`:

```
#!/bin/bash
yum update -y
service httpd start
chkconfig httpd on
```

The contents of the file must be base64 encoded. The first command converts the text file to base64 and saves it as a new file.

Linux/macOS version of the command:

```
base64 UserData.txt > UserData.base64.txt
```

This command produces no output.

Windows version of the command:

```
certutil -encode UserData.txt tmp.b64 && findstr /v /c:- tmp.b64 >
 UserData.base64.txt
```

Output:

```
Input Length = 67
Output Length = 152
CertUtil: -encode command completed successfully.
```

Now you can reference that file in the CLI command that follows:

```
aws ec2 modify-instance-attribute \
    --instance-id=i-09b5a14dbca622e76 \
    --attribute userData --value file://UserData.base64.txt
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see User Data and the AWS CLI in the *EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the instance type of the specified instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -InstanceType m3.medium
```

Example 2: This example enables enhanced networking for the specified instance, by specifying "simple" as the value of the single root I/O virtualization (SR-IOV) network support parameter, -SriovNetSupport..

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -SriovNetSupport "simple"
```

Example 3: This example modifies the security groups for the specified instance. The instance must be in a VPC. You must specify the ID of each security group, not the name.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Group @( "sg-12345678",
 "sg-45678901" )
```

Example 4: This example enables EBS I/O optimization for the specified instance. This feature isn't available with all instance types. Additional usage charges apply when using an EBS-optimized instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -EbsOptimized $true
```

Example 5: This example enables source/destination checking for the specified instance. For a NAT instance to perform NAT, the value must be 'false'.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -SourceDestCheck $true
```

Example 6: This example disables termination for the specified instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -DisableApiTermination $true
```

Example 7: This example changes the specified instance so that it terminates when shutdown is initiated from the instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -
InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior terminate
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the instance type of the specified instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -InstanceType m3.medium
```

Example 2: This example enables enhanced networking for the specified instance, by specifying "simple" as the value of the single root I/O virtualization (SR-IOV) network support parameter, -SriovNetSupport..

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -SriovNetSupport "simple"
```

Example 3: This example modifies the security groups for the specified instance. The instance must be in a VPC. You must specify the ID of each security group, not the name.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Group @( "sg-12345678",
 "sg-45678901" )
```

Example 4: This example enables EBS I/O optimization for the specified instance. This feature isn't available with all instance types. Additional usage charges apply when using an EBS-optimized instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -EbsOptimized $true
```

Example 5: This example enables source/destination checking for the specified instance. For a NAT instance to perform NAT, the value must be 'false'.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -SourceDestCheck $true
```

Example 6: This example disables termination for the specified instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -DisableApiTermination $true
```

Example 7: This example changes the specified instance so that it terminates when shutdown is initiated from the instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -
InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior terminate
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the credit option for CPU usage of an instance

This example modifies the credit option for CPU usage of the specified instance in the specified region to "unlimited". Valid credit options are "standard" and "unlimited".

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-instance-credit-specification --instance-credit-
specification "InstanceId=i-1234567890abcdef0,CpuCredits=unlimited"
```

Output:

```
{
  "SuccessfulInstanceCreditSpecifications": [
    {
      "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0"
    }
  ],
  "UnsuccessfulInstanceCreditSpecifications": []
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This enables T2 unlimited credits for instance i-01234567890abcdef.

```
$Credit = New-Object -TypeName
 Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceCreditSpecificationRequest
$Credit.InstanceId = "i-01234567890abcdef"
$Credit.CpuCredits = "unlimited"
Edit-EC2InstanceCreditSpecification -InstanceCreditSpecification $Credit
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This enables T2 unlimited credits for instance i-01234567890abcdef.

```
$Credit = New-Object -TypeName
 Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceCreditSpecificationRequest
$Credit.InstanceId = "i-01234567890abcdef"
$Credit.CpuCredits = "unlimited"
Edit-EC2InstanceCreditSpecification -InstanceCreditSpecification $Credit
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the attachment attribute of a network interface

This example command modifies the `attachment` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200 --
attachment AttachmentId=eni-attach-43348162,DeleteOnTermination=false
```

To modify the description attribute of a network interface

This example command modifies the `description` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200 --
description "My description"
```

To modify the groupSet attribute of a network interface

This example command modifies the `groupSet` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200 --
groups sg-903004f8 sg-1a2b3c4d
```

To modify the sourceDestCheck attribute of a network interface

This example command modifies the `sourceDestCheck` attribute of the specified network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-network-interface-attribute --network-interface-id eni-686ea200 --
no-source-dest-check
```

- For API details, see ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the specified network interface so that the specified attachment is deleted on termination.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
Attachment_AttachmentId eni-attach-1a2b3c4d -Attachment_DeleteOnTermination $true
```

Example 2: This example modifies the description of the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -Description
 "my description"
```

Example 3: This example modifies the security group for the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -Groups
 sg-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 4: This example disables source/destination checking for the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SourceDestCheck $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the specified network interface so that the specified attachment is deleted on termination.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
Attachment_AttachmentId eni-attach-1a2b3c4d -Attachment_DeleteOnTermination $true
```

Example 2: This example modifies the description of the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -Description
 "my description"
```

Example 3: This example modifies the security group for the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -Groups
 sg-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 4: This example disables source/destination checking for the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SourceDestCheck $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyReservedInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyReservedInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify Reserved Instances

This example command moves a Reserved Instance to another Availability Zone in the same region.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-reserved-instances --reserved-instances-ids b847fa93-
e282-4f55-b59a-1342f5bd7c02 --target-configurations AvailabilityZone=us-
west-1c,Platform=EC2-Classic,InstanceCount=10
```

Output:

```
{
  "ReservedInstancesModificationId": "rimod-d3ed4335-b1d3-4de6-ab31-0f13aaf46687"
}
```

To modify the network platform of Reserved Instances

This example command converts EC2-Classic Reserved Instances to EC2-VPC.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-reserved-instances --reserved-instances-ids f127bd27-
edb7-44c9-a0eb-0d7e09259af0 --target-configurations AvailabilityZone=us-
west-1c,Platform=EC2-VPC,InstanceCount=5
```

Output:

```
{
  "ReservedInstancesModificationId": "rimod-82fa9020-668f-4fb6-945d-61537009d291"
}
```

For more information, see Modifying Your Reserved Instances in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

To modify the instance size of Reserved Instances

This example command modifies a Reserved Instance that has 10 m1.small Linux/UNIX instances in us-west-1c so that 8 m1.small instances become 2 m1.large instances, and the remaining 2 m1.small become 1 m1.medium instance in the same Availability Zone. Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-reserved-instances --reserved-instances-
ids 1ba8e2e3-3556-4264-949e-63ee671405a9 --target-
configurations AvailabilityZone=us-west-1c,Platform=EC2-
```

```
Classic,InstanceCount=2,InstanceType=m1.large AvailabilityZone=us-
west-1c,Platform=EC2-Classic,InstanceCount=1,InstanceType=m1.medium
```

Output:

```
{
    "ReservedInstancesModificationId": "rimod-acc5f240-080d-4717-
b3e3-1c6b11fa00b6"
}
```

For more information, see Modifying the Instance Size of Your Reservations in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyReservedInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the Availability Zone, instance count, and platform for the specified Reserved instances.

```
$config = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.ReservedInstancesConfiguration
$config.AvailabilityZone = "us-west-2a"
$config.InstanceCount = 1
$config.Platform = "EC2-VPC"

Edit-EC2ReservedInstance `
-ReservedInstancesId @("FE32132D-70D5-4795-B400-AE435EXAMPLE",
 "0CC556F3-7AB8-4C00-B0E5-98666EXAMPLE") `
-TargetConfiguration $config
```

- For API details, see ModifyReservedInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the Availability Zone, instance count, and platform for the specified Reserved instances.

```
$config = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.ReservedInstancesConfiguration
```

```
$config.AvailabilityZone = "us-west-2a"
$config.InstanceCount = 1
$config.Platform = "EC2-VPC"

Edit-EC2ReservedInstance `
-ReservedInstancesId @("FE32132D-70D5-4795-B400-AE435EXAMPLE",
 "0CC556F3-7AB8-4C00-B0E5-98666EXAMPLE") `
-TargetConfiguration $config
```

- For API details, see ModifyReservedInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifySnapshotAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifySnapshotAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To modify a snapshot attribute

The following `modify-snapshot-attribute` example updates the `createVolumePermission` attribute for the specified snapshot, removing volume permissions for the specified user.

```
aws ec2 modify-snapshot-attribute \
    --snapshot-id snap-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --attribute createVolumePermission \
    --operation-type remove \
    --user-ids 123456789012
```

Example 2: To make a snapshot public

The following `modify-snapshot-attribute` example makes the specified snapshot public.

```
aws ec2 modify-snapshot-attribute \
    --snapshot-id snap-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --attribute createVolumePermission \
    --operation-type add \
```

```
    --group-names all
```

- For API details, see ModifySnapshotAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example makes the specified snapshot public by setting its CreateVolumePermission attribute.

```
Edit-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission -OperationType Add -GroupName all
```

- For API details, see ModifySnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example makes the specified snapshot public by setting its CreateVolumePermission attribute.

```
Edit-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission -OperationType Add -GroupName all
```

- For API details, see ModifySnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifySpotFleetRequest` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifySpotFleetRequest`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify a Spot fleet request

This example command updates the target capacity of the specified Spot fleet request.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-spot-fleet-request --target-capacity 20 --spot-fleet-request-
id sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

This example command decreases the target capacity of the specified Spot fleet request without terminating any Spot Instances as a result.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-spot-fleet-request --target-capacity 10 --excess-capacity-
termination-policy NoTermination --spot-fleet-request-ids sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see ModifySpotFleetRequest in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the target capacity of the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Edit-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TargetCapacity 10
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see ModifySpotFleetRequest in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the target capacity of the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Edit-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TargetCapacity 10
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see ModifySpotFleetRequest in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifySubnetAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifySubnetAttribute`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To change a subnet's public IPv4 addressing behavior

This example modifies subnet-1a2b3c4d to specify that all instances launched into this subnet are assigned a public IPv4 address. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-subnet-attribute --subnet-id subnet-1a2b3c4d --map-public-ip-on-
launch
```

To change a subnet's IPv6 addressing behavior

This example modifies subnet-1a2b3c4d to specify that all instances launched into this subnet are assigned an IPv6 address from the range of the subnet.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-subnet-attribute --subnet-id subnet-1a2b3c4d --assign-ipv6-
address-on-creation
```

For more information, see IP Addressing in Your VPC in the *AWS Virtual Private Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifySubnetAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables public IP addressing for the specified subnet.

```
Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -MapPublicIpOnLaunch $true
```

Example 2: This example disables public IP addressing for the specified subnet.

```
Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -MapPublicIpOnLaunch $false
```

- For API details, see ModifySubnetAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables public IP addressing for the specified subnet.

```
Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -MapPublicIpOnLaunch $true
```

Example 2: This example disables public IP addressing for the specified subnet.

```
Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -MapPublicIpOnLaunch $false
```

- For API details, see ModifySubnetAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyVolumeAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyVolumeAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify a volume attribute

This example sets the `autoEnableIo` attribute of the volume with the ID `vol-1234567890abcdef0` to `true`. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-volume-attribute --volume-id vol-1234567890abcdef0 --auto-enable-
io
```

- For API details, see ModifyVolumeAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the specified attribute of the specified volume. I/O operations for the volume are automatically resumed after being suspended due to potentially inconsistent data.

```
Edit-EC2VolumeAttribute -VolumeId vol-12345678 -AutoEnableIO $true
```

- For API details, see ModifyVolumeAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the specified attribute of the specified volume. I/O operations for the volume are automatically resumed after being suspended due to potentially inconsistent data.

```
Edit-EC2VolumeAttribute -VolumeId vol-12345678 -AutoEnableIO $true
```

- For API details, see ModifyVolumeAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyVpcAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyVpcAttribute`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with Amazon VPC

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the enableDnsSupport attribute

This example modifies the `enableDnsSupport` attribute. This attribute indicates whether DNS resolution is enabled for the VPC. If this attribute is `true`, the Amazon DNS server resolves DNS hostnames for your instances to their corresponding IP addresses; otherwise, it does not. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-vpc-attribute --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2 --enable-dns-support "{\"Value
\":false}"
```

To modify the enableDnsHostnames attribute

This example modifies the `enableDnsHostnames` attribute. This attribute indicates whether instances launched in the VPC get DNS hostnames. If this attribute is `true`, instances in the VPC get DNS hostnames; otherwise, they do not. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 modify-vpc-attribute --vpc-id vpc-a01106c2 --enable-dns-hostnames
 "{\"Value\":false}"
```

- For API details, see ModifyVpcAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables support for DNS hostnames for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsHostnames $true
```

Example 2: This example disables support for DNS hostnames for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsHostnames $false
```

Example 3: This example enables support for DNS resolution for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsSupport $true
```

Example 4: This example disables support for DNS resolution for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsSupport $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyVpcAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables support for DNS hostnames for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsHostnames $true
```

Example 2: This example disables support for DNS hostnames for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsHostnames $false
```

Example 3: This example enables support for DNS resolution for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsSupport $true
```

Example 4: This example disables support for DNS resolution for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsSupport $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyVpcAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `MonitorInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `MonitorInstances`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Enable detailed monitoring for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceId: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::enableMonitoring(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::MonitorInstancesRequest request;
    request.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    request.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::MonitorInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.MonitorInstances(request);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to enable monitoring on instance. A dry run
 should trigger an error."
                <<
                std::endl;
```

```
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType()
                != Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cerr << "Failed dry run to enable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << ": " << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::MonitorInstancesOutcome monitorInstancesOutcome =
 ec2Client.MonitorInstances(request);
    if (!monitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to enable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << ": " <<
                  monitorInstancesOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully enabled monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << std::endl;
    }

    return monitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable detailed monitoring for an instance

This example command enables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 monitor-instances --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceMonitorings": [
```

```
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Monitoring": {
                "State": "pending"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, MonitorInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Turn on detailed monitoring for the selected instance.
 * By default, metrics are sent to Amazon CloudWatch every 5 minutes.
 * For a cost you can enable detailed monitoring which sends metrics every
 minute.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new MonitorInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { InstanceMonitorings } = await client.send(command);
    const instancesBeingMonitored = InstanceMonitorings.map(
      (im) =>
        ` • Detailed monitoring state for ${im.InstanceId} is
 ${im.Monitoring.State}.`,
```

```
    );
    console.log("Monitoring status:");
    console.log(instancesBeingMonitored.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

```
Start-EC2InstanceMonitoring -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    Monitoring
----------    ----------
i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

```
Start-EC2InstanceMonitoring -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    Monitoring
----------    ----------
```

```
i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to
 monitor the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->monitorinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to monitor this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to enable detailed monitoring completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to enable detailed monitoring. "
          lo_ec2->monitorinstances(
            it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
            iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Detailed monitoring enabled.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to monitor this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to enable detailed monitoring failed. User does not
 have the permissions to monitor the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `MoveAddressToVpc` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `MoveAddressToVpc`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To move an address to EC2-VPC

This example moves Elastic IP address 54.123.4.56 to the EC2-VPC platform.

Command:

```
aws ec2 move-address-to-vpc --public-ip 54.123.4.56
```

Output:

```
{
  "Status": "MoveInProgress"
}
```

- For API details, see MoveAddressToVpc in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example moves an EC2 instance with a public IP address of 12.345.67.89 to the EC2-VPC platform in the US East (Northern Virginia) region.

```
Move-EC2AddressToVpc -PublicIp 12.345.67.89 -Region us-east-1
```

Example 2: This example pipes the results of a Get-EC2Instance command to the Move-EC2AddressToVpc cmdlet. The Get-EC2Instance command gets an instance that is specified by instance ID, then returns the public IP address property of the instance.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Instance i-12345678).Instances.PublicIpAddress | Move-
EC2AddressToVpc
```

- For API details, see MoveAddressToVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example moves an EC2 instance with a public IP address of 12.345.67.89 to the EC2-VPC platform in the US East (Northern Virginia) region.

```
Move-EC2AddressToVpc -PublicIp 12.345.67.89 -Region us-east-1
```

Example 2: This example pipes the results of a Get-EC2Instance command to the Move-EC2AddressToVpc cmdlet. The Get-EC2Instance command gets an instance that is specified by instance ID, then returns the public IP address property of the instance.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Instance i-12345678).Instances.PublicIpAddress | Move-
EC2AddressToVpc
```

- For API details, see MoveAddressToVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PurchaseHostReservation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PurchaseHostReservation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To purchase a Dedicated Host Reservation

This example purchases the specified Dedicated Host Reservation offering for the specified Dedicated Host in your account.

Command:

```
aws ec2 purchase-host-reservation --offering-id hro-03f707bf363b6b324 --host-id-set h-013abcd2a00cbd123
```

Output:

```
{
  "TotalHourlyPrice": "1.499",
  "Purchase": [
      {
          "HourlyPrice": "1.499",
          "InstanceFamily": "m4",
          "PaymentOption": "NoUpfront",
          "HostIdSet": [
              "h-013abcd2a00cbd123"
          ],
          "HostReservationId": "hr-0d418a3a4ffc669ae",
          "UpfrontPrice": "0.000",
          "Duration": 31536000
      }
  ],
  "TotalUpfrontPrice": "0.000"
}
```

- For API details, see PurchaseHostReservation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example purchases the reservation offering hro-0c1f23456789d0ab with configurations that match those of your Dedicated Host h-01e23f4cd567890f1

```
New-EC2HostReservation -OfferingId hro-0c1f23456789d0ab HostIdSet
 h-01e23f4cd567890f1
```

Output:

```
ClientToken       :
CurrencyCode      :
```

```
Purchase          : {hr-0123f4b5d67bedc89}
TotalHourlyPrice  : 1.307
TotalUpfrontPrice : 0.000
```

- For API details, see PurchaseHostReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example purchases the reservation offering hro-0c1f23456789d0ab with configurations that match those of your Dedicated Host h-01e23f4cd567890f1

```
New-EC2HostReservation -OfferingId hro-0c1f23456789d0ab HostIdSet
 h-01e23f4cd567890f1
```

Output:

```
ClientToken       :
CurrencyCode      :
Purchase          : {hr-0123f4b5d67bedc89}
TotalHourlyPrice  : 1.307
TotalUpfrontPrice : 0.000
```

- For API details, see PurchaseHostReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PurchaseScheduledInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PurchaseScheduledInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To purchase a Scheduled Instance

This example purchases a Scheduled Instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 purchase-scheduled-instances --purchase-requests file://purchase-
request.json
```

Purchase-request.json:

```
[
    {
        "PurchaseToken": "eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi...",
        "InstanceCount": 1
    }
]
```

Output:

```
{
  "ScheduledInstanceSet": [
      {
          "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2b",
          "ScheduledInstanceId": "sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012",
          "HourlyPrice": "0.095",
          "CreateDate": "2016-01-25T21:43:38.612Z",
          "Recurrence": {
              "OccurrenceDaySet": [
                  1
              ],
              "Interval": 1,
              "Frequency": "Weekly",
              "OccurrenceRelativeToEnd": false,
              "OccurrenceUnit": ""
          },
          "Platform": "Linux/UNIX",
          "TermEndDate": "2017-01-31T09:00:00Z",
          "InstanceCount": 1,
          "SlotDurationInHours": 32,
          "TermStartDate": "2016-01-31T09:00:00Z",
          "NetworkPlatform": "EC2-VPC",
          "TotalScheduledInstanceHours": 1696,
          "NextSlotStartTime": "2016-01-31T09:00:00Z",
          "InstanceType": "c4.large"
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see PurchaseScheduledInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example purchases a Scheduled Instance.

```
$request = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.PurchaseRequest
$request.InstanceCount = 1
$request.PurchaseToken = "eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi..."
New-EC2ScheduledInstancePurchase -PurchaseRequest $request
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
CreateDate                  : 1/25/2016 1:43:38 PM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceCount               : 1
InstanceType                : c4.large
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
NextSlotStartTime           : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PreviousSlotEndTime         :
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
ScheduledInstanceId         : sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
SlotDurationInHours         : 32
TermEndDate                 : 1/31/2017 1:00:00 AM
TermStartDate               : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1696
```

- For API details, see PurchaseScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example purchases a Scheduled Instance.

```
$request = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.PurchaseRequest
$request.InstanceCount = 1
$request.PurchaseToken = "eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi..."
New-EC2ScheduledInstancePurchase -PurchaseRequest $request
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
CreateDate                  : 1/25/2016 1:43:38 PM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceCount               : 1
InstanceType                : c4.large
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
NextSlotStartTime           : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PreviousSlotEndTime         :
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
ScheduledInstanceId         : sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
SlotDurationInHours         : 32
TermEndDate                 : 1/31/2017 1:00:00 AM
TermStartDate               : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1696
```

- For API details, see PurchaseScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RebootInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RebootInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Reboot an instance by its Id.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reboot a specific EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the instance that will be
rebooted.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RebootInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RebootInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.RebootInstancesAsync(request);

            // Wait for the instance to be running.
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId {ec2InstanceId} is invalid, unable to reboot.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while rebooting the instance
{ec2InstanceId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

Replace the profile for an instance, reboot, and restart a web server.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate
with the specified instance.</param>
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association
for the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
           var retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
           {
               var instancesPaginator =
                   _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                       new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
               // Get the entire list using the paginator.
               await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
               {
                   instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                   if (instanceReady)
                   {
                       break;
                   }
               }
           }
           Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
```

```
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance
{instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance
{instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Reboot an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::rebootInstance(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RebootInstancesRequest request;
    request.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    request.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RebootInstancesOutcome dry_run_outcome =
 ec2Client.RebootInstances(request);
    if (dry_run_outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to reboot on instance. A dry run should
 trigger an error."
                <<
                std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dry_run_outcome.GetError().GetErrorType()
               != Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to reboot instance " << instanceId << ": "
                  << dry_run_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetDryRun(false);
```

```
    Aws::EC2::Model::RebootInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.RebootInstances(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to reboot instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully rebooted instance " << instanceId <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reboot an Amazon EC2 instance

This example reboots the specified instance. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reboot-instances --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef5
```

For more information, see Reboot Your Instance in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, RebootInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Requests a reboot of the specified instances. This operation is asynchronous;
 * it only queues a request to reboot the specified instances.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new RebootInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Instance rebooted successfully.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. Please provide the InstanceId of a valid instance to
 reboot.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example reboots the specified instance.

```
Restart-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example reboots the specified instance.

```
Restart-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
```

```
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
```

```
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the
profile is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new
profile. When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to
associate with
                                                the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                            instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
```

```
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or
is not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn reboot(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.reboot_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_stopped(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_ready(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
```

```
    pub async fn reboot_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Rebooting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .reboot_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(())
    }
```

Waiters for instance to be in the stopped and ready states, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    /// Wait for an instance to be ready and status ok (default wait 60 seconds)
    pub async fn wait_for_instance_ready(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_status_ok()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to start.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs()
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_instance_stopped(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
```

```
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_stopped()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to stop.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to
 reboot the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->rebootinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to reboot this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to reboot instance completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to make a reboot request. "
          lo_ec2->rebootinstances(
             it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
             iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Instance rebooted.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to reboot this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to reboot instance failed. User does not have
 permissions to reboot the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `RegisterImage` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterImage`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To register an AMI using a manifest file

The following `register-image` example registers an AMI using the specified manifest file in Amazon S3.

```
aws ec2 register-image \
    --name my-image \
    --image-location amzn-s3-demo-bucket/myimage/image.manifest.xml
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-1234567890EXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Amazon Machine Images (AMI) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To register an AMI using a snapshot of a root device

The following `register-image` example registers an AMI using the specified snapshot of an EBS root volume as device `/dev/xvda`. The block device mapping also includes an empty 100 GiB EBS volume as device `/dev/xvdf`.

```
aws ec2 register-image \
    --name my-image \
    --root-device-name /dev/xvda \
    --block-device-mappings DeviceName=/dev/
xvda,Ebs={SnapshotId=snap-0db2cf683925d191f} DeviceName=/dev/
xvdf,Ebs={VolumeSize=100}
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d5eEXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Amazon Machine Images (AMI) in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers an AMI using the specified manifest file in Amazon S3.

```
Register-EC2Image -ImageLocation amzn-s3-demo-bucket/my-web-server-ami/
image.manifest.xml -Name my-web-server-ami
```

- For API details, see RegisterImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an AMI using the specified manifest file in Amazon S3.

```
Register-EC2Image -ImageLocation amzn-s3-demo-bucket/my-web-server-ami/
image.manifest.xml -Name my-web-server-ami
```

- For API details, see RegisterImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RejectVpcPeeringConnection` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RejectVpcPeeringConnection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reject a VPC peering connection

This example rejects the specified VPC peering connection request.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reject-vpc-peering-connection --vpc-peering-connection-id pcx-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

- For API details, see RejectVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The above example denies the request for VpcPeering request id pcx-01a2b3ce45fe67eb8

```
Deny-EC2VpcPeeringConnection -VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-01a2b3ce45fe67eb8
```

- For API details, see RejectVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The above example denies the request for VpcPeering request id pcx-01a2b3ce45fe67eb8

```
Deny-EC2VpcPeeringConnection -VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-01a2b3ce45fe67eb8
```

- For API details, see RejectVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReleaseAddress` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Release an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
    /// it can no longer be used.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of the Elastic IP address.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ReleaseAddress(string allocationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ReleaseAddressRequest { AllocationId =
allocationId };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.ReleaseAddressAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AllocationId {allocationId} was not found.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while releasing the AllocationId
{allocationId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_release_address
#
# This function releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 release.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_release_address() {
  local allocation_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_release_address"
    echo "Releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 release."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
```

```
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 release-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports release-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
################################################################################
```

```
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Release an Elastic IP address.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::releaseAddress(const Aws::String &allocationID,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::ReleaseAddressRequest request;
    request.SetAllocationId(allocationID);

    Aws::EC2::Model::ReleaseAddressOutcome outcome = ec2.ReleaseAddress(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to release Elastic IP address " <<
                  allocationID << ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully released Elastic IP address " <<
                  allocationID << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To release an Elastic IP addresses for EC2-Classic

This example releases an Elastic IP address for use with instances in EC2-Classic. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 release-address --public-ip 198.51.100.0
```

To release an Elastic IP address for EC2-VPC

This example releases an Elastic IP address for use with instances in a VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id eipalloc-64d5890a
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Releases an Elastic IP address asynchronously.
    *
    * @param allocId the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to be released
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of releasing the Elastic IP address
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse>
releaseEC2AddressAsync(String allocId) {
       ReleaseAddressRequest request = ReleaseAddressRequest.builder()
           .allocationId(allocId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().releaseAddress(request);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to release Elastic IP
address", ex);
           }
       });

       return response;
   }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ReleaseAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Release an Elastic IP address.
 * @param {{ allocationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ allocationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new ReleaseAddressCommand({
    // You can also use PublicIp, but that is for EC2 classic which is being
 retired.
    AllocationId: allocationId,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully released address.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid AllocationID.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun releaseEC2AddressSc(allocId: String?) {
    val request =
        ReleaseAddressRequest {
            allocationId = allocId
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.releaseAddress(request)
        println("Successfully released Elastic IP address $allocId")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example releases the specified Elastic IP address for instances in a VPC.

```
Remove-EC2Address -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678 -Force
```

Example 2: This example releases the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Remove-EC2Address -PublicIp 198.51.100.2 -Force
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example releases the specified Elastic IP address for instances in a VPC.

```
Remove-EC2Address -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678 -Force
```

Example 2: This example releases the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Remove-EC2Address -PublicIp 198.51.100.2 -Force
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str]
 = None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
```

```
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def release(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Releases an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
        it can no longer be used.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to release.
        :raises ClientError: If the release fails, such as when the Elastic IP
 address is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
 allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID
 {allocation_id}.")
            return

        try:
```

```
            self.ec2_client.release_address(AllocationId=allocation_id)
            self.elastic_ips.remove(elastic_ip)  # Remove the Elastic IP from the
list
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAddress.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to release Elastic IP address {allocation_id} "
                    "because it could not be found. Verify the Elastic IP address
"
                    "and ensure it is allocated to your account in the correct
region "
                    "before attempting to release it."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Releases an Elastic IP address from an
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - An Amazon EC2 instance with an associated Elastic IP address.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param allocation_id [String] The ID of the allocation corresponding to
#   the Elastic IP address.
# @return [Boolean] true if the Elastic IP address was released;
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
```

```
#   exit 1 unless elastic_ip_address_released?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'eipalloc-04452e528a66279EX'
#   )
def elastic_ip_address_released?(ec2_client, allocation_id)
  ec2_client.release_address(allocation_id: allocation_id)
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts("Error releasing Elastic IP address: #{e.message}")
  false
end
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn deallocate_ip_address(&self, allocation_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .release_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_ec2->releaseaddress( iv_allocationid = iv_allocation_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Elastic IP address released.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Release an allocated Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter allocationId: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to
    ///   release.
    func releaseAddress(allocationId: String?) async {
        do {
```

```
            _ = try await ec2Client.releaseAddress(
                input: ReleaseAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to release the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ReleaseHosts` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReleaseHosts`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To release a Dedicated host from your account

To release a Dedicated host from your account. Instances that are on the host must be stopped or terminated before the host can be released.

Command:

```
aws ec2 release-hosts --host-id=h-0029d6e3cacf1b3da
```

Output:

```
{
    "Successful":  [
        "h-0029d6e3cacf1b3da"
         ],
  "Unsuccessful": []

 }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseHosts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example releases the given host ID h-0badafd1dcb2f3456

```
Remove-EC2Host -HostId h-0badafd1dcb2f3456
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Host (ReleaseHosts)" on target
 "h-0badafd1dcb2f3456".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Successful            Unsuccessful
----------            ------------
{h-0badafd1dcb2f3456} {}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example releases the given host ID h-0badafd1dcb2f3456

```
Remove-EC2Host -HostId h-0badafd1dcb2f3456
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Host (ReleaseHosts)" on target
 "h-0badafd1dcb2f3456".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Successful            Unsuccessful
----------            ------------
{h-0badafd1dcb2f3456} {}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate
with the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association
for the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
```

```
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance
{instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
```

```
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance
{instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace an IAM instance profile for an instance

This example replaces the IAM instance profile represented by the association `iip-assoc-060bae234aac2e7fa` with the IAM instance profile named `AdminRole`.

```
aws ec2 replace-iam-instance-profile-association \
    --iam-instance-profile Name=AdminRole \
    --association-id iip-assoc-060bae234aac2e7fa
```

Output:

```
{
    "IamInstanceProfileAssociation": {
        "InstanceId": "i-087711ddaf98f9489",
        "State": "associating",
        "AssociationId": "iip-assoc-0b215292fab192820",
        "IamInstanceProfile": {
            "Id": "AIPAJLNLDX3AMYZNWYYAY",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/AdminRole"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      ec2Client.send(
        new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
          AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
        }),
      ),
    );
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example replaces the instance profile of a running instance, reboots the instance, and sends a command to the instance after it starts.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
```

```
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the
profile is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new
profile. When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to
associate with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or
is not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace the network ACL associated with a subnet

This example associates the specified network ACL with the subnet for the specified network ACL association.

Command:

```
aws ec2 replace-network-acl-association --association-id aclassoc-e5b95c8c --
network-acl-id acl-5fb85d36
```

Output:

```
{
    "NewAssociationId": "aclassoc-3999875b"
}
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates the specified network ACL with the subnet for the specified network ACL association.

```
Set-EC2NetworkAclAssociation -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -AssociationId
 aclassoc-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
aclassoc-87654321
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified network ACL with the subnet for the specified network ACL association.

```
Set-EC2NetworkAclAssociation -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -AssociationId
 aclassoc-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
aclassoc-87654321
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReplaceNetworkAclEntry` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReplaceNetworkAclEntry`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace a network ACL entry

This example replaces an entry for the specified network ACL. The new rule 100 allows ingress traffic from 203.0.113.12/24 on UDP port 53 (DNS) into any associated subnet.

Command:

```
aws ec2 replace-network-acl-entry --network-acl-id acl-5fb85d36 --ingress --rule-
number 100 --protocol udp --port-range From=53,To=53 --cidr-block 203.0.113.12/24
 --rule-action allow
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclEntry in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example replaces the specified entry for the specified network ACL. The new rule allows inbound traffic from the specified address to any associated subnet.

```
Set-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber 100
 -Protocol 17 -PortRange_From 53 -PortRange_To 53 -CidrBlock 203.0.113.12/24 -
RuleAction allow
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the specified entry for the specified network ACL. The new rule allows inbound traffic from the specified address to any associated subnet.

```
Set-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber 100
 -Protocol 17 -PortRange_From 53 -PortRange_To 53 -CidrBlock 203.0.113.12/24 -
RuleAction allow
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReplaceRoute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReplaceRoute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace a route

This example replaces the specified route in the specified route table. The new route matches the specified CIDR and sends the traffic to the specified virtual private gateway. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 replace-route --route-table-id rtb-22574640 --destination-cidr-
block 10.0.0.0/16 --gateway-id vgw-9a4cacf3
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRoute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example replaces the specified route for the specified route table. The new route sends the specified traffic to the specified virtual private gateway.

```
Set-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 10.0.0.0/24 -
GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the specified route for the specified route table. The new route sends the specified traffic to the specified virtual private gateway.

```
Set-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 10.0.0.0/24 -
GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReplaceRouteTableAssociation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReplaceRouteTableAssociation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace the route table associated with a subnet

This example associates the specified route table with the subnet for the specified route table association.

Command:

```
aws ec2 replace-route-table-association --association-id rtbassoc-781d0d1a --
route-table-id rtb-22574640
```

Output:

```
{
    "NewAssociationId": "rtbassoc-3a1f0f58"
}
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRouteTableAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates the specified route table with the subnet for the specified route table association.

```
Set-EC2RouteTableAssociation -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -AssociationId
 rtbassoc-12345678
```

Output:

```
rtbassoc-87654321
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRouteTableAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified route table with the subnet for the specified route table association.

```
Set-EC2RouteTableAssociation -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -AssociationId
 rtbassoc-12345678
```

Output:

```
rtbassoc-87654321
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRouteTableAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReportInstanceStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReportInstanceStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To report status feedback for an instance

This example command reports status feedback for the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 report-instance-status --instances i-1234567890abcdef0 --status impaired
 --reason-codes unresponsive
```

- For API details, see ReportInstanceStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example reports status feedback for the specified instance.

```
Send-EC2InstanceStatus -Instance i-12345678 -Status impaired -ReasonCode
 unresponsive
```

- For API details, see ReportInstanceStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example reports status feedback for the specified instance.

```
Send-EC2InstanceStatus -Instance i-12345678 -Status impaired -ReasonCode
 unresponsive
```

- For API details, see ReportInstanceStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RequestSpotFleet` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RequestSpotFleet`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To request a Spot fleet in the subnet with the lowest price

This example command creates a Spot fleet request with two launch specifications that differ only by subnet. The Spot fleet launches the instances in the specified subnet with the lowest price. If the instances are launched in a default VPC, they receive a public IP address by default. If the instances are launched in a nondefault VPC, they do not receive a public IP address by default.

Note that you can't specify different subnets from the same Availability Zone in a Spot fleet request.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-fleet --spot-fleet-request-config file://config.json
```

Config.json:

```
{
  "SpotPrice": "0.04",
  "TargetCapacity": 2,
  "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role",
  "LaunchSpecifications": [
      {
          "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
          "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
          "SecurityGroups": [
```

```
                {
                    "GroupId": "sg-1a2b3c4d"
                }
            ],
            "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d, subnet-3c4d5e6f",
            "IamInstanceProfile": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotFleetRequestId": "sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE"
}
```

To request a Spot fleet in the Availability Zone with the lowest price

This example command creates a Spot fleet request with two launch specifications that differ only by Availability Zone. The Spot fleet launches the instances in the specified Availability Zone with the lowest price. If your account supports EC2-VPC only, Amazon EC2 launches the Spot instances in the default subnet of the Availability Zone. If your account supports EC2-Classic, Amazon EC2 launches the instances in EC2-Classic in the Availability Zone.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-fleet --spot-fleet-request-config file://config.json
```

Config.json:

```
{
  "SpotPrice": "0.04",
  "TargetCapacity": 2,
  "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role",
  "LaunchSpecifications": [
      {
          "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
```

```
            "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
            "SecurityGroups": [
                {
                    "GroupId": "sg-1a2b3c4d"
                }
            ],
            "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
            "Placement": {
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a, us-west-2b"
            },
            "IamInstanceProfile": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

To launch Spot instances in a subnet and assign them public IP addresses

This example command assigns public addresses to instances launched in a nondefault VPC. Note that when you specify a network interface, you must include the subnet ID and security group ID using the network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-fleet --spot-fleet-request-config file://config.json
```

Config.json:

```
{
  "SpotPrice": "0.04",
  "TargetCapacity": 2,
  "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role",
  "LaunchSpecifications": [
      {
          "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
          "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
          "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
          "NetworkInterfaces": [
              {
                  "DeviceIndex": 0,
                  "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d",
```

```
                    "Groups": [ "sg-1a2b3c4d" ],
                    "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true
                }
            ],
            "IamInstanceProfile": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::880185128111:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

To request a Spot fleet using the diversified allocation strategy

This example command creates a Spot fleet request that launches 30 instances using the diversified allocation strategy. The launch specifications differ by instance type. The Spot fleet distributes the instances across the launch specifications such that there are 10 instances of each type.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-fleet --spot-fleet-request-config file://config.json
```

Config.json:

```
{
  "SpotPrice": "0.70",
  "TargetCapacity": 30,
  "AllocationStrategy": "diversified",
  "IamFleetRole": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-role",
  "LaunchSpecifications": [
      {
          "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
          "InstanceType": "c4.2xlarge",
          "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d"
      },
      {
          "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
          "InstanceType": "m3.2xlarge",
          "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d"
      },
      {
          "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
```

```
            "InstanceType": "r3.2xlarge",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Spot Fleet Requests in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see RequestSpotFleet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a Spot fleet request in the Availability Zone with the lowest price for the specified instance type. If your account supports EC2-VPC only, the Spot fleet launches the instances in the lowest-priced Availability Zone that has a default subnet. If your account supports EC2-Classic, the Spot fleet launches the instances in EC2-Classic in the lowest-priced Availability Zone. Note that the price you pay will not exceed the specified Spot price for the request.

```
$sg = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.GroupIdentifier
$sg.GroupId = "sg-12345678"
$lc = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotFleetLaunchSpecification
$lc.ImageId = "ami-12345678"
$lc.InstanceType = "m3.medium"
$lc.SecurityGroups.Add($sg)
Request-EC2SpotFleet -SpotFleetRequestConfig_SpotPrice 0.04 `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_TargetCapacity 2 `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_IamFleetRole arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-
fleet-role `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_LaunchSpecification $lc
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a Spot fleet request in the Availability Zone with the lowest price for the specified instance type. If your account supports EC2-VPC only, the Spot fleet launches the instances in the lowest-priced Availability Zone that has a default

subnet. If your account supports EC2-Classic, the Spot fleet launches the instances in EC2-Classic in the lowest-priced Availability Zone. Note that the price you pay will not exceed the specified Spot price for the request.

```
$sg = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.GroupIdentifier
$sg.GroupId = "sg-12345678"
$lc = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotFleetLaunchSpecification
$lc.ImageId = "ami-12345678"
$lc.InstanceType = "m3.medium"
$lc.SecurityGroups.Add($sg)
Request-EC2SpotFleet -SpotFleetRequestConfig_SpotPrice 0.04 `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_TargetCapacity 2 `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_IamFleetRole arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-
fleet-role `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_LaunchSpecification $lc
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RequestSpotInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RequestSpotInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To request Spot Instances

This example command creates a one-time Spot Instance request for five instances in the specified Availability Zone. If your account supports EC2-VPC only, Amazon EC2 launches the instances in the default subnet of the specified Availability Zone. If your account supports EC2-Classic, Amazon EC2 launches the instances in EC2-Classic in the specified Availability Zone.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-instances --spot-price "0.03" --instance-count 5 --
type "one-time" --launch-specification file://specification.json
```

Specification.json:

```
{
  "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
  "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
  "SecurityGroupIds": [ "sg-1a2b3c4d" ],
  "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
  "Placement": {
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a"
  },
  "IamInstanceProfile": {
      "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
  }
}
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotInstanceRequests": [
      {
          "Status": {
              "UpdateTime": "2014-03-25T20:54:21.000Z",
              "Code": "pending-evaluation",
              "Message": "Your Spot request has been submitted for review, and is
 pending evaluation."
          },
          "ProductDescription": "Linux/UNIX",
          "SpotInstanceRequestId": "sir-df6f405d",
          "State": "open",
          "LaunchSpecification": {
              "Placement": {
                  "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a"
              },
              "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
              "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
              "SecurityGroups": [
                  {
                      "GroupName": "my-security-group",
                      "GroupId": "sg-1a2b3c4d"
                  }
              ],
              "Monitoring": {
                  "Enabled": false
              },
              "IamInstanceProfile": {
```

```
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
                },
                "InstanceType": "m3.medium"
            },
            "Type": "one-time",
            "CreateTime": "2014-03-25T20:54:20.000Z",
            "SpotPrice": "0.050000"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

This example command creates a one-time Spot Instance request for five instances in the specified subnet. Amazon EC2 launches the instances in the specified subnet. If the VPC is a nondefault VPC, the instances do not receive a public IP address by default.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-instances --spot-price "0.050" --instance-count 5 --
type "one-time" --launch-specification file://specification.json
```

Specification.json:

```
{
  "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
  "SecurityGroupIds": [ "sg-1a2b3c4d" ],
  "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
  "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d",
  "IamInstanceProfile": {
      "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
  }
}
```

Output:

```
{
  "SpotInstanceRequests": [
      {
          "Status": {
             "UpdateTime": "2014-03-25T22:21:58.000Z",
             "Code": "pending-evaluation",
```

```
            "Message": "Your Spot request has been submitted for review, and is
 pending evaluation."
         },
         "ProductDescription": "Linux/UNIX",
         "SpotInstanceRequestId": "sir-df6f405d",
         "State": "open",
         "LaunchSpecification": {
            "Placement": {
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2a"
            }
            "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d"
            "SecurityGroups": [
                {
                    "GroupName": "my-security-group",
                    "GroupID": "sg-1a2b3c4d"
                }
            ]
            "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d",
            "Monitoring": {
                "Enabled": false
            },
            "IamInstanceProfile": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
            },
            "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
        },
        "Type": "one-time",
        "CreateTime": "2014-03-25T22:21:58.000Z",
        "SpotPrice": "0.050000"
     },
     ...
  ]
}
```

This example assigns a public IP address to the Spot Instances that you launch in a nondefault VPC. Note that when you specify a network interface, you must include the subnet ID and security group ID using the network interface.

Command:

```
aws ec2 request-spot-instances --spot-price "0.050" --instance-count 1 --
type "one-time" --launch-specification file://specification.json
```

Specification.json:

```
{
  "ImageId": "ami-1a2b3c4d",
  "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
  "InstanceType": "m3.medium",
  "NetworkInterfaces": [
    {
      "DeviceIndex": 0,
      "SubnetId": "subnet-1a2b3c4d",
      "Groups": [ "sg-1a2b3c4d" ],
      "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true
    }
  ],
  "IamInstanceProfile": {
      "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example requests a one-time Spot instance in the specified subnet. Note that the security group must be created for the VPC that contains the specified subnet, and it must be specified by ID using the network interface. When you specify a network interface, you must include the subnet ID using the network interface.

```
$n = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceNetworkInterfaceSpecification
$n.DeviceIndex = 0
$n.SubnetId = "subnet-12345678"
$n.Groups.Add("sg-12345678")
Request-EC2SpotInstance -InstanceCount 1 -SpotPrice 0.050 -Type one-time `
-IamInstanceProfile_Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role `
-LaunchSpecification_ImageId ami-12345678 `
-LaunchSpecification_InstanceType m3.medium `
-LaunchSpecification_NetworkInterface $n
```

Output:

```
ActualBlockHourlyPrice   :
AvailabilityZoneGroup    :
BlockDurationMinutes     : 0
CreateTime               : 12/26/2015 7:44:10 AM
Fault                    :
InstanceId               :
LaunchedAvailabilityZone :
LaunchGroup              :
LaunchSpecification      : Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchSpecification
ProductDescription       : Linux/UNIX
SpotInstanceRequestId    : sir-12345678
SpotPrice                : 0.050000
State                    : open
Status                   : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotInstanceStatus
Tags                     : {}
Type                     : one-time
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example requests a one-time Spot instance in the specified subnet. Note that the security group must be created for the VPC that contains the specified subnet, and it must be specified by ID using the network interface. When you specify a network interface, you must include the subnet ID using the network interface.

```
$n = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceNetworkInterfaceSpecification
$n.DeviceIndex = 0
$n.SubnetId = "subnet-12345678"
$n.Groups.Add("sg-12345678")
Request-EC2SpotInstance -InstanceCount 1 -SpotPrice 0.050 -Type one-time `
-IamInstanceProfile_Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role `
-LaunchSpecification_ImageId ami-12345678 `
-LaunchSpecification_InstanceType m3.medium `
-LaunchSpecification_NetworkInterface $n
```

Output:

```
ActualBlockHourlyPrice   :
AvailabilityZoneGroup    :
BlockDurationMinutes     : 0
```

```
CreateTime                : 12/26/2015 7:44:10 AM
Fault                     :
InstanceId                :
LaunchedAvailabilityZone  :
LaunchGroup               :
LaunchSpecification       : Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchSpecification
ProductDescription        : Linux/UNIX
SpotInstanceRequestId     : sir-12345678
SpotPrice                 : 0.050000
State                     : open
Status                    : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotInstanceStatus
Tags                      : {}
Type                      : one-time
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResetImageAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResetImageAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reset the launchPermission attribute

This example resets the `launchPermission` attribute for the specified AMI to its default value. By default, AMIs are private. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reset-image-attribute --image-id ami-5731123e --
attribute launchPermission
```

- For API details, see ResetImageAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example resets the 'launchPermission' attribute to its default value. By default, AMIs are private.

```
Reset-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission
```

- For API details, see ResetImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the 'launchPermission' attribute to its default value. By default, AMIs are private.

```
Reset-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission
```

- For API details, see ResetImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResetInstanceAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResetInstanceAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reset the sourceDestCheck attribute

This example resets the `sourceDestCheck` attribute of the specified instance. The instance must be in a VPC. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reset-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute sourceDestCheck
```

To reset the kernel attribute

This example resets the `kernel` attribute of the specified instance. The instance must be in the `stopped` state. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reset-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute kernel
```

To reset the ramdisk attribute

This example resets the `ramdisk` attribute of the specified instance. The instance must be in the `stopped` state. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reset-instance-attribute --instance-id i-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute ramdisk
```

- For API details, see ResetInstanceAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example resets the 'sriovNetSupport' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Example 2: This example resets the 'ebsOptimized' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute ebsOptimized
```

Example 3: This example resets the 'sourceDestCheck' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sourceDestCheck
```

Example 4: This example resets the 'disableApiTermination' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 disableApiTermination
```

Example 5: This example resets the 'instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
```

- For API details, see ResetInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the 'sriovNetSupport' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Example 2: This example resets the 'ebsOptimized' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute ebsOptimized
```

Example 3: This example resets the 'sourceDestCheck' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sourceDestCheck
```

Example 4: This example resets the 'disableApiTermination' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 disableApiTermination
```

Example 5: This example resets the 'instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
```

- For API details, see ResetInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reset a network interface attribute

The following `reset-network-interface-attribute` example resets the value of the source/destination checking attribute to `true`.

```
aws ec2 reset-network-interface-attribute \
    --network-interface-id eni-686ea200 \
    --source-dest-check
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example resets source/destination checking for the specified network interface.

```
Reset-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SourceDestCheck
```

- For API details, see ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets source/destination checking for the specified network interface.

```
Reset-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SourceDestCheck
```

- For API details, see ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResetSnapshotAttribute` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResetSnapshotAttribute`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reset a snapshot attribute

This example resets the create volume permissions for snapshot `snap-1234567890abcdef0`. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 reset-snapshot-attribute --snapshot-id snap-1234567890abcdef0 --
attribute createVolumePermission
```

- For API details, see ResetSnapshotAttribute in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example resets the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
Reset-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission
```

- For API details, see ResetSnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
Reset-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission
```

- For API details, see ResetSnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RevokeSecurityGroupEgress` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RevokeSecurityGroupEgress`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To remove the rule that allows outbound traffic to a specific address range

The following `revoke-security-group-egress` example command removes the rule that grants access to the specified address ranges on TCP port 80.

```
aws ec2 revoke-security-group-egress \
    --group-id sg-026c12253ce15eff7 \
    --ip-
permissions [{IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=80,ToPort=80,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=10.0.0.0/16}]
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Security groups in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To remove the rule that allows outbound traffic to a specific security group

The following `revoke-security-group-egress` example command removes the rule that grants access to the specified security group on TCP port 80.

```
aws ec2 revoke-security-group-egress \
    --group-id sg-026c12253ce15eff7 \
    --ip-permissions '[{"IpProtocol": "tcp", "FromPort": 443, "ToPort":
 443,"UserIdGroupPairs": [{"GroupId": "sg-06df23a01ff2df86d"}]}]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Security groups in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the rule for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. This revokes access to the specified IP address range on TCP port 80. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 80
$ip.ToPort = 80
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example revokes access to the specified source security group on TCP port 80.

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the rule for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. This revokes access to the specified IP address range on TCP port 80. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 80
$ip.ToPort = 80
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example revokes access to the specified source security group on TCP port 80.

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RevokeSecurityGroupIngress` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RevokeSecurityGroupIngress`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To remove a rule from a security group

The following `revoke-security-group-ingress` example removes TCP port 22 access for the `203.0.113.0/24` address range from the specified security group for a default VPC.

```
aws ec2 revoke-security-group-ingress \
    --group-name mySecurityGroup
```

```
    --protocol tcp \
    --port 22 \
    --cidr 203.0.113.0/24
```

This command produces no output if it succeeds.

For more information, see Security groups in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To remove a rule using the IP permissions set

The following `revoke-security-group-ingress` example uses the `ip-permissions` parameter to remove an inbound rule that allows the ICMP message `Destination Unreachable: Fragmentation Needed and Don't Fragment was Set` (Type 3, Code 4).

```
aws ec2 revoke-security-group-ingress \
    --group-id sg-026c12253ce15eff7 \
    --ip-
permissions IpProtocol=icmp,FromPort=3,ToPort=4,IpRanges=[{CidrIp=0.0.0.0/0}]
```

This command produces no output if it succeeds.

For more information, see Security groups in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example revokes access to TCP port 22 from the specified address range for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. Note that you must identify security groups for EC2-VPC using the security group ID not the security group name. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 22
$ip.ToPort = 22
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example revokes access to TCP port 22 from the specified address range for the specified security group for EC2-Classic. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 22
$ip.ToPort = 22
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission $ip
```

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example revokes access to TCP port 22 from the specified address range for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. Note that you must identify security groups for EC2-VPC using the security group ID not the security group name. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 22
$ip.ToPort = 22
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example revokes access to TCP port 22 from the specified address range for the specified security group for EC2-Classic. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 22
$ip.ToPort = 22
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission $ip
```

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RunInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RunInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create and run an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ImageId">The image Id of the image used as a basis for the
    /// EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The instance type of the EC2 instance to
create.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The name of the key pair to associate with the
    /// instance.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the Amazon EC2 security group that will
be
    /// allowed to interact with the new EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The instance Id of the new EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RunInstances(string imageId, string instanceType,
string keyName, string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RunInstancesRequest
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
                KeyName = keyName,
                MinCount = 1,
                MaxCount = 1,
                SecurityGroupIds = new List<string> { groupId }
            };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.RunInstancesAsync(request);
```

```
            var instanceId = response.Reservation.Instances[0].InstanceId;

            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return instanceId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroupId.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"GroupId {groupId} was not found. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while running the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_run_instances
#
```

```
# This function launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use.
#       -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro).
#       -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use.
#       -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use.
#       -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_run_instances() {
  local image_id instance_type key_pair_name security_group_id count response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_run_instances"
    echo "Launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use."
    echo "  -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro)."
    echo "  -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use."
    echo "  -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use."
    echo "  -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:t:k:s:c:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) instance_type="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      s) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      c) count="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
```

```
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$image_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) ID with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_type" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance type with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -s parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$count" ]]; then
    count=1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id "$image_id" \
    --instance-type "$instance_type" \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --security-group-ids "$security_group_id" \
```

```
    --count "$count" \
    --query 'Instances[*].[InstanceId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports run-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Launch an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceName: A name for the EC2 instance.
  \param amiId: An Amazon Machine Image (AMI) identifier.
  \param[out] instanceID: String to return the instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::runInstance(const Aws::String &instanceName,
                              const Aws::String &amiId,
                              Aws::String &instanceID,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
```

```
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RunInstancesRequest runRequest;
    runRequest.SetImageId(amiId);
    runRequest.SetInstanceType(Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceType::t1_micro);
    runRequest.SetMinCount(1);
    runRequest.SetMaxCount(1);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RunInstancesOutcome runOutcome = ec2Client.RunInstances(
            runRequest);
    if (!runOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to launch EC2 instance " << instanceName <<
                  " based on ami " << amiId << ":" <<
                  runOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    const Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
 runOutcome.GetResult().GetInstances();
    if (instances.empty()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to launch EC2 instance " << instanceName <<
                  " based on ami " << amiId << ":" <<
                  runOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    instanceID = instances[0].GetInstanceId();

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To launch an instance into a default subnet

The following `run-instances` example launches a single instance of type `t2.micro` into the default subnet for the current Region and associates it with the default subnet for the

default VPC for the Region. The key pair is optional if you do not plan to connect to your instance using SSH (Linux) or RDP (Windows).

```
aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id ami-0abcdef1234567890 \
    --instance-type t2.micro \
    --key-name MyKeyPair
```

Output:

```
{
    "Instances": [
        {
            "AmiLaunchIndex": 0,
            "ImageId": "ami-0abcdef1234567890",
            "InstanceId": "i-1231231230abcdef0",
            "InstanceType": "t2.micro",
            "KeyName": "MyKeyPair",
            "LaunchTime": "2018-05-10T08:05:20.000Z",
            "Monitoring": {
                "State": "disabled"
            },
            "Placement": {
                "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-2a",
                "GroupName": "",
                "Tenancy": "default"
            },
            "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-0-157.us-east-2.compute.internal",
            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.0.157",
            "ProductCodes": [],
            "PublicDnsName": "",
            "State": {
                "Code": 0,
                "Name": "pending"
            },
            "StateTransitionReason": "",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-04a636d18e83cfacb",
            "VpcId": "vpc-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Architecture": "x86_64",
            "BlockDeviceMappings": [],
            "ClientToken": "",
            "EbsOptimized": false,
            "Hypervisor": "xen",
```

```
            "NetworkInterfaces": [
                {
                    "Attachment": {
                        "AttachTime": "2018-05-10T08:05:20.000Z",
                        "AttachmentId": "eni-attach-0e325c07e928a0405",
                        "DeleteOnTermination": true,
                        "DeviceIndex": 0,
                        "Status": "attaching"
                    },
                    "Description": "",
                    "Groups": [
                        {
                            "GroupName": "MySecurityGroup",
                            "GroupId": "sg-0598c7d356eba48d7"
                        }
                    ],
                    "Ipv6Addresses": [],
                    "MacAddress": "0a:ab:58:e0:67:e2",
                    "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-0c0a29997760baee7",
                    "OwnerId": "123456789012",
                    "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-0-157.us-east-2.compute.internal",
                    "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.0.157",
                    "PrivateIpAddresses": [
                        {
                            "Primary": true,
                            "PrivateDnsName": "ip-10-0-0-157.us-
east-2.compute.internal",
                            "PrivateIpAddress": "10.0.0.157"
                        }
                    ],
                    "SourceDestCheck": true,
                    "Status": "in-use",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-04a636d18e83cfacb",
                    "VpcId": "vpc-1234567890abcdef0",
                    "InterfaceType": "interface"
                }
            ],
            "RootDeviceName": "/dev/xvda",
            "RootDeviceType": "ebs",
            "SecurityGroups": [
                {
                    "GroupName": "MySecurityGroup",
                    "GroupId": "sg-0598c7d356eba48d7"
                }
```

```
            ],
            "SourceDestCheck": true,
            "StateReason": {
                "Code": "pending",
                "Message": "pending"
            },
            "Tags": [],
            "VirtualizationType": "hvm",
            "CpuOptions": {
                "CoreCount": 1,
                "ThreadsPerCore": 1
            },
            "CapacityReservationSpecification": {
                "CapacityReservationPreference": "open"
            },
            "MetadataOptions": {
                "State": "pending",
                "HttpTokens": "optional",
                "HttpPutResponseHopLimit": 1,
                "HttpEndpoint": "enabled"
            }
        }
    ],
    "OwnerId": "123456789012",
    "ReservationId": "r-02a3f596d91211712"
}
```

Example 2: To launch an instance into a non-default subnet and add a public IP address

The following `run-instances` example requests a public IP address for an instance that you're launching into a nondefault subnet. The instance is associated with the specified security group.

```
aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id ami-0abcdef1234567890 \
    --instance-type t2.micro \
    --subnet-id subnet-08fc749671b2d077c \
    --security-group-ids sg-0b0384b66d7d692f9 \
    --associate-public-ip-address \
    --key-name MyKeyPair
```

For an example of the output for `run-instances`, see Example 1.

Example 3: To launch an instance with additional volumes

The following `run-instances` example uses a block device mapping, specified in mapping.json, to attach additional volumes at launch. A block device mapping can specify EBS volumes, instance store volumes, or both EBS volumes and instance store volumes.

```
aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id ami-0abcdef1234567890 \
    --instance-type t2.micro \
    --subnet-id subnet-08fc749671b2d077c \
    --security-group-ids sg-0b0384b66d7d692f9 \
    --key-name MyKeyPair \
    --block-device-mappings file://mapping.json
```

Contents of `mapping.json`. This example adds `/dev/sdh` an empty EBS volume with a size of 100 GiB.

```
[
    {
        "DeviceName": "/dev/sdh",
        "Ebs": {
            "VolumeSize": 100
        }
    }
]
```

Contents of `mapping.json`. This example adds `ephemeral1` as an instance store volume.

```
[
    {
        "DeviceName": "/dev/sdc",
        "VirtualName": "ephemeral1"
    }
]
```

For an example of the output for `run-instances`, see Example 1.

For more information about block device mappings, see Block device mapping in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 4: To launch an instance and add tags on creation

The following `run-instances` example adds a tag with a key of `webserver` and value of `production` to the instance. The command also applies a tag with a key of `cost-center` and a value of `cc123` to any EBS volume that's created (in this case, the root volume).

```
aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id ami-0abcdef1234567890 \
    --instance-type t2.micro \
    --count 1 \
    --subnet-id subnet-08fc749671b2d077c \
    --key-name MyKeyPair \
    --security-group-ids sg-0b0384b66d7d692f9 \
    --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=instance,Tags=[{Key=webserver,Value=production}]'
 'ResourceType=volume,Tags=[{Key=cost-center,Value=cc123}]'
```

For an example of the output for `run-instances`, see Example 1.

Example 5: To launch an instance with user data

The following `run-instances` example passes user data in a file called `my_script.txt` that contains a configuration script for your instance. The script runs at launch.

```
aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id ami-0abcdef1234567890 \
    --instance-type t2.micro \
    --count 1 \
    --subnet-id subnet-08fc749671b2d077c \
    --key-name MyKeyPair \
    --security-group-ids sg-0b0384b66d7d692f9 \
    --user-data file://my_script.txt
```

For an example of the output for `run-instances`, see Example 1.

For more information about instance user data, see Working with instance user data in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 6: To launch a burstable performance instance

The following `run-instances` example launches a t2.micro instance with the `unlimited` credit option. When you launch a T2 instance, if you do not specify `--credit-specification`, the default is the `standard` credit option. When you launch a T3 instance, the default is the `unlimited` credit option.

```
aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id ami-0abcdef1234567890 \
    --instance-type t2.micro \
    --count 1 \
    --subnet-id subnet-08fc749671b2d077c \
    --key-name MyKeyPair \
    --security-group-ids sg-0b0384b66d7d692f9 \
    --credit-specification CpuCredits=unlimited
```

For an example of the output for `run-instances`, see Example 1.

For more information about burstable performance instances, see Burstable performance instances in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Runs an EC2 instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceType The instance type to use for the EC2 instance.
     * @param keyName The name of the key pair to associate with the EC2
 instance.
     * @param groupName The name of the security group to associate with the EC2
 instance.
     * @param amiId The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the EC2
 instance.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the
 started EC2 instance.
     * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error running the EC2 instance.
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<String> runInstanceAsync(String instanceType, String
keyName, String groupName, String amiId) {
       RunInstancesRequest runRequest = RunInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceType(instanceType)
           .keyName(keyName)
           .securityGroups(groupName)
           .maxCount(1)
           .minCount(1)
           .imageId(amiId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<RunInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().runInstances(runRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenCompose(response -> {
           String instanceIdVal = response.instances().get(0).instanceId();
           System.out.println("Going to start an EC2 instance and use a waiter
to wait for it to be in running state");
           return getAsyncClient().waiter()
               .waitUntilInstanceExists(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
               .thenCompose(waitResponse -> getAsyncClient().waiter()
                   .waitUntilInstanceRunning(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
                   .thenApply(runningResponse -> instanceIdVal));
       }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
           // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to run EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, RunInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Create new EC2 instances.
 * @param {{
 *  keyName: string,
 *  securityGroupIds: string[],
 *  imageId: string,
 *  instanceType: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2')._InstanceType,
 *  minCount?: number,
 *  maxCount?: number }} options
 */
export const main = async ({
  keyName,
  securityGroupIds,
  imageId,
  instanceType,
  minCount = "1",
  maxCount = "1",
}) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  minCount = Number.parseInt(minCount);
  maxCount = Number.parseInt(maxCount);
  const command = new RunInstancesCommand({
    // Your key pair name.
    KeyName: keyName,
    // Your security group.
    SecurityGroupIds: securityGroupIds,
    // An Amazon Machine Image (AMI). There are multiple ways to search for AMIs.
 For more information, see:
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/finding-an-ami.html
    ImageId: imageId,
    // An instance type describing the resources provided to your instance. There
 are multiple
    // ways to search for instance types. For more information see:
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/instance-
discovery.html
    InstanceType: instanceType,
    // Availability Zones have capacity limitations that may impact your ability
 to launch instances.
    // The `RunInstances` operation will only succeed if it can allocate at least
 the `MinCount` of instances.
```

```
    // However, EC2 will attempt to launch up to the `MaxCount` of instances,
 even if the full request cannot be satisfied.
    // If you need a specific number of instances, use `MinCount` and `MaxCount`
 set to the same value.
    // If you want to launch up to a certain number of instances, use `MaxCount`
 and let EC2 provision as many as possible.
    // If you require a minimum number of instances, but do not want to exceed a
 maximum, use both `MinCount` and `MaxCount`.
    MinCount: minCount,
    MaxCount: maxCount,
  });

  try {
    const { Instances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceList = Instances.map(
      (instance) => `• ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    ).join("\n");
    console.log(`Launched instances:\n${instanceList}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceCountExceeded") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2Instance(
    name: String,
```

```
    amiId: String,
): String? {
    val request =
        RunInstancesRequest {
            imageId = amiId
            instanceType = InstanceType.T1Micro
            maxCount = 1
            minCount = 1
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.runInstances(request)
        val instanceId = response.instances?.get(0)?.instanceId
        val tag =
            Tag {
                key = "Name"
                value = name
            }

        val requestTags =
            CreateTagsRequest {
                resources = listOf(instanceId.toString())
                tags = listOf(tag)
            }
        ec2.createTags(requestTags)
        println("Successfully started EC2 Instance $instanceId based on AMI
 $amiId")
        return instanceId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example launches a single instance of the specified AMI in EC2-Classic or a default VPC.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -MinCount 1 -MaxCount 1 -InstanceType
 m3.medium -KeyName my-key-pair -SecurityGroup my-security-group
```

Example 2: This example launches a single instance of the specified AMI in a VPC.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -MinCount 1 -MaxCount 1 -SubnetId
 subnet-12345678 -InstanceType t2.micro -KeyName my-key-pair -SecurityGroupId
 sg-12345678
```

Example 3: To add an EBS volume or an instance store volume, define a block device mapping and add it to the command. This example adds an instance store volume.

```
$bdm = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.BlockDeviceMapping
$bdm.VirtualName = "ephemeral0"
$bdm.DeviceName = "/dev/sdf"

New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -BlockDeviceMapping $bdm ...
```

Example 4: To specify one of the current Windows AMIs, get its AMI ID using Get-EC2ImageByName. This example launches an instance from the current base AMI for Windows Server 2016.

```
$ami = Get-EC2ImageByName WINDOWS_2016_BASE

New-EC2Instance -ImageId $ami.ImageId ...
```

Example 5: Launches an instance into the specified dedicated host environment.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-1a2b3c4d -InstanceType m4.large -KeyName my-key-pair
 -SecurityGroupId sg-1a2b3c4d  -AvailabilityZone us-west-1a -Tenancy host -HostID
 h-1a2b3c4d5e6f1a2b3
```

Example 6: This request launches two instances and applies a tag with a key of webserver and a value of production to the instances. The request also applies a tag with a key of cost-center and a value of cc123 to the volumes that are created (in this case, the root volume for each instance).

```
$tag1 = @{ Key="webserver"; Value="production" }
$tag2 = @{ Key="cost-center"; Value="cc123" }
```

```
$tagspec1 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec1.ResourceType = "instance"
$tagspec1.Tags.Add($tag1)

$tagspec2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec2.ResourceType = "volume"
$tagspec2.Tags.Add($tag2)

New-EC2Instance -ImageId "ami-1a2b3c4d" -KeyName "my-key-pair" -MaxCount 2 -
InstanceType "t2.large" -SubnetId "subnet-1a2b3c4d" -TagSpecification $tagspec1,
$tagspec2
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example launches a single instance of the specified AMI in EC2-Classic or a default VPC.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -MinCount 1 -MaxCount 1 -InstanceType
 m3.medium -KeyName my-key-pair -SecurityGroup my-security-group
```

Example 2: This example launches a single instance of the specified AMI in a VPC.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -MinCount 1 -MaxCount 1 -SubnetId
 subnet-12345678 -InstanceType t2.micro -KeyName my-key-pair -SecurityGroupId
 sg-12345678
```

Example 3: To add an EBS volume or an instance store volume, define a block device mapping and add it to the command. This example adds an instance store volume.

```
$bdm = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.BlockDeviceMapping
$bdm.VirtualName = "ephemeral0"
$bdm.DeviceName = "/dev/sdf"

New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -BlockDeviceMapping $bdm ...
```

Example 4: To specify one of the current Windows AMIs, get its AMI ID using Get-SSMLatestEC2Image. This example launches an instance from the current base AMI for Windows Server 2016.

```
$ami = (Get-SSMLatestEC2Image -Path 'ami-windows-latest' -ImageName
 'WINDOWS*2016*English*Core*BASE').Value

New-EC2Instance -ImageId $ami ...
```

Example 5: Launches an instance into the specified dedicated host environment.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-1a2b3c4d -InstanceType m4.large -KeyName my-key-pair
 -SecurityGroupId sg-1a2b3c4d  -AvailabilityZone us-west-1a -Tenancy host -HostID
 h-1a2b3c4d5e6f1a2b3
```

Example 6: This request launches two instances and applies a tag with a key of webserver and a value of production to the instances. The request also applies a tag with a key of cost-center and a value of cc123 to the volumes that are created (in this case, the root volume for each instance).

```
$tag1 = @{ Key="webserver"; Value="production" }
$tag2 = @{ Key="cost-center"; Value="cc123" }

$tagspec1 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec1.ResourceType = "instance"
$tagspec1.Tags.Add($tag1)

$tagspec2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec2.ResourceType = "volume"
$tagspec2.Tags.Add($tag2)

New-EC2Instance -ImageId "ami-1a2b3c4d" -KeyName "my-key-pair" -MaxCount 2 -
InstanceType "t2.large" -SubnetId "subnet-1a2b3c4d" -TagSpecification $tagspec1,
$tagspec2
```

Example 7: This example validates permissions for launching an EC2 instance using the DryRun parameter without actually creating the instance. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId 'ami-12345678' -InstanceType 't2.micro' -KeyName 'my-
key-pair' -Region 'us-west-2' -DryRun $true
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)
```

```
    def create(
        self,
        image_id: str,
        instance_type: str,
        key_pair_name: str,
        security_group_ids: Optional[List[str]] = None,
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Creates a new EC2 instance in the default VPC of the current account.

        The instance starts immediately after it is created.

        :param image_id: The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the
instance.
        :param instance_type: The type of instance to create, such as 't2.micro'.
        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to use for SSH access.
        :param security_group_ids: A list of security group IDs to associate with
the instance.
                                   If not specified, the default security group
of the VPC is used.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance objects
representing the newly created instances.
        """
        try:
            instance_params = {
                "ImageId": image_id,
                "InstanceType": instance_type,
                "KeyName": key_pair_name,
            }
            if security_group_ids is not None:
                instance_params["SecurityGroupIds"] = security_group_ids

            response = self.ec2_client.run_instances(
                **instance_params, MinCount=1, MaxCount=1
            )
            instance = response["Instances"][0]
            self.instances.append(instance)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance["InstanceId"]])
        except ClientError as err:
            params_str = "\n\t".join(
                f"{key}: {value}" for key, value in instance_params.items()
            )
```

```
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to complete instance creation request.\nRequest details:
{params_str}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InstanceLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type
 '{instance_type}'. "
                        "Terminate unused instances or contact AWS Support for a
 limit increase."
                    )
                )
            if error_code == "InsufficientInstanceCapacity":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type
 '{instance_type}'. "
                        "Select a different instance type or launch in a
 different availability zone."
                    )
                )
            raise
        return self.instances
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn create_instance<'a>(
        &self,
```

```
        image_id: &'a str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &'a KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&'a SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<String, EC2Error> {
        let run_instances = self
            .client
            .run_instances()
            .image_id(image_id)
            .instance_type(instance_type)
            .key_name(
                key_pair
                    .key_name()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing key name when launching
instance"))?,
            )
            .set_security_group_ids(Some(
                security_groups
                    .iter()
                    .filter_map(|sg| sg.group_id.clone())
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .min_count(1)
            .max_count(1)
            .send()
            .await?;

        if run_instances.instances().is_empty() {
            return Err(EC2Error::new("Failed to create instance"));
        }

        let instance_id = run_instances.instances()[0].instance_id().unwrap();
        let response = self
            .client
            .create_tags()
            .resources(instance_id)
            .tags(
                Tag::builder()
                    .key("Name")
                    .value("From SDK Examples")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;
```

```
        match response {
            Ok(_) => tracing::info!("Created {instance_id} and applied tags."),
            Err(err) => {
                tracing::info!("Error applying tags to {instance_id}: {err:?}");
                return Err(err.into());
            }
        }

        tracing::info!("Instance is created.");

        Ok(instance_id.to_string())
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    " Create tags for resource created during instance launch. "
    DATA lt_tagspecifications TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2tagspecification=>tt_tagspecificationlist.
    DATA ls_tagspecifications LIKE LINE OF lt_tagspecifications.
    ls_tagspecifications = NEW /aws1/cl_ec2tagspecification(
      iv_resourcetype = 'instance'
      it_tags = VALUE /aws1/cl_ec2tag=>tt_taglist(
        ( NEW /aws1/cl_ec2tag( iv_key = 'Name' iv_value = iv_tag_value ) )
      ) ).
    APPEND ls_tagspecifications TO lt_tagspecifications.

    TRY.
        " Create/launch Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance. "
```

```
        oo_result = lo_ec2->runinstances(                          " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
          iv_imageid = iv_ami_id
          iv_instancetype = 't3.micro'
          iv_maxcount = 1
          iv_mincount = 1
          it_tagspecifications = lt_tagspecifications
          iv_subnetid = iv_subnet_id ).
        MESSAGE 'EC2 instance created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Create and return a new EC2 instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - imageId: The image ID of the AMI to use when creating the instance.
    ///   - instanceType: The type of instance to create.
    ///   - keyPairName: The RSA key pair's name to use to secure the instance.
    ///   - securityGroups: The security group or groups to add the instance
    ///     to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The EC2 instance as an `EC2ClientTypes.Instance` object.
    func runInstance(imageId: String, instanceType: EC2ClientTypes.InstanceType,
```

```
                        keyPairName: String, securityGroups: [String]?) async ->
EC2ClientTypes.Instance? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.runInstances(
                input: RunInstancesInput(
                    imageId: imageId,
                    instanceType: instanceType,
                    keyName: keyPairName,
                    maxCount: 1,
                    minCount: 1,
                    securityGroupIds: securityGroups
                )
            )

            guard let instances = output.instances else {
                print("*** Unable to create the instance.")
                return nil
            }

            return instances[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `RunScheduledInstances` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RunScheduledInstances`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To launch a Scheduled Instance

This example launches the specified Scheduled Instance in a VPC.

Command:

```
aws ec2 run-scheduled-instances --scheduled-instance-
id sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012 --instance-count 1 --launch-
specification file://launch-specification.json
```

Launch-specification.json:

```
{
  "ImageId": "ami-12345678",
  "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
  "InstanceType": "c4.large",
  "NetworkInterfaces": [
    {
        "DeviceIndex": 0,
        "SubnetId": "subnet-12345678",
        "AssociatePublicIpAddress": true,
        "Groups": ["sg-12345678"]
    }
  ],
  "IamInstanceProfile": {
      "Name": "my-iam-role"
  }
}
```

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceIdSet": [
      "i-1234567890abcdef0"
  ]
}
```

This example launches the specified Scheduled Instance in EC2-Classic.

Command:

```
aws ec2 run-scheduled-instances --scheduled-instance-
id sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012 --instance-count 1 --launch-
specification file://launch-specification.json
```

Launch-specification.json:

```
{
```

```
  "ImageId": "ami-12345678",
  "KeyName": "my-key-pair",
  "SecurityGroupIds": ["sg-12345678"],
  "InstanceType": "c4.large",
  "Placement": {
    "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2b"
  }
  "IamInstanceProfile": {
      "Name": "my-iam-role"
  }
}
```

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceIdSet": [
      "i-1234567890abcdef0"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see RunScheduledInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example launches the specified Scheduled Instance.

```
New-EC2ScheduledInstance -ScheduledInstanceId
 sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012 -InstanceCount 1 `
-IamInstanceProfile_Name my-iam-role `
-LaunchSpecification_ImageId ami-12345678 `
-LaunchSpecification_InstanceType c4.large `
-LaunchSpecification_SubnetId subnet-12345678`
-LaunchSpecification_SecurityGroupId sg-12345678
```

- For API details, see RunScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example launches the specified Scheduled Instance.

```
New-EC2ScheduledInstance -ScheduledInstanceId
 sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012 -InstanceCount 1 `
-IamInstanceProfile_Name my-iam-role `
-LaunchSpecification_ImageId ami-12345678 `
-LaunchSpecification_InstanceType c4.large `
-LaunchSpecification_SubnetId subnet-12345678`
-LaunchSpecification_SecurityGroupId sg-12345678
```

- For API details, see RunScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StartInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the Amazon EC2 instance
    /// to start.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StartInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            var request = new StartInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StartInstancesAsync(request);

            Console.Write("Waiting for instance to start. ");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to start.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while starting the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
```

```
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_start_instances
#
# This function starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
```

```
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_start_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_start_instances"
    echo "Starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 start-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports start-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Start an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::startInstance(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::StartInstancesRequest startRequest;
    startRequest.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    startRequest.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::StartInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.StartInstances(startRequest);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
```

```
                << "Failed dry run to start instance. A dry run should trigger an
 error."
                << std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
               Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to start instance " << instanceId << ": "
                  << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    startRequest.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::StartInstancesOutcome startInstancesOutcome =
 ec2Client.StartInstances(startRequest);

    if (!startInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to start instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  startInstancesOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully started instance " << instanceId <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return startInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start an Amazon EC2 instance

This example starts the specified Amazon EBS-backed instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 start-instances --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "StartingInstances": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "CurrentState": {
                "Code": 0,
                "Name": "pending"
            },
            "PreviousState": {
                "Code": 80,
                "Name": "stopped"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Stop and Start Your Instance in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Starts an Amazon EC2 instance asynchronously and waits until it is in the
 "running" state.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the instance to start
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has
 been started and is in the "running" state, or exceptionally if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> startInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        StartInstancesRequest startRequest = StartInstancesRequest.builder()
```

```
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
            .client(getAsyncClient())
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Starting instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
run.");
        CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        return getAsyncClient().startInstances(startRequest)
            .thenCompose(response ->
                ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceRunning(describeRequest)
            )
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully started instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
to start instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, StartInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Starts an Amazon EBS-backed instance that you've previously stopped.
 * @param {{ instanceIds }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new StartInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { StartingInstances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceIdList = StartingInstances.map(
      (instance) => ` • ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    );
    console.log("Starting instances:");
    console.log(instanceIdList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun startInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StartInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.startInstances(request)
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId starts. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceRunning {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully started instance $instanceId")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example starts the specified instance.

```
Start-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

Example 2: This example starts the specified instances.

```
@("i-12345678", "i-76543210") | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 3: This example starts the set of instances that are currently stopped. The Instance objects returned by Get-EC2Instance are piped to Start-EC2Instance. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter @{ Name="instance-state-name";
 Values="stopped"}).Instances | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter for the Filter parameter.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "instance-state-name"
$filter.Values = "stopped"

(Get-EC2Instance -Filter $filter).Instances | Start-EC2Instance
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example starts the specified instance.

```
Start-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

Example 2: This example starts the specified instances.

```
@("i-12345678", "i-76543210") | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 3: This example starts the set of instances that are currently stopped. The Instance objects returned by Get-EC2Instance are piped to Start-EC2Instance. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter @{ Name="instance-state-name";
 Values="stopped"}).Instances | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter for the Filter parameter.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "instance-state-name"
$filter.Values = "stopped"

(Get-EC2Instance -Filter $filter).Instances | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 5: This example validates permissions for starting an EC2 instance using the DryRun parameter without actually starting the instance. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
Start-EC2Instance -InstanceId 'i-0abcdef123456' -Region 'us-west-1' -DryRun $true
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""
```

```
    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                            access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                           wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def start(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Starts instances and waits for them to be in a running state.

        :return: The response to the start request.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to start.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            start_response =
 self.ec2_client.start_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
```

```
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            return start_response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to start instance(s): {','.join(map(str,
 instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't start instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
 state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a stopped state before starting
 them."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Attempts to start an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
```

```
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was started; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_started?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'i-123abc'
#   )
def instance_started?(ec2_client, instance_id)
  response = ec2_client.describe_instance_status(instance_ids: [instance_id])

  if response.instance_statuses.count.positive?
    state = response.instance_statuses[0].instance_state.name
    case state
    when 'pending'
      puts 'Error starting instance: the instance is pending. Try again later.'
      return false
    when 'running'
      puts 'The instance is already running.'
      return true
    when 'terminated'
      puts 'Error starting instance: ' \
        'the instance is terminated, so you cannot start it.'
      return false
    end
  end

  ec2_client.start_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_running, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance started.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error starting instance: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  instance_id = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-start-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'INSTANCE_ID REGION '
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
```

```
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-start-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'i-123abc us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    instance_id = 'i-123abc'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    instance_id = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Attempting to start instance '#{instance_id}' " \
    '(this might take a few minutes)...'
  return if instance_started?(ec2_client, instance_id)

  puts 'Could not start instance.'
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start an EC2 Instance by instance ID.

```
    pub async fn start_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error>
 {
```

```
        tracing::info!("Starting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .start_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        tracing::info!("Started instance.");

        Ok(())
    }
```

Wait for an instance to be in the ready and status ok states, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    /// Wait for an instance to be ready and status ok (default wait 60 seconds)
    pub async fn wait_for_instance_ready(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_status_ok()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to start.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs()
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to
 start the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->startinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to start this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to start instance completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to start instance. "
          oo_result = lo_ec2->startinstances(           " oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes. "
            it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
            iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Successfully started the EC2 instance.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to start this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to start instance failed. User does not have
 permissions to start the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
```

```
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Start the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to start.
    ///   - waitUntilStarted: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has started. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance starts
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully started (or is left to
    ///   start asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't start.
    func startInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStarted: Bool = false) async
 -> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.startInstances(
                input: StartInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStarted {
                print("Waiting for the instance to start...")
```

```
                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 60.0)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceRunning(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to start the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `StopInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StopInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Stop an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// stop.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StopInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StopInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StopInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to stop.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Stopped);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to stop.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while stopping the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_stop_instances
#
# This function stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_stop_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_stop_instances"
    echo "Stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 stop-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports stop-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Stop an EC2 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::stopInstance(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::StopInstancesRequest request;
    request.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    request.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::StopInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.StopInstances(request);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to stop instance. A dry run should trigger an
 error."
                << std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
               Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to stop instance " << instanceId << ": "
                  << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::StopInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.StopInstances(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to stop instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully stopped instance " << instanceId <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

void PrintUsage() {
    std::cout << "Usage: run_start_stop_instance <instance_id> <start|stop>" <<
              std::endl;
}
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To stop an Amazon EC2 instance

The following `stop-instances` example stops the specified Amazon EBS-backed instance.

```
aws ec2 stop-instances \
    --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "StoppingInstances": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "CurrentState": {
                "Code": 64,
                "Name": "stopping"
            },
            "PreviousState": {
                "Code": 16,
```

```
                "Name": "running"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Stop and Start Your Instance in the *Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud User Guide*.

Example 2: To hibernate an Amazon EC2 instance

The following `stop-instances` example hibernates Amazon EBS-backed instance if the instance is enabled for hibernation and meets the hibernation prerequisites. After the instance is put into hibernation the instance is stopped.

```
aws ec2 stop-instances \
    --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0 \
    --hibernate
```

Output:

```
{
    "StoppingInstances": [
        {
            "CurrentState": {
                "Code": 64,
                "Name": "stopping"
            },
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "PreviousState": {
                "Code": 16,
                "Name": "running"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Hibernate your On-Demand Linux instance in the *Amazon Elastic Cloud Compute User Guide*.

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Stops the EC2 instance with the specified ID asynchronously and waits for
the instance to stop.
    *
    * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to stop
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has
been stopped, or exceptionally if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> stopInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
       StopInstancesRequest stopRequest = StopInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(instanceId)
           .build();

       DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(instanceId)
           .build();

       Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
           .client(getAsyncClient())
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
       logger.info("Stopping instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
stop.");
       getAsyncClient().stopInstances(stopRequest)
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               if (response.stoppingInstances().isEmpty()) {
                   return CompletableFuture.failedFuture(new
RuntimeException("No instances were stopped. Please check the instance ID: " +
instanceId));
               }
```

```
                return ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceStopped(describeRequest);
            })
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully stopped instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                logger.error("Failed to stop instance " + instanceId + ": " +
 throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
 to stop instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });

        return resultFuture;
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, StopInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Stop one or more EC2 instances.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new StopInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
```

```
  });

  try {
    const { StoppingInstances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceIdList = StoppingInstances.map(
      (instance) => ` • ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    );
    console.log("Stopping instances:");
    console.log(instanceIdList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun stopInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StopInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.stopInstances(request)
```

```
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId stops. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceStopped {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully stopped instance $instanceId")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example stops the specified instance.

```
Stop-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example stops the specified instance.

```
Stop-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)
```

```
    def stop(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Stops instances and waits for them to be in a stopped state.

        :return: The response to the stop request, or None if there are no
instances to stop.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to stop.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            # Attempt to stop the instances
            stop_response =
self.ec2_client.stop_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_stopped")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to stop instance(s): {','.join(map(str, instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't stop instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a running state before stopping
them."
                )
            raise
        return stop_response
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was stopped; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_stopped?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'i-123abc'
#   )
def instance_stopped?(ec2_client, instance_id)
  response = ec2_client.describe_instance_status(instance_ids: [instance_id])

  if response.instance_statuses.count.positive?
    state = response.instance_statuses[0].instance_state.name
    case state
    when 'stopping'
      puts 'The instance is already stopping.'
      return true
    when 'stopped'
      puts 'The instance is already stopped.'
      return true
    when 'terminated'
      puts 'Error stopping instance: ' \
        'the instance is terminated, so you cannot stop it.'
      return false
    end
```

```
  end

  ec2_client.stop_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_stopped, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance stopped.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error stopping instance: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  instance_id = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-stop-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'INSTANCE_ID REGION '
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-start-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'i-123abc us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    instance_id = 'i-123abc'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    instance_id = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Attempting to stop instance '#{instance_id}' " \
    '(this might take a few minutes)...'
  return if instance_stopped?(ec2_client, instance_id)

  puts 'Could not stop instance.'
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn stop_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error>
{
        tracing::info!("Stopping instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .stop_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        self.wait_for_instance_stopped(instance_id, None).await?;

        tracing::info!("Stopped instance.");

        Ok(())
    }
```

Wait for an instance to be in the stopped state, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    pub async fn stop_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error>
{
        tracing::info!("Stopping instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
```

```
            .stop_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        self.wait_for_instance_stopped(instance_id, None).await?;

        tracing::info!("Stopped instance.");

        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to stop
 the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->stopinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to stop this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
```

```
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to stop instance completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to stop instance. "
          oo_result = lo_ec2->stopinstances(           " oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes. "
            it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
            iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Successfully stopped the EC2 instance.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to stop this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to stop instance failed. User does not have
 permissions to stop the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Stop the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to stop.
    ///   - waitUntilStopped: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has stopped. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance stops
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully stopped (or is left to
    ///   stop asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't stop.
    func stopInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStopped: Bool = false) async -
> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.stopInstances(
                input: StopInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStopped {
                print("Waiting for the instance to stop. Please be patient!")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceStopped(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )

                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to stop the instance:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `TerminateInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TerminateInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with Amazon VPC

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Terminate an EC2 instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance
   /// to terminate.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task<List<InstanceStateChange>> TerminateInstances(string
ec2InstanceId)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest
           {
               InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId }
           };

           var response = await _amazonEC2.TerminateInstancesAsync(request);
           Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to terminate.");
           await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId,
InstanceStateName.Terminated);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\nThe instance {ec2InstanceId} has been
terminated.");
            return response.TerminatingInstances;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to terminate.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while terminating the instance.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);
```

```
            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_terminate_instances
#
# This function terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# instances using the AWS CLI.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs.
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_terminate_instances() {
  local instance_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
```

```
# bashsupport disable=BP5008
function usage() {
  echo "function ec2_terminate_instances"
  echo "Terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
instances."
  echo "  -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs."
  echo "  -h - Display help."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "i:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

# Check if instance ID is provided
if [[ -z "${instance_ids}" ]]; then
  echo "Error: Missing required instance IDs parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

# shellcheck disable=SC2086
response=$(aws ec2 terminate-instances \
  "--instance-ids" $instance_ids \
  --query 'TerminatingInstances[*].[InstanceId,CurrentState.Name]' \
  --output text) || {
  aws_cli_error_log ${?}
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports terminate-instances operation failed.$response"
  return 1
}
```

```
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Terminate an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::terminateInstances(const Aws::String &instanceID,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::TerminateInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetInstanceIds({instanceID});

    Aws::EC2::Model::TerminateInstancesOutcome outcome =
            ec2Client.TerminateInstances(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Ec2 instance '" << instanceID <<
                  "' was terminated." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to terminate ec2 instance " << instanceID <<
                  ", " <<
```

```
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To terminate an Amazon EC2 instance

This example terminates the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 terminate-instances --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "TerminatingInstances": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "CurrentState": {
                "Code": 32,
                "Name": "shutting-down"
            },
            "PreviousState": {
                "Code": 16,
                "Name": "running"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using Amazon EC2 Instances in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Terminates an EC2 instance asynchronously and waits for it to reach the
terminated state.
    *
    * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to terminate
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has
been terminated
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is no response from the AWS SDK or if
there is a failure during the termination process
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Object> terminateEC2Async(String instanceId) {
       TerminateInstancesRequest terminateRequest =
TerminateInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(instanceId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<TerminateInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().terminateInstances(terminateRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenCompose(terminateResponse -> {
           if (terminateResponse == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No response received for terminating
instance " + instanceId);
           }
           System.out.println("Going to terminate an EC2 instance and use a
waiter to wait for it to be in terminated state");
           return getAsyncClient().waiter()
               .waitUntilInstanceTerminated(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceId))
               .thenApply(waiterResponse -> null);
       }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
           // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to terminate EC2 instance: " +
 throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, TerminateInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Terminate one or more EC2 instances.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new TerminateInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { TerminatingInstances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceList = TerminatingInstances.map(
      (instance) => ` • ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    );
    console.log("Terminating instances:");
    console.log(instanceList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
```

```
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun terminateEC2(instanceID: String) {
    val request =
        TerminateInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceID)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.terminateInstances(request)
        response.terminatingInstances?.forEach { instance ->
            println("The ID of the terminated instance is
 ${instance.instanceId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example terminates the specified instance (the instance may be running or in 'stopped' state). The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding; use the -Force switch to suppress the prompt.

```
Remove-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example terminates the specified instance (the instance may be running or in 'stopped' state). The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding; use the -Force switch to suppress the prompt.

```
Remove-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions
 using the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-
level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)
```

```
    def terminate(self) -> None:
        """
        Terminates instances and waits for them to reach the terminated state.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to terminate.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            self.ec2_client.terminate_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            self.instances.clear()
            for instance_id in instance_ids:
                print(f"• Instance ID: {instance_id}\n" f"• Action: Terminated")

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed instance termination details:\n\t{str(self.instances)}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was terminated; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_terminated?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'i-123abc'
#   )
def instance_terminated?(ec2_client, instance_id)
  response = ec2_client.describe_instance_status(instance_ids: [instance_id])

  if response.instance_statuses.count.positive? &&
     response.instance_statuses[0].instance_state.name == 'terminated'

    puts 'The instance is already terminated.'
    return true
  end

  ec2_client.terminate_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_terminated, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance terminated.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error terminating instance: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  instance_id = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-terminate-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'INSTANCE_ID REGION '
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
```

```
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-terminate-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'i-123abc us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    instance_id = 'i-123abc'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    instance_id = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Attempting to terminate instance '#{instance_id}' " \
    '(this might take a few minutes)...'
  return if instance_terminated?(ec2_client, instance_id)

  puts 'Could not terminate instance.'
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn delete_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting instance with id {instance_id}");
        self.stop_instance(instance_id).await?;
```

```
        self.client
            .terminate_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        self.wait_for_instance_terminated(instance_id).await?;
        tracing::info!("Terminated instance with id {instance_id}");
        Ok(())
    }
```

Wait for an instance to be in the terminted state, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    async fn wait_for_instance_terminated(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_terminated()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(Duration::from_secs(60))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to terminate.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Terminate the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to terminate.
    ///   - waitUntilTerminated: Whether or not to wait until the instance is
    ///     terminated before returning.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if terminated successfully. `false` if not or if an
    ///   error occurs.
    func terminateInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilTerminated: Bool = false)
 async -> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.terminateInstances(
                input: TerminateInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilTerminated {
                print("Waiting for the instance to terminate...")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600.0)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceTerminated(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
```

```
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to terminate the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `UnassignPrivateIpAddresses` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UnassignPrivateIpAddresses`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To unassign a secondary private IP address from a network interface

This example unassigns the specified private IP address from the specified network interface. If the command succeeds, no output is returned.

Command:

```
aws ec2 unassign-private-ip-addresses --network-interface-id eni-e5aa89a3 --
private-ip-addresses 10.0.0.82
```

- For API details, see UnassignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example unassigns the specified private IP address from the specified network interface.

```
Unregister-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -PrivateIpAddress
 10.0.0.82
```

- For API details, see UnassignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example unassigns the specified private IP address from the specified network interface.

```
Unregister-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -PrivateIpAddress
 10.0.0.82
```

- For API details, see UnassignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UnmonitorInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UnmonitorInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Disable monitoring for an EC2 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceId: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::disableMonitoring(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::UnmonitorInstancesRequest unrequest;
    unrequest.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    unrequest.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::UnmonitorInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.UnmonitorInstances(unrequest);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to disable monitoring on instance. A dry run
 should trigger an error."
                <<
                std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
               Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to disable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << ": " << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    unrequest.SetDryRun(false);
```

```
    Aws::EC2::Model::UnmonitorInstancesOutcome unmonitorInstancesOutcome =
 ec2Client.UnmonitorInstances(unrequest);
    if (!unmonitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to disable monitoring on instance " << instanceId
                  << ": " << unmonitorInstancesOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully disable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << std::endl;
    }

    return unmonitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable detailed monitoring for an instance

This example command disables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ec2 unmonitor-instances --instance-ids i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceMonitorings": [
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "Monitoring": {
              "State": "disabling"
          }
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, UnmonitorInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Turn off detailed monitoring for the selected instance.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new UnmonitorInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { InstanceMonitorings } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceMonitoringsList = InstanceMonitorings.map(
      (im) =>
        ` • Detailed monitoring state for ${im.InstanceId} is
 ${im.Monitoring.State}.`,
    );
    console.log("Monitoring status:");
    console.log(instanceMonitoringsList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example disables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

```
Stop-EC2InstanceMonitoring -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    Monitoring
----------    ----------
i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

```
Stop-EC2InstanceMonitoring -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    Monitoring
----------    ----------
i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update the description of an inbound security group rule with a CIDR source

The following `update-security-group-rule-descriptions-ingress` example updates the description for the security group rule for the specified port and IPv4 address range. The description '`SSH access from ABC office`' replaces any existing description for the rule.

```
aws ec2 update-security-group-rule-descriptions-ingress \
    --group-id sg-02f0d35a850ba727f \
    --ip-permissions
 IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=22,ToPort=22,IpRanges='[{CidrIp=203.0.113.0/16,Description="SSH
 access from corpnet"}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

For more information, see Security group rules in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

Example 2: To update the description of an inbound security group rule with a prefix list source

The following `update-security-group-rule-descriptions-ingress` example updates the description for the security group rule for the specified port and prefix list. The description '`SSH access from ABC office`' replaces any existing description for the rule.

```
aws ec2 update-security-group-rule-descriptions-ingress \
    --group-id sg-02f0d35a850ba727f \
```

```
    --ip-permissions
 IpProtocol=tcp,FromPort=22,ToPort=22,PrefixListIds='[{PrefixListId=pl-12345678,Descripti
 access from corpnet"}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Return": true
}
```

For more information, see Security group rules in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates the description of an existing ingress (inbound) security group rule.

```
$existingInboundRule = Get-EC2SecurityGroupRule -SecurityGroupRuleId
 "sgr-1234567890"
$ruleWithUpdatedDescription = [Amazon.EC2.Model.SecurityGroupRuleDescription]@{
  "SecurityGroupRuleId" = $existingInboundRule.SecurityGroupRuleId
  "Description" = "Updated rule description"
}

Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription -GroupId
 $existingInboundRule.GroupId -SecurityGroupRuleDescription
 $ruleWithUpdatedDescription
```

Example 2: Removes the description of an existing ingress (inbound) security group rule (by omitting the parameter in the request).

```
$existingInboundRule = Get-EC2SecurityGroupRule -SecurityGroupRuleId
 "sgr-1234567890"
$ruleWithoutDescription = [Amazon.EC2.Model.SecurityGroupRuleDescription]@{
  "SecurityGroupRuleId" = $existingInboundRule.SecurityGroupRuleId
}
```

```
Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription -GroupId
 $existingInboundRule.GroupId -SecurityGroupRuleDescription
 $ruleWithoutDescription
```

- For API details, see UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the description of an existing ingress (inbound) security group rule.

```
$existingInboundRule = Get-EC2SecurityGroupRule -SecurityGroupRuleId
 "sgr-1234567890"
$ruleWithUpdatedDescription = [Amazon.EC2.Model.SecurityGroupRuleDescription]@{
  "SecurityGroupRuleId" = $existingInboundRule.SecurityGroupRuleId
  "Description" = "Updated rule description"
}

Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription -GroupId
 $existingInboundRule.GroupId -SecurityGroupRuleDescription
 $ruleWithUpdatedDescription
```

Example 2: Removes the description of an existing ingress (inbound) security group rule (by omitting the parameter in the request).

```
$existingInboundRule = Get-EC2SecurityGroupRule -SecurityGroupRuleId
 "sgr-1234567890"
$ruleWithoutDescription = [Amazon.EC2.Model.SecurityGroupRuleDescription]@{
  "SecurityGroupRuleId" = $existingInboundRule.SecurityGroupRuleId
}

Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription -GroupId
 $existingInboundRule.GroupId -SecurityGroupRuleDescription
 $ruleWithoutDescription
```

- For API details, see UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for Amazon EC2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon EC2 with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon EC2 or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK
- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways using the CLI
- Get started using Amazon VPC using the CLI
- Get started with Transit Gateway using the CLI
- Get started using Amazon VPC IPAM using the CLI

Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
```

```
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
AWS resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways
to make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide
book, movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each
contain a Python web server.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across
several Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the
Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs
'server_startup_script.sh' when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the
`server.py` script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
```

```
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3,
_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName, zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
```

```
        var targetGroup = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGro
 protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port,
 ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for
 your default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
 Console.\n");
```

```
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port,
ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
```

```
                            "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service
fails, the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile
that contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
either a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo,
a deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not
for Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the
Auto Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load
balancer can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two
for the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");
```

```
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by
an auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler
start a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a
successful recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the
load balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance
typically takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBal
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGr
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupNa
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with
a specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to
the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
```

```
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await
 _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
  Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that
  runs after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and
  starts a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
  run.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to
create and attach to the profile.</param>
   /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
   public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
   {
       try
       {
           await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
           await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
               _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

           var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
           var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

           var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
               new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
           var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
           var launchTemplateResponse = await
_amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
               new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
               {
                   LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                   LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                   {
                       InstanceType = _instanceType,
                       ImageId = amiId,
                       IamInstanceProfile =
                           new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                           {
                               Name = _instanceProfileName
                           },
                       KeyName = _keyPairName,
                       UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                   }
               });
           return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
       {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z =>
z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability
zones.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new
 Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with
 size {groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
 exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
 permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
```

```
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId}
does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the
subnets.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
```

```
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await
_amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
```

```
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate
with the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association
for the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
```

```
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance
{instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance
{instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await
_amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for
{instanceId}. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string
groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
```

```
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the
calling computer.
```

```
   /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
   /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
   /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP
address while running this example.
   /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
   /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
   /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
   /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
   public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
   {
       var portIsOpen = false;
       foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
       {
           if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
           {
               foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
               {
                   var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                   if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                   {
                       portIsOpen = true;
                   }
               }

               if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
               {
                   portIsOpen = true;
               }

               if (!portIsOpen)
               {
                   Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                       "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0),
or to a prefix list ID.");
               }
               else
               {
                   break;
               }
```

```
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
 the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
```

```
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName,
 string targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
 loadBalancerName)
    {
```

```
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
```

```
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
 groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</
param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer
 exists.</param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
```

```
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });
```

```
                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
```

```
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
 describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
```

```
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn =
targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
```

```
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies, and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
```

```
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
 _amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await
 File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =

 JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
```

```
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances

- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-
prof-bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
```

```
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
"-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and
Manage a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your
account, we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);
```

```
        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user
input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
```

```
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to
create several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and
explore some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances
that each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

       System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
       in.nextLine();
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
       Database database = new Database();
       database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("""
               Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when
an instance starts.
               This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
               listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.
               For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
               run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.

               The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses
to assume a role that grants
```

```
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);

        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer. The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
```

```
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets,
targetGroupArn, lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul =
loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(),
StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group
for your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add
it automatically from this
```

```
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }

            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security
group are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the
load balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
```

```
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                       Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
```

```
                        While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                        """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
a static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are
still shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance
id value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId =
autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " +
profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
```

```
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on
for recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto
Scaling instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the
load balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
always returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
```

```
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.
                        """);
       autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

       System.out.println("""
               Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
               request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
               the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
               starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.
               Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
               can see the changing health check status until the new instance
is running and healthy.
               """);

       demoChoices(loadBalancer);
       System.out.println(
               "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
       paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

       demoChoices(loadBalancer);
       paramHelper.reset();
   }

   public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
       String[] actions = {
               "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
               "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
               "Go to the next part of the demo."
       };
       Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

       while (true) {
           System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
```

```
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode =
response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());
```

```
                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load
 balancer targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
 loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
 target.target().id(),
                                    target.target().port(),
 target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the
 health check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value
 between 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }

    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance
is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
    public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
                .builder()
                .instanceId(instanceId)
                .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
        System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
    }

    /**
     * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
     * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
     * When
     * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
     * server.
     */
    public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
            throws InterruptedException {
        // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
                .builder()
                .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure
'newInstanceProfileName' is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                              // name.
                .build();

        // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
        ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
```

```
                .builder()
                .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
                .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
                .build();

        try {
            getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
            // Handle the response as needed.
        } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
            // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with
profile %s.", profileAssociationId,
                newInstanceProfileName);
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
        boolean instReady = false;
        int tries = 0;

        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
```

```
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress)
{
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();
```

```
            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);

            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");
```

```
        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
```

```
                    .values("default")
                    .build();

            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse =
getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);

            for (SecurityGroup secGroup :
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " +
secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " +
ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
```

```
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to
be open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }

    /*
     * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
     * Scaling group.
     * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
     * instances
     * in the group.
     */
    public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
        try {
            AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                    .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                    .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
            System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
    public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {

        // Get availability zones.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
                .builder()
                .build();

        DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
        List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()

.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
        LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                .launchTemplateName(templateName)
                .version("$Default")
                .build();

        String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .launchTemplate(specification)
                .availabilityZones(zones)
                .maxSize(groupSize)
                .minSize(groupSize)
                .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
                .build();

        try {
            getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
        return zones;
    }

    public String getDefaultVPC() {
        // Define the filter.
        Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("is-default")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(defaultFilter)
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
```

```
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response =
getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }

    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();
```

```
        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
 InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
 ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
 getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to
 the policy.

 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM
 role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
```

```
                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance
 profile " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
    public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String
 targetGroupName) {
        DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
 DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                .names(targetGroupName)
                .build();

        DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
 getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

        DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
 DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()

 .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
                .build();

        DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
 getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
        return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
    }

    // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
    public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
        DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
        return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
    }
```

```
    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }
```

```
   // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer
   // endpoint.
   public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws
IOException, InterruptedException {
       boolean success = false;
       int retries = 3;
       CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

       // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
       HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
       try {
           while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
               // Execute the request and get the response.
               HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
               int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
               System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
               if (statusCode == 200) {
                   success = true;
               } else {
                   retries--;
                   System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                   TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
               }
           }

       } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getMessage());
       }

       System.out.println("Status.." + success);
       return success;
   }

   /*
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
    * how
    * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how
instance
    * health is checked.
    */
   public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId,
String targetGroupName) {
```

```
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String
targetGroupARN, String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
```

```
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to
become available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest =
CreateListenerRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;
```

```
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
 DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " +
 e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
```

```
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException
{
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                    .build())
                    .provisionedThroughput(
                            ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                    .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .build())
                    .build();
```

```
            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws
IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable =
enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
```

```
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-
response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
```

```
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances
  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
```

```
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes]
 [-v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
```

```
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
```

```
    }),
    new ScenarioAction(
      "handleConfirmDeployment",
      (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingTable",
      MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      await client.send(
        new CreateTableCommand({
          TableName: NAMES.tableName,
          ProvisionedThroughput: {
            ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
            WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
          },
          AttributeDefinitions: [
            {
              AttributeName: "MediaType",
              AttributeType: "S",
            },
            {
              AttributeName: "ItemId",
              AttributeType: "N",
            },
          ],
          KeySchema: [
            {
              AttributeName: "MediaType",
              KeyType: "HASH",
            },
            {
              AttributeName: "ItemId",
              KeyType: "RANGE",
            },
          ],
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "createdTable",
```

```
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item']
[] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );

    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatedTable",
    MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
      new CreateKeyPairCommand({
        KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
      }),
    );

    writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
  }),
```

```
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "createdKeyPair",
      MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingInstancePolicy",
      MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const {
        Policy: { Arn },
      } = await client.send(
        new CreatePolicyCommand({
          PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
          PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
          ),
        }),
      );
      state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingInstanceRole",
      MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      return client.send(
        new CreateRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
            join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
```

```
        ),
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
```

```
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  ...initParamsSteps,
  new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
  new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
```

```
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
```

```
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
```

```
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
      new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
        Protocol: "HTTP",
        Port: 80,
        HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
        HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
        HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
        HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
      }),
    );
    const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
    state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
    state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
    state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
```

```
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
      MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingLoadBalancer",
      MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
        new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
          Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
          Subnets: state.subnets,
        }),
      );
      state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
      state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
      await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
        { client },
        { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
      );
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
        .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
        .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingListener",
      MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
        .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
        .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const { Listeners } = await client.send(
        new CreateListenerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
          Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
```

```
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup}} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
```

```
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
```

```
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
```

```
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
```

```
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
```

```
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
```

```
    ...statusSteps,
    new ScenarioInput(
      "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
      MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
      { type: "confirm" },
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
      if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
        process.exit();
      } else {
        const client = new SSMClient({});
        state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
        await client.send(
          new PutParameterCommand({
            Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
            Value: state.badTableName,
            Overwrite: true,
            Type: "String",
          }),
        );
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        state.badTableName,
      ),
    ),
    ...statusSteps,
    new ScenarioInput(
      "staticResponseConfirmation",
      MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
      { type: "confirm" },
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
      if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
        process.exit();
      } else {
        const client = new SSMClient({});
        await client.send(
          new PutParameterCommand({
            Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
            Value: "static",
            Overwrite: true,
```

```
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-
scaling').Instance }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
```

```
    const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
      IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      ec2Client.send(
        new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
          AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
        }),
      ),
    );

    await ec2Client.send(
      new RebootInstancesCommand({
        InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
      }),
    );

    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
      const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
        new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
      );

      const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
        (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      );

      if (!instance) {
        throw new Error("Instance not found.");
      }
    });

    await ssmClient.send(
      new SendCommandCommand({
        InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
        DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
        Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
```

```
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation}} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
```

```
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
```

```
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
```

```
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
```

```
    }),
  );

  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
```

```
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "abort",
    (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
    try {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
    } catch (e) {
      c.deleteTableError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteTableError) {
      console.error(state.deleteTableError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.tableName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
      );
      unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
      console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
      "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
      NAMES.keyPairName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
```

```
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
```

```
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
```

```
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
```

```
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
```

```
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
```

```
    }),
    new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
      try {
        const client = new IAMClient({});
        await client.send(
          new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
            InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
            RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
      if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
        console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
        return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
          .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
          .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
      }
      return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }),
    new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
      try {
        const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
        const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
        await iamClient.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
            PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
      if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
        console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
        return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
          .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
```

```
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
```

```
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
```

```
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
```

```
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
```

```
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile

- CreateLaunchTemplate
- CreateListener
- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example,
 such as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
 DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
```

```
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient
service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability
Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)
```

```
        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port
 is open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access
 from this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
 {sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
 address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
 {sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging
 from your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
```

```
            lb_success =
self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )

    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as
sending requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint.")
                endpoint =
self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
```

```
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check
to update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a
non-existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()
```

```
        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
instances."
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()
```

```
        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace
it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance
replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation
service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
```

```
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up
 manually to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the
 demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
 are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM
 policies and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
```

```
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
 "destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
```

```
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
 definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/
{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
```

```
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies
 which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
 AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
```

```
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to
attach to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role
{role_name}.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is
assumed by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as
AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore to grant
```

```
                                        use of Systems Manager to send commands to
the instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn
```

```
    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance
{instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance
{instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the
profile is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new
profile. When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.
```

```
        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to
associate with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
```

```
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or
is not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
```

```
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
```

```
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling. The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts
a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a
permissions policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance
profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
```

```
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
```

```
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
```

```
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with
availability zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
```

```
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) ->
None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
to terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
```

```
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group
%s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
```

```
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
 configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
 group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
 to delete the group again."
                )
```

```
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs.
 "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
 permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
 parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]
['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass
```

```
    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress
from this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
public
        access when you're done.

        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value
that indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
```

```
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to
either this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist.
Please check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
```

```
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}'
on port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
```

```
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones
 {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
```

```
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group
specifies how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
times and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the
sensitivity of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
```

```
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing
target group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for
new ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.",
target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the
AWS Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
```

```
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with
any load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn}
still exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts
* delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.
```

```
        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}'
already exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in
this account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase
in the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer
```

```
    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests
to the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener
to the
                                load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load
balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
```

```
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer
{load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
```

```
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint,
retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not
found. "
```

```
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS
 region, and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
 correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
 account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary
 parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
```

```
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table
has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
such as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
"WriteCapacityUnits": 5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
```

```
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name,
data_file
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}:
{err}"
            )

    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters
 to drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency
 or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
 recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when
 a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False.
"
                    "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer

- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways using the CLI.
- Set up the necessary components including VPC, subnets, route tables, and NAT gateways.
- Configure security groups and IAM roles for proper access and security.
- Use CLI commands to automate the creation and configuration of these resources.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# VPC with Private Subnets and NAT Gateways (IMDSv2 Compliant Version)
# This script creates a VPC with public and private subnets in two Availability
 Zones,
# NAT gateways, an internet gateway, route tables, a VPC endpoint for S3,
# security groups, a launch template, an Auto Scaling group, and an Application
 Load Balancer.

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="vpc-private-subnets-nat.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Cleanup function to delete all created resources
cleanup_resources() {
  echo "Cleaning up resources..."

  # Delete Auto Scaling group if it exists
  if [ -n "${ASG_NAME:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Auto Scaling group: $ASG_NAME"
    aws autoscaling delete-auto-scaling-group --auto-scaling-group-name
 "$ASG_NAME" --force-delete
    echo "Waiting for Auto Scaling group to be deleted..."
    aws autoscaling wait auto-scaling-groups-deleted --auto-scaling-group-names
 "$ASG_NAME"
  fi

  # Delete load balancer if it exists
  if [ -n "${LB_ARN:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting load balancer: $LB_ARN"
    aws elbv2 delete-load-balancer --load-balancer-arn "$LB_ARN"
    # Wait for load balancer to be deleted
    sleep 30
  fi

  # Delete target group if it exists
  if [ -n "${TARGET_GROUP_ARN:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting target group: $TARGET_GROUP_ARN"
    aws elbv2 delete-target-group --target-group-arn "$TARGET_GROUP_ARN"
  fi

  # Delete launch template if it exists
```

```
if [ -n "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting launch template: $LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME"
  aws ec2 delete-launch-template --launch-template-name "$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME"
fi

# Delete NAT Gateways if they exist
if [ -n "${NAT_GW1_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting NAT Gateway 1: $NAT_GW1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-nat-gateway --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW1_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${NAT_GW2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting NAT Gateway 2: $NAT_GW2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-nat-gateway --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW2_ID"
fi

# Wait for NAT Gateways to be deleted
if [ -n "${NAT_GW1_ID:-}" ] || [ -n "${NAT_GW2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Waiting for NAT Gateways to be deleted..."
  sleep 60
fi

# Release Elastic IPs if they exist
if [ -n "${EIP1_ALLOC_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Releasing Elastic IP 1: $EIP1_ALLOC_ID"
  aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id "$EIP1_ALLOC_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${EIP2_ALLOC_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Releasing Elastic IP 2: $EIP2_ALLOC_ID"
  aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id "$EIP2_ALLOC_ID"
fi

# Delete VPC endpoint if it exists
if [ -n "${VPC_ENDPOINT_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting VPC endpoint: $VPC_ENDPOINT_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-vpc-endpoints --vpc-endpoint-ids "$VPC_ENDPOINT_ID"
fi

# Delete security groups if they exist
if [ -n "${APP_SG_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting application security group: $APP_SG_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$APP_SG_ID"
fi
```

```
  if [ -n "${LB_SG_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting load balancer security group: $LB_SG_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$LB_SG_ID"
  fi

  # Detach and delete Internet Gateway if it exists
  if [ -n "${IGW_ID:-}" ] && [ -n "${VPC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Detaching Internet Gateway: $IGW_ID from VPC: $VPC_ID"
    aws ec2 detach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID" --vpc-id
"$VPC_ID"
    echo "Deleting Internet Gateway: $IGW_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID"
  fi

  # Delete route table associations and route tables if they exist
  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating public route table from subnet 1: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID"
    aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating public route table from subnet 2: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID"
    aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating private route table 1: $PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID"
    aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating private route table 2: $PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID"
    aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_RT_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting public route table: $PUBLIC_RT_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT1_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting private route table 1: $PRIVATE_RT1_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID"
```

```
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT2_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting private route table 2: $PRIVATE_RT2_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID"
  fi

  # Delete subnets if they exist
  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting public subnet 1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting public subnet 2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting private subnet 1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting private subnet 2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID"
  fi

  # Delete VPC if it exists
  if [ -n "${VPC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting VPC: $VPC_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id "$VPC_ID"
  fi

  echo "Cleanup completed."
}

# Error handling function
handle_error() {
  echo "ERROR: $1"
  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  exit 1
}
```

```
# Function to check command success
check_command() {
  if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "$1"
  fi
}

# Generate a random identifier for resource names
RANDOM_ID=$(openssl rand -hex 4)
echo "Using random identifier: $RANDOM_ID"

# Create VPC
echo "Creating VPC..."
VPC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=ProductionVPC-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create VPC"

VPC_ID=$(echo "$VPC_RESULT" | jq -r '.Vpc.VpcId')
echo "VPC created with ID: $VPC_ID"

# Get Availability Zones
echo "Getting Availability Zones..."
AZ_RESULT=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query
 'AvailabilityZones[0:2].ZoneName' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get Availability Zones"

# Convert space-separated output to array
read -r -a AZS <<< "$AZ_RESULT"
AZ1=${AZS[0]}
AZ2=${AZS[1]}
echo "Using Availability Zones: $AZ1 and $AZ2"

# Create subnets
echo "Creating subnets..."
PUBLIC_SUBNET1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ1" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PublicSubnet1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create public subnet 1"
PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

PRIVATE_SUBNET1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.1.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ1" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateSubnet1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
```

```
check_command "Failed to create private subnet 1"
PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

PUBLIC_SUBNET2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.2.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ2" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PublicSubnet2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create public subnet 2"
PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

PRIVATE_SUBNET2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.3.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ2" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateSubnet2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private subnet 2"
PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

echo "Subnets created with IDs:"
echo "Public Subnet 1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID"
echo "Public Subnet 2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID"

# Create Internet Gateway
echo "Creating Internet Gateway..."
IGW_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-internet-gateway --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=internet-gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=ProductionIGW-
$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create Internet Gateway"
IGW_ID=$(echo "$IGW_RESULT" | jq -r '.InternetGateway.InternetGatewayId')
echo "Internet Gateway created with ID: $IGW_ID"

# Attach Internet Gateway to VPC
echo "Attaching Internet Gateway to VPC..."
aws ec2 attach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID" --vpc-id
 "$VPC_ID"
check_command "Failed to attach Internet Gateway to VPC"

# Create route tables
echo "Creating route tables..."
PUBLIC_RT_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-
specifications "ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PublicRouteTable-
$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create public route table"
PUBLIC_RT_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_RT_RESULT" | jq -r '.RouteTable.RouteTableId')
```

```
PRIVATE_RT1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-
id "$VPC_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=route-
table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateRouteTable1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private route table 1"
PRIVATE_RT1_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT1_RESULT" | jq -r '.RouteTable.RouteTableId')

PRIVATE_RT2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-
id "$VPC_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=route-
table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateRouteTable2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private route table 2"
PRIVATE_RT2_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT2_RESULT" | jq -r '.RouteTable.RouteTableId')

echo "Route tables created with IDs:"
echo "Public Route Table: $PUBLIC_RT_ID"
echo "Private Route Table 1: $PRIVATE_RT1_ID"
echo "Private Route Table 2: $PRIVATE_RT2_ID"

# Add route to Internet Gateway in public route table
echo "Adding route to Internet Gateway in public route table..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --gateway-id "$IGW_ID"
check_command "Failed to add route to Internet Gateway"

# Associate subnets with route tables
echo "Associating subnets with route tables..."
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PUBLIC_RT_ID" --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate public subnet 1 with route table"
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')

PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PUBLIC_RT_ID" --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate public subnet 2 with route table"
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')

PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID" --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate private subnet 1 with route table"
PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')

PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID" --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate private subnet 2 with route table"
PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')
```

```
echo "Route table associations created with IDs:"
echo "Public Subnet 1 Association: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID"
echo "Public Subnet 2 Association: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 1 Association: $PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 2 Association: $PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID"

# Create NAT Gateways
echo "Creating NAT Gateways..."

# Allocate Elastic IPs for NAT Gateways
echo "Allocating Elastic IPs for NAT Gateways..."
EIP1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 allocate-address --domain vpc --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=elastic-ip,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT1-EIP-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to allocate Elastic IP 1"
EIP1_ALLOC_ID=$(echo "$EIP1_RESULT" | jq -r '.AllocationId')

EIP2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 allocate-address --domain vpc --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=elastic-ip,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT2-EIP-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to allocate Elastic IP 2"
EIP2_ALLOC_ID=$(echo "$EIP2_RESULT" | jq -r '.AllocationId')

echo "Elastic IPs allocated with IDs:"
echo "EIP 1 Allocation ID: $EIP1_ALLOC_ID"
echo "EIP 2 Allocation ID: $EIP2_ALLOC_ID"

# Create NAT Gateways
echo "Creating NAT Gateway in public subnet 1..."
NAT_GW1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-nat-gateway --subnet-id
 "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID" --allocation-id "$EIP1_ALLOC_ID" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=natgateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT-Gateway1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create NAT Gateway 1"
NAT_GW1_ID=$(echo "$NAT_GW1_RESULT" | jq -r '.NatGateway.NatGatewayId')

echo "Creating NAT Gateway in public subnet 2..."
NAT_GW2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-nat-gateway --subnet-id
 "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID" --allocation-id "$EIP2_ALLOC_ID" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=natgateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT-Gateway2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create NAT Gateway 2"
NAT_GW2_ID=$(echo "$NAT_GW2_RESULT" | jq -r '.NatGateway.NatGatewayId')

echo "NAT Gateways created with IDs:"
echo "NAT Gateway 1: $NAT_GW1_ID"
echo "NAT Gateway 2: $NAT_GW2_ID"
```

```
# Wait for NAT Gateways to be available
echo "Waiting for NAT Gateways to be available..."
aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-available --nat-gateway-ids "$NAT_GW1_ID"
check_command "NAT Gateway 1 did not become available"
aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-available --nat-gateway-ids "$NAT_GW2_ID"
check_command "NAT Gateway 2 did not become available"
echo "NAT Gateways are now available"

# Add routes to NAT Gateways in private route tables
echo "Adding routes to NAT Gateways in private route tables..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW1_ID"
check_command "Failed to add route to NAT Gateway 1"

aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW2_ID"
check_command "Failed to add route to NAT Gateway 2"

# Create VPC Endpoint for S3
echo "Creating VPC Endpoint for S3..."
S3_PREFIX_LIST_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-prefix-lists --filters "Name=prefix-
list-name,Values=com.amazonaws.$(aws configure get region).s3" --query
 'PrefixLists[0].PrefixListId' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get S3 prefix list ID"

VPC_ENDPOINT_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
service-name "com.amazonaws.$(aws configure get region).s3" --route-table-ids
 "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID" "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=vpc-
endpoint,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=S3-Endpoint-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create VPC endpoint for S3"
VPC_ENDPOINT_ID=$(echo "$VPC_ENDPOINT_RESULT" | jq -r
 '.VpcEndpoint.VpcEndpointId')
echo "VPC Endpoint created with ID: $VPC_ENDPOINT_ID"

# Create security groups
echo "Creating security groups..."
LB_SG_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-security-group --group-name "LoadBalancerSG-
$RANDOM_ID" --description "Security group for the load balancer"
 --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=security-
group,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=LoadBalancerSG-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create load balancer security group"
LB_SG_ID=$(echo "$LB_SG_RESULT" | jq -r '.GroupId')
```

```
# Allow inbound HTTP traffic from anywhere to the load balancer
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$LB_SG_ID" --protocol tcp --
port 80 --cidr 0.0.0.0/0
check_command "Failed to authorize ingress to load balancer security group"

APP_SG_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-security-group --group-name "AppServerSG-
$RANDOM_ID" --description "Security group for the application servers"
 --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=security-
group,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=AppServerSG-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create application server security group"
APP_SG_ID=$(echo "$APP_SG_RESULT" | jq -r '.GroupId')

# Allow inbound HTTP traffic from the load balancer security group to the
 application servers
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$APP_SG_ID" --protocol tcp
 --port 80 --source-group "$LB_SG_ID"
check_command "Failed to authorize ingress to application server security group"

echo "Security groups created with IDs:"
echo "Load Balancer Security Group: $LB_SG_ID"
echo "Application Server Security Group: $APP_SG_ID"

# Create a launch template
echo "Creating launch template..."

# Create user data script with IMDSv2 support
cat > user-data.sh << 'EOF'
#!/bin/bash
yum update -y
yum install -y httpd
systemctl start httpd
systemctl enable httpd

# Use IMDSv2 with session token
TOKEN=$(curl -X PUT "http://169.254.169.254/latest/api/token" -H "X-aws-ec2-
metadata-token-ttl-seconds: 21600")
AZ=$(curl -H "X-aws-ec2-metadata-token: $TOKEN" -s http://169.254.169.254/latest/
meta-data/placement/availability-zone)
HOSTNAME=$(hostname -f)

echo "<h1>Hello from $HOSTNAME in $AZ</h1>" > /var/www/html/index.html
EOF

# Encode user data
```

```
USER_DATA=$(base64 -w 0 user-data.sh)

# Get latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI
echo "Getting latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI..."
AMI_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-images --owners amazon --filters
 "Name=name,Values=amzn2-ami-hvm-*-x86_64-gp2" "Name=state,Values=available" --
query 'sort_by(Images, &CreationDate)[-1].ImageId' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI"
echo "Using AMI: $AMI_ID"

# Create launch template with IMDSv2 required
LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME="AppServerTemplate-$RANDOM_ID"
echo "Creating launch template: $LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME"

aws ec2 create-launch-template \
  --launch-template-name "$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME" \
  --version-description "Initial version" \
  --tag-specifications "ResourceType=launch-template,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=
$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}]" \
  --launch-template-data "{
    \"NetworkInterfaces\": [{
      \"DeviceIndex\": 0,
      \"Groups\": [\"$APP_SG_ID\"],
      \"DeleteOnTermination\": true
    }],
    \"ImageId\": \"$AMI_ID\",
    \"InstanceType\": \"t3.micro\",
    \"UserData\": \"$USER_DATA\",
    \"MetadataOptions\": {
      \"HttpTokens\": \"required\",
      \"HttpEndpoint\": \"enabled\"
    },
    \"TagSpecifications\": [{
      \"ResourceType\": \"instance\",
      \"Tags\": [{
        \"Key\": \"Name\",
        \"Value\": \"AppServer-$RANDOM_ID\"
      }]
    }]
  }"
check_command "Failed to create launch template"

# Create target group
echo "Creating target group..."
```

```
TARGET_GROUP_NAME="AppTargetGroup-$RANDOM_ID"
TARGET_GROUP_RESULT=$(aws elbv2 create-target-group \
  --name "$TARGET_GROUP_NAME" \
  --protocol HTTP \
  --port 80 \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --target-type instance \
  --health-check-protocol HTTP \
  --health-check-path "/" \
  --health-check-port traffic-port)
check_command "Failed to create target group"
TARGET_GROUP_ARN=$(echo "$TARGET_GROUP_RESULT" | jq -r
 '.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn')
echo "Target group created with ARN: $TARGET_GROUP_ARN"

# Create load balancer
echo "Creating load balancer..."
LB_NAME="AppLoadBalancer-$RANDOM_ID"
LB_RESULT=$(aws elbv2 create-load-balancer \
  --name "$LB_NAME" \
  --subnets "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID" "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID" \
  --security-groups "$LB_SG_ID" \
  --tags "Key=Name,Value=$LB_NAME")
check_command "Failed to create load balancer"
LB_ARN=$(echo "$LB_RESULT" | jq -r '.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn')
echo "Load balancer created with ARN: $LB_ARN"

# Wait for load balancer to be active
echo "Waiting for load balancer to be active..."
aws elbv2 wait load-balancer-available --load-balancer-arns "$LB_ARN"
check_command "Load balancer did not become available"

# Create listener
echo "Creating listener..."
LISTENER_RESULT=$(aws elbv2 create-listener \
  --load-balancer-arn "$LB_ARN" \
  --protocol HTTP \
  --port 80 \
  --default-actions "Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=$TARGET_GROUP_ARN")
check_command "Failed to create listener"
LISTENER_ARN=$(echo "$LISTENER_RESULT" | jq -r '.Listeners[0].ListenerArn')
echo "Listener created with ARN: $LISTENER_ARN"

# Create Auto Scaling group
```

```
echo "Creating Auto Scaling group..."
ASG_NAME="AppAutoScalingGroup-$RANDOM_ID"
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
  --auto-scaling-group-name "$ASG_NAME" \
  --launch-template "LaunchTemplateName=$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME,Version=\$Latest" \
  --min-size 2 \
  --max-size 4 \
  --desired-capacity 2 \
  --vpc-zone-identifier "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID,$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID" \
  --target-group-arns "$TARGET_GROUP_ARN" \
  --health-check-type ELB \
  --health-check-grace-period 300 \
  --tags "Key=Name,Value=AppServer-$RANDOM_ID,PropagateAtLaunch=true"
check_command "Failed to create Auto Scaling group"
echo "Auto Scaling group created with name: $ASG_NAME"

# Get load balancer DNS name
LB_DNS_NAME=$(aws elbv2 describe-load-balancers --load-balancer-arns "$LB_ARN" --
query 'LoadBalancers[0].DNSName' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get load balancer DNS name"

echo ""
echo "============================================"
echo "DEPLOYMENT COMPLETE"
echo "============================================"
echo "VPC ID: $VPC_ID"
echo "Public Subnet 1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID (AZ: $AZ1)"
echo "Private Subnet 1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID (AZ: $AZ1)"
echo "Public Subnet 2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID (AZ: $AZ2)"
echo "Private Subnet 2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID (AZ: $AZ2)"
echo "NAT Gateway 1: $NAT_GW1_ID"
echo "NAT Gateway 2: $NAT_GW2_ID"
echo "Load Balancer: $LB_NAME"
echo "Auto Scaling Group: $ASG_NAME"
echo ""
echo "Your application will be available at: http://$LB_DNS_NAME"
echo "It may take a few minutes for the instances to launch and pass health
 checks."
echo ""

# Add health check monitoring
echo "============================================"
echo "MONITORING INSTANCE HEALTH AND LOAD BALANCER"
echo "============================================"
```

```
echo "Waiting for instances to launch and pass health checks..."
echo "This may take 3-5 minutes. Checking every 30 seconds..."

# Monitor instance health and load balancer accessibility
MAX_ATTEMPTS=10
ATTEMPT=1
HEALTHY_INSTANCES=0

while [ $ATTEMPT -le $MAX_ATTEMPTS ] && [ $HEALTHY_INSTANCES -lt 2 ]; do
  echo "Check attempt $ATTEMPT of $MAX_ATTEMPTS..."

  # Check Auto Scaling group instances
  echo "Checking Auto Scaling group instances..."
  ASG_INSTANCES=$(aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups --auto-
scaling-group-names "$ASG_NAME" --query 'AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[*].
[InstanceId,HealthStatus]' --output json)
  echo "ASG Instances status:"
  echo "$ASG_INSTANCES" | jq -r '.[] | "Instance: \(.[0]), Health: \(.[1])"'

  # Check target group health
  echo "Checking target group health..."
  TARGET_HEALTH=$(aws elbv2 describe-target-health --target-group-arn
 "$TARGET_GROUP_ARN" --output json)
  echo "Target health status:"
  echo "$TARGET_HEALTH" | jq -r '.TargetHealthDescriptions[] | "Instance:
 \(.Target.Id), State: \(.TargetHealth.State), Reason: \(.TargetHealth.Reason //
 "N/A"), Description: \(.TargetHealth.Description // "N/A")"'

  # Count healthy instances
  HEALTHY_INSTANCES=$(echo "$TARGET_HEALTH" | jq -r '[.TargetHealthDescriptions[]
 | select(.TargetHealth.State=="healthy")] | length')
  echo "Number of healthy instances: $HEALTHY_INSTANCES of 2 expected"

  # Check if we have healthy instances
  if [ $HEALTHY_INSTANCES -ge 2 ]; then
    echo "All instances are healthy!"

    # Test load balancer accessibility
    echo "Testing load balancer accessibility..."
    HTTP_STATUS=$(curl -s -o /dev/null -w "%{http_code}" "http://$LB_DNS_NAME")

    if [ "$HTTP_STATUS" = "200" ]; then
      echo "Load balancer is accessible! HTTP Status: $HTTP_STATUS"
      echo "You can access your application at: http://$LB_DNS_NAME"
```

```
      # Try to get the content to verify IMDSv2 is working
      echo "Fetching content to verify IMDSv2 functionality..."
      CONTENT=$(curl -s "http://$LB_DNS_NAME")
      echo "Response from server:"
      echo "$CONTENT"

      # Check if the content contains the expected pattern
      if [[ "$CONTENT" == *"Hello from"* && "$CONTENT" == *"in"* ]]; then
        echo "IMDSv2 is working correctly! The instance was able to access
 metadata using the token-based approach."
      else
        echo "Warning: Content doesn't match expected pattern. IMDSv2
 functionality could not be verified."
      fi

      break
    else
      echo "Load balancer returned HTTP status: $HTTP_STATUS"
      echo "Will try again in 30 seconds..."
    fi
  else
    echo "Waiting for instances to become healthy..."
    echo "Will check again in 30 seconds..."
  fi

  ATTEMPT=$((ATTEMPT+1))

  if [ $ATTEMPT -le $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
    sleep 30
  fi
done

if [ $HEALTHY_INSTANCES -lt 2 ]; then
  echo "Warning: Not all instances are healthy after maximum attempts."
  echo "You may need to wait longer or check for configuration issues."
fi

echo "To test your application, run:"
echo "curl http://$LB_DNS_NAME"
echo ""
echo "============================================"
echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
echo "============================================"
```

```
echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE

if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
  cleanup_resources
  echo "All resources have been deleted."
else
  echo "Resources will not be deleted. You can manually delete them later."
  echo "To delete resources, run this script again and choose to clean up."
fi
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateRouteTable
  - AttachInternetGateway
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateInternetGateway
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateNatGateway
  - CreateRoute
  - CreateRouteTable
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - CreateSubnet
  - CreateVpc
  - CreateVpcEndpoint
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInternetGateway
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteNatGateway
  - DeleteRouteTable
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DeleteSubnet

- DeleteTargetGroup
- DeleteVpc
- DeleteVpcEndpoints
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeImages
- DescribePrefixLists
- DetachInternetGateway
- ReleaseAddress

Get started using Amazon VPC using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up your account
- Create and configure a VPC
- Configure your network
- Configure security
- Deploy resources
- Test and verify
- Clean up resources
- Consider production implications
- Consider security implications

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# VPC Creation Script
# This script creates a VPC with public and private subnets, internet gateway,
 NAT gateway, and security groups

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="vpc_creation.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
  echo "ERROR: $1"
  echo "Resources created before error:"
  for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"
  do
    echo "- $resource"
  done

  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  exit 1
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup_resources() {
  echo "Cleaning up resources in reverse order..."

  # Reverse the array to delete in reverse order of creation
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--))
  do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    resource_type=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d':' -f1)
    resource_id=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d':' -f2)

    case "$resource_type" in
      "INSTANCE")
        echo "Terminating EC2 instance: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 terminate-instances --instance-ids "$resource_id" || echo "Failed
 to terminate instance: $resource_id"
        # Wait for instance to terminate
        echo "Waiting for instance to terminate..."
        aws ec2 wait instance-terminated --instance-ids "$resource_id" || echo
 "Failed to wait for instance termination: $resource_id"
```

```
        ;;
      "KEY_PAIR")
        echo "Deleting key pair: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-key-pair --key-name "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to
 delete key pair: $resource_id"
        # Remove the .pem file if it exists
        if [ -f "${resource_id}.pem" ]; then
          rm -f "${resource_id}.pem"
        fi
        ;;
      "NAT_GATEWAY")
        echo "Deleting NAT Gateway: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-nat-gateway --nat-gateway-id "$resource_id" || echo
 "Failed to delete NAT Gateway: $resource_id"
        # NAT Gateway deletion takes time, wait for it to complete
        echo "Waiting for NAT Gateway to be deleted..."
        aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-deleted --nat-gateway-ids "$resource_id" || echo
 "Failed to wait for NAT Gateway deletion: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "EIP")
        echo "Releasing Elastic IP: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to
 release Elastic IP: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION")
        echo "Disassociating Route Table: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$resource_id" || echo
 "Failed to disassociate Route Table: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "ROUTE_TABLE")
        echo "Deleting Route Table: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$resource_id" || echo
 "Failed to delete Route Table: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "INTERNET_GATEWAY")
        echo "Detaching Internet Gateway: $resource_id from VPC: $VPC_ID"
        aws ec2 detach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$resource_id" --
vpc-id "$VPC_ID" || echo "Failed to detach Internet Gateway: $resource_id"
        echo "Deleting Internet Gateway: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$resource_id" ||
 echo "Failed to delete Internet Gateway: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "SECURITY_GROUP")
        echo "Deleting Security Group: $resource_id"
```

```
        aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed
 to delete Security Group: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "SUBNET")
        echo "Deleting Subnet: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to
 delete Subnet: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "VPC")
        echo "Deleting VPC: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to delete VPC:
 $resource_id"
        ;;
    esac
  done
}

# Initialize array to track created resources
CREATED_RESOURCES=()

echo "Starting VPC creation script at $(date)"

# Verify AWS CLI configuration
echo "Verifying AWS CLI configuration..."
aws configure list || handle_error "AWS CLI is not properly configured"

# Verify identity and permissions
echo "Verifying identity and permissions..."
if ! aws sts get-caller-identity; then
  echo "ERROR: Unable to verify AWS identity. This could be due to:"
  echo "  - Expired credentials"
  echo "  - Missing or invalid AWS credentials"
  echo "  - Insufficient permissions"
  echo ""
  echo "Please run 'aws configure' to update your credentials or check your IAM
 permissions."
  exit 1
fi

# Create VPC
echo "Creating VPC with CIDR block 10.0.0.0/16..."
VPC_ID=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyVPC}]' --query 'Vpc.VpcId' --output
 text)
```

```
if [ -z "$VPC_ID" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create VPC"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("VPC:$VPC_ID")
echo "VPC created with ID: $VPC_ID"

# Enable DNS support and hostnames
echo "Enabling DNS support and hostnames for VPC..."
aws ec2 modify-vpc-attribute --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --enable-dns-support ||
 handle_error "Failed to enable DNS support"
aws ec2 modify-vpc-attribute --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --enable-dns-hostnames ||
 handle_error "Failed to enable DNS hostnames"

# Get available Availability Zones
echo "Getting available Availability Zones..."
AZ1=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query 'AvailabilityZones[0].ZoneName'
 --output text)
AZ2=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query 'AvailabilityZones[1].ZoneName'
 --output text)

if [ -z "$AZ1" ] || [ -z "$AZ2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to get Availability Zones"
fi

echo "Using Availability Zones: $AZ1 and $AZ2"

# Create public subnets
echo "Creating public subnet in $AZ1..."
PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ1" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Public-Subnet-
AZ1}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create public subnet in AZ1"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1")
```

```
echo "Public subnet created in $AZ1 with ID: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1"

echo "Creating public subnet in $AZ2..."
PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.1.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ2" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Public-Subnet-
AZ2}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create public subnet in AZ2"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2")
echo "Public subnet created in $AZ2 with ID: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2"

# Create private subnets
echo "Creating private subnet in $AZ1..."
PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.2.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ1" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Private-Subnet-
AZ1}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create private subnet in AZ1"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1")
echo "Private subnet created in $AZ1 with ID: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1"

echo "Creating private subnet in $AZ2..."
PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.3.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ2" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Private-Subnet-
AZ2}]' \
```

```
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create private subnet in AZ2"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2")
echo "Private subnet created in $AZ2 with ID: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2"

# Create Internet Gateway
echo "Creating Internet Gateway..."
IGW_ID=$(aws ec2 create-internet-gateway \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=internet-
gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyIGW}]' \
  --query 'InternetGateway.InternetGatewayId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$IGW_ID" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create Internet Gateway"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("INTERNET_GATEWAY:$IGW_ID")
echo "Internet Gateway created with ID: $IGW_ID"

# Attach Internet Gateway to VPC
echo "Attaching Internet Gateway to VPC..."
aws ec2 attach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID" --vpc-id
 "$VPC_ID" || handle_error "Failed to attach Internet Gateway to VPC"

# Create public route table
echo "Creating public route table..."
PUBLIC_RT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Public-
RT}]' \
  --query 'RouteTable.RouteTableId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_RT" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create public route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE:$PUBLIC_RT")
```

```
echo "Public route table created with ID: $PUBLIC_RT"

# Add route to Internet Gateway
echo "Adding route to Internet Gateway in public route table..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --gateway-id "$IGW_ID" || handle_error "Failed to add route to
 Internet Gateway"

# Associate public subnets with public route table
echo "Associating public subnet in $AZ1 with public route table..."
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_1=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT"
 --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate public subnet in AZ1 with public route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_1")

echo "Associating public subnet in $AZ2 with public route table..."
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_2=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT"
 --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate public subnet in AZ2 with public route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_2")

# Create private route table
echo "Creating private route table..."
PRIVATE_RT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Private-
RT}]' \
  --query 'RouteTable.RouteTableId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_RT" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create private route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE:$PRIVATE_RT")
echo "Private route table created with ID: $PRIVATE_RT"
```

```
# Associate private subnets with private route table
echo "Associating private subnet in $AZ1 with private route table..."
PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_1=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT"
 --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate private subnet in AZ1 with private route
 table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_1")

echo "Associating private subnet in $AZ2 with private route table..."
PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_2=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT"
 --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate private subnet in AZ2 with private route
 table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_2")

# Allocate Elastic IP for NAT Gateway
echo "Allocating Elastic IP for NAT Gateway..."
EIP_ALLOC=$(aws ec2 allocate-address --domain vpc --query 'AllocationId' --output
 text)

if [ -z "$EIP_ALLOC" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to allocate Elastic IP"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("EIP:$EIP_ALLOC")
echo "Elastic IP allocated with ID: $EIP_ALLOC"

# Create NAT Gateway
echo "Creating NAT Gateway in public subnet in $AZ1..."
NAT_GW=$(aws ec2 create-nat-gateway \
  --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" \
  --allocation-id "$EIP_ALLOC" \
  --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=natgateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyNATGateway}]' \
  --query 'NatGateway.NatGatewayId' \
```

```
  --output text)

if [ -z "$NAT_GW" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create NAT Gateway"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("NAT_GATEWAY:$NAT_GW")
echo "NAT Gateway created with ID: $NAT_GW"

# Wait for NAT Gateway to be available
echo "Waiting for NAT Gateway to be available..."
aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-available --nat-gateway-ids "$NAT_GW" || handle_error
 "NAT Gateway did not become available"

# Add route to NAT Gateway in private route table
echo "Adding route to NAT Gateway in private route table..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW" || handle_error "Failed to add route to NAT
 Gateway"

# Enable auto-assign public IP for instances in public subnets
echo "Enabling auto-assign public IP for instances in public subnet in $AZ1..."
aws ec2 modify-subnet-attribute --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" --map-public-
ip-on-launch || handle_error "Failed to enable auto-assign public IP for public
 subnet in AZ1"

echo "Enabling auto-assign public IP for instances in public subnet in $AZ2..."
aws ec2 modify-subnet-attribute --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2" --map-public-
ip-on-launch || handle_error "Failed to enable auto-assign public IP for public
 subnet in AZ2"

# Create security group for web servers
echo "Creating security group for web servers..."
WEB_SG=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
  --group-name "WebServerSG-$(date +%s)" \
  --description "Security group for web servers" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --query 'GroupId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$WEB_SG" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create security group for web servers"
fi
```

```
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SECURITY_GROUP:$WEB_SG")
echo "Security group for web servers created with ID: $WEB_SG"

# Allow HTTP and HTTPS traffic
echo "Allowing HTTP traffic to web servers security group..."
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$WEB_SG" --protocol tcp --
port 80 --cidr 0.0.0.0/0 || handle_error "Failed to allow HTTP traffic"

echo "Allowing HTTPS traffic to web servers security group..."
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$WEB_SG" --protocol tcp --
port 443 --cidr 0.0.0.0/0 || handle_error "Failed to allow HTTPS traffic"

# Note: In a production environment, you should restrict the source IP ranges for
 security
echo "NOTE: In a production environment, you should restrict the source IP ranges
 for HTTP and HTTPS traffic"

# Create security group for database servers
echo "Creating security group for database servers..."
DB_SG=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
  --group-name "DBServerSG-$(date +%s)" \
  --description "Security group for database servers" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --query 'GroupId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$DB_SG" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create security group for database servers"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SECURITY_GROUP:$DB_SG")
echo "Security group for database servers created with ID: $DB_SG"

# Allow MySQL/Aurora traffic from web servers only
echo "Allowing MySQL/Aurora traffic from web servers to database servers..."
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$DB_SG" --protocol tcp --
port 3306 --source-group "$WEB_SG" || handle_error "Failed to allow MySQL/Aurora
 traffic"

# Verify VPC configuration
echo "Verifying VPC configuration..."
echo "VPC:"
aws ec2 describe-vpcs --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" || handle_error "Failed to describe VPC"
```

```
echo "Subnets:"
aws ec2 describe-subnets --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" || handle_error
 "Failed to describe subnets"

echo "Route tables:"
aws ec2 describe-route-tables --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" ||
 handle_error "Failed to describe route tables"

echo "Internet gateway:"
aws ec2 describe-internet-gateways --filters "Name=attachment.vpc-id,Values=
$VPC_ID" || handle_error "Failed to describe Internet Gateway"

echo "NAT gateway:"
aws ec2 describe-nat-gateways --filter "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" ||
 handle_error "Failed to describe NAT Gateway"

echo "Security groups:"
aws ec2 describe-security-groups --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" ||
 handle_error "Failed to describe security groups"

echo ""
# Summary of created resources
echo "VPC creation completed successfully!"
echo "Summary of created resources:"
echo "- VPC: $VPC_ID"
echo "- Public Subnet in $AZ1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1"
echo "- Public Subnet in $AZ2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2"
echo "- Private Subnet in $AZ1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1"
echo "- Private Subnet in $AZ2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2"
echo "- Internet Gateway: $IGW_ID"
echo "- Public Route Table: $PUBLIC_RT"
echo "- Private Route Table: $PRIVATE_RT"
echo "- Elastic IP: $EIP_ALLOC"
echo "- NAT Gateway: $NAT_GW"
echo "- Web Servers Security Group: $WEB_SG"
echo "- Database Servers Security Group: $DB_SG"

# Deploy EC2 instances
echo ""
echo "Deploying EC2 instances..."

# Create key pair for SSH access
KEY_NAME="vpc-tutorial-key-$(date +%s)"
echo "Creating key pair $KEY_NAME..."
```

```
aws ec2 create-key-pair --key-name "$KEY_NAME" --query 'KeyMaterial' --output
 text > "${KEY_NAME}.pem" || handle_error "Failed to create key pair"
chmod 400 "${KEY_NAME}.pem"
echo "Key pair saved to ${KEY_NAME}.pem"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("KEY_PAIR:$KEY_NAME")

# Get latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI
echo "Getting latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI..."
AMI_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-images --owners amazon \
  --filters "Name=name,Values=amzn2-ami-hvm-*-x86_64-gp2"
 "Name=state,Values=available" \
  --query "sort_by(Images, &CreationDate)[-1].ImageId" --output text) ||
 handle_error "Failed to get AMI"
echo "Using AMI: $AMI_ID"

# Launch web server in public subnet
echo "Launching web server in public subnet..."
WEB_INSTANCE=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
  --image-id "$AMI_ID" \
  --count 1 \
  --instance-type t2.micro \
  --key-name "$KEY_NAME" \
  --security-group-ids "$WEB_SG" \
  --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" \
  --associate-public-ip-address \
  --user-data '#!/bin/bash
    yum update -y
    yum install -y httpd
    systemctl start httpd
    systemctl enable httpd
    echo "<h1>Hello from $(hostname -f) in the public subnet</h1>" > /var/www/
html/index.html' \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=instance,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=WebServer}]'
 \
  --query 'Instances[0].InstanceId' \
  --output text) || handle_error "Failed to launch web server"
echo "Web server instance created with ID: $WEB_INSTANCE"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("INSTANCE:$WEB_INSTANCE")

# Wait for web server to be running
echo "Waiting for web server to be running..."
aws ec2 wait instance-running --instance-ids "$WEB_INSTANCE"

# Get web server public IP
```

```
WEB_PUBLIC_IP=$(aws ec2 describe-instances --instance-ids "$WEB_INSTANCE" \
  --query 'Reservations[0].Instances[0].PublicIpAddress' --output text)
echo "Web server public IP: $WEB_PUBLIC_IP"
echo "You can access the web server at: http://$WEB_PUBLIC_IP"

# Launch database server in private subnet
echo "Launching database server in private subnet..."
DB_INSTANCE=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
  --image-id "$AMI_ID" \
  --count 1 \
  --instance-type t2.micro \
  --key-name "$KEY_NAME" \
  --security-group-ids "$DB_SG" \
  --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1" \
  --user-data '#!/bin/bash
    yum update -y
    yum install -y mariadb-server
    systemctl start mariadb
    systemctl enable mariadb' \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=instance,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=DBServer}]' \
  --query 'Instances[0].InstanceId' \
  --output text) || handle_error "Failed to launch database server"
echo "Database server instance created with ID: $DB_INSTANCE"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("INSTANCE:$DB_INSTANCE")

# Wait for database server to be running
echo "Waiting for database server to be running..."
aws ec2 wait instance-running --instance-ids "$DB_INSTANCE"

# Get database server private IP
DB_PRIVATE_IP=$(aws ec2 describe-instances --instance-ids "$DB_INSTANCE" \
  --query 'Reservations[0].Instances[0].PrivateIpAddress' --output text)
echo "Database server private IP: $DB_PRIVATE_IP"

echo "EC2 instances deployed successfully!"
echo "- Web Server (Public): $WEB_INSTANCE ($WEB_PUBLIC_IP)"
echo "- Database Server (Private): $DB_INSTANCE ($DB_PRIVATE_IP)"
echo ""
echo "Note: To connect to the web server: ssh -i ${KEY_NAME}.pem ec2-user@
$WEB_PUBLIC_IP"
echo "To connect to the database server, you must first connect to the web
 server, then use it as a bastion host."
echo "==========================================="
echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
```

```
echo "==========================================="
echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE
if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
  echo "Cleaning up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  echo "All resources have been cleaned up."
else
  echo "Resources will not be cleaned up. You can manually clean them up later."
fi

echo "Script completed at $(date)"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateRouteTable
  - AttachInternetGateway
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateInternetGateway
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateNatGateway
  - CreateRoute
  - CreateRouteTable
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - CreateSubnet
  - CreateVpc
  - DeleteInternetGateway
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteNatGateway
  - DeleteRouteTable
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DeleteSubnet
  - DeleteVpc
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones

- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeInternetGateways
- DescribeNatGateways
- DescribeRouteTables
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeVpcs
- DetachInternetGateway
- DisassociateRouteTable
- ModifySubnetAttribute
- ModifyVpcAttribute
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- TerminateInstances

Get started with Transit Gateway using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a transit gateway with DNS support and default route table settings
- Wait for the transit gateway to become available
- Attach two VPCs to the transit gateway using subnets
- Wait for VPC attachments to become available
- Add routes between VPCs through the transit gateway
- Test connectivity between VPC resources
- Clean up resources including routes, attachments, and transit gateway

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Amazon VPC Transit Gateway CLI Script
# This script demonstrates how to create a transit gateway and connect two VPCs
# Modified to work with older AWS CLI versions that don't support transit gateway
 wait commands

# Error handling
set -e
LOG_FILE="transit-gateway-tutorial.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Function to wait for transit gateway to be available
wait_for_tgw() {
  local tgw_id=$1
  echo "Waiting for Transit Gateway $tgw_id to become available..."

  while true; do
    status=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateways --transit-gateway-ids "$tgw_id" --
query "TransitGateways[0].State" --output text)
    echo "Current status: $status"

    if [ "$status" = "available" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway is now available"
      break
    fi

    echo "Waiting for transit gateway to become available. Current state:
 $status"
    sleep 10
  done
}
```

```
# Function to wait for transit gateway attachment to be available
wait_for_tgw_attachment() {
  local attachment_id=$1
  echo "Waiting for Transit Gateway Attachment $attachment_id to become
 available..."

  while true; do
    status=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateway-vpc-attachments --transit-gateway-
attachment-ids "$attachment_id" --query "TransitGatewayVpcAttachments[0].State"
 --output text)
    echo "Current status: $status"

    if [ "$status" = "available" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway Attachment is now available"
      break
    fi

    echo "Waiting for transit gateway attachment to become available. Current
 state: $status"
    sleep 10
  done
}

# Function to wait for transit gateway attachment to be deleted
wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted() {
  local attachment_id=$1
  echo "Waiting for Transit Gateway Attachment $attachment_id to be deleted..."

  while true; do
    # Check if the attachment still exists
    count=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateway-vpc-attachments --filters
 "Name=transit-gateway-attachment-id,Values=$attachment_id" --query
 "length(TransitGatewayVpcAttachments)" --output text)

    if [ "$count" = "0" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway Attachment has been deleted"
      break
    fi

    status=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateway-vpc-attachments --transit-gateway-
attachment-ids "$attachment_id" --query "TransitGatewayVpcAttachments[0].State"
 --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "deleted")
```

```
    if [ "$status" = "deleted" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway Attachment has been deleted"
      break
    fi

    echo "Waiting for transit gateway attachment to be deleted. Current state:
 $status"
    sleep 10
  done
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
  echo "Error occurred. Cleaning up resources..."

  # Delete resources in reverse order
  if [ ! -z "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment 1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID" || true
    wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID" || true
  fi

  if [ ! -z "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment 2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID" || true
    wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID" || true
  fi

  if [ ! -z "$TGW_ID" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID" || true
  fi

  exit 1
}

# Set up trap for error handling
trap cleanup ERR

echo "=== Amazon VPC Transit Gateway Tutorial ==="
echo "This script will create a transit gateway and connect two VPCs"
echo ""
```

```
# Get a valid availability zone dynamically
echo "Getting available AZ in current region..."
AZ=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query "AvailabilityZones[0].ZoneName"
 --output text)
echo "Using availability zone: $AZ"

# Check if VPCs exist
echo "Checking for existing VPCs..."
VPC1_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-vpcs --filters "Name=tag:Name,Values=VPC1" --query
 "Vpcs[0].VpcId" --output text)
VPC2_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-vpcs --filters "Name=tag:Name,Values=VPC2" --query
 "Vpcs[0].VpcId" --output text)

if [ "$VPC1_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$VPC1_ID" ]; then
  echo "Creating VPC1..."
  VPC1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.1.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1}]' --query Vpc.VpcId --output text)
  echo "Created VPC1: $VPC1_ID"

  # Create a subnet in VPC1
  echo "Creating subnet in VPC1..."
  SUBNET1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC1_ID" --cidr-
block 10.1.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1-Subnet}]' --query
 Subnet.SubnetId --output text)
  echo "Created subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
else
  echo "Using existing VPC1: $VPC1_ID"
  SUBNET1_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-subnets --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC1_ID"
 --query "Subnets[0].SubnetId" --output text)
  if [ "$SUBNET1_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$SUBNET1_ID" ]; then
    echo "Creating subnet in VPC1..."
    SUBNET1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC1_ID" --cidr-
block 10.1.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1-Subnet}]' --query
 Subnet.SubnetId --output text)
    echo "Created subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
  else
    echo "Using existing subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
  fi
fi

if [ "$VPC2_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$VPC2_ID" ]; then
```

```
  echo "Creating VPC2..."
  VPC2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.2.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2}]' --query Vpc.VpcId --output text)
  echo "Created VPC2: $VPC2_ID"

  # Create a subnet in VPC2
  echo "Creating subnet in VPC2..."
  SUBNET2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC2_ID" --cidr-
block 10.2.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2-Subnet}]' --query
 Subnet.SubnetId --output text)
  echo "Created subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
else
  echo "Using existing VPC2: $VPC2_ID"
  SUBNET2_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-subnets --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC2_ID"
 --query "Subnets[0].SubnetId" --output text)
  if [ "$SUBNET2_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$SUBNET2_ID" ]; then
    echo "Creating subnet in VPC2..."
    SUBNET2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC2_ID" --cidr-
block 10.2.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2-Subnet}]' --query
 Subnet.SubnetId --output text)
    echo "Created subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
  else
    echo "Using existing subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
  fi
fi

# Get route tables for each VPC
RTB1_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-route-tables --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC1_ID"
 --query "RouteTables[0].RouteTableId" --output text)
RTB2_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-route-tables --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC2_ID"
 --query "RouteTables[0].RouteTableId" --output text)

echo "Route table for VPC1: $RTB1_ID"
echo "Route table for VPC2: $RTB2_ID"

# Step 1: Create the transit gateway
echo "Creating Transit Gateway..."
TGW_ID=$(aws ec2 create-transit-gateway \
  --description "My Transit Gateway" \
  --options
 AmazonSideAsn=64512,AutoAcceptSharedAttachments=disable,DefaultRouteTableAssociation=ena
 \
```

```
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=transit-
gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyTransitGateway}]' \
  --query TransitGateway.TransitGatewayId \
  --output text)

echo "Created Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"

# Wait for the transit gateway to become available
wait_for_tgw "$TGW_ID"

# Step 2: Attach VPCs to the transit gateway
echo "Attaching VPC1 to Transit Gateway..."
TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment \
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC1_ID" \
  --subnet-ids "$SUBNET1_ID" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=transit-gateway-
attachment,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1-Attachment}]' \
  --query TransitGatewayVpcAttachment.TransitGatewayAttachmentId \
  --output text)

echo "Created Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"

echo "Attaching VPC2 to Transit Gateway..."
TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment \
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC2_ID" \
  --subnet-ids "$SUBNET2_ID" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=transit-gateway-
attachment,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2-Attachment}]' \
  --query TransitGatewayVpcAttachment.TransitGatewayAttachmentId \
  --output text)

echo "Created Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

# Wait for the attachments to become available
wait_for_tgw_attachment "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
wait_for_tgw_attachment "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

# Step 3: Add routes between the transit gateway and VPCs
echo "Adding route from VPC1 to VPC2 via Transit Gateway..."
aws ec2 create-route \
  --route-table-id "$RTB1_ID" \
  --destination-cidr-block 10.2.0.0/16 \
```

```
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID"

echo "Adding route from VPC2 to VPC1 via Transit Gateway..."
aws ec2 create-route \
  --route-table-id "$RTB2_ID" \
  --destination-cidr-block 10.1.0.0/16 \
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID"

echo "Routes added successfully"

# Step 4: Display information for testing
echo ""
echo "=== Transit Gateway Setup Complete ==="
echo "Transit Gateway ID: $TGW_ID"
echo "VPC1 ID: $VPC1_ID"
echo "VPC2 ID: $VPC2_ID"
echo ""
echo "To test connectivity:"
echo "1. Launch an EC2 instance in each VPC"
echo "2. Configure security groups to allow ICMP traffic"
echo "3. Connect to one instance and ping the other instance's private IP"
echo ""

# Prompt user before cleanup
read -p "Press Enter to view created resources, or Ctrl+C to exit without
 cleanup..."

echo ""
echo "=== Resources Created ==="
echo "Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"
echo "VPC1: $VPC1_ID"
echo "VPC2: $VPC2_ID"
echo "Subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
echo "Subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
echo "Transit Gateway Attachment for VPC1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
echo "Transit Gateway Attachment for VPC2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"
echo ""

read -p "Do you want to clean up these resources? (y/n): " CLEANUP_CONFIRM
if [[ $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "y" || $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "Y" ]]; then
  echo "Starting cleanup..."

  # Delete routes
  echo "Deleting routes..."
```

```
  aws ec2 delete-route --route-table-id "$RTB1_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 10.2.0.0/16
  aws ec2 delete-route --route-table-id "$RTB2_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 10.1.0.0/16

  # Delete transit gateway attachments
  echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"

  echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

  # Wait for attachments to be deleted
  wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
  wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

  # Delete transit gateway
  echo "Deleting Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID"

  echo "Cleanup completed successfully"
else
  echo "Skipping cleanup. Resources will continue to incur charges until manually
 deleted."
fi

echo "Tutorial completed. See $LOG_FILE for detailed logs."
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateRoute
  - CreateSubnet
  - CreateTransitGateway
  - CreateTransitGatewayVpcAttachment
  - CreateVpc
  - DeleteRoute
  - DeleteTransitGateway
  - DeleteTransitGatewayVpcAttachment

- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeRouteTables
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTransitGatewayAttachments
- DescribeTransitGatewayVpcAttachments
- DescribeTransitGateways
- DescribeVpcs

Get started using Amazon VPC IPAM using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up and configure Amazon VPC IP Address Manager (IPAM) using the CLI.
- Create an IPAM with operating regions (e.g., us-east-1, us-west-2).
- Retrieve the private scope ID for the IPAM.
- Create a hierarchical structure of IPv4 pools (top-level, regional, and development pools).
- Provision CIDR blocks to each pool (e.g., 10.0.0.0/8, 10.0.0.0/16, 10.0.0.0/24).
- Create a VPC using a CIDR allocated from an IPAM pool.
- Verify IPAM pool allocations and VPC creation.
- Troubleshoot common issues like permission errors, CIDR allocation failures, and dependency violations.
- Clean up IPAM resources (VPC, pools, CIDRs, and IPAM) to avoid unnecessary charges.
- Explore next steps for advanced IPAM features.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# IPAM Getting Started CLI Script - Version 7
# This script creates an IPAM, creates a hierarchy of IP address pools, and
 allocates a CIDR to a VPC
# Fixed to correctly identify the private scope ID, wait for resources to be
 available, add locale to development pool,
# use the correct parameter names for VPC creation, and wait for CIDR
 provisioning to complete

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="ipam_script.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

echo "Starting IPAM setup script at $(date)"
echo "All commands and outputs will be logged to $LOG_FILE"

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
    echo "ERROR: $1"
    echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
    cleanup_resources
    exit 1
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup_resources() {
    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "RESOURCES CREATED:"
    echo "============================================"

    if [ -n "$VPC_ID" ]; then
        echo "VPC: $VPC_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$DEV_POOL_ID" ]; then
        echo "Development Pool: $DEV_POOL_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" ]; then
        echo "Regional Pool: $REGIONAL_POOL_ID"
```

```
    fi

    if [ -n "$TOP_POOL_ID" ]; then
        echo "Top-level Pool: $TOP_POOL_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$IPAM_ID" ]; then
        echo "IPAM: $IPAM_ID"
    fi

    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
    echo "============================================"
    echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
    read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE

    if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
        echo "Starting cleanup..."

        # Delete resources in reverse order of creation to handle dependencies

        if [ -n "$VPC_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting VPC: $VPC_ID"
            aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" || echo "Failed to delete VPC"
            echo "Waiting for VPC to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$DEV_POOL_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting Development Pool: $DEV_POOL_ID"
            # First deprovision any CIDRs from the pool
            CIDRS=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" --
query 'IpamPoolCidrs[].Cidr' --output text)
            for CIDR in $CIDRS; do
                echo "Deprovisioning CIDR $CIDR from Development Pool"
                aws ec2 deprovision-ipam-pool-cidr --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID"
 --cidr "$CIDR" || echo "Failed to deprovision CIDR $CIDR"
                sleep 5
            done
            aws ec2 delete-ipam-pool --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" || echo
 "Failed to delete Development Pool"
            echo "Waiting for Development Pool to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
```

```
        fi

        if [ -n "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting Regional Pool: $REGIONAL_POOL_ID"
            # First deprovision any CIDRs from the pool
            CIDRS=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id
 "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" --query 'IpamPoolCidrs[].Cidr' --output text)
            for CIDR in $CIDRS; do
                echo "Deprovisioning CIDR $CIDR from Regional Pool"
                aws ec2 deprovision-ipam-pool-cidr --ipam-pool-id
 "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" --cidr "$CIDR" || echo "Failed to deprovision CIDR $CIDR"
                sleep 5
            done
            aws ec2 delete-ipam-pool --ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" || echo
 "Failed to delete Regional Pool"
            echo "Waiting for Regional Pool to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$TOP_POOL_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting Top-level Pool: $TOP_POOL_ID"
            # First deprovision any CIDRs from the pool
            CIDRS=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" --
query 'IpamPoolCidrs[].Cidr' --output text)
            for CIDR in $CIDRS; do
                echo "Deprovisioning CIDR $CIDR from Top-level Pool"
                aws ec2 deprovision-ipam-pool-cidr --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID"
 --cidr "$CIDR" || echo "Failed to deprovision CIDR $CIDR"
                sleep 5
            done
            aws ec2 delete-ipam-pool --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" || echo
 "Failed to delete Top-level Pool"
            echo "Waiting for Top-level Pool to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$IPAM_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting IPAM: $IPAM_ID"
            aws ec2 delete-ipam --ipam-id "$IPAM_ID" || echo "Failed to delete
 IPAM"
        fi

        echo "Cleanup completed."
    else
```

```
        echo "Cleanup skipped. Resources will remain in your account."
    fi
}

# Function to wait for a pool to be in the 'create-complete' state
wait_for_pool() {
    local pool_id=$1
    local max_attempts=30
    local attempt=1
    local state=""

    echo "Waiting for pool $pool_id to be available..."

    while [ $attempt -le $max_attempts ]; do
        state=$(aws ec2 describe-ipam-pools --ipam-pool-ids "$pool_id" --query
 'IpamPools[0].State' --output text)

        if [ "$state" = "create-complete" ]; then
            echo "Pool $pool_id is now available (state: $state)"
            return 0
        fi

        echo "Attempt $attempt/$max_attempts: Pool $pool_id is in state: $state.
 Waiting..."
        sleep 10
        ((attempt++))
    done

    echo "Timed out waiting for pool $pool_id to be available"
    return 1
}

# Function to wait for a CIDR to be fully provisioned
wait_for_cidr_provisioning() {
    local pool_id=$1
    local cidr=$2
    local max_attempts=30
    local attempt=1
    local state=""

    echo "Waiting for CIDR $cidr to be fully provisioned in pool $pool_id..."

    while [ $attempt -le $max_attempts ]; do
```

```
        state=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$pool_id" --query
 "IpamPoolCidrs[?Cidr=='$cidr'].State" --output text)

        if [ "$state" = "provisioned" ]; then
            echo "CIDR $cidr is now fully provisioned (state: $state)"
            return 0
        fi

        echo "Attempt $attempt/$max_attempts: CIDR $cidr is in state: $state.
 Waiting..."
        sleep 10
        ((attempt++))
    done

    echo "Timed out waiting for CIDR $cidr to be provisioned"
    return 1
}

# Step 1: Create an IPAM
echo "Creating IPAM..."
IPAM_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam \
    --description "My IPAM" \
    --operating-regions RegionName=us-east-1 RegionName=us-west-2)

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create IPAM"
fi

IPAM_ID=$(echo "$IPAM_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamId": "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "IPAM created with ID: $IPAM_ID"

# Wait for IPAM to be created and available
echo "Waiting for IPAM to be available..."
sleep 20

# Step 2: Get the IPAM Scope ID - FIXED to correctly identify the private scope
echo "Getting IPAM Scope ID..."
SCOPE_RESULT=$(aws ec2 describe-ipams --ipam-id "$IPAM_ID")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to get IPAM details"
fi

# Extract the private scope ID directly from the IPAM details
```

```
PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID=$(echo "$SCOPE_RESULT" | grep -o '"PrivateDefaultScopeId":
 "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "Private Scope ID: $PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID"

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to get Private Scope ID"
fi

# Step 3: Create a Top-Level IPv4 Pool
echo "Creating Top-level IPv4 Pool..."
TOP_POOL_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam-pool \
    --ipam-scope-id "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" \
    --address-family ipv4 \
    --description "Top-level pool")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Top-level Pool"
fi

TOP_POOL_ID=$(echo "$TOP_POOL_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamPoolId": "[^"]*' | cut -
d'"' -f4)
echo "Top-level Pool created with ID: $TOP_POOL_ID"

# Wait for the top-level pool to be available
if ! wait_for_pool "$TOP_POOL_ID"; then
    handle_error "Top-level Pool did not become available in time"
fi

# Provision CIDR to the top-level pool
echo "Provisioning CIDR to Top-level Pool..."
TOP_POOL_CIDR="10.0.0.0/8"
PROVISION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 provision-ipam-pool-cidr \
    --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" \
    --cidr "$TOP_POOL_CIDR")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to provision CIDR to Top-level Pool"
fi

echo "$PROVISION_RESULT"

# Wait for the CIDR to be fully provisioned
if ! wait_for_cidr_provisioning "$TOP_POOL_ID" "$TOP_POOL_CIDR"; then
    handle_error "CIDR provisioning to Top-level Pool did not complete in time"
```

```
fi

# Step 4: Create a Regional IPv4 Pool
echo "Creating Regional IPv4 Pool..."
REGIONAL_POOL_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam-pool \
    --ipam-scope-id "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" \
    --source-ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" \
    --locale us-east-1 \
    --address-family ipv4 \
    --description "Regional pool in us-east-1")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Regional Pool"
fi

REGIONAL_POOL_ID=$(echo "$REGIONAL_POOL_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamPoolId": "[^"]*'
 | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "Regional Pool created with ID: $REGIONAL_POOL_ID"

# Wait for the regional pool to be available
if ! wait_for_pool "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID"; then
    handle_error "Regional Pool did not become available in time"
fi

# Provision CIDR to the regional pool
echo "Provisioning CIDR to Regional Pool..."
REGIONAL_POOL_CIDR="10.0.0.0/16"
PROVISION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 provision-ipam-pool-cidr \
    --ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" \
    --cidr "$REGIONAL_POOL_CIDR")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to provision CIDR to Regional Pool"
fi

echo "$PROVISION_RESULT"

# Wait for the CIDR to be fully provisioned
if ! wait_for_cidr_provisioning "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" "$REGIONAL_POOL_CIDR"; then
    handle_error "CIDR provisioning to Regional Pool did not complete in time"
fi

# Step 5: Create a Development IPv4 Pool - FIXED to include locale
echo "Creating Development IPv4 Pool..."
```

```
DEV_POOL_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam-pool \
    --ipam-scope-id "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" \
    --source-ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" \
    --locale us-east-1 \
    --address-family ipv4 \
    --description "Development pool")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Development Pool"
fi

DEV_POOL_ID=$(echo "$DEV_POOL_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamPoolId": "[^"]*' | cut -
d'"' -f4)
echo "Development Pool created with ID: $DEV_POOL_ID"

# Wait for the development pool to be available
if ! wait_for_pool "$DEV_POOL_ID"; then
    handle_error "Development Pool did not become available in time"
fi

# Provision CIDR to the development pool
echo "Provisioning CIDR to Development Pool..."
DEV_POOL_CIDR="10.0.0.0/24"
PROVISION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 provision-ipam-pool-cidr \
    --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" \
    --cidr "$DEV_POOL_CIDR")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to provision CIDR to Development Pool"
fi

echo "$PROVISION_RESULT"

# Wait for the CIDR to be fully provisioned
if ! wait_for_cidr_provisioning "$DEV_POOL_ID" "$DEV_POOL_CIDR"; then
    handle_error "CIDR provisioning to Development Pool did not complete in time"
fi

# Step 6: Create a VPC Using an IPAM Pool CIDR - FIXED to use the correct
 parameter names and a smaller netmask length
echo "Creating VPC using IPAM Pool CIDR..."
VPC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-vpc \
    --ipv4-ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" \
    --ipv4-netmask-length 26 \
```

```
    --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=IPAM-VPC}]')

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create VPC"
fi

VPC_ID=$(echo "$VPC_RESULT" | grep -o '"VpcId": "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "VPC created with ID: $VPC_ID"

# Step 7: Verify the IPAM Pool Allocation
echo "Verifying IPAM Pool Allocation..."
ALLOCATION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-allocations \
    --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to verify IPAM Pool Allocation"
fi

echo "IPAM Pool Allocation verified:"
echo "$ALLOCATION_RESULT" | grep -A 5 "Allocations"

echo ""
echo "IPAM setup completed successfully!"
echo ""

# Prompt for cleanup
cleanup_resources

echo "Script completed at $(date)"
exit 0
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateIpam
  - CreateIpamPool
  - CreateVpc
  - DeleteIpam
  - DeleteIpamPool
  - DeleteVpc
  - DeprovisionIpamPoolCidr

- DescribeIpamPools
- DescribeIpams
- DescribeVpcs
- GetIpamPoolAllocations
- GetIpamPoolCidrs
- ProvisionIpamPoolCidr

Code examples for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Elastic Container Registry with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon ECR User Guide** – More information about Amazon ECR.
- **Amazon ECR API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon ECR actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon ECR

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon ECR.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.EcrClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.ListImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.paginators.ListImagesIterable;

public class HelloECR {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:    <repositoryName>

            Where:
               repositoryName - The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String repoName = args[0];
        EcrClient ecrClient = EcrClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        listImageTags(ecrClient, repoName);
    }
    public static void listImageTags(EcrClient ecrClient, String repoName){
        ListImagesRequest listImagesPaginator = ListImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();
```

```
        ListImagesIterable imagesIterable =
 ecrClient.listImagesPaginator(listImagesPaginator);
        imagesIterable.stream()
            .flatMap(r -> r.imageIds().stream())
            .forEach(image -> System.out.println("The docker image tag is: "
 +image.imageTag()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.EcrClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.ListImagesRequest
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
            Usage: <repositoryName>

            Where:
               repositoryName - The name of the Amazon ECR repository.

    """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val repoName = args[0]
```

```
    listImageTags(repoName)
}

suspend fun listImageTags(repoName: String?) {
    val listImages =
        ListImagesRequest {
            repositoryName = repoName
        }

    EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
        val imageResponse = ecrClient.listImages(listImages)
        imageResponse.imageIds?.forEach { imageId ->
            println("Image tag: ${imageId.imageTag}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
import argparse
from boto3 import client


def hello_ecr(ecr_client: client, repository_name: str) -> None:
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Elastic Container
 Registry (Amazon ECR)
    client and list the images in a repository.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.
```

```
    :param ecr_client: A Boto3 Amazon ECR Client object. This object wraps
                            the low-level Amazon ECR service API.
    :param repository_name: The name of an Amazon ECR repository in your account.
    """
    print(
        f"Hello, Amazon ECR! Let's list some images in the repository
 '{repository_name}':\n"
    )
    paginator = ecr_client.get_paginator("list_images")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        repositoryName=repository_name, PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10}
    )

    image_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for schedule in page["imageIds"]:
            image_names.append(schedule["imageTag"])

    print(f"{len(image_names)} image(s) retrieved.")
    for schedule_name in image_names:
        print(f"\t{schedule_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(description="Run hello Amazon ECR.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "--repository-name",
        type=str,
        help="the name of an Amazon ECR repository in your account.",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    hello_ecr(boto3.client("ecr"), args.repository_name)
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon ECR

- Learn the basics of Amazon ECR with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateRepository with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteRepository with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeRepositories with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetAuthorizationToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetRepositoryPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PushImageCmd with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutLifeCyclePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SetRepositoryPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartLifecyclePolicyPreview with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Elastic Container Registry with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon ECR
- Learn the basics of Amazon ECR with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateRepository with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteRepository with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeRepositories with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetAuthorizationToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetRepositoryPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PushImageCmd with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutLifeCyclePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use SetRepositoryPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartLifecyclePolicyPreview with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon ECR

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon ECR.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.EcrClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.ListImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.paginators.ListImagesIterable;

public class HelloECR {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:    <repositoryName>

            Where:
               repositoryName - The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String repoName = args[0];
        EcrClient ecrClient = EcrClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
            .build();

        listImageTags(ecrClient, repoName);
    }
    public static void listImageTags(EcrClient ecrClient, String repoName){
        ListImagesRequest listImagesPaginator = ListImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        ListImagesIterable imagesIterable =
 ecrClient.listImagesPaginator(listImagesPaginator);
        imagesIterable.stream()
            .flatMap(r -> r.imageIds().stream())
            .forEach(image -> System.out.println("The docker image tag is: "
 +image.imageTag()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.EcrClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.ListImagesRequest
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
            Usage: <repositoryName>

            Where:
               repositoryName - The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
```

```
    """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val repoName = args[0]
    listImageTags(repoName)
}

suspend fun listImageTags(repoName: String?) {
    val listImages =
        ListImagesRequest {
            repositoryName = repoName
        }

    EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
        val imageResponse = ecrClient.listImages(listImages)
        imageResponse.imageIds?.forEach { imageId ->
            println("Image tag: ${imageId.imageTag}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
import argparse
from boto3 import client
```

```
def hello_ecr(ecr_client: client, repository_name: str) -> None:
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Elastic Container
 Registry (Amazon ECR)
    client and list the images in a repository.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ecr_client: A Boto3 Amazon ECR Client object. This object wraps
                           the low-level Amazon ECR service API.
    :param repository_name: The name of an Amazon ECR repository in your account.
    """
    print(
        f"Hello, Amazon ECR! Let's list some images in the repository
 '{repository_name}':\n"
    )
    paginator = ecr_client.get_paginator("list_images")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        repositoryName=repository_name, PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10}
    )

    image_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for schedule in page["imageIds"]:
            image_names.append(schedule["imageTag"])

    print(f"{len(image_names)} image(s) retrieved.")
    for schedule_name in image_names:
        print(f"\t{schedule_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(description="Run hello Amazon ECR.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "--repository-name",
        type=str,
        help="the name of an Amazon ECR repository in your account.",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    hello_ecr(boto3.client("ecr"), args.repository_name)
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon ECR with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an Amazon ECR repository.
- Set repository policies.
- Retrieve repository URIs.
- Get Amazon ECR authorization tokens.
- Set lifecycle policies for Amazon ECR repositories.
- Push a Docker image to an Amazon ECR repository.
- Verify the existence of an image in an Amazon ECR repository.
- List Amazon ECR repositories for your account and get details about them.
- Delete Amazon ECR repositories.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon ECR features.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException;

import java.util.Scanner;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This Java code example requires an IAM Role that has permissions to interact
 with the Amazon ECR service.
 *
 * To create an IAM role, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/id_roles_create.html
 *
 * This Java scenario example requires a local docker image named echo-text.
 Without a local image,
 * this Java program will not successfully run. For more information including
 how to create the local
 * image, see:
 *
 * /scenarios/basics/ecr/README
 *
 */
public class ECRScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <iamRoleARN> <accountId>

            Where:
               iamRoleARN - The IAM role ARN that has the necessary permissions
 to access and manage the Amazon ECR repository.
               accountId - Your AWS account number.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        ECRActions ecrActions = new ECRActions();
        String iamRole = args[0];
```

```
        String accountId = args[1];
        String localImageName;

        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
             The Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is a fully-managed
Docker container registry
             service provided by AWS. It allows developers and organizations to
securely
             store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
             ECR provides a simple and scalable way to manage container images
throughout their lifecycle,
             from building and testing to production deployment.\s

             The `EcrAsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x provides
a set of methods to
             programmatically interact with the Amazon ECR service. This allows
developers to
             automate the storage, retrieval, and management of container images
as part of their application
             deployment pipelines. With ECR, teams can focus on building and
deploying their
             applications without having to worry about the underlying
infrastructure required to
             host and manage a container registry.

            This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for
this service.
            Let's get started...

            You have two choices:
            1 - Run the entire program.
            2 - Delete an existing Amazon ECR repository named echo-text (created
from a previous execution of
            this program that did not complete).
            """);

        while (true) {
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("1")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("2")) {
```

```
                String repoName = "echo-text";
                ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName);
                return;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("""
           1. Create an ECR repository.

           The first task is to ensure we have a local Docker image named echo-
text.
           If this image exists, then an Amazon ECR repository is created.

           An ECR repository is a private Docker container repository provided
           by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is a managed service that makes it
 easy
           to store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.\s
           """ );

        // Ensure that a local docker image named echo-text exists.
        boolean doesExist = ecrActions.isEchoTextImagePresent();
        String repoName;
        if (!doesExist){
            System.out.println("The local image named echo-text does not exist");
            return;
        } else {
            localImageName = "echo-text";
            repoName = "echo-text";
        }

        try {
            String repoArn = ecrActions.createECRRepository(repoName);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the ECR repository is " + repoArn);

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid repository name: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("An error occurred while creating the ECR
repository: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        2. Set an ECR repository policy.

        Setting an ECR repository policy using the `setRepositoryPolicy` function
is crucial for maintaining
        the security and integrity of your container images. The repository
policy allows you to
        define specific rules and restrictions for accessing and managing the
images stored within your ECR
        repository.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            ecrActions.setRepoPolicy(repoName, iamRole);

        } catch (RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid repository name: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while creating the ECR
repository: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        3. Display ECR repository policy.

        Now we will retrieve the ECR policy to ensure it was successfully set.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
```

```
            String policyText = ecrActions.getRepoPolicy(repoName);
            System.out.println("Policy Text:");
            System.out.println(policyText);

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while creating the ECR
repository: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        4. Retrieve an ECR authorization token.

        You need an authorization token to securely access and interact with the
Amazon ECR registry.
        The `getAuthorizationToken` method of the `EcrAsyncClient` is responsible
for securely accessing
        and interacting with an Amazon ECR repository. This operation is
responsible for obtaining a
        valid authorization token, which is required to authenticate your
requests to the ECR service.

        Without a valid authorization token, you would not be able to perform any
operations on the
        ECR repository, such as pushing, pulling, or managing your Docker images.

        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
             ecrActions.getAuthToken();

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while retrieving the
authorization token: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        5. Get the ECR Repository URI.

        The URI  of an Amazon ECR repository is important. When you want to
deploy a container image to
        a container orchestration platform like Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service
(EKS)
        or Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS), you need to specify the full
image URI,
        which includes the ECR repository URI. This allows the container runtime
to pull the
        correct container image from the ECR repository.
       """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            ecrActions.getRepositoryURI(repoName);

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while retrieving the URI: " +
e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
            6. Set an ECR Lifecycle Policy.

            An ECR Lifecycle Policy is used to manage the lifecycle of Docker
images stored in your ECR repositories.
            These policies allow you to automatically remove old or unused Docker
images from your repositories,
            freeing up storage space and reducing costs.
```

```
            This example policy helps to maintain the size and efficiency of the
container registry
            by automatically removing older and potentially unused images,
ensuring that the
            storage is optimized and the registry remains up-to-date.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            ecrActions.setLifeCyclePolicy(repoName);

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while setting the lifecycle
policy: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        7. Push a docker image to the Amazon ECR Repository.

        The `pushImageCmd()` method pushes a local Docker image to an Amazon ECR
repository.
        It sets up the Docker client by connecting to the local Docker host using
the default port.
        It then retrieves the authorization token for the ECR repository by
making a call to the AWS SDK.

        The method uses the authorization token to create an `AuthConfig` object,
which is used to authenticate
        the Docker client when pushing the image. Finally, the method tags the
Docker image with the specified
        repository name and image tag, and then pushes the image to the ECR
repository using the Docker client.
        If the push operation is successful, the method prints a message
indicating that the image was pushed to ECR.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            ecrActions.pushDockerImage(repoName, localImageName);

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("An error occurred while pushing a local Docker
 image to Amazon ECR: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Verify if the image is in the ECR Repository.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            ecrActions.verifyImage(repoName, localImageName);

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. As an optional step, you can interact with the
 image in Amazon ECR by using the CLI.");
        System.out.println("Would you like to view instructions on how to use the
 CLI to run the image? (y/n)");
        String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            String instructions = """
            1. Authenticate with ECR - Before you can pull the image from Amazon
 ECR, you need to authenticate with the registry. You can do this using the AWS
 CLI:

                aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-1 | docker login --
username AWS --password-stdin %s.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com

            2. Describe the image using this command:

               aws ecr describe-images --repository-name %s --image-ids imageTag=
%s

            3. Run the Docker container and view the output using this command:
```

```
              docker run --rm %s.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/%s:%s
            """;

            instructions = String.format(instructions, accountId, repoName,
localImageName, accountId, repoName, localImageName);
            System.out.println(instructions);
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Delete the ECR Repository.");
        System.out.println(
        """
        If the repository isn't empty, you must either delete the contents of the
repository
        or use the force option (used in this scenario) to delete the repository
and have Amazon ECR delete all of its contents
        on your behalf.
        """);
        System.out.println("Would you like to delete the Amazon ECR Repository?
(y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            System.out.println("You selected to delete the AWS ECR resources.");

            try {
                ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName);

            } catch (EcrException e) {
                System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " +
e.getMessage());
                return;
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                System.err.println("An error occurred while deleting the Docker
image: " + e.getMessage());
                e.printStackTrace();
                return;
            }
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("This concludes the Amazon ECR SDK scenario");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
    }

   private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
       while (true) {
           System.out.println("");
           System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
           String input = scanner.nextLine();

           if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
               System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
               System.out.println("");
               break;
           } else {
               // Handle invalid input.
               System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
          }
       }
   }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon ECR SDK methods.

```
import com.github.dockerjava.api.DockerClient;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.exception.DockerClientException;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.model.AuthConfig;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.model.Image;
import com.github.dockerjava.core.DockerClientBuilder;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.EcrAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.AuthorizationData;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.CreateRepositoryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.CreateRepositoryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DeleteRepositoryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DeleteRepositoryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeImagesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeRepositoriesRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeRepositoriesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.GetAuthorizationTokenResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.GetRepositoryPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.GetRepositoryPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.ImageIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.Repository;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.SetRepositoryPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.SetRepositoryPolicyResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.command.DockerCmdExecFactory;
import com.github.dockerjava.netty.NettyDockerCmdExecFactory;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

public class ECRActions {
    private static EcrAsyncClient ecrClient;

    private static DockerClient dockerClient;

    private static Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(ECRActions.class);

    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an
 empty string if the operation failed.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException     If repository name is invalid.
     * @throws RuntimeException             if an error occurs while creating the
 repository.
     */
    public String createECRRepository(String repoName) {
        if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
 empty");
```

```
        }

        CreateRepositoryRequest request = CreateRepositoryRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createRepository(request);
        try {
            CreateRepositoryResponse result = response.join();
            if (result != null) {
                System.out.println("The " + repoName + " repository was created
successfully.");
                return result.repository().repositoryArn();
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected response type");
            }
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            Throwable cause = e.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof EcrException ex) {
                if
("RepositoryAlreadyExistsException".equals(ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode())) {
                    System.out.println("The Amazon ECR repository already exists,
moving on...");
                    DescribeRepositoriesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
                        .repositoryNames(repoName)
                        .build();
                    DescribeRepositoriesResponse describeResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(describeRequest).join();
                    return
describeResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryArn();
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(ex);
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
```

```
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the repository name is null or empty.
     * @throws EcrException if there is an error deleting the repository.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs during the deletion
process.
     */
    public void deleteECRRepository(String repoName) {
        if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        DeleteRepositoryRequest repositoryRequest =
DeleteRepositoryRequest.builder()
            .force(true)
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteRepository(repositoryRequest);
        response.whenComplete((deleteRepositoryResponse, ex) -> {
            if (deleteRepositoryResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted the " +
repoName + " repository");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete
        response.join();
    }



    private static DockerClient getDockerClient() {
        String osName = System.getProperty("os.name");
        if (osName.startsWith("Windows")) {
```

```
            // Make sure Docker Desktop is running.
            String dockerHost = "tcp://localhost:2375"; // Use the Docker Desktop
default port.
            DockerCmdExecFactory dockerCmdExecFactory = new
NettyDockerCmdExecFactory().withReadTimeout(20000).withConnectTimeout(20000);
            dockerClient =
DockerClientBuilder.getInstance(dockerHost).withDockerCmdExecFactory(dockerCmdExecFactor
        } else {
            dockerClient = DockerClientBuilder.getInstance().build();
        }
        return dockerClient;
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) client.
     *
     * @return the configured ECR asynchronous client.
     */
    private static EcrAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {

        /*
         The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
         and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
         It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
         provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
         */
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
timeout.
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the individual
call attempt timeout.
```

```
            .build();

        if (ecrClient == null) {
            ecrClient = EcrAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return ecrClient;
    }

    /**
     * Sets the lifecycle policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository for which to set the lifecycle
 policy.
     */
    public void setLifeCyclePolicy(String repoName) {
        /*
           This policy helps to maintain the size and efficiency of the container
 registry
           by automatically removing older and potentially unused images,
           ensuring that the storage is optimized and the registry remains up-to-
date.
         */
        String polText = """
             {
             "rules": [
                 {
                     "rulePriority": 1,
                     "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                     "selection": {
                         "tagStatus": "any",
                         "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                         "countUnit": "days",
                         "countNumber": 14
                     },
                     "action": {
                         "type": "expire"
                     }
                 }
            ]
            }
```

```
            """;

        StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest =
StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest.builder()
            .lifecyclePolicyText(polText)
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().startLifecyclePolicyPreview(lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest);
        response.whenComplete((lifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse, ex) -> {
            if (lifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Lifecycle policy preview started
successfully.");
            } else {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
                }
            }
        });
        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }

    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     * @throws EcrException             if there is an error retrieving the image
information from Amazon ECR.
     * @throws CompletionException      if the asynchronous operation completes
exceptionally.
     */
    public void verifyImage(String repositoryName, String imageTag) {
        DescribeImagesRequest request = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repositoryName)
            .imageIds(ImageIdentifier.builder().imageTag(imageTag).build())
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DescribeImagesResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().describeImages(request);
        response.whenComplete((describeImagesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof CompletionException) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                        throw (EcrException) cause;
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 ex.getCause());
                }
            } else if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails().isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("Image is present in the repository.");
            } else {
                System.out.println("Image is not present in the repository.");
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
     * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     * @throws EcrException        if there is an error retrieving the repository
 information.
     * @throws CompletionException if the asynchronous operation completes
 exceptionally.
     */
    public void getRepositoryURI(String repoName) {
        DescribeRepositoriesRequest request =
 DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryNames(repoName)
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DescribeRepositoriesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(request);
        response.whenComplete((describeRepositoriesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof InterruptedException) {
                    Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                    String errorMessage = "Thread interrupted while waiting for
asynchronous operation: " + cause.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
                } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
                }
            } else {
                if (describeRepositoriesResponse != null) {
                    if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().isEmpty()) {
                        String repositoryUri =
describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryUri();
                        System.out.println("Repository URI found: " +
repositoryUri);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No repositories found for the given
name.");
                    }
                } else {
                    System.err.println("No response received from
describeRepositories.");
                }
            }
        });
        response.join();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
     * This method makes an asynchronous call to the ECR client to retrieve the
authorization token.
```

```
    * If the operation is successful, the method prints the token to the
console.
    * If an exception occurs, the method handles the exception and prints the
error message.
    *
    * @throws EcrException     if there is an error retrieving the authorization
token from ECR.
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the
operation.
    */
   public void getAuthToken() {
       CompletableFuture<GetAuthorizationTokenResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken();
       response.whenComplete((authorizationTokenResponse, ex) -> {
           if (authorizationTokenResponse != null) {
               AuthorizationData authorizationData =
authorizationTokenResponse.authorizationData().get(0);
               String token = authorizationData.authorizationToken();
               if (!token.isEmpty()) {
                   System.out.println("The token was successfully retrieved.");
               }
           } else {
               if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex); // Rethrow the
exception
               }
           }
       });
       response.join();
   }

   /**
    * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository.
    * @throws EcrException if an AWS error occurs while getting the repository
policy.
    */
   public String getRepoPolicy(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
```

```
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        GetRepositoryPolicyRequest getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
GetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<GetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                System.out.println("Repository policy retrieved successfully.");
            } else {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
                }
            }
        });

        GetRepositoryPolicyResponse result = response.join();
        return result != null ? result.policyText() : null;
    }

    /**
     * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
     * @param iamRole  the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
     * @throws RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException if the repository policy does
not exist.
     * @throws EcrException                      if there is an unexpected error
setting the repository policy.
     */
    public void setRepoPolicy(String repoName, String iamRole) {
        /*
          This example policy document grants the specified AWS principal the
permission to perform the
```

```
         `ecr:BatchGetImage` action. This policy is designed to allow the
specified principal
         to retrieve Docker images from the ECR repository.
        */
       String policyDocumentTemplate = """
            {
             "Version" : "2012-10-17",
             "Statement" : [ {
               "Sid" : "new statement",
               "Effect" : "Allow",
               "Principal" : {
                 "AWS" : "%s"
               },
               "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
             } ]
           }
            """;

       String policyDocument = String.format(policyDocumentTemplate, iamRole);
       SetRepositoryPolicyRequest setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
SetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .policyText(policyDocument)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<SetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               System.out.println("Repository policy set successfully.");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) {
                   throw (RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) cause;
               } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) cause;
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
               }
           }
       });
       response.join();
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
     *
     * @param repoName  the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
     * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
     */
    public void pushDockerImage(String repoName, String imageName) {
        System.out.println("Pushing " + imageName + " to Amazon ECR will take a
few seconds.");
        CompletableFuture<AuthConfig> authResponseFuture =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken()
            .thenApply(response -> {
                String token =
response.authorizationData().get(0).authorizationToken();
                String decodedToken = new
String(Base64.getDecoder().decode(token));
                String password = decodedToken.substring(4);

                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
                assert repoData != null;
                String registryURL = repoData.repositoryUri().split("/")[0];

                AuthConfig authConfig = new AuthConfig()
                    .withUsername("AWS")
                    .withPassword(password)
                    .withRegistryAddress(registryURL);
                return authConfig;
            })
            .thenCompose(authConfig -> {
                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
                getDockerClient().tagImageCmd(imageName + ":latest",
repoData.repositoryUri() + ":latest", imageName).exec();
                try {
```

```
 getDockerClient().pushImageCmd(repoData.repositoryUri()).withTag("echo-
text").withAuthConfig(authConfig).start().awaitCompletion();
                    System.out.println("The " + imageName + " was pushed to
 ECR");

                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw (RuntimeException) e.getCause();
                }
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(authConfig);
            });

        authResponseFuture.join();
    }

    // Make sure local image echo-text exists.
    public boolean isEchoTextImagePresent() {
        try {
            List<Image> images = getDockerClient().listImagesCmd().exec();
            boolean helloWorldFound = false;
            for (Image image : images) {
                String[] repoTags = image.getRepoTags();
                if (repoTags != null) {
                    for (String tag : repoTags) {
                        if (tag.startsWith("echo-text")) {
                            System.out.println(tag);
                            helloWorldFound = true;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            if (helloWorldFound) {
                System.out.println("The local image named echo-text exists.");
                return true;
            } else {
                System.out.println("The local image named echo-text does not
 exist.");
                return false;
            }
        } catch (DockerClientException ex) {
            logger.error("ERROR: " + ex.getMessage());
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateRepository
  - DeleteRepository
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeRepositories
  - GetAuthorizationToken
  - GetRepositoryPolicy
  - SetRepositoryPolicy
  - StartLifecyclePolicyPreview

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon ECR features.

```
import java.util.Scanner

/**
 * Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 *
 * This code example requires an IAM Role that has permissions to interact with
 the Amazon ECR service.
 *
```

```
 * To create an IAM role, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/id_roles_create.html
 *
 * This code example requires a local docker image named echo-text. Without a
 local image,
 * this program will not successfully run. For more information including how to
 create the local
 * image, see:
 *
 * /scenarios/basics/ecr/README
 *
 */

val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage =
        """
        Usage: <iamRoleARN> <accountId>

        Where:
           iamRoleARN - The IAM role ARN that has the necessary permissions to
 access and manage the Amazon ECR repository.
           accountId - Your AWS account number.

        """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 2) {
        println(usage)
        return
    }

    var iamRole = args[0]
    var localImageName: String
    var accountId = args[1]
    val ecrActions = ECRActions()
    val scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)

    println(
        """
        The Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is a fully-managed Docker
 container registry
```

```
        service provided by AWS. It allows developers and organizations to
securely
        store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
        ECR provides a simple and scalable way to manage container images
throughout their lifecycle,
        from building and testing to production deployment.

        The `EcrClient` service client that is part of the AWS SDK for Kotlin
provides a set of methods to
        programmatically interact with the Amazon ECR service. This allows
developers to
        automate the storage, retrieval, and management of container images as
part of their application
        deployment pipelines. With ECR, teams can focus on building and deploying
their
        applications without having to worry about the underlying infrastructure
required to
        host and manage a container registry.

        This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this
service.
        Let's get started...

         You have two choices:
            1 - Run the entire program.
            2 - Delete an existing Amazon ECR repository named echo-text (created
from a previous execution of
            this program that did not complete).

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    while (true) {
        val input = scanner.nextLine()
        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("1", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("2", ignoreCase = true)) {
            val repoName = "echo-text"
            ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName)
            return
        } else {
            // Handle invalid input.
```

```
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        1. Create an ECR repository.

        The first task is to ensure we have a local Docker image named echo-
text.
        If this image exists, then an Amazon ECR repository is created.

        An ECR repository is a private Docker container repository provided
        by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is a managed service that makes it easy
        to store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    // Ensure that a local docker image named echo-text exists.
    val doesExist = ecrActions.listLocalImages()
    val repoName: String
    if (!doesExist) {
        println("The local image named echo-text does not exist")
        return
    } else {
        localImageName = "echo-text"
        repoName = "echo-text"
    }

    val repoArn = ecrActions.createECRRepository(repoName).toString()
    println("The ARN of the ECR repository is $repoArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        2. Set an ECR repository policy.

        Setting an ECR repository policy using the `setRepositoryPolicy` function
 is crucial for maintaining
```

```
        the security and integrity of your container images. The repository
policy allows you to
        define specific rules and restrictions for accessing and managing the
images stored within your ECR
        repository.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.setRepoPolicy(repoName, iamRole)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        3. Display ECR repository policy.

        Now we will retrieve the ECR policy to ensure it was successfully set.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val policyText = ecrActions.getRepoPolicy(repoName)
    println("Policy Text:")
    println(policyText)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        4. Retrieve an ECR authorization token.

        You need an authorization token to securely access and interact with the
Amazon ECR registry.
        The `getAuthorizationToken` method of the `EcrAsyncClient` is responsible
for securely accessing
        and interacting with an Amazon ECR repository. This operation is
responsible for obtaining a
        valid authorization token, which is required to authenticate your
requests to the ECR service.

        Without a valid authorization token, you would not be able to perform any
operations on the
        ECR repository, such as pushing, pulling, or managing your Docker images.
```

```
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.getAuthToken()
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        5. Get the ECR Repository URI.

        The URI  of an Amazon ECR repository is important. When you want to
deploy a container image to
        a container orchestration platform like Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service
(EKS)
        or Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS), you need to specify the full
image URI,
        which includes the ECR repository URI. This allows the container runtime
to pull the
        correct container image from the ECR repository.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val repositoryURI: String? = ecrActions.getRepositoryURI(repoName)
    println("The repository URI is $repositoryURI")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        6. Set an ECR Lifecycle Policy.

        An ECR Lifecycle Policy is used to manage the lifecycle of Docker images
stored in your ECR repositories.
        These policies allow you to automatically remove old or unused Docker
images from your repositories,
        freeing up storage space and reducing costs.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val pol = ecrActions.setLifeCyclePolicy(repoName)
```

```
    println(pol)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        7. Push a docker image to the Amazon ECR Repository.

        The `pushImageCmd()` method pushes a local Docker image to an Amazon ECR
repository.
        It sets up the Docker client by connecting to the local Docker host using
the default port.
        It then retrieves the authorization token for the ECR repository by
making a call to the AWS SDK.

        The method uses the authorization token to create an `AuthConfig` object,
which is used to authenticate
        the Docker client when pushing the image. Finally, the method tags the
Docker image with the specified
        repository name and image tag, and then pushes the image to the ECR
repository using the Docker client.
        If the push operation is successful, the method prints a message
indicating that the image was pushed to ECR.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.pushDockerImage(repoName, localImageName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Verify if the image is in the ECR Repository.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.verifyImage(repoName, localImageName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. As an optional step, you can interact with the image in Amazon
ECR by using the CLI.")
    println("Would you like to view instructions on how to use the CLI to run the
image? (y/n)")
    val ans = scanner.nextLine().trim()
    if (ans.equals("y", true)) {
```

```
        val instructions = """
        1. Authenticate with ECR - Before you can pull the image from Amazon ECR,
 you need to authenticate with the registry. You can do this using the AWS CLI:

            aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-1 | docker login --
username AWS --password-stdin $accountId.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com

        2. Describe the image using this command:

           aws ecr describe-images --repository-name $repoName --image-ids
 imageTag=$localImageName

        3. Run the Docker container and view the output using this command:

           docker run --rm $accountId.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/$repoName:
$localImageName
        """
        println(instructions)
    }
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Delete the ECR Repository.")
    println(
        """
        If the repository isn't empty, you must either delete the contents of the
 repository
        or use the force option (used in this scenario) to delete the repository
 and have Amazon ECR delete all of its contents
        on your behalf.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println("Would you like to delete the Amazon ECR Repository? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim { it <= ' ' }
    if (delAns.equals("y", ignoreCase = true)) {
        println("You selected to delete the AWS ECR resources.")
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
        ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName)
    }

    println(DASHES)
    println("This concludes the Amazon ECR SDK scenario")
    println(DASHES)
```

```
}

private fun waitForInputToContinue(scanner: Scanner) {
    while (true) {
        println("")
        println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:")
        val input = scanner.nextLine()
        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("c", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else {
            // Handle invalid input.
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon ECR SDK methods.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.EcrClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.CreateRepositoryRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.DeleteRepositoryRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.DescribeImagesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.DescribeRepositoriesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.EcrException
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.GetRepositoryPolicyRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.ImageIdentifier
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.RepositoryAlreadyExistsException
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.SetRepositoryPolicyRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest
import com.github.dockerjava.api.DockerClient
import com.github.dockerjava.api.command.DockerCmdExecFactory
import com.github.dockerjava.api.model.AuthConfig
import com.github.dockerjava.core.DockerClientBuilder
import com.github.dockerjava.netty.NettyDockerCmdExecFactory
import java.io.IOException
import java.util.Base64

class ECRActions {
    private var dockerClient: DockerClient? = null
```

```
   private fun getDockerClient(): DockerClient? {
       val osName = System.getProperty("os.name")
       if (osName.startsWith("Windows")) {
           // Make sure Docker Desktop is running.
           val dockerHost = "tcp://localhost:2375" // Use the Docker Desktop
default port.
           val dockerCmdExecFactory: DockerCmdExecFactory =

NettyDockerCmdExecFactory().withReadTimeout(20000).withConnectTimeout(20000)
           dockerClient =
DockerClientBuilder.getInstance(dockerHost).withDockerCmdExecFactory(dockerCmdExecFactor
       } else {
           dockerClient = DockerClientBuilder.getInstance().build()
       }
       return dockerClient
   }


   /**
    * Sets the lifecycle policy for the specified repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository for which to set the lifecycle
policy.
    */
   suspend fun setLifeCyclePolicy(repoName: String): String? {
       val polText =
           """
            {
            "rules": [
                {
                    "rulePriority": 1,
                    "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                    "selection": {
                        "tagStatus": "any",
                        "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                        "countUnit": "days",
                        "countNumber": 14
                    },
                    "action": {
                        "type": "expire"
                    }
                }
            ]
            }
```

```
            """.trimIndent()
        val lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest =
            StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest {
                lifecyclePolicyText = polText
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        // Execute the request asynchronously.
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response =
ecrClient.startLifecyclePolicyPreview(lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest)
            return response.lifecyclePolicyText
        }
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
     * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     */
    suspend fun getRepositoryURI(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
cannot be null or empty" }
        val request =
            DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeRepositoriesResponse =
ecrClient.describeRepositories(request)
            if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories?.isEmpty()!!) {
                return
describeRepositoriesResponse?.repositories?.get(0)?.repositoryUri
            } else {
                println("No repositories found for the given name.")
                return ""
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
     *
     */
    suspend fun getAuthToken() {
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            // Retrieve the authorization token for ECR.
            val response = ecrClient.getAuthorizationToken()
            val authorizationData = response.authorizationData?.get(0)
            val token = authorizationData?.authorizationToken
            if (token != null) {
                println("The token was successfully retrieved.")
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository.
     */
    suspend fun getRepoPolicy(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
cannot be null or empty" }

        // Create the request
        val getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            GetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
            }
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response =
ecrClient.getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            val responseText = response.policyText
            return responseText
        }
    }


    /**
     * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
```

```
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
     * @param iamRole the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
     */
    suspend fun setRepoPolicy(
        repoName: String?,
        iamRole: String?,
    ) {
        val policyDocumentTemplate =
            """
             {
              "Version" : "2012-10-17",
              "Statement" : [ {
                "Sid" : "new statement",
                "Effect" : "Allow",
                "Principal" : {
                  "AWS" : "$iamRole"
                },
                "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
              } ]
            }

            """.trimIndent()
        val setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            SetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                policyText = policyDocumentTemplate
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response =
ecrClient.setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            if (response != null) {
                println("Repository policy set successfully.")
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
```

```
    * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an
empty string if the operation failed.
    * @throws RepositoryAlreadyExistsException if the repository exists.
    * @throws EcrException         if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
    */
   suspend fun createECRRepository(repoName: String?): String? {
       val request =
           CreateRepositoryRequest {
               repositoryName = repoName
           }

       return try {
           EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
               val response = ecrClient.createRepository(request)
               response.repository?.repositoryArn
           }
       } catch (e: RepositoryAlreadyExistsException) {
           println("Repository already exists: $repoName")
           repoName?.let { getRepoARN(it) }
       } catch (e: EcrException) {
           println("An error occurred: ${e.message}")
           null
       }
   }

   suspend fun getRepoARN(repoName: String): String? {
       // Fetch the existing repository's ARN.
       val describeRequest =
           DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
               repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
           }
       EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
           val describeResponse =
ecrClient.describeRepositories(describeRequest)
           return describeResponse.repositories?.get(0)?.repositoryArn
       }
   }

   fun listLocalImages(): Boolean = try {
       val images = getDockerClient()?.listImagesCmd()?.exec()
       images?.any { image ->
           image.repoTags?.any { tag -> tag.startsWith("echo-text") } ?: false
       } ?: false
```

```
    } catch (ex: Exception) {
        println("ERROR: ${ex.message}")
        false
    }


    /**
     * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
     * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
     */
    suspend fun pushDockerImage(
        repoName: String,
        imageName: String,
    ) {
        println("Pushing $imageName to $repoName will take a few seconds")
        val authConfig = getAuthConfig(repoName)

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val desRequest =
                DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                    repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
                }

            val describeRepoResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(desRequest)
            val repoData =
                describeRepoResponse.repositories?.firstOrNull
{ it.repositoryName == repoName }
                    ?: throw RuntimeException("Repository not found: $repoName")

            val tagImageCmd = getDockerClient()?.tagImageCmd("$imageName",
"${repoData.repositoryUri}", imageName)
            if (tagImageCmd != null) {
                tagImageCmd.exec()
            }
            val pushImageCmd =
                repoData.repositoryUri?.let {
                    dockerClient?.pushImageCmd(it)
                        // ?.withTag("latest")
                        ?.withAuthConfig(authConfig)
                }
```

```
            try {
                if (pushImageCmd != null) {
                    pushImageCmd.start().awaitCompletion()
                }
                println("The $imageName was pushed to Amazon ECR")
            } catch (e: IOException) {
                throw RuntimeException(e)
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
 (Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     */
    suspend fun verifyImage(
        repoName: String?,
        imageTagVal: String?,
    ) {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
 cannot be null or empty" }
        require(!(imageTagVal == null || imageTagVal.isEmpty())) { "Image tag
 cannot be null or empty" }

        val imageId =
            ImageIdentifier {
                imageTag = imageTagVal
            }
        val request =
            DescribeImagesRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                imageIds = listOf(imageId)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeImagesResponse = ecrClient.describeImages(request)
            if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails?.isEmpty()!!) {
                println("Image is present in the repository.")
            } else {
```

```
                println("Image is not present in the repository.")
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     */
    suspend fun deleteECRRepository(repoName: String) {
        if (repoName.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            throw IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty")
        }

        val repositoryRequest =
            DeleteRepositoryRequest {
                force = true
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            ecrClient.deleteRepository(repositoryRequest)
            println("You have successfully deleted the $repoName repository")
        }
    }

    // Return an AuthConfig.
    private suspend fun getAuthConfig(repoName: String): AuthConfig {
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            // Retrieve the authorization token for ECR.
            val response = ecrClient.getAuthorizationToken()
            val authorizationData = response.authorizationData?.get(0)
            val token = authorizationData?.authorizationToken
            val decodedToken = String(Base64.getDecoder().decode(token))
            val password = decodedToken.substring(4)

            val request =
                DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                    repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
                }
```

```
            val descrRepoResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(request)
            val repoData = descrRepoResponse.repositories?.firstOrNull
 { it.repositoryName == repoName }
            val registryURL: String =
 repoData?.repositoryUri?.split("/")?.get(0) ?: ""

            return AuthConfig()
                .withUsername("AWS")
                .withPassword(password)
                .withRegistryAddress(registryURL)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateRepository
  - DeleteRepository
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeRepositories
  - GetAuthorizationToken
  - GetRepositoryPolicy
  - SetRepositoryPolicy
  - StartLifecyclePolicyPreview

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class ECRGettingStarted:
```

```
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to perform basic operations
 using
    Amazon ECR.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ecr_wrapper: ECRWrapper,
        docker_client: docker.DockerClient,
    ):
        self.ecr_wrapper = ecr_wrapper
        self.docker_client = docker_client
        self.tag = "echo-text"
        self.repository_name = "ecr-basics"
        self.docker_image = None
        self.full_tag_name = None
        self.repository = None

    def run(self, role_arn: str) -> None:
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """
        print(
            """
The Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is a fully-managed Docker container
 registry
service provided by AWS. It allows developers and organizations to securely
store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
ECR provides a simple and scalable way to manage container images throughout
 their lifecycle,
from building and testing to production deployment.

The `ECRWrapper' class is a wrapper for the Boto3 'ecr' client. The 'ecr' client
 provides a set of methods to
programmatically interact with the Amazon ECR service. This allows developers to
automate the storage, retrieval, and management of container images as part of
 their application
deployment pipelines. With ECR, teams can focus on building and deploying their
applications without having to worry about the underlying infrastructure required
 to
host and manage a container registry.

This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this service.
```

```
Let's get started...
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(
            f"""
* Create an ECR repository.

An ECR repository is a private Docker container repository provided
by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is a managed service that makes it easy
to store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
        """
        )
        print(f"Creating a repository named {self.repository_name}")
        self.repository =
 self.ecr_wrapper.create_repository(self.repository_name)
        print(f"The ARN of the ECR repository is
 {self.repository['repositoryArn']}")
        repository_uri = self.repository["repositoryUri"]
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        print(
            f"""
* Build a Docker image.

Create a local Docker image if it does not already exist.
A Python Docker client is used to execute Docker commands.
You must have Docker installed and running.
            """
        )
        print(f"Building a docker image from 'docker_files/Dockerfile'")
        self.full_tag_name = f"{repository_uri}:{self.tag}"
        self.docker_image = self.docker_client.images.build(
            path="docker_files", tag=self.full_tag_name
        )[0]
        print(f"Docker image {self.full_tag_name} successfully built.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        if role_arn is None:
            print(
                """
```

```
* Because an IAM role ARN was not provided, a role policy will not be set for
 this repository.
            """
            )
        else:
            print(
                """
* Set an ECR repository policy.

Setting an ECR repository policy using the `setRepositoryPolicy` function is
 crucial for maintaining
the security and integrity of your container images. The repository policy allows
 you to
define specific rules and restrictions for accessing and managing the images
 stored within your ECR
repository.
        """
            )

            self.grant_role_download_access(role_arn)
            print(f"Download access granted to the IAM role ARN {role_arn}")
            press_enter_to_continue()
            print_dashes()

            print(
                """
* Display ECR repository policy.

Now we will retrieve the ECR policy to ensure it was successfully set.
            """
            )

            policy_text =
 self.ecr_wrapper.get_repository_policy(self.repository_name)
            print("Policy Text:")
            print(f"{policy_text}")
            press_enter_to_continue()
            print_dashes()

        print(
            """
* Retrieve an ECR authorization token.
```

```
You need an authorization token to securely access and interact with the Amazon
 ECR registry.
The `get_authorization_token` method of the `ecr` client is responsible for
 securely accessing
and interacting with an Amazon ECR repository. This operation is responsible for
 obtaining a
valid authorization token, which is required to authenticate your requests to the
 ECR service.

Without a valid authorization token, you would not be able to perform any
 operations on the
ECR repository, such as pushing, pulling, or managing your Docker images.
        """
        )

        authorization_token = self.ecr_wrapper.get_authorization_token()
        print("Authorization token retrieved.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(
            """
* Get the ECR Repository URI.

The URI  of an Amazon ECR repository is important. When you want to deploy a
 container image to
a container orchestration platform like Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS)
or Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS), you need to specify the full image
 URI,
which includes the ECR repository URI. This allows the container runtime to pull
 the
correct container image from the ECR repository.
        """
        )
        repository_descriptions = self.ecr_wrapper.describe_repositories(
            [self.repository_name]
        )
        repository_uri = repository_descriptions[0]["repositoryUri"]
        print(f"Repository URI found: {repository_uri}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        print(
            """
* Set an ECR Lifecycle Policy.
```

```
An ECR Lifecycle Policy is used to manage the lifecycle of Docker images stored
 in your ECR repositories.
These policies allow you to automatically remove old or unused Docker images from
 your repositories,
freeing up storage space and reducing costs.

This example policy helps to maintain the size and efficiency of the container
 registry
by automatically removing older and potentially unused images, ensuring that the
storage is optimized and the registry remains up-to-date.
            """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        self.put_expiration_policy()
        print(f"An expiration policy was added to the repository.")
        print_dashes()

        print(
            """
* Push a docker image to the Amazon ECR Repository.

The Docker client uses the authorization token is used to authenticate the when
 pushing the image to the
ECR repository.
        """
        )
        decoded_authorization =
 base64.b64decode(authorization_token).decode("utf-8")
        username, password = decoded_authorization.split(":")

        resp = self.docker_client.api.push(
            repository=repository_uri,
            auth_config={"username": username, "password": password},
            tag=self.tag,
            stream=True,
            decode=True,
        )
        for line in resp:
            print(line)

        print_dashes()

        print("* Verify if the image is in the ECR Repository.")
```

```
        image_descriptions = self.ecr_wrapper.describe_images(
            self.repository_name, [self.tag]
        )
        if len(image_descriptions) > 0:
            print("Image found in ECR Repository.")
        else:
            print("Image not found in ECR Repository.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        print(
            "* As an optional step, you can interact with the image in Amazon ECR
 by using the CLI."
        )
        if q.ask(
            "Would you like to view instructions on how to use the CLI to run the
 image? (y/n)",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            print(
                f"""
1. Authenticate with ECR - Before you can pull the image from Amazon ECR, you
 need to authenticate with the registry. You can do this using the AWS CLI:

    aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-1 | docker login --username AWS
 --password-stdin {repository_uri.split("/")[0]}

2. Describe the image using this command:

   aws ecr describe-images --repository-name {self.repository_name} --image-ids
 imageTag={self.tag}

3. Run the Docker container and view the output using this command:

   docker run --rm {self.full_tag_name}
"""
            )

        self.cleanup(True)

    def cleanup(self, ask: bool):
        """
        Deletes the resources created in this scenario.
```

```
        :param ask: If True, prompts the user to confirm before deleting the
resources.
        """
        if self.repository is not None and (
            not ask
            or q.ask(
                f"Would you like to delete the ECR repository
'{self.repository_name}? (y/n) "
            )
        ):
            print(f"Deleting the ECR repository '{self.repository_name}'.")
            self.ecr_wrapper.delete_repository(self.repository_name)

        if self.full_tag_name is not None and (
            not ask
            or q.ask(
                f"Would you like to delete the local Docker image
'{self.full_tag_name}? (y/n) "
            )
        ):
            print(f"Deleting the docker image '{self.full_tag_name}'.")
            self.docker_client.images.remove(self.full_tag_name)

    def grant_role_download_access(self, role_arn: str):
        """
        Grants the specified role access to download images from the ECR
repository.

        :param role_arn: The ARN of the role to grant access to.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "Version": "2008-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "AllowDownload",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"AWS": role_arn},
                    "Action": ["ecr:BatchGetImage"],
                }
            ],
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.set_repository_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
```

```
        )


    def put_expiration_policy(self):
        """
        Puts an expiration policy on the ECR repository.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "rules": [
                {
                    "rulePriority": 1,
                    "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                    "selection": {
                        "tagStatus": "any",
                        "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                        "countUnit": "days",
                        "countNumber": 14,
                    },
                    "action": {"type": "expire"},
                }
            ]
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.put_lifecycle_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )



if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Run Amazon ECR getting started scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--iam-role-arn",
        type=str,
        default=None,
        help="an optional IAM role ARN that will be granted access to download
 images from a repository.",
        required=False,
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--no-art",
        action="store_true",
```

```
        help="accessibility setting that suppresses art in the console output.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    no_art = args.no_art
    iam_role_arn = args.iam_role_arn
    demo = None
    a_docker_client = None
    try:
        a_docker_client = docker.from_env()
        if not a_docker_client.ping():
            raise docker.errors.DockerException("Docker is not running.")
    except docker.errors.DockerException as err:
        logging.error(
            """
        The Python Docker client could not be created.
        Do you have Docker installed and running?
        Here is the error message:
        %s
        """,
            err,
        )
        sys.exit("Error with Docker.")
    try:
        an_ecr_wrapper = ECRWrapper.from_client()
        demo = ECRGettingStarted(an_ecr_wrapper, a_docker_client)
        demo.run(iam_role_arn)

    except Exception as exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
        if demo is not None:
            demo.cleanup(False)
```

ECRWrapper class that wraps Amazon ECR actions.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
```

```
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def create_repository(self, repository_name: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to create.
        :return: A dictionary of the created repository.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ecr_client.create_repository(repositoryName=repository_name)
            return response["repository"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"RepositoryAlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Repository {repository_name} already exists.")
                response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                    repositoryNames=[repository_name]
                )
                return self.describe_repositories([repository_name])[0]
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating repository %s. Here's why %s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def delete_repository(self, repository_name: str):
        """
        Deletes an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to delete.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.ecr_client.delete_repository(
                repositoryName=repository_name, force=True
            )
            print(f"Deleted repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete repository %s.. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def set_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str, policy_text: str):
        """
        Sets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to set the policy for.
        :param policy_text: The policy text to set.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.set_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name, policyText=policy_text
            )
            print(f"Set repository policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't set repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
%s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def get_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Gets the policy for an ECR repository.
```

```
        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to get the policy for.
        :return: The policy text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name
            )
            return response["policyText"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
%s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def get_authorization_token(self) -> str:
        """
        Gets an authorization token for an ECR repository.

        :return: The authorization token.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_authorization_token()
            return response["authorizationData"][0]["authorizationToken"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get authorization token. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_repositories(self, repository_names: list[str]) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR repositories.
```

```
        :param repository_names: The names of the repositories to describe.
        :return: The list of repository descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                repositoryNames=repository_names
            )
            return response["repositories"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe repositories. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def put_lifecycle_policy(self, repository_name: str, lifecycle_policy_text:
str):
        """
        Puts a lifecycle policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to put the lifecycle
policy for.
        :param lifecycle_policy_text: The lifecycle policy text to put.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.put_lifecycle_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name,
                lifecyclePolicyText=lifecycle_policy_text,
            )
            print(f"Put lifecycle policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't put lifecycle policy for repository %s. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_images(
        self, repository_name: str, image_ids: list[str] = None
    ) -> list[dict]:
        """
```

```
        Describes ECR images.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to describe images
for.
        :param image_ids: The optional IDs of images to describe.
        :return: The list of image descriptions.
        """
        try:
            params = {
                "repositoryName": repository_name,
            }
            if image_ids is not None:
                params["imageIds"] = [{"imageTag": tag} for tag in image_ids]

            paginator = self.ecr_client.get_paginator("describe_images")
            image_descriptions = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**params):
                image_descriptions.extend(page["imageDetails"])
            return image_descriptions
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe images. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateRepository
  - DeleteRepository
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeRepositories
  - GetAuthorizationToken
  - GetRepositoryPolicy
  - SetRepositoryPolicy
  - StartLifecyclePolicyPreview

Actions for Amazon ECR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon ECR actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Elastic Container Registry API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateRepository with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteRepository with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRepositories with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAuthorizationToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRepositoryPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListImages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PushImageCmd with an AWS SDK
- Use PutLifeCyclePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetRepositoryPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartLifecyclePolicyPreview with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateRepository` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRepository`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a repository

The following `create-repository` example creates a repository inside the specified namespace in the default registry for an account.

```
aws ecr create-repository \
    --repository-name project-a/sample-repo
```

Output:

```
{
    "repository": {
        "registryId": "123456789012",
        "repositoryName": "project-a/sample-repo",
        "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-west-2:123456789012:repository/project-
a/sample-repo"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Repository in the *Amazon ECR User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a repository configured with image tag immutability

The following `create-repository` example creates a repository configured for tag immutability in the default registry for an account.

```
aws ecr create-repository \
    --repository-name project-a/sample-repo \
    --image-tag-mutability IMMUTABLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "repository": {
        "registryId": "123456789012",
        "repositoryName": "project-a/sample-repo",
        "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-west-2:123456789012:repository/project-
a/sample-repo",
        "imageTagMutability": "IMMUTABLE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Image Tag Mutability in the *Amazon ECR User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a repository configured with a scanning configuration

The following `create-repository` example creates a repository configured to perform a vulnerability scan on image push in the default registry for an account.

```
aws ecr create-repository \
    --repository-name project-a/sample-repo \
    --image-scanning-configuration scanOnPush=true
```

Output:

```
{
    "repository": {
        "registryId": "123456789012",
        "repositoryName": "project-a/sample-repo",
        "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-west-2:123456789012:repository/project-
a/sample-repo",
        "imageScanningConfiguration": {
            "scanOnPush": true
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Image Scanning in the *Amazon ECR User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
```

```
    * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an
empty string if the operation failed.
    * @throws IllegalArgumentException     If repository name is invalid.
    * @throws RuntimeException             if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
    */
   public String createECRRepository(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       CreateRepositoryRequest request = CreateRepositoryRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createRepository(request);
       try {
           CreateRepositoryResponse result = response.join();
           if (result != null) {
               System.out.println("The " + repoName + " repository was created
successfully.");
               return result.repository().repositoryArn();
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected response type");
           }
       } catch (CompletionException e) {
           Throwable cause = e.getCause();
           if (cause instanceof EcrException ex) {
               if
("RepositoryAlreadyExistsException".equals(ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode())) {
                   System.out.println("The Amazon ECR repository already exists,
moving on...");
                   DescribeRepositoriesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
                       .repositoryNames(repoName)
                       .build();
                   DescribeRepositoriesResponse describeResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(describeRequest).join();
                   return
describeResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryArn();
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException(ex);
```

```
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an
empty string if the operation failed.
     * @throws RepositoryAlreadyExistsException if the repository exists.
     * @throws EcrException         if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
     */
    suspend fun createECRRepository(repoName: String?): String? {
        val request =
            CreateRepositoryRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        return try {
            EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
                val response = ecrClient.createRepository(request)
                response.repository?.repositoryArn
            }
```

```
        } catch (e: RepositoryAlreadyExistsException) {
            println("Repository already exists: $repoName")
            repoName?.let { getRepoARN(it) }
        } catch (e: EcrException) {
            println("An error occurred: ${e.message}")
            null
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
 ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def create_repository(self, repository_name: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates an ECR repository.
```

```
        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to create.
        :return: A dictionary of the created repository.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ecr_client.create_repository(repositoryName=repository_name)
            return response["repository"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"RepositoryAlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Repository {repository_name} already exists.")
                response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                    repositoryNames=[repository_name]
                )
                return self.describe_repositories([repository_name])[0]
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating repository %s. Here's why %s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteRepository` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRepository`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a repository

The following `delete-repository` example command force deletes the specified repository in the default registry for an account. The `--force` flag is required if the repository contains images.

```
aws ecr delete-repository \
    --repository-name ubuntu \
    --force
```

Output:

```
{
    "repository": {
        "registryId": "123456789012",
        "repositoryName": "ubuntu",
        "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-west-2:123456789012:repository/ubuntu"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting a Repository in the *Amazon ECR User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the repository name is null or empty.
     * @throws EcrException if there is an error deleting the repository.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs during the deletion
 process.
```

```
     */
    public void deleteECRRepository(String repoName) {
        if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        DeleteRepositoryRequest repositoryRequest =
DeleteRepositoryRequest.builder()
            .force(true)
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteRepository(repositoryRequest);
        response.whenComplete((deleteRepositoryResponse, ex) -> {
            if (deleteRepositoryResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted the " +
repoName + " repository");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     */
    suspend fun deleteECRRepository(repoName: String) {
        if (repoName.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            throw IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty")
        }

        val repositoryRequest =
            DeleteRepositoryRequest {
                force = true
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            ecrClient.deleteRepository(repositoryRequest)
            println("You have successfully deleted the $repoName repository")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
 ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def delete_repository(self, repository_name: str):
        """
        Deletes an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.delete_repository(
                repositoryName=repository_name, force=True
            )
            print(f"Deleted repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete repository %s.. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeImages` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeImages`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an image in a repository

The folowing `describe-images` example displays details about an image in the `cluster-autoscaler` repository with the tag `v1.13.6`.

```
aws ecr describe-images \
    --repository-name cluster-autoscaler \
    --image-ids imageTag=v1.13.6
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageDetails": [
        {
            "registryId": "012345678910",
            "repositoryName": "cluster-autoscaler",
            "imageDigest":
 "sha256:4a1c6567c38904384ebc64e35b7eeddd8451110c299e3368d2210066487d97e5",
            "imageTags": [
                "v1.13.6"
            ],
```

```
            "imageSizeInBytes": 48318255,
            "imagePushedAt": 1565128275.0
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
    *
    * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
    * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
    * @throws EcrException             if there is an error retrieving the image
information from Amazon ECR.
    * @throws CompletionException      if the asynchronous operation completes
exceptionally.
    */
   public void verifyImage(String repositoryName, String imageTag) {
       DescribeImagesRequest request = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repositoryName)
           .imageIds(ImageIdentifier.builder().imageTag(imageTag).build())
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeImagesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeImages(request);
       response.whenComplete((describeImagesResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               if (ex instanceof CompletionException) {
                   Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
```

```
                        throw (EcrException) cause;
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 ex.getCause());
                }
            } else if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails().isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("Image is present in the repository.");
            } else {
                System.out.println("Image is not present in the repository.");
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
 (Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     */
```

```
    suspend fun verifyImage(
        repoName: String?,
        imageTagVal: String?,
    ) {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
 cannot be null or empty" }
        require(!(imageTagVal == null || imageTagVal.isEmpty())) { "Image tag
 cannot be null or empty" }

        val imageId =
            ImageIdentifier {
                imageTag = imageTagVal
            }
        val request =
            DescribeImagesRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                imageIds = listOf(imageId)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeImagesResponse = ecrClient.describeImages(request)
            if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails?.isEmpty()!!) {
                println("Image is present in the repository.")
            } else {
                println("Image is not present in the repository.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
 ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def describe_images(
        self, repository_name: str, image_ids: list[str] = None
    ) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR images.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to describe images
 for.
        :param image_ids: The optional IDs of images to describe.
        :return: The list of image descriptions.
        """
        try:
            params = {
                "repositoryName": repository_name,
            }
            if image_ids is not None:
                params["imageIds"] = [{"imageTag": tag} for tag in image_ids]

            paginator = self.ecr_client.get_paginator("describe_images")
            image_descriptions = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**params):
                image_descriptions.extend(page["imageDetails"])
            return image_descriptions
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe images. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeRepositories` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeRepositories`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the repositories in a registry

This example describes the repositories in the default registry for an account.

Command:

```
aws ecr describe-repositories
```

Output:

```
{
    "repositories": [
        {
            "registryId": "012345678910",
            "repositoryName": "ubuntu",
            "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-west-2:012345678910:repository/
ubuntu"
        },
        {
            "registryId": "012345678910",
            "repositoryName": "test",
```

```
            "repositoryArn": "arn:aws:ecr:us-west-2:012345678910:repository/test"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
    * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
    * @throws EcrException        if there is an error retrieving the repository
information.
    * @throws CompletionException if the asynchronous operation completes
exceptionally.
    */
   public void getRepositoryURI(String repoName) {
       DescribeRepositoriesRequest request =
DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
           .repositoryNames(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeRepositoriesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(request);
       response.whenComplete((describeRepositoriesResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof InterruptedException) {
                   Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                   String errorMessage = "Thread interrupted while waiting for
asynchronous operation: " + cause.getMessage();
```

```
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
                } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
                }
            } else {
                if (describeRepositoriesResponse != null) {
                    if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().isEmpty()) {
                        String repositoryUri =
describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryUri();
                        System.out.println("Repository URI found: " +
repositoryUri);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No repositories found for the given
name.");
                    }
                } else {
                    System.err.println("No response received from
describeRepositories.");
                }
            }
        });
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
     * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     */
    suspend fun getRepositoryURI(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
 cannot be null or empty" }
        val request =
            DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeRepositoriesResponse =
 ecrClient.describeRepositories(request)
            if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories?.isEmpty()!!) {
                return
 describeRepositoriesResponse?.repositories?.get(0)?.repositoryUri
            } else {
                println("No repositories found for the given name.")
                return ""
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
```

```
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def describe_repositories(self, repository_names: list[str]) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR repositories.

        :param repository_names: The names of the repositories to describe.
        :return: The list of repository descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                repositoryNames=repository_names
            )
            return response["repositories"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe repositories. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_repos(client: &aws_sdk_ecr::Client) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_ecr::Error> {
    let rsp = client.describe_repositories().send().await?;

    let repos = rsp.repositories();

    println!("Found {} repositories:", repos.len());

    for repo in repos {
        println!("  ARN:  {}", repo.repository_arn().unwrap());
        println!("  Name: {}", repo.repository_name().unwrap());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetAuthorizationToken` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAuthorizationToken`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To get an authorization token for your default registry

The following `get-authorization-token` example command gets an authorization token for your default registry.

```
aws ecr get-authorization-token
```

Output:

```
{
    "authorizationData": [
        {
            "authorizationToken": "QVdTOkN...",
            "expiresAt": 1448875853.241,
            "proxyEndpoint": "https://123456789012.dkr.ecr.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
 (ECR).
```

```
    * This method makes an asynchronous call to the ECR client to retrieve the
authorization token.
    * If the operation is successful, the method prints the token to the
console.
    * If an exception occurs, the method handles the exception and prints the
error message.
    *
    * @throws EcrException     if there is an error retrieving the authorization
token from ECR.
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the
operation.
    */
   public void getAuthToken() {
       CompletableFuture<GetAuthorizationTokenResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken();
       response.whenComplete((authorizationTokenResponse, ex) -> {
           if (authorizationTokenResponse != null) {
               AuthorizationData authorizationData =
authorizationTokenResponse.authorizationData().get(0);
               String token = authorizationData.authorizationToken();
               if (!token.isEmpty()) {
                   System.out.println("The token was successfully retrieved.");
               }
           } else {
               if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex); // Rethrow the
exception
               }
           }
       });
       response.join();
   }
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
     *
     */
    suspend fun getAuthToken() {
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            // Retrieve the authorization token for ECR.
            val response = ecrClient.getAuthorizationToken()
            val authorizationData = response.authorizationData?.get(0)
            val token = authorizationData?.authorizationToken
            if (token != null) {
                println("The token was successfully retrieved.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
 ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def get_authorization_token(self) -> str:
        """
        Gets an authorization token for an ECR repository.

        :return: The authorization token.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_authorization_token()
            return response["authorizationData"][0]["authorizationToken"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get authorization token. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetRepositoryPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetRepositoryPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the repository policy for a repository

The following `get-repository-policy` example displays details about the repository policy for the `cluster-autoscaler` repository.

```
aws ecr get-repository-policy \
    --repository-name cluster-autoscaler
```

Output:

```
{
    "registryId": "012345678910",
    "repositoryName": "cluster-autoscaler",
    "policyText": "{\n  \"Version\" : \"2008-10-17\",\n  \"Statement\" :
 [ {\n    \"Sid\" : \"allow public pull\",\n    \"Effect\" : \"Allow\",\n
 \"Principal\" : \"*\",\n    \"Action\" : [ \"ecr:BatchCheckLayerAvailability\",
 \"ecr:BatchGetImage\", \"ecr:GetDownloadUrlForLayer\" ]\n  } ]\n}"
}
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
```

```
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository.
     * @throws EcrException if an AWS error occurs while getting the repository
policy.
     */
    public String getRepoPolicy(String repoName) {
        if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        GetRepositoryPolicyRequest getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
GetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<GetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                System.out.println("Repository policy retrieved successfully.");
            } else {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
                }
            }
        });

        GetRepositoryPolicyResponse result = response.join();
        return result != null ? result.policyText() : null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository.
     */
    suspend fun getRepoPolicy(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
cannot be null or empty" }

        // Create the request
        val getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            GetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
            }
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response =
ecrClient.getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            val responseText = response.policyText
            return responseText
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
 ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def get_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Gets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to get the policy for.
        :return: The policy text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name
            )
            return response["policyText"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
 "RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
```

```
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
 %s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListImages` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListImages`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the images in a repository

The following `list-images` example displays a list of the images in the `cluster-autoscaler` repository.

```
aws ecr list-images \
    --repository-name cluster-autoscaler
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageIds": [
        {
            "imageDigest":
 "sha256:99c6fb4377e9a420a1eb3b410a951c9f464eff3b7dbc76c65e434e39b94b6570",
            "imageTag": "v1.13.8"
        },
        {
            "imageDigest":
 "sha256:99c6fb4377e9a420a1eb3b410a951c9f464eff3b7dbc76c65e434e39b94b6570",
```

```
            "imageTag": "v1.13.7"
        },
        {
            "imageDigest":
 "sha256:4a1c6567c38904384ebc64e35b7eeddd8451110c299e3368d2210066487d97e5",
            "imageTag": "v1.13.6"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListImages in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_images(
    client: &aws_sdk_ecr::Client,
    repository: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_ecr::Error> {
    let rsp = client
        .list_images()
        .repository_name(repository)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let images = rsp.image_ids();

    println!("found {} images", images.len());

    for image in images {
        println!(
            "image: {}:{}",
            image.image_tag().unwrap(),
            image.image_digest().unwrap()
        );
```

```
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListImages in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `PushImageCmd` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PushImageCmd`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
    *
    * @param repoName  the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
    * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
    */
   public void pushDockerImage(String repoName, String imageName) {
       System.out.println("Pushing " + imageName + " to Amazon ECR will take a
few seconds.");
       CompletableFuture<AuthConfig> authResponseFuture =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken()
           .thenApply(response -> {
               String token =
response.authorizationData().get(0).authorizationToken();
               String decodedToken = new
String(Base64.getDecoder().decode(token));
               String password = decodedToken.substring(4);
```

```
                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
 getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
 descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
 r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
                assert repoData != null;
                String registryURL = repoData.repositoryUri().split("/")[0];

                AuthConfig authConfig = new AuthConfig()
                    .withUsername("AWS")
                    .withPassword(password)
                    .withRegistryAddress(registryURL);
                return authConfig;
            })
            .thenCompose(authConfig -> {
                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
 getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
 descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
 r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
                getDockerClient().tagImageCmd(imageName + ":latest",
 repoData.repositoryUri() + ":latest", imageName).exec();
                try {

 getDockerClient().pushImageCmd(repoData.repositoryUri()).withTag("echo-
text").withAuthConfig(authConfig).start().awaitCompletion();
                    System.out.println("The " + imageName + " was pushed to
 ECR");

                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw (RuntimeException) e.getCause();
                }
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(authConfig);
            });

        authResponseFuture.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see PushImageCmd in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
    * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
    */
   suspend fun pushDockerImage(
       repoName: String,
       imageName: String,
   ) {
       println("Pushing $imageName to $repoName will take a few seconds")
       val authConfig = getAuthConfig(repoName)

       EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
           val desRequest =
               DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                   repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
               }

           val describeRepoResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(desRequest)
           val repoData =
               describeRepoResponse.repositories?.firstOrNull
{ it.repositoryName == repoName }
                   ?: throw RuntimeException("Repository not found: $repoName")

           val tagImageCmd = getDockerClient()?.tagImageCmd("$imageName",
"${repoData.repositoryUri}", imageName)
           if (tagImageCmd != null) {
               tagImageCmd.exec()
           }
```

```
            val pushImageCmd =
                repoData.repositoryUri?.let {
                    dockerClient?.pushImageCmd(it)
                        // ?.withTag("latest")
                        ?.withAuthConfig(authConfig)
                }

            try {
                if (pushImageCmd != null) {
                    pushImageCmd.start().awaitCompletion()
                }
                println("The $imageName was pushed to Amazon ECR")
            } catch (e: IOException) {
                throw RuntimeException(e)
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PushImageCmd in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `PutLifeCyclePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutLifeCyclePolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a lifecycle policy

The following `put-lifecycle-policy` example creates a lifecycle policy for the specified repository in the default registry for an account.

```
aws ecr put-lifecycle-policy \
    --repository-name "project-a/amazon-ecs-sample" \
    --lifecycle-policy-text "file://policy.json"
```

Contents of `policy.json`:

```
{
   "rules": [
```

```
        {
            "rulePriority": 1,
            "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
            "selection": {
                "tagStatus": "untagged",
                "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                "countUnit": "days",
                "countNumber": 14
            },
            "action": {
                "type": "expire"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
   "registryId": "<aws_account_id>",
   "repositoryName": "project-a/amazon-ecs-sample",
   "lifecyclePolicyText": "{\"rules\":[{\"rulePriority\":1,\"description\":
\"Expire images older than 14 days\",\"selection\":{\"tagStatus\":\"untagged\",
\"countType\":\"sinceImagePushed\",\"countUnit\":\"days\",\"countNumber\":14},
\"action\":{\"type\":\"expire\"}}]}"
}
```

For more information, see Lifecycle Policies in the *Amazon ECR User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutLifeCyclePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
```

```
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def put_lifecycle_policy(self, repository_name: str, lifecycle_policy_text:
str):
        """
        Puts a lifecycle policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to put the lifecycle
policy for.
        :param lifecycle_policy_text: The lifecycle policy text to put.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.put_lifecycle_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name,
                lifecyclePolicyText=lifecycle_policy_text,
            )
            print(f"Put lifecycle policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't put lifecycle policy for repository %s. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Example that puts an expiration date policy.

```
    def put_expiration_policy(self):
```

```
        """
        Puts an expiration policy on the ECR repository.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "rules": [
                {
                    "rulePriority": 1,
                    "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                    "selection": {
                        "tagStatus": "any",
                        "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                        "countUnit": "days",
                        "countNumber": 14,
                    },
                    "action": {"type": "expire"},
                }
            ]
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.put_lifecycle_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )
```

- For API details, see PutLifeCyclePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SetRepositoryPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetRepositoryPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the repository policy for a repository

The following `set-repository-policy` example attaches a repository policy contained in a file to the `cluster-autoscaler` repository.

```
aws ecr set-repository-policy \
    --repository-name cluster-autoscaler \
    --policy-text file://my-policy.json
```

Contents of `my-policy.json`:

```
{
    "Version" : "2008-10-17",
    "Statement" : [
        {
            "Sid" : "allow public pull",
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Principal" : "*",
            "Action" : [
                "ecr:BatchCheckLayerAvailability",
                "ecr:BatchGetImage",
                "ecr:GetDownloadUrlForLayer"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "registryId": "012345678910",
    "repositoryName": "cluster-autoscaler",
    "policyText": "{\n  \"Version\" : \"2008-10-17\",\n  \"Statement\" :
 [ {\n    \"Sid\" : \"allow public pull\",\n    \"Effect\" : \"Allow\",\n
 \"Principal\" : \"*\",\n    \"Action\" : [ \"ecr:BatchCheckLayerAvailability\",
 \"ecr:BatchGetImage\", \"ecr:GetDownloadUrlForLayer\" ]\n  } ]\n}"
}
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
    * @param iamRole  the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
    * @throws RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException if the repository policy does
not exist.
    * @throws EcrException                      if there is an unexpected error
setting the repository policy.
    */
   public void setRepoPolicy(String repoName, String iamRole) {
       /*
         This example policy document grants the specified AWS principal the
permission to perform the
         `ecr:BatchGetImage` action. This policy is designed to allow the
specified principal
         to retrieve Docker images from the ECR repository.
        */
       String policyDocumentTemplate = """
            {
             "Version" : "2012-10-17",
             "Statement" : [ {
               "Sid" : "new statement",
               "Effect" : "Allow",
               "Principal" : {
                 "AWS" : "%s"
               },
               "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
             } ]
           }
            """;
```

```
        String policyDocument = String.format(policyDocumentTemplate, iamRole);
        SetRepositoryPolicyRequest setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
SetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .policyText(policyDocument)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                System.out.println("Repository policy set successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) {
                    throw (RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) cause;
                } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
                }
            }
        });
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
     * @param iamRole the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
     */
    suspend fun setRepoPolicy(
        repoName: String?,
        iamRole: String?,
    ) {
        val policyDocumentTemplate =
            """
             {
              "Version" : "2012-10-17",
              "Statement" : [ {
                "Sid" : "new statement",
                "Effect" : "Allow",
                "Principal" : {
                  "AWS" : "$iamRole"
                },
                "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
              } ]
            }

            """.trimIndent()
        val setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            SetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                policyText = policyDocumentTemplate
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response =
ecrClient.setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            if (response != null) {
                println("Repository policy set successfully.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon
 ECR client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def set_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str, policy_text: str):
        """
        Sets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to set the policy for.
        :param policy_text: The policy text to set.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.set_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name, policyText=policy_text
            )
            print(f"Set repository policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
 "RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
```

```
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't set repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
%s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

Example that grants an IAM role download access.

```
    def grant_role_download_access(self, role_arn: str):
        """
        Grants the specified role access to download images from the ECR
repository.

        :param role_arn: The ARN of the role to grant access to.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "Version": "2008-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "AllowDownload",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"AWS": role_arn},
                    "Action": ["ecr:BatchGetImage"],
                }
            ],
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.set_repository_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartLifecyclePolicyPreview` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartLifecyclePolicyPreview`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a lifecycle policy preview

The following `start-lifecycle-policy-preview` example creates a lifecycle policy preview defined by a JSON file for the specified repository.

```
aws ecr start-lifecycle-policy-preview \
    --repository-name "project-a/amazon-ecs-sample" \
    --lifecycle-policy-text "file://policy.json"
```

Contents of `policy.json`:

```
{
   "rules": [
       {
           "rulePriority": 1,
           "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
           "selection": {
               "tagStatus": "untagged",
               "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
               "countUnit": "days",
               "countNumber": 14
           },
           "action": {
               "type": "expire"
           }
       }
   ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
   "registryId": "012345678910",
   "repositoryName": "project-a/amazon-ecs-sample",
   "lifecyclePolicyText": "{\n    \"rules\": [\n        {\n
 \"rulePriority\": 1,\n            \"description\": \"Expire images older than 14
 days\",\n            \"selection\": {\n                \"tagStatus\": \"untagged
\",\n                \"countType\": \"sinceImagePushed\",\n
 \"countUnit\": \"days\",\n                \"countNumber\": 14\n            },\n
           \"action\": {\n                \"type\": \"expire\"\n            }\n
      }\n    ]\n}\n",
   "status": "IN_PROGRESS"
}
```

- For API details, see StartLifecyclePolicyPreview in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
 (Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     * @throws EcrException             if there is an error retrieving the image
 information from Amazon ECR.
     * @throws CompletionException      if the asynchronous operation completes
 exceptionally.
     */
    public void verifyImage(String repositoryName, String imageTag) {
        DescribeImagesRequest request = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repositoryName)
```

```
            .imageIds(ImageIdentifier.builder().imageTag(imageTag).build())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeImagesResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().describeImages(request);
        response.whenComplete((describeImagesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof CompletionException) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                        throw (EcrException) cause;
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 ex.getCause());
                }
            } else if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails().isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("Image is present in the repository.");
            } else {
                System.out.println("Image is not present in the repository.");
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see StartLifecyclePolicyPreview in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
 (Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     */
    suspend fun verifyImage(
        repoName: String?,
        imageTagVal: String?,
    ) {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name
 cannot be null or empty" }
        require(!(imageTagVal == null || imageTagVal.isEmpty())) { "Image tag
 cannot be null or empty" }

        val imageId =
            ImageIdentifier {
                imageTag = imageTagVal
            }
        val request =
            DescribeImagesRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                imageIds = listOf(imageId)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeImagesResponse = ecrClient.describeImages(request)
            if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails?.isEmpty()!!) {
                println("Image is present in the repository.")
            } else {
                println("Image is not present in the repository.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartLifecyclePolicyPreview in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Elastic Container Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon ECS Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon ECS.
- **Amazon ECS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon ECS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon ECS

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon ECS.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using Amazon.ECS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
```

```
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace ECSActions;

/// <summary>
/// A class that introduces the Amazon ECS Client by listing the
/// cluster ARNs for the account.
/// </summary>
public class HelloECS
{
    static async System.Threading.Tasks.Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon ECS client.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonECS>()
            )
            .Build();

        var amazonECSClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonECS>();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon ECS! Following are some cluster ARNS
 available in the your account");
        Console.WriteLine();

        var clusters = new List<string>();

        var clustersPaginator = amazonECSClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
 ListClustersRequest());

        await foreach (var response in clustersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            clusters.AddRange(response.ClusterArns);
        }
```

```
        if (clusters.Count > 0)
        {
            clusters.ForEach(cluster =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tARN: {cluster}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Cluster Name: {cluster.Split("/").Last()}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No clusters were found.");
        }

    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon ECS
  - Actions for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateService with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteService with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeServices with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTasks with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListServices with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTasks with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateClusterSettings with a CLI

- Use UpdateService with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs
  - Get ARN information for Amazon ECS clusters, services, and tasks using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Elastic Container Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon ECS
- Actions for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateService with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteService with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeServices with a CLI
  - Use DescribeTasks with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListServices with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTasks with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateClusterSettings with a CLI
  - Use UpdateService with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon ECS

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon ECS.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using Amazon.ECS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace ECSActions;

/// <summary>
/// A class that introduces the Amazon ECS Client by listing the
/// cluster ARNs for the account.
/// </summary>
public class HelloECS
{
    static async System.Threading.Tasks.Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon ECS client.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonECS>()
            )
```

```
            .Build();

        var amazonECSClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonECS>();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon ECS! Following are some cluster ARNS
 available in the your account");
        Console.WriteLine();

        var clusters = new List<string>();

        var clustersPaginator = amazonECSClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
 ListClustersRequest());

        await foreach (var response in clustersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            clusters.AddRange(response.ClusterArns);
        }

        if (clusters.Count > 0)
        {
            clusters.ForEach(cluster =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tARN: {cluster}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Cluster Name: {cluster.Split("/").Last()}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No clusters were found.");
        }

    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon ECS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon ECS API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Elastic Container Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateService with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteService with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeServices with a CLI
- Use DescribeTasks with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListServices with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTasks with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateClusterSettings with a CLI
- Use UpdateService with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a new cluster

The following `create-cluster` example creates a cluster named `MyCluster` and enables CloudWatch Container Insights with enhanced observability.

```
aws ecs create-cluster \
    --cluster-name MyCluster \
    --settings name=containerInsights,value=enhanced
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "clusterName": "MyCluster",
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
        "pendingTasksCount": 0,
        "runningTasksCount": 0,
        "activeServicesCount": 0,
        "statistics": [],
        "settings": [
            {
                "name": "containerInsights",
                "value": "enhanced"
            }
        ],
        "tags": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Cluster in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To create a new cluster using capacity providers

The following `create-cluster` example creates a cluster and associates two existing capacity providers with it. The `create-capacity-provider` command is used to create a capacity provider. Specifying a default capacity provider strategy is optional, but recommended. In this example, we create a cluster named `MyCluster` and associate the `MyCapacityProvider1` and `MyCapacityProvider2` capacity providers with it. A default capacity provider strategy is specified that spreads the tasks evenly across both capacity providers.

```
aws ecs create-cluster \
    --cluster-name MyCluster \
    --capacity-providers MyCapacityProvider1 MyCapacityProvider2 \
    --default-capacity-provider-
strategy capacityProvider=MyCapacityProvider1,weight=1 capacityProvider=MyCapacityProvide
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "clusterName": "MyCluster",
        "status": "PROVISIONING",
        "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
        "pendingTasksCount": 0,
        "runningTasksCount": 0,
        "activeServicesCount": 0,
        "statistics": [],
        "settings": [
            {
                "name": "containerInsights",
                "value": "enabled"
            }
        ],
        "capacityProviders": [
            "MyCapacityProvider1",
            "MyCapacityProvider2"
        ],
        "defaultCapacityProviderStrategy": [
            {
                "capacityProvider": "MyCapacityProvider1",
                "weight": 1,
                "base": 0
            },
            {
                "capacityProvider": "MyCapacityProvider2",
                "weight": 1,
                "base": 0
            }
        ],
        "attachments": [
           {
               "id": "0fb0c8f4-6edd-4de1-9b09-17e470ee1918",
```

```
                "type": "asp",
                "status": "PRECREATED",
                "details": [
                    {
                        "name": "capacityProviderName",
                        "value": "MyCapacityProvider1"
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "scalingPlanName",
                        "value": "ECSManagedAutoScalingPlan-a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-EXAMPLE11111"
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "id": "ae592060-2382-4663-9476-b015c685593c",
                "type": "asp",
                "status": "PRECREATED",
                "details": [
                    {
                        "name": "capacityProviderName",
                        "value": "MyCapacityProvider2"
                    },
                    {
                        "name": "scalingPlanName",
                        "value": "ECSManagedAutoScalingPlan-a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-EXAMPLE22222"
                    }
                ]
            }
        ],
        "attachmentsStatus": "UPDATE_IN_PROGRESS"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Cluster capacity providers in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To create a new cluster with multiple tags

The following `create-cluster` example creates a cluster with multiple tags. For more information about adding tags using shorthand syntax, see Using Shorthand Syntax with the AWS Command Line Interface in the *AWS CLI User Guide*.

```
aws ecs create-cluster \
    --cluster-name MyCluster \
    --tags key=key1,value=value1 key=key2,value=value2
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "clusterName": "MyCluster",
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
        "pendingTasksCount": 0,
        "runningTasksCount": 0,
        "activeServicesCount": 0,
        "statistics": [],
        "tags": [
            {
                "key": "key1",
                "value": "value1"
            },
            {
                "key": "key2",
                "value": "value2"
            }
        ]
     }
 }
```

For more information, see Creating a Cluster in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ExecuteCommandConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ExecuteCommandLogging;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ClusterConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateClusterRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateCluster {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <clusterName>\s

                Where:
                   clusterName - The name of the ECS cluster to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String clusterArn = createGivenCluster(ecsClient, clusterName);
        System.out.println("The cluster ARN is " + clusterArn);
        ecsClient.close();
```

```
    }

    public static String createGivenCluster(EcsClient ecsClient, String
 clusterName) {
        try {
            ExecuteCommandConfiguration commandConfiguration =
 ExecuteCommandConfiguration.builder()
                    .logging(ExecuteCommandLogging.DEFAULT)
                    .build();

            ClusterConfiguration clusterConfiguration =
 ClusterConfiguration.builder()
                    .executeCommandConfiguration(commandConfiguration)
                    .build();

            CreateClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateClusterRequest.builder()
                    .clusterName(clusterName)
                    .configuration(clusterConfiguration)
                    .build();

            CreateClusterResponse response =
 ecsClient.createCluster(clusterRequest);
            return response.cluster().clusterArn();

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet creates a new Amazon ECS cluster.

```
New-ECSCluster -ClusterName "LAB-ECS-CL" -Setting @{Name="containerInsights";
 Value="enabled"}
```

Output:

```
ActiveServicesCount               : 0
Attachments                       : {}
AttachmentsStatus                 :
CapacityProviders                 : {}
ClusterArn                        : arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/
LAB-ECS-CL
ClusterName                       : LAB-ECS-CL
DefaultCapacityProviderStrategy   : {}
PendingTasksCount                 : 0
RegisteredContainerInstancesCount : 0
RunningTasksCount                 : 0
Settings                          : {containerInsights}
Statistics                        : {}
Status                            : ACTIVE
Tags                              : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates a new Amazon ECS cluster.

```
New-ECSCluster -ClusterName "LAB-ECS-CL" -Setting @{Name="containerInsights";
 Value="enabled"}
```

Output:

```
ActiveServicesCount               : 0
Attachments                       : {}
AttachmentsStatus                 :
CapacityProviders                 : {}
ClusterArn                        : arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/
LAB-ECS-CL
ClusterName                       : LAB-ECS-CL
DefaultCapacityProviderStrategy   : {}
PendingTasksCount                 : 0
RegisteredContainerInstancesCount : 0
RunningTasksCount                 : 0
```

```
Settings                          : {containerInsights}
Statistics                        : {}
Status                            : ACTIVE
Tags                              : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_cluster(client: &aws_sdk_ecs::Client, name: &str) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_ecs::Error> {
    let cluster = client.create_cluster().cluster_name(name).send().await?;
    println!("cluster created: {:?}", cluster);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateService` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateService`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a service with a Fargate task

The following `create-service` example shows how to create a service using a Fargate task.

```
aws ecs create-service \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --service-name MyService \
    --task-definition sample-fargate:1 \
    --desired-count 2 \
    --launch-type FARGATE \
    --platform-version LATEST \
    --network-configuration
 'awsvpcConfiguration={subnets=[subnet-12344321],securityGroups=[sg-12344321],assignPubli
 \
    --tags key=key1,value=value1 key=key2,value=value2 key=key3,value=value3
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/MyCluster/
MyService",
        "serviceName": "MyService",
          "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 0,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "FARGATE",
        "platformVersion": "LATEST",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
sample-fargate:1",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/1234567890123456789",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/sample-fargate:1",
                "desiredCount": 2,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 0,
```

```
                "createdAt": 1557119253.821,
                "updatedAt": 1557119253.821,
                "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.3.0",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                }
            }
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [],
        "createdAt": 1557119253.821,
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-12344321"
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-12344321"
                ],
                "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
            }
        },
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "tags": [
            {
                "key": "key1",
                "value": "value1"
            },
            {
                "key": "key2",
                "value": "value2"
            },
```

```
            {
                "key": "key3",
                "value": "value3"
            }
        ],
        "enableECSManagedTags": false,
        "propagateTags": "NONE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Service in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To create a service using the EC2 launch type

The following `create-service` example shows how to create a service called `ecs-simple-service` with a task that uses the EC2 launch type. The service uses the `sleep360` task definition and it maintains 1 instantiation of the task.

```
aws ecs create-service \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --service-name ecs-simple-service \
    --task-definition sleep360:2 \
    --desired-count 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/MyCluster/ecs-
simple-service",
        "serviceName": "ecs-simple-service",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 1,
        "runningCount": 0,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "EC2",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
sleep360:2",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
```

```
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/1234567890123456789",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/sleep360:2",
                "desiredCount": 1,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 0,
                "createdAt": 1557206498.798,
                "updatedAt": 1557206498.798,
                "launchType": "EC2"
            }
        ],
        "events": [],
        "createdAt": 1557206498.798,
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "enableECSManagedTags": false,
        "propagateTags": "NONE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Service in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To create a service that uses an external deployment controller

The following `create-service` example creates a service that uses an external deployment controller.

```
aws ecs create-service \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --service-name MyService \
    --deployment-controller type=EXTERNAL \
    --desired-count 1
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/MyCluster/
MyService",
        "serviceName": "MyService",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 1,
        "runningCount": 0,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "EC2",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100
        },
        "taskSets": [],
        "deployments": [],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [],
        "createdAt": 1557128207.101,
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "EXTERNAL"
        },
        "enableECSManagedTags": false,
        "propagateTags": "NONE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Service in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To create a new service behind a load balancer

The following `create-service` example shows how to create a service that is behind a load balancer. You must have a load balancer configured in the same Region as your container instance. This example uses the `--cli-input-json` option and a JSON input file called `ecs-simple-service-elb.json` with the following content.

```
aws ecs create-service \
```

```
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --service-name ecs-simple-service-elb \
    --cli-input-json file://ecs-simple-service-elb.json
```

Contents of `ecs-simple-service-elb.json`:

```
 {
    "serviceName": "ecs-simple-service-elb",
    "taskDefinition": "ecs-demo",
    "loadBalancers": [
        {
            "loadBalancerName": "EC2Contai-EcsElast-123456789012",
            "containerName": "simple-demo",
            "containerPort": 80
        }
    ],
    "desiredCount": 10,
    "role": "ecsServiceRole"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
ecs-demo:1",
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "loadBalancers": [
            {
                "containerName": "ecs-demo",
                "containerPort": 80,
                "loadBalancerName": "EC2Contai-EcsElast-123456789012"
            }
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/ecsServiceRole",
        "desiredCount": 10,
        "serviceName": "ecs-simple-service-elb",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/ecs-simple-
service-elb",
        "deployments": [
            {
```

```
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "createdAt": 1428100239.123,
                "desiredCount": 10,
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/ecs-demo:1",
                "updatedAt": 1428100239.123,
                "id": "ecs-svc/1234567890123456789",
                "runningCount": 0
            }
        ],
        "events": [],
        "runningCount": 0
    }
}
```

For more information, see Use load balancing to distribute Amazon ECS service traffic in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To configure Amazon EBS volumes at service creation

The following `create-service` example shows how to configure Amazon EBS volumes for each task managed by the service. You must have an Amazon ECS infrastructure role configured with the `AmazonECSInfrastructureRolePolicyForVolumes` managed policy attached. You must specify a task definition with the same volume name as in the `create-service` request. This example uses the `--cli-input-json` option and a JSON input file called `ecs-simple-service-ebs.json` with the following content.

```
aws ecs create-service \
    --cli-input-json file://ecs-simple-service-ebs.json
```

Contents of `ecs-simple-service-ebs.json`:

```
{
    "cluster": "mycluster",
    "taskDefinition": "mytaskdef",
    "serviceName": "ecs-simple-service-ebs",
    "desiredCount": 2,
    "launchType": "FARGATE",
    "networkConfiguration":{
        "awsvpcConfiguration":{
            "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED",
```

```
            "securityGroups": ["sg-12344321"],
            "subnets":["subnet-12344321"]
        }
    },
    "volumeConfigurations": [
        {
            "name": "myEbsVolume",
            "managedEBSVolume": {
                "roleArn":"arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/ecsInfrastructureRole",
                "volumeType": "gp3",
                "sizeInGiB": 100,
                "iops": 3000,
                "throughput": 125,
                "filesystemType": "ext4"
            }
        }
   ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/mycluster/ecs-
simple-service-ebs",
        "serviceName": "ecs-simple-service-ebs",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/mycluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 0,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "EC2",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
mytaskdef:3",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "deploymentCircuitBreaker": {
                "enable": false,
                "rollback": false
            },
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100
```

```
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/7851020056849183687",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/mytaskdef:3",
                "desiredCount": 0,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 0,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-01-21T11:32:38.034000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-01-21T11:32:38.034000-06:00",
                "launchType": "EC2",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "DISABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "IN_PROGRESS",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/7851020056849183687
 in progress.",
                "volumeConfigurations": [
                    {
                        "name": "myEBSVolume",
                        "managedEBSVolume": {
                            "volumeType": "gp3",
                            "sizeInGiB": 100,
                            "iops": 3000,
                            "throughput": 125,
                            "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
ecsInfrastructureRole",
                            "filesystemType": "ext4"
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        ],
```

```
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [],
        "createdAt": "2025-01-21T11:32:38.034000-06:00",
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-12344321"
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-12344321"
                ],
                "assignPublicIp": "DISABLED"
            }
        },
        "healthCheckGracePeriodSeconds": 0,
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "ECS"
        },
        "createdBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE",
        "enableECSManagedTags": false,
        "propagateTags": "NONE",
        "enableExecuteCommand": false,
        "availabilityZoneRebalancing": "DISABLED"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Use Amazon EBS volumes with Amazon ECS in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateService in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.AwsVpcConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.NetworkConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateServiceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.LaunchType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateServiceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateService {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:
                                  <clusterName> <serviceName> <securityGroups>
 <subnets> <taskDefinition>

                                Where:
                                  clusterName - The name of the ECS cluster.
                                  serviceName - The name of the ECS service to
 create.
                                  securityGroups - The name of the security
 group.
```

```
                                subnets - The name of the subnet.
                                taskDefinition - The name of the task
definition.
                            """;

               if (args.length != 5) {
                       System.out.println(usage);
                       System.exit(1);
               }

               String clusterName = args[0];
               String serviceName = args[1];
               String securityGroups = args[2];
               String subnets = args[3];
               String taskDefinition = args[4];
               Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
               EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                               .region(region)
                               .build();

               String serviceArn = createNewService(ecsClient, clusterName,
serviceName, securityGroups, subnets,
                               taskDefinition);
               System.out.println("The ARN of the service is " + serviceArn);
               ecsClient.close();
       }

       public static String createNewService(EcsClient ecsClient,
                       String clusterName,
                       String serviceName,
                       String securityGroups,
                       String subnets,
                       String taskDefinition) {

               try {
                       AwsVpcConfiguration vpcConfiguration =
AwsVpcConfiguration.builder()
                                       .securityGroups(securityGroups)
                                       .subnets(subnets)
                                       .build();

                       NetworkConfiguration configuration =
NetworkConfiguration.builder()
                                       .awsvpcConfiguration(vpcConfiguration)
```

```
                                        .build();

                        CreateServiceRequest serviceRequest =
 CreateServiceRequest.builder()
                                        .cluster(clusterName)
                                        .networkConfiguration(configuration)
                                        .desiredCount(1)
                                        .launchType(LaunchType.FARGATE)
                                        .serviceName(serviceName)
                                        .taskDefinition(taskDefinition)
                                        .build();

                        CreateServiceResponse response =
 ecsClient.createService(serviceRequest);
                        return response.service().serviceArn();

                } catch (EcsException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
                return "";
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateService in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example command creates a service in your default cluster called `ecs-simple-service`. The service uses the `ecs-demo` task definition and it maintains 10 instantiations of that task.

```
New-ECSService -ServiceName ecs-simple-service -TaskDefinition ecs-demo -
DesiredCount 10
```

Example 2: This example command creates a service behind a load balancer in your default cluster called `ecs-simple-service`. The service uses the `ecs-demo` task definition and it maintains 10 instantiations of that task.

```
$lb = @{
    LoadBalancerName = "EC2Contai-EcsElast-S06278JGSJCM"
    ContainerName = "simple-demo"
    ContainerPort = 80
}
New-ECSService -ServiceName ecs-simple-service -TaskDefinition ecs-demo -
DesiredCount 10 -LoadBalancer $lb
```

- For API details, see CreateService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example command creates a service in your default cluster called `ecs-simple-service`. The service uses the `ecs-demo` task definition and it maintains 10 instantiations of that task.

```
New-ECSService -ServiceName ecs-simple-service -TaskDefinition ecs-demo -
DesiredCount 10
```

Example 2: This example command creates a service behind a load balancer in your default cluster called `ecs-simple-service`. The service uses the `ecs-demo` task definition and it maintains 10 instantiations of that task.

```
$lb = @{
    LoadBalancerName = "EC2Contai-EcsElast-S06278JGSJCM"
    ContainerName = "simple-demo"
    ContainerPort = 80
}
New-ECSService -ServiceName ecs-simple-service -TaskDefinition ecs-demo -
DesiredCount 10 -LoadBalancer $lb
```

- For API details, see CreateService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an empty cluster

The following `delete-cluster` example deletes the specified empty cluster.

```
aws ecs delete-cluster --cluster MyCluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "status": "INACTIVE",
        "clusterName": "MyCluster",
        "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
        "pendingTasksCount": 0,
        "runningTasksCount": 0,
        "activeServicesCount": 0
        "statistics": [],
        "tags": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting a Cluster in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified ECS cluster. You must deregister all container instances from this cluster before you may delete it.

```
Remove-ECSCluster -Cluster "LAB-ECS"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ECSCluster (DeleteCluster)" on target "LAB-ECS".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified ECS cluster. You must deregister all container instances from this cluster before you may delete it.

```
Remove-ECSCluster -Cluster "LAB-ECS"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ECSCluster (DeleteCluster)" on target "LAB-ECS".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn remove_cluster(
    client: &aws_sdk_ecs::Client,
    name: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_ecs::Error> {
    let cluster_deleted = client.delete_cluster().cluster(name).send().await?;
    println!("cluster deleted: {:?}", cluster_deleted);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteService` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteService`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a service

The following `ecs delete-service` example deletes the specified service from a cluster. You can include the `--force` parameter to delete a service even if it has not been scaled to zero tasks.

```
aws ecs delete-service --cluster MyCluster --service MyService1 --force
```

For more information, see Deleting a Service in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteService in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DeleteServiceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DeleteService {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <clusterName> <serviceArn>\s

                Where:
                  clusterName - The name of the ECS cluster.
                  serviceArn - The ARN of the ECS service.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterName = args[0];
        String serviceArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteSpecificService(ecsClient, clusterName, serviceArn);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSpecificService(EcsClient ecsClient, String
 clusterName, String serviceArn) {
        try {
            DeleteServiceRequest serviceRequest = DeleteServiceRequest.builder()
                    .cluster(clusterName)
                    .service(serviceArn)
                    .build();

            ecsClient.deleteService(serviceRequest);
            System.out.println("The Service was successfully deleted");

        } catch (EcsException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteService in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the service named 'my-http-service' in the default cluster. The service must have a desired count and running count of 0 before you can delete it. You are prompted for confirmation before the command proceeds. To bypass the confirmation prompt add the -Force switch.

```
Remove-ECSService -Service my-http-service
```

Example 2: Deletes the service named 'my-http-service' in the named cluster.

```
Remove-ECSService -Cluster myCluster -Service my-http-service
```

- For API details, see DeleteService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the service named 'my-http-service' in the default cluster. The service must have a desired count and running count of 0 before you can delete it. You are prompted for confirmation before the command proceeds. To bypass the confirmation prompt add the -Force switch.

```
Remove-ECSService -Service my-http-service
```

Example 2: Deletes the service named 'my-http-service' in the named cluster.

```
Remove-ECSService -Cluster myCluster -Service my-http-service
```

- For API details, see DeleteService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeClusters` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeClusters`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a cluster

The following `describe-clusters` example retrieves details about the specified cluster.

```
aws ecs describe-clusters \
    --cluster default
```

Output:

```
{
    "clusters": [
        {
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "clusterName": "default",
            "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
            "pendingTasksCount": 0,
            "runningTasksCount": 0,
            "activeServicesCount": 1,
            "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/default"
        }
    ],
    "failures": []
}
```

For more information, see Amazon ECS Clusters in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To describe a cluster with the attachment option

The following `describe-clusters` example specifies the ATTACHMENTS option. It retrieves details about the specified cluster and a list of resources attached to the cluster in the form of attachments. When using a capacity provider with a cluster, the resources, either AutoScaling plans or scaling policies, will be represented as asp or as_policy ATTACHMENTS.

```
aws ecs describe-clusters \
    --include ATTACHMENTS \
    --clusters sampleCluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "clusters": [
        {
            "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:af-south-1:123456789222:cluster/
sampleCluster",
            "clusterName": "sampleCluster",
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
            "runningTasksCount": 0,
            "pendingTasksCount": 0,
            "activeServicesCount": 0,
            "statistics": [],
            "tags": [],
            "settings": [],
            "capacityProviders": [
                "sampleCapacityProvider"
            ],
            "defaultCapacityProviderStrategy": [],
            "attachments": [
                {
                    "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-901b-cdef-EXAMPLE22222",
                    "type": "as_policy",
                    "status": "CREATED",
                    "details": [
                        {
                            "name": "capacityProviderName",
                            "value": "sampleCapacityProvider"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "scalingPolicyName",
                            "value": "ECSManagedAutoScalingPolicy-3048e262-
fe39-4eaf-826d-6f975d303188"
                        }
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "attachmentsStatus": "UPDATE_COMPLETE"
```

```
        }
    ],
    "failures": []
}
```

For more information, see Amazon ECS Clusters in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeClustersRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeClustersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.Cluster;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <clusterArn> \s
```

```
                Where:
                  clusterArn - The ARN of the ECS cluster to describe.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterArn = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        descCluster(ecsClient, clusterArn);
    }

    public static void descCluster(EcsClient ecsClient, String clusterArn) {
        try {
            DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest =
 DescribeClustersRequest.builder()
                    .clusters(clusterArn)
                    .build();

            DescribeClustersResponse response =
 ecsClient.describeClusters(clustersRequest);
            List<Cluster> clusters = response.clusters();
            for (Cluster cluster : clusters) {
                System.out.println("The cluster name is " +
 cluster.clusterName());
            }

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet describes one or more of your ECS clusters.

```
Get-ECSClusterDetail -Cluster "LAB-ECS-CL" -Include SETTINGS | Select-Object *
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt         : 12/27/2019 9:27:41 PM
Clusters         : {LAB-ECS-CL}
Failures         : {}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 396
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet describes one or more of your ECS clusters.

```
Get-ECSClusterDetail -Cluster "LAB-ECS-CL" -Include SETTINGS | Select-Object *
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt         : 12/27/2019 9:27:41 PM
Clusters         : {LAB-ECS-CL}
Failures         : {}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 396
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_clusters(client: &aws_sdk_ecs::Client) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_ecs::Error> {
    let resp = client.list_clusters().send().await?;

    let cluster_arns = resp.cluster_arns();
    println!("Found {} clusters:", cluster_arns.len());

    let clusters = client
        .describe_clusters()
        .set_clusters(Some(cluster_arns.into()))
        .send()
        .await?;

    for cluster in clusters.clusters() {
        println!("  ARN:  {}", cluster.cluster_arn().unwrap());
        println!("  Name: {}", cluster.cluster_name().unwrap());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeServices` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeServices`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a service

The following `describe-services` example retrieves details for the `my-http-service` service in the default cluster.

```
aws ecs describe-services --services my-http-service
```

Output:

```
{
    "services": [
        {
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/amazon-ecs-sample:1",
            "pendingCount": 0,
            "loadBalancers": [],
            "desiredCount": 10,
            "createdAt": 1466801808.595,
            "serviceName": "my-http-service",
            "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/default",
            "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/my-http-
service",
            "deployments": [
                {
                    "status": "PRIMARY",
                    "pendingCount": 0,
                    "createdAt": 1466801808.595,
                    "desiredCount": 10,
                    "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/amazon-ecs-sample:1",
                    "updatedAt": 1428326312.703,
                    "id": "ecs-svc/1234567890123456789",
                    "runningCount": 10
                }
            ],
            "events": [
                {
```

```
                    "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state.",
                    "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
                    "createdAt": 1466801812.435
                }
            ],
            "runningCount": 10
        }
    ],
    "failures": []
}
```

For more information, see Services in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to retrieve details of a specific service from your default cluster.

```
Get-ECSService -Service my-hhtp-service
```

Example 2: This example shows how to retrieve details of a specific service running in the named cluster.

```
Get-ECSService -Cluster myCluster -Service my-hhtp-service
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to retrieve details of a specific service from your default cluster.

```
Get-ECSService -Service my-hhtp-service
```

Example 2: This example shows how to retrieve details of a specific service running in the named cluster.

```
Get-ECSService -Cluster myCluster -Service my-hhtp-service
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTasks` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTasks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Exampe 1: To describe a single task tasks

The following `describe-tasks` example retrieves the details of a task in a cluster. You can specify the task by using either the ID or full ARN of the task. This example uses the full ARN of the task.

```
aws ecs describe-tasks \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --tasks arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/
MyCluster/4d590253bb114126b7afa7b58EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "tasks": [
        {
            "attachments": [],
            "attributes": [
                {
                    "name": "ecs.cpu-architecture",
                    "value": "x86_64"
                }
            ],
            "availabilityZone": "us-east-1b",
            "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
            "connectivity": "CONNECTED",
            "connectivityAt": "2021-08-11T12:21:26.681000-04:00",
            "containerInstanceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-
east-1:123456789012:container-instance/test/025c7e2c5e054a6790a29fc1fEXAMPLE",
            "containers": [
```

```
                {
                    "containerArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-
east-1:123456789012:container/MyCluster/4d590253bb114126b7afa7b58eea9221/
a992d1cc-ea46-474a-b6e8-24688EXAMPLE",
                    "taskArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/
MyCluster/4d590253bb114126b7afa7b58EXAMPLE",
                    "name": "simple-app",
                    "image": "httpd:2.4",
                    "runtimeId":
 "91251eed27db90006ad67b1a08187290869f216557717dd5c39b37c94EXAMPLE",
                    "lastStatus": "RUNNING",
                    "networkBindings": [
                        {
                            "bindIP": "0.0.0.0",
                            "containerPort": 80,
                            "hostPort": 80,
                            "protocol": "tcp"
                        }
                    ],
                    "networkInterfaces": [],
                    "healthStatus": "UNKNOWN",
                    "cpu": "10",
                    "memory": "300"
                }
            ],
            "cpu": "10",
            "createdAt": "2021-08-11T12:21:26.681000-04:00",
            "desiredStatus": "RUNNING",
            "enableExecuteCommand": false,
            "group": "service:testupdate",
            "healthStatus": "UNKNOWN",
            "lastStatus": "RUNNING",
            "launchType": "EC2",
            "memory": "300",
            "overrides": {
                "containerOverrides": [
                    {
                        "name": "simple-app"
                    }
                ],
                "inferenceAcceleratorOverrides": []
            },
            "pullStartedAt": "2021-08-11T12:21:28.234000-04:00",
            "pullStoppedAt": "2021-08-11T12:21:33.793000-04:00",
```

```
            "startedAt": "2021-08-11T12:21:34.945000-04:00",
            "startedBy": "ecs-svc/968695068243EXAMPLE",
            "tags": [],
            "taskArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/
MyCluster/4d590253bb114126b7afa7b58eea9221",
            "taskDefinitionArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-
definition/console-sample-app-static2:1",
            "version": 2
        }
    ],
    "failures": []
}
```

For more information, see Amazon ECS Task Definitions in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Exampe 2: To describe multiple tasks

The following `describe-tasks` example retrieves the details of multiple tasks in a cluster. You can specify the task by using either the ID or full ARN of the task. This example uses the full IDs of the tasks.

```
aws ecs describe-tasks \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --tasks "74de0355a10a4f979ac495c14EXAMPLE" "d789e94343414c25b9f6bd59eEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "tasks": [
        {
            "attachments": [
                {
                    "id": "d9e7735a-16aa-4128-bc7a-b2d51EXAMPLE",
                    "type": "ElasticNetworkInterface",
                    "status": "ATTACHED",
                    "details": [
                        {
                            "name": "subnetId",
                            "value": "subnet-0d0eab1bb3EXAMPLE"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "networkInterfaceId",
                            "value": "eni-0fa40520aeEXAMPLE"
```

```
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "macAddress",
                            "value": "0e:89:76:28:07:b3"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "privateDnsName",
                            "value": "ip-10-0-1-184.ec2.internal"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "privateIPv4Address",
                            "value": "10.0.1.184"
                        }
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "attributes": [
                {
                    "name": "ecs.cpu-architecture",
                    "value": "x86_64"
                }
            ],
            "availabilityZone": "us-east-1b",
            "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
            "connectivity": "CONNECTED",
            "connectivityAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:37.875000-05:00",
            "containers": [
                {
                    "containerArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-
east-1:123456789012:container/MyCluster/74de0355a10a4f979ac495c14EXAMPLE/
aad3ba00-83b3-4dac-84d4-11f8cEXAMPLE",
                    "taskArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/
MyCluster/74de0355a10a4f979ac495c14EXAMPLE",
                    "name": "web",
                    "image": "nginx",
                    "runtimeId": "74de0355a10a4f979ac495c14EXAMPLE-265927825",
                    "lastStatus": "RUNNING",
                    "networkBindings": [],
                    "networkInterfaces": [
                        {
                            "attachmentId": "d9e7735a-16aa-4128-bc7a-
b2d51EXAMPLE",
                            "privateIpv4Address": "10.0.1.184"
                        }
```

```
                    ],
                    "healthStatus": "UNKNOWN",
                    "cpu": "99",
                    "memory": "100"
                }
            ],
            "cpu": "256",
            "createdAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:20.226000-05:00",
            "desiredStatus": "RUNNING",
            "enableExecuteCommand": false,
            "group": "service:tdsevicetag",
            "healthStatus": "UNKNOWN",
            "lastStatus": "RUNNING",
            "launchType": "FARGATE",
            "memory": "512",
            "overrides": {
                "containerOverrides": [
                    {
                        "name": "web"
                    }
                ],
                "inferenceAcceleratorOverrides": []
            },
            "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
            "platformFamily": "Linux",
            "pullStartedAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:42.665000-05:00",
            "pullStoppedAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:46.543000-05:00",
            "startedAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:48.086000-05:00",
            "startedBy": "ecs-svc/988401040018EXAMPLE",
            "tags": [],
            "taskArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/
MyCluster/74de0355a10a4f979ac495c14EXAMPLE",
            "taskDefinitionArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-
definition/webserver:2",
            "version": 3,
            "ephemeralStorage": {
            "sizeInGiB": 20
            }
        },
        {
            "attachments": [
                {
                    "id": "214eb5a9-45cd-4bf8-87bc-57fefEXAMPLE",
                    "type": "ElasticNetworkInterface",
```

```
                    "status": "ATTACHED",
                    "details": [
                        {
                            "name": "subnetId",
                            "value": "subnet-0d0eab1bb3EXAMPLE"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "networkInterfaceId",
                            "value": "eni-064c7766daEXAMPLE"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "macAddress",
                            "value": "0e:76:83:01:17:a9"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "privateDnsName",
                            "value": "ip-10-0-1-41.ec2.internal"
                        },
                        {
                            "name": "privateIPv4Address",
                            "value": "10.0.1.41"
                        }
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "attributes": [
                {
                    "name": "ecs.cpu-architecture",
                    "value": "x86_64"
                }
            ],
            "availabilityZone": "us-east-1b",
            "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
            "connectivity": "CONNECTED",
            "connectivityAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:35.243000-05:00",
            "containers": [
                {
                    "containerArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-
east-1:123456789012:container/MyCluster/
d789e94343414c25b9f6bd59eEXAMPLE/9afef792-609b-43a5-bb6a-3efdbEXAMPLE",
                    "taskArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/
MyCluster/d789e94343414c25b9f6bd59eEXAMPLE",
                    "name": "web",
                    "image": "nginx",
```

```
                    "runtimeId": "d789e94343414c25b9f6bd59eEXAMPLE-265927825",
                    "lastStatus": "RUNNING",
                    "networkBindings": [],
                    "networkInterfaces": [
                        {
                            "attachmentId":
 "214eb5a9-45cd-4bf8-87bc-57fefEXAMPLE",
                            "privateIpv4Address": "10.0.1.41"
                        }
                    ],
                    "healthStatus": "UNKNOWN",
                    "cpu": "99",
                    "memory": "100"
                }
            ],
            "cpu": "256",
            "createdAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:20.226000-05:00",
            "desiredStatus": "RUNNING",
            "enableExecuteCommand": false,
            "group": "service:tdsevicetag",
            "healthStatus": "UNKNOWN",
            "lastStatus": "RUNNING",
            "launchType": "FARGATE",
            "memory": "512",
            "overrides": {
                "containerOverrides": [
                    {
                        "name": "web"
                    }
                ],
                "inferenceAcceleratorOverrides": []
            },
            "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
            "platformFamily": "Linux",
            "pullStartedAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:44.611000-05:00",
            "pullStoppedAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:48.251000-05:00",
            "startedAt": "2021-12-20T12:13:49.326000-05:00",
            "startedBy": "ecs-svc/988401040018EXAMPLE",
            "tags": [],
            "taskArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task/MyCluster/
d789e94343414c25b9f6bd59eEXAMPLE",
            "taskDefinitionArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-
definition/webserver:2",
            "version": 3,
```

```
            "ephemeralStorage": {
                "sizeInGiB": 20
            }
        }
    ],
    "failures": []
}
```

For more information, see Amazon ECS Task Definitions in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeTasksRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeTasksResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.Task;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListTaskDefinitions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                  <clusterArn> <taskId>\s

                Where:
                  clusterArn - The ARN of an ECS cluster.
                  taskId - The task Id value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterArn = args[0];
        String taskId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getAllTasks(ecsClient, clusterArn, taskId);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getAllTasks(EcsClient ecsClient, String clusterArn, String
taskId) {
        try {
            DescribeTasksRequest tasksRequest = DescribeTasksRequest.builder()
                    .cluster(clusterArn)
                    .tasks(taskId)
                    .build();

            DescribeTasksResponse response =
ecsClient.describeTasks(tasksRequest);
            List<Task> tasks = response.tasks();
            for (Task task : tasks) {
                System.out.println("The task ARN is " +
task.taskDefinitionArn());
            }

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTasks in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListClusters` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListClusters`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get ARN information for clusters, services, and tasks

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List cluster ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetClusterARNSAsync()
    {

        Console.WriteLine("Getting a list of all the clusters in your AWS
account...");
        List<string> clusterArnList = new List<string>();
        // Get a list of all the clusters in your AWS account
        try
        {
```

```
            var listClustersResponse = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
ListClustersRequest
            {
            });

            var clusterArns = listClustersResponse.ClusterArns;

            // Print the ARNs of the clusters
            await foreach (var clusterArn in clusterArns)
            {
                clusterArnList.Add(clusterArn);
            }

            if (clusterArnList.Count == 0)
            {
                _logger.LogWarning("No clusters found in your AWS account.");
            }
            return clusterArnList;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
            throw new Exception($"An error occurred while getting a list of all
the clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your available clusters

The following `list-clusters` example lists all of the available clusters.

```
aws ecs list-clusters
```

Output:

```
{
    "clusterArns": [
        "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/MyECSCluster1",
        "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/AnotherECSCluster"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Amazon ECS Clusters in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ListClustersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class ListClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllClusters(ecsClient);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllClusters(EcsClient ecsClient) {
        try {
            ListClustersResponse response = ecsClient.listClusters();
            List<String> clusters = response.clusterArns();
            for (String cluster : clusters) {
                System.out.println("The cluster arn is " + cluster);
            }

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet returns a list of existing ECS clusters.

```
Get-ECSClusterList
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-ECS-CL
arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-ECS
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns a list of existing ECS clusters.

```
Get-ECSClusterList
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-ECS-CL
arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-ECS
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListServices` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListServices`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get ARN information for clusters, services, and tasks

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List service ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of services in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetServiceARNSAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        List<string> serviceArns = new List<string>();

        var request = new ListServicesRequest
        {
```

```
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        // Call the ListServices API operation and get the list of service ARNs
        var serviceList = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListServices(request);

        await foreach (var serviceARN in serviceList.ServiceArns)
        {
            if (serviceARN is null)
                continue;

            serviceArns.Add(serviceARN);
        }

        if (serviceArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"No services found in cluster {clusterARN} .");
        }

        return serviceArns;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the services in a cluster

The following `list-services` example shows how to list the services running in a cluster.

```
aws ecs list-services --cluster MyCluster
```

Output:

```
 {
     "serviceArns": [
         "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/MyCluster/MyService"
     ]
}
```

For more information, see Services in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all services running in your default cluster.

```
Get-ECSClusterService
```

Example 2: This example lists all services running in the specified cluster.

```
Get-ECSClusterService -Cluster myCluster
```

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all services running in your default cluster.

```
Get-ECSClusterService
```

Example 2: This example lists all services running in the specified cluster.

```
Get-ECSClusterService -Cluster myCluster
```

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListTasks` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTasks`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get ARN information for clusters, services, and tasks

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List task ARNs available.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
/// <returns>The ARN list of tasks in given cluster.</returns>
public async Task<List<string>> GetTaskARNsAsync(string clusterARN)
{
    // Set up the request to describe the tasks in the service
    var listTasksRequest = new ListTasksRequest
    {
        Cluster = clusterARN
    };
    List<string> taskArns = new List<string>();

    // Call the ListTasks API operation and get the list of task ARNs
    var tasks = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListTasks(listTasksRequest);

    await foreach (var task in tasks.TaskArns)
    {
        if (task is null)
            continue;


        taskArns.Add(task);
    }

    if (taskArns.Count == 0)
    {
        _logger.LogWarning("No tasks found in cluster: " + clusterARN);
    }

    return taskArns;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTasks in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list the tasks in a cluster

The following `list-tasks` example lists all of the tasks in a cluster.

```
aws ecs list-tasks --cluster default
```

Output:

```
{
    "taskArns": [
        "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task/a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
        "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task/a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-22222EXAMPLE"
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list the tasks on a particular container instance

The following `list-tasks` example lists the tasks on a container instance, using the container instance UUID as a filter.

```
aws ecs list-tasks --cluster default --container-instance a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-33333EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "taskArns": [
        "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task/a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-44444EXAMPLE"
    ]
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Amazon ECS Task Definitions in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `UpdateClusterSettings` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateClusterSettings`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the settings for your cluster

The following `update-cluster-settings` example enables CloudWatch Container Insights with enhanced observability for the `MyCluster` cluster.

```
aws ecs update-cluster-settings \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --settings name=containerInsights,value=enhanced
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-esat-1:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "clusterName": "default",
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "registeredContainerInstancesCount": 0,
        "runningTasksCount": 0,
        "pendingTasksCount": 0,
        "activeServicesCount": 0,
        "statistics": [],
        "tags": [],
        "settings": [
            {
                "name": "containerInsights",
                "value": "enhanced"
            }
        ]
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Modifying Account Settings in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateClusterSettings in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet modifies the settings to use for an ECS cluster.

```
Update-ECSClusterSetting -Cluster "LAB-ECS-CL" -Setting
 @{Name="containerInsights"; Value="disabled"}
```

Output:

```
ActiveServicesCount               : 0
Attachments                       : {}
AttachmentsStatus                 :
CapacityProviders                 : {}
ClusterArn                        : arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/
LAB-ECS-CL
ClusterName                       : LAB-ECS-CL
DefaultCapacityProviderStrategy   : {}
PendingTasksCount                 : 0
RegisteredContainerInstancesCount : 0
RunningTasksCount                 : 0
Settings                          : {containerInsights}
Statistics                        : {}
Status                            : ACTIVE
Tags                              : {}
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet modifies the settings to use for an ECS cluster.

```
Update-ECSClusterSetting -Cluster "LAB-ECS-CL" -Setting
 @{Name="containerInsights"; Value="disabled"}
```

Output:

```
ActiveServicesCount               : 0
Attachments                       : {}
AttachmentsStatus                 :
CapacityProviders                 : {}
ClusterArn                        : arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/
LAB-ECS-CL
ClusterName                       : LAB-ECS-CL
DefaultCapacityProviderStrategy   : {}
PendingTasksCount                 : 0
RegisteredContainerInstancesCount : 0
RunningTasksCount                 : 0
Settings                          : {containerInsights}
Statistics                        : {}
Status                            : ACTIVE
Tags                              : {}
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateService` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateService`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To change the task definition used in a service

The following `update-service` example updates the `my-http-service` service to use the `amazon-ecs-sample` task definition.

```
aws ecs update-service \
    --cluster test \
    --service my-http-service \
    --task-definition amazon-ecs-sample
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/test/my-http-
service",
        "serviceName": "my-http-service",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/test",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 2,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "FARGATE",
        "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
        "platformFamily": "Linux",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
amazon-ecs-sample:2",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "deploymentCircuitBreaker": {
                "enable": true,
                "rollback": true
            },
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100,
            "alarms": {
                "alarmNames": [],
                "rollback": false,
                "enable": false
            }
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/7419115625193919142",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/amazon-ecs-sample:2",
                "desiredCount": 0,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 0,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T13:26:02.734000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-02-21T13:26:02.734000-06:00",
                "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
```

```
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "IN_PROGRESS",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/7419115625193919142
 in progress."
            },
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/1709597507655421668",
                "status": "ACTIVE",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/old-amazon-ecs-sample:4",
                "desiredCount": 2,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 2,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-01-24T11:13:07.621000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-02-02T16:11:30.838000-06:00",
                "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                             "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "COMPLETED",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/1709597507655421668
 completed."
            }
```

```
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [
            {
                "id": "e40b4d1c-80d9-4834-aaf3-6a268e530e17",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T10:31:26.037000-06:00",
                "message": "(my-http-service) has reached a steady state."
            },
            {
                "id": "6ac069ad-fc8b-4e49-a35d-b5574a964c8e",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T04:31:22.703000-06:00",
                "message": "(my-http-service) has reached a steady state."
            },
            {
                "id": "265f7d37-dfd1-4880-a846-ec486f341919",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-20T22:31:22.514000-06:00",
                "message": "(my-http-service) has reached a steady state."
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": "2024-10-30T17:12:43.218000-05:00",
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-12344321",
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-12344321"
                ],
                "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
            }
        },
        "healthCheckGracePeriodSeconds": 0,
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "ECS"
        },
        "createdBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE",
        "enableECSManagedTags": true,
        "propagateTags": "NONE",
        "enableExecuteCommand": false,
        "availabilityZoneRebalancing": "DISABLED"
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Update an Amazon ECS service using the console in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To change the number of tasks in a service

The following `update-service` example updates the desired task count of the service `my-http-service` from to 2.

```
aws ecs update-service \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --service my-http-service \
    --desired-count 2
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:service/MyCluster/my-
http-service",
        "serviceName": "my-http-service",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 1,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "capacityProviderStrategy": [
            {
                "capacityProvider": "FARGATE",
                "weight": 1,
                "base": 0
            }
        ],
        "platformVersion": "LATEST",
        "platformFamily": "Linux",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-definition/
MyTaskDefinition",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "deploymentCircuitBreaker": {
```

```
                "enable": true,
                "rollback": true
            },
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100,
            "alarms": {
                "alarmNames": [],
                "rollback": false,
                "enable": false
            }
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/1976744184940610707",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskkDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-
definition/MyTaskDefinition",
                "desiredCount": 1,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 1,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2024-12-03T16:24:25.225000-05:00",
                "updatedAt": "2024-12-03T16:25:15.837000-05:00",
                "capacityProviderStrategy": [
                    {
                        "capacityProvider": "FARGATE",
                        "weight": 1,
                        "base": 0
                    }
                ],
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-0d0eab1bb38d5ca64",
                            "subnet-0db5010045995c2d5"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-02556bf85a191f59a"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
```

```
                "rolloutState": "COMPLETED",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/1976744184940610707
 completed."
            }
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [
            {
                "id": "f27350b9-4b2a-4e2e-b72e-a4b68380de45",
                "createdAt": "2024-12-30T13:24:07.345000-05:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state."
            },
            {
                "id": "e764ec63-f53f-45e3-9af2-d99f922d2957",
                "createdAt": "2024-12-30T12:32:21.600000-05:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state."
            },
            {
                "id": "28444756-c2fa-47f8-bd60-93a8e05f3991",
                "createdAt": "2024-12-08T19:26:10.367000-05:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state."
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": "2024-12-03T16:24:25.225000-05:00",
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-0d0eab1bb38d5ca64",
                    "subnet-0db5010045995c2d5"
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-02556bf85a191f59a"
                ],
                "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
            }
        },
        "healthCheckGracePeriodSeconds": 0,
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
```

```
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "ECS"
        },
        "createdBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Admin",
        "enableECSManagedTags": true,
        "propagateTags": "NONE",
        "enableExecuteCommand": false,
        "availabilityZoneRebalancing": "ENABLED"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating an Amazon ECS service using the console in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To configure Amazon EBS volumes for attachment at service update

The following `update-service` example updates the service `my-http-service` to use Amazon EBS volumes. You must have an Amazon ECS infrastructure role configured with the `AmazonECSInfrastructureRolePolicyForVolumes` managed policy attached. You must also specify a task definition with the same volume name as in the `update-service` request and with `configuredAtLaunch` set to `true`. This example uses the `--cli-input-json` option and a JSON input file called `ebs.json`.

```
aws ecs update-service \
    --cli-input-json file://ebs.json
```

Contents of `ebs.json`:

```
{
   "cluster": "mycluster",
   "taskDefinition": "mytaskdef",
   "service": "my-http-service",
   "desiredCount": 2,
   "volumeConfigurations": [
        {
            "name": "myEbsVolume",
            "managedEBSVolume": {
                "roleArn":"arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/ecsInfrastructureRole",
                "volumeType": "gp3",
                "sizeInGiB": 100,
                "iops": 3000,
```

```
                "throughput": 125,
                "filesystemType": "ext4"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/mycluster/my-
http-service",
        "serviceName": "my-http-service",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/mycluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 2,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "FARGATE",
        "platformVersion": "LATEST",
        "platformFamily": "Linux",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
mytaskdef:1",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "deploymentCircuitBreaker": {
                "enable": true,
                "rollback": true
            },
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100,
            "alarms": {
                "alarmNames": [],
                "rollback": false,
                "enable": false
            }
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/2420458347226626275",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
```

```
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/mytaskdef:1",
                "desiredCount": 0,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 0,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:07:20.519000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-02-21T15:07:20.519000-06:00",
                "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321",
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "IN_PROGRESS",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/2420458347226626275
 in progress.",
                "volumeConfigurations": [
                    {
                        "name": "ebs-volume",
                        "managedEBSVolume": {
                            "volumeType": "gp3",
                            "sizeInGiB": 100,
                            "iops": 3000,
                            "throughput": 125,
                            "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
ecsInfrastructureRole",
                            "filesystemType": "ext4"
                        }
                    }
                ]
            },
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/5191625155316533644",
                "status": "ACTIVE",
```

```
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/mytaskdef:2",
                "desiredCount": 2,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 2,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:54:48.862000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-02-21T14:57:22.502000-06:00",
                "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "COMPLETED",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/5191625155316533644
 completed."
            }
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [
            {
                "id": "b5823113-c2c5-458e-9649-8c2ed38f23a5",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:57:22.508000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state."
            },
            {
                "id": "b05a48e8-da35-4074-80aa-37ceb3167357",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:57:22.507000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) (deployment ecs-
svc/5191625155316533644) deployment completed."
            },
            {
                "id": "a10cd55d-4ba6-4cea-a655-5a5d32ada8a0",
```

```
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:55:32.833000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has started 1 tasks: (task
 fb9c8df512684aec92f3c57dc3f22361)."
            },
        ],
        "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:54:48.862000-06:00",
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-12344321"
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-12344321"
                ],
                "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
            }
        },
        "healthCheckGracePeriodSeconds": 0,
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "ECS"
        },
        "createdBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE",
        "enableECSManagedTags": true,
        "propagateTags": "NONE",
        "enableExecuteCommand": false,
        "availabilityZoneRebalancing": "ENABLED"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Use Amazon EBS volumes with Amazon ECS in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To update a service to no longer use Amazon EBS volumes

The following `update-service` example updates the service `my-http-service` to no longer use Amazon EBS volumes. You must specify a task definition revision with `configuredAtLaunch` set to `false`.

```
aws ecs update-service \
    --cluster mycluster \
```

```
    --task-definition mytaskdef \
    --service my-http-service \
    --desired-count 2 \
    --volume-configurations "[]"
```

Output:

```
{
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:service/mycluster/my-
http-service",
        "serviceName": "my-http-service",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster/mycluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 2,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "launchType": "FARGATE",
        "platformVersion": "LATEST",
        "platformFamily": "Linux",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-definition/
mytaskdef:3",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "deploymentCircuitBreaker": {
                "enable": true,
                "rollback": true
            },
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100,
            "alarms": {
                "alarmNames": [],
                "rollback": false,
                "enable": false
            }
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/7522791612543716777",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/mytaskdef:3",
```

```
                "desiredCount": 0,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 0,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:25:38.598000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-02-21T15:25:38.598000-06:00",
                    "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "IN_PROGRESS",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/7522791612543716777
 in progress."
            },
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/2420458347226626275",
                "status": "ACTIVE",
                "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:123456789012:task-
definition/myoldtaskdef:1",
                "desiredCount": 2,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 2,
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:07:20.519000-06:00",
                "updatedAt": "2025-02-21T15:10:59.955000-06:00",
                "launchType": "FARGATE",
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-12344321"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
```

```
                            "sg-12344321"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "COMPLETED",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/2420458347226626275
 completed.",
                "volumeConfigurations": [
                    {
                        "name": "ebs-volume",
                        "managedEBSVolume": {
                            "volumeType": "gp3",
                            "sizeInGiB": 100,
                            "iops": 3000,
                            "throughput": 125,
                            "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
ecsInfrastructureRole",
                            "filesystemType": "ext4"
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [
            {
                "id": "4f2c3ca1-7800-4048-ba57-bba210ada2ad",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:10:59.959000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state."
            },
            {
                "id": "4b36a593-2d40-4ed6-8be8-b9b699eb6198",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:10:59.958000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) (deployment ecs-
svc/2420458347226626275) deployment completed."
            },
            {
                "id": "88380089-14e2-4ef0-8dbb-a33991683371",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:09:39.055000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has stopped 1 running
 tasks: (task fb9c8df512684aec92f3c57dc3f22361)."
```

```
            },
            {
                "id": "97d84243-d52f-4255-89bb-9311391c61f6",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:08:57.653000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has stopped 1 running
 tasks: (task 33eff090ad2c40539daa837e6503a9bc)."
            },
            {
                "id": "672ece6c-e2d0-4021-b5da-eefb14001687",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:08:15.631000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has started 1 tasks: (task
 996c02a66ff24f3190a4a8e0c841740f)."
            },
            {
                "id": "a3cf9bea-9be6-4175-ac28-4c68360986eb",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T15:07:36.931000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has started 1 tasks: (task
 d5d23c39f89e46cf9a647b9cc6572feb)."
            },
            {
                "id": "b5823113-c2c5-458e-9649-8c2ed38f23a5",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:57:22.508000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has reached a steady
 state."
            },
            {
                "id": "b05a48e8-da35-4074-80aa-37ceb3167357",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:57:22.507000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) (deployment ecs-
svc/5191625155316533644) deployment completed."
            },
            {
                "id": "a10cd55d-4ba6-4cea-a655-5a5d32ada8a0",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:55:32.833000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has started 1 tasks: (task
 fb9c8df512684aec92f3c57dc3f22361)."
            },
            {
                "id": "42da91fa-e26d-42ef-88c3-bb5965c56b2f",
                "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:55:02.703000-06:00",
                "message": "(service my-http-service) has started 1 tasks: (task
 33eff090ad2c40539daa837e6503a9bc)."
            }
        ],
```

```
        "createdAt": "2025-02-21T14:54:48.862000-06:00",
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-12344321"
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-12344321"
                ],
                "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
            }
        },
        "healthCheckGracePeriodSeconds": 0,
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "ECS"
        },
        "createdBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE",
        "enableECSManagedTags": true,
        "propagateTags": "NONE",
        "enableExecuteCommand": false,
        "availabilityZoneRebalancing": "ENABLED"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Use Amazon EBS volumes with Amazon ECS in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To turn on Availability Zone rebalancing for a service

The following `update-service` example turns on Availability Zone rebalancing for the service `my-http-service`.

```
aws ecs update-service \
    --cluster MyCluster \
    --service my-http-service \
    --availability-zone-rebalancing ENABLED
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "service": {
        "serviceArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:service/MyCluster/my-
http-service",
        "serviceName": "my-http-service",
        "clusterArn": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:cluster/MyCluster",
        "loadBalancers": [],
        "serviceRegistries": [],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "desiredCount": 2,
        "runningCount": 1,
        "pendingCount": 0,
        "capacityProviderStrategy": [
            {
                "capacityProvider": "FARGATE",
                "weight": 1,
                "base": 0
            }
        ],
        "platformVersion": "LATEST",
        "platformFamily": "Linux",
        "taskDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-definition/
MyTaskDefinition",
        "deploymentConfiguration": {
            "deploymentCircuitBreaker": {
                "enable": true,
                "rollback": true
            },
            "maximumPercent": 200,
            "minimumHealthyPercent": 100,
            "alarms": {
                "alarmNames": [],
                "rollback": false,
                "enable": false
            }
        },
        "deployments": [
            {
                "id": "ecs-svc/1976744184940610707",
                "status": "PRIMARY",
                "taskkDefinition": "arn:aws:ecs:us-east-1:123456789012:task-
definition/MyTaskDefinition",
                "desiredCount": 1,
                "pendingCount": 0,
                "runningCount": 1,
```

```
                "failedTasks": 0,
                "createdAt": "2024-12-03T16:24:25.225000-05:00",
                "updatedAt": "2024-12-03T16:25:15.837000-05:00",
                "capacityProviderStrategy": [
                    {
                        "capacityProvider": "FARGATE",
                        "weight": 1,
                        "base": 0
                    }
                ],
                "platformVersion": "1.4.0",
                "platformFamily": "Linux",
                "networkConfiguration": {
                    "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                        "subnets": [
                            "subnet-0d0eab1bb38d5ca64",
                            "subnet-0db5010045995c2d5"
                        ],
                        "securityGroups": [
                            "sg-02556bf85a191f59a"
                        ],
                        "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
                    }
                },
                "rolloutState": "COMPLETED",
                "rolloutStateReason": "ECS deployment ecs-svc/1976744184940610707
 completed."
            }
        ],
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
ecs.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForECS",
        "events": [],
        "createdAt": "2024-12-03T16:24:25.225000-05:00",
        "placementConstraints": [],
        "placementStrategy": [],
        "networkConfiguration": {
            "awsvpcConfiguration": {
                "subnets": [
                    "subnet-0d0eab1bb38d5ca64",
                    "subnet-0db5010045995c2d5"
                ],
                "securityGroups": [
                    "sg-02556bf85a191f59a"
                ],
```

```
                "assignPublicIp": "ENABLED"
            }
        },
        "healthCheckGracePeriodSeconds": 0,
        "schedulingStrategy": "REPLICA",
        "deploymentController": {
            "type": "ECS"
        },
        "createdBy": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Admin",
        "enableECSManagedTags": true,
        "propagateTags": "NONE",
        "enableExecuteCommand": false,
        "availabilityZoneRebalancing": "ENABLED"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating an Amazon ECS service using the console in the *Amazon ECS Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateService in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.UpdateServiceRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class UpdateService {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <clusterName> <serviceArn>\s

                Where:
                  clusterName - The cluster name.
                  serviceArn - The service ARN value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterName = args[0];
        String serviceArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateSpecificService(ecsClient, clusterName, serviceArn);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void updateSpecificService(EcsClient ecsClient, String
 clusterName, String serviceArn) {
        try {
            UpdateServiceRequest serviceRequest = UpdateServiceRequest.builder()
                    .cluster(clusterName)
                    .service(serviceArn)
                    .desiredCount(0)
                    .build();

            ecsClient.updateService(serviceRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The service was modified");

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateService in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example command updates the `my-http-service` service to use the `amazon-ecs-sample` task definition.

```
Update-ECSService -Service my-http-service -TaskDefinition amazon-ecs-sample
```

Example 2: This example command updates the desired count of the `my-http-service` service to 10.

```
Update-ECSService -Service my-http-service -DesiredCount 10
```

- For API details, see UpdateService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example command updates the `my-http-service` service to use the `amazon-ecs-sample` task definition.

```
Update-ECSService -Service my-http-service -TaskDefinition amazon-ecs-sample
```

Example 2: This example command updates the desired count of the `my-http-service` service to 10.

```
Update-ECSService -Service my-http-service -DesiredCount 10
```

- For API details, see UpdateService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for Amazon ECS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon ECS with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon ECS or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Get ARN information for Amazon ECS clusters, services, and tasks using an AWS SDK

Get ARN information for Amazon ECS clusters, services, and tasks using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of all clusters.
- Get services for a cluster.
- Get tasks for a cluster.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using ECSActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
```

```
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace ECSScenario;

public class ECSScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.


    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List ECS Cluster ARNs.
        2. List services in every cluster
        3. List Task ARNs in every cluster.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static ECSWrapper _ecsWrapper = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
        .Build();

        ILoggerFactory loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<ECSScenario>();

        var loggerECSWarpper = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
 { builder.AddConsole(); })
          .CreateLogger<ECSWrapper>();
```

```
        var amazonECSClient = new AmazonECSClient();

        _ecsWrapper = new ECSWrapper(amazonECSClient, loggerECSWarpper);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon ECS example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            await ListClusterARNs();
            await ListServiceARNs();
            await ListTaskARNs();

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List ECS Cluster ARNs
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListClusterARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. List Cluster ARNs from ECS.");
        var arns = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var arn in arns)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Cluster arn: {arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Cluster name: {arn.Split("/").Last()}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List services in every cluster
    /// </summary>
```

```
    private static async Task ListServiceARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. List Service ARNs in every cluster.");
        var clusterARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var clusterARN in clusterARNs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Getting services for cluster name:
{clusterARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('.', 5));


            var serviceARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetServiceARNSAsync(clusterARN);

            foreach (var serviceARN in serviceARNs)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Service arn: {serviceARN}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Service name:
{serviceARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List tasks in every cluster
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListTaskARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. List Task ARNs in every cluster.");
        var clusterARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var clusterARN in clusterARNs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Getting tasks for cluster name:
{clusterARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('.', 5));

            var taskARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetTaskARNsAsync(clusterARN);
```

```
            foreach (var taskARN in taskARNs)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Task arn: {taskARN}");
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon ECS actions.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using Amazon.ECS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ECSActions;

public class ECSWrapper
{
    private readonly AmazonECSClient _ecsClient;
    private readonly ILogger<ECSWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the ECS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ecsClient">The injected ECS client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public ECSWrapper(AmazonECSClient ecsClient, ILogger<ECSWrapper> logger)

    {
        _logger = logger;
        _ecsClient = ecsClient;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List cluster ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetClusterARNSAsync()
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Getting a list of all the clusters in your AWS
account...");
        List<string> clusterArnList = new List<string>();
        // Get a list of all the clusters in your AWS account
        try
        {

            var listClustersResponse = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
ListClustersRequest
            {
            });

            var clusterArns = listClustersResponse.ClusterArns;

            // Print the ARNs of the clusters
            await foreach (var clusterArn in clusterArns)
            {
                clusterArnList.Add(clusterArn);
            }

            if (clusterArnList.Count == 0)
            {
                _logger.LogWarning("No clusters found in your AWS account.");
            }
            return clusterArnList;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
            throw new Exception($"An error occurred while getting a list of all
the clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List service ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of services in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetServiceARNSAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        List<string> serviceArns = new List<string>();
```

```
        var request = new ListServicesRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        // Call the ListServices API operation and get the list of service ARNs
        var serviceList = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListServices(request);

        await foreach (var serviceARN in serviceList.ServiceArns)
        {
            if (serviceARN is null)
                continue;

            serviceArns.Add(serviceARN);
        }

        if (serviceArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"No services found in cluster {clusterARN} .");
        }

        return serviceArns;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List task ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of tasks in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetTaskARNsAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        // Set up the request to describe the tasks in the service
        var listTasksRequest = new ListTasksRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        List<string> taskArns = new List<string>();

        // Call the ListTasks API operation and get the list of task ARNs
        var tasks = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListTasks(listTasksRequest);

        await foreach (var task in tasks.TaskArns)
        {
            if (task is null)
                continue;
```

```
            taskArns.Add(task);
        }

        if (taskArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning("No tasks found in cluster: " + clusterARN);
        }

        return taskArns;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - ListClusters
  - ListServices
  - ListTasks

Code examples for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Elastic File System with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon EFS Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon EFS.
- **Amazon EFS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon EFS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs

- Actions for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateFileSystem with a CLI
  - Use CreateMountTarget with a CLI
  - Use DeleteFileSystem with a CLI
  - Use DeleteMountTarget with a CLI
  - Use DescribeFileSystems with a CLI
  - Use DescribeMountTargets with a CLI
  - Use DescribeTags with a CLI

Basic examples for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Elastic File System with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateFileSystem with a CLI
  - Use CreateMountTarget with a CLI
  - Use DeleteFileSystem with a CLI
  - Use DeleteMountTarget with a CLI
  - Use DescribeFileSystems with a CLI
  - Use DescribeMountTargets with a CLI
  - Use DescribeTags with a CLI

Actions for Amazon EFS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon EFS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Elastic File System API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateFileSystem with a CLI
- Use CreateMountTarget with a CLI
- Use DeleteFileSystem with a CLI
- Use DeleteMountTarget with a CLI
- Use DescribeFileSystems with a CLI
- Use DescribeMountTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI

Use `CreateFileSystem` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateFileSystem`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an encrypted file system

The following `create-file-system` example creates an encrypted file system using the default CMK. It also adds the tag `Name=my-file-system`.

```
aws efs create-file-system \
    --performance-mode generalPurpose \
    --throughput-mode bursting \
    --encrypted \
    --tags Key=Name,Value=my-file-system
```

Output:

```
{
    "OwnerId": "123456789012",
    "CreationToken": "console-d7f56c5f-e433-41ca-8307-9d9c0example",
    "FileSystemId": "fs-c7a0456e",
    "FileSystemArn": "arn:aws:elasticfilesystem:us-west-2:123456789012:file-
system/fs-48499b4d",
    "CreationTime": 1595286880.0,
    "LifeCycleState": "creating",
    "Name": "my-file-system",
```

```
    "NumberOfMountTargets": 0,
    "SizeInBytes": {
        "Value": 0,
        "ValueInIA": 0,
        "ValueInStandard": 0
    },
    "PerformanceMode": "generalPurpose",
    "Encrypted": true,
    "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:123456789012:key/a59b3472-e62c-42e4-
adcf-30d92example",
    "ThroughputMode": "bursting",
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "Name",
            "Value": "my-file-system"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating Amazon EFS file systems in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateFileSystem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new, empty file system. The token used to ensure idempotent creation will be generated automatically and can be accessed from the `CreationToken` member of the returned object.

```
New-EFSFileSystem
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:02:38 PM
CreationToken        : 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-1a2b3c4d
LifeCycleState       : creating
Name                 :
NumberOfMountTargets : 0
```

```
OwnerId              : 123456789012
SizeInBytes          : Amazon.ElasticFileSystem.Model.FileSystemSize
```

Example 2: Creates a new, empty file system using a custom token to ensure idempotent creation.

```
New-EFSFileSystem -CreationToken "MyUniqueToken"
```

- For API details, see CreateFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new, empty file system. The token used to ensure idempotent creation will be generated automatically and can be accessed from the `CreationToken` member of the returned object.

```
New-EFSFileSystem
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:02:38 PM
CreationToken        : 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-1a2b3c4d
LifeCycleState       : creating
Name                 :
NumberOfMountTargets : 0
OwnerId              : 123456789012
SizeInBytes          : Amazon.ElasticFileSystem.Model.FileSystemSize
```

Example 2: Creates a new, empty file system using a custom token to ensure idempotent creation.

```
New-EFSFileSystem -CreationToken "MyUniqueToken"
```

- For API details, see CreateFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateMountTarget` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateMountTarget`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a mount target

The following `create-mount-target` example creates a mount target for the specified file system.

```
aws efs create-mount-target \
    --file-system-id fs-c7a0456e \
    --subnet-id subnet-02bf4c428bexample \
    --security-groups sg-068f739363example
```

Output:

```
{
    "OwnerId": "123456789012",
    "MountTargetId": "fsmt-f9a14450",
    "FileSystemId": "fs-c7a0456e",
    "SubnetId": "subnet-02bf4c428bexample",
    "LifeCycleState": "creating",
    "IpAddress": "10.0.1.24",
    "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-02d542216aexample",
    "AvailabilityZoneId": "use2-az2",
    "AvailabilityZoneName": "us-east-2b",
    "VpcId": "vpc-0123456789abcdef0"
}
```

For more information, see Creating mount targets in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateMountTarget in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new mount target for a file system. The specified subnet will be used determine the Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) that the mount target will be created in and the IP address that will be auto-assigned (from the address range of the subnet).

The assigned IP address can be used to then mount this file system on an Amazon EC2 instance. As no security groups were specified the network interface created for the target is associated with the default security group for the subnet's VPC.

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
FileSystemId       : fs-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress          : 10.0.0.131
LifeCycleState     : creating
MountTargetId      : fsmt-1a2b3c4d
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-1a2b3c4d
OwnerId            : 123456789012
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: Creates a new mount target for the specified file system with auto-assigned IP address. The network interface created for the mount target is associated with the specified security groups (up to 5, in the format "sg-xxxxxxxx", may be specified).

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -
SecurityGroup sg-group1,sg-group2,sg-group3
```

Example 3: Creates a new mount target for the specified file system with the specified IP address.

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -IpAddress
 10.0.0.131
```

- For API details, see CreateMountTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new mount target for a file system. The specified subnet will be used determine the Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) that the mount target will be created in and the IP address that will be auto-assigned (from the address range of the subnet). The assigned IP address can be used to then mount this file system on an Amazon EC2 instance. As no security groups were specified the network interface created for the target is associated with the default security group for the subnet's VPC.

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
FileSystemId       : fs-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress          : 10.0.0.131
LifeCycleState     : creating
MountTargetId      : fsmt-1a2b3c4d
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-1a2b3c4d
OwnerId            : 123456789012
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: Creates a new mount target for the specified file system with auto-assigned IP address. The network interface created for the mount target is associated with the specified security groups (up to 5, in the format "sg-xxxxxxxx", may be specified).

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -
SecurityGroup sg-group1,sg-group2,sg-group3
```

Example 3: Creates a new mount target for the specified file system with the specified IP address.

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -IpAddress
 10.0.0.131
```

- For API details, see CreateMountTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteFileSystem` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFileSystem`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a file system

The following `delete-file-system` example deletes the specified file system.

```
aws efs delete-file-system \
```

```
    --file-system-id fs-c7a0456e
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting an Amazon EFS file system in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteFileSystem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified file system that is no longer in use (if the file system has mount targets they must be removed first). You are prompted for confirmation before the cmdlet proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the `-Force` switch.

```
Remove-EFSFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DeleteFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified file system that is no longer in use (if the file system has mount targets they must be removed first). You are prompted for confirmation before the cmdlet proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the `-Force` switch.

```
Remove-EFSFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DeleteFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteMountTarget` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMountTarget`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a mount target

The following `delete-mount-target` example deletes the specified mount target.

```
aws efs delete-mount-target \
    --mount-target-id fsmt-f9a14450
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating mount targets in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteMountTarget in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified mount target. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds. To suppress the prompt use the `-Force` switch. Note that this operation forcibly breaks any mounts of the file system via the target - you may want to consider unmounting the file system before running this command, if feasible.

```
Remove-EFSMountTarget -MountTargetId fsmt-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DeleteMountTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified mount target. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds. To suppress the prompt use the `-Force` switch. Note that this operation forcibly breaks any mounts of the file system via the target - you may want to consider unmounting the file system before running this command, if feasible.

```
Remove-EFSMountTarget -MountTargetId fsmt-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DeleteMountTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeFileSystems` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeFileSystems`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a file system

The following `describe-file-systems` example describes the specified file system.

```
aws efs describe-file-systems \
    --file-system-id fs-c7a0456e
```

Output:

```
{
    "FileSystems": [
        {
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "CreationToken": "console-d7f56c5f-e433-41ca-8307-9d9c0example",
            "FileSystemId": "fs-c7a0456e",
            "FileSystemArn": "arn:aws:elasticfilesystem:us-
west-2:123456789012:file-system/fs-48499b4d",
            "CreationTime": 1595286880.0,
            "LifeCycleState": "available",
            "Name": "my-file-system",
            "NumberOfMountTargets": 3,
            "SizeInBytes": {
                "Value": 6144,
                "Timestamp": 1600991437.0,
                "ValueInIA": 0,
                "ValueInStandard": 6144
            },
            "PerformanceMode": "generalPurpose",
            "Encrypted": true,
            "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:123456789012:key/a59b3472-
e62c-42e4-adcf-30d92example",
            "ThroughputMode": "bursting",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Name",
                    "Value": "my-file-system"
                }
            ]
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing Amazon EFS file systems in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeFileSystems in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the collection of all file systems owned by the caller's account in the region.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:02:38 PM
CreationToken        : 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-1a2b3c4d
LifeCycleState       : available
Name                 :
NumberOfMountTargets : 0
OwnerId              : 123456789012
SizeInBytes          : Amazon.ElasticFileSystem.Model.FileSystemSize

CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:06:23 PM
CreationToken        : 2b4daa14-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-4d3c2b1a
...
```

Example 2: Returns the details of the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 3: Returns the details of a file system using the idempotency creation token that was specified at the time the file system was created.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem -CreationToken 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
```

- For API details, see DescribeFileSystems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of all file systems owned by the caller's account in the region.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:02:38 PM
CreationToken        : 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-1a2b3c4d
LifeCycleState       : available
Name                 :
NumberOfMountTargets : 0
OwnerId              : 123456789012
SizeInBytes          : Amazon.ElasticFileSystem.Model.FileSystemSize

CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:06:23 PM
CreationToken        : 2b4daa14-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-4d3c2b1a
...
```

Example 2: Returns the details of the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 3: Returns the details of a file system using the idempotency creation token that was specified at the time the file system was created.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem -CreationToken 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
```

- For API details, see DescribeFileSystems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMountTargets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMountTargets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a mount target

The following `describe-mount-targets` example describes the specified mount target.

```
aws efs describe-mount-targets \
    --mount-target-id fsmt-f9a14450
```

Output:

```
{
    "MountTargets": [
        {
            "OwnerId": "123456789012",
            "MountTargetId": "fsmt-f9a14450",
            "FileSystemId": "fs-c7a0456e",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-02bf4c428bexample",
            "LifeCycleState": "creating",
            "IpAddress": "10.0.1.24",
            "NetworkInterfaceId": "eni-02d542216aexample",
            "AvailabilityZoneId": "use2-az2",
            "AvailabilityZoneName": "us-east-2b",
            "VpcId": "vpc-0123456789abcdef0"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating mount targets in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMountTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the collection of mount targets associated with the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
FileSystemId       : fs-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress          : 10.0.0.131
LifeCycleState     : available
MountTargetId      : fsmt-1a2b3c4d
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-1a2b3c4d
OwnerId            : 123456789012
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeMountTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of mount targets associated with the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
FileSystemId       : fs-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress          : 10.0.0.131
LifeCycleState     : available
MountTargetId      : fsmt-1a2b3c4d
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-1a2b3c4d
OwnerId            : 123456789012
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeMountTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the tags for a file system

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for the specified file system.

```
aws efs describe-tags \
    --file-system-id fs-c7a0456e
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "Name",
            "Value": "my-file-system"
        },
        {
            "Key": "Department",
            "Value": "Business Intelligence"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing file system tags in the *Amazon Elastic File System User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the collection of tags currently associated with the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSTag -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
Name        My File System
tagkey1     tagvalue1
tagkey2     tagvalue2
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of tags currently associated with the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSTag -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
Name        My File System
tagkey1     tagvalue1
tagkey2     tagvalue2
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon EKS User Guide** – More information about Amazon EKS.
- **Amazon EKS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon EKS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateFargateProfile with a CLI
    - Use CreateNodegroup with a CLI
    - Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteFargateProfile with a CLI
    - Use DeleteNodegroup with a CLI
    - Use DescribeCluster with a CLI
    - Use DescribeFargateProfile with a CLI
    - Use DescribeNodegroup with a CLI
    - Use DescribeUpdate with a CLI
    - Use ListClusters with a CLI
    - Use ListFargateProfiles with a CLI
    - Use ListNodegroups with a CLI
    - Use ListTagsForResource with a CLI
    - Use ListUpdates with a CLI
    - Use TagResource with a CLI
    - Use UntagResource with a CLI
    - Use UpdateClusterConfig with a CLI
    - Use UpdateClusterVersion with a CLI

Basic examples for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateFargateProfile with a CLI

- Use CreateNodegroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteFargateProfile with a CLI
- Use DeleteNodegroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeCluster with a CLI
- Use DescribeFargateProfile with a CLI
- Use DescribeNodegroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeUpdate with a CLI
- Use ListClusters with a CLI
- Use ListFargateProfiles with a CLI
- Use ListNodegroups with a CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with a CLI
- Use ListUpdates with a CLI
- Use TagResource with a CLI
- Use UntagResource with a CLI
- Use UpdateClusterConfig with a CLI
- Use UpdateClusterVersion with a CLI

Actions for Amazon EKS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon EKS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateFargateProfile with a CLI
- Use CreateNodegroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteFargateProfile with a CLI

- Use DeleteNodegroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeCluster with a CLI
- Use DescribeFargateProfile with a CLI
- Use DescribeNodegroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeUpdate with a CLI
- Use ListClusters with a CLI
- Use ListFargateProfiles with a CLI
- Use ListNodegroups with a CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with a CLI
- Use ListUpdates with a CLI
- Use TagResource with a CLI
- Use UntagResource with a CLI
- Use UpdateClusterConfig with a CLI
- Use UpdateClusterVersion with a CLI

Use `CreateCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a new cluster

This example command creates a cluster named `prod` in your default region.

Command:

```
aws eks create-cluster --name prod \
--role-arn arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/eks-service-role-
AWSServiceRoleForAmazonEKS-J7ONKE3BQ4PI \
--resources-vpc-config subnetIds=subnet-6782e71e,subnet-
e7e761ac,securityGroupIds=sg-6979fe18
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "name": "prod",
        "arn": "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678910:cluster/prod",
        "createdAt": 1527808069.147,
        "version": "1.10",
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/eks-service-role-
AWSServiceRoleForAmazonEKS-J7ONKE3BQ4PI",
        "resourcesVpcConfig": {
            "subnetIds": [
                "subnet-6782e71e",
                "subnet-e7e761ac"
            ],
            "securityGroupIds": [
                "sg-6979fe18"
            ],
            "vpcId": "vpc-950809ec"
        },
        "status": "CREATING",
        "certificateAuthority": {}
    }
}
```

To create a new cluster with private endpoint access and logging enabled

This example command creates a cluster named `example` in your default region with public endpoint access disabled, private endpoint access enabled, and all logging types enabled.

Command:

```
aws eks create-cluster --name example --kubernetes-version 1.12 \
--role-arn arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/example-cluster-
ServiceRole-1XWBQWYSFRE2Q \
--resources-vpc-
config subnetIds=subnet-0a188dccd2f9a632f,subnet-09290d93da4278664,subnet-0f21dd86e0e9113
 \
--logging '{"clusterLogging":[{"types":
["api","audit","authenticator","controllerManager","scheduler"],"enabled":true}]}'
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "cluster": {
        "name": "example",
        "arn": "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678910:cluster/example",
        "createdAt": 1565804921.901,
        "version": "1.12",
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::012345678910:role/example-cluster-
ServiceRole-1XWBQWYSFRE2Q",
        "resourcesVpcConfig": {
            "subnetIds": [
                "subnet-0a188dccd2f9a632f",
                "subnet-09290d93da4278664",
                "subnet-0f21dd86e0e91134a",
                "subnet-0173dead68481a583",
                "subnet-051f70a57ed6fcab6",
                "subnet-01322339c5c7de9b4"
            ],
            "securityGroupIds": [
                "sg-0c5b580845a031c10"
            ],
            "vpcId": "vpc-0f622c01f68d4afec",
            "endpointPublicAccess": false,
            "endpointPrivateAccess": true
        },
        "logging": {
            "clusterLogging": [
                {
                    "types": [
                        "api",
                        "audit",
                        "authenticator",
                        "controllerManager",
                        "scheduler"
                    ],
                    "enabled": true
                }
            ]
        },
        "status": "CREATING",
        "certificateAuthority": {},
        "platformVersion": "eks.3"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new cluster called 'prod'.

```
New-EKSCluster -Name prod -ResourcesVpcConfig
 @{SubnetIds=@("subnet-0a1b2c3d","subnet-3a2b1c0d");SecurityGroupIds="sg-6979fe18"}
 -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/eks-service-role"
```

Output:

```
Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678901:cluster/prod
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/10/2018 9:25:31 PM
Endpoint             :
Name                 : prod
PlatformVersion      : eks.3
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/eks-service-role
Status               : CREATING
Version              : 1.10
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new cluster called 'prod'.

```
New-EKSCluster -Name prod -ResourcesVpcConfig
 @{SubnetIds=@("subnet-0a1b2c3d","subnet-3a2b1c0d");SecurityGroupIds="sg-6979fe18"}
 -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/eks-service-role"
```

Output:

```
Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678901:cluster/prod
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/10/2018 9:25:31 PM
Endpoint             :
```

```
Name                 : prod
PlatformVersion      : eks.3
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/eks-service-role
Status               : CREATING
Version              : 1.10
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_cluster(
    client: &aws_sdk_eks::Client,
    name: &str,
    arn: &str,
    subnet_ids: Vec<String>,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_eks::Error> {
    let cluster = client
        .create_cluster()
        .name(name)
        .role_arn(arn)
        .resources_vpc_config(
            VpcConfigRequest::builder()
                .set_subnet_ids(Some(subnet_ids))
                .build(),
        )
        .send()
        .await?;
    println!("cluster created: {:?}", cluster);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateFargateProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateFargateProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: Create EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace

The following `create-fargate-profile` example creates an EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace.

```
aws eks create-fargate-profile \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --pod-execution-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile \
    --selectors '[{"namespace": "default"}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/a2c72bca-318e-abe8-8ed1-27c6d4892e9e",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-19T12:38:47.368000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "default"
            }
        ],
        "status": "CREATING",
```

```
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Fargate profile - Creating a Fargate profile in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 2: Create EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace and labels

The following `create-fargate-profile` example creates an EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace and labels.

```
aws eks create-fargate-profile \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --pod-execution-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile \
    --selectors '[{"namespace": "default", "labels": {"labelname1":
 "labelvalue1"}}]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/88c72bc7-e8a4-fa34-44e4-2f1397224bb3",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-19T12:33:48.125000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "default",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname1": "labelvalue1"
                }
            }
        ],
        "status": "CREATING",
```

```
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Fargate profile - Creating a Fargate profile in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 3: Create EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace and labels, along with IDs of subnets to launch a Pod into.

The following `create-fargate-profile` example create EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace and labels, along with IDs of subnets to launch a Pod into.

```
aws eks create-fargate-profile \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --pod-execution-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile \
    --selectors '[{"namespace": "default", "labels": {"labelname1":
 "labelvalue1"}}]' \
    --subnets '["subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a", "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
 "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/e8c72bc8-e87b-5eb6-57cb-ed4fe57577e3",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-19T12:35:58.640000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "default",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname1": "labelvalue1"
```

```
                }
            }
        ],
        "status": "CREATING",
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Fargate profile - Creating a Fargate profile in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 4: Create EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with multiple namespace and labels, along with IDs of subnets to launch a Pod into

The following `create-fargate-profile` example creates an EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with multiple namespace and labels, along with IDs of subnets to launch a Pod into.

```
aws eks create-fargate-profile \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --pod-execution-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile \
    --selectors '[{"namespace": "default1", "labels": {"labelname1":
 "labelvalue1", "labelname2": "labelvalue2"}}, {"namespace": "default2",
 "labels": {"labelname1": "labelvalue1", "labelname2": "labelvalue2"}}]' \
    --subnets '["subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a", "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
 "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"]' \
    --tags '{"eks-fargate-profile-key-1": "value-1" , "eks-fargate-profile-
key-2": "value-2"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/4cc72bbf-b766-8ee6-8d29-e62748feb3cd",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-19T12:15:55.271000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
```

```
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "default1",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname2": "labelvalue2",
                    "labelname1": "labelvalue1"
                }
            },
            {
                "namespace": "default2",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname2": "labelvalue2",
                    "labelname1": "labelvalue1"
                }
            }
        ],
        "status": "CREATING",
        "tags": {
            "eks-fargate-profile-key-2": "value-2",
            "eks-fargate-profile-key-1": "value-1"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Fargate profile - Creating a Fargate profile in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 5: Create EKS Fargate Profile with a wildcard selector for namespaces and labels, along with IDs of subnets to launch a Pod into

The following `create-fargate-profile` example creates an EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with multiple namespace and labels, along with IDs of subnets to launch a Pod into.

```
aws eks create-fargate-profile \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --pod-execution-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile \
    --selectors '[{"namespace": "prod*", "labels": {"labelname*?": "*value1"}},
 {"namespace": "*dev*", "labels": {"labelname*?": "*value*"}}]' \
    --subnets '["subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a", "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
 "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"]' \
```

```
    --tags '{"eks-fargate-profile-key-1": "value-1" , "eks-fargate-profile-
key-2": "value-2"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/e8c72bd6-5966-0bfe-b77b-1802893e5a6f",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-19T13:05:20.550000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "prod*",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname*?": "*value1"
                }
            },
            {
                "namespace": "*dev*",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname*?": "*value*"
                }
            }
        ],
        "status": "CREATING",
        "tags": {
            "eks-fargate-profile-key-2": "value-2",
            "eks-fargate-profile-key-1": "value-1"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Fargate profile - Creating a Fargate profile in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateFargateProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet creates an AWS Fargate profile for your Amazon EKS cluster. You must have at least one Fargate profile in a cluster to be able to schedule pods on Fargate infrastructure.

```
New-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName EKSFargateProfile -ClusterName
 TEST -Subnet "subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0", "subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae"
 -PodExecutionRoleArn arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole -Selector @{Namespace="default"}
```

Output:

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:38:21 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargateProfile/20b7a11b-8292-41c1-bc56-ffa5e60f6224
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargateProfile
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : CREATING
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates an AWS Fargate profile for your Amazon EKS cluster. You must have at least one Fargate profile in a cluster to be able to schedule pods on Fargate infrastructure.

```
New-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName EKSFargateProfile -ClusterName
 TEST -Subnet "subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0", "subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae"
```

```
 -PodExecutionRoleArn arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole -Selector @{Namespace="default"}
```

Output:

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:38:21 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargateProfile/20b7a11b-8292-41c1-bc56-ffa5e60f6224
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargateProfile
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : CREATING
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateNodegroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateNodegroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: Creates a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster

The following `create-nodegroup` example creates a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
aws eks create-nodegroup \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --nodegroup-name my-eks-nodegroup \
    --node-role arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --
subnets "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72" "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d" "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
 \
    --scaling-config minSize=1,maxSize=3,desiredSize=1 \
    --region us-east-2
```

Output:

```
{
    "nodegroup": {
        "nodegroupName": "my-eks-nodegroup",
        "nodegroupArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-
cluster/my-eks-nodegroup/bac7550f-b8b8-5fbb-4f3e-7502a931119e",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "version": "1.26",
        "releaseVersion": "1.26.12-20240329",
        "createdAt": "2024-04-04T13:19:32.260000-04:00",
        "modifiedAt": "2024-04-04T13:19:32.260000-04:00",
        "status": "CREATING",
        "capacityType": "ON_DEMAND",
        "scalingConfig": {
            "minSize": 1,
            "maxSize": 3,
            "desiredSize": 1
        },
        "instanceTypes": [
            "t3.medium"
        ],
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72, subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d,
 subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
        ],
        "amiType": "AL2_x86_64",
        "nodeRole": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "diskSize": 20,
        "health": {
            "issues": []
        },
        "updateConfig": {
            "maxUnavailable": 1
        },
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a managed node group in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 2: Creates a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster with custom instance-types and disk-size

The following `create-nodegroup` example creates a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster with custom instance-types and disk-size.

```
aws eks create-nodegroup \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --nodegroup-name my-eks-nodegroup \
    --node-role arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --
subnets "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72" "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d" "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
 \
    --scaling-config minSize=1,maxSize=3,desiredSize=1 \
    --capacity-type ON_DEMAND \
    --instance-types 'm5.large' \
    --disk-size 50 \
    --region us-east-2
```

Output:

```
{
    "nodegroup": {
        "nodegroupName": "my-eks-nodegroup",
        "nodegroupArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-
cluster/my-eks-nodegroup/c0c7551b-e4f9-73d9-992c-a450fdb82322",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "version": "1.26",
        "releaseVersion": "1.26.12-20240329",
        "createdAt": "2024-04-04T13:46:07.595000-04:00",
        "modifiedAt": "2024-04-04T13:46:07.595000-04:00",
        "status": "CREATING",
        "capacityType": "ON_DEMAND",
        "scalingConfig": {
            "minSize": 1,
            "maxSize": 3,
            "desiredSize": 1
        },
        "instanceTypes": [
            "m5.large"
        ],
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
        ],
```

```
        "amiType": "AL2_x86_64",
        "nodeRole": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "diskSize": 50,
        "health": {
            "issues": []
        },
        "updateConfig": {
            "maxUnavailable": 1
        },
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a managed node group in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 3: Creates a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster with custom instance-types, disk-size, ami-type, capacity-type, update-config, labels, taints and tags.

The following `create-nodegroup` example creates a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster with custom instance-types, disk-size, ami-type, capacity-type, update-config, labels, taints and tags.

```
aws eks create-nodegroup  \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --nodegroup-name my-eks-nodegroup \
    --node-role arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name \
    --
subnets "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72" "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d" "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
 \
    --scaling-config minSize=1,maxSize=5,desiredSize=4 \
    --instance-types 't3.large' \
    --disk-size 50 \
    --ami-type AL2_x86_64 \
    --capacity-type SPOT \
    --update-config maxUnavailable=2 \
    --labels '{"my-eks-nodegroup-label-1": "value-1" , "my-eks-nodegroup-
label-2": "value-2"}' \
    --taints '{"key": "taint-key-1" , "value": "taint-value-1", "effect":
 "NO_EXECUTE"}' \
    --tags '{"my-eks-nodegroup-key-1": "value-1" , "my-eks-nodegroup-key-2":
 "value-2"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "nodegroup": {
        "nodegroupName": "my-eks-nodegroup",
        "nodegroupArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-
cluster/my-eks-nodegroup/88c75524-97af-0cb9-a9c5-7c0423ab5314",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "version": "1.26",
        "releaseVersion": "1.26.12-20240329",
        "createdAt": "2024-04-04T14:05:07.940000-04:00",
        "modifiedAt": "2024-04-04T14:05:07.940000-04:00",
        "status": "CREATING",
        "capacityType": "SPOT",
        "scalingConfig": {
            "minSize": 1,
            "maxSize": 5,
            "desiredSize": 4
        },
        "instanceTypes": [
            "t3.large"
        ],
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
        ],
        "amiType": "AL2_x86_64",
        "nodeRole": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "labels": {
            "my-eks-nodegroup-label-2": "value-2",
            "my-eks-nodegroup-label-1": "value-1"
        },
        "taints": [
            {
                "key": "taint-key-1",
                "value": "taint-value-1",
                "effect": "NO_EXECUTE"
            }
        ],
        "diskSize": 50,
        "health": {
            "issues": []
        },
        "updateConfig": {
```

```
            "maxUnavailable": 2
        },
        "tags": {
            "my-eks-nodegroup-key-1": "value-1",
            "my-eks-nodegroup-key-2": "value-2"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a managed node group in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateNodegroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet creates a managed worker node group for an Amazon EKS cluster. You can only create a node group for your cluster that is equal to the current Kubernetes version for the cluster. All node groups are created with the latest AMI release version for the respective minor Kubernetes version of the cluster.

```
New-EKSNodeGroup -NodeGroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -AmiType "AL2_x86_64"
 -DiskSize 40 -ClusterName "PROD" -ScalingConfig_DesiredSize 2 -
ScalingConfig_MinSize 2 -ScalingConfig_MaxSize 5 -InstanceType t3.large
 -NodeRole "arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole" -Subnet
 "subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691","subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4"
```

Output:

```
AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
```

```
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      :
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : CREATING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see CreateNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates a managed worker node group for an Amazon EKS cluster. You can only create a node group for your cluster that is equal to the current Kubernetes version for the cluster. All node groups are created with the latest AMI release version for the respective minor Kubernetes version of the cluster.

```
New-EKSNodeGroup -NodeGroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -AmiType "AL2_x86_64"
 -DiskSize 40 -ClusterName "PROD" -ScalingConfig_DesiredSize 2 -
ScalingConfig_MinSize 2 -ScalingConfig_MaxSize 5 -InstanceType t3.large
 -NodeRole "arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole" -Subnet
 "subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691","subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4"
```

Output:

```
AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      :
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : CREATING
```

```
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see CreateNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Delete an Amazon EKS cluster control plane

The following `delete-cluster` example deletes an Amazon EKS cluster control plane.

```
aws eks delete-cluster \
    --name my-eks-cluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "arn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:cluster/my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-14T11:31:44.348000-04:00",
        "version": "1.27",
        "endpoint": "https://DALSJ343KE23J3RN45653DSKJTT647TYD.yl4.us-
east-2.eks.amazonaws.com",
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster-
ServiceRole-zMF6CBakwwbW",
        "resourcesVpcConfig": {
            "subnetIds": [
                "subnet-0fb75d2d8401716e7",
                "subnet-02184492f67a3d0f9",
                "subnet-04098063527aab776",
                "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72",
                "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
                "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
            ],
            "securityGroupIds": [
```

```
                "sg-0c1327f6270afbb36"
            ],
            "clusterSecurityGroupId": "sg-01c84d09d70f39a7f",
            "vpcId": "vpc-0012b8e1cc0abb17d",
            "endpointPublicAccess": true,
            "endpointPrivateAccess": true,
            "publicAccessCidrs": [
                "0.0.0.0/0"
            ]
        },
        "kubernetesNetworkConfig": {
            "serviceIpv4Cidr": "10.100.0.0/16",
            "ipFamily": "ipv4"
        },
        "logging": {
            "clusterLogging": [
                {
                    "types": [
                        "api",
                        "audit",
                        "authenticator",
                        "controllerManager",
                        "scheduler"
                    ],
                    "enabled": true
                }
            ]
        },
        "identity": {
            "oidc": {
                "issuer": "https://oidc.eks.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/id/
DALSJ343KE23J3RN45653DSKJTT647TYD"
            }
        },
        "status": "DELETING",
        "certificateAuthority": {
            "data": "XXX_CA_DATA_XXX"
        },
        "platformVersion": "eks.16",
        "tags": {
            "aws:cloudformation:stack-name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster",
            "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
            "karpenter.sh/discovery": "my-eks-cluster",
```

```
            "aws:cloudformation:stack-id": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-
east-2:111122223333:stack/eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster/e752ea00-e217-11ee-
beae-0a9599c8c7ed",
            "auto-delete": "no",
            "eksctl.cluster.k8s.io/v1alpha1/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
            "EKS-Cluster-Name": "my-eks-cluster",
            "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-oidc-enabled": "true",
            "aws:cloudformation:logical-id": "ControlPlane",
            "alpha.eksctl.io/eksctl-version": "0.173.0-dev
+a7ee89342.2024-03-01T03:40:57Z",
            "Name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster/ControlPlane"
        },
        "accessConfig": {
            "authenticationMode": "API_AND_CONFIG_MAP"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting an Amazon EKS cluster in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the Amazon EKS cluster control plane.

```
Remove-EKSCluster -Name "DEV-KUBE-CL"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSCluster (DeleteCluster)" on target "DEV-KUBE-
CL".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/DEV-KUBE-CL
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/25/2019 9:33:25 AM
```

```
Endpoint             : https://02E6D31E3E4F8C15D7BE7F58D527776A.yl4.us-
west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
Identity             : Amazon.EKS.Model.Identity
Logging              : Amazon.EKS.Model.Logging
Name                 : DEV-KUBE-CL
PlatformVersion      : eks.7
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/eks-iam-role
Status               : DELETING
Tags                 : {}
Version              : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the Amazon EKS cluster control plane.

```
Remove-EKSCluster -Name "DEV-KUBE-CL"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSCluster (DeleteCluster)" on target "DEV-KUBE-
CL".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/DEV-KUBE-CL
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/25/2019 9:33:25 AM
Endpoint             : https://02E6D31E3E4F8C15D7BE7F58D527776A.yl4.us-
west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
Identity             : Amazon.EKS.Model.Identity
Logging              : Amazon.EKS.Model.Logging
Name                 : DEV-KUBE-CL
PlatformVersion      : eks.7
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/eks-iam-role
Status               : DELETING
Tags                 : {}
```

```
Version              : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn remove_cluster(
    client: &aws_sdk_eks::Client,
    name: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_eks::Error> {
    let cluster_deleted = client.delete_cluster().name(name).send().await?;
    println!("cluster deleted: {:?}", cluster_deleted);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteFargateProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFargateProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: Create EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace

The following `delete-fargate-profile` example creates an EKS Fargate Profile for a selector with a namespace.

```
aws eks delete-fargate-profile \
```

```
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/1ac72bb3-3fc6-2631-f1e1-98bff53bed62",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-19T11:48:39.975000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "default",
                "labels": {
                    "foo": "bar"
                }
            }
        ],
        "status": "DELETING",
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Fargate profile - Deleting a Fargate in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteFargateProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes an AWS Fargate profile. When you delete a Fargate profile, any pods running on Fargate that were created with the profile are deleted.

```
Remove-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName "EKSFargate" -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSFargateProfile (DeleteFargateProfile)" on
 target "EKSFargate".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:34:47 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargate/42b7a119-e16b-a279-ce97-bdf303adec92
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargate
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : DELETING
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes an AWS Fargate profile. When you delete a Fargate profile, any pods running on Fargate that were created with the profile are deleted.

```
Remove-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName "EKSFargate" -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSFargateProfile (DeleteFargateProfile)" on
 target "EKSFargate".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:34:47 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargate/42b7a119-e16b-a279-ce97-bdf303adec92
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargate
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : DELETING
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteNodegroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteNodegroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: Delete a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster

The following `delete-nodegroup` example deletes a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
aws eks delete-nodegroup \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --nodegroup-name my-eks-nodegroup
```

Output:

```
{
    "nodegroup": {
        "nodegroupName": "my-eks-nodegroup",
        "nodegroupArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-
cluster/my-eks-nodegroup/1ec75f5f-0e21-dcc0-b46e-f9c442685cd8",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "version": "1.26",
        "releaseVersion": "1.26.12-20240329",
```

```
        "createdAt": "2024-04-08T13:25:15.033000-04:00",
        "modifiedAt": "2024-04-08T13:25:31.252000-04:00",
        "status": "DELETING",
        "capacityType": "SPOT",
        "scalingConfig": {
            "minSize": 1,
            "maxSize": 5,
            "desiredSize": 4
        },
        "instanceTypes": [
            "t3.large"
        ],
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
        ],
        "amiType": "AL2_x86_64",
        "nodeRole": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "labels": {
            "my-eks-nodegroup-label-2": "value-2",
            "my-eks-nodegroup-label-1": "value-1"
        },
        "taints": [
            {
                "key": "taint-key-1",
                "value": "taint-value-1",
                "effect": "NO_EXECUTE"
            }
        ],
        "diskSize": 50,
        "health": {
            "issues": []
        },
        "updateConfig": {
            "maxUnavailable": 2
        },
        "tags": {
            "my-eks-nodegroup-key-1": "value-1",
            "my-eks-nodegroup-key-2": "value-2"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteNodegroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes an Amazon EKS node group for a cluster.

```
Remove-EKSNodegroup -NodegroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -ClusterName "PROD"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSNodegroup (DeleteNodegroup)" on target
 "ProdEKSNodeGroup".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 11:01:16 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupResources
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : DELETING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DeleteNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes an Amazon EKS node group for a cluster.

```
Remove-EKSNodegroup -NodegroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -ClusterName "PROD"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSNodegroup (DeleteNodegroup)" on target
 "ProdEKSNodeGroup".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 11:01:16 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupResources
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : DELETING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DeleteNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeCluster` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Describe actively running EKS addon in your Amazon EKS cluster

The following `describe-cluster` example actively running EKS addon in your Amazon EKS cluster.

```
aws eks describe-cluster \
    --name my-eks-cluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "cluster": {
        "name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "arn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:cluster/my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-03-14T11:31:44.348000-04:00",
        "version": "1.26",
        "endpoint": "https://JSA79429HJDASKJDJ8223829MNDNASW.yl4.us-
east-2.eks.amazonaws.com",
        "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster-
ServiceRole-zMF6CBakwwbW",
        "resourcesVpcConfig": {
            "subnetIds": [
                "subnet-0fb75d2d8401716e7",
                "subnet-02184492f67a3d0f9",
                "subnet-04098063527aab776",
                "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72",
                "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
                "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
            ],
            "securityGroupIds": [
                "sg-0c1327f6270afbb36"
            ],
            "clusterSecurityGroupId": "sg-01c84d09d70f39a7f",
            "vpcId": "vpc-0012b8e1cc0abb17d",
            "endpointPublicAccess": true,
            "endpointPrivateAccess": true,
            "publicAccessCidrs": [
                "22.19.18.2/32"
            ]
```

```
        },
        "kubernetesNetworkConfig": {
            "serviceIpv4Cidr": "10.100.0.0/16",
            "ipFamily": "ipv4"
        },
        "logging": {
            "clusterLogging": [
                {
                    "types": [
                        "api",
                        "audit",
                        "authenticator",
                        "controllerManager",
                        "scheduler"
                    ],
                    "enabled": true
                }
            ]
        },
        "identity": {
            "oidc": {
                "issuer": "https://oidc.eks.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/id/
JSA79429HJDASKJDJ8223829MNDNASW"
            }
        },
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "certificateAuthority": {
            "data": "CA_DATA_STRING..."
        },
        "platformVersion": "eks.14",
        "tags": {
            "aws:cloudformation:stack-name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster",
            "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
            "karpenter.sh/discovery": "my-eks-cluster",
            "aws:cloudformation:stack-id": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-
east-2:111122223333:stack/eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster/e752ea00-e217-11ee-
beae-0a9599c8c7ed",
            "auto-delete": "no",
            "eksctl.cluster.k8s.io/v1alpha1/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
            "EKS-Cluster-Name": "my-eks-cluster",
            "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-oidc-enabled": "true",
            "aws:cloudformation:logical-id": "ControlPlane",
            "alpha.eksctl.io/eksctl-version": "0.173.0-dev
+a7ee89342.2024-03-01T03:40:57Z",
```

```
            "Name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster/ControlPlane"
        },
        "health": {
            "issues": []
        },
        "accessConfig": {
            "authenticationMode": "API_AND_CONFIG_MAP"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
Get-EKSCluster -Name "PROD"
```

Output:

```
Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/25/2019 6:46:17 AM
Endpoint             : https://669608765450FBBE54D1D78A3D71B72C.gr8.us-
west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
Identity             : Amazon.EKS.Model.Identity
Logging              : Amazon.EKS.Model.Logging
Name                 : PROD
PlatformVersion      : eks.7
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/eks-iam-role
Status               : ACTIVE
Tags                 : {}
Version              : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
Get-EKSCluster -Name "PROD"
```

Output:

```
Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/25/2019 6:46:17 AM
Endpoint             : https://669608765450FBBE54D1D78A3D71B72C.gr8.us-
west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
Identity             : Amazon.EKS.Model.Identity
Logging              : Amazon.EKS.Model.Logging
Name                 : PROD
PlatformVersion      : eks.7
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/eks-iam-role
Status               : ACTIVE
Tags                 : {}
Version              : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeFargateProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeFargateProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Describe a Fargate profile

The following `describe-fargate-profile` example describes a Fargate profile.

```
aws eks describe-fargate-profile \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --fargate-profile-name my-fargate-profile
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfile": {
        "fargateProfileName": "my-fargate-profile",
        "fargateProfileArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/
my-eks-cluster/my-fargate-profile/96c766ce-43d2-f9c9-954c-647334391198",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "createdAt": "2024-04-11T10:42:52.486000-04:00",
        "podExecutionRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/eksctl-my-eks-
cluster-farga-FargatePodExecutionRole-1htfAaJdJUEO",
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72"
        ],
        "selectors": [
            {
                "namespace": "prod*",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname*?": "*value1"
                }
            },
            {
                "namespace": "*dev*",
                "labels": {
                    "labelname*?": "*value*"
                }
            }
        ],
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "tags": {
            "eks-fargate-profile-key-2": "value-2",
            "eks-fargate-profile-key-1": "value-1"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeFargateProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an AWS Fargate profile.

```
Get-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName "EKSFargate" -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:34:47 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargate/42b7a119-e16b-a279-ce97-bdf303adec92
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargate
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : ACTIVE
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an AWS Fargate profile.

```
Get-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName "EKSFargate" -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:34:47 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargate/42b7a119-e16b-a279-ce97-bdf303adec92
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargate
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : ACTIVE
```

```
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeNodegroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeNodegroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Describe a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster

The following `describe-nodegroup` example describes a managed node group for an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
aws eks describe-nodegroup \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster \
    --nodegroup-name my-eks-nodegroup
```

Output:

```
{
    "nodegroup": {
        "nodegroupName": "my-eks-nodegroup",
        "nodegroupArn": "arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-
cluster/my-eks-nodegroup/a8c75f2f-df78-a72f-4063-4b69af3de5b1",
        "clusterName": "my-eks-cluster",
        "version": "1.26",
        "releaseVersion": "1.26.12-20240329",
        "createdAt": "2024-04-08T11:42:10.555000-04:00",
        "modifiedAt": "2024-04-08T11:44:12.402000-04:00",
        "status": "ACTIVE",
        "capacityType": "ON_DEMAND",
        "scalingConfig": {
            "minSize": 1,
            "maxSize": 3,
            "desiredSize": 1
        },
```

```
        "instanceTypes": [
            "t3.medium"
        ],
        "subnets": [
            "subnet-0e2907431c9988b72",
            "subnet-04ad87f71c6e5ab4d",
            "subnet-09d912bb63ef21b9a"
        ],
        "amiType": "AL2_x86_64",
        "nodeRole": "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/role-name",
        "labels": {},
        "resources": {
            "autoScalingGroups": [
                {
                    "name": "eks-my-eks-nodegroup-a8c75f2f-df78-
a72f-4063-4b69af3de5b1"
                }
            ]
        },
        "diskSize": 20,
        "health": {
            "issues": []
        },
        "updateConfig": {
            "maxUnavailable": 1
        },
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeNodegroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an Amazon EKS node group.

```
Get-EKSNodegroup -NodegroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -ClusterName "PROD"
```

Output:

```
AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      :
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : CREATING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DescribeNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an Amazon EKS node group.

```
Get-EKSNodegroup -NodegroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -ClusterName "PROD"
```

Output:

```
AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
```

```
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      :
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : CREATING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DescribeNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeUpdate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeUpdate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe an update for a cluster

The following `describe-update` example describes an update for a cluster named.

```
aws eks describe-update \
    --name my-eks-cluster \
    --update-id 10bddb13-a71b-425a-b0a6-71cd03e59161
```

Output:

```
{
    "update": {
        "id": "10bddb13-a71b-425a-b0a6-71cd03e59161",
        "status": "Successful",
        "type": "EndpointAccessUpdate",
        "params": [
            {
                "type": "EndpointPublicAccess",
                "value": "false"
            },
            {
                "type": "EndpointPrivateAccess",
                "value": "true"
```

```
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": "2024-03-14T10:01:26.297000-04:00",
        "errors": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating an Amazon EKS cluster Kubernetes version in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 2: To describe an update for a cluster

The following `describe-update` example describes an update for a cluster named.

```
aws eks describe-update \
    --name my-eks-cluster \
    --update-id e4994991-4c0f-475a-a040-427e6da52966
```

Output:

```
{
    "update": {
        "id": "e4994991-4c0f-475a-a040-427e6da52966",
        "status": "Successful",
        "type": "AssociateEncryptionConfig",
        "params": [
            {
                "type": "EncryptionConfig",
                "value": "[{\"resources\":[\"secrets\"],\"provider\":{\"keyArn\":
\"arn:aws:kms:region-code:account:key/key\"}}]"
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": "2024-03-14T11:01:26.297000-04:00",
        "errors": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating an Amazon EKS cluster Kubernetes version in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

Example 3: To describe an update for a cluster

The following `describe-update` example describes an update for a cluster named.

```
aws eks describe-update \
    --name my-eks-cluster \
    --update-id b5f0ba18-9a87-4450-b5a0-825e6e84496f
```

Output:

```
{
    "update": {
        "id": "b5f0ba18-9a87-4450-b5a0-825e6e84496f",
        "status": "Successful",
        "type": "VersionUpdate",
        "params": [
            {
                "type": "Version",
                "value": "1.29"
            },
            {
                "type": "PlatformVersion",
                "value": "eks.1"
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": "2024-03-14T12:05:26.297000-04:00",
        "errors": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating an Amazon EKS cluster Kubernetes version in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeUpdate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an update against your Amazon EKS cluster or associated managed node group.

```
Get-EKSUpdate -Name "PROD" -UpdateId "ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726"
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/25/2019 5:03:07 PM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : Successful
Type      : LoggingUpdate
```

- For API details, see DescribeUpdate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an update against your Amazon EKS cluster or associated managed node group.

```
Get-EKSUpdate -Name "PROD" -UpdateId "ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726"
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/25/2019 5:03:07 PM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : Successful
Type      : LoggingUpdate
```

- For API details, see DescribeUpdate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListClusters` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListClusters`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all the installed add-ons in your Amazon EKS cluster named `my-eks-cluster`

The following `list-clusters` example lists all the installed add-ons in your Amazon EKS cluster named my-eks-cluster.

```
aws eks list-clusters
```

Output:

```
{
    "clusters": [
        "prod",
        "qa",
        "stage",
        "my-eks-cluster"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the Amazon EKS clusters in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSClusterList
```

Output:

```
 PROD
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the Amazon EKS clusters in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSClusterList
```

Output:

```
 PROD
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListFargateProfiles` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListFargateProfiles`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all the fargate profiles in your Amazon EKS cluster named `my-eks-cluster`

The following `list-fargate-profiles` example lists all the fargate profiles in your Amazon EKS cluster named my-eks-cluster.

```
aws eks list-fargate-profiles \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "fargateProfileNames": [
        "my-fargate-profile"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListFargateProfiles in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the AWS Fargate profiles associated with the specified cluster in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSFargateProfileList -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
EKSFargate
EKSFargateProfile
```

- For API details, see ListFargateProfiles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the AWS Fargate profiles associated with the specified cluster in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSFargateProfileList -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
EKSFargate
EKSFargateProfile
```

- For API details, see ListFargateProfiles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListNodegroups` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListNodegroups`.

CLI

AWS CLI

List all the node groups in an Amazon EKS cluster

The following `list-nodegroups` example list all the node groups in an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
aws eks list-nodegroups \
    --cluster-name my-eks-cluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "nodegroups": [
        "my-eks-managed-node-group",
        "my-eks-nodegroup"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListNodegroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the Amazon EKS node groups associated with the specified cluster in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSNodegroupList -ClusterName PROD
```

Output:

```
ProdEKSNodeGroup
```

- For API details, see ListNodegroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the Amazon EKS node groups associated with the specified cluster in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSNodegroupList -ClusterName PROD
```

Output:

```
ProdEKSNodeGroup
```

- For API details, see ListNodegroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListTagsForResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all the tags for an Amazon EKS Cluster ARN

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists all the tags for an Amazon EKS Cluster ARN.

```
aws eks list-tags-for-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:cluster/my-eks-cluster
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags": {
        "aws:cloudformation:stack-name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "karpenter.sh/discovery": "my-eks-cluster",
        "aws:cloudformation:stack-id": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-
east-2:111122223333:stack/eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster/e752ea00-e217-11ee-
beae-0a9599c8c7ed",
        "auto-delete": "no",
        "eksctl.cluster.k8s.io/v1alpha1/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "EKS-Cluster-Name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-oidc-enabled": "true",
        "aws:cloudformation:logical-id": "ControlPlane",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/eksctl-version": "0.173.0-dev
+a7ee89342.2024-03-01T03:40:57Z",
        "Name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-cluster/ControlPlane"
    }
}
```

Example 2: To list all the tags for an Amazon EKS Node group ARN

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists all the tags for an Amazon EKS Node group ARN.

```
aws eks list-tags-for-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-cluster/
my-eks-managed-node-group/60c71ed2-2cfb-020f-a5f4-ad32477f198c
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags": {
        "aws:cloudformation:stack-name": "eksctl-my-eks-cluster-nodegroup-my-eks-
managed-node-group",
        "aws:cloudformation:stack-id": "arn:aws:cloudformation:us-
east-2:111122223333:stack/eksctl-my-eks-cluster-nodegroup-my-eks-managed-node-
group/eaa20310-e219-11ee-b851-0ab9ad8228ff",
```

```
        "eksctl.cluster.k8s.io/v1alpha1/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "EKS-Cluster-Name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/nodegroup-type": "managed",
        "NodeGroup Name 1": "my-eks-managed-node-group",
        "k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/enabled": "true",
        "nodegroup-role": "worker",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/cluster-name": "my-eks-cluster",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/nodegroup-name": "my-eks-managed-node-group",
        "karpenter.sh/discovery": "my-eks-cluster",
        "NodeGroup Name 2": "AmazonLinux-Linux-Managed-NG-v1-26-v1",
        "auto-delete": "no",
        "k8s.io/cluster-autoscaler/my-eks-cluster": "owned",
        "aws:cloudformation:logical-id": "ManagedNodeGroup",
        "alpha.eksctl.io/eksctl-version": "0.173.0-dev
+a7ee89342.2024-03-01T03:40:57Z"
    }
}
```

Example 3: To list all the tags on an Amazon EKS Fargate profil ARNe

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists all the tags for an Amazon EKS Fargate profile ARN.

```
aws eks list-tags-for-resource  \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:fargateprofile/my-eks-
cluster/my-fargate-profile/d6c76780-e541-0725-c816-36754cab734b
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags": {
        "eks-fargate-profile-key-2": "value-2",
        "eks-fargate-profile-key-1": "value-1"
    }
}
```

Example 4: To list all the tags for an Amazon EKS Add-on ARN

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists all the tags for an Amazon EKS Add-on ARN.

```
aws eks list-tags-for-resource \
```

```
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:addon/my-eks-cluster/vpc-cni/0ec71efc-98dd-3203-60b0-4b939b2a5e5f
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags": {
        "eks-addon-key-2": "value-2",
        "eks-addon-key-1": "value-1"
    }
}
```

Example 5: To list all the tags for an Amazon EKS OIDC identity provider ARN

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists all the tags for an Amazon EKS OIDC identity provider ARN.

```
aws eks list-tags-for-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:identityproviderconfig/my-eks-cluster/oidc/my-identity-provider/8ac76722-78e4-cec1-ed76-d49eea058622
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags": {
        "my-identity-provider": "test"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet list the tags for an Amazon EKS resource.

```
Get-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD"
```

Output:

```
Key  Value
---  -----
Name EKSPRODCLUSTER
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet list the tags for an Amazon EKS resource.

```
Get-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD"
```

Output:

```
Key  Value
---  -----
Name EKSPRODCLUSTER
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListUpdates` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListUpdates`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the updates for a cluster

This example command lists the current updates for a cluster named `example` in your default region.

Command:

```
aws eks list-updates --name example
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "updateIds": [
        "10bddb13-a71b-425a-b0a6-71cd03e59161"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListUpdates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the updates associated with an Amazon EKS cluster or managed node group in your AWS account, in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSUpdateList -Name "PROD"
```

Output:

```
ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
```

- For API details, see ListUpdates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the updates associated with an Amazon EKS cluster or managed node group in your AWS account, in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSUpdateList -Name "PROD"
```

Output:

```
ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
```

- For API details, see ListUpdates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TagResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add the specified tags to an Amazon EKS Cluster

The following `tag-resource` example adds the specified tags to an Amazon EKS Cluster.

```
aws eks tag-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:cluster/my-eks-cluster \
    --tag 'my-eks-cluster-test-1=test-value-1,my-eks-cluster-dev-1=dev-value-2'
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To add the specified tags to an Amazon EKS Node group

The following `tag-resource` example adds the specified tags to an Amazon EKS Node group.

```
aws eks tag-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-cluster/
my-eks-managed-node-group/60c71ed2-2cfb-020f-a5f4-ad32477f198c \
    --tag 'my-eks-nodegroup-test-1=test-value-1,my-eks-nodegroup-dev-1=dev-
value-2'
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet associates the specified tags to a resource with the specified resourceArn.

```
Add-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD"
 -Tag @{Name = "EKSPRODCLUSTER"}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet associates the specified tags to a resource with the specified resourceArn.

```
Add-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD"
 -Tag @{Name = "EKSPRODCLUSTER"}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UntagResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To deletes the specified tags from an Amazon EKS Cluster

The following `untag-resource` example deletes the specified tags from an Amazon EKS Cluster.

```
aws eks untag-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:cluster/my-eks-cluster \
    --tag-keys "my-eks-cluster-test-1" "my-eks-cluster-dev-1"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To deletes the specified tags from an Amazon EKS Node group

The following `untag-resource` example deletes the specified tags from an Amazon EKS Node group.

```
aws eks untag-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:111122223333:nodegroup/my-eks-cluster/
my-eks-managed-node-group/60c71ed2-2cfb-020f-a5f4-ad32477f198c \
    --tag-keys "my-eks-nodegroup-test-1" "my-eks-nodegroup-dev-1"
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes specified tags from an EKS resource.

```
Remove-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/
PROD" -TagKey "Name"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSResourceTag (UntagResource)" on target
 "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes specified tags from an EKS resource.

```
Remove-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/
PROD" -TagKey "Name"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSResourceTag (UntagResource)" on target
 "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateClusterConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateClusterConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update cluster endpoint access

This example command updates a cluster to disable endpoint public access and enable private endpoint access.

Command:

```
aws eks update-cluster-config --name example \
--resources-vpc-config endpointPublicAccess=false,endpointPrivateAccess=true
```

Output:

```
{
    "update": {
        "id": "ec883c93-2e9e-407c-a22f-8f6fa6e67d4f",
        "status": "InProgress",
        "type": "EndpointAccessUpdate",
        "params": [
            {
                "type": "EndpointPublicAccess",
                "value": "false"
            },
            {
                "type": "EndpointPrivateAccess",
                "value": "true"
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": 1565806986.506,
        "errors": []
    }
}
```

To enable logging for a cluster

This example command enables all cluster control plane logging types for a cluster named `example`.

Command:

```
aws eks update-cluster-config --name example \
--logging '{"clusterLogging":[{"types":
["api","audit","authenticator","controllerManager","scheduler"],"enabled":true}]}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "update": {
        "id": "7551c64b-1d27-4b1e-9f8e-c45f056eb6fd",
        "status": "InProgress",
        "type": "LoggingUpdate",
        "params": [
            {
                "type": "ClusterLogging",
                "value": "{\"clusterLogging\":[{\"types\":[\"api\",\"audit\",
\"authenticator\",\"controllerManager\",\"scheduler\"],\"enabled\":true}]}"
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": 1565807210.37,
        "errors": []
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates an Amazon EKS cluster configuration. Your cluster continues to function during the update.

```
Update-EKSClusterConfig -Name "PROD" -Logging_ClusterLogging
 @{Types="api","audit","authenticator","controllerManager","scheduler",Enabled="True"}
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/25/2019 5:03:07 PM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
```

```
Status    : InProgress
Type      : LoggingUpdate
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates an Amazon EKS cluster configuration. Your cluster continues to function during the update.

```
Update-EKSClusterConfig -Name "PROD" -Logging_ClusterLogging
 @{Types="api","audit","authenticator","controllerManager","scheduler",Enabled="True"}
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/25/2019 5:03:07 PM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : InProgress
Type      : LoggingUpdate
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateClusterVersion` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateClusterVersion`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To updates an Amazon EKS cluster named `my-eks-cluster` to the specified Kubernetes version

The following `update-cluster-version` example updates an Amazon EKS cluster to the specified Kubernetes version.

```
aws eks update-cluster-version \
```

```
    --name my-eks-cluster \
    --kubernetes-version 1.27
```

Output:

```
{
    "update": {
        "id": "e4091a28-ea14-48fd-a8c7-975aeb469e8a",
        "status": "InProgress",
        "type": "VersionUpdate",
        "params": [
            {
                "type": "Version",
                "value": "1.27"
            },
            {
                "type": "PlatformVersion",
                "value": "eks.16"
            }
        ],
        "createdAt": "2024-04-12T16:56:01.082000-04:00",
        "errors": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Updating an Amazon EKS cluster Kubernetes version in the *Amazon EKS User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateClusterVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This cmdlet updates an Amazon EKS cluster to the specified Kubernetes version. Your cluster continues to function during the update.

```
Update-EKSClusterVersion -Name "PROD-KUBE-CL" -Version 1.14
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/26/2019 9:50:37 AM
```

```
Errors    : {}
Id        : ef186eff-3b3a-4c25-bcfc-3dcdf9e898a8
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam, Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : InProgress
Type      : VersionUpdate
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet updates an Amazon EKS cluster to the specified Kubernetes version. Your cluster continues to function during the update.

```
Update-EKSClusterVersion -Name "PROD-KUBE-CL" -Version 1.14
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/26/2019 9:50:37 AM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ef186eff-3b3a-4c25-bcfc-3dcdf9e898a8
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam, Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : InProgress
Type      : VersionUpdate
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Elastic Beanstalk with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Elastic Beanstalk Developer Guide** – More information about Elastic Beanstalk.
- **Elastic Beanstalk API Reference** – Details about all available Elastic Beanstalk actions.

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs
    - Use DescribeApplications with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListAvailableSolutionStacks with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateApplication with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Elastic Beanstalk with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs
  - Use DescribeApplications with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListAvailableSolutionStacks with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateApplication with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Elastic Beanstalk using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Elastic Beanstalk actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Elastic Beanstalk API Reference.

Examples

- Use DescribeApplications with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAvailableSolutionStacks with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateApplication with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `DescribeApplications` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeApplications`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view a list of applications

The following command retrieves information about applications in the current region:

```
aws elasticbeanstalk describe-applications
```

Output:

```
{
    "Applications": [
        {
            "ApplicationName": "ruby",
            "ConfigurationTemplates": [],
            "DateUpdated": "2015-08-13T21:05:44.376Z",
            "Versions": [
                "Sample Application"
            ],
            "DateCreated": "2015-08-13T21:05:44.376Z"
        },
        {
            "ApplicationName": "pythonsample",
            "Description": "Application created from the EB CLI using \"eb init
\"",
            "Versions": [
                "Sample Application"
            ],
            "DateCreated": "2015-08-13T19:05:43.637Z",
            "ConfigurationTemplates": [],
            "DateUpdated": "2015-08-13T19:05:43.637Z"
        },
        {
            "ApplicationName": "nodejs-example",
            "ConfigurationTemplates": [],
            "DateUpdated": "2015-08-06T17:50:02.486Z",
            "Versions": [
                "add elasticache",
```

```
                "First Release"
            ],
            "DateCreated": "2015-08-06T17:50:02.486Z"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Class to manage Elastic Beanstalk applications
class ElasticBeanstalkManager
  def initialize(eb_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @eb_client = eb_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists applications and their environments
  def list_applications
    @eb_client.describe_applications.applications.each do |application|
      log_application_details(application)
      list_environments(application.application_name)
    end
  rescue Aws::ElasticBeanstalk::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Elastic Beanstalk Service Error: #{e.message}")
  end

  private

  # Logs application details
  def log_application_details(application)
    @logger.info("Name:        #{application.application_name}")
    @logger.info("Description: #{application.description}")
```

```
  end

  # Lists and logs details of environments for a given application
  def list_environments(application_name)
    @eb_client.describe_environments(application_name:
 application_name).environments.each do |env|
      @logger.info("  Environment:  #{env.environment_name}")
      @logger.info("    URL:        #{env.cname}")
      @logger.info("    Health:     #{env.health}")
    end
  rescue Aws::ElasticBeanstalk::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing environments for application
 #{application_name}: #{e.message}")
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplications in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ListAvailableSolutionStacks` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAvailableSolutionStacks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view solution stacks

The following command lists solution stacks for all currently available platform configurations and any that you have used in the past:

```
aws elasticbeanstalk list-available-solution-stacks
```

Output (abbreviated):

```
{
    "SolutionStacks": [
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Node.js",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running PHP 5.6",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running PHP 5.5",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running PHP 5.4",
```

```
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Python 3.4",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Python 2.7",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Python",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 2.2 (Puma)",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 2.2 (Passenger
 Standalone)",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 2.1 (Puma)",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 2.1 (Passenger
 Standalone)",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 2.0 (Puma)",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 2.0 (Passenger
 Standalone)",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Ruby 1.9.3",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Tomcat 8 Java 8",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Tomcat 7 Java 7",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Tomcat 7 Java 6",
        "64bit Windows Server Core 2012 R2 running IIS 8.5",
        "64bit Windows Server 2012 R2 running IIS 8.5",
        "64bit Windows Server 2012 running IIS 8",
        "64bit Windows Server 2008 R2 running IIS 7.5",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Docker 1.6.2",
        "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running Multi-container Docker 1.6.2
 (Generic)",
        "64bit Debian jessie v2.0.0 running GlassFish 4.1 Java 8 (Preconfigured -
 Docker)",
        "64bit Debian jessie v2.0.0 running GlassFish 4.0 Java 7 (Preconfigured -
 Docker)",
        "64bit Debian jessie v2.0.0 running Go 1.4 (Preconfigured - Docker)",
        "64bit Debian jessie v2.0.0 running Go 1.3 (Preconfigured - Docker)",
        "64bit Debian jessie v2.0.0 running Python 3.4 (Preconfigured - Docker)",
    ],
    "SolutionStackDetails": [
        {
            "PermittedFileTypes": [
                "zip"
            ],
            "SolutionStackName": "64bit Amazon Linux 2015.03 v2.0.0 running
 Node.js"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListAvailableSolutionStacks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Manages listing of AWS Elastic Beanstalk solution stacks
# @param [Aws::ElasticBeanstalk::Client] eb_client
# @param [String] filter - Returns subset of results based on match
# @param [Logger] logger
class StackLister
  # Initialize with AWS Elastic Beanstalk client
  def initialize(eb_client, filter, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @eb_client = eb_client
    @filter = filter.downcase
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists and logs Elastic Beanstalk solution stacks
  def list_stacks
    stacks = @eb_client.list_available_solution_stacks.solution_stacks
    orig_length = stacks.length
    filtered_length = 0

    stacks.each do |stack|
      if @filter.empty? || stack.downcase.include?(@filter)
        @logger.info(stack)
        filtered_length += 1
      end
    end

    log_summary(filtered_length, orig_length)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing solution stacks: #{e.message}")
  end

  private
```

```
  # Logs summary of listed stacks
  def log_summary(filtered_length, orig_length)
    if @filter.empty?
      @logger.info("Showed #{orig_length} stack(s)")
    else
      @logger.info("Showed #{filtered_length} stack(s) of #{orig_length}")
    end
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAvailableSolutionStacks in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `UpdateApplication` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateApplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change an application's description

The following command updates the description of an application named `my-app`:

```
aws elasticbeanstalk update-application --application-name my-app --
description "my Elastic Beanstalk application"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Application": {
        "ApplicationName": "my-app",
        "Description": "my Elastic Beanstalk application",
        "Versions": [
            "2fba-stage-150819_234450",
            "bf07-stage-150820_214945",
            "93f8",
            "fd7c-stage-150820_000431",
            "22a0-stage-150819_185942"
        ],
        "DateCreated": "2015-08-13T19:15:50.449Z",
        "ConfigurationTemplates": [],
```

```
        "DateUpdated": "2015-08-20T22:34:56.195Z"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Manages deployment of Rails applications to AWS Elastic Beanstalk
class RailsAppDeployer
  def initialize(eb_client, s3_client, app_name, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @eb_client = eb_client
    @s3_client = s3_client
    @app_name = app_name
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deploys the latest application version to Elastic Beanstalk
  def deploy
    create_storage_location
    zip_file_name = create_zip_file
    upload_zip_to_s3(zip_file_name)
    create_and_deploy_new_application_version(zip_file_name)
  end

  private

  # Creates a new S3 storage location for the application
  def create_storage_location
    resp = @eb_client.create_storage_location
    @logger.info("Created storage location in bucket #{resp.s3_bucket}")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to create storage location: #{e.message}")
  end
```

```
  # Creates a ZIP file of the application using git
  def create_zip_file
    zip_file_basename = SecureRandom.urlsafe_base64
    zip_file_name = "#{zip_file_basename}.zip"
    `git archive --format=zip -o #{zip_file_name} HEAD`
    zip_file_name
  end

  # Uploads the ZIP file to the S3 bucket
  def upload_zip_to_s3(zip_file_name)
    zip_contents = File.read(zip_file_name)
    key = "#{@app_name}/#{zip_file_name}"
    @s3_client.put_object(body: zip_contents, bucket: fetch_bucket_name, key:
key)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to upload ZIP file to S3: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Fetches the S3 bucket name from Elastic Beanstalk application versions
  def fetch_bucket_name
    app_versions = @eb_client.describe_application_versions(application_name:
@app_name)
    av = app_versions.application_versions.first
    av.source_bundle.s3_bucket
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to fetch bucket name: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates a new application version and deploys it
  def create_and_deploy_new_application_version(zip_file_name)
    version_label = File.basename(zip_file_name, '.zip')
    @eb_client.create_application_version(
      process: false,
      application_name: @app_name,
      version_label: version_label,
      source_bundle: {
        s3_bucket: fetch_bucket_name,
        s3_key: "#{@app_name}/#{zip_file_name}"
      },
      description: "Updated #{Time.now.strftime('%d/%m/%Y')}"
    )
    update_environment(version_label)
```

```
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to create or deploy application version: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the environment to the new application version
  def update_environment(version_label)
    env_name = fetch_environment_name
    @eb_client.update_environment(
      environment_name: env_name,
      version_label: version_label
    )
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to update environment: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Fetches the environment name of the application
  def fetch_environment_name
    envs = @eb_client.describe_environments(application_name: @app_name)
    envs.environments.first.environment_name
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to fetch environment name: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Code examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 User Guide** – More information about Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1.

- **Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 API Reference** – Details about all available Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTags with a CLI
    - Use ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer with a CLI
    - Use AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets with a CLI
    - Use ConfigureHealthCheck with a CLI
    - Use CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy with a CLI
    - Use CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy with a CLI
    - Use CreateLoadBalancer with a CLI
    - Use CreateLoadBalancerListeners with a CLI
    - Use CreateLoadBalancerPolicy with a CLI
    - Use DeleteLoadBalancer with a CLI
    - Use DeleteLoadBalancerListeners with a CLI
    - Use DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer with a CLI
    - Use DescribeInstanceHealth with a CLI
    - Use DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
    - Use DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies with a CLI
    - Use DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes with a CLI
    - Use DescribeLoadBalancers with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTags with a CLI
    - Use DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets with a CLI
    - Use DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer with a CLI
    - Use EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer with a CLI

- Use ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use RemoveTags with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener with a CLI

Basic examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTags with a CLI
  - Use ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer with a CLI
  - Use AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets with a CLI
  - Use ConfigureHealthCheck with a CLI
  - Use CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy with a CLI
  - Use CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy with a CLI
  - Use CreateLoadBalancer with a CLI
  - Use CreateLoadBalancerListeners with a CLI
  - Use CreateLoadBalancerPolicy with a CLI
  - Use DeleteLoadBalancer with a CLI
  - Use DeleteLoadBalancerListeners with a CLI
  - Use DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy with a CLI
  - Use DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer with a CLI
  - Use DescribeInstanceHealth with a CLI
  - Use DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
  - Use DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies with a CLI
  - Use DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes with a CLI
  - Use DescribeLoadBalancers with a CLI

- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets with a CLI
- Use DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use RemoveTags with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener with a CLI

Actions for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTags with a CLI
- Use ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets with a CLI
- Use ConfigureHealthCheck with a CLI
- Use CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy with a CLI
- Use CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy with a CLI
- Use CreateLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use CreateLoadBalancerListeners with a CLI
- Use CreateLoadBalancerPolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use DeleteLoadBalancerListeners with a CLI

- Use DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy with a CLI
- Use DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceHealth with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancers with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets with a CLI
- Use DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer with a CLI
- Use RemoveTags with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer with a CLI
- Use SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener with a CLI

Use AddTags with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use AddTags.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a tag to a load balancer

This example adds tags to the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb add-tags --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
tags "Key=project,Value=lima" "Key=department,Value=digital-media"
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the specified tags to the specified load balancer. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Add-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag
 @{ Key="project";Value="lima" },@{ Key="department";Value="digital-media" }
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create a tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "project"
$tag.Value = "lima"
Add-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified tags to the specified load balancer. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Add-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag
 @{ Key="project";Value="lima" },@{ Key="department";Value="digital-media" }
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create a tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "project"
$tag.Value = "lima"
Add-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To associate a security group with a load balancer in a VPC

This example associates a security group with the specified load balancer in a VPC.

Command:

```
aws elb apply-security-groups-to-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --security-groups sg-fc448899
```

Output:

```
{
  "SecurityGroups": [
      "sg-fc448899"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example replaces the current security group for the specified load balancer with the specified security group.

```
Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -SecurityGroup sg-87654321
```

Output:

```
sg-87654321
```

Example 2: To keep the current security group and specify an additional security group, specify both the existing and new security groups.

```
Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
SecurityGroup @("sg-12345678", "sg-87654321")
```

Output:

```
sg-12345678
sg-87654321
```

- For API details, see ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the current security group for the specified load balancer with the specified security group.

```
Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
SecurityGroup sg-87654321
```

Output:

```
sg-87654321
```

Example 2: To keep the current security group and specify an additional security group, specify both the existing and new security groups.

```
Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
SecurityGroup @("sg-12345678", "sg-87654321")
```

Output:

```
sg-12345678
sg-87654321
```

- For API details, see ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach subnets to a load balancer

This example adds the specified subnet to the set of configured subnets for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb attach-load-balancer-to-subnets --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
subnets subnet-0ecac448
```

Output:

```
{
   "Subnets": [
       "subnet-15aaab61",
       "subnet-0ecac448"
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the specified subnet to the set of subnets configured for the specified load balancer. The output includes the complete list of subnets.

```
Add-ELBLoadBalancerToSubnet -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Subnet
 subnet-12345678
```

Output:

```
subnet-12345678
```

```
subnet-87654321
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified subnet to the set of subnets configured for the specified load balancer. The output includes the complete list of subnets.

```
Add-ELBLoadBalancerToSubnet -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Subnet
 subnet-12345678
```

Output:

```
subnet-12345678
subnet-87654321
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ConfigureHealthCheck` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ConfigureHealthCheck`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To specify the health check settings for your backend EC2 instances

This example specifies the health check settings used to evaluate the health of your backend EC2 instances.

Command:

```
aws elb configure-health-check --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --health-
check Target=HTTP:80/
png,Interval=30,UnhealthyThreshold=2,HealthyThreshold=2,Timeout=3
```

Output:

```
{
   "HealthCheck": {
       "HealthyThreshold": 2,
       "Interval": 30,
       "Target": "HTTP:80/png",
       "Timeout": 3,
       "UnhealthyThreshold": 2
   }
}
```

- For API details, see ConfigureHealthCheck in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example configures the health check settings for the specified load balancer.

```
Set-ELBHealthCheck -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -HealthCheck_HealthyThreshold 2 `
>> -HealthCheck_UnhealthyThreshold 2 `
>> -HealthCheck_Target "HTTP:80/ping" `
>> -HealthCheck_Interval 30 `
>> -HealthCheck_Timeout 3
```

Output:

```
HealthyThreshold   : 2
Interval           : 30
Target             : HTTP:80/ping
Timeout            : 3
UnhealthyThreshold : 2
```

- For API details, see ConfigureHealthCheck in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example configures the health check settings for the specified load balancer.

```
Set-ELBHealthCheck -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -HealthCheck_HealthyThreshold 2 `
>> -HealthCheck_UnhealthyThreshold 2 `
>> -HealthCheck_Target "HTTP:80/ping" `
>> -HealthCheck_Interval 30 `
>> -HealthCheck_Timeout 3
```

Output:

```
HealthyThreshold   : 2
Interval           : 30
Target             : HTTP:80/ping
Timeout            : 3
UnhealthyThreshold : 2
```

- For API details, see ConfigureHealthCheck in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To generate a stickiness policy for your HTTPS load balancer

This example generates a stickiness policy that follows the sticky session lifetimes of the application-generated cookie.

Command:

```
aws elb create-app-cookie-stickiness-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
 --policy-name my-app-cookie-policy --cookie-name my-app-cookie
```

- For API details, see CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a stickiness policy that follows the sticky session lifetimes of the specified application-generated cookie.

```
New-ELBAppCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName
 my-app-cookie-policy -CookieName my-app-cookie
```

- For API details, see CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a stickiness policy that follows the sticky session lifetimes of the specified application-generated cookie.

```
New-ELBAppCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName
 my-app-cookie-policy -CookieName my-app-cookie
```

- For API details, see CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To generate a duration-based stickiness policy for your HTTPS load balancer

This example generates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the specified expiration period.

Command:

```
aws elb create-lb-cookie-stickiness-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
 --policy-name my-duration-cookie-policy --cookie-expiration-period 60
```

- For API details, see CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the specified expiration period (in seconds).

```
New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName
 my-duration-cookie-policy -CookieExpirationPeriod 60
```

Example 2: This example creates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the by the lifetime of the browser (user-agent).

```
New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName
 my-duration-cookie-policy
```

- For API details, see CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the specified expiration period (in seconds).

```
New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName
 my-duration-cookie-policy -CookieExpirationPeriod 60
```

Example 2: This example creates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the by the lifetime of the browser (user-agent).

```
New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName
 my-duration-cookie-policy
```

- For API details, see CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an HTTP load balancer

This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in a VPC.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTP,LoadBalancerPort=80,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80"
 --subnets subnet-15aaab61 --security-groups sg-a61988c3
```

Output:

```
{
    "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
}
```

This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in EC2-Classic.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTP,LoadBalancerPort=80,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80"
 --availability-zones us-west-2a us-west-2b
```

Output:

```
{
    "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
}
```

To create an HTTPS load balancer

This example creates a load balancer with an HTTPS listener in a VPC.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTP,LoadBalancerPort=80,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80" "Prot
certificate/my-server-cert" --subnets subnet-15aaab61 --security-groups sg-
a61988c3
```

Output:

```
{
    "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
}
```

This example creates a load balancer with an HTTPS listener in EC2-Classic.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTP,LoadBalancerPort=80,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80" "Prot
certificate/my-server-cert" --availability-zones us-west-2a us-west-2b
```

Output:

```
{
    "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
}
```

To create an internal load balancer

This example creates an internal load balancer with an HTTP listener in a VPC.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTP,LoadBalancerPort=80,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80"
 --scheme internal --subnets subnet-a85db0df --security-groups sg-a61988c3
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "DNSName": "internal-my-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in a VPC.

```
$httpListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpListener.Protocol = "http"
$httpListener.LoadBalancerPort = 80
$httpListener.InstanceProtocol = "http"
$httpListener.InstancePort = 80
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-vpc-load-balancer -SecurityGroup sg-
a61988c3 -Subnet subnet-15aaab61 -Listener $httpListener

my-vpc-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

Example 2: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in EC2-Classic.

```
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-classic-load-balancer -AvailabilityZone
 us-west-2a` -Listener $httpListener
```

Output:

```
my-classic-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

Example 3: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTPS listener.

```
$httpsListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpsListener.Protocol = "https"
$httpsListener.LoadBalancerPort = 443
$httpsListener.InstanceProtocol = "http"
$httpsListener.InstancePort = 80
$httpsListener.SSLCertificateId="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/my-
server-cert"
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -AvailabilityZone us-
west-2a -Listener $httpsListener
```

```
my-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in a VPC.

```
$httpListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpListener.Protocol = "http"
$httpListener.LoadBalancerPort = 80
$httpListener.InstanceProtocol = "http"
$httpListener.InstancePort = 80
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-vpc-load-balancer -SecurityGroup sg-
a61988c3 -Subnet subnet-15aaab61 -Listener $httpListener

my-vpc-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

Example 2: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in EC2-Classic.

```
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-classic-load-balancer -AvailabilityZone
 us-west-2a` -Listener $httpListener
```

Output:

```
my-classic-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

Example 3: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTPS listener.

```
$httpsListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpsListener.Protocol = "https"
$httpsListener.LoadBalancerPort = 443
$httpsListener.InstanceProtocol = "http"
$httpsListener.InstancePort = 80
$httpsListener.SSLCertificateId="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/my-
server-cert"
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -AvailabilityZone us-
west-2a -Listener $httpsListener

my-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateLoadBalancerListeners` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLoadBalancerListeners`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create HTTP listeners for a load balancer

This example creates a listener for your load balancer at port 80 using the HTTP protocol.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-listeners --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTP,LoadBalancerPort=80,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80"
```

To create HTTPS listeners for a load balancer

This example creates a listener for your load balancer at port 443 using the HTTPS protocol.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-listeners --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
listeners "Protocol=HTTPS,LoadBalancerPort=443,InstanceProtocol=HTTP,InstancePort=80"
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds an HTTPS listener to the specified load balancer.

```
$httpsListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpsListener.Protocol = "https"
$httpsListener.LoadBalancerPort = 443
$httpsListener.InstanceProtocol = "https"
$httpsListener.InstancePort = 443
```

```
$httpsListener.SSLCertificateId="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/my-
server-cert"
New-ELBLoadBalancerListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Listener
 $httpsListener
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds an HTTPS listener to the specified load balancer.

```
$httpsListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpsListener.Protocol = "https"
$httpsListener.LoadBalancerPort = 443
$httpsListener.InstanceProtocol = "https"
$httpsListener.InstancePort = 443
$httpsListener.SSLCertificateId="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/my-
server-cert"
New-ELBLoadBalancerListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Listener
 $httpsListener
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateLoadBalancerPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLoadBalancerPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a policy that enables Proxy Protocol on a load balancer

This example creates a policy that enables Proxy Protocol on the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
policy-name my-ProxyProtocol-policy --policy-type-name ProxyProtocolPolicyType --
policy-attributes AttributeName=ProxyProtocol,AttributeValue=true
```

To create an SSL negotiation policy using the recommended security policy

This example creates an SSL negotiation policy for the specified HTTPS load balancer using the recommended security policy.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-
balancer --policy-name my-SSLNegotiation-policy --policy-type-
name SSLNegotiationPolicyType --policy-attributes AttributeName=Reference-
Security-Policy,AttributeValue=ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-03
```

To create an SSL negotiation policy using a custom security policy

This example creates an SSL negotiation policy for your HTTPS load balancer using a custom security policy by enabling the protocols and the ciphers.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-
balancer --policy-name my-SSLNegotiation-policy --policy-type-
name SSLNegotiationPolicyType --policy-attributes AttributeName=Protocol-
SSLv3,AttributeValue=true AttributeName=Protocol-
TLSv1.1,AttributeValue=true AttributeName=DHE-RSA-AES256-
SHA256,AttributeValue=true AttributeName=Server-Defined-Cipher-
Order,AttributeValue=true
```

To create a public key policy

This example creates a public key policy.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
policy-name my-PublicKey-policy --policy-type-name PublicKeyPolicyType --policy-
attributes AttributeName=PublicKey,AttributeValue=MIIBIjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgK
+dS74kj//c6x7ROtusUaeQCTgIUkayttRDWchuqo1pHC1u
+n5xxXnBBe2ejbb2WRsKIQ5rXEeixsjFpFsojpSQKkzhVGI6mJVZBJDVKSHmswnwLBdofLhzvllpovBPTHe
+o4haAWvDBALJU0pkSI1FecPHcs2hwxf14zHoXy1e2k36A64nXW43wtfx5qcVSIxtCEOjnYRg7RPvybaGfQ
+v6Iaxb/+7J5kEvZhTFQId+bSiJImF1FSUT1W1xwzBZPUbcUkkXDj45vC2s3Z8E
+Lk7a3uZhvsQHLZnrfuWjBWGWvZ/MhZYgEXAMPLE
```

To create a backend server authentication policy

This example creates a backend server authentication policy that enables authentication on your backend instance using a public key policy.

Command:

```
aws elb create-load-balancer-policy --load-balancer-name my-
load-balancer --policy-name my-authentication-policy --policy-
type-name BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType --policy-
attributes AttributeName=PublicKeyPolicyName,AttributeValue=my-PublicKey-policy
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new proxy protocol policy for a specified load balancer.

```
$attribute = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.PolicyAttribute -
Property @{
         AttributeName="ProxyProtocol"
         AttributeValue="True"
    }
New-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
ProxyProtocol-policy -PolicyTypeName ProxyProtocolPolicyType -PolicyAttribute
 $attribute
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new proxy protocol policy for a specified load balancer.

```
$attribute = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.PolicyAttribute -
Property @{
         AttributeName="ProxyProtocol"
```

```
        AttributeValue="True"
    }
New-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
ProxyProtocol-policy -PolicyTypeName ProxyProtocolPolicyType -PolicyAttribute
 $attribute
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a load balancer

This example deletes the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb delete-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancer (DeleteLoadBalancer)" on Target "my-
load-balancer".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancer (DeleteLoadBalancer)" on Target "my-
load-balancer".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteLoadBalancerListeners` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLoadBalancerListeners`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a listener from your load balancer

This example deletes the listener for the specified port from the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb delete-load-balancer-listeners --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
load-balancer-ports 80
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the listener on port 80 for the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
LoadBalancerPort 80
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener
 (DeleteLoadBalancerListeners)" on Target "80".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the listener on port 80 for the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
LoadBalancerPort 80
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener
 (DeleteLoadBalancerListeners)" on Target "80".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a policy from your load balancer

This example deletes the specified policy from the specified load balancer. The policy must not be enabled on any listener.

Command:

```
aws elb delete-load-balancer-policy --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
policy-name my-duration-cookie-policy
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified policy from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
duration-cookie-policy
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy (DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy)" on
 Target "my-duration-cookie-policy".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified policy from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
duration-cookie-policy
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy (DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy)" on
 Target "my-duration-cookie-policy".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister instances from a load balancer

This example deregisters the specified instance from the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb deregister-instances-from-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-
balancer --instances i-d6f6fae3
```

Output:

```
{
    "Instances": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-207d9717"
        },
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-afefb49b"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified EC2 instance from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer
 (DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer)" on Target
"Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Instance".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):

InstanceId
----------
```

```
i-87654321
```

- For API details, see DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified EC2 instance from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer
 (DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer)" on Target
"Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Instance".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):

InstanceId
----------
i-87654321
```

- For API details, see DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstanceHealth` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstanceHealth`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the health of the instances for a load balancer

This example describes the health of the instances for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-instance-health --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceStates": [
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-207d9717",
          "ReasonCode": "N/A",
          "State": "InService",
          "Description": "N/A"
      },
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-afefb49b",
          "ReasonCode": "N/A",
          "State": "InService",
          "Description": "N/A"
      }
  ]
}
```

To describe the health of an instance for a load balancer

This example describes the health of the specified instance for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-instance-health --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
instances i-7299c809
```

The following is an example response for an instance that is registering.

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceStates": [
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-7299c809",
          "ReasonCode": "ELB",
          "State": "OutOfService",
          "Description": "Instance registration is still in progress."
```

```
    }
  ]
}
```

The following is an example response for an unhealthy instance.

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceStates": [
      {
          "InstanceId": "i-7299c809",
          "ReasonCode": "Instance",
          "State": "OutOfService",
          "Description": "Instance has failed at least the UnhealthyThreshold
 number of health checks consecutively."
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceHealth in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the state of the instances registered with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
Description                   InstanceId                    ReasonCode
         State
-----------                   ----------                    ----------
         -----
N/A                           i-87654321                    N/A
         InService
Instance has failed at lea... i-12345678                    Instance
         OutOfService
```

Example 2: This example describes the state of the specified instance registered with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance i-12345678
```

Example 3: This example displays the complete description of the state of the specified instance.

```
(Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678).Description
```

Output:

```
Instance has failed at least the UnhealthyThreshold number of health checks
 consecutively.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the state of the instances registered with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
Description                   InstanceId                    ReasonCode
         State
-----------                   ----------                    ----------
         -----
N/A                           i-87654321                    N/A
         InService
Instance has failed at lea... i-12345678                    Instance
         OutOfService
```

Example 2: This example describes the state of the specified instance registered with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance i-12345678
```

Example 3: This example displays the complete description of the state of the specified instance.

```
(Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678).Description
```

Output:

```
Instance has failed at least the UnhealthyThreshold number of health checks
 consecutively.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the attributes of a load balancer

This example describes the attributes of the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-load-balancer-attributes --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
{
  "LoadBalancerAttributes": {
      "ConnectionDraining": {
          "Enabled": false,
          "Timeout": 300
      },
      "CrossZoneLoadBalancing": {
```

```
            "Enabled": true
        },
        "ConnectionSettings": {
            "IdleTimeout": 30
        },
        "AccessLog": {
            "Enabled": false
      }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the attributes for the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
AccessLog              : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.AccessLog
AdditionalAttributes   : {}
ConnectionDraining     : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ConnectionDraining
ConnectionSettings     : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ConnectionSettings
CrossZoneLoadBalancing : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.CrossZoneLoadBalancing
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the attributes for the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
AccessLog              : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.AccessLog
AdditionalAttributes   : {}
```

```
ConnectionDraining     : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ConnectionDraining
ConnectionSettings     : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ConnectionSettings
CrossZoneLoadBalancing : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.CrossZoneLoadBalancing
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe all policies associated with a load balancer

This example describes all of the policies associated with the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-load-balancer-policies --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
{
  "PolicyDescriptions": [
    {
      "PolicyAttributeDescriptions": [
        {
          "AttributeName": "ProxyProtocol",
          "AttributeValue": "true"
        }
      ],
      "PolicyName": "my-ProxyProtocol-policy",
      "PolicyTypeName": "ProxyProtocolPolicyType"
    },
    {
        "PolicyAttributeDescriptions": [
            {
                "AttributeName": "CookieName",
                "AttributeValue": "my-app-cookie"
            }
```

```
        ],
        "PolicyName": "my-app-cookie-policy",
        "PolicyTypeName": "AppCookieStickinessPolicyType"
    },
    {
      "PolicyAttributeDescriptions": [
        {
          "AttributeName": "CookieExpirationPeriod",
          "AttributeValue": "60"
        }
      ],
      "PolicyName": "my-duration-cookie-policy",
      "PolicyTypeName": "LBCookieStickinessPolicyType"
    },
    .
    .
    .
  ]
}
```

To describe a specific policy associated with a load balancer

This example describes the specified policy associated with the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-load-balancer-policies --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
policy-name my-authentication-policy
```

Output:

```
{
  "PolicyDescriptions": [
      {
          "PolicyAttributeDescriptions": [
              {
                  "AttributeName": "PublicKeyPolicyName",
                  "AttributeValue": "my-PublicKey-policy"
              }
          ],
          "PolicyName": "my-authentication-policy",
          "PolicyTypeName": "BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType"
      }
```

```
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the policies associated with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
PolicyAttributeDescriptions             PolicyName
 PolicyTypeName
---------------------------             ----------
 --------------
{ProxyProtocol}                         my-ProxyProtocol-policy
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
{CookieName}                            my-app-cookie-policy
 AppCookieStickinessPolicyType
```

Example 2: This example describes the attributes of the specified policy.

```
(Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
ProxyProtocol-policy).PolicyAttributeDescriptions
```

Output:

```
AttributeName    AttributeValue
-------------    --------------
ProxyProtocol    true
```

Example 3: This example describes the predefined policies, including the sample policies. The names of the sample policies have the ELBSample- prefix.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy
```

Output:

```
PolicyAttributeDescriptions             PolicyName
 PolicyTypeName
---------------------------             ----------
 --------------
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-03
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-02
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2014-10
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2014-01
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2011-08
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSample-ELBDefaultCipherPolicy
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSample-OpenSSLDefaultCipherPolicy
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the policies associated with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
PolicyAttributeDescriptions             PolicyName
 PolicyTypeName
---------------------------             ----------
 --------------
{ProxyProtocol}                         my-ProxyProtocol-policy
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
{CookieName}                            my-app-cookie-policy
 AppCookieStickinessPolicyType
```

Example 2: This example describes the attributes of the specified policy.

```
(Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
ProxyProtocol-policy).PolicyAttributeDescriptions
```

Output:

```
AttributeName    AttributeValue
-------------    --------------
ProxyProtocol    true
```

Example 3: This example describes the predefined policies, including the sample policies. The names of the sample policies have the ELBSample- prefix.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy
```

Output:

```
PolicyAttributeDescriptions             PolicyName
 PolicyTypeName
---------------------------             ----------
 --------------
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-03
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-02
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2014-10
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2014-01
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2011-08
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSample-ELBDefaultCipherPolicy
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSample-OpenSSLDefaultCipherPolicy
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the load balancer policy types defined by Elastic Load Balancing

This example describes the load balancer policy types that you can use to create policy configurations for your load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-load-balancer-policy-types
```

Output:

```
{
  "PolicyTypeDescriptions": [
      {
          "PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions": [
              {
                  "Cardinality": "ONE",
                  "AttributeName": "ProxyProtocol",
                  "AttributeType": "Boolean"
              }
          ],
          "PolicyTypeName": "ProxyProtocolPolicyType",
          "Description": "Policy that controls whether to include the IP address
 and port of the originating request for TCP messages. This policy operates on
 TCP/SSL listeners only"
      },
      {
          "PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions": [
              {
                  "Cardinality": "ONE",
                  "AttributeName": "PublicKey",
                  "AttributeType": "String"
              }
          ],
          "PolicyTypeName": "PublicKeyPolicyType",
```

```
        "Description": "Policy containing a list of public keys to
accept when authenticating the back-end server(s). This policy cannot be
applied directly to back-end servers or listeners but must be part of a
BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType."
    },
    {
        "PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions": [
            {
                "Cardinality": "ONE",
                "AttributeName": "CookieName",
                "AttributeType": "String"
            }
        ],
        "PolicyTypeName": "AppCookieStickinessPolicyType",
        "Description": "Stickiness policy with session lifetimes controlled by
the lifetime of the application-generated cookie. This policy can be associated
only with HTTP/HTTPS listeners."
    },
    {
        "PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions": [
            {
                "Cardinality": "ZERO_OR_ONE",
                "AttributeName": "CookieExpirationPeriod",
                "AttributeType": "Long"
            }
        ],
        "PolicyTypeName": "LBCookieStickinessPolicyType",
        "Description": "Stickiness policy with session lifetimes controlled by
the browser (user-agent) or a specified expiration period. This policy can be
associated only with HTTP/HTTPS listeners."
    },
    {
        "PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions": [
            .
            .
            .
        ],
        "PolicyTypeName": "SSLNegotiationPolicyType",
        "Description": "Listener policy that defines the ciphers and protocols
that will be accepted by the load balancer. This policy can be associated only
with HTTPS/SSL listeners."
    },
    {
        "PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions": [
```

```
                {
                    "Cardinality": "ONE_OR_MORE",
                    "AttributeName": "PublicKeyPolicyName",
                    "AttributeType": "PolicyName"
                }
            ],
            "PolicyTypeName": "BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType",
            "Description": "Policy that controls authentication to back-end
 server(s) and contains one or more policies, such as an instance of a
 PublicKeyPolicyType. This policy can be associated only with back-end servers
 that are using HTTPS/SSL."
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the policy types supported by Elastic Load Balancing.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType
```

Output:

```
Description                              PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions
 PolicyTypeName
-----------                              -------------------------------
 --------------
Stickiness policy with session lifet... {CookieExpirationPeriod}
 LBCookieStickinessPolicyType
Policy that controls authentication ... {PublicKeyPolicyName}
 BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType
Listener policy that defines the cip... {Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro...
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
Policy containing a list of public k... {PublicKey}
 PublicKeyPolicyType
Stickiness policy with session lifet... {CookieName}
 AppCookieStickinessPolicyType
```

```
Policy that controls whether to incl... {ProxyProtocol}
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified policy type.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType -PolicyTypeName ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Output:

```
Description                             PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions
 PolicyTypeName
-----------                             -------------------------------
 --------------
Policy that controls whether to incl... {ProxyProtocol}
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Example 3: This example displays the complete description of the specified policy type.

```
(Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType -PolicyTypeName).Description
```

Output:

```
Policy that controls whether to include the IP address and port of the
 originating request for TCP messages.
This policy operates on TCP/SSL listeners only
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the policy types supported by Elastic Load Balancing.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType
```

Output:

```
Description                             PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions
 PolicyTypeName
```

```
-----------                              -------------------------------
 --------------
Stickiness policy with session lifet... {CookieExpirationPeriod}
 LBCookieStickinessPolicyType
Policy that controls authentication ... {PublicKeyPolicyName}
 BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType
Listener policy that defines the cip... {Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro...
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
Policy containing a list of public k... {PublicKey}
 PublicKeyPolicyType
Stickiness policy with session lifet... {CookieName}
 AppCookieStickinessPolicyType
Policy that controls whether to incl... {ProxyProtocol}
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified policy type.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType -PolicyTypeName ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Output:

```
Description                              PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions
 PolicyTypeName
-----------                              -------------------------------
 --------------
Policy that controls whether to incl... {ProxyProtocol}
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Example 3: This example displays the complete description of the specified policy type.

```
(Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType -PolicyTypeName).Description
```

Output:

```
Policy that controls whether to include the IP address and port of the
 originating request for TCP messages.
This policy operates on TCP/SSL listeners only
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancers` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your load balancers

This example describes all of your load balancers.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-load-balancers
```

To describe one of your load balancers

This example describes the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-load-balancers --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
```

The following example response is for an HTTPS load balancer in a VPC.

Output:

```
{
  "LoadBalancerDescriptions": [
    {
      "Subnets": [
          "subnet-15aaab61"
      ],
      "CanonicalHostedZoneNameID": "Z3DZXE0EXAMPLE",
      "CanonicalHostedZoneName": "my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-
west-2.elb.amazonaws.com",
      "ListenerDescriptions": [
          {
              "Listener": {
                  "InstancePort": 80,
                  "LoadBalancerPort": 80,
                  "Protocol": "HTTP",
                  "InstanceProtocol": "HTTP"
```

```
                },
                "PolicyNames": []
            },
            {
                "Listener": {
                    "InstancePort": 443,
                    "SSLCertificateId": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-
certificate/my-server-cert",
                    "LoadBalancerPort": 443,
                    "Protocol": "HTTPS",
                    "InstanceProtocol": "HTTPS"
                },
                "PolicyNames": [
                    "ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-03"
                ]
            }
        ],
        "HealthCheck": {
            "HealthyThreshold": 2,
            "Interval": 30,
            "Target": "HTTP:80/png",
            "Timeout": 3,
            "UnhealthyThreshold": 2
        },
        "VPCId": "vpc-a01106c2",
        "BackendServerDescriptions": [
            {
                "InstancePort": 80,
                "PolicyNames": [
                    "my-ProxyProtocol-policy"
                ]
            }
        ],
        "Instances": [
            {
                "InstanceId": "i-207d9717"
            },
            {
                "InstanceId": "i-afefb49b"
            }
        ],
        "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com",
        "SecurityGroups": [
            "sg-a61988c3"
```

```
        ],
        "Policies": {
            "LBCookieStickinessPolicies": [
                {
                    "PolicyName": "my-duration-cookie-policy",
                    "CookieExpirationPeriod": 60
                }
            ],
            "AppCookieStickinessPolicies": [],
            "OtherPolicies": [
                "my-PublicKey-policy",
                "my-authentication-policy",
                "my-SSLNegotiation-policy",
                "my-ProxyProtocol-policy",
                "ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-03"
            ]
        },
        "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer",
        "CreatedTime": "2015-03-19T03:24:02.650Z",
        "AvailabilityZones": [
            "us-west-2a"
        ],
        "Scheme": "internet-facing",
        "SourceSecurityGroup": {
            "OwnerAlias": "123456789012",
            "GroupName": "my-elb-sg"
        }
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the names of your load balancers.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer | format-table -property LoadBalancerName
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName
----------------
my-load-balancer
my-other-load-balancer
my-internal-load-balancer
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones         : {us-west-2a, us-west-2b}
BackendServerDescriptions :
 {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.BackendServerDescription}
CanonicalHostedZoneName   : my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-
west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
CanonicalHostedZoneNameID : Z3DZXE0EXAMPLE
CreatedTime               : 4/11/2015 12:12:45 PM
DNSName                   : my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-
west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
HealthCheck               : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.HealthCheck
Instances                 : {i-207d9717, i-afefb49b}
ListenerDescriptions      :
 {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ListenerDescription}
LoadBalancerName          : my-load-balancer
Policies                  : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Policies
Scheme                    : internet-facing
SecurityGroups            : {sg-a61988c3}
SourceSecurityGroup       : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.SourceSecurityGroup
Subnets                   : {subnet-15aaab61}
VPCId                     : vpc-a01106c2
```

Example 3: This example describes all your load balancers in the current AWS region.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer
```

Example 4: This example describes all your load balancers across all available AWS Regions.

```
Get-AWSRegion | % { Get-ELBLoadBalancer -Region $_ }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the names of your load balancers.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer | format-table -property LoadBalancerName
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName
----------------
my-load-balancer
my-other-load-balancer
my-internal-load-balancer
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones         : {us-west-2a, us-west-2b}
BackendServerDescriptions :
 {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.BackendServerDescription}
CanonicalHostedZoneName   : my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-
west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
CanonicalHostedZoneNameID : Z3DZXE0EXAMPLE
CreatedTime               : 4/11/2015 12:12:45 PM
DNSName                   : my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-
west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
HealthCheck               : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.HealthCheck
Instances                 : {i-207d9717, i-afefb49b}
ListenerDescriptions      :
 {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ListenerDescription}
LoadBalancerName          : my-load-balancer
Policies                  : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Policies
Scheme                    : internet-facing
SecurityGroups            : {sg-a61988c3}
SourceSecurityGroup       : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.SourceSecurityGroup
Subnets                   : {subnet-15aaab61}
```

```
VPCId                       : vpc-a01106c2
```

Example 3: This example describes all your load balancers in the current AWS region.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer
```

Example 4: This example describes all your load balancers across all available AWS Regions.

```
Get-AWSRegion | % { Get-ELBLoadBalancer -Region $_ }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the tags assigned to a load balancer

This example describes the tags assigned to the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb describe-tags --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
{
  "TagDescriptions": [
      {
          "Tags": [
              {
                  "Value": "lima",
                  "Key": "project"
              },
```

```
                {
                    "Value": "digital-media",
                    "Key": "department"
                }
            ],
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the tags for the specified load balancers.

```
Get-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName @("my-load-balancer","my-internal-load-
balancer")
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName             Tags
----------------             ----
my-load-balancer             {project, department}
my-internal-load-balancer    {project, department}
```

Example 2: This example describes the tags for the specified load balancer.

```
(Get-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer).Tags
```

Output:

```
Key           Value
---           -----
project       lima
department    digital-media
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the tags for the specified load balancers.

```
Get-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName @("my-load-balancer","my-internal-load-
balancer")
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName            Tags
----------------            ----
my-load-balancer            {project, department}
my-internal-load-balancer   {project, department}
```

Example 2: This example describes the tags for the specified load balancer.

```
(Get-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer).Tags
```

Output:

```
Key           Value
---           -----
project       lima
department    digital-media
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach load balancers from subnets

This example detaches the specified load balancer from the specified subnet.

Command:

```
aws elb detach-load-balancer-from-subnets --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
 --subnets subnet-0ecac448
```

Output:

```
{
   "Subnets": [
       "subnet-15aaab61"
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified subnet from the set of subnets configured for the specified load balancer. The output includes the remaining subnets.

```
Dismount-ELBLoadBalancerFromSubnet -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Subnet
 subnet-12345678
```

Output:

```
subnet-87654321
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified subnet from the set of subnets configured for the specified load balancer. The output includes the remaining subnets.

```
Dismount-ELBLoadBalancerFromSubnet -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Subnet
 subnet-12345678
```

Output:

```
subnet-87654321
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable Availability Zones for a load balancer

This example removes the specified Availability Zone from the set of Availability Zones for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb disable-availability-zones-for-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --availability-zones us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
{
    "AvailabilityZones": [
        "us-west-2b"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified Availability Zone from the specified load balancer. The output includes the remaining Availability Zones.

```
Disable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
us-west-2b
```

- For API details, see DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified Availability Zone from the specified load balancer. The output includes the remaining Availability Zones.

```
Disable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
us-west-2b
```

- For API details, see DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable Availability Zones for a load balancer

This example adds the specified Availability Zone to the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb enable-availability-zones-for-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-
balancer --availability-zones us-west-2b
```

Output:

```
{
    "AvailabilityZones": [
        "us-west-2a",
        "us-west-2b"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the specified Availability Zone to the specified load balancer. The output includes the complete list of Availability Zones.

```
Enable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
us-west-2a
us-west-2b
```

- For API details, see EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified Availability Zone to the specified load balancer. The output includes the complete list of Availability Zones.

```
Enable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
us-west-2a
```

```
us-west-2b
```

- For API details, see EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the attributes of a load balancer

This example modifies the `CrossZoneLoadBalancing` attribute of the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb modify-load-balancer-attributes --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --
load-balancer-attributes "{\"CrossZoneLoadBalancing\":{\"Enabled\":true}}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancerAttributes": {
        "CrossZoneLoadBalancing": {
            "Enabled": true
        }
    },
    "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer"
}
```

This example modifies the `ConnectionDraining` attribute of the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb modify-load-balancer-attributes --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer
 --load-balancer-attributes "{\"ConnectionDraining\":{\"Enabled\":true,\"Timeout
\":300}}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancerAttributes": {
        "ConnectionDraining": {
            "Enabled": true,
            "Timeout": 300
        }
    },
    "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer"
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example enables cross-zone load balancing for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
CrossZoneLoadBalancing_Enabled $true
```

Example 2: This example disables connection draining for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
ConnectionDraining_Enabled $false
```

Example 3: This example enables access logging for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -AccessLog_Enabled $true `
>> -AccessLog_S3BucketName amzn-s3-demo-logging-bucket `
>> -AccessLog_S3BucketPrefix my-app/prod `
>> -AccessLog_EmitInterval 60
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables cross-zone load balancing for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
CrossZoneLoadBalancing_Enabled $true
```

Example 2: This example disables connection draining for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
ConnectionDraining_Enabled $false
```

Example 3: This example enables access logging for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -AccessLog_Enabled $true `
>> -AccessLog_S3BucketName amzn-s3-demo-logging-bucket `
>> -AccessLog_S3BucketPrefix my-app/prod `
>> -AccessLog_EmitInterval 60
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register instances with a load balancer

This example registers the specified instance with the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb register-instances-with-load-balancer --load-balancer-name my-load-
balancer --instances i-d6f6fae3
```

Output:

```
{
   "Instances": [
       {
           "InstanceId": "i-d6f6fae3"
       },
       {
           "InstanceId": "i-207d9717"
       },
       {
           "InstanceId": "i-afefb49b"
       }
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers the specified EC2 instance with the specified load balancer.

```
Register-ELBInstanceWithLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId
----------
i-12345678
i-87654321
```

- For API details, see RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers the specified EC2 instance with the specified load balancer.

```
Register-ELBInstanceWithLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId
----------
i-12345678
i-87654321
```

- For API details, see RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use RemoveTags with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use RemoveTags.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove tags from a load balancer

This example removes a tag from the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb remove-tags --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --tags project
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified tag from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag @{ Key="project" }
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELBResourceTag (RemoveTags)" on target
 "Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.TagKeyOnly".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: With Powershell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.TagKeyOnly
$tag.Key = "project"
Remove-ELBResourceTag -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified tag from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag @{ Key="project" }
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELBResourceTag (RemoveTags)" on target
 "Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.TagKeyOnly".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: With Powershell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.TagKeyOnly
$tag.Key = "project"
Remove-ELBResourceTag -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the SSL certificate for an HTTPS load balancer

This example replaces the existing SSL certificate for the specified HTTPS load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elb set-load-balancer-listener-ssl-certificate --load-balancer-
name my-load-balancer --load-balancer-port 443 --ssl-certificate-
id arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/new-server-cert
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example replaces the certificate that terminates the SSL connections for the specified listener.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -LoadBalancerPort 443 `
>> -SSLCertificateId "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/new-server-
cert"
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the certificate that terminates the SSL connections for the specified listener.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -LoadBalancerPort 443 `
>> -SSLCertificateId "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/new-server-
cert"
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace the policies associated with a port for a backend instance

This example replaces the policies that are currently associated with the specified port.

Command:

```
aws elb set-load-balancer-policies-for-backend-server --load-balancer-name my-
load-balancer --instance-port 80 --policy-names my-ProxyProtocol-policy
```

To remove all policies that are currently associated with a port on your backend instance

This example removes all policies associated with the specified port.

Command:

```
aws elb set-load-balancer-policies-for-backend-server --load-balancer-name my-
load-balancer --instance-port 80 --policy-names []
```

To confirm that the policies are removed, use the `describe-load-balancer-policies` command.

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example replaces the policies for the specified port with the specified policy.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
InstancePort 80 -PolicyName my-ProxyProtocol-policy
```

Example 2: This example removes all policies associated with the specified port.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
InstancePort 80
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the policies for the specified port with the specified policy.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
InstancePort 80 -PolicyName my-ProxyProtocol-policy
```

Example 2: This example removes all policies associated with the specified port.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
InstancePort 80
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace the policies associated with a listener

This example replaces the policies that are currently associated with the specified listener.

Command:

```
aws elb set-load-balancer-policies-of-listener --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --load-balancer-port 443 --policy-names my-SSLNegotiation-policy
```

To remove all policies associated with your listener

This example removes all policies that are currently associated with the specified listener.

Command:

```
aws elb set-load-balancer-policies-of-listener --load-balancer-name my-load-balancer --load-balancer-port 443 --policy-names []
```

To confirm that the policies are removed from the load balancer, use the `describe-load-balancer-policies` command.

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example replaces the policies for the specified listener with the specified policy.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -LoadBalancerPort 443 -PolicyName my-SSLNegotiation-policy
```

Example 2: This example removes all policies associated with the specified listener.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -LoadBalancerPort 443
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the policies for the specified listener with the specified policy.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
LoadBalancerPort 443 -PolicyName my-SSLNegotiation-policy
```

Example 2: This example removes all policies associated with the specified listener.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
LoadBalancerPort 443
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 User Guide** – More information about Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.
- **Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 API Reference** – Details about all available Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.

- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Elastic Load Balancing

The following code examples show how to get started using Elastic Load Balancing.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloLoadBalancer {

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client loadBalancingV2Client =
 ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                                .build();

                DescribeLoadBalancersResponse loadBalancersResponse =
 loadBalancingV2Client
                                .describeLoadBalancers(r -> r.pageSize(10));
                List<LoadBalancer> loadBalancerList =
 loadBalancersResponse.loadBalancers();
                for (LoadBalancer lb : loadBalancerList)
                        System.out.println("Load Balancer DNS name = " +
 lb.dnsName());
        }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  DescribeLoadBalancersCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

export async function main() {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
    new DescribeLoadBalancersCommand({}),
  );
  const loadBalancersList = LoadBalancers.map(
    (lb) => `• ${lb.LoadBalancerName}: ${lb.DNSName}`,
  ).join("\n");
  console.log(
    "Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load balancers:\n",
    loadBalancersList,
  );
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_elbv2(elbv2_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Elastic Load Balancing V2
 client and list
    up to ten of the load balancers for your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param elbv2_client: A Boto3 Elastic Load Balancing V2 client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load
 balancers:")
    load_balancers = elbv2_client.describe_load_balancers(PageSize=10).get(
        "LoadBalancers", []
    )
    if load_balancers:
        for lb in load_balancers:
            print(f"\t{lb['LoadBalancerName']}: {lb['DNSName']}")
    else:
        print("Your account doesn't have any load balancers.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_elbv2(boto3.client("elbv2"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Elastic Load Balancing
  - Actions for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddListenerCertificates with a CLI
    - Use AddTags with a CLI
    - Use CreateListener with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateLoadBalancer with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateRule with a CLI
    - Use CreateTargetGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteListener with a CLI
    - Use DeleteLoadBalancer with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteRule with a CLI
    - Use DeleteTargetGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeregisterTargets with a CLI
    - Use DescribeAccountLimits with a CLI
    - Use DescribeListenerCertificates with a CLI
    - Use DescribeListeners with a CLI
    - Use DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
    - Use DescribeLoadBalancers with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeRules with a CLI
    - Use DescribeSslPolicies with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTags with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTargetGroupAttributes with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTargetGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeTargetHealth with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ModifyListener with a CLI
    - Use ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
    - Use ModifyRule with a CLI

    - Use ModifyTargetGroup with a CLI

- Use ModifyTargetGroupAttributes with a CLI
- Use RegisterTargets with a CLI
- Use RemoveListenerCertificates with a CLI
- Use RemoveTags with a CLI
- Use SetIpAddressType with a CLI
- Use SetRulePriorities with a CLI
- Use SetSecurityGroups with a CLI
- Use SetSubnets with a CLI

- Scenarios for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs
  - Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Elastic Load Balancing
- Actions for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddListenerCertificates with a CLI
  - Use AddTags with a CLI
  - Use CreateListener with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateLoadBalancer with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateRule with a CLI
  - Use CreateTargetGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteListener with a CLI
  - Use DeleteLoadBalancer with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteRule with a CLI
  - Use DeleteTargetGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeregisterTargets with a CLI
  - Use DescribeAccountLimits with a CLI
  - Use DescribeListenerCertificates with a CLI

- Use DescribeListeners with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRules with a CLI
- Use DescribeSslPolicies with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeTargetGroupAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeTargetGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTargetHealth with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ModifyListener with a CLI
- Use ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use ModifyRule with a CLI
- Use ModifyTargetGroup with a CLI
- Use ModifyTargetGroupAttributes with a CLI
- Use RegisterTargets with a CLI
- Use RemoveListenerCertificates with a CLI
- Use RemoveTags with a CLI
- Use SetIpAddressType with a CLI
- Use SetRulePriorities with a CLI
- Use SetSecurityGroups with a CLI
- Use SetSubnets with a CLI

Hello Elastic Load Balancing

The following code examples show how to get started using Elastic Load Balancing.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloLoadBalancer {

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client loadBalancingV2Client =
 ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                                .build();

                DescribeLoadBalancersResponse loadBalancersResponse =
 loadBalancingV2Client
                                .describeLoadBalancers(r -> r.pageSize(10));
                List<LoadBalancer> loadBalancerList =
 loadBalancersResponse.loadBalancers();
                for (LoadBalancer lb : loadBalancerList)
                        System.out.println("Load Balancer DNS name = " +
 lb.dnsName());
        }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  DescribeLoadBalancersCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

export async function main() {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
    new DescribeLoadBalancersCommand({}),
  );
  const loadBalancersList = LoadBalancers.map(
    (lb) => `• ${lb.LoadBalancerName}: ${lb.DNSName}`,
  ).join("\n");
  console.log(
    "Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load balancers:\n",
    loadBalancersList,
  );
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
```

```
def hello_elbv2(elbv2_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Elastic Load Balancing V2
 client and list
    up to ten of the load balancers for your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param elbv2_client: A Boto3 Elastic Load Balancing V2 client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load
 balancers:")
    load_balancers = elbv2_client.describe_load_balancers(PageSize=10).get(
        "LoadBalancers", []
    )
    if load_balancers:
        for lb in load_balancers:
            print(f"\t{lb['LoadBalancerName']}: {lb['DNSName']}")
    else:
        print("Your account doesn't have any load balancers.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_elbv2(boto3.client("elbv2"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Actions for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddListenerCertificates with a CLI
- Use AddTags with a CLI
- Use CreateListener with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLoadBalancer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateRule with a CLI
- Use CreateTargetGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteListener with a CLI
- Use DeleteLoadBalancer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteRule with a CLI
- Use DeleteTargetGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeregisterTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeAccountLimits with a CLI
- Use DescribeListenerCertificates with a CLI
- Use DescribeListeners with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeLoadBalancers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRules with a CLI
- Use DescribeSslPolicies with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeTargetGroupAttributes with a CLI
- Use DescribeTargetGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTargetHealth with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ModifyListener with a CLI
- Use ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes with a CLI
- Use ModifyRule with a CLI
- Use ModifyTargetGroup with a CLI
- Use ModifyTargetGroupAttributes with a CLI
- Use RegisterTargets with a CLI

- Use RemoveListenerCertificates with a CLI
- Use RemoveTags with a CLI
- Use SetIpAddressType with a CLI
- Use SetRulePriorities with a CLI
- Use SetSecurityGroups with a CLI
- Use SetSubnets with a CLI

Use `AddListenerCertificates` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddListenerCertificates`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a certificate to a secure listener

This example adds the specified certificate to the specified secure listener.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 add-listener-certificates --listener-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 --
certificates CertificateArn=arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/5cc54884-f4a3-4072-80be-05b9ba72f705
```

Output:

```
{
  "Certificates": [
      {
          "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/5cc54884-f4a3-4072-80be-05b9ba72f705",
          "IsDefault": false
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see AddListenerCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds additional certificate to the specified Listener.

```
Add-ELB2ListenerCertificate -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
 -Certificate @{CertificateArn = 'arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97'}
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   IsDefault
--------------
   ---------
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-
b1d7-5217feba1d97 False
```

- For API details, see AddListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds additional certificate to the specified Listener.

```
Add-ELB2ListenerCertificate -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
 -Certificate @{CertificateArn = 'arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97'}
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   IsDefault
--------------
   ---------
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-
b1d7-5217feba1d97 False
```

- For API details, see AddListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use AddTags with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use AddTags.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add tags to a load balancer

The following add-tags example adds the project and department tags to the specified load balancer.

```
aws elbv2 add-tags \
    --resource-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 \
    --tags "Key=project,Value=lima" "Key=department,Value=digital-media"
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example add new Tag to specified AWS.Tools.ElasticLoadBalancingV2 resource.

```
Add-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Tag @{Key =
 'productVersion'; Value = '1.0.0'}
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example add new Tag to specified AWS.Tools.ElasticLoadBalancingV2 resource.

```
Add-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Tag @{Key =
 'productVersion'; Value = '1.0.0'}
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateListener` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateListener`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
   /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
```

```
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
```

```
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an HTTP listener

The following `create-listener` example creates an HTTP listener for the specified Application Load Balancer that forwards requests to the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 create-listener \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 \
    --protocol HTTP \
    --port 80 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

For more information, see Tutorial: Create an Application Load Balancer using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Example 2: To create an HTTPS listener

The following `create-listener` example creates an HTTPS listener for the specified Application Load Balancer that forwards requests to the specified target group. You must specify an SSL certificate for an HTTPS listener. You can create and manage certificates using AWS Certificate Manager (ACM). Alternatively, you can create a certificate using SSL/TLS tools, get the certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA), and upload the certificate to AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).

```
aws elbv2 create-listener \
```

```
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 \
    --protocol HTTPS \
    --port 443 \
    --certificates CertificateArn=arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/3dcb0a41-bd72-4774-9ad9-756919c40557 \
    --ssl-policy ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

For more information, see Add an HTTPS listener in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Example 3: To create a TCP listener

The following `create-listener` example creates a TCP listener for the specified Network Load Balancer that forwards requests to the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 create-listener \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/my-network-load-balancer/5d1b75f4f1cee11e \
    --protocol TCP \
    --port 80 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-tcp-targets/b6bba954d1361c78
```

For more information, see Tutorial: Create a Network Load Balancer using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Network Load Balancers*.

Example 4: To create a TLS listener

The following `create-listener` example creates a TLS listener for the specified Network Load Balancer that forwards requests to the specified target group. You must specify an SSL certificate for a TLS listener.

```
aws elbv2 create-listener \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 \
    --protocol TLS \
```

```
    --port 443 \
    --certificates CertificateArn=arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/3dcb0a41-bd72-4774-9ad9-756919c40557 \
    --ssl-policy ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

For more information, see TLS listeners for your Network Load Balancer in the *User Guide for Network Load Balancers*.

Example 5: To create a UDP listener

The following `create-listener` example creates a UDP listener for the specified Network Load Balancer that forwards requests to the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 create-listener \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/my-network-load-balancer/5d1b75f4f1cee11e \
    --protocol UDP \
    --port 53 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-tcp-targets/b6bba954d1361c78
```

For more information, see Tutorial: Create a Network Load Balancer using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Network Load Balancers*.

Example 6: To create a listener for the specified gateway and forwarding

The following `create-listener` example creates a listener for the specified Gateway Load Balancer that forwards requests to the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 create-listener \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:850631746142:loadbalancer/gwy/my-gateway-load-balancer/e0f9b3d5c7f7d3d6 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:850631746142:targetgroup/my-glb-targets/007ca469fae3bb1615
```

Output:

```
{
    "Listeners": [
        {
            "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:850631746142:listener/gwy/my-agw-lb-example2/e0f9b3d5c7f7d3d6/
afc127db15f925de",
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:850631746142:loadbalancer/gwy/my-agw-lb-example2/e0f9b3d5c7f7d3d6",
            "DefaultActions": [
                {
                    "Type": "forward",
                    "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:850631746142:targetgroup/test-tg-agw-2/007ca469fae3bb1615",
                    "ForwardConfig": {
                        "TargetGroups": [
                            {
                                "TargetGroupArn":
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:850631746142:targetgroup/test-tg-
agw-2/007ca469fae3bb1615"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting started with Gateway Load Balancers using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Gateway Load Balancers*.

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /*
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
    * subnets
    * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    */
   public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String
targetGroupARN, String lbName, int port,
           String protocol) {
       try {
           List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                   .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

           CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                   .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                   .name(lbName)
                   .scheme("internet-facing")
                   .build();

           // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
           CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
           String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

           ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
           DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                   .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                   .build();

           System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to
become available.");
           WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                   .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
           waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
           System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

           // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
           String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
           System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);
```

```
            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest =
CreateListenerRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates new ALB listener with the default action 'Forward' to send traffic to specified Target Group.

```
$defaultAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
  ForwardConfig = @{
    TargetGroups = @(
      @{ TargetGroupArn = "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/testAlbTG/3d61c2f20aa5bccb" }
    )
    TargetGroupStickinessConfig = @{
      DurationSeconds = 900
      Enabled = $true
    }
  }
  Type = "Forward"
}

New-ELB2Listener -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676' -Port 8001 -
Protocol "HTTP" -DefaultAction $defaultAction
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676
Port            : 8001
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new ALB listener with the default action 'Forward' to send traffic to specified Target Group.

```
$defaultAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
  ForwardConfig = @{
    TargetGroups = @(
      @{ TargetGroupArn = "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/testAlbTG/3d61c2f20aa5bccb" }
    )
    TargetGroupStickinessConfig = @{
      DurationSeconds = 900
      Enabled = $true
    }
  }
  Type = "Forward"
}

New-ELB2Listener -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676' -Port 8001 -
Protocol "HTTP" -DefaultAction $defaultAction
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676
```

```
Port            : 8001
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests
 to the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
 listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener
 to the
                             load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
```

```
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
```

```
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load
balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateLoadBalancer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
   /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
```

```
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
```

```
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an Internet-facing load balancer

The following `create-load-balancer` example creates an Internet-facing Application Load Balancer and enables the Availability Zones for the specified subnets.

```
aws elbv2 create-load-balancer \
    --name my-load-balancer \
    --subnets subnet-b7d581c0 subnet-8360a9e7
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancers": [
        {
            "Type": "application",
            "Scheme": "internet-facing",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4",
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                {
                    "ZoneName": "us-west-2a",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-8360a9e7"
                },
                {
```

```
                    "ZoneName": "us-west-2b",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-b7d581c0"
                }
            ],
            "CreatedTime": "2017-08-25T21:26:12.920Z",
            "CanonicalHostedZoneId": "Z2P70J7EXAMPLE",
            "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-424835706.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com",
            "SecurityGroups": [
                "sg-5943793c"
            ],
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer",
            "State": {
                "Code": "provisioning"
            },
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Tutorial: Create an Application Load Balancer using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Example 2: To create an internal load balancer

The following `create-load-balancer` example creates an internal Application Load Balancer and enables the Availability Zones for the specified subnets.

```
aws elbv2 create-load-balancer \
    --name my-internal-load-balancer \
    --scheme internal \
    --subnets subnet-b7d581c0 subnet-8360a9e7
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancers": [
        {
            "Type": "application",
            "Scheme": "internal",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4",
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
```

```
                {
                    "ZoneName": "us-west-2a",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-8360a9e7"
                },
                {
                    "ZoneName": "us-west-2b",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-b7d581c0"
                }
            ],
            "CreatedTime": "2016-03-25T21:29:48.850Z",
            "CanonicalHostedZoneId": "Z2P70J7EXAMPLE",
            "DNSName": "internal-my-internal-load-balancer-1529930873.us-
west-2.elb.amazonaws.com",
            "SecurityGroups": [
                "sg-5943793c"
            ],
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-internal-load-balancer",
            "State": {
                "Code": "provisioning"
            },
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-internal-load-balancer/5b49b8d4303115c2"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Tutorial: Create an Application Load Balancer using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Example 3: To create a Network Load Balancer

The following `create-load-balancer` example creates an Internet-facing Network Load Balancer and enables the Availability Zone for the specified subnet. It uses a subnet mapping to associate the specified Elastic IP address with the network interface used by the load balancer nodes for the Availability Zone.

```
aws elbv2 create-load-balancer \
    --name my-network-load-balancer \
    --type network \
    --subnet-mappings SubnetId=subnet-b7d581c0,AllocationId=eipalloc-64d5890a
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancers": [
        {
            "Type": "network",
            "Scheme": "internet-facing",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4",
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                {
                    "LoadBalancerAddresses": [
                        {
                            "IpAddress": "35.161.207.171",
                            "AllocationId": "eipalloc-64d5890a"
                        }
                    ],
                    "ZoneName": "us-west-2b",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-5264e837"
                }
            ],
            "CreatedTime": "2017-10-15T22:41:25.657Z",
            "CanonicalHostedZoneId": "Z2P70J7EXAMPLE",
            "DNSName": "my-network-load-balancer-5d1b75f4f1cee11e.elb.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-network-load-balancer",
            "State": {
                "Code": "provisioning"
            },
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/my-network-load-balancer/5d1b75f4f1cee11e"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Tutorial: Create a Network Load Balancer using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Network Load Balancers*.

Example 4: To create a Gateway Load Balancer

The following `create-load-balancer` example creates a Gateway Load Balancer and enables the Availability Zones for the specified subnets.

```
aws elbv2 create-load-balancer \
    --name my-gateway-load-balancer \
```

```
    --type gateway \
    --subnets subnet-dc83f691 subnet-a62583f9
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoadBalancers": [
        {
            "Type": "gateway",
            "VpcId": "vpc-838475fe",
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                {
                    "ZoneName": "us-east-1b",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-a62583f9"
                },
            {
                    "ZoneName": "us-east-1a",
                    "SubnetId": "subnet-dc83f691"
                }
            ],
            "CreatedTime": "2021-07-14T19:33:43.324000+00:00",
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-gateway-load-balancer",
            "State": {
                "Code": "provisioning"
            },
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:850631746142:loadbalancer/gwy/my-gateway-load-balancer/dfbb5a7d32cdee79"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting started with Gateway Load Balancers using the AWS CLI in the *User Guide for Gateway Load Balancers*.

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /*
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
    * subnets
    * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    */
   public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String
targetGroupARN, String lbName, int port,
           String protocol) {
       try {
           List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                   .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

           CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                   .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                   .name(lbName)
                   .scheme("internet-facing")
                   .build();

           // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
           CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
           String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

           ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
           DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                   .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                   .build();
```

```
            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to
become available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest =
CreateListenerRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
  new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
    Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    Subnets: state.subnets,
  }),
);
state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
  { client },
  { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
);
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates new internet facing Application load balancer with two subnets.

```
New-ELB2LoadBalancer -Type application -Scheme internet-facing -IpAddressType
 ipv4 -Name 'New-Test-ALB' -SecurityGroup 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd' -subnet 'subnet-
c37a67a6','subnet-fc02eea0'
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones     : {us-east-1b, us-east-1a}
```

```
CanonicalHostedZoneId : Z35SXDOTRQ7X7K
CreatedTime           : 12/28/19 2:58:03 PM
DNSName               : New-Test-ALB-1391502222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com
IpAddressType         : ipv4
LoadBalancerArn       : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/New-Test-ALB/dab2e4d90eb51493
LoadBalancerName      : New-Test-ALB
Scheme                : internet-facing
SecurityGroups        : {sg-07c3414abb8811cbd}
State                 : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.LoadBalancerState
Type                  : application
VpcId                 : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new internet facing Application load balancer with two subnets.

```
New-ELB2LoadBalancer -Type application -Scheme internet-facing -IpAddressType
 ipv4 -Name 'New-Test-ALB' -SecurityGroup 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd' -subnet 'subnet-
c37a67a6','subnet-fc02eea0'
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones     : {us-east-1b, us-east-1a}
CanonicalHostedZoneId : Z35SXDOTRQ7X7K
CreatedTime           : 12/28/19 2:58:03 PM
DNSName               : New-Test-ALB-1391502222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com
IpAddressType         : ipv4
LoadBalancerArn       : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/New-Test-ALB/dab2e4d90eb51493
LoadBalancerName      : New-Test-ALB
Scheme                : internet-facing
SecurityGroups        : {sg-07c3414abb8811cbd}
State                 : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.LoadBalancerState
Type                  : application
VpcId                 : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
```

```
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}'
already exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in
this account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase
in the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateRule` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a rule using a path condition and a forward action

The following `create-rule` example creates a rule that forwards requests to the specified target group if the URL contains the specified pattern.

```
aws elbv2 create-rule \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 \
    --priority 5 \
    --conditions file://conditions-pattern.json
    --actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

Contents of `conditions-pattern.json`:

```
[
    {
        "Field": "path-pattern",
        "PathPatternConfig": {
            "Values": ["/images/*"]
        }
    }
]
```

Example 2: To create a rule using a host condition and a fixed response

The following `create-rule` example creates a rule that provides a fixed response if the hostname in the host header matches the specified hostname.

```
aws elbv2 create-rule \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 \
    --priority 10 \
    --conditions file://conditions-host.json \
    --actions file://actions-fixed-response.json
```

Contents of `conditions-host.json`

```
[
  {
      "Field": "host-header",
      "HostHeaderConfig": {
          "Values": ["*.example.com"]
      }
  }
]
```

Contents of `actions-fixed-response.json`

```
[
    {
        "Type": "fixed-response",
        "FixedResponseConfig": {
            "MessageBody": "Hello world",
            "StatusCode": "200",
            "ContentType": "text/plain"
        }
    }
]
```

Example 3: To create a rule using a source IP address condition, an authenticate action, and a forward action

The following `create-rule` example creates a rule that authenticates the user if the source IP address matches the specified IP address, and forwards the request to the specified target group if authentication is successful.

```
aws elbv2 create-rule \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 \
    --priority 20 \
    --conditions file://conditions-source-ip.json \
    --actions file://actions-authenticate.json
```

Contents of `conditions-source-ip.json`

```
[
    {
```

```
        "Field": "source-ip",
        "SourceIpConfig": {
            "Values": ["192.0.2.0/24", "198.51.100.10/32"]
        }
    }
]
```

Contents of `actions-authenticate.json`

```
[
    {
        "Type": "authenticate-oidc",
        "AuthenticateOidcConfig": {
            "Issuer": "https://idp-issuer.com",
            "AuthorizationEndpoint": "https://authorization-endpoint.com",
            "TokenEndpoint": "https://token-endpoint.com",
            "UserInfoEndpoint": "https://user-info-endpoint.com",
            "ClientId": "abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz123456789",
            "ClientSecret": "12345678901234567890123456789O",
            "SessionCookieName": "my-cookie",
            "SessionTimeout": 3600,
            "Scope": "email",
            "AuthenticationRequestExtraParams": {
                "display": "page",
                "prompt": "login"
            },
            "OnUnauthenticatedRequest": "deny"
        },
        "Order": 1
    },
    {
        "Type": "forward",
        "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:880185128111:targetgroup/cli-test/642a97ecb0e0f26b",
        "Order": 2
    }
]
```

- For API details, see CreateRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates new Listener rule with fixed-response action based on the customer header value for the specified Listener.

```
$newRuleAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
  "FixedResponseConfig" = @{
    "ContentType" = "text/plain"
    "MessageBody" = "Hello World"
    "StatusCode" = "200"
  }
  "Type" = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.ActionTypeEnum]::FixedResponse
}

$newRuleCondition = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition]@{
  "httpHeaderConfig" = @{
    "HttpHeaderName" = "customHeader"
    "Values" = "header2","header1"
  }
  "Field" = "http-header"
}

New-ELB2Rule -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80' -
Action $newRuleAction -Condition $newRuleCondition -Priority 10
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 10
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/f4f51dfaa033a8cc
```

- For API details, see CreateRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new Listener rule with fixed-response action based on the customer header value for the specified Listener.

```
$newRuleAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
  "FixedResponseConfig" = @{
    "ContentType" = "text/plain"
    "MessageBody" = "Hello World"
    "StatusCode" = "200"
  }
  "Type" = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.ActionTypeEnum]::FixedResponse
}

$newRuleCondition = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition]@{
  "httpHeaderConfig" = @{
    "HttpHeaderName" = "customHeader"
    "Values" = "header2","header1"
  }
  "Field" = "http-header"
}

New-ELB2Rule -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80' -
Action $newRuleAction -Condition $newRuleCondition -Priority 10
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 10
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/f4f51dfaa033a8cc
```

- For API details, see CreateRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateTargetGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTargetGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</
param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer
 exists.</param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
```

```
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a target group for an Application Load Balancer

The following `create-target-group` example creates a target group for an Application Load Balancer where you register targets by instance ID (the target type is `instance`). This target group uses the HTTP protocol, port 80, and the default health check settings for an HTTP target group.

```
aws elbv2 create-target-group \
    --name my-targets \
    --protocol HTTP \
    --port 80 \
    --target-type instance \
    --vpc-id vpc-3ac0fb5f
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-targets",
            "Protocol": "HTTP",
            "Port": 80,
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "HealthCheckProtocol": "HTTP",
            "HealthCheckPort": "traffic-port",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": true,
```

```
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 30,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 5,
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
            "HealthCheckPath": "/",
            "Matcher": {
                "HttpCode": "200"
            },
            "TargetType": "instance",
            "ProtocolVersion": "HTTP1",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Create a target group in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Example 2: To create a target group to route traffic from an Application Load Balancer to a Lambda function

The following `create-target-group` example creates a target group for an Application Load Balancer where the target is a Lambda function (the target type is `lambda`). Health checks are disabled for this target group by default.

```
aws elbv2 create-target-group \
    --name my-lambda-target \
    --target-type lambda
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-lambda-target/a3003e085dbb8ddc",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-lambda-target",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": false,
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 35,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 30,
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
```

```
            "HealthCheckPath": "/",
            "Matcher": {
                "HttpCode": "200"
            },
            "TargetType": "lambda",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Lambda functions as targets in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

Example 3: To create a target group for a Network Load Balancer

The following `create-target-group` example creates a target group for a Network Load Balancer where you register targets by IP address (the target type is `ip`). This target group uses the TCP protocol, port 80, and the default health check settings for a TCP target group.

```
aws elbv2 create-target-group \
    --name my-ip-targets \
    --protocol TCP \
    --port 80 \
    --target-type ip \
    --vpc-id vpc-3ac0fb5f
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-ip-targets/b6bba954d1361c78",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-ip-targets",
            "Protocol": "TCP",
            "Port": 80,
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": true,
            "HealthCheckProtocol": "TCP",
            "HealthCheckPort": "traffic-port",
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 30,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 10,
```

```
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
            "TargetType": "ip",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Create a target group in the *User Guide for Network Load Balancers*.

Example 4: To create a target group to route traffic from a Network Load Balancer to an Application Load Balancer

The following `create-target-group` example creates a target group for a Network Load Balancer where you register an Application Load Balancer as a target (the target type is `alb`).

aws elbv2 create-target-group --name my-alb-target --protocol TCP --port 80 --target-type alb --vpc-id vpc-3ac0fb5f

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-alb-target/a3003e085dbb8ddc",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-alb-target",
            "Protocol": "TCP",
            "Port": 80,
            "VpcId": "vpc-838475fe",
            "HealthCheckProtocol": "HTTP",
            "HealthCheckPort": "traffic-port",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": true,
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 30,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 6,
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
            "HealthCheckPath": "/",
            "Matcher": {
                "HttpCode": "200-399"
            },
```

```
            "TargetType": "alb",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Create a target group with an Application Load Balancer as the target in the *User Guide for Network Load Balancers*.

Example 5: To create a target group for a Gateway Load Balancer

The following `create-target-group` example creates a target group for a Gateway Load Balancer where the target is an instance, and the target group protocol is `GENEVE`.

```
aws elbv2 create-target-group \
    --name my-glb-targetgroup \
    --protocol GENEVE \
    --port 6081 \
    --target-type instance \
    --vpc-id vpc-838475fe
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-glb-targetgroup/00c3d57eacd6f40b6f",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-glb-targetgroup",
            "Protocol": "GENEVE",
            "Port": 6081,
            "VpcId": "vpc-838475fe",
            "HealthCheckProtocol": "TCP",
            "HealthCheckPort": "80",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": true,
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 10,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 5,
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
            "TargetType": "instance"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Create a target group <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/elasticloadbalancing/latest/gateway/create-target-group.html>`__ in the *Gateway Load Balancer User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /*
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
    * how
    * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how
instance
    * health is checked.
    */
   public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId,
String targetGroupName) {
       CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
               .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
               .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
               .port(port)
               .vpcId(vpcId)
               .name(targetGroupName)
               .protocol(protocol)
               .build();

       CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
       String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
```

```
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
  new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
    Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    Protocol: "HTTP",
    Port: 80,
    HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
    HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
    HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
    HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
    UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
    VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates new Target group with the provided parameters.

```
New-ELB2TargetGroup -HealthCheckEnabled 1 -HealthCheckIntervalSeconds 30 -
HealthCheckPath '/index.html' -HealthCheckPort 80 -HealthCheckTimeoutSecond 5 -
HealthyThresholdCount 2 -UnhealthyThresholdCount 5 -Port 80 -Protocol 'HTTP' -
TargetType instance -VpcId 'vpc-2cfd7000' -Name 'NewTargetGroup'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 30
HealthCheckPath            : /index.html
HealthCheckPort            : 80
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 2
LoadBalancerArns           : {}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/NewTargetGroup/534e484681d801bf
TargetGroupName            : NewTargetGroup
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 5
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new Target group with the provided parameters.

```
New-ELB2TargetGroup -HealthCheckEnabled 1 -HealthCheckIntervalSeconds 30 -
HealthCheckPath '/index.html' -HealthCheckPort 80 -HealthCheckTimeoutSecond 5 -
HealthyThresholdCount 2 -UnhealthyThresholdCount 5 -Port 80 -Protocol 'HTTP' -
TargetType instance -VpcId 'vpc-2cfd7000' -Name 'NewTargetGroup'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 30
HealthCheckPath            : /index.html
HealthCheckPort            : 80
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 2
LoadBalancerArns           : {}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/NewTargetGroup/534e484681d801bf
TargetGroupName            : NewTargetGroup
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 5
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
```

```
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group
specifies how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
times and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the
sensitivity of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing
 target group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for
 new ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteListener` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteListener`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a listener

The following `delete-listener` example deletes the specified listener.

```
aws elbv2 delete-listener \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:ua-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2
```

- For API details, see DeleteListener in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Listener.

```
Remove-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Listener (DeleteListener)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

Example 2: This example removes specified listener from the Load balancer.

```
Remove-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Listener (DeleteListener)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Listener.

```
Remove-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Listener (DeleteListener)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

Example 2: This example removes specified listener from the Load balancer.

```
Remove-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Listener (DeleteListener)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteLoadBalancer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
 describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a load balancer

The following `delete-load-balancer` example deletes the specified load balancer.

```
aws elbv2 delete-load-balancer \
```

```
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
await client.send(
  new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
    LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
  }),
);
await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
  const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
  if (lb) {
    throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
  }
});
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Load balancer.

```
Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer (DeleteLoadBalancer)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Load balancer.

```
Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer (DeleteLoadBalancer)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
 code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteRule` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a rule

The following `delete-rule` example deletes the specified rule.

```
aws elbv2 delete-rule \
    --rule-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2/1291d13826f405c3
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified rule from the Listener

```
Remove-ELB2Rule -RuleArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618/4b25eb10a42e33ab'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Rule (DeleteRule)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618/4b25eb10a42e33ab".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified rule from the Listener

```
Remove-ELB2Rule -RuleArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618/4b25eb10a42e33ab'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Rule (DeleteRule)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618/4b25eb10a42e33ab".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteTargetGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTargetGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn =
targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a target group

The following `delete-target-group` example deletes the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 delete-target-group \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Delete a load balancer in the *Application Load Balancer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
 describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
 builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
try {
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
    client.send(
      new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
        TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
      }),
    ),
  );
} catch (e) {
  state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the specified Target Group.

```
Remove-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/testssssss/4e0b6076bc6483a7'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2TargetGroup (DeleteTargetGroup)" on
 target "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/
testssssss/4e0b6076bc6483a7".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified Target Group.

```
Remove-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/testssssss/4e0b6076bc6483a7'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2TargetGroup (DeleteTargetGroup)" on
 target "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/
testssssss/4e0b6076bc6483a7".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
 self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.",
 target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
 available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the
AWS Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with
any load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn}
still exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts
* delay} seconds."
        )
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeregisterTargets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterTargets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To deregister a target from a target group

The following `deregister-targets` example removes the specified instance from the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 deregister-targets \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067 \
    --targets Id=i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Example 2: To deregister a target registered using port overrides

The following `deregister-targets` example removes an instance from a target group that was registered using port overrides.

```
aws elbv2 deregister-targets \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-internal-targets/3bb63f11dfb0faf9 \
    --targets Id=i-1234567890abcdef0,Port=80 Id=i-1234567890abcdef0,Port=766
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deregisters instance 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111' from the specified Target group.

```
$targetDescription = New-Object
 Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetDescription
```

```
$targetDescription.Id = 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111'
Unregister-ELB2Target -Target $targetDescription -TargetGroupArn
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/
a4e04b3688be1970'
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters instance 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111' from the specified Target group.

```
$targetDescription = New-Object
 Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetDescription
$targetDescription.Id = 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111'
Unregister-ELB2Target -Target $targetDescription -TargetGroupArn
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/
a4e04b3688be1970'
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAccountLimits` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAccountLimits`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your Elastic Load Balancing limits

The following `describe-account-limits` example displays the Elastic Load Balancing limits for your AWS account in the current Region.

```
aws elbv2 describe-account-limits
```

Output:

```
{
    "Limits": [
        {
            "Name": "target-groups",
            "Max": "3000"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Name": "targets-per-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "1000"
        },
        {
            "Name": "listeners-per-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "50"
        },
        {
            "Name": "rules-per-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "100"
        },
        {
            "Name": "network-load-balancers",
            "Max": "50"
        },
        {
            "Name": "targets-per-network-load-balancer",
            "Max": "3000"
        },
        {
            "Name": "targets-per-availability-zone-per-network-load-balancer",
            "Max": "500"
        },
        {
            "Name": "listeners-per-network-load-balancer",
            "Max": "50"
        },
        {
            "Name": "condition-values-per-alb-rule",
            "Max": "5"
        },
        {
            "Name": "condition-wildcards-per-alb-rule",
            "Max": "5"
        },
        {
            "Name": "target-groups-per-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "100"
        },
        {
            "Name": "target-groups-per-action-on-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "5"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Name": "target-groups-per-action-on-network-load-balancer",
            "Max": "1"
        },
        {
            "Name": "certificates-per-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "25"
        },
        {
            "Name": "certificates-per-network-load-balancer",
            "Max": "25"
        },
        {
            "Name": "targets-per-target-group",
            "Max": "1000"
        },
        {
            "Name": "target-id-registrations-per-application-load-balancer",
            "Max": "1000"
        },
        {
            "Name": "network-load-balancer-enis-per-vpc",
            "Max": "1200"
        },
        {
            "Name": "application-load-balancers",
            "Max": "50"
        },
        {
            "Name": "gateway-load-balancers",
            "Max": "100"
        },
        {
            "Name": "gateway-load-balancers-per-vpc",
            "Max": "100"
        },
        {
            "Name": "geneve-target-groups",
            "Max": "100"
        },
        {
            "Name": "targets-per-availability-zone-per-gateway-load-balancer",
            "Max": "300"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Quotas in the *AWS General Reference*.

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command lists ELB2 account limits for a given region.

```
Get-ELB2AccountLimit
```

Output:

```
Max  Name
---  ----
3000 target-groups
1000 targets-per-application-load-balancer
50   listeners-per-application-load-balancer
100  rules-per-application-load-balancer
50   network-load-balancers
3000 targets-per-network-load-balancer
500  targets-per-availability-zone-per-network-load-balancer
50   listeners-per-network-load-balancer
5    condition-values-per-alb-rule
5    condition-wildcards-per-alb-rule
100  target-groups-per-application-load-balancer
5    target-groups-per-action-on-application-load-balancer
1    target-groups-per-action-on-network-load-balancer
50   application-load-balancers
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command lists ELB2 account limits for a given region.

```
Get-ELB2AccountLimit
```

Output:

```
Max  Name
---  ----
3000 target-groups
1000 targets-per-application-load-balancer
50   listeners-per-application-load-balancer
100  rules-per-application-load-balancer
50   network-load-balancers
3000 targets-per-network-load-balancer
500  targets-per-availability-zone-per-network-load-balancer
50   listeners-per-network-load-balancer
5    condition-values-per-alb-rule
5    condition-wildcards-per-alb-rule
100  target-groups-per-application-load-balancer
5    target-groups-per-action-on-application-load-balancer
1    target-groups-per-action-on-network-load-balancer
50   application-load-balancers
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeListenerCertificates` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeListenerCertificates`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the certificates for a secure listener

This example describes the certificates for the specified secure listener.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 describe-listener-certificates --listener-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2
```

Output:

```
{
  "Certificates": [
      {
          "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/5cc54884-f4a3-4072-80be-05b9ba72f705",
          "IsDefault": false
      },
      {
          "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/3dcb0a41-bd72-4774-9ad9-756919c40557",
          "IsDefault": false
      },
      {
          "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:acm:us-west-2:123456789012:certificate/
fe59da96-6f58-4a22-8eed-6d0d50477e1d",
          "IsDefault": true
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeListenerCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This examples describes the certificate for the specified listener.

```
Get-ELB2ListenerCertificate -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   IsDefault
--------------
   ---------
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/5fc7c092-68bf-4862-969c-22fd48b6e17c True
```

- For API details, see DescribeListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples describes the certificate for the specified listener.

```
Get-ELB2ListenerCertificate -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
   IsDefault
--------------
   ---------
arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/5fc7c092-68bf-4862-969c-22fd48b6e17c True
```

- For API details, see DescribeListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeListeners` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeListeners`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a listener

This example describes the specified listener.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 describe-listeners --listener-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2
```

Output:

```
{
  "Listeners": [
      {
          "Port": 80,
          "Protocol": "HTTP",
          "DefaultActions": [
              {
                  "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
                  "Type": "forward"
              }
          ],
          "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
          "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2"
      }
  ]
}
```

To describe the listeners for a load balancer

This example describe the listeners for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 describe-listeners --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188
```

Output:

```
{
  "Listeners": [
      {
          "Port": 443,
          "Protocol": "HTTPS",
          "DefaultActions": [
              {
                  "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
                  "Type": "forward"
```

```
                }
            ],
            "SslPolicy": "ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05",
            "Certificates": [
                {
                    "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-
certificate/my-server-cert"
                }
            ],
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
            "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/0467ef3c8400ae65"
        },
        {
            "Port": 80,
            "Protocol": "HTTP",
            "DefaultActions": [
                {
                    "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
                    "Type": "forward"
                }
            ],
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
            "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeListeners in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This examples describes listeners of the specified ALB/NLB.

```
Get-ELB2Listener -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/1dac07c21187d41e
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f
Port            : 80
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :

Certificates    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Certificate}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f
Port            : 443
Protocol        : HTTPS
SslPolicy       : ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08
```

- For API details, see DescribeListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples describes listeners of the specified ALB/NLB.

```
Get-ELB2Listener -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/1dac07c21187d41e
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f
```

```
Port            : 80
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :

Certificates    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Certificate}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f
Port            : 443
Protocol        : HTTPS
SslPolicy       : ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08
```

- For API details, see DescribeListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe load balancer attributes

The following `describe-load-balancer-attributes` example displays the attributes of the specified load balancer.

```
aws elbv2 describe-load-balancer-attributes \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188
```

The following example output show the attributes for an Application Load Balancer.

```
{
    "Attributes": [
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.enabled"
        },
        {
```

```
            "Value": "",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.bucket"
        },
        {
            "Value": "",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.prefix"
        },
        {
            "Value": "60",
            "Key": "idle_timeout.timeout_seconds"
        },
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "deletion_protection.enabled"
        },
        {
            "Value": "true",
            "Key": "routing.http2.enabled"
        }
    ]
}
```

The following example output includes the attributes for a Network Load Balancer.

```
{
    "Attributes": [
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.enabled"
        },
        {
            "Value": "",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.bucket"
        },
        {
            "Value": "",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.prefix"
        },
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "deletion_protection.enabled"
        },
        {
```

```
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "load_balancing.cross_zone.enabled"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command describes the attributes of given Load balancer.

```
Get-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/test-elb/238d34ad8d94bc2e'
```

Output:

```
Key                              Value
---                              -----
access_logs.s3.enabled           false
load_balancing.cross_zone.enabled true
access_logs.s3.prefix
deletion_protection.enabled      false
access_logs.s3.bucket
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command describes the attributes of given Load balancer.

```
Get-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/test-elb/238d34ad8d94bc2e'
```

Output:

```
Key                              Value
---                              -----
access_logs.s3.enabled           false
```

```
load_balancing.cross_zone.enabled true
access_logs.s3.prefix
deletion_protection.enabled       false
access_logs.s3.bucket
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeLoadBalancers` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
 loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
```

```
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a load balancer

This example describes the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 describe-load-balancers --load-balancer-
arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-
load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188
```

Output:

```
{
  "LoadBalancers": [
      {
          "Type": "application",
          "Scheme": "internet-facing",
          "IpAddressType": "ipv4",
          "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
          "AvailabilityZones": [
              {
                  "ZoneName": "us-west-2a",
                  "SubnetId": "subnet-8360a9e7"
              },
              {
                  "ZoneName": "us-west-2b",
                  "SubnetId": "subnet-b7d581c0"
```

```
                }
            ],
            "CreatedTime": "2016-03-25T21:26:12.920Z",
            "CanonicalHostedZoneId": "Z2P70J7EXAMPLE",
            "DNSName": "my-load-balancer-424835706.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com",
            "SecurityGroups": [
                "sg-5943793c"
            ],
            "LoadBalancerName": "my-load-balancer",
            "State": {
                "Code": "active"
            },
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188"
        }
    ]
}
```

To describe all load balancers

This example describes all of your load balancers.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 describe-load-balancers
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
```

```
  DescribeLoadBalancersCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

export async function main() {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
    new DescribeLoadBalancersCommand({}),
  );
  const loadBalancersList = LoadBalancers.map(
    (lb) => `• ${lb.LoadBalancerName}: ${lb.DNSName}`,
  ).join("\n");
  console.log(
    "Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load balancers:\n",
    loadBalancersList,
  );
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample displays all the load balancers for the given region.

```
Get-ELB2LoadBalancer
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones     : {us-east-1c}
CanonicalHostedZoneId : Z26RNL4JYFTOTI
CreatedTime           : 6/22/18 11:21:50 AM
DNSName               : test-elb1234567890-238d34ad8d94bc2e.elb.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com
IpAddressType         : ipv4
```

```
LoadBalancerArn       : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/test-elb1234567890/238d34ad8d94bc2e
LoadBalancerName      : test-elb1234567890
Scheme                : internet-facing
SecurityGroups        : {}
State                 : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.LoadBalancerState
Type                  : network
VpcId                 : vpc-2cf00000
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays all the load balancers for the given region.

```
Get-ELB2LoadBalancer
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones     : {us-east-1c}
CanonicalHostedZoneId : Z26RNL4JYFTOTI
CreatedTime           : 6/22/18 11:21:50 AM
DNSName               : test-elb1234567890-238d34ad8d94bc2e.elb.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com
IpAddressType         : ipv4
LoadBalancerArn       : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/test-elb1234567890/238d34ad8d94bc2e
LoadBalancerName      : test-elb1234567890
Scheme                : internet-facing
SecurityGroups        : {}
State                 : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.LoadBalancerState
Type                  : network
VpcId                 : vpc-2cf00000
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer
 {load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
 console."
                )
```

```
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeRules` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeRules`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a rule

The following `describe-rules` example displays details for the specified rule.

```
aws elbv2 describe-rules \
    --rule-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener-rule/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2/9683b2d02a6cabee
```

Example 2: To describe the rules for a listener

The following `describe-rules` example displays details for the rules for the specified listener. The output includes the default rule and any other rules that you've added.

```
aws elbv2 describe-rules \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2
```

- For API details, see DescribeRules in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the listener rules for the specified Listener ARN.

```
Get-ELB2Rule -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 1
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/2286fff5055e0f79

Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 2
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/14e7b036567623ba

Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {}
IsDefault  : True
Priority   : default
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/853948cf3aa9b2bf
```

- For API details, see DescribeRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the listener rules for the specified Listener ARN.

```
Get-ELB2Rule -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 1
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/2286fff5055e0f79

Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
```

```
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 2
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/14e7b036567623ba

Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {}
IsDefault  : True
Priority   : default
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/853948cf3aa9b2bf
```

- For API details, see DescribeRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeSslPolicies` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSslPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list the policies used for SSL negotiation by load balancer type

The following `describe-ssl-policies` example displays the names of the polices that you can use for SSL negotiation with an Application Load Balancer. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the names of the policies.

```
aws elbv2 describe-ssl-policies \
    --load-balancer-type application \
    --query SslPolicies[*].Name
```

Output:

```
[
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-Res-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-Ext1-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-Ext2-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-1-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-0-2021-06",
```

```
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-3-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-2017-01",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-1-2017-01",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-Ext-2018-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-2018-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-0-2015-04",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-Res-2019-08",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-1-2019-08",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-2019-08",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-Res-2020-10"
]
```

Example 2: To list the policies that support a specific protocol

The following `describe-ssl-policies` example displays the names of the polices that support the TLS 1.3 protocol. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the names of the policies.

```
aws elbv2 describe-ssl-policies \
    --load-balancer-type application \
    --query SslPolicies[?contains(SslProtocols,'TLSv1.3')].Name
```

Output:

```
[
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-Res-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-Ext1-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-Ext2-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-1-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-0-2021-06",
    "ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-3-2021-06"
]
```

Example 3: To display the ciphers for a policy

The following `describe-ssl-policies` example displays the names of the ciphers for the specified policy. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the cipher names. The first cipher in the list has priority 1, and the remaining ciphers are in priority order.

```
aws elbv2 describe-ssl-policies \
```

```
    --names ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS13-1-2-2021-06 \
    --query SslPolicies[*].Ciphers[*].Name
```

Output:

```
[
    "TLS_AES_128_GCM_SHA256",
    "TLS_AES_256_GCM_SHA384",
    "TLS_CHACHA20_POLY1305_SHA256",
    "ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256",
    "ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256",
    "ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-SHA256",
    "ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256",
    "ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384",
    "ECDHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384",
    "ECDHE-ECDSA-AES256-SHA384",
    "ECDHE-RSA-AES256-SHA384"
]
```

For more information, see Security policies in the *User Guide for Application Load Balancers*.

- For API details, see DescribeSslPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This examples lists all available listener policies for ElasticLoadBalancingV2.

```
Get-ELB2SSLPolicy
```

Output:

```
Ciphers
                                        Name
 SslProtocols
-------
                                        ----
 ------------
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08            {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
```

```
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-2017-01     {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-1-2017-01     {TLSv1.1,
 TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-Ext-2018-06 {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-2018-06         {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05            {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-0-2015-04     {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-Res-2019-08  {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-1-2019-08      {TLSv1.1,
 TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-2019-08      {TLSv1.2}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSslPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples lists all available listener policies for ElasticLoadBalancingV2.

```
Get-ELB2SSLPolicy
```

Output:

```
Ciphers
                                        Name
 SslProtocols
-------
                                        ----
 ------------
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08            {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
```

```
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-2017-01     {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-1-2017-01     {TLSv1.1,
 TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-Ext-2018-06 {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-2018-06         {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05            {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-0-2015-04     {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-Res-2019-08  {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-1-2019-08      {TLSv1.1,
 TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-2019-08      {TLSv1.2}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSslPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the tags assigned to a load balancer

This example describes the tags assigned to the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 describe-tags --resource-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188
```

Output:

```
{
  "TagDescriptions": [
      {
          "ResourceArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
          "Tags": [
              {
                  "Value": "lima",
                  "Key": "project"
              },
              {
                  "Value": "digital-media",
                  "Key": "department"
              }
          ]
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the Tags for the specified resource.

```
Get-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn
              Tags
-----------
              ----
arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f {stage, internalName, version}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the Tags for the specified resource.

```
Get-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn
              Tags
-----------
              ----
arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f {stage, internalName, version}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTargetGroupAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTargetGroupAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe target group attributes

The following `describe-target-group-attributes` example displays the attributes of the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 describe-target-group-attributes \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

The output includes the attributes if the protocol is HTTP or HTTPS and the target type is `instance` or `ip`.

```
{
    "Attributes": [
        {
```

```
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "stickiness.enabled"
        },
        {
            "Value": "300",
            "Key": "deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds"
        },
        {
            "Value": "lb_cookie",
            "Key": "stickiness.type"
        },
        {
            "Value": "86400",
            "Key": "stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds"
        },
        {
            "Value": "0",
            "Key": "slow_start.duration_seconds"
        }
    ]
}
```

The following output includes the attributes if the protocol is HTTP or HTTPS and the target type is `lambda`.

```
{
    "Attributes": [
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "lambda.multi_value_headers.enabled"
        }
    ]
}
```

The following output includes the attributes if the protocol is TCP, TLS, UDP, or TCP_UDP.

```
{
    "Attributes": [
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "proxy_protocol_v2.enabled"
        },
        {
```

```
            "Value": "300",
            "Key": "deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the attributes of the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
Key                                 Value
---                                 -----
stickiness.enabled                  false
deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds  300
stickiness.type                     lb_cookie
stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds 86400
slow_start.duration_seconds         0
load_balancing.algorithm.type       round_robin
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the attributes of the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
Key                                 Value
---                                 -----
```

```
stickiness.enabled                    false
deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds  300
stickiness.type                       lb_cookie
stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds 86400
slow_start.duration_seconds           0
load_balancing.algorithm.type         round_robin
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTargetGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTargetGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a target group

The following `describe-target-groups` example displays details for the specified target group.

```
aws elbv2 describe-target-groups \
    --target-group-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-targets",
            "Protocol": "HTTP",
```

```
            "Port": 80,
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "HealthCheckProtocol": "HTTP",
            "HealthCheckPort": "traffic-port",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": true,
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 30,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 5,
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
            "HealthCheckPath": "/",
            "Matcher": {
                "HttpCode": "200"
            },
            "LoadBalancerArns": [
                "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188"
            ],
            "TargetType": "instance",
            "ProtocolVersion": "HTTP1",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe all target groups for a load balancer

The following `describe-target-groups` example displays details for all target groups for the specified load balancer. The example uses the `--query` parameter to display only the target group names.

```
aws elbv2 describe-target-groups \
    --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 \
    --query TargetGroups[*].TargetGroupName
```

Output:

```
[
    "my-instance-targets",
    "my-ip-targets",
    "my-lambda-target"
]
```

For more information, see Target groups in the *Applicaion Load Balancers Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
  new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
    Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 30
HealthCheckPath            : /
HealthCheckPort            : traffic-port
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
```

```
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 5
LoadBalancerArns           : {arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970
TargetGroupName            : test-tg
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 2
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 30
HealthCheckPath            : /
HealthCheckPort            : traffic-port
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 5
LoadBalancerArns           : {arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970
TargetGroupName            : test-tg
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 2
```

```
VpcId                       : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTargetHealth` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTargetHealth`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
```

```
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
 groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe the health of the targets for a target group

The following `describe-target-health` example displays health details for the targets of the specified target group. These targets are healthy.

```
aws elbv2 describe-target-health \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetHealthDescriptions": [
        {
            "HealthCheckPort": "80",
            "Target": {
                "Id": "i-ceddcd4d",
```

```
                "Port": 80
            },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "healthy"
            }
        },
        {
            "HealthCheckPort": "80",
            "Target": {
                "Id": "i-0f76fade",
                "Port": 80
            },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "healthy"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe the health of a target

The following `describe-target-health` example displays health details for the specified target. This target is healthy.

```
aws elbv2 describe-target-health \
    --targets Id=i-0f76fade,Port=80 \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetHealthDescriptions": [
        {
            "HealthCheckPort": "80",
            "Target": {
                "Id": "i-0f76fade",
                "Port": 80
            },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "healthy"
            }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

The following example output is for a target whose target group is not specified in an action for a listener. This target can't receive traffic from the load balancer.

```
{
    "TargetHealthDescriptions": [
    {
        "HealthCheckPort": "80",
        "Target": {
            "Id": "i-0f76fade",
            "Port": 80
        },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "unused",
                "Reason": "Target.NotInUse",
                "Description": "Target group is not configured to receive traffic
 from the load balancer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

The following example output is for a target whose target group was just specified in an action for a listener. The target is still being registered.

```
{
    "TargetHealthDescriptions": [
        {
            "HealthCheckPort": "80",
            "Target": {
                "Id": "i-0f76fade",
                "Port": 80
            },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "initial",
                "Reason": "Elb.RegistrationInProgress",
                "Description": "Target registration is in progress"
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

The following example output is for an unhealthy target.

```
{
    "TargetHealthDescriptions": [
        {
            "HealthCheckPort": "80",
            "Target": {
                "Id": "i-0f76fade",
                "Port": 80
            },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "unhealthy",
                "Reason": "Target.Timeout",
                "Description": "Connection to target timed out"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

The following example output is for a target that is a Lambda function and health checks are disabled.

```
{
    "TargetHealthDescriptions": [
        {
            "Target": {
                "Id": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function",
                "AvailabilityZone": "all",
            },
            "TargetHealth": {
                "State": "unavailable",
                "Reason": "Target.HealthCheckDisabled",
                "Description": "Health checks are not enabled for this target"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
   public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String
targetGroupName) {
       DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
               .names(targetGroupName)
               .build();

       DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

       DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()

.targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
               .build();

       DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
       return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
  new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
    TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the health status of the Targets present in the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetHealth -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckPort Target
 TargetHealth
--------------- ------
 ------------
80              Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetDescription
 Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetHealth
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the health status of the Targets present in the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetHealth -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckPort Target
 TargetHealth
--------------- ------
 ------------
80              Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetDescription
 Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetHealth
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client
```

```
    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not
found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS
region, and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ModifyListener` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyListener`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To change the default action to a forward action

The following `modify-listener` example changes the default action to a `forward` action for the specified listener.

```
aws elbv2 modify-listener \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 \
    --default-
actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-new-targets/2453ed029918f21f
```

Output:

```
{
    "Listeners": [
        {
            "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2",
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
            "Protocol": "HTTP",
            "Port": 80,
            "DefaultActions": [
                {
                    "Type": "forward",
                    "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-new-targets/2453ed029918f21f"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To change the default action to a redirect action

The following `modify-listener` example changes the default action to a `redirect` action for the specified listener.

```
aws elbv2 modify-listener \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 \
    --default-actions Type=redirect,
 RedirectConfig='{Protocol=HTTPS,StatusCode=HTTP_302}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Listeners": [
        {
            "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2",
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
            "Protocol": "HTTP",
            "Port": 80,
            "DefaultActions": [
                {
                    "Type": "redirect",
                    "RedirectConfig": {
                        "Protocol": "HTTPS",
                        "Port": "#{port}",
                        "Host": "#{host}",
                        "Path": "/#{path}",
                        "Query": "#{query}",
                        "StatusCode": "HTTP_302",
                    }
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To change the server certificate

The following `modify-listener` example changes the server certificate for the specified HTTPS listener.

```
aws elbv2 modify-listener \
    --listener-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/0467ef3c8400ae65 \
    --certificates CertificateArn=arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/
my-new-server-cert
```

Output:

```
{
    "Listeners": [
        {
            "ListenerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/0467ef3c8400ae65",
            "LoadBalancerArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188",
            "Protocol": "HTTPS",
            "Port": 443,
            "DefaultActions": [
                {
                    "Type": "forward",
                    "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067"
                }
            ],
            "SslPolicy": "ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05",
            "Certificates": [
                {
                    "CertificateArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-
certificate/my-new-server-cert"
                }
            ],
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listener rules in the *Application Load Balancers User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyListener in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifes the specified listeners default action to fixed-response.

```
$newDefaultAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
    "FixedResponseConfig" = @{
    "ContentType" = "text/plain"
    "MessageBody" = "Hello World"
    "StatusCode" = "200"
  }
  "Type" = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.ActionTypeEnum]::FixedResponse
}

Edit-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/d19f2f14974db685' -Port
 8080 -DefaultAction $newDefaultAction
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/d19f2f14974db685
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676
Port            : 8080
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :
```

- For API details, see ModifyListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the specified listeners default action to fixed-response.

```
$newDefaultAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
    "FixedResponseConfig" = @{
    "ContentType" = "text/plain"
    "MessageBody" = "Hello World"
    "StatusCode" = "200"
  }
```

```
  "Type" = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.ActionTypeEnum]::FixedResponse
}

Edit-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/d19f2f14974db685' -Port
 8080 -DefaultAction $newDefaultAction
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/d19f2f14974db685
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676
Port            : 8080
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :
```

- For API details, see ModifyListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable deletion protection

This example enables deletion protection for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 modify-load-balancer-attributes --load-balancer-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 --attributes Key=deletion_protection.enabled,Value=true
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
  "Attributes": [
      {
          "Value": "true",
          "Key": "deletion_protection.enabled"
      },
      {
          "Value": "false",
          "Key": "access_logs.s3.enabled"
      },
      {
          "Value": "60",
          "Key": "idle_timeout.timeout_seconds"
      },
      {
          "Value": "",
          "Key": "access_logs.s3.prefix"
      },
      {
          "Value": "",
          "Key": "access_logs.s3.bucket"
      }
  ]
}
```

To change the idle timeout

This example changes the idle timeout value for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 modify-load-balancer-attributes --load-balancer-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 --attributes Key=idle_timeout.timeout_seconds,Value=30
```

Output:

```
{
  "Attributes": [
      {
          "Value": "30",
          "Key": "idle_timeout.timeout_seconds"
      },
      {
```

```
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.enabled"
        },
        {
            "Value": "",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.prefix"
        },
        {
            "Value": "true",
            "Key": "deletion_protection.enabled"
        },
        {
            "Value": "",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.bucket"
        }
    ]
}
```

To enable access logs

This example enables access logs for the specified load balancer. Note that the S3 bucket must exist in the same region as the load balancer and must have a policy attached that grants access to the Elastic Load Balancing service.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 modify-load-balancer-attributes --load-balancer-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 --
attributes Key=access_logs.s3.enabled,Value=true Key=access_logs.s3.bucket,Value=my-
loadbalancer-logs Key=access_logs.s3.prefix,Value=myapp
```

Output:

```
{
    "Attributes": [
        {
            "Value": "true",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.enabled"
        },
        {
            "Value": "my-load-balancer-logs",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.bucket"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Value": "myapp",
            "Key": "access_logs.s3.prefix"
        },
        {
            "Value": "60",
            "Key": "idle_timeout.timeout_seconds"
        },
        {
            "Value": "false",
            "Key": "deletion_protection.enabled"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifes the Attributes of the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Attribute @{Key
 = 'deletion_protection.enabled'; Value = 'true'}
```

Output:

```
Key                                             Value
---                                             -----
deletion_protection.enabled                     true
access_logs.s3.enabled                          false
access_logs.s3.bucket
access_logs.s3.prefix
idle_timeout.timeout_seconds                    60
routing.http2.enabled                           true
routing.http.drop_invalid_header_fields.enabled false
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the Attributes of the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Attribute @{Key
 = 'deletion_protection.enabled'; Value = 'true'}
```

Output:

```
Key                                             Value
---                                             -----
deletion_protection.enabled                     true
access_logs.s3.enabled                          false
access_logs.s3.bucket
access_logs.s3.prefix
idle_timeout.timeout_seconds                    60
routing.http2.enabled                           true
routing.http.drop_invalid_header_fields.enabled false
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyRule` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyRule`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify a rule

The following `modify-rule` example updates the actions and conditions for the specified rule.

```
aws elbv2 modify-rule \
  --actions Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067 \
  --conditions Field=path-pattern,Values='/images/*'
  --rule-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2/9683b2d02a6cabee
```

Output:

```
{
    "Rules": [
        {
            "Priority": "10",
            "Conditions": [
                {
                    "Field": "path-pattern",
                    "Values": [
                        "/images/*"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "RuleArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener-rule/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2/9683b2d02a6cabee",
            "IsDefault": false,
            "Actions": [
                {
                    "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
                    "Type": "forward"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifes the specified Listener rule configurations.

```
$newRuleCondition = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition]@{
    "PathPatternConfig" = @{
    "Values" = "/login1","/login2","/login3"
  }
  "Field" = "path-pattern"
```

```
}

Edit-ELB2Rule -RuleArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/
f4f51dfaa033a8cc' -Condition $newRuleCondition
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 10
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/f4f51dfaa033a8cc
```

- For API details, see ModifyRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the specified Listener rule configurations.

```
$newRuleCondition = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition]@{
    "PathPatternConfig" = @{
    "Values" = "/login1","/login2","/login3"
  }
  "Field" = "path-pattern"
}

Edit-ELB2Rule -RuleArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/
f4f51dfaa033a8cc' -Condition $newRuleCondition
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 10
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/f4f51dfaa033a8cc
```

- For API details, see ModifyRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyTargetGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyTargetGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the health check configuration for a target group

The following `modify-target-group` example changes the configuration of the health checks used to evaluate the health of the targets for the specified target group. Note that due to the way the CLI parses commas, you must surround the range for the `--matcher` option with single quotes instead of double quotes.

```
aws elbv2 modify-target-group \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-https-targets/2453ed029918f21f \
    --health-check-protocol HTTPS \
    --health-check-port 443 \
    --matcher HttpCode='200,299'
```

Output:

```
{
    "TargetGroups": [
        {
            "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-https-targets/2453ed029918f21f",
            "TargetGroupName": "my-https-targets",
            "Protocol": "HTTPS",
            "Port": 443,
            "VpcId": "vpc-3ac0fb5f",
            "HealthCheckProtocol": "HTTPS",
            "HealthCheckPort": "443",
            "HealthCheckEnabled": true,
            "HealthCheckIntervalSeconds": 30,
            "HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds": 5,
            "HealthyThresholdCount": 5,
            "UnhealthyThresholdCount": 2,
            "Matcher": {
                "HttpCode": "200,299"
            },
```

```
            "LoadBalancerArns": [
                "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188"
            ],
            "TargetType": "instance",
            "ProtocolVersion": "HTTP1",
            "IpAddressType": "ipv4"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Target groups in the *Applicaion Load Balancers Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifes the properties of the specified Target Group.

```
Edit-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -
HealthCheckIntervalSecond 60 -HealthCheckPath '/index.html' -HealthCheckPort 8080
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 60
HealthCheckPath            : /index.html
HealthCheckPort            : 8080
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 5
LoadBalancerArns           : {}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970
TargetGroupName            : test-tg
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 2
```

```
VpcId                       : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the properties of the specified Target Group.

```
Edit-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -
HealthCheckIntervalSecond 60 -HealthCheckPath '/index.html' -HealthCheckPort 8080
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 60
HealthCheckPath            : /index.html
HealthCheckPort            : 8080
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 5
LoadBalancerArns           : {}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970
TargetGroupName            : test-tg
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 2
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyTargetGroupAttributes` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyTargetGroupAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the deregistration delay timeout

This example sets the deregistration delay timeout to the specified value for the specified target group.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 modify-target-group-attributes --target-group-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-
targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067 --
attributes Key=deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds,Value=600
```

Output:

```
{
  "Attributes": [
      {
          "Value": "false",
          "Key": "stickiness.enabled"
      },
      {
          "Value": "600",
          "Key": "deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds"
      },
      {
          "Value": "lb_cookie",
          "Key": "stickiness.type"
      },
      {
          "Value": "86400",
          "Key": "stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds"
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifies the deregistration_delay attribute of the specified Target Group.

```
Edit-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -Attribute @{Key =
 'deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds'; Value = 600}
```

Output:

```
Key                                 Value
---                                 -----
stickiness.enabled                  false
deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds  600
stickiness.type                     lb_cookie
stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds 86400
slow_start.duration_seconds         0
load_balancing.algorithm.type       round_robin
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the deregistration_delay attribute of the specified Target Group.

```
Edit-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -Attribute @{Key =
 'deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds'; Value = 600}
```

Output:

```
Key                                 Value
---                                 -----
stickiness.enabled                  false
deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds  600
stickiness.type                     lb_cookie
stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds 86400
slow_start.duration_seconds         0
load_balancing.algorithm.type       round_robin
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterTargets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterTargets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To register targets with a target group by instance ID

The following `register-targets` example registers the specified instances with a target group. The target group must have a target type of `instance`.

```
aws elbv2 register-targets \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067 \
    --targets Id=i-1234567890abcdef0 Id=i-0abcdef1234567890
```

Example 2: To register targets with a target group using port overrides

The following `register-targets` example registers the specified instance with a target group using multiple ports. This enables you to register containers on the same instance as targets in the target group.

```
aws elbv2 register-targets \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-internal-targets/3bb63f11dfb0faf9 \
    --targets Id=i-0598c7d356eba48d7,Port=80 Id=i-0598c7d356eba48d7,Port=766
```

Example 3: To register targets with a target group by IP address

The following `register-targets` example registers the specified IP addresses with a target group. The target group must have a target type of `ip`.

```
aws elbv2 register-targets \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-tcp-ip-targets/8518e899d173178f \
    --targets Id=10.0.1.15 Id=10.0.1.23
```

Example 4: To register a Lambda function as a target

The following `register-targets` example registers the specified IP addresses with a target group. The target group must have a target type of `lambda`. You must grant Elastic Load Balancing permission to invoke the Lambda function.

```
aws elbv2 register-targets \
    --target-group-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-tcp-ip-targets/8518e899d173178f \
    --targets Id=arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111' instance with the specified target group.

```
Register-ELB2Target -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -Target @{Port = 80; Id
 = 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111'}
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111' instance with the specified target group.

```
Register-ELB2Target -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -Target @{Port = 80; Id
 = 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111'}
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RemoveListenerCertificates` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveListenerCertificates`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a certificate from a secure listener

This example removes the specified certificate from the specified secure listener.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 remove-listener-certificates --listener-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:listener/
app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/f2f7dc8efc522ab2 --
certificates CertificateArn=arn:aws:acm:us-
west-2:123456789012:certificate/5cc54884-f4a3-4072-80be-05b9ba72f705
```

- For API details, see RemoveListenerCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes specified certificate from the specified Target group.

```
Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate -Certificate @{CertificateArn = 'arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97'} -
ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate
 (RemoveListenerCertificates)" on target "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see RemoveListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes specified certificate from the specified Target group.

```
Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate -Certificate @{CertificateArn = 'arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97'} -
ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate
 (RemoveListenerCertificates)" on target "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see RemoveListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use RemoveTags with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use RemoveTags.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove tags from a load balancer

The following remove-tags example removes the project and department tags from the specified load balancer.

```
aws elbv2 remove-tags \
    --resource-arns arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 \
    --tag-keys project department
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the tag for the specified key.

```
Remove-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -TagKey
 'productVersion'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Tag (RemoveTags)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the tag for the specified key.

```
Remove-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -TagKey
 'productVersion'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Tag (RemoveTags)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetIpAddressType` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetIpAddressType`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the address type of a load balancer

This example sets the address type of the specified load balancer to `dualstack`. The load balancer subnets must have associated IPv6 CIDR blocks.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 set-ip-address-type --load-balancer-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 --ip-address-type dualstack
```

Output:

```
{
    "IpAddressType": "dualstack"
}
```

- For API details, see SetIpAddressType in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes Load balancer IP address type from 'IPv4' to 'DualStack'.

```
Set-ELB2IpAddressType -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -IpAddressType
 dualstack
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
```

```
dualstack
```

- For API details, see SetIpAddressType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes Load balancer IP address type from 'IPv4' to 'DualStack'.

```
Set-ELB2IpAddressType -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -IpAddressType
 dualstack
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
dualstack
```

- For API details, see SetIpAddressType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetRulePriorities` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetRulePriorities`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the rule priority

This example sets the priority of the specified rule.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 set-rule-priorities --rule-
priorities RuleArn=arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener-rule/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2/1291d13826f405c3,Priority=5
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
  "Rules": [
      {
          "Priority": "5",
          "Conditions": [
              {
                  "Field": "path-pattern",
                  "Values": [
                      "/img/*"
                  ]
              }
          ],
          "RuleArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:listener-rule/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188/
f2f7dc8efc522ab2/1291d13826f405c3",
          "IsDefault": false,
          "Actions": [
              {
                  "TargetGroupArn": "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
west-2:123456789012:targetgroup/my-targets/73e2d6bc24d8a067",
                  "Type": "forward"
              }
          ]
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see SetRulePriorities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the priority of the specified listener rule.

```
Set-ELB2RulePriority -RulePriority -RulePriority @{Priority = 11; RuleArn =
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/a4eb199fa5046f80/dbf4c6dcef3ec6f8'}
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
```

```
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 11
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/a4eb199fa5046f80/dbf4c6dcef3ec6f8
```

- For API details, see SetRulePriorities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the priority of the specified listener rule.

```
Set-ELB2RulePriority -RulePriority -RulePriority @{Priority = 11; RuleArn =
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/a4eb199fa5046f80/dbf4c6dcef3ec6f8'}
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 11
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/a4eb199fa5046f80/dbf4c6dcef3ec6f8
```

- For API details, see SetRulePriorities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetSecurityGroups` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetSecurityGroups`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To associate a security group with a load balancer

This example associates the specified security group with the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 set-security-groups --load-balancer-
arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-
balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 --security-groups sg-5943793c
```

Output:

```
{
  "SecurityGroupIds": [
      "sg-5943793c"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see SetSecurityGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds security group 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd' to the specified Load balancer.

```
Set-ELB2SecurityGroup -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -SecurityGroup
 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd'
```

Output:

```
sg-07c3414abb8811cbd
```

- For API details, see SetSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds security group 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd' to the specified Load balancer.

```
Set-ELB2SecurityGroup -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -SecurityGroup
 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd'
```

Output:

```
sg-07c3414abb8811cbd
```

- For API details, see SetSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetSubnets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetSubnets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable Availability Zones for a load balancer

This example enables the Availability Zone for the specified subnet for the specified load balancer.

Command:

```
aws elbv2 set-subnets --load-balancer-arn arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-west-2:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/my-load-balancer/50dc6c495c0c9188 --subnets subnet-8360a9e7 subnet-b7d581c0
```

Output:

```
{
  "AvailabilityZones": [
      {
          "SubnetId": "subnet-8360a9e7",
          "ZoneName": "us-west-2a"
      },
      {
          "SubnetId": "subnet-b7d581c0",
          "ZoneName": "us-west-2b"
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see SetSubnets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example modifes the subnets of the specified Load balancer.

```
Set-ELB2Subnet -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Subnet
 'subnet-7d8a0a51','subnet-c37a67a6'
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerAddresses SubnetId        ZoneName
--------------------- --------        --------
{}                    subnet-7d8a0a51 us-east-1c
{}                    subnet-c37a67a6 us-east-1b
```

- For API details, see SetSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the subnets of the specified Load balancer.

```
Set-ELB2Subnet -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Subnet
 'subnet-7d8a0a51','subnet-c37a67a6'
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerAddresses SubnetId        ZoneName
--------------------- --------        --------
{}                    subnet-7d8a0a51 us-east-1c
{}                    subnet-c37a67a6 us-east-1b
```

- For API details, see SetSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
static async Task Main(string[] args)
{
    _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
        .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
        .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
```

```
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
AWS resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways
to make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide
book, movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each
contain a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across
several Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the
Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
```

```
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs
'server_startup_script.sh' when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the
`server.py` script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3,
_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName, zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGro
protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
_autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port,
 ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for
 your default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
 Console.\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port,
 ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
```

```
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service
fails, the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile
that contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
either a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo,
a deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not
for Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the
Auto Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load
balancer can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two
for the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by
an auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler
start a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a
successful recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the
load balancing rotation.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance
typically takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );
```

```
        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
 resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBal
            await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGr
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupNa
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
 _recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
 might incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;
```

```
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with
a specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to
the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
```

```
                                        "\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                        "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                    "}]" +
                                "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }
```

```
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await
_amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
```

```
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that
runs after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and
starts a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to
create and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);
```

```
            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await
_amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z =>
 z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability
 zones.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
```

```
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new
Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with
size {groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
```

```
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }
```

```
            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId}
does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the
subnets.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} was not found.");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await
_amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
```

```
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
   {
       try
       {
           var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
               new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
               {
                   Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                   {
                       new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                   },
               });
           return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
       {
           if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
           {
               _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
           }

           throw;
       }
       catch (Exception ex)
       {
           _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the
template.: {ex.Message}");
           throw;
       }
   }

   /// <summary>
   /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is replaced, the instance
   /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
   /// used to restart the Python web server.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
   /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate
with the specified instance.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association
for the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
           var retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
           {
               var instancesPaginator =
                   _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                       new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
               // Get the entire list using the paginator.
               await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
               {
                   instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                   if (instanceReady)
                   {
                       break;
                   }
               }
           }
           Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
           await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
           Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance
{instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance
{instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
```

```
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await
_amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for
{instanceId}. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
```

```
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string
groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the
calling computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP
address while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
```

```
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0),
or to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
```

```
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName,
 string targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();
```

```
    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
 loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</
param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer
 exists.</param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });

               var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

               loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
           }
           catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
           {
               loadBalancerReady = false;
           }
           Thread.Sleep(10000);
       }
       // Create the listener.
       await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
           new CreateListenerRequest()
```

```
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn =
 targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
```

```
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies, and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
```

```
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;
```

```
                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await
 File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =

 JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile

- CreateLaunchTemplate
- CreateListener
- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-
prof-bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException,
 InterruptedException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and
Manage a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your
account, we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user
input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to
create several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and
explore some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances
that each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
```

```
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when
an instance starts.
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses
to assume a role that grants
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);
```

```
        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer. The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets,
targetGroupArn, lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul =
loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
```

```
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(),
StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group
for your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add
it automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }
```

```
            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security
group are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the
load balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
```

```
        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                       Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                       While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
a static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are
still shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
```

```
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance
id value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId =
autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " +
profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on
for recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto
Scaling instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
```

```
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the
load balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
always returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance
is running and healthy.
```

```
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
```

```
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode =
response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load
balancer targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
target.target().id(),
                                    target.target().port(),
target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the
health check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
```

```
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value
 between 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }
```

```
    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance
is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
    public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
                .builder()
                .instanceId(instanceId)
                .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
        System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
    * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
    * When
    * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
    * server.
    */
   public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
           throws InterruptedException {
       // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
       software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
               .builder()
               .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure
'newInstanceProfileName' is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                             // name.
               .build();

       // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
       ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
               .builder()
               .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
               .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
               .build();

       try {
           getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
           // Handle the response as needed.
       } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
           // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
           System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
       }
       System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with
profile %s.", profileAssociationId,
               newInstanceProfileName);
       TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
       boolean instReady = false;
       int tries = 0;
```

```
        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress)
{
```

```
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);
```

```
            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();
```

```
getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();

            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse =
getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);
```

```
            for (SecurityGroup secGroup :
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " +
secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " +
ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to
be open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }
```

```
   /*
    * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
    * Scaling group.
    * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
    * instances
    * in the group.
    */
   public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
       try {
           AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                   .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                   .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
           System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
   public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {

       // Get availability zones.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
               .builder()
               .build();

       DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
       List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()
```

```
.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
               .collect(Collectors.toList());

       String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
       LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
               .launchTemplateName(templateName)
               .version("$Default")
               .build();

       String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
       CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
               .launchTemplate(specification)
               .availabilityZones(zones)
               .maxSize(groupSize)
               .minSize(groupSize)
               .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
               .build();

       try {
           getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
       return zones;
   }

   public String getDefaultVPC() {
       // Define the filter.
       Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
               .name("is-default")
               .values("true")
               .build();

       software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
               .builder()
               .filters(defaultFilter)
```

```
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response =
getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }

    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
```

```
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to
the policy.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
```

```
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM
 role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
```

```
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance
 profile " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
```

```
   public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String
targetGroupName) {
       DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
               .names(targetGroupName)
               .build();

       DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

       DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()

.targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
               .build();

       DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
       return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
   }

   // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
   public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
       DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
               .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
       return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
   }

   // Deletes a load balancer.
   public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
       try {
           // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
           DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                   .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
           ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
           DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                   .build();

           getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
```

```
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer
    // endpoint.
    public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws
IOException, InterruptedException {
        boolean success = false;
        int retries = 3;
        CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
        try {
            while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
                // Execute the request and get the response.
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
```

```
                System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
                if (statusCode == 200) {
                    success = true;
                } else {
                    retries--;
                    System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
                }
            }

        } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        System.out.println("Status.." + success);
        return success;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how
instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId,
String targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
```

```
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String
targetGroupARN, String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to
become available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");
```

```
            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest =
 CreateListenerRequest.builder()

 .loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
```

```
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " +
e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException
{
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
```

```
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                    .build())
                    .provisionedThroughput(
                            ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                    .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .build())
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
```

```
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws
 IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable =
 enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-
response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup

- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
```

```
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes]
 [-v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
```

```
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
```

```
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item']
[] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );
```

```
    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatedTable",
    MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
      new CreateKeyPairCommand({
        KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
      }),
    );

    writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstancePolicy",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      Policy: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
```

```
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
        PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
    state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
```

```
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
      MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      return client.send(
        new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
      MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
    ),
    ...initParamsSteps,
    new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
    new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
        new GetParameterCommand({
          Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        }),
      );
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      await ec2Client.send(
        new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
          LaunchTemplateData: {
            InstanceType: "t3.micro",
            ImageId: Parameter.Value,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
            UserData: readFileSync(
              join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
            ).toString("base64"),
            KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
          },
        }),
```

```
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
```

```
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
```

```
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
      MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
          Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
          Protocol: "HTTP",
          Port: 80,
          HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
          HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
          HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
          HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
          UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
          VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
        }),
      );
      const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
      state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
      state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
      state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
      MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingLoadBalancer",
      MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
        new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
```

```
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup}} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
```

```
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
```

```
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
```

```
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
```

```
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
```

```
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
```

```
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
```

```
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
      "${TABLE_NAME}",
      state.badTableName,
    ),
  ),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "staticResponseConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
    if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
          Value: "static",
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-
scaling').Instance }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
        new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
          Filters: [
            { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
        IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        ec2Client.send(
          new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
            AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
          }),
```

```
        ),
      );

      await ec2Client.send(
        new RebootInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
        }),
      );

      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
        const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
          new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
        );

        const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
          (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
        );

        if (!instance) {
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation}} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
```

```
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
```

```
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
```

```
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );

  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
```

```
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
```

```
    new ScenarioAction(
      "abort",
      (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
      try {
        const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
        await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
      } catch (e) {
        c.deleteTableError = e;
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
      if (state.deleteTableError) {
        console.error(state.deleteTableError);
        return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
          "${TABLE_NAME}",
          NAMES.tableName,
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
    }),
    new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
      try {
        const client = new EC2Client({});
        await client.send(
          new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
        );
        unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
      } catch (e) {
        state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
      if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
        console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
        return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
          "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
          NAMES.keyPairName,
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
```

```
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
```

```
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
```

```
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
```

```
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
```

```
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
```

```
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
```

```
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
```

```
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
```

```
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
 state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
```

```
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
```

```
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups

- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
```

```
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example,
such as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient
service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)
```

```
        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability
 Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
 balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port
 is open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
```

```
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access
from this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging
from your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success =
self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )
```

```
    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as
sending requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint.")
                endpoint =
self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
```

```
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check
to update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a
non-existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
instances."
        )
```

```
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace
it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance
replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation
service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
```

```
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
 return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
 Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
 created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up
 manually to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
```

```
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the
demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM
policies and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
```

```
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
 "destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
```

```
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
```

```
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
 definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/
{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies
 which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
 AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
 managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to
 attach to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
 PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role
 {role_name}.")
```

```
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is
assumed by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as
AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to
the instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
```

```
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
```

```
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance
{instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance
{instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the
profile is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new
profile. When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to
associate with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
```

```
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or
is not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
```

```
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
```

```
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling. The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts
a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a
permissions policy
```

```
                                    to create and attach to the instance
profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
```

```
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
```

```
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with
availability zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) ->
None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
to terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.
```

```
        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group
%s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
```

```
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
 to delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs.
 "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
 permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
 parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]
['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass


    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress
 from this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
 you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
 port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
 public
        access when you're done.
```

```
        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value
that indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to
either this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
```

```
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist.
Please check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}'
on port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
```

```
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones
{zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group
 specifies how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
 instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the
 sensitivity of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
```

```
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing
target group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for
new ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.",
target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the
AWS Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with
any load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
```

```
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn}
still exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts
* delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
```

```
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}'
already exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in
this account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase
in the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests
to the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener
to the
```

```
                                load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
```

```
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load
balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
```

```
        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer
{load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
```

```
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint,
retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not
found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS
region, and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary
 parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table
 has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
 such as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
 MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
```

```
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
"WriteCapacityUnits": 5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name,
data_file
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}:
{err}"
            )
```

```
    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
 self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters
 to drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency
 or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.
```

```
        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
recommendation
                            service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when
a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
                log.error(
```

```
                    "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False.
"
                    "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances

  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation

- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Code examples for MediaStore using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Elemental MediaStore with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **MediaStore User Guide** – More information about MediaStore.
- **MediaStore API Reference** – Details about all available MediaStore actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for MediaStore using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for MediaStore using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListContainers with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutObject with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for MediaStore using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Elemental MediaStore with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for MediaStore using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListContainers with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutObject with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for MediaStore using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual MediaStore actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Elemental MediaStore API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeContainer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListContainers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObject with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateContainer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateContainer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a container

The following `create-container` example creates a new, empty container.

```
aws mediastore create-container --container-name ExampleContainer
```

Output:

```
{
    "Container": {
        "AccessLoggingEnabled": false,
        "CreationTime": 1563557265,
        "Name": "ExampleContainer",
        "Status": "CREATING",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:mediastore:us-west-2:111122223333:container/
ExampleContainer"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Container in the *AWS Elemental MediaStore User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateContainer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateContainer {
    public static long sleepTime = 10;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <containerName>

                Where:
                   containerName - The name of the container to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createMediaContainer(mediaStoreClient, containerName);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }


    public static void createMediaContainer(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient,
 String containerName) {
        try {
            CreateContainerRequest containerRequest =
 CreateContainerRequest.builder()
                    .containerName(containerName)
```

```
                    .build();

            CreateContainerResponse containerResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.createContainer(containerRequest);
            String status = containerResponse.container().status().toString();
            while (!status.equalsIgnoreCase("Active")) {
                status = DescribeContainer.checkContainer(mediaStoreClient,
 containerName);
                System.out.println("Status - " + status);
                Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
            }

            System.out.println("The container ARN value is " +
 containerResponse.container().arn());
            System.out.println("Finished ");

        } catch (MediaStoreException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateContainer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteContainer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteContainer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a container

The following `delete-container` example deletes the specified container. You can delete a container only if it has no objects.

```
aws mediastore delete-container \
    --container-name=ExampleLiveDemo
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting a Container in the *AWS Elemental MediaStore User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteContainer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateContainer {
    public static long sleepTime = 10;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <containerName>

                Where:
                   containerName - The name of the container to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createMediaContainer(mediaStoreClient, containerName);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }


    public static void createMediaContainer(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient,
 String containerName) {
        try {
            CreateContainerRequest containerRequest =
 CreateContainerRequest.builder()
                    .containerName(containerName)
                    .build();

            CreateContainerResponse containerResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.createContainer(containerRequest);
            String status = containerResponse.container().status().toString();
            while (!status.equalsIgnoreCase("Active")) {
                status = DescribeContainer.checkContainer(mediaStoreClient,
 containerName);
                System.out.println("Status - " + status);
                Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
            }

            System.out.println("The container ARN value is " +
 containerResponse.container().arn());
            System.out.println("Finished ");

        } catch (MediaStoreException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteContainer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteObject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.MediaStoreDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.MediaStoreDataException;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws URISyntaxException {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:    <completePath> <containerName>

                Where:
                   completePath - The path (including the container) of the item
to delete.
                   containerName - The name of the container.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String completePath = args[0];
        String containerName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        URI uri = new URI(getEndpoint(containerName));

        MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData = MediaStoreDataClient.builder()
                .endpointOverride(uri)
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteMediaObject(mediaStoreData, completePath);
        mediaStoreData.close();
    }

    public static void deleteMediaObject(MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData,
String completePath) {
        try {
            DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest =
DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                    .path(completePath)
                    .build();

            mediaStoreData.deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);

        } catch (MediaStoreDataException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    private static String getEndpoint(String containerName) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerRequest containerRequest =
 DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                .containerName(containerName)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerResponse response =
 mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(containerRequest);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
        return response.container().endpoint();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeContainer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeContainer`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view the details of a container

The following `describe-container` example displays the details of the specified container.

```
aws mediastore describe-container \
    --container-name ExampleContainer
```

Output:

```
{
    "Container": {
        "CreationTime": 1563558086,
```

```
        "AccessLoggingEnabled": false,
        "ARN": "arn:aws:mediastore:us-west-2:111122223333:container/
ExampleContainer",
        "Status": "ACTIVE",
        "Name": "ExampleContainer",
        "Endpoint": "https://aaabbbcccdddee.data.mediastore.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Viewing the Details for a Container in the *AWS Elemental MediaStore User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeContainer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeContainer {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <containerName>

                Where:
                   containerName - The name of the container to describe.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Status is " + checkContainer(mediaStoreClient,
containerName));
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }

    public static String checkContainer(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient, String
containerName) {
        try {
            DescribeContainerRequest describeContainerRequest =
DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                    .containerName(containerName)
                    .build();

            DescribeContainerResponse containerResponse =
mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(describeContainerRequest);
            System.out.println("The container name is " +
containerResponse.container().name());
            System.out.println("The container ARN is " +
containerResponse.container().arn());
            return containerResponse.container().status().toString();

        } catch (MediaStoreException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeContainer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObject`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To download an object

The following `get-object` example download an object to the specified endpoint.

```
aws mediastore-data get-object \
    --endpoint https://aaabbbcccdddee.data.mediastore.us-west-2.amazonaws.com \
    --path=/folder_name/README.md README.md
```

Output:

```
{
    "ContentLength": "2307346",
    "ContentType": "image/jpeg",
    "LastModified": "Fri, 19 Jul 2019 21:32:20 GMT",
    "ETag": "2aa333bbcc8d8d22d777e999c88d4aa9eeeeee4dd89ff7f555555555555da6d3",
    "StatusCode": 200
}
```

To download part of an object

The following `get-object` example downloads a portion an object to the specified endpoint.

```
aws mediastore-data get-object \
    --endpoint https://aaabbbcccdddee.data.mediastore.us-west-2.amazonaws.com \
```

```
    --path /folder_name/README.md \
    --range="bytes=0-100" README2.md
```

Output:

```
{
    "StatusCode": 206,
    "ContentRange": "bytes 0-100/2307346",
    "ContentLength": "101",
    "LastModified": "Fri, 19 Jul 2019 21:32:20 GMT",
    "ContentType": "image/jpeg",
    "ETag": "2aa333bbcc8d8d22d777e999c88d4aa9eeeeee4dd89ff7f555555555555da6d3"
}
```

For more information, see Downloading an Object in the *AWS Elemental MediaStore User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseInputStream;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.MediaStoreDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.GetObjectResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.MediaStoreDataException;
import java.io.File;
```

```
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws URISyntaxException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <completePath> <containerName> <savePath>

                Where:
                   completePath - The path of the object in the container (for
 example, Videos5/sampleVideo.mp4).
                   containerName - The name of the container.
                   savePath - The path on the local drive where the file is
 saved, including the file name (for example, C:/AWS/myvid.mp4).
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String completePath = args[0];
        String containerName = args[1];
        String savePath = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        URI uri = new URI(getEndpoint(containerName));
        MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData = MediaStoreDataClient.builder()
                .endpointOverride(uri)
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        getMediaObject(mediaStoreData, completePath, savePath);
        mediaStoreData.close();
    }

    public static void getMediaObject(MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData, String
completePath, String savePath) {

        try {
            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .path(completePath)
                    .build();

            // Write out the data to a file.
            ResponseInputStream<GetObjectResponse> data =
mediaStoreData.getObject(objectRequest);
            byte[] buffer = new byte[data.available()];
            data.read(buffer);

            File targetFile = new File(savePath);
            OutputStream outStream = new FileOutputStream(targetFile);
            outStream.write(buffer);
            System.out.println("The data was written to " + savePath);

        } catch (MediaStoreDataException | IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    private static String getEndpoint(String containerName) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerRequest containerRequest =
DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                .containerName(containerName)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerResponse response =
mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(containerRequest);
        return response.container().endpoint();
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListContainers` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListContainers`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view a list of containers

The following `list-containers` example displays a list of all containers that are associated with your account.

```
aws mediastore list-containers
```

Output:

```
{
    "Containers": [
        {
            "CreationTime": 1505317931,
            "Endpoint": "https://aaabbbcccdddee.data.mediastore.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "Status": "ACTIVE",
            "ARN": "arn:aws:mediastore:us-west-2:111122223333:container/
ExampleLiveDemo",
            "AccessLoggingEnabled": false,
            "Name": "ExampleLiveDemo"
        },
        {
            "CreationTime": 1506528818,
            "Endpoint": "https://fffggghhhiiijj.data.mediastore.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "Status": "ACTIVE",
            "ARN": "arn:aws:mediastore:us-west-2:111122223333:container/
ExampleContainer",
```

```
            "AccessLoggingEnabled": false,
            "Name": "ExampleContainer"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing a List of Containers in the *AWS Elemental MediaStore User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListContainers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.Container;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.ListContainersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListContainers {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllContainers(mediaStoreClient);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllContainers(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient) {
        try {
            ListContainersResponse containersResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.listContainers();
            List<Container> containers = containersResponse.containers();
            for (Container container : containers) {
                System.out.println("Container name is " + container.name());
            }

        } catch (MediaStoreException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListContainers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `PutObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutObject`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To upload an object

The following `put-object` example uploads an object to the specified container. You can specify a folder path where the object will be saved within the container. If the folder already exists, AWS Elemental MediaStore stores the object in the folder. If the folder doesn't exist, the service creates it, and then stores the object in the folder.

```
aws mediastore-data put-object \
    --endpoint https://aaabbbcccdddee.data.mediastore.us-west-2.amazonaws.com \
    --body README.md \
    --path /folder_name/README.md \
    --cache-control "max-age=6, public" \
    --content-type binary/octet-stream
```

Output:

```
{
    "ContentSHA256":
 "74b5fdb517f423ed750ef214c44adfe2be36e37d861eafe9c842cbe1bf387a9d",
    "StorageClass": "TEMPORAL",
    "ETag": "af3e4731af032167a106015d1f2fe934e68b32ed1aa297a9e325f5c64979277b"
}
```

For more information, see Uploading an Object in the *AWS Elemental MediaStore User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.MediaStoreDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.PutObjectRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.MediaStoreDataException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
```

```
import java.io.File;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PutObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws URISyntaxException {
        final String USAGE = """

                To run this example, supply the name of a container, a file
 location to use, and path in the container\s

                Ex: <containerName> <filePath> <completePath>
                """;

        if (args.length < 3) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        String filePath = args[1];
        String completePath = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        URI uri = new URI(getEndpoint(containerName));
        MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData = MediaStoreDataClient.builder()
                .endpointOverride(uri)
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putMediaObject(mediaStoreData, filePath, completePath);
        mediaStoreData.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void putMediaObject(MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData, String
 filePath, String completePath) {
        try {
            File myFile = new File(filePath);
            RequestBody requestBody = RequestBody.fromFile(myFile);

            PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .path(completePath)
                    .contentType("video/mp4")
                    .build();

            PutObjectResponse response = mediaStoreData.putObject(objectRequest,
 requestBody);
            System.out.println("The saved object is " +
 response.storageClass().toString());

        } catch (MediaStoreDataException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getEndpoint(String containerName) {

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerRequest containerRequest =
 DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                .containerName(containerName)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerResponse response =
 mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(containerRequest);
        return response.container().endpoint();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon EMR with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon EMR Management Guide** – More information about Amazon EMR.
- **Amazon EMR API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon EMR actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddJobFlowSteps with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeStep with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListSteps with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RunJobFlow with an AWS SDK
    - Use TerminateJobFlows with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs
  - Create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster and run a step using an AWS SDK
  - Run a shell script to install libraries on Amazon EMR instances using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon EMR with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddJobFlowSteps with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeStep with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListSteps with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use RunJobFlow with an AWS SDK
  - Use TerminateJobFlows with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon EMR actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon EMR API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon EMR API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddJobFlowSteps with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeStep with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSteps with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RunJobFlow with an AWS SDK
- Use TerminateJobFlows with an AWS SDK

Use `AddJobFlowSteps` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `AddJobFlowSteps`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add a Spark step, which is run by the cluster as soon as it is added.

```
def add_step(cluster_id, name, script_uri, script_args, emr_client):
    """
    Adds a job step to the specified cluster. This example adds a Spark
    step, which is run by the cluster as soon as it is added.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param name: The name of the step.
    :param script_uri: The URI where the Python script is stored.
    :param script_args: Arguments to pass to the Python script.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The ID of the newly added step.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.add_job_flow_steps(
            JobFlowId=cluster_id,
            Steps=[
                {
                    "Name": name,
                    "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
                    "HadoopJarStep": {
                        "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
                        "Args": [
                            "spark-submit",
                            "--deploy-mode",
                            "cluster",
                            script_uri,
                            *script_args,
                        ],
                    },
                }
            ],
```

```
        )
        step_id = response["StepIds"][0]
        logger.info("Started step with ID %s", step_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't start step %s with URI %s.", name, script_uri)
        raise
    else:
        return step_id
```

Run an Amazon EMR File System (EMRFS) command as a job step on a cluster. This can be used to automate EMRFS commands on a cluster instead of running commands manually through an SSH connection.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def add_emrfs_step(command, bucket_url, cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Add an EMRFS command as a job flow step to an existing cluster.

    :param command: The EMRFS command to run.
    :param bucket_url: The URL of a bucket that contains tracking metadata.
    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster to update.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 Amazon EMR client object.
    :return: The ID of the added job flow step. Status can be tracked by calling
             the emr_client.describe_step() function.
    """
    job_flow_step = {
        "Name": "Example EMRFS Command Step",
        "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
        "HadoopJarStep": {
            "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
            "Args": ["/usr/bin/emrfs", command, bucket_url],
        },
    }

    try:
        response = emr_client.add_job_flow_steps(
            JobFlowId=cluster_id, Steps=[job_flow_step]
```

```
        )
        step_id = response["StepIds"][0]
        print(f"Added step {step_id} to cluster {cluster_id}.")
    except ClientError:
        print(f"Couldn't add a step to cluster {cluster_id}.")
        raise
    else:
        return step_id


def usage_demo():
    emr_client = boto3.client("emr")
    # Assumes the first waiting cluster has EMRFS enabled and has created
 metadata
    # with the default name of 'EmrFSMetadata'.
    cluster = emr_client.list_clusters(ClusterStates=["WAITING"])["Clusters"][0]
    add_emrfs_step(
        "sync", "s3://elasticmapreduce/samples/cloudfront", cluster["Id"],
 emr_client
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see AddJobFlowSteps in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Command:

```
aws emr describe-cluster --cluster-id j-XXXXXXXX
```

Output:

```
For release-label based uniform instance groups cluster:
```

```
        {
            "Cluster": {
                "Status": {
                    "Timeline": {
                        "ReadyDateTime": 1436475075.199,
                        "CreationDateTime": 1436474656.563,
                    },
                    "State": "WAITING",
                    "StateChangeReason": {
                        "Message": "Waiting for steps to run"
                    }
                },
                "Ec2InstanceAttributes": {
                    "ServiceAccessSecurityGroup": "sg-xxxxxxxx",
                    "EmrManagedMasterSecurityGroup": "sg-xxxxxxxx",
                    "IamInstanceProfile": "EMR_EC2_DefaultRole",
                    "Ec2KeyName": "myKey",
                    "Ec2AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1c",
                    "EmrManagedSlaveSecurityGroup": "sg-yyyyyyyyy"
                },
                "Name": "My Cluster",
                "ServiceRole": "EMR_DefaultRole",
                "Tags": [],
                "TerminationProtected": true,
                "UnhealthyNodeReplacement": true,
                "ReleaseLabel": "emr-4.0.0",
                "NormalizedInstanceHours": 96,
                "InstanceGroups": [
                    {
                        "RequestedInstanceCount": 2,
                        "Status": {
                            "Timeline": {
                                "ReadyDateTime": 1436475074.245,
                                "CreationDateTime": 1436474656.564,
                                "EndDateTime": 1436638158.387
                            },
                            "State": "RUNNING",
                            "StateChangeReason": {
                                "Message": "",
                            }
                        },
                        "Name": "CORE",
                        "InstanceGroupType": "CORE",
```

```
                        "Id": "ig-YYYYYYY",
                        "Configurations": [],
                        "InstanceType": "m3.large",
                        "Market": "ON_DEMAND",
                        "RunningInstanceCount": 2
                    },
                    {
                        "RequestedInstanceCount": 1,
                        "Status": {
                            "Timeline": {
                                "ReadyDateTime": 1436475074.245,
                                "CreationDateTime": 1436474656.564,
                                "EndDateTime": 1436638158.387
                            },
                            "State": "RUNNING",
                            "StateChangeReason": {
                                "Message": "",
                            }
                        },
                        "Name": "MASTER",
                        "InstanceGroupType": "MASTER",
                        "Id": "ig-XXXXXXXXX",
                        "Configurations": [],
                        "InstanceType": "m3.large",
                        "Market": "ON_DEMAND",
                        "RunningInstanceCount": 1
                    }
                ],
                "Applications": [
                    {
                        "Name": "Hadoop"
                    }
                ],
                "VisibleToAllUsers": true,
                "BootstrapActions": [],
                "MasterPublicDnsName":
"ec2-54-147-144-78.compute-1.amazonaws.com",
                "AutoTerminate": false,
                "Id": "j-XXXXXXXX",
                "Configurations": [
                    {
                        "Properties": {
                            "fs.s3.consistent.retryPeriodSeconds": "20",
                            "fs.s3.enableServerSideEncryption": "true",
```

```
                            "fs.s3.consistent": "false",
                            "fs.s3.consistent.retryCount": "2"
                        },
                        "Classification": "emrfs-site"
                    }
                ]
            }
        }


For release-label based instance fleet cluster:
{
    "Cluster": {
        "Status": {
            "Timeline": {
                "ReadyDateTime": 1487897289.705,
                "CreationDateTime": 1487896933.942
            },
            "State": "WAITING",
            "StateChangeReason": {
                "Message": "Waiting for steps to run"
            }
        },
        "Ec2InstanceAttributes": {
            "EmrManagedMasterSecurityGroup": "sg-xxxxx",
            "RequestedEc2AvailabilityZones": [],
            "RequestedEc2SubnetIds": [],
            "IamInstanceProfile": "EMR_EC2_DefaultRole",
            "Ec2AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
            "EmrManagedSlaveSecurityGroup": "sg-xxxxx"
        },
        "Name": "My Cluster",
        "ServiceRole": "EMR_DefaultRole",
        "Tags": [],
        "TerminationProtected": false,
        "UnhealthyNodeReplacement": false,
        "ReleaseLabel": "emr-5.2.0",
        "NormalizedInstanceHours": 472,
        "InstanceCollectionType": "INSTANCE_FLEET",
        "InstanceFleets": [
            {
                "Status": {
                    "Timeline": {
                        "ReadyDateTime": 1487897212.74,
```

```
                        "CreationDateTime": 1487896933.948
                    },
                    "State": "RUNNING",
                    "StateChangeReason": {
                        "Message": ""
                    }
                },
                "ProvisionedSpotCapacity": 1,
                "Name": "MASTER",
                "InstanceFleetType": "MASTER",
                "LaunchSpecifications": {
                    "SpotSpecification": {
                        "TimeoutDurationMinutes": 60,
                        "TimeoutAction": "TERMINATE_CLUSTER"
                    }
                },
                "TargetSpotCapacity": 1,
                "ProvisionedOnDemandCapacity": 0,
                "InstanceTypeSpecifications": [
                    {
                        "BidPrice": "0.5",
                        "InstanceType": "m3.xlarge",
                        "WeightedCapacity": 1
                    }
                ],
                "Id": "if-xxxxxxx",
                "TargetOnDemandCapacity": 0
            }
        ],
        "Applications": [
            {
                "Version": "2.7.3",
                "Name": "Hadoop"
            }
        ],
        "ScaleDownBehavior": "TERMINATE_AT_INSTANCE_HOUR",
        "VisibleToAllUsers": true,
        "BootstrapActions": [],
        "MasterPublicDnsName": "ec2-xxx-xx-xxx-xx.compute-1.amazonaws.com",
        "AutoTerminate": false,
        "Id": "j-xxxxx",
        "Configurations": []
    }
}
```

```
For ami based uniform instance group cluster:

    {
        "Cluster": {
            "Status": {
                "Timeline": {
                    "ReadyDateTime": 1399400564.432,
                    "CreationDateTime": 1399400268.62
                },
                "State": "WAITING",
                "StateChangeReason": {
                    "Message": "Waiting for steps to run"
                }
            },
            "Ec2InstanceAttributes": {
                "IamInstanceProfile": "EMR_EC2_DefaultRole",
                "Ec2AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1c"
            },
            "Name": "My Cluster",
            "Tags": [],
            "TerminationProtected": true,
            "UnhealthyNodeReplacement": true,
            "RunningAmiVersion": "2.5.4",
            "InstanceGroups": [
                {
                    "RequestedInstanceCount": 1,
                    "Status": {
                        "Timeline": {
                            "ReadyDateTime": 1399400558.848,
                            "CreationDateTime": 1399400268.621
                        },
                        "State": "RUNNING",
                        "StateChangeReason": {
                            "Message": ""
                        }
                    },
                    "Name": "Master instance group",
                    "InstanceGroupType": "MASTER",
                    "InstanceType": "m1.small",
                    "Id": "ig-ABCD",
                    "Market": "ON_DEMAND",
                    "RunningInstanceCount": 1
                },
```

```
                {
                    "RequestedInstanceCount": 2,
                    "Status": {
                        "Timeline": {
                            "ReadyDateTime": 1399400564.439,
                            "CreationDateTime": 1399400268.621
                        },
                        "State": "RUNNING",
                        "StateChangeReason": {
                            "Message": ""
                        }
                    },
                    "Name": "Core instance group",
                    "InstanceGroupType": "CORE",
                    "InstanceType": "m1.small",
                    "Id": "ig-DEF",
                    "Market": "ON_DEMAND",
                    "RunningInstanceCount": 2
                }
            ],
            "Applications": [
                {
                    "Version": "1.0.3",
                    "Name": "hadoop"
                }
            ],
            "BootstrapActions": [],
            "VisibleToAllUsers": false,
            "RequestedAmiVersion": "2.4.2",
            "LogUri": "s3://myLogUri/",
            "AutoTerminate": false,
            "Id": "j-XXXXXXXX"
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_cluster(cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Gets detailed information about a cluster.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster to describe.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The retrieved cluster information.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.describe_cluster(ClusterId=cluster_id)
        cluster = response["Cluster"]
        logger.info("Got data for cluster %s.", cluster["Name"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get data for cluster %s.", cluster_id)
        raise
    else:
        return cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeStep` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStep`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command describes a step with the step ID `s-3LZC0QUT43AM` in a cluster with the cluster ID `j-3SD91U2E1L2QX`:

```
aws emr describe-step --cluster-id j-3SD91U2E1L2QX --step-id s-3LZC0QUT43AM
```

Output:

```
{
    "Step": {
        "Status": {
            "Timeline": {
                "EndDateTime": 1433200470.481,
                "CreationDateTime": 1433199926.597,
                "StartDateTime": 1433200404.959
            },
            "State": "COMPLETED",
            "StateChangeReason": {}
        },
        "Config": {
            "Args": [
                "s3://us-west-2.elasticmapreduce/libs/hive/hive-script",
                "--base-path",
                "s3://us-west-2.elasticmapreduce/libs/hive/",
                "--install-hive",
                "--hive-versions",
                "0.13.1"
            ],
            "Jar": "s3://us-west-2.elasticmapreduce/libs/script-runner/script-
runner.jar",
            "Properties": {}
        },
        "Id": "s-3LZC0QUT43AM",
        "ActionOnFailure": "TERMINATE_CLUSTER",
        "Name": "Setup hive"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStep in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_step(cluster_id, step_id, emr_client):
    """
    Gets detailed information about the specified step, including the current
 state of
    the step.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param step_id: The ID of the step.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The retrieved information about the specified step.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.describe_step(ClusterId=cluster_id, StepId=step_id)
        step = response["Step"]
        logger.info("Got data for step %s.", step_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get data for step %s.", step_id)
        raise
    else:
        return step
```

- For API details, see DescribeStep in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListSteps` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListSteps`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command lists all of the steps in a cluster with the cluster ID `j-3SD91U2E1L2QX`:

```
aws emr list-steps --cluster-id j-3SD91U2E1L2QX
```

- For API details, see ListSteps in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_steps(cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Gets a list of steps for the specified cluster. In this example, all steps
 are
    returned, including completed and failed steps.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The list of steps for the specified cluster.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.list_steps(ClusterId=cluster_id)
        steps = response["Steps"]
        logger.info("Got %s steps for cluster %s.", len(steps), cluster_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get steps for cluster %s.", cluster_id)
        raise
    else:
        return steps
```

- For API details, see ListSteps in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RunJobFlow` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `RunJobFlow`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def run_job_flow(
    name,
    log_uri,
    keep_alive,
    applications,
    job_flow_role,
    service_role,
    security_groups,
    steps,
    emr_client,
):
    """
    Runs a job flow with the specified steps. A job flow creates a cluster of
    instances and adds steps to be run on the cluster. Steps added to the cluster
    are run as soon as the cluster is ready.

    This example uses the 'emr-5.30.1' release. A list of recent releases can be
    found here:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/emr/latest/ReleaseGuide/emr-release-
components.html.

    :param name: The name of the cluster.
```

```
    :param log_uri: The URI where logs are stored. This can be an Amazon S3
bucket URL,
                    such as 's3://my-log-bucket'.
    :param keep_alive: When True, the cluster is put into a Waiting state after
all
                       steps are run. When False, the cluster terminates itself
when
                       the step queue is empty.
    :param applications: The applications to install on each instance in the
cluster,
                         such as Hive or Spark.
    :param job_flow_role: The IAM role assumed by the cluster.
    :param service_role: The IAM role assumed by the service.
    :param security_groups: The security groups to assign to the cluster
instances.
                            Amazon EMR adds all needed rules to these groups, so
                            they can be empty if you require only the default
rules.
    :param steps: The job flow steps to add to the cluster. These are run in
order
                  when the cluster is ready.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The ID of the newly created cluster.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.run_job_flow(
            Name=name,
            LogUri=log_uri,
            ReleaseLabel="emr-5.30.1",
            Instances={
                "MasterInstanceType": "m5.xlarge",
                "SlaveInstanceType": "m5.xlarge",
                "InstanceCount": 3,
                "KeepJobFlowAliveWhenNoSteps": keep_alive,
                "EmrManagedMasterSecurityGroup": security_groups["manager"].id,
                "EmrManagedSlaveSecurityGroup": security_groups["worker"].id,
            },
            Steps=[
                {
                    "Name": step["name"],
                    "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
                    "HadoopJarStep": {
                        "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
                        "Args": [
```

```
                            "spark-submit",
                            "--deploy-mode",
                            "cluster",
                            step["script_uri"],
                            *step["script_args"],
                        ],
                    },
                }
                for step in steps
            ],
            Applications=[{"Name": app} for app in applications],
            JobFlowRole=job_flow_role.name,
            ServiceRole=service_role.name,
            EbsRootVolumeSize=10,
            VisibleToAllUsers=True,
        )
        cluster_id = response["JobFlowId"]
        logger.info("Created cluster %s.", cluster_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create cluster.")
        raise
    else:
        return cluster_id
```

- For API details, see RunJobFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `TerminateJobFlows` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateJobFlows`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def terminate_cluster(cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Terminates a cluster. This terminates all instances in the cluster and cannot
    be undone. Any data not saved elsewhere, such as in an Amazon S3 bucket, is
 lost.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster to terminate.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    """
    try:
        emr_client.terminate_job_flows(JobFlowIds=[cluster_id])
        logger.info("Terminated cluster %s.", cluster_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't terminate cluster %s.", cluster_id)
        raise
```

- For API details, see TerminateJobFlows in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon EMR using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon EMR with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon EMR or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster and run a step using an AWS SDK
- Run a shell script to install libraries on Amazon EMR instances using an AWS SDK

Create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster and run a step using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster that runs a step and automatically terminates after the step completes.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster that estimates the value of pi using Apache Spark to parallelize a large number of calculations. The job writes output to Amazon EMR logs and to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The cluster terminates itself after completing the job.

- Create an Amazon S3 bucket and upload a job script.
- Create AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) roles.
- Create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security groups.
- Create a short-lived cluster and run a single job step.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon EMR

Run a shell script to install libraries on Amazon EMR instances using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use AWS Systems Manager to run a shell script on Amazon EMR instances that installs additional libraries. This way, you can automate instance management instead of running commands manually through an SSH connection.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import argparse
import time
import boto3
```

```
def install_libraries_on_core_nodes(cluster_id, script_path, emr_client,
 ssm_client):
    """
    Copies and runs a shell script on the core nodes in the cluster.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param script_path: The path to the script, typically an Amazon S3 object
 URL.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 Amazon EMR client.
    :param ssm_client: The Boto3 AWS Systems Manager client.
    """
    core_nodes = emr_client.list_instances(
        ClusterId=cluster_id, InstanceGroupTypes=["CORE"]
    )["Instances"]
    core_instance_ids = [node["Ec2InstanceId"] for node in core_nodes]
    print(f"Found core instances: {core_instance_ids}.")

    commands = [
        # Copy the shell script from Amazon S3 to each node instance.
        f"aws s3 cp {script_path} /home/hadoop",
        # Run the shell script to install libraries on each node instance.
        "bash /home/hadoop/install_libraries.sh",
    ]
    for command in commands:
        print(f"Sending '{command}' to core instances...")
        command_id = ssm_client.send_command(
            InstanceIds=core_instance_ids,
            DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
            Parameters={"commands": [command]},
            TimeoutSeconds=3600,
        )["Command"]["CommandId"]
        while True:
            # Verify the previous step succeeded before running the next step.
            cmd_result = ssm_client.list_commands(CommandId=command_id)
["Commands"][0]
            if cmd_result["StatusDetails"] == "Success":
                print(f"Command succeeded.")
                break
            elif cmd_result["StatusDetails"] in ["Pending", "InProgress"]:
                print(f"Command status is {cmd_result['StatusDetails']},
 waiting...")
                time.sleep(10)
            else:
```

```
                print(f"Command status is {cmd_result['StatusDetails']},
 quitting.")
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Command {command} failed to run. "
                    f"Details: {cmd_result['StatusDetails']}"
                )


def main():
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument("cluster_id", help="The ID of the cluster.")
    parser.add_argument("script_path", help="The path to the script in Amazon
 S3.")
    args = parser.parse_args()

    emr_client = boto3.client("emr")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")

    install_libraries_on_core_nodes(
        args.cluster_id, args.script_path, emr_client, ssm_client
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Entity Resolution with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Entity Resolution User Guide** – More information about AWS Entity Resolution.

- **AWS Entity Resolution API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Entity Resolution actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS Entity Resolution

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Entity Resolution.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloEntityResoultion {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloEntityResoultion.class);

    private static EntityResolutionAsyncClient entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listMatchingWorkflows();
    }
```

```
    public static EntityResolutionAsyncClient getResolutionAsyncClient() {
        if (entityResolutionAsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
call timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            entityResolutionAsyncClient = EntityResolutionAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Lists all matching workflows using an asynchronous paginator.
     * <p>
     * This method requests a paginated list of matching workflows from the
     * AWS Entity Resolution service and logs the names of the retrieved
workflows.
```

```
     * It uses an asynchronous approach with a paginator and waits for the
 operation
     * to complete using {@code CompletableFuture#join()}.
     * </p>
     */
    public static void listMatchingWorkflows() {
        ListMatchingWorkflowsRequest request =
 ListMatchingWorkflowsRequest.builder().build();

        ListMatchingWorkflowsPublisher paginator =
            getResolutionAsyncClient().listMatchingWorkflowsPaginator(request);

        // Iterate through the paginated results asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.workflowSummaries().forEach(workflow ->
                logger.info("Matching Workflow Name: " + workflow.workflowName())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMatchingWorkflows in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  EntityResolutionClient,
  ListMatchingWorkflowsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "eu-west-1";
  const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new ListMatchingWorkflowsCommand({});
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    const workflowSummaries = response.workflowSummaries;
    for (const workflowSummary of workflowSummaries) {
      console.log(`Attribute name: ${workflowSummaries[0].workflowName} `);
    }
    if (workflowSummaries.length === 0) {
      console.log("No matching workflows found.");
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `An error occurred in listing the workflow summaries: ${error.message} \n
 Exiting program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListMatchingWorkflows in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS Entity Resolution
  - Learn the basics of AWS Entity Resolution with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateMatchingWorkflow with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteMatchingWorkflow with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetMatchingJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK

- Use ListSchemaMappings with an AWS SDK
- Use StartMatchingJob with an AWS SDK
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Entity Resolution with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS Entity Resolution
- Learn the basics of AWS Entity Resolution with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateMatchingWorkflow with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteMatchingWorkflow with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetMatchingJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListSchemaMappings with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartMatchingJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK

Hello AWS Entity Resolution

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Entity Resolution.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloEntityResoultion {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloEntityResoultion.class);

    private static EntityResolutionAsyncClient entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listMatchingWorkflows();
    }

    public static EntityResolutionAsyncClient getResolutionAsyncClient() {
        if (entityResolutionAsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
 communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
 responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
```

```
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
 call timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
 individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            entityResolutionAsyncClient = EntityResolutionAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Lists all matching workflows using an asynchronous paginator.
     * <p>
     * This method requests a paginated list of matching workflows from the
     * AWS Entity Resolution service and logs the names of the retrieved
 workflows.
     * It uses an asynchronous approach with a paginator and waits for the
 operation
     * to complete using {@code CompletableFuture#join()}.
     * </p>
     */
    public static void listMatchingWorkflows() {
        ListMatchingWorkflowsRequest request =
 ListMatchingWorkflowsRequest.builder().build();

        ListMatchingWorkflowsPublisher paginator =
            getResolutionAsyncClient().listMatchingWorkflowsPaginator(request);

        // Iterate through the paginated results asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.workflowSummaries().forEach(workflow ->
                logger.info("Matching Workflow Name: " + workflow.workflowName())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMatchingWorkflows in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  EntityResolutionClient,
  ListMatchingWorkflowsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";

export const main = async () => {
  const region = "eu-west-1";
  const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new ListMatchingWorkflowsCommand({});
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    const workflowSummaries = response.workflowSummaries;
    for (const workflowSummary of workflowSummaries) {
      console.log(`Attribute name: ${workflowSummaries[0].workflowName} `);
    }
    if (workflowSummaries.length === 0) {
      console.log("No matching workflows found.");
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `An error occurred in listing the workflow summaries: ${error.message} \n
 Exiting program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListMatchingWorkflows in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS Entity Resolution with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create Schema Mapping.
- Create an AWS Entity Resolution workflow.
- Start the matching job for the workflow.
- Get details for the matching job.
- Get Schema Mapping.
- List all Schema Mappings.
- Tag the Schema Mapping resource.
- Delete the AWS Entity Resolution Assets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Entity Resolution features.

```
public class EntityResScenario {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EntityResScenario.class);
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static final String STACK_NAME = "EntityResolutionCdkStack";
    private static final String ENTITY_RESOLUTION_ROLE_ARN_KEY =
 "EntityResolutionRoleArn";
    private static final String GLUE_DATA_BUCKET_NAME_KEY = "GlueDataBucketName";
```

```
   private static final String JSON_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY = "JsonErGlueTableArn";
   private static final String CSV_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY = "CsvErGlueTableArn";
   private static String glueBucketName;
   private static String workflowName = "workflow-" + UUID.randomUUID();

   private static String jsonSchemaMappingName = "jsonschema-" +
UUID.randomUUID();
   private static String jsonSchemaMappingArn = null;
   private static String csvSchemaMappingName = "csv-" + UUID.randomUUID();
   private static String roleARN;
   private static String csvGlueTableArn;
   private static String jsonGlueTableArn;
   private static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

   private static EntityResActions actions = new EntityResActions();

   public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {

       logger.info("Welcome to the AWS Entity Resolution Scenario.");
       logger.info("""
           AWS Entity Resolution is a fully-managed machine learning service
provided by
           Amazon Web Services (AWS) that helps organizations extract, link,
and
           organize information from multiple data sources. It leverages
natural
           language processing and deep learning models to identify and resolve
           entities, such as people, places, organizations, and products,
           across structured and unstructured data.

           With Entity Resolution, customers can build robust data integration
           pipelines to combine and reconcile data from multiple systems,
databases,
           and documents. The service can handle ambiguous, incomplete, or
conflicting
           information, and provide a unified view of entities and their
relationships.
           This can be particularly valuable in applications such as customer
360,
           fraud detection, supply chain management, and knowledge management,
where
           accurate entity identification is crucial.
```

```
            The `EntityResolutionAsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java
2.x
            provides a set of methods to programmatically interact with the AWS
Entity
            Resolution service. This allows developers to automate the entity
extraction,
            linking, and deduplication process as part of their data processing
workflows.
            With Entity Resolution, organizations can unlock the value of their
data,
            improve decision-making, and enhance customer experiences by having a
reliable,
            comprehensive view of their key entities.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            To prepare the AWS resources needed for this scenario application,
the next step uploads
            a CloudFormation template whose resulting stack creates the following
resources:
            - An AWS Glue Data Catalog table
            - An AWS IAM role
            - An AWS S3 bucket
            - An AWS Entity Resolution Schema

            It can take a couple minutes for the Stack to finish creating the
resources.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info("Generating resources...");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
        Map<String, String> outputsMap =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputsAsync(STACK_NAME).join();
        roleARN = outputsMap.get(ENTITY_RESOLUTION_ROLE_ARN_KEY);
        glueBucketName = outputsMap.get(GLUE_DATA_BUCKET_NAME_KEY);
        csvGlueTableArn = outputsMap.get(CSV_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY);
        jsonGlueTableArn = outputsMap.get(JSON_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            runScenario();

        } catch (Exception ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An exception happened: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : ce.getMessage()));
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario() throws InterruptedException {
        /*
         This JSON is a valid input for the AWS Entity Resolution service.
         The JSON represents an array of three objects, each containing an "id",
"name", and "email"
         property. This format aligns with the expected input structure for the
         Entity Resolution service.
         */
        String json = """
            {"id":"1","name":"Jane Doe","email":"jane.doe@example.com"}
            {"id":"2","name":"John Doe","email":"john.doe@example.com"}
            {"id":"3","name":"Jorge Souza","email":"jorge_souza@example.com"}
            """;
        logger.info("Upload the following JSON objects to the {} S3 bucket.",
glueBucketName);
        logger.info(json);
        String csv = """
            id,name,email,phone
            1,Jane B.,Doe,jane.doe@example.com,555-876-9846
            2,John Doe Jr.,john.doe@example.com,555-654-3210
            3,María García,maría_garcia@company.com,555-567-1234
            4,Mary Major,mary_major@company.com,555-222-3333
            """;
        logger.info("Upload the following CSV data to the {} S3 bucket.",
glueBucketName);
        logger.info(csv);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.uploadInputData(glueBucketName, json, csv);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause == null) {
```

```
                logger.error("Failed to upload input data: {}", ce.getMessage(),
 ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("Failed to upload input data as the resource was not
 found: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info("The JSON and CSV objects have been uploaded to the S3
 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create Schema Mapping");
        logger.info("""
            Entity Resolution schema mapping aligns and integrates data from
            multiple sources by identifying and matching corresponding entities
            like customers or products. It unifies schemas, resolves conflicts,
            and uses machine learning to link related entities, enabling a
            consolidated, accurate view for improved data quality and decision-
making.

            In this example, the schema mapping lines up with the fields in the
 JSON and CSV objects. That is,
            it contains these fields: id, name, and email.
            """);
        try {
            CreateSchemaMappingResponse response =
 actions.createSchemaMappingAsync(jsonSchemaMappingName).join();
            jsonSchemaMappingName = response.schemaName();
            logger.info("The JSON schema mapping name is " +
 jsonSchemaMappingName);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("Failed to create JSON schema mapping: {}",
 ce.getMessage(), ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
```

```
                logger.error("Schema mapping conflict detected: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error while creating schema mapping:
{}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        try {
            CreateSchemaMappingResponse response =
actions.createSchemaMappingAsync(csvSchemaMappingName).join();
            csvSchemaMappingName = response.schemaName();
            logger.info("The CSV schema mapping name is " +
csvSchemaMappingName);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("Failed to create CSV schema mapping: {}",
ce.getMessage(), ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("Schema mapping conflict detected: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error while creating CSV schema mapping:
{}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create an AWS Entity Resolution Workflow. ");
        logger.info("""
            An Entity Resolution matching workflow identifies and links records
            across datasets that represent the same real-world entity, such as
            customers or products. Using techniques like schema mapping,
            data profiling, and machine learning algorithms,
            it evaluates attributes like names or emails to detect duplicates
            or relationships, even with variations or inconsistencies.
            The workflow outputs consolidated, de-duplicated data.
```

```
            We will use the machine learning-based matching technique.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String workflowArn = actions.createMatchingWorkflowAsync(
                roleARN, workflowName, glueBucketName, jsonGlueTableArn,
                jsonSchemaMappingName, csvGlueTableArn,
csvSchemaMappingName).join();

            logger.info("The workflow ARN is: " + workflowArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", ce.getMessage(),
ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                logger.error("Validation error: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("Workflow conflict detected: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Start the matching job of the " + workflowName + "
workflow.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobId = null;
        try {
            jobId = actions.startMatchingJobAsync(workflowName).join();
            logger.info("The matching job was successfully started.");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("Job conflict detected: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
```

```
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error while starting the job: {}",
ce.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. While the matching job is running, let's look at other
API methods. First, let's get details for job " + jobId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.getMatchingJobAsync(jobId, workflowName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The matching job not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Failed to start matching job: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : ce.getMessage()));
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Get the schema mapping for the JSON data.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            GetSchemaMappingResponse response =
actions.getSchemaMappingAsync(jsonSchemaMappingName).join();
            jsonSchemaMappingArn = response.schemaArn();
            logger.info("Schema mapping ARN is " + jsonSchemaMappingArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("Schema mapping not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Error retrieving the specific schema mapping: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
```

```
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. List Schema Mappings.");
        try {
            actions.ListSchemaMappings();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            logger.error("Error retrieving schema mappings: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Tag the {} resource.", jsonSchemaMappingName);
        logger.info("""
            Tags can help you organize and categorize your Entity Resolution
resources.
            You can also use them to scope user permissions by granting a user
permission
            to access or change only resources with certain tag values.
            In Entity Resolution, SchemaMapping and MatchingWorkflow can be
tagged. For this example,
            the SchemaMapping is tagged.
                """);
        try {
            actions.tagEntityResource(jsonSchemaMappingArn).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            logger.error("Error tagging the resource: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. View the results of the AWS Entity Resolution
Workflow.");
```

```
        logger.info("""
            You cannot view the result of the workflow that is in a running
state.
            In order to view the results, you need to wait for the workflow that
we started in step 3 to complete.

            If you choose not to wait, you cannot view the results. You can
perform
            this task manually in the AWS Management Console.

            This can take up to 30 mins (y/n).
            """);
        String viewAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        boolean isComplete = false;
        if (viewAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to view the Entity Resolution Workflow
results.");
            countdownWithWorkflowCheck(actions, 1800, jobId, workflowName);
            isComplete = true;
            try {
                JobMetrics metrics = actions.getJobInfo(workflowName,
jobId).join();
                logger.info("Number of input records: {}",
metrics.inputRecords());
                logger.info("Number of match ids: {}", metrics.matchIDs());
                logger.info("Number of records not processed: {}",
metrics.recordsNotProcessed());
                logger.info("Number of total records processed: {}",
metrics.totalRecordsProcessed());
                logger.info("The following represents the output data generated
by the Entity Resolution workflow based on the JSON and CSV input data. The
output data is stored in the {} bucket.", glueBucketName);
                actions.printData(glueBucketName);

                logger.info("""

                    Note that each of the last 2 records are considered a match
even though the 'name' differs between the records;
                    For example 'John Doe Jr.' compared to 'John Doe'.
                    The confidence level is a value between 0 and 1, where 1
indicates a perfect match.

                    """);
```

```
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    logger.error("The job not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
                } else {
                    logger.error("Error retrieving job information: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
                }
                return;
            }
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Do you want to delete the resources, including the
workflow? (y/n)");
        logger.info("""
            You cannot delete the workflow that is in a running state.
            In order to delete the workflow, you need to wait for the workflow to
complete.

            You can delete the workflow manually in the AWS Management Console at
a later time.

            If you already waited for the workflow to complete in the previous
step,
            the workflow is completed and you can delete it.

            If the workflow is not completed, this can take up to 30 mins (y/n).
            """);
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                if (!isComplete) {
                    countdownWithWorkflowCheck(actions, 1800, jobId,
workflowName);
                }
                actions.deleteMatchingWorkflowAsync(workflowName).join();
                logger.info("Workflow deleted successfully!");
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                logger.info("Error deleting the workflow: {} ", ce.getMessage());
```

```
                return;
            }

            try {
                // Delete both schema mappings.
                actions.deleteSchemaMappingAsync(jsonSchemaMappingName).join();
                actions.deleteSchemaMappingAsync(csvSchemaMappingName).join();
                logger.info("Both schema mappings were deleted successfully!");
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                logger.error("Error deleting schema mapping: {}",
ce.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            logger.info(DASHES);
            logger.info("""
                Now we delete the CloudFormation stack, which deletes
                the resources that were created at the beginning of this
scenario.
                """);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            logger.info(DASHES);
            try {
                deleteCloudFormationStack();
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the stack: {}", e.getMessage());
                return;
            }

        } else {
            logger.info("You can delete the AWS resources in the AWS Management
Console.");
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS Entity Resolution scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
```

```
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void countdownWithWorkflowCheck(EntityResActions actions, int
totalSeconds, String jobId, String workflowName) throws InterruptedException {
        int secondsElapsed = 0;

        while (true) {
            // Calculate display minutes and seconds.
            int remainingTime = totalSeconds - secondsElapsed;
            int displayMinutes = remainingTime / 60;
            int displaySeconds = remainingTime % 60;

            // Print the countdown.
            System.out.printf("\r%02d:%02d", displayMinutes, displaySeconds);
            Thread.sleep(1000); // Wait for 1 second
            secondsElapsed++;

            // Check workflow status every 60 seconds.
            if (secondsElapsed % 60 == 0 || remainingTime <= 0) {
                GetMatchingJobResponse response =
actions.checkWorkflowStatusCompleteAsync(jobId, workflowName).join();
                if (response != null &&
"SUCCEEDED".equalsIgnoreCase(String.valueOf(response.status()))) {
                    logger.info(""); // Move to the next line after countdown.
                    logger.info("Countdown complete: Workflow is in Completed
state!");
                    break; // Break out of the loop if the status is "SUCCEEDED"
                }
            }
```

```
            // If countdown reaches zero, reset it for continuous countdown.
            if (remainingTime <= 0) {
                secondsElapsed = 0;
            }
        }
    }

    private static void deleteCloudFormationStack() {
        try {
            CloudFormationHelper.emptyS3Bucket(glueBucketName);
            CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
            logger.info("Resources deleted successfully!");
        } catch (CloudFormationException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete CloudFormation stack: "
 + e.getMessage(), e);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to empty S3 bucket: " +
 e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS Entity Resolution SDK methods.

```
public class EntityResActions {

    private static final String PREFIX = "eroutput/";
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EntityResActions.class);

    private static EntityResolutionAsyncClient entityResolutionAsyncClient;

    private static S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient;

    public static EntityResolutionAsyncClient getResolutionAsyncClient() {
        if (entityResolutionAsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
```

```
            It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
            provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
            */

           SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
               .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
               .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
               .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
               .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
               .build();

           ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
               .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
call timeout.
               .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
               .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
               .build();

           entityResolutionAsyncClient = EntityResolutionAsyncClient.builder()
               .httpClient(httpClient)
               .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
               .build();
       }
       return entityResolutionAsyncClient;
   }

   public static S3AsyncClient getS3AsyncClient() {
       if (s3AsyncClient == null) {
           /*
           The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
           and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
            It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
            provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
            */
```

```
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
call timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return s3AsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the schema mapping asynchronously.
     *
     * @param schemaName the name of the schema to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schema mapping
is deleted successfully,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteSchemaMappingResponse>
deleteSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
        DeleteSchemaMappingRequest request = DeleteSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteSchemaMapping(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully deleted the schema mapping, log the success
message.
```

```
                    logger.info("Schema mapping '{}' deleted successfully.",
schemaName);
                } else {
                    // Ensure exception is not null before accessing its cause.
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The schema mapping was not
found to delete: " + schemaName, cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schema
mapping: " + schemaName, exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists the schema mappings associated with the current AWS account. This
method uses an asynchronous paginator to
     * retrieve the schema mappings, and prints the name of each schema mapping
to the console.
     */
    public void ListSchemaMappings() {
        ListSchemaMappingsRequest mappingsRequest =
ListSchemaMappingsRequest.builder()
            .build();

        ListSchemaMappingsPublisher paginator =
getResolutionAsyncClient().listSchemaMappingsPaginator(mappingsRequest);

        // Iterate through the pages of results
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schemaList().forEach(schemaMapping ->
                logger.info("Schema Mapping Name: " + schemaMapping.schemaName())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
```

```
        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes a workflow with the specified name.
     *
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the workflow has
been deleted
     * @throws RuntimeException if the deletion of the workflow fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteMatchingWorkflowResponse>
deleteMatchingWorkflowAsync(String workflowName) {
        DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest request =
DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteMatchingWorkflow(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("{} was deleted", workflowName );
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the workflow.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The workflow to delete was
not found.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates a schema mapping asynchronously.
     *
```

```
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
creation of the schema mapping
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateSchemaMappingResponse>
createSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
       List<SchemaInputAttribute> schemaAttributes = null;
       if (schemaName.startsWith("json")) {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.U

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeTy

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttribute
           );
       } else {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.U

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeTy

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttribute

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().fieldName("phone").type(SchemaAttributeType.PROVIDER_ID).
           );
       }

       CreateSchemaMappingRequest request = CreateSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
           .schemaName(schemaName)
           .mappedInputFields(schemaAttributes)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().createSchemaMapping(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   logger.info("[{}] schema mapping Created Successfully!",
schemaName);
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while creating the schema mapping.", null);
                   }
```

```
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting schema
mapping already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schema
mapping: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the schema mapping asynchronously.
     *
     * @param schemaName the name of the schema to retrieve the mapping for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
GetSchemaMappingResponse} when the operation
     * is complete
     * @throws RuntimeException if the schema mapping retrieval fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetSchemaMappingResponse>
getSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
        GetSchemaMappingRequest mappingRequest =
GetSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getSchemaMapping(mappingRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    response.mappedInputFields().forEach(attribute ->
                        logger.info("Attribute Name: " + attribute.fieldName() +
                            ", Attribute Type: " + attribute.type().toString()));
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while getting schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested schema
mapping was not found.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to get schema mapping:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves a matching job based on the provided job ID and
workflow name.
     *
     * @param jobId        the ID of the job to retrieve
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job
information is available or an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMatchingJobResponse> getMatchingJobAsync(String
jobId, String workflowName) {
        GetMatchingJobRequest request = GetMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully fetched the matching job details, log the job
status.
                    logger.info("Job status: " + response.status());
                    logger.info("Job details: " + response.toString());
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while fetching the matching job.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested job could
not be found.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Error fetching matching job: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Starts a matching job asynchronously for the specified workflow name.
     *
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow for which to start the
matching job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the job ID of the
started matching job, or an empty
     * string if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> startMatchingJobAsync(String workflowName) {
        StartMatchingJobRequest jobRequest = StartMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().startMatchingJob(jobRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    String jobId = response.jobId();
                    logger.info("Job ID: " + jobId);
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while starting the job.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The job is already
running. Resolve conflicts before starting a new job.", cause);
                    }
```

```
                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to start the job: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response != null ? response.jobId() : "");
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of a workflow asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId        the ID of the job to check
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow to check
     * @return a CompletableFuture that resolves to a boolean value indicating
whether the workflow has completed
     * successfully
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMatchingJobResponse>
checkWorkflowStatusCompleteAsync(String jobId, String workflowName) {
        GetMatchingJobRequest request = GetMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Process the response and log the job status.
                    logger.info("Job status: " + response.status());
                } else {
                    // Ensure exception is not null before accessing its cause.
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while checking job status.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested resource was
not found while checking the job status.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to check job status: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous CompletableFuture to manage the creation of a
matching workflow.
     *
     * @param roleARN                the AWS IAM role ARN to be used for the
workflow execution
     * @param workflowName           the name of the workflow to be created
     * @param outputBucket           the S3 bucket path where the workflow
output will be stored
     * @param jsonGlueTableArn       the ARN of the Glue Data Catalog table to
be used as the input source
     * @param jsonErSchemaMappingName the name of the schema to be used for the
input source
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, will return the ARN of
the created workflow
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMatchingWorkflowAsync(
        String roleARN
        , String workflowName
        , String outputBucket
        , String jsonGlueTableArn
        , String jsonErSchemaMappingName
        , String csvGlueTableArn
        , String csvErSchemaMappingName) {

        InputSource jsonInputSource = InputSource.builder()
            .inputSourceARN(jsonGlueTableArn)
            .schemaName(jsonErSchemaMappingName)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        InputSource csvInputSource = InputSource.builder()
            .inputSourceARN(csvGlueTableArn)
            .schemaName(csvErSchemaMappingName)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        OutputAttribute idOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
```

```
            .name("id")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute nameOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("name")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute emailOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("email")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute phoneOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("phone")
            .build();

        OutputSource outputSource = OutputSource.builder()
            .outputS3Path("s3://" + outputBucket + "/eroutput")
            .output(idOutputAttribute, nameOutputAttribute, emailOutputAttribute,
phoneOutputAttribute)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        ResolutionTechniques resolutionType = ResolutionTechniques.builder()
            .resolutionType(ResolutionType.ML_MATCHING)
            .build();

        CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest workflowRequest =
CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .inputSourceConfig(List.of(jsonInputSource, csvInputSource))
            .outputSourceConfig(List.of(outputSource))
            .resolutionTechniques(resolutionType)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().createMatchingWorkflow(workflowRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Workflow created successfully.");
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("Invalid request: Please
check input parameters.", cause);
                    }

                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting workflow
already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(CreateMatchingWorkflowResponse::workflowArn);
    }

    /**
     * Tags the specified schema mapping ARN.
     *
     * @param schemaMappingARN the ARN of the schema mapping to tag
     */
    public CompletableFuture<TagResourceResponse> tagEntityResource(String
schemaMappingARN) {
        Map<String, String> tags = new HashMap<>();
        tags.put("tag1", "tag1Value");
        tags.put("tag2", "tag2Value");

        TagResourceRequest request = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .resourceArn(schemaMappingARN)
            .tags(tags)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().tagResource(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully tagged the resource, log the success message.
                    logger.info("Successfully tagged the resource.");
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while tagging the resource.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("The resource to tag was
not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to tag the resource: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    public CompletableFuture<JobMetrics> getJobInfo(String workflowName, String
jobId) {
        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(b -> b
                .workflowName(workflowName)
                .jobId(jobId))
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Job metrics fetched successfully for jobId: " +
jobId);
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Invalid request: Job id
was not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to fetch job info: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.metrics()); // Extract job metrics
    }

    /**
     * Uploads data to an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the data to
     * @param jsonData   the JSON data to be uploaded
     * @param csvData    the CSV data to be uploaded
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing both asynchronous
operation of uploading the data
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs during the file upload
     */

    public void uploadInputData(String bucketName, String jsonData, String
csvData) {
```

```
        // Upload JSON data.
        String jsonKey = "jsonData/data.json";
        PutObjectRequest jsonUploadRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(jsonKey)
            .contentType("application/json")
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> jsonUploadResponse
= getS3AsyncClient().putObject(jsonUploadRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromString(jsonData));

        // Upload CSV data.
        String csvKey = "csvData/data.csv";
        PutObjectRequest csvUploadRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(csvKey)
            .contentType("text/csv")
            .build();
        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> csvUploadResponse
= getS3AsyncClient().putObject(csvUploadRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromString(csvData));

        CompletableFuture.allOf(jsonUploadResponse, csvUploadResponse)
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    // Wrap an AWS exception.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to upload files", ex);
                }
            }).join();

    }

    /**
     * Finds the latest file in the S3 bucket that starts with "run-" in any
depth of subfolders
     */
    private CompletableFuture<String> findLatestMatchingFile(String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .prefix(PREFIX) // Searches within the given folder
            .build();

        return getS3AsyncClient().listObjectsV2(request)
```

```
            .thenApply(response -> response.contents().stream()
                .map(S3Object::key)
                .filter(key -> key.matches(".*?/run-[0-9a-zA-Z\\-]+")) // Matches
files like run-XXXXX in any subfolder
                .max(String::compareTo) // Gets the latest file
                .orElse(null))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception == null) {
                    if (result != null) {
                        logger.info("Latest matching file found: " + result);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("No matching files found.");
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to find latest matching
file: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Prints the data located in the file in the S3 bucket that starts with
"run-" in any depth of subfolders
     */
    public void printData(String bucketName) {
        try {
            // Find the latest file with "run-" prefix in any depth of
subfolders.
            String s3Key = findLatestMatchingFile(bucketName).join();
            if (s3Key == null) {
                logger.error("No matching files found in S3.");
                return;
            }

            logger.info("Downloading file: " + s3Key);

            // Read CSV file as String.
            String csvContent = readCSVFromS3Async(bucketName, s3Key).join();
            if (csvContent.isEmpty()) {
                logger.error("File is empty.");
                return;
            }

            // Process CSV content.
```

```
            List<String[]> records = parseCSV(csvContent);
            printTable(records);

        } catch (RuntimeException | IOException | CsvException e) {
            logger.error("Error processing CSV file from S3: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Reads a CSV file from S3 and returns it as a String.
     */
    private static CompletableFuture<String> readCSVFromS3Async(String
bucketName, String s3Key) {
        GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(s3Key)
            .build();

        // Initiating the asynchronous request to get the file as bytes
        return getS3AsyncClient().getObject(getObjectRequest,
AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes())
            .thenApply(responseBytes -> responseBytes.asUtf8String()) // Convert
bytes to UTF-8 string
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to read CSV from S3: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully fetched CSV file content from
S3.");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Parses CSV content from a String into a list of records.
     */
    private static List<String[]> parseCSV(String csvContent) throws IOException,
CsvException {
        try (CSVReader csvReader = new CSVReader(new StringReader(csvContent))) {
            return csvReader.readAll();
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Prints the given CSV data in a formatted table
     */
    private static void printTable(List<String[]> records) {
        if (records.isEmpty()) {
            System.out.println("No records found.");
            return;
        }

        String[] headers = records.get(0);
        List<String[]> rows = records.subList(1, records.size());

        // Determine column widths dynamically based on longest content
        int[] columnWidths = new int[headers.length];
        for (int i = 0; i < headers.length; i++) {
            final int columnIndex = i;
            int maxWidth = Math.max(headers[i].length(), rows.stream()
                .map(row -> row.length > columnIndex ?
row[columnIndex].length() : 0)
                .max(Integer::compareTo)
                .orElse(0));
            columnWidths[i] = Math.min(maxWidth, 25); // Limit max width for
better readability
        }

        // Enable ANSI Console for colored output
        AnsiConsole.systemInstall();

        // Print table header
        System.out.println(ansi().fgYellow().a("=== CSV Data from S3
===").reset());
        printRow(headers, columnWidths, true);

        // Print rows
        rows.forEach(row -> printRow(row, columnWidths, false));

        // Restore console to normal
        AnsiConsole.systemUninstall();
    }

    private static void printRow(String[] row, int[] columnWidths, boolean
isHeader) {
        String border = IntStream.range(0, columnWidths.length)
```

```
            .mapToObj(i -> "-".repeat(columnWidths[i] + 2))
            .collect(Collectors.joining("+", "+", "+"));

        if (isHeader) {
            System.out.println(border);
        }

        System.out.print("|");
        for (int i = 0; i < columnWidths.length; i++) {
            String cell = (i < row.length && row[i] != null) ? row[i] : "";
            System.out.printf(" %-" + columnWidths[i] + "s |", isHeader ?
 ansi().fgBrightBlue().a(cell).reset() : cell);
        }
        System.out.println();

        if (isHeader) {
            System.out.println(border);
        }
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Entity Resolution features.

```
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
```

```
  CloudFormationClient,
  CreateStackCommand,
  DeleteStackCommand,
  DescribeStacksCommand,
  waitUntilStackExists,
  waitUntilStackCreateComplete,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import {
  EntityResolutionClient,
  CreateSchemaMappingCommand,
  CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  GetMatchingJobCommand,
  StartMatchingJobCommand,
  GetSchemaMappingCommand,
  ListSchemaMappingsCommand,
  TagResourceCommand,
  DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  DeleteSchemaMappingCommand,
  ConflictException,
  ValidationException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import {
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  S3Client,
  ListObjectsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { readFile } from "node:fs/promises";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";

const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
const __dirname = dirname(__filename);
const stackName = `${data.inputs.entityResolutionStack}`;

/*The inputs for this example can be edited in the ../input.json.*/
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;
/**
```

```
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
/* v8 ignore next 3 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "input",
  verbose: "false",
  skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
});

const region = "eu-west-1";

const entityResolutionClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });
const cloudFormationClient = new CloudFormationClient({ region: region });
const s3Client = new S3Client({ region: region });

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "AWS Entity Resolution is a fully-managed machine learning service provided by
 " +
    "Amazon Web Services (AWS) that helps organizations extract, link, and " +
    "organize information from multiple data sources. It leverages natural " +
    "language processing and deep learning models to identify and resolve " +
    "entities, such as people, places, organizations, and products, " +
    "across structured and unstructured data.\n" +
    "\n" +
    "With Entity Resolution, customers can build robust data integration " +
    "pipelines to combine and reconcile data from multiple systems, databases, "
 +
    "and documents. The service can handle ambiguous, incomplete, or conflicting
 " +
    "information, and provide a unified view of entities and their relationships.
 " +
    "This can be particularly valuable in applications such as customer 360, " +
    "fraud detection, supply chain management, and knowledge management, where "
 +
    "accurate entity identification is crucial.\n" +
    "\n" +
    "The `EntityResolutionAsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x " +
    "provides a set of methods to programmatically interact with the AWS Entity "
 +
    "Resolution service. This allows developers to automate the entity
 extraction, " +
```

```
    "linking, and deduplication process as part of their data processing
 workflows. " +
    "With Entity Resolution, organizations can unlock the value of their data, "
 +
    "improve decision-making, and enhance customer experiences by having a
 reliable, " +
    "comprehensive view of their key entities.",

  { header: true },
);
const displayBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayBuildCloudFormationStack",
  "To prepare the AWS resources needed for this scenario application, the next
 step uploads " +
    "a CloudFormation template whose resulting stack creates the following
 resources:\n" +
    "- An AWS Glue Data Catalog table \n" +
    "- An AWS IAM role \n" +
    "- An AWS S3 bucket \n" +
    "- An AWS Entity Resolution Schema \n" +
    "It can take a couple minutes for the Stack to finish creating the
 resources.",
);

const sdkBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkBuildCloudFormationStack",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const data = readFileSync(
        `${__dirname}/../../../../resources/cfn/entity-resolution-basics/entity-
resolution-basics-template.yml`,
        "utf8",
      );
      await cloudFormationClient.send(
        new CreateStackCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
          TemplateBody: data,
          Capabilities: ["CAPABILITY_IAM"],
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilStackExists(
        { client: cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
```

```
      await waitUntilStackCreateComplete(
        { client: cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      const stack = await cloudFormationClient.send(
        new DescribeStacksCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
        }),
      );

      state.entityResolutionRole = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[1];
      state.jsonGlueTable = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[2];
      state.CSVGlueTable = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[3];
      state.glueDataBucket = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[0];
      state.stackName = stack.StackName;
      console.log(state.glueDataBucket);
      console.log(
        `The  ARN of the EntityResolution Role is
${state.entityResolutionRole.OutputValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The ARN of the Json Glue Table is ${state.jsonGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The ARN of the CSV Glue Table is ${state.CSVGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The name of the Glue Data Bucket is
${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue}\n`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        `Uploading the following JSON in ../data.json to the
${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue} S3 bucket...`,
      );
      const bucketName = state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue;

      const putObjectParams = {
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: "jsonData/data.json",
```

```
        Body: await readFileSync(
          `${__dirname}/../../../../javascriptv3/example_code/entityresolution/
data.json`,
        ),
      };
      const command = new PutObjectCommand(putObjectParams);
      const response = await s3Client.send(command);
      console.log(
        `../data.json file data uploaded to the
 ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue} S3 bucket.\n`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        `Uploading the CSV data in ../data.csv to the
 ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue} S3 bucket...`,
      );

      const bucketName = state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue;
      const putObjectParams = {
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: "csvData/data.csv",
        Body: await readFileSync(
          `${__dirname}/../../../../javascriptv3/example_code/entityresolution/
data.csv`,
        ),
      };
      const command = new PutObjectCommand(putObjectParams);
      const response = await s3Client.send(command);
      console.log(
        `../data.csv file data uploaded to the
 ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue} S3 bucket.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateSchemaMapping = new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
  "displayCreateSchemaMapping",
  "1. Create Schema Mapping" +
    "Entity Resolution schema mapping aligns and integrates data from " +
    "multiple sources by identifying and matching corresponding entities " +
    "like customers or products. It unifies schemas, resolves conflicts, " +
    "and uses machine learning to link related entities, enabling a " +
    "consolidated, accurate view for improved data quality and decision-making."
 +
    "\n" +
    "In this example, the schema mapping lines up with the fields in the JSON and
 CSV objects. That is, " +
    " it contains these fields: id, name, and email. ",
);

const sdkCreateSchemaMapping = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateSchemaMapping",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const createSchemaMappingParamsJson = {
      schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
      mappedInputFields: [
        {
          fieldName: "id",
          type: "UNIQUE_ID",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "name",
          type: "NAME",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "email",
          type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
        },
      ],
    };
    const createSchemaMappingParamsCSV = {
      schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
      mappedInputFields: [
        {
          fieldName: "id",
          type: "UNIQUE_ID",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "name",
          type: "NAME",
```

```
        },
        {
          fieldName: "email",
          type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "phone",
          type: "PROVIDER_ID",
          subType: "STRING",
        },
      ],
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateSchemaMappingCommand(
        createSchemaMappingParamsJson,
      );
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.schemaNameJson = response.schemaName;
      state.schemaArn = response.schemaArn;
      state.idOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[0].fieldName;
      state.nameOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[1].fieldName;
      state.emailOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[2].fieldName;

      console.log("The JSON schema mapping name is ", state.schemaNameJson);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The schema mapping already exists: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
    try {
      const command = new CreateSchemaMappingCommand(
        createSchemaMappingParamsCSV,
      );
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.schemaNameCSV = response.schemaName;
      state.phoneOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[3].fieldName;
      console.log("The CSV schema mapping name is ", state.schemaNameCSV);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
```

```
          `An unexpected error occurred while creating the geofence collection:
 ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayCreateMatchingWorkflow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateMatchingWorkflow",
  "2. Create an AWS Entity Resolution Workflow. " +
    "An Entity Resolution matching workflow identifies and links records " +
    "across datasets that represent the same real-world entity, such as " +
    "customers or products. Using techniques like schema mapping, " +
    "data profiling, and machine learning algorithms, " +
    "it evaluates attributes like names or emails to detect duplicates " +
    "or relationships, even with variations or inconsistencies. " +
    "The workflow outputs consolidated, de-duplicated data." +
    "\n" +
    "We will use the machine learning-based matching technique.",
);

const sdkCreateMatchingWorkflow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateMatchingWorkflow",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const createMatchingWorkflowParams = {
      roleArn: `${state.entityResolutionRole.OutputValue}`,
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      description: "Created by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3).",
      inputSourceConfig: [
        {
          inputSourceARN: `${state.jsonGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
          schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
          applyNormalization: false,
        },
        {
          inputSourceARN: `${state.CSVGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
          schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
          applyNormalization: false,
        },
      ],
      outputSourceConfig: [
        {
          outputS3Path: `s3://${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue}/eroutput`,
```

```
          output: [
            {
              name: state.idOutputAttribute,
            },
            {
              name: state.nameOutputAttribute,
            },
            {
              name: state.emailOutputAttribute,
            },
            {
              name: state.phoneOutputAttribute,
            },
          ],
          applyNormalization: false,
        },
      ],
      resolutionTechniques: { resolutionType: "ML_MATCHING" },
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand(
        createMatchingWorkflowParams,
      );
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.workflowArn = response.workflowArn;
      console.log(
        `Workflow created successfully.\n The workflow ARN is:
${response.workflowArn}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The matching workflow already exists: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `There was a validation exception: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
```

```
    }
  },
);
const displayMatchingJobOfWorkflow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayMatchingJobOfWorkflow",
  "3. Start the matching job of the workflow",
);

const sdkMatchingJobOfWorkflow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdk",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const matchingJobOfWorkflowParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new StartMatchingJobCommand(matchingJobOfWorkflowParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.jobID = response.jobId;
      console.log(`Job ID: ${state.jobID} \n
The matching job was successfully started.`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The matching workflow already exists: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);

const displayGetDetailsforJob = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayGetDetailsforJob",
  `4. While the matching job is running, let's look at other API methods. First,
 let's get details for the job `,
);

const sdkGetDetailsforJob = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetDetailsforJob",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const getDetailsforJobParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      jobId: `${state.jobID}`,
```

```
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetMatchingJobCommand(getDetailsforJobParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.Status = response.status;
      state.response = response;
      console.log(`Job status: ${state.Status} `);
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayGetSchemaMappingJson = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayGetSchemaMappingJson",
  "5. Get the schema mapping for the JSON data.",
);

const sdkGetSchemaMappingJson = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetSchemaMappingJson",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const getSchemaMappingJsonParams = {
      schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetSchemaMappingCommand(getSchemaMappingJsonParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Schema·mapping·ARN·is:·", response.schemaArn);
      const resultMappings = response.mappedInputFields;
      const noOfResultMappings = resultMappings.length;
      for (let i = 0; i < noOfResultMappings; i++) {
        console.log(
          `Attribute name: ${resultMappings[i].fieldName} `,
          `Attribute type: ${resultMappings[i].type}`,
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);
```

```
const displayListSchemaMappings = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayListSchemaMappings",
  "6. List Schema Mappings.",
);

const sdkListSchemaMappings = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkListSchemaMappings",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const command = new ListSchemaMappingsCommand({});
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      const noOfSchemas = response.schemaList.length;
      for (let i = 0; i < noOfSchemas; i++) {
        console.log(
          `Schema Mapping Name: ${response.schemaList[i].schemaName} `,
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayTagTheJsonSchema = new ScenarioOutput(
  "display",
  "7. Tag the resource. \n" +
    "Tags can help you organize and categorize your Entity Resolution resources.
 " +
    "You can also use them to scope user permissions by granting a user
 permission " +
    "to access or change only resources with certain tag values. " +
    "In Entity Resolution, SchemaMapping and MatchingWorkflow can be tagged. For
 this example, " +
    "the SchemaMapping is tagged.",
);

const sdkTagTheJsonSchema = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetSchemaMappingJson",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const tagResourceCommandParams = {
      resourceArn: state.schemaArn,
      tags: {
        tag1: "tag1Value",
```

```
        tag2: "tag2Value",
      },
    };
    try {
      const command = new TagResourceCommand(tagResourceCommandParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Successfully tagged the resource.");
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayGetJobInfo = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayGetJobInfo",
  "8. View the results of the AWS Entity Resolution Workflow.\n " +
    "Please perform this task manually in the AWS Management Console. ",
);

const displayDeleteResources = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDeleteResources",
  "9. Delete the resources \n" +
    "You cannot delete a workflow that is in a running state. So this will take
 ~30 minutes.\n" +
    "If you don't want to delete the resources, simply exit this application.",
);

const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    console.log(
      "You selected to delete the resources. This will take about 30 minutes.",
    );
    await wait(1800);
    const bucketName = state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue;
    try {
      const emptyBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
        const listObjectsCommand = new ListObjectsCommand({
          Bucket: bucketName,
        });
        const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(listObjectsCommand);
        const keys = Contents.map((c) => c.Key);
```

```
        const deleteObjectsCommand = new DeleteObjectsCommand({
          Bucket: bucketName,
          Delete: { Objects: keys.map((key) => ({ Key: key })) },
        });
        await s3Client.send(deleteObjectsCommand);
        console.log(`Bucket ${bucketName} emptied successfully.\n`);
      };
      await emptyBucket({ bucketName });
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error);
    }
    try {
      const deleteBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
        const command = new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
        await s3Client.send(command);
        console.log(`Bucket ${bucketName} deleted successfully.\n`);
      };
      await deleteBucket({ bucketName });
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error);
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        "Now we will delete the CloudFormation stack, which deletes the resources
that were created at the beginning of the scenario.",
      );
      const deleteStackParams = { StackName: `${state.stackName}` };
      const command = new DeleteStackCommand(deleteStackParams);
      const response = await cloudFormationClient.send(command);
      console.log("CloudFormation stack deleted successfully.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error);
    }
    try {
      const deleteWorkflowParams = {
        workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      };
      const command = new DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand(deleteWorkflowParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Workflow deleted successfully!");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
```

```
          `Job associated with workflow ${data.inputs.workflowName} is still
running, so can't be deleted.
          Neither can schemas ${data.inputs.schemaNameJson} and
${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV} associated with it. Please confirm this workflow is
finished in the AWS Management Console, then delete it manually.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
    try {
      const deleteJSONschemaMapping = {
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
      };
      const command = new DeleteSchemaMappingCommand(deleteJSONschemaMapping);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Schema mapping deleted successfully. ");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The schema ${data.inputs.schemaNameJson} can't be deleted because it
is associated with workflow
           ${data.inputs.workflowName}, which is still running. Please confirm
this workflow is finished in the AWS Management Console, then delete it
manually.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
    try {
      const deleteCSVschemaMapping = {
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
      };
      const command = new DeleteSchemaMappingCommand(deleteCSVschemaMapping);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Schema mapping deleted successfully.");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The schema ${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV} can't be deleted because it is
associated with workflow ${data.inputs.workflowName}, which is still running.
Please confirm this workflow is finished in the AWS Management Console, then
delete it manually.`,
        );
        throw caught;
```

```
      }
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.confirmDeleteResources === "",
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Location Service Use demo. We hope you "
 +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!" +
    " For more Amazon Location Services examples in different programming
 languages, have a look at: " +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/
location_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Entity Resolution Basics Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayBuildCloudFormationStack,
  sdkBuildCloudFormationStack,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateSchemaMapping,
  sdkCreateSchemaMapping,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateMatchingWorkflow,
  sdkCreateMatchingWorkflow,
  pressEnter,
  displayMatchingJobOfWorkflow,
  sdkMatchingJobOfWorkflow,
  pressEnter,
  displayGetDetailsforJob,
  sdkGetDetailsforJob,
  pressEnter,
  displayGetSchemaMappingJson,
  sdkGetSchemaMappingJson,
  pressEnter,
  displayListSchemaMappings,
  sdkListSchemaMappings,
  pressEnter,
```

```
  displayTagTheJsonSchema,
  sdkTagTheJsonSchema,
  pressEnter,
  displayGetJobInfo,
  pressEnter,
  displayDeleteResources,
  pressEnter,
  sdkDeleteResources,
  pressEnter,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

Actions for AWS Entity Resolution using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Entity Resolution actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Entity Resolution API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateMatchingWorkflow with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteMatchingWorkflow with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
- Use GetMatchingJob with an AWS SDK
- Use GetSchemaMapping with an AWS SDK
- Use ListSchemaMappings with an AWS SDK
- Use StartMatchingJob with an AWS SDK
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateMatchingWorkflow` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateMatchingWorkflow`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous CompletableFuture to manage the creation of a
matching workflow.
     *
     * @param roleARN                the AWS IAM role ARN to be used for the
workflow execution
     * @param workflowName           the name of the workflow to be created
     * @param outputBucket           the S3 bucket path where the workflow
output will be stored
     * @param jsonGlueTableArn       the ARN of the Glue Data Catalog table to
be used as the input source
     * @param jsonErSchemaMappingName the name of the schema to be used for the
input source
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, will return the ARN of
the created workflow
     */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMatchingWorkflowAsync(
        String roleARN
        , String workflowName
        , String outputBucket
        , String jsonGlueTableArn
        , String jsonErSchemaMappingName
        , String csvGlueTableArn
        , String csvErSchemaMappingName) {

        InputSource jsonInputSource = InputSource.builder()
            .inputSourceARN(jsonGlueTableArn)
            .schemaName(jsonErSchemaMappingName)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        InputSource csvInputSource = InputSource.builder()
            .inputSourceARN(csvGlueTableArn)
            .schemaName(csvErSchemaMappingName)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        OutputAttribute idOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("id")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute nameOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("name")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute emailOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("email")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute phoneOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("phone")
            .build();

        OutputSource outputSource = OutputSource.builder()
            .outputS3Path("s3://" + outputBucket + "/eroutput")
            .output(idOutputAttribute, nameOutputAttribute, emailOutputAttribute,
phoneOutputAttribute)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();
```

```
        ResolutionTechniques resolutionType = ResolutionTechniques.builder()
            .resolutionType(ResolutionType.ML_MATCHING)
            .build();

        CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest workflowRequest =
CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .inputSourceConfig(List.of(jsonInputSource, csvInputSource))
            .outputSourceConfig(List.of(outputSource))
            .resolutionTechniques(resolutionType)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().createMatchingWorkflow(workflowRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Workflow created successfully.");
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Invalid request: Please
check input parameters.", cause);
                    }

                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting workflow
already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(CreateMatchingWorkflowResponse::workflowArn);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const createMatchingWorkflowParams = {
    roleArn: `${data.inputs.roleArn}`,
    workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
    description: "Created by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3).",
    inputSourceConfig: [
      {
        inputSourceARN: `${data.inputs.JSONinputSourceARN}`,
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
        applyNormalization: false,
      },
      {
        inputSourceARN: `${data.inputs.CSVinputSourceARN}`,
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
        applyNormalization: false,
      },
    ],
    outputSourceConfig: [
```

```
      {
        outputS3Path: `s3://${data.inputs.myBucketName}/eroutput`,
        output: [
          {
            name: "id",
          },
          {
            name: "name",
          },
          {
            name: "email",
          },
          {
            name: "phone",
          },
        ],
        applyNormalization: false,
      },
    ],
    resolutionTechniques: { resolutionType: "ML_MATCHING" },
  };
  try {
    const command = new CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand(
      createMatchingWorkflowParams,
    );
    const response = await erClient.send(command);

    console.log(
      `Workflow created successfully.\n The workflow ARN is:
 ${response.workflowArn}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateSchemaMapping` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSchemaMapping`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a schema mapping asynchronously.
    *
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
creation of the schema mapping
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateSchemaMappingResponse>
createSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
       List<SchemaInputAttribute> schemaAttributes = null;
       if (schemaName.startsWith("json")) {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.U

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeTy

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttribute
           );
       } else {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.U

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeTy

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttribute

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().fieldName("phone").type(SchemaAttributeType.PROVIDER_ID).
```

```
            );
        }

        CreateSchemaMappingRequest request = CreateSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .mappedInputFields(schemaAttributes)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().createSchemaMapping(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("[{}] schema mapping Created Successfully!",
schemaName);
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while creating the schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting schema
mapping already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schema
mapping: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  CreateSchemaMappingCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const createSchemaMappingParamsJson = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
    mappedInputFields: [
      {
        fieldName: "id",
        type: "UNIQUE_ID",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "name",
        type: "NAME",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "email",
        type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
      },
    ],
  };
```

```
  const createSchemaMappingParamsCSV = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
    mappedInputFields: [
      {
        fieldName: "id",
        type: "UNIQUE_ID",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "name",
        type: "NAME",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "email",
        type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "phone",
        type: "PROVIDER_ID",
        subType: "STRING",
      },
    ],
  };
  try {
    const command = new CreateSchemaMappingCommand(
      createSchemaMappingParamsJson,
    );
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("The JSON schema mapping name is ", response.schemaName);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error.message);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DeleteMatchingWorkflow` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMatchingWorkflow`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously deletes a workflow with the specified name.
    *
    * @param workflowName the name of the workflow to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the workflow has
been deleted
    * @throws RuntimeException if the deletion of the workflow fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteMatchingWorkflowResponse>
deleteMatchingWorkflowAsync(String workflowName) {
       DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest request =
DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
           .workflowName(workflowName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteMatchingWorkflow(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   logger.info("{} was deleted", workflowName );
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the workflow.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The workflow to delete was
not found.", cause);
                   }

                   // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete workflow: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    const deleteWorkflowParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
    };
    const command = new DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand(deleteWorkflowParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("Workflow deleted successfully!", response);
  } catch (error) {
```

```
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DeleteSchemaMapping` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSchemaMapping`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes the schema mapping asynchronously.
    *
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schema mapping
is deleted successfully,
    * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteSchemaMappingResponse>
deleteSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
       DeleteSchemaMappingRequest request = DeleteSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
           .schemaName(schemaName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteSchemaMapping(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   // Successfully deleted the schema mapping, log the success
message.
```

```
                    logger.info("Schema mapping '{}' deleted successfully.",
 schemaName);
                } else {
                    // Ensure exception is not null before accessing its cause.
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
 while deleting the schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The schema mapping was not
 found to delete: " + schemaName, cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schema
 mapping: " + schemaName, exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  DeleteSchemaMappingCommand,
```

```
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteSchemaMapping = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
  };
  try {
    const command = new DeleteSchemaMappingCommand(deleteSchemaMapping);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("Schema mapping deleted successfully. ", response);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `GetMatchingJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetMatchingJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves a matching job based on the provided job ID and
 workflow name.
```

```
     *
     * @param jobId        the ID of the job to retrieve
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job
information is available or an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMatchingJobResponse> getMatchingJobAsync(String
jobId, String workflowName) {
        GetMatchingJobRequest request = GetMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully fetched the matching job details, log the job
status.
                    logger.info("Job status: " + response.status());
                    logger.info("Job details: " + response.toString());
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while fetching the matching job.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested job could
not be found.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Error fetching matching job: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  GetMatchingJobCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  async function getInfo() {
    const getJobInfoParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      jobId: `${data.inputs.jobId}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetMatchingJobCommand(getJobInfoParams);
      const response = await erClient.send(command);
      console.log(`Job status: ${response.status}`);
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error.message);
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `GetSchemaMapping` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetSchemaMapping`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the schema mapping asynchronously.
    *
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to retrieve the mapping for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
GetSchemaMappingResponse} when the operation
    * is complete
    * @throws RuntimeException if the schema mapping retrieval fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetSchemaMappingResponse>
getSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
       GetSchemaMappingRequest mappingRequest =
GetSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
           .schemaName(schemaName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().getSchemaMapping(mappingRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   response.mappedInputFields().forEach(attribute ->
                       logger.info("Attribute Name: " + attribute.fieldName() +
                           ", Attribute Type: " + attribute.type().toString()));
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while getting schema mapping.", null);
```

```
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested schema
 mapping was not found.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
 message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to get schema mapping:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  GetSchemaMappingCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  const getSchemaMappingJsonParams = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
  };
  try {
    const command = new GetSchemaMappingCommand(getSchemaMappingJsonParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log(response);
    console.log(
      `Schema mapping for the JSON data:\n ${response.mappedInputFields[0]}`,
    );
    console.log("Schema mapping ARN is: ", response.schemaArn);
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `ListSchemaMappings` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListSchemaMappings`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists the schema mappings associated with the current AWS account. This
 method uses an asynchronous paginator to
     * retrieve the schema mappings, and prints the name of each schema mapping
 to the console.
```

```
     */
    public void ListSchemaMappings() {
        ListSchemaMappingsRequest mappingsRequest =
 ListSchemaMappingsRequest.builder()
            .build();

        ListSchemaMappingsPublisher paginator =
 getResolutionAsyncClient().listSchemaMappingsPaginator(mappingsRequest);

        // Iterate through the pages of results
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schemaList().forEach(schemaMapping ->
                logger.info("Schema Mapping Name: " + schemaMapping.schemaName())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSchemaMappings in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  ListSchemaMappingsCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
```

```
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  async function getInfo() {
    const listSchemaMappingsParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      jobId: `${data.inputs.jobId}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new ListSchemaMappingsCommand(listSchemaMappingsParams);
      const response = await erClient.send(command);
      const noOfSchemas = response.schemaList.length;
      for (let i = 0; i < noOfSchemas; i++) {
        console.log(
          `Schema Mapping Name: ${response.schemaList[i].schemaName} `,
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  }
```

- For API details, see ListSchemaMappings in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `StartMatchingJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartMatchingJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Starts a matching job asynchronously for the specified workflow name.
    *
    * @param workflowName the name of the workflow for which to start the
matching job
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the job ID of the
started matching job, or an empty
    * string if the operation fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> startMatchingJobAsync(String workflowName) {
       StartMatchingJobRequest jobRequest = StartMatchingJobRequest.builder()
           .workflowName(workflowName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().startMatchingJob(jobRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   String jobId = response.jobId();
                   logger.info("Job ID: " + jobId);
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while starting the job.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The job is already
running. Resolve conflicts before starting a new job.", cause);
                   }

                   // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to start the job: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           })
           .thenApply(response -> response != null ? response.jobId() : "");
   }
```

- For API details, see StartMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  StartMatchingJobCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const matchingJobOfWorkflowParams = {
    workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
  };
  try {
    const command = new StartMatchingJobCommand(matchingJobOfWorkflowParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log(`Job ID: ${response.jobID} \n
The matching job was successfully started.`);
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see StartMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use TagResource with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use TagResource.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Tags the specified schema mapping ARN.
     *
     * @param schemaMappingARN the ARN of the schema mapping to tag
     */
    public CompletableFuture<TagResourceResponse> tagEntityResource(String
schemaMappingARN) {
        Map<String, String> tags = new HashMap<>();
        tags.put("tag1", "tag1Value");
        tags.put("tag2", "tag2Value");

        TagResourceRequest request = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .resourceArn(schemaMappingARN)
            .tags(tags)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().tagResource(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully tagged the resource, log the success message.
                    logger.info("Successfully tagged the resource.");
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while tagging the resource.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("The resource to tag was
 not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to tag the resource: "
 + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  TagResourceCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const tagResourceCommandParams = {
    resourceArn: `${data.inputs.schemaArn}`,
    tags: {
      tag1: "tag1Value",
      tag2: "tag2Value",
```

```
    },
  };
  try {
    const command = new TagResourceCommand(tagResourceCommandParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully tagged the resource.");
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Code examples for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon OpenSearch Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **OpenSearch Service User Guide** – More information about OpenSearch Service.
- **OpenSearch Service API Reference** – Details about all available OpenSearch Service actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello OpenSearch Service

The following code example shows how to get started using OpenSearch Service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.OpenSearchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListVersionsRequest;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloOpenSearch {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = listVersionsAsync();
            future.join();
            System.out.println("Versions listed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Error occurred while listing versions: " +
 e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        return OpenSearchAsyncClient.builder().build();
    }

    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listVersionsAsync() {
        ListVersionsRequest request = ListVersionsRequest.builder()
```

```
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listVersions(request).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<String> versionList = response.versions();
            for (String version : versionList) {
                System.out.println("Version info: " + version);
            }
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            // Handle the exception, or propagate it as a RuntimeException
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list versions", ex);
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs
  - Hello OpenSearch Service
  - Learn core operations for Amazon OpenSearch Service using an AWS SDK
  - Actions for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTags with an AWS SDK
    - Use ChangeProgress with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateDomain with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDomain with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDomain with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListDomainNames with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListTags with an AWS SDK
    - Use UpdateDomainConfig with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon OpenSearch Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello OpenSearch Service
- Learn core operations for Amazon OpenSearch Service using an AWS SDK
- Actions for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTags with an AWS SDK
  - Use ChangeProgress with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateDomain with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDomain with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDomain with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListDomainNames with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListTags with an AWS SDK
  - Use UpdateDomainConfig with an AWS SDK

Hello OpenSearch Service

The following code example shows how to get started using OpenSearch Service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.OpenSearchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListVersionsRequest;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloOpenSearch {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = listVersionsAsync();
            future.join();
            System.out.println("Versions listed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Error occurred while listing versions: " +
 e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        return OpenSearchAsyncClient.builder().build();
    }

    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listVersionsAsync() {
        ListVersionsRequest request = ListVersionsRequest.builder()
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listVersions(request).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<String> versionList = response.versions();
            for (String version : versionList) {
                System.out.println("Version info: " + version);
            }
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            // Handle the exception, or propagate it as a RuntimeException
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list versions", ex);
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Learn core operations for Amazon OpenSearch Service using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an OpenSearch Service domain.
- Provides detailed information about a specific OpenSearch Service domain.
- Lists all the OpenSearch Service domains owned by the account.
- Waits until the OpenSearch Service domain's change status reaches a completed state.
- Modifies the configuration of an existing OpenSearch Service domain.
- Add a tag to the OpenSearch Service domain.
- Lists the tags associated with an OpenSearch Service domain.
- Removes tags from an OpenSearch Service domain.
- Deletes the OpenSearch Service domain.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating OpenSearch Service features.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.*;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class OpenSearchScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(OpenSearchScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
```

```
    static OpenSearchActions openSearchActions = new OpenSearchActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Throwable {
        logger.info("""
            Welcome to the Amazon OpenSearch Service Basics Scenario.

            Use the Amazon OpenSearch Service API to create, configure, and
 manage OpenSearch Service domains.

            The operations exposed by the AWS OpenSearch Service client are
 focused on managing the OpenSearch Service domains
            and their configurations, not the data within the domains (such as
 indexing or querying documents).
            For document management, you typically interact directly with the
 OpenSearch REST API or use other libraries,
            such as the OpenSearch Java client (https://opensearch.org/docs/
latest/clients/java/).

            Let's get started...
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            runScenario();
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    private static void runScenario() throws Throwable {
        String currentTimestamp = String.valueOf(System.currentTimeMillis());
        String domainName = "test-domain-" + currentTimestamp;

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an Amazon OpenSearch domain");
        logger.info("""
            An Amazon OpenSearch domain is a managed instance of the OpenSearch
engine,
            which is an open-source search and analytics engine derived from
Elasticsearch.
            An OpenSearch domain is essentially a cluster of compute resources
and storage that hosts
            one or more OpenSearch indexes, enabling you to perform full-text
searches, data analysis, and
            visualizations.

            In this step, we'll initiate the creation of the domain. We'll check
on the progress in a later step.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
openSearchActions.createNewDomainAsync(domainName);
            String domainId = future.join();
            logger.info("Domain successfully created with ID: {}", domainId);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause != null) {
                if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                    logger.error("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("2. Describe the Amazon OpenSearch domain");
        logger.info("In this step, we get back the Domain ARN which is used in an
upcoming step.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        String arn = "";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
openSearchActions.describeDomainAsync(domainName);
            arn = future.join();
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("3. List the domains in your account");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<List<DomainInfo>> future =
openSearchActions.listAllDomainsAsync();
            List<DomainInfo> domainInfoList = future.join();
            for (DomainInfo domain : domainInfoList) {
                logger.info("Domain name is: " + domain.domainName());
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("4. Wait until the domain's change status reaches a completed
state");
        logger.info("""
            In this step, we check on the change status of the domain that we
initiated in Step 1.
            Until we reach a COMPLETED state, we stay in a loop by sending a
DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest.

            The time it takes for a change to an OpenSearch domain to reach a
completed state can range
            from a few minutes to several hours. In this case the change is
creating a new domain that we initiated in Step 1.
            The time varies depending on the complexity of the change and the
current load on
            the OpenSearch service. In general, simple changes, such as scaling
the number of data nodes or
            updating the OpenSearch version, may take 10-30 minutes.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
openSearchActions.domainChangeProgressAsync(domainName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain change progress completed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
ResourceNotFoundException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
```

```
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException
resourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The specific AWS resource
was not found: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
resourceNotFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
resourceNotFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());

                if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException ex) {
                    logger.info("An OpenSearch error occurred: Error message: " +
ex.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
rt.getMessage());
                }
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("5. Modify the domain");
        logger.info("""
            You can change your OpenSearch domain's settings, like the number of
instances, without starting over from scratch.
            This makes it easy to adjust your domain as your needs change,
allowing you to scale up or
            down quickly without recreating everything.

            We modify the domain in this step by changing the number of
instances.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse> future =
openSearchActions.updateSpecificDomainAsync(domainName);
            UpdateDomainConfigResponse updateResponse = future.join();
            logger.info("Domain update status: " +
updateResponse.domainConfig().changeProgressDetails().configChangeStatusAsString());
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("6. Wait until the domain's change status reaches a completed
state");
        logger.info("""
            In this step, we poll the status until the domain's change status
reaches a completed state.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
openSearchActions.domainChangeProgressAsync(domainName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain change progress completed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Error message: "
+ex.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("7. Tag the Domain");
        logger.info("""
            Tags let you assign arbitrary information to an Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain so you can
            categorize and filter on that information. A tag is a key-value pair
that you define and
```

```
            associate with an OpenSearch Service domain. You can use these tags
to track costs by grouping
            expenses for similarly tagged resources.

            In this scenario, we create tags with keys "service" and "instances".
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> future =
openSearchActions.addDomainTagsAsync(arn);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain tags added successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                if (cause != null) {
                    if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException) {
                        logger.error("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " +
rt.getMessage(), rt);
                }
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("8. List Domain tags");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<ListTagsResponse> future =
openSearchActions.listDomainTagsAsync(arn);
            ListTagsResponse listTagsResponse = future.join();
            listTagsResponse.tagList().forEach(tag -> logger.info("Tag Key: " +
tag.key() + ", Tag Value: " + tag.value()));
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;

        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("9. Delete the domain");
        logger.info("""
            In this step, we'll delete the Amazon OpenSearch domain that we
created in Step 1.
            Deleting a domain will remove all data and configuration for that
domain.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<DeleteDomainResponse> future =
openSearchActions.deleteSpecificDomainAsync(domainName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain successfully deleted.");
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
 OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
 {}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
 openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;

        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("Scenario complete!");
    }
 }
```

A wrapper class for OpenSearch Service SDK methods.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.OpenSearchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.AddTagsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.AddTagsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ClusterConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.CreateDomainRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DeleteDomainRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DeleteDomainResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DescribeDomainChangeProgressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DescribeDomainRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DomainInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DomainStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.EBSOptions;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListDomainNamesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListTagsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListTagsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.Tag;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.UpdateDomainConfigRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.UpdateDomainConfigResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.VolumeType;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class OpenSearchActions {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(OpenSearchActions.class);
    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient openSearchClientAsyncClient;
    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (openSearchClientAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();
```

```
            openSearchClientAsyncClient = OpenSearchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return openSearchClientAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new OpenSearch domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the new OpenSearch domain to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the domain ID of the newly
created domain
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createNewDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .dedicatedMasterEnabled(true)
            .dedicatedMasterCount(3)
            .dedicatedMasterType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceCount(5)
            .build();

        EBSOptions ebsOptions = EBSOptions.builder()
            .ebsEnabled(true)
            .volumeSize(10)
            .volumeType(VolumeType.GP2)
            .build();

        NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions encryptionOptions =
NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .build();

        CreateDomainRequest domainRequest = CreateDomainRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .engineVersion("OpenSearch_1.0")
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .ebsOptions(ebsOptions)
            .nodeToNodeEncryptionOptions(encryptionOptions)
            .build();
        logger.info("Sending domain creation request...");
        return getAsyncClient().createDomain(domainRequest)
```

```
                .handle( (createResponse, throwable) -> {
                    if (createResponse != null) {
                        logger.info("Domain status is {}",
createResponse.domainStatus().changeProgressDetails().configChangeStatusAsString());
                        logger.info("Domain Id is {}",
createResponse.domainStatus().domainId());
                        return createResponse.domainStatus().domainId();
                    }
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create domain",
throwable);
                });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a specific domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain has
been deleted
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteDomainResponse>
deleteSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        DeleteDomainRequest domainRequest = DeleteDomainRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .build();

        // Delete domain asynchronously
        return getAsyncClient().deleteDomain(domainRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the domain: " +
domainName, exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Describes the specified domain asynchronously.
     *
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to describe
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
domain
     * @throws RuntimeException if the domain description fails
     */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        DescribeDomainRequest request = DescribeDomainRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeDomain(request)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {  // Handle both response and
exception
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe domain",
exception);
                }
                DomainStatus domainStatus = response.domainStatus();
                String endpoint = domainStatus.endpoint();
                String arn = domainStatus.arn();
                String engineVersion = domainStatus.engineVersion();
                logger.info("Domain endpoint is: " + endpoint);
                logger.info("ARN: " + arn);
                System.out.println("Engine version: " + engineVersion);

                return arn;  // Return ARN when successful
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the domains in the current AWS account.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a list
of {@link DomainInfo} objects representing
     *         the domains in the account.
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure while listing the domains.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<DomainInfo>> listAllDomainsAsync() {
        ListDomainNamesRequest namesRequest = ListDomainNamesRequest.builder()
            .engineType("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listDomainNames(namesRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list all domains",
exception);
                }
                return response.domainNames();  // Return the list of domain
names on success
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Updates the configuration of a specific domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to update
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of updating the domain configuration
     */
    public CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse>
updateSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .instanceCount(3)
            .build();

        UpdateDomainConfigRequest updateDomainConfigRequest =
UpdateDomainConfigRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().updateDomainConfig(updateDomainConfigRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update the domain
configuration", exception);
                }
                // Handle success if needed (e.g., logging or additional actions)
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously checks the progress of a domain change operation in Amazon
OpenSearch Service.
     * @param domainName the name of the OpenSearch domain to check the progress
for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain change
operation is completed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> domainChangeProgressAsync(String domainName) {
        DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest request =
DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .build();
```

```
        return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            boolean isCompleted = false;
            long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

            while (!isCompleted) {
                try {
                    // Handle the async client call using `join` to block
synchronously for the result
                    DescribeDomainChangeProgressResponse response =
getAsyncClient()
                        .describeDomainChangeProgress(request)
                        .handle((resp, ex) -> {
                            if (ex != null) {
                                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to check
domain progress", ex);
                            }
                            return resp;
                        }).join();

                    String state =
response.changeProgressStatus().statusAsString();  // Get the status as string

                    if ("COMPLETED".equals(state)) {
                        logger.info("\nOpenSearch domain status: Completed");
                        isCompleted = true;
                    } else {
                        for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) {
                            long elapsedTimeInSeconds =
(System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) / 1000;
                            String formattedTime = String.format("%02d:%02d",
elapsedTimeInSeconds / 60, elapsedTimeInSeconds % 60);
                            System.out.print("\rOpenSearch domain state: " +
state + " | Time Elapsed: " + formattedTime + " ");
                            System.out.flush();
                            Thread.sleep(1_000);
                        }
                    }
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                    throw new RuntimeException("Thread was interrupted", e);
                }
            }
        });
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.
     * @param domainARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain to add tags to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tags have been
successfully added to the domain,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> addDomainTagsAsync(String
domainARN) {
        Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
            .key("service")
            .value("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
            .key("instances")
            .value("m3.2xlarge")
            .build();

        List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
        tagList.add(tag1);
        tagList.add(tag2);

        AddTagsRequest addTagsRequest = AddTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(domainARN)
            .tagList(tagList)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().addTags(addTagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to add tags to the domain:
" + domainARN, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Added Tags");
                }
            });
    }


    /**
```

```
     * Asynchronously lists the tags associated with the specified Amazon
 Resource Name (ARN).
     * @param arn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource for which to
 list the tags
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain a
 list of the tags associated with the
     * specified ARN
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error listing the tags
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ListTagsResponse> listDomainTagsAsync(String arn) {
        ListTagsRequest tagsRequest = ListTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(arn)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listTags(tagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list domain tags",
 exception);
                }

                List<Tag> tagList = response.tagList();
                for (Tag tag : tagList) {
                    logger.info("Tag key is " + tag.key());
                    logger.info("Tag value is " + tag.value());
                }
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AddTags
  - CreateDomain
  - DeleteDomain
  - DescribeDomain
  - DescribeDomainChangeProgress
  - ListDomainNames
  - ListTags
  - UpdateDomainConfig

Actions for OpenSearch Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual OpenSearch Service actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon OpenSearch Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTags with an AWS SDK
- Use ChangeProgress with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDomain with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDomain with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDomain with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDomainNames with an AWS SDK
- Use ListTags with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateDomainConfig with an AWS SDK

Use AddTags with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `AddTags`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.
     * @param domainARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain to add tags to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tags have been
successfully added to the domain,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> addDomainTagsAsync(String
domainARN) {
        Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
            .key("service")
            .value("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
            .key("instances")
            .value("m3.2xlarge")
            .build();

        List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
        tagList.add(tag1);
        tagList.add(tag2);

        AddTagsRequest addTagsRequest = AddTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(domainARN)
            .tagList(tagList)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().addTags(addTagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to add tags to the domain:
" + domainARN, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Added Tags");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use ChangeProgress with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use ChangeProgress.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously checks the progress of a domain change operation in Amazon
OpenSearch Service.
    * @param domainName the name of the OpenSearch domain to check the progress
for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain change
operation is completed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> domainChangeProgressAsync(String domainName) {
       DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest request =
DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .build();

       return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
           boolean isCompleted = false;
           long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

           while (!isCompleted) {
               try {
                   // Handle the async client call using `join` to block
synchronously for the result
                   DescribeDomainChangeProgressResponse response =
getAsyncClient()
                       .describeDomainChangeProgress(request)
                       .handle((resp, ex) -> {
                           if (ex != null) {
                               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to check
domain progress", ex);
```

```
                            }
                            return resp;
                        }).join();

                    String state =
response.changeProgressStatus().statusAsString();  // Get the status as string

                    if ("COMPLETED".equals(state)) {
                        logger.info("\nOpenSearch domain status: Completed");
                        isCompleted = true;
                    } else {
                        for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) {
                            long elapsedTimeInSeconds =
(System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) / 1000;
                            String formattedTime = String.format("%02d:%02d",
elapsedTimeInSeconds / 60, elapsedTimeInSeconds % 60);
                            System.out.print("\rOpenSearch domain state: " +
state + " | Time Elapsed: " + formattedTime + " ");
                            System.out.flush();
                            Thread.sleep(1_000);
                        }
                    }
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                    throw new RuntimeException("Thread was interrupted", e);
                }
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ChangeProgress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateDomain` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDomain`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new OpenSearch domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the new OpenSearch domain to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the domain ID of the newly
created domain
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createNewDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .dedicatedMasterEnabled(true)
            .dedicatedMasterCount(3)
            .dedicatedMasterType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceCount(5)
            .build();

        EBSOptions ebsOptions = EBSOptions.builder()
            .ebsEnabled(true)
            .volumeSize(10)
            .volumeType(VolumeType.GP2)
            .build();

        NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions encryptionOptions =
NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .build();

        CreateDomainRequest domainRequest = CreateDomainRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .engineVersion("OpenSearch_1.0")
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .ebsOptions(ebsOptions)
            .nodeToNodeEncryptionOptions(encryptionOptions)
```

```
            .build();
        logger.info("Sending domain creation request...");
        return getAsyncClient().createDomain(domainRequest)
                .handle( (createResponse, throwable) -> {
                    if (createResponse != null) {
                        logger.info("Domain status is {}",
 createResponse.domainStatus().changeProgressDetails().configChangeStatusAsString());
                        logger.info("Domain Id is {}",
 createResponse.domainStatus().domainId());
                        return createResponse.domainStatus().domainId();
                    }
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create domain",
 throwable);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewDomain(domainNameVal: String?) {
    val clusterConfigOb =
        ClusterConfig {
            dedicatedMasterEnabled = true
            dedicatedMasterCount = 3
            dedicatedMasterType =
 OpenSearchPartitionInstanceType.fromValue("t2.small.search")
            instanceType =
 OpenSearchPartitionInstanceType.fromValue("t2.small.search")
            instanceCount = 5
        }

    val ebsOptionsOb =
```

```
        EbsOptions {
            ebsEnabled = true
            volumeSize = 10
            volumeType = VolumeType.Gp2
        }

    val encryptionOptionsOb =
        NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions {
            enabled = true
        }

    val request =
        CreateDomainRequest {
            domainName = domainNameVal
            engineVersion = "OpenSearch_1.0"
            clusterConfig = clusterConfigOb
            ebsOptions = ebsOptionsOb
            nodeToNodeEncryptionOptions = encryptionOptionsOb
        }

    println("Sending domain creation request...")
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient
 ->
        val createResponse = searchClient.createDomain(request)
        println("Domain status is ${createResponse.domainStatus}")
        println("Domain Id is ${createResponse.domainStatus?.domainId}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDomain in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteDomain` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDomain`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a specific domain asynchronously.
    * @param domainName the name of the domain to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain has
been deleted
    * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteDomainResponse>
deleteSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
       DeleteDomainRequest domainRequest = DeleteDomainRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .build();

       // Delete domain asynchronously
       return getAsyncClient().deleteDomain(domainRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the domain: " +
domainName, exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSpecificDomain(domainNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteDomainRequest {
            domainName = domainNameVal
        }
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient
 ->
        searchClient.deleteDomain(request)
        println("$domainNameVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDomain in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribeDomain` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDomain`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the configuration of a specific domain asynchronously.
    * @param domainName the name of the domain to update
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of updating the domain configuration
    */
   public CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse>
updateSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
       ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
           .instanceCount(3)
           .build();

       UpdateDomainConfigRequest updateDomainConfigRequest =
UpdateDomainConfigRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().updateDomainConfig(updateDomainConfigRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update the domain
configuration", exception);
               }
               // Handle success if needed (e.g., logging or additional actions)
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListDomainNames` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListDomainNames`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the domains in the current AWS account.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a list
of {@link DomainInfo} objects representing
     *         the domains in the account.
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure while listing the domains.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<DomainInfo>> listAllDomainsAsync() {
        ListDomainNamesRequest namesRequest = ListDomainNamesRequest.builder()
            .engineType("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listDomainNames(namesRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list all domains",
exception);
                }
                return response.domainNames();  // Return the list of domain
names on success
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDomainNames in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllDomains() {
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient
 ->
        val response: ListDomainNamesResponse =
 searchClient.listDomainNames(ListDomainNamesRequest {})
        response.domainNames?.forEach { domain ->
            println("Domain name is " + domain.domainName)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDomainNames in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListTags` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListTags`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously adds tags to an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.
    * @param domainARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain to add tags to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tags have been
successfully added to the domain,
    * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> addDomainTagsAsync(String
domainARN) {
       Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
           .key("service")
           .value("OpenSearch")
           .build();

       Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
           .key("instances")
           .value("m3.2xlarge")
           .build();

       List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
       tagList.add(tag1);
       tagList.add(tag2);

       AddTagsRequest addTagsRequest = AddTagsRequest.builder()
           .arn(domainARN)
           .tagList(tagList)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().addTags(addTagsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to add tags to the domain:
" + domainARN, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Added Tags");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTags in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UpdateDomainConfig` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateDomainConfig`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the configuration of a specific domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to update
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of updating the domain configuration
     */
    public CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse>
updateSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .instanceCount(3)
```

```
            .build();

        UpdateDomainConfigRequest updateDomainConfigRequest =
 UpdateDomainConfigRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().updateDomainConfig(updateDomainConfigRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update the domain
 configuration", exception);
                }
                // Handle success if needed (e.g., logging or additional actions)
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateDomainConfig in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateSpecificDomain(domainNameVal: String?) {
    val clusterConfigOb =
        ClusterConfig {
            instanceCount = 3
        }

    val request =
        UpdateDomainConfigRequest {
            domainName = domainNameVal
            clusterConfig = clusterConfigOb
        }
```

```
    println("Sending domain update request...")
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient
 ->
        val updateResponse = searchClient.updateDomainConfig(request)
        println("Domain update response from Amazon OpenSearch Service:")
        println(updateResponse.toString())
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateDomainConfig in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for EventBridge using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon EventBridge with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **EventBridge User Guide** – More information about EventBridge.
- **EventBridge API Reference** – Details about all available EventBridge actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello EventBridge

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.EventBridge;
using Amazon.EventBridge.Model;

namespace EventBridgeActions;

public static class HelloEventBridge
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var eventBridgeClient = new AmazonEventBridgeClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon EventBridge! Following are some of your
 EventBuses:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five event buses.
        var response = await eventBridgeClient.ListEventBusesAsync(
            new ListEventBusesRequest()
            {
                Limit = 5
            });

        foreach (var eventBus in response.EventBuses)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tEventBus: {eventBus.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {eventBus.Arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPolicy: {eventBus.Policy}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 */
public class HelloEventBridge {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        EventBridgeClient eventBrClient = EventBridgeClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listBuses(eventBrClient);
        eventBrClient.close();
    }

    public static void listBuses(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListEventBusesRequest busesRequest = ListEventBusesRequest.builder()
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();
```

```
            ListEventBusesResponse response =
 eventBrClient.listEventBuses(busesRequest);
            List<EventBus> buses = response.eventBuses();
            for (EventBus bus : buses) {
                System.out.println("The name of the event bus is: " +
 bus.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN of the event bus is: " + bus.arn());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.EventBridgeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.model.ListEventBusesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.model.ListEventBusesResponse

suspend fun main() {
    listBusesHello()
}

suspend fun listBusesHello() {
    val request =
        ListEventBusesRequest {
            limit = 10
        }
```

```
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response: ListEventBusesResponse =
 eventBrClient.listEventBuses(request)
        response.eventBuses?.forEach { bus ->
            println("The name of the event bus is ${bus.name}")
            println("The ARN of the event bus is ${bus.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for EventBridge using AWS SDKs
  - Hello EventBridge
  - Learn the basics of EventBridge with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for EventBridge using AWS SDKs
    - Use DeleteRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DisableRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use EnableRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListRuleNamesByTarget with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListRules with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTargetsByRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutTargets with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RemoveTargets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for EventBridge using AWS SDKs
  - Create and trigger a rule in Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK
  - Send S3 event notifications to Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK

- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

Basic examples for EventBridge using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon EventBridge with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello EventBridge
- Learn the basics of EventBridge with an AWS SDK
- Actions for EventBridge using AWS SDKs
  - Use DeleteRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DisableRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use EnableRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListRuleNamesByTarget with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListRules with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTargetsByRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutTargets with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use RemoveTargets with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello EventBridge

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.EventBridge;
using Amazon.EventBridge.Model;

namespace EventBridgeActions;

public static class HelloEventBridge
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var eventBridgeClient = new AmazonEventBridgeClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon EventBridge! Following are some of your
 EventBuses:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five event buses.
        var response = await eventBridgeClient.ListEventBusesAsync(
            new ListEventBusesRequest()
            {
                Limit = 5
            });

        foreach (var eventBus in response.EventBuses)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tEventBus: {eventBus.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {eventBus.Arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPolicy: {eventBus.Policy}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 */
public class HelloEventBridge {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        EventBridgeClient eventBrClient = EventBridgeClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listBuses(eventBrClient);
        eventBrClient.close();
    }

    public static void listBuses(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListEventBusesRequest busesRequest = ListEventBusesRequest.builder()
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();

            ListEventBusesResponse response =
 eventBrClient.listEventBuses(busesRequest);
            List<EventBus> buses = response.eventBuses();
            for (EventBus bus : buses) {
```

```
                System.out.println("The name of the event bus is: " +
 bus.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN of the event bus is: " + bus.arn());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.EventBridgeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.model.ListEventBusesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.model.ListEventBusesResponse

suspend fun main() {
    listBusesHello()
}

suspend fun listBusesHello() {
    val request =
        ListEventBusesRequest {
            limit = 10
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
```

```
        val response: ListEventBusesResponse =
 eventBrClient.listEventBuses(request)
        response.eventBuses?.forEach { bus ->
            println("The name of the event bus is ${bus.name}")
            println("The ARN of the event bus is ${bus.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Learn the basics of EventBridge with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a rule and add a target to it.
- Enable and disable rules.
- List and update rules and targets.
- Send events, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class EventBridgeScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:
```

```
    - Create a rule.
    - Add a target to a rule.
    - Enable and disable rules.
    - List rules and targets.
    - Update rules and targets.
    - Send events.
    - Delete the rule.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static EventBridgeWrapper _eventBridgeWrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    private static IAmazonIdentityManagementService? _iamClient = null!;
    private static IAmazonSimpleNotificationService? _snsClient = null!;
    private static IAmazonS3 _s3Client = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEventBridge>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
            .AddTransient<EventBridgeWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
```

```
            .CreateLogger<EventBridgeScenario>();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        string topicArn = "";
        string roleArn = "";

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            roleArn = await CreateRole();

            await CreateBucketWithEventBridgeEvents();

            await AddEventRule(roleArn);

            await ListEventRules();

            topicArn = await CreateSnsTopic();

            var email = await SubscribeToSnsTopic(topicArn);

            await AddSnsTarget(topicArn);

            await ListTargets();

            await ListRulesForTarget(topicArn);

            await UploadS3File(_s3Client);

            await ChangeRuleState(false);

            await GetRuleState();

            await UpdateSnsEventRule(topicArn);

            await ChangeRuleState(true);

            await UploadS3File(_s3Client);

            await UpdateToCustomRule(topicArn);
```

```
            await TriggerCustomRule(email);

            await CleanupResources(topicArn);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
            await CleanupResources(topicArn);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario is
complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _eventBridgeWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<EventBridgeWrapper>();
        _snsClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>();
        _s3Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonS3>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by EventBridge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a role to use with EventBridge and attaching
managed policy AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        var roleName = _configuration["roleName"];
```

```
        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                "\"Principal\": {" +
                                $"\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                                "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = roleName
            });

        await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
            new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                PolicyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess",
                RoleName = roleName
            });
        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with
 EventBridge events enabled.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateBucketWithEventBridgeEvents()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating an S3 bucket with EventBridge events
 enabled.");

        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
```

```
        var bucketExists = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_s3Client,
            testBucketName);

        if (!bucketExists)
        {
            await _s3Client.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = testBucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true
            });
        }

        await _s3Client.PutBucketNotificationAsync(new
PutBucketNotificationRequest()
        {
            BucketName = testBucketName,
            EventBridgeConfiguration = new EventBridgeConfiguration()
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded bucket {testBucketName} with EventBridge
events enabled.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UploadS3File(IAmazonS3 s3Client)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Uploading a file to the test bucket. This will trigger
a subscription email.");

        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        var fileName = $"example_upload_{DateTime.UtcNow.Ticks}.txt";

        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
```

```
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for testing uploads.");
        }

        await s3Client.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest()
        {
            FilePath = fileName,
            BucketName = testBucketName
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPress Enter to continue.");
        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic to use as
an EventBridge target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateSnsTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic
for email subscriptions.");

        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];

        string topicPolicy = "{" +
                             "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                             "\"Statement\": [{" +
                             "\"Sid\": \"EventBridgePublishTopic\"," +
                             "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                             "\"Principal\": {" +
                             $"\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                             "}," +
                             "\"Resource\": \"*\"," +
                             "\"Action\": \"sns:Publish\"" +
                             "}]" +
                             "}";

        var topicAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>()
```

```
        {
            { "Policy", topicPolicy }
        };

        var topicResponse = await _snsClient!.CreateTopicAsync(new
CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
            Attributes = topicAttributes

        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded topic {topicName} for email subscriptions.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return topicResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a user email to an SNS topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's email.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SubscribeToSnsTopic(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));


        string email = "";
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS
topic:");
            email = Console.ReadLine()!;
        }

        var subscriptions = new List<string>();
        var paginatedSubscriptions =
_snsClient!.Paginators.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
            new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
```

```
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var subscription in paginatedSubscriptions.Subscriptions)
        {
            subscriptions.Add(subscription.Endpoint);
        }

        if (subscriptions.Contains(email))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tYour email is already subscribed.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return email;
        }

        await _snsClient.SubscribeAsync(new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "email",
            Endpoint = email
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the link in the email you received to confirm
your subscription, then press Enter to continue.");

        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return email;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add a rule which triggers when a file is uploaded to an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role used by EventBridge.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddEventRule(string roleArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating an EventBridge event that sends an email when
an Amazon S3 object is created.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
```

```
        await _eventBridgeWrapper.PutS3UploadRule(roleArn, eventRuleName,
testBucketName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded event rule {eventRuleName} for bucket
{testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an SNS target to the rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddSnsTarget(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Adding a target to the rule to that sends an email
when the rule is triggered.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
        await _eventBridgeWrapper.AddSnsTargetToRule(eventRuleName, topicArn);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded event rule {eventRuleName} with Amazon SNS
target {topicName} for bucket {testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the event rules on the default event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListEventRules()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Current event rules:");

        var rules = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllRulesForEventBus();
        rules.ForEach(r => Console.WriteLine($"\tRule: {r.Name} Description:
{r.Description} State: {r.State}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the event target to use a transform.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The SNS topic ARN target to update.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UpdateSnsEventRule(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Let's update the event target with a transform.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        await
_eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(eventRuleName,
topicArn);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event rule {eventRuleName} with Amazon SNS
target {topicArn} for bucket {testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the rule to use a custom event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UpdateToCustomRule(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Updating the event pattern to be triggered by a custom
event instead.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateCustomEventPattern(eventRuleName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event rule {eventRuleName} to custom
pattern.");
        await
_eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(eventRuleName,
            topicArn);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event target {topicArn}.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Send rule events for a custom rule using the user's email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email address to include.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task TriggerCustomRule(string email)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Sending an event to trigger the rule. This will
trigger a subscription email.");

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.PutCustomEmailEvent(email);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tEvents have been sent. Press Enter to continue.");
        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets for a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListTargets()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("List all of the targets for a particular rule.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var targets = await
_eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllTargetsOnRule(eventRuleName);
        targets.ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"\tTarget: {t.Arn} Id: {t.Id}
Input: {t.Input}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the rules for a particular target.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListRulesForTarget(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("List all of the rules for a particular target.");

        var rules = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(topicArn);
        rules.ForEach(r => Console.WriteLine($"\tRule: {r}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable or disable a particular rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="isEnabled">True to enable the rule, otherwise false.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ChangeRuleState(bool isEnabled)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        if (!isEnabled)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Disabling the rule: {eventRuleName}");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.DisableRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enabling the rule: {eventRuleName}");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.EnableRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the current state of the rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetRuleState()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        var state = await
_eventBridgeWrapper.GetRuleStateByRuleName(eventRuleName);
        Console.WriteLine($"Rule {eventRuleName} is in current state {state}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic to clean up.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete all targets and event rule
{eventRuleName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRemoving all targets from the event rule.");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName);

            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting event rule.");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.DeleteRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }

        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon SNS subscription topic
{topicName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting topic.");
            await _snsClient!.DeleteTopicAsync(new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        }

        var bucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon S3 bucket {bucketName}? (y/n)"))
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting bucket.");
            // Delete all objects in the bucket.
            var deleteList = await _s3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(new
 ListObjectsV2Request()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
            await _s3Client.DeleteObjectsAsync(new DeleteObjectsRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = deleteList.S3Objects
                    .Select(o => new KeyVersion { Key = o.Key }).ToList()
            });
            // Now delete the bucket.
            await _s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
        }

        var roleName = _configuration["roleName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {roleName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policy and deleting role.");

            await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess",
            });

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps EventBridge operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon EventBridge operations.
/// </summary>
public class EventBridgeWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonEventBridge _amazonEventBridge;
    private readonly ILogger<EventBridgeWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EventBridge wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonEventBridge">The injected EventBridge client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public EventBridgeWrapper(IAmazonEventBridge amazonEventBridge,
 ILogger<EventBridgeWrapper> logger)

    {
        _amazonEventBridge = amazonEventBridge;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the state for a rule by the rule name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="eventBusName">The optional name of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the rule.</returns>
    public async Task<RuleState> GetRuleStateByRuleName(string ruleName, string?
eventBusName = null)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DescribeRuleAsync(
            new DescribeRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                EventBusName = eventBusName
            });
        return ruleResponse.State;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.EnableRuleAsync(
            new EnableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DisableRuleAsync(
            new DisableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the rules on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional ARN of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rules.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Rule>> ListAllRulesForEventBus(string? eventBusArn =
null)
    {
        var results = new List<Rule>();
        var request = new ListRulesRequest()
        {
            EventBusName = eventBusArn
        };
        // Get all of the pages of rules.
        ListRulesResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRulesAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Rules);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets matching a rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of targets.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Target>> ListAllTargetsOnRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var results = new List<Target>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
```

```
            results.AddRange(response.Targets);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List names of all rules matching a target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rule names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(string targetArn)
    {
        var results = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest()
        {
            TargetArn = targetArn
        };
        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await
 _amazonEventBridge.ListRuleNamesByTargetAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.RuleNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created
 in a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name to give the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to trigger the event.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutS3UploadRule(string roleArn, string ruleName,
 string bucketName)
```

```
    {
        string eventPattern = "{" +
                                "\"source\": [\"aws.s3\"]," +
                                    "\"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"]," +
                                    "\"detail\": {" +
                                        "\"bucket\": {" +
                                            "\"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]"
+
                                        "}" +
                                    "}" +
                                "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Example S3 upload rule for EventBridge",
                RoleArn = roleArn,
                EventPattern = eventPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the
default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(string
ruleName, string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
```

```
                {
                    InputPathsMap = new Dictionary<string, string>()
                    {
                        {"bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name"},
                        {"time", "$.time"}
                    },
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to
bucket <bucket> at <time>.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update a custom rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the
default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(string
ruleName, string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
```

```
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.
\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
 {e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an event to the event bus that includes an email, message, and time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use in the event detail of the custom
 event.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutCustomEmailEvent(string email)
    {
        var eventDetail = new
        {
            UserEmail = email,
            Message = "This event was generated by example code.",
            UtcTime = DateTime.UtcNow.ToString("g")
```

```
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutEventsAsync(
            new PutEventsRequest()
            {
                Entries = new List<PutEventsRequestEntry>()
                {
                    new PutEventsRequestEntry()
                    {
                        Source = "ExampleSource",
                        Detail = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventDetail),
                        DetailType = "ExampleType"
                    }
                }
            });

        return response.FailedEntryCount == 0;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update a rule to use a custom defined event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the updated rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomEventPattern(string ruleName)
    {
        string customEventsPattern = "{" +
                                     "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                                     "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                                     "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Custom test rule",
                EventPattern = customEventsPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an Amazon SNS target topic to a rule.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the Amazon SNS target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional event bus name, uses default if
empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddSnsTargetToRule(string ruleName, string
targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // Create the list of targets and add a new target.
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Arn = targetArn,
                Id = targetID
            }
        };

        // Add the targets to the rule.
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });

        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var targetIds = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse targetsResponse;
        do
        {
            targetsResponse = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            targetIds.AddRange(targetsResponse.Targets.Select(t => t.Id));
            request.NextToken = targetsResponse.NextToken;

        } while (targetsResponse.NextToken is not null);

        var removeResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.RemoveTargetsAsync(
            new RemoveTargetsRequest()
            {
                Rule = ruleName,
                Ids = targetIds
            });

        if (removeResponse.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            removeResponse.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to remove target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage},
code {e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return removeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.DeleteRuleAsync(
            new DeleteRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - DeleteRule
  - DescribeRule
  - DisableRule
  - EnableRule
  - ListRuleNamesByTarget
  - ListRules
  - ListTargetsByRule
  - PutEvents
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * This Java V2 example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:
 *
 * 1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to use with
 * Amazon EventBridge.
 * 2. Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with EventBridge events
 * enabled.
 * 3. Creates a rule that triggers when an object is uploaded to Amazon S3.
 * 4. Lists rules on the event bus.
 * 5. Creates a new Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic and
 * lets the user subscribe to it.
 * 6. Adds a target to the rule that sends an email to the specified topic.
 * 7. Creates an EventBridge event that sends an email when an Amazon S3 object
 * is created.
 * 8. Lists Targets.
 * 9. Lists the rules for the same target.
 * 10. Triggers the rule by uploading a file to the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 11. Disables a specific rule.
 * 12. Checks and print the state of the rule.
 * 13. Adds a transform to the rule to change the text of the email.
 * 14. Enables a specific rule.
 * 15. Triggers the updated rule by uploading a file to the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 16. Updates the rule to be a custom rule pattern.
 * 17. Sending an event to trigger the rule.
 * 18. Cleans up resources.
 *
 */
public class EventbridgeMVP {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException,
 IOException {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                    <roleName> <bucketName> <topicName> <eventRuleName>

                Where:
                    roleName - The name of the role to create.
                    bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
bucket name to create.
                    topicName - The name of the Amazon Simple Notification
Service (Amazon SNS) topic to create.
                    eventRuleName - The Amazon EventBridge rule name to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String polJSON = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        Scanner sc = new Scanner(System.in);
        String roleName = args[0];
        String bucketName = args[1];
        String topicName = args[2];
        String eventRuleName = args[3];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EventBridgeClient eventBrClient = EventBridgeClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        Region regionGl = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
```

```
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(regionGl)
                .build();

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example
scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out
                .println("1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
role to use with Amazon EventBridge.");
        String roleArn = createIAMRole(iam, roleName, polJSON);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create an S3 bucket with EventBridge events
enabled.");
        if (checkBucket(s3Client, bucketName)) {
            System.out.println("Bucket " + bucketName + " already exists. Ending
this scenario.");
            System.exit(1);
        }

        createBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
        Thread.sleep(3000);
        setBucketNotification(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create a rule that triggers when an object is
uploaded to Amazon S3.");
        Thread.sleep(10000);
        addEventRule(eventBrClient, roleArn, bucketName, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. List rules on the event bus.");
        listRules(eventBrClient);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Create a new SNS topic for testing and let the
user subscribe to the topic.");
        String topicArn = createSnsTopic(snsClient, topicName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Add a target to the rule that sends an email to
the specified topic.");
        System.out.println("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS
topic:");
        String email = sc.nextLine();
        subEmail(snsClient, topicArn, email);
        System.out.println(
                "Use the link in the email you received to confirm your
subscription. Then, press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Create an EventBridge event that sends an email
when an Amazon S3 object is created.");
        addSnsEventRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName, topicArn, topicName,
eventRuleName, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 8. List Targets.");
        listTargets(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 9. List the rules for the same target.");
        listTargetRules(eventBrClient, topicArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 10. Trigger the rule by uploading a file to the S3
bucket.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        uploadTextFiletoS3(s3Client, bucketName);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Disable a specific rule.");
        changeRuleState(eventBrClient, eventRuleName, false);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Check and print the state of the rule.");
        checkRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Add a transform to the rule to change the text of
the email.");
        updateSnsEventRule(eventBrClient, topicArn, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Enable a specific rule.");
        changeRuleState(eventBrClient, eventRuleName, true);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 15. Trigger the updated rule by uploading a file to
the S3 bucket.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        uploadTextFiletoS3(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 16. Update the rule to be a custom rule pattern.");
        updateToCustomRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println("Updated event rule " + eventRuleName + " to use a
custom pattern.");
        updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(eventBrClient, topicArn,
eventRuleName);
        System.out.println("Updated event target " + topicArn + ".");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("17. Sending an event to trigger the rule. This will
trigger a subscription email.");
```

```
        triggerCustomRule(eventBrClient, email);
        System.out.println("Events have been sent. Press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("18. Clean up resources.");
        System.out.println("Do you want to clean up resources (y/n)");
        String ans = sc.nextLine();
        if (ans.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            cleanupResources(eventBrClient, snsClient, s3Client, iam, topicArn,
eventRuleName, bucketName, roleName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The resources will not be cleaned up. ");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario has
successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void cleanupResources(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient,
SnsClient snsClient, S3Client s3Client,
            IamClient iam, String topicArn, String eventRuleName, String
bucketName, String roleName) {
        System.out.println("Removing all targets from the event rule.");
        deleteTargetsFromRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        deleteRuleByName(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);
        deleteS3Bucket(s3Client, bucketName);
        deleteRole(iam, roleName);
    }

    public static void deleteRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String policyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess";
        DetachRolePolicyRequest policyRequest = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                .policyArn(policyArn)
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        iam.detachRolePolicy(policyRequest);
```

```
        System.out.println("Successfully detached policy " + policyArn + " from
role " + roleName);

        // Delete the role.
        DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);
    }

    public static void deleteS3Bucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        // Remove all the objects from the S3 bucket.
        ListObjectsRequest listObjects = ListObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        ListObjectsResponse res = s3Client.listObjects(listObjects);
        List<S3Object> objects = res.contents();
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> toDelete = new ArrayList<>();

        for (S3Object myValue : objects) {
            toDelete.add(ObjectIdentifier.builder()
                    .key(myValue.key())
                    .build());
        }

        DeleteObjectsRequest dor = DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .delete(Delete.builder()
                        .objects(toDelete).build())
                .build();

        s3Client.deleteObjects(dor);

        // Delete the S3 bucket.
        DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        System.out.println("You have deleted the bucket and the objects");
    }
```

```
   // Delete the SNS topic.
   public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
       try {
           DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                   .topicArn(topicArn)
                   .build();

           DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
           System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

       } catch (SnsException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static void deleteRuleByName(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
       DeleteRuleRequest ruleRequest = DeleteRuleRequest.builder()
               .name(ruleName)
               .build();

       eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest);
       System.out.println("Successfully deleted the rule");
   }

   public static void deleteTargetsFromRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient,
String eventRuleName) {
       // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
       ListTargetsByRuleRequest request = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
               .rule(eventRuleName)
               .build();

       ListTargetsByRuleResponse response =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request);
       List<Target> allTargets = response.targets();

       // Get all targets and delete them.
       for (Target myTarget : allTargets) {
           RemoveTargetsRequest removeTargetsRequest =
RemoveTargetsRequest.builder()
                   .rule(eventRuleName)
```

```
                    .ids(myTarget.id())
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest);
            System.out.println("Successfully removed the target");
        }
    }

    public static void triggerCustomRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
email) {
        String json = "{" +
                "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
                "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"," +
                "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
                "}";

        PutEventsRequestEntry entry = PutEventsRequestEntry.builder()
                .source("ExampleSource")
                .detail(json)
                .detailType("ExampleType")
                .build();

        PutEventsRequest eventsRequest = PutEventsRequest.builder()
                .entries(entry)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest);
    }

    public static void updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(EventBridgeClient
eventBrClient, String topicArn,
            String ruleName) {
        String targetId = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        InputTransformer inputTransformer = InputTransformer.builder()
                .inputTemplate("\"Notification: sample event was received.\"")
                .build();

        Target target = Target.builder()
                .id(targetId)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .inputTransformer(inputTransformer)
                .build();

        try {
```

```
            PutTargetsRequest targetsRequest = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .targets(target)
                    .eventBusName(null)
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest);
        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateToCustomRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 ruleName) {
        String customEventsPattern = "{" +
                "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                "}";

        PutRuleRequest request = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                .name(ruleName)
                .description("Custom test rule")
                .eventPattern(customEventsPattern)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putRule(request);
    }

    // Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    public static void updateSnsEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 topicArn, String ruleName) {
        String targetId = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Map<String, String> myMap = new HashMap<>();
        myMap.put("bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name");
        myMap.put("time", "$.time");

        InputTransformer inputTransformer = InputTransformer.builder()
                .inputTemplate("\"Notification: an object was uploaded to bucket
 <bucket> at <time>.\"")
                .inputPathsMap(myMap)
                .build();

        Target target = Target.builder()
```

```
                .id(targetId)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .inputTransformer(inputTransformer)
                .build();

        try {
            PutTargetsRequest targetsRequest = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .targets(target)
                    .eventBusName(null)
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest);

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 eventRuleName) {
        try {
            DescribeRuleRequest ruleRequest = DescribeRuleRequest.builder()
                    .name(eventRuleName)
                    .build();

            DescribeRuleResponse response =
 eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest);
            System.out.println("The state of the rule is " +
 response.stateAsString());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void changeRuleState(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 eventRuleName, Boolean isEnabled) {
        try {
            if (!isEnabled) {
                System.out.println("Disabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                DisableRuleRequest ruleRequest = DisableRuleRequest.builder()
```

```
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();

                eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest);
            } else {
                System.out.println("Enabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                EnableRuleRequest ruleRequest = EnableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();
                eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest);
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
    public static void uploadTextFiletoS3(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName)
throws IOException {
        // Create a unique file name.
        String fileSuffix = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyyMMddHHmmss").format(new
Date());
        String fileName = "TextFile" + fileSuffix + ".txt";

        File myFile = new File(fileName);
        FileWriter fw = new FileWriter(myFile.getAbsoluteFile());
        BufferedWriter bw = new BufferedWriter(fw);
        bw.write("This is a sample file for testing uploads.");
        bw.close();

        try {
            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(fileName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromFile(myFile));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void listTargetRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
topicArn) {
        ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest.builder()
                .targetArn(topicArn)
                .build();

        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response =
eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest);
        List<String> rules = response.ruleNames();
        for (String rule : rules) {
            System.out.println("The rule name is " + rule);
        }
    }

    public static void listTargets(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest ruleRequest = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
                .rule(ruleName)
                .build();

        ListTargetsByRuleResponse res =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest);
        List<Target> targetsList = res.targets();
        for (Target target: targetsList) {
            System.out.println("Target ARN: "+target.arn());
        }
    }

    // Add a rule which triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3
    // bucket.
    public static void addSnsEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName, String topicArn,
            String topicName, String eventRuleName, String bucketName) {
        String targetID = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Target myTarget = Target.builder()
                .id(targetID)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .build();

        List<Target> targets = new ArrayList<>();
        targets.add(myTarget);
```

```
        PutTargetsRequest request = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                .eventBusName(null)
                .targets(targets)
                .rule(ruleName)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putTargets(request);
        System.out.println("Added event rule " + eventRuleName + " with Amazon
SNS target " + topicName + " for bucket "
                + bucketName + ".");
    }

    public static void subEmail(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
email) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("email")
                    .endpoint(email)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + result.subscriptionArn() +
"\n\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListRulesRequest rulesRequest = ListRulesRequest.builder()
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();

            ListRulesResponse response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest);
            List<Rule> rules = response.rules();
            for (Rule rule : rules) {
                System.out.println("The rule name is : " + rule.name());
```

```
                System.out.println("The rule description is : " +
rule.description());
                System.out.println("The rule state is : " +
rule.stateAsString());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createSnsTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        String topicPolicy = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Sid\": \"EventBridgePublishTopic\"," +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "}," +
                "\"Resource\": \"*\"," +
                "\"Action\": \"sns:Publish\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        Map<String, String> topicAttributes = new HashMap<>();
        topicAttributes.put("Policy", topicPolicy);
        CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

        CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
        System.out.println("Added topic " + topicName + " for email
subscriptions.");
        return response.topicArn();
    }

    // Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created
in
    // a bucket.
    public static void addEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
roleArn, String bucketName,
```

```
            String eventRuleName) {
        String pattern = "{\n" +
                "  \"source\": [\"aws.s3\"],\n" +
                "  \"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"],\n" +
                "  \"detail\": {\n" +
                "    \"bucket\": {\n" +
                "      \"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]\n" +
                "    }\n" +
                "  }\n" +
                "}";

        try {
            PutRuleRequest ruleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java v2")
                    .name(eventRuleName)
                    .eventPattern(pattern)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .build();

            PutRuleResponse ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the new rule is " +
ruleResponse.ruleArn());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Determine if the S3 bucket exists.
    public static Boolean checkBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest);
            return true;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }
```

```
    // Set the S3 bucket notification configuration.
    public static void setBucketNotification(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName) {
        try {
            EventBridgeConfiguration eventBridgeConfiguration =
EventBridgeConfiguration.builder()
                    .build();

            NotificationConfiguration configuration =
NotificationConfiguration.builder()
                    .eventBridgeConfiguration(eventBridgeConfiguration)
                    .build();

            PutBucketNotificationConfigurationRequest configurationRequest =
PutBucketNotificationConfigurationRequest
                    .builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .notificationConfiguration(configuration)
                    .skipDestinationValidation(true)
                    .build();

            s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(configurationRequest);
            System.out.println("Added bucket " + bucketName + " with EventBridge
events enabled.");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
```

```
            WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse> waiterResponse =
 s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
 polJSON) {
        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(polJSON)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            AttachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
 AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .policyArn("arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess")
                    .build();

            iam.attachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
            return response.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteRule
  - DescribeRule

- DisableRule
- EnableRule
- ListRuleNamesByTarget
- ListRules
- ListTargetsByRule
- PutEvents
- PutRule
- PutTargets

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Kotlin example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:

 1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to use with Amazon
 EventBridge.
 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with EventBridge
 events enabled.
 3. Creates a rule that triggers when an object is uploaded to Amazon S3.
 4. Lists rules on the event bus.
 5. Creates a new Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic and lets
 the user subscribe to it.
 6. Adds a target to the rule that sends an email to the specified topic.
```

```
 7. Creates an EventBridge event that sends an email when an Amazon S3 object is
 created.
 8. Lists targets.
 9. Lists the rules for the same target.
 10. Triggers the rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.
 11. Disables a specific rule.
 12. Checks and prints the state of the rule.
 13. Adds a transform to the rule to change the text of the email.
 14. Enables a specific rule.
 15. Triggers the updated rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.
 16. Updates the rule to a custom rule pattern.
 17. Sends an event to trigger the rule.
 18. Cleans up resources.
*/
val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <roleName> <bucketName> <topicName> <eventRuleName>

    Where:
        roleName - The name of the role to create.
        bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket name to
 create.
        topicName - The name of the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon
 SNS) topic to create.
        eventRuleName - The Amazon EventBridge rule name to create.
    """
    val polJSON =
        "{" +
            "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            "\"Statement\": [{" +
            "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "\"Principal\": {" +
            "\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
            "}," +
            "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
            "}]" +
            "}"

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
```

```
    }

    val sc = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val roleName = args[0]
    val bucketName = args[1]
    val topicName = args[2]
    val eventRuleName = args[3]

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to use
 with Amazon EventBridge.")
    val roleArn = createIAMRole(roleName, polJSON)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Create an S3 bucket with EventBridge events enabled.")
    if (checkBucket(bucketName)) {
        println("$bucketName already exists. Ending this scenario.")
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    createBucket(bucketName)
    delay(3000)
    setBucketNotification(bucketName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create a rule that triggers when an object is uploaded to Amazon
 S3.")
    delay(10000)
    addEventRule(roleArn, bucketName, eventRuleName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. List rules on the event bus.")
    listRules()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
```

```
   println("5. Create a new SNS topic for testing and let the user subscribe to
the topic.")
   val topicArn = createSnsTopic(topicName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("6. Add a target to the rule that sends an email to the specified
topic.")
   println("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS topic:")
   val email = sc.nextLine()
   subEmail(topicArn, email)
   println("Use the link in the email you received to confirm your subscription.
Then press Enter to continue.")
   sc.nextLine()
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("7. Create an EventBridge event that sends an email when an Amazon S3
object is created.")
   addSnsEventRule(eventRuleName, topicArn, topicName, eventRuleName,
bucketName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("8. List targets.")
   listTargets(eventRuleName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println(" 9. List the rules for the same target.")
   listTargetRules(topicArn)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("10. Trigger the rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.")
   println("Press Enter to continue.")
   sc.nextLine()
   uploadTextFiletoS3(bucketName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("11. Disable a specific rule.")
   changeRuleState(eventRuleName, false)
   println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Check and print the state of the rule.")
    checkRule(eventRuleName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Add a transform to the rule to change the text of the email.")
    updateSnsEventRule(topicArn, eventRuleName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Enable a specific rule.")
    changeRuleState(eventRuleName, true)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Trigger the updated rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.")
    println("Press Enter to continue.")
    sc.nextLine()
    uploadTextFiletoS3(bucketName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Update the rule to a custom rule pattern.")
    updateToCustomRule(eventRuleName)
    println("Updated event rule $eventRuleName to use a custom pattern.")
    updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(topicArn, eventRuleName)
    println("Updated event target $topicArn.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Send an event to trigger the rule. This will trigger a
 subscription email.")
    triggerCustomRule(email)
    println("Events have been sent. Press Enter to continue.")
    sc.nextLine()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("18. Clean up resources.")
    println("Do you want to clean up resources (y/n)")
    val ans = sc.nextLine()
    if (ans.compareTo("y") == 0) {
```

```
        cleanupResources(topicArn, eventRuleName, bucketName, roleName)
    } else {
        println("The resources will not be cleaned up. ")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario has successfully
 completed.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun cleanupResources(
    topicArn: String?,
    eventRuleName: String?,
    bucketName: String?,
    roleName: String?,
) {
    println("Removing all targets from the event rule.")
    deleteTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName)
    deleteRuleByName(eventRuleName)
    deleteSNSTopic(topicArn)
    deleteS3Bucket(bucketName)
    deleteRole(roleName)
}

suspend fun deleteRole(roleNameVal: String?) {
    val policyArnVal = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess"
    val policyRequest =
        DetachRolePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = policyArnVal
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iam ->
        iam.detachRolePolicy(policyRequest)
        println("Successfully detached policy $policyArnVal from role
 $roleNameVal")

        // Delete the role.
        val roleRequest =
            DeleteRoleRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
            }
```

```
        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteS3Bucket(bucketName: String?) {
    // Remove all the objects from the S3 bucket.
    val listObjects =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        val res = s3Client.listObjects(listObjects)
        val myObjects = res.contents
        val toDelete = mutableListOf<ObjectIdentifier>()

        if (myObjects != null) {
            for (myValue in myObjects) {
                toDelete.add(
                    ObjectIdentifier {
                        key = myValue.key
                    },
                )
            }
        }

        val delOb =
            Delete {
                objects = toDelete
            }

        val dor =
            DeleteObjectsRequest {
                bucket = bucketName
                delete = delOb
            }
        s3Client.deleteObjects(dor)

        // Delete the S3 bucket.
        val deleteBucketRequest =
            DeleteBucketRequest {
                bucket = bucketName
            }
        s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest)
```

```
        println("You have deleted the bucket and the objects")
    }
}

// Delete the SNS topic.
suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteTopicRequest {
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println(" $topicArnVal was deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteRuleByName(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DeleteRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
        }
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest)
        println("Successfully deleted the rule")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
    val request =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request)
        val allTargets = response.targets

        // Get all targets and delete them.
        if (allTargets != null) {
            for (myTarget in allTargets) {
```

```
                val removeTargetsRequest =
                    RemoveTargetsRequest {
                        rule = eventRuleName
                        ids = listOf(myTarget.id.toString())
                    }
                eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest)
                println("Successfully removed the target")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun triggerCustomRule(email: String) {
    val json =
        "{" +
            "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
            "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"" +
            "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
            "}"

    val entry =
        PutEventsRequestEntry {
            source = "ExampleSource"
            detail = json
            detailType = "ExampleType"
        }

    val eventsRequest =
        PutEventsRequest {
            this.entries = listOf(entry)
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(
    topicArn: String?,
    ruleName: String?,
) {
    val targetId = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
```

```
    val inputTransformerOb =
        InputTransformer {
            inputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.\""
        }

    val target =
        Target {
            id = targetId
            arn = topicArn
            inputTransformer = inputTransformerOb
        }

    val targetsRequest =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            rule = ruleName
            targets = listOf(target)
            eventBusName = null
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun updateToCustomRule(ruleName: String?) {
    val customEventsPattern =
        "{" +
            "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
            "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
            "}"
    val request =
        PutRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
            description = "Custom test rule"
            eventPattern = customEventsPattern
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putRule(request)
    }
}
```

```
// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
suspend fun updateSnsEventRule(
    topicArn: String?,
    ruleName: String?,
) {
    val targetId = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
    val myMap = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    myMap["bucket"] = "$.detail.bucket.name"
    myMap["time"] = "$.time"

    val inputTransOb =
        InputTransformer {
            inputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to bucket
 <bucket> at <time>.\""
            inputPathsMap = myMap
        }
    val targetOb =
        Target {
            id = targetId
            arn = topicArn
            inputTransformer = inputTransOb
        }

    val targetsRequest =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            rule = ruleName
            targets = listOf(targetOb)
            eventBusName = null
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun checkRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DescribeRuleRequest {
            name = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
```

```
        val response = eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The state of the rule is $response")
    }
}

suspend fun changeRuleState(
    eventRuleName: String,
    isEnabled: Boolean?,
) {
    if (!isEnabled!!) {
        println("Disabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            DisableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    } else {
        println("Enabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            EnableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    }
}

// Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
@Throws(IOException::class)
suspend fun uploadTextFiletoS3(bucketName: String?) {
    val fileSuffix = SimpleDateFormat("yyyyMMddHHmmss").format(Date())
    val fileName = "TextFile$fileSuffix.txt"
    val myFile = File(fileName)
    val fw = FileWriter(myFile.absoluteFile)
    val bw = BufferedWriter(fw)
    bw.write("This is a sample file for testing uploads.")
    bw.close()

    val putOb =
        PutObjectRequest {
```

```
            bucket = bucketName
            key = fileName
            body = myFile.asByteStream()
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.putObject(putOb)
    }
}

suspend fun listTargetRules(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
        ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest {
            targetArn = topicArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response =
 eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest)
        response.ruleNames?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is $rule")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listTargets(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest)
        response.targets?.forEach { target ->
            println("Target ARN: ${target.arn}")
        }
    }
}

// Add a rule that triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3
 bucket.
suspend fun addSnsEventRule(
```

```
    ruleName: String?,
    topicArn: String?,
    topicName: String,
    eventRuleName: String,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val targetID = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
    val myTarget =
        Target {
            id = targetID
            arn = topicArn
        }

    val targetsOb = mutableListOf<Target>()
    targetsOb.add(myTarget)

    val request =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            eventBusName = null
            targets = targetsOb
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putTargets(request)
        println("Added event rule $eventRuleName with Amazon SNS target
 $topicName for bucket $bucketName.")
    }
}

suspend fun subEmail(
    topicArnVal: String?,
    email: String?,
) {
    val request =
        SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "email"
            endpoint = email
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
```

```
        val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
        println(" Subscription ARN: ${result.subscriptionArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun createSnsTopic(topicName: String): String? {
    val topicPolicy = """
    {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Sid": "EventBridgePublishTopic",
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {
                    "Service": "events.amazonaws.com"
                },
                "Resource": "*",
                "Action": "sns:Publish"
            }
        ]
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val topicAttributes = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    topicAttributes["Policy"] = topicPolicy

    val topicRequest =
        CreateTopicRequest {
            name = topicName
            attributes = topicAttributes
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest)
        println("Added topic $topicName for email subscriptions.")
        return response.topicArn
    }
}

suspend fun listRules() {
    val rulesRequest =
        ListRulesRequest {
            eventBusName = "default"
            limit = 10
```

```
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest)
        response.rules?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is ${rule.name}")
            println("The rule ARN is ${rule.arn}")
        }
    }
}

// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in a
 bucket.
suspend fun addEventRule(
    roleArnVal: String?,
    bucketName: String,
    eventRuleName: String?,
) {
    val pattern = """
    {
        "source": ["aws.s3"],
        "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
        "detail": {
            "bucket": {
                "name": ["$bucketName"]
            }
        }
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val ruleRequest =
        PutRuleRequest {
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
            name = eventRuleName
            eventPattern = pattern
            roleArn = roleArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The ARN of the new rule is ${ruleResponse.ruleArn}")
    }
```

```
}

// Set the Amazon S3 bucket notification configuration.
suspend fun setBucketNotification(bucketName: String) {
    val eventBridgeConfig =
        EventBridgeConfiguration {
        }

    val configuration =
        NotificationConfiguration {
            eventBridgeConfiguration = eventBridgeConfig
        }

    val configurationRequest =
        PutBucketNotificationConfigurationRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            notificationConfiguration = configuration
            skipDestinationValidation = true
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(configurationRequest)
        println("Added bucket $bucketName with EventBridge events enabled.")
    }
}

// Create an S3 bucket using a waiter.
suspend fun createBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        CreateBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        s3.waitUntilBucketExists {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun checkBucket(bucketName: String?): Boolean {
    try {
```

```
        // Determine if the S3 bucket exists.
        val headBucketRequest =
            HeadBucketRequest {
                bucket = bucketName
            }

        S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest)
            return true
        }
    } catch (e: S3Exception) {
        System.err.println(e.message)
    }
    return false
}

suspend fun createIAMRole(
    rolenameVal: String?,
    polJSON: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateRoleRequest {
            roleName = rolenameVal
            assumeRolePolicyDocument = polJSON
            description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    val rolePolicyRequest =
        AttachRolePolicyRequest {
            roleName = rolenameVal
            policyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess"
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iam ->
        val response = iam.createRole(request)
        iam.attachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)
        return response.role?.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - DeleteRule

- DescribeRule
- DisableRule
- EnableRule
- ListRuleNamesByTarget
- ListRules
- ListTargetsByRule
- PutEvents
- PutRule
- PutTargets

Actions for EventBridge using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual EventBridge actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the EventBridge API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for EventBridge using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon EventBridge API Reference.

Examples

- Use DeleteRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisableRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListRuleNamesByTarget with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListRules with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTargetsByRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutTargets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemoveTargets with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `DeleteRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a rule by its name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete an event rule by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var response = await _amazonEventBridge.DeleteRuleAsync(
        new DeleteRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
        });

    return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a CloudWatch Events rule

This example deletes the rule named EC2InstanceStateChanges:

```
aws events delete-rule --name "EC2InstanceStateChanges"
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteRuleByName(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
       DeleteRuleRequest ruleRequest = DeleteRuleRequest.builder()
               .name(ruleName)
               .build();

       eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest);
       System.out.println("Successfully deleted the rule");
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteRuleByName(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DeleteRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
        }
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest)
        println("Successfully deleted the rule")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribeRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeRule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the state of a rule using the rule description.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the state for a rule by the rule name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusName">The optional name of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the rule.</returns>
    public async Task<RuleState> GetRuleStateByRuleName(string ruleName, string?
eventBusName = null)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DescribeRuleAsync(
            new DescribeRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                EventBusName = eventBusName
            });
        return ruleResponse.State;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display information about a CloudWatch Events rule

This example displays information about the rule named DailyLambdaFunction:

```
aws events describe-rule --name "DailyLambdaFunction"
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName) {
       try {
           DescribeRuleRequest ruleRequest = DescribeRuleRequest.builder()
                   .name(eventRuleName)
                   .build();

           DescribeRuleResponse response =
eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest);
           System.out.println("The state of the rule is " +
response.stateAsString());

       } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DescribeRuleRequest {
            name = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The state of the rule is $response")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DisableRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableRule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Disable a rule by its rule name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Disable a particular rule on an event bus.
/// </summary
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DisableRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DisableRuleAsync(
        new DisableRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
        });
    return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To disable a CloudWatch Events rule

This example disables the rule named DailyLambdaFunction. The rule is not deleted:

```
aws events disable-rule --name "DailyLambdaFunction"
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Disable a rule by using its rule name.

```
   public static void changeRuleState(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName, Boolean isEnabled) {
       try {
           if (!isEnabled) {
               System.out.println("Disabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
               DisableRuleRequest ruleRequest = DisableRuleRequest.builder()
                       .name(eventRuleName)
                       .build();

               eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest);
           } else {
               System.out.println("Enabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
               EnableRuleRequest ruleRequest = EnableRuleRequest.builder()
                       .name(eventRuleName)
                       .build();
               eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest);
           }

       } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun changeRuleState(
    eventRuleName: String,
    isEnabled: Boolean?,
) {
    if (!isEnabled!!) {
        println("Disabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            DisableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    } else {
        println("Enabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            EnableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `EnableRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableRule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by its rule name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Enable a particular rule on an event bus.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> EnableRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.EnableRuleAsync(
        new EnableRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
        });
    return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable a CloudWatch Events rule

This example enables the rule named DailyLambdaFunction, which had been previously disabled:

```
aws events enable-rule --name "DailyLambdaFunction"
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by using its rule name.

```
   public static void changeRuleState(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName, Boolean isEnabled) {
       try {
           if (!isEnabled) {
               System.out.println("Disabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
               DisableRuleRequest ruleRequest = DisableRuleRequest.builder()
                       .name(eventRuleName)
                       .build();

               eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest);
           } else {
               System.out.println("Enabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
               EnableRuleRequest ruleRequest = EnableRuleRequest.builder()
                       .name(eventRuleName)
                       .build();
               eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest);
```

```
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun changeRuleState(
    eventRuleName: String,
    isEnabled: Boolean?,
) {
    if (!isEnabled!!) {
        println("Disabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            DisableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    } else {
        println("Enabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            EnableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
```

```
            eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListRuleNamesByTarget` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListRuleNamesByTarget`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rule names using the target.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List names of all rules matching a target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rule names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(string targetArn)
    {
        var results = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest()
        {
            TargetArn = targetArn
        };
```

```
        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListRuleNamesByTargetAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.RuleNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display all the rules that have a specified target

This example displays all rules that have the Lambda function named "MyFunctionName" as the target:

```
aws events list-rule-names-by-target --target-arn "arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunctionName"
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rule names by using the target.

```
    public static void listTargetRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 topicArn) {
        ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
 ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest.builder()
                .targetArn(topicArn)
                .build();

        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response =
 eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest);
        List<String> rules = response.ruleNames();
        for (String rule : rules) {
            System.out.println("The rule name is " + rule);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listTargetRules(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
        ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest {
            targetArn = topicArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response =
 eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest)
        response.ruleNames?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is $rule")
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListRules` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListRules`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rules for an event bus.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the rules on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional ARN of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rules.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Rule>> ListAllRulesForEventBus(string? eventBusArn =
null)
    {
        var results = new List<Rule>();
        var request = new ListRulesRequest()
        {
            EventBusName = eventBusArn
```

```
        };
        // Get all of the pages of rules.
        ListRulesResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRulesAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Rules);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display a list of all CloudWatch Events rules

This example displays all CloudWatch Events rules in the region:

```
aws events list-rules
```

To display a list of CloudWatch Events rules beginning with a certain string.

This example displays all CloudWatch Events rules in the region that have a name starting with "Daily":

```
aws events list-rules --name-prefix "Daily"
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by using its rule name.

```
    public static void listRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListRulesRequest rulesRequest = ListRulesRequest.builder()
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();

            ListRulesResponse response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest);
            List<Rule> rules = response.rules();
            for (Rule rule : rules) {
                System.out.println("The rule name is : " + rule.name());
                System.out.println("The rule description is : " +
rule.description());
                System.out.println("The rule state is : " +
rule.stateAsString());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listRules() {
    val rulesRequest =
        ListRulesRequest {
            eventBusName = "default"
            limit = 10
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest)
        response.rules?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is ${rule.name}")
            println("The rule ARN is ${rule.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListTargetsByRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTargetsByRule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the targets for a rule using the rule name.

```
/// <summary>
/// List all of the targets matching a rule by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
/// <returns>The list of targets.</returns>
public async Task<List<Target>> ListAllTargetsOnRule(string ruleName)
{
    var results = new List<Target>();
    var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
    {
        Rule = ruleName
    };
    ListTargetsByRuleResponse response;
    do
    {
        response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
        results.AddRange(response.Targets);
        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

    } while (response.NextToken is not null);

    return results;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display all the targets for a CloudWatch Events rule

This example displays all the targets of the rule named DailyLambdaFunction:

```
aws events list-targets-by-rule --rule  "DailyLambdaFunction"
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the targets for a rule by using the rule name.

```
   public static void listTargets(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
       ListTargetsByRuleRequest ruleRequest = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
               .rule(ruleName)
               .build();

       ListTargetsByRuleResponse res =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest);
       List<Target> targetsList = res.targets();
       for (Target target: targetsList) {
           System.out.println("Target ARN: "+target.arn());
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listTargets(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest)
        response.targets?.forEach { target ->
            println("Target ARN: ${target.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `PutEvents` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutEvents`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create and trigger a rule

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an event that matches a custom pattern for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an event to the event bus that includes an email, message, and time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use in the event detail of the custom
event.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutCustomEmailEvent(string email)
    {
        var eventDetail = new
        {
            UserEmail = email,
            Message = "This event was generated by example code.",
            UtcTime = DateTime.UtcNow.ToString("g")
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutEventsAsync(
            new PutEventsRequest()
            {
                Entries = new List<PutEventsRequestEntry>()
                {
                    new PutEventsRequestEntry()
                    {
                        Source = "ExampleSource",
                        Detail = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventDetail),
                        DetailType = "ExampleType"
                    }
                }
            });

        return response.FailedEntryCount == 0;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/events/EventBridgeClient.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutEventsRequest.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutEventsResult.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Send the event.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::EventBridgeClient cwe;

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutEventsRequestEntry event_entry;
        event_entry.SetDetail(MakeDetails(event_key, event_value));
        event_entry.SetDetailType("sampleSubmitted");
        event_entry.AddResources(resource_arn);
        event_entry.SetSource("aws-sdk-cpp-cloudwatch-example");

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutEventsRequest request;
        request.AddEntries(event_entry);

        auto outcome = cwe.PutEvents(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to post CloudWatch event: " <<
```

```
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully posted CloudWatch event" << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send a custom event to CloudWatch Events

This example sends a custom event to CloudWatch Events. The event is contained within the putevents.json file:

```
aws events put-events --entries file://putevents.json
```

Here are the contents of the putevents.json file:

```
[
  {
    "Source": "com.mycompany.myapp",
    "Detail": "{ \"key1\": \"value1\", \"key2\": \"value2\" }",
    "Resources": [
      "resource1",
      "resource2"
    ],
    "DetailType": "myDetailType"
  },
  {
    "Source": "com.mycompany.myapp",
    "Detail": "{ \"key1\": \"value3\", \"key2\": \"value4\" }",
    "Resources": [
      "resource1",
      "resource2"
    ],
    "DetailType": "myDetailType"
   }
```

```
]
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void triggerCustomRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
email) {
        String json = "{" +
                "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
                "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"," +
                "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
                "}";

        PutEventsRequestEntry entry = PutEventsRequestEntry.builder()
                .source("ExampleSource")
                .detail(json)
                .detailType("ExampleType")
                .build();

        PutEventsRequest eventsRequest = PutEventsRequest.builder()
                .entries(entry)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest);
    }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import {
  EventBridgeClient,
  PutEventsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-eventbridge";

export const putEvents = async (
  source = "eventbridge.integration.test",
  detailType = "greeting",
  resources = [],
) => {
  const client = new EventBridgeClient({});

  const response = await client.send(
    new PutEventsCommand({
      Entries: [
        {
          Detail: JSON.stringify({ greeting: "Hello there." }),
          DetailType: detailType,
          Resources: resources,
          Source: source,
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  console.log("PutEvents response:");
  console.log(response);
  // PutEvents response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
```

```
  //     requestId: '3d0df73d-dcea-4a23-ae0d-f5556a3ac109',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Entries: [ { EventId: '51620841-5af4-6402-d9bc-b77734991eb5' } ],
  //   FailedEntryCount: 0
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var ebevents = new AWS.EventBridge({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Entries: [
    {
      Detail: '{ "key1": "value1", "key2": "value2" }',
      DetailType: "appRequestSubmitted",
      Resources: ["RESOURCE_ARN"],
      Source: "com.company.app",
    },
  ],
};
```

```
ebevents.putEvents(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Entries);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun triggerCustomRule(email: String) {
    val json =
        "{" +
            "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
            "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"" +
            "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
            "}"

    val entry =
        PutEventsRequestEntry {
            source = "ExampleSource"
            detail = json
            detailType = "ExampleType"
        }

    val eventsRequest =
        PutEventsRequest {
            this.entries = listOf(entry)
        }
```

```
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `PutRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create and trigger a rule
- Send event notifications to EventBridge

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created
 in a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name to give the rule.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to trigger the event.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutS3UploadRule(string roleArn, string ruleName,
 string bucketName)
    {
        string eventPattern = "{" +
                                "\"source\": [\"aws.s3\"]," +
                                    "\"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"]," +
                                    "\"detail\": {" +
                                        "\"bucket\": {" +
                                            "\"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]"
 +
                                        "}" +
                                    "}" +
                                "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Example S3 upload rule for EventBridge",
                RoleArn = roleArn,
                EventPattern = eventPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }
```

Create a rule that uses a custom pattern.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update a rule to use a custom defined event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the updated rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomEventPattern(string ruleName)
    {
        string customEventsPattern = "{" +
                                     "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                                     "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                                     "}";
```

```
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Custom test rule",
                EventPattern = customEventsPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/events/EventBridgeClient.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutRuleRequest.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutRuleResult.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Create the rule.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::EventBridgeClient cwe;
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutRuleRequest request;
        request.SetName(rule_name);
        request.SetRoleArn(role_arn);
```

```
        request.SetScheduleExpression("rate(5 minutes)");
        request.SetState(Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::RuleState::ENABLED);

        auto outcome = cwe.PutRule(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch events rule " <<
                rule_name << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully created CloudWatch events rule " <<
                rule_name << " with resulting Arn " <<
                outcome.GetResult().GetRuleArn() << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create CloudWatch Events rules

This example creates a rule that triggers every day at 9:00am (UTC). If you use put-targets to add a Lambda function as a target of this rule, you could run the Lambda function every day at the specified time:

```
aws events put-rule --name "DailyLambdaFunction" --schedule-expression "cron(0 9
 * * ? *)"
```

This example creates a rule that triggers when any EC2 instance in the region changes state:

```
aws events put-rule --name "EC2InstanceStateChanges" --event-pattern "{\"source
\":[\"aws.ec2\"],\"detail-type\":[\"EC2 Instance State-change Notification\"]}"
 --role-arn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MyRoleForThisRule"
```

This example creates a rule that triggers when any EC2 instance in the region is stopped or terminated:

```
aws events put-rule --name "EC2InstanceStateChangeStopOrTerminate" --event-
pattern "{\"source\":[\"aws.ec2\"],\"detail-type\":[\"EC2 Instance State-change
 Notification\"],\"detail\":{\"state\":[\"stopped\",\"terminated\"]}}" --role-
arn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MyRoleForThisRule"
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a scheduled rule.

```
   public static void createEBRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName, String cronExpression) {
       try {
           PutRuleRequest ruleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                   .name(ruleName)
                   .eventBusName("default")
                   .scheduleExpression(cronExpression)
                   .state("ENABLED")
                   .description("A test rule that runs on a schedule created by
the Java API")
                   .build();

           PutRuleResponse ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest);
           System.out.println("The ARN of the new rule is " +
ruleResponse.ruleArn());

       } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
   // Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created
in
   // a bucket.
   public static void addEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
roleArn, String bucketName,
           String eventRuleName) {
       String pattern = "{\n" +
               "  \"source\": [\"aws.s3\"],\n" +
               "  \"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"],\n" +
               "  \"detail\": {\n" +
               "    \"bucket\": {\n" +
               "      \"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]\n" +
               "    }\n" +
               "  }\n" +
               "}";

       try {
           PutRuleRequest ruleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                   .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java v2")
                   .name(eventRuleName)
                   .eventPattern(pattern)
                   .roleArn(roleArn)
                   .build();

           PutRuleResponse ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest);
           System.out.println("The ARN of the new rule is " +
ruleResponse.ruleArn());

       } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { EventBridgeClient, PutRuleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-eventbridge";

export const putRule = async (
  ruleName = "some-rule",
  source = "some-source",
) => {
  const client = new EventBridgeClient({});

  const response = await client.send(
    new PutRuleCommand({
      Name: ruleName,
      EventPattern: JSON.stringify({ source: [source] }),
      State: "ENABLED",
      EventBusName: "default",
    }),
  );

  console.log("PutRule response:");
  console.log(response);
  // PutRule response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'd7292ced-1544-421b-842f-596326bc7072',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   RuleArn: 'arn:aws:events:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:rule/
EventBridgeTestRule-1696280037720'
```

```
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var ebevents = new AWS.EventBridge({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Name: "DEMO_EVENT",
  RoleArn: "IAM_ROLE_ARN",
  ScheduleExpression: "rate(5 minutes)",
  State: "ENABLED",
};

ebevents.putRule(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.RuleArn);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a scheduled rule.

```
suspend fun createScRule(
    ruleName: String?,
    cronExpression: String?,
) {
    val ruleRequest =
        PutRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
            eventBusName = "default"
            scheduleExpression = cronExpression
            state = RuleState.Enabled
            description = "A test rule that runs on a schedule created by the
 Kotlin API"
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The ARN of the new rule is ${ruleResponse.ruleArn}")
    }
}
```

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in a
 bucket.
suspend fun addEventRule(
    roleArnVal: String?,
    bucketName: String,
```

```
    eventRuleName: String?,
) {
    val pattern = """
    {
        "source": ["aws.s3"],
        "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
        "detail": {
            "bucket": {
                "name": ["$bucketName"]
            }
        }
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val ruleRequest =
        PutRuleRequest {
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
            name = eventRuleName
            eventPattern = pattern
            roleArn = roleArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The ARN of the new rule is ${ruleResponse.ruleArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `PutTargets` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutTargets`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Send event notifications to EventBridge

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add an Amazon SNS topic as a target for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an Amazon SNS target topic to a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the Amazon SNS target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional event bus name, uses default if
empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddSnsTargetToRule(string ruleName, string
targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // Create the list of targets and add a new target.
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Arn = targetArn,
                Id = targetID
            }
        };

        // Add the targets to the rule.
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
```

```
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return targetID;
    }
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the
default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(string
ruleName, string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputPathsMap = new Dictionary<string, string>()
                    {
                        {"bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name"},
                        {"time", "$.time"}
                    },
```

```
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to
 bucket <bucket> at <time>.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
 {e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/events/EventBridgeClient.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutTargetsRequest.h>
```

```
#include <aws/events/model/PutTargetsResult.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Add the target.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::EventBridgeClient cwe;

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::Target target;
        target.SetArn(lambda_arn);
        target.SetId(target_id);

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutTargetsRequest request;
        request.SetRule(rule_name);
        request.AddTargets(target);

        auto putTargetsOutcome = cwe.PutTargets(request);
        if (!putTargetsOutcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch events target for rule "
                << rule_name << ": " <<
                putTargetsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout <<
                "Successfully created CloudWatch events target for rule "
                << rule_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add targets for CloudWatch Events rules

This example adds a Lambda function as the target of a rule:

```
aws events put-targets --rule DailyLambdaFunction --targets
 "Id"="1","Arn"="arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:123456789012:function:MyFunctionName"
```

This example sets an Amazon Kinesis stream as the target, so that events caught by this rule are relayed to the stream:

```
aws events put-targets --rule EC2InstanceStateChanges --targets
 "Id"="1","Arn"="arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-1:123456789012:stream/
MyStream","RoleArn"="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MyRoleForThisRule"
```

This example sets two Amazon Kinesis streams as targets for one rule:

```
aws events put-targets --rule DailyLambdaFunction --targets
 "Id"="Target1","Arn"="arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-1:379642911888:stream/
MyStream1","RoleArn"="arn:aws:iam::379642911888:role/ MyRoleToAccessLambda"
  "Id"="Target2"," Arn"="arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-1:379642911888:stream/
MyStream2","RoleArn"="arn:aws:iam::379642911888:role/MyRoleToAccessLambda"
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add an Amazon SNS topic as a target for a rule.

```
    // Add a rule which triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3
    // bucket.
    public static void addSnsEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 ruleName, String topicArn,
            String topicName, String eventRuleName, String bucketName) {
        String targetID = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Target myTarget = Target.builder()
```

```
                .id(targetID)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .build();

        List<Target> targets = new ArrayList<>();
        targets.add(myTarget);
        PutTargetsRequest request = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                .eventBusName(null)
                .targets(targets)
                .rule(ruleName)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putTargets(request);
        System.out.println("Added event rule " + eventRuleName + " with Amazon
SNS target " + topicName + " for bucket "
                + bucketName + ".");
    }
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
    public static void updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(EventBridgeClient
eventBrClient, String topicArn,
            String ruleName) {
        String targetId = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        InputTransformer inputTransformer = InputTransformer.builder()
                .inputTemplate("\"Notification: sample event was received.\"")
                .build();

        Target target = Target.builder()
                .id(targetId)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .inputTransformer(inputTransformer)
                .build();

        try {
            PutTargetsRequest targetsRequest = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .targets(target)
                    .eventBusName(null)
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest);
```

```
        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import {
  EventBridgeClient,
  PutTargetsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-eventbridge";

export const putTarget = async (
  existingRuleName = "some-rule",
  targetArn = "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:000000000000:function:test-func",
  uniqueId = Date.now().toString(),
) => {
  const client = new EventBridgeClient({});
  const response = await client.send(
    new PutTargetsCommand({
      Rule: existingRuleName,
      Targets: [
        {
          Arn: targetArn,
          Id: uniqueId,
        },
      ],
    }),
```

```
  );

  console.log("PutTargets response:");
  console.log(response);
  // PutTargets response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'f5b23b9a-2c17-45c1-ad5c-f926c3692e3d',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   FailedEntries: [],
  //   FailedEntryCount: 0
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var ebevents = new AWS.EventBridge({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Rule: "DEMO_EVENT",
  Targets: [
```

```
    {
      Arn: "LAMBDA_FUNCTION_ARN",
      Id: "myEventBridgeTarget",
    },
  ],
};

ebevents.putTargets(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Add a rule that triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3
 bucket.
suspend fun addSnsEventRule(
    ruleName: String?,
    topicArn: String?,
    topicName: String,
    eventRuleName: String,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val targetID = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
    val myTarget =
        Target {
            id = targetID
            arn = topicArn
```

```
        }

    val targetsOb = mutableListOf<Target>()
    targetsOb.add(myTarget)

    val request =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            eventBusName = null
            targets = targetsOb
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putTargets(request)
        println("Added event rule $eventRuleName with Amazon SNS target
 $topicName for bucket $bucketName.")
    }
}
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
suspend fun updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(
    topicArn: String?,
    ruleName: String?,
) {
    val targetId = UUID.randomUUID().toString()

    val inputTransformerOb =
        InputTransformer {
            inputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.\""
        }

    val target =
        Target {
            id = targetId
            arn = topicArn
            inputTransformer = inputTransformerOb
        }

    val targetsRequest =
        PutTargetsRequest {
```

```
            rule = ruleName
            targets = listOf(target)
            eventBusName = null
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `RemoveTargets` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveTargets`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Remove all of the targets for a rule using the rule name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var targetIds = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
```

```
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse targetsResponse;
        do
        {
            targetsResponse = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            targetIds.AddRange(targetsResponse.Targets.Select(t => t.Id));
            request.NextToken = targetsResponse.NextToken;

        } while (targetsResponse.NextToken is not null);

        var removeResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.RemoveTargetsAsync(
            new RemoveTargetsRequest()
            {
                Rule = ruleName,
                Ids = targetIds
            });

        if (removeResponse.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            removeResponse.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to remove target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage},
code {e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return removeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a target for an event

This example removes the Amazon Kinesis stream named MyStream1 from being a target of the rule DailyLambdaFunction. When DailyLambdaFunction was created, this stream was set as a target with an ID of Target1:

```
aws events remove-targets --rule "DailyLambdaFunction" --ids "Target1"
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Remove all of the targets for a rule by using the rule name.

```
   public static void deleteTargetsFromRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient,
String eventRuleName) {
       // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
       ListTargetsByRuleRequest request = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
               .rule(eventRuleName)
               .build();

       ListTargetsByRuleResponse response =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request);
       List<Target> allTargets = response.targets();

       // Get all targets and delete them.
       for (Target myTarget : allTargets) {
           RemoveTargetsRequest removeTargetsRequest =
RemoveTargetsRequest.builder()
                   .rule(eventRuleName)
                   .ids(myTarget.id())
                   .build();

           eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest);
           System.out.println("Successfully removed the target");
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
    val request =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request)
        val allTargets = response.targets

        // Get all targets and delete them.
        if (allTargets != null) {
            for (myTarget in allTargets) {
                val removeTargetsRequest =
                    RemoveTargetsRequest {
                        rule = eventRuleName
                        ids = listOf(myTarget.id.toString())
                    }
                eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest)
                println("Successfully removed the target")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios for EventBridge using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in EventBridge with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within EventBridge or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create and trigger a rule in Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK
- Send S3 event notifications to Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

Create and trigger a rule in Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create and trigger a rule in Amazon EventBridge.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call the functions in the correct order.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sns'
require 'aws-sdk-iam'
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatchevents'
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatch'
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatchlogs'
require 'securerandom'
```

Checks whether the specified Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic exists among those provided to this function.

```
# Checks whether the specified Amazon SNS
# topic exists among those provided to this function.
# This is a helper function that is called by the topic_exists? function.
#
# @param topics [Array] An array of Aws::SNS::Types::Topic objects.
# @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the topic to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the topic ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#   response = sns_client.list_topics
#   if topic_found?(
#     response.topics,
#     'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic'
#   )
#     puts 'Topic found.'
#   end
def topic_found?(topics, topic_arn)
  topics.each do |topic|
    return true if topic.topic_arn == topic_arn
  end
  false
end
```

Checks whether the specified topic exists among those available to the caller in Amazon SNS.

```
# Checks whether the specified topic exists among those available to the
# caller in Amazon SNS.
#
# @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] An initialized Amazon SNS client.
# @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the topic to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the topic ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless topic_exists?(
#     Aws::SNS::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic'
#   )
def topic_exists?(sns_client, topic_arn)
  puts "Searching for topic with ARN '#{topic_arn}'..."
```

```
  response = sns_client.list_topics
  if response.topics.count.positive?
    if topic_found?(response.topics, topic_arn)
      puts 'Topic found.'
      return true
    end
    while response.next_page?
      response = response.next_page
      next unless response.topics.count.positive?

      if topic_found?(response.topics, topic_arn)
        puts 'Topic found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Topic not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Topic not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a topic in Amazon SNS and then subscribe an email address to receive notifications to that topic.

```
# Creates a topic in Amazon SNS
# and then subscribes an email address to receive notifications to that topic.
#
# @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] An initialized Amazon SNS client.
# @param topic_name [String] The name of the topic to create.
# @param email_address [String] The email address of the recipient to notify.
# @return [String] The ARN of the topic that was created.
# @example
#   puts create_topic(
#     Aws::SNS::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic',
#     'mary@example.com'
#   )
def create_topic(sns_client, topic_name, email_address)
  puts "Creating the topic named '#{topic_name}'..."
  topic_response = sns_client.create_topic(name: topic_name)
```

```
  puts "Topic created with ARN '#{topic_response.topic_arn}'."
  subscription_response = sns_client.subscribe(
    topic_arn: topic_response.topic_arn,
    protocol: 'email',
    endpoint: email_address,
    return_subscription_arn: true
  )
  puts 'Subscription created with ARN ' \
    "'#{subscription_response.subscription_arn}'. Have the owner of the " \
    "email address '#{email_address}' check their inbox in a few minutes " \
    'and confirm the subscription to start receiving notification emails.'
  topic_response.topic_arn
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating or subscribing to topic: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end
```

Check whether the specified AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role exists among those provided to this function.

```
# Checks whether the specified AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
# role exists among those provided to this function.
# This is a helper function that is called by the role_exists? function.
#
# @param roles [Array] An array of Aws::IAM::Role objects.
# @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the role ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#   response = iam_client.list_roles
#   if role_found?(
#     response.roles,
#     'arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
#     puts 'Role found.'
#   end
def role_found?(roles, role_arn)
  roles.each do |role|
    return true if role.arn == role_arn
  end
  false
end
```

Check whether the specified role exists among those available to the caller in IAM.

```
# Checks whether the specified role exists among those available to the
# caller in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).
#
# @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
# @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the role ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless role_exists?(
#     Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
def role_exists?(iam_client, role_arn)
  puts "Searching for role with ARN '#{role_arn}'..."
  response = iam_client.list_roles
  if response.roles.count.positive?
    if role_found?(response.roles, role_arn)
      puts 'Role found.'
      return true
    end
    while response.next_page?
      response = response.next_page
      next unless response.roles.count.positive?

      if role_found?(response.roles, role_arn)
        puts 'Role found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Role not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Role not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a role in IAM.

```
# Creates a role in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).
# This role is used by a rule in Amazon EventBridge to allow
# that rule to operate within the caller's account.
# This role is designed to be used specifically by this code example.
#
# @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
# @param role_name [String] The name of the role to create.
# @return [String] The ARN of the role that was created.
# @example
#   puts create_role(
#     Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
def create_role(iam_client, role_name)
  puts "Creating the role named '#{role_name}'..."
  response = iam_client.create_role(
    assume_role_policy_document: {
      'Version': '2012-10-17',
      'Statement': [
        {
          'Sid': '',
          'Effect': 'Allow',
          'Principal': {
            'Service': 'events.amazonaws.com'
          },
          'Action': 'sts:AssumeRole'
        }
      ]
    }.to_json,
    path: '/',
    role_name: role_name
  )
  puts "Role created with ARN '#{response.role.arn}'."
  puts 'Adding access policy to role...'
  iam_client.put_role_policy(
    policy_document: {
      'Version': '2012-10-17',
      'Statement': [
        {
          'Sid': 'CloudWatchEventsFullAccess',
          'Effect': 'Allow',
          'Resource': '*',
          'Action': 'events:*'
```

```
        },
        {
          'Sid': 'IAMPassRoleForCloudWatchEvents',
          'Effect': 'Allow',
          'Resource': 'arn:aws:iam::*:role/AWS_Events_Invoke_Targets',
          'Action': 'iam:PassRole'
        }
      ]
    }.to_json,
    policy_name: 'CloudWatchEventsPolicy',
    role_name: role_name
  )
  puts 'Access policy added to role.'
  response.role.arn
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating role or adding policy to it: #{e.message}"
  puts 'If the role was created, you must add the access policy ' \
    'to the role yourself, or delete the role yourself and try again.'
  'Error'
end
```

Checks whether the specified EventBridge rule exists among those provided to this function.

```
# Checks whether the specified Amazon EventBridge rule exists among
# those provided to this function.
# This is a helper function that is called by the rule_exists? function.
#
# @param rules [Array] An array of Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Types::Rule objects.
# @param rule_arn [String] The name of the rule to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the name of the rule was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   cloudwatchevents_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#   response = cloudwatchevents_client.list_rules
#   if rule_found?(response.rules, 'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change')
#     puts 'Rule found.'
#   end
def rule_found?(rules, rule_name)
  rules.each do |rule|
    return true if rule.name == rule_name
  end
  false
end
```

Checks whether the specified rule exists among those available to the caller in EventBridge.

```
# Checks whether the specified rule exists among those available to the
# caller in Amazon EventBridge.
#
# @param cloudwatchevents_client [Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Client]
#   An initialized Amazon EventBridge client.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the rule to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the rule name was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless rule_exists?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
def rule_exists?(cloudwatchevents_client, rule_name)
  puts "Searching for rule with name '#{rule_name}'..."
  response = cloudwatchevents_client.list_rules
  if response.rules.count.positive?
    if rule_found?(response.rules, rule_name)
      puts 'Rule found.'
      return true
    end
    while response.next_page?
      response = response.next_page
      next unless response.rules.count.positive?

      if rule_found?(response.rules, rule_name)
        puts 'Rule found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Rule not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Rule not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a rule in EventBridge.

```
# Creates a rule in Amazon EventBridge.
# This rule is triggered whenever an available instance in
# Amazon EC2 changes to the specified state.
# This rule is designed to be used specifically by this code example.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A role in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) that is designed
#   to be used specifically by this code example.
# - A topic in Amazon SNS.
#
# @param cloudwatchevents_client [Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Client]
#   An initialized Amazon EventBridge client.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the rule to create.
# @param rule_description [String] Some description for this rule.
# @param instance_state [String] The state that available instances in
#   Amazon EC2 must change to, to
#   trigger this rule.
# @param role_arn [String] The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM role.
# @param target_id [String] Some identifying string for the rule's target.
# @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic.
# @return [Boolean] true if the rule was created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless rule_created?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     'Triggers when any available EC2 instance starts.',
#     'running',
#     'arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     'sns-topic',
#     'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic'
#   )
def rule_created?(
  cloudwatchevents_client,
  rule_name,
  rule_description,
  instance_state,
  role_arn,
  target_id,
  topic_arn
)
  puts "Creating rule with name '#{rule_name}'..."
  put_rule_response = cloudwatchevents_client.put_rule(
```

```
    name: rule_name,
    description: rule_description,
    event_pattern: {
      'source': [
        'aws.ec2'
      ],
      'detail-type': [
        'EC2 Instance State-change Notification'
      ],
      'detail': {
        'state': [
          instance_state
        ]
      }
    }.to_json,
    state: 'ENABLED',
    role_arn: role_arn
  )
  puts "Rule created with ARN '#{put_rule_response.rule_arn}'."

  put_targets_response = cloudwatchevents_client.put_targets(
    rule: rule_name,
    targets: [
      {
        id: target_id,
        arn: topic_arn
      }
    ]
  )
  if put_targets_response.key?(:failed_entry_count) &&
     put_targets_response.failed_entry_count.positive?
    puts 'Error(s) adding target to rule:'
    put_targets_response.failed_entries.each do |failure|
      puts failure.error_message
    end
    false
  else
    true
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating rule or adding target to rule: #{e.message}"
  puts 'If the rule was created, you must add the target ' \
    'to the rule yourself, or delete the rule yourself and try again.'
  false
```

```
end
```

Check to see whether the specified log group exists among those available to the caller in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Checks to see whether the specified log group exists among those available
# to the caller in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the log group name was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless log_group_exists?(
#     Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def log_group_exists?(cloudwatchlogs_client, log_group_name)
  puts "Searching for log group with name '#{log_group_name}'..."
  response = cloudwatchlogs_client.describe_log_groups(
    log_group_name_prefix: log_group_name
  )
  if response.log_groups.count.positive?
    response.log_groups.each do |log_group|
      if log_group.log_group_name == log_group_name
        puts 'Log group found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Log group not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Log group not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a log group in CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Creates a log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
```

```
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group to create.
# @return [Boolean] true if the log group name was created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless log_group_created?(
#     Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def log_group_created?(cloudwatchlogs_client, log_group_name)
  puts "Attempting to create log group with the name '#{log_group_name}'..."
  cloudwatchlogs_client.create_log_group(log_group_name: log_group_name)
  puts 'Log group created.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating log group: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Write an event to a log stream in CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Writes an event to a log stream in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
# - A log stream within the log group.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group.
# @param log_stream_name [String] The name of the log stream within
#   the log group.
# @param message [String] The message to write to the log stream.
# @param sequence_token [String] If available, the sequence token from the
#   message that was written immediately before this message. This sequence
#   token is returned by Amazon CloudWatch Logs whenever you programmatically
#   write a message to the log stream.
# @return [String] The sequence token that is returned by
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs after successfully writing the message to the
#   log stream.
# @example
```

```
#   puts log_event(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#     '2020/11/19/53f985be-199f-408e-9a45-fc242df41fEX',
#     "Instance 'i-033c48ef067af3dEX' restarted.",
#     '49542672486831074009579604567656788214806863282469607 3EX'
#   )
def log_event(
  cloudwatchlogs_client,
  log_group_name,
  log_stream_name,
  message,
  sequence_token
)
  puts "Attempting to log '#{message}' to log stream '#{log_stream_name}'..."
  event = {
    log_group_name: log_group_name,
    log_stream_name: log_stream_name,
    log_events: [
      {
        timestamp: (Time.now.utc.to_f.round(3) * 1_000).to_i,
        message: message
      }
    ]
  }
  event[:sequence_token] = sequence_token unless sequence_token.empty?

  response = cloudwatchlogs_client.put_log_events(event)
  puts 'Message logged.'
  response.next_sequence_token
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Message not logged: #{e.message}"
end
```

Restart an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance and adds information about the related activity to a log stream in CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Restarts an Amazon EC2 instance
# and adds information about the related activity to a log stream
# in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# Prerequisites:
```

```
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance to restart.
# - The log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs to add related activity
#   information to.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized Amazon EC2 client.
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client]
#   An initialized Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was restarted and the information
#   was written to the log stream; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_restarted?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'i-033c48ef067af3dEX',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def instance_restarted?(
  ec2_client,
  cloudwatchlogs_client,
  instance_id,
  log_group_name
)
  log_stream_name = "#{Time.now.year}/#{Time.now.month}/#{Time.now.day}/" \
    "#{SecureRandom.uuid}"
  cloudwatchlogs_client.create_log_stream(
    log_group_name: log_group_name,
    log_stream_name: log_stream_name
  )
  sequence_token = ''

  puts "Attempting to stop the instance with the ID '#{instance_id}'. " \
    'This might take a few minutes...'
  ec2_client.stop_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_stopped, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance stopped.'
  sequence_token = log_event(
    cloudwatchlogs_client,
    log_group_name,
    log_stream_name,
    "Instance '#{instance_id}' stopped.",
    sequence_token
```

```
  )

  puts 'Attempting to restart the instance. This might take a few minutes...'
  ec2_client.start_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_running, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance restarted.'
  sequence_token = log_event(
    cloudwatchlogs_client,
    log_group_name,
    log_stream_name,
    "Instance '#{instance_id}' restarted.",
    sequence_token
  )

  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Error creating log stream or stopping or restarting the instance: ' \
    "#{e.message}"
  log_event(
    cloudwatchlogs_client,
    log_group_name,
    log_stream_name,
    "Error stopping or starting instance '#{instance_id}': #{e.message}",
    sequence_token
  )
  false
end
```

Display information about activity for a rule in EventBridge.

```
# Displays information about activity for a rule in Amazon EventBridge.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A rule in Amazon EventBridge.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Amazon::CloudWatch::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch client.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the rule.
# @param start_time [Time] The timestamp that determines the first datapoint
#   to return. Can also be expressed as DateTime, Date, Integer, or String.
# @param end_time [Time] The timestamp that determines the last datapoint
```

```
#   to return. Can also be expressed as DateTime, Date, Integer, or String.
# @param period [Integer] The interval, in seconds, to check for activity.
# @example
#   display_rule_activity(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     Time.now - 600, # Start checking from 10 minutes ago.
#     Time.now, # Check up until now.
#     60 # Check every minute during those 10 minutes.
#   )
def display_rule_activity(
  cloudwatch_client,
  rule_name,
  start_time,
  end_time,
  period
)
  puts 'Attempting to display rule activity...'
  response = cloudwatch_client.get_metric_statistics(
    namespace: 'AWS/Events',
    metric_name: 'Invocations',
    dimensions: [
      {
        name: 'RuleName',
        value: rule_name
      }
    ],
    start_time: start_time,
    end_time: end_time,
    period: period,
    statistics: ['Sum'],
    unit: 'Count'
  )

  if response.key?(:datapoints) && response.datapoints.count.positive?
    puts "The event rule '#{rule_name}' was triggered:"
    response.datapoints.each do |datapoint|
      puts "  #{datapoint.sum} time(s) at #{datapoint.timestamp}"
    end
  else
    puts "The event rule '#{rule_name}' was not triggered during the " \
      'specified time period.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
```

```
  puts "Error getting information about event rule activity: #{e.message}"
end
```

Display log information for all of the log streams in a CloudWatch Logs log group.

```
# Displays log information for all of the log streams in a log group in
# Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Amazon::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group.
# @example
#   display_log_data(
#     Amazon::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def display_log_data(cloudwatchlogs_client, log_group_name)
  puts 'Attempting to display log stream data for the log group ' \
    "named '#{log_group_name}'..."
  describe_log_streams_response = cloudwatchlogs_client.describe_log_streams(
    log_group_name: log_group_name,
    order_by: 'LastEventTime',
    descending: true
  )
  if describe_log_streams_response.key?(:log_streams) &&
     describe_log_streams_response.log_streams.count.positive?
    describe_log_streams_response.log_streams.each do |log_stream|
      get_log_events_response = cloudwatchlogs_client.get_log_events(
        log_group_name: log_group_name,
        log_stream_name: log_stream.log_stream_name
      )
      puts "\nLog messages for '#{log_stream.log_stream_name}':"
      puts '-' * (log_stream.log_stream_name.length + 20)
      if get_log_events_response.key?(:events) &&
         get_log_events_response.events.count.positive?
        get_log_events_response.events.each do |event|
          puts event.message
        end
```

```
      else
        puts 'No log messages for this log stream.'
      end
    end
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Error getting information about the log streams or their messages: ' \
    "#{e.message}"
end
```

Display a reminder to the caller to manually clean up any associated AWS resources that they no longer need.

```
# Displays a reminder to the caller to manually clean up any associated
# AWS resources that they no longer need.
#
# @param topic_name [String] The name of the Amazon SNS topic.
# @param role_name [String] The name of the IAM role.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the Amazon EventBridge rule.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the Amazon CloudWatch Logs log
 group.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.
# @example
#   manual_cleanup_notice(
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-events-rule-role',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log',
#     'i-033c48ef067af3dEX'
#   )
def manual_cleanup_notice(
  topic_name, role_name, rule_name, log_group_name, instance_id
)
  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Some of the following AWS resources might still exist in your account.'
  puts 'If you no longer want to use this code example, then to clean up'
  puts 'your AWS account and avoid unexpected costs, you might want to'
  puts 'manually delete any of the following resources if they exist:'
  puts "- The Amazon SNS topic named '#{topic_name}'."
  puts "- The IAM role named '#{role_name}'."
  puts "- The Amazon EventBridge rule named '#{rule_name}'."
  puts "- The Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group named '#{log_group_name}'."
```

```
  puts "- The Amazon EC2 instance with the ID '#{instance_id}'."
end
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - PutEvents
  - PutRule

Send S3 event notifications to Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to enable a bucket to send S3 event notifications to EventBridge and route notifications to an Amazon SNS topic and Amazon SQS queue.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /** This method configures a bucket to send events to AWS EventBridge and
creates a rule
    * to route the S3 object created events to a topic and a queue.
    *
    * @param bucketName Name of existing bucket
    * @param topicArn ARN of existing topic to receive S3 event notifications
    * @param queueArn ARN of existing queue to receive S3 event notifications
    *
    *  An AWS CloudFormation stack sets up the bucket, queue, topic before the
method runs.
    */
   public static String setBucketNotificationToEventBridge(String bucketName,
String topicArn, String queueArn) {
       try {
           // Enable bucket to emit S3 Event notifications to EventBridge.
           s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                   .bucket(bucketName)
```

```
                    .notificationConfiguration(b1 -> b1
                            .eventBridgeConfiguration(
                                    SdkBuilder::build)
                    ).build()).join();

            // Create an EventBridge rule to route Object Created notifications.
            PutRuleRequest putRuleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .name(RULE_NAME)
                    .eventPattern("""
                            {
                              "source": ["aws.s3"],
                              "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
                              "detail": {
                                "bucket": {
                                  "name": ["%s"]
                                }
                              }
                            }
                            """.formatted(bucketName))
                    .build();

            // Add the rule to the default event bus.
            PutRuleResponse putRuleResponse =
eventBridgeClient.putRule(putRuleRequest)
                    .whenComplete((r, t) -> {
                        if (t != null) {
                            logger.error("Error creating event bus rule: " +
t.getMessage(), t);
                            throw new RuntimeException(t.getCause().getMessage(),
t);
                        }
                        logger.info("Event bus rule creation request sent
successfully. ARN is: {}", r.ruleArn());
                    }).join();

            // Add the existing SNS topic and SQS queue as targets to the rule.
            eventBridgeClient.putTargets(b -> b
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .rule(RULE_NAME)
                    .targets(List.of (
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(queueArn)
                                    .id("Queue")
                                    .build(),
```

```
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(topicArn)
                                    .id("Topic")
                                    .build())
                            )
                    ).join();
            return putRuleResponse.ruleArn();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Code examples for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon EventBridge Scheduler with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **EventBridge Scheduler User Guide** – More information about EventBridge Scheduler.
- **EventBridge Scheduler API Reference** – Details about all available EventBridge Scheduler actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.

- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello EventBridge Scheduler

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge Scheduler.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloScheduler
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the EventBridge Scheduler service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var schedulerClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonScheduler>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response, or a
 paginator to list schedules or groups.
        var results = new List<ScheduleSummary>();
        var paginateSchedules = schedulerClient.Paginators.ListSchedules(
            new ListSchedulesRequest());
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Hello AWS Scheduler! Let's list schedules in your account.");
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var schedule in paginateSchedules.Schedules)
        {
            results.Add(schedule);
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTotal of {results.Count} schedule(s) available.");
        results.ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"\tSchedule: {s.Name}"));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.SchedulerAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ListSchedulesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ScheduleSummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.paginators.ListSchedulesPublisher;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class HelloScheduler {

    public static void main(String [] args) {
        listSchedulesAsync();
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the schedules available.
```

```
     * <p>
     * This method uses the {@link SchedulerAsyncClient} to make an asynchronous
 request to
     * list all the schedules available. The method uses the {@link
 ListSchedulesPublisher}
     * to fetch the schedules in a paginated manner, and then processes the
 responses
     * asynchronously.
     */
    public static void listSchedulesAsync() {
        SchedulerAsyncClient schedulerAsyncClient =
 SchedulerAsyncClient.create();

        // Build the request to list schedules
        ListSchedulesRequest listSchedulesRequest =
 ListSchedulesRequest.builder().build();

        // Use the paginator to fetch all schedules asynchronously.
        ListSchedulesPublisher paginator =
 schedulerAsyncClient.listSchedulesPaginator(listSchedulesRequest);
        List<ScheduleSummary> results = new ArrayList<>();

        // Subscribe to the paginator to process the response asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schedules().forEach(schedule -> {
                results.add(schedule);
                System.out.printf("Schedule: %s%n", schedule.name());
            });
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete.
        future.join();

        // After all schedules are fetched, print the total count.
        System.out.printf("Total of %d schedule(s) available.%n",
 results.size());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_scheduler(scheduler_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon EventBridge Scheduler
    client and list the schedules in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param scheduler_client: A Boto3 Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Client object.
 This object wraps
                             the low-level Amazon EventBridge Scheduler service
 API.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon EventBridge Scheduler! Let's list some of your
 schedules:\n")
    paginator = scheduler_client.get_paginator("list_schedules")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10})

    schedule_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for schedule in page["Schedules"]:
            schedule_names.append(schedule["Name"])

    print(f"{len(schedule_names)} schedule(s) retrieved.")
    for schedule_name in schedule_names:
        print(f"\t{schedule_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_scheduler(boto3.client("scheduler"))
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs
  - Hello EventBridge Scheduler
  - Actions for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateSchedule with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateScheduleGroup with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteSchedule with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteScheduleGroup with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs
  - A complete EventBridge Scheduler Scheduled Events scenario using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon EventBridge Scheduler with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello EventBridge Scheduler
- Actions for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateSchedule with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateScheduleGroup with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteSchedule with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteScheduleGroup with an AWS SDK

Hello EventBridge Scheduler

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge Scheduler.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloScheduler
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the EventBridge Scheduler service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var schedulerClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonScheduler>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response, or a
 paginator to list schedules or groups.
        var results = new List<ScheduleSummary>();
        var paginateSchedules = schedulerClient.Paginators.ListSchedules(
            new ListSchedulesRequest());
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Hello AWS Scheduler! Let's list schedules in your account.");
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var schedule in paginateSchedules.Schedules)
        {
            results.Add(schedule);
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTotal of {results.Count} schedule(s) available.");
        results.ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"\tSchedule: {s.Name}"));
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.SchedulerAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ListSchedulesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ScheduleSummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.paginators.ListSchedulesPublisher;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class HelloScheduler {

    public static void main(String [] args) {
        listSchedulesAsync();
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the schedules available.
     * <p>
     * This method uses the {@link SchedulerAsyncClient} to make an asynchronous
 request to
     * list all the schedules available. The method uses the {@link
 ListSchedulesPublisher}
     * to fetch the schedules in a paginated manner, and then processes the
 responses
     * asynchronously.
     */
    public static void listSchedulesAsync() {
```

```
        SchedulerAsyncClient schedulerAsyncClient =
 SchedulerAsyncClient.create();

        // Build the request to list schedules
        ListSchedulesRequest listSchedulesRequest =
 ListSchedulesRequest.builder().build();

        // Use the paginator to fetch all schedules asynchronously.
        ListSchedulesPublisher paginator =
 schedulerAsyncClient.listSchedulesPaginator(listSchedulesRequest);
        List<ScheduleSummary> results = new ArrayList<>();

        // Subscribe to the paginator to process the response asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schedules().forEach(schedule -> {
                results.add(schedule);
                System.out.printf("Schedule: %s%n", schedule.name());
            });
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete.
        future.join();

        // After all schedules are fetched, print the total count.
        System.out.printf("Total of %d schedule(s) available.%n",
 results.size());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_scheduler(scheduler_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon EventBridge Scheduler
    client and list the schedules in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param scheduler_client: A Boto3 Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Client object.
 This object wraps
                             the low-level Amazon EventBridge Scheduler service
 API.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon EventBridge Scheduler! Let's list some of your
 schedules:\n")
    paginator = scheduler_client.get_paginator("list_schedules")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10})

    schedule_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for schedule in page["Schedules"]:
            schedule_names.append(schedule["Name"])

    print(f"{len(schedule_names)} schedule(s) retrieved.")
    for schedule_name in schedule_names:
        print(f"\t{schedule_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_scheduler(boto3.client("scheduler"))
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Actions for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual EventBridge Scheduler actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the EventBridge Scheduler API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateSchedule with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateScheduleGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteSchedule with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteScheduleGroup with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateSchedule` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSchedule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Scheduled Events

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleExpression">The schedule expression that defines
when the schedule should run.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="scheduleGroupName">The name of the schedule group to which
the schedule should be added.</param>
   /// <param name="deleteAfterCompletion">Indicates whether to delete the
schedule after completion.</param>
   /// <param name="useFlexibleTimeWindow">Indicates whether to use a flexible
time window for the schedule.</param>
   /// <param name="targetArn">ARN of the event target.</param>
   /// <param name="roleArn">Execution Role ARN.</param>
   /// <returns>True if the schedule was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleAsync(
           string name,
           string scheduleExpression,
           string scheduleGroupName,
           string targetArn,
           string roleArn,
           string input,
           bool deleteAfterCompletion = false,
           bool useFlexibleTimeWindow = false)
   {
       try
       {
           int hoursToRun = 1;
           int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

           var request = new CreateScheduleRequest
           {
               Name = name,
               ScheduleExpression = scheduleExpression,
               GroupName = scheduleGroupName,
               Target = new Target { Arn = targetArn, RoleArn = roleArn, Input =
input },
               ActionAfterCompletion = deleteAfterCompletion
                   ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                   : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE,
               StartDate = DateTime.UtcNow, // Ignored for one-time schedules.
               EndDate =
                   DateTime.UtcNow
                       .AddHours(hoursToRun) // Ignored for one-time schedules.
           };
           // Allow a flexible time window if the caller specifies it.
           request.FlexibleTimeWindow = new FlexibleTimeWindow
           {
               Mode = useFlexibleTimeWindow
```

```
                    ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                    : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF,
                MaximumWindowInMinutes = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                    : null
            };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule '{name}' " +
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{response.ScheduleArn}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating schedule '{name}'
" +
                             $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new schedule for a target task.
    *
    * @param name                  the name of the schedule
    * @param scheduleExpression    The schedule expression that defines when the
schedule should run.
    * @param scheduleGroupName     the name of the schedule group to which the
schedule belongs
    * @param targetArn             the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target
task
    * @param roleArn               the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the
schedule
    * @param input                 the input data for the target task
    * @param deleteAfterCompletion whether to delete the schedule after it's
executed
    * @param useFlexibleTimeWindow whether to use a flexible time window for the
schedule execution
    * @return true if the schedule was successfully created, false otherwise
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> createScheduleAsync(
       String name,
       String scheduleExpression,
       String scheduleGroupName,
       String targetArn,
       String roleArn,
       String input,
       boolean deleteAfterCompletion,
       boolean useFlexibleTimeWindow) {

       int hoursToRun = 1;
       int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

       Target target = Target.builder()
           .arn(targetArn)
           .roleArn(roleArn)
           .input(input)
           .build();

       FlexibleTimeWindow flexibleTimeWindow = FlexibleTimeWindow.builder()
           .mode(useFlexibleTimeWindow
               ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
               : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF)
```

```
            .maximumWindowInMinutes(useFlexibleTimeWindow
                ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                : null)
            .build();

        Instant startDate = Instant.now();
        Instant endDate = startDate.plus(Duration.ofHours(hoursToRun));

        CreateScheduleRequest request = CreateScheduleRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .scheduleExpression(scheduleExpression)
            .groupName(scheduleGroupName)
            .target(target)
            .actionAfterCompletion(deleteAfterCompletion
                ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE)
            .startDate(startDate)
            .endDate(endDate)
            .flexibleTimeWindow(flexibleTimeWindow)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createSchedule(request)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                logger.info("Successfully created schedule {} in schedule group
{}, The ARN is {} ", name, scheduleGroupName, response.scheduleArn());
                return true;
            })
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    if (ex instanceof ConflictException) {
                        // Handle ConflictException
                        logger.error("A conflict exception occurred while
creating the schedule: {}", ex.getMessage());
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict exception
occurred while creating the schedule: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error creating schedule: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def create_schedule(
        self,
        name: str,
        schedule_expression: str,
        schedule_group_name: str,
        target_arn: str,
        role_arn: str,
        input: str,
        delete_after_completion: bool = False,
        use_flexible_time_window: bool = False,
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule with the specified parameters.
```

```
        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_expression: The expression that defines when the schedule
runs.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param target_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the execution IAM
role.
        :param input: The input for the target.
        :param delete_after_completion: Whether to delete the schedule after it
completes.
        :param use_flexible_time_window: Whether to use a flexible time window.

        :return The ARN of the created schedule.
        """
        try:
            hours_to_run = 1
            flexible_time_window_minutes = 10
            parameters = {
                "Name": name,
                "ScheduleExpression": schedule_expression,
                "GroupName": schedule_group_name,
                "Target": {"Arn": target_arn, "RoleArn": role_arn, "Input":
input},
                "StartDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc),
                "EndDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc) +
timedelta(hours=hours_to_run),
            }

            if delete_after_completion:
                parameters["ActionAfterCompletion"] = "DELETE"

            if use_flexible_time_window:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {
                    "Mode": "FLEXIBLE",
                    "MaximumWindowInMinutes": flexible_time_window_minutes,
                }
            else:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {"Mode": "OFF"}

            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule(**parameters)
            return response["ScheduleArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]
["Message"]
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateScheduleGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateScheduleGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Scheduled Events

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule group in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was created successfully, false
 otherwise.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            var response = await
_amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule group '{name}':
{response.ScheduleGroupArn}.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule group '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new schedule group.
    *
    * @param name the name of the schedule group to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of creating the schedule group
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse>
createScheduleGroup(String name) {
       CreateScheduleGroupRequest request = CreateScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .build();

       logger.info("Initiating createScheduleGroup call for group: {}", name);
       CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse> futureResponse =
getAsyncClient().createScheduleGroup(request);
       futureResponse.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               if (ex instanceof CompletionException && ex.getCause() instanceof
ConflictException) {
                   // Rethrow the ConflictException
                   throw (ConflictException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schedule
group: " + name, ex);
               }
           } else if (response == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create schedule group:
response was null");
           } else {
               logger.info("Successfully created schedule group '{}': {}", name,
response.scheduleGroupArn());
           }
       });

       return futureResponse;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def create_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule group with the specified name and description.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param description: The description of the schedule group.

        :return: The ARN of the created schedule group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule_group(Name=name)
            return response["ScheduleGroupArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
```

```
                "Failed to create schedule group '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Error creating schedule group: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteSchedule` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSchedule`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Scheduled Events

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was deleted successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleAsync(string name, string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                GroupName = groupName
            };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule with name
'{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule with ID '{name}' because the resource
was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule with ID '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a schedule with the specified name and group name.
    *
    * @param name      the name of the schedule to be deleted
    * @param groupName the group name of the schedule to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates
whether the schedule was successfully deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the
schedule, except for the case where the schedule is not found
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> deleteScheduleAsync(String name, String
groupName) {
       DeleteScheduleRequest request = DeleteScheduleRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .groupName(groupName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteScheduleResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSchedule(request);
       return response.handle((result, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                   throw new CompletionException("Resource not found while
deleting schedule with ID: " + name, ex);
               } else {
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schedule.",
ex);
               }
           }
           logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule with name {}.", name);
           return true;
```

```
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def delete_schedule(self, name: str, schedule_group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule with the specified name and schedule group.

        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule(
```

```
                Name=name, GroupName=schedule_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule with ID '%s' because the resource
 was not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]
["Message"]
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteScheduleGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteScheduleGroup`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule group from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was deleted successfully, false
 otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule group '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule group '{name}' because the resource
was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
     * Deletes the specified schedule group.
     *
     * @param name the name of the schedule group to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schedule group
has been deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the schedule
group
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteScheduleGroupAsync(String name) {
        DeleteScheduleGroupRequest request = DeleteScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteScheduleGroup(request)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule group {}", name);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The resource was not
found: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error deleting schedule
group: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def delete_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule group with the specified name.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule_group(Name=name)
            logger.info("Schedule group %s deleted successfully.", name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule group with ID '%s' because the
 resource was not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for EventBridge Scheduler using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in EventBridge Scheduler with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within EventBridge Scheduler or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- A complete EventBridge Scheduler Scheduled Events scenario using an AWS SDK

A complete EventBridge Scheduler Scheduled Events scenario using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Deploy a AWS CloudFormation stack with required resources.
- Create a EventBridge Scheduler schedule group.
- Create a one-time EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a flexible time window.
- Create a recurring EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a specified rate.
- Delete EventBridge Scheduler the schedule and schedule group.
- Clean up resources and delete the stack.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Scheduler;
using Amazon.Scheduler.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
using SchedulerActions;
using Exception = System.Exception;

namespace SchedulerScenario;

public class SchedulerWorkflow
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
    This .NET code example performs the following tasks for the Amazon
 EventBridge Scheduler workflow:

    1. Prepare the Application:
       - Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription for the
 SNS topic subscription.
       - Prompt the user for a name for the Cloud Formation stack.
       - Deploy the Cloud Formation template in resources/cfn_template.yaml for
 resource creation.
       - Store the outputs of the stack into variables for use in the scenario.
       - Create a schedule group for all schedules.

    2. Create one-time Schedule:
       - Create a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
       - Use a Flexible Time Window and set the schedule to delete after
 completion.
       - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.

    3. Create a time-based schedule:
       - Prompt the user for how many X times per Y hours a recurring event
 should be scheduled.
       - Create the scheduled event for X times per hour for Y hours.
       - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
```

```
        - Delete the schedule when the user is finished.

    4. Clean up:
        - Prompt the user for y/n answer if they want to destroy the stack and
 clean up all resources.
        - Delete the schedule group.
        - Destroy the Cloud Formation stack and wait until the stack has been
 removed.
    */

    public static ILogger<SchedulerWorkflow> _logger = null!;
    public static SchedulerWrapper _schedulerWrapper = null!;
    public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation = null!;

    private static string _roleArn = null!;
    private static string _snsTopicArn = null!;

    public static bool _interactive = true;
    private static string _stackName = "default-scheduler-scenario-stack-name";
    private static string _scheduleGroupName = "scenario-schedules-group";
    private static string _stackResourcePath = "../../../../../../scenarios/
features/eventbridge_scheduler/resources/cfn_template.yaml";

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudFormation>()
                    .AddTransient<SchedulerWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        if (_interactive)
        {
            _logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
                .CreateLogger<SchedulerWorkflow>();
```

```
            _schedulerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SchedulerWrapper>();
            _amazonCloudFormation =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonCloudFormation>();
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler
Scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            var prepareSuccess = await PrepareApplication();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            if (prepareSuccess)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                await CreateOneTimeSchedule();
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                await CreateRecurringSchedule();
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            }

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem with the scenario,
initiating cleanup...");
            _interactive = false;
            await Cleanup();
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler scenario completed.");
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Prepares the application by creating the necessary resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the application was prepared successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> PrepareApplication()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Preparing the application...");
        try
        {
            // Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription.
            Console.WriteLine("\nThis example creates resources in a
CloudFormation stack, including an SNS topic" +
                              "\nthat will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler
events. " +
                              "\n\nYou will need to confirm the subscription in order
to receive event emails. ");

            var emailAddress = PromptUserForEmail();

            // Prompt the user for a name for the CloudFormation stack
            _stackName = PromptUserForStackName();

            // Deploy the CloudFormation stack
            var deploySuccess = await DeployCloudFormationStack(_stackName,
emailAddress);

            if (deploySuccess)
            {
                // Create a schedule group for all schedules
                await
_schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(_scheduleGroupName);

                Console.WriteLine("Application preparation complete.");
                return true;
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred while preparing the
application.");
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Application preparation failed.");
        return false;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deploys the CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use for the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the stack was deployed successfully.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> DeployCloudFormationStack(string stackName,
string email)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\nDeploying CloudFormation stack: {stackName}");

        try
        {
            var request = new CreateStackRequest
            {
                StackName = stackName,
                TemplateBody = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_stackResourcePath),
                Capabilities = { Capability.CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM }
            };

            // If an email is provided, set the parameter.
            if (!string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(email))
            {
                request.Parameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new() { ParameterKey = "email", ParameterValue = email }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonCloudFormation.CreateStackAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack creation started:
{stackName}");

                // Wait for the stack to be in CREATE_COMPLETE state
                bool stackCreated = await
WaitForStackCompletion(response.StackId);

                if (stackCreated)
                {
                    // Retrieve the output values
                    var success = await GetStackOutputs(response.StackId);
```

```
                    return success;
                }
                else
                {
                    _logger.LogError($"CloudFormation stack creation failed:
{stackName}");
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Failed to create CloudFormation stack:
{stackName}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"CloudFormation stack '{stackName}' already
exists. Please provide a unique name.");
            var newStackName = PromptUserForStackName();
            return await DeployCloudFormationStack(newStackName, email);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while deploying the
CloudFormation stack: {stackName}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Waits for the CloudFormation stack to be in the CREATE_COMPLETE state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The CloudFormation client.</param>
    /// <param name="stackId">The ID of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the stack was created successfully.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> WaitForStackCompletion(string stackId)
    {
        int retryCount = 0;
        const int maxRetries = 10;
        const int retryDelay = 30000; // 30 seconds.

        while (retryCount < maxRetries)
```

```
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest
            {
                StackName = stackId
            };

            var describeStacksResponse = await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

            if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count > 0)
            {
                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.CREATE_COMPLETE)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("CloudFormation stack creation complete.");
                    return true;
                }
                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.CREATE_FAILED ||
                        describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.ROLLBACK_COMPLETE)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("CloudFormation stack creation failed.");
                    return false;
                }
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to
complete...");
            await Task.Delay(retryDelay);
            retryCount++;
        }

        _logger.LogError("Timed out waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to
complete.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves the output values from the CloudFormation stack.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackId">The ID of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    private static async Task<bool> GetStackOutputs(string stackId)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest { StackName =
stackId };

            var describeStacksResponse =
                await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

            if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count > 0)
            {
                var stack = describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0];
                _roleArn = GetStackOutputValue(stack, "RoleARN");
                _snsTopicArn = GetStackOutputValue(stack, "SNStopicARN");
                return true;
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"No stack found for stack outputs: {stackId}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                ex, $"Failed to retrieve CloudFormation stack outputs:
{stackId}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get an output value by key from a CloudFormation stack.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stack">The CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <param name="outputKey">The key of the output.</param>
    /// <returns>The value as a string.</returns>
    private static string GetStackOutputValue(Stack stack, string outputKey)
    {
        var output = stack.Outputs.First(o => o.OutputKey == outputKey);
        var outputValue = output.OutputValue;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stack output {outputKey}: {outputValue}");
        return outputValue;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the one-time schedule was created successfully.</
returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CreateOneTimeSchedule()
    {
        var scheduleName =
            PromptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the one-time schedule:");

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating a one-time schedule named '{scheduleName}' "
 +
                          $"\nto send an initial event in 1 minute with a
 flexible time window...");
        try
        {
            // Create a one-time schedule with a flexible time
            // window set to delete after completion.
            // You may also set a timezone instead of using UTC.
            var scheduledTime = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(1).ToString("s");

            var createSuccess = await _schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleAsync(
                scheduleName,
                $"at({scheduledTime})",
                _scheduleGroupName,
                _snsTopicArn,
                _roleArn,
                $"One time scheduled event test from schedule {scheduleName}.",
                true,
                useFlexibleTimeWindow: true);

            Console.WriteLine($"Subscription email will receive an email from
 this event.");
            Console.WriteLine($"You must confirm your subscription to receive
 event emails.");

            Console.WriteLine($"One-time schedule '{scheduleName}' created
 successfully.");
            return createSuccess;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"The target with ARN '{_snsTopicArn}' was not
 found.");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the one-time
 schedule '{scheduleName}'.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a recurring schedule to send events at a specified rate in
 minutes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the recurring schedule was created successfully.</
returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CreateRecurringSchedule()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one
 hour...");

        try
        {
            // Prompt the user for a schedule name.
            var scheduleName =
                PromptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the recurring
 schedule: ");

            // Prompt the user for the schedule rate (in minutes).
            var scheduleRateInMinutes =
                PromptUserForInteger("Enter the desired schedule rate (in
 minutes): ");

            // Create the recurring schedule.
            var createSuccess = await _schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleAsync(
                scheduleName,
                $"rate({scheduleRateInMinutes} minutes)",
                _scheduleGroupName,
                _snsTopicArn,
                _roleArn,
                $"Recurrent event test from schedule {scheduleName}.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Subscription email will receive an email from
this event.");
            Console.WriteLine($"You must confirm your subscription to receive
event emails.");

            // Delete the schedule when the user is finished.
            if (!_interactive || GetYesNoResponse($"Are you ready to delete the
'{scheduleName}' schedule? (y/n)"))
            {
                await _schedulerWrapper.DeleteScheduleAsync(scheduleName,
_scheduleGroupName);
            }

            return createSuccess;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"The target with ARN '{_snsTopicArn}' was not
found.");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred while creating the recurring
schedule.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up the resources created during the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the cleanup was successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup()
    {
        // Prompt the user to confirm cleanup.
        var cleanup = !_interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
            "Do you want to delete all resources created by this scenario? (y/n)
");
        if (cleanup)
        {
            try
            {
                // Delete the schedule group.
```

```
                var groupDeleteSuccess = await
_schedulerWrapper.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(_scheduleGroupName);

                // Destroy the CloudFormation stack and wait for it to be
removed.
                var stackDeleteSuccess = await
DeleteCloudFormationStack(_stackName, false);

                return groupDeleteSuccess && stackDeleteSuccess;
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                _logger.LogError(ex,
                    "An error occurred while cleaning up the resources.");
                return false;
            }
        }
        _logger.LogInformation("EventBridge Scheduler scenario is complete.");
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the resources in the stack and wait for confirmation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the stack.</param>
    /// <param name="forceDelete">True to force delete the stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> DeleteCloudFormationStack(string stackName,
bool forceDelete)
    {
        var request = new DeleteStackRequest
        {
            StackName = stackName,
        };

        if (forceDelete)
        {
            request.DeletionMode = DeletionMode.FORCE_DELETE_STACK;
        }

        await _amazonCloudFormation.DeleteStackAsync(request);
        Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack '{_stackName}' is being deleted.
This may take a few minutes.");
```

```
        bool stackDeleted = await WaitForStackDeletion(_stackName, forceDelete);

        if (stackDeleted)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack '{_stackName}' has been
deleted.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to delete CloudFormation stack
'{_stackName}'.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for the stack to be deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the stack.</param>
    /// <param name="forceDelete">True to force delete the stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> WaitForStackDeletion(string stackName, bool
forceDelete)
    {
        int retryCount = 0;
        const int maxRetries = 10;
        const int retryDelay = 30000; // 30 seconds

        while (retryCount < maxRetries)
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest
            {
                StackName = stackName
            };

            try
            {
                var describeStacksResponse = await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count == 0 ||
describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus == StackStatus.DELETE_COMPLETE)
                {
```

```
                    return true;
                }
                if (!forceDelete && describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus
 == StackStatus.DELETE_FAILED)
                {
                    // Try one time to force delete.
                    return await DeleteCloudFormationStack(stackName, true);
                }
            }
            catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex) when (ex.ErrorCode ==
 "ValidationError")
            {
                // Stack does not exist, so it has been successfully deleted.
                return true;
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for CloudFormation stack '{stackName}' to
 be deleted...");
            await Task.Delay(retryDelay);
            retryCount++;
        }

        _logger.LogError($"Timed out waiting for CloudFormation stack
 '{stackName}' to be deleted.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a valid email address.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid email address.</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForEmail()
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter an email address to use for event
subscriptions: ");

            string email = Console.ReadLine()!;

            if (!IsValidEmail(email))
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Invalid email address. Please try again.");
                return PromptUserForEmail();
            }
            return email;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return "";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty stack name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForStackName()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Enter a name for the AWS Cloud Formation Stack: ");
        if (_interactive)
        {
            string stackName = Console.ReadLine()!;
            var regex = "[a-zA-Z][-a-zA-Z0-9]|arn:[-a-zA-Z0-9:/._+]";
            if (!Regex.IsMatch(stackName, regex))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Invalid stack name. Please use a name that matches the
pattern {regex}.");
                return PromptUserForStackName();
            }

            return stackName;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
```

```
        return _stackName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty resource name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForResourceName(string prompt)
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(prompt);
            string resourceName = Console.ReadLine()!;
            var regex = "[0-9a-zA-Z-_.]+";
            if (!Regex.IsMatch(resourceName, regex))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Invalid resource name. Please use a name that
matches the pattern {regex}.");
                return PromptUserForResourceName(prompt);
            }
            return resourceName!;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return "resource-" + Guid.NewGuid();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty resource name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static int PromptUserForInteger(string prompt)
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(prompt);
            string stringResponse = Console.ReadLine()!;
            if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(stringResponse) ||
                !Int32.TryParse(stringResponse, out var intResponse))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Invalid integer. ");
                return PromptUserForInteger(prompt);
            }
            return intResponse!;
        }
```

```
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return 1;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use System Mail to check for a valid email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The string to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if a valid email address.</returns>
    private static bool IsValidEmail(string email)
    {
        try
        {
            var mailAddress = new System.Net.Mail.MailAddress(email);
            return mailAddress.Address == email;
        }
        catch
        {
            // Invalid emails will cause an exception, return false.
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
using Amazon.Scheduler;
using Amazon.Scheduler.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace SchedulerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon EventBridge Scheduler operations.
/// </summary>
public class SchedulerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonScheduler _amazonScheduler;
    private readonly ILogger<SchedulerWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SchedulerWrapper class.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonScheduler">The injected EventBridge Scheduler
client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger.</param>
    public SchedulerWrapper(IAmazonScheduler amazonScheduler,
ILogger<SchedulerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonScheduler = amazonScheduler;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleExpression">The schedule expression that defines
when the schedule should run.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleGroupName">The name of the schedule group to which
the schedule should be added.</param>
    /// <param name="deleteAfterCompletion">Indicates whether to delete the
schedule after completion.</param>
    /// <param name="useFlexibleTimeWindow">Indicates whether to use a flexible
time window for the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">ARN of the event target.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">Execution Role ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleAsync(
            string name,
            string scheduleExpression,
            string scheduleGroupName,
            string targetArn,
            string roleArn,
            string input,
            bool deleteAfterCompletion = false,
            bool useFlexibleTimeWindow = false)
    {
        try
        {
            int hoursToRun = 1;
            int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

            var request = new CreateScheduleRequest
            {
```

```
                Name = name,
                ScheduleExpression = scheduleExpression,
                GroupName = scheduleGroupName,
                Target = new Target { Arn = targetArn, RoleArn = roleArn, Input =
input },
                ActionAfterCompletion = deleteAfterCompletion
                    ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                    : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE,
                StartDate = DateTime.UtcNow, // Ignored for one-time schedules.
                EndDate =
                    DateTime.UtcNow
                        .AddHours(hoursToRun) // Ignored for one-time schedules.
            };
            // Allow a flexible time window if the caller specifies it.
            request.FlexibleTimeWindow = new FlexibleTimeWindow
            {
                Mode = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                    : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF,
                MaximumWindowInMinutes = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                    : null
            };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule '{name}' " +
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{response.ScheduleArn}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating schedule '{name}'
" +
                             $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{ex.Message}");
```

```
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule group in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            var response = await
_amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule group '{name}':
{response.ScheduleGroupArn}.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule group '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was deleted successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleAsync(string name, string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                GroupName = groupName
            };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule with name
'{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule with ID '{name}' because the resource
was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule with ID '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule group from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was deleted successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule group '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule group '{name}' because the resource
 was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule group '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule
  - DeleteScheduleGroups

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.SchedulerException;
import javax.mail.internet.AddressException;
import javax.mail.internet.InternetAddress;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.format.DateTimeFormatter;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks for the Amazon EventBridge
 Scheduler workflow:
 * <p>
 * 1. Prepare the Application:
 * - Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription for the SNS
 topic subscription.
 * - Deploy the Cloud Formation template in resources/cfn_template.yaml for
 resource creation.
 * - Store the outputs of the stack into variables for use in the workflow.
 * - Create a schedule group for all workflow schedules.
 * <p>
 * 2. Create one-time Schedule:
 * - Create a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
 * - Use a Flexible Time Window and set the schedule to delete after completion.
 * - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
 * <p>
 * 3. Create a time-based schedule:
```

```
 * - Prompt the user for how many X times per Y hours a recurring event should be
 scheduled.
 * - Create the scheduled event for X times per hour for Y hours.
 * - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
 * - Delete the schedule when the user is finished.
 * <p>
 * 4. Clean up:
 * - Prompt the user for y/n answer if they want to destroy the stack and clean
 up all resources.
 * - Delete the schedule group.
 * - Destroy the Cloud Formation stack and wait until the stack has been removed.
 */

public class EventbridgeSchedulerScenario {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EventbridgeSchedulerScenario.class);
    private static final Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    private static String STACK_NAME = "workflow-stack-name";
    private static final String scheduleGroupName = "schedules-group";

    private static String recurringScheduleName = "";

    private static String oneTimeScheduleName = "";

    private static final EventbridgeSchedulerActions eventbridgeActions = new
 EventbridgeSchedulerActions();

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static String roleArn = "";
    public static String snsTopicArn = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Workflow.");
        logger.info("""
            Amazon EventBridge Scheduler is a fully managed service that helps
 you schedule and execute
            a wide range of tasks and events in the cloud. It's designed to
 simplify the process of
            scheduling and managing recurring or one-time events, making it
 easier for developers and
```

```
            businesses to automate various workflows and processes.

            One of the key features of Amazon EventBridge Scheduler is its
ability to schedule events
            based on a variety of triggers, including time-based schedules,
custom event patterns, or
            even integration with other AWS services. For example, you can use
EventBridge Scheduler
            to schedule a report generation task to run every weekday at 9 AM, or
to trigger a
            Lambda function when a specific Amazon S3 object is created.

            This flexibility allows you to build complex and dynamic event-driven
architectures
            that adapt to your business needs.

            Lets get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue();
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Prepare the application.");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        try {
            boolean prepareSuccess = prepareApplication();
            logger.info(DASHES);

            if (prepareSuccess) {
                logger.info("2. Create one-time schedule.");
                logger.info("""
                    A one-time schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler is an
event trigger that allows
                    you to schedule a one-time event to run at a specific date
and time. This is useful for
                    executing a specific task or workflow at a predetermined
time, without the need for recurring
                    or complex scheduling.
                    """);
                waitForInputToContinue();
                createOneTimeSchedule();
                logger.info("Do you want to delete the schedule {} (y/n) ?",
oneTimeScheduleName);
                String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
```

```
                if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {

eventbridgeActions.deleteScheduleAsync(oneTimeScheduleName,scheduleGroupName);
                }
                logger.info(DASHES);

                logger.info("3. Create a recurring schedule.");
                logger.info("""
                    A recurring schedule is a feature that allows you to schedule
and manage the execution
                    of your serverless applications or workloads on a recurring
basis. For example,
                    with EventBridge Scheduler, you can create custom schedules
for your AWS Lambda functions,
                    AWS Step Functions, and other supported event sources,
enabling you to automate tasks and
                    workflows without the need for complex infrastructure
management.
                    """);
                waitForInputToContinue();
                createRecurringSchedule();
                logger.info("Do you want to delete the schedule {} (y/n) ?",
oneTimeScheduleName);
                String ans2 = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                if (ans2.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {

eventbridgeActions.deleteScheduleAsync(recurringScheduleName,scheduleGroupName);
                }
                logger.info(DASHES);
            }
        } catch (Exception ex) {
            logger.info("There was a problem with the workflow {}, initiating
cleanup...", ex.getMessage());
            cleanUp();
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Clean up the resources.");
        logger.info("Do you want to delete these AWS resources (y/n) ?");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            cleanUp();
        } else {
            logger.info("The AWS resources will not be deleted.");
```

```
        }
        logger.info("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler workflow completed.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Cleans up the resources associated with the EventBridge scheduler.
     * If any errors occur during the cleanup process, the corresponding error
messages are logged.
     */
    public static void cleanUp() {
        logger.info("First, delete the schedule group.");
        logger.info("When the schedule group is deleted, schedules that are part
of that group are deleted.");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        try {

eventbridgeActions.deleteScheduleGroupAsync(scheduleGroupName).join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof SchedulerException schedulerException) {
                logger.error("Scheduler error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}",
                    schedulerException.getMessage(),
schedulerException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), schedulerException);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }

        logger.info("Destroy the CloudFormation stack");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
    }

    /**
     * Prepares the application by creating resources in a CloudFormation stack,
including an SNS topic
     * that will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler events. The user will
need to confirm the subscription
     * in order to receive event emails.
```

```
     *
     * @return true if the application preparation was successful, false
otherwise
     */
    public static boolean prepareApplication() {
        logger.info("""
            This example creates resources in a CloudFormation stack, including
an SNS topic
            that will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler events.
            You will need to confirm the subscription in order to receive event
emails.
             """);

        String emailAddress = promptUserForEmail();
        logger.info("You entered {}", emailAddress);

        logger.info("Do you want to use a custom Stack name (y/n) ?");
        String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            String newStackName = scanner.nextLine();
            logger.info("You entered {} for the new stack name", newStackName);
            waitForInputToContinue();
            STACK_NAME = newStackName;
        }

        logger.info("Get the roleArn and snsTopicArn values using a
Cloudformation template.");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME, emailAddress);
        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputs(STACK_NAME);
        roleArn = stackOutputs.get("RoleARN");
        snsTopicArn = stackOutputs.get("SNStopicARN");

        logger.info("The roleARN is {}", roleArn);
        logger.info("The snsTopicArn is {}", snsTopicArn);

        try {
            eventbridgeActions.createScheduleGroup(scheduleGroupName).join();
            logger.info("createScheduleGroupAsync completed successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.error("Error occurred: {} ", e.getMessage());
            return false;
```

```
        }
        logger.info("Application preparation complete.");
        return true;
    }

    /**
     * Waits for the user to enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue the
program.
     * This method is used to pause the program execution and wait for user input
before
     * proceeding.
     */
    private static void waitForInputToContinue() {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user to enter an email address and validates the input.
     * If the provided email address is invalid, the method will prompt the user
to try again.
     *
     * @return the valid email address entered by the user
     */
    private static String promptUserForEmail() {
        logger.info("Enter an email address to use for event subscriptions: ");
        String email = scanner.nextLine();
        if (!isValidEmail(email)) {
            logger.info("Invalid email address. Please try again.");
            return promptUserForEmail();
        }
        return email;
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Checks if the given email address is valid.
     *
     * @param email the email address to be validated
     * @return {@code true} if the email address is valid, {@code false}
 otherwise
     */
    private static boolean isValidEmail(String email) {
        try {
            InternetAddress emailAddress = new InternetAddress(email);
            emailAddress.validate();
            return true;

        } catch (AddressException e) {
            return false;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event in 1 minute with a
 flexible time window.
     *
     * @return {@code true} if the schedule was created successfully, {@code
 false} otherwise
     */
    public static Boolean createOneTimeSchedule() {
        oneTimeScheduleName = promptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the
 one-time schedule:");
        logger.info("Creating a one-time schedule named {} to send an initial
 event in 1 minute with a flexible time window...", oneTimeScheduleName);
        LocalDateTime scheduledTime = LocalDateTime.now();
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-
dd'T'HH:mm:ss");

        String scheduleExpression = "at(" + scheduledTime.format(formatter) +
 ")";
        return eventbridgeActions.createScheduleAsync(
            oneTimeScheduleName,
            scheduleExpression,
            scheduleGroupName,
            snsTopicArn,
            roleArn,
```

```
            "One time scheduled event test from schedule",
            true,
            true).join();
    }


    /**
     * Creates a recurring schedule to send events based on a specific time.
     *
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with a boolean value
indicating the success or failure of the operation.
     */
    public static Boolean createRecurringSchedule() {
        logger.info("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one
hour...");
        recurringScheduleName = promptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the
recurring schedule:");

        // Prompt the user for the schedule rate (in minutes).
        int scheduleRateInMinutes = promptUserForInteger("Enter the desired
schedule rate (in minutes): ");
        String scheduleExpression = "rate(" + scheduleRateInMinutes + "
minutes)";
        return eventbridgeActions.createScheduleAsync(
            recurringScheduleName,
            scheduleExpression,
            scheduleGroupName,
            snsTopicArn,
            roleArn,
            "Recurrent event test from schedule " + recurringScheduleName,
            true,
            true).join();
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user for a resource name and validates the input.
     *
     * @param prompt the message to display to the user when prompting for the
resource name
     * @return the valid resource name entered by the user
     */
    private static String promptUserForResourceName(String prompt) {
        logger.info(prompt);
        String resourceName = scanner.nextLine();
```

```
        String regex = "[0-9a-zA-Z-_.]+";
        if (!resourceName.matches(regex)) {
            logger.info("Invalid resource name. Please use a name that matches
 the pattern " + regex + ".");
            return promptUserForResourceName(prompt);
        }
        return resourceName;
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user for an integer input and returns the integer value.
     *
     * @param prompt the message to be displayed to the user when prompting for
 input
     * @return the integer value entered by the user
     */
    private static int promptUserForInteger(String prompt) {
        logger.info(prompt);
        String stringResponse = scanner.nextLine();
        if (stringResponse == null || stringResponse.trim().isEmpty() || !
isInteger(stringResponse)) {
            logger.info("Invalid integer.");
            return promptUserForInteger(prompt);
        }
        return Integer.parseInt(stringResponse);
    }

    /**
     * Checks if the given string represents a valid integer.
     *
     * @param str the string to be checked
     * @return {@code true} if the string represents a valid integer, {@code
 false} otherwise
     */
    private static boolean isInteger(String str) {
        try {
            Integer.parseInt(str);
            return true;
        } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.SchedulerAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ActionAfterCompletion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ConflictException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.CreateScheduleGroupRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.CreateScheduleGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.CreateScheduleRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.DeleteScheduleGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.DeleteScheduleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.DeleteScheduleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.FlexibleTimeWindow;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.FlexibleTimeWindowMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.Target;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

public class EventbridgeSchedulerActions {

    private static SchedulerAsyncClient schedulerClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EventbridgeSchedulerActions.class);

    public static SchedulerAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (schedulerClient == null) {
            /*
```

```
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
call timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            schedulerClient = SchedulerAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return schedulerClient;
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new schedule group.
     *
     * @param name the name of the schedule group to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of creating the schedule group
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse>
createScheduleGroup(String name) {
       CreateScheduleGroupRequest request = CreateScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .build();

       logger.info("Initiating createScheduleGroup call for group: {}", name);
       CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse> futureResponse =
getAsyncClient().createScheduleGroup(request);
       futureResponse.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               if (ex instanceof CompletionException && ex.getCause() instanceof
ConflictException) {
                   // Rethrow the ConflictException
                   throw (ConflictException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schedule
group: " + name, ex);
               }
           } else if (response == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create schedule group:
response was null");
           } else {
               logger.info("Successfully created schedule group '{}': {}", name,
response.scheduleGroupArn());
           }
       });

       return futureResponse;
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new schedule for a target task.
    *
    * @param name                  the name of the schedule
    * @param scheduleExpression    The schedule expression that defines when the
schedule should run.
    * @param scheduleGroupName     the name of the schedule group to which the
schedule belongs
    * @param targetArn             the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target
task
    * @param roleArn               the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the
schedule
```

```
     * @param input                 the input data for the target task
     * @param deleteAfterCompletion whether to delete the schedule after it's
executed
     * @param useFlexibleTimeWindow whether to use a flexible time window for the
schedule execution
     * @return true if the schedule was successfully created, false otherwise
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> createScheduleAsync(
        String name,
        String scheduleExpression,
        String scheduleGroupName,
        String targetArn,
        String roleArn,
        String input,
        boolean deleteAfterCompletion,
        boolean useFlexibleTimeWindow) {

        int hoursToRun = 1;
        int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

        Target target = Target.builder()
            .arn(targetArn)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .input(input)
            .build();

        FlexibleTimeWindow flexibleTimeWindow = FlexibleTimeWindow.builder()
            .mode(useFlexibleTimeWindow
                ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF)
            .maximumWindowInMinutes(useFlexibleTimeWindow
                ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                : null)
            .build();

        Instant startDate = Instant.now();
        Instant endDate = startDate.plus(Duration.ofHours(hoursToRun));

        CreateScheduleRequest request = CreateScheduleRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .scheduleExpression(scheduleExpression)
            .groupName(scheduleGroupName)
            .target(target)
            .actionAfterCompletion(deleteAfterCompletion
```

```
                ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE)
            .startDate(startDate)
            .endDate(endDate)
            .flexibleTimeWindow(flexibleTimeWindow)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createSchedule(request)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                logger.info("Successfully created schedule {} in schedule group
{}, The ARN is {} ", name, scheduleGroupName, response.scheduleArn());
                return true;
            })
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    if (ex instanceof ConflictException) {
                        // Handle ConflictException
                        logger.error("A conflict exception occurred while
creating the schedule: {}", ex.getMessage());
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict exception
occurred while creating the schedule: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error creating schedule: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    }
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes the specified schedule group.
     *
     * @param name the name of the schedule group to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schedule group
has been deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the schedule
group
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteScheduleGroupAsync(String name) {
        DeleteScheduleGroupRequest request = DeleteScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .build();
```

```
        return getAsyncClient().deleteScheduleGroup(request)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule group {}", name);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The resource was not
found: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error deleting schedule
group: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    }
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a schedule with the specified name and group name.
     *
     * @param name      the name of the schedule to be deleted
     * @param groupName the group name of the schedule to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates
whether the schedule was successfully deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the
schedule, except for the case where the schedule is not found
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> deleteScheduleAsync(String name, String
groupName) {
        DeleteScheduleRequest request = DeleteScheduleRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .groupName(groupName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteScheduleResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSchedule(request);
        return response.handle((result, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Resource not found while
deleting schedule with ID: " + name, ex);
                } else {
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schedule.",
 ex);
                }
            }
            logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule with name {}.", name);
            return true;
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule
  - DeleteScheduleGroups

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class SchedulerScenario:
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to schedule and receive events
 using
    the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        scheduler_wrapper: SchedulerWrapper,
        cloud_formation_resource: ServiceResource,
```

```
    ):
        self.eventbridge_scheduler = scheduler_wrapper
        self.cloud_formation_resource = cloud_formation_resource
        self.stack: ServiceResource = None
        self.schedule_group_name = None
        self.sns_topic_arn = None
        self.role_arn = None

    def run(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """

        print(DASHES)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Workflow.")
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        self.prepare_application()
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        self.create_one_time_schedule()
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        self.create_recurring_schedule()
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to delete all resources created by this workflow? (y/n)
",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            self.cleanup()
        print(DASHES)

        print("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler workflow completed.")

    def prepare_application(self) -> None:
        """
        Prepares the application by prompting the user setup information,
deploying a CloudFormation stack and
```

```
        creating a schedule group.
        """
        print("Preparing the application...")
        print(
            "\nThis example creates resources in a CloudFormation stack,
including an SNS topic"
            + "\nthat will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler events. "
            + "\n\nYou will need to confirm the subscription in order to receive
event emails. "
        )

        email_address = q.ask("Enter an email address to use for event
subscriptions: ")
        stack_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the AWS Cloud Formation Stack: ")

        template_file = SchedulerScenario.get_template_as_string()

        parameters = [{"ParameterKey": "email", "ParameterValue": email_address}]

        self.stack = self.deploy_cloudformation_stack(
            stack_name, template_file, parameters
        )
        outputs = self.stack.outputs
        for output in outputs:
            if output.get("OutputKey") == "RoleARN":
                self.role_arn = output.get("OutputValue")
            elif output.get("OutputKey") == "SNStopicARN":
                self.sns_topic_arn = output.get("OutputValue")

        if not self.sns_topic_arn or not self.role_arn:
            error_string = f"""
            Failed to retrieve required outputs from CloudFormation stack.
            'sns_topic_arn'={self.sns_topic_arn}, 'role_arn'={self.role_arn}
            """
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)

        print(f"Stack output RoleARN: {self.role_arn}")
        print(f"Stack output SNStopicARN: a")
        schedule_group_name = "scenario-schedules-group"
        schedule_group_arn = self.eventbridge_scheduler.create_schedule_group(
            schedule_group_name
        )
        print(
```

```
            f"Successfully created schedule group '{self.schedule_group_name}':
{schedule_group_arn}."
        )
        self.schedule_group_name = schedule_group_name
        print("Application preparation complete.")

    def create_one_time_schedule(self) -> None:
        """
        Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
        """
        schedule_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the one-time schedule:")

        scheduled_time = datetime.now(timezone.utc) + timedelta(minutes=1)
        formatted_scheduled_time = scheduled_time.strftime("%Y-%m-%dT%H:%M:%S")

        print(
            f"Creating a one-time schedule named '{schedule_name}' "
            + f"\nto send an initial event in 1 minute with a flexible time
window..."
        )

        schedule_arn = self.eventbridge_scheduler.create_schedule(
            schedule_name,
            f"at({formatted_scheduled_time})",
            self.schedule_group_name,
            self.sns_topic_arn,
            self.role_arn,
            f"One time scheduled event test from schedule {schedule_name}.",
            delete_after_completion=True,
            use_flexible_time_window=True,
        )
        print(
            f"Successfully created schedule '{schedule_name}' in schedule group
'scenario-schedules-group': {schedule_arn}."
        )
        print(f"Subscription email will receive an email from this event.")
        print(f"You must confirm your subscription to receive event emails.")
        print(f"One-time schedule '{schedule_name}' created successfully.")

    def create_recurring_schedule(self) -> None:
        """
        Create a recurring schedule to send events at a specified rate in
minutes.
        """
```

```
        print("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one hour...")
        schedule_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the recurring schedule: ")
        schedule_rate_in_minutes = q.ask(
            "Enter the desired schedule rate (in minutes): ", q.is_int
        )

        schedule_arn = self.eventbridge_scheduler.create_schedule(
            schedule_name,
            f"rate({schedule_rate_in_minutes} minutes)",
            self.schedule_group_name,
            self.sns_topic_arn,
            self.role_arn,
            f"Recurrent event test from schedule {schedule_name}.",
        )

        print(
            f"Successfully created schedule '{schedule_name}' in schedule group
'scenario-schedules-group': {schedule_arn}."
        )
        print(f"Subscription email will receive an email from this event.")
        print(f"You must confirm your subscription to receive event emails.")

        if q.ask(
            f"Are you ready to delete the '{schedule_name}' schedule? (y/n)",
q.is_yesno
        ):
            self.eventbridge_scheduler.delete_schedule(
                schedule_name, self.schedule_group_name
            )

    def deploy_cloudformation_stack(
        self, stack_name: str, cfn_template: str, parameters: [dict[str, str]]
    ) -> ServiceResource:
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
        defined in the associated `cfn_template.yaml` AWS CloudFormation script
and are deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.

        :param stack_name: The name of the CloudFormation stack.
        :param cfn_template: The CloudFormation template as a string.
        :param parameters: The parameters for the CloudFormation stack.
        :return: The CloudFormation stack resource.
```

```
        """
        print(f"Deploying CloudFormation stack: {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cloud_formation_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=cfn_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
            Parameters=parameters,
        )
        print(f"CloudFormation stack creation started: {stack_name}")
        print("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to complete...")
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_create_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print("CloudFormation stack creation complete.")

        return stack

    def destroy_cloudformation_stack(self, stack: ServiceResource) -> None:
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example
resources.
        """
        print(
            f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' is being deleted. This may take
a few minutes."
        )
        stack.delete()
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_delete_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        print(f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' has been deleted.")

    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the CloudFormation stack and the resources created for the demo.
        """
```

```
        if self.schedule_group_name:
            schedule_group_name = self.schedule_group_name
            self.schedule_group_name = None
            self.eventbridge_scheduler.delete_schedule_group(schedule_group_name)
            print(f"Successfully deleted schedule group
 '{schedule_group_name}'.")

        if self.stack is not None:
            stack = self.stack
            self.stack = None
            self.destroy_cloudformation_stack(stack)
        print("Stack deleted, demo complete.")

    @staticmethod
    def get_template_as_string() -> str:
        """
        Returns a string containing this scenario's CloudFormation template.
        """
        script_directory = os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))
        template_file_path = os.path.join(script_directory, "cfn_template.yaml")
        file = open(template_file_path, "r")
        return file.read()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    demo: SchedulerScenario = None
    try:
        scheduler_wrapper = SchedulerWrapper.from_client()
        cloud_formation_resource = resource("cloudformation")
        demo = SchedulerScenario(scheduler_wrapper, cloud_formation_resource)
        demo.run()

    except Exception as exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
        if demo is not None:
            demo.cleanup()
```

SchedulerWrapper class that wraps Amazon EventBridge Scheduler actions.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
```

```
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def create_schedule(
        self,
        name: str,
        schedule_expression: str,
        schedule_group_name: str,
        target_arn: str,
        role_arn: str,
        input: str,
        delete_after_completion: bool = False,
        use_flexible_time_window: bool = False,
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule with the specified parameters.

        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_expression: The expression that defines when the schedule
runs.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param target_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the execution IAM
role.
        :param input: The input for the target.
        :param delete_after_completion: Whether to delete the schedule after it
completes.
        :param use_flexible_time_window: Whether to use a flexible time window.

        :return The ARN of the created schedule.
        """
        try:
```

```
            hours_to_run = 1
            flexible_time_window_minutes = 10
            parameters = {
                "Name": name,
                "ScheduleExpression": schedule_expression,
                "GroupName": schedule_group_name,
                "Target": {"Arn": target_arn, "RoleArn": role_arn, "Input":
 input},
                "StartDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc),
                "EndDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc) +
 timedelta(hours=hours_to_run),
            }

            if delete_after_completion:
                parameters["ActionAfterCompletion"] = "DELETE"

            if use_flexible_time_window:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {
                    "Mode": "FLEXIBLE",
                    "MaximumWindowInMinutes": flexible_time_window_minutes,
                }
            else:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {"Mode": "OFF"}

            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule(**parameters)
            return response["ScheduleArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]
["Message"]
                )
            raise


    def delete_schedule(self, name: str, schedule_group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule with the specified name and schedule group.
```

```
        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule(
                Name=name, GroupName=schedule_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule with ID '%s' because the resource
 was not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]
["Message"]
                )
                raise


    def create_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule group with the specified name and description.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param description: The description of the schedule group.

        :return: The ARN of the created schedule group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule_group(Name=name)
            return response["ScheduleGroupArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule group '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule group with the specified name.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule_group(Name=name)
            logger.info("Schedule group %s deleted successfully.", name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule group with ID '%s' because the
resource was not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule
  - DeleteScheduleGroups

Code examples for Forecast using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Forecast with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Forecast User Guide** – More information about Forecast.
- **Forecast API Reference** – Details about all available Forecast actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Forecast using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Forecast using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateForecast with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDataset with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteForecast with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeForecast with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListDatasetGroups with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListForecasts with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Forecast using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Forecast with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Forecast using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateForecast with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteForecast with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeForecast with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDatasetGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListForecasts with an AWS SDK

Actions for Forecast using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Forecast actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Forecast API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateForecast with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteForecast with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeForecast with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDatasetGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListForecasts with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateDataset` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDataset`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateDatasetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.Schema;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.SchemaAttribute;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateDatasetResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateDataSet {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <name>\s

                Where:
                    name - The name of the data set.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String name = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String myDataSetARN = createForecastDataSet(forecast, name);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new data set is " + myDataSetARN);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static String createForecastDataSet(ForecastClient forecast, String
 name) {
        try {
            Schema schema = Schema.builder()
                    .attributes(getSchema())
                    .build();

            CreateDatasetRequest datasetRequest = CreateDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .datasetName(name)
                    .domain("CUSTOM")
                    .datasetType("RELATED_TIME_SERIES")
                    .dataFrequency("D")
                    .schema(schema)
                    .build();

            CreateDatasetResponse response =
 forecast.createDataset(datasetRequest);
            return response.datasetArn();

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }

    // Create a SchemaAttribute list required to create a data set.
    private static List<SchemaAttribute> getSchema() {
```

```
        List<SchemaAttribute> schemaList = new ArrayList<>();
        SchemaAttribute att1 = SchemaAttribute.builder()
                .attributeName("item_id")
                .attributeType("string")
                .build();

        SchemaAttribute att2 = SchemaAttribute.builder()
                .attributeName("timestamp")
                .attributeType("timestamp")
                .build();

        SchemaAttribute att3 = SchemaAttribute.builder()
                .attributeName("target_value")
                .attributeType("float")
                .build();

        // Push the SchemaAttribute objects to the List.
        schemaList.add(att1);
        schemaList.add(att2);
        schemaList.add(att3);
        return schemaList;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateForecast` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateForecast`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateForecastRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateForecastResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateForecast {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <name> <predictorArn>\s

                Where:
                    name - The name of the forecast.\s
                    predictorArn - The arn of the predictor to use.\s

                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String name = args[0];
        String predictorArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String forecastArn = createNewForecast(forecast, name, predictorArn);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new forecast is " + forecastArn);
        forecast.close();
    }
```

```
    public static String createNewForecast(ForecastClient forecast, String name,
 String predictorArn) {
        try {
            CreateForecastRequest forecastRequest =
 CreateForecastRequest.builder()
                    .forecastName(name)
                    .predictorArn(predictorArn)
                    .build();

            CreateForecastResponse response =
 forecast.createForecast(forecastRequest);
            return response.forecastArn();

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateForecast in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDataset` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDataset`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DeleteDatasetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteDataset {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <datasetARN>\s

                Where:
                    datasetARN - The ARN of the data set to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String datasetARN = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteForecastDataSet(forecast, datasetARN);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void deleteForecastDataSet(ForecastClient forecast, String
 myDataSetARN) {
        try {
            DeleteDatasetRequest deleteRequest = DeleteDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .datasetArn(myDataSetARN)
                    .build();
```

```
            forecast.deleteDataset(deleteRequest);
            System.out.println("The Data Set was deleted");

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDataset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteForecast` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteForecast`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DeleteDatasetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteDataset {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <datasetARN>\s

                Where:
                    datasetARN - The ARN of the data set to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String datasetARN = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteForecastDataSet(forecast, datasetARN);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void deleteForecastDataSet(ForecastClient forecast, String
 myDataSetARN) {
        try {
            DeleteDatasetRequest deleteRequest = DeleteDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .datasetArn(myDataSetARN)
                    .build();

            forecast.deleteDataset(deleteRequest);
            System.out.println("The Data Set was deleted");

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteForecast in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeForecast` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeForecast`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DescribeForecastRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DescribeForecastResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeForecast {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <forecastarn>\s

                Where:
                    forecastarn - The arn of the forecast (for example,
 "arn:aws:forecast:us-west-2:xxxxx322:forecast/my_forecast)
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String forecastarn = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describe(forecast, forecastarn);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void describe(ForecastClient forecast, String forecastarn) {
        try {
            DescribeForecastRequest request = DescribeForecastRequest.builder()
                    .forecastArn(forecastarn)
                    .build();

            DescribeForecastResponse response =
 forecast.describeForecast(request);
            System.out.println("The name of the forecast is " +
 response.forecastName());

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeForecast in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListDatasetGroups` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatasetGroups`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DatasetGroupSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListDatasetGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListDatasetGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListDataSetGroups {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listDataGroups(forecast);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void listDataGroups(ForecastClient forecast) {
        try {
            ListDatasetGroupsRequest group = ListDatasetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
```

```
                    .build();

            ListDatasetGroupsResponse response =
 forecast.listDatasetGroups(group);
            List<DatasetGroupSummary> groups = response.datasetGroups();
            for (DatasetGroupSummary myGroup : groups) {
                System.out.println("The Data Set name is " +
 myGroup.datasetGroupName());
            }

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatasetGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListForecasts` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListForecasts`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListForecastsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListForecastsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListForecasts {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllForeCasts(forecast);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void listAllForeCasts(ForecastClient forecast) {
        try {
            ListForecastsRequest request = ListForecastsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListForecastsResponse response = forecast.listForecasts(request);
            List<ForecastSummary> forecasts = response.forecasts();
            for (ForecastSummary forecastSummary : forecasts) {
                System.out.println("The name of the forecast is " +
 forecastSummary.forecastName());
            }

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListForecasts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Glue with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Glue Developer Guide** – More information about AWS Glue.
- **AWS Glue API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Glue actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace GlueActions;

public class HelloGlue
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
                .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloGlue>();
        var glueClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonGlue>();

        var request = new ListJobsRequest();

        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        do
        {
            var response = await glueClient.ListJobsAsync(request);
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Glue. Let's list your existing Glue Jobs:");
        if (jobNames.Count == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("You don't have any AWS Glue jobs.");
        }
        else
        {
            jobNames.ForEach(Console.WriteLine);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS glue)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_glue")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})
```

```
if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_glue.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_glue.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/glue/GlueClient.h>
#include <aws/glue/model/ListJobsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Glue" starter application which initializes an AWS Glue client and
 lists the
 *  AWS Glue job definitions.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_glue'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
```

```
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Glue::GlueClient glueClient(clientConfig);

        std::vector<Aws::String> jobs;

        Aws::String nextToken;  // Used for pagination.
        do {
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome =
glueClient.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);

            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                jobs.insert(jobs.end(), jobNames.begin(), jobNames.end());

                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Your account has " << jobs.size() << " jobs."
                  << std::endl;
        for (size_t i = 0; i < jobs.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << jobs[i] << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.glue;

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.GlueClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.model.ListJobsResponse;
import java.util.List;

public class HelloGlue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        GlueClient glueClient = GlueClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listJobs(glueClient);
    }

    public static void listJobs(GlueClient glueClient) {
        ListJobsRequest request = ListJobsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build();
        ListJobsResponse response = glueClient.listJobs(request);
        List<String> jobList = response.jobNames();
        jobList.forEach(job -> {
            System.out.println("Job Name: " + job);
        });
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListJobsCommand, GlueClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-glue";

const client = new GlueClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListJobsCommand({});

  const { JobNames } = await client.send(command);
  const formattedJobNames = JobNames.join("\n");
  console.log("Job names: ");
  console.log(formattedJobNames);
  return JobNames;
};
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def hello_glue():
    """
    Lists the job definitions in your AWS Glue account, using the AWS SDK for
 Python (Boto3).
    """
    try:
        # Create the Glue client
        glue = boto3.client("glue")

        # List the jobs, limiting the results to 10 per page
        paginator = glue.get_paginator("get_jobs")
        response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
            PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10, "PageSize": 10}
        )

        # Print the job names
        print("Here are the jobs in your account:")
        for page in response_iterator:
            for job in page["Jobs"]:
                print(f"\t{job['Name']}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error: {e}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_glue()
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-glue'
require 'logger'

# GlueManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Glue operations
# such as listing all Glue jobs in the current AWS account.
class GlueManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all Glue jobs in the current AWS account.
  def list_jobs
    @logger.info('Here are the Glue jobs in your account:')

    paginator = @client.get_jobs(max_results: 10)
    jobs = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      jobs.concat(page.jobs)
    end

    if jobs.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any Glue jobs.")
    else
      jobs.each do |job|
```

```
        @logger.info("- #{job.name}")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  glue_client = Aws::Glue::Client.new
  manager = GlueManager.new(glue_client)
  manager.list_jobs
end
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let mut list_jobs = glue.list_jobs().into_paginator().send();
        while let Some(list_jobs_output) = list_jobs.next().await {
            match list_jobs_output {
                Ok(list_jobs) => {
                    let names = list_jobs.job_names();
                    info!(?names, "Found these jobs")
                }
                Err(err) => return Err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk(err)),
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS Glue
  - Learn the basics of AWS Glue with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateCrawler with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteCrawler with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDatabase with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetCrawler with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetDatabase with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetDatabases with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetJobRun with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetJobRuns with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartCrawler with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartJobRun with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Glue with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS Glue
- Learn the basics of AWS Glue with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateCrawler with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteCrawler with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDatabase with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK
- Use GetCrawler with an AWS SDK
- Use GetDatabase with an AWS SDK
- Use GetDatabases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJobRun with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJobRuns with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK
- Use StartCrawler with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartJobRun with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace GlueActions;

public class HelloGlue
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
```

```
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
                .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloGlue>();
        var glueClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonGlue>();

        var request = new ListJobsRequest();

        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        do
        {
            var response = await glueClient.ListJobsAsync(request);
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Glue. Let's list your existing Glue Jobs:");
        if (jobNames.Count == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("You don't have any AWS Glue jobs.");
        }
        else
        {
            jobNames.ForEach(Console.WriteLine);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS glue)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_glue")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})
```

```
if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_glue.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_glue.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/glue/GlueClient.h>
#include <aws/glue/model/ListJobsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Glue" starter application which initializes an AWS Glue client and
 lists the
 *  AWS Glue job definitions.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_glue'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Glue::GlueClient glueClient(clientConfig);

        std::vector<Aws::String> jobs;

        Aws::String nextToken;  // Used for pagination.
        do {
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome =
glueClient.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);

            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                jobs.insert(jobs.end(), jobNames.begin(), jobNames.end());

                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Your account has " << jobs.size() << " jobs."
                  << std::endl;
        for (size_t i = 0; i < jobs.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << jobs[i] << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.glue;

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.GlueClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.model.ListJobsResponse;
import java.util.List;

public class HelloGlue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        GlueClient glueClient = GlueClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listJobs(glueClient);
    }

    public static void listJobs(GlueClient glueClient) {
        ListJobsRequest request = ListJobsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build();
        ListJobsResponse response = glueClient.listJobs(request);
        List<String> jobList = response.jobNames();
        jobList.forEach(job -> {
            System.out.println("Job Name: " + job);
        });
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListJobsCommand, GlueClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-glue";

const client = new GlueClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListJobsCommand({});

  const { JobNames } = await client.send(command);
  const formattedJobNames = JobNames.join("\n");
  console.log("Job names: ");
  console.log(formattedJobNames);
  return JobNames;
};
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def hello_glue():
    """
    Lists the job definitions in your AWS Glue account, using the AWS SDK for
 Python (Boto3).
    """
    try:
        # Create the Glue client
        glue = boto3.client("glue")

        # List the jobs, limiting the results to 10 per page
        paginator = glue.get_paginator("get_jobs")
        response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
            PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10, "PageSize": 10}
        )

        # Print the job names
        print("Here are the jobs in your account:")
        for page in response_iterator:
            for job in page["Jobs"]:
                print(f"\t{job['Name']}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error: {e}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_glue()
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-glue'
require 'logger'

# GlueManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Glue operations
# such as listing all Glue jobs in the current AWS account.
class GlueManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all Glue jobs in the current AWS account.
  def list_jobs
    @logger.info('Here are the Glue jobs in your account:')

    paginator = @client.get_jobs(max_results: 10)
    jobs = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      jobs.concat(page.jobs)
    end

    if jobs.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any Glue jobs.")
    else
      jobs.each do |job|
```

```
        @logger.info("- #{job.name}")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  glue_client = Aws::Glue::Client.new
  manager = GlueManager.new(glue_client)
  manager.list_jobs
end
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let mut list_jobs = glue.list_jobs().into_paginator().send();
        while let Some(list_jobs_output) = list_jobs.next().await {
            match list_jobs_output {
                Ok(list_jobs) => {
                    let names = list_jobs.job_names();
                    info!(?names, "Found these jobs")
                }
                Err(err) => return Err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk(err)),
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS Glue with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions that are used in the scenario.

```
using System.Net;

namespace GlueActions;

public class GlueWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonGlue _amazonGlue;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AWS Glue actions wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonGlue"></param>
    public GlueWrapper(IAmazonGlue amazonGlue)
    {
```

```
        _amazonGlue = amazonGlue;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name for the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="crawlerDescription">A description of the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to
    /// be assumed by the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="schedule">The schedule on which the crawler will be
executed.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Path">The path to the Amazon Simple Storage Service
(Amazon S3)
    /// bucket where the Python script has been stored.</param>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name to use for the database that will be
    /// created by the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateCrawlerAsync(
        string crawlerName,
        string crawlerDescription,
        string role,
        string schedule,
        string s3Path,
        string dbName)
    {
        var s3Target = new S3Target
        {
            Path = s3Path,
        };

        var targetList = new List<S3Target>
        {
            s3Target,
        };

        var targets = new CrawlerTargets
        {
            S3Targets = targetList,
        };

        var crawlerRequest = new CreateCrawlerRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
```

```
            Name = crawlerName,
            Description = crawlerDescription,
            Targets = targets,
            Role = role,
            Schedule = schedule,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to be assumed by
    /// the job.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="scriptUrl">The URL to the script.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateJobAsync(string dbName, string tableName,
string bucketUrl, string jobName, string roleName, string description, string
scriptUrl)
    {
        var command = new JobCommand
        {
            PythonVersion = "3",
            Name = "glueetl",
            ScriptLocation = scriptUrl,
        };

        var arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "--input_database", dbName },
            { "--input_table", tableName },
            { "--output_bucket_url", bucketUrl }
        };

        var request = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Command = command,
            DefaultArguments = arguments,
            Description = description,
```

```
            GlueVersion = "3.0",
            Name = jobName,
            NumberOfWorkers = 10,
            Role = roleName,
            WorkerType = "G.1X"
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateJobAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteCrawlerAsync(new
DeleteCrawlerRequest { Name = crawlerName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteDatabaseAsync(new
DeleteDatabaseRequest { Name = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteJobAsync(string jobName)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteJobAsync(new DeleteJobRequest
{ JobName = jobName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a table from an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string dbName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteTableAsync(new DeleteTableRequest
{ Name = tableName, DatabaseName = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Crawler object describing the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<Crawler?> GetCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new GetCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            var databaseName = response.Crawler.DatabaseName;
            Console.WriteLine($"{crawlerName} has the database {databaseName}");
            return response.Crawler;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"No information regarding {crawlerName} could be
found.");
        return null;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about the state of an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A value describing the state of the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<CrawlerState> GetCrawlerStateAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(
            new GetCrawlerRequest { Name = crawlerName });
        return response.Crawler.State;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Database object containing information about the database.</
returns>
    public async Task<Database> GetDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var databasesRequest = new GetDatabaseRequest
        {
            Name = dbName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetDatabaseAsync(databasesRequest);
        return response.Database;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="jobRunId">The Id of the job run.</param>
    /// <returns>A JobRun object with information about the job run.</returns>
    public async Task<JobRun> GetJobRunAsync(string jobName, string jobRunId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetJobRunAsync(new GetJobRunRequest
 { JobName = jobName, RunId = jobRunId });
        return response.JobRun;
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about all AWS Glue runs of a specific job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of JobRun objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<JobRun>> GetJobRunsAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var jobRuns = new List<JobRun>();

        var request = new GetJobRunsRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
        };

        // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us
behind the scenes
        var paginatorForJobRuns =
            _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetJobRuns(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginatorForJobRuns.Responses)
        {
            response.JobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
            {
                jobRuns.Add(jobRun);
            });
        }

        return jobRuns;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of tables for an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Table objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Table>> GetTablesAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var request = new GetTablesRequest { DatabaseName = dbName };
        var tables = new List<Table>();
```

```
        // Get a paginator for listing the tables.
        var tablePaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetTables(request);

        await foreach (var response in tablePaginator.Responses)
        {
            tables.AddRange(response.TableList);
        }

        return tables;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List AWS Glue jobs using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of AWS Glue job names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListJobsAsync()
    {
        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        var listJobsPaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.ListJobs(new
ListJobsRequest { MaxResults = 10 });
        await foreach (var response in listJobsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
        }

        return jobNames;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> StartCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new StartCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the job run Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartJobRunAsync(
        string jobName,
        string inputDatabase,
        string inputTable,
        string bucketName)
    {
        var request = new StartJobRunRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
            Arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {"--input_database", inputDatabase},
                {"--input_table", inputTable},
                {"--output_bucket_url", $"s3://{bucketName}/"}
            }
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartJobRunAsync(request);
        return response.JobRunId;
    }

}
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
global using Amazon.Glue;
global using GlueActions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
```

```
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;



using Amazon.Glue.Model;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

namespace GlueBasics;

public class GlueBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
            .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UiWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
        .CreateLogger<GlueBasics>();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // These values are stored in settings.json
```

```
        // Once you have run the CDK script to deploy the resources,
        // edit the file to set "BucketName", "RoleName", and "ScriptURL"
        // to the appropriate values. Also set "CrawlerName" to the name
        // you want to give the crawler when it is created.
        string bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"]!;
        string bucketUrl = _configuration["BucketUrl"]!;
        string crawlerName = _configuration["CrawlerName"]!;
        string roleName = _configuration["RoleName"]!;
        string sourceData = _configuration["SourceData"]!;
        string dbName = _configuration["DbName"]!;
        string cron = _configuration["Cron"]!;
        string scriptUrl = _configuration["ScriptURL"]!;
        string jobName = _configuration["JobName"]!;

        var wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<GlueWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UiWrapper>();

        uiWrapper.DisplayOverview();
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Create the crawler and wait for it to be ready.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create AWS Glue crawler");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's begin by creating the AWS Glue crawler.");

        var crawlerDescription = "Crawler created for the AWS Glue Basics
 scenario.";
        var crawlerCreated = await wrapper.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerName,
 crawlerDescription, roleName, cron, sourceData, dbName);
        if (crawlerCreated)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler: {crawlerName} has been created. Now
 let's wait until it's ready.");
            CrawlerState crawlerState;
            do
            {
                crawlerState = await wrapper.GetCrawlerStateAsync(crawlerName);
            }
            while (crawlerState != "READY");
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler {crawlerName} is now ready for
 use.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't create crawler {crawlerName}.");
```

```
            return; // Exit the application.
        }

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Start AWS Glue crawler");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's wait until the crawler has successfully
started.");
        var crawlerStarted = await wrapper.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerName);
        if (crawlerStarted)
        {
            CrawlerState crawlerState;
            do
            {
                crawlerState = await wrapper.GetCrawlerStateAsync(crawlerName);
            }
            while (crawlerState != "READY");
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler {crawlerName} is now ready for
use.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't start the crawler {crawlerName}.");
            return; // Exit the application.
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine($"\nLet's take a look at the database: {dbName}");
        var database = await wrapper.GetDatabaseAsync(dbName);

        if (database != null)
        {
            uiWrapper.DisplayTitle($"{database.Name} Details");
            Console.WriteLine($"{database.Name} created on
{database.CreateTime}");
            Console.WriteLine(database.Description);
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        var tables = await wrapper.GetTablesAsync(dbName);
        if (tables.Count > 0)
        {
            tables.ForEach(table =>
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"{table.Name}\tCreated:
{table.CreateTime}\tUpdated: {table.UpdateTime}");
            });
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create AWS Glue job");
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a new AWS Glue job.");
        var description = "An AWS Glue job created using the AWS SDK for .NET";
        await wrapper.CreateJobAsync(dbName, tables[0].Name, bucketUrl, jobName,
roleName, description, scriptUrl);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Starting AWS Glue job");
        Console.WriteLine("Starting the new AWS Glue job...");
        var jobRunId = await wrapper.StartJobRunAsync(jobName, dbName,
tables[0].Name, bucketName);
        var jobRunComplete = false;
        var jobRun = new JobRun();
        do
        {
            jobRun = await wrapper.GetJobRunAsync(jobName, jobRunId);
            if (jobRun.JobRunState == "SUCCEEDED" || jobRun.JobRunState ==
"STOPPED" ||
                jobRun.JobRunState == "FAILED" || jobRun.JobRunState ==
"TIMEOUT")
            {
                jobRunComplete = true;
            }
        } while (!jobRunComplete);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle($"Data in {bucketName}");

        // Get the list of data stored in the S3 bucket.
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        var response = await s3Client.ListObjectsAsync(new ListObjectsRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        response.S3Objects.ForEach(s3Object =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(s3Object.Key);
        });
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("AWS Glue jobs");
        var jobNames = await wrapper.ListJobsAsync();
        jobNames.ForEach(jobName =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(jobName);
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Get AWS Glue job run information");
        Console.WriteLine("Getting information about the AWS Glue job.");
        var jobRuns = await wrapper.GetJobRunsAsync(jobName);

        jobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{jobRun.JobName}\t{jobRun.JobRunState}\t{jobRun.CompletedOn}");
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Deleting resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the AWS Glue job used by the example.");
        await wrapper.DeleteJobAsync(jobName);

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the tables from the database.");
        tables.ForEach(async table =>
        {
            await wrapper.DeleteTableAsync(dbName, table.Name);
        });

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the database.");
        await wrapper.DeleteDatabaseAsync(dbName);

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the AWS Glue crawler.");
        await wrapper.DeleteCrawlerAsync(crawlerName);

        Console.WriteLine("The AWS Glue scenario has completed.");
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();
    }
}
```

```
namespace GlueBasics;

public class UiWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();
        DisplayTitle("Amazon Glue: get started with crawlers and jobs");

        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 1. Create a crawler, pass it the IAM role and the
 URL to the public S3 bucket that contains the source data");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 2. Start the crawler.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 3. Get the database created by the crawler and the
 tables in the database.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 4. Create a job.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 5. Start a job run.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 6. Wait for the job run to complete.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 7. Show the data stored in the bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 8. List jobs for the account.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 9. Get job run details for the job that was run.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t10. Delete the demo job.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t11. Delete the database and tables created for the
 demo.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t12. Delete the crawler.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPlease press <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to center on the screen.</param>
    /// <returns>The string padded to make it center on the screen.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables

- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Scenario which demonstrates using AWS Glue to add a crawler and run a job.
/*!
 \\sa runGettingStartedWithGlueScenario()
 \param bucketName: An S3 bucket created in the setup.
 \param roleName: An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role created in the
 setup.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */

bool AwsDoc::Glue::runGettingStartedWithGlueScenario(const Aws::String
 &bucketName,
                                                      const Aws::String &roleName,
                                                      const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::String roleArn;
    if (!getRoleArn(roleName, roleArn, clientConfig)) {
        std::cerr << "Error getting role ARN for role." << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    // 1. Upload the job script to the S3 bucket.
    {
        std::cout << "Uploading the job script '"
                  << AwsDoc::Glue::PYTHON_SCRIPT
```

```
                  << "'." << std::endl;

        if (!AwsDoc::Glue::uploadFile(bucketName,
                                      AwsDoc::Glue::PYTHON_SCRIPT_PATH,
                                      AwsDoc::Glue::PYTHON_SCRIPT,
                                      clientConfig)) {
            std::cerr << "Error uploading the job file." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 2. Create a crawler.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::S3Target s3Target;
        s3Target.SetPath("s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv");
        Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerTargets crawlerTargets;
        crawlerTargets.AddS3Targets(s3Target);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetTargets(crawlerTargets);
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);
        request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
        request.SetTablePrefix(CRAWLER_DATABASE_PREFIX);
        request.SetRole(roleArn);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.CreateCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully created the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating a crawler. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets("", CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 3. Get a crawler.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest request;
```

```
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome outcome = client.GetCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
outcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
            std::cout << "Retrieved crawler with state " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                            crawlerState)
                      << "." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 4. Start a crawler.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.StartCrawler(request);


        if (outcome.IsSuccess() || (Aws::Glue::GlueErrors::CRAWLER_RUNNING ==
                                    outcome.GetError().GetErrorType())) {
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Crawler was already started." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully started crawler." << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << "This may take a while to run." << std::endl;

            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::NOT_SET;
```

```
            int iterations = 0;
            while (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY != crawlerState) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                ++iterations;
                if ((iterations % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                    std::cout << "Crawler status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                                    crawlerState)
                            << ". After " << iterations
                            << " seconds elapsed."
                            << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest getCrawlerRequest;
                getCrawlerRequest.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome getCrawlerOutcome =
client.GetCrawler(
                        getCrawlerRequest);

                if (getCrawlerOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    crawlerState =
getCrawlerOutcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting crawler.  "
                            << getCrawlerOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    break;
                }
            }

            if (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY == crawlerState) {
                std::cout << "Crawler finished running after " << iterations
                        << " seconds."
                        << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
```

```
                        clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 5. Get a database.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseOutcome outcome =
client.GetDatabase(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Glue::Model::Database &database =
outcome.GetResult().GetDatabase();

            std::cout << "Successfully retrieve the database\n" <<
                      database.Jsonize().View().WriteReadable() << "'." <<
std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error getting the database.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 6. Get tables.
    Aws::String tableName;
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesRequest request;
        request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> all_tables;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        do {
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesOutcome outcome =
client.GetTables(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> &tables =
outcome.GetResult().GetTableList();
```

```
                all_tables.insert(all_tables.end(), tables.begin(),
tables.end());
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting the tables. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                             clientConfig);
                return false;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "The database contains " << all_tables.size()
                  << (all_tables.size() == 1 ?
                      " table." : "tables.") << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Here is a list of the tables in the database.";
        for (size_t index = 0; index < all_tables.size(); ++index) {
            std::cout << "    " << index + 1 << ":  " <<
all_tables[index].GetName()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        if (!all_tables.empty()) {
            int tableIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter an index to display the database detail ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(all_tables.size()));
            std::cout << all_tables[tableIndex -
1].Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            tableName = all_tables[tableIndex - 1].GetName();
        }
    }

    // 7. Create a job.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobRequest request;
        request.SetName(JOB_NAME);
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetGlueVersion(GLUE_VERSION);

        Aws::Glue::Model::JobCommand command;
```

```
        command.SetName(JOB_COMMAND_NAME);
        command.SetPythonVersion(JOB_PYTHON_VERSION);
        command.SetScriptLocation(
                Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName + "/" + PYTHON_SCRIPT);
        request.SetCommand(command);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobOutcome outcome = client.CreateJob(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully created the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating the job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 8. Start a job run.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> arguments;
        arguments["--input_database"] = CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME;
        arguments["--input_table"] = tableName;
        arguments["--output_bucket_url"] = Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName +
"/";
        request.SetArguments(arguments);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunOutcome outcome =
client.StartJobRun(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully started the job." << std::endl;

            Aws::String jobRunId = outcome.GetResult().GetJobRunId();

            int iterator = 0;
            bool done = false;
            while (!done) {
```

```
                ++iterator;
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
                jobRunRequest.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);
                jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunId);

                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome =
client.GetJobRun(
                        jobRunRequest);

                if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    const Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun &jobRun =
jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun();
                    Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState jobRunState =
jobRun.GetJobRunState();

                    if ((jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::STOPPED)
||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::FAILED) ||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::TIMEOUT))
{
                        std::cerr << "Error running job. "
                                  << jobRun.GetErrorMessage()
                                  << std::endl;
                        deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME,
JOB_NAME,
                                     bucketName,
                                     clientConfig);
                        return false;
                    }
                    else if (jobRunState ==
                             Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::SUCCEEDED) {
                        std::cout << "Job run succeeded after  " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                        done = true;
                    }
                    else if ((iterator % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10
seconds.
                        std::cout << "Job run status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunStateMapper::GetNameForJobRunState(
                                           jobRunState) <<
                                  ". " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
```

```
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error retrieving job run state. "
                              << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                              << std::endl;
                    deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
                                 bucketName, clientConfig);
                    return false;
                }
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 9. List the output data stored in the S3 bucket.
    {
        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client;
        Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);
        request.SetPrefix(OUTPUT_FILE_PREFIX);

        Aws::String continuationToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> allObjects;
        do {
            if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
                request.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
            }
            Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Outcome outcome =
s3Client.ListObjectsV2(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> &objects =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetContents();
```

```
                allObjects.insert(allObjects.end(), objects.begin(),
 objects.end());
                continuationToken =
 outcome.GetResult().GetNextContinuationToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing objects. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!continuationToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Data from your job is in " << allObjects.size() <<
                  " files in the S3 bucket, " << bucketName << "." << std::endl;

        for (size_t i = 0; i < allObjects.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "    " << i + 1 << ". " << allObjects[i].GetKey()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        int objectIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                std::string(
                        "Enter the number of a block to download it and see the
 first ") +
                std::to_string(LINES_OF_RUN_FILE_TO_DISPLAY) +
                " lines of JSON output in the block: ", 1,
                static_cast<int>(allObjects.size()));

        Aws::String objectKey = allObjects[objectIndex - 1].GetKey();

        std::stringstream stringStream;
        if (getObjectFromBucket(bucketName, objectKey, stringStream,
                                clientConfig)) {
            for (int i = 0; i < LINES_OF_RUN_FILE_TO_DISPLAY && stringStream; +
+i) {
                std::string line;
                std::getline(stringStream, line);
                std::cout << "    " << line << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
 bucketName,
```

```
                        clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 10. List all the jobs.
    Aws::String jobName;
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken;
        std::vector<Aws::String> allJobNames;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome = client.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);

            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                allJobNames.insert(allJobNames.end(), jobNames.begin(),
jobNames.end());
                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());
        std::cout << "Your account has " << allJobNames.size() << " jobs."
                  << std::endl;
        for (size_t i = 0; i < allJobNames.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << allJobNames[i] << std::endl;
        }
        int jobIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                Aws::String("Enter a number between 1 and ") +
                std::to_string(allJobNames.size()) +
                " to see the list of runs for a job: ",
                1, static_cast<int>(allJobNames.size()));
```

```
        jobName = allJobNames[jobIndex - 1];
    }

    // 11. Get the job runs for a job.
    Aws::String jobRunID;
    if (!jobName.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsRequest getJobRunsRequest;
        getJobRunsRequest.SetJobName(jobName);

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> allJobRuns;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                getJobRunsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsOutcome jobRunsOutcome =
client.GetJobRuns(
                    getJobRunsRequest);

            if (jobRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> &jobRuns =
jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRuns();
                allJobRuns.insert(allJobRuns.end(), jobRuns.begin(),
jobRuns.end());

                nextToken = jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting job runs. "
                          << jobRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "There are " << allJobRuns.size() << " runs in the job '"
                  <<
                  jobName << "'." << std::endl;

        for (size_t i = 0; i < allJobRuns.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << allJobRuns[i].GetJobName()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        int runIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                Aws::String("Enter a number between 1 and ") +
                std::to_string(allJobRuns.size()) +
                " to see details for a run: ",
                1, static_cast<int>(allJobRuns.size()));
        jobRunID = allJobRuns[runIndex - 1].GetId();
    }

    // 12. Get a single job run.
    if (!jobRunID.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
        jobRunRequest.SetJobName(jobName);
        jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunID);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome = client.GetJobRun(
                jobRunRequest);

        if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Displaying the job run JSON description." << std::endl;
            std::cout
                    <<
 jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error get a job run. "
                      << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
 bucketName,
                        clientConfig);
}

//! Cleanup routine to delete created assets.
/*!
 \\sa deleteAssets()
 \param crawler: Name of an AWS Glue crawler.
 \param database: The name of an AWS Glue database.
 \param job: The name of an AWS Glue job.
 \param bucketName: The name of an S3 bucket.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
```

```
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Glue::deleteAssets(const Aws::String &crawler, const Aws::String
 &database,
                                const Aws::String &job, const Aws::String
 &bucketName,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    const Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);
    bool result = true;

    // 13. Delete a job.
    if (!job.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(job);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobOutcome outcome = client.DeleteJob(request);


        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the job. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    // 14. Delete a database.
    if (!database.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(database);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseOutcome outcome = client.DeleteDatabase(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the database." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting database. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    // 15. Delete a crawler.
    if (!crawler.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(crawler);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerOutcome outcome =
 client.DeleteCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the crawler. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    // 16. Delete the job script and run data from the S3 bucket.
    result &= AwsDoc::Glue::deleteAllObjectsInS3Bucket(bucketName,
                                                       clientConfig);
    return result;
}

//! Routine which uploads a file to an S3 bucket.
/*!
 \\sa uploadFile()
 \param bucketName: An S3 bucket created in the setup.
 \param filePath: The path of the file to upload.
 \param fileName The name for the uploaded file.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::Glue::uploadFile(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                         const Aws::String &filePath,
                         const Aws::String &fileName,
                         const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3_client(clientConfig);
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(fileName);

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> inputData =
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                          filePath.c_str(),
                                          std::ios_base::in |
 std::ios_base::binary);

    if (!*inputData) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << filePath << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetBody(inputData);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome =
            s3_client.PutObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: PutObject: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Added object '" << filePath << "' to bucket '"
                  << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which deletes all objects in an S3 bucket.
/*!
 \\sa deleteAllObjectsInS3Bucket()
 \param bucketName: The S3 bucket name.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Glue::deleteAllObjectsInS3Bucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                              const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request listObjectsRequest;
    listObjectsRequest.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::String continuationToken; // Used for pagination.
    bool result = true;
    do {
        if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
            listObjectsRequest.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
        }

        Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Outcome listObjectsOutcome =
client.ListObjectsV2(
                listObjectsRequest);

        if (listObjectsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> &objects =
listObjectsOutcome.GetResult().GetContents();
            if (!objects.empty()) {
                Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsRequest deleteObjectsRequest;
                deleteObjectsRequest.SetBucket(bucketName);

                std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectIdentifier> objectIdentifiers;
                for (const Aws::S3::Model::Object &object: objects) {
                    objectIdentifiers.push_back(
                            Aws::S3::Model::ObjectIdentifier().WithKey(
                                    object.GetKey()));
                }
                Aws::S3::Model::Delete objectsDelete;
                objectsDelete.SetObjects(objectIdentifiers);
                objectsDelete.SetQuiet(true);
                deleteObjectsRequest.SetDelete(objectsDelete);

                Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsOutcome deleteObjectsOutcome =
                        client.DeleteObjects(deleteObjectsRequest);

                if (!deleteObjectsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    std::cerr << "Error deleting objects. " <<
                              deleteObjectsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    result = false;
                    break;
                }
                else {
```

```
                    std::cout << "Successfully deleted the objects." <<
 std::endl;

                }
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "No objects to delete in '" << bucketName << "'."
                          << std::endl;
            }

            continuationToken =
 listObjectsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextContinuationToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing objects. "
                      << listObjectsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }
    } while (!continuationToken.empty());

    return result;
}

//! Routine which retrieves an object from an S3 bucket.
/*!
 \\sa getObjectFromBucket()
 \param bucketName: The S3 bucket name.
 \param objectKey: The object's name.
 \param objectStream: A stream to receive the retrieved data.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Glue::getObjectFromBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                       const Aws::String &objectKey,
                                       std::ostream &objectStream,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectOutcome outcome = client.GetObject(request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully retrieved '" << objectKey << "'." <<
 std::endl;
        auto &body = outcome.GetResult().GetBody();
        objectStream << body.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error retrieving object. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * To set up the resources, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/ug/tutorial-add-crawler.html
 *
 * This example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Create a database.
 * 2. Create a crawler.
 * 3. Get a crawler.
 * 4. Start a crawler.
 * 5. Get a database.
 * 6. Get tables.
 * 7. Create a job.
 * 8. Start a job run.
 * 9. List all jobs.
 * 10. Get job runs.
 * 11. Delete a job.
 * 12. Delete a database.
 * 13. Delete a crawler.
 */

public class GlueScenario {
```

```
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
"-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <iam> <s3Path> <cron> <dbName> <crawlerName> <jobName>
<scriptLocation> <locationUri> <bucketNameSc>\s

            Where:
                iam - The ARN of the IAM role that has AWS Glue and S3
permissions.\s
                s3Path - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) target
that contains data (for example, s3://<bucket name>/read).
                cron - A cron expression used to specify the schedule  (i.e.,
cron(15 12 * * ? *).
                dbName - The database name.\s
                crawlerName - The name of the crawler.\s
                jobName - The name you assign to this job definition.
                scriptLocation - The Amazon S3 path to a script that runs a job.
                locationUri - The location of the database (you can find this
file in resources folder).
                bucketNameSc - The Amazon S3 bucket name used when creating a job
                """;

        if (args.length != 9) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String iam = args[0];
        String s3Path = args[1];
        String cron = args[2];
        String dbName = args[3];
        String crawlerName = args[4];
        String jobName = args[5];
        String scriptLocation = args[6];
        String locationUri = args[7];
        String bucketNameSc = args[8];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        GlueClient glueClient = GlueClient.builder()
            .region(region)
```

```
            .build();
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS Glue scenario.");
        System.out.println("""
            AWS Glue is a fully managed extract, transform, and load (ETL)
service provided by Amazon
            Web Services (AWS). It is designed to simplify the process of
building, running, and maintaining
            ETL pipelines, which are essential for data integration and data
warehousing tasks.

            One of the key features of AWS Glue is its ability to automatically
discover and catalog data
            stored in various sources, such as Amazon S3, Amazon RDS, Amazon
Redshift, and other databases.
            This cataloging process creates a central metadata repository, known
as the AWS Glue Data Catalog,
            which provides a unified view of an organization's data assets. This
metadata can then be used to
            create ETL jobs, which can be scheduled and run on-demand or on a
regular basis.

            Lets get started.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create a database.");
        try {
            createDatabase(glueClient, dbName, locationUri);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            if (e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage().equals("Database already
exists.")) {
                System.out.println("Database " + dbName + " already exists.
Skipping creation.");
            } else {
                System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                return;
            }
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a crawler.");
        try {
            createGlueCrawler(glueClient, iam, s3Path, cron, dbName,
crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            if (e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage().contains("already exists")) {
                System.out.println("Crawler " + crawlerName + " already exists.
Skipping creation.");
            } else {
                System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Get a crawler.");
        try {
            getSpecificCrawler(glueClient, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Start a crawler.");
        try {
            startSpecificCrawler(glueClient, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Get a database.");
        try {
```

```
            getSpecificDatabase(glueClient, dbName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 5 min for the tables to become available");
        TimeUnit.MINUTES.sleep(5);
        System.out.println("6. Get tables.");
        String myTableName;
        try {
            myTableName = getGlueTables(glueClient, dbName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Create a job.");
        try {
            createJob(glueClient, jobName, iam, scriptLocation);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Start a Job run.");
        try {
            startJob(glueClient, jobName, dbName, myTableName, bucketNameSc);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. List all jobs.");
        try {
            getAllJobs(glueClient);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get job runs.");
        try {
            getJobRuns(glueClient, jobName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Delete a job.");
        try {
            deleteJob(glueClient, jobName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        System.out.println("*** Wait 5 MIN for the " + crawlerName + " to stop");
        TimeUnit.MINUTES.sleep(5);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Delete a database.");
        try {
            deleteDatabase(glueClient, dbName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Delete a crawler.");
        try {
            deleteSpecificCrawler(glueClient, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Successfully completed the AWS Glue Scenario");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }


    /**
     * Creates a Glue database with the specified name and location URI.
     *
     * @param glueClient  The Glue client to use for the database creation.
     * @param dbName      The name of the database to create.
     * @param locationUri The location URI for the database.
     */
    public static void createDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String dbName,
 String locationUri) {
        try {
            DatabaseInput input = DatabaseInput.builder()
                .description("Built with the AWS SDK for Java V2")
                .name(dbName)
                .locationUri(locationUri)
                .build();

            CreateDatabaseRequest request = CreateDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .databaseInput(input)
                .build();

            glueClient.createDatabase(request);
            System.out.println(dbName + " was successfully created");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
```

```
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue crawler using the AWS Glue Java API.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the AWS Glue
service
     * @param iam         the IAM role that the crawler will use to access the
data source
     * @param s3Path      the S3 path that the crawler will scan for data
     * @param cron        the cron expression that defines the crawler's schedule
     * @param dbName      the name of the AWS Glue database where the crawler
will store the metadata
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be created
     */
    public static void createGlueCrawler(GlueClient glueClient,
                                         String iam,
                                         String s3Path,
                                         String cron,
                                         String dbName,
                                         String crawlerName) {

        try {
            S3Target s3Target = S3Target.builder()
                .path(s3Path)
                .build();

            List<S3Target> targetList = new ArrayList<>();
            targetList.add(s3Target);
            CrawlerTargets targets = CrawlerTargets.builder()
                .s3Targets(targetList)
                .build();

            CreateCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = CreateCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .name(crawlerName)
                .description("Created by the AWS Glue Java API")
                .targets(targets)
                .role(iam)
                .schedule(cron)
                .build();
```

```
            glueClient.createCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully created");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves a specific crawler from the AWS Glue service and waits for it to
be in the "READY" state.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the Glue
service
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be retrieved
     */
    public static void getSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            GetCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = GetCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            boolean ready = false;
            while (!ready) {
                GetCrawlerResponse response =
glueClient.getCrawler(crawlerRequest);
                String status = response.crawler().stateAsString();
                if (status.compareTo("READY") == 0) {
                    ready = true;
                }
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

            System.out.println("The crawler is now ready");

        } catch (GlueException | InterruptedException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Starts a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
```

```
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client to use for the crawler operation
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to start
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the crawler
     */
    public static void startSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
        try {
            StartCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = StartCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.startCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully started!");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the specific database from the AWS Glue service.
     *
     * @param glueClient   an instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact
with the service
     * @param databaseName the name of the database to retrieve
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error retrieving the database from
the AWS Glue service
     */
    public static void getSpecificDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String
databaseName) {
        try {
            GetDatabaseRequest databasesRequest = GetDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .name(databaseName)
                .build();

            GetDatabaseResponse response =
glueClient.getDatabase(databasesRequest);
            Instant createDate = response.database().createTime();

            // Convert the Instant to readable date.
            DateTimeFormatter formatter =
DateTimeFormatter.ofLocalizedDateTime(FormatStyle.SHORT)
                .withLocale(Locale.US)
                .withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());
```

```
            formatter.format(createDate);
            System.out.println("The create date of the database is " +
createDate);

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the names of the tables in the specified Glue database.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param dbName     the name of the Glue database to retrieve the table
names from
     * @return the name of the first table retrieved, or an empty string if no
tables were found
     */
    public static String getGlueTables(GlueClient glueClient, String dbName) {
        String myTableName = "";
        try {
            GetTablesRequest tableRequest = GetTablesRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .build();

            GetTablesResponse response = glueClient.getTables(tableRequest);
            List<Table> tables = response.tableList();
            if (tables.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No tables were returned");
            } else {
                for (Table table : tables) {
                    myTableName = table.name();
                    System.out.println("Table name is: " + myTableName);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
        return myTableName;
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Starts a job run in AWS Glue.
     *
     * @param glueClient    the AWS Glue client to use for the job run
     * @param jobName       the name of the Glue job to run
     * @param inputDatabase the name of the input database
     * @param inputTable    the name of the input table
     * @param outBucket     the URL of the output S3 bucket
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the job run
     */
    public static void startJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String
inputDatabase, String inputTable,
                                String outBucket) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> myMap = new HashMap<>();
            myMap.put("--input_database", inputDatabase);
            myMap.put("--input_table", inputTable);
            myMap.put("--output_bucket_url", outBucket);

            StartJobRunRequest runRequest = StartJobRunRequest.builder()
                .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
                .numberOfWorkers(10)
                .arguments(myMap)
                .jobName(jobName)
                .build();

            StartJobRunResponse response = glueClient.startJobRun(runRequest);
            System.out.println("The request Id of the job is " +
response.responseMetadata().requestId());

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue job.
     *
     * @param glueClient     the AWS Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param jobName        the name of the job to create
     * @param iam            the IAM role to associate with the job
     * @param scriptLocation the location of the script to be used by the job
```

```
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error creating the job
     */
    public static void createJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String
iam, String scriptLocation) {
        try {
            JobCommand command = JobCommand.builder()
                .pythonVersion("3")
                .name("glueetl")
                .scriptLocation(scriptLocation)
                .build();

            CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
                .description("A Job created by using the AWS SDK for Java V2")
                .glueVersion("2.0")
                .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
                .numberOfWorkers(10)
                .name(jobName)
                .role(iam)
                .command(command)
                .build();

            glueClient.createJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves and prints information about all the jobs in the Glue data
catalog.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client used to interact with the AWS Glue
service
     */
    public static void getAllJobs(GlueClient glueClient) {
        try {
            GetJobsRequest jobsRequest = GetJobsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build();

            GetJobsResponse jobsResponse = glueClient.getJobs(jobsRequest);
```

```
            List<Job> jobs = jobsResponse.jobs();
            for (Job job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("Job name is : " + job.name());
                System.out.println("The job worker type is : " +
job.workerType().name());
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the job runs for a given Glue job and prints the status of the
job runs.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client used to make API calls
     * @param jobName    the name of the Glue job to retrieve the job runs for
     */
    public static void getJobRuns(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            GetJobRunsRequest runsRequest = GetJobRunsRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
                .maxResults(20)
                .build();

            boolean jobDone = false;
            while (!jobDone) {
                GetJobRunsResponse response = glueClient.getJobRuns(runsRequest);
                List<JobRun> jobRuns = response.jobRuns();
                for (JobRun jobRun : jobRuns) {
                    String jobState = jobRun.jobRunState().name();
                    if (jobState.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println(jobName + " has succeeded");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("STOPPED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has stopped");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("FAILED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has failed");
                        jobDone = true;
```

```
                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("TIMEOUT") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has timed out");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else {
                        System.out.println("*** Job run state is " +
jobRun.jobRunState().name());
                        System.out.println("Job run Id is " + jobRun.id());
                        System.out.println("The Glue version is " +
jobRun.glueVersion());
                    }
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a Glue job.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param jobName    the name of the job to be deleted
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error deleting the job
     */
    public static void deleteJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            DeleteJobRequest jobRequest = DeleteJobRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Deletes a AWS Glue Database.
     *
     * @param glueClient   An instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact
with the AWS Glue service.
     * @param databaseName The name of the database to be deleted.
     * @throws GlueException If an error occurs while deleting the database.
     */
    public static void deleteDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String databaseName)
{
        try {
            DeleteDatabaseRequest request = DeleteDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .name(databaseName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteDatabase(request);
            System.out.println(databaseName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client object
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be deleted
     * @throws GlueException if an error occurs during the deletion process
     */
    public static void deleteSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
        try {
            DeleteCrawlerRequest deleteCrawlerRequest =
DeleteCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteCrawler(deleteCrawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
```

```
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs

- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and run a crawler that crawls a public Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket and generates a metadata database that describes the CSV-formatted data it finds.

```
const createCrawler = (name, role, dbName, tablePrefix, s3TargetPath) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    DatabaseName: dbName,
    TablePrefix: tablePrefix,
    Targets: {
      S3Targets: [{ Path: s3TargetPath }],
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const getCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

```
const startCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const crawlerExists = async ({ getCrawler }, crawlerName) => {
  try {
    await getCrawler(crawlerName);
    return true;
  } catch {
    return false;
  }
};

/**
 * @param {{ createCrawler: import('../../../actions/create-
crawler.js').createCrawler}} actions
 */
const makeCreateCrawlerStep = (actions) => async (context) => {
  if (await crawlerExists(actions, process.env.CRAWLER_NAME)) {
    log("Crawler already exists. Skipping creation.");
  } else {
    await actions.createCrawler(
      process.env.CRAWLER_NAME,
      process.env.ROLE_NAME,
      process.env.DATABASE_NAME,
      process.env.TABLE_PREFIX,
      process.env.S3_TARGET_PATH,
    );

    log("Crawler created successfully.", { type: "success" });
  }

  return { ...context };
};

/**
```

```
 * @param {(name: string) => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetCrawlerCommandOutput>} getCrawler
 * @param {string} crawlerName
 */
const waitForCrawler = async (getCrawler, crawlerName) => {
  const waitTimeInSeconds = 30;
  const { Crawler } = await getCrawler(crawlerName);

  if (!Crawler) {
    throw new Error(`Crawler with name ${crawlerName} not found.`);
  }

  if (Crawler.State === "READY") {
    return;
  }

  log(`Crawler is ${Crawler.State}. Waiting ${waitTimeInSeconds} seconds...`);
  await wait(waitTimeInSeconds);
  return waitForCrawler(getCrawler, crawlerName);
};

const makeStartCrawlerStep =
  ({ startCrawler, getCrawler }) =>
  async (context) => {
    log("Starting crawler.");
    await startCrawler(process.env.CRAWLER_NAME);
    log("Crawler started.", { type: "success" });

    log("Waiting for crawler to finish running. This can take a while.");
    await waitForCrawler(getCrawler, process.env.CRAWLER_NAME);
    log("Crawler ready.", { type: "success" });

    return { ...context };
  };
```

List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.

```
const getDatabase = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetDatabaseCommand({
    Name: name,
```

```
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const getTables = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetTablesCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const makeGetDatabaseStep =
  ({ getDatabase }) =>
  async (context) => {
    const {
      Database: { Name },
    } = await getDatabase(process.env.DATABASE_NAME);
    log(`Database: ${Name}`);
    return { ...context };
  };

/**
 * @param {{ getTables: () => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetTablesCommandOutput}} config
 */
const makeGetTablesStep =
  ({ getTables }) =>
  async (context) => {
    const { TableList } = await getTables(process.env.DATABASE_NAME);
    log("Tables:");
    log(TableList.map((table) => `  • ${table.Name}\n`));
    return { ...context };
  };
```

Create and run a job that extracts CSV data from the source Amazon S3 bucket, transforms it by removing and renaming fields, and loads JSON-formatted output into another Amazon S3 bucket.

```
const createJob = (name, role, scriptBucketName, scriptKey) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateJobCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    Command: {
      Name: "glueetl",
      PythonVersion: "3",
      ScriptLocation: `s3://${scriptBucketName}/${scriptKey}`,
    },
    GlueVersion: "3.0",
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const startJobRun = (jobName, dbName, tableName, bucketName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    Arguments: {
      "--input_database": dbName,
      "--input_table": tableName,
      "--output_bucket_url": `s3://${bucketName}/`,
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const makeCreateJobStep =
  ({ createJob }) =>
  async (context) => {
    log("Creating Job.");
    await createJob(
      process.env.JOB_NAME,
      process.env.ROLE_NAME,
      process.env.BUCKET_NAME,
      process.env.PYTHON_SCRIPT_KEY,
    );
    log("Job created.", { type: "success" });
```

```
    return { ...context };
  };

/**
 * @param {(name: string, runId: string) => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetJobRunCommandOutput> }  getJobRun
 * @param {string} jobName
 * @param {string} jobRunId
 */
const waitForJobRun = async (getJobRun, jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const waitTimeInSeconds = 30;
  const { JobRun } = await getJobRun(jobName, jobRunId);

  if (!JobRun) {
    throw new Error(`Job run with id ${jobRunId} not found.`);
  }

  switch (JobRun.JobRunState) {
    case "FAILED":
    case "TIMEOUT":
    case "STOPPED":
    case "ERROR":
      throw new Error(
        `Job ${JobRun.JobRunState}. Error: ${JobRun.ErrorMessage}`,
      );
    case "SUCCEEDED":
      return;
    default:
      break;
  }

  log(
    `Job ${JobRun.JobRunState}. Waiting ${waitTimeInSeconds} more seconds...`,
  );
  await wait(waitTimeInSeconds);
  return waitForJobRun(getJobRun, jobName, jobRunId);
};

/**
 * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<{ shouldOpen: boolean }>} }}
 context
 */
const promptToOpen = async (context) => {
```

```
  const { shouldOpen } = await context.prompter.prompt({
    name: "shouldOpen",
    type: "confirm",
    message: "Open the output bucket in your browser?",
  });

  if (shouldOpen) {
    return open(
      `https://s3.console.aws.amazon.com/s3/buckets/${process.env.BUCKET_NAME} to
 view the output.`,
    );
  }
};

const makeStartJobRunStep =
  ({ startJobRun, getJobRun }) =>
  async (context) => {
    log("Starting job.");
    const { JobRunId } = await startJobRun(
      process.env.JOB_NAME,
      process.env.DATABASE_NAME,
      process.env.TABLE_NAME,
      process.env.BUCKET_NAME,
    );
    log("Job started.", { type: "success" });

    log("Waiting for job to finish running. This can take a while.");
    await waitForJobRun(getJobRun, process.env.JOB_NAME, JobRunId);
    log("Job run succeeded.", { type: "success" });

    await promptToOpen(context);

    return { ...context };
  };
```

List information about job runs and view some of the transformed data.

```
const getJobRuns = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunsCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });
```

```
  return client.send(command);
};

const getJobRun = (jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    RunId: jobRunId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

/**
 * @typedef {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<{jobName: string}> } }} Context
 */

/**
 * @typedef {() => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetJobRunCommandOutput>} getJobRun
 */

/**
 * @typedef {() => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetJobRunsCommandOutput} getJobRuns
 */

/**
 *
 * @param {getJobRun} getJobRun
 * @param {string} jobName
 * @param {string} jobRunId
 */
const logJobRunDetails = async (getJobRun, jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const { JobRun } = await getJobRun(jobName, jobRunId);
  log(JobRun, { type: "object" });
};

/**
 *
 * @param {{getJobRuns: getJobRuns, getJobRun: getJobRun }} funcs
 */
const makePickJobRunStep =
```

```
  ({ getJobRuns, getJobRun }) =>
  async (/** @type { Context } */ context) => {
    if (context.selectedJobName) {
      const { JobRuns } = await getJobRuns(context.selectedJobName);

      const { jobRunId } = await context.prompter.prompt({
        name: "jobRunId",
        type: "list",
        message: "Select a job run to see details.",
        choices: JobRuns.map((run) => run.Id),
      });

      logJobRunDetails(getJobRun, context.selectedJobName, jobRunId);
    }

    return { ...context };
  };
```

Delete all resources created by the demo.

```
const deleteJob = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteJobCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const deleteTable = (databaseName, tableName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteTableCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
    Name: tableName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const deleteDatabase = (databaseName) => {
```

```
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteDatabaseCommand({
    Name: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const deleteCrawler = (crawlerName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteCrawlerCommand({
    Name: crawlerName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

/**
 *
 * @param {import('../../../actions/delete-job.js').deleteJob} deleteJobFn
 * @param {string[]} jobNames
 * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<any> }}} context
 */
const handleDeleteJobs = async (deleteJobFn, jobNames, context) => {
  /**
   * @type {{ selectedJobNames: string[] }}
   */
  const { selectedJobNames } = await context.prompter.prompt({
    name: "selectedJobNames",
    type: "checkbox",
    message: "Let's clean up jobs. Select jobs to delete.",
    choices: jobNames,
  });

  if (selectedJobNames.length === 0) {
    log("No jobs selected.");
  } else {
    log("Deleting jobs.");
    await Promise.all(
      selectedJobNames.map((n) => deleteJobFn(n).catch(console.error)),
    );
    log("Jobs deleted.", { type: "success" });
```

```
  }
};

/**
 * @param {{
 *   listJobs: import('../../../actions/list-jobs.js').listJobs,
 *   deleteJob: import('../../../actions/delete-job.js').deleteJob
 * }} config
 */
const makeCleanUpJobsStep =
  ({ listJobs, deleteJob }) =>
  async (context) => {
    const { JobNames } = await listJobs();
    if (JobNames.length > 0) {
      await handleDeleteJobs(deleteJob, JobNames, context);
    }

    return { ...context };
  };

/**
 * @param {import('../../../actions/delete-table.js').deleteTable} deleteTable
 * @param {string} databaseName
 * @param {string[]} tableNames
 */
const deleteTables = (deleteTable, databaseName, tableNames) =>
  Promise.all(
    tableNames.map((tableName) =>
      deleteTable(databaseName, tableName).catch(console.error),
    ),
  );

/**
 * @param {{
 *  getTables: import('../../../actions/get-tables.js').getTables,
 *  deleteTable: import('../../../actions/delete-table.js').deleteTable
 * }} config
 */
const makeCleanUpTablesStep =
  ({ getTables, deleteTable }) =>
  /**
   * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<any>}}} context
   */
  async (context) => {
```

```
    const { TableList } = await getTables(process.env.DATABASE_NAME).catch(
      () => ({ TableList: null }),
    );

    if (TableList && TableList.length > 0) {
      /**
       * @type {{ tableNames: string[] }}
       */
      const { tableNames } = await context.prompter.prompt({
        name: "tableNames",
        type: "checkbox",
        message: "Let's clean up tables. Select tables to delete.",
        choices: TableList.map((t) => t.Name),
      });

      if (tableNames.length === 0) {
        log("No tables selected.");
      } else {
        log("Deleting tables.");
        await deleteTables(deleteTable, process.env.DATABASE_NAME, tableNames);
        log("Tables deleted.", { type: "success" });
      }
    }

    return { ...context };
  };

/**
 * @param {import('../../../actions/delete-database.js').deleteDatabase}
 deleteDatabase
 * @param {string[]} databaseNames
 */
const deleteDatabases = (deleteDatabase, databaseNames) =>
  Promise.all(
    databaseNames.map((dbName) => deleteDatabase(dbName).catch(console.error)),
  );

/**
 * @param {{
 *   getDatabases: import('../../../actions/get-databases.js').getDatabases
 *   deleteDatabase: import('../../../actions/delete-database.js').deleteDatabase
 * }} config
 */
const makeCleanUpDatabasesStep =
```

```
  ({ getDatabases, deleteDatabase }) =>
  /**
   * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<any>}} context
   */
  async (context) => {
    const { DatabaseList } = await getDatabases();

    if (DatabaseList.length > 0) {
      /** @type {{ dbNames: string[] }} */
      const { dbNames } = await context.prompter.prompt({
        name: "dbNames",
        type: "checkbox",
        message: "Let's clean up databases. Select databases to delete.",
        choices: DatabaseList.map((db) => db.Name),
      });

      if (dbNames.length === 0) {
        log("No databases selected.");
      } else {
        log("Deleting databases.");
        await deleteDatabases(deleteDatabase, dbNames);
        log("Databases deleted.", { type: "success" });
      }
    }

    return { ...context };
  };

const cleanUpCrawlerStep = async (context) => {
  log("Deleting crawler.");

  try {
    await deleteCrawler(process.env.CRAWLER_NAME);
    log("Crawler deleted.", { type: "success" });
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.name === "EntityNotFoundException") {
      log("Crawler is already deleted.");
    } else {
      throw err;
    }
  }

  return { ...context };
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <iam> <s3Path> <cron> <dbName> <crawlerName> <jobName>
 <scriptLocation> <locationUri>
```

```
       Where:
           iam - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access
Management (IAM) role that has AWS Glue and Amazon Simple Storage Service
(Amazon S3) permissions.
           s3Path - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) target that
contains data (for example, CSV data).
           cron - A cron expression used to specify the schedule (for example,
cron(15 12 * * ? *).
           dbName - The database name.
           crawlerName - The name of the crawler.
           jobName - The name you assign to this job definition.
           scriptLocation - Specifies the Amazon S3 path to a script that runs a
job.
           locationUri - Specifies the location of the database
       """

   if (args.size != 8) {
       println(usage)
       exitProcess(1)
   }

   val iam = args[0]
   val s3Path = args[1]
   val cron = args[2]
   val dbName = args[3]
   val crawlerName = args[4]
   val jobName = args[5]
   val scriptLocation = args[6]
   val locationUri = args[7]

   println("About to start the AWS Glue Scenario")
   createDatabase(dbName, locationUri)
   createCrawler(iam, s3Path, cron, dbName, crawlerName)
   getCrawler(crawlerName)
   startCrawler(crawlerName)
   getDatabase(dbName)
   getGlueTables(dbName)
   createJob(jobName, iam, scriptLocation)
   startJob(jobName)
   getJobs()
   getJobRuns(jobName)
   deleteJob(jobName)
   println("*** Wait for 5 MIN so the $crawlerName is ready to be deleted")
```

```
    TimeUnit.MINUTES.sleep(5)
    deleteMyDatabase(dbName)
    deleteCrawler(crawlerName)
}

suspend fun createDatabase(
    dbName: String?,
    locationUriVal: String?,
) {
    val input =
        DatabaseInput {
            description = "Built with the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
            name = dbName
            locationUri = locationUriVal
        }

    val request =
        CreateDatabaseRequest {
            databaseInput = input
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createDatabase(request)
        println("The database was successfully created")
    }
}

suspend fun createCrawler(
    iam: String?,
    s3Path: String?,
    cron: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    crawlerName: String,
) {
    val s3Target =
        S3Target {
            path = s3Path
        }

    val targetList = ArrayList<S3Target>()
    targetList.add(s3Target)

    val targetOb =
        CrawlerTargets {
```

```
            s3Targets = targetList
        }

    val crawlerRequest =
        CreateCrawlerRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            name = crawlerName
            description = "Created by the AWS Glue Java API"
            targets = targetOb
            role = iam
            schedule = cron
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createCrawler(crawlerRequest)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully created")
    }
}

suspend fun getCrawler(crawlerName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getCrawler(request)
        val role = response.crawler?.role
        println("The role associated with this crawler is $role")
    }
}

suspend fun startCrawler(crawlerName: String) {
    val crawlerRequest =
        StartCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.startCrawler(crawlerRequest)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully started.")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun getDatabase(databaseName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetDatabaseRequest {
            name = databaseName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getDatabase(request)
        val dbDesc = response.database?.description
        println("The database description is $dbDesc")
    }
}

suspend fun getGlueTables(dbName: String?) {
    val tableRequest =
        GetTablesRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getTables(tableRequest)
        response.tableList?.forEach { tableName ->
            println("Table name is ${tableName.name}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun startJob(jobNameVal: String?) {
    val runRequest =
        StartJobRunRequest {
            workerType = WorkerType.G1X
            numberOfWorkers = 10
            jobName = jobNameVal
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.startJobRun(runRequest)
        println("The job run Id is ${response.jobRunId}")
    }
}

suspend fun createJob(
    jobName: String,
    iam: String?,
```

```
    scriptLocationVal: String?,
) {
    val commandOb =
        JobCommand {
            pythonVersion = "3"
            name = "MyJob1"
            scriptLocation = scriptLocationVal
        }

    val jobRequest =
        CreateJobRequest {
            description = "A Job created by using the AWS SDK for Java V2"
            glueVersion = "2.0"
            workerType = WorkerType.G1X
            numberOfWorkers = 10
            name = jobName
            role = iam
            command = commandOb
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createJob(jobRequest)
        println("$jobName was successfully created.")
    }
}

suspend fun getJobs() {
    val request =
        GetJobsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getJobs(request)
        response.jobs?.forEach { job ->
            println("Job name is ${job.name}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getJobRuns(jobNameVal: String?) {
    val request =
        GetJobRunsRequest {
            jobName = jobNameVal
```

```
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getJobRuns(request)
        response.jobRuns?.forEach { job ->
            println("Job name is ${job.jobName}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun deleteJob(jobNameVal: String) {
    val jobRequest =
        DeleteJobRequest {
            jobName = jobNameVal
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.deleteJob(jobRequest)
        println("$jobNameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMyDatabase(databaseName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteDatabaseRequest {
            name = databaseName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.deleteDatabase(request)
        println("$databaseName was successfully deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteCrawler(crawlerName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }
    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.deleteCrawler(request)
        println("$crawlerName was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace Glue;

use Aws\Glue\GlueClient;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
```

```
use GuzzleHttp\Psr7\Stream;
use Iam\IAMService;

class GettingStartedWithGlue
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the AWS Glue getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $clientArgs = [
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ];
        $uniqid = uniqid();

        $glueClient = new GlueClient($clientArgs);
        $glueService = new GlueService($glueClient);
        $iamService = new IAMService();
        $crawlerName = "example-crawler-test-" . $uniqid;

        AWSServiceClass::$waitTime = 5;
        AWSServiceClass::$maxWaitAttempts = 20;

        $role = $iamService->getRole("AWSGlueServiceRole-DocExample");

        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";
        $path = 's3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv';
        $glueService->createCrawler($crawlerName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
 $databaseName, $path);
        $glueService->startCrawler($crawlerName);

        echo "Waiting for crawler";
        do {
            $crawler = $glueService->getCrawler($crawlerName);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while ($crawler['Crawler']['State'] != "READY");
        echo "\n";

        $database = $glueService->getDatabase($databaseName);
```

```
        echo "Found a database named " . $database['Database']['Name'] . "\n";

        //Upload job script
        $s3client = new S3Client($clientArgs);
        $bucketName = "test-glue-bucket-" . $uniqid;
        $s3client->createBucket([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'CreateBucketConfiguration' => ['LocationConstraint' => 'us-west-2'],
        ]);

        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => 'run_job.py',
            'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/flight_etl_job_script.py'
        ]);
        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => 'setup_scenario_getting_started.yaml',
            'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/setup_scenario_getting_started.yaml'
        ]);

        $tables = $glueService->getTables($databaseName);

        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;
        $scriptLocation = "s3://$bucketName/run_job.py";
        $job = $glueService->createJob($jobName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
$scriptLocation);

        $outputBucketUrl = "s3://$bucketName";
        $runId = $glueService->startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
$outputBucketUrl)['JobRunId'];

        echo "waiting for job";
        do {
            $jobRun = $glueService->getJobRun($jobName, $runId);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while (!array_intersect([$jobRun['JobRun']['JobRunState']],
['SUCCEEDED', 'STOPPED', 'FAILED', 'TIMEOUT']));
        echo "\n";

        $jobRuns = $glueService->getJobRuns($jobName);

        $objects = $s3client->listObjects([
```

```
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
        ])['Contents'];

        foreach ($objects as $object) {
            echo $object['Key'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "Downloading " . $objects[1]['Key'] . "\n";
        /** @var Stream $downloadObject */
        $downloadObject = $s3client->getObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => $objects[1]['Key'],
        ])['Body']->getContents();
        echo "Here is the first 1000 characters in the object.";
        echo substr($downloadObject, 0, 1000);

        $jobs = $glueService->listJobs();
        echo "Current jobs:\n";
        foreach ($jobs['JobNames'] as $jobsName) {
            echo "{$jobsName}\n";
        }

        echo "Delete the job.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $job['Name'],
        ]);

        echo "Delete the tables.\n";
        foreach ($tables['TableList'] as $table) {
            $glueService->deleteTable($table['Name'], $databaseName);
        }

        echo "Delete the databases.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);

        echo "Delete the crawler.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);

        $deleteObjects = $s3client->listObjectsV2([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
```

```
        ]);
        echo "Delete all objects in the bucket.\n";
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->deleteObjects([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Delete' => [
                'Objects' => $deleteObjects['Contents'],
            ]
        ]);
        echo "Delete the bucket.\n";
        $s3client->deleteBucket(['Bucket' => $bucketName]);

        echo "This job was brought to you by the number $uniqid\n";
    }
}

namespace Glue;

use Aws\Glue\GlueClient;
use Aws\Result;

use function PHPUnit\Framework\isEmpty;

class GlueService extends \AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass
{
    protected GlueClient $glueClient;

    public function __construct($glueClient)
    {
        $this->glueClient = $glueClient;
    }

    public function getCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
            ]);
        });
    }

    public function createCrawler($crawlerName, $role, $databaseName, $path):
 Result
    {
```

```
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName, $role,
 $databaseName, $path) {
            return $this->glueClient->createCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
                'Role' => $role,
                'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
                'Targets' => [
                    'S3Targets' =>
                        [[
                            'Path' => $path,
                        ]]
                ],
            ]);
        });
    }

    public function startCrawler($crawlerName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }

    public function getDatabase(string $databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($databaseName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getDatabase([
                'Name' => $databaseName,
            ]);
        });
    }

    public function getTables($databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->getTables([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }

    public function createJob($jobName, $role, $scriptLocation, $pythonVersion =
 '3', $glueVersion = '3.0'): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->createJob([
            'Name' => $jobName,
```

```
            'Role' => $role,
            'Command' => [
                'Name' => 'glueetl',
                'ScriptLocation' => $scriptLocation,
                'PythonVersion' => $pythonVersion,
            ],
            'GlueVersion' => $glueVersion,
        ]);
    }

    public function startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
 $outputBucketUrl): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'Arguments' => [
                'input_database' => $databaseName,
                'input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
                'output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
                '--input_database' => $databaseName,
                '--input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
                '--output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function listJobs($maxResults = null, $nextToken = null, $tags = []):
 Result
    {
        $arguments = [];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        if (!empty($tags)) {
            $arguments['Tags'] = $tags;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->listJobs($arguments);
    }

    public function getJobRuns($jobName, $maxResults = 0, $nextToken = ''):
 Result
```

```
    {
        $arguments = ['JobName' => $jobName];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRuns($arguments);
    }

    public function getJobRun($jobName, $runId, $predecessorsIncluded = false):
Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'RunId' => $runId,
            'PredecessorsIncluded' => $predecessorsIncluded,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteJob($jobName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteTable($tableName, $databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteTable([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
            'Name' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteDatabase($databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteCrawler($crawlerName)
```

```
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions used in the scenario.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to look up.
        :return: Data about the crawler.
        """
        crawler = None
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_crawler(Name=name)
            crawler = response["Crawler"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Crawler %s doesn't exist.", name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return crawler


    def create_crawler(self, name, role_arn, db_name, db_prefix, s3_target):
        """
        Creates a crawler that can crawl the specified target and populate a
        database in your AWS Glue Data Catalog with metadata that describes the
 data
        in the target.
```

```
        :param name: The name of the crawler.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an AWS Identity and
Access
                         Management (IAM) role that grants permission to let AWS
Glue
                         access the resources it needs.
        :param db_name: The name to give the database that is created by the
crawler.
        :param db_prefix: The prefix to give any database tables that are created
by
                          the crawler.
        :param s3_target: The URL to an S3 bucket that contains data that is
                          the target of the crawler.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_crawler(
                Name=name,
                Role=role_arn,
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                TablePrefix=db_prefix,
                Targets={"S3Targets": [{"Path": s3_target}]},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create crawler. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def start_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Starts a crawler. The crawler crawls its configured target and creates
        metadata that describes the data it finds in the target data source.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to start.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.start_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_database(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a database in your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to look up.
        :return: Information about the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Database"]


    def get_tables(self, db_name):
        """
        Gets a list of tables in a Data Catalog database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database to query.
        :return: The list of tables in the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_tables(DatabaseName=db_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get tables %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return response["TableList"]


    def create_job(self, name, description, role_arn, script_location):
        """
        Creates a job definition for an extract, transform, and load (ETL) job
that can
        be run by AWS Glue.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param description: The description of the job definition.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role that grants AWS Glue the
permissions
                         it requires to run the job.
        :param script_location: The Amazon S3 URL of a Python ETL script that is
run as
                                part of the job. The script defines how the data
is
                                transformed.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_job(
                Name=name,
                Description=description,
                Role=role_arn,
                Command={
                    "Name": "glueetl",
                    "ScriptLocation": script_location,
                    "PythonVersion": "3",
                },
                GlueVersion="3.0",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def start_job_run(self, name, input_database, input_table,
output_bucket_name):
        """
        Starts a job run. A job run extracts data from the source, transforms it,
        and loads it to the output bucket.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param input_database: The name of the metadata database that contains
tables
                               that describe the source data. This is typically
created
                               by a crawler.
        :param input_table: The name of the table in the metadata database that
                            describes the source data.
        :param output_bucket_name: The S3 bucket where the output is written.
        :return: The ID of the job run.
        """
        try:
            # The custom Arguments that are passed to this function are used by
the
            # Python ETL script to determine the location of input and output
data.
            response = self.glue_client.start_job_run(
                JobName=name,
                Arguments={
                    "--input_database": input_database,
                    "--input_table": input_table,
                    "--output_bucket_url": f"s3://{output_bucket_name}/",
                },
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start job run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRunId"]


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
```

```
        Lists the names of job definitions in your account.

        :return: The list of job definition names.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.list_jobs()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list jobs. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobNames"]


    def get_job_runs(self, job_name):
        """
        Gets information about runs that have been performed for a specific job
        definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to look up.
        :return: The list of job runs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_runs(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job runs for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRuns"]


    def get_job_run(self, name, run_id):
        """
        Gets information about a single job run.

        :param name: The name of the job definition for the run.
```

```
        :param run_id: The ID of the run.
        :return: Information about the run.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_run(JobName=name, RunId=run_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job run %s/%s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                run_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRun"]


    def delete_job(self, job_name):
        """
        Deletes a job definition. This also deletes data about all runs that are
        associated with this job definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_job(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_table(self, db_name, table_name):
        """
        Deletes a table from a metadata database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that contains the table.
        :param table_name: The name of the table to delete.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_table(DatabaseName=db_name, Name=table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_database(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a metadata database from your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
class GlueCrawlerJobScenario:
    """
    Encapsulates a scenario that shows how to create an AWS Glue crawler and job
 and use
    them to transform data from CSV to JSON format.
    """

    def __init__(self, glue_client, glue_service_role, glue_bucket):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 AWS Glue client.
        :param glue_service_role: An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role
                                  that AWS Glue can assume to gain access to the
                                  resources it requires.
        :param glue_bucket: An S3 bucket that can hold a job script and output
 data
                            from AWS Glue job runs.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client
        self.glue_service_role = glue_service_role
        self.glue_bucket = glue_bucket

    @staticmethod
    def wait(seconds, tick=12):
        """
        Waits for a specified number of seconds, while also displaying an
 animated
        spinner.

        :param seconds: The number of seconds to wait.
        :param tick: The number of frames per second used to animate the spinner.
        """
        progress = "|/-\\"
        waited = 0
```

```
        while waited < seconds:
            for frame in range(tick):
                sys.stdout.write(f"\r{progress[frame % len(progress)]}")
                sys.stdout.flush()
                time.sleep(1 / tick)
            waited += 1

    def upload_job_script(self, job_script):
        """
        Uploads a Python ETL script to an S3 bucket. The script is used by the
AWS Glue
        job to transform data.

        :param job_script: The relative path to the job script.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_bucket.upload_file(Filename=job_script, Key=job_script)
            print(f"Uploaded job script '{job_script}' to the example bucket.")
        except S3UploadFailedError as err:
            logger.error("Couldn't upload job script. Here's why: %s", err)
            raise

    def run(self, crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source, job_script,
job_name):
        """
        Runs the scenario. This is an interactive experience that runs at a
command
        prompt and asks you for input throughout.

        :param crawler_name: The name of the crawler used in the scenario. If the
                             crawler does not exist, it is created.
        :param db_name: The name to give the metadata database created by the
crawler.
        :param db_prefix: The prefix to give tables added to the database by the
                          crawler.
        :param data_source: The location of the data source that is targeted by
the
                            crawler and extracted during job runs.
        :param job_script: The job script that is used to transform data during
job
                           runs.
        :param job_name: The name to give the job definition that is created
during the
                         scenario.
```

```
        """
        wrapper = GlueWrapper(self.glue_client)
        print(f"Checking for crawler {crawler_name}.")
        crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
        if crawler is None:
            print(f"Creating crawler {crawler_name}.")
            wrapper.create_crawler(
                crawler_name,
                self.glue_service_role.arn,
                db_name,
                db_prefix,
                data_source,
            )
            print(f"Created crawler {crawler_name}.")
            crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
        pprint(crawler)
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
            f"When you run the crawler, it crawls data stored in {data_source}
and "
            f"creates a metadata database in the AWS Glue Data Catalog that
describes "
            f"the data in the data source."
        )
        print("In this example, the source data is in CSV format.")
        ready = False
        while not ready:
            ready = Question.ask_question(
                "Ready to start the crawler? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno
            )
        wrapper.start_crawler(crawler_name)
        print("Let's wait for the crawler to run. This typically takes a few
minutes.")
        crawler_state = None
        while crawler_state != "READY":
            self.wait(10)
            crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
            crawler_state = crawler["State"]
            print(f"Crawler is {crawler['State']}.")
        print("-" * 88)

        database = wrapper.get_database(db_name)
        print(f"The crawler created database {db_name}:")
```

```
        pprint(database)
        print(f"The database contains these tables:")
        tables = wrapper.get_tables(db_name)
        for index, table in enumerate(tables):
            print(f"\t{index + 1}. {table['Name']}")
        table_index = Question.ask_question(
            f"Enter the number of a table to see more detail: ",
            Question.is_int,
            Question.in_range(1, len(tables)),
        )
        pprint(tables[table_index - 1])
        print("-" * 88)

        print(f"Creating job definition {job_name}.")
        wrapper.create_job(
            job_name,
            "Getting started example job.",
            self.glue_service_role.arn,
            f"s3://{self.glue_bucket.name}/{job_script}",
        )
        print("Created job definition.")
        print(
            f"When you run the job, it extracts data from {data_source},
transforms it "
            f"by using the {job_script} script, and loads the output into "
            f"S3 bucket {self.glue_bucket.name}."
        )
        print(
            "In this example, the data is transformed from CSV to JSON, and only
a few "
            "fields are included in the output."
        )
        job_run_status = None
        if Question.ask_question(f"Ready to run? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno):
            job_run_id = wrapper.start_job_run(
                job_name, db_name, tables[0]["Name"], self.glue_bucket.name
            )
            print(f"Job {job_name} started. Let's wait for it to run.")
            while job_run_status not in ["SUCCEEDED", "STOPPED", "FAILED",
"TIMEOUT"]:
                self.wait(10)
                job_run = wrapper.get_job_run(job_name, job_run_id)
                job_run_status = job_run["JobRunState"]
                print(f"Job {job_name}/{job_run_id} is {job_run_status}.")
```

```
        print("-" * 88)

        if job_run_status == "SUCCEEDED":
            print(
                f"Data from your job run is stored in your S3 bucket
'{self.glue_bucket.name}':"
            )
            try:
                keys = [
                    obj.key for obj in
self.glue_bucket.objects.filter(Prefix="run-")
                ]
                for index, key in enumerate(keys):
                    print(f"\t{index + 1}: {key}")
                lines = 4
                key_index = Question.ask_question(
                    f"Enter the number of a block to download it and see the
first {lines} "
                    f"lines of JSON output in the block: ",
                    Question.is_int,
                    Question.in_range(1, len(keys)),
                )
                job_data = io.BytesIO()
                self.glue_bucket.download_fileobj(keys[key_index - 1], job_data)
                job_data.seek(0)
                for _ in range(lines):
                    print(job_data.readline().decode("utf-8"))
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get job run data. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            print("-" * 88)

        job_names = wrapper.list_jobs()
        if job_names:
            print(f"Your account has {len(job_names)} jobs defined:")
            for index, job_name in enumerate(job_names):
                print(f"\t{index + 1}. {job_name}")
            job_index = Question.ask_question(
                f"Enter a number between 1 and {len(job_names)} to see the list
of runs for "
```

```
                f"a job: ",
                Question.is_int,
                Question.in_range(1, len(job_names)),
            )
            job_runs = wrapper.get_job_runs(job_names[job_index - 1])
            if job_runs:
                print(f"Found {len(job_runs)} runs for job {job_names[job_index -
1]}:")
                for index, job_run in enumerate(job_runs):
                    print(
                        f"\t{index + 1}. {job_run['JobRunState']} on "
                        f"{job_run['CompletedOn']:%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S}"
                    )
                run_index = Question.ask_question(
                    f"Enter a number between 1 and {len(job_runs)} to see details
for a run: ",
                    Question.is_int,
                    Question.in_range(1, len(job_runs)),
                )
                pprint(job_runs[run_index - 1])
            else:
                print(f"No runs found for job {job_names[job_index - 1]}")
        else:
            print("Your account doesn't have any jobs defined.")
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
            f"Let's clean up. During this example we created job definition
'{job_name}'."
        )
        if Question.ask_question(
            "Do you want to delete the definition and all runs? (y/n) ",
            Question.is_yesno,
        ):
            wrapper.delete_job(job_name)
            print(f"Job definition '{job_name}' deleted.")
        tables = wrapper.get_tables(db_name)
        print(f"We also created database '{db_name}' that contains these
tables:")
        for table in tables:
            print(f"\t{table['Name']}")
        if Question.ask_question(
            "Do you want to delete the tables and the database? (y/n) ",
            Question.is_yesno,
```

```
        ):
            for table in tables:
                wrapper.delete_table(db_name, table["Name"])
                print(f"Deleted table {table['Name']}.")
            wrapper.delete_database(db_name)
            print(f"Deleted database {db_name}.")
        print(f"We also created crawler '{crawler_name}'.")
        if Question.ask_question(
            "Do you want to delete the crawler? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno
        ):
            wrapper.delete_crawler(crawler_name)
            print(f"Deleted crawler {crawler_name}.")
        print("-" * 88)


def parse_args(args):
    """
    Parse command line arguments.

    :param args: The command line arguments.
    :return: The parsed arguments.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Runs the AWS Glue getting started with crawlers and jobs
 scenario. "
        "Before you run this scenario, set up scaffold resources by running "
        "'python scaffold.py deploy'."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "role_name",
        help="The name of an IAM role that AWS Glue can assume. This role must
 grant access "
        "to Amazon S3 and to the permissions granted by the AWSGlueServiceRole "
        "managed policy.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "bucket_name",
        help="The name of an S3 bucket that AWS Glue can access to get the job
 script and "
        "put job results.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--job_script",
        default="flight_etl_job_script.py",
```

```
        help="The name of the job script file that is used in the scenario.",
    )
    return parser.parse_args(args)


def main():
    args = parse_args(sys.argv[1:])
    try:
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "Welcome to the AWS Glue getting started with crawlers and jobs
 scenario."
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        scenario = GlueCrawlerJobScenario(
            boto3.client("glue"),
            boto3.resource("iam").Role(args.role_name),
            boto3.resource("s3").Bucket(args.bucket_name),
        )
        scenario.upload_job_script(args.job_script)
        scenario.run(
            "doc-example-crawler",
            "doc-example-database",
            "doc-example-",
            "s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv",
            args.job_script,
            "doc-example-job",
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "To destroy scaffold resources, including the IAM role and S3 bucket
 "
            "used in this scenario, run 'python scaffold.py destroy'."
        )
        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the example.")
```

Create an ETL script that is used by AWS Glue to extract, transform, and load data during job runs.

```
import sys
from awsglue.transforms import *
from awsglue.utils import getResolvedOptions
from pyspark.context import SparkContext
from awsglue.context import GlueContext
from awsglue.job import Job

"""
These custom arguments must be passed as Arguments to the StartJobRun request.
    --input_database    The name of a metadata database that is contained in
 your
                        AWS Glue Data Catalog and that contains tables that
 describe
                        the data to be processed.
    --input_table       The name of a table in the database that describes the
 data to
                        be processed.
    --output_bucket_url An S3 bucket that receives the transformed output data.
"""
args = getResolvedOptions(
    sys.argv, ["JOB_NAME", "input_database", "input_table", "output_bucket_url"]
)
sc = SparkContext()
glueContext = GlueContext(sc)
spark = glueContext.spark_session
job = Job(glueContext)
job.init(args["JOB_NAME"], args)

# Script generated for node S3 Flight Data.
S3FlightData_node1 = glueContext.create_dynamic_frame.from_catalog(
    database=args["input_database"],
    table_name=args["input_table"],
    transformation_ctx="S3FlightData_node1",
)

# This mapping performs two main functions:
# 1. It simplifies the output by removing most of the fields from the data.
# 2. It renames some fields. For example, `fl_date` is renamed to `flight_date`.
ApplyMapping_node2 = ApplyMapping.apply(
    frame=S3FlightData_node1,
```

```
    mappings=[
        ("year", "long", "year", "long"),
        ("month", "long", "month", "tinyint"),
        ("day_of_month", "long", "day", "tinyint"),
        ("fl_date", "string", "flight_date", "string"),
        ("carrier", "string", "carrier", "string"),
        ("fl_num", "long", "flight_num", "long"),
        ("origin_city_name", "string", "origin_city_name", "string"),
        ("origin_state_abr", "string", "origin_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dest_city_name", "string", "dest_city_name", "string"),
        ("dest_state_abr", "string", "dest_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dep_time", "long", "departure_time", "long"),
        ("wheels_off", "long", "wheels_off", "long"),
        ("wheels_on", "long", "wheels_on", "long"),
        ("arr_time", "long", "arrival_time", "long"),
        ("mon", "string", "mon", "string"),
    ],
    transformation_ctx="ApplyMapping_node2",
)

# Script generated for node Revised Flight Data.
RevisedFlightData_node3 = glueContext.write_dynamic_frame.from_options(
    frame=ApplyMapping_node2,
    connection_type="s3",
    format="json",
    connection_options={"path": args["output_bucket_url"], "partitionKeys": []},
    transformation_ctx="RevisedFlightData_node3",
)

job.commit()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler

- GetDatabase
- GetDatabases
- GetJob
- GetJobRun
- GetJobRuns
- GetTables
- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions used in the scenario.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific crawler.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to retrieve information about.
```

```
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Crawler, nil] The crawler object if found, or nil
if not found.
  def get_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.get_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::EntityNotFoundException
    @logger.info("Crawler #{name} doesn't exist.")
    false
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates a new crawler with the specified configuration.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the crawler.
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database where the crawler stores its
metadata.
  # @param db_prefix [String] The prefix to be added to the names of tables that
the crawler creates.
  # @param s3_target [String] The S3 path that the crawler will crawl.
  # @return [void]
  def create_crawler(name, role_arn, db_name, _db_prefix, s3_target)
    @glue_client.create_crawler(
      name: name,
      role: role_arn,
      database_name: db_name,
      targets: {
        s3_targets: [
          {
            path: s3_target
          }
        ]
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not create crawler: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Starts a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to start.
  # @return [void]
```

```
  def start_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.start_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Deletes a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.delete_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific database.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the database to retrieve information about.
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Database, nil] The database object if found, or
 nil if not found.
  def get_database(name)
    response = @glue_client.get_database(name: name)
    response.database
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get database #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Retrieves a list of tables in the specified database.
  #
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database to retrieve tables from.
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::Table>]
  def get_tables(db_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_tables(database_name: db_name)
    response.table_list
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get tables #{db_name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates a new job with the specified configuration.
```

```
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job.
  # @param description [String] The description of the job.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the job.
  # @param script_location [String] The location of the ETL script for the job.
  # @return [void]
  def create_job(name, description, role_arn, script_location)
    @glue_client.create_job(
      name: name,
      description: description,
      role: role_arn,
      command: {
        name: 'glueetl',
        script_location: script_location,
        python_version: '3'
      },
      glue_version: '3.0'
    )
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not create job #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Starts a job run for the specified job.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job to start the run for.
  # @param input_database [String] The name of the input database for the job.
  # @param input_table [String] The name of the input table for the job.
  # @param output_bucket_name [String] The name of the output S3 bucket for the
job.
  # @return [String] The ID of the started job run.
  def start_job_run(name, input_database, input_table, output_bucket_name)
    response = @glue_client.start_job_run(
      job_name: name,
      arguments: {
        '--input_database': input_database,
        '--input_table': input_table,
        '--output_bucket_url': "s3://#{output_bucket_name}/"
      }
    )
    response.job_run_id
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start job run #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
```

```
  end

  # Retrieves a list of jobs in AWS Glue.
  #
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::ListJobsResponse]
  def list_jobs
    @glue_client.list_jobs
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not list jobs: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Retrieves a list of job runs for the specified job.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to retrieve job runs for.
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::JobRun>]
  def get_job_runs(job_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_job_runs(job_name: job_name)
    response.job_runs
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Retrieves data for a specific job run.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job run to retrieve data for.
  # @return [Glue::Types::GetJobRunResponse]
  def get_job_run(job_name, run_id)
    @glue_client.get_job_run(job_name: job_name, run_id: run_id)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Deletes a job with the specified name.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_job(job_name)
    @glue_client.delete_job(job_name: job_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Deletes a table with the specified name.
```

```
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the catalog database in which the
 table resides.
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to be deleted.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_table(database_name, table_name)
    @glue_client.delete_table(database_name: database_name, name: table_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Removes a specified database from a Data Catalog.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the database to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_database(database_name)
    @glue_client.delete_database(name: database_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete database: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Uploads a job script file to an S3 bucket.
  #
  # @param file_path [String] The local path of the job script file.
  # @param bucket_resource [Aws::S3::Bucket] The S3 bucket resource to upload the
 file to.
  # @return [void]
  def upload_job_script(file_path, bucket_resource)
    File.open(file_path) do |file|
      bucket_resource.client.put_object({
                                          body: file,
                                          bucket: bucket_resource.name,
                                          key: file_path
                                        })
    end
  rescue Aws::S3::Errors::S3UploadFailedError => e
    @logger.error("S3 could not upload job script: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
class GlueCrawlerJobScenario
  def initialize(glue_client, glue_service_role, glue_bucket, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @glue_service_role = glue_service_role
    @glue_bucket = glue_bucket
    @logger = logger
  end

  def run(crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source, job_script, job_name)
    wrapper = GlueWrapper.new(@glue_client, @logger)
    setup_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source)
    query_database(wrapper, crawler_name, db_name)
    create_and_run_job(wrapper, job_script, job_name, db_name)
  end

  private

  def setup_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source)
    new_step(1, 'Create a crawler')
    crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
    unless crawler
      puts "Creating crawler #{crawler_name}."
      wrapper.create_crawler(crawler_name, @glue_service_role.arn, db_name,
 db_prefix, data_source)
      puts "Successfully created #{crawler_name}."
    end
    wrapper.start_crawler(crawler_name)
    monitor_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name)
  end

  def monitor_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name)
    new_step(2, 'Monitor Crawler')
    crawler_state = nil
    until crawler_state == 'READY'
      custom_wait(15)
      crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
      crawler_state = crawler[0]['state']
      print "Crawler status: #{crawler_state}".yellow
    end
  end

  def query_database(wrapper, _crawler_name, db_name)
    new_step(3, 'Query the database.')
```

```
    wrapper.get_database(db_name)
    puts "The crawler created database #{db_name}:"
    puts "Database contains tables: #{wrapper.get_tables(db_name).map { |t|
 t['name'] }}"
  end

  def create_and_run_job(wrapper, job_script, job_name, db_name)
    new_step(4, 'Create and run job.')
    wrapper.upload_job_script(job_script, @glue_bucket)
    wrapper.create_job(job_name, 'ETL Job', @glue_service_role.arn, "s3://
#{@glue_bucket.name}/#{job_script}")
    run_job(wrapper, job_name, db_name)
  end

  def run_job(wrapper, job_name, db_name)
    new_step(5, 'Run the job.')
    wrapper.start_job_run(job_name, db_name, wrapper.get_tables(db_name)[0]
['name'], @glue_bucket.name)
    job_run_status = nil
    until %w[SUCCEEDED FAILED STOPPED].include?(job_run_status)
      custom_wait(10)
      job_run = wrapper.get_job_runs(job_name)
      job_run_status = job_run[0]['job_run_state']
      print "Job #{job_name} status: #{job_run_status}".yellow
    end
  end
end

def main
  banner('../../helpers/banner.txt')
  puts 'Starting AWS Glue demo...'

  # Load resource names from YAML.
  resource_names = YAML.load_file('resource_names.yaml')

  # Setup services and resources.
  iam_role = Aws::IAM::Resource.new(region: 'us-
east-1').role(resource_names['glue_service_role'])
  s3_bucket = Aws::S3::Resource.new(region: 'us-
east-1').bucket(resource_names['glue_bucket'])

  # Instantiate scenario and run.
  scenario = GlueCrawlerJobScenario.new(Aws::Glue::Client.new(region: 'us-
east-1'), iam_role, s3_bucket, @logger)
```

```
  random_suffix = rand(10**4)
  scenario.run("crawler-#{random_suffix}", "db-#{random_suffix}", "prefix-
#{random_suffix}-", 's3://data_source',
               'job_script.py', "job-#{random_suffix}")

  puts 'Demo complete.'
end
```

Create an ETL script that is used by AWS Glue to extract, transform, and load data during job runs.

```
import sys
from awsglue.transforms import *
from awsglue.utils import getResolvedOptions
from pyspark.context import SparkContext
from awsglue.context import GlueContext
from awsglue.job import Job

"""
These custom arguments must be passed as Arguments to the StartJobRun request.
    --input_database    The name of a metadata database that is contained in
 your
                        AWS Glue Data Catalog and that contains tables that
 describe
                        the data to be processed.
    --input_table       The name of a table in the database that describes the
 data to
                        be processed.
    --output_bucket_url An S3 bucket that receives the transformed output data.
"""
args = getResolvedOptions(
    sys.argv, ["JOB_NAME", "input_database", "input_table", "output_bucket_url"]
)
sc = SparkContext()
glueContext = GlueContext(sc)
spark = glueContext.spark_session
job = Job(glueContext)
job.init(args["JOB_NAME"], args)

# Script generated for node S3 Flight Data.
S3FlightData_node1 = glueContext.create_dynamic_frame.from_catalog(
    database=args["input_database"],
```

```
    table_name=args["input_table"],
    transformation_ctx="S3FlightData_node1",
)

# This mapping performs two main functions:
# 1. It simplifies the output by removing most of the fields from the data.
# 2. It renames some fields. For example, `fl_date` is renamed to `flight_date`.
ApplyMapping_node2 = ApplyMapping.apply(
    frame=S3FlightData_node1,
    mappings=[
        ("year", "long", "year", "long"),
        ("month", "long", "month", "tinyint"),
        ("day_of_month", "long", "day", "tinyint"),
        ("fl_date", "string", "flight_date", "string"),
        ("carrier", "string", "carrier", "string"),
        ("fl_num", "long", "flight_num", "long"),
        ("origin_city_name", "string", "origin_city_name", "string"),
        ("origin_state_abr", "string", "origin_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dest_city_name", "string", "dest_city_name", "string"),
        ("dest_state_abr", "string", "dest_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dep_time", "long", "departure_time", "long"),
        ("wheels_off", "long", "wheels_off", "long"),
        ("wheels_on", "long", "wheels_on", "long"),
        ("arr_time", "long", "arrival_time", "long"),
        ("mon", "string", "mon", "string"),
    ],
    transformation_ctx="ApplyMapping_node2",
)

# Script generated for node Revised Flight Data.
RevisedFlightData_node3 = glueContext.write_dynamic_frame.from_options(
    frame=ApplyMapping_node2,
    connection_type="s3",
    format="json",
    connection_options={"path": args["output_bucket_url"], "partitionKeys": []},
    transformation_ctx="RevisedFlightData_node3",
)

job.commit()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler

- CreateJob
- DeleteCrawler
- DeleteDatabase
- DeleteJob
- DeleteTable
- GetCrawler
- GetDatabase
- GetDatabases
- GetJob
- GetJobRun
- GetJobRuns
- GetTables
- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and run a crawler that crawls a public Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket and generates a metadata database that describes the CSV-formatted data it finds.

```
        let create_crawler = glue
            .create_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .database_name(self.database())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
            .targets(
```

```
                CrawlerTargets::builder()
                    .s3_targets(S3Target::builder().path(CRAWLER_TARGET).build())
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match create_crawler {
            Err(err) => {
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                        info!("Using existing crawler");
                        Ok(())
                    }
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        }?;

        let start_crawler =
 glue.start_crawler().name(self.crawler()).send().await;

        match start_crawler {
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
            Err(err) => {
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::CrawlerRunningException(_) => Ok(()),
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
        }?;
```

List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.

```
        let database = glue
            .get_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
```

```
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?
            .to_owned();
        let database = database
            .database()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Could not find
database".into()))?;

        let tables = glue
            .get_tables()
            .database_name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let tables = tables.table_list();
```

Create and run a job that extracts CSV data from the source Amazon S3 bucket, transforms it by removing and renaming fields, and loads JSON-formatted output into another Amazon S3 bucket.

```
        let create_job = glue
            .create_job()
            .name(self.job())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
            .command(
                JobCommand::builder()
                    .name("glueetl")
                    .python_version("3")
                    .script_location(format!("s3://{}/job.py", self.bucket()))
                    .build(),
            )
            .glue_version("3.0")
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job_name = create_job.name().ok_or_else(|| {
            GlueMvpError::Unknown("Did not get job name after creating
job".into())
        })?;

        let job_run_output = glue
```

```
            .start_job_run()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .arguments("--input_database", self.database())
            .arguments(
                "--input_table",
                self.tables
                    .first()
                    .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing crawler
table".into()))?
                    .name(),
            )
            .arguments("--output_bucket_url", self.bucket())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job = job_run_output
            .job_run_id()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing run id from just
started job".into()))?
            .to_string();
```

Delete all resources created by the demo.

```
        glue.delete_job()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        for t in &self.tables {
            glue.delete_table()
                .name(t.name())
                .database_name(self.database())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
        }

        glue.delete_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
```

```
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        glue.delete_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "glue-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "glue-scenario",
```

```
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSGlue", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "AWSS3", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift code file, `entry.swift`.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to demonstrate
// creating and using crawlers and jobs using AWS Glue.
//
// 0. Upload the Python job script to Amazon S3 so it can be used when
//    calling `startJobRun()` later.
// 1. Create a crawler, pass it the IAM role and the URL of the public Amazon
//    S3 bucket that contains the source data:
//    s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv.
// 2. Start the crawler. This takes time, so after starting it, use a loop
//    that calls `getCrawler()` until the state is "READY".
// 3. Get the database created by the crawler, and the tables in the
//    database. Display them to the user.
// 4. Create a job. Pass it the IAM role and the URL to a Python ETL script
//    previously uploaded to the user's S3 bucket.
// 5. Start a job run, passing the following custom arguments. These are
//    expected by the ETL script, so must exactly match.
//    * `--input_database: <name of the database created by the crawler>`
//    * `--input_table: <name of the table created by the crawler>`
//    * `--output_bucket_url: <URL to the scaffold bucket created for the
//      user>`
// 6. Loop and get the job run until it returns one of the following states:
//    "SUCCEEDED", "STOPPED", "FAILED", or "TIMEOUT".
// 7. Output data is stored in a group of files in the user's S3 bucket.
//    Either direct the user to their location or download a file and display
//    the results inline.
// 8. List the jobs for the user's account.
// 9. Get job run details for a job run.
// 10. Delete the demo job.
// 11. Delete the database and tables created by the example.
```

```
// 12. Delete the crawler created by the example.

import ArgumentParser
import AWSS3
import Foundation
import Smithy

import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS IAM role to use for AWS Glue calls.")
    var role: String

    @Option(help: "The Amazon S3 bucket to use for this example.")
    var bucket: String

    @Option(help: "The Amazon S3 URL of the data to crawl.")
    var s3url: String = "s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv"

    @Option(help: "The Python script to run as a job with AWS Glue.")
    var script: String = "./flight_etl_job_script.py"

    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(help: "A prefix string to use when naming tables.")
    var tablePrefix = "swift-glue-basics-table"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
```

```
        commandName: "glue-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Demonstrates various features of AWS Glue.
        """,
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to use AWS Glue to create, run, and monitor
        crawlers and jobs.
        """
    )

    /// Generate and return a unique file name that begins with the specified
    /// string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prefix: Text to use at the beginning of the returned name.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing a unique filename that begins with the
    ///   specified `prefix`.
    ///
    /// The returned name uses a random number between 1 million and 1 billion to
    /// provide reasonable certainty of uniqueness for the purposes of this
    /// example.
    func tempName(prefix: String) -> String {
        return "\(prefix)-\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))"
    }

    /// Upload a file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - s3Client: The S3 client to use when uploading the file.
    ///   - path: The local path of the source file to upload.
    ///   - toBucket: The name of the S3 bucket into which to upload the file.
    ///   - key: The key (name) to give the file in the S3 bucket.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the file is uploaded successfully, otherwise
 `false`.
    func uploadFile(s3Client: S3Client, path: String, toBucket: String, key:
 String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let fileData: Data = try Data(contentsOf: URL(fileURLWithPath: path))
            let dataStream = ByteStream.data(fileData)
            _ = try await s3Client.putObject(
                input: PutObjectInput(
                    body: dataStream,
```

```
                    bucket: toBucket,
                    key: key
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred uploading the script to the
Amazon S3 bucket \"\(bucket)\".")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Create a new AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: An AWS Glue client to use for the crawler.
    ///   - crawlerName: A name for the new crawler.
    ///   - iamRole: The name of an Amazon IAM role for the crawler to use.
    ///   - s3Path: The path of an Amazon S3 folder to use as a target location.
    ///   - cronSchedule: A `cron` schedule indicating when to run the crawler.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of an AWS Glue database to operate on.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is created successfully, otherwise
`false`.
    func createCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, crawlerName: String, iamRole:
String,
                       s3Path: String, cronSchedule: String, databaseName:
String) async -> Bool {
        let s3Target = GlueClientTypes.S3Target(path: s3url)
        let targetList = GlueClientTypes.CrawlerTargets(s3Targets: [s3Target])

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createCrawler(
                input: CreateCrawlerInput(
                    databaseName: databaseName,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Scenario
Example for AWS Glue.",
                    name: crawlerName,
                    role: iamRole,
                    schedule: cronSchedule,
                    tablePrefix: tablePrefix,
                    targets: targetList
                )
```

```
            )
        } catch _ as AlreadyExistsException {
            print("*** A crawler named \"\(crawlerName)\" already exists.")
            return false
        } catch _ as OperationTimeoutException {
            print("*** The attempt to create the AWS Glue crawler timed out.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred creating the AWS Glue
crawler: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteCrawler(
                input: DeleteCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Start running an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use when starting the crawler.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to start running.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is started successfully, otherwise
`false`.
    func startCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
```

```
            _ = try await glueClient.startCrawler(
                input: StartCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred starting the crawler.")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Get the state of the specified AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler whose state should be returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState` value describing the
    ///   state of the crawler.
    func getCrawlerState(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getCrawler(
                input: GetCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )

            // If the crawler or its state is `nil`, report that the crawler
            // is stopping. This may not be what you want for your
            // application but it works for this one!

            guard let crawler = output.crawler else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            guard let state = crawler.state else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            return state
        } catch {
            return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
        }
    }

    /// Wait until the specified crawler is ready to run.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to wait for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is ready, `false` if the client is
    ///   stopping (and will therefore never be ready).
    func waitUntilCrawlerReady(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
Bool {
        while true {
            let state = await getCrawlerState(glueClient: glueClient, name: name)

            if state == .ready {
                return true
            } else if state == .stopping {
                return false
            }

            // Wait four seconds before trying again.

            do {
                try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(4))
            } catch {
                print("*** Error pausing the task.")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Create a new AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name to give the new job.
    ///   - role: The IAM role for the job to use when accessing AWS services.
    ///   - scriptLocation: The AWS S3 URI of the script to be run by the job.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is created successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func createJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, role: String,
                   scriptLocation: String) async -> Bool {
        let command = GlueClientTypes.JobCommand(
            name: "glueetl",
            pythonVersion: "3",
            scriptLocation: scriptLocation
        )
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createJob(
                input: CreateJobInput(
                    command: command,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Glue basic
scenario example.",
                    glueVersion: "3.0",
                    name: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    role: role,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Return a list of the AWS Glue jobs listed on the user's account.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - maxJobs: The maximum number of jobs to return (default: 100).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings listing the names of all available AWS
    ///   Glue jobs.
    func listJobs(glueClient: GlueClient, maxJobs: Int = 100) async -> [String] {
        var jobList: [String] = []
        var nextToken: String?

        repeat {
            do {
                let output = try await glueClient.listJobs(
                    input: ListJobsInput(
                        maxResults: maxJobs,
                        nextToken: nextToken
                    )
                )

                guard let jobs = output.jobNames else {
                    return jobList
                }
```

```
                jobList = jobList + jobs
                nextToken = output.nextToken
            } catch {
                return jobList
            }
        } while (nextToken != nil)

        return jobList
    }

    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is successfully deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteJob(
                input: DeleteJobInput(jobName: jobName)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Create an AWS Glue database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name to give the new database.
    ///   - location: The URL of the source data to use with AWS Glue.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the database is created successfully, otherwise
 `false`.
    func createDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name databaseName: String,
 location: String) async -> Bool {
        let databaseInput = GlueClientTypes.DatabaseInput(
            description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Glue basic scenario
 example.",
            locationUri: location,
            name: databaseName
```

```
        )

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createDatabase(
                input: CreateDatabaseInput(
                    databaseInput: databaseInput
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Get the AWS Glue database with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the database to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `GlueClientTypes.Database` object describing the
    ///   specified database, or `nil` if an error occurs or the database
    ///   isn't found.
    func getDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
GlueClientTypes.Database? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getDatabase(
                input: GetDatabaseInput(name: name)
            )

            return output.database
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Returns a list of the tables in the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database whose tables are to be
    ///     returned.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.Table` objects, each
    ///   describing one table in the named database. An empty array indicates
    ///   that there are either no tables in the database, or an error
    ///   occurred before any tables could be found.
    func getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, databaseName: String) async
 -> [GlueClientTypes.Table] {
        var tables: [GlueClientTypes.Table] = []
        var nextToken: String?

        repeat {
            do {
                let output = try await glueClient.getTables(
                    input: GetTablesInput(
                        databaseName: databaseName,
                        nextToken: nextToken
                    )
                )

                guard let tableList = output.tableList else {
                    return tables
                }

                tables = tables + tableList
                nextToken = output.nextToken
            } catch {
                return tables
            }
        } while nextToken != nil

        return tables
    }

    /// Delete the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database to delete.
    ///   - deleteTables: A Bool indicating whether or not to delete the
    ///     tables in the database before attempting to delete the database.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the database (and optionally its tables) are
    ///   deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name databaseName: String,
                        withTables deleteTables: Bool = false) async -> Bool {
```

```
        if deleteTables {
            var tableNames: [String] = []

            // Get a list of the names of all of the tables in the database.

            let tableList = await self.getTablesInDatabase(glueClient:
 glueClient, databaseName: databaseName)
            for table in tableList {
                guard let name = table.name else {
                    continue
                }
                tableNames.append(name)
            }

            // Delete the tables. If there's only one table, use
            // `deleteTable()`, otherwise, use `batchDeleteTable()`. You can
            // use `batchDeleteTable()` for a single table, but this
            // demonstrates the use of `deleteTable()`.

            if tableNames.count == 1 {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting table...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.deleteTable(
                        input: DeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            name: tableNames[0]
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the table.")
                }
            } else {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting tables...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.batchDeleteTable(
                        input: BatchDeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            tablesToDelete: tableNames
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the tables.")
                }
            }
```

```
        }

        // Delete the database itself.

        do {
            print("    Deleting the database itself...")
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteDatabase(
                input: DeleteDatabaseInput(name: databaseName)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to delete the database.")
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to run.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the AWS Glue database to run the job
against.
    ///   - tableName: The name of the table in the database to run the job
against.
    ///   - outputURL: The AWS S3 URI of the bucket location into which to
    ///     write the resulting output.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job run is started successfully, otherwise
`false`.
    func startJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, databaseName:
String,
                     tableName: String, outputURL: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.startJobRun(
                input: StartJobRunInput(
                    arguments: [
                        "--input_database": databaseName,
                        "--input_table": tableName,
                        "--output_bucket_url": outputURL
                    ],
                    jobName: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    workerType: .g1x
```

```
                )
            )

            guard let id = output.jobRunId else {
                return nil
            }

            return id
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Return a list of the job runs for the specified job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job for which to return its job runs.
    ///   - maxResults: The maximum number of job runs to return (default:
    ///     1000).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` objects describing
    ///   each job run.
    func getJobRuns(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, maxResults:
 Int? = nil) async -> [GlueClientTypes.JobRun] {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRuns(
                input: GetJobRunsInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    maxResults: maxResults
                )
            )

            guard let jobRuns = output.jobRuns else {
                print("*** No job runs found.")
                return []
            }

            return jobRuns
        } catch is EntityNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified job name, \(jobName), doesn't exist.")
            return []
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error getting job runs:")
```

```
            dump(error)
            return []
        }
    }

    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to return job run data for.
    ///   - id: The run ID of the specific job run to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` object describing the state of
    ///   the job run, or `nil` if an error occurs.
    func getJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, id: String)
 async -> GlueClientTypes.JobRun? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRun(
                input: GetJobRunInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    runId: id
                )
            )

            return output.jobRun
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        // A name to give the Python script upon upload to the Amazon S3
        // bucket.
        let scriptName = "jobscript.py"

        // Schedule string in `cron` format, as described here:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/dg/monitor-data-warehouse-
schedule.html
        let cron = "cron(15 12 * * ? *)"

        let glueConfig = try await GlueClient.GlueClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let glueClient = GlueClient(config: glueConfig)
```

```
        let s3Config = try await S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration(region:
awsRegion)
        let s3Client = S3Client(config: s3Config)

        // Create random names for things that need them.

        let crawlerName = tempName(prefix: "swift-glue-basics-crawler")
        let databaseName = tempName(prefix: "swift-glue-basics-db")

        // Create a name for the AWS Glue job.

        let jobName = tempName(prefix: "scenario-job")

        // The URL of the Python script on S3.

        let scriptURL = "s3://\(bucket)/\(scriptName)"

        print("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Swift basic scenario for AWS Glue!")

        //=====================================================================
        // 0. Upload the Python script to the target bucket so it's available
        //    for use by the Amazon Glue service.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Uploading the Python script: \(script) as key \(scriptName)")
        print("Destination bucket: \(bucket)")
        if !(await uploadFile(s3Client: s3Client, path: script, toBucket: bucket,
key: scriptName)) {
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 1. Create the database and crawler using the randomized names
        //    generated previously.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating database \"\(databaseName)\"...")
        if !(await createDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
location: s3url)) {
            print("*** Unable to create the database.")
            return
        }
```

```
        print("Creating crawler \"\(crawlerName)\"...")
        if !(await createCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, crawlerName:
crawlerName,
                                 iamRole: role, s3Path: s3url, cronSchedule:
cron,
                                 databaseName: databaseName)) {
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. Start the crawler, then wait for it to be ready.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Starting the crawler and waiting until it's ready...")
        if !(await startCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)) {
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        if !(await waitUntilCrawlerReady(glueClient: glueClient, name:
crawlerName)) {
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 3. Get the database and table created by the crawler.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting the crawler's database...")
        let database = await getDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name:
databaseName)

        guard let database else {
            print("*** Unable to get the database.")
            return
        }
        print("Database URI: \(database.locationUri ?? "<unknown>")")

        let tableList = await getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: glueClient,
databaseName: databaseName)

        print("Found \(tableList.count) table(s):")
        for table in tableList {
            print("  \(table.name ?? "<unnamed>")")
```

```
        }

        if tableList.count != 1 {
            print("*** Incorrect number of tables found. There should only be
one.")
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        guard let tableName = tableList[0].name else {
            print("*** Table is unnamed.")
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 4. Create a job.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating a job...")
        if !(await createJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName, role: role,
                             scriptLocation: scriptURL)) {
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 5. Start a job run.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Starting the job...")

        // Construct the Amazon S3 URL for the job run's output. This is in
        // the bucket specified on the command line, with a folder name that's
        // unique for this job run.

        let timeStamp = Date().timeIntervalSince1970
        let jobPath = "\(jobName)-\(Int(timeStamp))"
```

```
        let outputURL = "s3://\(bucket)/\(jobPath)"

        // Start the job run.

        let jobRunID = await startJobRun(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName,
                                         databaseName: databaseName,
                                         tableName: tableName,
                                         outputURL: outputURL)

        guard let jobRunID else {
            print("*** Job run ID is invalid.")
            _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
 withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. Wait for the job run to indicate that the run is complete.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Waiting for job run to end...")

        var jobRunFinished = false
        var jobRunState: GlueClientTypes.JobRunState

        repeat {
            let jobRun = await getJobRun(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName,
 id: jobRunID)
            guard let jobRun else {
                print("*** Unable to get the job run.")
                _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)
                _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name:
 databaseName, withTables: true)
                _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name:
 crawlerName)
                return
            }
            jobRunState = jobRun.jobRunState ?? .failed

            //
=====================================================================
            // 7. Output where to find the data if the job run was successful.
```

```
            //    If the job run failed for any reason, output an appropriate
            //    error message.
            //
=====================================================================

            switch jobRunState {
                case .succeeded:
                    print("Job run succeeded. JSON files are in the Amazon S3
 path:")
                    print("    \(outputURL)")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .stopped:
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .error:
                    print("*** Error: Job run ended in an error.
 \(jobRun.errorMessage ?? "")")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .failed:
                    print("*** Error: Job run failed. \(jobRun.errorMessage ??
 "")")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .timeout:
                    print("*** Warning: Job run timed out.")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                default:
                    do {
                        try await Task.sleep(for: .milliseconds(250))
                    } catch {
                        print("*** Error pausing the task.")
                    }
            }
        } while jobRunFinished != true

        //=====================================================================
        // 7.5. List the job runs for this job, showing each job run's ID and
        // its execution time.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting all job runs for the job \(jobName):")
        let jobRuns = await getJobRuns(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)

        if jobRuns.count == 0 {
            print("    <no job runs found>")
        } else {
```

```
            print("Found \(jobRuns.count) job runs... listing execution times:")
            for jobRun in jobRuns {
                print("    \(jobRun.id ?? "<unnamed>"): \(jobRun.executionTime)
seconds")
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 8. List the jobs for the user's account.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nThe account has the following jobs:")
        let jobs = await listJobs(glueClient: glueClient)

        if jobs.count == 0 {
            print("    <no jobs found>")
        } else {
            for job in jobs {
                print("    \(job)")
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 9. Get the job run details for a job run.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Information about the job run:")
        let jobRun = await getJobRun(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName, id:
jobRunID)

        guard let jobRun else {
            print("*** Unable to retrieve the job run.")
            _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        let startDate = jobRun.startedOn ?? Date(timeIntervalSince1970: 0)
        let endDate = jobRun.completedOn ?? Date(timeIntervalSince1970: 0)
        let dateFormatter: DateFormatter = DateFormatter()
        dateFormatter.dateStyle = .long
        dateFormatter.timeStyle = .long
```

```
        print("    Started at: \(dateFormatter.string(from: startDate))")
        print("  Completed at: \(dateFormatter.string(from: endDate))")

        //=====================================================================
        // 10. Delete the job.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nDeleting the job...")
        _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)

        //=====================================================================
        // 11. Delete the database and tables created by this example.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Deleting the database...")
        _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
 withTables: true)

        //=====================================================================
        // 12. Delete the crawler.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Deleting the crawler...")
        if !(await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)) {
            return
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions for AWS Glue using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Glue actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Glue API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateCrawler with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteCrawler with an AWS SDK

- Use DeleteDatabase with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK
- Use GetCrawler with an AWS SDK
- Use GetDatabase with an AWS SDK
- Use GetDatabases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJobRun with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJobRuns with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetTables with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK
- Use StartCrawler with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartJobRun with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateCrawler` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCrawler`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Create an AWS Glue crawler.
/// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name for the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="crawlerDescription">A description of the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to
    /// be assumed by the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="schedule">The schedule on which the crawler will be
executed.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Path">The path to the Amazon Simple Storage Service
(Amazon S3)
    /// bucket where the Python script has been stored.</param>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name to use for the database that will be
    /// created by the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateCrawlerAsync(
        string crawlerName,
        string crawlerDescription,
        string role,
        string schedule,
        string s3Path,
        string dbName)
    {
        var s3Target = new S3Target
        {
            Path = s3Path,
        };

        var targetList = new List<S3Target>
        {
            s3Target,
        };

        var targets = new CrawlerTargets
        {
            S3Targets = targetList,
        };

        var crawlerRequest = new CreateCrawlerRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            Name = crawlerName,
            Description = crawlerDescription,
            Targets = targets,
            Role = role,
            Schedule = schedule,
        };
```

```
        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

       Aws::Glue::Model::S3Target s3Target;
       s3Target.SetPath("s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv");
       Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerTargets crawlerTargets;
       crawlerTargets.AddS3Targets(s3Target);

       Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerRequest request;
       request.SetTargets(crawlerTargets);
       request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);
       request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
       request.SetTablePrefix(CRAWLER_DATABASE_PREFIX);
       request.SetRole(roleArn);

       Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.CreateCrawler(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "Successfully created the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating a crawler. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets("", CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue crawler using the AWS Glue Java API.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the AWS Glue
service
     * @param iam         the IAM role that the crawler will use to access the
data source
     * @param s3Path      the S3 path that the crawler will scan for data
     * @param cron        the cron expression that defines the crawler's schedule
     * @param dbName      the name of the AWS Glue database where the crawler
will store the metadata
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be created
     */
    public static void createGlueCrawler(GlueClient glueClient,
                                         String iam,
                                         String s3Path,
                                         String cron,
```

```
                                        String dbName,
                                        String crawlerName) {

        try {
            S3Target s3Target = S3Target.builder()
                .path(s3Path)
                .build();

            List<S3Target> targetList = new ArrayList<>();
            targetList.add(s3Target);
            CrawlerTargets targets = CrawlerTargets.builder()
                .s3Targets(targetList)
                .build();

            CreateCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = CreateCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .name(crawlerName)
                .description("Created by the AWS Glue Java API")
                .targets(targets)
                .role(iam)
                .schedule(cron)
                .build();

            glueClient.createCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully created");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const createCrawler = (name, role, dbName, tablePrefix, s3TargetPath) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    DatabaseName: dbName,
    TablePrefix: tablePrefix,
    Targets: {
      S3Targets: [{ Path: s3TargetPath }],
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createGlueCrawler(
    iam: String?,
    s3Path: String?,
    cron: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    crawlerName: String,
) {
    val s3Target =
        S3Target {
            path = s3Path
        }
```

```
    // Add the S3Target to a list.
    val targetList = mutableListOf<S3Target>()
    targetList.add(s3Target)

    val targetOb =
        CrawlerTargets {
            s3Targets = targetList
        }

    val request =
        CreateCrawlerRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            name = crawlerName
            description = "Created by the AWS Glue Kotlin API"
            targets = targetOb
            role = iam
            schedule = cron
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createCrawler(request)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully created")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $crawlerName = "example-crawler-test-" . $uniqid;

        $role = $iamService->getRole("AWSGlueServiceRole-DocExample");
```

```
        $path = 's3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv';
        $glueService->createCrawler($crawlerName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
$databaseName, $path);

    public function createCrawler($crawlerName, $role, $databaseName, $path):
Result
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName, $role,
$databaseName, $path) {
            return $this->glueClient->createCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
                'Role' => $role,
                'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
                'Targets' => [
                    'S3Targets' =>
                        [[
                            'Path' => $path,
                        ]]
                ],
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
```

```
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def create_crawler(self, name, role_arn, db_name, db_prefix, s3_target):
        """
        Creates a crawler that can crawl the specified target and populate a
        database in your AWS Glue Data Catalog with metadata that describes the
data
        in the target.

        :param name: The name of the crawler.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an AWS Identity and
Access
                         Management (IAM) role that grants permission to let AWS
Glue
                         access the resources it needs.
        :param db_name: The name to give the database that is created by the
crawler.
        :param db_prefix: The prefix to give any database tables that are created
by
                          the crawler.
        :param s3_target: The URL to an S3 bucket that contains data that is
                          the target of the crawler.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_crawler(
                Name=name,
                Role=role_arn,
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                TablePrefix=db_prefix,
                Targets={"S3Targets": [{"Path": s3_target}]},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create crawler. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Creates a new crawler with the specified configuration.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the crawler.
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database where the crawler stores its
 metadata.
  # @param db_prefix [String] The prefix to be added to the names of tables that
 the crawler creates.
  # @param s3_target [String] The S3 path that the crawler will crawl.
  # @return [void]
  def create_crawler(name, role_arn, db_name, _db_prefix, s3_target)
    @glue_client.create_crawler(
      name: name,
      role: role_arn,
      database_name: db_name,
      targets: {
        s3_targets: [
          {
            path: s3_target
```

```
        }
      ]
    }
  )
rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
  @logger.error("Glue could not create crawler: \n#{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let create_crawler = glue
            .create_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .database_name(self.database())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
            .targets(
                CrawlerTargets::builder()
                    .s3_targets(S3Target::builder().path(CRAWLER_TARGET).build())
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match create_crawler {
            Err(err) => {
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                        info!("Using existing crawler");
                        Ok(())
```

```
                    }
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        }?;
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Create a new AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: An AWS Glue client to use for the crawler.
    ///   - crawlerName: A name for the new crawler.
    ///   - iamRole: The name of an Amazon IAM role for the crawler to use.
    ///   - s3Path: The path of an Amazon S3 folder to use as a target location.
    ///   - cronSchedule: A `cron` schedule indicating when to run the crawler.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of an AWS Glue database to operate on.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is created successfully, otherwise
 `false`.
    func createCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, crawlerName: String, iamRole:
 String,
                       s3Path: String, cronSchedule: String, databaseName:
 String) async -> Bool {
        let s3Target = GlueClientTypes.S3Target(path: s3url)
        let targetList = GlueClientTypes.CrawlerTargets(s3Targets: [s3Target])
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createCrawler(
                input: CreateCrawlerInput(
                    databaseName: databaseName,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Scenario
Example for AWS Glue.",
                    name: crawlerName,
                    role: iamRole,
                    schedule: cronSchedule,
                    tablePrefix: tablePrefix,
                    targets: targetList
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AlreadyExistsException {
            print("*** A crawler named \"\(crawlerName)\" already exists.")
            return false
        } catch _ as OperationTimeoutException {
            print("*** The attempt to create the AWS Glue crawler timed out.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred creating the AWS Glue
crawler: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to be assumed by
    /// the job.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="scriptUrl">The URL to the script.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateJobAsync(string dbName, string tableName,
string bucketUrl, string jobName, string roleName, string description, string
scriptUrl)
    {
        var command = new JobCommand
        {
            PythonVersion = "3",
            Name = "glueetl",
            ScriptLocation = scriptUrl,
        };

        var arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "--input_database", dbName },
            { "--input_table", tableName },
            { "--output_bucket_url", bucketUrl }
        };

        var request = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Command = command,
            DefaultArguments = arguments,
            Description = description,
```

```
            GlueVersion = "3.0",
            Name = jobName,
            NumberOfWorkers = 10,
            Role = roleName,
            WorkerType = "G.1X"
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateJobAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobRequest request;
        request.SetName(JOB_NAME);
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetGlueVersion(GLUE_VERSION);

        Aws::Glue::Model::JobCommand command;
        command.SetName(JOB_COMMAND_NAME);
        command.SetPythonVersion(JOB_PYTHON_VERSION);
        command.SetScriptLocation(
                Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName + "/" + PYTHON_SCRIPT);
```

```
        request.SetCommand(command);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobOutcome outcome = client.CreateJob(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully created the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating the job. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a job to transform data

The following `create-job` example creates a streaming job that runs a script stored in S3.

```
aws glue create-job \
    --name my-testing-job \
    --role AWSGlueServiceRoleDefault \
    --command '{ \
        "Name": "gluestreaming", \
        "ScriptLocation": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/folder/" \
    }' \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --output json \
    --default-arguments '{ \
        "--job-language":"scala", \
        "--class":"GlueApp" \
    }' \
    --profile my-profile \
    --endpoint https://glue.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
```

Contents of `test_script.scala`:

```
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.ChoiceOption
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.GlueContext
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.MappingSpec
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.ResolveSpec
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.errors.CallSite
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.util.GlueArgParser
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.util.Job
import com.amazonaws.services.glue.util.JsonOptions
import org.apache.spark.SparkContext
import scala.collection.JavaConverters._

object GlueApp {
    def main(sysArgs: Array[String]) {
        val spark: SparkContext = new SparkContext()
        val glueContext: GlueContext = new GlueContext(spark)
        // @params: [JOB_NAME]
        val args = GlueArgParser.getResolvedOptions(sysArgs,
 Seq("JOB_NAME").toArray)
        Job.init(args("JOB_NAME"), glueContext, args.asJava)
        // @type: DataSource
        // @args: [database = "tempdb", table_name = "s3-source",
 transformation_ctx = "datasource0"]
        // @return: datasource0
        // @inputs: []
        val datasource0 = glueContext.getCatalogSource(database = "tempdb",
 tableName = "s3-source", redshiftTmpDir = "", transformationContext =
 "datasource0").getDynamicFrame()
        // @type: ApplyMapping
        // @args: [mapping = [("sensorid", "int", "sensorid", "int"),
 ("currenttemperature", "int", "currenttemperature", "int"), ("status", "string",
 "status", "string")], transformation_ctx = "applymapping1"]
        // @return: applymapping1
        // @inputs: [frame = datasource0]
        val applymapping1 = datasource0.applyMapping(mappings = Seq(("sensorid",
 "int", "sensorid", "int"), ("currenttemperature", "int", "currenttemperature",
 "int"), ("status", "string", "status", "string")), caseSensitive = false,
 transformationContext = "applymapping1")
        // @type: SelectFields
        // @args: [paths = ["sensorid", "currenttemperature", "status"],
 transformation_ctx = "selectfields2"]
        // @return: selectfields2
        // @inputs: [frame = applymapping1]
```

```
        val selectfields2 = applymapping1.selectFields(paths = Seq("sensorid",
 "currenttemperature", "status"), transformationContext = "selectfields2")
        // @type: ResolveChoice
        // @args: [choice = "MATCH_CATALOG", database = "tempdb", table_name =
 "my-s3-sink", transformation_ctx = "resolvechoice3"]
        // @return: resolvechoice3
        // @inputs: [frame = selectfields2]
        val resolvechoice3 = selectfields2.resolveChoice(choiceOption =
 Some(ChoiceOption("MATCH_CATALOG")), database = Some("tempdb"), tableName =
 Some("my-s3-sink"), transformationContext = "resolvechoice3")
        // @type: DataSink
        // @args: [database = "tempdb", table_name = "my-s3-sink",
 transformation_ctx = "datasink4"]
        // @return: datasink4
        // @inputs: [frame = resolvechoice3]
        val datasink4 = glueContext.getCatalogSink(database = "tempdb",
 tableName = "my-s3-sink", redshiftTmpDir = "", transformationContext =
 "datasink4").writeDynamicFrame(resolvechoice3)
        Job.commit()
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Name": "my-testing-job"
}
```

For more information, see Authoring Jobs in AWS Glue in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue job.
     *
     * @param glueClient     the AWS Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param jobName        the name of the job to create
     * @param iam            the IAM role to associate with the job
     * @param scriptLocation the location of the script to be used by the job
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error creating the job
     */
    public static void createJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String
iam, String scriptLocation) {
        try {
            JobCommand command = JobCommand.builder()
                .pythonVersion("3")
                .name("glueetl")
                .scriptLocation(scriptLocation)
                .build();

            CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
                .description("A Job created by using the AWS SDK for Java V2")
                .glueVersion("2.0")
                .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
                .numberOfWorkers(10)
                .name(jobName)
                .role(iam)
                .command(command)
                .build();

            glueClient.createJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const createJob = (name, role, scriptBucketName, scriptKey) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateJobCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    Command: {
      Name: "glueetl",
      PythonVersion: "3",
      ScriptLocation: `s3://${scriptBucketName}/${scriptKey}`,
    },
    GlueVersion: "3.0",
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $role = $iamService->getRole("AWSGlueServiceRole-DocExample");

        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

        $scriptLocation = "s3:///$bucketName/run_job.py";
        $job = $glueService->createJob($jobName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
 $scriptLocation);

    public function createJob($jobName, $role, $scriptLocation, $pythonVersion =
 '3', $glueVersion = '3.0'): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->createJob([
            'Name' => $jobName,
            'Role' => $role,
            'Command' => [
                'Name' => 'glueetl',
                'ScriptLocation' => $scriptLocation,
                'PythonVersion' => $pythonVersion,
            ],
            'GlueVersion' => $glueVersion,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new job in AWS Glue. The command name value is always `glueetl`. AWS Glue supports running job scripts written in Python or Scala. In this example, the job script (MyTestGlueJob.py) is written in Python. Python parameters are specified in the `$DefArgs` variable, and then passed to the PowerShell command in the `DefaultArguments` parameter, which accepts a hashtable. The parameters in the `$JobParams` variable come from the CreateJob API, documented in the Jobs (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/dg/aws-glue-api-jobs-job.html) topic of the AWS Glue API reference.

```
$Command = New-Object Amazon.Glue.Model.JobCommand
$Command.Name = 'glueetl'
```

```
$Command.ScriptLocation = 's3://amzn-s3-demo-source-bucket/admin/
MyTestGlueJob.py'
$Command

$Source = "source_test_table"
$Target = "target_test_table"
$Connections = $Source, $Target

$DefArgs = @{
     '--TempDir' = 's3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/admin'
     '--job-bookmark-option' = 'job-bookmark-disable'
     '--job-language' = 'python'
     }
$DefArgs

$ExecutionProp = New-Object Amazon.Glue.Model.ExecutionProperty
$ExecutionProp.MaxConcurrentRuns = 1
$ExecutionProp

$JobParams = @{
    "AllocatedCapacity"    = "5"
    "Command"              = $Command
    "Connections_Connection" = $Connections
    "DefaultArguments"  = $DefArgs
    "Description"       = "This is a test"
    "ExecutionProperty" = $ExecutionProp
    "MaxRetries"        = "1"
    "Name"              = "MyOregonTestGlueJob"
    "Role"              = "Amazon-GlueServiceRoleForSSM"
    "Timeout"           = "20"
     }

New-GlueJob @JobParams
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new job in AWS Glue. The command name value is always `glueetl`. AWS Glue supports running job scripts written in Python or Scala. In this example, the job script (MyTestGlueJob.py) is written in Python. Python parameters are specified in the `$DefArgs` variable, and then passed to the PowerShell command in the `DefaultArguments` parameter, which accepts a hashtable. The parameters in the

`$JobParams` variable come from the CreateJob API, documented in the Jobs (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/dg/aws-glue-api-jobs-job.html) topic of the AWS Glue API reference.

```
$Command = New-Object Amazon.Glue.Model.JobCommand
$Command.Name = 'glueetl'
$Command.ScriptLocation = 's3://amzn-s3-demo-source-bucket/admin/
MyTestGlueJob.py'
$Command

$Source = "source_test_table"
$Target = "target_test_table"
$Connections = $Source, $Target

$DefArgs = @{
     '--TempDir' = 's3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/admin'
     '--job-bookmark-option' = 'job-bookmark-disable'
     '--job-language' = 'python'
     }
$DefArgs

$ExecutionProp = New-Object Amazon.Glue.Model.ExecutionProperty
$ExecutionProp.MaxConcurrentRuns = 1
$ExecutionProp

$JobParams = @{
    "AllocatedCapacity"    = "5"
    "Command"              = $Command
    "Connections_Connection" = $Connections
    "DefaultArguments"  = $DefArgs
    "Description"       = "This is a test"
    "ExecutionProperty" = $ExecutionProp
    "MaxRetries"        = "1"
    "Name"              = "MyOregonTestGlueJob"
    "Role"              = "Amazon-GlueServiceRoleForSSM"
    "Timeout"           = "20"
     }

New-GlueJob @JobParams
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def create_job(self, name, description, role_arn, script_location):
        """
        Creates a job definition for an extract, transform, and load (ETL) job
 that can
        be run by AWS Glue.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param description: The description of the job definition.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role that grants AWS Glue the
 permissions
                         it requires to run the job.
        :param script_location: The Amazon S3 URL of a Python ETL script that is
 run as
                                part of the job. The script defines how the data
 is
                                transformed.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_job(
                Name=name,
                Description=description,
                Role=role_arn,
```

```
                Command={
                    "Name": "glueetl",
                    "ScriptLocation": script_location,
                    "PythonVersion": "3",
                },
                GlueVersion="3.0",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end
```

```
# Creates a new job with the specified configuration.
#
# @param name [String] The name of the job.
# @param description [String] The description of the job.
# @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the job.
# @param script_location [String] The location of the ETL script for the job.
# @return [void]
def create_job(name, description, role_arn, script_location)
  @glue_client.create_job(
    name: name,
    description: description,
    role: role_arn,
    command: {
      name: 'glueetl',
      script_location: script_location,
      python_version: '3'
    },
    glue_version: '3.0'
  )
rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
  @logger.error("Glue could not create job #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let create_job = glue
            .create_job()
            .name(self.job())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
```

```
            .command(
                JobCommand::builder()
                    .name("glueetl")
                    .python_version("3")
                    .script_location(format!("s3://{}/job.py", self.bucket()))
                    .build(),
            )
            .glue_version("3.0")
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job_name = create_job.name().ok_or_else(|| {
            GlueMvpError::Unknown("Did not get job name after creating
job".into())
        })?;
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Create a new AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name to give the new job.
    ///   - role: The IAM role for the job to use when accessing AWS services.
    ///   - scriptLocation: The AWS S3 URI of the script to be run by the job.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is created successfully, otherwise `false`.
```

```
    func createJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, role: String,
                   scriptLocation: String) async -> Bool {
        let command = GlueClientTypes.JobCommand(
            name: "glueetl",
            pythonVersion: "3",
            scriptLocation: scriptLocation
        )

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createJob(
                input: CreateJobInput(
                    command: command,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Glue basic
 scenario example.",
                    glueVersion: "3.0",
                    name: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    role: role,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteCrawler` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteCrawlerAsync(new
DeleteCrawlerRequest { Name = crawlerName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";
```

```
    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(crawler);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.DeleteCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the crawler. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client object
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be deleted
     * @throws GlueException if an error occurs during the deletion process
     */
    public static void deleteSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
        try {
```

```
            DeleteCrawlerRequest deleteCrawlerRequest =
 DeleteCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteCrawler(deleteCrawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteCrawler = (crawlerName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteCrawlerCommand({
    Name: crawlerName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the crawler.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);

    public function deleteCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
```

```
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
```

```
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deletes a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.delete_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        glue.delete_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteCrawler(
                input: DeleteCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteDatabase` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteDatabaseAsync(new
DeleteDatabaseRequest { Name = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(database);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseOutcome outcome = client.DeleteDatabase(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the database." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting database. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a AWS Glue Database.
     *
     * @param glueClient   An instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact
with the AWS Glue service.
     * @param databaseName The name of the database to be deleted.
     * @throws GlueException If an error occurs while deleting the database.
```

```
     */
    public static void deleteDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String databaseName)
 {
        try {
            DeleteDatabaseRequest request = DeleteDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .name(databaseName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteDatabase(request);
            System.out.println(databaseName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteDatabase = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteDatabaseCommand({
    Name: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the databases.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);

    public function deleteDatabase($databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
```

```
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_database(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a metadata database from your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
```

```
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Removes a specified database from a Data Catalog.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the database to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_database(database_name)
    @glue_client.delete_database(name: database_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete database: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        glue.delete_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Delete the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database to delete.
    ///   - deleteTables: A Bool indicating whether or not to delete the
    ///     tables in the database before attempting to delete the database.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the database (and optionally its tables) are
    ///   deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name databaseName: String,
                        withTables deleteTables: Bool = false) async -> Bool {
        if deleteTables {
            var tableNames: [String] = []

            // Get a list of the names of all of the tables in the database.

            let tableList = await self.getTablesInDatabase(glueClient:
 glueClient, databaseName: databaseName)
            for table in tableList {
                guard let name = table.name else {
                    continue
                }
                tableNames.append(name)
            }

            // Delete the tables. If there's only one table, use
            // `deleteTable()`, otherwise, use `batchDeleteTable()`. You can
            // use `batchDeleteTable()` for a single table, but this
```

```
            // demonstrates the use of `deleteTable()`.

            if tableNames.count == 1 {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting table...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.deleteTable(
                        input: DeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            name: tableNames[0]
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the table.")
                }
            } else {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting tables...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.batchDeleteTable(
                        input: BatchDeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            tablesToDelete: tableNames
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the tables.")
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the database itself.

        do {
            print("    Deleting the database itself...")
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteDatabase(
                input: DeleteDatabaseInput(name: databaseName)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to delete the database.")
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteJobAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteJobAsync(new DeleteJobRequest
{ JobName = jobName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(job);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobOutcome outcome = client.DeleteJob(request);


        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a job

The following `delete-job` example deletes a job that is no longer needed.

```
aws glue delete-job \
    --job-name my-testing-job
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobName": "my-testing-job"
}
```

For more information, see Working with Jobs on the AWS Glue Console in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a Glue job.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param jobName    the name of the job to be deleted
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error deleting the job
     */
    public static void deleteJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            DeleteJobRequest jobRequest = DeleteJobRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
                .build();
```

```
            glueClient.deleteJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteJob = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteJobCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the job.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $job['Name'],
        ]);

    public function deleteJob($jobName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
```

```
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_job(self, job_name):
        """
        Deletes a job definition. This also deletes data about all runs that are
        associated with this job definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_job(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
```

```
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deletes a job with the specified name.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_job(job_name)
    @glue_client.delete_job(job_name: job_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        glue.delete_job()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is successfully deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteJob(
                input: DeleteJobInput(jobName: jobName)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteTable` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a table from an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string dbName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteTableAsync(new DeleteTableRequest
{ Name = tableName, DatabaseName = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteTable = (databaseName, tableName) => {
```

```
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteTableCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
    Name: tableName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the tables.\n";
        foreach ($tables['TableList'] as $table) {
            $glueService->deleteTable($table['Name'], $databaseName);
        }

    public function deleteTable($tableName, $databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteTable([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
            'Name' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_table(self, db_name, table_name):
        """
        Deletes a table from a metadata database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that contains the table.
        :param table_name: The name of the table to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_table(DatabaseName=db_name, Name=table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deletes a table with the specified name.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the catalog database in which the
 table resides.
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to be deleted.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_table(database_name, table_name)
    @glue_client.delete_table(database_name: database_name, name: table_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        for t in &self.tables {
            glue.delete_table()
                .name(t.name())
                .database_name(self.database())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

                do {
                    print("    Deleting table...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.deleteTable(
                        input: DeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
```

```
                            name: tableNames[0]
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the table.")
                }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetCrawler` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetCrawler`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information about an AWS Glue crawler.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
/// <returns>A Crawler object describing the crawler.</returns>
public async Task<Crawler?> GetCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
{
    var crawlerRequest = new GetCrawlerRequest
    {
        Name = crawlerName,
    };
```

```
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            var databaseName = response.Crawler.DatabaseName;
            Console.WriteLine($"{crawlerName} has the database {databaseName}");
            return response.Crawler;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"No information regarding {crawlerName} could be
found.");
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome outcome = client.GetCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
outcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
```

```
            std::cout << "Retrieved crawler with state " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                            crawlerState)
                    << "." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves a specific crawler from the AWS Glue service and waits for it to
be in the "READY" state.
    *
    * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the Glue
service
    * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be retrieved
    */
   public static void getSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           GetCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = GetCrawlerRequest.builder()
               .name(crawlerName)
               .build();
```

```
            boolean ready = false;
            while (!ready) {
                GetCrawlerResponse response =
 glueClient.getCrawler(crawlerRequest);
                String status = response.crawler().stateAsString();
                if (status.compareTo("READY") == 0) {
                    ready = true;
                }
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

            System.out.println("The crawler is now ready");

        } catch (GlueException | InterruptedException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificCrawler(crawlerName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }
    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getCrawler(request)
        val role = response.crawler?.role
        println("The role associated with this crawler is $role")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Waiting for crawler";
        do {
```

```
            $crawler = $glueService->getCrawler($crawlerName);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while ($crawler['Crawler']['State'] != "READY");
        echo "\n";

    public function getCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a crawler.
```

```
        :param name: The name of the crawler to look up.
        :return: Data about the crawler.
        """
        crawler = None
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_crawler(Name=name)
            crawler = response["Crawler"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Crawler %s doesn't exist.", name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return crawler
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
```

```
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific crawler.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to retrieve information about.
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Crawler, nil] The crawler object if found, or nil
 if not found.
  def get_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.get_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::EntityNotFoundException
    @logger.info("Crawler #{name} doesn't exist.")
    false
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            let tmp_crawler = glue
                .get_crawler()
                .name(self.crawler())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Get the state of the specified AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler whose state should be returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState` value describing the
    ///   state of the crawler.
    func getCrawlerState(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
 GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getCrawler(
                input: GetCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )

            // If the crawler or its state is `nil`, report that the crawler
            // is stopping. This may not be what you want for your
            // application but it works for this one!

            guard let crawler = output.crawler else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            guard let state = crawler.state else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            return state
        } catch {
```

```
            return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetDatabase` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetDatabase`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Database object containing information about the database.</
returns>
    public async Task<Database> GetDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var databasesRequest = new GetDatabaseRequest
        {
            Name = dbName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetDatabaseAsync(databasesRequest);
```

```
        return response.Database;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

       Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseRequest request;
       request.SetName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);

       Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseOutcome outcome =
client.GetDatabase(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           const Aws::Glue::Model::Database &database =
outcome.GetResult().GetDatabase();

           std::cout << "Successfully retrieve the database\n" <<
                     database.Jsonize().View().WriteReadable() << "'." <<
std::endl;
       }
       else {
           std::cerr << "Error getting the database.  "
                     << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
           deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
```

```
                        clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the specific database from the AWS Glue service.
    *
    * @param glueClient   an instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact
with the service
    * @param databaseName the name of the database to retrieve
    * @throws GlueException if there is an error retrieving the database from
the AWS Glue service
    */
   public static void getSpecificDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String
databaseName) {
       try {
           GetDatabaseRequest databasesRequest = GetDatabaseRequest.builder()
               .name(databaseName)
               .build();

           GetDatabaseResponse response =
glueClient.getDatabase(databasesRequest);
           Instant createDate = response.database().createTime();

           // Convert the Instant to readable date.
           DateTimeFormatter formatter =
DateTimeFormatter.ofLocalizedDateTime(FormatStyle.SHORT)
               .withLocale(Locale.US)
               .withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());
```

```
            formatter.format(createDate);
            System.out.println("The create date of the database is " +
 createDate);

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getDatabase = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetDatabaseCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificDatabase(databaseName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetDatabaseRequest {
            name = databaseName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getDatabase(request)
        val dbDesc = response.database?.description
        println("The database description is $dbDesc")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

        $database = $glueService->getDatabase($databaseName);
        echo "Found a database named " . $database['Database']['Name'] . "\n";
```

```
    public function getDatabase(string $databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($databaseName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getDatabase([
                'Name' => $databaseName,
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_database(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a database in your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to look up.
        :return: Information about the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_database(Name=name)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Database"]
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific database.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the database to retrieve information about.
```

```
 # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Database, nil] The database object if found, or
nil if not found.
 def get_database(name)
   response = @glue_client.get_database(name: name)
   response.database
 rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
   @logger.error("Glue could not get database #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
   raise
 end
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let database = glue
            .get_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?
            .to_owned();
        let database = database
            .database()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Could not find
database".into()))?;
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Get the AWS Glue database with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the database to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `GlueClientTypes.Database` object describing the
    ///   specified database, or `nil` if an error occurs or the database
    ///   isn't found.
    func getDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
 GlueClientTypes.Database? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getDatabase(
                input: GetDatabaseInput(name: name)
            )

            return output.database
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetDatabases` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDatabases`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the definitions of some or all of the databases in the AWS Glue Data Catalog

The following `get-databases` example returns information about the databases in the Data Catalog.

```
aws glue get-databases
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatabaseList": [
        {
            "Name": "default",
            "Description": "Default Hive database",
            "LocationUri": "file:/spark-warehouse",
            "CreateTime": 1602084052.0,
            "CreateTableDefaultPermissions": [
                {
                    "Principal": {
                        "DataLakePrincipalIdentifier": "IAM_ALLOWED_PRINCIPALS"
                    },
                    "Permissions": [
                        "ALL"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "CatalogId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "Name": "flights-db",
            "CreateTime": 1587072847.0,
            "CreateTableDefaultPermissions": [
                {
```

```
                    "Principal": {
                        "DataLakePrincipalIdentifier": "IAM_ALLOWED_PRINCIPALS"
                    },
                    "Permissions": [
                        "ALL"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "CatalogId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "Name": "legislators",
            "CreateTime": 1601415625.0,
            "CreateTableDefaultPermissions": [
                {
                    "Principal": {
                        "DataLakePrincipalIdentifier": "IAM_ALLOWED_PRINCIPALS"
                    },
                    "Permissions": [
                        "ALL"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "CatalogId": "111122223333"
        },
        {
            "Name": "tempdb",
            "CreateTime": 1601498566.0,
            "CreateTableDefaultPermissions": [
                {
                    "Principal": {
                        "DataLakePrincipalIdentifier": "IAM_ALLOWED_PRINCIPALS"
                    },
                    "Permissions": [
                        "ALL"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "CatalogId": "111122223333"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Defining a Database in Your Data Catalog in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDatabases in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getDatabases = () => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetDatabasesCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetDatabases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `GetJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about a job

The following `get-job` example retrieves information about a job.

```
aws glue get-job \
    --job-name my-testing-job
```

Output:

```
{
    "Job": {
        "Name": "my-testing-job",
        "Role": "Glue_DefaultRole",
        "CreatedOn": 1602805698.167,
        "LastModifiedOn": 1602805698.167,
        "ExecutionProperty": {
            "MaxConcurrentRuns": 1
        },
        "Command": {
            "Name": "gluestreaming",
            "ScriptLocation": "s3://janetst-bucket-01/Scripts/test_script.scala",
            "PythonVersion": "2"
        },
        "DefaultArguments": {
            "--class": "GlueApp",
            "--job-language": "scala"
        },
        "MaxRetries": 0,
        "AllocatedCapacity": 10,
        "MaxCapacity": 10.0,
        "GlueVersion": "1.0"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Jobs in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getJob = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetJobCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `GetJobRun` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetJobRun`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="jobRunId">The Id of the job run.</param>
    /// <returns>A JobRun object with information about the job run.</returns>
    public async Task<JobRun> GetJobRunAsync(string jobName, string jobRunId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetJobRunAsync(new GetJobRunRequest
{ JobName = jobName, RunId = jobRunId });
        return response.JobRun;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
```

```
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
        jobRunRequest.SetJobName(jobName);
        jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunID);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome = client.GetJobRun(
                jobRunRequest);

        if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Displaying the job run JSON description." << std::endl;
            std::cout
                    <<
 jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error get a job run. "
                      << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a job run

The following `get-job-run` example retrieves information about a job run.

```
aws glue get-job-run \
    --job-name "Combine legistators data" \
    --run-id jr_012e176506505074d94d761755e5c62538ee1aad6f17d39f527e9140cf0c9a5e
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "JobRun": {
        "Id":
 "jr_012e176506505074d94d761755e5c62538ee1aad6f17d39f527e9140cf0c9a5e",
        "Attempt": 0,
        "JobName": "Combine legistators data",
        "StartedOn": 1602873931.255,
        "LastModifiedOn": 1602874075.985,
        "CompletedOn": 1602874075.985,
        "JobRunState": "SUCCEEDED",
        "Arguments": {
            "--enable-continuous-cloudwatch-log": "true",
            "--enable-metrics": "",
            "--enable-spark-ui": "true",
            "--job-bookmark-option": "job-bookmark-enable",
            "--spark-event-logs-path": "s3://aws-glue-assets-111122223333-us-
east-1/sparkHistoryLogs/"
        },
        "PredecessorRuns": [],
        "AllocatedCapacity": 10,
        "ExecutionTime": 117,
        "Timeout": 2880,
        "MaxCapacity": 10.0,
        "WorkerType": "G.1X",
        "NumberOfWorkers": 10,
        "LogGroupName": "/aws-glue/jobs",
        "GlueVersion": "2.0"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Job Runs in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getJobRun = (jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    RunId: jobRunId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

        $outputBucketUrl = "s3://$bucketName";
        $runId = $glueService->startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
 $outputBucketUrl)['JobRunId'];

        echo "waiting for job";
        do {
            $jobRun = $glueService->getJobRun($jobName, $runId);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while (!array_intersect([$jobRun['JobRun']['JobRunState']],
 ['SUCCEEDED', 'STOPPED', 'FAILED', 'TIMEOUT']));
        echo "\n";

    public function getJobRun($jobName, $runId, $predecessorsIncluded = false):
 Result
    {
```

```
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'RunId' => $runId,
            'PredecessorsIncluded' => $predecessorsIncluded,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_job_run(self, name, run_id):
        """
        Gets information about a single job run.

        :param name: The name of the job definition for the run.
        :param run_id: The ID of the run.
        :return: Information about the run.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_run(JobName=name, RunId=run_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't get job run %s/%s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                run_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRun"]
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves data for a specific job run.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job run to retrieve data for.
  # @return [Glue::Types::GetJobRunResponse]
  def get_job_run(job_name, run_id)
```

```
    @glue_client.get_job_run(job_name: job_name, run_id: run_id)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let get_job_run = || async {
            Ok::<JobRun, GlueMvpError>(
                glue.get_job_run()
                    .job_name(self.job())
                    .run_id(job_run_id.to_string())
                    .send()
                    .await
                    .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?
                    .job_run()
                    .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Failed to get
job_run".into()))?
                    .to_owned(),
            )
        };

        let mut job_run = get_job_run().await?;
        let mut state =
job_run.job_run_state().unwrap_or(&unknown_state).to_owned();

        while matches!(
            state,
            JobRunState::Starting | JobRunState::Stopping | JobRunState::Running
        ) {
            info!(?state, "Waiting for job to finish");
```

```
            tokio::time::sleep(self.wait_delay).await;

            job_run = get_job_run().await?;
            state = job_run.job_run_state().unwrap_or(&unknown_state).to_owned();
        }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to return job run data for.
    ///   - id: The run ID of the specific job run to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` object describing the state of
    ///   the job run, or `nil` if an error occurs.
    func getJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, id: String)
 async -> GlueClientTypes.JobRun? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRun(
                input: GetJobRunInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    runId: id
                )
            )

            return output.jobRun
```

```
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetJobRuns` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetJobRuns`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about all AWS Glue runs of a specific job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of JobRun objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<JobRun>> GetJobRunsAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var jobRuns = new List<JobRun>();

        var request = new GetJobRunsRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
        };
```

```
        // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us
behind the scenes
        var paginatorForJobRuns =
            _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetJobRuns(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginatorForJobRuns.Responses)
        {
            response.JobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
            {
                jobRuns.Add(jobRun);
            });
        }

        return jobRuns;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsRequest getJobRunsRequest;
        getJobRunsRequest.SetJobName(jobName);

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> allJobRuns;
```

```
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                getJobRunsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsOutcome jobRunsOutcome =
client.GetJobRuns(
                    getJobRunsRequest);

            if (jobRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> &jobRuns =
jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRuns();
                allJobRuns.insert(allJobRuns.end(), jobRuns.begin(),
jobRuns.end());

                nextToken = jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting job runs. "
                          << jobRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about all job runs for a job

The following `get-job-runs` example retrieves information about job runs for a job.

```
aws glue get-job-runs \
    --job-name "my-testing-job"
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobRuns": [
        {
```

```
            "Id":
 "jr_012e176506505074d94d761755e5c62538ee1aad6f17d39f527e9140cf0c9a5e",
            "Attempt": 0,
            "JobName": "my-testing-job",
            "StartedOn": 1602873931.255,
            "LastModifiedOn": 1602874075.985,
            "CompletedOn": 1602874075.985,
            "JobRunState": "SUCCEEDED",
            "Arguments": {
                "--enable-continuous-cloudwatch-log": "true",
                "--enable-metrics": "",
                "--enable-spark-ui": "true",
                "--job-bookmark-option": "job-bookmark-enable",
                "--spark-event-logs-path": "s3://aws-glue-assets-111122223333-us-
east-1/sparkHistoryLogs/"
            },
            "PredecessorRuns": [],
            "AllocatedCapacity": 10,
            "ExecutionTime": 117,
            "Timeout": 2880,
            "MaxCapacity": 10.0,
            "WorkerType": "G.1X",
            "NumberOfWorkers": 10,
            "LogGroupName": "/aws-glue/jobs",
            "GlueVersion": "2.0"
        },
        {
            "Id":
 "jr_03cc19ddab11c4e244d3f735567de74ff93b0b3ef468a713ffe73e53d1aec08f_attempt_2",
            "Attempt": 2,
            "PreviousRunId":
 "jr_03cc19ddab11c4e244d3f735567de74ff93b0b3ef468a713ffe73e53d1aec08f_attempt_1",
            "JobName": "my-testing-job",
            "StartedOn": 1602811168.496,
            "LastModifiedOn": 1602811282.39,
            "CompletedOn": 1602811282.39,
            "JobRunState": "FAILED",
            "ErrorMessage": "An error occurred while calling
 o122.pyWriteDynamicFrame.
                Access Denied (Service: Amazon S3; Status Code: 403; Error Code:
 AccessDenied;
                Request ID: 021AAB703DB20A2D;
                S3 Extended Request ID: teZk24Y09TkXzBvMPG502L5VJBhe9DJuWA9/
TXtuGOqfByajkfL/Tlqt5JBGdEGpigAqzdMDM/U=)",
```

```
            "PredecessorRuns": [],
            "AllocatedCapacity": 10,
            "ExecutionTime": 110,
            "Timeout": 2880,
            "MaxCapacity": 10.0,
            "WorkerType": "G.1X",
            "NumberOfWorkers": 10,
            "LogGroupName": "/aws-glue/jobs",
            "GlueVersion": "2.0"
        },
        {
            "Id":
 "jr_03cc19ddab11c4e244d3f735567de74ff93b0b3ef468a713ffe73e53d1aec08f_attempt_1",
            "Attempt": 1,
            "PreviousRunId":
 "jr_03cc19ddab11c4e244d3f735567de74ff93b0b3ef468a713ffe73e53d1aec08f",
            "JobName": "my-testing-job",
            "StartedOn": 1602811020.518,
            "LastModifiedOn": 1602811138.364,
            "CompletedOn": 1602811138.364,
            "JobRunState": "FAILED",
            "ErrorMessage": "An error occurred while calling
 o122.pyWriteDynamicFrame.
                Access Denied (Service: Amazon S3; Status Code: 403; Error Code:
 AccessDenied;
                Request ID: 2671D37856AE7ABB;
                S3 Extended Request ID: RLJCJw20brV
+PpC6GpORahyF2fp9flB5SSb2bTGPnUSPVizLXRl1PN3QZldb+v1o9qRVktNYbW8=)",
            "PredecessorRuns": [],
            "AllocatedCapacity": 10,
            "ExecutionTime": 113,
            "Timeout": 2880,
            "MaxCapacity": 10.0,
            "WorkerType": "G.1X",
            "NumberOfWorkers": 10,
            "LogGroupName": "/aws-glue/jobs",
            "GlueVersion": "2.0"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Job Runs in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the job runs for a given Glue job and prints the status of the
job runs.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client used to make API calls
     * @param jobName    the name of the Glue job to retrieve the job runs for
     */
    public static void getJobRuns(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            GetJobRunsRequest runsRequest = GetJobRunsRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
                .maxResults(20)
                .build();

            boolean jobDone = false;
            while (!jobDone) {
                GetJobRunsResponse response = glueClient.getJobRuns(runsRequest);
                List<JobRun> jobRuns = response.jobRuns();
                for (JobRun jobRun : jobRuns) {
                    String jobState = jobRun.jobRunState().name();
                    if (jobState.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println(jobName + " has succeeded");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("STOPPED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has stopped");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("FAILED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has failed");
                        jobDone = true;
```

```
                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("TIMEOUT") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has timed out");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else {
                        System.out.println("*** Job run state is " +
jobRun.jobRunState().name());
                        System.out.println("Job run Id is " + jobRun.id());
                        System.out.println("The Glue version is " +
jobRun.glueVersion());
                    }
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getJobRuns = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunsCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

        $jobRuns = $glueService->getJobRuns($jobName);

    public function getJobRuns($jobName, $maxResults = 0, $nextToken = ''):
Result
    {
        $arguments = ['JobName' => $jobName];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRuns($arguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_job_runs(self, job_name):
        """
        Gets information about runs that have been performed for a specific job
        definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to look up.
        :return: The list of job runs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_runs(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job runs for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRuns"]
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves a list of job runs for the specified job.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to retrieve job runs for.
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::JobRun>]
  def get_job_runs(job_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_job_runs(job_name: job_name)
    response.job_runs
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Return a list of the job runs for the specified job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job for which to return its job runs.
    ///   - maxResults: The maximum number of job runs to return (default:
    ///     1000).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` objects describing
    ///   each job run.
    func getJobRuns(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, maxResults:
 Int? = nil) async -> [GlueClientTypes.JobRun] {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRuns(
                input: GetJobRunsInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    maxResults: maxResults
                )
            )

            guard let jobRuns = output.jobRuns else {
                print("*** No job runs found.")
                return []
            }

            return jobRuns
        } catch is EntityNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified job name, \(jobName), doesn't exist.")
            return []
```

```
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error getting job runs:")
            dump(error)
            return []
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetTables` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTables`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of tables for an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Table objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Table>> GetTablesAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var request = new GetTablesRequest { DatabaseName = dbName };
        var tables = new List<Table>();

        // Get a paginator for listing the tables.
```

```
        var tablePaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetTables(request);

        await foreach (var response in tablePaginator.Responses)
        {
            tables.AddRange(response.TableList);
        }

        return tables;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

       Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesRequest request;
       request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
       std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> all_tables;
       Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
       do {
           Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesOutcome outcome =
client.GetTables(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> &tables =
outcome.GetResult().GetTableList();
```

```
                all_tables.insert(all_tables.end(), tables.begin(),
tables.end());
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting the tables. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                             clientConfig);
                return false;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "The database contains " << all_tables.size()
                  << (all_tables.size() == 1 ?
                      " table." : "tables.") << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Here is a list of the tables in the database.";
        for (size_t index = 0; index < all_tables.size(); ++index) {
            std::cout << "    " << index + 1 << ":  " <<
all_tables[index].GetName()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        if (!all_tables.empty()) {
            int tableIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter an index to display the database detail ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(all_tables.size()));
            std::cout << all_tables[tableIndex -
1].Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            tableName = all_tables[tableIndex - 1].GetName();
        }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the definitions of some or all of the tables in the specified database

The following `get-tables` example returns information about the tables in the specified database.

```
aws glue get-tables --database-name 'tempdb'
```

Output:

```
{
    "TableList": [
        {
            "Name": "my-s3-sink",
            "DatabaseName": "tempdb",
            "CreateTime": 1602730539.0,
            "UpdateTime": 1602730539.0,
            "Retention": 0,
            "StorageDescriptor": {
                "Columns": [
                    {
                        "Name": "sensorid",
                        "Type": "int"
                    },
                    {
                        "Name": "currenttemperature",
                        "Type": "int"
                    },
                    {
                        "Name": "status",
                        "Type": "string"
                    }
                ],
                "Location": "s3://janetst-bucket-01/test-s3-output/",
                "Compressed": false,
                "NumberOfBuckets": 0,
                "SerdeInfo": {
                    "SerializationLibrary": "org.openx.data.jsonserde.JsonSerDe"
                },
                "SortColumns": [],
                "StoredAsSubDirectories": false
            },
            "Parameters": {
                "classification": "json"
            },
            "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::007436865787:user/JRSTERN",
```

```
            "IsRegisteredWithLakeFormation": false,
            "CatalogId": "007436865787"
        },
        {
            "Name": "s3-source",
            "DatabaseName": "tempdb",
            "CreateTime": 1602730658.0,
            "UpdateTime": 1602730658.0,
            "Retention": 0,
            "StorageDescriptor": {
                "Columns": [
                    {
                        "Name": "sensorid",
                        "Type": "int"
                    },
                    {
                        "Name": "currenttemperature",
                        "Type": "int"
                    },
                    {
                        "Name": "status",
                        "Type": "string"
                    }
                ],
                "Location": "s3://janetst-bucket-01/",
                "Compressed": false,
                "NumberOfBuckets": 0,
                "SortColumns": [],
                "StoredAsSubDirectories": false
            },
            "Parameters": {
                "classification": "json"
            },
            "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::007436865787:user/JRSTERN",
            "IsRegisteredWithLakeFormation": false,
            "CatalogId": "007436865787"
        },
        {
            "Name": "test-kinesis-input",
            "DatabaseName": "tempdb",
            "CreateTime": 1601507001.0,
            "UpdateTime": 1601507001.0,
            "Retention": 0,
            "StorageDescriptor": {
```

```
                "Columns": [
                    {
                        "Name": "sensorid",
                        "Type": "int"
                    },
                    {
                        "Name": "currenttemperature",
                        "Type": "int"
                    },
                    {
                        "Name": "status",
                        "Type": "string"
                    }
                ],
                "Location": "my-testing-stream",
                "Compressed": false,
                "NumberOfBuckets": 0,
                "SerdeInfo": {
                    "SerializationLibrary": "org.openx.data.jsonserde.JsonSerDe"
                },
                "SortColumns": [],
                "Parameters": {
                    "kinesisUrl": "https://kinesis.us-east-1.amazonaws.com",
                    "streamName": "my-testing-stream",
                    "typeOfData": "kinesis"
                },
                "StoredAsSubDirectories": false
            },
            "Parameters": {
                "classification": "json"
            },
            "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:iam::007436865787:user/JRSTERN",
            "IsRegisteredWithLakeFormation": false,
            "CatalogId": "007436865787"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Defining Tables in the AWS Glue Data Catalog in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the names of the tables in the specified Glue database.
    *
    * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
    * @param dbName     the name of the Glue database to retrieve the table
names from
    * @return the name of the first table retrieved, or an empty string if no
tables were found
    */
   public static String getGlueTables(GlueClient glueClient, String dbName) {
       String myTableName = "";
       try {
           GetTablesRequest tableRequest = GetTablesRequest.builder()
               .databaseName(dbName)
               .build();

           GetTablesResponse response = glueClient.getTables(tableRequest);
           List<Table> tables = response.tableList();
           if (tables.isEmpty()) {
               System.out.println("No tables were returned");
           } else {
               for (Table table : tables) {
                   myTableName = table.name();
                   System.out.println("Table name is: " + myTableName);
               }
           }

       } catch (GlueException e) {
           throw e;
       }
       return myTableName;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getTables = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetTablesCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";
```

```
        $tables = $glueService->getTables($databaseName);

    public function getTables($databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->getTables([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_tables(self, db_name):
        """
        Gets a list of tables in a Data Catalog database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database to query.
        :return: The list of tables in the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_tables(DatabaseName=db_name)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get tables %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["TableList"]
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves a list of tables in the specified database.
  #
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database to retrieve tables from.
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::Table>]
```

```
  def get_tables(db_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_tables(database_name: db_name)
    response.table_list
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get tables #{db_name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let tables = glue
            .get_tables()
            .database_name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let tables = tables.table_list();
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Returns a list of the tables in the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database whose tables are to be
    ///     returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.Table` objects, each
    ///   describing one table in the named database. An empty array indicates
    ///   that there are either no tables in the database, or an error
    ///   occurred before any tables could be found.
    func getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, databaseName: String) async
 -> [GlueClientTypes.Table] {
        var tables: [GlueClientTypes.Table] = []
        var nextToken: String?

        repeat {
            do {
                let output = try await glueClient.getTables(
                    input: GetTablesInput(
                        databaseName: databaseName,
                        nextToken: nextToken
                    )
                )

                guard let tableList = output.tableList else {
                    return tables
                }
```

```
                tables = tables + tableList
                nextToken = output.nextToken
            } catch {
                return tables
            }
        } while nextToken != nil

        return tables
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListJobs` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListJobs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List AWS Glue jobs using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of AWS Glue job names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListJobsAsync()
    {
        var jobNames = new List<string>();
```

```
        var listJobsPaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.ListJobs(new
ListJobsRequest { MaxResults = 10 });
        await foreach (var response in listJobsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
        }

        return jobNames;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken;
        std::vector<Aws::String> allJobNames;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome = client.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);
```

```
            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
 listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                allJobNames.insert(allJobNames.end(), jobNames.begin(),
 jobNames.end());
                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const listJobs = () => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new ListJobsCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $jobs = $glueService->listJobs();
        echo "Current jobs:\n";
        foreach ($jobs['JobNames'] as $jobsName) {
            echo "{$jobsName}\n";
        }

    public function listJobs($maxResults = null, $nextToken = null, $tags = []):
Result
    {
        $arguments = [];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        if (!empty($tags)) {
            $arguments['Tags'] = $tags;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->listJobs($arguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the names of job definitions in your account.

        :return: The list of job definition names.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.list_jobs()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list jobs. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobNames"]
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves a list of jobs in AWS Glue.
  #
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::ListJobsResponse]
  def list_jobs
    @glue_client.list_jobs
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not list jobs: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let mut list_jobs = glue.list_jobs().into_paginator().send();
        while let Some(list_jobs_output) = list_jobs.next().await {
            match list_jobs_output {
                Ok(list_jobs) => {
                    let names = list_jobs.job_names();
                    info!(?names, "Found these jobs")
                }
                Err(err) => return Err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk(err)),
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Return a list of the AWS Glue jobs listed on the user's account.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
```

```
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - maxJobs: The maximum number of jobs to return (default: 100).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings listing the names of all available AWS
    ///   Glue jobs.
    func listJobs(glueClient: GlueClient, maxJobs: Int = 100) async -> [String] {
        var jobList: [String] = []
        var nextToken: String?

        repeat {
            do {
                let output = try await glueClient.listJobs(
                    input: ListJobsInput(
                        maxResults: maxJobs,
                        nextToken: nextToken
                    )
                )

                guard let jobs = output.jobNames else {
                    return jobList
                }

                jobList = jobList + jobs
                nextToken = output.nextToken
            } catch {
                return jobList
            }
        } while (nextToken != nil)

        return jobList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `StartCrawler` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartCrawler`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Start an AWS Glue crawler.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> StartCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
{
    var crawlerRequest = new StartCrawlerRequest
    {
        Name = crawlerName,
    };

    var response = await _amazonGlue.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);

    return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.StartCrawler(request);


        if (outcome.IsSuccess() || (Aws::Glue::GlueErrors::CRAWLER_RUNNING ==
                                    outcome.GetError().GetErrorType())) {
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Crawler was already started." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully started crawler." << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << "This may take a while to run." << std::endl;

            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::NOT_SET;
            int iterations = 0;
            while (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY != crawlerState) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                ++iterations;
                if ((iterations % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                    std::cout << "Crawler status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                                        crawlerState)
                                << ". After " << iterations
                                << " seconds elapsed."
                                << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest getCrawlerRequest;
                getCrawlerRequest.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);
```

```
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome getCrawlerOutcome =
client.GetCrawler(
                        getCrawlerRequest);

                if (getCrawlerOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    crawlerState =
getCrawlerOutcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting crawler.  "
                              << getCrawlerOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    break;
                }
            }

            if (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY == crawlerState) {
                std::cout << "Crawler finished running after " << iterations
                          << " seconds."
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start a crawler

The following `start-crawler` example starts a crawler.

```
aws glue start-crawler --name my-crawler
```

Output:

```
None
```

For more information, see Defining Crawlers in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Starts a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client to use for the crawler operation
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to start
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the crawler
     */
    public static void startSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
        try {
            StartCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = StartCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.startCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully started!");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const startCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun startSpecificCrawler(crawlerName: String?) {
```

```
    val request =
        StartCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.startCrawler(request)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully started.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $crawlerName = "example-crawler-test-" . $uniqid;

        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

        $glueService->startCrawler($crawlerName);

    public function startCrawler($crawlerName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def start_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Starts a crawler. The crawler crawls its configured target and creates
        metadata that describes the data it finds in the target data source.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to start.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.start_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Starts a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to start.
  # @return [void]
  def start_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.start_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let start_crawler =
glue.start_crawler().name(self.crawler()).send().await;

        match start_crawler {
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
            Err(err) => {
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::CrawlerRunningException(_) => Ok(()),
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
        }?;
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue
```

```
    /// Start running an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use when starting the crawler.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to start running.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is started successfully, otherwise
`false`.
    func startCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.startCrawler(
                input: StartCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred starting the crawler.")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `StartJobRun` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartJobRun`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the job run Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartJobRunAsync(
        string jobName,
        string inputDatabase,
        string inputTable,
        string bucketName)
    {
        var request = new StartJobRunRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
            Arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {"--input_database", inputDatabase},
                {"--input_table", inputTable},
                {"--output_bucket_url", $"s3://{bucketName}/"}
            }
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartJobRunAsync(request);
        return response.JobRunId;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> arguments;
        arguments["--input_database"] = CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME;
        arguments["--input_table"] = tableName;
        arguments["--output_bucket_url"] = Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName +
"/";
        request.SetArguments(arguments);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunOutcome outcome =
client.StartJobRun(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully started the job." << std::endl;

            Aws::String jobRunId = outcome.GetResult().GetJobRunId();

            int iterator = 0;
            bool done = false;
            while (!done) {
                ++iterator;
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
                jobRunRequest.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);
                jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunId);

                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome =
client.GetJobRun(
                        jobRunRequest);

                if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    const Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun &jobRun =
jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun();
                    Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState jobRunState =
jobRun.GetJobRunState();
```

```
                    if ((jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::STOPPED)
||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::FAILED) ||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::TIMEOUT))
{
                        std::cerr << "Error running job. "
                                  << jobRun.GetErrorMessage()
                                  << std::endl;
                        deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME,
JOB_NAME,
                                     bucketName,
                                     clientConfig);
                        return false;
                    }
                    else if (jobRunState ==
                             Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::SUCCEEDED) {
                        std::cout << "Job run succeeded after  " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                        done = true;
                    }
                    else if ((iterator % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10
seconds.
                        std::cout << "Job run status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunStateMapper::GetNameForJobRunState(
                                          jobRunState) <<
                                  ". " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error retrieving job run state. "
                              << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                              << std::endl;
                    deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
                                 bucketName, clientConfig);
                    return false;
                }
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
 bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start running a job

The following `start-job-run` example starts a job.

```
aws glue start-job-run \
    --job-name my-job
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobRunId":
 "jr_22208b1f44eb5376a60569d4b21dd20fcb8621e1a366b4e7b2494af764b82ded"
}
```

For more information, see Authoring Jobs in the *AWS Glue Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Starts a job run in AWS Glue.
    *
    * @param glueClient    the AWS Glue client to use for the job run
    * @param jobName       the name of the Glue job to run
    * @param inputDatabase the name of the input database
    * @param inputTable    the name of the input table
    * @param outBucket     the URL of the output S3 bucket
    * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the job run
    */
   public static void startJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String
inputDatabase, String inputTable,
                               String outBucket) {
       try {
           Map<String, String> myMap = new HashMap<>();
           myMap.put("--input_database", inputDatabase);
           myMap.put("--input_table", inputTable);
           myMap.put("--output_bucket_url", outBucket);

           StartJobRunRequest runRequest = StartJobRunRequest.builder()
               .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
               .numberOfWorkers(10)
               .arguments(myMap)
               .jobName(jobName)
               .build();

           StartJobRunResponse response = glueClient.startJobRun(runRequest);
           System.out.println("The request Id of the job is " +
response.responseMetadata().requestId());

       } catch (GlueException e) {
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const startJobRun = (jobName, dbName, tableName, bucketName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    Arguments: {
      "--input_database": dbName,
      "--input_table": tableName,
      "--output_bucket_url": `s3://${bucketName}/`,
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;
```

```
        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

        $tables = $glueService->getTables($databaseName);

        $outputBucketUrl = "s3://$bucketName";
        $runId = $glueService->startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
 $outputBucketUrl)['JobRunId'];

    public function startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
 $outputBucketUrl): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'Arguments' => [
                'input_database' => $databaseName,
                'input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
                'output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
                '--input_database' => $databaseName,
                '--input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
                '--output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
```

```
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def start_job_run(self, name, input_database, input_table,
output_bucket_name):
        """
        Starts a job run. A job run extracts data from the source, transforms it,
        and loads it to the output bucket.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param input_database: The name of the metadata database that contains
tables
                               that describe the source data. This is typically
created
                               by a crawler.
        :param input_table: The name of the table in the metadata database that
                            describes the source data.
        :param output_bucket_name: The S3 bucket where the output is written.
        :return: The ID of the job run.
        """
        try:
            # The custom Arguments that are passed to this function are used by
the
            # Python ETL script to determine the location of input and output
data.
            response = self.glue_client.start_job_run(
                JobName=name,
                Arguments={
                    "--input_database": input_database,
                    "--input_table": input_table,
                    "--output_bucket_url": f"s3://{output_bucket_name}/",
                },
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start job run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return response["JobRunId"]
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing
 a simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods
 for interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Starts a job run for the specified job.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job to start the run for.
  # @param input_database [String] The name of the input database for the job.
  # @param input_table [String] The name of the input table for the job.
  # @param output_bucket_name [String] The name of the output S3 bucket for the
 job.
  # @return [String] The ID of the started job run.
  def start_job_run(name, input_database, input_table, output_bucket_name)
    response = @glue_client.start_job_run(
      job_name: name,
      arguments: {
        '--input_database': input_database,
```

```
        '--input_table': input_table,
        '--output_bucket_url': "s3://#{output_bucket_name}/"
      }
    )
    response.job_run_id
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start job run #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let job_run_output = glue
            .start_job_run()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .arguments("--input_database", self.database())
            .arguments(
                "--input_table",
                self.tables
                    .first()
                    .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing crawler
table".into()))?
                    .name(),
            )
            .arguments("--output_bucket_url", self.bucket())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job = job_run_output
            .job_run_id()
```

```
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing run id from just
started job".into()))?
            .to_string();
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to run.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the AWS Glue database to run the job
against.
    ///   - tableName: The name of the table in the database to run the job
against.
    ///   - outputURL: The AWS S3 URI of the bucket location into which to
    ///     write the resulting output.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job run is started successfully, otherwise
`false`.
    func startJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, databaseName:
String,
                     tableName: String, outputURL: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.startJobRun(
                input: StartJobRunInput(
                    arguments: [
                        "--input_database": databaseName,
```

```
                        "--input_table": tableName,
                        "--output_bucket_url": outputURL
                    ],
                    jobName: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )

            guard let id = output.jobRunId else {
                return nil
            }

            return id
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Code examples for AWS Health using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Health with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Health Developer Guide** – More information about AWS Health.
- **AWS Health API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Health actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Health using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS Health using AWS SDKs
    - Use DescribeEvents with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS Health using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Health with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS Health using AWS SDKs
  - Use DescribeEvents with a CLI

Actions for AWS Health using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Health actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Health API Reference.

Examples

- Use DescribeEvents with a CLI

Use `DescribeEvents` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEvents`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list AWS Health events

The following `describe-events` example lists recent AWS Health events.

```
aws health describe-events \
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "events": [
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:us-west-1::event/ECS/
AWS_ECS_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_ECS_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_KWQPY_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "ECS",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_ECS_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "us-west-1",
            "startTime": 1589077890.53,
            "endTime": 1589086345.597,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1589086345.905,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:global::event/BILLING/
AWS_BILLING_NOTIFICATION/AWS_BILLING_NOTIFICATION_6ce1d874-e995-40e2-99cd-
EXAMPLE1118b",
            "service": "BILLING",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_BILLING_NOTIFICATION",
            "eventTypeCategory": "accountNotification",
            "region": "global",
            "startTime": 1588356000.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1588356524.358,
            "statusCode": "open",
            "eventScopeCode": "ACCOUNT_SPECIFIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:us-west-2::event/
CLOUDFORMATION/AWS_CLOUDFORMATION_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/
AWS_CLOUDFORMATION_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_OHTWY_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "CLOUDFORMATION",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_CLOUDFORMATION_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "us-west-2",
            "startTime": 1588279630.761,
            "endTime": 1588284650.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1588284691.941,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
```

```
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:ap-northeast-1::event/LAMBDA/
AWS_LAMBDA_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_LAMBDA_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_JZDND_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "LAMBDA",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_LAMBDA_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "ap-northeast-1",
            "startTime": 1587379534.08,
            "endTime": 1587391771.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1587395689.316,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:us-east-1::event/EC2/
AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_COBXJ_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "EC2",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "us-east-1",
            "startTime": 1586473044.284,
            "endTime": 1586479706.091,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1586479706.153,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:global::event/SECURITY/
AWS_SECURITY_NOTIFICATION/AWS_SECURITY_NOTIFICATION_42007387-8129-42da-8c88-
EXAMPLE11139",
            "service": "SECURITY",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_SECURITY_NOTIFICATION",
            "eventTypeCategory": "accountNotification",
            "region": "global",
            "startTime": 1585674000.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1585674004.132,
            "statusCode": "open",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:global::event/CLOUDFRONT/
AWS_CLOUDFRONT_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/
AWS_CLOUDFRONT_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_FRQXG_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "CLOUDFRONT",
```

```
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_CLOUDFRONT_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "global",
            "startTime": 1585610898.589,
            "endTime": 1585617671.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1585620638.869,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:us-east-1::event/SES/
AWS_SES_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_SES_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_URNDF_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "SES",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_SES_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "us-east-1",
            "startTime": 1585342008.46,
            "endTime": 1585344017.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1585344355.989,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:global::event/IAM/
AWS_IAM_OPERATIONAL_NOTIFICATION/
AWS_IAM_OPERATIONAL_NOTIFICATION_b6771c34-6ecd-4aea-9d3e-EXAMPLE1117e",
            "service": "IAM",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_IAM_OPERATIONAL_NOTIFICATION",
            "eventTypeCategory": "accountNotification",
            "region": "global",
            "startTime": 1584978300.0,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1584978553.572,
            "statusCode": "open",
            "eventScopeCode": "ACCOUNT_SPECIFIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:ap-southeast-2::event/EC2/
AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_HNGHE_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "EC2",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "ap-southeast-2",
            "startTime": 1583881487.483,
            "endTime": 1583885056.785,
```

```
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1583885057.052,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting started with the AWS Personal Health Dashboard in the *AWS Health User Guide*.

Example 2: To list AWS Health events by service and event status code

The following `describe-events` example lists AWS Health events for Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) where the event status is closed.

```
aws health describe-events \
    --filter "services=EC2,eventStatusCodes=closed"
```

Output:

```
{
    "events": [
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:us-east-1::event/EC2/
AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_VKTXI_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "EC2",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "us-east-1",
            "startTime": 1587462325.096,
            "endTime": 1587464204.774,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1587464204.865,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:us-east-1::event/EC2/
AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_COBXJ_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "EC2",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "us-east-1",
```

```
            "startTime": 1586473044.284,
            "endTime": 1586479706.091,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1586479706.153,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        },
        {
            "arn": "arn:aws:health:ap-southeast-2::event/EC2/
AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE/AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE_HNGHE_EXAMPLE111",
            "service": "EC2",
            "eventTypeCode": "AWS_EC2_OPERATIONAL_ISSUE",
            "eventTypeCategory": "issue",
            "region": "ap-southeast-2",
            "startTime": 1583881487.483,
            "endTime": 1583885056.785,
            "lastUpdatedTime": 1583885057.052,
            "statusCode": "closed",
            "eventScopeCode": "PUBLIC"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting started with the AWS Personal Health Dashboard in the *AWS Health User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeEvents in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns events from AWS Personal Health Dashboard. The user adds the -Region parameter to see events available to the service in the US East (N. Virginia) Region, but the -Filter_Region parameter filters for events that are logged in the EU (London) and US West (Oregon) Regions (eu-west-2 and us-west-2). The -Filter_StartTime parameter filters for a range of times that events can start, while the -Filter_EndTime parameter filters for a range of times that events can end. The result is a scheduled maintenance event for RDS that starts within the specified -Filter_StartTime range, and ends within the scheduled -Filter_EndTime range.

```
Get-HLTHEvent -Region us-east-1 -Filter_Region "eu-west-2","us-west-2" -
Filter_StartTime @{from="3/14/2019 6:30:00AM";to="3/15/2019 5:00:00PM"} -
Filter_EndTime @{from="3/21/2019 7:00:00AM";to="3/21/2019 5:00:00PM"}
```

Output:

```
Arn               : arn:aws:health:us-west-2::event/RDS/
AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED/
AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED_USW2_20190314_20190321
AvailabilityZone  :
EndTime           : 3/21/2019 2:00:00 PM
EventTypeCategory : scheduledChange
EventTypeCode     : AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED
LastUpdatedTime   : 2/28/2019 2:26:07 PM
Region            : us-west-2
Service           : RDS
StartTime         : 3/14/2019 2:00:00 PM
StatusCode        : open
```

- For API details, see DescribeEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns events from AWS Personal Health Dashboard. The user adds the -Region parameter to see events available to the service in the US East (N. Virginia) Region, but the -Filter_Region parameter filters for events that are logged in the EU (London) and US West (Oregon) Regions (eu-west-2 and us-west-2). The -Filter_StartTime parameter filters for a range of times that events can start, while the -Filter_EndTime parameter filters for a range of times that events can end. The result is a scheduled maintenance event for RDS that starts within the specified -Filter_StartTime range, and ends within the scheduled -Filter_EndTime range.

```
Get-HLTHEvent -Region us-east-1 -Filter_Region "eu-west-2","us-west-2" -
Filter_StartTime @{from="3/14/2019 6:30:00AM";to="3/15/2019 5:00:00PM"} -
Filter_EndTime @{from="3/21/2019 7:00:00AM";to="3/21/2019 5:00:00PM"}
```

Output:

```
Arn               : arn:aws:health:us-west-2::event/RDS/
AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED/
AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED_USW2_20190314_20190321
```

```
AvailabilityZone  :
EndTime           : 3/21/2019 2:00:00 PM
EventTypeCategory : scheduledChange
EventTypeCode     : AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED
LastUpdatedTime   : 2/28/2019 2:26:07 PM
Region            : us-west-2
Service           : RDS
StartTime         : 3/14/2019 2:00:00 PM
StatusCode        : open
```

- For API details, see DescribeEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS HealthImaging with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **HealthImaging Developer Guide** – More information about HealthImaging.
- **HealthImaging API Reference** – Details about all available HealthImaging actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello HealthImaging

The following code examples show how to get started using HealthImaging.

C++

SDK for C++

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS medical-imaging)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_health-imaging")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executable location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()
```

```
add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_health_imaging.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_health_imaging.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/medical-imaging/MedicalImagingClient.h>
#include <aws/medical-imaging/model/ListDatastoresRequest.h>

#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello HealthImaging" starter application which initializes an AWS
 HealthImaging (HealthImaging) client
 *  and lists the HealthImaging data stores in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_health-imaging'
 *
 */
#include <aws/core/auth/AWSCredentialsProviderChain.h>
#include <aws/core/platform/Environment.h>

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    (void) argc;
    (void) argv;
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //   Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;

    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
```

```
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ListDatastoresRequest listDatastoresRequest;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DatastoreSummary>
allDataStoreSummaries;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listDatastoresRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ListDatastoresOutcome
listDatastoresOutcome =
                    medicalImagingClient.ListDatastores(listDatastoresRequest);
            if (listDatastoresOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DatastoreSummary>
&dataStoreSummaries =

listDatastoresOutcome.GetResult().GetDatastoreSummaries();
                allDataStoreSummaries.insert(allDataStoreSummaries.cend(),
                                             dataStoreSummaries.cbegin(),
                                             dataStoreSummaries.cend());
                nextToken = listDatastoresOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "ListDatastores error: "
                          << listDatastoresOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << allDataStoreSummaries.size() << " HealthImaging data "
                  << ((allDataStoreSummaries.size() == 1) ?
                      "store was retrieved." : "stores were retrieved.") <<
std::endl;

        for (auto const &dataStoreSummary: allDataStoreSummaries) {
            std::cout << "  Datastore: " << dataStoreSummary.GetDatastoreName()
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  Datastore ID: " << dataStoreSummary.GetDatastoreId()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import {
  ListDatastoresCommand,
  MedicalImagingClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

// When no region or credentials are provided, the SDK will use the
// region and credentials from the local AWS config.
const client = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const helloMedicalImaging = async () => {
  const command = new ListDatastoresCommand({});

  const { datastoreSummaries } = await client.send(command);
  console.log("Datastores: ");
  console.log(datastoreSummaries.map((item) => item.datastoreName).join("\n"));
  return datastoreSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def hello_medical_imaging(medical_imaging_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS HealthImaging
    client and list the data stores in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 AWS HealthImaging Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon Health Imaging! Let's list some of your data stores:\n")
    try:
        paginator = medical_imaging_client.get_paginator("list_datastores")
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
        datastore_summaries = []
        for page in page_iterator:
            datastore_summaries.extend(page["datastoreSummaries"])
        print("\tData Stores:")
        for ds in datastore_summaries:
            print(f"\t\tDatastore: {ds['datastoreName']} ID {ds['datastoreId']}")
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why: %s: %s",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_medical_imaging(boto3.client("medical-imaging"))
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code examples

- Basic examples for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs
  - Hello HealthImaging
  - Actions for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs
    - Use CopyImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetDICOMImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetImageFrame with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetImageSetMetadata with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListDICOMImportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListDatastores with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListImageSetVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTagsForResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SearchImageSets with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartDICOMImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UntagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateImageSetMetadata with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs

  - Get started with HealthImaging image sets and image frames using an AWS SDK

- Tagging a HealthImaging data store using an AWS SDK
- Tagging a HealthImaging image set using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS HealthImaging with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello HealthImaging
- Actions for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs
  - Use CopyImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetDICOMImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetImageFrame with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetImageSetMetadata with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListDICOMImportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListDatastores with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListImageSetVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTagsForResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SearchImageSets with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartDICOMImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UntagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateImageSetMetadata with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello HealthImaging

The following code examples show how to get started using HealthImaging.

C++

SDK for C++

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS medical-imaging)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_health-imaging")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executable location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()
```

```
add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_health_imaging.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_health_imaging.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/medical-imaging/MedicalImagingClient.h>
#include <aws/medical-imaging/model/ListDatastoresRequest.h>

#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello HealthImaging" starter application which initializes an AWS
 HealthImaging (HealthImaging) client
 *  and lists the HealthImaging data stores in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_health-imaging'
 *
 */
#include <aws/core/auth/AWSCredentialsProviderChain.h>
#include <aws/core/platform/Environment.h>

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    (void) argc;
    (void) argv;
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //   Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;

    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
```

```
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ListDatastoresRequest listDatastoresRequest;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DatastoreSummary>
allDataStoreSummaries;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listDatastoresRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ListDatastoresOutcome
listDatastoresOutcome =
                    medicalImagingClient.ListDatastores(listDatastoresRequest);
            if (listDatastoresOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DatastoreSummary>
&dataStoreSummaries =

listDatastoresOutcome.GetResult().GetDatastoreSummaries();
                allDataStoreSummaries.insert(allDataStoreSummaries.cend(),
                                             dataStoreSummaries.cbegin(),
                                             dataStoreSummaries.cend());
                nextToken = listDatastoresOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "ListDatastores error: "
                          << listDatastoresOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << allDataStoreSummaries.size() << " HealthImaging data "
                  << ((allDataStoreSummaries.size() == 1) ?
                      "store was retrieved." : "stores were retrieved.") <<
std::endl;

        for (auto const &dataStoreSummary: allDataStoreSummaries) {
            std::cout << "  Datastore: " << dataStoreSummary.GetDatastoreName()
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  Datastore ID: " << dataStoreSummary.GetDatastoreId()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import {
  ListDatastoresCommand,
  MedicalImagingClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

// When no region or credentials are provided, the SDK will use the
// region and credentials from the local AWS config.
const client = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const helloMedicalImaging = async () => {
  const command = new ListDatastoresCommand({});

  const { datastoreSummaries } = await client.send(command);
  console.log("Datastores: ");
  console.log(datastoreSummaries.map((item) => item.datastoreName).join("\n"));
  return datastoreSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def hello_medical_imaging(medical_imaging_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS HealthImaging
    client and list the data stores in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 AWS HealthImaging Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon Health Imaging! Let's list some of your data stores:\n")
    try:
        paginator = medical_imaging_client.get_paginator("list_datastores")
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
        datastore_summaries = []
        for page in page_iterator:
            datastore_summaries.extend(page["datastoreSummaries"])
        print("\tData Stores:")
        for ds in datastore_summaries:
            print(f"\t\tDatastore: {ds['datastoreName']} ID {ds['datastoreId']}")
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why: %s: %s",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_medical_imaging(boto3.client("medical-imaging"))
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Actions for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual HealthImaging actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the HealthImaging API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS HealthImaging API Reference.

Examples

- Use CopyImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetDICOMImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetImageFrame with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetImageSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetImageSetMetadata with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDICOMImportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDatastores with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListImageSetVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use SearchImageSets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartDICOMImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UntagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateImageSetMetadata with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CopyImageSet` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CopyImageSet`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To copy an image set without a destination.

The following `copy-image-set` example makes a duplicate copy of an image set without a destination.

```
aws medical-imaging copy-image-set \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --source-image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --copy-image-set-information '{"sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": "1" } }'
```

Output:

```
{
    "destinationImageSetProperties": {
        "latestVersionId": "2",
        "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPYING",
        "updatedAt": 1680042357.432,
        "imageSetId": "b9a06fef182a5f992842f77f8e0868e5",
        "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
        "createdAt": 1680042357.432
    },
    "sourceImageSetProperties": {
        "latestVersionId": "1",
        "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPYING_WITH_READ_ONLY_ACCESS",
        "updatedAt": 1680042357.432,
        "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
```

```
        "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
        "createdAt": 1680027126.436
    },
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 2: To copy an image set with a destination.

The following `copy-image-set` example makes a duplicate copy of an image set with a destination.

```
aws medical-imaging copy-image-set \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --source-image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --copy-image-set-information '{"sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": "1" },
 "destinationImageSet": { "imageSetId": "b9a06fef182a5f992842f77f8e0868e5",
 "latestVersionId": "1"} }'
```

Output:

```
{
    "destinationImageSetProperties": {
        "latestVersionId": "2",
        "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPYING",
        "updatedAt": 1680042505.135,
        "imageSetId": "b9a06fef182a5f992842f77f8e0868e5",
        "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
        "createdAt": 1680042357.432
    },
    "sourceImageSetProperties": {
        "latestVersionId": "1",
        "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPYING_WITH_READ_ONLY_ACCESS",
        "updatedAt": 1680042505.135,
        "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
        "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
        "createdAt": 1680027126.436
    },
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 3: To copy a subset of instances from a source image set to a destination image set.

The following `copy-image-set` example copies one DICOM instance from the source image set to the destination image set. The force parameter is provided to override inconsistencies in the Patient, Study, and Series level attributes.

```
aws medical-imaging copy-image-set \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --source-image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --copy-image-set-information '{"sourceImageSet":
 {"latestVersionId": "1","DICOMCopies": {"copiableAttributes":
 "{\"SchemaVersion\":\"1.1\",\"Study\":{\"Series\":
{\"1.3.6.1.4.1.5962.99.1.3673257865.2104868982.1369432891697.3666.0\":
{\"Instances\":
{\"1.3.6.1.4.1.5962.99.1.3673257865.2104868982.1369432891697.3669.0\":
{}}}}}}"}},"destinationImageSet": {"imageSetId":
 "b9eb50d8ee682eb9fcf4acbf92f62bb7","latestVersionId": "1"}}' \
    --force
```

Output:

```
{
    "destinationImageSetProperties": {
        "latestVersionId": "2",
        "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPYING",
        "updatedAt": 1680042505.135,
        "imageSetId": "b9eb50d8ee682eb9fcf4acbf92f62bb7",
        "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
        "createdAt": 1680042357.432
    },
    "sourceImageSetProperties": {
        "latestVersionId": "1",
        "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPYING_WITH_READ_ONLY_ACCESS",
        "updatedAt": 1680042505.135,
        "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
        "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
        "createdAt": 1680027126.436
    },
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

For more information, see Copying an image set in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   /**
    * Copy an AWS HealthImaging image set.
    *
    * @param medicalImagingClient  - The AWS HealthImaging client object.
    * @param datastoreId           - The datastore ID.
    * @param imageSetId            - The image set ID.
    * @param latestVersionId       - The version ID.
    * @param destinationImageSetId - The optional destination image set ID,
ignored if null.
    * @param destinationVersionId  - The optional destination version ID,
ignored if null.
    * @param force                 - The force flag.
    * @param subsets               - The optional subsets to copy, ignored if
null.
    * @return                      - The image set ID of the copy.
    * @throws MedicalImagingException - Base exception for all service
exceptions thrown by AWS HealthImaging.
    */
   public static String copyMedicalImageSet(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
                                            String datastoreId,
                                            String imageSetId,
                                            String latestVersionId,
                                            String destinationImageSetId,
                                            String destinationVersionId,
                                            boolean force,
                                            Vector<String> subsets) {

       try {
           CopySourceImageSetInformation.Builder copySourceImageSetInformation =
CopySourceImageSetInformation.builder()
                   .latestVersionId(latestVersionId);

           // Optionally copy a subset of image instances.
           if (subsets != null) {
               String subsetInstanceToCopy =
getCopiableAttributesJSON(imageSetId, subsets);

copySourceImageSetInformation.dicomCopies(MetadataCopies.builder()
```

```
                        .copiableAttributes(subsetInstanceToCopy)
                        .build());
            }

            CopyImageSetInformation.Builder copyImageSetBuilder =
CopyImageSetInformation.builder()
                    .sourceImageSet(copySourceImageSetInformation.build());

            // Optionally designate a destination image set.
            if (destinationImageSetId != null) {
                copyImageSetBuilder =
copyImageSetBuilder.destinationImageSet(CopyDestinationImageSet.builder()
                        .imageSetId(destinationImageSetId)
                        .latestVersionId(destinationVersionId)
                        .build());
            }

            CopyImageSetRequest copyImageSetRequest =
CopyImageSetRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .sourceImageSetId(imageSetId)
                    .copyImageSetInformation(copyImageSetBuilder.build())
                    .force(force)
                    .build();

            CopyImageSetResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.copyImageSet(copyImageSetRequest);

            return response.destinationImageSetProperties().imageSetId();
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Utility function to create copiable attributes.

```
    /**
     * Create a JSON string of copiable image instances.
     *
     * @param imageSetId - The image set ID.
```

```
     * @param subsets    - The subsets to copy.
     * @return A JSON string of copiable image instances.
     */
    private static String getCopiableAttributesJSON(String imageSetId,
 Vector<String> subsets) {
        StringBuilder subsetInstanceToCopy = new StringBuilder(
                """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "Series": {
                                "
                                 """
        );

        subsetInstanceToCopy.append(imageSetId);

        subsetInstanceToCopy.append(
                """
                                ": {
                                "Instances": {
                        """
        );

        for (String subset : subsets) {
            subsetInstanceToCopy.append('"' + subset + "\": {},");
        }
        subsetInstanceToCopy.deleteCharAt(subsetInstanceToCopy.length() - 1);
        subsetInstanceToCopy.append("""
                         }
                       }
                    }
                  }
                }
                """);
        return subsetInstanceToCopy.toString();
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Utility function to copy an image set.

```
import { CopyImageSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The source image set ID.
 * @param {string} sourceVersionId - The source version ID.
 * @param {string} destinationImageSetId - The optional ID of the destination
 image set.
 * @param {string} destinationVersionId - The optional version ID of the
 destination image set.
 * @param {boolean} force - Force the copy action.
 * @param {[string]} copySubsets - A subset of instance IDs to copy.
 */
export const copyImageSet = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxx",
  sourceVersionId = "1",
  destinationImageSetId = "",
  destinationVersionId = "",
  force = false,
  copySubsets = [],
) => {
  try {
    const params = {
      datastoreId: datastoreId,
      sourceImageSetId: imageSetId,
      copyImageSetInformation: {
        sourceImageSet: { latestVersionId: sourceVersionId },
      },
      force: force,
```

```
    };
    if (destinationImageSetId !== "" && destinationVersionId !== "") {
      params.copyImageSetInformation.destinationImageSet = {
        imageSetId: destinationImageSetId,
        latestVersionId: destinationVersionId,
      };
    }

    if (copySubsets.length > 0) {
      let copySubsetsJson;
      copySubsetsJson = {
        SchemaVersion: 1.1,
        Study: {
          Series: {
            imageSetId: {
              Instances: {},
            },
          },
        },
      };

      for (let i = 0; i < copySubsets.length; i++) {
        copySubsetsJson.Study.Series.imageSetId.Instances[copySubsets[i]] = {};
      }

      params.copyImageSetInformation.dicomCopies = copySubsetsJson;
    }

    const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
      new CopyImageSetCommand(params),
    );
    console.log(response);
    // {
    //     '$metadata': {
    //         httpStatusCode: 200,
    //         requestId: 'd9b219ce-cc48-4a44-a5b2-c5c3068f1ee8',
    //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
    //         cfId: undefined,
    //         attempts: 1,
    //         totalRetryDelay: 0
    //      },
    //       datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //       destinationImageSetProperties: {
    //             createdAt: 2023-09-27T19:46:21.824Z,
```

```
    //             imageSetArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:xxxxxxxxxxx:datastore/xxxxxxxxxxxxx/imageset/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
    //             imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'COPYING',
    //             latestVersionId: '1',
    //             updatedAt: 2023-09-27T19:46:21.824Z
    //       },
    //       sourceImageSetProperties: {
    //             createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
    //             imageSetArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:xxxxxxxxxxx:datastore/xxxxxxxxxxxxx/imageset/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
    //             imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'COPYING_WITH_READ_ONLY_ACCESS',
    //             latestVersionId: '4',
    //             updatedAt: 2023-09-27T19:46:21.824Z
    //      }
    // }
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

Copy an image set without a destination.

```
  await copyImageSet(
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
  );
```

Copy an image set with a destination.

```
  await copyImageSet(
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
```

```
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
    false,
  );
```

Copy a subset of an image set with a destination and force the copy.

```
  await copyImageSet(
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
    true,
    ["12345678901234567890123456789012", "11223344556677889900112233445566"],
  );
```

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Utility function to copy an image set.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def copy_image_set(
```

```
        self,
        datastore_id,
        image_set_id,
        version_id,
        destination_image_set_id=None,
        destination_version_id=None,
        force=False,
        subsets=[],
    ):
        """
        Copy an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The ID of the image set version.
        :param destination_image_set_id: The ID of the optional destination image
 set.
        :param destination_version_id: The ID of the optional destination image
 set version.
        :param force: Force the copy.
        :param subsets: The optional subsets to copy. For example:
 ["12345678901234567890123456789012"].
        :return: The copied image set ID.
        """
        try:
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }
            if destination_image_set_id and destination_version_id:
                copy_image_set_information["destinationImageSet"] = {
                    "imageSetId": destination_image_set_id,
                    "latestVersionId": destination_version_id,
                }
            if len(subsets) > 0:
                copySubsetsJson = {
                    "SchemaVersion": "1.1",
                    "Study": {"Series": {"imageSetId": {"Instances": {}}}},
                }

                for subset in subsets:
                    copySubsetsJson["Study"]["Series"]["imageSetId"]["Instances"]
[
                        subset
                    ] = {}
```

```
                copy_image_set_information["sourceImageSet"]["DICOMCopies"] = {
                    "copiableAttributes": json.dumps(copySubsetsJson)
                }
            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't copy image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return copy_results["destinationImageSetProperties"]["imageSetId"]
```

Copy an image set without a destination.

```
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }

            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
```

Copy an image set with a destination.

```
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }

            if destination_image_set_id and destination_version_id:
```

```
                copy_image_set_information["destinationImageSet"] = {
                    "imageSetId": destination_image_set_id,
                    "latestVersionId": destination_version_id,
                }

            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
```

Copy a subset of an image set.

```
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }

            if len(subsets) > 0:
                copySubsetsJson = {
                    "SchemaVersion": "1.1",
                    "Study": {"Series": {"imageSetId": {"Instances": {}}}},
                }

                for subset in subsets:
                    copySubsetsJson["Study"]["Series"]["imageSetId"]["Instances"]
[
                        subset
                    ] = {}

                copy_image_set_information["sourceImageSet"]["DICOMCopies"] = {
                    "copiableAttributes": json.dumps(copySubsetsJson)
                }

            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `CreateDatastore` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDatastore`.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###########################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###########################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###########################################################################
# function imaging_create_datastore
#
# This function creates an AWS HealthImaging data store for importing DICOM P10
 files.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n data_store_name - The name of the data store.
#
# Returns:
#       The datastore ID.
```

```
#    And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_create_datastore() {
  local datastore_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_create_datastore"
    echo "Creates an AWS HealthImaging data store for importing DICOM P10 files."
    echo "  -n data_store_name - The name of the data store."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) datastore_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$datastore_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a data store name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws medical-imaging create-datastore \
    --datastore-name "$datastore_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'datastoreId')
```

```
  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports medical-imaging create-datastore operation
 failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a data store

The following `create-datastore` code example creates a data store with the name `my-datastore`.

```
aws medical-imaging create-datastore \
    --datastore-name "my-datastore"
```

Output:

```
{
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "datastoreStatus": "CREATING"
}
```

For more information, see Creating a data store in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static String createMedicalImageDatastore(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreName) {
       try {
           CreateDatastoreRequest datastoreRequest =
CreateDatastoreRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreName(datastoreName)
                   .build();
           CreateDatastoreResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.createDatastore(datastoreRequest);
           return response.datastoreId();
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { CreateDatastoreCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
```

```
/**
 * @param {string} datastoreName - The name of the data store to create.
 */
export const createDatastore = async (datastoreName = "DATASTORE_NAME") => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new CreateDatastoreCommand({ datastoreName: datastoreName }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: 'a71cd65f-2382-49bf-b682-f9209d8d399b',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    },
  //    datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //    datastoreStatus: 'CREATING'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client
```

```
    def create_datastore(self, name):
        """
        Create a data store.

        :param name: The name of the data store to create.
        :return: The data store ID.
        """
        try:
            data_store =
self.health_imaging_client.create_datastore(datastoreName=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create data store %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return data_store["datastoreId"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `DeleteDatastore` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDatastore`.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function imaging_delete_datastore
#
# This function deletes an AWS HealthImaging data store.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i datastore_id - The ID of the data store.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function imaging_delete_datastore() {
  local datastore_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_delete_datastore"
    echo "Deletes an AWS HealthImaging data store."
    echo "  -i datastore_id - The ID of the data store."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) datastore_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
```

```
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$datastore_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a data store ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws medical-imaging delete-datastore \
    --datastore-id "$datastore_id")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports medical-imaging delete-datastore operation
 failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a data store

The following `delete-datastore` code example deletes a data store.

```
aws medical-imaging delete-datastore \
    --datastore-id "12345678901234567890123456789012"
```

Output:

```
{
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "datastoreStatus": "DELETING"
}
```

For more information, see Deleting a data store in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static void deleteMedicalImagingDatastore(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreID) {
        try {
            DeleteDatastoreRequest datastoreRequest =
 DeleteDatastoreRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreID)
                    .build();
            medicalImagingClient.deleteDatastore(datastoreRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DeleteDatastoreCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store to delete.
 */
export const deleteDatastore = async (datastoreId = "DATASTORE_ID") => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new DeleteDatastoreCommand({ datastoreId }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //           httpStatusCode: 200,
  //           requestId: 'f5beb409-678d-48c9-9173-9a001ee1ebb1',
  //           extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //           cfId: undefined,
  //           attempts: 1,
  //           totalRetryDelay: 0
  //         },
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     datastoreStatus: 'DELETING'
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def delete_datastore(self, datastore_id):
        """
        Delete a data store.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.delete_datastore(datastoreId=datastore_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete data store %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                datastore_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `DeleteImageSet` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteImageSet`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with image sets and image frames

C++

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which deletes an AWS HealthImaging image set.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The image set ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::deleteImageSet(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID, const Aws::String &imageSetID,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DeleteImageSetRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DeleteImageSetOutcome outcome =
 client.DeleteImageSet(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted image set " << imageSetID
                  << " from data store " << dataStoreID << std::endl;
    }
    else {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Error deleting image set " << imageSetID << " from data
 store "
                  << dataStoreID << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an image set

The following `delete-image-set` code example deletes an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging delete-image-set \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "DELETING",
    "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

For more information, see Deleting an image set in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static void deleteMedicalImageSet(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String imagesetId) {
       try {
           DeleteImageSetRequest deleteImageSetRequest =
DeleteImageSetRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .imageSetId(imagesetId)
                   .build();

           medicalImagingClient.deleteImageSet(deleteImageSetRequest);

           System.out.println("The image set was deleted.");
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DeleteImageSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The data store ID.
```

```
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The image set ID.
 */
export const deleteImageSet = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new DeleteImageSetCommand({
      datastoreId: datastoreId,
      imageSetId: imageSetId,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //    '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 200,
  //        requestId: '6267bbd2-eaa5-4a50-8ee8-8fddf535cf73',
  //        extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //        cfId: undefined,
  //        attempts: 1,
  //        totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
  //     imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'DELETING'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def delete_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id):
        """
        Delete an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :return: The delete results.
        """
        try:
            delete_results = self.health_imaging_client.delete_image_set(
                imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return delete_results
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `GetDICOMImportJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDICOMImportJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with image sets and image frames

C++

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging DICOM import job's properties.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param importJobID: The DICOM import job ID
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return GetDICOMImportJobOutcome: The import job outcome.
*/
Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getDICOMImportJob(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                           const Aws::String &importJobID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetJobId(importJobID);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome outcome =
 client.GetDICOMImportJob(
            request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "GetDICOMImportJob error: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome;
}
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a dicom import job's properties

The following `get-dicom-import-job` code example gets a dicom import job's properties.

```
aws medical-imaging get-dicom-import-job \
    --datastore-id "12345678901234567890123456789012" \
    --job-id "09876543210987654321098765432109"
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobProperties": {
        "jobId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
        "jobName": "my-job",
        "jobStatus": "COMPLETED",
        "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
        "dataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
ImportJobDataAccessRole",
        "endedAt": "2022-08-12T11:29:42.285000+00:00",
        "submittedAt": "2022-08-12T11:28:11.152000+00:00",
        "inputS3Uri": "s3://medical-imaging-dicom-input/dicom_input/",
        "outputS3Uri": "s3://medical-imaging-output/
job_output/12345678901234567890123456789012-
DicomImport-09876543210987654321098765432109/"
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Getting import job properties in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static DICOMImportJobProperties getDicomImportJob(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String jobId) {

       try {
           GetDicomImportJobRequest getDicomImportJobRequest =
GetDicomImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .jobId(jobId)
                   .build();
           GetDicomImportJobResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.getDICOMImportJob(getDicomImportJobRequest);
           return response.jobProperties();
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetDICOMImportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} jobId - The ID of the import job.
 */
export const getDICOMImportJob = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  jobId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetDICOMImportJobCommand({ datastoreId: datastoreId, jobId: jobId }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: 'a2637936-78ea-44e7-98b8-7a87d95dfaee',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     jobProperties: {
  //         dataAccessRoleArn: 'arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/dicom_import',
  //             datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             endedAt: 2023-09-19T17:29:21.753Z,
  //             inputS3Uri: 's3://healthimaging-source/CTStudy/',
  //             jobId: ''xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx'',
  //             jobName: 'job_1',
  //             jobStatus: 'COMPLETED',
  //             outputS3Uri: 's3://health-imaging-dest/
ouput_ct/'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx'-DicomImport-'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx'/',
  //             submittedAt: 2023-09-19T17:27:25.143Z
  //     }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_dicom_import_job(self, datastore_id, job_id):
        """
        Get the properties of a DICOM import job.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param job_id: The ID of the job.
        :return: The job properties.
        """
        try:
            job = self.health_imaging_client.get_dicom_import_job(
                jobId=job_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get DICOM import job. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job["jobProperties"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `GetDatastore` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDatastore`.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function imaging_get_datastore
#
# Get a data store's properties.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i data_store_id - The ID of the data store.
#
# Returns:
#       [datastore_name, datastore_id, datastore_status, datastore_arn,
 created_at, updated_at]
```

```
#    And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_get_datastore() {
  local datastore_id option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a
 function.
  local error_code
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_get_datastore"
    echo "Gets a data store's properties."
    echo "  -i datastore_id - The ID of the data store."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) datastore_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$datastore_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a data store ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local response

  response=$(
    aws medical-imaging get-datastore \
      --datastore-id "$datastore_id" \
```

```
      --output text \
      --query "[ datastoreProperties.datastoreName,
 datastoreProperties.datastoreId, datastoreProperties.datastoreStatus,
 datastoreProperties.datastoreArn,  datastoreProperties.createdAt,
 datastoreProperties.updatedAt]"
  )
  error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-datastores operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a data store's properties

The following `get-datastore` code example gets a data store's properties.

```
aws medical-imaging get-datastore \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "datastoreProperties": {
        "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
        "datastoreName": "TestDatastore123",
        "datastoreStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "datastoreArn": "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012",
        "createdAt": "2022-11-15T23:33:09.643000+00:00",
        "updatedAt": "2022-11-15T23:33:09.643000+00:00"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Getting data store properties in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static DatastoreProperties
 getMedicalImageDatastore(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreID) {
        try {
            GetDatastoreRequest datastoreRequest = GetDatastoreRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreID)
                    .build();
            GetDatastoreResponse response =
 medicalImagingClient.getDatastore(datastoreRequest);
            return response.datastoreProperties();
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetDatastoreCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreID - The ID of the data store.
 */
export const getDatastore = async (datastoreID = "DATASTORE_ID") => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetDatastoreCommand({ datastoreId: datastoreID }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: '55ea7d2e-222c-4a6a-871e-4f591f40cadb',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    },
  //   datastoreProperties: {
  //        createdAt: 2023-08-04T18:50:36.239Z,
  //         datastoreArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:xxxxxxxxx:datastore/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //         datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //         datastoreName: 'my_datastore',
  //         datastoreStatus: 'ACTIVE',
  //         updatedAt: 2023-08-04T18:50:36.239Z
  //   }
  // }
  return response.datastoreProperties;
};
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_datastore_properties(self, datastore_id):
        """
        Get the properties of a data store.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :return: The data store properties.
        """
        try:
            data_store = self.health_imaging_client.get_datastore(
                datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get data store %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return data_store["datastoreProperties"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `GetImageFrame` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetImageFrame`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with image sets and image frames

C++

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which downloads an AWS HealthImaging image frame.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The image set ID.
  \param frameID: The image frame ID.
  \param jphFile: File to store the downloaded frame.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageFrame(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                            const Aws::String &imageSetID,
                                            const Aws::String &frameID,
                                            const Aws::String &jphFile,
```

```
                                                const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ImageFrameInformation imageFrameInformation;
    imageFrameInformation.SetImageFrameId(frameID);
    request.SetImageFrameInformation(imageFrameInformation);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameOutcome outcome =
 client.GetImageFrame(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully retrieved image frame." << std::endl;
        auto &buffer = outcome.GetResult().GetImageFrameBlob();

        std::ofstream outfile(jphFile, std::ios::binary);
        outfile << buffer.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error retrieving image frame." <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;

    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get image set pixel data

The following `get-image-frame` code example gets an image frame.

```
aws medical-imaging get-image-frame \
    --datastore-id "12345678901234567890123456789012" \
    --image-set-id "98765412345612345678907890789012" \
    --image-frame-information imageFrameId=3abf5d5d7ae72f80a0ec81b2c0de3ef4 \
    imageframe.jph
```

Note: This code example does not include output because the GetImageFrame action returns a stream of pixel data to the imageframe.jph file. For information about decoding and viewing image frames, see HTJ2K decoding libraries.

For more information, see Getting image set pixel data in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
        public static void getMedicalImageSetFrame(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
                        String destinationPath,
                        String datastoreId,
                        String imagesetId,
                        String imageFrameId) {

                try {
                        GetImageFrameRequest getImageSetMetadataRequest =
 GetImageFrameRequest.builder()
                                        .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                                        .imageSetId(imagesetId)

 .imageFrameInformation(ImageFrameInformation.builder()

 .imageFrameId(imageFrameId)
```

```
                                                                .build())
                                        .build();

 medicalImagingClient.getImageFrame(getImageSetMetadataRequest,

 FileSystems.getDefault().getPath(destinationPath));

                        System.out.println("Image frame downloaded to " +
 destinationPath);
                } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
        }
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetImageFrameCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} imageFrameFileName - The name of the file for the HTJ2K-
encoded image frame.
 * @param {string} datastoreID - The data store's ID.
 * @param {string} imageSetID - The image set's ID.
 * @param {string} imageFrameID - The image frame's ID.
 */
export const getImageFrame = async (
  imageFrameFileName = "image.jph",
  datastoreID = "DATASTORE_ID",
  imageSetID = "IMAGE_SET_ID",
```

```
  imageFrameID = "IMAGE_FRAME_ID",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetImageFrameCommand({
      datastoreId: datastoreID,
      imageSetId: imageSetID,
      imageFrameInformation: { imageFrameId: imageFrameID },
    }),
  );
  const buffer = await response.imageFrameBlob.transformToByteArray();
  writeFileSync(imageFrameFileName, buffer);

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: 'e4ab42a5-25a3-4377-873f-374ecf4380e1',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     contentType: 'application/octet-stream',
  //     imageFrameBlob: <ref *1> IncomingMessage {}
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
```

```
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_pixel_data(
        self, file_path_to_write, datastore_id, image_set_id, image_frame_id
    ):
        """
        Get an image frame's pixel data.

        :param file_path_to_write: The path to write the image frame's HTJ2K
encoded pixel data.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param image_frame_id: The ID of the image frame.
        """
        try:
            image_frame = self.health_imaging_client.get_image_frame(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                imageSetId=image_set_id,
                imageFrameInformation={"imageFrameId": image_frame_id},
            )
            with open(file_path_to_write, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in image_frame["imageFrameBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    if chunk:
                        f.write(chunk)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image frame. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `GetImageSet` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetImageSet`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get image set properties

The following `get-image-set` code example gets the properties for an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging get-image-set \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id 18f88ac7870584f58d56256646b4d92b \
    --version-id 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "versionId": "1",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPIED",
    "updatedAt": 1680027253.471,
    "imageSetId": "18f88ac7870584f58d56256646b4d92b",
    "imageSetState": "ACTIVE",
    "createdAt": 1679592510.753,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

For more information, see Getting image set properties in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static GetImageSetResponse getMedicalImageSet(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String imagesetId,
           String versionId) {
       try {
           GetImageSetRequest.Builder getImageSetRequestBuilder =
GetImageSetRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .imageSetId(imagesetId);

           if (versionId != null) {
               getImageSetRequestBuilder =
getImageSetRequestBuilder.versionId(versionId);
           }

           return
medicalImagingClient.getImageSet(getImageSetRequestBuilder.build());
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetImageSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The ID of the image set.
 * @param {string} imageSetVersion - The optional version of the image set.
 *
 */
export const getImageSet = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetVersion = "",
) => {
  const params = { datastoreId: datastoreId, imageSetId: imageSetId };
  if (imageSetVersion !== "") {
    params.imageSetVersion = imageSetVersion;
  }
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetImageSetCommand(params),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '0615c161-410d-4d06-9d8c-6e1241bb0a5a',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxx:datastore/
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx/imageset/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetState: 'ACTIVE',
  //     imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'CREATED',
  //     updatedAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
  //     versionId: '1'
```

```
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None):
        """
        Get the properties of an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The optional version of the image set.
        :return: The image set properties.
        """
        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set = self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:
                image_set = self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set(
```

```
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_set
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `GetImageSetMetadata` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetImageSetMetadata`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with image sets and image frames

C++

SDK for C++

Utility function to get image set metadata.

```
//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging image set's metadata.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The HealthImaging image set ID.
  \param versionID: The HealthImaging image set version ID, ignored if empty.
  \param outputFilePath: The path where the metadata will be stored as gzipped
 json.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \\return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                                  const Aws::String &imageSetID,
                                                  const Aws::String &versionID,
                                                  const Aws::String
 &outputFilePath,
                                                  const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);
    if (!versionID.empty()) {
        request.SetVersionId(versionID);
    }
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataOutcome outcome =
 client.GetImageSetMetadata(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::ofstream file(outputFilePath, std::ios::binary);
        auto &metadata = outcome.GetResult().GetImageSetMetadataBlob();
        file << metadata.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get image set metadata: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Get image set metadata without version.

```
        if (AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(dataStoreID, imageSetID,
"", outputFilePath, clientConfig))
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully retrieved image set metadata." <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "Metadata stored in: " << outputFilePath << std::endl;
        }
```

Get image set metadata with version.

```
        if (AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(dataStoreID, imageSetID,
versionID, outputFilePath, clientConfig))
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully retrieved image set metadata." <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "Metadata stored in: " << outputFilePath << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get image set metadata without version

The following `get-image-set-metadata` code example gets metadata for an image set without specifying a version.

Note: `outfile` is a required parameter

```
aws medical-imaging get-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
```

```
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    studymetadata.json.gz
```

The returned metadata is compressed with gzip and stored in the studymetadata.json.gz file. To view the contents of the returned JSON object, you must first decompress it.

Output:

```
{
    "contentType": "application/json",
    "contentEncoding": "gzip"
}
```

Example 2: To get image set metadata with version

The following `get-image-set-metadata` code example gets metadata for an image set with a specified version.

Note: `outfile` is a required parameter

```
aws medical-imaging get-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --version-id 1 \
    studymetadata.json.gz
```

The returned metadata is compressed with gzip and stored in the studymetadata.json.gz file. To view the contents of the returned JSON object, you must first decompress it.

Output:

```
{
    "contentType": "application/json",
    "contentEncoding": "gzip"
}
```

For more information, see Getting image set metadata in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static void getMedicalImageSetMetadata(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String destinationPath,
           String datastoreId,
           String imagesetId,
           String versionId) {

       try {
           GetImageSetMetadataRequest.Builder getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder
= GetImageSetMetadataRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .imageSetId(imagesetId);

           if (versionId != null) {
               getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder =
getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder.versionId(versionId);
           }


medicalImagingClient.getImageSetMetadata(getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder.build(),
                   FileSystems.getDefault().getPath(destinationPath));

           System.out.println("Metadata downloaded to " + destinationPath);
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Utility function to get image set metadata.

```
import { GetImageSetMetadataCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
import { writeFileSync } from "node:fs";

/**
 * @param {string} metadataFileName - The name of the file for the gzipped
 metadata.
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imagesetId - The ID of the image set.
 * @param {string} versionID - The optional version ID of the image set.
 */
export const getImageSetMetadata = async (
  metadataFileName = "metadata.json.gzip",
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imagesetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  versionID = "",
) => {
  const params = { datastoreId: datastoreId, imageSetId: imagesetId };

  if (versionID) {
    params.versionID = versionID;
  }

  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetImageSetMetadataCommand(params),
  );
  const buffer = await response.imageSetMetadataBlob.transformToByteArray();
  writeFileSync(metadataFileName, buffer);

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '5219b274-30ff-4986-8cab-48753de3a599',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
```

```
  // },
  //     contentType: 'application/json',
  //     contentEncoding: 'gzip',
  //     imageSetMetadataBlob: <ref *1> IncomingMessage {}
  // }

  return response;
};
```

Get image set metadata without version.

```
  try {
    await getImageSetMetadata(
      "metadata.json.gzip",
      "12345678901234567890123456789012",
      "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    );
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
```

Get image set metadata with version.

```
  try {
    await getImageSetMetadata(
      "metadata2.json.gzip",
      "12345678901234567890123456789012",
      "12345678901234567890123456789012",
      "1",
    );
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Utility function to get image set metadata.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_image_set_metadata(
        self, metadata_file, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None
    ):
        """
        Get the metadata of an image set.

        :param metadata_file: The file to store the JSON gzipped metadata.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The version of the image set.
        """
        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set_metadata =
 self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:

                image_set_metadata =
 self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
            print(image_set_metadata)
```

```
            with open(metadata_file, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in
image_set_metadata["imageSetMetadataBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    if chunk:
                        f.write(chunk)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image metadata. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Get image set metadata without version.

```
                image_set_metadata =
self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
```

Get image set metadata with version.

```
                image_set_metadata =
self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListDICOMImportJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDICOMImportJobs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list dicom import jobs

The following `list-dicom-import-jobs` code example lists dicom import jobs.

```
aws medical-imaging list-dicom-import-jobs \
    --datastore-id "12345678901234567890123456789012"
```

Output:

```
{
    "jobSummaries": [
        {
            "jobId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
            "jobName": "my-job",
            "jobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
            "dataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
ImportJobDataAccessRole",
            "endedAt": "2022-08-12T11:21:56.504000+00:00",
            "submittedAt": "2022-08-12T11:20:21.734000+00:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing import jobs in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static List<DICOMImportJobSummary>
listDicomImportJobs(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId) {

       try {
           ListDicomImportJobsRequest listDicomImportJobsRequest =
ListDicomImportJobsRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .build();
           ListDicomImportJobsResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.listDICOMImportJobs(listDicomImportJobsRequest);
           return response.jobSummaries();
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return new ArrayList<>();
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { paginateListDICOMImportJobs } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
```

```
 */
export const listDICOMImportJobs = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = { datastoreId: datastoreId };
  const paginator = paginateListDICOMImportJobs(paginatorConfig, commandParams);

  const jobSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    jobSummaries.push(...page.jobSummaries);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '3c20c66e-0797-446a-a1d8-91b742fd15a0',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     jobSummaries: [
  //         {
  //             dataAccessRoleArn: 'arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/
dicom_import',
  //             datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             endedAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:51.351Z,
  //             jobId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             jobName: 'test-1',
  //             jobStatus: 'COMPLETED',
  //             submittedAt: 2023-09-22T14:48:45.767Z
  // }
  // ]}

  return jobSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_dicom_import_jobs(self, datastore_id):
        """
        List the DICOM import jobs.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator(
                "list_dicom_import_jobs"
            )
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(datastoreId=datastore_id)
            job_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                job_summaries.extend(page["jobSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list DICOM import jobs. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return job_summaries
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListDatastores` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDatastores`.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###########################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###########################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###########################################################################
# function imaging_list_datastores
#
# List the HealthImaging data stores in the account.
#
# Returns:
#       [[datastore_name, datastore_id, datastore_status]]
```

```
#    And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_list_datastores() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local error_code
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_list_datastores"
    echo "Lists the AWS HealthImaging data stores in the account."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response
  response=$(aws medical-imaging list-datastores \
    --output text \
    --query "datastoreSummaries[*][datastoreName, datastoreId, datastoreStatus]")
  error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-datastores operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list data stores

The following `list-datastores` code example lists available data stores.

```
aws medical-imaging list-datastores
```

Output:

```
{
    "datastoreSummaries": [
        {
            "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
            "datastoreName": "TestDatastore123",
            "datastoreStatus": "ACTIVE",
            "datastoreArn": "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012",
            "createdAt": "2022-11-15T23:33:09.643000+00:00",
            "updatedAt": "2022-11-15T23:33:09.643000+00:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing data stores in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static List<DatastoreSummary>
listMedicalImagingDatastores(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient) {
       try {
           ListDatastoresRequest datastoreRequest =
ListDatastoresRequest.builder()
                   .build();
           ListDatastoresIterable responses =
medicalImagingClient.listDatastoresPaginator(datastoreRequest);
           List<DatastoreSummary> datastoreSummaries = new ArrayList<>();

           responses.stream().forEach(response ->
datastoreSummaries.addAll(response.datastoreSummaries()));

           return datastoreSummaries;
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { paginateListDatastores } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
```

```
export const listDatastores = async () => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = {};
  const paginator = paginateListDatastores(paginatorConfig, commandParams);

  /**
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging").DatastoreSummary[]}
   */
  const datastoreSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    datastoreSummaries.push(...page.datastoreSummaries);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: '6aa99231-d9c2-4716-a46e-edb830116fa3',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   datastoreSummaries: [
  //     {
  //       createdAt: 2023-08-04T18:49:54.429Z,
  //       datastoreArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxx:datastore/
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //       datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //       datastoreName: 'my_datastore',
  //       datastoreStatus: 'ACTIVE',
  //       updatedAt: 2023-08-04T18:49:54.429Z
  //     }
  //     ...
  //   ]
  // }

  return datastoreSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_datastores(self):
        """
        List the data stores.

        :return: The list of data stores.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
 self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator("list_datastores")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
            datastore_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                datastore_summaries.extend(page["datastoreSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return datastore_summaries
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListImageSetVersions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListImageSetVersions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list image set versions

The following `list-image-set-versions` code example lists the version history for an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging list-image-set-versions \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageSetPropertiesList": [
        {
            "ImageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATED",
            "versionId": "4",
            "updatedAt": 1680029436.304,
            "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
```

```
            "imageSetState": "ACTIVE",
            "createdAt": 1680027126.436
        },
        {
            "ImageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATED",
            "versionId": "3",
            "updatedAt": 1680029163.325,
            "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
            "imageSetState": "ACTIVE",
            "createdAt": 1680027126.436
        },
        {
            "ImageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPY_FAILED",
            "versionId": "2",
            "updatedAt": 1680027455.944,
            "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
            "imageSetState": "ACTIVE",
            "message": "INVALID_REQUEST:  Series of SourceImageSet and
 DestinationImageSet don't match.",
            "createdAt": 1680027126.436
        },
        {
            "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
            "imageSetState": "ACTIVE",
            "versionId": "1",
            "ImageSetWorkflowStatus": "COPIED",
            "createdAt": 1680027126.436
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing image set versions in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static List<ImageSetProperties>
 listMedicalImageSetVersions(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreId,
```

```
            String imagesetId) {
        try {
            ListImageSetVersionsRequest getImageSetRequest =
 ListImageSetVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .imageSetId(imagesetId)
                    .build();

            ListImageSetVersionsIterable responses = medicalImagingClient
                    .listImageSetVersionsPaginator(getImageSetRequest);
            List<ImageSetProperties> imageSetProperties = new ArrayList<>();
            responses.stream().forEach(response ->
 imageSetProperties.addAll(response.imageSetPropertiesList()));

            return imageSetProperties;
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { paginateListImageSetVersions } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The ID of the image set.
```

```
 */
export const listImageSetVersions = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = { datastoreId, imageSetId };
  const paginator = paginateListImageSetVersions(
    paginatorConfig,
    commandParams,
  );

  const imageSetPropertiesList = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    imageSetPropertiesList.push(...page.imageSetPropertiesList);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '74590b37-a002-4827-83f2-3c590279c742',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     imageSetPropertiesList: [
  //         {
  //             ImageSetWorkflowStatus: 'CREATED',
  //             createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
  //             imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             imageSetState: 'ACTIVE',
  //             versionId: '1'
  //         }]
  // }
  return imageSetPropertiesList;
};
```

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_image_set_versions(self, datastore_id, image_set_id):
        """
        List the image set versions.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :return: The list of image set versions.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator(
                "list_image_set_versions"
            )
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
            image_set_properties_list = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                image_set_properties_list.extend(page["imageSetPropertiesList"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list image set versions. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_set_properties_list
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListTagsForResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Tagging a data store
- Tagging an image set

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list resource tags for a data store

The following `list-tags-for-resource` code example lists tags for a data store.

```
aws medical-imaging list-tags-for-resource \
```

```
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags":{
        "Deployment":"Development"
    }
}
```

Example 2: To list resource tags for an image set

The following `list-tags-for-resource` code example lists tags for an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging list-tags-for-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/18f88ac7870584f58d56256646b4d92b"
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags":{
        "Deployment":"Development"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Tagging resources with AWS HealthImaging in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static ListTagsForResourceResponse
 listMedicalImagingResourceTags(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn) {
        try {
```

```
            ListTagsForResourceRequest listTagsForResourceRequest =
 ListTagsForResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .build();

            return
 medicalImagingClient.listTagsForResource(listTagsForResourceRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { ListTagsForResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 */
export const listTagsForResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:abc:datastore/def/imageset/
ghi",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new ListTagsForResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn }),
  );
```

```
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '008fc6d3-abec-4870-a155-20fa3631e645',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     tags: { Deployment: 'Development' }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn):
        """
        List the tags for a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :return: The list of tags.
        """
        try:
```

```
            tags = self.health_imaging_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tags["tags"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `SearchImageSets` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SearchImageSets`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with image sets and image frames

C++

SDK for C++

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
//! Routine which searches for image sets based on defined input attributes.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param searchCriteria: A search criteria instance.
  \param imageSetResults: Vector to receive the image set IDs.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                              const
 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria &searchCriteria,
                                              Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &imageSetResults,
                                              const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchImageSetsRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetSearchCriteria(searchCriteria);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
    bool result = true;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchImageSetsOutcome outcome =
 client.SearchImageSets(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            for (auto &imageSetMetadataSummary:
 outcome.GetResult().GetImageSetsMetadataSummaries()) {

 imageSetResults.push_back(imageSetMetadataSummary.GetImageSetId());
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return result;
}
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> imageIDsForPatientID;
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria searchCriteriaEqualsPatientID;
        Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter>
 patientIDSearchFilters = {

 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter().WithOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Oper

 .WithValues({Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue().WithDICOMPatientId(pat
        };

        searchCriteriaEqualsPatientID.SetFilters(patientIDSearchFilters);
        bool result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,

 searchCriteriaEqualsPatientID,

 imageIDsForPatientID,
                                                                clientConfig);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << imageIDsForPatientID.size() << " image sets found for
 the patient with ID '"
            <<  patientID << "'." << std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : imageIDsForPatientID) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
         Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase2StartDate;

 useCase2StartDate.SetDICOMStudyDateAndTime(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DICOMStudyDateAnd
        .WithDICOMStudyDate("19990101")
        .WithDICOMStudyTime("000000.000"));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase2EndDate;

 useCase2EndDate.SetDICOMStudyDateAndTime(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DICOMStudyDateAndTi

 .WithDICOMStudyDate(Aws::Utils::DateTime(std::chrono::system_clock::now()).ToLocalTimeSt
%m%d"))
        .WithDICOMStudyTime("000000.000"));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase2SearchFilter;
        useCase2SearchFilter.SetValues({useCase2StartDate, useCase2EndDate});

 useCase2SearchFilter.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::BETWEEN);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria useCase2SearchCriteria;
        useCase2SearchCriteria.SetFilters({useCase2SearchFilter});

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> usesCase2Results;
        result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,
                                                          useCase2SearchCriteria,
                                                          usesCase2Results,
                                                          clientConfig);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << usesCase2Results.size() << " image sets found for
 between 1999/01/01 and present."
                      <<  std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : usesCase2Results) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase3StartDate;
```

```
useCase3StartDate.SetCreatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime("20231130T000000000Z",Aws::Utils::Da

       Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase3EndDate;

useCase3EndDate.SetCreatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime(std::chrono::system_clock::now()));

       Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase3SearchFilter;
       useCase3SearchFilter.SetValues({useCase3StartDate, useCase3EndDate});

useCase3SearchFilter.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::BETWEEN);

       Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria useCase3SearchCriteria;
       useCase3SearchCriteria.SetFilters({useCase3SearchFilter});

       Aws::Vector<Aws::String> usesCase3Results;
       result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,
                                                         useCase3SearchCriteria,
                                                         usesCase3Results,
                                                         clientConfig);
       if (result) {
           std::cout << usesCase3Results.size() << " image sets found for
created between 2023/11/30 and present."
                     <<  std::endl;
           for (auto &imageSetResult : usesCase3Results) {
               std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult <<
std::endl;
           }
       }
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
       Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase4StartDate;

useCase4StartDate.SetUpdatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime("20231130T000000000Z",Aws::Utils::Da

       Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase4EndDate;

useCase4EndDate.SetUpdatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime(std::chrono::system_clock::now()));

       Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase4SearchFilterBetween;
```

```
        useCase4SearchFilterBetween.SetValues({useCase4StartDate,
useCase4EndDate});

useCase4SearchFilterBetween.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::BETWEEN);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue seriesInstanceUID;
        seriesInstanceUID.SetDICOMSeriesInstanceUID(dicomSeriesInstanceUID);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase4SearchFilterEqual;
        useCase4SearchFilterEqual.SetValues({seriesInstanceUID});

useCase4SearchFilterEqual.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::EQUAL);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria useCase4SearchCriteria;
        useCase4SearchCriteria.SetFilters({useCase4SearchFilterBetween,
useCase4SearchFilterEqual});

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Sort useCase4Sort;

useCase4Sort.SetSortField(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SortField::updatedAt);
        useCase4Sort.SetSortOrder(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SortOrder::ASC);

        useCase4SearchCriteria.SetSort(useCase4Sort);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> usesCase4Results;
        result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,
                                                          useCase4SearchCriteria,
                                                          usesCase4Results,
                                                          clientConfig);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << usesCase4Results.size() << " image sets found for EQUAL
operator "
            << "on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort
response\n"
            <<  "in ASC order on updatedAt field." <<  std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : usesCase4Results) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult <<
std::endl;
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To search image sets with an EQUAL operator

The following `search-image-sets` code example uses the EQUAL operator to search image sets based on a specific value.

```
aws medical-imaging search-image-sets \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --search-criteria file://search-criteria.json
```

Contents of `search-criteria.json`

```
{
    "filters": [{
        "values": [{"DICOMPatientId" : "SUBJECT08701"}],
        "operator": "EQUAL"
    }]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageSetsMetadataSummaries": [{
        "imageSetId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
        "createdAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00",
        "version": 1,
        "DICOMTags": {
            "DICOMStudyId": "2011201407",
            "DICOMStudyDate": "19991122",
             "DICOMPatientSex": "F",
             "DICOMStudyInstanceUID": "1.2.840.99999999.84710745.943275268089",
             "DICOMPatientBirthDate": "19201120",
             "DICOMStudyDescription": "UNKNOWN",
```

```
                "DICOMPatientId": "SUBJECT08701",
                "DICOMPatientName": "Melissa844 Huel628",
                "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedInstances": 1,
                "DICOMStudyTime": "140728",
                "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedSeries": 1
            },
        "updatedAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00"
    }]
}
```

Example 2: To search image sets with a BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime

The following `search-image-sets` code example searches for image sets with DICOM Studies generated between January 1, 1990 (12:00 AM) and January 1, 2023 (12:00 AM).

Note: DICOMStudyTime is optional. If it is not present, 12:00 AM (start of the day) is the time value for the dates provided for filtering.

```
aws medical-imaging search-image-sets \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --search-criteria file://search-criteria.json
```

Contents of `search-criteria.json`

```
{
    "filters": [{
        "values": [{
            "DICOMStudyDateAndTime": {
                "DICOMStudyDate": "19900101",
                "DICOMStudyTime": "000000"
            }
        },
        {
            "DICOMStudyDateAndTime": {
                "DICOMStudyDate": "20230101",
                "DICOMStudyTime": "000000"
            }
        }],
        "operator": "BETWEEN"
    }]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageSetsMetadataSummaries": [{
        "imageSetId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
        "createdAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00",
        "version": 1,
        "DICOMTags": {
            "DICOMStudyId": "2011201407",
            "DICOMStudyDate": "19991122",
            "DICOMPatientSex": "F",
            "DICOMStudyInstanceUID": "1.2.840.99999999.84710745.943275268089",
            "DICOMPatientBirthDate": "19201120",
            "DICOMStudyDescription": "UNKNOWN",
            "DICOMPatientId": "SUBJECT08701",
            "DICOMPatientName": "Melissa844 Huel628",
            "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedInstances": 1,
            "DICOMStudyTime": "140728",
            "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedSeries": 1
        },
        "updatedAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00"
    }]
}
```

Example 3: To search image sets with a BETWEEN operator using createdAt (time studies were previously persisted)

The following `search-image-sets` code example searches for image sets with DICOM Studies persisted in HealthImaging between the time ranges in UTC time zone.

Note: Provide createdAt in example format ("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z").

```
aws medical-imaging search-image-sets \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --search-criteria  file://search-criteria.json
```

Contents of `search-criteria.json`

```
{
    "filters": [{
        "values": [{
            "createdAt": "1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z"
```

```
        },
        {
            "createdAt": "2022-04-12T23:20:50.52Z"
        }],
        "operator": "BETWEEN"
    }]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageSetsMetadataSummaries": [{
        "imageSetId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
        "createdAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00",
        "version": 1,
        "DICOMTags": {
            "DICOMStudyId": "2011201407",
            "DICOMStudyDate": "19991122",
            "DICOMPatientSex": "F",
            "DICOMStudyInstanceUID": "1.2.840.99999999.84710745.943275268089",
            "DICOMPatientBirthDate": "19201120",
            "DICOMStudyDescription": "UNKNOWN",
            "DICOMPatientId": "SUBJECT08701",
            "DICOMPatientName": "Melissa844 Huel628",
            "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedInstances": 1,
            "DICOMStudyTime": "140728",
            "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedSeries": 1
        },
        "lastUpdatedAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00"
    }]
}
```

Example 4: To search image sets with an EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field

The following `search-image-sets` code example searches for image sets with an EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

Note: Provide updatedAt in example format ("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z").

```
aws medical-imaging search-image-sets \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
```

```
    --search-criteria  file://search-criteria.json
```

Contents of `search-criteria.json`

```
{
    "filters": [{
        "values": [{
            "updatedAt": "2024-03-11T15:00:05.074000-07:00"
        }, {
            "updatedAt": "2024-03-11T16:00:05.074000-07:00"
        }],
        "operator": "BETWEEN"
    }, {
        "values": [{
            "DICOMSeriesInstanceUID": "1.2.840.99999999.84710745.943275268089"
        }],
        "operator": "EQUAL"
    }],
    "sort": {
        "sortField": "updatedAt",
        "sortOrder": "ASC"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "imageSetsMetadataSummaries": [{
        "imageSetId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
        "createdAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00",
        "version": 1,
        "DICOMTags": {
            "DICOMStudyId": "2011201407",
            "DICOMStudyDate": "19991122",
            "DICOMPatientSex": "F",
            "DICOMStudyInstanceUID": "1.2.840.99999999.84710745.943275268089",
            "DICOMPatientBirthDate": "19201120",
            "DICOMStudyDescription": "UNKNOWN",
            "DICOMPatientId": "SUBJECT08701",
            "DICOMPatientName": "Melissa844 Huel628",
            "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedInstances": 1,
            "DICOMStudyTime": "140728",
            "DICOMNumberOfStudyRelatedSeries": 1
```

```
        },
        "lastUpdatedAt": "2022-12-06T21:40:59.429000+00:00"
    }]
}
```

For more information, see Searching image sets in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
    public static List<ImageSetsMetadataSummary> searchMedicalImagingImageSets(
            MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreId, SearchCriteria searchCriteria) {
        try {
            SearchImageSetsRequest datastoreRequest =
SearchImageSetsRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .searchCriteria(searchCriteria)
                    .build();
            SearchImageSetsIterable responses = medicalImagingClient
                    .searchImageSetsPaginator(datastoreRequest);
            List<ImageSetsMetadataSummary> imageSetsMetadataSummaries = new
ArrayList<>();

            responses.stream().forEach(response -> imageSetsMetadataSummaries
                    .addAll(response.imageSetsMetadataSummaries()));

            return imageSetsMetadataSummaries;
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
        List<SearchFilter> searchFilters =
 Collections.singletonList(SearchFilter.builder()
                .operator(Operator.EQUAL)
                .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                        .dicomPatientId(patientId)
                        .build())
                .build());

        SearchCriteria searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .build();

        List<ImageSetsMetadataSummary> imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
 searchMedicalImagingImageSets(
                medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println("The image sets for patient " + patientId + " are:
\n"
                    + imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
        }
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyyMMdd");
        searchFilters = Collections.singletonList(SearchFilter.builder()
                .operator(Operator.BETWEEN)
                .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()

 .dicomStudyDateAndTime(DICOMStudyDateAndTime.builder()
                                        .dicomStudyDate("19990101")
                                        .dicomStudyTime("000000.000")
                                        .build())
                                .build(),
                        SearchByAttributeValue.builder()

 .dicomStudyDateAndTime(DICOMStudyDateAndTime.builder()
                                        .dicomStudyDate((LocalDate.now()
                                                .format(formatter)))
                                        .dicomStudyTime("000000.000")
                                        .build())
```

```
                                .build())
                .build());

        searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .build();

        imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println(
                    "The image sets searched with BETWEEN operator using
DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime are:\n"
                            +
                            imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
        }
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
        searchFilters = Collections.singletonList(SearchFilter.builder()
                .operator(Operator.BETWEEN)
                .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()

.createdAt(Instant.parse("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z"))
                                .build(),
                        SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                                .createdAt(Instant.now())
                                .build())
                .build());

        searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .build();
        imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println("The image sets searched with BETWEEN operator
using createdAt are:\n "
                    + imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
```

```
            System.out.println();
        }
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
        Instant startDate = Instant.parse("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z");
        Instant endDate = Instant.now();

        searchFilters = Arrays.asList(
                SearchFilter.builder()
                        .operator(Operator.EQUAL)
                        .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                                .dicomSeriesInstanceUID(seriesInstanceUID)
                                .build())
                        .build(),
                SearchFilter.builder()
                        .operator(Operator.BETWEEN)
                        .values(

SearchByAttributeValue.builder().updatedAt(startDate).build(),

SearchByAttributeValue.builder().updatedAt(endDate).build()
                        ).build());

        Sort sort =
Sort.builder().sortOrder(SortOrder.ASC).sortField(SortField.UPDATED_AT).build();

        searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .sort(sort)
                .build();

        imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println("The image sets searched with EQUAL operator on
DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response\n" +
                    "in ASC order on updatedAt field are:\n "
                    + imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
```

```
        }
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
import { paginateSearchImageSets } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The data store's ID.
 * @param { import('@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging').SearchFilter[] } filters -
 The search criteria filters.
 * @param { import('@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging').Sort } sort - The search
 criteria sort.
 */
export const searchImageSets = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxx",
  searchCriteria = {},
) => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = {
    datastoreId: datastoreId,
    searchCriteria: searchCriteria,
  };

  const paginator = paginateSearchImageSets(paginatorConfig, commandParams);
```

```
  const imageSetsMetadataSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    imageSetsMetadataSummaries.push(...page.imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: 'f009ea9c-84ca-4749-b5b6-7164f00a5ada',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     imageSetsMetadataSummaries: [
  //         {
  //             DICOMTags: [Object],
  //             createdAt: "2023-09-19T16:59:40.551Z",
  //             imageSetId: '7f75e1b5c0f40eac2b24cf712f485f50',
  //             updatedAt: "2023-09-19T16:59:40.551Z",
  //             version: 1
  //         }]
  // }

  return imageSetsMetadataSummaries;
};
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
  const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

  try {
    const searchCriteria = {
      filters: [
        {
          values: [{ DICOMPatientId: "1234567" }],
          operator: "EQUAL",
        },
      ],
    };
```

```
  await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
} catch (err) {
  console.error(err);
}
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

try {
  const searchCriteria = {
    filters: [
      {
        values: [
          {
            DICOMStudyDateAndTime: {
              DICOMStudyDate: "19900101",
              DICOMStudyTime: "000000",
            },
          },
          {
            DICOMStudyDateAndTime: {
              DICOMStudyDate: "20230901",
              DICOMStudyTime: "000000",
            },
          },
        ],
        operator: "BETWEEN",
      },
    ],
  };

  await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
} catch (err) {
  console.error(err);
}
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";
```

```
try {
  const searchCriteria = {
    filters: [
      {
        values: [
          { createdAt: new Date("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z") },
          { createdAt: new Date() },
        ],
        operator: "BETWEEN",
      },
    ],
  };

  await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
} catch (err) {
  console.error(err);
}
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

try {
  const searchCriteria = {
    filters: [
      {
        values: [
          { updatedAt: new Date("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z") },
          { updatedAt: new Date() },
        ],
        operator: "BETWEEN",
      },
      {
        values: [
          {
            DICOMSeriesInstanceUID:
              "1.1.123.123456.1.12.1.1234567890.1234.12345678.123",
          },
        ],
        operator: "EQUAL",
```

```
        },
      ],
      sort: {
        sortOrder: "ASC",
        sortField: "updatedAt",
      },
    };

    await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def search_image_sets(self, datastore_id, search_filter):
        """
        Search for image sets.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param search_filter: The search filter.
            For example: {"filters" : [{ "operator": "EQUAL", "values":
 [{"DICOMPatientId": "3524578"}]}]}.
        :return: The list of image sets.
        """
```

```
        try:
            paginator =
self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator("search_image_sets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                datastoreId=datastore_id, searchCriteria=search_filter
            )
            metadata_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                metadata_summaries.extend(page["imageSetsMetadataSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't search image sets. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return metadata_summaries
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {"operator": "EQUAL", "values": [{"DICOMPatientId": patient_id}]}
            ]
        }

        image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(f"Image sets found with EQUAL operator\n{image_sets}")
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {
                    "operator": "BETWEEN",
                    "values": [
                        {
                            "DICOMStudyDateAndTime": {
                                "DICOMStudyDate": "19900101",
```

```
                                "DICOMStudyTime": "000000",
                            }
                        },
                        {
                            "DICOMStudyDateAndTime": {
                                "DICOMStudyDate": "20230101",
                                "DICOMStudyTime": "000000",
                            }
                        },
                    ],
                }
            ]
        }

        image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(
            f"Image sets found with BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and
DICOMStudyTime\n{image_sets}"
        )
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {
                    "values": [
                        {
                            "createdAt": datetime.datetime(
                                2021, 8, 4, 14, 49, 54, 429000
                            )
                        },
                        {
                            "createdAt": datetime.datetime.now()
                            + datetime.timedelta(days=1)
                        },
                    ],
                    "operator": "BETWEEN",
                }
            ]
        }

        recent_image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
```

```
        print(
            f"Image sets found with with BETWEEN operator using createdAt
\n{recent_image_sets}"
        )
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {
                    "values": [
                        {
                            "updatedAt": datetime.datetime(
                                2021, 8, 4, 14, 49, 54, 429000
                            )
                        },
                        {
                            "updatedAt": datetime.datetime.now()
                            + datetime.timedelta(days=1)
                        },
                    ],
                    "operator": "BETWEEN",
                },
                {
                    "values": [{"DICOMSeriesInstanceUID": series_instance_uid}],
                    "operator": "EQUAL",
                },
            ],
            "sort": {
                "sortOrder": "ASC",
                "sortField": "updatedAt",
            },
        }

        image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(
            "Image sets found with EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and
 BETWEEN on updatedAt and"
        )
        print(f"sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field\n{image_sets}")
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `StartDICOMImportJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartDICOMImportJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with image sets and image frames

C++

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which starts a HealthImaging import job.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param inputBucketName: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
  \param inputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
  \param outputBucketName: The name of the S3 bucket for the output.
  \param outputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket to store the output.
  \param roleArn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions for the import.
  \param importJobId: A string to receive the import job ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::startDICOMImportJob(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID, const Aws::String &inputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &inputDirectory, const Aws::String &outputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &outputDirectory, const Aws::String &roleArn,
        Aws::String &importJobId,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::String inputURI = "s3://" + inputBucketName + "/" + inputDirectory +
 "/";
    Aws::String outputURI = "s3://" + outputBucketName + "/" + outputDirectory +
 "/";
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobRequest
 startDICOMImportJobRequest;
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDataAccessRoleArn(roleArn);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetInputS3Uri(inputURI);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetOutputS3Uri(outputURI);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobOutcome
 startDICOMImportJobOutcome = medicalImagingClient.StartDICOMImportJob(
            startDICOMImportJobRequest);

    if (startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        importJobId = startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobId();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to start DICOM import job because "
                  << startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start a dicom import job

The following `start-dicom-import-job` code example starts a dicom import job.

```
aws medical-imaging start-dicom-import-job \
    --job-name "my-job" \
    --datastore-id "12345678901234567890123456789012" \
    --input-s3-uri "s3://medical-imaging-dicom-input/dicom_input/" \
    --output-s3-uri "s3://medical-imaging-output/job_output/" \
    --data-access-role-arn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
ImportJobDataAccessRole"
```

Output:

```
{
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "jobId": "09876543210987654321098765432109",
    "jobStatus": "SUBMITTED",
    "submittedAt": "2022-08-12T11:28:11.152000+00:00"
}
```

For more information, see Starting an import job in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static String startDicomImportJob(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String jobName,
            String datastoreId,
            String dataAccessRoleArn,
            String inputS3Uri,
            String outputS3Uri) {

        try {
```

```
            StartDicomImportJobRequest startDicomImportJobRequest =
 StartDicomImportJobRequest.builder()
                    .jobName(jobName)
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .dataAccessRoleArn(dataAccessRoleArn)
                    .inputS3Uri(inputS3Uri)
                    .outputS3Uri(outputS3Uri)
                    .build();
            StartDicomImportJobResponse response =
 medicalImagingClient.startDICOMImportJob(startDicomImportJobRequest);
            return response.jobId();
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { StartDICOMImportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} jobName - The name of the import job.
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} dataAccessRoleArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role
 that grants permission.
 * @param {string} inputS3Uri - The URI of the S3 bucket containing the input
 files.
```

```
 * @param {string} outputS3Uri - The URI of the S3 bucket where the output files
 are stored.
 */
export const startDicomImportJob = async (
  jobName = "test-1",
  datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012",
  dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/ImportJobDataAccessRole",
  inputS3Uri = "s3://medical-imaging-dicom-input/dicom_input/",
  outputS3Uri = "s3://medical-imaging-output/job_output/",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new StartDICOMImportJobCommand({
      jobName: jobName,
      datastoreId: datastoreId,
      dataAccessRoleArn: dataAccessRoleArn,
      inputS3Uri: inputS3Uri,
      outputS3Uri: outputS3Uri,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '6e81d191-d46b-4e48-a08a-cdcc7e11eb79',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     jobId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     jobStatus: 'SUBMITTED',
  //     submittedAt: 2023-09-22T14:48:45.767Z
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def start_dicom_import_job(
        self, job_name, datastore_id, role_arn, input_s3_uri, output_s3_uri
    ):
        """
        Start a DICOM import job.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to use for
 the job.
        :param input_s3_uri: The S3 bucket input prefix path containing the DICOM
 files.
        :param output_s3_uri: The S3 bucket output prefix path for the result.
        :return: The job ID.
        """
        try:
            job = self.health_imaging_client.start_dicom_import_job(
                jobName=job_name,
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                dataAccessRoleArn=role_arn,
                inputS3Uri=input_s3_uri,
                outputS3Uri=output_s3_uri,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start DICOM import job. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job["jobId"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `TagResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResource`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Tagging a data store
- Tagging an image set

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To tag a data store

The following `tag-resource` code examples tags a data store.

```
aws medical-imaging tag-resource \
```

```
  --resource-arn "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012" \
  --tags '{"Deployment":"Development"}'
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To tag an image set

The following `tag-resource` code examples tags an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging tag-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/18f88ac7870584f58d56256646b4d92b" \
    --tags '{"Deployment":"Development"}'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging resources with AWS HealthImaging in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static void tagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Map<String, String> tags) {
        try {
            TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tags(tags)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been added to the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { TagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 * @param {Record<string,string>} tags - The tags to add to the resource as JSON.
 *                      - For example: {"Deployment" : "Development"}
 */
export const tagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/
imageset/xxx",
  tags = {},
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new TagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tags: tags }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
```

```
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn, tags):
        """
        Tag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tags: The tags to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.tag_resource(resourceArn=resource_arn,
 tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't tag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `UntagResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagResource`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Tagging a data store
- Tagging an image set

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To untag a data store

The following `untag-resource` code example untags a data store.

```
aws medical-imaging untag-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012" \
    --tag-keys '["Deployment"]'
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To untag an image set

The following `untag-resource` code example untags an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging untag-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/18f88ac7870584f58d56256646b4d92b" \
    --tag-keys '["Deployment"]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging resources with AWS HealthImaging in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static void untagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String resourceArn,
           Collection<String> tagKeys) {
       try {
           UntagResourceRequest untagResourceRequest =
UntagResourceRequest.builder()
                   .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                   .tagKeys(tagKeys)
                   .build();

           medicalImagingClient.untagResource(untagResourceRequest);

           System.out.println("Tags have been removed from the resource.");
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { UntagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 * @param {string[]} tagKeys - The keys of the tags to remove.
 */
export const untagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/
imageset/xxx",
  tagKeys = [],
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new UntagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tagKeys: tagKeys }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 204,
  //        requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //        extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //        cfId: undefined,
  //        attempts: 1,
  //        totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }
```

```
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn, tag_keys):
        """
        Untag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.untag_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn, tagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't untag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `UpdateImageSetMetadata` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateImageSetMetadata`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To insert or update an attribute in image set metadata

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example inserts or updates an attribute in image set metadata.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --latest-version-id 1 \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --update-image-set-metadata-updates file://metadata-updates.json
```

Contents of `metadata-updates.json`

```
{
    "DICOMUpdates": {
        "updatableAttributes": "{\"SchemaVersion\":1.1,\"Patient\":{\"DICOM\":
{\"PatientName\":\"MX^MX\"}}}"
    }
```

```
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "latestVersionId": "2",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908,
    "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 2: To remove an attribute from image set metadata

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example removes an attribute from image set metadata.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --latest-version-id 1 \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --update-image-set-metadata-updates file://metadata-updates.json
```

Contents of `metadata-updates.json`

```
{
    "DICOMUpdates": {
        "removableAttributes": "{\"SchemaVersion\":1.1,\"Study\":{\"DICOM\":
{\"StudyDescription\":\"CHEST\"}}}"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "latestVersionId": "2",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908,
```

```
    "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 3: To remove an instance from image set metadata

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example removes an instance from image set metadata.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e \
    --latest-version-id 1 \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --update-image-set-metadata-updates file://metadata-updates.json
```

Contents of `metadata-updates.json`

```
{
    "DICOMUpdates": {
        "removableAttributes": "{\"SchemaVersion\": 1.1,\"Study\": {\"Series
\": {\"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1\": {\"Instances\":
 {\"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1\": {}}}}}}"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "latestVersionId": "2",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908,
    "imageSetId": "ea92b0d8838c72a3f25d00d13616f87e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 4: To revert an image set to a previous version

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example shows how to revert an image set to a prior version. CopyImageSet and UpdateImageSetMetadata actions create new versions of image sets.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id 53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e \
    --latest-version-id 3 \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --update-image-set-metadata-updates '{"revertToVersionId": "1"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "imageSetId": "53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e",
    "latestVersionId": "4",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908
}
```

Example 5: To add a private DICOM data element to an instance

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example shows how to add a private element to a specified instance within an image set. The DICOM standard permits private data elements for communication of information that cannot be contained in standard data elements. You can create, update, and delete private data elements with the UpdateImageSetMetadata action.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id 53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e \
    --latest-version-id 1 \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --force \
    --update-image-set-metadata-updates file://metadata-updates.json
```

Contents of `metadata-updates.json`

```
{
    "DICOMUpdates": {
        "updatableAttributes": "{\"SchemaVersion\": 1.1,\"Study\": {\"Series
\": {\"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1\": {\"Instances
\": {\"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1\": {\"DICOM\":
 {\"001910F9\": \"97\"},\"DICOMVRs\": {\"001910F9\": \"DS\"}}}}}}"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "latestVersionId": "2",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908,
    "imageSetId": "53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 6: To update a private DICOM data element to an instance

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example shows how to update the value of a private data element belonging to an instance within an image set.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
    --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
    --image-set-id 53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e \
    --latest-version-id 1 \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --force \
    --update-image-set-metadata-updates file://metadata-updates.json
```

Contents of `metadata-updates.json`

```
{
    "DICOMUpdates": {
        "updatableAttributes": "{\"SchemaVersion\": 1.1,\"Study\": {\"Series
\": {\"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1\": {\"Instances
\": {\"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1\": {\"DICOM\":
 {\"00091001\": \"GE_GENESIS_DD\"}}}}}}"
```

```
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "latestVersionId": "2",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908,
    "imageSetId": "53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

Example 7: To update a SOPInstanceUID with the force parameter

The following `update-image-set-metadata` example shows how to update a SOPInstanceUID, using the force parameter to override the DICOM metadata constraints.

```
aws medical-imaging update-image-set-metadata \
        --datastore-id 12345678901234567890123456789012 \
        --image-set-id 53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e \
        --latest-version-id 1 \
        --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
        --force \
        --update-image-set-metadata-updates file://metadata-updates.json
```

Contents of `metadata-updates.json`

```
{
    "DICOMUpdates": {
        "updatableAttributes": "{\"SchemaVersion\":1.1,\"Study\":{\"Series
\":{\"1.3.6.1.4.1.5962.99.1.3633258862.2104868982.1369432891697.3656.0\":
{\"Instances\":
{\"1.3.6.1.4.1.5962.99.1.3633258862.2104868982.1369432891697.3659.0\":{\"DICOM\":
{\"SOPInstanceUID\":
\"1.3.6.1.4.1.5962.99.1.3633258862.2104868982.1369432891697.3659.9\"}}}}}}}"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "latestVersionId": "2",
    "imageSetWorkflowStatus": "UPDATING",
    "updatedAt": 1680042257.908,
    "imageSetId": "53d5fdb05ca4d46ac7ca64b06545c66e",
    "imageSetState": "LOCKED",
    "createdAt": 1680027126.436,
    "datastoreId": "12345678901234567890123456789012"
}
```

For more information, see Updating image set metadata in the *AWS HealthImaging Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   /**
    * Update the metadata of an AWS HealthImaging image set.
    *
    * @param medicalImagingClient - The AWS HealthImaging client object.
    * @param datastoreId          - The datastore ID.
    * @param imageSetId           - The image set ID.
    * @param versionId            - The version ID.
    * @param metadataUpdates      - A MetadataUpdates object containing the
updates.
    * @param force                - The force flag.
    * @throws MedicalImagingException - Base exception for all service
exceptions thrown by AWS HealthImaging.
    */
   public static void updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
                                                    String datastoreId,
                                                    String imageSetId,
                                                    String versionId,
                                                    MetadataUpdates
metadataUpdates,
                                                    boolean force) {
       try {
```

```
            UpdateImageSetMetadataRequest updateImageSetMetadataRequest =
UpdateImageSetMetadataRequest
                    .builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .imageSetId(imageSetId)
                    .latestVersionId(versionId)
                    .updateImageSetMetadataUpdates(metadataUpdates)
                    .force(force)
                    .build();

            UpdateImageSetMetadataResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.updateImageSetMetadata(updateImageSetMetadataRequest);

            System.out.println("The image set metadata was updated" + response);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Use case #1: Insert or update an attribute.

```
                final String insertAttributes = """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "DICOM": {
                              "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                            }
                          }
                        }
                        """;
                MetadataUpdates metadataInsertUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .dicomUpdates(DICOMUpdates.builder()
                                .updatableAttributes(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(
                                        ByteBuffer.wrap(insertAttributes

.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8))))
                                .build())
                        .build();
```

```
                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataInsertUpdates, force);
```

Use case #2: Remove an attribute.

```
                final String removeAttributes = """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "DICOM": {
                              "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                            }
                          }
                        }
                        """;
                MetadataUpdates metadataRemoveUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .dicomUpdates(DICOMUpdates.builder()
                                .removableAttributes(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(
                                        ByteBuffer.wrap(removeAttributes

.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8))))
                                .build())
                        .build();

                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataRemoveUpdates, force);
```

Use case #3: Remove an instance.

```
                final String removeInstance = """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "Series": {

"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {
                                "Instances": {

"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {}
```

```
                                }
                              }
                            }
                          }
                        }
                        """;
                MetadataUpdates metadataRemoveUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .dicomUpdates(DICOMUpdates.builder()
                                .removableAttributes(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(
                                        ByteBuffer.wrap(removeInstance

.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8))))
                                .build())
                        .build();

                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataRemoveUpdates, force);
```

Use case #4: Revert to a previous version.

```
                // In this case, revert to previous version.
                String revertVersionId =
Integer.toString(Integer.parseInt(versionid) - 1);
                MetadataUpdates metadataRemoveUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .revertToVersionId(revertVersionId)
                        .build();
                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataRemoveUpdates, force);
```

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { UpdateImageSetMetadataCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the HealthImaging data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The ID of the HealthImaging image set.
 * @param {string} latestVersionId - The ID of the HealthImaging image set
 version.
 * @param {{}} updateMetadata - The metadata to update.
 * @param {boolean} force - Force the update.
 */
export const updateImageSetMetadata = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxx",
  latestVersionId = "1",
  updateMetadata = "{}",
  force = false,
) => {
  try {
    const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
      new UpdateImageSetMetadataCommand({
        datastoreId: datastoreId,
        imageSetId: imageSetId,
        latestVersionId: latestVersionId,
        updateImageSetMetadataUpdates: updateMetadata,
        force: force,
      }),
    );
    console.log(response);
    // {
    //     '$metadata': {
    //     httpStatusCode: 200,
    //         requestId: '7966e869-e311-4bff-92ec-56a61d3003ea',
    //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
    //         cfId: undefined,
    //         attempts: 1,
    //         totalRetryDelay: 0
    // },
    //     createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
    //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
```

```
    //     imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //     imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
    //     imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'UPDATING',
    //     latestVersionId: '4',
    //     updatedAt: 2023-09-27T19:41:43.494Z
    // }
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

Use case #1: Insert or update an attribute and force the update.

```
    const insertAttributes = JSON.stringify({
      SchemaVersion: 1.1,
      Study: {
        DICOM: {
          StudyDescription: "CT CHEST",
        },
      },
    });

    const updateMetadata = {
      DICOMUpdates: {
        updatableAttributes: new TextEncoder().encode(insertAttributes),
      },
    };

    await updateImageSetMetadata(
      datastoreID,
      imageSetID,
      versionID,
      updateMetadata,
      true,
    );
```

Use case #2: Remove an attribute.

```
    // Attribute key and value must match the existing attribute.
    const remove_attribute = JSON.stringify({
```

```
      SchemaVersion: 1.1,
      Study: {
        DICOM: {
          StudyDescription: "CT CHEST",
        },
      },
    });

    const updateMetadata = {
      DICOMUpdates: {
        removableAttributes: new TextEncoder().encode(remove_attribute),
      },
    };

    await updateImageSetMetadata(
      datastoreID,
      imageSetID,
      versionID,
      updateMetadata,
    );
```

Use case #3: Remove an instance.

```
    const remove_instance = JSON.stringify({
      SchemaVersion: 1.1,
      Study: {
        Series: {
          "1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {
            Instances: {
              "1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {},
            },
          },
        },
      },
    });

    const updateMetadata = {
      DICOMUpdates: {
        removableAttributes: new TextEncoder().encode(remove_instance),
      },
    };
```

```
    await updateImageSetMetadata(
      datastoreID,
      imageSetID,
      versionID,
      updateMetadata,
    );
```

Use case #4: Revert to an earlier version.

```
    const updateMetadata = {
      revertToVersionId: "1",
    };

    await updateImageSetMetadata(
      datastoreID,
      imageSetID,
      versionID,
      updateMetadata,
    );
```

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def update_image_set_metadata(
        self, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force=False
    ):
```

```
        """
        Update the metadata of an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The ID of the image set version.
        :param metadata: The image set metadata as a dictionary.
            For example {"DICOMUpdates": {"updatableAttributes":
            "{\"SchemaVersion\":1.1,\"Patient\":{\"DICOM\":{\"PatientName\":
\"Garcia^Gloria\"}}}"}}
        :param: force: Force the update.
        :return: The updated image set metadata.
        """
        try:
            updated_metadata =
 self.health_imaging_client.update_image_set_metadata(
                imageSetId=image_set_id,
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                latestVersionId=version_id,
                updateImageSetMetadataUpdates=metadata,
                force=force,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update image set metadata. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return updated_metadata
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

Use case #1: Insert or update an attribute.

```
            attributes = """{
```

```
                "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                "Study": {
                    "DICOM": {
                        "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                    }
                }
            }"""
        metadata = {"DICOMUpdates": {"updatableAttributes": attributes}}

        self.update_image_set_metadata(
            data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
        )
```

Use case #2: Remove an attribute.

```
        # Attribute key and value must match the existing attribute.
        attributes = """{
                "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                "Study": {
                    "DICOM": {
                        "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                    }
                }
            }"""
        metadata = {"DICOMUpdates": {"removableAttributes": attributes}}

        self.update_image_set_metadata(
            data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
        )
```

Use case #3: Remove an instance.

```
        attributes = """{
                "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                "Study": {
                    "Series": {

"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {
                            "Instances": {

"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {}
```

```
                                }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }"""
            metadata = {"DICOMUpdates": {"removableAttributes": attributes}}

            self.update_image_set_metadata(
                data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
            )
```

Use case #4: Revert to an earlier version.

```
            metadata = {"revertToVersionId": "1"}

            self.update_image_set_metadata(
                data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
            )
```

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scenarios for HealthImaging using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in HealthImaging with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within HealthImaging or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Get started with HealthImaging image sets and image frames using an AWS SDK
- Tagging a HealthImaging data store using an AWS SDK
- Tagging a HealthImaging image set using an AWS SDK

Get started with HealthImaging image sets and image frames using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to import DICOM files and download image frames in HealthImaging.

The implementation is structured as a command-line application.

- Set up resources for a DICOM import.
- Import DICOM files into a data store.
- Retrieve the image set IDs for the import job.
- Retrieve the image frame IDs for the image sets.
- Download, decode and verify the image frames.
- Clean up resources.

C++

SDK for C++

Create an AWS CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.

```
    Aws::String inputBucketName;
    Aws::String outputBucketName;
    Aws::String dataStoreId;
    Aws::String roleArn;
    Aws::String stackName;

    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to let this workflow create the resources for you?
(y/n) ")) {
        stackName = askQuestion(
                "Enter a name for the AWS CloudFormation stack to create. ");
        Aws::String dataStoreName = askQuestion(
                "Enter a name for the HealthImaging datastore to create. ");
```

```
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> outputs = createCloudFormationStack(
                stackName,
                dataStoreName,
                clientConfiguration);

        if (!retrieveOutputs(outputs, dataStoreId, inputBucketName,
outputBucketName,
                             roleArn)) {
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "The following resources have been created." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "A HealthImaging datastore with ID: " << dataStoreId << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "An Amazon S3 input bucket named: " << inputBucketName <<
"."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "An Amazon S3 output bucket named: " << outputBucketName <<
"."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "An IAM role with the ARN: " << roleArn << "." << std::endl;
        askQuestion("Enter return to continue.", alwaysTrueTest);
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "You have chosen to use preexisting resources:" <<
std::endl;
        dataStoreId = askQuestion(
                "Enter the data store ID of the HealthImaging datastore you wish
to use: ");
        inputBucketName = askQuestion(
                "Enter the name of the S3 input bucket you wish to use: ");
        outputBucketName = askQuestion(
                "Enter the name of the S3 output bucket you wish to use: ");
        roleArn = askQuestion(
                "Enter the ARN for the IAM role with the proper permissions to
import a DICOM series: ");
    }
```

Copy DICOM files to the Amazon S3 import bucket.

```
    std::cout
```

```
            << "This workflow uses DICOM files from the National Cancer Institute
Imaging Data\n"
            << "Commons (IDC) Collections." << std::endl;
   std::cout << "Here is the link to their website." << std::endl;
   std::cout << "https://registry.opendata.aws/nci-imaging-data-commons/" <<
std::endl;
   std::cout << "We will use DICOM files stored in an S3 bucket managed by the
IDC."
              << std::endl;
   std::cout
            << "First one of the DICOM folders in the IDC collection must be
copied to your\n"
               "input S3 bucket."
            << std::endl;
   std::cout << "You have the choice of one of the following "
              << IDC_ImageChoices.size() << " folders to copy." << std::endl;

   int index = 1;
   for (auto &idcChoice: IDC_ImageChoices) {
       std::cout << index << " - " << idcChoice.mDescription << std::endl;
       index++;
   }
   int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Choose DICOM files to import: ", 1, 4);

   Aws::String fromDirectory = IDC_ImageChoices[choice - 1].mDirectory;
   Aws::String inputDirectory = "input";

   std::cout << "The files in the directory '" << fromDirectory << "' in the
bucket '"
              << IDC_S3_BucketName << "' will be copied " << std::endl;
   std::cout << "to the folder '" << inputDirectory << "/" << fromDirectory
              << "' in the bucket '" << inputBucketName << "'." << std::endl;
   askQuestion("Enter return to start the copy.", alwaysTrueTest);

   if (!AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::copySeriesBetweenBuckets(
            IDC_S3_BucketName,
            fromDirectory,
            inputBucketName,
            inputDirectory, clientConfiguration)) {
       std::cerr << "This workflow will exit because of an error." << std::endl;
       cleanup(stackName, dataStoreId, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }
```

Import the DICOM files to the Amazon S3 data store.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::startDicomImport(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                               const Aws::String
 &inputBucketName,
                                               const Aws::String &inputDirectory,
                                               const Aws::String
 &outputBucketName,
                                               const Aws::String
 &outputDirectory,
                                               const Aws::String &roleArn,
                                               Aws::String &importJobId,
                                               const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    bool result = false;
    if (startDICOMImportJob(dataStoreID, inputBucketName, inputDirectory,
                            outputBucketName, outputDirectory, roleArn,
 importJobId,
                            clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cout << "DICOM import job started with job ID " << importJobId <<
 "."
                  << std::endl;
        result = waitImportJobCompleted(dataStoreID, importJobId,
 clientConfiguration);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << "DICOM import job completed." << std::endl;

        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which starts a HealthImaging import job.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param inputBucketName: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
  \param inputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
  \param outputBucketName: The name of the S3 bucket for the output.
```

```
  \param outputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket to store the output.
  \param roleArn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions for the import.
  \param importJobId: A string to receive the import job ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::startDICOMImportJob(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID, const Aws::String &inputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &inputDirectory, const Aws::String &outputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &outputDirectory, const Aws::String &roleArn,
        Aws::String &importJobId,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::String inputURI = "s3://" + inputBucketName + "/" + inputDirectory +
 "/";
    Aws::String outputURI = "s3://" + outputBucketName + "/" + outputDirectory +
 "/";
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobRequest
 startDICOMImportJobRequest;
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDataAccessRoleArn(roleArn);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetInputS3Uri(inputURI);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetOutputS3Uri(outputURI);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobOutcome
 startDICOMImportJobOutcome = medicalImagingClient.StartDICOMImportJob(
            startDICOMImportJobRequest);

    if (startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        importJobId = startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobId();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to start DICOM import job because "
                  << startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess();
}


//! Routine which waits for a DICOM import job to complete.
/*!
 * @param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
```

```
 * @param importJobId: The import job ID.
 * @param clientConfiguration : Aws client configuration.
 * @return  bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::waitImportJobCompleted(const Aws::String
 &datastoreID,
                                                      const Aws::String
 &importJobId,
                                                      const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus jobStatus =
 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus::IN_PROGRESS;
    while (jobStatus == Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus::IN_PROGRESS) {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome
 getDicomImportJobOutcome = getDICOMImportJob(
                datastoreID, importJobId,
                clientConfiguration);

        if (getDicomImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            jobStatus =
 getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobProperties().GetJobStatus();

            std::cout << "DICOM import job status: " <<

 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatusMapper::GetNameForJobStatus(
                              jobStatus) << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to get import job status because "
                      << getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    return jobStatus == Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus::COMPLETED;
}

//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging DICOM import job's properties.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
```

```
  \param importJobID: The DICOM import job ID
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return GetDICOMImportJobOutcome: The import job outcome.
*/
Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getDICOMImportJob(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                           const Aws::String &importJobID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetJobId(importJobID);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome outcome =
 client.GetDICOMImportJob(
            request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "GetDICOMImportJob error: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome;
}
```

Get image sets created by the DICOM import job.

```
bool
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetsForDicomImportJob(const Aws::String
 &datastoreID,
                                                       const Aws::String
 &importJobId,
                                                       Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &imageSets,
                                                       const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome getDicomImportJobOutcome
 = getDICOMImportJob(
            datastoreID, importJobId, clientConfiguration);
    bool result = false;
    if (getDicomImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto outputURI =
 getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobProperties().GetOutputS3Uri();
```

```
        Aws::Http::URI uri(outputURI);
        const Aws::String &bucket = uri.GetAuthority();
        Aws::String key = uri.GetPath();

        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfiguration);
        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest objectRequest;
        objectRequest.SetBucket(bucket);
        objectRequest.SetKey(key + "/" + IMPORT_JOB_MANIFEST_FILE_NAME);

        auto getObjectOutcome = s3Client.GetObject(objectRequest);
        if (getObjectOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            auto &data = getObjectOutcome.GetResult().GetBody();

            std::stringstream stringStream;
            stringStream << data.rdbuf();

            try {
                // Use JMESPath to extract the image set IDs.
                // https://jmespath.org/specification.html
                std::string jmesPathExpression =
"jobSummary.imageSetsSummary[].imageSetId";
                jsoncons::json doc = jsoncons::json::parse(stringStream.str());

                jsoncons::json imageSetsJson = jsoncons::jmespath::search(doc,

jmesPathExpression);\
                for (auto &imageSet: imageSetsJson.array_range()) {
                    imageSets.push_back(imageSet.as_string());
                }

                result = true;
            }
            catch (const std::exception &e) {
                std::cerr << e.what() << '\n';
            }

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to get object because "
                      << getObjectOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }

    }
    else {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Failed to get import job status because "
                  << getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}
```

Get image frame information for image sets.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageFramesForImageSet(const Aws::String
 &dataStoreID,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &imageSetID,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &outDirectory,

 Aws::Vector<ImageFrameInfo> &imageFrames,
                                                         const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String fileName = outDirectory + "/" + imageSetID +
 "_metadata.json.gzip";
    bool result = false;
    if (getImageSetMetadata(dataStoreID, imageSetID, "", // Empty string for
 version ID.
                            fileName, clientConfiguration)) {
        try {
            std::string metadataGZip;
            {
                std::ifstream inFileStream(fileName.c_str(), std::ios::binary);
                if (!inFileStream) {
                    throw std::runtime_error("Failed to open file " + fileName);
                }

                std::stringstream stringStream;
                stringStream << inFileStream.rdbuf();
                metadataGZip = stringStream.str();
            }
            std::string metadataJson = gzip::decompress(metadataGZip.data(),
                                                         metadataGZip.size());
            // Use JMESPath to extract the image set IDs.
            // https://jmespath.org/specification.html
```

```
            jsoncons::json doc = jsoncons::json::parse(metadataJson);
            std::string jmesPathExpression = "Study.Series.*.Instances[].*[]";
            jsoncons::json instances = jsoncons::jmespath::search(doc,

jmesPathExpression);
            for (auto &instance: instances.array_range()) {
                jmesPathExpression = "DICOM.RescaleSlope";
                std::string rescaleSlope = jsoncons::jmespath::search(instance,

jmesPathExpression).to_string();
                jmesPathExpression = "DICOM.RescaleIntercept";
                std::string rescaleIntercept =
jsoncons::jmespath::search(instance,

jmesPathExpression).to_string();

                jmesPathExpression = "ImageFrames[][]";
                jsoncons::json imageFramesJson =
jsoncons::jmespath::search(instance,

jmesPathExpression);

                for (auto &imageFrame: imageFramesJson.array_range()) {
                    ImageFrameInfo imageFrameIDs;
                    imageFrameIDs.mImageSetId = imageSetID;
                    imageFrameIDs.mImageFrameId = imageFrame.find(
                            "ID")->value().as_string();
                    imageFrameIDs.mRescaleIntercept = rescaleIntercept;
                    imageFrameIDs.mRescaleSlope = rescaleSlope;
                    imageFrameIDs.MinPixelValue = imageFrame.find(
                            "MinPixelValue")->value().as_string();
                    imageFrameIDs.MaxPixelValue = imageFrame.find(
                            "MaxPixelValue")->value().as_string();

                    jmesPathExpression =
"max_by(PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution, &Width).Checksum";
                    jsoncons::json checksumJson =
jsoncons::jmespath::search(imageFrame,

jmesPathExpression);
                    imageFrameIDs.mFullResolutionChecksum =
checksumJson.as_integer<uint32_t>();

                    imageFrames.emplace_back(imageFrameIDs);
```

```
                }
            }

            result = true;
        }
        catch (const std::exception &e) {
            std::cerr << "getImageFramesForImageSet failed because " << e.what()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging image set's metadata.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The HealthImaging image set ID.
  \param versionID: The HealthImaging image set version ID, ignored if empty.
  \param outputFilePath: The path where the metadata will be stored as gzipped
 json.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \\return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                                  const Aws::String &imageSetID,
                                                  const Aws::String &versionID,
                                                  const Aws::String
 &outputFilePath,
                                                  const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);
    if (!versionID.empty()) {
        request.SetVersionId(versionID);
    }
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataOutcome outcome =
 client.GetImageSetMetadata(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::ofstream file(outputFilePath, std::ios::binary);
        auto &metadata = outcome.GetResult().GetImageSetMetadataBlob();
```

```
        file << metadata.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get image set metadata: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Download, decode and verify image frames.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::downloadDecodeAndCheckImageFrames(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
        const Aws::Vector<ImageFrameInfo> &imageFrames,
        const Aws::String &outDirectory,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfiguration1(clientConfiguration);
    clientConfiguration1.executor =
 Aws::MakeShared<Aws::Utils::Threading::PooledThreadExecutor>(
            "executor", 25);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient(
            clientConfiguration1);

    Aws::Utils::Threading::Semaphore semaphore(0, 1);
    std::atomic<size_t> count(imageFrames.size());

    bool result = true;
    for (auto &imageFrame: imageFrames) {
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameRequest getImageFrameRequest;
        getImageFrameRequest.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
        getImageFrameRequest.SetImageSetId(imageFrame.mImageSetId);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ImageFrameInformation imageFrameInformation;
        imageFrameInformation.SetImageFrameId(imageFrame.mImageFrameId);
        getImageFrameRequest.SetImageFrameInformation(imageFrameInformation);

        auto getImageFrameAsyncLambda = [&semaphore, &result, &count, imageFrame,
 outDirectory](
                const Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient *client,
                const Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameRequest &request,
```

```
                Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameOutcome outcome,
                const std::shared_ptr<const Aws::Client::AsyncCallerContext>
 &context) {

                if (!handleGetImageFrameResult(outcome, outDirectory,
 imageFrame)) {
                    std::cerr << "Failed to download and convert image frame: "
                              << imageFrame.mImageFrameId << " from image set: "
                              << imageFrame.mImageSetId << std::endl;
                    result = false;
                }

                count--;
                if (count <= 0) {

                    semaphore.ReleaseAll();
                }
        }; // End of 'getImageFrameAsyncLambda' lambda.

        medicalImagingClient.GetImageFrameAsync(getImageFrameRequest,
                                                getImageFrameAsyncLambda);
    }

    if (count > 0) {
        semaphore.WaitOne();
    }

    if (result) {
        std::cout << imageFrames.size() << " image files were downloaded."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}

bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::decodeJPHFileAndValidateWithChecksum(
        const Aws::String &jphFile,
        uint32_t crc32Checksum) {
    opj_image_t *outputImage = jphImageToOpjBitmap(jphFile);
    if (!outputImage) {
        return false;
    }

    bool result = true;
```

```
    if (!verifyChecksumForImage(outputImage, crc32Checksum)) {
        std::cerr << "The checksum for the image does not match the expected
 value."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cerr << "File :" << jphFile << std::endl;
        result = false;
    }

    opj_image_destroy(outputImage);

    return result;
}

opj_image *
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::jphImageToOpjBitmap(const Aws::String &jphFile) {
    opj_stream_t *inFileStream = nullptr;
    opj_codec_t *decompressorCodec = nullptr;
    opj_image_t *outputImage = nullptr;
    try {
        std::shared_ptr<opj_dparameters> decodeParameters =
 std::make_shared<opj_dparameters>();
        memset(decodeParameters.get(), 0, sizeof(opj_dparameters));

        opj_set_default_decoder_parameters(decodeParameters.get());

        decodeParameters->decod_format = 1; // JP2 image format.
        decodeParameters->cod_format = 2; // BMP image format.

        std::strncpy(decodeParameters->infile, jphFile.c_str(),
                     OPJ_PATH_LEN);

        inFileStream = opj_stream_create_default_file_stream(
                decodeParameters->infile, true);
        if (!inFileStream) {
            throw std::runtime_error(
                    "Unable to create input file stream for file '" + jphFile +
 "'.");
        }

        decompressorCodec = opj_create_decompress(OPJ_CODEC_JP2);
        if (!decompressorCodec) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to create decompression codec.");
        }
```

```
        int decodeMessageLevel = 1;
        if (!setupCodecLogging(decompressorCodec, &decodeMessageLevel)) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to setup codec logging." << std::endl;
        }

        if (!opj_setup_decoder(decompressorCodec, decodeParameters.get())) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to setup decompression codec.");
        }
        if (!opj_codec_set_threads(decompressorCodec, 4)) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to set decompression codec
threads.");
        }

        if (!opj_read_header(inFileStream, decompressorCodec, &outputImage)) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to read header.");
        }

        if (!opj_decode(decompressorCodec, inFileStream,
                        outputImage)) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to decode.");
        }

        if (DEBUGGING) {
            std::cout << "image width : " << outputImage->x1 - outputImage->x0
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "image height : " << outputImage->y1 - outputImage->y0
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "number of channels: " << outputImage->numcomps
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "colorspace : " << outputImage->color_space <<
std::endl;
        }

    } catch (const std::exception &e) {
        std::cerr << e.what() << std::endl;
        if (outputImage) {
            opj_image_destroy(outputImage);
            outputImage = nullptr;
        }
    }
    if (inFileStream) {
        opj_stream_destroy(inFileStream);
    }
    if (decompressorCodec) {
```

```
        opj_destroy_codec(decompressorCodec);
    }

    return outputImage;
}

//! Template function which converts a planar image bitmap to an interleaved
 image bitmap and
//! then verifies the checksum of the bitmap.
/*!
 * @param image: The OpenJPEG image struct.
 * @param crc32Checksum: The CRC32 checksum.
 * @return  bool: Function succeeded.
 */
template<class myType>
bool verifyChecksumForImageForType(opj_image_t *image, uint32_t crc32Checksum) {
    uint32_t width = image->x1 - image->x0;
    uint32_t height = image->y1 - image->y0;
    uint32_t numOfChannels = image->numcomps;

    // Buffer for interleaved bitmap.
    std::vector<myType> buffer(width * height * numOfChannels);

    // Convert planar bitmap to interleaved bitmap.
    for (uint32_t channel = 0; channel < numOfChannels; channel++) {
        for (uint32_t row = 0; row < height; row++) {
            uint32_t fromRowStart = row / image->comps[channel].dy * width /
                                    image->comps[channel].dx;
            uint32_t toIndex = (row * width) * numOfChannels + channel;

            for (uint32_t col = 0; col < width; col++) {
                uint32_t fromIndex = fromRowStart + col / image-
>comps[channel].dx;

                buffer[toIndex] = static_cast<myType>(image-
>comps[channel].data[fromIndex]);

                toIndex += numOfChannels;
            }
        }
    }

    // Verify checksum.
    boost::crc_32_type crc32;
```

```
    crc32.process_bytes(reinterpret_cast<char *>(buffer.data()),
                        buffer.size() * sizeof(myType));

    bool result = crc32.checksum() == crc32Checksum;
    if (!result) {
        std::cerr << "verifyChecksumForImage, checksum mismatch, expected - "
                  << crc32Checksum << ", actual - " << crc32.checksum()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which verifies the checksum of an OpenJPEG image struct.
/*!
 * @param image: The OpenJPEG image struct.
 * @param crc32Checksum: The CRC32 checksum.
 * @return  bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::verifyChecksumForImage(opj_image_t *image,
                                                     uint32_t crc32Checksum) {
    uint32_t channels = image->numcomps;
    bool result = false;
    if (0 < channels) {
        // Assume the precision is the same for all channels.
        uint32_t precision = image->comps[0].prec;
        bool signedData = image->comps[0].sgnd;
        uint32_t bytes = (precision + 7) / 8;

        if (signedData) {
            switch (bytes) {
                case 1 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<int8_t>(image,

 crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 2 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<int16_t>(image,

 crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 4 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<int32_t>(image,
```

```
crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr
                            << "verifyChecksumForImage, unsupported data type,
signed bytes - "
                            << bytes << std::endl;
                    break;
            }
        }
        else {
            switch (bytes) {
                case 1 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<uint8_t>(image,

crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 2 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<uint16_t>(image,

crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 4 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<uint32_t>(image,

crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr
                            << "verifyChecksumForImage, unsupported data type,
unsigned bytes - "
                            << bytes << std::endl;
                    break;
            }
        }

        if (!result) {
            std::cerr << "verifyChecksumForImage, error bytes " << bytes
                      << " signed "
                      << signedData << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
```

```
        std::cerr << "'verifyChecksumForImage', no channels in the image."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return result;
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::cleanup(const Aws::String &stackName,
                                      const Aws::String &dataStoreId,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    bool result = true;

    if (!stackName.empty() && askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to delete the stack " + stackName + "? (y/n)")) {
        std::cout << "Deleting the image sets in the stack." << std::endl;
        result &= emptyDatastore(dataStoreId, clientConfiguration);
        printAsterisksLine();
        std::cout << "Deleting the stack." << std::endl;
        result &= deleteStack(stackName, clientConfiguration);
    }
    return result;
}

bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::emptyDatastore(const Aws::String &datastoreID,
                                             const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria emptyCriteria;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> imageSetIDs;
    bool result = false;
    if (searchImageSets(datastoreID, emptyCriteria, imageSetIDs,
                        clientConfiguration)) {
        result = true;
        for (auto &imageSetID: imageSetIDs) {
            result &= deleteImageSet(datastoreID, imageSetID,
 clientConfiguration);
        }
    }

    return result;
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - DeleteImageSet
  - GetDICOMImportJob
  - GetImageFrame
  - GetImageSetMetadata
  - SearchImageSets
  - StartDICOMImportJob

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Orchestrate steps (index.js).

```
import {
  parseScenarioArgs,
  Scenario,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  saveState,
  loadState,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";

import {
  createStack,
  deployStack,
  getAccountId,
  getDatastoreName,
  getStackName,
  outputState,
```

```
  waitForStackCreation,
} from "./deploy-steps.js";
import {
  doCopy,
  selectDataset,
  copyDataset,
  outputCopiedObjects,
} from "./dataset-steps.js";
import {
  doImport,
  outputImportJobStatus,
  startDICOMImport,
  waitForImportJobCompletion,
} from "./import-steps.js";
import {
  getManifestFile,
  outputImageSetIds,
  parseManifestFile,
} from "./image-set-steps.js";
import {
  getImageSetMetadata,
  outputImageFrameIds,
} from "./image-frame-steps.js";
import { decodeAndVerifyImages, doVerify } from "./verify-steps.js";
import {
  confirmCleanup,
  deleteImageSets,
  deleteStack,
} from "./clean-up-steps.js";

const context = {};

const scenarios = {
  deploy: new Scenario(
    "Deploy Resources",
    [
      deployStack,
      getStackName,
      getDatastoreName,
      getAccountId,
      createStack,
      waitForStackCreation,
      outputState,
      saveState,
```

```
    ],
    context,
  ),
  demo: new Scenario(
    "Run Demo",
    [
      loadState,
      doCopy,
      selectDataset,
      copyDataset,
      outputCopiedObjects,
      doImport,
      startDICOMImport,
      waitForImportJobCompletion,
      outputImportJobStatus,
      getManifestFile,
      parseManifestFile,
      outputImageSetIds,
      getImageSetMetadata,
      outputImageFrameIds,
      doVerify,
      decodeAndVerifyImages,
      saveState,
    ],
    context,
  ),
  destroy: new Scenario(
    "Clean Up Resources",
    [loadState, confirmCleanup, deleteImageSets, deleteStack],
    context,
  ),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Health Imaging Workflow",
    description:
      "Work with DICOM images using an AWS Health Imaging data store.",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes]
 [-v|--verbose]",
  });
```

```
}
```

Deploy resources (deploy-steps.js).

```
import fs from "node:fs/promises";
import path from "node:path";

import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  CreateStackCommand,
  DescribeStacksCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import { STSClient, GetCallerIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

const cfnClient = new CloudFormationClient({});
const stsClient = new STSClient({});

const __dirname = path.dirname(new URL(import.meta.url).pathname);
const cfnTemplatePath = path.join(
  __dirname,
  "../../../../../scenarios/features/healthimaging_image_sets/resources/
cfn_template.yaml",
);

export const deployStack = new ScenarioInput(
  "deployStack",
  "Do you want to deploy the CloudFormation stack?",
  { type: "confirm" },
);

export const getStackName = new ScenarioInput(
  "getStackName",
  "Enter a name for the CloudFormation stack:",
  { type: "input", skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);
```

```
export const getDatastoreName = new ScenarioInput(
  "getDatastoreName",
  "Enter a name for the HealthImaging datastore:",
  { type: "input", skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);

export const getAccountId = new ScenarioAction(
  "getAccountId",
  async (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    const command = new GetCallerIdentityCommand({});
    const response = await stsClient.send(command);
    state.accountId = response.Account;
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack,
  },
);

export const createStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "createStack",
  async (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    const stackName = state.getStackName;
    const datastoreName = state.getDatastoreName;
    const accountId = state.accountId;

    const command = new CreateStackCommand({
      StackName: stackName,
      TemplateBody: await fs.readFile(cfnTemplatePath, "utf8"),
      Capabilities: ["CAPABILITY_IAM"],
      Parameters: [
        {
          ParameterKey: "datastoreName",
          ParameterValue: datastoreName,
        },
        {
          ParameterKey: "userAccountID",
          ParameterValue: accountId,
        },
      ],
    });

    const response = await cfnClient.send(command);
    state.stackId = response.StackId;
```

```
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);

export const waitForStackCreation = new ScenarioAction(
  "waitForStackCreation",
  async (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    const command = new DescribeStacksCommand({
      StackName: state.stackId,
    });

    await retry({ intervalInMs: 10000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
      const response = await cfnClient.send(command);
      const stack = response.Stacks?.find(
        (s) => s.StackName === state.getStackName,
      );
      if (!stack || stack.StackStatus === "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS") {
        throw new Error("Stack creation is still in progress");
      }
      if (stack.StackStatus === "CREATE_COMPLETE") {
        state.stackOutputs = stack.Outputs?.reduce((acc, output) => {
          acc[output.OutputKey] = output.OutputValue;
          return acc;
        }, {});
      } else {
        throw new Error(
          `Stack creation failed with status: ${stack.StackStatus}`,
        );
      }
    });
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack,
  },
);

export const outputState = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputState",
  (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    /**
     * @type {{ stackOutputs: { DatastoreID: string, BucketName: string, RoleArn:
 string }}}
     */
    const { stackOutputs } = state;
```

```
    return `Stack creation completed. Output values:
Datastore ID: ${stackOutputs?.DatastoreID}
Bucket Name: ${stackOutputs?.BucketName}
Role ARN: ${stackOutputs?.RoleArn}
    `;
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);
```

Copy DICOM files (dataset-steps.js).

```
import {
  S3Client,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  ListObjectsV2Command,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

const s3Client = new S3Client({});

const datasetOptions = [
  {
    name: "CT of chest (2 images)",
    value: "00029d25-fb18-4d42-aaa5-a0897d1ac8f7",
  },
  {
    name: "CT of pelvis (57 images)",
    value: "00025d30-ef8f-4135-a35a-d83eff264fc1",
  },
  {
    name: "MRI of head (192 images)",
    value: "0002d261-8a5d-4e63-8e2e-0cbfac87b904",
  },
  {
    name: "MRI of breast (92 images)",
    value: "0002dd07-0b7f-4a68-a655-44461ca34096",
  },
```

```
];

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   doCopy: boolean
 * }}} State
 */

export const selectDataset = new ScenarioInput(
  "selectDataset",
  (state) => {
    if (!state.doCopy) {
      process.exit(0);
    }
    return "Select a DICOM dataset to import:";
  },
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: datasetOptions,
  },
);

export const doCopy = new ScenarioInput(
  "doCopy",
  "Do you want to copy images from the public dataset into your bucket?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
  },
);

export const copyDataset = new ScenarioAction(
  "copyDataset",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    const inputBucket = state.stackOutputs.BucketName;
    const inputPrefix = "input/";
    const selectedDatasetId = state.selectDataset;

    const sourceBucket = "idc-open-data";
    const sourcePrefix = `${selectedDatasetId}`;

    const listObjectsCommand = new ListObjectsV2Command({
      Bucket: sourceBucket,
```

```
      Prefix: sourcePrefix,
    });

    const objects = await s3Client.send(listObjectsCommand);

    const copyPromises = objects.Contents.map((object) => {
      const sourceKey = object.Key;
      const destinationKey = `${inputPrefix}${sourceKey
        .split("/")
        .slice(1)
        .join("/")}`;

      const copyCommand = new CopyObjectCommand({
        Bucket: inputBucket,
        CopySource: `/${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey}`,
        Key: destinationKey,
      });

      return s3Client.send(copyCommand);
    });

    const results = await Promise.all(copyPromises);
    state.copiedObjects = results.length;
  },
);

export const outputCopiedObjects = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputCopiedObjects",
  (state) => `${state.copiedObjects} DICOM files were copied.`,
);
```

Start import into datastore (import-steps.js).

```
import {
  MedicalImagingClient,
  StartDICOMImportJobCommand,
  GetDICOMImportJobCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
```

```
  ScenarioInput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }}} State
 */

export const doImport = new ScenarioInput(
  "doImport",
  "Do you want to import DICOM images into your datastore?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    default: true,
  },
);

export const startDICOMImport = new ScenarioAction(
  "startDICOMImport",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (!state.doImport) {
      process.exit(0);
    }
    const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});
    const inputS3Uri = `s3://${state.stackOutputs.BucketName}/input/`;
    const outputS3Uri = `s3://${state.stackOutputs.BucketName}/output/`;

    const command = new StartDICOMImportJobCommand({
      dataAccessRoleArn: state.stackOutputs.RoleArn,
      datastoreId: state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID,
      inputS3Uri,
      outputS3Uri,
    });

    const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
    state.importJobId = response.jobId;
  },
);

export const waitForImportJobCompletion = new ScenarioAction(
```

```
  "waitForImportJobCompletion",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});
    const command = new GetDICOMImportJobCommand({
      datastoreId: state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID,
      jobId: state.importJobId,
    });

    await retry({ intervalInMs: 10000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
      const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
      const jobStatus = response.jobProperties?.jobStatus;
      if (!jobStatus || jobStatus === "IN_PROGRESS") {
        throw new Error("Import job is still in progress");
      }
      if (jobStatus === "COMPLETED") {
        state.importJobOutputS3Uri = response.jobProperties.outputS3Uri;
      } else {
        throw new Error(`Import job failed with status: ${jobStatus}`);
      }
    });
  },
);

export const outputImportJobStatus = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputImportJobStatus",
  (state) =>
    `DICOM import job completed. Output location: ${state.importJobOutputS3Uri}`,
);
```

Get image set IDs (image-set-steps.js -).

```
import { S3Client, GetObjectCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
```

```
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, importJobId: string,
 * importJobOutputS3Uri: string,
 * imageSetIds: string[],
 * manifestContent: { jobSummary: { imageSetsSummary: { imageSetId: string }
[] } }
 * }} State
 */

const s3Client = new S3Client({});

export const getManifestFile = new ScenarioAction(
  "getManifestFile",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const bucket = state.stackOutputs.BucketName;
    const prefix = `output/${state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID}-DicomImport-
${state.importJobId}/`;
    const key = `${prefix}job-output-manifest.json`;

    const command = new GetObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucket,
      Key: key,
    });

    const response = await s3Client.send(command);
    const manifestContent = await response.Body.transformToString();
    state.manifestContent = JSON.parse(manifestContent);
  },
);

export const parseManifestFile = new ScenarioAction(
  "parseManifestFile",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const imageSetIds =
      state.manifestContent.jobSummary.imageSetsSummary.reduce((ids, next) => {
        return Object.assign({}, ids, {
          [next.imageSetId]: next.imageSetId,
        });
      }, {});
    state.imageSetIds = Object.keys(imageSetIds);
  },
);

export const outputImageSetIds = new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
  "outputImageSetIds",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `The image sets created by this import job are: \n${state.imageSetIds
      .map((id) => `Image set: ${id}`)
      .join("\n")}`,
);
```

Get image frame IDs (image-frame-steps.js).

```
import {
  MedicalImagingClient,
  GetImageSetMetadataCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { gunzip } from "node:zlib";
import { promisify } from "node:util";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

const gunzipAsync = promisify(gunzip);

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMValueRepresentation
 * @property {string} name
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {string} value
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ImageFrameInformation
 * @property {string} ID
 * @property {Array<{ Checksum: number, Height: number, Width: number }>}
 PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution
 * @property {number} MinPixelValue
 * @property {number} MaxPixelValue
 * @property {number} FrameSizeInBytes
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMMetadata
```

```
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {DICOMValueRepresentation[]} DICOMVRs
 * @property {ImageFrameInformation[]} ImageFrames
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Series
 * @property {{ [key: string]: DICOMMetadata }} Instances
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Study
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {Series[]} Series
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Patient
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *  SchemaVersion: string,
 *  DatastoreID: string,
 *  ImageSetID: string,
 *  Patient: Patient,
 *  Study: Study
 * }} ImageSetMetadata
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, imageSetIds: string[] }} State
 */

const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const getImageSetMetadata = new ScenarioAction(
  "getImageSetMetadata",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
```

```
    const outputMetadata = [];

    for (const imageSetId of state.imageSetIds) {
      const command = new GetImageSetMetadataCommand({
        datastoreId: state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID,
        imageSetId,
      });

      const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
      const compressedMetadataBlob =
        await response.imageSetMetadataBlob.transformToByteArray();
      const decompressedMetadata = await gunzipAsync(compressedMetadataBlob);
      const imageSetMetadata = JSON.parse(decompressedMetadata.toString());

      outputMetadata.push(imageSetMetadata);
    }

    state.imageSetMetadata = outputMetadata;
  },
);

export const outputImageFrameIds = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputImageFrameIds",
  (/** @type {State & { imageSetMetadata: ImageSetMetadata[] }} */ state) => {
    let output = "";

    for (const metadata of state.imageSetMetadata) {
      const imageSetId = metadata.ImageSetID;
      /** @type {DICOMMetadata[]} */
      const instances = Object.values(metadata.Study.Series).flatMap(
        (series) => {
          return Object.values(series.Instances);
        },
      );
      const imageFrameIds = instances.flatMap((instance) =>
        instance.ImageFrames.map((frame) => frame.ID),
      );

      output += `Image set ID: ${imageSetId}\nImage frame IDs:\n
${imageFrameIds.join(
        "\n",
      )}\n\n`;
    }
```

```
    return output;
  },
);
```

Verify image frames (verify-steps.js). The AWS HealthImaging Pixel Data Verification library was used for verification.

```
import { spawn } from "node:child_process";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMValueRepresentation
 * @property {string} name
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {string} value
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ImageFrameInformation
 * @property {string} ID
 * @property {Array<{ Checksum: number, Height: number, Width: number }>}
 PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution
 * @property {number} MinPixelValue
 * @property {number} MaxPixelValue
 * @property {number} FrameSizeInBytes
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMMetadata
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {DICOMValueRepresentation[]} DICOMVRs
 * @property {ImageFrameInformation[]} ImageFrames
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Series
 * @property {{ [key: string]: DICOMMetadata }} Instances
 */
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Study
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {Series[]} Series
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Patient
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *  SchemaVersion: string,
 *  DatastoreID: string,
 *  ImageSetID: string,
 *  Patient: Patient,
 *  Study: Study
 * }} ImageSetMetadata
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, imageSetMetadata: ImageSetMetadata[] }} State
 */

export const doVerify = new ScenarioInput(
  "doVerify",
  "Do you want to verify the imported images?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    default: true,
  },
);

export const decodeAndVerifyImages = new ScenarioAction(
  "decodeAndVerifyImages",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (!state.doVerify) {
      process.exit(0);
```

```
    }
    const verificationTool = "./pixel-data-verification/index.js";

    for (const metadata of state.imageSetMetadata) {
      const datastoreId = state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID;
      const imageSetId = metadata.ImageSetID;

      for (const [seriesInstanceUid, series] of Object.entries(
        metadata.Study.Series,
      )) {
        for (const [sopInstanceUid, _] of Object.entries(series.Instances)) {
          console.log(
            `Verifying image set ${imageSetId} with series ${seriesInstanceUid}
and sop ${sopInstanceUid}`,
          );
          const child = spawn(
            "node",
            [
              verificationTool,
              datastoreId,
              imageSetId,
              seriesInstanceUid,
              sopInstanceUid,
            ],
            { stdio: "inherit" },
          );

          await new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
            child.on("exit", (code) => {
              if (code === 0) {
                resolve();
              } else {
                reject(
                  new Error(
                    `Verification tool exited with code ${code} for image set
${imageSetId}`,
                  ),
                );
              }
            });
          });
        }
      }
    }
```

```
  },
);
```

Destroy resources (clean-up-steps.js).

```
import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  DeleteStackCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import {
  MedicalImagingClient,
  DeleteImageSetCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMValueRepresentation
 * @property {string} name
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {string} value
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ImageFrameInformation
 * @property {string} ID
 * @property {Array<{ Checksum: number, Height: number, Width: number }>}
 PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution
 * @property {number} MinPixelValue
 * @property {number} MaxPixelValue
 * @property {number} FrameSizeInBytes
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMMetadata
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {DICOMValueRepresentation[]} DICOMVRs
 * @property {ImageFrameInformation[]} ImageFrames
 */
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Series
 * @property {{ [key: string]: DICOMMetadata }} Instances
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Study
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {Series[]} Series
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Patient
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *  SchemaVersion: string,
 *  DatastoreID: string,
 *  ImageSetID: string,
 *  Patient: Patient,
 *  Study: Study
 * }} ImageSetMetadata
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, imageSetMetadata: ImageSetMetadata[] }} State
 */

const cfnClient = new CloudFormationClient({});
const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const confirmCleanup = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmCleanup",
  "Do you want to delete the created resources?",
  { type: "confirm" },
);
```

```
export const deleteImageSets = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteImageSets",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const datastoreId = state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID;

    for (const metadata of state.imageSetMetadata) {
      const command = new DeleteImageSetCommand({
        datastoreId,
        imageSetId: metadata.ImageSetID,
      });

      try {
        await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
        console.log(`Successfully deleted image set ${metadata.ImageSetID}`);
      } catch (e) {
        if (e instanceof Error) {
          if (e.name === "ConflictException") {
            console.log(`Image set ${metadata.ImageSetID} already deleted`);
          }
        }
      }
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.confirmCleanup,
  },
);

export const deleteStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteStack",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const stackName = state.getStackName;

    const command = new DeleteStackCommand({
      StackName: stackName,
    });

    await cfnClient.send(command);
    console.log(`Stack ${stackName} deletion initiated`);
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.confirmCleanup,
  },
);
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteImageSet
  - GetDICOMImportJob
  - GetImageFrame
  - GetImageSetMetadata
  - SearchImageSets
  - StartDICOMImportJob

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create an AWS CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.

```
    def deploy(self):
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
        defined in the associated `setup.yaml` AWS CloudFormation script and are
deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.
        """

        print("\t\tLet's deploy the stack for resource creation.")
        stack_name = q.ask("\t\tEnter a name for the stack: ", q.non_empty)

        data_store_name = q.ask(
            "\t\tEnter a name for the Health Imaging Data Store: ", q.non_empty
        )

        account_id = boto3.client("sts").get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        with open(
```

```
            "../../../../scenarios/features/healthimaging_image_sets/resources/
cfn_template.yaml"
        ) as setup_file:
            setup_template = setup_file.read()
        print(f"\t\tCreating {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cf_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=setup_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
            Parameters=[
                {
                    "ParameterKey": "datastoreName",
                    "ParameterValue": data_store_name,
                },
                {
                    "ParameterKey": "userAccountID",
                    "ParameterValue": account_id,
                },
            ],
        )
        print("\t\tWaiting for stack to deploy. This typically takes a minute or
 two.")
        waiter = self.cf_resource.meta.client.get_waiter("stack_create_complete")
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print(f"\t\tStack status: {stack.stack_status}")

        outputs_dictionary = {
            output["OutputKey"]: output["OutputValue"] for output in
 stack.outputs
        }
        self.input_bucket_name = outputs_dictionary["BucketName"]
        self.output_bucket_name = outputs_dictionary["BucketName"]
        self.role_arn = outputs_dictionary["RoleArn"]
        self.data_store_id = outputs_dictionary["DatastoreID"]
        return stack
```

Copy DICOM files to the Amazon S3 import bucket.

```
    def copy_single_object(self, key, source_bucket, target_bucket,
 target_directory):
```

```
        """
        Copies a single object from a source to a target bucket.

        :param key: The key of the object to copy.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket for the copy.
        :param target_bucket: The target bucket for the copy.
        :param target_directory: The target directory for the copy.
        """
        new_key = target_directory + "/" + key
        copy_source = {"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": key}
        self.s3_client.copy_object(
            CopySource=copy_source, Bucket=target_bucket, Key=new_key
        )
        print(f"\n\t\tCopying {key}.")

    def copy_images(
        self, source_bucket, source_directory, target_bucket, target_directory
    ):
        """
        Copies the images from the source to the target bucket using multiple
threads.

        :param source_bucket: The source bucket for the images.
        :param source_directory: Directory within the source bucket.
        :param target_bucket: The target bucket for the images.
        :param target_directory: Directory within the target bucket.
        """

        # Get list of all objects in source bucket.
        list_response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(
            Bucket=source_bucket, Prefix=source_directory
        )
        objs = list_response["Contents"]
        keys = [obj["Key"] for obj in objs]

        # Copy the objects in the bucket.
        for key in keys:
            self.copy_single_object(key, source_bucket, target_bucket,
target_directory)

        print("\t\tDone copying all objects.")
```

Import the DICOM files to the Amazon S3 data store.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def start_dicom_import_job(
        self,
        data_store_id,
        input_bucket_name,
        input_directory,
        output_bucket_name,
        output_directory,
        role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Routine which starts a HealthImaging import job.

        :param data_store_id: The HealthImaging data store ID.
        :param input_bucket_name: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the
 DICOM files.
        :param input_directory: The directory in the S3 bucket containing the
 DICOM files.
        :param output_bucket_name: The name of the S3 bucket for the output.
        :param output_directory: The directory in the S3 bucket to store the
 output.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions for the import.
        :return: The job ID of the import.
```

```
        """

        input_uri = f"s3://{input_bucket_name}/{input_directory}/"
        output_uri = f"s3://{output_bucket_name}/{output_directory}/"
        try:
            job = self.medical_imaging_client.start_dicom_import_job(
                jobName="examplejob",
                datastoreId=data_store_id,
                dataAccessRoleArn=role_arn,
                inputS3Uri=input_uri,
                outputS3Uri=output_uri,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start DICOM import job. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job["jobId"]
```

Get image sets created by the DICOM import job.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
```

```
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def get_image_sets_for_dicom_import_job(self, datastore_id, import_job_id):
        """
        Retrieves the image sets created for an import job.

        :param datastore_id: The HealthImaging data store ID
        :param import_job_id: The import job ID
        :return: List of image set IDs
        """

        import_job = self.medical_imaging_client.get_dicom_import_job(
            datastoreId=datastore_id, jobId=import_job_id
        )

        output_uri = import_job["jobProperties"]["outputS3Uri"]

        bucket = output_uri.split("/")[2]
        key = "/".join(output_uri.split("/")[3:])

        # Try to get the manifest.
        retries = 3
        while retries > 0:
            try:
                obj = self.s3_client.get_object(
                    Bucket=bucket, Key=key + "job-output-manifest.json"
                )
                body = obj["Body"]
                break
            except ClientError as error:
                retries = retries - 1
                time.sleep(3)
        try:
            data = json.load(body)
            expression =
jmespath.compile("jobSummary.imageSetsSummary[].imageSetId")
            image_sets = expression.search(data)
        except json.decoder.JSONDecodeError as error:
            image_sets = import_job["jobProperties"]

        return image_sets
```

```
    def get_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None):
        """
        Get the properties of an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The optional version of the image set.
        :return: The image set properties.
        """
        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set = self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:
                image_set = self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_set
```

Get image frame information for image sets.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
```

```
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def get_image_frames_for_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id,
out_directory):
        """
        Get the image frames for an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param out_directory: The directory to save the file.
        :return: The image frames.
        """
        image_frames = []
        file_name = os.path.join(out_directory,
f"{image_set_id}_metadata.json.gzip")
        file_name = file_name.replace("/", "\\\\")
        self.get_image_set_metadata(file_name, datastore_id, image_set_id)
        try:
            with gzip.open(file_name, "rb") as f_in:
                doc = json.load(f_in)
            instances = jmespath.search("Study.Series.*.Instances[].*[]", doc)
            for instance in instances:
                rescale_slope = jmespath.search("DICOM.RescaleSlope", instance)
                rescale_intercept = jmespath.search("DICOM.RescaleIntercept",
instance)
                image_frames_json = jmespath.search("ImageFrames[][]", instance)
                for image_frame in image_frames_json:
                    checksum_json = jmespath.search(
                        "max_by(PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution,
&Width)",
                        image_frame,
                    )
                    image_frame_info = {
                        "imageSetId": image_set_id,
                        "imageFrameId": image_frame["ID"],
```

```
                        "rescaleIntercept": rescale_intercept,
                        "rescaleSlope": rescale_slope,
                        "minPixelValue": image_frame["MinPixelValue"],
                        "maxPixelValue": image_frame["MaxPixelValue"],
                        "fullResolutionChecksum": checksum_json["Checksum"],
                    }
                    image_frames.append(image_frame_info)
            return image_frames
        except TypeError:
            return {}
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image frames for image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        return image_frames


    def get_image_set_metadata(
        self, metadata_file, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None
    ):
        """
        Get the metadata of an image set.

        :param metadata_file: The file to store the JSON gzipped metadata.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The version of the image set.
        """

        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set_metadata =
self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:
                image_set_metadata =
self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
```

```
                )
            with open(metadata_file, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in
 image_set_metadata["imageSetMetadataBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    if chunk:
                        f.write(chunk)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image metadata. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Download, decode and verify image frames.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def get_pixel_data(
        self, file_path_to_write, datastore_id, image_set_id, image_frame_id
    ):
        """
```

```
        Get an image frame's pixel data.

        :param file_path_to_write: The path to write the image frame's HTJ2K
 encoded pixel data.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param image_frame_id: The ID of the image frame.
        """
        try:
            image_frame = self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_frame(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                imageSetId=image_set_id,
                imageFrameInformation={"imageFrameId": image_frame_id},
            )
            with open(file_path_to_write, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in image_frame["imageFrameBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    f.write(chunk)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image frame. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def download_decode_and_check_image_frames(
        self, data_store_id, image_frames, out_directory
    ):
        """
        Downloads image frames, decodes them, and uses the checksum to validate
        the decoded images.

        :param data_store_id: The HealthImaging data store ID.
        :param image_frames: A list of dicts containing image frame information.
        :param out_directory: A directory for the downloaded images.
        :return: True if the function succeeded; otherwise, False.
        """
        total_result = True
        for image_frame in image_frames:
            image_file_path = f"{out_directory}/
image_{image_frame['imageFrameId']}.jph"
            self.get_pixel_data(
                image_file_path,
```

```
                data_store_id,
                image_frame["imageSetId"],
                image_frame["imageFrameId"],
            )

            image_array = self.jph_image_to_opj_bitmap(image_file_path)
            crc32_checksum = image_frame["fullResolutionChecksum"]
            # Verify checksum.
            crc32_calculated = zlib.crc32(image_array)
            image_result = crc32_checksum == crc32_calculated
            print(
                f"\t\tImage checksum verified for {image_frame['imageFrameId']}:
{image_result }"
            )
            total_result = total_result and image_result
        return total_result

    @staticmethod
    def jph_image_to_opj_bitmap(jph_file):
        """
        Decode the image to a bitmap using an OPENJPEG library.
        :param jph_file: The file to decode.
        :return: The decoded bitmap as an array.
        """
        # Use format 2 for the JPH file.
        params = openjpeg.utils.get_parameters(jph_file, 2)
        print(f"\n\t\tImage parameters for {jph_file}: \n\t\t{params}")

        image_array = openjpeg.utils.decode(jph_file, 2)

        return image_array
```

Clean up resources.

```
    def destroy(self, stack):
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.
```

```
        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example
 resources.
        """

        print(f"\t\tCleaning up resources and {stack.name}.")
        data_store_id = None
        for oput in stack.outputs:
            if oput["OutputKey"] == "DatastoreID":
                data_store_id = oput["OutputValue"]
        if data_store_id is not None:
            print(f"\t\tDeleting image sets in data store {data_store_id}.")
            image_sets = self.medical_imaging_wrapper.search_image_sets(
                data_store_id, {}
            )
            image_set_ids = [image_set["imageSetId"] for image_set in image_sets]

            for image_set_id in image_set_ids:
                self.medical_imaging_wrapper.delete_image_set(
                    data_store_id, image_set_id
                )
                print(f"\t\tDeleted image set with id : {image_set_id}")

        print(f"\t\tDeleting {stack.name}.")
        stack.delete()
        print("\t\tWaiting for stack removal. This may take a few minutes.")
        waiter = self.cf_resource.meta.client.get_waiter("stack_delete_complete")
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        print("\t\tStack delete complete.")




class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def search_image_sets(self, datastore_id, search_filter):
        """
        Search for image sets.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param search_filter: The search filter.
            For example: {"filters" : [{ "operator": "EQUAL", "values":
[{"DICOMPatientId": "3524578"}]}]}.
        :return: The list of image sets.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.medical_imaging_client.get_paginator("search_image_sets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                datastoreId=datastore_id, searchCriteria=search_filter
            )
            metadata_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                metadata_summaries.extend(page["imageSetsMetadataSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't search image sets. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return metadata_summaries


    def delete_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id):
        """
        Delete an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        """
        try:
```

```
            delete_results = self.medical_imaging_client.delete_image_set(
                imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteImageSet
  - GetDICOMImportJob
  - GetImageFrame
  - GetImageSetMetadata
  - SearchImageSets
  - StartDICOMImportJob

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging a HealthImaging data store using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to tag a HealthImaging data store.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

To tag a data store.

```
                final String datastoreArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
```

```
                TagResource.tagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
datastoreArn,
                                ImmutableMap.of("Deployment", "Development"));
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
   public static void tagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String resourceArn,
           Map<String, String> tags) {
       try {
           TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                   .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                   .tags(tags)
                   .build();

           medicalImagingClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);

           System.out.println("Tags have been added to the resource.");
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

To list tags for a data store.

```
                final String datastoreArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                ListTagsForResourceResponse result =
ListTagsForResource.listMedicalImagingResourceTags(
                                medicalImagingClient,
                                datastoreArn);
                if (result != null) {
                        System.out.println("Tags for resource: " +
result.tags());
                }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
    public static ListTagsForResourceResponse
 listMedicalImagingResourceTags(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn) {
        try {
            ListTagsForResourceRequest listTagsForResourceRequest =
 ListTagsForResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .build();

            return
 medicalImagingClient.listTagsForResource(listTagsForResourceRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

To untag a data store.

```
                final String datastoreArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                UntagResource.untagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
 datastoreArn,
                                Collections.singletonList("Deployment"));
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
    public static void untagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Collection<String> tagKeys) {
        try {
            UntagResourceRequest untagResourceRequest =
 UntagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
```

```
                    .tagKeys(tagKeys)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.untagResource(untagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been removed from the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

To tag a data store.

```
  try {
    const datastoreArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const tags = {
      Deployment: "Development",
    };
    await tagResource(datastoreArn, tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
import { TagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 * @param {Record<string,string>} tags - The tags to add to the resource as JSON.
 *                      - For example: {"Deployment" : "Development"}
 */
export const tagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/
imageset/xxx",
  tags = {},
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new TagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tags: tags }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 204,
  //        requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //        extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //        cfId: undefined,
  //        attempts: 1,
  //        totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To list tags for a data store.

```
  try {
    const datastoreArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
```

```
    const { tags } = await listTagsForResource(datastoreArn);
    console.log(tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
import { ListTagsForResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 */
export const listTagsForResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:abc:datastore/def/imageset/
ghi",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new ListTagsForResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '008fc6d3-abec-4870-a155-20fa3631e645',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     tags: { Deployment: 'Development' }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To untag a data store.

```
  try {
```

```
    const datastoreArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const keys = ["Deployment"];
    await untagResource(datastoreArn, keys);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
import { UntagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 * @param {string[]} tagKeys - The keys of the tags to remove.
 */
export const untagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/
imageset/xxx",
  tagKeys = [],
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new UntagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tagKeys: tagKeys }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

To tag a data store.

```
    a_data_store_arn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"

    medical_imaging_wrapper.tag_resource(data_store_arn, {"Deployment":
 "Development"})
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn, tags):
        """
        Tag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tags: The tags to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.tag_resource(resourceArn=resource_arn,
 tags=tags)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't tag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

To list tags for a data store.

```
    a_data_store_arn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"

    medical_imaging_wrapper.list_tags_for_resource(data_store_arn)
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn):
        """
        List the tags for a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :return: The list of tags.
        """
        try:
            tags = self.health_imaging_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return tags["tags"]
```

To untag a data store.

```
    a_data_store_arn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"

    medical_imaging_wrapper.untag_resource(data_store_arn, ["Deployment"])
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn, tag_keys):
        """
        Untag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.untag_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn, tagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't untag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging a HealthImaging image set using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to tag a HealthImaging image set.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

To tag an image set.

```
                final String imageSetArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                TagResource.tagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
 imageSetArn,
                                ImmutableMap.of("Deployment", "Development"));
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
    public static void tagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Map<String, String> tags) {
```

```
        try {
            TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tags(tags)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been added to the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

To list tags for an image set.

```
                final String imageSetArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                ListTagsForResourceResponse result =
 ListTagsForResource.listMedicalImagingResourceTags(
                                medicalImagingClient,
                                imageSetArn);
                if (result != null) {
                        System.out.println("Tags for resource: " +
 result.tags());
                }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
    public static ListTagsForResourceResponse
 listMedicalImagingResourceTags(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn) {
        try {
            ListTagsForResourceRequest listTagsForResourceRequest =
 ListTagsForResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .build();
```

```
            return
 medicalImagingClient.listTagsForResource(listTagsForResourceRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

To untag an image set.

```
                final String imageSetArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                UntagResource.untagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
 imageSetArn,
                                Collections.singletonList("Deployment"));
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
    public static void untagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Collection<String> tagKeys) {
        try {
            UntagResourceRequest untagResourceRequest =
 UntagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tagKeys(tagKeys)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.untagResource(untagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been removed from the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

To tag an image set.

```
  try {
    const imagesetArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const tags = {
      Deployment: "Development",
    };
    await tagResource(imagesetArn, tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
import { TagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
```

```
 * @param {Record<string,string>} tags - The tags to add to the resource as JSON.
 *                      - For example: {"Deployment" : "Development"}
 */
export const tagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/
imageset/xxx",
  tags = {},
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new TagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tags: tags }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To list tags for an image set.

```
  try {
    const imagesetArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const { tags } = await listTagsForResource(imagesetArn);
    console.log(tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
import { ListTagsForResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 */
export const listTagsForResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:abc:datastore/def/imageset/
ghi",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new ListTagsForResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '008fc6d3-abec-4870-a155-20fa3631e645',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     tags: { Deployment: 'Development' }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To untag an image set.

```
  try {
    const imagesetArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const keys = ["Deployment"];
    await untagResource(imagesetArn, keys);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
import { UntagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data
 store or image set.
 * @param {string[]} tagKeys - The keys of the tags to remove.
 */
export const untagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/
imageset/xxx",
  tagKeys = [],
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new UntagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tagKeys: tagKeys }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 204,
  //        requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //        extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //        cfId: undefined,
  //        attempts: 1,
  //        totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

To tag an image set.

```
    an_image_set_arn = (
        "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/"
        "imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012"
    )

    medical_imaging_wrapper.tag_resource(image_set_arn, {"Deployment":
 "Development"})
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn, tags):
        """
        Tag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tags: The tags to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.tag_resource(resourceArn=resource_arn,
 tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't tag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

To list tags for an image set.

```
    an_image_set_arn = (
        "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/"
        "imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012"
    )

    medical_imaging_wrapper.list_tags_for_resource(image_set_arn)
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn):
        """
        List the tags for a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :return: The list of tags.
        """
        try:
            tags = self.health_imaging_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return tags["tags"]
```

To untag an image set.

```
    an_image_set_arn = (
        "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/"
        "imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012"
    )

    medical_imaging_wrapper.untag_resource(image_set_arn, ["Deployment"])
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn, tag_keys):
        """
        Untag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.untag_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn, tagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't untag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code examples for HealthLake using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS HealthLake with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **HealthLake Developer Guide** – More information about HealthLake.
- **HealthLake API Reference** – Details about all available HealthLake actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for HealthLake using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for HealthLake using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeFHIRExportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeFHIRImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListFHIRDatastores with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListFHIRExportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListFHIRImportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTagsForResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartFHIRExportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartFHIRImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UntagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for HealthLake using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS HealthLake with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for HealthLake using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeFHIRExportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeFHIRImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListFHIRDatastores with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListFHIRExportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListFHIRImportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTagsForResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartFHIRExportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use StartFHIRImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UntagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for HealthLake using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual HealthLake actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS HealthLake API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeFHIRDatastore with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeFHIRExportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeFHIRImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListFHIRDatastores with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListFHIRExportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListFHIRImportJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartFHIRExportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartFHIRImportJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UntagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateFHIRDatastore` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateFHIRDatastore`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: Create a SigV4-enabled HealthLake data store

The following `create-fhir-datastore` example demonstrates how to create a new data store in AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake create-fhir-datastore \
    --datastore-type-version R4 \
    --datastore-name "FhirTestDatastore"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastoreEndpoint": "https://healthlake.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/datastore/
(Data store ID)/r4/",
    "DatastoreArn": "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:(AWS Account ID):datastore/
(Data store ID)",
    "DatastoreStatus": "CREATING",
    "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)"
}
```

Example 2: Create a SMART on FHIR-enabled HealthLake data store

The following `create-fhir-datastore` example demonstrates how to create a new SMART on FHIR-enabled data store in AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake create-fhir-datastore \
    --datastore-name "your-data-store-name" \
    --datastore-type-version R4 \
    --preload-data-config PreloadDataType="SYNTHEA" \
    --sse-configuration '{ "KmsEncryptionConfig": {  "CmkType":
 "CUSTOMER_MANAGED_KMS_KEY", "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:your-account-
id:key/your-key-id" } }' \
    --identity-provider-configuration  file://
identity_provider_configuration.json
```

Contents of `identity_provider_configuration.json`:

```
{
```

```
    "AuthorizationStrategy": "SMART_ON_FHIR_V1",
    "FineGrainedAuthorizationEnabled": true,
    "IdpLambdaArn": "arn:aws:lambda:your-region:your-account-id:function:your-
lambda-name",
    "Metadata": "{\"issuer\":\"https://ehr.example.com\", \"jwks_uri\":
\"https://ehr.example.com/.well-known/jwks.json\",\"authorization_endpoint
\":\"https://ehr.example.com/auth/authorize\",\"token_endpoint\":\"https://
ehr.token.com/auth/token\",\"token_endpoint_auth_methods_supported\":
[\"client_secret_basic\",\"foo\"],\"grant_types_supported\":[\"client_credential
\",\"foo\"],\"registration_endpoint\":\"https://ehr.example.com/auth/
register\",\"scopes_supported\":[\"openId\",\"profile\",\"launch\"],
\"response_types_supported\":[\"code\"],\"management_endpoint\":\"https://
ehr.example.com/user/manage\",\"introspection_endpoint\":\"https://
ehr.example.com/user/introspect\",\"revocation_endpoint\":\"https://
ehr.example.com/user/revoke\",\"code_challenge_methods_supported\":[\"S256\"],
\"capabilities\":[\"launch-ehr\",\"sso-openid-connect\",\"client-public\"]}"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastoreEndpoint": "https://healthlake.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/datastore/
(Data store ID)/r4/",
    "DatastoreArn": "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:(AWS Account ID):datastore/
(Data store ID)",
    "DatastoreStatus": "CREATING",
    "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)"
}
```

For more information, see Creating and monitoring a FHIR data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateFHIRDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
```

```
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def create_fhir_datastore(
        self,
        datastore_name: str,
        sse_configuration: dict[str, any] = None,
        identity_provider_configuration: dict[str, any] = None,
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Creates a new HealthLake data store.
        When creating a SMART on FHIR data store, the following parameters are
required:
        - sse_configuration: The server-side encryption configuration for a SMART
on FHIR-enabled data store.
        - identity_provider_configuration: The identity provider configuration
for a SMART on FHIR-enabled data store.

        :param datastore_name: The name of the data store.
        :param sse_configuration: The server-side encryption configuration for a
SMART on FHIR-enabled data store.
        :param identity_provider_configuration: The identity provider
configuration for a SMART on FHIR-enabled data store.
        :return: A dictionary containing the data store information.
        """
        try:
            parameters = {"DatastoreName": datastore_name,
"DatastoreTypeVersion": "R4"}
            if (
                sse_configuration is not None
                and identity_provider_configuration is not None
            ):
                # Creating a SMART on FHIR-enabled data store
                parameters["SseConfiguration"] = sse_configuration
                parameters[
                    "IdentityProviderConfiguration"
                ] = identity_provider_configuration
```

```
            response =
 self.health_lake_client.create_fhir_datastore(**parameters)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create data store %s. Here's why %s",
                datastore_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code shows an example of parameters for a SMART on FHIR-enabled HealthLake data store.

```
            sse_configuration = {
                "KmsEncryptionConfig": {"CmkType": "AWS_OWNED_KMS_KEY"}
            }
            # TODO: Update the metadata to match your environment.
            metadata = {
                "issuer": "https://ehr.example.com",
                "jwks_uri": "https://ehr.example.com/.well-known/jwks.json",
                "authorization_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/auth/
authorize",
                "token_endpoint": "https://ehr.token.com/auth/token",
                "token_endpoint_auth_methods_supported": [
                    "client_secret_basic",
                    "foo",
                ],
                "grant_types_supported": ["client_credential", "foo"],
                "registration_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/auth/register",
                "scopes_supported": ["openId", "profile", "launch"],
                "response_types_supported": ["code"],
                "management_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/user/manage",
                "introspection_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/user/
introspect",
                "revocation_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/user/revoke",
                "code_challenge_methods_supported": ["S256"],
                "capabilities": [
                    "launch-ehr",
                    "sso-openid-connect",
```

```
                    "client-public",
                ],
            }
            # TODO: Update the IdpLambdaArn.
            identity_provider_configuration = {
                "AuthorizationStrategy": "SMART_ON_FHIR_V1",
                "FineGrainedAuthorizationEnabled": True,
                "IdpLambdaArn": "arn:aws:lambda:your-region:your-account-
id:function:your-lambda-name",
                "Metadata": json.dumps(metadata),
            }
            data_store = self.create_fhir_datastore(
                datastore_name, sse_configuration,
 identity_provider_configuration
            )
```

- For API details, see CreateFHIRDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `DeleteFHIRDatastore` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFHIRDatastore`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a FHIR data store

The following `delete-fhir-datastore` example demonstrates how to delete a data store and all of its contents in AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake delete-fhir-datastore \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID)
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastoreEndpoint": "https://healthlake.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/datastore/
(Data store ID)/r4/",
    "DatastoreArn": "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:(AWS Account ID):datastore/
(Data store ID)",
    "DatastoreStatus": "DELETING",
    "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)"
}
```

For more information, see Creating and monitoring a FHIR data store <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/healthlake/latest/devguide/working-with-FHIR-healthlake.html> in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteFHIRDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
 client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
 HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def delete_fhir_datastore(self, datastore_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a HealthLake data store.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        """
        try:

 self.health_lake_client.delete_fhir_datastore(DatastoreId=datastore_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't delete data store with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                datastore_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFHIRDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `DescribeFHIRDatastore` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeFHIRDatastore`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a FHIR data store

The following `describe-fhir-datastore` example demonstrates how to find the properties of a data store in AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake describe-fhir-datastore \
    --datastore-id "1f2f459836ac6c513ce899f9e4f66a59"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastoreProperties": {
        "PreloadDataConfig": {
            "PreloadDataType": "SYNTHEA"
        },
        "SseConfiguration": {
            "KmsEncryptionConfig": {
                "CmkType": "CUSTOMER_MANAGED_KMS_KEY",
```

```
                "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:123456789012:key/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111"
            }
        },
        "DatastoreName": "Demo",
        "DatastoreArn": "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:<AWS Account ID>:datastore/
<Data store ID>",
        "DatastoreEndpoint": "https://healthlake.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/
datastore/<Data store ID>/r4/",
        "DatastoreStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "DatastoreTypeVersion": "R4",
        "CreatedAt": 1603761064.881,
        "DatastoreId": "<Data store ID>",
        "IdentityProviderConfiguration": {
            "AuthorizationStrategy": "AWS_AUTH",
            "FineGrainedAuthorizationEnabled": false
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating and monitoring a FHIR data stores in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
 client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
 HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def describe_fhir_datastore(self, datastore_id: str) -> dict[str, any]:
```

```
        """
        Describes a HealthLake data store.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :return: The data store description.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.describe_fhir_datastore(
                DatastoreId=datastore_id
            )
            return response["DatastoreProperties"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't describe data store with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                datastore_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `DescribeFHIRExportJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeFHIRExportJob`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a FHIR export job

The following `describe-fhir-export-job` example shows how to find the properties of a FHIR export job in AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake describe-fhir-export-job \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID) \
```

```
    --job-id 9b9a51943afaedd0a8c0c26c49135a31
```

Output:

```
{
    "ExportJobProperties": {
        "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::(AWS Account ID):role/(Role Name)",
        "JobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "JobId": "9009813e9d69ba7cf79bcb3468780f16",
        "SubmitTime": "2024-11-20T11:31:46.672000-05:00",
        "EndTime": "2024-11-20T11:34:01.636000-05:00",
        "OutputDataConfig": {
            "S3Configuration": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://(Bucket Name)/(Prefix Name)/",
            "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:012345678910:key/d330e7fc-
b56c-4216-a250-f4c43ef46e83"
        }

        },
        "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Exporting files from a FHIR data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRExportJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
 client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
 HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
```

```
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def describe_fhir_export_job(
        self, datastore_id: str, job_id: str
    ) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a HealthLake export job.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_id: The export job ID.
        :return: The export job description.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.describe_fhir_export_job(
                DatastoreId=datastore_id, JobId=job_id
            )
            return response["ExportJobProperties"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't describe export job with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                job_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRExportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `DescribeFHIRImportJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeFHIRImportJob`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a FHIR import job

The following `describe-fhir-import-job` example shows how to learn the properties of a FHIR import job using AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake describe-fhir-import-job \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID) \
    --job-id c145fbb27b192af392f8ce6e7838e34f
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImportJobProperties": {
    "InputDataConfig": {
        "S3Uri": "s3://(Bucket Name)/(Prefix Name)/"
        { "arrayitem2": 2 }
    },
    "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::(AWS Account ID):role/(Role Name)",
    "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
    "JobId": "c145fbb27b192af392f8ce6e7838e34f",
    "SubmitTime": 1606272542.161,
    "EndTime": 1606272609.497,
    "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Importing files to a FHIR data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRImportJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
```

```
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def describe_fhir_import_job(
        self, datastore_id: str, job_id: str
    ) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a HealthLake import job.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_id: The import job ID.
        :return: The import job description.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.describe_fhir_import_job(
                DatastoreId=datastore_id, JobId=job_id
            )
            return response["ImportJobProperties"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't describe import job with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                job_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListFHIRDatastores` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListFHIRDatastores`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list FHIR data stores

The following `list-fhir-datastores` example shows to how to use the command and how users can filter results based on data store status in AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake list-fhir-datastores \
    --filter DatastoreStatus=ACTIVE
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastorePropertiesList": [
    {
        "PreloadDataConfig": {
            "PreloadDataType": "SYNTHEA"
        },
        "SseConfiguration": {
            "KmsEncryptionConfig": {
                "CmkType": "CUSTOMER_MANAGED_KMS_KEY",
                "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:123456789012:key/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111"
            }
        },
        "DatastoreName": "Demo",
        "DatastoreArn": "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:<AWS Account ID>:datastore/
<Data store ID>",
        "DatastoreEndpoint": "https://healthlake.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/
datastore/<Data store ID>/r4/",
        "DatastoreStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "DatastoreTypeVersion": "R4",
        "CreatedAt": 1603761064.881,
        "DatastoreId": "<Data store ID>",
        "IdentityProviderConfiguration": {
            "AuthorizationStrategy": "AWS_AUTH",
            "FineGrainedAuthorizationEnabled": false
```

```
        }
    }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating and monitoring a FHIR data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListFHIRDatastores in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_fhir_datastores(self) -> list[dict[str, any]]:
        """
        Lists all HealthLake data stores.
        :return: A list of data store descriptions.
        """
        try:
            next_token = None
            datastores = []

            # Loop through paginated results.
            while True:
                parameters = {}
                if next_token is not None:
                    parameters["NextToken"] = next_token
                response =
self.health_lake_client.list_fhir_datastores(**parameters)
```

```
                datastores.extend(response["DatastorePropertiesList"])
                if "NextToken" in response:
                    next_token = response["NextToken"]
                else:
                    break

            return datastores
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why %s", err.response["Error"]
["Message"]
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFHIRDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListFHIRExportJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListFHIRExportJobs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all FHIR export jobs

The following `list-fhir-export-jobs` example shows how to use the command to view a list of export jobs associated with an account.

```
aws healthlake list-fhir-export-jobs \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID) \
    --submitted-before (DATE like 2024-10-13T19:00:00Z)\
    --submitted-after (DATE like 2020-10-13T19:00:00Z )\
    --job-name "FHIR-EXPORT" \
    --job-status SUBMITTED  \
```

```
    --max-results (Integer between 1 and 500)
```

Output:

```
{
    "ExportJobPropertiesList": [
        {
            "ExportJobProperties": {
                "OutputDataConfig": {
                    "S3Uri": "s3://(Bucket Name)/(Prefix Name)/",
                    "S3Configuration": {
                        "S3Uri": "s3://(Bucket Name)/(Prefix Name)/",
                        "KmsKeyId": "(KmsKey Id)"
                    }
                },
                "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::(AWS Account ID):role/(Role
 Name)",
                "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
                "JobId": "c145fbb27b192af392f8ce6e7838e34f",
                "JobName": "FHIR-EXPORT",
                "SubmitTime": "2024-11-20T11:31:46.672000-05:00",
                "EndTime": "2024-11-20T11:34:01.636000-05:00",
                "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Exporting files from a FHIR data store in the AWS HealthLake Developer Guide.

- For API details, see ListFHIRExportJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_fhir_export_jobs(
        self,
        datastore_id: str,
        job_name: str = None,
        job_status: str = None,
        submitted_before: datetime = None,
        submitted_after: datetime = None,
    ) -> list[dict[str, any]]:
        """
        Lists HealthLake export jobs satisfying the conditions.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_name: The export job name.
        :param job_status: The export job status.
        :param submitted_before: The export job submitted before the specified
date.
        :param submitted_after: The export job submitted after the specified
date.
        :return: A list of export jobs.
        """
        try:
            parameters = {"DatastoreId": datastore_id}
            if job_name is not None:
                parameters["JobName"] = job_name
            if job_status is not None:
                parameters["JobStatus"] = job_status
            if submitted_before is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedBefore"] = submitted_before
            if submitted_after is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedAfter"] = submitted_after
            next_token = None
            jobs = []
            # Loop through paginated results.
            while True:
                if next_token is not None:
                    parameters["NextToken"] = next_token
```

```
                response =
 self.health_lake_client.list_fhir_export_jobs(**parameters)
                jobs.extend(response["ExportJobPropertiesList"])
                if "NextToken" in response:
                    next_token = response["NextToken"]
                else:
                    break
            return jobs
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list export jobs. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFHIRExportJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListFHIRImportJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListFHIRImportJobs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all FHIR import jobs

The following `list-fhir-import-jobs` example shows how to use the command to view a list of all import jobs associated with an account.

```
aws healthlake list-fhir-import-jobs \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID) \
    --submitted-before (DATE like 2024-10-13T19:00:00Z) \
    --submitted-after (DATE like 2020-10-13T19:00:00Z ) \
```

```
    --job-name "FHIR-IMPORT" \
    --job-status SUBMITTED  \
    -max-results (Integer between 1 and 500)
```

Output:

```
{
    "ImportJobPropertiesList": [
        {
            "JobId": "c0fddbf76f238297632d4aebdbfc9ddf",
            "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "SubmitTime": "2024-11-20T10:08:46.813000-05:00",
            "EndTime": "2024-11-20T10:10:09.093000-05:00",
            "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)",
            "InputDataConfig": {
                "S3Uri": "s3://(Bucket Name)/(Prefix Name)/"
            },
            "JobOutputDataConfig": {
                "S3Configuration": {
                    "S3Uri": "s3://(Bucket Name)/
import/6407b9ae4c2def3cb6f1a46a0c599ec0-FHIR_IMPORT-
c0fddbf76f238297632d4aebdbfc9ddf/",
                    "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:123456789012:key/b7f645cb-
e564-4981-8672-9e012d1ff1a0"
                }
            },
            "JobProgressReport": {
                "TotalNumberOfScannedFiles": 1,
                "TotalSizeOfScannedFilesInMB": 0.001798,
                "TotalNumberOfImportedFiles": 1,
                "TotalNumberOfResourcesScanned": 1,
                "TotalNumberOfResourcesImported": 1,
                "TotalNumberOfResourcesWithCustomerError": 0,
                "TotalNumberOfFilesReadWithCustomerError": 0,
                "Throughput": 0.0
            },
            "DataAccessRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::(AWS Account ID):role/(Role Name)"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Importing files to FHIR data store in the AWS HealthLake Developer Guide.

- For API details, see ListFHIRImportJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_fhir_import_jobs(
        self,
        datastore_id: str,
        job_name: str = None,
        job_status: str = None,
        submitted_before: datetime = None,
        submitted_after: datetime = None,
    ) -> list[dict[str, any]]:
        """
        Lists HealthLake import jobs satisfying the conditions.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_name: The import job name.
        :param job_status: The import job status.
        :param submitted_before: The import job submitted before the specified
date.
        :param submitted_after: The import job submitted after the specified
date.
        :return: A list of import jobs.
        """
        try:
            parameters = {"DatastoreId": datastore_id}
            if job_name is not None:
                parameters["JobName"] = job_name
            if job_status is not None:
```

```
                parameters["JobStatus"] = job_status
            if submitted_before is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedBefore"] = submitted_before
            if submitted_after is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedAfter"] = submitted_after
            next_token = None
            jobs = []
            # Loop through paginated results.
            while True:
                if next_token is not None:
                    parameters["NextToken"] = next_token
                response =
self.health_lake_client.list_fhir_import_jobs(**parameters)
                jobs.extend(response["ImportJobPropertiesList"])
                if "NextToken" in response:
                    next_token = response["NextToken"]
                else:
                    break
            return jobs
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list import jobs. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFHIRImportJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `ListTagsForResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list tags for a data store

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists the tags associated with the specified data store.:

```
aws healthlake list-tags-for-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:123456789012:datastore/fhir/0725c83f4307f263e16fd56b6d8ebdbe"
```

Output:

```
{
    "tags": {
        "key": "value",
        "key1": "value1"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Tagging resources in AWS HealthLake in the AWS HealthLake Developer Guide.

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)
```

```
    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn: str) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Lists the tags for a HealthLake resource.
        :param resource_arn: The resource ARN.
        :return: The tags for the resource.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                ResourceARN=resource_arn
            )
            return response["Tags"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource %s. Here's why %s",
                resource_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `StartFHIRExportJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartFHIRExportJob`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start a FHIR export job

The following `start-fhir-export-job` example shows how to start a FHIR export job using AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake start-fhir-export-job \
    --output-data-config '{"S3Configuration": {"S3Uri":"s3://(Bucket Name)/
(Prefix Name)/","KmsKeyId":"arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:012345678910:key/d330e7fc-
b56c-4216-a250-f4c43ef46e83"}}' \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID) \
    --data-access-role-arn arn:aws:iam::(AWS Account ID):role/(Role Name)
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)",
    "JobStatus": "SUBMITTED",
    "JobId": "9b9a51943afaedd0a8c0c26c49135a31"
}
```

For more information, see Exporting files from a FHIR data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartFHIRExportJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
 client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
 HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def start_fhir_export_job(
        self,
        job_name: str,
        datastore_id: str,
        output_s3_uri: str,
```

```
        kms_key_id: str,
        data_access_role_arn: str,
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Starts a HealthLake export job.
        :param job_name: The export job name.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param output_s3_uri: The output S3 URI.
        :param kms_key_id: The KMS key ID associated with the output S3 bucket.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The data access role ARN.
        :return: The export job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.start_fhir_export_job(
                OutputDataConfig={
                    "S3Configuration": {"S3Uri": output_s3_uri, "KmsKeyId":
kms_key_id}
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                DatastoreId=datastore_id,
                JobName=job_name,
            )

            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't start export job. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartFHIRExportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `StartFHIRImportJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartFHIRImportJob`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start a FHIR import job

The following `start-fhir-import-job` example shows how to start a FHIR import job using AWS HealthLake.

```
aws healthlake start-fhir-import-job \
    --input-data-config S3Uri="s3://(Bucket Name)/(Prefix Name)/" \
    --job-output-data-config '{"S3Configuration": {"S3Uri":"s3://(Bucket Name)/
(Prefix Name)/","KmsKeyId":"arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:012345678910:key/d330e7fc-
b56c-4216-a250-f4c43ef46e83"}}' \
    --datastore-id (Data store ID) \
    --data-access-role-arn "arn:aws:iam::(AWS Account ID):role/(Role Name)"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DatastoreId": "(Data store ID)",
    "JobStatus": "SUBMITTED",
    "JobId": "c145fbb27b192af392f8ce6e7838e34f"
}
```

For more information, see Importing files to a FHIR data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartFHIRImportJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
```

```
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def start_fhir_import_job(
        self,
        job_name: str,
        datastore_id: str,
        input_s3_uri: str,
        job_output_s3_uri: str,
        kms_key_id: str,
        data_access_role_arn: str,
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Starts a HealthLake import job.
        :param job_name: The import job name.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param input_s3_uri: The input S3 URI.
        :param job_output_s3_uri: The job output S3 URI.
        :param kms_key_id: The KMS key ID associated with the output S3 bucket.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The data access role ARN.
        :return: The import job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.start_fhir_import_job(
                JobName=job_name,
                InputDataConfig={"S3Uri": input_s3_uri},
                JobOutputDataConfig={
                    "S3Configuration": {
                        "S3Uri": job_output_s3_uri,
                        "KmsKeyId": kms_key_id,
                    }
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                DatastoreId=datastore_id,
            )
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't start import job. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartFHIRImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `TagResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a tag to data store

The following `tag-resource` example shows how to add a tag to a data store.

```
aws healthlake tag-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:123456789012:datastore/
fhir/0725c83f4307f263e16fd56b6d8ebdbe" \
    --tags '[{"Key": "key1", "Value": "value1"}]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Adding a tag to a data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide.*.

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn: str, tags: list[dict[str, str]]) ->
None:
        """
        Tags a HealthLake resource.
        :param resource_arn: The resource ARN.
        :param tags: The tags to add to the resource.
        """
        try:
            self.health_lake_client.tag_resource(ResourceARN=resource_arn,
Tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't tag resource %s. Here's why %s",
                resource_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use `UntagResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove tags from a data store.

The following `untag-resource` example shows how to remove tags from a data store.

```
aws healthlake untag-resource \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:healthlake:us-east-1:123456789012:datastore/fhir/
b91723d65c6fdeb1d26543a49d2ed1fa" \
    --tag-keys '["key1"]'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Removing tags from a data store in the *AWS HealthLake Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake
client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
```

```
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn: str, tag_keys: list[str]) -> None:
        """
        Untags a HealthLake resource.
        :param resource_arn: The resource ARN.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove from the resource.
        """
        try:
            self.health_lake_client.untag_resource(
                ResourceARN=resource_arn, TagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't untag resource %s. Here's why %s",
                resource_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code examples for IAM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Identity and Access Management with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **IAM User Guide** – More information about IAM.
- **IAM API Reference** – Details about all available IAM actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace IAMActions;

public class HelloIAM
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Getting started with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM). List
        // the policies for the account.
        var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient();

        var listPoliciesPaginator = iamClient.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
 ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();
```

```
        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Here are the policies defined for your account:\n");
        policies.ForEach(policy =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
 {policy.CreateDate}\t{policy.PolicyName}\t{policy.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS iam)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_iam")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
```

```
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_iam.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the iam.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/iam/IAMClient.h>
#include <aws/iam/model/ListPoliciesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>

/*
```

```
 *  A "Hello IAM" starter application which initializes an AWS Identity and
 Access Management (IAM) client
 *  and lists the IAM policies.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_iam'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT("%Y-%m-%d");
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::IAM::IAMClient iamClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::IAM::Model::ListPoliciesRequest request;

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done) {
            auto outcome = iamClient.ListPolicies(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Failed to list iam policies: " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }

            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                          std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                          std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::setw(12) <<
                          "CreateDate" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }
```

```
            const auto &policies = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicies();
            for (const auto &policy: policies) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                          policy.GetPolicyName() << std::setw(30) <<
                          policy.GetPolicyId() << std::setw(80) <<
 policy.GetArn() <<
                          std::setw(64) << policy.GetDescription() <<
 std::setw(12) <<
                          policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str())
 <<
                          std::endl;
            }

            if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
                request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
            } else {
                done = true;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main
```

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an AWS Identity and Access
 Management (IAM)
// client and list up to 10 policies in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxPols = 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v policies for your account.\n", maxPols)
 result, err := iamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPols),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list policies for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Policies) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any policies!")
 } else {
  for _, policy := range result.Policies {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *policy.PolicyName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListPoliciesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.Policy;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloIAM {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listPolicies(iam);
    }

    public static void listPolicies(IamClient iam) {
        ListPoliciesResponse response = iam.listPolicies();
        List<Policy> polList = response.policies();
        polList.forEach(policy -> {
            System.out.println("Policy Name: " + policy.policyName());
```

```
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { IAMClient, paginateListPolicies } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listLocalPolicies = async () => {
  /**
   * In v3, the clients expose paginateOperationName APIs that are written using
 async generators so that you can use async iterators in a for await..of loop.
   * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators
   */
  const paginator = paginateListPolicies(
    { client, pageSize: 10 },
    // List only customer managed policies.
    { Scope: "Local" },
  );

  console.log("IAM policies defined in your account:");
  let policyCount = 0;
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    if (page.Policies) {
      for (const policy of page.Policies) {
        console.log(`${policy.PolicyName}`);
        policyCount++;
      }
    }
```

```
  }
  console.log(`Found ${policyCount} policies.`);
};
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def main():
    """
    Lists the managed policies in your AWS account using the AWS SDK for Python
 (Boto3).
    """
    iam = boto3.client("iam")

    try:
        # Get a paginator for the list_policies operation
        paginator = iam.get_paginator("list_policies")

        # Iterate through the pages of results
        for page in paginator.paginate(Scope="All", OnlyAttached=False):
            for policy in page["Policies"]:
                print(f"Policy name: {policy['PolicyName']}")
                print(f"  Policy ARN: {policy['Arn']}")
    except boto3.exceptions.BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Encountered an error while listing policies: {e}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-iam'
require 'logger'

# IAMManager is a class responsible for managing IAM operations
# such as listing all IAM policies in the current AWS account.
class IAMManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all IAM policies in the current AWS account.
  def list_policies
    @logger.info('Here are the IAM policies in your account:')

    paginator = @client.list_policies
    policies = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      policies.concat(page.policies)
    end

    if policies.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any IAM policies.")
    else
```

```
      policies.each do |policy|
        @logger.info("- #{policy.policy_name}")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new
  manager = IAMManager.new(iam_client)
  manager.list_policies
end
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

From src/bin/hello.rs.

```
use aws_sdk_iam::error::SdkError;
use aws_sdk_iam::operation::list_policies::ListPoliciesError;
use clap::Parser;

const PATH_PREFIX_HELP: &str = "The path prefix for filtering the results.";

#[derive(Debug, clap::Parser)]
#[command(about)]
struct HelloScenarioArgs {
    #[arg(long, default_value="/", help=PATH_PREFIX_HELP)]
    pub path_prefix: String,
}
```

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let client = aws_sdk_iam::Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let args = HelloScenarioArgs::parse();

    iam_service::list_policies(client, args.path_prefix).await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

From src/iam-service-lib.rs.

```
pub async fn list_policies(
    client: iamClient,
    path_prefix: String,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let list_policies = client
        .list_policies()
        .path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .scope(PolicyScopeType::Local)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .try_collect()
        .await?;

    let policy_names = list_policies
        .into_iter()
        .map(|p| {
            let name = p
                .policy_name
                .unwrap_or_else(|| "Missing Policy Name".to_string());
            println!("{}", name);
            name
        })
        .collect();

    Ok(policy_names)
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for IAM using AWS SDKs
  - Hello IAM
  - Learn the basics of IAM with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for IAM using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
    - Use AddRoleToInstanceProfile with a CLI
    - Use AddUserToGroup with a CLI
    - Use AttachGroupPolicy with a CLI
    - Use AttachRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AttachUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ChangePassword with a CLI
    - Use CreateAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateAccountAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateInstanceProfile with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateLoginProfile with a CLI
    - Use CreateOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
    - Use CreatePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreatePolicyVersion with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateSAMLProvider with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateServiceLinkedRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateVirtualMfaDevice with a CLI
    - Use DeactivateMfaDevice with a CLI
    - Use DeleteAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteAccountAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteInstanceProfile with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePolicyVersion with a CLI
- Use DeleteRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use DeleteRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSAMLProvider with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteServiceLinkedRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSigningCertificate with a CLI
- Use DeleteUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use DeleteUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVirtualMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use DetachGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use DetachRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use GenerateCredentialReport with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails with a CLI
- Use GetAccessKeyLastUsed with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountAuthorizationDetails with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountPasswordPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetAccountSummary with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetCredentialReport with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetGroup with a CLI
- Use GetGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetInstanceProfile with a CLI
- Use GetLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use GetOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use GetPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetPolicyVersion with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRolePolicy with a CLI
- Use GetSamlProvider with a CLI
- Use GetServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetServiceLastAccessedDetails with a CLI
- Use GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities with a CLI
- Use GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUserPolicy with a CLI
- Use ListAccessKeys with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAccountAliases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAttachedGroupPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListAttachedRolePolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAttachedUserPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListEntitiesForPolicy with a CLI
- Use ListGroupPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListGroupsForUser with a CLI
- Use ListInstanceProfiles with a CLI

- Use ListInstanceProfilesForRole with a CLI

- Use ListMfaDevices with a CLI
- Use ListOpenIdConnectProviders with a CLI
- Use ListPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPolicyVersions with a CLI
- Use ListRolePolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListRoleTags with a CLI
- Use ListRoles with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSAMLProviders with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListServerCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSigningCertificates with a CLI
- Use ListUserPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUserTags with a CLI
- Use ListUsers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListVirtualMfaDevices with a CLI
- Use PutGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutRolePermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use PutRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutUserPermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use PutUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile with a CLI
- Use RemoveUserFromGroup with a CLI
- Use ResyncMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use SetDefaultPolicyVersion with a CLI
- Use TagRole with a CLI
- Use TagUser with a CLI
- Use UntagRole with a CLI
- Use UntagUser with a CLI
- Use UpdateAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy with a CLI

- Use UpdateAssumeRolePolicy with a CLI
- Use UpdateGroup with a CLI
- Use UpdateLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint with a CLI
- Use UpdateRole with a CLI
- Use UpdateRoleDescription with a CLI
- Use UpdateSamlProvider with a CLI
- Use UpdateServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateSigningCertificate with a CLI
- Use UpdateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadSigningCertificate with a CLI

- Scenarios for IAM using AWS SDKs
  - Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK
  - Create read-only and read-write IAM users using an AWS SDK
  - Manage IAM access keys using an AWS SDK
  - Manage IAM policies using an AWS SDK
  - Manage IAM roles using an AWS SDK
  - Manage your IAM account using an AWS SDK
  - Roll back an IAM policy version using an AWS SDK
  - Set up Attribute-Based Access Control for DynamoDB using AWS Command Line Interface v2
  - Work with DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live using AWS Command Line Interface v2
  - Work with the IAM Policy Builder API using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for IAM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Identity and Access Management with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello IAM
- Learn the basics of IAM with an AWS SDK

- Actions for IAM using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
  - Use AddRoleToInstanceProfile with a CLI
  - Use AddUserToGroup with a CLI
  - Use AttachGroupPolicy with a CLI
  - Use AttachRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AttachUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ChangePassword with a CLI
  - Use CreateAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateAccountAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateInstanceProfile with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateLoginProfile with a CLI
  - Use CreateOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
  - Use CreatePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreatePolicyVersion with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateSAMLProvider with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateServiceLinkedRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateVirtualMfaDevice with a CLI
  - Use DeactivateMfaDevice with a CLI
  - Use DeleteAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAccountAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy with a CLI
  - Use DeleteGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteGroupPolicy with a CLI
  - Use DeleteInstanceProfile with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteLoginProfile with a CLI

  - Use DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI

- Use DeletePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePolicyVersion with a CLI
- Use DeleteRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use DeleteRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSAMLProvider with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteServiceLinkedRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSigningCertificate with a CLI
- Use DeleteUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use DeleteUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVirtualMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use DetachGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use DetachRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use GenerateCredentialReport with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails with a CLI
- Use GetAccessKeyLastUsed with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountAuthorizationDetails with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountPasswordPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountSummary with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetCredentialReport with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetGroup with a CLI
- Use GetGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetInstanceProfile with a CLI

- Use GetLoginProfile with a CLI

- Use GetOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use GetPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetPolicyVersion with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRolePolicy with a CLI
- Use GetSamlProvider with a CLI
- Use GetServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetServiceLastAccessedDetails with a CLI
- Use GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities with a CLI
- Use GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUserPolicy with a CLI
- Use ListAccessKeys with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAccountAliases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAttachedGroupPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListAttachedRolePolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAttachedUserPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListEntitiesForPolicy with a CLI
- Use ListGroupPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListGroupsForUser with a CLI
- Use ListInstanceProfiles with a CLI
- Use ListInstanceProfilesForRole with a CLI
- Use ListMfaDevices with a CLI
- Use ListOpenIdConnectProviders with a CLI
- Use ListPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPolicyVersions with a CLI
- Use ListRolePolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListRoleTags with a CLI

- Use ListRoles with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ListSAMLProviders with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListServerCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSigningCertificates with a CLI
- Use ListUserPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUserTags with a CLI
- Use ListUsers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListVirtualMfaDevices with a CLI
- Use PutGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutRolePermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use PutRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutUserPermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use PutUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile with a CLI
- Use RemoveUserFromGroup with a CLI
- Use ResyncMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use SetDefaultPolicyVersion with a CLI
- Use TagRole with a CLI
- Use TagUser with a CLI
- Use UntagRole with a CLI
- Use UntagUser with a CLI
- Use UpdateAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssumeRolePolicy with a CLI
- Use UpdateGroup with a CLI
- Use UpdateLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint with a CLI
- Use UpdateRole with a CLI
- Use UpdateRoleDescription with a CLI

- Use UpdateSamlProvider with a CLI

- Use UpdateServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateSigningCertificate with a CLI
- Use UpdateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadSigningCertificate with a CLI

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace IAMActions;

public class HelloIAM
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Getting started with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM). List
        // the policies for the account.
        var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient();

        var listPoliciesPaginator = iamClient.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
 ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Here are the policies defined for your account:\n");
```

```
        policies.ForEach(policy =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
 {policy.CreateDate}\t{policy.PolicyName}\t{policy.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS iam)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_iam")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
```

```
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_iam.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the iam.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/iam/IAMClient.h>
#include <aws/iam/model/ListPoliciesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>

/*
 *  A "Hello IAM" starter application which initializes an AWS Identity and
 Access Management (IAM) client
 *  and lists the IAM policies.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_iam'
```

```
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT("%Y-%m-%d");
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::IAM::IAMClient iamClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::IAM::Model::ListPoliciesRequest request;

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done) {
            auto outcome = iamClient.ListPolicies(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Failed to list iam policies: " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }

            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                          std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                          std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::setw(12) <<
                          "CreateDate" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &policies = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicies();
            for (const auto &policy: policies) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                          policy.GetPolicyName() << std::setw(30) <<
                          policy.GetPolicyId() << std::setw(80) <<
 policy.GetArn() <<
```

```
                            std::setw(64) << policy.GetDescription() <<
 std::setw(12) <<
                            policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str())
 <<
                            std::endl;
            }

            if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
                request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
            } else {
                done = true;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an AWS Identity and Access
 Management (IAM)
// client and list up to 10 policies in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxPols = 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v policies for your account.\n", maxPols)
 result, err := iamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPols),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list policies for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Policies) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any policies!")
 } else {
  for _, policy := range result.Policies {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *policy.PolicyName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListPoliciesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.Policy;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloIAM {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listPolicies(iam);
    }

    public static void listPolicies(IamClient iam) {
        ListPoliciesResponse response = iam.listPolicies();
        List<Policy> polList = response.policies();
        polList.forEach(policy -> {
            System.out.println("Policy Name: " + policy.policyName());
        });
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { IAMClient, paginateListPolicies } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listLocalPolicies = async () => {
  /**
   * In v3, the clients expose paginateOperationName APIs that are written using
 async generators so that you can use async iterators in a for await..of loop.
   * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators
   */
  const paginator = paginateListPolicies(
    { client, pageSize: 10 },
    // List only customer managed policies.
    { Scope: "Local" },
  );

  console.log("IAM policies defined in your account:");
  let policyCount = 0;
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    if (page.Policies) {
      for (const policy of page.Policies) {
        console.log(`${policy.PolicyName}`);
        policyCount++;
      }
    }
  }
  console.log(`Found ${policyCount} policies.`);
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def main():
    """
    Lists the managed policies in your AWS account using the AWS SDK for Python
 (Boto3).
    """
    iam = boto3.client("iam")

    try:
        # Get a paginator for the list_policies operation
        paginator = iam.get_paginator("list_policies")

        # Iterate through the pages of results
        for page in paginator.paginate(Scope="All", OnlyAttached=False):
            for policy in page["Policies"]:
                print(f"Policy name: {policy['PolicyName']}")
                print(f"  Policy ARN: {policy['Arn']}")
    except boto3.exceptions.BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Encountered an error while listing policies: {e}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-iam'
require 'logger'

# IAMManager is a class responsible for managing IAM operations
# such as listing all IAM policies in the current AWS account.
class IAMManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all IAM policies in the current AWS account.
  def list_policies
    @logger.info('Here are the IAM policies in your account:')

    paginator = @client.list_policies
    policies = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      policies.concat(page.policies)
    end

    if policies.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any IAM policies.")
    else
      policies.each do |policy|
        @logger.info("- #{policy.policy_name}")
```

```
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new
  manager = IAMManager.new(iam_client)
  manager.list_policies
end
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

From src/bin/hello.rs.

```
use aws_sdk_iam::error::SdkError;
use aws_sdk_iam::operation::list_policies::ListPoliciesError;
use clap::Parser;

const PATH_PREFIX_HELP: &str = "The path prefix for filtering the results.";

#[derive(Debug, clap::Parser)]
#[command(about)]
struct HelloScenarioArgs {
    #[arg(long, default_value="/", help=PATH_PREFIX_HELP)]
    pub path_prefix: String,
}

#[tokio::main]
```

```
async fn main() -> Result<(), SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let client = aws_sdk_iam::Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let args = HelloScenarioArgs::parse();

    iam_service::list_policies(client, args.path_prefix).await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

From src/iam-service-lib.rs.

```
pub async fn list_policies(
    client: iamClient,
    path_prefix: String,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let list_policies = client
        .list_policies()
        .path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .scope(PolicyScopeType::Local)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .try_collect()
        .await?;

    let policy_names = list_policies
        .into_iter()
        .map(|p| {
            let name = p
                .policy_name
                .unwrap_or_else(|| "Missing Policy Name".to_string());
            println!("{}", name);
            name
        })
        .collect();

    Ok(policy_names)
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Learn the basics of IAM with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
global using Amazon.S3;
global using Amazon.SecurityToken;
global using IAMActions;
global using IamScenariosCommon;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
```

```
namespace IAMActions;

public class IAMWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _IAMService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the IAMWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="IAMService">An IAM client object.</param>
    public IAMWrapper(IAmazonIdentityManagementService IAMService)
    {
        _IAMService = IAMService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an IAM policy to a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The policy to attach.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The role that the policy will be attached to.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
 AttachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM access key for a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for which to create the IAM access
    /// key.</param>
    /// <returns>The AccessKey.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<AccessKey> CreateAccessKeyAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateAccessKeyAsync(new
 CreateAccessKeyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.AccessKey;

    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name to give the new IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new policy.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new IAM policy object.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> CreatePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 policyDocument)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreatePolicyAsync(new
 CreatePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            PolicyName = policyName,
        });

        return response.Policy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="rolePolicyDocument">The name of the IAM policy document
    /// for the new role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateRoleAsync(string roleName, string
 rolePolicyDocument)
    {
```

```
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = rolePolicyDocument,
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM service-linked role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceName">The name of the AWS Service.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the IAM service-linked role.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(string serviceName,
 string description)
    {
        var request = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleRequest
        {
            AWSServiceName = serviceName,
            Description = description
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for the new IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM user that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<User> CreateUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateUserAsync(new CreateUserRequest
 { UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user's access key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id for the IAM access key.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user that owns the IAM
    /// access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAccessKeyAsync(string accessKeyId, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(new
DeleteAccessKeyRequest
        {
            AccessKeyId = accessKeyId,
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeletePolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeletePolicyAsync(new
DeletePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest
 { RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM role policy to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRolePolicyAsync(string roleName, string
 policyName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRolePolicyAsync(new
 DeleteRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserAsync(new DeleteUserRequest
 { UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user policy.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserPolicyAsync(string policyName, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserPolicyAsync(new
DeleteUserPolicyRequest { PolicyName = policyName, UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Detach an IAM policy from an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM
policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DetachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
DetachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Gets the IAM password policy for an AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The PasswordPolicy for the AWS account.</returns>
    public async Task<PasswordPolicy> GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync(new
GetAccountPasswordPolicyRequest());
        return response.PasswordPolicy;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The IAM policy to retrieve information for.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM policy.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> GetPolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {

        var response = await _IAMService.GetPolicyAsync(new GetPolicyRequest
 { PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.Policy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to retrieve information
    /// for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> GetRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.Role;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>An IAM user object.</returns>
    public async Task<User> GetUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetUserAsync(new GetUserRequest
 { UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the IAM role policies that are attached to an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role to list IAM policies for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies attached to the IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AttachedPolicyType>>
ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var attachedPolicies = new List<AttachedPolicyType>();
        var attachedRolePoliciesPaginator =
_IAMService.Paginators.ListAttachedRolePolicies(new
ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName = roleName });

        await foreach (var response in attachedRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            attachedPolicies.AddRange(response.AttachedPolicies);
        }

        return attachedPolicies;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM groups.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Group>> ListGroupsAsync()
    {
        var groupsPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListGroups(new
ListGroupsRequest());
        var groups = new List<Group>();

        await foreach (var response in groupsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            groups.AddRange(response.Groups);
        }

        return groups;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ManagedPolicy>> ListPoliciesAsync()
    {
        var listPoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
 ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        return policies;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM role policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role for which to list IAM policies.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM policy names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var listRolePoliciesPaginator =
 _IAMService.Paginators.ListRolePolicies(new ListRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName =
 roleName });
        var policyNames = new List<string>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policyNames.AddRange(response.PolicyNames);
        }

        return policyNames;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM roles.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>A list of IAM roles.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Role>> ListRolesAsync()
    {
        var listRolesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRoles(new
ListRolesRequest());
        var roles = new List<Role>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            roles.AddRange(response.Roles);
        }

        return roles;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List SAML authentication providers.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of SAML providers.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SAMLProviderListEntry>> ListSAMLProvidersAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.ListSAMLProvidersAsync(new
ListSAMLProvidersRequest());
        return response.SAMLProviderList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<User>> ListUsersAsync()
    {
        var listUsersPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListUsers(new
ListUsersRequest());
        var users = new List<User>();

        await foreach (var response in listUsersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the inline policy document embedded in a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the policy to embed.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to update.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document that defines the role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutRolePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 roleName, string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutRolePolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Add or update an inline policy document that is embedded in an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document defining the IAM
 policy.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutUserPolicyAsync(string userName, string
 policyName, string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutUserPolicyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
            PolicyName = policyName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };
```

```
        var response = await _IAMService.PutUserPolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for a new access key to be ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id of the access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitUntilAccessKeyIsReady(string accessKeyId)
    {
        var keyReady = false;

        do
        {
            try
            {
                var response = await _IAMService.GetAccessKeyLastUsedAsync(
                    new GetAccessKeyLastUsedRequest { AccessKeyId =
 accessKeyId });
                if (response.UserName is not null)
                {
                    keyReady = true;
                }
            }
            catch (NoSuchEntityException)
            {
                keyReady = false;
            }
        } while (!keyReady);

        return keyReady;
    }
}



using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace IAMBasics;

public class IAMBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddTransient<IAMWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<IAMBasics>();


        IConfiguration configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // Values needed for user, role, and policies.
        string userName = configuration["UserName"]!;
        string s3PolicyName = configuration["S3PolicyName"]!;
        string roleName = configuration["RoleName"]!;


        var iamWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAMWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        uiWrapper.DisplayBasicsOverview();
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // First create a user. By default, the new user has
        // no permissions.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create User");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating a new user with user name: {userName}.");
        var user = await iamWrapper.CreateUserAsync(userName);
        var userArn = user.Arn;

        Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created user: {userName} with ARN:
{userArn}.");
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Now let's wait for the user to be ready for
use.");

        // Define a role policy document that allows the new user
        // to assume the role.
        string assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{" +
          "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
          "\"Statement\": [{" +
              "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
              "\"Principal\": {" +
              $" \"AWS\": \"{userArn}\"" +
              "}," +
              "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
          "}]" +
        "}";

        // Permissions to list all buckets.
        string policyDocument = "{" +
            "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            " \"Statement\" : [{" +
                " \"Action\" : [\"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\"]," +
                " \"Effect\" : \"Allow\"," +
                " \"Resource\" : \"*\"" +
            "}]" +
        "}";

        // Create an AccessKey for the user.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create access key");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's create an access key for the new user.");
        var accessKey = await iamWrapper.CreateAccessKeyAsync(userName);

        var accessKeyId = accessKey.AccessKeyId;
        var secretAccessKey = accessKey.SecretAccessKey;

        Console.WriteLine($"We have created the access key with Access key id:
{accessKeyId}.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's wait until the IAM access key is ready to
use.");
        var keyReady = await iamWrapper.WaitUntilAccessKeyIsReady(accessKeyId);

        // Now try listing the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
        // buckets. This should fail at this point because the user doesn't
        // have permissions to perform this task.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Try to display Amazon S3 buckets");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's try to display a list of the user's Amazon
S3 buckets.");
        var s3Client1 = new AmazonS3Client(accessKeyId, secretAccessKey);
        var stsClient1 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(accessKeyId,
secretAccessKey);

        var s3Wrapper = new S3Wrapper(s3Client1, stsClient1);
        var buckets = await s3Wrapper.ListMyBucketsAsync();

        Console.WriteLine(buckets is null
            ? "As expected, the call to list the buckets has returned a null
list."
            : "Something went wrong. This shouldn't have worked.");

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create IAM role");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the role: {roleName}");

        // Creating an IAM role to allow listing the S3 buckets. A role name
        // is not case sensitive and must be unique to the account for which it
        // is created.
        var roleArn = await iamWrapper.CreateRoleAsync(roleName,
assumeRolePolicyDocument);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Create a policy with permissions to list S3 buckets.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create IAM policy");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the policy: {s3PolicyName}");
        Console.WriteLine("with permissions to list the Amazon S3 buckets for the
account.");
        var policy = await iamWrapper.CreatePolicyAsync(s3PolicyName,
policyDocument);

        // Wait 15 seconds for the IAM policy to be available.
```

```
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Waiting for the policy to be available.");

        // Attach the policy to the role you created earlier.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Attach new IAM policy");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's attach the policy to the role.");
        await iamWrapper.AttachRolePolicyAsync(policy.Arn, roleName);

        // Wait 15 seconds for the role to be updated.
        Console.WriteLine();
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Waiting for the policy to be attached.");

        // Use the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) to have the user
        // assume the role we created.
        var stsClient2 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(accessKeyId,
secretAccessKey);

        // Wait for the new credentials to become valid.
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(10, "Waiting for the credentials to be valid.");

        var assumedRoleCredentials = await
s3Wrapper.AssumeS3RoleAsync("temporary-session", roleArn);

        // Try again to list the buckets using the client created with
        // the new user's credentials. This time, it should work.
        var s3Client2 = new AmazonS3Client(assumedRoleCredentials);

        s3Wrapper.UpdateClients(s3Client2, stsClient2);

        buckets = await s3Wrapper.ListMyBucketsAsync();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("List Amazon S3 buckets");
        Console.WriteLine("This time we should have buckets to list.");
        if (buckets is not null)
        {
            buckets.ForEach(bucket =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{bucket.BucketName} created:
{bucket.CreationDate}");
            });
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Now clean up all the resources used in the example.
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Thank you for watching. The IAM Basics demo is
 complete.");
        Console.WriteLine("Please wait while we clean up the resources we
 created.");

        await iamWrapper.DetachRolePolicyAsync(policy.Arn, roleName);

        await iamWrapper.DeletePolicyAsync(policy.Arn);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteRoleAsync(roleName);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyId, userName);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteUserAsync(userName);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("All done cleaning up our resources. Thank you for your
 patience.");
    }
}


namespace IamScenariosCommon;

using System.Net;

/// <summary>
/// A class to perform Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions for
/// the IAM Basics scenario.
/// </summary>
public class S3Wrapper
{
    private IAmazonS3 _s3Service;
    private IAmazonSecurityTokenService _stsService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Service">An Amazon S3 client object.</param>
    /// <param name="stsService">An AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS)
    /// client object.</param>
    public S3Wrapper(IAmazonS3 s3Service, IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsService)
```

```
    {
        _s3Service = s3Service;
        _stsService = stsService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Assumes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows
    /// Amazon S3 access for the current session.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleSession">A string representing the current session.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleToAssume">The name of the IAM role to assume.</param>
    /// <returns>Credentials for the newly assumed IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<Credentials> AssumeS3RoleAsync(string roleSession, string
 roleToAssume)
    {
        // Create the request to use with the AssumeRoleAsync call.
        var request = new AssumeRoleRequest()
        {
            RoleSessionName = roleSession,
            RoleArn = roleToAssume,
        };

        var response = await _stsService.AssumeRoleAsync(request);

        return response.Credentials;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the S3 bucket to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteBucketAsync(string bucketName)
    {
        var result = await _s3Service.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest
 { BucketName = bucketName });
        return result.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the buckets that are owned by the user's account.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<S3Bucket>?> ListMyBucketsAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the list of buckets accessible by the new user.
            var response = await _s3Service.ListBucketsAsync();

            return response.Buckets;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            // Something else went wrong. Display the error message.
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            return null;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the new bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the action completed
    /// successfully.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutBucketAsync(string bucketName)
    {
        var response = await _s3Service.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the client objects with new client objects. This is available
    /// because the scenario uses the methods of this class without and then
    /// with the proper permissions to list S3 buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Service">The Amazon S3 client object.</param>
    /// <param name="stsService">The AWS STS client object.</param>
    public void UpdateClients(IAmazonS3 s3Service, IAmazonSecurityTokenService
stsService)
    {
        _s3Service = s3Service;
        _stsService = stsService;
    }
```

```
}


namespace IamScenariosCommon;

public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the IAM Groups scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayGroupsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to the IAM Groups Demo");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates an Amazon Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) group.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Adds an IAM policy to the IAM group giving it
 full access to Amazon S3.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Creates a new IAM user.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Creates an IAM access key for the user.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Adds the user to the IAM group.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Lists the buckets on the account.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Proves that the user has full Amazon S3 access by
 creating a bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. List the buckets again to show the new bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t9. Cleans up all the resources created.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the IAM Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayBasicsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to IAM Basics");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates a user with no permissions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Creates a role and policy that grant
 s3:ListAllMyBuckets permission.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Grants the user permission to assume the role.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Creates an S3 client object as the user and tries
to list buckets (this will fail).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the
role.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Creates a new S3 client object with the temporary
credentials and lists the buckets (this will succeed).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Deletes all the resources.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title, and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user_assume_role
#
# Scenario to create an IAM user, create an IAM role, and apply the role to the
 user.
#
#     "IAM access" permissions are needed to run this code.
#     "STS assume role" permissions are needed to run this code. (Note: It might
 be necessary to
#           create a custom policy).
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_user_assume_role() {
  {
    if [ "$IAM_OPERATIONS_SOURCED" != "True" ]; then

      source ./iam_operations.sh
    fi
  }

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "Welcome to the IAM create user and assume role demo."
  echo
  echo "This demo will create an IAM user, create an IAM role, and apply the role
 to the user."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo -n "Enter a name for a new IAM user: "
```

```
  get_input
  user_name=$get_input_result

  local user_arn
  user_arn=$(iam_create_user -u "$user_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} == 0 ]]; then
    echo "Created demo IAM user named $user_name"
  else
    errecho "$user_arn"
    errecho "The user failed to create. This demo will exit."
    return 1
  fi

  local access_key_response
  access_key_response=$(iam_create_user_access_key -u "$user_name")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} != 0 ]]; then
    errecho "The access key failed to create. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$user_name"
    return 1
  fi

  IFS=$'\t ' read -r -a access_key_values <<<"$access_key_response"
  local key_name=${access_key_values[0]}
  local key_secret=${access_key_values[1]}

  echo "Created access key named $key_name"

  echo "Wait 10 seconds for the user to be ready."
  sleep 10
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  local iam_role_name
  iam_role_name=$(generate_random_name "test-role")
  echo "Creating a role named $iam_role_name with user $user_name as the
principal."

  local assume_role_policy_document="{
    \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
    \"Statement\": [{
        \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
```

```
        \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"$user_arn\"},
        \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
        }]
    }"

  local role_arn
  role_arn=$(iam_create_role -n "$iam_role_name" -p
"$assume_role_policy_document")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
    echo "Created IAM role named $iam_role_name"
  else
    errecho "The role failed to create. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name"
    return 1
  fi

  local policy_name
  policy_name=$(generate_random_name "test-policy")
  local policy_document="{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]}"

  local policy_arn
  policy_arn=$(iam_create_policy -n "$policy_name" -p "$policy_document")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} == 0 ]]; then
    echo "Created  IAM policy named $policy_name"
  else
    errecho "The policy failed to create."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name"
    return 1
  fi

  if (iam_attach_role_policy -n "$iam_role_name" -p "$policy_arn"); then
    echo "Attached policy $policy_arn to role $iam_role_name"
  else
    errecho "The policy failed to attach."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn"
    return 1
```

```
  fi

  local assume_role_policy_document="{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\",
                    \"Resource\": \"$role_arn\"}]}"

  local assume_role_policy_name
  assume_role_policy_name=$(generate_random_name "test-assume-role-")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  local assume_role_policy_arn
  assume_role_policy_arn=$(iam_create_policy -n "$assume_role_policy_name" -p
"$assume_role_policy_document")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
    echo "Created  IAM policy named $assume_role_policy_name for sts assume role"
  else
    errecho "The policy failed to create."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn"
"$policy_arn"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "Wait 10 seconds to give AWS time to propagate these new resources and
connections."
  sleep 10
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "Try to list buckets without the new user assuming the role."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  # Set the environment variables for the created user.
  # bashsupport disable=BP2001
  export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=$key_name
  # bashsupport disable=BP2001
  export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=$key_secret

  local buckets
  buckets=$(s3_list_buckets)
```

```
 # shellcheck disable=SC2181
 if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
   local bucket_count
   bucket_count=$(echo "$buckets" | wc -w | xargs)
   echo "There are $bucket_count buckets in the account. This should not have
happened."
 else
   errecho "Because the role with permissions has not been assumed, listing
buckets failed."
 fi

 echo
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo "Now assume the role $iam_role_name and list the buckets."
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo

 local credentials

 credentials=$(sts_assume_role -r "$role_arn" -n "AssumeRoleDemoSession")
 # shellcheck disable=SC2181
 if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
   echo "Assumed role $iam_role_name"
 else
   errecho "Failed to assume role."
   export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=""
   export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=""
   clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn"
"$policy_arn" "$assume_role_policy_arn"
   return 1
 fi

 IFS=$'\t ' read -r -a credentials <<<"$credentials"

 export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=${credentials[0]}
 export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=${credentials[1]}
 # bashsupport disable=BP2001
 export AWS_SESSION_TOKEN=${credentials[2]}

 buckets=$(s3_list_buckets)

 # shellcheck disable=SC2181
 if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
```

```
    local bucket_count
    bucket_count=$(echo "$buckets" | wc -w | xargs)
    echo "There are $bucket_count buckets in the account. Listing buckets
 succeeded because of "
    echo "the assumed role."
  else
    errecho "Failed to list buckets. This should not happen."
    export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=""
    export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=""
    export AWS_SESSION_TOKEN=""
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn"
 "$policy_arn" "$assume_role_policy_arn"
    return 1
  fi

  local result=0
  export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=""
  export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=""

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "The created resources will now be deleted."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn" "$policy_arn"
 "$assume_role_policy_arn"

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    result=1
  fi

  return $result
}
```

The IAM functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function iam_user_exists
#
```

```
# This function checks to see if the specified AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) user already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the IAM user to check.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If the user already exists.
#       1 - If the user doesn't exist.
###############################################################################
function iam_user_exists() {
  local user_name
  user_name=$1

  # Check whether the IAM user already exists.
  # We suppress all output - we're interested only in the return code.

  local errors
  errors=$(aws iam get-user \
    --user-name "$user_name" 2>&1 >/dev/null)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -eq 0 ]]; then
    return 0 # 0 in Bash script means true.
  else
    if [[ $errors != *"error"*"(NoSuchEntity)"* ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log $error_code
      errecho "Error calling iam get-user $errors"
    fi

    return 1 # 1 in Bash script means false.
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user
#
# This function creates the specified IAM user, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
```

```
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the user.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_create_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must
 supply a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user. It must be unique within the
 account."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
```

```
  iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
  iecho ""

  # If the user already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
  if (iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A user with that name already exists in the account."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-user --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'User.Arn')

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-user operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user_access_key
#
# This function creates an IAM access key for the specified user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name -- The name of the IAM user.
#       [-f file_name] -- The optional file name for the access key output.
#
# Returns:
#       [access_key_id access_key_secret]
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_user_access_key() {
  local user_name file_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
```

```
# bashsupport disable=BP5008
function usage() {
  echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
  echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) key pair."
  echo "  -u user_name   The name of the IAM user."
  echo "  [-f file_name]   Optional file name for the access key output."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "u:f:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    f) file_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-access-key \
  --user-name "$user_name" \
  --output text)

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
  return 1
```

```
  fi

  if [[ -n "$file_name" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_name"
  fi

  local key_id key_secret
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_id=$(echo $response | cut -f 2 -d ' ')
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_secret=$(echo $response | cut -f 4 -d ' ')

  echo "$key_id $key_secret"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_role
#
# This function creates an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the role.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_role() {
  local role_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document."
    echo ""
  }
```

```
# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-role \
  --role-name "$role_name" \
  --assume-role-policy-document "$policy_document" \
  --output text \
  --query Role.Arn)

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-role operation failed.\n$response"
  return 1
fi
```

```
  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_policy
#
# This function creates an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_name -- The name of the IAM policy.
#       -p policy_json -- The policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_policy() {
  local policy_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_policy"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy."
    echo "  -n policy_name   The name of the IAM policy."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The policy document."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
```

```
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name "$policy_name" \
    --policy-document "$policy_document" \
    --output text \
    --query Policy.Arn)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_attach_role_policy
#
# This function attaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
```

```
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_attach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_attach_role_policy"
    echo "Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
```

```
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports attach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_detach_role_policy
#
# This function detaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_detach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_detach_role_policy"
    echo "Detaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
```

```
  echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam detach-role-policy \
  --role-name "$role_name" \
  --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports detach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
  return 1
```

```
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_policy
#
# This function deletes an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_policy() {
  local policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_policy"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy"
    echo "  -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy arn with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Policy arn:  $policy_arn"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-policy \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-policy response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_role
#
# This function deletes an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_role() {
```

```
local role_name response
local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

# bashsupport disable=BP5008
function usage() {
  echo "function iam_delete_role"
  echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role"
  echo "  -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

echo "role_name:$role_name"
if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    Role name:  $role_name"
iecho ""

response=$(aws iam delete-role \
  --role-name "$role_name")

local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-role response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_access_key
#
# This function deletes an IAM access key for the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user.
#       -k access_key -- The access key to delete.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_access_key() {
  local user_name access_key response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_access_key"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key for the
 specified IAM user"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo "  -k access_key   The access key to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) access_key="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$access_key" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide an access key with the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    Username:   $user_name"
iecho "    Access key:   $access_key"
iecho ""

response=$(aws iam delete-access-key \
  --user-name "$user_name" \
  --access-key-id "$access_key")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-access-key operation failed.\n$response"
  return 1
fi

iecho "delete-access-key response:$response"
iecho
```

```
  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_delete_user
#
# This function deletes the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_delete_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_user"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must
 supply a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
```

```
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
  iecho ""

  # If the user does not exist, we don't want to try to delete it.
  if (! iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A user with that name does not exist in the account."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam delete-user \
    --user-name "$user_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-user operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-user response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole

- CreateUser
- DeleteAccessKey
- DeletePolicy
- DeleteRole
- DeleteUser
- DeleteUserPolicy
- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AwsDoc {
    namespace IAM {

        //! Cleanup by deleting created entities.
        /*!
          \sa DeleteCreatedEntities
          \param client: IAM client.
          \param role: IAM role.
          \param user: IAM user.
          \param policy: IAM policy.
        */
        static bool DeleteCreatedEntities(const Aws::IAM::IAMClient &client,
                                          const Aws::IAM::Model::Role &role,
                                          const Aws::IAM::Model::User &user,
                                          const Aws::IAM::Model::Policy &policy);
    }

    static const int LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC = 20;
```

```
    static const char ALLOCATION_TAG[] = "example_code";
}

//! Scenario to create an IAM user, create an IAM role, and apply the role to the
 user.
// "IAM access" permissions are needed to run this code.
// "STS assume role" permissions are needed to run this code. (Note: It might be
 necessary to
//    create a custom policy).
/*!
  \sa iamCreateUserAssumeRoleScenario
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Successful completion.
*/
bool AwsDoc::IAM::iamCreateUserAssumeRoleScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {

    Aws::IAM::IAMClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::User user;
    Aws::IAM::Model::Role role;
    Aws::IAM::Model::Policy policy;

    // 1. Create a user.
    {
        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateUserRequest request;
        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String userName = "iam-demo-user-" +
                               Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetUserName(userName);

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateUserOutcome outcome = client.CreateUser(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Error creating IAM user " << userName << ":" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully created IAM user " << userName <<
 std::endl;
        }

        user = outcome.GetResult().GetUser();
    }
```

```
    // 2. Create a role.
    {
        // Get the IAM user for the current client in order to access its ARN.
        Aws::String iamUserArn;
        {
            Aws::IAM::Model::GetUserRequest request;
            Aws::IAM::Model::GetUserOutcome outcome = client.GetUser(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error getting Iam user. " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

                DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
                return false;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully retrieved Iam user "
                          << outcome.GetResult().GetUser().GetUserName()
                          << std::endl;
            }

            iamUserArn = outcome.GetResult().GetUser().GetArn();
        }

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleRequest request;

        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String roleName = "iam-demo-role-" +
                               Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetRoleName(roleName);

        // Build policy document for role.
        Aws::Utils::Document jsonStatement;
        jsonStatement.WithString("Effect", "Allow");

        Aws::Utils::Document jsonPrincipal;
        jsonPrincipal.WithString("AWS", iamUserArn);
        jsonStatement.WithObject("Principal", jsonPrincipal);
        jsonStatement.WithString("Action", "sts:AssumeRole");
        jsonStatement.WithObject("Condition", Aws::Utils::Document());

        Aws::Utils::Document policyDocument;
        policyDocument.WithString("Version", "2012-10-17");

        Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Document> statements(1);
```

```
        statements[0] = jsonStatement;
        policyDocument.WithArray("Statement", statements);

        std::cout << "Setting policy for role\n   "
                  << policyDocument.View().WriteCompact() << std::endl;

        // Set role policy document as JSON string.

  request.SetAssumeRolePolicyDocument(policyDocument.View().WriteCompact());

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleOutcome outcome = client.CreateRole(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error creating role. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
            return false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully created a role with name " << roleName
                      << std::endl;
        }

        role = outcome.GetResult().GetRole();
    }

    // 3. Create an IAM policy.
    {
        Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyRequest request;
        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String policyName = "iam-demo-policy-" +
                                 Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetPolicyName(policyName);

        // Build IAM policy document.
        Aws::Utils::Document jsonStatement;
        jsonStatement.WithString("Effect", "Allow");
        jsonStatement.WithString("Action", "s3:ListAllMyBuckets");
        jsonStatement.WithString("Resource", "arn:aws:s3:::*");

        Aws::Utils::Document policyDocument;
        policyDocument.WithString("Version", "2012-10-17");

        Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Document> statements(1);
```

```
        statements[0] = jsonStatement;
        policyDocument.WithArray("Statement", statements);

        std::cout << "Creating a policy.\n   " <<
policyDocument.View().WriteCompact()
                  << std::endl;

        // Set IAM policy document as JSON string.
        request.SetPolicyDocument(policyDocument.View().WriteCompact());

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyOutcome outcome =
client.CreatePolicy(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error creating policy. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
            return false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully created a policy with name, " <<
policyName <<
                      "." << std::endl;
        }

        policy = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy();
    }

    // 4. Assume the new role using the AWS Security Token Service (STS).
    Aws::STS::Model::Credentials credentials;
    {
        Aws::STS::STSClient stsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleRequest request;
        request.SetRoleArn(role.GetArn());
        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String roleSessionName = "iam-demo-role-session-" +

Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetRoleSessionName(roleSessionName);

        Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleOutcome assumeRoleOutcome;

        // Repeatedly call AssumeRole, because there is often a delay
```

```
        // before the role is available to be assumed.
        // Repeat at most 20 times when access is denied.
        int count = 0;
        while (true) {
            assumeRoleOutcome = stsClient.AssumeRole(request);
            if (!assumeRoleOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                if (count > 20 ||
                    assumeRoleOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                    Aws::STS::STSErrors::ACCESS_DENIED) {
                    std::cerr << "Error assuming role after 20 tries. " <<
                              assumeRoleOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;

                    DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
                    return false;
                }
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully assumed the role after " << count
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                break;
            }
            count++;
        }

        credentials = assumeRoleOutcome.GetResult().GetCredentials();
    }


    // 5. List objects in the bucket (This should fail).
    {
        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(
                Aws::Auth::AWSCredentials(credentials.GetAccessKeyId(),
                                          credentials.GetSecretAccessKey(),
                                          credentials.GetSessionToken()),
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::S3::S3EndpointProvider>(ALLOCATION_TAG),
                clientConfig);
        Aws::S3::Model::ListBucketsOutcome listBucketsOutcome =
s3Client.ListBuckets();
        if (!listBucketsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            if (listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                Aws::S3::S3Errors::ACCESS_DENIED) {
                std::cerr << "Could not lists buckets. " <<
```

```
                        listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cout
                        << "Access to list buckets denied because privileges have
not been applied."
                        << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr
                    << "Successfully retrieved bucket lists when this should not
happen."
                    << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 6. Attach the policy to the role.
    {
        Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyRequest request;
        request.SetRoleName(role.GetRoleName());
        request.WithPolicyArn(policy.GetArn());

        Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
client.AttachRolePolicy(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error creating policy. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
            return false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully attached the policy with name, "
                      << policy.GetPolicyName() <<
                      ", to the role, " << role.GetRoleName() << "." <<
std::endl;
        }
    }

    int count = 0;
    // 7. List objects in the bucket (this should succeed).
```

```
    // Repeatedly call ListBuckets, because there is often a delay
    // before the policy with ListBucket permissions has been applied to the
 role.
    // Repeat at most LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC times when access is denied.
    while (true) {
        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(
                Aws::Auth::AWSCredentials(credentials.GetAccessKeyId(),
                                          credentials.GetSecretAccessKey(),
                                          credentials.GetSessionToken()),
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::S3::S3EndpointProvider>(ALLOCATION_TAG),
                clientConfig);
        Aws::S3::Model::ListBucketsOutcome listBucketsOutcome =
 s3Client.ListBuckets();
        if (!listBucketsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            if ((count > LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC) ||
                listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                Aws::S3::S3Errors::ACCESS_DENIED) {
                std::cerr << "Could not lists buckets after " <<
 LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC << " seconds. " <<
                          listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
                return false;
            }

            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        }
        else {

            std::cout << "Successfully retrieved bucket lists after " << count
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            break;
        }
        count++;
    }

    // 8. Delete all the created resources.
    return DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
}

bool AwsDoc::IAM::DeleteCreatedEntities(const Aws::IAM::IAMClient &client,
                                        const Aws::IAM::Model::Role &role,
                                        const Aws::IAM::Model::User &user,
                                        const Aws::IAM::Model::Policy &policy) {
```

```
    bool result = true;
    if (policy.ArnHasBeenSet()) {
        // Detach the policy from the role.
        {
            Aws::IAM::Model::DetachRolePolicyRequest request;
            request.SetPolicyArn(policy.GetArn());
            request.SetRoleName(role.GetRoleName());

            Aws::IAM::Model::DetachRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
client.DetachRolePolicy(
                    request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error Detaching policy from roles. " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully detached the policy with arn "
                          << policy.GetArn()
                          << " from role " << role.GetRoleName() << "." <<
std::endl;
            }
        }

        // Delete the policy.
        {
            Aws::IAM::Model::DeletePolicyRequest request;
            request.WithPolicyArn(policy.GetArn());

            Aws::IAM::Model::DeletePolicyOutcome outcome =
client.DeletePolicy(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error deleting policy. " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully deleted the policy with arn "
                          << policy.GetArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }

    }
```

```
    if (role.RoleIdHasBeenSet()) {
        // Delete the role.
        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteRoleRequest request;
        request.SetRoleName(role.GetRoleName());

        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteRoleOutcome outcome = client.DeleteRole(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting role. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the role with name "
                      << role.GetRoleName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    if (user.ArnHasBeenSet()) {
        // Delete the user.
        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
        request.WithUserName(user.GetUserName());

        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteUserOutcome outcome = client.DeleteUser(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting user. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the user with name "
                      << user.GetUserName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy

- CreateRole
- CreateUser
- DeleteAccessKey
- DeletePolicy
- DeleteRole
- DeleteUser
- DeleteUserPolicy
- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "math/rand"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/credentials"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sts"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/iam/actions"
)

// AssumeRoleScenario shows you how to use the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM)
// service to perform the following actions:
//
//  1. Create a user who has no permissions.
//  2. Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon Simple Storage Service
//     (Amazon S3) buckets for the account.
//  3. Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
//  4. Try and fail to list buckets without permissions.
//  5. Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials.
//  6. Delete the policy, role, and user.
type AssumeRoleScenario struct {
 sdkConfig      aws.Config
 accountWrapper actions.AccountWrapper
 policyWrapper  actions.PolicyWrapper
 roleWrapper    actions.RoleWrapper
 userWrapper    actions.UserWrapper
 questioner     demotools.IQuestioner
 helper         IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun      bool
}

// NewAssumeRoleScenario constructs an AssumeRoleScenario instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get an IAM client and create wrappers for the
 actions
// used in the scenario.
func NewAssumeRoleScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) AssumeRoleScenario {
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return AssumeRoleScenario{
  sdkConfig:      sdkConfig,
  accountWrapper: actions.AccountWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  policyWrapper:  actions.PolicyWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  roleWrapper:    actions.RoleWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  userWrapper:    actions.UserWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  questioner:     questioner,
```

```
  helper:         helper,
 }
}

// addTestOptions appends the API options specified in the original configuration
 to
// another configuration. This is used to attach the middleware stubber to
 clients
// that are constructed during the scenario, which is needed for unit testing.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) addTestOptions(scenarioConfig *aws.Config) {
 if scenario.isTestRun {
  scenarioConfig.APIOptions = append(scenarioConfig.APIOptions,
 scenario.sdkConfig.APIOptions...)
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.\n")
   log.Println(r)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) assume role
 demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 user := scenario.CreateUser(ctx)
 accessKey := scenario.CreateAccessKey(ctx, user)
 role := scenario.CreateRoleAndPolicies(ctx, user)
 noPermsConfig := scenario.ListBucketsWithoutPermissions(ctx, accessKey)
 scenario.ListBucketsWithAssumedRole(ctx, noPermsConfig, role)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, user, role)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateUser creates a new IAM user. This user has no permissions.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) CreateUser(ctx context.Context) *types.User {
```

```
 log.Println("Let's create an example user with no permissions.")
 userName := scenario.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the example user:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 user, err := scenario.userWrapper.GetUser(ctx, userName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if user == nil {
  user, err = scenario.userWrapper.CreateUser(ctx, userName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Created user %v.\n", *user.UserName)
 } else {
  log.Printf("User %v already exists.\n", *user.UserName)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return user
}

// CreateAccessKey creates an access key for the user.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) CreateAccessKey(ctx context.Context, user
 *types.User) *types.AccessKey {
 accessKey, err := scenario.userWrapper.CreateAccessKeyPair(ctx, *user.UserName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created access key %v for your user.", *accessKey.AccessKeyId)
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds for your user to be ready...")
 scenario.helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return accessKey
}

// CreateRoleAndPolicies creates a policy that grants permission to list S3
 buckets for
// the current account and attaches the policy to a newly created role. It also
 adds an
// inline policy to the specified user that grants the user permission to assume
 the role.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) CreateRoleAndPolicies(ctx context.Context,
 user *types.User) *types.Role {
 log.Println("Let's create a role and policy that grant permission to list S3
 buckets.")
```

```
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 listBucketsRole, err := scenario.roleWrapper.CreateRole(ctx,
 scenario.helper.GetName(), *user.Arn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created role %v.\n", *listBucketsRole.RoleName)
 listBucketsPolicy, err := scenario.policyWrapper.CreatePolicy(
  ctx, scenario.helper.GetName(), []string{"s3:ListAllMyBuckets"},
 "arn:aws:s3:::*")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created policy %v.\n", *listBucketsPolicy.PolicyName)
 err = scenario.roleWrapper.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, *listBucketsPolicy.Arn,
 *listBucketsRole.RoleName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Attached policy %v to role %v.\n", *listBucketsPolicy.PolicyName,
  *listBucketsRole.RoleName)
 err = scenario.userWrapper.CreateUserPolicy(ctx, *user.UserName,
 scenario.helper.GetName(),
  []string{"sts:AssumeRole"}, *listBucketsRole.Arn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created an inline policy for user %v that lets the user assume the
 role.\n",
  *user.UserName)
 log.Println("Let's give AWS a few seconds to propagate these new resources and
 connections...")
 scenario.helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return listBucketsRole
}

// ListBucketsWithoutPermissions creates an Amazon S3 client from the user's
 access key
// credentials and tries to list buckets for the account. Because the user does
 not have
// permission to perform this action, the action fails.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) ListBucketsWithoutPermissions(ctx
 context.Context, accessKey *types.AccessKey) *aws.Config {
```

```
 log.Println("Let's try to list buckets without permissions. This should return
 an AccessDenied error.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 noPermsConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx,
  config.WithCredentialsProvider(credentials.NewStaticCredentialsProvider(
   *accessKey.AccessKeyId, *accessKey.SecretAccessKey, ""),
  ))
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 // Add test options if this is a test run. This is needed only for testing
 purposes.
 scenario.addTestOptions(&noPermsConfig)

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(noPermsConfig)
 _, err = s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  // The SDK for Go does not model the AccessDenied error, so check ErrorCode
 directly.
  var ae smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &ae) {
   switch ae.ErrorCode() {
   case "AccessDenied":
    log.Println("Got AccessDenied error, which is the expected result because\n"
 +
     "the ListBuckets call was made without permissions.")
   default:
    log.Println("Expected AccessDenied, got something else.")
    panic(err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  log.Println("Expected AccessDenied error when calling ListBuckets without
 permissions,\n" +
   "but the call succeeded. Continuing the example anyway...")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return &noPermsConfig
}

// ListBucketsWithAssumedRole performs the following actions:
//
```

```
//  1. Creates an AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) client from the config
 created from
//     the user's access key credentials.
//  2. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role that grants permission to
 list the
//     buckets.
//  3. Creates an Amazon S3 client from the temporary credentials.
//  4. Lists buckets for the account. Because the temporary credentials are
 generated by
//     assuming the role that grants permission, the action succeeds.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) ListBucketsWithAssumedRole(ctx
 context.Context, noPermsConfig *aws.Config, role *types.Role) {
 log.Println("Let's assume the role that grants permission to list buckets and
 try again.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 stsClient := sts.NewFromConfig(*noPermsConfig)
 tempCredentials, err := stsClient.AssumeRole(ctx, &sts.AssumeRoleInput{
  RoleArn:         role.Arn,
  RoleSessionName: aws.String("AssumeRoleExampleSession"),
  DurationSeconds: aws.Int32(900),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't assume role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Assumed role %v, got temporary credentials.\n", *role.RoleName)
 assumeRoleConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx,
  config.WithCredentialsProvider(credentials.NewStaticCredentialsProvider(
   *tempCredentials.Credentials.AccessKeyId,
   *tempCredentials.Credentials.SecretAccessKey,
   *tempCredentials.Credentials.SessionToken),
  ),
 )
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 // Add test options if this is a test run. This is needed only for testing
 purposes.
 scenario.addTestOptions(&assumeRoleConfig)

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(assumeRoleConfig)
 result, err := s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Println("Couldn't list buckets with assumed role credentials.")
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Successfully called ListBuckets with assumed role credentials, \n"
 +
  "here are some of them:")
 for i := 0; i < len(result.Buckets) && i < 5; i++ {
  log.Printf("\t%v\n", *result.Buckets[i].Name)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Cleanup deletes all resources created for the scenario.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) Cleanup(ctx context.Context, user *types.User,
 role *types.Role) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "Do you want to delete the resources created for this example? (y/n)", "y",
 ) {
  policies, err := scenario.roleWrapper.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
 *role.RoleName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for _, policy := range policies {
   err = scenario.roleWrapper.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, *role.RoleName,
 *policy.PolicyArn)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   err = scenario.policyWrapper.DeletePolicy(ctx, *policy.PolicyArn)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Detached policy %v from role %v and deleted the policy.\n",
    *policy.PolicyName, *role.RoleName)
  }
  err = scenario.roleWrapper.DeleteRole(ctx, *role.RoleName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Deleted role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)

  userPols, err := scenario.userWrapper.ListUserPolicies(ctx, *user.UserName)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    panic(err)
   }
   for _, userPol := range userPols {
    err = scenario.userWrapper.DeleteUserPolicy(ctx, *user.UserName, userPol)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
    log.Printf("Deleted policy %v from user %v.\n", userPol, *user.UserName)
   }
   keys, err := scenario.userWrapper.ListAccessKeys(ctx, *user.UserName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   for _, key := range keys {
    err = scenario.userWrapper.DeleteAccessKey(ctx, *user.UserName,
  *key.AccessKeyId)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
    log.Printf("Deleted access key %v from user %v.\n", *key.AccessKeyId,
  *user.UserName)
   }
   err = scenario.userWrapper.DeleteUser(ctx, *user.UserName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Deleted user %v.\n", *user.UserName)
   log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  }

}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts input and wait functions from a scenario so that
 they
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 GetName() string
 Pause(secs int)
}

const rMax = 100000

type ScenarioHelper struct {
 Prefix string
```

```
 Random *rand.Rand
}

// GetName returns a unique name formed of a prefix and a random number.
func (helper *ScenarioHelper) GetName() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", helper.Prefix, helper.Random.Intn(rMax))
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}
```

Define a struct that wraps account actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// AccountWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) account
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform account actions.
type AccountWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetAccountPasswordPolicy gets the account password policy for the current
 account.
// If no policy has been set, a NoSuchEntityException is error is returned.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.PasswordPolicy, error) {
 var pwPolicy *types.PasswordPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx,
```

```
  &iam.GetAccountPasswordPolicyInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get account password policy. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  pwPolicy = result.PasswordPolicy
 }
 return pwPolicy, err
}



// ListSAMLProviders gets the SAML providers for the account.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) ListSAMLProviders(ctx context.Context)
 ([]types.SAMLProviderListEntry, error) {
 var providers []types.SAMLProviderListEntry
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListSAMLProviders(ctx,
 &iam.ListSAMLProvidersInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list SAML providers. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  providers = result.SAMLProviderList
 }
 return providers, err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps policy actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListPolicies gets up to maxPolicies policies.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) ListPolicies(ctx context.Context, maxPolicies int32)
 ([]types.Policy, error) {
 var policies []types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPolicies),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  policies = result.Policies
 }
 return policies, err
}



// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    []string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
}

// CreatePolicy creates a policy that grants a list of actions to the specified
 resource.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure
 and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
```

```
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) CreatePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyName string,
 actions []string,
 resourceArn string) (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(resourceArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 resourceArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreatePolicy(ctx, &iam.CreatePolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyName, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
 return policy, err
}



// GetPolicy gets data about a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) GetPolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetPolicy(ctx, &iam.GetPolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
```

```
 return policy, err
}



// DeletePolicy deletes a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) DeletePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeletePolicy(ctx, &iam.DeletePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps role actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListRoles gets up to maxRoles roles.
```

```
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRoles(ctx context.Context, maxRoles int32)
 ([]types.Role, error) {
 var roles []types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRoles(ctx,
  &iam.ListRolesInput{MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxRoles)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list roles. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  roles = result.Roles
 }
 return roles, err
}



// CreateRole creates a role that trusts a specified user. The trusted user can
 assume
// the role to acquire its permissions.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure
 and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 trustedUserArn string) (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 trustPolicy := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Principal: map[string]string{"AWS": trustedUserArn},
   Action:    []string{"sts:AssumeRole"},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(trustPolicy)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create trust policy for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 trustedUserArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateRole(ctx, &iam.CreateRoleInput{
  AssumeRolePolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  RoleName:                 aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't create role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}



// GetRole gets data about a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) GetRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetRole(ctx,
  &iam.GetRoleInput{RoleName: aws.String(roleName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}



// CreateServiceLinkedRole creates a service-linked role that is owned by the
 specified service.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context,
 serviceName string, description string) (
 *types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.CreateServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  AWSServiceName: aws.String(serviceName),
  Description:    aws.String(description),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 serviceName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

```
// DeleteServiceLinkedRole deletes a service-linked role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.DeleteServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// AttachRolePolicy attaches a policy to a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) AttachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn
 string, roleName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.AttachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't attach policy %v to role %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn,
 roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListAttachedRolePolicies lists the policies that are attached to the specified
 role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) ([]types.AttachedPolicy, error) {
 var policies []types.AttachedPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list attached policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 roleName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.AttachedPolicies
 }
 return policies, err
}



// DetachRolePolicy detaches a policy from a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DetachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 policyArn string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.DetachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't detach policy from role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListRolePolicies lists the inline policies for a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRolePolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

```
// DeleteRole deletes a role. All attached policies must be detached before a
// role can be deleted.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string) error
 {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteRole(ctx, &iam.DeleteRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps user actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListUsers gets up to maxUsers number of users.
```

```
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUsers(ctx context.Context, maxUsers int32)
 ([]types.User, error) {
 var users []types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUsers(ctx, &iam.ListUsersInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxUsers),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  users = result.Users
 }
 return users, err
}



// GetUser gets data about a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) GetUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetUser(ctx, &iam.GetUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchEntityException:
    log.Printf("User %v does not exist.\n", userName)
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Couldn't get user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}



// CreateUser creates a new user with the specified name.
```

```
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateUser(ctx, &iam.CreateUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}



// CreateUserPolicy adds an inline policy to a user. This example creates a
 policy that
// grants a list of actions on a specified role.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure
 and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string, actions []string,
 roleArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(roleArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleArn,
 err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = wrapper.IamClient.PutUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.PutUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:       aws.String(userName),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListUserPolicies lists the inline policies for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUserPolicies(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUserPolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListUserPoliciesInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}



// DeleteUserPolicy deletes an inline policy from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyName: aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:   aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy from user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// DeleteUser deletes a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userName string) error
 {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUser(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// CreateAccessKeyPair creates an access key for a user. The returned access key
 contains
// the ID and secret credentials needed to use the key.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateAccessKeyPair(ctx context.Context, userName
 string) (*types.AccessKey, error) {
 var key *types.AccessKey
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateAccessKey(ctx, &iam.CreateAccessKeyInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create access key pair for user %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 } else {
  key = result.AccessKey
 }
 return key, err
}



// DeleteAccessKey deletes an access key from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteAccessKey(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 keyId string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteAccessKey(ctx, &iam.DeleteAccessKeyInput{
  AccessKeyId: aws.String(keyId),
  UserName:    aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete access key %v. Here's why: %v\n", keyId, err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}



// ListAccessKeys lists the access keys for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListAccessKeys(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]types.AccessKeyMetadata, error) {
 var keys []types.AccessKeyMetadata
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAccessKeys(ctx, &iam.ListAccessKeysInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list access keys for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 } else {
  keys = result.AccessKeyMetadata
 }
 return keys, err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM user actions.

```
/*
  To run this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

  For information, see this documentation topic:

  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html

  This example performs these operations:

  1. Creates a user that has no permissions.
  2. Creates a role and policy that grants Amazon S3 permissions.
  3. Creates a role.
  4. Grants the user permissions.
  5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role.  Creates an Amazon S3
 Service client object with the temporary credentials.
  6. Deletes the resources.
 */

public class IAMScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    public static final String PolicyDocument = "{" +
            "  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            "  \"Statement\": [" +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Action\": [" +
            "            \"s3:*\"" +
            "       ]," +
```

```
            "       \"Resource\": \"*\"" +
            "    }" +
            "   ]" +
            "}";

    public static String userArn;

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username> <policyName> <roleName> <roleSessionName>
<bucketName>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the IAM user to create.\s
                    policyName - The name of the policy to create.\s
                    roleName - The name of the role to create.\s
                    roleSessionName - The name of the session required for the
assumeRole operation.\s
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket from which
objects are read.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userName = args[0];
        String policyName = args[1];
        String roleName = args[2];
        String roleSessionName = args[3];
        String bucketName = args[4];

        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS IAM example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 1. Create the IAM user.");
        User createUser = createIAMUser(iam, userName);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        userArn = createUser.arn();

        AccessKey myKey = createIAMAccessKey(iam, userName);
        String accessKey = myKey.accessKeyId();
        String secretKey = myKey.secretAccessKey();
        String assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                " \"AWS\": \"" + userArn + "\"" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        System.out.println(assumeRolePolicyDocument);
        System.out.println(userName + " was successfully created.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Creates a policy.");
        String polArn = createIAMPolicy(iam, policyName);
        System.out.println("The policy " + polArn + " was successfully
created.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Creates a role.");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        String roleArn = createIAMRole(iam, roleName, assumeRolePolicyDocument);
        System.out.println(roleArn + " was successfully created.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Grants the user permissions.");
        attachIAMRolePolicy(iam, roleName, polArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("*** Wait for 30 secs so the resource is available");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        System.out.println("5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the
role.");
        System.out.println("Perform an Amazon S3 Service operation using the
temporary credentials.");
        assumeRole(roleArn, roleSessionName, bucketName, accessKey, secretKey);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6 Getting ready to delete the AWS resources");
        deleteKey(iam, userName, accessKey);
        deleteRole(iam, roleName, polArn);
        deleteIAMUser(iam, userName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("This IAM Scenario has successfully completed");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static AccessKey createIAMAccessKey(IamClient iam, String user) {
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyRequest request = CreateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .userName(user)
                    .build();

            CreateAccessKeyResponse response = iam.createAccessKey(request);
            return response.accessKey();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    public static User createIAMUser(IamClient iam, String username) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();
            CreateUserRequest request = CreateUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();
```

```
            // Wait until the user is created.
            CreateUserResponse response = iam.createUser(request);
            GetUserRequest userRequest = GetUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(response.user().userName())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetUserResponse> waitUntilUserExists =
iamWaiter.waitUntilUserExists(userRequest);

waitUntilUserExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.user();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
json) {

        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(json)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the role is " +
response.role().arn());
            return response.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createIAMPolicy(IamClient iam, String policyName) {
        try {
```

```
            // Create an IamWaiter object.
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();
            CreatePolicyRequest request = CreatePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyName(policyName)
                    .policyDocument(PolicyDocument).build();

            CreatePolicyResponse response = iam.createPolicy(request);
            GetPolicyRequest polRequest = GetPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(response.policy().arn())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetPolicyResponse> waitUntilPolicyExists =
iamWaiter.waitUntilPolicyExists(polRequest);

waitUntilPolicyExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.policy().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void attachIAMRolePolicy(IamClient iam, String roleName, String
policyArn) {
        try {
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest request =
ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse response =
iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(request);
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies();
            String polArn;
            for (AttachedPolicy policy : attachedPolicies) {
                polArn = policy.policyArn();
                if (polArn.compareTo(policyArn) == 0) {
                    System.out.println(roleName + " policy is already attached to
this role.");
                    return;
                }
            }
```

```
            AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .policyArn(policyArn)
                    .build();

            iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
            System.out.println("Successfully attached policy " + policyArn + " to
role " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Invoke an Amazon S3 operation using the Assumed Role.
    public static void assumeRole(String roleArn, String roleSessionName, String
bucketName, String keyVal,
            String keySecret) {

        // Use the creds of the new IAM user that was created in this code
example.
        AwsBasicCredentials credentials = AwsBasicCredentials.create(keyVal,
keySecret);
        StsClient stsClient = StsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)

.credentialsProvider(StaticCredentialsProvider.create(credentials))
                .build();

        try {
            AssumeRoleRequest roleRequest = AssumeRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .roleSessionName(roleSessionName)
                    .build();

            AssumeRoleResponse roleResponse = stsClient.assumeRole(roleRequest);
            Credentials myCreds = roleResponse.credentials();
            String key = myCreds.accessKeyId();
            String secKey = myCreds.secretAccessKey();
            String secToken = myCreds.sessionToken();
```

```
            // List all objects in an Amazon S3 bucket using the temp creds
retrieved by
            // invoking assumeRole.
            Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
            S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
                    .credentialsProvider(

StaticCredentialsProvider.create(AwsSessionCredentials.create(key, secKey,
secToken)))
                    .region(region)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Created a S3Client using temp credentials.");
            System.out.println("Listing objects in " + bucketName);
            ListObjectsRequest listObjects = ListObjectsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            ListObjectsResponse res = s3.listObjects(listObjects);
            List<S3Object> objects = res.contents();
            for (S3Object myValue : objects) {
                System.out.println("The name of the key is " + myValue.key());
                System.out.println("The owner is " + myValue.owner());
            }

        } catch (StsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteRole(IamClient iam, String roleName, String polArn)
{

        try {
            // First the policy needs to be detached.
            DetachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(polArn)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
```

```
            // Delete the policy.
            DeletePolicyRequest request = DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(polArn)
                    .build();

            iam.deletePolicy(request);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + polArn);

            // Delete the role.
            DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteKey(IamClient iam, String username, String
 accessKey) {
        try {
            DeleteAccessKeyRequest request = DeleteAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .accessKeyId(accessKey)
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteAccessKey(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted access key " + accessKey +
                    " from user " + username);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteIAMUser(IamClient iam, String userName) {
        try {
            DeleteUserRequest request = DeleteUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(userName)
```

```
                    .build();

            iam.deleteUser(request);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + userName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user and a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role. After assuming the role, use temporary credentials to list buckets for the account.

```
import {
  CreateUserCommand,
  GetUserCommand,
  CreateAccessKeyCommand,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  DeleteAccessKeyCommand,
  DeleteUserCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { ListBucketsCommand, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { AssumeRoleCommand, STSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import { ScenarioInput } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

// Set the parameters.
const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
const userName = "iam_basic_test_username";
const policyName = "iam_basic_test_policy";
const roleName = "iam_basic_test_role";

/**
 * Create a new IAM user. If the user already exists, give
 * the option to delete and re-create it.
 * @param {string} name
 */
export const createUser = async (name, confirmAll = false) => {
  try {
    const { User } = await iamClient.send(
      new GetUserCommand({ UserName: name }),
    );
    const input = new ScenarioInput(
      "deleteUser",
      "Do you want to delete and remake this user?",
      { type: "confirm" },
```

```
    );
    const deleteUser = await input.handle({}, { confirmAll });
    // If the user exists, and you want to delete it, delete the user
    // and then create it again.
    if (deleteUser) {
      await iamClient.send(new DeleteUserCommand({ UserName: User.UserName }));
      await iamClient.send(new CreateUserCommand({ UserName: name }));
    } else {
      console.warn(
        `${name} already exists. The scenario may not work as expected.`,
      );
      return User;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    // If there is no user by that name, create one.
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "NoSuchEntityException") {
      const { User } = await iamClient.send(
        new CreateUserCommand({ UserName: name }),
      );
      return User;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};

export const main = async (confirmAll = false) => {
  // Create a user. The user has no permissions by default.
  const User = await createUser(userName, confirmAll);

  if (!User) {
    throw new Error("User not created");
  }

  // Create an access key. This key is used to authenticate the new user to
  // Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and AWS Security Token Service
 (AWS STS).
  // It's not best practice to use access keys. For more information, see
 https://aws.amazon.com/iam/resources/best-practices/.
  const createAccessKeyResponse = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateAccessKeyCommand({ UserName: userName }),
  );

  if (
    !createAccessKeyResponse.AccessKey?.AccessKeyId ||
```

```
    !createAccessKeyResponse.AccessKey?.SecretAccessKey
  ) {
    throw new Error("Access key not created");
  }

  const {
    AccessKey: { AccessKeyId, SecretAccessKey },
  } = createAccessKeyResponse;

  let s3Client = new S3Client({
    credentials: {
      accessKeyId: AccessKeyId,
      secretAccessKey: SecretAccessKey,
    },
  });

  // Retry the list buckets operation until it succeeds. InvalidAccessKeyId is
  // thrown while the user and access keys are still stabilizing.
  await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 300 }, async () => {
    try {
      return await listBuckets(s3Client);
    } catch (err) {
      if (err instanceof Error && err.name === "InvalidAccessKeyId") {
        throw err;
      }
    }
  });

  // Retry the create role operation until it succeeds. A MalformedPolicyDocument
 error
  // is thrown while the user and access keys are still stabilizing.
  const { Role } = await retry(
    {
      intervalInMs: 2000,
      maxRetries: 60,
    },
    () =>
      iamClient.send(
        new CreateRoleCommand({
          AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
            Version: "2012-10-17",
            Statement: [
              {
                Effect: "Allow",
```

```
                Principal: {
                  // Allow the previously created user to assume this role.
                  AWS: User.Arn,
                },
                Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
              },
            ],
          }),
          RoleName: roleName,
        }),
      ),
  );

  if (!Role) {
    throw new Error("Role not created");
  }

  // Create a policy that allows the user to list S3 buckets.
  const { Policy: listBucketPolicy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Action: ["s3:ListAllMyBuckets"],
            Resource: "*",
          },
        ],
      }),
      PolicyName: policyName,
    }),
  );

  if (!listBucketPolicy) {
    throw new Error("Policy not created");
  }

  // Attach the policy granting the 's3:ListAllMyBuckets' action to the role.
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      PolicyArn: listBucketPolicy.Arn,
      RoleName: Role.RoleName,
    }),
```

```
);

// Assume the role.
const stsClient = new STSClient({
  credentials: {
    accessKeyId: AccessKeyId,
    secretAccessKey: SecretAccessKey,
  },
});

// Retry the assume role operation until it succeeds.
const { Credentials } = await retry(
  { intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 60 },
  () =>
    stsClient.send(
      new AssumeRoleCommand({
        RoleArn: Role.Arn,
        RoleSessionName: `iamBasicScenarioSession-${Math.floor(
          Math.random() * 1000000,
        )}`,
        DurationSeconds: 900,
      }),
    ),
);

if (!Credentials?.AccessKeyId || !Credentials?.SecretAccessKey) {
  throw new Error("Credentials not created");
}

s3Client = new S3Client({
  credentials: {
    accessKeyId: Credentials.AccessKeyId,
    secretAccessKey: Credentials.SecretAccessKey,
    sessionToken: Credentials.SessionToken,
  },
});

// List the S3 buckets again.
// Retry the list buckets operation until it succeeds. AccessDenied might
// be thrown while the role policy is still stabilizing.
await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 120 }, () =>
  listBuckets(s3Client),
);
```

```
  // Clean up.
  await iamClient.send(
    new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
      PolicyArn: listBucketPolicy.Arn,
      RoleName: Role.RoleName,
    }),
  );

  await iamClient.send(
    new DeletePolicyCommand({
      PolicyArn: listBucketPolicy.Arn,
    }),
  );

  await iamClient.send(
    new DeleteRoleCommand({
      RoleName: Role.RoleName,
    }),
  );

  await iamClient.send(
    new DeleteAccessKeyCommand({
      UserName: userName,
      AccessKeyId,
    }),
  );

  await iamClient.send(
    new DeleteUserCommand({
      UserName: userName,
    }),
  );
};

/**
 *
 * @param {S3Client} s3Client
 */
const listBuckets = async (s3Client) => {
  const { Buckets } = await s3Client.send(new ListBucketsCommand({}));

  if (!Buckets) {
    throw new Error("Buckets not listed");
  }
```

```
  console.log(Buckets.map((bucket) => bucket.Name).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM user actions.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <username> <policyName> <roleName> <roleSessionName> <fileLocation>
 <bucketName>
```

```
    Where:
        username - The name of the IAM user to create.
        policyName - The name of the policy to create.
        roleName - The name of the role to create.
        roleSessionName - The name of the session required for the assumeRole
 operation.
        fileLocation - The file location to the JSON required to create the role
 (see Readme).
        bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket from which objects are
 read.
    """

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val userName = args[0]
    val policyName = args[1]
    val roleName = args[2]
    val roleSessionName = args[3]
    val fileLocation = args[4]
    val bucketName = args[5]

    createUser(userName)
    println("$userName was successfully created.")

    val polArn = createPolicy(policyName)
    println("The policy $polArn was successfully created.")

    val roleArn = createRole(roleName, fileLocation)
    println("$roleArn was successfully created.")
    attachRolePolicy(roleName, polArn)

    println("*** Wait for 1 MIN so the resource is available.")
    delay(60000)
    assumeGivenRole(roleArn, roleSessionName, bucketName)

    println("*** Getting ready to delete the AWS resources.")
    deleteRole(roleName, polArn)
    deleteUser(userName)
    println("This IAM Scenario has successfully completed.")
}
```

```
suspend fun createUser(usernameVal: String?): String? {
    val request =
        CreateUserRequest {
            userName = usernameVal
        }

    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createUser(request)
        return response.user?.userName
    }
}

suspend fun createPolicy(policyNameVal: String?): String {
    val policyDocumentValue = """
    {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "s3:*"
                ],
                "Resource": "*"
            }
        ]
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val request =
        CreatePolicyRequest {
            policyName = policyNameVal
            policyDocument = policyDocumentValue
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createPolicy(request)
        return response.policy?.arn.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun createRole(
    rolenameVal: String?,
    fileLocation: String?,
```

```
): String? {
    val jsonObject = fileLocation?.let { readJsonSimpleDemo(it) } as JSONObject

    val request =
        CreateRoleRequest {
            roleName = rolenameVal
            assumeRolePolicyDocument = jsonObject.toJSONString()
            description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createRole(request)
        return response.role?.arn
    }
}

suspend fun attachRolePolicy(
    roleNameVal: String,
    policyArnVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAttachedRolePolicies(request)
        val attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies

        // Ensure that the policy is not attached to this role.
        val checkStatus: Int
        if (attachedPolicies != null) {
            checkStatus = checkMyList(attachedPolicies, policyArnVal)
            if (checkStatus == -1) {
                return
            }
        }

        val policyRequest =
            AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policyArnVal
            }
        iamClient.attachRolePolicy(policyRequest)
```

```
        println("Successfully attached policy $policyArnVal to role
 $roleNameVal")
    }
}

fun checkMyList(
    attachedPolicies: List<AttachedPolicy>,
    policyArnVal: String,
): Int {
    for (policy in attachedPolicies) {
        val polArn = policy.policyArn.toString()

        if (polArn.compareTo(policyArnVal) == 0) {
            println("The policy is already attached to this role.")
            return -1
        }
    }
    return 0
}

suspend fun assumeGivenRole(
    roleArnVal: String?,
    roleSessionNameVal: String?,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val stsClient = StsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }
    val roleRequest =
        AssumeRoleRequest {
            roleArn = roleArnVal
            roleSessionName = roleSessionNameVal
        }

    val roleResponse = stsClient.assumeRole(roleRequest)
    val myCreds = roleResponse.credentials
    val key = myCreds?.accessKeyId
    val secKey = myCreds?.secretAccessKey
    val secToken = myCreds?.sessionToken

    val staticCredentials = StaticCredentialsProvider {
        accessKeyId = key
        secretAccessKey = secKey
        sessionToken = secToken
    }
```

```
    // List all objects in an Amazon S3 bucket using the temp creds.
    val s3 = S3Client.fromEnvironment {
        region = "us-east-1"
        credentialsProvider = staticCredentials
    }

    println("Created a S3Client using temp credentials.")
    println("Listing objects in $bucketName")

    val listObjects =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    val response = s3.listObjects(listObjects)
    response.contents?.forEach { myObject ->
        println("The name of the key is ${myObject.key}")
        println("The owner is ${myObject.owner}")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteRole(
    roleNameVal: String,
    polArn: String,
) {
    val iam = IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }

    // First the policy needs to be detached.
    val rolePolicyRequest =
        DetachRolePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = polArn
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)

    // Delete the policy.
    val request =
        DeletePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = polArn
        }

    iam.deletePolicy(request)
    println("*** Successfully deleted $polArn")
```

```
    // Delete the role.
    val roleRequest =
        DeleteRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
    println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
}

suspend fun deleteUser(userNameVal: String) {
    val iam = IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }
    val request =
        DeleteUserRequest {
            userName = userNameVal
        }

    iam.deleteUser(request)
    println("*** Successfully deleted $userNameVal")
}

@Throws(java.lang.Exception::class)
fun readJsonSimpleDemo(filename: String): Any? {
    val reader = FileReader(filename)
    val jsonParser = JSONParser()
    return jsonParser.parse(reader)
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser

- DeleteUserPolicy
- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace Iam\Basics;

require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Credentials\Credentials;
use Aws\S3\Exception\S3Exception;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use Aws\Sts\StsClient;
use Iam\IAMService;

echo("\n");
echo("--------------------------------------\n");
print("Welcome to the IAM getting started demo using PHP!\n");
echo("--------------------------------------\n");

$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$user = $service->createUser("iam_demo_user_$uuid");
echo "Created user with the arn: {$user['Arn']}\n";

$key = $service->createAccessKey($user['UserName']);
$assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{$user['Arn']}\"},
```

```
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }";
$assumeRoleRole = $service->createRole("iam_demo_role_$uuid",
 $assumeRolePolicyDocument);
echo "Created role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";

$listAllBucketsPolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
}";
$listAllBucketsPolicy = $service->createPolicy("iam_demo_policy_$uuid",
 $listAllBucketsPolicyDocument);
echo "Created policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";

$service->attachRolePolicy($assumeRoleRole['RoleName'],
 $listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);

$inlinePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\",
                    \"Resource\": \"{$assumeRoleRole['Arn']}\"}]
}";
$inlinePolicy = $service->createUserPolicy("iam_demo_inline_policy_$uuid",
 $inlinePolicyDocument, $user['UserName']);
//First, fail to list the buckets with the user
$credentials = new Credentials($key['AccessKeyId'], $key['SecretAccessKey']);
$s3Client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2', 'version' => 'latest',
 'credentials' => $credentials]);
try {
    $s3Client->listBuckets([
    ]);
    echo "this should not run";
} catch (S3Exception $exception) {
    echo "successfully failed!\n";
}

$stsClient = new StsClient(['region' => 'us-west-2', 'version' => 'latest',
 'credentials' => $credentials]);
```

```
sleep(10);
$assumedRole = $stsClient->assumeRole([
    'RoleArn' => $assumeRoleRole['Arn'],
    'RoleSessionName' => "DemoAssumeRoleSession_$uuid",
]);
$assumedCredentials = [
    'key' => $assumedRole['Credentials']['AccessKeyId'],
    'secret' => $assumedRole['Credentials']['SecretAccessKey'],
    'token' => $assumedRole['Credentials']['SessionToken'],
];
$s3Client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2', 'version' => 'latest',
 'credentials' => $assumedCredentials]);
try {
    $s3Client->listBuckets([]);
    echo "this should now run!\n";
} catch (S3Exception $exception) {
    echo "this should now not fail\n";
}

$service->detachRolePolicy($assumeRoleRole['RoleName'],
 $listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);
$deletePolicy = $service->deletePolicy($listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);
echo "Delete policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";
$deletedRole = $service->deleteRole($assumeRoleRole['Arn']);
echo "Deleted role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";
$deletedKey = $service->deleteAccessKey($key['AccessKeyId'], $user['UserName']);
$deletedUser = $service->deleteUser($user['UserName']);
echo "Delete user: {$user['UserName']}\n";
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole

- DeleteUser
- DeleteUserPolicy
- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user and a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role. After assuming the role, use temporary credentials to list buckets for the account.

```
import json
import sys
import time
from uuid import uuid4

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def progress_bar(seconds):
    """Shows a simple progress bar in the command window."""
    for _ in range(seconds):
        time.sleep(1)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print()


def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a new user with no permissions.
```

```
    Creates an access key pair for the user.
    Creates a role with a policy that lets the user assume the role.
    Creates a policy that allows listing Amazon S3 buckets.
    Attaches the policy to the role.
    Creates an inline policy for the user that lets the user assume the role.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
resource
                         that has permissions to create users, roles, and
policies
                         in the account.
    :return: The newly created user, user key, and role.
    """
    try:
        user = iam_resource.create_user(UserName=f"demo-user-{uuid4()}")
        print(f"Created user {user.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create a user for the demo. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
        user_key = user.create_access_key_pair()
        print(f"Created access key pair for user.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create access keys for user {user.name}. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    print(f"Wait for user to be ready.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    try:
        role = iam_resource.create_role(
            RoleName=f"demo-role-{uuid4()}",
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
```

```
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Principal": {"AWS": user.arn},
                            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                        }
                    ],
                }
            ),
        )
        print(f"Created role {role.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create a role for the demo. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
        policy = iam_resource.create_policy(
            PolicyName=f"demo-policy-{uuid4()}",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
                        }
                    ],
                }
            ),
        )
        role.attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy.arn)
        print(f"Created policy {policy.policy_name} and attached it to the
role.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create a policy and attach it to role {role.name}. Here's
why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
```

```
        user.create_policy(
            PolicyName=f"demo-user-policy-{uuid4()}",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                            "Resource": role.arn,
                        }
                    ],
                }
            ),
        )
        print(
            f"Created an inline policy for {user.name} that lets the user assume
 "
            f"the role."
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create an inline policy for user {user.name}. Here's why:
 "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.",
 end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return user, user_key, role


def show_access_denied_without_role(user_key):
    """
    Shows that listing buckets without first assuming the role is not allowed.

    :param user_key: The key of the user created during setup. This user does not
                     have permission to list buckets in the account.
    """
    print(f"Try to list buckets without first assuming the role.")
    s3_denied_resource = boto3.resource(
```

```
        "s3", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id,
 aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
    )
    try:
        for bucket in s3_denied_resource.buckets.all():
            print(bucket.name)
        raise RuntimeError("Expected to get AccessDenied error when listing
 buckets!")
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
            print("Attempt to list buckets with no permissions: AccessDenied.")
        else:
            raise


def list_buckets_from_assumed_role(user_key, assume_role_arn, session_name):
    """
    Assumes a role that grants permission to list the Amazon S3 buckets in the
 account.
    Uses the temporary credentials from the role to list the buckets that are
 owned
    by the assumed role's account.

    :param user_key: The access key of a user that has permission to assume the
 role.
    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that
                            grants access to list the other account's buckets.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    """
    sts_client = boto3.client(
        "sts", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id,
 aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
    )
    try:
        response = sts_client.assume_role(
            RoleArn=assume_role_arn, RoleSessionName=session_name
        )
        temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
        print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't assume role {assume_role_arn}. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
```

```
        raise

    # Create an S3 resource that can access the account with the temporary
 credentials.
    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )
    print(f"Listing buckets for the assumed role's account:")
    try:
        for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
            print(bucket.name)
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't list buckets for the account. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise




def teardown(user, role):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.

    :param user: The demo user.
    :param role: The demo role.
    """
    try:
        for attached in role.attached_policies.all():
            policy_name = attached.policy_name
            role.detach_policy(PolicyArn=attached.arn)
            attached.delete()
            print(f"Detached and deleted {policy_name}.")
        role.delete()
        print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            "Couldn't detach policy, delete policy, or delete role. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
```

```
        raise

    try:
        for user_pol in user.policies.all():
            user_pol.delete()
            print("Deleted inline user policy.")
        for key in user.access_keys.all():
            key.delete()
            print("Deleted user's access key.")
        user.delete()
        print(f"Deleted {user.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            "Couldn't delete user policy or delete user. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )


def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(f"Welcome to the IAM create user and assume role demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    user = None
    role = None
    try:
        user, user_key, role = setup(iam_resource)
        print(f"Created {user.name} and {role.name}.")
        show_access_denied_without_role(user_key)
        list_buckets_from_assumed_role(user_key, role.arn,
 "AssumeRoleDemoSession")
    except Exception:
        print("Something went wrong!")
    finally:
        if user is not None and role is not None:
            teardown(user, role)
        print("Thanks for watching!")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user and a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role. After assuming the role, use temporary credentials to list buckets for the account.

```
# Wraps the scenario actions.
class ScenarioCreateUserAssumeRole
  attr_reader :iam_client

  # @param [Aws::IAM::Client] iam_client: The AWS IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
```

```
  end

  # Waits for the specified number of seconds.
  #
  # @param duration [Integer] The number of seconds to wait.
  def wait(duration)
    puts('Give AWS time to propagate resources...')
    sleep(duration)
  end

  # Creates a user.
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name to give the user.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::User] The newly created user.
  def create_user(user_name)
    user = @iam_client.create_user(user_name: user_name).user
    @logger.info("Created demo user named #{user.user_name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.info('Tried and failed to create demo user.')
    @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    @logger.info("\nCan't continue the demo without a user!")
    raise
  else
    user
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user.
  #
  # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user that owns the key.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::AccessKeyPair] The newly created access key.
  def create_access_key_pair(user)
    user_key = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name:
user.user_name).access_key
    @logger.info("Created accesskey pair for user #{user.user_name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.info("Couldn't create access keys for user #{user.user_name}.")
    @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    user_key
  end

  # Creates a role that can be assumed by a user.
  #
```

```
 # @param role_name [String] The name to give the role.
 # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user who is granted permission to assume the
role.
 # @return [Aws::IAM::Role] The newly created role.
 def create_role(role_name, user)
   trust_policy = {
     Version: '2012-10-17',
     Statement: [{
       Effect: 'Allow',
       Principal: { 'AWS': user.arn },
       Action: 'sts:AssumeRole'
     }]
   }.to_json
   role = @iam_client.create_role(
     role_name: role_name,
     assume_role_policy_document: trust_policy
   ).role
   @logger.info("Created role #{role.role_name}.")
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.info("Couldn't create a role for the demo. Here's why: ")
   @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
   raise
 else
   role
 end

 # Creates a policy that grants permission to list S3 buckets in the account,
and
 # then attaches the policy to a role.
 #
 # @param policy_name [String] The name to give the policy.
 # @param role [Aws::IAM::Role] The role that the policy is attached to.
 # @return [Aws::IAM::Policy] The newly created policy.
 def create_and_attach_role_policy(policy_name, role)
   policy_document = {
     Version: '2012-10-17',
     Statement: [{
       Effect: 'Allow',
       Action: 's3:ListAllMyBuckets',
       Resource: 'arn:aws:s3:::*'
     }]
   }.to_json
   policy = @iam_client.create_policy(
     policy_name: policy_name,
```

```
      policy_document: policy_document
    ).policy
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role.role_name,
      policy_arn: policy.arn
    )
    @logger.info("Created policy #{policy.policy_name} and attached it to role
#{role.role_name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.info("Couldn't create a policy and attach it to role
#{role.role_name}. Here's why: ")
    @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates an inline policy for a user that lets the user assume a role.
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name to give the policy.
  # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user that owns the policy.
  # @param role [Aws::IAM::Role] The role that can be assumed.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::UserPolicy] The newly created policy.
  def create_user_policy(policy_name, user, role)
    policy_document = {
      Version: '2012-10-17',
      Statement: [{
        Effect: 'Allow',
        Action: 'sts:AssumeRole',
        Resource: role.arn
      }]
    }.to_json
    @iam_client.put_user_policy(
      user_name: user.user_name,
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document
    )
    puts("Created an inline policy for #{user.user_name} that lets the user
assume role #{role.role_name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.info("Couldn't create an inline policy for user #{user.user_name}.
Here's why: ")
    @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

```
 # Creates an Amazon S3 resource with specified credentials. This is separated
into a
 # factory function so that it can be mocked for unit testing.
 #
 # @param credentials [Aws::Credentials] The credentials used by the Amazon S3
resource.
 def create_s3_resource(credentials)
   Aws::S3::Resource.new(client: Aws::S3::Client.new(credentials: credentials))
 end

 # Lists the S3 buckets for the account, using the specified Amazon S3 resource.
 # Because the resource uses credentials with limited access, it may not be able
to
 # list the S3 buckets.
 #
 # @param s3_resource [Aws::S3::Resource] An Amazon S3 resource.
 def list_buckets(s3_resource)
   count = 10
   s3_resource.buckets.each do |bucket|
     @logger.info "\t#{bucket.name}"
     count -= 1
     break if count.zero?
   end
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   if e.code == 'AccessDenied'
     puts('Attempt to list buckets with no permissions: AccessDenied.')
   else
     @logger.info("Couldn't list buckets for the account. Here's why: ")
     @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
     raise
   end
 end

 # Creates an AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) client with specified
credentials.
 # This is separated into a factory function so that it can be mocked for unit
testing.
 #
 # @param key_id [String] The ID of the access key used by the STS client.
 # @param key_secret [String] The secret part of the access key used by the STS
client.
 def create_sts_client(key_id, key_secret)
   Aws::STS::Client.new(access_key_id: key_id, secret_access_key: key_secret)
 end
```

```
 # Gets temporary credentials that can be used to assume a role.
 #
 # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role that is assumed when these
credentials
 #                          are used.
 # @param sts_client [AWS::STS::Client] An AWS STS client.
 # @return [Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials] The credentials that can be used to
assume the role.
 def assume_role(role_arn, sts_client)
   credentials = Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials.new(
     client: sts_client,
     role_arn: role_arn,
     role_session_name: 'create-use-assume-role-scenario'
   )
   @logger.info("Assumed role '#{role_arn}', got temporary credentials.")
   credentials
 end

 # Deletes a role. If the role has policies attached, they are detached and
 # deleted before the role is deleted.
 #
 # @param role_name [String] The name of the role to delete.
 def delete_role(role_name)
   @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name:
role_name).attached_policies.each do |policy|
     @iam_client.detach_role_policy(role_name: role_name, policy_arn:
policy.policy_arn)
     @iam_client.delete_policy(policy_arn: policy.policy_arn)
     @logger.info("Detached and deleted policy #{policy.policy_name}.")
   end
   @iam_client.delete_role({ role_name: role_name })
   @logger.info("Role deleted: #{role_name}.")
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.info("Couldn't detach policies and delete role #{role.name}. Here's
why:")
   @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
   raise
 end

 # Deletes a user. If the user has inline policies or access keys, they are
deleted
 # before the user is deleted.
 #
```

```
  # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user to delete.
  def delete_user(user_name)
    user = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name).access_key_metadata
    user.each do |key|
      @iam_client.delete_access_key({ access_key_id: key.access_key_id,
 user_name: user_name })
      @logger.info("Deleted access key #{key.access_key_id} for user
 '#{user_name}'.")
    end

    @iam_client.delete_user(user_name: user_name)
    @logger.info("Deleted user '#{user_name}'.")
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
  end
end

# Runs the IAM create a user and assume a role scenario.
def run_scenario(scenario)
  puts('-' * 88)
  puts('Welcome to the IAM create a user and assume a role demo!')
  puts('-' * 88)
  user = scenario.create_user("doc-example-user-#{Random.uuid}")
  user_key = scenario.create_access_key_pair(user)
  scenario.wait(10)
  role = scenario.create_role("doc-example-role-#{Random.uuid}", user)
  scenario.create_and_attach_role_policy("doc-example-role-policy-
#{Random.uuid}", role)
  scenario.create_user_policy("doc-example-user-policy-#{Random.uuid}", user,
 role)
  scenario.wait(10)
  puts('Try to list buckets with credentials for a user who has no permissions.')
  puts('Expect AccessDenied from this call.')
  scenario.list_buckets(
    scenario.create_s3_resource(Aws::Credentials.new(user_key.access_key_id,
 user_key.secret_access_key))
  )
  puts('Now, assume the role that grants permission.')
  temp_credentials = scenario.assume_role(
    role.arn, scenario.create_sts_client(user_key.access_key_id,
 user_key.secret_access_key)
  )
  puts('Here are your buckets:')
  scenario.list_buckets(scenario.create_s3_resource(temp_credentials))
```

```
  puts("Deleting role '#{role.role_name}' and attached policies.")
  scenario.delete_role(role.role_name)
  puts("Deleting user '#{user.user_name}', policies, and keys.")
  scenario.delete_user(user.user_name)
  puts('Thanks for watching!')
  puts('-' * 88)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts('Something went wrong with the demo.')
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
end

run_scenario(ScenarioCreateUserAssumeRole.new(Aws::IAM::Client.new)) if
 $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_config::meta::region::RegionProviderChain;
use aws_sdk_iam::Error as iamError;
use aws_sdk_iam::{config::Credentials as iamCredentials, config::Region, Client
 as iamClient};
use aws_sdk_s3::Client as s3Client;
use aws_sdk_sts::Client as stsClient;
use tokio::time::{sleep, Duration};
use uuid::Uuid;

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), iamError> {
    let (client, uuid, list_all_buckets_policy_document, inline_policy_document)
 =
        initialize_variables().await;

    if let Err(e) = run_iam_operations(
        client,
        uuid,
        list_all_buckets_policy_document,
        inline_policy_document,
    )
    .await
    {
        println!("{:?}", e);
    };

    Ok(())
}

async fn initialize_variables() -> (iamClient, String, String, String) {
```

```
    let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::first_try(Region::new("us-
west-2"));

    let shared_config =
 aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
    let client = iamClient::new(&shared_config);
    let uuid = Uuid::new_v4().to_string();

    let list_all_buckets_policy_document = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
    }"
    .to_string();
    let inline_policy_document = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\",
                    \"Resource\": \"{}\"}]
    }"
    .to_string();

    (
        client,
        uuid,
        list_all_buckets_policy_document,
        inline_policy_document,
    )
}

async fn run_iam_operations(
    client: iamClient,
    uuid: String,
    list_all_buckets_policy_document: String,
    inline_policy_document: String,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    let user = iam_service::create_user(&client, &format!("{}{}",
 "iam_demo_user_", uuid)).await?;
    println!("Created the user with the name: {}", user.user_name());
    let key = iam_service::create_access_key(&client, user.user_name()).await?;
```

```
    let assume_role_policy_document = "{
        \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }"
    .to_string()
    .replace("{}", user.arn());

    let assume_role_role = iam_service::create_role(
        &client,
        &format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_role_", uuid),
        &assume_role_policy_document,
    )
    .await?;
    println!("Created the role with the ARN: {}", assume_role_role.arn());

    let list_all_buckets_policy = iam_service::create_policy(
        &client,
        &format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_policy_", uuid),
        &list_all_buckets_policy_document,
    )
    .await?;
    println!(
        "Created policy: {}",
        list_all_buckets_policy.policy_name.as_ref().unwrap()
    );

    let attach_role_policy_result =
        iam_service::attach_role_policy(&client, &assume_role_role,
&list_all_buckets_policy)
            .await?;
    println!(
        "Attached the policy to the role: {:?}",
        attach_role_policy_result
    );

    let inline_policy_name = format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_inline_policy_", uuid);
    let inline_policy_document = inline_policy_document.replace("{}",
assume_role_role.arn());
    iam_service::create_user_policy(&client, &user, &inline_policy_name,
&inline_policy_document)
```

```
        .await?;
    println!("Created inline policy.");

    //First, fail to list the buckets with the user.
    let creds = iamCredentials::from_keys(key.access_key_id(),
key.secret_access_key(), None);
    let fail_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(creds.clone())
        .load()
        .await;
    println!("Fail config: {:?}", fail_config);
    let fail_client: s3Client = s3Client::new(&fail_config);
    match fail_client.list_buckets().send().await {
        Ok(e) => {
            println!("This should not run. {:?}", e);
        }
        Err(e) => {
            println!("Successfully failed with error: {:?}", e)
        }
    }

    let sts_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(creds.clone())
        .load()
        .await;
    let sts_client: stsClient = stsClient::new(&sts_config);
    sleep(Duration::from_secs(10)).await;
    let assumed_role = sts_client
        .assume_role()
        .role_arn(assume_role_role.arn())
        .role_session_name(format!("iam_demo_assumerole_session_{uuid}"))
        .send()
        .await;
    println!("Assumed role: {:?}", assumed_role);
    sleep(Duration::from_secs(10)).await;

    let assumed_credentials = iamCredentials::from_keys(
        assumed_role
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .credentials
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .access_key_id(),
```

```
        assumed_role
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .credentials
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .secret_access_key(),
        Some(
            assumed_role
                .as_ref()
                .unwrap()
                .credentials
                .as_ref()
                .unwrap()
                .session_token
                .clone(),
        ),
    );

    let succeed_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(assumed_credentials)
        .load()
        .await;
    println!("succeed config: {:?}", succeed_config);
    let succeed_client: s3Client = s3Client::new(&succeed_config);
    sleep(Duration::from_secs(10)).await;
    match succeed_client.list_buckets().send().await {
        Ok(_) => {
            println!("This should now run successfully.")
        }
        Err(e) => {
            println!("This should not run. {:?}", e);
            panic!()
        }
    }

    //Clean up.
    iam_service::detach_role_policy(
        &client,
        assume_role_role.role_name(),
        list_all_buckets_policy.arn().unwrap_or_default(),
    )
    .await?;
    iam_service::delete_policy(&client, list_all_buckets_policy).await?;
```

```
    iam_service::delete_role(&client, &assume_role_role).await?;
    println!("Deleted role {}", assume_role_role.role_name());
    iam_service::delete_access_key(&client, &user, &key).await?;
    println!("Deleted key for {}", key.user_name());
    iam_service::delete_user_policy(&client, &user, &inline_policy_name).await?;
    println!("Deleted inline user policy: {}", inline_policy_name);
    iam_service::delete_user(&client, &user).await?;
    println!("Deleted user {}", user.user_name());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions for IAM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual IAM actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the IAM API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for IAM using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Identity and Access Management API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use AddRoleToInstanceProfile with a CLI
- Use AddUserToGroup with a CLI
- Use AttachGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use AttachRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AttachUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ChangePassword with a CLI
- Use CreateAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateAccountAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateInstanceProfile with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use CreateOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use CreatePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePolicyVersion with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateSAMLProvider with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateServiceLinkedRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateVirtualMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use DeactivateMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use DeleteAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAccountAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy with a CLI
- Use DeleteGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteGroupPolicy with a CLI

- Use DeleteInstanceProfile with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePolicyVersion with a CLI
- Use DeleteRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use DeleteRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSAMLProvider with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteServiceLinkedRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteSigningCertificate with a CLI
- Use DeleteUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use DeleteUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVirtualMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use DetachGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use DetachRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use GenerateCredentialReport with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails with a CLI
- Use GetAccessKeyLastUsed with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountAuthorizationDetails with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountPasswordPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAccountSummary with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetCredentialReport with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetGroup with a CLI
- Use GetGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetInstanceProfile with a CLI
- Use GetLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use GetOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use GetPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetPolicyVersion with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRolePolicy with a CLI
- Use GetSamlProvider with a CLI
- Use GetServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetServiceLastAccessedDetails with a CLI
- Use GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities with a CLI
- Use GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUserPolicy with a CLI
- Use ListAccessKeys with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAccountAliases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAttachedGroupPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListAttachedRolePolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAttachedUserPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListEntitiesForPolicy with a CLI
- Use ListGroupPolicies with a CLI
- Use ListGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListGroupsForUser with a CLI
- Use ListInstanceProfiles with a CLI
- Use ListInstanceProfilesForRole with a CLI
- Use ListMfaDevices with a CLI
- Use ListOpenIdConnectProviders with a CLI

- Use ListPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPolicyVersions with a CLI
- Use ListRolePolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListRoleTags with a CLI
- Use ListRoles with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSAMLProviders with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListServerCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSigningCertificates with a CLI
- Use ListUserPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListUserTags with a CLI
- Use ListUsers with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListVirtualMfaDevices with a CLI
- Use PutGroupPolicy with a CLI
- Use PutRolePermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use PutRolePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutUserPermissionsBoundary with a CLI
- Use PutUserPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider with a CLI
- Use RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile with a CLI
- Use RemoveUserFromGroup with a CLI
- Use ResyncMfaDevice with a CLI
- Use SetDefaultPolicyVersion with a CLI
- Use TagRole with a CLI
- Use TagUser with a CLI
- Use UntagRole with a CLI
- Use UntagUser with a CLI
- Use UpdateAccessKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssumeRolePolicy with a CLI

- Use UpdateGroup with a CLI
- Use UpdateLoginProfile with a CLI
- Use UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint with a CLI
- Use UpdateRole with a CLI
- Use UpdateRoleDescription with a CLI
- Use UpdateSamlProvider with a CLI
- Use UpdateServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateSigningCertificate with a CLI
- Use UpdateUser with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadServerCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadSigningCertificate with a CLI

Use `AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a client ID (audience) to an Open-ID Connect (OIDC) provider

The following `add-client-id-to-open-id-connect-provider` command adds the client ID `my-application-ID` to the OIDC provider named `server.example.com`.

```
aws iam add-client-id-to-open-id-connect-provider \
    --client-id my-application-ID \
    --open-id-connect-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
server.example.com
```

This command produces no output.

To create an OIDC provider, use the `create-open-id-connect-provider` command.

For more information, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command adds the client ID (or audience) `my-application-ID` to the existing OIDC provider named `server.example.com`.

```
Add-IAMClientIDToOpenIDConnectProvider -ClientID "my-application-ID"
 -OpenIDConnectProviderARN "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
server.example.com"
```

- For API details, see AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the client ID (or audience) `my-application-ID` to the existing OIDC provider named `server.example.com`.

```
Add-IAMClientIDToOpenIDConnectProvider -ClientID "my-application-ID"
 -OpenIDConnectProviderARN "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
server.example.com"
```

- For API details, see AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AddRoleToInstanceProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddRoleToInstanceProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a role to an instance profile

The following `add-role-to-instance-profile` command adds the role named `S3Access` to the instance profile named `Webserver`.

```
aws iam add-role-to-instance-profile \
    --role-name S3Access \
    --instance-profile-name Webserver
```

This command produces no output.

To create an instance profile, use the `create-instance-profile` command.

For more information, see Using an IAM role to grant permissions to applications running on Amazon EC2 instances in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AddRoleToInstanceProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command adds the role named `S3Access` to an existing instance profile named `webserver`. To create the instance profile, use the `New-IAMInstanceProfile` command. After you create the instance profile and associate it with a role using this command, you can attach it to an EC2 instance. To do that, use the `New-EC2Instance` cmdlet with either the `InstanceProfile_Arn` or the `InstanceProfile-Name` parameter to launch the new instance.

```
Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile -RoleName "S3Access" -InstanceProfileName
 "webserver"
```

- For API details, see AddRoleToInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the role named `S3Access` to an existing instance profile named `webserver`. To create the instance profile, use the `New-IAMInstanceProfile` command. After you create the instance profile and associate it with a role using this command, you can attach it to an EC2 instance. To do that, use the `New-EC2Instance` cmdlet with either the `InstanceProfile_Arn` or the `InstanceProfile-Name` parameter to launch the new instance.

```
Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile -RoleName "S3Access" -InstanceProfileName
 "webserver"
```

- For API details, see AddRoleToInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AddUserToGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddUserToGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a user to an IAM group

The following `add-user-to-group` command adds an IAM user named Bob to the IAM group named `Admins`.

```
aws iam add-user-to-group \
    --user-name Bob \
    --group-name Admins
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Adding and removing users in an IAM user group in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AddUserToGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command adds the user named Bob to the group named `Admins`.

```
Add-IAMUserToGroup -UserName "Bob" -GroupName "Admins"
```

- For API details, see AddUserToGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the user named Bob to the group named `Admins`.

```
Add-IAMUserToGroup -UserName "Bob" -GroupName "Admins"
```

- For API details, see AddUserToGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachGroupPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachGroupPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a managed policy to an IAM group

The following `attach-group-policy` command attaches the AWS managed policy named `ReadOnlyAccess` to the IAM group named `Finance`.

```
aws iam attach-group-policy \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/ReadOnlyAccess \
    --group-name Finance
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managed policies and inline policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachGroupPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the customer managed policy named `TesterPolicy` to the IAM group `Testers`. The users in that group are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the default version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy
```

Example 2: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `AdministratorAccess` to the IAM group `Admins`. The users in that group are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Admins -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AdministratorAccess
```

- For API details, see AttachGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the customer managed policy named `TesterPolicy` to the IAM group `Testers`. The users in that group are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the default version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy
```

Example 2: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `AdministratorAccess` to the IAM group `Admins`. The users in that group are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Admins -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AdministratorAccess
```

- For API details, see AttachGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `AttachRolePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage roles
- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an IAM policy to a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The policy to attach.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The role that the policy will be attached to.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
 AttachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
```

```
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_attach_role_policy
#
# This function attaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_attach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_attach_role_policy"
    echo "Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
```

```
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports attach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::attachRolePolicy(const Aws::String &roleName,
                                   const Aws::String &policyArn,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest list_request;
    list_request.SetRoleName(roleName);

    bool done = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto list_outcome = iam.ListAttachedRolePolicies(list_request);
        if (!list_outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list attached policies of role " <<
                      roleName << ": " << list_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                      std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        const auto &policies = list_outcome.GetResult().GetAttachedPolicies();
        if (std::any_of(policies.cbegin(), policies.cend(),
                        [=](const Aws::IAM::Model::AttachedPolicy &policy) {
                                return policy.GetPolicyArn() == policyArn;
                        })) {
            std::cout << "Policy " << policyArn <<
                      " is already attached to role " << roleName << std::endl;
            return true;
        }

        done = !list_outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated();
        list_request.SetMarker(list_outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
    }
```

```
    Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyRequest request;
    request.SetRoleName(roleName);
    request.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
 iam.AttachRolePolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to attach policy " << policyArn << " to role " <<
                  roleName << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully attached policy " << policyArn << " to role "
 <<
                  roleName << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a managed policy to an IAM role

The following `attach-role-policy` command attaches the AWS managed policy named `ReadOnlyAccess` to the IAM role named `ReadOnlyRole`.

```
aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/ReadOnlyAccess \
    --role-name ReadOnlyRole
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managed policies and inline policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// AttachRolePolicy attaches a policy to a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) AttachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn
 string, roleName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.AttachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't attach policy %v to role %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn,
 roleName, err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AttachRolePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AttachedPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class AttachRolePolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleName> <policyArn>\s
```

```
                Where:
                    roleName - A role name that you can obtain from the AWS
Management Console.\s
                    policyArn - A policy ARN that you can obtain from the AWS
Management Console.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String roleName = args[0];
        String policyArn = args[1];

        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        attachIAMRolePolicy(iam, roleName, policyArn);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void attachIAMRolePolicy(IamClient iam, String roleName, String
policyArn) {
        try {
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest request =
ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse response =
iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(request);
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies();

            // Ensure that the policy is not attached to this role
            String polArn = "";
            for (AttachedPolicy policy : attachedPolicies) {
                polArn = policy.policyArn();
                if (polArn.compareTo(policyArn) == 0) {
                    System.out.println(roleName + " policy is already attached to
this role.");
                    return;
```

```
                }
            }

            AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
 AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .policyArn(policyArn)
                    .build();

            iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);

            System.out.println("Successfully attached policy " + policyArn +
                    " to role " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Attach the policy.

```
import { AttachRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
```

```
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const attachRolePolicy = (policyArn, roleName) => {
  const command = new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var paramsRoleList = {
  RoleName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(paramsRoleList, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    var myRolePolicies = data.AttachedPolicies;
```

```
    myRolePolicies.forEach(function (val, index, array) {
      if (myRolePolicies[index].PolicyName === "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess") {
        console.log(
          "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess is already attached to this role."
        );
        process.exit();
      }
    });
    var params = {
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess",
      RoleName: process.argv[2],
    };
    iam.attachRolePolicy(params, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Unable to attach policy to role", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Role attached successfully");
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun attachIAMRolePolicy(
    roleNameVal: String,
    policyArnVal: String,
) {
    val request =
```

```
        ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAttachedRolePolicies(request)
        val attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies

        // Ensure that the policy is not attached to this role.
        val checkStatus: Int
        if (attachedPolicies != null) {
            checkStatus = checkList(attachedPolicies, policyArnVal)
            if (checkStatus == -1) {
                return
            }
        }

        val policyRequest =
            AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policyArnVal
            }
        iamClient.attachRolePolicy(policyRequest)
        println("Successfully attached policy $policyArnVal to role
 $roleNameVal")
    }
}

fun checkList(
    attachedPolicies: List<AttachedPolicy>,
    policyArnVal: String,
): Int {
    for (policy in attachedPolicies) {
        val polArn = policy.policyArn.toString()

        if (polArn.compareTo(policyArnVal) == 0) {
            println("The policy is already attached to this role.")
            return -1
        }
    }
    return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{$user['Arn']}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }";
$assumeRoleRole = $service->createRole("iam_demo_role_$uuid",
 $assumeRolePolicyDocument);
echo "Created role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";

$listAllBucketsPolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
}";
$listAllBucketsPolicy = $service->createPolicy("iam_demo_policy_$uuid",
 $listAllBucketsPolicyDocument);
echo "Created policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";

$service->attachRolePolicy($assumeRoleRole['RoleName'],
 $listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);

    public function attachRolePolicy($roleName, $policyArn)
```

```
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($roleName, $policyArn) {
            $this->iamClient->attachRolePolicy([
                'PolicyArn' => $policyArn,
                'RoleName' => $roleName,
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `SecurityAudit` to the IAM role `CoSecurityAuditors`. The users who assume that role are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName CoSecurityAuditors -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `SecurityAudit` to the IAM role `CoSecurityAuditors`. The users who assume that role are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName CoSecurityAuditors -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Attach a policy to a role using the Boto3 Policy object.

```
def attach_to_role(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the
 ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).attach_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn,
 role_name)
        raise
```

Attach a policy to a role using the Boto3 Role object.

```
def attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the
 ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
```

```
        iam.Role(role_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn,
 role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
```

```
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not
exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
```

```
  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn attach_role_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    role: &Role,
    policy: &Policy,
) -> Result<AttachRolePolicyOutput, SdkError<AttachRolePolicyError>> {
    client
        .attach_role_policy()
        .role_name(role.role_name())
        .policy_arn(policy.arn().unwrap_or_default())
        .send()
        .await
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func attachRolePolicy(role: String, policyArn: String) async throws {
        let input = AttachRolePolicyInput(
            policyArn: policyArn,
            roleName: role
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.attachRolePolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: Attaching a role policy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AttachUserPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachUserPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create read-only and read-write users

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a managed policy to an IAM user

The following `attach-user-policy` command attaches the AWS managed policy named `AdministratorAccess` to the IAM user named `Alice`.

```
aws iam attach-user-policy \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess \
    --user-name Alice
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managed policies and inline policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `AmazonCognitoPowerUser` to the IAM user Bob. The user is immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonCognitoPowerUser
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `AmazonCognitoPowerUser` to the IAM user `Bob`. The user is immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonCognitoPowerUser
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def attach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn,
 user_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Attaches a policy to a user
#
# @param user_name [String] The name of the user
# @param policy_arn [String] The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy
# @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
def attach_policy_to_user(user_name, policy_arn)
  @iam_client.attach_user_policy(
    user_name: user_name,
    policy_arn: policy_arn
  )
  true
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error attaching policy to user: #{e.message}")
  false
end
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn attach_user_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    user_name: &str,
    policy_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .attach_user_policy()
        .user_name(user_name)
        .policy_arn(policy_arn)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ChangePassword` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ChangePassword`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the password for your IAM user

To change the password for your IAM user, we recommend using the `--cli-input-json` parameter to pass a JSON file that contains your old and new passwords. Using this method, you can use strong passwords with non-alphanumeric characters. It can be difficult

to use passwords with non-alphanumeric characters when you pass them as command line parameters. To use the `--cli-input-json` parameter, start by using the `change-password` command with the `--generate-cli-skeleton` parameter, as in the following example.

```
aws iam change-password \
    --generate-cli-skeleton > change-password.json
```

The previous command creates a JSON file called change-password.json that you can use to fill in your old and new passwords. For example, the file might look like the following.

```
{
    "OldPassword": "3s0K_;xh4~8XXI",
    "NewPassword": "]35d/{pB9Fo9wJ"
}
```

Next, to change your password, use the `change-password` command again, this time passing the `--cli-input-json` parameter to specify your JSON file. The following `change-password` command uses the `--cli-input-json` parameter with a JSON file called change-password.json.

```
aws iam change-password \
    --cli-input-json file://change-password.json
```

This command produces no output.

This command can be called by IAM users only. If this command is called using AWS account (root) credentials, the command returns an `InvalidUserType` error.

For more information, see How an IAM user changes their own password in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ChangePassword in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command changes the password for the user that is running the command. This command can be called by IAM users only. If this command is called

when you are signed-in with AWS account (root) credentials, the command returns an `InvalidUserType` error.

```
Edit-IAMPassword -OldPassword "MyOldP@ssw0rd" -NewPassword "MyNewP@ssw0rd"
```

- For API details, see ChangePassword in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command changes the password for the user that is running the command. This command can be called by IAM users only. If this command is called when you are signed-in with AWS account (root) credentials, the command returns an `InvalidUserType` error.

```
Edit-IAMPassword -OldPassword "MyOldP@ssw0rd" -NewPassword "MyNewP@ssw0rd"
```

- For API details, see ChangePassword in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateAccessKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create read-only and read-write users
- Manage access keys

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM access key for a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for which to create the IAM access
    /// key.</param>
    /// <returns>The AccessKey.</returns>
    public async Task<AccessKey> CreateAccessKeyAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateAccessKeyAsync(new
 CreateAccessKeyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.AccessKey;

    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function iam_create_user_access_key
#
# This function creates an IAM access key for the specified user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name -- The name of the IAM user.
#       [-f file_name] -- The optional file name for the access key output.
#
# Returns:
#       [access_key_id access_key_secret]
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_create_user_access_key() {
  local user_name file_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) key pair."
    echo "  -u user_name   The name of the IAM user."
    echo "  [-f file_name]   Optional file name for the access key output."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
```

```
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-access-key \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$file_name" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_name"
  fi

  local key_id key_secret
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_id=$(echo $response | cut -f 2 -d ' ')
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_secret=$(echo $response | cut -f 4 -d ' ')

  echo "$key_id $key_secret"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
Aws::String AwsDoc::IAM::createAccessKey(const Aws::String &userName,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccessKeyRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);

    Aws::String result;
    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccessKeyOutcome outcome =
 iam.CreateAccessKey(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating access key for IAM user " << userName
                  << ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        const auto &accessKey = outcome.GetResult().GetAccessKey();
        std::cout << "Successfully created access key for IAM user " <<
                  userName << std::endl << "  aws_access_key_id = " <<
                  accessKey.GetAccessKeyId() << std::endl <<
                  " aws_secret_access_key = " << accessKey.GetSecretAccessKey()
 <<
                  std::endl;
        result = accessKey.GetAccessKeyId();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an access key for an IAM user

The following `create-access-key` command creates an access key (access key ID and secret access key) for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam create-access-key \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccessKey": {
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "Status": "Active",
        "CreateDate": "2015-03-09T18:39:23.411Z",
        "SecretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYzEXAMPLEKEY",
        "AccessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
    }
}
```

Store the secret access key in a secure location. If it is lost, it cannot be recovered, and you must create a new access key.

For more information, see Managing access keys for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateAccessKeyPair creates an access key for a user. The returned access key
 contains
// the ID and secret credentials needed to use the key.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateAccessKeyPair(ctx context.Context, userName
 string) (*types.AccessKey, error) {
 var key *types.AccessKey
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateAccessKey(ctx, &iam.CreateAccessKeyInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create access key pair for user %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 } else {
  key = result.AccessKey
 }
 return key, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateAccessKeyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateAccessKeyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateAccessKey {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <user>\s

                Where:
                   user - An AWS IAM user that you can obtain from the AWS
 Management Console.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String user = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String keyId = createIAMAccessKey(iam, user);
        System.out.println("The Key Id is " + keyId);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMAccessKey(IamClient iam, String user) {
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyRequest request = CreateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .userName(user)
                    .build();

            CreateAccessKeyResponse response = iam.createAccessKey(request);
            return response.accessKey().accessKeyId();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the access key.

```
import { CreateAccessKeyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 */
export const createAccessKey = (userName) => {
  const command = new CreateAccessKeyCommand({ UserName: userName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.createAccessKey({ UserName: "IAM_USER_NAME" }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.AccessKey);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMAccessKey(user: String?): String {
    val request =
        CreateAccessKeyRequest {
            userName = user
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createAccessKey(request)
        return response.accessKey?.accessKeyId.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new access key and secret access key pair and assigns it to the user `David`. Ensure that you save the `AccessKeyId` and `SecretAccessKey` values to a file because this is the only time you can obtain the `SecretAccessKey`. You cannot retrieve it later. If you lose the secret key, you must create a new access key pair.

```
New-IAMAccessKey -UserName David
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId     : AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
CreateDate      : 4/13/2015 1:00:42 PM
SecretAccessKey : wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY
Status          : Active
UserName        : David
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new access key and secret access key pair and assigns it to the user `David`. Ensure that you save the `AccessKeyId` and `SecretAccessKey` values to a file because this is the only time you can obtain the `SecretAccessKey`. You cannot retrieve it later. If you lose the secret key, you must create a new access key pair.

```
New-IAMAccessKey -UserName David
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId     : AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
CreateDate      : 4/13/2015 1:00:42 PM
SecretAccessKey : wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY
Status          : Active
UserName        : David
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_key(user_name):
    """
```

```
    Creates an access key for the specified user. Each user can have a
    maximum of two keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The created access key.
    """
    try:
        key_pair = iam.User(user_name).create_access_key_pair()
        logger.info(
            "Created access key pair for %s. Key ID is %s.",
            key_pair.user_name,
            key_pair.id,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create access key pair for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return key_pair
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, deactivates, and deletes access keys.

```
# Manages access keys for IAM users
class AccessKeyManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'AccessKeyManager'
```

```
  end

  # Lists access keys for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  def list_access_keys(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name)
    if response.access_key_metadata.empty?
      @logger.info("No access keys found for user '#{user_name}'.")
    else
      response.access_key_metadata.map(&:access_key_id)
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: cannot find user '#{user_name}'.")
    []
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_access_key(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user_name)
    access_key = response.access_key
    @logger.info("Access key created for user '#{user_name}':
#{access_key.access_key_id}")
    access_key
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::LimitExceeded
    @logger.error('Error creating access key: limit exceeded. Cannot create
more.')
    nil
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating access key: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Deactivates an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
```

```
  def deactivate_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.update_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id,
      status: 'Inactive'
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deactivating access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def delete_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.delete_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_access_key(client: &iamClient, user_name: &str) ->
 Result<AccessKey, iamError> {
    let mut tries: i32 = 0;
    let max_tries: i32 = 10;

    let response: Result<CreateAccessKeyOutput, SdkError<CreateAccessKeyError>> =
 loop {
        match client.create_access_key().user_name(user_name).send().await {
            Ok(inner_response) => {
                break Ok(inner_response);
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tries += 1;
                if tries > max_tries {
                    break Err(e);
                }
                sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
            }
        }
    };

    Ok(response.unwrap().access_key.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3
```

```
    public func createAccessKey(userName: String) async throws ->
IAMClientTypes.AccessKey {
        let input = CreateAccessKeyInput(
            userName: userName
        )
        do {
            let output = try await iamClient.createAccessKey(input: input)
            guard let accessKey = output.accessKey else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.keyError
            }
            return accessKey
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createAccessKey:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateAccountAlias` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::createAccountAlias(const Aws::String &aliasName,
```

```
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccountAliasRequest request;
    request.SetAccountAlias(aliasName);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccountAliasOutcome outcome = iam.CreateAccountAlias(
            request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating account alias " << aliasName << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully created account alias " << aliasName <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an account alias

The following `create-account-alias` command creates the alias `examplecorp` for your AWS account.

```
aws iam create-account-alias \
    --account-alias examplecorp
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Your AWS account ID and its alias in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateAccountAliasRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateAccountAlias {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <alias>\s

                Where:
                    alias - The account alias to create (for example,
 myawsaccount).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alias = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
```

```
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createIAMAccountAlias(iam, alias);
        iam.close();
        System.out.println("Done");
    }

    public static void createIAMAccountAlias(IamClient iam, String alias) {
        try {
            CreateAccountAliasRequest request =
 CreateAccountAliasRequest.builder()
                    .accountAlias(alias)
                    .build();

            iam.createAccountAlias(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully created account alias: " + alias);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the account alias.

```
import { CreateAccountAliasCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
```

```
const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} alias - A unique name for the account alias.
 * @returns
 */
export const createAccountAlias = (alias) => {
  const command = new CreateAccountAliasCommand({
    AccountAlias: alias,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.createAccountAlias({ AccountAlias: process.argv[2] }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
```

```
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMAccountAlias(alias: String) {
    val request =
        CreateAccountAliasRequest {
            accountAlias = alias
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.createAccountAlias(request)
        println("Successfully created account alias named $alias")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the account alias for your AWS account to `mycompanyaws`. The address of the user logon page chages to https://mycompanyaws.signin.aws.amazon.com/console. The original URL using your account ID number instead of the alias (https://<accountidnumber>.signin.aws.amazon.com/

console) continues to work. However, any previously defined alias-based URLs stop working.

```
New-IAMAccountAlias -AccountAlias mycompanyaws
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the account alias for your AWS account to `mycompanyaws`. The address of the user logon page chages to https://mycompanyaws.signin.aws.amazon.com/console. The original URL using your account ID number instead of the alias (https://<accountidnumber>.signin.aws.amazon.com/console) continues to work. However, any previously defined alias-based URLs stop working.

```
New-IAMAccountAlias -AccountAlias mycompanyaws
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_alias(alias):
    """
    Creates an alias for the current account. The alias can be used in place of
 the
    account ID in the sign-in URL. An account can have only one alias. When a new
    alias is created, it replaces any existing alias.

    :param alias: The alias to assign to the account.
    """
```

```
    try:
        iam.create_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Created an alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, create, and delete account aliases.

```
class IAMAliasManager
  # Initializes the IAM client and logger
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists available AWS account aliases.
  def list_aliases
    response = @iam_client.list_account_aliases

    if response.account_aliases.count.positive?
      @logger.info('Account aliases are:')
      response.account_aliases.each { |account_alias| @logger.info("
 #{account_alias}") }
    else
```

```
      @logger.info('No account aliases found.')
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing account aliases: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Creates an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was created; otherwise, false.
  def create_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.create_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to delete.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.delete_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `CreateGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an IAM group

The following `create-group` command creates an IAM group named `Admins`.

```
aws iam create-group \
    --group-name Admins
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "Path": "/",
        "CreateDate": "2015-03-09T20:30:24.940Z",
        "GroupId": "AIDGPMS9RO4H3FEXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Admins",
        "GroupName": "Admins"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM user groups in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateGroupCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
export const createGroup = async (groupName) => {
  const command = new CreateGroupCommand({ GroupName: groupName });
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM group named `Developers`.

```
New-IAMGroup -GroupName Developers
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 4/14/2015 11:21:31 AM
GroupId    : QNEJ5PM4NFSQCEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM group named `Developers`.

```
New-IAMGroup -GroupName Developers
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 4/14/2015 11:21:31 AM
GroupId    : QNEJ5PM4NFSQCEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateInstanceProfile` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateInstanceProfile`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with
a specified name.
   /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
   /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
   /// clients that run on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
   /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
   /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
   /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
   /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to
the role.</param>
   /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
   public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
       string policyName,
       string roleName,
       string profileName,
       string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
       List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
   {
```

```
        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }
```

```
            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await
_amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
```

```
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an instance profile

The following `create-instance-profile` command creates an instance profile named `Webserver`.

```
aws iam create-instance-profile \
    --instance-profile-name Webserver
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceProfile": {
        "InstanceProfileId": "AIPAJMBYC7DLSPEXAMPLE",
        "Roles": [],
        "CreateDate": "2015-03-09T20:33:19.626Z",
        "InstanceProfileName": "Webserver",
        "Path": "/",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/Webserver"
    }
}
```

To add a role to an instance profile, use the `add-role-to-instance-profile` command.

For more information, see Using an IAM role to grant permissions to applications running on Amazon EC2 instances in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
  new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
    InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
  }),
);
await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
  { client: iamClient },
  { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
);
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM instance profile named `ProfileForDevEC2Instance`. You must separately run the `Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile` command to associate the instance profile with an existing IAM role that provides permissions to the instance. Finally, attach the instance profile to an EC2 instance when you launch it. To do that, use the `New-EC2Instance` cmdlet with either the `InstanceProfile_Arn` or `InstanceProfile_Name` parameter.

```
New-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName ProfileForDevEC2Instance
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ProfileForDevEC2Instance
CreateDate          : 4/14/2015 11:31:39 AM
InstanceProfileId   : DYMFXL556EY46EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ProfileForDevEC2Instance
Path                : /
Roles               : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM instance profile named `ProfileForDevEC2Instance`. You must separately run the `Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile` command to associate the instance profile with an existing IAM role that provides permissions to the instance. Finally, attach the instance profile to an EC2 instance when you launch it. To do that, use the `New-EC2Instance` cmdlet with either the `InstanceProfile_Arn` or `InstanceProfile_Name` parameter.

```
New-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName ProfileForDevEC2Instance
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ProfileForDevEC2Instance
```

```
CreateDate          : 4/14/2015 11:31:39 AM
InstanceProfileId   : DYMFXL556EY46EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ProfileForDevEC2Instance
Path                : /
Roles               : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example creates a policy, role, and instance profile and links them all together.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
```

```
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is
assumed by the
```

```
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as
AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to
the instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
```

```
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateLoginProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateLoginProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a password for an IAM user

To create a password for an IAM user, we recommend using the `--cli-input-json` parameter to pass a JSON file that contains the password. Using this method, you can create a strong password with non-alphanumeric characters. It can be difficult to create a password with non-alphanumeric characters when you pass it as a command line parameter.

To use the `--cli-input-json` parameter, start by using the `create-login-profile` command with the `--generate-cli-skeleton` parameter, as in the following example.

```
aws iam create-login-profile \
    --generate-cli-skeleton > create-login-profile.json
```

The previous command creates a JSON file called create-login-profile.json that you can use to fill in the information for a subsequent `create-login-profile` command. For example:

```
{
    "UserName": "Bob",
    "Password": "&1-3a6u:RA0djs",
    "PasswordResetRequired": true
}
```

Next, to create a password for an IAM user, use the `create-login-profile` command again, this time passing the `--cli-input-json` parameter to specify your JSON file. The following `create-login-profile` command uses the `--cli-input-json` parameter with a JSON file called create-login-profile.json.

```
aws iam create-login-profile \
    --cli-input-json file://create-login-profile.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoginProfile": {
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "CreateDate": "2015-03-10T20:55:40.274Z",
        "PasswordResetRequired": true
    }
}
```

If the new password violates the account password policy, the command returns a `PasswordPolicyViolation` error.

To change the password for a user that already has one, use `update-login-profile`. To set a password policy for the account, use the `update-account-password-policy` command.

If the account password policy allows them to, IAM users can change their own passwords using the `change-password` command.

For more information, see Managing passwords for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateLoginProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a (temporary) password for the IAM user named Bob, and sets the flag that requires the user to change the password the next time Bob signs in.

```
New-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob -Password P@ssw0rd -PasswordResetRequired $true
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                    PasswordResetRequired               UserName
----------                    ---------------------               --------
4/14/2015 12:26:30 PM         True                                Bob
```

- For API details, see CreateLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a (temporary) password for the IAM user named Bob, and sets the flag that requires the user to change the password the next time Bob signs in.

```
New-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob -Password P@ssw0rd -PasswordResetRequired $true
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                    PasswordResetRequired               UserName
----------                    ---------------------               --------
4/14/2015 12:26:30 PM         True                                Bob
```

- For API details, see CreateLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateOpenIdConnectProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateOpenIdConnectProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an OpenID Connect (OIDC) provider

To create an OpenID Connect (OIDC) provider, we recommend using the `--cli-input-json` parameter to pass a JSON file that contains the required parameters. When you create an OIDC provider, you must pass the URL of the provider, and the URL must begin with `https://`. It can be difficult to pass the URL as a command line parameter, because the colon (:) and forward slash (/) characters have special meaning in some command line environments. Using the `--cli-input-json` parameter gets around this limitation.

To use the `--cli-input-json` parameter, start by using the `create-open-id-connect-provider` command with the `--generate-cli-skeleton` parameter, as in the following example.

```
aws iam create-open-id-connect-provider \
    --generate-cli-skeleton > create-open-id-connect-provider.json
```

The previous command creates a JSON file called create-open-id-connect-provider.json that you can use to fill in the information for a subsequent `create-open-id-connect-provider` command. For example:

```
{
    "Url": "https://server.example.com",
    "ClientIDList": [
        "example-application-ID"
    ],
    "ThumbprintList": [
        "c3768084dfb3d2b68b7897bf5f565da8eEXAMPLE"
    ]
}
```

Next, to create the OpenID Connect (OIDC) provider, use the `create-open-id-connect-provider` command again, this time passing the `--cli-input-json` parameter to specify your JSON file. The following `create-open-id-connect-provider` command uses the `--cli-input-json` parameter with a JSON file called create-open-id-connect-provider.json.

```
aws iam create-open-id-connect-provider \
    --cli-input-json file://create-open-id-connect-provider.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "OpenIDConnectProviderArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
server.example.com"
}
```

For more information about OIDC providers, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

For more information about obtaining thumbprints for an OIDC provider, see Obtaining the thumbprint for an OpenID Connect Identity Provider in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an IAM OIDC provider associated with the OIDC compatible provider service found at the URL `https://example.oidcprovider.com` and the client ID `my-testapp-1`. The OIDC provider supplies the thumbprint. To authenticate the thumbprint, follow the steps at http://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/identity-providers-oidc-obtain-thumbprint.html.

```
New-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -Url https://example.oidcprovider.com -ClientIDList
 my-testapp-1 -ThumbprintList 990F419EXAMPLEECF12DDEDA5EXAMPLE52F20D9E
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see CreateOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an IAM OIDC provider associated with the OIDC compatible provider service found at the URL `https://example.oidcprovider.com` and the client ID `my-testapp-1`. The OIDC provider supplies the thumbprint. To authenticate the thumbprint, follow the steps at http://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/identity-providers-oidc-obtain-thumbprint.html.

```
New-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -Url https://example.oidcprovider.com -ClientIDList
 my-testapp-1 -ThumbprintList 990F419EXAMPLEECF12DDEDA5EXAMPLE52F20D9E
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see CreateOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreatePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create read-only and read-write users
- Manage policies
- Set up Attribute-Based Access Control
- Work with the IAM Policy Builder API

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name to give the new IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new policy.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new IAM policy object.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> CreatePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 policyDocument)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreatePolicyAsync(new
 CreatePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            PolicyName = policyName,
        });

        return response.Policy;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_policy
#
# This function creates an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_name -- The name of the IAM policy.
#       -p policy_json -- The policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_policy() {
  local policy_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_policy"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy."
    echo "  -n policy_name   The name of the IAM policy."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The policy document."
```

```
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) policy_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$policy_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-policy \
  --policy-name "$policy_name" \
  --policy-document "$policy_document" \
  --output text \
  --query Policy.Arn)

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-policy operation failed.\n$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
Aws::String AwsDoc::IAM::createPolicy(const Aws::String &policyName,
                                      const Aws::String &rsrcArn,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyRequest request;
    request.SetPolicyName(policyName);
    request.SetPolicyDocument(BuildSamplePolicyDocument(rsrcArn));

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyOutcome outcome = iam.CreatePolicy(request);
    Aws::String result;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating policy " << policyName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        result = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy().GetArn();
        std::cout << "Successfully created policy " << policyName <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return result;
```

```
}

Aws::String AwsDoc::IAM::BuildSamplePolicyDocument(const Aws::String &rsrc_arn) {
    std::stringstream stringStream;
    stringStream << "{"
                 << "  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\","
                 << "  \"Statement\": ["
                 << "    {"
                 << "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\","
                 << "        \"Action\": \"logs:CreateLogGroup\","
                 << "        \"Resource\": \""
                 << rsrc_arn
                 << "\""
                 << "    },"
                 << "    {"
                 << "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\","
                 << "        \"Action\": ["
                 << "            \"dynamodb:DeleteItem\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:GetItem\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:PutItem\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:Scan\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:UpdateItem\""
                 << "       ],"
                 << "       \"Resource\": \""
                 << rsrc_arn
                 << "\""
                 << "    }"
                 << "   ]"
                 << "}";

    return stringStream.str();
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a customer managed policy

The following command creates a customer managed policy named `my-policy`. The file `policy.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that grants read only access to the `shared` folder in an Amazon S3 bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`.

```
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name my-policy \
    --policy-document file://policy.json
```

Contents of policy.json:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "s3:Get*",
                "s3:List*"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/shared/*"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policy": {
        "PolicyName": "my-policy",
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-01T19:31:18.620Z",
        "AttachmentCount": 0,
        "IsAttachable": true,
        "PolicyId": "ZXR6A36LTYANPAI7NJ5UV",
        "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
        "Path": "/",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::0123456789012:policy/my-policy",
        "UpdateDate": "2015-06-01T19:31:18.620Z"
    }
}
```

For more information on using files as input for string parameters, see Specify parameter values for the AWS CLI in the *AWS CLI User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a customer managed policy with a description

The following command creates a customer managed policy named `my-policy` with an immutable description.

The file `policy.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that grants access to all Put, List, and Get actions for an Amazon S3 bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`.

```
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name my-policy \
    --policy-document file://policy.json \
    --description "This policy grants access to all Put, Get, and List actions
 for amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
```

Contents of policy.json:

```
{
   "Version": "2012-10-17",
   "Statement": [
       {
           "Effect": "Allow",
           "Action": [
                "s3:ListBucket*",
                "s3:PutBucket*",
                "s3:GetBucket*"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policy": {
        "PolicyName": "my-policy",
```

```
        "PolicyId": "ANPAWGSUGIDPEXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/my-policy",
        "Path": "/",
        "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
        "AttachmentCount": 0,
        "PermissionsBoundaryUsageCount": 0,
        "IsAttachable": true,
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-24T22:38:47+00:00",
        "UpdateDate": "2023-05-24T22:38:47+00:00"
    }
}
```

For more information on Idenity-based Policies, see Identity-based policies and resource-based policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a customer managed policy with tags

The following command creates a customer managed policy named `my-policy` with tags. This example uses the `--tags` parameter with the following JSON-formatted tags: `'{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}' '{"Key": "Location", "Value": "Seattle"}'`. Alternatively, the `--tags` parameter can be used with tags in the shorthand format: `'Key=Department,Value=Accounting Key=Location,Value=Seattle'`.

The file `policy.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that grants access to all Put, List, and Get actions for an Amazon S3 bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`.

```
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name my-policy \
    --policy-document file://policy.json \
    --tags '{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}' '{"Key": "Location",
 "Value": "Seattle"}'
```

Contents of policy.json:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
```

```
                "s3:ListBucket*",
                "s3:PutBucket*",
                "s3:GetBucket*"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policy": {
        "PolicyName": "my-policy",
        "PolicyId": "ANPAWGSUGIDPEXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678012:policy/my-policy",
        "Path": "/",
        "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
        "AttachmentCount": 0,
        "PermissionsBoundaryUsageCount": 0,
        "IsAttachable": true,
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-24T23:16:39+00:00",
        "UpdateDate": "2023-05-24T23:16:39+00:00",
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Department",
                "Value": "Accounting"
            },
                "Key": "Location",
                "Value": "Seattle"
            {
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information on Tagging policies, see Tagging customer managed policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    []string
```

```
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
}

// CreatePolicy creates a policy that grants a list of actions to the specified
 resource.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure
 and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) CreatePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyName string,
 actions []string,
 resourceArn string) (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(resourceArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 resourceArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreatePolicy(ctx, &iam.CreatePolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyName, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
 return policy, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreatePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreatePolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.waiters.IamWaiter;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreatePolicy {

    public static final String PolicyDocument = "{" +
            "  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            "  \"Statement\": [" +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Action\": [" +
            "            \"dynamodb:DeleteItem\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:GetItem\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:PutItem\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:Scan\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:UpdateItem\"" +
```

```
            "       ]," +
            "       \"Resource\": \"*\"" +
            "    }" +
            "   ]" +
            "}";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    CreatePolicy <policyName>\s

                Where:
                    policyName - A unique policy name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String policyName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String result = createIAMPolicy(iam, policyName);
        System.out.println("Successfully created a policy with this ARN value: "
 + result);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMPolicy(IamClient iam, String policyName) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object.
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();

            CreatePolicyRequest request = CreatePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyName(policyName)
                    .policyDocument(PolicyDocument)
                    .build();

            CreatePolicyResponse response = iam.createPolicy(request);
```

```
            // Wait until the policy is created.
            GetPolicyRequest polRequest = GetPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(response.policy().arn())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetPolicyResponse> waitUntilPolicyExists =
 iamWaiter.waitUntilPolicyExists(polRequest);

 waitUntilPolicyExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.policy().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the policy.

```
import { CreatePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyName
```

```
 */
export const createPolicy = (policyName) => {
  const command = new CreatePolicyCommand({
    PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Action: "*",
          Resource: "*",
        },
      ],
    }),
    PolicyName: policyName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var myManagedPolicy = {
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: [
```

```
    {
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: "logs:CreateLogGroup",
      Resource: "RESOURCE_ARN",
    },
    {
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: [
        "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:Scan",
        "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
      ],
      Resource: "RESOURCE_ARN",
    },
  ],
};

var params = {
  PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify(myManagedPolicy),
  PolicyName: "myDynamoDBPolicy",
};

iam.createPolicy(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMPolicy(policyNameVal: String?): String {
    val policyDocumentVal = """
    {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
                    "dynamodb:GetItem",
                    "dynamodb:PutItem",
                    "dynamodb:Scan",
                    "dynamodb:UpdateItem"
                ],
                "Resource": "*"
            }
        ]
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val request =
        CreatePolicyRequest {
            policyName = policyNameVal
            policyDocument = policyDocumentVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createPolicy(request)
        return response.policy?.arn.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$listAllBucketsPolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
}";
$listAllBucketsPolicy = $service->createPolicy("iam_demo_policy_$uuid",
 $listAllBucketsPolicyDocument);
echo "Created policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";

    /**
     * @param string $policyName
     * @param string $policyDocument
     * @return array
     */
    public function createPolicy(string $policyName, string $policyDocument)
    {
        $result = $this->customWaiter(function () use ($policyName,
 $policyDocument) {
            return $this->iamClient->createPolicy([
                'PolicyName' => $policyName,
                'PolicyDocument' => $policyDocument,
            ]);
        });
        return $result['Policy'];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM policy in the current AWS account named `MySamplePolicy` The file `MySamplePolicy.json` provides the policy content. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file.

```
New-IAMPolicy -PolicyName MySamplePolicy -PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw
 MySamplePolicy.json)
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 4/14/2015 2:45:59 PM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : LD4KP6HVFE7WGEXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : MySamplePolicy
UpdateDate       : 4/14/2015 2:45:59 PM
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM policy in the current AWS account named `MySamplePolicy` The file `MySamplePolicy.json` provides the policy content. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file.

```
New-IAMPolicy -PolicyName MySamplePolicy -PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw
 MySamplePolicy.json)
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 4/14/2015 2:45:59 PM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : LD4KP6HVFE7WGEXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : MySamplePolicy
UpdateDate       : 4/14/2015 2:45:59 PM
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_policy(name, description, actions, resource_arn):
    """
    Creates a policy that contains a single statement.

    :param name: The name of the policy to create.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions allowed by the policy. These typically take the
                    form of service:action, such as s3:PutObject.
    :param resource_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource this
 policy
                         applies to. This ARN can contain wildcards, such as
                         'arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*' to allow actions on
 all objects
                         in the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
```

```
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.create_policy(
            PolicyName=name,
            Description=description,
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc),
        )
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
```

```
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not
exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
```

```
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    policy_name: &str,
    policy_document: &str,
) -> Result<Policy, iamError> {
    let policy = client
        .create_policy()
        .policy_name(policy_name)
        .policy_document(policy_document)
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(policy.policy.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3
```

```
    public func createPolicy(name: String, policyDocument: String) async throws -
> IAMClientTypes.Policy {
        let input = CreatePolicyInput(
            policyDocument: policyDocument,
            policyName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await iamClient.createPolicy(input: input)
            guard let policy = output.policy else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchPolicy
            }
            return policy
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreatePolicyVersion` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePolicyVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage policies

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a new version of a managed policy

This example creates a new v2 version of the IAM policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` and makes it the default version.

```
aws iam create-policy-version \
```

```
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy \
    --policy-document file://NewPolicyVersion.json \
    --set-as-default
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyVersion": {
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-16T18:56:03.721Z",
        "VersionId": "v2",
        "IsDefaultVersion": true
    }
}
```

For more information, see Versioning IAM policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreatePolicyVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new "v2" version of the IAM policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` and makes it the default version. The `NewPolicyVersion.json` file provides the policy content. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file.

```
New-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-content -Raw NewPolicyVersion.json) -SetAsDefault $true
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                          Document                  IsDefaultVersion
           VersionId
----------                          --------                  ----------------
           ---------
4/15/2015 10:54:54 AM                                         True
           v2
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new "v2" version of the IAM policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` and makes it the default version. The `NewPolicyVersion.json` file provides the policy content. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file.

```
New-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-content -Raw NewPolicyVersion.json) -SetAsDefault $true
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                          Document                 IsDefaultVersion
           VersionId
----------                          --------                 ----------------
           ---------
4/15/2015 10:54:54 AM                                        True
           v2
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_policy_version(policy_arn, actions, resource_arn, set_as_default):
    """
    Creates a policy version. Policies can have up to five versions. The default
    version is the one that is used for all resources that reference the policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions to allow in the policy version.
    :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource this policy version applies to.
```

```
    :param set_as_default: When True, this policy version is set as the default
                           version for the policy. Otherwise, the default
                           is not changed.
    :return: The newly created policy version.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        policy_version = policy.create_version(
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc), SetAsDefault=set_as_default
        )
        logger.info(
            "Created policy version %s for policy %s.",
            policy_version.version_id,
            policy_version.arn,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create a policy version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_version
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicyVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateRole` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRole`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage roles
- Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="rolePolicyDocument">The name of the IAM policy document
    /// for the new role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateRoleAsync(string roleName, string
rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = rolePolicyDocument,
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_role
#
# This function creates an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the role.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_role() {
  local role_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role."
```

```
  echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
  echo "  -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-role \
  --role-name "$role_name" \
  --assume-role-policy-document "$policy_document" \
  --output text \
  --query Role.Arn)

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
```

```
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::createIamRole(
        const Aws::String &roleName,
        const Aws::String &policy,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleRequest request;

    request.SetRoleName(roleName);
    request.SetAssumeRolePolicyDocument(policy);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleOutcome outcome = client.CreateRole(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating role. " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        const Aws::IAM::Model::Role iamRole = outcome.GetResult().GetRole();
        std::cout << "Created role " << iamRole.GetRoleName() << "\n";
        std::cout << "ID: " << iamRole.GetRoleId() << "\n";
```

```
        std::cout << "ARN: " << iamRole.GetArn() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an IAM role

The following `create-role` command creates a role named `Test-Role` and attaches a trust policy to it.

```
aws iam create-role \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://Test-Role-Trust-Policy.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "Role": {
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": "<URL-encoded-JSON>",
        "RoleId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "CreateDate": "2013-06-07T20:43:32.821Z",
        "RoleName": "Test-Role",
        "Path": "/",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Test-Role"
    }
}
```

The trust policy is defined as a JSON document in the *Test-Role-Trust-Policy.json* file. (The file name and extension do not have significance.) The trust policy must specify a principal.

To attach a permissions policy to a role, use the `put-role-policy` command.

For more information, see Creating IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

Example 2: To create an IAM role with specified maximum session duration

The following `create-role` command creates a role named `Test-Role` and sets a maximum session duration of 7200 seconds (2 hours).

```
aws iam create-role \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://Test-Role-Trust-Policy.json \
    --max-session-duration 7200
```

Output:

```
{
    "Role": {
        "Path": "/",
        "RoleName": "Test-Role",
        "RoleId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678012:role/Test-Role",
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-24T23:50:25+00:00",
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "Statement1",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::12345678012:root"
                    },
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                }
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Modifying a role maximum session duration (AWS API) in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

Example 3: To create an IAM Role with tags

The following command creates an IAM Role `Test-Role` with tags. This example uses the `--tags` parameter flag with the following JSON-formatted tags: `'{"Key":`

"Department", "Value": "Accounting"}' '{"Key": "Location", "Value": "Seattle"}'. Alternatively, the `--tags` flag can be used with tags in the shorthand format: `'Key=Department,Value=Accounting Key=Location,Value=Seattle'`.

```
aws iam create-role \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://Test-Role-Trust-Policy.json \
    --tags '{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}' '{"Key": "Location",
 "Value": "Seattle"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Role": {
        "Path": "/",
        "RoleName": "Test-Role",
        "RoleId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Test-Role",
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-25T23:29:41+00:00",
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "Statement1",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root"
                    },
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Department",
                "Value": "Accounting"
            },
            {
                "Key": "Location",
                "Value": "Seattle"
            }
        ]
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Tagging IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateRole creates a role that trusts a specified user. The trusted user can
 assume
// the role to acquire its permissions.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure
 and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
```

```
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 trustedUserArn string) (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 trustPolicy := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Principal: map[string]string{"AWS": trustedUserArn},
   Action:    []string{"sts:AssumeRole"},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(trustPolicy)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create trust policy for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 trustedUserArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateRole(ctx, &iam.CreateRoleInput{
  AssumeRolePolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  RoleName:                 aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import org.json.simple.JSONObject;
import org.json.simple.parser.JSONParser;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateRoleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateRoleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import java.io.FileReader;

/*
*   This example requires a trust policy document. For more information, see:
*   https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/security/how-to-use-trust-policies-with-iam-
roles/
*
*
*  In addition, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
*
*  For information, see this documentation topic:
*
*  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class CreateRole {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <rolename> <fileLocation>\s

                Where:
                    rolename - The name of the role to create.\s
                    fileLocation - The location of the JSON document that
 represents the trust policy.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String rolename = args[0];
        String fileLocation = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
```

```
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String result = createIAMRole(iam, rolename, fileLocation);
        System.out.println("Successfully created user: " + result);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
 fileLocation) throws Exception {
        try {
            JSONObject jsonObject = (JSONObject)
 readJsonSimpleDemo(fileLocation);
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(jsonObject.toJSONString())
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the role is " +
 response.role().arn());

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static Object readJsonSimpleDemo(String filename) throws Exception {
        FileReader reader = new FileReader(filename);
        JSONParser jsonParser = new JSONParser();
        return jsonParser.parse(reader);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the role.

```
import { CreateRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const createRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new CreateRoleCommand({
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Principal: {
            Service: "lambda.amazonaws.com",
          },
          Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
        },
      ],
    }),
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{$user['Arn']}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }";
$assumeRoleRole = $service->createRole("iam_demo_role_$uuid",
 $assumeRolePolicyDocument);
echo "Created role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";

    /**
     * @param string $roleName
     * @param string $rolePolicyDocument
     * @return array
     * @throws AwsException
     */
    public function createRole(string $roleName, string $rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        $result = $this->customWaiter(function () use ($roleName,
 $rolePolicyDocument) {
            return $this->iamClient->createRole([
                'AssumeRolePolicyDocument' => $rolePolicyDocument,
                'RoleName' => $roleName,
            ]);
        });
        return $result['Role'];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new role named `MyNewRole` and attaches to it the policy found in the file `NewRoleTrustPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file. The policy document displayed in the output is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = New-IAMRole -AssumeRolePolicyDocument (Get-Content -raw
 NewRoleTrustPolicy.json) -RoleName MyNewRole
$results
```

Output:

```
Arn                      : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MyNewRole
AssumeRolePolicyDocument : %7B%0D%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C
%0D%0A%20%20%22Statement%22
                           %3A%20%5B%0D%0A%20%20%20%20%7B%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%22Sid%22%3A%20%22%22%2C
                           %0D%0A%20%20%20%20%20%20%22Effect%22%3A%20%22Allow
%22%2C%0D%0A%20%20%20%20%20%20
                           %22Principal%22%3A%20%7B%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%22AWS%22%3A%20%22arn%3Aaws
                           %3Aiam%3A%3A123456789012%3ADavid%22%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%7D%2C%0D%0A%20%20%20
                           %20%20%20%22Action%22%3A%20%22sts%3AAssumeRole%22%0D
%0A%20%20%20%20%7D%0D%0A%20
                           %20%5D%0D%0A%7D
CreateDate               : 4/15/2015 11:04:23 AM
Path                     : /
RoleId                   : V5PAJI2KPN4EAEXAMPLE1
RoleName                 : MyNewRole

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
```

```
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.AssumeRolePolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:David"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new role named `MyNewRole` and attaches to it the policy found in the file `NewRoleTrustPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file. The policy document displayed in the output is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = New-IAMRole -AssumeRolePolicyDocument (Get-Content -raw
 NewRoleTrustPolicy.json) -RoleName MyNewRole
$results
```

Output:

```
Arn                      : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MyNewRole
AssumeRolePolicyDocument : %7B%0D%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C
%0D%0A%20%20%22Statement%22
                           %3A%20%5B%0D%0A%20%20%20%20%7B%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%22Sid%22%3A%20%22%22%2C
                           %0D%0A%20%20%20%20%20%20%22Effect%22%3A%20%22Allow
%22%2C%0D%0A%20%20%20%20%20%20
                           %22Principal%22%3A%20%7B%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%22AWS%22%3A%20%22arn%3Aaws
                           %3Aiam%3A%3A123456789012%3ADavid%22%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%7D%2C%0D%0A%20%20%20
```

```
                              %20%20%20%22Action%22%3A%20%22sts%3AAssumeRole%22%0D
%0A%20%20%20%20%7D%0D%0A%20
                              %20%5D%0D%0A%7D
CreateDate                  : 4/15/2015 11:04:23 AM
Path                        : /
RoleId                      : V5PAJI2KPN4EAEXAMPLE1
RoleName                    : MyNewRole

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.AssumeRolePolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:David"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_role(role_name, allowed_services):
    """
    Creates a role that lets a list of specified services assume the role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role.
    :param allowed_services: The services that can assume the role.
```

```
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {"Service": service},
                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
            }
            for service in allowed_services
        ],
    }

    try:
        role = iam.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name, AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy)
        )
        logger.info("Created role %s.", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create role %s.", role_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates a role and attaches policies to it.
#
```

```
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role.
  # @param assume_role_policy_document [Hash] The trust relationship policy
 document.
  # @param policy_arns [Array<String>] The ARNs of the policies to attach.
  # @return [String, nil] The ARN of the new role if successful, or nil if an
 error occurred.
  def create_role(role_name, assume_role_policy_document, policy_arns)
    response = @iam_client.create_role(
      role_name: role_name,
      assume_role_policy_document: assume_role_policy_document.to_json
    )
    role_arn = response.role.arn

    policy_arns.each do |policy_arn|
      @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
        role_name: role_name,
        policy_arn: policy_arn
      )
    end

    role_arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating role: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
```

```
    role_policy_document: &str,
) -> Result<Role, iamError> {
    let response: CreateRoleOutput = loop {
        if let Ok(response) = client
            .create_role()
            .role_name(role_name)
            .assume_role_policy_document(role_policy_document)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            break response;
        }
    };

    Ok(response.role.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createRole(name: String, policyDocument: String) async throws ->
 String {
        let input = CreateRoleInput(
            assumeRolePolicyDocument: policyDocument,
            roleName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.createRole(input: input)
```

```
            guard let role = output.role else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            guard let id = role.roleId else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            return id
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateSAMLProvider` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSAMLProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a SAML provider

This example creates a new SAML provider in IAM named `MySAMLProvider`. It is described by the SAML metadata document found in the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`.

```
aws iam create-saml-provider \
    --saml-metadata-document file://SAMLMetaData.xml \
    --name MySAMLProvider
```

Output:

```
{
    "SAMLProviderArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/MySAMLProvider"
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM SAML identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateSAMLProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateSAMLProviderCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import * as path from "node:path";
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * This sample document was generated using Auth0.
 * For more information on generating this document,
 see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_providers_create_saml.html#samlstep1.
 */
const sampleMetadataDocument = readFileSync(
  path.join(
    dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url),
    "../../../../resources/sample_files/sample_saml_metadata.xml",
  ),
);

/**
 *
 * @param {*} providerName
 * @returns
 */
export const createSAMLProvider = async (providerName) => {
  const command = new CreateSAMLProviderCommand({
    Name: providerName,
    SAMLMetadataDocument: sampleMetadataDocument.toString(),
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
```

```
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see CreateSAMLProvider in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new SAML provider entity in IAM. It is named `MySAMLProvider` and is described by the SAML metadata document found in the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`, which was separately downloaded from the SAML service provider's web site.

```
New-IAMSAMLProvider -Name MySAMLProvider -SAMLMetadataDocument (Get-Content -Raw
 SAMLMetaData.xml)
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/MySAMLProvider
```

- For API details, see CreateSAMLProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new SAML provider entity in IAM. It is named `MySAMLProvider` and is described by the SAML metadata document found in the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`, which was separately downloaded from the SAML service provider's web site.

```
New-IAMSAMLProvider -Name MySAMLProvider -SAMLMetadataDocument (Get-Content -Raw
 SAMLMetaData.xml)
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/MySAMLProvider
```

- For API details, see CreateSAMLProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateServiceLinkedRole` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM service-linked role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceName">The name of the AWS Service.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the IAM service-linked role.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(string serviceName,
 string description)
    {
        var request = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleRequest
        {
            AWSServiceName = serviceName,
            Description = description
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a service-linked role

The following `create-service-linked-role` example creates a service-linked role for the specified AWS service and attaches the specified description.

```
aws iam create-service-linked-role \
    --aws-service-name lex.amazonaws.com \
    --description "My service-linked role to support Lex"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Role": {
        "Path": "/aws-service-role/lex.amazonaws.com/",
        "RoleName": "AWSServiceRoleForLexBots",
        "RoleId": "AROA1234567890EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::1234567890:role/aws-service-role/lex.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForLexBots",
        "CreateDate": "2019-04-17T20:34:14+00:00",
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Action": [
                        "sts:AssumeRole"
                    ],
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                        "Service": [
                            "lex.amazonaws.com"
                        ]
                    }
                }
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Using service-linked roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateServiceLinkedRole creates a service-linked role that is owned by the
 specified service.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context,
 serviceName string, description string) (
 *types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.CreateServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  AWSServiceName: aws.String(serviceName),
  Description:    aws.String(description),
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 serviceName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a service-linked role.

```
import {
  CreateServiceLinkedRoleCommand,
  GetRoleCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} serviceName
 */
export const createServiceLinkedRole = async (serviceName) => {
  const command = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleCommand({
    // For a list of AWS services that support service-linked roles,
```

```
    // see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/reference_aws-
services-that-work-with-iam.html.
    //
    // For a list of AWS service endpoints, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
general/latest/gr/aws-service-information.html.
    AWSServiceName: serviceName,
  });
  try {
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(response);
    return response;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInputException" &&
      caught.message.includes(
        "Service role name AWSServiceRoleForElasticBeanstalk has been taken in
 this account",
      )
    ) {
      console.warn(caught.message);
      return client.send(
        new GetRoleCommand({ RoleName: "AWSServiceRoleForElasticBeanstalk" }),
      );
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function createServiceLinkedRole($awsServiceName, $customSuffix = "",
 $description = "")
    {
        $createServiceLinkedRoleArguments = ['AWSServiceName' =>
 $awsServiceName];
        if ($customSuffix) {
            $createServiceLinkedRoleArguments['CustomSuffix'] = $customSuffix;
        }
        if ($description) {
            $createServiceLinkedRoleArguments['Description'] = $description;
        }
        return $this->iamClient-
>createServiceLinkedRole($createServiceLinkedRoleArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a servicelinked role for autoscaling service.

```
New-IAMServiceLinkedRole -AWSServiceName autoscaling.amazonaws.com -CustomSuffix
 RoleNameEndsWithThis -Description "My service-linked role to support
 autoscaling"
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a servicelinked role for autoscaling service.

```
New-IAMServiceLinkedRole -AWSServiceName autoscaling.amazonaws.com -CustomSuffix
 RoleNameEndsWithThis -Description "My service-linked role to support
 autoscaling"
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_service_linked_role(service_name, description):
    """
    Creates a service-linked role.

    :param service_name: The name of the service that owns the role.
    :param description: A description to give the role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.create_service_linked_role(
            AWSServiceName=service_name, Description=description
        )
        role = iam.Role(response["Role"]["RoleName"])
        logger.info("Created service-linked role %s.", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create service-linked role for %s.",
 service_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Creates a service-linked role
 #
 # @param service_name [String] The service name to create the role for.
 # @param description [String] The description of the service-linked role.
 # @param suffix [String] Suffix for customizing role name.
 # @return [String] The name of the created role
 def create_service_linked_role(service_name, description, suffix)
   response = @iam_client.create_service_linked_role(
     aws_service_name: service_name, description: description, custom_suffix:
suffix
   )
   role_name = response.role.role_name
   @logger.info("Created service-linked role #{role_name}.")
   role_name
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.error("Couldn't create service-linked role for #{service_name}.
Here's why:")
   @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
   raise
 end
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_service_linked_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    aws_service_name: String,
    custom_suffix: Option<String>,
    description: Option<String>,
) -> Result<CreateServiceLinkedRoleOutput,
 SdkError<CreateServiceLinkedRoleError>> {
    let response = client
        .create_service_linked_role()
        .aws_service_name(aws_service_name)
        .set_custom_suffix(custom_suffix)
        .set_description(description)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createServiceLinkedRole(service: String, suffix: String? = nil,
 description: String?)
                    async throws -> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        let input = CreateServiceLinkedRoleInput(
            awsServiceName: service,
            customSuffix: suffix,
            description: description
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.createServiceLinkedRole(input: input)
            guard let role = output.role else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            return role
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createServiceLinkedRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateUser`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create read-only and read-write users

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for the new IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM user that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<User> CreateUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateUserAsync(new CreateUserRequest
 { UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
```

```
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user
#
# This function creates the specified IAM user, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the user.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must
 supply a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user. It must be unique within the
 account."
    echo ""
```

```
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "u:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
iecho ""

# If the user already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
if (iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
  errecho "ERROR: A user with that name already exists in the account."
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-user --user-name "$user_name" \
  --output text \
  --query 'User.Arn')

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-user operation failed.$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateUserRequest create_request;
    create_request.SetUserName(userName);

    auto create_outcome = iam.CreateUser(create_request);
    if (!create_outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating IAM user " << userName << ":" <<
                  create_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully created IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
    }

    return create_outcome.IsSuccess();
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an IAM user

The following `create-user` command creates an IAM user named Bob in the current account.

```
aws iam create-user \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "User": {
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "Path": "/",
        "CreateDate": "2023-06-08T03:20:41.270Z",
        "UserId": "AIDAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating an IAM user in your AWS account in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

Example 2: To create an IAM user at a specified path

The following `create-user` command creates an IAM user named Bob at the specified path.

```
aws iam create-user \
    --user-name Bob \
    --path /division_abc/subdivision_xyz/
```

Output:

```
{
    "User": {
```

```
        "Path": "/division_abc/subdivision_xyz/",
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "UserId": "AIDAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678012:user/division_abc/subdivision_xyz/Bob",
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-24T18:20:17+00:00"
    }
}
```

For more information, see IAM identifiers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

Example 3: To Create an IAM User with tags

The following `create-user` command creates an IAM user named Bob with tags. This example uses the `--tags` parameter flag with the following JSON-formatted tags: `'{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}' '{"Key": "Location", "Value": "Seattle"}'`. Alternatively, the `--tags` flag can be used with tags in the shorthand format: `'Key=Department,Value=Accounting Key=Location,Value=Seattle'`.

```
aws iam create-user \
    --user-name Bob \
    --tags '{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}' '{"Key": "Location",
 "Value": "Seattle"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "User": {
        "Path": "/",
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "UserId": "AIDAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678012:user/Bob",
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-25T17:14:21+00:00",
        "Tags": [
            {
                "Key": "Department",
                "Value": "Accounting"
            },
            {
                "Key": "Location",
                "Value": "Seattle"
```

```
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Tagging IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

Example 3: To create an IAM user with a set permissions boundary

The following `create-user` command creates an IAM user named Bob with the permissions boundary of AmazonS3FullAccess.

```
aws iam create-user \
    --user-name Bob \
    --permissions-boundary arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3FullAccess
```

Output:

```
{
    "User": {
        "Path": "/",
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "UserId": "AIDAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::12345678012:user/Bob",
        "CreateDate": "2023-05-24T17:50:53+00:00",
        "PermissionsBoundary": {
        "PermissionsBoundaryType": "Policy",
        "PermissionsBoundaryArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3FullAccess"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Permissions boundaries for IAM entities in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateUser creates a new user with the specified name.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateUser(ctx, &iam.CreateUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 } else {
  user = result.User
```

```
 }
 return user, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateUserRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateUserResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.waiters.IamWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetUserRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetUserResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateUser {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
```

```
                    <username>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the user to create.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String username = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String result = createIAMUser(iam, username);
        System.out.println("Successfully created user: " + result);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMUser(IamClient iam, String username) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object.
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();

            CreateUserRequest request = CreateUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();

            CreateUserResponse response = iam.createUser(request);

            // Wait until the user is created.
            GetUserRequest userRequest = GetUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(response.user().userName())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetUserResponse> waitUntilUserExists =
iamWaiter.waitUntilUserExists(userRequest);

waitUntilUserExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.user().userName();
```

```
        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the user.

```
import { CreateUserCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} name
 */
export const createUser = (name) => {
  const command = new CreateUserCommand({ UserName: name });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  UserName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.getUser(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err && err.code === "NoSuchEntity") {
    iam.createUser(params, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Success", data);
      }
    });
  } else {
    console.log(
      "User " + process.argv[2] + " already exists",
      data.User.UserId
    );
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMUser(usernameVal: String?): String? {
    val request =
        CreateUserRequest {
            userName = usernameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createUser(request)
        return response.user?.userName
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$user = $service->createUser("iam_demo_user_$uuid");
echo "Created user with the arn: {$user['Arn']}\n";
```

```
    /**
     * @param string $name
     * @return array
     * @throws AwsException
     */
    public function createUser(string $name): array
    {
        $result = $this->iamClient->createUser([
            'UserName' => $name,
        ]);

        return $result['User'];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an IAM user named Bob. If Bob needs to sign in to the AWS console, then you must separately run the command `New-IAMLoginProfile` to create a sign-in profile with a password. If Bob needs to run AWS PowerShell or cross-platform CLI commands or make AWS API calls, then you must separately run the `New-IAMAccessKey` command to create access keys.

```
New-IAMUser -UserName Bob
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 4/22/2015 12:02:11 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : AIDAJWGEFDMEMEXAMPLE1
UserName         : Bob
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an IAM user named Bob. If Bob needs to sign in to the AWS console, then you must separately run the command `New-IAMLoginProfile` to create a sign-in profile with a password. If Bob needs to run AWS PowerShell or cross-platform CLI commands or make AWS API calls, then you must separately run the `New-IAMAccessKey` command to create access keys.

```
New-IAMUser -UserName Bob
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 4/22/2015 12:02:11 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : AIDAJWGEFDMEMEXAMPLE1
UserName         : Bob
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_user(user_name):
    """
    Creates a user. By default, a user has no permissions or access keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The newly created user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.create_user(UserName=user_name)
```

```
        logger.info("Created user %s.", user.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return user
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Creates a user and their login profile
 #
 # @param user_name [String] The name of the user
 # @param initial_password [String] The initial password for the user
 # @return [String, nil] The ID of the user if created, or nil if an error
occurred
 def create_user(user_name, initial_password)
   response = @iam_client.create_user(user_name: user_name)
   @iam_client.wait_until(:user_exists, user_name: user_name)
   @iam_client.create_login_profile(
     user_name: user_name,
     password: initial_password,
     password_reset_required: true
   )
   @logger.info("User '#{user_name}' created successfully.")
   response.user.user_id
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::EntityAlreadyExists
   @logger.error("Error creating user '#{user_name}': user already exists.")
   nil
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
```

```
    @logger.error("Error creating user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_user(client: &iamClient, user_name: &str) -> Result<User,
 iamError> {
    let response = client.create_user().user_name(user_name).send().await?;

    Ok(response.user.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3
```

```
    public func createUser(name: String) async throws -> String {
        let input = CreateUserInput(
            userName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.createUser(input: input)
            guard let user = output.user else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchUser
            }
            guard let id = user.userId else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchUser
            }
            return id
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createUser:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateVirtualMfaDevice` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVirtualMfaDevice`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a virtual MFA device

This example creates a new virtual MFA device called `BobsMFADevice`. It creates a file that contains bootstrap information called `QRCode.png` and places it in the `C:/` directory. The bootstrap method used in this example is `QRCodePNG`.

```
aws iam create-virtual-mfa-device \
    --virtual-mfa-device-name BobsMFADevice \
    --outfile C:/QRCode.png \
    --bootstrap-method QRCodePNG
```

Output:

```
{
    "VirtualMFADevice": {
        "SerialNumber": "arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/BobsMFADevice"
}
```

For more information, see Using multi-factor authentication (MFA) in AWS in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new virtual MFA device. Lines 2 and 3 extract the `Base32StringSeed` value that the virtual MFA software program needs to create an account (as an alternative to the QR code). After you configure the program with the value, get two sequential authentication codes from the program. Finally, use the last command to link the virtual MFA device to the IAM user Bob and synchronize the account with the two authentication codes.

```
$Device = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName BobsMFADevice
$SR = New-Object System.IO.StreamReader($Device.Base32StringSeed)
$base32stringseed = $SR.ReadToEnd()
$base32stringseed
CZWZMCQNW4DEXAMPLE3VOUGXJFZYSUW7EXAMPLECR4NJFD65GX2SLUDW2EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
-- Pause here to enter base-32 string seed code into virtual MFA program to
 register account. --

Enable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $Device.SerialNumber -UserName Bob -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 789012
```

Example 2: This example creates a new virtual MFA device. Lines 2 and 3 extract the `QRCodePNG` value and write it to a file. This image can be scanned by the virtual MFA software program to create an account (as an alternative to manually entering the

Base32StringSeed value). After you create the account in your virtual MFA program, get two sequential authentication codes and enter them in the last commands to link the virtual MFA device to the IAM user Bob and synchronize the account.

```
$Device = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName BobsMFADevice
$BR = New-Object System.IO.BinaryReader($Device.QRCodePNG)
$BR.ReadBytes($BR.BaseStream.Length) | Set-Content -Encoding Byte -Path
 QRCode.png
```

Output:

```
 -- Pause here to scan PNG with virtual MFA program to register account. --

Enable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $Device.SerialNumber -UserName Bob -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 789012
```

- For API details, see CreateVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new virtual MFA device. Lines 2 and 3 extract the `Base32StringSeed` value that the virtual MFA software program needs to create an account (as an alternative to the QR code). After you configure the program with the value, get two sequential authentication codes from the program. Finally, use the last command to link the virtual MFA device to the IAM user Bob and synchronize the account with the two authentication codes.

```
$Device = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName BobsMFADevice
$SR = New-Object System.IO.StreamReader($Device.Base32StringSeed)
$base32stringseed = $SR.ReadToEnd()
$base32stringseed
CZWZMCQNW4DEXAMPLE3VOUGXJFZYSUW7EXAMPLECR4NJFD65GX2SLUDW2EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
-- Pause here to enter base-32 string seed code into virtual MFA program to
 register account. --

Enable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $Device.SerialNumber -UserName Bob -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 789012
```

Example 2: This example creates a new virtual MFA device. Lines 2 and 3 extract the `QRCodePNG` value and write it to a file. This image can be scanned by the virtual MFA software program to create an account (as an alternative to manually entering the Base32StringSeed value). After you create the account in your virtual MFA program, get two sequential authentication codes and enter them in the last commands to link the virtual MFA device to the IAM user Bob and synchronize the account.

```
$Device = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName BobsMFADevice
$BR = New-Object System.IO.BinaryReader($Device.QRCodePNG)
$BR.ReadBytes($BR.BaseStream.Length) | Set-Content -Encoding Byte -Path
 QRCode.png
```

Output:

```
 -- Pause here to scan PNG with virtual MFA program to register account. --

Enable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $Device.SerialNumber -UserName Bob -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 789012
```

- For API details, see CreateVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeactivateMfaDevice` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeactivateMfaDevice`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deactivate an MFA device

This command deactivates the virtual MFA device with the ARN `arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/BobsMFADevice` that is associated with the user Bob.

```
aws iam deactivate-mfa-device \
    --user-name Bob \
    --serial-number arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/BobsMFADevice
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using multi-factor authentication (MFA) in AWS in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeactivateMfaDevice in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command disables the hardware MFA device associated with the user Bob that has the serial number `123456789012`.

```
Disable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "Bob" -SerialNumber "123456789012"
```

Example 2: This command disables the virtual MFA device associated with the user `David` that has the ARN `arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/David`. Note that virtual MFA device is not deleted from the account. The virtual device is still present and appears in the output of the `Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice` command. Before you can create a new virtual MFA device for the same user, you must delete the old one by using the `Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice` command.

```
Disable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "David" -SerialNumber
 "arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/David"
```

- For API details, see DeactivateMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command disables the hardware MFA device associated with the user Bob that has the serial number `123456789012`.

```
Disable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "Bob" -SerialNumber "123456789012"
```

Example 2: This command disables the virtual MFA device associated with the user `David` that has the ARN `arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/David`. Note that virtual MFA device is not deleted from the account. The virtual device is still present and appears in the output of the `Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice` command. Before you can create a new

virtual MFA device for the same user, you must delete the old one by using the `Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice` command.

```
Disable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "David" -SerialNumber
 "arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/David"
```

- For API details, see DeactivateMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteAccessKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create read-only and read-write users
- Manage access keys

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user's access key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id for the IAM access key.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user that owns the IAM
    /// access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAccessKeyAsync(string accessKeyId, string
 userName)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(new
 DeleteAccessKeyRequest
        {
            AccessKeyId = accessKeyId,
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_access_key
#
# This function deletes an IAM access key for the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user.
#       -k access_key -- The access key to delete.
```

```
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_delete_access_key() {
  local user_name access_key response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_access_key"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key for the
 specified IAM user"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo "  -k access_key   The access key to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) access_key="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$access_key" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an access key with the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Username:   $user_name"
  iecho "    Access key:   $access_key"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-access-key \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --access-key-id "$access_key")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-access-key operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-access-key response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deleteAccessKey(const Aws::String &userName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::String &accessKeyID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteAccessKeyRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);
    request.SetAccessKeyId(accessKeyID);

    auto outcome = iam.DeleteAccessKey(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting access key " << accessKeyID << " from user "
                  << userName << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted access key " << accessKeyID
                  << " for IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an access key for an IAM user

The following `delete-access-key` command deletes the specified access key (access key ID and secret access key) for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam delete-access-key \
    --access-key-id AKIDPMS9RO4H3FEXAMPLE \
    --user-name Bob
```

This command produces no output.

To list the access keys defined for an IAM user, use the `list-access-keys` command.

For more information, see Managing access keys for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteAccessKey deletes an access key from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteAccessKey(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 keyId string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteAccessKey(ctx, &iam.DeleteAccessKeyInput{
  AccessKeyId: aws.String(keyId),
  UserName:    aws.String(userName),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete access key %v. Here's why: %v\n", keyId, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeleteAccessKeyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteAccessKey {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username> <accessKey>\s

                Where:
```

```
                    username - The name of the user.\s
                    accessKey - The access key ID for the secret access key you
 want to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String username = args[0];
        String accessKey = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        deleteKey(iam, username, accessKey);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteKey(IamClient iam, String username, String
 accessKey) {
        try {
            DeleteAccessKeyRequest request = DeleteAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .accessKeyId(accessKey)
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteAccessKey(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted access key " + accessKey +
                    " from user " + username);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the access key.

```
import { DeleteAccessKeyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 * @param {string} accessKeyId
 */
export const deleteAccessKey = (userName, accessKeyId) => {
  const command = new DeleteAccessKeyCommand({
    AccessKeyId: accessKeyId,
    UserName: userName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  AccessKeyId: "ACCESS_KEY_ID",
  UserName: "USER_NAME",
};

iam.deleteAccessKey(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteKey(
    userNameVal: String,
    accessKey: String,
) {
    val request =
```

```
        DeleteAccessKeyRequest {
            accessKeyId = accessKey
            userName = userNameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deleteAccessKey(request)
        println("Successfully deleted access key $accessKey from $userNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the AWS access key pair with the key ID `AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE` from the user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMAccessKey -AccessKeyId AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -UserName Bob -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the AWS access key pair with the key ID `AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE` from the user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMAccessKey -AccessKeyId AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -UserName Bob -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_key(user_name, key_id):
    """
    Deletes a user's access key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to delete.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.AccessKey(user_name, key_id)
        key.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted access key %s for %s.", key.id, key.user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete key %s for %s", key_id, user_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, deactivates, and deletes access keys.

```
# Manages access keys for IAM users
class AccessKeyManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'AccessKeyManager'
  end

  # Lists access keys for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  def list_access_keys(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name)
    if response.access_key_metadata.empty?
      @logger.info("No access keys found for user '#{user_name}'.")
    else
      response.access_key_metadata.map(&:access_key_id)
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: cannot find user '#{user_name}'.")
    []
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_access_key(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user_name)
    access_key = response.access_key
    @logger.info("Access key created for user '#{user_name}':
 #{access_key.access_key_id}")
    access_key
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::LimitExceeded
    @logger.error('Error creating access key: limit exceeded. Cannot create
 more.')
    nil
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating access key: #{e.message}")
```

```
    nil
  end

  # Deactivates an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def deactivate_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.update_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id,
      status: 'Inactive'
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deactivating access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def delete_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.delete_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_access_key(
    client: &iamClient,
    user: &User,
    key: &AccessKey,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    loop {
        match client
            .delete_access_key()
            .user_name(user.user_name())
            .access_key_id(key.access_key_id())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => {
                break;
            }
            Err(e) => {
                println!("Can't delete the access key: {:?}", e);
                sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
            }
        }
    }
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deleteAccessKey(user: IAMClientTypes.User? = nil,
                                key: IAMClientTypes.AccessKey) async throws
    {
        let userName: String?

        if user != nil {
            userName = user!.userName
        } else {
            userName = nil
        }

        let input = DeleteAccessKeyInput(
            accessKeyId: key.accessKeyId,
            userName: userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteAccessKey(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteAccessKey:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteAccountAlias` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deleteAccountAlias(const Aws::String &accountAlias,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteAccountAliasRequest request;
    request.SetAccountAlias(accountAlias);

    const auto outcome = iam.DeleteAccountAlias(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting account alias " << accountAlias << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted account alias " << accountAlias <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an account alias

The following `delete-account-alias` command removes the alias `mycompany` for the current account.

```
aws iam delete-account-alias \
    --account-alias mycompany
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Your AWS account ID and its alias in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeleteAccountAliasRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteAccountAlias {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <alias>\s

                Where:
                    alias - The account alias to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alias = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteIAMAccountAlias(iam, alias);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIAMAccountAlias(IamClient iam, String alias) {
        try {
            DeleteAccountAliasRequest request =
 DeleteAccountAliasRequest.builder()
                    .accountAlias(alias)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteAccountAlias(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted account alias " + alias);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the account alias.

```
import { DeleteAccountAliasCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} alias
 */
export const deleteAccountAlias = (alias) => {
  const command = new DeleteAccountAliasCommand({ AccountAlias: alias });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.deleteAccountAlias({ AccountAlias: process.argv[2] }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIAMAccountAlias(alias: String) {
```

```
    val request =
        DeleteAccountAliasRequest {
            accountAlias = alias
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deleteAccountAlias(request)
        println("Successfully deleted account alias $alias")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the account alias from your AWS account. The user sign in page with the alias at https://mycompanyaws.signin.aws.amazon.com/console no longer works. You must instead use the original URL with your AWS account ID number at https://<accountidnumber>.signin.aws.amazon.com/console.

```
Remove-IAMAccountAlias -AccountAlias mycompanyaws
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the account alias from your AWS account. The user sign in page with the alias at https://mycompanyaws.signin.aws.amazon.com/console no longer works. You must instead use the original URL with your AWS account ID number at https://<accountidnumber>.signin.aws.amazon.com/console.

```
Remove-IAMAccountAlias -AccountAlias mycompanyaws
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_alias(alias):
    """
    Removes the alias from the current account.

    :param alias: The alias to remove.
    """
    try:
        iam.meta.client.delete_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Removed alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't remove alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, create, and delete account aliases.

```
class IAMAliasManager
  # Initializes the IAM client and logger
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists available AWS account aliases.
  def list_aliases
    response = @iam_client.list_account_aliases

    if response.account_aliases.count.positive?
      @logger.info('Account aliases are:')
      response.account_aliases.each { |account_alias| @logger.info("
 #{account_alias}") }
    else
      @logger.info('No account aliases found.')
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing account aliases: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Creates an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was created; otherwise, false.
  def create_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.create_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to delete.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.delete_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
```

```
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete the current account password policy

The following `delete-account-password-policy` command removes the password policy for the current account.

```
aws iam delete-account-password-policy
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Setting an account password policy for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the password policy for the AWS account and resets all values to their original defaults. If a password policy does not currently exist, the following error message appears: The account policy with name PasswordPolicy cannot be found.

```
Remove-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the password policy for the AWS account and resets all values to their original defaults. If a password policy does not currently exist, the following error message appears: The account policy with name PasswordPolicy cannot be found.

```
Remove-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an IAM group

The following `delete-group` command deletes an IAM group named `MyTestGroup`.

```
aws iam delete-group \
    --group-name MyTestGroup
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting an IAM user group in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteGroupCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
export const deleteGroup = async (groupName) => {
  const command = new DeleteGroupCommand({
    GroupName: groupName,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM group named `MyTestGroup`. The first command removes any IAM users that are members of the group, and the second command deletes the IAM group. Both commands work without any prompts for confirmation.

```
(Get-IAMGroup -GroupName MyTestGroup).Users | Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName
 MyTestGroup -Force
```

```
Remove-IAMGroup -GroupName MyTestGroup -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM group named `MyTestGroup`. The first command removes any IAM users that are members of the group, and the second command deletes the IAM group. Both commands work without any prompts for confirmation.

```
(Get-IAMGroup -GroupName MyTestGroup).Users | Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName
 MyTestGroup -Force
Remove-IAMGroup -GroupName MyTestGroup -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteGroupPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteGroupPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a policy from an IAM group

The following `delete-group-policy` command deletes the policy named `ExamplePolicy` from the group named `Admins`.

```
aws iam delete-group-policy \
    --group-name Admins \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy
```

This command produces no output.

To see the policies attached to a group, use the `list-group-policies` command.

For more information, see Managing IAM policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteGroupPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the inline policy named `TesterPolicy` from the IAM group `Testers`. The users in that group immediately lose the permissions defined in that policy.

```
Remove-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyName TestPolicy
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the inline policy named `TesterPolicy` from the IAM group `Testers`. The users in that group immediately lose the permissions defined in that policy.

```
Remove-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyName TestPolicy
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteInstanceProfile` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteInstanceProfile`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Build and manage a resilient service

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await
_amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }
```

```
            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an instance profile

The following `delete-instance-profile` command deletes the instance profile named `ExampleInstanceProfile`.

```
aws iam delete-instance-profile \
    --instance-profile-name ExampleInstanceProfile
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using instance profiles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
      const client = new IAMClient({});
```

```
    await client.send(
      new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the EC2 instance profile named `MyAppInstanceProfile`. The first command detaches any roles from the instance profile, and then the second command deletes the instance profile.

```
(Get-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile).Roles |
 Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile
Remove-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the EC2 instance profile named `MyAppInstanceProfile`. The first command detaches any roles from the instance profile, and then the second command deletes the instance profile.

```
(Get-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile).Roles |
 Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile
Remove-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example removes the role from the instance profile, detaches all policies attached to the role, and deletes all the resources.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
```

```
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
```

```
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteLoginProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLoginProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a password for an IAM user

The following `delete-login-profile` command deletes the password for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam delete-login-profile \
    --user-name Bob
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managing passwords for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteLoginProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the login profile from the IAM user named Bob. This prevents the user from signing-in to the AWS console. It does not prevent the user from running any AWS CLI, PowerShell, or API calls using AWS access keys that might still be attached to the user account.

```
Remove-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the login profile from the IAM user named Bob. This prevents the user from signing-in to the AWS console. It does not prevent the user from running any AWS CLI, PowerShell, or API calls using AWS access keys that might still be attached to the user account.

```
Remove-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an IAM OpenID Connect identity provider

This example deletes the IAM OIDC provider that connects to the provider `example.oidcprovider.com`.

```
aws iam delete-open-id-connect-provider \
    --open-id-connect-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM OIDC provider that connects to the provider `example.oidcprovider.com`. Ensure that you update or delete any roles that reference this provider in the `Principal` element of the role's trust policy.

```
Remove-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM OIDC provider that connects to the provider `example.oidcprovider.com`. Ensure that you update or delete any roles that reference this provider in the `Principal` element of the role's trust policy.

```
Remove-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeletePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create read-only and read-write users
- Manage policies

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeletePolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeletePolicyAsync(new
 DeletePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
```

```
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_policy
#
# This function deletes an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_policy() {
  local policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_policy"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy"
    echo "  -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
```

```
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy arn with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Policy arn:  $policy_arn"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-policy \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-policy response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deletePolicy(const Aws::String &policyArn,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::DeletePolicyRequest request;
    request.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    auto outcome = iam.DeletePolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting policy with arn " << policyArn << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted policy with arn " << policyArn
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an IAM policy

This example deletes the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
aws iam delete-policy \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeletePolicy deletes a policy.
```

```
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) DeletePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeletePolicy(ctx, &iam.DeletePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeletePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeletePolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                    <policyARN>\s

                Where:
                    policyARN - A policy ARN value to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String policyARN = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteIAMPolicy(iam, policyARN);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIAMPolicy(IamClient iam, String policyARN) {
        try {
            DeletePolicyRequest request = DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(policyARN)
                    .build();

            iam.deletePolicy(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted the policy");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the policy.

```
import { DeletePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 */
export const deletePolicy = (policyArn) => {
  const command = new DeletePolicyCommand({ PolicyArn: policyArn });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIAMPolicy(policyARNVal: String?) {
    val request =
```

```
        DeletePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = policyARNVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deletePolicy(request)
        println("Successfully deleted $policyARNVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`. Before you can delete the policy, you must first delete all versions except the default by running `Remove-IAMPolicyVersion`. You must also detach the policy from any IAM users, groups, or roles.

```
Remove-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Example 2: This example deletes a policy by first deleting all the non-default policy versions, detaching it from all attached IAM entities, and finally deleting the policy itself. The first line retrieves the policy object. The second line retrieves all the policy versions that are not flagged as the default version into a collection and then deletes each policy in the collection. The third line retrieves all of the IAM users, groups, and roles to which the policy is attached. Lines four through six detach the policy from each attached entity. The last line uses this command to remove the managed policy as well as the remaining default version. The example includes the `-Force` switch parameter on any line that needs it to suppress prompts for confirmation.

```
$pol = Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
Get-IAMPolicyVersions -PolicyArn $pol.Arn | where {-not $_.IsDefaultVersion} |
 Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
$attached = Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.Arn
```

```
$attached.PolicyGroups | Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
$attached.PolicyRoles | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
$attached.PolicyUsers | Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
Remove-IAMPolicy $pol.Arn -Force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`. Before you can delete the policy, you must first delete all versions except the default by running `Remove-IAMPolicyVersion`. You must also detach the policy from any IAM users, groups, or roles.

```
Remove-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Example 2: This example deletes a policy by first deleting all the non-default policy versions, detaching it from all attached IAM entities, and finally deleting the policy itself. The first line retrieves the policy object. The second line retrieves all the policy versions that are not flagged as the default version into a collection and then deletes each policy in the collection. The third line retrieves all of the IAM users, groups, and roles to which the policy is attached. Lines four through six detach the policy from each attached entity. The last line uses this command to remove the managed policy as well as the remaining default version. The example includes the `-Force` switch parameter on any line that needs it to suppress prompts for confirmation.

```
$pol = Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
Get-IAMPolicyVersions -PolicyArn $pol.Arn | where {-not $_.IsDefaultVersion} |
 Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
$attached = Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.Arn
$attached.PolicyGroups | Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
$attached.PolicyRoles | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
$attached.PolicyUsers | Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
Remove-IAMPolicy $pol.Arn -Force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_policy(policy_arn):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_policy(client: &iamClient, policy: Policy) -> Result<(),
 iamError> {
```

```
    client
        .delete_policy()
        .policy_arn(policy.arn.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deletePolicy(policy: IAMClientTypes.Policy) async throws {
        let input = DeletePolicyInput(
            policyArn: policy.arn
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deletePolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deletePolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeletePolicyVersion` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePolicyVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Manage policies
- Roll back a policy version

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a version of a managed policy

This example deletes the version identified as `v2` from the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
aws iam delete-policy-version \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy \
    --version-id v2
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeletePolicyVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the version identified as v2 from the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MySamplePolicy -VersionID v2
```

Example 2: This example deletes a policy by first deleting all non-default policy versions and then deleting the policy itself. The first line retrieves the policy object.

The second line retrieves all of the policy versions that are not flagged as the default into a collection and then uses this command to delete each policy in the collection. The last line removes the policy itself as well as the remaining default version. Note that to successfully delete a managed policy, you must also detach the policy from any users, groups, or roles by using the `Unregister-IAMUserPolicy`, `Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy`, and `Unregister-IAMRolePolicy` commands. See the example for the `Remove-IAMPolicy` cmdlet.

```
$pol = Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
Get-IAMPolicyVersions -PolicyArn $pol.Arn | where {-not $_.IsDefaultVersion} |
 Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
Remove-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the version identified as v2 from the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MySamplePolicy -VersionID v2
```

Example 2: This example deletes a policy by first deleting all non-default policy versions and then deleting the policy itself. The first line retrieves the policy object. The second line retrieves all of the policy versions that are not flagged as the default into a collection and then uses this command to delete each policy in the collection. The last line removes the policy itself as well as the remaining default version. Note that to successfully delete a managed policy, you must also detach the policy from any users, groups, or roles by using the `Unregister-IAMUserPolicy`, `Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy`, and `Unregister-IAMRolePolicy` commands. See the example for the `Remove-IAMPolicy` cmdlet.

```
$pol = Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
Get-IAMPolicyVersions -PolicyArn $pol.Arn | where {-not $_.IsDefaultVersion} |
 Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
Remove-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteRole` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRole`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage roles

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_role
#
# This function deletes an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
```

```
##############################################################################
function iam_delete_role() {
  local role_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_role"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role"
    echo "  -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  echo "role_name:$role_name"
  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Role name:  $role_name"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-role \
    --role-name "$role_name")
```

```
  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-role response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an IAM role

The following `delete-role` command removes the role named `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam delete-role \
    --role-name Test-Role
```

This command produces no output.

Before you can delete a role, you must remove the role from any instance profile (`remove-role-from-instance-profile`), detach any managed policies (`detach-role-policy`) and delete any inline policies that are attached to the role (`delete-role-policy`).

For more information, see Creating IAM roles and Using instance profiles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteRole deletes a role. All attached policies must be detached before a
// role can be deleted.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string) error
 {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteRole(ctx, &iam.DeleteRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the role.

```
import { DeleteRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const deleteRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: roleName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the role named `MyNewRole` from the current IAM account. Before you can delete the role you must first use the `Unregister-`

`IAMRolePolicy` command to detach any managed policies. Inline policies are deleted with the role.

```
Remove-IAMRole -RoleName MyNewRole
```

Example 2: This example detaches any managed policies from the role named `MyNewRole` and then deletes the role. The first line retrieves any managed policies attached to the role as a collection and then detaches each policy in the collection from the role. The second line deletes the role itself. Inline policies are deleted along with the role.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName MyNewRole | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -
RoleName MyNewRole
Remove-IAMRole -RoleName MyNewRole
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the role named `MyNewRole` from the current IAM account. Before you can delete the role you must first use the `Unregister-IAMRolePolicy` command to detach any managed policies. Inline policies are deleted with the role.

```
Remove-IAMRole -RoleName MyNewRole
```

Example 2: This example detaches any managed policies from the role named `MyNewRole` and then deletes the role. The first line retrieves any managed policies attached to the role as a collection and then detaches each policy in the collection from the role. The second line deletes the role itself. Inline policies are deleted along with the role.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName MyNewRole | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -
RoleName MyNewRole
Remove-IAMRole -RoleName MyNewRole
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_role(role_name):
    """
    Deletes a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete role %s.", role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Deletes a role and its attached policies.
  #
```

```
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role to delete.
  def delete_role(role_name)
    # Detach and delete attached policies
    @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name).each do |
response|
      response.attached_policies.each do |policy|
        @iam_client.detach_role_policy({
                                          role_name: role_name,
                                          policy_arn: policy.policy_arn
                                        })
        # Check if the policy is a customer managed policy (not AWS managed)
        unless policy.policy_arn.include?('aws:policy/')
          @iam_client.delete_policy({ policy_arn: policy.policy_arn })
          @logger.info("Deleted customer managed policy #{policy.policy_name}.")
        end
      end
    end

    # Delete the role
    @iam_client.delete_role({ role_name: role_name })
    @logger.info("Deleted role #{role_name}.")
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't detach policies and delete role #{role_name}. Here's
 why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_role(client: &iamClient, role: &Role) -> Result<(), iamError>
 {
    let role = role.clone();
    while client
        .delete_role()
        .role_name(role.role_name())
        .send()
        .await
        .is_err()
    {
        sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
    }
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deleteRole(role: IAMClientTypes.Role) async throws {
        let input = DeleteRoleInput(
            roleName: role.roleName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteRole(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a permissions boundary from an IAM role

The following `delete-role-permissions-boundary` example deletes the permissions boundary for the specified IAM role. To apply a permissions boundary to a role, use the `put-role-permissions-boundary` command.

```
aws iam delete-role-permissions-boundary \
    --role-name lambda-application-role
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to remove the permission boundary attached to an IAM role.

```
Remove-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary -RoleName MyRoleName
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to remove the permission boundary attached to an IAM role.

```
Remove-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary -RoleName MyRoleName
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteRolePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRolePolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM role policy to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRolePolicyAsync(string roleName, string
 policyName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRolePolicyAsync(new
 DeleteRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a policy from an IAM role

The following `delete-role-policy` command removes the policy named `ExamplePolicy` from the role named `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam delete-role-policy \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Modifying a role in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});
```

```
/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
export const deleteRolePolicy = (roleName, policyName) => {
  const command = new DeleteRolePolicyCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    PolicyName: policyName,
  });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the inline policy `S3AccessPolicy` that is embedded in the IAM role `S3BackupRole`.

```
Remove-IAMRolePolicy -PolicyName S3AccessPolicy -RoleName S3BackupRole
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the inline policy `S3AccessPolicy` that is embedded in the IAM role `S3BackupRole`.

```
Remove-IAMRolePolicy -PolicyName S3AccessPolicy -RoleName S3BackupRole
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteSAMLProvider` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSAMLProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a SAML provider

This example deletes the IAM SAML 2.0 provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFSProvider`.

```
aws iam delete-saml-provider \
--saml-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFSProvider
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating IAM SAML identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteSAMLProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteSAMLProviderCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} providerArn
 * @returns
 */
export const deleteSAMLProvider = async (providerArn) => {
  const command = new DeleteSAMLProviderCommand({
    SAMLProviderArn: providerArn,
  });
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteSAMLProvider in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM SAML 2.0 provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFSProvider`.

```
Remove-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFSProvider
```

- For API details, see DeleteSAMLProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM SAML 2.0 provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFSProvider`.

```
Remove-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFSProvider
```

- For API details, see DeleteSAMLProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteServerCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteServerCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deleteServerCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateName,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteServerCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetServerCertificateName(certificateName);

    const auto outcome = iam.DeleteServerCertificate(request);
    bool result = true;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
 Aws::IAM::IAMErrors::NO_SUCH_ENTITY) {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting server certificate " << certificateName
 <<
                      ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Certificate '" << certificateName
                      << "' not found." << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted server certificate " <<
 certificateName
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a server certificate from your AWS account

The following `delete-server-certificate` command removes the specified server certificate from your AWS account.

```
aws iam delete-server-certificate \
    --server-certificate-name myUpdatedServerCertificate
```

This command produces no output.

To list the server certificates available in your AWS account, use the `list-server-certificates` command.

For more information, see Managing server certificates in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a server certificate.

```
import { DeleteServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
```

```
 *
 * @param {string} certName
 */
export const deleteServerCertificate = (certName) => {
  const command = new DeleteServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: certName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.deleteServerCertificate(
  { ServerCertificateName: "CERTIFICATE_NAME" },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the server certificate named `MyServerCert`.

```
Remove-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCert
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the server certificate named `MyServerCert`.

```
Remove-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCert
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, update, and delete server certificates.

```
class ServerCertificateManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'ServerCertificateManager'
```

```
  end

  # Creates a new server certificate.
  # @param name [String] the name of the server certificate
  # @param certificate_body [String] the contents of the certificate
  # @param private_key [String] the private key contents
  # @return [Boolean] returns true if the certificate was successfully created
  def create_server_certificate(name, certificate_body, private_key)
    @iam_client.upload_server_certificate({
                                            server_certificate_name: name,
                                            certificate_body: certificate_body,
                                            private_key: private_key
                                          })
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Failed to create server certificate: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Lists available server certificate names.
  def list_server_certificate_names
    response = @iam_client.list_server_certificates

    if response.server_certificate_metadata_list.empty?
      @logger.info('No server certificates found.')
      return
    end

    response.server_certificate_metadata_list.each do |certificate_metadata|
      @logger.info("Certificate Name:
#{certificate_metadata.server_certificate_name}")
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing server certificates: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the name of a server certificate.
  def update_server_certificate_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_server_certificate(
      server_certificate_name: current_name,
      new_server_certificate_name: new_name
    )
    @logger.info("Server certificate name updated from '#{current_name}' to
'#{new_name}'.")
```

```
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating server certificate name: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes a server certificate.
  def delete_server_certificate(name)
    @iam_client.delete_server_certificate(server_certificate_name: name)
    @logger.info("Server certificate '#{name}' deleted.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting server certificate: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DeleteServiceLinkedRole` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteServiceLinkedRole`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a service-linked role

The following `delete-service-linked-role` example deletes the specified service-linked role that you no longer need. The deletion happens asynchronously. You can check the status of the deletion and confirm when it is done by using the `get-service-linked-role-deletion-status` command.

```
aws iam delete-service-linked-role \
    --role-name AWSServiceRoleForLexBots
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "DeletionTaskId": "task/aws-service-role/lex.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForLexBots/1a2b3c4d-1234-abcd-7890-abcdeEXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Using service-linked roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteServiceLinkedRole deletes a service-linked role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) error {
```

```
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.DeleteServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteServiceLinkedRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const deleteServiceLinkedRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new DeleteServiceLinkedRoleCommand({ RoleName: roleName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deleted the service linked role. Please note that if the service is still using this role, then this command results in a failure.

```
Remove-IAMServiceLinkedRole -RoleName
 AWSServiceRoleForAutoScaling_RoleNameEndsWithThis
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deleted the service linked role. Please note that if the service is still using this role, then this command results in a failure.

```
Remove-IAMServiceLinkedRole -RoleName
 AWSServiceRoleForAutoScaling_RoleNameEndsWithThis
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Deletes a service-linked role.
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role to delete.
  def delete_service_linked_role(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.delete_service_linked_role(role_name: role_name)
```

```
    task_id = response.deletion_task_id
    check_deletion_status(role_name, task_id)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    handle_deletion_error(e, role_name)
  end

  private

  # Checks the deletion status of a service-linked role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role being deleted
  # @param task_id [String] The task ID for the deletion process
  def check_deletion_status(role_name, task_id)
    loop do
      response = @iam_client.get_service_linked_role_deletion_status(
        deletion_task_id: task_id
      )
      status = response.status
      @logger.info("Deletion of #{role_name} #{status}.")
      break if %w[SUCCEEDED FAILED].include?(status)

      sleep(3)
    end
  end

  # Handles deletion error
  #
  # @param e [Aws::Errors::ServiceError] The error encountered during deletion
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role attempted to delete
  def handle_deletion_error(e, role_name)
    return if e.code == 'NoSuchEntity'

    @logger.error("Couldn't delete #{role_name}. Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_service_linked_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .delete_service_linked_role()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteSigningCertificate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteSigningCertificate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a signing certificate for an IAM user

The following `delete-signing-certificate` command deletes the specified signing certificate for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam delete-signing-certificate \
    --user-name Bob \
```

```
    --certificate-id TA7SMP42TDN5Z26OBPJE7EXAMPLE
```

This command produces no output.

To get the ID for a signing certificate, use the `list-signing-certificates` command.

For more information, see Manage signing certificates in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteSigningCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the signing certificate with the ID `Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU` from the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob -CertificateId
 Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU
```

- For API details, see DeleteSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the signing certificate with the ID `Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU` from the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob -CertificateId
 Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU
```

- For API details, see DeleteSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteUser`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Create read-only and read-write users

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserAsync(new DeleteUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_user
#
# This function deletes the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_user"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must
 supply a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
```

```
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "u:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
iecho ""

# If the user does not exist, we don't want to try to delete it.
if (! iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
  errecho "ERROR: A user with that name does not exist in the account."
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam delete-user \
  --user-name "$user_name")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-user operation failed.$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-user response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);
    auto outcome = iam.DeleteUser(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting IAM user " << userName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an IAM user

The following `delete-user` command removes the IAM user named Bob from the current account.

```
aws iam delete-user \
    --user-name Bob
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting an IAM user in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteUser deletes a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userName string) error
 {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUser(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeleteUserRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteUser {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userName>\s

                Where:
                    userName - The name of the user to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteIAMUser(iam, userName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIAMUser(IamClient iam, String userName) {
        try {
            DeleteUserRequest request = DeleteUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(userName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteUser(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted IAM user " + userName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the user.

```
import { DeleteUserCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} name
 */
export const deleteUser = (name) => {
  const command = new DeleteUserCommand({ UserName: name });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  UserName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.getUser(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err && err.code === "NoSuchEntity") {
    console.log("User " + process.argv[2] + " does not exist.");
  } else {
    iam.deleteUser(params, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Success", data);
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIAMUser(userNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteUserRequest {
            userName = userNameVal
        }

    // To delete a user, ensure that the user's access keys are deleted first.
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deleteUser(request)
        println("Successfully deleted user $userNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMUser -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example deletes the IAM user named `Theresa` along with any elements that must be deleted first.

```
$name = "Theresa"

# find any groups and remove user from them
$groups = Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName $name
```

```
foreach ($group in $groups) { Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName $group.GroupName
 -UserName $name -Force }

# find any inline policies and delete them
$inlinepols = Get-IAMUserPolicies -UserName $name
foreach ($pol in $inlinepols) { Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName $pol -UserName
 $name -Force}

# find any managed polices and detach them
$managedpols = Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicies -UserName $name
foreach ($pol in $managedpols) { Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyArn
 $pol.PolicyArn -UserName $name }

# find any signing certificates and delete them
$certs = Get-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName $name
foreach ($cert in $certs) { Remove-IAMSigningCertificate -CertificateId
 $cert.CertificateId -UserName $name -Force }

# find any access keys and delete them
$keys = Get-IAMAccessKey -UserName $name
foreach ($key in $keys) { Remove-IAMAccessKey -AccessKeyId $key.AccessKeyId -
UserName $name -Force }

# delete the user's login profile, if one exists - note: need to use try/catch to
 suppress not found error
try { $prof = Get-IAMLoginProfile -UserName $name -ea 0 } catch { out-null }
if ($prof) { Remove-IAMLoginProfile -UserName $name -Force }

# find any MFA device, detach it, and if virtual, delete it.
$mfa = Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName $name
if ($mfa) {
    Disable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber -UserName $name
    if ($mfa.SerialNumber -like "arn:*") { Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -
SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber }
}

# finally, remove the user
Remove-IAMUser -UserName $name -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMUser -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example deletes the IAM user named `Theresa` along with any elements that must be deleted first.

```
$name = "Theresa"

# find any groups and remove user from them
$groups = Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName $name
foreach ($group in $groups) { Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName $group.GroupName
 -UserName $name -Force }

# find any inline policies and delete them
$inlinepols = Get-IAMUserPolicies -UserName $name
foreach ($pol in $inlinepols) { Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName $pol -UserName
 $name -Force}

# find any managed polices and detach them
$managedpols = Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicies -UserName $name
foreach ($pol in $managedpols) { Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyArn
 $pol.PolicyArn -UserName $name }

# find any signing certificates and delete them
$certs = Get-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName $name
foreach ($cert in $certs) { Remove-IAMSigningCertificate -CertificateId
 $cert.CertificateId -UserName $name -Force }

# find any access keys and delete them
$keys = Get-IAMAccessKey -UserName $name
foreach ($key in $keys) { Remove-IAMAccessKey -AccessKeyId $key.AccessKeyId -
UserName $name -Force }

# delete the user's login profile, if one exists - note: need to use try/catch to
 suppress not found error
try { $prof = Get-IAMLoginProfile -UserName $name -ea 0 } catch { out-null }
if ($prof) { Remove-IAMLoginProfile -UserName $name -Force }

# find any MFA device, detach it, and if virtual, delete it.
$mfa = Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName $name
if ($mfa) {
    Disable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber -UserName $name
    if ($mfa.SerialNumber -like "arn:*") { Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -
SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber }
```

```
}

# finally, remove the user
Remove-IAMUser -UserName $name -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_user(user_name):
    """
    Deletes a user. Before a user can be deleted, all associated resources,
    such as access keys and policies, must be deleted or detached.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted user %s.", user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete user %s.", user_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes a user and their associated resources
#
# @param user_name [String] The name of the user to delete
def delete_user(user_name)
  user = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name).access_key_metadata
  user.each do |key|
    @iam_client.delete_access_key({ access_key_id: key.access_key_id,
user_name: user_name })
    @logger.info("Deleted access key #{key.access_key_id} for user
'#{user_name}'.")
  end

  @iam_client.delete_user(user_name: user_name)
  @logger.info("Deleted user '#{user_name}'.")
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error deleting user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_user(client: &iamClient, user: &User) -> Result<(),
 SdkError<DeleteUserError>> {
    let user = user.clone();
    let mut tries: i32 = 0;
    let max_tries: i32 = 10;

    let response: Result<(), SdkError<DeleteUserError>> = loop {
        match client
            .delete_user()
            .user_name(user.user_name())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => {
                break Ok(());
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tries += 1;
                if tries > max_tries {
                    break Err(e);
                }
                sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
            }
        }
    };

    response
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deleteUser(user: IAMClientTypes.User) async throws {
        let input = DeleteUserInput(
            userName: user.userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteUser(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteUser:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a permissions boundary from an IAM user

The following `delete-user-permissions-boundary` example deletes the permissions boundary attached to the IAM user named `intern`. To apply a permissions boundary to a user, use the `put-user-permissions-boundary` command.

```
aws iam delete-user-permissions-boundary \
    --user-name intern
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to remove the permission boundary attached to an IAM user.

```
Remove-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary -UserName joe
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to remove the permission boundary attached to an IAM user.

```
Remove-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary -UserName joe
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteUserPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserPolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserPolicyAsync(new
 DeleteUserPolicyRequest { PolicyName = policyName, UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a policy from an IAM user

The following `delete-user-policy` command removes the specified policy from the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam delete-user-policy \
    --user-name Bob \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy
```

This command produces no output.

To get a list of policies for an IAM user, use the `list-user-policies` command.

For more information, see Creating an IAM user in your AWS account in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteUserPolicy deletes an inline policy from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyName: aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:   aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy from user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 }
```

```
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the inline policy named `AccessToEC2Policy` that is embedded in the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName AccessToEC2Policy -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example finds all of the inline polices that are embedded in the IAM user named `Theresa` and then deletes them.

```
$inlinepols = Get-IAMUserPolicies -UserName Theresa
foreach ($pol in $inlinepols) { Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName $pol -UserName
 Theresa -Force}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the inline policy named `AccessToEC2Policy` that is embedded in the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName AccessToEC2Policy -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example finds all of the inline polices that are embedded in the IAM user named `Theresa` and then deletes them.

```
$inlinepols = Get-IAMUserPolicies -UserName Theresa
foreach ($pol in $inlinepols) { Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName $pol -UserName
 Theresa -Force}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes a user and their associated resources
#
# @param user_name [String] The name of the user to delete
def delete_user(user_name)
  user = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name).access_key_metadata
  user.each do |key|
    @iam_client.delete_access_key({ access_key_id: key.access_key_id,
user_name: user_name })
    @logger.info("Deleted access key #{key.access_key_id} for user
'#{user_name}'.")
  end

  @iam_client.delete_user(user_name: user_name)
  @logger.info("Deleted user '#{user_name}'.")
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error deleting user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_user_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    user: &User,
    policy_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), SdkError<DeleteUserPolicyError>> {
    client
        .delete_user_policy()
        .user_name(user.user_name())
        .policy_name(policy_name)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    func deleteUserPolicy(user: IAMClientTypes.User, policyName: String) async
 throws {
        let input = DeleteUserPolicyInput(
            policyName: policyName,
            userName: user.userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteUserPolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
```

```
            print("ERROR: deleteUserPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteVirtualMfaDevice` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVirtualMfaDevice`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a virtual MFA device

The following `delete-virtual-mfa-device` command removes the specified MFA device from the current account.

```
aws iam delete-virtual-mfa-device \
    --serial-number arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/MFATest
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deactivating MFA devices in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM virtual MFA device whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob`.

```
Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -SerialNumber arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob
```

Example 2: This example checks to see whether the IAM user Theresa has an MFA device assigned. If one is found, the device is disabled for the IAM user. If the device is virtual, then it is also deleted.

```
$mfa = Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName Theresa
if ($mfa) {
    Disable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber -UserName $name
    if ($mfa.SerialNumber -like "arn:*") { Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -
SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM virtual MFA device whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob`.

```
Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -SerialNumber arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob
```

Example 2: This example checks to see whether the IAM user Theresa has an MFA device assigned. If one is found, the device is disabled for the IAM user. If the device is virtual, then it is also deleted.

```
$mfa = Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName Theresa
if ($mfa) {
    Disable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber -UserName $name
    if ($mfa.SerialNumber -like "arn:*") { Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -
SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachGroupPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachGroupPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a policy from a group

This example removes the managed policy with the ARN `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy` from the group called `Testers`.

```
aws iam detach-group-policy \
    --group-name Testers \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managing IAM user groups in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DetachGroupPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the managed group policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy` from the group named `Testers`.

```
Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all the managed policies that are attached to the group named `Testers` and detaches them from the group.

```
Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicies -GroupName Testers | Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -
Groupname Testers
```

- For API details, see DetachGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the managed group policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy` from the group named `Testers`.

```
Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all the managed policies that are attached to the group named `Testers` and detaches them from the group.

```
Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicies -GroupName Testers | Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -
Groupname Testers
```

- For API details, see DetachGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DetachRolePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Manage roles

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Detach an IAM policy from an IAM role.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM
policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DetachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
DetachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function iam_detach_role_policy
#
# This function detaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_detach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_detach_role_policy"
    echo "Detaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam detach-role-policy \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports detach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DetachRolePolicyRequest detachRequest;
    detachRequest.SetRoleName(roleName);
    detachRequest.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    auto detachOutcome = iam.DetachRolePolicy(detachRequest);
    if (!detachOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to detach policy " << policyArn << " from role "
                  << roleName << ": " << detachOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully detached policy " << policyArn << " from role
 "
                  << roleName << std::endl;
    }

    return detachOutcome.IsSuccess();
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a policy from a role

This example removes the managed policy with the ARN `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy` from the role called `FedTesterRole`.

```
aws iam detach-role-policy \
    --role-name FedTesterRole \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Modifying a role in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DetachRolePolicy detaches a policy from a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DetachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 policyArn string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.DetachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't detach policy from role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DetachRolePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetachRolePolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleName> <policyArn>\s

                Where:
                    roleName - A role name that you can obtain from the AWS
 Management Console.\s
                    policyArn - A policy ARN that you can obtain from the AWS
 Management Console.\s
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String roleName = args[0];
        String policyArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        detachPolicy(iam, roleName, policyArn);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void detachPolicy(IamClient iam, String roleName, String
 policyArn) {
        try {
            DetachRolePolicyRequest request = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .policyArn(policyArn)
                    .build();

            iam.detachRolePolicy(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully detached policy " + policyArn +
                    " from role " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detach the policy.

```
import { DetachRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const detachRolePolicy = (policyArn, roleName) => {
  const command = new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var paramsRoleList = {
  RoleName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(paramsRoleList, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    var myRolePolicies = data.AttachedPolicies;
    myRolePolicies.forEach(function (val, index, array) {
      if (myRolePolicies[index].PolicyName === "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess") {
        var params = {
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess",
          RoleName: process.argv[2],
        };
        iam.detachRolePolicy(params, function (err, data) {
          if (err) {
            console.log("Unable to detach policy from role", err);
          } else {
            console.log("Policy detached from role successfully");
            process.exit();
          }
        });
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detachPolicy(
    roleNameVal: String,
    policyArnVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        DetachRolePolicyRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
            policyArn = policyArnVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.detachRolePolicy(request)
        println("Successfully detached policy $policyArnVal from role
 $roleNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the managed group policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy` from the role named `FedTesterRole`.

```
Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName FedTesterRole -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all of the managed policies that are attached to the role named `FedTesterRole` and detaches them from the role.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName FedTesterRole | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy
 -Rolename FedTesterRole
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the managed group policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy` from the role named `FedTesterRole`.

```
Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName FedTesterRole -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all of the managed policies that are attached to the role named `FedTesterRole` and detaches them from the role.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName FedTesterRole | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy
 -Rolename FedTesterRole
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detach a policy from a role using the Boto3 Policy object.

```
def detach_from_role(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
```

```
    Detaches a policy from a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the
 ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).detach_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name
        )
        raise
```

Detach a policy from a role using the Boto3 Role object.

```
def detach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the
 ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
```

```
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not
exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
```

```
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn detach_role_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
    policy_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .detach_role_policy()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .policy_arn(policy_arn)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func detachRolePolicy(policy: IAMClientTypes.Policy, role:
 IAMClientTypes.Role) async throws {
        let input = DetachRolePolicyInput(
            policyArn: policy.arn,
            roleName: role.roleName
        )

        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.detachRolePolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: detachRolePolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DetachUserPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachUserPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create read-only and read-write users

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a policy from a user

This example removes the managed policy with the ARN `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy` from the user Bob.

```
aws iam detach-user-policy \
    --user-name Bob \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Changing permissions for an IAM user in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example detaches the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy` from the IAM user named Bob.

```
Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all the managed policies that are attached to the IAM user named Theresa and detaches those policies from the user.

```
Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList -UserName Theresa | Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -
Username Theresa
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy` from the IAM user named `Bob`.

```
Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all the managed policies that are attached to the IAM user named `Theresa` and detaches those policies from the user.

```
Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList -UserName Theresa | Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -
Username Theresa
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def detach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Detaches a policy from a user
 #
 # @param user_name [String] The name of the user
 # @param policy_arn [String] The ARN of the policy to detach
 # @return [Boolean] true if the policy was successfully detached, false
otherwise
 def detach_user_policy(user_name, policy_arn)
   @iam_client.detach_user_policy(
     user_name: user_name,
     policy_arn: policy_arn
   )
   @logger.info("Policy '#{policy_arn}' detached from user '#{user_name}'
successfully.")
   true
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
   @logger.error('Error detaching policy: Policy or user does not exist.')
   false
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.error("Error detaching policy from user '#{user_name}':
#{e.message}")
   false
 end
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn detach_user_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    user_name: &str,
    policy_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .detach_user_policy()
        .user_name(user_name)
        .policy_arn(policy_arn)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `EnableMfaDevice` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableMfaDevice`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable an MFA device

After you use the `create-virtual-mfa-device` command to create a new virtual MFA device, you can assign the MFA device to a user. The following `enable-mfa-device` example assigns the MFA device with the serial number

`arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/BobsMFADevice` to the user Bob. The command also synchronizes the device with AWS by including the first two codes in sequence from the virtual MFA device.

```
aws iam enable-mfa-device \
    --user-name Bob \
    --serial-number arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/BobsMFADevice \
    --authentication-code1 123456 \
    --authentication-code2 789012
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Enabling a virtual multi-factor authentication (MFA) device in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see EnableMfaDevice in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command enables the hardware MFA device with the serial number 987654321098 and associates the device with the user Bob. It includes the first two codes in sequence from the device.

```
Enable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "Bob" -SerialNumber "987654321098" -
AuthenticationCode1 "12345678" -AuthenticationCode2 "87654321"
```

Example 2: This example creates and enables a virtual MFA device. The first command creates the virtual device and returns the device's object representation in the variable `$MFADevice`. You can use the `.Base32StringSeed` or `QRCodePng` properties to configure the user's software application. The final command assigns the device to the user `David`, identifying the device by its serial number. The command also synchronizes the device with AWS by including the first two codes in sequence from the virtual MFA device.

```
$MFADevice = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName "MyMFADevice"
# see example for New-IAMVirtualMFADevice to see how to configure the software
 program with PNG or base32 seed code
```

```
Enable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "David" -SerialNumber -SerialNumber
 $MFADevice.SerialNumber -AuthenticationCode1 "24681357" -AuthenticationCode2
 "13572468"
```

- For API details, see EnableMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command enables the hardware MFA device with the serial number 987654321098 and associates the device with the user Bob. It includes the first two codes in sequence from the device.

```
Enable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "Bob" -SerialNumber "987654321098" -
AuthenticationCode1 "12345678" -AuthenticationCode2 "87654321"
```

Example 2: This example creates and enables a virtual MFA device. The first command creates the virtual device and returns the device's object representation in the variable `$MFADevice`. You can use the `.Base32StringSeed` or `QRCodePng` properties to configure the user's software application. The final command assigns the device to the user `David`, identifying the device by its serial number. The command also synchronizes the device with AWS by including the first two codes in sequence from the virtual MFA device.

```
$MFADevice = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName "MyMFADevice"
# see example for New-IAMVirtualMFADevice to see how to configure the software
 program with PNG or base32 seed code
Enable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "David" -SerialNumber -SerialNumber
 $MFADevice.SerialNumber -AuthenticationCode1 "24681357" -AuthenticationCode2
 "13572468"
```

- For API details, see EnableMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GenerateCredentialReport` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GenerateCredentialReport`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

CLI

AWS CLI

To generate a credential report

The following example attempts to generate a credential report for the AWS account.

```
aws iam generate-credential-report
```

Output:

```
{
    "State":  "STARTED",
    "Description": "No report exists. Starting a new report generation task"
}
```

For more information, see Getting credential reports for your AWS account in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GenerateCredentialReport in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example requests generation of a new report, which can be done every four hours. If the last report is still recent the State field reads `COMPLETE`. Use `Get-IAMCredentialReport` to view the completed report.

```
Request-IAMCredentialReport
```

Output:

```
Description                                                    State
-----------                                                    -----
No report exists. Starting a new report generation task        STARTED
```

- For API details, see GenerateCredentialReport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example requests generation of a new report, which can be done every four hours. If the last report is still recent the State field reads `COMPLETE`. Use `Get-IAMCredentialReport` to view the completed report.

```
Request-IAMCredentialReport
```

Output:

```
Description                                                State
-----------                                                -----
No report exists. Starting a new report generation task    STARTED
```

- For API details, see GenerateCredentialReport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def generate_credential_report():
    """
    Starts generation of a credentials report about the current account. After
    calling this function to generate the report, call get_credential_report
    to get the latest report. A new report can be generated a minimum of four
 hours
    after the last one was generated.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.generate_credential_report()
        logger.info(
            "Generating credentials report for your account. " "Current state is
 %s.",
```

```
            response["State"],
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't generate a credentials report for your
 account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see GenerateCredentialReport in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To generate a service access report for a custom policy

The following `generate-service-last-accessed-details` example starts a background job to generate a report that lists the services accessed by IAM users and other entities with a custom policy named `intern-boundary`. You can display the report after it is created by running the `get-service-last-accessed-details` command.

```
aws iam generate-service-last-accessed-details \
    --arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "2eb6c2b8-7b4c-3xmp-3c13-03b72c8cdfdc"
}
```

Example 2: To generate a service access report for the AWS managed AdministratorAccess policy

The following `generate-service-last-accessed-details` example starts a background job to generate a report that lists the services accessed by IAM users and other entities with the AWS managed `AdministratorAccess` policy. You can display the report after it is created by running the `get-service-last-accessed-details` command.

```
aws iam generate-service-last-accessed-details \
    --arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "78b6c2ba-d09e-6xmp-7039-ecde30b26916"
}
```

For more information, see Refining permissions in AWS using last accessed information in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example is equivalent cmdlet of GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails API. This provides with a job id which can be used in Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail and Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity

```
Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
```

- For API details, see GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example is equivalent cmdlet of GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails API. This provides with a job id which can be used in Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail and Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity

```
Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
```

- For API details, see GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetAccessKeyLastUsed` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAccessKeyLastUsed`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage access keys

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::accessKeyLastUsed(const Aws::String &secretKeyID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetAccessKeyLastUsedRequest request;

    request.SetAccessKeyId(secretKeyID);

    Aws::IAM::Model::GetAccessKeyLastUsedOutcome outcome =
 iam.GetAccessKeyLastUsed(
            request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error querying last used time for access key " <<
                  secretKeyID << ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
```

```
        Aws::String lastUsedTimeString =
                outcome.GetResult()
                        .GetAccessKeyLastUsed()
                        .GetLastUsedDate()
                        .ToGmtString(Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601);
        std::cout << "Access key " << secretKeyID << " last used at time " <<
                  lastUsedTimeString << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about when the specified access key was last used

The following example retrieves information about when the access key ABCDEXAMPLE was last used.

```
aws iam get-access-key-last-used \
    --access-key-id ABCDEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "UserName":  "Bob",
    "AccessKeyLastUsed": {
        "Region": "us-east-1",
        "ServiceName": "iam",
        "LastUsedDate": "2015-06-16T22:45:00Z"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Managing access keys for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the access key.

```
import { GetAccessKeyLastUsedCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} accessKeyId
 */
export const getAccessKeyLastUsed = async (accessKeyId) => {
  const command = new GetAccessKeyLastUsedCommand({
    AccessKeyId: accessKeyId,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);

  if (response.AccessKeyLastUsed?.LastUsedDate) {
    console.log(`
    ${accessKeyId} was last used by ${response.UserName} via
    the ${response.AccessKeyLastUsed.ServiceName} service on
    ${response.AccessKeyLastUsed.LastUsedDate.toISOString()}
    `);
  }

  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.getAccessKeyLastUsed(
  { AccessKeyId: "ACCESS_KEY_ID" },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data.AccessKeyLastUsed);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the owning user name and last-usage information for the supplied access key.

```
Get-IAMAccessKeyLastUsed -AccessKeyId ABCDEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the owning user name and last-usage information for the supplied access key.

```
Get-IAMAccessKeyLastUsed -AccessKeyId ABCDEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_last_use(key_id):
    """
    Gets information about when and how a key was last used.

    :param key_id: The ID of the key to look up.
    :return: Information about the key's last use.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_access_key_last_used(AccessKeyId=key_id)
        last_used_date = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("LastUsedDate", None)
        last_service = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("ServiceName", None)
        logger.info(
            "Key %s was last used by %s on %s to access %s.",
            key_id,
            response["UserName"],
            last_used_date,
            last_service,
        )
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get last use of key %s.", key_id)
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetAccountAuthorizationDetails` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAccountAuthorizationDetails`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

CLI

AWS CLI

To list an AWS account's IAM users, groups, roles, and policies

The following `get-account-authorization-details` command returns information about all IAM users, groups, roles, and policies in the AWS account.

```
aws iam get-account-authorization-details
```

Output:

```
{
    "RoleDetailList": [
        {
            "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Sid": "",
                        "Effect": "Allow",
```

```
                        "Principal": {
                            "Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"
                        },
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "RoleId": "AROA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "CreateDate": "2014-07-30T17:09:20Z",
            "InstanceProfileList": [
                {
                    "InstanceProfileId": "AIPA1234567890EXAMPLE",
                    "Roles": [
                        {
                            "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
                                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                                "Statement": [
                                    {
                                        "Sid": "",
                                        "Effect": "Allow",
                                        "Principal": {
                                            "Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"
                                        },
                                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                                    }
                                ]
                            },
                            "RoleId": "AROA1234567890EXAMPLE",
                            "CreateDate": "2014-07-30T17:09:20Z",
                            "RoleName": "EC2role",
                            "Path": "/",
                            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/EC2role"
                        }
                    ],
                    "CreateDate": "2014-07-30T17:09:20Z",
                    "InstanceProfileName": "EC2role",
                    "Path": "/",
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/EC2role"
                }
            ],
            "RoleName": "EC2role",
            "Path": "/",
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": [
                {
```

```
                    "PolicyName": "AmazonS3FullAccess",
                    "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3FullAccess"
                },
                {
                    "PolicyName": "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess",
                    "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess"
                }
            ],
            "RoleLastUsed": {
                "Region": "us-west-2",
                "LastUsedDate": "2019-11-13T17:30:00Z"
            },
            "RolePolicyList": [],
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/EC2role"
        }
    ],
    "GroupDetailList": [
        {
            "GroupId": "AIDA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": {
                "PolicyName": "AdministratorAccess",
                "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess"
            },
            "GroupName": "Admins",
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Admins",
            "CreateDate": "2013-10-14T18:32:24Z",
            "GroupPolicyList": []
        },
        {
            "GroupId": "AIDA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": {
                "PolicyName": "PowerUserAccess",
                "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/PowerUserAccess"
            },
            "GroupName": "Dev",
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Dev",
            "CreateDate": "2013-10-14T18:33:55Z",
            "GroupPolicyList": []
        },
        {
            "GroupId": "AIDA1234567890EXAMPLE",
```

```
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": [],
            "GroupName": "Finance",
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Finance",
            "CreateDate": "2013-10-14T18:57:48Z",
            "GroupPolicyList": [
                {
                    "PolicyName": "policygen-201310141157",
                    "PolicyDocument": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Action": "aws-portal:*",
                                "Sid": "Stmt1381777017000",
                                "Resource": "*",
                                "Effect": "Allow"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                }
            ]
        }
    ],
    "UserDetailList": [
        {
            "UserName": "Alice",
            "GroupList": [
                "Admins"
            ],
            "CreateDate": "2013-10-14T18:32:24Z",
            "UserId": "AIDA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "UserPolicyList": [],
            "Path": "/",
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": [],
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Alice"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "GroupList": [
                "Admins"
            ],
            "CreateDate": "2013-10-14T18:32:25Z",
            "UserId": "AIDA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "UserPolicyList": [
```

```
                {
                    "PolicyName": "DenyBillingAndIAMPolicy",
                    "PolicyDocument": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": {
                            "Effect": "Deny",
                            "Action": [
                                "aws-portal:*",
                                "iam:*"
                            ],
                            "Resource": "*"
                        }
                    }
                }
            ],
            "Path": "/",
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": [],
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Charlie",
            "GroupList": [
                "Dev"
            ],
            "CreateDate": "2013-10-14T18:33:56Z",
            "UserId": "AIDA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "UserPolicyList": [],
            "Path": "/",
            "AttachedManagedPolicies": [],
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Charlie"
        }
    ],
    "Policies": [
        {
            "PolicyName": "create-update-delete-set-managed-policies",
            "CreateDate": "2015-02-06T19:58:34Z",
            "AttachmentCount": 1,
            "IsAttachable": true,
            "PolicyId": "ANPA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
            "PolicyVersionList": [
                {
                    "CreateDate": "2015-02-06T19:58:34Z",
                    "VersionId": "v1",
```

```
                    "Document": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Action": [
                                "iam:CreatePolicy",
                                "iam:CreatePolicyVersion",
                                "iam:DeletePolicy",
                                "iam:DeletePolicyVersion",
                                "iam:GetPolicy",
                                "iam:GetPolicyVersion",
                                "iam:ListPolicies",
                                "iam:ListPolicyVersions",
                                "iam:SetDefaultPolicyVersion"
                            ],
                            "Resource": "*"
                        }
                    },
                    "IsDefaultVersion": true
                }
            ],
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/create-update-delete-set-
managed-policies",
            "UpdateDate": "2015-02-06T19:58:34Z"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "S3-read-only-specific-bucket",
            "CreateDate": "2015-01-21T21:39:41Z",
            "AttachmentCount": 1,
            "IsAttachable": true,
            "PolicyId": "ANPA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
            "PolicyVersionList": [
                {
                    "CreateDate": "2015-01-21T21:39:41Z",
                    "VersionId": "v1",
                    "Document": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Action": [
                                    "s3:Get*",
```

```
                                    "s3:List*"
                                ],
                                "Resource": [
                                    "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                                    "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*"
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    "IsDefaultVersion": true
                }
            ],
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/S3-read-only-specific-
bucket",
            "UpdateDate": "2015-01-21T23:39:41Z"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "AmazonEC2FullAccess",
            "CreateDate": "2015-02-06T18:40:15Z",
            "AttachmentCount": 1,
            "IsAttachable": true,
            "PolicyId": "ANPA1234567890EXAMPLE",
            "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
            "PolicyVersionList": [
                {
                    "CreateDate": "2014-10-30T20:59:46Z",
                    "VersionId": "v1",
                    "Document": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Action": "ec2:*",
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Resource": "*"
                            },
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Action": "elasticloadbalancing:*",
                                "Resource": "*"
                            },
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Action": "cloudwatch:*",
```

```
                                "Resource": "*"
                            },
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Action": "autoscaling:*",
                                "Resource": "*"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    "IsDefaultVersion": true
                }
            ],
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEC2FullAccess",
            "UpdateDate": "2015-02-06T18:40:15Z"
        }
    ],
    "Marker": "EXAMPLEkakv9BCuUNFDtxWSyfzetYwEx2ADc8dnzfvERF5S6YMvXKx41t6gCl/
eeaCX3Jo94/bKqezEAg8TEVS99EKFLxm3jtbpl25FDWEXAMPLE",
    "IsTruncated": true
}
```

For more information, see AWS security audit guidelines in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAccountAuthorizationDetails in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets authorization details about the identities in the AWS account, and displays the element list of the returned object, including users, groups, and roles. For example, the `UserDetailList` property displays details about the users. Similar information is available in the `RoleDetailList` and `GroupDetailList` properties.

```
$Details=Get-IAMAccountAuthorizationDetail
$Details
```

Output:

```
GroupDetailList : {Administrators, Developers, Testers, Backup}
```

```
IsTruncated     : False
Marker          :
RoleDetailList  : {TestRole1, AdminRole, TesterRole, clirole...}
UserDetailList  : {Administrator, Bob, BackupToS3, }
```

```
$Details.UserDetailList
```

Output:

```
Arn             : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Administrator
CreateDate      : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
GroupList       : {Administrators}
Path            : /
UserId          : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE1
UserName        : Administrator
UserPolicyList : {}

Arn             : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate      : 4/6/2015 12:54:42 PM
GroupList       : {Developers}
Path            : /
UserId          : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE2
UserName        : bab
UserPolicyList : {}

Arn             : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/BackupToS3
CreateDate      : 1/27/2015 10:15:08 AM
GroupList       : {Backup}
Path            : /
UserId          : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE3
UserName        : BackupToS3
UserPolicyList : {BackupServicePermissionsToS3Buckets}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountAuthorizationDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets authorization details about the identities in the AWS account, and displays the element list of the returned object, including users, groups, and roles. For example, the `UserDetailList` property displays details about the

users. Similar information is available in the `RoleDetailList` and `GroupDetailList` properties.

```
$Details=Get-IAMAccountAuthorizationDetail
$Details
```

Output:

```
GroupDetailList : {Administrators, Developers, Testers, Backup}
IsTruncated     : False
Marker          :
RoleDetailList  : {TestRole1, AdminRole, TesterRole, clirole...}
UserDetailList  : {Administrator, Bob, BackupToS3, }
```

```
$Details.UserDetailList
```

Output:

```
Arn            : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Administrator
CreateDate     : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
GroupList      : {Administrators}
Path           : /
UserId         : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE1
UserName       : Administrator
UserPolicyList : {}

Arn            : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate     : 4/6/2015 12:54:42 PM
GroupList      : {Developers}
Path           : /
UserId         : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE2
UserName       : bab
UserPolicyList : {}

Arn            : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/BackupToS3
CreateDate     : 1/27/2015 10:15:08 AM
GroupList      : {Backup}
Path           : /
UserId         : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE3
UserName       : BackupToS3
UserPolicyList : {BackupServicePermissionsToS3Buckets}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountAuthorizationDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_authorization_details(response_filter):
    """
    Gets an authorization detail report for the current account.

    :param response_filter: A list of resource types to include in the report,
 such
                            as users or roles. When not specified, all resources
                            are included.
    :return: The authorization detail report.
    """
    try:
        account_details = iam.meta.client.get_account_authorization_details(
            Filter=response_filter
        )
        logger.debug(account_details)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get details for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return account_details
```

- For API details, see GetAccountAuthorizationDetails in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets the IAM password policy for an AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The PasswordPolicy for the AWS account.</returns>
    public async Task<PasswordPolicy> GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync(new
GetAccountPasswordPolicyRequest());
        return response.PasswordPolicy;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To see the current account password policy

The following `get-account-password-policy` command displays details about the password policy for the current account.

```
aws iam get-account-password-policy
```

Output:

```
{
    "PasswordPolicy": {
        "AllowUsersToChangePassword": false,
        "RequireLowercaseCharacters": false,
        "RequireUppercaseCharacters": false,
        "MinimumPasswordLength": 8,
        "RequireNumbers": true,
        "RequireSymbols": true
    }
}
```

If no password policy is defined for the account, the command returns a `NoSuchEntity` error.

For more information, see Setting an account password policy for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// AccountWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) account
 actions
// used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform account actions.
type AccountWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetAccountPasswordPolicy gets the account password policy for the current
 account.
// If no policy has been set, a NoSuchEntityException is error is returned.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.PasswordPolicy, error) {
 var pwPolicy *types.PasswordPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx,
  &iam.GetAccountPasswordPolicyInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get account password policy. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  pwPolicy = result.PasswordPolicy
 }
 return pwPolicy, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the account password policy.

```
import {
  GetAccountPasswordPolicyCommand,
  IAMClient,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const getAccountPasswordPolicy = async () => {
  const command = new GetAccountPasswordPolicyCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response.PasswordPolicy);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function getAccountPasswordPolicy()
    {
        return $this->iamClient->getAccountPasswordPolicy();
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details about the password policy for the current account. If no password policy is defined for the account, the command returns a `NoSuchEntity` error.

```
Get-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy
```

Output:

```
AllowUsersToChangePassword : True
ExpirePasswords            : True
HardExpiry                 : False
MaxPasswordAge             : 90
MinimumPasswordLength      : 8
PasswordReusePrevention    : 20
RequireLowercaseCharacters : True
RequireNumbers             : True
RequireSymbols             : False
RequireUppercaseCharacters : True
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the password policy for the current account. If no password policy is defined for the account, the command returns a `NoSuchEntity` error.

```
Get-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy
```

Output:

```
AllowUsersToChangePassword : True
ExpirePasswords            : True
HardExpiry                 : False
MaxPasswordAge             : 90
MinimumPasswordLength      : 8
PasswordReusePrevention    : 20
```

```
RequireLowercaseCharacters : True
RequireNumbers             : True
RequireSymbols             : False
RequireUppercaseCharacters : True
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def print_password_policy():
    """
    Prints the password policy for the account.
    """
    try:
        pw_policy = iam.AccountPasswordPolicy()
        print("Current account password policy:")
        print(
            f"\tallow_users_to_change_password:
 {pw_policy.allow_users_to_change_password}"
        )
        print(f"\texpire_passwords: {pw_policy.expire_passwords}")
        print(f"\thard_expiry: {pw_policy.hard_expiry}")
        print(f"\tmax_password_age: {pw_policy.max_password_age}")
        print(f"\tminimum_password_length: {pw_policy.minimum_password_length}")
        print(f"\tpassword_reuse_prevention:
 {pw_policy.password_reuse_prevention}")
        print(
            f"\trequire_lowercase_characters:
 {pw_policy.require_lowercase_characters}"
        )
        print(f"\trequire_numbers: {pw_policy.require_numbers}")
        print(f"\trequire_symbols: {pw_policy.require_symbols}")
```

```
        print(
            f"\trequire_uppercase_characters:
 {pw_policy.require_uppercase_characters}"
        )
        printed = True
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
            print("The account does not have a password policy set.")
        else:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get account password policy.")
            raise
    else:
        return printed
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Class to manage IAM account password policies
class PasswordPolicyManager
  attr_accessor :iam_client, :logger

  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'IAMPolicyManager'
  end

  # Retrieves and logs the account password policy
```

```
  def print_account_password_policy
    response = @iam_client.get_account_password_policy
    @logger.info("The account password policy is:
 #{response.password_policy.to_h}")
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.info('The account does not have a password policy.')
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't print the account password policy. Error: #{e.code} -
 #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn get_account_password_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
) -> Result<GetAccountPasswordPolicyOutput,
 SdkError<GetAccountPasswordPolicyError>> {
    let response = client.get_account_password_policy().send().await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetAccountSummary` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAccountSummary`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about IAM entity usage and IAM quotas in the current account

The following `get-account-summary` command returns information about the current IAM entity usage and current IAM entity quotas in the account.

```
aws iam get-account-summary
```

Output:

```
{
    "SummaryMap": {
        "UsersQuota": 5000,
        "GroupsQuota": 100,
        "InstanceProfiles": 6,
        "SigningCertificatesPerUserQuota": 2,
        "AccountAccessKeysPresent": 0,
        "RolesQuota": 250,
        "RolePolicySizeQuota": 10240,
        "AccountSigningCertificatesPresent": 0,
        "Users": 27,
        "ServerCertificatesQuota": 20,
        "ServerCertificates": 0,
        "AssumeRolePolicySizeQuota": 2048,
        "Groups": 7,
        "MFADevicesInUse": 1,
        "Roles": 3,
        "AccountMFAEnabled": 1,
        "MFADevices": 3,
        "GroupsPerUserQuota": 10,
        "GroupPolicySizeQuota": 5120,
        "InstanceProfilesQuota": 100,
        "AccessKeysPerUserQuota": 2,
        "Providers": 0,
```

```
        "UserPolicySizeQuota": 2048
    }
}
```

For more information about entity limitations, see IAM and AWS STS quotas in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAccountSummary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns information about the current IAM entity usage and current IAM entity quotas in the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMAccountSummary
```

Output:

```
Key                                     Value
Users                                   7
GroupPolicySizeQuota                    5120
PolicyVersionsInUseQuota                10000
ServerCertificatesQuota                 20
AccountSigningCertificatesPresent       0
AccountAccessKeysPresent                0
Groups                                  3
UsersQuota                              5000
RolePolicySizeQuota                     10240
UserPolicySizeQuota                     2048
GroupsPerUserQuota                      10
AssumeRolePolicySizeQuota               2048
AttachedPoliciesPerGroupQuota           2
Roles                                   9
VersionsPerPolicyQuota                  5
GroupsQuota                             100
PolicySizeQuota                         5120
Policies                                5
RolesQuota                              250
ServerCertificates                      0
```

```
AttachedPoliciesPerRoleQuota                2
MFADevicesInUse                             2
PoliciesQuota                               1000
AccountMFAEnabled                           1
Providers                                   2
InstanceProfilesQuota                       100
MFADevices                                  4
AccessKeysPerUserQuota                      2
AttachedPoliciesPerUserQuota                2
SigningCertificatesPerUserQuota             2
PolicyVersionsInUse                         4
InstanceProfiles                            1
...
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSummary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns information about the current IAM entity usage and current IAM entity quotas in the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMAccountSummary
```

Output:

```

Key                                         Value
Users                                       7
GroupPolicySizeQuota                        5120
PolicyVersionsInUseQuota                    10000
ServerCertificatesQuota                     20
AccountSigningCertificatesPresent           0
AccountAccessKeysPresent                    0
Groups                                      3
UsersQuota                                  5000
RolePolicySizeQuota                         10240
UserPolicySizeQuota                         2048
GroupsPerUserQuota                          10
AssumeRolePolicySizeQuota                   2048
AttachedPoliciesPerGroupQuota               2
Roles                                       9
VersionsPerPolicyQuota                      5
```

```
GroupsQuota                                 100
PolicySizeQuota                             5120
Policies                                    5
RolesQuota                                  250
ServerCertificates                          0
AttachedPoliciesPerRoleQuota                2
MFADevicesInUse                             2
PoliciesQuota                               1000
AccountMFAEnabled                           1
Providers                                   2
InstanceProfilesQuota                       100
MFADevices                                  4
AccessKeysPerUserQuota                      2
AttachedPoliciesPerUserQuota                2
SigningCertificatesPerUserQuota             2
PolicyVersionsInUse                         4
InstanceProfiles                            1
...
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSummary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_summary():
    """
    Gets a summary of account usage.

    :return: The summary of account usage.
    """
    try:
        summary = iam.AccountSummary()
        logger.debug(summary.summary_map)
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get a summary for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return summary.summary_map
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSummary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list the context keys referenced by one or more custom JSON policies provided as a parameter on the command line

The following `get-context-keys-for-custom-policy` command parses each supplied policy and lists the context keys used by those policies. Use this command to identify which context key values you must supply to successfully use the policy simulator commands `simulate-custom-policy` and `simulate-custom-policy`. You can also retrieve the list of context keys used by all policies associated by an IAM user or role by using the `get-context-keys-for-custom-policy` command. Parameter values that begin with `file://` instruct the command to read the file and use the contents as the value for the parameter instead of the file name itself.

```
aws iam get-context-keys-for-custom-policy \
    --policy-input-list '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/${aws:username}","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "ContextKeyNames": [
        "aws:username",
        "aws:CurrentTime"
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list the context keys referenced by one or more custom JSON policies provided as a file input

The following `get-context-keys-for-custom-policy` command is the same as the previous example, except that the policies are provided in a file instead of as a parameter. Because the command expects a JSON list of strings, and not a list of JSON structures, the file must be structured as follows, although you can collapse it into one one.

```
[
    "Policy1",
    "Policy2"
]
```

So for example, a file that contains the policy from the previous example must look like the following. You must escape each embedded double-quote inside the policy string by preceding it with a backslash ".

```
[ "{\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\", \"Statement\": {\"Effect\": \"Allow
\", \"Action\": \"dynamodb:*\", \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:128716708097:table/${aws:username}\", \"Condition\": {\"DateGreaterThan\":
 {\"aws:CurrentTime\": \"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z\"}}}}" ]
```

This file can then be submitted to the following command.

```
aws iam get-context-keys-for-custom-policy \
    --policy-input-list file://policyfile.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "ContextKeyNames": [
        "aws:username",
        "aws:CurrentTime"
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using the IAM Policy Simulator (AWS CLI and AWS API) in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches all the context keys present in the provided policy json.In order to provide multiple policies you can provide as comma separated list of values.

```
$policy1 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
$policy2 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/"}}'
Get-IAMContextKeysForCustomPolicy -PolicyInputList $policy1,$policy2
```

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches all the context keys present in the provided policy json.In order to provide multiple policies you can provide as comma separated list of values.

```
$policy1 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
$policy2 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/"}}'
```

```
Get-IAMContextKeysForCustomPolicy -PolicyInputList $policy1,$policy2
```

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the context keys referenced by all policies associated with an IAM principal

The following `get-context-keys-for-principal-policy` command retrieves all policies that are attached to the user `saanvi` and any groups she is a member of. It then parses each and lists the context keys used by those policies. Use this command to identify which context key values you must supply to successfully use the `simulate-custom-policy` and `simulate-principal-policy` commands. You can also retrieve the list of context keys used by an arbitrary JSON policy by using the `get-context-keys-for-custom-policy` command.

```
aws iam get-context-keys-for-principal-policy \
   --policy-source-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/saanvi
```

Output:

```
{
    "ContextKeyNames": [
        "aws:username",
        "aws:CurrentTime"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using the IAM Policy Simulator (AWS CLI and AWS API) in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches all the context keys present in the provided policy json and the policies attached to IAM entity(user/role etc.). For -PolicyInputList you can provide multiple values list as comma separated values.

```
$policy1 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
$policy2 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/"}}'
Get-IAMContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy -PolicyInputList $policy1,$policy2 -
PolicySourceArn arn:aws:iam::852640994763:user/TestUser
```

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches all the context keys present in the provided policy json and the policies attached to IAM entity(user/role etc.). For -PolicyInputList you can provide multiple values list as comma separated values.

```
$policy1 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
$policy2 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/"}}'
Get-IAMContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy -PolicyInputList $policy1,$policy2 -
PolicySourceArn arn:aws:iam::852640994763:user/TestUser
```

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetCredentialReport` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetCredentialReport`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a credential report

This example opens the returned report and outputs it to the pipeline as an array of text lines.

```
aws iam get-credential-report
```

Output:

```
{
    "GeneratedTime":  "2015-06-17T19:11:50Z",
    "ReportFormat": "text/csv"
}
```

For more information, see Getting credential reports for your AWS account in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetCredentialReport in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example opens the returned report and outputs it to the pipeline as an array of text lines. The first line is the header with comma-separated column names. Each successive row is the detail row for one user, with each field separated by commas. Before you can view the report, you must generate it with the `Request-`

`IAMCredentialReport` cmdlet. To retrieve the report as a single string, use `-Raw` instead of `-AsTextArray`. The alias `-SplitLines` is also accepted for the `-AsTextArray` switch. For the full list of columns in the output consult the service API reference. Note that if you do not use `-AsTextArray` or `-SplitLines`, then you must extract the text from the `.Content` property using the .NET `StreamReader` class.

```
Request-IAMCredentialReport
```

Output:

```
Description                                                         State
-----------                                                         -----
No report exists. Starting a new report generation task             STARTED
```

```
Get-IAMCredentialReport -AsTextArray
```

Output:

```
 user,arn,user_creation_time,password_enabled,password_last_used,password_last_changed,pa
 root_account,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root,2014-10-15T16:31:25+00:00,not_supported,2015
A,false,N/A,false,N/A,false,N/A
Administrator,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
Administrator,2014-10-16T16:03:09+00:00,true,2015-04-20T15:18:32+00:00,2014-10-16T16:06:0
A,false,true,2014-12-03T18:53:41+00:00,true,2015-03-25T20:38:14+00:00,false,N/
A,false,N/A
Bill,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bill,2015-04-15T18:27:44+00:00,false,N/A,N/
A,N/A,false,false,N/A,false,N/A,false,2015-04-20T20:00:12+00:00,false,N/A
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialReport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example opens the returned report and outputs it to the pipeline as an array of text lines. The first line is the header with comma-separated column names. Each successive row is the detail row for one user, with each field separated by commas. Before you can view the report, you must generate it with the `Request-IAMCredentialReport` cmdlet. To retrieve the report as a single string, use `-Raw` instead of `-AsTextArray`. The alias `-SplitLines` is also accepted for the `-`

`AsTextArray` switch. For the full list of columns in the output consult the service API reference. Note that if you do not use `-AsTextArray` or `-SplitLines`, then you must extract the text from the `.Content` property using the .NET `StreamReader` class.

```
Request-IAMCredentialReport
```

Output:

```
Description                                                          State
-----------                                                          -----
No report exists. Starting a new report generation task              STARTED
```

```
Get-IAMCredentialReport -AsTextArray
```

Output:

```
 user,arn,user_creation_time,password_enabled,password_last_used,password_last_changed,pa
 root_account,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root,2014-10-15T16:31:25+00:00,not_supported,2015
A,false,N/A,false,N/A,false,N/A
Administrator,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
Administrator,2014-10-16T16:03:09+00:00,true,2015-04-20T15:18:32+00:00,2014-10-16T16:06:0
A,false,true,2014-12-03T18:53:41+00:00,true,2015-03-25T20:38:14+00:00,false,N/
A,false,N/A
Bill,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bill,2015-04-15T18:27:44+00:00,false,N/A,N/
A,N/A,false,false,N/A,false,N/A,false,2015-04-20T20:00:12+00:00,false,N/A
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialReport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_credential_report():
    """
    Gets the most recently generated credentials report about the current
 account.

    :return: The credentials report.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_credential_report()
        logger.debug(response["Content"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get credentials report.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["Content"]
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialReport in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get an IAM group

This example returns details about the IAM group `Admins`.

```
aws iam get-group \
    --group-name Admins
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "Path": "/",
```

```
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-16T19:41:48Z",
        "GroupId": "AIDGPMS9RO4H3FEXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Admins",
        "GroupName": "Admins"
    },
    "Users": []
}
```

For more information, see IAM Identities (users, user groups, and roles) in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details about the IAM group `Testers`, including a collection of all the IAM users that belong to the group.

```
$results = Get-IAMGroup -GroupName "Testers"
$results
```

Output:

```
Group                                     IsTruncated           Marker
     Users
-----                                     -----------           ------
     -----
Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.Group     False
     {Theresa, David}
```

```
$results.Group
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : 3RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Testers
```

```
Path       : /
```

```
$results.Users
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Theresa
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : 4OSVDDJJTF4XEEXAMPLE2
UserName         : Theresa

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE3
UserName         : David
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the IAM group `Testers`, including a collection of all the IAM users that belong to the group.

```
$results = Get-IAMGroup -GroupName "Testers"
$results
```

Output:

```
Group                                     IsTruncated           Marker
     Users
-----                                     -----------           ------
     -----
Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.Group     False
     {Theresa, David}
```

```
$results.Group
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : 3RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /
```

```
$results.Users
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Theresa
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : 4OSVDDJJTF4XEEXAMPLE2
UserName         : Theresa

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE3
UserName         : David
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetGroupPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetGroupPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a policy attached to an IAM group

The following `get-group-policy` command gets information about the specified policy attached to the group named `Test-Group`.

```
aws iam get-group-policy \
    --group-name Test-Group \
    --policy-name S3-ReadOnly-Policy
```

Output:

```
{
    "GroupName": "Test-Group",
    "PolicyDocument": {
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Action": [
                    "s3:Get*",
                    "s3:List*"
                ],
                "Resource": "*",
                "Effect": "Allow"
            }
        ]
    },
    "PolicyName": "S3-ReadOnly-Policy"
}
```

For more information, see Managing IAM policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetGroupPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details about the embedded inline policy named `PowerUserAccess-Testers` for the group `Testers`. The `PolicyDocument` property is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyName PowerUserAccess-
Testers
$results
```

Output:

```
GroupName     PolicyDocument
 PolicyName
---------     --------------
 ----------
Testers       %7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%0A%20...
 PowerUserAccess-Testers

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:555555555555:instance/i-b188560f"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the embedded inline policy named `PowerUserAccess-Testers` for the group `Testers`. The `PolicyDocument` property is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyName PowerUserAccess-
Testers
$results
```

Output:

```
GroupName     PolicyDocument
 PolicyName
---------     --------------
 ----------
```

```
Testers       %7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%0A%20...
 PowerUserAccess-Testers

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:555555555555:instance/i-b188560f"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetInstanceProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetInstanceProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about an instance profile

The following `get-instance-profile` command gets information about the instance profile named `ExampleInstanceProfile`.

```
aws iam get-instance-profile \
    --instance-profile-name ExampleInstanceProfile
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "InstanceProfile": {
        "InstanceProfileId": "AID2MAB8DPLSRHEXAMPLE",
        "Roles": [
            {
                "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": "<URL-encoded-JSON>",
                "RoleId": "AIDGPMS9RO4H3FEXAMPLE",
                "CreateDate": "2013-01-09T06:33:26Z",
                "RoleName": "Test-Role",
                "Path": "/",
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::336924118301:role/Test-Role"
            }
        ],
        "CreateDate": "2013-06-12T23:52:02Z",
        "InstanceProfileName": "ExampleInstanceProfile",
        "Path": "/",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::336924118301:instance-profile/
ExampleInstanceProfile"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Using instance profiles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetInstanceProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details of the instance profile named `ec2instancerole` that is defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName ec2instancerole
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/ec2instancerole
CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
Path                : /
Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see GetInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details of the instance profile named `ec2instancerole` that is defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName ec2instancerole
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/ec2instancerole
CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
Path                : /
Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see GetInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetLoginProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetLoginProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get password information for an IAM user

The following `get-login-profile` command gets information about the password for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam get-login-profile \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "LoginProfile": {
```

```
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "CreateDate": "2012-09-21T23:03:39Z"
    }
}
```

The `get-login-profile` command can be used to verify that an IAM user has a password. The command returns a `NoSuchEntity` error if no password is defined for the user.

You cannot view a password using this command. If the password is lost, you can reset the password (`update-login-profile`) for the user. Alternatively, you can delete the login profile (`delete-login-profile`) for the user and then create a new one (`create-login-profile`).

For more information, see Managing passwords for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetLoginProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the password creation date and whether a password reset is required for the IAM user `David`.

```
Get-IAMLoginProfile -UserName David
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                  PasswordResetRequired                UserName
----------                  ---------------------                --------
12/10/2014 3:39:44 PM       False                                David
```

- For API details, see GetLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the password creation date and whether a password reset is required for the IAM user `David`.

```
Get-IAMLoginProfile -UserName David
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                  PasswordResetRequired                UserName
----------                  ---------------------                --------
12/10/2014 3:39:44 PM       False                                David
```

- For API details, see GetLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetOpenIdConnectProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetOpenIdConnectProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To return information about the specified OpenID Connect provider

This example returns details about the OpenID Connect provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/server.example.com`.

```
aws iam get-open-id-connect-provider \
    --open-id-connect-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
server.example.com
```

Output:

```
{
    "Url": "server.example.com"
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-16T19:41:48Z",
        "ThumbprintList": [
        "12345abcdefghijk67890lmnopqrst987example"
        ],
        "ClientIDList": [
        "example-application-ID"
        ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details about the OpenID Connect provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/accounts.google.com`. The `ClientIDList` property is a collection that contains all the Client IDs defined for this provider.

```
Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/oidc.example.com
```

Output:

```
ClientIDList         CreateDate                ThumbprintList
           Url
------------         ----------                --------------
           ---
{MyOIDCApp}          2/3/2015 3:00:30 PM
 {12345abcdefghijk67890lmnopqrst98765uvwxy}   oidc.example.com
```

- For API details, see GetOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the OpenID Connect provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/accounts.google.com`. The `ClientIDList` property is a collection that contains all the Client IDs defined for this provider.

```
Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/oidc.example.com
```

Output:

```
ClientIDList         CreateDate                ThumbprintList
           Url
```

```
------------         ----------                ---------------
           ---
{MyOIDCApp}          2/3/2015 3:00:30 PM
 {12345abcdefghijk67890lmnopqrst98765uvwxy}   oidc.example.com
```

- For API details, see GetOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Work with the IAM Policy Builder API

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The IAM policy to retrieve information for.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM policy.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> GetPolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {

        var response = await _IAMService.GetPolicyAsync(new GetPolicyRequest
 { PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.Policy;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::getPolicy(const Aws::String &policyArn,
                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    auto outcome = iam.GetPolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error getting policy " << policyArn << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        const auto &policy = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy();
        std::cout << "Name: " << policy.GetPolicyName() << std::endl <<
                  "ID: " << policy.GetPolicyId() << std::endl << "Arn: " <<
                  policy.GetArn() << std::endl << "Description: " <<
                  policy.GetDescription() << std::endl << "CreateDate: " <<

 policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about the specified managed policy

This example returns details about the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
aws iam get-policy \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policy": {
        "PolicyName": "MySamplePolicy",
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-17T19:23;32Z",
        "AttachmentCount": 0,
        "IsAttachable": true,
        "PolicyId": "Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1",
        "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
        "Path": "/",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy",
        "UpdateDate": "2015-06-17T19:23:32Z"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetPolicy gets data about a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) GetPolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetPolicy(ctx, &iam.GetPolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
```

```
 }
 return policy, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the policy.

```
import { GetPolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 */
export const getPolicy = (policyArn) => {
  const command = new GetPolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSLambdaExecute",
};

iam.getPolicy(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Policy.Description);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getIAMPolicy(policyArnVal: String?) {
    val request =
        GetPolicyRequest {
            policyArn = policyArnVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.getPolicy(request)
        println("Successfully retrieved policy ${response.policy?.policyName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function getPolicy($policyArn)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($policyArn) {
            return $this->iamClient->getPolicy(['PolicyArn' => $policyArn]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details about the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/MySamplePolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : MySamplePolicy
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/MySamplePolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1
```

```
PolicyName       : MySamplePolicy
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_default_policy_statement(policy_arn):
    """
    Gets the statement of the default version of the specified policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to look up.
    :return: The statement of the default policy version.
    """
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        # To get an attribute of a policy, the SDK first calls get_policy.
        policy_doc = policy.default_version.document
        policy_statement = policy_doc.get("Statement", None)
        logger.info("Got default policy doc for %s.", policy.policy_name)
        logger.info(policy_doc)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get default policy statement for %s.",
 policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_statement
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
# @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
# @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
def get_policy(policy_arn)
  response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
  policy = response.policy
  @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
  policy
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
  @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not
exist.")
  raise
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func getPolicy(arn: String) async throws -> IAMClientTypes.Policy {
        let input = GetPolicyInput(
            policyArn: arn
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getPolicy(input: input)
            guard let policy = output.policy else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchPolicy
            }
            return policy
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetPolicyVersion` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPolicyVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Manage policies
- Work with the IAM Policy Builder API

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about the specified version of the specified managed policy

This example returns the policy document for the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`.

```
aws iam get-policy-version \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy \
    --version-id v2
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyVersion": {
        "Document": {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Action": "iam:*",
                    "Resource": "*"
                }
            ]
        },
        "VersionId": "v2",
        "IsDefaultVersion": true,
        "CreateDate": "2023-04-11T00:22:54+00:00"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetPolicyVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the policy document for the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`. The policy document in the `Document` property is URL encoded and is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MyManagedPolicy -VersionId v2
$results
```

Output:

```
CreateDate             Document
 IsDefaultVersion     VersionId
----------             --------
 ----------------     ---------
2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM   %7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10...    True
           v2

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
$policy = [System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.Document)
$policy
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement":
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:555555555555:instance/i-b188560f"
      ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the policy document for the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`. The policy document in the `Document` property is URL encoded and is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MyManagedPolicy -VersionId v2
$results
```

Output:

```
CreateDate             Document
 IsDefaultVersion     VersionId
```

```
----------              --------
 ----------------     ---------
2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM   %7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10...    True
           v2

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
$policy = [System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.Document)
$policy
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement":
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:555555555555:instance/i-b188560f"
      ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_default_policy_statement(policy_arn):
    """
    Gets the statement of the default version of the specified policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to look up.
    :return: The statement of the default policy version.
    """
    try:
```

```
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        # To get an attribute of a policy, the SDK first calls get_policy.
        policy_doc = policy.default_version.document
        policy_statement = policy_doc.get("Statement", None)
        logger.info("Got default policy doc for %s.", policy.policy_name)
        logger.info(policy_doc)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get default policy statement for %s.",
policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_statement
```

- For API details, see GetPolicyVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetRole` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetRole`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to retrieve information
    /// for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> GetRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
        {
```

```
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.Role;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about an IAM role

The following `get-role` command gets information about the role named `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam get-role \
    --role-name Test-Role
```

Output:

```
{
    "Role": {
        "Description": "Test Role",
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument":"<URL-encoded-JSON>",
        "MaxSessionDuration": 3600,
        "RoleId": "AROA1234567890EXAMPLE",
        "CreateDate": "2019-11-13T16:45:56Z",
        "RoleName": "Test-Role",
        "Path": "/",
        "RoleLastUsed": {
            "Region": "us-east-1",
            "LastUsedDate": "2019-11-13T17:14:00Z"
        },
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Test-Role"
    }
}
```

The command displays the trust policy attached to the role. To list the permissions policies attached to a role, use the `list-role-policies` command.

For more information, see Creating IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetRole gets data about a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) GetRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetRole(ctx,
  &iam.GetRoleInput{RoleName: aws.String(roleName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
```

```
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the role.

```
import { GetRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const getRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new GetRoleCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function getRole($roleName)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($roleName) {
            return $this->iamClient->getRole(['RoleName' => $roleName]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the details of the `lamda_exec_role`. It includes the trust policy document that specifies who can assume this role. The policy document is URL encoded and can be decoded using the .NET `UrlDecode` method. In this example, the original policy had all white space removed before it was uploaded to the policy. To see the permissions policy documents that determine what someone who assumes the role can do, use the `Get-IAMRolePolicy` for inline policies, and `Get-IAMPolicyVersion` for attached managed policies.

```
$results = Get-IamRole -RoleName lambda_exec_role
$results | Format-List
```

Output:

```
Arn                      : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/lambda_exec_role
AssumeRolePolicyDocument : %7B%22Version%22%3A%222012-10-17%22%2C%22Statement
%22%3A%5B%7B%22Sid%22
                           %3A%22%22%2C%22Effect%22%3A%22Allow%22%2C%22Principal
%22%3A%7B%22Service
                           %22%3A%22lambda.amazonaws.com%22%7D%2C%22Action%22%3A
%22sts%3AAssumeRole
                           %22%7D%5D%7D
CreateDate               : 4/2/2015 9:16:11 AM
Path                     : /
RoleId                   : 2YBIKAIBHNKB4EXAMPLE1
RoleName                 : lambda_exec_role
```

```
$policy = [System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.AssumeRolePolicyDocument)
$policy
```

Output:

```
{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":[{"Sid":"","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"Service":"lambda.amazonaws.com"},"Action":"sts:AssumeRole"}]}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the details of the `lamda_exec_role`. It includes the trust policy document that specifies who can assume this role. The policy document is URL encoded and can be decoded using the .NET `UrlDecode` method. In this example, the original policy had all white space removed before it was uploaded to the policy. To see the permissions policy documents that determine what someone who assumes the role can do, use the `Get-IAMRolePolicy` for inline policies, and `Get-IAMPolicyVersion` for attached managed policies.

```
$results = Get-IamRole -RoleName lambda_exec_role
$results | Format-List
```

Output:

```
Arn                      : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/lambda_exec_role
```

```
AssumeRolePolicyDocument : %7B%22Version%22%3A%222012-10-17%22%2C%22Statement
%22%3A%5B%7B%22Sid%22
                           %3A%22%22%2C%22Effect%22%3A%22Allow%22%2C%22Principal
%22%3A%7B%22Service
                           %22%3A%22lambda.amazonaws.com%22%7D%2C%22Action%22%3A
%22sts%3AAssumeRole
                           %22%7D%5D%7D
CreateDate               : 4/2/2015 9:16:11 AM
Path                     : /
RoleId                   : 2YBIKAIBHNKB4EXAMPLE1
RoleName                 : lambda_exec_role
```

```
$policy = [System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.AssumeRolePolicyDocument)
$policy
```

Output:

```
{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":[{"Sid":"","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"Service":"lambda.amazonaws.com"},"Action":"sts:AssumeRole"}]}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_role(role_name):
    """
    Gets a role by name.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to retrieve.
    :return: The specified role.
    """
    try:
```

```
        role = iam.Role(role_name)
        role.load()  # calls GetRole to load attributes
        logger.info("Got role with arn %s.", role.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get role named %s.", role_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Gets data about a role.
#
# @param name [String] The name of the role to look up.
# @return [Aws::IAM::Role] The retrieved role.
def get_role(name)
  role = @iam_client.get_role({
                                role_name: name
                              }).role
  puts("Got data for role '#{role.role_name}'. Its ARN is '#{role.arn}'.")
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts("Couldn't get data for role '#{name}' Here's why:")
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
else
  role
end
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn get_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: String,
) -> Result<GetRoleOutput, SdkError<GetRoleError>> {
    let response = client.get_role().role_name(role_name).send().await?;
    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func getRole(name: String) async throws -> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        let input = GetRoleInput(
```

```
            roleName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getRole(input: input)
            guard let role = output.role else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            return role
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetRolePolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetRolePolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a policy attached to an IAM role

The following `get-role-policy` command gets information about the specified policy attached to the role named `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam get-role-policy \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
{
  "RoleName": "Test-Role",
  "PolicyDocument": {
      "Statement": [
          {
              "Action": [
```

```
                    "s3:ListBucket",
                    "s3:Put*",
                    "s3:Get*",
                    "s3:*MultipartUpload*"
                ],
                "Resource": "*",
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Sid": "1"
            }
        ]
    }
    "PolicyName": "ExamplePolicy"
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the permissions policy document for the policy named `oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy` that is embedded in the IAM role `lamda_exec_role`. The resulting policy document is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName lambda_exec_role -PolicyName
 oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy
$results
```

Output:

```
PolicyDocument                                          PolicyName
              UserName
--------------                                          ----------
              --------
%7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%...
 oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy     lambda_exec_role
```

```
[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
```

```
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
```

Output:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "logs:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:us-east-1:555555555555:log-group:/aws/lambda/aws-
example-function:*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the permissions policy document for the policy named `oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy` that is embedded in the IAM role `lamda_exec_role`. The resulting policy document is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName lambda_exec_role -PolicyName
 oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy
$results
```

Output:

```
PolicyDocument                                          PolicyName
              UserName
--------------                                          ----------
              --------
%7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%...
 oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy     lambda_exec_role
```

```
[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
```

Output:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "logs:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:us-east-1:555555555555:log-group:/aws/lambda/aws-
example-function:*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetSamlProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSamlProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the SAML provider metadocument

This example retrieves the details about the SAML 2.0 provider whose ARM is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS`. The response includes the metadata document that you got from the identity provider to create the AWS SAML provider entity as well as the creation and expiration dates.

```
aws iam get-saml-provider \
    --saml-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS
```

Output:

```
{
    "SAMLMetadataDocument": "...SAMLMetadataDocument-XML...",
    "CreateDate": "2017-03-06T22:29:46+00:00",
    "ValidUntil": "2117-03-06T22:29:46.433000+00:00",
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "DeptID",
            "Value": "123456"
        },
        {
            "Key": "Department",
            "Value": "Accounting"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM SAML identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetSamlProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the details about the SAML 2.0 provider whose ARM is arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS. The response includes the

metadata document that you got from the identity provider to create the AWS SAML provider entity as well as the creation and expiration dates.

```
Get-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFS
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                 SAMLMetadataDocument
        ValidUntil
----------                 --------------------
        ----------
12/23/2014 12:16:55 PM    <EntityDescriptor ID="_12345678-1234-5678-9012-
example1...    12/23/2114 12:16:54 PM
```

- For API details, see GetSamlProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the details about the SAML 2.0 provider whose ARM is arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS. The response includes the metadata document that you got from the identity provider to create the AWS SAML provider entity as well as the creation and expiration dates.

```
Get-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFS
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                 SAMLMetadataDocument
        ValidUntil
----------                 --------------------
        ----------
12/23/2014 12:16:55 PM    <EntityDescriptor ID="_12345678-1234-5678-9012-
example1...    12/23/2114 12:16:54 PM
```

- For API details, see GetSamlProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetServerCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetServerCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::getServerCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetServerCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetServerCertificateName(certificateName);

    auto outcome = iam.GetServerCertificate(request);
    bool result = true;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
 Aws::IAM::IAMErrors::NO_SUCH_ENTITY) {
            std::cerr << "Error getting server certificate " << certificateName
 <<
                      ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Certificate '" << certificateName
                      << "' not found." << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        const auto &certificate = outcome.GetResult().GetServerCertificate();
        std::cout << "Name: " <<

 certificate.GetServerCertificateMetadata().GetServerCertificateName()
                 << std::endl << "Body: " << certificate.GetCertificateBody() <<
                 std::endl << "Chain: " << certificate.GetCertificateChain() <<
                 std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details about a server certificate in your AWS account

The following `get-server-certificate` command retrieves all of the details about the specified server certificate in your AWS account.

```
aws iam get-server-certificate \
    --server-certificate-name myUpdatedServerCertificate
```

Output:

```
{
    "ServerCertificate": {
        "ServerCertificateMetadata": {
            "Path": "/",
            "ServerCertificateName": "myUpdatedServerCertificate",
            "ServerCertificateId": "ASCAEXAMPLE123EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/
myUpdatedServerCertificate",
            "UploadDate": "2019-04-22T21:13:44+00:00",
            "Expiration": "2019-10-15T22:23:16+00:00"
        },
        "CertificateBody": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
            MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
            VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
            b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
            BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
            MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
            VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
            b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
            YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
            21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
            rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
```

```
            Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
            nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
            FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
            NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvrszlaEXAMPLE=-----END CERTIFICATE-----",
        "CertificateChain": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----\nMIICiTCCAfICCQD6md
            7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAqQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgT
            AldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0drGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAs
            TC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVsQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQ
            jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhtcNMTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBh
            MCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgsYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBb
            WF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb2d5zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMx
            HzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGfFtYXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQE
            BBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIgWJ21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVI
            k60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8mh9TrDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQ
            ITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gjpEIbb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nr
            AgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCku4nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auN
            KyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0FlkbFFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6Guo
            EDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjS;TbNYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw
            3rrszlaEWEG5vb25lQGFtsYXpvbiEXAMPLE=\n-----END CERTIFICATE-----"
    }
}
```

To list the server certificates available in your AWS account, use the `list-server-certificates` command.

For more information, see Managing server certificates in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a server certificate.

```
import { GetServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
```

```
const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} certName
 * @returns
 */
export const getServerCertificate = async (certName) => {
  const command = new GetServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: certName,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.getServerCertificate(
  { ServerCertificateName: "CERTIFICATE_NAME" },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
```

```
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the server certificate named `MyServerCertificate`. You can find the certificate details in the `CertificateBody` and `ServerCertificateMetadata` properties.

```
$result = Get-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate
$result | format-list
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody           : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z

 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt

 YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
```

```
                            21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB
+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
                            rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                            nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                            NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                            -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateChain          :
ServerCertificateMetadata :
 Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.ServerCertificateMetadata
```

```
$result.ServerCertificateMetadata
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyServerCertificate
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /Org1/Org2/
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIFEXAMPLE17HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyServerCertificate
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the server certificate named `MyServerCertificate`. You can find the certificate details in the `CertificateBody` and `ServerCertificateMetadata` properties.

```
$result = Get-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate
$result | format-list
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody           : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
```

```
 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z

 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt

 YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
                            21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB
+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
                            rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                            nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                            NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                            -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateChain          :
ServerCertificateMetadata :
 Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.ServerCertificateMetadata
```

```
$result.ServerCertificateMetadata
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyServerCertificate
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /Org1/Org2/
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIFEXAMPLE17HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyServerCertificate
```

```
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetServiceLastAccessedDetails` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetServiceLastAccessedDetails`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a service access report

The following `get-service-last-accessed-details` example retrieves a previously generated report that lists the services accessed by IAM entities. To generate a report, use the `generate-service-last-accessed-details` command.

```
aws iam get-service-last-accessed-details \
    --job-id 2eb6c2b8-7b4c-3xmp-3c13-03b72c8cdfdc
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
    "JobCreationDate": "2019-10-01T03:50:35.929Z",
    "ServicesLastAccessed": [
        ...
        {
            "ServiceName": "AWS Lambda",
            "LastAuthenticated": "2019-09-30T23:02:00Z",
            "ServiceNamespace": "lambda",
            "LastAuthenticatedEntity": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin",
            "TotalAuthenticatedEntities": 6
        },
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Refining permissions in AWS using last accessed information in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example provides details of the service last accessed by the IAM entity(user, group, role or policy) associated in Request call.

```
Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
```

Output:

```
f0b7a819-eab0-929b-dc26-ca598911cb9f
```

```
Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -JobId f0b7a819-eab0-929b-dc26-ca598911cb9f
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example provides details of the service last accessed by the IAM entity(user, group, role or policy) associated in Request call.

```
Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
```

Output:

```
f0b7a819-eab0-929b-dc26-ca598911cb9f
```

```
Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -JobId f0b7a819-eab0-929b-dc26-ca598911cb9f
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a service access report with details for a service

The following `get-service-last-accessed-details-with-entities` example retrieves a report that contains details about IAM users and other entities that accessed the specified service. To generate a report, use the `generate-service-last-accessed-details` command. To get a list of services accessed with namespaces, use `get-service-last-accessed-details`.

```
aws iam get-service-last-accessed-details-with-entities \
    --job-id 78b6c2ba-d09e-6xmp-7039-ecde30b26916 \
    --service-namespace lambda
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobStatus": "COMPLETED",
    "JobCreationDate": "2019-10-01T03:55:41.756Z",
    "JobCompletionDate": "2019-10-01T03:55:42.533Z",
    "EntityDetailsList": [
        {
            "EntityInfo": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin",
                "Name": "admin",
                "Type": "USER",
                "Id": "AIDAIO2XMPLENQEXAMPLE",
                "Path": "/"
            },
            "LastAuthenticated": "2019-09-30T23:02:00Z"
        },
        {
            "EntityInfo": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/developer",
                "Name": "developer",
                "Type": "USER",
                "Id": "AIDAIBEYXMPL2YEXAMPLE",
                "Path": "/"
            },
            "LastAuthenticated": "2019-09-16T19:34:00Z"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Refining permissions in AWS using last accessed information in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example provides the last accessed timestamp for the service in the request by that respective IAM entity.

```
$results = Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity -JobId f0b7a819-eab0-929b-
dc26-ca598911cb9f -ServiceNamespace ec2
$results
```

Output:

```
EntityDetailsList : {Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.EntityDetails}
Error             :
IsTruncated       : False
JobCompletionDate : 12/29/19 11:19:31 AM
JobCreationDate   : 12/29/19 11:19:31 AM
JobStatus         : COMPLETED
Marker            :
```

```
$results.EntityDetailsList
```

Output:

```
EntityInfo                                  LastAuthenticated
----------                                  -----------------
Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.EntityInfo 11/16/19 3:47:00 PM
```

```
$results.EntityInfo
```

Output:

```
Arn  : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
Id   : AIDA4NBK5CXF5TZHU1234
Name : TestUser
Path : /
Type : USER
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example provides the last accessed timestamp for the service in the request by that respective IAM entity.

```
$results = Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity -JobId f0b7a819-eab0-929b-
dc26-ca598911cb9f -ServiceNamespace ec2
$results
```

Output:

```
EntityDetailsList : {Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.EntityDetails}
Error             :
IsTruncated       : False
JobCompletionDate : 12/29/19 11:19:31 AM
JobCreationDate   : 12/29/19 11:19:31 AM
JobStatus         : COMPLETED
Marker            :
```

```
$results.EntityDetailsList
```

Output:

```
EntityInfo                                LastAuthenticated
----------                                -----------------
Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.EntityInfo 11/16/19 3:47:00 PM
```

```
$results.EntityInfo
```

Output:

```
Arn  : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
Id   : AIDA4NBK5CXF5TZHU1234
Name : TestUser
Path : /
Type : USER
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To check the status of a request to delete a service-linked role

The following `get-service-linked-role-deletion-status` example displays the status of a previously request to delete a service-linked role. The delete operation occurs asynchronously. When you make the request, you get a `DeletionTaskId` value that you provide as a parameter for this command.

```
aws iam get-service-linked-role-deletion-status \
    --deletion-task-id task/aws-service-role/lex.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForLexBots/1a2b3c4d-1234-abcd-7890-abcdeEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
"Status": "SUCCEEDED"
}
```

For more information, see Using service-linked roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatusCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} deletionTaskId
 */
export const getServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus = (deletionTaskId) => {
  const command = new GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatusCommand({
    DeletionTaskId: deletionTaskId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `GetUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetUser`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>An IAM user object.</returns>
    public async Task<User> GetUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetUserAsync(new GetUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
```

```
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_user_exists
#
# This function checks to see if the specified AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) user already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the IAM user to check.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If the user already exists.
#       1 - If the user doesn't exist.
##############################################################################
function iam_user_exists() {
  local user_name
  user_name=$1

  # Check whether the IAM user already exists.
  # We suppress all output - we're interested only in the return code.

  local errors
  errors=$(aws iam get-user \
    --user-name "$user_name" 2>&1 >/dev/null)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -eq 0 ]]; then
    return 0 # 0 in Bash script means true.
  else
    if [[ $errors != *"error"*"(NoSuchEntity)"* ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log $error_code
      errecho "Error calling iam get-user $errors"
    fi

    return 1 # 1 in Bash script means false.
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about an IAM user

The following `get-user` command gets information about the IAM user named `Paulo`.

```
aws iam get-user \
    --user-name Paulo
```

Output:

```
{
    "User": {
        "UserName": "Paulo",
        "Path": "/",
        "CreateDate": "2019-09-21T23:03:13Z",
        "UserId": "AIDA123456789EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Paulo"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Managing IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
```

```
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetUser gets data about a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) GetUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetUser(ctx, &iam.GetUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchEntityException:
    log.Printf("User %v does not exist.\n", userName)
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Couldn't get user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the user named `David`.

```
Get-IAMUser -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE1
UserName         : David
```

Example 2: This example retrieves details about the currently signed-in IAM user.

```
Get-IAMUser
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/4/2015 12:12:33 PM
Path             : /
UserId           : 7K3GJEANSKZF2EXAMPLE2
UserName         : Bob
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the user named `David`.

```
Get-IAMUser -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE1
UserName         : David
```

Example 2: This example retrieves details about the currently signed-in IAM user.

```
Get-IAMUser
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/4/2015 12:12:33 PM
Path             : /
UserId           : 7K3GJEANSKZF2EXAMPLE2
UserName         : Bob
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Retrieves a user's details
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::User, nil] The user object if found, or nil if an
error occurred
  def get_user(user_name)
```

```
    response = @iam_client.get_user(user_name: user_name)
    response.user
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("User '#{user_name}' not found.")
    nil
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error retrieving user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func getUser(name: String? = nil) async throws -> IAMClientTypes.User
 {
        let input = GetUserInput(
            userName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await iamClient.getUser(input: input)
            guard let user = output.user else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchUser
            }
            return user
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getUser:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetUserPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetUserPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list policy details for an IAM user

The following `get-user-policy` command lists the details of the specified policy that is attached to the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam get-user-policy \
    --user-name Bob \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
{
    "UserName": "Bob",
    "PolicyName": "ExamplePolicy",
    "PolicyDocument": {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Action": "*",
                "Resource": "*",
                "Effect": "Allow"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

To get a list of policies for an IAM user, use the `list-user-policies` command.

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetUserPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the details of the inline policy named `Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy` that is embedded in the IAM user named `David`. The policy document is URL encoded.

```
$results = Get-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy -UserName David
$results
```

Output:

```
PolicyDocument                                          PolicyName
       UserName
--------------                                          ----------
       --------
%7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%...    Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy
       David

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetUser",
        "iam:ListUsers"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the details of the inline policy named `Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy` that is embedded in the IAM user named `David`. The policy document is URL encoded.

```
$results = Get-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy -UserName David
$results
```

Output:

```
PolicyDocument                                          PolicyName
       UserName
--------------                                          ----------
       --------
%7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%...    Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy
       David

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetUser",
        "iam:ListUsers"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListAccessKeys` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage access keys

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_list_access_keys
#
# This function lists the access keys for the specified user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name -- The name of the IAM user.
#
# Returns:
#       access_key_ids
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_list_access_keys() {

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
```

```
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_list_access_keys"
    echo "Lists the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key IDs for
 the specified user."
    echo "  -u user_name   The name of the IAM user."
    echo ""
  }

  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam list-access-keys \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'AccessKeyMetadata[].AccessKeyId')

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-access-keys operation failed.$response"
    return 1
```

```
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listAccessKeys(const Aws::String &userName,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListAccessKeysRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListAccessKeys(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list access keys for user " << userName
                      << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "UserName" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "KeyID" << std::setw(20) << "Status" <<
                      std::setw(20) << "CreateDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
```

```
        }

        const auto &keys = outcome.GetResult().GetAccessKeyMetadata();
        const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT = "%Y-%m-%d";

        for (const auto &key: keys) {
            Aws::String statusString =
                    Aws::IAM::Model::StatusTypeMapper::GetNameForStatusType(
                            key.GetStatus());
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << key.GetUserName() <<
                      std::setw(30) << key.GetAccessKeyId() << std::setw(20) <<
                      statusString << std::setw(20) <<
                      key.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
 std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the access key IDs for an IAM user

The following `list-access-keys` command lists the access keys IDs for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam list-access-keys \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccessKeyMetadata": [
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "Status": "Active",
            "CreateDate": "2013-06-04T18:17:34Z",
            "AccessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "Status": "Inactive",
            "CreateDate": "2013-06-06T20:42:26Z",
            "AccessKeyId": "AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE"
        }
    ]
}
```

You cannot list the secret access keys for IAM users. If the secret access keys are lost, you must create new access keys using the `create-access-keys` command.

For more information, see Managing access keys for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
```

```
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListAccessKeys lists the access keys for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListAccessKeys(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]types.AccessKeyMetadata, error) {
 var keys []types.AccessKeyMetadata
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAccessKeys(ctx, &iam.ListAccessKeysInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list access keys for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 } else {
  keys = result.AccessKeyMetadata
 }
 return keys, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AccessKeyMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAccessKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAccessKeysResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListAccessKeys {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userName>\s

                Where:
                    userName - The name of the user for which access keys are
 retrieved.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String userName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listKeys(iam, userName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void listKeys(IamClient iam, String userName) {
        try {
            boolean done = false;
            String newMarker = null;

            while (!done) {
                ListAccessKeysResponse response;

                if (newMarker == null) {
                    ListAccessKeysRequest request =
ListAccessKeysRequest.builder()
                            .userName(userName)
                            .build();

                    response = iam.listAccessKeys(request);

                } else {
                    ListAccessKeysRequest request =
ListAccessKeysRequest.builder()
                            .userName(userName)
                            .marker(newMarker)
                            .build();

                    response = iam.listAccessKeys(request);
                }

                for (AccessKeyMetadata metadata : response.accessKeyMetadata()) {
                    System.out.format("Retrieved access key %s",
metadata.accessKeyId());
                }

                if (!response.isTruncated()) {
```

```
                    done = true;
                } else {
                    newMarker = response.marker();
                }
            }

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the access keys.

```
import { ListAccessKeysCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 */
export async function* listAccessKeys(userName) {
  const command = new ListAccessKeysCommand({
```

```
    MaxItems: 5,
    UserName: userName,
  });

  /**
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-iam").ListAccessKeysCommandOutput |
 undefined}
   */
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response?.AccessKeyMetadata?.length) {
    for (const key of response.AccessKeyMetadata) {
      yield key;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListAccessKeysCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
```

```
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  MaxItems: 5,
  UserName: "IAM_USER_NAME",
};

iam.listAccessKeys(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listKeys(userNameVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListAccessKeysRequest {
            userName = userNameVal
        }
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAccessKeys(request)
        response.accessKeyMetadata?.forEach { md ->
            println("Retrieved access key ${md.accessKeyId}")
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command lists the access keys for the IAM user named Bob. Note that you cannot list the secret access keys for IAM users. If the secret access keys are lost, you must create new access keys with the `New-IAMAccessKey` cmdlet.

```
Get-IAMAccessKey -UserName "Bob"
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                CreateDate                  Status
 UserName
-----------                ----------                  ------
 --------
AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE       12/3/2014 10:53:41 AM       Active              Bob
AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE       6/6/2013 8:42:26 PM         Inactive            Bob
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command lists the access keys for the IAM user named Bob. Note that you cannot list the secret access keys for IAM users. If the secret access keys are lost, you must create new access keys with the `New-IAMAccessKey` cmdlet.

```
Get-IAMAccessKey -UserName "Bob"
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                CreateDate                  Status
 UserName
```

```
-----------                 ----------                  ------
 --------
AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE        12/3/2014 10:53:41 AM       Active              Bob
AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE        6/6/2013 8:42:26 PM         Inactive            Bob
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_keys(user_name):
    """
    Lists the keys owned by the specified user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The list of keys owned by the user.
    """
    try:
        keys = list(iam.User(user_name).access_keys.all())
        logger.info("Got %s access keys for %s.", len(keys), user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get access keys for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return keys
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, deactivates, and deletes access keys.

```
# Manages access keys for IAM users
class AccessKeyManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'AccessKeyManager'
  end

  # Lists access keys for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  def list_access_keys(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name)
    if response.access_key_metadata.empty?
      @logger.info("No access keys found for user '#{user_name}'.")
    else
      response.access_key_metadata.map(&:access_key_id)
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: cannot find user '#{user_name}'.")
    []
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_access_key(user_name)
```

```
    response = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user_name)
    access_key = response.access_key
    @logger.info("Access key created for user '#{user_name}':
#{access_key.access_key_id}")
    access_key
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::LimitExceeded
    @logger.error('Error creating access key: limit exceeded. Cannot create
more.')
    nil
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating access key: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Deactivates an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def deactivate_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.update_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id,
      status: 'Inactive'
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deactivating access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def delete_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.delete_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting access key: #{e.message}")
```

```
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ListAccountAliases` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage your account

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool
AwsDoc::IAM::listAccountAliases(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListAccountAliasesRequest request;

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListAccountAliases(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list account aliases: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

```
        const auto &aliases = outcome.GetResult().GetAccountAliases();
        if (!header) {
            if (aliases.size() == 0) {
                std::cout << "Account has no aliases" << std::endl;
                break;
            }
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "Alias" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        for (const auto &alias: aliases) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << alias << std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list account aliases

The following `list-account-aliases` command lists the aliases for the current account.

```
aws iam list-account-aliases
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "AccountAliases": [
    "mycompany"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Your AWS account ID and its alias in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAccountAliasesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListAccountAliases {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAliases(iam);
        System.out.println("Done");
```

```
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void listAliases(IamClient iam) {
        try {
            ListAccountAliasesResponse response = iam.listAccountAliases();
            for (String alias : response.accountAliases()) {
                System.out.printf("Retrieved account alias %s", alias);
            }

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the account aliases.

```
import { ListAccountAliasesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 */
```

```
export async function* listAccountAliases() {
  const command = new ListAccountAliasesCommand({ MaxItems: 5 });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.AccountAliases?.length) {
    for (const alias of response.AccountAliases) {
      yield alias;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListAccountAliasesCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
          MaxItems: 5,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });
```

```
iam.listAccountAliases({ MaxItems: 10 }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAliases() {
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAccountAliases(ListAccountAliasesRequest {})
        response.accountAliases?.forEach { alias ->
            println("Retrieved account alias $alias")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the account alias for the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMAccountAlias
```

Output:

```
ExampleCo
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the account alias for the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMAccountAlias
```

Output:

```
ExampleCo
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_aliases():
    """
    Gets the list of aliases for the current account. An account has at most one
 alias.

    :return: The list of aliases for the account.
    """
    try:
```

```
        response = iam.meta.client.list_account_aliases()
        aliases = response["AccountAliases"]
        if len(aliases) > 0:
            logger.info("Got aliases for your account: %s.", ",".join(aliases))
        else:
            logger.info("Got no aliases for your account.")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list aliases for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["AccountAliases"]
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, create, and delete account aliases.

```
class IAMAliasManager
  # Initializes the IAM client and logger
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists available AWS account aliases.
  def list_aliases
    response = @iam_client.list_account_aliases
```

```
    if response.account_aliases.count.positive?
      @logger.info('Account aliases are:')
      response.account_aliases.each { |account_alias| @logger.info("
 #{account_alias}") }
    else
      @logger.info('No account aliases found.')
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing account aliases: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Creates an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was created; otherwise, false.
  def create_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.create_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to delete.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.delete_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ListAttachedGroupPolicies` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAttachedGroupPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all managed policies that are attached to the specified group

This example returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies that are attached to the IAM group named `Admins` in the AWS account.

```
aws iam list-attached-group-policies \
    --group-name Admins
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachedPolicies": [
        {
            "PolicyName": "AdministratorAccess",
            "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "SecurityAudit",
            "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAttachedGroupPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies that are attached to the IAM group named `Admins` in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies embedded in the group, use the `Get-IAMGroupPolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList -GroupName "Admins"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                  PolicyName
---------                                                  ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit                      SecurityAudit
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess                AdministratorAccess
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedGroupPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies that are attached to the IAM group named `Admins` in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies embedded in the group, use the `Get-IAMGroupPolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList -GroupName "Admins"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                  PolicyName
---------                                                  ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit                      SecurityAudit
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess                AdministratorAccess
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedGroupPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListAttachedRolePolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the IAM role policies that are attached to an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role to list IAM policies for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies attached to the IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AttachedPolicyType>>
 ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var attachedPolicies = new List<AttachedPolicyType>();
        var attachedRolePoliciesPaginator =
 _IAMService.Paginators.ListAttachedRolePolicies(new
 ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName = roleName });

        await foreach (var response in attachedRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            attachedPolicies.AddRange(response.AttachedPolicies);
        }

        return attachedPolicies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all managed policies that are attached to the specified role

This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies attached to the IAM role named `SecurityAuditRole` in the AWS account.

```
aws iam list-attached-role-policies \
    --role-name SecurityAuditRole
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachedPolicies": [
```

```
        {
            "PolicyName": "SecurityAudit",
            "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}
```

```
// ListAttachedRolePolicies lists the policies that are attached to the specified
 role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) ([]types.AttachedPolicy, error) {
 var policies []types.AttachedPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list attached policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 roleName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.AttachedPolicies
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the policies that are attached to a role.

```
import {
  ListAttachedRolePoliciesCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
```

```
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export async function* listAttachedRolePolicies(roleName) {
  const command = new ListAttachedRolePoliciesCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.AttachedPolicies?.length) {
    for (const policy of response.AttachedPolicies) {
      yield policy;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListAttachedRolePoliciesCommand({
          RoleName: roleName,
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listAttachedRolePolicies($roleName, $pathPrefix = "", $marker
 = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments = ['RoleName' => $roleName];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments['PathPrefix'] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments['Marker'] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments['MaxItems'] = $maxItems;
        }
        return $this->iamClient-
>listAttachedRolePolicies($listAttachRolePoliciesArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies attached to the IAM role named `SecurityAuditRole` in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies that are embedded in the role, use the `Get-IAMRolePolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName "SecurityAuditRole"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                PolicyName
---------                                                ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit                    SecurityAudit
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies attached to the IAM role named `SecurityAuditRole` in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies that are embedded in the role, use the `Get-IAMRolePolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName "SecurityAuditRole"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                 PolicyName
---------                                                 ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit                     SecurityAudit
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_attached_policies(role_name):
    """
    Lists policies attached to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to query.
    """
    try:
        role = iam.Role(role_name)
        for policy in role.attached_policies.all():
            logger.info("Got policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list attached policies for %s.", role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
```

```
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not
exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
```

```
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_attached_role_policies(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: String,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
```

```
) -> Result<ListAttachedRolePoliciesOutput,
 SdkError<ListAttachedRolePoliciesError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_attached_role_policies()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3



    /// Returns a list of AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies
    /// that are attached to the role.
    ///
    /// - Parameter role: The IAM role to return the policy list for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `IAMClientTypes.AttachedPolicy` objects
    ///   describing each managed policy that's attached to the role.
    public func listAttachedRolePolicies(role: String) async throws ->
 [IAMClientTypes.AttachedPolicy] {
        var policyList: [IAMClientTypes.AttachedPolicy] = []
```

```
        // Use "Paginated" to get all the attached role polices.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in
"ListAttachedRolePoliciesOutput".
        let input = ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput(
            roleName: role
        )
        let output = client.listAttachedRolePoliciesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in output {
                guard let attachedPolicies = page.attachedPolicies else {
                    print("Error: no attached policies returned.")
                    continue
                }
                for attachedPolicy in attachedPolicies {
                    policyList.append(attachedPolicy)
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listAttachedRolePolicies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }

        return policyList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListAttachedUserPolicies` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAttachedUserPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all managed policies that are attached to the specified user

This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies for the IAM user named Bob in the AWS account.

```
aws iam list-attached-user-policies \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "AttachedPolicies": [
        {
            "PolicyName": "AdministratorAccess",
            "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "SecurityAudit",
            "PolicyArn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAttachedUserPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies for the IAM user named Bob in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies that are embedded in the IAM user, use the `Get-IAMUserPolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList -UserName "Bob"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                PolicyName
---------                                                ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/TesterPolicy                     TesterPolicy
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedUserPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies for the IAM user named Bob in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies that are embedded in the IAM user, use the `Get-IAMUserPolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList -UserName "Bob"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                PolicyName
---------                                                ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/TesterPolicy                     TesterPolicy
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedUserPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListEntitiesForPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListEntitiesForPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all users, groups, and roles that the specified managed policy is attached to

This example returns a list of IAM groups, roles, and users who have the policy `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy` attached.

```
aws iam list-entities-for-policy \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyGroups": [
        {
            "GroupName": "Admins",
            "GroupId": "AGPACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE"
        }
```

```
    ],
    "PolicyUsers": [
        {
            "UserName": "Alice",
            "UserId": "AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE"
        }
    ],
    "PolicyRoles": [
        {
            "RoleName": "DevRole",
            "RoleId": "AROADBQP57FF2AEXAMPLE"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListEntitiesForPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a list of IAM groups, roles, and users who have the policy `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy` attached.

```
Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy -PolicyArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy"
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated  : False
Marker       :
PolicyGroups : {}
PolicyRoles  : {testRole}
PolicyUsers  : {Bob, Theresa}
```

- For API details, see ListEntitiesForPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of IAM groups, roles, and users who have the policy `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy` attached.

```
Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy -PolicyArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy"
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated  : False
Marker       :
PolicyGroups : {}
PolicyRoles  : {testRole}
PolicyUsers  : {Bob, Theresa}
```

- For API details, see ListEntitiesForPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListGroupPolicies` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListGroupPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all inline policies that are attached to the specified group

The following `list-group-policies` command lists the names of inline policies that are attached to the IAM group named `Admins` in the current account.

```
aws iam list-group-policies \
    --group-name Admins
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyNames": [
        "AdminRoot",
        "ExamplePolicy"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing IAM policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListGroupPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a list of the inline policies that are embedded in the group `Testers`. To get the managed policies that are attached to the group, use the command `Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList`.

```
Get-IAMGroupPolicyList -GroupName Testers
```

Output:

```
Deny-Assume-S3-Role-In-Production
PowerUserAccess-Testers
```

- For API details, see ListGroupPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of the inline policies that are embedded in the group `Testers`. To get the managed policies that are attached to the group, use the command `Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList`.

```
Get-IAMGroupPolicyList -GroupName Testers
```

Output:

```
Deny-Assume-S3-Role-In-Production
PowerUserAccess-Testers
```

- For API details, see ListGroupPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListGroups`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM groups.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Group>> ListGroupsAsync()
    {
        var groupsPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListGroups(new
ListGroupsRequest());
        var groups = new List<Group>();

        await foreach (var response in groupsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            groups.AddRange(response.Groups);
        }

        return groups;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the IAM groups for the current account

The following `list-groups` command lists the IAM groups in the current account.

```
aws iam list-groups
```

Output:

```
{
    "Groups": [
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "CreateDate": "2013-06-04T20:27:27.972Z",
            "GroupId": "AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Admins",
            "GroupName": "Admins"
        },
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "CreateDate": "2013-04-16T20:30:42Z",
            "GroupId": "AIDGPMS9RO4H3FEXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/S3-Admins",
            "GroupName": "S3-Admins"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing IAM user groups in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// GroupWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) group
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform group actions.
type GroupWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListGroups lists up to maxGroups number of groups.
func (wrapper GroupWrapper) ListGroups(ctx context.Context, maxGroups int32)
 ([]types.Group, error) {
 var groups []types.Group
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListGroups(ctx, &iam.ListGroupsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxGroups),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list groups. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  groups = result.Groups
 }
 return groups, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the groups.

```
import { ListGroupsCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 */
export async function* listGroups() {
  const command = new ListGroupsCommand({
    MaxItems: 10,
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.Groups?.length) {
    for (const group of response.Groups) {
      yield group;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListGroupsCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
          MaxItems: 10,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listGroups($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listGroupsArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listGroupsArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listGroupsArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listGroupsArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }

        return $this->iamClient->listGroups($listGroupsArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a collection of all the IAM groups defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMGroupList
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Administrators
CreateDate : 10/20/2014 10:06:24 AM
GroupId    : 6WCH4TRY3KIHIEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Administrators
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:38:55 PM
GroupId    : ZU2EOWMK6WBZOEXAMPLE2
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE3
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a collection of all the IAM groups defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMGroupList
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Administrators
CreateDate : 10/20/2014 10:06:24 AM
GroupId    : 6WCH4TRY3KIHIEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Administrators
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:38:55 PM
GroupId    : ZU2EOWMK6WBZOEXAMPLE2
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE3
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_groups(count):
    """
    Lists the specified number of groups for the account.

    :param count: The number of groups to list.
    """
    try:
        for group in iam.groups.limit(count):
            logger.info("Group: %s", group.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list groups for the account.")
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# A class to manage IAM operations via the AWS SDK client
class IamGroupManager
  # Initializes the IamGroupManager class
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An instance of the IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists up to a specified number of groups for the account.
  # @param count [Integer] The maximum number of groups to list.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Client::Response]
  def list_groups(count)
    response = @iam_client.list_groups(max_items: count)
    response.groups.each do |group|
      @logger.info("\t#{group.group_name}")
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't list groups for the account. Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_groups(
    client: &iamClient,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListGroupsOutput, SdkError<ListGroupsError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_groups()
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listGroups() async throws -> [String] {
        var groupList: [String] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the groups.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' property in
 "ListGroupsOutput".
        let input = ListGroupsInput()

        let pages = client.listGroupsPaginated(input: input)
        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.groups else {
                    print("Error: no groups returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for group in groups {
                    if let name = group.groupName {
                        groupList.append(name)
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listGroups:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
        return groupList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListGroupsForUser` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListGroupsForUser`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the groups that an IAM user belongs to

The following `list-groups-for-user` command displays the groups that the IAM user named Bob belongs to.

```
aws iam list-groups-for-user \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "Groups": [
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "CreateDate": "2013-05-06T01:18:08Z",
            "GroupId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Admin",
            "GroupName": "Admin"
        },
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "CreateDate": "2013-05-06T01:37:28Z",
            "GroupId": "AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/s3-Users",
            "GroupName": "s3-Users"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing IAM user groups in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListGroupsForUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the list of IAM groups that the IAM user `David` belongs to.

```
Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Administrators
CreateDate : 10/20/2014 10:06:24 AM
GroupId    : 6WCH4TRY3KIHIEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Administrators
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE2
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:38:55 PM
GroupId    : ZU2EOWMK6WBZOEXAMPLE3
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see ListGroupsForUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of IAM groups that the IAM user `David` belongs to.

```
Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Administrators
CreateDate : 10/20/2014 10:06:24 AM
GroupId    : 6WCH4TRY3KIHIEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Administrators
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE2
GroupName  : Testers
```

```
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:38:55 PM
GroupId    : ZU2EOWMK6WBZOEXAMPLE3
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see ListGroupsForUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListInstanceProfiles` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListInstanceProfiles`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To lists the instance profiles for the account

The following `list-instance-profiles` command lists the instance profiles that are associated with the current account.

```
aws iam list-instance-profiles
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceProfiles": [
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "InstanceProfileName": "example-dev-role",
            "InstanceProfileId": "AIPAIXEU4NUHUPEXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/example-dev-role",
            "CreateDate": "2023-09-21T18:17:41+00:00",
            "Roles": [
                {
                    "Path": "/",
                    "RoleName": "example-dev-role",
                    "RoleId": "AROAJ52OTH4H7LEXAMPLE",
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/example-dev-role",
                    "CreateDate": "2023-09-21T18:17:40+00:00",
```

```
                    "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {
                                    "Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"
                                },
                                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "InstanceProfileName": "example-s3-role",
            "InstanceProfileId": "AIPAJVJVNRIQFREXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/example-s3-role",
            "CreateDate": "2023-09-21T18:18:50+00:00",
            "Roles": [
                {
                    "Path": "/",
                    "RoleName": "example-s3-role",
                    "RoleId": "AROAINUBC5O7XLEXAMPLE",
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/example-s3-role",
                    "CreateDate": "2023-09-21T18:18:49+00:00",
                    "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {
                                    "Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"
                                },
                                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Using instance profiles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfiles in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a collection of the instance profiles defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfileList
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/ec2instancerole
CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
Path                : /
Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfiles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a collection of the instance profiles defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfileList
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/ec2instancerole
CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
Path                : /
Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfiles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListInstanceProfilesForRole` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListInstanceProfilesForRole`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the instance profiles for an IAM role

The following `list-instance-profiles-for-role` command lists the instance profiles that are associated with the role `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam list-instance-profiles-for-role \
    --role-name Test-Role
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceProfiles": [
        {
            "InstanceProfileId": "AIDGPMS9RO4H3FEXAMPLE",
            "Roles": [
                {
                    "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": "<URL-encoded-JSON>",
                    "RoleId": "AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE",
                    "CreateDate": "2013-06-07T20:42:15Z",
                    "RoleName": "Test-Role",
                    "Path": "/",
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/Test-Role"
                }
            ],
            "CreateDate": "2013-06-07T21:05:24Z",
            "InstanceProfileName": "ExampleInstanceProfile",
            "Path": "/",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ExampleInstanceProfile"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using instance profiles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfilesForRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details of the instance profile associated with the role `ec2instancerole`.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfileForRole -RoleName ec2instancerole
```

Output:

```
      Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ec2instancerole
      CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
      InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
      InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
      Path                : /
      Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfilesForRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details of the instance profile associated with the role `ec2instancerole`.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfileForRole -RoleName ec2instancerole
```

Output:

```
      Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ec2instancerole
      CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
      InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
      InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
      Path                : /
      Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfilesForRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListMfaDevices` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListMfaDevices`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all MFA devices for a specified user

This example returns details about the MFA device assigned to the IAM user Bob.

```
aws iam list-mfa-devices \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "MFADevices": [
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "SerialNumber": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/Bob",
            "EnableDate": "2019-10-28T20:37:09+00:00"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "SerialNumber": "GAKT12345678",
            "EnableDate": "2023-02-18T21:44:42+00:00"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "SerialNumber": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:u2f/user/Bob/
fidosecuritykey1-7XNL7NFNLZ123456789EXAMPLE",
            "EnableDate": "2023-09-19T02:25:35+00:00"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "SerialNumber": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:u2f/user/Bob/
fidosecuritykey2-VDRQTDBBN5123456789EXAMPLE",
```

```
            "EnableDate": "2023-09-19T01:49:18+00:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using multi-factor authentication (MFA) in AWS in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListMfaDevices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns details about the MFA device assigned to the IAM user `David`. In this example you can tell that it is a virtual device because the `SerialNumber` is an ARN instead of a physical device's actual serial number.

```
Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName David
```

Output:

```
EnableDate                  SerialNumber                          UserName
----------                  ------------                          --------
4/8/2015 9:41:10 AM         arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/David    David
```

- For API details, see ListMfaDevices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the MFA device assigned to the IAM user `David`. In this example you can tell that it is a virtual device because the `SerialNumber` is an ARN instead of a physical device's actual serial number.

```
Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName David
```

Output:

```
EnableDate                  SerialNumber                          UserName
----------                  ------------                          --------
```

```
4/8/2015 9:41:10 AM         arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/David    David
```

- For API details, see ListMfaDevices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListOpenIdConnectProviders` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListOpenIdConnectProviders`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list information about the OpenID Connect providers in the AWS account

This example returns a list of ARNS of all the OpenID Connect providers that are defined in the current AWS account.

```
aws iam list-open-id-connect-providers
```

Output:

```
{
    "OpenIDConnectProviderList": [
        {
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListOpenIdConnectProviders in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a list of ARNS of all the OpenID Connect providers that are defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderList
```

Output:

```
Arn
---
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/server.example.com
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/another.provider.com
```

- For API details, see ListOpenIdConnectProviders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of ARNS of all the OpenID Connect providers that are defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderList
```

Output:

```
Arn
---
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/server.example.com
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/another.provider.com
```

- For API details, see ListOpenIdConnectProviders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListPolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListPolicies`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage policies

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ManagedPolicy>> ListPoliciesAsync()
    {
        var listPoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        return policies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listPolicies(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT("%Y-%m-%d");
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListPoliciesRequest request;

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListPolicies(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list iam policies: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                      std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::setw(12) <<
                      "CreateDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &policies = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicies();
        for (const auto &policy: policies) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                      policy.GetPolicyName() << std::setw(30) <<
                      policy.GetPolicyId() << std::setw(80) << policy.GetArn() <<
                      std::setw(64) << policy.GetDescription() << std::setw(12)
 <<
                      policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
                      std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }
```

```
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list managed policies that are available to your AWS account

This example returns a collection of the first two managed policies available in the current AWS account.

```
aws iam list-policies \
    --max-items 3
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policies": [
        {
            "PolicyName": "AWSCloudTrailAccessPolicy",
            "PolicyId": "ANPAXQE2B5PJ7YEXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/AWSCloudTrailAccessPolicy",
            "Path": "/",
            "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
            "AttachmentCount": 0,
            "PermissionsBoundaryUsageCount": 0,
            "IsAttachable": true,
            "CreateDate": "2019-09-04T17:43:42+00:00",
            "UpdateDate": "2019-09-04T17:43:42+00:00"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "AdministratorAccess",
            "PolicyId": "ANPAIWMBCKSKIEE64ZLYK",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess",
            "Path": "/",
            "DefaultVersionId": "v1",
            "AttachmentCount": 6,
            "PermissionsBoundaryUsageCount": 0,
```

```
            "IsAttachable": true,
            "CreateDate": "2015-02-06T18:39:46+00:00",
            "UpdateDate": "2015-02-06T18:39:46+00:00"
        },
        {
            "PolicyName": "PowerUserAccess",
            "PolicyId": "ANPAJYRXTHIB4FOVS3ZXS",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/PowerUserAccess",
            "Path": "/",
            "DefaultVersionId": "v5",
            "AttachmentCount": 1,
            "PermissionsBoundaryUsageCount": 0,
            "IsAttachable": true,
            "CreateDate": "2015-02-06T18:39:47+00:00",
            "UpdateDate": "2023-07-06T22:04:00+00:00"
        }
    ],
    "NextToken": "EXAMPLErZXIiOiBudWxsLCAiYm90b190cnVuY2F0ZV9hbW91bnQiOiA4fQ=="
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListPolicies gets up to maxPolicies policies.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) ListPolicies(ctx context.Context, maxPolicies int32)
 ([]types.Policy, error) {
 var policies []types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPolicies),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  policies = result.Policies
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the policies.

```
import { ListPoliciesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 *
 */
export async function* listPolicies() {
  const command = new ListPoliciesCommand({
    MaxItems: 10,
    OnlyAttached: false,
    // List only the customer managed policies in your Amazon Web Services
 account.
    Scope: "Local",
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.Policies?.length) {
    for (const policy of response.Policies) {
      yield policy;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListPoliciesCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
          MaxItems: 10,
          OnlyAttached: false,
          Scope: "Local",
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listPolicies($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listPoliciesArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listPoliciesArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listPoliciesArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listPoliciesArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }

        return $this->iamClient->listPolicies($listPoliciesArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a collection of the first three managed policies available in the current AWS account. Because `-scope` is not specified, it defaults to `all` and includes both AWS managed and customer managed policies.

```
Get-IAMPolicyList -MaxItem 3
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSDirectConnectReadOnlyAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : AWSDirectConnectReadOnlyAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonGlacierReadOnlyAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:27 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : NJKMU274MET4EEXAMPLE2
PolicyName       : AmazonGlacierReadOnlyAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:27 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSMarketplaceFullAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/11/2015 9:21:45 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : 5ULJSO2FYVPYGEXAMPLE3
PolicyName       : AWSMarketplaceFullAccess
```

```
UpdateDate       : 2/11/2015 9:21:45 AM
```

Example 2: This example returns a collection of the first two customer managed policies available in current AWS account. It uses `-Scope local` to limit the output to only customer managed policies.

```
Get-IAMPolicyList -Scope local -MaxItem 2
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyLocalPolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/12/2015 9:39:09 AM
DefaultVersionId : v2
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : SQVCBLC4VAOUCEXAMPLE4
PolicyName       : MyLocalPolicy
UpdateDate       : 2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/policyforec2instancerole
AttachmentCount  : 1
CreateDate       : 2/17/2015 2:51:38 PM
DefaultVersionId : v11
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : X5JPBLJH2Z2SOEXAMPLE5
PolicyName       : policyforec2instancerole
UpdateDate       : 2/18/2015 8:52:31 AM
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a collection of the first three managed policies available in the current AWS account. Because `-scope` is not specified, it defaults to `all` and includes both AWS managed and customer managed policies.

```
Get-IAMPolicyList -MaxItem 3
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSDirectConnectReadOnlyAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : AWSDirectConnectReadOnlyAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonGlacierReadOnlyAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:27 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : NJKMU274MET4EEXAMPLE2
PolicyName       : AmazonGlacierReadOnlyAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:27 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSMarketplaceFullAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/11/2015 9:21:45 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : 5ULJSO2FYVPYGEXAMPLE3
PolicyName       : AWSMarketplaceFullAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/11/2015 9:21:45 AM
```

Example 2: This example returns a collection of the first two customer managed policies available in current AWS account. It uses `-Scope local` to limit the output to only customer managed policies.

```
Get-IAMPolicyList -Scope local -MaxItem 2
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyLocalPolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/12/2015 9:39:09 AM
DefaultVersionId : v2
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : SQVCBLC4VAOUCEXAMPLE4
PolicyName       : MyLocalPolicy
UpdateDate       : 2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/policyforec2instancerole
AttachmentCount  : 1
CreateDate       : 2/17/2015 2:51:38 PM
DefaultVersionId : v11
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : X5JPBLJH2Z2SOEXAMPLE5
PolicyName       : policyforec2instancerole
UpdateDate       : 2/18/2015 8:52:31 AM
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_policies(scope):
    """
    Lists the policies in the current account.

    :param scope: Limits the kinds of policies that are returned. For example,
                  'Local' specifies that only locally managed policies are
 returned.
```

```
    :return: The list of policies.
    """
    try:
        policies = list(iam.policies.filter(Scope=scope))
        logger.info("Got %s policies in scope '%s'.", len(policies), scope)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get policies for scope '%s'.", scope)
        raise
    else:
        return policies
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
```

```
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not
exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
```

```
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_policies(
    client: iamClient,
    path_prefix: String,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let list_policies = client
        .list_policies()
        .path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .scope(PolicyScopeType::Local)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .try_collect()
        .await?;

    let policy_names = list_policies
        .into_iter()
        .map(|p| {
            let name = p
                .policy_name
                .unwrap_or_else(|| "Missing Policy Name".to_string());
            println!("{}", name);
            name
        })
        .collect();

    Ok(policy_names)
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listPolicies() async throws -> [MyPolicyRecord] {
        var policyList: [MyPolicyRecord] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the policies.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListPoliciesOutput".
        let input = ListPoliciesInput()
        let output = client.listPoliciesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in output {
                guard let policies = page.policies else {
                    print("Error: no policies returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for policy in policies {
                    guard let name = policy.policyName,
                          let id = policy.policyId,
                          let arn = policy.arn
                    else {
                        throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchPolicy
                    }
                    policyList.append(MyPolicyRecord(name: name, id: id, arn:
 arn))
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listPolicies:", dump(error))
```

```
            throw error
        }

        return policyList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListPolicyVersions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListPolicyVersions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Manage policies
- Roll back a policy version

CLI

AWS CLI

To list information about the versions of the specified managed policy

This example returns the list of available versions of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
aws iam list-policy-versions \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
{
    "IsTruncated": false,
    "Versions": [
        {
        "VersionId": "v2",
        "IsDefaultVersion": true,
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-02T23:19:44Z"
```

```
        },
        {
        "VersionId": "v1",
        "IsDefaultVersion": false,
        "CreateDate": "2015-06-02T22:30:47Z"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListPolicyVersions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the list of available versions of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`. To get the policy document for a specific version, use the `Get-IAMPolicyVersion` command and specify the `VersionId` of the one you want.

```
Get-IAMPolicyVersionList -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MyManagedPolicy
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                    Document                  IsDefaultVersion
       VersionId
----------                    --------                  ----------------
       ---------
2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM                                    True
       v2
2/12/2015 9:39:09 AM                                    False
       v1
```

- For API details, see ListPolicyVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of available versions of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`. To get the policy

document for a specific version, use the `Get-IAMPolicyVersion` command and specify the `VersionId` of the one you want.

```
Get-IAMPolicyVersionList -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MyManagedPolicy
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                    Document                  IsDefaultVersion
       VersionId
----------                    --------                  ----------------
       ---------
2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM                                    True
       v2
2/12/2015 9:39:09 AM                                    False
       v1
```

- For API details, see ListPolicyVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListRolePolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM role policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role for which to list IAM policies.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM policy names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
```

```
    {
        var listRolePoliciesPaginator =
 _IAMService.Paginators.ListRolePolicies(new ListRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName =
 roleName });
        var policyNames = new List<string>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policyNames.AddRange(response.PolicyNames);
        }

        return policyNames;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the policies attached to an IAM role

The following `list-role-policies` command lists the names of the permissions policies for the specified IAM role.

```
aws iam list-role-policies \
    --role-name Test-Role
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyNames": [
        "ExamplePolicy"
    ]
}
```

To see the trust policy attached to a role, use the `get-role` command. To see the details of a permissions policy, use the `get-role-policy` command.

For more information, see Creating IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListRolePolicies lists the inline policies for a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRolePolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the policies.

```
import { ListRolePoliciesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export async function* listRolePolicies(roleName) {
  const command = new ListRolePoliciesCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    MaxItems: 10,
  });
```

```
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.PolicyNames?.length) {
    for (const policyName of response.PolicyNames) {
      yield policyName;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListRolePoliciesCommand({
          RoleName: roleName,
          MaxItems: 10,
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listRolePolicies($roleName, $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listRolePoliciesArguments = ['RoleName' => $roleName];
        if ($marker) {
            $listRolePoliciesArguments['Marker'] = $marker;
```

```
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listRolePoliciesArguments['MaxItems'] = $maxItems;
        }
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($listRolePoliciesArguments) {
            return $this->iamClient-
>listRolePolicies($listRolePoliciesArguments);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the list of names of inline policies that are embedded in the IAM role `lamda_exec_role`. To see the details of an inline policy, use the command `Get-IAMRolePolicy`.

```
Get-IAMRolePolicyList -RoleName lambda_exec_role
```

Output:

```
oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of names of inline policies that are embedded in the IAM role `lamda_exec_role`. To see the details of an inline policy, use the command `Get-IAMRolePolicy`.

```
Get-IAMRolePolicyList -RoleName lambda_exec_role
```

Output:

```
oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_policies(role_name):
    """
    Lists inline policies for a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to query.
    """
    try:
        role = iam.Role(role_name)
        for policy in role.policies.all():
            logger.info("Got inline policy %s.", policy.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list inline policies for %s.", role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_role_policies(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListRolePoliciesOutput, SdkError<ListRolePoliciesError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_role_policies()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listRolePolicies(role: String) async throws -> [String] {
        var policyList: [String] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the role policies.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in
 "ListRolePoliciesOutput".
        let input = ListRolePoliciesInput(
            roleName: role
        )
        let pages = client.listRolePoliciesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let policies = page.policyNames else {
                    print("Error: no role policies returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for policy in policies {
                    policyList.append(policy)
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listRolePolicies:", dump(error))
```

```
            throw error
        }
        return policyList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListRoleTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListRoleTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the tags attached to a role

The following `list-role-tags` command retrieves the list of tags associated with the specified role.

```
aws iam list-role-tags \
    --role-name production-role
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "Department",
            "Value": "Accounting"
        },
        {
            "Key": "DeptID",
            "Value": "12345"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

For more information, see Tagging IAM resources in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListRoleTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches the tag associated with the role..

```
Get-IAMRoleTagList -RoleName MyRoleName
```

- For API details, see ListRoleTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the tag associated with the role..

```
Get-IAMRoleTagList -RoleName MyRoleName
```

- For API details, see ListRoleTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListRoles` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListRoles`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM roles.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM roles.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Role>> ListRolesAsync()
    {
        var listRolesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRoles(new
ListRolesRequest());
        var roles = new List<Role>();
```

```
        await foreach (var response in listRolesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            roles.AddRange(response.Roles);
        }

        return roles;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list IAM roles for the current account

The following `list-roles` command lists IAM roles for the current account.

```
aws iam list-roles
```

Output:

```
{
    "Roles": [
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "RoleName": "ExampleRole",
            "RoleId": "AROAJ52OTH4H7LEXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/ExampleRole",
            "CreateDate": "2017-09-12T19:23:36+00:00",
            "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Sid": "",
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {
                            "Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"
                        },
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
```

```
                    }
                ]
            },
            "MaxSessionDuration": 3600
        },
        {
            "Path": "/example_path/",
            "RoleName": "ExampleRoleWithPath",
            "RoleId": "AROAI4QRP7UFT7EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/example_path/
ExampleRoleWithPath",
            "CreateDate": "2023-09-21T20:29:38+00:00",
            "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Sid": "",
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {
                            "Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"
                        },
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "MaxSessionDuration": 3600
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListRoles gets up to maxRoles roles.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRoles(ctx context.Context, maxRoles int32)
 ([]types.Role, error) {
 var roles []types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRoles(ctx,
  &iam.ListRolesInput{MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxRoles)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list roles. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  roles = result.Roles
 }
 return roles, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the roles.

```
import { ListRolesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
 *
 */
export async function* listRoles() {
  const command = new ListRolesCommand({
    MaxItems: 10,
  });

  /**
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-iam").ListRolesCommandOutput | undefined}
   */
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response?.Roles?.length) {
    for (const role of response.Roles) {
      yield role;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListRolesCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
```

```
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    /**
     * @param string $pathPrefix
     * @param string $marker
     * @param int $maxItems
     * @return Result
     * $roles = $service->listRoles();
     */
    public function listRoles($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listRolesArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listRolesArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listRolesArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listRolesArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }
```

```
        return $this->iamClient->listRoles($listRolesArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves a list of all of the IAM roles in the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMRoleList
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves a list of all of the IAM roles in the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMRoleList
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_roles(count):
    """
    Lists the specified number of roles for the account.

    :param count: The number of roles to list.
```

```
    """
    try:
        roles = list(iam.roles.limit(count=count))
        for role in roles:
            logger.info("Role: %s", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list roles for the account.")
        raise
    else:
        return roles
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Lists IAM roles up to a specified count.
# @param count [Integer] the maximum number of roles to list.
# @return [Array<String>] the names of the roles.
def list_roles(count)
  role_names = []
  roles_counted = 0

  @iam_client.list_roles.each_page do |page|
    page.roles.each do |role|
      break if roles_counted >= count

      @logger.info("\t#{roles_counted + 1}: #{role.role_name}")
      role_names << role.role_name
      roles_counted += 1
    end
    break if roles_counted >= count
```

```
    end

    role_names
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't list roles for the account. Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_roles(
    client: &iamClient,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListRolesOutput, SdkError<ListRolesError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_roles()
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listRoles() async throws -> [String] {
        var roleList: [String] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the roles.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListRolesOutput".
        let input = ListRolesInput()
        let pages = client.listRolesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let roles = page.roles else {
                    print("Error: no roles returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for role in roles {
                    if let name = role.roleName {
                        roleList.append(name)
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listRoles:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
        return roleList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListSAMLProviders` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List SAML authentication providers.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of SAML providers.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SAMLProviderListEntry>> ListSAMLProvidersAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.ListSAMLProvidersAsync(new
ListSAMLProvidersRequest());
        return response.SAMLProviderList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the SAML providers in the AWS account

This example retrieves the list of SAML 2.0 providers created in the current AWS account.

```
aws iam list-saml-providers
```

Output:

```
{
    "SAMLProviderList": [
        {
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAML-ADFS",
            "ValidUntil": "2015-06-05T22:45:14Z",
            "CreateDate": "2015-06-05T22:45:14Z"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM SAML identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// AccountWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) account
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform account actions.
type AccountWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
```

```
}



// ListSAMLProviders gets the SAML providers for the account.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) ListSAMLProviders(ctx context.Context)
 ([]types.SAMLProviderListEntry, error) {
 var providers []types.SAMLProviderListEntry
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListSAMLProviders(ctx,
 &iam.ListSAMLProvidersInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list SAML providers. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  providers = result.SAMLProviderList
 }
 return providers, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the SAML providers.

```
import { ListSAMLProvidersCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listSamlProviders = async () => {
  const command = new ListSAMLProvidersCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
```

```
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listSAMLProviders()
    {
        return $this->iamClient->listSAMLProviders();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of SAML 2.0 providers created in the current AWS account. It returns the ARN, creation date, and expiration date for each SAML provider.

```
Get-IAMSAMLProviderList
```

Output:

```
Arn                                                     CreateDate
   ValidUntil
---                                                     ----------
   ----------
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS    12/23/2014 12:16:55 PM
   12/23/2114 12:16:54 PM
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of SAML 2.0 providers created in the current AWS account. It returns the ARN, creation date, and expiration date for each SAML provider.

```
Get-IAMSAMLProviderList
```

Output:

```
Arn                                                     CreateDate
   ValidUntil
---                                                     ----------
   ----------
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS    12/23/2014 12:16:55 PM
   12/23/2114 12:16:54 PM
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_saml_providers(count):
    """
```

```
    Lists the SAML providers for the account.

    :param count: The maximum number of providers to list.
    """
    try:
        found = 0
        for provider in iam.saml_providers.limit(count):
            logger.info("Got SAML provider %s.", provider.arn)
            found += 1
        if found == 0:
            logger.info("Your account has no SAML providers.")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list SAML providers.")
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SamlProviderLister
  # Initializes the SamlProviderLister with IAM client and a logger.
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] The IAM client object.
  # @param logger [Logger] The logger object for logging output.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger = Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists up to a specified number of SAML providers for the account.
  # @param count [Integer] The maximum number of providers to list.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Client::Response]
```

```
  def list_saml_providers(count)
    response = @iam_client.list_saml_providers
    response.saml_provider_list.take(count).each do |provider|
      @logger.info("\t#{provider.arn}")
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't list SAML providers. Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_saml_providers(
    client: &Client,
) -> Result<ListSamlProvidersOutput, SdkError<ListSAMLProvidersError>> {
    let response = client.list_saml_providers().send().await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListServerCertificates` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListServerCertificates`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listServerCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT = "%Y-%m-%d";

    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListServerCertificatesRequest request;

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListServerCertificates(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list server certificates: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                      std::setw(14) << "UploadDate" << std::setw(14) <<
                      "ExpirationDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &certificates =
                outcome.GetResult().GetServerCertificateMetadataList();

        for (const auto &certificate: certificates) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                      certificate.GetServerCertificateName() << std::setw(30) <<
                      certificate.GetServerCertificateId() << std::setw(80) <<
```

```
                      certificate.GetArn() << std::setw(14) <<

 certificate.GetUploadDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
                      std::setw(14) <<

 certificate.GetExpiration().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
                      std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the server certificates in your AWS account

The following `list-server-certificates` command lists all of the server certificates stored and available for use in your AWS account.

```
aws iam list-server-certificates
```

Output:

```
{
    "ServerCertificateMetadataList": [
        {
            "Path": "/",
            "ServerCertificateName": "myUpdatedServerCertificate",
            "ServerCertificateId": "ASCAEXAMPLE123EXAMPLE",
```

```
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/
myUpdatedServerCertificate",
            "UploadDate": "2019-04-22T21:13:44+00:00",
            "Expiration": "2019-10-15T22:23:16+00:00"
        },
        {
            "Path": "/cloudfront/",
            "ServerCertificateName": "MyTestCert",
            "ServerCertificateId": "ASCAEXAMPLE456EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyTestCert",
            "UploadDate": "2015-04-21T18:14:16+00:00",
            "Expiration": "2018-01-14T17:52:36+00:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing server certificates in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the certificates.

```
import { ListServerCertificatesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to
 simplify this.
```

```
 *
 */
export async function* listServerCertificates() {
  const command = new ListServerCertificatesCommand({});
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.ServerCertificateMetadataList?.length) {
    for await (const cert of response.ServerCertificateMetadataList) {
      yield cert;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(new ListServerCertificatesCommand({}));
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.listServerCertificates({}, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
```

```
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of server certificates that have been uploaded to the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMServerCertificateList
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyServerCertificate
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /Org1/Org2/
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIFEXAMPLE17HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyServerCertificate
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of server certificates that have been uploaded to the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMServerCertificateList
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyServerCertificate
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /Org1/Org2/
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIFEXAMPLE17HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyServerCertificate
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, update, and delete server certificates.

```
class ServerCertificateManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'ServerCertificateManager'
  end

  # Creates a new server certificate.
  # @param name [String] the name of the server certificate
  # @param certificate_body [String] the contents of the certificate
  # @param private_key [String] the private key contents
  # @return [Boolean] returns true if the certificate was successfully created
  def create_server_certificate(name, certificate_body, private_key)
    @iam_client.upload_server_certificate({
                                            server_certificate_name: name,
                                            certificate_body: certificate_body,
                                            private_key: private_key
                                          })
```

```
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Failed to create server certificate: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Lists available server certificate names.
  def list_server_certificate_names
    response = @iam_client.list_server_certificates

    if response.server_certificate_metadata_list.empty?
      @logger.info('No server certificates found.')
      return
    end

    response.server_certificate_metadata_list.each do |certificate_metadata|
      @logger.info("Certificate Name:
#{certificate_metadata.server_certificate_name}")
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing server certificates: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the name of a server certificate.
  def update_server_certificate_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_server_certificate(
      server_certificate_name: current_name,
      new_server_certificate_name: new_name
    )
    @logger.info("Server certificate name updated from '#{current_name}' to
'#{new_name}'.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating server certificate name: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes a server certificate.
  def delete_server_certificate(name)
    @iam_client.delete_server_certificate(server_certificate_name: name)
    @logger.info("Server certificate '#{name}' deleted.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting server certificate: #{e.message}")
```

```
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ListSigningCertificates` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListSigningCertificates`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the signing certificates for an IAM user

The following `list-signing-certificates` command lists the signing certificates for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam list-signing-certificates \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "Certificates": [
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "Status": "Inactive",
            "CertificateBody": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----<certificate-
body>-----END CERTIFICATE-----",
            "CertificateId": "TA7SMP42TDN5Z26OBPJE7EXAMPLE",
            "UploadDate": "2013-06-06T21:40:08Z"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Manage signing certificates in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListSigningCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the signing certificate that is associated with the user named Bob.

```
Get-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z

 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                  YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn
+a4GmWIWJ
                  21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9T
                  rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                  nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                  NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateId   : Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU
Status          : Active
UploadDate      : 4/20/2015 1:26:01 PM
```

```
UserName        : Bob
```

- For API details, see ListSigningCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the signing certificate that is associated with the user named Bob.

```
Get-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z

 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                   YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn
+a4GmWIWJ
                   21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9T
                   rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                   nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                   NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                   -----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

```
CertificateId   : Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU
Status          : Active
UploadDate      : 4/20/2015 1:26:01 PM
UserName        : Bob
```

- For API details, see ListSigningCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListUserPolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListUserPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list policies for an IAM user

The following `list-user-policies` command lists the policies that are attached to the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam list-user-policies \
    --user-name Bob
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyNames": [
        "ExamplePolicy",
        "TestPolicy"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating an IAM user in your AWS account in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListUserPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListUserPolicies lists the inline policies for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUserPolicies(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUserPolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListUserPoliciesInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
```

```
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of names of the inline policies that are embedded in the IAM user named `David`.

```
Get-IAMUserPolicyList -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy
```

- For API details, see ListUserPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of names of the inline policies that are embedded in the IAM user named `David`.

```
Get-IAMUserPolicyList -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy
```

- For API details, see ListUserPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListUserTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListUserTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the tags attached to a user

The following `list-user-tags` command retrieves the list of tags associated with the specified IAM user.

```
aws iam list-user-tags \
    --user-name alice
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "Department",
            "Value": "Accounting"
        },
        {
            "Key": "DeptID",
            "Value": "12345"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

For more information, see Tagging IAM resources in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListUserTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches the tag associated with the user.

```
Get-IAMUserTagList -UserName joe
```

- For API details, see ListUserTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the tag associated with the user.

```
Get-IAMUserTagList -UserName joe
```

- For API details, see ListUserTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListUsers` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListUsers`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create read-only and read-write users

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<User>> ListUsersAsync()
    {
        var listUsersPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListUsers(new
ListUsersRequest());
        var users = new List<User>();

        await foreach (var response in listUsersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
```

```
        }

        return users;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_list_users
#
# List the IAM users in the account.
#
# Returns:
#       The list of users names
#    And:
#       0 - If the user already exists.
#       1 - If the user doesn't exist.
###############################################################################
function iam_list_users() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local error_code
```

```
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_list_users"
    echo "Lists the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user in the
 account."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response

  response=$(aws iam list-users \
    --output text \
    --query "Users[].UserName")
  error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-users operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listUsers(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT = "%Y-%m-%d";
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListUsersRequest request;

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListUsers(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list iam users:" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(64) << "Arn" <<
                      std::setw(20) << "CreateDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &users = outcome.GetResult().GetUsers();
        for (const auto &user: users) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << user.GetUserName() <<
                      std::setw(30) << user.GetUserId() << std::setw(64) <<
                      user.GetArn() << std::setw(20) <<
                      user.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str())
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list IAM users

The following `list-users` command lists the IAM users in the current account.

```
aws iam list-users
```

Output:

```
{
    "Users": [
        {
            "UserName": "Adele",
            "Path": "/",
            "CreateDate": "2013-03-07T05:14:48Z",
            "UserId": "AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Adele"
        },
        {
            "UserName": "Bob",
            "Path": "/",
            "CreateDate": "2012-09-21T23:03:13Z",
            "UserId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
            "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob"
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Listing IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListUsers gets up to maxUsers number of users.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUsers(ctx context.Context, maxUsers int32)
 ([]types.User, error) {
 var users []types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUsers(ctx, &iam.ListUsersInput{
```

```
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxUsers),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  users = result.Users
 }
 return users, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AttachedPermissionsBoundary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListUsersRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListUsersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.User;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListUsers {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllUsers(iam);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUsers(IamClient iam) {
        try {
            boolean done = false;
            String newMarker = null;
            while (!done) {
                ListUsersResponse response;
                if (newMarker == null) {
                    ListUsersRequest request =
ListUsersRequest.builder().build();
                    response = iam.listUsers(request);
                } else {
                    ListUsersRequest request = ListUsersRequest.builder()
                            .marker(newMarker)
                            .build();

                    response = iam.listUsers(request);
                }

                for (User user : response.users()) {
                    System.out.format("\n Retrieved user %s", user.userName());
                    AttachedPermissionsBoundary permissionsBoundary =
user.permissionsBoundary();
                    if (permissionsBoundary != null)
                        System.out.format("\n Permissions boundary details %s",

permissionsBoundary.permissionsBoundaryTypeAsString());
                }

                if (!response.isTruncated()) {
                    done = true;
                } else {
                    newMarker = response.marker();
                }
```

```
            }

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the users.

```
import { ListUsersCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listUsers = async () => {
  const command = new ListUsersCommand({ MaxItems: 10 });

  const response = await client.send(command);

  for (const { UserName, CreateDate } of response.Users) {
    console.log(`${UserName} created on: ${CreateDate}`);
  }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  MaxItems: 10,
};

iam.listUsers(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    var users = data.Users || [];
    users.forEach(function (user) {
      console.log("User " + user.UserName + " created", user.CreateDate);
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllUsers() {
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listUsers(ListUsersRequest { })
        response.users?.forEach { user ->
            println("Retrieved user ${user.userName}")
            val permissionsBoundary = user.permissionsBoundary
            if (permissionsBoundary != null) {
                println("Permissions boundary details
 ${permissionsBoundary.permissionsBoundaryType}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();
```

```
    public function listUsers($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listUsersArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listUsersArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listUsersArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listUsersArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }

        return $this->iamClient->listUsers($listUsersArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves a collection of users in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMUserList
```

Output:

```
      Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Administrator
      CreateDate       : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
      PasswordLastUsed : 3/4/2015 12:12:33 PM
      Path             : /
      UserId           : 7K3GJEANSKZF2EXAMPLE1
      UserName         : Administrator

      Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
      CreateDate       : 4/6/2015 12:54:42 PM
      PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
      Path             : /
      UserId           : L3EWNONDOM3YUEXAMPLE2
      UserName         : bab
```

```
    Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
    CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
    PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
    Path             : /
    UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE3
    UserName         : David
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves a collection of users in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMUserList
```

Output:

```
    Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Administrator
    CreateDate       : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
    PasswordLastUsed : 3/4/2015 12:12:33 PM
    Path             : /
    UserId           : 7K3GJEANSKZF2EXAMPLE1
    UserName         : Administrator

    Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
    CreateDate       : 4/6/2015 12:54:42 PM
    PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
    Path             : /
    UserId           : L3EWNONDOM3YUEXAMPLE2
    UserName         : bab

    Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
    CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
    PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
    Path             : /
    UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE3
    UserName         : David
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_users():
    """
    Lists the users in the current account.

    :return: The list of users.
    """
    try:
        users = list(iam.users.all())
        logger.info("Got %s users.", len(users))
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get users.")
        raise
    else:
        return users
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Lists all users in the AWS account
  #
  # @return [Array<Aws::IAM::Types::User>] An array of user objects
  def list_users
    users = []
    @iam_client.list_users.each_page do |page|
      page.users.each do |user|
        users << user
      end
    end
    users
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing users: #{e.message}")
    []
  end
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_users(
    client: &iamClient,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListUsersOutput, SdkError<ListUsersError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_users()
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
```

```
        .await?;
    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listUsers() async throws -> [MyUserRecord] {
        var userList: [MyUserRecord] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the users.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListUsersOutput".
        let input = ListUsersInput()
        let output = client.listUsersPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in output {
                guard let users = page.users else {
                    continue
                }
                for user in users {
                    if let id = user.userId, let name = user.userName {
                        userList.append(MyUserRecord(id: id, name: name))
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        catch {
```

```
            print("ERROR: listUsers:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
        return userList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListVirtualMfaDevices` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListVirtualMfaDevices`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list virtual MFA devices

The following `list-virtual-mfa-devices` command lists the virtual MFA devices that have been configured for the current account.

```
aws iam list-virtual-mfa-devices
```

Output:

```
{
    "VirtualMFADevices": [
        {
            "SerialNumber": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/ExampleMFADevice"
        },
        {
            "SerialNumber": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/Fred"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Enabling a virtual multi-factor authentication (MFA) device in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListVirtualMfaDevices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves a collection of the virtual MFA devices that are assigned to users in the AWS account. The `User` property of each is an object with details of the IAM user to which the device is assigned.

```
Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice -AssignmentStatus Assigned
```

Output:

```
Base32StringSeed :
EnableDate       : 4/13/2015 12:03:42 PM
QRCodePNG        :
SerialNumber     : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/David
User             : Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.User

Base32StringSeed :
EnableDate       : 4/13/2015 12:06:41 PM
QRCodePNG        :
SerialNumber     : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/root-account-mfa-device
User             : Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.User
```

- For API details, see ListVirtualMfaDevices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves a collection of the virtual MFA devices that are assigned to users in the AWS account. The `User` property of each is an object with details of the IAM user to which the device is assigned.

```
Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice -AssignmentStatus Assigned
```

Output:

```
Base32StringSeed :
EnableDate       : 4/13/2015 12:03:42 PM
QRCodePNG        :
```

```
SerialNumber     : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/David
User             : Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.User

Base32StringSeed :
EnableDate       : 4/13/2015 12:06:41 PM
QRCodePNG        :
SerialNumber     : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/root-account-mfa-device
User             : Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.User
```

- For API details, see ListVirtualMfaDevices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutGroupPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutGroupPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a policy to a group

The following `put-group-policy` command adds a policy to the IAM group named `Admins`.

```
aws iam put-group-policy \
    --group-name Admins \
    --policy-document file://AdminPolicy.json \
    --policy-name AdminRoot
```

This command produces no output.

The policy is defined as a JSON document in the *AdminPolicy.json* file. (The file name and extension do not have significance.)

For more information, see Managing IAM policies in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutGroupPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `AppTesterPolicy` and embeds it in the IAM group `AppTesters`. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes the file `apptesterpolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName AppTesters -PolicyName AppTesterPolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw apptesterpolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `AppTesterPolicy` and embeds it in the IAM group `AppTesters`. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes the file `apptesterpolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName AppTesters -PolicyName AppTesterPolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw apptesterpolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutRolePermissionsBoundary` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRolePermissionsBoundary`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To apply a permissions boundary based on a custom policy to an IAM role

The following `put-role-permissions-boundary` example applies the custom policy named `intern-boundary` as the permissions boundary for the specified IAM role.

```
aws iam put-role-permissions-boundary \
    --permissions-boundary arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary \
    --role-name lambda-application-role
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To apply a permissions boundary based on an AWS managed policy to an IAM role

The following `put-role-permissions-boundary` example applies the AWS managed `PowerUserAccess` policy as the permissions boundary for the specified IAM role.

```
aws iam put-role-permissions-boundary \
    --permissions-boundary arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/PowerUserAccess \
    --role-name x-account-admin
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Modifying a role in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to set the Permission boundary for a IAM Role. You can set AWS Managed policies or Custom policies as permission boundary.

```
Set-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary -RoleName MyRoleName -PermissionsBoundary
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

- For API details, see PutRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to set the Permission boundary for a IAM Role. You can set AWS Managed policies or Custom policies as permission boundary.

```
Set-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary -RoleName MyRoleName -PermissionsBoundary
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

- For API details, see PutRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutRolePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRolePolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the inline policy document embedded in a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the policy to embed.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to update.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document that defines the role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutRolePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 roleName, string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutRolePolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::putRolePolicy(
        const Aws::String &roleName,
        const Aws::String &policyName,
        const Aws::String &policyDocument,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iamClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::PutRolePolicyRequest request;

    request.SetRoleName(roleName);
    request.SetPolicyName(policyName);
    request.SetPolicyDocument(policyDocument);

    Aws::IAM::Model::PutRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
 iamClient.PutRolePolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error putting policy on role. " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully put the role policy." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a permissions policy to an IAM role

The following `put-role-policy` command adds a permissions policy to the role named `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam put-role-policy \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy \
    --policy-document file://AdminPolicy.json
```

This command produces no output.

The policy is defined as a JSON document in the *AdminPolicy.json* file. (The file name and extension do not have significance.)

To attach a trust policy to a role, use the `update-assume-role-policy` command.

For more information, see Modifying a role in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { PutRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const examplePolicyDocument = JSON.stringify({
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: [
    {
      Sid: "VisualEditor0",
```

```
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: [
        "s3:ListBucketMultipartUploads",
        "s3:ListBucketVersions",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:ListMultipartUploadParts",
      ],
      Resource: "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    },
    {
      Sid: "VisualEditor1",
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: [
        "s3:ListStorageLensConfigurations",
        "s3:ListAccessPointsForObjectLambda",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "s3:ListAccessPoints",
        "s3:ListJobs",
        "s3:ListMultiRegionAccessPoints",
      ],
      Resource: "*",
    },
  ],
});

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 * @param {string} policyName
 * @param {string} policyDocument
 */
export const putRolePolicy = async (roleName, policyName, policyDocument) => {
  const command = new PutRolePolicyCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    PolicyName: policyName,
    PolicyDocument: policyDocument,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `FedTesterRolePolicy` and embeds it in the IAM role `FedTesterRole`. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes from the file `FedTesterPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName FedTesterRole -PolicyName FedTesterRolePolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw FedTesterPolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `FedTesterRolePolicy` and embeds it in the IAM role `FedTesterRole`. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes from the file `FedTesterPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName FedTesterRole -PolicyName FedTesterRolePolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw FedTesterPolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutUserPermissionsBoundary` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutUserPermissionsBoundary`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To apply a permissions boundary based on a custom policy to an IAM user

The following `put-user-permissions-boundary` example applies a custom policy named `intern-boundary` as the permissions boundary for the specified IAM user.

```
aws iam put-user-permissions-boundary \
    --permissions-boundary arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary \
    --user-name intern
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To apply a permissions boundary based on an AWS managed policy to an IAM user

The following `put-user-permissions-boundary` example applies the AWS managed pollicy named `PowerUserAccess` as the permissions boundary for the specified IAM user.

```
aws iam put-user-permissions-boundary \
    --permissions-boundary arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/PowerUserAccess \
    --user-name developer
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Adding and removing IAM identity permissions in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to set the Permission boundary for the user. You can set AWS Managed policies or Custom policies as permission boundary.

```
Set-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary -UserName joe -PermissionsBoundary
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

- For API details, see PutUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to set the Permission boundary for the user. You can set AWS Managed policies or Custom policies as permission boundary.

```
Set-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary -UserName joe -PermissionsBoundary
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

- For API details, see PutUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutUserPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutUserPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a policy to an IAM user

The following `put-user-policy` command attaches a policy to the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam put-user-policy \
    --user-name Bob \
    --policy-name ExamplePolicy \
    --policy-document file://AdminPolicy.json
```

This command produces no output.

The policy is defined as a JSON document in the *AdminPolicy.json* file. (The file name and extension do not have significance.)

For more information, see Adding and removing IAM identity permissions in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateUserPolicy adds an inline policy to a user. This example creates a
 policy that
// grants a list of actions on a specified role.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure
 and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string, actions []string,
 roleArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
```

```
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(roleArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleArn,
 err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = wrapper.IamClient.PutUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.PutUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:       aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `EC2AccessPolicy` and embeds it in the IAM user Bob. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes from the file `EC2AccessPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyName EC2AccessPolicy -PolicyDocument
 (Get-Content -Raw EC2AccessPolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `EC2AccessPolicy` and embeds it in the IAM user Bob. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes from the file `EC2AccessPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyName EC2AccessPolicy -PolicyDocument
 (Get-Content -Raw EC2AccessPolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Creates an inline policy for a specified user.
  # @param username [String] The name of the IAM user.
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy to create.
  # @param policy_document [String] The JSON policy document.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_user_policy(username, policy_name, policy_document)
    @iam_client.put_user_policy({
                                  user_name: username,
                                  policy_name: policy_name,
                                  policy_document: policy_document
                                })
    @logger.info("Policy #{policy_name} created for user #{username}.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't create policy #{policy_name} for user #{username}.
 Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    false
```

```
  end
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    func putUserPolicy(policyDocument: String, policyName: String, user:
 IAMClientTypes.User) async throws {
        let input = PutUserPolicyInput(
            policyDocument: policyDocument,
            policyName: policyName,
            userName: user.userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.putUserPolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: putUserPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove the specified client ID from the list of client IDs registered for the specified IAM OpenID Connect provider

This example removes the client ID `My-TestApp-3` from the list of client IDs associated with the IAM OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com`.

```
aws iam remove-client-id-from-open-id-connect-provider
    --client-id My-TestApp-3 \
    --open-id-connect-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the client ID `My-TestApp-3` from the list of client IDs associated with the IAM OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com`.

```
Remove-IAMClientIDFromOpenIDConnectProvider -ClientID My-TestApp-3
 -OpenIDConnectProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the client ID `My-TestApp-3` from the list of client IDs associated with the IAM OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com`.

```
Remove-IAMClientIDFromOpenIDConnectProvider -ClientID My-TestApp-3
 -OpenIDConnectProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a role from an instance profile

The following `remove-role-from-instance-profile` command removes the role named `Test-Role` from the instance profile named `ExampleInstanceProfile`.

```
aws iam remove-role-from-instance-profile \
    --instance-profile-name ExampleInstanceProfile \
    --role-name Test-Role
```

For more information, see Using instance profiles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the role named `MyNewRole` from the EC2 instance profile named `MyNewRole`. An instance profile that is created in the IAM console always

has the same name as the role, as in this example. If you create them in the API or CLI, then they can have different names.

```
Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyNewRole -RoleName
 MyNewRole -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the role named `MyNewRole` from the EC2 instance profile named `MyNewRole`. An instance profile that is created in the IAM console always has the same name as the role, as in this example. If you create them in the API or CLI, then they can have different names.

```
Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyNewRole -RoleName
 MyNewRole -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RemoveUserFromGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveUserFromGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a user from an IAM group

The following `remove-user-from-group` command removes the user named Bob from the IAM group named `Admins`.

```
aws iam remove-user-from-group \
    --user-name Bob \
    --group-name Admins
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Adding and removing users in an IAM user group in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see RemoveUserFromGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the IAM user Bob from the group `Testers`.

```
Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName Testers -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example finds any groups of which IAM user `Theresa` is a member, and then removes `Theresa` from those groups.

```
$groups = Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName Theresa
foreach ($group in $groups) { Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName $group.GroupName
 -UserName Theresa -Force }
```

Example 3: This example shows an alternate way of removing the IAM user Bob from the `Testers` group.

```
Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName Bob | Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -UserName Bob -
GroupName Testers -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveUserFromGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the IAM user Bob from the group `Testers`.

```
Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName Testers -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example finds any groups of which IAM user `Theresa` is a member, and then removes `Theresa` from those groups.

```
$groups = Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName Theresa
```

```
foreach ($group in $groups) { Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName $group.GroupName
 -UserName Theresa -Force }
```

Example 3: This example shows an alternate way of removing the IAM user Bob from the `Testers` group.

```
Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName Bob | Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -UserName Bob -
GroupName Testers -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveUserFromGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResyncMfaDevice` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResyncMfaDevice`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To synchronize an MFA device

The following `resync-mfa-device` example synchronizes the MFA device that is associated with the IAM user Bob and whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/BobsMFADevice` with an authenticator program that provided the two authentication codes.

```
aws iam resync-mfa-device \
    --user-name Bob \
    --serial-number arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/BobsMFADevice \
    --authentication-code1 123456 \
    --authentication-code2 987654
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using multi-factor authentication (MFA) in AWS in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see ResyncMfaDevice in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example synchronizes the MFA device that is associated with the IAM user Bob and whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob` with an authenticator program that provided the two authentication codes.

```
Sync-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/theresa -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 987654 -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example synchronizes the IAM MFA device that is associated with the IAM user `Theresa` with a physical device that has the serial number `ABCD12345678` and that provided the two authentication codes.

```
Sync-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber ABCD12345678 -AuthenticationCode1 123456 -
AuthenticationCode2 987654 -UserName Theresa
```

- For API details, see ResyncMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example synchronizes the MFA device that is associated with the IAM user Bob and whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob` with an authenticator program that provided the two authentication codes.

```
Sync-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/theresa -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 987654 -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example synchronizes the IAM MFA device that is associated with the IAM user `Theresa` with a physical device that has the serial number `ABCD12345678` and that provided the two authentication codes.

```
Sync-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber ABCD12345678 -AuthenticationCode1 123456 -
AuthenticationCode2 987654 -UserName Theresa
```

- For API details, see ResyncMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SetDefaultPolicyVersion` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetDefaultPolicyVersion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Manage policies
- Roll back a policy version

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the specified version of the specified policy as the policy's default version.

This example sets the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` as the default active version.

```
aws iam set-default-policy-version \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy \
    --version-id v2
```

For more information, see Policies and permissions in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see SetDefaultPolicyVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sets the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` as the default active version.

```
Set-IAMDefaultPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy
 -VersionId v2
```

- For API details, see SetDefaultPolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` as the default active version.

```
Set-IAMDefaultPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy
 -VersionId v2
```

- For API details, see SetDefaultPolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TagRole` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagRole`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a tag to a role

The following `tag-role` command adds a tag with a Department name to the specified role.

```
aws iam tag-role --role-name my-role \
    --tags '{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging IAM resources in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see TagRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds tag to Role in Identity Management Service

```
Add-IAMRoleTag -RoleName AdminRoleacess -Tag @{ Key = 'abac'; Value = 'testing'}
```

- For API details, see TagRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tag to Role in Identity Management Service

```
Add-IAMRoleTag -RoleName AdminRoleacess -Tag @{ Key = 'abac'; Value = 'testing'}
```

- For API details, see TagRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TagUser` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagUser`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a tag to a user

The following `tag-user` command adds a tag with the associated Department to the specified user.

```
aws iam tag-user \
    --user-name alice \
    --tags '{"Key": "Department", "Value": "Accounting"}'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging IAM resources in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see TagUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds tag to User in Identity Management Service

```
Add-IAMUserTag -UserName joe -Tag @{ Key = 'abac'; Value = 'testing'}
```

- For API details, see TagUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tag to User in Identity Management Service

```
Add-IAMUserTag -UserName joe -Tag @{ Key = 'abac'; Value = 'testing'}
```

- For API details, see TagUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UntagRole` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagRole`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a tag from a role

The following `untag-role` command removes any tag with the key name 'Department' from the specified role.

```
aws iam untag-role \
    --role-name my-role \
    --tag-keys Department
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging IAM resources in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UntagRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the tag from the role named "MyRoleName" with tag key as "abac". To remove multiple tags, provide a comma separted tag keys list.

```
Remove-IAMRoleTag -RoleName MyRoleName -TagKey "abac","xyzw"
```

- For API details, see UntagRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the tag from the role named "MyRoleName" with tag key as "abac". To remove multiple tags, provide a comma separted tag keys list.

```
Remove-IAMRoleTag -RoleName MyRoleName -TagKey "abac","xyzw"
```

- For API details, see UntagRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UntagUser` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagUser`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a tag from a user

The following `untag-user` command removes any tag with the key name 'Department' from the specified user.

```
aws iam untag-user \
    --user-name alice \
    --tag-keys Department
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging IAM resources in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UntagUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the tag from the user named "joe" with tag key as "abac" and "xyzw". To remove multiple tags, provide a comma separted tag keys list.

```
Remove-IAMUserTag -UserName joe -TagKey "abac","xyzw"
```

- For API details, see UntagUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the tag from the user named "joe" with tag key as "abac" and "xyzw". To remove multiple tags, provide a comma separted tag keys list.

```
Remove-IAMUserTag -UserName joe -TagKey "abac","xyzw"
```

- For API details, see UntagUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateAccessKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage access keys

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iam_update_access_key
#
# This function can activate or deactivate an IAM access key for the specified
 IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user.
#       -k access_key -- The access key to update.
#       -a            -- Activate the selected access key.
#       -d            -- Deactivate the selected access key.
#
# Example:
#       # To deactivate the selected access key for IAM user Bob
#       iam_update_access_key -u Bob -k AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -d
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function iam_update_access_key() {
  local user_name access_key status response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local activate_flag=false deactivate_flag=false

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_update_access_key"
    echo "Updates the status of an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 access key for the specified IAM user"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo "  -k access_key   The access key to update."
    echo "  -a              Activate the access key."
    echo "  -d              Deactivate the access key."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
    while getopts "u:k:adh" option; do
      case "${option}" in
        u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
        k) access_key="${OPTARG}" ;;
        a) activate_flag=true ;;
        d) deactivate_flag=true ;;
        h)
          usage
          return 0
          ;;
        \?)
          echo "Invalid parameter"
          usage
          return 1
          ;;
      esac
    done
    export OPTIND=1

   # Validate input parameters
    if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
      errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
      usage
      return 1
    fi
```

```
    if [[ -z "$access_key" ]]; then
      errecho "ERROR: You must provide an access key with the -k parameter."
      usage
      return 1
    fi

    # Ensure that only -a or -d is specified
    if [[ "$activate_flag" == true && "$deactivate_flag" == true ]]; then
      errecho "ERROR: You cannot specify both -a (activate) and -d (deactivate)
at the same time."
      usage
      return 1
    fi

    # If neither -a nor -d is provided, return an error
    if [[ "$activate_flag" == false && "$deactivate_flag" == false ]]; then
      errecho "ERROR: You must specify either -a (activate) or -d (deactivate)."
      usage
      return 1
    fi

    # Determine the status based on the flag
    if [[ "$activate_flag" == true ]]; then
      status="Active"
    elif [[ "$deactivate_flag" == true ]]; then
      status="Inactive"
    fi

    iecho "Parameters:\n"
    iecho "    Username:   $user_name"
    iecho "    Access key: $access_key"
    iecho "    New status: $status"
    iecho ""

    # Update the access key status
    response=$(aws iam update-access-key \
      --user-name "$user_name" \
      --access-key-id "$access_key" \
      --status "$status" 2>&1)

    local error_code=${?}

    if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log $error_code
```

```
      errecho "ERROR: AWS reports update-access-key operation failed.\n$response"
      return 1
    fi

    iecho "update-access-key response: $response"
    iecho

    return 0
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::updateAccessKey(const Aws::String &userName,
                                  const Aws::String &accessKeyID,
                                  Aws::IAM::Model::StatusType status,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::UpdateAccessKeyRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);
    request.SetAccessKeyId(accessKeyID);
    request.SetStatus(status);

    auto outcome = iam.UpdateAccessKey(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated status of access key "
                  << accessKeyID << " for user " << userName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error updated status of access key " << accessKeyID <<
                  " for user " << userName << ": " <<
```

```
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To activate or deactivate an access key for an IAM user

The following `update-access-key` command deactivates the specified access key (access key ID and secret access key) for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam update-access-key \
    --access-key-id AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE \
    --status Inactive \
    --user-name Bob
```

This command produces no output.

Deactivating the key means that it cannot be used for programmatic access to AWS. However, the key is still available and can be reactivated.

For more information, see Managing access keys for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.StatusType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.UpdateAccessKeyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class UpdateAccessKey {

    private static StatusType statusType;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username> <accessId> <status>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the user whose key you want to update.
\s
                    accessId - The access key ID of the secret access key you
 want to update.\s
                    status - The status you want to assign to the secret access
 key.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String username = args[0];
        String accessId = args[1];
        String status = args[2];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
```

```
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateKey(iam, username, accessId, status);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void updateKey(IamClient iam, String username, String accessId,
 String status) {
        try {
            if (status.toLowerCase().equalsIgnoreCase("active")) {
                statusType = StatusType.ACTIVE;
            } else if (status.toLowerCase().equalsIgnoreCase("inactive")) {
                statusType = StatusType.INACTIVE;
            } else {
                statusType = StatusType.UNKNOWN_TO_SDK_VERSION;
            }

            UpdateAccessKeyRequest request = UpdateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .accessKeyId(accessId)
                    .userName(username)
                    .status(statusType)
                    .build();

            iam.updateAccessKey(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully updated the status of access key %s
 to" +
                    "status %s for user %s", accessId, status, username);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the access key.

```
import {
  UpdateAccessKeyCommand,
  IAMClient,
  StatusType,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 * @param {string} accessKeyId
 */
export const updateAccessKey = (userName, accessKeyId) => {
  const command = new UpdateAccessKeyCommand({
    AccessKeyId: accessKeyId,
    Status: StatusType.Inactive,
    UserName: userName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  AccessKeyId: "ACCESS_KEY_ID",
  Status: "Active",
  UserName: "USER_NAME",
};

iam.updateAccessKey(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the status of the access key `AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE` for the IAM user named Bob to `Inactive`.

```
Update-IAMAccessKey -UserName Bob -AccessKeyId AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -Status
 Inactive
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the status of the access key `AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE` for the IAM user named Bob to `Inactive`.

```
Update-IAMAccessKey -UserName Bob -AccessKeyId AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -Status
 Inactive
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def update_key(user_name, key_id, activate):
    """
    Updates the status of a key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to update.
    :param activate: When True, the key is activated. Otherwise, the key is
 deactivated.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.User(user_name).AccessKey(key_id)
        if activate:
            key.activate()
        else:
```

```
            key.deactivate()
        logger.info("%s key %s.", "Activated" if activate else "Deactivated",
key_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't %s key %s.", "Activate" if activate else "Deactivate",
key_id
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set or change the current account password policy

The following `update-account-password-policy` command sets the password policy to require a minimum length of eight characters and to require one or more numbers in the password.

```
aws iam update-account-password-policy \
    --minimum-password-length 8 \
    --require-numbers
```

This command produces no output.

Changes to an account's password policy affect any new passwords that are created for IAM users in the account. Password policy changes do not affect existing passwords.

For more information, see Setting an account password policy for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the password policy for the account with the specified settings. Note that any parameters that are not included in the command are not left unmodified. Instead, they are reset to default values.

```
Update-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy -AllowUsersToChangePasswords $true -HardExpiry
 $false -MaxPasswordAge 90 -MinimumPasswordLength 8 -PasswordReusePrevention 20
 -RequireLowercaseCharacters $true -RequireNumbers $true -RequireSymbols $true -
RequireUppercaseCharacters $true
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the password policy for the account with the specified settings. Note that any parameters that are not included in the command are not left unmodified. Instead, they are reset to default values.

```
Update-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy -AllowUsersToChangePasswords $true -HardExpiry
 $false -MaxPasswordAge 90 -MinimumPasswordLength 8 -PasswordReusePrevention 20
 -RequireLowercaseCharacters $true -RequireNumbers $true -RequireSymbols $true -
RequireUppercaseCharacters $true
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateAssumeRolePolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAssumeRolePolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the trust policy for an IAM role

The following `update-assume-role-policy` command updates the trust policy for the role named `Test-Role`.

```
aws iam update-assume-role-policy \
    --role-name Test-Role \
    --policy-document file://Test-Role-Trust-Policy.json
```

This command produces no output.

The trust policy is defined as a JSON document in the *Test-Role-Trust-Policy.json* file. (The file name and extension do not have significance.) The trust policy must specify a principal.

To update the permissions policy for a role, use the `put-role-policy` command.

For more information, see Creating IAM roles in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAssumeRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the IAM role named `ClientRole` with a new trust policy, the contents of which come from the file `ClientRolePolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the contents of the JSON file.

```
Update-IAMAssumeRolePolicy -RoleName ClientRole -PolicyDocument (Get-Content -raw
 ClientRolePolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssumeRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the IAM role named `ClientRole` with a new trust policy, the contents of which come from the file `ClientRolePolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the contents of the JSON file.

```
Update-IAMAssumeRolePolicy -RoleName ClientRole -PolicyDocument (Get-Content -raw
 ClientRolePolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssumeRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To rename an IAM group

The following `update-group` command changes the name of the IAM group `Test` to `Test-1`.

```
aws iam update-group \
    --group-name Test \
    --new-group-name Test-1
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Renaming an IAM user group in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example renames the IAM group `Testers` to `AppTesters`.

```
Update-IAMGroup -GroupName Testers -NewGroupName AppTesters
```

Example 2: This example changes the path of the IAM group `AppTesters` to `/Org1/Org2/`. This changes the ARN for the group to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Org1/Org2/AppTesters`.

```
Update-IAMGroup -GroupName AppTesters -NewPath /Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example renames the IAM group `Testers` to `AppTesters`.

```
Update-IAMGroup -GroupName Testers -NewGroupName AppTesters
```

Example 2: This example changes the path of the IAM group `AppTesters` to `/Org1/Org2/`. This changes the ARN for the group to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Org1/Org2/AppTesters`.

```
Update-IAMGroup -GroupName AppTesters -NewPath /Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateLoginProfile` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateLoginProfile`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the password for an IAM user

The following `update-login-profile` command creates a new password for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam update-login-profile \
    --user-name Bob \
    --password <password>
```

This command produces no output.

To set a password policy for the account, use the `update-account-password-policy` command. If the new password violates the account password policy, the command returns a `PasswordPolicyViolation` error.

If the account password policy allows them to, IAM users can change their own passwords using the `change-password` command.

Store the password in a secure place. If the password is lost, it cannot be recovered, and you must create a new one using the `create-login-profile` command.

For more information, see Managing passwords for IAM users in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateLoginProfile in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sets a new temporary password for the IAM user Bob, and requires the user to change the password the next time the user signs in.

```
Update-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob -Password "P@ssw0rd1234" -
PasswordResetRequired $true
```

- For API details, see UpdateLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets a new temporary password for the IAM user Bob, and requires the user to change the password the next time the user signs in.

```
Update-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob -Password "P@ssw0rd1234" -
PasswordResetRequired $true
```

- For API details, see UpdateLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To replace the existing list of server certificate thumbprints with a new list

This example updates the certificate thumbprint list for the OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com` to use a new thumbprint.

```
aws iam update-open-id-connect-provider-thumbprint \
    --open-id-connect-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com \
    --thumbprint-list 7359755EXAMPLEabc3060bce3EXAMPLEec4542a3
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating OpenID Connect (OIDC) identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the certificate thumbprint list for the OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com` to use a new thumbprint. The OIDC provider shares the new value when the certificate that is associated with the provider changes.

```
Update-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderThumbprint -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com -ThumbprintList
 7359755EXAMPLEabc3060bce3EXAMPLEec4542a3
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the certificate thumbprint list for the OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com` to use a new thumbprint. The OIDC provider shares the new value when the certificate that is associated with the provider changes.

```
Update-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderThumbprint -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com -ThumbprintList
 7359755EXAMPLEabc3060bce3EXAMPLEec4542a3
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateRole` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateRole`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change an IAM role's description or session duration

The following `update-role` command changes the description of the IAM role `production-role` to `Main production role` and sets the maximum session duration to 12 hours.

```
aws iam update-role \
    --role-name production-role \
    --description 'Main production role' \
    --max-session-duration 43200
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Modifying a role in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the role description and the maximum session duration value(in seconds) for which a role's session can be requested.

```
Update-IAMRole -RoleName MyRoleName -Description "My testing role" -
MaxSessionDuration 43200
```

- For API details, see UpdateRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the role description and the maximum session duration value(in seconds) for which a role's session can be requested.

```
Update-IAMRole -RoleName MyRoleName -Description "My testing role" -
MaxSessionDuration 43200
```

- For API details, see UpdateRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateRoleDescription` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateRoleDescription`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change an IAM role's description

The following `update-role` command changes the description of the IAM role `production-role` to `Main production role`.

```
aws iam update-role-description \
    --role-name production-role \
    --description 'Main production role'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Role": {
        "Path": "/",
        "RoleName": "production-role",
        "RoleId": "AROA1234567890EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/production-role",
        "CreateDate": "2017-12-06T17:16:37+00:00",
        "AssumeRolePolicyDocument": {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
```

```
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root"
                    },
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                    "Condition": {}
                }
            ]
        },
        "Description": "Main production role"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Modifying a role in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateRoleDescription in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the description of an IAM role in your account.

```
Update-IAMRoleDescription -RoleName MyRoleName -Description "My testing role"
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoleDescription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the description of an IAM role in your account.

```
Update-IAMRoleDescription -RoleName MyRoleName -Description "My testing role"
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoleDescription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateSamlProvider` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateSamlProvider`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the metadata document for an existing SAML provider

This example updates the SAML provider in IAM whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS` with a new SAML metadata document from the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`.

```
aws iam update-saml-provider \
    --saml-metadata-document file://SAMLMetaData.xml \
    --saml-provider-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS
```

Output:

```
{
    "SAMLProviderArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS"
}
```

For more information, see Creating IAM SAML identity providers in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateSamlProvider in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the SAML provider in IAM whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS` with a new SAML metadata document from the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the contents of the JSON file.

```
Update-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFS -SAMLMetadataDocument (Get-Content -Raw SAMLMetaData.xml)
```

- For API details, see UpdateSamlProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the SAML provider in IAM whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS` with a new SAML metadata document from the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the contents of the JSON file.

```
Update-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFS -SAMLMetadataDocument (Get-Content -Raw SAMLMetaData.xml)
```

- For API details, see UpdateSamlProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateServerCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateServerCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::updateServerCertificate(const Aws::String
 &currentCertificateName,
                                           const Aws::String &newCertificateName,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::UpdateServerCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetServerCertificateName(currentCertificateName);
    request.SetNewServerCertificateName(newCertificateName);

    auto outcome = iam.UpdateServerCertificate(request);
    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
        std::cout << "Server certificate " << currentCertificateName
                  << " successfully renamed as " << newCertificateName
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
 Aws::IAM::IAMErrors::NO_SUCH_ENTITY) {
            std::cerr << "Error changing name of server certificate " <<
                      currentCertificateName << " to " << newCertificateName <<
 ":" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Certificate '" << currentCertificateName
                      << "' not found." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the path or name of a server certificate in your AWS account

The following `update-server-certificate` command changes the name of the certificate from `myServerCertificate` to `myUpdatedServerCertificate`. It also changes the path to `/cloudfront/` so that it can be accessed by the Amazon CloudFront service. This command produces no output. You can see the results of the update by running the `list-server-certificates` command.

```
aws-iam update-server-certificate \
    --server-certificate-name myServerCertificate \
    --new-server-certificate-name myUpdatedServerCertificate \
    --new-path /cloudfront/
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managing server certificates in IAM in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update a server certificate.

```
import { UpdateServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} currentName
 * @param {string} newName
 */
export const updateServerCertificate = (currentName, newName) => {
  const command = new UpdateServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: currentName,
    NewServerCertificateName: newName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  ServerCertificateName: "CERTIFICATE_NAME",
  NewServerCertificateName: "NEW_CERTIFICATE_NAME",
};

iam.updateServerCertificate(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example renames the certificate named `MyServerCertificate` to `MyRenamedServerCertificate`.

```
Update-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate -
NewServerCertificateName MyRenamedServerCertificate
```

Example 2: This example moves the certificate named `MyServerCertificate` to the path /Org1/Org2/. This changes the ARN for the resource to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/MyServerCertificate`.

```
Update-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate -NewPath /
Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example renames the certificate named `MyServerCertificate` to `MyRenamedServerCertificate`.

```
Update-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate -
NewServerCertificateName MyRenamedServerCertificate
```

Example 2: This example moves the certificate named `MyServerCertificate` to the path /Org1/Org2/. This changes the ARN for the resource to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/MyServerCertificate`.

```
Update-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate -NewPath /
Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, update, and delete server certificates.

```
class ServerCertificateManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'ServerCertificateManager'
  end

  # Creates a new server certificate.
  # @param name [String] the name of the server certificate
  # @param certificate_body [String] the contents of the certificate
  # @param private_key [String] the private key contents
  # @return [Boolean] returns true if the certificate was successfully created
  def create_server_certificate(name, certificate_body, private_key)
    @iam_client.upload_server_certificate({
                                            server_certificate_name: name,
                                            certificate_body: certificate_body,
                                            private_key: private_key
                                          })
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Failed to create server certificate: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Lists available server certificate names.
  def list_server_certificate_names
    response = @iam_client.list_server_certificates

    if response.server_certificate_metadata_list.empty?
      @logger.info('No server certificates found.')
      return
```

```
    end

    response.server_certificate_metadata_list.each do |certificate_metadata|
      @logger.info("Certificate Name:
 #{certificate_metadata.server_certificate_name}")
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing server certificates: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the name of a server certificate.
  def update_server_certificate_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_server_certificate(
      server_certificate_name: current_name,
      new_server_certificate_name: new_name
    )
    @logger.info("Server certificate name updated from '#{current_name}' to
 '#{new_name}'.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating server certificate name: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes a server certificate.
  def delete_server_certificate(name)
    @iam_client.delete_server_certificate(server_certificate_name: name)
    @logger.info("Server certificate '#{name}' deleted.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting server certificate: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `UpdateSigningCertificate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateSigningCertificate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To activate or deactivate a signing certificate for an IAM user

The following `update-signing-certificate` command deactivates the specified signing certificate for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam update-signing-certificate \
    --certificate-id TA7SMP42TDN5Z26OBPJE7EXAMPLE \
    --status Inactive \
    --user-name Bob
```

To get the ID for a signing certificate, use the `list-signing-certificates` command.

For more information, see Manage signing certificates in the *Amazon EC2 User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateSigningCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the certificate that is associated with the IAM user named Bob and whose certificate ID si `Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU` to mark it as inactive.

```
Update-IAMSigningCertificate -CertificateId Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU -
UserName Bob -Status Inactive
```

- For API details, see UpdateSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the certificate that is associated with the IAM user named Bob and whose certificate ID si `Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU` to mark it as inactive.

```
Update-IAMSigningCertificate -CertificateId Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU -
UserName Bob -Status Inactive
```

- For API details, see UpdateSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateUser` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateUser`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create read-only and read-write users

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::updateUser(const Aws::String &currentUserName,
                             const Aws::String &newUserName,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::UpdateUserRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(currentUserName);
    request.SetNewUserName(newUserName);

    auto outcome = iam.UpdateUser(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "IAM user " << currentUserName <<
                  " successfully updated with new user name " << newUserName <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error updating user name for IAM user " << currentUserName
 <<
```

```
                    ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change an IAM user's name

The following `update-user` command changes the name of the IAM user Bob to `Robert`.

```
aws iam update-user \
    --user-name Bob \
    --new-user-name Robert
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Renaming an IAM user group in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.UpdateUserRequest;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class UpdateUser {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <curName> <newName>\s

                Where:
                    curName - The current user name.\s
                    newName - An updated user name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String curName = args[0];
        String newName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateIAMUser(iam, curName, newName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void updateIAMUser(IamClient iam, String curName, String
 newName) {
        try {
            UpdateUserRequest request = UpdateUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(curName)
```

```
                    .newUserName(newName)
                    .build();

            iam.updateUser(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully updated user to username %s",
 newName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the user.

```
import { UpdateUserCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} currentUserName
 * @param {string} newUserName
 */
export const updateUser = (currentUserName, newUserName) => {
  const command = new UpdateUserCommand({
    UserName: currentUserName,
    NewUserName: newUserName,
```

```
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  UserName: process.argv[2],
  NewUserName: process.argv[3],
};

iam.updateUser(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateIAMUser(
    curName: String?,
    newName: String?,
) {
    val request =
        UpdateUserRequest {
            userName = curName
            newUserName = newName
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.updateUser(request)
        println("Successfully updated user to $newName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example renames the IAM user Bob to `Robert`.

```
Update-IAMUser -UserName Bob -NewUserName Robert
```

Example 2: This example changes the path of the IAM User Bob to `/Org1/Org2/`, which effectively changes the ARN for the user to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Org1/Org2/bob`.

```
Update-IAMUser -UserName Bob -NewPath /Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example renames the IAM user Bob to `Robert`.

```
Update-IAMUser -UserName Bob -NewUserName Robert
```

Example 2: This example changes the path of the IAM User Bob to `/Org1/Org2/`, which effectively changes the ARN for the user to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Org1/Org2/bob`.

```
Update-IAMUser -UserName Bob -NewPath /Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def update_user(user_name, new_user_name):
    """
    Updates a user's name.

    :param user_name: The current name of the user to update.
    :param new_user_name: The new name to assign to the user.
    :return: The updated user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.User(user_name)
        user.update(NewUserName=new_user_name)
```

```
        logger.info("Renamed %s to %s.", user_name, new_user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update name for user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    return user
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Updates an IAM user's name
  #
  # @param current_name [String] The current name of the user
  # @param new_name [String] The new name of the user
  def update_user_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_user(user_name: current_name, new_user_name: new_name)
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating user name from '#{current_name}' to
'#{new_name}': #{e.message}")
    false
  end
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `UploadServerCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UploadServerCertificate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To upload a server certificate to your AWS account

The following **upload-server-certificate** command uploads a server certificate to your AWS account. In this example, the certificate is in the file `public_key_cert_file.pem`, the associated private key is in the file `my_private_key.pem`, and the the certificate chain provided by the certificate authority (CA) is in the `my_certificate_chain_file.pem` file. When the file has finished uploading, it is available under the name *myServerCertificate*. Parameters that begin with `file://` tells the command to read the contents of the file and use that as the parameter value instead of the file name itself.

```
aws iam upload-server-certificate \
    --server-certificate-name myServerCertificate \
    --certificate-body file://public_key_cert_file.pem \
    --private-key file://my_private_key.pem \
    --certificate-chain file://my_certificate_chain_file.pem
```

Output:

```
{
    "ServerCertificateMetadata": {
        "Path": "/",
        "ServerCertificateName": "myServerCertificate",
        "ServerCertificateId": "ASCAEXAMPLE123EXAMPLE",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:iam::1234567989012:server-certificate/
myServerCertificate",
        "UploadDate": "2019-04-22T21:13:44+00:00",
        "Expiration": "2019-10-15T22:23:16+00:00"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating, Uploading, and Deleting Server Certificates in the *Using IAM* guide.

- For API details, see UploadServerCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UploadServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import * as path from "node:path";

const client = new IAMClient({});

const certMessage = `Generate a certificate and key with the following command,
 or the equivalent for your system.

openssl req -x509 -newkey rsa:4096 -sha256 -days 3650 -nodes \
-keyout example.key -out example.crt -subj "/CN=example.com" \
-addext "subjectAltName=DNS:example.com,DNS:www.example.net,IP:10.0.0.1"
`;

const getCertAndKey = () => {
  try {
    const cert = readFileSync(
      path.join(dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url), "./example.crt"),
    );
    const key = readFileSync(
      path.join(dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url), "./example.key"),
    );
    return { cert, key };
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.code === "ENOENT") {
      throw new Error(
        `Certificate and/or private key not found. ${certMessage}`,
      );
    }

    throw err;
```

```
  }
};

/**
 *
 * @param {string} certificateName
 */
export const uploadServerCertificate = (certificateName) => {
  const { cert, key } = getCertAndKey();
  const command = new UploadServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: certificateName,
    CertificateBody: cert.toString(),
    PrivateKey: key.toString(),
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see UploadServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example uploads a new server certificate to the IAM account. The files containing the certificate body, the private key, and (optionally) the certificate chain must all be PEM encoded. Note that the parameters require the actual content of the files rather than the file names. You must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the file contents.

```
Publish-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyTestCert -CertificateBody
 (Get-Content -Raw server.crt) -PrivateKey (Get-Content -Raw server.key)
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/MyTestCert
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIEXAMPLE7J7HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyTestCert
```

```
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see UploadServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example uploads a new server certificate to the IAM account. The files containing the certificate body, the private key, and (optionally) the certificate chain must all be PEM encoded. Note that the parameters require the actual content of the files rather than the file names. You must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the file contents.

```
Publish-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyTestCert -CertificateBody
 (Get-Content -Raw server.crt) -PrivateKey (Get-Content -Raw server.key)
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/MyTestCert
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIEXAMPLE7J7HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyTestCert
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see UploadServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UploadSigningCertificate` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UploadSigningCertificate`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To upload a signing certificate for an IAM user

The following `upload-signing-certificate` command uploads a signing certificate for the IAM user named Bob.

```
aws iam upload-signing-certificate \
    --user-name Bob \
    --certificate-body file://certificate.pem
```

Output:

```
{
    "Certificate": {
        "UserName": "Bob",
        "Status": "Active",
        "CertificateBody": "-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----<certificate-body>-----END
 CERTIFICATE-----",
        "CertificateId": "TA7SMP42TDN5Z26OBPJE7EXAMPLE",
        "UploadDate": "2013-06-06T21:40:08.121Z"
    }
}
```

The certificate is in a file named *certificate.pem* in PEM format.

For more information, see Creating and Uploading a User Signing Certificate in the *Using IAM* guide.

- For API details, see UploadSigningCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example uploads a new X.509 signing certificate and associates it with the IAM user named Bob. The file containing the certificate body is PEM encoded. The `CertificateBody` parameter requires the actual contents of the certificate file rather than the file name. You must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the file.

```
Publish-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob -CertificateBody (Get-Content -Raw
 SampleSigningCert.pem)
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
```

```
 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z

 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                  YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn
+a4GmWIWJ
                  21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9T
                  rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                  nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                  NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateId   : Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCEXAMPLEHMJLU
Status          : Active
UploadDate      : 4/20/2015 1:26:01 PM
UserName        : Bob
```

- For API details, see UploadSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example uploads a new X.509 signing certificate and associates it with the IAM user named Bob. The file containing the certificate body is PEM encoded. The `CertificateBody` parameter requires the actual contents of the certificate file rather than the file name. You must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the file.

```
Publish-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob -CertificateBody (Get-Content -Raw
 SampleSigningCert.pem)
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z

 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                  YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn
+a4GmWIWJ
                  21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9T
                  rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                  nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                  NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateId   : Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCEXAMPLEHMJLU
Status          : Active
UploadDate      : 4/20/2015 1:26:01 PM
UserName        : Bob
```

- For API details, see UploadSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Scenarios for IAM using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in IAM with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within IAM or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK
- Create read-only and read-write IAM users using an AWS SDK
- Manage IAM access keys using an AWS SDK
- Manage IAM policies using an AWS SDK
- Manage IAM roles using an AWS SDK
- Manage your IAM account using an AWS SDK
- Roll back an IAM policy version using an AWS SDK
- Set up Attribute-Based Access Control for DynamoDB using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live using AWS Command Line Interface v2
- Work with the IAM Policy Builder API using an AWS SDK

Build and manage a resilient service using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.

- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
```

```
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
AWS resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways
to make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide
book, movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each
contain a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across
several Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the
Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs
'server_startup_script.sh' when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the
`server.py` script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3,
_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName, zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
```

```
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
 instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGro
 protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port,
 ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for
your default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port,
ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
```

```
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
```

```
                        $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                        "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service
fails, the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
```

```
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile
that contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
either a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo,
a deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not
for Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the
Auto Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load
balancer can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two
for the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by
an auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler
start a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a
successful recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the
load balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance
typically takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
"this-is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");
```

```
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBal
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGr
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupNa
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
 might incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
```

```
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with
 a specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
 granted to
```

```
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to
 the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
```

```
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
```

```
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await
_amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
 Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that
 runs after
```

```
   /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and
starts a Python
   /// web server on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
   /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to
create and attach to the profile.</param>
   /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
   public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
   {
       try
       {
           await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
           await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
               _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

           var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
           var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

           var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
               new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
           var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
           var launchTemplateResponse = await
_amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
               new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
               {
                   LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                   LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                   {
                       InstanceType = _instanceType,
                       ImageId = amiId,
                       IamInstanceProfile =
                           new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                           {
                               Name = _instanceProfileName
                           },
                       KeyName = _keyPairName,
                       UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
```

```
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z =>
z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability
 zones.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new
 Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with
 size {groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
 exists.");
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId}
does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the
subnets.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await
_amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate
with the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association
for the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
```

```
            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance
{instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance
{instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
```

```
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not
found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the
template.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await
_amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for
{instanceId}. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
```

```
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string
groupName)
    {
```

```
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
```

```
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the
calling computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP
address while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                        "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0),
or to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName,
 string targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
```

```
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
```

```
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
 groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
 times and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</
param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer
 exists.</param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
```

```
    {
        var createResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
```

```
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
 describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
```

```
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn =
 targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies, and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
```

```
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
```

```
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
 param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
  recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await
  File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =

  JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
```

```
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations

- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
```

```
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-
prof-bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException,
 InterruptedException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and
 Manage a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
 resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your
account, we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user
input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
```

```
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to
create several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and
explore some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances
that each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when
an instance starts.
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to
'/' and to '/healthcheck'.
```

```
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses
to assume a role that grants
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and
Systems Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);

        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the
demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer. The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets,
targetGroupArn, lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul =
loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(),
StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
```

```
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group
for your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add
it automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }

            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security
group are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the
load balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
```

```
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and
shows how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite
of these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
parameter named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                        While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                        """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns
a static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are
still shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance
id value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId =
autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " +
profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
```

```
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on
for recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto
Scaling instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the
load balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
always returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance
is running and healthy.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
```

```
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode =
response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();
```

```
                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load
balancer targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
target.target().id(),
                                    target.target().port(),
target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the
health check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value
between 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
```

```
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }

    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
```

```
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance
is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
    public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
                .builder()
                .instanceId(instanceId)
                .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
        System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
    }

    /**
     * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
     * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
     * When
     * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
     * server.
     */
    public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
            throws InterruptedException {
        // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
                .builder()
                .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure
'newInstanceProfileName' is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                                // name.
```

```
                .build();

        // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
        ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
                .builder()
                .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
                .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
                .build();

        try {
            getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
            // Handle the response as needed.
        } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
            // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with
profile %s.", profileAssociationId,
                newInstanceProfileName);
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
        boolean instReady = false;
        int tries = 0;

        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
```

```
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress)
{
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
```

```
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);

            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
```

```
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
```

```
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();

            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse =
getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);

            for (SecurityGroup secGroup :
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " +
secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " +
ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }
```

```
                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to
be open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }

    /*
     * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
     * Scaling group.
     * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
     * instances
     * in the group.
     */
    public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
        try {
            AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                    .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                    .build();
```

```
getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
           System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
   public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {

       // Get availability zones.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
               .builder()
               .build();

       DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
       List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()

.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
               .collect(Collectors.toList());

       String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
       LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
               .launchTemplateName(templateName)
               .version("$Default")
               .build();

       String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
       CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
               .launchTemplate(specification)
               .availabilityZones(zones)
               .maxSize(groupSize)
               .minSize(groupSize)
```

```
                .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
                .build();

        try {
            getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
        return zones;
    }

    public String getDefaultVPC() {
        // Define the filter.
        Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("is-default")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(defaultFilter)
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
```

```
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response =
getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }

    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
```

```
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
 DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
 InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
 ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
 getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to
 the policy.

 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM
 role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
```

```
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance
profile " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();
```

```
        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
    public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String
 targetGroupName) {
        DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
 DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                .names(targetGroupName)
                .build();

        DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
 getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

        DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
 DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()

 .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
                .build();

        DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
 getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
        return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
```

```
    }

    // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
    public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
        DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
        return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
    }

    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
```

```
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
       } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       }
       System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
   }

   // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer
   // endpoint.
   public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws
IOException, InterruptedException {
       boolean success = false;
       int retries = 3;
       CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

       // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
       HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
       try {
           while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
               // Execute the request and get the response.
               HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
               int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
               System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
               if (statusCode == 200) {
                   success = true;
               } else {
                   retries--;
                   System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                   TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
               }
           }

       } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getMessage());
       }

       System.out.println("Status.." + success);
       return success;
   }

   /*
```

```
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
    * how
    * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how
instance
    * health is checked.
    */
   public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId,
String targetGroupName) {
       CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
               .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
               .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
               .port(port)
               .vpcId(vpcId)
               .name(targetGroupName)
               .protocol(protocol)
               .build();

       CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
       String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
       String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
       System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
       return targetGroupArn;
   }

   /*
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
    * subnets
    * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    */
   public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String
targetGroupARN, String lbName, int port,
           String protocol) {
       try {
           List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                   .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

           CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to
become available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest =
CreateListenerRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();
```

```
            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
 DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;
```

```
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " +
e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException
{
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
```

```
                                        .build())
                        .provisionedThroughput(
                                ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                        .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                        .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                        .build())
                        .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws
IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable =
enhancedClient.table(tableName,
```

```
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-
response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth

- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
```

```
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes]
 [-v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
```

```
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
```

```
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
```

```
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item']
[] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );

    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatedTable",
    MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
```

```
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
      new CreateKeyPairCommand({
        KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
      }),
    );

    writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstancePolicy",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      Policy: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
        PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
    state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
```

```
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
```

```
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
```

```
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  ...initParamsSteps,
  new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
  new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
```

```
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
```

```
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
      new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
        Protocol: "HTTP",
        Port: 80,
        HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
        HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
        HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
```

```
        HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
      }),
    );
    const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
    state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
    state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
    state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancer",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
      new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
```

```
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup}} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
```

```
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
```

```
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
```

```
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
```

```
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
```

```
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
```

```
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
      "${TABLE_NAME}",
      state.badTableName,
    ),
  ),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "staticResponseConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
```

```
    if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
          Value: "static",
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-
scaling').Instance }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
```

```
    await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
      new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
      }),
    );
    state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
      IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      ec2Client.send(
        new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
          AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
        }),
      ),
    );

    await ec2Client.send(
      new RebootInstancesCommand({
        InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
      }),
    );

    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
      const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
        new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
      );

      const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
        (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      );

      if (!instance) {
```

```
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation}} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
```

```
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
```

```
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
```

```
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
```

```
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );

  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
```

```
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "abort",
    (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
    try {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
    } catch (e) {
      c.deleteTableError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteTableError) {
      console.error(state.deleteTableError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.tableName,
      );
    }
```

```
    return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
      );
      unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
      console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
      "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
      NAMES.keyPairName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
```

```
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
```

```
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
```

```
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
```

```
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
```

```
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
```

```
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
```

```
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
```

```
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
```

```
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances
  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example,
 such as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
```

```
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient
service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability
Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer.")
```

```
        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port
 is open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access
 from this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
 {sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
 address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
```

```
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging
from your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success =
self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )

    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as
sending requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint.")
```

```
                endpoint =
self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check
to update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
```

```
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a
non-existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
instances."
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
```

```
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace
it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance
replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation
service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
```

```
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up
 manually to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the
 demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
 are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM
 policies and\n"
```

```
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
"destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
```

```
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are
 created by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI
 that is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
```

```
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
```

```
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/
{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
 {policy_arn}")
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies
 which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
 AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
```

```
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to
 attach to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
 PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role
 {role_name}.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
 created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is
 assumed by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
 granted to
        clients that run on the instance.
```

```
        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as
AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to
the instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
```

```
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance
{instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance
{instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
```

```
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the
profile is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new
profile. When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to
associate with
                                                the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                            instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
```

```
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or
is not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the
role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
```

```
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto
Scaling. The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts
a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a
permissions policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance
profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()
```

```
            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
```

```
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
```

```
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with
availability zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
```

```
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) ->
None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
to terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group
%s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
```

```
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
 ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
 configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
 group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
```

```
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting
to delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs.
"
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
parameters."
```

```
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]
['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass


    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress
from this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
public
        access when you're done.

        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value
that indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")
```

```
            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to
either this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist.
Please check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
```

```
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}'
on port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
```

```
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones
 {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group
specifies how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened
times and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the
sensitivity of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'.")
```

```
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing
target group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for
new ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.",
target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the
AWS Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with
any load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn}
still exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts
* delay} seconds."
        )
```

```
    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}'
already exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
```

```
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in
this account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase
in the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests
to the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener
to the
                                load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load
balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
```

```
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error
code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer
{load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
```

```
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint,
retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
```

```
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not
 found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS
 region, and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
 correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
 account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books,
 movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary
 parameters.
```

```
        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table
has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended,
such as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5,
"WriteCapacityUnits": 5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
```

```
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name,
data_file
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}:
{err}"
            )

    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
self.table_name)
            else:
```

```
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters
 to drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency
 or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
 recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when
 a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
```

```
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False.
"
                    "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener

- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Create read-only and read-write IAM users using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create users and attach policies to them.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create two IAM users.

- Attach a policy for one user to get and put objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Attach a policy for the second user to get objects from the bucket.
- Get different permissions to the bucket based on user credentials.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM user actions.

```
import logging
import time

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

import access_key_wrapper
import policy_wrapper

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_user(user_name):
    """
    Creates a user. By default, a user has no permissions or access keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The newly created user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.create_user(UserName=user_name)
        logger.info("Created user %s.", user.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create user %s.", user_name)
        raise
```

```
    else:
        return user



def update_user(user_name, new_user_name):
    """
    Updates a user's name.

    :param user_name: The current name of the user to update.
    :param new_user_name: The new name to assign to the user.
    :return: The updated user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.User(user_name)
        user.update(NewUserName=new_user_name)
        logger.info("Renamed %s to %s.", user_name, new_user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update name for user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    return user



def list_users():
    """
    Lists the users in the current account.

    :return: The list of users.
    """
    try:
        users = list(iam.users.all())
        logger.info("Got %s users.", len(users))
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get users.")
        raise
    else:
        return users



def delete_user(user_name):
    """
    Deletes a user. Before a user can be deleted, all associated resources,
```

```
    such as access keys and policies, must be deleted or detached.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted user %s.", user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete user %s.", user_name)
        raise



def attach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn,
 user_name)
        raise



def detach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name
        )
```

```
        raise
```

Create functions that wrap IAM policy actions.

```
import json
import logging
import operator
import pprint
import time

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_policy(name, description, actions, resource_arn):
    """
    Creates a policy that contains a single statement.

    :param name: The name of the policy to create.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions allowed by the policy. These typically take the
                    form of service:action, such as s3:PutObject.
    :param resource_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource this
 policy
                         applies to. This ARN can contain wildcards, such as
                         'arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*' to allow actions on
 all objects
                         in the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.create_policy(
            PolicyName=name,
```

```
            Description=description,
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc),
        )
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy



def delete_policy(policy_arn):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
```

Create functions that wrap IAM access key actions.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_key(user_name):
    """
    Creates an access key for the specified user. Each user can have a
    maximum of two keys.
```

```
    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The created access key.
    """
    try:
        key_pair = iam.User(user_name).create_access_key_pair()
        logger.info(
            "Created access key pair for %s. Key ID is %s.",
            key_pair.user_name,
            key_pair.id,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create access key pair for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return key_pair



def delete_key(user_name, key_id):
    """
    Deletes a user's access key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to delete.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.AccessKey(user_name, key_id)
        key.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted access key %s for %s.", key.id, key.user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete key %s for %s", key_id, user_name)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to create users with differing policies and use their credentials to access an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
def usage_demo():
    """
    Shows how to manage users, keys, and policies.
```

```
    This demonstration creates two users: one user who can put and get objects in
an
    Amazon S3 bucket, and another user who can only get objects from the bucket.
    The demo then shows how the users can perform only the actions they are
permitted
    to perform.
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management user demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Users can have policies and roles attached to grant them specific "
        "permissions."
    )
    s3 = boto3.resource("s3")
    bucket = s3.create_bucket(
        Bucket=f"demo-iam-bucket-{time.time_ns()}",
        CreateBucketConfiguration={
            "LocationConstraint": s3.meta.client.meta.region_name
        },
    )
    print(f"Created an Amazon S3 bucket named {bucket.name}.")
    user_read_writer = create_user("demo-iam-read-writer")
    user_reader = create_user("demo-iam-reader")
    print(f"Created two IAM users: {user_read_writer.name} and
{user_reader.name}")
    update_user(user_read_writer.name, "demo-iam-creator")
    update_user(user_reader.name, "demo-iam-getter")
    users = list_users()
    user_read_writer = next(
        user for user in users if user.user_id == user_read_writer.user_id
    )
    user_reader = next(user for user in users if user.user_id ==
user_reader.user_id)
    print(
        f"Changed the names of the users to {user_read_writer.name} "
        f"and {user_reader.name}."
    )

    read_write_policy = policy_wrapper.create_policy(
        "demo-iam-read-write-policy",
        "Grants rights to create and get an object in the demo bucket.",
        ["s3:PutObject", "s3:GetObject"],
```

```
        f"arn:aws:s3:::{bucket.name}/*",
    )
    print(
        f"Created policy {read_write_policy.policy_name} with ARN:
{read_write_policy.arn}"
    )
    print(read_write_policy.description)
    read_policy = policy_wrapper.create_policy(
        "demo-iam-read-policy",
        "Grants rights to get an object from the demo bucket.",
        "s3:GetObject",
        f"arn:aws:s3:::{bucket.name}/*",
    )
    print(f"Created policy {read_policy.policy_name} with ARN:
{read_policy.arn}")
    print(read_policy.description)
    attach_policy(user_read_writer.name, read_write_policy.arn)
    print(f"Attached {read_write_policy.policy_name} to
{user_read_writer.name}.")
    attach_policy(user_reader.name, read_policy.arn)
    print(f"Attached {read_policy.policy_name} to {user_reader.name}.")

    user_read_writer_key = access_key_wrapper.create_key(user_read_writer.name)
    print(f"Created access key pair for {user_read_writer.name}.")
    user_reader_key = access_key_wrapper.create_key(user_reader.name)
    print(f"Created access key pair for {user_reader.name}.")

    s3_read_writer_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=user_read_writer_key.id,
        aws_secret_access_key=user_read_writer_key.secret,
    )
    demo_object_key = f"object-{time.time_ns()}"
    demo_object = None
    while demo_object is None:
        try:
            demo_object = s3_read_writer_resource.Bucket(bucket.name).put_object(
                Key=demo_object_key, Body=b"AWS IAM demo object content!"
            )
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAccessKeyId":
                print("Access key not yet available. Waiting...")
                time.sleep(1)
            else:
```

```
                raise
    print(
        f"Put {demo_object_key} into {bucket.name} using "
        f"{user_read_writer.name}'s credentials."
    )

    read_writer_object = s3_read_writer_resource.Bucket(bucket.name).Object(
        demo_object_key
    )
    read_writer_content = read_writer_object.get()["Body"].read()
    print(f"Got object {read_writer_object.key} using read-writer user's
credentials.")
    print(f"Object content: {read_writer_content}")

    s3_reader_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=user_reader_key.id,
        aws_secret_access_key=user_reader_key.secret,
    )
    demo_content = None
    while demo_content is None:
        try:
            demo_object =
s3_reader_resource.Bucket(bucket.name).Object(demo_object_key)
            demo_content = demo_object.get()["Body"].read()
            print(f"Got object {demo_object.key} using reader user's
credentials.")
            print(f"Object content: {demo_content}")
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAccessKeyId":
                print("Access key not yet available. Waiting...")
                time.sleep(1)
            else:
                raise

    try:
        demo_object.delete()
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                "Tried to delete the object using the reader user's credentials.
"
                "Got expected AccessDenied error because the reader is not "
```

```
                "allowed to delete objects."
            )
            print("-" * 88)

    access_key_wrapper.delete_key(user_reader.name, user_reader_key.id)
    detach_policy(user_reader.name, read_policy.arn)
    policy_wrapper.delete_policy(read_policy.arn)
    delete_user(user_reader.name)
    print(f"Deleted keys, detached and deleted policy, and deleted
{user_reader.name}.")

    access_key_wrapper.delete_key(user_read_writer.name, user_read_writer_key.id)
    detach_policy(user_read_writer.name, read_write_policy.arn)
    policy_wrapper.delete_policy(read_write_policy.arn)
    delete_user(user_read_writer.name)
    print(
        f"Deleted keys, detached and deleted policy, and deleted
{user_read_writer.name}."
    )

    bucket.objects.delete()
    bucket.delete()
    print(f"Emptied and deleted {bucket.name}.")
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachUserPolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteUser
  - DetachUserPolicy
  - ListUsers
  - UpdateUser

Manage IAM access keys using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to manage access keys.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create and list access keys.
- Find out when and how an access key was last used.
- Update and delete access keys.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM access key actions.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def list_keys(user_name):
    """
    Lists the keys owned by the specified user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
```

```
    :return: The list of keys owned by the user.
    """
    try:
        keys = list(iam.User(user_name).access_keys.all())
        logger.info("Got %s access keys for %s.", len(keys), user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get access keys for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return keys



def create_key(user_name):
    """
    Creates an access key for the specified user. Each user can have a
    maximum of two keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The created access key.
    """
    try:
        key_pair = iam.User(user_name).create_access_key_pair()
        logger.info(
            "Created access key pair for %s. Key ID is %s.",
            key_pair.user_name,
            key_pair.id,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create access key pair for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return key_pair



def get_last_use(key_id):
    """
    Gets information about when and how a key was last used.

    :param key_id: The ID of the key to look up.
    :return: Information about the key's last use.
    """
    try:
```

```
        response = iam.meta.client.get_access_key_last_used(AccessKeyId=key_id)
        last_used_date = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("LastUsedDate", None)
        last_service = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("ServiceName", None)
        logger.info(
            "Key %s was last used by %s on %s to access %s.",
            key_id,
            response["UserName"],
            last_used_date,
            last_service,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get last use of key %s.", key_id)
        raise
    else:
        return response



def update_key(user_name, key_id, activate):
    """
    Updates the status of a key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to update.
    :param activate: When True, the key is activated. Otherwise, the key is
 deactivated.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.User(user_name).AccessKey(key_id)
        if activate:
            key.activate()
        else:
            key.deactivate()
        logger.info("%s key %s.", "Activated" if activate else "Deactivated",
 key_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't %s key %s.", "Activate" if activate else "Deactivate",
 key_id
        )
        raise
```

```
def delete_key(user_name, key_id):
    """
    Deletes a user's access key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to delete.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.AccessKey(user_name, key_id)
        key.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted access key %s for %s.", key.id, key.user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete key %s for %s", key_id, user_name)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to perform access key actions for the current user.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to create and manage access keys."""

    def print_keys():
        """Gets and prints the current keys for a user."""
        current_keys = list_keys(current_user_name)
        print("The current user's keys are now:")
        print(*[f"{key.id}: {key.status}" for key in current_keys], sep="\n")

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management access key demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    current_user_name = iam.CurrentUser().user_name
    print(
        f"This demo creates an access key for the current user "
        f"({current_user_name}), manipulates the key in a few ways, and then "
        f"deletes it."
    )
    all_keys = list_keys(current_user_name)
    if len(all_keys) == 2:
```

```
        print(
            "The current user already has the maximum of 2 access keys. To run "
            "this demo, either delete one of the access keys or use a user "
            "that has only 1 access key."
        )
    else:
        new_key = create_key(current_user_name)
        print(f"Created a new key with id {new_key.id} and secret
{new_key.secret}.")
        print_keys()
        existing_key = next(key for key in all_keys if key != new_key)
        last_use = get_last_use(existing_key.id)["AccessKeyLastUsed"]
        print(
            f"Key {all_keys[0].id} was last used to access
{last_use['ServiceName']} "
            f"on {last_use['LastUsedDate']}"
        )
        update_key(current_user_name, new_key.id, False)
        print(f"Key {new_key.id} is now deactivated.")
        print_keys()
        delete_key(current_user_name, new_key.id)
        print_keys()
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAccessKey
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - GetAccessKeyLastUsed
  - ListAccessKeys
  - UpdateAccessKey

Manage IAM policies using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create and list policies.
- Create and get policy versions.

- Roll back a policy to a previous version.
- Delete policies.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM policy actions.

```
import json
import logging
import operator
import pprint
import time

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_policy(name, description, actions, resource_arn):
    """
    Creates a policy that contains a single statement.

    :param name: The name of the policy to create.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions allowed by the policy. These typically take the
                    form of service:action, such as s3:PutObject.
    :param resource_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource this
 policy
                         applies to. This ARN can contain wildcards, such as
                         'arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*' to allow actions on
 all objects
                         in the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.
```

```
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.create_policy(
            PolicyName=name,
            Description=description,
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc),
        )
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy



def list_policies(scope):
    """
    Lists the policies in the current account.

    :param scope: Limits the kinds of policies that are returned. For example,
                  'Local' specifies that only locally managed policies are
 returned.
    :return: The list of policies.
    """
    try:
        policies = list(iam.policies.filter(Scope=scope))
        logger.info("Got %s policies in scope '%s'.", len(policies), scope)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get policies for scope '%s'.", scope)
        raise
    else:
        return policies



def create_policy_version(policy_arn, actions, resource_arn, set_as_default):
    """
```

```
    Creates a policy version. Policies can have up to five versions. The default
    version is the one that is used for all resources that reference the policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions to allow in the policy version.
    :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource this policy version applies to.
    :param set_as_default: When True, this policy version is set as the default
                           version for the policy. Otherwise, the default
                           is not changed.
    :return: The newly created policy version.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        policy_version = policy.create_version(
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc), SetAsDefault=set_as_default
        )
        logger.info(
            "Created policy version %s for policy %s.",
            policy_version.version_id,
            policy_version.arn,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create a policy version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_version



def get_default_policy_statement(policy_arn):
    """
    Gets the statement of the default version of the specified policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to look up.
    :return: The statement of the default policy version.
    """
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        # To get an attribute of a policy, the SDK first calls get_policy.
```

```
        policy_doc = policy.default_version.document
        policy_statement = policy_doc.get("Statement", None)
        logger.info("Got default policy doc for %s.", policy.policy_name)
        logger.info(policy_doc)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get default policy statement for %s.",
 policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_statement



def rollback_policy_version(policy_arn):
    """
    Rolls back to the previous default policy, if it exists.

    1. Gets the list of policy versions in order by date.
    2. Finds the default.
    3. Makes the previous policy the default.
    4. Deletes the old default version.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to roll back.
    :return: The default version of the policy after the rollback.
    """
    try:
        policy_versions = sorted(
            iam.Policy(policy_arn).versions.all(),
            key=operator.attrgetter("create_date"),
        )
        logger.info("Got %s versions for %s.", len(policy_versions), policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get versions for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise

    default_version = None
    rollback_version = None
    try:
        while default_version is None:
            ver = policy_versions.pop()
            if ver.is_default_version:
                default_version = ver
        rollback_version = policy_versions.pop()
        rollback_version.set_as_default()
```

```
        logger.info("Set %s as the default version.",
 rollback_version.version_id)
        default_version.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted original default version %s.",
 default_version.version_id)
    except IndexError:
        if default_version is None:
            logger.warning("No default version found for %s.", policy_arn)
        elif rollback_version is None:
            logger.warning(
                "Default version %s found for %s, but no previous version exists,
 so "
                "nothing to roll back to.",
                default_version.version_id,
                policy_arn,
            )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't roll back version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return rollback_version



def delete_policy(policy_arn):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to create policies, update versions, and get information about them.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the policy functions."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management policy demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Policies let you define sets of permissions that can be attached to "
        "other IAM resources, like users and roles."
    )
    bucket_arn = f"arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    policy = create_policy(
        "demo-iam-policy",
        "Policy for IAM demonstration.",
        ["s3:ListObjects"],
        bucket_arn,
    )
    print(f"Created policy {policy.policy_name}.")
    policies = list_policies("Local")
    print(f"Your account has {len(policies)} managed policies:")
    print(*[pol.policy_name for pol in policies], sep=", ")
    time.sleep(1)
    policy_version = create_policy_version(
        policy.arn, ["s3:PutObject"], bucket_arn, True
    )
    print(
        f"Added policy version {policy_version.version_id} to policy "
        f"{policy.policy_name}."
    )
    default_statement = get_default_policy_statement(policy.arn)
    print(f"The default policy statement for {policy.policy_name} is:")
    pprint.pprint(default_statement)
    rollback_version = rollback_policy_version(policy.arn)
    print(
        f"Rolled back to version {rollback_version.version_id} for "
        f"{policy.policy_name}."
    )
    default_statement = get_default_policy_statement(policy.arn)
    print(f"The default policy statement for {policy.policy_name} is now:")
    pprint.pprint(default_statement)
    delete_policy(policy.arn)
    print(f"Deleted policy {policy.policy_name}.")
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreatePolicyVersion
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeletePolicyVersion
  - GetPolicyVersion
  - ListPolicies
  - ListPolicyVersions
  - SetDefaultPolicyVersion

Manage IAM roles using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role.
- Attach and detach policies for a role.
- Delete a role.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM role actions.

```
import json
import logging
import pprint
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_role(role_name, allowed_services):
    """
    Creates a role that lets a list of specified services assume the role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role.
    :param allowed_services: The services that can assume the role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {"Service": service},
                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
            }
            for service in allowed_services
        ],
    }

    try:
        role = iam.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name, AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy)
        )
        logger.info("Created role %s.", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create role %s.", role_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role



def attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a role.
```

```
    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the
 ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn,
 role_name)
        raise



def detach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the
 ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name
        )
        raise



def delete_role(role_name):
    """
    Deletes a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete role %s.", role_name)
```

```
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to create a role, then attach and detach a policy.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the role functions."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management role demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Roles let you define sets of permissions and can be assumed by "
        "other entities, like users and services."
    )
    print("The first 10 roles currently in your account are:")
    roles = list_roles(10)
    print(f"The inline policies for role {roles[0].name} are:")
    list_policies(roles[0].name)
    role = create_role(
        "demo-iam-role", ["lambda.amazonaws.com",
 "batchoperations.s3.amazonaws.com"]
    )
    print(f"Created role {role.name}, with trust policy:")
    pprint.pprint(role.assume_role_policy_document)
    policy_arn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess"
    attach_policy(role.name, policy_arn)
    print(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to {role.name}.")
    print(f"Policies attached to role {role.name} are:")
    list_attached_policies(role.name)
    detach_policy(role.name, policy_arn)
    print(f"Detached policy {policy_arn} from {role.name}.")
    delete_role(role.name)
    print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy

- CreateRole
- DeleteRole
- DetachRolePolicy

Manage your IAM account using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and update the account alias.
- Generate a report of users and credentials.
- Get a summary of account usage.
- Get details for all users, groups, roles, and policies in your account, including their relationships to each other.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM account actions.

```
import logging
import pprint
import sys
import time
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def list_aliases():
    """
```

```
    Gets the list of aliases for the current account. An account has at most one
 alias.

    :return: The list of aliases for the account.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.list_account_aliases()
        aliases = response["AccountAliases"]
        if len(aliases) > 0:
            logger.info("Got aliases for your account: %s.", ",".join(aliases))
        else:
            logger.info("Got no aliases for your account.")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list aliases for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["AccountAliases"]



def create_alias(alias):
    """
    Creates an alias for the current account. The alias can be used in place of
 the
    account ID in the sign-in URL. An account can have only one alias. When a new
    alias is created, it replaces any existing alias.

    :param alias: The alias to assign to the account.
    """

    try:
        iam.create_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Created an alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
        raise



def delete_alias(alias):
    """
    Removes the alias from the current account.

    :param alias: The alias to remove.
```

```
    """
    try:
        iam.meta.client.delete_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Removed alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't remove alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
        raise



def generate_credential_report():
    """
    Starts generation of a credentials report about the current account. After
    calling this function to generate the report, call get_credential_report
    to get the latest report. A new report can be generated a minimum of four
 hours
    after the last one was generated.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.generate_credential_report()
        logger.info(
            "Generating credentials report for your account. " "Current state is
 %s.",
            response["State"],
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't generate a credentials report for your
 account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response



def get_credential_report():
    """
    Gets the most recently generated credentials report about the current
 account.

    :return: The credentials report.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_credential_report()
        logger.debug(response["Content"])
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get credentials report.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["Content"]



def get_summary():
    """
    Gets a summary of account usage.

    :return: The summary of account usage.
    """
    try:
        summary = iam.AccountSummary()
        logger.debug(summary.summary_map)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get a summary for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return summary.summary_map



def get_authorization_details(response_filter):
    """
    Gets an authorization detail report for the current account.

    :param response_filter: A list of resource types to include in the report,
 such
                            as users or roles. When not specified, all resources
                            are included.
    :return: The authorization detail report.
    """
    try:
        account_details = iam.meta.client.get_account_authorization_details(
            Filter=response_filter
        )
        logger.debug(account_details)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get details for your account.")
        raise
    else:
```

```
        return account_details
```

Call wrapper functions to change the account alias and to get reports about the account.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the account functions."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management account demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Setting an account alias lets you use the alias in your sign-in URL "
        "instead of your account number."
    )
    old_aliases = list_aliases()
    if len(old_aliases) > 0:
        print(f"Your account currently uses '{old_aliases[0]}' as its alias.")
    else:
        print("Your account currently has no alias.")
    for index in range(1, 3):
        new_alias = f"alias-{index}-{time.time_ns()}"
        print(f"Setting your account alias to {new_alias}")
        create_alias(new_alias)
    current_aliases = list_aliases()
    print(f"Your account alias is now {current_aliases}.")
    delete_alias(current_aliases[0])
    print(f"Your account now has no alias.")
    if len(old_aliases) > 0:
        print(f"Restoring your original alias back to {old_aliases[0]}...")
        create_alias(old_aliases[0])

    print("-" * 88)
    print("You can get various reports about your account.")
    print("Let's generate a credentials report...")
    report_state = None
    while report_state != "COMPLETE":
        cred_report_response = generate_credential_report()
        old_report_state = report_state
        report_state = cred_report_response["State"]
        if report_state != old_report_state:
```

```
            print(report_state, sep="")
        else:
            print(".", sep="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
        time.sleep(1)
    print()
    cred_report = get_credential_report()
    col_count = 3
    print(f"Got credentials report. Showing only the first {col_count} columns.")
    cred_lines = [
        line.split(",")[:col_count] for line in
 cred_report.decode("utf-8").split("\n")
    ]
    col_width = max([len(item) for line in cred_lines for item in line]) + 2
    for line in cred_report.decode("utf-8").split("\n"):
        print(
            "".join(element.ljust(col_width) for element in line.split(",")
[:col_count])
        )

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Let's get an account summary.")
    summary = get_summary()
    print("Here's your summary:")
    pprint.pprint(summary)

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Let's get authorization details!")
    details = get_authorization_details([])
    see_details = input("These are pretty long, do you want to see them (y/n)? ")
    if see_details.lower() == "y":
        pprint.pprint(details)

    print("-" * 88)
    pw_policy_created = None
    see_pw_policy = input("Want to see the password policy for the account (y/n)?
 ")
    if see_pw_policy.lower() == "y":
        while True:
            if print_password_policy():
                break
            else:
                answer = input(
                    "Do you want to create a default password policy (y/n)? "
```

```
                )
                if answer.lower() == "y":
                    pw_policy_created = iam.create_account_password_policy()
                else:
                    break
    if pw_policy_created is not None:
        answer = input("Do you want to delete the password policy (y/n)? ")
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            pw_policy_created.delete()
            print("Password policy deleted.")

    print("The SAML providers for your account are:")
    list_saml_providers(10)

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Thanks for watching.")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAccountAlias
  - DeleteAccountAlias
  - GenerateCredentialReport
  - GetAccountAuthorizationDetails
  - GetAccountSummary
  - GetCredentialReport
  - ListAccountAliases

Roll back an IAM policy version using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get the list of policy versions in order by date.
- Find the default policy version.
- Make the previous policy version the default.
- Delete the old default version.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def rollback_policy_version(policy_arn):
    """
    Rolls back to the previous default policy, if it exists.

    1. Gets the list of policy versions in order by date.
    2. Finds the default.
    3. Makes the previous policy the default.
    4. Deletes the old default version.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to roll back.
    :return: The default version of the policy after the rollback.
    """
    try:
        policy_versions = sorted(
            iam.Policy(policy_arn).versions.all(),
            key=operator.attrgetter("create_date"),
        )
        logger.info("Got %s versions for %s.", len(policy_versions), policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get versions for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise

    default_version = None
    rollback_version = None
    try:
        while default_version is None:
            ver = policy_versions.pop()
            if ver.is_default_version:
                default_version = ver
        rollback_version = policy_versions.pop()
        rollback_version.set_as_default()
```

```
        logger.info("Set %s as the default version.",
rollback_version.version_id)
        default_version.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted original default version %s.",
default_version.version_id)
    except IndexError:
        if default_version is None:
            logger.warning("No default version found for %s.", policy_arn)
        elif rollback_version is None:
            logger.warning(
                "Default version %s found for %s, but no previous version exists,
so "
                "nothing to roll back to.",
                default_version.version_id,
                policy_arn,
            )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't roll back version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return rollback_version
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeletePolicyVersion
  - ListPolicyVersions
  - SetDefaultPolicyVersion

Set up Attribute-Based Access Control for DynamoDB using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to implement Attribute-Based Access Control (ABAC) for DynamoDB.

- Create an IAM policy for ABAC.
- Create tables with tags for different departments.
- List and filter tables based on tags.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create an IAM policy for ABAC.

```
# Step 1: Create a policy document for ABAC
cat > abac-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}"
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
        "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchWriteItem"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}",
          "aws:ResourceTag/Environment": "Development"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

```
EOF

# Step 2: Create the IAM policy
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name DynamoDBDepartmentBasedAccess \
    --policy-document file://abac-policy.json
```

Create tables with tags for different departments.

```
# Create a DynamoDB table with tags for ABAC
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name FinanceData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Finance \
        Key=Environment,Value=Development

# Create another table with different tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MarketingData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Marketing \
        Key=Environment,Value=Production
```

List and filter tables based on tags.

```
# List all DynamoDB tables
echo "Listing all tables:"
aws dynamodb list-tables

# Get ARNs for all tables
echo -e "\nGetting ARNs for all tables:"
```

```
TABLE_ARNS=$(aws dynamodb list-tables --query "TableNames[*]" --output text |
 xargs -I {} aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name {} --query "Table.TableArn"
 --output text)

# For each table ARN, list its tags
echo -e "\nListing tags for each table:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    echo -e "\nTags for table: $TABLE_NAME"
    aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN
done

# Example: Find tables with a specific tag
echo -e "\nFinding tables with Environment=Production tag:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    TAGS=$(aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN --query "Tags[?
Key=='Environment' && Value=='Production']" --output text)
    if [ ! -z "$TAGS" ]; then
        echo "Table with Production tag: $TABLE_NAME"
    fi
done
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateTable
  - ListTables

Work with DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live features.

- Create a table with Streams enabled.
- Describe Streams.
- Create a Lambda function for processing Streams.
- Enable TTL on a table.
- Add items with TTL attributes.

- Describe TTL settings.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with Streams enabled.

```
# Create a table with DynamoDB Streams enabled
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES
```

Describe Streams.

```
# Get information about the stream
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.StreamSpecification"

# Get the stream ARN
STREAM_ARN=$(aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.LatestStreamArn" \
    --output text)

echo "Stream ARN: $STREAM_ARN"

# Describe the stream
aws dynamodbstreams describe-stream \
    --stream-arn $STREAM_ARN
```

Create a Lambda function for Streams.

```
# Step 1: Create an IAM role for the Lambda function
```

```
cat > trust-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

aws iam create-role \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://trust-policy.json

# Step 2: Attach permissions to the role
aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaDynamoDBExecutionRole

# Step 3: Create a Lambda function (code would be in a separate file)
echo "Lambda function creation would be done separately with appropriate code"

# Step 4: Create an event source mapping
echo "Example command to create event source mapping:"
echo "aws lambda create-event-source-mapping \\"
echo "    --function-name ProcessDynamoDBRecords \\"
echo "    --event-source $STREAM_ARN \\"
echo "    --batch-size 100 \\"
echo "    --starting-position LATEST"
```

Enable TTL on a table.

```
# Create a table for TTL demonstration
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
```

```
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name TTLDemo

# Enable TTL on the table
aws dynamodb update-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --time-to-live-specification "Enabled=true, AttributeName=ExpirationTime"
```

Add items with TTL attributes.

```
# Calculate expiration time (current time + 1 day in seconds)
EXPIRATION_TIME=$(date -d "+1 day" +%s)

# Add an item with TTL attribute
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item1"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 day"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME'"}
    }'

# Add an item that expires in 1 hour
EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR=$(date -d "+1 hour" +%s)
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item2"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 hour"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR'"}
    }'
```

Describe TTL settings.

```
# Describe TTL settings for a table
aws dynamodb describe-time-to-live \
```

```
    --table-name TTLDemo
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - DescribeTimeToLive
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTimeToLive

Work with the IAM Policy Builder API using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create IAM policies by using the object-oriented API.
- Use the IAM Policy Builder API with the IAM service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The examples use the following imports.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamConditionOperator;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamEffect;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPolicy;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPolicyWriter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPrincipal;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPrincipalType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamResource;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamStatement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyVersionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsClient;

import java.net.URLDecoder;
import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;
```

Create a time-based policy.

```
        public String timeBasedPolicyExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:GetItem")
                                                .addResource(IamResource.ALL)
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.DATE_GREATER_THAN)

 .key("aws:CurrentTime")

 .value("2020-04-01T00:00:00Z"))
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.DATE_LESS_THAN)

 .key("aws:CurrentTime")

 .value("2020-06-30T23:59:59Z")))
                                .build();

                // Use an IamPolicyWriter to write out the JSON string to a more
 readable
```

```
                // format.
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true)
                                .build());
        }
```

Create a policy with multiple conditions.

```
        public String multipleConditionsExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:GetItem")

 .addAction("dynamodb:BatchGetItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:Query")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:PutItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:UpdateItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:DeleteItem")

 .addAction("dynamodb:BatchWriteItem")

 .addResource("arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/table-name")

 .addConditions(IamConditionOperator.STRING_EQUALS

 .addPrefix("ForAllValues:"),

 "dynamodb:Attributes",
                                                                List.of("column-
name1", "column-name2", "column-name3"))
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.STRING_EQUALS

 .addSuffix("IfExists"))

 .key("dynamodb:Select")

 .value("SPECIFIC_ATTRIBUTES")))
                                .build();
```

```
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Use principals in a policy.

```
        public String specifyPrincipalsExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.DENY)
                                                .addAction("s3:*")
                                                .addPrincipal(IamPrincipal.ALL)
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:s3:::amzn-
s3-demo-bucket/*")
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:s3:::amzn-
s3-demo-bucket")
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.ARN_NOT_EQUALS)

 .key("aws:PrincipalArn")

 .value("arn:aws:iam::444455556666:user/user-name")))
                                .build();
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Allow cross-account access.

```
        public String allowCrossAccountAccessExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)

 .addPrincipal(IamPrincipalType.AWS, "111122223333")
                                                .addAction("s3:PutObject")
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:s3:::amzn-
s3-demo-bucket/*")
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1
```

```
 .operator(IamConditionOperator.STRING_EQUALS)
                                                                    .key("s3:x-amz-
acl")
                                                                    .value("bucket-
owner-full-control")))
                                .build();
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Build and upload an `IamPolicy`.

```
        public String createAndUploadPolicyExample(IamClient iam, String
 accountID, String policyName) {
                // Build the policy.
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder() // 'version' defaults to
 "2012-10-17".
                                .addStatement(IamStatement.builder()
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:PutItem")

 .addResource("arn:aws:dynamodb:us-east-1:" + accountID
                                                                    + ":table/
exampleTableName")
                                                .build())
                                .build();
                // Upload the policy.
                iam.createPolicy(r ->
 r.policyName(policyName).policyDocument(policy.toJson()));
                return
 policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder().prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Download and work with an `IamPolicy`.

```
        public String createNewBasedOnExistingPolicyExample(IamClient iam, String
 accountID, String policyName,
                        String newPolicyName) {
```

```
                String policyArn = "arn:aws:iam::" + accountID + ":policy/" +
policyName;
                GetPolicyResponse getPolicyResponse = iam.getPolicy(r ->
r.policyArn(policyArn));

                String policyVersion =
getPolicyResponse.policy().defaultVersionId();
                GetPolicyVersionResponse getPolicyVersionResponse = iam
                                .getPolicyVersion(r ->
r.policyArn(policyArn).versionId(policyVersion));

                // Create an IamPolicy instance from the JSON string returned
from IAM.
                String decodedPolicy =
URLDecoder.decode(getPolicyVersionResponse.policyVersion().document(),
                                StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.fromJson(decodedPolicy);

                /*
                 * All IamPolicy components are immutable, so use the copy method
that creates a
                 * new instance that
                 * can be altered in the same method call.
                 *
                 * Add the ability to get an item from DynamoDB as an additional
action.
                 */
                IamStatement newStatement = policy.statements().get(0).copy(s ->
s.addAction("dynamodb:GetItem"));

                // Create a new statement that replaces the original statement.
                IamPolicy newPolicy = policy.copy(p ->
p.statements(Arrays.asList(newStatement)));

                // Upload the new policy. IAM now has both policies.
                iam.createPolicy(r -> r.policyName(newPolicyName)
                                .policyDocument(newPolicy.toJson()));

                return
newPolicy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder().prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide.

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - GetPolicy
  - GetPolicyVersion

Code examples for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS IoT with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS IoT Developer Guide** – More information about AWS IoT.
- **AWS IoT API Reference** – Details about all available AWS IoT actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT.

C++

SDK for C++

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)
```

```
# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS iot)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_iot")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_iot.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_iot.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/iot/IoTClient.h>
#include <aws/iot/model/ListThingsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello IoT" starter application which initializes an AWS IoT client and
 *  lists the AWS IoT topics in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_iot'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //  Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //  options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfig);
        // List the things in the current account.
        Aws::IoT::Model::ListThingsRequest listThingsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingAttribute> allThings;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listThingsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::IoT::Model::ListThingsOutcome listThingsOutcome =
 iotClient.ListThings(
                    listThingsRequest);
            if (listThingsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingAttribute> &things =
 listThingsOutcome.GetResult().GetThings();
```

```
                allThings.insert(allThings.end(), things.begin(), things.end());
                nextToken = listThingsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "List things failed"
                          << listThingsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << allThings.size() << " thing(s) found." << std::endl;
        for (auto const &thing: allThings) {
            std::cout << thing.GetThingName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.IotClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListThingsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListThingsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ThingAttribute;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.paginators.ListThingsIterable;

import java.util.List;

public class HelloIoT {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello AWS IoT. Here is a listing of your AWS IoT
 Things:");
        IotClient iotClient = IotClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        listAllThings(iotClient);
    }

    public static void listAllThings(IotClient iotClient) {
        iotClient.listThingsPaginator(ListThingsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build())
            .stream()
            .flatMap(response -> response.things().stream())
            .forEach(attribute -> {
                System.out.println("Thing name: " + attribute.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + attribute.thingArn());
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.IotClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.ListThingsRequest

suspend fun main() {
    println("A listing of your AWS IoT Things:")
    listAllThings()
}

suspend fun listAllThings() {
    val thingsRequest =
        ListThingsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listThings(thingsRequest)
        val thingList = response.things
        if (thingList != null) {
            for (attribute in thingList) {
                println("Thing name ${attribute.thingName}")
                println("Thing ARN: ${attribute.thingArn}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs

- Hello AWS IoT
- Learn the basics of AWS IoT with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs
  - Use AttachThingPrincipal with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateKeysAndCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateTopicRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteTopicRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetachThingPrincipal with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListThings with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SearchIndex with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateIndexingConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS IoT with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS IoT
- Learn the basics of AWS IoT with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs
  - Use AttachThingPrincipal with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateKeysAndCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateTopicRule with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTopicRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachThingPrincipal with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListThings with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SearchIndex with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateIndexingConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello AWS IoT

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT.

C++

SDK for C++

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS iot)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_iot")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})
```

```
if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_iot.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_iot.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/iot/IoTClient.h>
#include <aws/iot/model/ListThingsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello IoT" starter application which initializes an AWS IoT client and
 *  lists the AWS IoT topics in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_iot'
```

```
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //  Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //  options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfig);
        // List the things in the current account.
        Aws::IoT::Model::ListThingsRequest listThingsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingAttribute> allThings;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listThingsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::IoT::Model::ListThingsOutcome listThingsOutcome =
 iotClient.ListThings(
                    listThingsRequest);
            if (listThingsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingAttribute> &things =
 listThingsOutcome.GetResult().GetThings();
                allThings.insert(allThings.end(), things.begin(), things.end());
                nextToken = listThingsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "List things failed"
                          << listThingsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << allThings.size() << " thing(s) found." << std::endl;
        for (auto const &thing: allThings) {
```

```
            std::cout << thing.GetThingName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.IotClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListThingsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListThingsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ThingAttribute;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.paginators.ListThingsIterable;

import java.util.List;

public class HelloIoT {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello AWS IoT. Here is a listing of your AWS IoT
 Things:");
        IotClient iotClient = IotClient.builder()
```

```
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        listAllThings(iotClient);
    }

    public static void listAllThings(IotClient iotClient) {
        iotClient.listThingsPaginator(ListThingsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build())
            .stream()
            .flatMap(response -> response.things().stream())
            .forEach(attribute -> {
                System.out.println("Thing name: " + attribute.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + attribute.thingArn());
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.IotClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.ListThingsRequest

suspend fun main() {
    println("A listing of your AWS IoT Things:")
    listAllThings()
}

suspend fun listAllThings() {
    val thingsRequest =
```

```
        ListThingsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listThings(thingsRequest)
        val thingList = response.things
        if (thingList != null) {
            for (attribute in thingList) {
                println("Thing name ${attribute.thingName}")
                println("Thing ARN: ${attribute.thingArn}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS IoT with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an AWS IoT Thing.
- Generate a device certificate.
- Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.
- Return a unique endpoint.
- List your AWS IoT certificates.
- Create an AWS IoT shadow.
- Write out state information.
- Creates a rule.
- List your rules.
- Search things using the Thing name.
- Delete an AWS IoT Thing.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an AWS IoT thing.

```
    Aws::String thingName = askQuestion("Enter a thing name: ");

    if (!createThing(thingName, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because createThing failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup("", "", "", "", "", false, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

```
//! Create an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingRequest createThingRequest;
    createThingRequest.SetThingName(thingName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.CreateThing(
            createThingRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Generate and attach a device certificate.

```
    Aws::String certificateARN;
    Aws::String certificateID;
    if (askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to create a certificate for your thing?
 (y/n) ")) {
        Aws::String outputFolder;
        if (askYesNoQuestion(
                "Would you like to save the certificate and keys to file? (y/n)
 ")) {
            outputFolder = std::filesystem::current_path();
            outputFolder += "/device_keys_and_certificates";

            std::filesystem::create_directories(outputFolder);

            std::cout << "The certificate and keys will be saved to the folder: "
                      << outputFolder << std::endl;
        }

        if (!createKeysAndCertificate(outputFolder, certificateARN,
 certificateID,
                                      clientConfiguration)) {
            std::cerr << "Exiting because createKeysAndCertificate failed."
                      << std::endl;
            cleanup(thingName, "", "", "", "", false, clientConfiguration);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "\nNext, the certificate will be attached to the thing.\n"
                  << std::endl;
        if (!attachThingPrincipal(certificateARN, thingName,
 clientConfiguration)) {
            std::cerr << "Exiting because attachThingPrincipal failed." <<
 std::endl;
            cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "",
                    false,
                    clientConfiguration);
```

```
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
//! Create keys and certificate for an Aws IoT device.
//! This routine will save certificates and keys to an output folder, if
 provided.
/*!
  \param outputFolder: Location for storing output in files, ignored when string
 is empty.
  \param certificateARNResult: A string to receive the ARN of the created
 certificate.
  \param certificateID: A string to receive the ID of the created certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createKeysAndCertificate(const Aws::String &outputFolder,
                                           Aws::String &certificateARNResult,
                                           Aws::String &certificateID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateRequest
 createKeysAndCertificateRequest;

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateKeysAndCertificate(createKeysAndCertificateRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created a certificate and keys" << std::endl;
        certificateARNResult = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn();
        certificateID = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateId();
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificateARNResult << ",
 certificate ID: "
                  << certificateID << std::endl;

        if (!outputFolder.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Writing certificate and keys to the folder '" <<
 outputFolder
                      << "'." << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Be sure these files are stored securely." << std::endl;
```

```
            Aws::String certificateFilePath = outputFolder + "/
certificate.pem.crt";
            std::ofstream certificateFile(certificateFilePath);
            if (!certificateFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening certificate file, '" <<
 certificateFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            certificateFile << outcome.GetResult().GetCertificatePem();
            certificateFile.close();

            const Aws::IoT::Model::KeyPair &keyPair =
 outcome.GetResult().GetKeyPair();

            Aws::String privateKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/private.pem.key";
            std::ofstream privateKeyFile(privateKeyFilePath);
            if (!privateKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening private key file, '" <<
 privateKeyFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            privateKeyFile << keyPair.GetPrivateKey();
            privateKeyFile.close();

            Aws::String publicKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/public.pem.key";
            std::ofstream publicKeyFile(publicKeyFilePath);
            if (!publicKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening public key file, '" <<
 publicKeyFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            publicKeyFile << keyPair.GetPublicKey();
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating keys and certificate: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Attach a principal to an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to attach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::attachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalRequest request;
    request.SetPrincipal(principal);
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 client.AttachThingPrincipal(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully attached principal to thing." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to attach principal to thing." <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Perform various operations on the AWS IoT thing.

```
    if (!updateThing(thingName, { {"location", "Office"}, {"firmwareVersion",
 "v2.0"} }, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because updateThing failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

```
   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "Now an endpoint will be retrieved for your account.\n" <<
std::endl;
   std::cout << "An IoT Endpoint refers to a specific URL or Uniform Resource
Locator that serves as the entry point\n"
   << "for communication between IoT devices and the AWS IoT service." <<
std::endl;

   askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

   Aws::String endpoint;
   if (!describeEndpoint(endpoint, clientConfiguration)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because getEndpoint failed." << std::endl;
       cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
               clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }
   std::cout <<"Your endpoint is " << endpoint << "." << std::endl;
   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "Now the certificates in your account will be listed." <<
std::endl;
   askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

   if (!listCertificates(clientConfiguration)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because listCertificates failed." << std::endl;
       cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
               clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "Now the shadow for the thing will be updated.\n" << std::endl;
   std::cout << "A thing shadow refers to a feature that enables you to create a
virtual representation, or \"shadow,\"\n"
   << "of a physical device or thing. The thing shadow allows you to synchronize
and control the state of a device between\n"
   << "the cloud and the device itself. and the AWS IoT service. For example,
you can write and retrieve JSON data from a thing shadow." << std::endl;
   askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);
```

```
    if (!updateThingShadow(thingName, R"({"state":{"reported":
{"temperature":25,"humidity":50}}})", clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because updateThingShadow failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now, the state information for the shadow will be retrieved.\n"
 << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

    Aws::String shadowState;
    if (!getThingShadow(thingName, shadowState, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because getThingShadow failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
    std::cout << "The retrieved shadow state is: " << shadowState << std::endl;

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "A rule with now be added to to the thing.\n" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Any user who has permission to create rules will be able to
 access data processed by the rule." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "In this case, the rule will use an Simple Notification Service
 (SNS) topic and an IAM rule." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "These resources will be created using a CloudFormation
 template." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Stack creation may take a few minutes." << std::endl;

    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue: ", alwaysTrueTest);
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> outputs
 =createCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME,clientConfiguration);
    if (outputs.empty()) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because createCloudFormationStack failed." <<
 std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

```
    // Retrieve the topic ARN and role ARN from the CloudFormation stack outputs.
    auto topicArnIter = outputs.find(SNS_TOPIC_ARN_OUTPUT);
    auto roleArnIter = outputs.find(ROLE_ARN_OUTPUT);
    if ((topicArnIter == outputs.end()) || (roleArnIter == outputs.end())) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because output '" << SNS_TOPIC_ARN_OUTPUT <<
        "' or '" << ROLE_ARN_OUTPUT << "'not found in the CloudFormation stack."
 << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, "",
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String topicArn = topicArnIter->second;
    Aws::String roleArn = roleArnIter->second;
    Aws::String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM '";
    sqlStatement += MQTT_MESSAGE_TOPIC_FILTER;
    sqlStatement += "'";

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now a rule will be created.\n" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Rules are an administrator-level action. Any user who has
 permission\n"
                  << "to create rules will be able to access data processed by the
 rule." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "In this case, the rule will use an SNS topic" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "and the following SQL statement '" << sqlStatement << "'." <<
 std::endl;
    std::cout << "For more information on IoT SQL, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/developerguide/iot-sql-reference.html" <<
 std::endl;
    Aws::String ruleName = askQuestion("Enter a rule name: ");
    if (!createTopicRule(ruleName, topicArn, sqlStatement, roleArn,
 clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because createRule failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, "",
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
```

```
    std::cout << "Now your rules will be listed.\n" << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue: ", alwaysTrueTest);
    if (!listTopicRules(clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because listRules failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, ruleName,
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    Aws::String queryString = "thingName:" + thingName;
    std::cout << "Now the AWS IoT fleet index will be queried with the query\n'"
    << queryString << "'.\n" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "For query information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/
latest/developerguide/query-syntax.html" << std::endl;

    std::cout << "For this query to work, thing indexing must be enabled in your
 account.\n"
    << "This can be done with the awscli command line by calling 'aws iot update-
indexing-configuration'\n"
       << "or it can be done programmatically." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/
latest/developerguide/managing-index.html" << std::endl;
    if (askYesNoQuestion("Do you want to enable thing indexing in your account?
 (y/n) "))
    {
        Aws::IoT::Model::ThingIndexingConfiguration thingIndexingConfiguration;

 thingIndexingConfiguration.SetThingIndexingMode(Aws::IoT::Model::ThingIndexingMode::REGI

 thingIndexingConfiguration.SetThingConnectivityIndexingMode(Aws::IoT::Model::ThingConnec
        // The ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration object is ignored if not set.
        Aws::IoT::Model::ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration
 thingGroupIndexingConfiguration;
        if (!updateIndexingConfiguration(thingIndexingConfiguration,
 thingGroupIndexingConfiguration, clientConfiguration)) {
            std::cerr << "Exiting because updateIndexingConfiguration failed." <<
 std::endl;
            cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME,
                    ruleName, false,
                    clientConfiguration);
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    if (!searchIndex(queryString, clientConfiguration)) {

        std::cerr << "Exiting because searchIndex failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, ruleName,
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

```
//! Update an AWS IoT thing with attributes.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param attributeMap: A map of key/value attributes/
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const std::map<Aws::String, Aws::String>
 &attributeMap,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttributePayload attributePayload;
    for (const auto &attribute: attributeMap) {
        attributePayload.AddAttributes(attribute.first, attribute.second);
    }
    request.SetAttributePayload(attributePayload);

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.UpdateThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to update thing " << thingName << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Describe the endpoint specific to the AWS account making the call.
/*!
  \param endpointResult: String to receive the endpoint result.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::describeEndpoint(Aws::String &endpointResult,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String endpoint;
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointRequest describeEndpointRequest;
    describeEndpointRequest.SetEndpointType(
            "iot:Data-ATS"); // Recommended endpoint type.

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DescribeEndpoint(
            describeEndpointRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully described endpoint." << std::endl;
        endpointResult = outcome.GetResult().GetEndpointAddress();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error describing endpoint" <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! List certificates registered in the AWS account making the call.
/*!
   \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::listCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesRequest request;
```

```
    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::Certificate> allCertificates;
    Aws::String marker; // Used to paginate results.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.ListCertificates(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
            allCertificates.insert(allCertificates.end(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().begin(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().end());
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << allCertificates.size() << " certificate(s) found." << std::endl;

    for (auto &certificate: allCertificates) {
        std::cout << "Certificate ID: " << certificate.GetCertificateId() <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificate.GetCertificateArn()
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Update the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param document: The state information, in JSON format.
```

```
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                    const Aws::String &document,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient
 iotDataPlaneClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest;
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    std::shared_ptr<std::stringstream> streamBuf =
 std::make_shared<std::stringstream>(
            document);
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetBody(streamBuf);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowOutcome outcome =
 iotDataPlaneClient.UpdateThingShadow(
            updateThingShadowRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing shadow." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while updating thing shadow."
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Get the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param documentResult: String to receive the state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::getThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                 Aws::String &documentResult,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::GetThingShadowRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    auto outcome = iotClient.GetThingShadow(request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::stringstream ss;
        ss << outcome.GetResult().GetPayload().rdbuf();
        documentResult = ss.str();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting thing shadow: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Create an AWS IoT rule with an SNS topic as the target.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param snsTopic: The SNS topic ARN for the action.
  \param sql: The SQL statement used to query the topic.
  \param roleARN: The IAM role ARN for the action.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::IoT::createTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                             const Aws::String &snsTopicARN, const Aws::String
 &sql,
                             const Aws::String &roleARN,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SnsAction snsAction;
    snsAction.SetTargetArn(snsTopicARN);
    snsAction.SetRoleArn(roleARN);

    Aws::IoT::Model::Action action;
    action.SetSns(snsAction);

    Aws::IoT::Model::TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload;
    topicRulePayload.SetSql(sql);
    topicRulePayload.SetActions({action});
```

```
    request.SetTopicRulePayload(topicRulePayload);
    auto outcome = iotClient.CreateTopicRule(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created topic rule " << ruleName << "." <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating topic rule " << ruleName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Lists the AWS IoT topic rules.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::listTopicRules(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::ListTopicRulesRequest request;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::TopicRuleListItem> allRules;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::ListTopicRulesOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.ListTopicRules(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::ListTopicRulesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            allRules.insert(allRules.end(),
                            result.GetRules().cbegin(),
                            result.GetRules().cend());

            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "ListTopicRules error: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << "ListTopicRules: " << allRules.size() << " rule(s) found."
              << std::endl;
    for (auto &rule: allRules) {
        std::cout << "  Rule name: " << rule.GetRuleName() << ", rule ARN: "
                  << rule.GetRuleArn() << "." << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Query the AWS IoT fleet index.
//! For query information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/
developerguide/query-syntax.html
/*!
  \param: query: The query string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::searchIndex(const Aws::String &query,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexRequest request;
    request.SetQueryString(query);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingDocument> allThingDocuments;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.SearchIndex(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            allThingDocuments.insert(allThingDocuments.end(),
                                     result.GetThings().cbegin(),
                                     result.GetThings().cend());
            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error in SearchIndex: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allThingDocuments.size() << " thing document(s) found." <<
 std::endl;
    for (const auto thingDocument: allThingDocuments) {
        std::cout << "  Thing name: " << thingDocument.GetThingName() << "."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return true;
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
bool
AwsDoc::IoT::cleanup(const Aws::String &thingName, const Aws::String
 &certificateARN,
                     const Aws::String &certificateID, const Aws::String
 &stackName,
                     const Aws::String &ruleName, bool askForConfirmation,
                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration)
 {
    bool result = true;

    if (!ruleName.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                              askYesNoQuestion("Delete the rule '" + ruleName +
                                               "'? (y/n) "))) {
        result &= deleteTopicRule(ruleName, clientConfiguration);
```

```
    }

    Aws::CloudFormation::CloudFormationClient
 cloudFormationClient(clientConfiguration);

    if (!stackName.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                               askYesNoQuestion(
                                       "Delete the CloudFormation stack '" +
 stackName +
                                       "'? (y/n) "))) {
        result &= deleteStack(stackName, clientConfiguration);
    }

    if (!certificateARN.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                                    askYesNoQuestion("Delete the certificate '" +
                                                     certificateARN + "'? (y/n)
 "))) {
        result &= detachThingPrincipal(certificateARN, thingName,
 clientConfiguration);
        result &= deleteCertificate(certificateID, clientConfiguration);
    }

    if (!thingName.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                               askYesNoQuestion("Delete the thing '" + thingName
 +
                                                "'? (y/n) "))) {
        result &= deleteThing(thingName, clientConfiguration);
    }

    return result;
}
```

```
//! Detach a principal from an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to detach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::detachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
```

```
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalRequest detachThingPrincipalRequest;
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetPrincipal(principal);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DetachThingPrincipal(
            detachThingPrincipalRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully detached principal " << principal << " from
 thing "
                  << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to detach principal " << principal << " from thing "
                  << thingName << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Delete a certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateID: The ID of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateId(certificateID);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DeleteCertificate(
            request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted certificate " << certificateID <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting certificate " << certificateID << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Delete an AWS IoT rule.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleOutcome outcome = iotClient.DeleteTopicRule(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted rule " << ruleName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete rule " << ruleName <<
                  ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Delete an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    const auto outcome = iotClient.DeleteThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT features.

```
import java.util.Scanner;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
```

```
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an AWS IoT Thing.
 * 2. Generate and attach a device certificate.
 * 3. Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.
 * 4. Get an AWS IoT Endpoint.
 * 5. List your certificates.
 * 6. Updates the shadow for the specified thing..
 * 7. Write out the state information, in JSON format
 * 8. Creates a rule
 * 9. List rules
 * 10. Search things
 * 11. Detach amd delete the certificate.
 * 12. Delete Thing.
 */
public class IotScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <roleARN> <snsAction>

                Where:
                    roleARN - The ARN of an IAM role that has permission to work
 with AWS IOT.
                    snsAction  - An ARN of an SNS topic.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        IotActions iotActions = new IotActions();
        String thingName;
        String ruleName;
        String roleARN = args[0];
        String snsAction = args[1];
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS IoT basics scenario.");
        System.out.println("""
            This example program demonstrates various interactions with the AWS
Internet of Things (IoT) Core service. The program guides you through a series
of steps,
            including creating an IoT Thing, generating a device certificate,
updating the Thing with attributes, and so on.
            It utilizes the AWS SDK for Java V2 and incorporates functionality
for creating and managing IoT Things, certificates, rules,
            shadows, and performing searches. The program aims to showcase AWS
IoT capabilities and provides a comprehensive example for
            developers working with AWS IoT in a Java environment.

            Let's get started...

            """);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("1. Create an AWS IoT Thing.");
        System.out.println("""
            An AWS IoT Thing represents a virtual entity in the AWS IoT service
that can be associated with
            a physical device.
            """);
        // Prompt the user for input.
        System.out.print("Enter Thing name: ");
        thingName = scanner.nextLine();
        iotActions.createIoTThing(thingName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Generate a device certificate.");
        System.out.println("""
            A device certificate performs a role in securing the communication
between devices (Things)
            and the AWS IoT platform.
            """);

        System.out.print("Do you want to create a certificate for " +thingName
+"? (y/n)");
        String certAns = scanner.nextLine();
        String certificateArn="" ;
        if (certAns != null && certAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            certificateArn = iotActions.createCertificate();
```

```
            System.out.println("Attach the certificate to the AWS IoT Thing.");
            iotActions.attachCertificateToThing(thingName, certificateArn);
        } else {
            System.out.println("A device certificate was not created.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.");
        System.out.println("""
             IoT Thing attributes, represented as key-value pairs, offer a
pivotal advantage in facilitating efficient data
             management and retrieval within the AWS IoT ecosystem.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.updateShadowThing(thingName);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Return a unique endpoint specific to the Amazon
Web Services account.");
        System.out.println("""
            An IoT Endpoint refers to a specific URL or Uniform Resource Locator
that serves as the entry point for communication between IoT devices and the AWS
IoT service.
           """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String endpointUrl = iotActions.describeEndpoint();
        System.out.println("The endpoint is "+endpointUrl);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. List your AWS IoT certificates");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        if (certificateArn.length() > 0) {
            iotActions.listCertificates();
        } else {
            System.out.println("You did not create a certificates. Skipping this
step.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Create an IoT shadow that refers to a digital
representation or virtual twin of a physical IoT device");
        System.out.println("""
            A Thing Shadow refers to a feature that enables you to create a
virtual representation, or "shadow,"
            of a physical device or thing. The Thing Shadow allows you to
synchronize and control the state of a device between
            the cloud and the device itself. and the AWS IoT service. For
example, you can write and retrieve JSON data from a Thing Shadow.
           """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.updateShadowThing(thingName);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Write out the state information, in JSON
format.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.getPayload(thingName);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Creates a rule");
        System.out.println("""
        Creates a rule that is an administrator-level action.
        Any user who has permission to create rules will be able to access data
processed by the rule.
        """);
        System.out.print("Enter Rule name: ");
        ruleName = scanner.nextLine();
        iotActions.createIoTRule(roleARN, ruleName, snsAction);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. List your rules.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.listIoTRules();
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Search things using the Thing name.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String queryString = "thingName:"+thingName ;
        iotActions.searchThings(queryString);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        if (certificateArn.length() > 0) {
            System.out.print("Do you want to detach and delete the certificate
for " +thingName +"? (y/n)");
            String delAns = scanner.nextLine();
            if (delAns != null && delAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
                System.out.println("11. You selected to detach amd delete the
certificate.");
                waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
                iotActions.detachThingPrincipal(thingName, certificateArn);
                iotActions.deleteCertificate(certificateArn);
                waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            } else {
                System.out.println("11. You selected not to delete the
certificate.");
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("11. You did not create a certificate so there is
nothing to delete.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Delete the AWS IoT Thing.");
        System.out.print("Do you want to delete the IoT Thing? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (delAns != null && delAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            iotActions.deleteIoTThing(thingName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The IoT Thing was not deleted.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The AWS IoT workflow has successfully completed.");
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }


    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS IoT SDK methods.

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.IotAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.Action;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.AttachThingPrincipalRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.AttachThingPrincipalResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.Certificate;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateKeysAndCertificateResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateThingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateThingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateTopicRuleRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateTopicRuleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteCertificateRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteCertificateResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteThingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteThingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeThingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeThingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DetachThingPrincipalRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DetachThingPrincipalResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.IotException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListCertificatesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListTopicRulesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListTopicRulesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.SearchIndexRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.SearchIndexResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.TopicRuleListItem;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.SnsAction;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.TopicRulePayload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.IotDataPlaneAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.GetThingShadowRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.GetThingShadowResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.UpdateThingShadowRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.UpdateThingShadowResponse;
import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
import java.util.regex.Matcher;
import java.util.regex.Pattern;

public class IotActions {

    private static IotAsyncClient iotAsyncClient;

    private static IotDataPlaneAsyncClient iotAsyncDataPlaneClient;

    private static final String TOPIC = "your-iot-topic";

    private static IotDataPlaneAsyncClient getAsyncDataPlaneClient() {
```

```
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                .numRetries(3)
                .build())
            .build();

        if (iotAsyncDataPlaneClient == null) {
            iotAsyncDataPlaneClient = IotDataPlaneAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return iotAsyncDataPlaneClient;
    }


    private static IotAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                .numRetries(3)
                .build())
            .build();
```

```
        if (iotAsyncClient == null) {
            iotAsyncClient = IotAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return iotAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates an IoT certificate asynchronously.
     *
     * @return The ARN of the created certificate.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT
certificate.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate details and
returns the certificate ARN.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public String createCertificate() {
        CompletableFuture<CreateKeysAndCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createKeysAndCertificate();
        final String[] certificateArn = {null};
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String certificatePem = response.certificatePem();
                certificateArn[0] = response.certificateArn();

                // Print the details.
                System.out.println("\nCertificate:");
                System.out.println(certificatePem);
                System.out.println("\nCertificate ARN:");
                System.out.println(certificateArn[0]);

            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
```

```
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return certificateArn[0];
    }

    /**
     * Creates an IoT Thing with the specified name asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to create.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT Thing with
the specified name.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the name of the thing and its ARN
value.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void createIoTThing(String thingName) {
        CreateThingRequest createThingRequest = CreateThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createThing(createThingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((createThingResponse, ex) -> {
            if (createThingResponse != null) {
                System.out.println(thingName + " was successfully created. The
ARN value is " + createThingResponse.thingArn());
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });
```

```
        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Attaches a certificate to an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to attach.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to attach a certificate to
an IoT Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message and
additional information about the Thing.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void attachCertificateToThing(String thingName, String certificateArn)
{
        AttachThingPrincipalRequest principalRequest =
AttachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .principal(certificateArn)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<AttachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest);
        future.whenComplete((attachResponse, ex) -> {
            if (attachResponse != null &&
attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                System.out.println("Certificate attached to Thing
successfully.");

                // Print additional information about the Thing.
                describeThing(thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to attach certificate to Thing.
HTTP Status Code: " +
```

```
                        attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Describes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe an IoT Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the Thing details.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    private void describeThing(String thingName) {
        DescribeThingRequest thingRequest = DescribeThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().describeThing(thingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((describeResponse, ex) -> {
            if (describeResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Thing Details:");
                System.out.println("Thing Name: " +
describeResponse.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + describeResponse.thingArn());
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to describe Thing.");
                }
            }
        });
```

```
        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Updates the shadow of an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update the shadow of an
IoT Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void updateShadowThing(String thingName) {
        // Create Thing Shadow State Document.
        String stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25,
\"humidity\":50}}}";
        SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromString(stateDocument,
StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
        UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest =
UpdateThingShadowRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .payload(data)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<UpdateThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest);
        future.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
            if (updateResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Thing Shadow updated successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to update Thing Shadow.");
                }
            }
        });
```

```
        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Describes the endpoint of the IoT service asynchronously.
     *
     * @return A CompletableFuture containing the full endpoint URL.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe the endpoint of
 the IoT service.
     * If the request is successful, it prints and returns the full endpoint URL.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public String describeEndpoint() {
        CompletableFuture<DescribeEndpointResponse> future =
 getAsyncClient().describeEndpoint(DescribeEndpointRequest.builder().endpointType("iot:Da
ATS").build());
        final String[] result = {null};

        future.whenComplete((endpointResponse, ex) -> {
            if (endpointResponse != null) {
                String endpointUrl = endpointResponse.endpointAddress();
                String exString = getValue(endpointUrl);
                String fullEndpoint = "https://" + exString + "-ats.iot.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com";

                System.out.println("Full Endpoint URL: " + fullEndpoint);
                result[0] = fullEndpoint;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
 ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return result[0];
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Extracts a specific value from the endpoint URL.
     *
     * @param input The endpoint URL to process.
     * @return The extracted value from the endpoint URL.
     */
    private static String getValue(String input) {
        // Define a regular expression pattern for extracting the subdomain.
        Pattern pattern = Pattern.compile("^(.*?)\\.iot\\.us-east-1\\.amazonaws\
\.com");

        // Match the pattern against the input string.
        Matcher matcher = pattern.matcher(input);

        // Check if a match is found.
        if (matcher.find()) {
            // Extract the subdomain from the first capturing group.
            String subdomain = matcher.group(1);
            System.out.println("Extracted subdomain: " + subdomain);
            return subdomain ;
        } else {
            System.out.println("No match found");
        }
        return "" ;
    }

    /**
     * Lists all certificates asynchronously.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list all certificates.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate IDs and ARNs.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void listCertificates() {
        CompletableFuture<ListCertificatesResponse> future =
 getAsyncClient().listCertificates();
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                List<Certificate> certList = response.certificates();
                for (Certificate cert : certList) {
                    System.out.println("Cert id: " + cert.certificateId());
                    System.out.println("Cert Arn: " + cert.certificateArn());
                }
```

```
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to list certificates.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the payload of a Thing's shadow asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to get the payload of a
Thing's shadow.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the shadow data.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void getPayload(String thingName) {
        GetThingShadowRequest getThingShadowRequest =
GetThingShadowRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<GetThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest);
        future.whenComplete((getThingShadowResponse, ex) -> {
            if (getThingShadowResponse != null) {
                // Extracting payload from response.
                SdkBytes payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload();
                String payloadString = payload.asUtf8String();
                System.out.println("Received Shadow Data: " + payloadString);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
```

```
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to get Thing Shadow payload.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Creates an IoT rule asynchronously.
     *
     * @param roleARN The ARN of the IAM role that grants access to the rule's
actions.
     * @param ruleName The name of the IoT rule.
     * @param action The ARN of the action to perform when the rule is triggered.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT rule.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void createIoTRule(String roleARN, String ruleName, String action) {
        String sql = "SELECT * FROM '" + TOPIC + "'";
        SnsAction action1 = SnsAction.builder()
            .targetArn(action)
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .build();

        // Create the action.
        Action myAction = Action.builder()
            .sns(action1)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule payload.
        TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload = TopicRulePayload.builder()
            .sql(sql)
            .actions(myAction)
            .build();
```

```
        // Create the topic rule request.
        CreateTopicRuleRequest topicRuleRequest =
CreateTopicRuleRequest.builder()
            .ruleName(ruleName)
            .topicRulePayload(topicRulePayload)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateTopicRuleResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest);
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                System.out.println("IoT Rule created successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to create IoT Rule.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Lists IoT rules asynchronously.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list IoT rules.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the names and ARNs of the rules.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void listIoTRules() {
        ListTopicRulesRequest listTopicRulesRequest =
ListTopicRulesRequest.builder().build();
        CompletableFuture<ListTopicRulesResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listTopicRules(listTopicRulesRequest);
        future.whenComplete((listTopicRulesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (listTopicRulesResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("List of IoT Rules:");
```

```
                List<TopicRuleListItem> ruleList =
listTopicRulesResponse.rules();
                for (TopicRuleListItem rule : ruleList) {
                    System.out.println("Rule Name: " + rule.ruleName());
                    System.out.println("Rule ARN: " + rule.ruleArn());
                    System.out.println("--------------");
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to list IoT Rules.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Searches for IoT Things asynchronously based on a query string.
     *
     * @param queryString The query string to search for Things.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to search for IoT Things.
     * If the request is successful and Things are found, it prints their IDs.
     * If no Things are found, it prints a message indicating so.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void searchThings(String queryString) {
        SearchIndexRequest searchIndexRequest = SearchIndexRequest.builder()
            .queryString(queryString)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SearchIndexResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().searchIndex(searchIndexRequest);
        future.whenComplete((searchIndexResponse, ex) -> {
            if (searchIndexResponse != null) {
                // Process the result.
```

```
                if (searchIndexResponse.things().isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No things found.");
                } else {
                    searchIndexResponse.things().forEach(thing ->
System.out.println("Thing id found using search is " + thing.thingId()));
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to search for IoT Things.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a principal (certificate) from an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to detach.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to detach a certificate from
an IoT Thing.
     * If the detachment is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void detachThingPrincipal(String thingName, String certificateArn) {
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest thingPrincipalRequest =
DetachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
            .principal(certificateArn)
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DetachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
```

```
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully removed
from " + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a certificate asynchronously.
     *
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete a certificate.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteCertificate(String certificateArn) {
        DeleteCertificateRequest certificateProviderRequest =
DeleteCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateId(extractCertificateId(certificateArn))
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully
deleted.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
```

```
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an IoT Thing.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteIoTThing(String thingName) {
        DeleteThingRequest deleteThingRequest = DeleteThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteThing(deleteThingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println("Deleted Thing " + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    // Get the cert Id  from the Cert ARN value.
    private String extractCertificateId(String certificateArn) {
        // Example ARN: arn:aws:iot:region:account-id:cert/certificate-id.
```

```
        String[] arnParts = certificateArn.split(":");
        String certificateIdPart = arnParts[arnParts.length - 1];
        return certificateIdPart.substring(certificateIdPart.lastIndexOf("/") +
 1);
    }
}
```

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.IotClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.Action
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.AttachThingPrincipalRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.AttributePayload
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.CreateThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.CreateTopicRuleRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DeleteCertificateRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DeleteThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DescribeEndpointRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DescribeThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DetachThingPrincipalRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.ListTopicRulesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.SearchIndexRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.SnsAction
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.TopicRulePayload
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.UpdateThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iotdataplane.IotDataPlaneClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iotdataplane.model.GetThingShadowRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iotdataplane.model.UpdateThingShadowRequest
import aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.content.ByteStream
import aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.content.toByteArray
import java.util.Scanner
import java.util.regex.Pattern
```

```
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

/**
 * Before running this Kotlin code example, ensure that your development
 environment
 * is set up, including configuring your credentials.
 *
 * For detailed instructions, refer to the following documentation topic:
 * [Setting Up Your Development Environment](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-
kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html)
 *
 * This code example requires an SNS topic and an IAM Role.
 * Follow the steps in the documentation to set up these resources:
 *
 * - [Creating an SNS Topic](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-
getting-started.html#step-create-topic)
 * - [Creating an IAM Role](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_create.html)
 */

val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
val TOPIC = "your-iot-topic"

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage =
        """
        Usage:
            <roleARN> <snsAction>

        Where:
            roleARN - The ARN of an IAM role that has permission to work with AWS
 IOT.
            snsAction  - An ARN of an SNS topic.

        """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 2) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    var thingName: String
    val roleARN = args[0]
    val snsAction = args[1]
```

```
    val scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS IoT example scenario.")
    println(
        """
        This example program demonstrates various interactions with the AWS
Internet of Things (IoT) Core service.
        The program guides you through a series of steps, including creating an
IoT thing, generating a device certificate,
        updating the thing with attributes, and so on.

        It utilizes the AWS SDK for Kotlin and incorporates functionality for
creating and managing IoT things, certificates, rules,
        shadows, and performing searches. The program aims to showcase AWS IoT
capabilities and provides a comprehensive example for
        developers working with AWS IoT in a Kotlin environment.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an AWS IoT thing.")
    println(
        """
        An AWS IoT thing represents a virtual entity in the AWS IoT service that
can be associated with a physical device.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    // Prompt the user for input.
    print("Enter thing name: ")
    thingName = scanner.nextLine()
    createIoTThing(thingName)
    describeThing(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Generate a device certificate.")
    println(
        """
```

```
        A device certificate performs a role in securing the communication
between devices (things) and the AWS IoT platform.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    print("Do you want to create a certificate for $thingName? (y/n)")
    val certAns = scanner.nextLine()
    var certificateArn: String? = ""
    if (certAns != null && certAns.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("y", ignoreCase =
true)) {
        certificateArn = createCertificate()
        println("Attach the certificate to the AWS IoT thing.")
        attachCertificateToThing(thingName, certificateArn)
    } else {
        println("A device certificate was not created.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Update an AWS IoT thing with Attributes.")
    println(
        """
        IoT thing attributes, represented as key-value pairs, offer a pivotal
advantage in facilitating efficient data
        management and retrieval within the AWS IoT ecosystem.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    updateThing(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Return a unique endpoint specific to the Amazon Web Services
account.")
    println(
        """
        An IoT Endpoint refers to a specific URL or Uniform Resource Locator that
serves as the entry point for communication between IoT devices and the AWS IoT
service.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
```

```
    val endpointUrl = describeEndpoint()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. List your AWS IoT certificates")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    if (certificateArn!!.isNotEmpty()) {
        listCertificates()
    } else {
        println("You did not create a certificates. Skipping this step.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Create an IoT shadow that refers to a digital representation or
virtual twin of a physical IoT device")
    println(
        """
        A thing shadow refers to a feature that enables you to create a virtual
representation, or "shadow,"
        of a physical device or thing. The thing shadow allows you to synchronize
and control the state of a device between
        the cloud and the device itself. and the AWS IoT service. For example,
you can write and retrieve JSON data from a thing shadow.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    updateShawdowThing(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Write out the state information, in JSON format.")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    getPayload(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Creates a rule")
    println(
        """
```

```
        Creates a rule that is an administrator-level action.
        Any user who has permission to create rules will be able to access data
processed by the rule.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Enter Rule name: ")
    val ruleName = scanner.nextLine()
    createIoTRule(roleARN, ruleName, snsAction)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. List your rules.")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    listIoTRules()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Search things using the name.")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    val queryString = "thingName:$thingName"
    searchThings(queryString)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    if (certificateArn.length > 0) {
        print("Do you want to detach and delete the certificate for $thingName?
(y/n)")
        val delAns = scanner.nextLine()
        if (delAns != null && delAns.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("y", ignoreCase =
true)) {
            println("11. You selected to detach amd delete the certificate.")
            print("Press Enter to continue...")
            scanner.nextLine()
            detachThingPrincipal(thingName, certificateArn)
            deleteCertificate(certificateArn)
        } else {
            println("11. You selected not to delete the certificate.")
        }
    } else {
        println("11. You did not create a certificate so there is nothing to
delete.")
    }
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Delete the AWS IoT thing.")
    print("Do you want to delete the IoT thing? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine()
    if (delAns != null && delAns.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("y", ignoreCase =
 true)) {
        deleteIoTThing(thingName)
    } else {
        println("The IoT thing was not deleted.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The AWS IoT workflow has successfully completed.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val deleteThingRequest =
        DeleteThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteThing(deleteThingRequest)
        println("Deleted $thingNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteCertificate(certificateArn: String) {
    val certificateProviderRequest =
        DeleteCertificateRequest {
            certificateId = extractCertificateId(certificateArn)
        }
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

private fun extractCertificateId(certificateArn: String): String? {
    // Example ARN: arn:aws:iot:region:account-id:cert/certificate-id.
```

```
    val arnParts = certificateArn.split(":".toRegex()).dropLastWhile
 { it.isEmpty() }.toTypedArray()
    val certificateIdPart = arnParts[arnParts.size - 1]
    return certificateIdPart.substring(certificateIdPart.lastIndexOf("/") + 1)
}

suspend fun detachThingPrincipal(
    thingNameVal: String,
    certificateArn: String,
) {
    val thingPrincipalRequest =
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest {
            principal = certificateArn
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully removed from $thingNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun searchThings(queryStringVal: String?) {
    val searchIndexRequest =
        SearchIndexRequest {
            queryString = queryStringVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val searchIndexResponse = iotClient.searchIndex(searchIndexRequest)
        if (searchIndexResponse.things?.isEmpty() == true) {
            println("No things found.")
        } else {
            searchIndexResponse.things
                ?.forEach { thing -> println("Thing id found using search is
 ${thing.thingId}") }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listIoTRules() {
    val listTopicRulesRequest = ListTopicRulesRequest {}

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
```

```
        val listTopicRulesResponse =
 iotClient.listTopicRules(listTopicRulesRequest)
        println("List of IoT rules:")
        val ruleList = listTopicRulesResponse.rules
        ruleList?.forEach { rule ->
            println("Rule name: ${rule.ruleName}")
            println("Rule ARN: ${rule.ruleArn}")
            println("--------------")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createIoTRule(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    ruleNameVal: String?,
    action: String?,
) {
    val sqlVal = "SELECT * FROM '$TOPIC '"
    val action1 =
        SnsAction {
            targetArn = action
            roleArn = roleARNVal
        }

    val myAction =
        Action {
            sns = action1
        }

    val topicRulePayloadVal =
        TopicRulePayload {
            sql = sqlVal
            actions = listOf(myAction)
        }

    val topicRuleRequest =
        CreateTopicRuleRequest {
            ruleName = ruleNameVal
            topicRulePayload = topicRulePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest)
        println("IoT rule created successfully.")
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun getPayload(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val getThingShadowRequest =
        GetThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { iotPlaneClient ->
        val getThingShadowResponse =
 iotPlaneClient.getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest)
        val payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload
        val payloadString = payload?.let { java.lang.String(it, Charsets.UTF_8) }
        println("Received shadow data: $payloadString")
    }
}

suspend fun listCertificates() {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listCertificates()
        val certList = response.certificates
        certList?.forEach { cert ->
            println("Cert id: ${cert.certificateId}")
            println("Cert Arn: ${cert.certificateArn}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeEndpoint(): String? {
    val request = DescribeEndpointRequest {}
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val endpointResponse = iotClient.describeEndpoint(request)
        val endpointUrl: String? = endpointResponse.endpointAddress
        val exString: String = getValue(endpointUrl)
        val fullEndpoint = "https://$exString-ats.iot.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
        println("Full endpoint URL: $fullEndpoint")
        return fullEndpoint
    }
}

private fun getValue(input: String?): String {
    // Define a regular expression pattern for extracting the subdomain.
```

```
    val pattern = Pattern.compile("^(.*?)\\.iot\\.us-east-1\\.amazonaws\\.com")

    // Match the pattern against the input string.
    val matcher = pattern.matcher(input)

    // Check if a match is found.
    if (matcher.find()) {
        val subdomain = matcher.group(1)
        println("Extracted subdomain: $subdomain")
        return subdomain
    } else {
        println("No match found")
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun updateThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val newLocation = "Office"
    val newFirmwareVersion = "v2.0"
    val attMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attMap["location"] = newLocation
    attMap["firmwareVersion"] = newFirmwareVersion

    val attributePayloadVal =
        AttributePayload {
            attributes = attMap
        }

    val updateThingRequest =
        UpdateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            attributePayload = attributePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        // Update the IoT thing attributes.
        iotClient.updateThing(updateThingRequest)
        println("$thingNameVal attributes updated successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun updateShawdowThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    // Create the thing shadow state document.
```

```
    val stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25, \"humidity
\":50}}}"
    val byteStream: ByteStream = ByteStream.fromString(stateDocument)
    val byteArray: ByteArray = byteStream.toByteArray()

    val updateThingShadowRequest =
        UpdateThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            payload = byteArray
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { iotPlaneClient ->
        iotPlaneClient.updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest)
        println("The thing shadow was updated successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun attachCertificateToThing(
    thingNameVal: String?,
    certificateArn: String?,
) {
    val principalRequest =
        AttachThingPrincipalRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            principal = certificateArn
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest)
        println("Certificate attached to $thingNameVal successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun describeThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val thingRequest =
        DescribeThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    // Print Thing details.
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val describeResponse = iotClient.describeThing(thingRequest)
        println("Thing details:")
```

```
        println("Thing name: ${describeResponse.thingName}")
        println("Thing ARN:  ${describeResponse.thingArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun createCertificate(): String? {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.createKeysAndCertificate()
        val certificatePem = response.certificatePem
        val certificateArn = response.certificateArn

        // Print the details.
        println("\nCertificate:")
        println(certificatePem)
        println("\nCertificate ARN:")
        println(certificateArn)
        return certificateArn
    }
}

suspend fun createIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val createThingRequest =
        CreateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createThing(createThingRequest)
        println("Created $thingNameVal}")
    }
}
```

Actions for AWS IoT using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS IoT actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS IoT API Reference.

Examples

- Use AttachThingPrincipal with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateKeysAndCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateTopicRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteCertificate with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTopicRule with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeThing with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachThingPrincipal with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCertificates with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListThings with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SearchIndex with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateIndexingConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AttachThingPrincipal` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachThingPrincipal`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Attach a principal to an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to attach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
```

```
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::attachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalRequest request;
    request.SetPrincipal(principal);
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 client.AttachThingPrincipal(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully attached principal to thing." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to attach principal to thing." <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a certificate to your thing

The following `attach-thing-principal` example attaches a certificate to the MyTemperatureSensor thing. The certificate is identified by an ARN. You can find the ARN for a certificate in the AWS IoT console.

```
aws iot attach-thing-principal \
    --thing-name MyTemperatureSensor \
    --principal arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/2e1eb273792174ec2b9bf4e9b37e6c6c692345499506002a35159767055278e8
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see How to Manage Things with the Registry in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Attaches a certificate to an IoT Thing asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
    * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to attach.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to attach a certificate to
an IoT Thing.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message and
additional information about the Thing.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void attachCertificateToThing(String thingName, String certificateArn)
{
       AttachThingPrincipalRequest principalRequest =
AttachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .principal(certificateArn)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<AttachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest);
       future.whenComplete((attachResponse, ex) -> {
           if (attachResponse != null &&
attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
```

```
                System.out.println("Certificate attached to Thing
 successfully.");

                // Print additional information about the Thing.
                describeThing(thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to attach certificate to Thing.
 HTTP Status Code: " +
                        attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun attachCertificateToThing(
    thingNameVal: String?,
    certificateArn: String?,
) {
    val principalRequest =
```

```
        AttachThingPrincipalRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            principal = certificateArn
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest)
        println("Certificate attached to $thingNameVal successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateKeysAndCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateKeysAndCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create keys and certificate for an Aws IoT device.
//! This routine will save certificates and keys to an output folder, if
 provided.
/*!
  \param outputFolder: Location for storing output in files, ignored when string
 is empty.
  \param certificateARNResult: A string to receive the ARN of the created
 certificate.
  \param certificateID: A string to receive the ID of the created certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createKeysAndCertificate(const Aws::String &outputFolder,
                                           Aws::String &certificateARNResult,
```

```
                                                Aws::String &certificateID,
                                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateRequest
 createKeysAndCertificateRequest;

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateKeysAndCertificate(createKeysAndCertificateRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created a certificate and keys" << std::endl;
        certificateARNResult = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn();
        certificateID = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateId();
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificateARNResult << ",
 certificate ID: "
                  << certificateID << std::endl;

        if (!outputFolder.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Writing certificate and keys to the folder '" <<
 outputFolder
                      << "'." << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Be sure these files are stored securely." << std::endl;

            Aws::String certificateFilePath = outputFolder + "/
certificate.pem.crt";
            std::ofstream certificateFile(certificateFilePath);
            if (!certificateFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening certificate file, '" <<
 certificateFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            certificateFile << outcome.GetResult().GetCertificatePem();
            certificateFile.close();

            const Aws::IoT::Model::KeyPair &keyPair =
 outcome.GetResult().GetKeyPair();

            Aws::String privateKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/private.pem.key";
            std::ofstream privateKeyFile(privateKeyFilePath);
            if (!privateKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening private key file, '" <<
 privateKeyFilePath
```

```
                        << "'."
                        << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            privateKeyFile << keyPair.GetPrivateKey();
            privateKeyFile.close();

            Aws::String publicKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/public.pem.key";
            std::ofstream publicKeyFile(publicKeyFilePath);
            if (!publicKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening public key file, '" <<
 publicKeyFilePath
                        << "'."
                        << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            publicKeyFile << keyPair.GetPublicKey();
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating keys and certificate: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an RSA key pair and issue an X.509 certificate

The following `create-keys-and-certificate` creates a 2048-bit RSA key pair and issues an X.509 certificate using the issued public key. Because this is the only time that AWS IoT provides the private key for this certificate, be sure to keep it in a secure location.

```
aws iot create-keys-and-certificate \
    --certificate-pem-outfile "myTest.cert.pem" \
```

```
    --public-key-outfile "myTest.public.key" \
    --private-key-outfile "myTest.private.key"
```

Output:

```
{
    "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/9894ba17925e663f1d29c23af4582b8e3b7619c31f3fbd93adcb51ae54b83dc2
    "certificateId":
 "9894ba17925e663f1d29c23af4582b8e3b7619c31f3fbd93adcb51ae54b83dc2",
    "certificatePem": "
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIICiTCCEXAMPLE6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgEXAMPLEAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSEXAMPLE2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYEXAMPLEb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCEXAMPLEJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDAEXAMPLEsTC0lBTSBDb25z
b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEXAMPLE25lQGFt
YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+aEXAMPLE
EXAMPLEfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
rDHudUZEXAMPLELG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAEXAMPLEWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9qEXAMPLEyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDEXAMPLEBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----\n",
    "keyPair": {
        "PublicKey": "-----BEGIN PUBLIC KEY-----
\nMIIBIjANBgkqhkEXAMPLEQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAEXAMPLE1nnyJwKSMHw4h\nMMEXAMPLEuuN/
dMAS3fyce8DW/4+EXAMPLEyjmoF/YVF/gHr99VEEXAMPLE5VF13\n59VK7cEXAMPLE67GK+y
+jikqXOgHh/xJTwo
+sGpWEXAMPLEDz18xOd2ka4tCzuWEXAMPLEahJbYkCPUBSU8opVkR7qkEXAMPLE1DR6sx2HocliOOLtu6Fkw91swQ
\GB3ZPrNh0PzQYvjUStZeccyNCx2EXAMPLEvp9mQOUXP6plfgxwKRX2fEXAMPLEDa
\nhJLXkX3rHU2xbxJSq7D+XEXAMPLEcw+LyFhI5mgFRl88eGdsAEXAMPLElnI9EesG\nFQIDAQAB
\n-----END PUBLIC KEY-----\n",
        "PrivateKey": "-----BEGIN RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\nkey omittted for security
 reasons\n-----END RSA PRIVATE KEY-----\n"
    }
}
```

For more infomration, see [Create and Register an AWS IoT Device Certificate] in the **AWS IoT Developer Guide**.

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an IoT certificate asynchronously.
    *
    * @return The ARN of the created certificate.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT
certificate.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate details and
returns the certificate ARN.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public String createCertificate() {
       CompletableFuture<CreateKeysAndCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createKeysAndCertificate();
       final String[] certificateArn = {null};
       future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               String certificatePem = response.certificatePem();
               certificateArn[0] = response.certificateArn();

               // Print the details.
               System.out.println("\nCertificate:");
               System.out.println(certificatePem);
               System.out.println("\nCertificate ARN:");
               System.out.println(certificateArn[0]);

           } else {
               Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
```

```
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return certificateArn[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createCertificate(): String? {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.createKeysAndCertificate()
        val certificatePem = response.certificatePem
        val certificateArn = response.certificateArn

        // Print the details.
        println("\nCertificate:")
        println(certificatePem)
        println("\nCertificate ARN:")
        println(certificateArn)
        return certificateArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateThing` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateThing`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingRequest createThingRequest;
    createThingRequest.SetThingName(thingName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.CreateThing(
            createThingRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a thing record in the registry

The following `create-thing` example creates an entry for a device in the AWS IoT thing registry.

```
aws iot create-thing \
    --thing-name SampleIoTThing
```

Output:

```
{
    "thingName": "SampleIoTThing",
    "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2: 123456789012:thing/SampleIoTThing",
    "thingId": " EXAMPLE1-90ab-cdef-fedc-ba987EXAMPLE "
}
```

Example 2: To define a thing that is associated with a thing type

The following `create-thing` example create a thing that has the specified thing type and its attributes.

```
aws iot create-thing \
    --thing-name "MyLightBulb" \
    --thing-type-name "LightBulb" \
    --attribute-payload "{"attributes": {"wattage":"75", "model":"123"}}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "thingName": "MyLightBulb",
    "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/MyLightBulb",
    "thingId": "40da2e73-c6af-406e-b415-15acae538797"
}
```

For more information, see How to Manage Things with the Registry and Thing Types in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an IoT Thing with the specified name asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to create.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT Thing with
the specified name.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the name of the thing and its ARN
value.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void createIoTThing(String thingName) {
       CreateThingRequest createThingRequest = CreateThingRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createThing(createThingRequest);
       future.whenComplete((createThingResponse, ex) -> {
           if (createThingResponse != null) {
               System.out.println(thingName + " was successfully created. The
ARN value is " + createThingResponse.thingArn());
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val createThingRequest =
        CreateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createThing(createThingRequest)
        println("Created $thingNameVal}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateTopicRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTopicRule`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an AWS IoT rule with an SNS topic as the target.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param snsTopic: The SNS topic ARN for the action.
  \param sql: The SQL statement used to query the topic.
  \param roleARN: The IAM role ARN for the action.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::IoT::createTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                             const Aws::String &snsTopicARN, const Aws::String
 &sql,
                             const Aws::String &roleARN,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SnsAction snsAction;
    snsAction.SetTargetArn(snsTopicARN);
    snsAction.SetRoleArn(roleARN);

    Aws::IoT::Model::Action action;
    action.SetSns(snsAction);

    Aws::IoT::Model::TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload;
    topicRulePayload.SetSql(sql);
    topicRulePayload.SetActions({action});
```

```
    request.SetTopicRulePayload(topicRulePayload);
    auto outcome = iotClient.CreateTopicRule(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created topic rule " << ruleName << "." <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating topic rule " << ruleName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a rule that sends an Amazon SNS alert

The following `create-topic-rule` example creates a rule that sends an Amazon SNS message when soil moisture level readings, as found in a device shadow, are low.

```
aws iot create-topic-rule \
    --rule-name "LowMoistureRule" \
    --topic-rule-payload file://plant-rule.json
```

The example requires the following JSON code to be saved to a file named `plant-rule.json`:

```
{
    "sql": "SELECT * FROM '$aws/things/MyRPi/shadow/update/accepted' WHERE
 state.reported.moisture = 'low'\n",
    "description": "Sends an alert whenever soil moisture level readings are too
 low.",
    "ruleDisabled": false,
    "awsIotSqlVersion": "2016-03-23",
    "actions": [{
            "sns": {
```

```
                "targetArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-
west-2:123456789012:MyRPiLowMoistureTopic",
                "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/
MyRPiLowMoistureTopicRole",
                "messageFormat": "RAW"
            }
    }]
}
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating an AWS IoT Rule in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an IoT rule asynchronously.
     *
     * @param roleARN The ARN of the IAM role that grants access to the rule's
 actions.
     * @param ruleName The name of the IoT rule.
     * @param action The ARN of the action to perform when the rule is triggered.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT rule.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void createIoTRule(String roleARN, String ruleName, String action) {
        String sql = "SELECT * FROM '" + TOPIC + "'";
        SnsAction action1 = SnsAction.builder()
            .targetArn(action)
            .roleArn(roleARN)
```

```
            .build();

        // Create the action.
        Action myAction = Action.builder()
            .sns(action1)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule payload.
        TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload = TopicRulePayload.builder()
            .sql(sql)
            .actions(myAction)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule request.
        CreateTopicRuleRequest topicRuleRequest =
CreateTopicRuleRequest.builder()
            .ruleName(ruleName)
            .topicRulePayload(topicRulePayload)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateTopicRuleResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest);
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                System.out.println("IoT Rule created successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to create IoT Rule.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIoTRule(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    ruleNameVal: String?,
    action: String?,
) {
    val sqlVal = "SELECT * FROM '$TOPIC '"
    val action1 =
        SnsAction {
            targetArn = action
            roleArn = roleARNVal
        }

    val myAction =
        Action {
            sns = action1
        }

    val topicRulePayloadVal =
        TopicRulePayload {
            sql = sqlVal
            actions = listOf(myAction)
        }

    val topicRuleRequest =
        CreateTopicRuleRequest {
            ruleName = ruleNameVal
            topicRulePayload = topicRulePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest)
        println("IoT rule created successfully.")
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteCertificate` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete a certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateID: The ID of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateId(certificateID);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DeleteCertificate(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted certificate " << certificateID <<
 std::endl;
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting certificate " << certificateID << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a device certificate

The following `delete-certificate` example deletes the device certificate with the specified ID.

```
aws iot delete-certificate \
    --certificate-
id c0c57bbc8baaf4631a9a0345c957657f5e710473e3ddbee1428d216d54d53ac9
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see DeleteCertificate in the *AWS IoT API Reference*.

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
     * Deletes a certificate asynchronously.
     *
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete a certificate.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteCertificate(String certificateArn) {
        DeleteCertificateRequest certificateProviderRequest =
DeleteCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateId(extractCertificateId(certificateArn))
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully
deleted.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteCertificate(certificateArn: String) {
    val certificateProviderRequest =
        DeleteCertificateRequest {
            certificateId = extractCertificateId(certificateArn)
        }
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteThing` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteThing`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an AWS IoT thing.
```

```
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    const auto outcome = iotClient.DeleteThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display detailed information about a thing

The following `delete-thing` example deletes a thing from the AWS IoT registry for your AWS account.

aws iot delete-thing --thing-name "FourthBulb"

This command produces no output.

For more information, see How to Manage Things with the Registry in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an IoT Thing.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteIoTThing(String thingName) {
        DeleteThingRequest deleteThingRequest = DeleteThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteThing(deleteThingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println("Deleted Thing " + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val deleteThingRequest =
        DeleteThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteThing(deleteThingRequest)
        println("Deleted $thingNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteTopicRule` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTopicRule`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an AWS IoT rule.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleOutcome outcome = iotClient.DeleteTopicRule(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted rule " << ruleName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete rule " << ruleName <<
                  ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopicRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a rule

The following `delete-topic-rule` example deletes the specified rule.

```
aws iot delete-topic-rule \
    --rule-name "LowMoistureRule"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting a Rule in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteTopicRule in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `DescribeEndpoint` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEndpoint`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe the endpoint specific to the AWS account making the call.
/*!
  \param endpointResult: String to receive the endpoint result.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::describeEndpoint(Aws::String &endpointResult,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String endpoint;
```

```
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointRequest describeEndpointRequest;
    describeEndpointRequest.SetEndpointType(
            "iot:Data-ATS"); // Recommended endpoint type.

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DescribeEndpoint(
            describeEndpointRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully described endpoint." << std::endl;
        endpointResult = outcome.GetResult().GetEndpointAddress();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error describing endpoint" <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get your current AWS endpoint

The following `describe-endpoint` example retrieves the default AWS endpoint to which all commands are applied.

```
aws iot describe-endpoint
```

Output:

```
{
    "endpointAddress": "abc123defghijk.iot.us-west-2.amazonaws.com"
}
```

For more information, see DescribeEndpoint in the *AWS IoT Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To get your ATS endpoint

The following `describe-endpoint` example retrieves the Amazon Trust Services (ATS) endpoint.

```
aws iot describe-endpoint \
    --endpoint-type iot:Data-ATS
```

Output:

```
{
    "endpointAddress": "abc123defghijk-ats.iot.us-west-2.amazonaws.com"
}
```

For more information, see X.509 Certificates and AWS IoT in the *AWS IoT Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes the endpoint of the IoT service asynchronously.
     *
     * @return A CompletableFuture containing the full endpoint URL.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe the endpoint of
 the IoT service.
     * If the request is successful, it prints and returns the full endpoint URL.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public String describeEndpoint() {
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DescribeEndpointResponse> future =
 getAsyncClient().describeEndpoint(DescribeEndpointRequest.builder().endpointType("iot:Da
ATS").build());
        final String[] result = {null};

        future.whenComplete((endpointResponse, ex) -> {
            if (endpointResponse != null) {
                String endpointUrl = endpointResponse.endpointAddress();
                String exString = getValue(endpointUrl);
                String fullEndpoint = "https://" + exString + "-ats.iot.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com";

                System.out.println("Full Endpoint URL: " + fullEndpoint);
                result[0] = fullEndpoint;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
 ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return result[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEndpoint(): String? {
    val request = DescribeEndpointRequest {}
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val endpointResponse = iotClient.describeEndpoint(request)
        val endpointUrl: String? = endpointResponse.endpointAddress
        val exString: String = getValue(endpointUrl)
        val fullEndpoint = "https://$exString-ats.iot.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
        println("Full endpoint URL: $fullEndpoint")
        return fullEndpoint
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_address(client: &Client, endpoint_type: &str) -> Result<(), Error>
 {
    let resp = client
        .describe_endpoint()
        .endpoint_type(endpoint_type)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Endpoint address: {}", resp.endpoint_address.unwrap());

    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribeThing` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeThing`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::describeThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeThingOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DescribeThing(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeThingResult &result = outcome.GetResult();
        std::cout << "Retrieved thing '" << result.GetThingName() << "'" <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "thingArn: " << result.GetThingArn() << std::endl;
        std::cout << result.GetAttributes().size() << " attribute(s) retrieved"
                  << std::endl;
        for (const auto &attribute: result.GetAttributes()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "  attribute: " << attribute.first << "=" <<
 attribute.second
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error describing thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display detailed information about a thing

The following `describe-thing` example display information about a thing (device) that is defined in the AWS IoT registry for your AWS account.

aws iot describe-thing --thing-name "MyLightBulb"

Output:

```
{
    "defaultClientId": "MyLightBulb",
    "thingName": "MyLightBulb",
    "thingId": "40da2e73-c6af-406e-b415-15acae538797",
    "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/MyLightBulb",
    "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
    "attributes": {
        "model": "123",
        "wattage": "75"
    },
    "version": 1
}
```

For more information, see How to Manage Things with the Registry in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe an IoT Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the Thing details.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    private void describeThing(String thingName) {
        DescribeThingRequest thingRequest = DescribeThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().describeThing(thingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((describeResponse, ex) -> {
            if (describeResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Thing Details:");
                System.out.println("Thing Name: " +
describeResponse.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + describeResponse.thingArn());
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to describe Thing.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val thingRequest =
        DescribeThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    // Print Thing details.
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val describeResponse = iotClient.describeThing(thingRequest)
        println("Thing details:")
        println("Thing name: ${describeResponse.thingName}")
        println("Thing ARN:  ${describeResponse.thingArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DetachThingPrincipal` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachThingPrincipal`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Detach a principal from an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to detach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::detachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalRequest detachThingPrincipalRequest;
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetPrincipal(principal);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DetachThingPrincipal(
            detachThingPrincipalRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully detached principal " << principal << " from
 thing "
                  << thingName << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to detach principal " << principal << " from thing "
                  << thingName << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a certificate/principal from a thing

The following `detach-thing-principal` example removes a certificate that represents a principal from the specified thing.

```
aws iot detach-thing-principal \
    --thing-name "MyLightBulb" \
    --principal "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/604c48437a57b7d5fc5d137c5be75011c6ee67c9a6943683a1acb4b1626bac36
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see How to Manage Things with the Registry in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Detaches a principal (certificate) from an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to detach.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to detach a certificate from
an IoT Thing.
     * If the detachment is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void detachThingPrincipal(String thingName, String certificateArn) {
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest thingPrincipalRequest =
DetachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
            .principal(certificateArn)
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DetachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully removed
from " + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detachThingPrincipal(
    thingNameVal: String,
    certificateArn: String,
) {
    val thingPrincipalRequest =
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest {
            principal = certificateArn
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully removed from $thingNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListCertificates` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListCertificates`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List certificates registered in the AWS account making the call.
/*!
   \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::listCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesRequest request;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::Certificate> allCertificates;
    Aws::String marker; // Used to paginate results.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.ListCertificates(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
            allCertificates.insert(allCertificates.end(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().begin(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().end());
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
```

```
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << allCertificates.size() << " certificate(s) found." << std::endl;

    for (auto &certificate: allCertificates) {
        std::cout << "Certificate ID: " << certificate.GetCertificateId() <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificate.GetCertificateArn()
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list the certificates registered in your AWS account

The following `list-certificates` example lists all certificates registered in your account. If you have more than the default paging limit of 25, you can use the `nextMarker` response value from this command and supply it to the next command to get the next batch of results. Repeat until `nextMarker` returns without a value.

```
aws iot list-certificates
```

Output:

```
{
    "certificates": [
        {
            "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/604c48437a57b7d5fc5d137c5be75011c6ee67c9a6943683a1acb4b1626bac36
            "certificateId":
 "604c48437a57b7d5fc5d137c5be75011c6ee67c9a6943683a1acb4b1626bac36",
```

```
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "creationDate": 1556810537.617
        },
        {
            "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/262a1ac8a7d8aa72f6e96e365480f7313aa9db74b8339ec65d34dc3074e1c31e
            "certificateId":
 "262a1ac8a7d8aa72f6e96e365480f7313aa9db74b8339ec65d34dc3074e1c31e",
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "creationDate": 1546447050.885
        },
        {
            "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:cert/
b193ab7162c0fadca83246d24fa090300a1236fe58137e121b011804d8ac1d6b",
            "certificateId":
 "b193ab7162c0fadca83246d24fa090300a1236fe58137e121b011804d8ac1d6b",
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "creationDate": 1546292258.322
        },
        {
            "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/7aebeea3845d14a44ec80b06b8b78a89f3f8a706974b8b34d18f5adf0741db42
            "certificateId":
 "7aebeea3845d14a44ec80b06b8b78a89f3f8a706974b8b34d18f5adf0741db42",
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "creationDate": 1541457693.453
        },
        {
            "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/54458aa39ebb3eb39c91ffbbdcc3a6ca1c7c094d1644b889f735a6fc2cd9a7e3
            "certificateId":
 "54458aa39ebb3eb39c91ffbbdcc3a6ca1c7c094d1644b889f735a6fc2cd9a7e3",
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "creationDate": 1541113568.611
        },
        {
            "certificateArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-
west-2:123456789012:cert/4f0ba725787aa94d67d2fca420eca022242532e8b3c58e7465c7778b443fd65e
            "certificateId":
 "4f0ba725787aa94d67d2fca420eca022242532e8b3c58e7465c7778b443fd65e",
            "status": "ACTIVE",
            "creationDate": 1541022751.983
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists all certificates asynchronously.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list all certificates.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate IDs and ARNs.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void listCertificates() {
        CompletableFuture<ListCertificatesResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listCertificates();
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                List<Certificate> certList = response.certificates();
                for (Certificate cert : certList) {
                    System.out.println("Cert id: " + cert.certificateId());
                    System.out.println("Cert Arn: " + cert.certificateArn());
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to list certificates.");
                }
```

```
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listCertificates() {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listCertificates()
        val certList = response.certificates
        certList?.forEach { cert ->
            println("Cert id: ${cert.certificateId}")
            println("Cert Arn: ${cert.certificateArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListThings` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListThings`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all things in the registry

The following `list-things` example lists the things (devices) that are defined in the AWS IoT registry for your AWS account.

```
aws iot list-things
```

Output:

```
{
    "things": [
        {
            "thingName": "ThirdBulb",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/ThirdBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
            },
            "version": 2
        },
        {
            "thingName": "MyOtherLightBulb",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/
MyOtherLightBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
            },
            "version": 3
        },
        {
            "thingName": "MyLightBulb",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/MyLightBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
```

```
            },
            "version": 1
        },
        {
        "thingName": "SampleIoTThing",
        "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/SampleIoTThing",
        "attributes": {},
        "version": 1
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list the defined things that have a specific attribute

The following `list-things` example displays a list of things that have an attribute named `wattage`.

```
aws iot list-things \
    --attribute-name wattage
```

Output:

```
{
    "things": [
        {
            "thingName": "MyLightBulb",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/MyLightBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
            },
            "version": 1
        },
        {
            "thingName": "MyOtherLightBulb",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "thingArn": "arn:aws:iot:us-west-2:123456789012:thing/
MyOtherLightBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
```

```
            },
            "version": 3
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see How to Manage Things with the Registry in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see ListThings in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_things(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_things().send().await?;

    println!("Things:");

    for thing in resp.things.unwrap() {
        println!(
            "  Name:  {}",
            thing.thing_name.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Type:  {}",
            thing.thing_type_name.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  ARN:   {}",
            thing.thing_arn.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!();
    }
```

```
    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListThings in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `SearchIndex` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SearchIndex`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Query the AWS IoT fleet index.
//! For query information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/
developerguide/query-syntax.html
/*!
  \param: query: The query string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::searchIndex(const Aws::String &query,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexRequest request;
    request.SetQueryString(query);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingDocument> allThingDocuments;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
```

```
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.SearchIndex(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            allThingDocuments.insert(allThingDocuments.end(),
                                     result.GetThings().cbegin(),
                                     result.GetThings().cend());
            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error in SearchIndex: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allThingDocuments.size() << " thing document(s) found." <<
 std::endl;
    for (const auto thingDocument: allThingDocuments) {
        std::cout << "  Thing name: " << thingDocument.GetThingName() << "."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To query the thing index

The following `search-index` example queries the `AWS_Things` index for things that have a type of `LightBulb`.

```
aws iot search-index \
    --index-name "AWS_Things" \
    --query-string "thingTypeName:LightBulb"
```

Output:

```
{
    "things": [
        {
            "thingName": "MyLightBulb",
            "thingId": "40da2e73-c6af-406e-b415-15acae538797",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "thingGroupNames": [
                "LightBulbs",
                "DeadBulbs"
            ],
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
            },
            "connectivity": {
                "connected": false
            }
        },
        {
            "thingName": "ThirdBulb",
            "thingId": "615c8455-33d5-40e8-95fd-3ee8b24490af",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
            },
            "connectivity": {
                "connected": false
            }
        },
        {
            "thingName": "MyOtherLightBulb",
            "thingId": "6dae0d3f-40c1-476a-80c4-1ed24ba6aa11",
            "thingTypeName": "LightBulb",
            "attributes": {
                "model": "123",
                "wattage": "75"
```

```
            },
            "connectivity": {
                "connected": false
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managing Thing Indexing in the *AWS IoT Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Searches for IoT Things asynchronously based on a query string.
     *
     * @param queryString The query string to search for Things.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to search for IoT Things.
     * If the request is successful and Things are found, it prints their IDs.
     * If no Things are found, it prints a message indicating so.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void searchThings(String queryString) {
        SearchIndexRequest searchIndexRequest = SearchIndexRequest.builder()
            .queryString(queryString)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SearchIndexResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().searchIndex(searchIndexRequest);
        future.whenComplete((searchIndexResponse, ex) -> {
            if (searchIndexResponse != null) {
                // Process the result.
```

```
                if (searchIndexResponse.things().isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No things found.");
                } else {
                    searchIndexResponse.things().forEach(thing ->
System.out.println("Thing id found using search is " + thing.thingId()));
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to search for IoT Things.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun searchThings(queryStringVal: String?) {
    val searchIndexRequest =
        SearchIndexRequest {
            queryString = queryStringVal
        }
```

```
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val searchIndexResponse = iotClient.searchIndex(searchIndexRequest)
        if (searchIndexResponse.things?.isEmpty() == true) {
            println("No things found.")
        } else {
            searchIndexResponse.things
                ?.forEach { thing -> println("Thing id found using search is
 ${thing.thingId}") }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `UpdateIndexingConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateIndexingConfiguration`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update the indexing configuration.
/*!
  \param thingIndexingConfiguration: A ThingIndexingConfiguration object which is
 ignored if not set.
  \param thingGroupIndexingConfiguration: A ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration
 object which is ignored if not set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateIndexingConfiguration(
        const Aws::IoT::Model::ThingIndexingConfiguration
 &thingIndexingConfiguration,
```

```
        const Aws::IoT::Model::ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration
&thingGroupIndexingConfiguration,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateIndexingConfigurationRequest request;

    if (thingIndexingConfiguration.ThingIndexingModeHasBeenSet()) {
        request.SetThingIndexingConfiguration(thingIndexingConfiguration);
    }

    if (thingGroupIndexingConfiguration.ThingGroupIndexingModeHasBeenSet()) {

request.SetThingGroupIndexingConfiguration(thingGroupIndexingConfiguration);
    }

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateIndexingConfigurationOutcome outcome =
iotClient.UpdateIndexingConfiguration(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "UpdateIndexingConfiguration succeeded." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "UpdateIndexingConfiguration failed."
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateIndexingConfiguration in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable thing indexing

The following `update-indexing-configuration` example enables thing indexing to support searching registry data, shadow data, and thing connectivity status using the AWS_Things index.

```
aws iot update-indexing-configuration
    --thing-indexing-
configuration thingIndexingMode=REGISTRY_AND_SHADOW,thingConnectivityIndexingMode=STATUS
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Managing Thing Indexing in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateIndexingConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use UpdateThing with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use UpdateThing.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an AWS IoT thing with attributes.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param attributeMap: A map of key/value attributes/
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const std::map<Aws::String, Aws::String>
 &attributeMap,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttributePayload attributePayload;
    for (const auto &attribute: attributeMap) {
```

```
        attributePayload.AddAttributes(attribute.first, attribute.second);
    }
    request.SetAttributePayload(attributePayload);

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.UpdateThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to update thing " << thingName << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To associate a thing with a thing type

The following `update-thing` example associates a thing in the AWS IoT registry with a thing type. When you make the association, you provide values for the attributes defined by the thing type.

```
aws iot update-thing \
    --thing-name "MyOtherLightBulb" \
    --thing-type-name "LightBulb" \
    --attribute-payload "{"attributes": {"wattage":"75", "model":"123"}}"
```

This command does not produce output. Use the `describe-thing` command to see the result.

For more information, see Thing Types in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the shadow of an IoT Thing asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update the shadow of an
IoT Thing.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void updateShadowThing(String thingName) {
       // Create Thing Shadow State Document.
       String stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25,
\"humidity\":50}}}";
       SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromString(stateDocument,
StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
       UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest =
UpdateThingShadowRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .payload(data)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest);
       future.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
           if (updateResponse != null) {
               System.out.println("Thing Shadow updated successfully.");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to update Thing Shadow.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val newLocation = "Office"
    val newFirmwareVersion = "v2.0"
    val attMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attMap["location"] = newLocation
    attMap["firmwareVersion"] = newFirmwareVersion

    val attributePayloadVal =
        AttributePayload {
            attributes = attMap
        }

    val updateThingRequest =
        UpdateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            attributePayload = attributePayloadVal
        }
```

```
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        // Update the IoT thing attributes.
        iotClient.updateThing(updateThingRequest)
        println("$thingNameVal attributes updated successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS IoT data with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS IoT data Developer Guide** – More information about AWS IoT data.
- **AWS IoT data API Reference** – Details about all available AWS IoT data actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs
    - Use GetThingShadow with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateThingShadow with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS IoT data with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs
  - Use GetThingShadow with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateThingShadow with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for AWS IoT data using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS IoT data actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS IoT data API Reference.

Examples

- Use GetThingShadow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateThingShadow with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `GetThingShadow` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetThingShadow`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param documentResult: String to receive the state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::getThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                 Aws::String &documentResult,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::GetThingShadowRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    auto outcome = iotClient.GetThingShadow(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::stringstream ss;
        ss << outcome.GetResult().GetPayload().rdbuf();
        documentResult = ss.str();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting thing shadow: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a thing shadow document

The following `get-thing-shadow` example gets the thing shadow document for the specified IoT thing.

```
aws iot-data get-thing-shadow \
    --thing-name MyRPi \
    output.txt
```

The command produces no output on the display, but the following shows the contents of `output.txt`:

```
{
```

```
  "state":{
    "reported":{
    "moisture":"low"
    }
  },
  "metadata":{
    "reported":{
      "moisture":{
        "timestamp":1560269319
      }
    }
  },
  "version":1,"timestamp":1560269405
}
```

For more information, see Device Shadow Service Data Flow in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the payload of a Thing's shadow asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to get the payload of a
 Thing's shadow.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the shadow data.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void getPayload(String thingName) {
```

```
        GetThingShadowRequest getThingShadowRequest =
GetThingShadowRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<GetThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest);
        future.whenComplete((getThingShadowResponse, ex) -> {
            if (getThingShadowResponse != null) {
                // Extracting payload from response.
                SdkBytes payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload();
                String payloadString = payload.asUtf8String();
                System.out.println("Received Shadow Data: " + payloadString);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to get Thing Shadow payload.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getPayload(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val getThingShadowRequest =
        GetThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { iotPlaneClient ->
        val getThingShadowResponse =
 iotPlaneClient.getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest)
        val payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload
        val payloadString = payload?.let { java.lang.String(it, Charsets.UTF_8) }
        println("Received shadow data: $payloadString")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `UpdateThingShadow` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateThingShadow`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param document: The state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::String &document,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient
 iotDataPlaneClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest;
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    std::shared_ptr<std::stringstream> streamBuf =
 std::make_shared<std::stringstream>(
            document);
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetBody(streamBuf);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowOutcome outcome =
 iotDataPlaneClient.UpdateThingShadow(
            updateThingShadowRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing shadow." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while updating thing shadow."
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a thing shadow

The following `update-thing-shadow` example modifies the current state of the device shadow for the specified thing and saves it to the file `output.txt`.

```
aws iot-data update-thing-shadow \
    --thing-name MyRPi \
    --payload "{"state":{"reported":{"moisture":"okay"}}}" \
    "output.txt"
```

The command produces no output on the display, but the following shows the contents of `output.txt`:

```
{
    "state": {
        "reported": {
            "moisture": "okay"
        }
    },
    "metadata": {
        "reported": {
            "moisture": {
                "timestamp": 1560270036
            }
        }
    },
    "version": 2,
    "timestamp": 1560270036
}
```

For more information, see Device Shadow Service Data Flow in the *AWS IoT Developers Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the shadow of an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
```

```
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update the shadow of an
IoT Thing.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void updateShadowThing(String thingName) {
       // Create Thing Shadow State Document.
       String stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25,
\"humidity\":50}}}";
       SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromString(stateDocument,
StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
       UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest =
UpdateThingShadowRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .payload(data)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest);
       future.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
           if (updateResponse != null) {
               System.out.println("Thing Shadow updated successfully.");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
               } else if (cause != null) {
                   System.err.println("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage());
               } else {
                   System.err.println("Failed to update Thing Shadow.");
               }
           }
       });

       future.join();
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateShawdowThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    // Create the thing shadow state document.
    val stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25, \"humidity
\":50}}}"
    val byteStream: ByteStream = ByteStream.fromString(stateDocument)
    val byteArray: ByteArray = byteStream.toByteArray()

    val updateThingShadowRequest =
        UpdateThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            payload = byteArray
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { iotPlaneClient ->
        iotPlaneClient.updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest)
        println("The thing shadow was updated successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS IoT FleetWise with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS IoT FleetWise Developer Guide** – More information about AWS IoT FleetWise.
- **AWS IoT FleetWise API Reference** – Details about all available AWS IoT FleetWise actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT FleetWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT FleetWise.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloFleetwise {

        public static void main(String[] args) {
            ListSignalCatalogs();
        }

        public static void  ListSignalCatalogs() {
            try (IoTFleetWiseClient fleetWiseClient =
 IoTFleetWiseClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .build()) {
```

```
                ListSignalCatalogsRequest request =
ListSignalCatalogsRequest.builder()
                        .maxResults(10) // Optional: limit per page
                        .build();

                ListSignalCatalogsIterable paginator =
fleetWiseClient.listSignalCatalogsPaginator(request);
                boolean found = false;

                for (ListSignalCatalogsResponse response : paginator) {
                    for (SignalCatalogSummary summary : response.summaries()) {
                        found = true;
                        System.out.println("Catalog Name: " + summary.name());
                        System.out.println("ARN: " + summary.arn());
                        System.out.println("Created: " + summary.creationTime());
                        System.out.println("Last Modified: " +
summary.lastModificationTime());
                        System.out.println("---------------");
                    }
                }

                if (!found) {
                    System.out.println("No AWS Fleetwise Signal Catalogs were
found.");
                }

            } catch (IoTFleetWiseException e) {
                System.err.println("Error listing signal catalogs: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main() {
    listSignalCatalogs()
}

/**
 * Lists the AWS FleetWise Signal Catalogs associated with the current AWS
 account.
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogs() {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogsRequest {
        maxResults = 10
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogs(request)
        val summaries = response.summaries

        if (summaries.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            println("No AWS FleetWise Signal Catalogs were found.")
        } else {
            summaries.forEach { summary ->
                with(summary) {
                    println("Catalog Name: $name")
                    println("ARN: $arn")
                    println("Created: $creationTime")
```

```
                    println("Last Modified: $lastModificationTime")
                    println("---------------")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS IoT FleetWise
  - Learn the basics of AWS IoT FleetWise with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs
    - Use createDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use createFleet with an AWS SDK
    - Use createModelManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use createSignalCatalog with an AWS SDK
    - Use createVehicle with an AWS SDK
    - Use deleteDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use deleteFleet with an AWS SDK
    - Use deleteModelManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use deleteSignalCatalog with an AWS SDK
    - Use deleteVehicle with an AWS SDK
    - Use getDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use getModelManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use getVehicle with an AWS SDK
    - Use listSignalCatalogNodes with an AWS SDK
    - Use updateDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
    - Use updateModelManifest with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS IoT FleetWise with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS IoT FleetWise
- Learn the basics of AWS IoT FleetWise with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs
  - Use createDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use createFleet with an AWS SDK
  - Use createModelManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use createSignalCatalog with an AWS SDK
  - Use createVehicle with an AWS SDK
  - Use deleteDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use deleteFleet with an AWS SDK
  - Use deleteModelManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use deleteSignalCatalog with an AWS SDK
  - Use deleteVehicle with an AWS SDK
  - Use getDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use getModelManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use getVehicle with an AWS SDK
  - Use listSignalCatalogNodes with an AWS SDK
  - Use updateDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
  - Use updateModelManifest with an AWS SDK

Hello AWS IoT FleetWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT FleetWise.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloFleetwise {

        public static void main(String[] args) {
            ListSignalCatalogs();
        }

        public static void  ListSignalCatalogs() {
            try (IoTFleetWiseClient fleetWiseClient =
 IoTFleetWiseClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .build()) {

                ListSignalCatalogsRequest request =
 ListSignalCatalogsRequest.builder()
                        .maxResults(10) // Optional: limit per page
                        .build();

                ListSignalCatalogsIterable paginator =
 fleetWiseClient.listSignalCatalogsPaginator(request);
                boolean found = false;

                for (ListSignalCatalogsResponse response : paginator) {
                    for (SignalCatalogSummary summary : response.summaries()) {
                        found = true;
                        System.out.println("Catalog Name: " + summary.name());
                        System.out.println("ARN: " + summary.arn());
                        System.out.println("Created: " + summary.creationTime());
                        System.out.println("Last Modified: " +
 summary.lastModificationTime());
                        System.out.println("---------------");
                    }
```

```
                }

                if (!found) {
                    System.out.println("No AWS Fleetwise Signal Catalogs were
found.");
                }

            } catch (IoTFleetWiseException e) {
                System.err.println("Error listing signal catalogs: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main() {
    listSignalCatalogs()
}

/**
 * Lists the AWS FleetWise Signal Catalogs associated with the current AWS
 account.
```

```
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogs() {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogsRequest {
        maxResults = 10
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogs(request)
        val summaries = response.summaries

        if (summaries.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            println("No AWS FleetWise Signal Catalogs were found.")
        } else {
            summaries.forEach { summary ->
                with(summary) {
                    println("Catalog Name: $name")
                    println("ARN: $arn")
                    println("Created: $creationTime")
                    println("Last Modified: $lastModificationTime")
                    println("---------------")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS IoT FleetWise with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a collection of standardized signals.
- Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles.
- Create a model manifest.
- Create a decoder manifest.
- Check the status of the model manifest.
- Check the status of the decoder.
- Create an IoT Thing.

- Create a vehicle.
- Display vehicle details.
- Delete the AWS IoT FleetWise Assets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT SiteWise features.

```
public class FleetwiseScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    static FleetwiseActions actions = new FleetwiseActions();
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(FleetwiseScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
                """
                Usage:
                    <signalCatalogName> <manifestName> <fleetId> <vecName>
 <decName>

                Where:
                    signalCatalogName     - The name of the Signal Catalog to
 create (eg, catalog30).
                    manifestName          - The name of the Vehicle Model (Model
 Manifest) to create (eg, manifest30).
                    fleetId               - The ID of the Fleet to create (eg,
 fleet30).
                    vecName               - The name of the Vehicle to create
 (eg, vehicle30).
```

```
                    decName               - The name of the Decoder Manifest to
create (eg, decManifest30).
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String signalCatalogName = args[0];
        String manifestName = args[1];
        String fleetId = args[2];
        String vecName = args[3];
        String decName = args[4];

        logger.info(
                """
                 AWS IoT FleetWise is a managed service that simplifies the
                 process of collecting, organizing, and transmitting vehicle
                 data to the cloud in near real-time. Designed for automakers
                 and fleet operators, it allows you to define vehicle models,
                 specify the exact data you want to collect (such as engine
                 temperature, speed, or battery status), and send this data to
                 AWS for analysis. By using intelligent data collection
                 techniques, IoT FleetWise reduces the volume of data
                 transmitted by filtering and transforming it at the edge,
                 helping to minimize bandwidth usage and costs.

                At its core, AWS IoT FleetWise helps organizations build
                scalable systems for vehicle data management and analytics,
                supporting a wide variety of vehicles and sensor configurations.
                You can define signal catalogs and decoder manifests that
describe
                how raw CAN bus signals are translated into readable data,
making
                the platform highly flexible and extensible. This allows
                manufacturers to optimize vehicle performance, improve safety,
                and reduce maintenance costs by gaining real-time visibility
                into fleet operations.
                """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        try {
```

```
            runScenario(signalCatalogName, manifestName, fleetId, vecName,
 decName);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario(String signalCatalogName,
                                    String manifestName,
                                    String fleetId,
                                    String vecName,
                                    String decName) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Creates a collection of standardized signals that can be
 reused to create vehicle models");
        String signalCatalogArn;
        try {
            signalCatalogArn =
 actions.createSignalCatalogAsync(signalCatalogName).join();
            logger.info("The collection ARN is " + signalCatalogArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to a validation issue: {}",
 cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles");
        logger.info(
                """
                Creating an IoT FleetWise fleet allows you to efficiently
 collect,
                organize, and transfer vehicle data to the cloud, enabling real-
time
                insights into vehicle performance and health.
```

```
                It helps reduce data costs by allowing you to filter and
prioritize
                only the most relevant vehicle signals, supporting advanced
analytics
                and predictive maintenance use cases.
                """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String fleetid;
        try {
            fleetid = actions.createFleetAsync(signalCatalogArn, fleetId).join();
            logger.info("The fleet Id is " + fleetid);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a model manifest");
        logger.info(
                """
                An AWS IoT FleetWise manifest defines the structure and
                relationships of vehicle data. The model manifest specifies
                which signals to collect and how they relate to vehicle systems,
                while the decoder manifest defines how to decode raw vehicle
data
                into meaningful signals.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String manifestArn;
        try {
            List<Node> nodes =
actions.listSignalCatalogNodeAsync(signalCatalogName).join();
            manifestArn = actions.createModelManifestAsync(manifestName,
signalCatalogArn, nodes).join();
            logger.info("The manifest ARN is {}", manifestArn);
```

```
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Create a decoder manifest");
        logger.info(
                """
                A decoder manifest in AWS IoT FleetWise defines how raw vehicle
                data (such as CAN signals) should be interpreted and decoded
                into meaningful signals. It acts as a translation layer
                that maps vehicle-specific protocols to standardized data formats
                using decoding rules. This is crucial for extracting usable
                data from different vehicle models, even when their data
                formats vary.

                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String decArn;
        try {
            decArn = actions.createDecoderManifestAsync(decName,
manifestArn).join();
            logger.info("The decoder manifest ARN is {}", decArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("5. Check the status of the model manifest");
        logger.info(
                """
                The model manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be
used
                to create or update a vehicle.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
```

```
            actions.updateModelManifestAsync(manifestName);
            actions.waitForModelManifestActiveAsync(manifestName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while waiting for the
model manifest status.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("6. Check the status of the decoder");
        logger.info(
                """
                The decoder manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be
used
                to create or update a vehicle.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.updateDecoderManifestAsync(decName);
            actions.waitForDecoderManifestActiveAsync(decName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while waiting for the
decoder manifest status.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Create an IoT Thing");
        logger.info(
                """
                AWS IoT FleetWise expects an existing AWS IoT Thing with the
same
                name as the vehicle name you are passing to createVehicle
method.
                Before calling createVehicle(), you must create an AWS IoT Thing
                with the same name using the AWS IoT Core service.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
```

```
            actions.createThingIfNotExistsAsync(vecName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.error("The resource exists: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Create a vehicle");
        logger.info(
                """
                Creating a vehicle in AWS IoT FleetWise allows you to digitally
                represent and manage a physical vehicle within the AWS
ecosystem.
                This enables efficient ingestion, transformation, and
transmission
                of vehicle telemetry data to the cloud for analysis.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.createVehicleAsync(vecName, manifestArn, decArn).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The required resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating
vehicle.", cause);
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Display vehicle details");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            actions.getVehicleDetailsAsync(vecName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Delete the AWS IoT Fleetwise Assets");
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the IoT Fleetwise Assets? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                actions.deleteVehicleAsync(vecName).join();
                actions.deleteDecoderManifestAsync(decName).join();
                actions.deleteModelManifestAsync(manifestName).join();
                actions.deleteFleetAsync(fleetid).join();
                actions.deleteSignalCatalogAsync(signalCatalogName).join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    // Handle the case where the resource is not found.
                    logger.error("The resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                } else if (cause instanceof RuntimeException) {
                    // Handle other runtime exceptions.
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    // Catch any other unexpected exceptions.
                    logger.error("An unknown error occurred.", cause);
                }
                return;
            }

            logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
            logger.info(
                    """
                    Thank you for checking out the AWS IoT Fleetwise Service Use
 demo. We hope you
                    learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own
 apps today.
                    For more AWS code examples, have a look at:
                    https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-
code-library.html
                    """);
            logger.info(DASHES);
        } else {
            logger.info("The AWS resources will not be deleted.");
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS IoT FleetWise SDK methods.

```
public class FleetwiseActions {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(FleetwiseActions.class);
    private static IoTFleetWiseAsyncClient ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient;

    private static IoTFleetWiseAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient == null) {
```

```
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                    .maxConcurrency(100)
                    .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                    .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                    .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                    .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                    .build();

            ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient = IoTFleetWiseAsyncClient.builder()
                    .httpClient(httpClient)
                    .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                    .build();
        }
        return ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Creates a signal catalog.
     *
     * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon
Resource Name (ARN) of the created signal catalog
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createSignalCatalogAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
        return deleteSignalCatalogIfExistsAsync(signalCatalogName)
                .thenCompose(ignored -> delayAsync(2000)) // Wait for 2 seconds
                .thenCompose(ignored -> {
                    List<Node> nodes = List.of(
                            Node.builder().branch(
                                    Branch.builder()
                                            .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle")
                                            .description("Root branch")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().branch(
                                    Branch.builder()
```

```
.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain")
                                            .description("Powertrain branch")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().sensor(
                                    Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                                            .description("Engine RPM")
                                            .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                            .unit("rpm")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().sensor(
                                    Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                                            .description("Vehicle Speed")
                                            .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                            .unit("km/h")
                                            .build()
                            ).build()
                    );

                    CreateSignalCatalogRequest request =
CreateSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                            .name(signalCatalogName)
                            .nodes(nodes)
                            .build();

                    CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

                    getAsyncClient().createSignalCatalog(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() !=
null ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                        if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                                                result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                                        } else {
                                                result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error creating the catalog", cause));
```

```
                                    }
                                } else {
                                    result.complete(response.arn());
                                }
                            });

                    return result;
                });
    }

    /**
     * Delays the execution of the current thread asynchronously for the
specified duration.
     *
     * @param millis the duration of the delay in milliseconds
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes after the specified
delay
     */
    private static CompletableFuture<Void> delayAsync(long millis) {
        return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            try {
                Thread.sleep(millis);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                throw new CompletionException("Sleep interrupted", e);
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified signal catalog.
     *
     * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation.
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSignalCatalogIfExistsAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
        DeleteSignalCatalogRequest request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                .name(signalCatalogName)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteSignalCatalog(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
```

```
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw new CompletionException(new
RuntimeException("Signal Catalog not found: " + signalCatalogName));
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete signal
catalog: " + signalCatalogName, cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new decoder manifest.
     *
     * @param name             the name of the decoder manifest
     * @param modelManifestArn the ARN of the model manifest
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created decoder manifest
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createDecoderManifestAsync(String name,
String modelManifestArn) {
        String interfaceId = "can0";
        NetworkInterface networkInterface = NetworkInterface.builder()
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(NetworkInterfaceType.CAN_INTERFACE)
                .canInterface(CanInterface.builder()
                        .name("canInterface0")
                        .protocolName("CAN")
                        .protocolVersion("1.0")
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM decoder.
        SignalDecoder engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(100)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
```

```
                        .startBit(0)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed decoder.
        SignalDecoder vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(101)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(16)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        CreateDecoderManifestRequest request =
CreateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .modelManifestArn(modelManifestArn)
                .networkInterfaces(List.of(networkInterface))
                .signalDecoders(List.of(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder))
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().createDecoderManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof DecoderManifestValidationException)
{
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signal decoders with validation
errors: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
```

```
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create decoder manifest: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a decoder manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder
manifest has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
        return
getAsyncClient().deleteDecoderManifest(DeleteDecoderManifestRequest.builder().name(name)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the decoder
manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a vehicle with the specified name.
     *
     * @param vecName the name of the vehicle to be deleted
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has
been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteVehicleAsync(String vecName) {
        DeleteVehicleRequest request = DeleteVehicleRequest.builder()
                .vehicleName(vecName)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteVehicle(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the vehicle:
" + cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }


    /**
     * Updates the model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to update
     */
    public void updateModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        UpdateModelManifestRequest request = UpdateModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().updateModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to update model
manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Updates the decoder manifest with the given name.
    *
    * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to update
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the update
operation is finished
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> updateDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
       UpdateDecoderManifestRequest request =
UpdateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
               .name(name)
               .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().updateDecoderManifest(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to update decoder
manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               })
               .thenApply(response -> null);
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new vehicle in the system.
    *
    * @param vecName     the name of the vehicle to be created
    * @param manifestArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the model manifest
for the vehicle
    * @param decArn      the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the decoder manifest
for the vehicle
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has
been created, or throws a
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createVehicleAsync(String vecName, String
manifestArn, String decArn) {
       CreateVehicleRequest request = CreateVehicleRequest.builder()
               .vehicleName(vecName)
               .modelManifestArn(manifestArn)
               .decoderManifestArn(decArn)
```

```
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().createVehicle(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to create vehicle: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        }
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Vehicle '{}' created successfully.",
vecName);
                        result.complete(null); // mark future as complete
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }


    /**
     * Waits for the decoder manifest to become active.
     *
     * @param decoderName the name of the decoder to wait for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder
manifest becomes active, or exceptionally if an error occurs or the manifest
becomes invalid
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForDecoderManifestActiveAsync(String
decoderName) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
        AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
        AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);
```

```
        logger.info(" Elapsed: 0s | Decoder Status: DRAFT");

        final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
            @Override
            public void run() {
                int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

                // Check status every 5 seconds
                if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                    GetDecoderManifestRequest request =
GetDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                            .name(decoderName)
                            .build();

                    getAsyncClient().getDecoderManifest(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    if (cause instanceof
ResourceNotFoundException) {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling decoder manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                    }
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder
Status: ACTIVE", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder
Status: INVALID", elapsed);
```

```
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\r# Elapsed: {}s | Decoder
Status: {}", elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every
second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }



    /**
     * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
     *
     * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForModelManifestActiveAsync(String
manifestName) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
        AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
        AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

        logger.info("Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT");

        final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
            @Override
            public void run() {
                int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();
```

```
                // Only check status every 5 seconds
                if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                    GetModelManifestRequest request =
GetModelManifestRequest.builder()
                            .name(manifestName)
                            .build();

                    getAsyncClient().getModelManifest(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    if (cause instanceof
ResourceNotFoundException) {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling model manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                    }
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status:
ACTIVE", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status:
INVALID", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}",
elapsed, status);
```

```
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every
second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }



    /**
     * Fetches the details of a vehicle.
     *
     * @param vehicleName the name of the vehicle to fetch details for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle
details have been fetched
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getVehicleDetailsAsync(String vehicleName) {
        GetVehicleRequest request = GetVehicleRequest.builder()
                .vehicleName(vehicleName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().getVehicle(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(cause); // don't rewrap
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to fetch vehicle details: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause));
                        }
```

```
                    } else {
                        Map<String, Object> details = new HashMap<>();
                        details.put("vehicleName", response.vehicleName());
                        details.put("arn", response.arn());
                        details.put("modelManifestArn",
response.modelManifestArn());
                        details.put("decoderManifestArn",
response.decoderManifestArn());
                        details.put("attributes", response.attributes());
                        details.put("creationTime",
response.creationTime().toString());
                        details.put("lastModificationTime",
response.lastModificationTime().toString());

                        logger.info("Vehicle Details:");
                        details.forEach((key, value) -> logger.info("• {} : {}",
key, value));

                        result.complete(null); // mark as successful
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }


    /**
     * Creates an IoT Thing if it does not already exist.
     *
     * @param thingName the name of the IoT Thing to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the IoT Thing has
been created or if it already exists
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> createThingIfNotExistsAsync(String thingName)
{
        IotAsyncClient iotClient = IotAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        CreateThingRequest request = CreateThingRequest.builder()
                .thingName(thingName)
                .build();

        return iotClient.createThing(request)
```

```
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        if (exception instanceof ResourceAlreadyExistsException)
{
                            logger.info(" IoT Thing already exists: " +
thingName);
                        } else {
                            throw new CompletionException("Failed to create IoT
Thing: " + thingName, exception);
                        }
                    } else {
                        logger.info("IoT Thing created: " +
response.thingName());
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the model manifest
has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        DeleteModelManifestRequest request = DeleteModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteModelManifest(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the model
manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
```

```
                });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a signal catalog.
     *
     * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the signal catalog
is deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSignalCatalogAsync(String name) {
        DeleteSignalCatalogRequest request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteSignalCatalog(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the signal
catalog: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
                });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves a list of all nodes in the specified signal
catalog.
     *
     * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to retrieve nodes
for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a
{@link List} of {@link Node} objects
     * representing all the nodes in the specified signal catalog
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<Node>> listSignalCatalogNodeAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
```

```
        ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest request =
ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest.builder()
                .name(signalCatalogName)
                .build();

        List<Node> allNodes = new ArrayList<>();

        return getAsyncClient().listSignalCatalogNodesPaginator(request)
                .subscribe(response -> allNodes.addAll(response.nodes()))
                .thenApply(v -> allNodes);
    }



    /**
     * Creates a model manifest.
     *
     * @param name             the name of the model manifest to create
     * @param signalCatalogArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal
catalog
     * @param nodes            a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created model manifest
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createModelManifestAsync(String name,
                                                              String
signalCatalogArn,
                                                              List<Node> nodes) {
        // Extract the fully qualified names (FQNs) from each Node in the
provided list.
        List<String> fqnList = nodes.stream()
                .map(node -> {
                    if (node.sensor() != null) {
                        return node.sensor().fullyQualifiedName();
                    } else if (node.branch() != null) {
                        return node.branch().fullyQualifiedName();
                    } else if (node.attribute() != null) {
                        return node.attribute().fullyQualifiedName();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unsupported node type");
                    }
                })
                .toList();
```

```
        CreateModelManifestRequest request = CreateModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .signalCatalogArn(signalCatalogArn)
                .nodes(fqnList)
                .build();


        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().createModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof InvalidSignalsException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signals that aren't valid: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create model manifest: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
     *
     * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteFleetAsync(String fleetId) {
        DeleteFleetRequest request = DeleteFleetRequest.builder()
                .fleetId(fleetId)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteFleet(request)
```

```
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the fleet: "
+ cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", fleetId);
                    return null;
                });
   }



   /**
    * Creates a new fleet.
    *
    * @param catARN  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to
associate with the fleet
    * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the
created fleet
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createFleetAsync(String catARN, String
fleetId) {
       CreateFleetRequest fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest.builder()
                .fleetId(fleetId)
                .signalCatalogArn(catARN)
                .description("Built using the AWS For Java V2")
                .build();

       CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().createFleet(fleetRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                        } else {
```

```
                            result.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("An
 unexpected error occurred", cause));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.id());
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
}
```

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT SiteWise features.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
var scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage =
        """
        Usage:
            <signalCatalogName> <manifestName> <fleetId> <vecName> <decName>

        Where:
```

```
            signalCatalogName     - The name of the Signal Catalog to create (eg,
catalog30).
            manifestName          - The name of the Vehicle Model (Model
Manifest) to create (eg, manifest30).
            fleetId               - The ID of the Fleet to create (eg, fleet30).
            vecName               - The name of the Vehicle to create (eg,
vehicle30).
            decName               - The name of the Decoder Manifest to create
(eg, decManifest30).

        """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 5) {
        println(usage)
        return
    }

    val signalCatalogName = args[0]
    val manifestName = args[1]
    val fleetId = args[2]
    val vecName = args[3]
    val decName = args[4]

    println(
        """
        AWS IoT FleetWise is a managed service that simplifies the
        process of collecting, organizing, and transmitting vehicle
        data to the cloud in near real-time. Designed for automakers
        and fleet operators, it allows you to define vehicle models,
        specify the exact data you want to collect (such as engine
        temperature, speed, or battery status), and send this data to
        AWS for analysis. By using intelligent data collection
        techniques, IoT FleetWise reduces the volume of data
        transmitted by filtering and transforming it at the edge,
        helping to minimize bandwidth usage and costs.

        At its core, AWS IoT FleetWise helps organizations build
        scalable systems for vehicle data management and analytics,
        supporting a wide variety of vehicles and sensor configurations.
        You can define signal catalogs and decoder manifests that describe
        how raw CAN bus signals are translated into readable data, making
        the platform highly flexible and extensible. This allows
        manufacturers to optimize vehicle performance, improve safety,
        and reduce maintenance costs by gaining real-time visibility
```

```
        into fleet operations.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    runScenario(signalCatalogName, fleetId, manifestName, decName, vecName)
}

suspend fun runScenario(signalCatalogName: String, fleetIdVal: String,
 manifestName: String, decName: String, vecName: String) {
    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Creates a collection of standardized signals that can be reused
 to create vehicle models")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val signalCatalogArn = createbranchVehicle(signalCatalogName)
    println("The collection ARN is $signalCatalogArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles")
    println(
        """
        Creating an IoT FleetWise fleet allows you to efficiently collect,
        organize, and transfer vehicle data to the cloud, enabling real-time
        insights into vehicle performance and health.

        It helps reduce data costs by allowing you to filter and prioritize
        only the most relevant vehicle signals, supporting advanced analytics
        and predictive maintenance use cases.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val fleetid = createFleet(signalCatalogArn, fleetIdVal)
    println("The fleet Id is $fleetid")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val nodeList = listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create a model manifest")
    println(
        """
        An AWS IoT FleetWise manifest defines the structure and
```

```
        relationships of vehicle data. The model manifest specifies
        which signals to collect and how they relate to vehicle systems,
        while the decoder manifest defines how to decode raw vehicle data
        into meaningful signals.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val nodes = listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName)
    val manifestArn = nodes?.let { createModelManifest(manifestName,
signalCatalogArn, it) }
    println("The manifest ARN is $manifestArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a decoder manifest")
    println(
        """
        A decoder manifest in AWS IoT FleetWise defines how raw vehicle
        data (such as CAN signals) should be interpreted and decoded
        into meaningful signals. It acts as a translation layer
        that maps vehicle-specific protocols to standardized data formats
        using decoding rules. This is crucial for extracting usable
        data from different vehicle models, even when their data
        formats vary.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val decArn = createDecoderManifest(decName, manifestArn)
    println("The decoder manifest ARN is $decArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Check the status of the model manifest")
    println(
        """
        The model manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be used
        to create or update a vehicle.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    updateModelManifest(manifestName)
    waitForModelManifestActive(manifestName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Check the status of the decoder")
    println(
        """
        The decoder manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be used
        to create or update a vehicle.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    updateDecoderManifest(decName)
    waitForDecoderManifestActive(decName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Create an IoT Thing")
    println(
        """
        AWS IoT FleetWise expects an existing AWS IoT Thing with the same
        name as the vehicle name you are passing to createVehicle method.
        Before calling createVehicle(), you must create an AWS IoT Thing
        with the same name using the AWS IoT Core service.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    createThingIfNotExist(vecName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Create a vehicle")
    println(
        """
        Creating a vehicle in AWS IoT FleetWise allows you to digitally
        represent and manage a physical vehicle within the AWS ecosystem.
        This enables efficient ingestion, transformation, and transmission
        of vehicle telemetry data to the cloud for analysis.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    createVehicle(vecName, manifestArn, decArn)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Display vehicle details")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    getVehicleDetails(vecName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Delete the AWS IoT Fleetwise Assets")
    println("Would you like to delete the IoT Fleetwise Assets? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim()
    if (delAns.equals("y", ignoreCase = true)) {
        deleteVehicle(vecName)
        deleteDecoderManifest(decName)
        deleteModelManifest(manifestName)
        deleteFleet(fleetid)
        deleteSignalCatalog(signalCatalogName)
    }

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        Thank you for checking out the AWS IoT Fleetwise Service Use demo. We
 hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today.
        For more AWS code examples, have a look at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-
library.html
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteVehicle(vecName: String) {
    val request = DeleteVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was deleted successfully.")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun getVehicleDetails(vehicleNameVal: String) {
    val request = GetVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vehicleNameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.getVehicle(request)
        val details = mapOf(
            "vehicleName" to response.vehicleName,
            "arn" to response.arn,
            "modelManifestArn" to response.modelManifestArn,
            "decoderManifestArn" to response.decoderManifestArn,
            "attributes" to response.attributes.toString(),
            "creationTime" to response.creationTime.toString(),
            "lastModificationTime" to response.lastModificationTime.toString(),
        )

        println("Vehicle Details:")
        for ((key, value) in details) {
            println("• %-20s : %s".format(key, value))
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createVehicle(vecName: String, manifestArn: String?, decArn: String)
 {
    val request = CreateVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
        modelManifestArn = manifestArn
        decoderManifestArn = decArn
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.createVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was created successfully.")
    }
}

/**
 * Creates an IoT Thing if it does not already exist.
 *
 * @param vecName the name of the IoT Thing to create
```

```
 */
suspend fun createThingIfNotExist(vecName: String) {
    val request = CreateThingRequest {
        thingName = vecName
    }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.createThing(request)
        println("The $vecName IoT Thing was successfully created")
    }
}

suspend fun updateDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}

/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param decNameVal the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForDecoderManifestActive(decNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetDecoderManifestRequest {
                    name = decNameVal
                }
```

```
                val response = fleetwiseClient.getDecoderManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #
\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #
\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}

/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForModelManifestActive(manifestNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
```

```
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetModelManifestRequest {
                    name = manifestNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getModelManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #
\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #
\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}

/**
 * Updates the model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to update
 */
suspend fun updateModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
```

```
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateModelManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new decoder manifest.
 *
 * @param decName             the name of the decoder manifest
 * @param modelManifestArnVal the ARN of the model manifest
 * @return the ARN of the decoder manifest
 */
suspend fun createDecoderManifest(decName: String, modelManifestArnVal: String?):
 String {
    val interfaceIdVal = "can0"

    val canInter = CanInterface {
        name = "canInterface0"
        protocolName = "CAN"
        protocolVersion = "1.0"
    }

    val networkInterface = NetworkInterface {
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = NetworkInterfaceType.CanInterface
        canInterface = canInter
    }

    val carRpmSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 100
```

```
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 16
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val carSpeedSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 101
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 0
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carRpmSig
    }

    val vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carSpeedSig
    }

    val request = CreateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = decName
        modelManifestArn = modelManifestArnVal
        networkInterfaces = listOf(networkInterface)
        signalDecoders = listOf(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder)
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createDecoderManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
```

```
}

/**
 * Deletes a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteSignalCatalog(catName: String) {
    val request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = catName
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteSignalCatalog(request)
        println(" $catName was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
 *
 * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteFleet(fleetIdVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteFleet(request)
        println(" $fleetIdVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes a model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }
```

```
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteModelManifest(request)
        println(" $nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a model manifest.
 *
 * @param name              the name of the model manifest to create
 * @param signalCatalogArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog
 * @param nodes             a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the created
 model manifest
 */
suspend fun createModelManifest(nameVal: String, signalCatalogArnVal: String,
 nodesList: List<Node>): String {
    val fqnList: List<String> = nodesList.map { node ->
        when (node) {
            is Node.Sensor -> node.asSensor().fullyQualifiedName
            is Node.Branch -> node.asBranch().fullyQualifiedName
            else -> throw RuntimeException("Unsupported node type")
        }
    }

    val request = CreateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        signalCatalogArn = signalCatalogArnVal
        nodes = fqnList
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createModelManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}

/**
 * Lists the signal catalog nodes asynchronously.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog
 * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains a list of nodes in
 the specified signal catalog
```

```
 * @throws CompletionException if an exception occurs during the asynchronous
 operation
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName: String): List<Node>? {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogNodes(request)
        return response.nodes
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new fleet.
 *
 * @param catARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to
 associate with the fleet
 * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
 * @return the ID of the created fleet
 */
suspend fun createFleet(catARN: String, fleetIdVal: String): String {
    val fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
        signalCatalogArn = catARN
        description = "Built using the AWS For Kotlin"
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createFleet(fleetRequest)
        return response.id
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to create the branch
 vehicle in
 * @return the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the created signal catalog
 */
```

```
suspend fun createbranchVehicle(signalCatalogName: String): String {
    delay(2000) // Wait for 2 seconds
    val branchVehicle = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle"
        description = "Root branch"
    }

    val branchPowertrain = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain"
        description = "Powertrain branch"
    }

    val sensorRPM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        description = "Engine RPM"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "rpm"
    }

    val sensorKM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        description = "Vehicle Speed"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "km/h"
    }

    // Wrap each specific node type (Branch and Sensor) into the sealed Node
 class
    // so they can be included in the CreateSignalCatalogRequest.
    val myNodes = listOf(
        Node.Branch(branchVehicle),
        Node.Branch(branchPowertrain),
        Node.Sensor(sensorRPM),
        Node.Sensor(sensorKM),
    )

    val request = CreateSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
        nodes = myNodes
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createSignalCatalog(request)
```

```
        return response.arn
    }
}

private fun waitForInputToContinue(scanner: Scanner) {
    while (true) {
        println("")
        println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:")
        val input = scanner.nextLine()

        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("c", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else {
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }
}
```

Actions for AWS IoT FleetWise using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS IoT FleetWise actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS IoT FleetWise API Reference.

Examples

- Use createDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
- Use createFleet with an AWS SDK
- Use createModelManifest with an AWS SDK
- Use createSignalCatalog with an AWS SDK
- Use createVehicle with an AWS SDK
- Use deleteDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
- Use deleteFleet with an AWS SDK
- Use deleteModelManifest with an AWS SDK

- Use deleteSignalCatalog with an AWS SDK
- Use deleteVehicle with an AWS SDK
- Use getDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
- Use getModelManifest with an AWS SDK
- Use getVehicle with an AWS SDK
- Use listSignalCatalogNodes with an AWS SDK
- Use updateDecoderManifest with an AWS SDK
- Use updateModelManifest with an AWS SDK

Use `createDecoderManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `createDecoderManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new decoder manifest.
    *
    * @param name             the name of the decoder manifest
    * @param modelManifestArn the ARN of the model manifest
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created decoder manifest
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDecoderManifestAsync(String name,
String modelManifestArn) {
       String interfaceId = "can0";
       NetworkInterface networkInterface = NetworkInterface.builder()
               .interfaceId(interfaceId)
               .type(NetworkInterfaceType.CAN_INTERFACE)
               .canInterface(CanInterface.builder()
                       .name("canInterface0")
```

```
                        .protocolName("CAN")
                        .protocolVersion("1.0")
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM decoder.
        SignalDecoder engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(100)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(0)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed decoder.
        SignalDecoder vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(101)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(16)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        CreateDecoderManifestRequest request =
CreateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .modelManifestArn(modelManifestArn)
                .networkInterfaces(List.of(networkInterface))
                .signalDecoders(List.of(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder))
                .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().createDecoderManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof DecoderManifestValidationException)
{
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signal decoders with validation
errors: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create decoder manifest: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see createDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
```

```
 * Creates a new decoder manifest.
 *
 * @param decName             the name of the decoder manifest
 * @param modelManifestArnVal the ARN of the model manifest
 * @return the ARN of the decoder manifest
 */
suspend fun createDecoderManifest(decName: String, modelManifestArnVal: String?):
 String {
    val interfaceIdVal = "can0"

    val canInter = CanInterface {
        name = "canInterface0"
        protocolName = "CAN"
        protocolVersion = "1.0"
    }

    val networkInterface = NetworkInterface {
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = NetworkInterfaceType.CanInterface
        canInterface = canInter
    }

    val carRpmSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 100
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 16
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val carSpeedSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 101
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 0
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
```

```
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carRpmSig
    }

    val vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carSpeedSig
    }

    val request = CreateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = decName
        modelManifestArn = modelManifestArnVal
        networkInterfaces = listOf(networkInterface)
        signalDecoders = listOf(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder)
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createDecoderManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `createFleet` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `createFleet`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new fleet.
    *
    * @param catARN  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to
associate with the fleet
    * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the
created fleet
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createFleetAsync(String catARN, String
fleetId) {
       CreateFleetRequest fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest.builder()
               .fleetId(fleetId)
               .signalCatalogArn(catARN)
               .description("Built using the AWS For Java V2")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().createFleet(fleetRequest)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                       } else {
                           result.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("An
unexpected error occurred", cause));
                       }
                   } else {
                       result.complete(response.id());
                   }
               });

       return result;
   }
```

- For API details, see createFleet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new fleet.
 *
 * @param catARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to
 associate with the fleet
 * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
 * @return the ID of the created fleet
 */
suspend fun createFleet(catARN: String, fleetIdVal: String): String {
    val fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
        signalCatalogArn = catARN
        description = "Built using the AWS For Kotlin"
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createFleet(fleetRequest)
        return response.id
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createFleet in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `createModelManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `createModelManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a model manifest.
    *
    * @param name             the name of the model manifest to create
    * @param signalCatalogArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal
catalog
    * @param nodes            a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created model manifest
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createModelManifestAsync(String name,
                                                             String
signalCatalogArn,
                                                             List<Node> nodes) {
       // Extract the fully qualified names (FQNs) from each Node in the
provided list.
       List<String> fqnList = nodes.stream()
               .map(node -> {
                   if (node.sensor() != null) {
                       return node.sensor().fullyQualifiedName();
                   } else if (node.branch() != null) {
                       return node.branch().fullyQualifiedName();
                   } else if (node.attribute() != null) {
                       return node.attribute().fullyQualifiedName();
                   } else {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Unsupported node type");
                   }
               })
               .toList();

       CreateModelManifestRequest request = CreateModelManifestRequest.builder()
```

```
                .name(name)
                .signalCatalogArn(signalCatalogArn)
                .nodes(fqnList)
                .build();


        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().createModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof InvalidSignalsException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signals that aren't valid: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create model manifest: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see createModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a model manifest.
 *
 * @param name              the name of the model manifest to create
 * @param signalCatalogArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog
 * @param nodes             a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the created
 model manifest
 */
suspend fun createModelManifest(nameVal: String, signalCatalogArnVal: String,
 nodesList: List<Node>): String {
    val fqnList: List<String> = nodesList.map { node ->
        when (node) {
            is Node.Sensor -> node.asSensor().fullyQualifiedName
            is Node.Branch -> node.asBranch().fullyQualifiedName
            else -> throw RuntimeException("Unsupported node type")
        }
    }

    val request = CreateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        signalCatalogArn = signalCatalogArnVal
        nodes = fqnList
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createModelManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `createSignalCatalog` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `createSignalCatalog`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a signal catalog.
    *
    * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon
Resource Name (ARN) of the created signal catalog
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSignalCatalogAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
       return deleteSignalCatalogIfExistsAsync(signalCatalogName)
               .thenCompose(ignored -> delayAsync(2000)) // Wait for 2 seconds
               .thenCompose(ignored -> {
                   List<Node> nodes = List.of(
                           Node.builder().branch(
                                   Branch.builder()
                                           .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle")
                                           .description("Root branch")
                                           .build()
                           ).build(),
                           Node.builder().branch(
                                   Branch.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain")
                                           .description("Powertrain branch")
                                           .build()
                           ).build(),
                           Node.builder().sensor(
                                   Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                                           .description("Engine RPM")
```

```
                                            .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                            .unit("rpm")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().sensor(
                                    Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                                            .description("Vehicle Speed")
                                            .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                            .unit("km/h")
                                            .build()
                            ).build()
                    );

                    CreateSignalCatalogRequest request =
CreateSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                            .name(signalCatalogName)
                            .nodes(nodes)
                            .build();

                    CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

                    getAsyncClient().createSignalCatalog(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() !=
null ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                        if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                                            result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                                        } else {
                                            result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error creating the catalog", cause));
                                        }
                                } else {
                                        result.complete(response.arn());
                                }
                            });

                    return result;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see createSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to create the branch
 vehicle in
 * @return the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the created signal catalog
 */
suspend fun createbranchVehicle(signalCatalogName: String): String {
    delay(2000) // Wait for 2 seconds
    val branchVehicle = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle"
        description = "Root branch"
    }

    val branchPowertrain = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain"
        description = "Powertrain branch"
    }

    val sensorRPM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        description = "Engine RPM"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "rpm"
    }

    val sensorKM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
```

```
        description = "Vehicle Speed"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "km/h"
    }

    // Wrap each specific node type (Branch and Sensor) into the sealed Node
 class
    // so they can be included in the CreateSignalCatalogRequest.
    val myNodes = listOf(
        Node.Branch(branchVehicle),
        Node.Branch(branchPowertrain),
        Node.Sensor(sensorRPM),
        Node.Sensor(sensorKM),
    )

    val request = CreateSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
        nodes = myNodes
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createSignalCatalog(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `createVehicle` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `createVehicle`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new vehicle in the system.
    *
    * @param vecName     the name of the vehicle to be created
    * @param manifestArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the model manifest
for the vehicle
    * @param decArn      the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the decoder manifest
for the vehicle
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has
been created, or throws a
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createVehicleAsync(String vecName, String
manifestArn, String decArn) {
       CreateVehicleRequest request = CreateVehicleRequest.builder()
               .vehicleName(vecName)
               .modelManifestArn(manifestArn)
               .decoderManifestArn(decArn)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().createVehicle(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                       } else {
                           result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to create vehicle: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                       }
                   } else {
                       logger.info("Vehicle '{}' created successfully.",
vecName);
                       result.complete(null); // mark future as complete
                   }
               });

       return result;
   }
```

- For API details, see createVehicle in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createVehicle(vecName: String, manifestArn: String?, decArn: String)
 {
    val request = CreateVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
        modelManifestArn = manifestArn
        decoderManifestArn = decArn
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.createVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was created successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createVehicle in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `deleteDecoderManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `deleteDecoderManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a decoder manifest.
    *
    * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder
manifest has been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
       return
getAsyncClient().deleteDecoderManifest(DeleteDecoderManifestRequest.builder().name(name)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                       }
                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the decoder
manifest: " + cause);
                   }
                   return null;
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see deleteDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `deleteFleet` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `deleteFleet`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
     *
     * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteFleetAsync(String fleetId) {
        DeleteFleetRequest request = DeleteFleetRequest.builder()
                .fleetId(fleetId)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteFleet(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the fleet: "
+ cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", fleetId);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteFleet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
 *
```

```
 * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteFleet(fleetIdVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteFleet(request)
        println(" $fleetIdVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteFleet in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `deleteModelManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `deleteModelManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the model manifest
 has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        DeleteModelManifestRequest request = DeleteModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
```

```
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteModelManifest(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
 exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the model
 manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
```

```
        fleetwiseClient.deleteModelManifest(request)
        println(" $nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `deleteSignalCatalog` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `deleteSignalCatalog`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a signal catalog.
    *
    * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the signal catalog
is deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSignalCatalogAsync(String name) {
       DeleteSignalCatalogRequest request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
               .name(name)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteSignalCatalog(request)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
```

```
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the signal
 catalog: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteSignalCatalog(catName: String) {
    val request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = catName
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteSignalCatalog(request)
        println(" $catName was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `deleteVehicle` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `deleteVehicle`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a vehicle with the specified name.
    *
    * @param vecName the name of the vehicle to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has
been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteVehicleAsync(String vecName) {
       DeleteVehicleRequest request = DeleteVehicleRequest.builder()
               .vehicleName(vecName)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteVehicle(request)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                       }
                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the vehicle:
" + cause);
                   }
                   return null;
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see deleteVehicle in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteVehicle(vecName: String) {
    val request = DeleteVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was deleted successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteVehicle in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `getDecoderManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `getDecoderManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Waits for the decoder manifest to become active.
    *
    * @param decoderName the name of the decoder to wait for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder
manifest becomes active, or exceptionally if an error occurs or the manifest
becomes invalid
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForDecoderManifestActiveAsync(String
decoderName) {
       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

       ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
       AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
       AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

       logger.info(" Elapsed: 0s | Decoder Status: DRAFT");

       final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
           @Override
           public void run() {
               int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

               // Check status every 5 seconds
               if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                   GetDecoderManifestRequest request =
GetDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                           .name(decoderName)
                           .build();

                   getAsyncClient().getDecoderManifest(request)
                           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                               if (exception != null) {
                                   Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                   scheduler.shutdown();
                                   if (cause instanceof
ResourceNotFoundException) {
                                       result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
```

```
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling decoder manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                    }
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder
Status: ACTIVE", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder
Status: INVALID", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\r# Elapsed: {}s | Decoder
Status: {}", elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every
second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see getDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param decNameVal the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForDecoderManifestActive(decNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetDecoderManifestRequest {
                    name = decNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getDecoderManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #
\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
```

```
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #
\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see getDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `getModelManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `getModelManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
     *
     * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForModelManifestActiveAsync(String
manifestName) {
       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

       ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
       AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
       AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

       logger.info("Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT");

       final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
           @Override
           public void run() {
               int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

               // Only check status every 5 seconds
               if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                   GetModelManifestRequest request =
GetModelManifestRequest.builder()
                           .name(manifestName)
                           .build();

                   getAsyncClient().getModelManifest(request)
                           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                               if (exception != null) {
                                   Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                   scheduler.shutdown();
                                   if (cause instanceof
ResourceNotFoundException) {
                                       result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                   } else {
                                       result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling model manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                   }
                                   return;
                               }

                               ManifestStatus status = response.status();
```

```
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status:
ACTIVE", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status:
INVALID", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}",
elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every
second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see getModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForModelManifestActive(manifestNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetModelManifestRequest {
                    name = manifestNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getModelManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #
\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
```

```
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #
\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see getModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `getVehicle` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `getVehicle`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Fetches the details of a vehicle.
     *
     * @param vehicleName the name of the vehicle to fetch details for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle
 details have been fetched
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getVehicleDetailsAsync(String vehicleName) {
        GetVehicleRequest request = GetVehicleRequest.builder()
                .vehicleName(vehicleName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().getVehicle(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(cause); // don't rewrap
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to fetch vehicle details: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause));
                        }
                    } else {
                        Map<String, Object> details = new HashMap<>();
                        details.put("vehicleName", response.vehicleName());
                        details.put("arn", response.arn());
                        details.put("modelManifestArn",
response.modelManifestArn());
                        details.put("decoderManifestArn",
response.decoderManifestArn());
                        details.put("attributes", response.attributes());
                        details.put("creationTime",
response.creationTime().toString());
                        details.put("lastModificationTime",
response.lastModificationTime().toString());

                        logger.info("Vehicle Details:");
                        details.forEach((key, value) -> logger.info("• {} : {}",
key, value));

                        result.complete(null); // mark as successful
                    }
                });

        return result;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see getVehicle in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getVehicleDetails(vehicleNameVal: String) {
    val request = GetVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vehicleNameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.getVehicle(request)
        val details = mapOf(
            "vehicleName" to response.vehicleName,
            "arn" to response.arn,
            "modelManifestArn" to response.modelManifestArn,
            "decoderManifestArn" to response.decoderManifestArn,
            "attributes" to response.attributes.toString(),
            "creationTime" to response.creationTime.toString(),
            "lastModificationTime" to response.lastModificationTime.toString(),
        )

        println("Vehicle Details:")
        for ((key, value) in details) {
            println("• %-20s : %s".format(key, value))
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see getVehicle in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `listSignalCatalogNodes` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `listSignalCatalogNodes`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves a list of all nodes in the specified signal
catalog.
    *
    * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to retrieve nodes
for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a
{@link List} of {@link Node} objects
    * representing all the nodes in the specified signal catalog
    */
   public CompletableFuture<List<Node>> listSignalCatalogNodeAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
       ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest request =
ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest.builder()
               .name(signalCatalogName)
               .build();

       List<Node> allNodes = new ArrayList<>();

       return getAsyncClient().listSignalCatalogNodesPaginator(request)
               .subscribe(response -> allNodes.addAll(response.nodes()))
               .thenApply(v -> allNodes);
   }
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogNodes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Lists the signal catalog nodes asynchronously.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog
 * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains a list of nodes in
 the specified signal catalog
 * @throws CompletionException if an exception occurs during the asynchronous
 operation
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName: String): List<Node>? {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogNodes(request)
        return response.nodes
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogNodes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `updateDecoderManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `updateDecoderManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the decoder manifest with the given name.
    *
    * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to update
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the update
operation is finished
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> updateDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
       UpdateDecoderManifestRequest request =
UpdateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
               .name(name)
               .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().updateDecoderManifest(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to update decoder
manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               })
               .thenApply(response -> null);
   }
```

- For API details, see updateDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see updateDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `updateModelManifest` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `updateModelManifest`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to update
     */
    public void updateModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        UpdateModelManifestRequest request = UpdateModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().updateModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to update model
 manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see updateModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Updates the model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to update
 */
suspend fun updateModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
```

```
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateModelManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see updateModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS IoT SiteWise with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS IoT SiteWise Developer Guide** – More information about AWS IoT SiteWise.
- **AWS IoT SiteWise API Reference** – Details about all available AWS IoT SiteWise actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT SiteWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT SiteWise.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloSitewise {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloSitewise.class);
    public static void main(String[] args) {
         fetchAssetModels();
    }

    /**
     * Fetches asset models using the provided {@link IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient}.
     */
    public static void fetchAssetModels() {
        IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient siteWiseAsyncClient =
 IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient.create();
        ListAssetModelsRequest assetModelsRequest =
 ListAssetModelsRequest.builder()
            .assetModelTypes(AssetModelType.ASSET_MODEL)
            .build();

        // Asynchronous paginator - process paginated results.
        ListAssetModelsPublisher listModelsPaginator =
 siteWiseAsyncClient.listAssetModelsPaginator(assetModelsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listModelsPaginator.subscribe(response -
> {
            response.assetModelSummaries().forEach(assetSummary ->
                logger.info("Asset Model Name: {} ", assetSummary.name())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListAssetModels,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";

// Call ListDocuments and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient();
  const listAssetModelsPaginated = [];
  console.log(
    "Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n",
  );
  try {
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListAssetModels({ client }, { maxResults: 5 });
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listAssetModelsPaginated.push(...page.assetModelSummaries);
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(`There was a problem saying hello: ${caught.message}`);
    throw caught;
  }
  for (const { name, creationDate } of listAssetModelsPaginated) {
    console.log(`${name} - ${creationDate}`);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
```

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_iot_sitewise(iot_sitewise_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS IoT SiteWise
    client and list the asset models in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param iot_sitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise Client object. This
 object wraps
                            the low-level AWS IoT SiteWise service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS IoT SiteWise! Let's list some of your asset models:\n")
    paginator = iot_sitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10})

    asset_model_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for asset_model in page["assetModelSummaries"]:
            asset_model_names.append(asset_model["name"])

    print(f"{len(asset_model_names)} asset model(s) retrieved.")
```

```
    for asset_model_name in asset_model_names:
        print(f"\t{asset_model_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_iot_sitewise(boto3.client("iotsitewise"))
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS IoT SiteWise
  - Learn the basics of AWS IoT SiteWise with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs
    - Use BatchPutAssetPropertyValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateAsset with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreatePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteAsset with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeletePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetAssetPropertyValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListAssetModels with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS IoT SiteWise with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS IoT SiteWise
- Learn the basics of AWS IoT SiteWise with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs
  - Use BatchPutAssetPropertyValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateAsset with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreatePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAsset with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeletePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetAssetPropertyValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListAssetModels with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello AWS IoT SiteWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT SiteWise.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloSitewise {
```

```
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloSitewise.class);
    public static void main(String[] args) {
         fetchAssetModels();
    }

    /**
     * Fetches asset models using the provided {@link IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient}.
     */
    public static void fetchAssetModels() {
        IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient siteWiseAsyncClient =
 IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient.create();
        ListAssetModelsRequest assetModelsRequest =
 ListAssetModelsRequest.builder()
            .assetModelTypes(AssetModelType.ASSET_MODEL)
            .build();

        // Asynchronous paginator - process paginated results.
        ListAssetModelsPublisher listModelsPaginator =
 siteWiseAsyncClient.listAssetModelsPaginator(assetModelsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listModelsPaginator.subscribe(response -
> {
            response.assetModelSummaries().forEach(assetSummary ->
                logger.info("Asset Model Name: {} ", assetSummary.name())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListAssetModels,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";

// Call ListDocuments and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient();
  const listAssetModelsPaginated = [];
  console.log(
    "Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n",
  );
  try {
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListAssetModels({ client }, { maxResults: 5 });
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listAssetModelsPaginated.push(...page.assetModelSummaries);
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(`There was a problem saying hello: ${caught.message}`);
    throw caught;
  }
  for (const { name, creationDate } of listAssetModelsPaginated) {
    console.log(`${name} - ${creationDate}`);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_iot_sitewise(iot_sitewise_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS IoT SiteWise
    client and list the asset models in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param iot_sitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise Client object. This
 object wraps
                                the low-level AWS IoT SiteWise service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS IoT SiteWise! Let's list some of your asset models:\n")
    paginator = iot_sitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10})

    asset_model_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for asset_model in page["assetModelSummaries"]:
            asset_model_names.append(asset_model["name"])

    print(f"{len(asset_model_names)} asset model(s) retrieved.")
    for asset_model_name in asset_model_names:
        print(f"\t{asset_model_name}")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_iot_sitewise(boto3.client("iotsitewise"))
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS IoT SiteWise with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the property ID values.
- Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the value of the AWS IoT SiteWise Asset property.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Describe the AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT SiteWise features.

```
public class SitewiseScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
```

```
   private static final Logger logger =
LoggerFactory.getLogger(SitewiseScenario.class);
   static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

   private static final String ROLES_STACK = "RoleSitewise";

   static SitewiseActions sitewiseActions = new SitewiseActions();

   public static void main(String[] args) throws Throwable {
       Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
       String contactEmail = "user@mydomain.com"; // Change email address.
       String assetModelName = "MyAssetModel1";
       String assetName = "MyAsset1" ;
       String portalName = "MyPortal1" ;
       String gatewayName = "MyGateway1" ;
       String myThing =  "MyThing1" ;

       logger.info("""
           AWS IoT SiteWise is a fully managed software-as-a-service (SaaS)
that
           makes it easy to collect, store, organize, and monitor data from
industrial equipment and processes.
           It is designed to help industrial and manufacturing organizations
collect data from their equipment and
           processes, and use that data to make informed decisions about their
operations.

           One of the key features of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to connect
to a wide range of industrial
           equipment and systems, including programmable logic controllers
(PLCs), sensors, and other
           industrial devices. It can collect data from these devices and
organize it into a unified data model,
           making it easier to analyze and gain insights from the data. AWS IoT
SiteWise also provides tools for
           visualizing the data, setting up alarms and alerts, and generating
reports.

           Another key feature of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to scale to
handle large volumes of data.
           It can collect and store data from thousands of devices and process
millions of data points per second,
           making it suitable for large-scale industrial operations.
Additionally, AWS IoT SiteWise is designed
```

```
            to be secure and compliant, with features like role-based access
controls, data encryption,
            and integration with other AWS services for additional security and
compliance features.

            Let's get started...
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        try {
            runScenario(assetModelName, assetName, portalName, contactEmail,
gatewayName, myThing);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
           logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void runScenario(String assetModelName, String assetName,
String portalName, String contactEmail, String gatewayName, String myThing)
throws Throwable {
        logger.info("Use AWS CloudFormation to create an IAM role that is
required for this scenario.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);
        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputsAsync(ROLES_STACK).join();
        String iamRole = stackOutputs.get("SitewiseRoleArn");
        logger.info("The ARN of the IAM role is {}",iamRole);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an AWS SiteWise Asset Model");
        logger.info("""
             An AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model is a way to represent the physical
assets, such as equipment,
             processes, and systems, that exist in an industrial environment.
This model provides a structured and
             hierarchical representation of these assets, allowing users to
define the relationships and properties
             of each asset.

             This scenario creates two asset model properties: temperature and
humidity.
```

```
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String assetModelId = null;
        try {
            CreateAssetModelResponse response =
sitewiseActions.createAssetModelAsync(assetModelName).join();
            assetModelId = response.assetModelId();
            logger.info("Asset Model successfully created. Asset Model ID: {}. ",
assetModelId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceAlreadyExistsException) {
                try {
                    assetModelId =
sitewiseActions.getAssetModelIdAsync(assetModelName).join();
                    logger.info("The Asset Model {} already exists. The id of the
existing model is {}. Moving on...", assetModelName, assetModelId);
                } catch (CompletionException cex) {
                    logger.error("Exception thrown acquiring the asset model id:
{}", cex.getCause().getCause(), cex);
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset");
        logger.info("""
             The IoT SiteWise model that we just created defines the structure
and metadata for your physical assets.
             Now we create an asset from the asset model.

            """);
        logger.info("Let's wait 30 seconds for the asset to be ready.");
        countdown(30);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String assetId;
        try {
```

```
            CreateAssetResponse response =
sitewiseActions.createAssetAsync(assetName, assetModelId).join();
            assetId = response.assetId();
            logger.info("Asset created with ID: {}", assetId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The asset model id was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Retrieve the property ID values");
        logger.info("""
             To send data to an asset, we need to get the property ID values. In
this scenario, we access the
             temperature and humidity property ID values.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        Map<String, String>  propertyIds = null;
        try {
            propertyIds = sitewiseActions.getPropertyIds(assetModelId).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IoTSiteWiseException) {
                logger.error("IoTSiteWiseException occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }
        String humPropId =  propertyIds.get("Humidity");
        logger.info("The Humidity property Id is {}", humPropId);
        String tempPropId = propertyIds.get("Temperature");
        logger.info("The Temperature property Id is {}", tempPropId);
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset");
        logger.info("""
            By sending data to an IoT SiteWise Asset, you can aggregate data
from
            multiple sources, normalize the data into a standard format, and
store it in a
            centralized location. This makes it easier to analyze and gain
insights from the data.

            In this example, we generate sample temperature and humidity data and
send it to the AWS IoT SiteWise asset.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            sitewiseActions.sendDataToSiteWiseAsync(assetId, tempPropId,
humPropId).join();
            logger.info("Data sent successfully.");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The AWS resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Retrieve the value of the IoT SiteWise Asset property");
        logger.info("""
            IoT SiteWise is an AWS service that allows you to collect, process,
and analyze industrial data
            from connected equipment and sensors. One of the key benefits of
reading an IoT SiteWise property
```

```
            is the ability to gain valuable insights from your industrial data.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            Double assetVal = sitewiseActions.getAssetPropValueAsync(tempPropId,
assetId).join();
            logger.info("The property name is: {}", "Temperature");
            logger.info("The value of this property is: {}", assetVal);

            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

            assetVal = sitewiseActions.getAssetPropValueAsync(humPropId,
assetId).join();
            logger.info("The property name is: {}", "Humidity");
            logger.info("The value of this property is: {}", assetVal);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    logger.info("The AWS resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
                return;
            }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Create an IoT SiteWise Portal");
        logger.info("""
             An IoT SiteWise Portal allows you to aggregate data from multiple
industrial sources,
             such as sensors, equipment, and control systems, into a centralized
platform.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String portalId;
        try {
            portalId = sitewiseActions.createPortalAsync(portalName, iamRole,
contactEmail).join();
            logger.info("Portal created successfully. Portal ID {}", portalId);
```

```
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IoTSiteWiseException siteWiseEx) {
                logger.error("IoT SiteWise error occurred: Error message: {},
Error code {}",
                        siteWiseEx.getMessage(),
siteWiseEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), siteWiseEx);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Describe the Portal");
        logger.info("""
             In this step, we get a description of the portal and display the
portal URL.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String portalUrl =
sitewiseActions.describePortalAsync(portalId).join();
            logger.info("Portal URL: {}", portalUrl);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                        notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("8. Create an IoT SiteWise Gateway");
        logger.info(
            """
                IoT SiteWise Gateway serves as the bridge between industrial
equipment, sensors, and the
                cloud-based IoT SiteWise service. It is responsible for securely
collecting, processing, and
                transmitting data from various industrial assets to the IoT
SiteWise platform,
                enabling real-time monitoring, analysis, and optimization of
industrial operations.

                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String gatewayId = "";
        try {
            gatewayId = sitewiseActions.createGatewayAsync(gatewayName,
myThing).join();
            logger.info("Gateway creation completed successfully. id is {}",
gatewayId );
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IoTSiteWiseException siteWiseEx) {
                logger.error("IoT SiteWise error occurred: Error message: {},
Error code {}",
                        siteWiseEx.getMessage(),
siteWiseEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), siteWiseEx);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("9. Describe the IoT SiteWise Gateway");
         waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            sitewiseActions.describeGatewayAsync(gatewayId)
                .thenAccept(response -> {
                    logger.info("Gateway Name: {}", response.gatewayName());
                    logger.info("Gateway ARN: {}", response.gatewayArn());
```

```
                    logger.info("Gateway Platform: {}",
response.gatewayPlatform());
                    logger.info("Gateway Creation Date: {}",
response.creationDate());
                }).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                        notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets");
        logger.info(
            """
            Before you can delete the Asset Model, you must delete the assets.

            """);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the IoT SiteWise Assets? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the SiteWise assets.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                sitewiseActions.deletePortalAsync(portalId).join();
                logger.info("Portal {} was deleted successfully.", portalId);

            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException)
{
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
```

```
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }

            try {
                sitewiseActions.deleteGatewayAsync(gatewayId).join();
                logger.info("Gateway {} was deleted successfully.", gatewayId);
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException)
{
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }

            try {
                sitewiseActions.deleteAssetAsync(assetId).join();
                logger.info("Request to delete asset {} sent successfully",
assetId);
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException)
{
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
            logger.info("Let's wait 1 minute for the asset to be deleted.");
            countdown(60);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            logger.info("Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model");
```

```
            try {
                sitewiseActions.deleteAssetModelAsync(assetModelId).join();
                logger.info("Asset model deleted successfully.");
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException)
{
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        } else {
            logger.info("The resources will not be deleted.");
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS IoT SiteWise Scenario");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void countdown(int totalSeconds) throws InterruptedException {
        for (int i = totalSeconds; i >= 0; i--) {
            int displayMinutes = i / 60;
            int displaySeconds = i % 60;
            System.out.printf("\r%02d:%02d", displayMinutes, displaySeconds);
            Thread.sleep(1000); // Wait for 1 second
        }
        System.out.println(); // Move to the next line after countdown
        logger.info("Countdown complete!");
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS IoT SiteWise SDK methods.

```
public class SitewiseActions {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SitewiseActions.class);

    private static IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient;

    private static IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient = IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
```

```
        }
        return ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Creates an asset model.
     *
     * @param name the name of the asset model to create.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
     *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetModelResponse>
createAssetModelAsync(String name) {
        PropertyType humidity = PropertyType.builder()
            .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
            .build();

        PropertyType temperaturePropertyType = PropertyType.builder()
            .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
            .build();

        AssetModelPropertyDefinition temperatureProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
            .name("Temperature")
            .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
            .type(temperaturePropertyType)
            .build();

        AssetModelPropertyDefinition humidityProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
            .name("Humidity")
            .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
            .type(humidity)
```

```
            .build();

        CreateAssetModelRequest createAssetModelRequest =
CreateAssetModelRequest.builder()
            .assetModelName(name)
            .assetModelDescription("This is my asset model")
            .assetModelProperties(temperatureProperty, humidityProperty)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createAssetModel(createAssetModelRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create asset model: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Creates an asset with the specified name and asset model Id.
     *
     * @param assetName    the name of the asset to create.
     * @param assetModelId the Id of the asset model to associate with the asset.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
     *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
     *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetResponse> createAssetAsync(String
assetName, String assetModelId) {
        CreateAssetRequest createAssetRequest = CreateAssetRequest.builder()
            .assetModelId(assetModelId)
            .assetDescription("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .assetName(assetName)
            .build();
```

```
        return getAsyncClient().createAsset(createAssetRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create asset: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Sends data to the SiteWise service.
     *
     * @param assetId        the ID of the asset to which the data will be sent.
     * @param tempPropertyId the ID of the temperature property.
     * @param humidityPropId the ID of the humidity property.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse} result. The
     *         calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the result or
exception by calling
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
     *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse>
sendDataToSiteWiseAsync(String assetId, String tempPropertyId, String
humidityPropId) {
        Map<String, Double> sampleData = generateSampleData();
        long timestamp = Instant.now().toEpochMilli();

        TimeInNanos time = TimeInNanos.builder()
            .timeInSeconds(timestamp / 1000)
            .offsetInNanos((int) ((timestamp % 1000) * 1000000))
            .build();

        BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest request =
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
            .entries(Arrays.asList(
```

```
                PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                    .entryId("entry-3")
                    .assetId(assetId)
                    .propertyId(tempPropertyId)
                    .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                        AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                            .value(Variant.builder()
                                .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Temperature"))
                                .build())
                            .timestamp(time)
                            .build()
                    ))
                    .build(),
                PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                    .entryId("entry-4")
                    .assetId(assetId)
                    .propertyId(humidityPropId)
                    .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                        AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                            .value(Variant.builder()
                                .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Humidity"))
                                .build())
                            .timestamp(time)
                            .build()
                    ))
                    .build()
            ))
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().batchPutAssetPropertyValue(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An exception occurred: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Fetches the value of an asset property.
     *
     * @param propId  the ID of the asset property to fetch.
     * @param assetId the ID of the asset to fetch the property value for.
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Double}
result. The calling code can attach
    *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Double> getAssetPropValueAsync(String propId, String
assetId) {
       GetAssetPropertyValueRequest assetPropertyValueRequest =
GetAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
               .propertyId(propId)
               .assetId(assetId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getAssetPropertyValue(assetPropertyValueRequest)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property
value: {}.", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                       throw (CompletionException) exception;
                   }
                   return response.propertyValue().value().doubleValue();
               });
   }

   /**
    * Retrieves the property IDs associated with a specific asset model.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the asset model that defines the properties.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Map} result
that associates the property name to the
    *         propert ID. The calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the
result or exception by calling
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
```

```
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Map<String, String>> getPropertyIds(String
assetModelId) {
       ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest modelPropertiesRequest =
ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest.builder().assetModelId(assetModelId).build();
       return getAsyncClient().listAssetModelProperties(modelPropertiesRequest)
           .handle((response, throwable) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   return response.assetModelPropertySummaries().stream()
                       .collect(Collectors
                           .toMap(AssetModelPropertySummary::name,
AssetModelPropertySummary::id));
               } else {
                   logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property IDs:
{}.", throwable.getCause().getMessage());
                   throw (CompletionException) throwable;
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes an asset.
    *
    * @param assetId the ID of the asset to be deleted.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
    *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetResponse> deleteAssetAsync(String
assetId) {
       DeleteAssetRequest deleteAssetRequest = DeleteAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetId(assetId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAsset(deleteAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An error occurred deleting asset with id: {}",
assetId);
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes an Asset Model with the specified ID.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the Asset Model to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetModelResponse>
deleteAssetModelAsync(String assetModelId) {
       DeleteAssetModelRequest deleteAssetModelRequest =
DeleteAssetModelRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAssetModel(deleteAssetModelRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete asset model with ID:{}.",
exception.getMessage());
```

```
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new IoT SiteWise portal.
     *
     * @param portalName   the name of the portal to create.
     * @param iamRole      the IAM role ARN to use for the portal.
     * @param contactEmail the email address of the portal contact.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the portal ID. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createPortalAsync(String portalName, String
iamRole, String contactEmail) {
        CreatePortalRequest createPortalRequest = CreatePortalRequest.builder()
            .portalName(portalName)
            .portalDescription("This is my custom IoT SiteWise portal.")
            .portalContactEmail(contactEmail)
            .roleArn(iamRole)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createPortal(createPortalRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create portal: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                    throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                return response.portalId();
            });
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Deletes a portal.
    *
    * @param portalId the ID of the portal to be deleted.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeletePortalResponse}. The calling code can attach
    *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeletePortalResponse> deletePortalAsync(String
portalId) {
       DeletePortalRequest deletePortalRequest = DeletePortalRequest.builder()
           .portalId(portalId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deletePortal(deletePortalRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete portal with ID: {}. Error:
{}", portalId, exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Retrieves the asset model ID for the given asset model name.
    *
    * @param assetModelName the name of the asset model for the ID.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the asset model ID or null if the
    *         asset model cannot be found. The calling code can attach
callbacks, then handle the result or exception
    *         by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
```

```
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> getAssetModelIdAsync(String assetModelName)
{
       ListAssetModelsRequest listAssetModelsRequest =
ListAssetModelsRequest.builder().build();
       return getAsyncClient().listAssetModels(listAssetModelsRequest)
               .handle((listAssetModelsResponse, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       logger.error("Failed to retrieve Asset Model ID: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                       throw (CompletionException) exception;
                   }
                   for (AssetModelSummary assetModelSummary :
listAssetModelsResponse.assetModelSummaries()) {
                       if (assetModelSummary.name().equals(assetModelName)) {
                           return assetModelSummary.id();
                       }
                   }
                   return null;
               });
   }

   /**
    * Retrieves a portal's description.
    *
    * @param portalId the ID of the portal to describe.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the portal's start URL
    *         (see: {@link DescribePortalResponse#portalStartUrl()}). The
calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the
    *         result or exception by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
{@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<String> describePortalAsync(String portalId) {
        DescribePortalRequest request = DescribePortalRequest.builder()
            .portalId(portalId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describePortal(request)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An exception occurred retrieving the portal
description: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                   throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                return response.portalStartUrl();
            });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new IoT Sitewise gateway.
     *
     * @param gatewayName The name of the gateway to create.
     * @param myThing     The name of the core device thing to associate with the
gateway.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the gateways ID. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createGatewayAsync(String gatewayName,
String myThing) {
        GreengrassV2 gg = GreengrassV2.builder()
            .coreDeviceThingName(myThing)
            .build();

        GatewayPlatform platform = GatewayPlatform.builder()
            .greengrassV2(gg)
```

```
            .build();

        Map<String, String> tag = new HashMap<>();
        tag.put("Environment", "Production");

        CreateGatewayRequest createGatewayRequest =
CreateGatewayRequest.builder()
            .gatewayName(gatewayName)
            .gatewayPlatform(platform)
            .tags(tag)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createGateway(createGatewayRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Error creating the gateway.");
                    throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                logger.info("The ARN of the gateway is {}" ,
response.gatewayArn());
                return response.gatewayId();
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified gateway.
     *
     * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to delete.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteGatewayResponse} result.. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteGatewayResponse> deleteGatewayAsync(String
gatewayId) {
```

```
        DeleteGatewayRequest deleteGatewayRequest =
DeleteGatewayRequest.builder()
            .gatewayId(gatewayId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteGateway(deleteGatewayRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to delete gateway: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Describes the specified gateway.
     *
     * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to describe.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DescribeGatewayResponse} result. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DescribeGatewayResponse> describeGatewayAsync(String
gatewayId) {
        DescribeGatewayRequest request = DescribeGatewayRequest.builder()
            .gatewayId(gatewayId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeGateway(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An error occurred during the describeGateway
method: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
```

```
    }

    private static Map<String, Double> generateSampleData() {
        Map<String, Double> data = new HashMap<>();
        data.put("Temperature", 23.5);
        data.put("Humidity", 65.0);
        return data;
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
  //} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
} from "../../libs/scenario/index.js";
import {
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
  CreateAssetModelCommand,
  CreateAssetCommand,
  ListAssetModelPropertiesCommand,
  BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  GetAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  CreatePortalCommand,
  DescribePortalCommand,
  CreateGatewayCommand,
  DescribeGatewayCommand,
  DeletePortalCommand,
  DeleteGatewayCommand,
```

```
  DeleteAssetCommand,
  DeleteAssetModelCommand,
  DescribeAssetModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  CreateStackCommand,
  DeleteStackCommand,
  DescribeStacksCommand,
  waitUntilStackExists,
  waitUntilStackCreateComplete,
  waitUntilStackDeleteComplete,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";

const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
const __dirname = dirname(__filename);
const stackName = "SiteWiseBasicsStack";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   iotSiteWiseClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise').IotSiteWiseClient,
 *   cloudFormationClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
cloudformation').CloudFormationClient,
 *   stackName,
 *   stack,
 *   askToDeleteResources: true,
 *   asset: {assetName: "MyAsset1"},
 *   assetModel: {assetModelName: "MyAssetModel1"},
 *   portal: {portalName: "MyPortal1"},
 *   gateway: {gatewayName: "MyGateway1"},
 *   propertyIds: [],
 *   contactEmail: "user@mydomain.com",
 *   thing: "MyThing1",
 *   sampleData: { temperature: 23.5, humidity: 65.0}
 * }} State
 */

/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
```

```
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "confirm",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  `AWS IoT SiteWise is a fully managed industrial software-as-a-service (SaaS)
 that makes it easy to collect, store, organize, and monitor data from industrial
 equipment and processes. It is designed to help industrial and manufacturing
 organizations collect data from their equipment and processes, and use that data
 to make informed decisions about their operations.
One of the key features of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to connect to a
 wide range of industrial equipment and systems, including programmable logic
 controllers (PLCs), sensors, and other industrial devices. It can collect data
 from these devices and organize it into a unified data model, making it easier
 to analyze and gain insights from the data. AWS IoT SiteWise also provides tools
 for visualizing the data, setting up alarms and alerts, and generating reports.
Another key feature of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to scale to handle large
 volumes of data. It can collect and store data from thousands of devices and
 process millions of data points per second, making it suitable for large-scale
 industrial operations. Additionally, AWS IoT SiteWise is designed to be secure
 and compliant, with features like role-based access controls, data encryption,
 and integration with other AWS services for additional security and compliance
 features.

Let's get started...`,
  { header: true },
);

const displayBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayBuildCloudFormationStack",
  "This scenario uses AWS CloudFormation to create an IAM role that is required
 for this scenario. The stack will now be deployed.",
);

const sdkBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkBuildCloudFormationStack",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const data = readFileSync(
        `${__dirname}/../../../../resources/cfn/iotsitewise_basics/SitewiseRoles-
template.yml`,
```

```
        "utf8",
      );
      await state.cloudFormationClient.send(
        new CreateStackCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
          TemplateBody: data,
          Capabilities: ["CAPABILITY_IAM"],
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilStackExists(
        { client: state.cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      await waitUntilStackCreateComplete(
        { client: state.cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      const stack = await state.cloudFormationClient.send(
        new DescribeStacksCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
        }),
      );
      state.stack = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[0];
      console.log(`The ARN of the IAM role is ${state.stack.OutputValue}`);
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel",
  `1. Create an AWS SiteWise Asset Model
An AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model is a way to represent the physical assets, such
 as equipment, processes, and systems, that exist in an industrial environment.
 This model provides a structured and hierarchical representation of these
 assets, allowing users to define the relationships and properties of each asset.

This scenario creates two asset model properties: temperature and humidity.`,
);

const sdkCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel",
```

```
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    let assetModelResponse;
    try {
      assetModelResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreateAssetModelCommand({
          assetModelName: state.assetModel.assetModelName,
          assetModelProperties: [
            {
              name: "Temperature",
              dataType: "DOUBLE",
              type: {
                measurement: {},
              },
            },
            {
              name: "Humidity",
              dataType: "DOUBLE",
              type: {
                measurement: {},
              },
            },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.assetModel.assetModelId = assetModelResponse.assetModelId;
      console.log(
        `Asset Model successfully created. Asset Model ID:
 ${state.assetModel.assetModelId}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceAlreadyExistsException") {
        console.log(
          `The Asset Model ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} already exists.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel",
```

```
  `2. Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset
The IoT SiteWise model that we just created defines the structure and metadata
 for your physical assets. Now we create an asset from the asset model.

Let's wait 30 seconds for the asset to be ready.`,
);

const waitThirtySeconds = new ScenarioAction("waitThirtySeconds", async () => {
  await wait(30); // wait 30 seconds
  console.log("Time's up! Let's check the asset's status.");
});

const sdkCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const assetResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreateAssetCommand({
          assetModelId: state.assetModel.assetModelId,
          assetName: state.asset.assetName,
        }),
      );
      state.asset.assetId = assetResponse.assetId;
      console.log(`Asset created with ID: ${state.asset.assetId}`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(
          `The Asset ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} was not found.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayRetrievePropertyId = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayRetrievePropertyId",
  `3. Retrieve the property ID values

To send data to an asset, we need to get the property ID values. In this
 scenario, we access the temperature and humidity property ID values.`,
);
```

```
const sdkRetrievePropertyId = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkRetrievePropertyId",
  async (state) => {
    try {
      const retrieveResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new ListAssetModelPropertiesCommand({
          assetModelId: state.assetModel.assetModelId,
        }),
      );
      for (const retrieveResponseKey in
 retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries) {
        if (
          retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[retrieveResponseKey]
            .name === "Humidity"
        ) {
          state.propertyIds.Humidity =
            retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[
              retrieveResponseKey
            ].id;
        }
        if (
          retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[retrieveResponseKey]
            .name === "Temperature"
        ) {
          state.propertyIds.Temperature =
            retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[
              retrieveResponseKey
            ].id;
        }
      }
      console.log(`The Humidity propertyId is ${state.propertyIds.Humidity}`);
      console.log(
        `The Temperature propertyId is ${state.propertyIds.Temperature}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseException") {
        console.log(
          `There was a problem retrieving the properties: ${caught.message}`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  },
);

const displaySendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displaySendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  `4. Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset

By sending data to an IoT SiteWise Asset, you can aggregate data from multiple
 sources, normalize the data into a standard format, and store it in a
 centralized location. This makes it easier to analyze and gain insights from the
 data.

In this example, we generate sample temperature and humidity data and send it to
 the AWS IoT SiteWise asset.`,
);

const sdkSendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkSendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  async (state) => {
    try {
      const sendResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand({
          entries: [
            {
              entryId: "entry-3",
              assetId: state.asset.assetId,
              propertyId: state.propertyIds.Humidity,
              propertyValues: [
                {
                  value: {
                    doubleValue: state.sampleData.humidity,
                  },
                  timestamp: {
                    timeInSeconds: Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000),
                  },
                },
              ],
            },
            {
              entryId: "entry-4",
              assetId: state.asset.assetId,
              propertyId: state.propertyIds.Temperature,
              propertyValues: [
```

```
                {
                  value: {
                    doubleValue: state.sampleData.temperature,
                  },
                  timestamp: {
                    timeInSeconds: Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000),
                  },
                },
              ],
            },
          ],
        }),
      );
      console.log("The data was sent successfully.");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  `5. Retrieve the value of the IoT SiteWise Asset property

IoT SiteWise is an AWS service that allows you to collect, process, and analyze
 industrial data from connected equipment and sensors. One of the key benefits of
 reading an IoT SiteWise property is the ability to gain valuable insights from
 your industrial data.`,
);

const sdkRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const temperatureResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new GetAssetPropertyValueCommand({
          assetId: state.asset.assetId,
          propertyId: state.propertyIds.Temperature,
        }),
```

```
      );
      const humidityResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new GetAssetPropertyValueCommand({
          assetId: state.asset.assetId,
          propertyId: state.propertyIds.Humidity,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `The property value for Temperature is
 ${temperatureResponse.propertyValue.value.doubleValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The property value for Humidity is
 ${humidityResponse.propertyValue.value.doubleValue}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateIoTSiteWisePortal = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateIoTSiteWisePortal",
  `6. Create an IoT SiteWise Portal

An IoT SiteWise Portal allows you to aggregate data from multiple industrial
 sources, such as sensors, equipment, and control systems, into a centralized
 platform.`,
);

const sdkCreateIoTSiteWisePortal = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateIoTSiteWisePortal",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const createPortalResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreatePortalCommand({
          portalName: state.portal.portalName,
          portalContactEmail: state.contactEmail,
          roleArn: state.stack.OutputValue,
```

```
        }),
      );
      state.portal = { ...state.portal, ...createPortalResponse };
      await wait(5); // Allow the portal to properly propagate.
      console.log(
        `Portal created successfully. Portal ID
 ${createPortalResponse.portalId}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseException") {
        console.log(
          `There was a problem creating the Portal: ${caught.message}.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayDescribePortal = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDescribePortal",
  `7. Describe the Portal

In this step, we get a description of the portal and display the portal URL.`,
);

const sdkDescribePortal = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDescribePortal",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const describePortalResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DescribePortalCommand({
          portalId: state.portal.portalId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(`Portal URL: ${describePortalResponse.portalStartUrl}`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Portal ${state.portal.portalName} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  `8. Create an IoT SiteWise Gateway

IoT SiteWise Gateway serves as the bridge between industrial equipment, sensors,
 and the cloud-based IoT SiteWise service. It is responsible for securely
 collecting, processing, and transmitting data from various industrial assets
 to the IoT SiteWise platform, enabling real-time monitoring, analysis, and
 optimization of industrial operations.`,
);

const sdkCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const createGatewayResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreateGatewayCommand({
          gatewayName: state.gateway.gatewayName,
          gatewayPlatform: {
            greengrassV2: {
              coreDeviceThingName: state.thing,
            },
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Gateway creation completed successfully. ID is
 ${createGatewayResponse.gatewayId}`,
      );
      state.gateway.gatewayId = createGatewayResponse.gatewayId;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseException") {
        console.log(
          `There was a problem creating the gateway: ${caught.message}.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  },
);

const displayDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  "9. Describe the IoT SiteWise Gateway",
);

const sdkDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const describeGatewayResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DescribeGatewayCommand({
          gatewayId: state.gateway.gatewayId,
        }),
      );
      console.log("Gateway creation completed successfully.");
      console.log(`Gateway Name: ${describeGatewayResponse.gatewayName}`);
      console.log(`Gateway ARN: ${describeGatewayResponse.gatewayArn}`);
      console.log(
        `Gateway Platform:
 ${Object.keys(describeGatewayResponse.gatewayPlatform)}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `Gateway Creation Date: ${describeGatewayResponse.creationDate}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Gateway ${state.gateway.gatewayId} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const askToDeleteResources = new ScenarioInput(
  "askToDeleteResources",
  `10. Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets

Before you can delete the Asset Model, you must delete the assets.`,
```

```
  { type: "confirm" },
);

const displayConfirmDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "displayConfirmDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (state.askToDeleteResources) {
      return "You selected to delete the SiteWise assets.";
    }
    return "The resources will not be deleted. Please delete them manually to
 avoid charges.";
  },
);

const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    await wait(10); // Give the portal status time to catch up.
    try {
      await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DeletePortalCommand({
          portalId: state.portal.portalId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Portal ${state.portal.portalName} was deleted successfully.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Portal ${state.portal.portalName} was not found.`);
      } else {
        console.log(`When trying to delete the portal: ${caught.message}`);
      }
    }

    try {
      await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DeleteGatewayCommand({
          gatewayId: state.gateway.gatewayId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Gateway ${state.gateway.gatewayName} was deleted successfully.`,
      );
```

```
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Gateway ${state.gateway.gatewayId} was not found.`);
      } else {
        console.log(`When trying to delete the gateway: ${caught.message}`);
      }
    }

    try {
      await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DeleteAssetCommand({
          assetId: state.asset.assetId,
        }),
      );
      await wait(5); // Allow the delete to finish.
      console.log(`Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was deleted successfully.`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was not found.`);
      } else {
        console.log(`When deleting the asset: ${caught.message}`);
      }
    }

    await wait(30); // Allow asset deletion to finish.
    try {
      await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DeleteAssetModelCommand({
          assetModelId: state.assetModel.assetModelId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Asset Model ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} was deleted
successfully.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(
          `The Asset Model ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} was not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        console.log(`When deleting the asset model: ${caught.message}`);
      }
    }
```

```
    try {
      await state.cloudFormationClient.send(
        new DeleteStackCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilStackDeleteComplete(
        { client: state.cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      console.log("The stack was deleted successfully.");
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(
        `${caught.message}. The stack was NOT deleted. Please clean up the
 resources manually.`,
      );
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.askToDeleteResources },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "This concludes the IoT Sitewise Basics scenario for the AWS Javascript SDK v3.
 Thank you!",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario(
  "IoTSiteWise Basics",
  [
    greet,
    pressEnter,
    displayBuildCloudFormationStack,
    sdkBuildCloudFormationStack,
    pressEnter,
    displayCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel,
    sdkCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel,
    displayCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel,
    pressEnter,
    waitThirtySeconds,
    sdkCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel,
    pressEnter,
    displayRetrievePropertyId,
```

```
    sdkRetrievePropertyId,
    pressEnter,
    displaySendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    sdkSendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    pressEnter,
    displayRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    sdkRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    pressEnter,
    displayCreateIoTSiteWisePortal,
    sdkCreateIoTSiteWisePortal,
    pressEnter,
    displayDescribePortal,
    sdkDescribePortal,
    pressEnter,
    displayCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    sdkCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    pressEnter,
    displayDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    sdkDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    pressEnter,
    askToDeleteResources,
    displayConfirmDeleteResources,
    sdkDeleteResources,
    goodbye,
  ],
  {
    iotSiteWiseClient: new IoTSiteWiseClient({}),
    cloudFormationClient: new CloudFormationClient({}),
    asset: { assetName: "MyAsset1" },
    assetModel: { assetModelName: "MyAssetModel1" },
    portal: { portalName: "MyPortal1" },
    gateway: { gatewayName: "MyGateway1" },
    propertyIds: [],
    contactEmail: "user@mydomain.com",
    thing: "MyThing1",
    sampleData: { temperature: 23.5, humidity: 65.0 },
  },
);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};
```

```
// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class IoTSitewiseGettingStarted:
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to manage IoT physical assets
 using
    the AWS IoT SiteWise.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        iot_sitewise_wrapper: IoTSitewiseWrapper,
        cloud_formation_resource: ServiceResource,
    ):
        self.iot_sitewise_wrapper = iot_sitewise_wrapper
        self.cloud_formation_resource = cloud_formation_resource
        self.stack = None
```

```
        self.asset_model_id = None
        self.asset_id = None
        self.portal_id = None
        self.gateway_id = None

    def run(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """
        print(
            """
AWS IoT SiteWise is a fully managed software-as-a-service (SaaS) that
makes it easy to collect, store, organize, and monitor data from industrial
 equipment and processes.
It is designed to help industrial and manufacturing organizations collect data
 from their equipment and
processes, and use that data to make informed decisions about their operations.

One of the key features of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to connect to a wide
 range of industrial
equipment and systems, including programmable logic controllers (PLCs), sensors,
 and other
industrial devices. It can collect data from these devices and organize it into a
 unified data model,
making it easier to analyze and gain insights from the data. AWS IoT SiteWise
 also provides tools for
visualizing the data, setting up alarms and alerts, and generating reports.

Another key feature of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to scale to handle large
 volumes of data.
It can collect and store data from thousands of devices and process millions of
 data points per second,
making it suitable for large-scale industrial operations. Additionally, AWS IoT
 SiteWise is designed
to be secure and compliant, with features like role-based access controls, data
 encryption,
and integration with other AWS services for additional security and compliance
 features.

Let's get started...
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
```

```
        print(f"")
        print(
            f"Use AWS CloudFormation to create an IAM role that is required for
 this scenario."
        )
        template_file = IoTSitewiseGettingStarted.get_template_as_string()

        self.stack = self.deploy_cloudformation_stack(
            "python-iot-sitewise-basics", template_file
        )
        outputs = self.stack.outputs
        iam_role = None

        for output in outputs:
            if output.get("OutputKey") == "SitewiseRoleArn":
                iam_role = output.get("OutputValue")

        if iam_role is None:
            error_string = f"Failed to retrieve iam_role from CloudFormation
 stack."
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)

        print(f"The ARN of the IAM role is {iam_role}")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"1. Create an AWS SiteWise Asset Model")
        print(
            """
An AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model is a way to represent the physical assets, such
 as equipment,
processes, and systems, that exist in an industrial environment. This model
 provides a structured and
hierarchical representation of these assets, allowing users to define the
 relationships and values
of each asset.

This scenario creates two asset model values: temperature and humidity.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        asset_model_name = "MyAssetModel1"
        temperature_property_name = "temperature"
        humidity_property_name = "humidity"
```

```
        try:
            properties = [
                {
                    "name": temperature_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
                {
                    "name": humidity_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
            ]
            self.asset_model_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_asset_model(
                asset_model_name, properties
            )
            print(
                f"Asset Model successfully created. Asset Model ID:
 {self.asset_model_id}. "
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                self.asset_model_id =
 self.get_model_id_for_model_name(asset_model_name)
                print(
                    f"Asset Model {asset_model_name} already exists. Asset Model
 ID: {self.asset_model_id}. "
                )
            else:
                raise

        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"2. Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset")
        print(
            """
The IoT SiteWise model that we just created defines the structure and metadata
 for your physical assets.
Now we create an asset from the asset model.
```

```
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        self.asset_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_asset(
            "MyAsset1", self.asset_model_id
        )

        print(f"Asset created with ID: {self.asset_id}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"3. Retrieve the property ID values")
        print(
            """
To send data to an asset, we need to get the property ID values. In this
 scenario, we access the
temperature and humidity property ID values.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        property_ids = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.list_asset_model_properties(
            self.asset_model_id
        )
        humidity_property_id = None
        temperature_property_id = None
        for property_id in property_ids:
            if property_id.get("name") == humidity_property_name:
                humidity_property_id = property_id.get("id")
            elif property_id.get("name") == temperature_property_name:
                temperature_property_id = property_id.get("id")
        if humidity_property_id is None or temperature_property_id is None:
            error_string = f"Failed to retrieve property IDs from Asset Model."
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)

        print(f"The Humidity property Id is {humidity_property_id}")
        print(f"The Temperature property Id is {temperature_property_id}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"4. Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset")
        print(
```

```
            """
By sending data to an IoT SiteWise Asset, you can aggregate data from
multiple sources, normalize the data into a standard format, and store it in a
centralized location. This makes it easier to analyze and gain insights from the
 data.

In this example, we generate sample temperature and humidity data and send it to
 the AWS IoT SiteWise asset.

        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        values = [
            {
                "propertyId": humidity_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 65.0,
            },
            {
                "propertyId": temperature_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 23.5,
            },
        ]
        self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.batch_put_asset_property_value(self.asset_id,
 values)
        print(f"Data sent successfully.")

        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"5. Retrieve the value of the IoT SiteWise Asset property")
        print(
            """
IoT SiteWise is an AWS service that allows you to collect, process, and analyze
 industrial data
from connected equipment and sensors. One of the key benefits of reading an IoT
 SiteWise property
is the ability to gain valuable insights from your industrial data.

        """
        )
```

```
        press_enter_to_continue()

        property_value = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.get_asset_property_value(
            self.asset_id, temperature_property_id
        )
        print(f"The property name is '{temperature_property_name}'.")

        print(
            f"The value of this property is: {property_value['value']
['doubleValue']}"
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        property_value = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.get_asset_property_value(
            self.asset_id, humidity_property_id
        )
        print(f"The property name is '{humidity_property_name}'.")
        print(
            f"The value of this property is: {property_value['value']
['doubleValue']}"
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"6. Create an IoT SiteWise Portal")
        print(
            """
An IoT SiteWise Portal allows you to aggregate data from multiple industrial
 sources,
such as sensors, equipment, and control systems, into a centralized platform.
        """
        )

        press_enter_to_continue()
        contact_email = q.ask("Enter a contact email for the portal:",
 q.non_empty)
        print("Creating the portal. The portal may take a while to become
 active.")
        self.portal_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_portal(
            "MyPortal1", iam_role, contact_email
        )
        print(f"Portal created successfully. Portal ID {self.portal_id}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
```

```
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"7. Describe the Portal")
        print(
            """
In this step, we get a description of the portal and display the portal URL.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        portal_description =
 self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.describe_portal(self.portal_id)
        print(f"Portal URL: {portal_description['portalStartUrl']}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"8. Create an IoT SiteWise Gateway")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        self.gateway_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_gateway(
            "MyGateway1", "MyThing1"
        )
        print(f"Gateway creation completed successfully. id is
 {self.gateway_id}")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"9. Describe the IoT SiteWise Gateway")
        press_enter_to_continue()

        gateway_description = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.describe_gateway(
            self.gateway_id
        )
        print(f"Gateway Name: {gateway_description['gatewayName']}")
        print(f"Gateway ARN: {gateway_description['gatewayArn']}")
        print(f"Gateway Platform:\n{gateway_description['gatewayPlatform']}")
        print(f"Gateway Creation Date: {gateway_description['gatewayArn']}")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"10. Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets")
        if q.ask("Would you like to delete the IoT SiteWise Assets? (y/n)",
 q.is_yesno):
            self.cleanup()
        else:
```

```
            print(f"The resources will not be deleted.")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"This concludes the AWS IoT SiteWise Scenario")

    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the CloudFormation stack and the resources created for the demo.
        """

        if self.gateway_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_gateway(self.gateway_id)
            print(f"Deleted gateway with id {self.gateway_id}.")
            self.gateway_id = None
        if self.portal_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_portal(self.portal_id)
            print(f"Deleted portal with id {self.portal_id}.")
            self.portal_id = None
        if self.asset_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_asset(self.asset_id)
            print(f"Deleted asset with id {self.asset_id}.")
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.wait_asset_deleted(self.asset_id)
            self.asset_id = None
        if self.asset_model_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_asset_model(self.asset_model_id)
            print(f"Deleted asset model with id {self.asset_model_id}.")
            self.asset_model_id = None
        if self.stack is not None:
            stack = self.stack
            self.stack = None
            self.destroy_cloudformation_stack(stack)

    def deploy_cloudformation_stack(
        self, stack_name: str, cfn_template: str
    ) -> ServiceResource:
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
        defined in the associated `SitewiseRoles-template.yaml` AWS
CloudFormation script and are deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.

        :param stack_name: The name of the CloudFormation stack.
        :param cfn_template: The CloudFormation template as a string.
        :return: The CloudFormation stack resource.
```

```
        """
        print(f"Deploying CloudFormation stack: {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cloud_formation_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=cfn_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
        )
        print(f"CloudFormation stack creation started: {stack_name}")
        print("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to complete...")
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_create_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print("CloudFormation stack creation complete.")

        return stack

    def destroy_cloudformation_stack(self, stack: ServiceResource) -> None:
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example
resources.
        """
        print(
            f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' is being deleted. This may take
a few minutes."
        )
        stack.delete()
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_delete_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        print(f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' has been deleted.")

    @staticmethod
    def get_template_as_string() -> str:
        """
        Returns a string containing this scenario's CloudFormation template.
        """
```

```
        template_file_path = os.path.join(script_dir, "SitewiseRoles-
template.yaml")
        file = open(template_file_path, "r")
        return file.read()

    def get_model_id_for_model_name(self, model_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Returns the model ID for the given model name.

        :param model_name: The name of the model.
        :return: The model ID.
        """
        model_id = None
        asset_models = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.list_asset_models()
        for asset_model in asset_models:
            if asset_model["name"] == model_name:
                model_id = asset_model["id"]
                break
        return model_id
```

IoTSitewiseWrapper class that wraps AWS IoT SiteWise actions.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                            access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
```

```
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_asset_model(
        self, asset_model_name: str, properties: List[Dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_name: The name of the asset model to create.
        :param properties: The property definitions of the asset model.
        :return: The ID of the created asset model.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset_model(
                assetModelName=asset_model_name,
                assetModelDescription="This is a sample asset model
description.",
                assetModelProperties=properties,
            )
            asset_model_id = response["assetModelId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_model_active")
            waiter.wait(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
            return asset_model_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s already exists.", asset_model_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_model_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def create_asset(self, asset_name: str, asset_model_id: str) -> str:
```

```
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_name: The name of the asset to create.
        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to associate with the
asset.
        :return: The ID of the created asset.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset(
                assetName=asset_name, assetModelId=asset_model_id
            )
            asset_id = response["assetId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_active")
            waiter.wait(assetId=asset_id)
            return asset_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s does not exist.", asset_model_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def list_asset_models(self) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Lists all AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Models.

        :return: A list of dictionaries containing information about each asset
model.

        """
        try:
            asset_models = []
            paginator =
self.iotsitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
            pages = paginator.paginate()
            for page in pages:
                asset_models.extend(page["assetModelSummaries"])
            return asset_models
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error listing asset models. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_asset_model_properties(self, asset_model_id: str) -> List[Dict[str,
 Any]]:
        """
        Lists all AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model Properties.

        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to list values for.
        :return: A list of dictionaries containing information about each asset
 model property.
        """
        try:
            asset_model_properties = []
            paginator = self.iotsitewise_client.get_paginator(
                "list_asset_model_properties"
            )
            pages = paginator.paginate(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
            for page in pages:

 asset_model_properties.extend(page["assetModelPropertySummaries"])
            return asset_model_properties
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error listing asset model values. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def batch_put_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, values: List[Dict[str, str]]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Sends data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The asset ID.
        :param values: A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
```

```
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        """
        try:
            entries = self.properties_to_values(asset_id, values)

 self.iotsitewise_client.batch_put_asset_property_value(entries=entries)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset %s does not exist.", asset_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error sending data to asset. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def properties_to_values(
        self, asset_id: str, values: list[dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> list[dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Utility function to convert a values list to the entries parameter for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        :param asset_id : The asset ID.
        :param values : A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        :return: An entries list to pass as the 'entries' parameter to
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        """
        entries = []
        for value in values:
            epoch_ns = time.time_ns()
            self.entry_id += 1
            if value["valueType"] == "stringValue":
                property_value = {"stringValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "integerValue":
                property_value = {"integerValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "booleanValue":
                property_value = {"booleanValue": value["value"]}
```

```
            elif value["valueType"] == "doubleValue":
                property_value = {"doubleValue": value["value"]}
            else:
                raise ValueError("Invalid valueType: %s", value["valueType"])
            entry = {
                "entryId": f"{self.entry_id}",
                "assetId": asset_id,
                "propertyId": value["propertyId"],
                "propertyValues": [
                    {
                        "value": property_value,
                        "timestamp": {
                            "timeInSeconds": int(epoch_ns / 1000000000),
                            "offsetInNanos": epoch_ns % 1000000000,
                        },
                    }
                ],
            }
            entries.append(entry)
        return entries


    def get_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, property_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the value of an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Property.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset.
        :param property_id: The ID of the property.
        :return: A dictionary containing the value of the property.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.get_asset_property_value(
                assetId=asset_id, propertyId=property_id
            )
            return response["propertyValue"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Asset %s or property %s does not exist.", asset_id,
property_id
                )
            else:
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Error getting asset property value. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def create_portal(
        self, portal_name: str, iam_role_arn: str, portal_contact_email: str
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_name: The name of the portal to create.
        :param iam_role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role.
        :param portal_contact_email: The contact email of the portal.
        :return: The ID of the created portal.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_portal(
                portalName=portal_name,
                roleArn=iam_role_arn,
                portalContactEmail=portal_contact_email,
            )
            portal_id = response["portalId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("portal_active")
            waiter.wait(portalId=portal_id, WaiterConfig={"MaxAttempts": 40})
            return portal_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Portal %s already exists.", portal_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def describe_portal(self, portal_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Describes an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.
```

```
        :param portal_id: The ID of the portal to describe.
        :return: A dictionary containing information about the portal.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.iotsitewise_client.describe_portal(portalId=portal_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error describing portal %s. Here's why %s",
                portal_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def create_gateway(self, gateway_name: str, my_thing: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_name: The name of the gateway to create.
        :param my_thing: The core device thing name.
        :return: The ID of the created gateway.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_gateway(
                gatewayName=gateway_name,
                gatewayPlatform={
                    "greengrassV2": {"coreDeviceThingName": my_thing},
                },
                tags={"Environment": "Production"},
            )
            gateway_id = response["gatewayId"]
            return gateway_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s already exists.", gateway_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

```
    def describe_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Describes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to describe.
        :return: A dictionary containing information about the gateway.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.iotsitewise_client.describe_gateway(gatewayId=gateway_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error describing gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_gateway(gatewayId=gateway_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

```
    def delete_portal(self, portal_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_id: The ID of the portal to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_portal(portalId=portal_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Portal %s does not exist.", portal_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_asset(self, asset_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset(assetId=asset_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_asset_model(self, asset_model_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to delete.
        """
```

```
        try:

self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset_model(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_model_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def wait_asset_deleted(self, asset_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Waits for an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset to be deleted.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset to wait for.
        """
        try:
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(assetId=asset_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error waiting for asset %s to be deleted. Here's why %s",
                asset_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Actions for AWS IoT SiteWise using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS IoT SiteWise actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS IoT SiteWise API Reference.

Examples

- Use BatchPutAssetPropertyValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateAsset with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAsset with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAssetModel with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeGateway with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribePortal with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetAssetPropertyValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAssetModels with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `BatchPutAssetPropertyValue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send data to asset properties

The following `batch-put-asset-property-value` example sends power and temperature data to the asset properties identified by property aliases.

```
aws iotsitewise batch-put-asset-property-value \
    --cli-input-json file://batch-put-asset-property-value.json
```

Contents of `batch-put-asset-property-value.json`:

```
{
```

```
    "entries": [
        {
            "entryId": "1575691200-company-windfarm-3-turbine-7-power",
            "propertyAlias": "company-windfarm-3-turbine-7-power",
            "propertyValues": [
                {
                    "value": {
                        "doubleValue": 4.92
                    },
                    "timestamp": {
                        "timeInSeconds": 1575691200
                    },
                    "quality": "GOOD"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "entryId": "1575691200-company-windfarm-3-turbine-7-temperature",
            "propertyAlias": "company-windfarm-3-turbine-7-temperature",
            "propertyValues": [
                {
                    "value": {
                        "integerValue": 38
                    },
                    "timestamp": {
                        "timeInSeconds": 1575691200
                    }
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "errorEntries": []
}
```

For more information, see Ingesting data using the AWS IoT SiteWise API in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Sends data to the SiteWise service.
    *
    * @param assetId        the ID of the asset to which the data will be sent.
    * @param tempPropertyId the ID of the temperature property.
    * @param humidityPropId the ID of the humidity property.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse} result. The
    *         calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the result or
exception by calling
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse>
sendDataToSiteWiseAsync(String assetId, String tempPropertyId, String
humidityPropId) {
       Map<String, Double> sampleData = generateSampleData();
       long timestamp = Instant.now().toEpochMilli();

       TimeInNanos time = TimeInNanos.builder()
           .timeInSeconds(timestamp / 1000)
           .offsetInNanos((int) ((timestamp % 1000) * 1000000))
           .build();
```

```
        BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest request =
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
            .entries(Arrays.asList(
                PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                    .entryId("entry-3")
                    .assetId(assetId)
                    .propertyId(tempPropertyId)
                    .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                        AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                            .value(Variant.builder()
                                .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Temperature"))
                                .build())
                            .timestamp(time)
                            .build()
                    ))
                    .build(),
                PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                    .entryId("entry-4")
                    .assetId(assetId)
                    .propertyId(humidityPropId)
                    .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                        AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                            .value(Variant.builder()
                                .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Humidity"))
                                .build())
                            .timestamp(time)
                            .build()
                    ))
                    .build()
            ))
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().batchPutAssetPropertyValue(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An exception occurred: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Batch put asset property values.
 * @param {{ entries : array }}
 */
export const main = async ({ entries }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand({
        entries: entries,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset properties batch put successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. A resource could not be found.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
 AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def batch_put_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, values: List[Dict[str, str]]
    ) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Sends data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The asset ID.
        :param values: A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        """
        try:
            entries = self.properties_to_values(asset_id, values)

 self.iotsitewise_client.batch_put_asset_property_value(entries=entries)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset %s does not exist.", asset_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error sending data to asset. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

A helper function to generate the entries parameter from a values list.

```
    def properties_to_values(
        self, asset_id: str, values: list[dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> list[dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Utility function to convert a values list to the entries parameter for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        :param asset_id : The asset ID.
        :param values : A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        :return: An entries list to pass as the 'entries' parameter to
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        """
        entries = []
```

```
        for value in values:
            epoch_ns = time.time_ns()
            self.entry_id += 1
            if value["valueType"] == "stringValue":
                property_value = {"stringValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "integerValue":
                property_value = {"integerValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "booleanValue":
                property_value = {"booleanValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "doubleValue":
                property_value = {"doubleValue": value["value"]}
            else:
                raise ValueError("Invalid valueType: %s", value["valueType"])
            entry = {
                "entryId": f"{self.entry_id}",
                "assetId": asset_id,
                "propertyId": value["propertyId"],
                "propertyValues": [
                    {
                        "value": property_value,
                        "timestamp": {
                            "timeInSeconds": int(epoch_ns / 1000000000),
                            "offsetInNanos": epoch_ns % 1000000000,
                        },
                    }
                ],
            }
            entries.append(entry)
        return entries
```

Here is an example of a values list to pass to the helper function.

```
        values = [
            {
                "propertyId": humidity_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 65.0,
            },
            {
                "propertyId": temperature_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
```

```
                "value": 23.5,
            },
        ]
```

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateAsset` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAsset`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an asset

The following `create-asset` example creates a wind turbine asset from a wind turbine asset model.

```
aws iotsitewise create-asset \
    --asset-model-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE \
    --asset-name "Wind Turbine 1"
```

Output:

```
{
    "assetId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-33333EXAMPLE",
    "assetArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:asset/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-33333EXAMPLE",
    "assetStatus": {
        "state": "CREATING"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating assets in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an asset with the specified name and asset model Id.
    *
    * @param assetName    the name of the asset to create.
    * @param assetModelId the Id of the asset model to associate with the asset.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
    *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetResponse> createAssetAsync(String
assetName, String assetModelId) {
       CreateAssetRequest createAssetRequest = CreateAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .assetDescription("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
           .assetName(assetName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createAsset(createAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to create asset: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
```

```
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateAssetCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an Asset.
 * @param {{ assetName : string, assetModelId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetName, assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreateAssetCommand({
        assetName: assetName, // The name to give the Asset.
        assetModelId: assetModelId, // The ID of the asset model from which to
 create the asset.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
```

```
        `${caught.message}. The asset model could not be found. Please check the
 asset model id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_asset(self, asset_name: str, asset_model_id: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_name: The name of the asset to create.
        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to associate with the
asset.
        :return: The ID of the created asset.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset(
                assetName=asset_name, assetModelId=asset_model_id
            )
            asset_id = response["assetId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_active")
            waiter.wait(assetId=asset_id)
            return asset_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s does not exist.", asset_model_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateAssetModel` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAssetModel`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an asset model

The following `create-asset-model` example creates an asset model that defines a wind turbine with the following properties:

Serial number - The serial number of a wind turbineGenerated power - The generated power data stream from a wind turbineTemperature C - The temperature data stream from a wind turbine in CelsiusTemperature F - The mapped temperature data points from Celsius to Fahrenheit

```
aws iotsitewise create-asset-model \
    --cli-input-json file://create-wind-turbine-model.json
```

Contents of `create-wind-turbine-model.json`:

```
{
    "assetModelName": "Wind Turbine Model",
    "assetModelDescription": "Represents a wind turbine",
    "assetModelProperties": [
        {
            "name": "Serial Number",
            "dataType": "STRING",
            "type": {
                "attribute": {}
            }
        },
        {
            "name": "Generated Power",
            "dataType": "DOUBLE",
            "unit": "kW",
            "type": {
                "measurement": {}
            }
        },
        {
            "name": "Temperature C",
            "dataType": "DOUBLE",
            "unit": "Celsius",
            "type": {
```

```
                "measurement": {}
            }
        },
        {
            "name": "Temperature F",
            "dataType": "DOUBLE",
            "unit": "Fahrenheit",
            "type": {
                "transform": {
                    "expression": "temp_c * 9 / 5 + 32",
                    "variables": [
                        {
                            "name": "temp_c",
                            "value": {
                                "propertyId": "Temperature C"
                            }
                        }
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "name": "Total Generated Power",
            "dataType": "DOUBLE",
            "unit": "kW",
            "type": {
                "metric": {
                    "expression": "sum(power)",
                    "variables": [
                        {
                            "name": "power",
                            "value": {
                                "propertyId": "Generated Power"
                            }
                        }
                    ],
                    "window": {
                        "tumbling": {
                            "interval": "1h"
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "assetModelId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
    "assetModelArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:asset-model/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
    "assetModelStatus": {
        "state": "CREATING"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Defining asset models in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an asset model.
     *
     * @param name the name of the asset model to create.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
 CreateAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
 calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
 method logs the exception cause and keeps it
```

```
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetModelResponse>
createAssetModelAsync(String name) {
       PropertyType humidity = PropertyType.builder()
           .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
           .build();

       PropertyType temperaturePropertyType = PropertyType.builder()
           .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
           .build();

       AssetModelPropertyDefinition temperatureProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
           .name("Temperature")
           .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
           .type(temperaturePropertyType)
           .build();

       AssetModelPropertyDefinition humidityProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
           .name("Humidity")
           .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
           .type(humidity)
           .build();

       CreateAssetModelRequest createAssetModelRequest =
CreateAssetModelRequest.builder()
           .assetModelName(name)
           .assetModelDescription("This is my asset model")
           .assetModelProperties(temperatureProperty, humidityProperty)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createAssetModel(createAssetModelRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to create asset model: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateAssetModelCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an Asset Model.
 * @param {{ assetName : string, assetModelId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelName, assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreateAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelName: assetModelName, // The name to give the Asset Model.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem creating the asset model.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
```

```
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
 AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)
```

```
    def create_asset_model(
        self, asset_model_name: str, properties: List[Dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_name: The name of the asset model to create.
        :param properties: The property definitions of the asset model.
        :return: The ID of the created asset model.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset_model(
                assetModelName=asset_model_name,
                assetModelDescription="This is a sample asset model
description.",
                assetModelProperties=properties,
            )
            asset_model_id = response["assetModelId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_model_active")
            waiter.wait(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
            return asset_model_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s already exists.", asset_model_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_model_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

Here is an example of a properties list to pass to the function.

```
            properties = [
                {
                    "name": temperature_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
```

```
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
                {
                    "name": humidity_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
            ]
```

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateGateway` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a gateway

The following `create-gateway` example creates a gateway that runs on AWS IoT Greengrass.

```
aws iotsitewise create-gateway \
    --gateway-name ExampleCorpGateway \
    --gateway-platform greengrass={groupArn=arn:aws:greengrass:us-
west-2:123456789012:/greengrass/groups/a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1b1b1EXAMPLE}
```

Output:

```
{
    "gatewayId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1a1a1EXAMPLE",
    "gatewayArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:gateway/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1a1a1EXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Configuring a gateway in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new IoT Sitewise gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayName The name of the gateway to create.
    * @param myThing     The name of the core device thing to associate with the
gateway.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the gateways ID. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createGatewayAsync(String gatewayName,
String myThing) {
       GreengrassV2 gg = GreengrassV2.builder()
           .coreDeviceThingName(myThing)
           .build();

       GatewayPlatform platform = GatewayPlatform.builder()
           .greengrassV2(gg)
           .build();
```

```
        Map<String, String> tag = new HashMap<>();
        tag.put("Environment", "Production");

        CreateGatewayRequest createGatewayRequest =
 CreateGatewayRequest.builder()
            .gatewayName(gatewayName)
            .gatewayPlatform(platform)
            .tags(tag)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createGateway(createGatewayRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Error creating the gateway.");
                    throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                logger.info("The ARN of the gateway is {}" ,
 response.gatewayArn());
                return response.gatewayId();
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateGatewayCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
```

```
 * Create a Gateway.
 * @param {{  }}
 */
export const main = async ({ gatewayName }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreateGatewayCommand({
        gatewayName: gatewayName, // The name to give the created Gateway.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Gateway created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem creating the Gateway.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_gateway(self, gateway_name: str, my_thing: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_name: The name of the gateway to create.
        :param my_thing: The core device thing name.
        :return: The ID of the created gateway.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_gateway(
                gatewayName=gateway_name,
                gatewayPlatform={
                    "greengrassV2": {"coreDeviceThingName": my_thing},
                },
                tags={"Environment": "Production"},
            )
            gateway_id = response["gatewayId"]
            return gateway_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s already exists.", gateway_name)
```

```
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreatePortal` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePortal`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a portal

The following `create-portal` example creates a web portal for a wind farm company. You can create portals only in the same Region where you enabled AWS Single Sign-On.

```
aws iotsitewise create-portal \
    --portal-name WindFarmPortal \
    --portal-description "A portal that contains wind farm projects for Example
 Corp." \
    --portal-contact-email support@example.com \
    --role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/
MySiteWiseMonitorServiceRole
```

Output:

```
{
    "portalId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-aaaaaEXAMPLE",
    "portalArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:portal/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-aaaaaEXAMPLE",
    "portalStartUrl": "https://a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-
aaaaaEXAMPLE.app.iotsitewise.aws",
    "portalStatus": {
```

```
        "state": "CREATING"
    },
    "ssoApplicationId": "ins-a1b2c3d4-EXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Getting started with AWS IoT SiteWise Monitor in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide* and Enabling AWS SSO in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*..

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new IoT SiteWise portal.
    *
    * @param portalName   the name of the portal to create.
    * @param iamRole      the IAM role ARN to use for the portal.
    * @param contactEmail the email address of the portal contact.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the portal ID. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createPortalAsync(String portalName, String
iamRole, String contactEmail) {
       CreatePortalRequest createPortalRequest = CreatePortalRequest.builder()
```

```
            .portalName(portalName)
            .portalDescription("This is my custom IoT SiteWise portal.")
            .portalContactEmail(contactEmail)
            .roleArn(iamRole)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createPortal(createPortalRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create portal: {} ",
 exception.getCause().getMessage());
                    throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                return response.portalId();
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreatePortalCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create a Portal.
 * @param {{ portalName: string, portalContactEmail: string, roleArn: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ portalName, portalContactEmail, roleArn }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
```

```
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreatePortalCommand({
        portalName: portalName, // The name to give the created Portal.
        portalContactEmail: portalContactEmail, // A valid contact email.
        roleArn: roleArn, // The ARN of a service role that allows the portal's
 users to access the portal's resources.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Portal created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem creating the Portal.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.
```

```
        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
provides low-level
                           access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_portal(
        self, portal_name: str, iam_role_arn: str, portal_contact_email: str
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_name: The name of the portal to create.
        :param iam_role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role.
        :param portal_contact_email: The contact email of the portal.
        :return: The ID of the created portal.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_portal(
                portalName=portal_name,
                roleArn=iam_role_arn,
                portalContactEmail=portal_contact_email,
            )
            portal_id = response["portalId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("portal_active")
            waiter.wait(portalId=portal_id, WaiterConfig={"MaxAttempts": 40})
            return portal_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
```

```
                logger.error("Portal %s already exists.", portal_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteAsset` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAsset`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an asset

The following `delete-asset` example deletes a wind turbine asset.

```
aws iotsitewise delete-asset \
    --asset-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-33333EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "assetStatus": {
        "state": "DELETING"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting assets in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an asset.
    *
    * @param assetId the ID of the asset to be deleted.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
    *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetResponse> deleteAssetAsync(String
assetId) {
       DeleteAssetRequest deleteAssetRequest = DeleteAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetId(assetId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAsset(deleteAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An error occurred deleting asset with id: {}",
assetId);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeleteAssetCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an asset.
 * @param {{ assetId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAssetCommand({
        assetId: assetId, // The model id to delete.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset deleted successfully.");
    return { assetDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem deleting the asset.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
 AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)
```

```
    def delete_asset(self, asset_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset(assetId=asset_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteAssetModel` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAssetModel`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an asset model

The following `delete-asset-model` example deletes a wind turbine asset model.

```
aws iotsitewise delete-asset-model \
    --asset-model-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "assetModelStatus": {
        "state": "DELETING"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting asset models in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an Asset Model with the specified ID.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the Asset Model to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetModelResponse>
deleteAssetModelAsync(String assetModelId) {
       DeleteAssetModelRequest deleteAssetModelRequest =
DeleteAssetModelRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAssetModel(deleteAssetModelRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    logger.error("Failed to delete asset model with ID:{}.",
 exception.getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeleteAssetModelCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an asset model.
 * @param {{ assetModelId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelId: assetModelId, // The model id to delete.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model deleted successfully.");
    return { assetModelDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
```

```
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem deleting the asset model.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_asset_model(self, asset_model_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to delete.
        """
        try:

self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset_model(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_model_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteGateway` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a gateway

The following `delete-gateway` example deletes a gateway.

```
aws iotsitewise delete-gateway \
    --gateway-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1a1a1EXAMPLE
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Ingesting data using a gateway in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes the specified gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteGatewayResponse} result.. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteGatewayResponse> deleteGatewayAsync(String
gatewayId) {
       DeleteGatewayRequest deleteGatewayRequest =
DeleteGatewayRequest.builder()
           .gatewayId(gatewayId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteGateway(deleteGatewayRequest)
```

```
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to delete gateway: {}",
 exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeleteGatewayCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM document.
 * @param {{ content: string, name: string, documentType?: DocumentType }}
 */
export const main = async ({ gatewayId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteGatewayCommand({
        gatewayId: gatewayId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Gateway deleted successfully.");
    return { gatewayDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
```

```
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The Gateway could not be found. Please check the
 Gateway Id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
```

```
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_gateway(gatewayId=gateway_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeletePortal` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePortal`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a portal

The following `delete-portal` example deletes a web portal for a wind farm company.

```
aws iotsitewise delete-portal \
    --portal-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-aaaaaEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "portalStatus": {
        "state": "DELETING"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Deleting a portal in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a portal.
     *
     * @param portalId the ID of the portal to be deleted.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
 DeletePortalResponse}. The calling code can attach
     *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
 CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
 method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
 By calling
```

```
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
 access the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeletePortalResponse> deletePortalAsync(String
 portalId) {
        DeletePortalRequest deletePortalRequest = DeletePortalRequest.builder()
            .portalId(portalId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deletePortal(deletePortalRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to delete portal with ID: {}. Error:
 {}", portalId, exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeletePortalCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * List asset models.
 * @param {{ portalId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ portalId }) => {
```

```
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeletePortalCommand({
        portalId: portalId, // The id of the portal.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Portal deleted successfully.");
    return { portalDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem deleting the portal. Please check
 the portal id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.
```

```
        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_portal(self, portal_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_id: The ID of the portal to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_portal(portalId=portal_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Portal %s does not exist.", portal_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeAssetModel` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAssetModel`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an asset model

The following `describe-asset-model` example describes a wind farm asset model.

```
aws iotsitewise describe-asset-model \
    --asset-model-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-22222EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "assetModelId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-22222EXAMPLE",
    "assetModelArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:asset-model/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-22222EXAMPLE",
    "assetModelName": "Wind Farm Model",
    "assetModelDescription": "Represents a wind farm that comprises many wind
 turbines",
    "assetModelProperties": [
        {
            "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-99999EXAMPLE",
            "name": "Total Generated Power",
            "dataType": "DOUBLE",
            "unit": "kW",
            "type": {
                "metric": {
                    "expression": "sum(power)",
                    "variables": [
                        {
                            "name": "power",
                            "value": {
                                "propertyId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-66666EXAMPLE",
                                "hierarchyId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-
cdef-77777EXAMPLE"
                            }
                        }
```

```
                    ],
                    "window": {
                        "tumbling": {
                            "interval": "1h"
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-88888EXAMPLE",
            "name": "Region",
            "dataType": "STRING",
            "type": {
                "attribute": {
                    "defaultValue": " "
                }
            }
        }
    ],
    "assetModelHierarchies": [
        {
            "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-77777EXAMPLE",
            "name": "Wind Turbines",
            "childAssetModelId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE"
        }
    ],
    "assetModelCreationDate": 1575671284.0,
    "assetModelLastUpdateDate": 1575671988.0,
    "assetModelStatus": {
        "state": "ACTIVE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Describing a specific asset model in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAssetModel in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the property IDs associated with a specific asset model.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the asset model that defines the properties.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Map} result
that associates the property name to the
    *         propert ID. The calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the
result or exception by calling
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Map<String, String>> getPropertyIds(String
assetModelId) {
       ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest modelPropertiesRequest =
ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest.builder().assetModelId(assetModelId).build();
       return getAsyncClient().listAssetModelProperties(modelPropertiesRequest)
           .handle((response, throwable) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   return response.assetModelPropertySummaries().stream()
                       .collect(Collectors
                           .toMap(AssetModelPropertySummary::name,
AssetModelPropertySummary::id));
               } else {
                   logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property IDs:
{}.", throwable.getCause().getMessage());
```

```
                    throw (CompletionException) throwable;
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DescribeAssetModelCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe an asset model.
 * @param {{ assetModelId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const { assetModelDescription } = await client.send(
      new DescribeAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelId: assetModelId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model information retrieved successfully.");
    return { assetModelDescription: assetModelDescription };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
```

```
        `${caught.message}. The asset model could not be found. Please check the
 asset model id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssetModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DescribeGateway` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeGateway`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a gateway

The following `describe-gateway` example describes a gateway.

```
aws iotsitewise describe-gateway \
    --gateway-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1a1a1EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "gatewayId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1a1a1EXAMPLE",
    "gatewayName": "ExampleCorpGateway",
    "gatewayArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:gateway/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1a1a1EXAMPLE",
    "gatewayPlatform": {
        "greengrass": {
            "groupArn": "arn:aws:greengrass:us-west-2:123456789012:/greengrass/
groups/a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-1b1b1EXAMPLE"
        }
    },
    "gatewayCapabilitySummaries": [
        {
            "capabilityNamespace": "iotsitewise:opcuacollector:1",
```

```
            "capabilitySyncStatus": "IN_SYNC"
        }
    ],
    "creationDate": 1588369971.457,
    "lastUpdateDate": 1588369971.457
}
```

For more information, see Ingesting data using a gateway in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Describes the specified gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to describe.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DescribeGatewayResponse} result. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by
calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DescribeGatewayResponse> describeGatewayAsync(String
gatewayId) {
       DescribeGatewayRequest request = DescribeGatewayRequest.builder()
```

```
            .gatewayId(gatewayId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeGateway(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An error occurred during the describeGateway
 method: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DescribeGatewayCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM document.
 * @param {{ content: string, name: string, documentType?: DocumentType }}
 */
export const main = async ({ gatewayId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const { gatewayDescription } = await client.send(
      new DescribeGatewayCommand({
        gatewayId: gatewayId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
```

```
    );
    console.log("Gateway information retrieved successfully.");
    return { gatewayDescription: gatewayDescription };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The Gateway could not be found. Please check the
 Gateway Id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def describe_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Describes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to describe.
        :return: A dictionary containing information about the gateway.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.iotsitewise_client.describe_gateway(gatewayId=gateway_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error describing gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribePortal` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePortal`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a portal

The following `describe-portal` example describes a web portal for a wind farm company.

```
aws iotsitewise describe-portal \
    --portal-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-aaaaaEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "portalId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-aaaaaEXAMPLE",
    "portalArn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:portal/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-aaaaaEXAMPLE",
    "portalName": "WindFarmPortal",
    "portalDescription": "A portal that contains wind farm projects for Example
 Corp.",
    "portalClientId": "E-a1b2c3d4e5f6_a1b2c3d4e5f6EXAMPLE",
    "portalStartUrl": "https://a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-
aaaaaEXAMPLE.app.iotsitewise.aws",
    "portalContactEmail": "support@example.com",
    "portalStatus": {
        "state": "ACTIVE"
    },
    "portalCreationDate": "2020-02-04T23:01:52.90248068Z",
    "portalLastUpdateDate": "2020-02-04T23:01:52.90248078Z",
    "roleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MySiteWiseMonitorServiceRole"
}
```

For more information, see Administering your portals in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves a portal's description.
    *
    * @param portalId the ID of the portal to describe.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the portal's start URL
    *         (see: {@link DescribePortalResponse#portalStartUrl()}). The
calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the
    *         result or exception by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
{@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describePortalAsync(String portalId) {
       DescribePortalRequest request = DescribePortalRequest.builder()
           .portalId(portalId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describePortal(request)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An exception occurred retrieving the portal
description: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                   throw (CompletionException) exception;
               }
               return response.portalStartUrl();
           });
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DescribePortalCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe a portal.
 * @param {{ portalId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ portalId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new DescribePortalCommand({
        portalId: portalId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Portal information retrieved successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The Portal could not be found. Please check the
 Portal Id.`,
      );
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
 AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
```

```
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_gateway(self, gateway_name: str, my_thing: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_name: The name of the gateway to create.
        :param my_thing: The core device thing name.
        :return: The ID of the created gateway.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_gateway(
                gatewayName=gateway_name,
                gatewayPlatform={
                    "greengrassV2": {"coreDeviceThingName": my_thing},
                },
                tags={"Environment": "Production"},
            )
            gateway_id = response["gatewayId"]
            return gateway_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s already exists.", gateway_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetAssetPropertyValue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAssetPropertyValue`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve an asset property's current value

The following `get-asset-property-value` example retrieves a wind turbine asset's current total power.

```
aws iotsitewise get-asset-property-value \
    --asset-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-33333EXAMPLE \
    --property-id a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-66666EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "propertyValue": {
        "value": {
            "doubleValue": 6890.8677520453875
        },
        "timestamp": {
            "timeInSeconds": 1580853000,
            "offsetInNanos": 0
        },
        "quality": "GOOD"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Querying current asset property values in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Fetches the value of an asset property.
    *
    * @param propId  the ID of the asset property to fetch.
    * @param assetId the ID of the asset to fetch the property value for.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Double}
result. The calling code can attach
    *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Double> getAssetPropValueAsync(String propId, String
assetId) {
       GetAssetPropertyValueRequest assetPropertyValueRequest =
GetAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
               .propertyId(propId)
               .assetId(assetId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getAssetPropertyValue(assetPropertyValueRequest)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property
value: {}.", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                       throw (CompletionException) exception;
                   }
                   return response.propertyValue().value().doubleValue();
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe an asset property value.
 * @param {{ entryId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ entryId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new GetAssetPropertyValueCommand({
        entryId: entryId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset property information retrieved successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The asset property entry could not be found. Please
 check the entry id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
 AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def get_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, property_id: str
```

```
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the value of an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Property.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset.
        :param property_id: The ID of the property.
        :return: A dictionary containing the value of the property.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.get_asset_property_value(
                assetId=asset_id, propertyId=property_id
            )
            return response["propertyValue"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Asset %s or property %s does not exist.", asset_id,
property_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error getting asset property value. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListAssetModels` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAssetModels`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all asset models

The following `list-asset-models` example lists all asset models that are defined in your AWS account in the current Region.

```
aws iotsitewise list-asset-models
```

Output:

```
{
    "assetModelSummaries": [
        {
            "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-22222EXAMPLE",
            "arn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:asset-model/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-22222EXAMPLE",
            "name": "Wind Farm Model",
            "description": "Represents a wind farm that comprises many wind
 turbines",
            "creationDate": 1575671284.0,
            "lastUpdateDate": 1575671988.0,
            "status": {
                "state": "ACTIVE"
            }
        },
        {
            "id": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
            "arn": "arn:aws:iotsitewise:us-west-2:123456789012:asset-model/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-11111EXAMPLE",
            "name": "Wind Turbine Model",
            "description": "Represents a wind turbine manufactured by Example
 Corp",
            "creationDate": 1575671207.0,
            "lastUpdateDate": 1575686273.0,
            "status": {
                "state": "ACTIVE"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing all asset models in the *AWS IoT SiteWise User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the asset model ID for the given asset model name.
    *
    * @param assetModelName the name of the asset model for the ID.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String}
result of the asset model ID or null if the
    *         asset model cannot be found. The calling code can attach
callbacks, then handle the result or exception
    *         by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}.
By calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can
access the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> getAssetModelIdAsync(String assetModelName)
{
       ListAssetModelsRequest listAssetModelsRequest =
ListAssetModelsRequest.builder().build();
       return getAsyncClient().listAssetModels(listAssetModelsRequest)
               .handle((listAssetModelsResponse, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       logger.error("Failed to retrieve Asset Model ID: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                       throw (CompletionException) exception;
                   }
                   for (AssetModelSummary assetModelSummary :
listAssetModelsResponse.assetModelSummaries()) {
                       if (assetModelSummary.name().equals(assetModelName)) {
```

```
                            return assetModelSummary.id();
                        }
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ListAssetModelsCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * List asset models.
 * @param {{ assetModelTypes : array }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelTypes = [] }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new ListAssetModelsCommand({
        assetModelTypes: assetModelTypes, // The model types to list
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model types retrieved successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
```

```
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem listing the asset model types.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default
AWS IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def list_asset_models(self) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Lists all AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Models.

        :return: A list of dictionaries containing information about each asset
model.

        """
        try:
            asset_models = []
            paginator =
self.iotsitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
            pages = paginator.paginate()
            for page in pages:
                asset_models.extend(page["assetModelSummaries"])
            return asset_models
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error listing asset models. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Keyspaces Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Keyspaces.
- **Amazon Keyspaces API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Keyspaces actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

public class HelloKeyspaces
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache
 Cassandra).
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
                .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloKeyspaces>();

        var keyspacesClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonKeyspaces>();
        var keyspacesWrapper = new KeyspacesWrapper(keyspacesClient);

        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list your keyspaces:");
        await keyspacesWrapper.ListKeyspaces();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.KeyspacesClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.KeyspaceSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.KeyspacesException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.ListKeyspacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.ListKeyspacesResponse;
```

```
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloKeyspaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KeyspacesClient keyClient = KeyspacesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listKeyspaces(keyClient);
    }

    public static void listKeyspaces(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
        try {
            ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest =
 ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListKeyspacesResponse response =
 keyClient.listKeyspaces(keyspacesRequest);
            List<KeyspaceSummary> keyspaces = response.keyspaces();
            for (KeyspaceSummary keyspace : keyspaces) {
                System.out.println("The name of the keyspace is " +
 keyspace.keyspaceName());
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
*/

suspend fun main() {
    listKeyspaces()
}

suspend fun listKeyspaces() {
    val keyspacesRequest =
        ListKeyspacesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.listKeyspaces(keyspacesRequest)
        response.keyspaces?.forEach { keyspace ->
            println("The name of the keyspace is ${keyspace.keyspaceName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_keyspaces(keyspaces_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache
 Cassandra)
    client and list the keyspaces in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces Client object. This object
 wraps
                             the low-level Amazon Keyspaces service API.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list some of your keyspaces:\n")
    for ks in keyspaces_client.list_keyspaces(maxResults=5).get("keyspaces", []):
        print(ks["keyspaceName"])
        print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_keyspaces(boto3.client("keyspaces"))
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Keyspaces
  - Learn the basics of Amazon Keyspaces with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateKeyspace with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateTable with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteKeyspace with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetKeyspace with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetTable with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListKeyspaces with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListTables with an AWS SDK
    - Use RestoreTable with an AWS SDK
    - Use UpdateTable with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Keyspaces
- Learn the basics of Amazon Keyspaces with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateKeyspace with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateTable with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteKeyspace with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetKeyspace with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetTable with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListKeyspaces with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListTables with an AWS SDK

- Use RestoreTable with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateTable with an AWS SDK

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

public class HelloKeyspaces
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache
 Cassandra).
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
                .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
```

```
            .CreateLogger<HelloKeyspaces>();

        var keyspacesClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonKeyspaces>();
        var keyspacesWrapper = new KeyspacesWrapper(keyspacesClient);

        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list your keyspaces:");
        await keyspacesWrapper.ListKeyspaces();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.KeyspacesClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.KeyspaceSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.KeyspacesException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.ListKeyspacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.ListKeyspacesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
```

```
public class HelloKeyspaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KeyspacesClient keyClient = KeyspacesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listKeyspaces(keyClient);
    }

    public static void listKeyspaces(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
        try {
            ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest =
 ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListKeyspacesResponse response =
 keyClient.listKeyspaces(keyspacesRequest);
            List<KeyspaceSummary> keyspaces = response.keyspaces();
            for (KeyspaceSummary keyspace : keyspaces) {
                System.out.println("The name of the keyspace is " +
 keyspace.keyspaceName());
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
*/

suspend fun main() {
    listKeyspaces()
}

suspend fun listKeyspaces() {
    val keyspacesRequest =
        ListKeyspacesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.listKeyspaces(keyspacesRequest)
        response.keyspaces?.forEach { keyspace ->
            println("The name of the keyspace is ${keyspace.keyspaceName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_keyspaces(keyspaces_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache
 Cassandra)
    client and list the keyspaces in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces Client object. This object
 wraps
                             the low-level Amazon Keyspaces service API.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list some of your keyspaces:\n")
    for ks in keyspaces_client.list_keyspaces(maxResults=5).get("keyspaces", []):
        print(ks["keyspaceName"])
        print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_keyspaces(boto3.client("keyspaces"))
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon Keyspaces with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a keyspace and table. The table schema holds movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
- Connect to the keyspace using a secure TLS connection with SigV4 authentication.
- Query the table. Add, retrieve, and update movie data.
- Update the table. Add a column to track watched movies.
- Restore the table to its previous state and clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using System.Security.Cryptography.X509Certificates;
global using Amazon.Keyspaces;
global using Amazon.Keyspaces.Model;
global using KeyspacesActions;
global using KeyspacesScenario;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
global using Newtonsoft.Json;


namespace KeyspacesBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) scenario. Shows some of the basic
/// actions performed with Amazon Keyspaces.
/// </summary>
public class KeyspacesBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
            .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<CassandraWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<KeyspacesBasics>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var keyspacesWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<KeyspacesWrapper>();
        var uiMethods = new UiMethods();

        var keyspaceName = configuration["KeyspaceName"];
        var tableName = configuration["TableName"];

        bool success; // Used to track the results of some operations.

        uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Create the keyspace.
        var keyspaceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.CreateKeyspace(keyspaceName);

        // Wait for the keyspace to be available. GetKeyspace results in a
```

```
        // resource not found error until it is ready for use.
        try
        {
            var getKeyspaceArn = "";
            Console.Write($"Created {keyspaceName}. Waiting for it to become
available. ");
            do
            {
                getKeyspaceArn = await
keyspacesWrapper.GetKeyspace(keyspaceName);
                Console.Write(". ");
            } while (getKeyspaceArn != keyspaceArn);
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for keyspace to be created.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe keyspace {keyspaceName} is ready for use.");

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Create the table.
        // First define the schema.
        var allColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition>
        {
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "title", Type = "text" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "year", Type = "int" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "release_date", Type = "timestamp" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "plot", Type = "text" },
        };

        var partitionKeys = new List<PartitionKey>
        {
            new PartitionKey { Name = "year", },
            new PartitionKey { Name = "title" },
        };

        var tableSchema = new SchemaDefinition
        {
            AllColumns = allColumns,
            PartitionKeys = partitionKeys,
        };
```

```
        var tableArn = await keyspacesWrapper.CreateTable(keyspaceName,
tableSchema, tableName);

        // Wait for the table to be active.
        try
        {
            var resp = new GetTableResponse();
            Console.Write("Waiting for the new table to be active. ");
            do
            {
                try
                {
                    resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName,
tableName);
                    Console.Write(".");
                }
                catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
                {
                    Console.Write(".");
                }
            } while (resp.Status != TableStatus.ACTIVE);

            // Display the table's schema.
            Console.WriteLine($"\nTable {tableName} has been created in
{keyspaceName}");
            Console.WriteLine("Let's take a look at the schema.");
            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("All columns");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.AllColumns.ForEach(column =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{column.Name,-40}\t{column.Type,-20}");
            });

            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Cluster keys");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.ClusteringKeys.ForEach(clusterKey =>
            {

Console.WriteLine($"{clusterKey.Name,-40}\t{clusterKey.OrderBy,-20}");
            });

            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Partition keys");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.PartitionKeys.ForEach(partitionKey =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{partitionKey.Name}");
            });
```

```
            uiMethods.PressEnter();
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Access Apache Cassandra using the Cassandra drive for C#.
        var cassandraWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<CassandraWrapper>();
        var movieFilePath = configuration["MovieFile"];

        Console.WriteLine("Let's add some movies to the table we created.");
        var inserted = await cassandraWrapper.InsertIntoMovieTable(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieFilePath);

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("Added the following movies to the table:");
        var rows = await cassandraWrapper.GetMovies(keyspaceName, tableName);
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("All Movies");

        foreach (var row in rows)
        {
            var title = row.GetValue<string>("title");
            var year = row.GetValue<int>("year");
            var plot = row.GetValue<string>("plot");
            var release_date = row.GetValue<DateTime>("release_date");
            Console.WriteLine($"{release_date}\t{title}\t{year}\n{plot}");
            Console.WriteLine(uiMethods.SepBar);
        }

        // Update the table schema
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Update table schema");
        Console.WriteLine("Now we will update the table to add a boolean field
called watched.");

        // First save the current time as a UTC Date so the original
        // table can be restored later.
        var timeChanged = DateTime.UtcNow;

        // Now update the schema.
```

```
        var resourceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.UpdateTable(keyspaceName,
tableName);
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("Now let's mark some of the movies as watched.");

        // Pick some files to mark as watched.
        var movieToWatch = rows[2].GetValue<string>("title");
        var watchedMovieYear = rows[2].GetValue<int>("year");
        var changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[6].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[6].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[9].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[9].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[10].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[10].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[13].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[13].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Watched movies");
        Console.WriteLine("These movies have been marked as watched:");
        rows = await cassandraWrapper.GetWatchedMovies(keyspaceName, tableName);
        foreach (var row in rows)
        {
            var title = row.GetValue<string>("title");
            var year = row.GetValue<int>("year");
            Console.WriteLine($"{title,-40}\t{year,8}");
        }
        uiMethods.PressEnter();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("We can restore the table to its previous state but
that can take up to 20 minutes to complete.");
        string answer;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Do you want to restore the table? (y/n)");
            answer = Console.ReadLine();
        } while (answer.ToLower() != "y" && answer.ToLower() != "n");

        if (answer == "y")
        {
            var restoredTableName = $"{tableName}_restored";
            var restoredTableArn = await keyspacesWrapper.RestoreTable(
                keyspaceName,
                tableName,
                restoredTableName,
                timeChanged);
            // Loop and call GetTable until the table is gone. Once it has been
            // deleted completely, GetTable will raise a
ResourceNotFoundException.
            bool wasRestored = false;

            try
            {
                do
                {
                    var resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName,
restoredTableName);
                    wasRestored = (resp.Status == TableStatus.ACTIVE);
                } while (!wasRestored);
            }
            catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
            {
                // If the restored table raised an error, it isn't
                // ready yet.
                Console.Write(".");
            }
        }

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources.");

        // Delete the table.
        success = await keyspacesWrapper.DeleteTable(keyspaceName, tableName);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} successfully deleted from
 {keyspaceName}.");
        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for the table to be removed completely. ");

        // Loop and call GetTable until the table is gone. Once it has been
        // deleted completely, GetTable will raise a ResourceNotFoundException.
        bool wasDeleted = false;

        try
        {
            do
            {
                var resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName,
 tableName);
            } while (!wasDeleted);
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            wasDeleted = true;
            Console.WriteLine($"{ex.Message} indicates that the table has been
 deleted.");
        }

        // Delete the keyspace.
        success = await keyspacesWrapper.DeleteKeyspace(keyspaceName);
        Console.WriteLine("The keyspace has been deleted and the demo is now
 complete.");
    }
}
```

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

/// <summary>
/// Performs Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) actions.
/// </summary>
public class KeyspacesWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonKeyspaces _amazonKeyspaces;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the KeyspaceWrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonKeyspaces">An Amazon Keyspaces client object.</param>
    public KeyspacesWrapper(IAmazonKeyspaces amazonKeyspaces)
    {
        _amazonKeyspaces = amazonKeyspaces;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name for the new keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateKeyspaceAsync(
                new CreateKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace where the table will be
created.</param>
    /// <param name="schema">The schema for the new table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the new table.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTable(string keyspaceName, SchemaDefinition
schema, string tableName)
    {
        var request = new CreateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SchemaDefinition = schema,
            TableName = tableName,
            PointInTimeRecovery = new PointInTimeRecovery { Status =
PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED }
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an existing keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName"></param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteKeyspaceAsync(
            new DeleteKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteTableAsync(
            new DeleteTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetKeyspaceAsync(
            new GetKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get information about an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <returns>The response containing data about the table.</returns>
    public async Task<GetTableResponse> GetTable(string keyspaceName, string
tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetTableAsync(
            new GetTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Lists all keyspaces for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ListKeyspaces()
    {
        var paginator = _amazonKeyspaces.Paginators.ListKeyspaces(new
ListKeyspacesRequest());

        Console.WriteLine("{0, -30}\t{1}", "Keyspace name", "Keyspace ARN");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', Console.WindowWidth));
        await foreach (var keyspace in paginator.Keyspaces)
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{keyspace.KeyspaceName,-30}\t{keyspace.ResourceArn}");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Keyspaces tables in a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of TableSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TableSummary>> ListTables(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.ListTablesAsync(new
ListTablesRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        response.Tables.ForEach(table =>
```

```
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{table.KeyspaceName}\t{table.TableName}\t{table.ResourceArn}");
        });

        return response.Tables;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Restores the specified table to the specified point in time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to restore.</param>
    /// <param name="timestamp">The time to which the table will be restored.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the restored table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RestoreTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName,
 string restoredTableName, DateTime timestamp)
    {
        var request = new RestoreTableRequest
        {
            RestoreTimestamp = timestamp,
            SourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SourceTableName = tableName,
            TargetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TargetTableName = restoredTableName
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.RestoreTableAsync(request);
        return response.RestoredTableARN;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Updates the movie table to add a boolean column named watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to change.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the updated table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var newColumn = new ColumnDefinition { Name = "watched", Type =
 "boolean" };
```

```
        var request = new UpdateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TableName = tableName,
            AddColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition> { newColumn }
        };
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.UpdateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }

}
```

```
using System.Net;
using Cassandra;

namespace KeyspacesScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Class to perform CRUD methods on an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra)
 database.
///
/// NOTE: This sample uses a plain text authenticator for example purposes only.
/// Recommended best practice is to use a SigV4 authentication plugin, if
 available.
/// </summary>
public class CassandraWrapper
{
    private readonly IConfiguration _configuration;
    private readonly string _localPathToFile;
    private const string _certLocation = "https://certs.secureserver.net/
repository/sf-class2-root.crt";
    private const string _certFileName = "sf-class2-root.crt";
    private readonly X509Certificate2Collection _certCollection;
    private X509Certificate2 _amazoncert;
    private Cluster _cluster;

    // User name and password for the service.
    private string _userName = null!;
    private string _pwd = null!;

    public CassandraWrapper()
```

```
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        _localPathToFile = Path.GetTempPath();

        // Get the Starfield digital certificate and save it locally.
        var client = new WebClient();
        client.DownloadFile(_certLocation, $"{_localPathToFile}/
{_certFileName}");

        //var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        //var httpResult = httpClient.Get(fileUrl);
        //using var resultStream = await httpResult.Content.ReadAsStreamAsync();
        //using var fileStream = File.Create(pathToSave);
        //resultStream.CopyTo(fileStream);

        _certCollection = new X509Certificate2Collection();
        _amazoncert = new X509Certificate2($"{_localPathToFile}/
{_certFileName}");

        // Get the user name and password stored in the configuration file.
        _userName = _configuration["UserName"]!;
        _pwd = _configuration["Password"]!;

        // For a list of Service Endpoints for Amazon Keyspaces, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/
programmatic.endpoints.html
        var awsEndpoint = _configuration["ServiceEndpoint"];

        _cluster = Cluster.Builder()
            .AddContactPoints(awsEndpoint)
            .WithPort(9142)
            .WithAuthProvider(new PlainTextAuthProvider(_userName, _pwd))
            .WithSSL(new SSLOptions().SetCertificateCollection(_certCollection))
            .WithQueryOptions(
                new QueryOptions()
                    .SetConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LocalQuorum)
                    .SetSerialConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LocalSerial))
            .Build();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
    /// added to the Apache Cassandra table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of movie objects.</returns>
    public List<Movie> ImportMoviesFromJson(string movieFileName, int numToImport
 = 0)
    {
        if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
        {
            return null!;
        }

        using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
        string json = sr.ReadToEnd();

        var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

        // If numToImport = 0, return all movies in the collection.
        if (numToImport == 0)
        {
            // Now return the entire list of movies.
            return allMovies;
        }
        else
        {
            // Now return the first numToImport entries.
            return allMovies.GetRange(0, numToImport);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Insert movies into the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="movieTableName">The Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <param name="movieFilePath">The path to the resource file containing
    /// movie data to insert into the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> InsertIntoMovieTable(string keyspaceName, string
 movieTableName, string movieFilePath, int numToImport = 20)
```

```
    {
        // Get some movie data from the movies.json file
        var movies = ImportMoviesFromJson(movieFilePath, numToImport);

        var session = _cluster.Connect(keyspaceName);

        string insertCql;

        RowSet rs;

        // Now we insert the numToImport movies into the table.
        foreach (var movie in movies)
        {
            // Escape single quote characters in the plot.
            insertCql = $"INSERT INTO {keyspaceName}.{movieTableName}
(title, year, release_date, plot) values($${movie.Title}$$, {movie.Year},
'{movie.Info.Release_Date.ToString("yyyy-MM-dd")}', $${movie.Info.Plot}$$)";
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement(insertCql));
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets all of the movies in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of row objects containing movie data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> GetMovies(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        RowSet rs;
        try
        {
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement($"SELECT * FROM
{keyspaceName}.{tableName}"));

            // Extract the row data from the returned RowSet.
            var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
            return rows;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return null!;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Mark a movie in the movie table as watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="title">The title of the movie to mark as watched.</param>
    /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
    /// <returns>A set of rows containing the changed data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> MarkMovieAsWatched(string keyspaceName, string
 tableName, string title, int year)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        string updateCql = $"UPDATE {keyspaceName}.{tableName} SET watched=true
 WHERE title = $${title}$$ AND year = {year};";
        var rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement(updateCql));
        var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
        return rows;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the movies in the movies table where watched is true.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of row objects containing information about movies
    /// where watched is true.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> GetWatchedMovies(string keyspaceName, string
 tableName)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        RowSet rs;
        try
        {
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement($"SELECT
 title, year, plot FROM {keyspaceName}.{tableName} WHERE watched = true ALLOW
 FILTERING"));

            // Extract the row data from the returned RowSet.
            var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
```

```
            return rows;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return null!;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * Before running this Java code example, you must create a
 * Java keystore (JKS) file and place it in your project's resources folder.
 *
 * This file is a secure file format used to hold certificate information for
 * Java applications. This is required to make a connection to Amazon Keyspaces.
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/using_java_driver.html
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Create a keyspace.
 * 2. Check for keyspace existence.
 * 3. List keyspaces using a paginator.
 * 4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and enable point-in-time
 * recovery.
 * 5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.
 * 6. List all tables in the keyspace.
 * 7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into the Movie table.
 * 8. Get all records from the Movie table.
 * 9. Get a specific Movie.
 * 10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.
 * 11. Update the table schema to add a ‘watched’ Boolean column.
 * 12. Update an item as watched.
 * 13. Query for items with watched = True.
 * 14. Restore the table back to the previous state using the timestamp.
 * 15. Check for completion of the restore action.
 * 16. Delete the table.
 * 17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.
 * 18. Delete the keyspace.
 */

public class ScenarioKeyspaces {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    /*
     * Usage:
```

```
    * fileName - The name of the JSON file that contains movie data. (Get this
file
    * from the GitHub repo at resources/sample_file.)
    * keyspaceName - The name of the keyspace to create.
    */
   public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException,
IOException {
       String fileName = "<Replace with the JSON file that contains movie
data>";
       String keyspaceName = "<Replace with the name of the keyspace to
create>";
       String titleUpdate = "The Family";
       int yearUpdate = 2013;
       String tableName = "Movie";
       String tableNameRestore = "MovieRestore";
       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       KeyspacesClient keyClient = KeyspacesClient.builder()
               .region(region)
               .build();

       DriverConfigLoader loader =
DriverConfigLoader.fromClasspath("application.conf");
       CqlSession session = CqlSession.builder()
               .withConfigLoader(loader)
               .build();

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Keyspaces example scenario.");
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("1. Create a keyspace.");
       createKeySpace(keyClient, keyspaceName);
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       Thread.sleep(5000);
       System.out.println("2. Check for keyspace existence.");
       checkKeyspaceExistence(keyClient, keyspaceName);
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("3. List keyspaces using a paginator.");
       listKeyspacesPaginator(keyClient);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and
enable point-in-time recovery.");
        createTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.");
        Thread.sleep(6000);
        checkTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. List all tables in the keyspace.");
        listTables(keyClient, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into
the Movie table.");
        Thread.sleep(6000);
        loadData(session, fileName, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Get all records from the Movie table.");
        getMovieData(session, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Get a specific Movie.");
        getSpecificMovie(session, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.");
        ZonedDateTime utc = ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC);
        System.out.println("DATETIME = " + Date.from(utc.toInstant()));
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("11. Update the table schema to add a watched Boolean
column.");
        updateTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Update an item as watched.");
        Thread.sleep(10000); // Wait 10 secs for the update.
        updateRecord(session, keyspaceName, titleUpdate, yearUpdate);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Query for items with watched = True.");
        getWatchedData(session, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Restore the table back to the previous state
using the timestamp.");
        System.out.println("Note that the restore operation can take up to 20
minutes.");
        restoreTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, utc);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("15. Check for completion of the restore action.");
        Thread.sleep(5000);
        checkRestoredTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, "MovieRestore");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("16. Delete both tables.");
        deleteTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        deleteTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableNameRestore);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.");
        checkTableDelete(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        checkTableDelete(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableNameRestore);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("18. Delete the keyspace.");
```

```
        deleteKeyspace(keyClient, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The scenario has completed successfully.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void deleteKeyspace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
        try {
            DeleteKeyspaceRequest deleteKeyspaceRequest =
DeleteKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkTableDelete(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, String tableName)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            String status;
            GetTableResponse response;
            GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            // Keep looping until table cannot be found and a
ResourceNotFoundException is
            // thrown.
            while (true) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                System.out.println(". The table status is " + status);
                Thread.sleep(500);
            }
```

```
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println("The table is deleted");
    }

    public static void deleteTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, String tableName) {
        try {
            DeleteTableRequest tableRequest = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkRestoredTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, String tableName)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean tableStatus = false;
            String status;
            GetTableResponse response = null;
            GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            while (!tableStatus) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                System.out.println("The table status is " + status);

                if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                    tableStatus = true;
                }
                Thread.sleep(500);
```

```
            }

            List<ColumnDefinition> cols =
response.schemaDefinition().allColumns();
            for (ColumnDefinition def : cols) {
                System.out.println("The column name is " + def.name());
                System.out.println("The column type is " + def.type());
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void restoreTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, ZonedDateTime utc) {
        try {
            Instant myTime = utc.toInstant();
            RestoreTableRequest restoreTableRequest =
RestoreTableRequest.builder()
                    .restoreTimestamp(myTime)
                    .sourceTableName("Movie")
                    .targetKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .targetTableName("MovieRestore")
                    .sourceKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            RestoreTableResponse response =
keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the restored table is " +
response.restoredTableARN());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getWatchedData(CqlSession session, String keyspaceName) {
        ResultSet resultSet = session
                .execute("SELECT * FROM \"" + keyspaceName + "\".\"Movie\" WHERE
watched = true ALLOW FILTERING;");
        resultSet.forEach(item -> {
```

```
            System.out.println("The Movie title is " + item.getString("title"));
            System.out.println("The Movie year is " + item.getInt("year"));
            System.out.println("The plot is " + item.getString("plot"));
        });
    }

    public static void updateRecord(CqlSession session, String keySpace, String
titleUpdate, int yearUpdate) {
        String sqlStatement = "UPDATE \"" + keySpace
                + "\".\"Movie\" SET watched=true WHERE title = :k0 AND year
= :k1;";
        BatchStatementBuilder builder =
BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED);
        builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM);
        PreparedStatement preparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement);
        builder.addStatement(preparedStatement.boundStatementBuilder()
                .setString("k0", titleUpdate)
                .setInt("k1", yearUpdate)
                .build());

        BatchStatement batchStatement = builder.build();
        session.execute(batchStatement);
    }

    public static void updateTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
        try {
            ColumnDefinition def = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("watched")
                    .type("boolean")
                    .build();

            UpdateTableRequest tableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .addColumns(def)
                    .build();

            keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void getSpecificMovie(CqlSession session, String keyspaceName)
{
        ResultSet resultSet = session.execute(
                "SELECT * FROM \"" + keyspaceName + "\".\"Movie\" WHERE title =
'The Family' ALLOW FILTERING ;");
        resultSet.forEach(item -> {
            System.out.println("The Movie title is " + item.getString("title"));
            System.out.println("The Movie year is " + item.getInt("year"));
            System.out.println("The plot is " + item.getString("plot"));
        });
    }

    // Get records from the Movie table.
    public static void getMovieData(CqlSession session, String keyspaceName) {
        ResultSet resultSet = session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"" + keyspaceName +
"\".\"Movie\";");
        resultSet.forEach(item -> {
            System.out.println("The Movie title is " + item.getString("title"));
            System.out.println("The Movie year is " + item.getInt("year"));
            System.out.println("The plot is " + item.getString("plot"));
        });
    }

    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(CqlSession session, String fileName, String
keySpace) throws IOException {
        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO \"" + keySpace + "\".\"Movie\" (title,
year, plot) values (:k0, :k1, :k2)";
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        while (iter.hasNext()) {

            // Add 20 movies to the table.
            if (t == 20)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
```

```
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String plot = currentNode.path("info").path("plot").toString();

            // Insert the data into the Amazon Keyspaces table.
            BatchStatementBuilder builder =
BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED);
            builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM);
            PreparedStatement preparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement);
            builder.addStatement(preparedStatement.boundStatementBuilder()
                    .setString("k0", title)
                    .setInt("k1", year)
                    .setString("k2", plot)
                    .build());

            BatchStatement batchStatement = builder.build();
            session.execute(batchStatement);
            t++;
        }

        System.out.println("You have added " + t + " records successfully!");
    }

    public static void listTables(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName)
{
        try {
            ListTablesRequest tablesRequest = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            ListTablesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listTablesPaginator(tablesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.tables().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" ARN: " +
content.resourceArn() +
                            " Table name: " + content.tableName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
   public static void checkTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
String tableName)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean tableStatus = false;
           String status;
           GetTableResponse response = null;
           GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .tableName(tableName)
                   .build();

           while (!tableStatus) {
               response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
               status = response.statusAsString();
               System.out.println(". The table status is " + status);

               if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                   tableStatus = true;
               }
               Thread.sleep(500);
           }

           List<ColumnDefinition> cols =
response.schemaDefinition().allColumns();
           for (ColumnDefinition def : cols) {
               System.out.println("The column name is " + def.name());
               System.out.println("The column type is " + def.type());
           }

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static void createTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
       try {
           // Set the columns.
           ColumnDefinition defTitle = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                   .name("title")
                   .type("text")
                   .build();
```

```
            ColumnDefinition defYear = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("year")
                    .type("int")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defReleaseDate = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("release_date")
                    .type("timestamp")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defPlot = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("plot")
                    .type("text")
                    .build();

            List<ColumnDefinition> colList = new ArrayList<>();
            colList.add(defTitle);
            colList.add(defYear);
            colList.add(defReleaseDate);
            colList.add(defPlot);

            // Set the keys.
            PartitionKey yearKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                    .name("year")
                    .build();

            PartitionKey titleKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                    .name("title")
                    .build();

            List<PartitionKey> keyList = new ArrayList<>();
            keyList.add(yearKey);
            keyList.add(titleKey);

            SchemaDefinition schemaDefinition = SchemaDefinition.builder()
                    .partitionKeys(keyList)
                    .allColumns(colList)
                    .build();

            PointInTimeRecovery timeRecovery = PointInTimeRecovery.builder()
                    .status(PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED)
                    .build();
```

```
            CreateTableRequest tableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .schemaDefinition(schemaDefinition)
                    .pointInTimeRecovery(timeRecovery)
                    .build();

            CreateTableResponse response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest);
            System.out.println("The table ARN is " + response.resourceArn());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listKeyspacesPaginator(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
        try {
            ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest =
ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListKeyspacesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listKeyspacesPaginator(keyspacesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.keyspaces().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.keyspaceName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkKeyspaceExistence(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
        try {
            GetKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest = GetKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();
```

```
            GetKeyspaceResponse response =
 keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
            String name = response.keyspaceName();
            System.out.println("The " + name + " KeySpace is ready");

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createKeySpace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
 keyspaceName) {
        try {
            CreateKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest =
 CreateKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            CreateKeyspaceResponse response =
 keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the KeySpace is " +
 response.resourceArn());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces

- ListTables
- RestoreTable
- UpdateTable

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:

 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This example uses a secure file format to hold certificate information for
 Kotlin applications. This is required to make a connection to Amazon Keyspaces.
 For more information, see the following documentation topic:

 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/using_java_driver.html

 This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Create a keyspace.
 2. Check for keyspace existence.
 3. List keyspaces using a paginator.
 4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and enable point-in-time
 recovery.
 5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.
 6. List all tables in the keyspace.
 7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into the Movie table.
 8. Get all records from the Movie table.
 9. Get a specific Movie.
```

```
 10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.
 11. Update the table schema to add a ‘watched’ Boolean column.
 12. Update an item as watched.
 13. Query for items with watched = True.
 14. Restore the table back to the previous state using the timestamp.
 15. Check for completion of the restore action.
 16. Delete the table.
 17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.
 18. Delete the keyspace.
 */

/*
   Usage:
     fileName - The name of the JSON file that contains movie data. (Get this
 file from the GitHub repo at resources/sample_file.)
     keyspaceName - The name of the keyspace to create.
 */
val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main() {
    val fileName = "<Replace with the JSON file that contains movie data>"
    val keyspaceName = "<Replace with the name of the keyspace to create>"
    val titleUpdate = "The Family"
    val yearUpdate = 2013
    val tableName = "MovieKotlin"
    val tableNameRestore = "MovieRestore"

    val loader = DriverConfigLoader.fromClasspath("application.conf")
    val session =
        CqlSession
            .builder()
            .withConfigLoader(loader)
            .build()

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon Keyspaces example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create a keyspace.")
    createKeySpace(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
```

```
    delay(5000)
    println("2. Check for keyspace existence.")
    checkKeyspaceExistence(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. List keyspaces using a paginator.")
    listKeyspacesPaginator()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and enable point-
in-time recovery.")
    createTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.")
    delay(6000)
    checkTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. List all tables in the keyspace.")
    listTables(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into the Movie
 table.")
    delay(6000)
    loadData(session, fileName, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Get all records from the Movie table.")
    getMovieData(session, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Get a specific Movie.")
    getSpecificMovie(session, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.")
    val utc = ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC)
    println("DATETIME = ${Date.from(utc.toInstant())}")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Update the table schema to add a watched Boolean column.")
    updateTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Update an item as watched.")
    delay(10000) // Wait 10 seconds for the update.
    updateRecord(session, keyspaceName, titleUpdate, yearUpdate)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Query for items with watched = True.")
    getWatchedData(session, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Restore the table back to the previous state using the
timestamp.")
    println("Note that the restore operation can take up to 20 minutes.")
    restoreTable(keyspaceName, utc)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Check for completion of the restore action.")
    delay(5000)
    checkRestoredTable(keyspaceName, "MovieRestore")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Delete both tables.")
    deleteTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    deleteTable(keyspaceName, tableNameRestore)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.")
    checkTableDelete(keyspaceName, tableName)
```

```
    checkTableDelete(keyspaceName, tableNameRestore)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("18. Delete the keyspace.")
    deleteKeyspace(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The scenario has completed successfully.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteKeyspace(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val deleteKeyspaceRequest =
        DeleteKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun checkTableDelete(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse
    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    try {
        KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient
 ->
            // Keep looping until the table cannot be found and a
 ResourceNotFoundException is thrown.
            while (true) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
                status = response.status.toString()
```

```
                println(". The table status is $status")
                delay(500)
            }
        }
    } catch (e: ResourceNotFoundException) {
        println(e.message)
    }
    println("The table is deleted")
}

suspend fun deleteTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val tableRequest =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun checkRestoredTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var tableStatus = false
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse? = null

    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        while (!tableStatus) {
            response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
            status = response!!.status.toString()
            println("The table status is $status")
```

```
            if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                tableStatus = true
            }
            delay(500)
        }

        val cols = response!!.schemaDefinition?.allColumns
        if (cols != null) {
            for (def in cols) {
                println("The column name is ${def.name}")
                println("The column type is ${def.type}")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun restoreTable(
    keyspaceName: String?,
    utc: ZonedDateTime,
) {
    // Create an aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant value.
    val timeStamp =
        aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
            .Instant(utc.toInstant())
    val restoreTableRequest =
        RestoreTableRequest {
            restoreTimestamp = timeStamp
            sourceTableName = "MovieKotlin"
            targetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
            targetTableName = "MovieRestore"
            sourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest)
        println("The ARN of the restored table is ${response.restoredTableArn}")
    }
}

fun getWatchedData(
    session: CqlSession,
    keyspaceName: String,
) {
```

```
    val resultSet = session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"$keyspaceName\".
\"MovieKotlin\" WHERE watched = true ALLOW FILTERING;")
    resultSet.forEach { item: Row ->
        println("The Movie title is ${item.getString("title")}")
        println("The Movie year is ${item.getInt("year")}")
        println("The plot is ${item.getString("plot")}")
    }
}

fun updateRecord(
    session: CqlSession,
    keySpace: String,
    titleUpdate: String?,
    yearUpdate: Int,
) {
    val sqlStatement =
        "UPDATE \"$keySpace\".\"MovieKotlin\" SET watched=true WHERE title = :k0
 AND year = :k1;"
    val builder = BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED)
    builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM)
    val preparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement)
    builder.addStatement(
        preparedStatement
            .boundStatementBuilder()
            .setString("k0", titleUpdate)
            .setInt("k1", yearUpdate)
            .build(),
    )
    val batchStatement = builder.build()
    session.execute(batchStatement)
}

suspend fun updateTable(
    keySpace: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val def =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "watched"
            type = "boolean"
        }

    val tableRequest =
        UpdateTableRequest {
```

```
            keyspaceName = keySpace
            tableName = tableNameVal
            addColumns = listOf(def)
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest)
    }
}

fun getSpecificMovie(
    session: CqlSession,
    keyspaceName: String,
) {
    val resultSet =
        session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"$keyspaceName\".\"MovieKotlin\" WHERE
 title = 'The Family' ALLOW FILTERING ;")

    resultSet.forEach { item: Row ->
        println("The Movie title is ${item.getString("title")}")
        println("The Movie year is ${item.getInt("year")}")
        println("The plot is ${item.getString("plot")}")
    }
}

// Get records from the Movie table.
fun getMovieData(
    session: CqlSession,
    keyspaceName: String,
) {
    val resultSet = session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"$keyspaceName\".
\"MovieKotlin\";")
    resultSet.forEach { item: Row ->
        println("The Movie title is ${item.getString("title")}")
        println("The Movie year is ${item.getInt("year")}")
        println("The plot is ${item.getString("plot")}")
    }
}

// Load data into the table.
fun loadData(
    session: CqlSession,
    fileName: String,
    keySpace: String,
```

```
) {
    val sqlStatement =
        "INSERT INTO \"$keySpace\".\"MovieKotlin\" (title, year, plot) values
 (:k0, :k1, :k2)"
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode

    var t = 0
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 50) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()

        // Insert the data into the Amazon Keyspaces table.
        val builder = BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED)
        builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM)
        val preparedStatement: PreparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement)
        builder.addStatement(
            preparedStatement
                .boundStatementBuilder()
                .setString("k0", title)
                .setInt("k1", year)
                .setString("k2", info)
                .build(),
        )

        val batchStatement = builder.build()
        session.execute(batchStatement)
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun listTables(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val tablesRequest =
        ListTablesRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }
```

```
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listTablesPaginated(tablesRequest)
            .transform { it.tables?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" ARN: ${obj.resourceArn} Table name: ${obj.tableName}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun checkTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var tableStatus = false
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse? = null

    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        while (!tableStatus) {
            response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
            status = response!!.status.toString()
            println(". The table status is $status")
            if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                tableStatus = true
            }
            delay(500)
        }
        val cols: List<ColumnDefinition>? =
 response!!.schemaDefinition?.allColumns
        if (cols != null) {
            for (def in cols) {
                println("The column name is ${def.name}")
                println("The column type is ${def.type}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun createTable(
    keySpaceVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    // Set the columns.
    val defTitle =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "title"
            type = "text"
        }

    val defYear =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "year"
            type = "int"
        }

    val defReleaseDate =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "release_date"
            type = "timestamp"
        }

    val defPlot =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "plot"
            type = "text"
        }

    val colList = ArrayList<ColumnDefinition>()
    colList.add(defTitle)
    colList.add(defYear)
    colList.add(defReleaseDate)
    colList.add(defPlot)

    // Set the keys.
    val yearKey =
        PartitionKey {
            name = "year"
        }

    val titleKey =
        PartitionKey {
```

```
            name = "title"
        }

    val keyList = ArrayList<PartitionKey>()
    keyList.add(yearKey)
    keyList.add(titleKey)

    val schemaDefinitionOb =
        SchemaDefinition {
            partitionKeys = keyList
            allColumns = colList
        }

    val timeRecovery =
        PointInTimeRecovery {
            status = PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.Enabled
        }

    val tableRequest =
        CreateTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keySpaceVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
            schemaDefinition = schemaDefinitionOb
            pointInTimeRecovery = timeRecovery
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest)
        println("The table ARN is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun listKeyspacesPaginator() {
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listKeyspacesPaginated(ListKeyspacesRequest {})
            .transform { it.keyspaces?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name: ${obj.keyspaceName}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun checkKeyspaceExistence(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
```

```
    val keyspaceRequest =
        GetKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response: GetKeyspaceResponse =
 keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        val name = response.keyspaceName
        println("The $name KeySpace is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun createKeySpace(keyspaceNameVal: String) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
        CreateKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        println("The ARN of the KeySpace is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class KeyspaceScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon
 Keyspaces."""

    def __init__(self, ks_wrapper):
        """
        :param ks_wrapper: An object that wraps Amazon Keyspace actions.
        """
        self.ks_wrapper = ks_wrapper

    @demo_func
    def create_keyspace(self):
        """
        1. Creates a keyspace.
        2. Lists up to 10 keyspaces in your account.
        """
        print("Let's create a keyspace.")
        ks_name = q.ask(
            "Enter a name for your new keyspace.\nThe name can contain only
 letters, "
            "numbers and underscores: ",
            q.non_empty,
        )
        if self.ks_wrapper.exists_keyspace(ks_name):
            print(f"A keyspace named {ks_name} exists.")
        else:
            ks_arn = self.ks_wrapper.create_keyspace(ks_name)
            ks_exists = False
            while not ks_exists:
                wait(3)
                ks_exists = self.ks_wrapper.exists_keyspace(ks_name)
```

```
            print(f"Created a new keyspace.\n\t{ks_arn}.")
        print("The first 10 keyspaces in your account are:\n")
        self.ks_wrapper.list_keyspaces(10)

    @demo_func
    def create_table(self):
        """
        1. Creates a table in the keyspace. The table is configured with a schema
to hold
           movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
        2. Waits for the table to be in an active state.
        3. Displays schema information for the table.
        4. Lists tables in the keyspace.
        """
        print("Let's create a table for movies in your keyspace.")
        table_name = q.ask("Enter a name for your table: ", q.non_empty)
        table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
        if table is not None:
            print(
                f"A table named {table_name} already exists in keyspace "
                f"{self.ks_wrapper.ks_name}."
            )
        else:
            table_arn = self.ks_wrapper.create_table(table_name)
            print(f"Created table {table_name}:\n\t{table_arn}")
            table = {"status": None}
            print("Waiting for your table to be ready...")
            while table["status"] != "ACTIVE":
                wait(5)
                table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
        print(f"Your table is {table['status']}. Its schema is:")
        pp(table["schemaDefinition"])
        print("\nThe tables in your keyspace are:\n")
        self.ks_wrapper.list_tables()

    @demo_func
    def ensure_tls_cert(self):
        """
        Ensures you have a TLS certificate available to use to secure the
connection
        to the keyspace. This function downloads a default certificate or lets
you
        specify your own.
        """
```

```
        print("To connect to your keyspace, you must have a TLS certificate.")
        print("Checking for TLS certificate...")
        cert_path = os.path.join(
            os.path.dirname(__file__), QueryManager.DEFAULT_CERT_FILE
        )
        if not os.path.exists(cert_path):
            cert_choice = q.ask(
                f"Press enter to download a certificate from
{QueryManager.CERT_URL} "
                f"or enter the full path to the certificate you want to use: "
            )
            if cert_choice:
                cert_path = cert_choice
            else:
                cert = requests.get(QueryManager.CERT_URL).text
                with open(cert_path, "w") as cert_file:
                    cert_file.write(cert)
        else:
            q.ask(f"Certificate {cert_path} found. Press Enter to continue.")
        print(
            f"Certificate {cert_path} will be used to secure the connection to
your keyspace."
        )
        return cert_path

    @demo_func
    def query_table(self, qm, movie_file):
        """
        1. Adds movies to the table from a sample movie data file.
        2. Gets a list of movies from the table and lets you select one.
        3. Displays more information about the selected movie.
        """
        qm.add_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name, movie_file)
        movies = qm.get_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name)
        print(f"Added {len(movies)} movies to the table:")
        sel = q.choose("Pick one to learn more about it: ", [m.title for m in
movies])
        movie_choice = qm.get_movie(
            self.ks_wrapper.table_name, movies[sel].title, movies[sel].year
        )
        print(movie_choice.title)
        print(f"\tReleased: {movie_choice.release_date}")
        print(f"\tPlot: {movie_choice.plot}")
```

```
    @demo_func
    def update_and_restore_table(self, qm):
        """
        1. Updates the table by adding a column to track watched movies.
        2. Marks some of the movies as watched.
        3. Gets the list of watched movies from the table.
        4. Restores to a movies_restored table at a previous point in time.
        5. Gets the list of movies from the restored table.
        """
        print("Let's add a column to record which movies you've watched.")
        pre_update_timestamp = datetime.utcnow()
        print(
            f"Recorded the current UTC time of {pre_update_timestamp} so we can
restore the table later."
        )
        self.ks_wrapper.update_table()
        print("Waiting for your table to update...")
        table = {"status": "UPDATING"}
        while table["status"] != "ACTIVE":
            wait(5)
            table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(self.ks_wrapper.table_name)
        print("Column 'watched' added to table.")
        q.ask(
            "Let's mark some of the movies as watched. Press Enter when you're
ready.\n"
        )
        movies = qm.get_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name)
        for movie in movies[:10]:
            qm.watched_movie(self.ks_wrapper.table_name, movie.title, movie.year)
            print(f"Marked {movie.title} as watched.")
        movies = qm.get_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name, watched=True)
        print("-" * 88)
        print("The watched movies in our table are:\n")
        for movie in movies:
            print(movie.title)
        print("-" * 88)
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to restore the table to the way it was before all of
these\n"
            "updates? Keep in mind, this can take up to 20 minutes. (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            starting_table_name = self.ks_wrapper.table_name
```

```
            table_name_restored =
self.ks_wrapper.restore_table(pre_update_timestamp)
            table = {"status": "RESTORING"}
            while table["status"] != "ACTIVE":
                wait(10)
                table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name_restored)
            print(
                f"Restored {starting_table_name} to {table_name_restored} "
                f"at a point in time of {pre_update_timestamp}."
            )
            movies = qm.get_movies(table_name_restored)
            print("Now the movies in our table are:")
            for movie in movies:
                print(movie.title)

    def cleanup(self, cert_path):
        """
        1. Deletes the table and waits for it to be removed.
        2. Deletes the keyspace.

        :param cert_path: The path of the TLS certificate used in the demo. If
the
                          certificate was downloaded during the demo, it is
removed.
        """
        if q.ask(
            f"Do you want to delete your {self.ks_wrapper.table_name} table and "
            f"{self.ks_wrapper.ks_name} keyspace? (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            table_name = self.ks_wrapper.table_name
            self.ks_wrapper.delete_table()
            table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
            print("Waiting for the table to be deleted.")
            while table is not None:
                wait(5)
                table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
            print("Table deleted.")
            self.ks_wrapper.delete_keyspace()
            print(
                "Keyspace deleted. If you chose to restore your table during the
"
                "demo, the original table is also deleted."
            )
```

```
            if cert_path == os.path.join(
                os.path.dirname(__file__), QueryManager.DEFAULT_CERT_FILE
            ) and os.path.exists(cert_path):
                os.remove(cert_path)
                print("Removed certificate that was downloaded for this demo.")

    def run_scenario(self):
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s:
 %(message)s")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) demo.")
        print("-" * 88)

        self.create_keyspace()
        self.create_table()
        cert_file_path = self.ensure_tls_cert()
        # Use a context manager to ensure the connection to the keyspace is
 closed.
        with QueryManager(
            cert_file_path, boto3.DEFAULT_SESSION, self.ks_wrapper.ks_name
        ) as qm:
            self.query_table(qm, "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json")
            self.update_and_restore_table(qm)
        self.cleanup(cert_file_path)

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = KeyspaceScenario(KeyspaceWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps keyspace and table actions.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def create_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Creates a keyspace.

        :param name: The name to give the keyspace.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = name
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.ks_arn


    def exists_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Checks whether a keyspace exists.

        :param name: The name of the keyspace to look up.
```

```
        :return: True when the keyspace exists. Otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = response["keyspaceName"]
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Keyspace %s does not exist.", name)
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return exists


    def list_keyspaces(self, limit):
        """
        Lists the keyspaces in your account.

        :param limit: The maximum number of keyspaces to list.
        """
        try:
            ks_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_keyspaces")
            for page in ks_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems":
limit}):
                for ks in page["keyspaces"]:
                    print(ks["keyspaceName"])
                    print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list keyspaces. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates a table in the  keyspace.
        The table is created with a schema for storing movie data
        and has point-in-time recovery enabled.

        :param table_name: The name to give the table.
        :return: The ARN of the new table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=table_name,
                schemaDefinition={
                    "allColumns": [
                        {"name": "title", "type": "text"},
                        {"name": "year", "type": "int"},
                        {"name": "release_date", "type": "timestamp"},
                        {"name": "plot", "type": "text"},
                    ],
                    "partitionKeys": [{"name": "year"}, {"name": "title"}],
                },
                pointInTimeRecovery={"status": "ENABLED"},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["resourceArn"]


    def get_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Gets data about a table in the keyspace.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to look up.
        :return: Data about the table.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=table_name
            )
            self.table_name = table_name
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Table %s does not exist.", table_name)
                self.table_name = None
                response = None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response


    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the tables in the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            table_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_tables")
            for page in table_paginator.paginate(keyspaceName=self.ks_name):
                for table in page["tables"]:
                    print(table["tableName"])
                    print(f"\t{table['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables in keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def update_table(self):
        """
        Updates the schema of the table.
```

```
        This example updates a table of movie data by adding a new column
        that tracks whether the movie has been watched.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.update_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=self.table_name,
                addColumns=[{"name": "watched", "type": "boolean"}],
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def restore_table(self, restore_timestamp):
        """
        Restores the table to a previous point in time. The table is restored
        to a new table in the same keyspace.

        :param restore_timestamp: The point in time to restore the table. This
time
                                  must be in UTC format.
        :return: The name of the restored table.
        """
        try:
            restored_table_name = f"{self.table_name}_restored"
            self.keyspaces_client.restore_table(
                sourceKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                sourceTableName=self.table_name,
                targetKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                targetTableName=restored_table_name,
                restoreTimestamp=restore_timestamp,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't restore table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                restore_timestamp,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return restored_table_name


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table from the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=self.table_name
            )
            self.table_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_keyspace(self):
        """
        Deletes the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_keyspace(keyspaceName=self.ks_name)
            self.ks_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Define a class that creates a TLS connection to a keyspace, authenticates with SigV4, and sends CQL queries to a table in the keyspace.

```
class QueryManager:
    """
    Manages queries to an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace.
    Queries are secured by TLS and authenticated by using the Signature V4
 (SigV4)
    AWS signing protocol. This is more secure than sending username and password
    with a plain-text authentication provider.

    This example downloads a default certificate to secure TLS, or lets you
 specify
    your own.

    This example uses a table of movie data to demonstrate basic queries.
    """

    DEFAULT_CERT_FILE = "sf-class2-root.crt"
    CERT_URL = f"https://certs.secureserver.net/repository/sf-class2-root.crt"

    def __init__(self, cert_file_path, boto_session, keyspace_name):
        """
        :param cert_file_path: The path and file name of the certificate used for
 TLS.
        :param boto_session: A Boto3 session. This is used to acquire your AWS
 credentials.
        :param keyspace_name: The name of the keyspace to connect.
        """
        self.cert_file_path = cert_file_path
        self.boto_session = boto_session
        self.ks_name = keyspace_name
        self.cluster = None
        self.session = None

    def __enter__(self):
        """
        Creates a session connection to the keyspace that is secured by TLS and
        authenticated by SigV4.
        """
        ssl_context = SSLContext(PROTOCOL_TLSv1_2)
```

```
        ssl_context.load_verify_locations(self.cert_file_path)
        ssl_context.verify_mode = CERT_REQUIRED
        auth_provider = SigV4AuthProvider(self.boto_session)
        contact_point = f"cassandra.
{self.boto_session.region_name}.amazonaws.com"
        exec_profile = ExecutionProfile(
            consistency_level=ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM,
            load_balancing_policy=DCAwareRoundRobinPolicy(),
        )
        self.cluster = Cluster(
            [contact_point],
            ssl_context=ssl_context,
            auth_provider=auth_provider,
            port=9142,
            execution_profiles={EXEC_PROFILE_DEFAULT: exec_profile},
            protocol_version=4,
        )
        self.cluster.__enter__()
        self.session = self.cluster.connect(self.ks_name)
        return self

    def __exit__(self, *args):
        """
        Exits the cluster. This shuts down all existing session connections.
        """
        self.cluster.__exit__(*args)

    def add_movies(self, table_name, movie_file_path):
        """
        Gets movies from a JSON file and adds them to a table in the keyspace.

        :param table_name: The name of the table.
        :param movie_file_path: The path and file name of a JSON file that
 contains movie data.
        """
        with open(movie_file_path, "r") as movie_file:
            movies = json.loads(movie_file.read())
        stmt = self.session.prepare(
            f"INSERT INTO {table_name} (year, title, release_date, plot) VALUES
 (?, ?, ?, ?);"
        )
        for movie in movies[:20]:
            self.session.execute(
                stmt,
```

```
                parameters=[
                    movie["year"],
                    movie["title"],
                    date.fromisoformat(movie["info"]
["release_date"].partition("T")[0]),
                    movie["info"]["plot"],
                ],
            )

    def get_movies(self, table_name, watched=None):
        """
        Gets the title and year of the full list of movies from the table.

        :param table_name: The name of the movie table.
        :param watched: When specified, the returned list of movies is filtered
 to
                        either movies that have been watched or movies that have
 not
                        been watched. Otherwise, all movies are returned.
        :return: A list of movies in the table.
        """
        if watched is None:
            stmt = SimpleStatement(f"SELECT title, year from {table_name}")
            params = None
        else:
            stmt = SimpleStatement(
                f"SELECT title, year from {table_name} WHERE watched = %s ALLOW
 FILTERING"
            )
            params = [watched]
        return self.session.execute(stmt, parameters=params).all()

    def get_movie(self, table_name, title, year):
        """
        Gets a single movie from the table, by title and year.

        :param table_name: The name of the movie table.
        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The year of the movie's release.
        :return: The requested movie.
        """
        return self.session.execute(
            SimpleStatement(
                f"SELECT * from {table_name} WHERE title = %s AND year = %s"
```

```
            ),
            parameters=[title, year],
        ).one()

    def watched_movie(self, table_name, title, year):
        """
        Updates a movie as having been watched.

        :param table_name: The name of the movie table.
        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The year of the movie's release.
        """
        self.session.execute(
            SimpleStatement(
                f"UPDATE {table_name} SET watched=true WHERE title = %s AND year
= %s"
            ),
            parameters=[title, year],
        )
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Actions for Amazon Keyspaces using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Keyspaces actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateKeyspace with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateTable with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteKeyspace with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteTable with an AWS SDK
- Use GetKeyspace with an AWS SDK
- Use GetTable with an AWS SDK
- Use ListKeyspaces with an AWS SDK
- Use ListTables with an AWS SDK
- Use RestoreTable with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateTable with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateKeyspace` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateKeyspace`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name for the new keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateKeyspaceAsync(
                new CreateKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void createKeySpace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
        try {
```

```
            CreateKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest =
 CreateKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            CreateKeyspaceResponse response =
 keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the KeySpace is " +
 response.resourceArn());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createKeySpace(keyspaceNameVal: String) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
        CreateKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        println("The ARN of the KeySpace is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def create_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Creates a keyspace.

        :param name: The name to give the keyspace.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = name
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.ks_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateTable` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace where the table will be
created.</param>
    /// <param name="schema">The schema for the new table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the new table.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTable(string keyspaceName, SchemaDefinition
schema, string tableName)
    {
        var request = new CreateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SchemaDefinition = schema,
            TableName = tableName,
            PointInTimeRecovery = new PointInTimeRecovery { Status =
PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED }
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void createTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
        try {
            // Set the columns.
            ColumnDefinition defTitle = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("title")
                    .type("text")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defYear = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("year")
```

```
                .type("int")
                .build();

        ColumnDefinition defReleaseDate = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                .name("release_date")
                .type("timestamp")
                .build();

        ColumnDefinition defPlot = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                .name("plot")
                .type("text")
                .build();

        List<ColumnDefinition> colList = new ArrayList<>();
        colList.add(defTitle);
        colList.add(defYear);
        colList.add(defReleaseDate);
        colList.add(defPlot);

        // Set the keys.
        PartitionKey yearKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                .name("year")
                .build();

        PartitionKey titleKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                .name("title")
                .build();

        List<PartitionKey> keyList = new ArrayList<>();
        keyList.add(yearKey);
        keyList.add(titleKey);

        SchemaDefinition schemaDefinition = SchemaDefinition.builder()
                .partitionKeys(keyList)
                .allColumns(colList)
                .build();

        PointInTimeRecovery timeRecovery = PointInTimeRecovery.builder()
                .status(PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

        CreateTableRequest tableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                .tableName(tableName)
```

```
                    .schemaDefinition(schemaDefinition)
                    .pointInTimeRecovery(timeRecovery)
                    .build();

            CreateTableResponse response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest);
            System.out.println("The table ARN is " + response.resourceArn());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createTable(
    keySpaceVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    // Set the columns.
    val defTitle =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "title"
            type = "text"
        }

    val defYear =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "year"
            type = "int"
        }
```

```
    val defReleaseDate =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "release_date"
            type = "timestamp"
        }

    val defPlot =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "plot"
            type = "text"
        }

    val colList = ArrayList<ColumnDefinition>()
    colList.add(defTitle)
    colList.add(defYear)
    colList.add(defReleaseDate)
    colList.add(defPlot)

    // Set the keys.
    val yearKey =
        PartitionKey {
            name = "year"
        }

    val titleKey =
        PartitionKey {
            name = "title"
        }

    val keyList = ArrayList<PartitionKey>()
    keyList.add(yearKey)
    keyList.add(titleKey)

    val schemaDefinitionOb =
        SchemaDefinition {
            partitionKeys = keyList
            allColumns = colList
        }

    val timeRecovery =
        PointInTimeRecovery {
            status = PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.Enabled
        }
```

```
    val tableRequest =
        CreateTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keySpaceVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
            schemaDefinition = schemaDefinitionOb
            pointInTimeRecovery = timeRecovery
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest)
        println("The table ARN is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates a table in the  keyspace.
        The table is created with a schema for storing movie data
        and has point-in-time recovery enabled.

        :param table_name: The name to give the table.
        :return: The ARN of the new table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=table_name,
                schemaDefinition={
                    "allColumns": [
                        {"name": "title", "type": "text"},
                        {"name": "year", "type": "int"},
                        {"name": "release_date", "type": "timestamp"},
                        {"name": "plot", "type": "text"},
                    ],
                    "partitionKeys": [{"name": "year"}, {"name": "title"}],
                },
                pointInTimeRecovery={"status": "ENABLED"},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["resourceArn"]
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteKeyspace` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteKeyspace`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete an existing keyspace.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName"></param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
{
    var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteKeyspaceAsync(
        new DeleteKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
    return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteKeyspace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
       try {
           DeleteKeyspaceRequest deleteKeyspaceRequest =
DeleteKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .build();

           keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest);

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteKeyspace(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
```

```
    val deleteKeyspaceRequest =
        DeleteKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)
```

```
    def delete_keyspace(self):
        """
        Deletes the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_keyspace(keyspaceName=self.ks_name)
            self.ks_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteTable` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon Keyspaces table.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteTableAsync(
            new DeleteTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, String tableName) {
        try {
            DeleteTableRequest tableRequest = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val tableRequest =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table from the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=self.table_name
            )
            self.table_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetKeyspace` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetKeyspace`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get data about a keyspace.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the keyspace.</returns>
public async Task<string> GetKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
{
    var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetKeyspaceAsync(
        new GetKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
    return response.ResourceArn;
}
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkKeyspaceExistence(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
       try {
           GetKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest = GetKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .build();

           GetKeyspaceResponse response =
keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
           String name = response.keyspaceName();
           System.out.println("The " + name + " KeySpace is ready");

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkKeyspaceExistence(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
        GetKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response: GetKeyspaceResponse =
 keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        val name = response.keyspaceName
        println("The $name KeySpace is ready")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def exists_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Checks whether a keyspace exists.

        :param name: The name of the keyspace to look up.
        :return: True when the keyspace exists. Otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = response["keyspaceName"]
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Keyspace %s does not exist.", name)
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return exists
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetTable` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <returns>The response containing data about the table.</returns>
    public async Task<GetTableResponse> GetTable(string keyspaceName, string
tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetTableAsync(
            new GetTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
String tableName)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean tableStatus = false;
           String status;
           GetTableResponse response = null;
           GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .tableName(tableName)
                   .build();

           while (!tableStatus) {
               response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
               status = response.statusAsString();
               System.out.println(". The table status is " + status);

               if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                   tableStatus = true;
               }
               Thread.sleep(500);
           }

           List<ColumnDefinition> cols =
response.schemaDefinition().allColumns();
           for (ColumnDefinition def : cols) {
               System.out.println("The column name is " + def.name());
               System.out.println("The column type is " + def.type());
           }

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var tableStatus = false
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse? = null

    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        while (!tableStatus) {
            response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
            status = response!!.status.toString()
            println(". The table status is $status")
            if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                tableStatus = true
            }
            delay(500)
        }
        val cols: List<ColumnDefinition>? =
 response!!.schemaDefinition?.allColumns
```

```
        if (cols != null) {
            for (def in cols) {
                println("The column name is ${def.name}")
                println("The column type is ${def.type}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def get_table(self, table_name):
```

```
        """
        Gets data about a table in the keyspace.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to look up.
        :return: Data about the table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=table_name
            )
            self.table_name = table_name
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Table %s does not exist.", table_name)
                self.table_name = None
                response = None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListKeyspaces` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListKeyspaces`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists all keyspaces for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ListKeyspaces()
    {
        var paginator = _amazonKeyspaces.Paginators.ListKeyspaces(new
ListKeyspacesRequest());

        Console.WriteLine("{0, -30}\t{1}", "Keyspace name", "Keyspace ARN");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', Console.WindowWidth));
        await foreach (var keyspace in paginator.Keyspaces)
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{keyspace.KeyspaceName,-30}\t{keyspace.ResourceArn}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listKeyspacesPaginator(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
        try {
            ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest =
ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListKeyspacesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listKeyspacesPaginator(keyspacesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.keyspaces().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.keyspaceName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listKeyspacesPaginator() {
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listKeyspacesPaginated(ListKeyspacesRequest {})
            .transform { it.keyspaces?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name: ${obj.keyspaceName}")
            }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def list_keyspaces(self, limit):
        """
        Lists the keyspaces in your account.

        :param limit: The maximum number of keyspaces to list.
        """
        try:
```

```
            ks_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_keyspaces")
            for page in ks_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems":
limit}):
                for ks in page["keyspaces"]:
                    print(ks["keyspaceName"])
                    print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list keyspaces. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListTables` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListTables`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Keyspaces tables in a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of TableSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TableSummary>> ListTables(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.ListTablesAsync(new
ListTablesRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        response.Tables.ForEach(table =>
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{table.KeyspaceName}\t{table.TableName}\t{table.ResourceArn}");
        });

        return response.Tables;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listTables(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName)
{
        try {
            ListTablesRequest tablesRequest = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            ListTablesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listTablesPaginator(tablesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.tables().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" ARN: " +
content.resourceArn() +
```

```
                                " Table name: " + content.tableName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listTables(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val tablesRequest =
        ListTablesRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listTablesPaginated(tablesRequest)
            .transform { it.tables?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" ARN: ${obj.resourceArn} Table name: ${obj.tableName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the tables in the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            table_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_tables")
            for page in table_paginator.paginate(keyspaceName=self.ks_name):
                for table in page["tables"]:
                    print(table["tableName"])
                    print(f"\t{table['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables in keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RestoreTable` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `RestoreTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Restores the specified table to the specified point in time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to restore.</param>
    /// <param name="timestamp">The time to which the table will be restored.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the restored table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RestoreTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName,
 string restoredTableName, DateTime timestamp)
    {
```

```
        var request = new RestoreTableRequest
        {
            RestoreTimestamp = timestamp,
            SourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SourceTableName = tableName,
            TargetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TargetTableName = restoredTableName
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.RestoreTableAsync(request);
        return response.RestoredTableARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void restoreTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, ZonedDateTime utc) {
       try {
           Instant myTime = utc.toInstant();
           RestoreTableRequest restoreTableRequest =
RestoreTableRequest.builder()
                   .restoreTimestamp(myTime)
                   .sourceTableName("Movie")
                   .targetKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .targetTableName("MovieRestore")
                   .sourceKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .build();

           RestoreTableResponse response =
keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The ARN of the restored table is " +
 response.restoredTableARN());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun restoreTable(
    keyspaceName: String?,
    utc: ZonedDateTime,
) {
    // Create an aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant value.
    val timeStamp =
        aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
            .Instant(utc.toInstant())
    val restoreTableRequest =
        RestoreTableRequest {
            restoreTimestamp = timeStamp
            sourceTableName = "MovieKotlin"
            targetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
            targetTableName = "MovieRestore"
            sourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest)
        println("The ARN of the restored table is ${response.restoredTableArn}")
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def restore_table(self, restore_timestamp):
        """
        Restores the table to a previous point in time. The table is restored
        to a new table in the same keyspace.

        :param restore_timestamp: The point in time to restore the table. This
 time
```

```
                                must be in UTC format.
        :return: The name of the restored table.
        """
        try:
            restored_table_name = f"{self.table_name}_restored"
            self.keyspaces_client.restore_table(
                sourceKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                sourceTableName=self.table_name,
                targetKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                targetTableName=restored_table_name,
                restoreTimestamp=restore_timestamp,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't restore table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                restore_timestamp,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return restored_table_name
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateTable` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateTable`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Updates the movie table to add a boolean column named watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to change.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the updated table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var newColumn = new ColumnDefinition { Name = "watched", Type =
"boolean" };
        var request = new UpdateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TableName = tableName,
            AddColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition> { newColumn }
        };
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.UpdateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void updateTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
       try {
           ColumnDefinition def = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                   .name("watched")
                   .type("boolean")
                   .build();

           UpdateTableRequest tableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                   .tableName(tableName)
                   .addColumns(def)
                   .build();

           keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest);

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateTable(
    keySpace: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val def =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "watched"
            type = "boolean"
        }

    val tableRequest =
        UpdateTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keySpace
            tableName = tableNameVal
            addColumns = listOf(def)
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def update_table(self):
        """
        Updates the schema of the table.

        This example updates a table of movie data by adding a new column
        that tracks whether the movie has been watched.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.update_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=self.table_name,
                addColumns=[{"name": "watched", "type": "boolean"}],
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Kinesis using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Kinesis with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Kinesis Developer Guide** – More information about Kinesis.
- **Kinesis API Reference** – Details about all available Kinesis actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Kinesis using AWS SDKs
  - Learn the basics of Kinesis with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Kinesis using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTagsToStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateStream with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeregisterStreamConsumer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRecords with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetShardIterator with a CLI
- Use ListStreamConsumers with an AWS SDK
- Use ListStreams with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecord with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecords with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterStreamConsumer with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Serverless examples for Kinesis
  - Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger
  - Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

Basic examples for Kinesis using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Kinesis with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Learn the basics of Kinesis with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Kinesis using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTagsToStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeregisterStreamConsumer with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetRecords with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetShardIterator with a CLI
  - Use ListStreamConsumers with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListStreams with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ListTagsForStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecord with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecords with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterStreamConsumer with an AWS SDK or CLI

Learn the basics of Kinesis with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a stream and put a record in it.
- Create a shard iterator.
- Read the record, then clean up resources.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
DATA lo_stream_describe_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsdescrstreamoutput.
DATA lo_stream_description TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsstreamdescription.
DATA lo_sharditerator TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsgetsharditerator01.
DATA lo_record_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsputrecordoutput.

"Create stream."
TRY.
    lo_kns->createstream(
        iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
        iv_shardcount = iv_shard_count ).
    MESSAGE 'Stream created.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
    MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceeded
 exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in
 use.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Wait for stream to becomes active."
    lo_stream_describe_result = lo_kns->describestream( iv_streamname =
 iv_stream_name ).
    lo_stream_description = lo_stream_describe_result->get_streamdescription( ).
    WHILE lo_stream_description->get_streamstatus( ) <> 'ACTIVE'.
      IF sy-index = 30.
        EXIT.               "maximum 5 minutes"
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.
      lo_stream_describe_result = lo_kns->describestream( iv_streamname =
 iv_stream_name ).
      lo_stream_description = lo_stream_describe_result-
>get_streamdescription( ).
    ENDWHILE.

    "Create record."
    TRY.
        lo_record_result = lo_kns->putrecord(
            iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
            iv_data       = iv_data
            iv_partitionkey = iv_partition_key ).
        MESSAGE 'Record created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request
quotas.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested
data is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Create a shard iterator in order to read the record."
    TRY.
        lo_sharditerator = lo_kns->getsharditerator(
          iv_shardid = lo_record_result->get_shardid( )
          iv_sharditeratortype = iv_sharditeratortype
          iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Shard iterator created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested
data is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Read the record."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_kns->getrecords(                    " oo_result is
returned for testing purposes. "
            iv_sharditerator   = lo_sharditerator->get_sharditerator( ) ).
        MESSAGE 'Shard iterator created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsexpirediteratorex.
        MESSAGE 'Iterator expired.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request
quotas.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested
data is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Delete stream."
    TRY.
        lo_kns->deletestream(
            iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Stream deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceeded
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in
use.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateStream
  - DeleteStream
  - GetRecords
  - GetShardIterator
  - PutRecord

Actions for Kinesis using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Kinesis actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Kinesis API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTagsToStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeregisterStreamConsumer with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetRecords with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetShardIterator with a CLI
- Use ListStreamConsumers with an AWS SDK
- Use ListStreams with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForStream with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecord with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutRecords with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterStreamConsumer with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AddTagsToStream` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddTagsToStream`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
```

```
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to apply key/value pairs to an Amazon Kinesis
/// stream.
/// </summary>
public class TagStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

        string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";
        var tags = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "Project", "Sample Kinesis Project" },
            { "Application", "Sample Kinesis App" },
        };

        var success = await ApplyTagsToStreamAsync(client, streamName, tags);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Taggs successfully added to {streamName}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Tags were not added to the stream.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Applies the set of tags to the named Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized Kinesis client.</param>
    /// <param name="streamName">The name of the Kinesis stream to which
    /// the tags will be attached.</param>
    /// <param name="tags">A sictionary containing key/value pairs which
    /// will be used to create the Kinesis tags.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value which represents the success or failure
    /// of AddTagsToStreamAsync.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> ApplyTagsToStreamAsync(
        IAmazonKinesis client,
        string streamName,
```

```
            Dictionary<string, string> tags)
        {
            var request = new AddTagsToStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                Tags = tags,
            };

            var response = await client.AddTagsToStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add tags to a data stream

The following `add-tags-to-stream` example assigns a tag with the key `samplekey` and value `example` to the specified stream.

```
aws kinesis add-tags-to-stream \
    --stream-name samplestream \
    --tags samplekey=example
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Your Streams in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see AddTagsToStream in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `CreateStream` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateStream`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to create a new Amazon Kinesis stream.
/// </summary>
public class CreateStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

        string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";
        int shardCount = 1;

        var success = await CreateNewStreamAsync(client, streamName,
shardCount);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The stream, {streamName} successfully
created.");
        }
    }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name for the new stream.</param>
        /// <param name="shardCount">The number of shards the new stream will
        /// use. The throughput of the stream is a function of the number of
        /// shards; more shards are required for greater provisioned
        /// throughput.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the stream was created.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateNewStreamAsync(IAmazonKinesis
 client, string streamName, int shardCount)
        {
            var request = new CreateStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                ShardCount = shardCount,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a data stream

The following `create-stream` example creates a data stream named samplestream with 3 shards.

```
aws kinesis create-stream \
    --stream-name samplestream \
    --shard-count 3
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating a Stream in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.CreateStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.KinesisException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateDataStream {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream (for example,
 StockTradeStream).
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        createStream(kinesisClient, streamName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        kinesisClient.close();
    }

    public static void createStream(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
 streamName) {
        try {
            CreateStreamRequest streamReq = CreateStreamRequest.builder()
                    .streamName(streamName)
                    .shardCount(1)
                    .build();

            kinesisClient.createStream(streamReq);

        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new stream. By default this cmdlet returns no output so the -PassThru switch is added to return the value supplied to the -StreamName parameter for subsequent use.

```
$streamName = New-KINStream -StreamName "mystream" -ShardCount 1 -PassThru
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new stream.

```
New-KINStream -StreamName "mystream" -ShardCount 1
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
```

```
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def create(self, name, wait_until_exists=True):
        """
        Creates a stream.

        :param name: The name of the stream.
        :param wait_until_exists: When True, waits until the service reports that
                                  the stream exists, then queries for its
 metadata.
        """
        try:
            self.kinesis_client.create_stream(StreamName=name, ShardCount=1)
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Created stream %s.", name)
            if wait_until_exists:
                logger.info("Waiting until exists.")
                self.stream_exists_waiter.wait(StreamName=name)
                self.describe(name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create stream %s.", name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_stream(client: &Client, stream: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .create_stream()
        .stream_name(stream)
```

```
        .shard_count(4)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created stream");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_kns->createstream(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
           iv_shardcount = iv_shard_count ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in
use.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DeleteStream` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteStream`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to delete an Amazon Kinesis stream.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
        string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";

        var success = await DeleteStreamAsync(client, streamName);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Stream, {streamName} successfully deleted.");
        }
        else
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine("Stream not deleted.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the string to delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteStreamAsync(IAmazonKinesis client,
 string streamName)
        {
            // If EnforceConsumerDeletion is true, any consumers
            // of this stream will also be deleted. If it is set
            // to false and this stream has any consumers, the
            // call will fail with a ResourceInUseException.
            var request = new DeleteStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                EnforceConsumerDeletion = true,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a data stream

The following `delete-stream` example deletes the specified data stream.

```
aws kinesis delete-stream \
```

```
    --stream-name samplestream
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deleting a Stream in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DeleteStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.KinesisException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteDataStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
```

```
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream (for example,
 StockTradeStream)
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteStream(kinesisClient, streamName);
        kinesisClient.close();
        System.out.println("Done");
    }

    public static void deleteStream(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
 streamName) {
        try {
            DeleteStreamRequest delStream = DeleteStreamRequest.builder()
                    .streamName(streamName)
                    .build();

            kinesisClient.deleteStream(delStream);

        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the specified stream. You are prompted for confirmation before the command executes. To suppress confirmation prompting use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-KINStream -StreamName "mystream"
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified stream. You are prompted for confirmation before the command executes. To suppress confirmation prompting use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-KINStream -StreamName "mystream"
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
```

```
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes a stream.
        """
        try:
            self.kinesis_client.delete_stream(StreamName=self.name)
            self._clear()
            logger.info("Deleted stream %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete stream %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn remove_stream(client: &Client, stream: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client.delete_stream().stream_name(stream).send().await?;

    println!("Deleted stream.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_kns->deletestream(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in
use.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DeregisterStreamConsumer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterStreamConsumer`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to deregister a consumer from an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeregisterConsumer
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";
            string consumerName = "CONSUMER_NAME";
            string consumerARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream/consumer/CONSUMER_NAME:000000000000";

            var success = await DeregisterConsumerAsync(client, streamARN,
 consumerARN, consumerName);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumerName} successfully deregistered.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumerName} was not successfully
 deregistered.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deregisters a consumer from a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of a Kinesis stream.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerARN">The ARN of the consumer.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerName">The name of the consumer.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeregisterConsumerAsync(
            IAmazonKinesis client,
```

```
            string streamARN,
            string consumerARN,
            string consumerName)
        {
            var request = new DeregisterStreamConsumerRequest
            {
                StreamARN = streamARN,
                ConsumerARN = consumerARN,
                ConsumerName = consumerName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeregisterStreamConsumerAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeregisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister a data stream consumer

The following `deregister-stream-consumer` example deregisters the specified consumer from the specified data stream.

```
aws kinesis deregister-stream-consumer \
    --stream-arn arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:123456789012:stream/samplestream \
    --consumer-name KinesisConsumerApplication
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Developing Consumers with Enhanced Fan-Out Using the Kinesis Data Streams API in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeregisterStreamConsumer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `DescribeStream` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStream`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a data stream

The following `describe-stream` example returns the details of the specified data stream.

```
aws kinesis describe-stream \
    --stream-name samplestream
```

Output:

```
{
    "StreamDescription": {
        "Shards": [
            {
                "ShardId": "shardId-000000000000",
                "HashKeyRange": {
                    "StartingHashKey": "0",
                    "EndingHashKey": "113427455640312821154458202477256070484"
                },
                "SequenceNumberRange": {
                    "StartingSequenceNumber":
 "49600871682957036442365024926191073437251060580128653314"
                }
            },
            {
                "ShardId": "shardId-000000000001",
                "HashKeyRange": {
                    "StartingHashKey": "113427455640312821154458202477256070485",
                    "EndingHashKey": "226854911280625642308916404954512140969"
                },
                "SequenceNumberRange": {
                    "StartingSequenceNumber":
 "49600871682979337187563555549332609155523708941634633746"
                }
            },
            {
```

```
                "ShardId": "shardId-000000000002",
                "HashKeyRange": {
                    "StartingHashKey": "226854911280625642308916404954512140970",
                    "EndingHashKey": "340282366920938463463374607431768211455"
                },
                "SequenceNumberRange": {
                    "StartingSequenceNumber":
 "49600871683001637932762086172474144873796357303140614178"
                }
            }
        ],
        "StreamARN": "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:123456789012:stream/
samplestream",
        "StreamName": "samplestream",
        "StreamStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "RetentionPeriodHours": 24,
        "EnhancedMonitoring": [
            {
                "ShardLevelMetrics": []
            }
        ],
        "EncryptionType": "NONE",
        "KeyId": null,
        "StreamCreationTimestamp": 1572297168.0
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating and Managing Streams in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of the specified stream.

```
Get-KINStream -StreamName "mystream"
```

Output:

```
HasMoreShards        : False
```

```
RetentionPeriodHours : 24
Shards               : {}
StreamARN            : arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:123456789012:stream/mystream
StreamName           : mystream
StreamStatus         : ACTIVE
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified stream.

```
Get-KINStream -StreamName "mystream"
```

Output:

```
HasMoreShards        : False
RetentionPeriodHours : 24
Shards               : {}
StreamARN            : arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:123456789012:stream/mystream
StreamName           : mystream
StreamStatus         : ACTIVE
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
```

```
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def describe(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata about a stream.

        :param name: The name of the stream.
        :return: Metadata about the stream.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.describe_stream(StreamName=name)
            self.name = name
            self.details = response["StreamDescription"]
            logger.info("Got stream %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.details
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_stream(client: &Client, stream: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_stream().stream_name(stream).send().await?;
```

```
    let desc = resp.stream_description.unwrap();

    println!("Stream description:");
    println!("  Name:              {}:", desc.stream_name());
    println!("  Status:            {:?}", desc.stream_status());
    println!("  Open shards:       {:?}", desc.shards.len());
    println!("  Retention (hours): {}", desc.retention_period_hours());
    println!("  Encryption:        {:?}", desc.encryption_type.unwrap());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_kns->describestream(
            iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
        DATA(lt_stream_description) = oo_result->get_streamdescription( ).
        MESSAGE 'Streams retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
 exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `GetRecords` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetRecords`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To obtain records from a shard

The following `get-records` example gets data records from a Kinesis data stream's shard using the specified shard iterator.

```
aws kinesis get-records \
    --shard-iterator AAAAAAAAAAAF7/0mWD7IuHj1yGv/
TKuNgx2ukD5xipCY4cy4gU96orWwZwcSXh3K9tAmGYe0ZyLZrvzze0FVf9iN99hUPw/w/
b0YWYeehfNvnf1DYt5XpDJghLKr3DzgznkTmMymDP3R+3wRKeuEw6/kdxY2yKJH0veaiekaVc4N2VwK/
GvaGP2Hh9Fg7N++q0Adg6fIDQPt4p8RpavDbk+A4sL9SWGE1
```

Output:

```
{
    "Records": [],
    "MillisBehindLatest": 80742000
}
```

For more information, see Developing Consumers Using the Kinesis Data Streams API with the AWS SDK for Java in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.Shard;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetShardIteratorRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetShardIteratorResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.Record;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetRecordsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetRecordsResponse;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetRecords {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
```

```
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream to read from (for
example, StockTradeStream).
               """;

       if (args.length != 1) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String streamName = args[0];
       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
               .region(region)
               .build();

       getStockTrades(kinesisClient, streamName);
       kinesisClient.close();
   }

   public static void getStockTrades(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
streamName) {
       String shardIterator;
       String lastShardId = null;
       DescribeStreamRequest describeStreamRequest =
DescribeStreamRequest.builder()
               .streamName(streamName)
               .build();

       List<Shard> shards = new ArrayList<>();
       DescribeStreamResponse streamRes;
       do {
           streamRes = kinesisClient.describeStream(describeStreamRequest);
           shards.addAll(streamRes.streamDescription().shards());

           if (shards.size() > 0) {
               lastShardId = shards.get(shards.size() - 1).shardId();
           }
       } while (streamRes.streamDescription().hasMoreShards());

       GetShardIteratorRequest itReq = GetShardIteratorRequest.builder()
               .streamName(streamName)
               .shardIteratorType("TRIM_HORIZON")
               .shardId(lastShardId)
               .build();
```

```
        GetShardIteratorResponse shardIteratorResult =
 kinesisClient.getShardIterator(itReq);
        shardIterator = shardIteratorResult.shardIterator();

        // Continuously read data records from shard.
        List<Record> records;

        // Create new GetRecordsRequest with existing shardIterator.
        // Set maximum records to return to 1000.
        GetRecordsRequest recordsRequest = GetRecordsRequest.builder()
                .shardIterator(shardIterator)
                .limit(1000)
                .build();

        GetRecordsResponse result = kinesisClient.getRecords(recordsRequest);

        // Put result into record list. Result may be empty.
        records = result.records();

        // Print records
        for (Record record : records) {
            SdkBytes byteBuffer = record.data();
            System.out.printf("Seq No: %s - %s%n", record.sequenceNumber(), new
 String(byteBuffer.asByteArray()));
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to return and extract data from a series of one or more records. The iterator supplierd to Get-KINRecord determines the starting position of the records to return which in this example are captured into a variable, $records. Each individual record can then be accessed by indexing the $records collection. Assuming the data in the record is UTF-8 encoded text, the final command shows how

you can extract the data from the MemoryStream in the object and return it as text to the console.

```
$records
$records = Get-KINRecord -ShardIterator "AAAAAAAAAAGIc....9VnbiRNaP"
```

Output:

```
MillisBehindLatest NextShardIterator            Records
------------------ -----------------            -------
0                  AAAAAAAAAAERNIq...uDn11HuUs  {Key1, Key2}
```

```
$records.Records[0]
```

Output:

```
ApproximateArrivalTimestamp Data                   PartitionKey SequenceNumber
--------------------------- ----                   ------------ --------------
3/7/2016 5:14:33 PM         System.IO.MemoryStream Key1
 4955986459776...931586
```

```
[Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetString($records.Records[0].Data.ToArray())
```

Output:

```
test data from string
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to return and extract data from a series of one or more records. The iterator supplierd to Get-KINRecord determines the starting position of the records to return which in this example are captured into a variable, $records. Each individual record can then be accessed by indexing the $records collection. Assuming the data in the record is UTF-8 encoded text, the final command shows how you can extract the data from the MemoryStream in the object and return it as text to the console.

```
$records
```

```
$records = Get-KINRecord -ShardIterator "AAAAAAAAAAGIc....9VnbiRNaP"
```

Output:

```
MillisBehindLatest NextShardIterator           Records
------------------ -----------------           -------
0                  AAAAAAAAAAERNIq...uDn11HuUs  {Key1, Key2}
```

```
$records.Records[0]
```

Output:

```
ApproximateArrivalTimestamp Data                   PartitionKey SequenceNumber
--------------------------- ----                   ------------ --------------
3/7/2016 5:14:33 PM         System.IO.MemoryStream Key1
 4955986459776...931586
```

```
[Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetString($records.Records[0].Data.ToArray())
```

Output:

```
test data from string
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
```

```
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def get_records(self, max_records):
        """
        Gets records from the stream. This function is a generator that first
gets
        a shard iterator for the stream, then uses the shard iterator to get
records
        in batches from the stream. The shard iterator can be accessed through
the
        'details' property, which is populated using the 'describe' function of
this class.
        Each batch of records is yielded back to the caller until the specified
        maximum number of records has been retrieved.

        :param max_records: The maximum number of records to retrieve.
        :return: Yields the current batch of retrieved records.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.get_shard_iterator(
                StreamName=self.name,
                ShardId=self.details["Shards"][0]["ShardId"],
                ShardIteratorType="LATEST",
            )
            shard_iter = response["ShardIterator"]
            record_count = 0
            while record_count < max_records:
                response = self.kinesis_client.get_records(
                    ShardIterator=shard_iter, Limit=10
                )
                shard_iter = response["NextShardIterator"]
                records = response["Records"]
                logger.info("Got %s records.", len(records))
                record_count += len(records)
                yield records
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get records from stream %s.", self.name)
```

```
            raise



    def describe(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata about a stream.

        :param name: The name of the stream.
        :return: Metadata about the stream.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.describe_stream(StreamName=name)
            self.name = name
            self.details = response["StreamDescription"]
            logger.info("Got stream %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.details
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_kns->getrecords(             " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
            iv_sharditerator = iv_shard_iterator ).
        DATA(lt_records) = oo_result->get_records( ).
        MESSAGE 'Record retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsexpirediteratorex.
        MESSAGE 'Iterator expired.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request
quotas.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested
data is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `GetShardIterator` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetShardIterator`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To obtain a shard iterator

The following `get-shard-iterator` example uses the `AT_SEQUENCE_NUMBER` shard iterator type and generates a shard iterator to start reading data records exactly from the position denoted by the specified sequence number.

```
aws kinesis get-shard-iterator \
    --stream-name samplestream \
    --shard-id shardId-000000000001 \
    --shard-iterator-type LATEST
```

Output:

```
{
    "ShardIterator": "AAAAAAAAAAFEvJjIYI+3jw/4aqgH9FifJ+n48XWTh/
IFIsbILP6o5eDueD39NXNBfpZ10WL5K6ADXk8w+5H+Qhd9cFA9k268CPXCz/kebq1TGYI7Vy
+lUkA9BuN3xvATxMBGxRY3zYK05gqgvaIRn94O8SqeEqwhigwZxNWxID3Ej7YYYcxQi8Q/fIrCjGAy/
n2r5Z9G864YpWDfN9upNNQAR/iiOWKs"
}
```

For more information, see Developing Consumers Using the Kinesis Data Streams API with the AWS SDK for Java in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetShardIterator in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns a shard iterator for the specified shard and starting position. Details of the shard identifiers and sequence numbers can be obtained from the output of the Get-KINStream cmdlet, by referencing the Shards collection of the returned stream object. The returned iterator can be used with the Get-KINRecord cmdlet to pull data records in the shard.

```
Get-KINShardIterator -StreamName "mystream" -ShardId "shardId-000000000000" -
ShardIteratorType AT_SEQUENCE_NUMBER -StartingSequenceNumber "495598645..."
```

Output:

```
AAAAAAAAAAGIc....9VnbiRNaP
```

- For API details, see GetShardIterator in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a shard iterator for the specified shard and starting position. Details of the shard identifiers and sequence numbers can be obtained from the output of the Get-KINStream cmdlet, by referencing the Shards collection of the returned stream object. The returned iterator can be used with the Get-KINRecord cmdlet to pull data records in the shard.

```
Get-KINShardIterator -StreamName "mystream" -ShardId "shardId-000000000000" -
ShardIteratorType AT_SEQUENCE_NUMBER -StartingSequenceNumber "495598645..."
```

Output:

```
AAAAAAAAAAGIc....9VnbiRNaP
```

- For API details, see GetShardIterator in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListStreamConsumers` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreamConsumers`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// List the consumers of an Amazon Kinesis stream.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class ListConsumers
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";
            int maxResults = 10;

            var consumers = await ListConsumersAsync(client, streamARN,
 maxResults);

            if (consumers.Count > 0)
            {
                consumers
                    .ForEach(c => Console.WriteLine($"Name: {c.ConsumerName} ARN:
 {c.ConsumerARN}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No consumers found.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve a list of the consumers for a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of the stream for which we want to
        /// retrieve a list of clients.</param>
        /// <param name="maxResults">The maximum number of results to return.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of Consumer objects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Consumer>>
 ListConsumersAsync(IAmazonKinesis client, string streamARN, int maxResults)
        {
            var request = new ListStreamConsumersRequest
            {
                StreamARN = streamARN,
                MaxResults = maxResults,
            };
```

```
            var response = await client.ListStreamConsumersAsync(request);

            return response.Consumers;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStreamConsumers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use `ListStreams` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListStreams`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves and displays a list of existing Amazon Kinesis streams.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListStreams
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            var response = await client.ListStreamsAsync(new
ListStreamsRequest());

            List<string> streamNames = response.StreamNames;
```

```
            if (streamNames.Count > 0)
            {
                streamNames
                    .ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"Stream name: {s}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No streams were found.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list data streams

The following `list-streams` example lists all active data streams in the current account and region.

```
aws kinesis list-streams
```

Output:

```
{
    "StreamNames": [
        "samplestream",
        "samplestream1"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing Streams in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_streams(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_streams().send().await?;

    println!("Stream names:");

    let streams = resp.stream_names;
    for stream in &streams {
        println!("  {}", stream);
    }

    println!("Found {} stream(s)", streams.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
```

```
        oo_result = lo_kns->liststreams(        " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
            "Set Limit to specify that a maximum of streams should be returned."
            iv_limit = iv_limit ).
        DATA(lt_streams) = oo_result->get_streamnames( ).
        MESSAGE 'Streams listed.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListTagsForStream` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForStream`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to list the tags that have been attached to an Amazon Kinesis
/// stream.
/// </summary>
public class ListTags
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
```

```
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";

            await ListTagsAsync(client, streamName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List the tags attached to a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the Kinesis stream for which you
        /// wish to display tags.</param>
        public static async Task ListTagsAsync(IAmazonKinesis client, string
streamName)
        {
            var request = new ListTagsForStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                Limit = 10,
            };

            var response = await client.ListTagsForStreamAsync(request);
            DisplayTags(response.Tags);

            while (response.HasMoreTags)
            {
                request.ExclusiveStartTagKey = response.Tags[response.Tags.Count
- 1].Key;
                response = await client.ListTagsForStreamAsync(request);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the items in a list of Kinesis tags.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tags">A list of the Tag objects to be displayed.</param>
        public static void DisplayTags(List<Tag> tags)
        {
            tags
                .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key} Value:
{t.Value}"));
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list tags for a data stream

The following `list-tags-for-stream` example lists the tags attached to the specified data stream.

```
aws kinesis list-tags-for-stream \
    --stream-name samplestream
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "samplekey",
            "Value": "example"
        }
    ],
    "HasMoreTags": false
}
```

For more information, see Tagging Your Streams in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTagsForStream in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `PutRecord` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRecord`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To write a record into a data stream

The following `put-record` example writes a single data record into the specified data stream using the specified partition key.

```
aws kinesis put-record \
    --stream-name samplestream \
    --data sampledatarecord \
    --partition-key samplepartitionkey
```

Output:

```
{
    "ShardId": "shardId-000000000009",
    "SequenceNumber": "49600902273357540915989931256901506243878407835297513618",
    "EncryptionType": "KMS"
}
```

For more information, see Developing Producers Using the Amazon Kinesis Data Streams API with the AWS SDK for Java in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.PutRecordRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.KinesisException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class StockTradesWriter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream to which records
 are written (for example, StockTradeStream)
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        // Ensure that the Kinesis Stream is valid.
        validateStream(kinesisClient, streamName);
        setStockData(kinesisClient, streamName);
        kinesisClient.close();
    }

    public static void setStockData(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
 streamName) {
```

```
        try {
            // Repeatedly send stock trades with a 100 milliseconds wait in
between.
            StockTradeGenerator stockTradeGenerator = new StockTradeGenerator();

            // Put in 50 Records for this example.
            int index = 50;
            for (int x = 0; x < index; x++) {
                StockTrade trade = stockTradeGenerator.getRandomTrade();
                sendStockTrade(trade, kinesisClient, streamName);
                Thread.sleep(100);
            }

        } catch (KinesisException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }

    private static void sendStockTrade(StockTrade trade, KinesisClient
kinesisClient,
            String streamName) {
        byte[] bytes = trade.toJsonAsBytes();

        // The bytes could be null if there is an issue with the JSON
serialization by
        // the Jackson JSON library.
        if (bytes == null) {
            System.out.println("Could not get JSON bytes for stock trade");
            return;
        }

        System.out.println("Putting trade: " + trade);
        PutRecordRequest request = PutRecordRequest.builder()
                .partitionKey(trade.getTickerSymbol()) // We use the ticker
symbol as the partition key, explained in
                                                       // the Supplemental
Information section below.
                .streamName(streamName)
                .data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(bytes))
                .build();

        try {
```

```
            kinesisClient.putRecord(request);
        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static void validateStream(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
 streamName) {
        try {
            DescribeStreamRequest describeStreamRequest =
 DescribeStreamRequest.builder()
                    .streamName(streamName)
                    .build();

            DescribeStreamResponse describeStreamResponse =
 kinesisClient.describeStream(describeStreamRequest);

            if (!
describeStreamResponse.streamDescription().streamStatus().toString().equals("ACTIVE"))
 {
                System.err.println("Stream " + streamName + " is not active.
 Please wait a few moments and try again.");
                System.exit(1);
            }

        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println("Error found while describing the stream " +
 streamName);
            System.err.println(e);
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Writes a record containing the string supplied to the -Text parameter.

```
Write-KINRecord -Text "test data from string" -StreamName "mystream" -
PartitionKey "Key1"
```

Example 2: Writes a record containing the data contained in the specified file. The file is treated as a sequence of bytes so if it contains text, it should be written with any necessary encoding before using it with this cmdlet.

```
Write-KINRecord -FilePath "C:\TestData.txt" -StreamName "mystream" -PartitionKey
 "Key2"
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Writes a record containing the string supplied to the -Text parameter.

```
Write-KINRecord -Text "test data from string" -StreamName "mystream" -
PartitionKey "Key1"
```

Example 2: Writes a record containing the data contained in the specified file. The file is treated as a sequence of bytes so if it contains text, it should be written with any necessary encoding before using it with this cmdlet.

```
Write-KINRecord -FilePath "C:\TestData.txt" -StreamName "mystream" -PartitionKey
 "Key2"
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
```

```
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def put_record(self, data, partition_key):
        """
        Puts data into the stream. The data is formatted as JSON before it is
passed
        to the stream.

        :param data: The data to put in the stream.
        :param partition_key: The partition key to use for the data.
        :return: Metadata about the record, including its shard ID and sequence
number.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.put_record(
                StreamName=self.name, Data=json.dumps(data),
PartitionKey=partition_key
            )
            logger.info("Put record in stream %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put record in stream %s.", self.name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn add_record(client: &Client, stream: &str, key: &str, data: &str) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    let blob = Blob::new(data);

    client
        .put_record()
        .data(blob)
        .partition_key(key)
        .stream_name(stream)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Put data into stream.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_kns->putrecord(            " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
           iv_data       = iv_data
           iv_partitionkey = iv_partition_key ).
       MESSAGE 'Record created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
       MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request
quotas.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested
data is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `PutRecords` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutRecords`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To write multiple records into a data stream

The following `put-records` example writes a data record using the specified partition key and another data record using a different partition key in a single call.

```
aws kinesis put-records \
    --stream-name samplestream \
    --
records Data=blob1,PartitionKey=partitionkey1 Data=blob2,PartitionKey=partitionkey2
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRecordCount": 0,
    "Records": [
        {
            "SequenceNumber":
 "49600883331171471519674795588238531498465399900093808706",
            "ShardId": "shardId-000000000004"
        },
        {
            "SequenceNumber":
 "49600902273357540915989931256902715169698037101720764562",
            "ShardId": "shardId-000000000009"
        }
    ],
    "EncryptionType": "KMS"
}
```

For more information, see Developing Producers Using the Amazon Kinesis Data Streams API with the AWS SDK for Java in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutRecords in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { PutRecordsCommand, KinesisClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-kinesis";

/**
 * Put multiple records into a Kinesis stream.
 * @param {{ streamArn: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({ streamArn }) => {
  const client = new KinesisClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new PutRecordsCommand({
        StreamARN: streamArn,
        Records: [
          {
            Data: new Uint8Array(),
            /**
             * Determines which shard in the stream the data record is assigned
 to.
             * Partition keys are Unicode strings with a maximum length limit of
 256
             * characters for each key. Amazon Kinesis Data Streams uses the
 partition
             * key as input to a hash function that maps the partition key and
             * associated data to a specific shard.
             */
            PartitionKey: "TEST_KEY",
          },
          {
            Data: new Uint8Array(),
            PartitionKey: "TEST_KEY",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error) {
      //
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

```
// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const options = {
    streamArn: {
      type: "string",
      description: "The ARN of the stream.",
    },
  };

  const { values } = parseArgs({ options });
  main(values);
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecords in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `RegisterStreamConsumer` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterStreamConsumer`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to register a consumer to an Amazon Kinesis
/// stream.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class RegisterConsumer
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string consumerName = "NEW_CONSUMER_NAME";
            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";

            var consumer = await RegisterConsumerAsync(client, consumerName,
 streamARN);

            if (consumer is not null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumer.ConsumerName}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Registers the consumer to a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerName">A string representing the consumer.</
param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of the stream.</param>
        /// <returns>A Consumer object that contains information about the
 consumer.</returns>
        public static async Task<Consumer> RegisterConsumerAsync(IAmazonKinesis
 client, string consumerName, string streamARN)
        {
            var request = new RegisterStreamConsumerRequest
            {
                ConsumerName = consumerName,
                StreamARN = streamARN,
            };

            var response = await client.RegisterStreamConsumerAsync(request);
            return response.Consumer;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register a data stream consumer

The following `register-stream-consumer` example registers a consumer called `KinesisConsumerApplication` with the specified data stream.

```
aws kinesis register-stream-consumer \
    --stream-arn arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:012345678912:stream/samplestream \
    --consumer-name KinesisConsumerApplication
```

Output:

```
{
    "Consumer": {
        "ConsumerName": "KinesisConsumerApplication",
        "ConsumerARN": "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2: 123456789012:stream/
samplestream/consumer/KinesisConsumerApplication:1572383852",
        "ConsumerStatus": "CREATING",
        "ConsumerCreationTimestamp": 1572383852.0
    }
}
```

For more information, see Developing Consumers with Enhanced Fan-Out Using the Kinesis Data Streams API in the *Amazon Kinesis Data Streams Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterStreamConsumer in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_kns->registerstreamconsumer(       " oo_result is returned
for testing purposes. "
           iv_streamarn = iv_stream_arn
           iv_consumername = iv_consumer_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream consumer registered.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see RegisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Serverless examples for Kinesis

The following code examples show how to use Kinesis with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace KinesisIntegrationSampleCode;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return;
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
```

```
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                throw;
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main
```

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent) error {
 if len(kinesisEvent.Records) == 0 {
  log.Printf("empty Kinesis event received")
  return nil
 }

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  log.Printf("processed Kinesis event with EventId: %v", record.EventID)
  recordDataBytes := record.Kinesis.Data
  recordDataText := string(recordDataBytes)
  log.Printf("record data: %v", recordDataText)
  // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
 }
 log.Printf("successfully processed %v records", len(kinesisEvent.Records))
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(final KinesisEvent event, final Context context) {
        LambdaLogger logger = context.getLogger();
        if (event.getRecords().isEmpty()) {
            logger.log("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return null;
        }
        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord record : event.getRecords()) {
            try {
                logger.log("Processed Event with EventId: "+record.getEventID());
                String data = new String(record.getKinesis().getData().array());
                logger.log("Data:"+ data);
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex) {
                logger.log("An error occurred:"+ex.getMessage());
                throw ex;
            }
        }
        logger.log("Successfully processed:"+event.getRecords().size()+"
 records");
        return null;
    }

}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
```

```
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
    logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  }
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends KinesisHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleKinesis(KinesisEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $data = $record->getData();
```

```
            $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be
 marked as failed
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import base64
def lambda_handler(event, context):

    for record in event['Records']:
        try:
            print(f"Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: {record['eventID']}")
            record_data = base64.b64decode(record['kinesis']
['data']).decode('utf-8')
            print(f"Record Data: {record_data}")
            # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
        except Exception as e:
            print(f"An error occurred {e}")
            raise e
```

```
    print(f"Successfully processed {len(event['Records'])} records.")
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue => err
      $stderr.puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      raise err
    end
  end
  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('UTF-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  # You can use Ruby's asynchronous programming tools like async/await or fibers
 here.
  return data
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::kinesis::KinesisEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) -> Result<(), Error>
 {
    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        tracing::info!("EventId:
 {}",record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default());

        let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(&record.kinesis.data);

        match record_data {
            Ok(data) => {
                // log the record data
                tracing::info!("Data: {}", data);
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tracing::error!("Error: {}", e);
            }
        }
    });

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
```

```
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code examples show how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
```

```
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace KinesisIntegration;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task<StreamsEventResponse> FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return new StreamsEventResponse();
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed
 item immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                return new StreamsEventResponse
```

```
                {
                    BatchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>
                    {
                        new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber }
                    }
                };
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
        return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}

public class StreamsEventResponse
{
    [JsonPropertyName("batchItemFailures")]
    public IList<BatchItemFailure> BatchItemFailures { get; set; }
    public class BatchItemFailure
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("itemIdentifier")]
        public string ItemIdentifier { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent)
 (map[string]interface{}, error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

  // Process your record
  if /* Your record processing condition here */ {
   curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber
  }

  // Add a condition to check if the record processing failed
  if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": curRecordSequenceNumber})
  }
 }

 kinesisBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
```

```
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
 }
 return kinesisBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;

import java.io.Serializable;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessKinesisRecords implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(KinesisEvent input, Context
 context) {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
```

```
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord kinesisEventRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //Process your record
                KinesisEvent.Record kinesisRecord =
 kinesisEventRecord.getKinesis();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = kinesisRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed
 item immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Javascript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
```

```
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
  KinesisStreamBatchResponse,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
```

```
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<KinesisStreamBatchResponse> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $kinesisEvent = new KinesisEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kinesisEvent->getRecords();
```

```
        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["kinesis"]["sequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  batch_item_failures = []

  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
```

```
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue StandardError => err
      puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      # Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
      # Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards.
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record['kinesis']
['sequenceNumber'] }] }
    end
  end

  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
  { batchItemFailures: batch_item_failures }
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('utf-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  sleep(1)
  data
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::kinesis::KinesisEvent,
    kinesis::KinesisEventRecord,
    streams::{KinesisBatchItemFailure, KinesisEventResponse},
```

```
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) ->
 Result<KinesisEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = KinesisEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in &event.payload.records {
        tracing::info!(
            "EventId: {}",
            record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );

        let record_processing_result = process_record(record);

        if record_processing_result.is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(KinesisBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.kinesis.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(response)
}

fn process_record(record: &KinesisEventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(record.kinesis.data.as_slice());
```

```
    if let Some(err) = record_data.err() {
        tracing::error!("Error: {}", err);
        return Err(Error::from(err));
    }

    let record_data = record_data.unwrap_or_default();

    // do something interesting with the data
    tracing::info!("Data: {}", record_data);

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Code examples for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Key Management Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **AWS KMS Developer Guide** – More information about AWS KMS.
- **AWS KMS API Reference** – Details about all available AWS KMS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello AWS Key Management Service

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Key Management Service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.ListKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.paginators.ListKeysPublisher;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloKMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        listAllKeys();
    }

    public static void listAllKeys() {
        KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
            .build();
        ListKeysRequest listKeysRequest = ListKeysRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        /*
         * The `subscribe` method is required when using paginator methods in the
 AWS SDK
         * because paginator methods return an instance of a `ListKeysPublisher`,
 which is
         * based on a reactive stream. This allows asynchronous retrieval of
 paginated
         * results as they become available. By subscribing to the stream, we can
 process
         * each page of results as they are emitted.
         */
        ListKeysPublisher keysPublisher =
 kmsAsyncClient.listKeysPaginator(listKeysRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = keysPublisher
            .subscribe(r -> r.keys().forEach(key ->
                System.out.println("The key ARN is: " + key.keyArn() + ". The key
 Id is: " + key.keyId())))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " +
 exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Successfully listed all keys.");
                }
            });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list keys: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
include "vendor/autoload.php";

use Aws\Kms\KmsClient;

echo "This file shows how to connect to the KmsClient, uses a paginator to get
 the keys for the account, and lists the KeyIds for up to 10 keys.\n";

$client = new KmsClient([]);

$pageLength = 10; // Change this value to change the number of records shown, or
 to break up the result into pages.

$keys = [];
$keysPaginator = $client->getPaginator("ListKeys", ['Limit' => $pageLength]);
foreach($keysPaginator as $page){
    foreach($page['Keys'] as $index => $key){
        echo "The $index index Key's ID is: {$key['KeyId']}\n";
    }
    echo "End of page one of results. Alter the \$pageLength variable to see more
 results.\n";
    break;
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs
  - Hello AWS Key Management Service
  - Learn the basics of AWS KMS with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Decrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DisableKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use EnableKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use EnableKeyRotation with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Encrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GenerateDataKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GenerateRandom with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetKeyPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListAliases with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListGrants with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListKeyPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListKeys with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutKeyPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ReEncrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RetireGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RevokeGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ScheduleKeyDeletion with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Sign with an AWS SDK or CLI

    - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use UpdateAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Verify with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs
  - Work with DynamoDB table encryption using AWS Command Line Interface v2

Basic examples for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Key Management Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello AWS Key Management Service
- Learn the basics of AWS KMS with an AWS SDK
- Actions for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Decrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DisableKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use EnableKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use EnableKeyRotation with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Encrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GenerateDataKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GenerateRandom with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetKeyPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListAliases with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListGrants with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListKeyPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListKeys with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use PutKeyPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReEncrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RetireGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RevokeGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ScheduleKeyDeletion with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Sign with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Verify with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello AWS Key Management Service

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Key Management Service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.ListKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.paginators.ListKeysPublisher;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
```

```
public class HelloKMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listAllKeys();
    }

    public static void listAllKeys() {
        KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
            .build();
        ListKeysRequest listKeysRequest = ListKeysRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        /*
         * The `subscribe` method is required when using paginator methods in the
 AWS SDK
         * because paginator methods return an instance of a `ListKeysPublisher`,
 which is
         * based on a reactive stream. This allows asynchronous retrieval of
 paginated
         * results as they become available. By subscribing to the stream, we can
 process
         * each page of results as they are emitted.
         */
        ListKeysPublisher keysPublisher =
 kmsAsyncClient.listKeysPaginator(listKeysRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = keysPublisher
            .subscribe(r -> r.keys().forEach(key ->
                System.out.println("The key ARN is: " + key.keyArn() + ". The key
 Id is: " + key.keyId())))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " +
 exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Successfully listed all keys.");
                }
            });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list keys: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
include "vendor/autoload.php";

use Aws\Kms\KmsClient;

echo "This file shows how to connect to the KmsClient, uses a paginator to get
 the keys for the account, and lists the KeyIds for up to 10 keys.\n";

$client = new KmsClient([]);

$pageLength = 10; // Change this value to change the number of records shown, or
 to break up the result into pages.

$keys = [];
$keysPaginator = $client->getPaginator("ListKeys", ['Limit' => $pageLength]);
foreach($keysPaginator as $page){
    foreach($page['Keys'] as $index => $key){
        echo "The $index index Key's ID is: {$key['KeyId']}\n";
    }
    echo "End of page one of results. Alter the \$pageLength variable to see more
 results.\n";
    break;
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Learn the basics of AWS KMS with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a KMS key.
- List KMS keys for your account and get details about them.
- Enable and disable KMS keys.
- Generate a symmetric data key that can be used for client-side encryption.
- Generate an asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.
- Tag keys.
- Delete KMS keys.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.AlreadyExistsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.DisabledException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.EnableKeyRotationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.KmsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.NotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.RevokeGrantResponse;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class KMSScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static String accountId = "";

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(KMSScenario.class);

    static KMSActions kmsActions = new KMSActions();

    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    static String aliasName = "alias/dev-encryption-key";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <granteePrincipal>

            Where:
               granteePrincipal - The principal (user, service account, or group)
 to whom the grant or permission is being given.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }
        String granteePrincipal = args[0];
        String policyName = "default";

        accountId = kmsActions.getAccountId();
        String keyDesc = "Created by the AWS KMS API";

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("""
            Welcome to the AWS Key Management SDK Basics scenario.

            This program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Key Management
using the AWS SDK for Java (v2).
            The AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a secure and highly available
service that allows you to create
            and manage AWS KMS keys and control their use across a wide range of
AWS services and applications.
            KMS provides a centralized and unified approach to managing
encryption keys, making it easier to meet your
            data protection and regulatory compliance requirements.

            This Basics scenario creates two key types:

            - A symmetric encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt data.
            - An asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.

            Let's get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
        // Run the methods that belong to this scenario.
        String targetKeyId = runScenario(granteePrincipal, keyDesc, policyName);
        requestDeleteResources(aliasName, targetKeyId);

        } catch (Throwable rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    private static String runScenario(String granteePrincipal, String keyDesc,
String policyName) throws Throwable {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a symmetric KMS key\n");
        logger.info("First, the program will creates a symmetric KMS key that you
can used to encrypt and decrypt data.");
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String targetKeyId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> futureKeyId =
kmsActions.createKeyAsync(keyDesc);
            targetKeyId = futureKeyId.join();
            logger.info("A symmetric key was successfully created " +
targetKeyId);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            2. Enable a KMS key

            By default, when the SDK creates an AWS key, it is enabled. The next
bit of code checks to
            determine if the key is enabled.
             """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        boolean isEnabled;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Boolean> futureIsKeyEnabled =
kmsActions.isKeyEnabledAsync(targetKeyId);
            isEnabled = futureIsKeyEnabled.join();
            logger.info("Is the key enabled? {}", isEnabled);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
```

```
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        if (!isEnabled)
            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.enableKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
rt.getMessage());
                }
                throw cause;
            }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key");
        String plaintext = "Hello, AWS KMS!";
        logger.info("""
            One of the main uses of symmetric keys is to encrypt and decrypt
data.
            Next, the code encrypts the string {} with the SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT
encryption algorithm.
            """, plaintext);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        SdkBytes encryptedData;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<SdkBytes> future =
kmsActions.encryptDataAsync(targetKeyId, plaintext);
            encryptedData = future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof DisabledException kmsDisabledEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("KMS error occurred due to a disabled
key: Error message: {}, Error code {}", kmsDisabledEx.getMessage(),
kmsDisabledEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Create an alias");
        logger.info("""

            The alias name should be prefixed with 'alias/'.
            The default, 'alias/dev-encryption-key'.
             """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.createCustomAliasAsync(targetKeyId, aliasName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof AlreadyExistsException kmsExistsEx) {
                if (kmsExistsEx.getMessage().contains("already exists")) {
                    logger.info("The alias '" + aliasName + "' already exists.
Moving on...");
                }
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage(),
rt);
                deleteKey(targetKeyId);
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. List all of your aliases");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Object> future = kmsActions.listAllAliasesAsync();
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key");
        logger.info("""

            By default, when the SDK enables automatic rotation of a KMS key,
            KMS rotates the key material of the KMS key one year (approximately
365 days) from the enable date and every year
            thereafter.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<EnableKeyRotationResponse> future =
kmsActions.enableKeyRotationAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            7. Create a grant

            A grant is a policy instrument that allows Amazon Web Services
principals to use KMS keys.
            It also can allow them to view a KMS key (DescribeKey) and create and
manage grants.
            When authorizing access to a KMS key, grants are considered along
with key policies and IAM policies.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String grantId = null;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> futureGrantId =
kmsActions.grantKeyAsync(targetKeyId, granteePrincipal);
            grantId = futureGrantId.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. List grants for the KMS key");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Object> future =
kmsActions.displayGrantIdsAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Revoke the grant");
        logger.info("""
            The revocation of a grant immediately removes the permissions and
access that the grant had provided.
            This means that any principal (user, role, or service) that was
granted access to perform specific
            KMS operations on a KMS key will no longer be able to perform those
operations.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> future =
kmsActions.revokeKeyGrantAsync(targetKeyId, grantId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                if (kmsEx.getMessage().contains("Grant does not exist")) {
                    logger.info("The grant ID '" + grantId + "' does not exist.
Moving on...");
                } else {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    throw cause;
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                deleteAliasName(aliasName);
```

```
                deleteKey(targetKeyId);
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Decrypt the data\n");
        logger.info("""
            Lets decrypt the data that was encrypted in an early step.
            The code uses the same key to decrypt the string that we encrypted
earlier in the program.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String decryptedData = "";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
kmsActions.decryptDataAsync(encryptedData, targetKeyId);
            decryptedData = future.join();
            logger.info("Decrypted data: " + decryptedData);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info("Decrypted text is: " + decryptedData);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("11. Replace a key policy\n");
        logger.info("""
            A key policy is a resource policy for a KMS key. Key policies are the
primary way to control
            access to KMS keys. Every KMS key must have exactly one key policy.
The statements in the key policy
```

```
            determine who has permission to use the KMS key and how they can use
it.
            You can also use IAM policies and grants to control access to the KMS
key, but every KMS key
            must have a key policy.

            By default, when you create a key by using the SDK, a policy is
created that
            gives the AWS account that owns the KMS key full access to the KMS
key.

            Let's try to replace the automatically created policy with the
following policy.

                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [{
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::0000000000:root"},
                "Action": "kms:*",
                "Resource": "*"
                }]
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Boolean> future =
kmsActions.replacePolicyAsync(targetKeyId, policyName, accountId);
            boolean success = future.join();
            if (success) {
                logger.info("Key policy replacement succeeded.");
            } else {
                logger.error("Key policy replacement failed.");
            }

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
```

```
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("12. Get the key policy\n");
        logger.info("The next bit of code that runs gets the key policy to make
sure it exists.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
kmsActions.getKeyPolicyAsync(targetKeyId, policyName);
            String policy = future.join();
            if (!policy.isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("Retrieved policy: " + policy);
            }

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign your data\n");
        logger.info("""
             Signing your data with an AWS key can provide several benefits that
make it an attractive option
             for your data signing needs. By using an AWS KMS key, you can
leverage the
             security controls and compliance features provided by AWS,
             which can help you meet various regulatory requirements and enhance
the overall security posture
             of your organization.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Boolean> future = kmsActions.signVerifyDataAsync();
            boolean success = future.join();
            if (success) {
                logger.info("Sign and verify data operation succeeded.");
            } else {
                logger.error("Sign and verify data operation failed.");
            }

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("14. Tag your symmetric KMS Key\n");
        logger.info("""
            By using tags, you can improve the overall management, security, and
governance of your
            KMS keys, making it easier to organize, track, and control access to
your encrypted data within
            your AWS environment
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.tagKMSKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
```

```
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        return targetKeyId;
    }

    // Deletes KMS resources with user input.
    private static void requestDeleteResources(String aliasName, String
 targetKeyId) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("15. Schedule the deletion of the KMS key\n");
        logger.info("""
            By default, KMS applies a waiting period of 30 days,
            but you can specify a waiting period of 7-30 days. When this
 operation is successful,
            the key state of the KMS key changes to PendingDeletion and the key
 can't be used in any
            cryptographic operations. It remains in this state for the duration
 of the waiting period.

            Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous
 operation. When a KMS key is deleted,
            all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.
            """);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the Key Management resources? (y/
n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the AWS KMS resources.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
 kmsActions.deleteSpecificAliasAsync(aliasName);
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
 code {}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
```

```
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
rt.getMessage());
                }
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.disableKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
rt.getMessage());
                }
            }

            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.deleteKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " +
rt.getMessage());
                }
            }

        } else {
            logger.info("The Key Management resources will not be deleted");
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS Key Management SDK scenario");
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    // This method is invoked from Exceptions to clean up the resources.
    private static void deleteKey(String targetKeyId) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.disableKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.deleteKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    // This method is invoked from Exceptions to clean up the resources.
    private static void deleteAliasName(String aliasName) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.deleteSpecificAliasAsync(aliasName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
 {}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps KMS actions.

```
public class KMSActions {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(KMSActions.class);
    private static KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient;

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous AWS Key Management Service (KMS) client.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the KMS async
 client, with the following configurations:
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Max concurrency: 100</li>
```

```
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Retry policy: up to 3 retries</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: environment variable credentials provider</li>
     * </ul>
     * <p>
     * If the client instance has already been created, it is returned instead of
creating a new one.
     *
     * @return the KMS async client instance
     */
    private static KmsAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (kmsAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();

            kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return kmsAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new symmetric encryption key asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyDesc the description of the key to be created
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the
newly created key
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while creating the key
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createKeyAsync(String keyDesc) {
        CreateKeyRequest keyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .description(keyDesc)
            .keySpec(KeySpec.SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.ENCRYPT_DECRYPT)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(keyRequest)
            .thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyId())
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("An error occurred while creating the
key: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously checks if a specified key is enabled.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates
whether the key is enabled or not
     *
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while checking the key
state
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> isKeyEnabledAsync(String keyId) {
        DescribeKeyRequest keyRequest = DescribeKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKey(keyRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                KeyState keyState = resp.keyMetadata().keyState();
                if (keyState == KeyState.ENABLED) {
                    logger.info("The key is enabled.");
                } else {
                    logger.info("The key is not enabled. Key state: {}",
keyState);
```

```
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyState() == KeyState.ENABLED);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously enables the specified key.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to enable
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
enabled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> enableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        EnableKeyRequest enableKeyRequest = EnableKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EnableKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().enableKey(enableKeyRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Key with ID [{}] has been enabled.", keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while enabling
key: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred
while enabling key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Encrypts the given text asynchronously using the specified KMS client and
key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to use for encryption
     * @param text the text to encrypt
```

```
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the encrypted data as an
SdkBytes object
    */
   public CompletableFuture<SdkBytes> encryptDataAsync(String keyId, String
text) {
       SdkBytes myBytes = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(text);
       EncryptRequest encryptRequest = EncryptRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .plaintext(myBytes)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<EncryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().encrypt(encryptRequest).toCompletableFuture();
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               String algorithm = response.encryptionAlgorithm().toString();
               logger.info("The string was encrypted with algorithm {}.",
algorithm);
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException(ex);
           }
       }).thenApply(EncryptResponse::ciphertextBlob);
   }

   /**
    * Creates a custom alias for the specified target key asynchronously.
    *
    * @param targetKeyId the ID of the target key for the alias
    * @param aliasName   the name of the alias to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the alias creation
operation is finished
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createCustomAliasAsync(String targetKeyId,
String aliasName) {
       CreateAliasRequest aliasRequest = CreateAliasRequest.builder()
           .aliasName(aliasName)
           .targetKeyId(targetKeyId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateAliasResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createAlias(aliasRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("{} was successfully created.", aliasName);
```

```
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof ResourceExistsException) {
                    logger.info("Alias [{}] already exists. Moving on...",
aliasName);
                } else if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while creating
alias: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred
while creating alias: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the aliases in the current AWS account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the list of
aliases has been processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> listAllAliasesAsync() {
        ListAliasesRequest aliasesRequest = ListAliasesRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        ListAliasesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listAliasesPaginator(aliasesRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.aliases().forEach(alias ->
                    logger.info("The alias name is: " + alias.aliasName())
                );
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof KmsException) {
                    KmsException e = (KmsException) ex.getCause();
                    throw new RuntimeException("A KMS exception occurred: " +
e.getMessage());
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage());
```

```
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Enables key rotation asynchronously for the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key for which to enable key rotation
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
enabling key rotation
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was an error enabling key rotation,
either due to a KMS exception or an unexpected error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<EnableKeyRotationResponse>
enableKeyRotationAsync(String keyId) {
        EnableKeyRotationRequest enableKeyRotationRequest =
EnableKeyRotationRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EnableKeyRotationResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().enableKeyRotation(enableKeyRotationRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Key rotation has been enabled for key with id [{}]",
keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to enable key rotation: "
+ kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Grants permissions to a specified principal on a customer master key (CMK)
asynchronously.
     *
```

```
    * @param keyId             The unique identifier for the customer master key
(CMK) that the grant applies to.
    * @param granteePrincipal  The principal that is given permission to perform
the operations that the grant permits on the CMK.
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the ID
of the created grant.
    * @throws RuntimeException If an error occurs during the grant creation
process.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> grantKeyAsync(String keyId, String
granteePrincipal) {
       List<GrantOperation> grantPermissions = List.of(
           GrantOperation.ENCRYPT,
           GrantOperation.DECRYPT,
           GrantOperation.DESCRIBE_KEY
       );

       CreateGrantRequest grantRequest = CreateGrantRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .name("grant1")
           .granteePrincipal(granteePrincipal)
           .operations(grantPermissions)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createGrant(grantRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex == null) {
               logger.info("Grant created successfully with ID: " +
response.grantId());
           } else {
               if (ex instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create grant: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
               }
           }
       });

       return responseFuture.thenApply(CreateGrantResponse::grantId);
   }
```

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously displays the grant IDs for the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to list the grants
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will be null
if the operation succeeded, or will throw a {@link RuntimeException} if the
operation failed
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was an error listing the grants, either
due to an {@link KmsException} or an unexpected error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> displayGrantIdsAsync(String keyId) {
        ListGrantsRequest grantsRequest = ListGrantsRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        ListGrantsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listGrantsPaginator(grantsRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.grants().forEach(grant -> {
                    logger.info("The grant Id is: " + grant.grantId());
                });
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list grants: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Revokes a grant for the specified AWS KMS key asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyId   The ID or key ARN of the AWS KMS key.
     * @param grantId The identifier of the grant to be revoked.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of revoking the grant.
```

```
    *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
RevokeGrantResponse} object
    *         if the operation is successful, or with a {@code null} value if an
error occurs.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> revokeKeyGrantAsync(String
keyId, String grantId) {
       RevokeGrantRequest grantRequest = RevokeGrantRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .grantId(grantId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().revokeGrant(grantRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("Grant ID: [" + grantId + "] was successfully
revoked!");
           } else {
               if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   if (kmsEx.getMessage().contains("Grant does not exist")) {
                       logger.info("The grant ID '" + grantId + "' does not
exist. Moving on...");
                   } else {
                       throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                   }
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }



   /**
    * Asynchronously decrypts the given encrypted data using the specified key
ID.
    *
    * @param encryptedData The encrypted data to be decrypted.
    * @param keyId The ID of the key to be used for decryption.
```

```
    * @return A CompletableFuture that, when completed, will contain the
decrypted data as a String.
    *         If an error occurs during the decryption process, the
CompletableFuture will complete
    *         exceptionally with the error, and the method will return an empty
String.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> decryptDataAsync(SdkBytes encryptedData,
String keyId) {
       DecryptRequest decryptRequest = DecryptRequest.builder()
           .ciphertextBlob(encryptedData)
           .keyId(keyId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DecryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().decrypt(decryptRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((decryptResponse, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("Data decrypted successfully for key ID: " + keyId);
           } else {
               if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while
decrypting data: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred
while decrypting data: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           }
       });

       return responseFuture.thenApply(decryptResponse ->
decryptResponse.plaintext().asString(StandardCharsets.UTF_8));
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously replaces the policy for the specified KMS key.
    *
    * @param keyId       the ID of the KMS key to replace the policy for
    * @param policyName  the name of the policy to be replaced
    * @param accountId   the AWS account ID to be used in the policy
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with a boolean
indicating
    *         whether the policy replacement was successful or not
    */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> replacePolicyAsync(String keyId, String
policyName, String accountId) {
       String policy = """
   {
     "Version": "2012-10-17",
     "Statement": [{
       "Effect": "Allow",
       "Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::%s:root"},
       "Action": "kms:*",
       "Resource": "*"
     }]
   }
   """.formatted(accountId);

       PutKeyPolicyRequest keyPolicyRequest = PutKeyPolicyRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .policyName(policyName)
           .policy(policy)
           .build();

       // First, get the current policy to check if it exists
       return getAsyncClient().getKeyPolicy(r ->
r.keyId(keyId).policyName(policyName))
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               logger.info("Current policy exists. Replacing it...");
               return getAsyncClient().putKeyPolicy(keyPolicyRequest);
           })
           .thenApply(putPolicyResponse -> {
               logger.info("The key policy has been replaced.");
               return true;
           })
           .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               if (throwable.getCause() instanceof LimitExceededException) {
                   logger.error("Cannot replace policy, as only one policy is
allowed per key.");
                   return false;
               }
               throw new RuntimeException("Error replacing policy", throwable);
           });
   }


   /**
```

```
    * Asynchronously retrieves the key policy for the specified key ID and
policy name.
    *
    * @param keyId       the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to retrieve the
policy
    * @param policyName the name of the key policy to retrieve
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the key
policy as a {@link String}
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> getKeyPolicyAsync(String keyId, String
policyName) {
       GetKeyPolicyRequest policyRequest = GetKeyPolicyRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .policyName(policyName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getKeyPolicy(policyRequest)
           .thenApply(response -> {
               String policy = response.policy();
               logger.info("The response is: " + policy);
               return policy;
           })
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get key policy", ex);
           });
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously signs and verifies data using AWS KMS.
    *
    * <p>The method performs the following steps:
    * <ol>
    *     <li>Creates an AWS KMS key with the specified key spec, key usage, and
origin.</li>
    *     <li>Signs the provided message using the created KMS key and the
RSASSA-PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
    *     <li>Verifies the signature of the message using the created KMS key
and the RSASSA-PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
    * </ol>
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the
signature verification,
    *         {@code true} if the signature is valid, {@code false} otherwise.
    * @throws KmsException if any error occurs during the KMS operations.
```

```
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> signVerifyDataAsync() {
        String signMessage = "Here is the message that will be digitally signed";

        // Create an AWS KMS key used to digitally sign data.
        CreateKeyRequest createKeyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keySpec(KeySpec.RSA_2048)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.SIGN_VERIFY)
            .origin(OriginType.AWS_KMS)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(createKeyRequest)
            .thenCompose(createKeyResponse -> {
                String keyId = createKeyResponse.keyMetadata().keyId();

                SdkBytes messageBytes = SdkBytes.fromString(signMessage,
Charset.defaultCharset());
                SignRequest signRequest = SignRequest.builder()
                    .keyId(keyId)
                    .message(messageBytes)
                    .signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().sign(signRequest)
                    .thenCompose(signResponse -> {
                        byte[] signedBytes =
signResponse.signature().asByteArray();

                        VerifyRequest verifyRequest = VerifyRequest.builder()
                            .keyId(keyId)

.message(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(signMessage.getBytes(Charset.defaultCharset())))

.signature(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(signedBytes)))

.signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                            .build();

                        return getAsyncClient().verify(verifyRequest)
                            .thenApply(verifyResponse -> {
                                return (boolean) verifyResponse.signatureValid();
                            });
                    });
```

```
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to sign or verify data",
throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously tags a KMS key with a specific tag.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to be tagged
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tagging
operation is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> tagKMSKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        Tag tag = Tag.builder()
            .tagKey("Environment")
            .tagValue("Production")
            .build();

        TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .tags(tag)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().tagResource(tagResourceRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("{} key was tagged", keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to tag the KMS key",
throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a specific KMS alias asynchronously.
     *
     * @param aliasName the name of the alias to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of deleting the specified alias
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSpecificAliasAsync(String aliasName) {
        DeleteAliasRequest deleteAliasRequest = DeleteAliasRequest.builder()
```

```
            .aliasName(aliasName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteAlias(deleteAliasRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Alias {} has been deleted successfully", aliasName);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete alias: " +
aliasName, throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously disables the specified AWS Key Management Service (KMS)
key.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID or Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS key to be
disabled
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, indicates that the key
has been disabled successfully
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> disableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        DisableKeyRequest keyRequest = DisableKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().disableKey(keyRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Key {} has been disabled successfully",keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable key: " + keyId,
throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a KMS key asynchronously.
     *
     * <p><strong>Warning:</strong> Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and
potentially dangerous operation.
     * When a KMS key is deleted, all data that was encrypted under the KMS key
becomes unrecoverable.
```

```
     * This means that any files, databases, or other data that were encrypted
using the deleted KMS key
     * will become permanently inaccessible. Exercise extreme caution when
deleting KMS keys.</p>
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key deletion
is scheduled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest deletionRequest =
ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .pendingWindowInDays(7)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().scheduleKeyDeletion(deletionRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Key {} will be deleted in 7 days", keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to schedule key deletion for
key ID: " + keyId, throwable);
            });
    }


    public String getAccountId(){
        try (StsClient stsClient = StsClient.create()){
            GetCallerIdentityResponse callerIdentity =
stsClient.getCallerIdentity();
            return callerIdentity.account();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateAlias
  - CreateGrant
  - CreateKey
  - Decrypt

- DescribeKey
- DisableKey
- EnableKey
- Encrypt
- GetKeyPolicy
- ListAliases
- ListGrants
- ListKeys
- RevokeGrant
- ScheduleKeyDeletion
- Sign
- TagResource

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "\n";
        echo "-------------------------------------\n";
        echo <<<WELCOME
Welcome to the AWS Key Management Service SDK Basics scenario.

This program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Key Management Service using
 the AWS SDK for PHP (v3).
The AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a secure and highly available service
 that allows you to create
and manage AWS KMS keys and control their use across a wide range of AWS services
 and applications.
KMS provides a centralized and unified approach to managing encryption keys,
 making it easier to meet your
```

```
data protection and regulatory compliance requirements.

This KMS Basics scenario creates two key types:
- A symmetric encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt data.
- An asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.

Let's get started...\n
WELCOME;
        echo "-------------------------------------\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        $this->kmsClient = new KmsClient([]);
        // Initialize the KmsService class with the client. This allows you to
 override any defaults in the client before giving it to the service class.
        $this->kmsService = new KmsService($this->kmsClient);

        // 1. Create a symmetric KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "1. Create a symmetric KMS key.\n";
        echo "First, we will create a symmetric KMS key that is used to encrypt
 and decrypt data by invoking createKey().\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        $key = $this->kmsService->createKey();
        $this->resources['symmetricKey'] = $key['KeyId'];
        echo "Created a customer key with ARN {$key['Arn']}.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 2. Enable a KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "2. Enable a KMS key.\n";
        echo "By default when you create an AWS key, it is enabled. The code
 checks to
determine if the key is enabled. If it is not enabled, the code enables it.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        $keyInfo = $this->kmsService->describeKey($key['KeyId']);
        if(!$keyInfo['Enabled']){
            echo "The key was not enabled, so we will enable it.\n";
            $this->pressEnter();
            $this->kmsService->enableKey($key['KeyId']);
            echo "The key was successfully enabled.\n";
        }else{
```

```
            echo "The key was already enabled, so there was no need to enable it.
\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key.\n";
        echo "One of the main uses of symmetric keys is to encrypt and decrypt
 data.\n";
        echo "Next, we'll encrypt the string 'Hello, AWS KMS!' with the
 SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT encryption algorithm.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $text = "Hello, AWS KMS!";
        $encryption = $this->kmsService->encrypt($key['KeyId'], $text);
        echo "The plaintext data was successfully encrypted with the algorithm:
 {$encryption['EncryptionAlgorithm']}.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 4. Create an alias.
        echo "\n";
        echo "4. Create an alias.\n";
        $aliasInput = testable_readline("Please enter an alias prefixed with
 \"alias/\" or press enter to use a default value: ");
        if($aliasInput == ""){
            $aliasInput = "alias/dev-encryption-key";
        }
        $this->kmsService->createAlias($key['KeyId'], $aliasInput);
        $this->resources['alias'] = $aliasInput;
        echo "The alias \"$aliasInput\" was successfully created.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 5. List all of your aliases.
        $aliasPageSize = 10;
        echo "\n";
        echo "5. List all of your aliases, up to $aliasPageSize.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $aliasPaginator = $this->kmsService->listAliases();
        foreach($aliasPaginator as $pages){
            foreach($pages['Aliases'] as $alias){
                echo $alias['AliasName'] . "\n";
            }
            break;
        }
```

```
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key.\n";
        echo "By default, when the SDK enables automatic rotation of a KMS key,
KMS rotates the key material of the KMS key one year (approximately 365 days)
 from the enable date and every year
thereafter.";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $this->kmsService->enableKeyRotation($key['KeyId']);
        echo "The key's rotation was successfully set for key:
 {$key['KeyId']}\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 7. Create a grant.
        echo "7. Create a grant.\n";
        echo "\n";
        echo "A grant is a policy instrument that allows Amazon Web Services
 principals to use KMS keys.
It also can allow them to view a KMS key (DescribeKey) and create and manage
 grants.
When authorizing access to a KMS key, grants are considered along with key
 policies and IAM policies.\n";
        $granteeARN = testable_readline("Please enter the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN) of an Amazon Web Services principal. Valid principals include Amazon
 Web Services accounts, IAM users, IAM roles, federated users, and assumed
 role users. For help with the ARN syntax for a principal, see IAM ARNs in the
 Identity and Access Management User Guide. \nTo skip this step, press enter
 without any other values: ");
        if($granteeARN){
            $operations = [
                "ENCRYPT",
                "DECRYPT",
                "DESCRIBE_KEY",
            ];
            $grant = $this->kmsService->createGrant($key['KeyId'], $granteeARN,
 $operations);
            echo "The grant Id is: {$grant['GrantId']}\n";
        }else{
            echo "Steps 7, 8, and 9 will be skipped.\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();
```

```
        // 8. List grants for the KMS key.
        if($granteeARN){
            echo "8. List grants for the KMS key.\n\n";
            $grantsPaginator = $this->kmsService->listGrants($key['KeyId']);
            foreach($grantsPaginator as $page){
                foreach($page['Grants'] as $grant){
                    echo $grant['GrantId'] . "\n";
                }
            }
        }else{
            echo "Skipping step 8...\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 9. Revoke the grant.
        if($granteeARN) {
            echo "\n";
            echo "9. Revoke the grant.\n";
            $this->pressEnter();
            $this->kmsService->revokeGrant($grant['GrantId'], $keyInfo['KeyId']);
            echo "{$grant['GrantId']} was successfully revoked!\n";
        }else{
            echo "Skipping step 9...\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 10. Decrypt the data.
        echo "\n";
        echo "10. Decrypt the data.\n";
        echo "Let's decrypt the data that was encrypted before.\n";
        echo "We'll use the same key to decrypt the string that we encrypted
earlier in the program.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $decryption = $this->kmsService->decrypt($keyInfo['KeyId'],
$encryption['CiphertextBlob'], $encryption['EncryptionAlgorithm']);
        echo "The decrypted text is: {$decryption['Plaintext']}\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 11. Replace a Key Policy.
        echo "\n";
        echo "11. Replace a Key Policy.\n";
        echo "A key policy is a resource policy for a KMS key. Key policies are
the primary way to control access to KMS keys.\n";
```

```
        echo "Every KMS key must have exactly one key policy. The statements in
 the key policy determine who has permission to use the KMS key and how they can
 use it.\n";
        echo " You can also use IAM policies and grants to control access to the
 KMS key, but every KMS key must have a key policy.\n";
        echo "We will replace the key's policy with a new one:\n";
        $stsClient = new StsClient([]);
        $result = $stsClient->getCallerIdentity();
        $accountId = $result['Account'];
        $keyPolicy = <<< KEYPOLICY
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [{
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::$accountId:root"},
        "Action": "kms:*",
        "Resource": "*"
    }]
}
KEYPOLICY;
        echo $keyPolicy;
        $this->pressEnter();
        $this->kmsService->putKeyPolicy($keyInfo['KeyId'], $keyPolicy);
        echo "The Key Policy was successfully replaced!\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 12. Retrieve the key policy.
        echo "\n";
        echo "12. Retrieve the key policy.\n";
        echo "Let's get some information about the new policy and print it to the
 screen.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $policyInfo = $this->kmsService->getKeyPolicy($keyInfo['KeyId']);
        echo "We got the info! Here is the policy: \n";
        echo $policyInfo['Policy'] . "\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign data.
        echo "\n";
        echo "13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign data.\n";
        echo "Signing your data with an AWS key can provide several benefits that
 make it an attractive option for your data signing needs.\n";
```

```
        echo "By using an AWS KMS key, you can leverage the security controls and
compliance features provided by AWS, which can help you meet various regulatory
requirements and enhance the overall security posture of your organization.\n";
        echo "First we'll create the asymmetric key.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $keySpec = "RSA_2048";
        $keyUsage = "SIGN_VERIFY";
        $asymmetricKey = $this->kmsService->createKey($keySpec, $keyUsage);
        $this->resources['asymmetricKey'] = $asymmetricKey['KeyId'];
        echo "Created the key with ID: {$asymmetricKey['KeyId']}\n";
        echo "Next, we'll sign the data.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $algorithm = "RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256";
        $sign = $this->kmsService->sign($asymmetricKey['KeyId'], $text,
$algorithm);
        $verify = $this->kmsService->verify($asymmetricKey['KeyId'], $text,
$sign['Signature'], $algorithm);
        echo "Signature verification result: {$sign['signature']}\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 14. Tag the symmetric KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "14. Tag the symmetric KMS key.\n";
        echo "By using tags, you can improve the overall management, security,
and governance of your KMS keys, making it easier to organize, track, and
control access to your encrypted data within your AWS environment.\n";
        echo "Let's tag our symmetric key as Environment->Production\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $this->kmsService->tagResource($key['KeyId'], [
            [
                'TagKey' => "Environment",
                'TagValue' => "Production",
            ],
        ]);
        echo "The key was successfully tagged!\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 15. Schedule the deletion of the KMS key
        echo "\n";
        echo "15. Schedule the deletion of the KMS key.\n";
        echo "By default, KMS applies a waiting period of 30 days, but you can
specify a waiting period of 7-30 days.\n";
```

```
        echo "When this operation is successful, the key state of the KMS key
 changes to PendingDeletion and the key can't be used in any cryptographic
 operations.\n";
        echo "It remains in this state for the duration of the waiting period.\n
\n";

        echo "Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous
 operation. When a KMS key is deleted, all data that was encrypted under the KMS
 key is unrecoverable.\n\n";

        $cleanUp = testable_readline("Would you like to delete the resources
 created during this scenario, including the keys? (y/n): ");
        if($cleanUp == "Y" || $cleanUp == "y"){
            $this->cleanUp();
        }

        echo
 "------------------------------------------------------------------------------
\n";
        echo "This concludes the AWS Key Management SDK Basics scenario\n";
        echo
 "------------------------------------------------------------------------------
\n";



namespace Kms;

use Aws\Kms\Exception\KmsException;
use Aws\Kms\KmsClient;
use Aws\Result;
use Aws\ResultPaginator;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;

class KmsService extends AWSServiceClass
{

    protected KmsClient $client;
    protected bool $verbose;

    /***
     * @param KmsClient|null $client
     * @param bool $verbose
     */
```

```
    public function __construct(KmsClient $client = null, bool $verbose = false)
    {
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
        if($client){
            $this->client = $client;
            return;
        }
        $this->client = new KmsClient([]);
    }


    /***
     * @param string $keySpec
     * @param string $keyUsage
     * @param string $description
     * @return array
     */
    public function createKey(string $keySpec = "", string $keyUsage = "", string
 $description = "Created by the SDK for PHP")
    {
        $parameters = ['Description' => $description];
        if($keySpec && $keyUsage){
            $parameters['KeySpec'] = $keySpec;
            $parameters['KeyUsage'] = $keyUsage;
        }
        try {
            $result = $this->client->createKey($parameters);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            // Check for error specific to createKey operations
            if ($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "LimitExceededException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because a quota was exceeded. For
 more information, see Quotas in the Key Management Service Developer Guide.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $ciphertext
     * @param string $algorithm
```

```
     * @return Result
     */
    public function decrypt(string $keyId, string $ciphertext, string $algorithm
 = "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT")
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->decrypt([
                'CiphertextBlob' => $ciphertext,
                'EncryptionAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem decrypting the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $text
     * @return Result
     */
    public function encrypt(string $keyId, string $text)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->encrypt([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Plaintext' => $text,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "DisabledException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified KMS key is
 not enabled.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
```

```
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $limit
     * @return ResultPaginator
     */
    public function listAliases(string $keyId = "", int $limit = 0)
    {
        $args = [];
        if($keyId){
            $args['KeyId'] = $keyId;
        }
        if($limit){
            $args['Limit'] = $limit;
        }
        try{
            return $this->client->getPaginator("ListAliases", $args);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidMarkerException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the marker that specifies
where pagination should next begin is not valid.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $alias
     * @return void
     */
    public function createAlias(string $keyId, string $alias)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->createAlias([
                'TargetKeyId' => $keyId,
                'AliasName' => $alias,
            ]);
        }catch (KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidAliasNameException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified alias name
is not valid.";
            }
            throw $caught;
```

```
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $granteePrincipal
     * @param array $operations
     * @param array $grantTokens
     * @return Result
     */
    public function createGrant(string $keyId, string $granteePrincipal, array
 $operations, array $grantTokens = [])
    {
        $args = [
            'KeyId' => $keyId,
            'GranteePrincipal' => $granteePrincipal,
            'Operations' => $operations,
        ];
        if($grantTokens){
            $args['GrantTokens'] = $grantTokens;
        }
        try{
            return $this->client->createGrant($args);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidGrantTokenException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified grant token
 is not valid.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return array
     */
    public function describeKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->client->describeKey([
```

```
                "KeyId" => $keyId,
            ]);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function disableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->disableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem disabling the key: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function enableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->enableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
```

```
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @return array
     */
    public function listKeys()
    {
        try {
            $contents = [];
            $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListKeys");
            foreach($paginator as $result){
                foreach ($result['Content'] as $object) {
                    $contents[] = $object;
                }
            }
            return $contents;
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem listing the keys: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return Result
     */
    public function listGrants(string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->listGrants([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
```

```
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "    The request was rejected because the specified entity
 or resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }


    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return Result
     */
    public function getKeyPolicy(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->getKeyPolicy([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem getting the key policy: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }


    /***
     * @param string $grantId
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function revokeGrant(string $grantId, string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->revokeGrant([
                'GrantId' => $grantId,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem with revoking the grant: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}.\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
```

```
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $pendingWindowInDays
     * @return void
     */
    public function scheduleKeyDeletion(string $keyId, int $pendingWindowInDays =
 7)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->scheduleKeyDeletion([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'PendingWindowInDays' => $pendingWindowInDays,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem scheduling the key deletion: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param array $tags
     * @return void
     */
    public function tagResource(string $keyId, array $tags)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->tagResource([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Tags' => $tags,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem applying the tag(s): {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $message
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function sign(string $keyId, string $message, string $algorithm)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->sign([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Message' => $message,
                'SigningAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem signing the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $rotationPeriodInDays
     * @return void
     */
    public function enableKeyRotation(string $keyId, int $rotationPeriodInDays =
 365)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->enableKeyRotation([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'RotationPeriodInDays' => $rotationPeriodInDays,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
```

```
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $policy
     * @return void
     */
    public function putKeyPolicy(string $keyId, string $policy)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->putKeyPolicy([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Policy' => $policy,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem replacing the key policy: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $aliasName
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteAlias(string $aliasName)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->deleteAlias([
                'AliasName' => $aliasName,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the alias: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $message
     * @param string $signature
     * @param string $signingAlgorithm
     * @return bool
     */
    public function verify(string $keyId, string $message, string $signature,
 string $signingAlgorithm)
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->client->verify([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Message' => $message,
                'Signature' => $signature,
                'SigningAlgorithm' => $signingAlgorithm,
            ]);
            return $result['SignatureValid'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem verifying the signature: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }


}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateAlias
  - CreateGrant
  - CreateKey
  - Decrypt
  - DescribeKey
  - DisableKey
  - EnableKey

- Encrypt
- GetKeyPolicy
- ListAliases
- ListGrants
- ListKeys
- RevokeGrant
- ScheduleKeyDeletion
- Sign
- TagResource

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KMSScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started with KMS."""

    def __init__(
        self,
        key_manager: KeyManager,
        key_encryption: KeyEncrypt,
        alias_manager: AliasManager,
        grant_manager: GrantManager,
        key_policy: KeyPolicy,
    ):
        self.key_manager = key_manager
        self.key_encryption = key_encryption
        self.alias_manager = alias_manager
        self.grant_manager = grant_manager
        self.key_policy = key_policy
        self.key_id = ""
        self.alias_name = ""
```

```
        self.asymmetric_key_id = ""

    def kms_scenario(self):
        key_description = "Created by the AWS KMS API"

        print(DASHES)
        print(
            """
Welcome to the AWS Key Management SDK Basics scenario.

This program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Key Management using the AWS
 SDK for Python (Boto3).
The AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a secure and highly available service
 that allows you to create
and manage AWS KMS keys and control their use across a wide range of AWS services
 and applications.
KMS provides a centralized and unified approach to managing encryption keys,
 making it easier to meet your
data protection and regulatory compliance requirements.

This Basics scenario creates two key types:

- A symmetric encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt data.
- An asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.

Let's get started...
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"1. Create a symmetric KMS key\n")
        print(
            f"First, the program will creates a symmetric KMS key that you can
 used to encrypt and decrypt data."
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.key_id = self.key_manager.create_key(key_description)["KeyId"]
        print(f"A symmetric key was successfully created {self.key_id}.")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(
            """
2. Enable a KMS key
```

```
By default, when the SDK creates an AWS key, it is enabled. The next bit of code
 checks to
determine if the key is enabled.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        is_enabled = self.is_key_enabled(self.key_id)
        print(f"Is the key enabled? {is_enabled}")
        if not is_enabled:
            self.key_manager.enable_key(self.key_id)
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key")
        plain_text = "Hello, AWS KMS!"
        print(
            f"""
One of the main uses of symmetric keys is to encrypt and decrypt data.
Next, the code encrypts the string "{plain_text}" with the SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT
 encryption algorithm.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        encrypted_text = self.key_encryption.encrypt(self.key_id, plain_text)
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"4. Create an alias")
        print(
            """
Now, the program will create an alias for the KMS key. An alias is a friendly
 name that you
can associate with a KMS key. The alias name should be prefixed with 'alias/'.
        """
        )
        alias_name = q.ask("Enter an alias name: ", q.non_empty)
        self.alias_manager.create_alias(self.key_id, alias_name)
        print(f"{alias_name} was successfully created.")
        self.alias_name = alias_name
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"5. List all of your aliases")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.alias_manager.list_aliases(10)
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key")
```

```
        print(
            """

By default, when the SDK enables automatic rotation of a KMS key,
KMS rotates the key material of the KMS key one year (approximately 365 days)
 from the enable date and every year
thereafter.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.key_manager.enable_key_rotation(self.key_id)
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"Key rotation has been enabled for key with id {self.key_id}")
        print(
            """
7. Create a grant

A grant is a policy instrument that allows Amazon Web Services principals to use
 KMS keys.
It also can allow them to view a KMS key (DescribeKey) and create and manage
 grants.
When authorizing access to a KMS key, grants are considered along with key
 policies and IAM policies.
        """
        )
        print(
            """
To create a grant you must specify a account_id. To specify the grantee
 account_id, use the Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
of an AWS account_id. Valid principals include AWS accounts, IAM users, IAM
 roles, federated users,
and assumed role users.
        """
        )
        account_id = q.ask(
            "Enter an account_id, or press enter to skip creating a grant... "
        )
        grant = None
        if account_id != "":
            grant = self.grant_manager.create_grant(
                self.key_id,
                account_id,
                [
                    "Encrypt",
```

```
                    "Decrypt",
                    "DescribeKey",
                ],
            )
            print(f"Grant created successfully with ID: {grant['GrantId']}")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"8. List grants for the KMS key")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.grant_manager.list_grants(self.key_id)
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"9. Revoke the grant")
        print(
            """
The revocation of a grant immediately removes the permissions and access that the
 grant had provided.
This means that any account_id (user, role, or service) that was granted access
 to perform specific
KMS operations on a KMS key will no longer be able to perform those operations.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        if grant is not None:
            self.grant_manager.revoke_grant(self.key_id, grant["GrantId"])
            print(f"Grant ID: {grant['GrantId']} was successfully revoked!")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"10. Decrypt the data\n")
        print(
            """
Lets decrypt the data that was encrypted in an early step.
The code uses the same key to decrypt the string that we encrypted earlier in the
 program.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        decrypted_data = self.key_encryption.decrypt(self.key_id, encrypted_text)
        print(f"Data decrypted successfully for key ID: {self.key_id}")
        print(f"Decrypted data: {decrypted_data}")
```

```
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"11. Replace a key policy\n")
        print(
            """
A key policy is a resource policy for a KMS key. Key policies are the primary way
 to control
access to KMS keys. Every KMS key must have exactly one key policy. The
 statements in the key policy
determine who has permission to use the KMS key and how they can use it.
You can also use IAM policies and grants to control access to the KMS key, but
 every KMS key
must have a key policy.

By default, when you create a key by using the SDK, a policy is created that
gives the AWS account that owns the KMS key full access to the KMS key.

Let's try to replace the automatically created policy with the following policy.
{
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [{
"Effect": "Allow",
"Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::0000000000:root"},
"Action": "kms:*",
"Resource": "*"
}]
}
        """
        )
        account_id = q.ask("Enter your account ID or press enter to skip: ")
        if account_id != "":
            policy = {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {"AWS": f"arn:aws:iam::{account_id}:root"},
                        "Action": "kms:*",
                        "Resource": "*",
                    }
                ],
            }
```

```
            self.key_policy.set_new_policy(self.key_id, policy)
            print("Key policy replacement succeeded.")
            q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        else:
            print("Skipping replacing the key policy.")

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"12. Get the key policy\n")
        print(
            f"The next bit of code that runs gets the key policy to make sure it
exists."
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        policy = self.key_policy.get_policy(self.key_id)
        print(f"The key policy is: {policy}")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign your data\n")
        print(
            """
        Signing your data with an AWS key can provide several benefits that make
it an attractive option
        for your data signing needs. By using an AWS KMS key, you can leverage
the
        security controls and compliance features provided by AWS,
        which can help you meet various regulatory requirements and enhance the
overall security posture
        of your organization.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(f"Sign and verify data operation succeeded.")
        self.asymmetric_key_id = self.key_manager.create_asymmetric_key()
        message = "Here is the message that will be digitally signed"
        signature = self.key_encryption.sign(self.asymmetric_key_id, message)
        if self.key_encryption.verify(self.asymmetric_key_id, message,
signature):
            print("Signature verification succeeded.")
        else:
            print("Signature verification failed.")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
```

```
        print(f"14. Tag your symmetric KMS Key\n")
        print(
            """
        By using tags, you can improve the overall management, security, and
 governance of your
        KMS keys, making it easier to organize, track, and control access to your
 encrypted data within
        your AWS environment
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.key_manager.tag_resource(self.key_id, "Environment", "Production")
        self.clean_up()

    def is_key_enabled(self, key_id: str) -> bool:
        """
        Check if the key is enabled or not.

        :param key_id: The key to check.
        :return: True if the key is enabled, otherwise False.
        """
        response = self.key_manager.describe_key(key_id)
        return response["Enabled"] is True

    def clean_up(self):
        """
        Delete resources created by this scenario.
        """
        if self.alias_name != "":
            print(f"Deleting the alias {self.alias_name}.")
            self.alias_manager.delete_alias(self.alias_name)
        window = 7  # The window in days for a scheduled deletion.
        if self.key_id != "":
            print(
                """
Warning:
Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation. When a
 KMS key is deleted,
all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.
                """
            )
            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to delete the key with ID {self.key_id} (y/n)?",
                q.is_yesno,
```

```
            ):
                print(
                    f"The key {self.key_id} will be deleted with a window of
 {window} days. You can cancel the deletion before"
                )
                print("the window expires.")
                self.key_manager.delete_key(self.key_id, window)
                self.key_id = ""

        if self.asymmetric_key_id != "":
            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to delete the asymmetric key with ID
 {self.asymmetric_key_id} (y/n)?",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print(
                    f"The key {self.asymmetric_key_id} will be deleted with a
 window of {window} days. You can cancel the deletion before"
                )
                print("the window expires.")
                self.key_manager.delete_key(self.asymmetric_key_id, window)
                self.asymmetric_key_id = ""


if __name__ == "__main__":
    kms_scenario = None
    try:
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        a_key_manager = KeyManager(kms_client)
        a_key_encrypt = KeyEncrypt(kms_client)
        an_alias_manager = AliasManager(kms_client)
        a_grant_manager = GrantManager(kms_client)
        a_key_policy = KeyPolicy(kms_client)
        kms_scenario = KMSScenario(
            key_manager=a_key_manager,
            key_encryption=a_key_encrypt,
            alias_manager=an_alias_manager,
            grant_manager=a_grant_manager,
            key_policy=a_key_policy,
        )
        kms_scenario.kms_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
        if kms_scenario is not None:
```

```
            kms_scenario.clean_up()
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key management.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_key(self, key_description: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates a key with a user-provided description.

        :param key_description: A description for the key.
        :return: The key ID.
        """
        try:
            key = self.kms_client.create_key(Description=key_description)
["KeyMetadata"]
            self.created_keys.append(key)
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create your key. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def describe_key(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to describe.
        :return: Information about the key.
        """

        try:
            key = self.kms_client.describe_key(KeyId=key_id)["KeyMetadata"]
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def enable_key_rotation(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Enables rotation for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.enable_key_rotation(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't enable rotation for key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def create_asymmetric_key(self) -> str:
        """
        Creates an asymmetric key in AWS KMS for signing messages.

        :return: The ID of the created key.
        """
        try:
```

```
            key = self.kms_client.create_key(
                KeySpec="RSA_2048", KeyUsage="SIGN_VERIFY", Origin="AWS_KMS"
            )["KeyMetadata"]
            self.created_keys.append(key)
            return key["KeyId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create your key. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def tag_resource(self, key_id: str, tag_key: str, tag_value: str) -> None:
        """
        Add or edit tags on a customer managed key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        :param tag_key: Key for the tag.
        :param tag_value: Value for the tag.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.tag_resource(
                KeyId=key_id, Tags=[{"TagKey": tag_key, "TagValue": tag_value}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't add a tag for the key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_key(self, key_id: str, window: int) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a list of keys.

        Warning:
        Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation.
When a KMS key is deleted,
        all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to delete.
```

```
        :param window: The waiting period, in days, before the KMS key is
 deleted.
        """

        try:
            self.kms_client.schedule_key_deletion(
                KeyId=key_id, PendingWindowInDays=window
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key aliases.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_alias(self, key_id: str, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an alias for the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of a key to give an alias.
        :param alias: The alias to assign to the key.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.create_alias(AliasName=alias, TargetKeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not create the alias %s because it already exists.",
key_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def list_aliases(self, page_size: int) -> None:
        """
        Lists aliases for the current account.
        :param page_size: The number of aliases to list per page.
        """
        try:
            alias_paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_aliases")
            for alias_page in alias_paginator.paginate(
                PaginationConfig={"PageSize": page_size}
            ):
                print(f"Here are {page_size} aliases:")
                pprint(alias_page["Aliases"])
                if alias_page["Truncated"]:
                    answer = input(
                        f"Do you want to see the next {page_size} aliases (y/n)?
"
                    )
                    if answer.lower() != "y":
                        break
                else:
                    print("That's all your aliases!")
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your aliases. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def delete_alias(self, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an alias.

        :param alias: The alias to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.delete_alias(AliasName=alias)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete alias %s. Here's why: %s",
                alias,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key encryption.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def encrypt(self, key_id: str, text: str) -> bytes:
        """
        Encrypts text by using the specified key.
```

```
        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for encryption.
        :param text: The text to encrypt.
        :return: The encrypted version of the text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.encrypt(KeyId=key_id,
Plaintext=text.encode())
            print(
                f"The string was encrypted with algorithm
{response['EncryptionAlgorithm']}"
            )
            return response["CiphertextBlob"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DisabledException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not encrypt because the key %s is disabled.", key_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def decrypt(self, key_id: str, cipher_text: bytes) -> str:
        """
        Decrypts text previously encrypted with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to decrypt the data.
        :param cipher_text: The encrypted text to decrypt.
        :return: The decrypted text.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.decrypt(KeyId=key_id,
CiphertextBlob=cipher_text)[
                "Plaintext"
            ].decode()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't decrypt your ciphertext. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def sign(self, key_id: str, message: str) -> str:
        """
        Signs a message with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for signing.
        :param message: The message to sign.
        :return: The signature of the message.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.sign(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )["Signature"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't sign your message. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def verify(self, key_id: str, message: str, signature: str) -> bool:
        """
        Verifies a signature against a message.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to sign the message.
        :param message: The message to verify.
        :param signature: The signature to verify.
        :return: True when the signature matches the message, otherwise False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.verify(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                Signature=signature,
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )
            valid = response["SignatureValid"]
            print(f"The signature is {'valid' if valid else 'invalid'}.")
            return valid
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SignatureDoesNotMatchException":
                print("The signature is not valid.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify your signature. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key grants.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_grant(
        self, key_id: str, principal: str, operations: [str]
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Creates a grant for a key that lets a principal generate a symmetric data
        encryption key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key.
        :param principal: The principal to grant permission to.
        :param operations: The operations to grant permission for.
        :return: The grant that is created.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.create_grant(
```

```
                KeyId=key_id,
                GranteePrincipal=principal,
                Operations=operations,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create a grant on key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_grants(self, key_id):
        """
        Lists grants for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The grants for the key.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_grants")
            grants = []
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(KeyId=key_id)
            for page in page_iterator:
                grants.extend(page["Grants"])

            print(f"Grants for key {key_id}:")
            pprint(grants)
            return grants
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list grants for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def revoke_grant(self, key_id: str, grant_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Revokes a grant so that it can no longer be used.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key associated with the grant.
```

```
        :param grant_id: The ID of the grant to revoke.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.revoke_grant(KeyId=key_id, GrantId=grant_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't revoke grant %s. Here's why: %s",
                grant_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key policies.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def set_new_policy(self, key_id: str, policy: dict[str, any]) -> None:
        """
        Sets the policy of a key. Setting a policy entirely overwrites the
 existing
        policy, so care is taken to add a statement to the existing list of
 statements
        rather than simply writing a new policy.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to set the policy to.
```

```
        :param policy: A new key policy. The key policy must allow the calling
principal to make a subsequent
                       PutKeyPolicy request on the KMS key. This reduces the risk
that the KMS key becomes unmanageable
        """

        try:
            self.kms_client.put_key_policy(KeyId=key_id,
Policy=json.dumps(policy))
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't set policy for key %s. Here's why %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise



    def get_policy(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Gets the policy of a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The key policy as a dict.
        """
        if key_id != "":
            try:
                response = self.kms_client.get_key_policy(
                    KeyId=key_id,
                )
                policy = json.loads(response["Policy"])
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get policy for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            else:
                pprint(policy)
                return policy
        else:
            print("Skipping get policy demo.")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAlias
  - CreateGrant
  - CreateKey
  - Decrypt
  - DescribeKey
  - DisableKey
  - EnableKey
  - Encrypt
  - GetKeyPolicy
  - ListAliases
  - ListGrants
  - ListKeys
  - RevokeGrant
  - ScheduleKeyDeletion
  - Sign
  - TagResource

Actions for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS KMS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the AWS KMS API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Key Management Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use CreateGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Decrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisableKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use EnableKeyRotation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Encrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateDataKey with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateRandom with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetKeyPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAliases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListGrants with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListKeyPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListKeys with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutKeyPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ReEncrypt with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RetireGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RevokeGrant with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ScheduleKeyDeletion with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Sign with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateAlias with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Verify with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateAlias` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAlias`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates an alias for an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// </summary>
public class CreateAlias
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The alias name must start with alias/ and can be
        // up to 256 alphanumeric characters long.
        var aliasName = "alias/ExampleAlias";

        // The value supplied as the TargetKeyId can be either
        // the key ID or key Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
        // AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

        var request = new CreateAliasRequest
        {
            AliasName = aliasName,
```

```
                TargetKeyId = keyId,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateAliasAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Alias, {aliasName}, successfully created.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not create alias.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an alias for a KMS key

The following `create-alias` command creates an alias named `example-alias` for the KMS key identified by key ID `1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab`.

Alias names must begin with `alias/`. Do not use alias names that begin with `alias/aws`; these are reserved for use by AWS.

```
aws kms create-alias \
    --alias-name alias/example-alias \
    --target-key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

This command doesn't return any output. To see the new alias, use the `list-aliases` command.

For more information, see Using aliases in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a custom alias for the specified target key asynchronously.
    *
    * @param targetKeyId the ID of the target key for the alias
    * @param aliasName   the name of the alias to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the alias creation
operation is finished
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createCustomAliasAsync(String targetKeyId,
String aliasName) {
       CreateAliasRequest aliasRequest = CreateAliasRequest.builder()
           .aliasName(aliasName)
           .targetKeyId(targetKeyId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateAliasResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createAlias(aliasRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("{} was successfully created.", aliasName);
           } else {
               if (exception instanceof ResourceExistsException) {
                   logger.info("Alias [{}] already exists. Moving on...",
aliasName);
               } else if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while creating
alias: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred
while creating alias: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           }
```

```
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createCustomAlias(
    targetKeyIdVal: String?,
    aliasNameVal: String?,
) {
    val request =
        CreateAliasRequest {
            aliasName = aliasNameVal
            targetKeyId = targetKeyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        kmsClient.createAlias(request)
        println("$aliasNameVal was successfully created")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $alias
     * @return void
     */
    public function createAlias(string $keyId, string $alias)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->createAlias([
                'TargetKeyId' => $keyId,
                'AliasName' => $alias,
            ]);
        }catch (KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidAliasNameException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified alias name
is not valid.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_alias(self, key_id: str, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an alias for the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of a key to give an alias.
        :param alias: The alias to assign to the key.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.create_alias(AliasName=alias, TargetKeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not create the alias %s because it already exists.",
 key_id
                )
```

```
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateGrant` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateGrant`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            // The identity that is given permission to perform the operations
            // specified in the grant.
            var grantee = "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/ExampleRole";

            // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to which the grant applies. You
            // can use the key ID or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS
key.
```

```
            var keyId = "7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";

            var request = new CreateGrantRequest
            {
                GranteePrincipal = grantee,
                KeyId = keyId,

                // A list of operations that the grant allows.
                Operations = new List<string>
                {
                    "Encrypt",
                    "Decrypt",
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateGrantAsync(request);

            string grantId = response.GrantId; // The unique identifier of the
grant.
            string grantToken = response.GrantToken; // The grant token.

            Console.WriteLine($"Id: {grantId}, Token: {grantToken}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a grant

The following `create-grant` example creates a grant that allows the `exampleUser` user to use the `decrypt` command on the `1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab` example KMS key. The retiring principal is the `adminRole` role. The grant uses the `EncryptionContextSubset` grant constraint to allow this permission only when the encryption context in the `decrypt` request includes the `"Department": "IT"` key-value pair.

```
aws kms create-grant \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --grantee-principal arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/exampleUser \
    --operations Decrypt \
    --constraints EncryptionContextSubset={Department=IT} \
    --retiring-principal arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/adminRole
```

Output:

```
{
    "GrantId":
 "1a2b3c4d2f5e69f440bae30eaec9570bb1fb7358824f9ddfa1aa5a0dab1a59b2",
    "GrantToken": "<grant token here>"
}
```

To view detailed information about the grant, use the `list-grants` command.

For more information, see Grants in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Grants permissions to a specified principal on a customer master key (CMK)
 asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyId             The unique identifier for the customer master key
 (CMK) that the grant applies to.
     * @param granteePrincipal  The principal that is given permission to perform
 the operations that the grant permits on the CMK.
```

```
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the ID
of the created grant.
    * @throws RuntimeException If an error occurs during the grant creation
process.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> grantKeyAsync(String keyId, String
granteePrincipal) {
       List<GrantOperation> grantPermissions = List.of(
           GrantOperation.ENCRYPT,
           GrantOperation.DECRYPT,
           GrantOperation.DESCRIBE_KEY
       );

       CreateGrantRequest grantRequest = CreateGrantRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .name("grant1")
           .granteePrincipal(granteePrincipal)
           .operations(grantPermissions)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createGrant(grantRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex == null) {
               logger.info("Grant created successfully with ID: " +
response.grantId());
           } else {
               if (ex instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create grant: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
               }
           }
       });

       return responseFuture.thenApply(CreateGrantResponse::grantId);
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewGrant(
    keyIdVal: String?,
    granteePrincipalVal: String?,
    operation: String,
): String? {
    val operationOb = GrantOperation.fromValue(operation)
    val grantOperationList = ArrayList<GrantOperation>()
    grantOperationList.add(operationOb)

    val request =
        CreateGrantRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
            granteePrincipal = granteePrincipalVal
            operations = grantOperationList
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.createGrant(request)
        return response.grantId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /***
    * @param string $keyId
    * @param string $granteePrincipal
    * @param array $operations
    * @param array $grantTokens
    * @return Result
    */
   public function createGrant(string $keyId, string $granteePrincipal, array
$operations, array $grantTokens = [])
   {
       $args = [
           'KeyId' => $keyId,
           'GranteePrincipal' => $granteePrincipal,
           'Operations' => $operations,
       ];
       if($grantTokens){
           $args['GrantTokens'] = $grantTokens;
       }
       try{
           return $this->client->createGrant($args);
       }catch(KmsException $caught){
           if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidGrantTokenException"){
               echo "The request was rejected because the specified grant token
is not valid.\n";
           }
           throw $caught;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_grant(
        self, key_id: str, principal: str, operations: [str]
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Creates a grant for a key that lets a principal generate a symmetric data
        encryption key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key.
        :param principal: The principal to grant permission to.
        :param operations: The operations to grant permission for.
        :return: The grant that is created.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.create_grant(
```

```
                KeyId=key_id,
                GranteePrincipal=principal,
                Operations=operations,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create a grant on key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Work with table encryption

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to create a new AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS)
    /// key.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateKey
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Note that if you need to create a Key in an AWS Region
            // other than the Region defined for the default user, you need to
            // pass the Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            // The call to CreateKeyAsync will create a symmetrical AWS KMS
            // key. For more information about symmetrical and asymmetrical
            // keys, see:
            //
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/kms/latest/developerguide/symm-asymm-
choose.html
            var response = await client.CreateKeyAsync(new CreateKeyRequest());

            // The KeyMetadata object contains information about the new AWS KMS
 key.
            KeyMetadata keyMetadata = response.KeyMetadata;

            if (keyMetadata is not null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"KMS Key: {keyMetadata.KeyId} was successfully
 created.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create KMS Key.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a customer managed KMS key in AWS KMS

The following `create-key` example creates a symmetric encryption KMS key.

To create the basic KMS key, a symmetric encryption key, you do not need to specify any parameters. The default values for those parameters create a symmetric encryption key.

Because this command doesn't specify a key policy, the KMS key gets the default key policy for programmatically created KMS keys. To view the key policy, use the `get-key-policy` command. To change the key policy, use the `put-key-policy` command.

```
aws kms create-key
```

The `create-key` command returns the key metadata, including the key ID and ARN of the new KMS key. You can use these values to identify the KMS key in other AWS KMS operations. The output does not include the tags. To view the tags for a KMS key, use the `list-resource-tags` command.

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "CreationDate": "2017-07-05T14:04:55-07:00",
        "CurrentKeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
        "MultiRegion": false,
```

```
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS"
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
            "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
        ]
    }
}
```

Note: The `create-key` command does not let you specify an alias, To create an alias for the new KMS key, use the `create-alias` command.

For more information, see Creating keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To create an asymmetric RSA KMS key for encryption and decryption

The following `create-key` example creates a KMS key that contains an asymmetric RSA key pair for encryption and decryption. The key spec and key usage can't be changed after the key is created.:

```
aws kms create-key \
   --key-spec RSA_4096 \
   --key-usage ENCRYPT_DECRYPT
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CreationDate": "2021-04-05T14:04:55-07:00",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "RSA_4096",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
            "RSAES_OAEP_SHA_1",
            "RSAES_OAEP_SHA_256"
        ],
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "RSA_4096",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
```

```
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To create an asymmetric elliptic curve KMS key for signing and verification

To create an asymmetric KMS key that contains an asymmetric elliptic curve (ECC) key pair for signing and verification. The `--key-usage` parameter is required even though `SIGN_VERIFY` is the only valid value for ECC KMS keys. The key spec and key usage can't be changed after the key is created.:

```
aws kms create-key \
    --key-spec ECC_NIST_P521 \
    --key-usage SIGN_VERIFY
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CreationDate": "2019-12-02T07:48:55-07:00",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "ECC_NIST_P521",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "ECC_NIST_P521",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "SIGN_VERIFY",
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS",
        "SigningAlgorithms": [
            "ECDSA_SHA_512"
        ]
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To create an asymmetric ML-DSA KMS key for signing and verification

This example creates a module-lattice digital signature algorithm (ML-DSA) key for signing and verification. The key-usage parameter is required even though `SIGN_VERIFY` is the only valid value for ML-DSA keys.

```
aws kms create-key \
    --key-spec ML_DSA_65 \
    --key-usage SIGN_VERIFY
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CreationDate": "2019-12-02T07:48:55-07:00",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "ML_DSA_65",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "SIGN_VERIFY",
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS",
        "SigningAlgorithms": [
            "ML_DSA_SHAKE_256"
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To create an HMAC KMS key

The following `create-key` example creates a 384-bit HMAC KMS key. The `GENERATE_VERIFY_MAC` value for the `--key-usage` parameter is required even though it's the only valid value for HMAC KMS keys.

```
aws kms create-key \
    --key-spec HMAC_384 \
    --key-usage GENERATE_VERIFY_MAC
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CreationDate": "2022-04-05T14:04:55-07:00",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "HMAC_384",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "HMAC_384",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "GENERATE_VERIFY_MAC",
        "MacAlgorithms": [
            "HMAC_SHA_384"
        ],
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS"
    }
}
```

For more information, see HMAC keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 6: To create a multi-Region primary KMS key

The following `create-key` example creates a multi-Region primary symmetric encryption key. Because the default values for all parameters create a symmetric encryption key, only the `--multi-region` parameter is required for this KMS key. In the AWS CLI, to indicate that a Boolean parameter is true, just specify the parameter name.

```
aws kms create-key \
    --multi-region
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef12345678990ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CreationDate": "2021-09-02T016:15:21-09:00",
        "CurrentKeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
          "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
        ],
        "KeyId": "mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef12345678990ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
        "MultiRegion": true,
        "MultiRegionConfiguration": {
            "MultiRegionKeyType": "PRIMARY",
            "PrimaryKey": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef12345678990ab",
                "Region": "us-west-2"
            },
            "ReplicaKeys": []
        },
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 7: To create a KMS key for imported key material

The following `create-key` example creates a creates a KMS key with no key material. When the operation is complete, you can import your own key material into the KMS key. To create this KMS key, set the `--origin` parameter to EXTERNAL.

```
aws kms create-key \
    --origin EXTERNAL
```

Output:

```
{
     "KeyMetadata": {
         "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
         "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
         "CreationDate": "2019-12-02T07:48:55-07:00",
         "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
         "Description": "",
         "Enabled": false,
         "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
             "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
         ],
         "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
         "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
         "KeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
         "KeyState": "PendingImport",
         "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
         "MultiRegion": false,
         "Origin": "EXTERNAL"
     }
 }
```

For more information, see Importing key material in AWS KMS keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 6: To create a KMS key in an AWS CloudHSM key store

The following `create-key` example creates a creates a KMS key in the specified AWS CloudHSM key store. The operation creates the KMS key and its metadata in AWS KMS and creates the key material in the AWS CloudHSM cluster associated with the custom key store. The `--custom-key-store-id` and `--origin` parameters are required.

```
aws kms create-key \
```

```
    --origin AWS_CLOUDHSM \
    --custom-key-store-id cks-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CloudHsmClusterId": "cluster-1a23b4cdefg",
        "CreationDate": "2019-12-02T07:48:55-07:00",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "CustomKeyStoreId": "cks-1234567890abcdef0",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
            "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
        ],
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "Origin": "AWS_CLOUDHSM"
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS CloudHSM key stores in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 8: To create a KMS key in an external key store

The following `create-key` example creates a creates a KMS key in the specified external key store. The `--custom-key-store-id`, `--origin`, and `--xks-key-id` parameters are required in this command.

The `--xks-key-id` parameter specifies the ID of an existing symmetric encryption key in your external key manager. This key serves as the external key material for the KMS key.The value of the `--origin` parameter must be `EXTERNAL_KEY_STORE`.The `custom-key-`

`store-id` parameter must identify an external key store that is connected to its external key store proxy.

```
aws kms create-key \
    --origin EXTERNAL_KEY_STORE \
    --custom-key-store-id cks-9876543210fedcba9 \
    --xks-key-id bb8562717f809024
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "CreationDate": "2022-12-02T07:48:55-07:00",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "CustomKeyStoreId": "cks-9876543210fedcba9",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
            "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
        ],
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "Origin": "EXTERNAL_KEY_STORE",
        "XksKeyConfiguration": {
            "Id": "bb8562717f809024"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see External key stores in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new symmetric encryption key asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyDesc the description of the key to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the
newly created key
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while creating the key
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createKeyAsync(String keyDesc) {
       CreateKeyRequest keyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
           .description(keyDesc)
           .keySpec(KeySpec.SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT)
           .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.ENCRYPT_DECRYPT)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createKey(keyRequest)
           .thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyId())
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("An error occurred while creating the
key: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createKey(keyDesc: String?): String? {
    val request =
        CreateKeyRequest {
            description = keyDesc
            customerMasterKeySpec = CustomerMasterKeySpec.SymmetricDefault
            keyUsage = KeyUsageType.fromValue("ENCRYPT_DECRYPT")
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val result = kmsClient.createKey(request)
        println("Created a customer key with id " + result.keyMetadata?.arn)
        return result.keyMetadata?.keyId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
```

```
     * @param string $keySpec
     * @param string $keyUsage
     * @param string $description
     * @return array
     */
    public function createKey(string $keySpec = "", string $keyUsage = "", string
 $description = "Created by the SDK for PHP")
    {
        $parameters = ['Description' => $description];
        if($keySpec && $keyUsage){
            $parameters['KeySpec'] = $keySpec;
            $parameters['KeyUsage'] = $keyUsage;
        }
        try {
            $result = $this->client->createKey($parameters);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            // Check for error specific to createKey operations
            if ($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "LimitExceededException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because a quota was exceeded. For
 more information, see Quotas in the Key Management Service Developer Guide.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
```

```
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_key(self, key_description: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates a key with a user-provided description.

        :param key_description: A description for the key.
        :return: The key ID.
        """
        try:
            key = self.kms_client.create_key(Description=key_description)
["KeyMetadata"]
            self.created_keys.append(key)
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create your key. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create a AWS KMS key.
# As long we are only encrypting small amounts of data (4 KiB or less) directly,
# a KMS key is fine for our purposes.
# For larger amounts of data,
# use the KMS key to encrypt a data encryption key (DEK).

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new

resp = client.create_key({
                           tags: [
                             {
                               tag_key: 'CreatedBy',
                               tag_value: 'ExampleUser'
                             }
                           ]
                         })

puts resp.key_metadata.key_id
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_key(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.create_key().send().await?;

    let id = resp.key_metadata.as_ref().unwrap().key_id();

    println!("Key: {}", id);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `Decrypt` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Decrypt`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To decrypt an encrypted message with a symmetric KMS key (Linux and macOS)

The following `decrypt` command example demonstrates the recommended way to decrypt data with the AWS CLI. This version shows how to decrypt data under a symmetric KMS key.

Provide the ciphertext in a file.In the value of the `--ciphertext-blob` parameter, use the `fileb://` prefix, which tells the CLI to read the data from a binary file. If the file is not in the current directory, type the full path to file. For more information about reading AWS CLI parameter values from a file, see Loading AWS CLI parameters from a file <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-usage-parameters-file.html> in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide* and Best Practices for Local File Parameters<https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/developer/best-practices-for-local-file-parameters/> in the *AWS Command Line Tool Blog*.Specify the KMS key to decrypt the ciphertext.The `--key-id` parameter is not required when decrypting with a symmetric KMS key. AWS KMS can get the key ID of the KMS key that was used to encrypt the data from the metadata in the ciphertext. But it's always a best practice to specify the KMS key you are using. This practice ensures that you use the KMS key that you intend, and prevents you from inadvertently decrypting a ciphertext using a KMS key you do not trust.Request the plaintext output as a text value.The `--query` parameter tells the CLI to get only the value of the `Plaintext` field from the output. The `--output` parameter returns the output as text.Base64-decode the plaintext and save it in a file.The following example pipes (|) the value of the `Plaintext` parameter to the Base64 utility, which decodes it. Then, it redirects (>) the decoded output to the `ExamplePlaintext` file.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account.

```
aws kms decrypt \
    --ciphertext-blob fileb://ExampleEncryptedFile \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --output text \
    --query Plaintext | base64 \
    --decode > ExamplePlaintextFile
```

This command produces no output. The output from the `decrypt` command is base64-decoded and saved in a file.

For more information, see Decrypt in the *AWS Key Management Service API Reference*.

Example 2: To decrypt an encrypted message with a symmetric KMS key (Windows command prompt)

The following example is the same as the previous one except that it uses the `certutil` utility to Base64-decode the plaintext data. This procedure requires two commands, as shown in the following examples.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account.

```
aws kms decrypt ^
    --ciphertext-blob fileb://ExampleEncryptedFile ^
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab ^
    --output text ^
    --query Plaintext > ExamplePlaintextFile.base64
```

Run the `certutil` command.

```
certutil -decode ExamplePlaintextFile.base64 ExamplePlaintextFile
```

Output:

```
Input Length = 18
Output Length = 12
CertUtil: -decode command completed successfully.
```

For more information, see Decrypt in the *AWS Key Management Service API Reference*.

Example 3: To decrypt an encrypted message with an asymmetric KMS key (Linux and macOS)

The following `decrypt` command example shows how to decrypt data encrypted under an RSA asymmetric KMS key.

When using an asymmetric KMS key, the `encryption-algorithm` parameter, which specifies the algorithm used to encrypt the plaintext, is required.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account.

```
aws kms decrypt \
    --ciphertext-blob fileb://ExampleEncryptedFile \
```

```
    --key-id 0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321 \
    --encryption-algorithm RSAES_OAEP_SHA_256 \
    --output text \
    --query Plaintext | base64 \
    --decode > ExamplePlaintextFile
```

This command produces no output. The output from the `decrypt` command is base64-decoded and saved in a file.

For more information, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously decrypts the given encrypted data using the specified key
ID.
    *
    * @param encryptedData The encrypted data to be decrypted.
    * @param keyId The ID of the key to be used for decryption.
    * @return A CompletableFuture that, when completed, will contain the
decrypted data as a String.
    *         If an error occurs during the decryption process, the
CompletableFuture will complete
    *         exceptionally with the error, and the method will return an empty
String.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> decryptDataAsync(SdkBytes encryptedData,
String keyId) {
       DecryptRequest decryptRequest = DecryptRequest.builder()
           .ciphertextBlob(encryptedData)
           .keyId(keyId)
```

```
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DecryptResponse> responseFuture =
 getAsyncClient().decrypt(decryptRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((decryptResponse, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Data decrypted successfully for key ID: " + keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while
 decrypting data: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred
 while decrypting data: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(decryptResponse ->
 decryptResponse.plaintext().asString(StandardCharsets.UTF_8));
    }
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun encryptData(keyIdValue: String): ByteArray? {
    val text = "This is the text to encrypt by using the AWS KMS Service"
    val myBytes: ByteArray = text.toByteArray()

    val encryptRequest =
        EncryptRequest {
            keyId = keyIdValue
```

```
            plaintext = myBytes
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.encrypt(encryptRequest)
        val algorithm: String = response.encryptionAlgorithm.toString()
        println("The encryption algorithm is $algorithm")

        // Return the encrypted data.
        return response.ciphertextBlob
    }
}

suspend fun decryptData(
    encryptedDataVal: ByteArray?,
    keyIdVal: String?,
) {
    val decryptRequest =
        DecryptRequest {
            ciphertextBlob = encryptedDataVal
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }
    KmsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val decryptResponse = kmsClient.decrypt(decryptRequest)
        val myVal = decryptResponse.plaintext

        // Print the decrypted data.
        print(myVal)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $ciphertext
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function decrypt(string $keyId, string $ciphertext, string $algorithm
 = "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT")
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->decrypt([
                'CiphertextBlob' => $ciphertext,
                'EncryptionAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem decrypting the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def decrypt(self, key_id: str, cipher_text: bytes) -> str:
        """
        Decrypts text previously encrypted with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to decrypt the data.
        :param cipher_text: The encrypted text to decrypt.
        :return: The decrypted text.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.decrypt(KeyId=key_id,
CiphertextBlob=cipher_text)[
                "Plaintext"
            ].decode()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't decrypt your ciphertext. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Decrypted blob

blob =
 '01020200785d68faeec386af1057904926253051eb2919d3c16078badf65b808b26dd057c101747cadf3593
blob_packed = [blob].pack('H*')

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

resp = client.decrypt({
                        ciphertext_blob: blob_packed
                      })

puts 'Raw text: '
puts resp.plaintext
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn decrypt_key(client: &Client, key: &str, filename: &str) -> Result<(),
 Error> {
    // Open input text file and get contents as a string
    // input is a base-64 encoded string, so decode it:
    let data = fs::read_to_string(filename)
        .map(|input| {
            base64::decode(input).expect("Input file does not contain valid base
 64 characters.")
        })
        .map(Blob::new);

    let resp = client
        .decrypt()
        .key_id(key)
        .ciphertext_blob(data.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await?;

    let inner = resp.plaintext.unwrap();
    let bytes = inner.as_ref();

    let s = String::from_utf8(bytes.to_vec()).expect("Could not convert to
 UTF-8");

    println!();
    println!("Decoded string:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteAlias` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAlias`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an AWS KMS alias

The following `delete-alias` example deletes the alias `alias/example-alias`. The alias name must begin with alias/.

```
aws kms delete-alias \
    --alias-name alias/example-alias
```

This command produces no output. To find the alias, use the `list-aliases` command.

For more information, see Deleting an alias in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a specific KMS alias asynchronously.
     *
     * @param aliasName the name of the alias to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of deleting the specified alias
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSpecificAliasAsync(String aliasName) {
        DeleteAliasRequest deleteAliasRequest = DeleteAliasRequest.builder()
            .aliasName(aliasName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteAlias(deleteAliasRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Alias {} has been deleted successfully", aliasName);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete alias: " +
 aliasName, throwable);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $aliasName
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteAlias(string $aliasName)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->deleteAlias([
                'AliasName' => $aliasName,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the alias: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def delete_alias(self, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an alias.

        :param alias: The alias to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.delete_alias(AliasName=alias)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete alias %s. Here's why: %s",
                alias,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieve information about an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// You can supply either the key Id or the key Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
/// to the DescribeKeyRequest KeyId property.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var keyId = "7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";
        var request = new DescribeKeyRequest
```

```
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            };

            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            var response = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(request);
            var metadata = response.KeyMetadata;

            Console.WriteLine($"{metadata.KeyId} created on:
 {metadata.CreationDate}");
            Console.WriteLine($"State: {metadata.KeyState}");
            Console.WriteLine($"{metadata.Description}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To find detailed information about a KMS key

The following `describe-key` example gets detailed information about the AWS managed key for Amazon S3 in the example account and Region. You can use this command to find details about AWS managed keys and customer managed keys.

To specify the KMS key, use the `key-id` parameter. This example uses an alias name value, but you can use a key ID, key ARN, alias name, or alias ARN in this command.

```
aws kms describe-key \
    --key-id alias/aws/s3
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "AWSAccountId": "846764612917",
        "KeyId": "b8a9477d-836c-491f-857e-07937918959b",
```

```
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:846764612917:key/
b8a9477d-836c-491f-857e-07937918959b",
        "CurrentKeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6",
        "CreationDate": 2017-06-30T21:44:32.140000+00:00,
        "Enabled": true,
        "Description": "Default KMS key that protects my S3 objects when no other
 key is defined",
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS",
        "KeyManager": "AWS",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
            "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Viewing keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To get details about an RSA asymmetric KMS key

The following `describe-key` example gets detailed information about an asymmetric RSA KMS key used for signing and verification.

```
aws kms describe-key \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "CreationDate": "2019-12-02T19:47:14.861000+00:00",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "RSA_2048",
        "Enabled": false,
        "Description": "",
        "KeyState": "Disabled",
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS",
```

```
        "MultiRegion": false,
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeySpec": "RSA_2048",
        "KeyUsage": "SIGN_VERIFY",
        "SigningAlgorithms": [
            "RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_256",
            "RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_384",
            "RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_512",
            "RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            "RSASSA_PSS_SHA_384",
            "RSASSA_PSS_SHA_512"
        ]
    }
}
```

Example 3: To get details about a multi-Region replica key

The following `describe-key` example gets metadata for a multi-Region replica key. This multi-Region key is a symmetric encryption key. The output of a `describe-key` command for any multi-Region key returns information about the primary key and all of its replicas.

```
aws kms describe-key \
    --key-id arn:aws:kms:ap-northeast-1:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "MultiRegion": true,
        "AWSAccountId": "111122223333",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:ap-northeast-1:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab",
        "CreationDate": "2021-06-28T21:09:16.114000+00:00",
        "CurrentKeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6",
        "Description": "",
        "Enabled": true,
        "KeyId": "mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "KeyUsage": "ENCRYPT_DECRYPT",
```

```
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT",
        "EncryptionAlgorithms": [
            "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT"
        ],
        "MultiRegionConfiguration": {
            "MultiRegionKeyType": "PRIMARY",
            "PrimaryKey": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab",
                "Region": "us-west-2"
            },
            "ReplicaKeys": [
                {
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:eu-west-1:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab",
                    "Region": "eu-west-1"
                },
                {
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:ap-northeast-1:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab",
                    "Region": "ap-northeast-1"
                },
                {
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:sa-east-1:111122223333:key/
mrk-1234abcd12ab34cd56ef1234567890ab",
                    "Region": "sa-east-1"
                }
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

Example 4: To get details about an HMAC KMS key

The following `describe-key` example gets detailed information about an HMAC KMS key.

```
aws kms describe-key \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "KeyMetadata": {
        "AWSAccountId": "123456789012",
        "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:123456789012:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
        "CreationDate": "2022-04-03T22:23:10.194000+00:00",
        "Enabled": true,
        "Description": "Test key",
        "KeyUsage": "GENERATE_VERIFY_MAC",
        "KeyState": "Enabled",
        "Origin": "AWS_KMS",
        "KeyManager": "CUSTOMER",
        "CustomerMasterKeySpec": "HMAC_256",
        "MacAlgorithms": [
            "HMAC_SHA_256"
        ],
        "MultiRegion": false
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously checks if a specified key is enabled.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates
 whether the key is enabled or not
     *
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while checking the key
 state
     */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> isKeyEnabledAsync(String keyId) {
        DescribeKeyRequest keyRequest = DescribeKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyResponse> responseFuture =
 getAsyncClient().describeKey(keyRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                KeyState keyState = resp.keyMetadata().keyState();
                if (keyState == KeyState.ENABLED) {
                    logger.info("The key is enabled.");
                } else {
                    logger.info("The key is not enabled. Key state: {}",
 keyState);
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyState() == KeyState.ENABLED);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeSpecifcKey(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DescribeKeyRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
```

```
        val response = kmsClient.describeKey(request)
        println("The key description is ${response.keyMetadata?.description}")
        println("The key ARN is ${response.keyMetadata?.arn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return array
     */
    public function describeKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->client->describeKey([
                "KeyId" => $keyId,
            ]);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def describe_key(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to describe.
        :return: Information about the key.
        """

        try:
            key = self.kms_client.describe_key(KeyId=key_id)["KeyMetadata"]
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't get key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DisableKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisableKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Disable an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key and then retrieve
/// the key's status to show that it has been disabled.
/// </summary>
public class DisableKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to disable. You can use the
            // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
            var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

            var request = new DisableKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            };

            var response = await client.DisableKeyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                // Retrieve information about the key to show that it has now
                // been disabled.
                var describeResponse = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(new
DescribeKeyRequest
                {
                    KeyId = keyId,
                });
                Console.WriteLine($"{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId} - state:
{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyState}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To temporarily disable a KMS key

The following `disable-key` command disables a customer managed KMS key. To re-enable the KMS key, use the `enable-key` command.

```
aws kms disable-key \
```

```
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Enabling and Disabling Keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously disables the specified AWS Key Management Service (KMS)
key.
    *
    * @param keyId the ID or Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS key to be
disabled
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, indicates that the key
has been disabled successfully
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> disableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
       DisableKeyRequest keyRequest = DisableKeyRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().disableKey(keyRequest)
           .thenRun(() -> {
               logger.info("Key {} has been disabled successfully",keyId);
           })
           .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable key: " + keyId,
throwable);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disableKey(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DisableKeyRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        kmsClient.disableKey(request)
        println("$keyIdVal was successfully disabled")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function disableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->disableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem disabling the key: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def disable_key(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        try:
            self.kms_client.disable_key(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't disable key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `EnableKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableKey`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Enable an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// </summary>
public class EnableKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to enable. You can use the
        // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

        var request = new EnableKeyRequest
        {
            KeyId = keyId,
        };

        var response = await client.EnableKeyAsync(request);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            // Retrieve information about the key to show that it has now
            // been enabled.
            var describeResponse = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(new
DescribeKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            });
            Console.WriteLine($"{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId} - state:
{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyState}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable a KMS key

The following `enable-key` example enables a customer managed key. You can use a command like this one to enable a KMS key that you temporarily disabled by using the `disable-key` command. You can also use it to enable a KMS key that is disabled because it was scheduled for deletion and the deletion was canceled.

To specify the KMS key, use the `key-id` parameter. This example uses an key ID value, but you can use a key ID or key ARN value in this command.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid one.

```
aws kms enable-key \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

This command produces no output. To verify that the KMS key is enabled, use the `describe-key` command. See the values of the `KeyState` and `Enabled` fields in the `describe-key` output.

For more information, see Enabling and Disabling Keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously enables the specified key.
     *
```

```
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to enable
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
enabled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> enableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        EnableKeyRequest enableKeyRequest = EnableKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EnableKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().enableKey(enableKeyRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Key with ID [{}] has been enabled.", keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while enabling
key: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred
while enabling key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun enableKey(keyIdVal: String?) {
```

```
    val request =
        EnableKeyRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        kmsClient.enableKey(request)
        println("$keyIdVal was successfully enabled.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function enableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->enableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def enable_key(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Enables a key. Gets the key state after each state change.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.enable_key(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't enable key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `EnableKeyRotation` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `EnableKeyRotation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable automatic rotation of a KMS key

The following `enable-key-rotation` example enables automatic rotation of a customer managed KMS key with a rotation period of 180 days. The KMS key will be rotated one year (approximate 365 days) from the date that this command completes and every year thereafter.

The `--key-id` parameter identifies the KMS key. This example uses a key ARN value, but you can use either the key ID or the ARN of the KMS key.The `--rotation-period-in-days` parameter specifies the number of days between each rotation date. Specify a value between 90 and 2560 days. If no value is specified, the default value is 365 days.

```
aws kms enable-key-rotation \
    --key-id arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --rotation-period-in-days 180
```

This command produces no output. To verify that the KMS key is enabled, use the `get-key-rotation-status` command.

For more information, see Rotating keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see EnableKeyRotation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def enable_key_rotation(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Enables rotation for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.enable_key_rotation(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't enable rotation for key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableKeyRotation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `Encrypt` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Encrypt`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To encrypt the contents of a file on Linux or MacOS

The following `encrypt` command demonstrates the recommended way to encrypt data with the AWS CLI.

```
aws kms encrypt \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --plaintext fileb://ExamplePlaintextFile \
    --output text \
    --query CiphertextBlob | base64 \
    --decode > ExampleEncryptedFile
```

The command does several things:

Uses the `--plaintext` parameter to indicate the data to encrypt. This parameter value must be base64-encoded.The value of the `plaintext` parameter must be base64-encoded, or you must use the `fileb://` prefix, which tells the AWS CLI to read binary data from the file.If the file is not in the current directory, type the full path to file. For example: `fileb:///var/tmp/ExamplePlaintextFile` or `fileb://C:\Temp\ExamplePlaintextFile`. For more information about reading AWS CLI parameter

values from a file, see Loading Parameters from a File in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide* and Best Practices for Local File Parameters on the AWS Command Line Tool Blog.Uses the `--output` and `--query` parameters to control the command's output.These parameters extract the encrypted data, called the *ciphertext*, from the command's output.For more information about controlling output, see Controlling Command Output in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.Uses the `base64` utility to decode the extracted output into binary data.The ciphertext that is returned by a successful `encrypt` command is base64-encoded text. You must decode this text before you can use the AWS CLI to decrypt it.Saves the binary ciphertext to a file.The final part of the command (> `ExampleEncryptedFile`) saves the binary ciphertext to a file to make decryption easier. For an example command that uses the AWS CLI to decrypt data, see the decrypt examples.

Example 2: Using the AWS CLI to encrypt data on Windows

This example is the same as the previous one, except that it uses the `certutil` tool instead of `base64`. This procedure requires two commands, as shown in the following example.

```
aws kms encrypt \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --plaintext fileb://ExamplePlaintextFile \
    --output text \
    --query CiphertextBlob > C:\Temp\ExampleEncryptedFile.base64

certutil -decode C:\Temp\ExampleEncryptedFile.base64 C:\Temp\ExampleEncryptedFile
```

Example 3: Encrypting with an asymmetric KMS key

The following `encrypt` command shows how to encrypt plaintext with an asymmetric KMS key. The `--encryption-algorithm` parameter is required. As in all `encrypt` CLI commands, the `plaintext` parameter must be base64-encoded, or you must use the `fileb://` prefix, which tells the AWS CLI to read binary data from the file.

```
aws kms encrypt \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --encryption-algorithm RSAES_OAEP_SHA_256 \
    --plaintext fileb://ExamplePlaintextFile \
    --output text \
    --query CiphertextBlob | base64 \
    --decode > ExampleEncryptedFile
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Encrypts the given text asynchronously using the specified KMS client and
key ID.
    *
    * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to use for encryption
    * @param text the text to encrypt
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the encrypted data as an
SdkBytes object
    */
   public CompletableFuture<SdkBytes> encryptDataAsync(String keyId, String
text) {
       SdkBytes myBytes = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(text);
       EncryptRequest encryptRequest = EncryptRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .plaintext(myBytes)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<EncryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().encrypt(encryptRequest).toCompletableFuture();
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               String algorithm = response.encryptionAlgorithm().toString();
               logger.info("The string was encrypted with algorithm {}.",
algorithm);
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException(ex);
           }
       }).thenApply(EncryptResponse::ciphertextBlob);
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun encryptData(keyIdValue: String): ByteArray? {
    val text = "This is the text to encrypt by using the AWS KMS Service"
    val myBytes: ByteArray = text.toByteArray()

    val encryptRequest =
        EncryptRequest {
            keyId = keyIdValue
            plaintext = myBytes
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.encrypt(encryptRequest)
        val algorithm: String = response.encryptionAlgorithm.toString()
        println("The encryption algorithm is $algorithm")

        // Return the encrypted data.
        return response.ciphertextBlob
    }
}

suspend fun decryptData(
    encryptedDataVal: ByteArray?,
    keyIdVal: String?,
) {
    val decryptRequest =
        DecryptRequest {
            ciphertextBlob = encryptedDataVal
```

```
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }
    KmsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val decryptResponse = kmsClient.decrypt(decryptRequest)
        val myVal = decryptResponse.plaintext

        // Print the decrypted data.
        print(myVal)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $text
     * @return Result
     */
    public function encrypt(string $keyId, string $text)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->encrypt([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Plaintext' => $text,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "DisabledException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified KMS key is
 not enabled.\n";
            }
```

```
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def encrypt(self, key_id: str, text: str) -> bytes:
        """
        Encrypts text by using the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for encryption.
        :param text: The text to encrypt.
        :return: The encrypted version of the text.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.encrypt(KeyId=key_id,
 Plaintext=text.encode())
            print(
                f"The string was encrypted with algorithm
 {response['EncryptionAlgorithm']}"
            )
            return response["CiphertextBlob"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DisabledException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not encrypt because the key %s is disabled.", key_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# ARN of the AWS KMS key.
#
# Replace the fictitious key ARN with a valid key ID

keyId = 'arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab'
```

```
text = '1234567890'

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

resp = client.encrypt({
                        key_id: keyId,
                        plaintext: text
                      })

# Display a readable version of the resulting encrypted blob.
puts 'Blob:'
puts resp.ciphertext_blob.unpack('H*')
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn encrypt_string(
    verbose: bool,
    client: &Client,
    text: &str,
    key: &str,
    out_file: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let blob = Blob::new(text.as_bytes());

    let resp = client.encrypt().key_id(key).plaintext(blob).send().await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();
```

```
    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    let mut ofile = File::create(out_file).expect("unable to create file");
    ofile.write_all(s.as_bytes()).expect("unable to write");

    if verbose {
        println!("Wrote the following to {:?}", out_file);
        println!("{}", s);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GenerateDataKey` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GenerateDataKey`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To generate a 256-bit symmetric data key

The following `generate-data-key` example requests a 256-bit symmetric data key for use outside of AWS. The command returns a plaintext data key for immediate use and deletion, and a copy of that data key encrypted under the specified KMS key. You can safely store the encrypted data key with the encrypted data.

To request a 256-bit data key, use the `key-spec` parameter with a value of `AES_256`. To request a 128-bit data key, use the `key-spec` parameter with a value of `AES_128`. For all other data key lengths, use the `number-of-bytes` parameter.

The KMS key you specify must be a symmetric encryption KMS key, that is, a KMS key with a key spec value of SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT.

```
aws kms generate-data-key \
    --key-id alias/ExampleAlias \
    --key-spec AES_256
```

Output:

```
{
    "Plaintext": "VdzKNHGzUAzJeRBVY+uUmofUGGiDzyB3+i9fVkh3piw=",
    "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
    "KeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6",
    "CiphertextBlob":
 "AQEDAHjRYf5WytIc0C857tFSnBaPn2F8DgfmThbJlGfR8P3WlwAAAH4wfAYJKoZIhvcNAQcGoG8wbQIBADBoBgk
+YdhV8MrkBQPeac0ReRVNDt9qleAt+SHgIRF8P0H+7U="
}
```

The `Plaintext` (plaintext data key) and the `CiphertextBlob` (encrypted data key) are returned in base64-encoded format.

For more information, see Data keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To generate a 512-bit symmetric data key

The following `generate-data-key` example requests a 512-bit symmetric data key for encryption and decryption. The command returns a plaintext data key for immediate use and deletion, and a copy of that data key encrypted under the specified KMS key. You can safely store the encrypted data key with the encrypted data.

To request a key length other than 128 or 256 bits, use the `number-of-bytes` parameter. To request a 512-bit data key, the following example uses the `number-of-bytes` parameter with a value of 64 (bytes).

The KMS key you specify must be a symmetric encryption KMS key, that is, a KMS key with a key spec value of SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT.

NOTE: The values in the output of this example are truncated for display.

```
aws kms generate-data-key \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --number-of-bytes 64
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "CiphertextBlob": "AQIBAHi6LtupRpdKl2aJTzkK6FbhOtQkMlQJJH3PdtHvS/y+hAEnX/
QQNmMwDfg2korNMEc8AAACaDCCAmQGCSqGSIb3DQEHBqCCAlUwggJRAgEAMIICSgYJKoZ...",
    "Plaintext": "ty8Lr0Bk6OF07M2BWt6qbFdNB
+G00ZLtf5MSEb4al3R2UKWGOp06njAwy2n72VRm2m7z/
Pm9Wpbvttz6a4lSo9hgPvKhZ5y6RTm4OovEXiVfBveyX3DQxDzRSwbKDPk/...",
    "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
    "KeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6"
}
```

The `Plaintext` (plaintext data key) and `CiphertextBlob` (encrypted data key) are returned in base64-encoded format.

For more information, see Data keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GenerateDataKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
```

```
        return cls(kms_client)


    def generate_data_key(self, key_id):
        """
        Generates a symmetric data key that can be used for client-side
 encryption.
        """
        answer = input(
            f"Do you want to generate a symmetric data key from key {key_id} (y/
n)? "
        )
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            try:
                data_key = self.kms_client.generate_data_key(
                    KeyId=key_id, KeySpec="AES_256"
                )
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't generate a data key for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                pprint(data_key)
```

- For API details, see GenerateDataKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_key(client: &Client, key: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
```

```
        .generate_data_key()
        .key_id(key)
        .key_spec(DataKeySpec::Aes256)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    println!();
    println!("Data key:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateDataKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To generate a 256-bit symmetric data key without a plaintext key

The following `generate-data-key-without-plaintext` example requests an encrypted copy of a 256-bit symmetric data key for use outside of AWS. You can call AWS KMS to decrypt the data key when you are ready to use it.

To request a 256-bit data key, use the `key-spec` parameter with a value of `AES_256`. To request a 128-bit data key, use the `key-spec` parameter with a value of `AES_128`. For all other data key lengths, use the `number-of-bytes` parameter.

The KMS key you specify must be a symmetric encryption KMS key, that is, a KMS key with a key spec value of SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT.

```
aws kms generate-data-key-without-plaintext \
    --key-id "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab" \
    --key-spec AES_256
```

Output:

```
{
    "CiphertextBlob":
 "AQEDAHjRYf5WytIc0C857tFSnBaPn2F8DgfmThbJlGfR8P3WlwAAAH4wfAYJKoZIhvcNAQcGoG8wbQIBADBoBgk
    "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
    "KeyMaterialId":
 "0b7fd7ddbac6eef27907413567cad8c810e2883dc8a7534067a82ee1142fc1e6"
}
```

The `CiphertextBlob` (encrypted data key) is returned in base64-encoded format.

For more information, see Data keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_key(client: &Client, key: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .generate_data_key_without_plaintext()
        .key_id(key)
        .key_spec(DataKeySpec::Aes256)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
```

```
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    println!();
    println!("Data key:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GenerateRandom` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GenerateRandom`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To generate a 256-bit random byte string (Linux or macOs)

The following `generate-random` example generates a 256-bit (32-byte), base64-encoded random byte string. The example decodes the byte string and saves it in the random file.

When you run this command, you must use the `number-of-bytes` parameter to specify the length of the random value in bytes.

You don't specify a KMS key when you run this command. The random byte string is unrelated to any KMS key.

By default, AWS KMS generates the random number. However, if you specify a custom key store, the random byte string is generated in the AWS CloudHSM cluster associated with the custom key store.

This example uses the following parameters and values:

It uses the required `--number-of-bytes` parameter with a value of 32 to request a 32-byte (256-bit) string.It uses the `--output` parameter with a value of `text` to direct the AWS

CLI to return the output as text, instead of JSON.It uses the `--query parameter` to extract the value of the `Plaintext` property from the response.It pipes (|) the output of the command to the `base64` utility, which decodes the extracted output.It uses the redirection operator (>) to save decoded byte string to the `ExampleRandom` file.It uses the redirection operator (>) to save the binary ciphertext to a file.

```
aws kms generate-random \
    --number-of-bytes 32 \
    --output text \
    --query Plaintext | base64 --decode > ExampleRandom
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see GenerateRandom in the *AWS Key Management Service API Reference*.

Example 2: To generate a 256-bit random number (Windows Command Prompt)

The following example uses the `generate-random` command to generate a 256-bit (32-byte), base64-encoded random byte string. The example decodes the byte string and saves it in the random file. This example is the same as the previous example, except that it uses the `certutil` utility in Windows to base64-decode the random byte string before saving it in a file.

First, generate a base64-encoded random byte string and saves it in a temporary file, `ExampleRandom.base64`.

```
aws kms generate-random \
    --number-of-bytes 32 \
    --output text \
    --query Plaintext > ExampleRandom.base64
```

Because the output of the `generate-random` command is saved in a file, this example produces no output.

Now use the `certutil -decode` command to decode the base64-encoded byte string in the `ExampleRandom.base64` file. Then, it saves the decoded byte string in the `ExampleRandom` file.

```
certutil -decode ExampleRandom.base64 ExampleRandom
```

Output:

```
Input Length = 18
Output Length = 12
CertUtil: -decode command completed successfully.
```

For more information, see GenerateRandom in the *AWS Key Management Service API Reference*.

- For API details, see GenerateRandom in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_string(client: &Client, length: i32) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .generate_random()
        .number_of_bytes(length)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.plaintext.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    println!();
    println!("Data key:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateRandom in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetKeyPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetKeyPolicy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To copy a key policy from one KMS key to another KMS key

The following `get-key-policy` example gets the key policy from one KMS key and saves it in a text file. Then, it replaces the policy of a different KMS key using the text file as the policy input.

Because the `--policy` parameter of `put-key-policy` requires a string, you must use the `--output text` option to return the output as a text string instead of JSON.

```
aws kms get-key-policy \
    --policy-name default \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --query Policy \
    --output text > policy.txt

aws kms put-key-policy \
    --policy-name default \
    --key-id 0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321 \
    --policy file://policy.txt
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see PutKeyPolicy in the *AWS KMS API Reference*.

- For API details, see GetKeyPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def get_policy(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Gets the policy of a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The key policy as a dict.
        """
        if key_id != "":
            try:
                response = self.kms_client.get_key_policy(
                    KeyId=key_id,
                )
                policy = json.loads(response["Policy"])
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get policy for key %s. Here's why: %s",
```

```
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            else:
                pprint(policy)
                return policy
        else:
            print("Skipping get policy demo.")
```

- For API details, see GetKeyPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListAliases` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAliases`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
    using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// List the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) aliases that have been
defined for
```

```
    /// the keys in the same AWS Region as the default user. If you want to list
    /// the aliases in a different Region, pass the Region to the client
    /// constructor.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListAliases
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
            var request = new ListAliasesRequest();
            var response = new ListAliasesResponse();

            do
            {
                response = await client.ListAliasesAsync(request);

                response.Aliases.ForEach(alias =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Created: {alias.CreationDate} Last
Update: {alias.LastUpdatedDate} Name: {alias.AliasName}");
                });

                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all aliases in an AWS account and Region

The following example uses the `list-aliases` command to list all aliases in the default Region of the AWS account. The output includes aliases associated with AWS managed KMS keys and customer managed KMS keys.

```
aws kms list-aliases
```

Output:

```
{
    "Aliases": [
        {
            "AliasArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:alias/testKey",
            "AliasName": "alias/testKey",
            "TargetKeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab"
        },
        {
            "AliasArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:alias/FinanceDept",
            "AliasName": "alias/FinanceDept",
            "TargetKeyId": "0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321"
        },
        {
            "AliasArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:alias/aws/dynamodb",
            "AliasName": "alias/aws/dynamodb",
            "TargetKeyId": "1a2b3c4d-5e6f-1a2b-3c4d-5e6f1a2b3c4d"
        },
        {
            "AliasArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:alias/aws/ebs",
            "AliasName": "alias/aws/ebs",
            "TargetKeyId": "0987ab65-43cd-21ef-09ab-87654321cdef"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all aliases for a particular KMS key

The following example uses the `list-aliases` command and its `key-id` parameter to list all aliases that are associated with a particular KMS key.

Each alias is associated with only one KMS key, but a KMS key can have multiple aliases. This command is very useful because the AWS KMS console lists only one alias for each KMS key. To find all aliases for a KMS key, you must use the `list-aliases` command.

This example uses the key ID of the KMS key for the `--key-id` parameter, but you can use a key ID, key ARN, alias name, or alias ARN in this command.

```
aws kms list-aliases --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

Output:

```
{
    "Aliases": [
        {
            "TargetKeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
            "AliasArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:alias/oregon-test-
key",
            "AliasName": "alias/oregon-test-key"
        },
        {
            "TargetKeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
            "AliasArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:alias/project121-
test",
            "AliasName": "alias/project121-test"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with Aliases in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the aliases in the current AWS account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the list of
 aliases has been processed
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> listAllAliasesAsync() {
        ListAliasesRequest aliasesRequest = ListAliasesRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        ListAliasesPublisher paginator =
 getAsyncClient().listAliasesPaginator(aliasesRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.aliases().forEach(alias ->
                    logger.info("The alias name is: " + alias.aliasName())
                );
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof KmsException) {
                    KmsException e = (KmsException) ex.getCause();
                    throw new RuntimeException("A KMS exception occurred: " +
 e.getMessage());
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
 ex.getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllAliases() {
    val request =
        ListAliasesRequest {
```

```
            limit = 15
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.listAliases(request)
        response.aliases?.forEach { alias ->
            println("The alias name is ${alias.aliasName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $limit
     * @return ResultPaginator
     */
    public function listAliases(string $keyId = "", int $limit = 0)
    {
        $args = [];
        if($keyId){
            $args['KeyId'] = $keyId;
        }
        if($limit){
            $args['Limit'] = $limit;
        }
        try{
            return $this->client->getPaginator("ListAliases", $args);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
```

```
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidMarkerException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the marker that specifies
 where pagination should next begin is not valid.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_aliases(self, page_size: int) -> None:
        """
        Lists aliases for the current account.
```

```
        :param page_size: The number of aliases to list per page.
        """
        try:
            alias_paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_aliases")
            for alias_page in alias_paginator.paginate(
                PaginationConfig={"PageSize": page_size}
            ):
                print(f"Here are {page_size} aliases:")
                pprint(alias_page["Aliases"])
                if alias_page["Truncated"]:
                    answer = input(
                        f"Do you want to see the next {page_size} aliases (y/n)?
"
                    )
                    if answer.lower() != "y":
                        break
                else:
                    print("That's all your aliases!")
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your aliases. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListGrants` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListGrants`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// List the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) grants that are associated
with
/// a specific key.
/// </summary>
public class ListGrants
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to disable. You can use the
        // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
        var request = new ListGrantsRequest
        {
            KeyId = keyId,
        };

        var response = new ListGrantsResponse();

        do
        {
            response = await client.ListGrantsAsync(request);

            response.Grants.ForEach(grant =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{grant.GrantId}");
```

```
                });

                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view the grants on an AWS KMS key

The following `list-grants` example displays all of the grants on the specified AWS managed KMS key for Amazon DynamoDB in your account. This grant allows DynamoDB to use the KMS key on your behalf to encrypt a DynamoDB table before writing it to disk. You can use a command like this one to view the grants on the AWS managed KMS keys and customer managed KMS keys in the AWS account and Region.

This command uses the `key-id` parameter with a key ID to identify the KMS key. You can use a key ID or key ARN to identify the KMS key. To get the key ID or key ARN of an AWS managed KMS key, use the `list-keys` or `list-aliases` command.

```
aws kms list-grants \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

The output shows that the grant gives Amazon DynamoDB permission to use the KMS key for cryptographic operations, and gives it permission to view details about the KMS key (`DescribeKey`) and to retire grants (`RetireGrant`). The `EncryptionContextSubset` constraint limits these permission to requests that include the specified encryption context pairs. As a result, the permissions in the grant are effective only on specified account and DynamoDB table.

```
{
    "Grants": [
```

```
        {
            "Constraints": {
                "EncryptionContextSubset": {
                    "aws:dynamodb:subscriberId": "123456789012",
                    "aws:dynamodb:tableName": "Services"
                }
            },
            "IssuingAccount": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root",
            "Name": "8276b9a6-6cf0-46f1-b2f0-7993a7f8c89a",
            "Operations": [
                "Decrypt",
                "Encrypt",
                "GenerateDataKey",
                "ReEncryptFrom",
                "ReEncryptTo",
                "RetireGrant",
                "DescribeKey"
            ],
            "GrantId":
 "1667b97d27cf748cf05b487217dd4179526c949d14fb3903858e25193253fe59",
            "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:123456789012:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
            "RetiringPrincipal": "dynamodb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "GranteePrincipal": "dynamodb.us-west-2.amazonaws.com",
            "CreationDate": "2021-05-13T18:32:45.144000+00:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Grants in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously displays the grant IDs for the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to list the grants
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will be null
if the operation succeeded, or will throw a {@link RuntimeException} if the
operation failed
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was an error listing the grants, either
due to an {@link KmsException} or an unexpected error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> displayGrantIdsAsync(String keyId) {
        ListGrantsRequest grantsRequest = ListGrantsRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        ListGrantsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listGrantsPaginator(grantsRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.grants().forEach(grant -> {
                    logger.info("The grant Id is: " + grant.grantId());
                });
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list grants: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun displayGrantIds(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListGrantsRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
            limit = 15
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.listGrants(request)
        response.grants?.forEach { grant ->
            println("The grant Id is ${grant.grantId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
```

```
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return Result
     */
    public function listGrants(string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->listGrants([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "    The request was rejected because the specified entity
 or resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_grants(self, key_id):
        """
        Lists grants for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The grants for the key.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_grants")
            grants = []
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(KeyId=key_id)
            for page in page_iterator:
                grants.extend(page["Grants"])

            print(f"Grants for key {key_id}:")
            pprint(grants)
            return grants
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list grants for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListKeyPolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListKeyPolicies`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the names of key policies for a KMS key

The following `list-key-policies` example gets the names of the key policies for a customer managed key in the example account and Region. You can use this command to find the names of key policies for AWS managed keys and customer managed keys.

Because the only valid key policy name is `default`, this command is not useful.

To specify the KMS key, use the `key-id` parameter. This example uses a key ID value, but you can use a key ID or key ARN in this command.

```
aws kms list-key-policies \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyNames": [
    "default"
    ]
}
```

For more information about AWS KMS key policies, see Using Key Policies in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListKeyPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the key policy for the specified key ID and
policy name.
     *
     * @param keyId       the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to retrieve the
policy
     * @param policyName the name of the key policy to retrieve
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the key
policy as a {@link String}
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> getKeyPolicyAsync(String keyId, String
policyName) {
        GetKeyPolicyRequest policyRequest = GetKeyPolicyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .policyName(policyName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getKeyPolicy(policyRequest)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                String policy = response.policy();
                logger.info("The response is: " + policy);
                return policy;
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get key policy", ex);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyPolicies in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_policies(self, key_id):
        """
        Lists the names of the policies for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        """
        try:
            policy_names = self.kms_client.list_key_policies(KeyId=key_id)[
                "PolicyNames"
            ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your policies. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            print(f"The policies for key {key_id} are:")
            pprint(policy_names)
```

- For API details, see ListKeyPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListKeys` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListKeys`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
   using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// List the AWS Key Managements Service (AWS KMS) keys for the AWS Region
   /// of the default user. To list keys in another AWS Region, supply the
Region
   /// as a parameter to the client constructor.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListKeys
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
           var request = new ListKeysRequest();
           var response = new ListKeysResponse();

           do
           {
               response = await client.ListKeysAsync(request);
```

```
                response.Keys.ForEach(key =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"ID: {key.KeyId}, {key.KeyArn}");
                });

                // Set the Marker property when response.Truncated is true
                // in order to get the next keys.
                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the KMS keys in an account and Region

The following `list-keys` example gets the KMS keys in an account and Region. This command returns both AWS managed keys and customer managed keys.

```
aws kms list-keys
```

Output:

```
{
    "Keys": [
        {
            "KeyArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
            "KeyId": "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab"
        },
        {
            "KeyArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321",
            "KeyId": "0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321"
```

```
        },
        {
            "KeyArn": "arn:aws:kms:us-
east-2:111122223333:key/1a2b3c4d-5e6f-1a2b-3c4d-5e6f1a2b3c4d",
            "KeyId": "1a2b3c4d-5e6f-1a2b-3c4d-5e6f1a2b3c4d"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing Keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.ListKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.paginators.ListKeysPublisher;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloKMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listAllKeys();
    }
```

```
    public static void listAllKeys() {
        KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
            .build();
        ListKeysRequest listKeysRequest = ListKeysRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        /*
         * The `subscribe` method is required when using paginator methods in the
 AWS SDK
         * because paginator methods return an instance of a `ListKeysPublisher`,
 which is
         * based on a reactive stream. This allows asynchronous retrieval of
 paginated
         * results as they become available. By subscribing to the stream, we can
 process
         * each page of results as they are emitted.
         */
        ListKeysPublisher keysPublisher =
 kmsAsyncClient.listKeysPaginator(listKeysRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = keysPublisher
            .subscribe(r -> r.keys().forEach(key ->
                System.out.println("The key ARN is: " + key.keyArn() + ". The key
 Id is: " + key.keyId())))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " +
 exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Successfully listed all keys.");
                }
            });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list keys: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllKeys() {
    val request =
        ListKeysRequest {
            limit = 15
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.listKeys(request)
        response.keys?.forEach { key ->
            println("The key ARN is ${key.keyArn}")
            println("The key Id is ${key.keyId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
```

```
     * @return array
     */
    public function listKeys()
    {
        try {
            $contents = [];
            $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListKeys");
            foreach($paginator as $result){
                foreach ($result['Content'] as $object) {
                    $contents[] = $object;
                }
            }
            return $contents;
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem listing the keys: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
```

```
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_keys(self):
        """
        Lists the keys for the current account by using a paginator.
        """
        try:
            page_size = 10
            print("\nLet's list your keys.")
            key_paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_keys")
            for key_page in key_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"PageSize":
10}):
                print(f"Here are {len(key_page['Keys'])} keys:")
                pprint(key_page["Keys"])
                if key_page["Truncated"]:
                    answer = input(
                        f"Do you want to see the next {page_size} keys (y/n)? "
                    )
                    if answer.lower() != "y":
                        break
                else:
                    print("That's all your keys!")
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your keys. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_keys(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_keys().send().await?;

    let keys = resp.keys.unwrap_or_default();

    let len = keys.len();

    for key in keys {
        println!("Key ARN: {}", key.key_arn.as_deref().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    println!();
    println!("Found {} keys", len);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `PutKeyPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutKeyPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change the key policy for a KMS key

The following `put-key-policy` example changes the key policy for a customer managed key.

To begin, create a key policy and save it in a local JSON file. In this example, the file is `key_policy.json`. You can also specify the key policy as a string value of the `policy` parameter.

The first statement in this key policy gives the AWS account permission to use IAM policies to control access to the KMS key. The second statement gives the `test-user` user permission to run the `describe-key` and `list-keys` commands on the KMS key.

Contents of `key_policy.json`:

```
{
    "Version" : "2012-10-17",
    "Id" : "key-default-1",
    "Statement" : [
        {
            "Sid" : "Enable IAM User Permissions",
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Principal" : {
                "AWS" : "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:root"
            },
            "Action" : "kms:*",
            "Resource" : "*"
        },
        {
            "Sid" : "Allow Use of Key",
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Principal" : {
                "AWS" : "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/test-user"
            },
            "Action" : [
                "kms:DescribeKey",
                "kms:ListKeys"
            ],
            "Resource" : "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

To identify the KMS key, this example uses the key ID, but you can also use a key ARN. To specify the key policy, the command uses the `policy` parameter. To indicate that the policy is in a file, it uses the required `file://` prefix. This prefix is required to identify files on all supported operating systems. Finally, the command uses the `policy-name` parameter with

a value of `default`. If no policy name is specified, the default value is `default`. The only valid value is `default`.

```
aws kms put-key-policy \
    --policy-name default \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --policy file://key_policy.json
```

This command does not produce any output. To verify that the command was effective, use the `get-key-policy` command. The following example command gets the key policy for the same KMS key. The `output` parameter with a value of `text` returns a text format that is easy to read.

```
aws kms get-key-policy \
    --policy-name default \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --output text
```

Output:

```
{
    "Version" : "2012-10-17",
    "Id" : "key-default-1",
    "Statement" : [
        {
            "Sid" : "Enable IAM User Permissions",
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Principal" : {
                "AWS" : "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:root"
            },
            "Action" : "kms:*",
            "Resource" : "*"
            },
            {
            "Sid" : "Allow Use of Key",
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Principal" : {
                "AWS" : "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/test-user"
            },
            "Action" : [ "kms:Describe", "kms:List" ],
            "Resource" : "*"
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Changing a Key Policy in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutKeyPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $policy
     * @return void
     */
    public function putKeyPolicy(string $keyId, string $policy)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->putKeyPolicy([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Policy' => $policy,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem replacing the key policy: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutKeyPolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def set_policy(self, key_id: str, policy: dict[str, any]) -> None:
        """
        Sets the policy of a key. Setting a policy entirely overwrites the
 existing
        policy, so care is taken to add a statement to the existing list of
 statements
        rather than simply writing a new policy.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to set the policy to.
        :param policy: The existing policy of the key.
        :return: None
        """
        principal = input(
            "Enter the ARN of an IAM role to set as the principal on the policy:
 "
        )
```

```
        if key_id != "" and principal != "":
            # The updated policy replaces the existing policy. Add a new
statement to
            # the list along with the original policy statements.
            policy["Statement"].append(
                {
                    "Sid": "Allow access for ExampleRole",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"AWS": principal},
                    "Action": [
                        "kms:Encrypt",
                        "kms:GenerateDataKey*",
                        "kms:Decrypt",
                        "kms:DescribeKey",
                        "kms:ReEncrypt*",
                    ],
                    "Resource": "*",
                }
            )
            try:
                self.kms_client.put_key_policy(KeyId=key_id,
Policy=json.dumps(policy))
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't set policy for key %s. Here's why %s",
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            else:
                print(f"Set policy for key {key_id}.")
        else:
            print("Skipping set policy demo.")
```

- For API details, see PutKeyPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ReEncrypt` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReEncrypt`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To re-encrypt an encrypted message under a different symmetric KMS key (Linux and macOS).

The following `re-encrypt` command example demonstrates the recommended way to re-encrypt data with the AWS CLI.

Provide the ciphertext in a file.In the value of the `--ciphertext-blob` parameter, use the `fileb://` prefix, which tells the CLI to read the data from a binary file. If the file is not in the current directory, type the full path to file. For more information about reading AWS CLI parameter values from a file, see Loading AWS CLI parameters from a file in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide* and Best Practices for Local File Parameters in the *AWS Command Line Tool Blog*.Specify the source KMS key, which decrypts the ciphertext.The `--source-key-id` parameter is not required when decrypting with symmetric encryption KMS keys. AWS KMS can get the KMS key that was used to encrypt the data from the metadata in the ciphertext blob. But it's always a best practice to specify the KMS key you are using. This practice ensures that you use the KMS key that you intend, and prevents you from inadvertently decrypting a ciphertext using a KMS key you do not trust.Specify the destination KMS key, which re-encrypts the data.The `--destination-key-id` parameter is always required. This example uses a key ARN, but you can use any valid key identifier.Request the plaintext output as a text value.The `--query` parameter tells the CLI to get only the value of the `Plaintext` field from the output. The `--output` parameter returns the output as text.Base64-decode the plaintext and save it in a file.The following example pipes (|) the value of the `Plaintext` parameter to the Base64 utility, which decodes it. Then, it redirects (>) the decoded output to the `ExamplePlaintext` file.

Before running this command, replace the example key IDs with valid key identifiers from your AWS account.

```
aws kms re-encrypt \
    --ciphertext-blob fileb://ExampleEncryptedFile \
    --source-key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --destination-key-id 0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321 \
    --query CiphertextBlob \
    --output text | base64 --decode > ExampleReEncryptedFile
```

This command produces no output. The output from the `re-encrypt` command is base64-decoded and saved in a file.

For more information, see ReEncrypt in the *AWS Key Management Service API Reference*.

Example 2: To re-encrypt an encrypted message under a different symmetric KMS key (Windows command prompt).

The following `re-encrypt` command example is the same as the previous one except that it uses the `certutil` utility to Base64-decode the plaintext data. This procedure requires two commands, as shown in the following examples.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account.

```
aws kms re-encrypt ^
    --ciphertext-blob fileb://ExampleEncryptedFile ^
    --source-key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab ^
    --destination-key-id 0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321 ^
    --query CiphertextBlob ^
    --output text > ExampleReEncryptedFile.base64
```

Then use the `certutil` utility

```
certutil -decode ExamplePlaintextFile.base64 ExamplePlaintextFile
```

Output:

```
Input Length = 18
Output Length = 12
CertUtil: -decode command completed successfully.
```

For more information, see ReEncrypt in the *AWS Key Management Service API Reference*.

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def re_encrypt(self, source_key_id, cipher_text):
        """
        Takes ciphertext previously encrypted with one key and reencrypt it by
 using
        another key.

        :param source_key_id: The ARN or ID of the original key used to encrypt
 the
                              ciphertext.
        :param cipher_text: The encrypted ciphertext.
        :return: The ciphertext encrypted by the second key.
        """
        destination_key_id = input(
            f"Your ciphertext is currently encrypted with key {source_key_id}. "
            f"Enter another key ID or ARN to reencrypt it: "
        )
```

```
        if destination_key_id != "":
            try:
                cipher_text = self.kms_client.re_encrypt(
                    SourceKeyId=source_key_id,
                    DestinationKeyId=destination_key_id,
                    CiphertextBlob=cipher_text,
                )["CiphertextBlob"]
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't reencrypt your ciphertext. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                print(f"Reencrypted your ciphertext as: {cipher_text}")
                return cipher_text
        else:
            print("Skipping reencryption demo.")
```

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Human-readable version of the ciphertext of the data to reencrypt.

blob =
 '01020200785d68faeec386af1057904926253051eb2919d3c16078badf65b808b26dd057c101747cadf3593
sourceCiphertextBlob = [blob].pack('H*')

# Replace the fictitious key ARN with a valid key ID
```

```
destinationKeyId = 'arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-ab0987654321'

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

resp = client.re_encrypt({
                           ciphertext_blob: sourceCiphertextBlob,
                           destination_key_id: destinationKeyId
                         })

# Display a readable version of the resulting re-encrypted blob.
puts 'Blob:'
puts resp.ciphertext_blob.unpack('H*')
```

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn reencrypt_string(
    verbose: bool,
    client: &Client,
    input_file: &str,
    output_file: &str,
    first_key: &str,
    new_key: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    // Get blob from input file
    // Open input text file and get contents as a string
    // input is a base-64 encoded string, so decode it:
    let data = fs::read_to_string(input_file)
        .map(|input_file| base64::decode(input_file).expect("invalid base 64"))
        .map(Blob::new);
```

```
    let resp = client
        .re_encrypt()
        .ciphertext_blob(data.unwrap())
        .source_key_id(first_key)
        .destination_key_id(new_key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);
    let o = &output_file;

    let mut ofile = File::create(o).expect("unable to create file");
    ofile.write_all(s.as_bytes()).expect("unable to write");

    if verbose {
        println!("Wrote the following to {}:", output_file);
        println!("{}", s);
    } else {
        println!("Wrote base64-encoded output to {}", output_file);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `RetireGrant` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RetireGrant`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retire a grant on a customer master key

The following `retire-grant` example deletes a grant from a KMS key.

The following example command specifies the `grant-id` and the `key-id` parameters. The value of the `key-id` parameter must be the key ARN of the KMS key.

```
aws kms retire-grant \
    --grant-id 1234a2345b8a4e350500d432bccf8ecd6506710e1391880c4f7f7140160c9af3 \
    --key-id arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

This command produces no output. To confirm that the grant was retired, use the `list-grants` command.

For more information, see Retiring and revoking grants in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see RetireGrant in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)
```

```
    def retire_grant(self, grant):
        """
        Retires a grant so that it can no longer be used.

        :param grant: The grant to retire.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.retire_grant(GrantToken=grant["GrantToken"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't retire grant %s. Here's why: %s",
                grant["GrantId"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
        else:
            print(f"Grant {grant['GrantId']} retired.")
```

- For API details, see RetireGrant in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RevokeGrant` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RevokeGrant`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To revoke a grant on a customer master key

The following `revoke-grant` example deletes a grant from a KMS key. The following example command specifies the `grant-id` and the `key-id` parameters. The value of the `key-id` parameter can be the key ID or key ARN of the KMS key.

```
aws kms revoke-grant \
```

```
    --grant-id 1234a2345b8a4e350500d432bccf8ecd6506710e1391880c4f7f7140160c9af3 \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

This command produces no output. To confirm that the grant was revoked, use the `list-grants` command.

For more information, see Retiring and revoking grants in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Revokes a grant for the specified AWS KMS key asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyId   The ID or key ARN of the AWS KMS key.
    * @param grantId The identifier of the grant to be revoked.
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous
operation of revoking the grant.
    *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
RevokeGrantResponse} object
    *         if the operation is successful, or with a {@code null} value if an
error occurs.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> revokeKeyGrantAsync(String
keyId, String grantId) {
       RevokeGrantRequest grantRequest = RevokeGrantRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .grantId(grantId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().revokeGrant(grantRequest);
```

```
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Grant ID: [" + grantId + "] was successfully
revoked!");
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    if (kmsEx.getMessage().contains("Grant does not exist")) {
                        logger.info("The grant ID '" + grantId + "' does not
exist. Moving on...");
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }
```

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $grantId
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
```

```
    public function revokeGrant(string $grantId, string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->revokeGrant([
                'GrantId' => $grantId,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem with revoking the grant: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}.\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)
```

```
    def revoke_grant(self, key_id: str, grant_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Revokes a grant so that it can no longer be used.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key associated with the grant.
        :param grant_id: The ID of the grant to revoke.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.revoke_grant(KeyId=key_id, GrantId=grant_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't revoke grant %s. Here's why: %s",
                grant_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ScheduleKeyDeletion` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ScheduleKeyDeletion`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To schedule the deletion of a customer managed KMS key.

The following `schedule-key-deletion` example schedules the specified customer managed KMS key to be deleted in 15 days.

The `--key-id` parameter identifies the KMS key. This example uses a key ARN value, but you can use either the key ID or the ARN of the KMS key.The `--pending-window-in-days` parameter specifies the length of the 7-30 day waiting period. By default, the waiting period is 30 days. This example specifies a value of 15, which tells AWS to permanently delete the KMS key 15 days after the command completes.

```
aws kms schedule-key-deletion \
    --key-id arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:123456789012:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --pending-window-in-days 15
```

The response includes the key ARN, key state, waiting period (`PendingWindowInDays`), and the deletion date in Unix time. To view the deletion date in local time, use the AWS KMS console. KMS keys in the `PendingDeletion` key state cannot be used in cryptographic operations.

```
{
    "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:123456789012:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
    "DeletionDate": "2022-06-18T23:43:51.272000+00:00",
    "KeyState": "PendingDeletion",
    "PendingWindowInDays": 15
}
```

For more information, see Deleting keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Deletes a KMS key asynchronously.
    *
    * <p><strong>Warning:</strong> Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and
potentially dangerous operation.
    * When a KMS key is deleted, all data that was encrypted under the KMS key
becomes unrecoverable.
    * This means that any files, databases, or other data that were encrypted
using the deleted KMS key
    * will become permanently inaccessible. Exercise extreme caution when
deleting KMS keys.</p>
    *
    * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key deletion
is scheduled
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKeyAsync(String keyId) {
       ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest deletionRequest =
ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .pendingWindowInDays(7)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().scheduleKeyDeletion(deletionRequest)
           .thenRun(() -> {
               logger.info("Key {} will be deleted in 7 days", keyId);
           })
           .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to schedule key deletion for
key ID: " + keyId, throwable);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $pendingWindowInDays
     * @return void
     */
    public function scheduleKeyDeletion(string $keyId, int $pendingWindowInDays =
 7)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->scheduleKeyDeletion([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'PendingWindowInDays' => $pendingWindowInDays,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem scheduling the key deletion: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def delete_key(self, key_id: str, window: int) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a list of keys.

        Warning:
        Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation.
 When a KMS key is deleted,
        all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to delete.
        :param window: The waiting period, in days, before the KMS key is
 deleted.
        """

        try:
```

```
            self.kms_client.schedule_key_deletion(
                KeyId=key_id, PendingWindowInDays=window
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `Sign` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Sign`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To generate a digital signature for a message

The following `sign` example generates a cryptographic signature for a short message. The output of the command includes a base-64 encoded `Signature` field that you can verify by using the `verify` command.

You must specify a message to sign and a signing algorithm that your asymmetric KMS key supports. To get the signing algorithms for your KMS key, use the `describe-key` command.

In AWS CLI v2, the value of the `message` parameter must be Base64-encoded. Or, you can save the message in a file and use the `fileb://` prefix, which tells the AWS CLI to read binary data from the file.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account. The key ID must represent an asymmetric KMS key with a key usage of SIGN_VERIFY.

```
msg=(echo 'Hello World' | base64)

aws kms sign \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --message fileb://UnsignedMessage \
    --message-type RAW \
    --signing-algorithm RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_256
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
    "Signature": "ABCDEFhpyVYyTxbafE74ccSvEJLJr3zuoV1Hfymz4qv+/
fxmxNLA7SE1SiF8lHw80fKZZ3bJ...",
    "SigningAlgorithm": "RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_256"
}
```

For more information about using asymmetric KMS keys in AWS KMS, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To save a digital signature in a file (Linux and macOs)

The following `sign` example generates a cryptographic signature for a short message stored in a local file. The command also gets the `Signature` property from the response, Base64-decodes it and saves it in the ExampleSignature file. You can use the signature file in a `verify` command that verifies the signature.

The `sign` command requires a Base64-encoded message and a signing algorithm that your asymmetric KMS key supports. To get the signing algorithms that your KMS key supports, use the `describe-key` command.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account. The key ID must represent an asymmetric KMS key with a key usage of SIGN_VERIFY.

```
echo 'hello world' | base64 > EncodedMessage
```

```
aws kms sign \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --message fileb://EncodedMessage \
    --message-type RAW \
    --signing-algorithm RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_256 \
    --output text \
    --query Signature | base64 --decode > ExampleSignature
```

This command produces no output. This example extracts the `Signature` property of the output and saves it in a file.

For more information about using asymmetric KMS keys in AWS KMS, see Asymmetric keys in AWS KMS in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously signs and verifies data using AWS KMS.
     *
     * <p>The method performs the following steps:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Creates an AWS KMS key with the specified key spec, key usage, and
origin.</li>
     *     <li>Signs the provided message using the created KMS key and the
RSASSA-PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
     *     <li>Verifies the signature of the message using the created KMS key
and the RSASSA-PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
     * </ol>
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the
signature verification,
```

```
     *         {@code true} if the signature is valid, {@code false} otherwise.
     * @throws KmsException if any error occurs during the KMS operations.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> signVerifyDataAsync() {
        String signMessage = "Here is the message that will be digitally signed";

        // Create an AWS KMS key used to digitally sign data.
        CreateKeyRequest createKeyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keySpec(KeySpec.RSA_2048)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.SIGN_VERIFY)
            .origin(OriginType.AWS_KMS)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(createKeyRequest)
            .thenCompose(createKeyResponse -> {
                String keyId = createKeyResponse.keyMetadata().keyId();

                SdkBytes messageBytes = SdkBytes.fromString(signMessage,
Charset.defaultCharset());
                SignRequest signRequest = SignRequest.builder()
                    .keyId(keyId)
                    .message(messageBytes)
                    .signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().sign(signRequest)
                    .thenCompose(signResponse -> {
                        byte[] signedBytes =
signResponse.signature().asByteArray();

                        VerifyRequest verifyRequest = VerifyRequest.builder()
                            .keyId(keyId)

.message(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(signMessage.getBytes(Charset.defaultCharset())))

.signature(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(signedBytes)))

.signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                            .build();

                        return getAsyncClient().verify(verifyRequest)
                            .thenApply(verifyResponse -> {
                                return (boolean) verifyResponse.signatureValid();
```

```
                                });
                        });
                })
                .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to sign or verify data",
 throwable);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $message
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function sign(string $keyId, string $message, string $algorithm)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->sign([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Message' => $message,
                'SigningAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem signing the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def sign(self, key_id: str, message: str) -> str:
        """
        Signs a message with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for signing.
        :param message: The message to sign.
        :return: The signature of the message.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.sign(
```

```
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )["Signature"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't sign your message. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `TagResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResource`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a tag to a KMS key

The following `tag-resource` example adds `"Purpose":"Test"` and `"Dept":"IT"` tags to a customer managed KMS key. You can use tags like these to label KMS keys and create categories of KMS keys for permissions and auditing.

To specify the KMS key, use the `key-id` parameter. This example uses a key ID value, but you can use a key ID or key ARN in this command.

```
aws kms tag-resource \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --tags TagKey='Purpose',TagValue='Test' TagKey='Dept',TagValue='IT'
```

This command produces no output. To view the tags on an AWS KMS KMS key, use the `list-resource-tags` command.

For more information about using tags in AWS KMS, see Tagging keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously tags a KMS key with a specific tag.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to be tagged
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tagging
operation is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> tagKMSKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        Tag tag = Tag.builder()
            .tagKey("Environment")
            .tagValue("Production")
            .build();

        TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .tags(tag)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().tagResource(tagResourceRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("{} key was tagged", keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to tag the KMS key",
 throwable);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param array $tags
     * @return void
     */
    public function tagResource(string $keyId, array $tags)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->tagResource([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Tags' => $tags,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem applying the tag(s): {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def tag_resource(self, key_id: str, tag_key: str, tag_value: str) -> None:
        """
        Add or edit tags on a customer managed key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        :param tag_key: Key for the tag.
        :param tag_value: Value for the tag.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.tag_resource(
                KeyId=key_id, Tags=[{"TagKey": tag_key, "TagValue": tag_value}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't add a tag for the key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
```

```
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateAlias` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAlias`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To associate an alias with a different KMS key

The following `update-alias` example associates the alias `alias/test-key` with a different KMS key.

The `--alias-name` parameter specifies the alias. The alias name value must begin with `alias/`.The `--target-key-id` parameter specifies the KMS key to associate with the alias. You don't need to specify the current KMS key for the alias.

```
aws kms update-alias \
    --alias-name alias/test-key \
    --target-key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab
```

This command produces no output. To find the alias, use the `list-aliases` command.

For more information, see Updating aliases in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def update_alias(self, alias, current_key_id):
        """
        Updates an alias by assigning it to another key.

        :param alias: The alias to reassign.
        :param current_key_id: The ARN or ID of the key currently associated with
 the alias.
        """
        new_key_id = input(
            f"Alias {alias} is currently associated with {current_key_id}. "
            f"Enter another key ID or ARN that you want to associate with
 {alias}: "
        )
        if new_key_id != "":
            try:
```

```
                self.kms_client.update_alias(AliasName=alias,
TargetKeyId=new_key_id)
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't associate alias %s with key %s. Here's why: %s",
                    alias,
                    new_key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                print(f"Alias {alias} is now associated with key {new_key_id}.")
        else:
            print("Skipping alias update.")
```

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `Verify` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Verify`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To verify a digital signature

The following `verify` command verifies a cryptographic signature for a short, Base64-encoded message. The key ID, message, message type, and signing algorithm must be same ones that were used to sign the message.

In AWS CLI v2, the value of the `message` parameter must be Base64-encoded. Or, you can save the message in a file and use the `fileb://` prefix, which tells the AWS CLI to read binary data from the file.

The signature that you specify cannot be base64-encoded. For help decoding the signature that the `sign` command returns, see the `sign` command examples.

The output of the command includes a Boolean `SignatureValid` field that indicates that the signature was verified. If the signature validation fails, the `verify` command fails, too.

Before running this command, replace the example key ID with a valid key ID from your AWS account.

```
aws kms verify \
    --key-id 1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab \
    --message fileb://EncodedMessage \
    --message-type RAW \
    --signing-algorithm RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_256 \
    --signature fileb://ExampleSignature
```

Output:

```
{
    "KeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab",
    "SignatureValid": true,
    "SigningAlgorithm": "RSASSA_PKCS1_V1_5_SHA_256"
}
```

For more information about using asymmetric KMS keys in AWS KMS, see Using asymmetric keys in the *AWS Key Management Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see Verify in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
```

```
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def verify(self, key_id: str, message: str, signature: str) -> bool:
        """
        Verifies a signature against a message.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to sign the message.
        :param message: The message to verify.
        :param signature: The signature to verify.
        :return: True when the signature matches the message, otherwise False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.verify(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                Signature=signature,
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )
            valid = response["SignatureValid"]
            print(f"The signature is {'valid' if valid else 'invalid'}.")
            return valid
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SignatureDoesNotMatchException":
                print("The signature is not valid.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify your signature. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Verify in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for AWS KMS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in AWS KMS with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within AWS KMS or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Work with DynamoDB table encryption using AWS Command Line Interface v2

Work with DynamoDB table encryption using AWS Command Line Interface v2

The following code example shows how to manage encryption options for DynamoDB tables.

- Create a table with default encryption.
- Create a table with a customer managed CMK.
- Update table encryption settings.
- Describe table encryption.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with default encryption.

```
# Create a table with default encryption (AWS owned key)
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS
```

Create a table with a customer managed CMK.

```
# Step 1: Create a customer managed key in KMS
aws kms create-key \
    --description "Key for DynamoDB table encryption" \
    --key-usage ENCRYPT_DECRYPT \
    --customer-master-key-spec SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT

# Store the key ID for later use
KEY_ID=$(aws kms list-keys --query "Keys[?contains(KeyArn, 'Key for
 DynamoDB')].KeyId" --output text)

# Step 2: Create a table with the customer managed key
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name SensitiveData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Update table encryption.

```
# Update a table to use a different KMS key
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Describe table encryption.

```
# Describe the table to see encryption settings
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --query "Table.SSEDescription"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateKey

- CreateTable
- DescribeTable
- UpdateTable

Code examples for Lambda using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Lambda with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

More resources

- **Lambda Developer Guide** – More information about Lambda.
- **Lambda API Reference** – Details about all available Lambda actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;

public class HelloLambda
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var lambdaClient = new AmazonLambdaClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello AWS Lambda");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get started with AWS Lambda by listing your
 existing Lambda functions:");

        var response = await lambdaClient.ListFunctionsAsync();
        response.Functions.ForEach(function =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{function.FunctionName}\t{function.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS lambda)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_lambda")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.
```

```
    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_lambda.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_lambda.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/lambda/LambdaClient.h>
#include <aws/lambda/model/ListFunctionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Lambda" starter application which initializes an AWS Lambda (Lambda)
 client and lists the Lambda functions.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_lambda'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient lambdaClient(clientConfig);
        std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
        Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.

        do {
            Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
            if (!marker.empty()) {
                request.SetMarker(marker);
            }

            Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome =
lambdaClient.ListFunctions(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult
&listFunctionsResult = outcome.GetResult();
                std::cout << listFunctionsResult.GetFunctions().size()
                          << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;

                for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: listFunctionsResult.GetFunctions()) {
                    functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                    std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                              << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() <<
std::endl;
                    std::cout << "   "
                              <<
Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                      functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                              << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                              << std::endl;
                }
                marker = listFunctionsResult.GetNextMarker();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());
    }
```

```
    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an AWS Lambda client and list up
 to 10
// functions in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
```

```
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 lambdaClient := lambda.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 maxItems := 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v functions for your account.\n", maxItems)
 result, err := lambdaClient.ListFunctions(ctx, &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Functions) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any functions!")
 } else {
  for _, function := range result.Functions {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *function.FunctionName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists the AWS Lambda functions associated with the current AWS account.
     *
     * @param awsLambda an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
 used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
```

```
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while interacting with the AWS
 Lambda service
     */
    public static void listFunctions(LambdaClient awsLambda) {
        try {
            ListFunctionsResponse functionResult = awsLambda.listFunctions();
            List<FunctionConfiguration> list = functionResult.functions();
            for (FunctionConfiguration config : list) {
                System.out.println("The function name is " +
 config.functionName());
            }

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { LambdaClient, paginateListFunctions } from "@aws-sdk/client-lambda";

const client = new LambdaClient({});

export const helloLambda = async () => {
  const paginator = paginateListFunctions({ client }, {});
  const functions = [];

  for await (const page of paginator) {
    const funcNames = page.Functions.map((f) => f.FunctionName);
```

```
    functions.push(...funcNames);
  }

  console.log("Functions:");
  console.log(functions.join("\n"));
  return functions;
};
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def main():
    """
    List the Lambda functions in your AWS account.
    """
    # Create the Lambda client
    lambda_client = boto3.client("lambda")

    # Use the paginator to list the functions
    paginator = lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate()

    print("Here are the Lambda functions in your account:")
    for page in response_iterator:
        for function in page["Functions"]:
            print(f"  {function['FunctionName']}")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-lambda'

# Creates an AWS Lambda client using the default credentials and configuration
def lambda_client
  Aws::Lambda::Client.new
end

# Lists the Lambda functions in your AWS account, paginating the results if
 necessary
def list_lambda_functions
  lambda = lambda_client

  # Use a pagination iterator to list all functions
  functions = []
  lambda.list_functions.each_page do |page|
    functions.concat(page.functions)
  end

  # Print the name and ARN of each function
  functions.each do |function|
    puts "Function name: #{function.function_name}"
    puts "Function ARN: #{function.function_arn}"
    puts
  end
```

```
  puts "Total functions: #{functions.count}"
end

list_lambda_functions if __FILE__ == $PROGRAM_NAME
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Lambda using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Lambda
  - Learn the basics of Lambda with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Lambda using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateAlias with a CLI
    - Use CreateFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteAlias with a CLI
    - Use DeleteFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
    - Use DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
    - Use GetAccountSettings with a CLI
    - Use GetAlias with a CLI
    - Use GetFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
    - Use GetFunctionConfiguration with a CLI
    - Use GetPolicy with a CLI
    - Use GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
    - Use Invoke with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListFunctions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs with a CLI
    - Use ListTags with a CLI
    - Use ListVersionsByFunction with a CLI

- Use PublishVersion with a CLI
- Use PutFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
- Use PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
- Use RemovePermission with a CLI
- Use TagResource with a CLI
- Use UntagResource with a CLI
- Use UpdateAlias with a CLI
- Use UpdateFunctionCode with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateFunctionConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for Lambda using AWS SDKs
  - Automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
  - Automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
  - Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data
  - Create a lending library REST API
  - Create a messenger application with Step Functions
  - Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
  - Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway
  - Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
  - Invoke a Lambda function from a browser
  - Transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda
  - Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
  - Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions
  - Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function
  - Use the Amazon Neptune API to develop a Lambda function that queries graph data
  - Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication using an AWS SDK
- Serverless examples for Lambda
  - Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function
  - Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

- Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

- AWS community contributions for Lambda
  - Build and test a serverless application

Basic examples for Lambda using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Lambda with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Lambda
- Learn the basics of Lambda with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Lambda using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateAlias with a CLI
  - Use CreateFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteAlias with a CLI
  - Use DeleteFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
  - Use DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
  - Use GetAccountSettings with a CLI
  - Use GetAlias with a CLI
  - Use GetFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
  - Use GetFunctionConfiguration with a CLI

- Use GetPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
- Use Invoke with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListFunctions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs with a CLI
- Use ListTags with a CLI
- Use ListVersionsByFunction with a CLI
- Use PublishVersion with a CLI
- Use PutFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
- Use PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
- Use RemovePermission with a CLI
- Use TagResource with a CLI
- Use UntagResource with a CLI
- Use UpdateAlias with a CLI
- Use UpdateFunctionCode with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateFunctionConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;
```

```
public class HelloLambda
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var lambdaClient = new AmazonLambdaClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello AWS Lambda");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get started with AWS Lambda by listing your
 existing Lambda functions:");

        var response = await lambdaClient.ListFunctionsAsync();
        response.Functions.ForEach(function =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{function.FunctionName}\t{function.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS lambda)

# Set this project's name.
```

```
project("hello_lambda")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_lambda.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_lambda.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/lambda/LambdaClient.h>
```

```
#include <aws/lambda/model/ListFunctionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Lambda" starter application which initializes an AWS Lambda (Lambda)
 client and lists the Lambda functions.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_lambda'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient lambdaClient(clientConfig);
        std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
        Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.

        do {
            Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
            if (!marker.empty()) {
                request.SetMarker(marker);
            }

            Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome =
 lambdaClient.ListFunctions(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult
 &listFunctionsResult = outcome.GetResult();
                std::cout << listFunctionsResult.GetFunctions().size()
                          << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;
```

```
                for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: listFunctionsResult.GetFunctions()) {
                    functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                    std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                              << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() <<
std::endl;
                    std::cout << "   "
                              <<
Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                      functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                              << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                              << std::endl;
                }
                marker = listFunctionsResult.GetNextMarker();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an AWS Lambda client and list up
 to 10
// functions in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 lambdaClient := lambda.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 maxItems := 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v functions for your account.\n", maxItems)
 result, err := lambdaClient.ListFunctions(ctx, &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Functions) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any functions!")
 } else {
  for _, function := range result.Functions {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *function.FunctionName)
  }
```

```
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Lists the AWS Lambda functions associated with the current AWS account.
    *
    * @param awsLambda an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
    *
    * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while interacting with the AWS
Lambda service
    */
   public static void listFunctions(LambdaClient awsLambda) {
       try {
           ListFunctionsResponse functionResult = awsLambda.listFunctions();
           List<FunctionConfiguration> list = functionResult.functions();
           for (FunctionConfiguration config : list) {
               System.out.println("The function name is " +
config.functionName());
           }

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { LambdaClient, paginateListFunctions } from "@aws-sdk/client-lambda";

const client = new LambdaClient({});

export const helloLambda = async () => {
  const paginator = paginateListFunctions({ client }, {});
  const functions = [];

  for await (const page of paginator) {
    const funcNames = page.Functions.map((f) => f.FunctionName);
    functions.push(...funcNames);
  }

  console.log("Functions:");
  console.log(functions.join("\n"));
  return functions;
};
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def main():
    """
    List the Lambda functions in your AWS account.
    """
    # Create the Lambda client
    lambda_client = boto3.client("lambda")

    # Use the paginator to list the functions
    paginator = lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate()

    print("Here are the Lambda functions in your account:")
    for page in response_iterator:
        for function in page["Functions"]:
            print(f"  {function['FunctionName']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-lambda'

# Creates an AWS Lambda client using the default credentials and configuration
def lambda_client
  Aws::Lambda::Client.new
end

# Lists the Lambda functions in your AWS account, paginating the results if
 necessary
def list_lambda_functions
  lambda = lambda_client

  # Use a pagination iterator to list all functions
  functions = []
  lambda.list_functions.each_page do |page|
    functions.concat(page.functions)
  end

  # Print the name and ARN of each function
  functions.each do |function|
    puts "Function name: #{function.function_name}"
    puts "Function ARN: #{function.function_arn}"
    puts
  end

  puts "Total functions: #{functions.count}"
end

list_lambda_functions if __FILE__ == $PROGRAM_NAME
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Lambda with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create methods that perform Lambda actions.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;
using Amazon.Lambda.Model;

/// <summary>
/// A class that implements AWS Lambda methods.
/// </summary>
public class LambdaWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonLambda _lambdaService;

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Constructor for the LambdaWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="lambdaService">An initialized Lambda service client.</param>
    public LambdaWrapper(IAmazonLambda lambdaService)
    {
        _lambdaService = lambdaService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Bucket">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
    /// bucket where the zip file containing the code is located.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Key">The Amazon S3 key of the zip file.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role with the
    /// appropriate Lambda permissions.</param>
    /// <param name="handler">The name of the handler function.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created
    /// Lambda function.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string s3Bucket,
        string s3Key,
        string role,
        string handler)
    {
        // Defines the location for the function code.
        // S3Bucket - The S3 bucket where the file containing
        //            the source code is stored.
        // S3Key    - The name of the file containing the code.
        var functionCode = new FunctionCode
        {
            S3Bucket = s3Bucket,
            S3Key = s3Key,
        };

        var createFunctionRequest = new CreateFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Description = "Created by the Lambda .NET API",
            Code = functionCode,
            Handler = handler,
            Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
```

```
            Role = role,
        };

        var reponse = await
 _lambdaService.CreateFunctionAsync(createFunctionRequest);
        return reponse.FunctionArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the action.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.DeleteFunctionAsync(request);

        // A return value of NoContent means that the request was processed.
        // In this case, the function was deleted, and the return value
        // is intentionally blank.
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function for
    /// which to retrieve information.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<FunctionConfiguration> GetFunctionAsync(string
 functionName)
    {
        var functionRequest = new GetFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
```

```
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.GetFunctionAsync(functionRequest);
        return response.Configuration;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Invoke a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// invoke.</param
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameter values that will be passed to the
function.</param>
    /// <returns>A System Threading Task.</returns>
    public async Task<string> InvokeFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string parameters)
    {
        var payload = parameters;
        var request = new InvokeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Payload = payload,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.InvokeAsync(request);
        MemoryStream stream = response.Payload;
        string returnValue =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(stream.ToArray());
        return returnValue;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Lambda functions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of FunctionConfiguration objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<FunctionConfiguration>> ListFunctionsAsync()
    {
        var functionList = new List<FunctionConfiguration>();

        var functionPaginator =
            _lambdaService.Paginators.ListFunctions(new ListFunctionsRequest());
```

```
        await foreach (var function in functionPaginator.Functions)
        {
            functionList.Add(function);
        }

        return functionList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update an existing Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to update.</
param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket where the zip file containing
    /// the Lambda function code is stored.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The key name of the source code file.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
        string functionName,
        string bucketName,
        string key)
    {
        var functionCodeRequest = new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Publish = true,
            S3Bucket = bucketName,
            S3Key = key,
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionCodeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"The Function was last modified at
 {response.LastModified}.");
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the code of a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function to update.</param>
    /// <param name="functionHandler">The code that performs the function's
 actions.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="environmentVariables">A dictionary of environment
 variables.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
        string functionName,
        string functionHandler,
        Dictionary<string, string> environmentVariables)
    {
        var request = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest
        {
            Handler = functionHandler,
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Environment = new Amazon.Lambda.Model.Environment { Variables =
 environmentVariables },
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine(response.LastModified);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


}
```

Create a function that runs the scenario.

```
global using System.Threading.Tasks;
global using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
global using Amazon.Lambda;
global using LambdaActions;
global using LambdaScenarioCommon;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
```

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace LambdaBasics;

public class LambdaBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonLambda>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddTransient<LambdaWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<LambdaRoleWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
            true) // Optionally load local settings.
        .Build();


        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<LambdaBasics>();

        var lambdaWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<LambdaWrapper>();
        var lambdaRoleWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<LambdaRoleWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();
```

```
        string functionName = configuration["FunctionName"]!;
        string roleName = configuration["RoleName"]!;
        string policyDocument = "{" +
            " \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            " \"Statement\": [ " +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Principal\": {" +
            "            \"Service\": \"lambda.amazonaws.com\" " +
            "    }," +
            "        \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\" " +
            "    }" +
            "]" +
        "}";

        var incrementHandler = configuration["IncrementHandler"];
        var calculatorHandler = configuration["CalculatorHandler"];
        var bucketName = configuration["BucketName"];
        var incrementKey = configuration["IncrementKey"];
        var calculatorKey = configuration["CalculatorKey"];
        var policyArn = configuration["PolicyArn"];

        uiWrapper.DisplayLambdaBasicsOverview();

        // Create the policy to use with the AWS Lambda functions and then attach
the
        // policy to a new role.
        var roleArn = await lambdaRoleWrapper.CreateLambdaRoleAsync(roleName,
policyDocument);

        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for role to become active.");
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Wait until the role is active before trying to
use it.");

        // Attach the appropriate AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role
policy to the new role.
        var success = await
lambdaRoleWrapper.AttachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(policyArn, roleName);
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(10, "Allow time for the IAM policy to be attached to
the role.");

        // Create the Lambda function using a zip file stored in an Amazon Simple
Storage Service
        // (Amazon S3) bucket.
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create Lambda Function");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the AWS Lambda function: {functionName}.");
        var lambdaArn = await lambdaWrapper.CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
            functionName,
            bucketName,
            incrementKey,
            roleArn,
            incrementHandler);

        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for the new function to be available.");
        Console.WriteLine($"The AWS Lambda ARN is {lambdaArn}");

        // Get the Lambda function.
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting the {functionName} AWS Lambda function.");
        FunctionConfiguration config;
        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.State != State.Active);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe function, {functionName} has been created.");
        Console.WriteLine($"The runtime of this Lambda function is
{config.Runtime}.");

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // List the Lambda functions.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Listing all Lambda functions.");
        var functions = await lambdaWrapper.ListFunctionsAsync();
        DisplayFunctionList(functions);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Invoke increment function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now that it has been created, invoke the Lambda
increment function.");
        string? value;
        do
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a value to increment: ");
            value = Console.ReadLine();
        }
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(value));
```

```
        string functionParameters = "{" +
            "\"action\": \"increment\", " +
            "\"x\": \"" + value + "\"" +
        "}";
        var answer = await lambdaWrapper.InvokeFunctionAsync(functionName,
functionParameters);
        Console.WriteLine($"{value} + 1 = {answer}.");

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Update function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now update the Lambda function code.");
        await lambdaWrapper.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionName, bucketName,
calculatorKey);

        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.LastUpdateStatus == LastUpdateStatus.InProgress);

        await lambdaWrapper.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
            functionName,
            calculatorHandler,
            new Dictionary<string, string> { { "LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG" } });

        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.LastUpdateStatus == LastUpdateStatus.InProgress);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Call updated function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now call the updated function...");

        bool done = false;

        do
        {
            string? opSelected;

            Console.WriteLine("Select the operation to perform:");
            Console.WriteLine("\t1. add");
            Console.WriteLine("\t2. subtract");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\t3. multiply");
            Console.WriteLine("\t4. divide");
            Console.WriteLine("\tOr enter \"q\" to quit.");
            Console.WriteLine("Enter the number (1, 2, 3, 4, or q) of the
 operation you want to perform: ");
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Your choice? ");
                opSelected = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (opSelected == string.Empty);

            var operation = (opSelected) switch
            {
                "1" => "add",
                "2" => "subtract",
                "3" => "multiply",
                "4" => "divide",
                "q" => "quit",
                _ => "add",
            };

            if (operation == "quit")
            {
                done = true;
            }
            else
            {
                // Get two numbers and an action from the user.
                value = string.Empty;
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Enter the first value: ");
                    value = Console.ReadLine();
                }
                while (value == string.Empty);

                string? value2;
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Enter a second value: ");
                    value2 = Console.ReadLine();
                }
                while (value2 == string.Empty);
```

```
                functionParameters = "{" +
                    "\"action\": \"" + operation + "\", " +
                    "\"x\": \"" + value + "\"," +
                    "\"y\": \"" + value2 + "\"" +
                "}";

                answer = await lambdaWrapper.InvokeFunctionAsync(functionName,
functionParameters);
                Console.WriteLine($"The answer when we {operation} the two
numbers is: {answer}.");
            }

            uiWrapper.PressEnter();
        } while (!done);

        // Delete the function created earlier.

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        // Detach the IAM policy from the IAM role.
        Console.WriteLine("First detach the IAM policy from the role.");
        success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.DetachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(policyArn,
roleName);
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Let's wait for the policy to be fully detached
from the role.");

        Console.WriteLine("Delete the AWS Lambda function.");
        success = await lambdaWrapper.DeleteFunctionAsync(functionName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The {functionName} function was deleted.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not remove the function {functionName}");
        }

        // Now delete the IAM role created for use with the functions
        // created by the application.
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the role that we created.");
        success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.DeleteLambdaRoleAsync(roleName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The role has been successfully removed.");
```

```
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Couldn't delete the role.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The Lambda Scenario is now complete.");
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Displays a formatted list of existing functions returned by the
        // LambdaMethods.ListFunctions.
        void DisplayFunctionList(List<FunctionConfiguration> functions)
        {
            functions.ForEach(functionConfig =>
            {

 Console.WriteLine($"{functionConfig.FunctionName}\t{functionConfig.Description}");
            });
        }
    }
}


namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;

public class LambdaRoleWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _lambdaRoleService;

    public LambdaRoleWrapper(IAmazonIdentityManagementService lambdaRoleService)
    {
        _lambdaRoleService = lambdaRoleService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role policy to the
    /// IAM role to be assumed by the AWS Lambda functions created for the
 scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM
 policy.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to attach the IAM policy
 to.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
 AttachRolePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn, RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to create.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new IAM role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the ARN for newly created role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLambdaRoleAsync(string roleName, string
 policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            RoleName = roleName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteLambdaRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        };
```

```
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.DeleteRoleAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    public async Task<bool> DetachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn, RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}


namespace LambdaScenarioCommon;
public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the AWS Lambda Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayLambdaBasicsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to AWS Lambda Basics");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role that will be assumed by the functions we create.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Attaches an IAM role policy that has Lambda
 permissions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Creates a Lambda function that increments the
 value passed to it.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Calls the increment function and passes a
 value.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Updates the code so that the function is a simple
 calculator.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Calls the calculator function with the values
 entered.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Deletes the Lambda function.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Detaches the IAM role policy.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. Deletes the IAM role.");
        PressEnter();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);
```

```
        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace LambdaIncrement;

public class Function
{

    /// <summary>
    /// A simple function increments the integer parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">A JSON string containing an action, which must be
    /// "increment" and a string representing the value to increment.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The context object passed by Lambda containing
    /// information about invocation, function, and execution environment.</
param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the incremented value of the parameter.</
returns>
    public int FunctionHandler(Dictionary<string, string> input, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        if (input["action"] == "increment")
        {
            int inputValue = Convert.ToInt32(input["x"]);
```

```
            return inputValue + 1;
        }
        else
        {
            return 0;
        }
    }
}
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace LambdaCalculator;

public class Function
{

    /// <summary>
    /// A simple function that takes two number in string format and performs
    /// the requested arithmetic function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">JSON data containing an action, and x and y values.
    /// Valid actions include: add, subtract, multiply, and divide.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The context object passed by Lambda containing
    /// information about invocation, function, and execution environment.</
param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the results of the calculation.</returns>
    public int FunctionHandler(Dictionary<string, string> input, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        var action = input["action"];
        int x = Convert.ToInt32(input["x"]);
        int y = Convert.ToInt32(input["y"]);
        int result;
        switch (action)
```

```
        {
            case "add":
                result = x + y;
                break;
            case "subtract":
                result = x - y;
                break;
            case "multiply":
                result = x * y;
                break;
            case "divide":
                if (y == 0)
                {
                    Console.Error.WriteLine("Divide by zero error.");
                    result = 0;
                }
                else
                    result = x / y;
                break;
            default:
                Console.Error.WriteLine($"{action} is not a valid operation.");
                result = 0;
                break;
        }
        return result;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get started with functions scenario.
/*!
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Lambda::getStartedWithFunctionsScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

    // 1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role for Lambda
 function.
    Aws::String roleArn;
    if (!getIamRoleArn(roleArn, clientConfig)) {
        return false;
    }

    // 2. Create a Lambda function.
    int seconds = 0;
    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetDescription(LAMBDA_DESCRIPTION); // Optional.
#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::provided_al2);
        request.SetTimeout(15);
        request.SetMemorySize(128);

        // Assume the AWS Lambda function was built in Docker with same
 architecture
        // as this code.
#if  defined(__x86_64__)
```

```
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::x86_64});
#elif defined(__aarch64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::arm64});
#else
#error "Unimplemented architecture"
#endif // defined(architecture)
#else
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::python3_9);
#endif
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetHandler(LAMBDA_HANDLER_NAME);
        request.SetPublish(true);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionCode code;
        std::ifstream ifstream(INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();

        code.SetZipFile(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
 buffer.str().c_str(),
                                               buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetCode(code);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionOutcome outcome =
 client.CreateFunction(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda function was successfully created. " <<
 seconds
```

```
                      << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            break;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::INVALID_PARAMETER_VALUE &&
                 outcome.GetError().GetMessage().find("role") >= 0) {
            if ((seconds % 5) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for the IAM role to become available as a
CreateFunction parameter. "
                        << seconds
                        << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;

                std::cout << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CreateFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
        ++seconds;
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
    } while (60 > seconds);

    std::cout << "The current Lambda function increments 1 by an input." <<
std::endl;

    // 3.  Invoke the Lambda function.
    {
        int increment = askQuestionForInt("Enter an increment integer: ");

        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeResult invokeResult;
        Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonPayload;
        jsonPayload.WithString("action", "increment");
        jsonPayload.WithInteger("number", increment);
        if (invokeLambdaFunction(jsonPayload, Aws::Lambda::Model::LogType::Tail,
                                 invokeResult, client)) {
            Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(invokeResult.GetPayload());
            Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> values =
                    jsonValue.View().GetAllObjects();
            auto iter = values.find("result");
```

```
            if (iter != values.end() && iter->second.IsIntegerType()) {
                {
                    std::cout << INCREMENT_RESUlT_PREFIX
                              << iter->second.AsInteger() << std::endl;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "There was an error in execution. Here is the log."
                          << std::endl;
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer buffer =
 Aws::Utils::HashingUtils::Base64Decode(
                        invokeResult.GetLogResult());
                std::cout << "With log " << buffer.GetUnderlyingData() <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "The Lambda function will now be updated with new code. Press
 return to continue, ";
    Aws::String answer;
    std::getline(std::cin, answer);

    // 4.  Update the Lambda function code.
    {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        std::ifstream ifstream(CALCULATOR_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteLambdaFunction(client);
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

```
        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();
        request.SetZipFile(
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *) buffer.str().c_str(),
                                       buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetPublish(true);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeOutcome outcome =
client.UpdateFunctionCode(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda code was successfully updated." <<
std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "This function uses an environment variable to control the logging
level."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "UpdateFunctionConfiguration will be used to set the LOG_LEVEL to
DEBUG."
            << std::endl;
    seconds = 0;

    // 5.  Update the Lambda function configuration.
    do {
        ++seconds;
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::Environment environment;
        environment.AddVariables("LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG");
        request.SetEnvironment(environment);
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutcome outcome =
 client.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda configuration was successfully updated."
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }

            // RESOURCE_IN_USE: function code update not completed.
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                 Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
            if ((seconds % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                std::cout << "Lambda function update in progress . After " <<
 seconds
                          << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionConfiguration. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

    } while (0 < seconds);

    if (0 > seconds) {
        std::cerr << "Function failed to become active." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Updated function active after " << seconds << " seconds."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    std::cout
            << "\nThe new code applies an arithmetic operator to two variables, x
 an y."
            << std::endl;
    std::vector<Aws::String> operators = {"plus", "minus", "times", "divided-
by"};
    for (size_t i = 0; i < operators.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << " " << operators[i] << std::endl;
    }
```

```
   // 6.  Invoke the updated Lambda function.
   do {
       int operatorIndex = askQuestionForIntRange("Select an operator index 1 -
4 ", 1,
                                                  4);
       int x = askQuestionForInt("Enter an integer for the x value ");
       int y = askQuestionForInt("Enter an integer for the y value ");

       Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue calculateJsonPayload;
       calculateJsonPayload.WithString("action", operators[operatorIndex - 1]);
       calculateJsonPayload.WithInteger("x", x);
       calculateJsonPayload.WithInteger("y", y);
       Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeResult calculatedResult;
       if (invokeLambdaFunction(calculateJsonPayload,
                                Aws::Lambda::Model::LogType::Tail,
                                calculatedResult, client)) {
           Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(calculatedResult.GetPayload());
           Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> values =
                   jsonValue.View().GetAllObjects();
           auto iter = values.find("result");
           if (iter != values.end() && iter->second.IsIntegerType()) {
               std::cout << ARITHMETIC_RESUlT_PREFIX << x << " "
                         << operators[operatorIndex - 1] << " "
                         << y << " is " << iter->second.AsInteger() <<
std::endl;
           }
           else if (iter != values.end() && iter->second.IsFloatingPointType())
{
               std::cout << ARITHMETIC_RESUlT_PREFIX << x << " "
                         << operators[operatorIndex - 1] << " "
                         << y << " is " << iter->second.AsDouble() << std::endl;
           }
           else {
               std::cout << "There was an error in execution. Here is the log."
                         << std::endl;
               Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer buffer =
Aws::Utils::HashingUtils::Base64Decode(
                       calculatedResult.GetLogResult());
               std::cout << "With log " << buffer.GetUnderlyingData() <<
std::endl;
           }
       }
```

```
        answer = askQuestion("Would you like to try another operation? (y/n) ");
    } while (answer == "y");

    std::cout
            << "A list of the lambda functions will be retrieved. Press return to
continue, ";
    std::getline(std::cin, answer);

    // 7.  List the Lambda functions.

    std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
    Aws::String marker;

    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome = client.ListFunctions(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
            std::cout << result.GetFunctions().size()
                      << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;

            for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: result.GetFunctions()) {
                functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() << std::endl;
                std::cout << "   "
                          <<
Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                  functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                          << std::endl;
            }
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
```

```
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    // 8.  Get a Lambda function.
    if (!functions.empty()) {
        std::stringstream question;
        question << "Choose a function to retrieve between 1 and " <<
functions.size()
                 << " ";
        int functionIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(question.str(), 1,

static_cast<int>(functions.size()));

        Aws::String functionName = functions[functionIndex - 1];

        Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(functionName);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionOutcome outcome =
client.GetFunction(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Function retrieve.\n" <<

outcome.GetResult().GetConfiguration().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::GetFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "The resources will be deleted. Press return to continue, ";
    std::getline(std::cin, answer);

    // 9.  Delete the Lambda function.
    bool result = deleteLambdaFunction(client);

    // 10. Delete the IAM role.
    return result && deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
```

```
}

//! Routine which invokes a Lambda function and returns the result.
/*!
 \param jsonPayload: Payload for invoke function.
 \param logType: Log type setting for invoke function.
 \param invokeResult: InvokeResult object to receive the result.
 \param client: Lambda client.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::Lambda::invokeLambdaFunction(const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue
 &jsonPayload,
                                      Aws::Lambda::Model::LogType logType,
                                      Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeResult
 &invokeResult,
                                      const Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient &client) {
    int seconds = 0;
    bool result = false;
    /*
     * In this example, the Invoke function can be called before recently created
 resources are
     * available.  The Invoke function is called repeatedly until the resources
 are
     * available.
     */
    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetLogType(logType);
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> payload =
 Aws::MakeShared<Aws::StringStream>(
                "FunctionTest");
        *payload << jsonPayload.View().WriteReadable();
        request.SetBody(payload);
        request.SetContentType("application/json");
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeOutcome outcome = client.Invoke(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            invokeResult = std::move(outcome.GetResult());
            result = true;
            break;
        }
```

```
            // ACCESS_DENIED: because the role is not available yet.
            // RESOURCE_CONFLICT: because the Lambda function is being created or
updated.
        else if ((outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                  Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::ACCESS_DENIED) ||
                 (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                  Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::RESOURCE_CONFLICT)) {
            if ((seconds % 5) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                std::cout << "Waiting for the invoke api to be available, status
" <<
                          ((outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                            Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::ACCESS_DENIED ?
                            "ACCESS_DENIED" : "RESOURCE_CONFLICT")) << ". " <<
seconds
                          << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::InvokeRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }
        ++seconds;
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
    } while (seconds < 60);

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an interactive scenario that shows you how to get started with Lambda functions.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/base64"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 iamtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/lambda/actions"
)

// GetStartedFunctionsScenario shows you how to use AWS Lambda to perform the
 following
// actions:
//
//  1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role and Lambda
 function, then upload handler code.
//  2. Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
//  3. Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
```

```
//  4. Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the
 returned execution log.
//  5. List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.
type GetStartedFunctionsScenario struct {
 sdkConfig       aws.Config
 functionWrapper actions.FunctionWrapper
 questioner      demotools.IQuestioner
 helper          IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun       bool
}

// NewGetStartedFunctionsScenario constructs a GetStartedFunctionsScenario
 instance from a configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get a Lambda client and create wrappers for
 the actions
// used in the scenario.
func NewGetStartedFunctionsScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) GetStartedFunctionsScenario {
 lambdaClient := lambda.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return GetStartedFunctionsScenario{
  sdkConfig:       sdkConfig,
  functionWrapper: actions.FunctionWrapper{LambdaClient: lambdaClient},
  questioner:      questioner,
  helper:          helper,
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.\n")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the AWS Lambda get started with functions demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 role := scenario.GetOrCreateRole(ctx)
 funcName := scenario.CreateFunction(ctx, role)
 scenario.InvokeIncrement(ctx, funcName)
 scenario.UpdateFunction(ctx, funcName)
```

```
 scenario.InvokeCalculator(ctx, funcName)
 scenario.ListFunctions(ctx)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, role, funcName)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// GetOrCreateRole checks whether the specified role exists and returns it if it
 does.
// Otherwise, a role is created that specifies Lambda as a trusted principal.
// The AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole managed policy is attached to the role and the
 role
// is returned.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) GetOrCreateRole(ctx context.Context)
 *iamtypes.Role {
 var role *iamtypes.Role
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(scenario.sdkConfig)
 log.Println("First, we need an IAM role that Lambda can assume.")
 roleName := scenario.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the role:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 getOutput, err := iamClient.GetRole(ctx, &iam.GetRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName)})
 if err != nil {
  var noSuch *iamtypes.NoSuchEntityException
  if errors.As(err, &noSuch) {
   log.Printf("Role %v doesn't exist. Creating it....\n", roleName)
  } else {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't check whether role %v exists. Here's why: %v\n",
    roleName, err)
  }
 } else {
  role = getOutput.Role
  log.Printf("Found role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)
 }
 if role == nil {
  trustPolicy := PolicyDocument{
   Version: "2012-10-17",
   Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
    Effect:    "Allow",
    Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
    Action:    []string{"sts:AssumeRole"},
   }},
```

```
  }
  policyArn := "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"
  createOutput, err := iamClient.CreateRole(ctx, &iam.CreateRoleInput{
   AssumeRolePolicyDocument: aws.String(trustPolicy.String()),
   RoleName:                 aws.String(roleName),
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't create role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
  }
  role = createOutput.Role
  _, err = iamClient.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.AttachRolePolicyInput{
   PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
   RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't attach a policy to role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
  }
  log.Printf("Created role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)
  log.Println("Let's give AWS a few seconds to propagate resources...")
  scenario.helper.Pause(10)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return role
}

// CreateFunction creates a Lambda function and uploads a handler written in
 Python.
// The code for the Python handler is packaged as a []byte in .zip format.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) CreateFunction(ctx context.Context,
 role *iamtypes.Role) string {
 log.Println("Let's create a function that increments a number.\n" +
  "The function uses the 'lambda_handler_basic.py' script found in the \n" +
  "'handlers' directory of this project.")
 funcName := scenario.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the Lambda function:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 zipPackage := scenario.helper.CreateDeploymentPackage("lambda_handler_basic.py",
 fmt.Sprintf("%v.py", funcName))
 log.Printf("Creating function %v and waiting for it to be ready.", funcName)
 funcState := scenario.functionWrapper.CreateFunction(ctx, funcName,
 fmt.Sprintf("%v.lambda_handler", funcName),
  role.Arn, zipPackage)
 log.Printf("Your function is %v.", funcState)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 return funcName
}

// InvokeIncrement invokes a Lambda function that increments a number. The
 function
// parameters are contained in a Go struct that is used to serialize the
 parameters to
// a JSON payload that is passed to the function.
// The result payload is deserialized into a Go struct that contains an int
 value.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) InvokeIncrement(ctx context.Context,
 funcName string) {
 parameters := actions.IncrementParameters{Action: "increment"}
 log.Println("Let's invoke our function. This function increments a number.")
 parameters.Number = scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter a number to increment:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 log.Printf("Invoking %v with %v...\n", funcName, parameters.Number)
 invokeOutput := scenario.functionWrapper.Invoke(ctx, funcName, parameters,
 false)
 var payload actions.LambdaResultInt
 err := json.Unmarshal(invokeOutput.Payload, &payload)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't unmarshal payload from invoking %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   funcName, err)
 }
 log.Printf("Invoking %v with %v returned %v.\n", funcName, parameters.Number,
 payload)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// UpdateFunction updates the code for a Lambda function by uploading a simple
 arithmetic
// calculator written in Python. The code for the Python handler is packaged as a
// []byte in .zip format.
// After the code is updated, the configuration is also updated with a new log
// level that instructs the handler to log additional information.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) UpdateFunction(ctx context.Context,
 funcName string) {
 log.Println("Let's update the function to an arithmetic calculator.\n" +
  "The function uses the 'lambda_handler_calculator.py' script found in the \n" +
  "'handlers' directory of this project.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 log.Println("Creating deployment package...")
```

```
 zipPackage :=
 scenario.helper.CreateDeploymentPackage("lambda_handler_calculator.py",
  fmt.Sprintf("%v.py", funcName))
 log.Println("...and updating the Lambda function and waiting for it to be
 ready.")
 funcState := scenario.functionWrapper.UpdateFunctionCode(ctx, funcName,
 zipPackage)
 log.Printf("Updated function %v. Its current state is %v.", funcName, funcState)
 log.Println("This function uses an environment variable to control logging
 level.")
 log.Println("Let's set it to DEBUG to get the most logging.")
 scenario.functionWrapper.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx, funcName,
  map[string]string{"LOG_LEVEL": "DEBUG"})
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// InvokeCalculator invokes the Lambda calculator function. The parameters are
 stored in a
// Go struct that is used to serialize the parameters to a JSON payload. That
 payload is then passed
// to the function.
// The result payload is deserialized to a Go struct that stores the result as
 either an
// int or float32, depending on the kind of operation that was specified.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) InvokeCalculator(ctx context.Context,
 funcName string) {
 wantInvoke := true
 choices := []string{"plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"}
 for wantInvoke {
  choice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Select an arithmetic operation:\n",
 choices)
  x := scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter a value for x:", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  y := scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter a value for y:", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  log.Printf("Invoking %v %v %v...", x, choices[choice], y)
  calcParameters := actions.CalculatorParameters{
   Action: choices[choice],
   X:      x,
   Y:      y,
  }
  invokeOutput := scenario.functionWrapper.Invoke(ctx, funcName, calcParameters,
 true)
  var payload any
  if choice == 3 { // divide-by results in a float.
   payload = actions.LambdaResultFloat{}
```

```
  } else {
   payload = actions.LambdaResultInt{}
  }
  err := json.Unmarshal(invokeOutput.Payload, &payload)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't unmarshal payload from invoking %v. Here's why: %v\n",
    funcName, err)
  }
  log.Printf("Invoking %v with %v %v %v returned %v.\n", funcName,
   calcParameters.X, calcParameters.Action, calcParameters.Y, payload)
  scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to see the logs from the call.")
  logRes, err := base64.StdEncoding.DecodeString(*invokeOutput.LogResult)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't decode log result. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  log.Println(string(logRes))
  wantInvoke = scenario.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to calculate again? (y/
n)", "y")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// ListFunctions lists up to the specified number of functions for your account.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) ListFunctions(ctx context.Context) {
 count := scenario.questioner.AskInt(
  "Let's list functions for your account. How many do you want to see?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 functions := scenario.functionWrapper.ListFunctions(ctx, count)
 log.Printf("Found %v functions:", len(functions))
 for _, function := range functions {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *function.FunctionName)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Cleanup removes the IAM and Lambda resources created by the example.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) Cleanup(ctx context.Context, role
 *iamtypes.Role, funcName string) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to clean up resources created for
 this example? (y/n)",
  "y") {
  iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(scenario.sdkConfig)
  policiesOutput, err := iamClient.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
   &iam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput{RoleName: role.RoleName})
```

```
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't get policies attached to role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
    *role.RoleName, err)
  }
  for _, policy := range policiesOutput.AttachedPolicies {
   _, err = iamClient.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.DetachRolePolicyInput{
    PolicyArn: policy.PolicyArn, RoleName: role.RoleName,
   })
   if err != nil {
    log.Panicf("Couldn't detach policy %v from role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
     *policy.PolicyArn, *role.RoleName, err)
   }
  }
  _, err = iamClient.DeleteRole(ctx, &iam.DeleteRoleInput{RoleName:
 role.RoleName})
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't delete role %v. Here's why: %v\n", *role.RoleName, err)
  }
  log.Printf("Deleted role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)

  scenario.functionWrapper.DeleteFunction(ctx, funcName)
  log.Printf("Deleted function %v.\n", funcName)
 } else {
  log.Println("Okay. Don't forget to delete the resources when you're done with
 them.")
 }
}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts I/O and wait functions from a scenario so that they
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 CreateDeploymentPackage(sourceFile string, destinationFile string) *bytes.Buffer
}

// ScenarioHelper lets the caller specify the path to Lambda handler functions.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 HandlerPath string
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper *ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}
```

```
// CreateDeploymentPackage creates an AWS Lambda deployment package from a source
 file. The
// deployment package is stored in .zip format in a bytes.Buffer. The buffer can
 be
// used to pass a []byte to Lambda when creating the function.
// The specified destinationFile is the name to give the file when it's deployed
 to Lambda.
func (helper *ScenarioHelper) CreateDeploymentPackage(sourceFile string,
 destinationFile string) *bytes.Buffer {
 var err error
 buffer := &bytes.Buffer{}
 writer := zip.NewWriter(buffer)
 zFile, err := writer.Create(destinationFile)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't create destination archive %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 destinationFile, err)
 }
 sourceBody, err := os.ReadFile(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", helper.HandlerPath,
 sourceFile))
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't read handler source file %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   sourceFile, err)
 } else {
  _, err = zFile.Write(sourceBody)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't write handler %v to zip archive. Here's why: %v\n",
    sourceFile, err)
  }
 }
 err = writer.Close()
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't close zip writer. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return buffer
}
```

Create a struct that wraps individual Lambda actions.

```
import (
```

```
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}


// GetFunction gets data about the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) GetFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) types.State {
 var state types.State
 funcOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.GetFunction(ctx,
 &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't get function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 } else {
  state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
 }
 return state
}



// CreateFunction creates a new Lambda function from code contained in the
 zipPackage
// buffer. The specified handlerName must match the name of the file and function
// contained in the uploaded code. The role specified by iamRoleArn is assumed by
// Lambda and grants specific permissions.
// When the function already exists, types.StateActive is returned.
```

```
// When the function is created, a lambda.FunctionActiveV2Waiter is used to wait
 until the
// function is active.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) CreateFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, handlerName string,
 iamRoleArn *string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.CreateFunction(ctx, &lambda.CreateFunctionInput{
  Code:         &types.FunctionCode{ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes()},
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Role:         iamRoleArn,
  Handler:      aws.String(handlerName),
  Publish:      true,
  Runtime:      types.RuntimePython39,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resConflict *types.ResourceConflictException
  if errors.As(err, &resConflict) {
   log.Printf("Function %v already exists.\n", functionName)
   state = types.StateActive
  } else {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't create function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
  }
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionActiveV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}



// UpdateFunctionCode updates the code for the Lambda function specified by
 functionName.
// The existing code for the Lambda function is entirely replaced by the code in
 the
```

```
// zipPackage buffer. After the update action is called, a
 lambda.FunctionUpdatedV2Waiter
// is used to wait until the update is successful.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionCode(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCode(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionCodeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName), ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update code for function %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionUpdatedV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}



// UpdateFunctionConfiguration updates a map of environment variables configured
 for
// the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string, envVars map[string]string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Environment:  &types.Environment{Variables: envVars},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update configuration for %v. Here's why: %v",
 functionName, err)
 }
}
```

```
// ListFunctions lists up to maxItems functions for the account. This function
 uses a
// lambda.ListFunctionsPaginator to paginate the results.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) ListFunctions(ctx context.Context, maxItems int)
 []types.FunctionConfiguration {
 var functions []types.FunctionConfiguration
 paginator := lambda.NewListFunctionsPaginator(wrapper.LambdaClient,
 &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
 })
 for paginator.HasMorePages() && len(functions) < maxItems {
  pageOutput, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  functions = append(functions, pageOutput.Functions...)
 }
 return functions
}



// DeleteFunction deletes the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) DeleteFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.DeleteFunction(ctx, &lambda.DeleteFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't delete function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
}



// Invoke invokes the Lambda function specified by functionName, passing the
 parameters
// as a JSON payload. When getLog is true, types.LogTypeTail is specified, which
 tells
// Lambda to include the last few log lines in the returned result.
```

```
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) Invoke(ctx context.Context, functionName string,
 parameters any, getLog bool) *lambda.InvokeOutput {
 logType := types.LogTypeNone
 if getLog {
  logType = types.LogTypeTail
 }
 payload, err := json.Marshal(parameters)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't marshal parameters to JSON. Here's why %v\n", err)
 }
 invokeOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.Invoke(ctx, &lambda.InvokeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  LogType:      logType,
  Payload:      payload,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't invoke function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
 return invokeOutput
}



// IncrementParameters is used to serialize parameters to the increment Lambda
 handler.
type IncrementParameters struct {
 Action string `json:"action"`
 Number int    `json:"number"`
}

// CalculatorParameters is used to serialize parameters to the calculator Lambda
 handler.
type CalculatorParameters struct {
 Action string `json:"action"`
 X      int    `json:"x"`
 Y      int    `json:"y"`
}

// LambdaResultInt is used to deserialize an int result from a Lambda handler.
type LambdaResultInt struct {
 Result int `json:"result"`
}
```

```
// LambdaResultFloat is used to deserialize a float32 result from a Lambda
 handler.
type LambdaResultFloat struct {
 Result float32 `json:"result"`
}
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
import logging

logger = logging.getLogger()
logger.setLevel(logging.INFO)


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and a single number, performs the specified action on the
 number,
    and returns the result. The only allowable action is 'increment'.

    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the
 function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the action.
    """
    result = None
    action = event.get("action")
    if action == "increment":
        result = event.get("number", 0) + 1
        logger.info("Calculated result of %s", result)
    else:
        logger.error("%s is not a valid action.", action)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
import logging
import os


logger = logging.getLogger()

# Define a list of Python lambda functions that are called by this AWS Lambda
 function.
ACTIONS = {
    "plus": lambda x, y: x + y,
    "minus": lambda x, y: x - y,
    "times": lambda x, y: x * y,
    "divided-by": lambda x, y: x / y,
}


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and two numbers, performs the specified action on the
 numbers,
    and returns the result.

    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the
 function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the specified action.
    """
    # Set the log level based on a variable configured in the Lambda environment.
    logger.setLevel(os.environ.get("LOG_LEVEL", logging.INFO))
    logger.debug("Event: %s", event)

    action = event.get("action")
    func = ACTIONS.get(action)
    x = event.get("x")
    y = event.get("y")
    result = None
    try:
        if func is not None and x is not None and y is not None:
            result = func(x, y)
            logger.info("%s %s %s is %s", x, action, y, result)
        else:
            logger.error("I can't calculate %s %s %s.", x, action, y)
```

```
    except ZeroDivisionError:
        logger.warning("I can't divide %s by 0!", x)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
 *  Lambda function names appear as:
 *
 *  arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:335556666777:function:HelloFunction
 *
 *  To find this value, look at the function in the AWS Management Console.
 *
 *  Before running this Java code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 *  For more information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 *  This example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an AWS Lambda function.
 * 2. Gets a specific AWS Lambda function.
 * 3. Lists all Lambda functions.
 * 4. Invokes a Lambda function.
 * 5. Updates the Lambda function code and invokes it again.
 * 6. Updates a Lambda function's configuration value.
 * 7. Deletes a Lambda function.
 */

public class LambdaScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <functionName> <role> <handler> <bucketName> <key>\s

            Where:
                functionName - The name of the Lambda function.\s
                role - The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) service role
 that has Lambda permissions.\s
                handler - The fully qualified method name (for example,
 example.Handler::handleRequest).\s
                bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
 name that contains the .zip or .jar used to update the Lambda function's code.\s
                key - The Amazon S3 key name that represents the .zip or .jar
 (for example, LambdaHello-1.0-SNAPSHOT.jar).
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
              System.out.println(usage);
              return;
        }

        String functionName = args[0];
```

```
        String role = args[1];
        String handler = args[2];
        String bucketName = args[3];
        String key = args[4];
        LambdaClient awsLambda = LambdaClient.builder()
            .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS Lambda Basics scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create an AWS Lambda function.");
        String funArn = createLambdaFunction(awsLambda, functionName, key,
bucketName, role, handler);
        System.out.println("The AWS Lambda ARN is " + funArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Get the " + functionName + " AWS Lambda
function.");
        getFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. List all AWS Lambda functions.");
        listFunctions(awsLambda);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Invoke the Lambda function.");
        System.out.println("*** Sleep for 1 min to get Lambda function ready.");
        Thread.sleep(60000);
        invokeFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Update the Lambda function code and invoke it
again.");
        updateFunctionCode(awsLambda, functionName, bucketName, key);
        System.out.println("*** Sleep for 1 min to get Lambda function ready.");
        Thread.sleep(60000);
        invokeFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Update a Lambda function's configuration value.");
        updateFunctionConfiguration(awsLambda, functionName, handler);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Delete the AWS Lambda function.");
        LambdaScenario.deleteLambdaFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The AWS Lambda scenario completed successfully");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        awsLambda.close();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new Lambda function in AWS using the AWS Lambda Java API.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    the AWS Lambda client used to interact with the AWS
 Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to create
     * @param key          the S3 key of the function code
     * @param bucketName   the name of the S3 bucket containing the function code
     * @param role         the IAM role to assign to the Lambda function
     * @param handler      the fully qualified class name of the function handler
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created Lambda function
     */
    public static String createLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda,
                                              String functionName,
                                              String key,
                                              String bucketName,
                                              String role,
                                              String handler) {

        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            FunctionCode code = FunctionCode.builder()
                .s3Key(key)
                .s3Bucket(bucketName)
                .build();
```

```
            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest =
CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .description("Created by the Lambda Java API")
                .code(code)
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .role(role)
                .build();

            // Create a Lambda function using a waiter
            CreateFunctionResponse functionResponse =
awsLambda.createFunction(functionRequest);
            GetFunctionRequest getFunctionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();
            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter.waitUntilFunctionExists(getFunctionRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return functionResponse.functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves information about an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which
is used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to retrieve
information about
     */
    public static void getFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String functionName) {
        try {
            GetFunctionRequest functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();

            GetFunctionResponse response =
awsLambda.getFunction(functionRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The runtime of this Lambda function is " +
response.configuration().runtime());

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Lists the AWS Lambda functions associated with the current AWS account.
     *
     * @param awsLambda an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while interacting with the AWS
Lambda service
     */
    public static void listFunctions(LambdaClient awsLambda) {
        try {
            ListFunctionsResponse functionResult = awsLambda.listFunctions();
            List<FunctionConfiguration> list = functionResult.functions();
            for (FunctionConfiguration config : list) {
                System.out.println("The function name is " +
config.functionName());
            }

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Invokes a specific AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    an instance of {@link LambdaClient} to interact with
the AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to be invoked
     */
    public static void invokeFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName) {
        InvokeResponse res;
        try {
```

```
            // Need a SdkBytes instance for the payload.
            JSONObject jsonObj = new JSONObject();
            jsonObj.put("inputValue", "2000");
            String json = jsonObj.toString();
            SdkBytes payload = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(json);

            InvokeRequest request = InvokeRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .payload(payload)
                .build();

            res = awsLambda.invoke(request);
            String value = res.payload().asUtf8String();
            System.out.println(value);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates the code for an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda  the AWS Lambda client
     * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to update
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the function code is
located
     * @param key the key (file name) of the function code in the S3 bucket
     * @throws LambdaException if there is an error updating the function code
     */
    public static void updateFunctionCode(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String bucketName, String key) {
        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            UpdateFunctionCodeRequest functionCodeRequest =
UpdateFunctionCodeRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .publish(true)
                .s3Bucket(bucketName)
                .s3Key(key)
                .build();
```

```
            UpdateFunctionCodeResponse response =
awsLambda.updateFunctionCode(functionCodeRequest);
            GetFunctionConfigurationRequest getFunctionConfigRequest =
GetFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionConfigurationResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                .waitUntilFunctionUpdated(getFunctionConfigRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("The last modified value is " +
response.lastModified());

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates the configuration of an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda     the {@link LambdaClient} instance to use for the AWS
Lambda operation
     * @param functionName  the name of the AWS Lambda function to update
     * @param handler       the new handler for the AWS Lambda function
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if there is an error while updating the function
configuration
     */
    public static void updateFunctionConfiguration(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String handler) {
        try {
            UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest configurationRequest =
UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .build();

            awsLambda.updateFunctionConfiguration(configurationRequest);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda     an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which
 is used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName  the name of the Lambda function to be deleted
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while deleting the Lambda
 function
     */
    public static void deleteLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
 functionName) {
        try {
            DeleteFunctionRequest request = DeleteFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();

            awsLambda.deleteFunction(request);
            System.out.println("The " + functionName + " function was deleted");

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode

- UpdateFunctionConfiguration

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that grants Lambda permission to write to logs.

```
    logger.log(`Creating role (${NAME_ROLE_LAMBDA})...`);
    const response = await createRole(NAME_ROLE_LAMBDA);

import { AttachRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const attachRolePolicy = (policyArn, roleName) => {
  const command = new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

Create a Lambda function and upload handler code.

```
const createFunction = async (funcName, roleArn) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
```

```
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${funcName}.zip`);

  const command = new CreateFunctionCommand({
    Code: { ZipFile: code },
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Role: roleArn,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.

```
const invoke = async (funcName, payload) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new InvokeCommand({
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Payload: JSON.stringify(payload),
    LogType: LogType.Tail,
  });

  const { Payload, LogResult } = await client.send(command);
  const result = Buffer.from(Payload).toString();
  const logs = Buffer.from(LogResult, "base64").toString();
  return { logs, result };
};
```

Update the function code and configure its Lambda environment with an environment variable.

```
const updateFunctionCode = async (funcName, newFunc) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${newFunc}.zip`);
  const command = new UpdateFunctionCodeCommand({
    ZipFile: code,
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
```

```
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const updateFunctionConfiguration = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const config = readFileSync(`${dirname}../functions/config.json`).toString();
  const command = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationCommand({
    ...JSON.parse(config),
    FunctionName: funcName,
  });
  const result = client.send(command);
  waitForFunctionUpdated({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return result;
};
```

List the functions for your account.

```
const listFunctions = () => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new ListFunctionsCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

Delete the IAM role and the Lambda function.

```
import { DeleteRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const deleteRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: roleName });
```

```
  return client.send(command);
};

/**
 * @param {string} funcName
 */
const deleteFunction = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new DeleteFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <functionName> <role> <handler> <bucketName> <updatedBucketName>
 <key>
```

```
        Where:
            functionName - The name of the AWS Lambda function.
            role - The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) service role that
has AWS Lambda permissions.
            handler - The fully qualified method name (for example,
example.Handler::handleRequest).
            bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
name that contains the ZIP or JAR used for the Lambda function's code.
            updatedBucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name that contains the .zip
or .jar used to update the Lambda function's code.
            key - The Amazon S3 key name that represents the .zip or .jar file
(for example, LambdaHello-1.0-SNAPSHOT.jar).
            """

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val functionName = args[0]
    val role = args[1]
    val handler = args[2]
    val bucketName = args[3]
    val updatedBucketName = args[4]
    val key = args[5]

    println("Creating a Lambda function named $functionName.")
    val funArn = createScFunction(functionName, bucketName, key, handler, role)
    println("The AWS Lambda ARN is $funArn")

    // Get a specific Lambda function.
    println("Getting the $functionName AWS Lambda function.")
    getFunction(functionName)

    // List the Lambda functions.
    println("Listing all AWS Lambda functions.")
    listFunctionsSc()

    // Invoke the Lambda function.
    println("*** Invoke the Lambda function.")
    invokeFunctionSc(functionName)

    // Update the AWS Lambda function code.
    println("*** Update the Lambda function code.")
```

```
    updateFunctionCode(functionName, updatedBucketName, key)

    // println("*** Invoke the function again after updating the code.")
    invokeFunctionSc(functionName)

    // Update the AWS Lambda function configuration.
    println("Update the run time of the function.")
    updateFunctionConfiguration(functionName, handler)

    // Delete the AWS Lambda function.
    println("Delete the AWS Lambda function.")
    delFunction(functionName)
}

suspend fun createScFunction(
    myFunctionName: String,
    s3BucketName: String,
    myS3Key: String,
    myHandler: String,
    myRole: String,
): String {
    val functionCode =
        FunctionCode {
            s3Bucket = s3BucketName
            s3Key = myS3Key
        }

    val request =
        CreateFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
            code = functionCode
            description = "Created by the Lambda Kotlin API"
            handler = myHandler
            role = myRole
            runtime = Runtime.Java17
        }

    // Create a Lambda function using a waiter
    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val functionResponse = awsLambda.createFunction(request)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionActive {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        return functionResponse.functionArn.toString()
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun getFunction(functionNameVal: String) {
    val functionRequest =
        GetFunctionRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val response = awsLambda.getFunction(functionRequest)
        println("The runtime of this Lambda function is
 ${response.configuration?.runtime}")
    }
}

suspend fun listFunctionsSc() {
    val request =
        ListFunctionsRequest {
            maxItems = 10
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val response = awsLambda.listFunctions(request)
        response.functions?.forEach { function ->
            println("The function name is ${function.functionName}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun invokeFunctionSc(functionNameVal: String) {
    val json = """{"inputValue":"1000"}"""
    val byteArray = json.trimIndent().encodeToByteArray()
    val request =
        InvokeRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            payload = byteArray
            logType = LogType.Tail
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val res = awsLambda.invoke(request)
        println("The function payload is
 ${res.payload?.toString(Charsets.UTF_8)}")
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun updateFunctionCode(
    functionNameVal: String?,
    bucketName: String?,
    key: String?,
) {
    val functionCodeRequest =
        UpdateFunctionCodeRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            publish = true
            s3Bucket = bucketName
            s3Key = key
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val response = awsLambda.updateFunctionCode(functionCodeRequest)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionUpdated {
            functionName = functionNameVal
        }
        println("The last modified value is " + response.lastModified)
    }
}

suspend fun updateFunctionConfiguration(
    functionNameVal: String?,
    handlerVal: String?,
) {
    val configurationRequest =
        UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            handler = handlerVal
            runtime = Runtime.Java17
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.updateFunctionConfiguration(configurationRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun delFunction(myFunctionName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteFunctionRequest {
```

```
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.deleteFunction(request)
        println("$myFunctionName was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace Lambda;

use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use GuzzleHttp\Psr7\Stream;
use Iam\IAMService;

class GettingStartedWithLambda
{
    public function run()
```

```
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the AWS Lambda getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $clientArgs = [
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ];
        $uniqid = uniqid();

        $iamService = new IAMService();
        $s3client = new S3Client($clientArgs);
        $lambdaService = new LambdaService();

        echo "First, let's create a role to run our Lambda code.\n";
        $roleName = "test-lambda-role-$uniqid";
        $rolePolicyDocument = "{
            \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
            \"Statement\": [
                {
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {
                        \"Service\": \"lambda.amazonaws.com\"
                    },
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }
            ]
        }";
        $role = $iamService->createRole($roleName, $rolePolicyDocument);
        echo "Created role {$role['RoleName']}.\n";

        $iamService->attachRolePolicy(
            $role['RoleName'],
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"
        );
        echo "Attached the AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole to {$role['RoleName']}.
\n";

        echo "\nNow let's create an S3 bucket and upload our Lambda code there.
\n";
        $bucketName = "test-example-bucket-$uniqid";
```

```
        $s3client->createBucket([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
        ]);
        echo "Created bucket $bucketName.\n";

        $functionName = "doc_example_lambda_$uniqid";
        $codeBasic = __DIR__ . "/lambda_handler_basic.zip";
        $handler = "lambda_handler_basic";
        $file = file_get_contents($codeBasic);
        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => $functionName,
            'Body' => $file,
        ]);
        echo "Uploaded the Lambda code.\n";

        $createLambdaFunction = $lambdaService->createFunction($functionName,
 $role, $bucketName, $handler);
        // Wait until the function has finished being created.
        do {
            $getLambdaFunction = $lambdaService-
>getFunction($createLambdaFunction['FunctionName']);
        } while ($getLambdaFunction['Configuration']['State'] == "Pending");
        echo "Created Lambda function {$getLambdaFunction['Configuration']
['FunctionName']}.\n";

        sleep(1);

        echo "\nOk, let's invoke that Lambda code.\n";
        $basicParams = [
            'action' => 'increment',
            'number' => 3,
        ];
        /** @var Stream $invokeFunction */
        $invokeFunction = $lambdaService->invoke($functionName, $basicParams)
['Payload'];
        $result = json_decode($invokeFunction->getContents())->result;
        echo "After invoking the Lambda code with the input of
 {$basicParams['number']} we received $result.\n";

        echo "\nSince that's working, let's update the Lambda code.\n";
        $codeCalculator = "lambda_handler_calculator.zip";
        $handlerCalculator = "lambda_handler_calculator";
        echo "First, put the new code into the S3 bucket.\n";
```

```
        $file = file_get_contents($codeCalculator);
        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => $functionName,
            'Body' => $file,
        ]);
        echo "New code uploaded.\n";

        $lambdaService->updateFunctionCode($functionName, $bucketName,
 $functionName);
        // Wait for the Lambda code to finish updating.
        do {
            $getLambdaFunction = $lambdaService-
>getFunction($createLambdaFunction['FunctionName']);
        } while ($getLambdaFunction['Configuration']['LastUpdateStatus'] !==
 "Successful");
        echo "New Lambda code uploaded.\n";

        $environment = [
            'Variable' => ['Variables' => ['LOG_LEVEL' => 'DEBUG']],
        ];
        $lambdaService->updateFunctionConfiguration($functionName,
 $handlerCalculator, $environment);
        do {
            $getLambdaFunction = $lambdaService-
>getFunction($createLambdaFunction['FunctionName']);
        } while ($getLambdaFunction['Configuration']['LastUpdateStatus'] !==
 "Successful");
        echo "Lambda code updated with new handler and a LOG_LEVEL of DEBUG for
 more information.\n";

        echo "Invoke the new code with some new data.\n";
        $calculatorParams = [
            'action' => 'plus',
            'x' => 5,
            'y' => 4,
        ];
        $invokeFunction = $lambdaService->invoke($functionName,
 $calculatorParams, "Tail");
        $result = json_decode($invokeFunction['Payload']->getContents())->result;
        echo "Indeed, {$calculatorParams['x']} + {$calculatorParams['y']} does
 equal $result.\n";
        echo "Here's the extra debug info: ";
        echo base64_decode($invokeFunction['LogResult']) . "\n";
```

```
        echo "\nBut what happens if you try to divide by zero?\n";
        $divZeroParams = [
            'action' => 'divide',
            'x' => 5,
            'y' => 0,
        ];
        $invokeFunction = $lambdaService->invoke($functionName, $divZeroParams,
"Tail");
        $result = json_decode($invokeFunction['Payload']->getContents())->result;
        echo "You get a |$result| result.\n";
        echo "And an error message: ";
        echo base64_decode($invokeFunction['LogResult']) . "\n";

        echo "\nHere's all the Lambda functions you have in this Region:\n";
        $listLambdaFunctions = $lambdaService->listFunctions(5);
        $allLambdaFunctions = $listLambdaFunctions['Functions'];
        $next = $listLambdaFunctions->get('NextMarker');
        while ($next != false) {
            $listLambdaFunctions = $lambdaService->listFunctions(5, $next);
            $next = $listLambdaFunctions->get('NextMarker');
            $allLambdaFunctions = array_merge($allLambdaFunctions,
$listLambdaFunctions['Functions']);
        }
        foreach ($allLambdaFunctions as $function) {
            echo "{$function['FunctionName']}\n";
        }

        echo "\n\nAnd don't forget to clean up your data!\n";

        $lambdaService->deleteFunction($functionName);
        echo "Deleted Lambda function.\n";
        $iamService->deleteRole($role['RoleName']);
        echo "Deleted Role.\n";
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->listObjectsV2([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
        ]);
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->deleteObjects([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Delete' => [
                'Objects' => $deleteObjects['Contents'],
            ]
        ]);
        echo "Deleted all objects from the S3 bucket.\n";
```

```
        $s3client->deleteBucket(['Bucket' => $bucketName]);
        echo "Deleted the bucket.\n";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
import logging

logger = logging.getLogger()
logger.setLevel(logging.INFO)


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and a single number, performs the specified action on the
 number,
    and returns the result. The only allowable action is 'increment'.
```

```
    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the
 function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the action.
    """
    result = None
    action = event.get("action")
    if action == "increment":
        result = event.get("number", 0) + 1
        logger.info("Calculated result of %s", result)
    else:
        logger.error("%s is not a valid action.", action)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
import logging
import os


logger = logging.getLogger()

# Define a list of Python lambda functions that are called by this AWS Lambda
 function.
ACTIONS = {
    "plus": lambda x, y: x + y,
    "minus": lambda x, y: x - y,
    "times": lambda x, y: x * y,
    "divided-by": lambda x, y: x / y,
}


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and two numbers, performs the specified action on the
 numbers,
    and returns the result.
```

```
    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the
 function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the specified action.
    """
    # Set the log level based on a variable configured in the Lambda environment.
    logger.setLevel(os.environ.get("LOG_LEVEL", logging.INFO))
    logger.debug("Event: %s", event)

    action = event.get("action")
    func = ACTIONS.get(action)
    x = event.get("x")
    y = event.get("y")
    result = None
    try:
        if func is not None and x is not None and y is not None:
            result = func(x, y)
            logger.info("%s %s %s is %s", x, action, y, result)
        else:
            logger.error("I can't calculate %s %s %s.", x, action, y)
    except ZeroDivisionError:
        logger.warning("I can't divide %s by 0!", x)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

Create functions that wrap Lambda actions.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    @staticmethod
    def create_deployment_package(source_file, destination_file):
        """
```

```
        Creates a Lambda deployment package in .zip format in an in-memory
buffer. This
        buffer can be passed directly to Lambda when creating the function.

        :param source_file: The name of the file that contains the Lambda handler
                            function.
        :param destination_file: The name to give the file when it's deployed to
Lambda.
        :return: The deployment package.
        """
        buffer = io.BytesIO()
        with zipfile.ZipFile(buffer, "w") as zipped:
            zipped.write(source_file, destination_file)
        buffer.seek(0)
        return buffer.read()

    def get_iam_role(self, iam_role_name):
        """
        Get an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role.

        :param iam_role_name: The name of the role to retrieve.
        :return: The IAM role.
        """
        role = None
        try:
            temp_role = self.iam_resource.Role(iam_role_name)
            temp_role.load()
            role = temp_role
            logger.info("Got IAM role %s", role.name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                logger.info("IAM role %s does not exist.", iam_role_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get IAM role %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    iam_role_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return role

    def create_iam_role_for_lambda(self, iam_role_name):
        """
```

```
        Creates an IAM role that grants the Lambda function basic permissions. If
 a
        role with the specified name already exists, it is used for the demo.

        :param iam_role_name: The name of the role to create.
        :return: The role and a value that indicates whether the role is newly
 created.
        """
        role = self.get_iam_role(iam_role_name)
        if role is not None:
            return role, False

        lambda_assume_role_policy = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"

        try:
            role = self.iam_resource.create_role(
                RoleName=iam_role_name,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(lambda_assume_role_policy),
            )
            logger.info("Created role %s.", role.name)
            role.attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            logger.info("Attached basic execution policy to role %s.", role.name)
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                role = self.iam_resource.Role(iam_role_name)
                logger.warning("The role %s already exists. Using it.",
 iam_role_name)
            else:
                logger.exception(
                    "Couldn't create role %s or attach policy %s.",
                    iam_role_name,
                    policy_arn,
                )
```

```
                raise

        return role, True

    def get_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Gets data about a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function.
        :return: The function data.
        """
        response = None
        try:
            response =
self.lambda_client.get_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Function %s does not exist.", function_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    function_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response


    def create_function(
        self, function_name, handler_name, iam_role, deployment_package
    ):
        """
        Deploys a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
        :param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function.
This
                             must include the file name and the function name.
        :param iam_role: The IAM role to use for the function.
        :param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the
function
                                   code in .zip format.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.create_function(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Description="AWS Lambda doc example",
                Runtime="python3.9",
                Role=iam_role.arn,
                Handler=handler_name,
                Code={"ZipFile": deployment_package},
                Publish=True,
            )
            function_arn = response["FunctionArn"]
            waiter = self.lambda_client.get_waiter("function_active_v2")
            waiter.wait(FunctionName=function_name)
            logger.info(
                "Created function '%s' with ARN: '%s'.",
                function_name,
                response["FunctionArn"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.error("Couldn't create function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        else:
            return function_arn


    def delete_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Deletes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.lambda_client.delete_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete function %s.", function_name)
            raise


    def invoke_function(self, function_name, function_params, get_log=False):
        """
        Invokes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to invoke.
```

```
        :param function_params: The parameters of the function as a dict. This
dict
                                is serialized to JSON before it is sent to
Lambda.
        :param get_log: When true, the last 4 KB of the execution log are
included in
                        the response.
        :return: The response from the function invocation.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.invoke(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Payload=json.dumps(function_params),
                LogType="Tail" if get_log else "None",
            )
            logger.info("Invoked function %s.", function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't invoke function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        return response


    def update_function_code(self, function_name, deployment_package):
        """
        Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
contains
        the code for the function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes
in
                                   .zip format.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_code(
                FunctionName=function_name, ZipFile=deployment_package
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def update_function_configuration(self, function_name, env_vars):
        """
        Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param env_vars: A dict of environment variables to update.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_configuration(
                FunctionName=function_name, Environment={"Variables": env_vars}
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function configuration %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def list_functions(self):
        """
        Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
        """
        try:
            func_paginator = self.lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
            for func_page in func_paginator.paginate():
                for func in func_page["Functions"]:
                    print(func["FunctionName"])
                    desc = func.get("Description")
                    if desc:
                        print(f"\t{desc}")
                    print(f"\t{func['Runtime']}: {func['Handler']}")
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list functions. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Create a function that runs the scenario.

```
class UpdateFunctionWaiter(CustomWaiter):
    """A custom waiter that waits until a function is successfully updated."""

    def __init__(self, client):
        super().__init__(
            "UpdateSuccess",
            "GetFunction",
            "Configuration.LastUpdateStatus",
            {"Successful": WaitState.SUCCESS, "Failed": WaitState.FAILURE},
            client,
        )

    def wait(self, function_name):
        self._wait(FunctionName=function_name)


def run_scenario(lambda_client, iam_resource, basic_file, calculator_file,
 lambda_name):
    """
    Runs the scenario.

    :param lambda_client: A Boto3 Lambda client.
    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 IAM resource.
    :param basic_file: The name of the file that contains the basic Lambda
 handler.
    :param calculator_file: The name of the file that contains the calculator
 Lambda handler.
    :param lambda_name: The name to give resources created for the scenario, such
 as the
                        IAM role and the Lambda function.
```

```
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Lambda getting started with functions demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    wrapper = LambdaWrapper(lambda_client, iam_resource)

    print("Checking for IAM role for Lambda...")
    iam_role, should_wait = wrapper.create_iam_role_for_lambda(lambda_name)
    if should_wait:
        logger.info("Giving AWS time to create resources...")
        wait(10)

    print(f"Looking for function {lambda_name}...")
    function = wrapper.get_function(lambda_name)
    if function is None:
        print("Zipping the Python script into a deployment package...")
        deployment_package = wrapper.create_deployment_package(
            basic_file, f"{lambda_name}.py"
        )
        print(f"...and creating the {lambda_name} Lambda function.")
        wrapper.create_function(
            lambda_name, f"{lambda_name}.lambda_handler", iam_role,
deployment_package
        )
    else:
        print(f"Function {lambda_name} already exists.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's invoke {lambda_name}. This function increments a number.")
    action_params = {
        "action": "increment",
        "number": q.ask("Give me a number to increment: ", q.is_int),
    }
    print(f"Invoking {lambda_name}...")
    response = wrapper.invoke_function(lambda_name, action_params)
    print(
        f"Incrementing {action_params['number']} resulted in "
        f"{json.load(response['Payload'])}"
    )
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(f"Let's update the function to an arithmetic calculator.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    print("Creating a new deployment package...")
    deployment_package = wrapper.create_deployment_package(
        calculator_file, f"{lambda_name}.py"
    )
    print(f"...and updating the {lambda_name} Lambda function.")
    update_waiter = UpdateFunctionWaiter(lambda_client)
    wrapper.update_function_code(lambda_name, deployment_package)
    update_waiter.wait(lambda_name)
    print(f"This function uses an environment variable to control logging
level.")
    print(f"Let's set it to DEBUG to get the most logging.")
    wrapper.update_function_configuration(
        lambda_name, {"LOG_LEVEL": logging.getLevelName(logging.DEBUG)}
    )

    actions = ["plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"]
    want_invoke = True
    while want_invoke:
        print(f"Let's invoke {lambda_name}. You can invoke these actions:")
        for index, action in enumerate(actions):
            print(f"{index + 1}: {action}")
        action_params = {}
        action_index = q.ask(
            "Enter the number of the action you want to take: ",
            q.is_int,
            q.in_range(1, len(actions)),
        )
        action_params["action"] = actions[action_index - 1]
        print(f"You've chosen to invoke 'x {action_params['action']} y'.")
        action_params["x"] = q.ask("Enter a value for x: ", q.is_int)
        action_params["y"] = q.ask("Enter a value for y: ", q.is_int)
        print(f"Invoking {lambda_name}...")
        response = wrapper.invoke_function(lambda_name, action_params, True)
        print(
            f"Calculating {action_params['x']} {action_params['action']}
{action_params['y']} "
            f"resulted in {json.load(response['Payload'])}"
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to see the logs from the call.")
        print(base64.b64decode(response["LogResult"]).decode())
        want_invoke = q.ask("That was fun. Shall we do it again? (y/n) ",
q.is_yesno)
```

```
    print("-" * 88)

    if q.ask(
        "Do you want to list all of the functions in your account? (y/n) ",
 q.is_yesno
    ):
        wrapper.list_functions()
    print("-" * 88)

    if q.ask("Ready to delete the function and role? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno):
        for policy in iam_role.attached_policies.all():
            policy.detach_role(RoleName=iam_role.name)
        iam_role.delete()
        print(f"Deleted role {lambda_name}.")
        wrapper.delete_function(lambda_name)
        print(f"Deleted function {lambda_name}.")

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        run_scenario(
            boto3.client("lambda"),
            boto3.resource("iam"),
            "lambda_handler_basic.py",
            "lambda_handler_calculator.py",
            "doc_example_lambda_calculator",
        )
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode

- UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up pre-requisite IAM permissions for a Lambda function capable of writing logs.

```
# Get an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role.
#
# @param iam_role_name: The name of the role to retrieve.
# @param action: Whether to create or destroy the IAM apparatus.
# @return: The IAM role.
def manage_iam(iam_role_name, action)
  case action
  when 'create'
    create_iam_role(iam_role_name)
  when 'destroy'
    destroy_iam_role(iam_role_name)
  else
    raise "Incorrect action provided. Must provide 'create' or 'destroy'"
  end
end

private

def create_iam_role(iam_role_name)
  role_policy = {
    'Version': '2012-10-17',
    'Statement': [
      {
        'Effect': 'Allow',
        'Principal': { 'Service': 'lambda.amazonaws.com' },
        'Action': 'sts:AssumeRole'
      }
    ]
```

```
    }
    role = @iam_client.create_role(
      role_name: iam_role_name,
      assume_role_policy_document: role_policy.to_json
    )
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      {
        policy_arn: 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole',
        role_name: iam_role_name
      }
    )
    wait_for_role_to_exist(iam_role_name)
    @logger.debug("Successfully created IAM role: #{role['role']['arn']}")
    sleep(10)
    [role, role_policy.to_json]
  end

  def destroy_iam_role(iam_role_name)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      {
        policy_arn: 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole',
        role_name: iam_role_name
      }
    )
    @iam_client.delete_role(role_name: iam_role_name)
    @logger.debug("Detached policy & deleted IAM role: #{iam_role_name}")
  end

  def wait_for_role_to_exist(iam_role_name)
    @iam_client.wait_until(:role_exists, { role_name: iam_role_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  end
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number provided as an invocation parameter.

```
require 'logger'

# A function that increments a whole number by one (1) and logs the result.
```

```
# Requires a manually-provided runtime parameter, 'number', which must be Int
#
# @param event [Hash] Parameters sent when the function is invoked
# @param context [Hash] Methods and properties that provide information
# about the invocation, function, and execution environment.
# @return incremented_number [String] The incremented number.
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  log_level = ENV['LOG_LEVEL']
  logger.level = case log_level
                 when 'debug'
                   Logger::DEBUG
                 when 'info'
                   Logger::INFO
                 else
                   Logger::ERROR
                 end
  logger.debug('This is a debug log message.')
  logger.info('This is an info log message. Code executed successfully!')
  number = event['number'].to_i
  incremented_number = number + 1
  logger.info("You provided #{number.round} and it was incremented to
 #{incremented_number.round}")
  incremented_number.round.to_s
end
```

Zip your Lambda function into a deployment package.

```
  # Creates a Lambda deployment package in .zip format.
  #
  # @param source_file: The name of the object, without suffix, for the Lambda
 file and zip.
  # @return: The deployment package.
  def create_deployment_package(source_file)
    Dir.chdir(File.dirname(__FILE__))
    if File.exist?('lambda_function.zip')
      File.delete('lambda_function.zip')
      @logger.debug('Deleting old zip: lambda_function.zip')
    end
    Zip::File.open('lambda_function.zip', create: true) do |zipfile|
      zipfile.add('lambda_function.rb', "#{source_file}.rb")
    end
```

```
    @logger.debug("Zipping #{source_file}.rb into: lambda_function.zip.")
    File.read('lambda_function.zip').to_s
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("There was an error creating deployment package:\n
#{e.message}")
  end
```

Create a new Lambda function.

```
  # Deploys a Lambda function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
  # @param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function.
  # @param role_arn: The IAM role to use for the function.
  # @param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the function
code in .zip format.
  # @return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
  def create_function(function_name, handler_name, role_arn, deployment_package)
    response = @lambda_client.create_function({
                                                role: role_arn.to_s,
                                                function_name: function_name,
                                                handler: handler_name,
                                                runtime: 'ruby2.7',
                                                code: {
                                                  zip_file: deployment_package
                                                },
                                                environment: {
                                                  variables: {
                                                    'LOG_LEVEL' => 'info'
                                                  }
                                                }
                                              })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_active_v2, { function_name:
function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error creating #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
```

```
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n
#{e.message}")
  end
```

Invoke your Lambda function with optional runtime parameters.

```
  # Invokes a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name [String] The name of the function to invoke.
  # @param payload [nil] Payload containing runtime parameters.
  # @return [Object] The response from the function invocation.
  def invoke_function(function_name, payload = nil)
    params = { function_name: function_name }
    params[:payload] = payload unless payload.nil?
    @lambda_client.invoke(params)
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error executing #{function_name}:\n
#{e.message}")
  end
```

Update your Lambda function's configuration to inject a new environment variable.

```
  # Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param log_level: The log level of the function.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_configuration(function_name, log_level)
    @lambda_client.update_function_configuration({
                                                    function_name: function_name,
                                                    environment: {
                                                      variables: {
                                                        'LOG_LEVEL' => log_level
                                                      }
                                                    }
                                                  })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
```

```
    @logger.error("There was an error updating configurations for
#{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n
#{e.message}")
  end
```

Update your Lambda function's code with a different deployment package containing different code.

```
  # Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
contains
  # the code for the function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes in
  #                            .zip format.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_code(function_name, deployment_package)
    @lambda_client.update_function_code(
      function_name: function_name,
      zip_file: deployment_package
    )
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error updating function code for:
#{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
    nil
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to update:\n
#{e.message}")
  end
```

List all existing Lambda functions using the built-in paginator.

```
  # Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
  def list_functions
```

```
    functions = []
    @lambda_client.list_functions.each do |response|
      response['functions'].each do |function|
        functions.append(function['function_name'])
      end
    end
    functions
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error listing functions:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

Delete a specific Lambda function.

```
  # Deletes a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
  def delete_function(function_name)
    print "Deleting function: #{function_name}..."
    @lambda_client.delete_function(
      function_name: function_name
    )
    print 'Done!'.green
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error deleting #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The Cargo.toml with dependencies used in this scenario.

```
[package]
name = "lambda-code-examples"
version = "0.1.0"
edition = "2021"

# See more keys and their definitions at https://doc.rust-lang.org/cargo/
reference/manifest.html

[dependencies]
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-sdk-ec2 = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-iam = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-lambda = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-s3 = { version = "1.4.0" }
aws-smithy-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
clap = { version = "4.4", features = ["derive"] }
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full"] }
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }
tracing = "0.1.37"
serde_json = "1.0.94"
anyhow = "1.0.71"
uuid = { version = "1.3.3", features = ["v4"] }
lambda_runtime = "0.8.0"
serde = "1.0.164"
```

A collection of utilities that streamline calling Lambda for this scenario. This file is src/ations.rs in the crate.

```
use anyhow::anyhow;
use aws_sdk_iam::operation::{create_role::CreateRoleError,
 delete_role::DeleteRoleOutput};
use aws_sdk_lambda::{
    operation::{
        delete_function::DeleteFunctionOutput, get_function::GetFunctionOutput,
        invoke::InvokeOutput, list_functions::ListFunctionsOutput,
        update_function_code::UpdateFunctionCodeOutput,
        update_function_configuration::UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutput,
    },
    primitives::ByteStream,
    types::{Environment, FunctionCode, LastUpdateStatus, State},
};
use aws_sdk_s3::{
    error::ErrorMetadata,
    operation::{delete_bucket::DeleteBucketOutput,
 delete_object::DeleteObjectOutput},
    types::CreateBucketConfiguration,
};
use aws_smithy_types::Blob;
use serde::{ser::SerializeMap, Serialize};
use std::{fmt::Display, path::PathBuf, str::FromStr, time::Duration};
use tracing::{debug, info, warn};

/* Operation describes  */
#[derive(Clone, Copy, Debug, Serialize)]
pub enum Operation {
    #[serde(rename = "plus")]
    Plus,
    #[serde(rename = "minus")]
    Minus,
    #[serde(rename = "times")]
    Times,
    #[serde(rename = "divided-by")]
    DividedBy,
}

impl FromStr for Operation {
    type Err = anyhow::Error;

    fn from_str(s: &str) -> Result<Self, Self::Err> {
        match s {
```

```
            "plus" => Ok(Operation::Plus),
            "minus" => Ok(Operation::Minus),
            "times" => Ok(Operation::Times),
            "divided-by" => Ok(Operation::DividedBy),
            _ => Err(anyhow!("Unknown operation {s}")),
        }
    }
}

impl Display for Operation {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match self {
            Operation::Plus => write!(f, "plus"),
            Operation::Minus => write!(f, "minus"),
            Operation::Times => write!(f, "times"),
            Operation::DividedBy => write!(f, "divided-by"),
        }
    }
}

/**
 * InvokeArgs will be serialized as JSON and sent to the AWS Lambda handler.
 */
#[derive(Debug)]
pub enum InvokeArgs {
    Increment(i32),
    Arithmetic(Operation, i32, i32),
}

impl Serialize for InvokeArgs {
    fn serialize<S>(&self, serializer: S) -> Result<S::Ok, S::Error>
    where
        S: serde::Serializer,
    {
        match self {
            InvokeArgs::Increment(i) => serializer.serialize_i32(*i),
            InvokeArgs::Arithmetic(o, i, j) => {
                let mut map: S::SerializeMap =
 serializer.serialize_map(Some(3))?;
                map.serialize_key(&"op".to_string())?;
                map.serialize_value(&o.to_string())?;
                map.serialize_key(&"i".to_string())?;
                map.serialize_value(&i)?;
                map.serialize_key(&"j".to_string())?;
```

```
                map.serialize_value(&j)?;
                map.end()
            }
        }
    }
}

/** A policy document allowing Lambda to execute this function on the account's
 behalf. */
const ROLE_POLICY_DOCUMENT: &str = r#"{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": { "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com" },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}"#;

/**
 * A LambdaManager gathers all the resources necessary to run the Lambda example
 scenario.
 * This includes instantiated aws_sdk clients and details of resource names.
 */
pub struct LambdaManager {
    iam_client: aws_sdk_iam::Client,
    lambda_client: aws_sdk_lambda::Client,
    s3_client: aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    lambda_name: String,
    role_name: String,
    bucket: String,
    own_bucket: bool,
}

// These unit type structs provide nominal typing on top of String parameters for
 LambdaManager::new
pub struct LambdaName(pub String);
pub struct RoleName(pub String);
pub struct Bucket(pub String);
pub struct OwnBucket(pub bool);

impl LambdaManager {
    pub fn new(
```

```
        iam_client: aws_sdk_iam::Client,
        lambda_client: aws_sdk_lambda::Client,
        s3_client: aws_sdk_s3::Client,
        lambda_name: LambdaName,
        role_name: RoleName,
        bucket: Bucket,
        own_bucket: OwnBucket,
    ) -> Self {
        Self {
            iam_client,
            lambda_client,
            s3_client,
            lambda_name: lambda_name.0,
            role_name: role_name.0,
            bucket: bucket.0,
            own_bucket: own_bucket.0,
        }
    }

    /**
     * Load the AWS configuration from the environment.
     * Look up lambda_name and bucket if none are given, or generate a random
name if not present in the environment.
     * If the bucket name is provided, the caller needs to have created the
bucket.
     * If the bucket name is generated, it will be created.
     */
    pub async fn load_from_env(lambda_name: Option<String>, bucket:
Option<String>) -> Self {
        let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
        let lambda_name = LambdaName(lambda_name.unwrap_or_else(|| {
            std::env::var("LAMBDA_NAME").unwrap_or_else(|_|
"rust_lambda_example".to_string())
        }));
        let role_name = RoleName(format!("{}_role", lambda_name.0));
        let (bucket, own_bucket) =
            match bucket {
                Some(bucket) => (Bucket(bucket), false),
                None => (
                    Bucket(std::env::var("LAMBDA_BUCKET").unwrap_or_else(|_| {
                        format!("rust-lambda-example-{}", uuid::Uuid::new_v4())
                    })),
                    true,
                ),
```

```
            };

        let s3_client = aws_sdk_s3::Client::new(&sdk_config);

        if own_bucket {
            info!("Creating bucket for demo: {}", bucket.0);
            s3_client
                .create_bucket()
                .bucket(bucket.0.clone())
                .create_bucket_configuration(
                    CreateBucketConfiguration::builder()

 .location_constraint(aws_sdk_s3::types::BucketLocationConstraint::from(
                            sdk_config.region().unwrap().as_ref(),
                        ))
                        .build(),
                )
                .send()
                .await
                .unwrap();
        }

        Self::new(
            aws_sdk_iam::Client::new(&sdk_config),
            aws_sdk_lambda::Client::new(&sdk_config),
            s3_client,
            lambda_name,
            role_name,
            bucket,
            OwnBucket(own_bucket),
        )
    }

    /**
     * Upload function code from a path to a zip file.
     * The zip file must have an AL2 Linux-compatible binary called `bootstrap`.
     * The easiest way to create such a zip is to use `cargo lambda build --
output-format Zip`.
     */
    async fn prepare_function(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<FunctionCode, anyhow::Error> {
```

```
        let body = ByteStream::from_path(zip_file).await?;

        let key = key.unwrap_or_else(|| format!("{}_code", self.lambda_name));

        info!("Uploading function code to s3://{}/{}", self.bucket, key);
        let _ = self
            .s3_client
            .put_object()
            .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .key(key.clone())
            .body(body)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(FunctionCode::builder()
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(key)
            .build())
    }

    /**
     * Create a function, uploading from a zip file.
     */
    pub async fn create_function(&self, zip_file: PathBuf) -> Result<String,
anyhow::Error> {
        let code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, None).await?;

        let key = code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string();

        let role = self.create_role().await.map_err(|e| anyhow!(e))?;

        info!("Created iam role, waiting 15s for it to become active");
        tokio::time::sleep(Duration::from_secs(15)).await;

        info!("Creating lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let _ = self
            .lambda_client
            .create_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .code(code)
            .role(role.arn())
            .runtime(aws_sdk_lambda::types::Runtime::Providedal2)
            .handler("_unused")
            .send()
```

```
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        self.lambda_client
            .publish_version()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(key)
    }

    /**
     * Create an IAM execution role for the managed Lambda function.
     * If the role already exists, use that instead.
     */
    async fn create_role(&self) -> Result<aws_sdk_iam::types::Role,
CreateRoleError> {
        info!("Creating execution role for function");
        let get_role = self
            .iam_client
            .get_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Ok(get_role) = get_role {
            if let Some(role) = get_role.role {
                return Ok(role);
            }
        }

        let create_role = self
            .iam_client
            .create_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .assume_role_policy_document(ROLE_POLICY_DOCUMENT)
            .send()
            .await;

        match create_role {
            Ok(create_role) => match create_role.role {
                Some(role) => Ok(role),
```

```
                None => Err(CreateRoleError::generic(
                    ErrorMetadata::builder()
                        .message("CreateRole returned empty success")
                        .build(),
                )),
            },
            Err(err) => Err(err.into_service_error()),
        }
    }

    /**
     * Poll `is_function_ready` with a 1-second delay. It returns when the
function is ready or when there's an error checking the function's state.
     */
    pub async fn wait_for_function_ready(&self) -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
        info!("Waiting for function");
        while !self.is_function_ready(None).await? {
            info!("Function is not ready, sleeping 1s");
            tokio::time::sleep(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    /**
     * Check if a Lambda function is ready to be invoked.
     * A Lambda function is ready for this scenario when its state is active and
its LastUpdateStatus is Successful.
     * Additionally, if a sha256 is provided, the function must have that as its
current code hash.
     * Any missing properties or failed requests will be reported as an Err.
     */
    async fn is_function_ready(
        &self,
        expected_code_sha256: Option<&str>,
    ) -> Result<bool, anyhow::Error> {
        match self.get_function().await {
            Ok(func) => {
                if let Some(config) = func.configuration() {
                    if let Some(state) = config.state() {
                        info!(?state, "Checking if function is active");
                        if !matches!(state, State::Active) {
                            return Ok(false);
                        }
                    }
```

```
                    match config.last_update_status() {
                        Some(last_update_status) => {
                            info!(?last_update_status, "Checking if function is
ready");
                            match last_update_status {
                                LastUpdateStatus::Successful => {
                                    // continue
                                }
                                LastUpdateStatus::Failed |
LastUpdateStatus::InProgress => {
                                    return Ok(false);
                                }
                                unknown => {
                                    warn!(
                                        status_variant = unknown.as_str(),
                                        "LastUpdateStatus unknown"
                                    );
                                    return Err(anyhow!(
                                        "Unknown LastUpdateStatus, fn config is
{config:?}"
                                    ));
                                }
                            }
                        }
                        None => {
                            warn!("Missing last update status");
                            return Ok(false);
                        }
                    };
                    if expected_code_sha256.is_none() {
                        return Ok(true);
                    }
                    if let Some(code_sha256) = config.code_sha256() {
                        return Ok(code_sha256 ==
expected_code_sha256.unwrap_or_default());
                    }
                }
            }
            Err(e) => {
                warn!(?e, "Could not get function while waiting");
            }
        }
        Ok(false)
    }
```

```
   /** Get the Lambda function with this Manager's name. */
   pub async fn get_function(&self) -> Result<GetFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>
{
       info!("Getting lambda function");
       self.lambda_client
           .get_function()
           .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
           .send()
           .await
           .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
   }

   /** List all Lambda functions in the current Region. */
   pub async fn list_functions(&self) -> Result<ListFunctionsOutput,
anyhow::Error> {
       info!("Listing lambda functions");
       self.lambda_client
           .list_functions()
           .send()
           .await
           .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
   }

   /** Invoke the lambda function using calculator InvokeArgs. */
   pub async fn invoke(&self, args: InvokeArgs) -> Result<InvokeOutput,
anyhow::Error> {
       info!(?args, "Invoking {}", self.lambda_name);
       let payload = serde_json::to_string(&args)?;
       debug!(?payload, "Sending payload");
       self.lambda_client
           .invoke()
           .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
           .payload(Blob::new(payload))
           .send()
           .await
           .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
   }

   /** Given a Path to a zip file, update the function's code and wait for the
update to finish. */
   pub async fn update_function_code(
       &self,
       zip_file: PathBuf,
```

```
        key: String,
    ) -> Result<UpdateFunctionCodeOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        let function_code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, Some(key)).await?;

        info!("Updating code for {}", self.lambda_name);
        let update = self
            .lambda_client
            .update_function_code()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(function_code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        Ok(update)
    }

    /** Update the environment for a function. */
    pub async fn update_function_configuration(
        &self,
        environment: Environment,
    ) -> Result<UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        info!(
            ?environment,
            "Updating environment for {}", self.lambda_name
        );
        let updated = self
            .lambda_client
            .update_function_configuration()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .environment(environment)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        Ok(updated)
    }
```

```
    /** Delete a function and its role, and if possible or necessary, its
associated code object and bucket. */
    pub async fn delete_function(
        &self,
        location: Option<String>,
    ) -> (
        Result<DeleteFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Result<DeleteRoleOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
    ) {
        info!("Deleting lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let delete_function = self
            .lambda_client
            .delete_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        info!("Deleting iam role {}", self.role_name);
        let delete_role = self
            .iam_client
            .delete_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        let delete_object: Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>> =
            if let Some(location) = location {
                info!("Deleting object {location}");
                Some(
                    self.s3_client
                        .delete_object()
                        .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
                        .key(location)
                        .send()
                        .await
                        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from),
                )
            } else {
                info!(?location, "Skipping delete object");
                None
            };
```

```
        (delete_function, delete_role, delete_object)
    }

    pub async fn cleanup(
        &self,
        location: Option<String>,
    ) -> (
        (
            Result<DeleteFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>,
            Result<DeleteRoleOutput, anyhow::Error>,
            Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
        ),
        Option<Result<DeleteBucketOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
    ) {
        let delete_function = self.delete_function(location).await;

        let delete_bucket = if self.own_bucket {
            info!("Deleting bucket {}", self.bucket);
            if delete_function.2.is_none() ||
 delete_function.2.as_ref().unwrap().is_ok() {
                Some(
                    self.s3_client
                        .delete_bucket()
                        .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
                        .send()
                        .await
                        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from),
                )
            } else {
                None
            }
        } else {
            info!("No bucket to clean up");
            None
        };

        (delete_function, delete_bucket)
    }
}

/**
 * Testing occurs primarily as an integration test running the `scenario` bin
 successfully.
```

```
 * Each action relies deeply on the internal workings and state of Amazon Simple
 Storage Service (Amazon S3), Lambda, and IAM working together.
 * It is therefore infeasible to mock the clients to test the individual actions.
 */
#[cfg(test)]
mod test {
    use super::{InvokeArgs, Operation};
    use serde_json::json;

    /** Make sure that the JSON output of serializing InvokeArgs is what's
 expected by the calculator. */
    #[test]
    fn test_serialize() {
        assert_eq!(json!(InvokeArgs::Increment(5)), 5);
        assert_eq!(
            json!(InvokeArgs::Arithmetic(Operation::Plus, 5, 7)).to_string(),
            r#"{"op":"plus","i":5,"j":7}"#.to_string(),
        );
    }
}
```

A binary to run the scenario from front to end, using command line flags to control some behavior. This file is src/bin/scenario.rs in the crate.

```
/*
## Service actions

Service actions wrap the SDK call, taking a client and any specific parameters
 necessary for the call.

* CreateFunction
* GetFunction
* ListFunctions
* Invoke
* UpdateFunctionCode
* UpdateFunctionConfiguration
* DeleteFunction

## Scenario
```

```
A scenario runs at a command prompt and prints output to the user on the result
 of each service action. A scenario can run in one of two ways: straight through,
 printing out progress as it goes, or as an interactive question/answer script.

## Getting started with functions

Use an SDK to manage AWS Lambda functions: create a function, invoke it, update
 its code, invoke it again, view its output and logs, and delete it.

This scenario uses two Lambda handlers:
_Note: Handlers don't use AWS SDK API calls._

The increment handler is straightforward:

1. It accepts a number, increments it, and returns the new value.
2. It performs simple logging of the result.

The arithmetic handler is more complex:
1. It accepts a set of actions ['plus', 'minus', 'times', 'divided-by'] and two
 numbers, and returns the result of the calculation.
2. It uses an environment variable to control log level (such as DEBUG, INFO,
 WARNING, ERROR).
It logs a few things at different levels, such as:
    * DEBUG: Full event data.
    * INFO: The calculation result.
    * WARN~ING~: When a divide by zero error occurs.
    * This will be the typical `RUST_LOG` variable.


The steps of the scenario are:

1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that meets the
 following requirements:
    * Has an assume_role policy that grants 'lambda.amazonaws.com' the
 'sts:AssumeRole' action.
    * Attaches the 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole' managed role.
    * _You must wait for ~10 seconds after the role is created before you can use
 it!_
2. Create a function (CreateFunction) for the increment handler by packaging it
 as a zip and doing one of the following:
    * Adding it with CreateFunction Code.ZipFile.
    * --or--
```

```
    * Uploading it to Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and adding it
 with CreateFunction Code.S3Bucket/S3Key.
    * _Note: Zipping the file does not have to be done in code._
    * If you have a waiter, use it to wait until the function is active.
 Otherwise, call GetFunction until State is Active.
3. Invoke the function with a number and print the result.
4. Update the function (UpdateFunctionCode) to the arithmetic handler by
 packaging it as a zip and doing one of the following:
    * Adding it with UpdateFunctionCode ZipFile.
    * --or--
    * Uploading it to Amazon S3 and adding it with UpdateFunctionCode S3Bucket/
S3Key.
5. Call GetFunction until Configuration.LastUpdateStatus is 'Successful' (or
 'Failed').
6. Update the environment variable by calling UpdateFunctionConfiguration and
 pass it a log level, such as:
    * Environment={'Variables': {'RUST_LOG': 'TRACE'}}
7. Invoke the function with an action from the list and a couple of values.
 Include LogType='Tail' to get logs in the result. Print the result of the
 calculation and the log.
8. [Optional] Invoke the function to provoke a divide-by-zero error and show the
 log result.
9. List all functions for the account, using pagination (ListFunctions).
10. Delete the function (DeleteFunction).
11. Delete the role.

Each step should use the function created in Service Actions to abstract calling
 the SDK.
 */

use aws_sdk_lambda::{operation::invoke::InvokeOutput, types::Environment};
use clap::Parser;
use std::{collections::HashMap, path::PathBuf};
use tracing::{debug, info, warn};
use tracing_subscriber::EnvFilter;

use lambda_code_examples::actions::{
    InvokeArgs::{Arithmetic, Increment},
    LambdaManager, Operation,
};

#[derive(Debug, Parser)]
pub struct Opt {
    /// The AWS Region.
```

```
    #[structopt(short, long)]
    pub region: Option<String>,

    // The bucket to use for the FunctionCode.
    #[structopt(short, long)]
    pub bucket: Option<String>,

    // The name of the Lambda function.
    #[structopt(short, long)]
    pub lambda_name: Option<String>,

    // The number to increment.
    #[structopt(short, long, default_value = "12")]
    pub inc: i32,

    // The left operand.
    #[structopt(long, default_value = "19")]
    pub num_a: i32,

    // The right operand.
    #[structopt(long, default_value = "23")]
    pub num_b: i32,

    // The arithmetic operation.
    #[structopt(short, long, default_value = "plus")]
    pub operation: Operation,

    #[structopt(long)]
    pub cleanup: Option<bool>,

    #[structopt(long)]
    pub no_cleanup: Option<bool>,
}

fn code_path(lambda: &str) -> PathBuf {
    PathBuf::from(format!("../target/lambda/{lambda}/bootstrap.zip"))
}

fn log_invoke_output(invoke: &InvokeOutput, message: &str) {
    if let Some(payload) = invoke.payload().cloned() {
        let payload = String::from_utf8(payload.into_inner());
        info!(?payload, message);
    } else {
        info!("Could not extract payload")
```

```
    }
    if let Some(logs) = invoke.log_result() {
        debug!(?logs, "Invoked function logs")
    } else {
        debug!("Invoked function had no logs")
    }
}

async fn main_block(
    opt: &Opt,
    manager: &LambdaManager,
    code_location: String,
) -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
    let invoke = manager.invoke(Increment(opt.inc)).await?;
    log_invoke_output(&invoke, "Invoked function configured as increment");

    let update_code = manager
        .update_function_code(code_path("arithmetic"), code_location.clone())
        .await?;

    let code_sha256 = update_code.code_sha256().unwrap_or("Unknown SHA");
    info!(?code_sha256, "Updated function code with arithmetic.zip");

    let arithmetic_args = Arithmetic(opt.operation, opt.num_a, opt.num_b);
    let invoke = manager.invoke(arithmetic_args).await?;
    log_invoke_output(&invoke, "Invoked function configured as arithmetic");

    let update = manager
        .update_function_configuration(
            Environment::builder()
                .set_variables(Some(HashMap::from([(
                    "RUST_LOG".to_string(),
                    "trace".to_string(),
                )])))
                .build(),
        )
        .await?;
    let updated_environment = update.environment();
    info!(?updated_environment, "Updated function configuration");

    let invoke = manager
        .invoke(Arithmetic(opt.operation, opt.num_a, opt.num_b))
        .await?;
    log_invoke_output(
```

```
        &invoke,
        "Invoked function configured as arithmetic with increased logging",
    );

    let invoke = manager
        .invoke(Arithmetic(Operation::DividedBy, opt.num_a, 0))
        .await?;
    log_invoke_output(
        &invoke,
        "Invoked function configured as arithmetic with divide by zero",
    );

    Ok::<(), anyhow::Error>(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .without_time()
        .with_file(true)
        .with_line_number(true)
        .with_env_filter(EnvFilter::from_default_env())
        .init();

    let opt = Opt::parse();
    let manager = LambdaManager::load_from_env(opt.lambda_name.clone(),
 opt.bucket.clone()).await;

    let key = match manager.create_function(code_path("increment")).await {
        Ok(init) => {
            info!(?init, "Created function, initially with increment.zip");
            let run_block = main_block(&opt, &manager, init.clone()).await;
            info!(?run_block, "Finished running example, cleaning up");
            Some(init)
        }
        Err(err) => {
            warn!(?err, "Error happened when initializing function");
            None
        }
    };

    if Some(false) == opt.cleanup || Some(true) == opt.no_cleanup {
        info!("Skipping cleanup")
    } else {
```

```
        let delete = manager.cleanup(key).await;
        info!(?delete, "Deleted function & cleaned up resources");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        "Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that grants AWS
 Lambda permission to write to logs."
        DATA(lv_policy_document) = `{` &&
            `"Version":"2012-10-17",` &&
                  `"Statement": [` &&
                    `{` &&
                      `"Effect": "Allow",` &&
                      `"Action": [` &&
                        `"sts:AssumeRole"` &&
                      `],` &&
                      `"Principal": {` &&
```

```
                        `"Service": [` &&
                          `"lambda.amazonaws.com"` &&
                        `]` &&
                      `}` &&
                    `}` &&
                  `]` &&
                `}`.
        TRY.
            DATA(lo_create_role_output) = lo_iam->createrole(
                    iv_rolename = iv_role_name
                    iv_assumerolepolicydocument = lv_policy_document
                    iv_description = 'Grant lambda permission to write to
 logs' ).
            DATA(lv_role_arn) = lo_create_role_output->get_role( )->get_arn( ).
            MESSAGE 'IAM role created.' TYPE 'I'.
            WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.            " Make sure that the IAM role is
 ready for use. "
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamentityalrdyexex.
            DATA(lo_role) = lo_iam->getrole( iv_rolename = iv_role_name ).
            lv_role_arn = lo_role->get_role( )->get_arn( ).
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iaminvalidinputex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iammalformedplydocex.
            MESSAGE 'Policy document in the request is malformed.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        TRY.
            lo_iam->attachrolepolicy(
                iv_rolename  = iv_role_name
                iv_policyarn = 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole' ).
            MESSAGE 'Attached policy to the IAM role.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iaminvalidinputex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamnosuchentityex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource entity does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamplynotattachableex.
            MESSAGE 'Service role policies can only be attached to the service-
linked role for their service.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamunmodableentityex.
            MESSAGE 'Service that depends on the service-linked role is not
 modifiable.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.
```

```
        " Create a Lambda function and upload handler code. "
        " Lambda function performs 'increment' action on a number. "
        TRY.
            lo_lmd->createfunction(
                 iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                 iv_runtime = `python3.9`
                 iv_role = lv_role_arn
                 iv_handler = iv_handler
                 io_code = io_initial_zip_file
                 iv_description = 'AWS Lambda code example' ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function created.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
            MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Verify the function is in Active state "
        WHILE lo_lmd->getfunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name )-
>get_configuration( )->ask_state( ) <> 'Active'.
          IF sy-index = 10.
            EXIT.               " Maximum 10 seconds. "
          ENDIF.
          WAIT UP TO 1 SECONDS.
        ENDWHILE.

        "Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results."
        TRY.
            DATA(lv_json) = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring(
              `{`  &&
                `"action": "increment",`  &&
                `"number": 10` &&
              `}` ).
            DATA(lo_initial_invoke_output) = lo_lmd->invoke(
                       iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                       iv_payload = lv_json ).
            ov_initial_invoke_payload = lo_initial_invoke_output->get_payload( ).
           " ov_initial_invoke_payload is returned for testing purposes. "
            DATA(lo_writer_json) = cl_sxml_string_writer=>create( type =
 if_sxml=>co_xt_json ).
            CALL TRANSFORMATION id SOURCE XML ov_initial_invoke_payload RESULT
 XML lo_writer_json.
```

```
            DATA(lv_result) = cl_abap_codepage=>convert_from( lo_writer_json-
>get_output( ) ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function invoked.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvrequestcontex.
            MESSAGE 'Unable to parse request body as JSON.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdunsuppedmediatyp00.
            MESSAGE 'Invoke request body does not have JSON as its content type.'
 TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Update the function code and configure its Lambda environment with an
 environment variable. "
        " Lambda function is updated to perform 'decrement' action also. "
        TRY.
            lo_lmd->updatefunctioncode(
                  iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                  iv_zipfile = io_updated_zip_file ).
            WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.            " Make sure that the update is
 completed. "
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function code updated.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
            MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        TRY.
            DATA lt_variables TYPE /aws1/
cl_lmdenvironmentvaria00=>tt_environmentvariables.
            DATA ls_variable LIKE LINE OF lt_variables.
            ls_variable-key = 'LOG_LEVEL'.
            ls_variable-value = NEW /aws1/cl_lmdenvironmentvaria00( iv_value =
 'info' ).
            INSERT ls_variable INTO TABLE lt_variables.

            lo_lmd->updatefunctionconfiguration(
                  iv_functionname = iv_function_name
```

```
                  io_environment = NEW /aws1/cl_lmdenvironment( it_variables =
 lt_variables ) ).
            WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.            " Make sure that the update is
 completed. "
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function configuration/settings updated.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
            MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in
 progress.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        "Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the
 execution log that's returned from the invocation."
        TRY.
            lv_json = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring(
              `{`  &&
                `"action": "decrement",`  &&
                `"number": 10` &&
              `}` ).
            DATA(lo_updated_invoke_output) = lo_lmd->invoke(
                       iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                       iv_payload = lv_json ).
            ov_updated_invoke_payload = lo_updated_invoke_output->get_payload( ).
           " ov_updated_invoke_payload is returned for testing purposes. "
            lo_writer_json = cl_sxml_string_writer=>create( type =
 if_sxml=>co_xt_json ).
            CALL TRANSFORMATION id SOURCE XML ov_updated_invoke_payload RESULT
 XML lo_writer_json.
            lv_result = cl_abap_codepage=>convert_from( lo_writer_json-
>get_output( ) ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function invoked.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvrequestcontex.
            MESSAGE 'Unable to parse request body as JSON.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdunsuppedmediatyp00.
            MESSAGE 'Invoke request body does not have JSON as its content type.'
 TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.
```

```
        " List the functions for your account. "
        TRY.
            DATA(lo_list_output) = lo_lmd->listfunctions( ).
            DATA(lt_functions) = lo_list_output->get_functions( ).
            MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of Lambda functions.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Delete the Lambda function. "
        TRY.
            lo_lmd->deletefunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'W'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Detach role policy. "
        TRY.
            lo_iam->detachrolepolicy(
                iv_rolename  = iv_role_name
                iv_policyarn = 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole' ).
            MESSAGE 'Detached policy from the IAM role.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iaminvalidinputex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamnosuchentityex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource entity does not exist.' TYPE 'W'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamplynotattachableex.
            MESSAGE 'Service role policies can only be attached to the service-
linked role for their service.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamunmodableentityex.
            MESSAGE 'Service that depends on the service-linked role is not
 modifiable.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Delete the IAM role. "
        TRY.
            lo_iam->deleterole( iv_rolename = iv_role_name ).
            MESSAGE 'IAM role deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamnosuchentityex.
```

```
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource entity does not exist.' TYPE 'W'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamunmodableentityex.
            MESSAGE 'Service that depends on the service-linked role is not
modifiable.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO lo_exception.
        DATA(lv_error) = lo_exception->get_longtext( ).
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define the first Lambda function, which simply increments the specified value.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.
```

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "increment",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/swift-server/swift-aws-lambda-runtime.git",
            branch: "main"),
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "increment",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSLambdaRuntime", package: "swift-aws-lambda-
runtime"),
            ],
            path: "Sources"
        )
    ]
)

import Foundation
import AWSLambdaRuntime

/// Represents the contents of the requests being received from the client.
/// This structure must be `Decodable` to indicate that its initializer
/// converts an external representation into this type.
struct Request: Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The number to act upon.
    let number: Int
}
```

```
/// The contents of the response sent back to the client. This must be
/// `Encodable`.
struct Response: Encodable, Sendable {
    /// The resulting value after performing the action.
    let answer: Int?
}


/// The Lambda function body.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - event: The `Request` describing the request made by the
///     client.
///   - context: A `LambdaContext` describing the context in
///     which the lambda function is running.
///
/// - Returns: A `Response` object that will be encoded to JSON and sent
///   to the client by the Lambda runtime.
let incrementLambdaRuntime = LambdaRuntime {
        (event: Request, context: LambdaContext) -> Response in
    let action = event.action
    var answer: Int?

    if action != "increment" {
        context.logger.error("Unrecognized operation: \"\(action)\". The only
 supported action is \"increment\".")
    } else {
        answer = event.number + 1
        context.logger.info("The calculated answer is \(answer!).")
    }

    let response = Response(answer: answer)
    return response
}

// Run the Lambda runtime code.

try await incrementLambdaRuntime.run()
```

Define the second Lambda function, which performs an arithmetic operation on two numbers.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "calculator",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/swift-server/swift-aws-lambda-runtime.git",
            branch: "main"),
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "calculator",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSLambdaRuntime", package: "swift-aws-lambda-
runtime"),
            ],
            path: "Sources"
        )
    ]
)

import Foundation
import AWSLambdaRuntime

/// Represents the contents of the requests being received from the client.
/// This structure must be `Decodable` to indicate that its initializer
/// converts an external representation into this type.
```

```
struct Request: Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The first number to act upon.
    let x: Int
    /// The second number to act upon.
    let y: Int
}

/// A dictionary mapping operation names to closures that perform that
/// operation and return the result.
let actions = [
    "plus": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x + y
    },
    "minus": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x - y
    },
    "times": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x * y
    },
    "divided-by": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x / y
    }
]

/// The contents of the response sent back to the client. This must be
/// `Encodable`.
struct Response: Encodable, Sendable {
    /// The resulting value after performing the action.
    let answer: Int?
}


/// The Lambda function's entry point. Called by the Lambda runtime.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - event: The `Request` describing the request made by the
///     client.
///   - context: A `LambdaContext` describing the context in
///     which the lambda function is running.
///
/// - Returns: A `Response` object that will be encoded to JSON and sent
///   to the client by the Lambda runtime.
```

```
let calculatorLambdaRuntime = LambdaRuntime {
        (_ event: Request, context: LambdaContext) -> Response in
    let action = event.action
    var answer: Int?
    var actionFunc: ((Int, Int) -> Int)?

    // Get the closure to run to perform the calculation.

    actionFunc = await actions[action]

    guard let actionFunc else {
        context.logger.error("Unrecognized operation '\(action)\'")
        return Response(answer: nil)
    }

    // Perform the calculation and return the answer.

    answer = actionFunc(event.x, event.y)

    guard let answer else {
        context.logger.error("Error computing \(event.x) \(action) \(event.y)")
    }
    context.logger.info("\(event.x) \(action) \(event.y) = \(answer)")

    return Response(answer: answer)
}

try await calculatorLambdaRuntime.run()
```

Define the main program that will invoke the two Lambda functions.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "lambda-basics",
```

```
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "lambda-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSLambda", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "AWSIAM", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources"
        )
    ]
)

//
/// An example demonstrating a variety of important AWS Lambda functions.

import ArgumentParser
import AWSIAM
import SmithyWaitersAPI
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

/// Represents the contents of the requests being received from the client.
/// This structure must be `Decodable` to indicate that its initializer
```

```
/// converts an external representation into this type.
struct IncrementRequest: Encodable, Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The number to act upon.
    let number: Int
}

struct Response: Encodable, Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The resulting value after performing the action.
    let answer: Int?
}

struct CalculatorRequest: Encodable, Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The first number to act upon.
    let x: Int
    /// The second number to act upon.
    let y: Int
}

let exampleName = "SwiftLambdaRoleExample"
let basicsFunctionName = "lambda-basics-function"

/// The ARN of the standard IAM policy for execution of Lambda functions.
let policyARN = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    // -MARK: Command arguments
    @Option(help: "Name of the IAM Role to use for the Lambda functions")
    var role = exampleName
    @Option(help: "Zip archive containing the 'increment' lambda function")
    var incpath: String
    @Option(help: "Zip archive containing the 'calculator' lambda function")
    var calcpath: String
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon S3 Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "lambda-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example demonstrates several common operations using AWS Lambda.
```

```
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Returns the specified IAM role object.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - iamClient: `IAMClient` to use when looking for the role.
    ///   - roleName: The name of the role to check.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `IAMClientTypes.Role` representing the specified role.
    func getRole(iamClient: IAMClient, roleName: String) async throws
                 -> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        do {
            let roleOutput = try await iamClient.getRole(
                input: GetRoleInput(
                    roleName: roleName
                )
            )

            guard let role = roleOutput.role else {
                throw ExampleError.roleNotFound
            }
            return role
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.roleNotFound
        }
    }

    /// Create the AWS IAM role that will be used to access AWS Lambda.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - iamClient: The AWS `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - roleName: The name of the AWS IAM role to use for Lambda.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.roleCreateError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `IAMClientTypes.Role` struct that describes the new role.
    func createRoleForLambda(iamClient: IAMClient, roleName: String) async throws
-> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        let output = try await iamClient.createRole(
            input: CreateRoleInput(
                assumeRolePolicyDocument:
```

```
                """
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Principal": {"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
                            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                        }
                    ]
                }
                """,
                roleName: roleName
            )
        )

        guard let role = output.role else {
            throw ExampleError.roleCreateError
        }

        // Wait for the role to be ready for use.

        _ = try await iamClient.waitUntilRoleExists(
            options: WaiterOptions(
                maxWaitTime: 20,
                minDelay: 0.5,
                maxDelay: 2
            ),
            input: GetRoleInput(roleName: roleName)
        )

        return role
    }

    /// Detect whether or not the AWS Lambda function with the specified name
    /// exists, by requesting its function information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the AWS Lambda function to find.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the Lambda function exists. Otherwise `false`.
    func doesLambdaFunctionExist(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, name: String) async
 -> Bool {
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.getFunction(
                input: GetFunctionInput(functionName: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Create the specified AWS Lambda function.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to create.
    ///   - roleArn: The ARN of the role to apply to the function.
    ///   - path: The path of the Zip archive containing the function.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the AWS Lambda was successfully created; `false`
    ///   if it wasn't.
    func createFunction(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String,
                                roleArn: String?, path: String) async throws ->
Bool {
        do {
            // Read the Zip archive containing the AWS Lambda function.

            let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
            let zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)

            // Create the AWS Lambda function that runs the specified code,
            // using the name given on the command line. The Lambda function
            // will run using the Amazon Linux 2 runtime.

            _ = try await lambdaClient.createFunction(
                input: CreateFunctionInput(
                    code: LambdaClientTypes.FunctionCode(zipFile: zipData),
                    functionName: functionName,
                    handler: "handle",
                    role: roleArn,
                    runtime: .providedal2
                )
            )
        } catch {
```

```
            print("*** Error creating Lambda function:")
            dump(error)
            return false
        }

        // Wait for a while to be sure the function is done being created.

        let output = try await lambdaClient.waitUntilFunctionActiveV2(
            options: WaiterOptions(
                maxWaitTime: 20,
                minDelay: 0.5,
                maxDelay: 2
            ),
            input: GetFunctionInput(functionName: functionName)
        )

        switch output.result {
            case .success:
                return true
            case .failure:
                return false
        }
    }

    /// Update the AWS Lambda function with new code to run when the function
    /// is invoked.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to update.
    ///   - path: The pathname of the Zip file containing the packaged Lambda
    ///     function.
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.zipFileReadError`
    /// - Returns: `true` if the function's code is updated successfully.
    ///   Otherwise, returns `false`.
    func updateFunctionCode(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String,
                            path: String) async throws -> Bool {
        let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
        let zipData: Data

        // Read the function's Zip file.

        do {
            zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)
```

```
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.zipFileReadError
        }

        // Update the function's code and wait for the updated version to be
        // ready for use.

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionCode(
                input: UpdateFunctionCodeInput(
                    functionName: functionName,
                    zipFile: zipData
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        let output = try await lambdaClient.waitUntilFunctionUpdatedV2(
            options: WaiterOptions(
                maxWaitTime: 20,
                minDelay: 0.5,
                maxDelay: 2
            ),
            input: GetFunctionInput(
                functionName: functionName
            )
        )

        switch output.result {
            case .success:
                return true
            case .failure:
                return false
        }
    }

    /// Tell the server-side component to log debug output by setting its
    /// environment's `LOG_LEVEL` to `DEBUG`.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to enable debug
    ///     logging for.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`
    func enableDebugLogging(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String)
 async throws {
        let envVariables = [
            "LOG_LEVEL": "DEBUG"
        ]
        let environment = LambdaClientTypes.Environment(variables: envVariables)

        do {
            let output = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionConfiguration(
                input: UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput(
                    environment: environment,
                    functionName: functionName
                )
            )

            guard let response = output.environment else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError
            }

            if response.error != nil {
                throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
            }

            guard let retVariables = response.variables else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError
            }

            for envVar in retVariables {
                if envVar.key == "LOG_LEVEL" && envVar.value != "DEBUG" {
                    print("*** Log level is not set to DEBUG!")
                    throw ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError
                }
            }
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Returns an array containing the names of all AWS Lambda functions
    /// available to the user.
    ///
    /// - Parameter lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.listFunctionsError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of lambda function name strings.
    func getFunctionNames(lambdaClient: LambdaClient) async throws -> [String] {
        let pages = lambdaClient.listFunctionsPaginated(
            input: ListFunctionsInput()
        )

        var functionNames: [String] = []

        for try await page in pages {
            guard let functions = page.functions else {
                throw ExampleError.listFunctionsError
            }

            for function in functions {
                functionNames.append(function.functionName ?? "<unknown>")
            }
        }

        return functionNames
    }

    /// Invoke the Lambda function to increment a value.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - number: The number to increment.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.noAnswerReceived`, `ExampleError.invokeError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An integer number containing the incremented value.
    func invokeIncrement(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, number: Int) async throws ->
Int {
        do {
            let incRequest = IncrementRequest(action: "increment", number:
number)
            let incData = try! JSONEncoder().encode(incRequest)
```

```
            // Invoke the lambda function.

            let invokeOutput = try await lambdaClient.invoke(
                input: InvokeInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function",
                    payload: incData
                )
            )

            let response = try! JSONDecoder().decode(Response.self,
from:invokeOutput.payload!)

            guard let answer = response.answer else {
                throw ExampleError.noAnswerReceived
            }
            return answer

        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.invokeError
        }
    }

    /// Invoke the calculator Lambda function.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - action: Which arithmetic operation to perform: "plus", "minus",
    ///     "times", or "divided-by".
    ///   - x: The first number to use in the computation.
    ///   - y: The second number to use in the computation.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.noAnswerReceived`, `ExampleError.invokeError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: The computed answer as an `Int`.
    func invokeCalculator(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, action: String, x: Int, y:
Int) async throws -> Int {
        do {
            let calcRequest = CalculatorRequest(action: action, x: x, y: y)
            let calcData = try! JSONEncoder().encode(calcRequest)

            // Invoke the lambda function.

            let invokeOutput = try await lambdaClient.invoke(
                input: InvokeInput(
```

```
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function",
                    payload: calcData
                )
            )

            let response = try! JSONDecoder().decode(Response.self,
from:invokeOutput.payload!)

            guard let answer = response.answer else {
                throw ExampleError.noAnswerReceived
            }
            return answer

        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.invokeError
        }

    }

    /// Perform the example's tasks.
    func basics() async throws {
        let iamClient = try await IAMClient(
            config: IAMClient.IAMClientConfiguration(region: region)
        )

        let lambdaClient = try await LambdaClient(
            config: LambdaClient.LambdaClientConfiguration(region: region)
        )

        /// The IAM role to use for the example.
        var iamRole: IAMClientTypes.Role

        // Look for the specified role. If it already exists, use it. If not,
        // create it and attach the desired policy to it.

        do {
            iamRole = try await getRole(iamClient: iamClient, roleName: role)
        } catch ExampleError.roleNotFound {
            // The role wasn't found, so create it and attach the needed
            // policy.

            iamRole = try await createRoleForLambda(iamClient: iamClient,
roleName: role)
```

```
            do {
                _ = try await iamClient.attachRolePolicy(
                    input: AttachRolePolicyInput(policyArn: policyARN, roleName:
role)
                )
            } catch {
                throw ExampleError.policyError
            }
        }

        // Give the policy time to attach to the role.

        sleep(5)

        // Look to see if the function already exists. If it does, throw an
        // error.

        if await doesLambdaFunctionExist(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, name:
basicsFunctionName) {
            throw ExampleError.functionAlreadyExists
        }

        // Create, then invoke, the "increment" version of the calculator
        // function.

        print("Creating the increment Lambda function...")
        if try await createFunction(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, functionName:
basicsFunctionName,
                                    roleArn: iamRole.arn, path: incpath) {
            print("Running increment function calls...")
            for number in 0...4 {
                do {
                    let answer = try await invokeIncrement(lambdaClient:
lambdaClient, number: number)
                    print("Increment \(number) = \(answer)")
                } catch {
                    print("Error incrementing \(number): ",
error.localizedDescription)
                }
            }
        } else {
            print("*** Failed to create the increment function.")
        }
```

```
        // Enable debug logging.

        print("\nEnabling debug logging...")
        try await enableDebugLogging(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, functionName:
basicsFunctionName)

        // Change it to a basic arithmetic calculator. Then invoke it a few
        // times.

        print("\nReplacing the Lambda function with a calculator...")

        if try await updateFunctionCode(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, functionName:
basicsFunctionName,
                                    path: calcpath) {
            print("Running calculator function calls...")
            for x in [6, 10] {
                for y in [2, 4] {
                    for action in ["plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"] {
                        do {
                            let answer = try await invokeCalculator(lambdaClient:
lambdaClient, action: action, x: x, y: y)
                            print("\(x) \(action) \(y) = \(answer)")
                        } catch {
                            print("Error calculating \(x) \(action) \(y): ",
error.localizedDescription)
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // List all lambda functions.

        let functionNames = try await getFunctionNames(lambdaClient:
lambdaClient)

        if functionNames.count > 0 {
            print("\nAWS Lambda functions available on your account:")
            for name in functionNames {
                print("  \(name)")
            }
        }

        // Delete the lambda function.
```

```
        print("Deleting lambda function...")

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.deleteFunction(
                input: DeleteFunctionInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function"
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("Error: Unable to delete the function.")
        }

        // Detach the role from the policy, then delete the role.

        print("Deleting the AWS IAM role...")

        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.detachRolePolicy(
                input: DetachRolePolicyInput(
                    policyArn: policyARN,
                    roleName: role
                )
            )
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteRole(
                input: DeleteRoleInput(
                    roleName: role
                )
            )
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.deleteRoleError
        }
    }
}

// -MARK: - Entry point

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
```

```
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.basics()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}


/// Errors thrown by the example's functions.
enum ExampleError: Error {
    /// An AWS Lambda function with the specified name already exists.
    case functionAlreadyExists
    /// The specified role doesn't exist.
    case roleNotFound
    /// Unable to create the role.
    case roleCreateError
    /// Unable to delete the role.
    case deleteRoleError
    /// Unable to attach a policy to the role.
    case policyError
    /// Unable to get the executable directory.
    case executableNotFound
    /// An error occurred creating a lambda function.
    case createLambdaError
    /// An error occurred invoking the lambda function.
    case invokeError
    /// No answer received from the invocation.
    case noAnswerReceived
    /// Unable to list the AWS Lambda functions.
    case listFunctionsError
    /// Unable to update the AWS Lambda function.
    case updateFunctionError
    /// Unable to update the function configuration.
    case updateFunctionConfigurationError
    /// The environment response is missing after an
    /// UpdateEnvironmentConfiguration attempt.
    case environmentResponseMissingError
    /// The environment variables are missing from the EnvironmentResponse and
    /// no errors occurred.
    case environmentVariablesMissingError
    /// The log level is incorrect after attempting to set it.
    case logLevelIncorrectError
    /// Unable to load the AWS Lambda function's Zip file.
```

```
    case zipFileReadError

    var errorDescription: String? {
        switch self {
        case .functionAlreadyExists:
            return "An AWS Lambda function with that name already exists."
        case .roleNotFound:
            return "The specified role doesn't exist."
        case .deleteRoleError:
            return "Unable to delete the AWS IAM role."
        case .roleCreateError:
            return "Unable to create the specified role."
        case .policyError:
            return "An error occurred attaching the policy to the role."
        case .executableNotFound:
            return "Unable to find the executable program directory."
        case .createLambdaError:
            return "An error occurred creating a lambda function."
        case .invokeError:
            return "An error occurred invoking a lambda function."
        case .noAnswerReceived:
            return "No answer received from the lambda function."
        case .listFunctionsError:
            return "Unable to list the AWS Lambda functions."
        case .updateFunctionError:
            return "Unable to update the AWS lambda function."
        case .updateFunctionConfigurationError:
            return "Unable to update the AWS lambda function configuration."
        case .environmentResponseMissingError:
            return "The environment is missing from the response after updating
 the function configuration."
        case .environmentVariablesMissingError:
            return "While no error occurred, no environment variables were
 returned following function configuration."
        case .logLevelIncorrectError:
            return "The log level is incorrect after attempting to set it to
 DEBUG."
        case .zipFileReadError:
            return "Unable to read the AWS Lambda function."
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions for Lambda using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Lambda actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Lambda API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Lambda using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Lambda API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateAlias with a CLI
- Use CreateFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteAlias with a CLI
- Use DeleteFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
- Use DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
- Use GetAccountSettings with a CLI
- Use GetAlias with a CLI
- Use GetFunction with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
- Use GetFunctionConfiguration with a CLI

- Use GetPolicy with a CLI
- Use GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
- Use Invoke with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListFunctions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs with a CLI
- Use ListTags with a CLI
- Use ListVersionsByFunction with a CLI
- Use PublishVersion with a CLI
- Use PutFunctionConcurrency with a CLI
- Use PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig with a CLI
- Use RemovePermission with a CLI
- Use TagResource with a CLI
- Use UntagResource with a CLI
- Use UpdateAlias with a CLI
- Use UpdateFunctionCode with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateFunctionConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateAlias` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAlias`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an alias for a Lambda function

The following `create-alias` example creates an alias named `LIVE` that points to version 1 of the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda create-alias \
    --function-name my-function \
    --description "alias for live version of function" \
    --function-version 1 \
```

```
    --name LIVE
```

Output:

```
{
    "FunctionVersion": "1",
    "Name": "LIVE",
    "AliasArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:LIVE",
    "RevisionId": "873282ed-4cd3-4dc8-a069-d0c647e470c6",
    "Description": "alias for live version of function"
}
```

For more information, see Configuring AWS Lambda Function Aliases in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a New Lambda Alias for specified version and routing configuration to specify the percentage of invocation requests that it receives.

```
New-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
RoutingConfig_AdditionalVersionWeight @{Name="1";Value="0.6} -Description "Alias
 for version 4" -FunctionVersion 4 -Name "PowershellAlias"
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a New Lambda Alias for specified version and routing configuration to specify the percentage of invocation requests that it receives.

```
New-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
RoutingConfig_AdditionalVersionWeight @{Name="1";Value="0.6} -Description "Alias
 for version 4" -FunctionVersion 4 -Name "PowershellAlias"
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateFunction` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateFunction`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Creates a new Lambda function.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="functionName">The name of the function.</param>
/// <param name="s3Bucket">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket where the zip file containing the code is located.</param>
/// <param name="s3Key">The Amazon S3 key of the zip file.</param>
/// <param name="role">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role with the
/// appropriate Lambda permissions.</param>
/// <param name="handler">The name of the handler function.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created
/// Lambda function.</returns>
public async Task<string> CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
    string functionName,
    string s3Bucket,
    string s3Key,
    string role,
    string handler)
{
    // Defines the location for the function code.
    // S3Bucket - The S3 bucket where the file containing
    //            the source code is stored.
    // S3Key    - The name of the file containing the code.
```

```
        var functionCode = new FunctionCode
        {
            S3Bucket = s3Bucket,
            S3Key = s3Key,
        };

        var createFunctionRequest = new CreateFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Description = "Created by the Lambda .NET API",
            Code = functionCode,
            Handler = handler,
            Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
            Role = role,
        };

        var reponse = await
_lambdaService.CreateFunctionAsync(createFunctionRequest);
        return reponse.FunctionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetDescription(LAMBDA_DESCRIPTION); // Optional.
#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::provided_al2);
        request.SetTimeout(15);
        request.SetMemorySize(128);

        // Assume the AWS Lambda function was built in Docker with same
 architecture
        // as this code.
#if  defined(__x86_64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::x86_64});
#elif defined(__aarch64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::arm64});
#else
#error "Unimplemented architecture"
#endif // defined(architecture)
#else
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::python3_9);
#endif
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetHandler(LAMBDA_HANDLER_NAME);
        request.SetPublish(true);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionCode code;
        std::ifstream ifstream(INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();
```

```
        code.SetZipFile(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
 buffer.str().c_str(),
                                                buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetCode(code);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionOutcome outcome =
 client.CreateFunction(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda function was successfully created. " <<
 seconds
                      << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            break;
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CreateFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a Lambda function

The following `create-function` example creates a Lambda function named `my-function`.

```
aws lambda create-function \
    --function-name my-function \
    --runtime nodejs18.x \
    --zip-file fileb://my-function.zip \
    --handler my-function.handler \
```

```
    --role arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/MyTestFunction-role-
tges6bf4
```

Contents of `my-function.zip`:

```
This file is a deployment package that contains your function code and any
 dependencies.
```

Output:

```
{
    "TracingConfig": {
        "Mode": "PassThrough"
    },
    "CodeSha256": "PFn4S+er27qk+UuZSTKEQfNKG/XNn7QJs90mJgq6oH8=",
    "FunctionName": "my-function",
    "CodeSize": 308,
    "RevisionId": "873282ed-4cd3-4dc8-a069-d0c647e470c6",
    "MemorySize": 128,
    "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function",
    "Version": "$LATEST",
    "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/MyTestFunction-role-
zgur6bf4",
    "Timeout": 3,
    "LastModified": "2023-10-14T22:26:11.234+0000",
    "Handler": "my-function.handler",
    "Runtime": "nodejs18.x",
    "Description": ""
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// CreateFunction creates a new Lambda function from code contained in the
 zipPackage
// buffer. The specified handlerName must match the name of the file and function
// contained in the uploaded code. The role specified by iamRoleArn is assumed by
// Lambda and grants specific permissions.
// When the function already exists, types.StateActive is returned.
// When the function is created, a lambda.FunctionActiveV2Waiter is used to wait
 until the
// function is active.
```

```
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) CreateFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, handlerName string,
 iamRoleArn *string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.CreateFunction(ctx, &lambda.CreateFunctionInput{
  Code:         &types.FunctionCode{ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes()},
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Role:         iamRoleArn,
  Handler:      aws.String(handlerName),
  Publish:      true,
  Runtime:      types.RuntimePython39,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resConflict *types.ResourceConflictException
  if errors.As(err, &resConflict) {
   log.Printf("Function %v already exists.\n", functionName)
   state = types.StateActive
  } else {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't create function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
  }
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionActiveV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new Lambda function in AWS using the AWS Lambda Java API.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    the AWS Lambda client used to interact with the AWS
Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to create
     * @param key          the S3 key of the function code
     * @param bucketName   the name of the S3 bucket containing the function code
     * @param role         the IAM role to assign to the Lambda function
     * @param handler      the fully qualified class name of the function handler
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created Lambda function
     */
    public static String createLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda,
                                              String functionName,
                                              String key,
                                              String bucketName,
                                              String role,
                                              String handler) {

        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            FunctionCode code = FunctionCode.builder()
                .s3Key(key)
                .s3Bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest =
CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .description("Created by the Lambda Java API")
                .code(code)
                .handler(handler)
```

```
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .role(role)
                .build();

            // Create a Lambda function using a waiter
            CreateFunctionResponse functionResponse =
 awsLambda.createFunction(functionRequest);
            GetFunctionRequest getFunctionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();
            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionResponse> waiterResponse =
 waiter.waitUntilFunctionExists(getFunctionRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return functionResponse.functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const createFunction = async (funcName, roleArn) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${funcName}.zip`);

  const command = new CreateFunctionCommand({
    Code: { ZipFile: code },
    FunctionName: funcName,
```

```
    Role: roleArn,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewFunction(
    myFunctionName: String,
    s3BucketName: String,
    myS3Key: String,
    myHandler: String,
    myRole: String,
): String? {
    val functionCode =
        FunctionCode {
            s3Bucket = s3BucketName
            s3Key = myS3Key
        }

    val request =
        CreateFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
            code = functionCode
            description = "Created by the Lambda Kotlin API"
            handler = myHandler
```

```
            role = myRole
            runtime = Runtime.Java17
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val functionResponse = awsLambda.createFunction(request)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionActive {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        return functionResponse.functionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function createFunction($functionName, $role, $bucketName, $handler)
    {
        //This assumes the Lambda function is in an S3 bucket.
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($functionName, $role,
$bucketName, $handler) {
            return $this->lambdaClient->createFunction([
                'Code' => [
                    'S3Bucket' => $bucketName,
                    'S3Key' => $functionName,
                ],
                'FunctionName' => $functionName,
                'Role' => $role['Arn'],
                'Runtime' => 'python3.9',
                'Handler' => "$handler.lambda_handler",
            ]);
        });
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new C# (dotnetcore1.0 runtime) function named MyFunction in AWS Lambda, providing the compiled binaries for the function from a zip file on the local file system (relative or absolute paths may be used). C# Lambda functions specify the handler for the function using the designation AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName. You should replace the assembly name (without .dll suffix), namespace, class name and method name parts of the handler spec appropriately. The new function will have environment variables 'envvar1' and 'envvar2' set up from the provided values.

```
Publish-LMFunction -Description "My C# Lambda Function" `
        -FunctionName MyFunction `
        -ZipFilename .\MyFunctionBinaries.zip `
        -Handler "AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName" `
        -Role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole" `
        -Runtime dotnetcore1.0 `
        -Environment_Variable @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" }
```

Output:

```
CodeSha256       : /NgBMd...gq71I=
CodeSize         : 214784
DeadLetterConfig :
Description      : My C# Lambda Function
Environment      : Amazon.Lambda.Model.EnvironmentResponse
FunctionArn      : arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:ToUpper
FunctionName     : MyFunction
Handler          : AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName
KMSKeyArn        :
LastModified     : 2016-12-29T23:50:14.207+0000
MemorySize       : 128
Role             : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole
Runtime          : dotnetcore1.0
```

```
Timeout          : 3
Version          : $LATEST
VpcConfig        :
```

Example 2: This example is similar to the previous one except the function binaries are first uploaded to an Amazon S3 bucket (which must be in the same region as the intended Lambda function) and the resulting S3 object is then referenced when creating the function.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key MyFunctionBinaries.zip -
File .\MyFunctionBinaries.zip
Publish-LMFunction -Description "My C# Lambda Function" `
        -FunctionName MyFunction `
        -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket `
        -Key MyFunctionBinaries.zip `
        -Handler "AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName" `
        -Role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole" `
        -Runtime dotnetcore1.0 `
        -Environment_Variable @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new C# (dotnetcore1.0 runtime) function named MyFunction in AWS Lambda, providing the compiled binaries for the function from a zip file on the local file system (relative or absolute paths may be used). C# Lambda functions specify the handler for the function using the designation AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName. You should replace the assembly name (without .dll suffix), namespace, class name and method name parts of the handler spec appropriately. The new function will have environment variables 'envvar1' and 'envvar2' set up from the provided values.

```
Publish-LMFunction -Description "My C# Lambda Function" `
        -FunctionName MyFunction `
        -ZipFilename .\MyFunctionBinaries.zip `
        -Handler "AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName" `
        -Role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole" `
        -Runtime dotnetcore1.0 `
        -Environment_Variable @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" }
```

Output:

```
CodeSha256       : /NgBMd...gq71I=
CodeSize         : 214784
DeadLetterConfig :
Description      : My C# Lambda Function
Environment      : Amazon.Lambda.Model.EnvironmentResponse
FunctionArn      : arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:ToUpper
FunctionName     : MyFunction
Handler          : AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName
KMSKeyArn        :
LastModified     : 2016-12-29T23:50:14.207+0000
MemorySize       : 128
Role             : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole
Runtime          : dotnetcore1.0
Timeout          : 3
Version          : $LATEST
VpcConfig        :
```

Example 2: This example is similar to the previous one except the function binaries are first uploaded to an Amazon S3 bucket (which must be in the same region as the intended Lambda function) and the resulting S3 object is then referenced when creating the function.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key MyFunctionBinaries.zip -
File .\MyFunctionBinaries.zip
Publish-LMFunction -Description "My C# Lambda Function" `
        -FunctionName MyFunction `
        -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket `
        -Key MyFunctionBinaries.zip `
        -Handler "AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName" `
        -Role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole" `
        -Runtime dotnetcore1.0 `
        -Environment_Variable @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def create_function(
        self, function_name, handler_name, iam_role, deployment_package
    ):
        """
        Deploys a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
        :param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function.
 This
                              must include the file name and the function name.
        :param iam_role: The IAM role to use for the function.
        :param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the
 function
                                   code in .zip format.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.create_function(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Description="AWS Lambda doc example",
                Runtime="python3.9",
                Role=iam_role.arn,
                Handler=handler_name,
                Code={"ZipFile": deployment_package},
                Publish=True,
            )
```

```
            function_arn = response["FunctionArn"]
            waiter = self.lambda_client.get_waiter("function_active_v2")
            waiter.wait(FunctionName=function_name)
            logger.info(
                "Created function '%s' with ARN: '%s'.",
                function_name,
                response["FunctionArn"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.error("Couldn't create function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        else:
            return function_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Deploys a Lambda function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
```

```
  # @param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function.
  # @param role_arn: The IAM role to use for the function.
  # @param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the function
code in .zip format.
  # @return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
  def create_function(function_name, handler_name, role_arn, deployment_package)
    response = @lambda_client.create_function({
                                                role: role_arn.to_s,
                                                function_name: function_name,
                                                handler: handler_name,
                                                runtime: 'ruby2.7',
                                                code: {
                                                  zip_file: deployment_package
                                                },
                                                environment: {
                                                  variables: {
                                                    'LOG_LEVEL' => 'info'
                                                  }
                                                }
                                              })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_active_v2, { function_name:
function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error creating #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n
#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Create a function, uploading from a zip file.
     */
    pub async fn create_function(&self, zip_file: PathBuf) -> Result<String,
anyhow::Error> {
        let code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, None).await?;

        let key = code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string();

        let role = self.create_role().await.map_err(|e| anyhow!(e))?;

        info!("Created iam role, waiting 15s for it to become active");
        tokio::time::sleep(Duration::from_secs(15)).await;

        info!("Creating lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let _ = self
            .lambda_client
            .create_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .code(code)
            .role(role.arn())
            .runtime(aws_sdk_lambda::types::Runtime::Providedal2)
            .handler("_unused")
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        self.lambda_client
            .publish_version()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
```

```
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(key)
    }

    /**
     * Upload function code from a path to a zip file.
     * The zip file must have an AL2 Linux-compatible binary called `bootstrap`.
     * The easiest way to create such a zip is to use `cargo lambda build --
output-format Zip`.
     */
    async fn prepare_function(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<FunctionCode, anyhow::Error> {
        let body = ByteStream::from_path(zip_file).await?;

        let key = key.unwrap_or_else(|| format!("{}_code", self.lambda_name));

        info!("Uploading function code to s3://{}/{}", self.bucket, key);
        let _ = self
            .s3_client
            .put_object()
            .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .key(key.clone())
            .body(body)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(FunctionCode::builder()
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(key)
            .build())
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_lmd->createfunction(
           iv_functionname = iv_function_name
           iv_runtime = `python3.9`
           iv_role = iv_role_arn
           iv_handler = iv_handler
           io_code = io_zip_file
           iv_description = 'AWS Lambda code example' ).
       MESSAGE 'Lambda function created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodesigningcfgno00.
       MESSAGE 'Code signing configuration does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodeverification00.
       MESSAGE 'Code signature failed one or more validation checks for
signature mismatch or expiration.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidcodesigex.
       MESSAGE 'Code signature failed the integrity check.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
       MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

        do {
            // Read the Zip archive containing the AWS Lambda function.

            let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
            let zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)

            // Create the AWS Lambda function that runs the specified code,
            // using the name given on the command line. The Lambda function
            // will run using the Amazon Linux 2 runtime.

            _ = try await lambdaClient.createFunction(
                input: CreateFunctionInput(
                    code: LambdaClientTypes.FunctionCode(zipFile: zipData),
                    functionName: functionName,
                    handler: "handle",
                    role: roleArn,
                    runtime: .providedal2
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating Lambda function:")
            dump(error)
            return false
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteAlias` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAlias`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an alias of a Lambda function

The following `delete-alias` example deletes the alias named `LIVE` from the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda delete-alias \
    --function-name my-function \
    --name LIVE
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Configuring AWS Lambda Function Aliases in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the Lambda function Alias mentioned in the command.

```
Remove-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Name "NewAlias"
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the Lambda function Alias mentioned in the command.

```
Remove-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Name "NewAlias"
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteFunction` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFunction`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the action.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.DeleteFunctionAsync(request);

        // A return value of NoContent means that the request was processed.
        // In this case, the function was deleted, and the return value
        // is intentionally blank.
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::Lambda::Model::DeleteFunctionRequest request;
    request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);

    Aws::Lambda::Model::DeleteFunctionOutcome outcome = client.DeleteFunction(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The lambda function was successfully deleted." <<
std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::DeleteFunction. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To delete a Lambda function by function name

The following `delete-function` example deletes the Lambda function named `my-function` by specifying the function's name.

```
aws lambda delete-function \
    --function-name my-function
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To delete a Lambda function by function ARN

The following `delete-function` example deletes the Lambda function named `my-function` by specifying the function's ARN.

```
aws lambda delete-function \
    --function-name arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function
```

This command produces no output.

Example 3: To delete a Lambda function by partial function ARN

The following `delete-function` example deletes the Lambda function named `my-function` by specifying the function's partial ARN.

```
aws lambda delete-function \
    --function-name 123456789012:function:my-function
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// DeleteFunction deletes the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) DeleteFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.DeleteFunction(ctx, &lambda.DeleteFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't delete function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda     an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which
is used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
    * @param functionName  the name of the Lambda function to be deleted
    *
    * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while deleting the Lambda
function
    */
   public static void deleteLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName) {
       try {
           DeleteFunctionRequest request = DeleteFunctionRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .build();

           awsLambda.deleteFunction(request);
           System.out.println("The " + functionName + " function was deleted");

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * @param {string} funcName
 */
const deleteFunction = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new DeleteFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun delLambdaFunction(myFunctionName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
```

```
    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.deleteFunction(request)
        println("$myFunctionName was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function deleteFunction($functionName)
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->deleteFunction([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes a specific version of a Lambda function

```
Remove-LMFunction -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier '3'
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a specific version of a Lambda function

```
Remove-LMFunction -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier '3'
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def delete_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Deletes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.lambda_client.delete_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete function %s.", function_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Deletes a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
  def delete_function(function_name)
    print "Deleting function: #{function_name}..."
    @lambda_client.delete_function(
      function_name: function_name
    )
    print 'Done!'.green
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error deleting #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Delete a function and its role, and if possible or necessary, its
associated code object and bucket. */
    pub async fn delete_function(
        &self,
        location: Option<String>,
    ) -> (
        Result<DeleteFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Result<DeleteRoleOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
    ) {
        info!("Deleting lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let delete_function = self
            .lambda_client
            .delete_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        info!("Deleting iam role {}", self.role_name);
        let delete_role = self
            .iam_client
            .delete_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        let delete_object: Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>> =
            if let Some(location) = location {
                info!("Deleting object {location}");
                Some(
```

```
                    self.s3_client
                        .delete_object()
                        .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
                        .key(location)
                        .send()
                        .await
                        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from),
                )
            } else {
                info!(?location, "Skipping delete object");
                None
            };

        (delete_function, delete_role, delete_object)
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_lmd->deletefunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Lambda function deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.deleteFunction(
                input: DeleteFunctionInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function"
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("Error: Unable to delete the function.")
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteFunctionConcurrency` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFunctionConcurrency`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove the reserved concurrent execution limit from a function

The following `delete-function-concurrency` example deletes the reserved concurrent execution limit from the `my-function` function.

```
aws lambda delete-function-concurrency \
    --function-name  my-function
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Reserving Concurrency for a Lambda Function in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteFunctionConcurrency in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This examples removes the Function Concurrency of the Lambda Function.

```
Remove-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples removes the Function Concurrency of the Lambda Function.

```
Remove-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a provisioned concurrency configuration

The following `delete-provisioned-concurrency-config` example deletes the provisioned concurrency configuration for the `GREEN` alias of the specified function.

```
aws lambda delete-provisioned-concurrency-config \
    --function-name my-function \
    --qualifier GREEN
```

- For API details, see DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the Provisioned Concurrency Configuration for a specific Alias.

```
Remove-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

- For API details, see DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the Provisioned Concurrency Configuration for a specific Alias.

```
Remove-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

- For API details, see DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetAccountSettings` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAccountSettings`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve details about your account in an AWS Region

The following `get-account-settings` example displays the Lambda limits and usage information for your account.

```
aws lambda get-account-settings
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccountLimit": {
       "CodeSizeUnzipped": 262144000,
       "UnreservedConcurrentExecutions": 1000,
       "ConcurrentExecutions": 1000,
       "CodeSizeZipped": 52428800,
       "TotalCodeSize": 80530636800
    },
    "AccountUsage": {
       "FunctionCount": 4,
       "TotalCodeSize": 9426
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Limits in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAccountSettings in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample displays to compare the Account Limit and Account Usage

```
Get-LMAccountSetting | Select-Object
 @{Name="TotalCodeSizeLimit";Expression={$_.AccountLimit.TotalCodeSize}},
 @{Name="TotalCodeSizeUsed";Expression={$_.AccountUsage.TotalCodeSize}}
```

Output:

```
TotalCodeSizeLimit TotalCodeSizeUsed
------------------ -----------------
       80530636800          15078795
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays to compare the Account Limit and Account Usage

```
Get-LMAccountSetting | Select-Object
 @{Name="TotalCodeSizeLimit";Expression={$_.AccountLimit.TotalCodeSize}},
 @{Name="TotalCodeSizeUsed";Expression={$_.AccountUsage.TotalCodeSize}}
```

Output:

```
TotalCodeSizeLimit TotalCodeSizeUsed
------------------ -----------------
       80530636800          15078795
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetAlias` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAlias`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve details about a function alias

The following `get-alias` example displays details for the alias named `LIVE` on the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda get-alias \
```

```
    --function-name my-function \
    --name LIVE
```

Output:

```
{
    "FunctionVersion": "3",
    "Name": "LIVE",
    "AliasArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:LIVE",
    "RevisionId": "594f41fb-b85f-4c20-95c7-6ca5f2a92c93",
    "Description": "alias for live version of function"
}
```

For more information, see Configuring AWS Lambda Function Aliases in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the Routing Config weights for a specific Lambda Function Alias.

```
Get-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Name "newlabel1" -Select
 RoutingConfig
```

Output:

```
AdditionalVersionWeights
------------------------
{[1, 0.6]}
```

- For API details, see GetAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the Routing Config weights for a specific Lambda Function Alias.

```
Get-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Name "newlabel1" -Select
 RoutingConfig
```

Output:

```
AdditionalVersionWeights
------------------------
{[1, 0.6]}
```

- For API details, see GetAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetFunction` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetFunction`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function for
    /// which to retrieve information.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<FunctionConfiguration> GetFunctionAsync(string
 functionName)
    {
        var functionRequest = new GetFunctionRequest
```

```
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.GetFunctionAsync(functionRequest);
        return response.Configuration;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

       Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionRequest request;
       request.SetFunctionName(functionName);

       Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionOutcome outcome =
client.GetFunction(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cout << "Function retrieve.\n" <<

outcome.GetResult().GetConfiguration().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                     << std::endl;
       }
       else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::GetFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about a function

The following `get-function` example displays information about the `my-function` function.

```
aws lambda get-function \
    --function-name  my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "Concurrency": {
        "ReservedConcurrentExecutions": 100
    },
    "Code": {
        "RepositoryType": "S3",
        "Location": "https://awslambda-us-west-2-tasks.s3.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/snapshots/123456789012/my-function..."
    },
    "Configuration": {
        "TracingConfig": {
            "Mode": "PassThrough"
        },
        "Version": "$LATEST",
        "CodeSha256": "5tT2qgzYUHoqwR616pZ2dpkn/0J1FrzJmlKidWaaCgk=",
        "FunctionName": "my-function",
        "VpcConfig": {
            "SubnetIds": [],
            "VpcId": "",
            "SecurityGroupIds": []
```

```
        },
        "MemorySize": 128,
        "RevisionId": "28f0fb31-5c5c-43d3-8955-03e76c5c1075",
        "CodeSize": 304,
        "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function",
        "Handler": "index.handler",
        "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/helloWorldPython-
role-uy3l9qyq",
        "Timeout": 3,
        "LastModified": "2019-09-24T18:20:35.054+0000",
        "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
        "Description": ""
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// GetFunction gets data about the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) GetFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) types.State {
 var state types.State
 funcOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.GetFunction(ctx,
 &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't get function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 } else {
  state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
 }
 return state
}
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
     * Retrieves information about an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which
 is used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to retrieve
 information about
     */
    public static void getFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String functionName) {
        try {
            GetFunctionRequest functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();

            GetFunctionResponse response =
 awsLambda.getFunction(functionRequest);
            System.out.println("The runtime of this Lambda function is " +
 response.configuration().runtime());

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getFunction = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new GetFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function getFunction($functionName)
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->getFunction([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource
```

```
    def get_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Gets data about a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function.
        :return: The function data.
        """
        response = None
        try:
            response =
 self.lambda_client.get_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Function %s does not exist.", function_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    function_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client
```

```
  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Gets data about a Lambda function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the function.
  # @return response: The function data, or nil if no such function exists.
  def get_function(function_name)
    @lambda_client.get_function(
      {
        function_name: function_name
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ResourceNotFoundException => e
    @logger.debug("Could not find function: #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Get the Lambda function with this Manager's name. */
    pub async fn get_function(&self) -> Result<GetFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>
{
        info!("Getting lambda function");
        self.lambda_client
```

```
            .get_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_lmd->getfunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name ).
    " oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Lambda function information retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Detect whether or not the AWS Lambda function with the specified name
    /// exists, by requesting its function information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the AWS Lambda function to find.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the Lambda function exists. Otherwise `false`.
    func doesLambdaFunctionExist(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, name: String) async
 -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.getFunction(
                input: GetFunctionInput(functionName: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetFunctionConcurrency` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetFunctionConcurrency`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view the reserved concurrency setting for a function

The following `get-function-concurrency` example retrieves the reserved concurrency setting for the specified function.

```
aws lambda get-function-concurrency \
    --function-name my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "ReservedConcurrentExecutions": 250
}
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConcurrency in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This examples gets the Reserved concurrency for the Lambda Function

```
Get-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Select *
```

Output:

```
ReservedConcurrentExecutions
----------------------------
100
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples gets the Reserved concurrency for the Lambda Function

```
Get-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Select *
```

Output:

```
ReservedConcurrentExecutions
----------------------------
100
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetFunctionConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetFunctionConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the version-specific settings of a Lambda function

The following `get-function-configuration` example displays the settings for version 2 of the `my-function` function.

```
aws lambda get-function-configuration \
    --function-name  my-function:2
```

Output:

```
{
    "FunctionName": "my-function",
    "LastModified": "2019-09-26T20:28:40.438+0000",
    "RevisionId": "e52502d4-9320-4688-9cd6-152a6ab7490d",
    "MemorySize": 256,
    "Version": "2",
    "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-function-role-
uy3l9qyq",
    "Timeout": 3,
    "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
    "TracingConfig": {
        "Mode": "PassThrough"
```

```
    },
    "CodeSha256": "5tT2qgzYUHaqwR716pZ2dpkn/0J1FrzJmlKidWoaCgk=",
    "Description": "",
    "VpcConfig": {
        "SubnetIds": [],
        "VpcId": "",
        "SecurityGroupIds": []
    },
    "CodeSize": 304,
    "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:2",
    "Handler": "index.handler"
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetFunctionConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the version specific configuration of a Lambda Function.

```
Get-LMFunctionConfiguration -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier
 "PowershellAlias"
```

Output:

```
CodeSha256                  : uWOW0R7z+f0VyLuUg7+/D08hkMFsq0SF4seuyUZJ/R8=
CodeSize                    : 1426
DeadLetterConfig            : Amazon.Lambda.Model.DeadLetterConfig
Description                 : Verson 3 to test Aliases
Environment                 : Amazon.Lambda.Model.EnvironmentResponse
FunctionArn                 : arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MylambdaFunction123
                              :PowershellAlias
FunctionName                : MylambdaFunction123
Handler                     : lambda_function.launch_instance
KMSKeyArn                   :
LastModified                : 2019-12-25T09:52:59.872+0000
LastUpdateStatus            : Successful
```

```
LastUpdateStatusReason     :
LastUpdateStatusReasonCode :
Layers                     : {}
MasterArn                  :
MemorySize                 : 128
RevisionId                 : 5d7de38b-87f2-4260-8f8a-e87280e10c33
Role                       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/lambda
Runtime                    : python3.8
State                      : Active
StateReason                :
StateReasonCode            :
Timeout                    : 600
TracingConfig              : Amazon.Lambda.Model.TracingConfigResponse
Version                    : 4
VpcConfig                  : Amazon.Lambda.Model.VpcConfigDetail
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the version specific configuration of a Lambda Function.

```
Get-LMFunctionConfiguration -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier
 "PowershellAlias"
```

Output:

```
CodeSha256                 : uWOW0R7z+f0VyLuUg7+/D08hkMFsq0SF4seuyUZJ/R8=
CodeSize                   : 1426
DeadLetterConfig           : Amazon.Lambda.Model.DeadLetterConfig
Description                : Verson 3 to test Aliases
Environment                : Amazon.Lambda.Model.EnvironmentResponse
FunctionArn                : arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MylambdaFunction123
                             :PowershellAlias
FunctionName               : MylambdaFunction123
Handler                    : lambda_function.launch_instance
KMSKeyArn                  :
LastModified               : 2019-12-25T09:52:59.872+0000
LastUpdateStatus           : Successful
LastUpdateStatusReason     :
LastUpdateStatusReasonCode :
Layers                     : {}
```

```
MasterArn                   :
MemorySize                  : 128
RevisionId                  : 5d7de38b-87f2-4260-8f8a-e87280e10c33
Role                        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/lambda
Runtime                     : python3.8
State                       : Active
StateReason                 :
StateReasonCode             :
Timeout                     : 600
TracingConfig               : Amazon.Lambda.Model.TracingConfigResponse
Version                     : 4
VpcConfig                   : Amazon.Lambda.Model.VpcConfigDetail
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPolicy` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the resource-based IAM policy for a function, version, or alias

The following `get-policy` example displays policy information about the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda get-policy \
    --function-name my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policy": {
        "Version":"2012-10-17",
        "Id":"default",
        "Statement":
        [
            {
                "Sid":"iot-events",
```

```
                "Effect":"Allow",
                "Principal": {"Service":"iotevents.amazonaws.com"},
                "Action":"lambda:InvokeFunction",
                "Resource":"arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function"
            }
        ]
    },
    "RevisionId": "93017fc9-59cb-41dc-901b-4845ce4bf668"
}
```

For more information, see Using Resource-based Policies for AWS Lambda in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample displays the Function policy of the Lambda function

```
Get-LMPolicy -FunctionName test -Select Policy
```

Output:

```
{"Version":"2012-10-17","Id":"default","Statement":
[{"Sid":"xxxx","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"Service":"sns.amazonaws.com"},"Action":"lambda:InvokeFunction","Resource":"arn:aws:lamb
east-1:123456789102:function:test"}]}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays the Function policy of the Lambda function

```
Get-LMPolicy -FunctionName test -Select Policy
```

Output:

```
{"Version":"2012-10-17","Id":"default","Statement":
[{"Sid":"xxxx","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
```

```
{"Service":"sns.amazonaws.com"},"Action":"lambda:InvokeFunction","Resource":"arn:aws:lamb
east-1:123456789102:function:test"}]}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view a provisioned concurrency configuration

The following `get-provisioned-concurrency-config` example displays details for the provisioned concurrency configuration for the BLUE alias of the specified function.

```
aws lambda get-provisioned-concurrency-config \
    --function-name my-function \
    --qualifier BLUE
```

Output:

```
{
    "RequestedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
    "AvailableProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
    "AllocatedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
    "Status": "READY",
    "LastModified": "2019-12-31T20:28:49+0000"
}
```

- For API details, see GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the provisioned Concurrency Configuration for the specified Alias of the Lambda Function.

```
C:\>Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

Output:

```
AllocatedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 0
AvailableProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 0
LastModified                             : 2020-01-15T03:21:26+0000
RequestedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 70
Status                                   : IN_PROGRESS
StatusReason                             :
```

- For API details, see GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the provisioned Concurrency Configuration for the specified Alias of the Lambda Function.

```
C:\>Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

Output:

```
AllocatedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 0
AvailableProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 0
LastModified                             : 2020-01-15T03:21:26+0000
RequestedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 70
Status                                   : IN_PROGRESS
StatusReason                             :
```

- For API details, see GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `Invoke` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Invoke`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Invoke a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// invoke.</param
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameter values that will be passed to the
function.</param>
    /// <returns>A System Threading Task.</returns>
    public async Task<string> InvokeFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string parameters)
    {
        var payload = parameters;
        var request = new InvokeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Payload = payload,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.InvokeAsync(request);
        MemoryStream stream = response.Payload;
        string returnValue =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(stream.ToArray());
        return returnValue;
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetLogType(logType);
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> payload =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::StringStream>(
                "FunctionTest");
        *payload << jsonPayload.View().WriteReadable();
        request.SetBody(payload);
        request.SetContentType("application/json");
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeOutcome outcome = client.Invoke(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            invokeResult = std::move(outcome.GetResult());
            result = true;
            break;
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::InvokeRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To invoke a Lambda function synchronously

The following `invoke` example invokes the `my-function` function synchronously. The `cli-binary-format` option is required if you're using AWS CLI version 2. For more information, see AWS CLI supported global command line options in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

```
aws lambda invoke \
    --function-name my-function \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --payload '{ "name": "Bob" }' \
    response.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "ExecutedVersion": "$LATEST",
    "StatusCode": 200
}
```

For more information, see Invoke a Lambda function synchronously in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To invoke a Lambda function asynchronously

The following `invoke` example invokes the `my-function` function asynchronously. The `cli-binary-format` option is required if you're using AWS CLI version 2. For more information, see AWS CLI supported global command line options in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

```
aws lambda invoke \
    --function-name my-function \
    --invocation-type Event \
    --cli-binary-format raw-in-base64-out \
    --payload '{ "name": "Bob" }' \
```

```
    response.json
```

Output:

```
{
    "StatusCode": 202
}
```

For more information, see Invoking a Lambda function asynchronously in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
```

```
}



// Invoke invokes the Lambda function specified by functionName, passing the
 parameters
// as a JSON payload. When getLog is true, types.LogTypeTail is specified, which
 tells
// Lambda to include the last few log lines in the returned result.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) Invoke(ctx context.Context, functionName string,
 parameters any, getLog bool) *lambda.InvokeOutput {
 logType := types.LogTypeNone
 if getLog {
  logType = types.LogTypeTail
 }
 payload, err := json.Marshal(parameters)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't marshal parameters to JSON. Here's why %v\n", err)
 }
 invokeOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.Invoke(ctx, &lambda.InvokeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  LogType:      logType,
  Payload:      payload,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't invoke function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
 return invokeOutput
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Invokes a specific AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda    an instance of {@link LambdaClient} to interact with
the AWS Lambda service
    * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to be invoked
    */
   public static void invokeFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName) {
       InvokeResponse res;
       try {
           // Need a SdkBytes instance for the payload.
           JSONObject jsonObj = new JSONObject();
           jsonObj.put("inputValue", "2000");
           String json = jsonObj.toString();
           SdkBytes payload = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(json);

           InvokeRequest request = InvokeRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .payload(payload)
               .build();

           res = awsLambda.invoke(request);
           String value = res.payload().asUtf8String();
           System.out.println(value);

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const invoke = async (funcName, payload) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new InvokeCommand({
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Payload: JSON.stringify(payload),
    LogType: LogType.Tail,
  });

  const { Payload, LogResult } = await client.send(command);
  const result = Buffer.from(Payload).toString();
  const logs = Buffer.from(LogResult, "base64").toString();
  return { logs, result };
};
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun invokeFunction(functionNameVal: String) {
    val json = """{"inputValue":"1000"}"""
    val byteArray = json.trimIndent().encodeToByteArray()
```

```
    val request =
        InvokeRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            logType = LogType.Tail
            payload = byteArray
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val res = awsLambda.invoke(request)
        println("${res.payload?.toString(Charsets.UTF_8)}")
        println("The log result is ${res.logResult}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function invoke($functionName, $params, $logType = 'None')
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->invoke([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
            'Payload' => json_encode($params),
            'LogType' => $logType,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def invoke_function(self, function_name, function_params, get_log=False):
        """
        Invokes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to invoke.
        :param function_params: The parameters of the function as a dict. This
 dict
                                is serialized to JSON before it is sent to
 Lambda.
        :param get_log: When true, the last 4 KB of the execution log are
 included in
                        the response.
        :return: The response from the function invocation.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.invoke(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Payload=json.dumps(function_params),
                LogType="Tail" if get_log else "None",
            )
            logger.info("Invoked function %s.", function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't invoke function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Invokes a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name [String] The name of the function to invoke.
  # @param payload [nil] Payload containing runtime parameters.
  # @return [Object] The response from the function invocation.
  def invoke_function(function_name, payload = nil)
    params = { function_name: function_name }
    params[:payload] = payload unless payload.nil?
    @lambda_client.invoke(params)
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error executing #{function_name}:\n
 #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Invoke the lambda function using calculator InvokeArgs. */
    pub async fn invoke(&self, args: InvokeArgs) -> Result<InvokeOutput,
 anyhow::Error> {
        info!(?args, "Invoking {}", self.lambda_name);
        let payload = serde_json::to_string(&args)?;
        debug!(?payload, "Sending payload");
        self.lambda_client
            .invoke()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .payload(Blob::new(payload))
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }

fn log_invoke_output(invoke: &InvokeOutput, message: &str) {
    if let Some(payload) = invoke.payload().cloned() {
        let payload = String::from_utf8(payload.into_inner());
        info!(?payload, message);
    } else {
        info!("Could not extract payload")
    }
    if let Some(logs) = invoke.log_result() {
        debug!(?logs, "Invoked function logs")
    } else {
        debug!("Invoked function had no logs")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       DATA(lv_json) = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring(
         `{`  &&
           `"action": "increment",`  &&
           `"number": 10` &&
         `}` ).
       oo_result = lo_lmd->invoke(                  " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
               iv_functionname = iv_function_name
               iv_payload = lv_json ).
       MESSAGE 'Lambda function invoked.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvrequestcontex.
       MESSAGE 'Unable to parse request body as JSON.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidzipfileex.
       MESSAGE 'The deployment package could not be unzipped.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdrequesttoolargeex.
       MESSAGE 'Invoke request body JSON input limit was exceeded by the request
payload.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
       MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdunsuppedmediatyp00.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Invoke request body does not have JSON as its content type.'
 TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Invoke the Lambda function to increment a value.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - number: The number to increment.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.noAnswerReceived`, `ExampleError.invokeError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An integer number containing the incremented value.
    func invokeIncrement(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, number: Int) async throws ->
 Int {
        do {
            let incRequest = IncrementRequest(action: "increment", number:
 number)
            let incData = try! JSONEncoder().encode(incRequest)

            // Invoke the lambda function.

            let invokeOutput = try await lambdaClient.invoke(
                input: InvokeInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function",
```

```
                    payload: incData
                )
            )

            let response = try! JSONDecoder().decode(Response.self,
from:invokeOutput.payload!)

            guard let answer = response.answer else {
                throw ExampleError.noAnswerReceived
            }
            return answer

        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.invokeError
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListFunctions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListFunctions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get a list of Lambda functions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of FunctionConfiguration objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<FunctionConfiguration>> ListFunctionsAsync()
    {
        var functionList = new List<FunctionConfiguration>();

        var functionPaginator =
            _lambdaService.Paginators.ListFunctions(new ListFunctionsRequest());
        await foreach (var function in functionPaginator.Functions)
        {
            functionList.Add(function);
        }

        return functionList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

    std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
    Aws::String marker;

    do {
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome = client.ListFunctions(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
            std::cout << result.GetFunctions().size()
                      << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;

            for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: result.GetFunctions()) {
                functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() << std::endl;
                std::cout << "   "
                          <<
Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                  functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                          << std::endl;
            }
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of Lambda functions

The following `list-functions` example displays a list of all of the functions for the current user.

```
aws lambda list-functions
```

Output:

```
{
    "Functions": [
        {
            "TracingConfig": {
                "Mode": "PassThrough"
            },
            "Version": "$LATEST",
            "CodeSha256": "dBG9m8SGdmlEjw/JYXlhhvCrAv5TxvXsbL/RMr0fT/I=",
            "FunctionName": "helloworld",
            "MemorySize": 128,
            "RevisionId": "1718e831-badf-4253-9518-d0644210af7b",
            "CodeSize": 294,
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:helloworld",
            "Handler": "helloworld.handler",
            "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/MyTestFunction-
role-zgur6bf4",
            "Timeout": 3,
            "LastModified": "2023-09-23T18:32:33.857+0000",
            "Runtime": "nodejs18.x",
            "Description": ""
        },
        {
            "TracingConfig": {
                "Mode": "PassThrough"
            },
            "Version": "$LATEST",
            "CodeSha256": "sU0cJ2/hOZevwV/lTxCuQqK3gDZP3i8gUoqUUVRmY6E=",
            "FunctionName": "my-function",
            "VpcConfig": {
                "SubnetIds": [],
                "VpcId": "",
                "SecurityGroupIds": []
            },
            "MemorySize": 256,
            "RevisionId": "93017fc9-59cb-41dc-901b-4845ce4bf668",
```

```
            "CodeSize": 266,
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function",
            "Handler": "index.handler",
            "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/
helloWorldPython-role-uy3l9qyq",
            "Timeout": 3,
            "LastModified": "2023-10-01T16:47:28.490+0000",
            "Runtime": "nodejs18.x",
            "Description": ""
        },
        {
            "Layers": [
                {
                    "CodeSize": 41784542,
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:420165488524:layer:AWSLambda-Python37-SciPy1x:2"
                },
                {
                    "CodeSize": 4121,
                    "Arn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:layer:pythonLayer:1"
                }
            ],
            "TracingConfig": {
                "Mode": "PassThrough"
            },
            "Version": "$LATEST",
            "CodeSha256": "ZQukCqxtkqFgyF2cU41Avj99TKQ/hNihPtDtRcc08mI=",
            "FunctionName": "my-python-function",
            "VpcConfig": {
                "SubnetIds": [],
                "VpcId": "",
                "SecurityGroupIds": []
            },
            "MemorySize": 128,
            "RevisionId": "80b4eabc-acf7-4ea8-919a-e874c213707d",
            "CodeSize": 299,
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
python-function",
            "Handler": "lambda_function.lambda_handler",
            "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-python-
function-role-z5g7dr6n",
            "Timeout": 3,
```

```
            "LastModified": "2023-10-01T19:40:41.643+0000",
            "Runtime": "python3.11",
            "Description": ""
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}
```

```
// ListFunctions lists up to maxItems functions for the account. This function
 uses a
// lambda.ListFunctionsPaginator to paginate the results.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) ListFunctions(ctx context.Context, maxItems int)
 []types.FunctionConfiguration {
 var functions []types.FunctionConfiguration
 paginator := lambda.NewListFunctionsPaginator(wrapper.LambdaClient,
 &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
 })
 for paginator.HasMorePages() && len(functions) < maxItems {
  pageOutput, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  functions = append(functions, pageOutput.Functions...)
 }
 return functions
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const listFunctions = () => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new ListFunctionsCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function listFunctions($maxItems = 50, $marker = null)
    {
        if (is_null($marker)) {
            return $this->lambdaClient->listFunctions([
                'MaxItems' => $maxItems,
            ]);
        }

        return $this->lambdaClient->listFunctions([
            'Marker' => $marker,
            'MaxItems' => $maxItems,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample displays all the Lambda functions with sorted code size

```
Get-LMFunctionList | Sort-Object -Property CodeSize | Select-Object FunctionName,
 RunTime, Timeout, CodeSize
```

Output:

```
FunctionName                                                    Runtime   Timeout
 CodeSize
------------                                                    -------   -------
 --------
test                                                            python2.7       3
   243
MylambdaFunction123                                             python3.8     600
   659
myfuncpython1                                                   python3.8     303
   675
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays all the Lambda functions with sorted code size

```
Get-LMFunctionList | Sort-Object -Property CodeSize | Select-Object FunctionName,
 RunTime, Timeout, CodeSize
```

Output:

```
FunctionName                                                    Runtime   Timeout
 CodeSize
------------                                                    -------   -------
 --------
test                                                            python2.7       3
   243
MylambdaFunction123                                             python3.8     600
   659
myfuncpython1                                                   python3.8     303
   675
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def list_functions(self):
        """
        Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
        """
        try:
            func_paginator = self.lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
            for func_page in func_paginator.paginate():
                for func in func_page["Functions"]:
                    print(func["FunctionName"])
                    desc = func.get("Description")
                    if desc:
                        print(f"\t{desc}")
                    print(f"\t{func['Runtime']}: {func['Handler']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list functions. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
  def list_functions
    functions = []
    @lambda_client.list_functions.each do |response|
      response['functions'].each do |function|
        functions.append(function['function_name'])
      end
    end
    functions
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error listing functions:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** List all Lambda functions in the current Region. */
    pub async fn list_functions(&self) -> Result<ListFunctionsOutput,
anyhow::Error> {
        info!("Listing lambda functions");
        self.lambda_client
            .list_functions()
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_lmd->listfunctions( ).       " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_functions) = oo_result->get_functions( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of Lambda functions.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Returns an array containing the names of all AWS Lambda functions
    /// available to the user.
    ///
    /// - Parameter lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.listFunctionsError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of lambda function name strings.
    func getFunctionNames(lambdaClient: LambdaClient) async throws -> [String] {
        let pages = lambdaClient.listFunctionsPaginated(
            input: ListFunctionsInput()
        )

        var functionNames: [String] = []

        for try await page in pages {
            guard let functions = page.functions else {
```

```
                throw ExampleError.listFunctionsError
            }

            for function in functions {
                functionNames.append(function.functionName ?? "<unknown>")
            }
        }

        return functionNames
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of provisioned concurrency configurations

The following `list-provisioned-concurrency-configs` example lists the provisioned concurrency configurations for the specified function.

```
aws lambda list-provisioned-concurrency-configs \
    --function-name my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "ProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs": [
        {
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:GREEN",
            "RequestedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
            "AvailableProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
            "AllocatedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
            "Status": "READY",
            "LastModified": "2019-12-31T20:29:00+0000"
```

```
        },
        {
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:BLUE",
            "RequestedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
            "AvailableProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
            "AllocatedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
            "Status": "READY",
            "LastModified": "2019-12-31T20:28:49+0000"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of provisioned concurrency configurations for a Lambda function.

```
Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfigList -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

- For API details, see ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of provisioned concurrency configurations for a Lambda function.

```
Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfigList -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

- For API details, see ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the list of tags for a Lambda function

The following `list-tags` example displays the tags attached to the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda list-tags \
    --resource arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": {
        "Category": "Web Tools",
        "Department": "Sales"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Tagging Lambda Functions in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves the tags and their values currently set on the specified function.

```
Get-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
```

Output:

```
Key        Value
---        -----
California Sacramento
Oregon     Salem
Washington Olympia
```

- For API details, see ListTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves the tags and their values currently set on the specified function.

```
Get-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
```

Output:

```
Key        Value
---        -----
California Sacramento
Oregon     Salem
Washington Olympia
```

- For API details, see ListTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListVersionsByFunction` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListVersionsByFunction`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of versions of a function

The following `list-versions-by-function` example displays the list of versions for the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda list-versions-by-function \
    --function-name my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "Versions": [
        {
            "TracingConfig": {
                "Mode": "PassThrough"
```

```
            },
            "Version": "$LATEST",
            "CodeSha256": "sU0cJ2/hOZevwV/lTxCuQqK3gDZP3i8gUoqUUVRmY6E=",
            "FunctionName": "my-function",
            "VpcConfig": {
                "SubnetIds": [],
                "VpcId": "",
                "SecurityGroupIds": []
            },
            "MemorySize": 256,
            "RevisionId": "93017fc9-59cb-41dc-901b-4845ce4bf668",
            "CodeSize": 266,
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:$LATEST",
            "Handler": "index.handler",
            "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/
helloWorldPython-role-uy3l9qyq",
            "Timeout": 3,
            "LastModified": "2019-10-01T16:47:28.490+0000",
            "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
            "Description": ""
        },
        {
            "TracingConfig": {
                "Mode": "PassThrough"
            },
            "Version": "1",
            "CodeSha256": "5tT2qgzYUHoqwR616pZ2dpkn/0J1FrzJmlKidWaaCgk=",
            "FunctionName": "my-function",
            "VpcConfig": {
                "SubnetIds": [],
                "VpcId": "",
                "SecurityGroupIds": []
            },
            "MemorySize": 256,
            "RevisionId": "949c8914-012e-4795-998c-e467121951b1",
            "CodeSize": 304,
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:1",
            "Handler": "index.handler",
            "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/
helloWorldPython-role-uy3l9qyq",
            "Timeout": 3,
            "LastModified": "2019-09-26T20:28:40.438+0000",
```

```
            "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
            "Description": "new version"
        },
        {
            "TracingConfig": {
                "Mode": "PassThrough"
            },
            "Version": "2",
            "CodeSha256": "sU0cJ2/hOZevwV/lTxCuQqK3gDZP3i8gUoqUUVRmY6E=",
            "FunctionName": "my-function",
            "VpcConfig": {
                "SubnetIds": [],
                "VpcId": "",
                "SecurityGroupIds": []
            },
            "MemorySize": 256,
            "RevisionId": "cd669f21-0f3d-4e1c-9566-948837f2e2ea",
            "CodeSize": 266,
            "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:2",
            "Handler": "index.handler",
            "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/
helloWorldPython-role-uy3l9qyq",
            "Timeout": 3,
            "LastModified": "2019-10-01T16:47:28.490+0000",
            "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
            "Description": "newer version"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Configuring AWS Lambda Function Aliases in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListVersionsByFunction in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the list of version specific configurations for each version of the Lambda Function.

```
Get-LMVersionsByFunction -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

Output:

```
FunctionName        Runtime   MemorySize Timeout CodeSize LastModified
      RoleName
------------        -------   ---------- ------- -------- ------------
      --------
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128     600      659
 2020-01-10T03:20:56.390+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128       5     1426
 2019-12-25T09:19:02.238+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128       5     1426
 2019-12-25T09:39:36.779+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128     600     1426
 2019-12-25T09:52:59.872+0000 lambda
```

- For API details, see ListVersionsByFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of version specific configurations for each version of the Lambda Function.

```
Get-LMVersionsByFunction -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

Output:

```
FunctionName        Runtime   MemorySize Timeout CodeSize LastModified
      RoleName
------------        -------   ---------- ------- -------- ------------
      --------
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128     600      659
 2020-01-10T03:20:56.390+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128       5     1426
 2019-12-25T09:19:02.238+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128       5     1426
 2019-12-25T09:39:36.779+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128     600     1426
 2019-12-25T09:52:59.872+0000 lambda
```

- For API details, see ListVersionsByFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PublishVersion` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PublishVersion`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To publish a new version of a function

The following `publish-version` example publishes a new version of the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda publish-version \
    --function-name my-function
```

Output:

```
{
    "TracingConfig": {
        "Mode": "PassThrough"
    },
    "CodeSha256": "dBG9m8SGdmlEjw/JYXlhhvCrAv5TxvXsbL/RMr0fT/I=",
    "FunctionName": "my-function",
    "CodeSize": 294,
    "RevisionId": "f31d3d39-cc63-4520-97d4-43cd44c94c20",
    "MemorySize": 128,
    "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:3",
    "Version": "2",
    "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/MyTestFunction-role-
zgur6bf4",
    "Timeout": 3,
    "LastModified": "2019-09-23T18:32:33.857+0000",
    "Handler": "my-function.handler",
    "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
    "Description": ""
}
```

For more information, see Configuring AWS Lambda Function Aliases in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PublishVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a version for the existing snapshot of Lambda Function Code

```
Publish-LMVersion -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Description "Publishing
 Existing Snapshot of function code as a  new version through Powershell"
```

- For API details, see PublishVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a version for the existing snapshot of Lambda Function Code

```
Publish-LMVersion -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Description "Publishing
 Existing Snapshot of function code as a  new version through Powershell"
```

- For API details, see PublishVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutFunctionConcurrency` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutFunctionConcurrency`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To configure a reserved concurrency limit for a function

The following `put-function-concurrency` example configures 100 reserved concurrent executions for the `my-function` function.

```
aws lambda put-function-concurrency \
```

```
    --function-name  my-function  \
    --reserved-concurrent-executions 100
```

Output:

```
{
    "ReservedConcurrentExecutions": 100
}
```

For more information, see Reserving Concurrency for a Lambda Function in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutFunctionConcurrency in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example applies the concurrency settings for the Function as a whole.

```
Write-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
ReservedConcurrentExecution 100
```

- For API details, see PutFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example applies the concurrency settings for the Function as a whole.

```
Write-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
ReservedConcurrentExecution 100
```

- For API details, see PutFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To allocate provisioned concurrency

The following `put-provisioned-concurrency-config` example allocates 100 provisioned concurrency for the BLUE alias of the specified function.

```
aws lambda put-provisioned-concurrency-config \
    --function-name my-function \
    --qualifier BLUE \
    --provisioned-concurrent-executions 100
```

Output:

```
{
    "Requested ProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 100,
    "Allocated ProvisionedConcurrentExecutions": 0,
    "Status": "IN_PROGRESS",
    "LastModified": "2019-11-21T19:32:12+0000"
}
```

- For API details, see PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds a provisioned concurrency configuration to a Function's Alias

```
Write-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
ProvisionedConcurrentExecution 20 -Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

- For API details, see PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a provisioned concurrency configuration to a Function's Alias

```
Write-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
ProvisionedConcurrentExecution 20 -Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

- For API details, see PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RemovePermission` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemovePermission`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove permissions from an existing Lambda function

The following `remove-permission` example removes permission to invoke a function named `my-function`.

```
aws lambda remove-permission \
    --function-name my-function \
    --statement-id sns
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using Resource-based Policies for AWS Lambda in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the function policy for the specified StatementId of a Lambda Function.

```
$policy =  Get-LMPolicy -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Select Policy |
 ConvertFrom-Json| Select-Object -ExpandProperty Statement
Remove-LMPermission -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -StatementId
 $policy[0].Sid
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the function policy for the specified StatementId of a Lambda Function.

```
$policy =  Get-LMPolicy -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Select Policy |
 ConvertFrom-Json| Select-Object -ExpandProperty Statement
Remove-LMPermission -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -StatementId
 $policy[0].Sid
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TagResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add tags to an existing Lambda function

The following `tag-resource` example adds a tag with the key name `DEPARTMENT` and a value of `Department A` to the specified Lambda function.

```
aws lambda tag-resource \
    --resource arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function \
    --tags "DEPARTMENT=Department A"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Lambda Functions in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Adds the three tags (Washington, Oregon and California) and their associated values to the specified function identified by its ARN.

```
Add-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction" -Tag @{ "Washington" = "Olympia";
 "Oregon" = "Salem"; "California" = "Sacramento" }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Adds the three tags (Washington, Oregon and California) and their associated values to the specified function identified by its ARN.

```
Add-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction" -Tag @{ "Washington" = "Olympia";
 "Oregon" = "Salem"; "California" = "Sacramento" }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UntagResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove tags from an existing Lambda function

The following `untag-resource` example removes the tag with the key name `DEPARTMENT` tag from the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda untag-resource \
    --resource arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function \
    --tag-keys DEPARTMENT
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Lambda Functions in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Removes the supplied tags from a function. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding unless the -Force switch is specified. A single call is made to the service to remove the tags.

```
Remove-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction" -TagKey
 "Washington","Oregon","California"
```

Example 2: Removes the supplied tags from a function. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding unless the -Force switch is specified. Once call to the service is made per supplied tag.

```
"Washington","Oregon","California" | Remove-LMResourceTag -Resource
 "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Removes the supplied tags from a function. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding unless the -Force switch is specified. A single call is made to the service to remove the tags.

```
Remove-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction" -TagKey
 "Washington","Oregon","California"
```

Example 2: Removes the supplied tags from a function. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding unless the -Force switch is specified. Once call to the service is made per supplied tag.

```
"Washington","Oregon","California" | Remove-LMResourceTag -Resource
 "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateAlias` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAlias`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a function alias

The following `update-alias` example updates the alias named `LIVE` to point to version 3 of the `my-function` Lambda function.

```
aws lambda update-alias \
    --function-name my-function \
    --function-version 3 \
    --name LIVE
```

Output:

```
{
    "FunctionVersion": "3",
    "Name": "LIVE",
    "AliasArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-
function:LIVE",
    "RevisionId": "594f41fb-b85f-4c20-95c7-6ca5f2a92c93",
    "Description": "alias for live version of function"
}
```

For more information, see Configuring AWS Lambda Function Aliases in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the Configuration of an existing Lambda function Alias. It updates the RoutingConfiguration value to shift 60% (0.6) of traffic to version 1

```
Update-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Description
 " Alias for version 2" -FunctionVersion 2 -Name "newlabel1" -
RoutingConfig_AdditionalVersionWeight @{Name="1";Value="0.6}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the Configuration of an existing Lambda function Alias. It updates the RoutingConfiguration value to shift 60% (0.6) of traffic to version 1

```
Update-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Description
 " Alias for version 2" -FunctionVersion 2 -Name "newlabel1" -
RoutingConfig_AdditionalVersionWeight @{Name="1";Value="0.6}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateFunctionCode` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update an existing Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to update.</
param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket where the zip file containing
    /// the Lambda function code is stored.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The key name of the source code file.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
        string functionName,
        string bucketName,
        string key)
    {
        var functionCodeRequest = new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Publish = true,
            S3Bucket = bucketName,
            S3Key = key,
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionCodeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"The Function was last modified at
 {response.LastModified}.");
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
 (overrides config file).
```

```
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        std::ifstream ifstream(CALCULATOR_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteLambdaFunction(client);
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();
        request.SetZipFile(
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *) buffer.str().c_str(),
                                       buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetPublish(true);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeOutcome outcome =
 client.UpdateFunctionCode(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda code was successfully updated." <<
 std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the code of a Lambda function

The following `update-function-code` example replaces the code of the unpublished ($LATEST) version of the `my-function` function with the contents of the specified zip file.

```
aws lambda update-function-code \
    --function-name  my-function \
    --zip-file fileb://my-function.zip
```

Output:

```
{
    "FunctionName": "my-function",
    "LastModified": "2019-09-26T20:28:40.438+0000",
    "RevisionId": "e52502d4-9320-4688-9cd6-152a6ab7490d",
    "MemorySize": 256,
    "Version": "$LATEST",
    "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-function-role-
uy3l9qyq",
    "Timeout": 3,
    "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
    "TracingConfig": {
        "Mode": "PassThrough"
    },
    "CodeSha256": "5tT2qgzYUHaqwR716pZ2dpkn/0J1FrzJmlKidWoaCgk=",
    "Description": "",
    "VpcConfig": {
        "SubnetIds": [],
        "VpcId": "",
        "SecurityGroupIds": []
    },
    "CodeSize": 304,
    "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function",
    "Handler": "index.handler"
```

```
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// UpdateFunctionCode updates the code for the Lambda function specified by
 functionName.
```

```
// The existing code for the Lambda function is entirely replaced by the code in
 the
// zipPackage buffer. After the update action is called, a
 lambda.FunctionUpdatedV2Waiter
// is used to wait until the update is successful.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionCode(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCode(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionCodeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName), ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update code for function %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionUpdatedV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the code for an AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda  the AWS Lambda client
    * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to update
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the function code is
located
    * @param key the key (file name) of the function code in the S3 bucket
    * @throws LambdaException if there is an error updating the function code
    */
   public static void updateFunctionCode(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String bucketName, String key) {
       try {
           LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
           UpdateFunctionCodeRequest functionCodeRequest =
UpdateFunctionCodeRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .publish(true)
               .s3Bucket(bucketName)
               .s3Key(key)
               .build();

           UpdateFunctionCodeResponse response =
awsLambda.updateFunctionCode(functionCodeRequest);
           GetFunctionConfigurationRequest getFunctionConfigRequest =
GetFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .build();

           WaiterResponse<GetFunctionConfigurationResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
               .waitUntilFunctionUpdated(getFunctionConfigRequest);
           waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
           System.out.println("The last modified value is " +
response.lastModified());

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const updateFunctionCode = async (funcName, newFunc) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${newFunc}.zip`);
  const command = new UpdateFunctionCodeCommand({
    ZipFile: code,
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function updateFunctionCode($functionName, $s3Bucket, $s3Key)
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->updateFunctionCode([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
            'S3Bucket' => $s3Bucket,
            'S3Key' => $s3Key,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates the function named 'MyFunction' with new content contained in the specified zip file. For a C# .NET Core Lambda function the zip file should contain the compiled assembly.

```
Update-LMFunctionCode -FunctionName MyFunction -ZipFilename .\UpdatedCode.zip
```

Example 2: This example is similar to the previous one but uses an Amazon S3 object containing the updated code to update the function.

```
Update-LMFunctionCode -FunctionName MyFunction -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
Key UpdatedCode.zip
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the function named 'MyFunction' with new content contained in the specified zip file. For a C# .NET Core Lambda function the zip file should contain the compiled assembly.

```
Update-LMFunctionCode -FunctionName MyFunction -ZipFilename .\UpdatedCode.zip
```

Example 2: This example is similar to the previous one but uses an Amazon S3 object containing the updated code to update the function.

```
Update-LMFunctionCode -FunctionName MyFunction -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
Key UpdatedCode.zip
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def update_function_code(self, function_name, deployment_package):
        """
        Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
 contains
        the code for the function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes
 in
                                   .zip format.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_code(
                FunctionName=function_name, ZipFile=deployment_package
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
 contains
  # the code for the function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes in
```

```
 #                              .zip format.
 # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
 def update_function_code(function_name, deployment_package)
   @lambda_client.update_function_code(
     function_name: function_name,
     zip_file: deployment_package
   )
   @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
function_name }) do |w|
     w.max_attempts = 5
     w.delay = 5
   end
 rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
   @logger.error("There was an error updating function code for:
#{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
   nil
 rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
   @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to update:\n
#{e.message}")
 end
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /** Given a Path to a zip file, update the function's code and wait for the
update to finish. */
   pub async fn update_function_code(
       &self,
       zip_file: PathBuf,
       key: String,
   ) -> Result<UpdateFunctionCodeOutput, anyhow::Error> {
       let function_code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, Some(key)).await?;
```

```
        info!("Updating code for {}", self.lambda_name);
        let update = self
            .lambda_client
            .update_function_code()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(function_code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        Ok(update)
    }

    /**
     * Upload function code from a path to a zip file.
     * The zip file must have an AL2 Linux-compatible binary called `bootstrap`.
     * The easiest way to create such a zip is to use `cargo lambda build --
output-format Zip`.
     */
    async fn prepare_function(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<FunctionCode, anyhow::Error> {
        let body = ByteStream::from_path(zip_file).await?;

        let key = key.unwrap_or_else(|| format!("{}_code", self.lambda_name));

        info!("Uploading function code to s3://{}/{}", self.bucket, key);
        let _ = self
            .s3_client
            .put_object()
            .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .key(key.clone())
            .body(body)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(FunctionCode::builder()
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
```

```
            .s3_key(key)
            .build())
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_lmd->updatefunctioncode(     " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
              iv_functionname = iv_function_name
              iv_zipfile = io_zip_file ).

        MESSAGE 'Lambda function code updated.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodesigningcfgno00.
        MESSAGE 'Code signing configuration does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodeverification00.
        MESSAGE 'Code signature failed one or more validation checks for
signature mismatch or expiration.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidcodesigex.
        MESSAGE 'Code signature failed the integrity check.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

        let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
        let zipData: Data

        // Read the function's Zip file.

        do {
            zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.zipFileReadError
        }

        // Update the function's code and wait for the updated version to be
        // ready for use.

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionCode(
                input: UpdateFunctionCodeInput(
                    functionName: functionName,
                    zipFile: zipData
```

```
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the code of a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function to update.</param>
    /// <param name="functionHandler">The code that performs the function's
actions.</param>
    /// <param name="environmentVariables">A dictionary of environment
variables.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
        string functionName,
        string functionHandler,
        Dictionary<string, string> environmentVariables)
```

```
    {
        var request = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest
        {
            Handler = functionHandler,
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Environment = new Amazon.Lambda.Model.Environment { Variables =
environmentVariables },
        };

        var response = await
_lambdaService.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine(response.LastModified);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::Environment environment;
        environment.AddVariables("LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG");
```

```
        request.SetEnvironment(environment);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutcome outcome =
 client.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda configuration was successfully updated."
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionConfiguration. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the configuration of a function

The following `update-function-configuration` example modifies the memory size to be 256 MB for the unpublished ($LATEST) version of the `my-function` function.

```
aws lambda update-function-configuration \
    --function-name  my-function \
    --memory-size 256
```

Output:

```
{
    "FunctionName": "my-function",
    "LastModified": "2019-09-26T20:28:40.438+0000",
    "RevisionId": "e52502d4-9320-4688-9cd6-152a6ab7490d",
    "MemorySize": 256,
    "Version": "$LATEST",
```

```
    "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/my-function-role-
uy3l9qyq",
    "Timeout": 3,
    "Runtime": "nodejs10.x",
    "TracingConfig": {
        "Mode": "PassThrough"
    },
    "CodeSha256": "5tT2qgzYUHaqwR716pZ2dpkn/0J1FrzJmlKidWoaCgk=",
    "Description": "",
    "VpcConfig": {
        "SubnetIds": [],
        "VpcId": "",
        "SecurityGroupIds": []
    },
    "CodeSize": 304,
    "FunctionArn": "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:my-function",
    "Handler": "index.handler"
}
```

For more information, see AWS Lambda Function Configuration in the *AWS Lambda Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// UpdateFunctionConfiguration updates a map of environment variables configured
 for
// the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string, envVars map[string]string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Environment:  &types.Environment{Variables: envVars},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update configuration for %v. Here's why: %v",
 functionName, err)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the configuration of an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda     the {@link LambdaClient} instance to use for the AWS
Lambda operation
     * @param functionName  the name of the AWS Lambda function to update
     * @param handler       the new handler for the AWS Lambda function
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if there is an error while updating the function
configuration
     */
    public static void updateFunctionConfiguration(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String handler) {
        try {
            UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest configurationRequest =
UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .build();

            awsLambda.updateFunctionConfiguration(configurationRequest);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const updateFunctionConfiguration = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const config = readFileSync(`${dirname}../functions/config.json`).toString();
  const command = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationCommand({
    ...JSON.parse(config),
    FunctionName: funcName,
  });
  const result = client.send(command);
  waitForFunctionUpdated({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return result;
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function updateFunctionConfiguration($functionName, $handler,
 $environment = '')
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->updateFunctionConfiguration([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
            'Handler' => "$handler.lambda_handler",
            'Environment' => $environment,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the existing Lambda Function Configuration

```
Update-LMFunctionConfiguration -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Handler
 "lambda_function.launch_instance" -Timeout 600 -Environment_Variable
 @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" } -Role arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/
service-role/lambda -DeadLetterConfig_TargetArn arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:
 123456789101:MyfirstTopic
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the existing Lambda Function Configuration

```
Update-LMFunctionConfiguration -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Handler
 "lambda_function.launch_instance" -Timeout 600 -Environment_Variable
 @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" } -Role arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/
service-role/lambda -DeadLetterConfig_TargetArn arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:
 123456789101:MyfirstTopic
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
```

```
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def update_function_configuration(self, function_name, env_vars):
        """
        Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param env_vars: A dict of environment variables to update.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_configuration(
                FunctionName=function_name, Environment={"Variables": env_vars}
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function configuration %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param log_level: The log level of the function.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_configuration(function_name, log_level)
    @lambda_client.update_function_configuration({
                                                    function_name: function_name,
                                                    environment: {
                                                      variables: {
                                                        'LOG_LEVEL' => log_level
                                                      }
                                                    }
                                                  })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
 function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error updating configurations for
 #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n
 #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/** Update the environment for a function. */
pub async fn update_function_configuration(
    &self,
    environment: Environment,
) -> Result<UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutput, anyhow::Error> {
    info!(
        ?environment,
        "Updating environment for {}", self.lambda_name
    );
    let updated = self
        .lambda_client
        .update_function_configuration()
        .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
        .environment(environment)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

    self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

    Ok(updated)
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_lmd->updatefunctionconfiguration(     " oo_result is
returned for testing purposes. "
             iv_functionname = iv_function_name
             iv_runtime = iv_runtime
             iv_description  = 'Updated Lambda function'
             iv_memorysize  = iv_memory_size ).

       MESSAGE 'Lambda function configuration/settings updated.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodesigningcfgno00.
       MESSAGE 'Code signing configuration does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodeverification00.
       MESSAGE 'Code signature failed one or more validation checks for
signature mismatch or expiration.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidcodesigex.
       MESSAGE 'Code signature failed the integrity check.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
       MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Tell the server-side component to log debug output by setting its
    /// environment's `LOG_LEVEL` to `DEBUG`.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to enable debug
    ///     logging for.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`
    func enableDebugLogging(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String)
 async throws {
        let envVariables = [
            "LOG_LEVEL": "DEBUG"
        ]
        let environment = LambdaClientTypes.Environment(variables: envVariables)

        do {
            let output = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionConfiguration(
                input: UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput(
                    environment: environment,
                    functionName: functionName
                )
            )
```

```
            guard let response = output.environment else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError
            }

            if response.error != nil {
                throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
            }

            guard let retVariables = response.variables else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError
            }

            for envVar in retVariables {
                if envVar.key == "LOG_LEVEL" && envVar.value != "DEBUG" {
                    print("*** Log level is not set to DEBUG!")
                    throw ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError
                }
            }
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios for Lambda using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Lambda with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Lambda or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
- Automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
- Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

- Create a lending library REST API
- Create a messenger application with Step Functions
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
- Invoke a Lambda function from a browser
- Transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda
- Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
- Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function
- Use the Amazon Neptune API to develop a Lambda function that queries graph data
- Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication using an AWS SDK

Automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PreSignUp` trigger.
- Sign up a user with Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically confirms known users.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// AutoConfirm separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type AutoConfirm struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewAutoConfirm constructs a new auto confirm runner.
func NewAutoConfirm(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) AutoConfirm {
 scenario := AutoConfirm{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddPreSignUpTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PreSignUp trigger.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
```

```
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PreSignUp trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when a user signs up, and lets your function take action
 before the main Cognito\n" +
  "sign up processing occurs.\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PreSignUp, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the PreSignUp
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)
}

// SignUpUser signs up a user from the known user table with a password you
 specify.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignUpUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 usersTable string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("Let's sign up a user to your Cognito user pool. When the user's
 email matches an email in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, it is automatically verified and the user is
 confirmed.")

 knownUsers, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, usersTable)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 userChoice := runner.questioner.AskChoice("Which user do you want to use?\n",
 knownUsers.UserNameList())
 user := knownUsers.Users[userChoice]

 var signedUp bool
 var userConfirmed bool
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !signedUp {
  log.Printf("Signing up user '%v' with email '%v' to Cognito.\n", user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
  userConfirmed, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignUp(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
 password, user.UserEmail)
```

```
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   signedUp = true
  }
 }
 log.Printf("User %v signed up, confirmed = %v.\n", user.UserName, userConfirmed)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// SignInUser signs in a user.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string, password string) string {
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 log.Printf("Let's sign in as %v...\n", userName)
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
 (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return *authResult.AccessToken
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])

 runner.AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers, actions.PreSignUp)
 userName, password := runner.SignUpUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunction"])
 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
  runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password))

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
```

```
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PreSignUp event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be confirmed and verified.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup) (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup,
 error) {
 log.Printf("Received presignup from %v for user '%v'", event.TriggerSource,
 event.UserName)
 if event.TriggerSource != "PreSignUp_SignUp" {
  // Other trigger sources, such as PreSignUp_AdminInitiateAuth, ignore the
 response from this handler.
  return event, nil
 }
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
 }
 log.Printf("Looking up email %v in table %v.\n", user.UserEmail, tableName)
 output, err := h.dynamoClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key:       user.GetKey(),
```

```
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error looking up email %v.\n", user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }
 if output.Item == nil {
  log.Printf("Email %v not found. Email verification is required.\n",
 user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }

 err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(output.Item, &user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return event, err
 }

 if user.UserName != event.UserName {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found, but stored UserName '%v' does not match
 supplied UserName '%v'. Verification is required.\n",
   user.UserEmail, user.UserName, event.UserName)
 } else {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found with matching UserName %v. User is confirmed.
\n", user.UserEmail, user.UserName)
  event.Response.AutoConfirmUser = true
  event.Response.AutoVerifyEmail = true
 }

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this
 example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
```

```
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for
 this example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured
 format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users
 table...\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the
 specified Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with
 your Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
```

```
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
```

```
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
```

```
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
```

```
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
```

```
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of
 strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_
%v", i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
```

```
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user
 User) error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
```

```
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}
```

```
// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}
```

```
// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}
```

```
func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 \n" +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i],
 HandlerArn: nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
```

```
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure an interactive "Scenario" run. The JavaScript (v3) examples share a Scenario runner to streamline complex examples. The complete source code is on GitHub.

```
import { AutoConfirm } from "./scenario-auto-confirm.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {
  errors: [],
  users: [
    {
      UserName: "test_user_1",
      UserEmail: "test_email_1@example.com",
    },
    {
```

```
      UserName: "test_user_2",
      UserEmail: "test_email_2@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_3",
      UserEmail: "test_email_3@example.com",
    },
  ],
};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Demonstrate automatically confirming known users in a database.
  "auto-confirm": AutoConfirm(context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseScenarioArgs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Cognito user pools and triggers",
    description:
      "Demonstrate how to use the AWS SDKs to customize Amazon Cognito
 authentication behavior.",
  });
}
```

This Scenario demonstrates auto-confirming a known user. It orchestrates the example steps.

```
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
```

```
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";

import {
  getStackOutputs,
  logCleanUpReminder,
  promptForStackName,
  promptForStackRegion,
  skipWhenErrors,
} from "./steps-common.js";
import { populateTable } from "./actions/dynamodb-actions.js";
import {
  addPreSignUpHandler,
  deleteUser,
  getUser,
  signIn,
  signUpUser,
} from "./actions/cognito-actions.js";
import {
  getLatestLogStreamForLambda,
  getLogEvents,
} from "./actions/cloudwatch-logs-actions.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   errors: Error[],
 *   password: string,
 *   users: { UserName: string, UserEmail: string }[],
 *   selectedUser?: string,
 *   stackName?: string,
 *   stackRegion?: string,
 *   token?: string,
 *   confirmDeleteSignedInUser?: boolean,
 *   TableName?: string,
 *   UserPoolClientId?: string,
 *   UserPoolId?: string,
 *   UserPoolArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerName?: string
 * }} State
 */

const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `This demo will populate some users into the \
```

```
database created as part of the "${state.stackName}" stack. \
Then the AutoConfirmHandler will be linked to the PreSignUp \
trigger from Cognito. Finally, you will choose a user to sign up.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsers = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsers",
  "Populating the DynamoDB table with some users.",
  { skipWhenErrors: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsersComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsersComplete",
  "Done populating users.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const populateUsers = new ScenarioAction(
  "populateUsers",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await populateTable({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      tableName: state.TableName,
      items: state.users,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTrigger",
  "Setting up the PreSignUp trigger for the Cognito User Pool.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const setupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioAction(
  "setupSignUpTrigger",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
```

```
    const [_, err] = await addPreSignUpHandler({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      handlerArn: state.AutoConfirmHandlerArn,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete",
  (
    /** @type {State} */ state,
  ) => `The lambda function "${state.AutoConfirmHandlerName}" \
has been configured as the PreSignUp trigger handler for the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const selectUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "selectedUser",
  "Select a user to sign up.",
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users.map((u) => u.UserName),
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
    default: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users[0].UserName,
  },
);

const checkIfUserAlreadyExists = new ScenarioAction(
  "checkIfUserAlreadyExists",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [user, err] = await getUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
    });
```

```
    if (err?.name === "UserNotFoundException") {
      // Do nothing. We're not expecting the user to exist before
      // sign up is complete.
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    if (user) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          `The user "${state.selectedUser}" already exists in the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
        ),
      );
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const createPassword = new ScenarioInput(
  "password",
  "Enter a password that has at least eight characters, uppercase, lowercase,
 numbers and symbols.",
  { type: "password", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors, default: "Abcd1234!" },
);

const logSignUpExistingUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Signing up user "${state.selectedUser}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signUpExistingUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signUpExistingUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const signUp = (password) =>
      signUpUser({
        region: state.stackRegion,
```

```
        userPoolClientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
        username: state.selectedUser,
        email: state.users.find((u) => u.UserName === state.selectedUser)
          .UserEmail,
        password,
      });

    let [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);

    while (err?.name === "InvalidPasswordException") {
      console.warn("The password you entered was invalid.");
      await createPassword.handle(state);
      [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignUpExistingUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `"${state.selectedUser} was signed up successfully.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logLambdaLogs = new ScenarioAction(
  "logLambdaLogs",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    console.log(
      "Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...\n",
    );
    await wait(10);

    const [logStream, logStreamErr] = await getLatestLogStreamForLambda({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
    });
    if (logStreamErr) {
      state.errors.push(logStreamErr);
      return;
```

```
    }

    console.log(
      `Getting some recent events from log stream "${logStream.logStreamName}"`,
    );
    const [logEvents, logEventsErr] = await getLogEvents({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
      eventCount: 10,
      logStreamName: logStream.logStreamName,
    });
    if (logEventsErr) {
      state.errors.push(logEventsErr);
      return;
    }

    console.log(logEvents.map((ev) => `\t${ev.message}`).join(""));
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Let's sign in as ${state.selectedUser}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [response, err] = await signIn({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      clientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
      password: state.password,
    });

    if (err?.name === "PasswordResetRequiredException") {
      state.errors.push(new Error("Please reset your password."));
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
```

```
      return;
    }

    state.token = response?.AuthenticationResult?.AccessToken;
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with:
 ${state.token.slice(0, 11)}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const confirmDeleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteSignedInUser",
  "Do you want to delete the currently signed in user?",
  { type: "confirm", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const deleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteSignedInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await deleteUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      accessToken: state.token,
    });

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      skipWhenErrors(state) || !state.confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
  },
);

const logErrors = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logErrors",
  (/** @type {State}*/ state) => {
    const errorList = state.errors
```

```
      .map((err) => ` - ${err.name}: ${err.message}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Scenario errors found:\n${errorList}`;
  },
  {
    // Don't log errors when there aren't any!
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.errors.length === 0,
  },
);

export const AutoConfirm = (context) =>
  new Scenario(
    "AutoConfirm",
    [
      promptForStackName,
      promptForStackRegion,
      getStackOutputs,
      greeting,
      logPopulatingUsers,
      populateUsers,
      logPopulatingUsersComplete,
      logSetupSignUpTrigger,
      setupSignUpTrigger,
      logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete,
      selectUser,
      checkIfUserAlreadyExists,
      createPassword,
      logSignUpExistingUser,
      signUpExistingUser,
      logSignUpExistingUserComplete,
      logLambdaLogs,
      logSignInUser,
      signInUser,
      logSignInUserComplete,
      confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
      deleteSignedInUser,
      logCleanUpReminder,
      logErrors,
    ],
    context,
  );
```

These are steps that are shared with other Scenarios.

```
import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { getCfnOutputs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/sdk/cfn-outputs.js";

export const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;

export const getStackOutputs = new ScenarioAction(
  "getStackOutputs",
  async (state) => {
    if (!state.stackName || !state.stackRegion) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          "No stack name or region provided. The stack name and \
region are required to fetch CFN outputs relevant to this example.",
        ),
      );
      return;
    }

    const outputs = await getCfnOutputs(state.stackName, state.stackRegion);
    Object.assign(state, outputs);
  },
);

export const promptForStackName = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackName",
  "Enter the name of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "PoolsAndTriggersStack" },
);

export const promptForStackRegion = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackRegion",
  "Enter the region of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "us-east-1" },
);

export const logCleanUpReminder = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logCleanUpReminder",
  "All done. Remember to run 'cdk destroy' to teardown the stack.",
```

```
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

A handler for the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import type { PreSignUpTriggerEvent, Handler } from "aws-lambda";
import type { UserRepository } from "./user-repository";
import { DynamoDBUserRepository } from "./user-repository";

export class PreSignUpHandler {
  private userRepository: UserRepository;

  constructor(userRepository: UserRepository) {
    this.userRepository = userRepository;
  }

  private isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): boolean {
    return event.triggerSource === "PreSignUp_SignUp";
  }

  private getEventUserEmail(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): string {
    return event.request.userAttributes.email;
  }

  async handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(
    event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent,
  ): Promise<PreSignUpTriggerEvent> {
    console.log(
      `Received presignup from ${event.triggerSource} for user
 '${event.userName}'`,
    );

    if (!this.isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event)) {
      return event;
    }

    const eventEmail = this.getEventUserEmail(event);
    console.log(`Looking up email ${eventEmail}.`);
    const storedUserInfo =
      await this.userRepository.getUserInfoByEmail(eventEmail);

    if (!storedUserInfo) {
```

```
      console.log(
        `Email ${eventEmail} not found. Email verification is required.`,
      );
      return event;
    }

    if (storedUserInfo.UserName !== event.userName) {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found, but stored UserName
 '${storedUserInfo.UserName}' does not match supplied UserName
 '${event.userName}'. Verification is required.`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found with matching UserName
 ${storedUserInfo.UserName}. User is confirmed.`,
      );
      event.response.autoConfirmUser = true;
      event.response.autoVerifyEmail = true;
    }
    return event;
  }
}

const createPreSignUpHandler = (): PreSignUpHandler => {
  const tableName = process.env.TABLE_NAME;
  if (!tableName) {
    throw new Error("TABLE_NAME environment variable is not set");
  }

  const userRepository = new DynamoDBUserRepository(tableName);
  return new PreSignUpHandler(userRepository);
};

export const handler: Handler = async (event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent) => {
  const preSignUpHandler = createPreSignUpHandler();
  return preSignUpHandler.handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(event);
};
```

Module of CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import {
  CloudWatchLogsClient,
  GetLogEventsCommand,
  OrderBy,
  paginateDescribeLogStreams,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";

/**
 * Get the latest log stream for a Lambda function.
 * @param {{ functionName: string, region: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").LogStream | null,
 unknown]>}
 */
export const getLatestLogStreamForLambda = async ({ functionName, region }) => {
  try {
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const paginator = paginateDescribeLogStreams(
      { client: cwlClient },
      {
        descending: true,
        limit: 1,
        orderBy: OrderBy.LastEventTime,
        logGroupName,
      },
    );

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      return [page.logStreams[0], null];
    }
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Get the log events for a Lambda function's log stream.
 * @param {{
 *   functionName: string,
 *   logStreamName: string,
 *   eventCount: number,
 *   region: string
 * }} config
```

```
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").OutputLogEvent[]
 | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getLogEvents = async ({
  functionName,
  logStreamName,
  eventCount,
  region,
}) => {
  try {
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const response = await cwlClient.send(
      new GetLogEventsCommand({
        logStreamName: logStreamName,
        limit: eventCount,
        logGroupName: logGroupName,
      }),
    );

    return [response.events, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import {
  AdminGetUserCommand,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
  DeleteUserCommand,
  InitiateAuthCommand,
  SignUpCommand,
  UpdateUserPoolCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";

/**
 * Connect a Lambda function to the PreSignUp trigger for a Cognito user pool
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, handlerArn: string }} config
```

```
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").UpdateUserPoolCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const addPreSignUpHandler = async ({
  region,
  userPoolId,
  handlerArn,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const command = new UpdateUserPoolCommand({
      UserPoolId: userPoolId,
      LambdaConfig: {
        PreSignUp: handlerArn,
      },
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(command);
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Attempt to register a user to a user pool with a given username and password.
 * @param {{
 *   region: string,
 *   userPoolClientId: string,
 *   username: string,
 *   email: string,
 *   password: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").SignUpCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signUpUser = async ({
  region,
  userPoolClientId,
  username,
  email,
```

```
  password,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new SignUpCommand({
        ClientId: userPoolClientId,
        Username: username,
        Password: password,
        UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Sign in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password authentication
 flow.
 * @param {{ region: string, clientId: string, username: string, password:
 string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").InitiateAuthCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signIn = async ({ region, clientId, username, password }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new InitiateAuthCommand({
        AuthFlow: "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
        ClientId: clientId,
        AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

```
/**
 * Retrieve an existing user from a user pool.
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, username: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").AdminGetUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getUser = async ({ region, userPoolId, username }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new AdminGetUserCommand({
        UserPoolId: userPoolId,
        Username: username,
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Delete the signed-in user. Useful for allowing a user to delete their
 * own profile.
 * @param {{ region: string, accessToken: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").DeleteUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const deleteUser = async ({ region, accessToken }) => {
  try {
    const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await client.send(
      new DeleteUserCommand({ AccessToken: accessToken }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of DynamoDB actions.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Populate a DynamoDB table with provide items.
 * @param {{ region: string, tableName: string, items: Record<string,
 unknown>[] }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb").BatchWriteCommandOutput |
 null, unknown]>}
 */
export const populateTable = async ({ region, tableName, items }) => {
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region });
    const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(ddbClient);
    const response = await docClient.send(
      new BatchWriteCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [tableName]: items.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: {
              Item: item,
            },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `MigrateUser` trigger.
- Sign in to Amazon Cognito with a username and email that is not in the user pool.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically migrates known users to the user pool.
- Perform the forgot password flow to reset the password for the migrated user.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)
```

```
// MigrateUser separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type MigrateUser struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewMigrateUser constructs a new migrate user runner.
func NewMigrateUser(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) MigrateUser {
 scenario := MigrateUser{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddMigrateUserTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 MigrateUser trigger.
func (runner *MigrateUser) AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the MigrateUser trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when an unknown user signs in, and lets your function
 take action before Cognito\n" +
  "rejects the user.\n\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.UserMigration, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the MigrateUser
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser adds a new user to the known users table and signs that user in to
 Amazon Cognito.
func (runner *MigrateUser) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, usersTable string,
 clientId string) (bool, actions.User) {
 log.Println("Let's sign in a user to your Cognito user pool. When the username
 and email matches an entry in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, the email is automatically verified and the user
 is migrated to the Cognito user pool.")

 user := actions.User{}
 user.UserName = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter a username:")
 user.UserEmail = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter an email that you own. This
 email will be used to confirm user migration\n" +
  "during this example:")

 runner.helper.AddKnownUser(ctx, usersTable, user)

 var err error
 var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 signedIn := false
 for !signedIn && resetRequired == nil {
  log.Printf("Signing in to Cognito as user '%v'. The expected result is a
 PasswordResetRequiredException.\n\n", user.UserName)
  authResult, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName, "_")
  if err != nil {
   if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
    log.Printf("\nUser '%v' is not in the Cognito user pool but was found in the
 DynamoDB known users table.\n"+
     "User migration is started and a password reset is required.",
 user.UserName)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Printf("User '%v' successfully signed in. This is unexpected and probably
 means you have not\n"+
    "cleaned up a previous run of this scenario, so the user exist in the Cognito
 user pool.\n"+
```

```
    "You can continue this example and select to clean up resources, or manually
 remove\n"+
    "the user from your user pool and try again.", user.UserName)
   runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
   signedIn = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return resetRequired != nil, user
}

// ResetPassword starts a password recovery flow.
func (runner *MigrateUser) ResetPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 user actions.User) {
 wantCode := runner.questioner.AskBool(fmt.Sprintf("In order to migrate the user
 to Cognito, you must be able to receive a confirmation\n"+
  "code by email at %v. Do you want to send a code (y/n)?", user.UserEmail), "y")
 if !wantCode {
  log.Println("To complete this example and successfully migrate a user to
 Cognito, you must enter an email\n" +
   "you own that can receive a confirmation code.")
  return
 }
 codeDelivery, err := runner.cognitoActor.ForgotPassword(ctx, clientId,
 user.UserName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nA confirmation code has been sent to %v.",
 *codeDelivery.Destination)
 code := runner.questioner.Ask("Check your email and enter it here:")

 confirmed := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !confirmed {
  log.Printf("\nConfirming password reset for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx, clientId, code,
 user.UserName, password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
```

```
    if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
     password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
    } else {
     panic(err)
    }
   } else {
    confirmed = true
   }
  }
  log.Printf("User '%v' successfully confirmed and migrated.\n", user.UserName)
  log.Println("Signing in with your username and password...")
  authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
  password)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
  (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
  runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
  *authResult.AccessToken)

  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }

 // Run runs the scenario.
 func (runner *MigrateUser) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
  defer func() {
   if r := recover(); r != nil {
    log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
    runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
   }
  }()

  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  log.Printf("Welcome\n")

  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

  stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
```

```
 runner.AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.UserMigration)
 resetNeeded, user := runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"],
 stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"])
 if resetNeeded {
  runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunction"])
  runner.ResetPassword(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], user)
 }

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `MigrateUser` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
```

```
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the MigrateUser event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be migrated to the user pool.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser)
 (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser, error) {
 log.Printf("Received migrate trigger from %v for user '%v'",
 event.TriggerSource, event.UserName)
 if event.TriggerSource != "UserMigration_Authentication" {
  return event, nil
 }
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserName: event.UserName,
 }
 log.Printf("Looking up user '%v' in table %v.\n", user.UserName, tableName)
 filterEx := expression.Name("UserName").Equal(expression.Value(user.UserName))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filterEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error building expression to query for user '%v'.\n",
 user.UserName)
  return event, err
 }
 output, err := h.dynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName:                 aws.String(tableName),
  FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
  ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
  ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error looking up user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  return event, err
 }
 if len(output.Items) == 0 {
  log.Printf("User '%v' not found, not migrating user.\n", user.UserName)
  return event, err
 }
```

```
 var users []UserInfo
 err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &users)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB items. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return event, err
 }

 user = users[0]
 log.Printf("UserName '%v' found with email %v. User is migrated and must reset
 password.\n", user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.UserAttributes =
 map[string]string{
  "email":          user.UserEmail,
  "email_verified": "true", // email_verified is required for the forgot password
 flow.
 }
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.FinalUserStatus =
 "RESET_REQUIRED"
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.MessageAction = "SUPPRESS"

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
```

```
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this
 example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
```

```
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for
 this example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured
 format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
```

```
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users
 table...\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the
 specified Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with
 your Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
```

```
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
```

```
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
```

```
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
```

```
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
```

```
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of
 strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_
%v", i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user
 User) error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
```

```
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
```

```
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
```

```
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 \n" +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i],
 HandlerArn: nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

- ConfirmForgotPassword
- DeleteUser
- ForgotPassword
- InitiateAuth
- SignUp
- UpdateUserPool

Create an API Gateway REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB

- Lambda

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Create a messenger application with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

The following code examples show how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a websocket chat application with API Gateway

The following code example shows how to create a chat application that is served by a websocket API built on Amazon API Gateway.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon API Gateway V2 to create a websocket API that integrates with AWS Lambda and Amazon DynamoDB.

- Create a websocket API served by API Gateway.

- Define a Lambda handler that stores connections in DynamoDB and posts messages to other chat participants.
- Connect to the websocket chat application and send messages with the Websockets package.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

The following code examples show how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

.NET

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into

the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });
```

```
  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );
```

```
  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into

the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Invoke a Lambda function from a browser

The following code example shows how to invoke an AWS Lambda function from a browser.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections. This app uses AWS SDK for JavaScript v3.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda

The following code example shows how to transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to add custom code to standard S3 GET requests to modify the requested object retrieved from S3 so that the object suit the needs of the requesting client or application.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Amazon S3

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.
- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs

- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.

- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use the Amazon Neptune API to develop a Lambda function that queries graph data

The following code example shows how to use the Neptune API to query graph data.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Neptune Java API to create a Lambda function that queries graph data within the VPC.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Neptune

Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication.

- Use administrator functions to add a user to a user pool.
- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PostAuthentication` trigger.
- Sign the new user in to Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function writes custom information to CloudWatch Logs and to an DynamoDB table.
- Get and display custom data from the DynamoDB table, then clean up resources.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)
```

```
// ActivityLog separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ActivityLog struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewActivityLog constructs a new activity log runner.
func NewActivityLog(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) ActivityLog {
 scenario := ActivityLog{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddUserToPool selects a user from the known users table and uses administrator
 credentials to add the user to the user pool.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddUserToPool(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 tableName string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("To facilitate this example, let's add a user to the user pool using
 administrator privileges.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 user := users.Users[0]
 log.Printf("Adding known user %v to the user pool.\n", user.UserName)
 err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminCreateUser(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 pwSet := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
```

```
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !pwSet {
  log.Printf("\nSetting password for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   pwSet = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// AddActivityLogTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PostAuthentication trigger.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, activityLogArn string) {
 log.Println("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PostAuthentication
 trigger from Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens after a user is authenticated, and lets your function
 take action, such as logging\n" +
  "the outcome.")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PostAuthentication, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(activityLogArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.PostAuthentication)
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle
 PostAuthentication Cognito trigger.\n",
  activityLogArn, userPoolId)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser signs in as the specified user.
func (runner *ActivityLog) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string, password string) {
 log.Printf("Now we'll sign in user %v and check the results in the logs and the
 DynamoDB table.", userName)
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Sign in successful.",
  "The PostAuthentication Lambda handler writes custom information to CloudWatch
 Logs.")

 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
}

// GetKnownUserLastLogin gets the login info for a user from the Amazon DynamoDB
 table and displays it.
func (runner *ActivityLog) GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string, userName string) {
 log.Println("The PostAuthentication handler also writes login data to the
 DynamoDB table.")
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, user := range users.Users {
  if user.UserName == userName {
   log.Println("The last login info for the user in the known users table is:")
   log.Printf("\t%+v", *user.LastLogin)
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *ActivityLog) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
```

```
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])
 userName, password := runner.AddUserToPool(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])

 runner.AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunctionArn"])
 runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password)
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunction"])
 runner.GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"], userName)

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PostAuthentication` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
```

```
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// LoginInfo defines structured login data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string `dynamodbav:"UserPoolId"`
 ClientId   string `dynamodbav:"ClientId"`
 Time       string `dynamodbav:"Time"`
}

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string    `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string    `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
 LastLogin LoginInfo `dynamodbav:"LastLogin"`
}

// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PostAuthentication event by writing custom data to
 the logs and
```

```
// to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context,
 event events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication)
 (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication, error) {
 log.Printf("Received post authentication trigger from %v for user '%v'",
 event.TriggerSource, event.UserName)
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserName:  event.UserName,
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
  LastLogin: LoginInfo{
   UserPoolId: event.UserPoolID,
   ClientId:   event.CallerContext.ClientID,
   Time:       time.Now().Format(time.UnixDate),
  },
 }
 // Write to CloudWatch Logs.
 fmt.Printf("%#v", user)

 // Also write to an external system. This examples uses DynamoDB to demonstrate.
 userMap, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshal to DynamoDB map. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else if len(userMap) == 0 {
  log.Printf("User info marshaled to an empty map.")
 } else {
  _, err := h.dynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
   Item:      userMap,
   TableName: aws.String(tableName),
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't write to DynamoDB. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Wrote user info to DynamoDB table %v.\n", tableName)
  }
 }

 return event, nil
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this
 example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
```

```
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for
 this example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured
 format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users
 table...\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the
 specified Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with
 your Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito
 trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}
```

```
// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger
 is specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userPoolId, err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
```

```
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
```

```
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken
 string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool.
 This method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a
 user without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
```

```
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of
 strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_
%v", i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n",
 err)
    return err
   }
   writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n",
 tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user
 User) error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
```

```
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
```

```
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string
```

```
type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName
 string) StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger
```

```
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 \n" +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i],
 HandlerArn: nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
  } else {
   log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
  unexpected charges!")
  }
 }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - AdminCreateUser
  - AdminSetUserPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - UpdateUserPool

Serverless examples for Lambda

The following code examples show how to use Lambda with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function
- Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger
- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using .NET.

```
using System.Data;
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.APIGatewayEvents;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using MySql.Data.MySqlClient;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace aws_rds;

public class InputModel
{
    public string key1 { get; set; }
    public string key2 { get; set; }
}

public class Function
{
    /// <summary>
    // Handles the Lambda function execution for connecting to RDS using IAM
 authentication.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="input">The input event data passed to the Lambda function</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda execution context that provides runtime
 information</param>
    /// <returns>A response object containing the execution result</returns>

    public async Task<APIGatewayProxyResponse>
 FunctionHandler(APIGatewayProxyRequest request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        // Sample Input: {"body": "{\"key1\":\"20\", \"key2\":\"25\"}"}
        var input = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<InputModel>(request.Body);

        /// Obtain authentication token
        var authToken = RDSAuthTokenGenerator.GenerateAuthToken(
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT"),
            Convert.ToInt32(Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")),
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")
        );

        /// Build the Connection String with the Token
        string connectionString =
 $"Server={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT")};" +

 $"Port={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")};" +

 $"Uid={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")};" +
                                 $"Pwd={authToken};";


        try
        {
            await using var connection = new MySqlConnection(connectionString);
            await connection.OpenAsync();

            const string sql = "SELECT @param1 + @param2 AS Sum";

            await using var command = new MySqlCommand(sql, connection);
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param1", int.Parse(input.key1 ??
 "0"));
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param2", int.Parse(input.key2 ??
 "0"));

            await using var reader = await command.ExecuteReaderAsync();
            if (await reader.ReadAsync())
```

```
            {
                int result = reader.GetInt32("Sum");

                //Sample Response: {"statusCode":200,"body":"{\"message\":\"The
 sum is: 45\"}","isBase64Encoded":false}
                return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
                {
                    StatusCode = 200,
                    Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { message = $"The sum is:
 {result}" })
                };
            }

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = 500,
            Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { error = "Internal server
 error" })
        };
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Go.

```
/*
```

```
Golang v2 code here.
*/

package main

import (
 "context"
 "database/sql"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/rds/auth"
 _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

type MyEvent struct {
 Name string `json:"name"`
}

func HandleRequest(event *MyEvent) (map[string]interface{}, error) {

 var dbName string = os.Getenv("DatabaseName")
 var dbUser string = os.Getenv("DatabaseUser")
 var dbHost string = os.Getenv("DBHost") // Add hostname without https
 var dbPort int = os.Getenv("Port")      // Add port number
 var dbEndpoint string = fmt.Sprintf("%s:%d", dbHost, dbPort)
 var region string = os.Getenv("AWS_REGION")

 cfg, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())
 if err != nil {
  panic("configuration error: " + err.Error())
 }

 authenticationToken, err := auth.BuildAuthToken(
  context.TODO(), dbEndpoint, region, dbUser, cfg.Credentials)
 if err != nil {
  panic("failed to create authentication token: " + err.Error())
 }

 dsn := fmt.Sprintf("%s:%s@tcp(%s)/%s?tls=true&allowCleartextPasswords=true",
  dbUser, authenticationToken, dbEndpoint, dbName,
```

```
 )

 db, err := sql.Open("mysql", dsn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 defer db.Close()

 var sum int
 err = db.QueryRow("SELECT ?+? AS sum", 3, 2).Scan(&sum)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 s := fmt.Sprint(sum)
 message := fmt.Sprintf("The selected sum is: %s", s)

 messageBytes, err := json.Marshal(message)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }

 messageString := string(messageBytes)
 return map[string]interface{}{
  "statusCode": 200,
  "headers":    map[string]string{"Content-Type": "application/json"},
  "body":       messageString,
 }, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.RdsDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.Field;

import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;

public class RdsLambdaHandler implements
 RequestHandler<APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent, APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent> {

    @Override
    public APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent handleRequest(APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent
 event, Context context) {
        APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent response = new
 APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent();

        try {
            // Obtain auth token
            String token = createAuthToken();

            // Define connection configuration
```

```
            String connectionString = String.format("jdbc:mysql://%s:%s/%s?
useSSL=true&requireSSL=true",
                    System.getenv("ProxyHostName"),
                    System.getenv("Port"),
                    System.getenv("DBName"));

            // Establish a connection to the database
            try (Connection connection =
 DriverManager.getConnection(connectionString, System.getenv("DBUserName"),
 token);
                 PreparedStatement statement =
 connection.prepareStatement("SELECT ? + ? AS sum")) {

                statement.setInt(1, 3);
                statement.setInt(2, 2);

                try (ResultSet resultSet = statement.executeQuery()) {
                    if (resultSet.next()) {
                        int sum = resultSet.getInt("sum");
                        response.setStatusCode(200);
                        response.setBody("The selected sum is: " + sum);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (Exception e) {
            response.setStatusCode(500);
            response.setBody("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }

        return response;
    }

    private String createAuthToken() {
        // Create RDS Data Service client
        RdsDataClient rdsDataClient = RdsDataClient.builder()
                .region(Region.of(System.getenv("AWS_REGION")))
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        // Define authentication request
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                .resourceArn(System.getenv("ProxyHostName"))
                .secretArn(System.getenv("DBUserName"))
```

```
                .database(System.getenv("DBName"))
                .sql("SELECT 'RDS IAM Authentication'")
                .build();

        // Execute request and obtain authentication token
        ExecuteStatementResponse response =
 rdsDataClient.executeStatement(request);
        Field tokenField = response.records().get(0).get(0);

        return tokenField.stringValue();
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
/*
Node.js code here.
*/
// ES6+ example
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

async function createAuthToken() {
  // Define connection authentication parameters
  const dbinfo = {

    hostname: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    port: process.env.Port,
    username: process.env.DBUserName,
```

```
    region: process.env.AWS_REGION,

  }

  // Create RDS Signer object
  const signer = new Signer(dbinfo);

  // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
  const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
  return token;
}

async function dbOps() {

  // Obtain auth token
  const token = await createAuthToken();
  // Define connection configuration
  let connectionConfig = {
    host: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    user: process.env.DBUserName,
    password: token,
    database: process.env.DBName,
    ssl: 'Amazon RDS'
  }
  // Create the connection to the DB
  const conn = await mysql.createConnection(connectionConfig);
  // Obtain the result of the query
  const [res,] = await conn.execute('select ?+? as sum', [3, 2]);
  return res;

}

export const handler = async (event) => {
  // Execute database flow
  const result = await dbOps();
  // Return result
  return {
    statusCode: 200,
    body: JSON.stringify("The selected sum is: " + result[0].sum)
  }
};
```

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using TypeScript.

```
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

// RDS settings
// Using '!' (non-null assertion operator) to tell the TypeScript compiler that
 the DB settings are not null or undefined,
const proxy_host_name = process.env.PROXY_HOST_NAME!
const port = parseInt(process.env.PORT!)
const db_name = process.env.DB_NAME!
const db_user_name = process.env.DB_USER_NAME!
const aws_region = process.env.AWS_REGION!


async function createAuthToken(): Promise<string> {

    // Create RDS Signer object
    const signer = new Signer({
        hostname: proxy_host_name,
        port: port,
        region: aws_region,
        username: db_user_name
    });

    // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
    const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
    return token;
}

async function dbOps(): Promise<mysql.QueryResult | undefined> {
    try {
        // Obtain auth token
        const token = await createAuthToken();
        const conn = await mysql.createConnection({
            host: proxy_host_name,
            user: db_user_name,
            password: token,
            database: db_name,
            ssl: 'Amazon RDS' // Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL connection
        });
        const [rows, fields] = await conn.execute('SELECT ? + ? AS sum', [3, 2]);
        console.log('result:', rows);
```

```
        return rows;
    }
    catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
    }
}

export const lambdaHandler = async (event: any): Promise<{ statusCode: number;
 body: string }> => {
    // Execute database flow
    const result = await dbOps();

    // Return error is result is undefined
    if (result == undefined)
        return {
            statusCode: 500,
            body: JSON.stringify(`Error with connection to DB host`)
        }

    // Return result
    return {
        statusCode: 200,
        body: JSON.stringify(`The selected sum is: ${result[0].sum}`)
    };
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using PHP.

```
<?php
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;
use Aws\Rds\AuthTokenGenerator;
use Aws\Credentials\CredentialProvider;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }


    private function getAuthToken(): string {
        // Define connection authentication parameters
        $dbConnection = [
            'hostname' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'port' => getenv('DB_PORT'),
            'username' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'region' => getenv('AWS_REGION'),
        ];

        // Create RDS AuthTokenGenerator object
        $generator = new
 AuthTokenGenerator(CredentialProvider::defaultProvider());

        // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
        return $generator->createToken(
            $dbConnection['hostname'] . ':' . $dbConnection['port'],
            $dbConnection['region'],
            $dbConnection['username']
        );
    }

    private function getQueryResults() {
        // Obtain auth token
        $token = $this->getAuthToken();
```

```
        // Define connection configuration
        $connectionConfig = [
            'host' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'user' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'password' => $token,
            'database' => getenv('DB_NAME'),
        ];

        // Create the connection to the DB
        $conn = new PDO(

 "mysql:host={$connectionConfig['host']};dbname={$connectionConfig['database']}",
            $connectionConfig['user'],
            $connectionConfig['password'],
            [
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_CA => '/path/to/rds-ca-2019-root.pem',
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_VERIFY_SERVER_CERT => true,
            ]
        );

        // Obtain the result of the query
        $stmt = $conn->prepare('SELECT ?+? AS sum');
        $stmt->execute([3, 2]);

        return $stmt->fetch(PDO::FETCH_ASSOC);
    }

    /**
     * @param mixed $event
     * @param Context $context
     * @return array
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing query");

        // Execute database flow
        $result = $this->getQueryResults();

        return [
            'sum' => $result['sum']
        ];
    }
}
```

```
$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Python.

```
import json
import os
import boto3
import pymysql

# RDS settings
proxy_host_name = os.environ['PROXY_HOST_NAME']
port = int(os.environ['PORT'])
db_name = os.environ['DB_NAME']
db_user_name = os.environ['DB_USER_NAME']
aws_region = os.environ['AWS_REGION']


# Fetch RDS Auth Token
def get_auth_token():
    client = boto3.client('rds')
    token = client.generate_db_auth_token(
        DBHostname=proxy_host_name,
        Port=port
        DBUsername=db_user_name
        Region=aws_region
    )
    return token

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    token = get_auth_token()
```

```
    try:
        connection = pymysql.connect(
            host=proxy_host_name,
            user=db_user_name,
            password=token,
            db=db_name,
            port=port,
            ssl={'ca': 'Amazon RDS'}  # Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL
connection
        )

        with connection.cursor() as cursor:
            cursor.execute('SELECT %s + %s AS sum', (3, 2))
            result = cursor.fetchone()

        return result

    except Exception as e:
        return (f"Error: {str(e)}")  # Return an error message if an exception
occurs
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Ruby.

```
# Ruby code here.

require 'aws-sdk-rds'
require 'json'
require 'mysql2'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  endpoint = ENV['DBEndpoint'] # Add the endpoint without https"
```

```
port = ENV['Port']           # 3306
user = ENV['DBUser']
region = ENV['DBRegion']     # 'us-east-1'
db_name = ENV['DBName']

credentials = Aws::Credentials.new(
  ENV['AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID'],
  ENV['AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY'],
  ENV['AWS_SESSION_TOKEN']
)
rds_client = Aws::RDS::AuthTokenGenerator.new(
  region: region,
  credentials: credentials
)

token = rds_client.auth_token(
  endpoint: endpoint+ ':' + port,
  user_name: user,
  region: region
)

begin
  conn = Mysql2::Client.new(
    host: endpoint,
    username: user,
    password: token,
    port: port,
    database: db_name,
    sslca: '/var/task/global-bundle.pem',
    sslverify: true,
    enable_cleartext_plugin: true
  )
  a = 3
  b = 2
  result = conn.query("SELECT #{a} + #{b} AS sum").first['sum']
  puts result
  conn.close
  {
    statusCode: 200,
    body: result.to_json
  }
rescue => e
  puts "Database connection failed due to #{e}"
end
```

```
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Rust.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_credential_types::provider::ProvideCredentials;
use aws_sigv4::{
    http_request::{sign, SignableBody, SignableRequest, SigningSettings},
    sign::v4,
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use serde_json::{json, Value};
use sqlx::postgres::PgConnectOptions;
use std::env;
use std::time::{Duration, SystemTime};

const RDS_CERTS: &[u8] = include_bytes!("global-bundle.pem");

async fn generate_rds_iam_token(
    db_hostname: &str,
    port: u16,
    db_username: &str,
) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let config = aws_config::load_defaults(BehaviorVersion::v2024_03_28()).await;

    let credentials = config
        .credentials_provider()
        .expect("no credentials provider found")
        .provide_credentials()
        .await
        .expect("unable to load credentials");
    let identity = credentials.into();
```

```
    let region = config.region().unwrap().to_string();

    let mut signing_settings = SigningSettings::default();
    signing_settings.expires_in = Some(Duration::from_secs(900));
    signing_settings.signature_location =
 aws_sigv4::http_request::SignatureLocation::QueryParams;

    let signing_params = v4::SigningParams::builder()
        .identity(&identity)
        .region(&region)
        .name("rds-db")
        .time(SystemTime::now())
        .settings(signing_settings)
        .build()?;

    let url = format!(
        "https://{db_hostname}:{port}/?Action=connect&DBUser={db_user}",
        db_hostname = db_hostname,
        port = port,
        db_user = db_username
    );

    let signable_request =
        SignableRequest::new("GET", &url, std::iter::empty(),
 SignableBody::Bytes(&[]))
            .expect("signable request");

    let (signing_instructions, _signature) =
        sign(signable_request, &signing_params.into())?.into_parts();

    let mut url = url::Url::parse(&url).unwrap();
    for (name, value) in signing_instructions.params() {
        url.query_pairs_mut().append_pair(name, &value);
    }

    let response = url.to_string().split_off("https://".len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(handler)).await
}
```

```
async fn handler(_event: LambdaEvent<Value>) -> Result<Value, Error> {
    let db_host = env::var("DB_HOSTNAME").expect("DB_HOSTNAME must be set");
    let db_port = env::var("DB_PORT")
        .expect("DB_PORT must be set")
        .parse::<u16>()
        .expect("PORT must be a valid number");
    let db_name = env::var("DB_NAME").expect("DB_NAME must be set");
    let db_user_name = env::var("DB_USERNAME").expect("DB_USERNAME must be set");

    let token = generate_rds_iam_token(&db_host, db_port, &db_user_name).await?;

    let opts = PgConnectOptions::new()
        .host(&db_host)
        .port(db_port)
        .username(&db_user_name)
        .password(&token)
        .database(&db_name)
        .ssl_root_cert_from_pem(RDS_CERTS.to_vec())
        .ssl_mode(sqlx::postgres::PgSslMode::Require);

    let pool = sqlx::postgres::PgPoolOptions::new()
        .connect_with(opts)
        .await?;

    let result: i32 = sqlx::query_scalar("SELECT $1 + $2")
        .bind(3)
        .bind(2)
        .fetch_one(&pool)
        .await?;

    println!("Result: {:?}", result);

    Ok(json!({
        "statusCode": 200,
        "content-type": "text/plain",
        "body": format!("The selected sum is: {result}")
    }))
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace KinesisIntegrationSampleCode;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
```

```
            return;
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                throw;
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent) error {
 if len(kinesisEvent.Records) == 0 {
  log.Printf("empty Kinesis event received")
  return nil
 }

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  log.Printf("processed Kinesis event with EventId: %v", record.EventID)
  recordDataBytes := record.Kinesis.Data
  recordDataText := string(recordDataBytes)
  log.Printf("record data: %v", recordDataText)
  // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
 }
 log.Printf("successfully processed %v records", len(kinesisEvent.Records))
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(final KinesisEvent event, final Context context) {
        LambdaLogger logger = context.getLogger();
        if (event.getRecords().isEmpty()) {
            logger.log("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return null;
        }
        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord record : event.getRecords()) {
            try {
                logger.log("Processed Event with EventId: "+record.getEventID());
                String data = new String(record.getKinesis().getData().array());
                logger.log("Data:"+ data);
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex) {
                logger.log("An error occurred:"+ex.getMessage());
                throw ex;
            }
        }
        logger.log("Successfully processed:"+event.getRecords().size()+"
 records");
```

```
        return null;
    }

}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
    logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  }
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends KinesisHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleKinesis(KinesisEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
```

```
        $records = $event->getRecords();
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $data = $record->getData();
            $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be
 marked as failed
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import base64
def lambda_handler(event, context):

    for record in event['Records']:
        try:
            print(f"Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: {record['eventID']}")
            record_data = base64.b64decode(record['kinesis']
['data']).decode('utf-8')
            print(f"Record Data: {record_data}")
            # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
```

```
        except Exception as e:
            print(f"An error occurred {e}")
            raise e
    print(f"Successfully processed {len(event['Records'])} records.")
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue => err
      $stderr.puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      raise err
    end
  end
  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('UTF-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  # You can use Ruby's asynchronous programming tools like async/await or fibers
 here.
```

```
  return data
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::kinesis::KinesisEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) -> Result<(), Error>
 {
    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        tracing::info!("EventId:
 {}",record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default());

        let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(&record.kinesis.data);

        match record_data {
            Ok(data) => {
                // log the record data
                tracing::info!("Data: {}", data);
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tracing::error!("Error: {}", e);
            }
        }
```

```
    });

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public void FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event ID: {record.EventID}");
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event Name: {record.EventName}");

            context.Logger.LogInformation(JsonSerializer.Serialize(record));
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "fmt"
)

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent) (*string,
 error) {
 if len(event.Records) == 0 {
  return nil, fmt.Errorf("received empty event")
 }

 for _, record := range event.Records {
   LogDynamoDBRecord(record)
 }

 message := fmt.Sprintf("Records processed: %d", len(event.Records))
 return &message, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}

func LogDynamoDBRecord(record events.DynamoDBEventRecord){
 fmt.Println(record.EventID)
```

```
 fmt.Println(record.EventName)
 fmt.Printf("%+v\n", record.Change)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;

public class example implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent, Void> {

    private static final Gson GSON = new
 GsonBuilder().setPrettyPrinting().create();

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(DynamodbEvent event, Context context) {
        System.out.println(GSON.toJson(event));
        event.getRecords().forEach(this::logDynamoDBRecord);
        return null;
    }

    private void logDynamoDBRecord(DynamodbStreamRecord record) {
        System.out.println(record.getEventID());
        System.out.println(record.getEventName());
        System.out.println("DynamoDB Record: " +
 GSON.toJson(record.getDynamodb()));
    }
```

```
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
};

const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
}
const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
```

```
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends DynamoDbHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;

    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleDynamoDb(DynamoDbEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing DynamoDb table items");
```

```
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $eventName = $record->getEventName();
            $keys = $record->getKeys();
            $old = $record->getOldImage();
            $new = $record->getNewImage();

            $this->logger->info("Event Name:".$eventName."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Keys:". json_encode($keys)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Old Image:". json_encode($old)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("New Image:". json_encode($new));

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be
 marked as failed
        }

        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords items");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json
```

```
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    print(json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    for record in event['Records']:
        log_dynamodb_record(record)

def log_dynamodb_record(record):
    print(record['eventID'])
    print(record['eventName'])
    print(f"DynamoDB Record: {json.dumps(record['dynamodb'])}")
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    return 'received empty event' if event['Records'].empty?

    event['Records'].each do |record|
      log_dynamodb_record(record)
    end

    "Records processed: #{event['Records'].length}"
  end

  def log_dynamodb_record(record)
    puts record['eventID']
    puts record['eventName']
    puts "DynamoDB Record: #{JSON.generate(record['dynamodb'])}"
  end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord},
   };


// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->Result<(), Error> {

    let records = &event.payload.records;
    tracing::info!("event payload: {:?}",records);
    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_dynamo_dbrecord(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Dynamo db records processed");
```

```
    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_dynamo_dbrecord(record: &EventRecord)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);
    tracing::info!("EventName: {}", record.event_name);
    tracing::info!("DynamoDB Record: {:?}", record.change );
    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using System.Text.Json;
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
//Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace LambdaDocDb;

public class Function
{

     /// <summary>
    /// Lambda function entry point to process Amazon DocumentDB events.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="event">The Amazon DocumentDB event.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context object.</param>
    /// <returns>A string to indicate successful processing.</returns>
    public string FunctionHandler(Event evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Events)
        {
            ProcessDocumentDBEvent(record, context);
        }

        return "OK";
    }
```

```
    private void ProcessDocumentDBEvent(DocumentDBEventRecord record,
ILambdaContext context)
   {

       var eventData = record.Event;
       var operationType = eventData.OperationType;
       var databaseName = eventData.Ns.Db;
       var collectionName = eventData.Ns.Coll;
       var fullDocument = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventData.FullDocument, new
JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true });

       context.Logger.LogLine($"Operation type: {operationType}");
       context.Logger.LogLine($"Database: {databaseName}");
       context.Logger.LogLine($"Collection: {collectionName}");
       context.Logger.LogLine($"Full document:\n{fullDocument}");
   }



   public class Event
   {
       [JsonPropertyName("eventSourceArn")]
       public string EventSourceArn { get; set; }

       [JsonPropertyName("events")]
       public List<DocumentDBEventRecord> Events { get; set; }

       [JsonPropertyName("eventSource")]
       public string EventSource { get; set; }
   }

   public class DocumentDBEventRecord
   {
       [JsonPropertyName("event")]
       public EventData Event { get; set; }
   }

   public class EventData
   {
       [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
       public IdData Id { get; set; }

       [JsonPropertyName("clusterTime")]
```

```
        public ClusterTime ClusterTime { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("documentKey")]
        public DocumentKey DocumentKey { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("fullDocument")]
        public Dictionary<string, object> FullDocument { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("ns")]
        public Namespace Ns { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("operationType")]
        public string OperationType { get; set; }
    }

    public class IdData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_data")]
        public string Data { get; set; }
    }

    public class ClusterTime
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$timestamp")]
        public Timestamp Timestamp { get; set; }
    }

    public class Timestamp
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("t")]
        public long T { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("i")]
        public int I { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentKey
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public Id Id { get; set; }
    }

    public class Id
    {
```

```
        [JsonPropertyName("$oid")]
        public string Oid { get; set; }
    }

    public class Namespace
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("db")]
        public string Db { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("coll")]
        public string Coll { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type Event struct {
 Events []Record `json:"events"`
}
```

```
type Record struct {
 Event struct {
  OperationType string `json:"operationType"`
  NS            struct {
   DB   string `json:"db"`
   Coll string `json:"coll"`
  } `json:"ns"`
  FullDocument interface{} `json:"fullDocument"`
 } `json:"event"`
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}

func handler(ctx context.Context, event Event) (string, error) {
 fmt.Println("Loading function")
 for _, record := range event.Events {
  logDocumentDBEvent(record)
 }

 return "OK", nil
}

func logDocumentDBEvent(record Record) {
 fmt.Printf("Operation type: %s\n", record.Event.OperationType)
 fmt.Printf("db: %s\n", record.Event.NS.DB)
 fmt.Printf("collection: %s\n", record.Event.NS.Coll)
 docBytes, _ := json.MarshalIndent(record.Event.FullDocument, "", "  ")
 fmt.Printf("Full document: %s\n", string(docBytes))
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<Map<String, Object>, String> {

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(Map<String, Object> event, Context context) {
        List<Map<String, Object>> events = (List<Map<String, Object>>)
 event.get("events");
        for (Map<String, Object> record : events) {
            Map<String, Object> eventData = (Map<String, Object>)
 record.get("event");
            processEventData(eventData);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    private void processEventData(Map<String, Object> eventData) {
        String operationType = (String) eventData.get("operationType");
        System.out.println("operationType: %s".formatted(operationType));

        Map<String, Object> ns = (Map<String, Object>) eventData.get("ns");

        String db = (String) ns.get("db");
        System.out.println("db: %s".formatted(db));
        String coll = (String) ns.get("coll");
        System.out.println("coll: %s".formatted(coll));

        Map<String, Object> fullDocument = (Map<String, Object>)
 eventData.get("fullDocument");
        System.out.println("fullDocument: %s".formatted(fullDocument));
    }

}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
console.log('Loading function');
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    event.events.forEach(record => {
        logDocumentDBEvent(record);
    });
    return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record) => {
    console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
    console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
    console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
    console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null,
 2));
};
```

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using TypeScript

```
import { DocumentDBEventRecord, DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext } from 'aws-
lambda';

console.log('Loading function');

export const handler = async (
  event: DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext,
  context: any
): Promise<string> => {
  event.events.forEach((record: DocumentDBEventRecord) => {
```

```
    logDocumentDBEvent(record);
  });
  return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record: DocumentDBEventRecord): void => {
  console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
  console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
  console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
  console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null,
 2));
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

require __DIR__.'/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler;

class DocumentDBEventHandler implements Handler
{
    public function handle($event, Context $context): string
    {

        $events = $event['events'] ?? [];
        foreach ($events as $record) {
            $this->logDocumentDBEvent($record['event']);
        }
```

```
        return 'OK';
    }

    private function logDocumentDBEvent($event): void
    {
        // Extract information from the event record

        $operationType = $event['operationType'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $db = $event['ns']['db'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $collection = $event['ns']['coll'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $fullDocument = $event['fullDocument'] ?? [];

        // Log the event details

        echo "Operation type: $operationType\n";
        echo "Database: $db\n";
        echo "Collection: $collection\n";
        echo "Full document: " . json_encode($fullDocument, JSON_PRETTY_PRINT) .
 "\n";
    }
}
return new DocumentDBEventHandler();
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event.get('events', []):
        log_document_db_event(record)
    return 'OK'
```

```
def log_document_db_event(record):
    event_data = record.get('event', {})
    operation_type = event_data.get('operationType', 'Unknown')
    db = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('db', 'Unknown')
    collection = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('coll', 'Unknown')
    full_document = event_data.get('fullDocument', {})

    print(f"Operation type: {operation_type}")
    print(f"db: {db}")
    print(f"collection: {collection}")
    print("Full document:", json.dumps(full_document, indent=2))
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['events'].each do |record|
    log_document_db_event(record)
  end
  'OK'
end

def log_document_db_event(record)
  event_data = record['event'] || {}
  operation_type = event_data['operationType'] || 'Unknown'
  db = event_data.dig('ns', 'db') || 'Unknown'
  collection = event_data.dig('ns', 'coll') || 'Unknown'
  full_document = event_data['fullDocument'] || {}

  puts "Operation type: #{operation_type}"
  puts "db: #{db}"
```

```
  puts "collection: #{collection}"
  puts "Full document: #{JSON.pretty_generate(full_document)}"
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::documentdb::{DocumentDbEvent, DocumentDbInnerEvent},
   };


// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<DocumentDbEvent>) ->Result<(),
 Error> {

    tracing::info!("Event Source ARN: {:?}", event.payload.event_source_arn);
    tracing::info!("Event Source: {:?}", event.payload.event_source);

    let records = &event.payload.events;

    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
```

```
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_document_db_event(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Document db records processed");

    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_document_db_event(record: &DocumentDbInnerEvent)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("Change Event: {:?}", record.event);

    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KafkaEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace MSKLambda;

public class Function
{


    /// <param name="input">The event for the Lambda function handler to
 process.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The ILambdaContext that provides methods for
 logging and describing the Lambda environment.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public void FunctionHandler(KafkaEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key:" + record.Key);
            foreach (var eventRecord in record.Value)
            {
                var valueBytes = eventRecord.Value.ToArray();
                var valueText = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(valueBytes);
```

```
                Console.WriteLine("Message:" + valueText);
            }
        }
    }


}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "encoding/base64"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.KafkaEvent) {
 for key, records := range event.Records {
  fmt.Println("Key:", key)

  for _, record := range records {
   fmt.Println("Record:", record)

   decodedValue, _ := base64.StdEncoding.DecodeString(record.Value)
   message := string(decodedValue)
```

```
    fmt.Println("Message:", message)
   }
  }
 }

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent.KafkaEventRecord;

import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Map;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<KafkaEvent, Void> {

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(KafkaEvent event, Context context) {
        for (Map.Entry<String, java.util.List<KafkaEventRecord>> entry :
 event.getRecords().entrySet()) {
            String key = entry.getKey();
            System.out.println("Key: " + key);

            for (KafkaEventRecord record : entry.getValue()) {
                System.out.println("Record: " + record);
```

```
                byte[] value = Base64.getDecoder().decode(record.getValue());
                String message = new String(value);
                System.out.println("Message: " + message);
            }
        }

        return null;
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
exports.handler = async (event) => {
    // Iterate through keys
    for (let key in event.records) {
      console.log('Key: ', key)
      // Iterate through records
      event.records[key].map((record) => {
        console.log('Record: ', record)
        // Decode base64
        const msg = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString()
        console.log('Message:', msg)
      })
    }
}
```

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import { MSKEvent, Context } from "aws-lambda";
```

```
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "msk-handler-sample",
});

export const handler = async (
  event: MSKEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const [topic, topicRecords] of Object.entries(event.records)) {
    logger.info(`Processing key: ${topic}`);

    // Process each record in the partition
    for (const record of topicRecords) {
      try {
        // Decode the message value from base64
        const decodedMessage = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString();

        logger.info({
          message: decodedMessage
        });
      }
      catch (error) {
        logger.error('Error processing event', { error });
        throw error;
      }
    };
  }
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

// using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kafka\KafkaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $kafkaEvent = new KafkaEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kafkaEvent->getRecords();
```

```
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $key = $record->getKey();
                $this->logger->info("Key: $key");

                $values = $record->getValue();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($values));

                foreach ($values as $value) {
                    $this->logger->info("Value: $value");
                }

            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Python.

```
import base64

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Iterate through keys
```

```
    for key in event['records']:
        print('Key:', key)
        # Iterate through records
        for record in event['records'][key]:
            print('Record:', record)
            # Decode base64
            msg = base64.b64decode(record['value']).decode('utf-8')
            print('Message:', msg)
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'base64'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  # Iterate through keys
  event['records'].each do |key, records|
    puts "Key: #{key}"

    # Iterate through records
    records.each do |record|
      puts "Record: #{record}"

      # Decode base64
      msg = Base64.decode64(record['value'])
      puts "Message: #{msg}"
    end
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::event::kafka::KafkaEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use base64::prelude::*;
use serde_json::{Value};
use tracing::{info};

/// Pre-Requisites:
/// 1. Install Cargo Lambda - see https://www.cargo-lambda.info/guide/getting-
started.html
/// 2. Add packages tracing, tracing-subscriber, serde_json, base64
///
/// This is the main body for the function.
/// Write your code inside it.
/// There are some code example in the following URLs:
/// - https://github.com/awslabs/aws-lambda-rust-runtime/tree/main/examples
/// - https://github.com/aws-samples/serverless-rust-demo/

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KafkaEvent>) -> Result<Value, Error>
 {

    let payload = event.payload.records;

    for (_name, records) in payload.iter() {

        for record in records {

         let record_text = record.value.as_ref().ok_or("Value is None")?;
         info!("Record: {}", &record_text);

         // perform Base64 decoding
         let record_bytes = BASE64_STANDARD.decode(record_text)?;
```

```
            let message = std::str::from_utf8(&record_bytes)?;

            info!("Message: {}", message);
           }

        }

        Ok(().into())
    }

    #[tokio::main]
    async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {

        // required to enable CloudWatch error logging by the runtime
        tracing::init_default_subscriber();
        info!("Setup CW subscriber!");

        run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
    }
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.S3;
using System;
using Amazon.Lambda.S3Events;
using System.Web;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace S3Integration
{
    public class Function
    {
        private static AmazonS3Client _s3Client;
        public Function() : this(null)
        {
        }

        internal Function(AmazonS3Client s3Client)
        {
            _s3Client = s3Client ?? new AmazonS3Client();
        }

        public async Task<string> Handler(S3Event evt, ILambdaContext context)
        {
            try
            {
                if (evt.Records.Count <= 0)
                {
                    context.Logger.LogLine("Empty S3 Event received");
                    return string.Empty;
                }

                var bucket = evt.Records[0].S3.Bucket.Name;
                var key = HttpUtility.UrlDecode(evt.Records[0].S3.Object.Key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Request is for {bucket} and {key}");

                var objectResult = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Returning {objectResult.Key}");
```

```
                return objectResult.Key;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                context.Logger.LogLine($"Error processing request -
 {e.Message}");

                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, s3Event events.S3Event) error {
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("failed to load default config: %s", err)
  return err
 }
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 for _, record := range s3Event.Records {
  bucket := record.S3.Bucket.Name
  key := record.S3.Object.URLDecodedKey
  headOutput, err := s3Client.HeadObject(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: &bucket,
   Key:    &key,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("error getting head of object %s/%s: %s", bucket, key, err)
   return err
  }
  log.Printf("successfully retrieved %s/%s of type %s", bucket, key,
 *headOutput.ContentType)
 }

 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.S3Event;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.s3.S3EventNotification.S3EventNotifi

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<S3Event, String> {
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(Handler.class);
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(S3Event s3event, Context context) {
        try {
          S3EventNotificationRecord record = s3event.getRecords().get(0);
          String srcBucket = record.getS3().getBucket().getName();
          String srcKey = record.getS3().getObject().getUrlDecodedKey();

          S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder().build();
          HeadObjectResponse headObject = getHeadObject(s3Client, srcBucket,
 srcKey);

          logger.info("Successfully retrieved " + srcBucket + "/" + srcKey + " of
 type " + headObject.contentType());

          return "Ok";
        } catch (Exception e) {
          throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private HeadObjectResponse getHeadObject(S3Client s3Client, String bucket,
 String key) {
        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucket)
                .key(key)
                .build();
```

```
        return s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

const client = new S3Client();

export const handler = async (event, context) => {

    // Get the object from the event and show its content type
    const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
    const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g,
 ' '));

    try {
        const { ContentType } = await client.send(new HeadObjectCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
            Key: key,
        }));

        console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
        return ContentType;

    } catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
        const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make
 sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
        console.log(message);
        throw new Error(message);
```

```
    }
};
```

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { S3Event } from 'aws-lambda';
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from '@aws-sdk/client-s3';

const s3 = new S3Client({ region: process.env.AWS_REGION });

export const handler = async (event: S3Event): Promise<string | undefined> => {
  // Get the object from the event and show its content type
  const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
  const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g, '
 '));
  const params = {
    Bucket: bucket,
    Key: key,
  };
  try {
    const { ContentType } = await s3.send(new HeadObjectCommand(params));
    console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
    return ContentType;
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
    const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make sure
 they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
    console.log(message);
    throw new Error(message);
  }
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Event;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Handler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';


class Handler extends S3Handler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    public function handleS3(S3Event $event, Context $context) : void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing S3 records");

        // Get the object from the event and show its content type
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record)
        {
            $bucket = $record->getBucket()->getName();
            $key = urldecode($record->getObject()->getKey());

            try {
```

```
                $fileSize = urldecode($record->getObject()->getSize());
                echo "File Size: " . $fileSize . "\n";
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                echo $e->getMessage() . "\n";
                echo 'Error getting object ' . $key . ' from bucket ' .
 $bucket . '. Make sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this
 function.' . "\n";
                throw $e;
            }
        }
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import json
import urllib.parse
import boto3

print('Loading function')

s3 = boto3.client('s3')


def lambda_handler(event, context):
```

```
    #print("Received event: " + json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    # Get the object from the event and show its content type
    bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
    key = urllib.parse.unquote_plus(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 encoding='utf-8')
    try:
        response = s3.get_object(Bucket=bucket, Key=key)
        print("CONTENT TYPE: " + response['ContentType'])
        return response['ContentType']
    except Exception as e:
        print(e)
        print('Error getting object {} from bucket {}. Make sure they exist and
 your bucket is in the same region as this function.'.format(key, bucket))
        raise e
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'
require 'uri'
require 'aws-sdk'

puts 'Loading function'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  s3 = Aws::S3::Client.new(region: 'region') # Your AWS region
  # puts "Received event: #{JSON.dump(event)}"

  # Get the object from the event and show its content type
  bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
```

```
  key = URI.decode_www_form_component(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 Encoding::UTF_8)
  begin
    response = s3.get_object(bucket: bucket, key: key)
    puts "CONTENT TYPE: #{response.content_type}"
    return response.content_type
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts e.message
    puts "Error getting object #{key} from bucket #{bucket}. Make sure they exist
 and your bucket is in the same region as this function."
    raise e
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::s3::S3Event;
use aws_sdk_s3::{Client};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};


/// Main function
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();
```

```
    // Initialize the AWS SDK for Rust
    let config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let s3_client = Client::new(&config);

    let res = run(service_fn(|request: LambdaEvent<S3Event>| {
        function_handler(&s3_client, request)
    })).await;

    res
}

async fn function_handler(
    s3_client: &Client,
    evt: LambdaEvent<S3Event>
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing::info!(records = ?evt.payload.records.len(), "Received request from
 SQS");

    if evt.payload.records.len() == 0 {
        tracing::info!("Empty S3 event received");
    }

    let bucket = evt.payload.records[0].s3.bucket.name.as_ref().expect("Bucket
 name to exist");
    let key = evt.payload.records[0].s3.object.key.as_ref().expect("Object key to
 exist");

    tracing::info!("Request is for {} and object {}", bucket, key);

    let s3_get_object_result = s3_client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await;

    match s3_get_object_result {
        Ok(_) => tracing::info!("S3 Get Object success, the s3GetObjectResult
 contains a 'body' property of type ByteStream"),
        Err(_) => tracing::info!("Failure with S3 Get Object request")
    }

    Ok(())
```

```
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SNSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace SnsIntegration;

public class Function
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SNSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessRecordAsync(record, context);
        }
```

```
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessRecordAsync(SNSEvent.SNSRecord record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed record
 {record.Sns.Message}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
```

```
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, snsEvent events.SNSEvent) {
 for _, record := range snsEvent.Records {
  processMessage(record)
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
}

func processMessage(record events.SNSEventRecord) {
 message := record.SNS.Message
 fmt.Printf("Processed message: %s\n", message)
 // TODO: Process your record here
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
```

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent.SNSRecord;


import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;

public class SNSEventHandler implements RequestHandler<SNSEvent, Boolean> {
    LambdaLogger logger;

    @Override
    public Boolean handleRequest(SNSEvent event, Context context) {
        logger = context.getLogger();
        List<SNSRecord> records = event.getRecords();
        if (!records.isEmpty()) {
            Iterator<SNSRecord> recordsIter = records.iterator();
            while (recordsIter.hasNext()) {
                processRecord(recordsIter.next());
            }
        }
        return Boolean.TRUE;
    }

    public void processRecord(SNSRecord record) {
        try {
            String message = record.getSNS().getMessage();
            logger.log("message: " + message);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record) {
  try {
    const message = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SNSEvent, Context, SNSHandler, SNSEventRecord } from "aws-lambda";

export const functionHandler: SNSHandler = async (
  event: SNSEvent,
  context: Context
```

```
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SNSEventRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    const message: string = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

/*
Since native PHP support for AWS Lambda is not available, we are utilizing Bref's
 PHP functions runtime for AWS Lambda.
For more information on Bref's PHP runtime for Lambda, refer to: https://bref.sh/
docs/runtimes/function

Another approach would be to create a custom runtime.
```

```
A practical example can be found here: https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/apn/aws-
lambda-custom-runtime-for-php-a-practical-example/
*/

// Additional composer packages may be required when using Bref or any other PHP
 functions runtime.
// require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsHandler;

class Handler extends SnsHandler
{
    public function handleSns(SnsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $message = $record->getMessage();

            // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be
 marked as failed

            echo "Processed Message: $message" . PHP_EOL;
        }
    }
}

return new Handler();
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event['Records']:
        process_message(record)
    print("done")

def process_message(record):
    try:
        message = record['Sns']['Message']
        print(f"Processed message {message}")
        # TODO; Process your record here

    except Exception as e:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise e
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].map { |record| process_message(record) }
end

def process_message(record)
  message = record['Sns']['Message']
  puts("Processing message: #{message}")
rescue StandardError => e
  puts("Error processing message: #{e}")
```

```
  raise
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sns::SnsEvent;
use aws_lambda_events::sns::SnsRecord;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use tracing::info;

// Built with the following dependencies:
//  aws_lambda_events = { version = "0.10.0", default-features = false, features
 = ["sns"] }
//  lambda_runtime = "0.8.1"
//  tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//  tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//  tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SnsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    for event in event.payload.records {
        process_record(&event)?;
    }

    Ok(())
}

fn process_record(record: &SnsRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    info!("Processing SNS Message: {}", record.sns.message);
```

```
    // Implement your record handling code here.

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;
```

```
// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace SqsIntegrationSampleCode
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }

    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package integration_sqs_to_lambda

import (
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.SQSEvent) error {
 for _, record := range event.Records {
  err := processMessage(record)
  if err != nil {
   return err
  }
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
 return nil
}

func processMessage(record events.SQSMessage) error {
 fmt.Printf("Processed message %s\n", record.Body)
 // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent.SQSMessage;

public class Function implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {
        for (SQSMessage msg : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            processMessage(msg, context);
        }
        context.getLogger().log("done");
        return null;
    }

    private void processMessage(SQSMessage msg, Context context) {
        try {
            context.getLogger().log("Processed message " + msg.getBody());

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message

        } catch (Exception e) {
            context.getLogger().log("An error occurred");
            throw e;
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message) {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, Context, SQSHandler, SQSRecord } from "aws-lambda";
```

```
export const functionHandler: SQSHandler = async (
  event: SQSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message: SQSRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
```

```
use Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $body = $record->getBody();
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        }
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for message in event['Records']:
        process_message(message)
    print("done")

def process_message(message):
    try:
        print(f"Processed message {message['body']}")
        # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    except Exception as err:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise err
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |message|
    process_message(message)
  end
  puts "done"
end

def process_message(message)
  begin
    puts "Processed message #{message['body']}"
    # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
```

```
  rescue StandardError => err
    puts "An error occurred"
    raise err
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sqs::SqsEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        // process the record
        tracing::info!("Message body: {}",
 record.body.as_deref().unwrap_or_default())
    });

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
```

```
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code examples show how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace KinesisIntegration;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
```

```
   // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
   [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
   public async Task<StreamsEventResponse> FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt,
ILambdaContext context)
   {
       if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
       {
           Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
           return new StreamsEventResponse();
       }

       foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
       {
           try
           {
               Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
{record.EventId}");
               string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
               Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
               // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
           }
           catch (Exception ex)
           {
               Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
               /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed
item immediately.
                  Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
failed item onwards. */
               return new StreamsEventResponse
               {
                   BatchItemFailures = new
List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>
                   {
                       new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure
{ ItemIdentifier = record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber }
                   }
               };
           }
       }
       Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
records.");
       return new StreamsEventResponse();
   }
```

```
    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}

public class StreamsEventResponse
{
    [JsonPropertyName("batchItemFailures")]
    public IList<BatchItemFailure> BatchItemFailures { get; set; }
    public class BatchItemFailure
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("itemIdentifier")]
        public string ItemIdentifier { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
```

```
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent)
 (map[string]interface{}, error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

  // Process your record
  if /* Your record processing condition here */ {
   curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber
  }

  // Add a condition to check if the record processing failed
  if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": curRecordSequenceNumber})
  }
 }

 kinesisBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
 }
 return kinesisBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;

import java.io.Serializable;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessKinesisRecords implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(KinesisEvent input, Context
 context) {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord kinesisEventRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //Process your record
                KinesisEvent.Record kinesisRecord =
 kinesisEventRecord.getKinesis();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = kinesisRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed
 item immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
```

```
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Javascript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
```

```
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
  KinesisStreamBatchResponse,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<KinesisStreamBatchResponse> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
```

```
    }
  }
  logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
```

```
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $kinesisEvent = new KinesisEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kinesisEvent->getRecords();

        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
```

```
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["kinesis"]["sequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  batch_item_failures = []

  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue StandardError => err
      puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      # Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
      # Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards.
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record['kinesis']
['sequenceNumber'] }] }
    end
  end

  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
  { batchItemFailures: batch_item_failures }
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('utf-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
```

```
  sleep(1)
  data
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::kinesis::KinesisEvent,
    kinesis::KinesisEventRecord,
    streams::{KinesisBatchItemFailure, KinesisEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) ->
 Result<KinesisEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = KinesisEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in &event.payload.records {
        tracing::info!(
            "EventId: {}",
            record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
```

```
        let record_processing_result = process_record(record);

        if record_processing_result.is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(KinesisBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.kinesis.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(response)
}

fn process_record(record: &KinesisEventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(record.kinesis.data.as_slice());

    if let Some(err) = record_data.err() {
        tracing::error!("Error: {}", err);
        return Err(Error::from(err));
    }

    let record_data = record_data.unwrap_or_default();

    // do something interesting with the data
    tracing::info!("Data: {}", record_data);

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
```

```
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code examples show how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
```

```
{
    public StreamsEventResponse FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent,
 ILambdaContext context)

    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        StreamsEventResponse streamsEventResponse = new StreamsEventResponse();

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                var sequenceNumber = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
                context.Logger.LogInformation(sequenceNumber);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                context.Logger.LogError(ex.Message);
                batchItemFailures.Add(new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure()
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber });
            }
        }

        if (batchItemFailures.Count > 0)
        {
            streamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailures = batchItemFailures;
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
        return streamsEventResponse;
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type BatchItemFailure struct {
 ItemIdentifier string `json:"ItemIdentifier"`
}

type BatchResult struct {
 BatchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure `json:"BatchItemFailures"`
}

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent)
 (*BatchResult, error) {
 var batchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure
 curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

 for _, record := range event.Records {
  // Process your record
  curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Change.SequenceNumber
 }

 if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
  batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier:
 curRecordSequenceNumber})
```

```
 }

 batchResult := BatchResult{
  BatchItemFailures: batchItemFailures,
 }

 return &batchResult, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.dynamodb.StreamRecord;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessDynamodbRecords implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
```

```
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(DynamodbEvent input, Context
 context) {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord dynamodbStreamRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
          try {
                //Process your record
                StreamRecord dynamodbRecord = dynamodbStreamRecord.getDynamodb();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = dynamodbRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed
 item immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
export const handler = async (event) => {
  const records = event.Records;
  let curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

  for (const record of records) {
    try {
      // Process your record
      curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
    } catch (e) {
      // Return failed record's sequence number
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier:
 curRecordSequenceNumber }] };
    }
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};
```

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import {
  DynamoDBBatchResponse,
  DynamoDBBatchItemFailure,
  DynamoDBStreamEvent,
} from "aws-lambda";

export const handler = async (
  event: DynamoDBStreamEvent
): Promise<DynamoDBBatchResponse> => {
  const batchItemFailures: DynamoDBBatchItemFailure[] = [];
  let curRecordSequenceNumber;

  for (const record of event.Records) {
    curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb?.SequenceNumber;

    if (curRecordSequenceNumber) {
      batchItemFailures.push({
        itemIdentifier: curRecordSequenceNumber,
      });
    }
  }
```

```
  return { batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures };
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $dynamoDbEvent = new DynamoDbEvent($event);
```

```
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");

        $records = $dynamoDbEvent->getRecords();
        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    records = event["Records"]
    cur_record_sequence_number = ""

    records.each do |record|
      begin
        # Process your record
        cur_record_sequence_number = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
      rescue StandardError => e
        # Return failed record's sequence number
        return {"batchItemFailures" => [{"itemIdentifier" =>
 cur_record_sequence_number}]}
      end
    end

    {"batchItemFailures" => []}
  end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord, StreamRecord},
    streams::{DynamoDbBatchItemFailure, DynamoDbEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

/// Process the stream record
fn process_record(record: &EventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let stream_record: &StreamRecord = &record.change;
```

```
    // process your stream record here...
    tracing::info!("Data: {:?}", stream_record);

    Ok(())
}

/// Main Lambda handler here...
async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->
 Result<DynamoDbEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = DynamoDbEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    let records = &event.payload.records;

    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in records {
        tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);

        // Couldn't find a sequence number
        if record.change.sequence_number.is_none() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: Some("".to_string()),
            });
            return Ok(response);
        }

        // Process your record here...
        if process_record(record).is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.change.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed
 item onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }
```

```
    tracing::info!("Successfully processed {} record(s)", records.len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code examples show how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri
namespace sqsSample;

public class Function
{
    public async Task<SQSBatchResponse> FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        foreach(var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                //process your message
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
            }
            catch (System.Exception)
            {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.Add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier=message.MessageId});
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(message.Body))
        {
            throw new Exception("No Body in SQS Message.");
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");
        // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        await Task.CompletedTask;
    }
```

```
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, sqsEvent events.SQSEvent)
 (map[string]interface{}, error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, message := range sqsEvent.Records {

  if /* Your message processing condition here */ {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": message.MessageId})
  }
 }

 sqsBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
 }
 return sqsBatchResponse, nil
```

```
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSBatchResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessSQSMessageBatch implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent,
 SQSBatchResponse> {
    @Override
    public SQSBatchResponse handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {

        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        String messageId = "";
        for (SQSEvent.SQSMessage message : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //process your message
            } catch (Exception e) {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
```

```
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure(message.getMessageId()));
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Node.js 20.x Lambda runtime, AWS SDK for Javascript V3
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    const batchItemFailures = [];
    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record, context);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }
    return { batchItemFailures };
};

async function processMessageAsync(record, context) {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error("There is an error in the SQS Message.");
    }
    console.log(`Processed message: ${record.body}`);
}
```

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, SQSBatchResponse, Context, SQSBatchItemFailure, SQSRecord }
 from 'aws-lambda';

export const handler = async (event: SQSEvent, context: Context):
 Promise<SQSBatchResponse> => {
    const batchItemFailures: SQSBatchItemFailure[] = [];

    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }

    return {batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures};
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SQSRecord): Promise<void> {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error('There is an error in the SQS Message.');
    }
    console.log(`Processed message ${record.body}`);
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing SQS records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                // Assuming the SQS message is in JSON format
                $message = json_decode($record->getBody(), true);
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($message));
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $this->markAsFailed($record);
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords SQS records");
    }
}
```

```
$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    if event:
        batch_item_failures = []
        sqs_batch_response = {}

        for record in event["Records"]:
            try:
                # process message
            except Exception as e:
                batch_item_failures.append({"itemIdentifier":
 record['messageId']})

        sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
        return sqs_batch_response
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  if event
    batch_item_failures = []
    sqs_batch_response = {}

    event["Records"].each do |record|
      begin
        # process message
      rescue StandardError => e
        batch_item_failures << {"itemIdentifier" => record['messageId']}
      end
    end

    sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
    return sqs_batch_response
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::sqs::{SqsBatchResponse, SqsEvent},
    sqs::{BatchItemFailure, SqsMessage},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn process_record(_: &SqsMessage) -> Result<(), Error> {
    Err(Error::from("Error processing message"))
}

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) ->
 Result<SqsBatchResponse, Error> {
    let mut batch_item_failures = Vec::new();
    for record in event.payload.records {
        match process_record(&record).await {
            Ok(_) => (),
            Err(_) => batch_item_failures.push(BatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.message_id.unwrap(),
            }),
        }
    }

    Ok(SqsBatchResponse {
        batch_item_failures,
    })
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

AWS community contributions for Lambda

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Examples

- Build and test a serverless application

Build and test a serverless application

The following code examples show how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Go

SDK for Go V2

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Go SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Java SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Rust SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Code examples for Amazon Lex using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Lex with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Lex Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Lex.
- **Amazon Lex API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Lex actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Scenarios for Amazon Lex using AWS SDKs
  - Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors

Scenarios for Amazon Lex using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Lex with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Lex or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors

Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors

The following code examples show how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example Building an Amazon Lex chatbot in the AWS SDK for JavaScript developer guide.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Code examples for Lightsail using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Lightsail with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Lightsail Developer Guide** – More information about Lightsail.
- **Lightsail API Reference** – Details about all available Lightsail actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Scenarios for Lightsail using AWS SDKs
  - Get started with Amazon Lightsail using the CLI

Scenarios for Lightsail using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Lightsail with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Lightsail or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Get started with Amazon Lightsail using the CLI

Get started with Amazon Lightsail using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Explore available blueprints and bundles for instance creation
- Create a Lightsail instance with Amazon Linux 2023
- Monitor instance status until running
- Download default key pair for SSH access
- Create and attach additional block storage disk
- Create an instance snapshot for backup

- Clean up resources to avoid ongoing charges

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Amazon Lightsail Getting Started CLI Script
# This script demonstrates how to create and manage Lightsail resources using the
 AWS CLI

# FIXES APPLIED:
# 1. Added polling mechanism to check disk state before attaching
# 2. Added polling mechanism to check snapshot state before proceeding with
 cleanup
# 3. Set AWS_REGION variable to us-west-2 for consistent region usage

# Set AWS region
export AWS_REGION="us-west-2"
echo "Using AWS region: $AWS_REGION"

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="lightsail-script.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

echo "Starting Lightsail Getting Started script at $(date)"

# Error handling function
handle_error() {
  echo "ERROR: $1"
  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  exit 1
}
```

```
# Function to check if a command succeeded
check_status() {
  if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "$1"
  fi
}

# Generate a random identifier for resource names
RANDOM_ID=$(openssl rand -hex 4)
INSTANCE_NAME="LightsailInstance-${RANDOM_ID}"
DISK_NAME="LightsailDisk-${RANDOM_ID}"
SNAPSHOT_NAME="LightsailSnapshot-${RANDOM_ID}"

# Array to track created resources
declare -a CREATED_RESOURCES

# Function to add a resource to the tracking array
track_resource() {
  CREATED_RESOURCES+=("$1:$2")
  echo "Created $1: $2"
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup_resources() {
  echo "Resources created by this script:"
  for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
    echo "  $resource"
  done

  # Reverse the array to delete resources in reverse order
  for (( idx=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1 ; idx>=0 ; idx-- )); do
    IFS=':' read -r type name <<< "${CREATED_RESOURCES[idx]}"

    case "$type" in
      "instance_snapshot")
        echo "Deleting instance snapshot: $name"
        aws lightsail delete-instance-snapshot --instance-snapshot-name "$name"
 --region $AWS_REGION
        ;;
      "disk_snapshot")
        echo "Deleting disk snapshot: $name"
        aws lightsail delete-disk-snapshot --disk-snapshot-name "$name" --region
 $AWS_REGION
        ;;
```

```
      "disk")
        echo "Detaching disk: $name"
        aws lightsail detach-disk --disk-name "$name" --region $AWS_REGION
        sleep 10 # Wait for detach to complete
        echo "Deleting disk: $name"
        aws lightsail delete-disk --disk-name "$name" --region $AWS_REGION
        ;;
      "instance")
        echo "Deleting instance: $name"
        # Check instance state before attempting to delete
        INSTANCE_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-instance-state --instance-name "$name"
 --region $AWS_REGION --query 'state.name' --output text 2>/dev/null)
        if [ "$INSTANCE_STATE" == "pending" ]; then
          echo "Instance is in pending state. Waiting for it to be ready before
 deleting..."
          MAX_WAIT=30
          WAITED=0
          while [ "$INSTANCE_STATE" == "pending" ] && [ $WAITED -lt $MAX_WAIT ];
 do
            sleep 10
            WAITED=$((WAITED+1))
            INSTANCE_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-instance-state --instance-name
 "$name" --region $AWS_REGION --query 'state.name' --output text 2>/dev/null)
            echo "Instance state: $INSTANCE_STATE"
          done
        fi
        aws lightsail delete-instance --instance-name "$name" --region
 $AWS_REGION
        ;;
    esac
  done

  echo "Cleanup completed"
}

# Step 1: Verify AWS CLI configuration
echo "Step 1: Verifying AWS CLI configuration"
aws configure list
check_status "Failed to verify AWS CLI configuration"

# Step 2: Get available blueprints and bundles
echo "Step 2: Getting available blueprints and bundles"
echo "Available blueprints (showing first 5):"
```

```
aws lightsail get-blueprints --region $AWS_REGION --query 'blueprints[0:5].
[blueprintId,name]' --output table
check_status "Failed to get blueprints"

echo "Available bundles (showing first 5):"
aws lightsail get-bundles --region $AWS_REGION --query 'bundles[0:5].
[bundleId,name,price]' --output table
check_status "Failed to get bundles"

# Get available regions and availability zones
echo "Getting available regions and availability zones"
# Use a specific availability zone in us-west-2 region
AVAILABILITY_ZONE="us-west-2a"
echo "Using availability zone: $AVAILABILITY_ZONE"

# Step 3: Create a Lightsail instance
echo "Step 3: Creating Lightsail instance: $INSTANCE_NAME"
aws lightsail create-instances \
  --instance-names "$INSTANCE_NAME" \
  --availability-zone "$AVAILABILITY_ZONE" \
  --blueprint-id amazon_linux_2023 \
  --bundle-id nano_3_0 \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to create Lightsail instance"
track_resource "instance" "$INSTANCE_NAME"

# Wait for the instance to be in a running state
echo "Waiting for instance to be in running state..."
# Wait for the instance to be ready (polling approach)
MAX_ATTEMPTS=30
ATTEMPTS=0
while [ $ATTEMPTS -lt $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; do
  STATUS=$(aws lightsail get-instance-state --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" --
region $AWS_REGION --query 'state.name' --output text)
  if [ "$STATUS" == "running" ]; then
    echo "Instance is now running"
    break
  fi
  echo "Instance status: $STATUS. Waiting..."
  ATTEMPTS=$((ATTEMPTS+1))
  sleep 10
done

if [ $ATTEMPTS -eq $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
```

```
  handle_error "Instance failed to reach running state after 5 minutes"
fi

# Get instance details
echo "Getting instance details"
INSTANCE_IP=$(aws lightsail get-instance --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" --
region $AWS_REGION --query 'instance.publicIpAddress' --output text)
check_status "Failed to get instance IP address"
echo "Instance IP address: $INSTANCE_IP"

# Step 4: Download the default key pair
echo "Step 4: Downloading default key pair"
KEY_FILE="lightsail_key_${RANDOM_ID}.pem"
aws lightsail download-default-key-pair --region $AWS_REGION --output text >
 "$KEY_FILE"
check_status "Failed to download key pair"
chmod 400 "$KEY_FILE"
check_status "Failed to set permissions on key pair"
echo "Key pair downloaded to $KEY_FILE"

echo "To connect to your instance, use:"
echo "ssh -i $KEY_FILE ec2-user@$INSTANCE_IP"

# Step 5: Create a block storage disk
echo "Step 5: Creating block storage disk: $DISK_NAME"
aws lightsail create-disk \
  --disk-name "$DISK_NAME" \
  --availability-zone "$AVAILABILITY_ZONE" \
  --size-in-gb 8 \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to create disk"
track_resource "disk" "$DISK_NAME"

# FIX: Wait for the disk to be available using polling instead of fixed sleep
echo "Waiting for disk to be available..."
MAX_ATTEMPTS=30
ATTEMPTS=0
while [ $ATTEMPTS -lt $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; do
  DISK_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-disk --disk-name "$DISK_NAME" --region
 $AWS_REGION --query 'disk.state' --output text 2>/dev/null)
  if [ "$DISK_STATE" == "available" ]; then
    echo "Disk is now available"
    break
  fi
```

```
  echo "Disk status: $DISK_STATE. Waiting..."
  ATTEMPTS=$((ATTEMPTS+1))
  sleep 10
done

if [ $ATTEMPTS -eq $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
  handle_error "Disk failed to become available after 5 minutes"
fi

# Attach the disk to the instance
echo "Attaching disk to instance"
aws lightsail attach-disk \
  --disk-name "$DISK_NAME" \
  --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" \
  --disk-path /dev/xvdf \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to attach disk to instance"

echo "Disk attached. To format and mount the disk, connect to your instance and
 run:"
echo "sudo mkfs -t ext4 /dev/xvdf"
echo "sudo mkdir -p /mnt/my-data"
echo "sudo mount /dev/xvdf /mnt/my-data"
echo "sudo chown ec2-user:ec2-user /mnt/my-data"

# Step 6: Create a snapshot of the instance
echo "Step 6: Creating snapshot of the instance: $SNAPSHOT_NAME"
aws lightsail create-instance-snapshot \
  --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" \
  --instance-snapshot-name "$SNAPSHOT_NAME" \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to create instance snapshot"
track_resource "instance_snapshot" "$SNAPSHOT_NAME"

# FIX: Wait for the snapshot to complete using polling instead of fixed sleep
echo "Waiting for snapshot to complete... (this may take several minutes)"
MAX_ATTEMPTS=60  # Increased timeout for snapshot creation
ATTEMPTS=0
while [ $ATTEMPTS -lt $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; do
  SNAPSHOT_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-instance-snapshot --instance-snapshot-name
 "$SNAPSHOT_NAME" --region $AWS_REGION --query 'instanceSnapshot.state' --output
 text 2>/dev/null)
  if [ "$SNAPSHOT_STATE" == "completed" ]; then
    echo "Snapshot creation completed"
```

```
    break
  fi
  echo "Snapshot status: $SNAPSHOT_STATE. Waiting... ($ATTEMPTS/$MAX_ATTEMPTS)"
  ATTEMPTS=$((ATTEMPTS+1))
  sleep 10
done

if [ $ATTEMPTS -eq $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
  echo "Warning: Snapshot creation is taking longer than expected but will
 continue in the background."
  echo "You can check its status later with: aws lightsail get-instance-snapshot
 --instance-snapshot-name $SNAPSHOT_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
fi

# Step 7: Clean up resources
echo "Step 7: Clean up resources"
echo "The script has created the following resources:"
for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
  echo "  $resource"
done

read -p "Do you want to clean up these resources? (y/n): " CLEANUP_CONFIRM
if [[ "$CLEANUP_CONFIRM" == "y" || "$CLEANUP_CONFIRM" == "Y" ]]; then
  cleanup_resources
else
  echo "Resources will not be cleaned up. You can manually delete them later."
  echo "To clean up manually, use the following commands:"
  echo "aws lightsail delete-instance-snapshot --instance-snapshot-name
 $SNAPSHOT_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
  echo "aws lightsail detach-disk --disk-name $DISK_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
  echo "aws lightsail delete-disk --disk-name $DISK_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
  echo "aws lightsail delete-instance --instance-name $INSTANCE_NAME --region
 $AWS_REGION"
fi

echo "Script completed at $(date)"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachDisk
  - CreateDisk
  - CreateInstanceSnapshot

- CreateInstances
- DeleteDisk
- DeleteInstance
- DeleteInstanceSnapshot
- DetachDisk
- DownloadDefaultKeyPair
- GetBlueprints
- GetBundles
- GetDisk
- GetInstance
- GetInstanceSnapshot
- GetInstanceState

Code examples for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Location Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Location Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Location.
- **Amazon Location API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Location actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Location Service

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Location Service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * In addition, you need to create a collection using the AWS Management
 * console. For information, see the following documentation.
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/location/latest/developerguide/geofence-gs.html

 */
public class HelloLocation {

    private static LocationAsyncClient locationAsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloLocation.class);

    // This Singleton pattern ensures that only one `LocationClient`
    // instance.
    private static LocationAsyncClient getClient() {
        if (locationAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
```

```
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            locationAsyncClient = LocationAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return locationAsyncClient;
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <collectionName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The Amazon location collection name.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionName = args[0];
        listGeofences(collectionName);
    }

    /**
     * Lists geofences from a specified geofence collection asynchronously.
     *
     * @param collectionName The name of the geofence collection to list
geofences from.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the result of the
asynchronous operation.
```

```
     *         The future completes when all geofences have been processed and
 logged.
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listGeofences(String collectionName) {
        ListGeofencesRequest geofencesRequest = ListGeofencesRequest.builder()
                .collectionName(collectionName)
                .build();

        ListGeofencesPublisher paginator =
 getClient().listGeofencesPaginator(geofencesRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            if (response.entries().isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("No Geofences were found in the collection.");
            } else {
                response.entries().forEach(geofence ->
                        logger.info("Geofence ID: " + geofence.geofenceId())
                );
            }
        });
        return future;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  LocationClient,
```

```
  ListGeofenceCollectionsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";

/**
 * Lists geofences from a specified geofence collection asynchronously.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "eu-west-1";
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  const listGeofenceCollParams = {
    MaxResults: 100,
  };
  try {
    const command = new ListGeofenceCollectionsCommand(listGeofenceCollParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    const geofenceEntries = response.Entries;
    if (geofenceEntries.length === 0) {
      console.log("No Geofences were found in the collection.");
    } else {
      for (const geofenceEntry of geofenceEntries) {
        console.log(`Geofence ID: ${geofenceEntry.CollectionName}`);
      }
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${error} \n Exiting
 program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

In addition, you need to create a collection using the AWS Management
console. For information, see the following documentation.

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/location/latest/developerguide/geofence-gs.html

 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """

        Usage:
            <colletionName>

        Where:
            colletionName - The Amazon location collection name.
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    val colletionName = args[0]
    listGeofences(colletionName)
}

/**
```

```
 * Lists the geofences for the specified collection name.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection
 */
suspend fun listGeofences(collectionName: String) {
    val request = ListGeofencesRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.listGeofences(request)
        val geofences = response.entries
        if (geofences.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            println("No Geofences found")
        } else {
            geofences.forEach { geofence ->
                println("Geofence ID: ${geofence.geofenceId}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Location Service
  - Learn the basics of Amazon Location with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs
    - Use BatchUpdateDevicePosition with an AWS SDK
    - Use CalculateRoute with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateGeofenceCollection with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateKey with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateMap with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateRouteCalculator with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteGeofenceCollection with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteKey with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteMap with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteRouteCalculator with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use GetDevicePosition with an AWS SDK
- Use PutGeofence with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Location Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Location Service
- Learn the basics of Amazon Location with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs
  - Use BatchUpdateDevicePosition with an AWS SDK
  - Use CalculateRoute with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateGeofenceCollection with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateKey with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateMap with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateRouteCalculator with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateTracker with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteGeofenceCollection with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteKey with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteMap with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteRouteCalculator with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteTracker with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetDevicePosition with an AWS SDK

- Use PutGeofence with an AWS SDK

Hello Amazon Location Service

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Location Service.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * In addition, you need to create a collection using the AWS Management
 * console. For information, see the following documentation.
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/location/latest/developerguide/geofence-gs.html

 */
public class HelloLocation {

    private static LocationAsyncClient locationAsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloLocation.class);

    // This Singleton pattern ensures that only one `LocationClient`
    // instance.
    private static LocationAsyncClient getClient() {
        if (locationAsyncClient == null) {
```

```
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            locationAsyncClient = LocationAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return locationAsyncClient;
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <collectionName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The Amazon location collection name.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionName = args[0];
        listGeofences(collectionName);
    }

    /**
     * Lists geofences from a specified geofence collection asynchronously.
     *
```

```
     * @param collectionName The name of the geofence collection to list
 geofences from.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the result of the
 asynchronous operation.
     *         The future completes when all geofences have been processed and
 logged.
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listGeofences(String collectionName) {
        ListGeofencesRequest geofencesRequest = ListGeofencesRequest.builder()
                .collectionName(collectionName)
                .build();

        ListGeofencesPublisher paginator =
 getClient().listGeofencesPaginator(geofencesRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            if (response.entries().isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("No Geofences were found in the collection.");
            } else {
                response.entries().forEach(geofence ->
                        logger.info("Geofence ID: " + geofence.geofenceId())
                );
            }
        });
        return future;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  LocationClient,
  ListGeofenceCollectionsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";

/**
 * Lists geofences from a specified geofence collection asynchronously.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "eu-west-1";
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  const listGeofenceCollParams = {
    MaxResults: 100,
  };
  try {
    const command = new ListGeofenceCollectionsCommand(listGeofenceCollParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    const geofenceEntries = response.Entries;
    if (geofenceEntries.length === 0) {
      console.log("No Geofences were found in the collection.");
    } else {
      for (const geofenceEntry of geofenceEntries) {
        console.log(`Geofence ID: ${geofenceEntry.CollectionName}`);
      }
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${error} \n Exiting
 program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

In addition, you need to create a collection using the AWS Management
console. For information, see the following documentation.

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/location/latest/developerguide/geofence-gs.html

 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """

        Usage:
            <colletionName>

        Where:
            colletionName - The Amazon location collection name.
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    val colletionName = args[0]
    listGeofences(colletionName)
}

/**
```

```
 * Lists the geofences for the specified collection name.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection
 */
suspend fun listGeofences(collectionName: String) {
    val request = ListGeofencesRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.listGeofences(request)
        val geofences = response.entries
        if (geofences.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            println("No Geofences found")
        } else {
            geofences.forEach { geofence ->
                println("Geofence ID: ${geofence.geofenceId}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Learn the basics of Amazon Location with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an Amazon Location map.
- Create an Amazon Location API key.
- Display Map URL.
- Create a geofence collection.
- Store a geofence geometry.
- Create a tracker resource.
- Update the position of a device.
- Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.

- Create a route calculator.
- Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver.
- Use Amazon Location higher level APIs.
- Delete the Amazon Location Assets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon Location Service features.

```
/*
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 */
public class LocationScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(LocationScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    static LocationActions locationActions = new LocationActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
            Usage:    <mapName> <keyName> <collectionName> <geoId> <trackerName>
<calculatorName> <deviceId>

            Where:
              mapName - The name of the map to be create (e.g., "AWSMap").
              keyName - The name of the API key to create (e.g., "AWSApiKey").
              collectionName - The name of the geofence collection (e.g.,
"AWSLocationCollection").
              geoId - The geographic identifier used for the geofence or map
(e.g., "geoId").
              trackerName - The name of the tracker (e.g., "geoTracker").
              calculatorName - The name of the route calculator (e.g.,
"AWSRouteCalc").
              deviceId - The ID of the device (e.g., "iPhone-112356").
            """;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String mapName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        String collectionName = args[2];
        String geoId = args[3];
        String trackerName = args[4];
        String calculatorName = args[5];
        String deviceId = args[6];

        logger.info("""
            AWS Location Service is a fully managed service offered by Amazon Web
Services (AWS) that
            provides location-based services for developers. This service
simplifies
            the integration of location-based features into applications, making
it
            easier to build and deploy location-aware applications.

            The AWS Location Service offers a range of location-based services,
            including:

            Maps: The service provides access to high-quality maps, satellite
imagery,\s
            and geospatial data from various providers, allowing developers to\s
```

```
            easily embed maps into their applications.

            Tracking: The Location Service enables real-time tracking of mobile
 devices,\s
            assets, or other entities, allowing developers to build applications
\s
            that can monitor the location of people, vehicles, or other objects.

            Geocoding: The service provides the ability to convert addresses or\s
            location names into geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude),
\s
            and vice versa, enabling developers to integrate location-based
 search\s
            and routing functionality into their applications.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            runScenario(mapName, keyName, collectionName, geoId, trackerName,
 calculatorName, deviceId);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            // Clean up AWS Resources.
            cleanUp(mapName, keyName, collectionName, trackerName,
 calculatorName);
            logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void runScenario(String mapName, String keyName, String
 collectionName, String geoId, String trackerName, String calculatorName, String
 deviceId) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a map");
        logger.info("""
             An AWS Location map can enhance the user experience of your
             application by providing accurate and personalized location-based
             features. For example, you could use the geocoding capabilities to
             allow users to search for and locate businesses, landmarks, or
             other points of interest within a specific region.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String mapArn;
        try {
            mapArn = locationActions.createMap(mapName).join();
```

```
            logger.info("The Map ARN is: {}", mapArn);  // Log success in calling
code
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                logger.error("The request exceeded the maximum quota: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating the
map.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create an AWS Location API key");
        logger.info("""
            When you embed a map in a web app or website, the API key is
            included in the map tile URL to authenticate requests. You can
            restrict API keys to specific AWS Location operations (e.g., only
            maps, not geocoding). API keys can expire, ensuring temporary
            access control.
            """);

        try {
            String keyArn = locationActions.createKey(keyName, mapArn).join();
            logger.info("The API key was successfully created: {}", keyArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof AccessDeniedException) {
                logger.error("Request was denied: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating the API
key.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Display Map URL");
```

```
        logger.info("""
            In order to get the MAP URL, you need to get the API Key value.
            You can get the key value using the AWS Management Console under
            Location Services. This operation cannot be completed using the
            AWS SDK. For more information about getting the key value, see
            the AWS Location Documentation.
            """);
        String mapUrl = "https://maps.geo.aws.amazon.com/maps/v0/maps/"+mapName
+"/tiles/{z}/{x}/{y}?key={KeyValue}";
        logger.info("Embed this URL in your Web app: " + mapUrl);
        logger.info("");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Create a geofence collection, which manages and stores
 geofences.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String collectionArn =
 locationActions.createGeofenceCollection(collectionName).join();
            logger.info("The geofence collection was successfully created: {}",
 collectionArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("A conflict occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating the
 geofence collection.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Store a geofence geometry in a given geofence
 collection.");
        logger.info("""
            An AWS Location geofence is a virtual boundary that defines a
 geographic area
            on a map. It is a useful feature for tracking the location of
```

```
            assets or monitoring the movement of objects within a specific
region.

            To define a geofence, you need to specify the coordinates of a
            polygon that represents the area of interest. The polygon must be
            defined in a counter-clockwise direction, meaning that the points of
            the polygon must be listed in a counter-clockwise order.

            This is a requirement for the AWS Location service to correctly
            interpret the geofence and ensure that the location data is
            accurately processed within the defined area.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            locationActions.putGeofence(collectionName, geoId).join();
            logger.info("Successfully created geofence: {}", geoId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                logger.error("A validation error occurred while creating
geofence: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("6. Create a tracker resource which lets you retrieve current
and historical location of devices..");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String trackerArn =
locationActions.createTracker(trackerName).join();
            logger.info("Successfully created tracker. ARN: {}", trackerArn);  //
Log success
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("A conflict occurred while creating the tracker:
{}", cause.getMessage());
```

```
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Update the position of a device in the location tracking
system.");
        logger.info("""
            The AWS location service does not enforce a strict format for
deviceId, but it must:
              - Be a string (case-sensitive).
              - Be 1-100 characters long.
              - Contain only:
                - Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9)
                - Underscores (_)
                - Hyphens (-)
                - Be the same ID used when sending and retrieving positions.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse> future =
locationActions.updateDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId);
            future.join();
            logger.info(deviceId + " was successfully updated in the location
tracking system.");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("8. Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified
device..");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            GetDevicePositionResponse response =
locationActions.getDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId).join();
            logger.info("Successfully fetched device position: {}",
response.position());
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("9. Create a route calculator.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CreateRouteCalculatorResponse response =
locationActions.createRouteCalculator(calculatorName).join();
            logger.info("Route calculator created successfully: {}",
response.calculatorArn());
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.info("A conflict occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("10. Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver
using the route calculator.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CalculateRouteResponse response =
locationActions.calcDistanceAsync(calculatorName).join();
            logger.info("Successfully calculated route. The distance in
kilometers is {}", response.summary().distance());
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("11. Use the GeoPlacesAsyncClient to perform additional
operations.");
        logger.info("""
            This scenario will show use of the GeoPlacesClient that enables
            location search and geocoding capabilities for your applications.\s

            We are going to use this client to perform these AWS Location tasks:
             - Reverse Geocoding (reverseGeocode): Converts geographic
coordinates into addresses.
             - Place Search (searchText): Finds places based on search queries.
             - Nearby Search (searchNearby): Finds places near a specific
location.
            """);

        logger.info("First we will perform a Reverse Geocoding operation");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            locationActions.reverseGeocode().join();
            logger.info("Now we are going to perform a text search using coffee
shop.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
            locationActions.searchText("coffee shop").join();
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

            logger.info("Now we are going to perform a nearby Search.");
            //waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            locationActions.searchNearBy().join();
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                logger.error("A validation error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("12. Delete the AWS Location Services resources.");
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the AWS Location Services
resources? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            cleanUp(mapName, keyName, collectionName, trackerName,
calculatorName);
        } else {
            logger.info("The AWS resources will not be deleted.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info(" This concludes the AWS Location Service scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Cleans up resources by deleting the specified map, key, geofence
collection, tracker, and route calculator.
     *
     * @param mapName The name of the map to delete.
```

```
     * @param keyName The name of the key to delete.
     * @param collectionName The name of the geofence collection to delete.
     * @param trackerName The name of the tracker to delete.
     * @param calculatorName The name of the route calculator to delete.
     */
    private static void cleanUp(String mapName, String keyName, String
 collectionName, String trackerName, String calculatorName) {
        try {
            locationActions.deleteMap(mapName).join();
            locationActions.deleteKey(keyName).join();
            locationActions.deleteGeofenceCollectionAsync(collectionName).join();
            locationActions.deleteTracker(trackerName).join();
            locationActions.deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
 cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon Location Service SDK methods.

```
public class LocationActions {

    private static LocationAsyncClient locationAsyncClient;

    private static GeoPlacesAsyncClient geoPlacesAsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(LocationActions.class);

    // This Singleton pattern ensures that only one `LocationClient`
    // instance is used throughout the application.
    private LocationAsyncClient getClient() {
        if (locationAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            locationAsyncClient = LocationAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return locationAsyncClient;
    }

    private static GeoPlacesAsyncClient getGeoPlacesClient() {
        if (geoPlacesAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();
```

```
            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            geoPlacesAsyncClient = GeoPlacesAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return geoPlacesAsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Performs a nearby places search based on the provided geographic
 coordinates (latitude and longitude).
     * The method sends an asynchronous request to search for places within a 1-
kilometer radius of the specified location.
     * The results are processed and printed once the search completes
 successfully.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<SearchNearbyResponse> searchNearBy() {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        // Set up the request for searching nearby places.
        SearchNearbyRequest request = SearchNearbyRequest.builder()
            .queryPosition(queryPosition)  // Set the position
            .queryRadius(1000L)  // Radius in meters (1000 meters = 1 km).
            .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchNearby(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error
 occurred: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
```

```
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place
search", exception);
                }

                // Process the response and print the results.
                response.resultItems().forEach(result -> {
                    logger.info("Place Name: " + result.placeType().name());
                    logger.info("Address: " + result.address().label());
                    logger.info("Distance: " + result.distance() + " meters");
                    logger.info("-------------------------");
                });
            });
    }


    /**
     * Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the
detailed information of the first result.
     *
     * @param searchQuery the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
coffee shop)
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> searchText(String searchQuery) {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        SearchTextRequest request = SearchTextRequest.builder()
                .queryText(searchQuery)
                .biasPosition(queryPosition)
                .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchText(request)
                .thenCompose(response -> {
                    if (response.resultItems().isEmpty()) {
                        logger.info("No places found.");
                        return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                    }

                    // Get the first place ID
                    String placeId = response.resultItems().get(0).placeId();
                    logger.info("Found Place with id: " + placeId);
```

```
                    // Fetch detailed info using getPlace
                    GetPlaceRequest getPlaceRequest = GetPlaceRequest.builder()
                            .placeId(placeId)
                            .build();

                    return getGeoPlacesClient().getPlace(getPlaceRequest)
                            .thenAccept(placeResponse -> {
                                logger.info("Detailed Place Information:");
                                logger.info("Name: " +
 placeResponse.placeType().name());
                                logger.info("Address: " +
 placeResponse.address().label());

                                if (placeResponse.foodTypes() != null && !
placeResponse.foodTypes().isEmpty()) {
                                    logger.info("Food Types:");
                                    placeResponse.foodTypes().forEach(foodType ->
 {
                                        logger.info("  - " + foodType);
                                    });
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("No food types available.");
                                }
                                logger.info("-------------------------");
                            });
                })
                .exceptionally(exception -> {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error
 occurred: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place
 search", exception);
                });
    }



    /**
     * Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
     * Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude) to a human-readable address.
```

```
    * This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input,
and prints the resulting address.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> reverseGeocode() {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;
       logger.info("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194");

       // AWS expects [longitude, latitude].
       List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);
       ReverseGeocodeRequest request = ReverseGeocodeRequest.builder()
           .queryPosition(queryPosition)
           .build();
       CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> futureResponse =
           getGeoPlacesClient().reverseGeocode(request);

       return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
               Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                   throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
               }
               throw new CompletionException("Error performing reverse
geocoding", exception);
           }

           response.resultItems().forEach(result ->
               logger.info("The address is: " + result.address().label())
           );
       });
   }


   /**
    * Calculates the distance between two locations asynchronously.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the
route
    */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<CalculateRouteResponse> calcDistanceAsync(String
routeCalcName) {
       // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
       List<Double> departurePosition = Arrays.asList(-122.3321, 47.6062);
       List<Double> arrivePosition = Arrays.asList(-123.1216, 49.2827);

       CalculateRouteRequest request = CalculateRouteRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .departurePosition(departurePosition)
           .destinationPosition(arrivePosition)
           .travelMode("Car") // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
           .distanceUnit("Kilometers") // Options: Meters, Kilometers, Miles
           .build();

       return getClient().calculateRoute(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to calculate route: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateRouteCalculatorResponse>
createRouteCalculator(String routeCalcName) {
       String dataSource = "Esri"; // or "Here"
       CreateRouteCalculatorRequest request =
CreateRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .dataSource(dataSource)
           .build();

       return getClient().createRouteCalculator(request)
```

```
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict error occurred:
" + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create route
calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
     *
     * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
     * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
     * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error fetching the device
position.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetDevicePositionResponse> getDevicePosition(String
trackerName, String deviceId) {
        GetDevicePositionRequest request = GetDevicePositionRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .deviceId(deviceId)
            .build();

        return getClient().getDevicePosition(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error fetching device
position: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
     *
     * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
     * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while updating the device
position
     */
    public CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse>
updateDevicePosition(String trackerName, String deviceId) {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // Example: San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;

        DevicePositionUpdate positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate.builder()
            .deviceId(deviceId)
            .sampleTime(Instant.now()) // Timestamp of position update.
            .position(Arrays.asList(longitude, latitude)) // AWS requires
[longitude, latitude]
            .build();

        BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest request =
BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .updates(positionUpdate)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse> futureResponse =
getClient().batchUpdateDevicePosition(request);
        return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("The resource was not found: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Error updating device
position: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });
    }


    /**
```

```
    * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to
track the location of devices.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createTracker(String trackerName) {
       CreateTrackerRequest trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest.builder()
           .description("Created using the Java V2 SDK")
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .positionFiltering("TimeBased") // Options: TimeBased, DistanceBased,
AccuracyBased
           .build();

       return getClient().createTracker(trackerRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("Conflict occurred while
creating tracker: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Error creating tracker: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           })
           .thenApply(CreateTrackerResponse::trackerArn); // Return only the
tracker ARN
   }



   /**
    * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
    *
    * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the
geofence to
    * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutGeofenceResponse> putGeofence(String
collectionName, String geoId) {
       // Define the geofence geometry (polygon).
       GeofenceGeometry geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry.builder()
```

```
            .polygon(List.of(
                List.of(
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101), // First point
                    List.of(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                    List.of(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101) // Closing the polygon
                )
            ))
            .build();

        PutGeofenceRequest geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName) // Specify the collection.
            .geofenceId(geoId) // Unique ID for the geofence.
            .geometry(geofenceGeometry)
            .build();

        return getClient().putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Validation error while
creating geofence: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error creating geofence: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new geofence collection.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createGeofenceCollection(String
collectionName) {
        CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .build();
```

```
        return getClient().createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The geofence collection
was not created due to ConflictException.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.collectionArn()); // Return only the
ARN
    }




    /**
     * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
     * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which
the API key will be associated
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon
Resource Name (ARN) of the created API key,
     * or {@code null} if the operation failed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createKey(String keyName, String mapArn) {
        ApiKeyRestrictions keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions.builder()
            .allowActions("geo:GetMap*")
            .allowResources(mapArn)
            .build();

        CreateKeyRequest request = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .restrictions(keyRestrictions)
            .noExpiry(true)
            .build();

        return getClient().createKey(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
```

```
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof AccessDeniedException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The request was denied
because of insufficient access or permissions.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create API key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.keyArn()); // This will never return
null if the response reaches here
    }




    /**
     * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while creating the map,
such as exceeding the service quota
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMap(String mapName) {
        MapConfiguration configuration = MapConfiguration.builder()
            .style("VectorEsriNavigation")
            .build();

        CreateMapRequest mapRequest = CreateMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .configuration(configuration)
            .description("A map created using the Java V2 API")
            .build();

        return getClient().createMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                    }
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.mapArn()); // Return the map ARN
    }




    /**
     * Deletes a geofence collection asynchronously.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence
collection has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteGeofenceCollectionAsync(String
collectionName) {
        DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested geofence
collection was not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The geofence collection {} was deleted.",
collectionName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }




    /**
     * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
```

```
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if the key was not found or if an error
occurred during the deletion process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKey(String keyName) {
        DeleteKeyRequest keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteKey(keyRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The key was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The key {} was deleted.", keyName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a map with the specified name.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the map deletion
is successful, or throws a {@link CompletionException} if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteMap(String mapName) {
        DeleteMapRequest mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The map was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The map {} was deleted.", mapName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
     *
     * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tracker has
been deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the tracker
     *                             - if the tracker was not found, a {@link
ResourceNotFoundException} is thrown wrapped in the CompletionException
     *                             - if any other error occurs, a generic
CompletionException is thrown with the error message
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteTracker(String trackerName) {
        DeleteTrackerRequest trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The tracker was not
found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the tracker:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The tracker {} was deleted.", trackerName);
            })
```

```
            .thenApply(response -> null); // Ensures CompletableFuture<Void>
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
     *
     * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the route
 calculator has been deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the route
 calculator
     *                             - If the route calculator was not found, a
 {@link ResourceNotFoundException} will be thrown
     *                             - If any other error occurs, a generic {@link
 CompletionException} will be thrown
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteRouteCalculator(String calcName) {
        DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest calculatorRequest =
 DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
            .calculatorName(calcName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The route calculator was
 not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the route
 calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The route calculator {} was deleted.", calcName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
Before running this JavaScript code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
This demo illustrates how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) to work with
 Amazon Location Service.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-javascript/v3/developer-guide/getting-
started.html
*/

import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

import {
  CreateMapCommand,
  CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  PutGeofenceCommand,
  CreateTrackerCommand,
  BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand,
  GetDevicePositionCommand,
  CreateRouteCalculatorCommand,
  CalculateRouteCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ConflictException,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
```

```
  DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand,
  DeleteTrackerCommand,
  DeleteMapCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";

import {
  GeoPlacesClient,
  ReverseGeocodeCommand,
  SearchNearbyCommand,
  SearchTextCommand,
  GetPlaceCommand,
  ValidationException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-geo-places";

import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

/*The inputs for this example can be edited in the ./input.json.*/
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
/* v8 ignore next 3 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "confirm",
  verbose: "false",
});

const pressEnterConfirm = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirm",
  "Press Enter to continue",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    verbose: "false",
  },
);

const region = "eu-west-1";

const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
```

```
const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Location Use demo! \n" +
    "AWS Location Service is a fully managed service offered by Amazon Web
 Services (AWS) that " +
    "provides location-based services for developers. This service simplifies " +
    "the integration of location-based features into applications, making it " +
    "Maps: The service provides access to high-quality maps, satellite imagery, "
 +
    "and geospatial data from various providers, allowing developers to " +
    "easily embed maps into their applications:\n" +
    "Tracking: The Location Service enables real-time tracking of mobile devices,
 " +
    "assets, or other entities, allowing developers to build applications " +
    "that can monitor the location of people, vehicles, or other objects.\n" +
    "Geocoding: The service provides the ability to convert addresses or " +
    "location names into geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude), " +
    "and vice versa, enabling developers to integrate location-based search " +
    "and routing functionality into their applications. " +
    "Please define values ./inputs.json for each user-defined variable used in
 this app. Otherwise the default is used:\n" +
    "- mapName: The name of the map to be create (default is 'AWSMap').\n" +
    "- keyName: The name of the API key to create (default is ' AWSApiKey')\n" +
    "- collectionName: The name of the geofence collection (default is
 'AWSLocationCollection')\n" +
    "- geoId: The geographic identifier used for the geofence or map (default is
 'geoId')\n" +
    "- trackerName: The name of the tracker (default is 'geoTracker')\n" +
    "- calculatorName: The name of the route calculator (default is
 'AWSRouteCalc')\n" +
    "- deviceId: The ID of the device (default is 'iPhone-112356')",

  { header: true },
);
const displayCreateAMap = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateAMap",
  "1. Create a map\n" +
    "An AWS Location map can enhance the user experience of your " +
    " application by providing accurate and personalized location-based " +
    " features. For example, you could use the geocoding capabilities to " +
    " allow users to search for and locate businesses, landmarks, or " +
    " other points of interest within a specific region.",
);
```

```
const sdkCreateAMap = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateAMap",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const createMapParams = {
      MapName: `${data.inputs.mapName}`,
      Configuration: { style: "VectorEsriNavigation" },
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateMapCommand(createMapParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.MapName = response.MapName;
      console.log("Map created. Map ARN is: ", state.MapName);
    } catch (error) {
      console.error("Error creating map: ", error);
      throw error;
    }
  },
);

const displayMapUrl = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayMapUrl",
  "2. Display Map URL\n" +
    "When you embed a map in a web app or website, the API key is " +
    "included in the map tile URL to authenticate requests. You can " +
    "restrict API keys to specific AWS Location operations (e.g., only " +
    "maps, not geocoding). API keys can expire, ensuring temporary " +
    "access control.\n" +
    "In order to get the MAP URL you need to create and get the API Key value. "
 +
    "You can create and get the key value using the AWS Management Console under
 " +
    "Location Services. These operations cannot be completed using the " +
    "AWS SDK. For more information about getting the key value, see " +
    "the AWS Location Documentation.",
);

const sdkDisplayMapUrl = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDisplayMapUrl",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const mapURL = `https://maps.geo.aws.amazon.com/maps/v0/maps/
${state.MapName}/tiles/{z}/{x}/{y}?key=API_KEY_VALUE`;
    state.mapURL = mapURL;
    console.log(
```

```
      `Replace \'API_KEY_VALUE\' in the following URL with the value for the API
 key you create and get from the AWS Management Console under Location Services.
 This is then the Map URL you can embed this URL in your Web app:\n
${state.mapURL}`,
    );
  },
);
const displayCreateGeoFenceColl = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateGeoFenceColl",
  "3. Create a geofence collection, which manages and stores geofences.",
);

const sdkCreateGeoFenceColl = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateGeoFenceColl",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Creates a new geofence collection.
    const geoFenceCollParams = {
      CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand(geoFenceCollParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.CollectionName = response.CollectionName;
      console.log(
        `The geofence collection was successfully created:
 ${state.CollectionName}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `An unexpected error occurred while creating the geofence collection:
 ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayStoreGeometry = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayStoreGeometry",
  "4. Store a geofence geometry in a given geofence collection. " +
    "An AWS Location geofence is a virtual boundary that defines a geographic
 area " +
    "on a map. It is a useful feature for tracking the location of " +
```

```
    "assets or monitoring the movement of objects within a specific region. " +
    "To define a geofence, you need to specify the coordinates of a " +
    "polygon that represents the area of interest. The polygon must be " +
    "defined in a counter-clockwise direction, meaning that the points of " +
    "the polygon must be listed in a counter-clockwise order. " +
    "This is a requirement for the AWS Location service to correctly " +
    "interpret the geofence and ensure that the location data is " +
    "accurately processed within the defined area.",
);

const sdkStoreGeometry = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkStoreGeometry",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const geoFenceGeoParams = {
      CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
      GeofenceId: `${data.inputs.geoId}`,
      Geometry: {
        Polygon: [
          [
            [-122.3381, 47.6101],
            [-122.3281, 47.6101],
            [-122.3281, 47.6201],
            [-122.3381, 47.6201],
            [-122.3381, 47.6101],
          ],
        ],
      },
    };
    try {
      const command = new PutGeofenceCommand(geoFenceGeoParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.GeoFencId = response.GeofenceId;
      console.log("GeoFence created. GeoFence ID is: ", state.GeoFencId);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${caught.message}
 \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
```

```
const displayCreateTracker = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateTracker",
  "5. Create a tracker resource which lets you retrieve current and historical
 location of devices.",
);

const sdkCreateTracker = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateTracker",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    //Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to
 track the location of devices.
    const createTrackerParams = {
      TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
      Description: "Created using the JavaScript V3 SDK",
      PositionFiltering: "TimeBased",
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateTrackerCommand(createTrackerParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.trackerName = response.TrackerName;
      console.log("Tracker created. Tracker name is : ", state.trackerName);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${caught.message}
 \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      } else {
        `An unexpected error error occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`;
      }
      return;
    }
  },
);
const displayUpdatePosition = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayUpdatePosition",
  "6. Update the position of a device in the location tracking system." +
    "The AWS Location Service does not enforce a strict format for deviceId, but
 it must:\n " +
    "- Be a string (case-sensitive).\n" +
    "- Be 1-100 characters long.\n" +
    "- Contain only: Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9); Underscores (_);
 Hyphens (-); and be the same ID used when sending and retrieving positions.",
```

```
);

const sdkUpdatePosition = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkUpdatePosition",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.

    const updateDevicePosParams = {
      TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
      Updates: [
        {
          DeviceId: `${data.inputs.deviceId}`,
          SampleTime: new Date(),
          Position: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
        },
      ],
    };
    try {
      const command = new BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand(
        updateDevicePosParams,
      );
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log(
        `Device with id ${data.inputs.deviceId} was successfully updated in the
 location tracking system. `,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `A validation error occurred while updating the device:
 ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayRetrievePosition = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayRetrievePosition",
  "7. Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.",
);

const sdkRetrievePosition = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkRetrievePosition",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
```

```
    const devicePositionParams = {
      TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
      DeviceId: `${data.inputs.deviceId}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetDevicePositionCommand(devicePositionParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.position = response.Position;
      console.log("Successfully fetched device position: : ", state.position);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `"The resource was not found: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      } else {
        `An unexpected error error occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`;
      }
      return;
    }
  },
);
const displayCreateRouteCalc = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateRouteCalc",
  "8. Create a route calculator.",
);

const sdkCreateRouteCalc = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateRouteCalc",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const routeCalcParams = {
      CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
      DataSource: "Esri",
    };
    try {
      // Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
      const command = new CreateRouteCalculatorCommand(routeCalcParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.CalculatorName = response.CalculatorName;
      console.log(
        "Route calculator created successfully. Calculator name is: ",
        state.CalculatorName,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
```

```
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayDetermineDist = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDetermineDist",
  "9. Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver using the route
 calculator.",
);

const sdkDetermineDist = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDetermineDist",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Calculates the distance between two locations asynchronously.
    const determineDist = {
      CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
      DeparturePosition: [-122.3321, 47.6062],
      DestinationPosition: [-123.1216, 49.2827],
      TravelMode: "Car",
      DistanceUnit: "Kilometers",
    };
    try {
      const command = new CalculateRouteCommand(determineDist);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);

      console.log(
        "Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is : ",
        response.Summary.Distance,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `Failed to calculate route: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      }
      return;
    }
  },
);
```

```
const displayUseGeoPlacesClient = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayUseGeoPlacesClient",
  "10. Use the GeoPlacesAsyncClient to perform additional operations. " +
    "This scenario will show use of the GeoPlacesClient that enables" +
    "location search and geocoding capabilities for your applications. " +
    "We are going to use this client to perform these AWS Location tasks: \n" +
    " - Reverse Geocoding (reverseGeocode): Converts geographic coordinates into
 addresses.\n " +
    " - Place Search (searchText): Finds places based on search queries.\n " +
    " - Nearby Search (searchNearby): Finds places near a specific location.\n "
 +
    "First we will perform a Reverse Geocoding operation",
);

const sdkUseGeoPlacesClient = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkUseGeoPlacesClient",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const geoPlacesClient = new GeoPlacesClient({ region: region });

    const reverseGeoCodeParams = {
      QueryPosition: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
    };
    const searchTextParams = {
      QueryText: "coffee shop",
      BiasPosition: [-122.4194, 37.7749], //San Fransisco
    };
    const searchNearbyParams = {
      QueryPosition: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
      QueryRadius: Number("1000"),
    };
    try {
      /*   Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
     Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude) to a human-readable address.
     This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input,
 and prints the resulting address.*/

      console.log("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194.");
      const command = new ReverseGeocodeCommand(reverseGeoCodeParams);
      const response = await geoPlacesClient.send(command);
      console.log(
        "Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is : ",
        response.ResultItems[0].Distance,
      );
```

```
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        "Now we are going to perform a text search using coffee shop",
      );

      /*Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the
detailed information of the first result.
 @param searchTextParams the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
coffee shop)*/

      const command = new SearchTextCommand(searchTextParams);
      const response = await geoPlacesClient.send(command);
      const placeId = response.ResultItems[0].PlaceId.toString();
      const getPlaceCommand = new GetPlaceCommand({
        PlaceId: placeId,
      });
      const getPlaceResponse = await geoPlacesClient.send(getPlaceCommand);
      console.log(
        `Detailed Place Information: \n Name and address:
${getPlaceResponse.Address.Label}`,
      );

      const foodTypes = getPlaceResponse.FoodTypes;
      if (foodTypes.length) {
        console.log("Food Types: ");
        for (const foodType of foodTypes) {
          console.log("- ", foodType.LocalizedName);
        }
      } else {
        console.log("No food types available.");
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
```

```
        return;
      }
    }
    try {
      console.log("\nNow we are going to perform a nearby search.");
      const command = new SearchNearbyCommand(searchNearbyParams);
      const response = await geoPlacesClient.send(command);
      const resultItems = response.ResultItems;
      console.log("\nSuccessfully performed nearby search.");
      for (const resultItem of resultItems) {
        console.log("Name and address: ", resultItem.Address.Label);
        console.log("Distance: ", resultItem.Distance);
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);

const displayDeleteResources = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDeleteResources",
  "11. Delete the AWS Location Services resources. " +
    "Would you like to delete the AWS Location Services resources? (y/n)",
);

const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const deleteGeofenceCollParams = {
      CollectionName: `${state.CollectionName}`,
    };
    const deleteRouteCalculatorParams = {
      CalculatorName: `${state.CalculatorName}`,
    };
    const deleteTrackerParams = { TrackerName: `${state.trackerName}` };
    const deleteMapParams = { MapName: `${state.MapName}` };
    try {
      const command = new DeleteMapCommand(deleteMapParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
```

```
      console.log("Map deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting map: ", error);
    }
    try {
      const command = new DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand(
        deleteGeofenceCollParams,
      );
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Geofence collection deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting geofence collection: ", error);
    }
    try {
      const command = new DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand(
        deleteRouteCalculatorParams,
      );
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Route calculator deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting route calculator: ", error);
    }
    try {
      const command = new DeleteTrackerCommand(deleteTrackerParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Tracker deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting tracker: ", error);
    }
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Location Service Use demo. We hope you "
 +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!" +
    " For more Amazon Location Services examples in different programming
 languages, have a look at: " +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/
location_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Location Services Scenario", [
```

```
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateAMap,
  sdkCreateAMap,
  pressEnter,
  displayMapUrl,
  sdkDisplayMapUrl,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateGeoFenceColl,
  sdkCreateGeoFenceColl,
  pressEnter,
  displayStoreGeometry,
  sdkStoreGeometry,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateTracker,
  sdkCreateTracker,
  pressEnter,
  displayUpdatePosition,
  sdkUpdatePosition,
  pressEnter,
  displayRetrievePosition,
  sdkRetrievePosition,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateRouteCalc,
  sdkCreateRouteCalc,
  pressEnter,
  displayDetermineDist,
  sdkDetermineDist,
  pressEnter,
  displayUseGeoPlacesClient,
  sdkUseGeoPlacesClient,
  pressEnter,
  displayDeleteResources,
  pressEnterConfirm,
  sdkDeleteResources,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
```

```
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

val scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """

        Usage:    <mapName> <keyName> <collectionName> <geoId> <trackerName>
 <calculatorName> <deviceId>

        Where:
            mapName - The name of the map to create (e.g., "AWSMap").
```

```
            keyName - The name of the API key to create (e.g., "AWSApiKey").
            collectionName - The name of the geofence collection (e.g.,
"AWSLocationCollection").
            geoId - The geographic identifier used for the geofence or map (e.g.,
"geoId").
            trackerName - The name of the tracker (e.g., "geoTracker").
            calculatorName - The name of the route calculator (e.g.,
"AWSRouteCalc").
            deviceId - The ID of the device (e.g., "iPhone-112356").
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val mapName = args[0]
    val keyName = args[1]
    val collectionName = args[2]
    val geoId = args[3]
    val trackerName = args[4]
    val calculatorName = args[5]
    val deviceId = args[6]

    println(
        """
    AWS Location Service is a fully managed service offered by Amazon Web
Services (AWS) that
    provides location-based services for developers. This service simplifies
    the integration of location-based features into applications, making it
    easier to build and deploy location-aware applications.

    The AWS Location Service offers a range of location-based services,
    including:

    - Maps: The service provides access to high-quality maps, satellite imagery,
      and geospatial data from various providers, allowing developers to
      easily embed maps into their applications.

    - Tracking: The Location Service enables real-time tracking of mobile
devices,
      assets, or other entities, allowing developers to build applications
      that can monitor the location of people, vehicles, or other objects.
```

```
    - Geocoding: The service provides the ability to convert addresses or
      location names into geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude),
      and vice versa, enabling developers to integrate location-based search
      and routing functionality into their applications.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an AWS Location Service map")
    println(
        """
        An AWS Location map can enhance the user experience of your
        application by providing accurate and personalized location-based
        features. For example, you could use the geocoding capabilities to
        allow users to search for and locate businesses, landmarks, or
        other points of interest within a specific region.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val mapArn = createMap(mapName)
    println("The Map ARN is: $mapArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println("2. Create an AWS Location API key")
    println(
        """
            When you embed a map in a web app or website, the API key is
            included in the map tile URL to authenticate requests. You can
            restrict API keys to specific AWS Location operations (e.g., only
            maps, not geocoding). API keys can expire, ensuring temporary
            access control.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    val keyArn = createKey(keyName, mapArn)
    println("The Key ARN is: $keyArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Display Map URL")
    println(
        """
        In order to get the MAP URL, you need to get the API Key value.
        You can get the key value using the AWS Management Console under
        Location Services. This operation cannot be completed using the
        AWS SDK. For more information about getting the key value, see
        the AWS Location Documentation.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    val mapUrl = "https://maps.geo.aws.amazon.com/maps/v0/maps/$mapName/tiles/
{z}/{x}/{y}?key={KeyValue}"
    println("Embed this URL in your Web app: $mapUrl")
    println("")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a geofence collection, which manages and stores
 geofences.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val collectionArn: String =
        createGeofenceCollection(collectionName)
    println("The geofence collection was successfully created: $collectionArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Store a geofence geometry in a given geofence collection.")
    println(
        """
        An AWS Location geofence is a virtual boundary that defines a geographic
 area
        on a map. It is a useful feature for tracking the location of
        assets or monitoring the movement of objects within a specific region.

        To define a geofence, you need to specify the coordinates of a
        polygon that represents the area of interest. The polygon must be
        defined in a counter-clockwise direction, meaning that the points of
        the polygon must be listed in a counter-clockwise order.

        This is a requirement for the AWS Location service to correctly
        interpret the geofence and ensure that the location data is
        accurately processed within the defined area.
```

```
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    putGeofence(collectionName, geoId)
    println("Successfully created geofence: $geoId")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Create a tracker resource which lets you retrieve current and
historical location of devices.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val trackerArn: String = createTracker(trackerName)
    println("Successfully created tracker. ARN: $trackerArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Update the position of a device in the location tracking
system.")
    println(
        """
        The AWS location service does not enforce a strict format for deviceId,
but it must:
            - Be a string (case-sensitive).
            - Be 1-100 characters long.
            - Contain only:
            - Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9)
            - Underscores (_)
            - Hyphens (-)
            - Be the same ID used when sending and retrieving positions.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    updateDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId)
    println("$deviceId was successfully updated in the location tracking
system.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
```

```
   println("8. Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified
device.")
   waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
   val response = getDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId)
   println("Successfully fetched device position: ${response.position}")
   waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("9. Create a route calculator.")
   waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
   val routeResponse = createRouteCalculator(calculatorName)
   println("Route calculator created successfully:
${routeResponse.calculatorArn}")
   waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("10. Determine the distance in kilometers between Seattle and
Vancouver using the route calculator.")
   waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
   val responseDis = calcDistance(calculatorName)
   println("Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is
${responseDis.summary?.distance}")
   waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("11. Use the GeoPlacesClient to perform additional operations.")
   println(
       """
       This scenario will show use of the GeoPlacesClient that enables
       location search and geocoding capabilities for your applications.

       We are going to use this client to perform these AWS Location tasks:
           - Reverse Geocoding (reverseGeocode): Converts geographic coordinates
into addresses.
           - Place Search (searchText): Finds places based on search queries.
           - Nearby Search (searchNearby): Finds places near a specific
location.

       """.trimIndent(),
   )
```

```
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println("First we will perform a Reverse Geocoding operation")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    reverseGeocode()

    println("Now we are going to perform a text search using coffee shop.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    searchText("coffee shop")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println("Now we are going to perform a nearby Search.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    searchNearby()
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Delete the AWS Location Services resources.")
    println("Would you like to delete the AWS Location Services resources? (y/
n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim { it <= ' ' }
    if (delAns.equals("y", ignoreCase = true)) {
        deleteMap(mapName)
        deleteKey(keyName)
        deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionName)
        deleteTracker(trackerName)
        deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorName)
    } else {
        println("The AWS resources will not be deleted.")
    }
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(" This concludes the AWS Location Service scenario.")
    println(DASHES)
}

/**
 * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
 * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteRouteCalculator(calcName: String) {
    val calculatorRequest = DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest {
```

```
        this.calculatorName = calcName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
        println("The route calculator $calcName was deleted.")
    }
}


/**
 * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteTracker(trackerName: String) {
    val trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
    }

    LocationClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
        println("The tracker $trackerName was deleted.")
    }
}


/**
 * Deletes a geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence
 collection has been deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String) {
    val collectionRequest = DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The geofence collection $collectionName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

```
/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteKey(keyName: String) {
    val keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteKey(keyRequest)
        println("The key $keyName was deleted.")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteMap(mapName: String) {
    val mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteMap(mapRequest)
        println("The map $mapName was deleted.")
    }
}


/**
 * Performs a nearby places search based on the provided geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude).
 * The method sends an asynchronous request to search for places within a 1-
kilometer radius of the specified location.
 * The results are processed and printed once the search completes successfully.
 */
suspend fun searchNearby() {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194
    val queryPosition = listOf(longitude, latitude)
```

```
    // Set up the request for searching nearby places.
    val request = SearchNearbyRequest {
        this.queryPosition = queryPosition
        this.queryRadius = 1000L
    }

    GeoPlacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.searchNearby(request)

        // Process the response and print the results.
        response.resultItems?.forEach { result ->
            println("Title: ${result.title}")
            println("Address: ${result.address?.label}")
            println("Distance: ${result.distance} meters")
            println("-------------------------")
        }
    }
}


/**
 * Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the detailed
 information of the first result.
 *
 * @param searchQuery the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
 coffee shop)
 */
suspend fun searchText(searchQuery: String) {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194
    val queryPosition = listOf(longitude, latitude)

    val request = SearchTextRequest {
        this.queryText = searchQuery
        this.biasPosition = queryPosition
    }

    GeoPlacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.searchText(request)

        response.resultItems?.firstOrNull()?.let { result ->
            val placeId = result.placeId // Get Place ID
            println("Found Place with id: $placeId")
```

```
            // Fetch detailed info using getPlace.
            val getPlaceRequest = GetPlaceRequest {
                this.placeId = placeId
            }

            val placeResponse = client.getPlace(getPlaceRequest)

            // Print detailed place information.
            println("Detailed Place Information:")
            println("Title: ${placeResponse.title}")
            println("Address: ${placeResponse.address?.label}")

            // Print each food type (if any).
            placeResponse.foodTypes?.takeIf { it.isNotEmpty() }?.let {
                println("Food Types:")
                it.forEach { foodType ->
                    println("  - $foodType")
                }
            } ?: run {
                println("No food types available.")
            }

            println("-------------------------")
        }
    }
}

/**
 * Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
 * Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude) to a human-readable address.
 * This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input, and
 prints the resulting address.
 */
suspend fun reverseGeocode() {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194
    println("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194")

    // AWS expects [longitude, latitude].
    val queryPosition = listOf(longitude, latitude)
    val request = ReverseGeocodeRequest {
        this.queryPosition = queryPosition
```

```
    }

    GeoPlacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.reverseGeocode(request)
        response.resultItems?.forEach { result ->
            println("The address is: ${result.address?.label}")
        }
    }
}


/**
 * Calculates the distance between two locations.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
 CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the
 route
 */
suspend fun calcDistance(routeCalcName: String): CalculateRouteResponse {
    // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
    val departurePosition = listOf(-122.3321, 47.6062)
    val arrivePosition = listOf(-123.1216, 49.2827)

    val request = CalculateRouteRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.departurePosition = departurePosition
        this.destinationPosition = arrivePosition
        this.travelMode = TravelMode.Car // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
        this.distanceUnit = DistanceUnit.Kilometers // Options: Meters,
 Kilometers, Miles
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.calculateRoute(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
 */
```

```
suspend fun createRouteCalculator(routeCalcName: String):
 CreateRouteCalculatorResponse {
    val dataSource = "Esri"

    val request = CreateRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.dataSource = dataSource
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.createRouteCalculator(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
 *
 * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
 * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
 */
suspend fun getDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String):
 GetDevicePositionResponse {
    val request = GetDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        this.deviceId = deviceId
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.getDevicePosition(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
 * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
 */
suspend fun updateDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String) {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194

    val positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate {
        this.deviceId = deviceId
```

```
        sampleTime = aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant.now() // Timestamp of
 position update.
        position = listOf(longitude, latitude) // AWS requires [longitude,
 latitude]
    }

    val request = BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        updates = listOf(positionUpdate)
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.batchUpdateDevicePosition(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to track
 the location of devices.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
 Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
 */
suspend fun createTracker(trackerName: String): String {
    val trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest {
        description = "Created using the Kotlin SDK"
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        positionFiltering = PositionFiltering.TimeBased // Options: TimeBased,
 DistanceBased, AccuracyBased
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createTracker(trackerRequest)
        return response.trackerArn
    }
}

/**
 * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the geofence
 to
 * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
```

```
 */
suspend fun putGeofence(collectionName: String, geoId: String) {
    val geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry {
        polygon = listOf(
            listOf(
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
            ),
        )
    }

    val geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        this.geofenceId = geoId
        this.geometry = geofenceGeometry
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
 */
suspend fun createGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String): String {
    val collectionRequest = CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        return response.collectionArn
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
```

```
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
 * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which the
 API key will be associated
 * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created API key
 */
suspend fun createKey(keyName: String, mapArn: String): String {
    val keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions {
        allowActions = listOf("geo:GetMap*")
        allowResources = listOf(mapArn)
    }

    val request = CreateKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
        this.restrictions = keyRestrictions
        noExpiry = true
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createKey(request)
        return response.keyArn
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
 *
 * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
 * @return he Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
 */
suspend fun createMap(mapName: String): String {
    val configuration = MapConfiguration {
        style = "VectorEsriNavigation"
    }

    val mapRequest = CreateMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
        this.configuration = configuration
        description = "A map created using the Kotlin SDK"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createMap(mapRequest)
        return response.mapArn
```

```
    }
}

fun waitForInputToContinue(scanner: Scanner) {
    while (true) {
        println("")
        println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:")
        val input = scanner.nextLine()
        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("c", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else {
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }
}
```

Actions for Amazon Location using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Location actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Location Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use BatchUpdateDevicePosition with an AWS SDK
- Use CalculateRoute with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateGeofenceCollection with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateKey with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateMap with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateRouteCalculator with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteGeofenceCollection with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteKey with an AWS SDK

- Use DeleteMap with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteRouteCalculator with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use GetDevicePosition with an AWS SDK
- Use PutGeofence with an AWS SDK

Use `BatchUpdateDevicePosition` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `BatchUpdateDevicePosition`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
    * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while updating the device
position
    */
   public CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse>
updateDevicePosition(String trackerName, String deviceId) {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // Example: San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;

       DevicePositionUpdate positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate.builder()
           .deviceId(deviceId)
           .sampleTime(Instant.now()) // Timestamp of position update.
           .position(Arrays.asList(longitude, latitude)) // AWS requires
[longitude, latitude]
           .build();
```

```
        BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest request =
 BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .updates(positionUpdate)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse> futureResponse =
 getClient().batchUpdateDevicePosition(request);
        return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("The resource was not found: "
 + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Error updating device
 position: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchUpdateDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
```

```
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
const updateDevicePosParams = {
  TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
  Updates: [
    {
      DeviceId: `${data.inputs.deviceId}`,
      SampleTime: new Date(),
      Position: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
    },
  ],
};
export const main = async () => {
  try {
    const command = new BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand(updateDevicePosParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    //console.log("response ", response.Errors[0].Error);

    console.log(
      `Device with id ${data.inputs.deviceId} was successfully updated in the
 location tracking system. `,
      response,
    );
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see BatchUpdateDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
 * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
 */
suspend fun updateDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String) {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194

    val positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate {
        this.deviceId = deviceId
        sampleTime = aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant.now() // Timestamp of
 position update.
        position = listOf(longitude, latitude) // AWS requires [longitude,
 latitude]
    }

    val request = BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        updates = listOf(positionUpdate)
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.batchUpdateDevicePosition(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchUpdateDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CalculateRoute` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CalculateRoute`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Calculates the distance between two locations asynchronously.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the
route
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CalculateRouteResponse> calcDistanceAsync(String
routeCalcName) {
       // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
       List<Double> departurePosition = Arrays.asList(-122.3321, 47.6062);
       List<Double> arrivePosition = Arrays.asList(-123.1216, 49.2827);

       CalculateRouteRequest request = CalculateRouteRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .departurePosition(departurePosition)
           .destinationPosition(arrivePosition)
           .travelMode("Car") // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
           .distanceUnit("Kilometers") // Options: Meters, Kilometers, Miles
           .build();

       return getClient().calculateRoute(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to calculate route: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CalculateRoute in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  CalculateRouteCommand,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
  LocationClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const routeCalcParams = {
    CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
    DeparturePosition: [-122.3321, 47.6062],
    DestinationPosition: [-123.1216, 49.2827],
    TravelMode: "Car",
    DistanceUnit: "Kilometers",
  };
  try {
    const command = new CalculateRouteCommand(routeCalcParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
```

```
    console.log(
      "Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is : ",
      response.Summary.Distance,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
      );
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CalculateRoute in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Calculates the distance between two locations.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
 CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the
 route
 */
suspend fun calcDistance(routeCalcName: String): CalculateRouteResponse {
    // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
    val departurePosition = listOf(-122.3321, 47.6062)
    val arrivePosition = listOf(-123.1216, 49.2827)
```

```
    val request = CalculateRouteRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.departurePosition = departurePosition
        this.destinationPosition = arrivePosition
        this.travelMode = TravelMode.Car // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
        this.distanceUnit = DistanceUnit.Kilometers // Options: Meters,
 Kilometers, Miles
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.calculateRoute(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CalculateRoute in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateGeofenceCollection` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateGeofenceCollection`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new geofence collection.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createGeofenceCollection(String
 collectionName) {
        CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
 CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
```

```
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .build();

        return getClient().createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The geofence collection
 was not created due to ConflictException.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create geofence
 collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.collectionArn()); // Return only the
 ARN
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  ConflictException,
  CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  LocationClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
```

```
const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const geoFenceCollParams = {
    CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand(geoFenceCollParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log(
      "Collection created. Collection name is: ",
      response.CollectionName,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
      console.error("A conflict occurred. Exiting program.");
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
 */
suspend fun createGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String): String {
```

```
    val collectionRequest = CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        return response.collectionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateKey` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateKey`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
     * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which
the API key will be associated
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon
Resource Name (ARN) of the created API key,
     * or {@code null} if the operation failed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createKey(String keyName, String mapArn) {
        ApiKeyRestrictions keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions.builder()
            .allowActions("geo:GetMap*")
```

```
            .allowResources(mapArn)
            .build();

        CreateKeyRequest request = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .restrictions(keyRestrictions)
            .noExpiry(true)
            .build();

        return getClient().createKey(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof AccessDeniedException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The request was denied
because of insufficient access or permissions.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create API key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.keyArn()); // This will never return
null if the response reaches here
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
 *
```

```
 * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
 * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which the
 API key will be associated
 * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created API key
 */
suspend fun createKey(keyName: String, mapArn: String): String {
    val keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions {
        allowActions = listOf("geo:GetMap*")
        allowResources = listOf(mapArn)
    }

    val request = CreateKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
        this.restrictions = keyRestrictions
        noExpiry = true
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createKey(request)
        return response.keyArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateMap` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateMap`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while creating the map,
such as exceeding the service quota
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMap(String mapName) {
        MapConfiguration configuration = MapConfiguration.builder()
            .style("VectorEsriNavigation")
            .build();

        CreateMapRequest mapRequest = CreateMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .configuration(configuration)
            .description("A map created using the Java V2 API")
            .build();

        return getClient().createMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.mapArn()); // Return the map ARN
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMap in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { CreateMapCommand, LocationClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const CreateMapCommandInput = {
    MapName: `${data.inputs.mapName}`,
    Configuration: { style: "VectorEsriNavigation" },
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new CreateMapCommand(CreateMapCommandInput);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Map created. Map ARN is : ", response.MapArn);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error creating map: ", error);
    throw error;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateMap in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
 *
 * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
 * @return he Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
 */
suspend fun createMap(mapName: String): String {
    val configuration = MapConfiguration {
        style = "VectorEsriNavigation"
    }

    val mapRequest = CreateMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
        this.configuration = configuration
        description = "A map created using the Kotlin SDK"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createMap(mapRequest)
        return response.mapArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateMap in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateRouteCalculator` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRouteCalculator`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateRouteCalculatorResponse>
createRouteCalculator(String routeCalcName) {
       String dataSource = "Esri"; // or "Here"
       CreateRouteCalculatorRequest request =
CreateRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .dataSource(dataSource)
           .build();

       return getClient().createRouteCalculator(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("A conflict error occurred:
" + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to create route
calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  ConflictException,
  CreateRouteCalculatorCommand,
  LocationClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const routeCalcParams = {
    CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
    DataSource: "Esri",
  };
  try {
    const command = new CreateRouteCalculatorCommand(routeCalcParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);

    console.log(
      "Route calculator created successfully. Calculator name is ",
      response.CalculatorName,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
      console.error(
        `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
      );
      return;
    }
  }
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
 */
suspend fun createRouteCalculator(routeCalcName: String):
 CreateRouteCalculatorResponse {
    val dataSource = "Esri"

    val request = CreateRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.dataSource = dataSource
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.createRouteCalculator(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateTracker` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTracker`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to
track the location of devices.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createTracker(String trackerName) {
       CreateTrackerRequest trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest.builder()
           .description("Created using the Java V2 SDK")
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .positionFiltering("TimeBased") // Options: TimeBased, DistanceBased,
AccuracyBased
           .build();

       return getClient().createTracker(trackerRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("Conflict occurred while
creating tracker: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Error creating tracker: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           })
           .thenApply(CreateTrackerResponse::trackerArn); // Return only the
tracker ARN
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { CreateTrackerCommand, LocationClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const createTrackerParams = {
    TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new CreateTrackerCommand(createTrackerParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    //state.trackerName - response.TrackerName;
    console.log("Tracker created. Tracker name is : ", response.TrackerName);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error creating map: ", error);
    throw error;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateTracker in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to track
 the location of devices.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
 Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
 */
suspend fun createTracker(trackerName: String): String {
    val trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest {
        description = "Created using the Kotlin SDK"
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        positionFiltering = PositionFiltering.TimeBased // Options: TimeBased,
 DistanceBased, AccuracyBased
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createTracker(trackerRequest)
        return response.trackerArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTracker in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteGeofenceCollection` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteGeofenceCollection`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a geofence collection asynchronously.
    *
    * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence
collection has been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteGeofenceCollectionAsync(String
collectionName) {
       DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
           .collectionName(collectionName)
           .build();

       return getClient().deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The requested geofence
collection was not found.", cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
               logger.info("The geofence collection {} was deleted.",
collectionName);
           })
           .thenApply(response -> null);
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteGeofenceCollParams = {
    CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand(
      deleteGeofenceCollParams,
    );
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Collection deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `${data.inputs.collectionName} Geofence collection not found.`,
      );
      return;
    }
```

```
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence
 collection has been deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String) {
    val collectionRequest = DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The geofence collection $collectionName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteKey` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteKey`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if the key was not found or if an error
occurred during the deletion process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKey(String keyName) {
        DeleteKeyRequest keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteKey(keyRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The key was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The key {} was deleted.", keyName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteKey(keyName: String) {
    val keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteKey(keyRequest)
        println("The key $keyName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteMap` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMap`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a map with the specified name.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the map deletion
is successful, or throws a {@link CompletionException} if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteMap(String mapName) {
        DeleteMapRequest mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The map was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The map {} was deleted.", mapName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMap in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteMapCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteMapParams = {
    MapName: `${data.inputs.mapName}`,
  };
  try {
    const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
    const command = new DeleteMapCommand(deleteMapParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Map deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(`${data.inputs.mapName} map not found.`);
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMap in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteMap(mapName: String) {
    val mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteMap(mapRequest)
        println("The map $mapName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMap in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteRouteCalculator` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteRouteCalculator`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
    *
    * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the route
calculator has been deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the route
calculator
    *                             - If the route calculator was not found, a
{@link ResourceNotFoundException} will be thrown
    *                             - If any other error occurs, a generic {@link
CompletionException} will be thrown
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteRouteCalculator(String calcName) {
       DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest calculatorRequest =
DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(calcName)
           .build();

       return getClient().deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The route calculator was
not found.", cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the route
calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
               logger.info("The route calculator {} was deleted.", calcName);
```

```
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteRouteCalculatorParams = {
    CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
  };
  try {
    const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
    const command = new DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand(
      deleteRouteCalculatorParams,
    );
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Route calculator deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `${data.inputs.calculatorName} route calculator not found.`,
```

```
      );
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
 * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteRouteCalculator(calcName: String) {
    val calculatorRequest = DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = calcName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
        println("The route calculator $calcName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteTracker` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTracker`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tracker has
been deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the tracker
    *                             - if the tracker was not found, a {@link
ResourceNotFoundException} is thrown wrapped in the CompletionException
    *                             - if any other error occurs, a generic
CompletionException is thrown with the error message
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteTracker(String trackerName) {
       DeleteTrackerRequest trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest.builder()
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .build();

       return getClient().deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The tracker was not
found.", cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the tracker:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
               logger.info("The tracker {} was deleted.", trackerName);
           })
           .thenApply(response -> null); // Ensures CompletableFuture<Void>
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteTrackerCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteTrackerParams = {
    TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
  };
  try {
    const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
    const command = new DeleteTrackerCommand(deleteTrackerParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Tracker deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(`${data.inputs.trackerName} tracker not found.`);
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTracker in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteTracker(trackerName: String) {
    val trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
    }

    LocationClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
        println("The tracker $trackerName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTracker in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetDevicePosition` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetDevicePosition`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
    *
    * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
    * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
    * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error fetching the device
position.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetDevicePositionResponse> getDevicePosition(String
trackerName, String deviceId) {
       GetDevicePositionRequest request = GetDevicePositionRequest.builder()
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .deviceId(deviceId)
           .build();

       return getClient().getDevicePosition(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Error fetching device
position: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  GetDevicePositionCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  const deviceId = `${data.inputs.deviceId}`;
  const trackerName = `${data.inputs.trackerName}`;

  const devicePositionParams = {
    DeviceId: deviceId,
    TrackerName: trackerName,
  };
  try {
    const command = new GetDevicePositionCommand(devicePositionParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    //state.position = response.position;
    console.log("Successfully fetched device position: ", response);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("Error ", error);
    /*  if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `"The resource was not found: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
      );
    } else {
```

```
      `An unexpected error error occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`;
    }
    return;*/
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
 *
 * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
 * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
 */
suspend fun getDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String):
 GetDevicePositionResponse {
    val request = GetDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        this.deviceId = deviceId
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.getDevicePosition(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use PutGeofence with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use PutGeofence.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
    *
    * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the
geofence to
    * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutGeofenceResponse> putGeofence(String
collectionName, String geoId) {
       // Define the geofence geometry (polygon).
       GeofenceGeometry geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry.builder()
           .polygon(List.of(
               List.of(
                   List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101), // First point
                   List.of(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                   List.of(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                   List.of(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                   List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101) // Closing the polygon
               )
           ))
           .build();

       PutGeofenceRequest geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest.builder()
           .collectionName(collectionName) // Specify the collection.
           .geofenceId(geoId) // Unique ID for the geofence.
           .geometry(geofenceGeometry)
           .build();
```

```
        return getClient().putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Validation error while
 creating geofence: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error creating geofence: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutGeofence in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  PutGeofenceCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ValidationException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
export const main = async () => {
  const geoFenceGeoParams = {
    CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
    GeofenceId: `${data.inputs.geoId}`,
    Geometry: {
```

```
      Polygon: [
        [
          [-122.3381, 47.6101],
          [-122.3281, 47.6101],
          [-122.3281, 47.6201],
          [-122.3381, 47.6201],
          [-122.3381, 47.6101],
        ],
      ],
    },
  };
  try {
    const command = new PutGeofenceCommand(geoFenceGeoParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("GeoFence created. GeoFence ID is: ", response.GeofenceId);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${error} \n Exiting
 program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see PutGeofence in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
 *
```

```
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the geofence
 to
 * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
 */
suspend fun putGeofence(collectionName: String, geoId: String) {
    val geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry {
        polygon = listOf(
            listOf(
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
            ),
        )
    }

    val geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        this.geofenceId = geoId
        this.geometry = geofenceGeometry
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutGeofence in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Location Service Places with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Location Service Places Developer Guide** – More information about Location Service Places.

- **Location Service Places API Reference** – Details about all available Location Service Places actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs
    - Use ReverseGeocode with an AWS SDK
    - Use SearchNearby with an AWS SDK
    - Use SearchText with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Location Service Places with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs
  - Use ReverseGeocode with an AWS SDK
  - Use SearchNearby with an AWS SDK
  - Use SearchText with an AWS SDK

Actions for Location Service Places using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Location Service Places actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Location Service Places API Reference.

Examples

- Use ReverseGeocode with an AWS SDK
- Use SearchNearby with an AWS SDK
- Use SearchText with an AWS SDK

Use `ReverseGeocode` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ReverseGeocode`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
    * Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates
(latitude and longitude) to a human-readable address.
    * This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input,
and prints the resulting address.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> reverseGeocode() {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;
       logger.info("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194");

       // AWS expects [longitude, latitude].
       List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);
       ReverseGeocodeRequest request = ReverseGeocodeRequest.builder()
           .queryPosition(queryPosition)
           .build();
       CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> futureResponse =
           getGeoPlacesClient().reverseGeocode(request);

       return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
```

```
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred: "
 + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
                throw new CompletionException("Error performing reverse
 geocoding", exception);
            }

            response.resultItems().forEach(result ->
                logger.info("The address is: " + result.address().label())
            );
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ReverseGeocode in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `SearchNearby` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `SearchNearby`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Performs a nearby places search based on the provided geographic
 coordinates (latitude and longitude).
     * The method sends an asynchronous request to search for places within a 1-
kilometer radius of the specified location.
     * The results are processed and printed once the search completes
 successfully.
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<SearchNearbyResponse> searchNearBy() {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        // Set up the request for searching nearby places.
        SearchNearbyRequest request = SearchNearbyRequest.builder()
            .queryPosition(queryPosition)  // Set the position
            .queryRadius(1000L)  // Radius in meters (1000 meters = 1 km).
            .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchNearby(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error
occurred: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place
search", exception);
                }

                // Process the response and print the results.
                response.resultItems().forEach(result -> {
                    logger.info("Place Name: " + result.placeType().name());
                    logger.info("Address: " + result.address().label());
                    logger.info("Distance: " + result.distance() + " meters");
                    logger.info("-------------------------");
                });
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchNearby in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `SearchText` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `SearchText`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the
detailed information of the first result.
     *
     * @param searchQuery the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
coffee shop)
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> searchText(String searchQuery) {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        SearchTextRequest request = SearchTextRequest.builder()
                .queryText(searchQuery)
                .biasPosition(queryPosition)
                .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchText(request)
                .thenCompose(response -> {
                    if (response.resultItems().isEmpty()) {
                        logger.info("No places found.");
                        return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                    }

                    // Get the first place ID
                    String placeId = response.resultItems().get(0).placeId();
                    logger.info("Found Place with id: " + placeId);

                    // Fetch detailed info using getPlace
                    GetPlaceRequest getPlaceRequest = GetPlaceRequest.builder()
                            .placeId(placeId)
```

```
                            .build();

                    return getGeoPlacesClient().getPlace(getPlaceRequest)
                            .thenAccept(placeResponse -> {
                                logger.info("Detailed Place Information:");
                                logger.info("Name: " +
 placeResponse.placeType().name());
                                logger.info("Address: " +
 placeResponse.address().label());

                                if (placeResponse.foodTypes() != null && !
placeResponse.foodTypes().isEmpty()) {
                                    logger.info("Food Types:");
                                    placeResponse.foodTypes().forEach(foodType ->
 {
                                        logger.info("  - " + foodType);
                                    });
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("No food types available.");
                                }
                                logger.info("-------------------------");
                            });
                })
                .exceptionally(exception -> {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error
 occurred: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place
 search", exception);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchText in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Lookout for Vision with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Lookout for Vision Developer Guide** – More information about Lookout for Vision.
- **Lookout for Vision API Reference** – Details about all available Lookout for Vision actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Lookout for Vision

The following code example shows how to get started using Lookout for Vision.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
This example shows how to list your Amazon Lookout for Vision projects.
```

```
If you haven't previously created a project in the current AWS Region,
the response is an empty list, however it confirms that you can call the
Lookout for Vision API.
"""
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import boto3


class Hello:
    """Hello class for Amazon Lookout for Vision"""

    @staticmethod
    def list_projects(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Lists information about the projects that are in your AWS account
        and in the current AWS Region.

        : param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            for project in response["Projects"]:
                print("Project: " + project["ProjectName"])
                print("ARN: " + project["ProjectArn"])
                print()
            print("Done!")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't list projects. \n{err}")
            raise


def main():
    session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")
    lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")

    Hello.list_projects(lookoutvision_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Lookout for Vision
  - Actions for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateProject with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDataset with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteProject with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeDataset with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use DetectAnomalies with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListModels with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListProjects with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use StopModel with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs
  - Create a Lookout for Vision manifest file using an AWS SDK
  - Create, train, and start a Lookout for Vision model using an AWS SDK
  - Export the datasets from a Lookout for Vision project using an AWS SDK
  - Find a Lookout for Vision project with a specific tag using an AWS SDK
  - List Lookout for Vision models that are currently hosted using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Lookout for Vision with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Lookout for Vision
- Actions for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs

- Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateModel with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateProject with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteModel with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteProject with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeModel with an AWS SDK
- Use DetectAnomalies with an AWS SDK
- Use ListModels with an AWS SDK
- Use ListProjects with an AWS SDK
- Use StartModel with an AWS SDK
- Use StopModel with an AWS SDK

Hello Lookout for Vision

The following code example shows how to get started using Lookout for Vision.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
This example shows how to list your Amazon Lookout for Vision projects.
If you haven't previously created a project in the current AWS Region,
the response is an empty list, however it confirms that you can call the
Lookout for Vision API.
"""
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
import boto3


class Hello:
    """Hello class for Amazon Lookout for Vision"""

    @staticmethod
    def list_projects(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Lists information about the projects that are in your AWS account
        and in the current AWS Region.

        : param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            for project in response["Projects"]:
                print("Project: " + project["ProjectName"])
                print("ARN: " + project["ProjectArn"])
                print()
            print("Done!")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't list projects. \n{err}")
            raise


def main():
    session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")
    lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")

    Hello.list_projects(lookoutvision_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Actions for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Lookout for Vision actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Lookout for Vision API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Lookout for Vision API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateModel with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateProject with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteModel with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteProject with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeModel with an AWS SDK
- Use DetectAnomalies with an AWS SDK
- Use ListModels with an AWS SDK
- Use ListProjects with an AWS SDK
- Use StartModel with an AWS SDK
- Use StopModel with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateDataset` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDataset`.

For more information, see Creating your dataset.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def create_dataset(lookoutvision_client, project_name, manifest_file,
 dataset_type):
        """
        Creates a new Lookout for Vision dataset

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project in which you want to
                             create a dataset.
        :param bucket: The bucket that contains the manifest file.
        :param manifest_file: The path and name of the manifest file.
        :param dataset_type: The type of the dataset (train or test).
        """
        try:
            bucket, key = manifest_file.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
            logger.info("Creating %s dataset type...", dataset_type)
            dataset = {
                "GroundTruthManifest": {"S3Object": {"Bucket": bucket, "Key":
 key}}
            }
            response = lookoutvision_client.create_dataset(
                ProjectName=project_name,
                DatasetType=dataset_type,
                DatasetSource=dataset,
            )
            logger.info("Dataset Status: %s", response["DatasetMetadata"]
["Status"])
            logger.info(
                "Dataset Status Message: %s",
                response["DatasetMetadata"]["StatusMessage"],
```

```
            )
            logger.info("Dataset Type: %s", response["DatasetMetadata"]
["DatasetType"])

            # Wait until either created or failed.
            finished = False
            status = ""
            dataset_description = {}
            while finished is False:
                dataset_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_dataset(
                    ProjectName=project_name, DatasetType=dataset_type
                )
                status = dataset_description["DatasetDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS":
                    logger.info("Dataset creation in progress...")
                    time.sleep(2)
                elif status == "CREATE_COMPLETE":
                    logger.info("Dataset created.")
                    finished = True
                else:
                    logger.info(
                        "Dataset creation failed: %s",
                        dataset_description["DatasetDescription"]
["StatusMessage"],
                    )
                    finished = True

            if status != "CREATE_COMPLETE":
                message = dataset_description["DatasetDescription"]
["StatusMessage"]
                logger.exception("Couldn't create dataset: %s", message)
                raise Exception(f"Couldn't create dataset: {message}")

        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Service error: Couldn't create dataset.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateModel`.

For more information, see Training your model.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def create_model(
        lookoutvision_client,
        project_name,
        training_results,
        tag_key=None,
        tag_key_value=None,
    ):
        """
        Creates a version of a Lookout for Vision model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project in which you want to create
 a
                             model.
        :param training_results: The Amazon S3 location where training results
 are stored.
        :param tag_key: The key for a tag to add to the model.
        :param tag_key_value - A value associated with the tag_key.
        return: The model status and version.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Training model...")
            output_bucket, output_folder = training_results.replace("s3://",
 "").split(
```

```
                "/", 1
            )
            output_config = {
                "S3Location": {"Bucket": output_bucket, "Prefix": output_folder}
            }
            tags = []
            if tag_key is not None:
                tags = [{"Key": tag_key, "Value": tag_key_value}]

            response = lookoutvision_client.create_model(
                ProjectName=project_name, OutputConfig=output_config, Tags=tags
            )

            logger.info("ARN: %s", response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelArn"])
            logger.info("Version: %s", response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelVersion"])
            logger.info("Started training...")

            print("Training started. Training might take several hours to
complete.")

            # Wait until training completes.
            finished = False
            status = "UNKNOWN"
            while finished is False:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project_name,
                    ModelVersion=response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelVersion"],
                )
                status = model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "TRAINING":
                    logger.info("Model training in progress...")
                    time.sleep(600)
                    continue

                if status == "TRAINED":
                    logger.info("Model was successfully trained.")
                else:
                    logger.info(
                        "Model training failed: %s ",
                        model_description["ModelDescription"]["StatusMessage"],
                    )
                finished = True
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't train model.")
            raise
        else:
            return status, response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelVersion"]
```

- For API details, see CreateModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateProject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateProject`.

For more information, see Creating your project.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Projects:

    @staticmethod
    def create_project(lookoutvision_client, project_name):
        """
        Creates a new Lookout for Vision project.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param  project_name: The name for the new project.
        :return project_arn: The ARN of the new project.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Creating project: %s", project_name)
            response =
 lookoutvision_client.create_project(ProjectName=project_name)
            project_arn = response["ProjectMetadata"]["ProjectArn"]
```

```
            logger.info("project ARN: %s", project_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create project %s.", project_name)
            raise
        else:
            return project_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateProject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDataset` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDataset`.

For more information, see Deleting a dataset.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def delete_dataset(lookoutvision_client, project_name, dataset_type):
        """
        Deletes a Lookout for Vision dataset

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the dataset
 that
                             you want to delete.
        :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that you
                             want to delete.
        """
```

```
        try:
            logger.info(
                "Deleting the %s dataset for project %s.", dataset_type,
 project_name
            )
            lookoutvision_client.delete_dataset(
                ProjectName=project_name, DatasetType=dataset_type
            )
            logger.info("Dataset deleted.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Service error: Couldn't delete dataset.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDataset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteModel`.

For more information, see Deleting a model.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def delete_model(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version):
        """
        Deletes a Lookout for Vision model. The model must first be stopped and
 can't
        be in training.
```

```
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the desired
model.
        :param model_version: The version of the model that you want to delete.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Deleting model: %s", model_version)
            lookoutvision_client.delete_model(
                ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
            )

            model_exists = True
            while model_exists:
                response =
lookoutvision_client.list_models(ProjectName=project_name)

                model_exists = False
                for model in response["Models"]:
                    if model["ModelVersion"] == model_version:
                        model_exists = True

                if model_exists is False:
                    logger.info("Model deleted")
                else:
                    logger.info("Model is being deleted...")
                    time.sleep(2)

            logger.info("Deleted Model: %s", model_version)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete model.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteProject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteProject`.

For more information, see Deleting a project.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Projects:

    @staticmethod
    def delete_project(lookoutvision_client, project_name):
        """
        Deletes a Lookout for Vision Model

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that you want to delete.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Deleting project: %s", project_name)
            response =
 lookoutvision_client.delete_project(ProjectName=project_name)
            logger.info("Deleted project ARN: %s ", response["ProjectArn"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete project %s.", project_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteProject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDataset` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDataset`.

For more information, see Viewing your dataset.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def describe_dataset(lookoutvision_client, project_name, dataset_type):
        """
        Gets information about a Lookout for Vision dataset.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the dataset
 that
                             you want to describe.
        :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that you
 want
                             to describe.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.describe_dataset(
                ProjectName=project_name, DatasetType=dataset_type
            )
            print(f"Name: {response['DatasetDescription']['ProjectName']}")
            print(f"Type: {response['DatasetDescription']['DatasetType']}")
            print(f"Status: {response['DatasetDescription']['Status']}")
            print(f"Message: {response['DatasetDescription']['StatusMessage']}")
            print(f"Images: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Total']}")
            print(f"Labeled: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Labeled']}")
            print(f"Normal: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Normal']}")
            print(f"Anomaly: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Anomaly']}")
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Service error: problem listing datasets.")
            raise
        print("Done.")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDataset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeModel`.

For more information, see Viewing your models.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def describe_model(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version):
        """
        Shows the performance metrics for a trained model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Amazon Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the desired
 model.
        :param model_version: The version of the model.
        """
        response = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
            ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
        )
        model_description = response["ModelDescription"]
        print(f"\tModel version: {model_description['ModelVersion']}")
```

```
        print(f"\tARN: {model_description['ModelArn']}")
        if "Description" in model_description:
            print(f"\tDescription: {model_description['Description']}")
        print(f"\tStatus: {model_description['Status']}")
        print(f"\tMessage: {model_description['StatusMessage']}")
        print(f"\tCreated: {str(model_description['CreationTimestamp'])}")

        if model_description["Status"] in ("TRAINED", "HOSTED"):
            training_start = model_description["CreationTimestamp"]
            training_end = model_description["EvaluationEndTimestamp"]
            duration = training_end - training_start
            print(f"\tTraining duration: {duration}")

            print("\n\tPerformance metrics\n\t-------------------")
            print(f"\tRecall: {model_description['Performance']['Recall']}")
            print(f"\tPrecision: {model_description['Performance']
['Precision']}")
            print(f"\tF1: {model_description['Performance']['F1Score']}")

            training_output_bucket = model_description["OutputConfig"]
["S3Location"][
                "Bucket"
            ]
            prefix = model_description["OutputConfig"]["S3Location"]["Prefix"]
            print(f"\tTraining output: s3://{training_output_bucket}/{prefix}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectAnomalies` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DetectAnomalies`.

For more information, see Detecting anomalies in an image.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Inference:
    """
    Shows how to detect anomalies in an image using a trained Lookout for Vision
 model.
    """

    @staticmethod
    def detect_anomalies(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version,
 photo):
        """
        Calls DetectAnomalies using the supplied project, model version, and
 image.
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
        :param project: The project that contains the model that you want to use.
        :param model_version: The version of the model that you want to use.
        :param photo: The photo that you want to analyze.
        :return: The DetectAnomalyResult object that contains the analysis
 results.
        """

        image_type = imghdr.what(photo)
        if image_type == "jpeg":
            content_type = "image/jpeg"
        elif image_type == "png":
            content_type = "image/png"
        else:
            logger.info("Image type not valid for %s", photo)
            raise ValueError(
                f"File format not valid. Supply a jpeg or png format file:
 {photo}"
            )
```

```
        # Get images bytes for call to detect_anomalies.
        with open(photo, "rb") as image:
            response = lookoutvision_client.detect_anomalies(
                ProjectName=project_name,
                ContentType=content_type,
                Body=image.read(),
                ModelVersion=model_version,
            )

        return response["DetectAnomalyResult"]

    @staticmethod
    def download_from_s3(s3_resource, photo):
        """
        Downloads an image from an S3 bucket.

        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param photo: The Amazon S3 path of a photo to download.
        return: The local path to the downloaded file.
        """
        try:
            bucket, key = photo.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
            local_file = os.path.basename(photo)
        except ValueError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get S3 info for %s", photo)
            raise

        try:
            logger.info("Downloading %s", photo)
            s3_resource.Bucket(bucket).download_file(key, local_file)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't download %s from S3.", photo)
            raise

        return local_file

    @staticmethod
    def reject_on_classification(image, prediction, confidence_limit):
        """
        Returns True if the anomaly confidence is greater than or equal to
        the supplied confidence limit.
        :param image: The name of the image file that was analyzed.
        :param prediction: The DetectAnomalyResult object returned from
DetectAnomalies.
```

```
        :param confidence_limit: The minimum acceptable confidence (float 0 - 1).
        :return: True if the error condition indicates an anomaly, otherwise
False.
        """

        reject = False

        logger.info("Checking classification for %s", image)

        if prediction["IsAnomalous"] and prediction["Confidence"] >=
confidence_limit:
            reject = True
            reject_info = (
                f"Rejected: Anomaly confidence ({prediction['Confidence']:.2%})
is greater"
                f" than limit ({confidence_limit:.2%})"
            )
            logger.info("%s", reject_info)

        if not reject:
            logger.info("No anomalies found.")
        return reject

    @staticmethod
    def reject_on_anomaly_types(
        image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_types_limit
    ):
        """
        Checks if the number of anomaly types is greater than the anomaly types
        limit and if the prediction confidence is greater than the confidence
limit.
        :param image: The name of the image file that was analyzed.
        :param prediction: The DetectAnomalyResult object returned from
DetectAnomalies.
        :param confidence: The minimum acceptable confidence (float 0 - 1).
        :param anomaly_types_limit: The maximum number of allowable anomaly types
(int).
        :return: True if the error condition indicates an anomaly, otherwise
False.
        """

        logger.info("Checking number of anomaly types for %s", image)

        reject = False
```

```
        if prediction["IsAnomalous"] and prediction["Confidence"] >=
confidence_limit:
            anomaly_types = {
                anomaly["Name"]
                for anomaly in prediction["Anomalies"]
                if anomaly["Name"] != "background"
            }

            if len(anomaly_types) > anomaly_types_limit:
                reject = True
                reject_info = (
                    f"Rejected: Anomaly confidence
({prediction['Confidence']:.2%}) "
                    f"is greater than limit ({confidence_limit:.2%}) and "
                    f"the number of anomaly types ({len(anomaly_types)-1}) is "
                    f"greater than the limit ({anomaly_types_limit})"
                )

                logger.info("%s", reject_info)

        if not reject:
            logger.info("No anomalies found.")
        return reject

    @staticmethod
    def reject_on_coverage(
        image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_label, coverage_limit
    ):
        """
        Checks if the coverage area of an anomaly is greater than the coverage
limit and if
        the prediction confidence is greater than the confidence limit.
        :param image: The name of the image file that was analyzed.
        :param prediction: The DetectAnomalyResult object returned from
DetectAnomalies.
        :param confidence_limit: The minimum acceptable confidence (float 0-1).
        :anomaly_label: The anomaly label for the type of anomaly that you want
to check.
        :coverage_limit: The maximum acceptable percentage coverage of an anomaly
(float 0-1).
        :return: True if the error condition indicates an anomaly, otherwise
False.
        """
```

```
        reject = False

        logger.info("Checking coverage for %s", image)

        if prediction["IsAnomalous"] and prediction["Confidence"] >=
 confidence_limit:
            for anomaly in prediction["Anomalies"]:
                if anomaly["Name"] == anomaly_label and anomaly["PixelAnomaly"][
                    "TotalPercentageArea"
                ] > (coverage_limit):
                    reject = True
                    reject_info = (
                        f"Rejected: Anomaly confidence
 ({prediction['Confidence']:.2%}) "
                        f"is greater than limit ({confidence_limit:.2%}) and
 {anomaly['Name']} "
                        f"coverage ({anomaly['PixelAnomaly']
['TotalPercentageArea']:.2%}) "
                        f"is greater than limit ({coverage_limit:.2%})"
                    )

                    logger.info("%s", reject_info)

        if not reject:
            logger.info("No anomalies found.")

        return reject

    @staticmethod
    def analyze_image(lookoutvision_client, image, config):
        """
        Analyzes an image with an Amazon Lookout for Vision model. Also
        runs a series of checks to determine if the contents of an image
        should be rejected.
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
        param image: A local image that you want to analyze.
        param config: Configuration information for the model and reject
        limits.
        """

        project = config["project"]
        model_version = config["model_version"]
        confidence_limit = config["confidence_limit"]
```

```
        coverage_limit = config["coverage_limit"]
        anomaly_types_limit = config["anomaly_types_limit"]
        anomaly_label = config["anomaly_label"]

        # Get analysis results.
        print(f"Analyzing {image}.")

        prediction = Inference.detect_anomalies(
            lookoutvision_client, project, model_version, image
        )

        anomalies = []

        reject = Inference.reject_on_classification(image, prediction,
 confidence_limit)

        if reject:
            anomalies.append("Classification: An anomaly was found.")

        reject = Inference.reject_on_coverage(
            image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_label, coverage_limit
        )

        if reject:
            anomalies.append("Coverage: Anomaly coverage too high.")

        reject = Inference.reject_on_anomaly_types(
            image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_types_limit
        )

        if reject:
            anomalies.append("Anomaly type count: Too many anomaly types found.")
            print()

        if len(anomalies) > 0:
            print(f"Anomalies found in {image}")
            for anomaly in anomalies:
                print(f"{anomaly}")
        else:
            print(f"No anomalies found in {image}")


def main():
    """
```

```
    Detects anomalies in an image file.
    """
    try:
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s:
%(message)s")

        parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
            description="Find anomalies with Amazon Lookout for Vision."
        )
        parser.add_argument(
            "image",
            help="The file that you want to analyze. Supply a local file path or
a "
            "path to an S3 object.",
        )
        parser.add_argument(
            "config",
            help=(
                "The configuration JSON file to use. "
                "See https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/blob/main/"
                "python/example_code/lookoutvision/README.md"
            ),
        )

        args = parser.parse_args()

        session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")

        lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")
        s3_resource = session.resource("s3")

        # Get configuration information.
        with open(args.config, encoding="utf-8") as config_file:
            config = json.load(config_file)

        # Download image if located in S3 bucket.
        if args.image.startswith("s3://"):
            image = Inference.download_from_s3(s3_resource, args.image)
        else:
            image = args.image

        Inference.analyze_image(lookoutvision_client, image, config)

        # Delete image, if downloaded from S3 bucket.
```

```
        if args.image.startswith("s3://"):
            os.remove(image)

    except ClientError as err:
        print(f"Service error: {err.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except FileNotFoundError as err:
        print(f"The supplied file couldn't be found: {err.filename}.")
    except ValueError as err:
        print(f"A value error occurred: {err}.")
    else:
        print("\nSuccessfully completed analysis.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DetectAnomalies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListModels` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListModels`.

For more information, see Viewing your models.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def describe_models(lookoutvision_client, project_name):
        """
        Gets information about all models in a Lookout for Vision project.
```

```
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that you want to use.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_models(ProjectName=project_name)
            print("Project: " + project_name)
            for model in response["Models"]:
                Models.describe_model(
                    lookoutvision_client, project_name, model["ModelVersion"]
                )
                print()
            print("Done...")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list models.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListProjects` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListProjects`.

For more information, see Viewing your projects.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Projects:

    @staticmethod
    def list_projects(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Lists information about the projects that are in in your AWS account
```

```
        and in the current AWS Region.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            for project in response["Projects"]:
                print("Project: " + project["ProjectName"])
                print("\tARN: " + project["ProjectArn"])
                print("\tCreated: " + str(["CreationTimestamp"]))
                print("Datasets")
                project_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_project(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
                )
                if not project_description["ProjectDescription"]["Datasets"]:
                    print("\tNo datasets")
                else:
                    for dataset in project_description["ProjectDescription"][
                        "Datasets"
                    ]:
                        print(f"\ttype: {dataset['DatasetType']}")
                        print(f"\tStatus: {dataset['StatusMessage']}")

                print("Models")
                response_models = lookoutvision_client.list_models(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
                )
                if not response_models["Models"]:
                    print("\tNo models")
                else:
                    for model in response_models["Models"]:
                        Models.describe_model(
                            lookoutvision_client,
                            project["ProjectName"],
                            model["ModelVersion"],
                        )


print("--------------------------------------------------------------\n")
            print("Done!")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Problem listing projects.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `StartModel`.

For more information, see Starting your model.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Hosting:

    @staticmethod
    def start_model(
        lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version, min_inference_units
    ):
        """
        Starts the hosting of a Lookout for Vision model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name:  The name of the project that contains the version
 of the
                              model that you want to start hosting.
        :param model_version: The version of the model that you want to start
 hosting.
        :param min_inference_units: The number of inference units to use for
 hosting.
        """
        try:
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Starting model version %s for project %s", model_version,
project_name
            )
            lookoutvision_client.start_model(
                ProjectName=project_name,
                ModelVersion=model_version,
                MinInferenceUnits=min_inference_units,
            )
            print("Starting hosting...")

            status = ""
            finished = False

            # Wait until hosted or failed.
            while finished is False:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
                )
                status = model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "STARTING_HOSTING":
                    logger.info("Host starting in progress...")
                    time.sleep(10)
                    continue

                if status == "HOSTED":
                    logger.info("Model is hosted and ready for use.")
                    finished = True
                    continue

                logger.info("Model hosting failed and the model can't be used.")
                finished = True

            if status != "HOSTED":
                logger.error("Error hosting model: %s", status)
                raise Exception(f"Error hosting model: {status}")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't host model.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StopModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `StopModel`.

For more information, see Stopping your model.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Hosting:

    @staticmethod
    def stop_model(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version):
        """
        Stops a running Lookout for Vision Model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the version of
                             the model that you want to stop hosting.
        :param model_version:  The version of the model that you want to stop
 hosting.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Stopping model version %s for %s", model_version,
 project_name)
            response = lookoutvision_client.stop_model(
                ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
            )
            logger.info("Stopping hosting...")

            status = response["Status"]
            finished = False

            # Wait until stopped or failed.
            while finished is False:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
```

```
                ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
            )
            status = model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"]

            if status == "STOPPING_HOSTING":
                logger.info("Host stopping in progress...")
                time.sleep(10)
                continue

            if status == "TRAINED":
                logger.info("Model is no longer hosted.")
                finished = True
                continue

            logger.info("Failed to stop model: %s ", status)
            finished = True

        if status != "TRAINED":
            logger.error("Error stopping model: %s", status)
            raise Exception(f"Error stopping model: {status}")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't stop hosting model.")
        raise
```

- For API details, see StopModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Lookout for Vision using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Lookout for Vision with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Lookout for Vision or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a Lookout for Vision manifest file using an AWS SDK

- Create, train, and start a Lookout for Vision model using an AWS SDK
- Export the datasets from a Lookout for Vision project using an AWS SDK
- Find a Lookout for Vision project with a specific tag using an AWS SDK
- List Lookout for Vision models that are currently hosted using an AWS SDK

Create a Lookout for Vision manifest file using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create a Lookout for Vision manifest file and upload it to Amazon S3.

For more information, see Creating a manifest file.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def create_manifest_file_s3(s3_resource, image_s3_path, manifest_s3_path):
        """
        Creates a manifest file and uploads to Amazon S3.

        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param image_s3_path: The Amazon S3 path to the images referenced by the
                              manifest file. The images must be in an Amazon S3
 bucket
                              with the following folder structure.
                                s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/<train or test>/
                                    normal/
                                    anomaly/
                              Place normal images in the normal folder and
 anomalous
                              images in the anomaly folder.
```

```
        :param manifest_s3_path: The Amazon S3 location in which to store the
created
                                 manifest file.
        """
        output_manifest_file = "temp.manifest"
        try:
            # Current date and time in manifest file format.
            dttm = datetime.now().strftime("%Y-%m-%dT%H:%M:%S.%f")

            # Get bucket and folder from image and manifest file paths.
            bucket, prefix = image_s3_path.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
            if prefix[-1] != "/":
                prefix += "/"
            manifest_bucket, manifest_prefix = manifest_s3_path.replace(
                "s3://", ""
            ).split("/", 1)

            with open(output_manifest_file, "w") as mfile:
                logger.info("Creating manifest file")
                src_bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(bucket)

                # Create JSON lines for anomalous images.
                for obj in src_bucket.objects.filter(
                    Prefix=prefix + "anomaly/", Delimiter="/"
                ):
                    image_path = f"s3://{src_bucket.name}/{obj.key}"
                    manifest = Datasets.create_json_line(image_path, "anomaly",
dttm)
                    mfile.write(json.dumps(manifest) + "\n")

                # Create json lines for normal images.
                for obj in src_bucket.objects.filter(
                    Prefix=prefix + "normal/", Delimiter="/"
                ):
                    image_path = f"s3://{src_bucket.name}/{obj.key}"
                    manifest = Datasets.create_json_line(image_path, "normal",
dttm)
                    mfile.write(json.dumps(manifest) + "\n")

            logger.info("Uploading manifest file to %s", manifest_s3_path)
            s3_resource.Bucket(manifest_bucket).upload_file(
                output_manifest_file, manifest_prefix
            )
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Error uploading manifest.")
            raise
        except Exception:
            logger.exception("Error uploading manifest.")
            raise
        else:
            logger.info("Completed manifest file creation and upload.")
        finally:
            try:
                os.remove(output_manifest_file)
            except FileNotFoundError:
                pass

    @staticmethod
    def create_json_line(image, class_name, dttm):
        """
        Creates a single JSON line for an image.

        :param image: The S3 location for the image.
        :param class_name: The class of the image (normal or anomaly)
        :param dttm: The date and time that the JSON is created.
        """

        label = 0
        if class_name == "normal":
            label = 0
        elif class_name == "anomaly":
            label = 1
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected label value: %s for %s", label, image)
            raise Exception(f"Unexpected label value: {label} for {image}")

        manifest = {
            "source-ref": image,
            "anomaly-label": label,
            "anomaly-label-metadata": {
                "confidence": 1,
                "job-name": "labeling-job/anomaly-label",
                "class-name": class_name,
                "human-annotated": "yes",
                "creation-date": dttm,
                "type": "groundtruth/image-classification",
            },
        }
```

```
        return manifest
```

Create, train, and start a Lookout for Vision model using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create, train, and start a Lookout for Vision model.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Creates and optionally starts an Amazon Lookout for Vision model using command line arguments. The example code creates a new project, training dataset, optional test dataset, and model. After model training is completed, you can use a provided script to try your model with an image.

This example requires a set of images to train its model. You can find example circuit board images on GitHub that you can use for training and testing. For details on how to copy these images to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket, see Prepare example images.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lookout for Vision

Export the datasets from a Lookout for Vision project using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to export the datasets from a Lookout for Vision project.

For more information, see Exporting datasets from a project (SDK).

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Purpose

Shows how to export the datasets (manifest files and images)
from an Amazon Lookout for Vision project to a new Amazon
S3 location.
"""

import argparse
import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def copy_file(s3_resource, source_file, destination_file):
    """
    Copies a file from a source Amazon S3 folder to a destination
    Amazon S3 folder.
    The destination can be in a different S3 bucket.
    :param s3: An Amazon S3 Boto3 resource.
    :param source_file: The Amazon S3 path to the source file.
    :param destination_file: The destination Amazon S3 path for
    the copy operation.
    """

    source_bucket, source_key = source_file.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
```

```
    destination_bucket, destination_key = destination_file.replace("s3://",
 "").split(
        "/", 1
    )

    try:
        bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(destination_bucket)
        dest_object = bucket.Object(destination_key)
        dest_object.copy_from(CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key":
 source_key})
        dest_object.wait_until_exists()
        logger.info("Copied %s to %s", source_file, destination_file)
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "404":
            error_message = (
                f"Failed to copy {source_file} to "
                f"{destination_file}. : {error.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )
            logger.warning(error_message)
            error.response["Error"]["Message"] = error_message
        raise


def upload_manifest_file(s3_resource, manifest_file, destination):
    """
    Uploads a manifest file to a destination Amazon S3 folder.
    :param s3: An Amazon S3 Boto3 resource.
    :param manifest_file: The manifest file that you want to upload.
    :destination: The Amazon S3 folder location to upload the manifest
    file to.
    """

    destination_bucket, destination_key = destination.replace("s3://",
 "").split("/", 1)

    bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(destination_bucket)

    put_data = open(manifest_file, "rb")
    obj = bucket.Object(destination_key + manifest_file)

    try:
        obj.put(Body=put_data)
        obj.wait_until_exists()
```

```
        logger.info("Put manifest file '%s' to bucket '%s'.", obj.key,
 obj.bucket_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't put manifest file '%s' to bucket '%s'.", obj.key,
 obj.bucket_name
        )
        raise
    finally:
        if getattr(put_data, "close", None):
            put_data.close()


def get_dataset_types(lookoutvision_client, project):
    """
    Determines the types of the datasets (train or test) in an
    Amazon Lookout for Vision project.
    :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
    :param project: The Lookout for Vision project that you want to check.
    :return: The dataset types in the project.
    """

    try:
        response = lookoutvision_client.describe_project(ProjectName=project)

        datasets = []

        for dataset in response["ProjectDescription"]["Datasets"]:
            if dataset["Status"] in ("CREATE_COMPLETE", "UPDATE_COMPLETE"):
                datasets.append(dataset["DatasetType"])
        return datasets

    except lookoutvision_client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException:
        logger.exception("Project %s not found.", project)
        raise


def process_json_line(s3_resource, entry, dataset_type, destination):
    """
    Creates a JSON line for a new manifest file, copies image and mask to
    destination.
    :param s3_resource: An Amazon S3 Boto3 resource.
    :param entry: A JSON line from the manifest file.
    :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that
```

```
    you want to create the manifest file for.
    :param destination: The destination Amazon S3 folder for the manifest
    file and dataset images.
    :return: A JSON line with details for the destination location.
    """
    entry_json = json.loads(entry)

    print(f"source: {entry_json['source-ref']}")

    # Use existing folder paths to ensure console added image names don't clash.
    bucket, key = entry_json["source-ref"].replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
    logger.info("Source location: %s/%s", bucket, key)

    destination_image_location = destination + dataset_type + "/images/" + key

    copy_file(s3_resource, entry_json["source-ref"], destination_image_location)

    # Update JSON for writing.
    entry_json["source-ref"] = destination_image_location

    if "anomaly-mask-ref" in entry_json:
        source_anomaly_ref = entry_json["anomaly-mask-ref"]
        mask_bucket, mask_key = source_anomaly_ref.replace("s3://",
 "").split("/", 1)

        destination_mask_location = destination + dataset_type + "/masks/" +
 mask_key
        entry_json["anomaly-mask-ref"] = destination_mask_location

        copy_file(s3_resource, source_anomaly_ref, entry_json["anomaly-mask-
ref"])

    return entry_json


def write_manifest_file(
    lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, project, dataset_type, destination
):
    """
    Creates a manifest file for a dataset. Copies the manifest file and
    dataset images (and masks, if present) to the specified Amazon S3
 destination.
    :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
    :param project: The Lookout for Vision project that you want to use.
```

```
    :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that
    you want to create the manifest file for.
    :param destination: The destination Amazon S3 folder for the manifest file
    and dataset images.
    """

    try:
        # Create a reusable Paginator
        paginator = lookoutvision_client.get_paginator("list_dataset_entries")

        # Create a PageIterator from the Paginator
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
            ProjectName=project,
            DatasetType=dataset_type,
            PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 100},
        )

        output_manifest_file = dataset_type + ".manifest"

        # Create manifest file then upload to Amazon S3 with images.
        with open(output_manifest_file, "w", encoding="utf-8") as manifest_file:
            for page in page_iterator:
                for entry in page["DatasetEntries"]:
                    try:
                        entry_json = process_json_line(
                            s3_resource, entry, dataset_type, destination
                        )

                        manifest_file.write(json.dumps(entry_json) + "\n")

                    except ClientError as error:
                        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "404":
                            print(error.response["Error"]["Message"])
                            print(f"Excluded JSON line: {entry}")
                        else:
                            raise
        upload_manifest_file(
            s3_resource, output_manifest_file, destination + "datasets/"
        )

    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Problem getting dataset_entries")
        raise
```

```
def export_datasets(lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, project, destination):
    """
    Exports the datasets from an Amazon Lookout for Vision project to a specified
    Amazon S3 destination.
    :param project: The Lookout for Vision project that you want to use.
    :param destination: The destination Amazon S3 folder for the exported
 datasets.
    """
    # Add trailing backslash, if missing.
    destination = destination if destination[-1] == "/" else destination + "/"

    print(f"Exporting project {project} datasets to {destination}.")

    # Get each dataset and export to destination.

    dataset_types = get_dataset_types(lookoutvision_client, project)
    for dataset in dataset_types:
        logger.info("Copying %s dataset to %s.", dataset, destination)

        write_manifest_file(
            lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, project, dataset, destination
        )

    print("Exported dataset locations")
    for dataset in dataset_types:
        print(f"   {dataset}: {destination}datasets/{dataset}.manifest")

    print("Done.")


def add_arguments(parser):
    """
    Adds command line arguments to the parser.
    :param parser: The command line parser.
    """

    parser.add_argument("project", help="The project that contains the dataset.")
    parser.add_argument("destination", help="The destination Amazon S3 folder.")


def main():
    """
    Exports the datasets from an Amazon Lookout for Vision project to a
```

```
    destination Amazon S3 location.
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(usage=argparse.SUPPRESS)
    add_arguments(parser)

    args = parser.parse_args()

    try:
        session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")
        lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")
        s3_resource = session.resource("s3")

        export_datasets(
            lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, args.project, args.destination
        )
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.exception(err)
        print(f"Failed: {format(err)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Find a Lookout for Vision project with a specific tag using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to find a Lookout for Vision project with a specific tag.

For more information, see Tagging models.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import argparse
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def find_tag(tags, key, value):
    """
    Finds a tag in the supplied list of tags.

    :param tags: A list of tags associated with a Lookout for Vision model.
    :param key: The tag to search for.
    :param value: The tag key value to search for.
    :return: True if the tag value exists, otherwise False.
    """

    found = False
    for tag in tags:
        if key == tag["Key"]:
            logger.info("\t\tMatch found for tag: %s value: %s.", key, value)
            found = True
            break
    return found


def find_tag_in_projects(lookoutvision_client, key, value):
    """
    Finds Lookout for Vision models tagged with the supplied key and value.

    :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
    :param key: The tag key to find.
    :param value: The value of the tag that you want to find.
    return: A list of matching model versions (and model projects) that were
 found.
    """
    try:
        found_tags = []
        found = False
        projects = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
```

```
        # Iterate through each project and models within a project.
        for project in projects["Projects"]:
            logger.info("Searching project: %s ...", project["ProjectName"])

            response_models = lookoutvision_client.list_models(
                ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
            )
            for model in response_models["Models"]:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"],
                    ModelVersion=model["ModelVersion"],
                )
                tags = lookoutvision_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                    ResourceArn=model_description["ModelDescription"]["ModelArn"]
                )

                logger.info(
                    "\tSearching model: %s for tag: %s value: %s.",
                    model_description["ModelDescription"]["ModelArn"],
                    key,
                    value,
                )
                if find_tag(tags["Tags"], key, value) is True:
                    found = True
                    logger.info(
                        "\t\tMATCH: Project: %s: model version %s",
                        project["ProjectName"],
                        model_description["ModelDescription"]["ModelVersion"],
                    )
                    found_tags.append(
                        {
                            "Project": project["ProjectName"],
                            "ModelVersion": model_description["ModelDescription"]
[
                                "ModelVersion"
                            ],
                        }
                    )
        if found is False:
            logger.info("No match for tag %s with value %s.", key, value)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Problem finding tags.")
        raise
    else:
```

```
        return found_tags


def main():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(usage=argparse.SUPPRESS)
    parser.add_argument("tag", help="The tag that you want to find.")
    parser.add_argument("value", help="The tag value that you want to find.")
    args = parser.parse_args()
    key = args.tag
    value = args.value

    session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")

    lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")

    print(f"Searching your models for tag: {key} with value: {value}.")
    tagged_models = find_tag_in_projects(lookoutvision_client, key, value)

    print("Matched models\n--------------")
    if len(tagged_models) > 0:
        for model in tagged_models:
            print(f"Project: {model['Project']}. model version:
{model['ModelVersion']}")
    else:
        print("No matches found.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

List Lookout for Vision models that are currently hosted using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to list Lookout for Vision models that are currently hosted.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Hosting:

    @staticmethod
    def list_hosted(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Displays a list of models in your account that are currently hosted.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            hosted = 0
            print("Hosted models\n-------------")

            for project in response["Projects"]:
                response_models = lookoutvision_client.list_models(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
                )

                for model in response_models["Models"]:
                    model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                        ProjectName=project["ProjectName"],
                        ModelVersion=model["ModelVersion"],
                    )

                    if model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"] ==
 "HOSTED":
                        print(
                            f"Project: {project['ProjectName']} Model version: "
                            f"{model['ModelVersion']}"
                        )
                        hosted += 1
```

```
            print(f"{hosted} model(s) hosted")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Problem listing hosted models.")
            raise
```

Code examples for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Managed Service for Apache Flink with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Managed Service for Apache Flink Developer Guide** – More information about Managed Service for Apache Flink.
- **Managed Service for Apache Flink API Reference** – Details about all available Managed Service for Apache Flink actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddApplicationInput with an AWS SDK
    - Use AddApplicationOutput with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateApplication with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteApplication with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeApplication with an AWS SDK

    - Use DescribeApplicationSnapshot with an AWS SDK
    - Use DiscoverInputSchema with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartApplication with an AWS SDK
    - Use StopApplication with an AWS SDK
    - Use UpdateApplication with an AWS SDK
- Data generator for Managed Service for Apache Flink
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with a referrer using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with blood pressure anomalies using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with data in columns using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with heart rate anomalies using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with hotspots using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with log entries using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with stagger data using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with stock ticker data using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with two data types using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a Kinesis stream with web log data using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Managed Service for Apache Flink with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddApplicationInput with an AWS SDK
  - Use AddApplicationOutput with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateApplication with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteApplication with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeApplication with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeApplicationSnapshot with an AWS SDK
  - Use DiscoverInputSchema with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartApplication with an AWS SDK

- Use StopApplication with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateApplication with an AWS SDK

Actions for Managed Service for Apache Flink using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Managed Service for Apache Flink actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Managed Service for Apache Flink API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddApplicationInput with an AWS SDK
- Use AddApplicationOutput with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateApplication with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteApplication with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeApplication with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeApplicationSnapshot with an AWS SDK
- Use DiscoverInputSchema with an AWS SDK
- Use StartApplication with an AWS SDK
- Use StopApplication with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateApplication with an AWS SDK

Use `AddApplicationInput` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `AddApplicationInput`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def add_input(self, input_prefix, stream_arn, input_schema):
        """
        Adds an input stream to the application. The input stream data is mapped
        to an in-application stream that can be processed by your code running in
        Kinesis Data Analytics.

        :param input_prefix: The prefix prepended to in-application input stream
 names.
        :param stream_arn: The ARN of the input stream.
        :param input_schema: A schema that maps the data in the input stream to
 the
                             runtime environment. This can be automatically
 generated
                             by using `discover_input_schema` or you can create
 it
                             yourself.
        :return: Metadata about the newly added input.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.add_application_input(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                CurrentApplicationVersionId=self.version_id,
                Input={
                    "NamePrefix": input_prefix,
                    "KinesisStreamsInput": {"ResourceARN": stream_arn},
                    "InputSchema": input_schema,
                },
            )
            self.version_id = response["ApplicationVersionId"]
            logger.info("Add input stream %s to application %s.", stream_arn,
self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add input stream %s to application %s.", stream_arn,
self.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see AddApplicationInput in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `AddApplicationOutput` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `AddApplicationOutput`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def add_output(self, in_app_stream_name, output_arn):
        """
        Adds an output stream to the application. Kinesis Data Analytics maps
data
        from the specified in-application stream to the output stream.

        :param in_app_stream_name: The name of the in-application stream to map
                                   to the output stream.
        :param output_arn: The ARN of the output stream.
        :return: A list of metadata about the output resources currently assigned
                 to the application.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.add_application_output(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                CurrentApplicationVersionId=self.version_id,
                Output={
                    "Name": in_app_stream_name,
                    "KinesisStreamsOutput": {"ResourceARN": output_arn},
                    "DestinationSchema": {"RecordFormatType": "JSON"},
                },
            )
            outputs = response["OutputDescriptions"]
            self.version_id = response["ApplicationVersionId"]
            logging.info(
                "Added output %s to %s, which now has %s outputs.",
                output_arn,
                self.name,
                len(outputs),
            )
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't add output %s to %s.", output_arn,
 self.name)
            raise
        else:
            return outputs
```

- For API details, see AddApplicationOutput in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateApplication` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateApplication`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def create(self, app_name, role_arn, env="SQL-1_0"):
        """
        Creates a Kinesis Data Analytics application.
```

```
        :param app_name: The name of the application.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of a role that can be assumed by Kinesis Data
                         Analytics and grants needed permissions.
        :param env: The runtime environment of the application, such as SQL. Code
                    uploaded to the application runs in this environment.
        :return: Metadata about the newly created application.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.create_application(
                ApplicationName=app_name,
                RuntimeEnvironment=env,
                ServiceExecutionRole=role_arn,
            )
            details = response["ApplicationDetail"]
            self._update_details(details)
            logger.info("Application %s created.", app_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create application %s.", app_name)
            raise
        else:
            return details
```

- For API details, see CreateApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteApplication` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteApplication`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes an application.
        """
        try:
            self.analytics_client.delete_application(
                ApplicationName=self.name, CreateTimestamp=self.create_timestamp
            )
            logger.info("Deleted application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete application %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeApplication` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplication`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def describe(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata about an application.

        :param name: The name of the application to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the application.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.analytics_client.describe_application(ApplicationName=name)
            details = response["ApplicationDetail"]
            self._update_details(details)
            logger.info("Got metadata for application %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get metadata for application %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return details
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeApplicationSnapshot` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplicationSnapshot`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def describe_snapshot(self, application_name, snapshot_name):
        """
        Gets metadata about a previously saved application snapshot.

        :param application_name: The name of the application.
        :param snapshot_name: The name of the snapshot.
        :return: Metadata about the snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.describe_application_snapshot(
                ApplicationName=application_name, SnapshotName=snapshot_name
            )
            snapshot = response["SnapshotDetails"]
            logger.info(
                "Got metadata for snapshot %s of application %s.",
                snapshot_name,
                application_name,
            )
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get metadata for snapshot %s of application %s.",
                snapshot_name,
                application_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplicationSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DiscoverInputSchema` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DiscoverInputSchema`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None
```

```
    def discover_input_schema(self, stream_arn, role_arn):
        """
        Discovers a schema that maps data in a stream to a format that is usable
by
        an application's runtime environment. The stream must be active and have
        enough data moving through it for the service to sample. The returned
schema
        can be used when you add the stream as an input to the application or you
can
        write your own schema.

        :param stream_arn: The ARN of the stream to map.
        :param role_arn: A role that lets Kinesis Data Analytics read from the
stream.
        :return: The discovered schema of the data in the input stream.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.discover_input_schema(
                ResourceARN=stream_arn,
                ServiceExecutionRole=role_arn,
                InputStartingPositionConfiguration={"InputStartingPosition":
"NOW"},
            )
            schema = response["InputSchema"]
            logger.info("Discovered input schema for stream %s.", stream_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't discover input schema for stream %s.", stream_arn
            )
            raise
        else:
            return schema
```

- For API details, see DiscoverInputSchema in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartApplication` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `StartApplication`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def start(self, input_id):
        """
        Starts an application. After the application is running, it reads from
 the
        specified input stream and runs the application code on the incoming
 data.

        :param input_id: The ID of the input to read.
        """
        try:
            self.analytics_client.start_application(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                RunConfiguration={
                    "SqlRunConfigurations": [
                        {
                            "InputId": input_id,
                            "InputStartingPositionConfiguration": {
                                "InputStartingPosition": "NOW"
```

```
                            },
                        }
                    ]
                },
            )
            logger.info("Started application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start application %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StopApplication` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `StopApplication`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None
```

```
    def stop(self):
        """
        Stops an application. This stops the application from processing data but
        does not delete any resources.
        """
        try:
            self.analytics_client.stop_application(ApplicationName=self.name)
            logger.info("Stopping application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't stop application %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see StopApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateApplication` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateApplication`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example updates the code that runs in an existing application.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
```

```
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def update_code(self, code):
        """
        Updates the code that runs in the application. The code must run in the
        runtime environment of the application, such as SQL. Application code
        typically reads data from in-application streams and transforms it in
some way.

        :param code: The code to upload. This completely replaces any existing
code
                     in the application.
        :return: Metadata about the application.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.update_application(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                CurrentApplicationVersionId=self.version_id,
                ApplicationConfigurationUpdate={
                    "ApplicationCodeConfigurationUpdate": {
                        "CodeContentTypeUpdate": "PLAINTEXT",
                        "CodeContentUpdate": {"TextContentUpdate": code},
                    }
                },
            )
            details = response["ApplicationDetail"]
            self.version_id = details["ApplicationVersionId"]
            logger.info("Update code for application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't update code for application %s.",
self.name)
            raise
        else:
            return details
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Data generator for Managed Service for Apache Flink

The following code examples show how to use Managed Service for Apache Flink with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Generate a Kinesis stream with a referrer using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with blood pressure anomalies using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with data in columns using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with heart rate anomalies using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with hotspots using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with log entries using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with stagger data using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with stock ticker data using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with two data types using an AWS SDK
- Generate a Kinesis stream with web log data using an AWS SDK

Generate a Kinesis stream with a referrer using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with a referrer.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"
```

```
def get_data():
    return {"REFERRER": "http://www.amazon.com"}


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with blood pressure anomalies using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with blood pressure anomalies.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
from enum import Enum
import json
import random
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"
```

```
class PressureType(Enum):
    low = "LOW"
    normal = "NORMAL"
    high = "HIGH"


def get_blood_pressure(pressure_type):
    pressure = {"BloodPressureLevel": pressure_type.value}
    if pressure_type == PressureType.low:
        pressure["Systolic"] = random.randint(50, 80)
        pressure["Diastolic"] = random.randint(30, 50)
    elif pressure_type == PressureType.normal:
        pressure["Systolic"] = random.randint(90, 120)
        pressure["Diastolic"] = random.randint(60, 80)
    elif pressure_type == PressureType.high:
        pressure["Systolic"] = random.randint(130, 200)
        pressure["Diastolic"] = random.randint(90, 150)
    else:
        raise TypeError
    return pressure


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        rnd = random.random()
        pressure_type = (
            PressureType.low
            if rnd < 0.005
            else PressureType.high
            if rnd > 0.995
            else PressureType.normal
        )
        blood_pressure = get_blood_pressure(pressure_type)
        print(blood_pressure)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name,
            Data=json.dumps(blood_pressure),
            PartitionKey="partitionkey",
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with data in columns using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with data in columns.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {"Col_A": "a", "Col_B": "b", "Col_C": "c", "Col_E_Unstructured":
 "x,y,z"}


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with heart rate anomalies using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with heart rate anomalies.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
from enum import Enum
import json
import random
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


class RateType(Enum):
    normal = "NORMAL"
    high = "HIGH"


def get_heart_rate(rate_type):
    if rate_type == RateType.normal:
        rate = random.randint(60, 100)
    elif rate_type == RateType.high:
        rate = random.randint(150, 200)
    else:
        raise TypeError
    return {"heartRate": rate, "rateType": rate_type.value}


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client, output=True):
    while True:
        rnd = random.random()
        rate_type = RateType.high if rnd < 0.01 else RateType.normal
```

```
        heart_rate = get_heart_rate(rate_type)
        if output:
            print(heart_rate)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name,
            Data=json.dumps(heart_rate),
            PartitionKey="partitionkey",
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with hotspots using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with hotspots.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
from pprint import pprint
import random
import time
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_hotspot(field, spot_size):
    hotspot = {
        "left": field["left"] + random.random() * (field["width"] - spot_size),
```

```
        "width": spot_size,
        "top": field["top"] + random.random() * (field["height"] - spot_size),
        "height": spot_size,
    }
    return hotspot


def get_record(field, hotspot, hotspot_weight):
    rectangle = hotspot if random.random() < hotspot_weight else field
    point = {
        "x": rectangle["left"] + random.random() * rectangle["width"],
        "y": rectangle["top"] + random.random() * rectangle["height"],
        "is_hot": "Y" if rectangle is hotspot else "N",
    }
    return {"Data": json.dumps(point), "PartitionKey": "partition_key"}


def generate(
    stream_name, field, hotspot_size, hotspot_weight, batch_size, kinesis_client
):
    """
    Generates points used as input to a hotspot detection algorithm.
    With probability hotspot_weight (20%), a point is drawn from the hotspot;
    otherwise, it is drawn from the base field. The location of the hotspot
    changes for every 1000 points generated.
    """
    points_generated = 0
    hotspot = None
    while True:
        if points_generated % 1000 == 0:
            hotspot = get_hotspot(field, hotspot_size)
        records = [
            get_record(field, hotspot, hotspot_weight) for _ in range(batch_size)
        ]
        points_generated += len(records)
        pprint(records)
        kinesis_client.put_records(StreamName=stream_name, Records=records)

        time.sleep(0.1)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(
        stream_name=STREAM_NAME,
```

```
        field={"left": 0, "width": 10, "top": 0, "height": 10},
        hotspot_size=1,
        hotspot_weight=0.2,
        batch_size=10,
        kinesis_client=boto3.client("kinesis"),
    )
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with log entries using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with log entries.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {
        "LOGENTRY": "203.0.113.24 - - [25/Mar/2018:15:25:37 -0700] "
        '"GET /index.php HTTP/1.1" 200 125 "-" '
        '"Mozilla/5.0 [en] Gecko/20100101 Firefox/52.0"'
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
```

```
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with stagger data using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with stagger data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import datetime
import json
import random
import time
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    event_time = datetime.datetime.utcnow() - datetime.timedelta(seconds=10)
    return {
        "EVENT_TIME": event_time.isoformat(),
        "TICKER": random.choice(["AAPL", "AMZN", "MSFT", "INTC", "TBV"]),
    }
```

```
def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        # Send six records, ten seconds apart, with the same event time and
 ticker
        for _ in range(6):
            print(data)
            kinesis_client.put_record(
                StreamName=stream_name,
                Data=json.dumps(data),
                PartitionKey="partitionkey",
            )
            time.sleep(10)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with stock ticker data using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with stock ticker data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import datetime
import json
import random
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"
```

```
def get_data():
    return {
        "EVENT_TIME": datetime.datetime.now().isoformat(),
        "TICKER": random.choice(["AAPL", "AMZN", "MSFT", "INTC", "TBV"]),
        "PRICE": round(random.random() * 100, 2),
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with two data types using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with two data types.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import random
```

```
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "OrdersAndTradesStream"
PARTITION_KEY = "partition_key"


def get_order(order_id, ticker):
    return {
        "RecordType": "Order",
        "Oid": order_id,
        "Oticker": ticker,
        "Oprice": random.randint(500, 10000),
        "Otype": "Sell",
    }


def get_trade(order_id, trade_id, ticker):
    return {
        "RecordType": "Trade",
        "Tid": trade_id,
        "Toid": order_id,
        "Tticker": ticker,
        "Tprice": random.randint(0, 3000),
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    order_id = 1
    while True:
        ticker = random.choice(["AAAA", "BBBB", "CCCC"])
        order = get_order(order_id, ticker)
        print(order)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(order),
 PartitionKey=PARTITION_KEY
        )
        for trade_id in range(1, random.randint(0, 6)):
            trade = get_trade(order_id, trade_id, ticker)
            print(trade)
            kinesis_client.put_record(
                StreamName=stream_name,
                Data=json.dumps(trade),
                PartitionKey=PARTITION_KEY,
            )
```

```
        order_id += 1


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a Kinesis stream with web log data using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with web log data.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {
        "log": "192.168.254.30 - John [24/May/2004:22:01:02 -0700] "
        '"GET /icons/apache_pb.gif HTTP/1.1" 304 0'
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
```

```
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Code examples for AWS Marketplace Catalog API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

More resources

- **AWS Marketplace Catalog API Seller Guide** – More information about AWS Marketplace Catalog API.
- **AWS Marketplace Catalog API API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Marketplace Catalog API actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- AMI products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms using an AWS SDK
  - Add a region where an AMI product is deployed using an AWS SDK
  - Create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing using an AWS SDK
  - Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing using an AWS SDK
  - Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing using an AWS SDK

- Create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK
- Restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed using an AWS SDK
- Restrict product visibility using an AWS SDK
- Specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions using an AWS SDK
- Channel partner offers for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Create a draft CPPO for any product type using an AWS SDK
  - Create a resale authorization replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing using an AWS SDK
  - List all CPPOs created by a channel partner using an AWS SDK
  - List all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner using an AWS SDK
  - Publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA using an AWS SDK
  - Publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup using an AWS SDK
  - Publish a draft CPPO and update price markup using an AWS SDK
  - Update the expiration date of a CPPO using an AWS SDK
- Container products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Create a draft container product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK
  - Create a limited container product with public offer, contract pricing using an AWS SDK
- Entities for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Describe all entities in a single call using an AWS SDK
  - List and describe all offers associated with a product using an AWS SDK
- Offers for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer using an AWS SDK
  - Create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product using an AWS SDK
  - Create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
  - Create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
  - Create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product using an AWS SDK
  - Create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK

- Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing using an AWS SDK
- Describe a public offer using an AWS SDK
- Expire a private offer using an AWS SDK
- List all private offers using an AWS SDK
- List released public and private offers for a specific product ID using an AWS SDK
- Update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing using an AWS SDK
- Update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing using an AWS SDK
- Update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions using an AWS SDK
- Update name and description of a public offer using an AWS SDK
- Update the EULA of an offer using an AWS SDK
- Update the expiration date of a private offer to a future date using an AWS SDK
- Update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Update the refund policy of an offer using an AWS SDK

- Products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product using an AWS SDK
  - List all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers using an AWS SDK
- Resale authorization for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Create draft resale authorization for any product type using an AWS SDK
  - Describe a resale authorization using an AWS SDK
  - Publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer using an AWS SDK
  - Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date using an AWS SDK
  - Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and a EULA to be sent to the buyer using an AWS SDK

- Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiration and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and add a custom EULA using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiration date and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization and add Flexible payment schedule using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a EULA using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization for and add whether it is a renewal using an AWS SDK
- Restrict resale authorization using an AWS SDK
- Update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization using an AWS SDK

- SaaS products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API
  - Create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK
  - Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing using an AWS SDK
  - Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing using an AWS SDK
  - Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing using an AWS SDK
  - Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer using an AWS SDK
  - Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer from an existing draft using an AWS SDK
  - Update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Utilities for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

- Utilities to start a changeset using an AWS SDK

AMI products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms using an AWS SDK
- Add a region where an AMI product is deployed using an AWS SDK
- Create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing using an AWS SDK
- Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing using an AWS SDK
- Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing using an AWS SDK
- Create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK
- Restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed using an AWS SDK
- Restrict product visibility using an AWS SDK
- Specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions using an AWS SDK

Add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Description": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Name": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.4xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.2xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.8xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.55"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Description": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Name": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.4xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.2xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.8xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.55"
                                    }
```

```
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to add a dimension to an existing
 AMI product and update the offer pricing terms.
CAPI-23
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Add dimension for AMI product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Add a region where an AMI product is deployed using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to add a region where an AMI product is deployed.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-2",
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-2",
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to add a region where my
AMI product is deployed
CAPI-25A
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Add a region where my AMI product is deployed",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
```

```
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-1111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
```

```
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-annual pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
```

```
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
 "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-annual pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
```

```
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a public or limited AMI
product and public offer with hourly-annual pricing and standard or custom EULA
CAPI-06
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
```

```
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create limited AMI product and public offer with hourly-annual pricing
 and standard EULA",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
```

```
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
```

```
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-monthly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "RecurringPaymentTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "BillingPeriod": "Monthly",
                        "Price": "15.0"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
```

```
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-monthly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
```

```
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "RecurringPaymentTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "BillingPeriod": "Monthly",
                        "Price": "15.0"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a public or limited AMI
product and public offer with hourly-monthly pricing and standard or custom EULA
CAPI-08
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)
```

```
def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "create limited AMI product and public offer with hourly-monthly pricing
 and standard EULA",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing. This example creates either and standard or custom EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
 "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
```

```
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
 "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to Create a public or limited AMI
 product
and public offer with hourly pricing and standard or custom EULA
CAPI-07
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing and
 standard EULA",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AMI draft product
with a draft public offer.
CAPI-02
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "AMI draft product with draft public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to restrict a region where my
AMI product is deployed
CAPI-25B
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Add a region where my AMI product is deployed",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Restrict product visibility using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to restrict product visibility.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateVisibility",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "TargetVisibility": "Restricted"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateVisibility",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "TargetVisibility": "Restricted"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to change a product visibility to
 restricted
CAPI-17
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Restrict existing AMI")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions built by AWS to support future regions.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateFutureRegionSupport",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "FutureRegionSupport": {
                    "SupportedRegions": [
                        "All"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateFutureRegionSupport",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "FutureRegionSupport": {
                    "SupportedRegions": [
                        "All"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to modify a product to support
 all future regions
CAPI-26
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update future region support")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Channel partner offers for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Create a draft CPPO for any product type using an AWS SDK
- Create a resale authorization replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing using an AWS SDK
- List all CPPOs created by a channel partner using an AWS SDK
- List all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner using an AWS SDK
- Publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA using an AWS SDK
- Publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup using an AWS SDK
- Publish a draft CPPO and update price markup using an AWS SDK
- Update the expiration date of a CPPO using an AWS SDK

Create a draft CPPO for any product type using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a draft CPPO for any product type so you can review them internally before publishing to buyers.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description": "Test product"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer name"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create “draft” CPPO
for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) that can be reviewed internally
before publishing to buyers
CAPI-60
"""
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # noqa: E402
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # noqa: E402
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Create a draft CPPO offer for a product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a resale authorization replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a resale authorization replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111",
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private resale replacement offer with
contract pricing for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-1111111111111111111111111",
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private resale replacement offer with
 contract pricing for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
"$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier":
 "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a resale authorization
 replacement private offer
from an existing agreement with contract pricing
CAPI-96
"""



import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set
```

```
    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create resale authorization replacement private offer with contract
 pricing",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all CPPOs created by a channel partner using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to list all CPPOs created by a channel partner.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;

public class ListAllCppoOffers {

 /*
  * List all CPPOs created by a channel partner
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<String> cppoOfferIds = getAllCppoOfferIds();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(cppoOfferIds);
 }

 public static List<String> getAllCppoOfferIds() {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  // get all offer entity ids
  List<String> entityIdList = new ArrayList<String>();

  ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
    .maxResults(10)
    .nextToken(null)
    .build();

  ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
```

```
 for (EntitySummary entitySummary : listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList()) {
  entityIdList.add(entitySummary.entityId());
 }

 while (listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null) {
  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
    .maxResults(10)
    .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

  for (EntitySummary entitySummary : listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList()) {
   entityIdList.add(entitySummary.entityId());
  }
 }

 // filter for CPPO offers: ResaleAuthorizationId exists in Details

 List<String> cppoOfferIds = new ArrayList<String>();

 for (String entityId : entityIdList) {
  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(entityId)
    .build();
  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);

  Document resaleAuthorizationDocument =
describeEntityResponse.detailsDocument().asMap().get(ATTRIBUTE_RESALE_AUTHORIZATION_ID);
  String resaleAuthorizationId = resaleAuthorizationDocument != null ?
resaleAuthorizationDocument.asString() : "";

  if (!resaleAuthorizationId.isEmpty()) {
      cppoOfferIds.add(resaleAuthorizationId);
  }
 }
 return cppoOfferIds;
```

```
 }

}
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list all Channel Partner
 Offers
in an account

Program executed with no arguments:
ie. python3 list_all_cppo_offers.py

CAPI-93
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")


def get_offer_entities():
    """
```

```
    Returns a list of all offers in the account
    """

    next_token = ""  # nosec: B105
    response_list = []

    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
 EntityType="Offer")
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
        raise

    response_list.append(response)

    # Results are paginated depending on number of entities returned
    while "NextToken" in response:
        next_token = response["NextToken"]

        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType="Offer",
                NextToken=next_token,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
            raise

        if "NextToken" in response:
            response_list.append(response)

    return response_list


def build_offer_list(response_list):
    """
    Cleans up list_entities response list with just list of offer IDs
    """
    offer_list = []

    for response in response_list:
        for entity in response["EntitySummaryList"]:
            offer_list.append(entity["EntityId"])
```

```
    return offer_list


def check_offer_resaleauth(offer_id):
    """
    Checks to see if an offer is based on a resale authorization
    """
    offer_response = describe_entity(offer_id)
    offer_details = json.loads(offer_response["Details"])
    if offer_details is None:
        offer_details = offer_response["DetailsDocument"]
    if "ResaleAuthorizationId" in offer_details and
 offer_details["ResaleAuthorizationId"] is not None:
        return offer_id
    else:
        return None


def describe_entity(entity_id):
    """
    General purpose describe entity call
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception(f"Couldn't describe entity. {e}")
        raise

    return response


def get_resaleauth_offers():
    """
    Returns a list of all offers in the account that are
    based on a resale authorization
    """
    resale_offer_list = []

    response_list = get_offer_entities()
    offer_list = build_offer_list(response_list)
```

```
    for offer in offer_list:
        print ("offer id " + offer)
        offer_info = check_offer_resaleauth(offer)
        if offer_info is not None:
            resale_offer_list.append(offer_info)

    return resale_offer_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    print(get_resaleauth_offers())
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to list all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;

public class ListAllSharedResaleAuthorizations {

 /*
  * list all resale authorizations shared to an account
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<ListEntitiesResponse> responseList = getListEntityResponseList();
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(responseList);
 }

 public static List<ListEntitiesResponse> getListEntityResponseList() {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  List<ListEntitiesResponse> responseList = new
 ArrayList<ListEntitiesResponse>();

  ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_RESALE_AUTHORIZATION)
    .maxResults(10)
    .ownershipType(OWNERSHIP_TYPE_SHARED)
    .nextToken(null)
    .build();

  ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

  responseList.add(listEntitiesResponse);

  while (listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null) {
   listEntitiesRequest = ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
```

```
      .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
      .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_RESALE_AUTHORIZATION)
      .maxResults(10)
      .ownershipType(OWNERSHIP_TYPE_SHARED)
      .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
      .build();

    listEntitiesResponse =
  marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

    responseList.add(listEntitiesResponse);
   }
   return responseList;
  }

}
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list all resale authorizations
shared to an account

Program executed with no arguments:
ie. python3 list_all_resale_authorizations.py

CAPI-94
"""
```

```
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as hlp  # noqa: E402
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")


def get_shared_entities():
    next_token = ""  # nosec: B105
    response_list = []

    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityType="ResaleAuthorization",
            OwnershipType="SHARED",
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
        raise

    response_list.append(response)

    # Results can be paginated depending on number of entities returned
    while "NextToken" in response:
        next_token = response["NextToken"]

        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType="ResaleAuthorization",
                OwnershipType="SHARED",
                NextToken=next_token,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
            raise

        if "NextToken" in response:
            response_list.append(response)
```

```
    return response_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    response_list = get_shared_entities()
    hlp.pretty_print_datetime(response_list)
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
           {
               "Type": "LegalTerm",
               "Documents": [
                {
                 "Type": "CustomEula",
                 "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/custom-eula.pdf"
                }
               ]
           }
       ]
         }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
```

```
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
           {
               "Type": "LegalTerm",
               "Documents": [
                {
                 "Type": "CustomEula",
                 "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/custom-eula.pdf"
                }
               ]
           }
       ]
         }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to publish CPPO
for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) and append buyer EULA
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Publish CPPO for any product type and append buyer EULA",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization on AMI, SaaS, or Container products and update price markup.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
        }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPO",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test Offer name",
                "Description":"Test Offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
        }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["111111111111"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to Create CPPO using one-time
 resale
authorization on AMI, SaaS or Container products and update price markup
CAPI-63
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup"
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a draft CPPO and update price markup using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish a draft CPPO and update price markup.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
        }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPO",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test Offer name",
                "Description":"Test Offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["111111111111"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to publish “draft” CPPO
for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) and update price markup
CAPI-72
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Publish draft CPPO for any product type adn update price markup"
    )

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the expiration date of a CPPO using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update the expiration date of a CPPO to give buyers more time to evaluate and accept the offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-07-31"
                }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-07-31"
                }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update the expiry
date of a CPPO offer
"""


import os
```

```
import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Update the expiry date of a CPPO offer"
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Container products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Create a draft container product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK
- Create a limited container product with public offer, contract pricing using an AWS SDK

Create a draft container product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a draft container product with a draft public offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "changeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
```

```
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an container draft
 product
with a draft public offer.
CAPI-03
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create a draft container product with a draft public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a limited container product with public offer, contract pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a limited container product with a public offer, contract pricing, and standard EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {},
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "Categories": [
                    "Streaming solutions"
                ],
                "ProductTitle": "ContainerProduct",
                "AdditionalResources": [],
                "LongDescription": "Long description goes here",
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "container streaming"
                ],
                "ShortDescription": "Description1",
```

```
                "Highlights": [
                    "Highlight 1",
                    "Highlight 2"
                ],
                "SupportDescription": "No support available",
                "VideoUrls": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "Cores",
                    "Description": "Cores per cluster",
                    "Name": "Cores",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRepositories",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Repositories": [
                    {
                        "RepositoryName": "uniquerepositoryname",
                        "RepositoryType": "ECR"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
```

```
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Cores",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "No refunds"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Some container offer Name",
                "Description": "Some interesting container offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {},
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "Categories": [
                    "Streaming solutions"
                ],
                "ProductTitle": "ContainerProduct",
                "AdditionalResources": [],
                "LongDescription": "Long description goes here",
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "container streaming"
```

```
                ],
                "ShortDescription": "Description1",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Highlight 1",
                    "Highlight 2"
                ],
                "SupportDescription": "No support available",
                "VideoUrls": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "Cores",
                    "Description": "Cores per cluster",
                    "Name": "Cores",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRepositories",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Repositories": [
                    {
                        "RepositoryName": "uniquerepositoryname",
                        "RepositoryType": "ECR"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
```

```
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Cores",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "No refunds"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Some container offer Name",
                "Description": "Some interesting container offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create limited container
product with public offer, contract pricing and standard EULA
CAPI-15
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create limited container product with public offer contract pricing and
 standard EULA",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Entities for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Describe all entities in a single call using an AWS SDK
- List and describe all offers associated with a product using an AWS SDK

Describe all entities in a single call using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to describe all entities in a single call.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.BatchDescribeEntitiesRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.BatchDescribeEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityDetail;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.BatchDescribeErrorDetail;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Map;

public class BatchDescribeEntities {

    /*
     * BatchDescribe my entities in a single call and
     *  check if it contains all the information I need to know about the
 entities.
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
                MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
                        .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
                        .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                        .build();

        BatchDescribeEntitiesRequest batchDescribeEntitiesRequest =
                BatchDescribeEntitiesRequest.builder()
                        .entityRequestList(Arrays.asList(
                                EntityRequest.builder()

 .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG).entityId(OFFER_ID)
                                        .build(),
                                EntityRequest.builder()

 .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG).entityId(PRODUCT_ID)
                                        .build()))
                        .build();

        BatchDescribeEntitiesResponse batchDescribeEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.batchDescribeEntities(batchDescribeEntitiesRequest);

        // Reading the successful entities response
        Map<String, EntityDetail> entityDetailsMap =
 batchDescribeEntitiesResponse.entityDetails();
```

```
        for (Map.Entry<String, EntityDetail> entry : entityDetailsMap.entrySet())
 {
            System.out.println("EntityId: " + entry.getKey());
            ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(entry.getValue());
        }

        // Logging the failed entities error details
        Map<String, BatchDescribeErrorDetail> entityErrorsMap =
 batchDescribeEntitiesResponse.errors();
        for (Map.Entry<String, BatchDescribeErrorDetail> entry :
 entityErrorsMap.entrySet()) {
            System.out.println(String.format("EntityId: %s, ErrorCode: %s,
 ErrorMessage: %s", entry.getKey(),
                    entry.getValue().errorCode(),
 entry.getValue().errorMessage()));
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchDescribeEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to describe for multiple entities
 information in the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-98
"""

import json
import logging
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

PRODUCT_ID = "prod-1111111111111"
OFFER_ID = "offer-1111111111111"
MARKETPLACE_CATALOG = "AWSMarketplace"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_entities_information(mp_client):
    """
    Returns information about a given product
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of product information
    """

    entity_request_list_param = [
        {'EntityId': PRODUCT_ID, 'Catalog': MARKETPLACE_CATALOG},
        {'EntityId': OFFER_ID, 'Catalog': MARKETPLACE_CATALOG}
    ]
    try:
        response = mp_client.batch_describe_entities(
            EntityRequestList=entity_request_list_param
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error: %s", e)
        raise


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for entities in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    response = get_entities_information(mp_client)
    print("Successful entities response -")
    pretty_print(response["EntityDetails"])
    print("Failed entities response -")
    pretty_print(response["Errors"])


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see BatchDescribeEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List and describe all offers associated with a product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to list and describe all offers associated with a product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferProductIdFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListProductPrivateOffers {

 private static MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();
 /*
  * retrieve all private offer information related to a single product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = getEntitySummaryList();

  // for each offer id, output the offer detail using DescribeEntity API

  for (EntitySummary entitySummary : entitySummaryList) {
   DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
     DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityId(entitySummary.entityId())
     .build();
   DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
   ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
  }
 }
```

```
public static List<EntitySummary> getEntitySummaryList() {
 // define list entities filters

 EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
   EntityTypeFilters.builder()
   .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
     .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_BUYERACCOUNTS)
       .build())
     .productId(OfferProductIdFilter.builder()
       .valueList(PRODUCT_ID)
       .build())
     .build())
   .build();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER).maxResults(50)
   .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
   .nextToken(null)
   .build();

 ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

 // save all entitySummary of the results into entitySummaryList

 List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

 entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

 while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER).maxResults(50)
    .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
    .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
  entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
```

```
  }
  return entitySummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to retrieve all offer information
related to a single product
CAPI-97
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from utils import helpers

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")


def get_entity_information(entity_id):
```

```
    """
    Returns information about a given entity
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of entity information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def list_entity_details(entity_type, entity_id):
    """
    Returns details about a given entity and entity type
    """

    entity_summary_list = []

    # filter will return details for given entity_id with BuyerAccounts targeting
    filter_list_param = {
        'OfferFilters':{
            'ProductId':{
                'ValueList':[entity_id]
            },
            'Targeting': {
                'ValueList': ["BuyerAccounts"]
            }
        }
    }

    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityType=entity_type,
```

```
            EntityTypeFilters = filter_list_param,
            MaxResults=10
        )

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    # add results to entity_summary_list
    entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

    # if there are more than 10 offers, paginate through the results
    while "NextToken" in response and response["NextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType=entity_type,
                EntityTypeFilters = filter_list_param,
                NextToken=response["NextToken"],
                MaxResults=10
            )

        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Entity ID %s not found.", entity_id)
            else:
                logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

        # add results to entity_summary_list
        entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

        return entity_summary_list

if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()

    parser.add_argument(
        "--entity-id",
        "-eid",
        help="Provide Entity ID corresponding to a product to filter offers on",
        required=True,
    )
```

```
    args = parser.parse_args()

    # Gets a offers associated with the entity_id
    response = list_entity_details(
        "Offer",
        entity_id=args.entity_id
    )

    if response: # if response is not empty

        # list_entity_details returns a list of offers
        for offer in response:

            print("-"*128)
            print(f"Terms for Offer ID: {offer['EntityId']}")
            print("-"*128)

            #retrieve offer information for each offer
            entity_information = get_entity_information(offer["EntityId"])

            helpers.pretty_print_datetime(entity_information)

    else:
        print(f"No information found for Entity ID: {args.entity_id}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Offers for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer using an AWS SDK
- Create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

- Create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Create a replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing using an AWS SDK
- Describe a public offer using an AWS SDK
- Expire a private offer using an AWS SDK
- List all private offers using an AWS SDK
- List released public and private offers for a specific product ID using an AWS SDK
- Update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing using an AWS SDK
- Update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing using an AWS SDK
- Update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions using an AWS SDK
- Update name and description of a public offer using an AWS SDK
- Update the EULA of an offer using an AWS SDK
- Update the expiration date of a private offer to a future date using an AWS SDK
- Update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK
- Update the refund policy of an offer using an AWS SDK

Create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Description": "Custom Pricing 4 w/ terms and coverage to be
 defined in Private Offer",
                    "Unit": "Units",
                    "Key": "Custom4",
                    "Name": "Custom Pricing 4"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
```

```
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product",
                "Description": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Custom4",
                                        "Price": "300.0"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P36M"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ],
    "ChangeSetName": "PrivateOfferWithCustomDimension"
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
```

```
                    "Description": "Custom Pricing 4 w/ terms and coverage to be
defined in Private Offer",
                    "Unit": "Units",
                    "Key": "Custom4",
                    "Name": "Custom Pricing 4"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product",
                "Description": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Constraints": {
```

```
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Custom4",
                                        "Price": "300.0"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P36M"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ],
    "ChangeSetName": "PrivateOfferWithCustomDimension"
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a SaaS product custom
 dimension and private offer
CAPI-91
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "Create a SaaS product custom dimension and private offer"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product so you can review it internally before publishing to buyers.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Private Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Private Offer"
            }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create “draft” Private Offer
for any AMI or SAAS product type that can be reviewed internally
before publishing to buyers
CAPI-30
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Private offer for AMI product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
```

```
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
```

```
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
```

```
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 contract with PAYG pricing for my SaaS product
CAPI-34
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create private offer with contract with PAYG pricing for my SaaS
 product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
```

```
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P12M"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
 SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P12M"
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Some kind of refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer
with contract pricing and flexible payment schedule for my SaaS product
CAPI-39
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create private offer with contract pricing and flexible payment schedule
 for my SaaS product",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Name": "Test private offer for Container product using AWS
Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer for Container product with
contract pricing using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReqPerHour",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for Container product using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Code",
```

```
                "Description": "Test private offer for Container product with
contract pricing using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReqPerHour",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
```

```
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer (target
 buyers)
for my Container product with contract pricing
CAPI-36
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "publish a private offer for my Container product with contract pricing",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReadOnlyUsers",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReadOnlyUsers",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 contract pricing for my AMI product
CAPI-35
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "create private offer with contract pricing for my AMI
 product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P365D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P365D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 hourly annual pricing and flexible payment schedule for my AMI product
CAPI-XX
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create private offer with hourly annual pricing and flexible payment
 schedule for my AMI product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 hourly annual pricing for my AMI product
CAPI-31
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "create private offer with hourly annual pricing for my AMI
 product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-01-01"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-01-01"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
```

```
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 hourly pricing for my AMI product
CAPI-32
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "create private offer with hourly pricing for my AMI product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
 SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.22"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.22"
```

```
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 subscription pricing for my SaaS product
CAPI-33
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)
```

```
def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "Create private offer with subscription pricing for my SaaS
 product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
```

```
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "120.00"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "200.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "120.00"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "200.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 tiered contract pricing for my SaaS product
CAPI-XX
"""

import os
```

```
import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create private offer with tiered contract pricing for my SaaS product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public free trial offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public free trial offer with subscription
 pricing for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Free",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P20D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
```

```
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public free trial offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public free trial offer with subscription
 pricing for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Free",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P20D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a public free trial
 offer with subscription pricing for SaaS product
CAPI-13
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create public free trial offer with subscription pricing for SaaS
 product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Codes",
```

```
                "Description": "Test private replacement offer with contract
pricing for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private replacement offer with contract
 pricing for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a replacement private
 offer
from an existing agreement with contract pricing
CAPI-95
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create replacement private offer with contract pricing..",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Describe a public offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to describe a public offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;
```

```
import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class DescribeEntity {

 /*
  * Describe my AMI or SaaS or Container product and check if it contains all the
 information I need to know about the product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String offerId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OFFER_ID;

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 getDescribeEntityResponse(offerId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }

 public static DescribeEntityResponse getDescribeEntityResponse(String offerId) {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId)
    .build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  return describeEntityResponse;
```

```
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) search for offer information in
 the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-29
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

OFFER_ID = "offer-1111111111111"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_offer_information(mp_client, entity_id):
```

```
    """
    Returns information about a given offer
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of offer information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Offer with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an offer in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    pretty_print(get_offer_information(mp_client, OFFER_ID))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Expire a private offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to set the expiration date of a private offer to a date in the past so that buyers no longer see the offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-01-01"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Private Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create “draft” Private Offer
for any AMI or SAAS product type that can be reviewed internally
before publishing to buyers
CAPI-30
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Private offer for AMI product")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all private offers using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to list all private offers.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilterD
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferBuyerAccountsFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferReleaseDateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferReleaseDateFilterDateRange
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListAllPrivateOffers {

 /*
  * List all my private offers and sort or filter them by Offer Publish Date,
 Offer Expiry Date and Buyer IDs
  *
  * OfferTargetingFilter = BuyerAccounts (private offer);
  * OfferBuyerAccountsFilter: Buyer IDs filter
  * OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilter : Offer Expiry Date filter
  * OfferReleaseDateFilter : Offer Publish Date filter
  */

 private static MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String offerReleaseDateAfterValue = "2023-01-01T23:59:59Z";
  String offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue = "2040-12-24T23:59:59Z";

  List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList =
 getEntitySummaryList(offerReleaseDateAfterValue,
 offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue);

  // for each offer id, output the offer detail using DescribeEntity API
```

```
 for (EntitySummary entitySummary : entitySummaryList) {
  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(entitySummary.entityId())
    .build();
  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }
}

public static List<EntitySummary> getEntitySummaryList (String
offerReleaseDateAfterValue, String offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue) {

 EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
   EntityTypeFilters.builder()
   .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
     .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_BUYERACCOUNTS)
       .build())
     .buyerAccounts(OfferBuyerAccountsFilter.builder()
       .wildCardValue(BUYER_ACCOUNT_ID)
       .build())
     .availabilityEndDate(OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilter.builder()
       .dateRange(OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilterDateRange.builder()
         .afterValue(offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue).build())
       .build())
     .releaseDate(OfferReleaseDateFilter.builder()
       .dateRange(OfferReleaseDateFilterDateRange.builder()
         .afterValue(offerReleaseDateAfterValue)
         .build())
       .build())
     .build())
   .build();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER).maxResults(10)
   .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
   .nextToken(null)
```

```
    .build();

  ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
  List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

  entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

  while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   listEntitiesRequest =
     ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
     .maxResults(10)
     .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
     .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
     .build();
   listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
   entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
  }

  return entitySummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) for listing offers in the AWS
 Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-40
"""
import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# Constants
MAX_RESULTS = 10
CATALOG = "AWSMarketplace"
ENTITY_TYPE = "Offer"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def list_private_offers(mp_client, return_all_private_offers):
    """
    This method retrieves list of all Private Offers for this account.
    """
    entity_summary_list = []
    filter_list_param = {
        'OfferFilters': {
            'Targeting': {
                'ValueList': ["BuyerAccounts"]
            }
        }
    }
    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog=CATALOG,
            EntityType=ENTITY_TYPE,
            EntityTypeFilters=filter_list_param,
            MaxResults=MAX_RESULTS
```

```
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request: %s", e)
        raise

    entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])
    logger.info("Number of results in first iteration: %d " %
 len(entity_summary_list))

    # Get subsequent pages of results if previous response contained a NextToken
    while "NextToken" in response and return_all_private_offers:
        try:
            logger.info("Getting Next Token results: %s " %
 response["NextToken"])
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog=CATALOG,
                EntityType=ENTITY_TYPE,
                EntityTypeFilters=filter_list_param,
                MaxResults=MAX_RESULTS,
                NextToken=response["NextToken"]
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request: %s", e)
            raise

        entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])
        logger.info(
            "Number of results in the current iteration: %d "
            % len(response["EntitySummaryList"])
        )

    return entity_summary_list


def get_offer_details(mp_client, offer):
    """
    Describe the details of the Offer.
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace", EntityId=offer["EntityId"]
        )

        return response
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Error: Couldn't get details of the Offer.")
        raise


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Demo  - List Private offers.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    # Get list of all Offers.
    private_offers = list_private_offers(mp_client, False)
    count = len(private_offers)

    logger.info("Number of Offers: %d " % count)
    offer_counter = 0
    # Display details of each Offer.
    for offer in private_offers:
        print("-" * 88)
        offer_counter += 1
        print("Displaying Offer details for Offer# %d" % offer_counter)
        entity = get_offer_details(mp_client, offer)
        pretty_print(entity)

    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List released public and private offers for a specific product ID using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to list released public and private offers for a specific product ID.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferProductIdFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferStateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListProductPublicOrPrivateReleasedOffers {

 /*
  * List released Public/Private offers for a specific product id.
  * Example below is to list released public offers.
```

```
 * To change to released private offers, change OFFER_TARGETING_NONE (None) to
OFFER_TARGETING_BUYERACCOUNTS(BuyerAccounts)
 */
public static void main(String[] args) {

 List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = getEntitySummaryLIst();
 ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(entitySummaryList);
}

public static List<EntitySummary> getEntitySummaryLIst() {
 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 // define list entities filters

 EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
   EntityTypeFilters.builder()
   .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
     .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_NONE)
       .build())
     .state(OfferStateFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_STATE_RELEASED)
       .build())
     .productId(OfferProductIdFilter.builder()
       .valueList(PRODUCT_ID)
       .build())
     .build())
   .build();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
   .maxResults(10)
   .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
   .nextToken(null)
   .build();

 ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
```

```
  // save all entitySummary of the results into entitySummaryList

  List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

  entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

  while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   listEntitiesRequest =
     ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
     .maxResults(10)
     .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
     .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
     .build();
   listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
   entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
  }
  return entitySummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
```

```
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update an offer to apply
 contract with PAYG pricing
CAPI-21
"""

import os
```

```
import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer to apply contract with PAYG pricing")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "20.03"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "20.03"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update an offer to apply
 hourly annual pricing
CAPI-20
"""

import os
```

```
import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer with hourly annual pricing")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "CountryCodes": [
                        "US",
                        "ES",
                        "FR",
                        "AU"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "CountryCodes": [
                        "US",
                        "ES",
                        "FR",
                        "AU"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update an offer to apply
 targeting to certain geographic regions.
CAPI-19
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer targeting")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update name and description of a public offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update name and description of a public offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New offer name",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
```

```
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update name and description of
 my offer
CAPI-18
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # type: ignore
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # type: ignore

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update name and description of my offer")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the EULA of an offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update the EULA of an offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New offer name",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update EULA of my offer
CAPI-18
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # type: ignore
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # type: ignore

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update EULA of my offer")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the expiration date of a private offer to a future date using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update the expiration date of a private offer to a date in the future to give buyers more time to evaluate and accept the offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2026-01-01"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2026-01-01"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to set expiry date of a private
 offer to a date in the future so that my buyers get more time to evaluate and
 accept the offer.
CAPI-37
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
```

```
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer expiration date")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P21D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P21D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to change free trial duration for
 my SaaS product by modifying my free trial public offer
CAPI-14
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Change free trial duration for SaaS product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the refund policy of an offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update the refund policy of an offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update refund policy of my
 offer
CAPI-18
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # type: ignore
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # type: ignore

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update refund policy of my public offer")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product using an AWS SDK
- List all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers using an AWS SDK

Describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product and check if it contains all the information you want to know about the product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class DescribeEntity {

 /*
  * Describe my AMI or SaaS or Container product and check if it contains all the
 information I need to know about the product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
 String offerId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OFFER_ID;

 DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
getDescribeEntityResponse(offerId);

 ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
}

public static DescribeEntityResponse getDescribeEntityResponse(String offerId) {
 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
   DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityId(offerId)
   .build();

 DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
 return describeEntityResponse;
}
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
```

```
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) search for product information in
 the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-28
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

PRODUCT_ID = "prod-1111111111111"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_product_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given product
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of product information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Product with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)
```

```
def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for a product in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    pretty_print(get_product_information(mp_client, PRODUCT_ID))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to list all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
```

```
import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferProductIdFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferStateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListEntities {

 /*
  * List all my AMI or SaaS or Container products and associated public offers
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  Map<String, List<EntitySummary>> allProductsWithOffers =
 getAllProductsWithOffers();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(allProductsWithOffers);
 }

 public static Map<String, List<EntitySummary>> getAllProductsWithOffers() {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  Map<String, List<EntitySummary>> allProductsWithOffers = new HashMap<String,
 List<EntitySummary>> ();
```

```
 // get all product entities
 List<EntitySummary> productEntityList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(PRODUCT_TYPE_AMI)
   .maxResults(10)
   .nextToken(null)
   .build();


 ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

 productEntityList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());


 while (listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null) {
  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(PRODUCT_TYPE_AMI)
    .maxResults(10)
    .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
  productEntityList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
 }

 // loop through each product entity and get the public released offers
associated using product id filter

 for ( EntitySummary productEntitySummary : productEntityList) {
  EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
    EntityTypeFilters.builder()
    .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
      .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
        .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_NONE)
        .build())
      .state(OfferStateFilter.builder()
        .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_STATE_RELEASED)
        .build())
```

```
        .productId(OfferProductIdFilter.builder()
          .valueList(productEntitySummary.entityId())
          .build())
        .build())
      .build();

    listEntitiesRequest =
      ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
      .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
      .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
      .maxResults(10)
      .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
      .nextToken(null)
      .build();

    listEntitiesResponse =
  marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

    // save all entitySummary of the results into entitySummaryList

    List<EntitySummary> offerEntitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

    offerEntitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

    while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
  listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
     listEntitiesRequest =
       ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
       .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
       .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
       .maxResults(10)
       .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
       .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
       .build();
     listEntitiesResponse =
  marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
     offerEntitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
    }

    // save final results into map; key = product id; value = offer entity summary
  list

    allProductsWithOffers.put(productEntitySummary.entityId(),
  offerEntitySummaryList);
```

```
  }
  return allProductsWithOffers;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to display information about AMI
 products and their associated offers in the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-27
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

try:
    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")
except ClientError as e:
```

```
    logger.error("Could not create boto3 client.")
    raise


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def describe_entity(entity_id):
    """
    Returns entity details
    Args: entity_id str: The entity ID of the product or offer
    Returns: dict: The entity details
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace", EntityId=entity_id
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete describe_entity request.")
        raise

    # De-stringify the details
    response["Details"] = json.loads(response["Details"])

    return response


def get_entities(entity_type, visibility=None):
    """
    Returns list of entities for provided entity_type
    Args: entity_type str: Type of entity list to return, in our case AmiProduct
 or Offer
    Returns: list: Abbreviated list of entity information
    """
    EntitySummaryList = []

    # Get the first page of results
    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityType=entity_type,
            MaxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
```

```
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request.")
        raise

    EntitySummaryList.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

    # Get subsequent pages of results if previous response contained a NextToken
    while "NextToken" in response:
        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType=entity_type,
                MaxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                NextToken=response["NextToken"],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request.")
            raise

        EntitySummaryList.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

    # if visibility is provided, filter the list to only include entities with
 that visibility
    if visibility is not None:
        EntitySummaryList = [
            entity for entity in EntitySummaryList if entity["Visibility"] ==
 visibility
        ]

    return EntitySummaryList


def get_enhanced_product_list(entity_type):
    """
    Returns an enhanced list of products with product details and offer details
    Args: entity_type str: Type of entity list to return, in our case AmiProduct
    Returns: list: Enhanced list of dictionary objects containing product and
 offer details
    """

    product_list = get_entities(entity_type)

    # Loop through product list and append product details to each product
```

```
    for product in product_list:
        # appends product details to product dictionary
        product["ProductDetails"] = describe_entity(product["EntityId"])
["Details"]
        # creating an empty list for offer details
        product["OfferDetailsList"] = []

    return product_list


def attach_offer_details(product_list):
    """
    Loops through offer information and appends offer details to product list
    Args: product_list list: List of product dictionaries
    Returns: list: Enhanced list of dictionary objects containing product and
 offer details
    """
    offer_list = get_entities("Offer", "Public")

    # Loop through offer list and append offer details to each product
    for offer in offer_list:
        offer["OfferDetails"] = describe_entity(offer["EntityId"])["Details"]

        # Extracts product-id from offer
        product_id = offer["OfferDetails"]["ProductId"]

        # Determines if product-id referenced in offer matches product-id in
 product list
        product_dict = next(
            filter(lambda product: product["EntityId"] == product_id,
 product_list),
            None,
        )

        # If product-id matches, appends offer details to product dictionary
        if product_dict is not None:
            # logger.info(f"Offer product Id {offer['OfferDetails']['ProductId']}
 found in product dictionary. Updating product dictionary with offer details")
            product_dict["OfferDetailsList"].append(offer["OfferDetails"])

        else:
            # logger.info("Offer product Id {offer['OfferDetails']['ProductId']}
 not found. Skipping offer details update")
            pass
```

```
    return product_list


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Retrieving products and public offer information....")
    print("-" * 88)

    # Builds a list of products and their details
    product_list = get_enhanced_product_list("AmiProduct")

    # Queries offer information and attaches it to the product list
    product_offer_list = attach_offer_details(product_list)

    pretty_print(product_offer_list)
    return product_offer_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Resale authorization for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Create draft resale authorization for any product type using an AWS SDK
- Describe a resale authorization using an AWS SDK
- Publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date using an AWS SDK

- Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and a EULA to be sent to the buyer using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiration and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and add a custom EULA using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK
- Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiration date and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization and add Flexible payment schedule using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a EULA using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK
- Publish one-time resale authorization for and add whether it is a renewal using an AWS SDK
- Restrict resale authorization using an AWS SDK
- Update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization using an AWS SDK

Create draft resale authorization for any product type using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create draft resale authorization for any product type so you can review them internally before publishing to a Channel Partner.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product so my CP
 can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-41
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "draft resale auth")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Describe a resale authorization using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to describe a resale authorization.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class DescribeEntity {

 /*
  * Describe my AMI or SaaS or Container product and check if it contains all the
 information I need to know about the product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String offerId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OFFER_ID;

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 getDescribeEntityResponse(offerId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }

 public static DescribeEntityResponse getDescribeEntityResponse(String offerId) {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId)
    .build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  return describeEntityResponse;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) search for product information in
 the AWS Marketplace Catalog
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

resaleAuthorizationId = "resaleauthz-1111111111111"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_product_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given product
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
```

```
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of product information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Product with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for a product in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    pretty_print(get_product_information(mp_client, resaleAuthorizationId))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer so a Channel Partner can use it to create a Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO).

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
```

```
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
```

```
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product so my CP
can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-42
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set, "onetime resale auth with private offer"
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for an AMI product with hourly annual pricing so a Channel Partner can use it to create a CPPO.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
```

```
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
```

```
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with expiry date on my SaaS/AMI product
 so my CP can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-48
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "multi-use resale auth with expiry date")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and a EULA to be sent to the buyer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
```

```
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
```

```
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/
Container product and add custom EULA to be sent to the buyer
CAPI-56
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "multiuse resale auth with expiry date and custom
 EULA")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"}
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
```

```
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"}
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleUsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/
Container product
and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and channel partner
CAPI-57
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "multi use resale auth with contract doc",
    )

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiration and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
```

```
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiry date for any product type
 (AMI/SaaS/Container) and add specific buyer account for the resale
CAPI-82
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiry date and add specific
 buyer account",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for an AMI product with hourly annual pricing so a CP can use that to create a CPPO.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with no expiry date on my SaaS/AMI
 product so my CP can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-52
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "multi use resale auth with no expiry date")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and add a custom EULA using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
```

```
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with no expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/
Container product and add custom EULA to be sent to the buyer
CAPI-58
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "multi use resale auth with no expiry date and custom EULA"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
```

```
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
```

```
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with no expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/
Container product and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and
 channel partner
CAPI-59
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "multi use resale auth with no expiry date and contract doc"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiration date and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
```

```
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiry date for any product type
 (AMI/SaaS/Container) and add specific buyer account for the resale
CAPI-83
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "publish multi-use resale authorization without expiry date and add
 specific buyer account",
    )
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add Flexible payment schedule using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add Flexible payment schedule.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleFixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.00",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                          {
                            "DimensionKey": "Users",
                            "MaxQuantity": 10
                          }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResalePaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
```

```
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-09-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-12-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "250.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-06-30",
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleFixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.00",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                          {
                            "DimensionKey": "Users",
                            "MaxQuantity": 10
                          }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResalePaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-09-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-12-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "250.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-06-30",
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
 and add Flexible payment schedule
CAPI-78
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale auth with flexible payment
 schedule")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a EULA using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
```

```
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
```

```
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product and add
 custom EULA to be sent to the buyer
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale auth with custom EULA")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add a specific buyer account for the resale using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
```

```
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": "1"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
```

```
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
 and add specific buyer account for the resale
CAPI-81
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)
```

```
def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale authorization for specific buyer
 account")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add reseller contract documentation using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product and add
 reseller contract documentation between the ISV and channel partner
CAPI-47
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale auth with reseller contract doc")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization for and add whether it is a renewal using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add whether it is a renewal.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "222222222222"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "PreExistingBuyerAgreement": {
                    "AcquisitionChannel": "AwsMarketplace",
                    "PricingModel": "Contract"
                }
             }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "222222222222"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "PreExistingBuyerAgreement": {
                    "AcquisitionChannel": "AwsMarketplace",
                    "PricingModel": "Contract"
                }
             }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
and add whether it is renewal or not
CAPI-90
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(stringified_change_set, "onetime resale auth
 renewal")

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Restrict resale authorization using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to restrict resale authorization.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Restrict a  authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
CAPI-84
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
```

```
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Restrict resale authorization")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization before publishing for any product type.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
             "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
             "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
             "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
             "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
             "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Update name/description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization before
 publishing for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
CAPI-77
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale
 authorization before publishing",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SaaS products for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK
- Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing using an AWS SDK

- Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing using an AWS SDK
- Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing using an AWS SDK
- Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer using an AWS SDK
- Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer from an existing draft using an AWS SDK
- Update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product using an AWS SDK

Create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
              "ProductTitle": "Sample product"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an SaaS draft product
with a draft public offer.
CAPI-04
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create a draft saas product with a draft public offer",
    )

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
```

```
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
```

```
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a
public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing and
 standard EULA
CAPI-11
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create a limited saas product with a public offer with contract
 pricing",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
```

```
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
```

```
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
```

```
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a
public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with PAYG pricing
 and standard EULA
CAPI-10
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create limited SaaS product with public offer with contract with payg
 pricing",
    )
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing. This examples creates either a standard or custom EULA.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
```

```
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
```

```
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a
public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription(usage) pricing
 and standard EULA
CAPI-09
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "public saas public offer with subscription
 pricing")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish a SaaS product and associated public offer. The product will be in a limited state by default.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://bucketname.s3.amazonaws.com/logo.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
```

```
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl": "https://www.aws.amazon.com/
marketplace/management"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New Test Offer",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
```

```
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://bucketname.s3.amazonaws.com/logo.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
```

```
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
```

```
                                "FulfillmentUrl": "https://www.aws.amazon.com/
marketplace/management"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New Test Offer",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
```

```
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish my SaaS product and associated public offer (product will be in limited
 state by default)
CAPI-05A
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
```

```
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset1.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "publish saas product and associated public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer from an existing draft using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to publish a SaaS product and associated public offer from an existing draft. The product will be in a limited state by default.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateVisibility",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "TargetVisibility": "Public"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "prod-111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Name": "Some new name",
                    "Description": "Some new description"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Types": [
```

```
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Name": "Some new name",
                    "Description": "Some new description"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update (e.g name) dimensions
 on my AMI or SaaS product
CAPI-24
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Update name dimensions on my AMI or SaaS product",
    )
```

```
    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Utilities for AWS Marketplace Catalog API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Catalog API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Utilities to start a changeset using an AWS SDK

Utilities to start a changeset using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to define utilities to start a changeset.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

Utility to load a changeset from a JSON file and start processing it.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import org.apache.commons.io.IOUtils;
import org.apache.commons.lang3.StringUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.protocols.json.internal.unmarshall.document.DocumentUnmarshaller;
import software.amazon.awssdk.protocols.jsoncore.JsonNodeParser;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.Change;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.Entity;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.StartChangeSetRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.StartChangeSetResponse;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import com.google.gson.ToNumberPolicy;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi.Entity.ChangeSet;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi.Entity.ChangeSetEntity;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi.Entity.Root;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.StringSerializer;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, convert all Details attribute to
 DetailsDocument if any
 */

public class RunChangesets {

 private static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder()
   .setObjectToNumberStrategy(ToNumberPolicy.LAZILY_PARSED_NUMBER)
   .registerTypeAdapter(String.class, new StringSerializer())
   .create();

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  // input json can be specified here or passed from input parameter
  String inputChangeSetFile = "changeSets/offers/
CreateReplacementOfferFromAGWithContractPricingDetailDocument.json";
```

```
 if (args.length > 0)
  inputChangeSetFile = args[0];

 // parse the input changeset file to string for process
 String changeSetsInput = readChangeSetToString(inputChangeSetFile);

 // process the changeset request
 try {
  StartChangeSetResponse result = getChangeSetRequestResult(changeSetsInput);
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(result);
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }
}

public static StartChangeSetResponse getChangeSetRequestResult(String
changeSetsInput) throws IOException {

 //set up AWS credentials
 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 //changeset list to save all the changesets in the changesets file
 List<Change> changeSetLists = new ArrayList<Change>();

 // read all changesets into object
 Root root = GSON.fromJson(changeSetsInput, Root.class);

 // process each changeset and add each changeset request to changesets list
 for (ChangeSet cs : root.changeSet) {

  ChangeSetEntity entity = cs.Entity;
  String entityType = entity.Type;
  String entityIdentifier = StringUtils.defaultIfBlank(entity.Identifier, null);
  Document detailsDocument = getDocumentFromObject(cs.DetailsDocument);

  Entity awsEntity =
    Entity.builder()
    .type(entityType)
    .identifier(entityIdentifier)
```

```
      .build();

   Change inputChangeRequest =
     Change.builder()
     .changeType(cs.ChangeType)
     .changeName(cs.ChangeName)
     .entity(awsEntity)
     .detailsDocument(detailsDocument)
     .build();

   changeSetLists.add(inputChangeRequest);
  }

  // process all changeset requests
  StartChangeSetRequest startChangeSetRequest =
    StartChangeSetRequest.builder()
    .catalog(root.catalog)
    .changeSet(changeSetLists)
    .build();

  StartChangeSetResponse result =
marketplaceCatalogClient.startChangeSet(startChangeSetRequest);

  return result;
}

public static Document getDocumentFromObject(Object detailsObject) {

  String detailsString = "{}";
  try {
   detailsString = IOUtils.toString(new
ByteArrayInputStream(GSON.toJson(detailsObject).getBytes()), "UTF-8");
  } catch (IOException e) {
   e.printStackTrace();
  }

  JsonNodeParser jsonNodeParser = JsonNodeParser.create();
  Document doc = jsonNodeParser.parse(detailsString).visit(new
DocumentUnmarshaller());
  return doc;
}


public static String readChangeSetToString (String inputChangeSetFile) {
```

```
  InputStream changesetInputStream =
 RunChangesets.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream(inputChangeSetFile);

  String changeSetsInput = null;

  try {
   changeSetsInput = IOUtils.toString(changesetInputStream, "UTF-8");
  } catch (IOException e) {
   e.printStackTrace();
  }

  return changeSetsInput;

 }
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

Utility to start a changeset.

```
"""
Purpose:

Generic function to start a changeset
"""

import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def generate_changeset(mp_client, change_set, change_set_name):
    """
    Start changeset
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.start_change_set(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            ChangeSet=change_set,
            ChangeSetName=change_set_name,
        )
        logger.info("Changeset created!")
        logger.info("ChangeSet ID: %s", response["ChangeSetId"])
        logger.info("ChangeSet ARN: %s", response["ChangeSetArn"])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error: %s", e)
        raise


def usage_demo(change_set, change_set_name):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Executing changeset: " + change_set_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    response = generate_changeset(mp_client, change_set, change_set_name)

    return response

    print("-" * 88)
```

Utility to load a changeset from a JSON file.

```
"""
Purpose:

This module will stringify the details sections of a changeset file.
"""

import json


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


# open json file from path
def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


def stringify_details_sections(json_object):
    """
    Loops through every change type in the changeset to look for non-empty
    details section and stringifies them
    """
    for change_type in json_object["ChangeSet"]:
        # Only stringify details section if it is not empty
        if "Details" in change_type and change_type["Details"] != "{}":
            string_details = json.dumps(change_type["Details"])
            change_type["Details"] = string_details
        else:
            pass

    return json_object["ChangeSet"]


def stringify_changeset(file_path):
    changeset_file = open_json_file(file_path)
    changeset_stringified = stringify_details_sections(changeset_file)

    return changeset_stringified
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for AWS Marketplace Agreement API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Marketplace Agreement API with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

More resources

- **AWS Marketplace Agreement API Seller Guide** – More information about AWS Marketplace Agreement API.
- **AWS Marketplace Agreement API API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Marketplace Agreement API actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Agreements for AWS Marketplace Agreement API
  - Get all agreement IDs using an AWS SDK
  - Get all agreements using an AWS SDK
  - Get customer ID from an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get financial details from an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get free trial details from an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get information about an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get product and offer details from an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get the EULA of an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get the auto renewal terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get the dimensions purchased in an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get the payment schedule of an agreement using an AWS SDK
  - Get the pricing per dimension in an agreement using an AWS SDK

- Get the pricing type of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the product type of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the status of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the support terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by account ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by agreement ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by end date using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by offer ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by product ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by status using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements with one custom filter using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements with two custom filters using an AWS SDK

Agreements for AWS Marketplace Agreement API

The following code examples show how to use AWS Marketplace Agreement API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Get all agreement IDs using an AWS SDK
- Get all agreements using an AWS SDK
- Get customer ID from an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get financial details from an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get free trial details from an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get information about an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get product and offer details from an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the EULA of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the auto renewal terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the dimensions purchased in an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the payment schedule of an agreement using an AWS SDK

- Get the pricing per dimension in an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the pricing type of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the product type of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the status of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the support terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Get the terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by account ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by agreement ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by end date using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by offer ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by product ID using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements by status using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements with one custom filter using an AWS SDK
- Search for agreements with two custom filters using an AWS SDK

Get all agreement IDs using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get all agreement IDs.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAllAgreementsIds {

 /*
  * Get all purchase agreements ids with party type = proposer;
  * Depend on the number of agreements in your account, this code may take some
 time to finish.
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<String> agreementIds = getAllAgreementIds();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementIds);

 }

 public static List<String> getAllAgreementIds() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  // get all filters
  Filter partyType = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementType = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
```

```
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

  List<Filter> searchFilters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

  searchFilters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyType, agreementType));

  // Save all results in a list array
  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
 ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

  SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(searchFilters)
    .build();

  SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

  while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   searchAgreementsRequest =
     SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
     .filters(searchFilters)
     .build();
   searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
  }

  List<String> agreementIds = new ArrayList<String>();
  for (AgreementViewSummary summary : agreementSummaryList) {
   agreementIds.add(summary.agreementId());
  }
  return agreementIds;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get all agreement ids
AG-09
"""

import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10


def get_agreements():
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    agreement_id_list = []

    try:
        agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
```

```
            filters=[
                {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
            ],
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise

    AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreements and agreements["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreements["nextToken"],
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    for agreement in AgreementSummaryList:
        agreement_id_list.append(agreement["agreementId"])

    return agreement_id_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreement_id_list = get_agreements()

    print(agreement_id_list)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get all agreements using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get all agreements.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAllAgreements {

 /*
  * Get all purchase agreements with party type = proposer;
```

```
 * Depend on the number of agreements in your account, this code may take some
time to finish.
 */
public static void main(String[] args) {

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAllAgreements();

 ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);
}

public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAllAgreements() {
 MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
   MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 // get all filters

 Filter partyType = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
   .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

 Filter agreementType = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
   .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

 List<Filter> searchFilters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

 searchFilters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyType, agreementType));

 // Save all results in a list array

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
   SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .filters(searchFilters)
   .build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
```

```
  while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   searchAgreementsRequest =
     SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
     .filters(searchFilters).build();
   searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
  }
  return agreementSummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get all agreements
AG-01
"""

import logging

import boto3
```

```
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

party_type_list = ["Proposer"]
agreement_type_list = ["PurchaseAgreement"]

filter_list = [
    {"name": "PartyType", "values": party_type_list},
    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": agreement_type_list},
]

agreement_results_list = []


def get_agreements(filter_list=filter_list):
    try:
        agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=filter_list,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise e

    agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreements and agreements["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreements["nextToken"],
                filters=filter_list,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e
```

```
        agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return agreement_results_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreements_list = get_agreements(filter_list)
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(agreements_list)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get customer ID from an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get customer ID from an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;
```

```
public class GetAgreementCustomerInfo {

 /*
  * Obtain metadata about the customer who created the agreement, such as the
 customer's AWS Account ID
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 getDescribeAgreementResponse(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Customer's AWS Account ID is " +
 describeAgreementResponse.acceptor().accountId());

 }

 public static DescribeAgreementResponse getDescribeAgreementResponse(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);
  return describeAgreementResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get customer AWS account id
from a given agreement
AG-08
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
            raise e
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)
            raise e

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreement_information(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    print(f"Customer account: {response['acceptor']['accountId']}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get financial details from an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get financial details from an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class GetAgreementFinancialDetails {

 /*
  * Obtain financial details, such as Total Contract Value of the agreement from
 a given agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  String totalContractValue = getTotalContractValue(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Total Contract Value is " + totalContractValue);

 }

 public static String getTotalContractValue(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);

  String totalContractValue = "N/A";

  if ( describeAgreementResponse.estimatedCharges() != null ) {
   totalContractValue =
 describeAgreementResponse.estimatedCharges().agreementValue()
     + " "
```

```
      + describeAgreementResponse.estimatedCharges().currencyCode();
   }
   return totalContractValue;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain financial details, such as Total Contract Value of the agreementfrom a
 given agreement
AG-14

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_financial_details.py --agreement-id
 <agreement-id>
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")
```

```
def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    try:
        agreement = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)

        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    agreement = get_agreement_information(args.agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        print(f"Agreement Id: {args.agreement_id}")
        print(
            f"Agreement Value: {agreement['estimatedCharges']['currencyCode']}
 {agreement['estimatedCharges']['agreementValue']}"
        )

    else:
        print(f"Agreement with ID {args.agreement_id} is not found")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get free trial details from an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get free trial details from an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.FreeTrialPricingTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsFreeTrialDetails {

 /*
  * Obtain the details from an agreement of a free trial I have provided to the
 customer
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<FreeTrialPricingTerm> freeTrialPricingTerms =
 getFreeTrialPricingTerms(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(freeTrialPricingTerms);
 }

 public static List<FreeTrialPricingTerm> getFreeTrialPricingTerms(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
     .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<FreeTrialPricingTerm> freeTrialPricingTerms = new
 ArrayList<FreeTrialPricingTerm>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.freeTrialPricingTerm() != null) {
    freeTrialPricingTerms.add(acceptedTerm.freeTrialPricingTerm());
   }
  }
  return freeTrialPricingTerms;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the details from an agreement of a free trial I have provided to the
 customer
AG-20

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_free_trial_details.py --agreement-id
 <agreement-id>
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")


def get_agreement_terms(agreement_id):
    try:
        agreement = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=agreement_id)
        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
```

```
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    agreement = get_agreement_terms(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        freetrial_found = False

        for term in agreement["acceptedTerms"]:
            if "freeTrialPricingTerm" in term.keys():
                helper.pretty_print_datetime(term)
                freetrial_found = True

        if not freetrial_found:
            print(f"No free trial term found for agreement: {args.agreement_id}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get information about an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get information about an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class DescribeAgreement {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse = getResponse(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeAgreementResponse);

 }

 public static DescribeAgreementResponse getResponse(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
```

```
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);
  return describeAgreementResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get agreement information
AG-07
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
            raise e
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)
            raise e

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreement_information(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(response)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get product and offer details from an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get product and offer details from an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Resource;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class GetProductAndOfferDetailFromAgreement {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  // call Agreement API to get offer and product information for the agreement
```

```
 String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

 List<DescribeEntityResponse> entityResponseList = getEntities(agreementId);

 for (DescribeEntityResponse response : entityResponseList) {
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
 }
}

public static List<DescribeEntityResponse> getEntities(String agreementId) {
 List<DescribeEntityResponse> entityResponseList = new
ArrayList<DescribeEntityResponse> ();

 MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
   MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
   DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
   .agreementId(agreementId)
   .build();

 DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);

 // get offer id for the given agreement

 String offerId = describeAgreementResponse.proposalSummary().offerId();

 // get all the product ids for this agreement

 List<String> productIds = new ArrayList<String>();
 for (Resource resource :
describeAgreementResponse.proposalSummary().resources()) {
  productIds.add(resource.id());
 }

 // call Catalog API to get the details of the offer and products

 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
```

```
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId).build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);

  entityResponseList.add(describeEntityResponse);

  for (String productId : productIds) {
   describeEntityRequest =
     DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityId(productId).build();
   describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
   System.out.println("Print details for product " + productId);
   entityResponseList.add(describeEntityResponse);
  }
  return entityResponseList;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get product and offer details
 in a given agreement
AG-10
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mpa_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")
mpc_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given agreement
    Args: agreement_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        agreement = mpa_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)

        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def get_entity_information(entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given entity
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
```

```
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of entity information
    """

    try:
        response = mpc_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def get_agreement_components(agreement_id):
    agreement_component_list = []

    agreement = get_agreement_information(agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        productIds = []
        for resource in agreement["proposalSummary"]["resources"]:
            productIds.append(resource["id"])

        for product_id in productIds:
            product_document = get_entity_information(product_id)

            product_document_dict = {}
            product_document_dict["product_id"] = product_id
            product_document_dict["document"] = product_document
            agreement_component_list.append(product_document_dict)

        offerId = agreement["proposalSummary"]["offerId"]

        offer_document = get_entity_information(offerId)

        offer_document_dict = {}
        offer_document_dict["offer_id"] = offerId
        offer_document_dict["document"] = offer_document
        agreement_component_list.append(offer_document_dict)
```

```
        return agreement_component_list

    else:
        print("Agreement with ID " + args.agreement_id + " is not found")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement_id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to search for product and offer detail",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    product_offer_detail =
 get_agreement_components(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(product_offer_detail)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the EULA of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the EULA of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DocumentItem;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsEula {

 /*
  * Obtain the EULA I have entered into with my customer via the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<DocumentItem> legalEulaArray = getLegalEula(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(legalEulaArray);
 }

 public static List<DocumentItem> getLegalEula(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();
```

```
  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<DocumentItem> legalEulaArray = new ArrayList<>();

  getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms().stream()
      .filter(acceptedTerm -> acceptedTerm.legalTerm() != null &&
 acceptedTerm.legalTerm().hasDocuments())
      .flatMap(acceptedTerm -> acceptedTerm.legalTerm().documents().stream())
      .filter(docItem -> docItem.type() != null)
      .forEach(legalEulaArray::add);
  return legalEulaArray;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the EULA I have entered into with my customer via the agreement
AG-18
"""

import json
import logging
import os
```

```
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "legalTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "documents"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__),
 SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        legalEulaArray = []
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term and ATTRIBUTE_NAME in term[TERM_NAME]:
                docs = term[TERM_NAME][ATTRIBUTE_NAME]
                for doc in docs:
                    if "type" in doc:
                        legalEulaArray.append(doc)
        return legalEulaArray
```

```
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client,
 AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the auto renewal terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the auto renewal terms of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

public class GetAgreementAutoRenewal {

 /*
  * Obtain the auto-renewal status of the agreement
  */

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  String autoRenewal = getAutoRenewal(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Auto-Renewal status is " + autoRenewal);
 }

 public static String getAutoRenewal(String agreementId) {
```

```
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  String autoRenewal = "No Auto Renewal";

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.renewalTerm() != null &&
 acceptedTerm.renewalTerm().configuration() != null
     && acceptedTerm.renewalTerm().configuration().enableAutoRenew() != null) {
    autoRenewal =
 String.valueOf(acceptedTerm.renewalTerm().configuration().enableAutoRenew().booleanValue
    break;
   }
  }
  return autoRenewal;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the auto-renewal status of the agreement
AG-15
"""

import json
import logging
import os
import utils.helpers as helper


import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-11111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "renewalTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "enableAutoRenew"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
```

```
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__),
 SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        auto_renewal = "No Auto Renewal"
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                if CONFIG_ELEM in term[TERM_NAME]:
                    auto_renewal = term[TERM_NAME][CONFIG_ELEM][ATTRIBUTE_NAME]
                    break
        return auto_renewal

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    agreement = get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID)

    if agreement is not None:
        print(f"Auto Renewal is {agreement}")
    else:
        print("Agreement with ID " + AGREEMENT_ID + " is not found")


# open json file from path
def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the dimensions purchased in an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the dimensions purchased in an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Dimension;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
```

```
public class GetAgreementTermsDimensionPurchased {

 /*
  * Obtain the dimensions the buyer has purchased from me via the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<String> dimensionKeys = getDimensionKeys(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(dimensionKeys);
 }

 public static List<String> getDimensionKeys(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<String> dimensionKeys = new ArrayList<String>();
  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm() != null) {
    if
 (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().selectorValue() !
= null) {
     List<Dimension> dimensions =
 acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().dimensions();
     for (Dimension dimension : dimensions) {
      dimensionKeys.add(dimension.dimensionKey());
     }
    }

   }
  }
  return dimensionKeys;
```

```
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the dimensions the buyer has purchased from me via the agreement
AG-28
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
```

```
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__),
 SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        dimensionKeys = []

        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                if CONFIG_ELEM in term[TERM_NAME]:
                    confParam = term[TERM_NAME][CONFIG_ELEM]
                    if ATTRIBUTE_NAME in confParam:
                        if "dimensions" in confParam:
                            for dimension in confParam["dimensions"]:
                                if "dimensionKey" in dimension:
                                    dimensionKey = dimension["dimensionKey"]
                                    print(f"Dimension Key: {dimensionKey}")
                                    dimensionKeys.append(dimensionKey)
        return dimensionKeys

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
```

```
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client,
 AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Dimension;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsDimensionInstances {

 /*
  * get instances of each dimension that buyer has purchased in the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  Map<String, List<Dimension>> dimensionMap = getDimensions(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(dimensionMap);
 }

 public static Map<String, List<Dimension>> getDimensions(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
```

```
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  Map<String, List<Dimension>> dimensionMap = new HashMap<String,
 List<Dimension>>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   List<Dimension> dimensionsList = new ArrayList<Dimension>();
   if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm() != null) {
    String selectorValue = "";
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration() != null) {
     if
 (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().selectorValue() !
= null) {
      selectorValue =
 acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().selectorValue();
     }
     if
 (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().hasDimensions())
 {
      dimensionsList =
 acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().dimensions();
     }
    }
    if (selectorValue.length() > 0) {
     dimensionMap.put(selectorValue, dimensionsList);
    }
   }
  }
  return dimensionMap;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain instances of each dimension that buyer has purchased in the agreement
AG-30
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
```

```
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)
        dimensionKeyValueMap = {}
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                if CONFIG_ELEM in term[TERM_NAME]:
                    confParam = term[TERM_NAME][CONFIG_ELEM]
                    if ATTRIBUTE_NAME in confParam:
                        selectValue = confParam["selectorValue"]
                        dimensionKeyValueMap["selectorValue"] = selectValue
                        if "dimensions" in confParam:
                            dimensionKeyValueMap["dimensions"] =
 confParam["dimensions"]
                            """
                            for dimension in confParam['dimensions']:
                                if 'dimensionKey' in dimension:

                                    dimensionValue = dimension['dimensionValue']
                                    dimensionKey = dimension['dimensionKey']
                                    print(f"Selector: {selectValue}, Dimension
 Key: {dimensionKey}, Dimension Value: {dimensionValue}")
                                    dimensionKeyValueMap[dimensionKey] =
 dimensionValue
                            """
        return dimensionKeyValueMap

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")
```

```
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client,
 AGREEMENT_ID))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the payment schedule of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the payment schedule of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.PaymentScheduleTerm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.ScheduleItem;
```

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsPaymentSchedule {

 /*
  * Obtain the payment schedule I have agreed to with the agreement, including
 the invoice date and invoice amount
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<Map<String, Object>> paymentScheduleArray =
 getPaymentSchedules(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(paymentScheduleArray);
 }

 public static List<Map<String, Object>> getPaymentSchedules(String agreementId)
 {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);
  List<Map<String, Object>> paymentScheduleArray = new ArrayList<>();

  String currencyCode = "";

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.paymentScheduleTerm() != null) {
```

```
    PaymentScheduleTerm paymentScheduleTerm = acceptedTerm.paymentScheduleTerm();
    if (paymentScheduleTerm.currencyCode() != null) {
     currencyCode = paymentScheduleTerm.currencyCode();
    }
    if (paymentScheduleTerm.hasSchedule()) {
     for (ScheduleItem schedule : paymentScheduleTerm.schedule()) {
      if (schedule.chargeDate() != null) {
       String chargeDate = schedule.chargeDate().toString();
       String chargeAmount = schedule.chargeAmount();
       Map<String, Object> scheduleMap = new HashMap<>();
       scheduleMap.put(ATTRIBUTE_CURRENCY_CODE, currencyCode);
       scheduleMap.put(ATTRIBUTE_CHARGE_DATE, chargeDate);
       scheduleMap.put(ATTRIBUTE_CHARGE_AMOUNT, chargeAmount);
       paymentScheduleArray.add(scheduleMap);
      }
     }
    }
   }
  }
  return paymentScheduleArray;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the payment schedule I have agreed to with the agreement, including the
 invoice date and invoice amount
```

```
AG-17
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-11111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "paymentScheduleTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__),
 SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        paymentScheduleArray = []
        currencyCode = ""
```

```
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                paymentSchedule = term[TERM_NAME]
                if "currencyCode" in paymentSchedule:
                    currencyCode = paymentSchedule["currencyCode"]
                if "schedule" in paymentSchedule:
                    for sch in paymentSchedule["schedule"]:
                        if "chargeDate" in sch:
                            chargeDate = sch["chargeDate"]
                            chargeAmount = sch["chargeAmount"]
                            # print(f"chargeDate: {chargeDate}, chargeAmount:
 {chargeAmount}")
                            schedule = {
                                "currencyCode": currencyCode,
                                "chargeDate": chargeDate,
                                "chargeAmount": chargeAmount,
                            }
                            paymentScheduleArray.append(schedule)

        return paymentScheduleArray

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client,
 AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
```

```
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the pricing per dimension in an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the pricing per dimension in an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsPricingEachDimension {

 /*
  * Obtain pricing per each dimension in the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<Object> dimensions = getDimensions(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(dimensions);
 }

 public static List<Object> getDimensions(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<Object> dimensions = new ArrayList<Object>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   List<Object> rateInfo = new ArrayList<Object>();
   if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm() != null) {
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().type() != null) {
     rateInfo.add(acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().type());
    }
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().currencyCode() != null) {
     rateInfo.add(acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().currencyCode());
    }
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().hasRateCards()) {
```

```
      rateInfo.add(acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().rateCards());
     }
     dimensions.add(rateInfo);
    }
   }
   return dimensions;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain pricing per each dimension in the agreement
AG-29
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-11111111111111111111111111"
```

```
# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"

TERMS_TO_SEARCH = [
    "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
    "usageBasedPricingTerm",
    "fixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
]


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__),
 SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        dimentions = []
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            for t in TERMS_TO_SEARCH:
                rateInfo = []
                if t in term:
                    if "type" in term[t]:
                        rateInfo.append(term[t]["type"])
                    if "currencyCode" in term[t]:
                        rateInfo.append(term[t]["currencyCode"])
                    if "rateCards" in term[t]:
                        rateInfo.append(term[t]["rateCards"])
```

```
                    dimentions.append(rateInfo)
        return dimentions

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client,
 AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the pricing type of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the pricing type of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import com.fasterxml.jackson.annotation.JsonAutoDetect.Visibility;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.HashSet;
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.Set;
```

```
import org.apache.commons.lang3.tuple.Triple;

import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.annotation.PropertyAccessor;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonProcessingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectWriter;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.datatype.jsr310.JavaTimeModule;

/*
 * Obtain the pricing type of the agreement (contract, FPS, metered, free etc.)
 */
public class GetAgreementPricingType {

 private static final String FILTER_NAME = "OfferId";

 private static final String FILTER_VALUE = OFFER_ID;

 // Product types
 private static final String SAAS_PRODUCT = "SaaSProduct";
 private static final String AMI_PRODUCT = "AmiProduct";
 private static final String ML_PRODUCT = "MachineLearningProduct";
 private static final String CONTAINER_PRODUCT = "ContainerProduct";
 private static final String DATA_PRODUCT = "DataProduct";
 private static final String PROSERVICE_PRODUCT = "ProfessionalServicesProduct";
 private static final String AIQ_PRODUCT = "AiqProduct";

 // Pricing types
 private static final String CCP = "CCP";
 private static final String ANNUAL = "Annual";
 private static final String CONTRACT = "Contract";
 private static final String SFT = "SaaS Free Trial";
 private static final String HMA = "Hourly and Monthly Agreements";
 private static final String HOURLY = "Hourly";
 private static final String MONTHLY = "Monthly";
```

```
private static final String AFPS = "Annual FPS";
private static final String CFPS = "Contract FPS";
private static final String CCPFPS = "CCP with FPS";
private static final String BYOL = "BYOL";
private static final String FREE = "Free";
private static final String FTH = "Free Trials and Hourly";

// Agreement term pricing types
private static final Set<String> LEGAL = Set.of("LegalTerm");
private static final Set<String> CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT =
Set.of("ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> USAGE_BASED = Set.of("UsageBasedPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED =
Set.of("ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> FREE_TRIAL = Set.of("FreeTrialPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> RECURRING_PAYMENT =
Set.of("RecurringPaymentTerm");
private static final Set<String> USAGE_BASED_AND_RECURRING_PAYMENT =
Set.of("UsageBasedPricingTerm", "RecurringPaymentTerm");
private static final Set<String> FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE =
Set.of("FixedUpfrontPricingTerm", "PaymentScheduleTerm");
private static final Set<String>
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED =
Set.of("FixedUpfrontPricingTerm", "PaymentScheduleTerm",
"UsageBasedPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> BYOL_PRICING = Set.of("ByolPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED =
Set.of("FreeTrialPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm");

private static final List<Set<String>> ALL_AGREEMENT_TERM_TYPES_COMBINATION
= Arrays.asList(LEGAL, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, USAGE_BASED,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED,
  FREE_TRIAL, RECURRING_PAYMENT, USAGE_BASED_AND_RECURRING_PAYMENT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, BYOL_PRICING,
FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED);

private static  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
  MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
  .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
  .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
  .build();

private static MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
```

```
  MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
  .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
  .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
  .build();

   /*
    * Get agreement Pricing Type given product type, agreement term types and
offer types if needed
    */
public static String getPricingType(String productType, Set<String>
agreementTermType, Set<String> offerType) {
 Map<Triple<String, Set<String>, Set<String>>, String> pricingTypes = new
HashMap<>();

 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED,
new HashSet<>()), CCP);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED,
new HashSet<>()), CCP);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED), ANNUAL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED), ANNUAL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED), ANNUAL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new
HashSet<>()), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new
HashSet<>()), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new HashSet<>()),
CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new
HashSet<>()), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL, new HashSet<>()), SFT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED_AND_RECURRING_PAYMENT, new
HashSet<>()), HMA);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()),
HOURLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), HOURLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), HOURLY);
```

```
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, RECURRING_PAYMENT, new
HashSet<>()), MONTHLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, RECURRING_PAYMENT, new HashSet<>()),
MONTHLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED), AFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED), AFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new
HashSet<>()), AFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
new HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
new HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new
HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()),
BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()),
BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, LEGAL, new HashSet<>()), FREE);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), FTH);
```

```
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), FTH);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), FTH);

 Triple<String, Set<String>, Set<String>> key = Triple.of(productType,
agreementTermType, offerType);

 if (pricingTypes.containsKey(key)) {
  return pricingTypes.get(key);
 } else {
  return "Unknown";
 }
}

/*
 * Given product type and agreement term types, some combinations need to check
offer term types as well.
 */
public static String needToCheckOfferTermsType(String productType, Set<String>
agreementTermTypes) {
 Map<KeyPair, String> offerTermTypes = new HashMap<>();
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), "Y");
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(AMI_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), "Y");
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(CONTAINER_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE), "Y");
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(AMI_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE), "Y");

 KeyPair key = new KeyPair(productType, agreementTermTypes);
 if (offerTermTypes.containsKey(key)) {
  return offerTermTypes.get(key);
 } else {
  return null;
 }
}

public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreementsById() {

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 Filter partyType =
Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME).values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).b
```

```
 Filter agreementType =
Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME).values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PUR

 Filter customizeFilter =
Filter.builder().name(FILTER_NAME).values(FILTER_VALUE).build();

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
   SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .filters(partyType, agreementType, customizeFilter).build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchResultResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchResultResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

 while (searchResultResponse.nextToken() != null &&
searchResultResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  searchAgreementsRequest =
SearchAgreementsRequest.builder().catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(partyType,
agreementType).nextToken(searchResultResponse.nextToken()).build();
  searchResultResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchResultResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
 }
 return agreementSummaryList;

}

static class KeyPair {
 private final String first;
 private final Set<String> second;

 public KeyPair(String productType, Set<String> second) {
  this.first = productType;
  this.second = second;
 }

 @Override
 public int hashCode() {
  return Objects.hash(first, second);
 }
```

```
 @Override
 public boolean equals(Object obj) {
  if (this == obj)
   return true;
  if (obj == null || getClass() != obj.getClass())
   return false;
  KeyPair other = (KeyPair) obj;
  return Objects.equals(first, other.first) && Objects.equals(second,
other.second);
 }
}

/*
 * Get all the term types for the offer
 */
public static Set<String> getOfferTermTypes(String offerId) {

 Set<String> offerTermTypes = new HashSet<String>();

 DescribeEntityRequest request =
   DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityId(offerId)
   .build();

 DescribeEntityResponse result =
marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(request);

 String details = result.details();

 try {
  ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
  JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(details);
  JsonNode termsNode = rootNode.get(ATTRIBUTE_TERMS);

  for (JsonNode termNode : termsNode) {
   if (termNode.get(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_ENTITY) != null ) {
    offerTermTypes.add(termNode.get(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_ENTITY).asText());
   }
  }
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }
```

```
 return offerTermTypes;

}

/*
 * Get all the agreement term types
 */
public static Set<String> getAgreementTermTypes(GetAgreementTermsResponse
agreementTerm) {
 Set<String> agreementTermTypes = new HashSet<String>();
 try {
  for (AcceptedTerm term : agreementTerm.acceptedTerms()) {
   ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
   JsonNode termNode = objectMapper.readTree(getJson(term));
   Iterator<Map.Entry<String, JsonNode>> fieldsIterator = termNode.fields();
   while (fieldsIterator.hasNext()) {
    Map.Entry<String, JsonNode> entry = fieldsIterator.next();
    JsonNode value = entry.getValue();
    if (value.isObject() && value.has(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_AGREEMENT)) {
     agreementTermTypes.add(value.get(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_AGREEMENT).asText());
    }
   }
  }
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }
 return agreementTermTypes;

}

/*
 * make sure all elements in array2 exist in array1
 */
public static boolean allElementsExist(Set<String> array1, Set<String> array2) {
 for (String element : array2) {
  boolean found = false;
  for (String str : array1) {
   if (element.equals(str)) {
    found = true;
    break;
   }
  }
  if (!found) {
```

```
    return false;
   }
  }
  return true;
 }

 /*
  * Find the combinations of the agreement term types for the agreement
  */
 public static Set<String> getMatchedTermTypesCombination(Set<String>
 agreementTermTypes) {
  Set<String> matchedCombination = new HashSet<String>();
  for (Set<String> element : ALL_AGREEMENT_TERM_TYPES_COMBINATION) {
   if (allElementsExist(agreementTermTypes, element)) {
    matchedCombination = element;
   }
  }
  return matchedCombination;
 }

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreements = getAgreementsById();

  for (AgreementViewSummary summary : agreements) {
   String pricingType = "";
   String agreementId = summary.agreementId();
   System.out.println(agreementId);
   String offerId = summary.proposalSummary().offerId();

   //get all pricing term types for the offer in the agreement
   Set<String> offerTermTypes = getOfferTermTypes(offerId);
   String productType = summary.proposalSummary().resources().get(0).type();

   //get all pricing term types for the agreement
   GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
     GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
     .build();
   GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);
   Set<String> agreementTermTypes =
 getAgreementTermTypes(getAgreementTermsResponse);

   //get matched pricing term type combination set
```

```
    Set<String> agreementMatchedTermType =
  getMatchedTermTypesCombination(agreementTermTypes);

    //check to see if this agreement pricing term combination needs additional
  check on offer pricing terms
    String needToCheckOfferType = needToCheckOfferTermsType(productType,
  agreementMatchedTermType);

    // get the pricing type for the agreement based on the product type, agreement
  term types and offer term types if needed
    if (needToCheckOfferType != null) {
     Set<String> offerMatchedTermType =
  getMatchedTermTypesCombination(offerTermTypes);
     pricingType = getPricingType(productType, agreementMatchedTermType,
  offerMatchedTermType);
    } else if (agreementMatchedTermType == LEGAL) {
     pricingType = FREE;
    } else {
     pricingType = getPricingType(productType, agreementMatchedTermType, new
  HashSet());
    }
    System.out.println("Pricing type is " + pricingType);
   }
  }

  private static String getJson(Object result) {
   String json = "";

   try {
    ObjectMapper om = new ObjectMapper();
    om.setVisibility(PropertyAccessor.FIELD, Visibility.ANY);
    om.registerModule(new JavaTimeModule());
    ObjectWriter ow = om.writer().withDefaultPrettyPrinter();

    json = ow.writeValueAsString(result);
   } catch (JsonProcessingException e) {
    e.printStackTrace();
   }
   return json;
  }

 }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the pricing type of the agreement (contract, FPS, metered, free etc.)
AG-16
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# To search by offer id: OfferId; by product id: ResourceIdentifier; by product
 type: ResourceType
idType = "OfferId"

# replace id value as needed
idValue = "offer-1111111111111"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

# catalog; switch to AWSMarketplace for release
AWSMPCATALOG = "AWSMarketplace"

# product types

SaaSProduct = "SaaSProduct"
AmiProduct = "AmiProduct"
```

```
MLProduct = "MachineLearningProduct"
ContainerProduct = "ContainerProduct"
DataProduct = "DataProduct"
ProServiceProduct = "ProfessionalServicesProduct"
AiqProduct = "AiqProduct"

# Define pricing types
CCP = "CCP"
Annual = "Annual"
Contract = "Contract"
SFT = "SaaS Freee Trial"
HMA = "Hourly and Monthly Agreements"
Hourly = "Hourly"
Monthly = "Monthly"
AFPS = "Annual FPS"
CFPS = "Contract FPS"
CCPFPS = "CCP with FPS"
BYOL = "BYOL"
Free = "Free"
FTH = "Free Trials and Hourly"

# Define Agreement Term Types
legal = ["LegalTerm"]
config = ["ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm"]
usage = ["UsageBasedPricingTerm"]
config_usage = ["ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm"]
freeTrial = ["FreeTrialPricingTerm"]
recur = ["RecurringPaymentTerm"]
usage_recur = ("UsageBasedPricingTerm", "RecurringPaymentTerm")
fixed_payment = ["FixedUpfrontPricingTerm", "PaymentScheduleTerm"]
fixed_payment_usage = [
    "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
    "PaymentScheduleTerm",
    "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
]
byol = ["ByolPricingTerm"]
freeTrial_usage = ("FreeTrialPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm")
all_agreement_types_combination = (
    legal,
    config,
    usage,
    config_usage,
    freeTrial,
    recur,
```

```
    usage_recur,
    fixed_payment,
    fixed_payment_usage,
    byol,
    freeTrial_usage,
)


# get pricing type method given product type, agreement temr type and offer type
 if needed
def get_pricing_type(product_type, agreement_term_type, offer_type):
    pricing_types = {
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(config_usage), frozenset("")): CCP,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(config_usage), frozenset("")): CCP,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config_usage)): Annual,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config_usage)): Annual,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config_usage)): Annual,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config)): Contract,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config)): Contract,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(freeTrial), frozenset("")): SFT,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(usage_recur), frozenset("")): HMA,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(recur), frozenset("")): Monthly,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(recur), frozenset("")): Monthly,
        (
            ContainerProduct,
            frozenset(fixed_payment),
            frozenset(fixed_payment_usage),
        ): AFPS,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment_usage)):
 AFPS,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): AFPS,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment)):
 CFPS,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment)): CFPS,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
```

```
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")):
 CCPFPS,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(legal), frozenset("")): Free,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(freeTrial_usage), frozenset("")): FTH,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(freeTrial_usage), frozenset("")): FTH,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(freeTrial_usage), frozenset("")): FTH,
    }

    key = (product_type, agreement_term_type, offer_type)
    if key in pricing_types:
        return pricing_types[key]
    else:
        return "Unknown"


# Example usage for testing purpose
"""
product_type = SaaSProduct
agreement_term_type = frozenset(config_usage)
offer_type = frozenset('')
pricing_type = get_pricing_type(product_type, agreement_term_type, offer_type)
print("pricing type = " + pricing_type)  # Output: CCP
"""



# check if offer term types are needed; if Y, needed
def get_offer_term_type(product_type, agreement_term_type):
    offer_term_types = {
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(config)): "Y",
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(config)): "Y",
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment)): "Y",
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment)): "Y",
```

```
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment)): "Y",
    }

    key = (product_type, agreement_term_type)
    if key in offer_term_types:
        return offer_term_types[key]
    else:
        return


logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog=AWSMPCATALOG,
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog=AWSMPCATALOG,
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values":
 ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
```

```
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
                raise

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    # find all agreements matching the specified idType and idValue
    agreements = get_agreements(mp_client)

    for item in agreements:
        pricingType = ""
        agreement_id = item["agreementId"]

        # get term types inside offer
        offer_term_types = get_offer_term_types(item)

        # even though multiple product types are allowed for one agreement, only
 need the first one
        productType = item["resourceSummaries"][0]["resourceType"]

        # get agreement terms types
        agreementTerm = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=agreement_id)

        agreementTermTypes = get_agreement_term_types(agreementTerm)

        # match with agreement term type group
        matchedTermType = getMatchedTermTypesCombination(agreementTermTypes)

        # check if offer term type is needed.
        offer_term_type_needed = get_offer_term_type(
```

```
            productType, frozenset(matchedTermType)
        )

        # get pricing type given product type, agreement term types and offer
 type if needed;
        # one excpetion is Container with Legal term. LegalTerm needs to be the
 only term present
        if offer_term_type_needed is not None:
            matchedOfferTermTypes =
 getMatchedTermTypesCombination(offer_term_types)
            print(f"matchedOfferTermType = {matchedOfferTermTypes}")
            pricingType = get_pricing_type(
                productType,
                frozenset(matchedTermType),
                frozenset(matchedOfferTermTypes),
            )
        elif set(matchedTermType) == set(legal):
            pricingType = Free
        else:
            pricingType = get_pricing_type(
                productType, frozenset(matchedTermType), frozenset("")
            )

        print(
            f"agreementId={agreement_id};productType={productType};
 agreementTermTypes={agreementTermTypes}; matchedTermType={matchedTermType};
 offerTermTypeNeeded={offer_term_type_needed};
 offer_term_types={offer_term_types}"
        )
        print(f"pricing type={pricingType}")


def getMatchedTermTypesCombination(agreementTermTypes):
    matchedCombination = ()
    for element in all_agreement_types_combination:
        if check_elements(agreementTermTypes, element):
            matchedCombination = element
    return matchedCombination


def get_offer_term_types(item):
    offer_id = item["agreementTokenSummary"]["offerId"]
    mp_catalogAPI_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")
    offer_document = get_entity_information(mp_catalogAPI_client, offer_id)
```

```
    offerDetail = offer_document["Details"]
    offerDetail_json_object = json.loads(offerDetail)
    offer_term_types = [term["Type"] for term in
 offerDetail_json_object["Terms"]]
    return offer_term_types


# make sure all elements in array2 exist in array1
def check_elements(array1, array2):
    for element in array2:
        if element not in array1:
            return False
    return True


def get_entity_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given entity
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of entity information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def get_agreement_term_types(agreementTerm):
    types = []
    for term in agreementTerm["acceptedTerms"]:
        for value in term.values():
            if isinstance(value, dict) and "type" in value:
                types.append(value["type"])
    return types
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the product type of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the product type of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Resource;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementProductType {

 /*
  * Obtain the Product Type of the product the agreement was created on
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<String> productIds = getProducts(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(productIds);
 }

 public static List<String> getProducts(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);

  List<String> productIds = new ArrayList<String>();
  for (Resource resource :
 describeAgreementResponse.proposalSummary().resources()) {
   productIds.add(resource.id() + ":" + resource.type());
  }
  return productIds;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the Product Type of the product the agreement was created on
AG-11
"""

import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        agreement = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=entity_id)

        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for offer and product details in a given agreement by
 agreement id.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    agreement = get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID)

    if agreement is not None:
        productHash = {}
        for resource in agreement["resourceSummaries"]:
            productHash[resource["resourceId"]] = resource["resourceType"]

        for key, value in productHash.items():
            print(f"Product ID: {key}  |  Product Type: {value}")
    else:
        print("Agreement with ID " + AGREEMENT_ID + " is not found")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the status of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the status of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class GetAgreementStatus {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 getDescribeAgreementResponse(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Agreement status is " +
 describeAgreementResponse.status());

 }

 public static DescribeAgreementResponse getDescribeAgreementResponse(String
 agreementId) {
```

```
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);
  return describeAgreementResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get all agreement status
AG-13

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_status.py --agreement-id <agreement-id>
"""

import argparse
```

```
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement(agreement_id):
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error(f"Could not complete search_agreements request. {e}")

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreement(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    if response is not None:
        print(f"Agreement status: {response['status']}")
    else:
        print(f"No agreement found for {args.agreement_id}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the support terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to get the support terms of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SupportTerm;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsSupportTerm {

 /*
  * Obtain the support and refund policy I have provided to the customer
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<SupportTerm> supportTerms = getSupportTerms(agreementId);
```

```
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(supportTerms);
 }

 public static List<SupportTerm> getSupportTerms(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<SupportTerm> supportTerms = new ArrayList<>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.supportTerm() != null) {
    supportTerms.add(acceptedTerm.supportTerm());
   }
  }
  return supportTerms;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the support and refund policy I have provided to the customer for an
 agreement
AG-19

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_support_terms.py --agreement-id <agreement-
id>
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")


def get_agreement_terms(agreement_id):
    try:
        agreement = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=agreement_id)
        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)

        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
```

```
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    agreement = get_agreement_terms(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        support_found = False

        for term in agreement["acceptedTerms"]:
            if "supportTerm" in term.keys():
                helper.pretty_print_datetime(term)
                support_found = True

        if not support_found:
            print(f"No support term found for agreement: {args.agreement_id}")
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the terms of an agreement using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to get the terms of an agreement.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

public class GetAgreementTerms {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 getAgreementTermsResponse(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(getAgreementTermsResponse);

 }

 public static GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);
  return getAgreementTermsResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Search for agreements by account ID using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by account ID.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get agreement by customer AWS
 account ID
AG-02
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10


def get_agreements(account_id):
    AgreementSummaryList = []

    try:
```

```
        agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=[
                {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                {"name": "AcceptorId", "values": [account_id]},
                {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
            ],
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise e

    AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                    {"name": "AcceptorId", "values": [account_id]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--account_id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide accepting account ID to search for agreements",
        required=True,
    )
```

```
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreements(account_id=args.account_id)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(response)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by agreement ID using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by agreement ID.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreements give id
 information
AG-02-A
"""


import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# To search by offer id: OfferId; by product id: ResourceIdentifier; by product
 type: ResourceType
idType = "ResourceType"
```

```
# replace id value as needed
idValue = "SaaSProduct"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values":
 ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
```

```
                raise e

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreements(mp_client))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by end date using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to search for agreements by end date.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class SearchAgreementsByEndDate {

 static String beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName =
 BeforeOrAfterEndTimeFilterName.BeforeEndTime.name();

 static String cutoffDate = "2050-11-18T00:00:00Z";

 static String partyTypeFilterValue = PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER;

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAgreements();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);
 }

 public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreements() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  // set up filters
```

```
 Filter partyTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
   .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

 Filter agreementTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
   .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

 Filter customizeFilter =
Filter.builder().name(beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName).values(cutoffDate).build();

 List<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

 filters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyTypeFilter, agreementTypeFilter,
customizeFilter));

 // search agreement with filters

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
   SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .filters(filters)
   .build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementResponse=
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

 while (searchAgreementResponse.nextToken() != null &&
searchAgreementResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(filters)
    .nextToken(searchAgreementResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  searchAgreementResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
 }
 return agreementSummaryList;
```

```
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreement
 information before or after end date
AG-03
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

# change to 'AfterEndTime' if after endtime is desired
beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName = "BeforeEndTime"

# Make sure to use the same date format as below
cutoffDate = "2322-11-18T00:00:00Z"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements():
    AgreementSummaryList = []

    try:
        agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=[
                {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                {"name": beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName, "values": [cutoffDate]},
                {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
            ],
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise

    AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreement:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                    {
                        "name": beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName,
                        "values": [cutoffDate],
                    },
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreements = get_agreements()
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(agreements)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by offer ID using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by offer ID.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreements by offer
 id
AG-0
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# offer id to search by
offerId = "11111111111111111111111111"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": "OfferId", "values": [offerId]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": "OfferId", "values": [offerId]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values":
 ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
                raise

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList
```

```
def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement by offer id.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreements(mp_client))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by product ID using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by product ID.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreement by
 product id
AG-02
"""
```

```
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# product id to search by
resourceId = "prod-1111111111111"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": "ResourceIdentifier", "values": [resourceId]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": "ResourceIdentifier", "values": [resourceId]},
```

```
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values":
 ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
                raise

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreements(mp_client))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by status using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by status.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to filter agreements by status
AG-04

Example Usage: python3 search_agreements_by_status.py
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

party_type_list = ["Proposer"]
agreement_type_list = ["PurchaseAgreement"]

# Accepted values: "ACTIVE", "TERMINATED", "CANCELED", "EXPIRED", "REPLACED",
 "RENEWED"
status_list = ["ACTIVE"]

filter_list = [
    {"name": "PartyType", "values": party_type_list},
    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": agreement_type_list},
```

```
    {"name": "Status", "values": status_list},
]

agreement_results_list = []


def get_agreements(filter_list=filter_list):
    try:
        agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=filter_list,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise e

    agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreements and agreements["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreements["nextToken"],
                filters=filter_list,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(agreement_results_list)
    return agreement_results_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreements_list = get_agreements(filter_list)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements with one custom filter using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements with one custom filter.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

/**
 * To search by
 * offer id: OfferId;
 * product id: ResourceIdentifier;
```

```
 * customer AWS account id: AcceptorAccountId
 * product type: ResourceType (i.e. SaasProduct)
 * status: Status. status values can be: ACTIVE, CANCELED,
 *   EXPIRED, RENEWED, REPLACED, ROLLED_BACK, SUPERSEDED, TERMINATED
 */

public class SearchAgreementsByOneFilter {

 private static final String FILTER_NAME = "ResourceType";

 private static final String FILTER_VALUE = "SaaSProduct";

 /*
  * search agreements by one customize filter
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAgreements();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);
 }

 public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreements() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  Filter partyTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

  Filter customizeFilter =
 Filter.builder().name(FILTER_NAME).values(FILTER_VALUE).build();

  List<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

  filters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyTypeFilter, agreementTypeFilter,
 customizeFilter));

  SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
```

```
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(filters)
    .build();
  SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
 ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

  while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   searchAgreementsRequest =
     SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .filters(filters)
     .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
     .build();
   searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
  }
  return agreementSummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Search for agreements with two custom filters using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to search for agreements with two custom filters.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.AwsCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

/**
 * Party Type = Proposer AND Acceptor:
 *  AfterEndTime
 *  BeforeEndTime
 *  ResourceIdentifier + BeforeEndTime
 *  ResourceIdentifier + AfterEndTime
 *  ResourceType + BeforeEndTime
```

```
 *  ResourceType + AfterEndTime
 *
 * Party Type = Proposer
 *  ResourceIdentifier
 *  OfferId
 *  AcceptorAccountId
 *  Status (ACTIVE)
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + ResourceIdentifier
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + AcceptorAccountId
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + OfferId
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + ResourceType
 *  AcceptorAccountId + BeforeEndTime
 *  AcceptorAccountId + AfterEndTime
 *  AcceptorAccountId + AfterEndTime
 *  OfferId + BeforeEndTime
 *
 * Status values can be: ACTIVE, CANCELLED, EXPIRED, RENEWED, REPLACED,
 ROLLED_BACK, SUPERSEDED, TERMINATED
 */

public class SearchAgreementsByTwoFilters {

 public static final String FILTER_1_NAME = "ResourceType";

 public static final String FILTER_1_VALUE = "SaaSProduct";

 public static final String FILTER_2_NAME = "Status";

 public static final String FILTER_2_VALUE = "ACTIVE";

 /*
  * search agreements by two customize filter
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAgreements();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);

 }

 public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreements() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
```

```
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  Filter partyTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

  Filter customizeFilter1 =
 Filter.builder().name(FILTER_1_NAME).values(FILTER_1_VALUE).build();

  Filter customizeFilter2 =
 Filter.builder().name(FILTER_2_NAME).values(FILTER_2_VALUE).build();


  List<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

  filters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyTypeFilter, agreementTypeFilter,
 customizeFilter1, customizeFilter2));

  SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(filters)
    .build();

  SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
 ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

  while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   searchAgreementsRequest =
     SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .filters(filters)
     .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
     .build();
```

```
    searchAgreementsResponse =
  marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
   }
   return agreementSummaryList;
  }

 }
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Elemental MediaConvert with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **MediaConvert User Guide** – More information about MediaConvert.
- **MediaConvert API Reference** – Details about all available MediaConvert actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello MediaConvert

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Elemental MediaConvert.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.MediaConvert;
using Amazon.MediaConvert.Model;

namespace MediaConvertActions;

public static class HelloMediaConvert
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the client using the default profile.
        var mediaConvertClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello AWS Elemental MediaConvert! Your MediaConvert
 Jobs are:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get some MediaConvert jobs.
        var response = await mediaConvertClient.ListJobsAsync(
            new ListJobsRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 10
            }
            );

        foreach (var job in response.Jobs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tJob: {job.Id} status {job.Status}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoints in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs
  - Hello MediaConvert
  - Actions for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Elemental MediaConvert with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello MediaConvert
- Actions for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello MediaConvert

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Elemental MediaConvert.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.MediaConvert;
using Amazon.MediaConvert.Model;

namespace MediaConvertActions;

public static class HelloMediaConvert
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the client using the default profile.
        var mediaConvertClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello AWS Elemental MediaConvert! Your MediaConvert
 Jobs are:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get some MediaConvert jobs.
        var response = await mediaConvertClient.ListJobsAsync(
            new ListJobsRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 10
            }
            );

        foreach (var job in response.Jobs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tJob: {job.Id} status {job.Status}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoints in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions for MediaConvert using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual MediaConvert actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Elemental MediaConvert API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateJob`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-
role-in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
```

```
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating job for input file {fileInput}.");
        var jobId = await wrapper.CreateJob(mediaConvertRole!, fileInput!,
 fileOutput!);
        Console.WriteLine($"Created job with Job ID: {jobId}");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

Create the job using the wrapper method and return the job ID.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a job to convert a media file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="mediaConvertRole">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
 media convert role, as specified here:
    /// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html</param>
    /// <param name="fileInput">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 location of the input media file.</param>
    /// <param name="fileOutput">The Amazon S3 location for the output media
 file.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the new job.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateJob(string mediaConvertRole, string
 fileInput,
        string fileOutput)
    {
        CreateJobRequest createJobRequest = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Role = mediaConvertRole
        };
```

```
        createJobRequest.UserMetadata.Add("Customer", "Amazon");

        JobSettings jobSettings = new JobSettings
        {
            AdAvailOffset = 0,
            TimecodeConfig = new TimecodeConfig
            {
                Source = TimecodeSource.EMBEDDED
            }
        };
        createJobRequest.Settings = jobSettings;

        #region OutputGroup

        OutputGroup ofg = new OutputGroup
        {
            Name = "File Group",
            OutputGroupSettings = new OutputGroupSettings
            {
                Type = OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS,
                FileGroupSettings = new FileGroupSettings
                {
                    Destination = fileOutput
                }
            }
        };

        Output output = new Output
        {
            NameModifier = "_1"
        };

        #region VideoDescription

        VideoDescription vdes = new VideoDescription
        {
            ScalingBehavior = ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT,
            TimecodeInsertion = VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED,
            AntiAlias = AntiAlias.ENABLED,
            Sharpness = 50,
            AfdSignaling = AfdSignaling.NONE,
            DropFrameTimecode = DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED,
            RespondToAfd = RespondToAfd.NONE,
```

```
            ColorMetadata = ColorMetadata.INSERT,
            CodecSettings = new VideoCodecSettings
            {
                Codec = VideoCodec.H_264
            }
        };
        output.VideoDescription = vdes;

        H264Settings h264 = new H264Settings
        {
            InterlaceMode = H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE,
            NumberReferenceFrames = 3,
            Syntax = H264Syntax.DEFAULT,
            Softness = 0,
            GopClosedCadence = 1,
            GopSize = 90,
            Slices = 1,
            GopBReference = H264GopBReference.DISABLED,
            SlowPal = H264SlowPal.DISABLED,
            SpatialAdaptiveQuantization =
H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED,
            TemporalAdaptiveQuantization =
H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED,
            FlickerAdaptiveQuantization =
H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED,
            EntropyEncoding = H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC,
            Bitrate = 5000000,
            FramerateControl = H264FramerateControl.SPECIFIED,
            RateControlMode = H264RateControlMode.CBR,
            CodecProfile = H264CodecProfile.MAIN,
            Telecine = H264Telecine.NONE,
            MinIInterval = 0,
            AdaptiveQuantization = H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH,
            CodecLevel = H264CodecLevel.AUTO,
            FieldEncoding = H264FieldEncoding.PAFF,
            SceneChangeDetect = H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED,
            QualityTuningLevel = H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS,
            FramerateConversionAlgorithm =
                H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP,
            UnregisteredSeiTimecode = H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED,
            GopSizeUnits = H264GopSizeUnits.FRAMES,
            ParControl = H264ParControl.SPECIFIED,
            NumberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames = 2,
            RepeatPps = H264RepeatPps.DISABLED,
```

```
            FramerateNumerator = 30,
            FramerateDenominator = 1,
            ParNumerator = 1,
            ParDenominator = 1
        };
        output.VideoDescription.CodecSettings.H264Settings = h264;

        #endregion VideoDescription

        #region AudioDescription

        AudioDescription ades = new AudioDescription
        {
            LanguageCodeControl = AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT,
            // This name matches one specified in the following Inputs.
            AudioSourceName = "Audio Selector 1",
            CodecSettings = new AudioCodecSettings
            {
                Codec = AudioCodec.AAC
            }
        };

        AacSettings aac = new AacSettings
        {
            AudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix =
AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL,
            RateControlMode = AacRateControlMode.CBR,
            CodecProfile = AacCodecProfile.LC,
            CodingMode = AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0,
            RawFormat = AacRawFormat.NONE,
            SampleRate = 48000,
            Specification = AacSpecification.MPEG4,
            Bitrate = 64000
        };
        ades.CodecSettings.AacSettings = aac;
        output.AudioDescriptions.Add(ades);

        #endregion AudioDescription

        #region Mp4 Container

        output.ContainerSettings = new ContainerSettings
        {
            Container = ContainerType.MP4
```

```
        };
        Mp4Settings mp4 = new Mp4Settings
        {
            CslgAtom = Mp4CslgAtom.INCLUDE,
            FreeSpaceBox = Mp4FreeSpaceBox.EXCLUDE,
            MoovPlacement = Mp4MoovPlacement.PROGRESSIVE_DOWNLOAD
        };
        output.ContainerSettings.Mp4Settings = mp4;

        #endregion Mp4 Container

        ofg.Outputs.Add(output);
        createJobRequest.Settings.OutputGroups.Add(ofg);

        #endregion OutputGroup

        #region Input

        Input input = new Input
        {
            FilterEnable = InputFilterEnable.AUTO,
            PsiControl = InputPsiControl.USE_PSI,
            FilterStrength = 0,
            DeblockFilter = InputDeblockFilter.DISABLED,
            DenoiseFilter = InputDenoiseFilter.DISABLED,
            TimecodeSource = InputTimecodeSource.EMBEDDED,
            FileInput = fileInput
        };

        AudioSelector audsel = new AudioSelector
        {
            Offset = 0,
            DefaultSelection = AudioDefaultSelection.NOT_DEFAULT,
            ProgramSelection = 1,
            SelectorType = AudioSelectorType.TRACK
        };
        audsel.Tracks.Add(1);
        input.AudioSelectors.Add("Audio Selector 1", audsel);

        input.VideoSelector = new VideoSelector
        {
            ColorSpace = ColorSpace.FOLLOW
        };
```

```
        createJobRequest.Settings.Inputs.Add(input);

        #endregion Input

        CreateJobResponse createJobResponse =
            await _amazonMediaConvert.CreateJobAsync(createJobRequest);

        var jobId = createJobResponse.Job.Id;

        return jobId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an AWS Elemental MediaConvert job.
/*!
  \param mediaConvertRole: An Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the AWS Identity and
                           Access Management (IAM) role for the job.
  \param fileInput: A URI to an input file that is stored in Amazon Simple
 Storage Service
                    (Amazon S3) or on an HTTP(S) server.
  \param fileOutput: A URI for an Amazon S3 output location and the output file
 name base.
  \param jobSettingsFile: An optional JSON settings file.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::MediaConvert::createJob(const Aws::String &mediaConvertRole,
                                     const Aws::String &fileInput,
                                     const Aws::String &fileOutput,
```

```
                                        const Aws::String &jobSettingsFile,
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
&clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::MediaConvert::Model::CreateJobRequest createJobRequest;

   createJobRequest.SetRole(mediaConvertRole);
   Aws::Http::HeaderValueCollection hvc;
   hvc.emplace("Customer", "Amazon");
   createJobRequest.SetUserMetadata(hvc);

   if (!jobSettingsFile.empty()) // Use a JSON file for the job settings.
   {
       std::ifstream jobSettingsStream(jobSettingsFile, std::ios::ate);
       if (!jobSettingsStream) {
           std::cerr << "Unable to open the job template file." << std::endl;
           return false;
       }
       std::vector<char> buffer(jobSettingsStream.tellg());
       jobSettingsStream.seekg(0);
       jobSettingsStream.read(buffer.data(), buffer.size());
       std::string jobSettingsJSON(buffer.data(), buffer.size());
       size_t pos = jobSettingsJSON.find(INPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER);
       if (pos != std::string::npos) {
           jobSettingsJSON.replace(pos, strlen(INPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER),
fileInput);
       }

       pos = jobSettingsJSON.find(OUTPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER);
       if (pos != std::string::npos) {
           jobSettingsJSON.replace(pos, strlen(OUTPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER),
fileOutput);
       }
       Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(jobSettingsJSON);
       Aws::MediaConvert::Model::JobSettings jobSettings(jsonValue);

       createJobRequest.SetSettings(jobSettings);
   }
   else { // Configure the job settings programmatically.
       Aws::MediaConvert::Model::JobSettings jobSettings;
       jobSettings.SetAdAvailOffset(0);
       Aws::MediaConvert::Model::TimecodeConfig timecodeConfig;

timecodeConfig.SetSource(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::TimecodeSource::EMBEDDED);
       jobSettings.SetTimecodeConfig(timecodeConfig);
```

```
        // Configure the output group.
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::OutputGroup outputGroup;
        outputGroup.SetName("File Group");
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::OutputGroupSettings outputGroupSettings;
        outputGroupSettings.SetType(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::OutputGroupType::FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::FileGroupSettings fileGroupSettings;
        fileGroupSettings.SetDestination(fileOutput);
        outputGroupSettings.SetFileGroupSettings(fileGroupSettings);
        outputGroup.SetOutputGroupSettings(outputGroupSettings);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Output output;
        output.SetNameModifier("_1");

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoDescription videoDescription;
        videoDescription.SetScalingBehavior(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ScalingBehavior::DEFAULT);
        videoDescription.SetTimecodeInsertion(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoTimecodeInsertion::DISABLED);

videoDescription.SetAntiAlias(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AntiAlias::ENABLED);
        videoDescription.SetSharpness(50);

videoDescription.SetAfdSignaling(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AfdSignaling::NONE);
        videoDescription.SetDropFrameTimecode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::DropFrameTimecode::ENABLED);

videoDescription.SetRespondToAfd(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::RespondToAfd::NONE);
        videoDescription.SetColorMetadata(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ColorMetadata::INSERT);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoCodecSettings videoCodecSettings;
        videoCodecSettings.SetCodec(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoCodec::H_264);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264Settings h264Settings;
        h264Settings.SetNumberReferenceFrames(3);
        h264Settings.SetSyntax(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264Syntax::DEFAULT);
        h264Settings.SetSoftness(0);
        h264Settings.SetGopClosedCadence(1);
        h264Settings.SetGopSize(90);
        h264Settings.SetSlices(1);
        h264Settings.SetGopBReference(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264GopBReference::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetSlowPal(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264SlowPal::DISABLED);
```

```
        h264Settings.SetSpatialAdaptiveQuantization(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization::ENABLED);
        h264Settings.SetTemporalAdaptiveQuantization(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization::ENABLED);
        h264Settings.SetFlickerAdaptiveQuantization(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetEntropyEncoding(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264EntropyEncoding::CABAC);
        h264Settings.SetBitrate(5000000);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateControl(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FramerateControl::SPECIFIED);
        h264Settings.SetRateControlMode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264RateControlMode::CBR);

h264Settings.SetCodecProfile(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264CodecProfile::MAIN);
        h264Settings.SetTelecine(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264Telecine::NONE);
        h264Settings.SetMinIInterval(0);
        h264Settings.SetAdaptiveQuantization(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264AdaptiveQuantization::HIGH);

h264Settings.SetCodecLevel(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264CodecLevel::AUTO);
        h264Settings.SetFieldEncoding(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FieldEncoding::PAFF);
        h264Settings.SetSceneChangeDetect(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264SceneChangeDetect::ENABLED);
        h264Settings.SetQualityTuningLevel(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264QualityTuningLevel::SINGLE_PASS);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateConversionAlgorithm(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm::DUPLICATE_DROP);
        h264Settings.SetUnregisteredSeiTimecode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetGopSizeUnits(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264GopSizeUnits::FRAMES);

h264Settings.SetParControl(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264ParControl::SPECIFIED);
        h264Settings.SetNumberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames(2);

h264Settings.SetRepeatPps(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264RepeatPps::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateNumerator(30);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateDenominator(1);
```

```
        h264Settings.SetParNumerator(1);
        h264Settings.SetParDenominator(1);
        videoCodecSettings.SetH264Settings(h264Settings);
        videoDescription.SetCodecSettings(videoCodecSettings);
        output.SetVideoDescription(videoDescription);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioDescription audioDescription;
        audioDescription.SetLanguageCodeControl(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioLanguageCodeControl::FOLLOW_INPUT);
        audioDescription.SetAudioSourceName(AUDIO_SOURCE_NAME);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioCodecSettings audioCodecSettings;
        audioCodecSettings.SetCodec(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioCodec::AAC);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacSettings aacSettings;
        aacSettings.SetAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix::NORMAL);
        aacSettings.SetRateControlMode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacRateControlMode::CBR);

aacSettings.SetCodecProfile(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacCodecProfile::LC);
        aacSettings.SetCodingMode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacCodingMode::CODING_MODE_2_0);
        aacSettings.SetRawFormat(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacRawFormat::NONE);
        aacSettings.SetSampleRate(48000);

aacSettings.SetSpecification(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacSpecification::MPEG4);
        aacSettings.SetBitrate(64000);
        audioCodecSettings.SetAacSettings(aacSettings);
        audioDescription.SetCodecSettings(audioCodecSettings);
        Aws::Vector<Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioDescription>
audioDescriptions;
        audioDescriptions.emplace_back(audioDescription);
        output.SetAudioDescriptions(audioDescriptions);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ContainerSettings mp4container;
        mp4container.SetContainer(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ContainerType::MP4);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4Settings mp4Settings;
        mp4Settings.SetCslgAtom(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4CslgAtom::INCLUDE);

mp4Settings.SetFreeSpaceBox(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4FreeSpaceBox::EXCLUDE);
        mp4Settings.SetMoovPlacement(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4MoovPlacement::PROGRESSIVE_DOWNLOAD);
```

```
        mp4container.SetMp4Settings(mp4Settings);
        output.SetContainerSettings(mp4container);

        outputGroup.AddOutputs(output);
        jobSettings.AddOutputGroups(outputGroup);

        // Configure inputs.
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Input input;
        input.SetFilterEnable(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputFilterEnable::AUTO);
        input.SetPsiControl(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputPsiControl::USE_PSI);
        input.SetFilterStrength(0);

input.SetDeblockFilter(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputDeblockFilter::DISABLED);

input.SetDenoiseFilter(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputDenoiseFilter::DISABLED);
        input.SetTimecodeSource(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputTimecodeSource::EMBEDDED);
        input.SetFileInput(fileInput);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioSelector audioSelector;
        audioSelector.SetOffset(0);
        audioSelector.SetDefaultSelection(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioDefaultSelection::NOT_DEFAULT);
        audioSelector.SetProgramSelection(1);
        audioSelector.SetSelectorType(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioSelectorType::TRACK);
        audioSelector.AddTracks(1);
        input.AddAudioSelectors(AUDIO_SOURCE_NAME, audioSelector);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoSelector videoSelector;

videoSelector.SetColorSpace(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ColorSpace::FOLLOW);
        input.SetVideoSelector(videoSelector);

        jobSettings.AddInputs(input);

        createJobRequest.SetSettings(jobSettings);
    }

    Aws::MediaConvert::MediaConvertClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::MediaConvert::Model::CreateJobOutcome outcome = client.CreateJob(
            createJobRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Job successfully created with ID - "
```

```
                    << outcome.GetResult().GetJob().GetId() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error CreateJob - " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a job

The following `create-job` example creates a transcoding job with the settings that are specified in a file `job.json` that resides on the system that you send the command from. This JSON job specification might specify each setting individually, reference a job template, or reference output presets.

```
aws mediaconvert create-job \
    --endpoint-url https://abcd1234.mediaconvert.region-name-1.amazonaws.com \
    --region region-name-1 \
    --cli-input-json file://~/job.json
```

You can use the AWS Elemental MediaConvert console to generate the JSON job specification by choosing your job settings, and then choosing **Show job JSON** at the bottom of the **Job** section.

To get your account-specific endpoint, use `describe-endpoints`, or send the command without the endpoint. The service returns an error and your endpoint.

If your request is successful, the service returns the JSON job specification that you sent with your request.

For more information, see Working with AWS Elemental MediaConvert Jobs in the *AWS Elemental MediaConvert User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.mediaconvert;

import java.net.URI;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.MediaConvertClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.Output;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.MediaConvertException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputGroup;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputGroupSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsGroupSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputGroupType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsDirectoryStructure;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsManifestDurationFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsStreamInfResolution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsClientCache;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsCaptionLanguageSetting;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsManifestCompression;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsCodecSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsOutputSelection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsProgramDateTime;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsTimedMetadataId3Frame;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsSegmentControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.FileGroupSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ContainerSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ContainerType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ScalingBehavior;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoTimecodeInsertion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ColorMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.RespondToAfd;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AfdSignaling;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DropFrameTimecode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoCodecSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264Settings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoCodec;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.CreateJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264RateControlMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264QualityTuningLevel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264SceneChangeDetect;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264ParControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacRawFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264QvbrSettings;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264CodecLevel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FramerateControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacCodingMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264Telecine;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264GopSizeUnits;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264CodecProfile;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264GopBReference;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioTypeControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AntiAlias;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264SlowPal;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264Syntax;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8Settings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputDenoiseFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.CreateJobResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264EntropyEncoding;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputPsiControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ColorSpace;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264RepeatPps;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FieldEncoding;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8NielsenId3;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputDeblockFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputRotate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264DynamicSubGop;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.TimedMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.JobSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioDefaultSelection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoSelector;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.Input;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputSettings;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264AdaptiveQuantization;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioLanguageCodeControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputFilterEnable;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264InterlaceMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioCodecSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioCodec;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacRateControlMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacCodecProfile;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsIFrameOnlyManifest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.FrameCaptureSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioSelector;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8PcrControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputTimecodeSource;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8Scte35Source;

/**
 * Create a MediaConvert job. Must supply MediaConvert access role Amazon
 * Resource Name (ARN), and a
 * valid video input file via Amazon S3 URL.
 *
```

```
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 */
public class CreateJob {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:
                                    <mcRoleARN> <fileInput>\s

                                Where:
                                    mcRoleARN - The MediaConvert Role ARN.\s
                                    fileInput -  The URL of an Amazon S3 bucket
 where the input file is located.\s
                                """;

                if (args.length != 2) {
                        System.out.println(usage);
                        System.exit(1);
                }

                String mcRoleARN = args[0];
                String fileInput = args[1];
                Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
                MediaConvertClient mc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                                .region(region)
                                .build();

                String id = createMediaJob(mc, mcRoleARN, fileInput);
                System.out.println("MediaConvert job created. Job Id = " + id);
                mc.close();
        }

        public static String createMediaJob(MediaConvertClient mc, String
 mcRoleARN, String fileInput) {

                String s3path = fileInput.substring(0, fileInput.lastIndexOf('/')
 + 1) + "javasdk/out/";
                String fileOutput = s3path + "index";
```

```
                String thumbsOutput = s3path + "thumbs/";
                String mp4Output = s3path + "mp4/";

                try {
                        DescribeEndpointsResponse res = mc

 .describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest.builder().maxResults(20).build());

                        if (res.endpoints().size() <= 0) {
                                System.out.println("Cannot find MediaConvert
 service endpoint URL!");
                                System.exit(1);
                        }
                        String endpointURL = res.endpoints().get(0).url();
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert service URL: " +
 endpointURL);
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert role arn: " +
 mcRoleARN);
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert input file: " +
 fileInput);
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert output path: " +
 s3path);

                        MediaConvertClient emc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                                        .region(Region.US_WEST_2)

 .endpointOverride(URI.create(endpointURL))
                                        .build();

                        // output group Preset HLS low profile
                        Output hlsLow = createOutput("hls_low", "_low", "_$dt$",
 750000, 7, 1920, 1080, 640);
                        // output group Preset HLS media profile
                        Output hlsMedium = createOutput("hls_medium", "_medium",
 "_$dt$", 1200000, 7, 1920, 1080, 1280);
                        // output group Preset HLS high profole
                        Output hlsHigh = createOutput("hls_high", "_high", "_$dt
$", 3500000, 8, 1920, 1080, 1920);

                        OutputGroup appleHLS = OutputGroup.builder().name("Apple
 HLS").customName("Example")

 .outputGroupSettings(OutputGroupSettings.builder()
```

```
.type(OutputGroupType.HLS_GROUP_SETTINGS)
.hlsGroupSettings(HlsGroupSettings.builder()
.directoryStructure(
      HlsDirectoryStructure.SINGLE_DIRECTORY)
.manifestDurationFormat(
      HlsManifestDurationFormat.INTEGER)
.streamInfResolution(
      HlsStreamInfResolution.INCLUDE)
.clientCache(HlsClientCache.ENABLED)
.captionLanguageSetting(
      HlsCaptionLanguageSetting.OMIT)
.manifestCompression(
      HlsManifestCompression.NONE)
.codecSpecification(
      HlsCodecSpecification.RFC_4281)
.outputSelection(
      HlsOutputSelection.MANIFESTS_AND_SEGMENTS)
.programDateTime(HlsProgramDateTime.EXCLUDE)
.programDateTimePeriod(600)
.timedMetadataId3Frame(
      HlsTimedMetadataId3Frame.PRIV)
.timedMetadataId3Period(10)
```

```
.destination(fileOutput)

.segmentControl(HlsSegmentControl.SEGMENTED_FILES)

.minFinalSegmentLength((double) 0)

.segmentLength(4).minSegmentLength(0).build())
                                                        .build())
                                        .outputs(hlsLow, hlsMedium,
hlsHigh).build();

                       OutputGroup fileMp4 = OutputGroup.builder().name("File
Group").customName("mp4")

.outputGroupSettings(OutputGroupSettings.builder()

.type(OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS)

.fileGroupSettings(FileGroupSettings.builder()

.destination(mp4Output).build())
                                                        .build())

.outputs(Output.builder().extension("mp4")

.containerSettings(ContainerSettings.builder()

.container(ContainerType.MP4).build())

.videoDescription(VideoDescription.builder().width(1280)

.height(720)

.scalingBehavior(ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT)

.sharpness(50).antiAlias(AntiAlias.ENABLED)

.timecodeInsertion(

      VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED)

.colorMetadata(ColorMetadata.INSERT)
```

```
.respondToAfd(RespondToAfd.NONE)

.afdSignaling(AfdSignaling.NONE)

.dropFrameTimecode(DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED)

.codecSettings(VideoCodecSettings.builder()

      .codec(VideoCodec.H_264)

      .h264Settings(H264Settings

                        .builder()

                        .rateControlMode(

                                        H264RateControlMode.QVBR)

                        .parControl(H264ParControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)

                        .qualityTuningLevel(

                                        H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS)

                        .qvbrSettings(

                                        H264QvbrSettings.builder()

                                                        .qvbrQualityLevel(

                                                                        8)

                                                        .build())

                        .codecLevel(H264CodecLevel.AUTO)

                        .codecProfile(H264CodecProfile.MAIN)

                        .maxBitrate(2400000)

                        .framerateControl(
```

```
H264FramerateControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)
                        .gopSize(2.0)
                        .gopSizeUnits(H264GopSizeUnits.SECONDS)
                        .numberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames(
                                        2)
                        .gopClosedCadence(
                                        1)
                        .gopBReference(H264GopBReference.DISABLED)
                        .slowPal(H264SlowPal.DISABLED)
                        .syntax(H264Syntax.DEFAULT)
                        .numberReferenceFrames(
                                        3)
                        .dynamicSubGop(H264DynamicSubGop.STATIC)
                        .fieldEncoding(H264FieldEncoding.PAFF)
                        .sceneChangeDetect(
                                        H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED)
                        .minIInterval(0)
                        .telecine(H264Telecine.NONE)
                        .framerateConversionAlgorithm(

H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP)
                        .entropyEncoding(
```

```
                                        H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC)
                        .slices(1)
                        .unregisteredSeiTimecode(
                                        H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED)
                        .repeatPps(H264RepeatPps.DISABLED)
                        .adaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH)
                        .spatialAdaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                        .temporalAdaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                        .flickerAdaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED)
                        .softness(0)
                        .interlaceMode(H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE)
                        .build())
        .build())
                                                                        .build())
.audioDescriptions(AudioDescription.builder()
.audioTypeControl(AudioTypeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.languageCodeControl(
        AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
```

```
.codecSettings(AudioCodecSettings.builder()

      .codec(AudioCodec.AAC)

      .aacSettings(AacSettings

                      .builder()

                      .codecProfile(AacCodecProfile.LC)

                      .rateControlMode(

                                      AacRateControlMode.CBR)

                      .codingMode(AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0)

                      .sampleRate(44100)

                      .bitrate(160000)

                      .rawFormat(AacRawFormat.NONE)

                      .specification(AacSpecification.MPEG4)

                      .audioDescriptionBroadcasterMix(

                                      AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL)

                      .build())

      .build())
                                                                          .build())
                                                              .build())
                                       .build();
                       OutputGroup thumbs = OutputGroup.builder().name("File
Group").customName("thumbs")

.outputGroupSettings(OutputGroupSettings.builder()

.type(OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS)

.fileGroupSettings(FileGroupSettings.builder()
```

```
.destination(thumbsOutput).build())
                                                                .build())

.outputs(Output.builder().extension("jpg")

.containerSettings(ContainerSettings.builder()

.container(ContainerType.RAW).build())

.videoDescription(VideoDescription.builder()

.scalingBehavior(ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT)

.sharpness(50).antiAlias(AntiAlias.ENABLED)

.timecodeInsertion(

      VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED)

.colorMetadata(ColorMetadata.INSERT)

.dropFrameTimecode(DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED)

.codecSettings(VideoCodecSettings.builder()

      .codec(VideoCodec.FRAME_CAPTURE)

      .frameCaptureSettings(

                      FrameCaptureSettings

                                      .builder()

                                      .framerateNumerator(

                                                      1)

                                      .framerateDenominator(

                                                      1)

                                      .maxCaptures(10000000)
```

```
                                        .quality(80)

                                        .build())

      .build())
                                                                                .build())
                                                                .build())
                                         .build();

                        Map<String, AudioSelector> audioSelectors = new
HashMap<>();
                        audioSelectors.put("Audio Selector 1",

AudioSelector.builder().defaultSelection(AudioDefaultSelection.DEFAULT)
                                                                .offset(0).build());

                        JobSettings jobSettings =
JobSettings.builder().inputs(Input.builder()
                                         .audioSelectors(audioSelectors)
                                         .videoSelector(

VideoSelector.builder().colorSpace(ColorSpace.FOLLOW)

.rotate(InputRotate.DEGREE_0).build())

.filterEnable(InputFilterEnable.AUTO).filterStrength(0)

.deblockFilter(InputDeblockFilter.DISABLED)

.denoiseFilter(InputDenoiseFilter.DISABLED).psiControl(InputPsiControl.USE_PSI)

.timecodeSource(InputTimecodeSource.EMBEDDED).fileInput(fileInput).build())
                                         .outputGroups(appleHLS, thumbs,
fileMp4).build();

                        CreateJobRequest createJobRequest =
CreateJobRequest.builder().role(mcRoleARN)
                                         .settings(jobSettings)
                                         .build();

                        CreateJobResponse createJobResponse =
emc.createJob(createJobRequest);
                        return createJobResponse.job().id();
```

```
                } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.toString());
                        System.exit(0);
                }
                return "";
        }

        private final static Output createOutput(String customName,
                        String nameModifier,
                        String segmentModifier,
                        int qvbrMaxBitrate,
                        int qvbrQualityLevel,
                        int originWidth,
                        int originHeight,
                        int targetWidth) {

                int targetHeight = Math.round(originHeight * targetWidth /
originWidth)
                                - (Math.round(originHeight * targetWidth /
originWidth) % 4);
                Output output = null;
                try {
                        output =
Output.builder().nameModifier(nameModifier).outputSettings(OutputSettings.builder()

.hlsSettings(HlsSettings.builder().segmentModifier(segmentModifier)

.audioGroupId("program_audio")

.iFrameOnlyManifest(HlsIFrameOnlyManifest.EXCLUDE).build())
                                        .build())

.containerSettings(ContainerSettings.builder().container(ContainerType.M3_U8)

.m3u8Settings(M3u8Settings.builder().audioFramesPerPes(4)

.pcrControl(M3u8PcrControl.PCR_EVERY_PES_PACKET)

.pmtPid(480).privateMetadataPid(503)

.programNumber(1).patInterval(0).pmtInterval(0)

.scte35Source(M3u8Scte35Source.NONE)
```

```
.scte35Pid(500).nielsenId3(M3u8NielsenId3.NONE)

.timedMetadata(TimedMetadata.NONE)

.timedMetadataPid(502).videoPid(481)

.audioPids(482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488,

      489, 490, 491, 492)
                                                                                .build())
                                                                .build())
                                                .videoDescription(

VideoDescription.builder().width(targetWidth)

.height(targetHeight)

.scalingBehavior(ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT)

.sharpness(50).antiAlias(AntiAlias.ENABLED)

.timecodeInsertion(

      VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED)

.colorMetadata(ColorMetadata.INSERT)

.respondToAfd(RespondToAfd.NONE)

.afdSignaling(AfdSignaling.NONE)

.dropFrameTimecode(DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED)

.codecSettings(VideoCodecSettings.builder()

      .codec(VideoCodec.H_264)

      .h264Settings(H264Settings

                        .builder()

                        .rateControlMode(
```

```
                                        H264RateControlMode.QVBR)
                        .parControl(H264ParControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)
                        .qualityTuningLevel(
                                        H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS)
                        .qvbrSettings(H264QvbrSettings
                                        .builder()
                                        .qvbrQualityLevel(
                                                        qvbrQualityLevel)
                                        .build())
                        .codecLevel(H264CodecLevel.AUTO)
                        .codecProfile((targetHeight > 720
                                        && targetWidth > 1280)
                                                        ? H264CodecProfile.HIGH
                                                        : H264CodecProfile.MAIN)
                        .maxBitrate(qvbrMaxBitrate)
                        .framerateControl(

H264FramerateControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)
                        .gopSize(2.0)
                        .gopSizeUnits(H264GopSizeUnits.SECONDS)
                        .numberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames(
                                        2)
```

```
                        .gopClosedCadence(
                                        1)
                        .gopBReference(H264GopBReference.DISABLED)
                        .slowPal(H264SlowPal.DISABLED)
                        .syntax(H264Syntax.DEFAULT)
                        .numberReferenceFrames(
                                        3)
                        .dynamicSubGop(H264DynamicSubGop.STATIC)
                        .fieldEncoding(H264FieldEncoding.PAFF)
                        .sceneChangeDetect(
                                        H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED)
                        .minIInterval(0)
                        .telecine(H264Telecine.NONE)
                        .framerateConversionAlgorithm(

H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP)
                        .entropyEncoding(
                                        H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC)
                        .slices(1)
                        .unregisteredSeiTimecode(
                                        H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED)
                        .repeatPps(H264RepeatPps.DISABLED)
```

```
                        .adaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH)
                        .spatialAdaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                        .temporalAdaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                        .flickerAdaptiveQuantization(
                                        H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED)
                        .softness(0)
                        .interlaceMode(H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE)
                        .build())
      .build())
                                                                        .build())
.audioDescriptions(AudioDescription.builder()
.audioTypeControl(AudioTypeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.languageCodeControl(AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.codecSettings(AudioCodecSettings.builder()
.codec(AudioCodec.AAC).aacSettings(AacSettings
      .builder()
      .codecProfile(AacCodecProfile.LC)
      .rateControlMode(
                        AacRateControlMode.CBR)
```

```
        .codingMode(AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0)

        .sampleRate(44100)

        .bitrate(96000)

        .rawFormat(AacRawFormat.NONE)

        .specification(AacSpecification.MPEG4)

        .audioDescriptionBroadcasterMix(

                        AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL)

        .build())
                                                                    .build())
                                                        .build())
                                        .build();
                } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
                        e.printStackTrace();
                        System.exit(0);
                }
                return output;
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createMediaJob(
    mcClient: MediaConvertClient,
```

```
    mcRoleARN: String,
    fileInput1: String,
): String? {
    // Step 1: Describe endpoints to get the MediaConvert endpoint URL
    val describeResponse = mcClient.describeEndpoints(
        DescribeEndpointsRequest {
            maxResults = 1
        },
    )

    val endpointUrl = describeResponse.endpoints?.firstOrNull()?.url
        ?: error("No MediaConvert endpoint found")

    // Step 2: Create MediaConvert client with resolved endpoint
    val mediaConvert = MediaConvertClient.fromEnvironment {
        region = "us-west-2"
        endpointProvider = MediaConvertEndpointProvider {
            Endpoint(endpointUrl)
        }
    }

    // Output destination folder in S3 - put in 'output/' folder beside input
    val outputDestination = fileInput1.substringBeforeLast('/') + "/output/"

    // Step 3: Create the job request with minimal valid video codec settings
    val jobRequest = CreateJobRequest {
        role = mcRoleARN
        settings = JobSettings {
            inputs = listOf(
                Input {
                    fileInput = fileInput1
                },
            )
            outputGroups = listOf(
                OutputGroup {
                    outputGroupSettings = OutputGroupSettings {
                        type = OutputGroupType.FileGroupSettings
                        fileGroupSettings = FileGroupSettings {
                            destination = outputDestination
                        }
                    }
                    outputs = listOf(
                        Output {
                            containerSettings = ContainerSettings {
```

```
                                container = ContainerType.Mp4
                            }
                            videoDescription = VideoDescription {
                                width = 1280
                                height = 720
                                codecSettings = VideoCodecSettings {
                                    codec = VideoCodec.H264
                                    h264Settings = H264Settings {
                                        rateControlMode =
H264RateControlMode.Qvbr
                                        qvbrSettings = H264QvbrSettings {
                                            qvbrQualityLevel = 7
                                        }
                                        maxBitrate = 5_000_000
                                        codecLevel = H264CodecLevel.Auto
                                        codecProfile = H264CodecProfile.Main
                                        framerateControl =
H264FramerateControl.InitializeFromSource
                                    }
                                }
                            }
                        },
                    )
                },
            )
        }
    }

    // Step 4: Call MediaConvert to create the job
    val response = mediaConvert.createJob(jobRequest)

    // Return the job ID or null if not found
    return response.job?.id
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetJob`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-
role-in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

Get a job by its ID.

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting job information for Job ID {jobId}");
        var job = await wrapper.GetJobById(jobId);
        Console.WriteLine($"Job {job.Id} created on {job.CreatedAt:d} has status
 {job.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the job information for a job by its ID.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="jobId">The ID of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>The Job object.</returns>
    public async Task<Job> GetJobById(string jobId)
    {
        var jobResponse = await _amazonMediaConvert.GetJobAsync(
                new GetJobRequest
                {
                    Id = jobId
                });

        return jobResponse.Job;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve the information for a specific completed transcoding job.
/*!
  \param jobID: A job ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::MediaConvert::getJob(const Aws::String &jobID,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::MediaConvert::MediaConvertClient client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::MediaConvert::Model::GetJobRequest request;
    request.SetId(jobID);
    const Aws::MediaConvert::Model::GetJobOutcome outcome = client.GetJob(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
        std::cout <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetJob().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "DescribeEndpoints error - " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }


    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details for a particular job

The following example requests the information for the job with ID `1234567890987-1ab2c3`, which in this example ended in an error.

```
aws mediaconvert get-job \
    --endpoint-url https://abcd1234.mediaconvert.region-name-1.amazonaws.com \
    --region region-name-1 \
    --id 1234567890987-1ab2c3
```

To get your account-specific endpoint, use `describe-endpoints`, or send the command without the endpoint. The service returns an error and your endpoint.

If your request is successful, the service returns a JSON file with job information, including job settings, any returned errors, and other job data, as follows:

```
{
    "Job": {
        "Status": "ERROR",
        "Queue": "arn:aws:mediaconvert:region-name-1:012345678998:queues/Queue1",
        "Settings": {
```

```
            ...<truncated for brevity>...
        },
        "ErrorMessage": "Unable to open input file [s3://my-input-bucket/file-
name.mp4]: [Failed probe/open: [Failed to read data: AssumeRole failed]]",
        "ErrorCode": 1434,
        "Role": "arn:aws:iam::012345678998:role/MediaConvertServiceRole",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:mediaconvert:us-
west-1:012345678998:jobs/1234567890987-1ab2c3",
        "UserMetadata": {},
        "Timing": {
            "FinishTime": 1517442131,
            "SubmitTime": 1517442103,
            "StartTime": 1517442104
        },
        "Id": "1234567890987-1ab2c3",
        "CreatedAt": 1517442103
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with AWS Elemental MediaConvert Jobs in the *AWS Elemental MediaConvert User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.GetJobRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.GetJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.MediaConvertException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.MediaConvertClient;
import java.net.URI;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetJob {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = "\n" +
                "  <jobId> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "  jobId - The job id value.\n\n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String jobId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MediaConvertClient mc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getSpecificJob(mc, jobId);
        mc.close();
    }

    public static void getSpecificJob(MediaConvertClient mc, String jobId) {
        try {
            DescribeEndpointsResponse res =
 mc.describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .build());

            if (res.endpoints().size() <= 0) {
```

```
                System.out.println("Cannot find MediaConvert service endpoint
 URL!");
                System.exit(1);
            }
            String endpointURL = res.endpoints().get(0).url();
            MediaConvertClient emc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                    .endpointOverride(URI.create(endpointURL))
                    .build();

            GetJobRequest jobRequest = GetJobRequest.builder()
                    .id(jobId)
                    .build();

            GetJobResponse response = emc.getJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the job is " + response.job().arn());

        } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
            System.out.println(e.toString());
            System.exit(0);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificJob(mcClient: MediaConvertClient, jobId: String) {
    // 1. Discover the correct endpoint
    val res = mcClient.describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest { maxResults =
 1 })
    var endpointUrl = res.endpoints?.firstOrNull()?.url
```

```
        ?: error(" No MediaConvert endpoint found")

    // 2. Create a new client using the endpoint
    val clientWithEndpoint = MediaConvertClient {
        region = "us-west-2"
        endpointUrl = endpointUrl
    }

    // 3. Get the job details
    val jobResponse = clientWithEndpoint.getJob(GetJobRequest { id = jobId })
    val job = jobResponse.job

    println("Job status: ${job?.status}")
    println("Job ARN: ${job?.arn}")
    println("Output group count: ${job?.settings?.outputGroups?.size}")
}
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListJobs`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-
role-in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];
```

```
        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

List the jobs with a particular status.

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Listing all complete jobs.");
        var completeJobs = await wrapper.ListAllJobsByStatus(JobStatus.COMPLETE);
        completeJobs.ForEach(j =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Job {j.Id} created on {j.CreatedAt:d} has status
{j.Status}.");
        });
```

List the jobs using a paginator.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the jobs with a particular status using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="status">The status to use when listing jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of jobs matching the status.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Job>> ListAllJobsByStatus(JobStatus? status = null)
    {
        var returnedJobs = new List<Job>();

        var paginatedJobs = _amazonMediaConvert.Paginators.ListJobs(
                new ListJobsRequest
                {
                    Status = status
                });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var job in paginatedJobs.Jobs)
        {
```

```
            returnedJobs.Add(job);
        }

        return returnedJobs;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve a list of created jobs.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::MediaConvert::listJobs(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::MediaConvert::MediaConvertClient client(clientConfiguration);

    bool result = true;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used to handle paginated results.
    do {
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ListJobsRequest request;
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
        const Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ListJobsOutcome outcome =
 client.ListJobs(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Job> &jobs =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetJobs();
```

```
            std::cout << jobs.size() << " jobs retrieved." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Job &job: jobs) {
                std::cout << "  " << job.Jsonize().View().WriteReadable() <<
 std::endl;
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "DescribeEndpoints error - " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;

        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());


    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details for all jobs in a region

The following example requests the information for all of your jobs in the specified region.

```
aws mediaconvert list-jobs \
    --endpoint-url https://abcd1234.mediaconvert.region-name-1.amazonaws.com \
    --region region-name-1
```

To get your account-specific endpoint, use `describe-endpoints`, or send the command without the endpoint. The service returns an error and your endpoint.

For more information, see Working with AWS Elemental MediaConvert Jobs in the *AWS Elemental MediaConvert User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.MediaConvertClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ListJobsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ListJobsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.Job;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.MediaConvertException;
import java.net.URI;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListJobs {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MediaConvertClient mc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listCompleteJobs(mc);
```

```
        mc.close();
    }

    public static void listCompleteJobs(MediaConvertClient mc) {
        try {
            DescribeEndpointsResponse res =
 mc.describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .build());

            if (res.endpoints().size() <= 0) {
                System.out.println("Cannot find MediaConvert service endpoint
 URL!");
                System.exit(1);
            }

            String endpointURL = res.endpoints().get(0).url();
            MediaConvertClient emc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                    .endpointOverride(URI.create(endpointURL))
                    .build();

            ListJobsRequest jobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .status("COMPLETE")
                    .build();

            ListJobsResponse jobsResponse = emc.listJobs(jobsRequest);
            List<Job> jobs = jobsResponse.jobs();
            for (Job job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("The JOB ARN is : " + job.arn());
            }

        } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
            System.out.println(e.toString());
            System.exit(0);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listCompleteJobs(mcClient: MediaConvertClient) {
    val describeEndpoints =
        DescribeEndpointsRequest {
            maxResults = 20
        }

    val res = mcClient.describeEndpoints(describeEndpoints)
    if (res.endpoints?.size!! <= 0) {
        println("Cannot find MediaConvert service endpoint URL!")
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    val endpointURL = res.endpoints!![0].url!!
    val mediaConvert =
        MediaConvertClient.fromEnvironment {
            region = "us-west-2"
            endpointProvider =
                MediaConvertEndpointProvider {
                    Endpoint(endpointURL)
                }
        }

    val jobsRequest =
        ListJobsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
            status = JobStatus.fromValue("COMPLETE")
        }

    val jobsResponse = mediaConvert.listJobs(jobsRequest)
    val jobs = jobsResponse.jobs
    if (jobs != null) {
        for (job in jobs) {
            println("The JOB ARN is ${job.arn}")
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for MediaLive using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Elemental MediaLive with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **MediaLive User Guide** – More information about MediaLive.
- **MediaLive API Reference** – Details about all available MediaLive actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for MediaLive using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for MediaLive using AWS SDKs
    - Use ListInputs with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for MediaLive using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Elemental MediaLive with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for MediaLive using AWS SDKs
  - Use ListInputs with an AWS SDK

Actions for MediaLive using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual MediaLive actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Elemental MediaLive API Reference.

Examples

- Use ListInputs with an AWS SDK

Use `ListInputs` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListInputs`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your MediaLive input names and ARNs in the Region.

```
async fn show_inputs(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let input_list = client.list_inputs().send().await?;

    for i in input_list.inputs() {
        let input_arn = i.arn().unwrap_or_default();
        let input_name = i.name().unwrap_or_default();

        println!("Input Name : {}", input_name);
        println!("Input ARN : {}", input_arn);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListInputs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Elemental MediaPackage with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **MediaPackage User Guide** – More information about MediaPackage.
- **MediaPackage API Reference** – Details about all available MediaPackage actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs
    - Use ListChannels with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListOriginEndpoints with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Elemental MediaPackage with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs
  - Use ListChannels with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListOriginEndpoints with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for MediaPackage using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual MediaPackage actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Elemental MediaPackage API Reference.

Examples

- Use ListChannels with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListOriginEndpoints with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `ListChannels` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListChannels`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all channels

The following `list-channels` command lists all of the channels that are configured on the current AWS account.

```
aws mediapackage list-channels
```

Output:

```
{
    "Channels": [
        {
            "Arn": "arn:aws:mediapackage:us-
west-2:111222333:channels/584797f1740548c389a273585dd22a63",
            "HlsIngest": {
                "IngestEndpoints": [
                    {
                        "Id": "584797f1740548c389a273585dd22a63",
                        "Password": "webdavgeneratedpassword1",
```

```
                        "Url": "https://9be9c4405c474882.mediapackage.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/in/
v2/584797f1740548c389a273585dd22a63/584797f1740548c389a273585dd22a63/channel",
                        "Username": "webdavgeneratedusername1"
                    },
                    {
                        "Id": "7d187c8616fd455f88aaa5a9fcf74442",
                        "Password": "webdavgeneratedpassword2",
                        "Url": "https://7bf454c57220328d.mediapackage.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/in/
v2/584797f1740548c389a273585dd22a63/7d187c8616fd455f88aaa5a9fcf74442/channel",
                        "Username": "webdavgeneratedusername2"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Id": "test",
            "Tags": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing Channel Details in the *AWS Elemental MediaPackage User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListChannels in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List channel ARNs and descriptions.

```
async fn show_channels(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let list_channels = client.list_channels().send().await?;

    println!("Channels:");
```

```
    for c in list_channels.channels() {
        let description = c.description().unwrap_or_default();
        let arn = c.arn().unwrap_or_default();

        println!("  Description : {}", description);
        println!("  ARN :         {}", arn);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListChannels in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListOriginEndpoints` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListOriginEndpoints`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all origin-endpoints on a channel

The following `list-origin-endpoints` command lists all of the origin endpoints that are configured on the channel named `test`.

```
aws mediapackage list-origin-endpoints \
    --channel-id test
```

Output:

```
{
    "OriginEndpoints": [
        {
            "Arn": "arn:aws:mediapackage:us-
west-2:111222333:origin_endpoints/247cff871f2845d3805129be22f2c0a2",
            "ChannelId": "test",
            "DashPackage": {
                "ManifestLayout": "FULL",
```

```
                "ManifestWindowSeconds": 60,
                "MinBufferTimeSeconds": 30,
                "MinUpdatePeriodSeconds": 15,
                "PeriodTriggers": [],
                "Profile": "NONE",
                "SegmentDurationSeconds": 2,
                "SegmentTemplateFormat": "NUMBER_WITH_TIMELINE",
                "StreamSelection": {
                    "MaxVideoBitsPerSecond": 2147483647,
                    "MinVideoBitsPerSecond": 0,
                    "StreamOrder": "ORIGINAL"
                },
                "SuggestedPresentationDelaySeconds": 25
            },
            "Id": "tester2",
            "ManifestName": "index",
            "StartoverWindowSeconds": 0,
            "Tags": {},
            "TimeDelaySeconds": 0,
            "Url": "https://8343f7014c0ea438.mediapackage.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/out/v1/247cff871f2845d3805129be22f2c0a2/index.mpd",
            "Whitelist": []
        },
        {
            "Arn": "arn:aws:mediapackage:us-
west-2:111222333:origin_endpoints/869e237f851549e9bcf10e3bc2830839",
            "ChannelId": "test",
            "HlsPackage": {
                "AdMarkers": "NONE",
                "IncludeIframeOnlyStream": false,
                "PlaylistType": "EVENT",
                "PlaylistWindowSeconds": 60,
                "ProgramDateTimeIntervalSeconds": 0,
                "SegmentDurationSeconds": 6,
                "StreamSelection": {
                    "MaxVideoBitsPerSecond": 2147483647,
                    "MinVideoBitsPerSecond": 0,
                    "StreamOrder": "ORIGINAL"
                },
                "UseAudioRenditionGroup": false
            },
            "Id": "tester",
            "ManifestName": "index",
            "StartoverWindowSeconds": 0,
```

```
            "Tags": {},
            "TimeDelaySeconds": 0,
            "Url": "https://8343f7014c0ea438.mediapackage.us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/out/v1/869e237f851549e9bcf10e3bc2830839/index.m3u8",
            "Whitelist": []
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing all Endpoints Associated with a Channel in the *AWS Elemental MediaPackage User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListOriginEndpoints in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your endpoint descriptions and URLs.

```
async fn show_endpoints(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let or_endpoints = client.list_origin_endpoints().send().await?;

    println!("Endpoints:");

    for e in or_endpoints.origin_endpoints() {
        let endpoint_url = e.url().unwrap_or_default();
        let endpoint_description = e.description().unwrap_or_default();
        println!("  Description: {}", endpoint_description);
        println!("  URL :        {}", endpoint_url);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListOriginEndpoints in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Migration Hub with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Migration Hub User Guide** – More information about Migration Hub.
- **Migration Hub API Reference** – Details about all available Migration Hub actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs
    - Use DeleteProgressUpdateStream with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeApplicationState with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeMigrationTask with an AWS SDK
    - Use ImportMigrationTask with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListApplications with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListCreatedArtifacts with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListMigrationTasks with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Migration Hub with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs
  - Use DeleteProgressUpdateStream with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeApplicationState with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeMigrationTask with an AWS SDK
  - Use ImportMigrationTask with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListApplications with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListCreatedArtifacts with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListMigrationTasks with an AWS SDK

Actions for Migration Hub using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Migration Hub actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Migration Hub API Reference.

Examples

- Use DeleteProgressUpdateStream with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeApplicationState with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeMigrationTask with an AWS SDK
- Use ImportMigrationTask with an AWS SDK
- Use ListApplications with an AWS SDK
- Use ListCreatedArtifacts with an AWS SDK
- Use ListMigrationTasks with an AWS SDK

Use `DeleteProgressUpdateStream` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteProgressUpdateStream`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DeleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteProgressStream {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <progressStream>\s

                Where:
                    progressStream - the name of a progress stream to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String progressStream = args[0];
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteStream(migrationClient, progressStream);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteStream(MigrationHubClient migrationClient, String
 streamName) {
        try {
            DeleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest deleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest =
 DeleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest
                    .builder()
                    .progressUpdateStreamName(streamName)
                    .build();


 migrationClient.deleteProgressUpdateStream(deleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest);
            System.out.println(streamName + " is deleted");

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteProgressUpdateStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeApplicationState` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplicationState`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeApplicationStateRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeApplicationStateResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeAppState {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    DescribeAppState <appId>\s

                Where:
                    appId -  the application id value.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String appId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeApplicationState(migrationClient, appId);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeApplicationState(MigrationHubClient
 migrationClient, String appId) {
        try {
            DescribeApplicationStateRequest applicationStateRequest =
 DescribeApplicationStateRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            DescribeApplicationStateResponse applicationStateResponse =
 migrationClient
                    .describeApplicationState(applicationStateRequest);
            System.out.println("The application status is " +
 applicationStateResponse.applicationStatusAsString());

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplicationState in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeMigrationTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeMigrationTask`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeMigrationTaskRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeMigrationTaskResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeMigrationTask {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    DescribeMigrationTask <migrationTask> <progressStream>\s

                Where:
                    migrationTask - the name of a migration task.\s
                    progressStream - the name of a progress stream.\s
                """;

        if (args.length < 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String migrationTask = args[0];
        String progressStream = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeMigTask(migrationClient, migrationTask, progressStream);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeMigTask(MigrationHubClient migrationClient, String
 migrationTask,
            String progressStream) {
        try {
            DescribeMigrationTaskRequest migrationTaskRequestRequest =
 DescribeMigrationTaskRequest.builder()
                    .progressUpdateStream(progressStream)
                    .migrationTaskName(migrationTask)
                    .build();

            DescribeMigrationTaskResponse migrationTaskResponse = migrationClient
                    .describeMigrationTask(migrationTaskRequestRequest);
            System.out.println("The name is " +
 migrationTaskResponse.migrationTask().migrationTaskName());

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeMigrationTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ImportMigrationTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ImportMigrationTask`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.CreateProgressUpdateStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ImportMigrationTaskRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ImportMigrationTask {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <migrationTask> <progressStream>\s

                Where:
                    migrationTask - the name of a migration task.\s
                    progressStream - the name of a progress stream.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }

        String migrationTask = args[0];
        String progressStream = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        importMigrTask(migrationClient, migrationTask, progressStream);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void importMigrTask(MigrationHubClient migrationClient, String
 migrationTask, String progressStream) {
        try {
            CreateProgressUpdateStreamRequest progressUpdateStreamRequest =
 CreateProgressUpdateStreamRequest.builder()
                    .progressUpdateStreamName(progressStream)
                    .dryRun(false)
                    .build();


 migrationClient.createProgressUpdateStream(progressUpdateStreamRequest);
            ImportMigrationTaskRequest migrationTaskRequest =
 ImportMigrationTaskRequest.builder()
                    .migrationTaskName(migrationTask)
                    .progressUpdateStream(progressStream)
                    .dryRun(false)
                    .build();

            migrationClient.importMigrationTask(migrationTaskRequest);

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportMigrationTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListApplications` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListApplications`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ApplicationState;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListApplicationStatesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListApplicationStatesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListApplications {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listApps(migrationClient);
        migrationClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void listApps(MigrationHubClient migrationClient) {
        try {
            ListApplicationStatesRequest applicationStatesRequest =
 ListApplicationStatesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListApplicationStatesResponse response =
 migrationClient.listApplicationStates(applicationStatesRequest);
            List<ApplicationState> apps = response.applicationStateList();
            for (ApplicationState appState : apps) {
                System.out.println("App Id is " + appState.applicationId());
                System.out.println("The status is " +
 appState.applicationStatus().toString());
            }

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListApplications in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListCreatedArtifacts` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListCreatedArtifacts`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.CreatedArtifact;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListCreatedArtifactsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListCreatedArtifactsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * To run this Java V2 code example, ensure that you have setup your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListCreatedArtifacts {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listArtifacts(migrationClient);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void listArtifacts(MigrationHubClient migrationClient) {
        try {
            ListCreatedArtifactsRequest listCreatedArtifactsRequest =
 ListCreatedArtifactsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .migrationTaskName("SampleApp5")
                    .progressUpdateStream("ProgressSteamB")
                    .build();

            ListCreatedArtifactsResponse response =
 migrationClient.listCreatedArtifacts(listCreatedArtifactsRequest);
            List<CreatedArtifact> apps = response.createdArtifactList();
            for (CreatedArtifact artifact : apps) {
                System.out.println("APp Id is " + artifact.description());
                System.out.println("The name is " + artifact.name());
```

```
            }

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCreatedArtifacts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListMigrationTasks` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListMigrationTasks`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListMigrationTasksRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListMigrationTasksResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationTaskSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListMigrationTasks {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMigrTasks(migrationClient);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMigrTasks(MigrationHubClient migrationClient) {
        try {
            ListMigrationTasksRequest listMigrationTasksRequest =
 ListMigrationTasksRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListMigrationTasksResponse response =
 migrationClient.listMigrationTasks(listMigrationTasksRequest);
            List<MigrationTaskSummary> migrationList =
 response.migrationTaskSummaryList();
            for (MigrationTaskSummary migration : migrationList) {
                System.out.println("Migration task name is " +
 migration.migrationTaskName());
                System.out.println("The Progress update stream is " +
 migration.progressUpdateStream());
            }

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMigrationTasks in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon MSK using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Managed Streaming for Apache Kafka with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

More resources

- **Amazon MSK Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon MSK.
- **Amazon MSK API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon MSK actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Serverless examples for Amazon MSK
  - Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

Serverless examples for Amazon MSK

The following code examples show how to use Amazon MSK with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KafkaEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace MSKLambda;

public class Function
{


    /// <param name="input">The event for the Lambda function handler to
 process.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The ILambdaContext that provides methods for
 logging and describing the Lambda environment.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public void FunctionHandler(KafkaEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key:" + record.Key);
            foreach (var eventRecord in record.Value)
            {
                var valueBytes = eventRecord.Value.ToArray();
                var valueText = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(valueBytes);
```

```
                Console.WriteLine("Message:" + valueText);
            }
        }
    }


}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "encoding/base64"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.KafkaEvent) {
 for key, records := range event.Records {
  fmt.Println("Key:", key)

  for _, record := range records {
   fmt.Println("Record:", record)

   decodedValue, _ := base64.StdEncoding.DecodeString(record.Value)
   message := string(decodedValue)
```

```
    fmt.Println("Message:", message)
   }
  }
 }

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent.KafkaEventRecord;

import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Map;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<KafkaEvent, Void> {

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(KafkaEvent event, Context context) {
        for (Map.Entry<String, java.util.List<KafkaEventRecord>> entry :
 event.getRecords().entrySet()) {
            String key = entry.getKey();
            System.out.println("Key: " + key);

            for (KafkaEventRecord record : entry.getValue()) {
                System.out.println("Record: " + record);
```

```
                byte[] value = Base64.getDecoder().decode(record.getValue());
                String message = new String(value);
                System.out.println("Message: " + message);
            }
        }

        return null;
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
exports.handler = async (event) => {
    // Iterate through keys
    for (let key in event.records) {
      console.log('Key: ', key)
      // Iterate through records
      event.records[key].map((record) => {
        console.log('Record: ', record)
        // Decode base64
        const msg = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString()
        console.log('Message:', msg)
      })
    }
}
```

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import { MSKEvent, Context } from "aws-lambda";
```

```
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "msk-handler-sample",
});

export const handler = async (
  event: MSKEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const [topic, topicRecords] of Object.entries(event.records)) {
    logger.info(`Processing key: ${topic}`);

    // Process each record in the partition
    for (const record of topicRecords) {
      try {
        // Decode the message value from base64
        const decodedMessage = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString();

        logger.info({
          message: decodedMessage
        });
      }
      catch (error) {
        logger.error('Error processing event', { error });
        throw error;
      }
    };
  }
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

// using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kafka\KafkaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $kafkaEvent = new KafkaEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kafkaEvent->getRecords();
```

```
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $key = $record->getKey();
                $this->logger->info("Key: $key");

                $values = $record->getValue();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($values));

                foreach ($values as $value) {
                    $this->logger->info("Value: $value");
                }

            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Python.

```
import base64

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Iterate through keys
```

```
    for key in event['records']:
        print('Key:', key)
        # Iterate through records
        for record in event['records'][key]:
            print('Record:', record)
            # Decode base64
            msg = base64.b64decode(record['value']).decode('utf-8')
            print('Message:', msg)
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'base64'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  # Iterate through keys
  event['records'].each do |key, records|
    puts "Key: #{key}"

    # Iterate through records
    records.each do |record|
      puts "Record: #{record}"

      # Decode base64
      msg = Base64.decode64(record['value'])
      puts "Message: #{msg}"
    end
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::event::kafka::KafkaEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use base64::prelude::*;
use serde_json::{Value};
use tracing::{info};

/// Pre-Requisites:
/// 1. Install Cargo Lambda - see https://www.cargo-lambda.info/guide/getting-
started.html
/// 2. Add packages tracing, tracing-subscriber, serde_json, base64
///
/// This is the main body for the function.
/// Write your code inside it.
/// There are some code example in the following URLs:
/// - https://github.com/awslabs/aws-lambda-rust-runtime/tree/main/examples
/// - https://github.com/aws-samples/serverless-rust-demo/

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KafkaEvent>) -> Result<Value, Error>
 {

    let payload = event.payload.records;

    for (_name, records) in payload.iter() {

        for record in records {

         let record_text = record.value.as_ref().ok_or("Value is None")?;
         info!("Record: {}", &record_text);

         // perform Base64 decoding
         let record_bytes = BASE64_STANDARD.decode(record_text)?;
```

```
            let message = std::str::from_utf8(&record_bytes)?;

            info!("Message: {}", message);
           }

    }

    Ok(().into())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {

    // required to enable CloudWatch error logging by the runtime
    tracing::init_default_subscriber();
    info!("Setup CW subscriber!");

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Code examples for Neptune using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Neptune with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Neptune User Guide** – More information about Neptune.
- **Neptune API Reference** – Details about all available Neptune actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Neptune

The following code examples show how to get started using Neptune.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloNeptune {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        NeptuneAsyncClient neptuneClient = NeptuneAsyncClient.create();
        describeDbCluster(neptuneClient).join(); // This ensures the async code
 runs to completion
    }

    /**
     * Describes the Amazon Neptune DB clusters.
     *
     * @param neptuneClient the Neptune asynchronous client used to make the
 request
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
 finished
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> describeDbCluster(NeptuneAsyncClient
 neptuneClient) {
        DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
```

```
                .maxRecords(20)
                .build();

        SdkPublisher<DescribeDbClustersResponse> paginator =
neptuneClient.describeDBClustersPaginator(request);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        paginator.subscribe(new Subscriber<DescribeDbClustersResponse>() {
            private Subscription subscription;

            @Override
            public void onSubscribe(Subscription s) {
                this.subscription = s;
                s.request(Long.MAX_VALUE); // request all items
            }

            @Override
            public void onNext(DescribeDbClustersResponse response) {
                response.dbClusters().forEach(cluster -> {
                    System.out.println("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
                    System.out.println("Status: " + cluster.status());
                });
            }

            @Override
            public void onError(Throwable t) {
                future.completeExceptionally(t);
            }

            @Override
            public void onComplete() {
                future.complete(null);
            }
        });

        return future.whenComplete((result, throwable) -> {
            neptuneClient.close();
            if (throwable != null) {
                System.err.println("Error describing DB clusters: " +
throwable.getMessage());
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClustersPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client):
    """
    Describes the Amazon Neptune DB clusters using a paginator to handle multiple
 pages.
    Raises ClientError with 'ResourceNotFoundException' if no clusters are found.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator("describe_db_clusters")
    clusters_found = False

    for page in paginator.paginate():
        for cluster in page.get("DBClusters", []):
            clusters_found = True
            print(f"Cluster Identifier: {cluster['DBClusterIdentifier']}")
            print(f"Status: {cluster['Status']}")

    if not clusters_found:
        raise ClientError(
            {
                "Error": {
                    "Code": "ResourceNotFoundException",
                    "Message": "No Neptune DB clusters found."
                }
            },
            operation_name="DescribeDBClusters"
```

```
        )

def main():
    """
    Main entry point: creates the Neptune client and calls the describe
 operation.
    """
    neptune_client = boto3.client("neptune")
    try:
        describe_db_clusters(neptune_client)
    except ClientError as e:
        error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        if error_code == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            print(f"Resource not found: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
        else:
            print(f"Unexpected ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClustersPaginator in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Neptune using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Neptune
  - Learn the basics of Neptune with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Neptune using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDBCluster with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateDBSubnetGroup with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateGraph with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDBCluster with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK

- Use DeleteDBSubnetGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBClusters with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteGremlinQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use StartDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use StopDBCluster with an AWS SDK

- Scenarios for Neptune using AWS SDKs
  - Use the Amazon Neptune API to develop a Lambda function that queries graph data

Basic examples for Neptune using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Neptune with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Neptune
- Learn the basics of Neptune with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Neptune using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateDBCluster with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateDBSubnetGroup with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateGraph with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDBCluster with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteDBSubnetGroup with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBClusters with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK
  - Use ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery with an AWS SDK
  - Use ExecuteGremlinQuery with an AWS SDK

- Use ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use StartDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use StopDBCluster with an AWS SDK

Hello Amazon Neptune

The following code examples show how to get started using Neptune.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloNeptune {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        NeptuneAsyncClient neptuneClient = NeptuneAsyncClient.create();
        describeDbCluster(neptuneClient).join(); // This ensures the async code
 runs to completion
    }

    /**
     * Describes the Amazon Neptune DB clusters.
     *
     * @param neptuneClient the Neptune asynchronous client used to make the
 request
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
finished
    */
   public static CompletableFuture<Void> describeDbCluster(NeptuneAsyncClient
neptuneClient) {
       DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
               .maxRecords(20)
               .build();

       SdkPublisher<DescribeDbClustersResponse> paginator =
neptuneClient.describeDBClustersPaginator(request);
       CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

       paginator.subscribe(new Subscriber<DescribeDbClustersResponse>() {
           private Subscription subscription;

           @Override
           public void onSubscribe(Subscription s) {
               this.subscription = s;
               s.request(Long.MAX_VALUE); // request all items
           }

           @Override
           public void onNext(DescribeDbClustersResponse response) {
               response.dbClusters().forEach(cluster -> {
                   System.out.println("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
                   System.out.println("Status: " + cluster.status());
               });
           }

           @Override
           public void onError(Throwable t) {
               future.completeExceptionally(t);
           }

           @Override
           public void onComplete() {
               future.complete(null);
           }
       });

       return future.whenComplete((result, throwable) -> {
           neptuneClient.close();
```

```
            if (throwable != null) {
                System.err.println("Error describing DB clusters: " +
 throwable.getMessage());
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClustersPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client):
    """
    Describes the Amazon Neptune DB clusters using a paginator to handle multiple
 pages.
    Raises ClientError with 'ResourceNotFoundException' if no clusters are found.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator("describe_db_clusters")
    clusters_found = False

    for page in paginator.paginate():
        for cluster in page.get("DBClusters", []):
            clusters_found = True
            print(f"Cluster Identifier: {cluster['DBClusterIdentifier']}")
            print(f"Status: {cluster['Status']}")

    if not clusters_found:
        raise ClientError(
            {
```

```
                "Error": {
                    "Code": "ResourceNotFoundException",
                    "Message": "No Neptune DB clusters found."
                }
            },
            operation_name="DescribeDBClusters"
        )

def main():
    """
    Main entry point: creates the Neptune client and calls the describe
 operation.
    """
    neptune_client = boto3.client("neptune")
    try:
        describe_db_clusters(neptune_client)
    except ClientError as e:
        error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        if error_code == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            print(f"Resource not found: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
        else:
            print(f"Unexpected ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClustersPaginator in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Neptune with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an Amazon Neptune Subnet Group.
- Create an Neptune Cluster.
- Create an Neptune Instance.
- Check the status of the Neptune Instance.

- Show Neptune cluster details.
- Stop the Neptune cluster.
- Start the Neptune cluster.
- Delete the Neptune Assets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Neptune features.

```
public class NeptuneScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(NeptuneScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    static NeptuneActions neptuneActions = new NeptuneActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
                """
                Usage:
                    <subnetGroupName> <clusterName> <dbInstanceId>

                Where:
                    subnetGroupName - The name of an existing Neptune DB subnet
 group that includes subnets in at least two Availability Zones.
                    clusterName     - The unique identifier for the Neptune DB
 cluster.
                    dbInstanceId    - The identifier for a specific Neptune DB
 instance within the cluster.
                """;
        String subnetGroupName = "neptuneSubnetGroup65";
        String clusterName = "neptuneCluster65";
```

```
        String dbInstanceId = "neptuneDB65";

        logger.info("""
                   Amazon Neptune is a fully managed graph
                   database service by AWS, designed specifically
                   for handling complex relationships and connected
                   datasets at scale. It supports two popular graph models:
                   property graphs (via openCypher and Gremlin) and RDF
                   graphs (via SPARQL). This makes Neptune ideal for
                   use cases such as knowledge graphs, fraud detection,
                   social networking, recommendation engines, and
                   network management, where relationships between
                   entities are central to the data.

                   Being fully managed, Neptune handles database
                   provisioning, patching, backups, and replication,
                   while also offering high availability and durability
                   within AWS's infrastructure.

                   For developers, programming with Neptune allows
                   for building intelligent, relationship-aware
                   applications that go beyond traditional tabular
                   databases. Developers can use the AWS SDK for Java
                   to automate infrastructure operations (via NeptuneClient).

                    Let's get started...
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        runScenario(subnetGroupName, dbInstanceId, clusterName);
    }

    public static void runScenario(String subnetGroupName, String dbInstanceId,
 String clusterName) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a Neptune DB Subnet Group");
        logger.info("The Neptune DB subnet group is used when launching a Neptune
 cluster");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.createSubnetGroupAsync(subnetGroupName).join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
```

```
                logger.error("The request failed due to service quota exceeded:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create a Neptune Cluster");
        logger.info("A Neptune Cluster allows you to store and query highly
connected datasets with low latency.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String dbClusterId;
        try {
            dbClusterId =
neptuneActions.createDBClusterAsync(clusterName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to service quota exceeded:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a Neptune DB Instance");
        logger.info("In this step, we add a new database instance to the Neptune
cluster");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
        neptuneActions.createDBInstanceAsync(dbInstanceId, dbClusterId).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
```

```
                logger.error("The request failed due to service quota exceeded:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Check the status of the Neptune DB Instance");
        logger.info("""
                    In this step, we will wait until the DB instance
                    becomes available. This may take around 10 minutes.
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.checkInstanceStatus(dbInstanceId, "available").join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5.Show Neptune Cluster details");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.describeDBClustersAsync(clusterName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Stop the Amazon Neptune cluster");
        logger.info("""
                    Once stopped, this step polls the status
                    until the cluster is in a stopped state.
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.stopDBClusterAsync(dbClusterId);
            neptuneActions.waitForClusterStatus(dbClusterId, "stopped");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Start the Amazon Neptune cluster");
        logger.info("""
                    Once started, this step polls the clusters
                    status until it's in an available state.
                    We will also poll the instance status.
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.startDBClusterAsync(dbClusterId);
            neptuneActions.waitForClusterStatus(dbClusterId, "available");
            neptuneActions.checkInstanceStatus(dbInstanceId, "available").join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
```

```
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Delete the Neptune Assets");
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the Neptune Assets? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the Neptune assets.");
            try {
                neptuneActions.deleteNeptuneResourcesAsync(dbInstanceId,
 clusterName, subnetGroupName);
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not
 found: {}", cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
                }
                return;
            }
        } else {
            logger.info("You selected not to delete Neptune assets.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info(
                """
                Thank you for checking out the Amazon Neptune Service Use demo.
 We hope you
                learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today.
                For more AWS code examples, have a look at:
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-
library.html
                """);
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
```

```
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Neptune SDK methods.

```
public class NeptuneActions {
    private CompletableFuture<Void> instanceCheckFuture;
    private static NeptuneAsyncClient neptuneAsyncClient;
    private final Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(NeptuneActions.class);
    private final NeptuneClient neptuneClient =
 NeptuneClient.builder().region(region).build();

    /**
     * Retrieves an instance of the NeptuneAsyncClient.
     * <p>
     * This method initializes and returns a singleton instance of the
 NeptuneAsyncClient. The client
     * is configured with the following settings:
     * <ul>
     *     <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *     <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *     <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Retry strategy: STANDARD</li>
     * </ul>
```

```
     * The client is built using the NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.
     *
     * @return the singleton instance of the NeptuneAsyncClient
     */
    private static NeptuneAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (neptuneAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                    .maxConcurrency(100)
                    .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                    .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                    .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                    .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                    .build();

            neptuneAsyncClient = NeptuneAsyncClient.builder()
                    .httpClient(httpClient)
                    .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                    .build();
        }
        return neptuneAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes a set of Amazon Neptune resources in a defined
order.
     * <p>
     * The method performs the following operations in sequence:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Deletes the Neptune DB instance identified by {@code
dbInstanceId}.</li>
     *     <li>Waits until the DB instance is fully deleted.</li>
     *     <li>Deletes the Neptune DB cluster identified by {@code
dbClusterId}.</li>
     *     <li>Deletes the Neptune DB subnet group identified by {@code
subnetGroupName}.</li>
     * </ol>
     * <p>
```

```
    * If any step fails, the subsequent operations are not performed, and the
exception
    * is logged. This method blocks the calling thread until all operations
complete.
    *
    * @param dbInstanceId      the ID of the Neptune DB instance to delete
    * @param dbClusterId       the ID of the Neptune DB cluster to delete
    * @param subnetGroupName   the name of the Neptune DB subnet group to delete
    */
   public void deleteNeptuneResourcesAsync(String dbInstanceId, String
dbClusterId, String subnetGroupName) {
       deleteDBInstanceAsync(dbInstanceId)
               .thenCompose(v -> waitUntilInstanceDeletedAsync(dbInstanceId))
               .thenCompose(v -> deleteDBClusterAsync(dbClusterId))
               .thenCompose(v -> deleteDBSubnetGroupAsync(subnetGroupName))
               .whenComplete((v, ex) -> {
                   if (ex != null) {
                       logger.info("Failed to delete Neptune resources: " +
ex.getMessage());
                   } else {
                       logger.info("Neptune resources deleted successfully.");
                   }
               })
               .join(); // Waits for the entire async chain to complete
   }

   /**
    * Deletes a subnet group.
    *
    * @param subnetGroupName the identifier of the subnet group to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has
been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBSubnetGroupAsync(String
subnetGroupName) {
       DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest request = DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
               .dbSubnetGroupName(subnetGroupName)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDBSubnetGroup(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> logger.info("## Deleting Subnet Group: "
+ subnetGroupName));
   }
```

```
    /**
     * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has
been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
        DeleteDbClusterRequest request = DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDBCluster(request)
                .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB
Cluster: " + clusterId));
    }

    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitUntilInstanceDeletedAsync(String
instanceId) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
        checkInstanceDeletedRecursive(instanceId, startTime, future);
        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceId the identifier of the DB instance to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the DB instance
has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest request = DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
                .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDBInstance(request)
                .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB
Instance: " + instanceId));
    }
```

```
   private void checkInstanceDeletedRecursive(String instanceId, long startTime,
CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
       DescribeDbInstancesRequest request = DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
               .build();

       getAsyncClient().describeDBInstances(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof NeptuneException &&
                               ((NeptuneException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorCode().equals("DBInstanceNotFound")) {
                           long elapsed = (System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime) / 1000;
                           logger.info("\r Instance %s deleted after %ds%n",
instanceId, elapsed);
                           future.complete(null);
                           return;
                       }
                       future.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Error polling DB instance", cause));
                       return;
                   }

                   String status =
response.dbInstances().get(0).dbInstanceStatus();
                   long elapsed = (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) /
1000;
                   System.out.printf("\r  Waiting: Instance %s status: %-10s
(%ds elapsed)", instanceId, status, elapsed);
                   System.out.flush();

                   CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                           .execute(() ->
checkInstanceDeletedRecursive(instanceId, startTime, future));
               });
   }


   public void waitForClusterStatus(String clusterId, String desiredStatus) {
       System.out.printf("Waiting for cluster '%s' to reach status '%s'...\n",
clusterId, desiredStatus);
```

```
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        checkClusterStatusRecursive(clusterId, desiredStatus,
System.currentTimeMillis(), future);
        future.join();
    }

    private void checkClusterStatusRecursive(String clusterId, String
desiredStatus, long startTime, CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
        DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().describeDBClusters(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        future.completeExceptionally(
                                new CompletionException("Error checking Neptune
cluster status", cause)
                        );
                        return;
                    }

                    List<DBCluster> clusters = response.dbClusters();
                    if (clusters.isEmpty()) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Cluster not found: " + clusterId));
                        return;
                    }

                    String currentStatus = clusters.get(0).status();
                    long elapsedSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime) / 1000;
                    System.out.printf("\r Elapsed: %-20s  Cluster status: %-20s",
formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds), currentStatus);
                    System.out.flush();

                    if (desiredStatus.equalsIgnoreCase(currentStatus)) {
                        System.out.printf("\r Neptune cluster reached
desired status '%s' after %s.\n", desiredStatus, formatElapsedTime((int)
elapsedSeconds));
                        future.complete(null);
                    } else {
                        CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
```

```
                                .execute(() ->
checkClusterStatusRecursive(clusterId, desiredStatus, startTime, future));
                    }
                });
    }


    /**
     * Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
     *
     * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
     */
    public CompletableFuture<StartDbClusterResponse> startDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
        StartDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StartDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().startDBCluster(clusterRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                    if (error != null) {
                        Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }

                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to start DB cluster: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("DB Cluster starting: " + clusterIdentifier);
                    }
                });
    }

    /**
     * Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
     *
     * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<StopDbClusterResponse> stopDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
       StopDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StopDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().stopDBCluster(clusterRequest)
               .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                   if (error != null) {
                       Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                       }

                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to stop DB cluster: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   } else {
                       logger.info("DB Cluster stopped: " + clusterIdentifier);
                   }
               });
   }



   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the specified Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the DB cluster to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
done, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
    * if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeDBClustersAsync(String clusterId) {
       DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describeDBClusters(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> {
                   for (DBCluster cluster : response.dbClusters()) {
                       logger.info("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
```

```
                        logger.info("Status: " + cluster.status());
                        logger.info("Engine: " + cluster.engine());
                        logger.info("Engine Version: " +
cluster.engineVersion());
                        logger.info("Endpoint: " + cluster.endpoint());
                        logger.info("Reader Endpoint: " +
cluster.readerEndpoint());
                        logger.info("Availability Zones: " +
cluster.availabilityZones());
                        logger.info("Subnet Group: " + cluster.dbSubnetGroup());
                        logger.info("VPC Security Groups:");
                        cluster.vpcSecurityGroups().forEach(vpcGroup ->
                                logger.info("  - " +
vpcGroup.vpcSecurityGroupId()));
                        logger.info("Storage Encrypted: " +
cluster.storageEncrypted());
                        logger.info("IAM DB Auth Enabled: " +
cluster.iamDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled());
                        logger.info("Backup Retention Period: " +
cluster.backupRetentionPeriod() + " days");
                        logger.info("Preferred Backup Window: " +
cluster.preferredBackupWindow());
                        logger.info("Preferred Maintenance Window: " +
cluster.preferredMaintenanceWindow());
                        logger.info("------");
                    }
                })
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause() != null ? ex.getCause() : ex;

                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                    }

                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe the DB
cluster: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                });
    }


    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkInstanceStatus(String instanceId, String
desiredStatus) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
```

```
        checkStatusRecursive(instanceId, desiredStatus.toLowerCase(), startTime,
future);
        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of a Neptune instance recursively until the desired
status is reached or a timeout occurs.
     *
     * @param instanceId     the ID of the Neptune instance to check
     * @param desiredStatus  the desired status of the Neptune instance
     * @param startTime      the start time of the operation, used to calculate
the elapsed time
     * @param future         a {@link CompletableFuture} that will be completed
when the desired status is reached
     */
    private void checkStatusRecursive(String instanceId, String desiredStatus,
long startTime, CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest request = DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().describeDBInstances(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        future.completeExceptionally(
                                new CompletionException("Error checking Neptune
instance status", cause)
                        );
                        return;
                    }

                    List<DBInstance> instances = response.dbInstances();
                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Instance not found: " + instanceId));
                        return;
                    }

                    String currentStatus = instances.get(0).dbInstanceStatus();
                    long elapsedSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime) / 1000;
```

```
                    System.out.printf("\r Elapsed: %-20s  Status: %-20s",
formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds), currentStatus);
                    System.out.flush();

                    if (desiredStatus.equalsIgnoreCase(currentStatus)) {
                        System.out.printf("\r Neptune instance reached
desired status '%s' after %s.\n", desiredStatus, formatElapsedTime((int)
elapsedSeconds));
                        future.complete(null);
                    } else {
                        CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                                .execute(() -> checkStatusRecursive(instanceId,
desiredStatus, startTime, future));
                    }
                });
   }


   private String formatElapsedTime(int seconds) {
       int minutes = seconds / 60;
       int remainingSeconds = seconds % 60;

       if (minutes > 0) {
           return minutes + (minutes == 1 ? " min" : " mins") + ", " +
                   remainingSeconds + (remainingSeconds == 1 ? " sec" : "
secs");
       } else {
           return remainingSeconds + (remainingSeconds == 1 ? " sec" : " secs");
       }
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param dbInstanceId the identifier for the new DB instance
    * @param dbClusterId  the identifier for the DB cluster that the new
instance will be a part of
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the identifier of
the newly created DB instance
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause of
either:
    *                             - {@link ServiceQuotaExceededException} if the
request would exceed the maximum quota, or
```

```
     *                            - a general exception with the failure message
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createDBInstanceAsync(String dbInstanceId,
String dbClusterId) {
        CreateDbInstanceRequest request = CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceId)
                .dbInstanceClass("db.r5.large")
                .engine("neptune")
                .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterId)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createDBInstance(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was
denied because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune
DB instance: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String instanceId =
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceIdentifier();
                    logger.info("Created Neptune DB Instance: " + instanceId);
                    return instanceId;
                });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB cluster asynchronously.
     *
     * @param dbName the name of the DB cluster to be created
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, provides the ID of the
created DB cluster
     * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails for any reason,
including if the request would exceed the maximum quota
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createDBClusterAsync(String dbName) {
        CreateDbClusterRequest request = CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(dbName)
```

```
                .engine("neptune")
                .deletionProtection(false)
                .backupRetentionPeriod(1)
                .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBCluster(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was
denied because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune
DB cluster: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String clusterId =
response.dbCluster().dbClusterIdentifier();
                    logger.info("DB Cluster created: " + clusterId);
                    return clusterId;
                });
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new DB subnet group asynchronously.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the subnet group to create
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the Amazon
Resource Name (ARN) of the created subnet group
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause that may
be a ServiceQuotaExceededException if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSubnetGroupAsync(String groupName) {

       // Get the Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) where the Neptune cluster
and resources will be created
       String vpcId = getDefaultVpcId();
       logger.info("VPC is : " + vpcId);

       List<String> subnetList = getSubnetIds(vpcId);
       for (String subnetId : subnetList) {
```

```
            System.out.println("Subnet group:" +subnetId);
        }

        CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest request = CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
                .dbSubnetGroupName(groupName)
                .dbSubnetGroupDescription("Subnet group for Neptune cluster")
                .subnetIds(subnetList)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createDBSubnetGroup(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was
denied because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create subnet
group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String name = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupName();
                    String arn = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupArn();
                    logger.info("Subnet group created: " + name);
                    return arn;
                });
    }

    private List<String> getSubnetIds(String vpcId) {
        try (Ec2Client ec2 = Ec2Client.builder().region(region).build()) {
            DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(builder -> builder.name("vpc-id").values(vpcId))
                    .build();

            DescribeSubnetsResponse response = ec2.describeSubnets(request);
            return response.subnets().stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());
        }
    }

    public static String getDefaultVpcId() {
        Ec2Client ec2 = Ec2Client.builder()
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        Filter myFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("isDefault")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        List<Filter> filterList = new ArrayList<>();
        filterList.add(myFilter);

        DescribeVpcsRequest request = DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
                .filters(filterList)
                .build();


        DescribeVpcsResponse response = ec2.describeVpcs(request);
        if (!response.vpcs().isEmpty()) {
            Vpc defaultVpc = response.vpcs().get(0);
            return defaultVpc.vpcId();
        } else {
            throw new RuntimeException("No default VPC found in this region.");
        }
    }
}
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
import time
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Constants used in this scenario
POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS = 10
TIMEOUT_SECONDS = 1200  # 20 minutes

def delete_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB cluster and throws exceptions to the caller.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the Neptune DB cluster to be deleted.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': cluster_id,
        'SkipFinalSnapshot': True
    }

    try:
        print(f"Deleting DB Cluster: {cluster_id}")
        neptune_client.delete_db_cluster(**request)

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB cluster. {code}: {message}")
        raise

def format_elapsed_time(seconds: int) -> str:
    mins, secs = divmod(seconds, 60)
    hours, mins = divmod(mins, 60)
    return f"{hours:02}:{mins:02}:{secs:02}"


def delete_db_instance(neptune_client, instance_id: str):
```

```
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB instance and waits for its deletion to complete.
    Raises exception to be handled by calling code.
    """
    print(f"Initiating deletion of DB Instance: {instance_id}")
    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_instance(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            SkipFinalSnapshot=True
        )

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{instance_id}' to be deleted...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_deleted')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={
                'Delay': 30,
                'MaxAttempts': 40
            }
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{instance_id}' successfully deleted.")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBInstanceNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB instance. {code}: {message}")
        raise

def delete_db_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB subnet group synchronously using Boto3.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        subnet_group_name (str): The name of the DB subnet group to delete.
```

```
    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    delete_group_request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': subnet_group_name
    }

    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_subnet_group(**delete_group_request)
        print(f"# Deleting Subnet Group: {subnet_group_name}")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBSubnetGroupNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Subnet group '{subnet_group_name}' not found or already
 deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete subnet group. {code}: {message}")
        raise

def wait_for_cluster_status(
        neptune_client,
        cluster_id: str,
        desired_status: str,
        timeout_seconds: int = TIMEOUT_SECONDS,
        poll_interval_seconds: int = POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS
):
    """
    Waits for a Neptune DB cluster to reach a desired status.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Amazon Neptune client.
        cluster_id (str): The identifier of the Neptune DB cluster.
        desired_status (str): The target status (e.g., "available", "stopped").
        timeout_seconds (int): Max time to wait in seconds (default: 1200).
        poll_interval_seconds (int): Polling interval in seconds (default: 10).

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: If the desired status is not reached before timeout.
```

```
    """
    print(f"Waiting for cluster '{cluster_id}' to reach status
 '{desired_status}'...")
    start_time = time.time()

    while True:
        # Prepare request object
        describe_cluster_request = {
            'DBClusterIdentifier': cluster_id
        }

        # Call the Neptune API
        response =
 neptune_client.describe_db_clusters(**describe_cluster_request)
        clusters = response.get('DBClusters', [])
        current_status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed_seconds = int(time.time() - start_time)

        status_str = current_status if current_status else "Unknown"
        print(
            f"\r Elapsed: {format_elapsed_time(elapsed_seconds):<20}  Cluster
 status: {status_str:<20}",
            end="", flush=True
        )

        if current_status and current_status.lower() == desired_status.lower():
            print(
                f"\nNeptune cluster reached desired status '{desired_status}'
 after {format_elapsed_time(elapsed_seconds)}."
            )
            return

        if elapsed_seconds > timeout_seconds:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for Neptune cluster to reach
 status: {desired_status}")

        time.sleep(poll_interval_seconds)


def start_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
    """
    Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it reaches 'available'.

    Args:
```

```
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: Propagates AWS API issues like resource not found.
        RuntimeError: If cluster doesn't reach 'available' within timeout.
    """
    try:
        # Initial wait in case the cluster was just stopped
        time.sleep(30)
        neptune_client.start_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't start DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling.
It may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
{message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
```

```
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s – Cluster status: {status}", end="",
 flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'available':
            print(f"\n# Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' is available.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster
 '{cluster_identifier}' to become available.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)


def stop_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
    """
    Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it's fully stopped.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: For AWS API errors (e.g., resource not found).
        RuntimeError: If the cluster doesn't stop within the timeout.
    """
    try:
        neptune_client.stop_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't stop DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')
```

```
    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling.
 It may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
 {message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s - Cluster status: {status}", end="",
 flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'stopped':
            print(f"\nCluster '{cluster_identifier}' is now stopped.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster
 '{cluster_identifier}' to stop.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)



def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Describes details of a Neptune DB cluster, paginating if needed.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the cluster to describe.
```

```
    Raises:
        ClientError: If there's an AWS API error (e.g., cluster not found).
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    try:
        pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id)

        found = False
        for page in pages:
            for cluster in page.get('DBClusters', []):
                found = True
                print(f"Cluster Identifier:
{cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')}")
                print(f"Status: {cluster.get('Status')}")
                print(f"Engine: {cluster.get('Engine')}")
                print(f"Engine Version: {cluster.get('EngineVersion')}")
                print(f"Endpoint: {cluster.get('Endpoint')}")
                print(f"Reader Endpoint: {cluster.get('ReaderEndpoint')}")
                print(f"Availability Zones: {cluster.get('AvailabilityZones')}")
                print(f"Subnet Group: {cluster.get('DBSubnetGroup')}")
                print("VPC Security Groups:")
                for vpc_group in cluster.get('VpcSecurityGroups', []):
                    print(f"  - {vpc_group.get('VpcSecurityGroupId')}")
                print(f"Storage Encrypted: {cluster.get('StorageEncrypted')}")
                print(f"IAM Auth Enabled:
{cluster.get('IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled')}")
                print(f"Backup Retention Period:
{cluster.get('BackupRetentionPeriod')} days")
                print(f"Preferred Backup Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredBackupWindow')}")
                print(f"Preferred Maintenance Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredMaintenanceWindow')}")
                print("------")

        if not found:
            # Treat empty response as cluster not found
            raise ClientError(
                {"Error": {"Code": "DBClusterNotFound", "Message": f"No cluster
found with ID '{cluster_id}'"}},
                "DescribeDBClusters"
            )

    except ClientError as err:
```

```
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        elif code == "DBClusterNotFound":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found. Please verify the cluster
 ID.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

def check_instance_status(neptune_client, instance_id: str, desired_status: str):
    """
    Polls the status of a Neptune DB instance until it reaches desired_status.
    Uses pagination via describe_db_instances — even for a single instance.

    Raises:
      ClientError: If describe_db_instances fails (e.g., instance not found).
      RuntimeError: If timeout expires before reaching desired status.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_instances')
    start_time = time.time()

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id)
            instances = []
            for page in pages:
                instances.extend(page.get('DBInstances', []))

        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found. Please verify the
 instance ID.")
            else:
                print(f"Failed to describe DB instance. {code}: {message}")
            raise
```

```
        current_status = instances[0].get('DBInstanceStatus') if instances else
 None
        elapsed = int(time.time() - start_time)

        print(f"\rElapsed: {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}  Status:
 {current_status}", end="", flush=True)

        if current_status and current_status.lower() == desired_status.lower():
            print(f"\nInstance '{instance_id}' reached '{desired_status}' in
 {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for '{instance_id}' to reach
 '{desired_status}'")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)


def create_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id: str, db_cluster_id: str) -
> str:
    try:
        request = {
            'DBInstanceIdentifier': db_instance_id,
            'DBInstanceClass': 'db.r5.large',
            'Engine': 'neptune',
            'DBClusterIdentifier': db_cluster_id
        }

        print(f"Creating Neptune DB Instance: {db_instance_id}")
        response = neptune_client.create_db_instance(**request)

        instance = response.get('DBInstance')
        if not instance or 'DBInstanceIdentifier' not in instance:
            raise RuntimeError("Instance creation succeeded but no ID returned.")

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' to become
 available...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_available')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=db_instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={'Delay': 30, 'MaxAttempts': 40}
        )
```

```
        print(f"DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' is now available.")
        return instance['DBInstanceIdentifier']

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't create DB instance. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance '{db_instance_id}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance
 '{db_instance_id}': {e}") from e


def create_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_name: str) -> str:
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB cluster and returns its identifier.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        db_name (str): The desired cluster identifier.

    Returns:
        str: The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For any failure or AWS error, with a user-friendly message.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': db_name,
        'Engine': 'neptune',
        'DeletionProtection': False,
        'BackupRetentionPeriod': 1
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_cluster(**request)
        cluster = response.get('DBCluster') or {}
```

```
        cluster_id = cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')
        if not cluster_id:
            raise RuntimeError("Cluster created but no ID returned.")

        print(f"DB Cluster created: {cluster_id}")
        return cluster_id

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code in ("ServiceQuotaExceededException",
 "DBClusterQuotaExceededFault"):
            raise RuntimeError("You have exceeded the quota for Neptune DB
 clusters.") from e
        else:
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {message}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB cluster '{db_name}':
 {e}") from e

def get_subnet_ids(vpc_id: str) -> list[str]:
    ec2_client = boto3.client('ec2')

    describe_subnets_request = {
        'Filters': [{'Name': 'vpc-id', 'Values': [vpc_id]}]
    }

    response = ec2_client.describe_subnets(**describe_subnets_request)
    subnets = response.get('Subnets', [])
    subnet_ids = [subnet['SubnetId'] for subnet in subnets if 'SubnetId' in
 subnet]
    return subnet_ids


def get_default_vpc_id() -> str:
    ec2_client = boto3.client('ec2')
    describe_vpcs_request = {
        'Filters': [{'Name': 'isDefault', 'Values': ['true']}]
    }

    response = ec2_client.describe_vpcs(**describe_vpcs_request)
```

```
    vpcs = response.get('Vpcs', [])
    if not vpcs:
        raise RuntimeError("No default VPC found in this region.")

    default_vpc_id = vpcs[0]['VpcId']
    print(f"Default VPC ID: {default_vpc_id}")
    return default_vpc_id


def create_subnet_group(neptune_client, group_name: str):
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB subnet group and returns its name and ARN.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        group_name (str): The desired name of the subnet group.

    Returns:
        tuple(str, str): (subnet_group_name, subnet_group_arn)

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For quota errors or other AWS-related failures.
    """
    vpc_id = get_default_vpc_id()
    subnet_ids = get_subnet_ids(vpc_id)

    request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': group_name,
        'DBSubnetGroupDescription': 'My Neptune subnet group',
        'SubnetIds': subnet_ids,
        'Tags': [{'Key': 'Environment', 'Value': 'Dev'}]
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_subnet_group(**request)
        sg = response.get("DBSubnetGroup", {})
        name = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupName")
        arn = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupArn")

        if not name or not arn:
            raise RuntimeError("Response missing subnet group name or ARN.")

        print(f"Subnet group created: {name}")
        print(f"ARN: {arn}")
```

```
        return name, arn

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        msg = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "ServiceQuotaExceededException":
            print("Subnet group quota exceeded.")
            raise RuntimeError("Subnet group quota exceeded.") from e
        else:
            print(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}")
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group '{group_name}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group
 '{group_name}': {e}") from e

def wait_for_input_to_continue():
    input("\nPress <ENTER> to continue...")
    print("Continuing with the program...\n")


def run_scenario(neptune_client, subnet_group_name: str, db_instance_id: str,
 cluster_name: str):
    print("-" * 88)
    print("1. Create a Neptune DB Subnet Group")
    wait_for_input_to_continue()

    try:
        name, arn = create_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name)
        print(f"Subnet group successfully created: {name}")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("2. Create a Neptune Cluster")
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        db_cluster_id = create_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_name)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("3. Create a Neptune DB Instance")
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        create_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id, cluster_name)

        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        print("4. Check the status of the Neptune DB Instance")
        print("""
        Even though you're targeting a single DB instance,
        describe_db_instances supports pagination and can return multiple pages.

        Handling paginated responses ensures your method continues to work
reliably
        even if AWS returns large or paged results.
        """)
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        check_instance_status(neptune_client, db_instance_id, "available")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("5. Show Neptune Cluster details")
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        describe_db_clusters(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("6. Stop the Amazon Neptune cluster")
        print("""
            Boto3 doesn't currently offer a
            built-in waiter for stop_db_cluster,
            This example implements a custom polling
            strategy until the cluster is in a stopped state.
        """)
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        stop_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)
        check_instance_status(neptune_client, db_instance_id, "stopped")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("7. Start the Amazon Neptune cluster")
        print("""
            Boto3 doesn't currently offer a
            built-in waiter for start_db_cluster,
            This example implements a custom polling
            strategy until the cluster is in an available state.
        """)
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        start_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)
        wait_for_cluster_status(neptune_client, db_cluster_id, "available")
        check_instance_status(neptune_client, db_instance_id, "available")

        print("All Neptune resources are now available.")
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        print("-" * 88)
        print("8. Delete the Neptune Assets")
        print("Would you like to delete the Neptune Assets? (y/n)")
        del_ans = input().strip().lower()

        if del_ans == "y":
            print("You selected to delete the Neptune assets.")

            delete_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id)
            delete_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)
            delete_db_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name)

            print("Neptune resources deleted successfully")

    except ClientError as ce:
        code = ce.response["Error"]["Code"]

        if code in ("DBInstanceNotFound", "DBInstanceNotFoundFault",
 "ResourceNotFound"):
            print(f"Instance '{db_instance_id}' not found.")
        elif code in ("DBClusterNotFound", "DBClusterNotFoundFault",
 "ResourceNotFoundFault"):
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_name}' not found.")
        elif code == "DBSubnetGroupNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Subnet group '{subnet_group_name}' not found.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"AWS error [{code}]: {ce.response['Error']['Message']}")
            raise  # re-raise unexpected errors

    except RuntimeError as re:
        print(f"Runtime error or timeout: {re}")


def main():
    neptune_client = boto3.client('neptune')

    # Customize the following names to match your Neptune setup
    # (You must change these to unique values for your environment)
    subnet_group_name = "neptuneSubnetGroup111"
    cluster_name = "neptuneCluster111"
```

```
    db_instance_id = "neptuneDB111"

    print("""
    Amazon Neptune is a fully managed graph database service by AWS...
    Let's get started!
    """)
    wait_for_input_to_continue()
    run_scenario(neptune_client, subnet_group_name, db_instance_id, cluster_name)

    print("""
    Thank you for checking out the Amazon Neptune Service Use demo.
    For more AWS code examples, visit:
    https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-library.html
    """)

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Actions for Neptune using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Neptune actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Neptune API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Neptune using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Neptune API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDBSubnetGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateGraph with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK

- Use DeleteDBSubnetGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBClusters with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteGremlinQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteQuery with an AWS SDK
- Use StartDBCluster with an AWS SDK
- Use StopDBCluster with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateDBCluster` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB cluster asynchronously.
    *
    * @param dbName the name of the DB cluster to be created
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, provides the ID of the
created DB cluster
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails for any reason,
including if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDBClusterAsync(String dbName) {
       CreateDbClusterRequest request = CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(dbName)
               .engine("neptune")
```

```
                .deletionProtection(false)
                .backupRetentionPeriod(1)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createDBCluster(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was
 denied because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune
 DB cluster: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String clusterId =
 response.dbCluster().dbClusterIdentifier();
                    logger.info("DB Cluster created: " + clusterId);
                    return clusterId;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_name: str) -> str:
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB cluster and returns its identifier.

    Args:
```

```
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        db_name (str): The desired cluster identifier.

    Returns:
        str: The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For any failure or AWS error, with a user-friendly message.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': db_name,
        'Engine': 'neptune',
        'DeletionProtection': False,
        'BackupRetentionPeriod': 1
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_cluster(**request)
        cluster = response.get('DBCluster') or {}

        cluster_id = cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')
        if not cluster_id:
            raise RuntimeError("Cluster created but no ID returned.")

        print(f"DB Cluster created: {cluster_id}")
        return cluster_id

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code in ("ServiceQuotaExceededException",
"DBClusterQuotaExceededFault"):
            raise RuntimeError("You have exceeded the quota for Neptune DB
clusters.") from e
        else:
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {message}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB cluster '{db_name}':
{e}") from e
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateDBInstance` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param dbInstanceId the identifier for the new DB instance
    * @param dbClusterId  the identifier for the DB cluster that the new
instance will be a part of
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the identifier of
the newly created DB instance
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause of
either:
    *                             - {@link ServiceQuotaExceededException} if the
request would exceed the maximum quota, or
    *                             - a general exception with the failure message
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDBInstanceAsync(String dbInstanceId,
String dbClusterId) {
       CreateDbInstanceRequest request = CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceId)
               .dbInstanceClass("db.r5.large")
               .engine("neptune")
               .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBInstance(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
```

```
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was
denied because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune
DB instance: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String instanceId =
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceIdentifier();
                    logger.info("Created Neptune DB Instance: " + instanceId);
                    return instanceId;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id: str, db_cluster_id: str) -
> str:
    try:
        request = {
            'DBInstanceIdentifier': db_instance_id,
            'DBInstanceClass': 'db.r5.large',
            'Engine': 'neptune',
            'DBClusterIdentifier': db_cluster_id
        }

        print(f"Creating Neptune DB Instance: {db_instance_id}")
        response = neptune_client.create_db_instance(**request)

        instance = response.get('DBInstance')
```

```
        if not instance or 'DBInstanceIdentifier' not in instance:
            raise RuntimeError("Instance creation succeeded but no ID returned.")

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' to become
available...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_available')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=db_instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={'Delay': 30, 'MaxAttempts': 40}
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' is now available.")
        return instance['DBInstanceIdentifier']

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't create DB instance. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance '{db_instance_id}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance
'{db_instance_id}': {e}") from e
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateDBSubnetGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBSubnetGroup`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new DB subnet group asynchronously.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the subnet group to create
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the Amazon
Resource Name (ARN) of the created subnet group
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause that may
be a ServiceQuotaExceededException if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSubnetGroupAsync(String groupName) {

       // Get the Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) where the Neptune cluster
and resources will be created
       String vpcId = getDefaultVpcId();
       logger.info("VPC is : " + vpcId);

       List<String> subnetList = getSubnetIds(vpcId);
       for (String subnetId : subnetList) {
           System.out.println("Subnet group:" +subnetId);
       }

       CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest request = CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
               .dbSubnetGroupName(groupName)
               .dbSubnetGroupDescription("Subnet group for Neptune cluster")
               .subnetIds(subnetList)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBSubnetGroup(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
```

```
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was
 denied because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create subnet
 group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String name = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupName();
                    String arn = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupArn();
                    logger.info("Subnet group created: " + name);
                    return arn;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_subnet_group(neptune_client, group_name: str):
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB subnet group and returns its name and ARN.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        group_name (str): The desired name of the subnet group.

    Returns:
        tuple(str, str): (subnet_group_name, subnet_group_arn)

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For quota errors or other AWS-related failures.
```

```
    """
    vpc_id = get_default_vpc_id()
    subnet_ids = get_subnet_ids(vpc_id)

    request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': group_name,
        'DBSubnetGroupDescription': 'My Neptune subnet group',
        'SubnetIds': subnet_ids,
        'Tags': [{'Key': 'Environment', 'Value': 'Dev'}]
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_subnet_group(**request)
        sg = response.get("DBSubnetGroup", {})
        name = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupName")
        arn = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupArn")

        if not name or not arn:
            raise RuntimeError("Response missing subnet group name or ARN.")

        print(f"Subnet group created: {name}")
        print(f"ARN: {arn}")
        return name, arn

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        msg = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "ServiceQuotaExceededException":
            print("Subnet group quota exceeded.")
            raise RuntimeError("Subnet group quota exceeded.") from e
        else:
            print(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}")
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group '{group_name}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group
'{group_name}': {e}") from e
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateGraph` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateGraph`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Executes the process of creating a new Neptune graph.
    *
    * @param client        the Neptune graph client used to interact with the
Neptune service
    * @param graphName     the name of the graph to be created
    * @throws NeptuneGraphException if an error occurs while creating the graph
    */
   public static void executeCreateGraph(NeptuneGraphClient client, String
graphName) {
       try {
           // Create the graph request
           CreateGraphRequest request = CreateGraphRequest.builder()
                   .graphName(graphName)
                   .provisionedMemory(16)
                   .build();

           // Create the graph
           CreateGraphResponse response = client.createGraph(request);

           // Extract the graph name and ARN
           String createdGraphName = response.name();
           String graphArn = response.arn();
           String graphEndpoint = response.endpoint();

           System.out.println("Graph created successfully!");
           System.out.println("Graph Name: " + createdGraphName);
           System.out.println("Graph ARN: " + graphArn);
           System.out.println("Graph Endpoint: " +graphEndpoint );
```

```
        } catch (NeptuneGraphException e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to create graph: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGraph in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Running this example.

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VPC Networking Requirement:
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Amazon Neptune must be accessed from **within the same VPC** as the Neptune
 cluster.
It does not expose a public endpoint, so this code must be executed from:

  - An **AWS Lambda function** configured to run inside the same VPC
  - An **EC2 instance** or **ECS task** running in the same VPC
  - A connected environment such as a **VPN**, **AWS Direct Connect**, or a
 **peered VPC**

"""

GRAPH_NAME = "sample-analytics-graph"

def main():
```

```
    config = Config(retries={"total_max_attempts": 1, "mode": "standard"},
 read_timeout=None)
    client = boto3.client("neptune-graph", config=config)
    execute_create_graph(client, GRAPH_NAME)

def execute_create_graph(client, graph_name):
    try:
        print("Creating Neptune graph...")
        response = client.create_graph(
            graphName=graph_name,
            provisionedMemory = 16
        )

        created_graph_name = response.get("name")
        graph_arn = response.get("arn")
        graph_endpoint = response.get("endpoint")

        print("Graph created successfully!")
        print(f"Graph Name: {created_graph_name}")
        print(f"Graph ARN: {graph_arn}")
        print(f"Graph Endpoint: {graph_endpoint}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Failed to create graph: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Failed to create graph: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see CreateGraph in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDBCluster` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has
been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
       DeleteDbClusterRequest request = DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
               .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDBCluster(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB
Cluster: " + clusterId));
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB cluster and throws exceptions to the caller.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the Neptune DB cluster to be deleted.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': cluster_id,
        'SkipFinalSnapshot': True
    }

    try:
        print(f"Deleting DB Cluster: {cluster_id}")
        neptune_client.delete_db_cluster(**request)

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB cluster. {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDBInstance` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param instanceId the identifier of the DB instance to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the DB instance
has been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
       DeleteDbInstanceRequest request = DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
               .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDBInstance(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB
Instance: " + instanceId));
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_db_instance(neptune_client, instance_id: str):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB instance and waits for its deletion to complete.
    Raises exception to be handled by calling code.
    """
    print(f"Initiating deletion of DB Instance: {instance_id}")
    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_instance(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            SkipFinalSnapshot=True
        )

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{instance_id}' to be deleted...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_deleted')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={
                'Delay': 30,
                'MaxAttempts': 40
            }
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{instance_id}' successfully deleted.")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBInstanceNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB instance. {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteDBSubnetGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBSubnetGroup`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a subnet group.
    *
    * @param subnetGroupName the identifier of the subnet group to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has
been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBSubnetGroupAsync(String
subnetGroupName) {
       DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest request = DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
               .dbSubnetGroupName(subnetGroupName)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDBSubnetGroup(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> logger.info("## Deleting Subnet Group: "
+ subnetGroupName));
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_db_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB subnet group synchronously using Boto3.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        subnet_group_name (str): The name of the DB subnet group to delete.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    delete_group_request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': subnet_group_name
    }

    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_subnet_group(**delete_group_request)
        print(f"# Deleting Subnet Group: {subnet_group_name}")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBSubnetGroupNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Subnet group '{subnet_group_name}' not found or already
 deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete subnet group. {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDBClusters` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the specified Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the DB cluster to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
done, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
    * if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeDBClustersAsync(String clusterId) {
       DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describeDBClusters(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> {
                   for (DBCluster cluster : response.dbClusters()) {
                       logger.info("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
                       logger.info("Status: " + cluster.status());
                       logger.info("Engine: " + cluster.engine());
                       logger.info("Engine Version: " +
cluster.engineVersion());
```

```
                        logger.info("Endpoint: " + cluster.endpoint());
                        logger.info("Reader Endpoint: " +
cluster.readerEndpoint());
                        logger.info("Availability Zones: " +
cluster.availabilityZones());
                        logger.info("Subnet Group: " + cluster.dbSubnetGroup());
                        logger.info("VPC Security Groups:");
                        cluster.vpcSecurityGroups().forEach(vpcGroup ->
                                logger.info("  - " +
vpcGroup.vpcSecurityGroupId()));
                        logger.info("Storage Encrypted: " +
cluster.storageEncrypted());
                        logger.info("IAM DB Auth Enabled: " +
cluster.iamDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled());
                        logger.info("Backup Retention Period: " +
cluster.backupRetentionPeriod() + " days");
                        logger.info("Preferred Backup Window: " +
cluster.preferredBackupWindow());
                        logger.info("Preferred Maintenance Window: " +
cluster.preferredMaintenanceWindow());
                        logger.info("------");
                    }
                })
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause() != null ? ex.getCause() : ex;

                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                    }

                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe the DB
cluster: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Describes details of a Neptune DB cluster, paginating if needed.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the cluster to describe.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If there's an AWS API error (e.g., cluster not found).
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    try:
        pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id)

        found = False
        for page in pages:
            for cluster in page.get('DBClusters', []):
                found = True
                print(f"Cluster Identifier:
 {cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')}")
                print(f"Status: {cluster.get('Status')}")
                print(f"Engine: {cluster.get('Engine')}")
                print(f"Engine Version: {cluster.get('EngineVersion')}")
                print(f"Endpoint: {cluster.get('Endpoint')}")
                print(f"Reader Endpoint: {cluster.get('ReaderEndpoint')}")
                print(f"Availability Zones: {cluster.get('AvailabilityZones')}")
                print(f"Subnet Group: {cluster.get('DBSubnetGroup')}")
                print("VPC Security Groups:")
                for vpc_group in cluster.get('VpcSecurityGroups', []):
                    print(f"  - {vpc_group.get('VpcSecurityGroupId')}")
```

```
                print(f"Storage Encrypted: {cluster.get('StorageEncrypted')}")
                print(f"IAM Auth Enabled:
{cluster.get('IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled')}")
                print(f"Backup Retention Period:
{cluster.get('BackupRetentionPeriod')} days")
                print(f"Preferred Backup Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredBackupWindow')}")
                print(f"Preferred Maintenance Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredMaintenanceWindow')}")
                print("------")

        if not found:
            # Treat empty response as cluster not found
            raise ClientError(
                {"Error": {"Code": "DBClusterNotFound", "Message": f"No cluster
found with ID '{cluster_id}'"}},
                "DescribeDBClusters"
            )

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        elif code == "DBClusterNotFound":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found. Please verify the cluster
ID.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeDBInstances` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Checks the status of a Neptune instance recursively until the desired
status is reached or a timeout occurs.
    *
    * @param instanceId     the ID of the Neptune instance to check
    * @param desiredStatus  the desired status of the Neptune instance
    * @param startTime      the start time of the operation, used to calculate
the elapsed time
    * @param future         a {@link CompletableFuture} that will be completed
when the desired status is reached
    */
   private void checkStatusRecursive(String instanceId, String desiredStatus,
long startTime, CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
       DescribeDbInstancesRequest request = DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
               .build();

       getAsyncClient().describeDBInstances(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       future.completeExceptionally(
                               new CompletionException("Error checking Neptune
instance status", cause)
                       );
                       return;
                   }

                   List<DBInstance> instances = response.dbInstances();
                   if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                       future.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Instance not found: " + instanceId));
```

```
                        return;
                    }

                    String currentStatus = instances.get(0).dbInstanceStatus();
                    long elapsedSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime) / 1000;
                    System.out.printf("\r Elapsed: %-20s  Status: %-20s",
formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds), currentStatus);
                    System.out.flush();

                    if (desiredStatus.equalsIgnoreCase(currentStatus)) {
                        System.out.printf("\r Neptune instance reached
desired status '%s' after %s.\n", desiredStatus, formatElapsedTime((int)
elapsedSeconds));
                        future.complete(null);
                    } else {
                        CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                                .execute(() -> checkStatusRecursive(instanceId,
desiredStatus, startTime, future));
                    }
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def check_instance_status(neptune_client, instance_id: str, desired_status: str):
    """
    Polls the status of a Neptune DB instance until it reaches desired_status.
    Uses pagination via describe_db_instances — even for a single instance.

    Raises:
```

```
      ClientError: If describe_db_instances fails (e.g., instance not found).
      RuntimeError: If timeout expires before reaching desired status.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_instances')
    start_time = time.time()

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id)
            instances = []
            for page in pages:
                instances.extend(page.get('DBInstances', []))

        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found. Please verify the
instance ID.")
            else:
                print(f"Failed to describe DB instance. {code}: {message}")
            raise

        current_status = instances[0].get('DBInstanceStatus') if instances else
None
        elapsed = int(time.time() - start_time)

        print(f"\rElapsed: {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}  Status:
{current_status}", end="", flush=True)

        if current_status and current_status.lower() == desired_status.lower():
            print(f"\nInstance '{instance_id}' reached '{desired_status}' in
{format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for '{instance_id}' to reach
'{desired_status}'")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Executes a Gremlin query against an Amazon Neptune database using the
provided {@link NeptunedataClient}.
    *
    * @param client the {@link NeptunedataClient} instance to use for executing
the Gremlin query
    */
   public static void executeGremlinQuery(NeptunedataClient client) {
       try {
           System.out.println("Querying Neptune...");
           ExecuteGremlinQueryRequest request =
ExecuteGremlinQueryRequest.builder()
                   .gremlinQuery("g.V().has('code', 'ANC')")
                   .build();

           ExecuteGremlinQueryResponse response =
client.executeGremlinQuery(request);

           System.out.println("Full Response:");
           System.out.println(response);

           // Retrieve and print the result
           if (response.result() != null) {
               System.out.println("Query Result:");
               System.out.println(response.result().toString());
           } else {
```

```
                System.out.println("No result returned from the query.");
            }
        } catch (NeptunedataException e) {
            System.err.println("Error calling Neptune: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Replace this with your actual Neptune endpoint
NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT = "https://[Specify Endpoint]:8182"

def main():
    """
    Entry point of the program. Initializes the Neptune client and executes the
 Gremlin query.
    """
    config = Config(connect_timeout=10, read_timeout=30, retries={'max_attempts':
 3})

    neptune_client = boto3.client(
        "neptunedata",
        endpoint_url=NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT,
        config=config
    )
```

```
    execute_gremlin_query(neptune_client)


def execute_gremlin_query(neptune_client):
    """
    Executes a Gremlin query against an Amazon Neptune database.
    """
    try:
        print("Querying Neptune...")

        response = neptune_client.execute_gremlin_explain_query(
            gremlinQuery="g.V().has('code', 'ANC')"
        )

        print("Full Response:")
        print(response['output'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error calling Neptune: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"BotoCore error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExecuteGremlinQuery` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ExecuteGremlinQuery`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Executes a Gremlin PROFILE query using the provided NeptunedataClient.
     *
     * @param client The NeptunedataClient instance to be used for executing the
Gremlin PROFILE query.
     */
    private static void executeGremlinProfileQuery(NeptunedataClient client) {
        System.out.println("Executing Gremlin PROFILE query...");

        ExecuteGremlinProfileQueryRequest request =
ExecuteGremlinProfileQueryRequest.builder()
                .gremlinQuery("g.V().has('code', 'ANC')")
                .build();

        ExecuteGremlinProfileQueryResponse response =
client.executeGremlinProfileQuery(request);
        if (response.output() != null) {
            System.out.println("Query Profile Output:");
            System.out.println(response.output());
        } else {
            System.out.println("No output returned from the profile query.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Running this example.

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VPC Networking Requirement:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Amazon Neptune must be accessed from **within the same VPC** as the Neptune
 cluster.
It does not expose a public endpoint, so this code must be executed from:

  - An **AWS Lambda function** configured to run inside the same VPC
  - An **EC2 instance** or **ECS task** running in the same VPC
  - A connected environment such as a **VPN**, **AWS Direct Connect**, or a
 **peered VPC**

"""

# Replace with your actual Neptune endpoint
NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT = "https://[Specify-Your-Endpoint]:8182"

def main():
    """
    Entry point of the program. Initializes the Neptune client and runs both
 EXPLAIN and PROFILE queries.
    """
    config = Config(connect_timeout=10, read_timeout=30, retries={'max_attempts':
 3})

    neptune_client = boto3.client(
        "neptunedata",
        endpoint_url=NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT,
        config=config
```

```
    )

    try:
        run_profile_query(neptune_client)
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Neptune error: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"BotoCore error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

def run_profile_query(neptune_client):
    """
    Runs a PROFILE query on the Neptune graph database.
    """
    print("Running Gremlin PROFILE query...")

    try:
        response = neptune_client.execute_gremlin_profile_query(
            gremlinQuery="g.V().has('code', 'ANC')"
        )
        print("Profile Query Result:")
        output = response.get("output")
        if output:
            print(output.read().decode('utf-8'))
        else:
            print("No explain output returned.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Failed to execute PROFILE query: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Executes an OpenCypher EXPLAIN query using the provided Neptune data
client.
    *
    * @param client The Neptune data client to use for the query execution.
    */
   public static void executeGremlinQuery(NeptunedataClient client) {
       try {
           System.out.println("Executing OpenCypher EXPLAIN query...");
           ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQueryRequest request =
ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQueryRequest.builder()
                   .openCypherQuery("MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n")
                   .explainMode("debug")
                   .build();

           ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQueryResponse response =
client.executeOpenCypherExplainQuery(request);

           if (response.results() != null) {
               System.out.println("Explain Results:");
               System.out.println(response.results().asUtf8String());
           } else {
               System.out.println("No explain results returned.");
           }

       } catch (NeptunedataException e) {
           System.err.println("Neptune error: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       } catch (Exception e) {
           System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
       } finally {
           client.close();
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Replace with your actual Neptune endpoint URL
NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT = "https://<your-neptune-endpoint>:8182"

def main():
    """
    Entry point: Create Neptune client and execute different OpenCypher queries.
    """
    config = Config(connect_timeout=10, read_timeout=30, retries={'max_attempts':
 3})

    neptune_client = boto3.client(
        "neptunedata",
        endpoint_url=NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT,
        config=config
    )

    execute_open_cypher_query_without_params(neptune_client)
    execute_open_cypher_query_with_params(neptune_client)
    execute_open_cypher_explain_query(neptune_client)

def execute_open_cypher_query_without_params(client):
    """
    Executes a simple OpenCypher query without parameters.
```

```
    """
    try:
        print("\nRunning OpenCypher query without parameters...")
        resp = client.execute_open_cypher_query(
            openCypherQuery="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n"
        )
        print("Results:")
        print(resp['results'])

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error in simple OpenCypher query: {str(e)}")


def execute_open_cypher_query_with_params(client):
    """
    Executes an OpenCypher query using parameters.
    """
    try:
        print("\nRunning OpenCypher query with parameters...")
        parameters = {'code': 'ANC'}
        resp = client.execute_open_cypher_query(
            openCypherQuery="MATCH (n {code: $code}) RETURN n",
            parameters=json.dumps(parameters)
        )
        print("Results:")
        print(resp['results'])

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error in parameterized OpenCypher query: {str(e)}")

def execute_open_cypher_explain_query(client):
    """
    Runs an OpenCypher EXPLAIN query in debug mode.
    """
    try:
        print("\nRunning OpenCypher EXPLAIN query (debug mode)...")
        resp = client.execute_open_cypher_explain_query(
            openCypherQuery="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n",
            explainMode="details"
        )
        results = resp.get('results')
        if results is None:
            print("No explain results returned.")
        else:
```

```
            try:
                print("Explain Results:")
                print(results.read().decode('UTF-8'))
            except Exception as e:
                print(f"Error in OpenCypher EXPLAIN query: {str(e)}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Neptune error: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"BotoCore error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExecuteQuery` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ExecuteQuery`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Executes a Gremlin profile query on the Neptune Analytics graph.
     *
     * @param client       the {@link NeptuneGraphClient} instance to use for the
query
     * @param graphId      the identifier of the graph to execute the query on
```

```
     *
     * @throws NeptuneGraphException if an error occurs while executing the query
on the Neptune Graph
     * @throws Exception if an unexpected error occurs
     */
    public static void executeGremlinProfileQuery(NeptuneGraphClient client,
String graphId) {

        try {
            System.out.println("Running openCypher query on Neptune
Analytics...");

            ExecuteQueryRequest request = ExecuteQueryRequest.builder()
                    .graphIdentifier(graphId)
                    .queryString("MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n")
                    .language("OPEN_CYPHER")
                    .build();

            ResponseInputStream<ExecuteQueryResponse> response =
client.executeQuery(request);
            try (BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(new
InputStreamReader(response, StandardCharsets.UTF_8))) {
                String result = reader.lines().collect(Collectors.joining("\n"));
                System.out.println("Query Result:");
                System.out.println(result);
            } catch (Exception e) {
                System.err.println("Error reading response: " + e.getMessage());
            }

        } catch (NeptuneGraphException e) {
            System.err.println("NeptuneGraph error: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Running this example.

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VPC Networking Requirement:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Amazon Neptune must be accessed from **within the same VPC** as the Neptune
 cluster.
It does not expose a public endpoint, so this code must be executed from:

  - An **AWS Lambda function** configured to run inside the same VPC
  - An **EC2 instance** or **ECS task** running in the same VPC
  - A connected environment such as a **VPN**, **AWS Direct Connect**, or a
 **peered VPC**
"""

GRAPH_ID = "<your-graph-id>"

def main():
    config = Config(retries={"total_max_attempts": 1, "mode": "standard"},
 read_timeout=None)
    client = boto3.client("neptune-graph", config=config)

    try:
        print("\n--- Running OpenCypher query without parameters ---")
        run_open_cypher_query(client, GRAPH_ID)

        print("\n--- Running OpenCypher query with parameters ---")
        run_open_cypher_query_with_params(client, GRAPH_ID)

        print("\n--- Running OpenCypher explain query ---")
        run_open_cypher_explain_query(client, GRAPH_ID)
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error in main: {e}")

def run_open_cypher_query(client, graph_id):
    """
    Run an OpenCypher query without parameters.
    """
    try:
        resp = client.execute_query(
            graphIdentifier=graph_id,
            queryString="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n",
            language='OPEN_CYPHER'
        )
        print(resp['payload'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except client.exceptions.InternalServerException as e:
        print(f"InternalServerException: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:  # <--- ADD THIS BLOCK
        print(f"Unexpected error: {e}")

def run_open_cypher_query_with_params(client, graph_id):
    """
    Run an OpenCypher query with parameters.
    """
    try:
        parameters = {'code': 'ANC'}
        resp = client.execute_query(
            graphIdentifier=graph_id,
            queryString="MATCH (n {code: $code}) RETURN n",
            language='OPEN_CYPHER',
            parameters=parameters
        )
        print(resp['payload'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except client.exceptions.InternalServerException as e:
        print(f"InternalServerException: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:  # <--- ADD THIS BLOCK
        print(f"Unexpected error: {e}")
```

```
def run_open_cypher_explain_query(client, graph_id):
    """
    Run an OpenCypher explain query (explainMode = "debug").
    """
    try:
        resp = client.execute_query(
            graphIdentifier=graph_id,
            queryString="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n",
            language='OPEN_CYPHER',
            explainMode='DETAILS'
        )
        print(resp['payload'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Neptune error: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Unexpected Boto3 error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:  # <-- Add this generic catch
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartDBCluster` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartDBCluster`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
```

```
     *
     * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
     */
    public CompletableFuture<StartDbClusterResponse> startDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
        StartDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StartDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().startDBCluster(clusterRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                    if (error != null) {
                        Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }

                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to start DB cluster: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("DB Cluster starting: " + clusterIdentifier);
                    }
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see StartDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def start_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
```

```
    """
    Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it reaches 'available'.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: Propagates AWS API issues like resource not found.
        RuntimeError: If cluster doesn't reach 'available' within timeout.
    """
    try:
        # Initial wait in case the cluster was just stopped
        time.sleep(30)
        neptune_client.start_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't start DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling.
It may have been deleted.")
            else:
```

```
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
{message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s - Cluster status: {status}", end="",
flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'available':
            print(f"\n# Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' is available.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster
'{cluster_identifier}' to become available.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)
```

- For API details, see StartDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StopDBCluster` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StopDBCluster`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
 *
```

```
     * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
     */
    public CompletableFuture<StopDbClusterResponse> stopDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
        StopDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StopDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().stopDBCluster(clusterRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                    if (error != null) {
                        Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }

                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to stop DB cluster: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("DB Cluster stopped: " + clusterIdentifier);
                    }
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see StopDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def stop_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
```

```
    """
    Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it's fully stopped.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: For AWS API errors (e.g., resource not found).
        RuntimeError: If the cluster doesn't stop within the timeout.
    """
    try:
        neptune_client.stop_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't stop DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling.
It may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
{message}")
            raise
```

```
        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s - Cluster status: {status}", end="",
flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'stopped':
            print(f"\nCluster '{cluster_identifier}' is now stopped.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster
'{cluster_identifier}' to stop.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)
```

- For API details, see StopDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Neptune using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Neptune with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Neptune or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Use the Amazon Neptune API to develop a Lambda function that queries graph data

Use the Amazon Neptune API to develop a Lambda function that queries graph data

The following code example shows how to use the Neptune API to query graph data.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Neptune Java API to create a Lambda function that queries graph data within the VPC.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Neptune

Code examples for Organizations using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Organizations with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Organizations User Guide** – More information about Organizations.
- **Organizations API Reference** – Details about all available Organizations actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Organizations using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Organizations using AWS SDKs
    - Use AttachPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateAccount with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use CreateOrganization with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateOrganizationalUnit with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteOrganization with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteOrganizationalUnit with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAccounts with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Organizations using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Organizations with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Organizations using AWS SDKs
  - Use AttachPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateAccount with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateOrganization with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateOrganizationalUnit with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreatePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteOrganization with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteOrganizationalUnit with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeletePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetachPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListAccounts with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Organizations using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Organizations actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Organizations API Reference.

Examples

- Use AttachPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateAccount with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateOrganization with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateOrganizationalUnit with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteOrganization with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteOrganizationalUnit with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribePolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetachPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListAccounts with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPolicies with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AttachPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AttachPolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to attach an AWS Organizations policy to an organization,
/// an organizational unit, or an account.
/// </summary>
public class AttachPolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then calls the
    /// AttachPolicyAsync method to attach the policy to the root
    /// organization.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
        var policyId = "p-00000000";
        var targetId = "r-0000";

        var request = new AttachPolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyId = policyId,
            TargetId = targetId,
        };

        var response = await client.AttachPolicyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully attached Policy ID {policyId} to
Target ID: {targetId}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Was not successful in attaching the policy.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AttachPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a policy to a root, OU, or account

Example 1

The following example shows how to attach a service control policy (SCP) to an OU:

```
aws organizations attach-policy
                --policy-id p-examplepolicyid111
                --target-id ou-examplerootid111-exampleouid111
```

Example 2

The following example shows how to attach a service control policy directly to an account:

```
aws organizations attach-policy
                --policy-id p-examplepolicyid111
                --target-id 333333333333
```

- For API details, see AttachPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def attach_policy(policy_id, target_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a target. The target is an organization root, account,
 or
```

```
    organizational unit.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to attach.
    :param target_id: The ID of the resources to attach the policy to.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    """
    try:
        orgs_client.attach_policy(PolicyId=policy_id, TargetId=target_id)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to target %s.", policy_id, target_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't attach policy %s to target %s.", policy_id, target_id
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see AttachPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateAccount` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAccount`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates a new AWS Organizations account.
/// </summary>
```

```
    public class CreateAccount
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes an Organizations client object and uses it to create
        /// the new account with the name specified in accountName.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
            var accountName = "ExampleAccount";
            var email = "someone@example.com";

            var request = new CreateAccountRequest
            {
                AccountName = accountName,
                Email = email,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateAccountAsync(request);
            var status = response.CreateAccountStatus;

            Console.WriteLine($"The staus of {status.AccountName} is
{status.State}.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccount in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a member account that is automatically part of the organization

The following example shows how to create a member account in an organization. The member account is configured with the name Production Account and the email address of susan@example.com. Organizations automatically creates an IAM role using the default name of OrganizationAccountAccessRole because the roleName parameter is not specified. Also, the setting that allows IAM users or roles with sufficient permissions to access account billing data is set to the default value of ALLOW because the IamUserAccessToBilling

parameter is not specified. Organizations automatically sends Susan a "Welcome to AWS" email:

```
aws organizations create-account --email susan@example.com --account-
name "Production Account"
```

The output includes a request object that shows that the status is now `IN_PROGRESS`:

```
{
        "CreateAccountStatus": {
                "State": "IN_PROGRESS",
                "Id": "car-examplecreateaccountrequestid111"
        }
}
```

You can later query the current status of the request by providing the Id response value to the describe-create-account-status command as the value for the create-account-request-id parameter.

For more information, see Creating an AWS Account in Your Organization in the *AWS Organizations Users Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAccount in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `CreateOrganization` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateOrganization`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an organization in AWS Organizations.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateOrganization
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an Organizations client object and then uses it to create
        /// a new organization with the default user as the administrator, and
        /// then displays information about the new organization.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var response = await client.CreateOrganizationAsync(new
CreateOrganizationRequest
            {
                FeatureSet = "ALL",
            });

            Organization newOrg = response.Organization;

            Console.WriteLine($"Organization: {newOrg.Id} Main Accoount:
{newOrg.MasterAccountId}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganization in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a new organization

Bill wants to create an organization using credentials from account 111111111111. The following example shows that the account becomes the master account in the new

organization. Because he does not specify a features set, the new organization defaults to all features enabled and service control policies are enabled on the root.

```
aws organizations create-organization
```

The output includes an organization object with details about the new organization:

```
{
        "Organization": {
                "AvailablePolicyTypes": [
                        {
                                "Status": "ENABLED",
                                "Type": "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY"
                        }
                ],
                "MasterAccountId": "111111111111",
                "MasterAccountArn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:account/
o-exampleorgid/111111111111",
                "MasterAccountEmail": "bill@example.com",
                "FeatureSet": "ALL",
                "Id": "o-exampleorgid",
                "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:organization/o-
exampleorgid"
        }
}
```

Example 2: To create a new organization with only consolidated billing features enabled

The following example creates an organization that supports only the consolidated billing features:

```
aws organizations create-organization --feature-set CONSOLIDATED_BILLING
```

The output includes an organization object with details about the new organization:

```
{
        "Organization": {
                "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:organization/o-
exampleorgid",
                "AvailablePolicyTypes": [],
                "Id": "o-exampleorgid",
```

```
                "MasterAccountArn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:account/
o-exampleorgid/111111111111",
                "MasterAccountEmail": "bill@example.com",
                "MasterAccountId": "111111111111",
                "FeatureSet": "CONSOLIDATED_BILLING"
        }
}
```

For more information, see Creating an Organization in the *AWS Organizations Users Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateOrganization in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `CreateOrganizationalUnit` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateOrganizationalUnit`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new organizational unit in AWS Organizations.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateOrganizationalUnit
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes an Organizations client object and then uses it to call
        /// the CreateOrganizationalUnit method. If the call succeeds, it
        /// displays information about the new organizational unit.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var orgUnitName = "ProductDevelopmentUnit";

            var request = new CreateOrganizationalUnitRequest
            {
                Name = orgUnitName,
                ParentId = "r-0000",
            };

            var response = await client.CreateOrganizationalUnitAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created organizational unit:
{orgUnitName}.");
                Console.WriteLine($"Organizational unit {orgUnitName} Details");
                Console.WriteLine($"ARN: {response.OrganizationalUnit.Arn} Id:
{response.OrganizationalUnit.Id}");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create new organizational unit.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganizationalUnit in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an OU in a root or parent OU

The following example shows how to create an OU that is named AccountingOU:

```
aws organizations create-organizational-unit --parent-id r-examplerootid111 --
name AccountingOU
```

The output includes an organizationalUnit object with details about the new OU:

```
{
        "OrganizationalUnit": {
                "Id": "ou-examplerootid111-exampleouid111",
                "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:ou/o-exampleorgid/ou-
examplerootid111-exampleouid111",
                "Name": "AccountingOU"
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganizationalUnit in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `CreatePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new AWS Organizations Policy.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreatePolicy
    {
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the AWS Organizations client object, uses it to
        /// create a new Organizations Policy, and then displays information
        /// about the newly created Policy.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
            var policyContent = "{" +
                "   \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                " \"Statement\" : [{" +
                    " \"Action\" : [\"s3:*\"]," +
                    " \"Effect\" : \"Allow\"," +
                    " \"Resource\" : \"*\"" +
                "}]" +
            "}";

            try
            {
                var response = await client.CreatePolicyAsync(new
CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    Content = policyContent,
                    Description = "Enables admins of attached accounts to
delegate all Amazon S3 permissions",
                    Name = "AllowAllS3Actions",
                    Type = "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                });

                Policy policy = response.Policy;
                Console.WriteLine($"{policy.PolicySummary.Name} has the following
content: {policy.Content}");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a policy with a text source file for the JSON policy

The following example shows you how to create an service control policy (SCP) named `AllowAllS3Actions`. The policy contents are taken from a file on the local computer called `policy.json`.

```
aws organizations create-policy --content file://policy.json --
name AllowAllS3Actions, --type SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY --description "Allows
 delegation of all S3 actions"
```

The output includes a policy object with details about the new policy:

```
{
        "Policy": {
                "Content": "{\"Version\":\"2012-10-17\",\"Statement\":[{\"Effect
\":\"Allow\",\"Action\":[\"s3:*\"],\"Resource\":[\"*\"]}]}",
                "PolicySummary": {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::o-exampleorgid:policy/
service_control_policy/p-examplepolicyid111",
                        "Description": "Allows delegation of all S3 actions",
                        "Name": "AllowAllS3Actions",
                        "Type":"SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY"
                }
        }
}
```

Example 2: To create a policy with a JSON policy as a parameter

The following example shows you how to create the same SCP, this time by embedding the policy contents as a JSON string in the parameter. The string must be escaped with backslashes before the double quotes to ensure that they are treated as literals in the parameter, which itself is surrounded by double quotes:

```
aws organizations create-policy --content "{\"Version\":\"2012-10-17\",
\"Statement\":[{\"Effect\":\"Allow\",\"Action\":[\"s3:*\"],\"Resource
\":[\"*\"]}]}" --name AllowAllS3Actions --type SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY --
description "Allows delegation of all S3 actions"
```

For more information about creating and using policies in your organization, see Managing Organization Policies in the *AWS Organizations User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_policy(name, description, content, policy_type, orgs_client):
    """
    Creates a policy.

    :param name: The name of the policy.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param content: The policy content as a dict. This is converted to JSON
 before
                        it is sent to AWS. The specific format depends on the policy
 type.
    :param policy_type: The type of the policy.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    try:
        response = orgs_client.create_policy(
            Name=name,
            Description=description,
            Content=json.dumps(content),
            Type=policy_type,
        )
        policy = response["Policy"]
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
```

```
        return policy
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteOrganization` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteOrganization`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to delete an existing organization using the AWS
/// Organizations Service.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteOrganization
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client and then calls
    /// DeleteOrganizationAsync to delete the organization.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
```

```
            var response = await client.DeleteOrganizationAsync(new
 DeleteOrganizationRequest());

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted organization.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not delete organization.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganization in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an organization

The following example shows how to delete an organization. To perform this operation, you must be an admin of the master account in the organization. The example assumes that you previously removed all the member accounts, OUs, and policies from the organization:

```
aws organizations delete-organization
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganization in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `DeleteOrganizationalUnit` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteOrganizationalUnit`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to delete an existing AWS Organizations organizational unit.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteOrganizationalUnit
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and calls
    /// DeleteOrganizationalUnitAsync to delete the organizational unit
    /// with the selected ID.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var orgUnitId = "ou-0000-00000000";

        var request = new DeleteOrganizationalUnitRequest
        {
            OrganizationalUnitId = orgUnitId,
        };

        var response = await client.DeleteOrganizationalUnitAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted the organizational unit
with ID: {orgUnitId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete the organizational unit with
ID: {orgUnitId}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganizationalUnit in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an OU

The following example shows how to delete an OU. The example assumes that you previously removed all accounts and other OUs from the OU:

```
aws organizations delete-organizational-unit --organizational-unit-id ou-
examplerootid111-exampleouid111
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganizationalUnit in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `DeletePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Deletes an existing AWS Organizations policy.
/// </summary>
public class DeletePolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then uses it to
    /// delete the policy with the specified policyId.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var policyId = "p-00000000";

        var request = new DeletePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyId = policyId,
        };

        var response = await client.DeletePolicyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted Policy: {policyId}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete Policy: {policyId}.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a policy

The following example shows how to delete a policy from an organization. The example assumes that you previously detached the policy from all entities:

```
aws organizations delete-policy --policy-id p-examplepolicyid111
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_policy(policy_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to delete.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    """
    try:
        orgs_client.delete_policy(PolicyId=policy_id)
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_id)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribePolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePolicy`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a policy

The following example shows how to request information about a policy:

```
aws organizations describe-policy --policy-id p-examplepolicyid111
```

The output includes a policy object that contains details about the policy:

```
{
        "Policy": {
                "Content": "{\n  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",\n  \"Statement
\": [\n    {\n      \"Effect\": \"Allow\",\n      \"Action\": \"*\",\n
 \"Resource\": \"*\"\n    }\n  ]\n}",
                "PolicySummary": {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:policy/o-
exampleorgid/service_control_policy/p-examplepolicyid111",
                        "Type": "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                        "Id": "p-examplepolicyid111",
                        "AwsManaged": false,
                        "Name": "AllowAllS3Actions",
                        "Description": "Enables admins to delegate S3
 permissions"
                }
        }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_policy(policy_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Describes a policy.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to describe.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    :return: The description of the policy.
    """
    try:
        response = orgs_client.describe_policy(PolicyId=policy_id)
        policy = response["Policy"]
        logger.info("Got policy %s.", policy_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get policy %s.", policy_id)
        raise
    else:
        return policy
```

- For API details, see DescribePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetachPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetachPolicy`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to detach a policy from an AWS Organizations organization,
/// organizational unit, or account.
/// </summary>
public class DetachPolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and uses it to call
    /// DetachPolicyAsync to detach the policy.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var policyId = "p-00000000";
        var targetId = "r-0000";

        var request = new DetachPolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyId = policyId,
            TargetId = targetId,
        };

        var response = await client.DetachPolicyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully detached policy with Policy Id:
 {policyId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not detach the policy.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detach a policy from a root, OU, or account

The following example shows how to detach a policy from an OU:

```
aws organizations  detach-policy  --target-id ou-examplerootid111-exampleouid111
 --policy-id p-examplepolicyid111
```

- For API details, see DetachPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def detach_policy(policy_id, target_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a target.
```

```
    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to detach.
    :param target_id: The ID of the resource where the policy is currently
attached.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    """
    try:
        orgs_client.detach_policy(PolicyId=policy_id, TargetId=target_id)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from target %s.", policy_id, target_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from target %s.", policy_id, target_id
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DetachPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListAccounts` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAccounts`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the AWS Organizations service to list the accounts associated
/// with the default account.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class ListAccounts
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates the Organizations client and then calls its
        /// ListAccountsAsync method.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var request = new ListAccountsRequest
            {
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListAccountsResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListAccountsAsync(request);
                    response.Accounts.ForEach(a => DisplayAccounts(a));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about an Organizations account.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="account">An Organizations account for which to display
        /// information on the console.</param>
        private static void DisplayAccounts(Account account)
        {
```

```
            string accountInfo = $"{account.Id}
 {account.Name}\t{account.Status}";

            Console.WriteLine(accountInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAccounts in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of all of the accounts in an organization

The following example shows you how to request a list of the accounts in an organization:

```
aws organizations list-accounts
```

The output includes a list of account summary objects.

```
{
        "Accounts": [
                {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:account/o-
exampleorgid/111111111111",
                        "JoinedMethod": "INVITED",
                        "JoinedTimestamp": 1481830215.45,
                        "Id": "111111111111",
                        "Name": "Master Account",
                        "Email": "bill@example.com",
                        "Status": "ACTIVE"
                },
                {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:account/o-
exampleorgid/222222222222",
                        "JoinedMethod": "INVITED",
                        "JoinedTimestamp": 1481835741.044,
                        "Id": "222222222222",
                        "Name": "Production Account",
                        "Email": "alice@example.com",
```

```
                        "Status": "ACTIVE"
                },
                {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:account/o-
exampleorgid/333333333333",
                        "JoinedMethod": "INVITED",
                        "JoinedTimestamp": 1481835795.536,
                        "Id": "333333333333",
                        "Name": "Development Account",
                        "Email": "juan@example.com",
                        "Status": "ACTIVE"
                },
                {
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:account/o-
exampleorgid/444444444444",
                        "JoinedMethod": "INVITED",
                        "JoinedTimestamp": 1481835812.143,
                        "Id": "444444444444",
                        "Name": "Test Account",
                        "Email": "anika@example.com",
                        "Status": "ACTIVE"
                }
        ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccounts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the AWS Organizations organizational units that belong to an
    /// organization.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then uses it to
        /// call the ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync method to retrieve
        /// the list of organizational units.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var parentId = "r-0000";

            var request = new ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentRequest
            {
                ParentId = parentId,
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await
client.ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync(request);
                    response.OrganizationalUnits.ForEach(u =>
DisplayOrganizationalUnit(u));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about an Organizations organizational unit.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="unit">The OrganizationalUnit for which to display
        /// information.</param>
        public static void DisplayOrganizationalUnit(OrganizationalUnit unit)
        {
            string accountInfo = $"{unit.Id} {unit.Name}\t{unit.Arn}";

            Console.WriteLine(accountInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of the OUs in a parent OU or root

The following example shows you how to get a list of OUs in a specified root:

```
aws organizations list-organizational-units-for-parent --parent-id r-
examplerootid111
```

The output shows that the specified root contains two OUs and shows details of each:

```
{
        "OrganizationalUnits": [
                {
                        "Name": "AccountingDepartment",
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::o-exampleorgid:ou/r-
examplerootid111/ou-examplerootid111-exampleouid111"
                },
```

```
                {
                        "Name": "ProductionDepartment",
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::o-exampleorgid:ou/r-
examplerootid111/ou-examplerootid111-exampleouid222"
                }
        ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `ListPolicies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListPolicies`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to list the AWS Organizations policies associated with an
    /// organization.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListPolicies
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes an Organizations client object, and then calls its
        /// ListPoliciesAsync method.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
```

```
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            // The value for the Filter parameter is required and must must be
            // one of the following:
            //     AISERVICES_OPT_OUT_POLICY
            //     BACKUP_POLICY
            //     SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY
            //     TAG_POLICY
            var request = new ListPoliciesRequest
            {
                Filter = "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListPoliciesResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListPoliciesAsync(request);
                    response.Policies.ForEach(p => DisplayPolicies(p));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about the Organizations policies associated
        /// with an organization.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="policy">An Organizations policy summary to display
        /// information on the console.</param>
        private static void DisplayPolicies(PolicySummary policy)
        {
            string policyInfo = $"{policy.Id}
{policy.Name}\t{policy.Description}";
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(policyInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of all policies in an organization of a certain type

The following example shows you how to get a list of SCPs, as specified by the filter parameter:

```
aws organizations list-policies --filter SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY
```

The output includes a list of policies with summary information:

```
{
        "Policies": [
                {
                        "Type": "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                        "Name": "AllowAllS3Actions",
                        "AwsManaged": false,
                        "Id": "p-examplepolicyid111",
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:policy/
service_control_policy/p-examplepolicyid111",
                        "Description": "Enables account admins to delegate
 permissions for any S3 actions to users and roles in their accounts."
                },
                {
                        "Type": "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                        "Name": "AllowAllEC2Actions",
                        "AwsManaged": false,
                        "Id": "p-examplepolicyid222",
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::111111111111:policy/
service_control_policy/p-examplepolicyid222",
```

```
                        "Description": "Enables account admins to delegate
 permissions for any EC2 actions to users and roles in their accounts."
                },
                {
                        "AwsManaged": true,
                        "Description": "Allows access to every operation",
                        "Type": "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                        "Id": "p-FullAWSAccess",
                        "Arn": "arn:aws:organizations::aws:policy/
service_control_policy/p-FullAWSAccess",
                        "Name": "FullAWSAccess"
                }
        ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_policies(policy_filter, orgs_client):
    """
    Lists the policies for the account, limited to the specified filter.

    :param policy_filter: The kind of policies to return.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    :return: The list of policies found.
    """
    try:
        response = orgs_client.list_policies(Filter=policy_filter)
        policies = response["Policies"]
        logger.info("Found %s %s policies.", len(policies), policy_filter)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get %s policies.", policy_filter)
        raise
```

```
    else:
        return policies
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Partner Central using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Partner Central with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Partner Central Getting Started** – More information about Partner Central.
- **Partner Central API Reference** – Details about all available Partner Central actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Partner Central using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Partner Central using AWS SDKs
    - Use AssignOpportunity with an AWS SDK
    - Use AssociateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
    - Use DisassociateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetAwsOpportunitySummary with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetEngagementInvitation with an AWS SDK

- Use GetOpportunity with an AWS SDK
- Use ListEngagementInvitations with an AWS SDK
- Use ListOpportunities with an AWS SDK
- Use ListSolutions with an AWS SDK
- Use RejectEngagementInvitation with an AWS SDK
- Use StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask with an AWS SDK
- Use StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateOpportunity with an AWS SDK

- Scenarios for Partner Central using AWS SDKs
  - Update associated entity of an opportunity

Basic examples for Partner Central using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Partner Central with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Partner Central using AWS SDKs
  - Use AssignOpportunity with an AWS SDK
  - Use AssociateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
  - Use DisassociateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetAwsOpportunitySummary with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetEngagementInvitation with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetOpportunity with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListEngagementInvitations with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListOpportunities with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListSolutions with an AWS SDK
  - Use RejectEngagementInvitation with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask with an AWS SDK
  - Use UpdateOpportunity with an AWS SDK

Actions for Partner Central using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Partner Central actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Partner Central API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Partner Central using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Partner Central API Reference.

Examples

- Use AssignOpportunity with an AWS SDK
- Use AssociateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
- Use DisassociateOpportunity with an AWS SDK
- Use GetAwsOpportunitySummary with an AWS SDK
- Use GetEngagementInvitation with an AWS SDK
- Use GetOpportunity with an AWS SDK
- Use ListEngagementInvitations with an AWS SDK
- Use ListOpportunities with an AWS SDK
- Use ListSolutions with an AWS SDK
- Use RejectEngagementInvitation with an AWS SDK
- Use StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask with an AWS SDK
- Use StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateOpportunity with an AWS SDK

Use `AssignOpportunity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `AssignOpportunity`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Reassign an existing Opportunity to another user.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssignOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssignOpportunityResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssigneeContact;

/*
Purpose
PC-API-07 Assigning a new owner
*/

public class AssignOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     String assigneeFirstName = "John";
```

```
    String assigneeLastName = "Doe";

    String assigneeEmail = "test@test.com";

    String businessTitle = "PartnerAccountManager";

    AssignOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId,
assigneeFirstName, assigneeLastName, assigneeEmail, businessTitle);

    ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
   }

static AssignOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId, String
assigneeFirstName, String assigneeLastName, String assigneeEmail, String
businessTitle) {

 AssignOpportunityRequest assignOpportunityRequest =
AssignOpportunityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
         .identifier(opportunityId)
         .assignee(AssigneeContact.builder()
           .firstName(assigneeFirstName)
           .lastName(assigneeLastName)
           .email(assigneeEmail)
           .businessTitle(businessTitle)
           .build())
         .build();

       AssignOpportunityResponse response =
client.assignOpportunity(assignOpportunityRequest);

       return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see AssignOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Reassign an existing Opportunity to another user.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-07 Assigning a new owner
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def assign_opportunity(identifier):
    assign_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "Assignee": {
            "BusinessTitle": "OpportunityOwner",
            "Email": "test@test.com",
            "FirstName": "John",
            "LastName": "Doe"
        }
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.assign_opportunity(**assign_opportunity_request)
        return response
```

```
    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "04236468"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Assigning a new owner to an opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(assign_opportunity(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see AssignOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `AssociateOpportunity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `AssociateOpportunity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Update associated entity of an opportunity

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Create a formal association between an Opportunity and various related entities.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityResponse

/*
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
*/

public class AssociateOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     String entityType = "Solutions";

     String entityIdentifier = "S-0000000";

     AssociateOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId,
 entityType, entityIdentifier );

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

static AssociateOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId, String
 entityType, String entityIdentifier) {
```

```
        AssociateOpportunityRequest associateOpportunityRequest =
 AssociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .relatedEntityType(entityType)
          .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
          .build();

        AssociateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.associateOpportunity(associateOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create a formal association between an Opportunity and various related entities.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"
```

```
partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def associate_opportunity(entity_type, entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier):
    associate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : entity_type,
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : entity_identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.associate_opportunity(**associate_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    #entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
    entity_type = "Solutions"
    entity_identifier = "S-0059717"
    opportunityIdentifier = "O5465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Associate Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(associate_opportunity(entity_type,
 entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see AssociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateOpportunity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateOpportunity`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Create an opportunity.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "AWS";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                var client = new
 AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);

                var request = new CreateOpportunityRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    Origin = "Partner Referral",
                    Customer = new Customer
                    {
```

```
                        Account = new Account
                        {
                            Address = new Address
                            {
                                CountryCode = "US",
                                PostalCode = "99502",
                                StateOrRegion = "Alaska"
                            },
                            CompanyName = "TestCompanyName",
                            Duns = "123456789",
                            WebsiteUrl = "www.test.io",
                            Industry = "Automotive"
                        },
                        Contacts = new List<Contact>
                        {
                            new Contact
                            {
                                Email = "test@test.io",
                                FirstName = "John  ",
                                LastName = "Doe",
                                Phone = "+14444444444",
                                BusinessTitle = "test title"
                            }
                        }
                    },
                    LifeCycle = new LifeCycle
                    {
                        ReviewStatus = "Submitted",
                        TargetCloseDate = "2024-12-30"
                    },
                    Marketing = new Marketing
                    {
                        Source = "None"
                    },
                    OpportunityType = "Net New Business",
                    PrimaryNeedsFromAws = new List<string> { "Co-Sell -
Architectural Validation" },
                    Project = new Project
                    {
                        Title = "Moin Test UUID",
                        CustomerBusinessProblem = "Sandbox is not working as
expected",
                        CustomerUseCase = "AI Machine Learning and Analytics",
                        DeliveryModels = new List<string> { "SaaS or PaaS" },
```

```
                        ExpectedCustomerSpend = new List<ExpectedCustomerSpend>
                        {
                            new ExpectedCustomerSpend
                            {
                                Amount = "2000.0",
                                CurrencyCode = "USD",
                                Frequency = "Monthly",
                                TargetCompany = "Ibexlabs"
                            }
                        },
                        SalesActivities = new List<string> { "Initialized
 discussions with customer" }
                    }
                };

                try
                {
                    var response = await client.CreateOpportunityAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    string formattedJson = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response,
 Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                }
                catch (ValidationException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                }
                catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Create an opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.entity.Root;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import org.example.utils.StringSerializer;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Account;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Address;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Contact;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.CreateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.CreateOpportunityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Customer;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ExpectedCustomerSpend;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.LifeCycle;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Marketing;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.MonetaryValue;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.NextStepsHistory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Project;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.SoftwareRevenue;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
```

```
import com.google.gson.ToNumberPolicy;

public class CreateOpportunity {

 static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder()
   .setObjectToNumberStrategy(ToNumberPolicy.LAZILY_PARSED_NUMBER)
   .registerTypeAdapter(String.class, new StringSerializer())
   .create();

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String inputFile = "CreateOpportunity2.json";

  if (args.length > 0)
   inputFile = args[0];

  CreateOpportunityResponse response = createOpportunity(inputFile);

  client.close();
 }

 static CreateOpportunityResponse createOpportunity(String inputFile) {

  String inputString = ReferenceCodesUtils.readInputFileToString(inputFile);

  Root root = GSON.fromJson(inputString, Root.class);

  List<NextStepsHistory> nextStepsHistories = new ArrayList<NextStepsHistory>();
  if ( root.lifeCycle != null && root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories != null) {
   for (org.example.entity.NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistoryJson :
 root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories) {
    NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistory = NextStepsHistory.builder()
      .time(Instant.parse(nextStepsHistoryJson.time))
      .value(nextStepsHistoryJson.value)
                  .build();
    nextStepsHistories.add(nextStepsHistory);
   }
```

```
 }

 LifeCycle lifeCycle = null;
 if ( root.lifeCycle != null ) {
  lifeCycle = LifeCycle.builder()
   .closedLostReason(root.lifeCycle.closedLostReason)
   .nextSteps(root.lifeCycle.nextSteps)
   .nextStepsHistory(nextStepsHistories)
   .reviewComments(root.lifeCycle.reviewComments)
   .reviewStatus(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatus)
   .reviewStatusReason(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatusReason)
   .stage(root.lifeCycle.stage)
   .targetCloseDate(root.lifeCycle.targetCloseDate)
   .build();
 }

 Marketing marketing = null;
 if ( root.marketing != null ) {
  marketing = Marketing.builder()
     .awsFundingUsed(root.marketing.awsFundingUsed)
     .campaignName(root.marketing.campaignName)
     .channels(root.marketing.channels)
     .source(root.marketing.source)
     .useCases(root.marketing.useCases)
     .build();

 }

 Address address = null;
 if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.account != null &&
root.customer.account.address != null ) {
  address = Address.builder()
   .city(root.customer.account.address.city)
               .postalCode(root.customer.account.address.postalCode)
               .stateOrRegion(root.customer.account.address.stateOrRegion)
               .countryCode(root.customer.account.address.countryCode)
               .streetAddress(root.customer.account.address.streetAddress)
               .build();
 }

 Account account = null;
 if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.account!= null) {
  account = Account.builder()
            .address(address)
```

```
            .awsAccountId(root.customer.account.awsAccountId)
               .duns(root.customer.account.duns)
               .industry(root.customer.account.industry)
               .otherIndustry(root.customer.account.otherIndustry)
               .companyName(root.customer.account.companyName)
               .websiteUrl(root.customer.account.websiteUrl)
               .build();
 }

 List<Contact> contacts = new ArrayList<Contact>();
 if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.contacts != null) {
  for (org.example.entity.Contact jsonContact : root.customer.contacts) {
   Contact contact = Contact.builder()
                  .email(jsonContact.email)
                  .firstName(jsonContact.firstName)
                  .lastName(jsonContact.lastName)
                  .phone(jsonContact.phone)
                  .businessTitle(jsonContact.businessTitle)
                  .build();
   contacts.add(contact);
  }
 }

 Customer customer = Customer.builder()
   .account(account)
   .contacts(contacts)
   .build();

 Contact oportunityTeamContact = null;
 if (root.opportunityTeam != null && root.opportunityTeam.get(0) != null ) {
  oportunityTeamContact = Contact.builder()
               .firstName(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).firstName)
               .lastName(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).lastName)
               .email(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).email)
               .phone(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).phone)
               .businessTitle(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).businessTitle)
               .build();
 }

 List<ExpectedCustomerSpend> expectedCustomerSpends = new
ArrayList<ExpectedCustomerSpend>();
 if ( root.project != null && root.project.expectedCustomerSpend != null) {
  for (org.example.entity.ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpendJson :
root.project.expectedCustomerSpend) {
```

```
    ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpend = null;
    expectedCustomerSpend = ExpectedCustomerSpend.builder()
      .amount(expectedCustomerSpendJson.amount)
      .currencyCode(expectedCustomerSpendJson.currencyCode)
      .frequency(expectedCustomerSpendJson.frequency)
      .targetCompany(expectedCustomerSpendJson.targetCompany)
      .build();
    expectedCustomerSpends.add(expectedCustomerSpend);
   }
        }

        Project project = null;
        if ( root.project != null) {
         project = Project.builder()
                .title(root.project.title)
                .customerBusinessProblem(root.project.customerBusinessProblem)
                .customerUseCase(root.project.customerUseCase)
                .deliveryModels(root.project.deliveryModels)
                .expectedCustomerSpend(expectedCustomerSpends)
                .salesActivities(root.project.salesActivities)
                .competitorName(root.project.competitorName)
                .otherSolutionDescription(root.project.otherSolutionDescription)
                .build();
        }

        SoftwareRevenue softwareRevenue = null;
        if ( root.softwareRevenue != null) {
         MonetaryValue monetaryValue = null;
         if ( root.softwareRevenue.value != null) {
          monetaryValue = MonetaryValue.builder()
            .amount(root.softwareRevenue.value.amount)
            .currencyCode(root.softwareRevenue.value.currencyCode)
            .build();
         }
         softwareRevenue = SoftwareRevenue.builder()
           .deliveryModel(root.softwareRevenue.deliveryModel)
           .effectiveDate(root.softwareRevenue.effectiveDate)
           .expirationDate(root.softwareRevenue.expirationDate)
           .value(monetaryValue)
           .build();
        }

  // Building the Actual CreateOpportunity Request
```

```
  CreateOpportunityRequest createOpportunityRequest =
 CreateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
    .clientToken(root.clientToken)
    .primaryNeedsFromAwsWithStrings(root.primaryNeedsFromAws)
    .opportunityType(root.opportunityType)
    .lifeCycle(lifeCycle)
    .marketing(marketing)
    .nationalSecurity(root.nationalSecurity)
    .origin(root.origin)
    .customer(customer)
    .project(project)
    .partnerOpportunityIdentifier(root.partnerOpportunityIdentifier)
    .opportunityTeam(oportunityTeamContact)
    .softwareRevenue(softwareRevenue)
    .build();

  CreateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.createOpportunity(createOpportunityRequest);
  System.out.println("Successfully created: " + response);

  return response;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create an opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import boto3
import logging
import sys
import os
sys.path.append(os.path.dirname(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))))
import utils.helpers as helper
```

```
import utils.stringify_details as sd
from botocore.client import ClientError
from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

def create_opportunity(partner_central_client):
    create_opportunity_request = helper.remove_nulls(sd.stringify_json("src/
create_opportunity/createOpportunity.json"))
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.create_opportunity(**create_opportunity_request)

        helper.pretty_print_datetime(response)

        # Retrieve the opportunity details
        get_response = partner_central_client.get_opportunity(
            Identifier=response["Id"],
            Catalog=CATALOG_TO_USE
        )
        helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_response)
        return response
    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Create Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
    )

    create_opportunity(partner_central_client)

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DisassociateOpportunity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DisassociateOpportunity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Update associated entity of an opportunity

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Remove an existing association between an Opportunity and related entities.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityReque
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityRespo

/*
Purpose
PC-API -14 Removing a Solution
PC-API -15 Removing an offer
PC-API -16 Removing a product
entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
*/
```

```
public class DisassociateOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     String entityType = "Solutions";

     String entityIdentifier = "S-0000000";

     DisassociateOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId,
 entityType, entityIdentifier );

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static DisassociateOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId, String
 entityType, String entityIdentifier) {

  DisassociateOpportunityRequest disassociateOpportunityRequest =
 DisassociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .relatedEntityType(entityType)
          .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
          .build();

        DisassociateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.disassociateOpportunity(disassociateOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DisassociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Remove an existing association between an Opportunity and related entities.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -14 Removing a Solution
PC-API -15 Removing an offer
PC-API -16 Removing a product
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def disassociate_opportunity(entity_type, entity_identifier,
 opportunityIdentifier):
    disassociate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : entity_type,
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : entity_identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.disassociate_opportunity(**disassociate_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
```

```
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    #entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
    entity_type = "Solutions"
    entity_identifier = "S-0049999"
    opportunityIdentifier = "O4397574"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get updated Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(disassociate_opportunity(entity_type,
 entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DisassociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetAwsOpportunitySummary` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetAwsOpportunitySummary`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRequ
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResp

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-25 Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.
 */

public class GetAwsOpportunitySummary {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 public static GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResponse getResponse(String opportunityId)
 {

  GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .relatedOpportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

  GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResponse response =
 client.getAwsOpportunitySummary(getOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
```

```
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAwsOpportunitySummary in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-25 Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.
 LifeCycle.ReviewStatus=Approved
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "RelatedOpportunityIdentifier": identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_aws_opportunity_summary(**get_opportunity_request)
```

```
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "05465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get AWS Opportunity summary.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_opportunity(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAwsOpportunitySummary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetEngagementInvitation` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetEngagementInvitation`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves the details of an engagement invitation shared by AWS with a partner.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationReque
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationRespo

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-22 Get engagement invitation opportunity
 */

public class GetEngagementInvitation {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     GetEngagementInvitationResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static GetEngagementInvitationResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

  GetEngagementInvitationRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetEngagementInvitationRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

  GetEngagementInvitationResponse response =
 client.getEngagementInvitation(getOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves the details of an engagement invitation shared by AWS with a partner.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-22  GetOpportunityEngagementInvitation - Retrieves details of a specific
 engagement invitation.
This operation allows partners to view the invitation and its associated
 information,
such as the customer, project, and lifecycle details.
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier):
    get_opportunity_engagement_invitation_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
```

```
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_engagement_invitation(**get_opportunity_engagement_invitation
        return response

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "arn:aws:partnercentral-selling:us-east-1:aws:catalog/Sandbox/
engagement-invitation/engi-0000000IS0Qga"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Given the ARN identifier, retrieve details of Opportunity Engagement
 Invitation.")
    print("-" * 88)


 helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetOpportunity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetOpportunity`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Get an opportunity.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
```

```
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "AWS";
        static readonly string identifier = "O1111111";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                var client = new
 AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);

                var request = new GetOpportunityRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    Identifier = identifier
                };

                try {
                    var response = await client.GetOpportunityAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    string formattedJson = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response,
 Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                } catch(ValidationException ex) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                } catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
```

```
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

Get an opportunity.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/partnercentralselling"
)

func main() {
 config, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }

 config.Region = "us-east-1"

 client := partnercentralselling.NewFromConfig(config)
```

```
 output, err := client.GetOpportunity(context.TODO(),
 &partnercentralselling.GetOpportunityInput{
  Identifier: aws.String("O1111111"),
  Catalog:    aws.String("AWS"),
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }
 log.Println("printing opportuniy...\n")

 jsonOutput, err := json.MarshalIndent(output, "", "    ")

 fmt.Println(string(jsonOutput))
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Get an opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityResponse;
```

```
/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-08 Get updated Opportunity
 */

public class GetOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     GetOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 public static GetOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

        GetOpportunityRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

        GetOpportunityResponse response =
 client.getOpportunity(getOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Get an opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -08 Get updated Opportunity given opportunity id
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_opportunity(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "O5465588"
```

```
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get updated Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_opportunity(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListEngagementInvitations` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListEngagementInvitations`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves a list of engagement invitations sent to the partner.

```
package org.example;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListEngagementInvitationsReq
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListEngagementInvitationsRes
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ParticipantType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.EngagementInvitationSummary;

public class ListEngagementInvitations {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     List<EngagementInvitationSummary> opportunitySummaries = getResponse();
        ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(opportunitySummaries);
    }

    static List<EngagementInvitationSummary> getResponse() {

  List<EngagementInvitationSummary> opportunitySummaries = new
 ArrayList<EngagementInvitationSummary>();

  ListEngagementInvitationsRequest listOpportunityRequest =
 ListEngagementInvitationsRequest.builder()
                .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
                .participantType(ParticipantType.RECEIVER)
          .maxResults(5)
          .build();

  ListEngagementInvitationsResponse response =
 client.listEngagementInvitations(listOpportunityRequest);

     opportunitySummaries.addAll(response.engagementInvitationSummaries());

     client.close();

        return opportunitySummaries;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEngagementInvitations in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves a list of engagement invitations sent to the partner.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-21 ListEngagementInvitations - Retrieves a list of engagement invitations
 based on specified criteria.
This operation allows partners to view all invitations to engagement.
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def list_engagement_invitations():
    list_engagement_invitations_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
        "MaxResults": 20
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.list_engagement_invitations(**list_engagement_invitations_request
        return response

    except Exception as err:
```

```
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Retrieve list of Engagement Invitations.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(list_engagement_invitations())

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see ListEngagementInvitations in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListOpportunities` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListOpportunities`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

List opportunities.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
```

```
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "Sandbox";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                //var config = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingConfig()
                //{
                //    ServiceURL = "https://partnercentral-selling.us-
east-1.api.aws",
                //};
                //var client = new
 AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials, config);
                var client = new
 AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);
                var request = new ListOpportunitiesRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    MaxResults = 2
                };

                try {
                    var response = await client.ListOpportunitiesAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    foreach (var opportunity in response.OpportunitySummaries)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("Opportunity id: " + opportunity.Id);
                    }
                    string formattedJson =
 JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response.OpportunitySummaries, Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                } catch(ValidationException ex) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                } catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
```

```
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

List opportunities.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/partnercentralselling"
)

func main() {
 config, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }

 config.Region = "us-east-1"

 client := partnercentralselling.NewFromConfig(config)
```

```
 output, err := client.ListOpportunities(context.TODO(),
 &partnercentralselling.ListOpportunitiesInput{
  MaxResults: aws.Int32(2),
  Catalog:    aws.String("AWS"),
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }

 jsonOutput, err := json.MarshalIndent(output, "", "    ")
 fmt.Println(string(jsonOutput))
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

List opportunities.

```
package org.example;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListOpportunitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListOpportunitiesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.OpportunitySummary;
```

```
/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-18 Getting list of Opportunities
 */

public class ListOpportunititesPaging {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
     List<OpportunitySummary> opportunitySummaries = getResponse();
        ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(opportunitySummaries);
    }

    private static List<OpportunitySummary> getResponse() {
     List<OpportunitySummary> opportunitySummaries = new
 ArrayList<OpportunitySummary>();

  ListOpportunitiesRequest listOpportunityRequest =
 ListOpportunitiesRequest.builder()
                .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .maxResults(5)
          .build();

     ListOpportunitiesResponse response =
 client.listOpportunities(listOpportunityRequest);

     opportunitySummaries.addAll(response.opportunitySummaries());

     while (response.nextToken() != null && response.nextToken().length() > 0) {
      listOpportunityRequest = ListOpportunitiesRequest.builder()
                    .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
              .maxResults(5)
              .nextToken(response.nextToken())
              .build();
      response = client.listOpportunities(listOpportunityRequest);
      opportunitySummaries.addAll(response.opportunitySummaries());
     }
```

```
     client.close();

        return opportunitySummaries;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

List opportunities.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -18 Getting list of Opportunities
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_list_of_opportunities():

    opportunity_list = []

    list_opportunities_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "MaxResults": 20
```

```
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.list_opportunities(**list_opportunities_request)
        opportunity_list.extend(response["OpportunitySummaries"])

        while "NextToken" in response and response["NextToken"] is not None:
            list_opportunities_request["NextToken"] = response["NextToken"]
            response =
 partner_central_client.list_opportunities(**list_opportunities_request)
            opportunity_list.extend(response["OpportunitySummaries"])

        return opportunity_list

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Getting list of Opportunities.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_list_of_opportunities())

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListSolutions` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListSolutions`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves a list of Partner Solutions that the partner registered on Partner Central.

```
package org.example;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListSolutionsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListSolutionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.SolutionBase;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-10 Getting list of solutions
 */

public class ListSolutions {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
     List<SolutionBase> solutionSummaries = getResponse();
        ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(solutionSummaries);
    }

    static List<SolutionBase> getResponse() {
  List<SolutionBase> solutionSummaries = new ArrayList<SolutionBase>();

  ListSolutionsRequest listSolutionsRequest = ListSolutionsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
```

```
            .maxResults(5)
            .build();

      ListSolutionsResponse response = client.listSolutions(listSolutionsRequest);

      solutionSummaries.addAll(response.solutionSummaries());

         return solutionSummaries;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSolutions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves a list of Partner Solutions that the partner registered on Partner Central.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-10 Getting list of solutions
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_list_of_solutions():
    list_solutions_request ={
```

```
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "MaxResults": 20
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.list_solutions(**list_solutions_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Getting list of solutions.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_list_of_solutions())

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see ListSolutions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RejectEngagementInvitation` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `RejectEngagementInvitation`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Rejects an EngagementInvitation that AWS shared.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
```

```
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.RejectEngagementInvitationRe
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.RejectEngagementInvitationRe

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-05 AWS Originated(AO) rejection
 */

public class RejectEngagementInvitation {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

  RejectEngagementInvitationResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static RejectEngagementInvitationResponse getResponse(String invitationId) {

        RejectEngagementInvitationRequest rejectOpportunityRequest =
 RejectEngagementInvitationRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(invitationId)
          .rejectionReason("Unable to support")
          .build();
```

```
  RejectEngagementInvitationResponse response =
 client.rejectEngagementInvitation(rejectOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see RejectEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Rejects an EngagementInvitation that AWS shared.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-05 AWS Originated AO rejection - RejectOpportunityEngagementInvitation -
 Rejects a engagement invitation.
This action indicates that the partner does not wish to participate in the
 engagement and
provides a reason for the rejection.
Upon rejection, a OpportunityEngagementInvitationRejected event is triggered.
Subsequently, the invitation will no longer be available for the partner to act
 on.
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)
```

```
def reject_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier, reject_reason):
    reject_opportunity_engagement_invitation_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "RejectionReason": reject_reason
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.reject_engagement_invitation(**reject_opportunity_engagement_invi
        return response

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "arn:aws:partnercentral:us-east-1::catalog/Sandbox/engagement-
invitation/engi-0000002isviga"
    reject_reason = "Customer problem unclear"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Given the ARN identifier and reject reason, reject the Opportunity
 Engagement Invitation.")
    print("-" * 88)


 helper.pretty_print_datetime(reject_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier,
 reject_reason))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see RejectEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Starts the engagement by accepting an EngagementInvitation.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementByAcceptingIn
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementByAcceptingIn
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationReque
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationRespo
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.InvitationStatus;

/*
Purpose
PC-API-04: Start Engagement By Accepting InvitationTask for AWS Originated(AO)
 opportunity
*/

public class StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
```

```
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

static String clientToken = "test-a30d161";

   public static void main(String[] args) {

    String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

    StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskResponse response =
getResponse(opportunityId);

    if ( response == null) {
     System.out.println("Opportunity is not AWS Originated.");
    } else {
     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }
   }

   private static GetEngagementInvitationResponse getInvitation(String
invitationId) {

    GetEngagementInvitationRequest getRequest =
GetEngagementInvitationRequest.builder()
         .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
         .identifier(invitationId)
         .build();

 GetEngagementInvitationResponse response =
client.getEngagementInvitation(getRequest);

       return response;
}

static StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskResponse getResponse(String
invitationId) {

 if ( getInvitation(invitationId).status().equals(InvitationStatus.PENDING)) {
  StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskRequest acceptOpportunityRequest =
    StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(invitationId)
```

```
            .clientToken(clientToken)
            .build();

   StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskResponse response =
 client.startEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask(acceptOpportunityRequest);
         return response;
  }
  return null;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Starts the engagement by accepting an EngagementInvitation.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)
```

```
def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_engagement_invitation(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def start_engagement_by_accepting_invitation_task(identifier):

    response = get_opportunity(identifier)

    if ( response['Status'] == 'PENDING') :
        accept_opportunity_engagement_invitation_request ={
            "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
         "Identifier" : identifier,
            "ClientToken": "test-123456"
        }
        try:
            # Perform an API call
            response =
 partner_central_client.start_engagement_by_accepting_invitation_task(**accept_opportunit
            return response

        except ClientError as err:
            # Catch all client exceptions
            print(err.response)
            return None
    else:
        return None

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "arn:aws:partnercentral:us-east-1::catalog/Sandbox/engagement-
invitation/engi-0000002isusga"
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get updated Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)


 helper.pretty_print_datetime(start_engagement_by_accepting_invitation_task(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Initiates the engagement process from an existing opportunity by accepting the engagement invitation and creating a corresponding opportunity in the partner's system.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AwsSubmission;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.SalesInvolvementType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementFromOpportuni
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementFromOpportuni
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Visibility;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-01 Partner Originated (PO) opp submission(Start Engagement From
 Opportunity Task for AO Originated Opportunity)
 */

public class StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskResponse response =
 getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskResponse getResponse(String
 opportunityId) {

  StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskRequest submitOpportunityRequest =
 StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .clientToken("test-annjqwesdsd99")

 .awsSubmission(AwsSubmission.builder().involvementType(SalesInvolvementType.CO_SELL).vis
          .build();

  StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskResponse response =
 client.startEngagementFromOpportunityTask(submitOpportunityRequest);
```

```
        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Initiates the engagement process from an existing opportunity by accepting the engagement invitation and creating a corresponding opportunity in the partner's system.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def start_engagement_from_opportunity_task(identifier):

    start_engagement_from_opportunity_task_request ={
            "AwsSubmission": {
```

```
                "InvolvementType": "Co-Sell",
                "Visibility": "Full"
            },
            "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
         "Identifier" : identifier,
            "ClientToken": "test-annjqwesdsd99"
    }
    try:
            # Perform an API call
            response =
 partner_central_client.start_engagement_from_opportunity_task(**start_engagement_from_op
            return response

    except ClientError as err:
            # Catch all client exceptions
            print(err.response)
            return None

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "05465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Start Engagement from Opportunity Task.")
    print("-" * 88)


 helper.pretty_print_datetime(start_engagement_from_opportunity_task(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateOpportunity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateOpportunity`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Update an opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.entity.Root;
import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import org.example.utils.StringSerializer;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Account;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Address;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Contact;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Customer;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ExpectedCustomerSpend;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.LifeCycle;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Marketing;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.NextStepsHistory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Project;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ReviewStatus;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.UpdateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.UpdateOpportunityResponse;
```

```
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import com.google.gson.ToNumberPolicy;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-02/06 Update opportunity when LifeCycle.ReviewStatus is not Submitted
 or In-Review
 */

public class UpdateOpportunity {

 static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder()
   .setObjectToNumberStrategy(ToNumberPolicy.LAZILY_PARSED_NUMBER)
   .registerTypeAdapter(String.class, new StringSerializer())
   .create();

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

 static String OPPORTUNITY_ORIGIN = ORIGIN_PARTNER_ORIGINATED;

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String inputFile = "updateOpportunity.json";

  if (args.length > 0)
   inputFile = args[0];

  UpdateOpportunityResponse response = updateOpportunity(inputFile);

  client.close();
 }

 public static GetOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

        GetOpportunityRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
```

```
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

       GetOpportunityResponse response =
client.getOpportunity(getOpportunityRequest);
       System.out.println(opportunityId + ":" + response);
       return response;
}

public static UpdateOpportunityResponse updateOpportunity(String inputFile) {

 String inputString = ReferenceCodesUtils.readInputFileToString(inputFile);

 Root root = GSON.fromJson(inputString, Root.class);
 GetOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(root.identifier);

 if (response != null
   && response.lifeCycle() != null
   && response.lifeCycle().reviewStatus() != null
   && response.lifeCycle().reviewStatus() != ReviewStatus.SUBMITTED
   && response.lifeCycle().reviewStatus() != ReviewStatus.IN_REVIEW) {

  List<NextStepsHistory> nextStepsHistories = new ArrayList<NextStepsHistory>();
  if ( root.lifeCycle != null && root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories != null) {
   for (org.example.entity.NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistoryJson :
root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories) {
    NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistory = NextStepsHistory.builder()
      .time(Instant.parse(nextStepsHistoryJson.time))
      .value(nextStepsHistoryJson.value)
                  .build();
    nextStepsHistories.add(nextStepsHistory);
   }
  }

  LifeCycle lifeCycle = null;
  if ( root.lifeCycle != null ) {
   lifeCycle = LifeCycle.builder()
    .closedLostReason(root.lifeCycle.closedLostReason)
    .nextSteps(root.lifeCycle.nextSteps)
    .nextStepsHistory(nextStepsHistories)
    .reviewComments(root.lifeCycle.reviewComments)
    .reviewStatus(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatus)
    .reviewStatusReason(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatusReason)
    .stage(root.lifeCycle.stage)
```

```
      .targetCloseDate(root.lifeCycle.targetCloseDate)
      .build();
   }

   Marketing marketing = null;
   if ( root.marketing != null ) {
    marketing = Marketing.builder()
       .awsFundingUsed(root.marketing.awsFundingUsed)
       .campaignName(root.marketing.campaignName)
       .channels(root.marketing.channels)
       .source(root.marketing.source)
       .useCases(root.marketing.useCases)
       .build();

   }

   Address address = null;
   if (root.customer != null && root.customer.account != null &&
root.customer.account.address != null) {
    address =
Address.builder().postalCode(root.customer.account.address.postalCode)
       .stateOrRegion(root.customer.account.address.stateOrRegion)
       .countryCode(root.customer.account.address.countryCode).build();
   }

   Account account = null;
   if (root.customer != null && root.customer.account != null) {
    account = Account.builder().address(address).duns(root.customer.account.duns)

.industry(root.customer.account.industry).companyName(root.customer.account.companyName)
       .websiteUrl(root.customer.account.websiteUrl).build();
   }

   List<Contact> contacts = new ArrayList<Contact>();
   if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.contacts != null) {
    for (org.example.entity.Contact jsonContact : root.customer.contacts) {
     Contact contact = Contact.builder()
                   .email(jsonContact.email)
                   .firstName(jsonContact.firstName)
                   .lastName(jsonContact.lastName)
                   .phone(jsonContact.phone)
                   .businessTitle(jsonContact.businessTitle)
                   .build();
     contacts.add(contact);
```

```
    }
   }

   Customer customer =
 Customer.builder().account(account).contacts(contacts).build();

   List<ExpectedCustomerSpend> expectedCustomerSpends = new
 ArrayList<ExpectedCustomerSpend>();
   if ( root.project != null && root.project.expectedCustomerSpend != null) {
    for (org.example.entity.ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpendJson :
 root.project.expectedCustomerSpend) {
     ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpend = null;
     expectedCustomerSpend = ExpectedCustomerSpend.builder()
       .amount(expectedCustomerSpendJson.amount)
       .currencyCode(expectedCustomerSpendJson.currencyCode)
       .frequency(expectedCustomerSpendJson.frequency)
       .targetCompany(expectedCustomerSpendJson.targetCompany)
       .build();
     expectedCustomerSpends.add(expectedCustomerSpend);
    }
         }

   Project project = null;
   if (root.project != null) {
    project = Project.builder().title(root.project.title)
      .customerBusinessProblem(root.project.customerBusinessProblem)

 .customerUseCase(root.project.customerUseCase).deliveryModels(root.project.deliveryModel
      .expectedCustomerSpend(expectedCustomerSpends)

 .salesActivities(root.project.salesActivities).competitorName(root.project.competitorNam
      .otherSolutionDescription(root.project.otherSolutionDescription).build();
   }

   // Building the Actual CreateOpportunity Request
   UpdateOpportunityRequest updateOpportunityRequest =
 UpdateOpportunityRequest.builder().catalog(root.catalog)

 .identifier(root.identifier).lastModifiedDate(Instant.parse(root.lastModifiedDate))

 .primaryNeedsFromAwsWithStrings(root.primaryNeedsFromAws).opportunityType(root.opportuni
     .lifeCycle(lifeCycle)
     .customer(customer)
     .project(project)
```

```
      .partnerOpportunityIdentifier(root.partnerOpportunityIdentifier)
      .marketing(marketing)
      .nationalSecurity(root.nationalSecurity)
      .opportunityType(root.opportunityType)
      .build();

    UpdateOpportunityResponse updateResponse =
  client.updateOpportunity(updateOpportunityRequest);
    System.out.println("Successfully updated opportunity: " + updateResponse);

    return updateResponse;
   } else {
    System.out.println("Opportunity cannot be updated.");
    return null;
   }
     }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Update an opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-2  Updating Partner Originated Opportunity
"""
import logging
import boto3
import sys
import os
sys.path.append(os.path.dirname(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))))
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError
import utils.stringify_details as sd
from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE
```

```
serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_opportunity(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def update_opportunity():
    update_opportunity_request_orig = sd.stringify_json("src/update_opportunity/
update_opportunity_technical_validation.json")
    update_opportunity_request =
 helper.remove_nulls(update_opportunity_request_orig)

    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.update_opportunity(**update_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def update_opportunity_if_eligible(identifier):
    response = get_opportunity(identifier)
    if response is not None:
        return update_opportunity()
    else:
```

```
        print("Failed to retrieve opportunity details")

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "05465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Updating opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(update_opportunity_if_eligible(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Partner Central using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Partner Central with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Partner Central or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Update associated entity of an opportunity

Update associated entity of an opportunity

The following code examples show how to:

- Disassociate an old entity.
- Associate a new entity.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Scenarios repository.

Update associated entity of an opportunity

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityResponse
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityReque
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityRespo

/*
Purpose
PC-API -17 Replacing a solution
*/

public class ReplaceSolution {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client =
 PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

   public static void main(String[] args) {

    String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

    String entityType = "Solutions";
    String originalEntityIdentifier = "S-0000000";
    String newEntityIdentifier = "S-0011111";

    disassociateOppornitityResponse(opportunityId, entityType,
originalEntityIdentifier );
    AssociateOpportunityResponse associateOpportunityResponse =
associateOpportunityResponse(opportunityId, entityType, newEntityIdentifier );

    ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(associateOpportunityResponse);
   }

private static AssociateOpportunityResponse associateOpportunityResponse(String
opportunityId, String entityType, String entityIdentifier) {

       AssociateOpportunityRequest associateOpportunityRequest =
AssociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
         .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
         .relatedEntityType(entityType)
         .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
         .build();

       AssociateOpportunityResponse response =
client.associateOpportunity(associateOpportunityRequest);

       return response;
}

private static DisassociateOpportunityResponse
disassociateOppornitityResponse(String opportunityId, String entityType, String
entityIdentifier) {
 PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
```

```
            .build();

        DisassociateOpportunityRequest disassociateOpportunityRequest =
 DisassociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .relatedEntityType(entityType)
          .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
          .build();

        DisassociateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.disassociateOpportunity(disassociateOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AssociateOpportunity
  - DisassociateOpportunity

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update Associated Entity of an opportunity

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -17 Replacing a solution
"""
```

```
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def replace_solution(original_entity_identifier, new_entity_identifier,
 opportunityIdentifier):
    disassociate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : "Solutions",
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : original_entity_identifier
    }

    associate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : "Solutions",
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : new_entity_identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.disassociate_opportunity(**disassociate_opportunity_request)
        response =
 partner_central_client.associate_opportunity(**associate_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    original_entity_identifier = "S-0049999"
    new_entity_identifier = "S-0050014"
```

```
    opportunityIdentifier = "04397574"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Replacing a solution.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(replace_solution(original_entity_identifier,
 new_entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AssociateOpportunity
  - DisassociateOpportunity

Code examples for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Personalize with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Personalize Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Personalize.
- **Amazon Personalize API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Personalize actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs

- Use CreateBatchInferenceJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateBatchSegmentJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetExportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetImportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateEventTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateRecommender with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSchema with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSolutionVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteEventTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeRecipe with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use ListCampaigns with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDatasetGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListRecipes with an AWS SDK
- Use ListSolutions with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateCampaign with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Personalize with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs

- Use CreateBatchInferenceJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateBatchSegmentJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetExportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetImportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateEventTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateRecommender with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSchema with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSolutionVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteEventTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeRecipe with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use ListCampaigns with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDatasetGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListRecipes with an AWS SDK
- Use ListSolutions with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateCampaign with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Personalize using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Personalize actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Personalize API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateBatchInferenceJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateBatchSegmentJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDataset with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetExportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetGroup with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateDatasetImportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateEventTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateRecommender with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSchema with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSolutionVersion with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteEventTracker with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeRecipe with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeSolution with an AWS SDK
- Use ListCampaigns with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDatasetGroups with an AWS SDK
- Use ListRecipes with an AWS SDK
- Use ListSolutions with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateCampaign with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateBatchInferenceJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateBatchInferenceJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static String createPersonalizeBatchInferenceJob(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
                        String solutionVersionArn,
                        String jobName,
                        String s3InputDataSourcePath,
                        String s3DataDestinationPath,
                        String roleArn,
                        String explorationWeight,
                        String explorationItemAgeCutOff) {

                long waitInMilliseconds = 60 * 1000;
                String status;
                String batchInferenceJobArn;

                try {

                        // Set up data input and output parameters.
                        S3DataConfig inputSource = S3DataConfig.builder()
                                        .path(s3InputDataSourcePath)
                                        .build();

                        S3DataConfig outputDestination = S3DataConfig.builder()
                                        .path(s3DataDestinationPath)
                                        .build();

                        BatchInferenceJobInput jobInput =
BatchInferenceJobInput.builder()
                                        .s3DataSource(inputSource)
                                        .build();

                        BatchInferenceJobOutput jobOutputLocation =
BatchInferenceJobOutput.builder()
```

```
                                        .s3DataDestination(outputDestination)
                                        .build();

                        // Optional code to build the User-Personalization
specific item exploration
                        // config.
                        HashMap<String, String> explorationConfig = new
HashMap<>();

                        explorationConfig.put("explorationWeight",
explorationWeight);
                        explorationConfig.put("explorationItemAgeCutOff",
explorationItemAgeCutOff);

                        BatchInferenceJobConfig jobConfig =
BatchInferenceJobConfig.builder()
                                        .itemExplorationConfig(explorationConfig)
                                        .build();

                        // End optional User-Personalization recipe specific
code.

                        CreateBatchInferenceJobRequest
createBatchInferenceJobRequest = CreateBatchInferenceJobRequest
                                        .builder()
                                        .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                                        .jobInput(jobInput)
                                        .jobOutput(jobOutputLocation)
                                        .jobName(jobName)
                                        .roleArn(roleArn)
                                        .batchInferenceJobConfig(jobConfig) //
Optional
                                        .build();

                        batchInferenceJobArn =
personalizeClient.createBatchInferenceJob(createBatchInferenceJobRequest)
                                        .batchInferenceJobArn();

                        DescribeBatchInferenceJobRequest
describeBatchInferenceJobRequest = DescribeBatchInferenceJobRequest
                                        .builder()

.batchInferenceJobArn(batchInferenceJobArn)
                                        .build();
```

```
                        long maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 *
60;
                        while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                                BatchInferenceJob batchInferenceJob =
personalizeClient

.describeBatchInferenceJob(describeBatchInferenceJobRequest)
                                                .batchInferenceJob();

                                status = batchInferenceJob.status();
                                System.out.println("Batch inference job status: "
+ status);

                                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") ||
status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                                        break;
                                }
                                try {
                                        Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                                        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                                }
                        }
                        return batchInferenceJobArn;

                } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                }
                return "";
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchInferenceJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateBatchInferenceJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the batch inference job's parameters.

export const createBatchInferenceJobParam = {
  jobName: "JOB_NAME",
  jobInput: {
    s3DataSource: {
      path: "INPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  jobOutput: {
    s3DataDestination: {
      path: "OUTPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN",
  solutionVersionArn: "SOLUTION_VERSION_ARN",
  numResults: 20,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateBatchInferenceJobCommand(createBatchInferenceJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
```

```
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchInferenceJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateBatchSegmentJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBatchSegmentJob`.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateBatchSegmentJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the batch segment job's parameters.

export const createBatchSegmentJobParam = {
  jobName: "NAME",
  jobInput: {
    s3DataSource: {
      path: "INPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  jobOutput: {
```

```
    s3DataDestination: {
      path: "OUTPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN",
  solutionVersionArn: "SOLUTION_VERSION_ARN",
  numResults: 20,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateBatchSegmentJobCommand(createBatchSegmentJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchSegmentJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateCampaign` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCampaign`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createPersonalCompaign(PersonalizeClient
 personalizeClient, String solutionVersionArn,
            String name) {
```

```
        try {
            CreateCampaignRequest createCampaignRequest =
CreateCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .minProvisionedTPS(1)
                    .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                    .name(name)
                    .build();

            CreateCampaignResponse campaignResponse =
personalizeClient.createCampaign(createCampaignRequest);
            System.out.println("The campaign ARN is " +
campaignResponse.campaignArn());
            return campaignResponse.campaignArn();
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.

import { CreateCampaignCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});
```

```
// Set the campaign's parameters.
export const createCampaignParam = {
  solutionVersionArn: "SOLUTION_VERSION_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  minProvisionedTPS: 1 /* optional integer */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateCampaignCommand(createCampaignParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateDataset` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDataset`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createDataset(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String datasetName,
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String datasetType,
            String schemaArn) {
```

```
        try {
            CreateDatasetRequest request = CreateDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .name(datasetName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .datasetType(datasetType)
                    .schemaArn(schemaArn)
                    .build();

            String datasetArn = personalizeClient.createDataset(request)
                    .datasetArn();
            System.out.println("Dataset " + datasetName + " created.");
            return datasetArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the dataset's parameters.
export const createDatasetParam = {
```

```
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  datasetType: "DATASET_TYPE" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  schemaArn: "SCHEMA_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetCommand(createDatasetParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateDatasetExportJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDatasetExportJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createDatasetExportJob(PersonalizeClient
 personalizeClient,
            String jobName,
            String datasetArn,
            IngestionMode ingestionMode,
            String roleArn,
```

```
            String s3BucketPath,
            String kmsKeyArn) {

        long waitInMilliseconds = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds
        String status = null;

        try {

            S3DataConfig exportS3DataConfig =
S3DataConfig.builder().path(s3BucketPath).kmsKeyArn(kmsKeyArn).build();
            DatasetExportJobOutput jobOutput =
DatasetExportJobOutput.builder().s3DataDestination(exportS3DataConfig)
                    .build();

            CreateDatasetExportJobRequest createRequest =
CreateDatasetExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .jobName(jobName)
                    .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                    .ingestionMode(ingestionMode)
                    .jobOutput(jobOutput)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .build();

            String datasetExportJobArn =
personalizeClient.createDatasetExportJob(createRequest).datasetExportJobArn();

            DescribeDatasetExportJobRequest describeDatasetExportJobRequest =
DescribeDatasetExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .datasetExportJobArn(datasetExportJobArn)
                    .build();

            long maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                DatasetExportJob datasetExportJob = personalizeClient

.describeDatasetExportJob(describeDatasetExportJobRequest)
                        .datasetExportJob();

                status = datasetExportJob.status();
                System.out.println("Export job status: " + status);

                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
```

```
                    return status;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetExportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetExportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the export job parameters.
export const datasetExportJobParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN" /* required */,
  jobOutput: {
    s3DataDestination: {
      path: "S3_DESTINATION_PATH" /* required */,
      //kmsKeyArn: 'ARN'  /* include if your bucket uses AWS KMS for encryption
    },
```

```
  },
  jobName: "NAME" /* required */,
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetExportJobCommand(datasetExportJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetExportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateDatasetGroup` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDatasetGroup`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createDatasetGroup(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
 String datasetGroupName) {

        try {
            CreateDatasetGroupRequest createDatasetGroupRequest =
 CreateDatasetGroupRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .name(datasetGroupName)
                    .build();
            return
personalizeClient.createDatasetGroup(createDatasetGroupRequest).datasetGroupArn();
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

Create a domain dataset group.

```
    public static String createDomainDatasetGroup(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
            String datasetGroupName,
            String domain) {

        try {
            CreateDatasetGroupRequest createDatasetGroupRequest =
CreateDatasetGroupRequest.builder()
                    .name(datasetGroupName)
                    .domain(domain)
                    .build();
            return
personalizeClient.createDatasetGroup(createDatasetGroupRequest).datasetGroupArn();
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.

import { CreateDatasetGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the dataset group parameters.
export const createDatasetGroupParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
};

export const run = async (createDatasetGroupParam) => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetGroupCommand(createDatasetGroupParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return "Run successfully"; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run(createDatasetGroupParam);
```

Create a domain dataset group.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
```

```
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the domain dataset group parameters.
export const domainDatasetGroupParams = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  domain:
    "DOMAIN" /* required for a domain dsg, specify ECOMMERCE or VIDEO_ON_DEMAND
 */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetGroupCommand(domainDatasetGroupParams),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateDatasetImportJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDatasetImportJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createPersonalizeDatasetImportJob(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
           String jobName,
           String datasetArn,
           String s3BucketPath,
           String roleArn) {

       long waitInMilliseconds = 60 * 1000;
       String status;
       String datasetImportJobArn;

       try {
           DataSource importDataSource = DataSource.builder()
                   .dataLocation(s3BucketPath)
                   .build();

           CreateDatasetImportJobRequest createDatasetImportJobRequest =
CreateDatasetImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                   .dataSource(importDataSource)
                   .jobName(jobName)
                   .roleArn(roleArn)
                   .build();

           datasetImportJobArn =
personalizeClient.createDatasetImportJob(createDatasetImportJobRequest)
                   .datasetImportJobArn();
           DescribeDatasetImportJobRequest describeDatasetImportJobRequest =
DescribeDatasetImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .datasetImportJobArn(datasetImportJobArn)
                   .build();

           long maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

           while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

               DatasetImportJob datasetImportJob = personalizeClient

.describeDatasetImportJob(describeDatasetImportJobRequest)
                       .datasetImportJob();

               status = datasetImportJob.status();
               System.out.println("Dataset import job status: " + status);
```

```
                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
            return datasetImportJobArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetImportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the dataset import job parameters.
export const datasetImportJobParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN" /* required */,
  dataSource: {
```

```
    /* required */
    dataLocation: "S3_PATH",
  },
  jobName: "NAME" /* required */,
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetImportJobCommand(datasetImportJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetImportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateEventTracker` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateEventTracker`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createEventTracker(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
 String eventTrackerName,
            String datasetGroupArn) {

        String eventTrackerId = "";
```

```
        String eventTrackerArn;
        long maxTime = 3 * 60 * 60; // 3 hours
        long waitInMilliseconds = 20 * 1000; // 20 seconds
        String status;

        try {

            CreateEventTrackerRequest createEventTrackerRequest =
CreateEventTrackerRequest.builder()
                    .name(eventTrackerName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .build();

            CreateEventTrackerResponse createEventTrackerResponse =
personalizeClient
                    .createEventTracker(createEventTrackerRequest);

            eventTrackerArn = createEventTrackerResponse.eventTrackerArn();
            eventTrackerId = createEventTrackerResponse.trackingId();
            System.out.println("Event tracker ARN: " + eventTrackerArn);
            System.out.println("Event tracker ID: " + eventTrackerId);

            maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + maxTime;

            DescribeEventTrackerRequest describeRequest =
DescribeEventTrackerRequest.builder()
                    .eventTrackerArn(eventTrackerArn)
                    .build();

            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                status =
personalizeClient.describeEventTracker(describeRequest).eventTracker().status();
                System.out.println("EventTracker status: " + status);

                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
```

```
            return eventTrackerId;
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return eventTrackerId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEventTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateEventTrackerCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the event tracker's parameters.
export const createEventTrackerParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateEventTrackerCommand(createEventTrackerParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateEventTracker in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateFilter` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateFilter`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createFilter(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String filterName,
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String filterExpression) {
        try {
            CreateFilterRequest request = CreateFilterRequest.builder()
                    .name(filterName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .filterExpression(filterExpression)
                    .build();

            return personalizeClient.createFilter(request).filterArn();
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFilter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the filter's parameters.
export const createFilterParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  filterExpression: "FILTER_EXPRESSION" /*required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateFilterCommand(createFilterParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateRecommender` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateRecommender`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createRecommender(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String name,
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String recipeArn) {

        long maxTime = 0;
        long waitInMilliseconds = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds
        String recommenderStatus = "";

        try {
            CreateRecommenderRequest createRecommenderRequest =
CreateRecommenderRequest.builder()
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .name(name)
                    .recipeArn(recipeArn)
                    .build();

            CreateRecommenderResponse recommenderResponse = personalizeClient
                    .createRecommender(createRecommenderRequest);
            String recommenderArn = recommenderResponse.recommenderArn();
            System.out.println("The recommender ARN is " + recommenderArn);

            DescribeRecommenderRequest describeRecommenderRequest =
DescribeRecommenderRequest.builder()
                    .recommenderArn(recommenderArn)
                    .build();

            maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;
```

```
            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                recommenderStatus =
personalizeClient.describeRecommender(describeRecommenderRequest).recommender()
                        .status();
                System.out.println("Recommender status: " + recommenderStatus);

                if (recommenderStatus.equals("ACTIVE") ||
recommenderStatus.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
            return recommenderArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRecommender in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateRecommenderCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
```

```
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the recommender's parameters.
export const createRecommenderParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  recipeArn: "RECIPE_ARN" /* required */,
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateRecommenderCommand(createRecommenderParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateRecommender in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateSchema` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSchema`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createSchema(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient, String
schemaName, String filePath) {

       String schema = null;
       try {
           schema = new String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath)));
       } catch (IOException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getMessage());
       }

       try {
           CreateSchemaRequest createSchemaRequest =
CreateSchemaRequest.builder()
                   .name(schemaName)
                   .schema(schema)
                   .build();

           String schemaArn =
personalizeClient.createSchema(createSchemaRequest).schemaArn();

           System.out.println("Schema arn: " + schemaArn);

           return schemaArn;

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

Create a schema with a domain.

```
   public static String createDomainSchema(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String schemaName, String domain,
           String filePath) {

       String schema = null;
       try {
           schema = new String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath)));
       } catch (IOException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
        }

        try {
            CreateSchemaRequest createSchemaRequest =
 CreateSchemaRequest.builder()
                    .name(schemaName)
                    .domain(domain)
                    .schema(schema)
                    .build();

            String schemaArn =
 personalizeClient.createSchema(createSchemaRequest).schemaArn();

            System.out.println("Schema arn: " + schemaArn);

            return schemaArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchema in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSchemaCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
```

```
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

import fs from "node:fs";

const schemaFilePath = "SCHEMA_PATH";
let mySchema = "";

try {
  mySchema = fs.readFileSync(schemaFilePath).toString();
} catch (err) {
  mySchema = "TEST"; // For unit tests.
}
// Set the schema parameters.
export const createSchemaParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  schema: mySchema /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSchemaCommand(createSchemaParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create a schema with a domain.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSchemaCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

import fs from "node:fs";
```

```
const schemaFilePath = "SCHEMA_PATH";
let mySchema = "";

try {
  mySchema = fs.readFileSync(schemaFilePath).toString();
} catch (err) {
  mySchema = "TEST"; // for unit tests.
}

// Set the domain schema parameters.
export const createDomainSchemaParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  schema: mySchema /* required */,
  domain:
    "DOMAIN" /* required for a domain dataset group, specify ECOMMERCE or
 VIDEO_ON_DEMAND */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSchemaCommand(createDomainSchemaParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateSchema in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateSolution` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSolution`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createPersonalizeSolution(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
           String datasetGroupArn,
           String solutionName,
           String recipeArn) {

       try {
           CreateSolutionRequest solutionRequest =
CreateSolutionRequest.builder()
                   .name(solutionName)
                   .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                   .recipeArn(recipeArn)
                   .build();

           CreateSolutionResponse solutionResponse =
personalizeClient.createSolution(solutionRequest);
           return solutionResponse.solutionArn();

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateSolution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSolutionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the solution parameters.
export const createSolutionParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  recipeArn: "RECIPE_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSolutionCommand(createSolutionParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateSolution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `CreateSolutionVersion` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSolutionVersion`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createPersonalizeSolutionVersion(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient, String solutionArn) {
       long maxTime = 0;
       long waitInMilliseconds = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds
       String solutionStatus = "";
       String solutionVersionStatus = "";
       String solutionVersionArn = "";

       try {
           DescribeSolutionRequest describeSolutionRequest =
DescribeSolutionRequest.builder()
                   .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                   .build();

           maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

           // Wait until solution is active.
           while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

               solutionStatus =
personalizeClient.describeSolution(describeSolutionRequest).solution().status();
               System.out.println("Solution status: " + solutionStatus);

               if (solutionStatus.equals("ACTIVE") ||
solutionStatus.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                   break;
               }
               try {
                   Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
```

```
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }

            if (solutionStatus.equals("ACTIVE")) {

                CreateSolutionVersionRequest createSolutionVersionRequest =
CreateSolutionVersionRequest.builder()
                        .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                        .build();

                CreateSolutionVersionResponse createSolutionVersionResponse =
personalizeClient
                        .createSolutionVersion(createSolutionVersionRequest);
                solutionVersionArn =
createSolutionVersionResponse.solutionVersionArn();

                System.out.println("Solution version ARN: " +
solutionVersionArn);

                DescribeSolutionVersionRequest describeSolutionVersionRequest =
DescribeSolutionVersionRequest.builder()
                        .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                        .build();

                while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                    solutionVersionStatus =
personalizeClient.describeSolutionVersion(describeSolutionVersionRequest)
                            .solutionVersion().status();
                    System.out.println("Solution version status: " +
solutionVersionStatus);

                    if (solutionVersionStatus.equals("ACTIVE") ||
solutionVersionStatus.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                        break;
                    }
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    }
                }
```

```
                return solutionVersionArn;
            }
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSolutionVersion in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSolutionVersionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the solution version parameters.
export const solutionVersionParam = {
  solutionArn: "SOLUTION_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSolutionVersionCommand(solutionVersionParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
```

```
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateSolutionVersion in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DeleteCampaign` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCampaign`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteSpecificCampaign(PersonalizeClient
 personalizeClient, String campaignArn) {
        try {
            DeleteCampaignRequest campaignRequest =
 DeleteCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                    .build();

            personalizeClient.deleteCampaign(campaignRequest);
            System.out.println("Delete request sent successfully.");
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println("Error deleting campaign: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteEventTracker` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEventTracker`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteEventTracker(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String eventTrackerArn) {
       try {
           DeleteEventTrackerRequest deleteEventTrackerRequest =
DeleteEventTrackerRequest.builder()
                   .eventTrackerArn(eventTrackerArn)
                   .build();

           int status =
personalizeClient.deleteEventTracker(deleteEventTrackerRequest).sdkHttpResponse().status

           System.out.println("Status code:" + status);

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEventTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteSolution` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSolution`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteGivenSolution(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String solutionArn) {

       try {
           DeleteSolutionRequest solutionRequest =
DeleteSolutionRequest.builder()
                   .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                   .build();

           personalizeClient.deleteSolution(solutionRequest);
           System.out.println("Done");

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSolution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeCampaign` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCampaign`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeSpecificCampaign(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient, String campaignArn) {

       try {
           DescribeCampaignRequest campaignRequest =
DescribeCampaignRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeCampaignResponse campaignResponse =
personalizeClient.describeCampaign(campaignRequest);
           Campaign myCampaign = campaignResponse.campaign();
           System.out.println("The Campaign name is " + myCampaign.name());
           System.out.println("The Campaign status is " + myCampaign.status());

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeRecipe` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRecipe`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeSpecificRecipe(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient, String recipeArn) {

       try {
           DescribeRecipeRequest recipeRequest = DescribeRecipeRequest.builder()
                   .recipeArn(recipeArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeRecipeResponse recipeResponse =
personalizeClient.describeRecipe(recipeRequest);
           System.out.println("The recipe name is " +
recipeResponse.recipe().name());

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRecipe in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeSolution` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSolution`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeSpecificSolution(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient, String solutionArn) {

       try {
           DescribeSolutionRequest solutionRequest =
DescribeSolutionRequest.builder()
                   .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeSolutionResponse response =
personalizeClient.describeSolution(solutionRequest);
           System.out.println("The Solution name is " +
response.solution().name());

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSolution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListCampaigns` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListCampaigns`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listAllCampaigns(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String solutionArn) {

       try {
           ListCampaignsRequest campaignsRequest =
ListCampaignsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(10)
                   .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                   .build();

           ListCampaignsResponse response =
personalizeClient.listCampaigns(campaignsRequest);
           List<CampaignSummary> campaigns = response.campaigns();
           for (CampaignSummary campaign : campaigns) {
               System.out.println("Campaign name is : " + campaign.name());
               System.out.println("Campaign ARN is : " +
campaign.campaignArn());
           }

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListCampaigns in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListDatasetGroups` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatasetGroups`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listDSGroups(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient) {

       try {
           ListDatasetGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
ListDatasetGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(15)
                   .build();

           ListDatasetGroupsResponse groupsResponse =
personalizeClient.listDatasetGroups(groupsRequest);
           List<DatasetGroupSummary> groups = groupsResponse.datasetGroups();
           for (DatasetGroupSummary group : groups) {
               System.out.println("The DataSet name is : " + group.name());
               System.out.println("The DataSet ARN is : " +
group.datasetGroupArn());
           }

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDatasetGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListRecipes` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListRecipes`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listAllRecipes(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient) {

        try {
            ListRecipesRequest recipesRequest = ListRecipesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(15)
                    .build();

            ListRecipesResponse response =
personalizeClient.listRecipes(recipesRequest);
            List<RecipeSummary> recipes = response.recipes();
            for (RecipeSummary recipe : recipes) {
                System.out.println("The recipe ARN is: " + recipe.recipeArn());
                System.out.println("The recipe name is: " + recipe.name());
            }

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRecipes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListSolutions` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListSolutions`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listAllSolutions(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String datasetGroupArn) {

       try {
           ListSolutionsRequest solutionsRequest =
ListSolutionsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(10)
                   .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                   .build();

           ListSolutionsResponse response =
personalizeClient.listSolutions(solutionsRequest);
           List<SolutionSummary> solutions = response.solutions();
           for (SolutionSummary solution : solutions) {
               System.out.println("The solution ARN is: " +
solution.solutionArn());
               System.out.println("The solution name is: " + solution.name());
           }

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListSolutions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UpdateCampaign` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateCampaign`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String updateCampaign(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String campaignArn,
            String solutionVersionArn,
            Integer minProvisionedTPS) {

        try {
            // build the updateCampaignRequest
            UpdateCampaignRequest updateCampaignRequest =
UpdateCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                    .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                    .minProvisionedTPS(minProvisionedTPS)
                    .build();

            // update the campaign
            personalizeClient.updateCampaign(updateCampaignRequest);

            DescribeCampaignRequest campaignRequest =
DescribeCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                    .build();

            DescribeCampaignResponse campaignResponse =
personalizeClient.describeCampaign(campaignRequest);
            Campaign updatedCampaign = campaignResponse.campaign();

            System.out.println("The Campaign status is " +
updatedCampaign.status());
            return updatedCampaign.status();

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Personalize Events with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Personalize Events Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Personalize Events.
- **Amazon Personalize Events API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Personalize Events actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs
    - Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutItems with an AWS SDK
    - Use PutUsers with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Personalize Events with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs
  - Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutItems with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutUsers with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Personalize Events using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Personalize Events actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Personalize Events API Reference.

Examples

- Use PutEvents with an AWS SDK
- Use PutItems with an AWS SDK
- Use PutUsers with an AWS SDK

Use `PutEvents` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PutEvents`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static int putItems(PersonalizeEventsClient
personalizeEventsClient,
                        String datasetArn,
                        String item1Id,
                        String item1PropertyName,
                        String item1PropertyValue,
                        String item2Id,
                        String item2PropertyName,
                        String item2PropertyValue) {

                int responseCode = 0;
                ArrayList<Item> items = new ArrayList<>();

                try {
                        Item item1 = Item.builder()
                                        .itemId(item1Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\":
\"%2$s\"}",
                                                        item1PropertyName,
item1PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        items.add(item1);

                        Item item2 = Item.builder()
                                        .itemId(item2Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\":
\"%2$s\"}",
                                                        item2PropertyName,
item2PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        items.add(item2);

                        PutItemsRequest putItemsRequest =
PutItemsRequest.builder()
                                        .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                                        .items(items)
                                        .build();

                        responseCode =
personalizeEventsClient.putItems(putItemsRequest).sdkHttpResponse().statusCode();
                        System.out.println("Response code: " + responseCode);
```

```
                        return responseCode;

                } catch (PersonalizeEventsException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                }
                return responseCode;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { PutEventsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-events";
import { personalizeEventsClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeEventsClient = new PersonalizeEventsClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Convert your UNIX timestamp to a Date.
const sentAtDate = new Date(1613443801 * 1000); // 1613443801 is a testing value.
 Replace it with your sentAt timestamp in UNIX format.

// Set put events parameters.
const putEventsParam = {
  eventList: [
    /* required */
    {
      eventType: "EVENT_TYPE" /* required */,
      sentAt: sentAtDate /* required, must be a Date with js */,
      eventId: "EVENT_ID" /* optional */,
      itemId: "ITEM_ID" /* optional */,
    },
```

```
  ],
  sessionId: "SESSION_ID" /* required */,
  trackingId: "TRACKING_ID" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
};
export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeEventsClient.send(
      new PutEventsCommand(putEventsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `PutItems` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PutItems`.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { PutItemsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-events";
import { personalizeEventsClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeEventsClient = new PersonalizeEventsClient({ region:
 "REGION"});
```

```
// Set the put items parameters. For string properties and values, use the \
 character to escape quotes.
const putItemsParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN" /* required */,
  items: [
    /* required */
    {
      itemId: "ITEM_ID" /*  required */,
      properties:
        '{"PROPERTY1_NAME": "PROPERTY1_VALUE", "PROPERTY2_NAME":
 "PROPERTY2_VALUE", "PROPERTY3_NAME": "PROPERTY3_VALUE"}' /* optional */,
    },
  ],
};
export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeEventsClient.send(
      new PutItemsCommand(putItemsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see PutItems in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `PutUsers` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `PutUsers`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static int putUsers(PersonalizeEventsClient
personalizeEventsClient,
                        String datasetArn,
                        String user1Id,
                        String user1PropertyName,
                        String user1PropertyValue,
                        String user2Id,
                        String user2PropertyName,
                        String user2PropertyValue) {

                int responseCode = 0;
                ArrayList<User> users = new ArrayList<>();

                try {
                        User user1 = User.builder()
                                        .userId(user1Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\":
\"%2$s\"}",
                                                        user1PropertyName,
user1PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        users.add(user1);

                        User user2 = User.builder()
                                        .userId(user2Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\":
\"%2$s\"}",
                                                        user2PropertyName,
user2PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        users.add(user2);

                        PutUsersRequest putUsersRequest =
PutUsersRequest.builder()
                                        .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                                        .users(users)
                                        .build();

                        responseCode =
personalizeEventsClient.putUsers(putUsersRequest).sdkHttpResponse().statusCode();
                        System.out.println("Response code: " + responseCode);
```

```
                        return responseCode;

                } catch (PersonalizeEventsException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                }
                return responseCode;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutUsers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { PutUsersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-events";
import { personalizeEventsClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeEventsClient = new PersonalizeEventsClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the put users parameters. For string properties and values, use the \
 character to escape quotes.
const putUsersParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN",
  users: [
    {
      userId: "USER_ID",
      properties: '{"PROPERTY1_NAME": "PROPERTY1_VALUE"}',
    },
  ],
};
export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeEventsClient.send(
```

```
      new PutUsersCommand(putUsersParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see PutUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Personalize Runtime with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Personalize Runtime Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Personalize Runtime.
- **Amazon Personalize Runtime API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Personalize Runtime actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs
    - Use GetPersonalizedRanking with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetRecommendations with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Personalize Runtime with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs
  - Use GetPersonalizedRanking with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetRecommendations with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Personalize Runtime using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Personalize Runtime actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Personalize Runtime API Reference.

Examples

- Use GetPersonalizedRanking with an AWS SDK
- Use GetRecommendations with an AWS SDK

Use `GetPersonalizedRanking` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetPersonalizedRanking`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static List<PredictedItem> getRankedRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient
personalizeRuntimeClient,
           String campaignArn,
           String userId,
           ArrayList<String> items) {

       try {
           GetPersonalizedRankingRequest rankingRecommendationsRequest =
GetPersonalizedRankingRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .userId(userId)
                   .inputList(items)
                   .build();

           GetPersonalizedRankingResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                   .getPersonalizedRanking(rankingRecommendationsRequest);
           List<PredictedItem> rankedItems =
recommendationsResponse.personalizedRanking();
           int rank = 1;
           for (PredictedItem item : rankedItems) {
               System.out.println("Item ranked at position " + rank + "
details");
               System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
               System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());

System.out.println("--------------------------------------------");
               rank++;
           }
           return rankedItems;
       } catch (PersonalizeRuntimeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetPersonalizedRanking in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetPersonalizedRankingCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-
runtime";
import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the ranking request parameters.
export const getPersonalizedRankingParam = {
  campaignArn: "CAMPAIGN_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  inputList: ["ITEM_ID_1", "ITEM_ID_2", "ITEM_ID_3", "ITEM_ID_4"],
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetPersonalizedRankingCommand(getPersonalizedRankingParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see GetPersonalizedRanking in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `GetRecommendations` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetRecommendations`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a list of recommended items.

```
   public static void getRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient personalizeRuntimeClient,
String campaignArn, String userId) {

       try {
           GetRecommendationsRequest recommendationsRequest =
GetRecommendationsRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .numResults(20)
                   .userId(userId)
                   .build();

           GetRecommendationsResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                   .getRecommendations(recommendationsRequest);
           List<PredictedItem> items = recommendationsResponse.itemList();
           for (PredictedItem item : items) {
               System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
               System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
           }

       } catch (AwsServiceException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

Get a list of recommended items from a recommender created in a domain dataset group.

```
   public static void getRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient personalizeRuntimeClient,
String recommenderArn,
           String userId) {

       try {
           GetRecommendationsRequest recommendationsRequest =
GetRecommendationsRequest.builder()
                   .recommenderArn(recommenderArn)
                   .numResults(20)
                   .userId(userId)
                   .build();

           GetRecommendationsResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                   .getRecommendations(recommendationsRequest);
           List<PredictedItem> items = recommendationsResponse.itemList();

           for (PredictedItem item : items) {
               System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
               System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
           }
       } catch (AwsServiceException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

Use a filter when requesting recommendations.

```
   public static void getFilteredRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient
personalizeRuntimeClient,
           String campaignArn,
           String userId,
           String filterArn,
           String parameter1Name,
           String parameter1Value1,
           String parameter1Value2,
           String parameter2Name,
           String parameter2Value) {
```

```
        try {

            Map<String, String> filterValues = new HashMap<>();

            filterValues.put(parameter1Name, String.format("\"%1$s\",\"%2$s\"",
                    parameter1Value1, parameter1Value2));
            filterValues.put(parameter2Name, String.format("\"%1$s\"",
                    parameter2Value));

            GetRecommendationsRequest recommendationsRequest =
GetRecommendationsRequest.builder()
                    .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                    .numResults(20)
                    .userId(userId)
                    .filterArn(filterArn)
                    .filterValues(filterValues)
                    .build();

            GetRecommendationsResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                    .getRecommendations(recommendationsRequest);
            List<PredictedItem> items = recommendationsResponse.itemList();

            for (PredictedItem item : items) {
                System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
                System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
            }
        } catch (PersonalizeRuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRecommendations in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetRecommendationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";

import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the recommendation request parameters.
export const getRecommendationsParam = {
  campaignArn: "CAMPAIGN_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  numResults: 15 /* optional */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetRecommendationsCommand(getRecommendationsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Get recommendation with a filter (custom dataset group).

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetRecommendationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";
import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the recommendation request parameters.
export const getRecommendationsParam = {
  recommenderArn: "RECOMMENDER_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  numResults: 15 /* optional */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetRecommendationsCommand(getRecommendationsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Get filtered recommendations from a recommender created in a domain dataset group.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetRecommendationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";
import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here:
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set recommendation request parameters.
export const getRecommendationsParam = {
  campaignArn: "CAMPAIGN_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  numResults: 15 /* optional */,
  filterArn: "FILTER_ARN" /* required to filter recommendations */,
```

```
  filterValues: {
    PROPERTY:
      '"VALUE"' /* Only required if your filter has a placeholder parameter */,
  },
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetRecommendationsCommand(getRecommendationsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see GetRecommendations in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Pinpoint with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Pinpoint Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Pinpoint.
- **Amazon Pinpoint API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Pinpoint actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateApp with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateCampaign with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateExportJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateImportJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateSegment with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteApp with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteEndpoint with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetSegments with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetSmsChannel with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetUserEndpoints with an AWS SDK
    - Use SendMessages with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UpdateEndpoint with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Pinpoint with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateApp with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateCampaign with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateExportJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateImportJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateSegment with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteApp with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteEndpoint with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetSegments with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetSmsChannel with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetUserEndpoints with an AWS SDK
- Use SendMessages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateEndpoint with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Pinpoint using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Pinpoint actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Pinpoint API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateApp with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateCampaign with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateExportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateImportJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSegment with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteApp with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteEndpoint with an AWS SDK
- Use GetEndpoint with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSegments with an AWS SDK
- Use GetSmsChannel with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetUserEndpoints with an AWS SDK
- Use SendMessages with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateEndpoint with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateApp` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateApp`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an application

The following `create-app` example creates a new application (project).

```
aws pinpoint create-app \
    --create-application-request Name=ExampleCorp
```

Output:

```
{
    "ApplicationResponse": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:mobiletargeting:us-
west-2:AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE:apps/810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example",
        "Id": "810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example",
        "Name": "ExampleCorp",
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create an application that is tagged

The following `create-app` example creates a new application (project) and associates a tag (key and value) with the application.

```
aws pinpoint create-app \
    --create-application-request Name=ExampleCorp,tags={"Stack"="Test"}
```

Output:

```
{
    "ApplicationResponse": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:mobiletargeting:us-
west-2:AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE:apps/810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example",
        "Id": "810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example",
        "Name": "ExampleCorp",
        "tags": {
```

```
            "Stack": "Test"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateApp in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateAppRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateAppResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateApplicationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateApp {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:  <appName>

                Where:
                 appName - The name of the application to create.
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
        String appName = args[0];
        System.out.println("Creating an application with name: " + appName);

        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String appID = createApplication(pinpoint, appName);
        System.out.println("App ID is: " + appID);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static String createApplication(PinpointClient pinpoint, String
 appName) {
        try {
            CreateApplicationRequest appRequest =
 CreateApplicationRequest.builder()
                    .name(appName)
                    .build();

            CreateAppRequest request = CreateAppRequest.builder()
                    .createApplicationRequest(appRequest)
                    .build();

            CreateAppResponse result = pinpoint.createApp(request);
            return result.applicationResponse().id();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateApp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createApplication(applicationName: String?): String? {
    val createApplicationRequestOb =
        CreateApplicationRequest {
            name = applicationName
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result =
            pinpoint.createApp(
                CreateAppRequest {
                    createApplicationRequest = createApplicationRequestOb
                },
            )
        return result.applicationResponse?.id
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateApp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateCampaign` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCampaign`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a campaign.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CampaignResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Schedule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Action;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.WriteCampaignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateCampaignResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateCampaignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateCampaign {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId> <segmentId>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application to create the campaign in.
                  segmentId - The ID of the segment to create the campaign from.
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String segmentId = args[1];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        createPinCampaign(pinpoint, appId, segmentId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void createPinCampaign(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId,
String segmentId) {
        CampaignResponse result = createCampaign(pinpoint, appId, segmentId);
        System.out.println("Campaign " + result.name() + " created.");
        System.out.println(result.description());
    }

    public static CampaignResponse createCampaign(PinpointClient client, String
appID, String segmentID) {

        try {
            Schedule schedule = Schedule.builder()
                    .startTime("IMMEDIATE")
                    .build();

            Message defaultMessage = Message.builder()
                    .action(Action.OPEN_APP)
                    .body("My message body.")
                    .title("My message title.")
                    .build();

            MessageConfiguration messageConfiguration =
MessageConfiguration.builder()
                    .defaultMessage(defaultMessage)
                    .build();

            WriteCampaignRequest request = WriteCampaignRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .description("My description")
                    .schedule(schedule)
                    .name("MyCampaign")
                    .segmentId(segmentID)
                    .messageConfiguration(messageConfiguration)
                    .build();

            CreateCampaignResponse result =
 client.createCampaign(CreateCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appID)
                    .writeCampaignRequest(request).build());

            System.out.println("Campaign ID: " + result.campaignResponse().id());
            return result.campaignResponse();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createPinCampaign(
    appId: String,
    segmentIdVal: String,
) {
    val scheduleOb =
```

```
        Schedule {
            startTime = "IMMEDIATE"
        }

    val defaultMessageOb =
        Message {
            action = Action.OpenApp
            body = "My message body"
            title = "My message title"
        }

    val messageConfigurationOb =
        MessageConfiguration {
            defaultMessage = defaultMessageOb
        }

    val writeCampaign =
        WriteCampaignRequest {
            description = "My description"
            schedule = scheduleOb
            name = "MyCampaign"
            segmentId = segmentIdVal
            messageConfiguration = messageConfigurationOb
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result: CreateCampaignResponse =
            pinpoint.createCampaign(
                CreateCampaignRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                    writeCampaignRequest = writeCampaign
                },
            )
        println("Campaign ID is ${result.campaignResponse?.id}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateExportJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateExportJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Export an endpoint.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ExportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateExportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateExportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetExportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetExportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.text.SimpleDateFormat;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Date;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

/**
 * To run this code example, you need to create an AWS Identity and Access
 * Management (IAM) role with the correct policy as described in this
 * documentation:
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/developerguide/audience-data-
export.html
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class ExportEndpoints {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                This program performs the following steps:

                1. Exports the endpoints to an Amazon S3 bucket.
                2. Downloads the exported endpoints files from Amazon S3.
                3. Parses the endpoints files to obtain the endpoint IDs and
 prints them.
                Usage: ExportEndpoints <applicationId> <s3BucketName>
 <iamExportRoleArn> <path>

                Where:
                  applicationId - The ID of the Amazon Pinpoint application that
 has the endpoint.
                  s3BucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to export the
 JSON file to.\s
                  iamExportRoleArn - The ARN of an IAM role that grants Amazon
 Pinpoint write permissions to the S3 bucket.  path - The path where the files
 downloaded from the Amazon S3 bucket are written (for example, C:/AWS/).
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String applicationId = args[0];
        String s3BucketName = args[1];
        String iamExportRoleArn = args[2];
        String path = args[3];
        System.out.println("Deleting an application with ID: " + applicationId);
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        exportAllEndpoints(pinpoint, s3Client, applicationId, s3BucketName, path,
 iamExportRoleArn);
        pinpoint.close();
        s3Client.close();
    }

    public static void exportAllEndpoints(PinpointClient pinpoint,
            S3Client s3Client,
            String applicationId,
            String s3BucketName,
            String path,
            String iamExportRoleArn) {

        try {
            List<String> objectKeys = exportEndpointsToS3(pinpoint, s3Client,
 s3BucketName, iamExportRoleArn,
                    applicationId);
            List<String> endpointFileKeys = objectKeys.stream().filter(o ->
 o.endsWith(".gz"))
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());
            downloadFromS3(s3Client, path, s3BucketName, endpointFileKeys);

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<String> exportEndpointsToS3(PinpointClient pinpoint,
 S3Client s3Client, String s3BucketName,
            String iamExportRoleArn, String applicationId) {

        SimpleDateFormat dateFormat = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyy-MM-dd-
HH_mm:ss.SSS_z");
```

```
        String endpointsKeyPrefix = "exports/" + applicationId + "_" +
dateFormat.format(new Date());
        String s3UrlPrefix = "s3://" + s3BucketName + "/" + endpointsKeyPrefix +
"/";
        List<String> objectKeys = new ArrayList<>();
        String key;

        try {
            // Defines the export job that Amazon Pinpoint runs.
            ExportJobRequest jobRequest = ExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .roleArn(iamExportRoleArn)
                    .s3UrlPrefix(s3UrlPrefix)
                    .build();

            CreateExportJobRequest exportJobRequest =
CreateExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(applicationId)
                    .exportJobRequest(jobRequest)
                    .build();

            System.out.format("Exporting endpoints from Amazon Pinpoint
application %s to Amazon S3 " +
                    "bucket %s . . .\n", applicationId, s3BucketName);

            CreateExportJobResponse exportResult =
pinpoint.createExportJob(exportJobRequest);
            String jobId = exportResult.exportJobResponse().id();
            System.out.println(jobId);
            printExportJobStatus(pinpoint, applicationId, jobId);

            ListObjectsV2Request v2Request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
                    .bucket(s3BucketName)
                    .prefix(endpointsKeyPrefix)
                    .build();

            // Create a list of object keys.
            ListObjectsV2Response v2Response = s3Client.listObjectsV2(v2Request);
            List<S3Object> objects = v2Response.contents();
            for (S3Object object : objects) {
                key = object.key();
                objectKeys.add(key);
            }

            return objectKeys;
```

```
        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    private static void printExportJobStatus(PinpointClient pinpointClient,
            String applicationId,
            String jobId) {

        GetExportJobResponse getExportJobResult;
        String status;

        try {
            // Checks the job status until the job completes or fails.
            GetExportJobRequest exportJobRequest = GetExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .jobId(jobId)
                    .applicationId(applicationId)
                    .build();

            do {
                getExportJobResult =
pinpointClient.getExportJob(exportJobRequest);
                status =
getExportJobResult.exportJobResponse().jobStatus().toString().toUpperCase();
                System.out.format("Export job %s . . .\n", status);
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(3);

            } while (!status.equals("COMPLETED") && !status.equals("FAILED"));

            if (status.equals("COMPLETED")) {
                System.out.println("Finished exporting endpoints.");
            } else {
                System.err.println("Failed to export endpoints.");
                System.exit(1);
            }

        } catch (PinpointException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    // Download files from an Amazon S3 bucket and write them to the path
 location.
    public static void downloadFromS3(S3Client s3Client, String path, String
 s3BucketName, List<String> objectKeys) {

        String newPath;
        try {
            for (String key : objectKeys) {
                GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(s3BucketName)
                        .key(key)
                        .build();

                ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
 s3Client.getObjectAsBytes(objectRequest);
                byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();

                // Write the data to a local file.
                String fileSuffix = new
 SimpleDateFormat("yyyyMMddHHmmss").format(new Date());
                newPath = path + fileSuffix + ".gz";
                File myFile = new File(newPath);
                OutputStream os = new FileOutputStream(myFile);
                os.write(data);
            }
            System.out.println("Download finished.");

        } catch (S3Exception | NullPointerException | IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateExportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateImportJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateImportJob`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import a segment.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateImportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ImportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ImportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Format;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateImportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ImportSegment {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId> <bucket> <key> <roleArn>\s

                Where:
                  appId - The application ID to create a segment for.
                  bucket - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
 segment definitons.
                  key - The key of the S3 object.
                  roleArn - ARN of the role that allows Amazon
 Pinpoint to access S3. You need to set trust management for this
```

```
 to work. See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
reference_policies_elements_principal.html
                  """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String bucket = args[1];
        String key = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];

        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        ImportJobResponse response = createImportSegment(pinpoint, appId, bucket,
 key, roleArn);
        System.out.println("Import job for " + bucket + " submitted.");
        System.out.println("See application " + response.applicationId() + " for
 import job status.");
        System.out.println("See application " + response.jobStatus() + " for
 import job status.");
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static ImportJobResponse createImportSegment(PinpointClient client,
            String appId,
            String bucket,
            String key,
            String roleArn) {

        try {
            ImportJobRequest importRequest = ImportJobRequest.builder()
                    .defineSegment(true)
                    .registerEndpoints(true)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .format(Format.JSON)
                    .s3Url("s3://" + bucket + "/" + key)
                    .build();

            CreateImportJobRequest jobRequest = CreateImportJobRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .importJobRequest(importRequest)
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            CreateImportJobResponse jobResponse =
 client.createImportJob(jobRequest);
            return jobResponse.importJobResponse();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateSegment` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateSegment`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AttributeDimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.RecencyDimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentBehaviors;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentDemographics;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentLocation;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentDimensions;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.WriteSegmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateSegmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateSegmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateSegment {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:   <appId>

                                Where:
                                  appId - The application ID to create a segment
 for.

                                """;

                if (args.length != 1) {
                        System.out.println(usage);
                        System.exit(1);
                }

                String appId = args[0];
                PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                                .build();

                SegmentResponse result = createSegment(pinpoint, appId);
                System.out.println("Segment " + result.name() + " created.");
                System.out.println(result.segmentType());
                pinpoint.close();
        }
```

```
       public static SegmentResponse createSegment(PinpointClient client, String
appId) {
               try {
                       Map<String, AttributeDimension> segmentAttributes = new
HashMap<>();
                       segmentAttributes.put("Team",
AttributeDimension.builder()
                                       .attributeType(AttributeType.INCLUSIVE)
                                       .values("Lakers")
                                       .build());

                       RecencyDimension recencyDimension =
RecencyDimension.builder()
                                       .duration("DAY_30")
                                       .recencyType("ACTIVE")
                                       .build();

                       SegmentBehaviors segmentBehaviors =
SegmentBehaviors.builder()
                                       .recency(recencyDimension)
                                       .build();

                       SegmentDemographics segmentDemographics =
SegmentDemographics
                                       .builder()
                                       .build();

                       SegmentLocation segmentLocation = SegmentLocation
                                       .builder()
                                       .build();

                       SegmentDimensions dimensions = SegmentDimensions
                                       .builder()
                                       .attributes(segmentAttributes)
                                       .behavior(segmentBehaviors)
                                       .demographic(segmentDemographics)
                                       .location(segmentLocation)
                                       .build();

                       WriteSegmentRequest writeSegmentRequest =
WriteSegmentRequest.builder()
                                       .name("MySegment")
                                       .dimensions(dimensions)
```

```
                                        .build();

                        CreateSegmentRequest createSegmentRequest =
 CreateSegmentRequest.builder()
                                        .applicationId(appId)
                                        .writeSegmentRequest(writeSegmentRequest)
                                        .build();

                        CreateSegmentResponse createSegmentResult =
 client.createSegment(createSegmentRequest);
                        System.out.println("Segment ID: " +
 createSegmentResult.segmentResponse().id());
                        System.out.println("Done");
                        return createSegmentResult.segmentResponse();

                } catch (PinpointException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
                return null;
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSegment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createPinpointSegment(applicationIdVal: String?): String? {
    val segmentAttributes = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeDimension>()
    val myList = mutableListOf<String>()
    myList.add("Lakers")

    val atts =
```

```
        AttributeDimension {
            attributeType = AttributeType.Inclusive
            values = myList
        }

    segmentAttributes["Team"] = atts
    val recencyDimension =
        RecencyDimension {
            duration = Duration.fromValue("DAY_30")
            recencyType = RecencyType.fromValue("ACTIVE")
        }

    val segmentBehaviors =
        SegmentBehaviors {
            recency = recencyDimension
        }

    val segmentLocation = SegmentLocation {}
    val dimensionsOb =
        SegmentDimensions {
            attributes = segmentAttributes
            behavior = segmentBehaviors
            demographic = SegmentDemographics {}
            location = segmentLocation
        }

    val writeSegmentRequestOb =
        WriteSegmentRequest {
            name = "MySegment101"
            dimensions = dimensionsOb
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val createSegmentResult: CreateSegmentResponse =
            pinpoint.createSegment(
                CreateSegmentRequest {
                    applicationId = applicationIdVal
                    writeSegmentRequest = writeSegmentRequestOb
                },
            )
        println("Segment ID is ${createSegmentResult.segmentResponse?.id}")
        return createSegmentResult.segmentResponse?.id
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSegment in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteApp` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteApp`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an application

The following `delete-app` example deletes an application (project).

```
aws pinpoint delete-app \
    --application-id 810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example
```

Output:

```
{
    "ApplicationResponse": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:mobiletargeting:us-
west-2:AIDACKCEVSQ6C2EXAMPLE:apps/810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example",
        "Id": "810c7aab86d42fb2b56c8c966example",
        "Name": "ExampleCorp",
        "tags": {}
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteApp in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an application.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteAppRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteAppResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteApp {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:  <appId>

                Where:
                 appId - The ID of the application to delete.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String appId = args[0];
        System.out.println("Deleting an application with ID: " + appId);
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deletePinApp(pinpoint, appId);
        System.out.println("Done");
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void deletePinApp(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId) {
        try {
            DeleteAppRequest appRequest = DeleteAppRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            DeleteAppResponse result = pinpoint.deleteApp(appRequest);
            String appName = result.applicationResponse().name();
            System.out.println("Application " + appName + " has been deleted.");

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteApp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deletePinApp(appId: String?) {
```

```
    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result =
            pinpoint.deleteApp(
                DeleteAppRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                },
            )
        val appName = result.applicationResponse?.name
        println("Application $appName has been deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteApp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DeleteEndpoint` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteEndpoint`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an endpoint.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteEndpoint {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appName> <endpointId >

                Where:
                  appId - The id of the application to delete.
                  endpointId - The id of the endpoint to delete.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String endpointId = args[1];
        System.out.println("Deleting an endpoint with id: " + endpointId);
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deletePinEncpoint(pinpoint, appId, endpointId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void deletePinEncpoint(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId,
 String endpointId) {
        try {
            DeleteEndpointRequest appRequest = DeleteEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpointId)
                    .build();

            DeleteEndpointResponse result = pinpoint.deleteEndpoint(appRequest);
            String id = result.endpointResponse().id();
            System.out.println("The deleted endpoint id  " + id);

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deletePinEncpoint(
    appIdVal: String?,
    endpointIdVal: String?,
) {
    val deleteEndpointRequest =
        DeleteEndpointRequest {
            applicationId = appIdVal
            endpointId = endpointIdVal
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result = pinpoint.deleteEndpoint(deleteEndpointRequest)
        val id = result.endpointResponse?.id
        println("The deleted endpoint is  $id")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetEndpoint` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetEndpoint`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about the settings and attributes of a specific endpoint for an application

The following `get-endpoint` example retrieves information about the settings and attributes of a specific endpoint for an application.

```
aws pinpoint get-endpoint \
    --application-id 611e3e3cdd47474c9c1399a505665b91 \
    --endpoint-id testendpoint \
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "EndpointResponse": {
        "Address": "+11234567890",
        "ApplicationId": "611e3e3cdd47474c9c1399a505665b91",
        "Attributes": {},
        "ChannelType": "SMS",
        "CohortId": "63",
        "CreationDate": "2019-01-28T23:55:11.534Z",
        "EffectiveDate": "2021-08-06T00:04:51.763Z",
        "EndpointStatus": "ACTIVE",
        "Id": "testendpoint",
        "Location": {
            "Country": "USA"
        },
        "Metrics": {
            "SmsDelivered": 1.0
        },
        "OptOut": "ALL",
        "RequestId": "a204b1f2-7e26-48a7-9c80-b49a2143489d",
        "User": {
            "UserAttributes": {
                "Age": [
```

```
                    "24"
                ]
            },
        "UserId": "testuser"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetEndpoint in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.google.gson.FieldNamingPolicy;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class LookUpEndpoint {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:   <appId> <endpoint>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application to delete.
                  endpoint - The ID of the endpoint.\s
                  """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String endpoint = args[1];
        System.out.println("Looking up an endpoint point with ID: " + endpoint);
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        lookupPinpointEndpoint(pinpoint, appId, endpoint);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void lookupPinpointEndpoint(PinpointClient pinpoint, String
appId, String endpoint) {
        try {
            GetEndpointRequest appRequest = GetEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpoint)
                    .build();

            GetEndpointResponse result = pinpoint.getEndpoint(appRequest);
            EndpointResponse endResponse = result.endpointResponse();

            // Uses the Google Gson library to pretty print the endpoint JSON.
            Gson gson = new GsonBuilder()
                    .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                    .setPrettyPrinting()
                    .create();

            String endpointJson = gson.toJson(endResponse);
            System.out.println(endpointJson);
```

```
        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun lookupPinpointEndpoint(
    appId: String?,
    endpoint: String?,
) {
    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result =
            pinpoint.getEndpoint(
                GetEndpointRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                    endpointId = endpoint
                },
            )
        val endResponse = result.endpointResponse

        // Uses the Google Gson library to pretty print the endpoint JSON.
        val gson: com.google.gson.Gson =
            GsonBuilder()
                .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                .setPrettyPrinting()
                .create()
```

```
        val endpointJson: String = gson.toJson(endResponse)
        println(endpointJson)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetSegments` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetSegments`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List segments.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetSegmentsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetSegmentsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListSegments {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application that contains a segment.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSegs(pinpoint, appId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void listSegs(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId) {
        try {
            GetSegmentsRequest request = GetSegmentsRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            GetSegmentsResponse response = pinpoint.getSegments(request);
            List<SegmentResponse> segments = response.segmentsResponse().item();
            for (SegmentResponse segment : segments) {
                System.out
                        .println("Segement " + segment.id() + " " +
 segment.name() + " " + segment.lastModifiedDate());
            }

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSegments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listSegs(appId: String?) {
    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val response =
            pinpoint.getSegments(
                GetSegmentsRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                },
            )
        response.segmentsResponse?.item?.forEach { segment ->
            println("Segement id is ${segment.id}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSegments in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetSmsChannel` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSmsChannel`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve information about the status and settings of the SMS channel for an application

The following `get-sms-channel` example retrieves status and settings of the sms channel for an application.

```
aws pinpoint get-sms-channel \
    --application-id 6e0b7591a90841d2b5d93fa11143e5a7 \
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "SMSChannelResponse": {
        "ApplicationId": "6e0b7591a90841d2b5d93fa11143e5a7",
        "CreationDate": "2019-10-08T18:39:18.511Z",
        "Enabled": true,
        "Id": "sms",
        "IsArchived": false,
        "LastModifiedDate": "2019-10-08T18:39:18.511Z",
        "Platform": "SMS",
        "PromotionalMessagesPerSecond": 20,
        "TransactionalMessagesPerSecond": 20,
        "Version": 1
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSmsChannel in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSChannelResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetSmsChannelRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSChannelRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateSmsChannelRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateSmsChannelResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class UpdateChannel {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage: CreateChannel <appId>

                Where:
                  appId - The name of the application whose channel is updated.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        SMSChannelResponse getResponse = getSMSChannel(pinpoint, appId);
        toggleSmsChannel(pinpoint, appId, getResponse);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    private static SMSChannelResponse getSMSChannel(PinpointClient client, String
 appId) {
        try {
            GetSmsChannelRequest request = GetSmsChannelRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
```

```
                    .build();

            SMSChannelResponse response =
 client.getSmsChannel(request).smsChannelResponse();
            System.out.println("Channel state is " + response.enabled());
            return response;

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    private static void toggleSmsChannel(PinpointClient client, String appId,
 SMSChannelResponse getResponse) {
        boolean enabled = !getResponse.enabled();
        try {
            SMSChannelRequest request = SMSChannelRequest.builder()
                    .enabled(enabled)
                    .build();

            UpdateSmsChannelRequest updateRequest =
 UpdateSmsChannelRequest.builder()
                    .smsChannelRequest(request)
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            UpdateSmsChannelResponse result =
 client.updateSmsChannel(updateRequest);
            System.out.println("Channel state: " +
 result.smsChannelResponse().enabled());

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSmsChannel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetUserEndpoints` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetUserEndpoints`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetUserEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetUserEndpointsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListEndpointIds {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <applicationId> <userId>

                Where:
                   applicationId - The ID of the Amazon Pinpoint application that
 has the endpoint.
                   userId - The user id applicable to the endpoints""";

        if (args.length != 2) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String applicationId = args[0];
        String userId = args[1];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllEndpoints(pinpoint, applicationId, userId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void listAllEndpoints(PinpointClient pinpoint,
            String applicationId,
            String userId) {

        try {
            GetUserEndpointsRequest endpointsRequest =
 GetUserEndpointsRequest.builder()
                    .userId(userId)
                    .applicationId(applicationId)
                    .build();

            GetUserEndpointsResponse response =
 pinpoint.getUserEndpoints(endpointsRequest);
            List<EndpointResponse> endpoints =
 response.endpointsResponse().item();

            // Display the results.
            for (EndpointResponse endpoint : endpoints) {
                System.out.println("The channel type is: " +
 endpoint.channelType());
                System.out.println("The address is  " + endpoint.address());
            }

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetUserEndpoints in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use SendMessages with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use SendMessages.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Pinpoint;
using Amazon.Pinpoint.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace SendEmailMessage;

public class SendEmailMainClass
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
        .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
        .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
        .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
            true) // Optionally load local settings.
        .Build();

        // The AWS Region that you want to use to send the email. For a list of
        // AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
```

```
        string region = "us-east-1";

        // The "From" address. This address has to be verified in Amazon
Pinpoint
        // in the region you're using to send email.
        string senderAddress = configuration["SenderAddress"]!;

        // The address on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint account is in
        // the sandbox, this address also has to be verified.
        string toAddress = configuration["ToAddress"]!;

        // The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this
message.
        // Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or
application
        // that you choose.
        string appId = configuration["AppId"]!;

        try
        {
            await SendEmailMessage(region, appId, toAddress, senderAddress);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message wasn't sent. Error message: " +
ex.Message);
        }
    }

    public static async Task<MessageResponse> SendEmailMessage(
        string region, string appId, string toAddress, string senderAddress)
    {
        var client = new
AmazonPinpointClient(RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName(region));

        // The subject line of the email.
        string subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Email test";

        // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients don't
        // support HTML content.
        string textBody = @"Amazon Pinpoint Email Test (.NET)"
                          + "\n----------------------------------"
                          + "\nThis email was sent using the Amazon Pinpoint API
using the AWS SDK for .NET.";
```

```
        // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support
        // HTML content.
        string htmlBody = @"<html>"
                          + "\n<head></head>"
                          + "\n<body>"
                          + "\n  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Email Test (AWS SDK
 for .NET)</h1>"
                          + "\n  <p>This email was sent using the "
                          + "\n    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/
pinpoint/'>Amazon Pinpoint</a> API "
                          + "\n    using the <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-
for-net/'>AWS SDK for .NET</a>"
                          + "\n  </p>"
                          + "\n</body>"
                          + "\n</html>";

        // The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
        // message body of the email.
        string charset = "UTF-8";

        var sendRequest = new SendMessagesRequest
        {
            ApplicationId = appId,
            MessageRequest = new MessageRequest
            {
                Addresses = new Dictionary<string, AddressConfiguration>
                {
                    {
                        toAddress,
                        new AddressConfiguration
                        {
                            ChannelType = ChannelType.EMAIL
                        }
                    }
                },
                MessageConfiguration = new DirectMessageConfiguration
                {
                    EmailMessage = new EmailMessage
                    {
                        FromAddress = senderAddress,
                        SimpleEmail = new SimpleEmail
                        {
                            HtmlPart = new SimpleEmailPart
```

```
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = htmlBody
                            },
                            TextPart = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = textBody
                            },
                            Subject = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = subject
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        };
        Console.WriteLine("Sending message...");
        SendMessagesResponse response = await
 client.SendMessagesAsync(sendRequest);
        Console.WriteLine("Message sent!");
        return response.MessageResponse;
    }
}
```

Send an SMS message.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Pinpoint;
using Amazon.Pinpoint.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace SendSmsMessage;

public class SendSmsMessageMainClass
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
```

```
        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // The AWS Region that you want to use to send the message. For a list of
        // AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
        string region = "us-east-1";

        // The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone
 number
        // or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon
 Pinpoint
        // account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format.
        string originationNumber = configuration["OriginationNumber"]!;

        // The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify
 the
        // phone number in E.164 format.
        string destinationNumber = configuration["DestinationNumber"]!;

        // The Pinpoint project/ application ID to use when you send this
 message.
        // Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or
 application
        // that you choose.
        string appId = configuration["AppId"]!;

        // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
        // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
        // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
        MessageType messageType = MessageType.TRANSACTIONAL;

        // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
        string? registeredKeyword = configuration["RegisteredKeyword"];

        // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
        // varies by country or region. For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
        string? senderId = configuration["SenderId"];
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await SendSmsMessage(region, appId, destinationNumber,
                originationNumber, registeredKeyword, senderId, messageType);
            Console.WriteLine($"Message sent to
{response.MessageResponse.Result.Count} recipient(s).");
            foreach (var messageResultValue in
                     response.MessageResponse.Result.Select(r => r.Value))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{messageResultValue.MessageId} Status:
{messageResultValue.DeliveryStatus}");
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message wasn't sent. Error message: " +
ex.Message);
        }
    }

    public static async Task<SendMessagesResponse> SendSmsMessage(
        string region, string appId, string destinationNumber, string
originationNumber,
        string? keyword, string? senderId, MessageType messageType)
    {

        // The content of the SMS message.
        string message = "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint using" +
                         " the AWS SDK for .NET. Reply STOP to opt out.";


        var client = new
AmazonPinpointClient(RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName(region));

        SendMessagesRequest sendRequest = new SendMessagesRequest
        {
            ApplicationId = appId,
            MessageRequest = new MessageRequest
            {
                Addresses =
                    new Dictionary<string, AddressConfiguration>
                    {
                        {
```

```
                            destinationNumber,
                            new AddressConfiguration { ChannelType =
 ChannelType.SMS }
                        }
                    },
                MessageConfiguration = new DirectMessageConfiguration
                {
                    SMSMessage = new SMSMessage
                    {
                        Body = message,
                        MessageType = MessageType.TRANSACTIONAL,
                        OriginationNumber = originationNumber,
                        SenderId = senderId,
                        Keyword = keyword
                    }
                }
            }
        };
        SendMessagesResponse response = await
 client.SendMessagesAsync(sendRequest);
        return response;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send SMS message using the endpoint of an application

The following `send-messages` example sends a direct message for an application with an endpoint.

```
aws pinpoint send-messages \
    --application-id 611e3e3cdd47474c9c1399a505665b91 \
    --message-request file://myfile.json \
    --region us-west-2
```

Contents of `myfile.json`:

```
{
    "MessageConfiguration": {
        "SMSMessage": {
            "Body": "hello, how are you?"
        }
    },
    "Endpoints": {
        "testendpoint": {}
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MessageResponse": {
        "ApplicationId": "611e3e3cdd47474c9c1399a505665b91",
        "EndpointResult": {
            "testendpoint": {
                "Address": "+12345678900",
                "DeliveryStatus": "SUCCESSFUL",
                "MessageId": "itnuqhai5alf1n6ahv3udc05n7hhddr6gb3lq6g0",
                "StatusCode": 200,
                "StatusMessage": "MessageId:
 itnuqhai5alf1n6ahv3udc05n7hhddr6gb3lq6g0"
            }
        },
        "RequestId": "c7e23264-04b2-4a46-b800-d24923f74753"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Amazon Pinpoint SMS channel in the *Amazon Pinpoint User Guide*.

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AddressConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ChannelType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SimpleEmailPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SimpleEmail;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EmailMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DirectMessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.PinpointEmailClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.SendEmailRequest;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
```

```
public class SendEmailMessage {

        // The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
        // message body of the email.
        public static String charset = "UTF-8";

    // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support HTML
 content.
    static final String body = """
        Amazon Pinpoint test (AWS SDK for Java 2.x)

        This email was sent through the Amazon Pinpoint Email API using the AWS
 SDK for Java 2.x

        """;

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:    <subject> <appId> <senderAddress>
 <toAddress>

            Where:
               subject - The email subject to use.
               senderAddress - The from address. This address has to be verified
 in Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
               toAddress - The to address. This address has to be verified in
 Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subject = args[0];
        String senderAddress = args[1];
        String toAddress = args[2];
        System.out.println("Sending a message");
        PinpointEmailClient pinpoint = PinpointEmailClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        sendEmail(pinpoint, subject, senderAddress, toAddress);
```

```
        System.out.println("Email was sent");
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void sendEmail(PinpointEmailClient pinpointEmailClient, String
 subject, String senderAddress, String toAddress) {
        try {
            Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(body)
                .build();

            Body messageBody = Body.builder()
                .text(content)
                .build();

            Message message = Message.builder()
                .body(messageBody)
                .subject(Content.builder().data(subject).build())
                .build();

            Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(toAddress)
                .build();

            EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(message)
                .build();

            SendEmailRequest sendEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .fromEmailAddress(senderAddress)
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .build();

            pinpointEmailClient.sendEmail(sendEmailRequest);
            System.out.println("Message Sent");

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Send an email message with CC values.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import  software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.PinpointEmailClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.SendEmailRequest;
import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SendEmailMessageCC {

    // The body of the email.
    static final String body = """
        Amazon Pinpoint test (AWS SDK for Java 2.x)

        This email was sent through the Amazon Pinpoint Email API using the AWS
 SDK for Java 2.x

        """;
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <subject> <senderAddress> <toAddress> <ccAddress>

            Where:
               subject - The email subject to use.
               senderAddress - The from address. This address has to be verified
 in Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
```

```
               toAddress - The to address. This address has to be verified in
Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
               ccAddress - The CC address.
            """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subject = args[0];
        String senderAddress = args[1];
        String toAddress = args[2];
        String ccAddress = args[3];

        System.out.println("Sending a message");
        PinpointEmailClient pinpoint = PinpointEmailClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        ArrayList<String> ccList = new ArrayList<>();
        ccList.add(ccAddress);
        sendEmail(pinpoint, subject, senderAddress, toAddress, ccList);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void sendEmail(PinpointEmailClient pinpointEmailClient, String
subject, String senderAddress, String toAddress, ArrayList<String> ccAddresses)
{
        try {
            Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(body)
                .build();

            Body messageBody = Body.builder()
                .text(content)
                .build();

            Message message = Message.builder()
                .body(messageBody)
                .subject(Content.builder().data(subject).build())
                .build();

            Destination destination = Destination.builder()
```

```
                .toAddresses(toAddress)
                .ccAddresses(ccAddresses)
                .build();

            EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(message)
                .build();

            SendEmailRequest sendEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .fromEmailAddress(senderAddress)
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .build();

            pinpointEmailClient.sendEmail(sendEmailRequest);
            System.out.println("Message Sent");

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            // Handle exception
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
```

Send an SMS message.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DirectMessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AddressConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ChannelType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SendMessage {

        // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
        // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
        // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
        public static String messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

        // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
        public static String registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

        // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
        // varies by country or region. For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
        public static String senderId = "MySenderID";

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:   <message> <appId> <originationNumber>
 <destinationNumber>\s

                                Where:
                                  message - The body of the message to send.
                                  appId - The Amazon Pinpoint project/application
 ID to use when you send this message.
                                  originationNumber - The phone number or
 short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
 account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format (for example,
 +1-555-555-5654).
                                  destinationNumber - The recipient's phone
 number.  For best results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format
 (for example, +1-555-555-5654).\s
                                  """;

                if (args.length != 4) {
                        System.out.println(usage);
```

```
                        System.exit(1);
                }

                String message = args[0];
                String appId = args[1];
                String originationNumber = args[2];
                String destinationNumber = args[3];
                System.out.println("Sending a message");
                PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                                .build();

                sendSMSMessage(pinpoint, message, appId, originationNumber,
destinationNumber);
                pinpoint.close();
        }

        public static void sendSMSMessage(PinpointClient pinpoint, String
message, String appId,
                        String originationNumber,
                        String destinationNumber) {
                try {
                        Map<String, AddressConfiguration> addressMap = new
HashMap<String, AddressConfiguration>();
                        AddressConfiguration addConfig =
AddressConfiguration.builder()
                                        .channelType(ChannelType.SMS)
                                        .build();

                        addressMap.put(destinationNumber, addConfig);
                        SMSMessage smsMessage = SMSMessage.builder()
                                        .body(message)
                                        .messageType(messageType)
                                        .originationNumber(originationNumber)
                                        .senderId(senderId)
                                        .keyword(registeredKeyword)
                                        .build();

                        // Create a DirectMessageConfiguration object.
                        DirectMessageConfiguration direct =
DirectMessageConfiguration.builder()
                                        .smsMessage(smsMessage)
                                        .build();
```

```
                        MessageRequest msgReq = MessageRequest.builder()
                                        .addresses(addressMap)
                                        .messageConfiguration(direct)
                                        .build();

                        // create a SendMessagesRequest object
                        SendMessagesRequest request =
 SendMessagesRequest.builder()
                                        .applicationId(appId)
                                        .messageRequest(msgReq)
                                        .build();

                        SendMessagesResponse response =
 pinpoint.sendMessages(request);
                        MessageResponse msg1 = response.messageResponse();
                        Map map1 = msg1.result();

                        // Write out the result of sendMessage.
                        map1.forEach((k, v) -> System.out.println((k + ":" +
 v)));

                } catch (PinpointException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
        }
}
```

Send batch SMS messages.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DirectMessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AddressConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ChannelType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
```

```
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SendMessageBatch {

    // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
    // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
    // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
    public static String messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

    // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
    public static String registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

    // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
    // varies by country or region. For more information, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
    public static String senderId = "MySenderID";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <message> <appId> <originationNumber>
 <destinationNumber> <destinationNumber1>\s

                Where:
                  message - The body of the message to send.
                  appId - The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when
 you send this message.
                  originationNumber - The phone number or short code that
 you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best
 results, specify long codes in E.164 format (for example, +1-555-555-5654).
```

```
                 destinationNumber - The recipient's phone number.  For best
results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
+1-555-555-5654).
                 destinationNumber1 - The second recipient's phone number.  For
best results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
+1-555-555-5654).\s
               """;

       if (args.length != 5) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String message = args[0];
       String appId = args[1];
       String originationNumber = args[2];
       String destinationNumber = args[3];
       String destinationNumber1 = args[4];
       System.out.println("Sending a message");
       PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();

       sendSMSMessage(pinpoint, message, appId, originationNumber,
destinationNumber, destinationNumber1);
       pinpoint.close();
   }

   public static void sendSMSMessage(PinpointClient pinpoint, String message,
String appId,
                                     String originationNumber,
                                     String destinationNumber, String
destinationNumber1) {
       try {
           Map<String, AddressConfiguration> addressMap = new HashMap<String,
AddressConfiguration>();
           AddressConfiguration addConfig = AddressConfiguration.builder()
                   .channelType(ChannelType.SMS)
                   .build();

           // Add an entry to the Map object for each number to whom you want to
send a
           // message.
           addressMap.put(destinationNumber, addConfig);
```

```
            addressMap.put(destinationNumber1, addConfig);
            SMSMessage smsMessage = SMSMessage.builder()
                    .body(message)
                    .messageType(messageType)
                    .originationNumber(originationNumber)
                    .senderId(senderId)
                    .keyword(registeredKeyword)
                    .build();

            // Create a DirectMessageConfiguration object.
            DirectMessageConfiguration direct =
 DirectMessageConfiguration.builder()
                    .smsMessage(smsMessage)
                    .build();

            MessageRequest msgReq = MessageRequest.builder()
                    .addresses(addressMap)
                    .messageConfiguration(direct)
                    .build();

            // Create a SendMessagesRequest object.
            SendMessagesRequest request = SendMessagesRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .messageRequest(msgReq)
                    .build();

            SendMessagesResponse response = pinpoint.sendMessages(request);
            MessageResponse msg1 = response.messageResponse();
            Map map1 = msg1.result();

            // Write out the result of sendMessage.
            map1.forEach((k, v) -> System.out.println((k + ":" + v)));

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { PinpointClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-pinpoint";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "us-east-1";
export const pinClient = new PinpointClient({ region: REGION });
```

Send an email message.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { SendMessagesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-pinpoint";
import { pinClient } from "./libs/pinClient.js";

// The FromAddress must be verified in SES.
const fromAddress = "FROM_ADDRESS";
const toAddress = "TO_ADDRESS";
const projectId = "PINPOINT_PROJECT_ID";

// The subject line of the email.
const subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Test (AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)";

// The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
const body_text = `Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)
----------------------------------------------------
This email was sent with Amazon Pinpoint using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in
 Node.js.
For more information, see https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/`;

// The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support HTML content.
const body_html = `<html>
<head></head>
```

```
<body>
  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)</h1>
  <p>This email was sent with
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>the Amazon Pinpoint Email API</a>
 using the
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/'>
      AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js</a>.</p>
</body>
</html>`;

// The character encoding for the subject line and message body of the email.
const charset = "UTF-8";

const params = {
  ApplicationId: projectId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [toAddress]: {
        ChannelType: "EMAIL",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      EmailMessage: {
        FromAddress: fromAddress,
        SimpleEmail: {
          Subject: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: subject,
          },
          HtmlPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_html,
          },
          TextPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_text,
          },
        },
      },
    },
  },
};

const run = async () => {
```

```
  try {
    const { MessageResponse } = await pinClient.send(
      new SendMessagesCommand(params),
    );

    if (!MessageResponse) {
      throw new Error("No message response.");
    }

    if (!MessageResponse.Result) {
      throw new Error("No message result.");
    }

    const recipientResult = MessageResponse.Result[toAddress];

    if (recipientResult.StatusCode !== 200) {
      throw new Error(recipientResult.StatusMessage);
    }
    console.log(recipientResult.MessageId);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
  }
};

run();
```

Send an SMS message.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { SendMessagesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-pinpoint";
import { pinClient } from "./libs/pinClient.js";

/* The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone number
 or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format. */
const originationNumber = "SENDER_NUMBER"; //e.g., +1XXXXXXXXXX

// The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify the phone
 number in E.164 format.
const destinationNumber = "RECEIVER_NUMBER"; //e.g., +1XXXXXXXXXX
```

```
// The content of the SMS message.
const message =
  "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint " +
  "using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js. Reply STOP to " +
  "opt out.";

/*The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this message.
Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
that you choose.*/
const projectId = "PINPOINT_PROJECT_ID"; //e.g., XXXXXXXX66e4e9986478cXXXXXXXXX

/* The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.*/
const messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

// The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
const registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

/* The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
// varies by country or region. For more information, see
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html.*/

const senderId = "MySenderID";

// Specify the parameters to pass to the API.
const params = {
  ApplicationId: projectId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [destinationNumber]: {
        ChannelType: "SMS",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      SMSMessage: {
        Body: message,
        Keyword: registeredKeyword,
        MessageType: messageType,
        OriginationNumber: originationNumber,
        SenderId: senderId,
      },
    },
```

```
  },
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await pinClient.send(new SendMessagesCommand(params));
    console.log(
      `Message sent!
 ${data.MessageResponse.Result[destinationNumber].StatusMessage}`,
    );
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
"use strict";

const AWS = require("aws-sdk");

// The AWS Region that you want to use to send the email. For a list of
// AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
const aws_region = "us-west-2";

// The "From" address. This address has to be verified in Amazon Pinpoint
// in the region that you use to send email.
const senderAddress = "sender@example.com";
```

```
// The address on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint account is in
// the sandbox, this address also has to be verified.
var toAddress = "recipient@example.com";

// The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this message.
// Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
// that you choose.
const appId = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample";

// The subject line of the email.
var subject = "Amazon Pinpoint (AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)";

// The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
var body_text = `Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)
-----------------------------------------------------
This email was sent with Amazon Pinpoint using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in
 Node.js.
For more information, see https:\/\/aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/`;

// The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support HTML content.
var body_html = `<html>
<head></head>
<body>
  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)</h1>
  <p>This email was sent with
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>the Amazon Pinpoint API</a> using
 the
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/'>
      AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js</a>.</p>
</body>
</html>`;

// The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
// message body of the email.
var charset = "UTF-8";

// Specify that you're using a shared credentials file.
var credentials = new AWS.SharedIniFileCredentials({ profile: "default" });
AWS.config.credentials = credentials;

// Specify the region.
AWS.config.update({ region: aws_region });

//Create a new Pinpoint object.
```

```
var pinpoint = new AWS.Pinpoint();

// Specify the parameters to pass to the API.
var params = {
  ApplicationId: appId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [toAddress]: {
        ChannelType: "EMAIL",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      EmailMessage: {
        FromAddress: senderAddress,
        SimpleEmail: {
          Subject: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: subject,
          },
          HtmlPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_html,
          },
          TextPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_text,
          },
        },
      },
    },
  },
};

//Try to send the email.
pinpoint.sendMessages(params, function (err, data) {
  // If something goes wrong, print an error message.
  if (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
  } else {
    console.log(
      "Email sent! Message ID: ",
      data["MessageResponse"]["Result"][toAddress]["MessageId"]
    );
  }
```

```
});
```

Send an SMS message.

```
"use strict";

var AWS = require("aws-sdk");

// The AWS Region that you want to use to send the message. For a list of
// AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/.
var aws_region = "us-east-1";

// The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone number
// or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
// account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format.
var originationNumber = "+12065550199";

// The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify the
// phone number in E.164 format.
var destinationNumber = "+14255550142";

// The content of the SMS message.
var message =
  "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint " +
  "using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js. Reply STOP to " +
  "opt out.";

// The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this message.
// Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
// that you choose.
var applicationId = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample";

// The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
// time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
// marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
var messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

// The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
var registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";
```

```
// The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
// varies by country or region. For more information, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
var senderId = "MySenderID";

// Specify that you're using a shared credentials file, and optionally specify
// the profile that you want to use.
var credentials = new AWS.SharedIniFileCredentials({ profile: "default" });
AWS.config.credentials = credentials;

// Specify the region.
AWS.config.update({ region: aws_region });

//Create a new Pinpoint object.
var pinpoint = new AWS.Pinpoint();

// Specify the parameters to pass to the API.
var params = {
  ApplicationId: applicationId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [destinationNumber]: {
        ChannelType: "SMS",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      SMSMessage: {
        Body: message,
        Keyword: registeredKeyword,
        MessageType: messageType,
        OriginationNumber: originationNumber,
        SenderId: senderId,
      },
    },
  },
};

//Try to send the message.
pinpoint.sendMessages(params, function (err, data) {
  // If something goes wrong, print an error message.
  if (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
```

```
    // Otherwise, show the unique ID for the message.
  } else {
    console.log(
      "Message sent! " +
        data["MessageResponse"]["Result"][destinationNumber]["StatusMessage"]
    );
  }
});
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

val body: String =
    """
    Amazon Pinpoint test (AWS SDK for Kotlin)

    This email was sent through the Amazon Pinpoint Email API using the AWS SDK
 for Kotlin.

    """.trimIndent()

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
```

```
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <subject> <appId> <senderAddress> <toAddress>

    Where:
        subject - The email subject to use.
        senderAddress - The from address. This address has to be verified in
 Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email
        toAddress - The to address. This address has to be verified in Amazon
 Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email
    """

    if (args.size != 3) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val subject = args[0]
    val senderAddress = args[1]
    val toAddress = args[2]
    sendEmail(subject, senderAddress, toAddress)
}

suspend fun sendEmail(
    subjectVal: String?,
    senderAddress: String,
    toAddressVal: String,
) {
    var content =
        Content {
            data = body
        }

    val messageBody =
        Body {
            text = content
        }

    val subContent =
        Content {
            data = subjectVal
        }

    val message =
```

```
        Message {
            body = messageBody
            subject = subContent
        }

    val destinationOb =
        Destination {
            toAddresses = listOf(toAddressVal)
        }

    val emailContent =
        EmailContent {
            simple = message
        }

    val sendEmailRequest =
        SendEmailRequest {
            fromEmailAddress = senderAddress
            destination = destinationOb
            this.content = emailContent
        }

    PinpointEmailClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { pinpointemail ->
        pinpointemail.sendEmail(sendEmailRequest)
        println("Message Sent")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_email_message(
    pinpoint_client,
    app_id,
    sender,
    to_addresses,
    char_set,
    subject,
    html_message,
    text_message,
):
    """
    Sends an email message with HTML and plain text versions.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param app_id: The Amazon Pinpoint project ID to use when you send this
 message.
    :param sender: The "From" address. This address must be verified in
                   Amazon Pinpoint in the AWS Region you're using to send email.
    :param to_addresses: The addresses on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint
 account
                         is in the sandbox, these addresses must be verified.
    :param char_set: The character encoding to use for the subject line and
 message
                     body of the email.
    :param subject: The subject line of the email.
    :param html_message: The body of the email for recipients whose email clients
 can
                         display HTML content.
    :param text_message: The body of the email for recipients whose email clients
                         don't support HTML content.
    :return: A dict of to_addresses and their message IDs.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
```

```
            ApplicationId=app_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {
                    to_address: {"ChannelType": "EMAIL"} for to_address in
 to_addresses
                },
                "MessageConfiguration": {
                    "EmailMessage": {
                        "FromAddress": sender,
                        "SimpleEmail": {
                            "Subject": {"Charset": char_set, "Data": subject},
                            "HtmlPart": {"Charset": char_set, "Data":
 html_message},
                            "TextPart": {"Charset": char_set, "Data":
 text_message},
                        },
                    }
                },
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send email.")
        raise
    else:
        return {
            to_address: message["MessageId"]
            for to_address, message in response["MessageResponse"]
["Result"].items()
        }


def main():
    app_id = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample"
    sender = "sender@example.com"
    to_address = "recipient@example.com"
    char_set = "UTF-8"
    subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for Python (Boto3))"
    text_message = """Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for Python)
    -------------------------------------
    This email was sent with Amazon Pinpoint using the AWS SDK for Python
 (Boto3).
    For more information, see https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-python/
                """
    html_message = """<html>
```

```
    <head></head>
    <body>
      <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for Python (Boto3)</h1>
      <p>This email was sent with
        <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>Amazon Pinpoint</a> using the
        <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-python/'>
          AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)</a>.</p>
    </body>
    </html>
                """

    print("Sending email.")
    message_ids = send_email_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint"),
        app_id,
        sender,
        [to_address],
        char_set,
        subject,
        html_message,
        text_message,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message IDs: {message_ids}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send an SMS message.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_sms_message(
    pinpoint_client,
    app_id,
    origination_number,
```

```
    destination_number,
    message,
    message_type,
):
    """
    Sends an SMS message with Amazon Pinpoint.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param app_id: The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you
 send
                   this message. The SMS channel must be enabled for the project
 or
                   application.
    :param destination_number: The recipient's phone number in E.164 format.
    :param origination_number: The phone number to send the message from. This
 phone
                               number must be associated with your Amazon
 Pinpoint
                               account and be in E.164 format.
    :param message: The content of the SMS message.
    :param message_type: The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you
 send
                         time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you
 send
                         marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
    :return: The ID of the message.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=app_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {destination_number: {"ChannelType": "SMS"}},
                "MessageConfiguration": {
                    "SMSMessage": {
                        "Body": message,
                        "MessageType": message_type,
                        "OriginationNumber": origination_number,
                    }
                },
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send message.")
        raise
```

```
    else:
        return response["MessageResponse"]["Result"][destination_number]
["MessageId"]


def main():
    app_id = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample"
    origination_number = "+12065550199"
    destination_number = "+14255550142"
    message = (
        "This is a sample message sent from Amazon Pinpoint by using the AWS SDK
 for "
        "Python (Boto 3)."
    )
    message_type = "TRANSACTIONAL"

    print("Sending SMS message.")
    message_id = send_sms_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint"),
        app_id,
        origination_number,
        destination_number,
        message,
        message_type,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message ID: {message_id}.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send an email message with an existing email template.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_templated_email_message(
```

```
    pinpoint_client, project_id, sender, to_addresses, template_name,
 template_version
):
    """
    Sends an email message with HTML and plain text versions.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param project_id: The Amazon Pinpoint project ID to use when you send this
 message.
    :param sender: The "From" address. This address must be verified in
                   Amazon Pinpoint in the AWS Region you're using to send email.
    :param to_addresses: The addresses on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint
                         account is in the sandbox, these addresses must be
 verified.
    :param template_name: The name of the email template to use when sending the
 message.
    :param template_version: The version number of the message template.

    :return: A dict of to_addresses and their message IDs.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=project_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {
                    to_address: {"ChannelType": "EMAIL"} for to_address in
 to_addresses
                },
                "MessageConfiguration": {"EmailMessage": {"FromAddress":
 sender}},
                "TemplateConfiguration": {
                    "EmailTemplate": {
                        "Name": template_name,
                        "Version": template_version,
                    }
                },
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send email.")
        raise
    else:
        return {
            to_address: message["MessageId"]
```

```
            for to_address, message in response["MessageResponse"]
["Result"].items()
        }


def main():
    project_id = "296b04b342374fceb661bf494example"
    sender = "sender@example.com"
    to_addresses = ["recipient@example.com"]
    template_name = "My_Email_Template"
    template_version = "1"

    print("Sending email.")
    message_ids = send_templated_email_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint"),
        project_id,
        sender,
        to_addresses,
        template_name,
        template_version,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message IDs: {message_ids}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send a text message with an existing SMS template.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_templated_sms_message(
    pinpoint_client,
    project_id,
    destination_number,
    message_type,
    origination_number,
```

```
    template_name,
    template_version,
):
    """
    Sends an SMS message to a specific phone number using a pre-defined template.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param project_id: An Amazon Pinpoint project (application) ID.
    :param destination_number: The phone number to send the message to.
    :param message_type: The type of SMS message (promotional or transactional).
    :param origination_number: The phone number that the message is sent from.
    :param template_name: The name of the SMS template to use when sending the
 message.
    :param template_version: The version number of the message template.

    :return The ID of the message.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=project_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {destination_number: {"ChannelType": "SMS"}},
                "MessageConfiguration": {
                    "SMSMessage": {
                        "MessageType": message_type,
                        "OriginationNumber": origination_number,
                    }
                },
                "TemplateConfiguration": {
                    "SMSTemplate": {"Name": template_name, "Version":
 template_version}
                },
            },
        )

    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send message.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["MessageResponse"]["Result"][destination_number]
["MessageId"]


def main():
```

```
    region = "us-east-1"
    origination_number = "+18555550001"
    destination_number = "+14255550142"
    project_id = "7353f53e6885409fa32d07cedexample"
    message_type = "TRANSACTIONAL"
    template_name = "My_SMS_Template"
    template_version = "1"
    message_id = send_templated_sms_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint", region_name=region),
        project_id,
        destination_number,
        message_type,
        origination_number,
        template_name,
        template_version,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message ID: {message_id}.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateEndpoint` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateEndpoint`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointDemographic;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointLocation;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointUser;
import java.text.DateFormat;
import java.text.SimpleDateFormat;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Date;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class UpdateEndpoint {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:  <appId>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application to create an endpoint for.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
```

```
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        EndpointResponse response = createEndpoint(pinpoint, appId);
        System.out.println("Got Endpoint: " + response.id());
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static EndpointResponse createEndpoint(PinpointClient client, String
appId) {
        String endpointId = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        System.out.println("Endpoint ID: " + endpointId);

        try {
            EndpointRequest endpointRequest = createEndpointRequestData();
            UpdateEndpointRequest updateEndpointRequest =
UpdateEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpointId)
                    .endpointRequest(endpointRequest)
                    .build();

            UpdateEndpointResponse updateEndpointResponse =
client.updateEndpoint(updateEndpointRequest);
            System.out.println("Update Endpoint Response: " +
updateEndpointResponse.messageBody());

            GetEndpointRequest getEndpointRequest = GetEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpointId)
                    .build();

            GetEndpointResponse getEndpointResponse =
client.getEndpoint(getEndpointRequest);
            System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().address());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().channelType());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().applicationId());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().endpointStatus());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().requestId());
```

```
            System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().user());

            return getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    private static EndpointRequest createEndpointRequestData() {
        try {
            List<String> favoriteTeams = new ArrayList<>();
            favoriteTeams.add("Lakers");
            favoriteTeams.add("Warriors");
            HashMap<String, List<String>> customAttributes = new HashMap<>();
            customAttributes.put("team", favoriteTeams);

            EndpointDemographic demographic = EndpointDemographic.builder()
                    .appVersion("1.0")
                    .make("apple")
                    .model("iPhone")
                    .modelVersion("7")
                    .platform("ios")
                    .platformVersion("10.1.1")
                    .timezone("America/Los_Angeles")
                    .build();

            EndpointLocation location = EndpointLocation.builder()
                    .city("Los Angeles")
                    .country("US")
                    .latitude(34.0)
                    .longitude(-118.2)
                    .postalCode("90068")
                    .region("CA")
                    .build();

            Map<String, Double> metrics = new HashMap<>();
            metrics.put("health", 100.00);
            metrics.put("luck", 75.00);

            EndpointUser user = EndpointUser.builder()
                    .userId(UUID.randomUUID().toString())
```

```
                    .build();

            DateFormat df = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm'Z'"); //
 Quoted "Z" to indicate UTC, no timezone
                                                                            //
 offset
            String nowAsISO = df.format(new Date());

            return EndpointRequest.builder()
                    .address(UUID.randomUUID().toString())
                    .attributes(customAttributes)
                    .channelType("APNS")
                    .demographic(demographic)
                    .effectiveDate(nowAsISO)
                    .location(location)
                    .metrics(metrics)
                    .optOut("NONE")
                    .requestId(UUID.randomUUID().toString())
                    .user(user)
                    .build();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API.
- **Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs
    - Use SendVoiceMessage with an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs
  - Use SendVoiceMessage with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API API Reference.

Examples

- Use SendVoiceMessage with an AWS SDK

Use `SendVoiceMessage` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `SendVoiceMessage`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.PinpointSmsVoiceClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.SSMLMessageType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.VoiceMessageContent;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.SendVoiceMessageRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.PinpointSmsVoiceException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
```

```
public class SendVoiceMessage {

    // The Amazon Polly voice that you want to use to send the message. For a
 list
    // of voices, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/voicelist.html
    static final String voiceName = "Matthew";

    // The language to use when sending the message. For a list of supported
    // languages, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/SupportedLanguage.html
    static final String languageCode = "en-US";

    // The content of the message. This example uses SSML to customize and
 control
    // certain aspects of the message, such as by adding pauses and changing
    // phonation. The message can't contain any line breaks.
    static final String ssmlMessage = "<speak>This is a test message sent from "
            + "<emphasis>Amazon Pinpoint</emphasis> "
            + "using the <break strength='weak'/>AWS "
            + "SDK for Java. "
            + "<amazon:effect phonation='soft'>Thank "
            + "you for listening.</amazon:effect></speak>";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """
                Usage:   <originationNumber> <destinationNumber>\s

                Where:
                  originationNumber - The phone number or short code that
 you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best
 results, specify long codes in E.164 format (for example, +1-555-555-5654).
                  destinationNumber - The recipient's phone number.  For best
 results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
 +1-555-555-5654).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
        String originationNumber = args[0];
        String destinationNumber = args[1];
        System.out.println("Sending a voice message");
```

```
        // Set the content type to application/json.
        List<String> listVal = new ArrayList<>();
        listVal.add("application/json");
        Map<String, List<String>> values = new HashMap<>();
        values.put("Content-Type", listVal);

        ClientOverrideConfiguration config2 =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .headers(values)
                .build();

        PinpointSmsVoiceClient client = PinpointSmsVoiceClient.builder()
                .overrideConfiguration(config2)
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        sendVoiceMsg(client, originationNumber, destinationNumber);
        client.close();
    }

    public static void sendVoiceMsg(PinpointSmsVoiceClient client, String
originationNumber,
                                    String destinationNumber) {
        try {
            SSMLMessageType ssmlMessageType = SSMLMessageType.builder()
                    .languageCode(languageCode)
                    .text(ssmlMessage)
                    .voiceId(voiceName)
                    .build();

            VoiceMessageContent content = VoiceMessageContent.builder()
                    .ssmlMessage(ssmlMessageType)
                    .build();

            SendVoiceMessageRequest voiceMessageRequest =
SendVoiceMessageRequest.builder()
                    .destinationPhoneNumber(destinationNumber)
                    .originationPhoneNumber(originationNumber)
                    .content(content)
                    .build();

            client.sendVoiceMessage(voiceMessageRequest);
            System.out.println("The message was sent successfully.");
```

```
        } catch (PinpointSmsVoiceException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendVoiceMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"use strict";

var AWS = require("aws-sdk");

// The AWS Region that you want to use to send the voice message. For a list of
// AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API is available, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint-sms-voice/latest/APIReference/
var aws_region = "us-east-1";

// The phone number that the message is sent from. The phone number that you
// specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best
 results, you
// should specify the phone number in E.164 format.
var originationNumber = "+12065550110";

// The recipient's phone number. For best results, you should specify the phone
// number in E.164 format.
var destinationNumber = "+12065550142";

// The language to use when sending the message. For a list of supported
```

```
// languages, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/
SupportedLanguage.html
var languageCode = "en-US";

// The Amazon Polly voice that you want to use to send the message. For a list
// of voices, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/voicelist.html
var voiceId = "Matthew";

// The content of the message. This example uses SSML to customize and control
// certain aspects of the message, such as the volume or the speech rate.
// The message can't contain any line breaks.
var ssmlMessage =
  "<speak>" +
  "This is a test message sent from <emphasis>Amazon Pinpoint</emphasis> " +
  "using the <break strength='weak'/>AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js. " +
  "<amazon:effect phonation='soft'>Thank you for listening." +
  "</amazon:effect>" +
  "</speak>";

// The phone number that you want to appear on the recipient's device. The phone
// number that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
 account.
var callerId = "+12065550199";

// The configuration set that you want to use to send the message.
var configurationSet = "ConfigSet";

// Specify that you're using a shared credentials file, and optionally specify
// the profile that you want to use.
var credentials = new AWS.SharedIniFileCredentials({ profile: "default" });
AWS.config.credentials = credentials;

// Specify the region.
AWS.config.update({ region: aws_region });

//Create a new Pinpoint object.
var pinpointsmsvoice = new AWS.PinpointSMSVoice();

var params = {
  CallerId: callerId,
  ConfigurationSetName: configurationSet,
  Content: {
    SSMLMessage: {
      LanguageCode: languageCode,
```

```
      Text: ssmlMessage,
      VoiceId: voiceId,
    },
  },
  DestinationPhoneNumber: destinationNumber,
  OriginationPhoneNumber: originationNumber,
};

//Try to send the message.
pinpointsmsvoice.sendVoiceMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  // If something goes wrong, print an error message.
  if (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
    // Otherwise, show the unique ID for the message.
  } else {
    console.log("Message sent! Message ID: " + data["MessageId"]);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see SendVoiceMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_voice_message(
```

```
    sms_voice_client,
    origination_number,
    caller_id,
    destination_number,
    language_code,
    voice_id,
    ssml_message,
):
    """
    Sends a voice message using speech synthesis provided by Amazon Polly.

    :param sms_voice_client: A Boto3 PinpointSMSVoice client.
    :param origination_number: The phone number that the message is sent from.
                               The phone number must be associated with your
 Amazon
                               Pinpoint account and be in E.164 format.
    :param caller_id: The phone number that you want to appear on the recipient's
                      device. The phone number must be associated with your
 Amazon
                      Pinpoint account and be in E.164 format.
    :param destination_number: The recipient's phone number. Specify the phone
                               number in E.164 format.
    :param language_code: The language to use when sending the message.
    :param voice_id: The Amazon Polly voice that you want to use to send the
 message.
    :param ssml_message: The content of the message. This example uses SSML to
 control
                         certain aspects of the message, such as the volume and
 the
                         speech rate. The message must not contain line breaks.
    :return: The ID of the message.
    """
    try:
        response = sms_voice_client.send_voice_message(
            DestinationPhoneNumber=destination_number,
            OriginationPhoneNumber=origination_number,
            CallerId=caller_id,
            Content={
                "SSMLMessage": {
                    "LanguageCode": language_code,
                    "VoiceId": voice_id,
                    "Text": ssml_message,
                }
            },
```

```
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't send message from %s to %s.",
            origination_number,
            destination_number,
        )
        raise
    else:
        return response["MessageId"]


def main():
    origination_number = "+12065550110"
    caller_id = "+12065550199"
    destination_number = "+12065550142"
    language_code = "en-US"
    voice_id = "Matthew"
    ssml_message = (
        "<speak>"
        "This is a test message sent from <emphasis>Amazon Pinpoint</emphasis> "
        "using the <break strength='weak'/>AWS SDK for Python (Boto3). "
        "<amazon:effect phonation='soft'>Thank you for listening."
        "</amazon:effect>"
        "</speak>"
    )
    print(f"Sending voice message from {origination_number} to
 {destination_number}.")
    message_id = send_voice_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint-sms-voice"),
        origination_number,
        caller_id,
        destination_number,
        language_code,
        voice_id,
        ssml_message,
    )
    print(f"Message sent!\nMessage ID: {message_id}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see SendVoiceMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Polly with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Polly Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Polly.
- **Amazon Polly API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Polly actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs
    - Use DeleteLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeVoices with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetSpeechSynthesisTask with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListLexicons with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PutLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartSpeechSynthesisTask with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SynthesizeSpeech with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs
  - Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK

- Create a lip-sync application with Amazon Polly using an AWS SDK
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

Basic examples for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Polly with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs
  - Use DeleteLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeVoices with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetSpeechSynthesisTask with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListLexicons with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use PutLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartSpeechSynthesisTask with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SynthesizeSpeech with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Polly actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Polly API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Polly API Reference.

Examples

- Use DeleteLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeVoices with an AWS SDK
- Use GetLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetSpeechSynthesisTask with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListLexicons with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutLexicon with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartSpeechSynthesisTask with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SynthesizeSpeech with an AWS SDK

Use `DeleteLexicon` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteLexicon`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Deletes an existing Amazon Polly lexicon using the AWS SDK for .NET.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteLexicon
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

        var success = await DeletePollyLexiconAsync(client, lexiconName);

        if (success)
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {lexiconName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {lexiconName}.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the named Amazon Polly lexicon.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Polly client object.</
param>
        /// <param name="lexiconName">The name of the Amazon Polly lexicon to
        /// delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeletePollyLexiconAsync(
            AmazonPollyClient client,
            string lexiconName)
        {
            var deleteLexiconRequest = new DeleteLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteLexiconAsync(deleteLexiconRequest);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a lexicon

The following `delete-lexicon` example deletes the specified lexicon.

```
aws polly delete-lexicon \
    --name w3c
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using the DeleteLexicon operation in the *Amazon Polly Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteLexicon in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `DescribeVoices` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVoices`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

public class DescribeVoices
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

        var allVoicesRequest = new DescribeVoicesRequest();
        var enUsVoicesRequest = new DescribeVoicesRequest()
        {
            LanguageCode = "en-US",
        };

        try
```

```
            {
                string nextToken;
                do
                {
                    var allVoicesResponse = await
client.DescribeVoicesAsync(allVoicesRequest);
                    nextToken = allVoicesResponse.NextToken;
                    allVoicesRequest.NextToken = nextToken;

                    Console.WriteLine("\nAll voices: ");
                    allVoicesResponse.Voices.ForEach(voice =>
                    {
                        DisplayVoiceInfo(voice);
                    });
                }
                while (nextToken is not null);

                do
                {
                    var enUsVoicesResponse = await
client.DescribeVoicesAsync(enUsVoicesRequest);
                    nextToken = enUsVoicesResponse.NextToken;
                    enUsVoicesRequest.NextToken = nextToken;

                    Console.WriteLine("\nen-US voices: ");
                    enUsVoicesResponse.Voices.ForEach(voice =>
                    {
                        DisplayVoiceInfo(voice);
                    });
                }
                while (nextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Exception caught: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }

        public static void DisplayVoiceInfo(Voice voice)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($" Name: {voice.Name}\tGender:
{voice.Gender}\tLanguageName: {voice.LanguageName}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.PollyClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.PollyException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.Voice;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeVoicesSample {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        PollyClient polly = PollyClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        describeVoice(polly);
        polly.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void describeVoice(PollyClient polly) {
        try {
            DescribeVoicesRequest voicesRequest = DescribeVoicesRequest.builder()
                    .languageCode("en-US")
                    .build();

            DescribeVoicesResponse enUsVoicesResult =
 polly.describeVoices(voicesRequest);
            List<Voice> voices = enUsVoicesResult.voices();
            for (Voice myVoice : voices) {
                System.out.println("The ID of the voice is " + myVoice.id());
                System.out.println("The gender of the voice is " +
 myVoice.gender());
            }

        } catch (PollyException e) {
            System.err.println("Exception caught: " + e);
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
```

```
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def describe_voices(self):
        """
        Gets metadata about available voices.

        :return: The list of voice metadata.
        """
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.describe_voices()
            self.voice_metadata = response["Voices"]
            logger.info("Got metadata about %s voices.",
len(self.voice_metadata))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get voice metadata.")
            raise
        else:
            return self.voice_metadata
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-polly' # In v2: require 'aws-sdk'
```

```
begin
  # Create an Amazon Polly client using
  # credentials from the shared credentials file ~/.aws/credentials
  # and the configuration (region) from the shared configuration file ~/.aws/
config
  polly = Aws::Polly::Client.new

  # Get US English voices
  resp = polly.describe_voices(language_code: 'en-US')

  resp.voices.each do |v|
    puts v.name
    puts "  #{v.gender}"
    puts
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Could not get voices'
  puts 'Error message:'
  puts e.message
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_voices(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_voices().send().await?;

    println!("Voices:");

    let voices = resp.voices();
    for voice in voices {
        println!("  Name:     {}", voice.name().unwrap_or("No name!"));
```

```
        println!(
            "  Language: {}",
            voice.language_name().unwrap_or("No language!")
        );

        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} voices", voices.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetLexicon` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetLexicon`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves information about a specific Amazon Polly lexicon.
    /// </summary>
    public class GetLexicon
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
```

```
            string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

            await GetPollyLexiconAsync(client, lexiconName);
        }

        public static async Task GetPollyLexiconAsync(AmazonPollyClient client,
 string lexiconName)
        {
            var getLexiconRequest = new GetLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await client.GetLexiconAsync(getLexiconRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Lexicon:\n Name: {response.Lexicon.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Content: {response.Lexicon.Content}");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Error: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the content of a lexicon

The following `get-lexicon` example retrieves the content of the specified pronunciation lexicon.

```
aws polly get-lexicon \
```

```
    --name w3c
```

Output:

```
{
    "Lexicon": {
        "Content": "<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\"?>\n<lexicon version=
\"1.0\" \n      xmlns=    \"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon
\"\n      xmlns:xsi=\"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance\" \n
 xsi:schemaLocation=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon \n
 http://www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-    lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd\"\n
   alphabet=\"ipa\" \n      xml:lang=\"en-US\">\n  <lexeme>\n    <grapheme>W3C</
grapheme>\n        <alias>World Wide Web Consortium</alias>\n  </lexeme>\n</
lexicon>\n",
        "Name": "w3c"
    },
    "LexiconAttributes": {
        "Alphabet": "ipa",
        "LanguageCode": "en-US",
        "LastModified": 1603908910.99,
        "LexiconArn": "arn:aws:polly:us-west-2:880185128111:lexicon/w3c",
        "LexemesCount": 1,
        "Size": 492
    }
}
```

For more information, see Using the GetLexicon operation in the *Amazon Polly Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetLexicon in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def get_lexicon(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata and contents of an existing lexicon.

        :param name: The name of the lexicon to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved lexicon.
        """
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.get_lexicon(Name=name)
            logger.info("Got lexicon %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get lexicon %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetLexicon in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetSpeechSynthesisTask` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSpeechSynthesisTask`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a speech synthesis task

The following `get-speech-synthesis-task` example retrieves information about the specified speech synthesis task.

```
aws polly get-speech-synthesis-task \
    --task-id 70b61c0f-57ce-4715-a247-cae8729dcce9
```

Output:

```
{
    "SynthesisTask": {
        "TaskId": "70b61c0f-57ce-4715-a247-cae8729dcce9",
        "TaskStatus": "completed",
        "OutputUri": "https://s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-
bucket/70b61c0f-57ce-4715-a247-cae8729dcce9.mp3",
        "CreationTime": 1603911042.689,
        "RequestCharacters": 1311,
        "OutputFormat": "mp3",
        "TextType": "text",
        "VoiceId": "Joanna"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating long audio files in the *Amazon Polly Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetSpeechSynthesisTask in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
```

```
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def get_speech_synthesis_task(self, task_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about an asynchronous speech synthesis task, such as its
status.

        :param task_id: The ID of the task to retrieve.
        :return: Metadata about the task.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.polly_client.get_speech_synthesis_task(TaskId=task_id)
            task = response["SynthesisTask"]
            logger.info("Got synthesis task. Status is %s.", task["TaskStatus"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get synthesis task %s.", task_id)
            raise
        else:
            return task
```

- For API details, see GetSpeechSynthesisTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListLexicons` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListLexicons`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Lists the Amazon Polly lexicons that have been defined. By default,
/// lists the lexicons that are defined in the same AWS Region as the default
/// user. To view Amazon Polly lexicons that are defined in a different AWS
/// Region, supply it as a parameter to the Amazon Polly constructor.
/// </summary>
public class ListLexicons
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
        var request = new ListLexiconsRequest();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("All voices: ");

            do
            {
                var response = await client.ListLexiconsAsync(request);
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

                response.Lexicons.ForEach(lexicon =>
                {
                    var attributes = lexicon.Attributes;
                    Console.WriteLine($"Name: {lexicon.Name}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"\tAlphabet: {attributes.Alphabet}");
```

```
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLanguageCode:
 {attributes.LanguageCode}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLastModified:
 {attributes.LastModified}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLexemesCount:
 {attributes.LexemesCount}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLexiconArn:
 {attributes.LexiconArn}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tSize: {attributes.Size}");
                    });
                }
                while (request.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your lexicons

The following `list-lexicons` example lists your pronunciation lexicons.

```
aws polly list-lexicons
```

Output:

```
{
    "Lexicons": [
        {
            "Name": "w3c",
            "Attributes": {
                "Alphabet": "ipa",
                "LanguageCode": "en-US",
```

```
                "LastModified": 1603908910.99,
                "LexiconArn": "arn:aws:polly:us-east-2:123456789012:lexicon/w3c",
                "LexemesCount": 1,
                "Size": 492
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Using the ListLexicons operation in the *Amazon Polly Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.PollyClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.ListLexiconsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.ListLexiconsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.LexiconDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.PollyException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListLexicons {
```

```
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        PollyClient polly = PollyClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        listLexicons(polly);
        polly.close();
    }

    public static void listLexicons(PollyClient client) {
        try {
            ListLexiconsRequest listLexiconsRequest =
 ListLexiconsRequest.builder()
                    .build();

            ListLexiconsResponse listLexiconsResult =
 client.listLexicons(listLexiconsRequest);
            List<LexiconDescription> lexiconDescription =
 listLexiconsResult.lexicons();
            for (LexiconDescription lexDescription : lexiconDescription) {
                System.out.println("The name of the Lexicon is " +
 lexDescription.name());
            }

        } catch (PollyException e) {
            System.err.println("Exception caught: " + e);
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def list_lexicons(self):
        """
        Lists lexicons in the current account.

        :return: The list of lexicons.
        """
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.list_lexicons()
            lexicons = response["Lexicons"]
            logger.info("Got %s lexicons.", len(lexicons))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get  %s.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return lexicons
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-polly' # In v2: require 'aws-sdk'

begin
  # Create an Amazon Polly client using
  # credentials from the shared credentials file ~/.aws/credentials
  # and the configuration (region) from the shared configuration file ~/.aws/
config
  polly = Aws::Polly::Client.new

  resp = polly.list_lexicons

  resp.lexicons.each do |l|
    puts l.name
    puts "  Alphabet:#{l.attributes.alphabet}"
    puts "  Language:#{l.attributes.language}"
    puts
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Could not get lexicons'
  puts 'Error message:'
  puts e.message
end
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_lexicons(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_lexicons().send().await?;

    println!("Lexicons:");

    let lexicons = resp.lexicons();

    for lexicon in lexicons {
        println!("  Name:     {}", lexicon.name().unwrap_or_default());
        println!(
            "  Language: {:?}\n",
            lexicon
                .attributes()
                .as_ref()
                .map(|attrib| attrib
                    .language_code
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("languages must have language codes"))
                .expect("languages must have attributes")
        );
    }

    println!();
    println!("Found {} lexicons.", lexicons.len());
    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `PutLexicon` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutLexicon`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Amazon Polly lexicon using the AWS SDK for .NET.
    /// </summary>
    public class PutLexicon
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string lexiconContent = "<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\"?>"
 +
                "<lexicon version=\"1.0\" xmlns=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/
pronunciation-lexicon\" xmlns:xsi=\"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance\" "
 +
                "xsi:schemaLocation=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-
lexicon http://www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd\" " +
                "alphabet=\"ipa\" xml:lang=\"en-US\">" +
                "<lexeme><grapheme>test1</grapheme><alias>test2</alias></lexeme>"
 +
                "</lexicon>";
            string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            var putLexiconRequest = new PutLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
```

```
                Content = lexiconContent,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await client.PutLexiconAsync(putLexiconRequest);
                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created Lexicon:
{lexiconName}.");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Could not create Lexicon:
{lexiconName}.");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Exception caught: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To store a lexicon

The following `put-lexicon` example stores the specified pronunciation lexicon. The `example.pls` file specifies a W3C PLS-compliant lexicon.

```
aws polly put-lexicon \
    --name w3c \
    --content file://example.pls
```

Contents of `example.pls`

```
{
    <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
    <lexicon version="1.0"
        xmlns="http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon"
        xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
        xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon
            http://www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd"
        alphabet="ipa"
        xml:lang="en-US">
        <lexeme>
            <grapheme>W3C</grapheme>
            <alias>World Wide Web Consortium</alias>
        </lexeme>
    </lexicon>
}
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Using the PutLexicon operation in the *Amazon Polly Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
```

```
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def create_lexicon(self, name, content):
        """
        Creates a lexicon with the specified content. A lexicon contains custom
        pronunciations.

        :param name: The name of the lexicon.
        :param content: The content of the lexicon.
        """
        try:
            self.polly_client.put_lexicon(Name=name, Content=content)
            logger.info("Created lexicon %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create lexicon %s.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_lexicon(client: &Client, name: &str, from: &str, to: &str) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    let content = format!("<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\"?>
    <lexicon version=\"1.0\" xmlns=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-
lexicon\" xmlns:xsi=\"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance\"
    xsi:schemaLocation=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon http://
www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd\"
```

```
    alphabet=\"ipa\" xml:lang=\"en-US\">
    <lexeme><grapheme>{}</grapheme><alias>{}</alias></lexeme>
    </lexicon>", from, to);

    client
        .put_lexicon()
        .name(name)
        .content(content)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Added lexicon");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `StartSpeechSynthesisTask` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartSpeechSynthesisTask`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To synthesize text

The following `start-speech-synthesis-task` example synthesizes the text in `text_file.txt` and stores the resulting MP3 file in the specified bucket.

```
aws polly start-speech-synthesis-task \
    --output-format mp3 \
    --output-s3-bucket-name amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --text  file://text_file.txt \
    --voice-id Joanna
```

Output:

```
{
    "SynthesisTask": {
```

```
        "TaskId": "70b61c0f-57ce-4715-a247-cae8729dcce9",
        "TaskStatus": "scheduled",
        "OutputUri": "https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-
bucket/70b61c0f-57ce-4715-a247-cae8729dcce9.mp3",
        "CreationTime": 1603911042.689,
        "RequestCharacters": 1311,
        "OutputFormat": "mp3",
        "TextType": "text",
        "VoiceId": "Joanna"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating long audio files in the *Amazon Polly Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartSpeechSynthesisTask in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def do_synthesis_task(
        self,
```

```
        text,
        engine,
        voice,
        audio_format,
        s3_bucket,
        lang_code=None,
        include_visemes=False,
        wait_callback=None,
    ):
        """
        Start an asynchronous task to synthesize speech or speech marks, wait for
        the task to complete, retrieve the output from Amazon S3, and return the
        data.

        An asynchronous task is required when the text is too long for near-real
time
        synthesis.

        :param text: The text to synthesize.
        :param engine: The kind of engine used. Can be standard or neural.
        :param voice: The ID of the voice to use.
        :param audio_format: The audio format to return for synthesized speech.
When
                             speech marks are synthesized, the output format is
JSON.
        :param s3_bucket: The name of an existing Amazon S3 bucket that you have
                          write access to. Synthesis output is written to this
bucket.
        :param lang_code: The language code of the voice to use. This has an
effect
                          only when a bilingual voice is selected.
        :param include_visemes: When True, a second request is made to Amazon
Polly
                                to synthesize a list of visemes, using the
specified
                                text and voice. A viseme represents the visual
position
                                of the face and mouth when saying part of a word.
        :param wait_callback: A callback function that is called periodically
during
                              task processing, to give the caller an opportunity
to
                              take action, such as to display status.
        :return: The audio stream that contains the synthesized speech and a list
```

```
                 of visemes that are associated with the speech audio.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "Engine": engine,
                "OutputFormat": audio_format,
                "OutputS3BucketName": s3_bucket,
                "Text": text,
                "VoiceId": voice,
            }
            if lang_code is not None:
                kwargs["LanguageCode"] = lang_code
            response = self.polly_client.start_speech_synthesis_task(**kwargs)
            speech_task = response["SynthesisTask"]
            logger.info("Started speech synthesis task %s.",
speech_task["TaskId"])

            viseme_task = None
            if include_visemes:
                kwargs["OutputFormat"] = "json"
                kwargs["SpeechMarkTypes"] = ["viseme"]
                response =
self.polly_client.start_speech_synthesis_task(**kwargs)
                viseme_task = response["SynthesisTask"]
                logger.info("Started viseme synthesis task %s.",
viseme_task["TaskId"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start synthesis task.")
            raise
        else:
            bucket = self.s3_resource.Bucket(s3_bucket)
            audio_stream = self._wait_for_task(
                10, speech_task["TaskId"], "speech", wait_callback, bucket
            )

            visemes = None
            if include_visemes:
                viseme_data = self._wait_for_task(
                    10, viseme_task["TaskId"], "viseme", wait_callback, bucket
                )
                visemes = [
                    json.loads(v) for v in viseme_data.read().decode().split() if
v
                ]
```

```
            return audio_stream, visemes
```

- For API details, see StartSpeechSynthesisTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SynthesizeSpeech` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `SynthesizeSpeech`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    public class SynthesizeSpeech
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string outputFileName = "speech.mp3";
            string text = "Twas brillig, and the slithy toves did gyre and gimbol
in the wabe";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            var response = await PollySynthesizeSpeech(client, text);

            WriteSpeechToStream(response.AudioStream, outputFileName);
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Calls the Amazon Polly SynthesizeSpeechAsync method to convert text
        /// to speech.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon Polly client object used to connect
        /// to the Amazon Polly service.</param>
        /// <param name="text">The text to convert to speech.</param>
        /// <returns>A SynthesizeSpeechResponse object that includes an
AudioStream
        /// object with the converted text.</returns>
        private static async Task<SynthesizeSpeechResponse>
PollySynthesizeSpeech(IAmazonPolly client, string text)
        {
            var synthesizeSpeechRequest = new SynthesizeSpeechRequest()
            {
                OutputFormat = OutputFormat.Mp3,
                VoiceId = VoiceId.Joanna,
                Text = text,
            };

            var synthesizeSpeechResponse =
                await client.SynthesizeSpeechAsync(synthesizeSpeechRequest);

            return synthesizeSpeechResponse;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Writes the AudioStream returned from the call to
        /// SynthesizeSpeechAsync to a file in MP3 format.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="audioStream">The AudioStream returned from the
        /// call to the SynthesizeSpeechAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="outputFileName">The full path to the file in which to
        /// save the audio stream.</param>
        private static void WriteSpeechToStream(Stream audioStream, string
outputFileName)
        {
            var outputStream = new FileStream(
                outputFileName,
                FileMode.Create,
                FileAccess.Write);
            byte[] buffer = new byte[2 * 1024];
            int readBytes;
```

```
            while ((readBytes = audioStream.Read(buffer, 0, 2 * 1024)) > 0)
            {
                outputStream.Write(buffer, 0, readBytes);
            }

            // Flushes the buffer to avoid losing the last second or so of
            // the synthesized text.
            outputStream.Flush();
            Console.WriteLine($"Saved {outputFileName} to disk.");
        }
    }
```

Synthesize speech from text using speech marks with Amazon Polly using an AWS SDK.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    public class SynthesizeSpeechMarks
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            string outputFileName = "speechMarks.json";

            var synthesizeSpeechRequest = new SynthesizeSpeechRequest()
            {
                OutputFormat = OutputFormat.Json,
                SpeechMarkTypes = new List<string>
                {
                    SpeechMarkType.Viseme,
                    SpeechMarkType.Word,
                },
                VoiceId = VoiceId.Joanna,
                Text = "This is a sample text to be synthesized.",
            };
```

```
            try
            {
                using (var outputStream = new FileStream(outputFileName,
 FileMode.Create, FileAccess.Write))
                {
                    var synthesizeSpeechResponse = await
 client.SynthesizeSpeechAsync(synthesizeSpeechRequest);
                    var buffer = new byte[2 * 1024];
                    int readBytes;

                    var inputStream = synthesizeSpeechResponse.AudioStream;
                    while ((readBytes = inputStream.Read(buffer, 0, 2 * 1024)) >
 0)
                    {
                        outputStream.Write(buffer, 0, readBytes);
                    }
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import javazoom.jl.decoder.JavaLayerException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseInputStream;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.PollyClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.Voice;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.OutputFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.PollyException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.SynthesizeSpeechRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.SynthesizeSpeechResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import javazoom.jl.player.advanced.AdvancedPlayer;
import javazoom.jl.player.advanced.PlaybackEvent;
import javazoom.jl.player.advanced.PlaybackListener;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PollyDemo {
    private static final String SAMPLE = "Congratulations. You have successfully
 built this working demo " +
            " of Amazon Polly in Java Version 2. Have fun building voice enabled
 apps with Amazon Polly (that's me!), and always "
            +
            " look at the AWS website for tips and tricks on using Amazon Polly
 and other great services from AWS";

    public static void main(String args[]) {
        PollyClient polly = PollyClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        talkPolly(polly);
        polly.close();
    }

    public static void talkPolly(PollyClient polly) {
        try {
```

```
            DescribeVoicesRequest describeVoiceRequest =
DescribeVoicesRequest.builder()
                    .engine("standard")
                    .build();

            DescribeVoicesResponse describeVoicesResult =
polly.describeVoices(describeVoiceRequest);
            Voice voice = describeVoicesResult.voices().stream()
                    .filter(v -> v.name().equals("Joanna"))
                    .findFirst()
                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Voice not found"));
            InputStream stream = synthesize(polly, SAMPLE, voice,
OutputFormat.MP3);
            AdvancedPlayer player = new AdvancedPlayer(stream,

javazoom.jl.player.FactoryRegistry.systemRegistry().createAudioDevice());
            player.setPlayBackListener(new PlaybackListener() {
                public void playbackStarted(PlaybackEvent evt) {
                    System.out.println("Playback started");
                    System.out.println(SAMPLE);
                }

                public void playbackFinished(PlaybackEvent evt) {
                    System.out.println("Playback finished");
                }
            });

            // play it!
            player.play();

        } catch (PollyException | JavaLayerException | IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static InputStream synthesize(PollyClient polly, String text, Voice
voice, OutputFormat format)
            throws IOException {
        SynthesizeSpeechRequest synthReq = SynthesizeSpeechRequest.builder()
                .text(text)
                .voiceId(voice.id())
                .outputFormat(format)
                .build();
```

```
        ResponseInputStream<SynthesizeSpeechResponse> synthRes =
 polly.synthesizeSpeech(synthReq);
        return synthRes;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def synthesize(
        self, text, engine, voice, audio_format, lang_code=None,
 include_visemes=False
    ):
        """
        Synthesizes speech or speech marks from text, using the specified voice.

        :param text: The text to synthesize.
```

```
        :param engine: The kind of engine used. Can be standard or neural.
        :param voice: The ID of the voice to use.
        :param audio_format: The audio format to return for synthesized speech.
When
                             speech marks are synthesized, the output format is
JSON.
        :param lang_code: The language code of the voice to use. This has an
effect
                          only when a bilingual voice is selected.
        :param include_visemes: When True, a second request is made to Amazon
Polly
                                to synthesize a list of visemes, using the
specified
                                text and voice. A viseme represents the visual
position
                                of the face and mouth when saying part of a word.
        :return: The audio stream that contains the synthesized speech and a list
                 of visemes that are associated with the speech audio.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "Engine": engine,
                "OutputFormat": audio_format,
                "Text": text,
                "VoiceId": voice,
            }
            if lang_code is not None:
                kwargs["LanguageCode"] = lang_code
            response = self.polly_client.synthesize_speech(**kwargs)
            audio_stream = response["AudioStream"]
            logger.info("Got audio stream spoken by %s.", voice)
            visemes = None
            if include_visemes:
                kwargs["OutputFormat"] = "json"
                kwargs["SpeechMarkTypes"] = ["viseme"]
                response = self.polly_client.synthesize_speech(**kwargs)
                visemes = [
                    json.loads(v)
                    for v in response["AudioStream"].read().decode().split()
                    if v
                ]
                logger.info("Got %s visemes.", len(visemes))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get audio stream.")
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return audio_stream, visemes
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-polly' # In v2: require 'aws-sdk'

begin
  # Get the filename from the command line
  if ARGV.empty?
    puts 'You must supply a filename'
    exit 1
  end

  filename = ARGV[0]

  # Open file and get the contents as a string
  if File.exist?(filename)
    contents = IO.read(filename)
  else
    puts "No such file: #{filename}"
    exit 1
  end

  # Create an Amazon Polly client using
  # credentials from the shared credentials file ~/.aws/credentials
  # and the configuration (region) from the shared configuration file ~/.aws/
config
```

```
  polly = Aws::Polly::Client.new

  resp = polly.synthesize_speech({
                                  output_format: 'mp3',
                                  text: contents,
                                  voice_id: 'Joanna'
                                })

  # Save output
  # Get just the file name
  #  abc/xyz.txt -> xyx.txt
  name = File.basename(filename)

  # Split up name so we get just the xyz part
  parts = name.split('.')
  first_part = parts[0]
  mp3_file = "#{first_part}.mp3"

  IO.copy_stream(resp.audio_stream, mp3_file)

  puts "Wrote MP3 content to: #{mp3_file}"
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Got error:'
  puts 'Error message:'
  puts e.message
end
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn synthesize(client: &Client, filename: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let content = fs::read_to_string(filename);
```

```
    let resp = client
        .synthesize_speech()
        .output_format(OutputFormat::Mp3)
        .text(content.unwrap())
        .voice_id(VoiceId::Joanna)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Get MP3 data from response and save it
    let mut blob = resp
        .audio_stream
        .collect()
        .await
        .expect("failed to read data");

    let parts: Vec<&str> = filename.split('.').collect();
    let out_file = format!("{}{}", String::from(parts[0]), ".mp3");

    let mut file = tokio::fs::File::create(out_file)
        .await
        .expect("failed to create file");

    file.write_all_buf(&mut blob)
        .await
        .expect("failed to write to file");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Polly using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Polly with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Polly or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK
- Create a lip-sync application with Amazon Polly using an AWS SDK
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file.
- Upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Transcribe to convert the audio file to text.
- Display the text.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file, upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Transcribe to convert that audio file to text, and display the text.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Transcribe

Create a lip-sync application with Amazon Polly using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create a lip-sync application with Amazon Polly.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use Amazon Polly and Tkinter to create a lip-sync application that displays an animated face speaking along with the speech synthesized by Amazon Polly. Lip-sync is accomplished by requesting a list of visemes from Amazon Polly that match up with the synthesized speech.

- Get voice metadata from Amazon Polly and display it in a Tkinter application.
- Get synthesized speech audio and matching viseme speech marks from Amazon Polly.
- Play the audio with synchronized mouth movements in an animated face.
- Submit asynchronous synthesis tasks for long texts and retrieve the output from an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly

Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

The following code examples show how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

.NET

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.

- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract

- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
```

```
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
```

```
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
```

```
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Code examples for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Price List with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS Price List User Guide** – More information about AWS Price List.
- **AWS Price List API Reference** – Details about all available AWS Price List actions.

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs
    - Use DescribeServices with a CLI
    - Use GetAttributeValues with a CLI
    - Use GetProducts with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Price List with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs
  - Use DescribeServices with a CLI
  - Use GetAttributeValues with a CLI
  - Use GetProducts with a CLI

Actions for AWS Price List using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS Price List actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Price List API Reference.

Examples

- Use DescribeServices with a CLI
- Use GetAttributeValues with a CLI
- Use GetProducts with a CLI

Use `DescribeServices` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeServices`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve service metadata

This example retrieves the metadata for the Amazon EC2 service code.

Command:

```
aws pricing describe-services --service-code AmazonEC2 --format-version aws_v1 --
max-items 1
```

Output:

```
{
  "Services": [
      {
          "ServiceCode": "AmazonEC2",
          "AttributeNames": [
              "volumeType",
              "maxIopsvolume",
              "instance",
              "instanceCapacity10xlarge",
              "locationType",
              "instanceFamily",
              "operatingSystem",
              "clockSpeed",
              "LeaseContractLength",
              "ecu",
              "networkPerformance",
              "instanceCapacity8xlarge",
              "group",
              "maxThroughputvolume",
              "gpuMemory",
              "ebsOptimized",
              "elasticGpuType",
              "maxVolumeSize",
              "gpu",
              "processorFeatures",
```

```
                "intelAvxAvailable",
                "instanceCapacity4xlarge",
                "servicecode",
                "groupDescription",
                "processorArchitecture",
                "physicalCores",
                "productFamily",
                "enhancedNetworkingSupported",
                "intelTurboAvailable",
                "memory",
                "dedicatedEbsThroughput",
                "vcpu",
                "OfferingClass",
                "instanceCapacityLarge",
                "capacitystatus",
                "termType",
                "storage",
                "intelAvx2Available",
                "storageMedia",
                "physicalProcessor",
                "provisioned",
                "servicename",
                "PurchaseOption",
                "instanceCapacity18xlarge",
                "instanceType",
                "tenancy",
                "usagetype",
                "normalizationSizeFactor",
                "instanceCapacity2xlarge",
                "instanceCapacity16xlarge",
                "maxIopsBurstPerformance",
                "instanceCapacity12xlarge",
                "instanceCapacity32xlarge",
                "instanceCapacityXlarge",
                "licenseModel",
                "currentGeneration",
                "preInstalledSw",
                "location",
                "instanceCapacity24xlarge",
                "instanceCapacity9xlarge",
                "instanceCapacityMedium",
                "operation"
            ]
        }
```

```
  ],
  "FormatVersion": "aws_v1"
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the metadata for all available service codes in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSService -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
AttributeNames                                                  ServiceCode
--------------                                                  -----------
{productFamily, servicecode, groupDescription, termType...}     AWSBudgets
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCloudTrail
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCodeCommit
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCodeDeploy
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCodePipeline
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSConfig
...
```

Example 2: Returns the metadata for the Amazon EC2 service in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSService -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
AttributeNames
 ServiceCode
--------------
 -----------
{volumeType, maxIopsvolume, instanceCapacity10xlarge, locationType...} AmazonEC2
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the metadata for all available service codes in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSService -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
AttributeNames                                                  ServiceCode
--------------                                                  -----------
{productFamily, servicecode, groupDescription, termType...}     AWSBudgets
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCloudTrail
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCodeCommit
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCodeDeploy
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSCodePipeline
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}            AWSConfig
...
```

Example 2: Returns the metadata for the Amazon EC2 service in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSService -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
AttributeNames
 ServiceCode
--------------
 -----------
{volumeType, maxIopsvolume, instanceCapacity10xlarge, locationType...} AmazonEC2
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetAttributeValues` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAttributeValues`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of attribute values

The following `get-attribute-values` example retrieves a list of values available for the given attribute.

```
aws pricing get-attribute-values \
    --service-code AmazonEC2 \
    --attribute-name volumeType \
    --max-items 2
```

Output:

```
{
    "NextToken":
 "eyJOZXh0VG9rZW4iOiBudWxsLCAiYm90b190cnVuY2F0ZV9hbW91bnQiOiAyfQ==",
    "AttributeValues": [
        {
            "Value": "Cold HDD"
        },
        {
            "Value": "General Purpose"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetAttributeValues in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the values for the attribute 'volumeType' for Amazon EC2 in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSAttributeValue -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -AttributeName "volumeType" -region
 us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Cold HDD
General Purpose
```

```
Magnetic
Provisioned IOPS
Throughput Optimized HDD
```

- For API details, see GetAttributeValues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the values for the attribute 'volumeType' for Amazon EC2 in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSAttributeValue -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -AttributeName "volumeType" -region
 us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Cold HDD
General Purpose
Magnetic
Provisioned IOPS
Throughput Optimized HDD
```

- For API details, see GetAttributeValues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetProducts` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetProducts`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of products

This example retrieves a list of products that match the given criteria.

Command:

```
aws pricing get-products --filters file://filters.json --format-version aws_v1 --
max-results 1 --service-code AmazonEC2
```

filters.json:

```
        [
  {
    "Type": "TERM_MATCH",
    "Field": "ServiceCode",
    "Value": "AmazonEC2"
  },
  {
    "Type": "TERM_MATCH",
    "Field": "volumeType",
    "Value": "Provisioned IOPS"
  }
]
```

Output:


```
{
  "FormatVersion": "aws_v1",
  "NextToken": "WGDY7ko8fQXdlaUZVdasFQ==:RVSagyIFn770XQOzdUIcO9BY6ucBG9itXAZGZF/
zioUzOsUKh6PCcPWaOyPZRiMePb986TeoKYB9l55fw/
CyoMq5ymnGmT1Vj39TljbbAlhcqnVfTmPIilx8Uy5bdDaBYy/e/2Ofw9Edzsykbs8LTBuNbiDQ
+BBds5yeI9AQkUepruKk3aEahFPxJ55kx/zk",
  "PriceList": [
      "{\"product\":{\"productFamily\":\"Storage\",\"attributes\":{\"storageMedia
\":\"SSD-backed\",\"maxThroughputvolume\":\"320 MB/sec\",\"volumeType
\":\"Provisioned IOPS\",\"maxIopsvolume\":\"20000\",\"servicecode\":
\"AmazonEC2\",\"usagetype\":\"APS1-EBS:VolumeUsage.piops\",\"locationType
\":\"AWS Region\",\"location\":\"Asia Pacific (Singapore)\",\"servicename
\":\"Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud\",\"maxVolumeSize\":\"16 TiB\",\"operation
\":\"\"},\"sku\":\"3MKHN58N7RDDVGKJ\"},\"serviceCode\":\"AmazonEC2\",\"terms
\":{\"OnDemand\":{\"3MKHN58N7RDDVGKJ.JRTCKXETXF\":{\"priceDimensions\":
{\"3MKHN58N7RDDVGKJ.JRTCKXETXF.6YS6EN2CT7\":{\"unit\":\"GB-Mo\",\"endRange\":
\"Inf\",\"description\":\"$0.138 per GB-month of Provisioned IOPS SSD (io1)
 provisioned storage - Asia Pacific (Singapore)\",\"appliesTo\":[],\"rateCode\":
\"3MKHN58N7RDDVGKJ.JRTCKXETXF.6YS6EN2CT7\",\"beginRange\":\"0\",\"pricePerUnit
\":{\"USD\":\"0.1380000000\"}}},\"sku\":\"3MKHN58N7RDDVGKJ\",\"effectiveDate\":
\"2018-08-01T00:00:00Z\",\"offerTermCode\":\"JRTCKXETXF\",\"termAttributes\":
{}}}},\"version\":\"20180808005701\",\"publicationDate\":\"2018-08-08T00:57:01Z
\"}"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetProducts in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of all products for Amazon EC2.

```
Get-PLSProduct -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{"product":{"productFamily":"Compute Instance","attributes":
{"enhancedNetworkingSupported":"Yes","memory":"30.5
 GiB","dedicatedEbsThroughput":"800 Mbps","vcpu":"4","locationType":"AWS
 Region","storage":"EBS only","instanceFamily":"Memory
 optimized","operatingSystem":"SUSE","physicalProcessor":"Intel Xeon E5-2686 v4
 (Broadwell)","clockSpeed":"2.3 GHz","ecu":"Variable","networkPerformance":"Up
 to 10 Gigabit","servicename":"Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud","instanceType":"r4.xlarge","tenancy":"Shared","usagetype":"USW2-
BoxUsage:r4.xlarge","normalizationSizeFactor":"8","processorFeatures":"Intel AVX,
 Intel AVX2, Intel Turbo","servicecode":"AmazonEC2","licenseModel":"No License
 required","currentGeneration":"Yes","preInstalledSw":"NA","location":"US West
 (Oregon)","processorArchitecture":"64-bit","operation":"RunInstances:000g"},...
```

Example 2: Returns data for Amazon EC2 in the us-east-1 region filtered by volume types of 'General Purpose' that are SSD-backed.

```
Get-PLSProduct -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Filter
 @{Type="TERM_MATCH";Field="volumeType";Value="General
 Purpose"},@{Type="TERM_MATCH";Field="storageMedia";Value="SSD-backed"} -Region
 us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{"product":{"productFamily":"Storage","attributes":{"storageMedia":"SSD-
backed","maxThroughputvolume":"160 MB/sec","volumeType":"General
 Purpose","maxIopsvolume":"10000",...
```

- For API details, see GetProducts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of all products for Amazon EC2.

```
Get-PLSProduct -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{"product":{"productFamily":"Compute Instance","attributes":
{"enhancedNetworkingSupported":"Yes","memory":"30.5
 GiB","dedicatedEbsThroughput":"800 Mbps","vcpu":"4","locationType":"AWS
 Region","storage":"EBS only","instanceFamily":"Memory
 optimized","operatingSystem":"SUSE","physicalProcessor":"Intel Xeon E5-2686 v4
 (Broadwell)","clockSpeed":"2.3 GHz","ecu":"Variable","networkPerformance":"Up
 to 10 Gigabit","servicename":"Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud","instanceType":"r4.xlarge","tenancy":"Shared","usagetype":"USW2-
BoxUsage:r4.xlarge","normalizationSizeFactor":"8","processorFeatures":"Intel AVX,
 Intel AVX2, Intel Turbo","servicecode":"AmazonEC2","licenseModel":"No License
 required","currentGeneration":"Yes","preInstalledSw":"NA","location":"US West
 (Oregon)","processorArchitecture":"64-bit","operation":"RunInstances:000g"},...
```

Example 2: Returns data for Amazon EC2 in the us-east-1 region filtered by volume types of 'General Purpose' that are SSD-backed.

```
Get-PLSProduct -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Filter
 @{Type="TERM_MATCH";Field="volumeType";Value="General
 Purpose"},@{Type="TERM_MATCH";Field="storageMedia";Value="SSD-backed"} -Region
 us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{"product":{"productFamily":"Storage","attributes":{"storageMedia":"SSD-
backed","maxThroughputvolume":"160 MB/sec","volumeType":"General
 Purpose","maxIopsvolume":"10000",...
```

- For API details, see GetProducts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Relational Database Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon RDS User Guide** – More information about Amazon RDS.
- **Amazon RDS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon RDS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;

namespace RDSActions;

public static class HelloRds
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var rdsClient = new AmazonRDSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS! Following are some of your DB
 instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first twenty DB instances.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBInstancesAsync(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxRecords = 20 // Must be between 20 and 100.
            });

        foreach (var instance in response.DBInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDB name: {instance.DBName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {instance.DBInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIdentifier: {instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rds)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_rds")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.
```

```
    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_rds.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_rds.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rds/RDSClient.h>
#include <aws/rds/model/DescribeDBInstancesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Rds" starter application which initializes an Amazon Relational
 Database Service (Amazon RDS) client and
 *  describes the Amazon RDS instances.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_rds'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
```

```
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::RDS::RDSClient rdsClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::String marker;
        std::vector<Aws::String> instanceDBIDs;

        do {
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;

            if (!marker.empty()) {
                request.SetMarker(marker);
            }

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
                    rdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &instance: outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()) {
                    instanceDBIDs.push_back(instance.GetDBInstanceIdentifier());
                }
                marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
            } else {
                result = 1;
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());

        std::cout << instanceDBIDs.size() << " RDS instances found." <<
 std::endl;
        for (auto &instanceDBID: instanceDBIDs) {
            std::cout << "   Instance: " << instanceDBID << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Relational Database
 Service (Amazon RDS)
// client and list up to 20 DB instances in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 rdsClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxInstances = 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v DB instances.\n", maxInstances)
 output, err := rdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{MaxRecords: aws.Int32(maxInstances)})
 if err != nil {
```

```
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list DB instances: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(output.DBInstances) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("No DB instances found.")
 } else {
  for _, instance := range output.DBInstances {
   fmt.Printf("DB instance %v has database %v.\n",
 *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier,
    *instance.DBName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeDBInstances {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeInstances(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
            List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
            for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                System.out.println("Instance ARN is: " +
 instance.dbInstanceArn());
                System.out.println("The Engine is " + instance.engine());
                System.out.println("Connection endpoint is" +
 instance.endpoint().address());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Purpose

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational
 Database Service
(Amazon RDS) to list the databases in your account.
"""

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create an RDS client
rds_client = boto3.client("rds")

# Create a paginator for the describe_db_instances operation
paginator = rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_instances")

try:
    # Use the paginator to get a list of DB instances
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        PaginationConfig={
            "MaxItems": 123,
            "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed
            "StartingToken": None,
        }
    )

    # Iterate through the pages of the response
    instances_found = False
    for page in response_iterator:
        if "DBInstances" in page and page["DBInstances"]:
            instances_found = True
```

```
            print("Your RDS instances are:")
            for db in page["DBInstances"]:
                print(db["DBInstanceIdentifier"])

    if not instances_found:
        print("No RDS instances found!")

except ClientError as e:
    print(f"Couldn't list RDS instances. Here's why: {e.response['Error']
['Message']}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds'
require 'logger'

# RDSManager is a class responsible for managing RDS operations
# such as listing all RDS DB instances in the current AWS account.
class RDSManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all RDS DB instances in the current AWS account.
  def list_db_instances
    @logger.info('Listing RDS DB instances')

    paginator = @client.describe_db_instances
```

```
    instances = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      instances.concat(page.db_instances)
    end

    if instances.empty?
      @logger.info('No instances found.')
    else
      @logger.info("Found #{instances.count} instance(s):")
      instances.each do |instance|
        @logger.info(" * #{instance.db_instance_identifier}
 (#{instance.db_instance_status})")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  rds_client = Aws::RDS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
  manager = RDSManager.new(rds_client)
  manager.list_db_instances
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon RDS
  - Learn the basics of Amazon RDS with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateDBSnapshot with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI

    - Use DescribeAccountAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDBEngineVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDBParameterGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDBParameters with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeDBSnapshots with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GenerateRDSAuthToken with an AWS SDK
    - Use ModifyDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ModifyDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RebootDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs
  - Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker
- Serverless examples for Amazon RDS
  - Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

Basic examples for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Relational Database Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon RDS
- Learn the basics of Amazon RDS with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateDBSnapshot with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAccountAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeDBEngineVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBParameterGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBParameters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBSnapshots with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateRDSAuthToken with an AWS SDK
- Use ModifyDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ModifyDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RebootDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;

namespace RDSActions;

public static class HelloRds
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var rdsClient = new AmazonRDSClient();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS! Following are some of your DB
 instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first twenty DB instances.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBInstancesAsync(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxRecords = 20 // Must be between 20 and 100.
            });

        foreach (var instance in response.DBInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDB name: {instance.DBName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {instance.DBInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIdentifier: {instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rds)
```

```
# Set this project's name.
project("hello_rds")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_rds.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_rds.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rds/RDSClient.h>
#include <aws/rds/model/DescribeDBInstancesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Rds" starter application which initializes an Amazon Relational
 Database Service (Amazon RDS) client and
 *  describes the Amazon RDS instances.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_rds'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::RDS::RDSClient rdsClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::String marker;
        std::vector<Aws::String> instanceDBIDs;

        do {
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;

            if (!marker.empty()) {
                request.SetMarker(marker);
            }

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
                    rdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &instance: outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()) {
```

```
                    instanceDBIDs.push_back(instance.GetDBInstanceIdentifier());
                }
                marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
            } else {
                result = 1;
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());

        std::cout << instanceDBIDs.size() << " RDS instances found." <<
 std::endl;
        for (auto &instanceDBID: instanceDBIDs) {
            std::cout << "   Instance: " << instanceDBID << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Relational Database
 Service (Amazon RDS)
// client and list up to 20 DB instances in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 rdsClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxInstances = 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v DB instances.\n", maxInstances)
 output, err := rdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{MaxRecords: aws.Int32(maxInstances)})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list DB instances: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(output.DBInstances) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("No DB instances found.")
 } else {
  for _, instance := range output.DBInstances {
   fmt.Printf("DB instance %v has database %v.\n",
 *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier,
    *instance.DBName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeDBInstances {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeInstances(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
```

```
            List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
            for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                System.out.println("Instance ARN is: " +
 instance.dbInstanceArn());
                System.out.println("The Engine is " + instance.engine());
                System.out.println("Connection endpoint is" +
 instance.endpoint().address());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Purpose

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational
 Database Service
(Amazon RDS) to list the databases in your account.
"""

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create an RDS client
rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
# Create a paginator for the describe_db_instances operation
paginator = rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_instances")

try:
    # Use the paginator to get a list of DB instances
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        PaginationConfig={
            "MaxItems": 123,
            "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed
            "StartingToken": None,
        }
    )

    # Iterate through the pages of the response
    instances_found = False
    for page in response_iterator:
        if "DBInstances" in page and page["DBInstances"]:
            instances_found = True
            print("Your RDS instances are:")
            for db in page["DBInstances"]:
                print(db["DBInstanceIdentifier"])

    if not instances_found:
        print("No RDS instances found!")

except ClientError as e:
    print(f"Couldn't list RDS instances. Here's why: {e.response['Error']
['Message']}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds'
require 'logger'

# RDSManager is a class responsible for managing RDS operations
# such as listing all RDS DB instances in the current AWS account.
class RDSManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all RDS DB instances in the current AWS account.
  def list_db_instances
    @logger.info('Listing RDS DB instances')

    paginator = @client.describe_db_instances
    instances = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      instances.concat(page.db_instances)
    end

    if instances.empty?
      @logger.info('No instances found.')
    else
      @logger.info("Found #{instances.count} instance(s):")
      instances.each do |instance|
        @logger.info(" * #{instance.db_instance_identifier}
 (#{instance.db_instance_status})")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  rds_client = Aws::RDS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
  manager = RDSManager.new(rds_client)
  manager.list_db_instances
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon RDS with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Scenario for RDS DB instance example.
/// </summary>
public class RDSInstanceScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Returns a list of the available DB engine families using the
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
    2.  Selects an engine family and creates a custom DB parameter group using
 the CreateDBParameterGroupAsync method.
```

```
   3.  Gets the parameter groups using the DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
method.
   4.  Gets parameters in the group using the DescribeDBParameters method.
   5.  Parses and displays parameters in the group.
   6.  Modifies both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
parameters
       using the ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync method.
   7.  Gets and displays the updated parameters using the DescribeDBParameters
method with a source of "user".
   8.  Gets a list of allowed engine versions using the
DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
   9.  Displays and selects from a list of micro instance classes available for
the selected engine and version.
   10. Creates an RDS DB instance that contains a MySql database and uses the
parameter group
       using the CreateDBInstanceAsync method.
   11. Waits for DB instance to be ready using the DescribeDBInstancesAsync
method.
   12. Prints out the connection endpoint string for the new DB instance.
   13. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance using the CreateDBSnapshotAsync
method.
   14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready using the DescribeDBSnapshots method.
   15. Deletes the DB instance using the DeleteDBInstanceAsync method.
   16. Waits for DB instance to be deleted using the DescribeDbInstances method.
   17. Deletes the parameter group using the DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync.
   */

   private static readonly string sepBar = new('-', 80);
   private static RDSWrapper rdsWrapper = null!;
   private static ILogger logger = null!;
   private static readonly string engine = "mysql";
   static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon RDS service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
                   .AddTransient<RDSWrapper>()
```

```
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger<RDSInstanceScenario>();

        rdsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<RDSWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB
instance scenario example.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        try
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = await ChooseParameterGroupFamily();

            var parameterGroup = await
CreateDbParameterGroup(parameterGroupFamily);

            var parameters = await
DescribeParametersInGroup(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
                new List<string> { "auto_increment_offset",
"auto_increment_increment" });

            await ModifyParameters(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
parameters);

            await
DescribeUserSourceParameters(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName);

            var engineVersionChoice = await
ChooseDbEngineVersion(parameterGroupFamily);

            var instanceChoice = await ChooseDbInstanceClass(engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion);

            var newInstanceIdentifier = "Example-Instance-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            var newInstance = await CreateRdsNewInstance(parameterGroup, engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
```

```
                instanceChoice.DBInstanceClass, newInstanceIdentifier);
            if (newInstance != null)
            {
                DisplayConnectionString(newInstance);

                await CreateSnapshot(newInstance);

                await DeleteRdsInstance(newInstance);
            }

            await DeleteParameterGroup(parameterGroup);

            Console.WriteLine("Scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose the RDS DB parameter group family from a list of available
options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected parameter group family.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ChooseParameterGroupFamily()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // 1. Get a list of available engines.
        var engines = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersions(engine);

        Console.WriteLine("1. The following is a list of available DB parameter
group families:");
        int i = 1;
        var parameterGroupFamilies = engines.GroupBy(e =>
e.DBParameterGroupFamily).ToList();
        foreach (var parameterGroupFamily in parameterGroupFamilies)
        {
            // List the available parameter group families.
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Family: {parameterGroupFamily.Key}");
            i++;
        }
```

```
        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > parameterGroupFamilies.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Select an available DB parameter group family by
entering a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        var parameterGroupFamilyChoice = parameterGroupFamilies[choiceNumber -
1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroupFamilyChoice.Key;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and get information on a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">The DBParameterGroupFamily for the
new DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DBParameterGroup.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDbParameterGroup(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Create new DB parameter group with family
{dbParameterGroupFamily}:");

        var parameterGroup = await rdsWrapper.CreateDBParameterGroup(
            "ExampleParameterGroup-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks,
            dbParameterGroupFamily, "New example parameter group");

        var groupInfo =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameterGroups(parameterGroup
                .DBParameterGroupName);

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"3. New DB parameter group: \n\t{groupInfo[0].Description}, \n\tARN
{groupInfo[0].DBParameterGroupArn}");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get and describe parameters from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterNames">Optional specific names of parameters to
 describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of requested parameters.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeParametersInGroup(string
 parameterGroupName, List<string>? parameterNames = null)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("4. Get some parameters from the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        var parameters =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameters(parameterGroupName);

        var matchingParameters =
            parameters.Where(p => parameterNames == null ||
 parameterNames.Contains(p.ParameterName)).ToList();

        Console.WriteLine("5. Parameter information:");
        matchingParameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        return matchingParameters;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify a parameter from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ModifyParameters(string parameterGroupName,
 List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("6. Modify some parameters in the group.");
```

```
        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                int newValue = 0;
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the
allowed values {p.AllowedValues} ");

                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    Int32.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        await rdsWrapper.ModifyDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupName, parameters);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the user source parameters in the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DescribeUserSourceParameters(string
parameterGroupName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("7. Describe user source parameters in the group.");

        var parameters =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameters(parameterGroupName, "user");


        parameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
```

```
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">DB parameter group family for engine
choice.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected engine version.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBEngineVersion> ChooseDbEngineVersion(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed engines.
        var allowedEngines =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersions(engine,
dbParameterGroupFamily);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB engine versions for parameter group
family {dbParameterGroupFamily}:");
        int i = 1;
        foreach (var version in allowedEngines)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Engine: {version.Engine} Version
{version.EngineVersion}.");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedEngines.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("8. Select an available DB engine version by
entering a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var engineChoice = allowedEngines[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
```

```
        return engineChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB instance class for a particular engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">DB engine for DB instance choice.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">DB engine version for DB instance choice.</
param>
    /// <returns>The selected orderable DB instance option.</returns>
    public static async Task<OrderableDBInstanceOption>
 ChooseDbInstanceClass(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed DB instance classes.
        var allowedInstances =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(engine,
 engineVersion);

        Console.WriteLine($"8. Available micro DB instance classes for engine
 {engine} and version {engineVersion}:");
        int i = 1;

        // Filter to micro instances for this example.
        allowedInstances = allowedInstances
            .Where(i => i.DBInstanceClass.Contains("micro")).ToList();

        foreach (var instance in allowedInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Instance class: {instance.DBInstanceClass} (storage type
 {instance.StorageType})");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedInstances.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("9. Select an available DB instance class by
 entering a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
```

```
        var instanceChoice = allowedInstances[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return instanceChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">Parameter group to use for the DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Instance class to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceIdentifier">Instance identifier to use for the DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB instance.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBInstance?> CreateRdsNewInstance(DBParameterGroup
 parameterGroup,
        string engineName, string engineVersion, string instanceClass, string
 instanceIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Create a new DB instance with identifier
 {instanceIdentifier}.");
        bool isInstanceReady = false;
        DBInstance newInstance;
        var instances = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances();
        isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault(i =>
            i.DBInstanceIdentifier == instanceIdentifier)?.DBInstanceStatus ==
 "available";

        if (isInstanceReady)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Instance already created.");
            newInstance = instances.First(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier ==
 instanceIdentifier);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Please enter an admin user name:");
            var username = Console.ReadLine();
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Please enter an admin password:");
            var password = Console.ReadLine();

            newInstance = await rdsWrapper.CreateDBInstance(
                "ExampleInstance",
                instanceIdentifier,
                parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                instanceClass,
                20,
                username,
                password
            );

            // 11. Wait for the DB instance to be ready.

            Console.WriteLine("11. Waiting for DB instance to be ready...");
            while (!isInstanceReady)
            {
                instances = await
rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances(instanceIdentifier);
                isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault()?.DBInstanceStatus ==
"available";
                newInstance = instances.First();
                Thread.Sleep(30000);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newInstance;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a connection string for an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The DB instance to use to get a connection
string.</param>
    public static void DisplayConnectionString(DBInstance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Display the connection string.
        Console.WriteLine("12. New DB instance connection string: ");
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            $"\n{engine} -h {instance.Endpoint.Address} -P
 {instance.Endpoint.Port} "
            + $"-u {instance.MasterUsername} -p [YOUR PASSWORD]\n");

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot from an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">DB instance to use when creating a snapshot.</
param>
    /// <returns>The snapshot object.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateSnapshot(DBInstance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Create a snapshot.
        Console.WriteLine($"13. Creating snapshot from DB instance
 {instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
        var snapshot = await
 rdsWrapper.CreateDBSnapshot(instance.DBInstanceIdentifier, "ExampleSnapshot-" +
 DateTime.Now.Ticks);

        // Wait for the snapshot to be available
        bool isSnapshotReady = false;

        Console.WriteLine($"14. Waiting for snapshot to be ready...");
        while (!isSnapshotReady)
        {
            var snapshots = await
 rdsWrapper.DescribeDBSnapshots(instance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
            isSnapshotReady = snapshots.FirstOrDefault()?.Status == "available";
            snapshot = snapshots.First();
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Snapshot {snapshot.DBSnapshotIdentifier} status is
 {snapshot.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return snapshot;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The DB instance to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteRdsInstance(DBInstance newInstance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Delete the DB instance.
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Delete the DB instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
        await rdsWrapper.DeleteDBInstance(newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);

        // Wait for the DB instance to delete.
        Console.WriteLine($"16. Waiting for the DB instance to delete...");
        bool isInstanceDeleted = false;

        while (!isInstanceDeleted)
        {
            var instance = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances();
            isInstanceDeleted = instance.All(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier !=
newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("DB instance deleted.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">The parameter group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteParameterGroup(DBParameterGroup
parameterGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Delete the parameter group.
        Console.WriteLine($"17. Delete the DB parameter group
{parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName}.");
        await
rdsWrapper.DeleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
```

```
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB instance actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 DB instance operations.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRDS _amazonRDS;
    public RDSWrapper(IAmazonRDS amazonRDS)
    {
        _amazonRDS = amazonRDS;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family
 name.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>> DescribeDBEngineVersions(string
 engine,
        string dbParameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
```

```
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstances(string
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
```

```
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create an RDS DB instance with a particular set of properties. Use the
action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">Name for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">DB parameter group to associate with the
instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="allocatedStorage">The amount of storage in gibibytes (GiB)
to allocate to the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="adminName">Admin user name.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">Admin user password.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstance(string dbName, string
dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName, string dbEngine, string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass, int allocatedStorage, string adminName, string
adminPassword)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBName = dbName,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                DBParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass,
                AllocatedStorage = allocatedStorage,
                MasterUsername = adminName,
                MasterUserPassword = adminPassword
```

```
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstance(string dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB parameter groups.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 parameter groups.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{

    /// <summary>
    /// Get descriptions of DB parameter groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of DB parameter group descriptions.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<DBParameterGroup>> DescribeDBParameterGroups(string
name = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroups;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB parameter group. Use the action
DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="family">Family of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">Description of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB parameter group.</returns>
    public async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDBParameterGroup(
        string name, string family, string description)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new CreateDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = family,
                Description = description
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroup;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Update a DB parameter group. Use the action
DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="parameters">List of parameters. Maximum of 20 per request.</
 param>
    /// <returns>The updated DB parameter group name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyDBParameterGroup(
        string name, List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroupName;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group. The group cannot be a default DB parameter
 group
    /// or be associated with any DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDBParameterGroup(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB parameters from a specific parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupName">Name of a specific DB parameter
 group.</param>
    /// <param name="source">Optional source for selecting parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>List of parameter values.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeDBParameters(string
 dbParameterGroupName, string source = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Parameter>();
        var paginateParameters = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBParameters(
            new DescribeDBParametersRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupName,
                Source = source
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var parameters in paginateParameters.Parameters)
        {
            results.Add(parameters);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB snapshot actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 snapshots.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateDBSnapshot(string dbInstanceIdentifier,
 string snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
```

```
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        return response.DBSnapshot;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBSnapshot>> DescribeDBSnapshots(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBSnapshot>();
        var snapshotsPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBSnapshots(
            new DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var snapshots in snapshotsPaginator.DBSnapshots)
        {
            results.Add(snapshots);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions

- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeDBParameterGroups
- DescribeDBParameters
- DescribeDBSnapshots
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBParameterGroup

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Routine which creates an Amazon RDS instance and demonstrates several
 operations
//! on that instance.
/*!
 \sa gettingStartedWithDBInstances()
 \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::gettingStartedWithDBInstances(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "get started with DB instances demo." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();
```

```
    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB parameter group named '" <<
              PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "'." << std::endl;
    Aws::String dbParameterGroupFamily("Undefined");
    bool parameterGroupFound = true;
    {
        // 1. Check if the DB parameter group already exists.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB parameter group named '" <<
                      PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." << std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily = outcome.GetResult().GetDBParameterGroups()
[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_PARAMETER_GROUP_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "DB parameter group named '" <<
                      PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' does not exist." << std::endl;
            parameterGroupFound = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 2. Get available engine versions for the specified engine.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, NO_PARAMETER_GROUP_FAMILY,
                                 engineVersions, client)) {
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Getting available database engine versions for " <<
 DB_ENGINE
                  << "."
```

```
                  << std::endl;
        std::vector<Aws::String> families;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &version: engineVersions) {
            Aws::String family = version.GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
            if (std::find(families.begin(), families.end(), family) ==
                families.end()) {
                families.push_back(family);
                std::cout << "  " << families.size() << ": " << family <<
std::endl;
            }
        }

        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which family do you want to use? ",
1,
                                            static_cast<int>(families.size()));
        dbParameterGroupFamily = families[choice - 1];
    }
    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        // 3.  Create a DB parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
        request.SetDescription("Example parameter group.");

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::String marker;
```

```
    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> autoIncrementParameters;
    // 4.  Get the parameters in the DB parameter group.
    if (!getDBParameters(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, AUTO_INCREMENT_PREFIX, NO_SOURCE,
                         autoIncrementParameters,
                         client)) {
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> updateParameters;

    for (Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &autoIncParameter: autoIncrementParameters) {
        if (autoIncParameter.GetIsModifiable() &&
            (autoIncParameter.GetDataType() == "integer")) {
            std::cout << "The " << autoIncParameter.GetParameterName()
                      << " is described as: " <<
                      autoIncParameter.GetDescription() << "." << std::endl;
            if (autoIncParameter.ParameterValueHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "The current value is "
                          << autoIncParameter.GetParameterValue()
                          << "." << std::endl;
            }
            std::vector<int> splitValues = splitToInts(
                    autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues(), '-');
            if (splitValues.size() == 2) {
                int newValue = askQuestionForIntRange(
                        Aws::String("Enter a new value in the range ") +
                        autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues() + ": ",
                        splitValues[0], splitValues[1]);
                autoIncParameter.SetParameterValue(std::to_string(newValue));
                updateParameters.push_back(autoIncParameter);

            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error parsing " <<
autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    {
        // 5.  Modify the auto increment parameters in the group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest request;
```

```
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.ModifyDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully modified."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::ModifyDBParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a
source of 'user'."
            << std::endl;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> userParameters;
    // 6.  Display the modified parameters in the group.
    if (!getDBParameters(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, NO_NAME_PREFIX, "user",
userParameters,
                         client)) {
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
        return false;
    }

    for (const auto &userParameter: userParameters) {
        std::cout << "  " << userParameter.GetParameterName() << ", " <<
                  userParameter.GetDescription() << ", parameter value - "
                  << userParameter.GetParameterValue() << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB instance." << std::endl;

    Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance;
    // 7.  Check if the DB instance already exists.
    if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
```

```
        return false;
    }

    if (dbInstance.DbInstancePortHasBeenSet()) {
        std::cout << "The DB instance already exists." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Let's create a DB instance." << std::endl;
        const Aws::String administratorName = askQuestion(
                "Enter an administrator username for the database: ");
        const Aws::String administratorPassword = askQuestion(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters):
");
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 8.  Get a list of available engine versions.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, dbParameterGroupFamily,
engineVersions,
                                 client)) {
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "The available engines for your parameter group are:" <<
std::endl;

        int index = 1;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &engineVersion:
engineVersions) {
            std::cout << "  " << index << ": " <<
engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                      << std::endl;
            ++index;
        }
        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which engine do you want to use? ",
1,

static_cast<int>(engineVersions.size()));
        const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion engineVersion =
engineVersions[choice -
                                                                            1];

        Aws::String dbInstanceClass;
        // 9.  Get a list of micro instance classes.
```

```
        if (!chooseMicroDBInstanceClass(engineVersion.GetEngine(),
                                        engineVersion.GetEngineVersion(),
                                        dbInstanceClass,
                                        client)) {
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Creating a DB instance named '" << DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER
                  << "' and database '" << DB_NAME << "'.\n"
                  << "The DB instance is configured to use your custom parameter
group '"
                  << PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "',\n"
                  << "selected engine version " <<
engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                  << ",\n"
                  << "selected DB instance class '" << dbInstanceClass << "',"
                  << " and " << DB_ALLOCATED_STORAGE << " GiB of " <<
DB_STORAGE_TYPE
                  << " storage.\nThis typically takes several minutes." <<
std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBName(DB_NAME);
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetEngine(engineVersion.GetEngine());
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion.GetEngineVersion());
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);
        request.SetStorageType(DB_STORAGE_TYPE);
        request.SetAllocatedStorage(DB_ALLOCATED_STORAGE);
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the DB instance to become available." << std::endl;

    int counter = 0;
    // 11. Wait for the DB instance to become available.
    do {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 900) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for instance to become available timed out ofter "
                      << counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
            return false;
        }

        dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
        if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
            return false;
        }

        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                      << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus()
                      << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
        }
    } while (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() != "available");

    if (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() == "available") {
        std::cout << "The DB instance has been created." << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    // 12. Display the connection string that can be used to connect a 'mysql'
shell to the database.
```

```
    displayConnection(dbInstance);

    printAsterisksLine();

    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB instance (y/n)? ")) {
        Aws::String snapshotID(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER + "-" +
                               Aws::String(Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID()));
        {
            std::cout << "Creating a snapshot named " << snapshotID << "." <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "This typically takes a few minutes." << std::endl;

            // 13. Create a snapshot of the DB instance.
            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                    client.CreateDBSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
        }

        std::cout << "Waiting for snapshot to become available." << std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::DBSnapshot snapshot;
        counter = 0;
        do {
            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            ++counter;
            if (counter > 600) {
                std::cerr << "Wait for snapshot to be available timed out ofter "
```

```
                        << counter
                        << " seconds." << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            // 14. Wait for the snapshot to become available.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBSnapshots. "
                        << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                        << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
                std::cout << "Current snapshot status is '"
                        << snapshot.GetStatus()
                        << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
            }
        } while (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available");

        if (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available") {
            std::cout << "A snapshot has been created." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    bool result = true;
    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to delete the DB instance and parameter group (y/n)? "))
{
```

```
        result = cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
 client);
    }

    return result;
}


//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBParameters(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                  const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                  const Aws::String &source,
                                  Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter>
 &parametersResult,
                                  const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
```

```
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                      const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersionsResult,
                                      const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }
```

```
    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.

    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }


        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            auto &engineVersions = outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();
            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
 engineVersions.begin(),
                                        engineVersions.end());
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!marker.empty());


    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBInstance()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                     Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance &instanceResult,
                                     const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
```

```
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}


//! Routine which gets available 'micro' DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseMicroDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::chooseMicroDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                             const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                             Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                             const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption>
&options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option:
options) {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (instanceClass.find("micro") != std::string::npos) {
                    if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                                  instanceClass) ==
                        instanceClasses.end()) {
                        instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                    }
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available micro DB instance classes for your database
engine are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which micro DB instance class do you want to use? ",
```

```
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}

//! Routine which deletes resources created by the scenario.
/*!
\sa cleanUpResources()
\param parameterGroupName: A parameter group name, this may be empty.
\param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier, this may be empty.
\param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
\return bool: Successful completion.
*/
bool AwsDoc::RDS::cleanUpResources(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                   const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                   const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    bool result = true;
    if (!dbInstanceIdentifier.empty()) {
        {
            // 15. Delete the DB instance.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
            request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBInstance. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        std::cout
                << "Waiting for DB instance to delete before deleting the
 parameter group."
                << std::endl;
```

```
        std::cout << "This may take a while." << std::endl;

        int counter = 0;
        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance;
        do {
            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            ++counter;
            if (counter > 800) {
                std::cerr << "Wait for instance to delete timed out ofter " <<
counter
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                return false;
            }

            dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
            // 16. Wait for the DB instance to be deleted.
            if (!describeDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbInstance, client)) {
                return false;
            }

            if (dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifierHasBeenSet() && (counter % 20) ==
0) {
                std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                          << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus()
                          << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
            }
        } while (dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifierHasBeenSet());
    }

    if (!parameterGroupName.empty()) {
        // 17. Delete the parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                        << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
```

```
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "sort"
 "strconv"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/rds/actions"
 "github.com/google/uuid"
)

// GetStartedInstances is an interactive example that shows you how to use the
 AWS SDK for Go
// with Amazon Relation Database Service (Amazon RDS) to do the following:
//
//  1. Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
//  2. Create a DB instance that is configured to use the parameter group. The DB
 instance
//     also contains a database.
//  3. Take a snapshot of the DB instance.
//  4. Delete the DB instance and parameter group.
type GetStartedInstances struct {
 sdkConfig  aws.Config
 instances  actions.DbInstances
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 helper     IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun  bool
}

// NewGetStartedInstances constructs a GetStartedInstances instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get an Amazon RDS
// client and create wrappers for the actions used in the scenario.
func NewGetStartedInstances(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) GetStartedInstances {
 rdsClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return GetStartedInstances{
  sdkConfig:  sdkConfig,
```

```
  instances:  actions.DbInstances{RdsClient: rdsClient},
  questioner: questioner,
  helper:     helper,
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) Run(ctx context.Context, dbEngine string,
 parameterGroupName string,
 instanceName string, dbName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB
 Instance demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 parameterGroup := scenario.CreateParameterGroup(ctx, dbEngine,
 parameterGroupName)
 scenario.SetUserParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName)
 instance := scenario.CreateInstance(ctx, instanceName, dbEngine, dbName,
 parameterGroup)
 scenario.DisplayConnection(instance)
 scenario.CreateSnapshot(ctx, instance)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, instance, parameterGroup)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateParameterGroup shows how to get available engine versions for a
 specified
// database engine and create a DB parameter group that is compatible with a
// selected engine family.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) CreateParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 dbEngine string,
 parameterGroupName string) *types.DBParameterGroup {

 log.Printf("Checking for an existing DB parameter group named %v.\n",
```

```
  parameterGroupName)
 parameterGroup, err := scenario.instances.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
 parameterGroupName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if parameterGroup == nil {
  log.Printf("Getting available database engine versions for %v.\n", dbEngine)
  engineVersions, err := scenario.instances.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine, "")
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }

  familySet := map[string]struct{}{}
  for _, family := range engineVersions {
   familySet[*family.DBParameterGroupFamily] = struct{}{}
  }
  var families []string
  for family := range familySet {
   families = append(families, family)
  }
  sort.Strings(families)
  familyIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Which family do you want to use?
\n", families)
  log.Println("Creating a DB parameter group.")
  _, err = scenario.instances.CreateParameterGroup(
   ctx, parameterGroupName, families[familyIndex], "Example parameter group.")
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  parameterGroup, err = scenario.instances.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
 parameterGroupName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
 log.Printf("Parameter group %v:\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
 log.Printf("\tName: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName)
 log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupArn)
 log.Printf("\tFamily: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
 log.Printf("\tDescription: %v\n", *parameterGroup.Description)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return parameterGroup
}
```

```
// SetUserParameters shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom
 parameter
// group and update some of the parameter values in the group.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) SetUserParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) {
 log.Println("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
 dbParameters, err := scenario.instances.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName,
 "")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 var updateParams []types.Parameter
 for _, dbParam := range dbParameters {
  if strings.HasPrefix(*dbParam.ParameterName, "auto_increment") &&
   *dbParam.IsModifiable && *dbParam.DataType == "integer" {
   log.Printf("The %v parameter is described as:\n\t%v",
    *dbParam.ParameterName, *dbParam.Description)
   rangeSplit := strings.Split(*dbParam.AllowedValues, "-")
   lower, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[0])
   upper, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[1])
   newValue := scenario.questioner.AskInt(
    fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", lower, upper),
    demotools.InIntRange{Lower: lower, Upper: upper})
   dbParam.ParameterValue = aws.String(strconv.Itoa(newValue))
   updateParams = append(updateParams, dbParam)
  }
 }
 err = scenario.instances.UpdateParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName, updateParams)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("To get a list of parameters that you set previously, specify a
 source of 'user'.")
 userParameters, err := scenario.instances.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName,
 "user")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Here are the parameters you set:")
 for _, param := range userParameters {
  log.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *param.ParameterName, *param.ParameterValue)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
}

// CreateInstance shows how to create a DB instance that contains a database of a
// specified type. The database is also configured to use a custom DB parameter
 group.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context,
 instanceName string, dbEngine string,
 dbName string, parameterGroup *types.DBParameterGroup) *types.DBInstance {

 log.Println("Checking for an existing DB instance.")
 instance, err := scenario.instances.GetInstance(ctx, instanceName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if instance == nil {
  adminUsername := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "Enter an administrator username for the database: ", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  adminPassword := scenario.questioner.AskPassword(
   "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ", 7)
  engineVersions, err := scenario.instances.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine,
   *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  var engineChoices []string
  for _, engine := range engineVersions {
   engineChoices = append(engineChoices, *engine.EngineVersion)
  }
  engineIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice(
   "The available engines for your parameter group are:\n", engineChoices)
  engineSelection := engineVersions[engineIndex]
  instOpts, err := scenario.instances.GetOrderableInstances(ctx,
 *engineSelection.Engine,
   *engineSelection.EngineVersion)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  optSet := map[string]struct{}{}
  for _, opt := range instOpts {
   if strings.Contains(*opt.DBInstanceClass, "micro") {
    optSet[*opt.DBInstanceClass] = struct{}{}
   }
  }
  var optChoices []string
```

```
  for opt := range optSet {
   optChoices = append(optChoices, opt)
  }
  sort.Strings(optChoices)
  optIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice(
   "The available micro DB instance classes for your database engine are:\n",
 optChoices)
  storageType := "standard"
  allocatedStorage := int32(5)
  log.Printf("Creating a DB instance named %v and database %v.\n"+
   "The DB instance is configured to use your custom parameter group %v,\n"+
   "selected engine %v,\n"+
   "selected DB instance class %v,"+
   "and %v GiB of %v storage.\n"+
   "This typically takes several minutes.",
   instanceName, dbName, *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
 *engineSelection.EngineVersion,
   optChoices[optIndex], allocatedStorage, storageType)
  instance, err = scenario.instances.CreateInstance(
   ctx, instanceName, dbName, *engineSelection.Engine,
 *engineSelection.EngineVersion,
   *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName, optChoices[optIndex], storageType,
   allocatedStorage, adminUsername, adminPassword)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *instance.DBInstanceStatus != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   instance, err = scenario.instances.GetInstance(ctx, instanceName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Println("Instance created and available.")
 }
 log.Println("Instance data:")
 log.Printf("\tDBInstanceIdentifier: %v\n", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
 log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *instance.DBInstanceArn)
 log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *instance.DBInstanceStatus)
 log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *instance.Engine)
 log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *instance.EngineVersion)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return instance
}
```

```
// DisplayConnection displays connection information about a DB instance and tips
// on how to connect to it.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) DisplayConnection(instance *types.DBInstance)
 {
 log.Println(
  "You can now connect to your database by using your favorite MySQL client.\n" +
   "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2 instance\n"
 +
   "that is running in the same VPC as your DB instance. Pass the endpoint,\n" +
   "port, and administrator username to 'mysql'. Then, enter your password\n" +
   "when prompted:")
 log.Printf("\n\tmysql -h %v -P %v -u %v -p\n",
  *instance.Endpoint.Address, instance.Endpoint.Port, *instance.MasterUsername)
 log.Println("For more information, see the User Guide for RDS:\n" +
  "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/UserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStarted.CreatingConnecting.MySQL.html#CHAP_GettingStarted.Connecting.MySQL")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateSnapshot shows how to create a DB instance snapshot and wait until it's
 available.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, instance
 *types.DBInstance) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB instance (y/n)? ", "y") {
  snapshotId := fmt.Sprintf("%v-%v", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier,
 scenario.helper.UniqueId())
  log.Printf("Creating a snapshot named %v. This typically takes a few minutes.
\n", snapshotId)
  snapshot, err := scenario.instances.CreateSnapshot(ctx,
 *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier, snapshotId)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *snapshot.Status != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   snapshot, err = scenario.instances.GetSnapshot(ctx, snapshotId)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Println("Snapshot data:")
  log.Printf("\tDBSnapshotIdentifier: %v\n", *snapshot.DBSnapshotIdentifier)
```

```
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *snapshot.DBSnapshotArn)
  log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *snapshot.Status)
  log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *snapshot.Engine)
  log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *snapshot.EngineVersion)
  log.Printf("\tDBInstanceIdentifier: %v\n", *snapshot.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tSnapshotCreateTime: %v\n", *snapshot.SnapshotCreateTime)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }
}

// Cleanup shows how to clean up a DB instance and DB parameter group.
// Before the DB parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB instances must
 first be deleted.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) Cleanup(
 ctx context.Context, instance *types.DBInstance, parameterGroup
 *types.DBParameterGroup) {

 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "\nDo you want to delete the database instance and parameter group (y/n)? ",
 "y") {
  log.Printf("Deleting database instance %v.\n", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  err := scenario.instances.DeleteInstance(ctx, *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println(
   "Waiting for the DB instance to delete. This typically takes several
 minutes.")
  for instance != nil {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   instance, err = scenario.instances.GetInstance(ctx,
 *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Printf("Deleting parameter group %v.",
 *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName)
  err = scenario.instances.DeleteParameterGroup(ctx,
 *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
```

```
}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts the function from a scenario so that it
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 UniqueId() string
}
type ScenarioHelper struct{}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}

// UniqueId returns a new UUID.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) UniqueId() string {
 return uuid.New().String()
}
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon RDS actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}


// GetParameterGroup gets a DB parameter group by name.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
```

```
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}



// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB parameter group that is based on the
 specified
// parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName:   aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:            aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBParameterGroup, err
 }
}
```

```
// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator := rds.NewDescribeDBParametersPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBParametersInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:               aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get parameters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}
```

```
// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.ModifyDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:           params,
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// CreateSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBSnapshotInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBSnapshot, nil
 }
}



// GetSnapshot gets a DB instance snapshot.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName
 string) (*types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBSnapshotsInput{
   DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
```

```
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}



// CreateInstance creates a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, dbName string,
 dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, parameterGroupName string,
 dbInstanceClass string,
 storageType string, allocatedStorage int32, adminName string, adminPassword
 string) (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBName:               aws.String(dbName),
  DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
  EngineVersion:        aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
  StorageType:          aws.String(storageType),
  AllocatedStorage:     aws.Int32(allocatedStorage),
  MasterUsername:       aws.String(adminName),
  MasterUserPassword:   aws.String(adminPassword),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
```

```
func (instances *DbInstances) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
```

```
func (instances *DbInstances) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instanceOptions []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instance options: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instanceOptions = append(instanceOptions,
 output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
```

```
 return instanceOptions, err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run multiple operations.

```
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbParameterGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbSnapshotRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbSnapshotResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBEngineVersion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBParameterGroup;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBSnapshot;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParameterGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParametersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbSnapshotsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbParameterGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.OrderableDBInstanceOption;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.Parameter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbParameterGroupRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParametersRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 * database credentials. If you do not create a
 * secret, this example will not work. For details, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 *
 * 1. Returns a list of the available DB engines.
 * 2. Selects an engine family and create a custom DB parameter group.
 * 3. Gets the parameter groups.
 * 4. Gets parameters in the group.
 * 5. Modifies the auto_increment_offset parameter.
 * 6. Gets and displays the updated parameters.
 * 7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions.
 * 8. Gets a list of micro instance classes available for the selected engine.
 * 9. Creates an RDS database instance that contains a MySql database and uses
 * the parameter group.
 * 10. Waits for the DB instance to be ready and prints out the connection
 * endpoint value.
 * 11. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance.
 * 12. Waits for an RDS DB snapshot to be ready.
 * 13. Deletes the RDS DB instance.
 * 14. Deletes the parameter group.
 */
public class RDSScenario {
    public static long sleepTime = 20;
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily> <dbInstanceIdentifier>
 <dbName> <dbSnapshotIdentifier> <secretName>
```

```
                Where:
                    dbGroupName - The database group name.\s
                    dbParameterGroupFamily - The database parameter group name
(for example, mysql8.0).
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier\s
                    dbName - The database name.\s
                    dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.\s
                    secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that
contains the database credentials"
                """;

        if (args.length != 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbGroupName = args[0];
        String dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1];
        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[2];
        String dbName = args[3];
        String dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[4];
        String secretName = args[5];

        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
User.class);
        String masterUsername = user.getUsername();
        String masterUserPassword = user.getPassword();

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon RDS example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines");
        describeDBEngines(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("2. Create a custom parameter group");
        createDBParameterGroup(rdsClient, dbGroupName, dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Get the parameter group");
        describeDbParameterGroups(rdsClient, dbGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the parameters in the group");
        describeDbParameters(rdsClient, dbGroupName, 0);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter");
        modifyDBParas(rdsClient, dbGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Display the updated value");
        describeDbParameters(rdsClient, dbGroupName, -1);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions");
        getAllowedEngines(rdsClient, dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Get a list of micro instance classes available for
the selected engine");
        getMicroInstances(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "9. Create an RDS database instance that contains a MySql
database and uses the parameter group");
        String dbARN = createDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbGroupName,
dbInstanceIdentifier, dbName, masterUsername,
                masterUserPassword);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new database is " + dbARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Wait for DB instance to be ready");
        waitForInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Create a snapshot of the DB instance");
        createSnapshot(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready");
        waitForSnapshotReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier,
dbSnapshotIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Delete the DB instance");
        deleteDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Delete the parameter group");
        deleteParaGroup(rdsClient, dbGroupName, dbARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Scenario has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        rdsClient.close();
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
    }

    public static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
```

```
                .secretId(secretName)
                .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }

    // Delete the parameter group after database has been deleted.
    // An exception is thrown if you attempt to delete the para group while
database
    // exists.
    public static void deleteParaGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName,
String dbARN)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean isDataDel = false;
            boolean didFind;
            String instanceARN;

            // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
            while (!isDataDel) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                int listSize = instanceList.size();
                didFind = false;
                int index = 1;
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(dbARN) == 0) {
                        System.out.println(dbARN + " still exists");
                        didFind = true;
                    }
                    if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true;
                    }
                    Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    index++;
                }
            }
```

```
            // Delete the para group.
            DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest parameterGroupRequest =
DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .build();

            rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupRequest);
            System.out.println(dbGroupName + " was deleted.");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the DB instance.
    public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status of the database is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Waits until the snapshot instance is available.
    public static void waitForSnapshotReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
            boolean snapshotReady = false;
            String snapshotReadyStr;
```

```
            System.out.println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.");

            DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest snapshotsRequest =
DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest.builder()
                    .dbSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            while (!snapshotReady) {
                DescribeDbSnapshotsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBSnapshots(snapshotsRequest);
                List<DBSnapshot> snapshotList = response.dbSnapshots();
                for (DBSnapshot snapshot : snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status();
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }

            System.out.println("The Snapshot is available!");
        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Create an Amazon RDS snapshot.
    public static void createSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier, String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
            CreateDbSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbSnapshotRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .dbSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .build();

            CreateDbSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
            System.out.println("The Snapshot id is " +
response.dbSnapshot().dbiResourceId());
```

```
        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            String endpoint = "";
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances(instanceRequest);
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        endpoint = instance.endpoint().address();
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database instance is available! The connection
endpoint is " + endpoint);

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    // Create a database instance and return the ARN of the database.
    public static String createDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient,
            String dbGroupName,
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbName,
            String userName,
            String userPassword) {

        try {
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                .allocatedStorage(100)
                .dbName(dbName)
                .engine("mysql")
                .dbInstanceClass("db.t3.medium") // Updated to a supported class
                .engineVersion("8.0.32")         // Updated to a supported
version
                .storageType("gp2")             // Changed to General Purpose SSD
(gp2)
                .masterUsername(userName)
                .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
                .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());
            return response.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }

    // Get a list of micro instances.
    public static void getMicroInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest dbInstanceOptionsRequest =
DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest
                    .builder()
```

```
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .build();

            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsResponse response = rdsClient

.describeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(dbInstanceOptionsRequest);
            List<OrderableDBInstanceOption> orderableDBInstances =
response.orderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (OrderableDBInstanceOption dbInstanceOption :
orderableDBInstances) {
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
dbInstanceOption.engineVersion());
                System.out.println("The engine description is " +
dbInstanceOption.engine());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
    public static void getAllowedEngines(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest versionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(versionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> dbEngines = response.dbEngineVersions();
            for (DBEngineVersion dbEngine : dbEngines) {
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
dbEngine.engineVersion());
                System.out.println("The engine description is " +
dbEngine.dbEngineDescription());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Modify auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters.
    public static void modifyDBParas(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName) {
        try {
            Parameter parameter1 = Parameter.builder()
                    .parameterName("auto_increment_offset")
                    .applyMethod("immediate")
                    .parameterValue("5")
                    .build();

            List<Parameter> paraList = new ArrayList<>();
            paraList.add(parameter1);
            ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .parameters(paraList)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter group " +
response.dbParameterGroupName() + " was successfully modified");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Retrieve parameters in the group.
    public static void describeDbParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName, int flag) {
        try {
            DescribeDbParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
            if (flag == 0) {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                        .build();
            } else {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
```

```
                        .source("user")
                        .build();
            }

            DescribeDbParametersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset
or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") ==
0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDbParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeDbParameterGroupsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(groupsRequest);
            List<DBParameterGroup> groups = response.dbParameterGroups();
            for (DBParameterGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group description is " +
group.description());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createDBParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName, String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            CreateDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbParameterGroup().dbParameterGroupName());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .maxRecords(20)
```

```
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
 the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this code example, set up your development environment, including
 your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the database
 credentials. If you do not create a
secret, this example will not work. For more details, see:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html

This example performs the following tasks:

1. Returns a list of the available DB engines by invoking the
 DescribeDbEngineVersions method.
2. Selects an engine family and create a custom DB parameter group by invoking
 the createDBParameterGroup method.
3. Gets the parameter groups by invoking the DescribeDbParameterGroups method.
4. Gets parameters in the group by invoking the DescribeDbParameters method.
5. Modifies both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
 parameters by invoking the modifyDbParameterGroup method.
6. Gets and displays the updated parameters.
7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions by invoking the
 describeDbEngineVersions method.
8. Gets a list of micro instance classes available for the selected engine.
9. Creates an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) database instance
 that contains a MySQL database and uses the parameter group.
```

```
10. Waits for DB instance to be ready and prints out the connection endpoint
 value.
11. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance.
12. Waits for the DB snapshot to be ready.
13. Deletes the DB instance.
14. Deletes the parameter group.
 */

var sleepTime: Long = 20

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <dbGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily> <dbInstanceIdentifier>
 <dbName> <dbSnapshotIdentifier><secretName>

        Where:
            dbGroupName - The database group name.
            dbParameterGroupFamily - The database parameter group name.
            dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.
            dbName -  The database name.
            dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.
            secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains
 the database credentials.
    """

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val dbGroupName = args[0]
    val dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1]
    val dbInstanceIdentifier = args[2]
    val dbName = args[3]
    val dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[4]
    val secretName = args[5]

    val gson = Gson()
    val user = gson.fromJson(getSecretValues(secretName).toString(),
 User::class.java)
    val username = user.username
    val userPassword = user.password
```

```
    println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines")
    describeDBEngines()

    println("2. Create a custom parameter group")
    createDBParameterGroup(dbGroupName, dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("3. Get the parameter groups")
    describeDbParameterGroups(dbGroupName)

    println("4. Get the parameters in the group")
    describeDbParameters(dbGroupName, 0)

    println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter")
    modifyDBParas(dbGroupName)

    println("6. Display the updated value")
    describeDbParameters(dbGroupName, -1)

    println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions")
    getAllowedEngines(dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("8. Get a list of micro instance classes available for the selected
engine")
    getMicroInstances()

    println("9. Create an RDS database instance that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group")
    val dbARN = createDatabaseInstance(dbGroupName, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbName,
username, userPassword)
    println("The ARN of the new database is $dbARN")

    println("10. Wait for DB instance to be ready")
    waitForDbInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("11. Create a snapshot of the DB instance")
    createDbSnapshot(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier)

    println("12. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready")
    waitForSnapshotReady(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier)

    println("13. Delete the DB instance")
    deleteDbInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("14. Delete the parameter group")
```

```
    if (dbARN != null) {
        deleteParaGroup(dbGroupName, dbARN)
    }

    println("The Scenario has successfully completed.")
}

suspend fun deleteParaGroup(
    dbGroupName: String,
    dbARN: String,
) {
    var isDataDel = false
    var didFind: Boolean
    var instanceARN: String

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
        while (!isDataDel) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances()
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            val listSize = instanceList?.size
            isDataDel = false // Reset this value.
            didFind = false // Reset this value.
            var index = 1
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn.toString()
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(dbARN) == 0) {
                        println("$dbARN still exists")
                        didFind = true
                    }
                    if (index == listSize && !didFind) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
 database name.
                        isDataDel = true
                    }
                    index++
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the para group.
        val parameterGroupRequest =
            DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest {
```

```
                dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            }
        rdsClient.deleteDbParameterGroup(parameterGroupRequest)
        println("$dbGroupName was deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDbInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}

// Waits until the snapshot instance is available.
suspend fun waitForSnapshotReady(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifierVal: String?,
) {
    var snapshotReady = false
    var snapshotReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.")

    val snapshotsRequest =
        DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest {
            dbSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifierVal
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    while (!snapshotReady) {
        RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbSnapshots(snapshotsRequest)
            val snapshotList: List<DbSnapshot>? = response.dbSnapshots
            if (snapshotList != null) {
                for (snapshot in snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status.toString()
```

```
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true
                    } else {
                        print(".")
                        delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Snapshot is available!")
}

// Create an Amazon RDS snapshot.
suspend fun createDbSnapshot(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifierVal: String?,
) {
    val snapshotRequest =
        CreateDbSnapshotRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            dbSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifierVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbSnapshot(snapshotRequest)
        print("The Snapshot id is ${response.dbSnapshot?.dbiResourceId}")
    }
}

// Waits until the database instance is available.
suspend fun waitForDbInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")

    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }
    var endpoint = ""
    while (!instanceReady) {
        RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
```

```
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        endpoint = instance.endpoint?.address.toString()
                        instanceReady = true
                    } else {
                        print(".")
                        delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database instance is available! The connection endpoint is
 $endpoint")
}

// Create a database instance and return the ARN of the database.
suspend fun createDatabaseInstance(
    dbGroupNameVal: String?,
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbNameVal: String?,
    masterUsernameVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
): String? {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            allocatedStorage = 100
            dbName = dbNameVal
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupNameVal
            engine = "mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = "db.t3.micro"
            engineVersion = "8.0.35"
            storageType = "gp2"
            masterUsername = masterUsernameVal
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
```

```
        return response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn
    }
}

// Get a list of micro instances.
suspend fun getMicroInstances() {
    val dbInstanceOptionsRequest =
        DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest {
            engine = "mysql"
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(dbInstanceOptionsRequest)
        val orderableDBInstances = response.orderableDbInstanceOptions
        if (orderableDBInstances != null) {
            for (dbInstanceOption in orderableDBInstances) {
                println("The engine version is
 ${dbInstanceOption.engineVersion}")
                println("The engine description is ${dbInstanceOption.engine}")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Get a list of allowed engine versions.
suspend fun getAllowedEngines(dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?) {
    val versionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "mysql"
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(versionsRequest)
        val dbEngines: List<DbEngineVersion>? = response.dbEngineVersions
        if (dbEngines != null) {
            for (dbEngine in dbEngines) {
                println("The engine version is ${dbEngine.engineVersion}")
                println("The engine description is
 ${dbEngine.dbEngineDescription}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
// Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
suspend fun modifyDBParas(dbGroupName: String) {
    val parameter1 =
        Parameter {
            parameterName = "auto_increment_offset"
            applyMethod = ApplyMethod.Immediate
            parameterValue = "5"
        }

    val paraList: ArrayList<Parameter> = ArrayList()
    paraList.add(parameter1)
    val groupRequest =
        ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest {
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            parameters = paraList
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.modifyDbParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The parameter group ${response.dbParameterGroupName} was
 successfully modified")
    }
}

// Retrieve parameters in the group.
suspend fun describeDbParameters(
    dbGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbParametersRequest {
                dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbParametersRequest {
                dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        val dbParameters: List<Parameter>? = response.parameters
```

```
        var paraName: String
        if (dbParameters != null) {
            for (para in dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset
 or auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName.toString()
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is
 ${para.parameterValue}")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is
 ${para.dataType}")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is
 ${para.description}")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeDbParameterGroups(dbGroupName: String?) {
    val groupsRequest =
        DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            maxRecords = 20
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
        val groups = response.dbParameterGroups
        if (groups != null) {
            for (group in groups) {
                println("The group name is ${group.dbParameterGroupName}")
                println("The group description is ${group.description}")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Create a parameter group.
suspend fun createDBParameterGroup(
    dbGroupName: String?,
```

```
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
) {
    val groupRequest =
        CreateDbParameterGroupRequest {
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The group name is
 ${response.dbParameterGroup?.dbParameterGroupName}")
    }
}

// Returns a list of the available DB engines.
suspend fun describeDBEngines() {
    val engineVersionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            defaultOnly = true
            engine = "mysql"
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest)
        val engines: List<DbEngineVersion>? = response.dbEngineVersions

        // Get all DbEngineVersion objects.
        if (engines != null) {
            for (engineOb in engines) {
                println("The name of the DB parameter group family for the
 database engine is ${engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily}.")
                println("The name of the database engine ${engineOb.engine}.")
                println("The version number of the database engine
 ${engineOb.engineVersion}")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getSecretValues(secretName: String?): String? {
    val valueRequest =
```

```
        GetSecretValueRequest {
            secretId = secretName
        }

    SecretsManagerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { secretsClient ->
        val valueResponse = secretsClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest)
        return valueResponse.secretString
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class RdsInstanceScenario:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon RDS DB
 instances."""

    def __init__(self, instance_wrapper):
        """
        :param instance_wrapper: An object that wraps Amazon RDS DB instance
 actions.
        """
        self.instance_wrapper = instance_wrapper

    def create_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name, db_engine):
        """
        Shows how to get available engine versions for a specified database
 engine and
        create a DB parameter group that is compatible with a selected engine
 family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name given to the newly created
 parameter group.
        :param db_engine: The database engine to use as a basis.
        :return: The newly created parameter group.
        """
        print(
            f"Checking for an existing DB instance parameter group named
 {parameter_group_name}."
        )
        parameter_group = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameter_group(
            parameter_group_name
        )
        if parameter_group is None:
            print(f"Getting available database engine versions for {db_engine}.")
            engine_versions =
 self.instance_wrapper.get_engine_versions(db_engine)
            families = list({ver["DBParameterGroupFamily"] for ver in
 engine_versions})
            family_index = q.choose("Which family do you want to use? ",
 families)
            print(f"Creating a parameter group.")
            self.instance_wrapper.create_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name, families[family_index], "Example parameter
 group."
            )
```

```
            parameter_group = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name
            )
        print(f"Parameter group {parameter_group['DBParameterGroupName']}:")
        pp(parameter_group)
        print("-" * 88)
        return parameter_group

    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom parameter group and
        update some of the parameter values in the group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query and
modify.
        """
        print("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
        auto_inc_parameters = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, name_prefix="auto_increment"
        )
        update_params = []
        for auto_inc in auto_inc_parameters:
            if auto_inc["IsModifiable"] and auto_inc["DataType"] == "integer":
                print(f"The {auto_inc['ParameterName']} parameter is described
as:")
                print(f"\t{auto_inc['Description']}")
                param_range = auto_inc["AllowedValues"].split("-")
                auto_inc["ParameterValue"] = str(
                    q.ask(
                        f"Enter a value between {param_range[0]} and
{param_range[1]}: ",
                        q.is_int,
                        q.in_range(int(param_range[0]), int(param_range[1])),
                    )
                )
                update_params.append(auto_inc)
        self.instance_wrapper.update_parameters(parameter_group_name,
update_params)
        print(
            "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source
of 'user'."
        )
        user_parameters = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, source="user"
```

```
        )
        pp(user_parameters)
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_instance(self, instance_name, db_name, db_engine,
parameter_group):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB instance that contains a database of a specified
        type and is configured to use a custom DB parameter group.

        :param instance_name: The name given to the newly created DB instance.
        :param db_name: The name given to the created database.
        :param db_engine: The engine of the created database.
        :param parameter_group: The parameter group that is associated with the
DB instance.
        :return: The newly created DB instance.
        """
        print("Checking for an existing DB instance.")
        db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.get_db_instance(instance_name)
        if db_inst is None:
            print("Let's create a DB instance.")
            admin_username = q.ask(
                "Enter an administrator user name for the database: ",
q.non_empty
            )
            admin_password = q.ask(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters):
",
                q.non_empty,
            )
            engine_versions = self.instance_wrapper.get_engine_versions(
                db_engine, parameter_group["DBParameterGroupFamily"]
            )
            engine_choices = [ver["EngineVersion"] for ver in engine_versions]
            print("The available engines for your parameter group are:")
            engine_index = q.choose("Which engine do you want to use? ",
engine_choices)
            engine_selection = engine_versions[engine_index]
            print(
                "The available micro DB instance classes for your database engine
are:"
            )
            inst_opts = self.instance_wrapper.get_orderable_instances(
                engine_selection["Engine"], engine_selection["EngineVersion"]
```

```
            )
            inst_choices = list(
                {
                    opt["DBInstanceClass"]
                    for opt in inst_opts
                    if "micro" in opt["DBInstanceClass"]
                }
            )
            inst_index = q.choose(
                "Which micro DB instance class do you want to use? ",
inst_choices
            )
            group_name = parameter_group["DBParameterGroupName"]
            storage_type = "standard"
            allocated_storage = 5
            print(
                f"Creating a DB instance named {instance_name} and database
{db_name}.\n"
                f"The DB instance is configured to use your custom parameter
group {group_name},\n"
                f"selected engine {engine_selection['EngineVersion']},\n"
                f"selected DB instance class {inst_choices[inst_index]},"
                f"and {allocated_storage} GiB of {storage_type} storage.\n"
                f"This typically takes several minutes."
            )
            db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.create_db_instance(
                db_name,
                instance_name,
                group_name,
                engine_selection["Engine"],
                engine_selection["EngineVersion"],
                inst_choices[inst_index],
                storage_type,
                allocated_storage,
                admin_username,
                admin_password,
            )
            while db_inst.get("DBInstanceStatus") != "available":
                wait(10)
                db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.get_db_instance(instance_name)
        print("Instance data:")
        pp(db_inst)
        print("-" * 88)
        return db_inst
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def display_connection(db_inst):
        """
        Displays connection information about a DB instance and tips on how to
        connect to it.

        :param db_inst: The DB instance to display.
        """
        print(
            "You can now connect to your database using your favorite MySql
 client.\n"
            "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2
 instance\n"
            "that is running in the same VPC as your DB instance. Pass the
 endpoint,\n"
            "port, and administrator user name to 'mysql' and enter your password
\n"
            "when prompted:\n"
        )
        print(
            f"\n\tmysql -h {db_inst['Endpoint']['Address']} -P
 {db_inst['Endpoint']['Port']} "
            f"-u {db_inst['MasterUsername']} -p\n"
        )
        print(
            "For more information, see the User Guide for Amazon RDS:\n"
            "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/UserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStarted.CreatingConnecting.MySQL.html#CHAP_GettingStarted.Connecting.MySQL"
        )
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_snapshot(self, instance_name):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB instance snapshot and wait until it's available.

        :param instance_name: The name of a DB instance to snapshot.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB instance (y/n)? ",
 q.is_yesno
        ):
            snapshot_id = f"{instance_name}-{uuid.uuid4()}"
            print(
```

```
                f"Creating a snapshot named {snapshot_id}. This typically takes a
few minutes."
            )
            snapshot = self.instance_wrapper.create_snapshot(snapshot_id,
instance_name)
            while snapshot.get("Status") != "available":
                wait(10)
                snapshot = self.instance_wrapper.get_snapshot(snapshot_id)
            pp(snapshot)
            print("-" * 88)

    def cleanup(self, db_inst, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to clean up a DB instance and parameter group.
        Before the parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB instances
must first
        be deleted.

        :param db_inst: The DB instance to delete.
        :param parameter_group_name: The DB parameter group to delete.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "\nDo you want to delete the DB instance and parameter group (y/n)?
",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            print(f"Deleting DB instance {db_inst['DBInstanceIdentifier']}.")

self.instance_wrapper.delete_db_instance(db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"])
            print(
                "Waiting for the DB instance to delete. This typically takes
several minutes."
            )
            while db_inst is not None:
                wait(10)
                db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.get_db_instance(
                    db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"]
                )
            print(f"Deleting parameter group {parameter_group_name}.")
            self.instance_wrapper.delete_parameter_group(parameter_group_name)

    def run_scenario(self, db_engine, parameter_group_name, instance_name,
db_name):
```

```
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s:
 %(message)s")

        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)\n"
            "get started with DB instances demo."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

        parameter_group = self.create_parameter_group(parameter_group_name,
 db_engine)
        self.update_parameters(parameter_group_name)
        db_inst = self.create_instance(
            instance_name, db_name, db_engine, parameter_group
        )
        self.display_connection(db_inst)
        self.create_snapshot(instance_name)
        self.cleanup(db_inst, parameter_group_name)

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = RdsInstanceScenario(InstanceWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario(
            "mysql",
            "doc-example-parameter-group",
            "doc-example-instance",
            "docexampledb",
        )
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon RDS actions.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
```

```
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_parameter_groups(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group


    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
```

```
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB parameter group that is based on the specified parameter
group
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter
group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of
the new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this
prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return parameters


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
Parameters=update_parameters
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def create_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, instance_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB instance.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_snapshot(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id,
DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshot"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def get_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB instance snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_snapshots(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned
list of
```

```
                                        engine versions to those that are
compatible with
                                        this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by
the DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def create_db_instance(
        self,
        db_name,
        instance_id,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_engine,
```

```
        db_engine_version,
        instance_class,
        storage_type,
        allocated_storage,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB instance.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that is created in the DB
instance.
        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param parameter_group_name: A parameter group to associate with the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version for the created database.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :param storage_type: The storage type of the DB instance.
        :param allocated_storage: The amount of storage allocated on the DB
instance, in GiBs.
        :param admin_name: The name of the admin user for the created database.
        :param admin_password: The admin password for the created database.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBName=db_name,
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
                StorageType=storage_type,
                AllocatedStorage=allocated_storage,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot

- DeleteDBInstance
- DeleteDBParameterGroup
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeDBParameterGroups
- DescribeDBParameters
- DescribeDBSnapshots
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBParameterGroup

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "rds-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
```

```
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.4.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "rds-scenario",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSRDS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift code file, `entry.swift`.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a variety
// of operations using Amazon Relational Database Service (RDS).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation
import AWSRDS

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"
    @Option(help: "The username to use for the database administrator.")
    var dbUsername = "admin"
    @Option(help: "The password to use for the database administrator.")
    var dbPassword: String
```

```
    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "rds-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Performs various operations to demonstrate the use of Amazon RDS
 Instances
        using the AWS SDK for Swift.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let example = try await Example(region: awsRegion, username: dbUsername,
 password: dbPassword)

        await example.run()
    }
}

class Example {
    let rdsClient: RDSClient

    // Storage for AWS RDS properties

    let dbUsername: String
    let dbPassword: String
    var dbInstanceIdentifier: String
    var dbSnapshotIdentifier: String
    var dbParameterGroupName: String
    var dbParameterGroup: RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup?
    var selectedEngineVersion: String?

    init(region: String, username: String, password: String) async throws{
        let rdsConfig = try await RDSClient.RDSClientConfiguration(region:
 region)
        rdsClient = RDSClient(config: rdsConfig)

        dbUsername = username
        dbPassword = password
        dbParameterGroupName = ""
        dbInstanceIdentifier = ""
        dbSnapshotIdentifier = ""
```

```
    }

    /// The example's main body.
    func run() async {
        var parameterGroupFamilies: Set<String> = []

        //=====================================================================
        // 1. Get available database engine families for MySQL.
        //=====================================================================

        let engineVersions = await getDBEngineVersions(engineName: "mysql")

        for version in engineVersions {
            if version.dbParameterGroupFamily != nil {
                parameterGroupFamilies.insert(version.dbParameterGroupFamily!)
            }
        }

        if engineVersions.count > 0 {
            selectedEngineVersion = engineVersions.last!.engineVersion
        } else {
            print("*** Unable to find a valid database engine version. Canceling
operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        print("Found \(parameterGroupFamilies.count) parameter group families:")
        for family in parameterGroupFamilies {
            print("    \(family)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. Select an engine family and create a custom DB parameter group.
        //    We select a family by sorting the set of family names, then
        //    choosing the last one.
        //=====================================================================

        let sortedFamilies = parameterGroupFamilies.sorted()

        guard let selectedFamily = sortedFamilies.last else {
            print("*** Unable to find a database engine family. Canceling
operations.")
            await cleanUp()
```

```
            return
        }

        print("Selected database engine family \(selectedFamily)")

        dbParameterGroupName = tempName(prefix: "rds-example")
        print("Creating a database parameter group named \(dbParameterGroupName)
using \(selectedFamily)")
        dbParameterGroup = await createDBParameterGroup(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName,
                                                        familyName:
selectedFamily)

        //======================================================================
        // 3. Get the parameter group's details.
        //======================================================================

        print("Getting the database parameter group list...")
        let dbParameterGroupList = await describeDBParameterGroups(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName)
        guard let dbParameterGroupList else {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        print("Found \(dbParameterGroupList.count) parameter groups...")
        for group in dbParameterGroupList {
            print("    \(group.dbParameterGroupName ?? "<unknown>")")
        }
        print()

        //======================================================================
        // 4. Get a list of the parameter group's parameters. This list is
        //    likely to be long, so use pagination. Find the
        //    auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters.
        //======================================================================

        let parameters = await describeDBParameters(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName)

        //======================================================================
        // 5. Parse and display each parameter's name, description, and
        //    allowed values.
        //======================================================================
```

```
        for parameter in parameters {
            let name = parameter.parameterName
            guard let name else {
                print("*** Unable to get parameter name!")
                continue
            }

            if name == "auto_increment_offset" || name ==
"auto_increment_increment" {
                print("Parameter \(name):")
                print("          Value: \(parameter.parameterValue ??
"<undefined>")")
                print("      Data type: \(parameter.dataType ?? "<unknown>")")
                print("    Description: \(parameter.description ?? "")")
                print(" Allowed values: \(parameter.allowedValues ??
"<unspecified")")
                print(String(repeating: "=", count: 78))
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. Modify both the auto_increment_offset and
        //    auto_increment_increment parameters in one call in the custom
        //    parameter group. Set their parameterValue fields to a new
        //    permitted value.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Setting auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment both to
5...")
        await modifyDBParameters(groupName: dbParameterGroupName)

        //=====================================================================
        // 7. Get and display the updated parameters, specifying a source of
        //    "user" to get only the modified parameters.
        //=====================================================================

        let updatedParameters = await describeDBParameters(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName, source: "user")

        for parameter in updatedParameters {
            let name = parameter.parameterName
            guard let name else {
                print("*** Unable to get parameter name!")
```

```
                continue
            }

            print("Parameter \(name):")
            print("          Value: \(parameter.parameterValue ??
"<undefined>")")
            print("      Data type: \(parameter.dataType ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("    Description: \(parameter.description ?? "")")
            print(" Allowed values: \(parameter.allowedValues ??
"<unspecified")")
            print(String(repeating: "=", count: 78))
        }

        //======================================================================
        // 8. Get a list of allowed engine versions using
        //    DescribeRDSEngineVersions.
        //======================================================================

        await listAllowedEngines(family: selectedFamily)

        //======================================================================
        // 9. Get a list of micro instance classes available for the selected
        //    engine and engine version.
        //======================================================================

        let dbInstanceClass = await chooseMicroInstance(engine: "mysql",
engineVersion: selectedEngineVersion)
        guard let dbInstanceClass else {
            print("Did not get a valid instance class. Canceling operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //======================================================================
        // 10. Create an RDS database that contains a MySQL database and uses
        //     the parameter group we created.
        //======================================================================

        print("Creating the database instance...")

        guard let instanceClass = dbInstanceClass.dbInstanceClass else {
            print("Instance class name is unknown. Canceling operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
```

```
        }

        dbInstanceIdentifier = tempName(prefix: "sample-identifier")
        let dbInstanceArn = await createDBInstance(
            name: "SampleDatabase\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))",
            instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier,
            parameterGroupName: dbParameterGroupName,
            engine: "mysql",
            engineVersion: selectedEngineVersion!,
            instanceClass: instanceClass,
            username: dbUsername,
            password: dbPassword
        )

        if dbInstanceArn == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 11. Wait for the database instance to be ready by calling
        //     DescribeDBInstances repeatedly until it reports
        //     dbInstanceStatus as "available". This can take upwards of 10
        //     minutes, let the user know that.
        //=====================================================================

        guard let endpoint = await waitUntilDBInstanceReady(instanceIdentifier:
dbInstanceIdentifier) else {
            print("\nDid not get a valid endpoint from AWS RDS.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        guard let endpointAddress = endpoint.address else {
            print("\nNo endpoint address returned.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }
        guard let endpointPort = endpoint.port else {
            print("\nNo endpoint port returned.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }
```

```
        //=====================================================================
        // 12. Display connection information for the database instance.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nTo connect to the new database instance using 'mysql' from the
shell:")
        print("    mysql -h \(endpointAddress) -P \(endpointPort) -u
\(self.dbUsername)")

        //=====================================================================
        // 13. Create a snapshot of the database instance.
        //=====================================================================

        dbSnapshotIdentifier = tempName(prefix: "sample-snapshot")
        await createDBSnapshot(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier,
snapshotIdentifier: dbSnapshotIdentifier)

        //=====================================================================
        // 14. Wait for the snapshot to be ready.
        //=====================================================================

        await waitUntilDBSnapshotReady(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier,
snapshotIdentifier: dbSnapshotIdentifier)

        // That's it! Clean up and exit!

        print("Example complete! Cleaning up...")
        await cleanUp()
    }

    /// Clean up by discarding and closing down all allocated EC2 items.
    func cleanUp() async {
        print("Deleting the database instance \(dbInstanceIdentifier)...")
        await deleteDBInstance(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier)
        await waitUntilDBInstanceDeleted(instanceIdentifier:
dbInstanceIdentifier)

        print("Deleting the database parameter group \(dbParameterGroupName)...")
        await deleteDBParameterGroup(groupName: dbParameterGroupName)
    }

    /// Get all the database engine versions available for the specified
    /// database engine.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameter engineName: The name of the database engine to query.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion` structures,
    ///   each describing one supported version of the specified database.
    func getDBEngineVersions(engineName: String) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion] {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(
                input: DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput(
                    engine: engineName
                )
            )

            return output.dbEngineVersions ?? []
        } catch {
            return []
        }
    }

    /// Create a new database parameter group with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the new parameter group.
    ///   - familyName: The name of the parameter group family.
    /// - Returns:
    func createDBParameterGroup(groupName: String, familyName: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(
                input: CreateDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupFamily: familyName,
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    description: "Created using the AWS SDK for Swift"
                )
            )
            return output.dbParameterGroup
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the parameter group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Get descriptions of the database parameter groups matching the given
```

```
    /// name.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to describe.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of [RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup] objects
    ///   describing the parameter group.
    func describeDBParameterGroups(groupName: String) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup]? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(
                input: DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
            return output.dbParameterGroups
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting the database parameter group's details:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Returns the detailed parameter list for the specified database
    /// parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the parameter group to return parameters for.
    ///   - source: The types of parameters to return (`user`, `system`, or
    ///     `engine-default`).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RdSClientTypes.Parameter` objects, each
    ///   describing one of the group's parameters.
    func describeDBParameters(groupName: String, source: String? = nil) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.Parameter] {
        var parameterList: [RDSClientTypes.Parameter] = []

        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeDBParametersPaginated(
                input: DescribeDBParametersInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    source: source
                )
            )
```

```
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let parameters = page.parameters else {
                    return []
                }

                parameterList += parameters
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting database parameters:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return parameterList
    }

    /// Demonstrates modifying two of the specified database parameter group's
    /// parameters.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to change
    ///   parameters for.
    func modifyDBParameters(groupName: String) async {
        let parameter1 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_offset",
            parameterValue: "5"
        )
        let parameter2 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_increment",
            parameterValue: "5"
        )

        let parameterList = [parameter1, parameter2]

        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(
                input: ModifyDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    parameters: parameterList
                )
            )

            print("Successfully modified the parameter group \(groupName).")
```

```
        } catch {
            print("*** Error modifying the parameter group \(groupName):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Output a list of the database engine versions supported by the
    /// specified family.
    ///
    /// - Parameter family: The family for which to list allowed database
    ///   engines.
    func listAllowedEngines(family: String?) async {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(
                input: DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput(
                    dbParameterGroupFamily: family,
                    engine: "mysql"
                )
            )

            guard let engineVersions = output.dbEngineVersions else {
                print("No engine versions returned.")
                return
            }

            print("Found \(engineVersions.count) database engine versions:")
            for version in engineVersions {
                print("    \(version.engineVersion ?? "<unknown>"):
\(version.dbEngineDescription ?? "")")
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting database engine version list:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return
        }
    }

    /// Print a list of available database instances with "micro" in the class
    /// name, then return one of them to be used by other code.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - engine: The database engine for which to list database instance
    ///     classes.
    ///   - engineVersion: The database version for which to list instances.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Returns: An `RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption` describing
    ///   the selected instance type.
    func chooseMicroInstance(engine: String = "mysql", engineVersion: String? =
nil) async -> RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption? {
        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginated(
                input: DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput(
                    engine: engine,
                    engineVersion: engineVersion
                )
            )

            var optionsList: [RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption] = []

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let orderableDBInstanceOptions =
page.orderableDBInstanceOptions else {
                    continue
                }

                for dbInstanceOption in orderableDBInstanceOptions {
                    guard let className = dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass else {
                        continue
                    }
                    if className.contains("micro") {
                        optionsList.append(dbInstanceOption)
                    }
                }
            }

            print("Found \(optionsList.count) database instances of 'micro' class
types:")
            for dbInstanceOption in optionsList {
                print("    \(dbInstanceOption.engine ??
"<unknown>") \(dbInstanceOption.engineVersion ?? "<unknown>")
(\(dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass ?? "<unknown class>"))")
            }

            return optionsList[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting a list of orderable instance options:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
```

```
        }
    }

    /// Create a new database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the database to create.
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier to give the new database
    ///     instance.
    ///   - parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group to associate
    ///     with the new database instance.
    ///   - engine: The database engine to use.
    ///   - engineVersion: The version of the database given by `engine` to
    ///     use.
    ///   - instanceClass: The memory and compute capacity of the database
    ///     instance, such as `db.m5.large``.
    ///   - username: The admin user's username to establish for the new
    ///     instance.
    ///   - password: The password to use for the specified user's access.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string indicating the ARN of the newly created database
    ///   instance, or nil if the instance couldn't be created.
    func createDBInstance(name: String, instanceIdentifier: String,
parameterGroupName: String,
                          engine: String, engineVersion: String, instanceClass:
String,
                          username: String, password: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBInstance(
                input: CreateDBInstanceInput(
                    allocatedStorage: 100,
                    dbInstanceClass: instanceClass,
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    dbName: name,
                    dbParameterGroupName: parameterGroupName,
                    engine: engine,
                    engineVersion: engineVersion,
                    masterUserPassword: password,
                    masterUsername: username,
                    storageType: "gp2"
                )
            )

            guard let dbInstance = output.dbInstance else {
```

```
                print("*** Unable to get the database instance.")
                return nil
            }

            return dbInstance.dbInstanceArn
        } catch {
            print("*** An error occurred while creating the database instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Wait until the specified database is available to use.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The database instance identifier of the
    ///   database to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBInstanceReady(instanceIdentifier: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.Endpoint? {
        do {
            putString("Waiting for the database instance to be ready to use. This
may take 10 minutes or more...")
            while true {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBInstances(
                    input: DescribeDBInstancesInput(
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier
                    )
                )

                guard let instanceList = output.dbInstances else {
                    continue
                }

                for instance in instanceList {
                    let status = instance.dbInstanceStatus

                    guard let status else {
                        print("\nUnable to determine the status.")
                        continue
                    }

                    if status.contains("available") {
                        return instance.endpoint
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
```

```
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to wait until the database is ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Create a snapshot of the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database instance to
    ///     snapshot.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: A unique identifier to give the newly-created
    ///     snapshot.
    func createDBSnapshot(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier: String)
async {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(
                input: CreateDBSnapshotInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                )
            )

            guard let snapshot = output.dbSnapshot else {
                print("No snapshot returned.")
                return
            }

            print("The snapshot has been created with ID
\(snapshot.dbiResourceId ?? "<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the database snapshot named
\(snapshotIdentifier): \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Wait until the specified database snapshot is available to use.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database for which the
    ///     snapshot was taken.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: The identifier of the snapshot to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBSnapshotReady(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier:
 String) async {
        var snapshotReady = false

        putString("Waiting for the snapshot to be ready...")

        do {
            while !snapshotReady {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBSnapshots(
                    input: DescribeDBSnapshotsInput(
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                        dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                    )
                )

                guard let snapshotList = output.dbSnapshots else {
                    return
                }

                for snapshot in snapshotList {
                    guard let snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status else {
                        return
                    }

                    if snapshotReadyStr.contains("available") {
                        snapshotReady = true
                        print()
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("\n*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
        } catch {
            print("\n*** Unable to wait for the database snapshot to be ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Delete the specified database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database
    ///   instance to delete.
    func deleteDBInstance(instanceIdentifier: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(
                input: DeleteDBInstanceInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    deleteAutomatedBackups: true,
                    skipFinalSnapshot: true
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database instance
\(instanceIdentifier): \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Wait until the specified database instance has been deleted.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database
    ///   instance to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBInstanceDeleted(instanceIdentifier: String) async {
        putString("Waiting for the database instance to be deleted. This may take
a few minutes...")
        do {
            var isDatabaseDeleted = false
            var foundInstance = false

            while !isDatabaseDeleted {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBInstances(input:
DescribeDBInstancesInput())
                guard let instanceList = output.dbInstances else {
                    return
                }

                foundInstance = false
```

```
                for instance in instanceList {
                    guard let foundInstanceIdentifier =
instance.dbInstanceIdentifier else {
                        continue
                    }

                    if instanceIdentifier == foundInstanceIdentifier {
                        foundInstance = true
                        break
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("\n*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
                if !foundInstance {
                    isDatabaseDeleted = true
                    print()
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("\n*** Error waiting for the database instance to be deleted:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Delete the specified database parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to delete.
    func deleteDBParameterGroup(groupName: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(
                input: DeleteDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database parameter group \(groupName):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
```

```
    }

    /// Generate and return a unique file name that begins with the specified
    /// string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prefix: Text to use at the beginning of the returned name.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing a unique filename that begins with the
    ///   specified `prefix`.
    ///
    /// The returned name uses a random number between 1 million and 1 billion to
    /// provide reasonable certainty of uniqueness for the purposes of this
    /// example.
    func tempName(prefix: String) -> String {
        return "\(prefix)-\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))"
    }

    /// Print a string to standard output without a trailing newline, and
    /// without buffering.
    ///
    /// - Parameter str: The string to output.
    func putString(_ str: String = "") {
        if str.length >= 1 {
            let data = str.data(using: .utf8)
            guard let data else {
                return
            }
            FileHandle.standardOutput.write(data)
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon RDS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon RDS API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Relational Database Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateDBSnapshot with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAccountAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBEngineVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBInstances with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBParameterGroups with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBParameters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeDBSnapshots with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GenerateRDSAuthToken with an AWS SDK
- Use ModifyDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ModifyDBParameterGroup with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RebootDBInstance with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateDBInstance` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
```

```
    /// Create an RDS DB instance with a particular set of properties. Use the
action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">Name for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">DB parameter group to associate with the
instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="allocatedStorage">The amount of storage in gibibytes (GiB)
to allocate to the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="adminName">Admin user name.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">Admin user password.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstance(string dbName, string
dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName, string dbEngine, string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass, int allocatedStorage, string adminName, string
adminPassword)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBName = dbName,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                DBParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass,
                AllocatedStorage = allocatedStorage,
                MasterUsername = adminName,
                MasterUserPassword = adminPassword
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
    request.SetDBName(DB_NAME);
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
    request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
    request.SetEngine(engineVersion.GetEngine());
    request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion.GetEngineVersion());
    request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);
    request.SetStorageType(DB_STORAGE_TYPE);
    request.SetAllocatedStorage(DB_ALLOCATED_STORAGE);
    request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
    request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateDBInstance(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a DB instance

The following `create-db-instance` example uses the required options to launch a new DB instance.

```
aws rds create-db-instance \
    --db-instance-identifier test-mysql-instance \
    --db-instance-class db.t3.micro \
    --engine mysql \
    --master-username admin \
    --master-user-password secret99 \
    --allocated-storage 20
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBInstance": {
        "DBInstanceIdentifier": "test-mysql-instance",
        "DBInstanceClass": "db.t3.micro",
        "Engine": "mysql",
        "DBInstanceStatus": "creating",
        "MasterUsername": "admin",
        "AllocatedStorage": 20,
        "PreferredBackupWindow": "12:55-13:25",
        "BackupRetentionPeriod": 1,
        "DBSecurityGroups": [],
        "VpcSecurityGroups": [
            {
                "VpcSecurityGroupId": "sg-12345abc",
                "Status": "active"
            }
        ],
        "DBParameterGroups": [
            {
```

```
                "DBParameterGroupName": "default.mysql5.7",
                "ParameterApplyStatus": "in-sync"
            }
        ],
        "DBSubnetGroup": {
            "DBSubnetGroupName": "default",
            "DBSubnetGroupDescription": "default",
            "VpcId": "vpc-2ff2ff2f",
            "SubnetGroupStatus": "Complete",
            "Subnets": [
                {
                    "SubnetIdentifier": "subnet-########",
                    "SubnetAvailabilityZone": {
                        "Name": "us-west-2c"
                    },
                    "SubnetStatus": "Active"
                },
                {
                    "SubnetIdentifier": "subnet-########",
                    "SubnetAvailabilityZone": {
                        "Name": "us-west-2d"
                    },
                    "SubnetStatus": "Active"
                },
                {
                    "SubnetIdentifier": "subnet-########",
                    "SubnetAvailabilityZone": {
                        "Name": "us-west-2a"
                    },
                    "SubnetStatus": "Active"
                },
                {
                    "SubnetIdentifier": "subnet-########",
                    "SubnetAvailabilityZone": {
                        "Name": "us-west-2b"
                    },
                    "SubnetStatus": "Active"
                }
            ]
        },
        "PreferredMaintenanceWindow": "sun:08:07-sun:08:37",
        "PendingModifiedValues": {
            "MasterUserPassword": "****"
        },
```

```
        "MultiAZ": false,
        "EngineVersion": "5.7.22",
        "AutoMinorVersionUpgrade": true,
        "ReadReplicaDBInstanceIdentifiers": [],
        "LicenseModel": "general-public-license",
        "OptionGroupMemberships": [
            {
                "OptionGroupName": "default:mysql-5-7",
                "Status": "in-sync"
            }
        ],
        "PubliclyAccessible": true,
        "StorageType": "gp2",
        "DbInstancePort": 0,
        "StorageEncrypted": false,
        "DbiResourceId": "db-5555EXAMPLE44444444EXAMPLE",
        "CACertificateIdentifier": "rds-ca-2019",
        "DomainMemberships": [],
        "CopyTagsToSnapshot": false,
        "MonitoringInterval": 0,
        "DBInstanceArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-west-2:123456789012:db:test-mysql-
instance",
        "IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled": false,
        "PerformanceInsightsEnabled": false,
        "DeletionProtection": false,
        "AssociatedRoles": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating an Amazon RDS DB Instance in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateInstance creates a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, dbName string,
 dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, parameterGroupName string,
 dbInstanceClass string,
 storageType string, allocatedStorage int32, adminName string, adminPassword
 string) (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBName:               aws.String(dbName),
  DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
  EngineVersion:        aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
  StorageType:          aws.String(storageType),
  AllocatedStorage:     aws.Int32(allocatedStorage),
  MasterUsername:       aws.String(adminName),
  MasterUserPassword:   aws.String(adminPassword),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
```

```
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 * database credentials. If you do not create a
 * secret, this example will not work. For more details, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 *
 */

public class CreateDBInstance {
    public static long sleepTime = 20;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbName> <secretName>

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\s
                    dbName - The database name.\s
                    secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that
 contains the database credentials."
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        String dbName = args[1];
        String secretName = args[2];
        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
 User.class);
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        createDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbName,
user.getUsername(), user.getPassword());
        waitForInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
                .region(region)

.credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
    }

    private static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                .secretId(secretName)
                .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }

    public static void createDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient,
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbName,
            String userName,
            String userPassword) {

        try {
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                .allocatedStorage(100)
                .dbName(dbName)
                .engine("mysql")
                .dbInstanceClass("db.t3.medium") // Updated to a supported class
                .engineVersion("8.0.32")         // Updated to a supported
version
```

```
                .storageType("gp2")             // Changed to General Purpose SSD
(gp2)
                .masterUsername(userName)
                .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
                .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            // Loop until the cluster is ready.
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances(instanceRequest);
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available"))
                        instanceReady = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
            System.out.println("Database instance is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDatabaseInstance(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbNamedbVal: String?,
    masterUsernameVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
) {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            allocatedStorage = 100
            dbName = dbNamedbVal
            engine = "mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = "db.t3.micro" // Use a supported instance class
            engineVersion = "8.0.39" // Use a supported engine version
            storageType = "gp2"
            masterUsername = masterUsernameVal
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
```

```
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}

// Waits until the database instance is available.
suspend fun waitForInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    val sleepTime: Long = 20
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")

    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        instanceReady = true
                    } else {
                        println("...$instanceReadyStr")
                        delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        println("Database instance is available!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;



$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-2'
]);

$dbIdentifier = '<<{{db-identifier}}>>';
$dbClass = 'db.t2.micro';
$storage = 5;
$engine = 'MySQL';
$username = 'MyUser';
$password = 'MyPassword';

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->createDBInstance([
        'DBInstanceIdentifier' => $dbIdentifier,
        'DBInstanceClass' => $dbClass,
        'AllocatedStorage' => $storage,
        'Engine' => $engine,
        'MasterUsername' => $username,
        'MasterUserPassword' => $password,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_db_instance(
        self,
        db_name,
        instance_id,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        instance_class,
        storage_type,
```

```
        allocated_storage,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB instance.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that is created in the DB
instance.
        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param parameter_group_name: A parameter group to associate with the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version for the created database.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :param storage_type: The storage type of the DB instance.
        :param allocated_storage: The amount of storage allocated on the DB
instance, in GiBs.
        :param admin_name: The name of the admin user for the created database.
        :param admin_password: The admin password for the created database.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBName=db_name,
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
                StorageType=storage_type,
                AllocatedStorage=allocated_storage,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Create a new database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the database to create.
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier to give the new database
    ///     instance.
    ///   - parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group to associate
    ///     with the new database instance.
    ///   - engine: The database engine to use.
    ///   - engineVersion: The version of the database given by `engine` to
    ///     use.
    ///   - instanceClass: The memory and compute capacity of the database
    ///     instance, such as `db.m5.large``.
    ///   - username: The admin user's username to establish for the new
    ///     instance.
    ///   - password: The password to use for the specified user's access.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string indicating the ARN of the newly created database
    ///   instance, or nil if the instance couldn't be created.
    func createDBInstance(name: String, instanceIdentifier: String,
 parameterGroupName: String,
```

```
                        engine: String, engineVersion: String, instanceClass:
String,
                        username: String, password: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBInstance(
                input: CreateDBInstanceInput(
                    allocatedStorage: 100,
                    dbInstanceClass: instanceClass,
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    dbName: name,
                    dbParameterGroupName: parameterGroupName,
                    engine: engine,
                    engineVersion: engineVersion,
                    masterUserPassword: password,
                    masterUsername: username,
                    storageType: "gp2"
                )
            )

            guard let dbInstance = output.dbInstance else {
                print("*** Unable to get the database instance.")
                return nil
            }

            return dbInstance.dbInstanceArn
        } catch {
            print("*** An error occurred while creating the database instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateDBParameterGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB parameter group. Use the action
DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="family">Family of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">Description of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB parameter group.</returns>
    public async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDBParameterGroup(
        string name, string family, string description)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new CreateDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = family,
                Description = description
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupRequest request;
    request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
    request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
    request.SetDescription("Example parameter group.");

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateDBParameterGroup(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully created."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBParameterGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a DB parameter group

The following `create-db-parameter-group` example creates a DB parameter group.

```
aws rds create-db-parameter-group \
    --db-parameter-group-name mydbparametergroup \
    --db-parameter-group-family MySQL5.6 \
    --description "My new parameter group"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBParameterGroup": {
        "DBParameterGroupName": "mydbparametergroup",
        "DBParameterGroupFamily": "mysql5.6",
        "Description": "My new parameter group",
        "DBParameterGroupArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:pg:mydbparametergroup"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a DB Parameter Group in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB parameter group that is based on the
 specified
// parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName:   aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:            aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBParameterGroup, err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createDBParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName, String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
       try {
           CreateDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                   .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                   .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                   .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                   .build();

           CreateDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
           System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbParameterGroup().dbParameterGroupName());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB parameter group that is based on the specified parameter
 group
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter
 group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of
 the new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
```

```
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Create a new database parameter group with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the new parameter group.
    ///   - familyName: The name of the parameter group family.
```

```
    /// - Returns:
    func createDBParameterGroup(groupName: String, familyName: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(
                input: CreateDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupFamily: familyName,
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    description: "Created using the AWS SDK for Swift"
                )
            )
            return output.dbParameterGroup
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the parameter group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateDBSnapshot` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateDBSnapshot(string dbInstanceIdentifier,
string snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        return response.DBSnapshot;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotRequest request;
```

```
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                    client.CreateDBSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
 client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a DB snapshot

The following `create-db-snapshot` example creates a DB snapshot.

```
aws rds create-db-snapshot \
    --db-instance-identifier database-mysql \
    --db-snapshot-identifier mydbsnapshot
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBSnapshot": {
        "DBSnapshotIdentifier": "mydbsnapshot",
        "DBInstanceIdentifier": "database-mysql",
        "Engine": "mysql",
        "AllocatedStorage": 100,
```

```
        "Status": "creating",
        "Port": 3306,
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1b",
        "VpcId": "vpc-6594f31c",
        "InstanceCreateTime": "2019-04-30T15:45:53.663Z",
        "MasterUsername": "admin",
        "EngineVersion": "5.6.40",
        "LicenseModel": "general-public-license",
        "SnapshotType": "manual",
        "Iops": 1000,
        "OptionGroupName": "default:mysql-5-6",
        "PercentProgress": 0,
        "StorageType": "io1",
        "Encrypted": true,
        "KmsKeyId": "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:123456789012:key/
AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "DBSnapshotArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:snapshot:mydbsnapshot",
        "IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled": false,
        "ProcessorFeatures": [],
        "DbiResourceId": "db-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating a DB Snapshot in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
```

```
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBSnapshotInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBSnapshot, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Create an Amazon RDS snapshot.
    public static void createSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier, String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
            CreateDbSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
 CreateDbSnapshotRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .dbSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .build();

            CreateDbSnapshotResponse response =
 rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
            System.out.println("The Snapshot id is " +
 response.dbSnapshot().dbiResourceId());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
```

```
$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-2'
]);

$dbIdentifier = '<<{{db-identifier}}>>';
$snapshotName = '<<{{backup_2018_12_25}}>>';

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->createDBSnapshot([
        'DBInstanceIdentifier' => $dbIdentifier,
        'DBSnapshotIdentifier' => $snapshotName,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, instance_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB instance.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_snapshot(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id,
DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create a snapshot for an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
# DB instance.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] The resource containing SDK logic.
# @param db_instance_name [String] The name of the Amazon RDS DB instance.
# @return [Aws::RDS::DBSnapshot, nil] The snapshot created, or nil if error.
def create_snapshot(rds_resource, db_instance_name)
  id = "snapshot-#{rand(10**6)}"
  db_instance = rds_resource.db_instance(db_instance_name)
  db_instance.create_snapshot({
                                db_snapshot_identifier: id
                              })
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't create DB instance snapshot #{id}:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Create a snapshot of the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database instance to
    ///     snapshot.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: A unique identifier to give the newly-created
    ///     snapshot.
    func createDBSnapshot(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier: String)
 async {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(
                input: CreateDBSnapshotInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                )
            )

            guard let snapshot = output.dbSnapshot else {
                print("No snapshot returned.")
                return
            }

            print("The snapshot has been created with ID
 \(snapshot.dbiResourceId ?? "<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the database snapshot named
 \(snapshotIdentifier): \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteDBInstance` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a particular DB instance.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
/// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstance(string dbInstanceIdentifier)
{
    var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
        new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
        {
            DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
            SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
            DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
        });

    return response.DBInstance;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
        request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
        request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a DB instance

The following `delete-db-instance` example deletes the specified DB instance after creating a final DB snapshot named `test-instance-final-snap`.

```
aws rds delete-db-instance \
    --db-instance-identifier test-instance \
    --final-db-snapshot-identifier test-instance-final-snap
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBInstance": {
        "DBInstanceIdentifier": "test-instance",
        "DBInstanceStatus": "deleting",
        ...some output truncated...
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteDBInstance {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier>\s

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
```

```
            DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
 DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
 rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status of the database is " +
 response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDatabaseInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
```

```
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


//Create an RDSClient
$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-1'
]);

$dbIdentifier = '<<{{db-identifier}}>>';

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->deleteDBInstance([
        'DBInstanceIdentifier' => $dbIdentifier,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
```

```
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Delete the specified database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database
    ///   instance to delete.
    func deleteDBInstance(instanceIdentifier: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(
                input: DeleteDBInstanceInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    deleteAutomatedBackups: true,
                    skipFinalSnapshot: true
```

```
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database instance
\(instanceIdentifier): \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteDBParameterGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group. The group cannot be a default DB parameter
group
    /// or be associated with any DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDBParameterGroup(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync(
```

```
            new DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
```

```
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a DB parameter group

The following command example deletes a DB parameter group.

```
aws rds delete-db-parameter-group \
    --db-parameter-group-name mydbparametergroup
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Working with DB Parameter Groups in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Delete the parameter group after database has been deleted.
    // An exception is thrown if you attempt to delete the para group while
 database
    // exists.
```

```
   public static void deleteParaGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName,
String dbARN)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean isDataDel = false;
           boolean didFind;
           String instanceARN;

           // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
           while (!isDataDel) {
               DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
               List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
               int listSize = instanceList.size();
               didFind = false;
               int index = 1;
               for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                   instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                   if (instanceARN.compareTo(dbARN) == 0) {
                       System.out.println(dbARN + " still exists");
                       didFind = true;
                   }
                   if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                       // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                       isDataDel = true;
                   }
                   Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                   index++;
               }
           }

           // Delete the para group.
           DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest parameterGroupRequest =
DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                   .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                   .build();

           rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupRequest);
           System.out.println(dbGroupName + " was deleted.");

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.rds_client.delete_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Delete the specified database parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to delete.
    func deleteDBParameterGroup(groupName: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(
                input: DeleteDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
        } catch {
```

```
            print("*** Error deleting the database parameter group \(groupName):
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeAccountAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAccountAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe account attributes

The following `describe-account-attributes` example retrieves the attributes for the current AWS account.

```
aws rds describe-account-attributes
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccountQuotas": [
        {
            "Max": 40,
            "Used": 4,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBInstances"
        },
        {
            "Max": 40,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "ReservedDBInstances"
        },
        {
            "Max": 100000,
            "Used": 40,
            "AccountQuotaName": "AllocatedStorage"
        },
```

```
        {
            "Max": 25,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBSecurityGroups"
        },
        {
            "Max": 20,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "AuthorizationsPerDBSecurityGroup"
        },
        {
            "Max": 50,
            "Used": 1,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBParameterGroups"
        },
        {
            "Max": 100,
            "Used": 3,
            "AccountQuotaName": "ManualSnapshots"
        },
        {
            "Max": 20,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "EventSubscriptions"
        },
        {
            "Max": 50,
            "Used": 1,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBSubnetGroups"
        },
        {
            "Max": 20,
            "Used": 1,
            "AccountQuotaName": "OptionGroups"
        },
        {
            "Max": 20,
            "Used": 6,
            "AccountQuotaName": "SubnetsPerDBSubnetGroup"
        },
        {
            "Max": 5,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "ReadReplicasPerMaster"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Max": 40,
            "Used": 1,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBClusters"
        },
        {
            "Max": 50,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBClusterParameterGroups"
        },
        {
            "Max": 5,
            "Used": 0,
            "AccountQuotaName": "DBClusterRoles"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.AccountQuota;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeAccountAttributesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeAccountAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getAccountAttributes(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getAccountAttributes(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeAccountAttributesResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeAccountAttributes();
            List<AccountQuota> quotasList = response.accountQuotas();
            for (AccountQuota quotas : quotasList) {
                System.out.println("Name is: " + quotas.accountQuotaName());
                System.out.println("Max value is " + quotas.max());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAccountAttributes() {
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeAccountAttributes(DescribeAccountAttributesRequest {})
        response.accountQuotas?.forEach { quotas ->
            val response = response.accountQuotas
            println("Name is: ${quotas.accountQuotaName}")
            println("Max value is ${quotas.max}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBEngineVersions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family
name.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>> DescribeDBEngineVersions(string
engine,
        string dbParameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                      const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersionsResult,
                                      const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.
```

```
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }


        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            auto &engineVersions = outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();
            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
 engineVersions.begin(),
                                        engineVersions.end());
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!marker.empty());


    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the DB engine versions for the MySQL DB engine

The following `describe-db-engine-versions` example displays details about each of the DB engine versions for the specified DB engine.

```
aws rds describe-db-engine-versions \
```

```
    --engine mysql
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBEngineVersions": [
        {
            "Engine": "mysql",
            "EngineVersion": "5.5.46",
            "DBParameterGroupFamily": "mysql5.5",
            "DBEngineDescription": "MySQL Community Edition",
            "DBEngineVersionDescription": "MySQL 5.5.46",
            "ValidUpgradeTarget": [
                {
                    "Engine": "mysql",
                    "EngineVersion": "5.5.53",
                    "Description": "MySQL 5.5.53",
                    "AutoUpgrade": false,
                    "IsMajorVersionUpgrade": false
                },
                {
                    "Engine": "mysql",
                    "EngineVersion": "5.5.54",
                    "Description": "MySQL 5.5.54",
                    "AutoUpgrade": false,
                    "IsMajorVersionUpgrade": false
                },
                {
                    "Engine": "mysql",
                    "EngineVersion": "5.5.57",
                    "Description": "MySQL 5.5.57",
                    "AutoUpgrade": false,
                    "IsMajorVersionUpgrade": false
                },
                ...some output truncated...
            ]
        }
```

For more information, see What Is Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)? in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
```

```
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
engineOb.engineVersion());
            }
```

```
        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.
```

```
        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned
list of
                                       engine versions to those that are
compatible with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS
```

```
    /// Get all the database engine versions available for the specified
    /// database engine.
    ///
    /// - Parameter engineName: The name of the database engine to query.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion` structures,
    ///   each describing one supported version of the specified database.
    func getDBEngineVersions(engineName: String) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion] {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(
                input: DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput(
                    engine: engineName
                )
            )

            return output.dbEngineVersions ?? []
        } catch {
            return []
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBInstances` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Returns a list of DB instances.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
   /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
   public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstances(string
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
   {
       var results = new List<DBInstance>();
       var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
           new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
           {
               DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
           });
       // Get the entire list using the paginator.
       await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
       {
           results.Add(instances);
       }
       return results;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBInstance()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                     Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance &instanceResult,
                                     const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
```

```
                    << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                    << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a DB instance

The following `describe-db-instances` example retrieves details about the specified DB instance.

```
aws rds describe-db-instances \
    --db-instance-identifier mydbinstancecf
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBInstances": [
        {
            "DBInstanceIdentifier": "mydbinstancecf",
            "DBInstanceClass": "db.t3.small",
            "Engine": "mysql",
            "DBInstanceStatus": "available",
            "MasterUsername": "masterawsuser",
            "Endpoint": {
                "Address": "mydbinstancecf.abcexample.us-
east-1.rds.amazonaws.com",
                "Port": 3306,
                "HostedZoneId": "Z2R2ITUGPM61AM"
```

```
            },
            ...some output truncated...
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
```

```
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeDBInstances {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeInstances(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
            List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
            for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                System.out.println("Instance ARN is: " +
 instance.dbInstanceArn());
                System.out.println("The Engine is " + instance.engine());
                System.out.println("Connection endpoint is" +
 instance.endpoint().address());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeInstances() {
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(DescribeDbInstancesRequest
 {})
        response.dbInstances?.forEach { instance ->
            println("Instance Identifier is ${instance.dbInstanceIdentifier}")
            println("The Engine is ${instance.engine}")
            println("Connection endpoint is ${instance.endpoint?.address}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
```

```
//Create an RDSClient
$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-2'
]);

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->describeDBInstances();
    foreach ($result['DBInstances'] as $instance) {
        print('<p>DB Identifier: ' . $instance['DBInstanceIdentifier']);
        print('<br />Endpoint: ' . $instance['Endpoint']["Address"]
            . ':' . $instance['Endpoint']["Port"]);
        print('<br />Current Status: ' . $instance["DBInstanceStatus"]);
        print('</p>');
    }
    print(" Raw Result ");
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
```

```
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instances.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return [Array, nil] List of all DB instances, or nil if error.
def list_instances(rds_resource)
  db_instances = []
  rds_resource.db_instances.each do |i|
    db_instances.append({
                          "name": i.id,
                          "status": i.db_instance_status
                        })
  end
  db_instances
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list instances:\n#{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Wait until the specified database is available to use.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The database instance identifier of the
    ///   database to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBInstanceReady(instanceIdentifier: String) async ->
 RDSClientTypes.Endpoint? {
        do {
            putString("Waiting for the database instance to be ready to use. This
 may take 10 minutes or more...")
            while true {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBInstances(
                    input: DescribeDBInstancesInput(
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier
                    )
                )

                guard let instanceList = output.dbInstances else {
                    continue
                }

                for instance in instanceList {
                    let status = instance.dbInstanceStatus

                    guard let status else {
                        print("\nUnable to determine the status.")
                        continue
                    }

                    if status.contains("available") {
                        return instance.endpoint
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
```

```
            print("*** Unable to wait until the database is ready:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBParameterGroups` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get descriptions of DB parameter groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of DB parameter group descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBParameterGroup>> DescribeDBParameterGroups(string
 name = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
```

```
                DBParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroups;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB parameter group named '" <<
                      PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." << std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily = outcome.GetResult().GetDBParameterGroups()
[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe your DB parameter group

The following `describe-db-parameter-groups` example retrieves details about your DB parameter groups.

```
aws rds describe-db-parameter-groups
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBParameterGroups": [
        {
            "DBParameterGroupName": "default.aurora-mysql5.7",
            "DBParameterGroupFamily": "aurora-mysql5.7",
            "Description": "Default parameter group for aurora-mysql5.7",
            "DBParameterGroupArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:pg:default.aurora-mysql5.7"
        },
        {
            "DBParameterGroupName": "default.aurora-postgresql9.6",
            "DBParameterGroupFamily": "aurora-postgresql9.6",
            "Description": "Default parameter group for aurora-postgresql9.6",
            "DBParameterGroupArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:pg:default.aurora-postgresql9.6"
        },
        {
            "DBParameterGroupName": "default.aurora5.6",
            "DBParameterGroupFamily": "aurora5.6",
            "Description": "Default parameter group for aurora5.6",
            "DBParameterGroupArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:pg:default.aurora5.6"
        },
```

```
        {
            "DBParameterGroupName": "default.mariadb10.1",
            "DBParameterGroupFamily": "mariadb10.1",
            "Description": "Default parameter group for mariadb10.1",
            "DBParameterGroupArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:pg:default.mariadb10.1"
        },
        ...some output truncated...
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with DB Parameter Groups in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}
```

```
// GetParameterGroup gets a DB parameter group by name.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeDbParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
 DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbParameterGroupsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(groupsRequest);
            List<DBParameterGroup> groups = response.dbParameterGroups();
            for (DBParameterGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
 group.dbParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group description is " +
 group.description());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_parameter_groups(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) parameter groups.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return [Array, nil] List of all parameter groups, or nil if error.
def list_parameter_groups(rds_resource)
  parameter_groups = []
  rds_resource.db_parameter_groups.each do |p|
    parameter_groups.append({
                              "name": p.db_parameter_group_name,
                              "description": p.description
                            })
  end
  parameter_groups
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list parameter groups:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Get descriptions of the database parameter groups matching the given
    /// name.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to describe.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of [RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup] objects
    ///   describing the parameter group.
    func describeDBParameterGroups(groupName: String) async ->
 [RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup]? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(
                input: DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
            return output.dbParameterGroups
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting the database parameter group's details:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBParameters` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB parameters from a specific parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupName">Name of a specific DB parameter
group.</param>
    /// <param name="source">Optional source for selecting parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>List of parameter values.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeDBParameters(string
dbParameterGroupName, string source = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Parameter>();
        var paginateParameters = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBParameters(
            new DescribeDBParametersRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupName,
                Source = source
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var parameters in paginateParameters.Parameters)
        {
            results.Add(parameters);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBParameters(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                  const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                  const Aws::String &source,
                                  Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter>
 &parametersResult,
                                  const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
```

```
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the parameters in a DB parameter group

The following `describe-db-parameters` example retrieves the details of the specified DB parameter group.

```
aws rds describe-db-parameters \
    --db-parameter-group-name mydbpg
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameters": [
        {
            "ParameterName": "allow-suspicious-udfs",
            "Description": "Controls whether user-defined functions that have
 only an xxx symbol for the main function can be loaded",
            "Source": "engine-default",
            "ApplyType": "static",
            "DataType": "boolean",
            "AllowedValues": "0,1",
            "IsModifiable": false,
            "ApplyMethod": "pending-reboot"
        },
        {
            "ParameterName": "auto_generate_certs",
            "Description": "Controls whether the server autogenerates SSL key and
 certificate files in the data directory, if they do not already exist.",
            "Source": "engine-default",
            "ApplyType": "static",
            "DataType": "boolean",
            "AllowedValues": "0,1",
            "IsModifiable": false,
            "ApplyMethod": "pending-reboot"
        },
        ...some output truncated...
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with DB Parameter Groups in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator := rds.NewDescribeDBParametersPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBParametersInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:               aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
```

```
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get parameters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Retrieve parameters in the group.
   public static void describeDbParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName, int flag) {
       try {
           DescribeDbParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
           if (flag == 0) {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                       .build();
           } else {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                       .source("user")
                       .build();
           }

           DescribeDbParametersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
```

```
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset
or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") ==
0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this
prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
```

```
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) parameter groups.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return [Array, nil] List of all parameter groups, or nil if error.
def list_parameter_groups(rds_resource)
  parameter_groups = []
  rds_resource.db_parameter_groups.each do |p|
    parameter_groups.append({
                              "name": p.db_parameter_group_name,
                              "description": p.description
                            })
  end
  parameter_groups
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
```

```
  puts "Couldn't list parameter groups:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Returns the detailed parameter list for the specified database
    /// parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the parameter group to return parameters for.
    ///   - source: The types of parameters to return (`user`, `system`, or
    ///     `engine-default`).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RdSClientTypes.Parameter` objects, each
    ///   describing one of the group's parameters.
    func describeDBParameters(groupName: String, source: String? = nil) async ->
 [RDSClientTypes.Parameter] {
        var parameterList: [RDSClientTypes.Parameter] = []

        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeDBParametersPaginated(
                input: DescribeDBParametersInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    source: source
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let parameters = page.parameters else {
```

```
                    return []
                }

                parameterList += parameters
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting database parameters:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return parameterList
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeDBSnapshots` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBSnapshot>> DescribeDBSnapshots(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBSnapshot>();
        var snapshotsPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBSnapshots(
            new DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var snapshots in snapshotsPaginator.DBSnapshots)
        {
            results.Add(snapshots);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);
```

```
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
 client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe a DB snapshot for a DB instance

The following `describe-db-snapshots` example retrieves the details of a DB snapshot for a DB instance.

```
aws rds describe-db-snapshots \
    --db-snapshot-identifier mydbsnapshot
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBSnapshots": [
        {
            "DBSnapshotIdentifier": "mydbsnapshot",
            "DBInstanceIdentifier": "mysqldb",
            "SnapshotCreateTime": "2018-02-08T22:28:08.598Z",
            "Engine": "mysql",
            "AllocatedStorage": 20,
            "Status": "available",
```

```
            "Port": 3306,
            "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1f",
            "VpcId": "vpc-6594f31c",
            "InstanceCreateTime": "2018-02-08T22:24:55.973Z",
            "MasterUsername": "mysqladmin",
            "EngineVersion": "5.6.37",
            "LicenseModel": "general-public-license",
            "SnapshotType": "manual",
            "OptionGroupName": "default:mysql-5-6",
            "PercentProgress": 100,
            "StorageType": "gp2",
            "Encrypted": false,
            "DBSnapshotArn": "arn:aws:rds:us-
east-1:123456789012:snapshot:mydbsnapshot",
            "IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled": false,
            "ProcessorFeatures": [],
            "DbiResourceId": "db-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Creating a DB Snapshot in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

Example 2: To find the number of manual snapshots taken

The following `describe-db-snapshots` example uses the `length` operator in the `--query` option to return the number of manual snapshots that have been taken in a particular AWS Region.

```
aws rds describe-db-snapshots \
    --snapshot-type manual \
    --query "length(*[].{DBSnapshots:SnapshotType})" \
    --region eu-central-1
```

Output:

```
35
```

For more information, see Creating a DB Snapshot in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetSnapshot gets a DB instance snapshot.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName
 string) (*types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBSnapshotsInput{
   DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB instance snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_snapshots(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
```

```
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance
# snapshots.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return instance_snapshots [Array, nil] All instance snapshots, or nil if
 error.
def list_instance_snapshots(rds_resource)
  instance_snapshots = []
  rds_resource.db_snapshots.each do |s|
    instance_snapshots.append({
                                "id": s.snapshot_id,
                                "status": s.status
                              })
```

```
  end
  instance_snapshots
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list instance snapshots:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Wait until the specified database snapshot is available to use.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database for which the
    ///     snapshot was taken.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: The identifier of the snapshot to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBSnapshotReady(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier:
 String) async {
        var snapshotReady = false

        putString("Waiting for the snapshot to be ready...")

        do {
            while !snapshotReady {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBSnapshots(
                    input: DescribeDBSnapshotsInput(
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                        dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                    )
                )
```

```
                guard let snapshotList = output.dbSnapshots else {
                    return
                }

                for snapshot in snapshotList {
                    guard let snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status else {
                        return
                    }

                    if snapshotReadyStr.contains("available") {
                        snapshotReady = true
                        print()
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("\n*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("\n*** Unable to wait for the database snapshot to be ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
   /// engine and engine version.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
   /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
   /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
   public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(string engine, string engineVersion)
   {
       // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
       var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
       var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
           new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
           {
               Engine = engine,
               EngineVersion = engineVersion,
           });
       // Get the entire list using the paginator.
       await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
       {
           results.Add(instanceOptions);
       }
       return results;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available 'micro' DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseMicroDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::chooseMicroDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                             const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                             Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                             const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
```

```
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption>
 &options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option:
 options) {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (instanceClass.find("micro") != std::string::npos) {
                    if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                                  instanceClass) ==
                        instanceClasses.end()) {
                        instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                    }
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available micro DB instance classes for your database
 engine are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which micro DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe orderable DB instance options

The following `describe-orderable-db-instance-options` example retrieves details about the orderable options for a DB instances running the MySQL DB engine.

```
aws rds describe-orderable-db-instance-options \
    --engine mysql
```

Output:

```
{
    "OrderableDBInstanceOptions": [
        {
            "MinStorageSize": 5,
            "ReadReplicaCapable": true,
            "MaxStorageSize": 6144,
            "AvailabilityZones": [
                {
                    "Name": "us-east-1a"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "us-east-1b"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "us-east-1c"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "us-east-1d"
                }
            ],
            "SupportsIops": false,
            "AvailableProcessorFeatures": [],
```

```
            "MultiAZCapable": true,
            "DBInstanceClass": "db.m1.large",
            "Vpc": true,
            "StorageType": "gp2",
            "LicenseModel": "general-public-license",
            "EngineVersion": "5.5.46",
            "SupportsStorageEncryption": false,
            "SupportsEnhancedMonitoring": true,
            "Engine": "mysql",
            "SupportsIAMDatabaseAuthentication": false,
            "SupportsPerformanceInsights": false
        }
    ]
    ...some output truncated...
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}
```

```
// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instanceOptions []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instance options: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instanceOptions = append(instanceOptions,
 output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instanceOptions, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
 instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by
 the DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
 compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
```

```
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Print a list of available database instances with "micro" in the class
    /// name, then return one of them to be used by other code.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - engine: The database engine for which to list database instance
    ///     classes.
    ///   - engineVersion: The database version for which to list instances.
```

```
   ///
   /// - Returns: An `RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption` describing
   ///   the selected instance type.
   func chooseMicroInstance(engine: String = "mysql", engineVersion: String? =
nil) async -> RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption? {
       do {
           let pages = rdsClient.describeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginated(
               input: DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput(
                   engine: engine,
                   engineVersion: engineVersion
               )
           )

           var optionsList: [RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption] = []

           for try await page in pages {
               guard let orderableDBInstanceOptions =
page.orderableDBInstanceOptions else {
                   continue
               }

               for dbInstanceOption in orderableDBInstanceOptions {
                   guard let className = dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass else {
                       continue
                   }
                   if className.contains("micro") {
                       optionsList.append(dbInstanceOption)
                   }
               }
           }

           print("Found \(optionsList.count) database instances of 'micro' class
types:")
           for dbInstanceOption in optionsList {
               print("    \(dbInstanceOption.engine ??
"<unknown>") \(dbInstanceOption.engineVersion ?? "<unknown>")
(\(dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass ?? "<unknown class>"))")
           }

           return optionsList[0]
       } catch {
           print("*** Error getting a list of orderable instance options:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
           return nil
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GenerateRDSAuthToken` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateRDSAuthToken`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the RdsUtilities class to generate an authentication token.

```
public class GenerateRDSAuthToken {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier> <masterUsername>

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\s
                    masterUsername - The master user name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
```

```
        String masterUsername = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String token = getAuthToken(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier,
 masterUsername);
        System.out.println("The token response is " + token);
    }

    public static String getAuthToken(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier, String masterUsername) {

        RdsUtilities utilities = rdsClient.utilities();
        try {
            GenerateAuthenticationTokenRequest tokenRequest =
 GenerateAuthenticationTokenRequest.builder()
                    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .username(masterUsername)
                    .port(3306)
                    .hostname(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            return utilities.generateAuthenticationToken(tokenRequest);

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateRDSAuthToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ModifyDBInstance` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyDBInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To modify a DB instance

The following `modify-db-instance` example associates an option group and a parameter group with a compatible Microsoft SQL Server DB instance. The `--apply-immediately` parameter causes the option and parameter groups to be associated immediately, instead of waiting until the next maintenance window.

```
aws rds modify-db-instance \
    --db-instance-identifier database-2 \
    --option-group-name test-se-2017 \
    --db-parameter-group-name test-sqlserver-se-2017 \
    --apply-immediately
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBInstance": {
        "DBInstanceIdentifier": "database-2",
        "DBInstanceClass": "db.r4.large",
        "Engine": "sqlserver-se",
        "DBInstanceStatus": "available",

        ...output omitted...

        "DBParameterGroups": [
            {
                "DBParameterGroupName": "test-sqlserver-se-2017",
                "ParameterApplyStatus": "applying"
            }
        ],
        "AvailabilityZone": "us-west-2d",

        ...output omitted...

        "MultiAZ": true,
        "EngineVersion": "14.00.3281.6.v1",
        "AutoMinorVersionUpgrade": false,
        "ReadReplicaDBInstanceIdentifiers": [],
        "LicenseModel": "license-included",
```

```
        "OptionGroupMemberships": [
            {
                "OptionGroupName": "test-se-2017",
                "Status": "pending-apply"
            }
        ],
        "CharacterSetName": "SQL_Latin1_General_CP1_CI_AS",
        "SecondaryAvailabilityZone": "us-west-2c",
        "PubliclyAccessible": true,
        "StorageType": "gp2",

        ...output omitted...

        "DeletionProtection": false,
        "AssociatedRoles": [],
        "MaxAllocatedStorage": 1000
    }
}
```

For more information, see Modifying an Amazon RDS DB Instance in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

Example 2: To associate VPC security group with a DB instance

The following `modify-db-instance` example associates a specific VPC security group and removes DB security groups from a DB instance:

```
aws rds modify-db-instance \
    --db-instance-identifier dbName \
    --vpc-security-group-ids sg-ID
```

Output:

```
{
"DBInstance": {
    "DBInstanceIdentifier": "dbName",
    "DBInstanceClass": "db.t3.micro",
    "Engine": "mysql",
    "DBInstanceStatus": "available",
    "MasterUsername": "admin",
    "Endpoint": {
        "Address": "dbName.abcdefghijk.us-west-2.rds.amazonaws.com",
        "Port": 3306,
```

```
        "HostedZoneId": "ABCDEFGHIJK1234"
    },
    "AllocatedStorage": 20,
    "InstanceCreateTime": "2024-02-15T00:37:58.793000+00:00",
    "PreferredBackupWindow": "11:57-12:27",
    "BackupRetentionPeriod": 7,
    "DBSecurityGroups": [],
    "VpcSecurityGroups": [
        {
            "VpcSecurityGroupId": "sg-ID",
            "Status": "active"
        }
    ],
    ... output omitted ...
    "MultiAZ": false,
    "EngineVersion": "8.0.35",
    "AutoMinorVersionUpgrade": true,
    "ReadReplicaDBInstanceIdentifiers": [],
    "LicenseModel": "general-public-license",

    ... output ommited ...
    }
}
```

For more information, see Controlling access with security groups in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyDBInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbInstanceRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ModifyDBInstance {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbSnapshotIdentifier>\s
                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\s
                    masterUserPassword - The updated password that corresponds to
 the master user name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        String masterUserPassword = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateIntance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, masterUserPassword);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void updateIntance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier, String masterUserPassword) {
        try {
```

```
            // For a demo - modify the DB instance by modifying the master
 password.
            ModifyDbInstanceRequest modifyDbInstanceRequest =
 ModifyDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .publiclyAccessible(true)
                    .masterUserPassword(masterUserPassword)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbInstanceResponse instanceResponse =
 rdsClient.modifyDBInstance(modifyDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The ARN of the modified database is: " +
 instanceResponse.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateIntance(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
) {
    val request =
        ModifyDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            publiclyAccessible = true
```

```
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val instanceResponse = rdsClient.modifyDbInstance(request)
        println("The ARN of the modified database is
 ${instanceResponse.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ModifyDBParameterGroup` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyDBParameterGroup`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update a DB parameter group. Use the action
 DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">List of parameters. Maximum of 20 per request.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The updated DB parameter group name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyDBParameterGroup(
        string name, List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroupName;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.ModifyDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully modified."
```

```
                        << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::ModifyDBParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify a DB parameter group

The following `modify-db-parameter-group` example changes the value of the `clr enabled` parameter in a DB parameter group. The `--apply-immediately` parameter causes the DB parameter group to be modified immediately, instead of waiting until the next maintenance window.

```
aws rds modify-db-parameter-group \
    --db-parameter-group-name test-sqlserver-se-2017 \
    --parameters "ParameterName='clr
 enabled',ParameterValue=1,ApplyMethod=immediate"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBParameterGroupName": "test-sqlserver-se-2017"
}
```

For more information, see Modifying Parameters in a DB Parameter Group in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.ModifyDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:           params,
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Modify auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters.
    public static void modifyDBParas(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName) {
        try {
            Parameter parameter1 = Parameter.builder()
                    .parameterName("auto_increment_offset")
                    .applyMethod("immediate")
                    .parameterValue("5")
                    .build();

            List<Parameter> paraList = new ArrayList<>();
            paraList.add(parameter1);
            ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .parameters(paraList)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter group " +
response.dbParameterGroupName() + " was successfully modified");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_parameter_group(
```

```
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
 Parameters=update_parameters
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Demonstrates modifying two of the specified database parameter group's
    /// parameters.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to change
    ///   parameters for.
    func modifyDBParameters(groupName: String) async {
        let parameter1 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_offset",
            parameterValue: "5"
```

```
        )
        let parameter2 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_increment",
            parameterValue: "5"
        )

        let parameterList = [parameter1, parameter2]

        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(
                input: ModifyDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    parameters: parameterList
                )
            )

            print("Successfully modified the parameter group \(groupName).")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error modifying the parameter group \(groupName):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `RebootDBInstance` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RebootDBInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reboot a DB instance

The following `reboot-db-instance` example starts a reboot of the specified DB instance.

```
aws rds reboot-db-instance \
    --db-instance-identifier test-mysql-instance
```

Output:

```
{
    "DBInstance": {
        "DBInstanceIdentifier": "test-mysql-instance",
        "DBInstanceClass": "db.t3.micro",
        "Engine": "mysql",
        "DBInstanceStatus": "rebooting",
        "MasterUsername": "admin",
        "Endpoint": {
            "Address": "test-mysql-instance.############.us-
west-2.rds.amazonaws.com",
            "Port": 3306,
            "HostedZoneId": "Z1PVIF0EXAMPLE"
        },

    ... output omitted...

    }
}
```

For more information, see Rebooting a DB Instance in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see RebootDBInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RebootDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RebootDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class RebootDBInstance {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier>\s

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        rebootInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void rebootInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            RebootDbInstanceRequest rebootDbInstanceRequest =
 RebootDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            RebootDbInstanceResponse instanceResponse =
 rdsClient.rebootDBInstance(rebootDbInstanceRequest);
```

```
            System.out.print("The database " +
 instanceResponse.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn() + " was rebooted");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RebootDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon RDS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon RDS with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon RDS or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Serverless examples for Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to use Amazon RDS with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using .NET.

```
using System.Data;
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.APIGatewayEvents;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using MySql.Data.MySqlClient;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace aws_rds;

public class InputModel
{
    public string key1 { get; set; }
    public string key2 { get; set; }
```

```
}

public class Function
{
    /// <summary>
    // Handles the Lambda function execution for connecting to RDS using IAM
 authentication.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">The input event data passed to the Lambda function</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda execution context that provides runtime
 information</param>
    /// <returns>A response object containing the execution result</returns>

    public async Task<APIGatewayProxyResponse>
 FunctionHandler(APIGatewayProxyRequest request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        // Sample Input: {"body": "{\"key1\":\"20\", \"key2\":\"25\"}"}
        var input = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<InputModel>(request.Body);

        /// Obtain authentication token
        var authToken = RDSAuthTokenGenerator.GenerateAuthToken(
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT"),
            Convert.ToInt32(Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")),
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")
        );

        /// Build the Connection String with the Token
        string connectionString =
 $"Server={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT")};" +

 $"Port={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")};" +

 $"Uid={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")};" +
                                 $"Pwd={authToken};";


        try
        {
            await using var connection = new MySqlConnection(connectionString);
            await connection.OpenAsync();

            const string sql = "SELECT @param1 + @param2 AS Sum";
```

```
            await using var command = new MySqlCommand(sql, connection);
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param1", int.Parse(input.key1 ??
 "0"));
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param2", int.Parse(input.key2 ??
 "0"));

            await using var reader = await command.ExecuteReaderAsync();
            if (await reader.ReadAsync())
            {
                int result = reader.GetInt32("Sum");

                //Sample Response: {"statusCode":200,"body":"{\"message\":\"The
 sum is: 45\"}","isBase64Encoded":false}
                return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
                {
                    StatusCode = 200,
                    Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { message = $"The sum is:
 {result}" })
                };
            }

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = 500,
            Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { error = "Internal server
 error" })
        };
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Go.

```
/*
Golang v2 code here.
*/

package main

import (
 "context"
 "database/sql"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/rds/auth"
 _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

type MyEvent struct {
 Name string `json:"name"`
}

func HandleRequest(event *MyEvent) (map[string]interface{}, error) {

 var dbName string = os.Getenv("DatabaseName")
 var dbUser string = os.Getenv("DatabaseUser")
 var dbHost string = os.Getenv("DBHost") // Add hostname without https
 var dbPort int = os.Getenv("Port")      // Add port number
 var dbEndpoint string = fmt.Sprintf("%s:%d", dbHost, dbPort)
 var region string = os.Getenv("AWS_REGION")
```

```
 cfg, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())
 if err != nil {
  panic("configuration error: " + err.Error())
 }

 authenticationToken, err := auth.BuildAuthToken(
  context.TODO(), dbEndpoint, region, dbUser, cfg.Credentials)
 if err != nil {
  panic("failed to create authentication token: " + err.Error())
 }

 dsn := fmt.Sprintf("%s:%s@tcp(%s)/%s?tls=true&allowCleartextPasswords=true",
  dbUser, authenticationToken, dbEndpoint, dbName,
 )

 db, err := sql.Open("mysql", dsn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 defer db.Close()

 var sum int
 err = db.QueryRow("SELECT ?+? AS sum", 3, 2).Scan(&sum)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 s := fmt.Sprint(sum)
 message := fmt.Sprintf("The selected sum is: %s", s)

 messageBytes, err := json.Marshal(message)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }

 messageString := string(messageBytes)
 return map[string]interface{}{
  "statusCode": 200,
  "headers":    map[string]string{"Content-Type": "application/json"},
  "body":       messageString,
 }, nil
}
```

```
func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.RdsDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.Field;

import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;

public class RdsLambdaHandler implements
 RequestHandler<APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent, APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent> {

    @Override
    public APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent handleRequest(APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent
 event, Context context) {
        APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent response = new
 APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent();
```

```
        try {
            // Obtain auth token
            String token = createAuthToken();

            // Define connection configuration
            String connectionString = String.format("jdbc:mysql://%s:%s/%s?
useSSL=true&requireSSL=true",
                    System.getenv("ProxyHostName"),
                    System.getenv("Port"),
                    System.getenv("DBName"));

            // Establish a connection to the database
            try (Connection connection =
 DriverManager.getConnection(connectionString, System.getenv("DBUserName"),
 token);
                 PreparedStatement statement =
 connection.prepareStatement("SELECT ? + ? AS sum")) {

                statement.setInt(1, 3);
                statement.setInt(2, 2);

                try (ResultSet resultSet = statement.executeQuery()) {
                    if (resultSet.next()) {
                        int sum = resultSet.getInt("sum");
                        response.setStatusCode(200);
                        response.setBody("The selected sum is: " + sum);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (Exception e) {
            response.setStatusCode(500);
            response.setBody("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }

        return response;
    }

    private String createAuthToken() {
        // Create RDS Data Service client
        RdsDataClient rdsDataClient = RdsDataClient.builder()
                .region(Region.of(System.getenv("AWS_REGION")))
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
```

```
        // Define authentication request
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                .resourceArn(System.getenv("ProxyHostName"))
                .secretArn(System.getenv("DBUserName"))
                .database(System.getenv("DBName"))
                .sql("SELECT 'RDS IAM Authentication'")
                .build();

        // Execute request and obtain authentication token
        ExecuteStatementResponse response =
 rdsDataClient.executeStatement(request);
        Field tokenField = response.records().get(0).get(0);

        return tokenField.stringValue();
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
/*
Node.js code here.
*/
// ES6+ example
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

async function createAuthToken() {
  // Define connection authentication parameters
```

```
  const dbinfo = {

    hostname: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    port: process.env.Port,
    username: process.env.DBUserName,
    region: process.env.AWS_REGION,

  }

  // Create RDS Signer object
  const signer = new Signer(dbinfo);

  // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
  const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
  return token;
}

async function dbOps() {

  // Obtain auth token
  const token = await createAuthToken();
  // Define connection configuration
  let connectionConfig = {
    host: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    user: process.env.DBUserName,
    password: token,
    database: process.env.DBName,
    ssl: 'Amazon RDS'
  }
  // Create the connection to the DB
  const conn = await mysql.createConnection(connectionConfig);
  // Obtain the result of the query
  const [res,] = await conn.execute('select ?+? as sum', [3, 2]);
  return res;

}

export const handler = async (event) => {
  // Execute database flow
  const result = await dbOps();
  // Return result
  return {
    statusCode: 200,
    body: JSON.stringify("The selected sum is: " + result[0].sum)
```

```
  }
};
```

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using TypeScript.

```
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

// RDS settings
// Using '!' (non-null assertion operator) to tell the TypeScript compiler that
 the DB settings are not null or undefined,
const proxy_host_name = process.env.PROXY_HOST_NAME!
const port = parseInt(process.env.PORT!)
const db_name = process.env.DB_NAME!
const db_user_name = process.env.DB_USER_NAME!
const aws_region = process.env.AWS_REGION!


async function createAuthToken(): Promise<string> {

    // Create RDS Signer object
    const signer = new Signer({
        hostname: proxy_host_name,
        port: port,
        region: aws_region,
        username: db_user_name
    });

    // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
    const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
    return token;
}

async function dbOps(): Promise<mysql.QueryResult | undefined> {
    try {
        // Obtain auth token
        const token = await createAuthToken();
        const conn = await mysql.createConnection({
            host: proxy_host_name,
            user: db_user_name,
            password: token,
```

```
            database: db_name,
            ssl: 'Amazon RDS' // Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL connection
        });
        const [rows, fields] = await conn.execute('SELECT ? + ? AS sum', [3, 2]);
        console.log('result:', rows);
        return rows;
    }
    catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
    }
}

export const lambdaHandler = async (event: any): Promise<{ statusCode: number;
 body: string }> => {
    // Execute database flow
    const result = await dbOps();

    // Return error is result is undefined
    if (result == undefined)
        return {
            statusCode: 500,
            body: JSON.stringify(`Error with connection to DB host`)
        }

    // Return result
    return {
        statusCode: 200,
        body: JSON.stringify(`The selected sum is: ${result[0].sum}`)
    };
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using PHP.

```
<?php
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;
use Aws\Rds\AuthTokenGenerator;
use Aws\Credentials\CredentialProvider;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }


    private function getAuthToken(): string {
        // Define connection authentication parameters
        $dbConnection = [
            'hostname' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'port' => getenv('DB_PORT'),
            'username' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'region' => getenv('AWS_REGION'),
        ];

        // Create RDS AuthTokenGenerator object
        $generator = new
 AuthTokenGenerator(CredentialProvider::defaultProvider());

        // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
        return $generator->createToken(
            $dbConnection['hostname'] . ':' . $dbConnection['port'],
            $dbConnection['region'],
            $dbConnection['username']
        );
    }
```

```
    private function getQueryResults() {
        // Obtain auth token
        $token = $this->getAuthToken();

        // Define connection configuration
        $connectionConfig = [
            'host' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'user' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'password' => $token,
            'database' => getenv('DB_NAME'),
        ];

        // Create the connection to the DB
        $conn = new PDO(

"mysql:host={$connectionConfig['host']};dbname={$connectionConfig['database']}",
            $connectionConfig['user'],
            $connectionConfig['password'],
            [
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_CA => '/path/to/rds-ca-2019-root.pem',
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_VERIFY_SERVER_CERT => true,
            ]
        );

        // Obtain the result of the query
        $stmt = $conn->prepare('SELECT ?+? AS sum');
        $stmt->execute([3, 2]);

        return $stmt->fetch(PDO::FETCH_ASSOC);
    }

    /**
     * @param mixed $event
     * @param Context $context
     * @return array
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing query");

        // Execute database flow
        $result = $this->getQueryResults();
```

```
        return [
            'sum' => $result['sum']
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Python.

```
import json
import os
import boto3
import pymysql

# RDS settings
proxy_host_name = os.environ['PROXY_HOST_NAME']
port = int(os.environ['PORT'])
db_name = os.environ['DB_NAME']
db_user_name = os.environ['DB_USER_NAME']
aws_region = os.environ['AWS_REGION']


# Fetch RDS Auth Token
def get_auth_token():
    client = boto3.client('rds')
    token = client.generate_db_auth_token(
        DBHostname=proxy_host_name,
        Port=port
        DBUsername=db_user_name
        Region=aws_region
```

```
    )
    return token

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    token = get_auth_token()
    try:
        connection = pymysql.connect(
            host=proxy_host_name,
            user=db_user_name,
            password=token,
            db=db_name,
            port=port,
            ssl={'ca': 'Amazon RDS'}  # Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL
 connection
        )

        with connection.cursor() as cursor:
            cursor.execute('SELECT %s + %s AS sum', (3, 2))
            result = cursor.fetchone()

        return result

    except Exception as e:
        return (f"Error: {str(e)}")  # Return an error message if an exception
 occurs
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Ruby.

```
# Ruby code here.

require 'aws-sdk-rds'
```

```
require 'json'
require 'mysql2'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  endpoint = ENV['DBEndpoint'] # Add the endpoint without https"
  port = ENV['Port']           # 3306
  user = ENV['DBUser']
  region = ENV['DBRegion']     # 'us-east-1'
  db_name = ENV['DBName']

  credentials = Aws::Credentials.new(
    ENV['AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID'],
    ENV['AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY'],
    ENV['AWS_SESSION_TOKEN']
  )
  rds_client = Aws::RDS::AuthTokenGenerator.new(
    region: region,
    credentials: credentials
  )

  token = rds_client.auth_token(
    endpoint: endpoint+ ':' + port,
    user_name: user,
    region: region
  )

  begin
    conn = Mysql2::Client.new(
      host: endpoint,
      username: user,
      password: token,
      port: port,
      database: db_name,
      sslca: '/var/task/global-bundle.pem',
      sslverify: true,
      enable_cleartext_plugin: true
    )
    a = 3
    b = 2
    result = conn.query("SELECT #{a} + #{b} AS sum").first['sum']
    puts result
    conn.close
    {
      statusCode: 200,
```

```
      body: result.to_json
    }
  rescue => e
    puts "Database connection failed due to #{e}"
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Rust.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_credential_types::provider::ProvideCredentials;
use aws_sigv4::{
    http_request::{sign, SignableBody, SignableRequest, SigningSettings},
    sign::v4,
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use serde_json::{json, Value};
use sqlx::postgres::PgConnectOptions;
use std::env;
use std::time::{Duration, SystemTime};

const RDS_CERTS: &[u8] = include_bytes!("global-bundle.pem");

async fn generate_rds_iam_token(
    db_hostname: &str,
    port: u16,
    db_username: &str,
) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let config = aws_config::load_defaults(BehaviorVersion::v2024_03_28()).await;

    let credentials = config
        .credentials_provider()
```

```
        .expect("no credentials provider found")
        .provide_credentials()
        .await
        .expect("unable to load credentials");
    let identity = credentials.into();
    let region = config.region().unwrap().to_string();

    let mut signing_settings = SigningSettings::default();
    signing_settings.expires_in = Some(Duration::from_secs(900));
    signing_settings.signature_location =
 aws_sigv4::http_request::SignatureLocation::QueryParams;

    let signing_params = v4::SigningParams::builder()
        .identity(&identity)
        .region(&region)
        .name("rds-db")
        .time(SystemTime::now())
        .settings(signing_settings)
        .build()?;

    let url = format!(
        "https://{db_hostname}:{port}/?Action=connect&DBUser={db_user}",
        db_hostname = db_hostname,
        port = port,
        db_user = db_username
    );

    let signable_request =
        SignableRequest::new("GET", &url, std::iter::empty(),
 SignableBody::Bytes(&[]))
            .expect("signable request");

    let (signing_instructions, _signature) =
        sign(signable_request, &signing_params.into())?.into_parts();

    let mut url = url::Url::parse(&url).unwrap();
    for (name, value) in signing_instructions.params() {
        url.query_pairs_mut().append_pair(name, &value);
    }

    let response = url.to_string().split_off("https://".len());

    Ok(response)
}
```

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(handler)).await
}

async fn handler(_event: LambdaEvent<Value>) -> Result<Value, Error> {
    let db_host = env::var("DB_HOSTNAME").expect("DB_HOSTNAME must be set");
    let db_port = env::var("DB_PORT")
        .expect("DB_PORT must be set")
        .parse::<u16>()
        .expect("PORT must be a valid number");
    let db_name = env::var("DB_NAME").expect("DB_NAME must be set");
    let db_user_name = env::var("DB_USERNAME").expect("DB_USERNAME must be set");

    let token = generate_rds_iam_token(&db_host, db_port, &db_user_name).await?;

    let opts = PgConnectOptions::new()
        .host(&db_host)
        .port(db_port)
        .username(&db_user_name)
        .password(&token)
        .database(&db_name)
        .ssl_root_cert_from_pem(RDS_CERTS.to_vec())
        .ssl_mode(sqlx::postgres::PgSslMode::Require);

    let pool = sqlx::postgres::PgPoolOptions::new()
        .connect_with(opts)
        .await?;

    let result: i32 = sqlx::query_scalar("SELECT $1 + $2")
        .bind(3)
        .bind(2)
        .fetch_one(&pool)
        .await?;

    println!("Result: {:?}", result);

    Ok(json!({
        "statusCode": 200,
        "content-type": "text/plain",
        "body": format!("The selected sum is: {result}")
    }))
}
```

Code examples for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Relational Database Service Data Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon RDS Data Service User Guide** – More information about Amazon RDS Data Service.
- **Amazon RDS Data Service API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon RDS Data Service actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs
    - Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs
  - Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

Basic examples for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Relational Database Service Data Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs
  - Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon RDS Data Service actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon RDS Data Service API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Relational Database Service Data Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `ExecuteStatement` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To execute a SQL statement that is part of a transaction

The following `execute-statement` example runs a SQL statement that is part of a transaction.

```
aws rds-data execute-statement \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:rds:us-west-2:123456789012:cluster:mydbcluster" \
    --database "mydb" \
    --secret-arn "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-west-2:123456789012:secret:mysecret"
 \
    --sql "update mytable set quantity=5 where id=201" \
    --transaction-id "ABC1234567890xyz"
```

Output:

```
{
    "numberOfRecordsUpdated": 1
}
```

Example 2: To execute a SQL statement with parameters

The following `execute-statement` example runs a SQL statement with parameters.

```
aws rds-data execute-statement \
    --resource-arn "arn:aws:rds:us-east-1:123456789012:cluster:mydbcluster" \
    --database "mydb" \
    --secret-arn "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-east-1:123456789012:secret:mysecret"
 \
    --sql "insert into mytable values (:id, :val)" \
    --parameters "[{\"name\": \"id\", \"value\": {\"longValue\": 1}},{\"name\":
 \"val\", \"value\": {\"stringValue\": \"value1\"}}]"
```

Output:

```
{
    "numberOfRecordsUpdated": 1
}
```

For more information, see Using the Data API for Aurora Serverless in the *Amazon RDS User Guide*.

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn query_cluster(
```

```
    client: &Client,
    cluster_arn: &str,
    query: &str,
    secret_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let st = client
        .execute_statement()
        .resource_arn(cluster_arn)
        .database("postgres") // Do not confuse this with db instance name
        .sql(query)
        .secret_arn(secret_arn);

    let result = st.send().await?;

    println!("{:?}", result);
    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon RDS Data Service using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon RDS Data Service with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon RDS Data Service or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple

Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Code examples for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Redshift with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Redshift Management Guide** – More information about Amazon Redshift.
- **Amazon Redshift API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Redshift actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Redshift

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Redshift.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create a Redshift client
// and list up to 10 clusters in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 redshiftClient := redshift.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
```

```
 count := 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v clusters for your account.\n", count)
 result, err := redshiftClient.DescribeClusters(ctx,
 &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  MaxRecords: aws.Int32(int32(count)),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list clusters for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Clusters) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any clusters!")
  return
 }
 for _, cluster := range result.Clusters {
  fmt.Printf("\t%v : %v\n", *cluster.ClusterIdentifier, *cluster.ClusterStatus)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.RedshiftClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.paginators.DescribeClustersIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloRedshift {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RedshiftClient redshiftClient = RedshiftClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listClustersPaginator(redshiftClient);
    }

    public static void listClustersPaginator(RedshiftClient redshiftClient) {
        DescribeClustersIterable clustersIterable =
 redshiftClient.describeClustersPaginator();
        clustersIterable.stream()
            .flatMap(r -> r.clusters().stream())
            .forEach(cluster -> System.out
                .println(" Cluster identifier: " + cluster.clusterIdentifier() +
 " status = " + cluster.clusterStatus()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
```

```
def hello_redshift(redshift_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Redshift client and
 list
    the clusters in your account. This list might be empty if you haven't created
    any clusters.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Redshift! Let's list your clusters:")
    paginator = redshift_client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
    clusters = []
    for page in paginator.paginate():
        clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

    print(f"{len(clusters)} cluster(s) were found.")

    for cluster in clusters:
        print(f"  {cluster['ClusterIdentifier']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_redshift(boto3.client("redshift"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Redshift
  - Learn the basics of Amazon Redshift with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeStatement with an AWS SDK
    - Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK

    - Use GetStatementResult with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListDatabases with an AWS SDK
    - Use ModifyCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs
    - Create an Amazon Redshift item tracker

Basic examples for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Redshift with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Redshift
- Learn the basics of Amazon Redshift with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeStatement with an AWS SDK
    - Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetStatementResult with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListDatabases with an AWS SDK
    - Use ModifyCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon Redshift

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Redshift.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create a Redshift client
// and list up to 10 clusters in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 redshiftClient := redshift.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 count := 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v clusters for your account.\n", count)
 result, err := redshiftClient.DescribeClusters(ctx,
 &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  MaxRecords: aws.Int32(int32(count)),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list clusters for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Clusters) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any clusters!")
  return
 }
 for _, cluster := range result.Clusters {
  fmt.Printf("\t%v : %v\n", *cluster.ClusterIdentifier, *cluster.ClusterStatus)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.RedshiftClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.paginators.DescribeClustersIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloRedshift {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RedshiftClient redshiftClient = RedshiftClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listClustersPaginator(redshiftClient);
    }

    public static void listClustersPaginator(RedshiftClient redshiftClient) {
        DescribeClustersIterable clustersIterable =
 redshiftClient.describeClustersPaginator();
        clustersIterable.stream()
            .flatMap(r -> r.clusters().stream())
            .forEach(cluster -> System.out
                .println(" Cluster identifier: " + cluster.clusterIdentifier() +
 " status = " + cluster.clusterStatus()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_redshift(redshift_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Redshift client and
 list
    the clusters in your account. This list might be empty if you haven't created
    any clusters.
```

```
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Redshift! Let's list your clusters:")
    paginator = redshift_client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
    clusters = []
    for page in paginator.paginate():
        clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

    print(f"{len(clusters)} cluster(s) were found.")

    for cluster in clusters:
        print(f"  {cluster['ClusterIdentifier']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_redshift(boto3.client("redshift"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon Redshift with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a Redshift cluster.
- List databases in the cluster.
- Create a table named Movies.
- Populate the Movies table.
- Query the Movies table by year.
- Modify the Redshift cluster.
- Delete the Amazon Redshift cluster.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package scenarios

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "math/rand"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 redshift_types "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
 redshiftdata_types "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshiftdata/types"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/secretsmanager"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/redshift/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshiftdata"
)

// IScenarioHelper abstracts input and wait functions from a scenario so that
 they
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 GetName() string
}

const rMax = 100000
```

```
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 Prefix string
 Random *rand.Rand
}

// GetName returns a unique name formed of a prefix and a random number.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetName() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", helper.Prefix, helper.Random.Intn(rMax))
}

// RedshiftBasicsScenario separates the steps of this scenario into individual
 functions so that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type RedshiftBasicsScenario struct {
 sdkConfig         aws.Config
 helper            IScenarioHelper
 questioner        demotools.IQuestioner
 pauser            demotools.IPausable
 filesystem        demotools.IFileSystem
 redshiftActor     *actions.RedshiftActions
 redshiftDataActor *actions.RedshiftDataActions
 secretsmanager    *SecretsManager
}

// SecretsManager is used to retrieve username and password information from a
 secure service.
type SecretsManager struct {
 SecretsManagerClient *secretsmanager.Client
}

// RedshiftBasics constructs a new Redshift Basics runner.
func RedshiftBasics(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 pauser demotools.IPausable, filesystem demotools.IFileSystem, helper
 IScenarioHelper) RedshiftBasicsScenario {
 scenario := RedshiftBasicsScenario{
  sdkConfig:         sdkConfig,
  helper:            helper,
  questioner:        questioner,
  pauser:            pauser,
  filesystem:        filesystem,
  secretsmanager:    &SecretsManager{SecretsManagerClient:
 secretsmanager.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
```

```
  redshiftActor:     &actions.RedshiftActions{RedshiftClient:
 redshift.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  redshiftDataActor: &actions.RedshiftDataActions{RedshiftDataClient:
 redshiftdata.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}


// Movie makes it easier to use Movie objects given in json format.
type Movie struct {
 ID    int    `json:"id"`
 Title string `json:"title"`
 Year  int    `json:"year"`
}


// User makes it easier to get the User data back from SecretsManager and use it
 later.
type User struct {
 Username string `json:"userName"`
 Password string `json:"userPassword"`
}

// Run runs the RedshiftBasics interactive example that shows you how to use
 Amazon
// Redshift and how to interact with its common endpoints.
//
// 0. Retrieve username and password information to access Redshift.
// 1. Create a cluster.
// 2. Wait for the cluster to become available.
// 3. List the available databases in the region.
// 4. Create a table named "Movies" in the "dev" database.
// 5. Populate the movies table from the "movies.json" file.
// 6. Query the movies table by year.
// 7. Modify the cluster's maintenance window.
// 8. Optionally clean up all resources created during this demo.
//
// This example creates an Amazon Redshift service client from the specified
 sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
```

```
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {

 user := User{}
 secretId := "s3express/basics/secrets"
 clusterId := "demo-cluster-1"
 maintenanceWindow := "wed:07:30-wed:08:00"
 databaseName := "dev"
 tableName := "Movies"
 fileName := "Movies.json"
 nodeType := "ra3.xlplus"
 clusterType := "single-node"

 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := runner.questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error
 message (y/n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
   runner.cleanUpResources(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName,
 user.Username, runner.questioner)
  }
 }()

 // Retrieve the userName and userPassword from SecretsManager
 output, err := runner.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient.GetSecretValue(ctx,
 &secretsmanager.GetSecretValueInput{
  SecretId: aws.String(secretId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("There was a problem getting the secret value: %s", err)
  log.Printf("Please make sure to create a secret named 's3express/basics/
secrets' with keys of 'userName' and 'userPassword'.")
  panic(err)
 }

 err = json.Unmarshal([]byte(*output.SecretString), &user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("There was a problem parsing the secret value from JSON: %s", err)
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
// Create the Redshift cluster
_, err = runner.redshiftActor.CreateCluster(ctx, clusterId, user.Username,
user.Password, nodeType, clusterType, true)
if err != nil {
 var clusterAlreadyExistsFault *redshift_types.ClusterAlreadyExistsFault
 if errors.As(err, &clusterAlreadyExistsFault) {
  log.Println("Cluster already exists. Continuing.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Error creating cluster.")
  panic(err)
 }
}

// Wait for the cluster to become available
waiter :=
redshift.NewClusterAvailableWaiter(runner.redshiftActor.RedshiftClient)
err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
 ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
}, 5*time.Minute)
if err != nil {
 log.Println("An error occurred waiting for the cluster.")
 panic(err)
}

// Get some info about the cluster
describeOutput, err := runner.redshiftActor.DescribeClusters(ctx, clusterId)
if err != nil {
 log.Println("Something went wrong trying to get information about the
cluster.")
 panic(err)
}
log.Println("Here's some information about the cluster.")
log.Printf("The cluster's status is %s",
*describeOutput.Clusters[0].ClusterStatus)
log.Printf("The cluster was created at %s",
*describeOutput.Clusters[0].ClusterCreateTime)

// List databases
log.Println("List databases in", clusterId)
runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to continue...")
err = runner.redshiftDataActor.ListDatabases(ctx, clusterId, databaseName,
user.Username)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Failed to list databases: %v\n", err)
```

```
 panic(err)
}

// Create the "Movies" table
log.Println("Now you will create a table named " + tableName + ".")
runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to continue...")
err = nil
result, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.CreateTable(ctx, clusterId,
databaseName, tableName, user.Username, runner.pauser, []string{"title
VARCHAR(256)", "year INT"})
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Failed to create table: %v\n", err)
 panic(err)
}

describeInput := redshiftdata.DescribeStatementInput{
 Id: result.Id,
}
query := actions.RedshiftQuery{
 Context: ctx,
 Input:   describeInput,
 Result:  result,
}
err = runner.redshiftDataActor.WaitForQueryStatus(query, runner.pauser, true)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Failed to execute query: %v\n", err)
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Successfully executed query\n")

// Populate the "Movies" table
runner.PopulateMoviesTable(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName,
user.Username, fileName)

// Query the "Movies" table by year
log.Println("Query the Movies table by year.")
year := runner.questioner.AskInt(
 fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", 2012, 2014),
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 2012, Upper: 2014})
runner.QueryMoviesByYear(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName, user.Username,
year)

// Modify the cluster's maintenance window
runner.redshiftActor.ModifyCluster(ctx, clusterId, maintenanceWindow)
```

```
 // Delete the Redshift cluster if confirmed
 runner.cleanUpResources(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName, user.Username,
 runner.questioner)

 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
}

// cleanUpResources asks the user if they would like to delete each resource
 created during the scenario, from most
// impactful to least impactful. If any choice to delete is made, further
 deletion attempts are skipped.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) cleanUpResources(ctx context.Context,
 clusterId string, databaseName string, tableName string, userName string,
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner) {
 deleted := false
 var err error = nil
 if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete the entire cluster? This will clean
 up all resources. (y/n)", "y") {
  deleted, err = runner.redshiftActor.DeleteCluster(ctx, clusterId)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Error deleting cluster: %v", err)
  }
 }
 if !deleted && questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete the dev table? This
 will clean up all inserted records but keep your cluster intact. (y/n)", "y") {
  deleted, err = runner.redshiftDataActor.DeleteTable(ctx, clusterId,
 databaseName, tableName, userName)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Error deleting movies table: %v", err)
  }
 }
 if !deleted && questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete all rows in the Movies
 table? This will clean up all inserted records but keep your cluster and table
 intact. (y/n)", "y") {
  deleted, err = runner.redshiftDataActor.DeleteDataRows(ctx, clusterId,
 databaseName, tableName, userName, runner.pauser)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Error deleting data rows: %v", err)
  }
 }
 if !deleted {
  log.Print("Please manually delete any unwanted resources.")
 }
```

```
}


// loadMoviesFromJSON takes the <fileName> file and populates a slice of Movie
 objects.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) loadMoviesFromJSON(fileName string,
 filesystem demotools.IFileSystem) ([]Movie, error) {
 file, err := filesystem.OpenFile("../../resources/sample_files/" + fileName)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 defer filesystem.CloseFile(file)

 var movies []Movie
 err = json.NewDecoder(file).Decode(&movies)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }

 return movies, nil
}



// PopulateMoviesTable reads data from the <fileName> file and inserts records
 into the "Movies" table.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) PopulateMoviesTable(ctx context.Context,
 clusterId string, databaseName string, tableName string, userName string,
 fileName string) {
 log.Println("Populate the " + tableName + " table using the " + fileName + "
 file.")
 numRecords := runner.questioner.AskInt(
  fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", 10, 100),
  demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 10, Upper: 100})

 movies, err := runner.loadMoviesFromJSON(fileName, runner.filesystem)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to load movies from JSON: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 var sqlStatements []string

 for i, movie := range movies {
```

```
  if i >= numRecords {
   break
  }

  sqlStatement := fmt.Sprintf(`INSERT INTO %s (title, year) VALUES ('%s', %d);`,
   tableName,
   strings.Replace(movie.Title, "'", "''", -1), // Double any single quotes to
 escape them
   movie.Year)

  sqlStatements = append(sqlStatements, sqlStatement)
 }

 input := &redshiftdata.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
  Database:          aws.String(databaseName),
  DbUser:            aws.String(userName),
  Sqls:              sqlStatements,
 }

 result, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.ExecuteBatchStatement(ctx, *input)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to execute batch statement: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 describeInput := redshiftdata.DescribeStatementInput{
  Id: result.Id,
 }

 query := actions.RedshiftQuery{
  Context: ctx,
  Result:  result,
  Input:   describeInput,
 }
 err = runner.redshiftDataActor.WaitForQueryStatus(query, runner.pauser, true)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to execute batch insert query: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully executed batch statement\n")

 log.Printf("%d records were added to the Movies table.\n", numRecords)
}
```

```
// QueryMoviesByYear retrieves only movies from the "Movies" table which match
 the given year.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) QueryMoviesByYear(ctx context.Context,
 clusterId string, databaseName string, tableName string, userName string, year
 int) {

 sqlStatement := fmt.Sprintf(`SELECT title FROM %s WHERE year = %d;`, tableName,
 year)

 input := &redshiftdata.ExecuteStatementInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
  Database:          aws.String(databaseName),
  DbUser:            aws.String(userName),
  Sql:               aws.String(sqlStatement),
 }

 result, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.ExecuteStatement(ctx, *input)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to query movies: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 log.Println("The identifier of the statement is ", *result.Id)

 describeInput := redshiftdata.DescribeStatementInput{
  Id: result.Id,
 }

 query := actions.RedshiftQuery{
  Context: ctx,
  Input:   describeInput,
  Result:  result,
 }
 err = runner.redshiftDataActor.WaitForQueryStatus(query, runner.pauser, true)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to execute query: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully executed query\n")
```

```
 getResultOutput, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.GetStatementResult(ctx,
 *result.Id)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to query movies: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, row := range getResultOutput.Records {
  for _, col := range row {
   title, ok := col.(*redshiftdata_types.FieldMemberStringValue)
   if !ok {
    log.Println("Failed to parse the field")
   } else {
    log.Printf("The Movie title field is %s\n", title.Value)
   }
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateCluster
  - DescribeClusters
  - DescribeStatement
  - ExecuteStatement
  - GetStatementResult
  - ListDatabasesPaginator
  - ModifyCluster

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon Redshift features.

```
import com.example.redshift.User;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.ClusterAlreadyExistsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.CreateClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.DeleteClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.ModifyClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.RedshiftException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshiftdata.model.ExecuteStatementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshiftdata.model.RedshiftDataException;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 *
 *  This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 *  database credentials. If you do not create a
 *  secret that specifies user name and password, this example will not work. For
 details, see:
 *
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 This Java example performs these tasks:
 *
```

```
 * 1. Prompts the user for a unique cluster ID or use the default value.
 * 2. Creates a Redshift cluster with the specified or default cluster Id value.
 * 3. Waits until the Redshift cluster is available for use.
 * 4. Lists all databases using a pagination API call.
 * 5. Creates a table named "Movies" with fields ID, title, and year.
 * 6. Inserts a specified number of records into the "Movies" table by reading
 the Movies JSON file.
 * 7. Prompts the user for a movie release year.
 * 8. Runs a SQL query to retrieve movies released in the specified year.
 * 9. Modifies the Redshift cluster.
 * 10. Prompts the user for confirmation to delete the Redshift cluster.
 * 11. If confirmed, deletes the specified Redshift cluster.
 */

public class RedshiftScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(RedshiftScenario.class);

    static RedshiftActions redshiftActions = new RedshiftActions();
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <jsonFilePath> <secretName>\s

            Where:
                jsonFilePath - The path to the Movies JSON file (you can locate
 that file in ../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json)
                secretName - The name of the secret that belongs to Secret
 Manager that stores the user name and password used in this scenario.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String jsonFilePath = args[0];
        String secretName = args[1];
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon Redshift SDK Basics scenario.");
```

```
        logger.info("""
            This Java program demonstrates how to interact with Amazon Redshift
 by using the AWS SDK for Java (v2).\s
            Amazon Redshift is a fully managed, petabyte-scale data warehouse
 service hosted in the cloud.

            The program's primary functionalities include cluster creation,
 verification of cluster readiness,\s
            list databases, table creation, data population within the table, and
 execution of SQL statements.
            Furthermore, it demonstrates the process of querying data from the
 Movie table.\s

            Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
            """);

        logger.info("Lets get started...");
        logger.info("""
            First, we will retrieve the user name and password from Secrets
 Manager.

            Using Amazon Secrets Manager to store Redshift credentials provides
 several security benefits.
            It allows you to securely store and manage sensitive information,
 such as passwords, API keys, and
            database credentials, without embedding them directly in your
 application code.

            More information can be found here:

            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/
integrating_how-services-use-secrets_RS.html
            """);
        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
 User.class);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        try {
            runScenario(user, scanner, jsonFilePath);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (Throwable e) {
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario(User user, Scanner scanner,  String
jsonFilePath) throws Throwable {
        String databaseName = "dev";
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        logger.info("Create a Redshift Cluster");
        logger.info("A Redshift cluster refers to the collection of computing
resources and storage that work together to process and analyze large volumes of
data.");
        logger.info("Enter a cluster id value or accept the default by hitting
Enter (default is redshift-cluster-movies): ");
        String userClusterId = scanner.nextLine();
        String clusterId = userClusterId.isEmpty() ? "redshift-cluster-movies" :
userClusterId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<CreateClusterResponse> future =
redshiftActions.createClusterAsync(clusterId, user.getUserName(),
user.getUserPassword());
            CreateClusterResponse response = future.join();
            logger.info("Cluster successfully created. Cluster Identifier {} ",
response.cluster().clusterIdentifier());

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ClusterAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.info("The Cluster {} already exists. Moving on...",
clusterId);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Wait until {} is available.", clusterId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
redshiftActions.waitForClusterReadyAsync(clusterId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Cluster is ready!");
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
 code {}", redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        String databaseInfo = """
            When you created $clusteridD, the dev database is created by default
 and used in this scenario.\s

            To create a custom database, you need to have a CREATEDB privilege.\s
            For more information, see the documentation here: https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/redshift/latest/dg/r_CREATE_DATABASE.html.
           """.replace("$clusteridD", clusterId);

        logger.info(databaseInfo);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("List databases in {} ",clusterId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
 redshiftActions.listAllDatabasesAsync(clusterId, user.getUserName(), "dev");
            future.join();
            logger.info("Databases listed successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.error("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
 redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
 rt.getMessage());
```

```
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Now you will create a table named Movies.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ExecuteStatementResponse> future =
redshiftActions.createTableAsync(clusterId, databaseName, user.getUserName());
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Populate the Movies table using the Movies.json file.");
        logger.info("Specify the number of records you would like to add to the
Movies Table.");
        logger.info("Please enter a value between 50 and 200.");
        int numRecords;
        do {
            logger.info("Enter a value: ");
            while (!scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please enter a value between 50 and
200.");
                logger.info("Enter a year: ");
                scanner.next();
            }
            numRecords = scanner.nextInt();
        } while (numRecords < 50 || numRecords > 200);
        try {
```

```
            redshiftActions.popTableAsync(clusterId, databaseName,
user.getUserName(), jsonFilePath, numRecords).join();  // Wait for the operation
to complete
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Query the Movies table by year. Enter a value between
2012-2014.");
        int movieYear;
        do {
            logger.info("Enter a year: ");
            while (!scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please enter a valid year between
2012 and 2014.");
                logger.info("Enter a year: ");
                scanner.next();
            }
            movieYear = scanner.nextInt();
            scanner.nextLine();
        } while (movieYear < 2012 || movieYear > 2014);

        String id;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
redshiftActions.queryMoviesByYearAsync(databaseName, user.getUserName(),
movieYear, clusterId);
            id = future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
```

```
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        logger.info("The identifier of the statement is " + id);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
redshiftActions.checkStatementAsync(id);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = redshiftActions.getResultsAsync(id);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Now you will modify the Redshift cluster.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ModifyClusterResponse> future =
 redshiftActions.modifyClusterAsync(clusterId);;
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
 redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the Amazon Redshift cluster? (y/
n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete {} ", clusterId);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                CompletableFuture<DeleteClusterResponse> future =
 redshiftActions.deleteRedshiftClusterAsync(clusterId);;
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                    logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code:
 {}", redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
 rt.getMessage());
                }
                throw cause;
            }
        } else {
            logger.info("The {}  was not deleted", clusterId);
        }
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the Amazon Redshift SDK Basics scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    // Get the Amazon Redshift credentials from AWS Secrets Manager.
    private static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
            .secretId(secretName)
            .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
 secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon Redshift SDK methods.

```
public class RedshiftActions {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(RedshiftActions.class);
    private static RedshiftDataAsyncClient redshiftDataAsyncClient;

    private static RedshiftAsyncClient redshiftAsyncClient;

    private static RedshiftAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (redshiftAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            redshiftAsyncClient = RedshiftAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return redshiftAsyncClient;
    }

    private static RedshiftDataAsyncClient getAsyncDataClient() {
        if (redshiftDataAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
```

```
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            redshiftDataAsyncClient = RedshiftDataAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return redshiftDataAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     * @param clusterId     the unique identifier for the cluster
     * @param username      the username for the administrative user
     * @param userPassword  the password for the administrative user
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the cluster
     * @throws RuntimeException if the cluster creation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateClusterResponse> createClusterAsync(String
clusterId, String username, String userPassword) {
        CreateClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .masterUsername(username)
            .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
            .nodeType("ra3.4xlarge")
            .publiclyAccessible(true)
            .numberOfNodes(2)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createCluster(clusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Created cluster ");
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create cluster: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
```

```
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Waits asynchronously for the specified cluster to become available.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to wait for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster is
ready
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForClusterReadyAsync(String clusterId) {
        DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest =
DescribeClustersRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Waiting for cluster to become available. This may take a few
minutes.");
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

        // Recursive method to poll the cluster status.
        return checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime);
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Void>
checkClusterStatusAsync(DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest, long startTime)
{
        return getAsyncClient().describeClusters(clustersRequest)
            .thenCompose(clusterResponse -> {
                List<Cluster> clusterList = clusterResponse.clusters();
                boolean clusterReady = false;
                for (Cluster cluster : clusterList) {
                    if ("available".equals(cluster.clusterStatus())) {
                        clusterReady = true;
                        break;
                    }
                }

                if (clusterReady) {
                    logger.info(String.format("Cluster is available!"));
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                } else {
                    long elapsedTimeMillis = System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime;
```

```
                    long elapsedSeconds = elapsedTimeMillis / 1000;
                    long minutes = elapsedSeconds / 60;
                    long seconds = elapsedSeconds % 60;
                    System.out.printf("\rElapsed Time: %02d:%02d - Waiting for
cluster...", minutes, seconds);
                    System.out.flush();

                    // Wait 1 second before the next status check
                    return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                        try {
                            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                            throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignored ->
checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime));
                }
            }).exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get cluster status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists all databases asynchronously for the specified cluster, database
user, and database.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to list databases for
     * @param dbUser the database user to use for the list databases request
     * @param database the database to list databases for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the database
listing is complete, or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if there was an error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllDatabasesAsync(String clusterId, String
dbUser, String database) {
        ListDatabasesRequest databasesRequest = ListDatabasesRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .dbUser(dbUser)
            .database(database)
            .build();

        // Asynchronous paginator for listing databases.
        ListDatabasesPublisher databasesPaginator =
getAsyncDataClient().listDatabasesPaginator(databasesRequest);
```

```
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = databasesPaginator.subscribe(response ->
{
            response.databases().forEach(db -> {
                logger.info("The database name is {} ", db);
            });
        });

        // Return the future for asynchronous handling.
        return future.exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list databases: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous task to execute a SQL statement for creating a new
table.
     *
     * @param clusterId    the identifier of the Amazon Redshift cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database to create the table in
     * @param userName     the username to use for the database connection
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the
SQL statement execution
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error creating the table
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ExecuteStatementResponse> createTableAsync(String
clusterId, String databaseName, String userName) {
        ExecuteStatementRequest createTableRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .dbUser(userName)
            .database(databaseName)
            .sql("CREATE TABLE Movies (" +
                "id INT PRIMARY KEY, " +
                "title VARCHAR(100), " +
                "year INT)")
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(createTableRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error creating table: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                } else {
```

```
                    logger.info("Table created: Movies");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously pops a table from a JSON file.
     *
     * @param clusterId   the ID of the cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database
     * @param userName    the username
     * @param fileName    the name of the JSON file
     * @param number      the number of records to process
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the number of records
added to the Movies table
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Integer> popTableAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, String fileName, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
                try {
                    JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                    JsonNode rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                    Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
                    return iter;
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse JSON
file: " + e.getMessage(), e);
                }
            }).thenCompose(iter -> processNodesAsync(clusterId, databaseName,
userName, iter, number))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} records were added to the Movies table." ,
result);
                }
            });
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Integer> processNodesAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, Iterator<JsonNode> iter, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
```

```
            int t = 0;
            try {
                while (iter.hasNext()) {
                    if (t == number)
                        break;
                    JsonNode currentNode = iter.next();
                    int year = currentNode.get("year").asInt();
                    String title = currentNode.get("title").asText();

                    // Use SqlParameter to avoid SQL injection.
                    List<SqlParameter> parameterList = new ArrayList<>();
                    String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO Movies
VALUES( :id , :title, :year);";
                    SqlParameter idParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("id")
                        .value(String.valueOf(t))
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter titleParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("title")
                        .value(title)
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("year")
                        .value(String.valueOf(year))
                        .build();
                    parameterList.add(idParam);
                    parameterList.add(titleParam);
                    parameterList.add(yearParam);

                    ExecuteStatementRequest insertStatementRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                        .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                        .sql(sqlStatement)
                        .database(databaseName)
                        .dbUser(userName)
                        .parameters(parameterList)
                        .build();


getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(insertStatementRequest);
                    logger.info("Inserted: " + title + " (" + year + ")");
                    t++;
```

```
                }
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error inserting data: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
            }
            return t;
        });
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of an SQL statement asynchronously and handles the
completion of the statement.
     *
     * @param sqlId the ID of the SQL statement to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the SQL
statement's status is either "FINISHED" or "FAILED"
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkStatementAsync(String sqlId) {
        DescribeStatementRequest statementRequest =
DescribeStatementRequest.builder()
            .id(sqlId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().describeStatement(statementRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                String status = response.statusAsString();
                logger.info("... Status: {} ", status);

                if ("FAILED".equals(status)) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("The Query Failed. Ending
program");
                } else if ("FINISHED".equals(status)) {
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                } else {
                    // Sleep for 1 second and recheck status
                    return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                        try {
                            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                            throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignore -> checkStatementAsync(sqlId)); //
Recursively call until status is FINISHED or FAILED
```

```
                }
            }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle exceptions
                    logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("The statement is finished!");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the results of a statement execution.
     *
     * @param statementId the ID of the statement for which to retrieve the
results
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the statement
result has been processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getResultsAsync(String statementId) {
        GetStatementResultRequest resultRequest =
GetStatementResultRequest.builder()
            .id(statementId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().getStatementResult(resultRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error getting statement result {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error getting statement result: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }

                // Extract and print the field values using streams if the
response is valid.
                response.records().stream()
                    .flatMap(List::stream)
                    .map(Field::stringValue)
                    .filter(value -> value != null)
                    .forEach(value -> System.out.println("The Movie title field
is " + value));

                return response;
```

```
            }).thenAccept(response -> {
                // Optionally add more logic here if needed after handling the
response
            });
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously queries movies by a given year from a Redshift database.
     *
     * @param database    the name of the database to query
     * @param dbUser      the user to connect to the database with
     * @param year        the year to filter the movies by
     * @param clusterId   the identifier of the Redshift cluster to connect to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the response ID of the
executed SQL statement
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> queryMoviesByYearAsync(String database,
                                                            String dbUser,
                                                            int year,
                                                            String
clusterId) {

        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM Movies WHERE year = :year";
        SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
            .name("year")
            .value(String.valueOf(year))
            .build();

        ExecuteStatementRequest statementRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .database(database)
            .dbUser(dbUser)
            .parameters(yearParam)
            .sql(sqlStatement)
            .build();

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                ExecuteStatementResponse response =
getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(statementRequest).join(); // Use join() to
wait for the result
                return response.id();
```

```
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error executing statement: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
            return "";
        });
    }

    /**
     * Modifies an Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to be modified
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster
modification is complete
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ModifyClusterResponse> modifyClusterAsync(String
clusterId) {
        ModifyClusterRequest modifyClusterRequest =
ModifyClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .preferredMaintenanceWindow("wed:07:30-wed:08:00")
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().modifyCluster(modifyClusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((clusterResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                        logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Unexpected error: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.info("The modified cluster was successfully modified
and has "
                        + clusterResponse.cluster().preferredMaintenanceWindow()
+ " as the maintenance window");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Deletes a Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the Redshift cluster to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
 operation of deleting the Redshift cluster
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteClusterResponse>
 deleteRedshiftClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
        DeleteClusterRequest deleteClusterRequest =
 DeleteClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .skipFinalClusterSnapshot(true)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteCluster(deleteClusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle exceptions
                    if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                        logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Unexpected error: {}",
 exception.getMessage());
                    }
                } else {
                    // Handle successful response
                    logger.info("The status is {}",
 response.cluster().clusterStatus());
                }
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateCluster
  - DescribeClusters
  - DescribeStatement
  - ExecuteStatement
  - GetStatementResult
  - ListDatabasesPaginator

- ModifyCluster

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started with
 Redshift."""

    def __init__(self, redshift_wrapper, redshift_data_wrapper):
        self.redshift_wrapper = redshift_wrapper
        self.redshift_data_wrapper = redshift_data_wrapper

    def redhift_scenario(self, json_file_path):
        database_name = "dev"

        print(DASHES)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon Redshift SDK Getting Started example.")
        print(
            """
      This Python program demonstrates how to interact with Amazon Redshift
      using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

      Amazon Redshift is a fully managed, petabyte-scale data warehouse
      service hosted in the cloud.

      The program's primary functionalities include cluster creation,
      verification of cluster readiness, listing databases, table creation,
      populating data within the table, and executing SQL statements.

      It also demonstrates querying data from the Movies table.

      Upon completion, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
    """
```

```
        )
        if not os.path.isfile(json_file_path):
            logging.error(f"The file {json_file_path} does not exist.")
            return

        print("Let's get started...")
        user_name = q.ask("Please enter your user name (default is awsuser):")
        user_name = user_name if user_name else "awsuser"

        print(DASHES)
        user_password = q.ask(
            "Please enter your user password (default is AwsUser1000):"
        )
        user_password = user_password if user_password else "AwsUser1000"

        print(DASHES)
        print(
            """A Redshift cluster refers to the collection of computing resources
 and storage that work
            together to process and analyze large volumes of data."""
        )
        cluster_id = q.ask(
            "Enter a cluster identifier value (default is redshift-cluster-
movies): "
        )
        cluster_id = cluster_id if cluster_id else "redshift-cluster-movies"

        self.redshift_wrapper.create_cluster(
            cluster_id, "ra3.4xlarge", user_name, user_password, True, 2
        )

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"Wait until {cluster_id} is available. This may take a few
 minutes...")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        self.wait_cluster_available(cluster_id)

        print(DASHES)

        print(
            f"""
       When you created {cluster_id}, the dev database is created by default and
 used in this scenario.
```

```
        To create a custom database, you need to have a CREATEDB privilege.
        For more information, see the documentation here:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/redshift/latest/dg/r_CREATE_DATABASE.html.
       """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"List databases in {cluster_id}")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        databases = self.redshift_data_wrapper.list_databases(
            cluster_id, database_name, user_name
        )
        print(f"The cluster contains {len(databases)} database(s).")
        for database in databases:
            print(f"    Database: {database}")
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        print("Now you will create a table named Movies.")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        self.create_table(cluster_id, database_name, user_name)

        print(DASHES)

        print("Populate the Movies table using the Movies.json file.")
        print(
            "Specify the number of records you would like to add to the Movies
Table."
        )
        print("Please enter a value between 50 and 200.")

        while True:
            try:
                num_records = int(q.ask("Enter a value: ", q.is_int))
                if 50 <= num_records <= 200:
                    break
                else:
                    print("Invalid input. Please enter a value between 50 and
200.")
            except ValueError:
```

```
                print("Invalid input. Please enter a value between 50 and 200.")

        self.populate_table(
            cluster_id, database_name, user_name, json_file_path, num_records
        )

        print(DASHES)
        print("Query the Movies table by year. Enter a value between 2012-2014.")

        while True:
            movie_year = int(q.ask("Enter a year: ", q.is_int))
            if 2012 <= movie_year <= 2014:
                break
            else:
                print("Invalid input. Please enter a valid year between 2012 and
2014.")

        # Function to query database
        sql_id = self.query_movies_by_year(
            database_name, user_name, movie_year, cluster_id
        )

        print(f"The identifier of the statement is {sql_id}")

        print("Checking statement status...")
        self.wait_statement_finished(sql_id)
        result = self.redshift_data_wrapper.get_statement_result(sql_id)

        self.display_movies(result)

        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        print("Now you will modify the Redshift cluster.")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        preferred_maintenance_window = "wed:07:30-wed:08:00"
        self.redshift_wrapper.modify_cluster(cluster_id,
preferred_maintenance_window)

        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        delete = q.ask("Do you want to delete the cluster? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno)
```

```
        if delete:
            print(f"You selected to delete {cluster_id}")
            q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
            self.redshift_wrapper.delete_cluster(cluster_id)
        else:
            print(f"Cluster {cluster_id}cluster_id was not deleted")

        print(DASHES)
        print("This concludes the Amazon Redshift SDK Getting Started scenario.")
        print(DASHES)

    def create_table(self, cluster_id, database, username):
        self.redshift_data_wrapper.execute_statement(
            cluster_identifier=cluster_id,
            database_name=database,
            user_name=username,
            sql="CREATE TABLE Movies (statement_id INT PRIMARY KEY, title
VARCHAR(100), year INT)",
        )

        print("Table created: Movies")


    def populate_table(self, cluster_id, database, username, file_name, number):
        with open(file_name) as f:
            data = json.load(f)

        i = 0
        for record in data:
            if i == number:
                break

            statement_id = i
            title = record["title"]
            year = record["year"]
            i = i + 1
            parameters = [
                {"name": "statement_id", "value": str(statement_id)},
                {"name": "title", "value": title},
                {"name": "year", "value": str(year)},
            ]

            self.redshift_data_wrapper.execute_statement(
```

```
                cluster_identifier=cluster_id,
                database_name=database,
                user_name=username,
                sql="INSERT INTO Movies VALUES(:statement_id, :title, :year)",
                parameter_list=parameters,
            )

        print(f"{i} records inserted into Movies table")

    def wait_cluster_available(self, cluster_id):
        """
        Waits for a cluster to be available.

        :param cluster_id: The cluster identifier.

        Note: The cluster_available waiter can also be used.
        It is not used in this case to allow an elapsed time message.
        """
        cluster_ready = False
        start_time = time.time()

        while not cluster_ready:
            time.sleep(30)
            cluster = self.redshift_wrapper.describe_clusters(cluster_id)
            status = cluster[0]["ClusterStatus"]
            if status == "available":
                cluster_ready = True
            elif status != "creating":
                raise Exception(
                    f"Cluster {cluster_id} creation failed with status {status}."
                )

            elapsed_seconds = int(round(time.time() - start_time))
            minutes = int(elapsed_seconds // 60)
            seconds = int(elapsed_seconds % 60)

            print(f"Elapsed Time: {minutes}:{seconds:02d} - status {status}...")

            if minutes > 30:
                raise Exception(
                    f"Cluster {cluster_id} is not available after 30 minutes."
                )

    def query_movies_by_year(self, database, username, year, cluster_id):
```

```
        sql = "SELECT * FROM Movies WHERE year = :year"

        params = [{"name": "year", "value": str(year)}]

        response = self.redshift_data_wrapper.execute_statement(
            cluster_identifier=cluster_id,
            database_name=database,
            user_name=username,
            sql=sql,
            parameter_list=params,
        )

        return response["Id"]

    @staticmethod
    def display_movies(response):
        metadata = response["ColumnMetadata"]
        records = response["Records"]

        title_column_index = None
        for i in range(len(metadata)):
            if metadata[i]["name"] == "title":
                title_column_index = i
                break

        if title_column_index is None:
            print("No title column found.")
            return

        print(f"Found {len(records)} movie(s).")
        for record in records:
            print(f"   {record[title_column_index]['stringValue']}")

    def wait_statement_finished(self, sql_id):
        while True:
            time.sleep(1)
            response = self.redshift_data_wrapper.describe_statement(sql_id)
            status = response["Status"]
            print(f"Statement status is {status}.")

            if status == "FAILED":
                print(f"The query failed because {response['Error']}. Ending
program")
                raise Exception("The Query Failed. Ending program")
```

```
            elif status == "FINISHED":
                break
```

Main function showing scenario implementation.

```
def main():
    redshift_client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redshift_data_client = boto3.client("redshift-data")
    redshift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(redshift_client)
    redshift_data_wrapper = RedshiftDataWrapper(redshift_data_client)
    redshift_scenario = RedshiftScenario(redshift_wrapper, redshift_data_wrapper)
    redshift_scenario.redhift_scenario(
        f"{os.path.dirname(__file__)}/../../../resources/sample_files/
movies.json"
    )
```

The wrapper functions used in the scenario.

```
    def create_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_identifier,
        node_type,
        master_username,
        master_user_password,
        publicly_accessible,
        number_of_nodes,
    ):
        """
        Creates a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The name of the cluster.
        :param node_type: The type of node in the cluster.
        :param master_username: The master username.
        :param master_user_password: The master user password.
        :param publicly_accessible: Whether the cluster is publicly accessible.
        :param number_of_nodes: The number of nodes in the cluster.
        :return: The cluster.
```

```
        """

        try:
            cluster = self.client.create_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                NodeType=node_type,
                MasterUsername=master_username,
                MasterUserPassword=master_user_password,
                PubliclyAccessible=publicly_accessible,
                NumberOfNodes=number_of_nodes,
            )
            return cluster
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_clusters(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Describes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :return: A list of clusters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {}
            if cluster_identifier:
                kwargs["ClusterIdentifier"] = cluster_identifier

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
            clusters = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

            return clusters

        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def execute_statement(
        self, cluster_identifier, database_name, user_name, sql,
parameter_list=None
    ):
        """
        Executes a SQL statement.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param database_name: The database name.
        :param user_name: The user's name.
        :param sql: The SQL statement.
        :param parameter_list: The optional SQL statement parameters.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """

        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClusterIdentifier": cluster_identifier,
                "Database": database_name,
                "DbUser": user_name,
                "Sql": sql,
            }
            if parameter_list:
                kwargs["Parameters"] = parameter_list
            response = self.client.execute_statement(**kwargs)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't execute statement. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_statement(self, statement_id):
        """
        Describes a SQL statement.
```

```
        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.describe_statement(Id=statement_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe statement. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_statement_result(self, statement_id):
        """
        Gets the result of a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            result = {
                "Records": [],
            }
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("get_statement_result")
            for page in paginator.paginate(Id=statement_id):
                if "ColumnMetadata" not in result:
                    result["ColumnMetadata"] = page["ColumnMetadata"]
                result["Records"].extend(page["Records"])
            return result
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get statement result. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def modify_cluster(self, cluster_identifier, preferred_maintenance_window):
        """
        Modifies a cluster.
```

```
        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param preferred_maintenance_window: The preferred maintenance window.
        """
        try:
            self.client.modify_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                PreferredMaintenanceWindow=preferred_maintenance_window,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't modify a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_databases(self, cluster_identifier, database_name, database_user):
        """
        Lists databases in a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param database_name: The database name.
        :param database_user: The database user.
        :return: The list of databases.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_databases")
            databases = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                Database=database_name,
                DbUser=database_user,
            ):
                databases.extend(page["Databases"])

            return databases
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list databases. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise


    def delete_cluster(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Deletes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        """
        try:
            self.client.delete_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
SkipFinalClusterSnapshot=True
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateCluster
  - DescribeClusters
  - DescribeStatement
  - ExecuteStatement
  - GetStatementResult
  - ListDatabasesPaginator
  - ModifyCluster

Actions for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Redshift actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Redshift API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Redshift API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeClusters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeStatement with an AWS SDK
- Use ExecuteStatement with an AWS SDK
- Use GetStatementResult with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDatabases with an AWS SDK
- Use ModifyCluster with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCluster`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Create a Cluster with Minimal ParametersThis example creates a cluster with the minimal set of parameters. By default, the output is in JSON format.Command:

```
aws redshift create-cluster --node-type dw.hs1.xlarge --number-of-nodes 2 --
master-username adminuser --master-user-password TopSecret1 --cluster-identifier
 mycluster
```

Result:

```
{
   "Cluster": {
      "NodeType": "dw.hs1.xlarge",
      "ClusterVersion": "1.0",
      "PubliclyAccessible": "true",
      "MasterUsername": "adminuser",
      "ClusterParameterGroups": [
         {
            "ParameterApplyStatus": "in-sync",
            "ParameterGroupName": "default.redshift-1.0"
         } ],
      "ClusterSecurityGroups": [
         {
            "Status": "active",
            "ClusterSecurityGroupName": "default"
         } ],
      "AllowVersionUpgrade": true,
      "VpcSecurityGroups": \[],
      "PreferredMaintenanceWindow": "sat:03:30-sat:04:00",
      "AutomatedSnapshotRetentionPeriod": 1,
      "ClusterStatus": "creating",
      "ClusterIdentifier": "mycluster",
      "DBName": "dev",
      "NumberOfNodes": 2,
      "PendingModifiedValues": {
         "MasterUserPassword": "\****"
      }
   },
   "ResponseMetadata": {
      "RequestId": "7cf4bcfc-64dd-11e2-bea9-49e0ce183f07"
   }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// CreateCluster sends a request to create a cluster with the given clusterId
 using the provided credentials.
func (actor RedshiftActions) CreateCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterId string,
 userName string, userPassword string, nodeType string, clusterType string,
 publiclyAccessible bool) (*redshift.CreateClusterOutput, error) {
 // Create a new Redshift cluster
 input := &redshift.CreateClusterInput{
  ClusterIdentifier:  aws.String(clusterId),
  MasterUserPassword: aws.String(userPassword),
  MasterUsername:     aws.String(userName),
  NodeType:           aws.String(nodeType),
```

```
  ClusterType:        aws.String(clusterType),
  PubliclyAccessible: aws.Bool(publiclyAccessible),
 }
 var opErr *types.ClusterAlreadyExistsFault
 output, err := actor.RedshiftClient.CreateCluster(ctx, input)
 if err != nil && errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  log.Println("Cluster already exists")
  return nil, nil
 } else if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to create Redshift cluster: %v\n", err)
  return nil, err
 }

 log.Printf("Created cluster %s\n", *output.Cluster.ClusterIdentifier)
 return output, nil
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the cluster.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     * @param clusterId     the unique identifier for the cluster
     * @param username      the username for the administrative user
     * @param userPassword  the password for the administrative user
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
 creating the cluster
     * @throws RuntimeException if the cluster creation fails
     */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<CreateClusterResponse> createClusterAsync(String
 clusterId, String username, String userPassword) {
        CreateClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .masterUsername(username)
            .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
            .nodeType("ra3.4xlarge")
            .publiclyAccessible(true)
            .numberOfNodes(2)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createCluster(clusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Created cluster ");
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create cluster: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
```

```
export { redshiftClient };
```

Create the cluster.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { CreateClusterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME", // Required
  NodeType: "NODE_TYPE", //Required
  MasterUsername: "MASTER_USER_NAME", // Required - must be lowercase
  MasterUserPassword: "MASTER_USER_PASSWORD", // Required - must contain at least
 one uppercase letter, and one number
  ClusterType: "CLUSTER_TYPE", // Required
  IAMRoleARN: "IAM_ROLE_ARN", // Optional - the ARN of an IAM role with
 permissions your cluster needs to access other AWS services on your behalf, such
 as Amazon S3.
  ClusterSubnetGroupName: "CLUSTER_SUBNET_GROUPNAME", //Optional - the name of a
 cluster subnet group to be associated with this cluster. Defaults to 'default'
 if not specified.
  DBName: "DATABASE_NAME", // Optional - defaults to 'dev' if not specified
  Port: "PORT_NUMBER", // Optional - defaults to '5439' if not specified
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new CreateClusterCommand(params));
    console.log(
      `Cluster ${data.Cluster.ClusterIdentifier} successfully created`,
    );
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the cluster.

```
suspend fun createCluster(
    clusterId: String?,
    masterUsernameVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
) {
    val clusterRequest =
        CreateClusterRequest {
            clusterIdentifier = clusterId
            availabilityZone = "us-east-1a"
            masterUsername = masterUsernameVal
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
            nodeType = "ra3.4xlarge"
            publiclyAccessible = true
            numberOfNodes = 2
        }

    RedshiftClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { redshiftClient
 ->
        val clusterResponse = redshiftClient.createCluster(clusterRequest)
        println("Created cluster ${clusterResponse.cluster?.clusterIdentifier}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def create_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_identifier,
        node_type,
        master_username,
        master_user_password,
        publicly_accessible,
        number_of_nodes,
    ):
        """
        Creates a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The name of the cluster.
        :param node_type: The type of node in the cluster.
        :param master_username: The master username.
        :param master_user_password: The master user password.
        :param publicly_accessible: Whether the cluster is publicly accessible.
        :param number_of_nodes: The number of nodes in the cluster.
        :return: The cluster.
        """
```

```
        try:
            cluster = self.client.create_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                NodeType=node_type,
                MasterUsername=master_username,
                MasterUserPassword=master_user_password,
                PubliclyAccessible=publicly_accessible,
                NumberOfNodes=number_of_nodes,
            )
            return cluster
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCluster`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Delete a Cluster with No Final Cluster SnapshotThis example deletes a cluster, forcing data deletion so no final cluster snapshot is created.Command:

```
aws redshift delete-cluster --cluster-identifier mycluster --skip-final-cluster-
snapshot
```

Delete a Cluster, Allowing a Final Cluster SnapshotThis example deletes a cluster, but specifies a final cluster snapshot.Command:

```
aws redshift delete-cluster --cluster-identifier mycluster --final-cluster-
snapshot-identifier myfinalsnapshot
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// DeleteCluster deletes the given cluster.
```

```
func (actor RedshiftActions) DeleteCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterId string)
 (bool, error) {
 input := redshift.DeleteClusterInput{
  ClusterIdentifier:        aws.String(clusterId),
  SkipFinalClusterSnapshot: aws.Bool(true),
 }
 _, err := actor.RedshiftClient.DeleteCluster(ctx, &input)
 var opErr *types.ClusterNotFoundFault
 if err != nil && errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  log.Println("Cluster was not found. Where could it be?")
  return false, err
 } else if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to delete Redshift cluster: %v\n", err)
  return false, err
 }
 waiter := redshift.NewClusterDeletedWaiter(actor.RedshiftClient)
 err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
 }, 5*time.Minute)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Wait time exceeded for deleting cluster, continuing: %v\n", err)
 }
 log.Printf("The cluster %s was deleted\n", clusterId)
 return true, nil
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the cluster.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a Redshift cluster asynchronously.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the Redshift cluster to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of deleting the Redshift cluster
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteClusterResponse>
deleteRedshiftClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
       DeleteClusterRequest deleteClusterRequest =
DeleteClusterRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .skipFinalClusterSnapshot(true)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteCluster(deleteClusterRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   // Handle exceptions
                   if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                       logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
                   } else {
                       logger.info("Unexpected error: {}",
exception.getMessage());
                   }
               } else {
                   // Handle successful response
                   logger.info("The status is {}",
response.cluster().clusterStatus());
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Create the cluster.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DeleteClusterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME",
  SkipFinalClusterSnapshot: false,
  FinalClusterSnapshotIdentifier: "CLUSTER_SNAPSHOT_ID",
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new DeleteClusterCommand(params));
    console.log("Success, cluster deleted. ", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the cluster.

```
suspend fun deleteRedshiftCluster(clusterId: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteClusterRequest {
            clusterIdentifier = clusterId
            skipFinalClusterSnapshot = true
        }

    RedshiftClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { redshiftClient
 ->
        val response = redshiftClient.deleteCluster(request)
        println("The status is ${response.cluster?.clusterStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def delete_cluster(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Deletes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        """
        try:
            self.client.delete_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
 SkipFinalClusterSnapshot=True
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("redshift")
redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeClusters` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeClusters`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Get a Description of All ClustersThis example returns a description of all clusters for the account. By default, the output is in JSON format.Command:

```
aws redshift describe-clusters
```

Result:

```
{
   "Clusters": [
   {
      "NodeType": "dw.hs1.xlarge",
      "Endpoint": {
         "Port": 5439,
         "Address": "mycluster.coqoarplqhsn.us-east-1.redshift.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "ClusterVersion": "1.0",
      "PubliclyAccessible": "true",
      "MasterUsername": "adminuser",
      "ClusterParameterGroups": [
         {
```

```
            "ParameterApplyStatus": "in-sync",
            "ParameterGroupName": "default.redshift-1.0"
         } ],
      "ClusterSecurityGroups": [
         {
            "Status": "active",
            "ClusterSecurityGroupName": "default"
         } ],
      "AllowVersionUpgrade": true,
      "VpcSecurityGroups": \[],
      "AvailabilityZone": "us-east-1a",
      "ClusterCreateTime": "2013-01-22T21:59:29.559Z",
      "PreferredMaintenanceWindow": "sat:03:30-sat:04:00",
      "AutomatedSnapshotRetentionPeriod": 1,
      "ClusterStatus": "available",
      "ClusterIdentifier": "mycluster",
      "DBName": "dev",
      "NumberOfNodes": 2,
      "PendingModifiedValues": {}
   } ],
   "ResponseMetadata": {
      "RequestId": "65b71cac-64df-11e2-8f5b-e90bd6c77476"
   }
}
```

You can also obtain the same information in text format using the `--output text` option.Command:

`--output text` option.Command:

option.Command:

```
aws redshift describe-clusters --output text
```

Result:

```
dw.hs1.xlarge       1.0     true    adminuser       True    us-east-1a
 2013-01-22T21:59:29.559Z        sat:03:30-sat:04:00     1       available
 mycluster       dev     2
ENDPOINT    5439    mycluster.coqoarplqhsn.us-east-1.redshift.amazonaws.com
in-sync     default.redshift-1.0
active      default
PENDINGMODIFIEDVALUES
```

```
RESPONSEMETADATA    934281a8-64df-11e2-b07c-f7fbdd006c67
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// DescribeClusters returns information about the given cluster.
func (actor RedshiftActions) DescribeClusters(ctx context.Context, clusterId
 string) (*redshift.DescribeClustersOutput, error) {
 input, err := actor.RedshiftClient.DescribeClusters(ctx,
 &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
 })
```

```
 var opErr *types.AccessToClusterDeniedFault
 if errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  println("Access to cluster denied.")
  panic(err)
 } else if err != nil {
  println("Failed to describe Redshift clusters.")
  return nil, err
 }
 return input, nil
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Describe the cluster.

```
    /**
     * Waits asynchronously for the specified cluster to become available.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to wait for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster is
 ready
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForClusterReadyAsync(String clusterId) {
        DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest =
 DescribeClustersRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Waiting for cluster to become available. This may take a few
 minutes.");
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
```

```
        // Recursive method to poll the cluster status.
        return checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime);
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Void>
checkClusterStatusAsync(DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest, long startTime)
{
        return getAsyncClient().describeClusters(clustersRequest)
            .thenCompose(clusterResponse -> {
                List<Cluster> clusterList = clusterResponse.clusters();
                boolean clusterReady = false;
                for (Cluster cluster : clusterList) {
                    if ("available".equals(cluster.clusterStatus())) {
                        clusterReady = true;
                        break;
                    }
                }

                if (clusterReady) {
                    logger.info(String.format("Cluster is available!"));
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                } else {
                    long elapsedTimeMillis = System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime;
                    long elapsedSeconds = elapsedTimeMillis / 1000;
                    long minutes = elapsedSeconds / 60;
                    long seconds = elapsedSeconds % 60;
                    System.out.printf("\rElapsed Time: %02d:%02d - Waiting for
cluster...", minutes, seconds);
                    System.out.flush();

                    // Wait 1 second before the next status check
                    return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                        try {
                            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                            throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignored ->
checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime));
                }
            }).exceptionally(exception -> {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get cluster status: " +
 exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Describe your clusters.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DescribeClustersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME",
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new DescribeClustersCommand(params));
```

```
    console.log("Success", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Describe the cluster.

```
suspend fun describeRedshiftClusters() {
    RedshiftClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { redshiftClient
 ->
        val clusterResponse =
 redshiftClient.describeClusters(DescribeClustersRequest {})
        val clusterList = clusterResponse.clusters

        if (clusterList != null) {
            for (cluster in clusterList) {
                println("Cluster database name is ${cluster.dbName}")
                println("Cluster status is ${cluster.clusterStatus}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def describe_clusters(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Describes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :return: A list of clusters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {}
            if cluster_identifier:
                kwargs["ClusterIdentifier"] = cluster_identifier

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
            clusters = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

            return clusters

        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeStatement` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStatement`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Checks the status of an SQL statement asynchronously and handles the
completion of the statement.
     *
```

```
     * @param sqlId the ID of the SQL statement to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the SQL
statement's status is either "FINISHED" or "FAILED"
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkStatementAsync(String sqlId) {
        DescribeStatementRequest statementRequest =
DescribeStatementRequest.builder()
            .id(sqlId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().describeStatement(statementRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                String status = response.statusAsString();
                logger.info("... Status: {} ", status);

                if ("FAILED".equals(status)) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("The Query Failed. Ending
program");
                } else if ("FINISHED".equals(status)) {
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                } else {
                    // Sleep for 1 second and recheck status
                    return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                        try {
                            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                            throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignore -> checkStatementAsync(sqlId)); //
Recursively call until status is FINISHED or FAILED
                }
            }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle exceptions
                    logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("The statement is finished!");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftDataWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Redshift data."""

    def __init__(self, client):
        """
        :param client: A Boto3 RedshiftDataWrapper client.
        """
        self.client = client


    def describe_statement(self, statement_id):
        """
        Describes a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.describe_statement(Id=statement_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe statement. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftDataWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift-data")
    redshift_data_wrapper = RedshiftDataWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DescribeStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ExecuteStatement` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Executes a SQL statement to create a database table.

```
    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous task to execute a SQL statement for creating a new
table.
     *
     * @param clusterId    the identifier of the Amazon Redshift cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database to create the table in
     * @param userName     the username to use for the database connection
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the
SQL statement execution
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error creating the table
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ExecuteStatementResponse> createTableAsync(String
clusterId, String databaseName, String userName) {
```

```
        ExecuteStatementRequest createTableRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .dbUser(userName)
            .database(databaseName)
            .sql("CREATE TABLE Movies (" +
                "id INT PRIMARY KEY, " +
                "title VARCHAR(100), " +
                "year INT)")
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(createTableRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error creating table: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Table created: Movies");
                }
            });
    }
```

Executes a SQL statement to insert data into a database table.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously pops a table from a JSON file.
     *
     * @param clusterId   the ID of the cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database
     * @param userName    the username
     * @param fileName    the name of the JSON file
     * @param number      the number of records to process
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the number of records
added to the Movies table
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Integer> popTableAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, String fileName, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
                try {
                    JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                    JsonNode rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
```

```
                    Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
                    return iter;
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse JSON
file: " + e.getMessage(), e);
                }
            }).thenCompose(iter -> processNodesAsync(clusterId, databaseName,
userName, iter, number))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} records were added to the Movies table." ,
result);
                }
            });
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Integer> processNodesAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, Iterator<JsonNode> iter, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            int t = 0;
            try {
                while (iter.hasNext()) {
                    if (t == number)
                        break;
                    JsonNode currentNode = iter.next();
                    int year = currentNode.get("year").asInt();
                    String title = currentNode.get("title").asText();

                    // Use SqlParameter to avoid SQL injection.
                    List<SqlParameter> parameterList = new ArrayList<>();
                    String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO Movies
VALUES( :id , :title, :year);";
                    SqlParameter idParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("id")
                        .value(String.valueOf(t))
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter titleParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("title")
                        .value(title)
                        .build();
```

```
                    SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("year")
                        .value(String.valueOf(year))
                        .build();
                    parameterList.add(idParam);
                    parameterList.add(titleParam);
                    parameterList.add(yearParam);

                    ExecuteStatementRequest insertStatementRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                        .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                        .sql(sqlStatement)
                        .database(databaseName)
                        .dbUser(userName)
                        .parameters(parameterList)
                        .build();


getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(insertStatementRequest);
                    logger.info("Inserted: " + title + " (" + year + ")");
                    t++;
                }
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error inserting data: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
            }
            return t;
        });
    }
```

Executes a SQL statement to query a database table.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously queries movies by a given year from a Redshift database.
     *
     * @param database    the name of the database to query
     * @param dbUser      the user to connect to the database with
     * @param year        the year to filter the movies by
     * @param clusterId   the identifier of the Redshift cluster to connect to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the response ID of the
executed SQL statement
     */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<String> queryMoviesByYearAsync(String database,
                                                            String dbUser,
                                                            int year,
                                                            String
clusterId) {

        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM Movies WHERE year = :year";
        SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
            .name("year")
            .value(String.valueOf(year))
            .build();

        ExecuteStatementRequest statementRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .database(database)
            .dbUser(dbUser)
            .parameters(yearParam)
            .sql(sqlStatement)
            .build();

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                ExecuteStatementResponse response =
getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(statementRequest).join(); // Use join() to
wait for the result
                return response.id();
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error executing statement: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
            return "";
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetStatementResult` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetStatementResult`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Check the statement result.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the results of a statement execution.
    *
    * @param statementId the ID of the statement for which to retrieve the
results
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the statement
result has been processed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getResultsAsync(String statementId) {
       GetStatementResultRequest resultRequest =
GetStatementResultRequest.builder()
           .id(statementId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncDataClient().getStatementResult(resultRequest)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.info("Error getting statement result {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                   throw new RuntimeException("Error getting statement result: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }

               // Extract and print the field values using streams if the
response is valid.
```

```
                response.records().stream()
                    .flatMap(List::stream)
                    .map(Field::stringValue)
                    .filter(value -> value != null)
                    .forEach(value -> System.out.println("The Movie title field
 is " + value));

                return response;
            }).thenAccept(response -> {
                // Optionally add more logic here if needed after handling the
 response
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetStatementResult in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftDataWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Redshift data."""

    def __init__(self, client):
        """
        :param client: A Boto3 RedshiftDataWrapper client.
        """
        self.client = client


    def get_statement_result(self, statement_id):
        """
        Gets the result of a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
```

```
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            result = {
                "Records": [],
            }
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("get_statement_result")
            for page in paginator.paginate(Id=statement_id):
                if "ColumnMetadata" not in result:
                    result["ColumnMetadata"] = page["ColumnMetadata"]
                result["Records"].extend(page["Records"])
            return result
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get statement result. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftDataWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift-data")
    redshift_data_wrapper = RedshiftDataWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetStatementResult in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListDatabases` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatabases`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Lists all databases asynchronously for the specified cluster, database
user, and database.
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to list databases for
    * @param dbUser the database user to use for the list databases request
    * @param database the database to list databases for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the database
listing is complete, or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if there was an error
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllDatabasesAsync(String clusterId, String
dbUser, String database) {
       ListDatabasesRequest databasesRequest = ListDatabasesRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .dbUser(dbUser)
           .database(database)
           .build();

       // Asynchronous paginator for listing databases.
       ListDatabasesPublisher databasesPaginator =
getAsyncDataClient().listDatabasesPaginator(databasesRequest);
       CompletableFuture<Void> future = databasesPaginator.subscribe(response ->
{
           response.databases().forEach(db -> {
               logger.info("The database name is {} ", db);
           });
       });

       // Return the future for asynchronous handling.
       return future.exceptionally(exception -> {
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list databases: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
       });
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDatabases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ModifyCluster` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyCluster`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Associate a Security Group with a ClusterThis example shows how to associate a cluster security group with the specified cluster.Command:

```
aws redshift modify-cluster --cluster-identifier mycluster --cluster-security-
groups mysecuritygroup
```

Modify the Maintenance Window for a ClusterThis shows how to change the weekly preferred maintenance window for a cluster to be the minimum four hour window starting Sundays at 11:15 PM, and ending Mondays at 3:15 AM.Command:

```
aws redshift modify-cluster --cluster-identifier mycluster --preferred-
maintenance-window Sun:23:15-Mon:03:15
```

Change the Master Password for the ClusterThis example shows how to change the master password for a cluster.Command:

```
aws redshift modify-cluster --cluster-identifier mycluster --master-user-password
 A1b2c3d4
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// ModifyCluster sets the preferred maintenance window for the given cluster.
func (actor RedshiftActions) ModifyCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterId string,
 maintenanceWindow string) *redshift.ModifyClusterOutput {
 // Modify the cluster's maintenance window
 input := &redshift.ModifyClusterInput{
  ClusterIdentifier:          aws.String(clusterId),
  PreferredMaintenanceWindow: aws.String(maintenanceWindow),
 }

 var opErr *types.InvalidClusterStateFault
 output, err := actor.RedshiftClient.ModifyCluster(ctx, input)
```

```
 if err != nil && errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  log.Println("Cluster is in an invalid state.")
  panic(err)
 } else if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to modify Redshift cluster: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 log.Printf("The cluster was successfully modified and now has %s as the
 maintenance window\n", *output.Cluster.PreferredMaintenanceWindow)
 return output
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Modify a cluster.

```
   /**
    * Modifies an Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to be modified
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster
 modification is complete
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ModifyClusterResponse> modifyClusterAsync(String
 clusterId) {
       ModifyClusterRequest modifyClusterRequest =
 ModifyClusterRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .preferredMaintenanceWindow("wed:07:30-wed:08:00")
```

```
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().modifyCluster(modifyClusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((clusterResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                        logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Unexpected error: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.info("The modified cluster was successfully modified
and has "
                        + clusterResponse.cluster().preferredMaintenanceWindow()
+ " as the maintenance window");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Modify a cluster.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { ModifyClusterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

// Set the parameters
const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME",
  MasterUserPassword: "NEW_MASTER_USER_PASSWORD",
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new ModifyClusterCommand(params));
    console.log("Success was modified.", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Modify a cluster.

```
suspend fun modifyCluster(clusterId: String?) {
```

```
    val modifyClusterRequest =
        ModifyClusterRequest {
            clusterIdentifier = clusterId
            preferredMaintenanceWindow = "wed:07:30-wed:08:00"
        }

    RedshiftClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { redshiftClient ->
        val clusterResponse = redshiftClient.modifyCluster(modifyClusterRequest)
        println(
            "The modified cluster was successfully modified and has
 ${clusterResponse.cluster?.preferredMaintenanceWindow} as the maintenance
 window",
        )
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def modify_cluster(self, cluster_identifier, preferred_maintenance_window):
```

```
        """
        Modifies a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param preferred_maintenance_window: The preferred maintenance window.
        """
        try:
            self.client.modify_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                PreferredMaintenanceWindow=preferred_maintenance_window,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't modify a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Redshift using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Redshift with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Redshift or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Amazon Redshift item tracker

Create an Amazon Redshift item tracker

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items using an Amazon Redshift database.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Code examples for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Rekognition with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Rekognition.
- **Amazon Rekognition API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Rekognition actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon Rekognition

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Rekognition.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rekognition)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_rekognition")
```

```
# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                       # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_rekognition.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_rekognition.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rekognition/RekognitionClient.h>
#include <aws/rekognition/model/ListCollectionsRequest.h>
```

```
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Rekognition" starter application which initializes an Amazon
 Rekognition client and
 *  lists the Amazon Rekognition collections in the current account and region.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_rekognition'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //  Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //  options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Rekognition::RekognitionClient rekognitionClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::Rekognition::Model::ListCollectionsRequest request;
        Aws::Rekognition::Model::ListCollectionsOutcome outcome =
                rekognitionClient.ListCollections(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>& collectionsIds =
 outcome.GetResult().GetCollectionIds();
            if (!collectionsIds.empty()) {
                std::cout << "collectionsIds: " << std::endl;
                for (auto &collectionId : collectionsIds) {
                    std::cout << "- " << collectionId << std::endl;
                }
            } else {
                std::cout << "No collections found" << std::endl;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error with ListCollections: " << outcome.GetError()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
```

```
    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon Rekognition
  - Actions for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs
    - Use CompareFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DetectFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DetectLabels with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DetectModerationLabels with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DetectText with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DisassociateFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetCelebrityInfo with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use IndexFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListCollections with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RecognizeCelebrities with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SearchFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SearchFacesByImage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs
  - Build an Amazon Rekognition collection and find faces in it using an AWS SDK
  - Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

- Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect and display elements in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect faces in an image using an AWS SDK
- Detect information in videos using Amazon Rekognition and the AWS SDK
- Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Rekognition with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon Rekognition
- Actions for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs
  - Use CompareFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetectFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetectLabels with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetectModerationLabels with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetectText with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DisassociateFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetCelebrityInfo with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use IndexFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListCollections with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use RecognizeCelebrities with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SearchFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use SearchFacesByImage with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon Rekognition

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Rekognition.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rekognition)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_rekognition")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
```

```
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_rekognition.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_rekognition.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rekognition/RekognitionClient.h>
#include <aws/rekognition/model/ListCollectionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Rekognition" starter application which initializes an Amazon
 Rekognition client and
 *  lists the Amazon Rekognition collections in the current account and region.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_rekognition'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //  Optional: change the log level for debugging.
```

```
    //  options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Rekognition::RekognitionClient rekognitionClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::Rekognition::Model::ListCollectionsRequest request;
        Aws::Rekognition::Model::ListCollectionsOutcome outcome =
                rekognitionClient.ListCollections(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>& collectionsIds =
 outcome.GetResult().GetCollectionIds();
            if (!collectionsIds.empty()) {
                std::cout << "collectionsIds: " << std::endl;
                for (auto &collectionId : collectionsIds) {
                    std::cout << "- " << collectionId << std::endl;
                }
            } else {
                std::cout << "No collections found" << std::endl;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error with ListCollections: " << outcome.GetError()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Actions for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Rekognition actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Rekognition API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Rekognition API Reference.

Examples

- Use CompareFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeCollection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectLabels with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectModerationLabels with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectText with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DisassociateFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetCelebrityInfo with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use IndexFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCollections with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RecognizeCelebrities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SearchFaces with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SearchFacesByImage with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CompareFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CompareFaces`.

For more information, see Comparing faces in images.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to compare faces in two images.
/// </summary>
public class CompareFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        float similarityThreshold = 70F;
        string sourceImage = "source.jpg";
        string targetImage = "target.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image imageSource = new
Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();

        try
        {
            using FileStream fs = new FileStream(sourceImage, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
            byte[] data = new byte[fs.Length];
            fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
            imageSource.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
        }
        catch (Exception)
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load source image: {sourceImage}");
                return;
            }

            Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image imageTarget = new
Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();

            try
            {
                using FileStream fs = new FileStream(targetImage, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = new byte[fs.Length];
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                imageTarget.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load target image: {targetImage}");
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                return;
            }

            var compareFacesRequest = new CompareFacesRequest
            {
                SourceImage = imageSource,
                TargetImage = imageTarget,
                SimilarityThreshold = similarityThreshold,
            };

            // Call operation
            var compareFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.CompareFacesAsync(compareFacesRequest);

            // Display results
            compareFacesResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(match =>
            {
                ComparedFace face = match.Face;
                BoundingBox position = face.BoundingBox;
                Console.WriteLine($"Face at {position.Left} {position.Top}
matches with {match.Similarity}% confidence.");
            });
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Found {compareFacesResponse.UnmatchedFaces.Count}
 face(s) that did not match.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To compare faces in two images

The following `compare-faces` command compares faces in two images stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
aws rekognition compare-faces \
    --source-image '{"S3Object":
{"Bucket":"MyImageS3Bucket","Name":"source.jpg"}}' \
    --target-image '{"S3Object":
{"Bucket":"MyImageS3Bucket","Name":"target.jpg"}}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "UnmatchedFaces": [],
    "FaceMatches": [
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.12368916720151901,
                    "Top": 0.16007372736930847,
                    "Left": 0.5901257991790771,
                    "Height": 0.25140416622161865
                },
                "Confidence": 100.0,
                "Pose": {
                    "Yaw": -3.7351467609405518,
                    "Roll": -0.10309021919965744,
                    "Pitch": 0.8637830018997192
```

```
                },
                "Quality": {
                    "Sharpness": 95.51618957519531,
                    "Brightness": 65.29893493652344
                },
                "Landmarks": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.26721030473709106,
                        "X": 0.6204193830490112,
                        "Type": "eyeLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.26831310987472534,
                        "X": 0.6776827573776245,
                        "Type": "eyeRight"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3514654338359833,
                        "X": 0.6241428852081299,
                        "Type": "mouthLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.35258132219314575,
                        "X": 0.6713621020317078,
                        "Type": "mouthRight"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3140771687030792,
                        "X": 0.6428444981575012,
                        "Type": "nose"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Similarity": 100.0
        }
    ],
    "SourceImageFace": {
        "BoundingBox": {
            "Width": 0.12368916720151901,
            "Top": 0.16007372736930847,
            "Left": 0.5901257991790771,
            "Height": 0.25140416622161865
        },
        "Confidence": 100.0
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Comparing Faces in Images in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CompareFaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <bucketName> <sourceKey> <targetKey>
```

```
            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the images are
stored.
                sourceKey  - The S3 key (file name) for the source image.
                targetKey  - The S3 key (file name) for the target image.
           """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceKey = args[1];
        String targetKey = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        compareTwoFaces(rekClient, bucketName, sourceKey, targetKey);
    }

    /**
     * Compares two faces from images stored in an Amazon S3 bucket using AWS
Rekognition.
     *
     * <p>This method takes two image keys from an S3 bucket and compares the
faces within them.
     * It prints out the confidence level of matched faces and reports the number
of unmatched faces.</p>
     *
     * @param rekClient   The {@link RekognitionClient} used to call AWS
Rekognition.
     * @param bucketName  The name of the S3 bucket containing the images.
     * @param sourceKey   The object key (file path) for the source image in the
S3 bucket.
     * @param targetKey   The object key (file path) for the target image in the
S3 bucket.
     * @throws RuntimeException If the Rekognition service returns an error.
     */
    public static void compareTwoFaces(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
bucketName, String sourceKey, String targetKey) {
```

```
        try {
            Float similarityThreshold = 70F;
            S3Object s3ObjectSource = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceKey)
                    .build();

            Image sourceImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectSource)
                    .build();

            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(targetKey)
                    .build();

            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            CompareFacesRequest facesRequest = CompareFacesRequest.builder()
                    .sourceImage(sourceImage)
                    .targetImage(targetImage)
                    .similarityThreshold(similarityThreshold)
                    .build();

            // Compare the two images.
            CompareFacesResponse compareFacesResult =
rekClient.compareFaces(facesRequest);
            List<CompareFacesMatch> faceDetails =
compareFacesResult.faceMatches();

            for (CompareFacesMatch match : faceDetails) {
                ComparedFace face = match.face();
                BoundingBox position = face.boundingBox();
                System.out.println("Face at " + position.left().toString()
                        + " " + position.top()
                        + " matches with " + face.confidence().toString()
                        + "% confidence.");
            }

            List<ComparedFace> unmatchedFaces =
compareFacesResult.unmatchedFaces();
```

```
            System.out.println("There were " + unmatchedFaces.size() + " face(s)
 that did not match.");

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.err.println("Error comparing faces: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun compareTwoFaces(
    similarityThresholdVal: Float,
    sourceImageVal: String,
    targetImageVal: String,
) {
    val sourceBytes = (File(sourceImageVal).readBytes())
    val targetBytes = (File(targetImageVal).readBytes())

    // Create an Image object for the source image.
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = sourceBytes
        }

    val tarImage =
        Image {
            bytes = targetBytes
        }
```

```
    val facesRequest =
        CompareFacesRequest {
            sourceImage = souImage
            targetImage = tarImage
            similarityThreshold = similarityThresholdVal
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->

        val compareFacesResult = rekClient.compareFaces(facesRequest)
        val faceDetails = compareFacesResult.faceMatches

        if (faceDetails != null) {
            for (match: CompareFacesMatch in faceDetails) {
                val face = match.face
                val position = face?.boundingBox
                if (position != null) {
                    println("Face at ${position.left} ${position.top} matches
 with ${face.confidence} % confidence.")
                }
            }
        }

        val uncompared = compareFacesResult.unmatchedFaces
        if (uncompared != null) {
            println("There was ${uncompared.size} face(s) that did not match")
        }

        println("Source image rotation:
 ${compareFacesResult.sourceImageOrientationCorrection}")
        println("target image rotation:
 ${compareFacesResult.targetImageOrientationCorrection}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def compare_faces(self, target_image, similarity):
        """
        Compares faces in the image with the largest face in the target image.

        :param target_image: The target image to compare against.
        :param similarity: Faces in the image must have a similarity value
 greater
                           than this value to be included in the results.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of faces that match the
                 reference image. The second element is the list of faces that
 have
                 a similarity value below the specified threshold.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.compare_faces(
                SourceImage=self.image,
                TargetImage=target_image.image,
                SimilarityThreshold=similarity,
            )
            matches = [
                RekognitionFace(match["Face"]) for match in
response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            unmatches = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in
response["UnmatchedFaces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s matched faces and %s unmatched faces.",
                len(matches),
                len(unmatches),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't match faces from %s to %s.",
                self.image_name,
                target_image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return matches, unmatches
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateCollection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCollection`.

For more information, see Creating a collection.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses Amazon Rekognition to create a collection to which you can add
/// faces using the IndexFaces operation.
/// </summary>
public class CreateCollection
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        Console.WriteLine("Creating collection: " + collectionId);

        var createCollectionRequest = new CreateCollectionRequest
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
        };

        CreateCollectionResponse createCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.CreateCollectionAsync(createCollectionRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"CollectionArn :
{createCollectionResponse.CollectionArn}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Status code :
{createCollectionResponse.StatusCode}");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a collection

The following `create-collection` command creates a collection with the specified name.

```
aws rekognition create-collection \
    --collection-id "MyCollection"
```

Output:

```
{
    "CollectionArn": "aws:rekognition:us-west-2:123456789012:collection/
MyCollection",
    "FaceModelVersion": "4.0",
    "StatusCode": 200
}
```

For more information, see Creating a Collection in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CreateCollectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CreateCollectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage: <collectionName>\s

            Where:
                collectionName - The name of the collection.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Creating collection: " + collectionId);
        createMyCollection(rekClient, collectionId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
```

```
     * @param rekClient    the Amazon Rekognition client used to interact with
 the Rekognition service
     * @param collectionId the unique identifier for the collection to be created
     */
    public static void createMyCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId) {
        try {
            CreateCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
 CreateCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .build();

            CreateCollectionResponse collectionResponse =
 rekClient.createCollection(collectionRequest);
            System.out.println("CollectionArn: " +
 collectionResponse.collectionArn());
            System.out.println("Status code: " +
 collectionResponse.statusCode().toString());

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createMyCollection(collectionIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        CreateCollectionRequest {
```

```
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.createCollection(request)
        println("Collection ARN is ${response.collectionArn}")
        println("Status code is ${response.statusCode}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollectionManager:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Rekognition collection management functions.
    This class is a thin wrapper around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition
 API.
    """

    def __init__(self, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the collection manager object.

        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def create_collection(self, collection_id):
        """
        Creates an empty collection.
```

```
        :param collection_id: Text that identifies the collection.
        :return: The newly created collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.create_collection(
                CollectionId=collection_id
            )
            response["CollectionId"] = collection_id
            collection = RekognitionCollection(response, self.rekognition_client)
            logger.info("Created collection %s.", collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create collection %s.", collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return collection
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteCollection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteCollection`.

For more information, see Deleting a collection.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to delete an existing collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteCollection
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            Console.WriteLine("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);

            var deleteCollectionRequest = new DeleteCollectionRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
            };

            var deleteCollectionResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DeleteCollectionAsync(deleteCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"{collectionId}:
 {deleteCollectionResponse.StatusCode}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a collection

The following `delete-collection` command deletes the specified collection.

```
aws rekognition delete-collection \
    --collection-id MyCollection
```

Output:

```
{
    "StatusCode": 200
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Deleting a Collection in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DeleteCollectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DeleteCollectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <collectionId>\s

            Where:
                collectionId - The id of the collection to delete.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);
        deleteMyCollection(rekClient, collectionId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient      An instance of the {@link RekognitionClient} class,
 which is used to interact with the Amazon Rekognition service.
     * @param collectionId   The ID of the collection to be deleted.
     */
    public static void deleteMyCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId) {
        try {
            DeleteCollectionRequest deleteCollectionRequest =
 DeleteCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .build();

            DeleteCollectionResponse deleteCollectionResponse =
 rekClient.deleteCollection(deleteCollectionRequest);
            System.out.println(collectionId + ": " +
 deleteCollectionResponse.statusCode().toString());

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMyCollection(collectionIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteCollectionRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.deleteCollection(request)
        println("The collectionId status is ${response.statusCode}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def delete_collection(self):
        """
        Deletes the collection.
        """
        try:

self.rekognition_client.delete_collection(CollectionId=self.collection_id)
            logger.info("Deleted collection %s.", self.collection_id)
            self.collection_id = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete collection %s.",
self.collection_id)
```

```
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteFaces`.

For more information, see Deleting faces from a collection.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to delete one or more faces from
    /// a Rekognition collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteFaces
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            var faces = new List<string> { "xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-
xxxxxxxxxxxx" };

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            var deleteFacesRequest = new DeleteFacesRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                FaceIds = faces,
            };

            DeleteFacesResponse deleteFacesResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DeleteFacesAsync(deleteFacesRequest);
            deleteFacesResponse.DeletedFaces.ForEach(face =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceID: {face}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete faces from a collection

The following `delete-faces` command deletes the specified face from a collection.

```
aws rekognition delete-faces \
    --collection-id MyCollection
    --face-ids '["0040279c-0178-436e-b70a-e61b074e96b0"]'
```

Output:

```
{
    "DeletedFaces": [
        "0040279c-0178-436e-b70a-e61b074e96b0"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Deleting Faces from a Collection in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DeleteFacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteFacesFromCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <collectionId> <faceId>\s

            Where:
                collectionId - The id of the collection from which faces are
 deleted.\s
                faceId - The id of the face to delete.\s
           """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String collectionId = args[0];
        String faceId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);
        deleteFacesCollection(rekClient, collectionId, faceId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a face from the specified Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient     an instance of the Amazon Rekognition client
     * @param collectionId  the ID of the collection from which the face should
 be deleted
     * @param faceId        the ID of the face to be deleted
     * @throws RekognitionException if an error occurs while deleting the face
     */
    public static void deleteFacesCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            String collectionId,
            String faceId) {

        try {
            DeleteFacesRequest deleteFacesRequest = DeleteFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .faceIds(faceId)
                    .build();

            rekClient.deleteFaces(deleteFacesRequest);
            System.out.println("The face was deleted from the collection.");

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteFacesCollection(
    collectionIdVal: String?,
    faceIdVal: String,
) {
    val deleteFacesRequest =
        DeleteFacesRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
            faceIds = listOf(faceIdVal)
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        rekClient.deleteFaces(deleteFacesRequest)
        println("$faceIdVal was deleted from the collection")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def delete_faces(self, face_ids):
        """
        Deletes faces from the collection.

        :param face_ids: The list of IDs of faces to delete.
        :return: The list of IDs of faces that were deleted.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.rekognition_client.delete_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id, FaceIds=face_ids
            )
            deleted_ids = response["DeletedFaces"]
            logger.info(
                "Deleted %s faces from %s.", len(deleted_ids), self.collection_id
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete faces from %s.",
self.collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return deleted_ids
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeCollection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCollection`.

For more information, see Describing a collection.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to describe the contents of a
```

```
    /// collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class DescribeCollection
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            Console.WriteLine($"Describing collection: {collectionId}");

            var describeCollectionRequest = new DescribeCollectionRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
            };

            var describeCollectionResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DescribeCollectionAsync(describeCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Collection ARN:
 {describeCollectionResponse.CollectionARN}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face count:
 {describeCollectionResponse.FaceCount}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face model version:
 {describeCollectionResponse.FaceModelVersion}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
 {describeCollectionResponse.CreationTimestamp}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a collection

The following `describe-collection` example displays the details about the specified collection.

```
aws rekognition describe-collection \
```

```
    --collection-id MyCollection
```

Output:

```
{
    "FaceCount": 200,
    "CreationTimestamp": 1569444828.274,
    "CollectionARN": "arn:aws:rekognition:us-west-2:123456789012:collection/
MyCollection",
    "FaceModelVersion": "4.0"
}
```

For more information, see Describing a Collection in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DescribeCollectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DescribeCollectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DescribeCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:    <collectionName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The name of the Amazon Rekognition collection.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeColl(rekClient, collectionName);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Describes an Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient         The Amazon Rekognition client used to make the
 request.
     * @param collectionName    The name of the collection to describe.
     *
     * @throws RekognitionException If an error occurs while describing the
 collection.
     */
    public static void describeColl(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionName) {
        try {
            DescribeCollectionRequest describeCollectionRequest =
 DescribeCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionName)
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeCollectionResponse describeCollectionResponse = rekClient
                    .describeCollection(describeCollectionRequest);
            System.out.println("Collection Arn : " +
 describeCollectionResponse.collectionARN());
            System.out.println("Created : " +
 describeCollectionResponse.creationTimestamp().toString());

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeColl(collectionName: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeCollectionRequest {
            collectionId = collectionName
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.describeCollection(request)
        println("The collection Arn is ${response.collectionArn}")
        println("The collection contains this many faces ${response.faceCount}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
```

```
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def describe_collection(self):
        """
        Gets data about the collection from the Amazon Rekognition service.

        :return: The collection rendered as a dict.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.describe_collection(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id
            )
            # Work around capitalization of Arn vs. ARN
            response["CollectionArn"] = response.get("CollectionARN")
            (
                self.collection_arn,
                self.face_count,
                self.created,
            ) = self._unpack_collection(response)
            logger.info("Got data for collection %s.", self.collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for collection %s.",
self.collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return self.to_dict()
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectFaces`.

For more information, see Detecting faces in an image.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect faces within an image
/// stored in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DetectFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string photo = "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectFacesRequest = new DetectFacesRequest()
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
                },
            },

            // Attributes can be "ALL" or "DEFAULT".
```

```
                // "DEFAULT": BoundingBox, Confidence, Landmarks, Pose, and
 Quality.
                // "ALL": See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/
items/Rekognition/TFaceDetail.html
                Attributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
            };

            try
            {
                DetectFacesResponse detectFacesResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DetectFacesAsync(detectFacesRequest);
                bool hasAll = detectFacesRequest.Attributes.Contains("ALL");
                foreach (FaceDetail face in detectFacesResponse.FaceDetails)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"BoundingBox: top={face.BoundingBox.Left}
 left={face.BoundingBox.Top} width={face.BoundingBox.Width}
 height={face.BoundingBox.Height}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {face.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Landmarks: {face.Landmarks.Count}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Pose: pitch={face.Pose.Pitch}
 roll={face.Pose.Roll} yaw={face.Pose.Yaw}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Brightness:
 {face.Quality.Brightness}\tSharpness: {face.Quality.Sharpness}");

                    if (hasAll)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"Estimated age is between
 {face.AgeRange.Low} and {face.AgeRange.High} years old.");
                    }
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

Display bounding box information for all faces in an image.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Drawing;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to display the details of the
    /// bounding boxes around the faces detected in an image.
    /// </summary>
    public class ImageOrientationBoundingBox
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = @"D:\Development\AWS-Examples\Rekognition
\target.jpg"; // "photo.jpg";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var image = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
 FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = null;
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                image.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to load file " + photo);
                return;
            }

            int height;
            int width;

            // Used to extract original photo width/height
            using (var imageBitmap = new Bitmap(photo))
            {
                height = imageBitmap.Height;
                width = imageBitmap.Width;
```

```
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Image Information:");
            Console.WriteLine(photo);
            Console.WriteLine("Image Height: " + height);
            Console.WriteLine("Image Width: " + width);

            try
            {
                var detectFacesRequest = new DetectFacesRequest()
                {
                    Image = image,
                    Attributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
                };

                DetectFacesResponse detectFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectFacesAsync(detectFacesRequest);
                detectFacesResponse.FaceDetails.ForEach(face =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Face:");
                    ShowBoundingBoxPositions(
                        height,
                        width,
                        face.BoundingBox,
                        detectFacesResponse.OrientationCorrection);

                    Console.WriteLine($"BoundingBox: top={face.BoundingBox.Left}
left={face.BoundingBox.Top} width={face.BoundingBox.Width}
height={face.BoundingBox.Height}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"The detected face is estimated to be
between {face.AgeRange.Low} and {face.AgeRange.High} years old.\n");
                });
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Display the bounding box information for an image.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="imageHeight">The height of the image.</param>
        /// <param name="imageWidth">The width of the image.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="box">The bounding box for a face found within the
 image.</param>
        /// <param name="rotation">The rotation of the face's bounding box.</
param>
        public static void ShowBoundingBoxPositions(int imageHeight, int
 imageWidth, BoundingBox box, string rotation)
        {
            float left;
            float top;

            if (rotation == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No estimated orientation. Check Exif data.");
                return;
            }

            // Calculate face position based on image orientation.
            switch (rotation)
            {
                case "ROTATE_0":
                    left = imageWidth * box.Left;
                    top = imageHeight * box.Top;
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_90":
                    left = imageHeight * (1 - (box.Top + box.Height));
                    top = imageWidth * box.Left;
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_180":
                    left = imageWidth - (imageWidth * (box.Left + box.Width));
                    top = imageHeight * (1 - (box.Top + box.Height));
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_270":
                    left = imageHeight * box.Top;
                    top = imageWidth * (1 - box.Left - box.Width);
                    break;
                default:
                    Console.WriteLine("No estimated orientation information.
 Check Exif data.");
                    return;
            }

            // Display face location information.
            Console.WriteLine($"Left: {left}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Top: {top}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Face Width: {imageWidth * box.Width}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face Height: {imageHeight * box.Height}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect faces in an image

The following `detect-faces` command detects faces in the specified image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
aws rekognition detect-faces \
    --image '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"MyImageS3Bucket","Name":"MyFriend.jpg"}}' \
    --attributes "ALL"
```

Output:

```
{
    "FaceDetails": [
        {
            "Confidence": 100.0,
            "Eyeglasses": {
                "Confidence": 98.91107940673828,
                "Value": false
            },
            "Sunglasses": {
                "Confidence": 99.7966537475586,
                "Value": false
            },
            "Gender": {
                "Confidence": 99.56611633300781,
                "Value": "Male"
            },
            "Landmarks": [
                {
```

```
                "Y": 0.26721030473709106,
                "X": 0.6204193830490112,
                "Type": "eyeLeft"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.26831310987472534,
                "X": 0.6776827573776245,
                "Type": "eyeRight"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.3514654338359833,
                "X": 0.6241428852081299,
                "Type": "mouthLeft"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.35258132219314575,
                "X": 0.6713621020317078,
                "Type": "mouthRight"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.3140771687030792,
                "X": 0.6428444981575012,
                "Type": "nose"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.24662546813488007,
                "X": 0.6001564860343933,
                "Type": "leftEyeBrowLeft"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.24326619505882263,
                "X": 0.6303644776344299,
                "Type": "leftEyeBrowRight"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.23818562924861908,
                "X": 0.6146903038024902,
                "Type": "leftEyeBrowUp"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.24373626708984375,
                "X": 0.6640064716339111,
                "Type": "rightEyeBrowLeft"
            },
```

```
                {
                    "Y": 0.24877218902111053,
                    "X": 0.7025929093360901,
                    "Type": "rightEyeBrowRight"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.23938551545143127,
                    "X": 0.6823262572288513,
                    "Type": "rightEyeBrowUp"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.265746533870697,
                    "X": 0.6112898588180542,
                    "Type": "leftEyeLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.2676128149032593,
                    "X": 0.6317071914672852,
                    "Type": "leftEyeRight"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.262735515832901,
                    "X": 0.6201658248901367,
                    "Type": "leftEyeUp"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.27025148272514343,
                    "X": 0.6206279993057251,
                    "Type": "leftEyeDown"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.268223375082016,
                    "X": 0.6658390760421753,
                    "Type": "rightEyeLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.2672517001628876,
                    "X": 0.687832236289978,
                    "Type": "rightEyeRight"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.26383838057518005,
                    "X": 0.6769183874130249,
                    "Type": "rightEyeUp"
```

```
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.27138751745224,
                    "X": 0.676596462726593,
                    "Type": "rightEyeDown"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.32283174991607666,
                    "X": 0.6350004076957703,
                    "Type": "noseLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.3219289481639862,
                    "X": 0.6567046642303467,
                    "Type": "noseRight"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.3420318365097046,
                    "X": 0.6450609564781189,
                    "Type": "mouthUp"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.3664324879646301,
                    "X": 0.6455618143081665,
                    "Type": "mouthDown"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.26721030473709106,
                    "X": 0.6204193830490112,
                    "Type": "leftPupil"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.26831310987472534,
                    "X": 0.6776827573776245,
                    "Type": "rightPupil"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.26343393325805664,
                    "X": 0.5946047306060791,
                    "Type": "upperJawlineLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.3543180525302887,
                    "X": 0.6044883728027344,
```

```
                "Type": "midJawlineLeft"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.4084877669811249,
                "X": 0.6477024555206299,
                "Type": "chinBottom"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.3562754988670349,
                "X": 0.707981526851654,
                "Type": "midJawlineRight"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.26580461859703064,
                "X": 0.7234612107276917,
                "Type": "upperJawlineRight"
            }
        ],
        "Pose": {
            "Yaw": -3.7351467609405518,
            "Roll": -0.10309021919965744,
            "Pitch": 0.8637830018997192
        },
        "Emotions": [
            {
                "Confidence": 8.74203109741211,
                "Type": "SURPRISED"
            },
            {
                "Confidence": 2.501944065093994,
                "Type": "ANGRY"
            },
            {
                "Confidence": 0.7378743290901184,
                "Type": "DISGUSTED"
            },
            {
                "Confidence": 3.5296201705932617,
                "Type": "HAPPY"
            },
            {
                "Confidence": 1.7162904739379883,
                "Type": "SAD"
            },
```

```
                {
                    "Confidence": 9.518536567687988,
                    "Type": "CONFUSED"
                },
                {
                    "Confidence": 0.45474427938461304,
                    "Type": "FEAR"
                },
                {
                    "Confidence": 72.79895782470703,
                    "Type": "CALM"
                }
            ],
            "AgeRange": {
                "High": 48,
                "Low": 32
            },
            "EyesOpen": {
                "Confidence": 98.93987274169922,
                "Value": true
            },
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.12368916720151901,
                "Top": 0.16007372736930847,
                "Left": 0.5901257991790771,
                "Height": 0.25140416622161865
            },
            "Smile": {
                "Confidence": 93.4493179321289,
                "Value": false
            },
            "MouthOpen": {
                "Confidence": 90.53053283691406,
                "Value": false
            },
            "Quality": {
                "Sharpness": 95.51618957519531,
                "Brightness": 65.29893493652344
            },
            "Mustache": {
                "Confidence": 89.85221099853516,
                "Value": false
            },
            "Beard": {
```

```
                "Confidence": 86.1991195678711,
                "Value": true
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Detecting Faces in an Image in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectFaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
            Usage:   <bucketName> <sourceImage>

            Where:
                bucketName = The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the source
image is stored.
                sourceImage - The name of the source image file in the Amazon S3
bucket. (for example, pic1.png).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectFacesinImage(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects faces in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket using the Amazon
Rekognition service.
     *
     * @param rekClient    The Amazon Rekognition client used to interact with
the Rekognition service.
     * @param bucketName   The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the source
image is stored.
     * @param sourceImage  The name of the source image file in the Amazon S3
bucket.
     */
    public static void detectFacesinImage(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .name(sourceImage)
                .build();
```

```
            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                .build();

            DetectFacesRequest facesRequest = DetectFacesRequest.builder()
                .attributes(Attribute.ALL)
                .image(targetImage)
                .build();

            DetectFacesResponse facesResponse =
 rekClient.detectFaces(facesRequest);
            List<FaceDetail> faceDetails = facesResponse.faceDetails();
            for (FaceDetail face : faceDetails) {
                AgeRange ageRange = face.ageRange();
                System.out.println("The detected face is estimated to be between
 "
                        + ageRange.low().toString() + " and " +
 ageRange.high().toString()
                        + " years old.");

                System.out.println("There is a smile : " +
 face.smile().value().toString());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectFacesinImage(sourceImage: String?) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        DetectFacesRequest {
            attributes = listOf(Attribute.All)
            image = souImage
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectFaces(request)
        response.faceDetails?.forEach { face ->
            val ageRange = face.ageRange
            println("The detected face is estimated to be between
 ${ageRange?.low} and ${ageRange?.high} years old.")
            println("There is a smile ${face.smile?.value}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_faces(self):
        """
        Detects faces in the image.

        :return: The list of faces found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_faces(
                Image=self.image, Attributes=["ALL"]
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["FaceDetails"]]
            logger.info("Detected %s faces.", len(faces))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect faces in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return faces
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectLabels` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect labels within an image
/// stored in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DetectLabels
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string photo = "del_river_02092020_01.jpg"; // "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // "bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectlabelsRequest = new DetectLabelsRequest
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
                },
            },
            MaxLabels = 10,
            MinConfidence = 75F,
        };
```

```
            try
            {
                DetectLabelsResponse detectLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectLabelsAsync(detectlabelsRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Detected labels for " + photo);
                foreach (Label label in detectLabelsResponse.Labels)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Name: {label.Name} Confidence:
{label.Confidence}");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

Detect labels in an image file stored on your computer.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect labels within an image
    /// stored locally.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectLabelsLocalFile
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = "input.jpg";

            var image = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
```

```
                byte[] data = null;
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                image.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to load file " + photo);
                return;
            }

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var detectlabelsRequest = new DetectLabelsRequest
            {
                Image = image,
                MaxLabels = 10,
                MinConfidence = 77F,
            };

            try
            {
                DetectLabelsResponse detectLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectLabelsAsync(detectlabelsRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Detected labels for {photo}");
                foreach (Label label in detectLabelsResponse.Labels)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{label.Name}: {label.Confidence}");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Detect instances of real-world entities within an image by using Amazon
 Rekognition
/*!
  \param imageBucket: The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
 containing an image.
  \param imageKey: The Amazon S3 key of an image object.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Rekognition::detectLabels(const Aws::String &imageBucket,
                                       const Aws::String &imageKey,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::Rekognition::RekognitionClient rekognitionClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::Rekognition::Model::DetectLabelsRequest request;
    Aws::Rekognition::Model::S3Object s3Object;
    s3Object.SetBucket(imageBucket);
    s3Object.SetName(imageKey);

    Aws::Rekognition::Model::Image image;
    image.SetS3Object(s3Object);

    request.SetImage(image);

    const Aws::Rekognition::Model::DetectLabelsOutcome outcome =
 rekognitionClient.DetectLabels(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::Vector<Aws::Rekognition::Model::Label> &labels =
 outcome.GetResult().GetLabels();
        if (labels.empty()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "No labels detected" << std::endl;
        } else {
            for (const Aws::Rekognition::Model::Label &label: labels) {
                std::cout << label.GetName() << ": " << label.GetConfidence() <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error while detecting labels: '"
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << "'" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect a label in an image

The following `detect-labels` example detects scenes and objects in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
aws rekognition detect-labels \
    --image '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"bucket","Name":"image"}}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Labels": [
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 99.15271759033203,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Vehicle"
```

```
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Automobile"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 99.15271759033203,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Vehicle"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 99.15271759033203,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Transportation"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.10616336017847061,
                        "Top": 0.5039216876029968,
                        "Left": 0.0037978808395564556,
                        "Height": 0.18528179824352264
                    },
                    "Confidence": 99.15271759033203
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.2429988533258438,
                        "Top": 0.5251884460449219,
                        "Left": 0.7309805154800415,
                        "Height": 0.21577216684818268
                    },
                    "Confidence": 99.1286392211914
                },
                {
```

```
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.14233611524105072,
                    "Top": 0.5333095788955688,
                    "Left": 0.6494812965393066,
                    "Height": 0.15528248250484467
                },
                "Confidence": 98.48368072509766
            },
            {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.11086395382881165,
                    "Top": 0.5354844927787781,
                    "Left": 0.10355594009160995,
                    "Height": 0.10271988064050674
                },
                "Confidence": 96.45606231689453
            },
            {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.06254628300666809,
                    "Top": 0.5573825240135193,
                    "Left": 0.46083059906959534,
                    "Height": 0.053911514580249786
                },
                "Confidence": 93.65448760986328
            },
            {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.10105438530445099,
                    "Top": 0.534368634223938,
                    "Left": 0.5743985772132874,
                    "Height": 0.12226245552301407
                },
                "Confidence": 93.06217193603516
            },
            {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.056389667093753815,
                    "Top": 0.5235804319381714,
                    "Left": 0.9427769780158997,
                    "Height": 0.17163699865341187
                },
                "Confidence": 92.6864013671875
            },
```

```
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.06003860384225845,
                        "Top": 0.5441341400146484,
                        "Left": 0.22409997880458832,
                        "Height": 0.06737709045410156
                    },
                    "Confidence": 90.4227066040039
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.02848697081208229,
                        "Top": 0.5107086896896362,
                        "Left": 0,
                        "Height": 0.19150497019290924
                    },
                    "Confidence": 86.65286254882812
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.04067881405353546,
                        "Top": 0.5566273927688599,
                        "Left": 0.316415935754776,
                        "Height": 0.03428703173995018
                    },
                    "Confidence": 85.36471557617188
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.043411049991846085,
                        "Top": 0.5394920110702515,
                        "Left": 0.18293385207653046,
                        "Height": 0.0893595889210701
                    },
                    "Confidence": 82.21705627441406
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.031183116137981415,
                        "Top": 0.5579366683959961,
                        "Left": 0.2853088080883026,
                        "Height": 0.03989990055561066
                    },
                    "Confidence": 81.0157470703125
```

```
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.031113790348172188,
                        "Top": 0.5504819750785828,
                        "Left": 0.2580395042896271,
                        "Height": 0.056484755128622055
                    },
                    "Confidence": 56.13441467285156
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.08586374670267105,
                        "Top": 0.5438792705535889,
                        "Left": 0.5128012895584106,
                        "Height": 0.08550430089235306
                    },
                    "Confidence": 52.37760925292969
                }
            ],
            "Confidence": 99.15271759033203,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Vehicle"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Car"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 98.9914321899414,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Human"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.19360728561878204,
                        "Top": 0.35072067379951477,
                        "Left": 0.43734854459762573,
```

```
                        "Height": 0.2742200493812561
                    },
                    "Confidence": 98.9914321899414
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.03801717236638069,
                        "Top": 0.5010883808135986,
                        "Left": 0.9155802130699158,
                        "Height": 0.06597328186035156
                    },
                    "Confidence": 85.02790832519531
                }
            ],
            "Confidence": 98.9914321899414,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Person"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 93.24951934814453,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Machine"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.03561960905790329,
                        "Top": 0.6468243598937988,
                        "Left": 0.7850857377052307,
                        "Height": 0.08878646790981293
                    },
                    "Confidence": 93.24951934814453
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.02217046171426773,
                        "Top": 0.6149078607559204,
                        "Left": 0.04757237061858177,
                        "Height": 0.07136218994855881
                    },
                    "Confidence": 91.5025863647461
                },
```

```
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.016197510063648224,
                        "Top": 0.6274210214614868,
                        "Left": 0.6472989320755005,
                        "Height": 0.04955997318029404
                    },
                    "Confidence": 85.14686584472656
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.020207518711686134,
                        "Top": 0.6348286867141724,
                        "Left": 0.7295016646385193,
                        "Height": 0.07059963047504425
                    },
                    "Confidence": 83.34547424316406
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.020280985161662102,
                        "Top": 0.6171894669532776,
                        "Left": 0.08744934946298599,
                        "Height": 0.05297485366463661
                    },
                    "Confidence": 79.9981460571289
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.018318990245461464,
                        "Top": 0.623889148235321,
                        "Left": 0.6836880445480347,
                        "Height": 0.06730121374130249
                    },
                    "Confidence": 78.87144470214844
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.021310249343514442,
                        "Top": 0.6167286038398743,
                        "Left": 0.004064912907779217,
                        "Height": 0.08317798376083374
                    },
                    "Confidence": 75.89361572265625
```

```
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.03604431077837944,
                        "Top": 0.7030032277107239,
                        "Left": 0.9254803657531738,
                        "Height": 0.04569442570209503
                    },
                    "Confidence": 64.402587890625
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.009834849275648594,
                        "Top": 0.5821820497512817,
                        "Left": 0.28094568848609924,
                        "Height": 0.01964157074689865
                    },
                    "Confidence": 62.79907989501953
                },
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.01475677452981472,
                        "Top": 0.6137543320655823,
                        "Left": 0.5950819253921509,
                        "Height": 0.039063986390829086
                    },
                    "Confidence": 59.40483474731445
                }
            ],
            "Confidence": 93.24951934814453,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Machine"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Wheel"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 92.61514282226562,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Road"
        },
        {
```

```
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 92.37877655029297,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Person"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Sport"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 92.37877655029297,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Person"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Sports"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [
                {
                    "BoundingBox": {
                        "Width": 0.12326609343290329,
                        "Top": 0.6332163214683533,
                        "Left": 0.44815489649772644,
                        "Height": 0.058117982000112534
                    },
                    "Confidence": 92.37877655029297
                }
            ],
            "Confidence": 92.37877655029297,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Person"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Sport"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Skateboard"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
```

```
            "Confidence": 90.62931060791016,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Person"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Pedestrian"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 88.81334686279297,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Asphalt"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 88.81334686279297,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Tarmac"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 88.23201751708984,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Path"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 80.26520538330078,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Urban"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 80.26520538330078,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Building"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Urban"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Town"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 80.26520538330078,
            "Parents": [],
            "Name": "Building"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 80.26520538330078,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Building"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Urban"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "City"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 78.37934875488281,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Car"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Vehicle"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Parking Lot"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 78.37934875488281,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Car"
                },
                {
```

```
                    "Name": "Vehicle"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Parking"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 74.37590026855469,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Building"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Urban"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "City"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Downtown"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 69.84622955322266,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Road"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Intersection"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 57.68518829345703,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Sports Car"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Car"
                },
```

```
                {
                    "Name": "Vehicle"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Coupe"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 57.68518829345703,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Car"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Vehicle"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Transportation"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Sports Car"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 56.59492111206055,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Path"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Sidewalk"
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 56.59492111206055,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Path"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Pavement"
```

```
        },
        {
            "Instances": [],
            "Confidence": 55.58770751953125,
            "Parents": [
                {
                    "Name": "Building"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Urban"
                }
            ],
            "Name": "Neighborhood"
        }
    ],
    "LabelModelVersion": "2.0"
}
```

For more information, see Detecting Labels in an Image in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectLabels {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <bucketName> <sourceImage>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the image is
 stored
                sourceImage - The name of the image file (for example, pic1.png).
\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0] ;
        String sourceImage = args[1] ;
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectImageLabels(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects the labels in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket using the
 Amazon Rekognition service.
     *
     * @param rekClient     the Amazon Rekognition client used to make the
 detection request
```

```
     * @param bucketName    the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the image is
 stored
     * @param sourceImage   the name of the image file to be analyzed
     */
    public static void detectImageLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            DetectLabelsRequest detectLabelsRequest =
 DetectLabelsRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .maxLabels(10)
                    .build();

            DetectLabelsResponse labelsResponse =
 rekClient.detectLabels(detectLabelsRequest);
            List<Label> labels = labelsResponse.labels();
            System.out.println("Detected labels for the given photo");
            for (Label label : labels) {
                System.out.println(label.name() + ": " +
 label.confidence().toString());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectImageLabels(sourceImage: String) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }
    val request =
        DetectLabelsRequest {
            image = souImage
            maxLabels = 10
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectLabels(request)
        response.labels?.forEach { label ->
            println("${label.name} : ${label.confidence}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_labels(self, max_labels):
        """
        Detects labels in the image. Labels are objects and people.

        :param max_labels: The maximum number of labels to return.
        :return: The list of labels detected in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_labels(
                Image=self.image, MaxLabels=max_labels
            )
            labels = [RekognitionLabel(label) for label in response["Labels"]]
            logger.info("Found %s labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.info("Couldn't detect labels in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return labels
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectModerationLabels` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectModerationLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting inappropriate images.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect unsafe content in a
/// JPEG or PNG format image.
/// </summary>
public class DetectModerationLabels
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        string photo = "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectModerationLabelsRequest = new
DetectModerationLabelsRequest()
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
```

```
                    },
                },
                MinConfidence = 60F,
            };

            try
            {
                var detectModerationLabelsResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DetectModerationLabelsAsync(detectModerationLabelsRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Detected labels for " + photo);
                foreach (ModerationLabel label in
 detectModerationLabelsResponse.ModerationLabels)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Label: {label.Name}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {label.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Parent: {label.ParentName}");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect unsafe content in an image

The following `detect-moderation-labels` command detects unsafe content in the specified image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
aws rekognition detect-moderation-labels \
    --image "S3Object={Bucket=MyImageS3Bucket,Name=gun.jpg}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "ModerationModelVersion": "3.0",
    "ModerationLabels": [
        {
            "Confidence": 97.29618072509766,
            "ParentName": "Violence",
            "Name": "Weapon Violence"
        },
        {
            "Confidence": 97.29618072509766,
            "ParentName": "",
            "Name": "Violence"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Detecting Unsafe Images in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectModerationLabels {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:  <bucketName>  <sourceImage>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the images are
 stored.
                sourceImage - The name of the image (for example, pic1.png).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectModLabels(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects moderation labels in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param rekClient      the Amazon Rekognition client to use for the
 detection
     * @param bucketName     the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the image is
 stored
     * @param sourceImage    the name of the image file to be analyzed
```

```
     *
     * @throws RekognitionException if there is an error during the image
detection process
     */
    public static void detectModLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            DetectModerationLabelsRequest moderationLabelsRequest =
DetectModerationLabelsRequest.builder()
                    .image(targetImage)
                    .minConfidence(60F)
                    .build();

            DetectModerationLabelsResponse moderationLabelsResponse = rekClient
                    .detectModerationLabels(moderationLabelsRequest);
            List<ModerationLabel> labels =
moderationLabelsResponse.moderationLabels();
            System.out.println("Detected labels for image");
            for (ModerationLabel label : labels) {
                System.out.println("Label: " + label.name()
                        + "\n Confidence: " + label.confidence().toString() + "%"
                        + "\n Parent:" + label.parentName());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectModLabels(sourceImage: String) {
    val myImage =
        Image {
            this.bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        DetectModerationLabelsRequest {
            image = myImage
            minConfidence = 60f
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectModerationLabels(request)
        response.moderationLabels?.forEach { label ->
            println("Label: ${label.name} - Confidence: ${label.confidence} %
 Parent: ${label.parentName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_moderation_labels(self):
        """
        Detects moderation labels in the image. Moderation labels identify
 content
        that may be inappropriate for some audiences.

        :return: The list of moderation labels found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_moderation_labels(
                Image=self.image
            )
```

```
            labels = [
                RekognitionModerationLabel(label)
                for label in response["ModerationLabels"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s moderation labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't detect moderation labels in %s.", self.image_name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return labels
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DetectText` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectText`.

For more information, see Detecting text in an image.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect text in an image. The
```

```
    /// example was created using the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.7 and .NET
    /// Core 5.0.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectText
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = "Dad_photographer.jpg"; // "input.jpg";
            string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // "bucket";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var detectTextRequest = new DetectTextRequest()
            {
                Image = new Image()
                {
                    S3Object = new S3Object()
                    {
                        Name = photo,
                        Bucket = bucket,
                    },
                },
            };

            try
            {
                DetectTextResponse detectTextResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectTextAsync(detectTextRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Detected lines and words for {photo}");
                detectTextResponse.TextDetections.ForEach(text =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Detected: {text.DetectedText}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {text.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Id : {text.Id}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Parent Id: {text.ParentId}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Type: {text.Type}");
                });
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect text in an image

The following `detect-text` command detects text in the specified image.

```
aws rekognition detect-text \
    --image '{"S3Object":
{"Bucket":"MyImageS3Bucket","Name":"ExamplePicture.jpg"}}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "TextDetections": [
        {
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.24624845385551453,
                    "Top": 0.28288066387176514,
                    "Left": 0.391388863325119,
                    "Height": 0.022687450051307678
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.28288066387176514,
                        "X": 0.391388863325119
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.2826388478279114,
                        "X": 0.6376373171806335
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.30532628297805786,
                        "X": 0.637677013874054
                    },
                    {
```

```
                        "Y": 0.305568128824234,
                        "X": 0.39142853021621704
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Confidence": 94.35709381103516,
            "DetectedText": "ESTD 1882",
            "Type": "LINE",
            "Id": 0
        },
        {
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.33933889865875244,
                    "Top": 0.32603850960731506,
                    "Left": 0.34534579515457153,
                    "Height": 0.07126858830451965
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.32603850960731506,
                        "X": 0.34534579515457153
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.32633158564567566,
                        "X": 0.684684693813324
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3976001739501953,
                        "X": 0.684575080871582
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3973070979118347,
                        "X": 0.345236212015152
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Confidence": 99.95779418945312,
            "DetectedText": "BRAINS",
            "Type": "LINE",
            "Id": 1
        },
        {
            "Confidence": 97.22098541259766,
```

```
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.061079490929841995,
                    "Top": 0.2843210697174072,
                    "Left": 0.391391396522522,
                    "Height": 0.021029088646173477
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.2843210697174072,
                        "X": 0.391391396522522
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.2828207015991211,
                        "X": 0.4524524509906769
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3038259446620941,
                        "X": 0.4534534513950348
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.30532634258270264,
                        "X": 0.3923923969268799
                    }
                ]
            },
            "DetectedText": "ESTD",
            "ParentId": 0,
            "Type": "WORD",
            "Id": 2
        },
        {
            "Confidence": 91.49320983886719,
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.07007007300853729,
                    "Top": 0.2828207015991211,
                    "Left": 0.5675675868988037,
                    "Height": 0.02250562608242035
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.2828207015991211,
                        "X": 0.5675675868988037
```

```
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.2828207015991211,
                        "X": 0.6376376152038574
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.30532634258270264,
                        "X": 0.6376376152038574
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.30532634258270264,
                        "X": 0.5675675868988037
                    }
                ]
            },
            "DetectedText": "1882",
            "ParentId": 0,
            "Type": "WORD",
            "Id": 3
        },
        {
            "Confidence": 99.95779418945312,
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.33933934569358826,
                    "Top": 0.32633158564567566,
                    "Left": 0.3453453481197357,
                    "Height": 0.07127484679222107
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.32633158564567566,
                        "X": 0.3453453481197357
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.32633158564567566,
                        "X": 0.684684693813324
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.39759939908981323,
                        "X": 0.6836836934089661
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.39684921503067017,
```

```
                        "X": 0.3453453481197357
                    }
                ]
            },
            "DetectedText": "BRAINS",
            "ParentId": 1,
            "Type": "WORD",
            "Id": 4
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
```

```
 */
public class DetectText {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage:   <bucketName> <sourceImage>\n" +
            "\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "   bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the image is stored
\n" +
            "   sourceImage - The path to the image that contains text (for
 example, pic1.png). \n";

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectTextLabels(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects text labels in an image stored in an S3 bucket using Amazon
 Rekognition.
     *
     * @param rekClient    an instance of the Amazon Rekognition client
     * @param bucketName   the name of the S3 bucket where the image is stored
     * @param sourceImage  the name of the image file in the S3 bucket
     * @throws RekognitionException if an error occurs while calling the Amazon
 Rekognition API
     */
    public static void detectTextLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
```

```
                    .build();

            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            DetectTextRequest textRequest = DetectTextRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .build();

            DetectTextResponse textResponse = rekClient.detectText(textRequest);
            List<TextDetection> textCollection = textResponse.textDetections();
            System.out.println("Detected lines and words");
            for (TextDetection text : textCollection) {
                System.out.println("Detected: " + text.detectedText());
                System.out.println("Confidence: " +
 text.confidence().toString());
                System.out.println("Id : " + text.id());
                System.out.println("Parent Id: " + text.parentId());
                System.out.println("Type: " + text.type());
                System.out.println();
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectTextLabels(sourceImage: String?) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        DetectTextRequest {
            image = souImage
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectText(request)
        response.textDetections?.forEach { text ->
            println("Detected: ${text.detectedText}")
            println("Confidence: ${text.confidence}")
            println("Id: ${text.id}")
            println("Parent Id:  ${text.parentId}")
            println("Type: ${text.type}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_text(self):
        """
        Detects text in the image.

        :return The list of text elements found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_text(Image=self.image)
            texts = [RekognitionText(text) for text in
response["TextDetections"]]
            logger.info("Found %s texts in %s.", len(texts), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return texts
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DisassociateFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DisassociateFaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

```
aws rekognition disassociate-faces --face-ids list-of-face-ids
  --user-id user-id --collection-id collection-name --region region-name
```

- For API details, see DisassociateFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import boto3
import logging

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
session = boto3.Session(profile_name='profile-name')
client = session.client('rekognition')

def disassociate_faces(collection_id, user_id, face_ids):
    """
    Disassociate stored faces within collection to the given user

    :param collection_id: The ID of the collection where user and faces are
 stored.
    :param user_id: The ID of the user that we want to disassociate faces from
    :param face_ids: The list of face IDs to be disassociated from the given user

    :return: response of AssociateFaces API
    """
    logger.info(f'Disssociating faces from user: {user_id}, {face_ids}')
    try:
        response = client.disassociate_faces(
            CollectionId=collection_id,
            UserId=user_id,
            FaceIds=face_ids
        )
        print(f'- disassociated {len(response["DisassociatedFaces"])} faces')
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.exception("Failed to disassociate faces from the given user")
        raise
    else:
        print(response)
        return response

def main():
    face_ids = ["faceId1", "faceId2"]
    collection_id = "collection-id"
    user_id = "user-id"
    disassociate_faces(collection_id, user_id, face_ids)

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DisassociateFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetCelebrityInfo` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetCelebrityInfo`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition to retrieve information about the
    /// celebrity identified by the supplied celebrity Id.
    /// </summary>
    public class CelebrityInfo
    {
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string celebId = "nnnnnnnn";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var celebrityInfoRequest = new GetCelebrityInfoRequest
            {
                Id = celebId,
            };

            Console.WriteLine($"Getting information for celebrity: {celebId}");

            var celebrityInfoResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.GetCelebrityInfoAsync(celebrityInfoRequest);

            // Display celebrity information.
            Console.WriteLine($"celebrity name: {celebrityInfoResponse.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine("Further information (if available):");
            celebrityInfoResponse.Urls.ForEach(url =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine(url);
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCelebrityInfo in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a celebrity

The following `get-celebrity-info` command displays information about the specified celebrity. The `id` parameter comes from a previous call to `recognize-celebrities`.

```
aws rekognition get-celebrity-info --id nnnnnnn
```

Output:

```
{
    "Name": "Celeb A",
    "Urls": [
        "www.imdb.com/name/aaaaaaaaa"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting Information About a Celebrity in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetCelebrityInfo in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `IndexFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `IndexFaces`.

For more information, see Adding faces to a collection.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect faces in an image
/// that has been uploaded to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket and then adds the information to a collection.
/// </summary>
public class AddFaces
{
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string collectionId = "MyCollection2";
            string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string photo = "input.jpg";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var image = new Image
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object
                {
                    Bucket = bucket,
                    Name = photo,
                },
            };

            var indexFacesRequest = new IndexFacesRequest
            {
                Image = image,
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                ExternalImageId = photo,
                DetectionAttributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
            };

            IndexFacesResponse indexFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.IndexFacesAsync(indexFacesRequest);

            Console.WriteLine($"{photo} added");
            foreach (FaceRecord faceRecord in indexFacesResponse.FaceRecords)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Face detected: Faceid is
{faceRecord.Face.FaceId}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add faces to a collection

The following `index-faces` command adds the faces found in an image to the specified collection.

```
aws rekognition index-faces \
    --image '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"MyVideoS3Bucket","Name":"MyPicture.jpg"}}' \
    --collection-id MyCollection \
    --max-faces 1 \
    --quality-filter "AUTO" \
    --detection-attributes "ALL" \
    --external-image-id "MyPicture.jpg"
```

Output:

```
{
    "FaceRecords": [
        {
            "FaceDetail": {
                "Confidence": 99.993408203125,
                "Eyeglasses": {
                    "Confidence": 99.11750030517578,
                    "Value": false
                },
                "Sunglasses": {
                    "Confidence": 99.98249053955078,
                    "Value": false
                },
                "Gender": {
                    "Confidence": 99.92769622802734,
                    "Value": "Male"
                },
                "Landmarks": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.26750367879867554,
                        "X": 0.6202793717384338,
                        "Type": "eyeLeft"
                    },
                    {
```

```
                "Y": 0.26642778515815735,
                "X": 0.6787431836128235,
                "Type": "eyeRight"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.31361380219459534,
                "X": 0.6421601176261902,
                "Type": "nose"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.3495299220085144,
                "X": 0.6216195225715637,
                "Type": "mouthLeft"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.35194727778434753,
                "X": 0.669899046421051,
                "Type": "mouthRight"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.26844894886016846,
                "X": 0.6210268139839172,
                "Type": "leftPupil"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.26707562804222107,
                "X": 0.6817160844802856,
                "Type": "rightPupil"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.24834522604942322,
                "X": 0.6018546223640442,
                "Type": "leftEyeBrowLeft"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.24397172033786774,
                "X": 0.6172008514404297,
                "Type": "leftEyeBrowUp"
            },
            {
                "Y": 0.24677404761314392,
                "X": 0.6339119076728821,
                "Type": "leftEyeBrowRight"
            },
```

```
                        {
                            "Y": 0.24582654237747192,
                            "X": 0.6619398593902588,
                            "Type": "rightEyeBrowLeft"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.23973053693771362,
                            "X": 0.6804757118225098,
                            "Type": "rightEyeBrowUp"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.24441994726657867,
                            "X": 0.6978968977928162,
                            "Type": "rightEyeBrowRight"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.2695908546447754,
                            "X": 0.6085202693939209,
                            "Type": "leftEyeLeft"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.26716896891593933,
                            "X": 0.6315826177597046,
                            "Type": "leftEyeRight"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.26289820671081543,
                            "X": 0.6202316880226135,
                            "Type": "leftEyeUp"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.27123287320137024,
                            "X": 0.6205548048019409,
                            "Type": "leftEyeDown"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.2668408751487732,
                            "X": 0.6663622260093689,
                            "Type": "rightEyeLeft"
                        },
                        {
                            "Y": 0.26741549372673035,
                            "X": 0.6910083889961243,
                            "Type": "rightEyeRight"
```

```
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.2614026665687561,
                        "X": 0.6785826086997986,
                        "Type": "rightEyeUp"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.27075251936912537,
                        "X": 0.6789616942405701,
                        "Type": "rightEyeDown"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3211299479007721,
                        "X": 0.6324167847633362,
                        "Type": "noseLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.32276326417922974,
                        "X": 0.6558475494384766,
                        "Type": "noseRight"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.34385165572166443,
                        "X": 0.6444970965385437,
                        "Type": "mouthUp"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3671635091304779,
                        "X": 0.6459195017814636,
                        "Type": "mouthDown"
                    }
                ],
                "Pose": {
                    "Yaw": -9.54541015625,
                    "Roll": -0.5709401965141296,
                    "Pitch": 0.6045494675636292
                },
                "Emotions": [
                    {
                        "Confidence": 39.90074157714844,
                        "Type": "HAPPY"
                    },
                    {
                        "Confidence": 23.38753890991211,
```

```
                        "Type": "CALM"
                    },
                    {
                        "Confidence": 5.840933322906494,
                        "Type": "CONFUSED"
                    }
                ],
                "AgeRange": {
                    "High": 63,
                    "Low": 45
                },
                "EyesOpen": {
                    "Confidence": 99.80887603759766,
                    "Value": true
                },
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                    "Top": 0.1618015021085739,
                    "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                    "Height": 0.24770642817020416
                },
                "Smile": {
                    "Confidence": 99.69740295410156,
                    "Value": false
                },
                "MouthOpen": {
                    "Confidence": 99.97393798828125,
                    "Value": false
                },
                "Quality": {
                    "Sharpness": 95.54405975341797,
                    "Brightness": 63.867706298828125
                },
                "Mustache": {
                    "Confidence": 97.05007934570312,
                    "Value": false
                },
                "Beard": {
                    "Confidence": 87.34505462646484,
                    "Value": false
                }
            },
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
```

```
                    "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                    "Top": 0.1618015021085739,
                    "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                    "Height": 0.24770642817020416
                },
                "FaceId": "ce7ed422-2132-4a11-ab14-06c5c410f29f",
                "ExternalImageId": "example-image.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.993408203125,
                "ImageId": "8d67061e-90d2-598f-9fbd-29c8497039c0"
            }
        }
    ],
    "UnindexedFaces": [],
    "FaceModelVersion": "3.0",
    "OrientationCorrection": "ROTATE_0"
}
```

For more information, see Adding Faces to a Collection in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class AddFacesToCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <collectionId> <sourceImage> <bucketName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The name of the collection.
                sourceImage - The name of the image (for example, pic1.png).
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket.
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        String bucketName = args[2];;
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        addToCollection(rekClient, collectionId, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Adds a face from an image to an Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient     the Amazon Rekognition client
     * @param collectionId  the ID of the collection to add the face to
     * @param bucketName    the name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the image
     * @param sourceImage   the name of the image file to add to the collection
     * @throws RekognitionException if there is an error while interacting with
 the Amazon Rekognition service
     */
    public static void addToCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId, String bucketName, String sourceImage) {
```

```
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            IndexFacesRequest facesRequest = IndexFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .image(targetImage)
                    .maxFaces(1)
                    .qualityFilter(QualityFilter.AUTO)
                    .detectionAttributes(Attribute.DEFAULT)
                    .build();

            IndexFacesResponse facesResponse =
rekClient.indexFaces(facesRequest);
            System.out.println("Results for the image");
            System.out.println("\n Faces indexed:");
            List<FaceRecord> faceRecords = facesResponse.faceRecords();
            for (FaceRecord faceRecord : faceRecords) {
                System.out.println("  Face ID: " + faceRecord.face().faceId());
                System.out.println("  Location:" +
faceRecord.faceDetail().boundingBox().toString());
            }

            List<UnindexedFace> unindexedFaces = facesResponse.unindexedFaces();
            System.out.println("Faces not indexed:");
            for (UnindexedFace unindexedFace : unindexedFaces) {
                System.out.println("  Location:" +
unindexedFace.faceDetail().boundingBox().toString());
                System.out.println("  Reasons:");
                for (Reason reason : unindexedFace.reasons()) {
                    System.out.println("Reason:  " + reason);
                }
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addToCollection(
    collectionIdVal: String?,
    sourceImage: String,
) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        IndexFacesRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
            image = souImage
            maxFaces = 1
            qualityFilter = QualityFilter.Auto
            detectionAttributes = listOf(Attribute.Default)
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val facesResponse = rekClient.indexFaces(request)

        // Display the results.
        println("Results for the image")
        println("\n Faces indexed:")
        facesResponse.faceRecords?.forEach { faceRecord ->
            println("Face ID: ${faceRecord.face?.faceId}")
```

```
            println("Location: ${faceRecord.faceDetail?.boundingBox}")
        }

        println("Faces not indexed:")
        facesResponse.unindexedFaces?.forEach { unindexedFace ->
            println("Location: ${unindexedFace.faceDetail?.boundingBox}")
            println("Reasons:")

            unindexedFace.reasons?.forEach { reason ->
                println("Reason:  $reason")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
```

```
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def index_faces(self, image, max_faces):
        """
        Finds faces in the specified image, indexes them, and stores them in the
        collection.

        :param image: The image to index.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to index.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is a list of indexed faces.
                 The second element is a list of faces that couldn't be indexed.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.index_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                ExternalImageId=image.image_name,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
                DetectionAttributes=["ALL"],
            )
            indexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace({**face["Face"], **face["FaceDetail"]})
                for face in response["FaceRecords"]
```

```
            ]
            unindexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["FaceDetail"])
                for face in response["UnindexedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Indexed %s faces in %s. Could not index %s faces.",
                len(indexed_faces),
                image.image_name,
                len(unindexed_faces),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't index faces in image %s.",
image.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return indexed_faces, unindexed_faces
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListCollections` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListCollections`.

For more information, see Listing collections.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Uses Amazon Rekognition to list the collection IDs in the
    /// current account.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListCollections
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            Console.WriteLine("Listing collections");
            int limit = 10;

            var listCollectionsRequest = new ListCollectionsRequest
            {
                MaxResults = limit,
            };

            var listCollectionsResponse = new ListCollectionsResponse();

            do
            {
                if (listCollectionsResponse is not null)
                {
                    listCollectionsRequest.NextToken =
listCollectionsResponse.NextToken;
                }

                listCollectionsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.ListCollectionsAsync(listCollectionsRequest);

                listCollectionsResponse.CollectionIds.ForEach(id =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(id);
                });
            }
            while (listCollectionsResponse.NextToken is not null);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the available collections

The following `list-collections` command lists the available collections in the AWS account.

```
aws rekognition list-collections
```

Output:

```
{
    "FaceModelVersions": [
        "2.0",
        "3.0",
        "3.0",
        "3.0",
        "4.0",
        "1.0",
        "3.0",
        "4.0",
        "4.0",
        "4.0"
    ],
    "CollectionIds": [
        "MyCollection1",
        "MyCollection2",
        "MyCollection3",
        "MyCollection4",
        "MyCollection5",
        "MyCollection6",
        "MyCollection7",
        "MyCollection8",
        "MyCollection9",
        "MyCollection10"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing Collections in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListCollectionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListCollectionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListCollections {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Listing collections");
        listAllCollections(rekClient);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllCollections(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            ListCollectionsRequest listCollectionsRequest =
 ListCollectionsRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListCollectionsResponse response =
 rekClient.listCollections(listCollectionsRequest);
            List<String> collectionIds = response.collectionIds();
            for (String resultId : collectionIds) {
                System.out.println(resultId);
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllCollections() {
    val request =
        ListCollectionsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.listCollections(request)
        response.collectionIds?.forEach { resultId ->
            println(resultId)
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollectionManager:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Rekognition collection management functions.
    This class is a thin wrapper around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition
 API.
    """

    def __init__(self, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the collection manager object.

        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def list_collections(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists collections for the current account.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of collections to return.
        :return: The list of collections for the current account.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.rekognition_client.list_collections(MaxResults=max_results)
            collections = [
```

```
                RekognitionCollection({"CollectionId": col_id},
self.rekognition_client)
                for col_id in response["CollectionIds"]
            ]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list collections.")
            raise
        else:
            return collections
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListFaces`.

For more information, see Listing faces in a collection.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to retrieve the list of faces
/// stored in a collection.
/// </summary>
public class ListFaces
{
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string collectionId = "MyCollection2";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var listFacesResponse = new ListFacesResponse();
            Console.WriteLine($"Faces in collection {collectionId}");

            var listFacesRequest = new ListFacesRequest
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                MaxResults = 1,
            };

            do
            {
                listFacesResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.ListFacesAsync(listFacesRequest);
                listFacesResponse.Faces.ForEach(face =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(face.FaceId);
                });

                listFacesRequest.NextToken = listFacesResponse.NextToken;
            }
            while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(listFacesResponse.NextToken));
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the faces in a collection

The following `list-faces` command lists the faces in the specified collection.

```
aws rekognition list-faces \
```

```
    --collection-id MyCollection
```

Output:

```
{
    "FaceModelVersion": "3.0",
    "Faces": [
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.5216310024261475,
                "Top": 0.3256250023841858,
                "Left": 0.13394300639629364,
                "Height": 0.3918749988079071
            },
            "FaceId": "0040279c-0178-436e-b70a-e61b074e96b0",
            "ExternalImageId": "image1.jpg",
            "Confidence": 100.0,
            "ImageId": "f976e487-3719-5e2d-be8b-ea2724c26991"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.5074880123138428,
                "Top": 0.3774999976158142,
                "Left": 0.18302799761295319,
                "Height": 0.3812499940395355
            },
            "FaceId": "086261e8-6deb-4bc0-ac73-ab22323cc38d",
            "ExternalImageId": "image2.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99930572509766,
            "ImageId": "ae1593b0-a8f6-5e24-a306-abf529e276fa"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.5574039816856384,
                "Top": 0.37187498807907104,
                "Left": 0.14559100568294525,
                "Height": 0.4181250035762787
            },
            "FaceId": "11c4bd3c-19c5-4eb8-aecc-24feb93a26e1",
            "ExternalImageId": "image3.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99960327148438,
            "ImageId": "80739b4d-883f-5b78-97cf-5124038e26b9"
        },
```

```
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                "Top": 0.1618019938468933,
                "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                "Height": 0.24770599603652954
            },
            "FaceId": "13692fe4-990a-4679-b14a-5ac23d135eab",
            "ExternalImageId": "image4.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99340057373047,
            "ImageId": "8df18239-9ad1-5acd-a46a-6581ff98f51b"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.5307819843292236,
                "Top": 0.2862499952316284,
                "Left": 0.1564060002565384,
                "Height": 0.3987500071525574
            },
            "FaceId": "2eb5f3fd-e2a9-4b1c-a89f-afa0a518fe06",
            "ExternalImageId": "image5.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99970245361328,
            "ImageId": "3c314792-197d-528d-bbb6-798ed012c150"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.5773710012435913,
                "Top": 0.34437501430511475,
                "Left": 0.12396000325679779,
                "Height": 0.4337500035762787
            },
            "FaceId": "57189455-42b0-4839-a86c-abda48b13174",
            "ExternalImageId": "image6.jpg",
            "Confidence": 100.0,
            "ImageId": "0aff2f37-e7a2-5dbc-a3a3-4ef6ec18eaa0"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.5349419713020325,
                "Top": 0.29124999046325684,
                "Left": 0.16389399766921997,
                "Height": 0.40187498927116394
            },
            "FaceId": "745f7509-b1fa-44e0-8b95-367b1359638a",
```

```
            "ExternalImageId": "image7.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99979400634766,
            "ImageId": "67a34327-48d1-5179-b042-01e52ccfeada"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.41499999165534973,
                "Top": 0.09187500178813934,
                "Left": 0.28083300590515137,
                "Height": 0.3112500011920929
            },
            "FaceId": "8d3cfc70-4ba8-4b36-9644-90fba29c2dac",
            "ExternalImageId": "image8.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99769592285156,
            "ImageId": "a294da46-2cb1-5cc4-9045-61d7ca567662"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.48166701197624207,
                "Top": 0.20999999344348907,
                "Left": 0.21250000596046448,
                "Height": 0.36125001311302185
            },
            "FaceId": "bd4ceb4d-9acc-4ab7-8ef8-1c2d2ba0a66a",
            "ExternalImageId": "image9.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99949645996094,
            "ImageId": "5e1a7588-e5a0-5ee3-bd00-c642518dfe3a"
        },
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                "Top": 0.1618019938468933,
                "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                "Height": 0.24770599603652954
            },
            "FaceId": "ce7ed422-2132-4a11-ab14-06c5c410f29f",
            "ExternalImageId": "image10.jpg",
            "Confidence": 99.99340057373047,
            "ImageId": "8d67061e-90d2-598f-9fbd-29c8497039c0"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Listing Faces in a Collection in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Face;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListFacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListFacesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListFacesInCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <collectionId>

                Where:
                   collectionId - The name of the collection.\s
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length < 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Faces in collection " + collectionId);
        listFacesCollection(rekClient, collectionId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void listFacesCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId) {
        try {
            ListFacesRequest facesRequest = ListFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListFacesResponse facesResponse = rekClient.listFaces(facesRequest);
            List<Face> faces = facesResponse.faces();
            for (Face face : faces) {
                System.out.println("Confidence level there is a face: " +
 face.confidence());
                System.out.println("The face Id value is " + face.faceId());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listFacesCollection(collectionIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListFacesRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
            maxResults = 10
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.listFaces(request)
        response.faces?.forEach { face ->
            println("Confidence level there is a face: ${face.confidence}")
            println("The face Id value is ${face.faceId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def list_faces(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists the faces currently indexed in the collection.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of faces in the collection.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.rekognition_client.list_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id, MaxResults=max_results
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["Faces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in collection %s.", len(faces),
self.collection_id
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list faces in collection %s.", self.collection_id
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RecognizeCelebrities` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RecognizeCelebrities`.

For more information, see Recognizing celebrities in an image.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition to identify celebrities in a photo.
    /// </summary>
    public class CelebritiesInImage
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            string photo = "moviestars.jpg";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var recognizeCelebritiesRequest = new RecognizeCelebritiesRequest();

            var img = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            byte[] data = null;
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load file {photo}");
                return;
            }

            img.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            recognizeCelebritiesRequest.Image = img;

            Console.WriteLine($"Looking for celebrities in image {photo}\n");

            var recognizeCelebritiesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.RecognizeCelebritiesAsync(recognizeCelebritiesRequest);


Console.WriteLine($"{recognizeCelebritiesResponse.CelebrityFaces.Count}
celebrity(s) were recognized.\n");
            recognizeCelebritiesResponse.CelebrityFaces.ForEach(celeb =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Celebrity recognized: {celeb.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Celebrity ID: {celeb.Id}");
                BoundingBox boundingBox = celeb.Face.BoundingBox;
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"position: {boundingBox.Left}
{boundingBox.Top}");
                Console.WriteLine("Further information (if available):");
                celeb.Urls.ForEach(url =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(url);
                });
            });


Console.WriteLine($"{recognizeCelebritiesResponse.UnrecognizedFaces.Count}
face(s) were unrecognized.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To recognize celebrities in an image

The following `recognize-celebrities` command recognizes celebrities in the specified image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.:

```
aws rekognition recognize-celebrities \
    --image "S3Object={Bucket=MyImageS3Bucket,Name=moviestars.jpg}"
```

Output:

```
{
    "UnrecognizedFaces": [
        {
            "BoundingBox": {
                "Width": 0.14416666328907013,
                "Top": 0.07777778059244156,
                "Left": 0.625,
                "Height": 0.2746031880378723
            },
```

```
            "Confidence": 99.9990234375,
            "Pose": {
                "Yaw": 10.80408763885498,
                "Roll": -12.761146545410156,
                "Pitch": 10.96889877319336
            },
            "Quality": {
                "Sharpness": 94.1185531616211,
                "Brightness": 79.18367004394531
            },
            "Landmarks": [
                {
                    "Y": 0.18220913410186768,
                    "X": 0.6702951788902283,
                    "Type": "eyeLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.16337193548679352,
                    "X": 0.7188183665275574,
                    "Type": "eyeRight"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.20739148557186127,
                    "X": 0.705580174922943 1,
                    "Type": "nose"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.2889308035373688,
                    "X": 0.687512218952179,
                    "Type": "mouthLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.2706988751888275,
                    "X": 0.7250053286552429,
                    "Type": "mouthRight"
                }
            ]
        }
    ],
    "CelebrityFaces": [
        {
            "MatchConfidence": 100.0,
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
```

```
                "Width": 0.14000000059604645,
                "Top": 0.1190476194024086,
                "Left": 0.82833331823349,
                "Height": 0.2666666805744171
            },
            "Confidence": 99.99359130859375,
            "Pose": {
                "Yaw": -10.509642601013184,
                "Roll": -14.51749324798584,
                "Pitch": 13.799399375915527
            },
            "Quality": {
                "Sharpness": 78.74752044677734,
                "Brightness": 42.201324462890625
            },
            "Landmarks": [
                {
                    "Y": 0.2290833294391632,
                    "X": 0.8709492087364197,
                    "Type": "eyeLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.20639978349208832,
                    "X": 0.9153988361358643,
                    "Type": "eyeRight"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.25417643785476685,
                    "X": 0.8907724022865295,
                    "Type": "nose"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.32729196548461914,
                    "X": 0.8876466155052185,
                    "Type": "mouthLeft"
                },
                {
                    "Y": 0.3115464746952057,
                    "X": 0.9238573312759399,
                    "Type": "mouthRight"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Name": "Celeb A",
```

```
            "Urls": [
                "www.imdb.com/name/aaaaaaaaa"
            ],
            "Id": "1111111"
        },
        {
            "MatchConfidence": 97.0,
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.13333334028720856,
                    "Top": 0.24920634925365448,
                    "Left": 0.4449999928474426,
                    "Height": 0.2539682686328888
                },
                "Confidence": 99.99979400634766,
                "Pose": {
                    "Yaw": 6.557040691375732,
                    "Roll": -7.316643714904785,
                    "Pitch": 9.272967338562012
                },
                "Quality": {
                    "Sharpness": 83.23492431640625,
                    "Brightness": 78.83267974853516
                },
                "Landmarks": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3625510632991791,
                        "X": 0.48898839950561523,
                        "Type": "eyeLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.35366007685661316,
                        "X": 0.5313721299171448,
                        "Type": "eyeRight"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3894785940647125,
                        "X": 0.5173314809799194,
                        "Type": "nose"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.44889405369758606,
                        "X": 0.5020005702972412,
                        "Type": "mouthLeft"
```

```
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.4408611059188843,
                        "X": 0.5351271629333496,
                        "Type": "mouthRight"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Name": "Celeb B",
            "Urls": [
                "www.imdb.com/name/bbbbbbbbb"
            ],
            "Id": "2222222"
        },
        {
            "MatchConfidence": 100.0,
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.12416666746139526,
                    "Top": 0.2968254089355469,
                    "Left": 0.2150000035762787,
                    "Height": 0.23650793731212616
                },
                "Confidence": 99.99958801269531,
                "Pose": {
                    "Yaw": 7.801797866821289,
                    "Roll": -8.326810836791992,
                    "Pitch": 7.844768047332764
                },
                "Quality": {
                    "Sharpness": 86.93206024169922,
                    "Brightness": 79.81291198730469
                },
                "Landmarks": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.4027804136276245,
                        "X": 0.2575301229953766,
                        "Type": "eyeLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.3934555947780609,
                        "X": 0.2956969439983368,
                        "Type": "eyeRight"
                    },
```

```
                    {
                        "Y": 0.4309830069541931,
                        "X": 0.2837020754814148,
                        "Type": "nose"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.48186683654785156,
                        "X": 0.26812544465065,
                        "Type": "mouthLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.47338807582855225,
                        "X": 0.29905644059181213,
                        "Type": "mouthRight"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Name": "Celeb C",
            "Urls": [
                "www.imdb.com/name/ccccccccc"
            ],
            "Id": "3333333"
        },
        {
            "MatchConfidence": 97.0,
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.11916666477918625,
                    "Top": 0.3698412775993347,
                    "Left": 0.008333333767950535,
                    "Height": 0.22698412835597992
                },
                "Confidence": 99.99999237060547,
                "Pose": {
                    "Yaw": 16.38478660583496,
                    "Roll": -1.0260354280471802,
                    "Pitch": 5.975185394287109
                },
                "Quality": {
                    "Sharpness": 83.23492431640625,
                    "Brightness": 61.408443450927734
                },
                "Landmarks": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Y": 0.4632347822189331,
                        "X": 0.049406956881284714,
                        "Type": "eyeLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.46388113498687744,
                        "X": 0.08722897619009018,
                        "Type": "eyeRight"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.5020678639411926,
                        "X": 0.0758260041475296,
                        "Type": "nose"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.544157862663269,
                        "X": 0.054029736667871475,
                        "Type": "mouthLeft"
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.5463630557060242,
                        "X": 0.08464983850717545,
                        "Type": "mouthRight"
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Name": "Celeb D",
            "Urls": [
                "www.imdb.com/name/ddddddddd"
            ],
            "Id": "4444444"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Recognizing Celebrities in an Image in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class RecognizeCelebrities {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:   <bucketName> <sourceImage>

                Where:
                   bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the images are
 stored.
                   sourceImage - The path to the image (for example, C:\\AWS\
\pic1.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];;
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Locating celebrities in " + sourceImage);
        recognizeAllCelebrities(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Recognizes all celebrities in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param rekClient    the Amazon Rekognition client used to perform the
celebrity recognition operation
     * @param bucketName   the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the source
image is stored
     * @param sourceImage  the name of the source image file stored in the Amazon
S3 bucket
     */
    public static void recognizeAllCelebrities(RekognitionClient rekClient,
String bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .name(sourceImage)
                .build();

            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            RecognizeCelebritiesRequest request =
RecognizeCelebritiesRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .build();
```

```
            RecognizeCelebritiesResponse result =
 rekClient.recognizeCelebrities(request);
            List<Celebrity> celebs = result.celebrityFaces();
            System.out.println(celebs.size() + " celebrity(s) were recognized.
\n");
            for (Celebrity celebrity : celebs) {
                System.out.println("Celebrity recognized: " + celebrity.name());
                System.out.println("Celebrity ID: " + celebrity.id());

                System.out.println("Further information (if available):");
                for (String url : celebrity.urls()) {
                    System.out.println(url);
                }
                System.out.println();
            }
            System.out.println(result.unrecognizedFaces().size() + " face(s) were
 unrecognized.");

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun recognizeAllCelebrities(sourceImage: String?) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
```

```
        }

    val request =
        RecognizeCelebritiesRequest {
            image = souImage
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.recognizeCelebrities(request)
        response.celebrityFaces?.forEach { celebrity ->
            println("Celebrity recognized: ${celebrity.name}")
            println("Celebrity ID:${celebrity.id}")
            println("Further information (if available):")
            celebrity.urls?.forEach { url ->
                println(url)
            }
        }
        println("${response.unrecognizedFaces?.size} face(s) were unrecognized.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
```

```
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def recognize_celebrities(self):
        """
        Detects celebrities in the image.

        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of celebrities found in
                 the image. The second element is the list of faces that were
                 detected but did not match any known celebrities.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.rekognition_client.recognize_celebrities(Image=self.image)
            celebrities = [
                RekognitionCelebrity(celeb) for celeb in
response["CelebrityFaces"]
            ]
            other_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["UnrecognizedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s celebrities and %s other faces in %s.",
                len(celebrities),
                len(other_faces),
                self.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect celebrities in %s.",
self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return celebrities, other_faces
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SearchFaces` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SearchFaces`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (face ID).

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to find faces in an image that
/// match the face Id provided in the method request.
/// </summary>
public class SearchFacesMatchingId
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        string faceId = "xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        // Search collection for faces matching the face id.
        var searchFacesRequest = new SearchFacesRequest
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
```

```
                FaceId = faceId,
                FaceMatchThreshold = 70F,
                MaxFaces = 2,
            };

            SearchFacesResponse searchFacesResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.SearchFacesAsync(searchFacesRequest);

            Console.WriteLine("Face matching faceId " + faceId);

            Console.WriteLine("Matche(s): ");
            searchFacesResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(face =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceId: {face.Face.FaceId} Similarity:
 {face.Similarity}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To search for faces in a collection that match a face ID.

The following `search-faces` command searches for faces in a collection that match the specified face ID.

```
aws rekognition search-faces \
    --face-id 8d3cfc70-4ba8-4b36-9644-90fba29c2dac \
    --collection-id MyCollection
```

Output:

```
{
    "SearchedFaceId": "8d3cfc70-4ba8-4b36-9644-90fba29c2dac",
    "FaceModelVersion": "3.0",
    "FaceMatches": [
```

```
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.48166701197624207,
                    "Top": 0.20999999344348907,
                    "Left": 0.21250000596046448,
                    "Height": 0.36125001311302185
                },
                "FaceId": "bd4ceb4d-9acc-4ab7-8ef8-1c2d2ba0a66a",
                "ExternalImageId": "image1.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99949645996094,
                "ImageId": "5e1a7588-e5a0-5ee3-bd00-c642518dfe3a"
            },
            "Similarity": 99.30997467041016
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                    "Top": 0.1618019938468933,
                    "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                    "Height": 0.24770599603652954
                },
                "FaceId": "ce7ed422-2132-4a11-ab14-06c5c410f29f",
                "ExternalImageId": "example-image.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99340057373047,
                "ImageId": "8d67061e-90d2-598f-9fbd-29c8497039c0"
            },
            "Similarity": 99.24862670898438
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                    "Top": 0.1618019938468933,
                    "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                    "Height": 0.24770599603652954
                },
                "FaceId": "13692fe4-990a-4679-b14a-5ac23d135eab",
                "ExternalImageId": "image3.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99340057373047,
                "ImageId": "8df18239-9ad1-5acd-a46a-6581ff98f51b"
            },
            "Similarity": 99.24862670898438
```

```
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5349419713020325,
                    "Top": 0.29124999046325684,
                    "Left": 0.16389399766921997,
                    "Height": 0.40187498927116394
                },
                "FaceId": "745f7509-b1fa-44e0-8b95-367b1359638a",
                "ExternalImageId": "image9.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99979400634766,
                "ImageId": "67a34327-48d1-5179-b042-01e52ccfeada"
            },
            "Similarity": 96.73158264160156
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5307819843292236,
                    "Top": 0.2862499952316284,
                    "Left": 0.1564060002565384,
                    "Height": 0.3987500071525574
                },
                "FaceId": "2eb5f3fd-e2a9-4b1c-a89f-afa0a518fe06",
                "ExternalImageId": "image10.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99970245361328,
                "ImageId": "3c314792-197d-528d-bbb6-798ed012c150"
            },
            "Similarity": 96.48291015625
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5074880123138428,
                    "Top": 0.3774999976158142,
                    "Left": 0.18302799761295319,
                    "Height": 0.3812499940395355
                },
                "FaceId": "086261e8-6deb-4bc0-ac73-ab22323cc38d",
                "ExternalImageId": "image6.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99930572509766,
                "ImageId": "ae1593b0-a8f6-5e24-a306-abf529e276fa"
            },
```

```
            "Similarity": 96.43287658691406
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5574039816856384,
                    "Top": 0.37187498807907104,
                    "Left": 0.14559100568294525,
                    "Height": 0.4181250035762787
                },
                "FaceId": "11c4bd3c-19c5-4eb8-aecc-24feb93a26e1",
                "ExternalImageId": "image5.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99960327148438,
                "ImageId": "80739b4d-883f-5b78-97cf-5124038e26b9"
            },
            "Similarity": 95.25305938720703
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5773710012435913,
                    "Top": 0.34437501430511475,
                    "Left": 0.12396000325679779,
                    "Height": 0.4337500035762787
                },
                "FaceId": "57189455-42b0-4839-a86c-abda48b13174",
                "ExternalImageId": "image8.jpg",
                "Confidence": 100.0,
                "ImageId": "0aff2f37-e7a2-5dbc-a3a3-4ef6ec18eaa0"
            },
            "Similarity": 95.22837829589844
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Searching for a Face Using Its Face ID in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesByImageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Image;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesByImageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.FaceMatch;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SearchFaceMatchingImageCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <collectionId> <sourceImage>

                Where:
```

```
                    collectionId - The id of the collection. \s
                    sourceImage - The path to the image (for example, C:\\AWS\
\pic1.png).\s

                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Searching for a face in a collections");
        searchFaceInCollection(rekClient, collectionId, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void searchFaceInCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(new
 File(sourceImage));
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);
            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .bytes(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            SearchFacesByImageRequest facesByImageRequest =
 SearchFacesByImageRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .maxFaces(10)
                    .faceMatchThreshold(70F)
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .build();

            SearchFacesByImageResponse imageResponse =
 rekClient.searchFacesByImage(facesByImageRequest);
            System.out.println("Faces matching in the collection");
```

```
            List<FaceMatch> faceImageMatches = imageResponse.faceMatches();
            for (FaceMatch face : faceImageMatches) {
                System.out.println("The similarity level is  " +
 face.similarity());
                System.out.println();
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException | FileNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
```

```
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def search_faces(self, face_id, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match another face from the
        collection.

        :param face_id: The ID of the face in the collection to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of matching faces found in the collection. This list
does
                 not contain the face specified by `face_id`.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                FaceId=face_id,
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in
response["FaceMatches"]]
```

```
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in %s that match %s.",
                len(faces),
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SearchFacesByImage` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SearchFacesByImage`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (image).

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
```

```
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to search for images matching those
    /// in a collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class SearchFacesMatchingImage
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string photo = "input.jpg";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            // Get an image object from S3 bucket.
            var image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Bucket = bucket,
                    Name = photo,
                },
            };

            var searchFacesByImageRequest = new SearchFacesByImageRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                Image = image,
                FaceMatchThreshold = 70F,
                MaxFaces = 2,
            };

            SearchFacesByImageResponse searchFacesByImageResponse = await
rekognitionClient.SearchFacesByImageAsync(searchFacesByImageRequest);

            Console.WriteLine("Faces matching largest face in image from " +
photo);
            searchFacesByImageResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(face =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceId: {face.Face.FaceId}, Similarity:
{face.Similarity}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To search for faces in a collection that match the largest face in an image.

The following `search-faces-by-image` command searches for faces in a collection that match the largest face in the specified image.:

```
aws rekognition search-faces-by-image \
    --image '{"S3Object":
{"Bucket":"MyImageS3Bucket","Name":"ExamplePerson.jpg"}}' \
    --collection-id MyFaceImageCollection

{
    "SearchedFaceBoundingBox": {
        "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
        "Top": 0.1618015021085739,
        "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
        "Height": 0.24770642817020416
    },
    "SearchedFaceConfidence": 99.993408203125,
    "FaceMatches": [
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                    "Top": 0.1618019938468933,
                    "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                    "Height": 0.24770599603652954
                },
                "FaceId": "ce7ed422-2132-4a11-ab14-06c5c410f29f",
                "ExternalImageId": "example-image.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99340057373047,
                "ImageId": "8d67061e-90d2-598f-9fbd-29c8497039c0"
            },
            "Similarity": 99.97913360595703
        },
        {
```

```
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.18562500178813934,
                    "Top": 0.1618019938468933,
                    "Left": 0.5575000047683716,
                    "Height": 0.24770599603652954
                },
                "FaceId": "13692fe4-990a-4679-b14a-5ac23d135eab",
                "ExternalImageId": "image3.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99340057373047,
                "ImageId": "8df18239-9ad1-5acd-a46a-6581ff98f51b"
            },
            "Similarity": 99.97913360595703
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.41499999165534973,
                    "Top": 0.09187500178813934,
                    "Left": 0.28083300590515137,
                    "Height": 0.3112500011920929
                },
                "FaceId": "8d3cfc70-4ba8-4b36-9644-90fba29c2dac",
                "ExternalImageId": "image2.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99769592285156,
                "ImageId": "a294da46-2cb1-5cc4-9045-61d7ca567662"
            },
            "Similarity": 99.18069458007812
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.48166701197624207,
                    "Top": 0.20999999344348907,
                    "Left": 0.21250000596046448,
                    "Height": 0.36125001311302185
                },
                "FaceId": "bd4ceb4d-9acc-4ab7-8ef8-1c2d2ba0a66a",
                "ExternalImageId": "image1.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99949645996094,
                "ImageId": "5e1a7588-e5a0-5ee3-bd00-c642518dfe3a"
            },
            "Similarity": 98.66607666015625
        },
```

```
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5349419713020325,
                    "Top": 0.29124999046325684,
                    "Left": 0.16389399766921997,
                    "Height": 0.40187498927116394
                },
                "FaceId": "745f7509-b1fa-44e0-8b95-367b1359638a",
                "ExternalImageId": "image9.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99979400634766,
                "ImageId": "67a34327-48d1-5179-b042-01e52ccfeada"
            },
            "Similarity": 98.24278259277344
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5307819843292236,
                    "Top": 0.2862499952316284,
                    "Left": 0.1564060002565384,
                    "Height": 0.3987500071525574
                },
                "FaceId": "2eb5f3fd-e2a9-4b1c-a89f-afa0a518fe06",
                "ExternalImageId": "image10.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99970245361328,
                "ImageId": "3c314792-197d-528d-bbb6-798ed012c150"
            },
            "Similarity": 98.10665893554688
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5074880123138428,
                    "Top": 0.3774999976158142,
                    "Left": 0.18302799761295319,
                    "Height": 0.3812499940395355
                },
                "FaceId": "086261e8-6deb-4bc0-ac73-ab22323cc38d",
                "ExternalImageId": "image6.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99930572509766,
                "ImageId": "ae1593b0-a8f6-5e24-a306-abf529e276fa"
            },
            "Similarity": 98.10526275634766
```

```
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5574039816856384,
                    "Top": 0.37187498807907104,
                    "Left": 0.14559100568294525,
                    "Height": 0.4181250035762787
                },
                "FaceId": "11c4bd3c-19c5-4eb8-aecc-24feb93a26e1",
                "ExternalImageId": "image5.jpg",
                "Confidence": 99.99960327148438,
                "ImageId": "80739b4d-883f-5b78-97cf-5124038e26b9"
            },
            "Similarity": 97.94659423828125
        },
        {
            "Face": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.5773710012435913,
                    "Top": 0.34437501430511475,
                    "Left": 0.12396000325679779,
                    "Height": 0.4337500035762787
                },
                "FaceId": "57189455-42b0-4839-a86c-abda48b13174",
                "ExternalImageId": "image8.jpg",
                "Confidence": 100.0,
                "ImageId": "0aff2f37-e7a2-5dbc-a3a3-4ef6ec18eaa0"
            },
            "Similarity": 97.93476867675781
        }
    ],

 "FaceModelVersion": "3.0"
}
```

For more information, see Searching for a Face Using an Image in the *Amazon Rekognition Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.FaceMatch;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SearchFaceMatchingIdCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <collectionId> <sourceImage>

                Where:
                   collectionId - The id of the collection. \s
                   sourceImage - The path to the image (for example, C:\\AWS\
\pic1.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        String faceId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Searching for a face in a collections");
        searchFacebyId(rekClient, collectionId, faceId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void searchFacebyId(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId, String faceId) {
        try {
            SearchFacesRequest searchFacesRequest = SearchFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .faceId(faceId)
                    .faceMatchThreshold(70F)
                    .maxFaces(2)
                    .build();

            SearchFacesResponse imageResponse =
 rekClient.searchFaces(searchFacesRequest);
            System.out.println("Faces matching in the collection");
            List<FaceMatch> faceImageMatches = imageResponse.faceMatches();
            for (FaceMatch face : faceImageMatches) {
                System.out.println("The similarity level is  " +
 face.similarity());
                System.out.println();
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
```

```
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def search_faces_by_image(self, image, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match the largest face in the
        reference image.

        :param image: The image that contains the reference face to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the face found in the reference
image.
                 The second element is the list of matching faces found in the
                 collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces_by_image(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            image_face = RekognitionFace(
                {
                    "BoundingBox": response["SearchedFaceBoundingBox"],
                    "Confidence": response["SearchedFaceConfidence"],
                }
            )
            collection_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in the collection that match the largest "
                "face in %s.",
                len(collection_faces),
                image.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
```

```
                self.collection_id,
                image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_face, collection_faces
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Rekognition using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Rekognition with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Rekognition or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build an Amazon Rekognition collection and find faces in it using an AWS SDK
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect and display elements in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect faces in an image using an AWS SDK
- Detect information in videos using Amazon Rekognition and the AWS SDK
- Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK

Build an Amazon Rekognition collection and find faces in it using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Rekognition collection.
- Add images to the collection and detect faces in it.
- Search the collection for faces that match a reference image.
- Delete a collection.

For more information, see Searching faces in a collection.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create classes that wrap Amazon Rekognition functions.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from rekognition_objects import RekognitionFace
from rekognition_image_detection import RekognitionImage

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
```

```
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    @classmethod
    def from_file(cls, image_file_name, rekognition_client, image_name=None):
        """
        Creates a RekognitionImage object from a local file.

        :param image_file_name: The file name of the image. The file is opened
 and its
                                bytes are read.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        :param image_name: The name of the image. If this is not specified, the
                           file name is used as the image name.
        :return: The RekognitionImage object, initialized with image bytes from
 the
                 file.
        """
        with open(image_file_name, "rb") as img_file:
            image = {"Bytes": img_file.read()}
        name = image_file_name if image_name is None else image_name
        return cls(image, name, rekognition_client)


class RekognitionCollectionManager:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Rekognition collection management functions.
    This class is a thin wrapper around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition
 API.
    """

    def __init__(self, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the collection manager object.

        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client
```

```
    def create_collection(self, collection_id):
        """
        Creates an empty collection.

        :param collection_id: Text that identifies the collection.
        :return: The newly created collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.create_collection(
                CollectionId=collection_id
            )
            response["CollectionId"] = collection_id
            collection = RekognitionCollection(response, self.rekognition_client)
            logger.info("Created collection %s.", collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create collection %s.", collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return collection


    def list_collections(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists collections for the current account.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of collections to return.
        :return: The list of collections for the current account.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.rekognition_client.list_collections(MaxResults=max_results)
            collections = [
                RekognitionCollection({"CollectionId": col_id},
self.rekognition_client)
                for col_id in response["CollectionIds"]
            ]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list collections.")
            raise
        else:
            return collections
```

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders parts of the collection data to a dict.

        :return: The collection data as a dict.
        """
```

```
        rendering = {
            "collection_id": self.collection_id,
            "collection_arn": self.collection_arn,
            "face_count": self.face_count,
            "created": self.created,
        }
        return rendering


    def describe_collection(self):
        """
        Gets data about the collection from the Amazon Rekognition service.

        :return: The collection rendered as a dict.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.describe_collection(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id
            )
            # Work around capitalization of Arn vs. ARN
            response["CollectionArn"] = response.get("CollectionARN")
            (
                self.collection_arn,
                self.face_count,
                self.created,
            ) = self._unpack_collection(response)
            logger.info("Got data for collection %s.", self.collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for collection %s.",
self.collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return self.to_dict()


    def delete_collection(self):
        """
        Deletes the collection.
        """
        try:

self.rekognition_client.delete_collection(CollectionId=self.collection_id)
            logger.info("Deleted collection %s.", self.collection_id)
            self.collection_id = None
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete collection %s.",
self.collection_id)
            raise


    def index_faces(self, image, max_faces):
        """
        Finds faces in the specified image, indexes them, and stores them in the
        collection.

        :param image: The image to index.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to index.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is a list of indexed faces.
                 The second element is a list of faces that couldn't be indexed.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.index_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                ExternalImageId=image.image_name,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
                DetectionAttributes=["ALL"],
            )
            indexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace({**face["Face"], **face["FaceDetail"]})
                for face in response["FaceRecords"]
            ]
            unindexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["FaceDetail"])
                for face in response["UnindexedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Indexed %s faces in %s. Could not index %s faces.",
                len(indexed_faces),
                image.image_name,
                len(unindexed_faces),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't index faces in image %s.",
image.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return indexed_faces, unindexed_faces
```

```
    def list_faces(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists the faces currently indexed in the collection.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of faces in the collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.list_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id, MaxResults=max_results
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["Faces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in collection %s.", len(faces),
self.collection_id
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list faces in collection %s.", self.collection_id
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces


    def search_faces(self, face_id, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match another face from the
        collection.

        :param face_id: The ID of the face in the collection to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of matching faces found in the collection. This list
does
                 not contain the face specified by `face_id`.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                FaceId=face_id,
```

```
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in
response["FaceMatches"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in %s that match %s.",
                len(faces),
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces


    def search_faces_by_image(self, image, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match the largest face in the
        reference image.

        :param image: The image that contains the reference face to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the face found in the reference
image.
                 The second element is the list of matching faces found in the
                 collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces_by_image(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            image_face = RekognitionFace(
```

```
                {
                    "BoundingBox": response["SearchedFaceBoundingBox"],
                    "Confidence": response["SearchedFaceConfidence"],
                }
            )
            collection_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in the collection that match the largest "
                "face in %s.",
                len(collection_faces),
                image.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
                image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_face, collection_faces


class RekognitionFace:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition face."""

    def __init__(self, face, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the face object.

        :param face: Face data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                     functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the face was detected, if the face was
                          detected in a video.
        """
        self.bounding_box = face.get("BoundingBox")
        self.confidence = face.get("Confidence")
        self.landmarks = face.get("Landmarks")
        self.pose = face.get("Pose")
        self.quality = face.get("Quality")
        age_range = face.get("AgeRange")
        if age_range is not None:
```

```
            self.age_range = (age_range.get("Low"), age_range.get("High"))
        else:
            self.age_range = None
        self.smile = face.get("Smile", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyeglasses = face.get("Eyeglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.sunglasses = face.get("Sunglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.gender = face.get("Gender", {}).get("Value", None)
        self.beard = face.get("Beard", {}).get("Value")
        self.mustache = face.get("Mustache", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyes_open = face.get("EyesOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.mouth_open = face.get("MouthOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.emotions = [
            emo.get("Type")
            for emo in face.get("Emotions", [])
            if emo.get("Confidence", 0) > 50
        ]
        self.face_id = face.get("FaceId")
        self.image_id = face.get("ImageId")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the face data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the face data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.bounding_box is not None:
            rendering["bounding_box"] = self.bounding_box
        if self.age_range is not None:
            rendering["age"] = f"{self.age_range[0]} - {self.age_range[1]}"
        if self.gender is not None:
            rendering["gender"] = self.gender
        if self.emotions:
            rendering["emotions"] = self.emotions
        if self.face_id is not None:
            rendering["face_id"] = self.face_id
        if self.image_id is not None:
            rendering["image_id"] = self.image_id
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        has = []
        if self.smile:
            has.append("smile")
```

```
        if self.eyeglasses:
            has.append("eyeglasses")
        if self.sunglasses:
            has.append("sunglasses")
        if self.beard:
            has.append("beard")
        if self.mustache:
            has.append("mustache")
        if self.eyes_open:
            has.append("open eyes")
        if self.mouth_open:
            has.append("open mouth")
        if has:
            rendering["has"] = has
        return rendering
```

Use the wrapper classes to build a collection of faces from a set of images and then search for faces in the collection.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Rekognition face collection demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    rekognition_client = boto3.client("rekognition")
    images = [
        RekognitionImage.from_file(
            ".media/pexels-agung-pandit-wiguna-1128316.jpg",
            rekognition_client,
            image_name="sitting",
        ),
        RekognitionImage.from_file(
            ".media/pexels-agung-pandit-wiguna-1128317.jpg",
            rekognition_client,
            image_name="hopping",
        ),
        RekognitionImage.from_file(
            ".media/pexels-agung-pandit-wiguna-1128318.jpg",
```

```
            rekognition_client,
            image_name="biking",
        ),
    ]

    collection_mgr = RekognitionCollectionManager(rekognition_client)
    collection = collection_mgr.create_collection("doc-example-collection-demo")
    print(f"Created collection {collection.collection_id}:")
    pprint(collection.describe_collection())

    print("Indexing faces from three images:")
    for image in images:
        collection.index_faces(image, 10)
    print("Listing faces in collection:")
    faces = collection.list_faces(10)
    for face in faces:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    print(
        f"Searching for faces in the collection that match the first face in the
"
        f"list (Face ID: {faces[0].face_id}."
    )
    found_faces = collection.search_faces(faces[0].face_id, 80, 10)
    print(f"Found {len(found_faces)} matching faces.")
    for face in found_faces:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    print(
        f"Searching for faces in the collection that match the largest face in "
        f"{images[0].image_name}."
    )
    image_face, match_faces = collection.search_faces_by_image(images[0], 80, 10)
    print(f"The largest face in {images[0].image_name} is:")
    pprint(image_face.to_dict())
    print(f"Found {len(match_faces)} matching faces.")
    for face in match_faces:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    collection.delete_collection()
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
```

Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

The following code examples show how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect and display elements in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Detect elements in images by using Amazon Rekognition.
- Display images and draw bounding boxes around detected elements.

For more information, see Displaying bounding boxes.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create classes to wrap Amazon Rekognition functions.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import requests

from rekognition_objects import (
    RekognitionFace,
    RekognitionCelebrity,
    RekognitionLabel,
    RekognitionModerationLabel,
    RekognitionText,
    show_bounding_boxes,
    show_polygons,
)

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
```

```
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    @classmethod
    def from_file(cls, image_file_name, rekognition_client, image_name=None):
        """
        Creates a RekognitionImage object from a local file.

        :param image_file_name: The file name of the image. The file is opened
and its
                                bytes are read.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        :param image_name: The name of the image. If this is not specified, the
                           file name is used as the image name.
        :return: The RekognitionImage object, initialized with image bytes from
the
                 file.
        """
        with open(image_file_name, "rb") as img_file:
            image = {"Bytes": img_file.read()}
        name = image_file_name if image_name is None else image_name
        return cls(image, name, rekognition_client)


    @classmethod
    def from_bucket(cls, s3_object, rekognition_client):
        """
        Creates a RekognitionImage object from an Amazon S3 object.

        :param s3_object: An Amazon S3 object that identifies the image. The
image
                          is not retrieved until needed for a later call.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        :return: The RekognitionImage object, initialized with Amazon S3 object
data.
        """
        image = {"S3Object": {"Bucket": s3_object.bucket_name, "Name":
s3_object.key}}
        return cls(image, s3_object.key, rekognition_client)
```

```
    def detect_faces(self):
        """
        Detects faces in the image.

        :return: The list of faces found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_faces(
                Image=self.image, Attributes=["ALL"]
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["FaceDetails"]]
            logger.info("Detected %s faces.", len(faces))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect faces in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return faces


    def detect_labels(self, max_labels):
        """
        Detects labels in the image. Labels are objects and people.

        :param max_labels: The maximum number of labels to return.
        :return: The list of labels detected in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_labels(
                Image=self.image, MaxLabels=max_labels
            )
            labels = [RekognitionLabel(label) for label in response["Labels"]]
            logger.info("Found %s labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.info("Couldn't detect labels in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return labels


    def recognize_celebrities(self):
        """
        Detects celebrities in the image.
```

```
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of celebrities found in
                 the image. The second element is the list of faces that were
                 detected but did not match any known celebrities.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.rekognition_client.recognize_celebrities(Image=self.image)
            celebrities = [
                RekognitionCelebrity(celeb) for celeb in
response["CelebrityFaces"]
            ]
            other_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["UnrecognizedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s celebrities and %s other faces in %s.",
                len(celebrities),
                len(other_faces),
                self.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect celebrities in %s.",
self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return celebrities, other_faces



    def compare_faces(self, target_image, similarity):
        """
        Compares faces in the image with the largest face in the target image.

        :param target_image: The target image to compare against.
        :param similarity: Faces in the image must have a similarity value
greater
                           than this value to be included in the results.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of faces that match the
                 reference image. The second element is the list of faces that
have
                 a similarity value below the specified threshold.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.rekognition_client.compare_faces(
                SourceImage=self.image,
                TargetImage=target_image.image,
                SimilarityThreshold=similarity,
            )
            matches = [
                RekognitionFace(match["Face"]) for match in
response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            unmatches = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in
response["UnmatchedFaces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s matched faces and %s unmatched faces.",
                len(matches),
                len(unmatches),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't match faces from %s to %s.",
                self.image_name,
                target_image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return matches, unmatches


    def detect_moderation_labels(self):
        """
        Detects moderation labels in the image. Moderation labels identify
content
        that may be inappropriate for some audiences.

        :return: The list of moderation labels found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_moderation_labels(
                Image=self.image
            )
            labels = [
                RekognitionModerationLabel(label)
                for label in response["ModerationLabels"]
            ]
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Found %s moderation labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't detect moderation labels in %s.", self.image_name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return labels


    def detect_text(self):
        """
        Detects text in the image.

        :return The list of text elements found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_text(Image=self.image)
            texts = [RekognitionText(text) for text in
 response["TextDetections"]]
            logger.info("Found %s texts in %s.", len(texts), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return texts
```

Create helper functions to draw bounding boxes and polygons.

```
import io
import logging
from PIL import Image, ImageDraw

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def show_bounding_boxes(image_bytes, box_sets, colors):
    """
    Draws bounding boxes on an image and shows it with the default image viewer.
```

```
    :param image_bytes: The image to draw, as bytes.
    :param box_sets: A list of lists of bounding boxes to draw on the image.
    :param colors: A list of colors to use to draw the bounding boxes.
    """
    image = Image.open(io.BytesIO(image_bytes))
    draw = ImageDraw.Draw(image)
    for boxes, color in zip(box_sets, colors):
        for box in boxes:
            left = image.width * box["Left"]
            top = image.height * box["Top"]
            right = (image.width * box["Width"]) + left
            bottom = (image.height * box["Height"]) + top
            draw.rectangle([left, top, right, bottom], outline=color, width=3)
    image.show()



def show_polygons(image_bytes, polygons, color):
    """
    Draws polygons on an image and shows it with the default image viewer.

    :param image_bytes: The image to draw, as bytes.
    :param polygons: The list of polygons to draw on the image.
    :param color: The color to use to draw the polygons.
    """
    image = Image.open(io.BytesIO(image_bytes))
    draw = ImageDraw.Draw(image)
    for polygon in polygons:
        draw.polygon(
            [
                (image.width * point["X"], image.height * point["Y"])
                for point in polygon
            ],
            outline=color,
        )
    image.show()
```

Create classes to parse objects returned by Amazon Rekognition.

```
class RekognitionFace:
```

```
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition face."""

    def __init__(self, face, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the face object.

        :param face: Face data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                     functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the face was detected, if the face was
                          detected in a video.
        """
        self.bounding_box = face.get("BoundingBox")
        self.confidence = face.get("Confidence")
        self.landmarks = face.get("Landmarks")
        self.pose = face.get("Pose")
        self.quality = face.get("Quality")
        age_range = face.get("AgeRange")
        if age_range is not None:
            self.age_range = (age_range.get("Low"), age_range.get("High"))
        else:
            self.age_range = None
        self.smile = face.get("Smile", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyeglasses = face.get("Eyeglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.sunglasses = face.get("Sunglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.gender = face.get("Gender", {}).get("Value", None)
        self.beard = face.get("Beard", {}).get("Value")
        self.mustache = face.get("Mustache", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyes_open = face.get("EyesOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.mouth_open = face.get("MouthOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.emotions = [
            emo.get("Type")
            for emo in face.get("Emotions", [])
            if emo.get("Confidence", 0) > 50
        ]
        self.face_id = face.get("FaceId")
        self.image_id = face.get("ImageId")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the face data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the face data.
        """
```

```
        rendering = {}
        if self.bounding_box is not None:
            rendering["bounding_box"] = self.bounding_box
        if self.age_range is not None:
            rendering["age"] = f"{self.age_range[0]} - {self.age_range[1]}"
        if self.gender is not None:
            rendering["gender"] = self.gender
        if self.emotions:
            rendering["emotions"] = self.emotions
        if self.face_id is not None:
            rendering["face_id"] = self.face_id
        if self.image_id is not None:
            rendering["image_id"] = self.image_id
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        has = []
        if self.smile:
            has.append("smile")
        if self.eyeglasses:
            has.append("eyeglasses")
        if self.sunglasses:
            has.append("sunglasses")
        if self.beard:
            has.append("beard")
        if self.mustache:
            has.append("mustache")
        if self.eyes_open:
            has.append("open eyes")
        if self.mouth_open:
            has.append("open mouth")
        if has:
            rendering["has"] = has
        return rendering



class RekognitionCelebrity:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition celebrity."""

    def __init__(self, celebrity, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the celebrity object.
```

```
        :param celebrity: Celebrity data, in the format returned by Amazon
 Rekognition
                          functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the celebrity was detected, if the
 celebrity
                          was detected in a video.
        """
        self.info_urls = celebrity.get("Urls")
        self.name = celebrity.get("Name")
        self.id = celebrity.get("Id")
        self.face = RekognitionFace(celebrity.get("Face"))
        self.confidence = celebrity.get("MatchConfidence")
        self.bounding_box = celebrity.get("BoundingBox")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the celebrity data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the celebrity data.
        """
        rendering = self.face.to_dict()
        if self.name is not None:
            rendering["name"] = self.name
        if self.info_urls:
            rendering["info URLs"] = self.info_urls
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionPerson:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition person."""

    def __init__(self, person, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the person object.

        :param person: Person data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                       functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the person was detected, if the person
                          was detected in a video.
        """
```

```
        self.index = person.get("Index")
        self.bounding_box = person.get("BoundingBox")
        face = person.get("Face")
        self.face = RekognitionFace(face) if face is not None else None
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the person data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the person data.
        """
        rendering = self.face.to_dict() if self.face is not None else {}
        if self.index is not None:
            rendering["index"] = self.index
        if self.bounding_box is not None:
            rendering["bounding_box"] = self.bounding_box
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionLabel:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition label."""

    def __init__(self, label, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the label object.

        :param label: Label data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                      functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the label was detected, if the label
                          was detected in a video.
        """
        self.name = label.get("Name")
        self.confidence = label.get("Confidence")
        self.instances = label.get("Instances")
        self.parents = label.get("Parents")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the label data to a dict.
```

```
        :return: A dict that contains the label data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.name is not None:
            rendering["name"] = self.name
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionModerationLabel:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition moderation label."""

    def __init__(self, label, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the moderation label object.

        :param label: Label data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                      functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the moderation label was detected, if the
                          label was detected in a video.
        """
        self.name = label.get("Name")
        self.confidence = label.get("Confidence")
        self.parent_name = label.get("ParentName")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the moderation label data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the moderation label data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.name is not None:
            rendering["name"] = self.name
        if self.parent_name is not None:
            rendering["parent_name"] = self.parent_name
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering
```

```
class RekognitionText:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition text element."""

    def __init__(self, text_data):
        """
        Initializes the text object.

        :param text_data: Text data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                          functions.
        """
        self.text = text_data.get("DetectedText")
        self.kind = text_data.get("Type")
        self.id = text_data.get("Id")
        self.parent_id = text_data.get("ParentId")
        self.confidence = text_data.get("Confidence")
        self.geometry = text_data.get("Geometry")

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the text data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the text data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.text is not None:
            rendering["text"] = self.text
        if self.kind is not None:
            rendering["kind"] = self.kind
        if self.geometry is not None:
            rendering["polygon"] = self.geometry.get("Polygon")
        return rendering
```

Use the wrapper classes to detect elements in images and display their bounding boxes. The images used in this example can be found on GitHub along with instructions and more code.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Rekognition image detection demo!")
```

```
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    rekognition_client = boto3.client("rekognition")
    street_scene_file_name = ".media/pexels-kaique-rocha-109919.jpg"
    celebrity_file_name = ".media/pexels-pixabay-53370.jpg"
    one_girl_url = "https://dhei5unw3vrsx.cloudfront.net/images/
source3_resized.jpg"
    three_girls_url = "https://dhei5unw3vrsx.cloudfront.net/images/
target3_resized.jpg"
    swimwear_object = boto3.resource("s3").Object(
        "console-sample-images-pdx", "yoga_swimwear.jpg"
    )
    book_file_name = ".media/pexels-christina-morillo-1181671.jpg"

    street_scene_image = RekognitionImage.from_file(
        street_scene_file_name, rekognition_client
    )
    print(f"Detecting faces in {street_scene_image.image_name}...")
    faces = street_scene_image.detect_faces()
    print(f"Found {len(faces)} faces, here are the first three.")
    for face in faces[:3]:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    show_bounding_boxes(
        street_scene_image.image["Bytes"],
        [[face.bounding_box for face in faces]],
        ["aqua"],
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    print(f"Detecting labels in {street_scene_image.image_name}...")
    labels = street_scene_image.detect_labels(100)
    print(f"Found {len(labels)} labels.")
    for label in labels:
        pprint(label.to_dict())
    names = []
    box_sets = []
    colors = ["aqua", "red", "white", "blue", "yellow", "green"]
    for label in labels:
        if label.instances:
            names.append(label.name)
            box_sets.append([inst["BoundingBox"] for inst in label.instances])
    print(f"Showing bounding boxes for {names} in {colors[:len(names)]}.")
    show_bounding_boxes(
```

```
        street_scene_image.image["Bytes"], box_sets, colors[: len(names)]
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    celebrity_image = RekognitionImage.from_file(
        celebrity_file_name, rekognition_client
    )
    print(f"Detecting celebrities in {celebrity_image.image_name}...")
    celebs, others = celebrity_image.recognize_celebrities()
    print(f"Found {len(celebs)} celebrities.")
    for celeb in celebs:
        pprint(celeb.to_dict())
    show_bounding_boxes(
        celebrity_image.image["Bytes"],
        [[celeb.face.bounding_box for celeb in celebs]],
        ["aqua"],
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    girl_image_response = requests.get(one_girl_url)
    girl_image = RekognitionImage(
        {"Bytes": girl_image_response.content}, "one-girl", rekognition_client
    )
    group_image_response = requests.get(three_girls_url)
    group_image = RekognitionImage(
        {"Bytes": group_image_response.content}, "three-girls",
rekognition_client
    )
    print("Comparing reference face to group of faces...")
    matches, unmatches = girl_image.compare_faces(group_image, 80)
    print(f"Found {len(matches)} face matching the reference face.")
    show_bounding_boxes(
        group_image.image["Bytes"],
        [[match.bounding_box for match in matches]],
        ["aqua"],
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    swimwear_image = RekognitionImage.from_bucket(swimwear_object,
rekognition_client)
    print(f"Detecting suggestive content in {swimwear_object.key}...")
    labels = swimwear_image.detect_moderation_labels()
    print(f"Found {len(labels)} moderation labels.")
    for label in labels:
```

```
        pprint(label.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    book_image = RekognitionImage.from_file(book_file_name, rekognition_client)
    print(f"Detecting text in {book_image.image_name}...")
    texts = book_image.detect_text()
    print(f"Found {len(texts)} text instances. Here are the first seven:")
    for text in texts[:7]:
        pprint(text.to_dict())
    show_polygons(
        book_image.image["Bytes"], [text.geometry["Polygon"] for text in texts],
"aqua"
    )

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

Detect faces in an image using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Save an image in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (such as smiling).
- Display those details.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Save the image in an Amazon S3 bucket with an **uploads** prefix, use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (smiling, etc.), and display those details.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Detect information in videos using Amazon Rekognition and the AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Start Amazon Rekognition jobs to detect elements like people, objects, and text in videos.
- Check job status until jobs finish.
- Output the list of elements detected by each job.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get celebrity results from a video located in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartCelebrityRecognitionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CelebrityRecognitionSortBy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CelebrityRecognition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CelebrityDetail;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartCelebrityRecognitionRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetCelebrityRecognitionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetCelebrityRecognitionResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * To run this code example, ensure that you perform the Prerequisites as stated
 * in the Amazon Rekognition Guide:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/rekognition/latest/dg/video-analyzing-with-
sqs.html
 *
 * Also, ensure that set up your development environment, including your
 * credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class VideoCelebrityDetection {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startCelebrityDetection(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getCelebrityDetectionResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startCelebrityDetection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartCelebrityRecognitionRequest recognitionRequest =
StartCelebrityRecognitionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("Celebrities")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .build();

            StartCelebrityRecognitionResponse startCelebrityRecognitionResult =
rekClient
                    .startCelebrityRecognition(recognitionRequest);
```

```
            startJobId = startCelebrityRecognitionResult.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getCelebrityDetectionResults(RekognitionClient rekClient)
{
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetCelebrityRecognitionResponse recognitionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (recognitionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = recognitionResponse.nextToken();

                GetCelebrityRecognitionRequest recognitionRequest =
GetCelebrityRecognitionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .sortBy(CelebrityRecognitionSortBy.TIMESTAMP)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds
                while (!finished) {
                    recognitionResponse =
rekClient.getCelebrityRecognition(recognitionRequest);
                    status = recognitionResponse.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }
```

```
                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is
 null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData =
 recognitionResponse.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " +
 videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<CelebrityRecognition> celebs =
 recognitionResponse.celebrities();
                for (CelebrityRecognition celeb : celebs) {
                    long seconds = celeb.timestamp() / 1000;
                    System.out.print("Sec: " + seconds + " ");
                    CelebrityDetail details = celeb.celebrity();
                    System.out.println("Name: " + details.name());
                    System.out.println("Id: " + details.id());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (recognitionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect labels in a video by a label detection operation.

```
import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonProcessingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonMappingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetectionSortBy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Label;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Instance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Parent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class VideoDetect {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <queueUrl> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
```

```
                    video - The name of the video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                    queueUrl- The URL of a SQS queue.\s
                    topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
(Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                    roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
(IAM) role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String queueUrl = args[2];
        String topicArn = args[3];
        String roleArn = args[4];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getLabelJob(rekClient, sqs, queueUrl);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        sqs.close();
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
```

```
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
StartLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .minConfidence(50F)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

            boolean ans = true;
            String status = "";
            int yy = 0;
            while (ans) {

                GetLabelDetectionRequest detectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                GetLabelDetectionResponse result =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(detectionRequest);
                status = result.jobStatusAsString();

                if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                    ans = false;
                else
                    System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);

                Thread.sleep(1000);
                yy++;
            }
```

```
            System.out.println(startJobId + " status is: " + status);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getLabelJob(RekognitionClient rekClient, SqsClient sqs,
String queueUrl) {
        List<Message> messages;
        ReceiveMessageRequest messageRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

        try {
            messages = sqs.receiveMessage(messageRequest).messages();

            if (!messages.isEmpty()) {
                for (Message message : messages) {
                    String notification = message.body();

                    // Get the status and job id from the notification
                    ObjectMapper mapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonMessageTree = mapper.readTree(notification);
                    JsonNode messageBodyText = jsonMessageTree.get("Message");
                    ObjectMapper operationResultMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonResultTree =
operationResultMapper.readTree(messageBodyText.textValue());
                    JsonNode operationJobId = jsonResultTree.get("JobId");
                    JsonNode operationStatus = jsonResultTree.get("Status");
                    System.out.println("Job found in JSON is " + operationJobId);

                    DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .build();

                    String jobId = operationJobId.textValue();
                    if (startJobId.compareTo(jobId) == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job id: " + operationJobId);
                        System.out.println("Status : " +
operationStatus.toString());
```

```
                        if (operationStatus.asText().equals("SUCCEEDED"))
                            getResultsLabels(rekClient);
                        else
                            System.out.println("Video analysis failed");

                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Job received was not job " +
startJobId);
                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (JsonMappingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (JsonProcessingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    // Gets the job results by calling GetLabelDetection
    private static void getResultsLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient) {

        int maxResults = 10;
        String paginationToken = null;
        GetLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResult = null;

        try {
            do {
                if (labelDetectionResult != null)
                    paginationToken = labelDetectionResult.nextToken();

                GetLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .sortBy(LabelDetectionSortBy.TIMESTAMP)
                        .maxResults(maxResults)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .build();
```

```
                labelDetectionResult =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData =
labelDetectionResult.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " +
videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());

                List<LabelDetection> detectedLabels =
labelDetectionResult.labels();
                for (LabelDetection detectedLabel : detectedLabels) {
                    long seconds = detectedLabel.timestamp();
                    Label label = detectedLabel.label();
                    System.out.println("Millisecond: " + seconds + " ");

                    System.out.println("   Label:" + label.name());
                    System.out.println("   Confidence:" +
detectedLabel.label().confidence().toString());

                    List<Instance> instances = label.instances();
                    System.out.println("   Instances of " + label.name());

                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        " + "None");
                    } else {
                        for (Instance instance : instances) {
                            System.out.println("        Confidence: " +
instance.confidence().toString());
                            System.out.println("        Bounding box: " +
instance.boundingBox().toString());
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println("   Parent labels for " + label.name() +
":");
                    List<Parent> parents = label.parents();

                    if (parents.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        None");
                    } else {
                        for (Parent parent : parents) {
                            System.out.println("   " + parent.name());
```

```
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println();
                }
            } while (labelDetectionResult != null &&
 labelDetectionResult.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect faces in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonProcessingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonMappingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetectionSortBy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Label;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Instance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Parent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class VideoDetect {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <queueUrl> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of the video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   queueUrl- The URL of a SQS queue.\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String queueUrl = args[2];
        String topicArn = args[3];
        String roleArn = args[4];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getLabelJob(rekClient, sqs, queueUrl);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        sqs.close();
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
StartLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .minConfidence(50F)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();
```

```
            boolean ans = true;
            String status = "";
            int yy = 0;
            while (ans) {

                GetLabelDetectionRequest detectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                GetLabelDetectionResponse result =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(detectionRequest);
                status = result.jobStatusAsString();

                if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                    ans = false;
                else
                    System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);

                Thread.sleep(1000);
                yy++;
            }

            System.out.println(startJobId + " status is: " + status);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getLabelJob(RekognitionClient rekClient, SqsClient sqs,
String queueUrl) {
        List<Message> messages;
        ReceiveMessageRequest messageRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

        try {
            messages = sqs.receiveMessage(messageRequest).messages();

            if (!messages.isEmpty()) {
```

```
                for (Message message : messages) {
                    String notification = message.body();

                    // Get the status and job id from the notification
                    ObjectMapper mapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonMessageTree = mapper.readTree(notification);
                    JsonNode messageBodyText = jsonMessageTree.get("Message");
                    ObjectMapper operationResultMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonResultTree =
operationResultMapper.readTree(messageBodyText.textValue());
                    JsonNode operationJobId = jsonResultTree.get("JobId");
                    JsonNode operationStatus = jsonResultTree.get("Status");
                    System.out.println("Job found in JSON is " + operationJobId);

                    DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .build();

                    String jobId = operationJobId.textValue();
                    if (startJobId.compareTo(jobId) == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job id: " + operationJobId);
                        System.out.println("Status : " +
operationStatus.toString());

                        if (operationStatus.asText().equals("SUCCEEDED"))
                            getResultsLabels(rekClient);
                        else
                            System.out.println("Video analysis failed");

                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Job received was not job " +
startJobId);
                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (JsonMappingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
```

```
        } catch (JsonProcessingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    // Gets the job results by calling GetLabelDetection
    private static void getResultsLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient) {

        int maxResults = 10;
        String paginationToken = null;
        GetLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResult = null;

        try {
            do {
                if (labelDetectionResult != null)
                    paginationToken = labelDetectionResult.nextToken();

                GetLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .sortBy(LabelDetectionSortBy.TIMESTAMP)
                        .maxResults(maxResults)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .build();

                labelDetectionResult =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData =
labelDetectionResult.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " +
videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());

                List<LabelDetection> detectedLabels =
labelDetectionResult.labels();
                for (LabelDetection detectedLabel : detectedLabels) {
                    long seconds = detectedLabel.timestamp();
                    Label label = detectedLabel.label();
                    System.out.println("Millisecond: " + seconds + " ");

                    System.out.println("   Label:" + label.name());
```

```
                    System.out.println("   Confidence:" +
 detectedLabel.label().confidence().toString());

                    List<Instance> instances = label.instances();
                    System.out.println("   Instances of " + label.name());

                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        " + "None");
                    } else {
                        for (Instance instance : instances) {
                            System.out.println("        Confidence: " +
 instance.confidence().toString());
                            System.out.println("        Bounding box: " +
 instance.boundingBox().toString());
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println("   Parent labels for " + label.name() +
 ":");
                    List<Parent> parents = label.parents();

                    if (parents.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        None");
                    } else {
                        for (Parent parent : parents) {
                            System.out.println("   " + parent.name());
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println();
                }
            } while (labelDetectionResult != null &&
 labelDetectionResult.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect inappropriate or offensive content in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartContentModerationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartContentModerationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetContentModerationResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetContentModerationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ContentModerationDetection;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class VideoDetectInappropriate {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role to use.\s
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startModerationDetection(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getModResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startModerationDetection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {

        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartContentModerationRequest modDetectionRequest =
StartContentModerationRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .jobTag("Moderation")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .build();

            StartContentModerationResponse startModDetectionResult = rekClient
                    .startContentModeration(modDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = startModDetectionResult.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getModResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetContentModerationResponse modDetectionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (modDetectionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = modDetectionResponse.nextToken();

                GetContentModerationRequest modRequest =
GetContentModerationRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds.
                while (!finished) {
                    modDetectionResponse =
rekClient.getContentModeration(modRequest);
                    status = modDetectionResponse.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
```

```
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is
 null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData =
 modDetectionResponse.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " +
 videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<ContentModerationDetection> mods =
 modDetectionResponse.moderationLabels();
                for (ContentModerationDetection mod : mods) {
                    long seconds = mod.timestamp() / 1000;
                    System.out.print("Mod label: " + seconds + " ");
                    System.out.println(mod.moderationLabel().toString());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (modDetectionResponse != null &&
 modDetectionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect technical cue segments and shot detection segments in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartShotDetectionFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartTechnicalCueDetectionFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartSegmentDetectionFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartSegmentDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartSegmentDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetSegmentDetectionResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetSegmentDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SegmentDetection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.TechnicalCueSegment;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ShotSegment;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SegmentType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class VideoDetectSegment {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
```

```
                    bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
(for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                    video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                    topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
(Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                    roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
(IAM) role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startSegmentDetection(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getSegmentResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        sqs.close();
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startSegmentDetection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
```

```
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartShotDetectionFilter cueDetectionFilter =
StartShotDetectionFilter.builder()
                    .minSegmentConfidence(60F)
                    .build();

            StartTechnicalCueDetectionFilter technicalCueDetectionFilter =
StartTechnicalCueDetectionFilter.builder()
                    .minSegmentConfidence(60F)
                    .build();

            StartSegmentDetectionFilters filters =
StartSegmentDetectionFilters.builder()
                    .shotFilter(cueDetectionFilter)
                    .technicalCueFilter(technicalCueDetectionFilter)
                    .build();

            StartSegmentDetectionRequest segDetectionRequest =
StartSegmentDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .segmentTypes(SegmentType.TECHNICAL_CUE, SegmentType.SHOT)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .filters(filters)
                    .build();

            StartSegmentDetectionResponse segDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startSegmentDetection(segDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = segDetectionResponse.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void getSegmentResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetSegmentDetectionResponse segDetectionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (segDetectionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = segDetectionResponse.nextToken();

                GetSegmentDetectionRequest recognitionRequest =
GetSegmentDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds.
                while (!finished) {
                    segDetectionResponse =
rekClient.getSegmentDetection(recognitionRequest);
                    status = segDetectionResponse.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }
                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is
null.
                List<VideoMetadata> videoMetaData =
segDetectionResponse.videoMetadata();
                for (VideoMetadata metaData : videoMetaData) {
                    System.out.println("Format: " + metaData.format());
                    System.out.println("Codec: " + metaData.codec());
                    System.out.println("Duration: " + metaData.durationMillis());
```

```
                    System.out.println("FrameRate: " + metaData.frameRate());
                    System.out.println("Job");
                }

                List<SegmentDetection> detectedSegments =
segDetectionResponse.segments();
                for (SegmentDetection detectedSegment : detectedSegments) {
                    String type = detectedSegment.type().toString();
                    if (type.contains(SegmentType.TECHNICAL_CUE.toString())) {
                        System.out.println("Technical Cue");
                        TechnicalCueSegment segmentCue =
detectedSegment.technicalCueSegment();
                        System.out.println("\tType: " + segmentCue.type());
                        System.out.println("\tConfidence: " +
segmentCue.confidence().toString());
                    }

                    if (type.contains(SegmentType.SHOT.toString())) {
                        System.out.println("Shot");
                        ShotSegment segmentShot = detectedSegment.shotSegment();
                        System.out.println("\tIndex " + segmentShot.index());
                        System.out.println("\tConfidence: " +
segmentShot.confidence().toString());
                    }

                    long seconds = detectedSegment.durationMillis();
                    System.out.println("\tDuration : " + seconds + "
milliseconds");
                    System.out.println("\tStart time code: " +
detectedSegment.startTimecodeSMPTE());
                    System.out.println("\tEnd time code: " +
detectedSegment.endTimecodeSMPTE());
                    System.out.println("\tDuration time code: " +
detectedSegment.durationSMPTE());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (segDetectionResponse != null &&
segDetectionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

Detect text in a video stored in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartTextDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartTextDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetTextDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetTextDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.TextDetectionResult;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class VideoDetectText {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
```

```
                    video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                    topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
(Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                    roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
(IAM) role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startTextLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getTextResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startTextLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
```

```
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartTextDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
StartTextDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .build();

            StartTextDetectionResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startTextDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getTextResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetTextDetectionResponse textDetectionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (textDetectionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = textDetectionResponse.nextToken();

                GetTextDetectionRequest recognitionRequest =
GetTextDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds.
                while (!finished) {
                    textDetectionResponse =
rekClient.getTextDetection(recognitionRequest);
                    status = textDetectionResponse.jobStatusAsString();
```

```
                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is
null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData =
textDetectionResponse.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " +
videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<TextDetectionResult> labels =
textDetectionResponse.textDetections();
                for (TextDetectionResult detectedText : labels) {
                    System.out.println("Confidence: " +
detectedText.textDetection().confidence().toString());
                    System.out.println("Id : " +
detectedText.textDetection().id());
                    System.out.println("Parent Id: " +
detectedText.textDetection().parentId());
                    System.out.println("Type: " +
detectedText.textDetection().type());
                    System.out.println("Text: " +
detectedText.textDetection().detectedText());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (textDetectionResponse != null &&
textDetectionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect people in a video stored in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartPersonTrackingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartPersonTrackingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetPersonTrackingResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetPersonTrackingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.PersonDetection;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class VideoPersonDetection {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>
```

```
                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
(for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
(Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management
(IAM) role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startPersonLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getPersonDetectionResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startPersonLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
```

```
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartPersonTrackingRequest personTrackingRequest =
StartPersonTrackingRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .build();

            StartPersonTrackingResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startPersonTracking(personTrackingRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getPersonDetectionResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetPersonTrackingResponse personTrackingResult = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (personTrackingResult != null)
                    paginationToken = personTrackingResult.nextToken();

                GetPersonTrackingRequest recognitionRequest =
GetPersonTrackingRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds
                while (!finished) {
```

```
                    personTrackingResult =
rekClient.getPersonTracking(recognitionRequest);
                    status = personTrackingResult.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is
null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData =
personTrackingResult.videoMetadata();

                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " +
videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<PersonDetection> detectedPersons =
personTrackingResult.persons();
                for (PersonDetection detectedPerson : detectedPersons) {
                    long seconds = detectedPerson.timestamp() / 1000;
                    System.out.print("Sec: " + seconds + " ");
                    System.out.println("Person Identifier: " +
detectedPerson.person().index());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (personTrackingResult != null &&
personTrackingResult.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetCelebrityRecognition
  - GetContentModeration
  - GetLabelDetection
  - GetPersonTracking
  - GetSegmentDetection
  - GetTextDetection
  - StartCelebrityRecognition
  - StartContentModeration
  - StartLabelDetection
  - StartPersonTracking
  - StartSegmentDetection
  - StartTextDetection

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detect faces in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
suspend fun startFaceDetection(
    channelVal: NotificationChannel?,
    bucketVal: String,
    videoVal: String,
) {
    val s3Obj =
```

```
        S3Object {
            bucket = bucketVal
            name = videoVal
        }
    val vidOb =
        Video {
            s3Object = s3Obj
        }

    val request =
        StartFaceDetectionRequest {
            jobTag = "Faces"
            faceAttributes = FaceAttributes.All
            notificationChannel = channelVal
            video = vidOb
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val startLabelDetectionResult = rekClient.startFaceDetection(request)
        startJobId = startLabelDetectionResult.jobId.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun getFaceResults() {
    var finished = false
    var status: String
    var yy = 0
    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        var response: GetFaceDetectionResponse? = null

        val recognitionRequest =
            GetFaceDetectionRequest {
                jobId = startJobId
                maxResults = 10
            }

        // Wait until the job succeeds.
        while (!finished) {
            response = rekClient.getFaceDetection(recognitionRequest)
            status = response.jobStatus.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                finished = true
            } else {
                println("$yy status is: $status")
```

```
                delay(1000)
            }
            yy++
        }

        // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
        val videoMetaData = response?.videoMetadata
        println("Format: ${videoMetaData?.format}")
        println("Codec: ${videoMetaData?.codec}")
        println("Duration: ${videoMetaData?.durationMillis}")
        println("FrameRate: ${videoMetaData?.frameRate}")

        // Show face information.
        response?.faces?.forEach { face ->
            println("Age: ${face.face?.ageRange}")
            println("Face: ${face.face?.beard}")
            println("Eye glasses: ${face?.face?.eyeglasses}")
            println("Mustache: ${face.face?.mustache}")
            println("Smile: ${face.face?.smile}")
        }
    }
}
```

Detect inappropriate or offensive content in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
suspend fun startModerationDetection(
    channel: NotificationChannel?,
    bucketVal: String?,
    videoVal: String?,
) {
    val s3Obj =
        S3Object {
            bucket = bucketVal
            name = videoVal
        }
    val vidOb =
        Video {
            s3Object = s3Obj
        }
    val request =
        StartContentModerationRequest {
            jobTag = "Moderation"
```

```
            notificationChannel = channel
            video = vidOb
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val startModDetectionResult = rekClient.startContentModeration(request)
        startJobId = startModDetectionResult.jobId.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun getModResults() {
    var finished = false
    var status: String
    var yy = 0
    RekognitionClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        var modDetectionResponse: GetContentModerationResponse? = null

        val modRequest =
            GetContentModerationRequest {
                jobId = startJobId
                maxResults = 10
            }

        // Wait until the job succeeds.
        while (!finished) {
            modDetectionResponse = rekClient.getContentModeration(modRequest)
            status = modDetectionResponse.jobStatus.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                finished = true
            } else {
                println("$yy status is: $status")
                delay(1000)
            }
            yy++
        }

        // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
        val videoMetaData = modDetectionResponse?.videoMetadata
        println("Format: ${videoMetaData?.format}")
        println("Codec: ${videoMetaData?.codec}")
        println("Duration: ${videoMetaData?.durationMillis}")
        println("FrameRate: ${videoMetaData?.frameRate}")

        modDetectionResponse?.moderationLabels?.forEach { mod ->
```

```
            val seconds: Long = mod.timestamp / 1000
            print("Mod label: $seconds ")
            println(mod.moderationLabel)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - GetCelebrityRecognition
  - GetContentModeration
  - GetLabelDetection
  - GetPersonTracking
  - GetSegmentDetection
  - GetTextDetection
  - StartCelebrityRecognition
  - StartContentModeration
  - StartLabelDetection
  - StartPersonTracking
  - StartSegmentDetection
  - StartTextDetection

Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition with the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

Learn how to:

- Create an unauthenticated user using Amazon Cognito.
- Analyze images for objects using Amazon Rekognition.

- Verify an email address for Amazon SES.
- Send an email notification using Amazon SES.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Kotlin API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a web application that lets you do the following:

- Upload photos to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze and label the photos.
- Use Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send email reports of image analysis.

This example contains two main components: a webpage written in JavaScript that is built with React, and a REST service written in Python that is built with Flask-RESTful.

You can use the React webpage to:

- Display a list of images that are stored in your S3 bucket.
- Upload images from your computer to your S3 bucket.
- Display images and labels that identify items that are detected in the image.
- Get a report of all images in your S3 bucket and send an email of the report.

The webpage calls the REST service. The service sends requests to AWS to perform the following actions:

- Get and filter the list of images in your S3 bucket.
- Upload photos to your S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze individual photos and get a list of labels that identify items that are detected in the photo.
- Analyze all photos in your S3 bucket and use Amazon SES to email a report.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app

sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get EXIF information from a a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file.
- Upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (labels) in the file.
- Add the EXIF and label information to an Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Get EXIF information from a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file, upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (*labels* in Amazon Rekognition) in the file, and add the EXIF and label information to a Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Code examples for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Resource Groups with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Resource Groups User Guide** – More information about Resource Groups.
- **Resource Groups API Reference** – Details about all available Resource Groups actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateGroup with a CLI
    - Use DeleteGroup with a CLI
    - Use GetGroup with a CLI
    - Use GetGroupQuery with a CLI
    - Use GetTags with a CLI
    - Use ListGroupResources with a CLI
    - Use ListGroups with a CLI
    - Use SearchResources with a CLI
    - Use Tag with a CLI
    - Use Untag with a CLI
    - Use UpdateGroup with a CLI
    - Use UpdateGroupQuery with a CLI

Basic examples for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Resource Groups with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateGroup with a CLI
  - Use DeleteGroup with a CLI
  - Use GetGroup with a CLI
  - Use GetGroupQuery with a CLI
  - Use GetTags with a CLI
  - Use ListGroupResources with a CLI
  - Use ListGroups with a CLI
  - Use SearchResources with a CLI
  - Use Tag with a CLI
  - Use Untag with a CLI

- Use UpdateGroup with a CLI
- Use UpdateGroupQuery with a CLI

Actions for Resource Groups using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Resource Groups actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Resource Groups API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateGroup with a CLI
- Use DeleteGroup with a CLI
- Use GetGroup with a CLI
- Use GetGroupQuery with a CLI
- Use GetTags with a CLI
- Use ListGroupResources with a CLI
- Use ListGroups with a CLI
- Use SearchResources with a CLI
- Use Tag with a CLI
- Use Untag with a CLI
- Use UpdateGroup with a CLI
- Use UpdateGroupQuery with a CLI

Use `CreateGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a tag-based resource group

The following `create-group` example creates a tag-based resource group of Amazon EC2 instances in the current region. It's based on a query for resources that are tagged with the key `Name`, and the value `WebServers`. The group name is `tbq-WebServer`. The query is in a separate JSON file that is passed to the command.

```
aws resource-groups create-group \
    --name tbq-WebServer \
    --resource-query file://query.json
```

Contents of `query.json`:

```
{
    "Type": "TAG_FILTERS_1_0",
    "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::EC2::Instance\"],\"TagFilters\":
[{\"Key\":\"Name\", \"Values\":[\"WebServers\"]}]}"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-
WebServer",
        "Name": "tbq-WebServer"
    },
    "ResourceQuery": {
        "Type": "TAG_FILTERS_1_0",
        "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::EC2::Instance\"],\"TagFilters
\":[{\"Key\":\"Name\", \"Values\":[\"WebServers\"]}]}"
    }
}
```

Example 2: To create a CloudFormation stack-based resource group

The following `create-group` example creates an AWS CloudFormation stack-based resource group named `sampleCFNstackgroup`. The query includes all resources in the specified CloudFormation stack that are supported by AWS Resource Groups.

```
aws resource-groups create-group \
    --name cbq-CFNstackgroup \
```

```
    --resource-query file://query.json
```

Contents of `query.json`:

```
{
    "Type": "CLOUDFORMATION_STACK_1_0",
    "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::AllSupported\"],\"StackIdentifier
\":\"arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/MyCFNStack/1415z9z0-
z39z-11z8-97z5-500z212zz6fz\"}"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/cbq-
CFNstackgroup",
        "Name": "cbq-CFNstackgroup"
    },
    "ResourceQuery": {
        "Type": "CLOUDFORMATION_STACK_1_0",
        "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::AllSupported\"],
\"StackIdentifier\":\"arn:aws:cloudformation:us-east-2:123456789012:stack/
MyCFNStack/1415z9z0-z39z-11z8-97z5-500z212zz6fz\"}"}'
    }
}
```

For more information, see Create Groups in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new tag-based AWS Resource Groups resource group named TestPowerShellGroup. The group includes Amazon EC2 instances in the current region that are tagged with the tag key "Name", and tag value "test2". The command returns the query and type of group, and the results of the operation.

```
$ResourceQuery = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
```

```
$ResourceQuery.Type = "TAG_FILTERS_1_0"
$ResourceQuery.Query = '{"ResourceTypeFilters":
["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":[{"Key":"Name","Values":["test2"]}]}'
$ResourceQuery

New-RGGroup -Name TestPowerShellGroup -ResourceQuery $ResourceQuery -Description
 "Test resource group."
```

Output:

```
Query
               Type
-----
               ----
{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":
[{"Key":"Name","Values":["test2"]}]} TAG_FILTERS_1_0

LoggedAt         : 11/20/2018 2:40:59 PM
Group            : Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.Group
ResourceQuery    : Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
Tags             : {}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 338
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new tag-based AWS Resource Groups resource group named TestPowerShellGroup. The group includes Amazon EC2 instances in the current region that are tagged with the tag key "Name", and tag value "test2". The command returns the query and type of group, and the results of the operation.

```
$ResourceQuery = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
$ResourceQuery.Type = "TAG_FILTERS_1_0"
$ResourceQuery.Query = '{"ResourceTypeFilters":
["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":[{"Key":"Name","Values":["test2"]}]}'
$ResourceQuery

New-RGGroup -Name TestPowerShellGroup -ResourceQuery $ResourceQuery -Description
 "Test resource group."
```

Output:

```
Query
               Type
-----
               ----
{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":
[{"Key":"Name","Values":["test2"]}]} TAG_FILTERS_1_0

LoggedAt         : 11/20/2018 2:40:59 PM
Group            : Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.Group
ResourceQuery    : Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
Tags             : {}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 338
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the description for a resource group

The following `delete-group` example updates the specified resource group.

```
aws resource-groups delete-group \
    --group-name tbq-WebServer
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:1234567890:group/tbq-
WebServer",
        "Name": "tbq-WebServer"
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Delete Groups in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the named resource group

```
Remove-RGGroup -GroupName non-tag-cfn-elbv2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-RGGroup (DeleteGroup)" on target "non-tag-cfn-
elbv2".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Description GroupArn
  Name
----------- --------
  ----
            arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/non-tag-cfn-
elbv2 non-tag-cfn-elbv2
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the named resource group

```
Remove-RGGroup -GroupName non-tag-cfn-elbv2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing the operation "Remove-RGGroup (DeleteGroup)" on target "non-tag-cfn-
elbv2".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Description GroupArn
  Name
----------- --------
  ----
            arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/non-tag-cfn-
elbv2 non-tag-cfn-elbv2
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a resource group

The following `get-group` example displays details about the specified resource group. To get the query attached to the group, use `get-group-query`.

```
aws resource-groups get-group \
    --group-name tbq-WebServer
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-
WebServer",
        "Name": "tbq-WebServer",
        "Description": "A tag-based query resource group of WebServers."
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves resource group as per the group name

```
Get-RGGroup -GroupName auto-no
```

Output:

```
Description GroupArn                                                    Name
----------- --------                                                    ----
            arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-no auto-no
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves resource group as per the group name

```
Get-RGGroup -GroupName auto-no
```

Output:

```
Description GroupArn                                                    Name
----------- --------                                                    ----
            arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-no auto-no
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetGroupQuery` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetGroupQuery`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the query attached to a resource group

The following `get-group-query` example displays query attached to the specified resource group.

```
aws resource-groups get-group-query \
    --group-name tbq-WebServer
```

Output:

```
{
    "GroupQuery": {
        "GroupName": "tbq-WebServer",
        "ResourceQuery": {
            "Type": "TAG_FILTERS_1_0",
            "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::EC2::Instance\"],
\"TagFilters\":[{\"Key\":\"Name\", \"Values\":[\"WebServers\"]}]}"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetGroupQuery in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example fetches the resource query for the given resource group

```
Get-RGGroupQuery -GroupName auto-no | Select-Object -ExpandProperty ResourceQuery
```

Output:

```
Query
            Type
-----
            ----
{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":
[{"Key":"auto","Values":["no"]}]} TAG_FILTERS_1_0
```

- For API details, see GetGroupQuery in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the resource query for the given resource group

```
Get-RGGroupQuery -GroupName auto-no | Select-Object -ExpandProperty ResourceQuery
```

Output:

```
Query
            Type
-----
            ----
{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":
[{"Key":"auto","Values":["no"]}]} TAG_FILTERS_1_0
```

- For API details, see GetGroupQuery in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the tags attached to a resource group

The following `get-tags` example displays the tag key and value pairs attached to the specified resource group (the group itself, not its members).

```
aws resource-groups get-tags \
    --arn arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-WebServer
```

Output:

```
{
    "Arn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-WebServer",
    "Tags": {
        "QueryType": "tags",
        "QueryResources": "ec2-instances"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists tags for the given resource group arn

```
Get-RGResourceTag -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
workboxes
```

Output:

```
Key       Value
---       -----
Instances workboxes
```

- For API details, see GetTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists tags for the given resource group arn

```
Get-RGResourceTag -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
workboxes
```

Output:

```
Key       Value
---       -----
Instances workboxes
```

- For API details, see GetTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListGroupResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListGroupResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all of the resources in a resource group

Example 1: The following `list-resource-groups` example lists all of the resources that are part of the specified resource group.

```
aws resource-groups list-group-resources \
    --group-name tbq-WebServer
```

Output:

```
{
    "ResourceIdentifiers": [
        {
            "ResourceArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-west-2:123456789012:instance/
i-09f77fa38c12345ab",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: The following example lists all of the resources in the group that also have a 'resource-type' of the 'AWS::EC2::Instance'. :

aws resource-groups list-group-resources --group-name tbq-WebServer --filters Name=resource-type,Values=AWS::EC2::Instance

- For API details, see ListGroupResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists group resources on the basis of filtered by resource type

```
Get-RGGroupResourceList -Filter @{Name="resource-
type";Values="AWS::EC2::Instance"} -GroupName auto-yes | Select-Object -
ExpandProperty ResourceIdentifiers
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn                                                  ResourceType
-----------                                                  ------------
```

```
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0123bc45b567890e1
 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0a1caf2345f67d8dc
 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-012e3cb4df567e8aa
 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0fd12dd3456789012
 AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see ListGroupResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists group resources on the basis of filtered by resource type

```
Get-RGGroupResourceList -Filter @{Name="resource-
type";Values="AWS::EC2::Instance"} -GroupName auto-yes | Select-Object -
ExpandProperty ResourceIdentifiers
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn                                                    ResourceType
-----------                                                    ------------
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0123bc45b567890e1
 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0a1caf2345f67d8dc
 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-012e3cb4df567e8aa
 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0fd12dd3456789012
 AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see ListGroupResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListGroups` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListGroups`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the available resource groups

The following `list-groups` example displays a list of all of the resource groups.

```
aws resource-groups list-groups
```

Output:

```
{
    "GroupIdentifiers": [
        {
            "GroupName": "tbq-WebServer",
            "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/
tbq-WebServer3"
        },
        {
            "GroupName": "cbq-CFNStackQuery",
            "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/
cbq-CFNStackQuery"
        }
    ],
    "Groups": [
        {
            "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/
tbq-WebServer",
            "Name": "tbq-WebServer"
        },
        {
            "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/
cbq-CFNStackQuery",
            "Name": "cbq-CFNStackQuery"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists resource group already created.

```
Get-RGGroupList
```

Output:

```
GroupArn
 GroupName
--------
 ---------
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-no              auto-no
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-yes             auto-
yes
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/build600
 build600
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists resource group already created.

```
Get-RGGroupList
```

Output:

```
GroupArn
 GroupName
--------
 ---------
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-no              auto-no
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-yes             auto-
yes
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/build600
 build600
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `SearchResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SearchResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To find resources that match a query

The following `search-resources` example retrieves a list of all AWS resources that match the specified query.

```
aws resource-groups search-resources \
    --resource-query file://query.json
```

Contents of `query.json`:

```
{
    "Type": "TAG_FILTERS_1_0",
    "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::EC2::Instance\"],\"TagFilters\":
[{\"Key\":\"Patch Group\", \"Values\":[\"Dev\"]}]}"
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "ResourceIdentifiers": [
        {
            "ResourceArn": "arn:aws:ec2:us-west-2:123456789012:instance/
i-01a23bc45d67890ef",
            "ResourceType": "AWS::EC2::Instance"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see SearchResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a ResourceQuery for Instance resource types with tag filters and finds resources.

```
$query = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery]::new()
$query.Type = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.QueryType]::TAG_FILTERS_1_0
$query.Query = ConvertTo-Json -Compress -Depth 4 -InputObject @{
  ResourceTypeFilters = @('AWS::EC2::Instance')
  TagFilters = @(@{
    Key = 'auto'
```

```
    Values = @('no')
  })
 }

Find-RGResource -ResourceQuery $query | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 ResourceIdentifiers
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn                                                          ResourceType
-----------                                                          ------------
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0123445b6cb7bd67b
 AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see SearchResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a ResourceQuery for Instance resource types with tag filters and finds resources.

```
$query = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery]::new()
$query.Type = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.QueryType]::TAG_FILTERS_1_0
$query.Query = ConvertTo-Json -Compress -Depth 4 -InputObject @{
  ResourceTypeFilters = @('AWS::EC2::Instance')
  TagFilters = @(@{
    Key = 'auto'
    Values = @('no')
  })
 }

Find-RGResource -ResourceQuery $query | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 ResourceIdentifiers
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn                                                          ResourceType
-----------                                                          ------------
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0123445b6cb7bd67b
 AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see SearchResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use Tag with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use Tag.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a tag to a resource group

The following tag example attaches the specified tag key and value pairs to the specified resource group (the group itself, not its members).

```
aws resource-groups tag \
    --tags QueryType=tags,QueryResources=ec2-instances \
    --arn arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:128716708097:group/tbq-WebServer
```

Output:

```
{
    "Arn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:128716708097:group/tbq-WebServer",
    "Tags": {
        "QueryType": "tags",
        "QueryResources": "ec2-instances"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Manage tags in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

- For API details, see Tag in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds tag key 'Instances' with value 'workboxes' to the given resource group arn

```
Add-RGResourceTag -Tag @{Instances="workboxes"} -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-
west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes
```

Output:

```
Arn                                                          Tags
---                                                          ----
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes {[Instances,
 workboxes]}
```

- For API details, see Tag in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tag key 'Instances' with value 'workboxes' to the given resource group arn

```
Add-RGResourceTag -Tag @{Instances="workboxes"} -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-
west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes
```

Output:

```
Arn                                                          Tags
---                                                          ----
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes {[Instances,
 workboxes]}
```

- For API details, see Tag in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `Untag` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Untag`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove tags from a resource group

The following `untags` example removes any tag with the specified key from the resource group itself, not its members.

```
aws resource-groups untag \
    --arn arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-WebServer \
```

```
    --keys QueryType
```

Output:

```
{
    "Arn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-WebServer",
    "Keys": [
        "QueryType"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Manage tags in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

- For API details, see Untag in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes mentioned tag from the resource group

```
Remove-RGResourceTag -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
workboxes -Key Instances
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-RGResourceTag (Untag)" on target
 "arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:933303704102:group/workboxes".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Arn                                                          Keys
---                                                          ----
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes {Instances}
```

- For API details, see Untag in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes mentioned tag from the resource group

```
Remove-RGResourceTag -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
workboxes -Key Instances
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-RGResourceTag (Untag)" on target
 "arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:933303704102:group/workboxes".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Arn                                                          Keys
---                                                          ----
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes {Instances}
```

- For API details, see Untag in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the description for a resource group

The following `update-group` example updates the description for the specified resource group.

```
aws resource-groups update-group \
    --group-name tbq-WebServer \
    --description "Resource group for all web server resources."
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/tbq-
WebServer",
```

```
        "Name": "tbq-WebServer"
        "Description": "Resource group for all web server resources."
    }
}
```

For more information, see Update Groups in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the description of the group

```
Update-RGGroup -GroupName auto-yes -Description "Instances auto-remove"
```

Output:

```
Description             GroupArn
     Name
-----------             --------
     ----
Instances to be cleaned arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
auto-yes auto-yes
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the description of the group

```
Update-RGGroup -GroupName auto-yes -Description "Instances auto-remove"
```

Output:

```
Description             GroupArn
     Name
-----------             --------
     ----
Instances to be cleaned arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
auto-yes auto-yes
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateGroupQuery` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateGroupQuery`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update the query for a tag-based resource group

The following `update-group-query` example updates the query attached to the specified tag-based resource group.

```
aws resource-groups update-group-query \
    --group-name tbq-WebServer \
    --resource-query '{"Type":"TAG_FILTERS_1_0", "Query":"{\"ResourceTypeFilters
\":[\"AWS::EC2::Instance\"],\"TagFilters\":[{\"Key\":\"Name\", \"Values\":
[\"WebServers\"]}]}"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-east-2:123456789012:group/tbq-
WebServer",
        "Name": "tbq-WebServer"
    },
    "ResourceQuery": {
        "Type": "TAG_FILTERS_1_0",
        "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::EC2::Instance\"],\"TagFilters
\":[{\"Key\":\"Name\", \"Values\":[\"WebServers\"]}]}"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Update Groups in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

Example 2: To update the query for a CloudFormation stack-based resource group

The following `update-group-query` example updates the query attached to the specified AWS CloudFormation stack-based resource group.

```
aws resource-groups update-group-query \
    --group-name cbq-CFNstackgroup \
    --resource-query '{"Type": "CLOUDFORMATION_STACK_1_0", "Query":
 "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::AllSupported\"],\"StackIdentifier\":
\"arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/MyCFNStack/1415z9z0-
z39z-11z8-97z5-500z212zz6fz\"}"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Group": {
        "GroupArn": "arn:aws:resource-groups:us-west-2:123456789012:group/cbq-
CFNstackgroup",
        "Name": "cbq-CFNstackgroup"
    },
    "ResourceQuery": {
        "Type": "CLOUDFORMATION_STACK_1_0",
        "Query": "{\"ResourceTypeFilters\":[\"AWS::AllSupported\"],
\"StackIdentifier\":\"arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/
MyCFNStack/1415z9z0-z39z-11z8-97z5-500z212zz6fz\"}"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Update Groups in the *AWS Resource Groups User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateGroupQuery in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a query object and updates the query for the group.

```
$query = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery]::new()
$query.Type = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.QueryType]::TAG_FILTERS_1_0
$query.Query = @{
  ResourceTypeFilters = @('AWS::EC2::Instance')
  TagFilters = @(@{
  Key='Environment'
  Values='Build600.11'
  })
} | ConvertTo-Json -Compress -Depth 4
```

```
Update-RGGroupQuery -GroupName build600 -ResourceQuery $query
```

Output:

```
GroupName ResourceQuery
--------- -------------
build600  Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroupQuery in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a query object and updates the query for the group.

```
$query = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery]::new()
$query.Type = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.QueryType]::TAG_FILTERS_1_0
$query.Query = @{
  ResourceTypeFilters = @('AWS::EC2::Instance')
  TagFilters = @(@{
  Key='Environment'
  Values='Build600.11'
  })
} | ConvertTo-Json -Compress -Depth 4

Update-RGGroupQuery -GroupName build600 -ResourceQuery $query
```

Output:

```
GroupName ResourceQuery
--------- -------------
build600  Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroupQuery in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Resource Groups Tagging API with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Resource Groups Tagging API User Guide** – More information about Resource Groups Tagging API.
- **Resource Groups Tagging API API Reference** – Details about all available Resource Groups Tagging API actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs
    - Use GetResources with a CLI
    - Use GetTagKeys with a CLI
    - Use GetTagValues with a CLI
    - Use TagResources with a CLI
    - Use UntagResources with a CLI

Basic examples for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Resource Groups Tagging API with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs
  - Use GetResources with a CLI
  - Use GetTagKeys with a CLI
  - Use GetTagValues with a CLI
  - Use TagResources with a CLI
  - Use UntagResources with a CLI

Actions for Resource Groups Tagging API using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Resource Groups Tagging API actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Resource Groups Tagging API API Reference.

Examples

- Use GetResources with a CLI
- Use GetTagKeys with a CLI
- Use GetTagValues with a CLI
- Use TagResources with a CLI
- Use UntagResources with a CLI

Use `GetResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of tagged resources

The following `get-resources` example displays a list of resources in the account that are tagged with the specified key name and value.

```
aws resourcegroupstaggingapi get-resources \
    --tag-filters Key=Environment,Values=Production \
    --tags-per-page 100
```

Output:

```
{
    "ResourceTagMappingList": [
        {
```

```
            "ResourceARN": " arn:aws:inspector:us-west-2:123456789012:target/0-
nvgVhaxX/template/0-7sbz2Kz0",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "Environment",
                    "Value": "Production"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see GetResources in the *Resource Groups Tagging API Reference*.

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all the tagged resources in a region and the tag keys associated with the resource. If no -Region parameter is supplied to the cmdlet it will attempt to infer region from the shell or EC2 instance metadata.

```
Get-RGTResource
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                        Tags
-----------                                                        ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable              {stage, version}

arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 2: Returns all the tagged resources of the specified type in a region. The string for each service name and resource type is the same as that embedded in a resource's Amazon Resource Name (ARN).

```
Get-RGTResource -ResourceType "s3"
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 3: Returns all the tagged resources of the specified type in a region. Note that when the resource types are piped into the cmdlet, one call to the service is made for each supplied resource type.

```
"dynamodb","s3" | Get-RGTResource
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}

arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 4: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage" }
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 5: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter and resource type.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage" } -ResourceType "dynamodb"
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}
```

Example 6: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage"; Values=@("beta","gamma") }
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}
```

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all the tagged resources in a region and the tag keys associated with the resource. If no -Region parameter is supplied to the cmdlet it will attempt to infer region from the shell or EC2 instance metadata.

```
Get-RGTResource
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}

arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 2: Returns all the tagged resources of the specified type in a region. The string for each service name and resource type is the same as that embedded in a resource's Amazon Resource Name (ARN).

```
Get-RGTResource -ResourceType "s3"
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                         Tags
-----------                                                         ----
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 3: Returns all the tagged resources of the specified type in a region. Note that when the resource types are piped into the cmdlet, one call to the service is made for each supplied resource type.

```
"dynamodb","s3" | Get-RGTResource
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                         Tags
-----------                                                         ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable               {stage, version}

arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 4: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage" }
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                         Tags
-----------                                                         ----
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket
 {stage, version, othertag}
```

Example 5: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter and resource type.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage" } -ResourceType "dynamodb"
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                         Tags
```

```
-----------                                                         ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable               {stage, version}
```

Example 6: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage"; Values=@("beta","gamma") }
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                         Tags
-----------                                                         ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable               {stage, version}
```

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetTagKeys` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTagKeys`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of all tag keys

The following `get-tag-keys` example retrieves the list of all tag key names used by resources in the account.

```
aws resourcegroupstaggingapi get-tag-keys
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagKeys": [
        "Environment",
        "CostCenter",
        "Department"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see GetTagKeys in the *Resource Groups Tagging API Reference*.

- For API details, see GetTagKeys in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all tag keys in the specified region. If the -Region parameter is not specified the cmdlet will attempt to infer the region from the default shell region or EC2 instance metadata. Note that the tag keys are not returned in any specific order.

```
Get-RGTTagKey -region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
version
stage
```

- For API details, see GetTagKeys in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all tag keys in the specified region. If the -Region parameter is not specified the cmdlet will attempt to infer the region from the default shell region or EC2 instance metadata. Note that the tag keys are not returned in any specific order.

```
Get-RGTTagKey -region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
version
stage
```

- For API details, see GetTagKeys in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetTagValues` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTagValues`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of all tag values

The following `get-tag-values` example displays all of the values used for the specified key for all resources in the

```
aws resourcegroupstaggingapi get-tag-values \
    --key=Environment
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagValues": [
        "Alpha",
        "Gamma",
        "Production"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see GetTagValues in the *Resource Groups Tagging API Reference*.

- For API details, see GetTagValues in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the value for the specified tag in a region. If the -Region parameter is not specified the cmdlet will attempt to infer the region from the default shell region or EC2 instance metadata.

```
Get-RGTTagValue -Key "stage" -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
beta
```

- For API details, see GetTagValues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the value for the specified tag in a region. If the -Region parameter is not specified the cmdlet will attempt to infer the region from the default shell region or EC2 instance metadata.

```
Get-RGTTagValue -Key "stage" -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
beta
```

- For API details, see GetTagValues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TagResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To attach a tag to a resource

The following `tag-resources` example tags the specified resource with a key name and value.

```
aws resourcegroupstaggingapi tag-resources \
    --resource-arn-list arn:aws:s3:::MyProductionBucket \
    --tags Environment=Production,CostCenter=1234
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedResourcesMap": {}
}
```

For more information, see TagResources in the *Resource Groups Tagging API Reference*.

- For API details, see TagResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds the tag keys "stage" and "version" with values "beta" and "preprod_test" to an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. A single call is made to the service to apply the tags.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

Add-RGTResourceTag -ResourceARNList $arn1,$arn2 -Tag @{ "stage"="beta";
 "version"="preprod_test" }
```

Example 2: This example adds the specified tags and values to an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. Two calls are made to the service, one for each resource ARN piped into the cmdlet.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

$arn1,$arn2 | Add-RGTResourceTag -Tag @{ "stage"="beta";
 "version"="preprod_test" }
```

- For API details, see TagResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the tag keys "stage" and "version" with values "beta" and "preprod_test" to an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. A single call is made to the service to apply the tags.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

Add-RGTResourceTag -ResourceARNList $arn1,$arn2 -Tag @{ "stage"="beta";
 "version"="preprod_test" }
```

Example 2: This example adds the specified tags and values to an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. Two calls are made to the service, one for each resource ARN piped into the cmdlet.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

$arn1,$arn2 | Add-RGTResourceTag -Tag @{ "stage"="beta";
 "version"="preprod_test" }
```

- For API details, see TagResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UntagResources` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UntagResources`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a tag from a resource

The following `untag-resources` example removes the specified tag keys and any associated values from the specified resource.

```
aws resourcegroupstaggingapi untag-resources \
    --resource-arn-list arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --tag-keys Environment CostCenter
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedResourcesMap": {}
}
```

For more information, see UntagResources in the *Resource Groups Tagging API Reference*.

- For API details, see UntagResources in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Removes the tag keys "stage" and "version", and the associated values, from an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. A single call is made to the

service to remove the tags. Before the tags are removed the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation. To bypass confirmation add the -Force parameter.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

Remove-RGTResourceTag -ResourceARNList $arn1,$arn2 -TagKey "stage","version"
```

Example 2: Removes the tag keys "stage" and "version", and the associated values, from an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. Two calls are made to the service, one for each resource ARN piped into the cmdlet. Before each call the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation. To bypass confirmation add the -Force parameter.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

$arn1,$arn2 | Remove-RGTResourceTag -TagKey "stage","version"
```

- For API details, see UntagResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Removes the tag keys "stage" and "version", and the associated values, from an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. A single call is made to the service to remove the tags. Before the tags are removed the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation. To bypass confirmation add the -Force parameter.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

Remove-RGTResourceTag -ResourceARNList $arn1,$arn2 -TagKey "stage","version"
```

Example 2: Removes the tag keys "stage" and "version", and the associated values, from an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. Two calls are made to the service, one for each resource ARN piped into the cmdlet. Before each call the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation. To bypass confirmation add the -Force parameter.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"
```

```
$arn1,$arn2 | Remove-RGTResourceTag -TagKey "stage","version"
```

- For API details, see UntagResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Route 53 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Route 53 with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Route 53 Developer Guide** – More information about Route 53.
- **Route 53 API Reference** – Details about all available Route 53 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Route 53 using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Route 53 using AWS SDKs
    - Use ChangeResourceRecordSets with a CLI
    - Use CreateHostedZone with a CLI
    - Use DeleteHostedZone with a CLI
    - Use GetHostedZone with a CLI
    - Use ListHostedZones with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListHostedZonesByName with a CLI
    - Use ListQueryLoggingConfigs with a CLI

Basic examples for Route 53 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Route 53 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Route 53 using AWS SDKs
  - Use ChangeResourceRecordSets with a CLI
  - Use CreateHostedZone with a CLI
  - Use DeleteHostedZone with a CLI
  - Use GetHostedZone with a CLI
  - Use ListHostedZones with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListHostedZonesByName with a CLI
  - Use ListQueryLoggingConfigs with a CLI

Actions for Route 53 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Route 53 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Route 53 API Reference.

Examples

- Use ChangeResourceRecordSets with a CLI
- Use CreateHostedZone with a CLI
- Use DeleteHostedZone with a CLI
- Use GetHostedZone with a CLI
- Use ListHostedZones with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListHostedZonesByName with a CLI
- Use ListQueryLoggingConfigs with a CLI

Use `ChangeResourceRecordSets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ChangeResourceRecordSets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create, update, or delete a resource record set

The following `change-resource-record-sets` command creates a resource record set using the `hosted-zone-id` `Z1R8UBAEXAMPLE` and the JSON-formatted configuration in the file `C:\awscli\route53\change-resource-record-sets.json`:

```
aws route53 change-resource-record-sets --hosted-zone-id Z1R8UBAEXAMPLE --change-batch file://C:\awscli\route53\change-resource-record-sets.json
```

For more information, see POST ChangeResourceRecordSets in the *Amazon Route 53 API Reference*.

The configuration in the JSON file depends on the kind of resource record set you want to create:

BasicWeightedAliasWeighted AliasLatencyLatency AliasFailoverFailover Alias

Basic Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "TTL": time to live in seconds,
        "ResourceRecords": [
          {
            "Value": "applicable value for the record type"
          },
          {...}
        ]
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Weighted Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "SetIdentifier": "unique description for this resource record set",
        "Weight": value between 0 and 255,
        "TTL": time to live in seconds,
        "ResourceRecords": [
          {
            "Value": "applicable value for the record type"
          },
          {...}
        ],
        "HealthCheckId": "optional ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Alias Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "AliasTarget": {
          "HostedZoneId": "hosted zone ID for your CloudFront distribution,
 Amazon S3 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or Amazon Route 53
 hosted zone",
          "DNSName": "DNS domain name for your CloudFront distribution, Amazon S3
 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or another resource record set in
 this hosted zone",
```

```
          "EvaluateTargetHealth": true|false
        },
        "HealthCheckId": "optional ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Weighted Alias Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "SetIdentifier": "unique description for this resource record set",
        "Weight": value between 0 and 255,
        "AliasTarget": {
          "HostedZoneId": "hosted zone ID for your CloudFront distribution,
 Amazon S3 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or Amazon Route 53
 hosted zone",
          "DNSName": "DNS domain name for your CloudFront distribution, Amazon S3
 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or another resource record set in
 this hosted zone",
          "EvaluateTargetHealth": true|false
        },
        "HealthCheckId": "optional ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Latency Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
```

```
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "SetIdentifier": "unique description for this resource record set",
        "Region": "Amazon EC2 region name",
        "TTL": time to live in seconds,
        "ResourceRecords": [
          {
            "Value": "applicable value for the record type"
          },
          {...}
        ],
        "HealthCheckId": "optional ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Latency Alias Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "SetIdentifier": "unique description for this resource record set",
        "Region": "Amazon EC2 region name",
        "AliasTarget": {
          "HostedZoneId": "hosted zone ID for your CloudFront distribution,
 Amazon S3 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or Amazon Route 53
 hosted zone",
          "DNSName": "DNS domain name for your CloudFront distribution, Amazon S3
 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or another resource record set in
 this hosted zone",
          "EvaluateTargetHealth": true|false
        },
        "HealthCheckId": "optional ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
```

```
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Failover Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "SetIdentifier": "unique description for this resource record set",
        "Failover": "PRIMARY" | "SECONDARY",
        "TTL": time to live in seconds,
        "ResourceRecords": [
          {
            "Value": "applicable value for the record type"
          },
          {...}
        ],
        "HealthCheckId": "ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

Failover Alias Syntax:

```
{
  "Comment": "optional comment about the changes in this change batch request",
  "Changes": [
    {
      "Action": "CREATE"|"DELETE"|"UPSERT",
      "ResourceRecordSet": {
        "Name": "DNS domain name",
        "Type": "SOA"|"A"|"TXT"|"NS"|"CNAME"|"MX"|"PTR"|"SRV"|"SPF"|"AAAA",
        "SetIdentifier": "unique description for this resource record set",
        "Failover": "PRIMARY" | "SECONDARY",
```

```
        "AliasTarget": {
          "HostedZoneId": "hosted zone ID for your CloudFront distribution,
 Amazon S3 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or Amazon Route 53
 hosted zone",
          "DNSName": "DNS domain name for your CloudFront distribution, Amazon S3
 bucket, Elastic Load Balancing load balancer, or another resource record set in
 this hosted zone",
          "EvaluateTargetHealth": true|false
        },
        "HealthCheckId": "optional ID of an Amazon Route 53 health check"
      }
    },
    {...}
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ChangeResourceRecordSets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates an A record for www.example.com and changes the A record for test.example.com from 192.0.2.3 to 192.0.2.1. Note that values for changes TXT-type records must be in double quotes. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "TXT"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="item 1 item 2 item 3"})

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "DELETE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "test.example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
```

```
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.3"})

$change3 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change3.Action = "CREATE"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "test.example.com"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.1"})

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z1PA6795UKMFR9"
 ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates a TXT record for www.example.com.
 and changes the A record for test.example.com. from 192.0.2.3 to 192.0.2.1."
 ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2,$change3
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 2: This example shows how to create alias resource record sets. 'Z222222222' is the ID of the Amazon Route 53 hosted zone in which you're creating the alias resource record set. 'example.com' is the zone apex for which you want to create an alias and 'www.example.com' is a subdomain for which you also want to create an alias. 'Z1111111111111' is an example of a hosted zone ID for the load balancer and 'example-load-balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com' is an example of a load balancer domain name with which Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com and www.example.com. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true
```

```
$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $false

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z222222222"
 ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two alias resource record sets,
 one for the zone apex, example.com, and one for www.example.com, that both point
 to example-load-balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
 ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 3: This example creates two A records for www.example.com. One-fourth of the time (1/(1+3)), Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for www.example.com with the two values for the first resource record set (192.0.2.9 and 192.0.2.10). Three-fourths of the time (3/(1+3)) Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for www.example.com with the two values for the second resource record set (192.0.2.11 and 192.0.2.12). See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Rack 2, Positions 4 and 5"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 1
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.9"})
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.10"})

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
```

```
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Rack 5, Positions 1 and 2"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 3
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.11"})
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.12"})

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z1PA6795UKMFR9"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change creates two weighted resource record sets,
 each of which has two values."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 4: This example shows how to create weighted alias resource record sets assuming that example.com is the domain for which you want to create weighted alias resource record sets. SetIdentifier differentiates the two weighted alias resource record sets from one another. This element is required because the Name and Type elements have the same values for both resource record sets. Z1111111111111 and Z3333333333333 are examples of hosted zone IDs for the ELB load balancer specified by the value of DNSName. example-load-balancer-2222222222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com and example-load-balancer-4444444444.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com are examples of Elastic Load Balancing domains from which Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "1"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 3
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
```

```
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-2222222222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "2"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 1
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z3333333333333"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-4444444444.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $false

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z5555555555"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two weighted alias resource
 record sets. Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com with the first
 ELB domain 3/4ths of the times and the second one 1/4th of the time."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 5: This example creates two latency alias resource record sets, one for an ELB load balancer in the US West (Oregon) region (us-west-2), and another for a load balancer in the Asia Pacific (Singapore) region (ap-southeast-1). See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Oregon load balancer 1"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Region = us-west-2
```

```
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-2222222222.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Singapore load balancer 1"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Region = ap-southeast-1
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z2222222222222"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.ap-southeast-1.elb.amazonaws.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z5555555555"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two latency resource
 record sets, one for the US West (Oregon) region and one for the Asia Pacific
 (Singapore) region."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

- For API details, see ChangeResourceRecordSets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an A record for www.example.com and changes the A record for test.example.com from 192.0.2.3 to 192.0.2.1. Note that values for changes TXT-type records must be in double quotes. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
```

```
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "TXT"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="item 1 item 2 item 3"})

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "DELETE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "test.example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.3"})

$change3 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change3.Action = "CREATE"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "test.example.com"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.1"})

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z1PA6795UKMFR9"
 ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates a TXT record for www.example.com.
 and changes the A record for test.example.com. from 192.0.2.3 to 192.0.2.1."
 ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2,$change3
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 2: This example shows how to create alias resource record sets. 'Z222222222' is the ID of the Amazon Route 53 hosted zone in which you're creating the alias resource record set. 'example.com' is the zone apex for which you want to create an alias and 'www.example.com' is a subdomain for which you also want to create an alias. 'Z1111111111111' is an example of a hosted zone ID for the load balancer and 'example-load-balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com' is an example of a load balancer domain name with which Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for

example.com and www.example.com. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $false

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z222222222"
 ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two alias resource record sets,
 one for the zone apex, example.com, and one for www.example.com, that both point
 to example-load-balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
 ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 3: This example creates two A records for www.example.com. One-fourth of the time (1/(1+3)), Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for www.example.com with the two values for the first resource record set (192.0.2.9 and 192.0.2.10). Three-fourths of the time (3/(1+3)) Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for www.example.com with

the two values for the second resource record set (192.0.2.11 and 192.0.2.12). See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Rack 2, Positions 4 and 5"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 1
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.9"})
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.10"})

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Rack 5, Positions 1 and 2"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 3
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.11"})
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.12"})

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z1PA6795UKMFR9"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change creates two weighted resource record sets,
 each of which has two values."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 4: This example shows how to create weighted alias resource record sets assuming that example.com is the domain for which you want to create weighted alias resource record sets. SetIdentifier differentiates the two weighted alias resource record sets from one another. This element is required because the Name and Type elements have the same values for both resource record sets. Z1111111111111

and Z3333333333333 are examples of hosted zone IDs for the ELB load balancer specified by the value of DNSName. example-load-balancer-2222222222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com and example-load-balancer-4444444444.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com are examples of Elastic Load Balancing domains from which Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "1"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 3
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-2222222222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "2"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 1
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z3333333333333"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-4444444444.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $false

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z5555555555"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two weighted alias resource
 record sets. Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com with the first
 ELB domain 3/4ths of the times and the second one 1/4th of the time."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
```

```
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 5: This example creates two latency alias resource record sets, one for an ELB load balancer in the US West (Oregon) region (us-west-2), and another for a load balancer in the Asia Pacific (Singapore) region (ap-southeast-1). See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Oregon load balancer 1"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Region = us-west-2
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-2222222222.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Singapore load balancer 1"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Region = ap-southeast-1
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object
 Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z2222222222222"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.ap-southeast-1.elb.amazonaws.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z5555555555"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two latency resource
 record sets, one for the US West (Oregon) region and one for the Asia Pacific
 (Singapore) region."
```

```
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

- For API details, see ChangeResourceRecordSets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateHostedZone` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateHostedZone`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a hosted zone

The following `create-hosted-zone` command adds a hosted zone named `example.com` using the caller reference `2014-04-01-18:47`. The optional comment includes a space, so it must be enclosed in quotation marks:

```
aws route53 create-hosted-zone --name example.com --caller-
reference 2014-04-01-18:47 --hosted-zone-config Comment="command-line version"
```

For more information, see Working with Hosted Zones in the *Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateHostedZone in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new hosted zone named 'example.com', associated with a reusable delegation set. Note that you must supply a value for the CallerReference parameter so that requests that need to be retried if necessary without the risk of executing the operation twice. Because the hosted zone is being created in a VPC it is automatically private and you should not set the -HostedZoneConfig_PrivateZone parameter.

```
$params = @{
```

```
    Name="example.com"
    CallerReference="myUniqueIdentifier"
    HostedZoneConfig_Comment="This is my first hosted zone"
    DelegationSetId="NZ8X2CISAMPLE"
    VPC_VPCId="vpc-1a2b3c4d"
    VPC_VPCRegion="us-east-1"
}

New-R53HostedZone @params
```

- For API details, see CreateHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new hosted zone named 'example.com', associated with a reusable delegation set. Note that you must supply a value for the CallerReference parameter so that requests that need to be retried if necessary without the risk of executing the operation twice. Because the hosted zone is being created in a VPC it is automatically private and you should not set the -HostedZoneConfig_PrivateZone parameter.

```
$params = @{
    Name="example.com"
    CallerReference="myUniqueIdentifier"
    HostedZoneConfig_Comment="This is my first hosted zone"
    DelegationSetId="NZ8X2CISAMPLE"
    VPC_VPCId="vpc-1a2b3c4d"
    VPC_VPCRegion="us-east-1"
}

New-R53HostedZone @params
```

- For API details, see CreateHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteHostedZone` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteHostedZone`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a hosted zone

The following `delete-hosted-zone` command deletes the hosted zone with an `id` of `Z36KTIQEXAMPLE`:

```
aws route53 delete-hosted-zone --id Z36KTIQEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see DeleteHostedZone in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the hosted zone with the specified ID. You will be prompted for confirmation before the command proceeds unless you add the -Force switch parameter.

```
Remove-R53HostedZone -Id Z1PA6795UKMFR9
```

- For API details, see DeleteHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the hosted zone with the specified ID. You will be prompted for confirmation before the command proceeds unless you add the -Force switch parameter.

```
Remove-R53HostedZone -Id Z1PA6795UKMFR9
```

- For API details, see DeleteHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetHostedZone` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetHostedZone`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a hosted zone

The following `get-hosted-zone` command gets information about the hosted zone with an `id` of `Z1R8UBAEXAMPLE`:

```
aws route53 get-hosted-zone --id Z1R8UBAEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see GetHostedZone in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of the hosted zone with ID Z1D633PJN98FT9.

```
Get-R53HostedZone -Id Z1D633PJN98FT9
```

- For API details, see GetHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the hosted zone with ID Z1D633PJN98FT9.

```
Get-R53HostedZone -Id Z1D633PJN98FT9
```

- For API details, see GetHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListHostedZones` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListHostedZones`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the hosted zones associated with the current AWS account

The following `list-hosted-zones` command lists summary information about the first 100 hosted zones that are associated with the current AWS account.:

```
aws route53 list-hosted-zones
```

If you have more than 100 hosted zones, or if you want to list them in groups smaller than 100, include the `--max-items` parameter. For example, to list hosted zones one at a time, use the following command:

```
aws route53 list-hosted-zones --max-items 1
```

To view information about the next hosted zone, take the value of `NextToken` from the response to the previous command, and include it in the `--starting-token` parameter, for example:

```
aws route53 list-hosted-zones --max-items 1 --starting-token Z3M3LMPEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZones in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Outputs all of your public and private hosted zones.

```
Get-R53HostedZoneList
```

Example 2: Outputs all of the hosted zones that are associated with the reusable delegation set that has the ID NZ8X2CISAMPLE

```
Get-R53HostedZoneList -DelegationSetId NZ8X2CISAMPLE
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZones in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Outputs all of your public and private hosted zones.

```
Get-R53HostedZoneList
```

Example 2: Outputs all of the hosted zones that are associated with the reusable delegation set that has the ID NZ8X2CISAMPLE

```
Get-R53HostedZoneList -DelegationSetId NZ8X2CISAMPLE
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZones in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_host_info(client: &aws_sdk_route53::Client) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_route53::Error> {
    let hosted_zone_count = client.get_hosted_zone_count().send().await?;

    println!(
        "Number of hosted zones in region : {}",
        hosted_zone_count.hosted_zone_count(),
    );

    let hosted_zones = client.list_hosted_zones().send().await?;

    println!("Zones:");

    for hz in hosted_zones.hosted_zones() {
        let zone_name = hz.name();
        let zone_id = hz.id();

        println!("  ID :   {}", zone_id);
        println!("  Name : {}", zone_name);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZones in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListHostedZonesByName` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListHostedZonesByName`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command lists up to 100 hosted zones ordered by domain name:

```
aws route53 list-hosted-zones-by-name
```

Output:

```
{
  "HostedZones": [
      {
          "ResourceRecordSetCount": 2,
          "CallerReference": "test20150527-2",
          "Config": {
              "Comment": "test2",
              "PrivateZone": false
          },
          "Id": "/hostedzone/Z119WBBTVP5WFX",
          "Name": "2.example.com."
      },
      {
          "ResourceRecordSetCount": 2,
          "CallerReference": "test20150527-1",
          "Config": {
              "Comment": "test",
              "PrivateZone": false
          },
          "Id": "/hostedzone/Z3P5QSUBK4POTI",
          "Name": "www.example.com."
      }
  ],
  "IsTruncated": false,
  "MaxItems": "100"
}
```

The following command lists hosted zones ordered by name, beginning with `www.example.com`:

```
aws route53 list-hosted-zones-by-name --dns-name www.example.com
```

Output:

```
{
  "HostedZones": [
      {
          "ResourceRecordSetCount": 2,
          "CallerReference": "mwunderl20150527-1",
          "Config": {
              "Comment": "test",
              "PrivateZone": false
          },
          "Id": "/hostedzone/Z3P5QSUBK4POTI",
          "Name": "www.example.com."
      }
  ],
  "DNSName": "www.example.com",
  "IsTruncated": false,
  "MaxItems": "100"
}
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZonesByName in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all of your public and private hosted zones in ASCII order by domain name.

```
Get-R53HostedZonesByName
```

Example 2: Returns your public and private hosted zones, in ASCII order by domain name, starting at the specified DNS name.

```
Get-R53HostedZonesByName -DnsName example2.com
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZonesByName in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all of your public and private hosted zones in ASCII order by domain name.

```
Get-R53HostedZonesByName
```

Example 2: Returns your public and private hosted zones, in ASCII order by domain name, starting at the specified DNS name.

```
Get-R53HostedZonesByName -DnsName example2.com
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZonesByName in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListQueryLoggingConfigs` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListQueryLoggingConfigs`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list query logging configurations

The following `list-query-logging-configs` example lists information about the first 100 query logging configurations in your AWS account, for the hosted zone `Z1OX3WQEXAMPLE`.

```
aws route53 list-query-logging-configs \
    --hosted-zone-id Z1OX3WQEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "QueryLoggingConfigs": [
        {
            "Id": "964ff34e-ae03-4f06-80a2-9683cexample",
            "HostedZoneId": "Z1OX3WQEXAMPLE",
            "CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn": "arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111122223333:log-group:/aws/route53/example.com:*"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Logging DNS queries in the *Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListQueryLoggingConfigs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns all the configurations for DNS query logging that are associated with the current AWS account.

```
Get-R53QueryLoggingConfigList
```

Output:

```
Id                                   HostedZoneId   CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn
--                                   ------------   -------------------------
59b0fa33-4fea-4471-a88c-926476aaa40d Z385PDS6EAAAZR arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example1.com:*
ee528e95-4e03-4fdc-9d28-9e24ddaaa063 Z94SJHBV1AAAAZ arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example2.com:*
e38dddda-ceb6-45c1-8cb7-f0ae56aaaa2b Z3MEQ8T7AAA1BF arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example3.com:*
```

- For API details, see ListQueryLoggingConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns all the configurations for DNS query logging that are associated with the current AWS account.

```
Get-R53QueryLoggingConfigList
```

Output:

```
Id                                   HostedZoneId   CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn
--                                   ------------   -------------------------
```

```
59b0fa33-4fea-4471-a88c-926476aaa40d Z385PDS6EAAAZR arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example1.com:*
ee528e95-4e03-4fdc-9d28-9e24ddaaa063 Z94SJHBV1AAAAZ arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example2.com:*
e38dddda-ceb6-45c1-8cb7-f0ae56aaaa2b Z3MEQ8T7AAA1BF arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example3.com:*
```

- For API details, see ListQueryLoggingConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Route 53 domain registration with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Route 53 domain registration Developer Guide** – More information about Route 53 domain registration.
- **Route 53 domain registration API Reference** – Details about all available Route 53 domain registration actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Route 53 domain registration

The following code examples show how to get started using Route 53 domain registration.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloRoute53Domains
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon Route 53 domain registration service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var route53Client =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await route53Client.ListPricesAsync(new ListPricesRequest
 { Tld = "com" });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon Route 53 Domains! Following are prices
 for .com domain operations:");
        var comPrices = response.Prices.FirstOrDefault();
        if (comPrices != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration:
 {comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Price} {comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Price}
 {comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.Route53DomainsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.Route53Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.DomainPrice;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.ListPricesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.ListPricesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This Java code examples performs the following operation:
 *
 * 1. Invokes ListPrices for at least one domain type, such as the “com” type
 * and displays the prices for Registration and Renewal.
 *
 */
public class HelloRoute53 {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <hostedZoneId> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    hostedZoneId - The id value of an existing hosted zone. \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String domainType = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient =
Route53DomainsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Invokes ListPrices for at least one domain type.");
        listPrices(route53DomainsClient, domainType);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient,
String domainType) {
        try {
            ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                    .maxItems(10)
                    .tld(domainType)
                    .build();

            ListPricesResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.listPrices(pricesRequest);
            List<DomainPrice> prices = response.prices();
            for (DomainPrice pr : prices) {
                System.out.println("Name: " + pr.name());
                System.out.println(
                        "Registration: " + pr.registrationPrice().price() + " " +
pr.registrationPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Renewal: " + pr.renewalPrice().price() + " "
+ pr.renewalPrice().currency());
```

```
                System.out.println("Transfer: " + pr.transferPrice().price() + "
 " + pr.transferPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Transfer: " + pr.transferPrice().price() + "
 " + pr.transferPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Change Ownership: " +
 pr.changeOwnershipPrice().price() + " "
                        + pr.changeOwnershipPrice().currency());
                System.out.println(
                        "Restoration: " + pr.restorationPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.restorationPrice().currency());
                System.out.println(" ");
            }

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
```

```
    val usage = """
        Usage:
           <domainType>

       Where:
           domainType - The domain type (for example, com).
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val domainType = args[0]
    println("Invokes ListPrices using a Paginated method.")
    listPricesPaginated(domainType)
}

suspend fun listPricesPaginated(domainType: String) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            maxItems = 10
            tld = domainType
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Route 53 domain registration
  - Learn the basics of Route 53 domain registration with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs
    - Use CheckDomainAvailability with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CheckDomainTransferability with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetDomainDetail with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetDomainSuggestions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetOperationDetail with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListDomains with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListOperations with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListPrices with an AWS SDK
    - Use RegisterDomain with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ViewBilling with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Route 53 domain registration with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Route 53 domain registration
- Learn the basics of Route 53 domain registration with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs
  - Use CheckDomainAvailability with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CheckDomainTransferability with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetDomainDetail with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetDomainSuggestions with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetOperationDetail with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ListDomains with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListOperations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPrices with an AWS SDK
- Use RegisterDomain with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ViewBilling with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Route 53 domain registration

The following code examples show how to get started using Route 53 domain registration.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloRoute53Domains
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon Route 53 domain registration service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var route53Client =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
```

```
        var response = await route53Client.ListPricesAsync(new ListPricesRequest
 { Tld = "com" });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon Route 53 Domains! Following are prices
 for .com domain operations:");
        var comPrices = response.Prices.FirstOrDefault();
        if (comPrices != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration:
 {comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Price} {comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Price}
 {comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.Route53DomainsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.Route53Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.DomainPrice;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.ListPricesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.ListPricesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This Java code examples performs the following operation:
 *
 * 1. Invokes ListPrices for at least one domain type, such as the “com” type
 * and displays the prices for Registration and Renewal.
 *
 */
public class HelloRoute53 {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <hostedZoneId> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    hostedZoneId - The id value of an existing hosted zone. \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String domainType = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient =
 Route53DomainsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Invokes ListPrices for at least one domain type.");
        listPrices(route53DomainsClient, domainType);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient,
 String domainType) {
        try {
            ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                    .maxItems(10)
                    .tld(domainType)
```

```
                    .build();

            ListPricesResponse response =
 route53DomainsClient.listPrices(pricesRequest);
            List<DomainPrice> prices = response.prices();
            for (DomainPrice pr : prices) {
                System.out.println("Name: " + pr.name());
                System.out.println(
                        "Registration: " + pr.registrationPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.registrationPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Renewal: " + pr.renewalPrice().price() + " "
 + pr.renewalPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Transfer: " + pr.transferPrice().price() + "
 " + pr.transferPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Transfer: " + pr.transferPrice().price() + "
 " + pr.transferPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Change Ownership: " +
 pr.changeOwnershipPrice().price() + " "
                        + pr.changeOwnershipPrice().currency());
                System.out.println(
                        "Restoration: " + pr.restorationPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.restorationPrice().currency());
                System.out.println(" ");
            }

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
           <domainType>

       Where:
           domainType - The domain type (for example, com).
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val domainType = args[0]
    println("Invokes ListPrices using a Paginated method.")
    listPricesPaginated(domainType)
}

suspend fun listPricesPaginated(domainType: String) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            maxItems = 10
            tld = domainType
```

```
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Learn the basics of Route 53 domain registration with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- List current domains, and list operations in the past year.
- View billing for the past year, and view prices for domain types.
- Get domain suggestions.
- Check domain availability and transferability.
- Optionally, request a domain registration.
- Get an operation detail.
- Optionally, get a domain detail.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public static class Route53DomainScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List current domains.
        2. List operations in the past year.
        3. View billing for the account in the past year.
        4. View prices for domain types.
        5. Get domain suggestions.
        6. Check domain availability.
        7. Check domain transferability.
        8. Optionally, request a domain registration.
        9. Get an operation detail.
       10. Optionally, get a domain detail.
   */

    private static Route53Wrapper _route53Wrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
                    .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
                .AddTransient<Route53Wrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        var logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger(typeof(Route53DomainScenario));

        _route53Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Route53Wrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example
scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            await ListDomains();
            await ListOperations();
            await ListBillingRecords();
            await ListPrices();
            await ListDomainSuggestions();
            await CheckDomainAvailability();
            await CheckDomainTransferability();
            var operationId = await RequestDomainRegistration();
            await GetOperationalDetail(operationId);
            await GetDomainDetails();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon Route 53 domains example scenario is
complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List account registered domains.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDomains()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. List account domains.");
        var domains = await _route53Wrapper.ListDomains();
        for (int i = 0; i < domains.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {domains[i].DomainName}");
        }

        if (!domains.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo domains found in this account.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List domain operations in the past year.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListOperations()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. List account domain operations in the past
year.");
        var operations = await _route53Wrapper.ListOperations(
            DateTime.Today.AddYears(-1));
        for (int i = 0; i < operations.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOperation Id: {operations[i].OperationId}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tStatus: {operations[i].Status}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDate: {operations[i].SubmittedDate}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List billing in the past year.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListBillingRecords()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. View billing for the account in the past year.");
        var billingRecords = await _route53Wrapper.ViewBilling(
            DateTime.Today.AddYears(-1),
            DateTime.Today);
        for (int i = 0; i < billingRecords.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBill Date:
{billingRecords[i].BillDate.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOperation: {billingRecords[i].Operation}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPrice: {billingRecords[i].Price}");
        }
        if (!billingRecords.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo billing records found in this account for the
past year.");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for a few domain types.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListPrices()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. View prices for domain types.");
        var domainTypes = new List<string> { "net", "com", "org", "co" };

        var prices = await _route53Wrapper.ListPrices(domainTypes);
        foreach (var pr in prices)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tName: {pr.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration: {pr.RegistrationPrice?.Price}
{pr.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {pr.RenewalPrice?.Price}
{pr.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTransfer: {pr.TransferPrice?.Price}
{pr.TransferPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tChange Ownership:
{pr.ChangeOwnershipPrice?.Price} {pr.ChangeOwnershipPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRestoration: {pr.RestorationPrice?.Price}
{pr.RestorationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List domain suggestions for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDomainSuggestions()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"5. Get domain suggestions.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to get available domain
suggestions.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var suggestions = await _route53Wrapper.GetDomainSuggestions(domainName,
true, 5);
        foreach (var suggestion in suggestions)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSuggestion Name: {suggestion.DomainName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAvailability: {suggestion.Availability}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check availability for a domain name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckDomainAvailability()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. Check domain availability.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to check domain
availability.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var availability = await
_route53Wrapper.CheckDomainAvailability(domainName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAvailability: {availability}");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check transferability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckDomainTransferability()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Check domain transferability.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to check domain
transferability.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var transferability = await
_route53Wrapper.CheckDomainTransferability(domainName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTransferability: {transferability}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Check transferability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> RequestDomainRegistration()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. Optionally, request a domain registration.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNote: This example uses domain request settings in
 settings.json.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTo change the domain registration settings, set the
 values in that file.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRemember, registering an actual domain will incur
 an account billing cost.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tWould you like to begin a domain registration? (y/
n)");
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        if (ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase))
        {
            string domainName = _configuration["DomainName"];
            ContactDetail contact = new ContactDetail();
            contact.CountryCode =
 CountryCode.FindValue(_configuration["Contact:CountryCode"]);
            contact.ContactType =
 ContactType.FindValue(_configuration["Contact:ContactType"]);

            _configuration.GetSection("Contact").Bind(contact);

            var operationId = await _route53Wrapper.RegisterDomain(
                domainName,
                Convert.ToBoolean(_configuration["AutoRenew"]),
                Convert.ToInt32(_configuration["DurationInYears"]),
                contact);
            if (operationId != null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tRegistration requested. Operation Id: {operationId}");
            }

            return operationId;
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        return null;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for an operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetOperationalDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Get an operation detail.");

        var operationDetails =
            await _route53Wrapper.GetOperationDetail(operationId);

        Console.WriteLine(operationDetails);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Optionally, get details for a registered domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetDomainDetails()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Get details on a domain.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNote: you must have a registered domain to get
details.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tWould you like to get domain details? (y/n)");
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        if (ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase))
        {
            string? domainName = null;
            while (domainName == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tEnter a domain name to get details.");
                domainName = Console.ReadLine();
            }
```

```
            var domainDetails = await
 _route53Wrapper.GetDomainDetail(domainName);
            Console.WriteLine(domainDetails);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return null;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for Route 53 domain registration actions.

```
public class Route53Wrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRoute53Domains _amazonRoute53Domains;
    private readonly ILogger<Route53Wrapper> _logger;
    public Route53Wrapper(IAmazonRoute53Domains amazonRoute53Domains,
 ILogger<Route53Wrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonRoute53Domains = amazonRoute53Domains;
        _logger = logger;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for domain type operations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domainTypes">Domain types to include in the results.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of domain prices.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainPrice>> ListPrices(List<string> domainTypes)
    {
        var results = new List<DomainPrice>();
        var paginatePrices = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListPrices(new
 ListPricesRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var prices in paginatePrices.Prices)
        {
            results.Add(prices);
        }
        return results.Where(p => domainTypes.Contains(p.Name)).ToList();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the availability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for availability.</param>
    /// <returns>An availability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainAvailability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainAvailabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Availability.Value;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Check the transferability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for transferability.</param>
    /// <returns>A transferability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainTransferability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainTransferabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Transferability.Transferable.Value;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of suggestions for a given domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for suggestions.</param>
    /// <param name="onlyAvailable">If true, only returns available domains.</
param>
    /// <param name="suggestionCount">The number of suggestions to return.
 Defaults to the max of 50.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A collection of domain suggestions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSuggestion>> GetDomainSuggestions(string domain,
bool onlyAvailable, int suggestionCount = 50)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainSuggestionsAsync(
            new GetDomainSuggestionsRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain,
                OnlyAvailable = onlyAvailable,
                SuggestionCount = suggestionCount
            }
        );
        return result.SuggestionsList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain action operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The operational Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A string describing the operational details.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetOperationDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        if (operationId == null)
            return "Unable to get operational details because ID is null.";
        try
        {
            var operationDetails =
                await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetOperationDetailAsync(
                    new GetOperationDetailRequest
                    {
                        OperationId = operationId
                    }
                );

            var details = $"\tOperation {operationId}:\n" +
                          $"\tFor domain {operationDetails.DomainName} on
{operationDetails.SubmittedDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                          $"\tMessage is {operationDetails.Message}.\n" +
                          $"\tStatus is {operationDetails.Status}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (AmazonRoute53DomainsException ex)
```

```
        {
            return $"Unable to get operation details. Here's why: {ex.Message}.";
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate a domain registration request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contact">Contact details.</param>
    /// <param name="domainName">The domain name to register.</param>
    /// <param name="autoRenew">True if the domain should automatically renew.</
param>
    /// <param name="duration">The duration in years for the domain
 registration.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> RegisterDomain(string domainName, bool autoRenew,
 int duration, ContactDetail contact)
    {
        // This example uses the same contact information for admin, registrant,
 and tech contacts.
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.RegisterDomainAsync(
                new RegisterDomainRequest()
                {
                    AdminContact = contact,
                    RegistrantContact = contact,
                    TechContact = contact,
                    DomainName = domainName,
                    AutoRenew = autoRenew,
                    DurationInYears = duration,
                    PrivacyProtectAdminContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectTechContact = false
                }
            );
            return result.OperationId;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            _logger.LogInformation($"Unable to request registration for domain
 {domainName}");
            return null;
```

```
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// View billing records for the account between a start and end date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startDate">The start date for billing results.</param>
    /// <param name="endDate">The end date for billing results.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BillingRecord>> ViewBilling(DateTime startDate,
 DateTime endDate)
    {
        var results = new List<BillingRecord>();
        var paginateBilling = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ViewBilling(
            new ViewBillingRequest()
            {
                Start = startDate,
                End = endDate
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var billingRecords in paginateBilling.BillingRecords)
        {
            results.Add(billingRecords);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the domains for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSummary>> ListDomains()
    {
        var results = new List<DomainSummary>();
        var paginateDomains = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListDomains(
            new ListDomainsRequest());

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var domain in paginateDomains.Domains)
        {
            results.Add(domain);
```

```
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List operations for the account that are submitted after a specified
 date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of operation summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OperationSummary>> ListOperations(DateTime
 submittedSince)
    {
        var results = new List<OperationSummary>();
        var paginateOperations = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListOperations(
            new ListOperationsRequest()
            {
                SubmittedSince = submittedSince
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var operations in paginateOperations.Operations)
        {
            results.Add(operations);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string with detail information about the domain.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDomainDetail(string domainName)
    {
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainDetailAsync(
                new GetDomainDetailRequest()
                {
                    DomainName = domainName
                });
            var details = $"\tDomain {domainName}:\n" +
```

```
                            $"\tCreated on
 {result.CreationDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                            $"\tAdmin contact is {result.AdminContact.Email}.\n" +
                            $"\tAuto-renew is {result.AutoRenew}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            return $"Domain {domainName} was not found in your account.";
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail
  - GetDomainSuggestions
  - GetOperationDetail
  - ListDomains
  - ListOperations
  - ListPrices
  - RegisterDomain
  - ViewBilling

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This example uses pagination methods where applicable. For example, to list
 * domains, the
 * listDomainsPaginator method is used. For more information about pagination,
 * see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/
pagination.html
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following operations:
 *
 * 1. List current domains.
 * 2. List operations in the past year.
 * 3. View billing for the account in the past year.
 * 4. View prices for domain types.
 * 5. Get domain suggestions.
 * 6. Check domain availability.
 * 7. Check domain transferability.
 * 8. Request a domain registration.
 * 9. Get operation details.
 * 10. Optionally, get domain details.
 */

public class Route53Scenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <domainType> <phoneNumber> <email> <domainSuggestion>
 <firstName> <lastName> <city>

                Where:
```

```
                    domainType - The domain type (for example, com).\s
                    phoneNumber - The phone number to use (for example,
+91.9966564xxx)      email - The email address to use.      domainSuggestion -
The domain suggestion (for example, findmy.accountants).\s
                    firstName - The first name to use to register a domain.\s
                    lastName -  The last name to use to register a domain.\s
                    city - the city to use to register a domain.\s
                    """;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String domainType = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        String email = args[2];
        String domainSuggestion = args[3];
        String firstName = args[4];
        String lastName = args[5];
        String city = args[6];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient =
Route53DomainsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example
scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. List current domains.");
        listDomains(route53DomainsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. List operations in the past year.");
        listOperations(route53DomainsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. View billing for the account in the past year.");
```

```
        listBillingRecords(route53DomainsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. View prices for domain types.");
        listPrices(route53DomainsClient, domainType);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Get domain suggestions.");
        listDomainSuggestions(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Check domain availability.");
        checkDomainAvailability(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Check domain transferability.");
        checkDomainTransferability(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Request a domain registration.");
        String opId = requestDomainRegistration(route53DomainsClient,
domainSuggestion, phoneNumber, email, firstName,
                lastName, city);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Get operation details.");
        getOperationalDetail(route53DomainsClient, opId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get domain details.");
        System.out.println("Note: You must have a registered domain to get
details.");
        System.out.println("Otherwise, an exception is thrown that states ");
        System.out.println("Domain xxxxxxx not found in xxxxxxx account.");
        getDomainDetails(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }
```

```
   public static void getDomainDetails(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
       try {
           GetDomainDetailRequest detailRequest =
GetDomainDetailRequest.builder()
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .build();

           GetDomainDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest);
           System.out.println("The contact first name is " +
response.registrantContact().firstName());
           System.out.println("The contact last name is " +
response.registrantContact().lastName());
           System.out.println("The contact org name is " +
response.registrantContact().organizationName());

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static void getOperationalDetail(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String operationId) {
       try {
           GetOperationDetailRequest detailRequest =
GetOperationDetailRequest.builder()
                   .operationId(operationId)
                   .build();

           GetOperationDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest);
           System.out.println("Operation detail message is " +
response.message());

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

```
   public static String requestDomainRegistration(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient,
           String domainSuggestion,
           String phoneNumber,
           String email,
           String firstName,
           String lastName,
           String city) {

       try {
           ContactDetail contactDetail = ContactDetail.builder()
                   .contactType(ContactType.COMPANY)
                   .state("LA")
                   .countryCode(CountryCode.IN)
                   .email(email)
                   .firstName(firstName)
                   .lastName(lastName)
                   .city(city)
                   .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                   .organizationName("My Org")
                   .addressLine1("My Address")
                   .zipCode("123 123")
                   .build();

           RegisterDomainRequest domainRequest = RegisterDomainRequest.builder()
                   .adminContact(contactDetail)
                   .registrantContact(contactDetail)
                   .techContact(contactDetail)
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .autoRenew(true)
                   .durationInYears(1)
                   .build();

           RegisterDomainResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest);
           System.out.println("Registration requested. Operation Id: " +
response.operationId());
           return response.operationId();

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
```

```
    }

    public static void checkDomainTransferability(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest transferabilityRequest =
CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainTransferabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest);
            System.out.println("Transferability: " +
response.transferability().transferable().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkDomainAvailability(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest availabilityRequest =
CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainAvailabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest);
            System.out.println(domainSuggestion + " is " +
response.availability().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listDomainSuggestions(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
```

```
            GetDomainSuggestionsRequest suggestionsRequest =
GetDomainSuggestionsRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .suggestionCount(5)
                    .onlyAvailable(true)
                    .build();

            GetDomainSuggestionsResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest);
            List<DomainSuggestion> suggestions = response.suggestionsList();
            for (DomainSuggestion suggestion : suggestions) {
                System.out.println("Suggestion Name: " +
suggestion.domainName());
                System.out.println("Availability: " + suggestion.availability());
                System.out.println(" ");
            }

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient,
String domainType) {
        try {
            ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                    .tld(domainType)
                    .build();

            ListPricesIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listPricesPaginator(pricesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.prices().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.name() +
                            " Registration: " +
content.registrationPrice().price() + " "
                            + content.registrationPrice().currency() +
                            " Renewal: " + content.renewalPrice().price() + " " +
content.renewalPrice().currency()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listBillingRecords(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient) {
        try {
            Date currentDate = new Date();
            LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
            ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
            LocalDateTime localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
            Instant myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset);
            Instant myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

            ViewBillingRequest viewBillingRequest = ViewBillingRequest.builder()
                    .start(myStartTime)
                    .end(myEndTime)
                    .build();

            ViewBillingIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.viewBillingPaginator(viewBillingRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.billingRecords().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Bill Date:: " +
content.billDate() +
                            " Operation: " + content.operationAsString() +
                            " Price: " + content.price()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listOperations(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient)
{
        try {
            Date currentDate = new Date();
            LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
            ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
            localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
            Instant myTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);
```

```
            ListOperationsRequest operationsRequest =
 ListOperationsRequest.builder()
                    .submittedSince(myTime)
                    .build();

            ListOperationsIterable listRes =
 route53DomainsClient.listOperationsPaginator(operationsRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.operations().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Operation Id: " +
 content.operationId() +
                            " Status: " + content.statusAsString() +
                            " Date: " + content.submittedDate()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listDomains(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient) {
        try {
            ListDomainsIterable listRes =
 route53DomainsClient.listDomainsPaginator();
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.domains().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println("The domain name is "
 + content.domainName()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail

- GetDomainSuggestions
- GetOperationDetail
- ListDomains
- ListOperations
- ListPrices
- RegisterDomain
- ViewBilling

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This Kotlin code example performs the following operations:

1. List current domains.
2. List operations in the past year.
3. View billing for the account in the past year.
4. View prices for domain types.
5. Get domain suggestions.
6. Check domain availability.
7. Check domain transferability.
8. Request a domain registration.
9. Get operation details.
10. Optionally, get domain details.
 */
```

```
val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <domainType> <phoneNumber> <email> <domainSuggestion> <firstName>
 <lastName> <city>
        Where:
           domainType - The domain type (for example, com).
           phoneNumber - The phone number to use (for example, +1.2065550100)

           email - The email address to use.
           domainSuggestion - The domain suggestion (for example,
 findmy.example).
           firstName - The first name to use to register a domain.
           lastName -  The last name to use to register a domain.
           city - The city to use to register a domain.
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val domainType = args[0]
    val phoneNumber = args[1]
    val email = args[2]
    val domainSuggestion = args[3]
    val firstName = args[4]
    val lastName = args[5]
    val city = args[6]

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. List current domains.")
    listDomains()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List operations in the past year.")
```

```
    listOperations()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. View billing for the account in the past year.")
    listBillingRecords()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. View prices for domain types.")
    listAllPrices(domainType)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Get domain suggestions.")
    listDomainSuggestions(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Check domain availability.")
    checkDomainAvailability(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Check domain transferability.")
    checkDomainTransferability(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Request a domain registration.")
    val opId = requestDomainRegistration(domainSuggestion, phoneNumber, email,
firstName, lastName, city)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Get operation details.")
    getOperationalDetail(opId)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Get domain details.")
    println("Note: You must have a registered domain to get details.")
    println("Otherwise an exception is thrown that states ")
    println("Domain xxxxxxx not found in xxxxxxx account.")
```

```
    getDomainDetails(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun getDomainDetails(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetDomainDetailRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest)
        println("The contact first name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.firstName}")
        println("The contact last name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.lastName}")
        println("The contact org name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.organizationName}")
    }
}

suspend fun getOperationalDetail(opId: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetOperationDetailRequest {
            operationId = opId
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest)
        println("Operation detail message is ${response.message}")
    }
}

suspend fun requestDomainRegistration(
    domainSuggestion: String?,
    phoneNumberVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
    firstNameVal: String?,
    lastNameVal: String?,
    cityVal: String?,
): String? {
    val contactDetail =
        ContactDetail {
            contactType = ContactType.Company
```

```
            state = "LA"
            countryCode = CountryCode.In
            email = emailVal
            firstName = firstNameVal
            lastName = lastNameVal
            city = cityVal
            phoneNumber = phoneNumberVal
            organizationName = "My Org"
            addressLine1 = "My Address"
            zipCode = "123 123"
        }

    val domainRequest =
        RegisterDomainRequest {
            adminContact = contactDetail
            registrantContact = contactDetail
            techContact = contactDetail
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            autoRenew = true
            durationInYears = 1
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest)
        println("Registration requested. Operation Id: ${response.operationId}")
        return response.operationId
    }
}

suspend fun checkDomainTransferability(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val transferabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest)
        println("Transferability: ${response.transferability?.transferable}")
    }
}

suspend fun checkDomainAvailability(domainSuggestion: String) {
```

```
    val availabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest)
        println("$domainSuggestion is ${response.availability}")
    }
}

suspend fun listDomainSuggestions(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val suggestionsRequest =
        GetDomainSuggestionsRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            suggestionCount = 5
            onlyAvailable = true
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest)
        response.suggestionsList?.forEach { suggestion ->
            println("Suggestion Name: ${suggestion.domainName}")
            println("Availability: ${suggestion.availability}")
            println(" ")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listAllPrices(domainType: String?) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            tld = domainType
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
```

```
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listBillingRecords() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    val localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    val localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val timeStart: Instant? = myStartTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val timeEnd: Instant? = myEndTime?.let { Instant(it) }

    val viewBillingRequest =
        ViewBillingRequest {
            start = timeStart
            end = timeEnd
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .viewBillingPaginated(viewBillingRequest)
            .transform { it.billingRecords?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { billing ->
                println("Bill Date: ${billing.billDate}")
                println("Operation: ${billing.operation}")
                println("Price: ${billing.price}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listOperations() {
    val currentDate = Date()
```

```
    var localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myTime: java.time.Instant? = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val time2: Instant? = myTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val operationsRequest =
        ListOperationsRequest {
            submittedSince = time2
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listOperationsPaginated(operationsRequest)
            .transform { it.operations?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("Operation Id: ${content.operationId}")
                println("Status: ${content.status}")
                println("Date: ${content.submittedDate}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listDomains() {
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listDomainsPaginated(ListDomainsRequest {})
            .transform { it.domains?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("The domain name is ${content.domainName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail
  - GetDomainSuggestions

- GetOperationDetail
- ListDomains
- ListOperations
- ListPrices
- RegisterDomain
- ViewBilling

Actions for Route 53 domain registration using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Route 53 domain registration actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Route 53 domain registration API Reference.

Examples

- Use CheckDomainAvailability with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CheckDomainTransferability with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetDomainDetail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetDomainSuggestions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetOperationDetail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDomains with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListOperations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPrices with an AWS SDK
- Use RegisterDomain with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ViewBilling with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CheckDomainAvailability` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CheckDomainAvailability`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Check the availability of a domain name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="domain">The domain to check for availability.</param>
/// <returns>An availability result string.</returns>
public async Task<string> CheckDomainAvailability(string domain)
{
    var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainAvailabilityAsync(
        new CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest
        {
            DomainName = domain
        }
    );
    return result.Availability.Value;
}
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To determine whether you can register a domain name with Route 53

The following `check-domain-availability` command returns information about whether the domain name `example.com` is available to be registered using Route 53.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains check-domain-availability \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --domain-name example.com
```

Output:

```
{
    "Availability": "UNAVAILABLE"
}
```

Route 53 supports a large number of top-level domains (TLDs), such as `.com` and `.jp`, but we don't support all available TLDs. If you check the availability of a domain and Route 53 doesn't support the TLD, `check-domain-availability` returns the following message.

```
An error occurred (UnsupportedTLD) when calling the CheckDomainAvailability
 operation: <top-level domain> tld is not supported.
```

For a list of the TLDs that you can use when registering a domain with Route 53, see Domains That You Can Register with Amazon Route 53 in the *Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide*. For more information about registering domains with Amazon Route 53, see Registering a New Domain in the *Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void checkDomainAvailability(Route53DomainsClient
 route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
```

```
        try {
            CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest availabilityRequest =
 CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainAvailabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest);
            System.out.println(domainSuggestion + " is " +
 response.availability().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkDomainAvailability(domainSuggestion: String) {
    val availabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest)
        println("$domainSuggestion is ${response.availability}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CheckDomainTransferability` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CheckDomainTransferability`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Check the transferability of a domain name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="domain">The domain to check for transferability.</param>
/// <returns>A transferability result string.</returns>
public async Task<string> CheckDomainTransferability(string domain)
{
    var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainTransferabilityAsync(
        new CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest
        {
            DomainName = domain
        }
    );
    return result.Transferability.Transferable.Value;
}
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To determine whether a domain can be transferred to Route 53

The following `check-domain-transferability` command returns information about whether you can transfer the domain name `example.com` to Route 53.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains check-domain-transferability \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --domain-name example.com
```

Output:

```
{
    "Transferability": {
        "Transferable": "UNTRANSFERABLE"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Transferring Registration for a Domain to Amazon Route 53 in the *Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void checkDomainTransferability(Route53DomainsClient
 route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest transferabilityRequest =
 CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainTransferabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest);
            System.out.println("Transferability: " +
 response.transferability().transferable().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkDomainTransferability(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val transferabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest)
```

```
        println("Transferability: ${response.transferability?.transferable}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetDomainDetail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDomainDetail`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string with detail information about the domain.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDomainDetail(string domainName)
    {
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainDetailAsync(
                new GetDomainDetailRequest()
                {
                    DomainName = domainName
                });
            var details = $"\tDomain {domainName}:\n" +
```

```
                            $"\tCreated on
 {result.CreationDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                            $"\tAdmin contact is {result.AdminContact.Email}.\n" +
                            $"\tAuto-renew is {result.AutoRenew}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            return $"Domain {domainName} was not found in your account.";
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get detailed information about a specified domain

The following `get-domain-detail` command displays detailed information about the specified domain.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains get-domain-detail \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --domain-name example.com
```

Output:

```
{
    "DomainName": "example.com",
    "Nameservers": [
        {
            "Name": "ns-2048.awsdns-64.com",
            "GlueIps": []
        },
        {
```

```
            "Name": "ns-2049.awsdns-65.net",
            "GlueIps": []
        },
        {
            "Name": "ns-2050.awsdns-66.org",
            "GlueIps": []
        },
        {
            "Name": "ns-2051.awsdns-67.co.uk",
            "GlueIps": []
        }
    ],
    "AutoRenew": true,
    "AdminContact": {
        "FirstName": "Saanvi",
        "LastName": "Sarkar",
        "ContactType": "COMPANY",
        "OrganizationName": "Example",
        "AddressLine1": "123 Main Street",
        "City": "Anytown",
        "State": "WA",
        "CountryCode": "US",
        "ZipCode": "98101",
        "PhoneNumber": "+1.8005551212",
        "Email": "ssarkar@example.com",
        "ExtraParams": []
    },
    "RegistrantContact": {
        "FirstName": "Alejandro",
        "LastName": "Rosalez",
        "ContactType": "COMPANY",
        "OrganizationName": "Example",
        "AddressLine1": "123 Main Street",
        "City": "Anytown",
        "State": "WA",
        "CountryCode": "US",
        "ZipCode": "98101",
        "PhoneNumber": "+1.8005551212",
        "Email": "arosalez@example.com",
        "ExtraParams": []
    },
    "TechContact": {
        "FirstName": "Wang",
        "LastName": "Xiulan",
```

```
        "ContactType": "COMPANY",
        "OrganizationName": "Example",
        "AddressLine1": "123 Main Street",
        "City": "Anytown",
        "State": "WA",
        "CountryCode": "US",
        "ZipCode": "98101",
        "PhoneNumber": "+1.8005551212",
        "Email": "wxiulan@example.com",
        "ExtraParams": []
    },
    "AdminPrivacy": true,
    "RegistrantPrivacy": true,
    "TechPrivacy": true,
    "RegistrarName": "Amazon Registrar, Inc.",
    "WhoIsServer": "whois.registrar.amazon",
    "RegistrarUrl": "http://registrar.amazon.com",
    "AbuseContactEmail": "abuse@registrar.amazon.com",
    "AbuseContactPhone": "+1.2062661000",
    "CreationDate": 1444934889.601,
    "ExpirationDate": 1602787689.0,
    "StatusList": [
        "clientTransferProhibited"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void getDomainDetails(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
```

```
            GetDomainDetailRequest detailRequest =
 GetDomainDetailRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            GetDomainDetailResponse response =
 route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest);
            System.out.println("The contact first name is " +
 response.registrantContact().firstName());
            System.out.println("The contact last name is " +
 response.registrantContact().lastName());
            System.out.println("The contact org name is " +
 response.registrantContact().organizationName());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getDomainDetails(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetDomainDetailRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest)
```

```
        println("The contact first name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.firstName}")
        println("The contact last name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.lastName}")
        println("The contact org name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.organizationName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetDomainSuggestions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDomainSuggestions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of suggestions for a given domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for suggestions.</param>
    /// <param name="onlyAvailable">If true, only returns available domains.</
param>
    /// <param name="suggestionCount">The number of suggestions to return.
 Defaults to the max of 50.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A collection of domain suggestions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSuggestion>> GetDomainSuggestions(string domain,
 bool onlyAvailable, int suggestionCount = 50)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainSuggestionsAsync(
            new GetDomainSuggestionsRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain,
                OnlyAvailable = onlyAvailable,
                SuggestionCount = suggestionCount
            }
        );
        return result.SuggestionsList;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of suggested domain names

The following `get-domain-suggestions` command displays a list of suggested domain names based on the domain name `example.com`. The response includes only domain names that are available. This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains get-domain-suggestions \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --domain-name example.com \
    --suggestion-count 10 \
    --only-available
```

Output:

```
{
    "SuggestionsList": [
        {
            "DomainName": "egzaampal.com",
```

```
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "examplelaw.com",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "examplehouse.net",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "homeexample.net",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "examplelist.com",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
       },
        {
            "DomainName": "examplenews.net",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "officeexample.com",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "exampleworld.com",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "exampleart.com",
            "Availability": "AVAILABLE"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listDomainSuggestions(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
       try {
           GetDomainSuggestionsRequest suggestionsRequest =
GetDomainSuggestionsRequest.builder()
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .suggestionCount(5)
                   .onlyAvailable(true)
                   .build();

           GetDomainSuggestionsResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest);
           List<DomainSuggestion> suggestions = response.suggestionsList();
           for (DomainSuggestion suggestion : suggestions) {
               System.out.println("Suggestion Name: " +
suggestion.domainName());
               System.out.println("Availability: " + suggestion.availability());
               System.out.println(" ");
           }

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listDomainSuggestions(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val suggestionsRequest =
        GetDomainSuggestionsRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            suggestionCount = 5
            onlyAvailable = true
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest)
        response.suggestionsList?.forEach { suggestion ->
            println("Suggestion Name: ${suggestion.domainName}")
            println("Availability: ${suggestion.availability}")
            println(" ")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `GetOperationDetail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetOperationDetail`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain action operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The operational Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A string describing the operational details.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetOperationDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        if (operationId == null)
            return "Unable to get operational details because ID is null.";
        try
        {
            var operationDetails =
                await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetOperationDetailAsync(
                    new GetOperationDetailRequest
                    {
                        OperationId = operationId
                    }
                );

            var details = $"\tOperation {operationId}:\n" +
                          $"\tFor domain {operationDetails.DomainName} on
{operationDetails.SubmittedDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                          $"\tMessage is {operationDetails.Message}.\n" +
                          $"\tStatus is {operationDetails.Status}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (AmazonRoute53DomainsException ex)
        {
            return $"Unable to get operation details. Here's why: {ex.Message}.";
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the current status of an operation

Some domain registration operations operate asynchronously and return a response before they finish. These operations return an operation ID that you can use to get the current status. The following `get-operation-detail` command returns the status of the specified operation.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains get-operation-detail \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --operation-id edbd8d63-7fe7-4343-9bc5-54033example
```

Output:

```
{
    "OperationId": "edbd8d63-7fe7-4343-9bc5-54033example",
    "Status": "SUCCESSFUL",
    "DomainName": "example.com",
    "Type": "DOMAIN_LOCK",
    "SubmittedDate": 1573749367.864
}
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void getOperationalDetail(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String operationId) {
       try {
           GetOperationDetailRequest detailRequest =
GetOperationDetailRequest.builder()
                   .operationId(operationId)
                   .build();

           GetOperationDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest);
           System.out.println("Operation detail message is " +
response.message());

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getOperationalDetail(opId: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetOperationDetailRequest {
            operationId = opId
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest)
        println("Operation detail message is ${response.message}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListDomains` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDomains`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the domains for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSummary>> ListDomains()
```

```
    {
        var results = new List<DomainSummary>();
        var paginateDomains = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListDomains(
            new ListDomainsRequest());

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var domain in paginateDomains.Domains)
        {
            results.Add(domain);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the domains that are registered with the current AWS account

The following `list-domains` command lists summary information about the domains that are registered with the current AWS account.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains list-domains
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "Domains": [
        {
            "DomainName": "example.com",
            "AutoRenew": true,
            "TransferLock": true,
            "Expiry": 1602712345.0
        },
        {
```

```
            "DomainName": "example.net",
            "AutoRenew": true,
            "TransferLock": true,
            "Expiry": 1602723456.0
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "example.org",
            "AutoRenew": true,
            "TransferLock": true,
            "Expiry": 1602734567.0
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listDomains(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient) {
        try {
            ListDomainsIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listDomainsPaginator();
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.domains().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println("The domain name is "
+ content.domainName()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listDomains() {
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listDomainsPaginated(ListDomainsRequest {})
            .transform { it.domains?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("The domain name is ${content.domainName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListOperations` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListOperations`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List operations for the account that are submitted after a specified
date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of operation summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OperationSummary>> ListOperations(DateTime
submittedSince)
    {
        var results = new List<OperationSummary>();
        var paginateOperations = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListOperations(
            new ListOperationsRequest()
            {
                SubmittedSince = submittedSince
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var operations in paginateOperations.Operations)
        {
            results.Add(operations);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the status of operations that return an operation ID

Some domain registration operations run asynchronously and return a response before they finish. These operations return an operation ID that you can use to get the current status. The following `list-operations` command lists summary information, including the status, about the current domain-registration operations.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains list-operations
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "Operations": [
        {
            "OperationId": "aab9822f-1da0-4bf3-8a15-fd4e0example",
            "Status": "SUCCESSFUL",
            "Type": "DOMAIN_LOCK",
            "SubmittedDate": 1455321739.986
        },
        {
            "OperationId": "c24379ed-76be-42f8-bdad-9379bexample",
            "Status": "SUCCESSFUL",
            "Type": "UPDATE_NAMESERVER",
            "SubmittedDate": 1468960475.109
        },
        {
            "OperationId": "f47e1297-ef9e-4c2b-ae1e-a5fcbexample",
            "Status": "SUCCESSFUL",
            "Type": "RENEW_DOMAIN",
            "SubmittedDate": 1473561835.943
        },
        {
            "OperationId": "75584f23-b15f-459e-aed7-dc6f5example",
            "Status": "SUCCESSFUL",
            "Type": "UPDATE_DOMAIN_CONTACT",
            "SubmittedDate": 1547501003.41
        }
    ]
}
```

The output includes all the operations that return an operation ID and that you have performed on all the domains that you have ever registered using the current AWS account. If you want to get only the operations that you submitted after a specified date, you can include the `submitted-since` parameter and specify a date in Unix format and Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). The following command gets the status of all operations that were submitted after 12:00 am UTC on January 1, 2020.

```
aws route53domains list-operations \
    --submitted-since 1577836800
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listOperations(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient)
{
       try {
           Date currentDate = new Date();
           LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
           ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
           localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
           Instant myTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

           ListOperationsRequest operationsRequest =
ListOperationsRequest.builder()
                   .submittedSince(myTime)
                   .build();

           ListOperationsIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listOperationsPaginator(operationsRequest);
           listRes.stream()
```

```
                    .flatMap(r -> r.operations().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Operation Id: " +
 content.operationId() +
                            " Status: " + content.statusAsString() +
                            " Date: " + content.submittedDate()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listOperations() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    var localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myTime: java.time.Instant? = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val time2: Instant? = myTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val operationsRequest =
        ListOperationsRequest {
            submittedSince = time2
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listOperationsPaginated(operationsRequest)
```

```
            .transform { it.operations?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("Operation Id: ${content.operationId}")
                println("Status: ${content.status}")
                println("Date: ${content.submittedDate}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListPrices` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListPrices`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for domain type operations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domainTypes">Domain types to include in the results.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of domain prices.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainPrice>> ListPrices(List<string> domainTypes)
    {
        var results = new List<DomainPrice>();
```

```
        var paginatePrices = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListPrices(new
ListPricesRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var prices in paginatePrices.Prices)
        {
            results.Add(prices);
        }
        return results.Where(p => domainTypes.Contains(p.Name)).ToList();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient,
String domainType) {
        try {
            ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                    .tld(domainType)
                    .build();

            ListPricesIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listPricesPaginator(pricesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.prices().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.name() +
                            " Registration: " +
content.registrationPrice().price() + " "
                            + content.registrationPrice().currency() +
                            " Renewal: " + content.renewalPrice().price() + " " +
content.renewalPrice().currency()));
```

```
        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllPrices(domainType: String?) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            tld = domainType
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `RegisterDomain` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterDomain`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate a domain registration request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contact">Contact details.</param>
    /// <param name="domainName">The domain name to register.</param>
    /// <param name="autoRenew">True if the domain should automatically renew.</
param>
    /// <param name="duration">The duration in years for the domain
 registration.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> RegisterDomain(string domainName, bool autoRenew,
 int duration, ContactDetail contact)
    {
        // This example uses the same contact information for admin, registrant,
 and tech contacts.
        try
        {
```

```
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.RegisterDomainAsync(
                new RegisterDomainRequest()
                {
                    AdminContact = contact,
                    RegistrantContact = contact,
                    TechContact = contact,
                    DomainName = domainName,
                    AutoRenew = autoRenew,
                    DurationInYears = duration,
                    PrivacyProtectAdminContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectTechContact = false
                }
            );
            return result.OperationId;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            _logger.LogInformation($"Unable to request registration for domain
{domainName}");
            return null;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register a domain

The following `register-domain` command registers a domain, retrieving all parameter values from a JSON-formatted file.

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains register-domain \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --cli-input-json file://register-domain.json
```

Contents of `register-domain.json`:

```
{
    "DomainName": "example.com",
    "DurationInYears": 1,
    "AutoRenew": true,
    "AdminContact": {
        "FirstName": "Martha",
        "LastName": "Rivera",
        "ContactType": "PERSON",
        "OrganizationName": "Example",
        "AddressLine1": "1 Main Street",
        "City": "Anytown",
        "State": "WA",
        "CountryCode": "US",
        "ZipCode": "98101",
        "PhoneNumber": "+1.8005551212",
        "Email": "mrivera@example.com"
    },
    "RegistrantContact": {
        "FirstName": "Li",
        "LastName": "Juan",
        "ContactType": "PERSON",
        "OrganizationName": "Example",
        "AddressLine1": "1 Main Street",
        "City": "Anytown",
        "State": "WA",
        "CountryCode": "US",
        "ZipCode": "98101",
        "PhoneNumber": "+1.8005551212",
        "Email": "ljuan@example.com"
    },
    "TechContact": {
        "FirstName": "Mateo",
        "LastName": "Jackson",
        "ContactType": "PERSON",
        "OrganizationName": "Example",
        "AddressLine1": "1 Main Street",
        "City": "Anytown",
        "State": "WA",
        "CountryCode": "US",
        "ZipCode": "98101",
        "PhoneNumber": "+1.8005551212",
        "Email": "mjackson@example.com"
```

```
    },
    "PrivacyProtectAdminContact": true,
    "PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact": true,
    "PrivacyProtectTechContact": true
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "OperationId": "b114c44a-9330-47d1-a6e8-a0b11example"
}
```

To confirm that the operation succeeded, you can run `get-operation-detail`. For more information, see get-operation-detail .

For more information, see Registering a New Domain in the *Amazon Route 53 Developer Guide*.

For information about which top-level domains (TLDs) require values for `ExtraParams` and what the valid values are, see ExtraParam in the *Amazon Route 53 API Reference*.

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String requestDomainRegistration(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient,
           String domainSuggestion,
           String phoneNumber,
           String email,
           String firstName,
           String lastName,
```

```
            String city) {

        try {
            ContactDetail contactDetail = ContactDetail.builder()
                    .contactType(ContactType.COMPANY)
                    .state("LA")
                    .countryCode(CountryCode.IN)
                    .email(email)
                    .firstName(firstName)
                    .lastName(lastName)
                    .city(city)
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .organizationName("My Org")
                    .addressLine1("My Address")
                    .zipCode("123 123")
                    .build();

            RegisterDomainRequest domainRequest = RegisterDomainRequest.builder()
                    .adminContact(contactDetail)
                    .registrantContact(contactDetail)
                    .techContact(contactDetail)
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .autoRenew(true)
                    .durationInYears(1)
                    .build();

            RegisterDomainResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest);
            System.out.println("Registration requested. Operation Id: " +
response.operationId());
            return response.operationId();

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun requestDomainRegistration(
    domainSuggestion: String?,
    phoneNumberVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
    firstNameVal: String?,
    lastNameVal: String?,
    cityVal: String?,
): String? {
    val contactDetail =
        ContactDetail {
            contactType = ContactType.Company
            state = "LA"
            countryCode = CountryCode.In
            email = emailVal
            firstName = firstNameVal
            lastName = lastNameVal
            city = cityVal
            phoneNumber = phoneNumberVal
            organizationName = "My Org"
            addressLine1 = "My Address"
            zipCode = "123 123"
        }

    val domainRequest =
        RegisterDomainRequest {
            adminContact = contactDetail
            registrantContact = contactDetail
            techContact = contactDetail
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            autoRenew = true
            durationInYears = 1
        }
```

```
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest)
        println("Registration requested. Operation Id: ${response.operationId}")
        return response.operationId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ViewBilling` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ViewBilling`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// View billing records for the account between a start and end date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startDate">The start date for billing results.</param>
    /// <param name="endDate">The end date for billing results.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BillingRecord>> ViewBilling(DateTime startDate,
 DateTime endDate)
    {
```

```
        var results = new List<BillingRecord>();
        var paginateBilling = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ViewBilling(
            new ViewBillingRequest()
            {
                Start = startDate,
                End = endDate
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var billingRecords in paginateBilling.BillingRecords)
        {
            results.Add(billingRecords);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get billing information for domain registration charges for the current AWS account

The following `view-billing` command returns all the domain-related billing records for the current account for the period from January 1, 2018 (1514764800 in Unix time) and midnight on December 31, 2019 (1577836800 in Unix time).

This command runs only in the `us-east-1` Region. If your default region is set to `us-east-1`, you can omit the `region` parameter.

```
aws route53domains view-billing \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --start-time 1514764800 \
    --end-time 1577836800
```

Output:

```
{
    "BillingRecords": [
        {
```

```
            "DomainName": "example.com",
            "Operation": "RENEW_DOMAIN",
            "InvoiceId": "149962827",
            "BillDate": 1536618063.181,
            "Price": 12.0
        },
        {
            "DomainName": "example.com",
            "Operation": "RENEW_DOMAIN",
            "InvoiceId": "290913289",
            "BillDate": 1568162630.884,
            "Price": 12.0
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see ViewBilling in the *Amazon Route 53 API Reference*.

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listBillingRecords(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient) {
       try {
           Date currentDate = new Date();
           LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
           ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
           LocalDateTime localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
           Instant myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset);
           Instant myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

           ViewBillingRequest viewBillingRequest = ViewBillingRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .start(myStartTime)
                    .end(myEndTime)
                    .build();

            ViewBillingIterable listRes =
 route53DomainsClient.viewBillingPaginator(viewBillingRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.billingRecords().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Bill Date:: " +
 content.billDate() +
                            " Operation: " + content.operationAsString() +
                            " Price: " + content.price()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBillingRecords() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    val localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    val localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val timeStart: Instant? = myStartTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val timeEnd: Instant? = myEndTime?.let { Instant(it) }
```

```
    val viewBillingRequest =
        ViewBillingRequest {
            start = timeStart
            end = timeEnd
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .viewBillingPaginated(viewBillingRequest)
            .transform { it.billingRecords?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { billing ->
                println("Bill Date: ${billing.billDate}")
                println("Operation: ${billing.operation}")
                println("Price: ${billing.price}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Simple Storage Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon S3 User Guide** – More information about Amazon S3.
- **Amazon S3 API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon S3 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.

- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS s3)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_s3")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
```

```
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_s3.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_s3.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/s3/S3Client.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <aws/core/auth/AWSCredentialsProviderChain.h>
using namespace Aws;
using namespace Aws::Auth;

/*
 *  A "Hello S3" starter application which initializes an Amazon Simple Storage
 Service (Amazon S3) client
 *  and lists the Amazon S3 buckets in the selected region.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_s3'
 *
 */
```

```
int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        // You don't normally have to test that you are authenticated. But the
 S3 service permits anonymous requests, thus the s3Client will return "success"
 and 0 buckets even if you are unauthenticated, which can be confusing to a new
 user.
        auto provider =
 Aws::MakeShared<DefaultAWSCredentialsProviderChain>("alloc-tag");
        auto creds = provider->GetAWSCredentials();
        if (creds.IsEmpty()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed authentication" << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);
        auto outcome = s3Client.ListBuckets();

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed with error: " << outcome.GetError() <<
 std::endl;
            result = 1;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Found " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets().size()
                      << " buckets\n";
            for (auto &bucket: outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets()) {
                std::cout << bucket.GetName() << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Storage Service
// (Amazon S3) client and list up to 10 buckets in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 count := 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v buckets for your account.\n", count)
 result, err := s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
```

```
 if err != nil {
  var ae smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &ae) && ae.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
   fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
  } else {
   fmt.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  return
 }
 if len(result.Buckets) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any buckets!")
 } else {
  if count > len(result.Buckets) {
   count = len(result.Buckets)
  }
  for _, bucket := range result.Buckets[:count] {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *bucket.Name)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloS3 {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listBuckets(s3);
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the S3 buckets associated with the provided AWS S3 client.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with the AWS S3 service
     */
    public static void listBuckets(S3Client s3) {
        try {
            ListBucketsResponse response = s3.listBuckets();
            List<Bucket> bucketList = response.buckets();
            bucketList.forEach(bucket -> {
                System.out.println("Bucket Name: " + bucket.name());
            });

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListBuckets,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * List the S3 buckets in your configured AWS account.
 */
export const helloS3 = async () => {
  // When no region or credentials are provided, the SDK will use the
  // region and credentials from the local AWS config.
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    /**
     * @type { import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").Bucket[] }
     */
    const buckets = [];

    for await (const page of paginateListBuckets({ client }, {})) {
      buckets.push(...page.Buckets);
    }
    console.log("Buckets: ");
    console.log(buckets.map((bucket) => bucket.Name).join("\n"));
    return buckets;
  } catch (caught) {
    // ListBuckets does not throw any modeled errors. Any error caught
    // here will be something generic like `AccessDenied`.
    if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
```

```
      // Something besides S3 failed.
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use Aws\S3\S3Client;

$client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
$results = $client->listBuckets();
var_dump($results);
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
```

```
def hello_s3():
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Simple Storage Service
    (Amazon S3) client and list the buckets in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.
    """

    # Create an S3 client.
    s3_client = boto3.client("s3")

    print("Hello, Amazon S3! Let's list your buckets:")

    # Create a paginator for the list_buckets operation.
    paginator = s3_client.get_paginator("list_buckets")

    # Use the paginator to get a list of all buckets.
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        PaginationConfig={
            "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed.
            "StartingToken": None,
        }
    )

    # Iterate through the pages of the response.
    buckets_found = False
    for page in response_iterator:
        if "Buckets" in page and page["Buckets"]:
            buckets_found = True
            for bucket in page["Buckets"]:
                print(f"\t{bucket['Name']}")

    if not buckets_found:
        print("No buckets found!")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_s3()
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# frozen_string_literal: true

# S3Manager is a class responsible for managing S3 operations
# such as listing all S3 buckets in the current AWS account.
class S3Manager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all S3 buckets in the current AWS account.
  def list_buckets
    @logger.info('Here are the buckets in your account:')

    response = @client.list_buckets

    if response.buckets.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any S3 buckets yet.")
    else
      response.buckets.each do |bucket|
        @logger.info("- #{bucket.name}")
      end
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Encountered an error while listing buckets: #{e.message}")
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  s3_client = Aws::S3::Client.new
  manager = S3Manager.new(s3_client)
```

```
  manager.list_buckets
end
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// S3 Hello World Example using the AWS SDK for Rust.
///
/// This example lists the objects in a bucket, uploads an object to that bucket,
/// and then retrieves the object and prints some S3 information about the
 object.
/// This shows a number of S3 features, including how to use built-in paginators
/// for large data sets.
///
/// # Arguments
///
/// * `client` - an S3 client configured appropriately for the environment.
/// * `bucket` - the bucket name that the object will be uploaded to. Must be
 present in the region the `client` is configured to use.
/// * `filename` - a reference to a path that will be read and uploaded to S3.
/// * `key` - the string key that the object will be uploaded as inside the
 bucket.
async fn list_bucket_and_upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    filepath: &Path,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    // List the buckets in this account
    let mut objects = client
        .list_objects_v2()
```

```
        .bucket(bucket)
        .into_paginator()
        .send();

    println!("key\tetag\tlast_modified\tstorage_class");
    while let Some(Ok(object)) = objects.next().await {
        for item in object.contents() {
            println!(
                "{}\t{}\t{}\t{}",
                item.key().unwrap_or_default(),
                item.e_tag().unwrap_or_default(),
                item.last_modified()
                    .map(|lm| format!("{lm}"))
                    .unwrap_or_default(),
                item.storage_class()
                    .map(|sc| format!("{sc}"))
                    .unwrap_or_default()
            );
        }
    }

    // Prepare a ByteStream around the file, and upload the object using that
ByteStream.
    let body = aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(filepath)
        .await
        .map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
                "Failed to create bytestream for {filepath:?} ({err:?})"
            ))
        })?;
    let resp = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .body(body)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "Upload success. Version: {:?}",
        resp.version_id()
            .expect("S3 Object upload missing version ID")
    );
```

```
    // Retrieve the just-uploaded object.
    let resp = client.get_object().bucket(bucket).key(key).send().await?;
    println!("etag: {}", resp.e_tag().unwrap_or("(missing)"));
    println!("version: {}", resp.version_id().unwrap_or("(missing)"));

    Ok(())
}
```

S3ExampleError utilities.

```
/// S3ExampleError provides a From<T: ProvideErrorMetadata> impl to extract
/// client-specific error details. This serves as a consistent backup to handling
/// specific service errors, depending on what is needed by the scenario.
/// It is used throughout the code examples for the AWS SDK for Rust.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct S3ExampleError(String);
impl S3ExampleError {
    pub fn new(value: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(value.into())
    }

    pub fn add_message(self, message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(format!("{}: {}", message.into(), self.0))
    }
}

impl<T: aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata> From<T> for S3ExampleError {
    fn from(value: T) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(format!(
            "{}: {}",
            value
                .code()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("unknown code".into()),
            value
                .message()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("missing reason".into()),
        ))
    }
}
```

```
impl std::error::Error for S3ExampleError {}

impl std::fmt::Display for S3ExampleError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon S3
  - Learn the basics of Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs
    - Use AbortMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CompleteMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CopyObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreatePresignedPost with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration with a CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketEncryption with a CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration with a CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketLifecycle with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration with a CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketReplication with a CLI
    - Use DeleteBucketTagging with a CLI

- Use DeleteBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObjectTagging with a CLI
- Use DeleteObjects with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePublicAccessBlock with a CLI
- Use GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketInventoryConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketLocation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketLogging with a CLI
- Use GetBucketMetricsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketNotification with a CLI
- Use GetBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketPolicyStatus with a CLI
- Use GetBucketReplication with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketRequestPayment with a CLI
- Use GetBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use GetBucketVersioning with a CLI
- Use GetBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectLegalHold with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectLockConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectRetention with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetObjectTagging with a CLI

- Use GetPublicAccessBlock with a CLI
- Use HeadBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use HeadObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations with a CLI
- Use ListBucketInventoryConfigurations with a CLI
- Use ListBuckets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMultipartUploads with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListObjectVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListObjects with a CLI
- Use ListObjectsV2 with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketLogging with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketNotification with a CLI
- Use PutBucketNotificationConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketReplication with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketRequestPayment with a CLI
- Use PutBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use PutBucketVersioning with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectLegalHold with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectLockConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectRetention with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use RestoreObject with an AWS SDK or CLI

    - Use SelectObjectContent with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UploadPart with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UploadPartCopy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs
    - Check if a bucket exists
    - Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK
    - Create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
    - Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
    - A web page that lists Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK
    - Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
    - Delete all objects in a given Amazon S3 bucket using an AWS SDK
    - Delete incomplete multipart uploads to Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
    - Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
    - Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK
    - Detect faces in an image using an AWS SDK
    - Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
    - Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
    - Download S3 'directories' from an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
    - Download all objects in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to a local directory
    - Download a stream of unknown size from an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
    - Get an Amazon S3 object from a Multi-Region Access Point by using an AWS SDK
    - Get an object from an Amazon S3 bucket using an AWS SDK, specifying an If-Modified-Since header
    - Get started with Amazon S3 using the CLI
    - Get started with encryption for Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK
    - Get started with tags for Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK
    - Work with Amazon S3 object lock features using an AWS SDK
    - Make Amazon S3 conditional requests using an AWS SDK
    - Manage access control lists (ACLs) for Amazon S3 buckets using an AWS SDK
    - Manage large Amazon SQS messages using Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK

- Manage versioned Amazon S3 objects in batches with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
- Parse Amazon S3 URIs using an AWS SDK
- Perform a multipart copy of an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Receive and process Amazon S3 event notifications by using an AWS SDK
- Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK
- Send S3 event notifications to Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK
- Track an Amazon S3 object upload or download using an AWS SDK
- Transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda
- Example approaches for unit and integration testing with an AWS SDK
- Recursively upload a local directory to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
- Upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
- Upload a stream of unknown size to an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Use checksums to work with an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity features using an AWS SDK
- Work with Amazon S3 versioned objects using an AWS SDK

- Serverless examples for Amazon S3
  - Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

Basic examples for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Simple Storage Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon S3
- Learn the basics of Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs
  - Use AbortMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CompleteMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CopyObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePresignedPost with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketEncryption with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketLifecycle with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketReplication with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObjectTagging with a CLI
- Use DeleteObjects with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePublicAccessBlock with a CLI
- Use GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketInventoryConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketLocation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketLogging with a CLI
- Use GetBucketMetricsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketNotification with a CLI
- Use GetBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetBucketPolicyStatus with a CLI

- Use GetBucketReplication with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketRequestPayment with a CLI
- Use GetBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use GetBucketVersioning with a CLI
- Use GetBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectLegalHold with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectLockConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectRetention with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectTagging with a CLI
- Use GetPublicAccessBlock with a CLI
- Use HeadBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use HeadObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations with a CLI
- Use ListBucketInventoryConfigurations with a CLI
- Use ListBuckets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMultipartUploads with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListObjectVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListObjects with a CLI
- Use ListObjectsV2 with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketLogging with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketNotification with a CLI

- Use PutBucketNotificationConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use PutBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketReplication with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketRequestPayment with a CLI
- Use PutBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use PutBucketVersioning with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectLegalHold with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectLockConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectRetention with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RestoreObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SelectObjectContent with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadPart with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadPartCopy with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)
```

```
# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS s3)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_s3")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_s3.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_s3.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/s3/S3Client.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <aws/core/auth/AWSCredentialsProviderChain.h>
using namespace Aws;
using namespace Aws::Auth;

/*
 *  A "Hello S3" starter application which initializes an Amazon Simple Storage
 Service (Amazon S3) client
 *  and lists the Amazon S3 buckets in the selected region.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_s3'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        // You don't normally have to test that you are authenticated. But the
 S3 service permits anonymous requests, thus the s3Client will return "success"
 and 0 buckets even if you are unauthenticated, which can be confusing to a new
 user.
        auto provider =
 Aws::MakeShared<DefaultAWSCredentialsProviderChain>("alloc-tag");
        auto creds = provider->GetAWSCredentials();
        if (creds.IsEmpty()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed authentication" << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);
        auto outcome = s3Client.ListBuckets();
```

```
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed with error: " << outcome.GetError() <<
 std::endl;
            result = 1;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Found " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets().size()
                      << " buckets\n";
            for (auto &bucket: outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets()) {
                std::cout << bucket.GetName() << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)
```

```
// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Storage Service
// (Amazon S3) client and list up to 10 buckets in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 count := 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v buckets for your account.\n", count)
 result, err := s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  var ae smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &ae) && ae.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
   fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
  } else {
   fmt.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  return
 }
 if len(result.Buckets) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any buckets!")
 } else {
  if count > len(result.Buckets) {
   count = len(result.Buckets)
  }
  for _, bucket := range result.Buckets[:count] {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *bucket.Name)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloS3 {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listBuckets(s3);
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the S3 buckets associated with the provided AWS S3 client.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with the AWS S3 service
     */
```

```
    public static void listBuckets(S3Client s3) {
        try {
            ListBucketsResponse response = s3.listBuckets();
            List<Bucket> bucketList = response.buckets();
            bucketList.forEach(bucket -> {
                System.out.println("Bucket Name: " + bucket.name());
            });

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListBuckets,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * List the S3 buckets in your configured AWS account.
 */
export const helloS3 = async () => {
  // When no region or credentials are provided, the SDK will use the
  // region and credentials from the local AWS config.
  const client = new S3Client({});
```

```
  try {
    /**
     * @type { import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").Bucket[] }
     */
    const buckets = [];

    for await (const page of paginateListBuckets({ client }, {})) {
      buckets.push(...page.Buckets);
    }
    console.log("Buckets: ");
    console.log(buckets.map((bucket) => bucket.Name).join("\n"));
    return buckets;
  } catch (caught) {
    // ListBuckets does not throw any modeled errors. Any error caught
    // here will be something generic like `AccessDenied`.
    if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      // Something besides S3 failed.
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use Aws\S3\S3Client;

$client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
$results = $client->listBuckets();
var_dump($results);
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_s3():
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Simple Storage Service
    (Amazon S3) client and list the buckets in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.
    """

    # Create an S3 client.
    s3_client = boto3.client("s3")

    print("Hello, Amazon S3! Let's list your buckets:")

    # Create a paginator for the list_buckets operation.
    paginator = s3_client.get_paginator("list_buckets")

    # Use the paginator to get a list of all buckets.
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        PaginationConfig={
            "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed.
            "StartingToken": None,
        }
    )

    # Iterate through the pages of the response.
```

```
    buckets_found = False
    for page in response_iterator:
        if "Buckets" in page and page["Buckets"]:
            buckets_found = True
            for bucket in page["Buckets"]:
                print(f"\t{bucket['Name']}")

    if not buckets_found:
        print("No buckets found!")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_s3()
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# frozen_string_literal: true

# S3Manager is a class responsible for managing S3 operations
# such as listing all S3 buckets in the current AWS account.
class S3Manager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all S3 buckets in the current AWS account.
  def list_buckets
    @logger.info('Here are the buckets in your account:')
```

```
    response = @client.list_buckets

    if response.buckets.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any S3 buckets yet.")
    else
      response.buckets.each do |bucket|
        @logger.info("- #{bucket.name}")
      end
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Encountered an error while listing buckets: #{e.message}")
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  s3_client = Aws::S3::Client.new
  manager = S3Manager.new(s3_client)
  manager.list_buckets
end
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// S3 Hello World Example using the AWS SDK for Rust.
///
/// This example lists the objects in a bucket, uploads an object to that bucket,
/// and then retrieves the object and prints some S3 information about the
 object.
/// This shows a number of S3 features, including how to use built-in paginators
/// for large data sets.
///
```

```
/// # Arguments
///
/// * `client` - an S3 client configured appropriately for the environment.
/// * `bucket` - the bucket name that the object will be uploaded to. Must be
 present in the region the `client` is configured to use.
/// * `filename` - a reference to a path that will be read and uploaded to S3.
/// * `key` - the string key that the object will be uploaded as inside the
 bucket.
async fn list_bucket_and_upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    filepath: &Path,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    // List the buckets in this account
    let mut objects = client
        .list_objects_v2()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .into_paginator()
        .send();

    println!("key\tetag\tlast_modified\tstorage_class");
    while let Some(Ok(object)) = objects.next().await {
        for item in object.contents() {
            println!(
                "{}\t{}\t{}\t{}",
                item.key().unwrap_or_default(),
                item.e_tag().unwrap_or_default(),
                item.last_modified()
                    .map(|lm| format!("{lm}"))
                    .unwrap_or_default(),
                item.storage_class()
                    .map(|sc| format!("{sc}"))
                    .unwrap_or_default()
            );
        }
    }

    // Prepare a ByteStream around the file, and upload the object using that
 ByteStream.
    let body = aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(filepath)
        .await
        .map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
```

```
                "Failed to create bytestream for {filepath:?} ({err:?})"
            ))
        })?;
    let resp = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .body(body)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "Upload success. Version: {:?}",
        resp.version_id()
            .expect("S3 Object upload missing version ID")
    );

    // Retrieve the just-uploaded object.
    let resp = client.get_object().bucket(bucket).key(key).send().await?;
    println!("etag: {}", resp.e_tag().unwrap_or("(missing)"));
    println!("version: {}", resp.version_id().unwrap_or("(missing)"));

    Ok(())
}
```

S3ExampleError utilities.

```
/// S3ExampleError provides a From<T: ProvideErrorMetadata> impl to extract
/// client-specific error details. This serves as a consistent backup to handling
/// specific service errors, depending on what is needed by the scenario.
/// It is used throughout the code examples for the AWS SDK for Rust.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct S3ExampleError(String);
impl S3ExampleError {
    pub fn new(value: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(value.into())
    }

    pub fn add_message(self, message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(format!("{}: {}", message.into(), self.0))
    }
}
```

```
impl<T: aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata> From<T> for S3ExampleError {
    fn from(value: T) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(format!(
            "{}: {}",
            value
                .code()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("unknown code".into()),
            value
                .message()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("missing reason".into()),
        ))
    }
}

impl std::error::Error for S3ExampleError {}

impl std::fmt::Display for S3ExampleError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public class S3_Basics
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create an Amazon S3 client object. The constructor uses the
            // default user installed on the system. To work with Amazon S3
            // features in a different AWS Region, pass the AWS Region as a
            // parameter to the client constructor.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
            string bucketName = string.Empty;
            string filePath = string.Empty;
            string keyName = string.Empty;

            var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) basic");
            Console.WriteLine("procedures. This application will:");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t1. Create a bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t2. Upload an object to the new bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t3. Copy the uploaded object to a folder in the
bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t4. List the items in the new bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t5. Delete all the items in the bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t6. Delete the bucket");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

            // Create a bucket.
            Console.WriteLine($"\n{sepBar}");
            Console.WriteLine("\nCreate a new Amazon S3 bucket.\n");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
```

```
            Console.Write("Please enter a name for the new bucket: ");
            bucketName = Console.ReadLine();

            var success = await S3Bucket.CreateBucketAsync(client, bucketName);
            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created bucket: {bucketName}.
\n");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not create bucket: {bucketName}.\n");
            }

            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
            Console.WriteLine("Upload a file to the new bucket.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

            // Get the local path and filename for the file to upload.
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(filePath))
            {
                Console.Write("Please enter the path and filename of the file to
 upload: ");
                filePath = Console.ReadLine();

                // Confirm that the file exists on the local computer.
                if (!File.Exists(filePath))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find {filePath}. Try again.\n");
                    filePath = string.Empty;
                }
            }

            // Get the file name from the full path.
            keyName = Path.GetFileName(filePath);

            success = await S3Bucket.UploadFileAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
 filePath);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded {keyName} from
 {filePath} to {bucketName}.\n");
            }
```

```
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {keyName}.\n");
            }

            // Set the file path to an empty string to avoid overwriting the
            // file we just uploaded to the bucket.
            filePath = string.Empty;

            // Now get a new location where we can save the file.
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(filePath))
            {
                // First get the path to which the file will be downloaded.
                Console.Write("Please enter the path where the file will be
downloaded: ");
                filePath = Console.ReadLine();

                // Confirm that the file exists on the local computer.
                if (File.Exists($"{filePath}\\{keyName}"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Sorry, the file already exists in that
location.\n");
                    filePath = string.Empty;
                }
            }

            // Download an object from a bucket.
            success = await S3Bucket.DownloadObjectFromBucketAsync(client,
bucketName, keyName, filePath);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully downloaded {keyName}.\n");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Sorry, could not download {keyName}.\n");
            }

            // Copy the object to a different folder in the bucket.
            string folderName = string.Empty;

            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(folderName))
            {
```

```
                Console.Write("Please enter the name of the folder to copy your
object to: ");
                folderName = Console.ReadLine();
            }

            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyName))
            {
                // Get the name to give to the object once uploaded.
                Console.Write("Enter the name of the object to copy: ");
                keyName = Console.ReadLine();
            }

            await S3Bucket.CopyObjectInBucketAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
folderName);

            // List the objects in the bucket.
            await S3Bucket.ListBucketContentsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Delete the contents of the bucket.
            await S3Bucket.DeleteBucketContentsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Deleting the bucket too quickly after deleting its contents will
            // cause an error that the bucket isn't empty. So...
            Console.WriteLine("Press <Enter> when you are ready to delete the
bucket.");
            _ = Console.ReadLine();

            // Delete the bucket.
            await S3Bucket.DeleteBucketAsync(client, bucketName);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2

- PutObject

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function s3_getting_started
#
# This function creates, copies, and deletes S3 buckets and objects.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
##############################################################################
function s3_getting_started() {
  {
    if [ "$BUCKET_OPERATIONS_SOURCED" != "True" ]; then
      cd bucket-lifecycle-operations || exit

      source ./bucket_operations.sh
      cd ..
    fi
  }

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
    echo "A unique bucket will be created by appending a Universally Unique
 Identifier to a bucket name prefix."
    echo -n "Enter a prefix for the S3 bucket that will be used in this demo: "
    get_input
    bucket_name_prefix=$get_input_result
  local bucket_name
  bucket_name=$(generate_random_name "$bucket_name_prefix")
```

```
  local region_code
  region_code=$(aws configure get region)

  if create_bucket -b "$bucket_name" -r "$region_code"; then
    echo "Created demo bucket named $bucket_name"
  else
    errecho "The bucket failed to create. This demo will exit."
    return 1
  fi

  local file_name
  while [ -z "$file_name" ]; do
    echo -n "Enter a file you want to upload to your bucket: "
    get_input
    file_name=$get_input_result

    if [ ! -f "$file_name" ]; then
      echo "Could not find file $file_name. Are you sure it exists?"
      file_name=""
    fi
  done

  local key
  key="$(basename "$file_name")"

  local result=0
  if copy_file_to_bucket "$bucket_name" "$file_name" "$key"; then
    echo "Uploaded file $file_name into bucket $bucket_name with key $key."
  else
    result=1
  fi

  local destination_file
  destination_file="$file_name.download"
  if yes_no_input "Would you like to download $key to the file $destination_file?
(y/n) "; then
    if download_object_from_bucket "$bucket_name" "$destination_file" "$key";
then
      echo "Downloaded $key in the bucket $bucket_name to the file
$destination_file."
    else
      result=1
    fi
```

```
  fi

  if yes_no_input "Would you like to copy $key a new object key in your bucket?
 (y/n) "; then
    local to_key
    to_key="demo/$key"
    if copy_item_in_bucket "$bucket_name" "$key" "$to_key"; then
      echo "Copied $key in the bucket $bucket_name to the  $to_key."
    else
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  local bucket_items
  bucket_items=$(list_items_in_bucket "$bucket_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    result=1
  fi

  echo "Your bucket contains the following items."
  echo -e "Name\t\tSize"
  echo "$bucket_items"

  if yes_no_input "Delete the bucket, $bucket_name, as well as the objects in it?
 (y/n) "; then
    bucket_items=$(echo "$bucket_items" | cut -f 1)

    if delete_items_in_bucket "$bucket_name" "$bucket_items"; then
      echo "The following items were deleted from the bucket $bucket_name"
      echo "$bucket_items"
    else
      result=1
    fi

    if delete_bucket "$bucket_name"; then
      echo "Deleted the bucket $bucket_name"
    else
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  return $result
```

```
}
```

The Amazon S3 functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function create-bucket
#
# This function creates the specified bucket in the specified AWS Region, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -b bucket_name  -- The name of the bucket to create.
#       -r region_code  -- The code for an AWS Region in which to
#                          create the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       The URL of the bucket that was created.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function create_bucket() {
  local bucket_name region_code response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function create_bucket"
    echo "Creates an Amazon S3 bucket. You must supply a bucket name:"
    echo "  -b bucket_name    The name of the bucket. It must be globally
 unique."
    echo "  [-r region_code]    The code for an AWS Region in which the bucket is
 created."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "b:r:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      b) bucket_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      r) region_code="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
```

```
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$bucket_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a bucket name with the -b parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local bucket_config_arg
  # A location constraint for "us-east-1" returns an error.
  if [[ -n "$region_code" ]] && [[ "$region_code" != "us-east-1" ]]; then
    bucket_config_arg="--create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint=
$region_code"
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Bucket name:   $bucket_name"
  iecho "    Region code:   $region_code"
  iecho ""

  # If the bucket already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
  if (bucket_exists "$bucket_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A bucket with that name already exists. Try again."
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws s3api create-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    $bucket_config_arg)

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-bucket operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
```

```
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function copy_file_to_bucket
#
# This function creates a file in the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file to.
#       $2 - The path and file name of the local file to copy to the bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) to call the copy of the file in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function copy_file_to_bucket() {
  local response bucket_name source_file destination_file_name
  bucket_name=$1
  source_file=$2
  destination_file_name=$3

  response=$(aws s3api put-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --body "$source_file" \
    --key "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function download_object_from_bucket
#
# This function downloads an object in a bucket to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to download the object from.
#       $2 - The path and file name to store the downloaded bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) of the object in the bucket.
```

```
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function download_object_from_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local destination_file_name=$2
  local object_name=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api get-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --key "$object_name" \
    "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function copy_item_in_bucket
#
# This function creates a copy of the specified file in the same bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file from and to.
#       $2 - The key of the source file to copy.
#       $3 - The key of the destination file.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function copy_item_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local source_key=$2
  local destination_key=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api copy-object \
```

```
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --copy-source "$bucket_name/$source_key" \
    --key "$destination_key")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api copy-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function list_items_in_bucket
#
# This function displays a list of the files in the bucket with each file's
# size. The function uses the --query parameter to retrieve only the key and
# size fields from the Contents collection.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       The list of files in text format.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function list_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api list-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'Contents[].{Key: Key, Size: Size}')

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -eq 0 ]]; then
    echo "$response"
  else
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api list-objects operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function delete_items_in_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified list of keys from the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#       $2 - A list of keys in the bucket to delete.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function delete_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local keys=$2
  local response

  # Create the JSON for the items to delete.
  local delete_items
  delete_items="{\"Objects\":["
  for key in $keys; do
    delete_items="$delete_items{\"Key\": \"$key\"},"
  done
  delete_items=${delete_items%?} # Remove the final comma.
  delete_items="$delete_items]}"

  response=$(aws s3api delete-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --delete "$delete_items")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api delete-object operation failed.\n
$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function delete_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified bucket.
```

```
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api delete-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api delete-bucket failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
#include <iostream>
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/s3/S3Client.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/CopyObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/CreateBucketRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/DeleteBucketRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/DeleteObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/GetObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/ListObjectsV2Request.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/PutObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/BucketLocationConstraint.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/CreateBucketConfiguration.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/UUID.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/StringUtils.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/memory/stl/AWSAllocator.h>
#include <fstream>
#include "s3_examples.h"

namespace AwsDoc {
    namespace S3 {

        //! Delete an S3 bucket.
        /*!
          \param bucketName: The S3 bucket's name.
          \param client: An S3 client.
          \return bool: Function succeeded.
        */
        static bool
        deleteBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName, Aws::S3::S3Client &client);

        //! Delete an object in an S3 bucket.
        /*!
```

```
          \param bucketName: The S3 bucket's name.
          \param key: The key for the object in the S3 bucket.
          \param client: An S3 client.
          \return bool: Function succeeded.
         */
        static bool
        deleteObjectFromBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName, const Aws::String
 &key,
                               Aws::S3::S3Client &client);
    }
}


//! Scenario to create, copy, and delete S3 buckets and objects.
/*!
  \param bucketNamePrefix: A prefix for a bucket name.
  \param uploadFilePath: Path to file to upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
  \param saveFilePath: Path for saving a downloaded S3 object.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::S3::S3_GettingStartedScenario(const Aws::String &bucketNamePrefix,
        const Aws::String &uploadFilePath,
                                           const Aws::String &saveFilePath,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {

    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    // Create a unique bucket name which is only temporary and will be deleted.
    // Format: <bucketNamePrefix> + "-" + lowercase UUID.
    Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
    Aws::String bucketName = bucketNamePrefix +
                             Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());

    // 1. Create a bucket.
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketRequest request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);

        if (clientConfig.region != Aws::Region::US_EAST_1) {
            Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketConfiguration createBucketConfiguration;
            createBucketConfiguration.WithLocationConstraint(
```

```
Aws::S3::Model::BucketLocationConstraintMapper::GetBucketLocationConstraintForName(
                            clientConfig.region));
            request.WithCreateBucketConfiguration(createBucketConfiguration);
        }

        Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketOutcome outcome =
client.CreateBucket(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
            std::cerr << "Error: createBucket: " <<
                      err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
            return false;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Created the bucket, '" << bucketName <<
                      "', in the region, '" << clientConfig.region << "'." <<
std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 2. Upload a local file to the bucket.
    Aws::String key = "key-for-test";
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);
        request.SetKey(key);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::FStream> input_data =
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                              uploadFilePath,
                                              std::ios_base::in |
                                              std::ios_base::binary);

        if (!input_data->is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: unable to open file, '" << uploadFilePath <<
"'."
                      << std::endl;
            AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, client);
            return false;
        }

        request.SetBody(input_data);
```

```
        Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome =
                client.PutObject(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: putObject: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, key, client);
            AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, client);
            return false;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Added the object with the key, '" << key
                      << "', to the bucket, '"
                      << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 3. Download the object to a local file.
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);
        request.SetKey(key);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectOutcome outcome =
                client.GetObject(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
            std::cerr << "Error: getObject: " <<
                      err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Downloaded the object with the key, '" << key
                      << "', in the bucket, '"
                      << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;

            Aws::IOStream &ioStream = outcome.GetResultWithOwnership().
                    GetBody();
            Aws::OFStream outStream(saveFilePath,
                                    std::ios_base::out | std::ios_base::binary);
            if (!outStream.is_open()) {
                std::cout << "Error: unable to open file, '" << saveFilePath <<
"'."
                          << std::endl;
```

```
            } else {
                outStream << ioStream.rdbuf();
                std::cout << "Wrote the downloaded object to the file '"
                          << saveFilePath << "'." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    // 4. Copy the object to a different "folder" in the bucket.
    Aws::String copiedToKey = "test-folder/" + key;
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectRequest request;
        request.WithBucket(bucketName)
                .WithKey(copiedToKey)
                .WithCopySource(bucketName + "/" + key);

        Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectOutcome outcome =
                client.CopyObject(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: copyObject: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Copied the object with the key, '" << key
                      << "', to the key, '" << copiedToKey
                      << ", in the bucket, '" << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 5. List objects in the bucket.
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request request;
        request.WithBucket(bucketName);

        Aws::String continuationToken;
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> allObjects;

        do {
            if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
                request.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
            }
            Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Outcome outcome = client.ListObjectsV2(
                    request);

            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
                std::cerr << "Error: ListObjects: " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
            } else {
                Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> objects =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetContents();
                allObjects.insert(allObjects.end(), objects.begin(),
 objects.end());
                continuationToken = outcome.GetResult().GetContinuationToken();
            }
        } while (!continuationToken.empty());

        std::cout << allObjects.size() << " objects in the bucket, '" <<
 bucketName
                  << "':" << std::endl;

        for (Aws::S3::Model::Object &object: allObjects) {
            std::cout << "     '" << object.GetKey() << "'" << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 6. Delete all objects in the bucket.
    // All objects in the bucket must be deleted before deleting the bucket.
    AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, copiedToKey, client);
    AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, key, client);

    // 7. Delete the bucket.
    return AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, client);
}

bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                        const Aws::String &key,
                                        Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(key);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteObject: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
```

```
        std::cout << "Deleted the object with the key, '" << key
                  << "', from the bucket, '"
                  << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

bool
AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName, Aws::S3::S3Client
 &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteBucket(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucket: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Deleted the bucket, '" << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a struct that wraps bucket and object actions used by the scenario.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// ListBuckets lists the buckets in the current account.
```

```
func (basics BucketBasics) ListBuckets(ctx context.Context) ([]types.Bucket,
 error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListBucketsOutput
 var buckets []types.Bucket
 bucketPaginator := s3.NewListBucketsPaginator(basics.S3Client,
 &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 for bucketPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = bucketPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
    fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
    err = apiErr
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
   break
  } else {
   buckets = append(buckets, output.Buckets...)
  }
 }
 return buckets, err
}



// BucketExists checks whether a bucket exists in the current account.
func (basics BucketBasics) BucketExists(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 (bool, error) {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.HeadBucket(ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 })
 exists := true
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NotFound:
    log.Printf("Bucket %v is available.\n", bucketName)
    exists = false
    err = nil
   default:
```

```
    log.Printf("Either you don't have access to bucket %v or another error
 occurred. "+
     "Here's what happened: %v\n", bucketName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("Bucket %v exists and you already own it.", bucketName)
 }

 return exists, err
}



// CreateBucket creates a bucket with the specified name in the specified Region.
func (basics BucketBasics) CreateBucket(ctx context.Context, name string, region
 string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(name),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", name)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", name)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(name)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", name)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// UploadFile reads from a file and puts the data into an object in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 file, err := os.Open(fileName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't open file %v to upload. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
 } else {
  defer file.Close()
  _, err = basics.S3Client.PutObject(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
   Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
   Body:   file,
  })
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
    log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
     "To upload objects larger than 5GB, use the S3 console (160GB max)\n"+
     "or the multipart upload API (5TB max).", bucketName)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't upload file %v to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
     fileName, bucketName, objectKey, err)
   }
  } else {
   err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
   }
  }
 }
 return err
}



// UploadLargeObject uses an upload manager to upload data to an object in a
 bucket.
// The upload manager breaks large data into parts and uploads the parts
 concurrently.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string, largeObject []byte) error {
```

```
 largeBuffer := bytes.NewReader(largeObject)
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 uploader := manager.NewUploader(basics.S3Client, func(u *manager.Uploader) {
  u.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 _, err := uploader.Upload(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
  Body:   largeBuffer,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiErr smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
   log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
    "The maximum size for a multipart upload is 5TB.", bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't upload large object to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
    bucketName, objectKey, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }

 return err
}



// DownloadFile gets an object from a bucket and stores it in a local file.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 result, err := basics.S3Client.GetObject(ctx, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
```

```
    log.Printf("Can't get object %s from bucket %s. No such key exists.\n",
  objectKey, bucketName)
    err = noKey
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't get object %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName,
  objectKey, err)
   }
   return err
  }
  defer result.Body.Close()
  file, err := os.Create(fileName)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create file %v. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
   return err
  }
  defer file.Close()
  body, err := io.ReadAll(result.Body)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't read object body from %v. Here's why: %v\n", objectKey,
  err)
  }
  _, err = file.Write(body)
  return err
}



// DownloadLargeObject uses a download manager to download an object from a
 bucket.
// The download manager gets the data in parts and writes them to a buffer until
 all of
// the data has been downloaded.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string) ([]byte, error) {
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 downloader := manager.NewDownloader(basics.S3Client, func(d *manager.Downloader)
 {
  d.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 buffer := manager.NewWriteAtBuffer([]byte{})
 _, err := downloader.Download(ctx, buffer, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't download large object from %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return buffer.Bytes(), err
}



// CopyToFolder copies an object in a bucket to a subfolder in the same bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) CopyToFolder(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, folderName string) error {
 objectDest := fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", folderName, objectKey)
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CopyObject(ctx, &s3.CopyObjectInput{
  Bucket:     aws.String(bucketName),
  CopySource: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", bucketName, objectKey)),
  Key:        aws.String(objectDest),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var notActive *types.ObjectNotInActiveTierError
  if errors.As(err, &notActive) {
   log.Printf("Couldn't copy object %s from %s because the object isn't in the
 active tier.\n",
    objectKey, bucketName)
   err = notActive
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectDest)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectDest)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// CopyToBucket copies an object in a bucket to another bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) CopyToBucket(ctx context.Context, sourceBucket string,
 destinationBucket string, objectKey string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CopyObject(ctx, &s3.CopyObjectInput{
  Bucket:     aws.String(destinationBucket),
```

```
  CopySource: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", sourceBucket, objectKey)),
  Key:        aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var notActive *types.ObjectNotInActiveTierError
  if errors.As(err, &notActive) {
   log.Printf("Couldn't copy object %s from %s because the object isn't in the
 active tier.\n",
    objectKey, sourceBucket)
   err = notActive
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(destinationBucket), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// ListObjects lists the objects in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListObjects(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 ([]types.Object, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectsV2Output
 input := &s3.ListObjectsV2Input{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 }
 var objects []types.Object
 objectPaginator := s3.NewListObjectsV2Paginator(basics.S3Client, input)
 for objectPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = objectPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
```

```
    objects = append(objects, output.Contents...)
   }
  }
  return objects, err
}



// DeleteObjects deletes a list of objects from a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) DeleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKeys []string) error {
 var objectIds []types.ObjectIdentifier
 for _, key := range objectKeys {
  objectIds = append(objectIds, types.ObjectIdentifier{Key: aws.String(key)})
 }
 output, err := basics.S3Client.DeleteObjects(ctx, &s3.DeleteObjectsInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Delete: &types.Delete{Objects: objectIds, Quiet: aws.Bool(true)},
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Errors) > 0 {
  log.Printf("Error deleting objects from bucket %s.\n", bucketName)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
    err = noBucket
   }
  } else if len(output.Errors) > 0 {
   for _, outErr := range output.Errors {
    log.Printf("%s: %s\n", *outErr.Key, *outErr.Message)
   }
   err = fmt.Errorf("%s", *output.Errors[0].Message)
  }
 } else {
  for _, delObjs := range output.Deleted {
   err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key: delObjs.Key},
 time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to be deleted.\n",
 *delObjs.Key)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", *delObjs.Key)
   }
```

```
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteBucket deletes a bucket. The bucket must be empty or an error is
 returned.
func (basics BucketBasics) DeleteBucket(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.DeleteBucket(ctx, &s3.DeleteBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)})
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
   err = noBucket
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't delete bucket %v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketNotExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to be deleted.\n",
 bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", bucketName)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Run an interactive scenario that shows you how to work with S3 buckets and objects.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
```

```
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/s3/actions"
)

// RunGetStartedScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use
 Amazon
// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to create an S3 bucket and use it to store
 objects.
//
// 1. Create a bucket.
// 2. Upload a local file to the bucket.
// 3. Download an object to a local file.
// 4. Copy an object to a different folder in the bucket.
// 5. List objects in the bucket.
// 6. Delete all objects in the bucket.
// 7. Delete the bucket.
//
// This example creates an Amazon S3 service client from the specified sdkConfig
 so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunGetStartedScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message (y/
n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo.")
```

```
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
bucketBasics := actions.BucketBasics{S3Client: s3Client}

count := 10
log.Printf("Let's list up to %v buckets for your account:", count)
buckets, err := bucketBasics.ListBuckets(ctx)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if len(buckets) == 0 {
 log.Println("You don't have any buckets!")
} else {
 if count > len(buckets) {
  count = len(buckets)
 }
 for _, bucket := range buckets[:count] {
  log.Printf("\t%v\n", *bucket.Name)
 }
}

bucketName := questioner.Ask("Let's create a bucket. Enter a name for your
bucket:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
bucketExists, err := bucketBasics.BucketExists(ctx, bucketName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !bucketExists {
 err = bucketBasics.CreateBucket(ctx, bucketName, sdkConfig.Region)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Println("Bucket created.")
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

fmt.Println("Let's upload a file to your bucket.")
smallFile := questioner.Ask("Enter the path to a file you want to upload:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
const smallKey = "doc-example-key"
err = bucketBasics.UploadFile(ctx, bucketName, smallKey, smallFile)
```

```
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Uploaded %v as %v.\n", smallFile, smallKey)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's download %v to a file.", smallKey)
downloadFileName := questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the downloaded file:",
demotools.NotEmpty{})
err = bucketBasics.DownloadFile(ctx, bucketName, smallKey, downloadFileName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("File %v downloaded.", downloadFileName)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's copy %v to a folder in the same bucket.", smallKey)
folderName := questioner.Ask("Enter a folder name: ", demotools.NotEmpty{})
err = bucketBasics.CopyToFolder(ctx, bucketName, smallKey, folderName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Copied %v to %v/%v.\n", smallKey, folderName, smallKey)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Let's list the objects in your bucket.")
questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
objects, err := bucketBasics.ListObjects(ctx, bucketName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Found %v objects.\n", len(objects))
var objKeys []string
for _, object := range objects {
 objKeys = append(objKeys, *object.Key)
 log.Printf("\t%v\n", *object.Key)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete your bucket and all of its "+
 "contents? (y/n)", "y") {
 log.Println("Deleting objects.")
 err = bucketBasics.DeleteObjects(ctx, bucketName, objKeys)
 if err != nil {
```

```
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleting bucket.")
   err = bucketBasics.DeleteBucket(ctx, bucketName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Deleting downloaded file %v.\n", downloadFileName)
   err = os.Remove(downloadFileName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Println("Okay. Don't forget to delete objects from your bucket to avoid
  charges.")
  }
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

  log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A scenario example.

```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 2. Uploads an object to the bucket.
 * 3. Downloads the object to another local file.
 * 4. Uploads an object using multipart upload.
 * 5. List all objects located in the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 6. Copies the object to another Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 7. Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket using multi copy.
 * 8. Deletes the object from the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 9. Deletes the Amazon S3 bucket.
 */
```

```
public class S3Scenario {

    public static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    static S3Actions s3Actions = new S3Actions();
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3Scenario.class);
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:
               <bucketName> <key> <objectPath> <savePath> <toBucket>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the  S3 bucket.
                key - The unique identifier for the object stored in the S3
 bucket.
                objectPath - The full file path of the object within the S3
 bucket (e.g., "documents/reports/annual_report.pdf").
                savePath - The local file path where the object will be
 downloaded and saved (e.g., "C:/Users/username/Downloads/annual_report.pdf").
                toBucket - The name of the S3 bucket to which the object will be
 copied.
            """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String objectPath = args[2];
        String savePath = args[3];
        String toBucket = args[4];

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) example
 scenario.");
        logger.info("""
            Amazon S3 is a highly scalable and durable object storage
            service provided by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is designed to
 store and retrieve
```

```
            any amount of data, from anywhere on the web, at any time.

            The `S3AsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x provides a
set of methods to
            programmatically interact with the Amazon S3 (Simple Storage Service)
service. This allows
            developers to automate the management and manipulation of S3 buckets
and objects as
            part of their application deployment pipelines. With S3, teams can
focus on building
            and deploying their applications without having to worry about the
underlying storage
            infrastructure required to host and manage large amounts of data.

            This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for
this service.
            Let's get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        try {
            // Run the methods that belong to this scenario.
            runScenario(bucketName, key, objectPath, savePath, toBucket);

        } catch (Throwable rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario(String bucketName, String key, String
objectPath, String savePath, String toBucket) throws Throwable {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an Amazon S3 bucket.");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.createBucketAsync(bucketName);
            future.join();
```

```
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;

        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Upload a local file to the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> future =
s3Actions.uploadLocalFileAsync(bucketName, key, objectPath);
            future.join();
            logger.info("File uploaded successfully to {}/{}", bucketName, key);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);


        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Download the object to another local file.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.getObjectBytesAsync(bucketName, key, savePath);
```

```
            future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully obtained bytes from S3 object and wrote to
file {}", savePath);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Perform a multipart upload.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String multipartKey = "multiPartKey";
        try {
            // Call the multipartUpload method
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.multipartUpload(bucketName, multipartKey);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Multipart upload completed successfully for bucket '{}'
and key '{}'", bucketName, multipartKey);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. List all objects located in the Amazon S3 bucket.");
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.listAllObjectsAsync(bucketName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Object listing completed successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
s3Actions.copyBucketObjectAsync(bucketName, key, toBucket);
            String result = future.join();
            logger.info("Copy operation result: {}", result);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("7. Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket using multi
copy.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
s3Actions.performMultiCopy(toBucket, bucketName, key);
            String result = future.join();
            logger.info("Copy operation result: {}", result);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);


        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Delete objects from the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(bucketName, key);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(bucketName, "multiPartKey");
```

```
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Delete the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.deleteBucketAsync(bucketName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("You successfully completed the Amazon S3 scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
```

```
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class that contains the operations.

```
public class S3Actions {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3Actions.class);
    private static S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient;

    public static S3AsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (s3AsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
 communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
 responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
```

```
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API
call timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return s3AsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Creates an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket is
created and ready
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure while creating the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> createBucketAsync(String bucketName) {
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        return response.thenCompose(resp -> {
            S3AsyncWaiter s3Waiter = getAsyncClient().waiter();
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
waiterResponseFuture =
```

```
                s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            return waiterResponseFuture.thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(headBucketResponse
-> {
                    logger.info(bucketName + " is ready");
                });
            });
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create bucket", ex);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Uploads a local file to an AWS S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param key        the key (object name) to use for the uploaded file
     * @param objectPath the local file path of the file to be uploaded
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
PutObjectResponse} when the upload is successful, or throws a {@link
RuntimeException} if the upload fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> uploadLocalFileAsync(String
bucketName, String key, String objectPath) {
        PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().putObject(objectRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromFile(Paths.get(objectPath)));
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to upload file", ex);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
```

```
    * Asynchronously retrieves the bytes of an object from an Amazon S3 bucket
and writes them to a local file.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
    * @param keyName    the key (or name) of the S3 object to retrieve
    * @param path       the local file path where the object's bytes will be
written
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object bytes
have been written to the local file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getObjectBytesAsync(String bucketName, String
keyName, String path) {
       GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
           .key(keyName)
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse>> response =
getAsyncClient().getObject(objectRequest, AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes());
       return response.thenAccept(objectBytes -> {
           try {
               byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();
               Path filePath = Paths.get(path);
               Files.write(filePath, data);
               logger.info("Successfully obtained bytes from an S3 object");
           } catch (IOException ex) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write data to file", ex);
           }
       }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get object bytes from S3",
ex);
           }
       });
   }


   /**
    * Asynchronously lists all objects in the specified S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to list objects for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when all objects have
been listed
    */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllObjectsAsync(String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request initialRequest = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .maxKeys(1)
            .build();

        ListObjectsV2Publisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listObjectsV2Paginator(initialRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.contents().forEach(s3Object -> {
                logger.info("Object key: " + s3Object.key());
            });
        }).thenRun(() -> {
            logger.info("Successfully listed all objects in the bucket: " +
bucketName);
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list objects", ex);
        });
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously copies an object from one S3 bucket to another.
     *
     * @param fromBucket the name of the source S3 bucket
     * @param objectKey  the key (name) of the object to be copied
     * @param toBucket   the name of the destination S3 bucket
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the copy result as
a {@link String}
     * @throws RuntimeException if the URL could not be encoded or an S3
exception occurred during the copy
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> copyBucketObjectAsync(String fromBucket,
String objectKey, String toBucket) {
        CopyObjectRequest copyReq = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
            .sourceBucket(fromBucket)
            .sourceKey(objectKey)
            .destinationBucket(toBucket)
            .destinationKey(objectKey)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CopyObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().copyObject(copyReq);
        response.whenComplete((copyRes, ex) -> {
```

```
            if (copyRes != null) {
                logger.info("The " + objectKey + " was copied to " + toBucket);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during
copy", ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(CopyObjectResponse::copyObjectResult)
            .thenApply(Object::toString);
    }

    /**
     * Performs a multipart upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param key        the key (name) of the file to be uploaded
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the multipart
upload is successful
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> multipartUpload(String bucketName, String key)
{
        int mB = 1024 * 1024;

        CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        return
getAsyncClient().createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest)
            .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
                String uploadId = createResponse.uploadId();
                System.out.println("Upload ID: " + uploadId);

                // Upload part 1.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest1 =
UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(1)
                    .contentLength((long) (5 * mB)) // Specify the content length
```

```
                    .build();

                CompletableFuture<CompletedPart> part1Future =
getAsyncClient().uploadPart(uploadPartRequest1,
                        AsyncRequestBody.fromByteBuffer(getRandomByteBuffer(5 *
mB)))
                    .thenApply(uploadPartResponse -> CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(1)
                        .eTag(uploadPartResponse.eTag())
                        .build());

                // Upload part 2.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest2 =
UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(2)
                    .contentLength((long) (3 * mB))
                    .build();

                CompletableFuture<CompletedPart> part2Future =
getAsyncClient().uploadPart(uploadPartRequest2,
                        AsyncRequestBody.fromByteBuffer(getRandomByteBuffer(3 *
mB)))
                    .thenApply(uploadPartResponse -> CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(2)
                        .eTag(uploadPartResponse.eTag())
                        .build());

                // Combine the results of both parts.
                return CompletableFuture.allOf(part1Future, part2Future)
                    .thenCompose(v -> {
                        CompletedPart part1 = part1Future.join();
                        CompletedPart part2 = part2Future.join();

                        CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload.builder()
                            .parts(part1, part2)
                            .build();

                        CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
completeMultipartUploadRequest = CompleteMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                            .bucket(bucketName)
```

```
                            .key(key)
                            .uploadId(uploadId)
                            .multipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload)
                            .build();

                        // Complete the multipart upload
                        return
getAsyncClient().completeMultipartUpload(completeMultipartUploadRequest);
                    });
            })
            .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("Multipart upload
completed successfully"))
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to complete multipart upload: " +
ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes an object from an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
     * @param key        the key (file name) of the object to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object has
been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(String bucketName,
String key) {
        DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);
        response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
            if (deleteRes != null) {
                logger.info(key + " was deleted");
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during
delete", ex);
            }
```

```
        });

        return response.thenApply(r -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucket the name of the bucket to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket
deletion is successful, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
     * if an error occurs during the deletion process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucketAsync(String bucket) {
        DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucket)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
            if (deleteRes != null) {
                logger.info(bucket + " was deleted.");
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during
bucket deletion", ex);
            }
        });
        return response.thenApply(r -> null);
    }

    public CompletableFuture<String> performMultiCopy(String toBucket, String
bucketName, String key) {
        CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
            .bucket(toBucket)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        getAsyncClient().createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest)
            .thenApply(createMultipartUploadResponse -> {
                String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();
                System.out.println("Upload ID: " + uploadId);
```

```
                UploadPartCopyRequest uploadPartCopyRequest =
 UploadPartCopyRequest.builder()
                    .sourceBucket(bucketName)
                    .destinationBucket(toBucket)
                    .sourceKey(key)
                    .destinationKey(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)  // Use the valid uploadId.
                    .partNumber(1)  // Ensure the part number is correct.
                    .copySourceRange("bytes=0-1023")  // Adjust range as needed
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().uploadPartCopy(uploadPartCopyRequest);
            })
            .thenCompose(uploadPartCopyFuture -> uploadPartCopyFuture)
            .whenComplete((uploadPartCopyResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle any exceptions.
                    logger.error("Error during upload part copy: " +
 exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    // Successfully completed the upload part copy.
                    System.out.println("Upload Part Copy completed successfully.
 ETag: " + uploadPartCopyResponse.copyPartResult().eTag());
                }
            });
        return null;
    }

    private static ByteBuffer getRandomByteBuffer(int size) {
        ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(size);
        for (int i = 0; i < size; i++) {
            buffer.put((byte) (Math.random() * 256));
        }
        buffer.flip();
        return buffer;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket

- DeleteBucket
- DeleteObjects
- GetObject
- ListObjectsV2
- PutObject

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

First, import all the necessary modules.

```
// Used to check if currently running file is this file.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { readdirSync, readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";

// Local helper utils.
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { Prompter } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js";
import { wrapText } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

import {
  S3Client,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  ListObjectsCommand,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  GetObjectCommand,
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

The preceding imports reference some helper utilities. These utilities are local to the GitHub repository linked at the start of this section. For your reference, see the following implementations of those utilities.

```
export const dirnameFromMetaUrl = (metaUrl) =>
  fileURLToPath(new URL(".", metaUrl));

import { select, input, confirm, checkbox, password } from "@inquirer/prompts";

export class Prompter {
  /**
   * @param {{ message: string, choices: { name: string, value: string }[]}}
 options
   */
  select(options) {
    return select(options);
  }

  /**
   * @param {{ message: string }} options
   */
  input(options) {
    return input(options);
  }

  /**
   * @param {{ message: string }} options
   */
  password(options) {
    return password({ ...options, mask: true });
  }

  /**
   * @param {string} prompt
   */
  checkContinue = async (prompt = "") => {
    const prefix = prompt && `${prompt} `;
    const ok = await this.confirm({
      message: `${prefix}Continue?`,
    });
    if (!ok) throw new Error("Exiting...");
  };
```

```
  /**
   * @param {{ message: string }} options
   */
  confirm(options) {
    return confirm(options);
  }

  /**
   * @param {{ message: string, choices: { name: string, value: string }[]}}
 options
   */
  checkbox(options) {
    return checkbox(options);
  }
}

export const wrapText = (text, char = "=") => {
  const rule = char.repeat(80);
  return `${rule}\n    ${text}\n${rule}\n`;
};
```

Objects in S3 are stored in 'buckets'. Let's define a function for creating a new bucket.

```
export const createBucket = async () => {
  const bucketName = await prompter.input({
    message: "Enter a bucket name. Bucket names must be globally unique:",
  });
  const command = new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  await s3Client.send(command);
  console.log("Bucket created successfully.\n");
  return bucketName;
};
```

Buckets contain 'objects'. This function uploads the contents of a directory to your bucket as objects.

```
export const uploadFilesToBucket = async ({ bucketName, folderPath }) => {
  console.log(`Uploading files from ${folderPath}\n`);
  const keys = readdirSync(folderPath);
  const files = keys.map((key) => {
    const filePath = `${folderPath}/${key}`;
```

```
    const fileContent = readFileSync(filePath);
    return {
      Key: key,
      Body: fileContent,
    };
  });

  for (const file of files) {
    await s3Client.send(
      new PutObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Body: file.Body,
        Key: file.Key,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`${file.Key} uploaded successfully.`);
  }
};
```

After uploading objects, check to confirm that they were uploaded correctly. You can use ListObjects for that. You'll be using the 'Key' property, but there are other useful properties in the response also.

```
export const listFilesInBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const command = new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(command);
  const contentsList = Contents.map((c) => ` • ${c.Key}`).join("\n");
  console.log("\nHere's a list of files in the bucket:");
  console.log(`${contentsList}\n`);
};
```

Sometimes you might want to copy an object from one bucket to another. Use the CopyObject command for that.

```
export const copyFileFromBucket = async ({ destinationBucket }) => {
  const proceed = await prompter.confirm({
    message: "Would you like to copy an object from another bucket?",
  });

  if (!proceed) {
```

```
    return;
  }
  const copy = async () => {
    try {
      const sourceBucket = await prompter.input({
        message: "Enter source bucket name:",
      });
      const sourceKey = await prompter.input({
        message: "Enter source key:",
      });
      const destinationKey = await prompter.input({
        message: "Enter destination key:",
      });

      const command = new CopyObjectCommand({
        Bucket: destinationBucket,
        CopySource: `${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey}`,
        Key: destinationKey,
      });
      await s3Client.send(command);
      await copyFileFromBucket({ destinationBucket });
    } catch (err) {
      console.error("Copy error.");
      console.error(err);
      const retryAnswer = await prompter.confirm({ message: "Try again?" });
      if (retryAnswer) {
        await copy();
      }
    }
  };
  await copy();
};
```

There's no SDK method for getting multiple objects from a bucket. Instead, you'll create a list of objects to download and iterate over them.

```
export const downloadFilesFromBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(
    new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: bucketName }),
  );
  const path = await prompter.input({
    message: "Enter destination path for files:",
```

```
  });

  for (const content of Contents) {
    const obj = await s3Client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({ Bucket: bucketName, Key: content.Key }),
    );
    writeFileSync(
      `${path}/${content.Key}`,
      await obj.Body.transformToByteArray(),
    );
  }
  console.log("Files downloaded successfully.\n");
};
```

It's time to clean up your resources. A bucket must be empty before it can be deleted. These two functions empty and delete the bucket.

```
export const emptyBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const listObjectsCommand = new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(listObjectsCommand);
  const keys = Contents.map((c) => c.Key);

  const deleteObjectsCommand = new DeleteObjectsCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Delete: { Objects: keys.map((key) => ({ Key: key })) },
  });
  await s3Client.send(deleteObjectsCommand);
  console.log(`${bucketName} emptied successfully.\n`);
};

export const deleteBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const command = new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  await s3Client.send(command);
  console.log(`${bucketName} deleted successfully.\n`);
};
```

The 'main' function pulls everything together. If you run this file directly the main function will be called.

```
const main = async () => {
```

```
  const OBJECT_DIRECTORY = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
    import.meta.url,
  )}../../../../resources/sample_files/.sample_media`;

  try {
    console.log(wrapText("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started example."));
    console.log("Let's create a bucket.");
    const bucketName = await createBucket();
    await prompter.confirm({ message: continueMessage });

    console.log(wrapText("File upload."));
    console.log(
      "I have some default files ready to go. You can edit the source code to
provide your own.",
    );
    await uploadFilesToBucket({
      bucketName,
      folderPath: OBJECT_DIRECTORY,
    });

    await listFilesInBucket({ bucketName });
    await prompter.confirm({ message: continueMessage });

    console.log(wrapText("Copy files."));
    await copyFileFromBucket({ destinationBucket: bucketName });
    await listFilesInBucket({ bucketName });
    await prompter.confirm({ message: continueMessage });

    console.log(wrapText("Download files."));
    await downloadFilesFromBucket({ bucketName });

    console.log(wrapText("Clean up."));
    await emptyBucket({ bucketName });
    await deleteBucket({ bucketName });
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket

- DeleteBucket
- DeleteObjects
- GetObject
- ListObjectsV2
- PutObject

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <bucketName> <key> <objectPath> <savePath> <toBucket>

    Where:
        bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to create.
        key - The key to use.
        objectPath - The path where the file is located (for example, C:/AWS/
book2.pdf).
        savePath - The path where the file is saved after it's downloaded (for
 example, C:/AWS/book2.pdf).
        toBucket - An Amazon S3 bucket to where an object is copied to (for
 example, C:/AWS/book2.pdf).
        """

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val bucketName = args[0]
    val key = args[1]
    val objectPath = args[2]
```

```
    val savePath = args[3]
    val toBucket = args[4]

    // Create an Amazon S3 bucket.
    createBucket(bucketName)

    // Update a local file to the Amazon S3 bucket.
    putObject(bucketName, key, objectPath)

    // Download the object to another local file.
    getObjectFromMrap(bucketName, key, savePath)

    // List all objects located in the Amazon S3 bucket.
    listBucketObs(bucketName)

    // Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket
    copyBucketOb(bucketName, key, toBucket)

    // Delete the object from the Amazon S3 bucket.
    deleteBucketObs(bucketName, key)

    // Delete the Amazon S3 bucket.
    deleteBucket(bucketName)
    println("All Amazon S3 operations were successfully performed")
}

suspend fun createBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        CreateBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun putObject(
    bucketName: String,
    objectKey: String,
    objectPath: String,
) {
    val metadataVal = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
```

```
    metadataVal["myVal"] = "test"

    val request =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = objectKey
            metadata = metadataVal
            this.body = Paths.get(objectPath).asByteStream()
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.putObject(request)
        println("Tag information is ${response.eTag}")
    }
}

suspend fun getObjectFromMrap(
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
    path: String,
) {
    val request =
        GetObjectRequest {
            key = keyName
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.getObject(request) { resp ->
            val myFile = File(path)
            resp.body?.writeToFile(myFile)
            println("Successfully read $keyName from $bucketName")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listBucketObs(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
```

```
        val response = s3.listObjects(request)
        response.contents?.forEach { myObject ->
            println("The name of the key is ${myObject.key}")
            println("The owner is ${myObject.owner}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun copyBucketOb(
    fromBucket: String,
    objectKey: String,
    toBucket: String,
) {
    var encodedUrl = ""
    try {
        encodedUrl = URLEncoder.encode("$fromBucket/$objectKey",
 StandardCharsets.UTF_8.toString())
    } catch (e: UnsupportedEncodingException) {
        println("URL could not be encoded: " + e.message)
    }

    val request =
        CopyObjectRequest {
            copySource = encodedUrl
            bucket = toBucket
            key = objectKey
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.copyObject(request)
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucketObs(
    bucketName: String,
    objectName: String,
) {
    val objectId =
        ObjectIdentifier {
            key = objectName
        }

    val delOb =
        Delete {
            objects = listOf(objectId)
```

```
        }

    val request =
        DeleteObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            delete = delOb
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteObjects(request)
        println("$objectName was deleted from $bucketName")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucket(bucketName: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteBucket(request)
        println("The $bucketName was successfully deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $region = 'us-west-2';

        $this->s3client = new S3Client([
                'region' => $region,
        ]);
        /* Inline declaration example
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
        */

        $this->bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" . uniqid();

        try {
            $this->s3client->createBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CreateBucketConfiguration' => ['LocationConstraint' => $region],
            ]);
            echo "Created bucket named: $this->bucketName \n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to create bucket $this->bucketName with error: " .
$exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.");
        }

        $fileName = __DIR__ . "/local-file-" . uniqid();
        try {
            $this->s3client->putObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
```

```
                'Key' => $fileName,
                'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/testfile.txt'
            ]);
            echo "Uploaded $fileName to $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to upload $fileName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file upload before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $file = $this->s3client->getObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
            ]);
            $body = $file->get('Body');
            $body->rewind();
            echo "Downloaded the file and it begins with: {$body->read(26)}.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to download $fileName from $this->bucketName with error:
 " . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file downloading before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $folder = "copied-folder";
            $this->s3client->copyObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CopySource' => "$this->bucketName/$fileName",
                'Key' => "$folder/$fileName-copy",
            ]);
            echo "Copied $fileName to $folder/$fileName-copy.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to copy $fileName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object copying before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $contents = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "The contents of your bucket are: \n";
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
```

```
                echo $content['Key'] . "\n";
            }
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to list objects in $this->bucketName with error: " .
 $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with listing objects before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $objects = [];
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
                $objects[] = [
                    'Key' => $content['Key'],
                ];
            }
            $this->s3client->deleteObjects([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Delete' => [
                    'Objects' => $objects,
                ],
            ]);
            $check = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            if (isset($check['Contents']) && count($check['Contents']) > 0) {
                throw new Exception("Bucket wasn't empty.");
            }
            echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $this->bucketName with error:
 " . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $this->s3client->deleteBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "Deleted bucket $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $this->bucketName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.");
        }
```

```
        echo "Successfully ran the Amazon S3 with PHP demo.\n";
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import io
import os
import uuid

import boto3
from boto3.s3.transfer import S3UploadFailedError
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def do_scenario(s3_resource):
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    bucket_name = f"amzn-s3-demo-bucket-{uuid.uuid4()}"
    bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(bucket_name)
    try:
        bucket.create(
            CreateBucketConfiguration={
                "LocationConstraint": s3_resource.meta.client.meta.region_name
            }
        )
        print(f"Created demo bucket named {bucket.name}.")
    except ClientError as err:
        print(f"Tried and failed to create demo bucket {bucket_name}.")
        print(f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}")
        print(f"\nCan't continue the demo without a bucket!")
        return

    file_name = None
    while file_name is None:
        file_name = input("\nEnter a file you want to upload to your bucket: ")
        if not os.path.exists(file_name):
            print(f"Couldn't find file {file_name}. Are you sure it exists?")
            file_name = None

    obj = bucket.Object(os.path.basename(file_name))
    try:
        obj.upload_file(file_name)
        print(
            f"Uploaded file {file_name} into bucket {bucket.name} with key
 {obj.key}."
        )
    except S3UploadFailedError as err:
        print(f"Couldn't upload file {file_name} to {bucket.name}.")
        print(f"\t{err}")

    answer = input(f"\nDo you want to download {obj.key} into memory (y/n)? ")
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        data = io.BytesIO()
        try:
            obj.download_fileobj(data)
            data.seek(0)
            print(f"Got your object. Here are the first 20 bytes:\n")
            print(f"\t{data.read(20)}")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't download {obj.key}.")
```

```
            print(
                f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}"
            )

    answer = input(
        f"\nDo you want to copy {obj.key} to a subfolder in your bucket (y/n)? "
    )
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        dest_obj = bucket.Object(f"demo-folder/{obj.key}")
        try:
            dest_obj.copy({"Bucket": bucket.name, "Key": obj.key})
            print(f"Copied {obj.key} to {dest_obj.key}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't copy {obj.key} to {dest_obj.key}.")
            print(
                f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}"
            )

    print("\nYour bucket contains the following objects:")
    try:
        for o in bucket.objects.all():
            print(f"\t{o.key}")
    except ClientError as err:
        print(f"Couldn't list the objects in bucket {bucket.name}.")
        print(f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}")

    answer = input(
        "\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)?
 "
    )
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        try:
            bucket.objects.delete()
            bucket.delete()
            print(f"Emptied and deleted bucket {bucket.name}.\n")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't empty and delete bucket {bucket.name}.")
            print(
                f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}"
            )
```

```
    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    do_scenario(boto3.resource("s3"))
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps the getting started scenario actions.
class ScenarioGettingStarted
  attr_reader :s3_resource

  # @param s3_resource [Aws::S3::Resource] An Amazon S3 resource.
  def initialize(s3_resource)
    @s3_resource = s3_resource
  end
```

```
  # Creates a bucket with a random name in the currently configured account and
  # AWS Region.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::Bucket] The newly created bucket.
  def create_bucket
    bucket = @s3_resource.create_bucket(
      bucket: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-#{Random.uuid}",
      create_bucket_configuration: {
        location_constraint: 'us-east-1' # NOTE: only certain regions permitted
      }
    )
    puts("Created demo bucket named #{bucket.name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts('Tried and failed to create demo bucket.')
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    puts("\nCan't continue the demo without a bucket!")
    raise
  else
    bucket
  end

  # Requests a file name from the user.
  #
  # @return The name of the file.
  def create_file
    File.open('demo.txt', w) { |f| f.write('This is a demo file.') }
  end

  # Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket object representing the upload
destination
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object] The Amazon S3 object that contains the uploaded
file.
  def upload_file(bucket)
    File.open('demo.txt', 'w+') { |f| f.write('This is a demo file.') }
    s3_object = bucket.object(File.basename('demo.txt'))
    s3_object.upload_file('demo.txt')
    puts("Uploaded file demo.txt into bucket #{bucket.name} with key
#{s3_object.key}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't upload file demo.txt to #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
```

```
    raise
  else
    s3_object
  end

  # Downloads an Amazon S3 object to a file.
  #
  # @param s3_object [Aws::S3::Object] The object to download.
  def download_file(s3_object)
    puts("\nDo you want to download #{s3_object.key} to a local file (y/n)? ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      puts('Enter a name for the downloaded file: ')
      file_name = gets.chomp
      s3_object.download_file(file_name)
      puts("Object #{s3_object.key} successfully downloaded to #{file_name}.")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't download #{s3_object.key}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Copies an Amazon S3 object to a subfolder within the same bucket.
  #
  # @param source_object [Aws::S3::Object] The source object to copy.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object, nil] The destination object.
  def copy_object(source_object)
    dest_object = nil
    puts("\nDo you want to copy #{source_object.key} to a subfolder in your
 bucket (y/n)? ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      dest_object = source_object.bucket.object("demo-folder/
#{source_object.key}")
      dest_object.copy_from(source_object)
      puts("Copied #{source_object.key} to #{dest_object.key}.")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't copy #{source_object.key}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    dest_object
```

```
  end

  # Lists the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to query.
  def list_objects(bucket)
    puts("\nYour bucket contains the following objects:")
    bucket.objects.each do |obj|
      puts("\t#{obj.key}")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't list the objects in bucket #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Deletes the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket and deletes the bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to empty and delete.
  def delete_bucket(bucket)
    puts("\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)?
 ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      bucket.objects.batch_delete!
      bucket.delete
      puts("Emptied and deleted bucket #{bucket.name}.\n")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't empty and delete bucket #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end

# Runs the Amazon S3 getting started scenario.
def run_scenario(scenario)
  puts('-' * 88)
  puts('Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo!')
  puts('-' * 88)

  bucket = scenario.create_bucket
  s3_object = scenario.upload_file(bucket)
  scenario.download_file(s3_object)
```

```
  scenario.copy_object(s3_object)
  scenario.list_objects(bucket)
  scenario.delete_bucket(bucket)

  puts('Thanks for watching!')
  puts('-' * 88)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError
  puts('Something went wrong with the demo!')
end

run_scenario(ScenarioGettingStarted.new(Aws::S3::Resource.new)) if $PROGRAM_NAME
 == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the binary crate which runs the scenario.

```
#![allow(clippy::result_large_err)]

//!  Purpose
```

```
//!  Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Rust to get started using
//!  Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3). Create a bucket, move objects
 into and out of it,
//!  and delete all resources at the end of the demo.
//!
//!  This example follows the steps in "Getting started with Amazon S3" in the
 Amazon S3
//!  user guide.
//!  - https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/
GetStartedWithS3.html

use aws_config::meta::region::RegionProviderChain;
use aws_sdk_s3::{config::Region, Client};
use s3_code_examples::error::S3ExampleError;
use uuid::Uuid;

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::first_try(Region::new("us-
west-2"));
    let region = region_provider.region().await.unwrap();
    let shared_config =
 aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&shared_config);
    let bucket_name = format!("amzn-s3-demo-bucket-{}", Uuid::new_v4());
    let file_name = "s3/testfile.txt".to_string();
    let key = "test file key name".to_string();
    let target_key = "target_key".to_string();

    if let Err(e) = run_s3_operations(region, client, bucket_name, file_name,
 key, target_key).await
    {
        eprintln!("{:?}", e);
    };

    Ok(())
}

async fn run_s3_operations(
    region: Region,
    client: Client,
    bucket_name: String,
    file_name: String,
    key: String,
```

```
    target_key: String,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    s3_code_examples::create_bucket(&client, &bucket_name, &region).await?;
    let run_example: Result<(), S3ExampleError> = (async {
        s3_code_examples::upload_object(&client, &bucket_name, &file_name,
 &key).await?;
        let _object = s3_code_examples::download_object(&client, &bucket_name,
 &key).await;
        s3_code_examples::copy_object(&client, &bucket_name, &bucket_name, &key,
 &target_key)
            .await?;
        s3_code_examples::list_objects(&client, &bucket_name).await?;
        s3_code_examples::clear_bucket(&client, &bucket_name).await?;
        Ok(())
    })
    .await;
    if let Err(err) = run_example {
        eprintln!("Failed to complete getting-started example: {err:?}");
    }
    s3_code_examples::delete_bucket(&client, &bucket_name).await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

Common actions used by the scenario.

```
pub async fn create_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    region: &aws_config::Region,
) -> Result<Option<aws_sdk_s3::operation::create_bucket::CreateBucketOutput>,
 S3ExampleError> {
    let constraint =
 aws_sdk_s3::types::BucketLocationConstraint::from(region.to_string().as_str());
    let cfg = aws_sdk_s3::types::CreateBucketConfiguration::builder()
        .location_constraint(constraint)
        .build();
    let create = client
        .create_bucket()
        .create_bucket_configuration(cfg)
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .send()
```

```
        .await;

    // BucketAlreadyExists and BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou are not problems for this
 task.
    create.map(Some).or_else(|err| {
        if err
            .as_service_error()
            .map(|se| se.is_bucket_already_exists() ||
 se.is_bucket_already_owned_by_you())
            == Some(true)
        {
            Ok(None)
        } else {
            Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
        }
    })
}

pub async fn upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    file_name: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<aws_sdk_s3::operation::put_object::PutObjectOutput, S3ExampleError> {
    let body =
 aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(std::path::Path::new(file_name)).await;
    client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .key(key)
        .body(body.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(S3ExampleError::from)
}

pub async fn download_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<aws_sdk_s3::operation::get_object::GetObjectOutput, S3ExampleError> {
    client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
```

```
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(S3ExampleError::from)
}

/// Copy an object from one bucket to another.
pub async fn copy_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    source_bucket: &str,
    destination_bucket: &str,
    source_object: &str,
    destination_object: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let source_key = format!("{source_bucket}/{source_object}");
    let response = client
        .copy_object()
        .copy_source(&source_key)
        .bucket(destination_bucket)
        .key(destination_object)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "Copied from {source_key} to {destination_bucket}/{destination_object}
 with etag {}",
        response
            .copy_object_result
            .unwrap_or_else(||
 aws_sdk_s3::types::CopyObjectResult::builder().build())
            .e_tag()
            .unwrap_or("missing")
    );
    Ok(())
}

pub async fn list_objects(client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client, bucket: &str) ->
 Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let mut response = client
        .list_objects_v2()
        .bucket(bucket.to_owned())
        .max_keys(10) // In this example, go 10 at a time.
        .into_paginator()
        .send();
```

```
    while let Some(result) = response.next().await {
        match result {
            Ok(output) => {
                for object in output.contents() {
                    println!(" - {}", object.key().unwrap_or("Unknown"));
                }
            }
            Err(err) => {
                eprintln!("{err:?}")
            }
        }
    }

    Ok(())
}

/// Given a bucket, remove all objects in the bucket, and then ensure no objects
/// remain in the bucket.
pub async fn clear_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, S3ExampleError> {
    let objects = client.list_objects_v2().bucket(bucket_name).send().await?;

    // delete_objects no longer needs to be mutable.
    let objects_to_delete: Vec<String> = objects
        .contents()
        .iter()
        .filter_map(|obj| obj.key())
        .map(String::from)
        .collect();

    if objects_to_delete.is_empty() {
        return Ok(vec![]);
    }

    let return_keys = objects_to_delete.clone();

    delete_objects(client, bucket_name, objects_to_delete).await?;

    let objects = client.list_objects_v2().bucket(bucket_name).send().await?;

    eprintln!("{objects:?}");
```

```
    match objects.key_count {
        Some(0) => Ok(return_keys),
        _ => Err(S3ExampleError::new(
            "There were still objects left in the bucket.",
        )),
    }
}

pub async fn delete_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let resp = client.delete_bucket().bucket(bucket_name).send().await;
    match resp {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(err) => {
            if err
                .as_service_error()
                .and_then(aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata::code)
                == Some("NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Ok(())
            } else {
                Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA(lo_session) = /aws1/cl_rt_session_aws=>create( cv_pfl ).
    DATA(lo_s3) = /aws1/cl_s3_factory=>create( lo_session ).

    " Create an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. "
    TRY.
        " determine our region from our session
        DATA(lv_region) = CONV /aws1/s3_bucketlocationcnstrnt( lo_session-
>get_region( ) ).
        DATA lo_constraint TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf.
        " When in the us-east-1 region, you must not specify a constraint
        " In all other regions, specify the region as the constraint
        IF lv_region = 'us-east-1'.
          CLEAR lo_constraint.
        ELSE.
          lo_constraint = NEW /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf( lv_region ).
        ENDIF.

        lo_s3->createbucket(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            io_createbucketconfiguration  = lo_constraint ).
        MESSAGE 'S3 bucket created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bucketalrdyexists.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bktalrdyownedbyyou.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket already exists and is owned by you.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.


    "Upload an object to an S3 bucket."
    TRY.
        "Get contents of file from application server."
        DATA lv_file_content TYPE xstring.
```

```
        OPEN DATASET iv_key FOR INPUT IN BINARY MODE.
        READ DATASET iv_key INTO lv_file_content.
        CLOSE DATASET iv_key.

        lo_s3->putobject(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            iv_key = iv_key
            iv_body = lv_file_content ).
        MESSAGE 'Object uploaded to S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Get an object from a bucket. "
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_result) = lo_s3->getobject(
                    iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
                    iv_key = iv_key ).
        DATA(lv_object_data) = lo_result->get_body( ).
        MESSAGE 'Object retrieved from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
        MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket. "
    TRY.
        lo_s3->copyobject(
          iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
          iv_key = |{ iv_copy_to_folder }/{ iv_key }|
          iv_copysource = |{ iv_bucket_name }/{ iv_key }| ).
        MESSAGE 'Object copied to a subfolder.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
        MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " List objects in the bucket. "
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_list) = lo_s3->listobjects(
           iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of objects in S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
    DATA text TYPE string VALUE 'Object List - '.
    DATA lv_object_key TYPE /aws1/s3_objectkey.
    LOOP AT lo_list->get_contents( ) INTO DATA(lo_object).
      lv_object_key = lo_object->get_key( ).
      CONCATENATE lv_object_key ', ' INTO text.
    ENDLOOP.
    MESSAGE text TYPE'I'.

    " Delete the objects in a bucket. "
    TRY.
        lo_s3->deleteobject(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            iv_key = iv_key ).
        lo_s3->deleteobject(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            iv_key = |{ iv_copy_to_folder }/{ iv_key }| ).
        MESSAGE 'Objects deleted from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.


    " Delete the bucket. "
    TRY.
        lo_s3->deletebucket(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Deleted S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject

- ListObjectsV2
- PutObject

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

import Foundation
import AWSS3
import Smithy
import ClientRuntime

/// A class containing all the code that interacts with the AWS SDK for Swift.
public class ServiceHandler {
    let configuration: S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration
    let client: S3Client

    enum HandlerError: Error {
        case getObjectBody(String)
        case readGetObjectBody(String)
        case missingContents(String)
    }

    /// Initialize and return a new ``ServiceHandler`` object, which is used to
 drive the AWS calls
    /// used for the example.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A new ``ServiceHandler`` object, ready to be called to
    ///            execute AWS operations.
    public init() async throws {
        do {
            configuration = try await S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration()
```

```
         //   configuration.region = "us-east-2" // Uncomment this to set the
 region programmatically.
            client = S3Client(config: configuration)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Initializing S3 client"))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Create a new user given the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: Name of the bucket to create.
    /// Throws an exception if an error occurs.
    public func createBucket(name: String) async throws {
        var input = CreateBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )

        // For regions other than "us-east-1", you must set the
 locationConstraint in the createBucketConfiguration.
        // For more information, see LocationConstraint in the S3 API guide.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/
API_CreateBucket.html#API_CreateBucket_RequestBody
        if let region = configuration.region {
            if region != "us-east-1" {
                input.createBucketConfiguration =
 S3ClientTypes.CreateBucketConfiguration(locationConstraint:
 S3ClientTypes.BucketLocationConstraint(rawValue: region))
            }
        }

        do {
            _ = try await client.createBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch let error as BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou {
            print("The bucket '\(name)' already exists and is owned by you. You
 may wish to ignore this exception.")
            throw error
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Creating a bucket"))
```

```
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Delete a bucket.
    /// - Parameter name: Name of the bucket to delete.
    public func deleteBucket(name: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a bucket"))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Upload a file from local storage to the bucket.
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket to upload the file to.
    ///   - key: Name of the file to create.
    ///   - file: Path name of the file to upload.
    public func uploadFile(bucket: String, key: String, file: String) async
throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: file)
        do {
            let fileData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)
            let dataStream = ByteStream.data(fileData)

            let input = PutObjectInput(
                body: dataStream,
                bucket: bucket,
                key: key
            )

            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Create a file in the specified bucket with the given name. The new
    /// file's contents are uploaded from a `Data` object.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket to create a file in.
    ///   - key: Name of the file to create.
    ///   - data: A `Data` object to write into the new file.
    public func createFile(bucket: String, key: String, withData data: Data)
 async throws {
        let dataStream = ByteStream.data(data)

        let input = PutObjectInput(
            body: dataStream,
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Download the named file to the given directory on the local device.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket that contains the file to be copied.
    ///   - key: The name of the file to copy from the bucket.
    ///   - to: The path of the directory on the local device where you want to
    ///     download the file.
    public func downloadFile(bucket: String, key: String, to: String) async
 throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: to).appendingPathComponent(key)

        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)
```

```
            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to
read data.")
            }

            try data.write(to: fileUrl)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Downloading a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Read the specified file from the given S3 bucket into a Swift
    /// `Data` object.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket containing the file to read.
    ///   - key: Name of the file within the bucket to read.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `Data` object containing the complete file data.
    public func readFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws -> Data {
        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to
read data.")
            }

            return data
```

```
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Reading a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Copy a file from one bucket to another.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sourceBucket: Name of the bucket containing the source file.
    ///   - name: Name of the source file.
    ///   - destBucket: Name of the bucket to copy the file into.
    public func copyFile(from sourceBucket: String, name: String, to destBucket:
 String) async throws {
        let srcUrl = ("\(sourceBucket)/
\(name)").addingPercentEncoding(withAllowedCharacters: .urlPathAllowed)

        let input = CopyObjectInput(
            bucket: destBucket,
            copySource: srcUrl,
            key: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.copyObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Copying an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Deletes the specified file from Amazon S3.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket containing the file to delete.
    ///   - key: Name of the file to delete.
    ///
    public func deleteFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Returns an array of strings, each naming one file in the
    /// specified bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameter bucket: Name of the bucket to get a file listing for.
    /// - Returns: An array of `String` objects, each giving the name of
    ///            one file contained in the bucket.
    public func listBucketFiles(bucket: String) async throws -> [String] {
        do {
            let input = ListObjectsV2Input(
                bucket: bucket
            )

            // Use "Paginated" to get all the objects.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'continuationToken' in
"ListObjectsV2Output".
            let output = client.listObjectsV2Paginated(input: input)
            var names: [String] = []

            for try await page in output {
                guard let objList = page.contents else {
                    print("ERROR: listObjectsV2Paginated returned nil contents.")
                    continue
                }

                for obj in objList {
                    if let objName = obj.key {
                        names.append(objName)
                    }
                }
            }


            return names
        }
```

```
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Listing objects."))
            throw error
        }
    }
}
```

```
import AWSS3

import Foundation
import ServiceHandler
import ArgumentParser

/// The command-line arguments and options available for this
/// example command.
struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Argument(help: "Name of the S3 bucket to create")
    var bucketName: String

    @Argument(help: "Pathname of the file to upload to the S3 bucket")
    var uploadSource: String

    @Argument(help: "The name (key) to give the file in the S3 bucket")
    var objName: String

    @Argument(help: "S3 bucket to copy the object to")
    var destBucket: String

    @Argument(help: "Directory where you want to download the file from the S3
 bucket")
    var downloadDir: String

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "s3-basics",
        abstract: "Demonstrates a series of basic AWS S3 functions.",
        discussion: """
        Performs the following Amazon S3 commands:

        * `CreateBucket`
        * `PutObject`
        * `GetObject`
        * `CopyObject`
```

```
        * `ListObjects`
        * `DeleteObjects`
        * `DeleteBucket`
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to do the actual running of the AWS
    /// example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let serviceHandler = try await ServiceHandler()

        // 1. Create the bucket.
        print("Creating the bucket \(bucketName)...")
        try await serviceHandler.createBucket(name: bucketName)

        // 2. Upload a file to the bucket.
        print("Uploading the file \(uploadSource)...")
        try await serviceHandler.uploadFile(bucket: bucketName, key: objName,
file: uploadSource)

        // 3. Download the file.
        print("Downloading the file \(objName) to \(downloadDir)...")
        try await serviceHandler.downloadFile(bucket: bucketName, key: objName,
to: downloadDir)

        // 4. Copy the file to another bucket.
        print("Copying the file to the bucket \(destBucket)...")
        try await serviceHandler.copyFile(from: bucketName, name: objName, to:
destBucket)

        // 5. List the contents of the bucket.

        print("Getting a list of the files in the bucket \(bucketName)")
        let fileList = try await serviceHandler.listBucketFiles(bucket:
bucketName)
        let numFiles = fileList.count
        if numFiles != 0 {
            print("\(numFiles) file\((numFiles > 1) ? "s" : "") in bucket
\(bucketName):")
            for name in fileList {
                print("  \(name)")
            }
        } else {
            print("No files found in bucket \(bucketName)")
```

```
        }

        // 6. Delete the objects from the bucket.

        print("Deleting the file \(objName) from the bucket \(bucketName)...")
        try await serviceHandler.deleteFile(bucket: bucketName, key: objName)
        print("Deleting the file \(objName) from the bucket \(destBucket)...")
        try await serviceHandler.deleteFile(bucket: destBucket, key: objName)

        // 7. Delete the bucket.
        print("Deleting the bucket \(bucketName)...")
        try await serviceHandler.deleteBucket(name: bucketName)

        print("Done.")
    }
}

//
// Main program entry point.
//
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject

- ListObjectsV2
- PutObject

Actions for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon S3 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon S3 API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Simple Storage Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use AbortMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CompleteMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CopyObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePresignedPost with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketEncryption with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketLifecycle with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteBucketReplication with a CLI

- Use DeleteBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use DeleteBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteObjectTagging with a CLI
- Use DeleteObjects with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeletePublicAccessBlock with a CLI
- Use GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketInventoryConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketLocation with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketLogging with a CLI
- Use GetBucketMetricsConfiguration with a CLI
- Use GetBucketNotification with a CLI
- Use GetBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketPolicyStatus with a CLI
- Use GetBucketReplication with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetBucketRequestPayment with a CLI
- Use GetBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use GetBucketVersioning with a CLI
- Use GetBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectLegalHold with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectLockConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetObjectRetention with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetObjectTagging with a CLI
- Use GetPublicAccessBlock with a CLI
- Use HeadBucket with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use HeadObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations with a CLI
- Use ListBucketInventoryConfigurations with a CLI
- Use ListBuckets with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMultipartUploads with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListObjectVersions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListObjects with a CLI
- Use ListObjectsV2 with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketCors with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketLogging with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketNotification with a CLI
- Use PutBucketNotificationConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketReplication with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketRequestPayment with a CLI
- Use PutBucketTagging with a CLI
- Use PutBucketVersioning with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutBucketWebsite with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectAcl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectLegalHold with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use PutObjectLockConfiguration with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PutObjectRetention with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RestoreObject with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SelectObjectContent with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadPart with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadPartCopy with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AbortMultipartUpload` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AbortMultipartUpload`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Delete incomplete multipart uploads
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Abort a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/

bool AwsDoc::S3::abortMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                      const Aws::String &key,
```

```
                                        const Aws::String &uploadID,
                                        const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);

    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.AbortMultipartUpload(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Multipart upload aborted." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error aborting multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To abort the specified multipart upload

The following `abort-multipart-upload` command aborts a multipart upload for the key `multipart/01` in the bucket `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`.

```
aws s3api abort-multipart-upload \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key multipart/01 \
    --upload-
id dfRtDYU0WWCCcH43C3WFbkRONycyCpTJJvxu2i5GYkZljF.Yxwh6XG7WfS2vC4to6HiV6Yjlx.cph0gtNBtJ8P
```

The upload ID required by this command is output by `create-multipart-upload` and can also be retrieved with `list-multipart-uploads`.

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AbortMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AbortMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MultipartUpload;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.builder.SdkBuilder;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.ArrayList;
```

```
import java.util.Collection;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.UUID;

import static software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.SizeConstant.KB;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class AbortMultipartUploadExamples {
    static final String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" +
 UUID.randomUUID(); // Change bucket name.
    static final String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
    static final String classPathFilePath = "/multipartUploadFiles/s3-
userguide.pdf";
    static final String filePath = getFullFilePath(classPathFilePath);
    static final S3Client s3Client = S3Client.create();
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(AbortMultipartUploadExamples.class);
    private static String accountId = getAccountId();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList();
        doAbortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId();
        doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan();
        doAbortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig();
    }

    // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
 abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList().
    public static void doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList() {
        createBucket();
        initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload("uploadThread");
        abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList();
        deleteResources();
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Aborts all incomplete multipart uploads from the specified S3 bucket.
    * <p>
    * This method retrieves a list of all incomplete multipart uploads in the
specified S3 bucket,
    * and then aborts each of those uploads.
    */
   public static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList() {
       ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
       List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

       AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
       for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
           abortMultipartUploadRequest = AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .key(upload.key())
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
               .build();

           AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
           if (abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
               logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully
aborted.", upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
           }
       }
   }

   // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan().
   static void doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan() {
       createBucket();
       Instant secondUploadInstant = initiateAndInterruptTwoUploads();
       abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan(secondUploadInstant);
       deleteResources();
   }
```

```
   static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan(Instant pointInTime) {
       ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
       List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

       AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
       for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
           logger.info("Found multipartUpload with upload ID [{}], initiated
[{}]", upload.uploadId(), upload.initiated());
           if (upload.initiated().isBefore(pointInTime)) {
               abortMultipartUploadRequest =
AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(upload.key())
                   .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                   .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
                   .build();

               AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
               if
(abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                   logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully
aborted.", upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
               }
           }
       }
   }

   // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId().
   static void doAbortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId() {
       createBucket();
       try {
           abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId();
       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error(e.getMessage());
       } finally {
```

```
            deleteResources();
        }
    }

    static void abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId() {
        String uploadId = startUploadReturningUploadId();
        AbortMultipartUploadResponse response = s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(b -
> b
            .uploadId(uploadId)
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully aborted.",
 uploadId, bucketName);
        }
    }

    // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
 abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig().
    static void doAbortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig() {
        createBucket();
        try {
            abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            deleteResources();
        }
    }

    static void abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig() {
        Collection<LifecycleRule> lifeCycleRules =
 List.of(LifecycleRule.builder()
            .abortIncompleteMultipartUpload(b -> b.
                daysAfterInitiation(7))
            .status("Enabled")
            .filter(SdkBuilder::build) // Filter element is required.
            .build());

        // If the action is successful, the service sends back an HTTP 200
 response with an empty HTTP body.
        PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse response =
 s3Client.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(b -> b
```

```
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .lifecycleConfiguration(b1 -> b1.rules(lifeCycleRules)));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Rule to abort incomplete multipart uploads added to
bucket.");
        } else {
            logger.error("Unsuccessfully applied rule. HTTP status code is [{}]",
response.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
        }
    }

    /************************
     Multipart upload methods
     ************************/

    static void initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload(String threadName) {
        Runnable upload = () -> {
            try {
                AbortMultipartUploadExamples.doMultipartUpload();
            } catch (SdkException e) {
                logger.error(e.getMessage());
            }
        };
        Thread uploadThread = new Thread(upload, threadName);
        uploadThread.start();
        try {
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(1).toMillis()); // Give the multipart
upload time to register.
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        }
        uploadThread.interrupt();
    }

    static Instant initiateAndInterruptTwoUploads() {
        Instant firstUploadInstant = Instant.now();
        initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload("uploadThread1");
        try {
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(5).toMillis());
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        }
        Instant secondUploadInstant = Instant.now();
```

```
        initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload("uploadThread2");
        return secondUploadInstant;
    }

    static void doMultipartUpload() {
        String uploadId = step1CreateMultipartUpload();
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = step2UploadParts(uploadId);
        step3CompleteMultipartUpload(uploadId, completedParts);
    }

    static String step1CreateMultipartUpload() {
        CreateMultipartUploadResponse createMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.createMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));
        return createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();
    }

    static List<CompletedPart> step2UploadParts(String uploadId) {
        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(Long.valueOf(1024 * KB).intValue());

        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath, "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            long position = 0;
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                long read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                    uploadPartRequest,
                    RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
```

```
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                    .build();
                completedParts.add(part);
                logger.info("Part {} upload", partNumber);

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (IOException | S3Exception e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
            return null;
        }
        return completedParts;
    }

    static void step3CompleteMultipartUpload(String uploadId, List<CompletedPart>
completedParts) {
        s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .uploadId(uploadId)

.multipartUpload(CompletedMultipartUpload.builder().parts(completedParts).build()));
    }

    static String startUploadReturningUploadId() {
        String uploadId = step1CreateMultipartUpload();
        doMultipartUploadWithUploadId(uploadId);
        return uploadId;

    }

    static void doMultipartUploadWithUploadId(String uploadId) {
        new Thread(() -> {
            try {
                List<CompletedPart> completedParts = step2UploadParts(uploadId);
                step3CompleteMultipartUpload(uploadId, completedParts);
            } catch (SdkException e) {
                logger.error(e.getMessage());
            }
        }, "upload thread").start();
        try {
```

```
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(2L).toMillis());
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /*************************
     Resource handling methods
     *************************/

    static void createBucket() {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: [{}]", bucketName);
        s3Client.createBucket(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        try (S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter()) {
            s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        }
        logger.info("Bucket created.");
    }

    static void deleteResources() {
        logger.info("Deleting resources ...");
        s3Client.deleteObject(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key));
        s3Client.deleteBucket(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        try (S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter()) {
            s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketNotExists(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        }
        logger.info("Resources deleted.");
    }

    private static String getAccountId() {
        try (StsClient stsClient = StsClient.create()) {
            return stsClient.getCallerIdentity().account();
        }
    }

    static String getFullFilePath(String filePath) {
        URL uploadDirectoryURL =
PerformMultiPartUpload.class.getResource(filePath);
        String fullFilePath;
        try {
            fullFilePath =
Objects.requireNonNull(uploadDirectoryURL).toURI().getPath();
        } catch (URISyntaxException e) {
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        return fullFilePath;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than 5 days ago.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DaysBefore 5
```

Example 2: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than January 2nd, 2014.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -InitiatedDate
 "Thursday, January 02, 2014"
```

Example 3: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than January 2nd, 2014, 10:45:37.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -InitiatedDate
 "2014/01/02 10:45:37"
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than 5 days ago.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DaysBefore 5
```

Example 2: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than January 2nd, 2014.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -InitiatedDate
 "Thursday, January 02, 2014"
```

Example 3: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than January 2nd, 2014, 10:45:37.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -InitiatedDate
 "2014/01/02 10:45:37"
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CompleteMultipartUpload` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CompleteMultipartUpload`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Perform a multipart copy
- Use checksums
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Complete a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
```

```
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param parts: A vector of CompleteParts.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome: The request outcome.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome
 AwsDoc::S3::completeMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,

  const Aws::String &key,

  const Aws::String &uploadID,

  const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart> &parts,

  const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload;
    completedMultipartUpload.SetParts(parts);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetMultipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CompleteMultipartUpload(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error completing multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome;
}
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command completes a multipart upload for the key `multipart/01` in the bucket `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api complete-multipart-upload --multipart-upload file://
mpustruct --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key 'multipart/01' --upload-
id dfRtDYU0WWCCcH43C3WFbkRONycyCpTJJvxu2i5GYkZljF.Yxwh6XG7WfS2vC4to6HiV6Yjlx.cph0gtNBtJ8P
```

The upload ID required by this command is output by `create-multipart-upload` and can also be retrieved with `list-multipart-uploads`.

The multipart upload option in the above command takes a JSON structure that describes the parts of the multipart upload that should be reassembled into the complete file. In this example, the `file://` prefix is used to load the JSON structure from a file in the local folder named `mpustruct`.

mpustruct:

```
{
  "Parts": [
    {
      "ETag": "e868e0f4719e394144ef36531ee6824c",
      "PartNumber": 1
    },
    {
      "ETag": "6bb2b12753d66fe86da4998aa33fffb0",
      "PartNumber": 2
    },
    {
      "ETag": "d0a0112e841abec9c9ec83406f0159c8",
      "PartNumber": 3
    }
  ]
}
```

The ETag value for each part is upload is output each time you upload a part using the `upload-part` command and can also be retrieved by calling `list-parts` or calculated by taking the MD5 checksum of each part.

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "\"3944a9f7a4faab7f78788ff6210f63f0-3\"",
    "Bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
```

```
    "Location": "https://amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com/multipart%2F01",
    "Key": "multipart/01"
}
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();

    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;
```

```
    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CopyObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CopyObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with encryption
- Get started with S3
- Make conditional requests

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

public class CopyObject
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Specify the AWS Region where your buckets are located if it is
        // different from the AWS Region of the default user.
        IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        // Remember to change these values to refer to your Amazon S3
objects.
        string sourceBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
        string destinationBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
        string sourceObjectKey = "testfile.txt";
```

```
            string destinationObjectKey = "testfilecopy.txt";

            Console.WriteLine($"Copying {sourceObjectKey} from {sourceBucketName}
 to ");
            Console.WriteLine($"{destinationBucketName} as
 {destinationObjectKey}");

            var response = await CopyingObjectAsync(
                s3Client,
                sourceObjectKey,
                destinationObjectKey,
                sourceBucketName,
                destinationBucketName);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nCopy complete.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the AWS SDK for .NET to copy an
        /// object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceKey">The name of the object to be copied.</param>
        /// <param name="destinationKey">The name under which to save the copy.</
param>
        /// <param name="sourceBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket
        /// where the file is located now.</param>
        /// <param name="destinationBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3
        /// bucket where the copy should be saved.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a CopyObjectResponse object with the results from
        /// the async call.</returns>
        public static async Task<CopyObjectResponse> CopyingObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string sourceKey,
            string destinationKey,
            string sourceBucketName,
            string destinationBucketName)
        {
            var response = new CopyObjectResponse();
            try
            {
```

```
                var request = new CopyObjectRequest
                {
                    SourceBucket = sourceBucketName,
                    SourceKey = sourceKey,
                    DestinationBucket = destinationBucketName,
                    DestinationKey = destinationKey,
                };
                response = await client.CopyObjectAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error copying object: '{ex.Message}'");
            }

            return response;
        }
    }
```

Copy an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
 request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceKey">The key of the source object to copy.</param>
    /// <param name="destKey">The key of the destination object.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The destination bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition to apply, e.g.
 'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional copy is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CopyObjectConditional(string sourceKey, string
 destKey, string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null,
 string? etagConditionalValue = null)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var copyObjectRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                DestinationBucket = destBucket,
                DestinationKey = destKey,
                SourceBucket = sourceBucket,
                SourceKey = sourceKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            await _amazonS3.CopyObjectAsync(copyObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional copy successful for key
{destKey} in bucket {destBucket}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "304")
```

```
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function copy_item_in_bucket
#
# This function creates a copy of the specified file in the same bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file from and to.
#       $2 - The key of the source file to copy.
```

```
#       $3 - The key of the destination file.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function copy_item_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local source_key=$2
  local destination_key=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api copy-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --copy-source "$bucket_name/$source_key" \
    --key "$destination_key")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api copy-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::copyObject(const Aws::String &objectKey, const Aws::String
 &fromBucket, const Aws::String &toBucket,
                            const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectRequest request;
```

```
    request.WithCopySource(fromBucket + "/" + objectKey)
            .WithKey(objectKey)
            .WithBucket(toBucket);

    Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectOutcome outcome = client.CopyObject(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: copyObject: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;

    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully copied " << objectKey << " from " <<
 fromBucket <<
                  " to " << toBucket << "." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command copies an object from `bucket-1` to `bucket-2`:

```
aws s3api copy-object --copy-source bucket-1/test.txt --key test.txt --
bucket bucket-2
```

Output:

```
{
    "CopyObjectResult": {
        "LastModified": "2015-11-10T01:07:25.000Z",
        "ETag": "\"589c8b79c230a6ecd5a7e1d040a9a030\""
    },
    "VersionId": "YdnYvTCVDqRRFA.NFJjy36p0hxifMlkA"
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}
```

```
// CopyToBucket copies an object in a bucket to another bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) CopyToBucket(ctx context.Context, sourceBucket string,
 destinationBucket string, objectKey string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CopyObject(ctx, &s3.CopyObjectInput{
  Bucket:     aws.String(destinationBucket),
  CopySource: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", sourceBucket, objectKey)),
  Key:        aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var notActive *types.ObjectNotInActiveTierError
  if errors.As(err, &notActive) {
   log.Printf("Couldn't copy object %s from %s because the object isn't in the
 active tier.\n",
    objectKey, sourceBucket)
   err = notActive
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(destinationBucket), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object using an S3Client.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously copies an object from one S3 bucket to another.
     *
     * @param fromBucket the name of the source S3 bucket
     * @param objectKey  the key (name) of the object to be copied
     * @param toBucket   the name of the destination S3 bucket
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the copy result as
 a {@link String}
     * @throws RuntimeException if the URL could not be encoded or an S3
 exception occurred during the copy
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> copyBucketObjectAsync(String fromBucket,
 String objectKey, String toBucket) {
        CopyObjectRequest copyReq = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
            .sourceBucket(fromBucket)
            .sourceKey(objectKey)
            .destinationBucket(toBucket)
            .destinationKey(objectKey)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CopyObjectResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().copyObject(copyReq);
        response.whenComplete((copyRes, ex) -> {
            if (copyRes != null) {
                logger.info("The " + objectKey + " was copied to " + toBucket);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during
 copy", ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(CopyObjectResponse::copyObjectResult)
            .thenApply(Object::toString);
    }
```

Use an S3TransferManager to copy an object from one bucket to another. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CopyObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedCopy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.Copy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CopyRequest;

import java.util.UUID;

    public String copyObject(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
 bucketName,
            String key, String destinationBucket, String destinationKey) {
        CopyObjectRequest copyObjectRequest = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
                .sourceBucket(bucketName)
                .sourceKey(key)
                .destinationBucket(destinationBucket)
                .destinationKey(destinationKey)
                .build();

        CopyRequest copyRequest = CopyRequest.builder()
                .copyObjectRequest(copyObjectRequest)
                .build();

        Copy copy = transferManager.copy(copyRequest);

        CompletedCopy completedCopy = copy.completionFuture().join();
        return completedCopy.response().copyObjectResult().eTag();
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy the object.

```
import {
  S3Client,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  ObjectNotInActiveTierError,
  waitUntilObjectExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Copy an S3 object from one bucket to another.
 *
 * @param {{
 *   sourceBucket: string,
 *   sourceKey: string,
 *   destinationBucket: string,
 *   destinationKey: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucket,
  sourceKey,
  destinationBucket,
  destinationKey,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: `${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey}`,
        Bucket: destinationBucket,
        Key: destinationKey,
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilObjectExists(
      { client },
      { Bucket: destinationBucket, Key: destinationKey },
    );
    console.log(
      `Successfully copied ${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey} to ${destinationBucket}/
${destinationKey}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ObjectNotInActiveTierError) {
      console.error(
```

```
        `Could not copy ${sourceKey} from ${sourceBucket}. Object is not in the
 active tier.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Copy the object on condition its ETag does not match the one provided.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in
 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string,
 destinationBucketName: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
  eTag,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const name = data.name;
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`,
```

```
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: `${name}${sourceKeyName}`,
        CopySourceIfMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Unable to copy object "${sourceKeyName}" to bucket
 "${sourceBucketName}":  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
```

```
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Copy the object on condition its ETag does not match the one provided.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in
 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string,
 destinationBucketName: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
```

```
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
  eTag,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const name = data.name;

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: `${name}${sourceKeyName}`,
        CopySourceIfNoneMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Unable to copy object "${sourceKeyName}" to bucket
 "${sourceBucketName}":  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
```

```
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Copy the object using on condition it has been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in
 'object_name.json'
```

```
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string,
 destinationBucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
}) => {
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

  const name = data.name;
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const copySource = `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`;
  const copiedKey = name + sourceKeyName;

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: copySource,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: copiedKey,
        CopySourceIfModifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object from ${sourceBucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Copy the object using on condition it has not been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in
 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string,
 destinationBucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
}) => {
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const name = data.name;
  const copiedKey = name + sourceKeyName;
  const copySource = `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`;

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: copySource,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: copiedKey,
        CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
```

```
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object from ${sourceBucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
```

```
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun copyBucketObject(
    fromBucket: String,
    objectKey: String,
    toBucket: String,
) {
    var encodedUrl = ""
    try {
        encodedUrl = URLEncoder.encode("$fromBucket/$objectKey",
 StandardCharsets.UTF_8.toString())
    } catch (e: UnsupportedEncodingException) {
        println("URL could not be encoded: " + e.message)
    }

    val request =
        CopyObjectRequest {
            copySource = encodedUrl
            bucket = toBucket
            key = objectKey
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.copyObject(request)
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Simple copy of an object.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $folder = "copied-folder";
            $this->s3client->copyObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CopySource' => "$this->bucketName/$fileName",
                'Key' => "$folder/$fileName-copy",
            ]);
            echo "Copied $fileName to $folder/$fileName-copy.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to copy $fileName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object copying before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command copies the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to the same bucket but with a new key of "sample-copy.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -DestinationKey
 sample-copy.txt
```

Example 2: This command copies the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to the bucket "backup-files" with a key of "sample-copy.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-source-bucket -Key sample.txt -
DestinationKey sample-copy.txt -DestinationBucket amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket
```

Example 3: This command downloads the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to a local file with name "local-sample.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -LocalFile local-
sample.txt
```

Example 4: Downloads the single object to the specified file. The downloaded file will be found at c:\downloads\data\archive.zip

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key data/archive.zip -LocalFolder
 c:\downloads
```

Example 5: Downloads all objects that match the specified key prefix to the local folder. The relative key hierarchy will be preserved as subfolders in the overall download location.

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix data -LocalFolder c:
\downloads
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command copies the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to the same bucket but with a new key of "sample-copy.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -DestinationKey
 sample-copy.txt
```

Example 2: This command copies the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to the bucket "backup-files" with a key of "sample-copy.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-source-bucket -Key sample.txt -
DestinationKey sample-copy.txt -DestinationBucket amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket
```

Example 3: This command downloads the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to a local file with name "local-sample.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -LocalFile local-
sample.txt
```

Example 4: Downloads the single object to the specified file. The downloaded file will be found at c:\downloads\data\archive.zip

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key data/archive.zip -LocalFolder
 c:\downloads
```

Example 5: Downloads all objects that match the specified key prefix to the local folder. The relative key hierarchy will be preserved as subfolders in the overall download location.

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix data -LocalFolder c:
\downloads
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def copy(self, dest_object):
        """
        Copies the object to another bucket.

        :param dest_object: The destination object initialized with a bucket and
 key.
                            This is a Boto3 Object resource.
        """
        try:
            dest_object.copy_from(
                CopySource={"Bucket": self.object.bucket_name, "Key":
 self.object.key}
            )
            dest_object.wait_until_exists()
            logger.info(
                "Copied object from %s:%s to %s:%s.",
                self.object.bucket_name,
                self.object.key,
                dest_object.bucket_name,
                dest_object.key,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't copy object from %s/%s to %s/%s.",
                self.object.bucket_name,
                self.object.key,
                dest_object.bucket_name,
                dest_object.key,
            )
            raise
```

Copy an object using a conditional request.

```
class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)


    def copy_object_conditional(
        self,
        source_key: str,
        dest_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        dest_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
    ):
        """
        Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
 request.

        :param source_key: The key of the source object to copy.
        :param dest_key: The key of the destination object.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param dest_bucket: The destination bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition to apply, e.g.
        'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch',
 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince', 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.s3.copy_object(
                Bucket=dest_bucket,
                Key=dest_key,
                CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": source_key},
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional copy successful for key {dest_key} in bucket
 {dest_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectCopyWrapper
  attr_reader :source_object
```

```
  # @param source_object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object. This is
 used as the source object for
  #                                       copy actions.
  def initialize(source_object)
    @source_object = source_object
  end

  # Copy the source object to the specified target bucket and rename it with the
 target key.
  #
  # @param target_bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object is copied.
  # @param target_object_key [String] The key to give the copy of the object.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object, nil] The copied object when successful; otherwise,
 nil.
  def copy_object(target_bucket, target_object_key)
    @source_object.copy_to(bucket: target_bucket.name, key: target_object_key)
    target_bucket.object(target_object_key)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't copy #{@source_object.key} to #{target_object_key}. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  source_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1"
  source_key = "my-source-file.txt"
  target_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2"
  target_key = "my-target-file.txt"

  source_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(source_bucket_name)
  wrapper = ObjectCopyWrapper.new(source_bucket.object(source_key))
  target_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(target_bucket_name)
  target_object = wrapper.copy_object(target_bucket, target_key)
  return unless target_object

  puts "Copied #{source_key} from #{source_bucket_name} to
 #{target_object.bucket_name}:#{target_object.key}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Copy an object and add server-side encryption to the destination object.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectCopyEncryptWrapper
  attr_reader :source_object

  # @param source_object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object. This is
 used as the source object for
  #                                        copy actions.
  def initialize(source_object)
    @source_object = source_object
  end

  # Copy the source object to the specified target bucket, rename it with the
 target key, and encrypt it.
  #
  # @param target_bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object is copied.
  # @param target_object_key [String] The key to give the copy of the object.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object, nil] The copied object when successful; otherwise,
 nil.
  def copy_object(target_bucket, target_object_key, encryption)
    @source_object.copy_to(bucket: target_bucket.name, key: target_object_key,
 server_side_encryption: encryption)
    target_bucket.object(target_object_key)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't copy #{@source_object.key} to #{target_object_key}. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  source_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1"
  source_key = "my-source-file.txt"
  target_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2"
  target_key = "my-target-file.txt"
  target_encryption = "AES256"

  source_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(source_bucket_name)
  wrapper = ObjectCopyEncryptWrapper.new(source_bucket.object(source_key))
  target_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(target_bucket_name)
```

```
  target_object = wrapper.copy_object(target_bucket, target_key,
 target_encryption)
  return unless target_object

  puts "Copied #{source_key} from #{source_bucket_name} to
 #{target_object.bucket_name}:#{target_object.key} and "\
       "encrypted the target with #{target_object.server_side_encryption}
 encryption."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Copy an object from one bucket to another.
pub async fn copy_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    source_bucket: &str,
    destination_bucket: &str,
    source_object: &str,
    destination_object: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let source_key = format!("{source_bucket}/{source_object}");
    let response = client
        .copy_object()
        .copy_source(&source_key)
        .bucket(destination_bucket)
        .key(destination_object)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    println!(
        "Copied from {source_key} to {destination_bucket}/{destination_object}
 with etag {}",
        response
            .copy_object_result
            .unwrap_or_else(||
 aws_sdk_s3::types::CopyObjectResult::builder().build())
            .e_tag()
            .unwrap_or("missing")
    );
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_s3->copyobject(
          iv_bucket = iv_dest_bucket
          iv_key = iv_dest_object
          iv_copysource = |{ iv_src_bucket }/{ iv_src_object }| ).
        MESSAGE 'Object copied to another bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
        MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func copyFile(from sourceBucket: String, name: String, to destBucket:
 String) async throws {
        let srcUrl = ("\(sourceBucket)/
\(name)").addingPercentEncoding(withAllowedCharacters: .urlPathAllowed)

        let input = CopyObjectInput(
            bucket: destBucket,
            copySource: srcUrl,
            key: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.copyObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Copying an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateBucket` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateBucket`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with S3
- Manage large messages using S3
- Work with versioned objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to create a new Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value representing the success or failure of
        /// the bucket creation process.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new PutBucketRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    UseClientRegion = true,
                };

                var response = await client.PutBucketAsync(request);
                return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
```

```
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Create a bucket with object lock enabled.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <param name="enableObjectLock">True to enable object lock on the
bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithObjectLock(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName} with object lock
{enableObjectLock}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true,
                ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = enableObjectLock,
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function create-bucket
#
# This function creates the specified bucket in the specified AWS Region, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -b bucket_name  -- The name of the bucket to create.
#       -r region_code  -- The code for an AWS Region in which to
#                          create the bucket.
#
```

```
# Returns:
#       The URL of the bucket that was created.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function create_bucket() {
  local bucket_name region_code response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function create_bucket"
    echo "Creates an Amazon S3 bucket. You must supply a bucket name:"
    echo "  -b bucket_name    The name of the bucket. It must be globally
 unique."
    echo "  [-r region_code]    The code for an AWS Region in which the bucket is
 created."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "b:r:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      b) bucket_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      r) region_code="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$bucket_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a bucket name with the -b parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  local bucket_config_arg
  # A location constraint for "us-east-1" returns an error.
  if [[ -n "$region_code" ]] && [[ "$region_code" != "us-east-1" ]]; then
    bucket_config_arg="--create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint=
$region_code"
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Bucket name:   $bucket_name"
  iecho "    Region code:   $region_code"
  iecho ""

  # If the bucket already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
  if (bucket_exists "$bucket_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A bucket with that name already exists. Try again."
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws s3api create-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    $bucket_config_arg)

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-bucket operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::createBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    if (clientConfig.region != "us-east-1") {
        Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketConfiguration createBucketConfig;
        createBucketConfig.SetLocationConstraint(

 Aws::S3::Model::BucketLocationConstraintMapper::GetBucketLocationConstraintForName(
                        clientConfig.region));
        request.SetCreateBucketConfiguration(createBucketConfig);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketOutcome outcome = client.CreateBucket(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: createBucket: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Created bucket " << bucketName <<
                  " in the specified AWS Region." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a bucket

The following `create-bucket` example creates a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api create-bucket \
```

```
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "/amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
}
```

For more information, see Creating a bucket in the *Amazon S3 User Guide*.

Example 2: To create a bucket with owner enforced

The following `create-bucket` example creates a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket` that uses the bucket owner enforced setting for S3 Object Ownership.

```
aws s3api create-bucket \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --region us-east-1 \
    --object-ownership BucketOwnerEnforced
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "/amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
}
```

For more information, see Controlling ownership of objects and disabling ACLs in the *Amazon S3 User Guide*.

Example 3: To create a bucket outside of the ``us-east-1`` region

The following `create-bucket` example creates a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket` in the `eu-west-1` region. Regions outside of `us-east-1` require the appropriate `LocationConstraint` to be specified in order to create the bucket in the desired region.

```
aws s3api create-bucket \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --region eu-west-1 \
    --create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint=eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "Location": "http://amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com/"
}
```

For more information, see Creating a bucket in the *Amazon S3 User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket with default configuration.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
```

```
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// CreateBucket creates a bucket with the specified name in the specified Region.
func (basics BucketBasics) CreateBucket(ctx context.Context, name string, region
 string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(name),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", name)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", name)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(name)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", name)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a bucket with object locking and wait for it to exist.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// CreateBucketWithLock creates a new S3 bucket with optional object locking
 enabled
// and waits for the bucket to exist before returning.
func (actor S3Actions) CreateBucketWithLock(ctx context.Context, bucket string,
 region string, enableObjectLock bool) (string, error) {
 input := &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 }

 if enableObjectLock {
  input.ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = aws.Bool(true)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
```

```
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", bucket)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", bucket)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", bucket)
  }
 }

 return bucket, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket.

```
    /**
     * Creates an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket is
 created and ready
```

```
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure while creating the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> createBucketAsync(String bucketName) {
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        return response.thenCompose(resp -> {
            S3AsyncWaiter s3Waiter = getAsyncClient().waiter();
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
waiterResponseFuture =
                s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            return waiterResponseFuture.thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(headBucketResponse
-> {
                    logger.info(bucketName + " is ready");
                });
            });
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create bucket", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

Create a bucket with object lock enabled.

```
    // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock options.
    public void createBucketWithLockOptions(boolean enableObjectLock, String
bucketName) {
        S3Waiter s3Waiter = getClient().waiter();
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockEnabledForBucket(enableObjectLock)
            .build();
```

```
        getClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
        s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
        System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the bucket.

```
import {
  BucketAlreadyExists,
  BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  S3Client,
  waitUntilBucketExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Create an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Location } = await client.send(
```

```
      new CreateBucketCommand({
        // The name of the bucket. Bucket names are unique and have several other
 constraints.
        // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/
bucketnamingrules.html
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: bucketName });
    console.log(`Bucket created with location ${Location}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof BucketAlreadyExists) {
      console.error(
        `The bucket "${bucketName}" already exists in another AWS account. Bucket
 names must be globally unique.`,
      );
    }
    // WARNING: If you try to create a bucket in the North Virginia region,
    // and you already own a bucket in that region with the same name, this
    // error will not be thrown. Instead, the call will return successfully
    // and the ACL on that bucket will be reset.
    else if (caught instanceof BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou) {
      console.error(
        `The bucket "${bucketName}" already exists in this AWS account.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        CreateBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
```

```
            $this->s3client->createBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CreateBucketConfiguration' => ['LocationConstraint' => $region],
            ]);
            echo "Created bucket named: $this->bucketName \n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to create bucket $this->bucketName with error: " .
 $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket with default settings.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def create(self, region_override=None):
        """
```

```
        Create an Amazon S3 bucket in the default Region for the account or in
 the
        specified Region.

        :param region_override: The Region in which to create the bucket. If this
 is
                                not specified, the Region configured in your
 shared
                                credentials is used.
        """
        if region_override is not None:
            region = region_override
        else:
            region = self.bucket.meta.client.meta.region_name
        try:
            self.bucket.create(CreateBucketConfiguration={"LocationConstraint":
 region})

            self.bucket.wait_until_exists()
            logger.info("Created bucket '%s' in region=%s", self.bucket.name,
 region)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create bucket named '%s' in region=%s.",
                self.bucket.name,
                region,
            )
            raise error
```

Create a versioned bucket with a lifecycle configuration.

```
def create_versioned_bucket(bucket_name, prefix):
    """
    Creates an Amazon S3 bucket, enables it for versioning, and configures a
 lifecycle
    that expires noncurrent object versions after 7 days.

    Adding a lifecycle configuration to a versioned bucket is a best practice.
    It helps prevent objects in the bucket from accumulating a large number of
    noncurrent versions, which can slow down request performance.
```

```
    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
module.

    :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to create.
    :param prefix: Identifies which objects are automatically expired under the
                   configured lifecycle rules.
    :return: The newly created bucket.
    """
    try:
        bucket = s3.create_bucket(
            Bucket=bucket_name,
            CreateBucketConfiguration={
                "LocationConstraint": s3.meta.client.meta.region_name
            },
        )
        logger.info("Created bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou":
            logger.warning("Bucket %s already exists! Using it.", bucket_name)
            bucket = s3.Bucket(bucket_name)
        else:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create bucket %s.", bucket_name)
            raise

    try:
        bucket.Versioning().enable()
        logger.info("Enabled versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't enable versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
        raise

    try:
        expiration = 7
        bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().put(
            LifecycleConfiguration={
                "Rules": [
                    {
                        "Status": "Enabled",
                        "Prefix": prefix,
                        "NoncurrentVersionExpiration": {"NoncurrentDays":
expiration},
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        )
        logger.info(
            "Configured lifecycle to expire noncurrent versions after %s days "
            "on bucket %s.",
            expiration,
            bucket.name,
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.warning(
            "Couldn't configure lifecycle on bucket %s because %s. "
            "Continuing anyway.",
            bucket.name,
            error,
        )

    return bucket
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket actions.
class BucketCreateWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket

  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An Amazon S3 bucket initialized with a name.
 This is a client-side object until
  #                                 create is called.
  def initialize(bucket)
```

```
    @bucket = bucket
  end

  # Creates an Amazon S3 bucket in the specified AWS Region.
  #
  # @param region [String] The Region where the bucket is created.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the bucket is created; otherwise, false.
  def create?(region)
    @bucket.create(create_bucket_configuration: { location_constraint: region })
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't create bucket. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Gets the Region where the bucket is located.
  #
  # @return [String] The location of the bucket.
  def location
    if @bucket.nil?
      'None. You must create a bucket before you can get its location!'
    else
      @bucket.client.get_bucket_location(bucket:
 @bucket.name).location_constraint
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    "Couldn't get the location of #{@bucket.name}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  region = "us-west-2"
  wrapper = BucketCreateWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Bucket.new("amzn-s3-demo-bucket-
#{Random.uuid}"))
  return unless wrapper.create?(region)

  puts "Created bucket #{wrapper.bucket.name}."
  puts "Your bucket's region is: #{wrapper.location}"
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    region: &aws_config::Region,
) -> Result<Option<aws_sdk_s3::operation::create_bucket::CreateBucketOutput>,
 S3ExampleError> {
    let constraint =
 aws_sdk_s3::types::BucketLocationConstraint::from(region.to_string().as_str());
    let cfg = aws_sdk_s3::types::CreateBucketConfiguration::builder()
        .location_constraint(constraint)
        .build();
    let create = client
        .create_bucket()
        .create_bucket_configuration(cfg)
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .send()
        .await;

    // BucketAlreadyExists and BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou are not problems for this
 task.
    create.map(Some).or_else(|err| {
        if err
            .as_service_error()
            .map(|se| se.is_bucket_already_exists() ||
 se.is_bucket_already_owned_by_you())
            == Some(true)
        {
            Ok(None)
        } else {
            Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
```

```
        }
    })
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        " determine our region from our session
        DATA(lv_region) = CONV /aws1/s3_bucketlocationcnstrnt( lo_session-
>get_region( ) ).
        DATA lo_constraint TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf.
        " When in the us-east-1 region, you must not specify a constraint
        " In all other regions, specify the region as the constraint
        IF lv_region = 'us-east-1'.
          CLEAR lo_constraint.
        ELSE.
          lo_constraint = NEW /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf( lv_region ).
        ENDIF.

        lo_s3->createbucket(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            io_createbucketconfiguration  = lo_constraint ).
        MESSAGE 'S3 bucket created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bucketalrdyexists.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bktalrdyownedbyyou.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket already exists and is owned by you.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func createBucket(name: String) async throws {
        var input = CreateBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )

        // For regions other than "us-east-1", you must set the
 locationConstraint in the createBucketConfiguration.
        // For more information, see LocationConstraint in the S3 API guide.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/
API_CreateBucket.html#API_CreateBucket_RequestBody
        if let region = configuration.region {
            if region != "us-east-1" {
                input.createBucketConfiguration =
 S3ClientTypes.CreateBucketConfiguration(locationConstraint:
 S3ClientTypes.BucketLocationConstraint(rawValue: region))
            }
        }

        do {
            _ = try await client.createBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch let error as BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou {
            print("The bucket '\(name)' already exists and is owned by you. You
 may wish to ignore this exception.")
            throw error
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Creating a bucket"))
```

```
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint`.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure the S3 control client to send request to the us-west-2 Region.

```
        suspend fun createS3ControlClient(): S3ControlClient {
            // Configure your S3ControlClient to send requests to US West
(Oregon).
            val s3Control = S3ControlClient.fromEnvironment {
                region = "us-west-2"
            }
            return s3Control
        }
```

Create the Multi-Region Access Point.

```
    suspend fun createMrap(
        s3Control: S3ControlClient,
        accountIdParam: String,
        bucketName1: String,
        bucketName2: String,
        mrapName: String,
```

```
    ): String {
        println("Creating MRAP ...")
        val createMrapResponse: CreateMultiRegionAccessPointResponse =
            s3Control.createMultiRegionAccessPoint {
                accountId = accountIdParam
                clientToken = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
                details {
                    name = mrapName
                    regions = listOf(
                        Region {
                            bucket = bucketName1
                        },
                        Region {
                            bucket = bucketName2
                        },
                    )
                }
            }
        val requestToken: String? = createMrapResponse.requestTokenArn

        // Use the request token to check for the status of the
 CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint operation.
        if (requestToken != null) {
            waitForSucceededStatus(s3Control, requestToken, accountIdParam)
            println("MRAP created")
        }

        val getMrapResponse =
            s3Control.getMultiRegionAccessPoint(
                input = GetMultiRegionAccessPointRequest {
                    accountId = accountIdParam
                    name = mrapName
                },
            )
        val mrapAlias = getMrapResponse.accessPoint?.alias
        return "arn:aws:s3::$accountIdParam:accesspoint/$mrapAlias"
    }
```

Wait for the Multi-Region Access Point to become available.

```
        suspend fun waitForSucceededStatus(
            s3Control: S3ControlClient,
```

```
            requestToken: String,
            accountIdParam: String,
            timeBetweenChecks: Duration = 1.minutes,
        ) {
            var describeResponse: DescribeMultiRegionAccessPointOperationResponse
            describeResponse = s3Control.describeMultiRegionAccessPointOperation(
                input = DescribeMultiRegionAccessPointOperationRequest {
                    accountId = accountIdParam
                    requestTokenArn = requestToken
                },
            )

            var status: String? = describeResponse.asyncOperation?.requestStatus
            while (status != "SUCCEEDED") {
                delay(timeBetweenChecks)
                describeResponse =
s3Control.describeMultiRegionAccessPointOperation(
                    input = DescribeMultiRegionAccessPointOperationRequest {
                        accountId = accountIdParam
                        requestTokenArn = requestToken
                    },
                )
                status = describeResponse.asyncOperation?.requestStatus
                println(status)
            }
        }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Kotlin developer guide.
- For API details, see CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateMultipartUpload` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateMultipartUpload`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Perform a multipart copy
- Use checksums
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create a multipart upload.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return Aws::String: Upload ID or empty string if failed.
*/
Aws::String
AwsDoc::S3::createMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                  Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm
 checksumAlgorithm,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateMultipartUpload(request);

    Aws::String uploadID;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        uploadID = outcome.GetResult().GetUploadId();
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return uploadID;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command creates a multipart upload in the bucket `amzn-s3-demo-bucket` with the key `multipart/01`:

```
aws s3api create-multipart-upload --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key
 'multipart/01'
```

Output:

```
{
    "Bucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "UploadId":
 "dfRtDYU0WWCCcH43C3WFbkRONycyCpTJJvxu2i5GYkZljF.Yxwh6XG7WfS2vC4to6HiV6Yjlx.cph0gtNBtJ8P3
    "Key": "multipart/01"
}
```

The completed file will be named `01` in a folder called `multipart` in the bucket `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`. Save the upload ID, key and bucket name for use with the `upload-part` command.

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;
```

```
    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
```

```
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }
```

```
    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();

    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreatePresignedPost` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePresignedPost`.

.NET

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a presigned POST URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a presigned POST URL with conditions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Client">The Amazon S3 client.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key (path) where the uploaded file
 will be stored.</param>
    /// <param name="expires">When the presigned URL expires.</param>
    /// <param name="fields">Dictionary of fields to add to the form.</param>
    /// <param name="conditions">List of conditions to apply.</param>
    /// <returns>A CreatePresignedPostResponse object with URL and form fields.</
returns>
    public async Task<CreatePresignedPostResponse> CreatePresignedPostAsync(
        IAmazonS3 s3Client,
        string bucketName,
        string objectKey,
        DateTime expires,
        Dictionary<string, string>? fields = null,
        List<S3PostCondition>? conditions = null)
    {
        var request = new CreatePresignedPostRequest
        {
            BucketName = bucketName,
            Key = objectKey,
            Expires = expires
        };

        // Add custom fields if provided
        if (fields != null)
        {
            foreach (var field in fields)
            {
                request.Fields.Add(field.Key, field.Value);
            }
        }

        // Add conditions if provided
        if (conditions != null)
        {
            foreach (var condition in conditions)
            {
                request.Conditions.Add(condition);
            }
```

```
        }

        return await s3Client.CreatePresignedPostAsync(request);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePresignedPost in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucket` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucket`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with S3

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to delete an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to
delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value that represents the success or failure of
        /// the delete operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
```

```
            try
            {
                var request = new DeleteBucketRequest { BucketName =
 bucketName, };

                await client.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting bucket: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function delete_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified bucket.
```

```
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api delete-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api delete-bucket failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {

    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketRequest request;
```

```
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteBucket(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucket: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "The bucket was deleted" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --region us-east-1
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// DeleteBucket deletes a bucket. The bucket must be empty or an error is
 returned.
func (basics BucketBasics) DeleteBucket(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.DeleteBucket(ctx, &s3.DeleteBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)})
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
   err = noBucket
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't delete bucket %v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName, err)
  }
 } else {
```

```
  err = s3.NewBucketNotExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to be deleted.\n",
 bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", bucketName)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucket the name of the bucket to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket
 deletion is successful, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
     * if an error occurs during the deletion process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucketAsync(String bucket) {
        DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucket)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteBucketResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
```

```
        response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
            if (deleteRes != null) {
                logger.info(bucket + " was deleted.");
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during
 bucket deletion", ex);
            }
        });
        return response.thenApply(r -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the bucket.

```
import {
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Delete an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new DeleteBucketCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
  });
```

```
  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Bucket was deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting bucket. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting the bucket. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an empty bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
```

```
            $this->s3client->deleteBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "Deleted bucket $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $this->bucketName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command removes all objects and object versions from the bucket 'test-files' and then deletes the bucket. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation. Note that buckets that are not empty cannot be deleted.

```
Remove-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DeleteBucketContent
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes all objects and object versions from the bucket 'test-files' and then deletes the bucket. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation. Note that buckets that are not empty cannot be deleted.

```
Remove-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DeleteBucketContent
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the bucket. The bucket must be empty or an error is raised.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.delete()
            self.bucket.wait_until_not_exists()
            logger.info("Bucket %s successfully deleted.", self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete bucket %s.", self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket and deletes the bucket.
#
# @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to empty and delete.
def delete_bucket(bucket)
  puts("\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)?
")
  answer = gets.chomp.downcase
  if answer == 'y'
    bucket.objects.batch_delete!
    bucket.delete
    puts("Emptied and deleted bucket #{bucket.name}.\n")
  end
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts("Couldn't empty and delete bucket #{bucket.name}.")
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let resp = client.delete_bucket().bucket(bucket_name).send().await;
    match resp {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(err) => {
            if err
                .as_service_error()
                .and_then(aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata::code)
                == Some("NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Ok(())
            } else {
                Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.

        lo_s3->deletebucket(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Deleted S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func deleteBucket(name: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a bucket"))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an analytics configuration for a bucket

The following `delete-bucket-analytics-configuration` example removes the analytics configuration for the specified bucket and ID.

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-analytics-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --id 1
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command removes the analytics filter with name 'testfilter' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
AnalyticsId 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes the analytics filter with name 'testfilter' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
AnalyticsId 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteBucketCors` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketCors`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a CORS configuration from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to delete the CORS configuration from the bucket.</param>
        private static async Task DeleteCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client
client)
        {
            DeleteCORSConfigurationRequest request = new
DeleteCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
            };
            await client.DeleteCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a Cross-Origin Resource Sharing configuration from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-cors --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete_cors(self):
        """
        Delete the CORS rules from the bucket.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to update.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Cors().delete()
            logger.info("Deleted CORS from bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete CORS from bucket '%s'.",
 self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket CORS configuration.
class BucketCorsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_cors

  # @param bucket_cors [Aws::S3::BucketCors] A bucket CORS object configured with
 an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_cors)
    @bucket_cors = bucket_cors
  end

  # Deletes the CORS configuration of a bucket.
  #
  # @return [Boolean] True if the CORS rules were deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_cors
    @bucket_cors.delete
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't delete CORS rules for #{@bucket_cors.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucketEncryption` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketEncryption`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete the server-side encryption configuration of a bucket

The following `delete-bucket-encryption` example deletes the server-side encryption configuration of the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-encryption \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteBucketEncryption in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This disables the encryption enabled for the S3 bucket provided.

```
Remove-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketEncryption (DeleteBucketEncryption)" on
 target "s3casetestbucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This disables the encryption enabled for the S3 bucket provided.

```
Remove-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketEncryption (DeleteBucketEncryption)" on
 target "s3casetestbucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete the inventory configuration of a bucket

The following `delete-bucket-inventory-configuration` example deletes the inventory configuration with ID 1 for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-inventory-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --id 1
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command removes the invventory named 'testInventoryName' corresponding to the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
InventoryId 'testInventoryName'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration
 (DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration)" on target "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the invventory named 'testInventoryName' corresponding to the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
InventoryId 'testInventoryName'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration
 (DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration)" on target "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteBucketLifecycle` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketLifecycle`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// This method removes the Lifecycle configuration from the named
        /// S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client object used to call
        /// the RemoveLifecycleConfigAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// S3 bucket from which the configuration will be removed.</param>
        public static async Task RemoveLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName)
        {
            var request = new DeleteLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };
            await client.DeleteLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketLifecycle in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a lifecycle configuration from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-lifecycle --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketLifecycle in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete_lifecycle_configuration(self):
        """
        Remove the lifecycle configuration from the specified bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().delete()
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Deleted lifecycle configuration for bucket '%s'.",
self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete lifecycle configuration for bucket '%s'.",
                self.bucket.name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketLifecycle in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a metrics configuration for a bucket

The following `delete-bucket-metrics-configuration` example removes the metrics configuration for the specified bucket and ID.

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-metrics-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --id 123
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command removes the metrics filter with name 'testmetrics' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -MetricsId
 'testmetrics'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes the metrics filter with name 'testmetrics' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -MetricsId
 'testmetrics'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteBucketPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucketPolicy(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketPolicyOutcome outcome =
 client.DeleteBucketPolicy(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucketPolicy: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Policy was deleted from the bucket." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a bucket policy from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-policy --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketPolicyRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DeleteBucketPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName>

                Where:
                    bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to delete the policy from
 (for example, bucket1).""";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Deleting policy from bucket: \"%s\"\n\n", bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteS3BucketPolicy(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the S3 bucket policy for the specified bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the {@link S3Client} instance to use for the operation
```

```
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket for which the policy should be
 deleted
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error deleting the bucket policy
     */
    public static void deleteS3BucketPolicy(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketPolicyRequest delReq = DeleteBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        try {
            s3.deleteBucketPolicy(delReq);
            System.out.println("Done!");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the bucket policy.

```
import {
  DeleteBucketPolicyCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

```
/**
 * Remove the policy from an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteBucketPolicyCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Bucket policy deleted from "${bucketName}".`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting policy from ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting policy from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteS3BucketPolicy(bucketName: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteBucketPolicyRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteBucketPolicy(request)
        println("Done!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command removes the bucket policy associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketPolicy -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes the bucket policy associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketPolicy -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete_policy(self):
        """
        Delete the security policy from the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Policy().delete()
            logger.info("Deleted policy for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete policy for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Wraps an Amazon S3 bucket policy.
class BucketPolicyWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_policy

  # @param bucket_policy [Aws::S3::BucketPolicy] A bucket policy object
 configured with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_policy)
    @bucket_policy = bucket_policy
  end

  def delete_policy
    @bucket_policy.delete
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't delete the policy from #{@bucket_policy.bucket.name}. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucketReplication` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketReplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a replication configuration from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-replication --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketReplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Deletes the replication configuration associated with the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'. Note that this operation requires permission for the s3:DeleteReplicationConfiguration action. You will be prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-S3BucketReplication -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the replication configuration associated with the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'. Note that this operation requires permission for the s3:DeleteReplicationConfiguration action. You will be prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-S3BucketReplication -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteBucketTagging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketTagging`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a tagging configuration from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-tagging --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketTagging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command removes all the tags associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketTagging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketTagging (DeleteBucketTagging)" on target
 "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes all the tags associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketTagging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketTagging (DeleteBucketTagging)" on target
 "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteBucketWebsite` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteBucketWebsite`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucketWebsite(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                     const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketWebsiteOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteBucketWebsite(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucketWebsite: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Website configuration was removed." << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a website configuration from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-bucket-website --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DeleteWebsiteConfiguration {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:     <bucketName>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to delete the website
 configuration from.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Deleting website configuration for Amazon S3 bucket:
 %s\n", bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        deleteBucketWebsiteConfig(s3, bucketName);
        System.out.println("Done!");
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the website configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The {@link S3Client} instance used to interact with Amazon S3.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket for which the website
 configuration should be deleted.
     * @throws S3Exception If an error occurs while deleting the website
 configuration.
     */
    public static void deleteBucketWebsiteConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName)
 {
```

```
        DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest delReq = DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        try {
            s3.deleteBucketWebsite(delReq);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.out.println("Failed to delete website configuration!");
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the website configuration from the bucket.

```
import {
  DeleteBucketWebsiteCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Remove the website configuration for a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
```

```
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteBucketWebsiteCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    // The response code will be successful for both removed configurations and
    // configurations that did not exist in the first place.
    console.log(
      `The bucket "${bucketName}" is not longer configured as a website, or it
 never was.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while removing website configuration from ${bucketName}.
 The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while removing website configuration from ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command disables the static website hosting property of the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketWebsite (DeleteBucketWebsite)" on target
 "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command disables the static website hosting property of the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketWebsite (DeleteBucketWebsite)" on target
 "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity
- Work with versioned objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object in a non-versioned S3 bucket.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to delete an object from a non-versioned Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteObject
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The Main method initializes the necessary variables and then calls
    /// the DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync method to delete the object
    /// named by the keyName parameter.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        const string keyName = "testfile.txt";
```

```
            // If the Amazon S3 bucket is located in an AWS Region other than the
            // Region of the default account, define the AWS Region for the
            // Amazon S3 bucket in your call to the AmazonS3Client constructor.
            // For example RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
            await DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync(client, bucketName,
keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// The DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync takes care of deleting the
        /// desired object from the named bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client used to delete
        /// an object from an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which the
        /// object will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to delete.</param>
        public static async Task DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var deleteObjectRequest = new DeleteObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };

                Console.WriteLine($"Deleting object: {keyName}");
                await client.DeleteObjectAsync(deleteObjectRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Object: {keyName} deleted from
{bucketName}.");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
Message:'{ex.Message}' when deleting an object.");
            }
        }
    }
```

Delete an object in a versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example creates an object in an Amazon Simple Storage Service
    /// (Amazon S3) bucket and then deletes the object version that was
    /// created.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteObjectVersion
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "verstioned-object.txt";

            // If the AWS Region of the default user is different from the AWS
            // Region of the Amazon S3 bucket, pass the AWS Region of the
            // bucket region to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // Define it like this:
            //      RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await CreateAndDeleteObjectVersionAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates and then deletes a versioned object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// create and delete the object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
        /// object will be created and deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The key name of the object to create.</param>
        public static async Task CreateAndDeleteObjectVersionAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
```

```
            {
                // Add a sample object.
                string versionID = await PutAnObject(client, bucketName,
 keyName);

                // Delete the object by specifying an object key and a version
 ID.
                DeleteObjectRequest request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    VersionId = versionID,
                };

                Console.WriteLine("Deleting an object");
                await client.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method is used to create the temporary Amazon S3 object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 object which will be
 used
        /// to create the temporary Amazon S3 object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object
        /// will be created.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the Amazon S3 object co create.</
param>
        /// <returns>The Version ID of the created object.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> PutAnObject(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
            };
```

```
            PutObjectResponse response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
            return response.VersionId;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function delete_item_in_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified file from the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#       $2 - The key (file name) in the bucket to delete.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function delete_item_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local key=$2
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api delete-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --key "$key")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api delete-object operation failed.\n
$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteObject(const Aws::String &objectKey,
                              const Aws::String &fromBucket,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectRequest request;

    request.WithKey(objectKey)
            .WithBucket(fromBucket);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteObject(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteObject: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted the object." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes an object named `test.txt` from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-object --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key test.txt
```

If bucket versioning is enabled, the output will contain the version ID of the delete marker:

```
{
  "VersionId": "9_gKg5vG56F.TTEUdwkxGpJ3tNDlWlGq",
  "DeleteMarker": true
}
```

For more information about deleting objects, see Deleting Objects in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// DeleteObject deletes an object from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string, bypassGovernance bool) (bool, error) {
 deleted := false
 input := &s3.DeleteObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }
```

```
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObject(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "AccessDenied":
    log.Printf("Access denied: cannot delete object %s from %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidArgument":
    if bypassGovernance {
     log.Printf("You cannot specify bypass governance on a bucket without lock
 enabled.")
     err = nil
    }
   }
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: aws.String(key)},
 time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s in bucket %s to be deleted.
\n", key, bucket)
  } else {
   deleted = true
  }
 }
 return deleted, err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an object from an S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
    * @param key        the key (file name) of the object to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object has
been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(String bucketName,
String key) {
       DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(key)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);
       response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
           if (deleteRes != null) {
               logger.info(key + " was deleted");
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during
delete", ex);
           }
       });

       return response.thenApply(r -> null);
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object.

```
import {
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilObjectNotExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Delete one object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilObjectNotExists(
      { client },
      { Bucket: bucketName, Key: key },
    );
    // A successful delete, or a delete for a non-existent object, both return
    // a 204 response code.
    console.log(
      `The object "${key}" from bucket "${bucketName}" was deleted, or it didn't
 exist.`,
    );
```

```
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting object from ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public function deleteObject(string $bucketName, string $fileName, array
 $args = [])
   {
       $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $fileName],
 $args);
       try {
           $this->client->deleteObject($parameters);
           if ($this->verbose) {
```

```
                echo "Deleted the object named: $fileName from $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def delete(self):
```

```
        """
        Deletes the object.
        """
        try:
            self.object.delete()
            self.object.wait_until_not_exists()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
            raise
```

Roll an object back to a previous version by deleting later versions of the object.

```
def rollback_object(bucket, object_key, version_id):
    """
    Rolls back an object to an earlier version by deleting all versions that
    occurred after the specified rollback version.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that holds the object to roll back.
    :param object_key: The object to roll back.
    :param version_id: The version ID to roll back to.
    """
    # Versions must be sorted by last_modified date because delete markers are
    # at the end of the list even when they are interspersed in time.
    versions = sorted(
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key),
        key=attrgetter("last_modified"),
        reverse=True,
    )
```

```
    logger.debug(
        "Got versions:\n%s",
        "\n".join(
            [
                f"\t{version.version_id}, last modified {version.last_modified}"
                for version in versions
            ]
        ),
    )

    if version_id in [ver.version_id for ver in versions]:
        print(f"Rolling back to version {version_id}")
        for version in versions:
            if version.version_id != version_id:
                version.delete()
                print(f"Deleted version {version.version_id}")
            else:
                break

        print(f"Active version is now {bucket.Object(object_key).version_id}")
    else:
        raise KeyError(
            f"{version_id} was not found in the list of versions for "
 f"{object_key}."
        )
```

Revive a deleted object by removing the object's active delete marker.

```
def revive_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Revives a versioned object that was deleted by removing the object's active
    delete marker.
    A versioned object presents as deleted when its latest version is a delete
 marker.
    By removing the delete marker, we make the previous version the latest
 version
    and the object then presents as *not* deleted.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.
```

```
    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to revive.
    """
    # Get the latest version for the object.
    response = s3.meta.client.list_object_versions(
        Bucket=bucket.name, Prefix=object_key, MaxKeys=1
    )

    if "DeleteMarkers" in response:
        latest_version = response["DeleteMarkers"][0]
        if latest_version["IsLatest"]:
            logger.info(
                "Object %s was indeed deleted on %s. Let's revive it.",
                object_key,
                latest_version["LastModified"],
            )
            obj = bucket.Object(object_key)
            obj.Version(latest_version["VersionId"]).delete()
            logger.info(
                "Revived %s, active version is now %s  with body '%s'",
                object_key,
                obj.version_id,
                obj.get()["Body"].read(),
            )
        else:
            logger.warning(
                "Delete marker is not the latest version for %s!", object_key
            )
    elif "Versions" in response:
        logger.warning("Got an active version for %s, nothing to do.",
 object_key)
    else:
        logger.error("Couldn't get any version info for %s.", object_key)
```

Create a Lambda handler that removes a delete marker from an S3 object. This handler can be used to efficiently clean up extraneous delete markers in a versioned bucket.

```
import logging
from urllib import parse
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
logger.setLevel("INFO")

s3 = boto3.client("s3")


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Removes a delete marker from the specified versioned object.

    :param event: The S3 batch event that contains the ID of the delete marker
                  to remove.
    :param context: Context about the event.
    :return: A result structure that Amazon S3 uses to interpret the result of
 the
             operation. When the result code is TemporaryFailure, S3 retries the
             operation.
    """
    # Parse job parameters from Amazon S3 batch operations
    invocation_id = event["invocationId"]
    invocation_schema_version = event["invocationSchemaVersion"]

    results = []
    result_code = None
    result_string = None

    task = event["tasks"][0]
    task_id = task["taskId"]

    try:
        obj_key = parse.unquote(task["s3Key"], encoding="utf-8")
        obj_version_id = task["s3VersionId"]
        bucket_name = task["s3BucketArn"].split(":")[-1]

        logger.info(
            "Got task: remove delete marker %s from object %s.", obj_version_id,
 obj_key
        )

        try:
```

```
            # If this call does not raise an error, the object version is not a
 delete
            # marker and should not be deleted.
            response = s3.head_object(
                Bucket=bucket_name, Key=obj_key, VersionId=obj_version_id
            )
            result_code = "PermanentFailure"
            result_string = (
                f"Object {obj_key}, ID {obj_version_id} is not " f"a delete
 marker."
            )

            logger.debug(response)
            logger.warning(result_string)
        except ClientError as error:
            delete_marker = error.response["ResponseMetadata"]
["HTTPHeaders"].get(
                "x-amz-delete-marker", "false"
            )
            if delete_marker == "true":
                logger.info(
                    "Object %s, version %s is a delete marker.", obj_key,
 obj_version_id
                )
                try:
                    s3.delete_object(
                        Bucket=bucket_name, Key=obj_key, VersionId=obj_version_id
                    )
                    result_code = "Succeeded"
                    result_string = (
                        f"Successfully removed delete marker "
                        f"{obj_version_id} from object {obj_key}."
                    )
                    logger.info(result_string)
                except ClientError as error:
                    # Mark request timeout as a temporary failure so it will be
 retried.
                    if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RequestTimeout":
                        result_code = "TemporaryFailure"
                        result_string = (
                            f"Attempt to remove delete marker from  "
                            f"object {obj_key} timed out."
                        )
                        logger.info(result_string)
```

```
                    else:
                        raise
            else:
                raise ValueError(
                    f"The x-amz-delete-marker header is either not "
                    f"present or is not 'true'."
                )
    except Exception as error:
        # Mark all other exceptions as permanent failures.
        result_code = "PermanentFailure"
        result_string = str(error)
        logger.exception(error)
    finally:
        results.append(
            {
                "taskId": task_id,
                "resultCode": result_code,
                "resultString": result_string,
            }
        )
    return {
        "invocationSchemaVersion": invocation_schema_version,
        "treatMissingKeysAs": "PermanentFailure",
        "invocationId": invocation_id,
        "results": results,
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Delete an object from a bucket.
pub async fn remove_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    client
        .delete_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // There are no modeled errors to handle when deleting an object.

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_s3->deleteobject(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            iv_key = iv_object_key ).
        MESSAGE 'Object deleted from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func deleteFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteObjectTagging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteObjectTagging`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete the tag sets of an object

The following `delete-object-tagging` example deletes the tag with the specified key from the object `doc1.rtf`.

```
aws s3api delete-object-tagging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key doc1.rtf
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteObjectTagging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command removes all the tags associated with the object with key 'testfile.txt' in the given S3 Bucket.

```
Remove-S3ObjectTagSet -Key 'testfile.txt' -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
Select '^Key'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3ObjectTagSet (DeleteObjectTagging)" on target
 "testfile.txt".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
testfile.txt
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjectTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes all the tags associated with the object with key 'testfile.txt' in the given S3 Bucket.

```
Remove-S3ObjectTagSet -Key 'testfile.txt' -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
Select '^Key'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3ObjectTagSet (DeleteObjectTagging)" on target
 "testfile.txt".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
testfile.txt
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjectTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteObjects` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteObjects`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Delete all objects in a bucket
- Get started with S3

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete all objects in an S3 bucket.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Delete all of the objects stored in an existing Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which the
        /// contents will be deleted.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value that represents the success or failure of
        /// deleting all of the objects in the bucket.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBucketContentsAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName)
        {
            // Iterate over the contents of the bucket and delete all objects.
            var request = new ListObjectsV2Request
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };

            try
            {
                ListObjectsV2Response response;

                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);
                    response.S3Objects
                        .ForEach(async obj => await
client.DeleteObjectAsync(bucketName, obj.Key));

                    // If the response is truncated, set the request
ContinuationToken
                    // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
                    request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
                }
                while (response.IsTruncated);

                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting objects: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Delete multiple objects in a non-versioned S3 bucket.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to delete multiple objects from an Amazon Simple
/// Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteMultipleObjects
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The Main method initializes the Amazon S3 client and the name of
    /// the bucket and then passes those values to MultiObjectDeleteAsync.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        // If the Amazon S3 bucket from which you wish to delete objects is
not
        // located in the same AWS Region as the default user, define the
        // AWS Region for the Amazon S3 bucket as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        await MultiObjectDeleteAsync(s3Client, bucketName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method uses the passed Amazon S3 client to first create and then
    /// delete three files from the named bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
    /// Amazon S3 methods.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where
objects
    /// will be created and then deleted.</param>
    public static async Task MultiObjectDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
```

```
        {
            // Create three sample objects which we will then delete.
            var keysAndVersions = await PutObjectsAsync(client, 3, bucketName);

            // Now perform the multi-object delete, passing the key names and
            // version IDs. Since we are working with a non-versioned bucket,
            // the object keys collection includes null version IDs.
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest = new
DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keysAndVersions,
            };

            // You can add a specific object key to the delete request using the
            // AddKey method of the multiObjectDeleteRequest.
            try
            {
                DeleteObjectsResponse response = await
client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted all the {0} items",
response.DeletedObjects.Count);
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException e)
            {
                PrintDeletionErrorStatus(e);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Prints the list of errors raised by the call to DeleteObjectsAsync.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="ex">A collection of exceptions returned by the call to
        /// DeleteObjectsAsync.</param>
        public static void PrintDeletionErrorStatus(DeleteObjectsException ex)
        {
            DeleteObjectsResponse errorResponse = ex.Response;
            Console.WriteLine("x {0}", errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted
{errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count}.");
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects failed to delete =
{errorResponse.DeleteErrors.Count}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Printing error data...");
            foreach (DeleteError deleteError in errorResponse.DeleteErrors)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Object Key:
{deleteError.Key}\t{deleteError.Code}\t{deleteError.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates simple text file objects that can be used in
        /// the delete method.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon S3 client used to call
PutObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="number">The number of objects to create.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the objects
        /// will be created.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of keys (object keys) and versions that the calling
        /// method will use to delete the newly created files.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<KeyVersion>> PutObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3
client, int number, string bucketName)
        {
            List<KeyVersion> keys = new List<KeyVersion>();
            for (int i = 0; i < number; i++)
            {
                string key = "ExampleObject-" + new System.Random().Next();
                PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = key,
                    ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
                };

                PutObjectResponse response = await
client.PutObjectAsync(request);

                // For non-versioned bucket operations, we only need the
                // object key.
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = key,
                };
                keys.Add(keyVersion);
            }
```

```
            return keys;
        }
    }
```

Delete multiple objects in a versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to delete objects in a version-enabled Amazon
    /// Simple StorageService (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteMultipleObjects
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            // If the AWS Region for your Amazon S3 bucket is different from
            // the AWS Region of the default user, define the AWS Region for
            // the Amazon S3 bucket and pass it to the client constructor
            // like this:
            // RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
            IAmazonS3 s3Client;

            s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            await DeleteMultipleObjectsFromVersionedBucketAsync(s3Client,
bucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method removes multiple versions and objects from a
        /// version-enabled Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
```

```
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        public static async Task
DeleteMultipleObjectsFromVersionedBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            // Delete objects (specifying object version in the request).
            await DeleteObjectVersionsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Delete objects (without specifying object version in the request).
            var deletedObjects = await DeleteObjectsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Additional exercise - remove the delete markers Amazon S3 returned
from
            // the preceding response. This results in the objects reappearing
            // in the bucket (you can verify the appearance/disappearance of
            // objects in the console).
            await RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync(client, bucketName, deletedObjects);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates and then deletes non-versioned Amazon S3 objects and then
deletes
        /// them again. The method returns a list of the Amazon S3 objects
deleted.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PubObjectsAsync and NonVersionedDeleteAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the objects
        /// will be created and then deleted.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of DeletedObjects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<DeletedObject>>
DeleteObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName)
        {
            // Upload the sample objects.
            var keysAndVersions2 = await PutObjectsAsync(client, bucketName, 3);

            // Delete objects using only keys. Amazon S3 creates a delete marker
and
            // returns its version ID in the response.
```

```
            List<DeletedObject> deletedObjects = await
NonVersionedDeleteAsync(client, bucketName, keysAndVersions2);
            return deletedObjects;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates several temporary objects and then deletes them.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task DeleteObjectVersionsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName)
        {
            // Upload the sample objects.
            var keysAndVersions1 = await PutObjectsAsync(client, bucketName, 3);

            // Delete the specific object versions.
            await VersionedDeleteAsync(client, bucketName, keysAndVersions1);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of information about deleted files to the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="e">Error information from the delete process.</param>
        private static void DisplayDeletionErrors(DeleteObjectsException e)
        {
            var errorResponse = e.Response;
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects successfully deleted =
{errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count}");
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects failed to delete =
{errorResponse.DeleteErrors.Count}");
            Console.WriteLine("Printing error data...");
            foreach (var deleteError in errorResponse.DeleteErrors)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Object Key:
{deleteError.Key}\t{deleteError.Code}\t{deleteError.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Delete multiple objects from a version-enabled bucket.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="keys">A list of key names for the objects to delete.</
param>
        private static async Task VersionedDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, List<KeyVersion> keys)
        {
            var multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keys, // This includes the object keys and specific
 version IDs.
            };

            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Executing VersionedDelete...");
                DeleteObjectsResponse response = await
 client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted all the
 {response.DeletedObjects.Count} items");
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple objects from a non-versioned Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="keys">A list of key names for the objects to delete.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of the deleted objects.</returns>
```

```
        private static async Task<List<DeletedObject>>
NonVersionedDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName, List<KeyVersion>
keys)
        {
            // Create a request that includes only the object key names.
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest = new
DeleteObjectsRequest();
            multiObjectDeleteRequest.BucketName = bucketName;

            foreach (var key in keys)
            {
                multiObjectDeleteRequest.AddKey(key.Key);
            }

            // Execute DeleteObjectsAsync.
            // The DeleteObjectsAsync method adds a delete marker for each
            // object deleted. You can verify that the objects were removed
            // using the Amazon S3 console.
            DeleteObjectsResponse response;
            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Executing NonVersionedDelete...");
                response = await
client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted all the {0} items",
response.DeletedObjects.Count);
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
                throw; // Some deletions failed. Investigate before continuing.
            }

            // This response contains the DeletedObjects list which we use to
delete the delete markers.
            return response.DeletedObjects;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the markers left after deleting the temporary objects.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
```

```
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="deletedObjects">A list of the objects that were
deleted.</param>
        private static async Task RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, List<DeletedObject> deletedObjects)
        {
            var keyVersionList = new List<KeyVersion>();

            foreach (var deletedObject in deletedObjects)
            {
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = deletedObject.Key,
                    VersionId = deletedObject.DeleteMarkerVersionId,
                };
                keyVersionList.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            // Create another request to delete the delete markers.
            var multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keyVersionList,
            };

            // Now, delete the delete marker to bring your objects back to the
bucket.
            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Removing the delete markers .....");
                var deleteObjectResponse = await
client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted the
{deleteObjectResponse.DeletedObjects.Count} delete markers");
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Create temporary Amazon S3 objects to show how object deletion wors
 in an
        /// Amazon S3 bucket with versioning enabled.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// PutObjectAsync to create temporary objects for the example.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the S3
        /// bucket where we will create the temporary objects.</param>
        /// <param name="number">The number of temporary objects to create.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of the KeyVersion objects.</returns>
        private static async Task<List<KeyVersion>> PutObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName, int number)
        {
            var keys = new List<KeyVersion>();

            for (var i = 0; i < number; i++)
            {
                string key = "ObjectToDelete-" + new System.Random().Next();
                PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = key,
                    ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
                };

                var response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = key,
                    VersionId = response.VersionId,
                };

                keys.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            return keys;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function delete_items_in_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified list of keys from the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#       $2 - A list of keys in the bucket to delete.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local keys=$2
  local response

  # Create the JSON for the items to delete.
  local delete_items
  delete_items="{\"Objects\":["
  for key in $keys; do
    delete_items="$delete_items{\"Key\": \"$key\"},"
```

```
  done
  delete_items=${delete_items%?} # Remove the final comma.
  delete_items="$delete_items]}"

  response=$(aws s3api delete-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --delete "$delete_items")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api delete-object operation failed.\n
$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjects(const std::vector<Aws::String> &objectKeys,
                               const Aws::String &fromBucket,
                               const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsRequest request;

    Aws::S3::Model::Delete deleteObject;
    for (const Aws::String &objectKey: objectKeys) {

 deleteObject.AddObjects(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectIdentifier().WithKey(objectKey));
    }
```

```
    request.SetDelete(deleteObject);
    request.SetBucket(fromBucket);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteObjects(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error deleting objects. " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted the objects.";
        for (size_t i = 0; i < objectKeys.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << objectKeys[i];
            if (i < objectKeys.size() - 1) {
                std::cout << ", ";
            }
        }

        std::cout << " from bucket " << fromBucket << "." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes an object from a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api delete-objects --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --delete file://delete.json
```

`delete.json` is a JSON document in the current directory that specifies the object to delete:

```
{
  "Objects": [
```

```
    {
      "Key": "test1.txt"
    }
  ],
  "Quiet": false
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Deleted": [
        {
            "DeleteMarkerVersionId": "mYAT5Mc6F7aeUL8SS7FAAqUPO1koHwzU",
            "Key": "test1.txt",
            "DeleteMarker": true
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// DeleteObjects deletes a list of objects from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucket string, objects
 []types.ObjectIdentifier, bypassGovernance bool) error {
 if len(objects) == 0 {
  return nil
 }

 input := s3.DeleteObjectsInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Delete: &types.Delete{
   Objects: objects,
   Quiet:   aws.Bool(true),
  },
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 delOut, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObjects(ctx, &input)
 if err != nil || len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
  log.Printf("Error deleting objects from bucket %s.\n", bucket)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
  } else if len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
   for _, outErr := range delOut.Errors {
    log.Printf("%s: %s\n", *outErr.Key, *outErr.Message)
   }
```

```
    err = fmt.Errorf("%s", *delOut.Errors[0].Message)
   }
  } else {
   for _, delObjs := range delOut.Deleted {
    err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
     ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: delObjs.Key},
  time.Minute)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to be deleted.\n",
  *delObjs.Key)
    } else {
     log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", *delObjs.Key)
    }
   }
  }
  return err
 }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Delete;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
```

```
import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class DeleteMultiObjects {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <bucketName>

            Where:
               bucketName - the Amazon S3 bucket name.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        deleteBucketObjects(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes multiple objects from an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 An Amazon S3 client object.
     * @param bucketName The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to delete objects from.
     */
    public static void deleteBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
```

```
        // Upload three sample objects to the specfied Amazon S3 bucket.
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> keys = new ArrayList<>();
        PutObjectRequest putOb;
        ObjectIdentifier objectId;

        for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
            String keyName = "delete object example " + i;
            objectId = ObjectIdentifier.builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromString(keyName));
            keys.add(objectId);
        }

        System.out.println(keys.size() + " objects successfully created.");

        // Delete multiple objects in one request.
        Delete del = Delete.builder()
            .objects(keys)
            .build();

        try {
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest =
 DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .delete(del)
                .build();

            s3.deleteObjects(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
            System.out.println("Multiple objects are deleted!");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete multiple objects.

```
import {
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilObjectNotExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Delete multiple objects from an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, keys: string[] }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, keys }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Deleted } = await client.send(
      new DeleteObjectsCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Delete: {
          Objects: keys.map((k) => ({ Key: k })),
        },
      }),
    );
    for (const key in keys) {
      await waitUntilObjectNotExists(
        { client },
```

```
        { Bucket: bucketName, Key: key },
      );
    }
    console.log(
      `Successfully deleted ${Deleted.length} objects from S3 bucket. Deleted
 objects:`,
    );
    console.log(Deleted.map((d) => ` • ${d.Key}`).join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting objects from ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting objects from ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteBucketObjects(
```

```
    bucketName: String,
    objectName: String,
) {
    val objectId =
        ObjectIdentifier {
            key = objectName
        }

    val delOb =
        Delete {
            objects = listOf(objectId)
        }

    val request =
        DeleteObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            delete = delOb
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteObjects(request)
        println("$objectName was deleted from $bucketName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a set of objects from a list of keys.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
```

```
        try {
            $objects = [];
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
                $objects[] = [
                    'Key' => $content['Key'],
                ];
            }
            $this->s3client->deleteObjects([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Delete' => [
                    'Objects' => $objects,
                ],
            ]);
            $check = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            if (isset($check['Contents']) && count($check['Contents']) > 0) {
                throw new Exception("Bucket wasn't empty.");
            }
            echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $this->bucketName with error:
" . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command removes the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files". You are prompted for confirmation before the command executes; to suppress the prompt use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command removes the specified version of object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files", assuming the bucket has been configured to enable object versions.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -VersionId
 HLbxnx6V9omT6AQYVpks8mmFKQcejpqt
```

Example 3: This command removes objects "sample1.txt", "sample2.txt" and "sample3.txt" from bucket "test-files" as a single batch operation. The service response will list all keys processed, regardless of the success or error status of the deletion. To obtain only errors for keys that were not able to be processed by the service add the -ReportErrorsOnly parameter (this parameter can also be specified with the alias -Quiet.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyCollection @( "sample1.txt",
 "sample2.txt", "sample3.txt" )
```

Example 4: This example uses an inline expression with the -KeyCollection parameter to obtain the keys of the objects to delete. Get-S3Object returns a collection of Amazon.S3.Model.S3Object instances, each of which has a Key member of type string identifying the object.

```
Remove-S3Object -bucketname "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -KeyCollection (Get-S3Object
 "test-files" -KeyPrefix "prefix/subprefix" | select -ExpandProperty Key)
```

Example 5: This example obtains all objects that have a key prefix "prefix/subprefix" in the bucket and deletes them. Note that the incoming objects are processed one at a time. For large collections consider passing the collection to the cmdlet's -InputObject (alias -S3ObjectCollection) parameter to enable the deletion to occur as a batch with a single call to the service.

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -KeyPrefix "prefix/subprefix" |
 Remove-S3Object -Force
```

Example 6: This example pipes a collection of Amazon.S3.Model.S3ObjectVersion instances that represent delete markers to the cmdlet for deletion. Note that the incoming objects are processed one at a time. For large collections consider passing the collection to the cmdlet's -InputObject (alias -S3ObjectCollection) parameter to enable the deletion to occur as a batch with a single call to the service.

```
(Get-S3Version -BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket").Versions | Where
 {$_.IsDeleteMarker -eq "True"} | Remove-S3Object -Force
```

Example 7: This script shows how to perform a batch delete of a set of objects (in this case delete markers) by constructing an array of objects to be used with the -KeyAndVersionCollection parameter.

```
$keyVersions = @()
$markers = (Get-S3Version -BucketName $BucketName).Versions | Where
 {$_.IsDeleteMarker -eq "True"}
foreach ($marker in $markers) { $keyVersions += @{ Key = $marker.Key; VersionId =
 $marker.VersionId } }
Remove-S3Object -BucketName $BucketName -KeyAndVersionCollection $keyVersions -
Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files". You are prompted for confirmation before the command executes; to suppress the prompt use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command removes the specified version of object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files", assuming the bucket has been configured to enable object versions.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -VersionId
 HLbxnx6V9omT6AQYVpks8mmFKQcejpqt
```

Example 3: This command removes objects "sample1.txt", "sample2.txt" and "sample3.txt" from bucket "test-files" as a single batch operation. The service response will list all keys processed, regardless of the success or error status of the deletion. To obtain only errors for keys that were not able to be processed by the service add the -ReportErrorsOnly parameter (this parameter can also be specified with the alias -Quiet.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyCollection @( "sample1.txt",
 "sample2.txt", "sample3.txt" )
```

Example 4: This example uses an inline expression with the -KeyCollection parameter to obtain the keys of the objects to delete. Get-S3Object returns a collection of

Amazon.S3.Model.S3Object instances, each of which has a Key member of type string identifying the object.

```
Remove-S3Object -bucketname "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -KeyCollection (Get-S3Object
 "test-files" -KeyPrefix "prefix/subprefix" | select -ExpandProperty Key)
```

Example 5: This example obtains all objects that have a key prefix "prefix/subprefix" in the bucket and deletes them. Note that the incoming objects are processed one at a time. For large collections consider passing the collection to the cmdlet's -InputObject (alias -S3ObjectCollection) parameter to enable the deletion to occur as a batch with a single call to the service.

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -KeyPrefix "prefix/subprefix" |
 Remove-S3Object -Force
```

Example 6: This example pipes a collection of Amazon.S3.Model.S3ObjectVersion instances that represent delete markers to the cmdlet for deletion. Note that the incoming objects are processed one at a time. For large collections consider passing the collection to the cmdlet's -InputObject (alias -S3ObjectCollection) parameter to enable the deletion to occur as a batch with a single call to the service.

```
(Get-S3Version -BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket").Versions | Where
 {$_.IsDeleteMarker -eq "True"} | Remove-S3Object -Force
```

Example 7: This script shows how to perform a batch delete of a set of objects (in this case delete markers) by constructing an array of objects to be used with the -KeyAndVersionCollection parameter.

```
$keyVersions = @()
$markers = (Get-S3Version -BucketName $BucketName).Versions | Where
 {$_.IsDeleteMarker -eq "True"}
foreach ($marker in $markers) { $keyVersions += @{ Key = $marker.Key; VersionId =
 $marker.VersionId } }
Remove-S3Object -BucketName $BucketName -KeyAndVersionCollection $keyVersions -
Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a set of objects by using a list of object keys.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    @staticmethod
    def delete_objects(bucket, object_keys):
        """
        Removes a list of objects from a bucket.
        This operation is done as a batch in a single request.

        :param bucket: The bucket that contains the objects. This is a Boto3
 Bucket
                       resource.
        :param object_keys: The list of keys that identify the objects to remove.
        :return: The response that contains data about which objects were deleted
                 and any that could not be deleted.
        """
        try:
            response = bucket.delete_objects(
                Delete={"Objects": [{"Key": key} for key in object_keys]}
            )
            if "Deleted" in response:
```

```
                logger.info(
                    "Deleted objects '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                    [del_obj["Key"] for del_obj in response["Deleted"]],
                    bucket.name,
                )
            if "Errors" in response:
                logger.warning(
                    "Could not delete objects '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                    [
                        f"{del_obj['Key']}: {del_obj['Code']}"
                        for del_obj in response["Errors"]
                    ],
                    bucket.name,
                )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete any objects from bucket %s.",
 bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

Delete all objects in a bucket.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    @staticmethod
    def empty_bucket(bucket):
        """
        Remove all objects from a bucket.
```

```
        :param bucket: The bucket to empty. This is a Boto3 Bucket resource.
        """
        try:
            bucket.objects.delete()
            logger.info("Emptied bucket '%s'.", bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't empty bucket '%s'.", bucket.name)
            raise
```

Permanently delete a versioned object by deleting all of its versions.

```
def permanently_delete_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Permanently deletes a versioned object by deleting all of its versions.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to delete.
    """
    try:
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key).delete()
        logger.info("Permanently deleted all versions of object %s.", object_key)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete all versions of %s.", object_key)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket and deletes the bucket.
#
# @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to empty and delete.
def delete_bucket(bucket)
  puts("\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)?
")
  answer = gets.chomp.downcase
  if answer == 'y'
    bucket.objects.batch_delete!
    bucket.delete
    puts("Emptied and deleted bucket #{bucket.name}.\n")
  end
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts("Couldn't empty and delete bucket #{bucket.name}.")
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Delete the objects in a bucket.
pub async fn delete_objects(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    objects_to_delete: Vec<String>,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    // Push into a mut vector to use `?` early return errors while building
 object keys.
    let mut delete_object_ids: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::ObjectIdentifier> = vec![];
    for obj in objects_to_delete {
        let obj_id = aws_sdk_s3::types::ObjectIdentifier::builder()
            .key(obj)
            .build()
            .map_err(|err| {
                S3ExampleError::new(format!("Failed to build key for
 delete_object: {err:?}"))
            })?;
        delete_object_ids.push(obj_id);
    }

    client
        .delete_objects()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .delete(
            aws_sdk_s3::types::Delete::builder()
                .set_objects(Some(delete_object_ids))
                .build()
                .map_err(|err| {
                    S3ExampleError::new(format!("Failed to build delete_object
 input {err:?}"))
                })?,
        )
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func deleteObjects(bucket: String, keys: [String]) async throws {
        let input = DeleteObjectsInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            delete: S3ClientTypes.Delete(
                objects: keys.map { S3ClientTypes.ObjectIdentifier(key: $0) },
                quiet: true
            )
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteObjects(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteObjects:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeletePublicAccessBlock` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePublicAccessBlock`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete the block public access configuration for a bucket

The following `delete-public-access-block` example removes the block public access configuration on the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api delete-public-access-block \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeletePublicAccessBlock in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command turns off the block public access setting for the given bucket.

```
Remove-S3PublicAccessBlock -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Force -Select
 '^BucketName'
```

Output:

```
amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeletePublicAccessBlock in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command turns off the block public access setting for the given bucket.

```
Remove-S3PublicAccessBlock -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Force -Select
 '^BucketName'
```

Output:

```
amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeletePublicAccessBlock in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the accelerate configuration of a bucket

The following `get-bucket-accelerate-configuration` example retrieves the accelerate configuration for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-accelerate-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Status": "Enabled"
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the value Enabled, if the transfer acceleration settings is enabled for the bucket specified.

```
Get-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Enabled
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the value Enabled, if the transfer acceleration settings is enabled for the bucket specified.

```
Get-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Enabled
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketAcl` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketAcl`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Check if a bucket exists
- Manage access control lists (ACLs)

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Get the access control list (ACL) for the new bucket.
```

```
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to get the
        /// access control list (ACL) of the bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">The name of the newly created bucket.</
param>
        /// <returns>An S3AccessControlList.</returns>
        public static async Task<S3AccessControlList>
 GetACLForBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string newBucketName)
        {
            // Retrieve bucket ACL to show that the ACL was properly applied to
            // the new bucket.
            GetACLResponse getACLResponse = await client.GetACLAsync(new
 GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = newBucketName,
            });

            return getACLResponse.AccessControlList;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getBucketAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketAclRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetBucketAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getBucketAcl: "
                  << err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants =
                outcome.GetResult().GetGrants();

        for (auto it = grants.begin(); it != grants.end(); it++) {
            Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant = *it;
            Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee = grant.GetGrantee();

            std::cout << "For bucket " << bucketName << ": "
                      << std::endl << std::endl;

            if (grantee.TypeHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Type:          "
                          << getGranteeTypeString(grantee.GetType()) <<
std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.DisplayNameHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Display name:  "
                          << grantee.GetDisplayName() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.EmailAddressHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Email address: "
                          << grantee.GetEmailAddress() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.IDHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "ID:            "
                          << grantee.GetID() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.URIHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "URI:           "
                          << grantee.GetURI() << std::endl;
            }
```

```
            std::cout << "Permission:    " <<
                      getPermissionString(grant.GetPermission()) <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable
 string.
/*!
 \param type: Type enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string.
*/

Aws::String getGranteeTypeString(const Aws::S3::Model::Type &type) {
    switch (type) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail:
            return "Email address of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser:
            return "Canonical user ID of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group:
            return "Predefined Amazon S3 group";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET:
            return "Not set";
        default:
            return "Type unknown";
    }
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable
 string.
/*!
 \param permission: Permission enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string.
*/

Aws::String getPermissionString(const Aws::S3::Model::Permission &permission) {
    switch (permission) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL:
            return "Can list objects in this bucket, create/overwrite/delete "
                   "objects in this bucket, and read/write this "
```

```
                    "bucket's permissions";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET:
            return "Permission not set";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ:
            return "Can list objects in this bucket";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP:
            return "Can read this bucket's permissions";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE:
            return "Can create, overwrite, and delete objects in this bucket";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP:
            return "Can write this bucket's permissions";
        default:
            return "Permission unknown";
    }

    return "Permission unknown";
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the access control list for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-acl --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Owner": {
        "DisplayName": "my-username",
        "ID": "7009a8971cd538e11f6b6606438875e7c86c5b672f46db45460ddcd087d36c32"
    },
    "Grants": [
        {
            "Grantee": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
```

```
                "ID":
 "7009a8971cd538e11f6b6606438875e7c86c5b672f46db45460ddcd087d36c32"
            },
            "Permission": "FULL_CONTROL"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAclRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAclResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Grant;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class GetAcl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <objectKey>

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to get the access control list
(ACL) for.
              objectKey - The object to get the ACL for.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String objectKey = args[1];
        System.out.println("Retrieving ACL for object: " + objectKey);
        System.out.println("in bucket: " + bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getBucketACL(s3, objectKey, bucketName);
        s3.close();
        System.out.println("Done!");
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the Access Control List (ACL) for an object in an Amazon S3
bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service.
     * @param objectKey The key of the object for which the ACL is to be
retrieved.
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket containing the object.
     * @return The ID of the grantee who has permission on the object, or an
empty string if an error occurs.
     */
    public static String getBucketACL(S3Client s3, String objectKey, String
bucketName) {
        try {
```

```
            GetObjectAclRequest aclReq = GetObjectAclRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

            GetObjectAclResponse aclRes = s3.getObjectAcl(aclReq);
            List<Grant> grants = aclRes.grants();
            String grantee = "";
            for (Grant grant : grants) {
                System.out.format("  %s: %s\n", grant.grantee().id(),
 grant.permission());
                grantee = grant.grantee().id();
            }

            return grantee;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the ACL permissions.

```
import {
  GetBucketAclCommand,
  S3Client,
```

```
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Retrieves the Access Control List (ACL) for an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetBucketAclCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`ACL for bucket "${bucketName}":`);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(response, null, 2));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting ACL for ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting ACL for ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command gets the details of the object owner of the S3 object.

```
(Get-S3BucketACL -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select *).Owner
```

Output:

```
DisplayName Id
----------- --
testusername
 9988776a6554433d22f1100112e334acb45566778899009e9887bd7f66c5f544
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name
```

```
    def get_acl(self):
        """
        Get the ACL of the bucket.

        :return: The ACL of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.bucket.Acl()
            logger.info(
                "Got ACL for bucket %s. Owner is %s.", self.bucket.name,
 acl.owner
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get ACL for bucket %s.", self.bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return acl
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the analytics configuration for a bucket with a specific ID

The following `get-bucket-analytics-configuration` example displays the analytics configuration for the specified bucket and ID.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-analytics-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --id 1
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "AnalyticsConfiguration": {
        "StorageClassAnalysis": {},
        "Id": "1"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the details of the analytics filter with the name 'testfilter' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -AnalyticsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details of the analytics filter with the name 'testfilter' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -AnalyticsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketCors` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketCors`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the CORS configuration applied to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to retrieve the CORS configuration.</param>
        /// <returns>The created CORS configuration object.</returns>
        private static async Task<CORSConfiguration>
RetrieveCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client client)
        {
            GetCORSConfigurationRequest request = new
GetCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
            };
            var response = await client.GetCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
            var configuration = response.Configuration;
            PrintCORSRules(configuration);
            return configuration;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the Cross-Origin Resource Sharing configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-cors --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "CORSRules": [
        {
            "AllowedHeaders": [
                "*"
            ],
            "ExposeHeaders": [
                "x-amz-server-side-encryption"
            ],
            "AllowedMethods": [
                "PUT",
                "POST",
                "DELETE"
            ],
            "MaxAgeSeconds": 3000,
            "AllowedOrigins": [
                "http://www.example.com"
            ]
        },
        {
            "AllowedHeaders": [
                "Authorization"
            ],
            "MaxAgeSeconds": 3000,
            "AllowedMethods": [
                "GET"
            ],
            "AllowedOrigins": [
                "*"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the CORS policy for the bucket.

```
import {
  GetBucketCorsCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log the Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) configuration information
 * set for the bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new GetBucketCorsCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
  });

  try {
    const { CORSRules } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(CORSRules));
    CORSRules.forEach((cr, i) => {
      console.log(
        `\nCORSRule ${i + 1}`,
        `\n${"-".repeat(10)}`,
        `\nAllowedHeaders: ${cr.AllowedHeaders}`,
        `\nAllowedMethods: ${cr.AllowedMethods}`,
        `\nAllowedOrigins: ${cr.AllowedOrigins}`,
        `\nExposeHeaders: ${cr.ExposeHeaders}`,
        `\nMaxAgeSeconds: ${cr.MaxAgeSeconds}`,
      );
    });
```

```
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting bucket CORS rules for ${bucketName}. The
 bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting bucket CORS rules for ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
```

```
                        that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def get_cors(self):
        """
        Get the CORS rules for the bucket.

        :return The CORS rules for the specified bucket.
        """
        try:
            cors = self.bucket.Cors()
            logger.info(
                "Got CORS rules %s for bucket '%s'.", cors.cors_rules,
self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(("Couldn't get CORS for bucket %s.",
self.bucket.name))
            raise
        else:
            return cors
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket CORS configuration.
```

```
class BucketCorsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_cors

  # @param bucket_cors [Aws::S3::BucketCors] A bucket CORS object configured with
 an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_cors)
    @bucket_cors = bucket_cors
  end

  # Gets the CORS configuration of a bucket.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::Type::GetBucketCorsOutput, nil] The current CORS
 configuration for the bucket.
  def cors
    @bucket_cors.data
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get CORS configuration for #{@bucket_cors.bucket.name}. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
    nil
  end

end
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `GetBucketEncryption` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketEncryption`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get and print the encryption settings of a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task GetEncryptionSettings(string bucketName)
    {
        // Check and print the bucket encryption settings.
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting encryption settings for bucket
{bucketName}.");

        try
        {
            var settings =
                await _s3Client.GetBucketEncryptionAsync(
                    new GetBucketEncryptionRequest() { BucketName =
bucketName });

            foreach (var encryptionSettings in
settings?.ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration?.ServerSideEncryptionRules!)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tAlgorithm:
{encryptionSettings.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm}");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tKey:
{encryptionSettings.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServi
            }
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.ErrorCode == "InvalidBucketName"
                ? $"Bucket {bucketName} was not found."
                : $"Unable to get bucket encryption for bucket {bucketName},
{ex.Message}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the server-side encryption configuration for a bucket

The following `get-bucket-encryption` example retrieves the server-side encryption configuration for the bucket `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-encryption \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration": {
        "Rules": [
            {
                "ApplyServerSideEncryptionByDefault": {
                    "SSEAlgorithm": "AES256"
                }
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns all the server side encryption rules associated with the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns all the server side encryption rules associated with the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketInventoryConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketInventoryConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the inventory configuration for a bucket

The following `get-bucket-inventory-configuration` example retrieves the inventory configuration for the specified bucket with ID 1.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-inventory-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --id 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "InventoryConfiguration": {
        "IsEnabled": true,
        "Destination": {
            "S3BucketDestination": {
                "Format": "ORC",
                "Bucket": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                "AccountId": "123456789012"
            }
        },
        "IncludedObjectVersions": "Current",
```

```
        "Id": "1",
        "Schedule": {
            "Frequency": "Weekly"
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the details of the inventory named 'testinventory' for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -InventoryId
 'testinventory'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details of the inventory named 'testinventory' for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -InventoryId
 'testinventory'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Returns a configuration object for the supplied bucket name.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client object used to call
        /// the GetLifecycleConfigurationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket for which a
        /// configuration will be created.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a new LifecycleConfiguration object.</returns>
        public static async Task<LifecycleConfiguration>
RetrieveLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName)
        {
            var request = new GetLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };
            var response = await client.GetLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
            var configuration = response.Configuration;
            return configuration;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the lifecycle configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-lifecycle-configuration --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Rules": [
        {
            "ID": "Move rotated logs to Glacier",
            "Prefix": "rotated/",
            "Status": "Enabled",
            "Transitions": [
                {
                    "Date": "2015-11-10T00:00:00.000Z",
                    "StorageClass": "GLACIER"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "Status": "Enabled",
            "Prefix": "",
            "NoncurrentVersionTransitions": [
                {
                    "NoncurrentDays": 0,
                    "StorageClass": "GLACIER"
                }
            ],
            "ID": "Move old versions to Glacier"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def get_lifecycle_configuration(self):
        """
        Get the lifecycle configuration of the bucket.

        :return: The lifecycle rules of the specified bucket.
        """
        try:
            config = self.bucket.LifecycleConfiguration()
            logger.info(
                "Got lifecycle rules %s for bucket '%s'.",
                config.rules,
                self.bucket.name,
            )
        except:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get lifecycle rules for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return config.rules
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetBucketLocation` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketLocation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the location constraint for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`, if a constraint exists:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-location --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "LocationConstraint": "us-west-2"
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLocation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the location constraint for the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket', if a constraint exists.

```
Get-S3BucketLocation -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
ap-south-1
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLocation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the location constraint for the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket', if a constraint exists.

```
Get-S3BucketLocation -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
ap-south-1
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLocation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_buckets(
    strict: bool,
    client: &Client,
    region: BucketLocationConstraint,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let mut buckets = client.list_buckets().into_paginator().send();

    let mut num_buckets = 0;
    let mut in_region = 0;

    while let Some(Ok(output)) = buckets.next().await {
        for bucket in output.buckets() {
            num_buckets += 1;
            if strict {
                let r = client
                    .get_bucket_location()
                    .bucket(bucket.name().unwrap_or_default())
                    .send()
                    .await?;

                if r.location_constraint() == Some(&region) {
                    println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
                    in_region += 1;
```

```
                }
            } else {
                println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
            }
        }
    }

    println!();
    if strict {
        println!(
            "Found {} buckets in the {} region out of a total of {} buckets.",
            in_region, region, num_buckets
        );
    } else {
        println!("Found {} buckets in all regions.", num_buckets);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLocation in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetBucketLogging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketLogging`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the logging status for a bucket

The following `get-bucket-logging` example retrieves the logging status for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-logging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "LoggingEnabled": {
        "TargetPrefix": "",
        "TargetBucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-logs"
          }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLogging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the logging status for the specified bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketLogging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
TargetBucketName   Grants TargetPrefix
----------------   ------ ------------
testbucket1        {}     testprefix
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the logging status for the specified bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketLogging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
TargetBucketName   Grants TargetPrefix
----------------   ------ ------------
testbucket1        {}     testprefix
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketMetricsConfiguration` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketMetricsConfiguration`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the metrics configuration for a bucket with a specific ID

The following `get-bucket-metrics-configuration` example displays the metrics configuration for the specified bucket and ID.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-metrics-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --id 123
```

Output:

```
{
    "MetricsConfiguration": {
        "Filter": {
            "Prefix": "logs"
        },
        "Id": "123"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the details about the metrics filter named 'testfilter' for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -MetricsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details about the metrics filter named 'testfilter' for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -MetricsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketNotification` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketNotification`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the notification configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-notification --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "TopicConfiguration": {
        "Topic": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-notification-topic",
        "Id": "YmQzMmEwM2EjZWVlI0NGItNzVtZjI1MC00ZjgyLWZDBiZWNl",
        "Event": "s3:ObjectCreated:*",
        "Events": [
            "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
        ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketNotification in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves notification configuration of the given bucket

```
Get-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket | select -ExpandProperty
 TopicConfigurations
```

Output:

```
Id   Topic
--   -----
mimo arn:aws:sns:eu-west-1:123456789012:topic-1
```

- For API details, see GetBucketNotification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves notification configuration of the given bucket

```
Get-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket | select -ExpandProperty
 TopicConfigurations
```

Output:

```
Id   Topic
--   -----
mimo arn:aws:sns:eu-west-1:123456789012:topic-1
```

- For API details, see GetBucketNotification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getBucketPolicy(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                 const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketPolicyOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetBucketPolicy(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getBucketPolicy: "
                  << err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::StringStream policy_stream;
        Aws::String line;

        outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy() >> line;
        policy_stream << line;

        std::cout << "Retrieve the policy for bucket '" << bucketName << "':\n\n"
 <<
                  policy_stream.str() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the bucket policy for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-policy --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Policy": "{\"Version\":\"2008-10-17\",\"Statement\":[{\"Sid\":\"\",\"Effect
\":\"Allow\",\"Principal\":\"*\",\"Action\":\"s3:GetObject\",\"Resource\":
\"arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*\"},{\"Sid\":\"\",\"Effect\":\"Deny\",
\"Principal\":\"*\",\"Action\":\"s3:GetObject\",\"Resource\":\"arn:aws:s3:::amzn-
s3-demo-bucket/secret/*\"}]}"
}
```

Get and put a bucket policyThe following example shows how you can download an Amazon S3 bucket policy, make modifications to the file, and then use `put-bucket-policy` to apply the modified bucket policy. To download the bucket policy to a file, you can run:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-policy --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --query Policy --output
 text > policy.json
```

You can then modify the `policy.json` file as needed. Finally you can apply this modified policy back to the S3 bucket by running:

`policy.json` file as needed. Finally you can apply this modified policy back to the S3 bucket by running:

file as needed. Finally you can apply this modified policy back to the S3 bucket by running:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-policy --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --policy file://
policy.json
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class GetBucketPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to get the policy from.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String bucketName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Getting policy for bucket: \"%s\"\n\n", bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        String polText = getPolicy(s3, bucketName);
        System.out.println("Policy Text: " + polText);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the policy for the specified Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the {@link S3Client} instance to use for making the request
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket for which to retrieve the
 policy
     * @return the policy text for the specified bucket, or an empty string if an
 error occurs
     */
    public static String getPolicy(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        String policyText;
        System.out.format("Getting policy for bucket: \"%s\"\n\n", bucketName);
        GetBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = GetBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        try {
            GetBucketPolicyResponse policyRes = s3.getBucketPolicy(policyReq);
            policyText = policyRes.policy();
            return policyText;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the bucket policy.

```
import {
  GetBucketPolicyCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Logs the policy for a specified bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Policy } = await client.send(
      new GetBucketPolicyCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Policy for "${bucketName}":\n${Policy}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting policy from ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
```

```
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting policy from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getPolicy(bucketName: String): String? {
    println("Getting policy for bucket $bucketName")

    val request =
        GetBucketPolicyRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val policyRes = s3.getBucketPolicy(request)
        return policyRes.policy
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command outputs the bucket policy associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketPolicy -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command outputs the bucket policy associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketPolicy -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
```

```
        self.name = bucket.name


    def get_policy(self):
        """
        Get the security policy of the bucket.

        :return: The security policy of the specified bucket, in JSON format.
        """
        try:
            policy = self.bucket.Policy()
            logger.info(
                "Got policy %s for bucket '%s'.", policy.policy, self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get policy for bucket '%s'.",
 self.bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return json.loads(policy.policy)
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Wraps an Amazon S3 bucket policy.
class BucketPolicyWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_policy

  # @param bucket_policy [Aws::S3::BucketPolicy] A bucket policy object
 configured with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_policy)
```

```
    @bucket_policy = bucket_policy
  end

  # Gets the policy of a bucket.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::GetBucketPolicyOutput, nil] The current bucket policy.
  def policy
    policy = @bucket_policy.data.policy
    policy.respond_to?(:read) ? policy.read : policy
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get the policy for #{@bucket_policy.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    nil
  end

end
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `GetBucketPolicyStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketPolicyStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the policy status for a bucket indicating whether the bucket is public

The following `get-bucket-policy-status` example retrieves the policy status for the bucket `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-policy-status \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "PolicyStatus": {
        "IsPublic": false
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicyStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns policy status for the given S3 bucket, indicating whether the bucket is public.

```
Get-S3BucketPolicyStatus -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicyStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns policy status for the given S3 bucket, indicating whether the bucket is public.

```
Get-S3BucketPolicyStatus -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicyStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketReplication` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketReplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the replication configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-replication --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "ReplicationConfiguration": {
        "Rules": [
            {
                "Status": "Enabled",
                "Prefix": "",
                "Destination": {
                    "Bucket": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket-backup",
                    "StorageClass": "STANDARD"
                },
                "ID": "ZmUwNzE4ZmQ4tMjVhOS00MTlkLOGI4NDkzZTIWJjNTUtYTA1"
            }
        ],
        "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/s3-replication-role"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketReplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the replication details for the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client           the S3 client used to interact with the S3
 service
     * @param sourceBucketName   the name of the S3 bucket to retrieve the
 replication details for
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error retrieving the replication
 details
```

```
     */
    public static void getReplicationDetails(S3Client s3Client, String
sourceBucketName) {
        GetBucketReplicationRequest getRequest =
GetBucketReplicationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(sourceBucketName)
            .build();

        try {
            ReplicationConfiguration replicationConfig =
s3Client.getBucketReplication(getRequest).replicationConfiguration();
            ReplicationRule rule = replicationConfig.rules().get(0);
            System.out.println("Retrieved destination bucket: " +
rule.destination().bucket());
            System.out.println("Retrieved priority: " + rule.priority());
            System.out.println("Retrieved source-bucket replication rule status:
" + rule.status());

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to retrieve replication details: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketReplication in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the replication configuration information set on the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
Get-S3BucketReplication -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see GetBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the replication configuration information set on the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
Get-S3BucketReplication -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see GetBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketRequestPayment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketRequestPayment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the request payment configuration for a bucket

The following `get-bucket-request-payment` example retrieves the requester pays configuration for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api get-bucket-request-payment \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Payer": "BucketOwner"
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketRequestPayment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the request payment configuration for the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'. By default, the bucket owner pays for downloads from the bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketRequestPayment -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see GetBucketRequestPayment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the request payment configuration for the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'. By default, the bucket owner pays for downloads from the bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketRequestPayment -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see GetBucketRequestPayment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketTagging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketTagging`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the tagging configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-tagging --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagSet": [
        {
            "Value": "marketing",
            "Key": "organization"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketTagging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns all the tags associated with the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketTagging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns all the tags associated with the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketTagging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketVersioning` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketVersioning`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the versioning configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-versioning --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Status": "Enabled"
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketVersioning in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the status of versioning with respect to the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketVersioning -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketVersioning in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the status of versioning with respect to the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketVersioning -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketVersioning in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetBucketWebsite` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetBucketWebsite`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
                // Get the website configuration.
                GetBucketWebsiteRequest getRequest = new
GetBucketWebsiteRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
                GetBucketWebsiteResponse getResponse = await
client.GetBucketWebsiteAsync(getRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Index document:
{getResponse.WebsiteConfiguration.IndexDocumentSuffix}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Error document:
{getResponse.WebsiteConfiguration.ErrorDocument}");
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getWebsiteConfig(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketWebsiteRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketWebsiteOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetBucketWebsite(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();

        std::cerr << "Error: GetBucketWebsite: "
                  << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketWebsiteResult websiteResult =
 outcome.GetResult();

        std::cout << "Success: GetBucketWebsite: "
                  << std::endl << std::endl
                  << "For bucket '" << bucketName << "':"
                  << std::endl
                  << "Index page : "
                  << websiteResult.GetIndexDocument().GetSuffix()
                  << std::endl
```

```
                    << "Error page: "
                    << websiteResult.GetErrorDocument().GetKey()
                    << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the static website configuration for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-bucket-website --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "IndexDocument": {
        "Suffix": "index.html"
    },
    "ErrorDocument": {
        "Key": "error.html"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the website configuration.

```
import {
  GetBucketWebsiteCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log the website configuration for a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetBucketWebsiteCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `Your bucket is set up to host a website with the following configuration:
\n${JSON.stringify(response, null, 2)}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchWebsiteConfiguration"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting website configuration for ${bucketName}. The
 bucket isn't configured as a website.`,
```

```
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting website configuration for ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the details of the static website configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details of the static website configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get an object from a bucket if it has been modified
- Get an object from a Multi-Region Access Point
- Get started with encryption
- Get started with S3
- Make conditional requests
- Track uploads and downloads

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Shows how to download an object from an Amazon S3 bucket to the
/// local computer.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
/// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the object is
/// currently stored.</param>
/// <param name="objectName">The name of the object to download.</param>
/// <param name="filePath">The path, including filename, where the
/// downloaded object will be stored.</param>
/// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
/// download process.</returns>
public static async Task<bool> DownloadObjectFromBucketAsync(
    IAmazonS3 client,
    string bucketName,
    string objectName,
    string filePath)
{
    // Create a GetObject request
    var request = new GetObjectRequest
```

```
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectName,
            };

            // Issue request and remember to dispose of the response
            using GetObjectResponse response = await
 client.GetObjectAsync(request);

            try
            {
                // Save object to local file
                await response.WriteResponseStreamToFileAsync($"{filePath}\
\{objectName}", true, CancellationToken.None);
                return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error saving {objectName}: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Get an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition: 'IfMatch',
 'IfNoneMatch', 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional read is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
 sourceBucket,
```

```
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null,
 string? etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = sourceBucket,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
 conditionType, null);
            }

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest);
            var sampleBytes = new byte[20];
            await response.ResponseStream.ReadAsync(sampleBytes, 0, 20);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional read
 successful. Here are the first 20 bytes of the object:
\n{System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(sampleBytes)}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "NotModified")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function download_object_from_bucket
#
# This function downloads an object in a bucket to a file.
#
```

```
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to download the object from.
#       $2 - The path and file name to store the downloaded bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) of the object in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function download_object_from_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local destination_file_name=$2
  local object_name=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api get-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --key "$object_name" \
    "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getObject(const Aws::String &objectKey,
                           const Aws::String &fromBucket,
```

```
                            const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(fromBucket);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectOutcome outcome =
            client.GetObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getObject: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully retrieved '" << objectKey << "' from '"
                  << fromBucket << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following example uses the `get-object` command to download an object from Amazon S3:

```
aws s3api get-object --bucket text-content --key dir/
my_images.tar.bz2 my_images.tar.bz2
```

Note that the outfile parameter is specified without an option name such as "--outfile". The name of the output file must be the last parameter in the command.

The example below demonstrates the use of `--range` to download a specific byte range from an object. Note the byte ranges needs to be prefixed with "bytes=":

```
aws s3api get-object --bucket text-content --key dir/my_data --
range bytes=8888-9999 my_data_range
```

For more information about retrieving objects, see Getting Objects in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
```

```
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// DownloadFile gets an object from a bucket and stores it in a local file.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 result, err := basics.S3Client.GetObject(ctx, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Can't get object %s from bucket %s. No such key exists.\n",
 objectKey, bucketName)
   err = noKey
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get object %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName,
 objectKey, err)
  }
  return err
 }
 defer result.Body.Close()
 file, err := os.Create(fileName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create file %v. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
  return err
 }
 defer file.Close()
 body, err := io.ReadAll(result.Body)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't read object body from %v. Here's why: %v\n", objectKey,
 err)
 }
 _, err = file.Write(body)
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Read data as a byte array using an S3Client.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the bytes of an object from an Amazon S3 bucket
and writes them to a local file.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
    * @param keyName    the key (or name) of the S3 object to retrieve
    * @param path       the local file path where the object's bytes will be
written
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object bytes
have been written to the local file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getObjectBytesAsync(String bucketName, String
keyName, String path) {
       GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
           .key(keyName)
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse>> response =
getAsyncClient().getObject(objectRequest, AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes());
       return response.thenAccept(objectBytes -> {
           try {
               byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();
               Path filePath = Paths.get(path);
               Files.write(filePath, data);
               logger.info("Successfully obtained bytes from an S3 object");
           } catch (IOException ex) {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write data to file", ex);
            }
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get object bytes from S3",
 ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

Use an S3TransferManager to download an object in an S3 bucket to a local file. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedFileDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DownloadFileRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.UUID;

    public Long downloadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
 bucketName,
                             String key, String downloadedFileWithPath) {
        DownloadFileRequest downloadFileRequest = DownloadFileRequest.builder()
                .getObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
                .destination(Paths.get(downloadedFileWithPath))
                .build();

        FileDownload downloadFile =
 transferManager.downloadFile(downloadFileRequest);
```

```
        CompletedFileDownload downloadResult =
 downloadFile.completionFuture().join();
        logger.info("Content length [{}]",
 downloadResult.response().contentLength());
        return downloadResult.response().contentLength();
    }
```

Read tags that belong to an object using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectTaggingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectTaggingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Tag;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class GetObjectTags {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - A key name that represents the object.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listTags(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Lists the tags associated with an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket that contains the object
     * @param keyName the key (name) of the S3 object
     */
    public static void listTags(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try {
            GetObjectTaggingRequest getTaggingRequest = GetObjectTaggingRequest
                .builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            GetObjectTaggingResponse tags =
 s3.getObjectTagging(getTaggingRequest);
            List<Tag> tagSet = tags.tagSet();
            for (Tag tag : tagSet) {
                System.out.println(tag.key());
                System.out.println(tag.value());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Get a URL for an object using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.net.URL;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class GetObjectUrl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.
                keyName - A key name that represents the object.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
```

```
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getURL(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the URL for a specific object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored
     * @param keyName the name of the object for which the URL should be
 retrieved
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error retrieving the URL for the
 specified object
     */
    public static void getURL(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try {
            GetUrlRequest request = GetUrlRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            URL url = s3.utilities().getUrl(request);
            System.out.println("The URL for  " + keyName + " is " + url);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Get an object by using the S3Presigner client object using an S3Client.

```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
import java.time.Duration;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.GetObjectPresignRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedGetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.IoUtils;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetObjectPresignedUrl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String USAGE = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - A key name that represents a text file.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
```

```
        getPresignedUrl(presigner, bucketName, keyName);
        presigner.close();
    }

    /**
     * Generates a pre-signed URL for an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param presigner The {@link S3Presigner} instance to use for generating
the pre-signed URL.
     * @param bucketName The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the object is
stored.
     * @param keyName The key name (file name) of the object in the Amazon S3
bucket.
     *
     * @throws S3Exception If there is an error interacting with the Amazon S3
service.
     * @throws IOException If there is an error opening the HTTP connection or
reading/writing the request/response.
     */
    public static void getPresignedUrl(S3Presigner presigner, String bucketName,
String keyName) {
        try {
            GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            GetObjectPresignRequest getObjectPresignRequest =
GetObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(60))
                .getObjectRequest(getObjectRequest)
                .build();

            PresignedGetObjectRequest presignedGetObjectRequest =
presigner.presignGetObject(getObjectPresignRequest);
            String theUrl = presignedGetObjectRequest.url().toString();
            System.out.println("Presigned URL: " + theUrl);
            HttpURLConnection connection = (HttpURLConnection)
presignedGetObjectRequest.url().openConnection();
            presignedGetObjectRequest.httpRequest().headers().forEach((header,
values) -> {
                values.forEach(value -> {
                    connection.addRequestProperty(header, value);
                });
```

```
            });

            // Send any request payload that the service needs (not needed when
            // isBrowserExecutable is true).
            if (presignedGetObjectRequest.signedPayload().isPresent()) {
                connection.setDoOutput(true);

                try (InputStream signedPayload =
 presignedGetObjectRequest.signedPayload().get().asInputStream();
                     OutputStream httpOutputStream =
 connection.getOutputStream()) {
                    IoUtils.copy(signedPayload, httpOutputStream);
                }
            }

            // Download the result of executing the request.
            try (InputStream content = connection.getInputStream()) {
                System.out.println("Service returned response: ");
                IoUtils.copy(content, System.out);
            }

        } catch (S3Exception | IOException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
```

Get an object by using a ResponseTransformer object and S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.ResponseTransformer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;

import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class GetObjectData {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName> <path>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - The key name.\s
                path - The path where the file is written to.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        String path = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getObjectBytes(s3, bucketName, keyName, path);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the bytes of an object stored in an Amazon S3 bucket and saves
 them to a local file.
```

```
     *
     * @param s3 The S3Client instance used to interact with the Amazon S3
 service.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
     * @param keyName The key (or name) of the S3 object.
     * @param path The local file path where the object's bytes will be saved.
     * @throws IOException If an I/O error occurs while writing the bytes to the
 local file.
     * @throws S3Exception If an error occurs while retrieving the object from
 the S3 bucket.
     */
    public static void getObjectBytes(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 keyName, String path) {
        try {
            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest
                .builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
 s3.getObject(objectRequest, ResponseTransformer.toBytes());
            byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();

            // Write the data to a local file.
            File myFile = new File(path);
            OutputStream os = new FileOutputStream(myFile);
            os.write(data);
            System.out.println("Successfully obtained bytes from an S3 object");
            os.close();

        } catch (IOException ex) {
            ex.printStackTrace();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Download the object.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log(str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No
 such key exists.`,
      );
```

```
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Download the object on condition its ETag matches the one provided.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, eTag }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
```

```
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No
 such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
```

```
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Download the object on condition its ETag does not match the one provided.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, eTag }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfNoneMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No
 such key exists.`,
      );
```

```
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
```

```
  }
}
```

Download the object using on condition it has been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfModifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No
 such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
```

```
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Download the object using on condition it has not been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfUnmodifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No
 such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getObjectBytes(
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
    path: String,
) {
    val request =
        GetObjectRequest {
            key = keyName
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.getObject(request) { resp ->
            val myFile = File(path)
            resp.body?.writeToFile(myFile)
            println("Successfully read $keyName from $bucketName")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $file = $this->s3client->getObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
            ]);
            $body = $file->get('Body');
            $body->rewind();
            echo "Downloaded the file and it begins with: {$body->read(26)}.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to download $fileName from $this->bucketName with error:
" . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file downloading before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command retrieves item "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" and saves it to a file named "local-sample.txt" in the current location. The file "local-sample.txt" does not have to exist before this command is called.

```
Read-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -File local-
sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command retrieves virtual directory "DIR" from bucket "test-files" and saves it to a folder named "Local-DIR" in the current location. The folder "Local-DIR" does not have to exist before this command is called.

```
Read-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix DIR -Folder Local-DIR
```

Example 3: Downloads all objects with keys ending in '.json' from buckets with 'config' in the bucket name to files in the specified folder. The object keys are used to set the filenames.

```
Get-S3Bucket | ? { $_.BucketName -like '*config*' } | Get-S3Object | ? { $_.Key -
like '*.json' } | Read-S3Object -Folder C:\ConfigObjects
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command retrieves item "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" and saves it to a file named "local-sample.txt" in the current location. The file "local-sample.txt" does not have to exist before this command is called.

```
Read-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -File local-
sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command retrieves virtual directory "DIR" from bucket "test-files" and saves it to a folder named "Local-DIR" in the current location. The folder "Local-DIR" does not have to exist before this command is called.

```
Read-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix DIR -Folder Local-DIR
```

Example 3: Downloads all objects with keys ending in '.json' from buckets with 'config' in the bucket name to files in the specified folder. The object keys are used to set the filenames.

```
Get-S3Bucket | ? { $_.BucketName -like '*config*' } | Get-S3Object | ? { $_.Key -
like '*.json' } | Read-S3Object -Folder C:\ConfigObjects
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def get(self):
        """
        Gets the object.

        :return: The object data in bytes.
        """
        try:
            body = self.object.get()["Body"].read()
            logger.info(
                "Got object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return body
```

Get an object using a conditional request.

```
class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)



    def get_object_conditional(
        self,
        object_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
    ):
        """
        Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to retrieve.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            response = self.s3.get_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket,
```

```
                Key=object_key,
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            sample_bytes = response["Body"].read(20)
            print(
                f"\tConditional read successful. Here are the first 20 bytes of
 the object:\n"
            )
            print(f"\t{sample_bytes}")
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional read failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional read failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectGetWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
```

```
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Gets the object directly to a file.
  #
  # @param target_path [String] The path to the file where the object is
 downloaded.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Types::GetObjectOutput, nil] The retrieved object data if
 successful; otherwise nil.
  def get_object(target_path)
    @object.get(response_target: target_path)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get object #{@object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object.txt"
  target_path = "my-object-as-file.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectGetWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name, object_key))
  obj_data = wrapper.get_object(target_path)
  return unless obj_data

  puts "Object #{object_key} (#{obj_data.content_length} bytes} downloaded to
 #{target_path}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Get an object and report its server-side encryption state.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectGetEncryptionWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
```

```
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Gets the object into memory.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::Types::GetObjectOutput, nil] The retrieved object data if
 successful; otherwise nil.
  def object
    @object.get
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get object #{@object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectGetEncryptionWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name,
 object_key))
  obj_data = wrapper.get_object
  return unless obj_data

  encryption = obj_data.server_side_encryption.nil? ? 'no' :
 obj_data.server_side_encryption
  puts "Object #{object_key} uses #{encryption} encryption."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn get_object(client: Client, opt: Opt) -> Result<usize, S3ExampleError> {
    trace!("bucket:      {}", opt.bucket);
    trace!("object:      {}", opt.object);
    trace!("destination: {}", opt.destination.display());

    let mut file = File::create(opt.destination.clone()).map_err(|err| {
        S3ExampleError::new(format!(
            "Failed to initialize file for saving S3 download: {err:?}"
        ))
    })?;

    let mut object = client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(opt.bucket)
        .key(opt.object)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let mut byte_count = 0_usize;
    while let Some(bytes) = object.body.try_next().await.map_err(|err| {
        S3ExampleError::new(format!("Failed to read from S3 download stream:
 {err:?}"))
    })? {
        let bytes_len = bytes.len();
        file.write_all(&bytes).map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
                "Failed to write from S3 download stream to local file: {err:?}"
            ))
        })?;
        trace!("Intermediate write of {bytes_len}");
        byte_count += bytes_len;
    }
```

```
    Ok(byte_count)
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_s3->getobject(           " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
                 iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
                 iv_key = iv_object_key ).
       DATA(lv_object_data) = oo_result->get_body( ).
       MESSAGE 'Object retrieved from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
       MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
       MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func downloadFile(bucket: String, key: String, to: String) async
 throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: to).appendingPathComponent(key)

        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to
 read data.")
            }

            try data.write(to: fileUrl)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Downloading a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
import AWSS3
```

```
    public func readFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws -> Data {
        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to
read data.")
            }

            return data
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Reading a file."))
            throw error
        }
  }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetObjectAcl` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObjectAcl`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage access control lists (ACLs)

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getObjectAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::String &objectKey,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAclRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetObjectAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getObjectAcl: "
                  << err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants =
                outcome.GetResult().GetGrants();

        for (auto it = grants.begin(); it != grants.end(); it++) {
            std::cout << "For object " << objectKey << ": "
                      << std::endl << std::endl;

            Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant = *it;
            Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee = grant.GetGrantee();

            if (grantee.TypeHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Type:          "
```

```
                          << getGranteeTypeString(grantee.GetType()) <<
 std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.DisplayNameHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Display name:  "
                          << grantee.GetDisplayName() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.EmailAddressHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Email address: "
                          << grantee.GetEmailAddress() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.IDHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "ID:            "
                          << grantee.GetID() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.URIHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "URI:           "
                          << grantee.GetURI() << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << "Permission:    " <<
                      getPermissionString(grant.GetPermission()) <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable
 string.
/*!
 \param type: Type enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string
*/
Aws::String getGranteeTypeString(const Aws::S3::Model::Type &type) {
    switch (type) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail:
            return "Email address of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser:
```

```
            return "Canonical user ID of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group:
            return "Predefined Amazon S3 group";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET:
            return "Not set";
        default:
            return "Type unknown";
    }
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable
 string.
/*!
 \param permission: Permission enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string
*/
Aws::String getPermissionString(const Aws::S3::Model::Permission &permission) {
    switch (permission) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL:
            return "Can read this object's data and its metadata, "
                   "and read/write this object's permissions";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET:
            return "Permission not set";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ:
            return "Can read this object's data and its metadata";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP:
            return "Can read this object's permissions";
            // case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE // Not applicable.
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP:
            return "Can write this object's permissions";
        default:
            return "Permission unknown";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves the access control list for an object in a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api get-object-acl --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key index.html
```

Output:

```
{
    "Owner": {
        "DisplayName": "my-username",
        "ID": "7009a8971cd538e11f6b6606438875e7c86c5b672f46db45460ddcd087d36c32"
    },
    "Grants": [
        {
            "Grantee": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
                "ID":
 "7009a8971cd538e11f6b6606438875e7c86c5b672f46db45460ddcd087d36c32"
            },
            "Permission": "FULL_CONTROL"
        },
        {
            "Grantee": {
                "URI": "http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/global/AllUsers"
            },
            "Permission": "READ"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getBucketACL(
    objectKey: String,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val request =
        GetObjectAclRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = objectKey
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.getObjectAcl(request)
        response.grants?.forEach { grant ->
            println("Grant permission is ${grant.permission}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command gets the details of the object owner of the S3 object.

```
(Get-S3ObjectACL -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -key 'initialize.ps1' -Select
 *).Owner
```

Output:

```
DisplayName Id
----------- --
testusername
 9988776a6554433d22f1100112e334acb45566778899009e9887bd7f66c5f544
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def get_acl(self):
        """
        Gets the ACL of the object.

        :return: The ACL of the object.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.object.Acl()
            logger.info(
                "Got ACL for object %s owned by %s.",
                self.object.key,
```

```
                acl.owner["DisplayName"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get ACL for object %s.", self.object.key)
            raise
        else:
            return acl
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetObjectAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObjectAttributes`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// ! Routine which retrieves the hash value of an object stored in an S3 bucket.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) of the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm used to calculate the hash value of
 the object.
   \param[out] hashData: The retrieved hash.
   \param[out] partHashes: The part hashes if available.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to retrieve the object.
```

```
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::retrieveObjectHash(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                    AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                    Aws::String &hashData,
                                    std::vector<Aws::String> *partHashes,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (hashMethod == MD5) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ETag);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            hashData = result.GetETag();
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object etag attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } else { // hashMethod != MD5
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::Checksum);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            switch (hashMethod) {
                case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                    break;  // Default is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic push
```

```
#pragma ide diagnostic ignored "UnreachableCode"
                case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                    break;  // MD5 is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic pop
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA1();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA256();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32C();
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                    return false;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object checksum attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (nullptr != partHashes) {
            attributes.clear();
            attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ObjectParts);
            request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);
            outcome = client.GetObjectAttributes(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart> parts =
 result.GetObjectParts().GetParts();
                for (const Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart &part: parts) {
                    switch (hashMethod) {
                        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // Default is not supported.
 NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5: // MD5 is not supported.
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
```

```
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA1());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA256());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32C());
                            break;
                        default:
                            std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                            return false;
                    }
                }
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error retrieving object attributes for object
 parts." <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieves metadata from an object without returning the object itself

The following `get-object-attributes` example retrieves metadata from the object `doc1.rtf`.

```
aws s3api get-object-attributes \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key doc1.rtf \
```

```
    --object-attributes "StorageClass" "ETag" "ObjectSize"
```

Output:

```
{
    "LastModified": "2022-03-15T19:37:31+00:00",
    "VersionId": "IuCPjXTDzHNfldAuitVBIKJpF2p1fg4P",
    "ETag": "b662d79adeb7c8d787ea7eafb9ef6207",
    "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
    "ObjectSize": 405
}
```

For more information, see GetObjectAttributes in the Amazon S3 API Reference.

- For API details, see GetObjectAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `GetObjectLegalHold` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Lock Amazon S3 objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The object legal hold details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockLegalHold> GetObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}: " +
                              $"\n\tStatus: {response.LegalHold.Status}");
            return response.LegalHold;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockLegalHold();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Retrieves the Legal Hold status of an object

The following `get-object-legal-hold` example retrieves the Legal Hold status for the specified object.

```
aws s3api get-object-legal-hold \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket-with-object-lock \
    --key doc1.rtf
```

Output:

```
{
    "LegalHold": {
        "Status": "ON"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// GetObjectLegalHold retrieves the legal hold status for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string) (*types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus, error) {
 var status *types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus
 input := &s3.GetObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket:    aws.String(bucket),
  Key:       aws.String(key),
  VersionId: aws.String(versionId),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noSuchKeyErr *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noSuchKeyErr) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noSuchKeyErr
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
    log.Printf("Object %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", key)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidRequest":
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
    err = nil
   }
  }
 } else {
  status = &output.LegalHold.Status
 }

 return status, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
   public ObjectLockLegalHold getObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String
objectKey) {
       try {
           GetObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
GetObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .key(objectKey)
               .build();

           GetObjectLegalHoldResponse response =
getClient().getObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest);
           System.out.println("Object legal hold for " + objectKey + " in " +
bucketName +
               ":\n\tStatus: " + response.legalHold().status());
           return response.legalHold();

       } catch (S3Exception ex) {
           System.out.println("\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '" +
ex.getMessage() + "'");
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get an object's current legal hold status.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectLegalHoldCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        // Optionally, you can provide additional parameters
        // ExpectedBucketOwner: "<account ID that is expected to own the
 bucket>",
        // VersionId: "<the specific version id of the object to check>",
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Legal Hold Status: ${response.LegalHold.Status}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
```

```
        `Error from S3 while getting legal hold status for ${key} in
 ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting legal hold status for ${key} in
 ${bucketName} from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object legal hold.

```
def get_legal_hold(s3_client, bucket: str, key: str) -> None:
    """
    Get the legal hold status of a specific file in a bucket.

    Args:
        s3_client: Boto3 S3 client.
        bucket: The name of the bucket containing the file.
        key: The key of the file to get the legal hold status of.
    """
    print()
    logger.info("Getting legal hold status of file [%s] in bucket [%s]", key,
 bucket)
    try:
        response = s3_client.get_object_legal_hold(Bucket=bucket, Key=key)
        legal_hold_status = response["LegalHold"]["Status"]
        logger.debug(
            "Legal hold status of file [%s] in bucket [%s] is [%s]",
            key,
            bucket,
            legal_hold_status,
        )
    except Exception as e:
        logger.error(
            "Failed to get legal hold status of file [%s] in bucket [%s]: %s",
            key,
```

```
            bucket,
            e,
        )
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetObjectLockConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Lock Amazon S3 objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to get details.</param>
   /// <returns>The bucket's object lock configuration details.</returns>
   public async Task<ObjectLockConfiguration>
GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(string bucketName)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
           {
               BucketName = bucketName
```

```
            };

            var response = await
 _amazonS3.GetObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket object lock config for {bucketName} in
 {bucketName}: " +
                               $"\n\tEnabled:
 {response.ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled}" +
                               $"\n\tRule:
 {response.ObjectLockConfiguration.Rule?.DefaultRetention}");

            return response.ObjectLockConfiguration;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock config:
 '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockConfiguration();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve an object lock configuration for a bucket

The following `get-object-lock-configuration` example retrieves the object lock configuration for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api get-object-lock-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket-with-object-lock
```

Output:

```
{
    "ObjectLockConfiguration": {
        "ObjectLockEnabled": "Enabled",
        "Rule": {
```

```
            "DefaultRetention": {
                "Mode": "COMPLIANCE",
                "Days": 50
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// GetObjectLockConfiguration retrieves the object lock configuration for an S3
 bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx context.Context, bucket
 string) (*types.ObjectLockConfiguration, error) {
 var lockConfig *types.ObjectLockConfiguration
 input := &s3.GetObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() ==
 "ObjectLockConfigurationNotFoundError" {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
   err = nil
  }
 } else {
  lockConfig = output.ObjectLockConfiguration
 }

 return lockConfig, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    public void getBucketObjectLockConfiguration(String bucketName) {
        GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest objectLockConfigurationRequest =
 GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        GetObjectLockConfigurationResponse response =
 getClient().getObjectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfigurationRequest);
        System.out.println("Bucket object lock config for "+bucketName +":  ");
        System.out.println("\tEnabled:
 "+response.objectLockConfiguration().objectLockEnabled());
        System.out.println("\tRule: "+
 response.objectLockConfiguration().rule().defaultRetention());
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Gets the Object Lock configuration for a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
```

```
  try {
    const { ObjectLockConfiguration } = await client.send(
      new GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        // Optionally, you can provide additional parameters
        // ExpectedBucketOwner: "<account ID that is expected to own the
 bucket>",
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `Object Lock Configuration:\n${JSON.stringify(ObjectLockConfiguration)}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object lock configuration for ${bucketName}.
 The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object lock configuration for ${bucketName}.
  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
```

```
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the value 'Enabled' if Object lock configuration is enabled for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectLockConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select
 ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Enabled
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the value 'Enabled' if Object lock configuration is enabled for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectLockConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select
 ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Enabled
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the object lock configuration.

```
def is_object_lock_enabled(s3_client, bucket: str) -> bool:
    """
    Check if object lock is enabled for a bucket.

    Args:
        s3_client: Boto3 S3 client.
        bucket: The name of the bucket to check.

    Returns:
        True if object lock is enabled, False otherwise.
    """
```

```
    try:
        response = s3_client.get_object_lock_configuration(Bucket=bucket)
        return (
            "ObjectLockConfiguration" in response
            and response["ObjectLockConfiguration"]["ObjectLockEnabled"] ==
"Enabled"
        )
    except s3_client.exceptions.ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ObjectLockConfigurationNotFoundError":
            return False
        else:
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetObjectRetention` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObjectRetention`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Lock Amazon S3 objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the retention period for an S3 object.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object retention details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockRetention> GetObjectRetention(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject retention for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}: " +
                              $"\n\t{response.Retention.Mode} until
{response.Retention.RetainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.Retention;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock retention:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockRetention();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the object retention configuration for an object

The following `get-object-retention` example retrieves the object retention configuration for the specified object.

```
aws s3api get-object-retention \
```

```
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket-with-object-lock \
    --key doc1.rtf
```

Output:

```
{
    "Retention": {
        "Mode": "GOVERNANCE",
        "RetainUntilDate": "2025-01-01T00:00:00.000Z"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
```

```
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// GetObjectRetention retrieves the object retention configuration for an S3
 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string) (*types.ObjectLockRetention, error) {
 var retention *types.ObjectLockRetention
 input := &s3.GetObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
    err = nil
   case "InvalidRequest":
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have locking enabled.", bucket)
    err = nil
   }
  }
 } else {
  retention = output.Retention
 }

 return retention, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    public ObjectLockRetention getObjectRetention(String bucketName, String key){
        try {
            GetObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
GetObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .build();

            GetObjectRetentionResponse response =
getClient().getObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
            System.out.println("tObject retention for "+key +"
in "+ bucketName +": " + response.retention().mode() +" until "+
response.retention().retainUntilDate() +".");
            return response.retention();

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return null;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetObjectRetentionCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log the "RetainUntilDate" for an object in an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Retention } = await client.send(
      new GetObjectRetentionCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `${key} in ${bucketName} will be retained until
 ${Retention.RetainUntilDate}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration"
    ) {
      console.warn(
```

```
        `The object "${key}" in the bucket "${bucketName}" does not have an
 ObjectLock configuration.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object retention settings for
 "${bucketName}".  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command returns the mode and date till the object would be retained.

```
Get-S3ObjectRetention -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testfile.txt'
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command returns the mode and date till the object would be retained.

```
Get-S3ObjectRetention -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testfile.txt'
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetObjectTagging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetObjectTagging`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with tags

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the tags attached to an object

The following `get-object-tagging` example retrieves the values for the specified key from the specified object.

```
aws s3api get-object-tagging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key doc1.rtf
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagSet": [
        {
            "Value": "confidential",
            "Key": "designation"
        }
    ]
}
```

The following `get-object-tagging` example tries to retrieve the tag sets of the object `doc2.rtf`, which has no tags.

```
aws s3api get-object-tagging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key doc2.rtf
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagSet": []
}
```

The following `get-object-tagging` example retrieves the tag sets of the object `doc3.rtf`, which has multiple tags.

```
aws s3api get-object-tagging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key doc3.rtf
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagSet": [
        {
```

```
            "Value": "confidential",
            "Key": "designation"
        },
        {
            "Value": "finance",
            "Key": "department"
        },
        {
            "Value": "payroll",
            "Key": "team"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The sample returns the tags associated with the object present on the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectTagSet -Key 'testfile.txt' -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Key  Value
---  -----
test value
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The sample returns the tags associated with the object present on the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectTagSet -Key 'testfile.txt' -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Key  Value
---  -----
test value
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPublicAccessBlock` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPublicAccessBlock`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set or modify the block public access configuration for a bucket

The following `get-public-access-block` example displays the block public access configuration for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api get-public-access-block \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "PublicAccessBlockConfiguration": {
        "IgnorePublicAcls": true,
        "BlockPublicPolicy": true,
        "BlockPublicAcls": true,
        "RestrictPublicBuckets": true
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPublicAccessBlock in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command returns the public access block configuration of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3PublicAccessBlock -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetPublicAccessBlock in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command returns the public access block configuration of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3PublicAccessBlock -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetPublicAccessBlock in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `HeadBucket` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `HeadBucket`.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function bucket_exists
#
# This function checks to see if the specified bucket already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to check.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If the bucket already exists.
#       1 - If the bucket doesn't exist.
```

```
##############################################################################
function bucket_exists() {
  local bucket_name
  bucket_name=$1

  # Check whether the bucket already exists.
  # We suppress all output - we're interested only in the return code.

  if aws s3api head-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    >/dev/null 2>&1; then
    return 0 # 0 in Bash script means true.
  else
    return 1 # 1 in Bash script means false.
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command verifies access to a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api head-bucket --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

If the bucket exists and you have access to it, no output is returned. Otherwise, an error message will be shown. For example:

```
A client error (404) occurred when calling the HeadBucket operation: Not Found
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// BucketExists checks whether a bucket exists in the current account.
```

```
func (basics BucketBasics) BucketExists(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 (bool, error) {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.HeadBucket(ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 })
 exists := true
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NotFound:
    log.Printf("Bucket %v is available.\n", bucketName)
    exists = false
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Either you don't have access to bucket %v or another error
 occurred. "+
     "Here's what happened: %v\n", bucketName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("Bucket %v exists and you already own it.", bucketName)
 }

 return exists, err
}
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the output with HTTP status code 200 OK for existing bucket when user has permission to access it. BucketArn parameter is only supported for S3 directory buckets.

```
Get-S3HeadBucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
AccessPointAlias   : False
BucketArn          :
BucketLocationName :
BucketLocationType :
BucketRegion       : us-east-2
ResponseMetadata   : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength      : 0
HttpStatusCode     : OK
```

Example 2: This command throws error with HTTP status code NotFound for non-existent bucket.

```
Get-S3HeadBucket -BucketName amzn-s3-non-existing-bucket
```

Output:

```
Get-S3HeadBucket: Error making request with Error Code NotFound and Http Status
 Code NotFound. No further error information was returned by the service.
```

Example 3: This command throws error with HTTP status code Forbidden for existing bucket where user does not have permission to access it.

```
Get-S3HeadBucket -BucketName amzn-s3-no-access-bucket
```

Output:

```
Get-S3HeadBucket: Error making request with Error Code Forbidden and Http Status
 Code Forbidden. No further error information was returned by the service.
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def exists(self):
        """
        Determine whether the bucket exists and you have access to it.

        :return: True when the bucket exists; otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.meta.client.head_bucket(Bucket=self.bucket.name)
            logger.info("Bucket %s exists.", self.bucket.name)
            exists = True
        except ClientError:
            logger.warning(
                "Bucket %s doesn't exist or you don't have access to it.",
                self.bucket.name,
            )
            exists = False
        return exists
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `HeadObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `HeadObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with S3

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves metadata for an object in a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api head-object --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key index.html
```

Output:

```
{
    "AcceptRanges": "bytes",
    "ContentType": "text/html",
    "LastModified": "Thu, 16 Apr 2015 18:19:14 GMT",
    "ContentLength": 77,
    "VersionId": "null",
    "ETag": "\"30a6ec7e1a9ad79c203d05a589c8b400\"",
    "Metadata": {}
}
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Determine the content type of an object.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetObjectContentType {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - The key name.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getContentType(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the content type of an object stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
```

```
     * @param s3 an instance of the {@link S3Client} class, which is used to
 interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored
     * @param keyName the key (file name) of the object in the S3 bucket
     */
    public static void getContentType(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 keyName) {
        try {
            HeadObjectRequest objectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            HeadObjectResponse objectHead = s3.headObject(objectRequest);
            String type = objectHead.contentType();
            System.out.println("The object content type is " + type);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Get the restore status of an object.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

public class GetObjectRestoreStatus {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
```

```
                keyName - A key name that represents the object.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        checkStatus(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Checks the restoration status of an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param s3         an instance of the {@link S3Client} class used to
interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the object is
stored
     * @param keyName    the name of the Amazon S3 object to be checked
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while interacting with the Amazon
S3 service
     */
    public static void checkStatus(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
keyName) {
        try {
            HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            HeadObjectResponse response = s3.headObject(headObjectRequest);
            System.out.println("The Amazon S3 object restoration status is " +
response.restore());

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectExistsWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Checks whether the object exists.
  #
  # @return [Boolean] True if the object exists; otherwise false.
  def exists?
    @object.exists?
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't check existence of object
 #{@object.bucket.name}:#{@object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
```

```
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectExistsWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name, object_key))
  exists = wrapper.exists?

  puts "Object #{object_key} #{exists ? 'does' : 'does not'} exist."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of analytics configurations for a bucket

The following `list-bucket-analytics-configurations` retrieves a list of analytics configurations for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api list-bucket-analytics-configurations \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "AnalyticsConfigurationList": [
        {
            "StorageClassAnalysis": {},
            "Id": "1"
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the first 100 analytics configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfigurationList -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the first 100 analytics configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfigurationList -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListBucketInventoryConfigurations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListBucketInventoryConfigurations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve a list of inventory configurations for a bucket

The following `list-bucket-inventory-configurations` example lists the inventory configurations for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api list-bucket-inventory-configurations \
```

```
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "InventoryConfigurationList": [
        {
            "IsEnabled": true,
            "Destination": {
                "S3BucketDestination": {
                    "Format": "ORC",
                    "Bucket": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                    "AccountId": "123456789012"
                }
            },
            "IncludedObjectVersions": "Current",
            "Id": "1",
            "Schedule": {
                "Frequency": "Weekly"
            }
        },
        {
            "IsEnabled": true,
            "Destination": {
                "S3BucketDestination": {
                    "Format": "CSV",
                    "Bucket": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
                    "AccountId": "123456789012"
                }
            },
            "IncludedObjectVersions": "Current",
            "Id": "2",
            "Schedule": {
                "Frequency": "Daily"
            }
        }
    ],
    "IsTruncated": false
}
```

- For API details, see ListBucketInventoryConfigurations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the first 100 inventory configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketInventoryConfigurationList -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see ListBucketInventoryConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the first 100 inventory configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketInventoryConfigurationList -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see ListBucketInventoryConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListBuckets` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListBuckets`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace ListBucketsExample
{
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example uses the AWS SDK for .NET to list the Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) buckets belonging to the default account.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListBuckets
    {
        private static IAmazonS3 _s3Client;

        /// <summary>
        /// Get a list of the buckets owned by the default user.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the ListingBuckets call that contains a
        /// list of the buckets owned by the default user.</returns>
        public static async Task<ListBucketsResponse> GetBuckets(IAmazonS3
client)
        {
            return await client.ListBucketsAsync();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method lists the name and creation date for the buckets in
        /// the passed List of S3 buckets.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="bucketList">A List of S3 bucket objects.</param>
        public static void DisplayBucketList(List<S3Bucket> bucketList)
        {
            bucketList
                .ForEach(b => Console.WriteLine($"Bucket name: {b.BucketName},
created on: {b.CreationDate}"));
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // The client uses the AWS Region of the default user.
            // If the Region where the buckets were created is different,
            // pass the Region to the client constructor. For example:
            // _s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
            _s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            var response = await GetBuckets(_s3Client);
            DisplayBucketList(response.Buckets);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::listBuckets(const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    auto outcome = client.ListBuckets();

    bool result = true;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed with error: " << outcome.GetError() << std::endl;
        result = false;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Found " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets().size() << "
 buckets\n";
        for (auto &&b: outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets()) {
            std::cout << b.GetName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command uses the `list-buckets` command to display the names of all your Amazon S3 buckets (across all regions):

```
aws s3api list-buckets --query "Buckets[].Name"
```

The query option filters the output of `list-buckets` down to only the bucket names.

For more information about buckets, see Working with Amazon S3 Buckets in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// ListBuckets lists the buckets in the current account.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListBuckets(ctx context.Context) ([]types.Bucket,
 error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListBucketsOutput
 var buckets []types.Bucket
 bucketPaginator := s3.NewListBucketsPaginator(basics.S3Client,
 &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 for bucketPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = bucketPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
    fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
    err = apiErr
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
   break
  } else {
   buckets = append(buckets, output.Buckets...)
  }
 }
 return buckets, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.paginators.ListBucketsIterable;
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListBuckets {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listAllBuckets(s3);

    }

    /**
     * Lists all the S3 buckets available in the current AWS account.
     *
     * @param s3 The {@link S3Client} instance to use for interacting with the
 Amazon S3 service.
     */
    public static void listAllBuckets(S3Client s3) {
        ListBucketsIterable response = s3.listBucketsPaginator();
        response.buckets().forEach(bucket ->
```

```
            System.out.println("Bucket Name: " + bucket.name()));
    }
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the buckets.

```
import {
  paginateListBuckets,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * List the Amazon S3 buckets in your account.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  /** @type {?import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').Owner} */
  let Owner = null;

  /** @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').Bucket[]} */
  const Buckets = [];

  try {
    const paginator = paginateListBuckets({ client }, {});

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      if (!Owner) {
        Owner = page.Owner;
      }
```

```
      Buckets.push(...page.Buckets);
    }

    console.log(
      `${Owner.DisplayName} owns ${Buckets.length} bucket${
        Buckets.length === 1 ? "" : "s"
      }:`,
    );
    console.log(`${Buckets.map((b) => ` • ${b.Name}`).join("\n")}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while listing buckets.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns all S3 buckets.

```
Get-S3Bucket
```

Example 2: This command returns bucket named "test-files"

```
Get-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns all S3 buckets.

```
Get-S3Bucket
```

Example 2: This command returns bucket named "test-files"

```
Get-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    @staticmethod
    def list(s3_resource):
        """
        Get the buckets in all Regions for the current account.
```

```
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 S3 resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                            that contains collections and factory methods to
 create
                            other high-level S3 sub-resources.
        :return: The list of buckets.
        """
        try:
            buckets = list(s3_resource.buckets.all())
            logger.info("Got buckets: %s.", buckets)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get buckets.")
            raise
        else:
            return buckets
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 resource actions.
class BucketListWrapper
  attr_reader :s3_resource

  # @param s3_resource [Aws::S3::Resource] An Amazon S3 resource.
  def initialize(s3_resource)
    @s3_resource = s3_resource
  end

  # Lists buckets for the current account.
```

```
  #
  # @param count [Integer] The maximum number of buckets to list.
  def list_buckets(count)
    puts 'Found these buckets:'
    @s3_resource.buckets.each do |bucket|
      puts "\t#{bucket.name}"
      count -= 1
      break if count.zero?
    end
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't list buckets. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  wrapper = BucketListWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Resource.new)
  wrapper.list_buckets(25)
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_buckets(
    strict: bool,
    client: &Client,
    region: BucketLocationConstraint,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
```

```
    let mut buckets = client.list_buckets().into_paginator().send();

    let mut num_buckets = 0;
    let mut in_region = 0;

    while let Some(Ok(output)) = buckets.next().await {
        for bucket in output.buckets() {
            num_buckets += 1;
            if strict {
                let r = client
                    .get_bucket_location()
                    .bucket(bucket.name().unwrap_or_default())
                    .send()
                    .await?;

                if r.location_constraint() == Some(&region) {
                    println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
                    in_region += 1;
                }
            } else {
                println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
            }
        }
    }

    println!();
    if strict {
        println!(
            "Found {} buckets in the {} region out of a total of {} buckets.",
            in_region, region, num_buckets
        );
    } else {
        println!("Found {} buckets in all regions.", num_buckets);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    /// Return an array containing information about every available bucket.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of ``S3ClientTypes.Bucket`` objects describing
    ///   each bucket.
    public func getAllBuckets() async throws -> [S3ClientTypes.Bucket] {
        return try await client.listBuckets(input: ListBucketsInput())
    }
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `ListMultipartUploads` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListMultipartUploads`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Delete incomplete multipart uploads

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command lists all of the active multipart uploads for a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api list-multipart-uploads --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
    "Uploads": [
        {
            "Initiator": {
                "DisplayName": "username",
                "ID": "arn:aws:iam::0123456789012:user/username"
            },
            "Initiated": "2015-06-02T18:01:30.000Z",
            "UploadId":
 "dfRtDYU0WWCCcH43C3WFbkRONycyCpTJJvxu2i5GYkZljF.Yxwh6XG7WfS2vC4to6HiV6Yjlx.cph0gtNBtJ8P3
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "multipart/01",
            "Owner": {
                "DisplayName": "aws-account-name",
                "ID":
 "100719349fc3b6dcd7c820a124bf7aecd408092c3d7b51b38494939801fc248b"
            }
        }
    ],
    "CommonPrefixes": []
}
```

In progress multipart uploads incur storage costs in Amazon S3. Complete or abort an active multipart upload to remove its parts from your account.

- For API details, see ListMultipartUploads in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class ListMultipartUploads {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName>\s

                Where:
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where an in-
progress multipart upload is occurring.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listUploads(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Lists the multipart uploads currently in progress in the specified Amazon
 S3 bucket.
```

```
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket to list the multipart
 uploads for
     */
    public static void listUploads(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
 ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
 s3.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
            List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();
            for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
                System.out.println("Upload in progress: Key = \"" + upload.key()
 + "\", id = " + upload.uploadId());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMultipartUploads in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListObjectVersions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListObjectVersions`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Get started with S3
- Work with versioned objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example lists the versions of the objects in a version enabled
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class ListObjectVersions
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        // If the AWS Region where your bucket is defined is different from
        // the AWS Region where the Amazon S3 bucket is defined, pass the
constant
        // for the AWS Region to the client constructor like this:
        //      var client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
        await GetObjectListWithAllVersionsAsync(client, bucketName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method lists all versions of the objects within an Amazon S3
    /// version enabled bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
    /// ListVersionsAsync.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the version enabled Amazon S3
bucket
```

```
        /// for which you want to list the versions of the contained objects.</
param>
        public static async Task GetObjectListWithAllVersionsAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                // When you instantiate the ListVersionRequest, you can
                // optionally specify a key name prefix in the request
                // if you want a list of object versions of a specific object.

                // For this example we set a small limit in MaxKeys to return
                // a small list of versions.
                ListVersionsRequest request = new ListVersionsRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    MaxKeys = 2,
                };

                do
                {
                    ListVersionsResponse response = await
 client.ListVersionsAsync(request);

                    // Process response.
                    foreach (S3ObjectVersion entry in response.Versions)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"key: {entry.Key} size:
 {entry.Size}");
                    }

                    // If response is truncated, set the marker to get the next
                    // set of keys.
                    if (response.IsTruncated)
                    {
                        request.KeyMarker = response.NextKeyMarker;
                        request.VersionIdMarker = response.NextVersionIdMarker;
                    }
                    else
                    {
                        request = null;
                    }
                }
                while (request != null);
```

```
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: '{ex.Message}'");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves version information for an object in a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api list-object-versions --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --prefix index.html
```

Output:

```
{
    "DeleteMarkers": [
        {
            "Owner": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
                "ID":
 "7009a8971cd660687538875e7c86c5b672fe116bd438f46db45460ddcd036c32"
            },
            "IsLatest": true,
            "VersionId": "B2VsEK5saUNNHKcOAJj7hIE86RozToyq",
            "Key": "index.html",
            "LastModified": "2015-11-10T00:57:03.000Z"
        },
        {
            "Owner": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
                "ID":
 "7009a8971cd660687538875e7c86c5b672fe116bd438f46db45460ddcd036c32"
            },
```

```
            "IsLatest": false,
            "VersionId": ".FLQEZscLIcfxSq.jsFJ.szUkmng2Yw6",
            "Key": "index.html",
            "LastModified": "2015-11-09T23:32:20.000Z"
        }
    ],
    "Versions": [
        {
            "LastModified": "2015-11-10T00:20:11.000Z",
            "VersionId": "Rb_l2T8UHDkFEwCgJjhlgPOZC0qJ.vpD",
            "ETag": "\"0622528de826c0df5db1258a23b80be5\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "index.html",
            "Owner": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
                "ID":
"7009a8971cd660687538875e7c86c5b672fe116bd438f46db45460ddcd036c32"
            },
            "IsLatest": false,
            "Size": 38
        },
        {
            "LastModified": "2015-11-09T23:26:41.000Z",
            "VersionId": "rasWWGpgk9E4s0LyTJgusGeRQKLVIAFf",
            "ETag": "\"06225825b8028de826c0df5db1a23be5\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "index.html",
            "Owner": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
                "ID":
"7009a8971cd660687538875e7c86c5b672fe116bd438f46db45460ddcd036c32"
            },
            "IsLatest": false,
            "Size": 38
        },
        {
            "LastModified": "2015-11-09T22:50:50.000Z",
            "VersionId": "null",
            "ETag": "\"d1f45267a863c8392e07d24dd592f1b9\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "index.html",
            "Owner": {
                "DisplayName": "my-username",
```

```
                "ID":
 "7009a8971cd660687538875e7c86c5b672fe116bd438f46db45460ddcd036c32"
            },
            "IsLatest": false,
            "Size": 533823
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// ListObjectVersions lists all versions of all objects in a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ListObjectVersions(ctx context.Context, bucket string)
 ([]types.ObjectVersion, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectVersionsOutput
 var versions []types.ObjectVersion
 input := &s3.ListObjectVersionsInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}
 versionPaginator := s3.NewListObjectVersionsPaginator(actor.S3Client, input)
 for versionPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = versionPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
   versions = append(versions, output.Versions...)
  }
 }
 return versions, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_versions(client: &Client, bucket: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    let resp = client.list_object_versions().bucket(bucket).send().await?;

    for version in resp.versions() {
        println!("{}", version.key().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("  version ID: {}", version.version_id().unwrap_or_default());
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListObjects` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListObjects`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create a web page that lists Amazon S3 objects

CLI

AWS CLI

The following example uses the `list-objects` command to display the names of all the objects in the specified bucket:

```
aws s3api list-objects --bucket text-content --query 'Contents[].{Key: Key, Size:
 Size}'
```

The example uses the `--query` argument to filter the output of `list-objects` down to the key value and size for each object

For more information about objects, see Working with Amazon S3 Objects in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListObjects in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command retrieves the information about all of the items in the bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Example 2: This command retrieves the information about the item "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt
```

Example 3: This command retrieves the information about all items with the prefix "sample" from bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix sample
```

- For API details, see ListObjects in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command retrieves the information about all of the items in the bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Example 2: This command retrieves the information about the item "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt
```

Example 3: This command retrieves the information about all items with the prefix "sample" from bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix sample
```

- For API details, see ListObjects in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListObjectsV2` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Delete all objects in a bucket
- Get started with S3

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to list the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket for which to list
        /// the contents.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// copy operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> ListBucketContentsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new ListObjectsV2Request
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    MaxKeys = 5,
                };
```

```
                Console.WriteLine("--------------------------------------");
                Console.WriteLine($"Listing the contents of {bucketName}:");
                Console.WriteLine("--------------------------------------");

                ListObjectsV2Response response;

                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);

                    response.S3Objects
                        .ForEach(obj => Console.WriteLine($"{obj.Key,-35}
{obj.LastModified.ToShortDateString(),10}{obj.Size,10}"));

                    // If the response is truncated, set the request
 ContinuationToken
                    // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
                    request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
                }
                while (response.IsTruncated);

                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
 Message:'{ex.Message}' getting list of objects.");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

List objects with a paginator.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// The following example lists objects in an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class ListObjectsPaginator
    {
        private const string BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

            Console.WriteLine($"Listing the objects contained in {BucketName}:
\n");
            await ListingObjectsAsync(s3Client, BucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method uses a paginator to retrieve the list of objects in an
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket whose objects
        /// you want to list.</param>
        public static async Task ListingObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName)
        {
            var listObjectsV2Paginator = client.Paginators.ListObjectsV2(new
 ListObjectsV2Request
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            });

            await foreach (var response in listObjectsV2Paginator.Responses)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {response.HttpStatusCode}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Number of Keys: {response.KeyCount}");
                foreach (var entry in response.S3Objects)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Key = {entry.Key} Size = {entry.Size}");
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function list_items_in_bucket
#
# This function displays a list of the files in the bucket with each file's
# size. The function uses the --query parameter to retrieve only the key and
# size fields from the Contents collection.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       The list of files in text format.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function list_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api list-objects \
```

```
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'Contents[].{Key: Key, Size: Size}')

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -eq 0 ]]; then
    echo "$response"
  else
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api list-objects operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::listObjects(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                             Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &keysResult,
                             const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request request;
    request.WithBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::String continuationToken; // Used for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> allObjects;

    do {
        if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
            request.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
        }
```

```
        auto outcome = s3Client.ListObjectsV2(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: listObjects: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        } else {
            Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> objects =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetContents();

            allObjects.insert(allObjects.end(), objects.begin(), objects.end());
            continuationToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextContinuationToken();
        }
    } while (!continuationToken.empty());

    std::cout << allObjects.size() << " object(s) found:" << std::endl;

    for (const auto &object: allObjects) {
        std::cout << "  " << object.GetKey() << std::endl;
        keysResult.push_back(object.GetKey());
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a list of objects in a bucket

The following `list-objects-v2` example lists the objects in the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api list-objects-v2 \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Contents": [
        {
            "LastModified": "2019-11-05T23:11:50.000Z",
            "ETag": "\"621503c373607d548b37cff8778d992c\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "doc1.rtf",
            "Size": 391
        },
        {
            "LastModified": "2019-11-05T23:11:50.000Z",
            "ETag": "\"a2cecc36ab7c7fe3a71a273b9d45b1b5\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "doc2.rtf",
            "Size": 373
        },
        {
            "LastModified": "2019-11-05T23:11:50.000Z",
            "ETag": "\"08210852f65a2e9cb999972539a64d68\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "doc3.rtf",
            "Size": 399
        },
        {
            "LastModified": "2019-11-05T23:11:50.000Z",
            "ETag": "\"d1852dd683f404306569471af106988e\"",
            "StorageClass": "STANDARD",
            "Key": "doc4.rtf",
            "Size": 6225
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// ListObjects lists the objects in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListObjects(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 ([]types.Object, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectsV2Output
 input := &s3.ListObjectsV2Input{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 }
 var objects []types.Object
 objectPaginator := s3.NewListObjectsV2Paginator(basics.S3Client, input)
 for objectPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = objectPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
    if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
     log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
     err = noBucket
    }
    break
   } else {
    objects = append(objects, output.Contents...)
   }
  }
  return objects, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all objects in the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to list objects for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when all objects have
 been listed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllObjectsAsync(String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request initialRequest = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .maxKeys(1)
            .build();
```

```
        ListObjectsV2Publisher paginator =
 getAsyncClient().listObjectsV2Paginator(initialRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.contents().forEach(s3Object -> {
                logger.info("Object key: " + s3Object.key());
            });
        }).thenRun(() -> {
            logger.info("Successfully listed all objects in the bucket: " +
 bucketName);
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list objects", ex);
        });
    }
```

List objects using pagination.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.paginators.ListObjectsV2Iterable;

public class ListObjectsPaginated {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket from which objects are read.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
```

```
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listBucketObjects(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Lists the objects in the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to list the objects from
     */
    public static void listBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            ListObjectsV2Request listReq = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .maxKeys(1)
                .build();

            ListObjectsV2Iterable listRes = s3.listObjectsV2Paginator(listReq);
            listRes.stream()
                .flatMap(r -> r.contents().stream())
                .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Key: " + content.key() +
 " size = " + content.size()));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the objects in your bucket. If there is more than one object, IsTruncated and NextContinuationToken will be used to iterate over the full list.

```
import {
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
  // This command supersedes the ListObjectsCommand and is the recommended way to
 list objects.
  paginateListObjectsV2,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log all of the object keys in a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, pageSize: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, pageSize }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  /** @type {string[][]} */
  const objects = [];
  try {
    const paginator = paginateListObjectsV2(
      { client, /* Max items per page */ pageSize: Number.parseInt(pageSize) },
      { Bucket: bucketName },
    );

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      objects.push(page.Contents.map((o) => o.Key));
    }
    objects.forEach((objectList, pageNum) => {
      console.log(
        `Page ${pageNum + 1}\n------\n${objectList.map((o) => `•
 ${o}`).join("\n")}\n`,
```

```
      );
    });
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while listing objects for "${bucketName}". The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while listing objects for "${bucketName}".
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBucketObjects(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
```

```
        val response = s3.listObjects(request)
        response.contents?.forEach { myObject ->
            println("The name of the key is ${myObject.key}")
            println("The object is ${myObject.size?.let { calKb(it) }} KBs")
            println("The owner is ${myObject.owner}")
        }
    }
}

private fun calKb(intValue: Long): Long = intValue / 1024
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List objects in a bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $contents = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "The contents of your bucket are: \n";
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
                echo $content['Key'] . "\n";
            }
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to list objects in $this->bucketName with error: " .
 $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with listing objects before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    @staticmethod
    def list(bucket, prefix=None):
        """
        Lists the objects in a bucket, optionally filtered by a prefix.

        :param bucket: The bucket to query. This is a Boto3 Bucket resource.
        :param prefix: When specified, only objects that start with this prefix
 are listed.
        :return: The list of objects.
        """
        try:
            if not prefix:
                objects = list(bucket.objects.all())
            else:
                objects = list(bucket.objects.filter(Prefix=prefix))
```

```
            logger.info(
                "Got objects %s from bucket '%s'", [o.key for o in objects],
 bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get objects for bucket '%s'.",
 bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return objects
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket actions.
class BucketListObjectsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket

  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket.
  def initialize(bucket)
    @bucket = bucket
  end

  # Lists object in a bucket.
  #
  # @param max_objects [Integer] The maximum number of objects to list.
  # @return [Integer] The number of objects listed.
  def list_objects(max_objects)
    count = 0
```

```
    puts "The objects in #{@bucket.name} are:"
    @bucket.objects.each do |obj|
      puts "\t#{obj.key}"
      count += 1
      break if count == max_objects
    end
    count
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't list objects in bucket #{bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    0
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"

  wrapper = BucketListObjectsWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Bucket.new(bucket_name))
  count = wrapper.list_objects(25)
  puts "Listed #{count} objects."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_objects(client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client, bucket: &str) ->
 Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let mut response = client
        .list_objects_v2()
```

```
        .bucket(bucket.to_owned())
        .max_keys(10) // In this example, go 10 at a time.
        .into_paginator()
        .send();

    while let Some(result) = response.next().await {
        match result {
            Ok(output) => {
                for object in output.contents() {
                    println!(" - {}", object.key().unwrap_or("Unknown"));
                }
            }
            Err(err) => {
                eprintln!("{err:?}")
            }
        }
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_s3->listobjectsv2(         " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
          iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of objects in S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func listBucketFiles(bucket: String) async throws -> [String] {
        do {
            let input = ListObjectsV2Input(
                bucket: bucket
            )

            // Use "Paginated" to get all the objects.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'continuationToken' in
 "ListObjectsV2Output".
            let output = client.listObjectsV2Paginated(input: input)
            var names: [String] = []

            for try await page in output {
                guard let objList = page.contents else {
                    print("ERROR: listObjectsV2Paginated returned nil contents.")
                    continue
                }

                for obj in objList {
                    if let objName = obj.key {
                        names.append(objName)
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
            return names
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Listing objects."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) Transfer Acceleration is a
/// bucket-level feature that enables you to perform faster data transfers
/// to Amazon S3. This example shows how to configure Transfer
/// Acceleration.
/// </summary>
public class TransferAcceleration
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The main method initializes the client object and sets the
    /// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket name before
    /// calling EnableAccelerationAsync.
```

```
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            await EnableAccelerationAsync(s3Client, bucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method sets the configuration to enable transfer acceleration
        /// for the bucket referred to in the bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client used to enable the
        /// acceleration on an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which
the
        /// method will be enabling acceleration.</param>
        private static async Task EnableAccelerationAsync(AmazonS3Client client,
string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var putRequest = new PutBucketAccelerateConfigurationRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    AccelerateConfiguration = new AccelerateConfiguration
                    {
                        Status = BucketAccelerateStatus.Enabled,
                    },
                };
                await client.PutBucketAccelerateConfigurationAsync(putRequest);

                var getRequest = new GetBucketAccelerateConfigurationRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
                var response = await
client.GetBucketAccelerateConfigurationAsync(getRequest);

                Console.WriteLine($"Acceleration state = '{response.Status}' ");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Error occurred. Message:'{ex.Message}' when
 setting transfer acceleration");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the accelerate configuration of a bucket

The following `put-bucket-accelerate-configuration` example enables the accelerate configuration for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-accelerate-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --accelerate-configuration Status=Enabled
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command enables the transfer acceleration for the given S3 bucket.

```
$statusVal = New-Object Amazon.S3.BucketAccelerateStatus('Enabled')
Write-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
AccelerateConfiguration_Status $statusVal
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command enables the transfer acceleration for the given S3 bucket.

```
$statusVal = New-Object Amazon.S3.BucketAccelerateStatus('Enabled')
Write-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
AccelerateConfiguration_Status $statusVal
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketAcl` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage access control lists (ACLs)

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an Amazon S3 bucket with an ACL to control access to the
        /// bucket and the objects stored in it.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to create
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket, with an ACL applied to the bucket.
        /// </param>
        /// <param name="region">The AWS Region where the bucket will be
created.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="newBucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating success or failure.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketUseCannedACLAsync(IAmazonS3
client, S3Region region, string newBucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with Canned ACL.
                var putBucketRequest = new PutBucketRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = newBucketName,
                    BucketRegion = region,
                    CannedACL = S3CannedACL.LogDeliveryWrite,
                };

                PutBucketResponse putBucketResponse = await
client.PutBucketAsync(putBucketRequest);

                return putBucketResponse.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Amazon S3 error: {ex.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putBucketAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName, const Aws::String
 &ownerID,
                              const Aws::String &granteePermission,
                              const Aws::String &granteeType, const Aws::String
 &granteeID,
                              const Aws::String &granteeEmailAddress,
                              const Aws::String &granteeURI, const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::Owner owner;
    owner.SetID(ownerID);

    Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee;
    grantee.SetType(setGranteeType(granteeType));

    if (!granteeEmailAddress.empty()) {
        grantee.SetEmailAddress(granteeEmailAddress);
    }

    if (!granteeID.empty()) {
        grantee.SetID(granteeID);
    }

    if (!granteeURI.empty()) {
        grantee.SetURI(granteeURI);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant;
    grant.SetGrantee(grantee);
    grant.SetPermission(setGranteePermission(granteePermission));

    Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants;
    grants.push_back(grant);

    Aws::S3::Model::AccessControlPolicy acp;
    acp.SetOwner(owner);
    acp.SetGrants(grants);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketAclRequest request;
    request.SetAccessControlPolicy(acp);
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutBucketAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &error = outcome.GetError();

        std::cerr << "Error: putBucketAcl: " << error.GetExceptionName()
                  << " - " << error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully added an ACL to the bucket '" << bucketName
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type
 enumeration.
/*!
 \param access: Human readable string.
 \return Permission: A Permission enum.
*/

Aws::S3::Model::Permission setGranteePermission(const Aws::String &access) {
    if (access == "FULL_CONTROL")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL;
    if (access == "WRITE")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE;
    if (access == "READ")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ;
    if (access == "WRITE_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP;
    if (access == "READ_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET;
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type
 enumeration.
/*!
 \param type: Human readable string.
 \return Type: Type enumeration
*/
```

```
Aws::S3::Model::Type setGranteeType(const Aws::String &type) {
    if (type == "Amazon customer by email")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail;
    if (type == "Canonical user")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser;
    if (type == "Group")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET;
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

This example grants `full control` to two AWS users (*user1@example.com* and *user2@example.com*) and `read` permission to everyone:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-acl --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --grant-full-
control emailaddress=user1@example.com,emailaddress=user2@example.com --grant-
read uri=http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/global/AllUsers
```

See http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/RESTBucketPUTacl.html for details on custom ACLs (the s3api ACL commands, such as `put-bucket-acl`, use the same shorthand argument notation).

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AccessControlPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Grant;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Permission;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketAclRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Type;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SetAcl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <id>\s

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to grant permissions on.\s
              id - The ID of the owner of this bucket (you can get this value
 from the AWS Management Console).
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String id = args[1];
        System.out.format("Setting access \n");
```

```
        System.out.println(" in bucket: " + bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setBucketAcl(s3, bucketName, id);
        System.out.println("Done!");
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the Access Control List (ACL) for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance to be used for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to set the ACL for
     * @param id the ID of the AWS user or account that will be granted full
control of the bucket
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while setting the bucket ACL
     */
    public static void setBucketAcl(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String id) {
        try {
            Grant ownerGrant = Grant.builder()
                .grantee(builder -> builder.id(id)
                    .type(Type.CANONICAL_USER))
                .permission(Permission.FULL_CONTROL)
                .build();

            List<Grant> grantList2 = new ArrayList<>();
            grantList2.add(ownerGrant);

            AccessControlPolicy acl = AccessControlPolicy.builder()
                .owner(builder -> builder.id(id))
                .grants(grantList2)
                .build();

            PutBucketAclRequest putAclReq = PutBucketAclRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .accessControlPolicy(acl)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketAcl(putAclReq);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
```

```
            e.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put the bucket ACL.

```
import {
  PutBucketAclCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Grant read access to a user using their canonical AWS account ID.
 *
 * Most Amazon S3 use cases don't require the use of access control lists (ACLs).
 * We recommend that you disable ACLs, except in unusual circumstances where
 * you need to control access for each object individually. Consider a policy
 instead.
 * For more information see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/bucket-policies.html.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, granteeCanonicalUserId: string,
 ownerCanonicalUserId }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  bucketName,
  granteeCanonicalUserId,
```

```
  ownerCanonicalUserId,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutBucketAclCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    AccessControlPolicy: {
      Grants: [
        {
          Grantee: {
            // The canonical ID of the user. This ID is an obfuscated form of
 your AWS account number.
            // It's unique to Amazon S3 and can't be found elsewhere.
            // For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/
latest/userguide/finding-canonical-user-id.html.
            ID: granteeCanonicalUserId,
            Type: "CanonicalUser",
          },
          // One of FULL_CONTROL | READ | WRITE | READ_ACP | WRITE_ACP
          // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/
API_Grant.html#AmazonS3-Type-Grant-Permission
          Permission: "READ",
        },
      ],
      Owner: {
        ID: ownerCanonicalUserId,
      },
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(`Granted READ access to ${bucketName}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting ACL for bucket ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
```

```
        `Error from S3 while setting ACL for bucket ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun setBucketAcl(
    bucketName: String,
    idVal: String,
) {
    val myGrant =
        Grantee {
            id = idVal
            type = Type.CanonicalUser
        }

    val ownerGrant =
        Grant {
            grantee = myGrant
            permission = Permission.FullControl
        }

    val grantList = mutableListOf<Grant>()
    grantList.add(ownerGrant)
```

```
    val ownerOb =
        Owner {
            id = idVal
        }

    val acl =
        AccessControlPolicy {
            owner = ownerOb
            grants = grantList
        }

    val request =
        PutBucketAclRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            accessControlPolicy = acl
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.putBucketAcl(request)
        println("An ACL was successfully set on $bucketName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
```

```
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def grant_log_delivery_access(self):
        """
        Grant the AWS Log Delivery group write access to the bucket so that
        Amazon S3 can deliver access logs to the bucket. This is the only
recommended
        use of an S3 bucket ACL.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.bucket.Acl()
            # Putting an ACL overwrites the existing ACL. If you want to preserve
            # existing grants, append new grants to the list of existing grants.
            grants = acl.grants if acl.grants else []
            grants.append(
                {
                    "Grantee": {
                        "Type": "Group",
                        "URI": "http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/s3/LogDelivery",
                    },
                    "Permission": "WRITE",
                }
            )
            acl.put(AccessControlPolicy={"Grants": grants, "Owner": acl.owner})
            logger.info("Granted log delivery access to bucket '%s'",
self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add ACL to bucket '%s'.",
self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutBucketCors` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketCors`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Add CORS configuration to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to apply the CORS configuration to an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="configuration">The CORS configuration to apply.</param>
        private static async Task PutCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client
client, CORSConfiguration configuration)
        {
            PutCORSConfigurationRequest request = new
PutCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
                Configuration = configuration,
            };

            _ = await client.PutCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following example enables PUT, POST, and DELETE requests from *www.example.com*, and enables GET requests from any domain:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-cors --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --cors-
configuration file://cors.json

cors.json:
{
  "CORSRules": [
    {
      "AllowedOrigins": ["http://www.example.com"],
      "AllowedHeaders": ["*"],
      "AllowedMethods": ["PUT", "POST", "DELETE"],
      "MaxAgeSeconds": 3000,
      "ExposeHeaders": ["x-amz-server-side-encryption"]
    },
    {
      "AllowedOrigins": ["*"],
      "AllowedHeaders": ["Authorization"],
      "AllowedMethods": ["GET"],
      "MaxAgeSeconds": 3000
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketCorsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketCorsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketCorsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CORSRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CORSConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketCorsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class S3Cors {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <accountId>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to upload an object into.
                accountId - The id of the account that owns the Amazon S3 bucket.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setCorsInformation(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        getBucketCorsInformation(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        deleteBucketCorsInformation(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) configuration for an
Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3            the {@link S3Client} instance used to interact with
the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName    the name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which the CORS
configuration should be deleted
     * @param accountId     the expected AWS account ID of the bucket owner
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while deleting the CORS
configuration for the bucket
     */
    public static void deleteBucketCorsInformation(S3Client s3, String
bucketName, String accountId) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketCorsRequest bucketCorsRequest =
DeleteBucketCorsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();

            s3.deleteBucketCors(bucketCorsRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) configuration for the
specified S3 bucket.
```

```
    *
    * @param s3 the S3Client instance to use for the operation
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to retrieve the CORS
configuration for
    * @param accountId the expected bucket owner's account ID
    *
    * @throws S3Exception if there is an error retrieving the CORS configuration
    */
   public static void getBucketCorsInformation(S3Client s3, String bucketName,
String accountId) {
       try {
           GetBucketCorsRequest bucketCorsRequest =
GetBucketCorsRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .build();

           GetBucketCorsResponse corsResponse =
s3.getBucketCors(bucketCorsRequest);
           List<CORSRule> corsRules = corsResponse.corsRules();
           for (CORSRule rule : corsRules) {
               System.out.println("allowOrigins: " + rule.allowedOrigins());
               System.out.println("AllowedMethod: " + rule.allowedMethods());
           }

       } catch (S3Exception e) {

           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   /**
    * Sets the Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) rules for an Amazon S3
bucket.
    *
    * @param s3 The S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service.
    * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket to set the CORS rules for.
    * @param accountId The AWS account ID of the bucket owner.
    */
   public static void setCorsInformation(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
       List<String> allowMethods = new ArrayList<>();
       allowMethods.add("PUT");
```

```
        allowMethods.add("POST");
        allowMethods.add("DELETE");

        List<String> allowOrigins = new ArrayList<>();
        allowOrigins.add("http://example.com");
        try {
            // Define CORS rules.
            CORSRule corsRule = CORSRule.builder()
                .allowedMethods(allowMethods)
                .allowedOrigins(allowOrigins)
                .build();

            List<CORSRule> corsRules = new ArrayList<>();
            corsRules.add(corsRule);
            CORSConfiguration configuration = CORSConfiguration.builder()
                .corsRules(corsRules)
                .build();

            PutBucketCorsRequest putBucketCorsRequest =
 PutBucketCorsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .corsConfiguration(configuration)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketCors(putBucketCorsRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add a CORS rule.

```
import {
  PutBucketCorsCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Allows cross-origin requests to an S3 bucket by setting the CORS
 configuration.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new PutBucketCorsCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        CORSConfiguration: {
          CORSRules: [
            {
              // Allow all headers to be sent to this bucket.
              AllowedHeaders: ["*"],
              // Allow only GET and PUT methods to be sent to this bucket.
              AllowedMethods: ["GET", "PUT"],
              // Allow only requests from the specified origin.
              AllowedOrigins: ["https://www.example.com"],
              // Allow the entity tag (ETag) header to be returned in the
 response. The ETag header
              // The entity tag represents a specific version of the object. The
 ETag reflects
```

```
              // changes only to the contents of an object, not its metadata.
              ExposeHeaders: ["ETag"],
              // How long the requesting browser should cache the preflight
response. After
              // this time, the preflight request will have to be made again.
              MaxAgeSeconds: 3600,
            },
          ],
        },
      },
    );
    console.log(`Successfully set CORS rules for bucket: ${bucketName}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting CORS rules for ${bucketName}. The bucket
doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting CORS rules for ${bucketName}.
${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def put_cors(self, cors_rules):
        """
        Apply CORS rules to the bucket. CORS rules specify the HTTP actions that
 are
        allowed from other domains.

        :param cors_rules: The CORS rules to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Cors().put(CORSConfiguration={"CORSRules": cors_rules})
            logger.info(
                "Put CORS rules %s for bucket '%s'.", cors_rules,
 self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put CORS rules for bucket %s.",
 self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket CORS configuration.
class BucketCorsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_cors

  # @param bucket_cors [Aws::S3::BucketCors] A bucket CORS object configured with
 an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_cors)
    @bucket_cors = bucket_cors
  end

  # Sets CORS rules on a bucket.
  #
  # @param allowed_methods [Array<String>] The types of HTTP requests to allow.
  # @param allowed_origins [Array<String>] The origins to allow.
  # @returns [Boolean] True if the CORS rules were set; otherwise, false.
  def set_cors(allowed_methods, allowed_origins)
    @bucket_cors.put(
      cors_configuration: {
        cors_rules: [
          {
            allowed_methods: allowed_methods,
            allowed_origins: allowed_origins,
            allowed_headers: %w[*],
            max_age_seconds: 3600
          }
        ]
```

```
      }
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't set CORS rules for #{@bucket_cors.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `PutBucketEncryption` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketEncryption`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with S3

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the bucket server side encryption to use AWSKMS with a customer-
managed key id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="kmsKeyId">The Id of the KMS Key.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
   public static async Task<bool> SetBucketServerSideEncryption(string
bucketName, string kmsKeyId)
   {
       var serverSideEncryptionByDefault = new ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration
       {
           ServerSideEncryptionRules = new List<ServerSideEncryptionRule>
           {
               new ServerSideEncryptionRule
               {
                   ServerSideEncryptionByDefault = new
ServerSideEncryptionByDefault
                   {
                       ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm =
ServerSideEncryptionMethod.AWSKMS,
                       ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServiceKeyId = kmsKeyId
                   }
               }
           }
       };
       try
       {
           var encryptionResponse = await _s3Client.PutBucketEncryptionAsync(new
PutBucketEncryptionRequest
           {
               BucketName = bucketName,
               ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration =
serverSideEncryptionByDefault,
           });

           return encryptionResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
       }
       catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
       {
           Console.WriteLine(ex.ErrorCode == "AccessDenied"
               ? $"This account does not have permission to set encryption on
{bucketName}, please try again."
               : $"Unable to set bucket encryption for bucket {bucketName},
{ex.Message}");
       }
       return false;
   }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To configure server-side encryption for a bucket

The following `put-bucket-encryption` example sets AES256 encryption as the default for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-encryption \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --server-side-encryption-configuration '{"Rules":
 [{"ApplyServerSideEncryptionByDefault": {"SSEAlgorithm": "AES256"}}]}'
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command enables default AES256 server side encryption with Amazon S3 Managed Keys(SSE-S3) on the given bucket.

```
$Encryptionconfig = @{ServerSideEncryptionByDefault =
 @{ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm = "AES256"}}
Set-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration_ServerSideEncryptionRule $Encryptionconfig
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command enables default AES256 server side encryption with Amazon S3 Managed Keys(SSE-S3) on the given bucket.

```
$Encryptionconfig = @{ServerSideEncryptionByDefault =
 @{ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm = "AES256"}}
Set-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration_ServerSideEncryptionRule $Encryptionconfig
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Delete incomplete multipart uploads
- Manage large messages using S3
- Work with versioned objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Adds lifecycle configuration information to the S3 bucket named in
        /// the bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client used to call the
        /// PutLifecycleConfigurationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the S3 bucket to
        /// which configuration information will be added.</param>
        /// <param name="configuration">A LifecycleConfiguration object that
        /// will be applied to the S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task AddExampleLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, LifecycleConfiguration configuration)
        {
            var request = new PutLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
```

```
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Configuration = configuration,
            };
            var response = await client.PutLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command applies a lifecycle configuration to a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-lifecycle-configuration --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --
lifecycle-configuration  file://lifecycle.json
```

The file `lifecycle.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that specifies two rules:

```
{
    "Rules": [
        {
            "ID": "Move rotated logs to Glacier",
            "Prefix": "rotated/",
            "Status": "Enabled",
            "Transitions": [
                {
                    "Date": "2015-11-10T00:00:00.000Z",
                    "StorageClass": "GLACIER"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "Status": "Enabled",
            "Prefix": "",
            "NoncurrentVersionTransitions": [
                {
                    "NoncurrentDays": 2,
                    "StorageClass": "GLACIER"
```

```
                }
            ],
            "ID": "Move old versions to Glacier"
        }
    ]
}
```

The first rule moves files with the prefix `rotated` to Glacier on the specified date. The second rule moves old object versions to Glacier when they are no longer current. For information on acceptable timestamp formats, see Specifying Parameter Values in the *AWS CLI User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRuleFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Transition;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketLifecycleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.TransitionStorageClass;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpirationStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketLifecycleConfiguration;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
```

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class LifecycleConfiguration {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <accountId>\s

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
 to upload an object into.
              accountId - The id of the account that owns the Amazon S3 bucket.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setLifecycleConfig(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        getLifecycleConfig(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        deleteLifecycleConfig(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        System.out.println("You have successfully created, updated, and deleted a
 Lifecycle configuration");
        s3.close();
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Sets the lifecycle configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3           The Amazon S3 client to use for the operation.
     * @param bucketName   The name of the Amazon S3 bucket.
     * @param accountId    The expected owner of the Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error setting the lifecycle
configuration.
     */
    public static void setLifecycleConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
        try {
            // Create a rule to archive objects with the "glacierobjects/" prefix
to the
            // S3 Glacier Flexible Retrieval storage class immediately.
            LifecycleRuleFilter ruleFilter = LifecycleRuleFilter.builder()
                .prefix("glacierobjects/")
                .build();

            Transition transition = Transition.builder()
                .storageClass(TransitionStorageClass.GLACIER)
                .days(0)
                .build();

            LifecycleRule rule1 = LifecycleRule.builder()
                .id("Archive immediately rule")
                .filter(ruleFilter)
                .transitions(transition)
                .status(ExpirationStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

            // Create a second rule.
            Transition transition2 = Transition.builder()
                .storageClass(TransitionStorageClass.GLACIER)
                .days(0)
                .build();

            List<Transition> transitionList = new ArrayList<>();
            transitionList.add(transition2);

            LifecycleRuleFilter ruleFilter2 = LifecycleRuleFilter.builder()
```

```
                .prefix("glacierobjects/")
                .build();

            LifecycleRule rule2 = LifecycleRule.builder()
                .id("Archive and then delete rule")
                .filter(ruleFilter2)
                .transitions(transitionList)
                .status(ExpirationStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

            // Add the LifecycleRule objects to an ArrayList.
            ArrayList<LifecycleRule> ruleList = new ArrayList<>();
            ruleList.add(rule1);
            ruleList.add(rule2);

            BucketLifecycleConfiguration lifecycleConfiguration =
BucketLifecycleConfiguration.builder()
                .rules(ruleList)
                .build();

            PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest = PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
                .builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .lifecycleConfiguration(lifecycleConfiguration)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();


s3.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the lifecycle configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket and adds a
new lifecycle rule to it.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket
     * @param accountId the expected owner of the Amazon S3 bucket
```

```
    */
   public static void getLifecycleConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
       try {
           GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
getBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest = GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
               .builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .build();

           GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse response = s3

.getBucketLifecycleConfiguration(getBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest);
           List<LifecycleRule> newList = new ArrayList<>();
           List<LifecycleRule> rules = response.rules();
           for (LifecycleRule rule : rules) {
               newList.add(rule);
           }

           // Add a new rule with both a prefix predicate and a tag predicate.
           LifecycleRuleFilter ruleFilter = LifecycleRuleFilter.builder()
               .prefix("YearlyDocuments/")
               .build();

           Transition transition = Transition.builder()
               .storageClass(TransitionStorageClass.GLACIER)
               .days(3650)
               .build();

           LifecycleRule rule1 = LifecycleRule.builder()
               .id("NewRule")
               .filter(ruleFilter)
               .transitions(transition)
               .status(ExpirationStatus.ENABLED)
               .build();

           // Add the new rule to the list.
           newList.add(rule1);
           BucketLifecycleConfiguration lifecycleConfiguration =
BucketLifecycleConfiguration.builder()
               .rules(newList)
               .build();
```

```
            PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest = PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
                .builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .lifecycleConfiguration(lifecycleConfiguration)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();


s3.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the lifecycle configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the {@link S3Client} to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
     * @param accountId the expected account owner of the S3 bucket
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while deleting the lifecycle
configuration
     */
    public static void deleteLifecycleConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName,
String accountId) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketLifecycleRequest deleteBucketLifecycleRequest =
DeleteBucketLifecycleRequest
                .builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();

            s3.deleteBucketLifecycle(deleteBucketLifecycleRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def put_lifecycle_configuration(self, lifecycle_rules):
        """
        Apply a lifecycle configuration to the bucket. The lifecycle
 configuration can
        be used to archive or delete the objects in the bucket according to
 specified
        parameters, such as a number of days.

        :param lifecycle_rules: The lifecycle rules to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().put(
```

```
                LifecycleConfiguration={"Rules": lifecycle_rules}
            )
            logger.info(
                "Put lifecycle rules %s for bucket '%s'.",
                lifecycle_rules,
                self.bucket.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't put lifecycle rules for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutBucketLogging` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketLogging`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to enable logging on an Amazon Simple Storage
```

```
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket. You need to have two Amazon S3 buckets for
    /// this example. The first is the bucket for which you wish to enable
    /// logging, and the second is the location where you want to store the
    /// logs.
    /// </summary>
    public class ServerAccessLogging
    {
        private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            LoadConfig();

            string bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"];
            string logBucketName = _configuration["LogBucketName"];
            string logObjectKeyPrefix = _configuration["LogObjectKeyPrefix"];
            string accountId = _configuration["AccountId"];

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2 or RegionEndpoint.USEast2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            try
            {
                // Update bucket policy for target bucket to allow delivery of
logs to it.
                await SetBucketPolicyToAllowLogDelivery(
                    client,
                    bucketName,
                    logBucketName,
                    logObjectKeyPrefix,
                    accountId);

                // Enable logging on the source bucket.
                await EnableLoggingAsync(
                    client,
                    bucketName,
                    logBucketName,
                    logObjectKeyPrefix);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {e.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method grants appropriate permissions for logging to the
        /// Amazon S3 bucket where the logs will be stored.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client which will be
used
        /// to apply the bucket policy.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceBucketName">The name of the source bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="logBucketName">The name of the bucket where logging
        /// information will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="logPrefix">The logging prefix where the logs should be
delivered.</param>
        /// <param name="accountId">The account id of the account where the
source bucket exists.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task SetBucketPolicyToAllowLogDelivery(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string sourceBucketName,
            string logBucketName,
            string logPrefix,
            string accountId)
        {
            var resourceArn = @"""arn:aws:s3:::" + logBucketName + "/" +
logPrefix + @"*""";

            var newPolicy = @"{
                                ""Statement"":[{
                                ""Sid"": ""S3ServerAccessLogsPolicy"",
                                ""Effect"": ""Allow"",
                                ""Principal"": { ""Service"":
""logging.s3.amazonaws.com"" },
                                ""Action"": [""s3:PutObject""],
                                ""Resource"": [" + resourceArn + @"],
                                ""Condition"": {
                                ""ArnLike"": { ""aws:SourceArn"":
""arn:aws:s3:::" + sourceBucketName + @""" },
                                ""StringEquals"": { ""aws:SourceAccount"": """ +
accountId + @""" }
                                        }
                                    }]
```

```
                                }";
            Console.WriteLine($"The policy to apply to bucket {logBucketName} to
 enable logging:");
            Console.WriteLine(newPolicy);

            PutBucketPolicyRequest putRequest = new PutBucketPolicyRequest
            {
                BucketName = logBucketName,
                Policy = newPolicy,
            };
            await client.PutBucketPolicyAsync(putRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Policy applied.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method enables logging for an Amazon S3 bucket. Logs will be
 stored
        /// in the bucket you selected for logging. Selected prefix
        /// will be prepended to each log object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client which will be
 used
        /// to configure and apply logging to the selected Amazon S3 bucket.</
param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which
 you
        /// wish to enable logging.</param>
        /// <param name="logBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where
 logging
        /// information will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="logObjectKeyPrefix">The prefix to prepend to each
        /// object key.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task EnableLoggingAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string logBucketName,
            string logObjectKeyPrefix)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enabling logging for bucket {bucketName}.");
            var loggingConfig = new S3BucketLoggingConfig
            {
                TargetBucketName = logBucketName,
                TargetPrefix = logObjectKeyPrefix,
```

```
            };

            var putBucketLoggingRequest = new PutBucketLoggingRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                LoggingConfig = loggingConfig,
            };
            await client.PutBucketLoggingAsync(putBucketLoggingRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Logging enabled.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads configuration from settings files.
        /// </summary>
        public static void LoadConfig()
        {
            _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
                .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
                .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
                .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json", true) // Optionally, load
 local settings.
                .Build();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLogging in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To set bucket policy logging

The following `put-bucket-logging` example sets the logging policy for *amzn-s3-demo-bucket*. First, grant the logging service principal permission in your bucket policy using the `put-bucket-policy` command.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-policy \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --policy file://policy.json
```

Contents of `policy.json`:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "S3ServerAccessLogsPolicy",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {"Service": "logging.s3.amazonaws.com"},
            "Action": "s3:PutObject",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Logs/*",
            "Condition": {
                "ArnLike": {"aws:SourceARN": "arn:aws:s3:::SOURCE-BUCKET-NAME"},
                "StringEquals": {"aws:SourceAccount": "SOURCE-AWS-ACCOUNT-ID"}
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

To apply the logging policy, use `put-bucket-logging`.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-logging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --bucket-logging-status file://logging.json
```

Contents of `logging.json`:

```
{
     "LoggingEnabled": {
         "TargetBucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
         "TargetPrefix": "Logs/"
     }
 }
```

The `put-bucket-policy` command is required to grant `s3:PutObject` permissions to the logging service principal.

For more information, see Amazon S3 Server Access Logging in the *Amazon S3 User Guide*.

Example 2: To set a bucket policy for logging access to only a single user

The following `put-bucket-logging` example sets the logging policy for *amzn-s3-demo-bucket*. The AWS user *bob@example.com* will have full control over the log files, and no one else has any access. First, grant S3 permission with `put-bucket-acl`.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-acl \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --grant-write URI=http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/s3/LogDelivery \
    --grant-read-acp URI=http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/s3/LogDelivery
```

Then apply the logging policy using `put-bucket-logging`.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-logging \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --bucket-logging-status file://logging.json
```

Contents of `logging.json`:

```
{
    "LoggingEnabled": {
        "TargetBucket": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
        "TargetPrefix": "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-logs/",
        "TargetGrants": [
            {
                "Grantee": {
                    "Type": "AmazonCustomerByEmail",
                    "EmailAddress": "bob@example.com"
                },
                "Permission": "FULL_CONTROL"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

the `put-bucket-acl` command is required to grant S3's log delivery system the necessary permissions (write and read-acp permissions).

For more information, see Amazon S3 Server Access Logging in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutBucketLogging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use PutBucketNotification with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use PutBucketNotification.

CLI

AWS CLI

The applies a notification configuration to a bucket named amzn-s3-demo-bucket:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-notification --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --notification-
configuration file://notification.json
```

The file notification.json is a JSON document in the current folder that specifies an SNS topic and an event type to monitor:

```
{
  "TopicConfiguration": {
    "Event": "s3:ObjectCreated:*",
    "Topic": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:s3-notification-topic"
  }
}
```

The SNS topic must have an IAM policy attached to it that allows Amazon S3 to publish to it:

```
{
 "Version": "2008-10-17",
 "Id": "example-ID",
 "Statement": [
  {
   "Sid": "example-statement-ID",
   "Effect": "Allow",
   "Principal": {
     "Service": "s3.amazonaws.com"
   },
   "Action": [
    "SNS:Publish"
   ],
   "Resource": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
   "Condition": {
      "ArnLike": {
      "aws:SourceArn": "arn:aws:s3:*:*:amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
```

```
      }
    }
   }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotification in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example configures the SNS topic configuration for the S3 event ObjectRemovedDelete and enables notification for the given s3 bucket

```
$topic =  [Amazon.S3.Model.TopicConfiguration] @{
  Id = "delete-event"
  Topic = "arn:aws:sns:eu-west-1:123456789012:topic-1"
  Event = [Amazon.S3.EventType]::ObjectRemovedDelete
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -TopicConfiguration
 $topic
```

Example 2: This example enables notifications of ObjectCreatedAll for the given bucket sending it to Lambda function.

```
$lambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:rdplock"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-Lambda"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".pem"}
      )
    }
  }
}
```

```
Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
LambdaFunctionConfiguration $lambdaConfig
```

Example 3: This example creates 2 different Lambda configuration on the basis of different key-suffix and configured both in a single command.

```
#Lambda Config 1

$firstLambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:verifynet"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-dada-ps1"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".ps1"}
      )
    }
  }
}

#Lambda Config 2

$secondlambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = [Amazon.S3.EventType]::ObjectCreatedAll
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:verifyssm"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-dada-json"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".json"}
      )
    }
  }
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
LambdaFunctionConfiguration $firstLambdaConfig,$secondlambdaConfig
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example configures the SNS topic configuration for the S3 event ObjectRemovedDelete and enables notification for the given s3 bucket

```
$topic =  [Amazon.S3.Model.TopicConfiguration] @{
  Id = "delete-event"
  Topic = "arn:aws:sns:eu-west-1:123456789012:topic-1"
  Event = [Amazon.S3.EventType]::ObjectRemovedDelete
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -TopicConfiguration
 $topic
```

Example 2: This example enables notifications of ObjectCreatedAll for the given bucket sending it to Lambda function.

```
$lambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:rdplock"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-Lambda"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".pem"}
      )
    }
  }
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
LambdaFunctionConfiguration $lambdaConfig
```

Example 3: This example creates 2 different Lambda configuration on the basis of different key-suffix and configured both in a single command.

```
#Lambda Config 1

$firstLambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:verifynet"
```

```
  Id = "ObjectCreated-dada-ps1"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".ps1"}
      )
    }
  }
}

#Lambda Config 2

$secondlambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = [Amazon.S3.EventType]::ObjectCreatedAll
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:verifyssm"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-dada-json"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".json"}
      )
    }
  }
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
LambdaFunctionConfiguration $firstLambdaConfig,$secondlambdaConfig
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketNotificationConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketNotificationConfiguration`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Process S3 event notifications
- Send event notifications to EventBridge

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to enable notifications for an Amazon Simple
    /// Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class EnableNotifications
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
            const string snsTopic = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:0123456789ab:bucket-
notify";
            const string sqsQueue = "arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-2:0123456789ab:Example_Queue";

            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USEast2);
            await EnableNotificationAsync(client, bucketName, snsTopic,
 sqsQueue);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method makes the call to the PutBucketNotificationAsync method.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client used to call
        /// the PutBucketNotificationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket for which
        /// notifications will be turned on.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="snsTopic">The ARN for the Amazon Simple Notification
        /// Service (Amazon SNS) topic associated with the S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="sqsQueue">The ARN of the Amazon Simple Queue Service
        /// (Amazon SQS) queue to which notifications will be pushed.</param>
        public static async Task EnableNotificationAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string snsTopic,
            string sqsQueue)
        {
            try
            {
                // The bucket for which we are setting up notifications.
                var request = new PutBucketNotificationRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };

                // Defines the topic to use when sending a notification.
                var topicConfig = new TopicConfiguration()
                {
                    Events = new List<EventType> { EventType.ObjectCreatedCopy },
                    Topic = snsTopic,
                };
                request.TopicConfigurations = new List<TopicConfiguration>
                {
                    topicConfig,
                };
                request.QueueConfigurations = new List<QueueConfiguration>
                {
                    new QueueConfiguration()
                    {
                        Events = new List<EventType>
{ EventType.ObjectCreatedPut },
                        Queue = sqsQueue,
                    },
                };

                // Now apply the notification settings to the bucket.
                PutBucketNotificationResponse response = await
client.PutBucketNotificationAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotificationConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To enable the specified notifications to a bucket

The following `put-bucket-notification-configuration` example applies a notification configuration to a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`. The file `notification.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that specifies an SNS topic and an event type to monitor.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-notification-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --notification-configuration file://notification.json
```

Contents of `notification.json`:

```
{
    "TopicConfigurations": [
        {
            "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:s3-notification-
topic",
            "Events": [
                "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

The SNS topic must have an IAM policy attached to it that allows Amazon S3 to publish to it.

```
{
```

```
    "Version": "2008-10-17",
    "Id": "example-ID",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "example-statement-ID",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "s3.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": [
                "SNS:Publish"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012::s3-notification-
topic",
            "Condition": {
                "ArnLike": {
                    "aws:SourceArn": "arn:aws:s3:*:*:amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotificationConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `PutBucketPolicy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketPolicy`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putBucketPolicy(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                 const Aws::String &policyBody,
```

```
                                    const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::StringStream> request_body =
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::StringStream>("");
    *request_body << policyBody;

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetBody(request_body);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketPolicyOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutBucketPolicy(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: putBucketPolicy: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Set the following policy body for the bucket '" <<
                  bucketName << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;
        std::cout << policyBody << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}


//! Build a policy JSON string.
/*!
  \param userArn: Aws user Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
      For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
reference_identifiers.html#identifiers-arns.
  \param bucketName: Name of a bucket.
  \return String: Policy as JSON string.
*/

Aws::String getPolicyString(const Aws::String &userArn,
                            const Aws::String &bucketName) {
    return
            "{\n"
            "   \"Version\":\"2012-10-17\",\n"
            "   \"Statement\":[\n"
            "       {\n"
```

```
            "           \"Sid\": \"1\",\n"
            "           \"Effect\": \"Allow\",\n"
            "           \"Principal\": {\n"
            "               \"AWS\": \""
            + userArn +
            "\"\n""           },\n"
            "           \"Action\": [ \"s3:getObject\" ],\n"
            "           \"Resource\": [ \"arn:aws:s3:::"
            + bucketName +
            "/*\" ]\n"
            "       }\n"
            "   ]\n"
            "}";
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

This example allows all users to retrieve any object in *amzn-s3-demo-bucket* except those in the *MySecretFolder*. It also grants `put` and `delete` permission to the root user of the AWS account `1234-5678-9012`:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-policy --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --policy file:// policy.json

policy.json:
{
   "Statement": [
      {
         "Effect": "Allow",
         "Principal": "*",
         "Action": "s3:GetObject",
         "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*"
      },
      {
         "Effect": "Deny",
         "Principal": "*",
         "Action": "s3:GetObject",
```

```
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/MySecretFolder/*"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root"
            },
            "Action": [
                "s3:DeleteObject",
                "s3:PutObject"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*"
        }

    ]
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.List;

import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonParser;
```

```
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SetBucketPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <polFile>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to set the policy on.
                polFile - A JSON file containing the policy (see the Amazon S3
 Readme for an example).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String polFile = args[1];
        String policyText = getBucketPolicyFromFile(polFile);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setPolicy(s3, bucketName, policyText);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the policy for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
```

```
     * @param s3         the {@link S3Client} object used to interact with the
Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket
     * @param policyText the text of the policy to be set on the bucket
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error setting the bucket policy
     */
    public static void setPolicy(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
policyText) {
        System.out.println("Setting policy:");
        System.out.println("----");
        System.out.println(policyText);
        System.out.println("----");
        System.out.format("On Amazon S3 bucket: \"%s\"\n", bucketName);

        try {
            PutBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = PutBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .policy(policyText)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketPolicy(policyReq);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("Done!");
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the bucket policy from a specified file.
     *
     * @param policyFile the path to the file containing the bucket policy
     * @return the content of the bucket policy file as a string
     */
    public static String getBucketPolicyFromFile(String policyFile) {
        StringBuilder fileText = new StringBuilder();
        try {
            List<String> lines = Files.readAllLines(Paths.get(policyFile),
StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
            for (String line : lines) {
                fileText.append(line);
            }
```

```
        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.out.format("Problem reading file: \"%s\"", policyFile);
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        try {
            final JsonParser parser = new
 ObjectMapper().getFactory().createParser(fileText.toString());
            while (parser.nextToken() != null) {
            }

        } catch (IOException jpe) {
            jpe.printStackTrace();
        }
        return fileText.toString();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add the policy.

```
import {
  PutBucketPolicyCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Grant an IAM role GetObject access to all of the objects
```

```
 * in the provided bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, iamRoleArn: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, iamRoleArn }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutBucketPolicyCommand({
    // This is a resource-based policy. For more information on resource-based
 policies,
    // see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
access_policies.html#policies_resource-based.
    Policy: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Principal: {
            AWS: iamRoleArn,
          },
          Action: "s3:GetObject",
          Resource: `arn:aws:s3:::${bucketName}/*`,
        },
      ],
    }),
    // Apply the preceding policy to this bucket.
    Bucket: bucketName,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `GetObject access to the bucket "${bucketName}" was granted to the provided
 IAM role.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "MalformedPolicy"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting the bucket policy for the bucket
 "${bucketName}". The policy was malformed.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
```

```
        `Error from S3 while setting the bucket policy for the bucket
 "${bucketName}". ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def put_policy(self, policy):
        """
        Apply a security policy to the bucket. Policies control users' ability
        to perform specific actions, such as listing the objects in the bucket.
```

```
        :param policy: The policy to apply to the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Policy().put(Policy=json.dumps(policy))
            logger.info("Put policy %s for bucket '%s'.", policy,
 self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't apply policy to bucket '%s'.",
 self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Wraps an Amazon S3 bucket policy.
class BucketPolicyWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_policy

  # @param bucket_policy [Aws::S3::BucketPolicy] A bucket policy object
 configured with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_policy)
    @bucket_policy = bucket_policy
  end

  # Sets a policy on a bucket.
  #
  def policy(policy)
    @bucket_policy.put(policy: policy)
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
```

```
    puts "Couldn't set the policy for #{@bucket_policy.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `PutBucketReplication` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketReplication`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To configure replication for an S3 bucket

The following `put-bucket-replication` example applies a replication configuration to the specified S3 bucket.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-replication \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket1 \
    --replication-configuration file://replication.json
```

Contents of `replication.json`:

```
{
    "Role": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/s3-replication-role",
    "Rules": [
        {
            "Status": "Enabled",
            "Priority": 1,
            "DeleteMarkerReplication": { "Status": "Disabled" },
            "Filter" : { "Prefix": ""},
            "Destination": {
                "Bucket": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket2"
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

The destination bucket must have versioning enabled. The specified role must have permission to write to the destination bucket and have a trust relationship that allows Amazon S3 to assume the role.

Example role permission policy:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "s3:GetReplicationConfiguration",
                "s3:ListBucket"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket1"
            ]
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "s3:GetObjectVersion",
                "s3:GetObjectVersionAcl",
                "s3:GetObjectVersionTagging"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket1/*"
            ]
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "s3:ReplicateObject",
                "s3:ReplicateDelete",
                "s3:ReplicateTags"
            ],
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket2/*"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example trust relationship policy:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "s3.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see This is the topic title in the *Amazon Simple Storage Service Console User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutBucketReplication in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Sets the replication configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client             the S3Client instance to use for the operation
     * @param sourceBucketName     the name of the source bucket
     * @param destBucketName       the name of the destination bucket
     * @param destinationBucketARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
 destination bucket
     * @param roleARN              the ARN of the IAM role to use for the
 replication configuration
```

```
    */
   public static void setReplication(S3Client s3Client, String sourceBucketName,
String destBucketName, String destinationBucketARN, String roleARN) {
       try {
           Destination destination = Destination.builder()
               .bucket(destinationBucketARN)
               .storageClass(StorageClass.STANDARD)
               .build();

           // Define a prefix filter for replication.
           ReplicationRuleFilter ruleFilter = ReplicationRuleFilter.builder()
               .prefix("documents/")
               .build();

           // Define delete marker replication setting.
           DeleteMarkerReplication deleteMarkerReplication =
DeleteMarkerReplication.builder()
               .status(DeleteMarkerReplicationStatus.DISABLED)
               .build();

           // Create the replication rule.
           ReplicationRule replicationRule = ReplicationRule.builder()
               .priority(1)
               .filter(ruleFilter)
               .status(ReplicationRuleStatus.ENABLED)
               .deleteMarkerReplication(deleteMarkerReplication)
               .destination(destination)
               .build();

           List<ReplicationRule> replicationRuleList = new ArrayList<>();
           replicationRuleList.add(replicationRule);

           // Define the replication configuration with IAM role.
           ReplicationConfiguration configuration =
ReplicationConfiguration.builder()
               .role(roleARN)
               .rules(replicationRuleList)
               .build();

           // Apply the replication configuration to the source bucket.
           PutBucketReplicationRequest replicationRequest =
PutBucketReplicationRequest.builder()
               .bucket(sourceBucketName)
               .replicationConfiguration(configuration)
```

```
                .build();

            s3Client.putBucketReplication(replicationRequest);
            System.out.println("Replication configuration set successfully.");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Configuration error: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println("S3 Exception: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.err.println("Status Code: " + e.statusCode());
            System.err.println("Error Code: " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());


        } catch (SdkException e) {
            System.err.println("SDK Exception: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketReplication in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sets a replication configuration with a single rule enabling replication to the 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' bucket any new objects created with the key name prefix "TaxDocs" in the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Enabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1
```

```
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

Example 2: This example sets a replication configuration with multiple rules enabling replication to the 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' bucket any new objects created with either the key name prefix "TaxDocs" or "OtherDocs". The key prefixes must not overlap.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Enabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$rule2 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule2.ID = "Rule-2"
$rule2.Status = "Enabled"
$rule2.Prefix = "OtherDocs"
$rule2.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1,$rule2
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

Example 3: This example updates the replication configuration on the specified bucket to disable the rule controlling replication of objects with the key name prefix "TaxDocs" to the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Disabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }
```

```
$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

- For API details, see PutBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets a replication configuration with a single rule enabling replication to the 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' bucket any new objects created with the key name prefix "TaxDocs" in the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Enabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

Example 2: This example sets a replication configuration with multiple rules enabling replication to the 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' bucket any new objects created with either the key name prefix "TaxDocs" or "OtherDocs". The key prefixes must not overlap.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Enabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
```

```
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$rule2 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule2.ID = "Rule-2"
$rule2.Status = "Enabled"
$rule2.Prefix = "OtherDocs"
$rule2.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1,$rule2
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

Example 3: This example updates the replication configuration on the specified bucket to disable the rule controlling replication of objects with the key name prefix "TaxDocs" to the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Disabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-
bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

- For API details, see PutBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketRequestPayment` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketRequestPayment`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To enable ``requester pays`` configuration for a bucket

The following `put-bucket-request-payment` example enables `requester pays` for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-request-payment \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --request-payment-configuration '{"Payer":"Requester"}'
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To disable ``requester pays`` configuration for a bucket

The following `put-bucket-request-payment` example disables `requester pays` for the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api put-bucket-request-payment \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --request-payment-configuration '{"Payer":"BucketOwner"}'
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see PutBucketRequestPayment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Updates the request payment configuration for the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' so that the person requesting downloads from the bucket will be charged for the download. By default the bucket owner pays for downloads. To set the request payment back to the default use 'BucketOwner' for the RequestPaymentConfiguration_Payer parameter.

```
Write-S3BucketRequestPayment -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
RequestPaymentConfiguration_Payer Requester
```

- For API details, see PutBucketRequestPayment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the request payment configuration for the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' so that the person requesting downloads from the bucket will be charged for the download. By default the bucket owner pays for downloads. To set the request payment back to the default use 'BucketOwner' for the RequestPaymentConfiguration_Payer parameter.

```
Write-S3BucketRequestPayment -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
RequestPaymentConfiguration_Payer Requester
```

- For API details, see PutBucketRequestPayment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketTagging` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketTagging`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with S3

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command applies a tagging configuration to a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-tagging --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --tagging file://
tagging.json
```

The file `tagging.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that specifies tags:

```
{
   "TagSet": [
     {
       "Key": "organization",
       "Value": "marketing"
     }
   ]
}
```

Or apply a tagging configuration to `amzn-s3-demo-bucket` directly from the command line:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-tagging --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --tagging
 'TagSet=[{Key=organization,Value=marketing}]'
```

- For API details, see PutBucketTagging in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command applies two tags to a bucket named `cloudtrail-test-2018`: a tag with a key of Stage and a value of Test, and a tag with a key of Environment and a value of Alpha. To verify that the tags were added to the bucket, run `Get-S3BucketTagging -BucketName bucket_name`. The results should show the tags that you applied to the bucket in the first command. Note that `Write-S3BucketTagging` overwrites the entire existing tag set on a bucket. To add or delete individual tags, run the Resource Groups and Tagging API cmdlets, `Add-RGTResourceTag` and `Remove-RGTResourceTag`. Alternatively, use Tag Editor in the AWS Management Console to manage S3 bucket tags.

```
Write-S3BucketTagging -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -TagSet @( @{ Key="Stage";
 Value="Test" }, @{ Key="Environment"; Value="Alpha" } )
```

Example 2: This command pipes a bucket named `cloudtrail-test-2018` into the `Write-S3BucketTagging` cmdlet. It applies tags Stage:Production and Department:Finance to the bucket. Note that `Write-S3BucketTagging` overwrites the entire existing tag set on a bucket.

```
Get-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket | Write-S3BucketTagging
 -TagSet @( @{ Key="Stage"; Value="Production" }, @{ Key="Department";
 Value="Finance" } )
```

- For API details, see PutBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command applies two tags to a bucket named `cloudtrail-test-2018`: a tag with a key of Stage and a value of Test, and a tag with a key of Environment and a value of Alpha. To verify that the tags were added to the bucket, run `Get-S3BucketTagging -BucketName bucket_name`. The results should show the tags that you applied to the bucket in the first command. Note that `Write-S3BucketTagging` overwrites the entire existing tag set on a bucket. To add or delete individual tags, run the Resource Groups and Tagging API cmdlets, `Add-RGTResourceTag` and `Remove-RGTResourceTag`. Alternatively, use Tag Editor in the AWS Management Console to manage S3 bucket tags.

```
Write-S3BucketTagging -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -TagSet @( @{ Key="Stage";
 Value="Test" }, @{ Key="Environment"; Value="Alpha" } )
```

Example 2: This command pipes a bucket named `cloudtrail-test-2018` into the `Write-S3BucketTagging` cmdlet. It applies tags Stage:Production and Department:Finance to the bucket. Note that `Write-S3BucketTagging` overwrites the entire existing tag set on a bucket.

```
Get-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket | Write-S3BucketTagging
 -TagSet @( @{ Key="Stage"; Value="Production" }, @{ Key="Department";
 Value="Finance" } )
```

- For API details, see PutBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketVersioning` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketVersioning`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with S3

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command enables versioning on a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-versioning --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --versioning-
configuration Status=Enabled
```

The following command enables versioning, and uses an mfa code

```
aws s3api put-bucket-versioning --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --versioning-
configuration Status=Enabled --mfa "SERIAL 123456"
```

- For API details, see PutBucketVersioning in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Enables bucket versioning for the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client the S3 client to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to enable versioning for
     */
    public static void enableBucketVersioning(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName){
        VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
 VersioningConfiguration.builder()
            .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
```

```
            .build();

        PutBucketVersioningRequest versioningRequest =
 PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
            .build();

        s3Client.putBucketVersioning(versioningRequest);
        System.out.println("Bucket versioning has been enabled for "+bucketName);
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketVersioning in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command enables versioning for the given S3 bucket.

```
Write-S3BucketVersioning -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
VersioningConfig_Status Enabled
```

- For API details, see PutBucketVersioning in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command enables versioning for the given S3 bucket.

```
Write-S3BucketVersioning -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
VersioningConfig_Status Enabled
```

- For API details, see PutBucketVersioning in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutBucketWebsite` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
                // Put the website configuration.
                PutBucketWebsiteRequest putRequest = new
PutBucketWebsiteRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    WebsiteConfiguration = new WebsiteConfiguration()
                    {
                        IndexDocumentSuffix = indexDocumentSuffix,
                        ErrorDocument = errorDocument,
                    },
                };
                PutBucketWebsiteResponse response = await
client.PutBucketWebsiteAsync(putRequest);
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putWebsiteConfig(const Aws::String &bucketName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::String &indexPage, const Aws::String
 &errorPage,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::IndexDocument indexDocument;
    indexDocument.SetSuffix(indexPage);

    Aws::S3::Model::ErrorDocument errorDocument;
    errorDocument.SetKey(errorPage);

    Aws::S3::Model::WebsiteConfiguration websiteConfiguration;
    websiteConfiguration.SetIndexDocument(indexDocument);
    websiteConfiguration.SetErrorDocument(errorDocument);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketWebsiteRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetWebsiteConfiguration(websiteConfiguration);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketWebsiteOutcome outcome =
            client.PutBucketWebsite(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: PutBucketWebsite: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Success: Set website configuration for bucket '"
                  << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The applies a static website configuration to a bucket named `amzn-s3-demo-bucket`:

```
aws s3api put-bucket-website --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --website-
configuration file://website.json
```

The file `website.json` is a JSON document in the current folder that specifies index and error pages for the website:

```
{
    "IndexDocument": {
        "Suffix": "index.html"
    },
    "ErrorDocument": {
        "Key": "error.html"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.IndexDocument;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketWebsiteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.WebsiteConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class SetWebsiteConfiguration {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <bucketName> [indexdoc]\s

            Where:
               bucketName   - The Amazon S3 bucket to set the website
 configuration on.\s
               indexdoc - The index document, ex. 'index.html'
                          If not specified, 'index.html' will be set.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String indexDoc = "index.html";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setWebsiteConfig(s3, bucketName, indexDoc);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the website configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The {@link S3Client} instance to use for the AWS SDK operations.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket to configure.
     * @param indexDoc The name of the index document to use for the website
 configuration.
     */
    public static void setWebsiteConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 indexDoc) {
```

```
        try {
            WebsiteConfiguration websiteConfig = WebsiteConfiguration.builder()
                .indexDocument(IndexDocument.builder().suffix(indexDoc).build())
                .build();

            PutBucketWebsiteRequest pubWebsiteReq =
 PutBucketWebsiteRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .websiteConfiguration(websiteConfig)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketWebsite(pubWebsiteReq);
            System.out.println("The call was successful");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the website configuration.

```
import {
  PutBucketWebsiteCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

```
/**
 * Configure an Amazon S3 bucket to serve a static website.
 * Website access must also be granted separately. For more information
 * on setting the permissions for website access, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/
WebsiteAccessPermissionsReqd.html.
 *
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutBucketWebsiteCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    WebsiteConfiguration: {
      ErrorDocument: {
        // The object key name to use when a 4XX class error occurs.
        Key: "error.html",
      },
      IndexDocument: {
        // A suffix that is appended to a request when the request is
        // for a directory.
        Suffix: "index.html",
      },
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `The bucket "${bucketName}" has been configured as a static website.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while configuring the bucket "${bucketName}" as a static
 website. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while configuring the bucket "${bucketName}" as a static
 website. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
```

```
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command enables website hosting for the given bucket with the index document as 'index.html' and error document as 'error.html'.

```
Write-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
 -WebsiteConfiguration_IndexDocumentSuffix 'index.html' -
WebsiteConfiguration_ErrorDocument 'error.html'
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command enables website hosting for the given bucket with the index document as 'index.html' and error document as 'error.html'.

```
Write-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
 -WebsiteConfiguration_IndexDocumentSuffix 'index.html' -
WebsiteConfiguration_ErrorDocument 'error.html'
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket website actions.
class BucketWebsiteWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_website

  # @param bucket_website [Aws::S3::BucketWebsite] A bucket website object
 configured with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_website)
    @bucket_website = bucket_website
  end

  # Sets a bucket as a static website.
  #
  # @param index_document [String] The name of the index document for the
 website.
  # @param error_document [String] The name of the error document to show for 4XX
 errors.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the bucket is configured as a website; otherwise,
 false.
  def set_website(index_document, error_document)
    @bucket_website.put(
      website_configuration: {
        index_document: { suffix: index_document },
        error_document: { key: error_document }
      }
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't configure #{@bucket_website.bucket.name} as a website. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
    false
```

```
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  index_document = "index.html"
  error_document = "404.html"

  wrapper = BucketWebsiteWrapper.new(Aws::S3::BucketWebsite.new(bucket_name))
  return unless wrapper.set_website(index_document, error_document)

  puts "Successfully configured bucket #{bucket_name} as a static website."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `PutObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics
- Get started with S3
- Make conditional requests
- Track uploads and downloads
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to upload a file from the local computer to an Amazon S3
        /// bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to which the object
        /// will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="objectName">The object to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path, including file name, of the object
        /// on the local computer to upload.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// upload procedure.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadFileAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string objectName,
            string filePath)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectName,
                    FilePath = filePath,
                };

                await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded {objectName} to
{bucketName}.");
                return true;
```

```
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {objectName} to
{bucketName}: '{ex.Message}'");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Upload an object with server-side encryption.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to upload an object to an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket with server-side encryption enabled.
    /// </summary>
    public class ServerSideEncryption
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "samplefile.txt";

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await WritingAnObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Upload a sample object include a setting for encryption.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// to upload a file and apply server-side encryption.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
        /// encrypted object will reside.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name for the object that you want to
        /// create in the supplied bucket.</param>
        public static async Task WritingAnObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var putRequest = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    ContentBody = "sample text",
                    ServerSideEncryptionMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionMethod.AES256,
                };

                var putResponse = await client.PutObjectAsync(putRequest);

                // Determine the encryption state of an object.
                GetObjectMetadataRequest metadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };
                GetObjectMetadataResponse response = await
client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);
                ServerSideEncryptionMethod objectEncryption =
response.ServerSideEncryptionMethod;

                Console.WriteLine($"Encryption method used: {0}",
objectEncryption.ToString());
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: '{ex.Message}' when writing an
object");
            }
        }
    }
```

Put an object using a conditional request.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
overwrite using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to upload.</param>
   /// <param name="bucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
   /// <param name="content">The content to upload as a string.</param>
   /// <returns>The ETag if the conditional write is successful, empty
otherwise.</returns>
   public async Task<string> PutObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
bucket, string content)
   {
       try
       {
           var putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
           {
               BucketName = bucket,
               Key = objectKey,
               ContentBody = content,
               IfNoneMatch = "*"
           };

           var putResult = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
           _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional write successful for key
{objectKey} in bucket {bucket}.");
           return putResult.ETag;
       }
       catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
       {
           if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
           {
               _logger.LogError("Conditional write failed: Precondition
failed");
           }
           else
           {
               _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
               throw;
           }
```

```
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function copy_file_to_bucket
#
# This function creates a file in the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file to.
#       $2 - The path and file name of the local file to copy to the bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) to call the copy of the file in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function copy_file_to_bucket() {
  local response bucket_name source_file destination_file_name
```

```
  bucket_name=$1
  source_file=$2
  destination_file_name=$3

  response=$(aws s3api put-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --body "$source_file" \
    --key "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putObject(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                           const Aws::String &fileName,
                           const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    //We are using the name of the file as the key for the object in the bucket.
    //However, this is just a string and can be set according to your retrieval
 needs.
    request.SetKey(fileName);

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> inputData =
```

```
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                          fileName.c_str(),
                                          std::ios_base::in |
 std::ios_base::binary);

    if (!*inputData) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << fileName << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetBody(inputData);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: putObject: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Added object '" << fileName << "' to bucket '"
                  << bucketName << "'.";
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: Upload an object to Amazon S3

The following `put-object` command example uploads an object to Amazon S3.

```
aws s3api put-object \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key my-dir/MySampleImage.png \
    --body MySampleImage.png
```

For more information about uploading objects, see Uploading Objects < http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UploadingObjects.html> in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

Example 2: Upload a video file to Amazon S3

The following `put-object` command example uploads a video file.

```
aws s3api put-object \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key my-dir/big-video-file.mp4 \
    --body /media/videos/f-sharp-3-data-services.mp4
```

For more information about uploading objects, see Uploading Objects < http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/dev/UploadingObjects.html> in the *Amazon S3 Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object in a bucket by using the low-level API.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// UploadFile reads from a file and puts the data into an object in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 file, err := os.Open(fileName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't open file %v to upload. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
 } else {
  defer file.Close()
  _, err = basics.S3Client.PutObject(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
   Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
   Body:   file,
  })
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
    log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
     "To upload objects larger than 5GB, use the S3 console (160GB max)\n"+
     "or the multipart upload API (5TB max).", bucketName)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't upload file %v to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
     fileName, bucketName, objectKey, err)
   }
  } else {
```

```
    err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
     ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
  aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
    }
   }
  }
  return err
}
```

Upload an object to a bucket by using a transfer manager.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// UploadObject uses the S3 upload manager to upload an object to a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) UploadObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, contents string) (string, error) {
 var outKey string
```

```
 input := &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket:            aws.String(bucket),
  Key:               aws.String(key),
  Body:              bytes.NewReader([]byte(contents)),
  ChecksumAlgorithm: types.ChecksumAlgorithmSha256,
 }
 output, err := actor.S3Manager.Upload(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 } else {
  err := s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
   Key:    aws.String(key),
  }, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist in %s.\n", key,
 bucket)
  } else {
   outKey = *output.Key
  }
 }
 return outKey, err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload a file to a bucket using an S3Client.

```
    /**
     * Uploads a local file to an AWS S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param key        the key (object name) to use for the uploaded file
     * @param objectPath the local file path of the file to be uploaded
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
 PutObjectResponse} when the upload is successful, or throws a {@link
 RuntimeException} if the upload fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> uploadLocalFileAsync(String
 bucketName, String key, String objectPath) {
        PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().putObject(objectRequest,
 AsyncRequestBody.fromFile(Paths.get(objectPath)));
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to upload file", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

Use an S3TransferManager to upload a file to a bucket. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedFileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadFileRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
```

```
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.UUID;

    public String uploadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
 bucketName,
                             String key, URI filePathURI) {
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
            .source(Paths.get(filePathURI))
            .build();

        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileUpload uploadResult = fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        return uploadResult.response().eTag();
    }
```

Upload an object to a bucket and set tags using an S3Client.

```
    /**
     * Puts tags on an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param s3 An {@link S3Client} object that represents the Amazon S3 client.
     * @param bucketName The name of the Amazon S3 bucket.
     * @param objectKey The key of the Amazon S3 object.
     * @param objectPath The file path of the object to be uploaded.
     */
    public static void putS3ObjectTags(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 objectKey, String objectPath) {
        try {
            Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 1")
                .value("This is tag 1")
                .build();

            Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 2")
                .value("This is tag 2")
                .build();

            List<Tag> tags = new ArrayList<>();
            tags.add(tag1);
```

```
            tags.add(tag2);

            Tagging allTags = Tagging.builder()
                .tagSet(tags)
                .build();

            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .tagging(allTags)
                .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb,
RequestBody.fromBytes(getObjectFile(objectPath)));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates the tags associated with an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 an instance of the S3Client class, which is used to interact
with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
     * @param objectKey the key (or name) of the object in the S3 bucket
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error updating the object's tags
     */
    public static void updateObjectTags(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
objectKey) {
        try {
            GetObjectTaggingRequest taggingRequest =
GetObjectTaggingRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

            GetObjectTaggingResponse getTaggingRes =
s3.getObjectTagging(taggingRequest);
            List<Tag> obTags = getTaggingRes.tagSet();
            for (Tag sinTag : obTags) {
                System.out.println("The tag key is: " + sinTag.key());
```

```
                System.out.println("The tag value is: " + sinTag.value());
            }

            // Replace the object's tags with two new tags.
            Tag tag3 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 3")
                .value("This is tag 3")
                .build();

            Tag tag4 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 4")
                .value("This is tag 4")
                .build();

            List<Tag> tags = new ArrayList<>();
            tags.add(tag3);
            tags.add(tag4);

            Tagging updatedTags = Tagging.builder()
                .tagSet(tags)
                .build();

            PutObjectTaggingRequest taggingRequest1 =
PutObjectTaggingRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .tagging(updatedTags)
                .build();

            s3.putObjectTagging(taggingRequest1);
            GetObjectTaggingResponse getTaggingRes2 =
s3.getObjectTagging(taggingRequest);
            List<Tag> modTags = getTaggingRes2.tagSet();
            for (Tag sinTag : modTags) {
                System.out.println("The tag key is: " + sinTag.key());
                System.out.println("The tag value is: " + sinTag.value());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the contents of a file as a byte array.
     *
     * @param filePath the path of the file to be read
     * @return a byte array containing the contents of the file, or null if an
 error occurs
     */
    private static byte[] getObjectFile(String filePath) {
        FileInputStream fileInputStream = null;
        byte[] bytesArray = null;

        try {
            File file = new File(filePath);
            bytesArray = new byte[(int) file.length()];
            fileInputStream = new FileInputStream(file);
            fileInputStream.read(bytesArray);

        } catch (IOException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } finally {
            if (fileInputStream != null) {
                try {
                    fileInputStream.close();
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    e.printStackTrace();
                }
            }
        }

        return bytesArray;
    }
}
```

Upload an object to a bucket and set metadata using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
```

```
import java.io.File;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PutObjectMetadata {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String USAGE = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <objectKey> <objectPath>\s

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to upload an object into.
              objectKey - The object to upload (for example, book.pdf).
              objectPath - The path where the file is located (for example, C:/
AWS/book2.pdf).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String objectKey = args[1];
        String objectPath = args[2];
        System.out.println("Putting object " + objectKey + " into bucket " +
 bucketName);
        System.out.println("  in bucket: " + bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        putS3Object(s3, bucketName, objectKey, objectPath);
```

```
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket with metadata.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the object to
     * @param objectKey the name of the object to be uploaded
     * @param objectPath the local file path of the object to be uploaded
     */
    public static void putS3Object(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 objectKey, String objectPath) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> metadata = new HashMap<>();
            metadata.put("author", "Mary Doe");
            metadata.put("version", "1.0.0.0");

            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .metadata(metadata)
                .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromFile(new File(objectPath)));
            System.out.println("Successfully placed " + objectKey + " into bucket
 " + bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Upload an object to a bucket and set an object retention value using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRetentionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetention;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class PutObjectRetention {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <key> <bucketName>\s

            Where:
                key - The name of the object (for example, book.pdf).\s
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name that contains the object
 (for example, bucket1).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String key = args[0];
        String bucketName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setRentionPeriod(s3, key, bucketName);
        s3.close();
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Sets the retention period for an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3     the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3
service
     * @param key    the key (name) of the object in the S3 bucket
     * @param bucket the name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while setting the object retention
period
     */
    public static void setRentionPeriod(S3Client s3, String key, String bucket) {
        try {
            LocalDate localDate = LocalDate.parse("2020-07-17");
            LocalDateTime localDateTime = localDate.atStartOfDay();
            Instant instant = localDateTime.toInstant(ZoneOffset.UTC);

            ObjectLockRetention lockRetention = ObjectLockRetention.builder()
                .mode("COMPLIANCE")
                .retainUntilDate(instant)
                .build();

            PutObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
PutObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucket)
                .key(key)
                .bypassGovernanceRetention(true)
                .retention(lockRetention)
                .build();

            // To set Retention on an object, the Amazon S3 bucket must support
object
            // locking, otherwise an exception is thrown.
            s3.putObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
            System.out.print("An object retention configuration was successfully
placed on the object");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload the object.

```
import { readFile } from "node:fs/promises";

import {
  PutObjectCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Upload a file to an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, filePath: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, filePath }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Key: key,
    Body: await readFile(filePath),
  });

  try {
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
```

```
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "EntityTooLarge"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while uploading object to ${bucketName}. \
The object was too large. To upload objects larger than 5GB, use the S3 console
 (160GB max) \
or the multipart upload API (5TB max).`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while uploading object to ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Upload the object on condition its ETag matches the one provided.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, eTag }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
```

```
        IfMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No
 such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
```

```
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun putS3Object(
    bucketName: String,
    objectKey: String,
    objectPath: String,
) {
    val metadataVal = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    metadataVal["myVal"] = "test"

    val request =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
```

```
            key = objectKey
            metadata = metadataVal
            body = File(objectPath).asByteStream()
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.putObject(request)
        println("Tag information is ${response.eTag}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload an object to a bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        $fileName = __DIR__ . "/local-file-" . uniqid();
        try {
            $this->s3client->putObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
                'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/testfile.txt'
            ]);
            echo "Uploaded $fileName to $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to upload $fileName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file upload before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command uploads the single file "local-sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "sample.txt" in bucket "test-files".

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "sample.txt" -File .\local-
sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command uploads the single file "sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "sample.txt" in bucket "test-files". If the -Key parameter is not supplied, the filename is used as the S3 object key.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -File .\sample.txt
```

Example 3: This command uploads the single file "local-sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "prefix/to/sample.txt" in bucket "test-files".

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "prefix/to/sample.txt" -
File .\local-sample.txt
```

Example 4: This command uploads all files in the subdirectory "Scripts" to the bucket "test-files" and applies the common key prefix "SampleScripts" to each object. Each uploaded file will have a key of "SampleScripts/filename" where 'filename' varies.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder .\Scripts -KeyPrefix
 SampleScripts\
```

Example 5: This command uploads all *.ps1 files in the local director "Scripts" to bucket "test-files" and applies the common key prefix "SampleScripts" to each object. Each uploaded file will have a key of "SampleScripts/filename.ps1" where 'filename' varies.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder .\Scripts -KeyPrefix
 SampleScripts\ -SearchPattern *.ps1
```

Example 6: This command creates a new S3 object containing the specified content string with key 'sample.txt'.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "sample.txt" -Content "object
 contents"
```

Example 7: This command uploads the specified file (the filename is used as the key) and applies the specified tags to the new object.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -File "sample.txt" -TagSet
 @{Key="key1";Value="value1"},@{Key="key2";Value="value2"}
```

Example 8: This command recursively uploads the specified folder and applies the specified tags to all the new objects.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder . -KeyPrefix "TaggedFiles"
 -Recurse -TagSet @{Key="key1";Value="value1"},@{Key="key2";Value="value2"}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command uploads the single file "local-sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "sample.txt" in bucket "test-files".

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "sample.txt" -File .\local-
sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command uploads the single file "sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "sample.txt" in bucket "test-files". If the -Key parameter is not supplied, the filename is used as the S3 object key.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -File .\sample.txt
```

Example 3: This command uploads the single file "local-sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "prefix/to/sample.txt" in bucket "test-files".

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "prefix/to/sample.txt" -
File .\local-sample.txt
```

Example 4: This command uploads all files in the subdirectory "Scripts" to the bucket "test-files" and applies the common key prefix "SampleScripts" to each object. Each uploaded file will have a key of "SampleScripts/filename" where 'filename' varies.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder .\Scripts -KeyPrefix
 SampleScripts\
```

Example 5: This command uploads all *.ps1 files in the local director "Scripts" to bucket "test-files" and applies the common key prefix "SampleScripts" to each object. Each uploaded file will have a key of "SampleScripts/filename.ps1" where 'filename' varies.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder .\Scripts -KeyPrefix
 SampleScripts\ -SearchPattern *.ps1
```

Example 6: This command creates a new S3 object containing the specified content string with key 'sample.txt'.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "sample.txt" -Content "object
 contents"
```

Example 7: This command uploads the specified file (the filename is used as the key) and applies the specified tags to the new object.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -File "sample.txt" -TagSet
 @{Key="key1";Value="value1"},@{Key="key2";Value="value2"}
```

Example 8: This command recursively uploads the specified folder and applies the specified tags to all the new objects.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder . -KeyPrefix "TaggedFiles"
 -Recurse -TagSet @{Key="key1";Value="value1"},@{Key="key2";Value="value2"}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def put(self, data):
        """
        Upload data to the object.

        :param data: The data to upload. This can either be bytes or a string.
 When this
                     argument is a string, it is interpreted as a file name,
 which is
                     opened in read bytes mode.
        """
        put_data = data
        if isinstance(data, str):
            try:
                put_data = open(data, "rb")
            except IOError:
                logger.exception("Expected file name or binary data, got '%s'.",
 data)
                raise
```

```
        try:
            self.object.put(Body=put_data)
            self.object.wait_until_exists()
            logger.info(
                "Put object '%s' to bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't put object '%s' to bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
            raise
        finally:
            if getattr(put_data, "close", None):
                put_data.close()
```

Upload an object using a conditional request.

```
class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)




    def put_object_conditional(self, object_key: str, source_bucket: str, data:
 bytes):
        """
```

```
        Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
overwrite
        using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to upload.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param data: The data to upload.
        """
        try:
            self.s3.put_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket, Key=object_key, Body=data, IfNoneMatch="*"
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional write successful for key {object_key} in bucket
{source_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional write failed: Precondition failed")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload a file using a managed uploader (Object.upload_file).

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'
```

```
# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectUploadFileWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 object by using a managed uploader.
  #
  # @param file_path [String] The path to the file to upload.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the file is uploaded; otherwise false.
  def upload_file(file_path)
    @object.upload_file(file_path)
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't upload file #{file_path} to #{@object.key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-uploaded-file"
  file_path = "object_upload_file.rb"

  wrapper = ObjectUploadFileWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name,
 object_key))
  return unless wrapper.upload_file(file_path)

  puts "File #{file_path} successfully uploaded to #{bucket_name}:#{object_key}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Upload a file using Object.put.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'
```

```
# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectPutWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  def put_object(source_file_path)
    File.open(source_file_path, 'rb') do |file|
      @object.put(body: file)
    end
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't put #{source_file_path} to #{object.key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object-key"
  file_path = "my-local-file.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectPutWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name, object_key))
  success = wrapper.put_object(file_path)
  return unless success

  puts "Put file #{file_path} into #{object_key} in #{bucket_name}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Upload a file using Object.put and add server-side encryption.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectPutSseWrapper
```

```
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  def put_object_encrypted(object_content, encryption)
    @object.put(body: object_content, server_side_encryption: encryption)
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't put your content to #{object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-encrypted-content"
  object_content = "This is my super-secret content."
  encryption = "AES256"

  wrapper = ObjectPutSseWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name,
 object_content))
  return unless wrapper.put_object_encrypted(object_content, encryption)

  puts "Put your content into #{bucket_name}:#{object_key} and encrypted it with
 #{encryption}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    file_name: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<aws_sdk_s3::operation::put_object::PutObjectOutput, S3ExampleError> {
    let body =
 aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(std::path::Path::new(file_name)).await;
    client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .key(key)
        .body(body.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(S3ExampleError::from)
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Get contents of file from application server."
    DATA lv_body TYPE xstring.
    OPEN DATASET iv_file_name FOR INPUT IN BINARY MODE.
    READ DATASET iv_file_name INTO lv_body.
    CLOSE DATASET iv_file_name.

    "Upload/put an object to an S3 bucket."
    TRY.
        lo_s3->putobject(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            iv_key = iv_file_name
            iv_body = lv_body ).
        MESSAGE 'Object uploaded to S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3
import Smithy

    public func uploadFile(bucket: String, key: String, file: String) async
 throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: file)
        do {
            let fileData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)
            let dataStream = ByteStream.data(fileData)
```

```
            let input = PutObjectInput(
                body: dataStream,
                bucket: bucket,
                key: key
            )

            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
import AWSS3
import Smithy

    public func createFile(bucket: String, key: String, withData data: Data)
 async throws {
        let dataStream = ByteStream.data(data)

        let input = PutObjectInput(
            body: dataStream,
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `PutObjectAcl` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutObjectAcl`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Manage access control lists (ACLs)

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putObjectAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName, const Aws::String
 &objectKey, const Aws::String &ownerID,
                              const Aws::String &granteePermission, const
 Aws::String &granteeType,
                              const Aws::String &granteeID, const Aws::String
 &granteeEmailAddress,
                              const Aws::String &granteeURI, const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::Owner owner;
    owner.SetID(ownerID);

    Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee;
    grantee.SetType(setGranteeType(granteeType));

    if (!granteeEmailAddress.empty()) {
        grantee.SetEmailAddress(granteeEmailAddress);
    }

    if (!granteeID.empty()) {
        grantee.SetID(granteeID);
    }
```

```
    if (!granteeURI.empty()) {
        grantee.SetURI(granteeURI);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant;
    grant.SetGrantee(grantee);
    grant.SetPermission(setGranteePermission(granteePermission));

    Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants;
    grants.push_back(grant);

    Aws::S3::Model::AccessControlPolicy acp;
    acp.SetOwner(owner);
    acp.SetGrants(grants);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectAclRequest request;
    request.SetAccessControlPolicy(acp);
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutObjectAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto error = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: putObjectAcl: " << error.GetExceptionName()
                  << " - " << error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully added an ACL to the object '" << objectKey
                  << "' in the bucket '" << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type
 enumeration.
/*!
 \param access: Human readable string.
 \return Permission: Permission enumeration.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::Permission setGranteePermission(const Aws::String &access) {
    if (access == "FULL_CONTROL")
```

```
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL;
    if (access == "WRITE")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE;
    if (access == "READ")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ;
    if (access == "WRITE_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP;
    if (access == "READ_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET;
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type
 enumeration.
/*!
 \param type: Human readable string.
 \return Type: Type enumeration.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::Type setGranteeType(const Aws::String &type) {
    if (type == "Amazon customer by email")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail;
    if (type == "Canonical user")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser;
    if (type == "Group")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET;
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command grants `full control` to two AWS users (*user1@example.com* and *user2@example.com*) and `read` permission to everyone:

```
aws s3api put-object-acl --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key file.txt --grant-
full-control emailaddress=user1@example.com,emailaddress=user2@example.com --
grant-read uri=http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/global/AllUsers
```

See http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/RESTBucketPUTacl.html for details on custom ACLs (the s3api ACL commands, such as `put-object-acl`, use the same shorthand argument notation).

- For API details, see PutObjectAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource
 in Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def put_acl(self, email):
        """
        Applies an ACL to the object that grants read access to an AWS user
 identified
        by email address.

        :param email: The email address of the user to grant access.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.object.Acl()
            # Putting an ACL overwrites the existing ACL, so append new grants
            # if you want to preserve existing grants.
            grants = acl.grants if acl.grants else []
```

```
            grants.append(
                {
                    "Grantee": {"Type": "AmazonCustomerByEmail", "EmailAddress":
email},
                    "Permission": "READ",
                }
            )
            acl.put(AccessControlPolicy={"Grants": grants, "Owner": acl.owner})
            logger.info("Granted read access to %s.", email)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add ACL to object '%s'.", self.object.key)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutObjectLegalHold` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutObjectLegalHold`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Lock Amazon S3 objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="holdStatus">The On or Off status for the legal hold.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus holdStatus)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                LegalHold = new ObjectLockLegalHold()
                {
                    Status = holdStatus
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tModified legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To apply a Legal Hold to an object

The following `put-object-legal-hold` example sets a Legal Hold on the object `doc1.rtf`.

```
aws s3api put-object-legal-hold \
```

```
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket-with-object-lock \
    --key doc1.rtf \
    --legal-hold Status=ON
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// PutObjectLegalHold sets the legal hold configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string, legalHoldStatus types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus) error
 {
 input := &s3.PutObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  LegalHold: &types.ObjectLockLegalHold{
   Status: legalHoldStatus,
  },
 }
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  }
 }

 return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
```

```
    public void modifyObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String objectKey,
 boolean legalHoldOn) {
        ObjectLockLegalHold legalHold ;
        if (legalHoldOn) {
            legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
                .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON)
                .build();
        } else {
            legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
                .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.OFF)
                .build();
        }

        PutObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
 PutObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectKey)
            .legalHold(legalHold)
            .build();

        getClient().putObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest) ;
        System.out.println("Modified legal hold for "+ objectKey +" in
 "+bucketName +".");
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  PutObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Apply a legal hold configuration to the specified object.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, objectKey: string, legalHoldStatus: "ON" |
 "OFF" }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, objectKey, legalHoldStatus }) => {
  if (!["OFF", "ON"].includes(legalHoldStatus.toUpperCase())) {
    throw new Error(
      "Invalid parameter. legalHoldStatus must be 'ON' or 'OFF'.",
    );
  }

  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Key: objectKey,
    LegalHold: {
      // Set the status to 'ON' to place a legal hold on the object.
      // Set the status to 'OFF' to remove the legal hold.
      Status: legalHoldStatus,
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `Legal hold status set to "${legalHoldStatus}" for "${objectKey}" in
 "${bucketName}"`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying legal hold status for "${objectKey}" in
 "${bucketName}". The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying legal hold status for "${objectKey}" in
 "${bucketName}". ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
```

```
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    objectKey: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    legalHoldStatus: {
      type: "string",
      default: "ON",
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object legal hold.

```
def set_legal_hold(s3_client, bucket: str, key: str) -> None:
    """
    Set a legal hold on a specific file in a bucket.

    Args:
        s3_client: Boto3 S3 client.
        bucket: The name of the bucket containing the file.
        key: The key of the file to set the legal hold on.
    """
    print()
    logger.info("Setting legal hold on file [%s] in bucket [%s]", key, bucket)
    try:
        before_status = "OFF"
        after_status = "ON"
        s3_client.put_object_legal_hold(
            Bucket=bucket, Key=key, LegalHold={"Status": after_status}
        )
        logger.debug(
            "Legal hold set successfully on file [%s] in bucket [%s]", key,
 bucket
        )
        _print_legal_hold_update(bucket, key, before_status, after_status)
    except Exception as e:
        logger.error(
            "Failed to set legal hold on file [%s] in bucket [%s]: %s", key,
 bucket, e
        )
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutObjectLockConfiguration` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Lock Amazon S3 objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableObjectLockOnBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
```

```
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled("Enabled"),
                },
            };

            var response = await
_amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded an object lock policy to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date for retention until.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime retainUntilDate)
    {
        var enabledString = enableObjectLock ? "Enabled" : "Disabled";
        var timeDifference = retainUntilDate.Subtract(DateTime.Now);
```

```
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled(enabledString),
                    Rule = new ObjectLockRule()
                    {
                        DefaultRetention = new DefaultRetention()
                        {
                            Mode = retention,
                            Days = timeDifference.Days // Can be specified in
days or years but not both.
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await
_amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded a default retention to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set an object lock configuration on a bucket

The following `put-object-lock-configuration` example sets a 50-day object lock on the specified bucket.

```
aws s3api put-object-lock-configuration \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket-with-object-lock \
    --object-lock-configuration '{ "ObjectLockEnabled": "Enabled", "Rule":
 { "DefaultRetention": { "Mode": "COMPLIANCE", "Days": 50 }}}'
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
```

```
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// EnableObjectLockOnBucket enables object locking on an existing bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) EnableObjectLockOnBucket(ctx context.Context, bucket
 string) error {
 // Versioning must be enabled on the bucket before object locking is enabled.
 verInput := &s3.PutBucketVersioningInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  VersioningConfiguration: &types.VersioningConfiguration{
   MFADelete: types.MFADeleteDisabled,
   Status:    types.BucketVersioningStatusEnabled,
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutBucketVersioning(ctx, verInput)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
  return err
 }

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled,
  },
 }
```

```
 _, err = actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// ModifyDefaultBucketRetention modifies the default retention period of an
 existing bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ModifyDefaultBucketRetention(
```

```
 ctx context.Context, bucket string, lockMode types.ObjectLockEnabled,
 retentionPeriod int32, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode) error {

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: lockMode,
   Rule: &types.ObjectLockRule{
    DefaultRetention: &types.DefaultRetention{
     Days: aws.Int32(retentionPeriod),
     Mode: retentionMode,
    },
   },
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
    // Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    public void enableObjectLockOnBucket(String bucketName) {
        try {
            VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
                .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

            PutBucketVersioningRequest putBucketVersioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
                .build();

            // Enable versioning on the bucket.
            getClient().putBucketVersioning(putBucketVersioningRequest);
            PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest request =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .objectLockConfiguration(ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
                    .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
                    .build())
                .build();

            getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully enabled object lock on
"+bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("Error modifying object lock: '" + ex.getMessage()
+ "'");
        }
    }
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
    // Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyBucketDefaultRetention(String bucketName) {
        VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
            .mfaDelete(MFADelete.DISABLED)
            .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
```

```
            .build();

        PutBucketVersioningRequest versioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
            .build();

        getClient().putBucketVersioning(versioningRequest);
        DefaultRetention rention = DefaultRetention.builder()
            .days(1)
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .build();

        ObjectLockRule lockRule = ObjectLockRule.builder()
            .defaultRetention(rention)
            .build();

        ObjectLockConfiguration objectLockConfiguration =
ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
            .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
            .rule(lockRule)
            .build();

        PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest putObjectLockConfigurationRequest =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfiguration)
            .build();


getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(putObjectLockConfigurationRequest) ;
        System.out.println("Added a default retention to bucket "+bucketName
+".");
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
import {
  PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Enable S3 Object Lock for an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * After you enable Object Lock on a bucket, you can't
 * disable Object Lock or suspend versioning for that bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, enabled: boolean }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    // The Object Lock configuration that you want to apply to the specified
 bucket.
    ObjectLockConfiguration: {
      ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(`Object Lock for "${bucketName}" enabled.`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
```

```
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the object lock configuration for the
 bucket "${bucketName}". The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the object lock configuration for the
 bucket "${bucketName}". ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
import {
  PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Change the default retention settings for an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, retentionDays: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, retentionDays }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        // The Object Lock configuration that you want to apply to the specified
 bucket.
        ObjectLockConfiguration: {
          ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
          Rule: {
            // The default Object Lock retention mode and period that you want to
 apply
            // to new objects placed in the specified bucket. Bucket settings
 require
            // both a mode and a period. The period can be either Days or Years
 but
            // you must select one.
            DefaultRetention: {
              // In governance mode, users can't overwrite or delete an object
 version
              // or alter its lock settings unless they have special permissions.
 With
              // governance mode, you protect objects against being deleted by
 most users,
              // but you can still grant some users permission to alter the
 retention settings
              // or delete the objects if necessary.
              Mode: "GOVERNANCE",
              Days: Number.parseInt(retentionDays),
```

```
            },
          },
        },
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `Set default retention mode to "GOVERNANCE" with a retention period of
 ${retentionDays} day(s).`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting the default object retention for a bucket.
 The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting the default object retention for a bucket.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    retentionDays: {
      type: "string",
```

```
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put object lock configuration.

```
        s3_client.put_object_lock_configuration(
            Bucket=bucket,
            ObjectLockConfiguration={"ObjectLockEnabled": "Disabled", "Rule":
 {}},
        )
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `PutObjectRetention` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutObjectRetention`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Lock Amazon S3 objects

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date retention expires.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime
retainUntilDate)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Retention = new ObjectLockRetention()
                {
                    Mode = retention,
                    RetainUntilDate = retainUntilDate
```

```
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSet retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}
 until {retainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying retention period:
 '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set an object retention configuration for an object

The following `put-object-retention` example sets an object retention configuration for the specified object until 2025-01-01.

```
aws s3api put-object-retention \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket-with-object-lock \
    --key doc1.rtf \
    --retention '{ "Mode": "GOVERNANCE", "RetainUntilDate":
 "2025-01-01T00:00:00" }'
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// PutObjectRetention sets the object retention configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode, retentionPeriodDays int32)
 error {
 input := &s3.PutObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  Retention: &types.ObjectLockRetention{
```

```
    Mode:            retentionMode,
    RetainUntilDate: aws.Time(time.Now().AddDate(0, 0, int(retentionPeriodDays))),
   },
   BypassGovernanceRetention: aws.Bool(true),
  }

  _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectRetention(ctx, input)
  if err != nil {
   var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
   if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
    log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = noKey
   }
  }

  return err
 }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyObjectRetentionPeriod(String bucketName, String objectKey)
 {
        // Calculate the instant one day from now.
        Instant futureInstant = Instant.now().plus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

        // Convert the Instant to a ZonedDateTime object with a specific time
 zone.
        ZonedDateTime zonedDateTime =
 futureInstant.atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());
```

```
        // Define a formatter for human-readable output.
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-dd
 HH:mm:ss");

        // Format the ZonedDateTime object to a human-readable date string.
        String humanReadableDate = formatter.format(zonedDateTime);

        // Print the formatted date string.
        System.out.println("Formatted Date: " + humanReadableDate);
        ObjectLockRetention retention = ObjectLockRetention.builder()
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .retainUntilDate(futureInstant)
            .build();

        PutObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
 PutObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectKey)
            .retention(retention)
            .build();

        getClient().putObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
        System.out.println("Set retention for "+objectKey +" in " +bucketName +"
 until "+ humanReadableDate +".");
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  PutObjectRetentionCommand,
```

```
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Place a 24-hour retention period on an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectRetentionCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Key: key,
    BypassGovernanceRetention: false,
    Retention: {
      // In governance mode, users can't overwrite or delete an object version
      // or alter its lock settings unless they have special permissions. With
      // governance mode, you protect objects against being deleted by most
 users,
      // but you can still grant some users permission to alter the retention
 settings
      // or delete the objects if necessary.
      Mode: "GOVERNANCE",
      RetainUntilDate: new Date(new Date().getTime() + 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000),
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Object Retention settings updated.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the governance mode and retention period
 on an object. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the governance mode and retention period
 on an object. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
```

```
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: The command enables governance retention mode untill the date '31st Dec 2019 00:00:00' for 'testfile.txt' object in the given S3 bucket.

```
Write-S3ObjectRetention -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testfile.txt' -
Retention_Mode GOVERNANCE -Retention_RetainUntilDate "2019-12-31T00:00:00"
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command enables governance retention mode untill the date '31st Dec 2019 00:00:00' for 'testfile.txt' object in the given S3 bucket.

```
Write-S3ObjectRetention -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testfile.txt' -
Retention_Mode GOVERNANCE -Retention_RetainUntilDate "2019-12-31T00:00:00"
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object retention.

```
            s3_client.put_object_retention(
                Bucket=bucket,
                Key=key,
                VersionId=version_id,
                Retention={"Mode": "GOVERNANCE", "RetainUntilDate":
far_future_date},
                BypassGovernanceRetention=True,
            )
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `RestoreObject` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RestoreObject`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to restore an archived object in an Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class RestoreArchivedObject
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string objectKey = "archived-object.txt";

        // Specify your bucket region (an example region is shown).
        RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(bucketRegion);
        RestoreObjectAsync(client, bucketName, objectKey).Wait();
    }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// This method restores an archived object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// RestoreObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// bucket where the object was located before it was archived.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">A string representing the name of the
        /// archived object to restore.</param>
        public static async Task RestoreObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            try
            {
                var restoreRequest = new RestoreObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectKey,
                    Days = 2,
                };
                RestoreObjectResponse response = await
client.RestoreObjectAsync(restoreRequest);

                // Check the status of the restoration.
                await CheckRestorationStatusAsync(client, bucketName, objectKey);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception amazonS3Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {amazonS3Exception.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method retrieves the status of the object's restoration.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// GetObjectMetadataAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the Amazon
        /// S3 bucket which contains the archived object.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">A string representing the name of the
        /// archived object you want to restore.</param>
```

```
        public static async Task CheckRestorationStatusAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 string bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            GetObjectMetadataRequest metadataRequest = new
 GetObjectMetadataRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
            };

            GetObjectMetadataResponse response = await
 client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);

            var restStatus = response.RestoreInProgress ? "in-progress" :
 "finished or failed";
            Console.WriteLine($"Restoration status: {restStatus}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a restore request for an object

The following `restore-object` example restores the specified Amazon S3 Glacier object for the bucket `my-glacier-bucket` for 10 days.

```
aws s3api restore-object \
    --bucket my-glacier-bucket \
    --key doc1.rtf \
    --restore-request Days=10
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see RestoreObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.RestoreRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GlacierJobParameters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.RestoreObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Tier;

/*
 *  For more information about restoring an object, see "Restoring an archived
 object" at
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/restoring-objects.html
 *
 *  Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 environment, including your credentials.
 *
 *  For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class RestoreObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName> <expectedBucketOwner>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
```

```
                keyName - The key name of an object with a Storage class value of
Glacier.\s
                expectedBucketOwner - The account that owns the bucket (you can
obtain this value from the AWS Management Console).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        String expectedBucketOwner = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        restoreS3Object(s3, bucketName, keyName, expectedBucketOwner);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Restores an S3 object from the Glacier storage class.
     *
     * @param s3                   an instance of the {@link S3Client} to be used
for interacting with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName           the name of the S3 bucket where the object is
stored
     * @param keyName              the key (object name) of the S3 object to be
restored
     * @param expectedBucketOwner  the AWS account ID of the expected bucket
owner
     */
    public static void restoreS3Object(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
keyName, String expectedBucketOwner) {
        try {
            RestoreRequest restoreRequest = RestoreRequest.builder()
                .days(10)

.glacierJobParameters(GlacierJobParameters.builder().tier(Tier.STANDARD).build())
                .build();
```

```
            RestoreObjectRequest objectRequest = RestoreObjectRequest.builder()
                .expectedBucketOwner(expectedBucketOwner)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .restoreRequest(restoreRequest)
                .build();

            s3.restoreObject(objectRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RestoreObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `SelectObjectContent` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SelectObjectContent`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To filter the contents of an Amazon S3 object based on an SQL statement

The following `select-object-content` example filters the object `my-data-file.csv` with the specified SQL statement and sends output to a file.

```
aws s3api select-object-content \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key my-data-file.csv \
    --expression "select * from s3object limit 100" \
    --expression-type 'SQL' \
    --input-serialization '{"CSV": {}, "CompressionType": "NONE"}' \
    --output-serialization '{"CSV": {}}' "output.csv"
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see SelectObjectContent in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example shows a query using a JSON object. The complete example also shows the use of a CSV object.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.BlockingInputStreamAsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CSVInput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CSVOutput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompressionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpressionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.FileHeaderInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.InputSerialization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.JSONInput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.JSONOutput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.JSONType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.OutputSerialization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Progress;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.SelectObjectContentRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.SelectObjectContentResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Stats;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class SelectObjectContentExample {
    static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SelectObjectContentExample.class);
    static final String BUCKET_NAME = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID();
    static final S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.create();
    static String FILE_CSV = "csv";
    static String FILE_JSON = "json";
    static String URL_CSV = "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/mledoze/countries/
master/dist/countries.csv";
    static String URL_JSON = "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/mledoze/
countries/master/dist/countries.json";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SelectObjectContentExample selectObjectContentExample = new
 SelectObjectContentExample();
        try {
            SelectObjectContentExample.setUp();
            selectObjectContentExample.runSelectObjectContentMethodForJSON();
            selectObjectContentExample.runSelectObjectContentMethodForCSV();
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            System.exit(1);
        } finally {
            SelectObjectContentExample.tearDown();
        }
    }

    EventStreamInfo runSelectObjectContentMethodForJSON() {
        // Set up request parameters.
        final String queryExpression = "select * from s3object[*][*] c where
 c.area < 350000";
        final String fileType = FILE_JSON;

        InputSerialization inputSerialization = InputSerialization.builder()
                .json(JSONInput.builder().type(JSONType.DOCUMENT).build())
                .compressionType(CompressionType.NONE)
                .build();

        OutputSerialization outputSerialization = OutputSerialization.builder()
                .json(JSONOutput.builder().recordDelimiter(null).build())
                .build();
```

```
        // Build the SelectObjectContentRequest.
        SelectObjectContentRequest select = SelectObjectContentRequest.builder()
                .bucket(BUCKET_NAME)
                .key(FILE_JSON)
                .expression(queryExpression)
                .expressionType(ExpressionType.SQL)
                .inputSerialization(inputSerialization)
                .outputSerialization(outputSerialization)
                .build();

        EventStreamInfo eventStreamInfo = new EventStreamInfo();
        // Call the selectObjectContent method with the request and a response
handler.
        // Supply an EventStreamInfo object to the response handler to gather
records and information from the response.
        s3AsyncClient.selectObjectContent(select,
buildResponseHandler(eventStreamInfo)).join();

        // Log out information gathered while processing the response stream.
        long recordCount = eventStreamInfo.getRecords().stream().mapToInt(record
->
                record.split("\n").length
        ).sum();
        logger.info("Total records {}: {}", fileType, recordCount);
        logger.info("Visitor onRecords for fileType {} called {} times",
fileType, eventStreamInfo.getCountOnRecordsCalled());
        logger.info("Visitor onStats for fileType {}, {}", fileType,
eventStreamInfo.getStats());
        logger.info("Visitor onContinuations for fileType {}, {}", fileType,
eventStreamInfo.getCountContinuationEvents());
        return eventStreamInfo;
    }

    static SelectObjectContentResponseHandler
buildResponseHandler(EventStreamInfo eventStreamInfo) {
        // Use a Visitor to process the response stream. This visitor logs
information and gathers details while processing.
        final SelectObjectContentResponseHandler.Visitor visitor =
SelectObjectContentResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                .onRecords(r -> {
                    logger.info("Record event received.");
                    eventStreamInfo.addRecord(r.payload().asUtf8String());
                    eventStreamInfo.incrementOnRecordsCalled();
```

```
                })
                .onCont(ce -> {
                    logger.info("Continuation event received.");
                    eventStreamInfo.incrementContinuationEvents();
                })
                .onProgress(pe -> {
                    Progress progress = pe.details();
                    logger.info("Progress event received:\n bytesScanned:
{}\nbytesProcessed: {}\nbytesReturned:{}",
                            progress.bytesScanned(),
                            progress.bytesProcessed(),
                            progress.bytesReturned());
                })
                .onEnd(ee -> logger.info("End event received."))
                .onStats(se -> {
                    logger.info("Stats event received.");
                    eventStreamInfo.addStats(se.details());
                })
                .build();

        // Build the SelectObjectContentResponseHandler with the visitor that
 processes the stream.
        return SelectObjectContentResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(visitor).build();
    }

    // The EventStreamInfo class is used to store information gathered while
 processing the response stream.
    static class EventStreamInfo {
        private final List<String> records = new ArrayList<>();
        private Integer countOnRecordsCalled = 0;
        private Integer countContinuationEvents = 0;
        private Stats stats;

        void incrementOnRecordsCalled() {
            countOnRecordsCalled++;
        }

        void incrementContinuationEvents() {
            countContinuationEvents++;
        }

        void addRecord(String record) {
            records.add(record);
```

```
        }

        void addStats(Stats stats) {
            this.stats = stats;
        }

        public List<String> getRecords() {
            return records;
        }

        public Integer getCountOnRecordsCalled() {
            return countOnRecordsCalled;
        }

        public Integer getCountContinuationEvents() {
            return countContinuationEvents;
        }

        public Stats getStats() {
            return stats;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SelectObjectContent in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UploadPart` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UploadPart`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Use checksums
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Upload a part to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param partNumber:
    \param checksumAlgorithm: Checksum algorithm, ignored when NOT_SET.
    \param calculatedHash: A data integrity hash to set, depending on the
 checksum algorithm,
                            ignored when it is an empty string.
    \param body: An shared_ptr IOStream of the data to be uploaded.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return UploadPartOutcome: The outcome.
*/

Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartOutcome AwsDoc::S3::uploadPart(const Aws::String
 &bucket,
                                                          const Aws::String &key,
                                                          const Aws::String
 &uploadID,
                                                          int partNumber,

 Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm checksumAlgorithm,
                                                          const Aws::String
 &calculatedHash,
                                                          const
 std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &body,
                                                          const Aws::S3::S3Client
 &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
```

```
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetPartNumber(partNumber);
    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }
    request.SetBody(body);

    if (!calculatedHash.empty()) {
        switch (checksumAlgorithm) {
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET:
                request.SetContentMD5(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32C:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32C(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA1:
                request.SetChecksumSHA1(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA256:
                request.SetChecksumSHA256(calculatedHash);
                break;
        }
    }

    return client.UploadPart(request);
}
```

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command uploads the first part in a multipart upload initiated with the `create-multipart-upload` command:

```
aws s3api upload-part --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket --key
 'multipart/01' --part-number 1 --body part01 --upload-id
  "dfRtDYU0WWCCcH43C3WFbkRONycyCpTJJvxu2i5GYkZljF.Yxwh6XG7WfS2vC4to6HiV6Yjlx.cph0gtNBtJ8P
```

The body option takes the name or path of a local file for upload (do not use the file:// prefix). The minimum part size is 5 MB. Upload ID is returned by `create-multipart-upload` and can also be retrieved with `list-multipart-uploads`. Bucket and key are specified when you create the multipart upload.

Output:

```
{
    "ETag": "\"e868e0f4719e394144ef36531ee6824c\""
}
```

Save the ETag value of each part for later. They are required to complete the multipart upload.

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
```

```
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }
```

```
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;
```

```
    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
```

```
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
 CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();

    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `UploadPartCopy` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UploadPartCopy`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Perform a multipart copy

CLI

AWS CLI

To upload part of an object by copying data from an existing object as the data source

The following `upload-part-copy` example uploads a part by copying data from an existing object as a data source.

```
aws s3api upload-part-copy \
    --bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket \
    --key "Map_Data_June.mp4" \
    --copy-source "amzn-s3-demo-bucket/copy_of_Map_Data_June.mp4" \
    --part-number 1 \
    --upload-
id "bq0tdE1CDpWQYRPLHuNG50xAT6pA5D.m_RiBy0ggOH6b13pVRY7QjvLlf75iFdJqp_2wztk5hvpUM2SesXgrz
```

Output:

```
{
    "CopyPartResult": {
        "LastModified": "2019-12-13T23:16:03.000Z",
        "ETag": "\"711470fc377698c393d94aed6305e245\""
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UploadPartCopy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public CompletableFuture<String> performMultiCopy(String toBucket, String
bucketName, String key) {
       CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
           .bucket(toBucket)
           .key(key)
           .build();

       getAsyncClient().createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest)
           .thenApply(createMultipartUploadResponse -> {
               String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();
               System.out.println("Upload ID: " + uploadId);

               UploadPartCopyRequest uploadPartCopyRequest =
UploadPartCopyRequest.builder()
                   .sourceBucket(bucketName)
                   .destinationBucket(toBucket)
                   .sourceKey(key)
                   .destinationKey(key)
                   .uploadId(uploadId)  // Use the valid uploadId.
```

```
                    .partNumber(1)  // Ensure the part number is correct.
                    .copySourceRange("bytes=0-1023")  // Adjust range as needed
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().uploadPartCopy(uploadPartCopyRequest);
            })
            .thenCompose(uploadPartCopyFuture -> uploadPartCopyFuture)
            .whenComplete((uploadPartCopyResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle any exceptions.
                    logger.error("Error during upload part copy: " +
exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    // Successfully completed the upload part copy.
                    System.out.println("Upload Part Copy completed successfully.
ETag: " + uploadPartCopyResponse.copyPartResult().eTag());
                }
            });
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadPartCopy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon S3 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon S3 with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon S3 or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Check if a bucket exists
- Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK
- Create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- A web page that lists Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK

- Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
- Delete all objects in a given Amazon S3 bucket using an AWS SDK
- Delete incomplete multipart uploads to Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
- Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK
- Detect faces in an image using an AWS SDK
- Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Download S3 'directories' from an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
- Download all objects in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to a local directory
- Download a stream of unknown size from an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Get an Amazon S3 object from a Multi-Region Access Point by using an AWS SDK
- Get an object from an Amazon S3 bucket using an AWS SDK, specifying an If-Modified-Since header
- Get started with Amazon S3 using the CLI
- Get started with encryption for Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK
- Get started with tags for Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK
- Work with Amazon S3 object lock features using an AWS SDK
- Make Amazon S3 conditional requests using an AWS SDK
- Manage access control lists (ACLs) for Amazon S3 buckets using an AWS SDK
- Manage large Amazon SQS messages using Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK
- Manage versioned Amazon S3 objects in batches with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK
- Parse Amazon S3 URIs using an AWS SDK
- Perform a multipart copy of an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Receive and process Amazon S3 event notifications by using an AWS SDK
- Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK
- Send S3 event notifications to Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK
- Track an Amazon S3 object upload or download using an AWS SDK
- Transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda
- Example approaches for unit and integration testing with an AWS SDK

- Recursively upload a local directory to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
- Upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
- Upload a stream of unknown size to an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Use checksums to work with an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK
- Work with Amazon S3 object integrity features using an AWS SDK
- Work with Amazon S3 versioned objects using an AWS SDK

Check if a bucket exists

The following code example shows how to check if a bucket exists.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

You can use the following `doesBucketExists` method as a replacement for the the SDK for Java V1 AmazonS3Client#doesBucketExistV2(String) method.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.exception.AwsServiceException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpStatusCode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.Validate;

public class DoesBucketExist {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(DoesBucketExist.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        DoesBucketExist doesBucketExist = new DoesBucketExist();
```

```
        final S3Client s3SyncClient = S3Client.builder().build();
        final String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // Change to the bucket
 name that you want to check.

        boolean exists = doesBucketExist.doesBucketExist(bucketName,
 s3SyncClient);
        logger.info("Bucket exists: {}", exists);
    }

    /**
     * Checks if the specified bucket exists. Amazon S3 buckets are named in a
 global namespace; use this method to
     * determine if a specified bucket name already exists, and therefore can't
 be used to create a new bucket.
     * <p>
     * Internally this method uses the <a
     * href="https://sdk.amazonaws.com/java/api/latest/software/amazon/awssdk/
services/s3/
S3Client.html#getBucketAcl(java.util.function.Consumer)">S3Client.getBucketAcl(String)</
a>
     * operation to determine whether the bucket exists.
     * <p>
     * This method is equivalent to the AWS SDK for Java V1's <a
     * href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaSDK/latest/javadoc/
com/amazonaws/services/s3/AmazonS3Client.html#doesBucketExistV2-
java.lang.String-">AmazonS3Client#doesBucketExistV2(String)</a>.
     *
     * @param bucketName   The name of the bucket to check.
     * @param s3SyncClient An <code>S3Client</code> instance. The method checks
 for the bucket in the AWS Region
     *                     configured on the instance.
     * @return The value true if the specified bucket exists in Amazon S3; the
 value false if there is no bucket in
     *         Amazon S3 with that name.
     */
    public boolean doesBucketExist(String bucketName, S3Client s3SyncClient) {
        try {
            Validate.notEmpty(bucketName, "The bucket name must not be null or an
 empty string.", "");
            s3SyncClient.getBucketAcl(r -> r.bucket(bucketName));
            return true;
        } catch (AwsServiceException ase) {
            // A redirect error or an AccessDenied exception means the bucket
 exists but it's not in this region
```

```
            // or we don't have permissions to it.
            if ((ase.statusCode() == HttpStatusCode.MOVED_PERMANENTLY) ||
 "AccessDenied".equals(ase.awsErrorDetails().errorCode())) {
                return true;
            }
            if (ase.statusCode() == HttpStatusCode.NOT_FOUND) {
                return false;
            }
            throw ase;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file.
- Upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Transcribe to convert the audio file to text.
- Display the text.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file, upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Transcribe to convert that audio file to text, and display the text.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon S3

- Amazon Transcribe

Create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned URL that can perform an Amazon S3 action for a limited time.

```
using System;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

public class GenPresignedUrl
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        const string objectKey = "sample.txt";

        // Specify how long the presigned URL lasts, in hours
        const double timeoutDuration = 12;

        // Specify the AWS Region of your Amazon S3 bucket. If it is
        // different from the Region defined for the default user,
        // pass the Region to the constructor for the client. For
        // example: new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

        // If using the Region us-east-1, and server-side encryption with AWS
KMS, you must specify Signature Version 4.
```

```
            // Region us-east-1 defaults to Signature Version 2 unless explicitly
 set to Version 4 as shown below.
            // For more details, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/UsingAWSSDK.html#specify-signature-version
            // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/items/Amazon/
TAWSConfigsS3.html
            AWSConfigsS3.UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
            IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            string urlString = GeneratePresignedURL(s3Client, bucketName,
 objectKey, timeoutDuration);
            Console.WriteLine($"The generated URL is: {urlString}.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Generate a presigned URL that can be used to access the file named
        /// in the objectKey parameter for the amount of time specified in the
        /// duration parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized S3 client object used to call
        /// the GetPresignedUrl method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket containing the
        /// object for which to create the presigned URL.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the object to access with the
        /// presigned URL.</param>
        /// <param name="duration">The length of time for which the presigned
        /// URL will be valid.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the generated presigned URL.</returns>
        public static string GeneratePresignedURL(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, string objectKey, double duration)
        {
            string urlString = string.Empty;
            try
            {
                var request = new GetPreSignedUrlRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectKey,
                    Expires = DateTime.UtcNow.AddHours(duration),
                };
                urlString = client.GetPreSignedURL(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Error:'{ex.Message}'");
            }

            return urlString;
        }
    }
```

Generate a presigned URL and perform an upload using that URL.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Net.Http;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to upload an object to an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket using a presigned URL. The code first
    /// creates a presigned URL and then uses it to upload an object to an
    /// Amazon S3 bucket using that URL.
    /// </summary>
    public class UploadUsingPresignedURL
    {
        private static HttpClient httpClient = new HttpClient();

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "samplefile.txt";
            string filePath = $"source\\{keyName}";

            // Specify how long the signed URL will be valid in hours.
            double timeoutDuration = 12;

            // Specify the AWS Region of your Amazon S3 bucket. If it is
            // different from the Region defined for the default user,
            // pass the Region to the constructor for the client. For
            // example: new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
```

```
            // If using the Region us-east-1, and server-side encryption with AWS
 KMS, you must specify Signature Version 4.
            // Region us-east-1 defaults to Signature Version 2 unless explicitly
 set to Version 4 as shown below.
            // For more details, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/UsingAWSSDK.html#specify-signature-version
            // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/items/Amazon/
TAWSConfigsS3.html
            AWSConfigsS3.UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            var url = GeneratePreSignedURL(client, bucketName, keyName,
 timeoutDuration);
            var success = await UploadObject(filePath, url);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Upload succeeded.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Upload failed.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket using the presigned URL
 passed in
        /// the url parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path (including file name) to the local
        /// file you want to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="url">The presigned URL that will be used to upload the
        /// file to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// operation, based on the HttpWebResponse.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadObject(string filePath, string url)
        {
            using var streamContent = new StreamContent(
                new FileStream(filePath, FileMode.Open, FileAccess.Read));

            var response = await httpClient.PutAsync(url, streamContent);
            return response.IsSuccessStatusCode;
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Generates a presigned URL which will be used to upload an object to
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// GetPreSignedURL.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which
 the
        /// presigned URL will point.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the file that will be uploaded.</
param>
        /// <param name="duration">How long (in hours) the presigned URL will
        /// be valid.</param>
        /// <returns>The generated URL.</returns>
        public static string GeneratePreSignedURL(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string objectKey,
            double duration)
        {
            var request = new GetPreSignedUrlRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Verb = HttpVerb.PUT,
                Expires = DateTime.UtcNow.AddHours(duration),
            };

            string url = client.GetPreSignedURL(request);
            return url;
        }
    }
```

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and use presigned POST URLs for direct browser uploads.

```
/// <summary>
/// Scenario demonstrating the complete workflow for presigned POST URLs:
/// 1. Create an S3 bucket
/// 2. Create a presigned POST URL
/// 3. Upload a file using the presigned POST URL
/// 4. Clean up resources
/// </summary>
public class CreatePresignedPostBasics
{
    public static ILogger<CreatePresignedPostBasics> _logger = null!;
    public static S3Wrapper _s3Wrapper = null!;
    public static UiMethods _uiMethods = null!;
    public static IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory = null!;
    public static bool _isInteractive = true;
    public static string? _bucketName;
    public static string? _objectKey;

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the services and logging.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The IHost instance.</param>
    public static void SetUpServices(IHost host)
    {
        var loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });
        _logger = new Logger<CreatePresignedPostBasics>(loggerFactory);

        _s3Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3Wrapper>();
        _httpClientFactory =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IHttpClientFactory>();
        _uiMethods = new UiMethods();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Perform the actions defined for the Amazon S3 Presigned POST scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A Task object.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _isInteractive = !args.Contains("--non-interactive");

        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon S3
        using var host =
Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                    .AddTransient<S3Wrapper>()
                    .AddHttpClient()
            )
            .Build();

        SetUpServices(host);

        try
        {
            // Display overview
            _uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 1: Create bucket
            await CreateBucketAsync();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 2: Create presigned URL
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 2: Create presigned POST URL");
            var response = await CreatePresignedPostAsync();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 3: Display URL and fields
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 3: Presigned POST URL details");
            DisplayPresignedPostFields(response);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 4: Upload file
```

```
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 4: Upload test file using presigned
 POST URL");
            await UploadFileAsync(response);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 5: Verify file exists
            await VerifyFileExistsAsync();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 6: Cleanup
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 6: Clean up resources");
            await CleanupAsync();

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("S3 Presigned POST Scenario completed
 successfully!");
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error in scenario");
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");

            // Attempt cleanup if there was an error
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(_bucketName))
            {
                _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Cleaning up resources after error");
                await _s3Wrapper.DeleteBucketAsync(_bucketName);
                Console.WriteLine($"Cleaned up bucket: {_bucketName}");
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an S3 bucket for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task CreateBucketAsync()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 1: Create an S3 bucket");

        // Generate a default bucket name for the scenario
        var defaultBucketName = $"presigned-post-demo-
{DateTime.Now:yyyyMMddHHmmss}".ToLower();

        // Prompt user for bucket name or use default in non-interactive mode
```

```
        _bucketName = _uiMethods.GetUserInput(
            $"Enter S3 bucket name (or press Enter for '{defaultBucketName}'): ",
            defaultBucketName,
            _isInteractive);

        // Basic validation to ensure bucket name is not empty
        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(_bucketName))
        {
            _bucketName = defaultBucketName;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating bucket: {_bucketName}");

        await _s3Wrapper.CreateBucketAsync(_bucketName);

        Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created bucket: {_bucketName}");
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a presigned POST URL.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task<CreatePresignedPostResponse>
 CreatePresignedPostAsync()
    {
        _objectKey = "example-upload.txt";
        var expiration = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(10); // Short expiration for
 the demo

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating presigned POST URL for {_bucketName}/
{_objectKey}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Expiration: {expiration} UTC");

        var s3Client = _s3Wrapper.GetS3Client();

        var response = await _s3Wrapper.CreatePresignedPostAsync(
            s3Client, _bucketName!, _objectKey, expiration);

        Console.WriteLine("Successfully created presigned POST URL");
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Upload a file using the presigned POST URL.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task UploadFileAsync(CreatePresignedPostResponse
response)
    {

        // Create a temporary test file to upload
        string testFilePath = Path.GetTempFileName();
        string testContent = "This is a test file for the S3 presigned POST
scenario.";

        await File.WriteAllTextAsync(testFilePath, testContent);
        Console.WriteLine($"Created test file at: {testFilePath}");

        // Upload the file using the presigned POST URL
        Console.WriteLine("\nUploading file using the presigned POST URL...");
        var uploadResult = await UploadFileWithPresignedPostAsync(response,
testFilePath);

        // Display the upload result
        if (uploadResult.Success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Upload successful! Status code:
{uploadResult.StatusCode}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Upload failed with status code:
{uploadResult.StatusCode}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {uploadResult.Response}");
            throw new Exception("File upload failed");
        }

        // Clean up the temporary file
        File.Delete(testFilePath);
        Console.WriteLine("Temporary file deleted");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to upload a file using a presigned POST URL.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task<(bool Success, HttpStatusCode StatusCode, string
Response)> UploadFileWithPresignedPostAsync(
        CreatePresignedPostResponse response,
        string filePath)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            _logger.LogInformation("Uploading file {filePath} using presigned
 POST URL", filePath);

            using var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            using var formContent = new MultipartFormDataContent();

            // Add all the fields from the presigned POST response
            foreach (var field in response.Fields)
            {
                formContent.Add(new StringContent(field.Value), field.Key);
            }

            // Add the file content
            var fileStream = File.OpenRead(filePath);
            var fileName = Path.GetFileName(filePath);
            var fileContent = new StreamContent(fileStream);
            fileContent.Headers.ContentType = new MediaTypeHeaderValue("text/
plain");
            formContent.Add(fileContent, "file", fileName);

            // Send the POST request
            var httpResponse = await httpClient.PostAsync(response.Url,
 formContent);
            var responseContent = await httpResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            // Log and return the result
            _logger.LogInformation("Upload completed with status code
 {statusCode}", httpResponse.StatusCode);

            return (httpResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode, httpResponse.StatusCode,
 responseContent);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error uploading file");
            return (false, HttpStatusCode.InternalServerError, ex.Message);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify that the uploaded file exists in the S3 bucket.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task VerifyFileExistsAsync()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 5: Verify uploaded file exists");

        Console.WriteLine($"Checking if file exists at {_bucketName}/
{_objectKey}...");

        try
        {
            var metadata = await _s3Wrapper.GetObjectMetadataAsync(_bucketName!,
 _objectKey!);

            Console.WriteLine($"File verification successful! File exists in the
 bucket.");
            Console.WriteLine($"File size: {metadata.ContentLength} bytes");
            Console.WriteLine($"File type: {metadata.Headers.ContentType}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Last modified: {metadata.LastModified}");
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex) when (ex.StatusCode ==
 System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NotFound)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: File was not found in the bucket.");
            throw;
        }
    }

    private static void DisplayPresignedPostFields(CreatePresignedPostResponse
 response)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Presigned POST URL: {response.Url}");
        Console.WriteLine("Form fields to include:");

        foreach (var field in response.Fields)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"  {field.Key}: {field.Value}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up resources created by the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task CleanupAsync()
    {
```

```
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(_bucketName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Deleting bucket {_bucketName} and its
 contents...");
            bool result = await _s3Wrapper.DeleteBucketAsync(_bucketName);

            if (result)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Bucket deleted successfully");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to delete bucket - it may have been
 already deleted");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a pre-signed URL to download an object.

```
//! Routine which demonstrates creating a pre-signed URL to download an object
 from an
//! Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/*!
  \param bucketName: Name of the bucket.
  \param key: Name of an object key.
  \param expirationSeconds: Expiration in seconds for pre-signed URL.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return Aws::String: A pre-signed URL.
*/
```

```
Aws::String AwsDoc::S3::generatePreSignedGetObjectUrl(const Aws::String
 &bucketName,
                                                       const Aws::String &key,
                                                       uint64_t expirationSeconds,
                                                       const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    return client.GeneratePresignedUrl(bucketName, key,
 Aws::Http::HttpMethod::HTTP_GET,
                                       expirationSeconds);
}
```

Download using libcurl.

```
static size_t myCurlWriteBack(char *buffer, size_t size, size_t nitems, void
 *userdata) {
    Aws::StringStream *str = (Aws::StringStream *) userdata;

    if (nitems > 0) {
        str->write(buffer, size * nitems);
    }
    return size * nitems;
}

//! Utility routine to test getObject with a pre-signed URL.
/*!
  \param presignedURL: A pre-signed URL to get an object from a bucket.
  \param resultString: A string to hold the result.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::getObjectWithPresignedObjectUrl(const Aws::String &presignedURL,
                                                 Aws::String &resultString) {
    CURL *curl = curl_easy_init();
    CURLcode result;

    std::stringstream outWriteString;

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEDATA, &outWriteString);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEDATA " << std::endl;
        return false;
```

```
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION, myCurlWriteBack);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_URL, presignedURL.c_str());

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_URL" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_perform(curl);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to perform CURL request" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    resultString = outWriteString.str();

    if (resultString.find("<?xml") == 0) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get object, response:\n" << resultString <<
 std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return true;
}
```

Generate a pre-signed URL to upload an object.

```
//! Routine which demonstrates creating a pre-signed URL to upload an object to
 an
//! Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/*!
  \param bucketName: Name of the bucket.
  \param key: Name of an object key.
```

```
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return Aws::String: A pre-signed URL.
*/
Aws::String AwsDoc::S3::generatePreSignedPutObjectUrl(const Aws::String
 &bucketName,
                                                       const Aws::String &key,
                                                       uint64_t expirationSeconds,
                                                       const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    return client.GeneratePresignedUrl(bucketName, key,
 Aws::Http::HttpMethod::HTTP_PUT,
                                        expirationSeconds);
}
```

Upload using libcurl.

```
static size_t myCurlReadBack(char *buffer, size_t size, size_t nitems, void
 *userdata) {
    Aws::StringStream *str = (Aws::StringStream *) userdata;

    str->read(buffer, size * nitems);

    return str->gcount();
}

static size_t myCurlWriteBack(char *buffer, size_t size, size_t nitems, void
 *userdata) {
    Aws::StringStream *str = (Aws::StringStream *) userdata;

    if (nitems > 0) {
        str->write(buffer, size * nitems);
    }
    return size * nitems;
}

//! Utility routine to test putObject with a pre-signed URL.
/*!
  \param presignedURL: A pre-signed URL to put an object in a bucket.
  \param data: Body of the putObject request.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
```

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::PutStringWithPresignedObjectURL(const Aws::String &presignedURL,
                                                 const Aws::String &data) {
    CURL *curl = curl_easy_init();
    CURLcode result;

    Aws::StringStream readStringStream;
    readStringStream << data;
    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_READFUNCTION, myCurlReadBack);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_READFUNCTION" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_READDATA, &readStringStream);
    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_READDATA" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_INFILESIZE_LARGE,
                              (curl_off_t) data.size());

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_INFILESIZE_LARGE" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION, myCurlWriteBack);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::stringstream outWriteString;

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEDATA, &outWriteString);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEDATA " << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
```

```
    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_URL, presignedURL.c_str());

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_URL" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_UPLOAD, 1L);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_PUT" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_perform(curl);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to perform CURL request" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::string outString = outWriteString.str();
    if (outString.empty()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully put object." << std::endl;
        return true;
    } else {
        std::cout << "A server error was encountered, output:\n" << outString
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap S3 presigning actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 v4 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws/signer/v4"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
)

// Presigner encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) presign
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains PresignClient, a client that is used to presign requests to Amazon
 S3.
// Presigned requests contain temporary credentials and can be made from any HTTP
 client.
type Presigner struct {
 PresignClient *s3.PresignClient
}



// GetObject makes a presigned request that can be used to get an object from a
 bucket.
// The presigned request is valid for the specified number of seconds.
func (presigner Presigner) GetObject(
 ctx context.Context, bucketName string, objectKey string, lifetimeSecs int64)
 (*v4.PresignedHTTPRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignGetObject(ctx,
 &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 }, func(opts *s3.PresignOptions) {
  opts.Expires = time.Duration(lifetimeSecs * int64(time.Second))
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned request to get %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, err
```

```
}



// PutObject makes a presigned request that can be used to put an object in a
 bucket.
// The presigned request is valid for the specified number of seconds.
func (presigner Presigner) PutObject(
 ctx context.Context, bucketName string, objectKey string, lifetimeSecs int64)
 (*v4.PresignedHTTPRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignPutObject(ctx,
 &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 }, func(opts *s3.PresignOptions) {
  opts.Expires = time.Duration(lifetimeSecs * int64(time.Second))
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned request to put %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, err
}



// DeleteObject makes a presigned request that can be used to delete an object
 from a bucket.
func (presigner Presigner) DeleteObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string) (*v4.PresignedHTTPRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignDeleteObject(ctx,
 &s3.DeleteObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned request to delete object %v. Here's why:
 %v\n", objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, err
}
```

```
func (presigner Presigner) PresignPostObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string, lifetimeSecs int64) (*s3.PresignedPostRequest, error)
 {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignPostObject(ctx,
 &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 }, func(options *s3.PresignPostOptions) {
  options.Expires = time.Duration(lifetimeSecs) * time.Second
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned post request to put %v:%v. Here's why: %v
\n", bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, nil
}
```

Run an interactive example that generates and uses presigned URLs to upload, download, and delete an S3 object.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "io"
 "log"
 "mime/multipart"
 "net/http"
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/s3/actions"
)
```

```
// RunPresigningScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to get
 presigned
// HTTP requests that you can use to move data into and out of Amazon Simple
 Storage
// Service (Amazon S3). The presigned requests contain temporary credentials and
 can
// be used by an HTTP client.
//
// 1. Get a presigned request to put an object in a bucket.
// 2. Use the net/http package to use the presigned request to upload a local
 file to the bucket.
// 3. Get a presigned request to get an object from a bucket.
// 4. Use the net/http package to use the presigned request to download the
 object to a local file.
// 5. Get a presigned request to delete an object from a bucket.
// 6. Use the net/http package to use the presigned request to delete the object.
//
// This example creates an Amazon S3 presign client from the specified sdkConfig
 so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
//
// It uses an IHttpRequester interface to abstract HTTP requests so they can be
 mocked
// during testing.
func RunPresigningScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner, httpRequester IHttpRequester) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message (y/
n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 presigning demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
bucketBasics := actions.BucketBasics{S3Client: s3Client}
presignClient := s3.NewPresignClient(s3Client)
presigner := actions.Presigner{PresignClient: presignClient}

bucketName := questioner.Ask("We'll need a bucket. Enter a name for a bucket "+
 "you own or one you want to create:", demotools.NotEmpty{})
bucketExists, err := bucketBasics.BucketExists(ctx, bucketName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !bucketExists {
 err = bucketBasics.CreateBucket(ctx, bucketName, sdkConfig.Region)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Println("Bucket created.")
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's presign a request to upload a file to your bucket.")
uploadFilename := questioner.Ask("Enter the path to a file you want to upload:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
uploadKey := questioner.Ask("What would you like to name the uploaded object?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
uploadFile, err := os.Open(uploadFilename)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
defer uploadFile.Close()
presignedPutRequest, err := presigner.PutObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey, 60)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Got a presigned %v request to URL:\n\t%v\n",
presignedPutRequest.Method,
 presignedPutRequest.URL)
log.Println("Using net/http to send the request...")
info, err := uploadFile.Stat()
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
```

```
putResponse, err := httpRequester.Put(presignedPutRequest.URL, info.Size(),
uploadFile)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("%v object %v with presigned URL returned %v.",
presignedPutRequest.Method,
 uploadKey, putResponse.StatusCode)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's presign a request to download the object.")
questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
presignedGetRequest, err := presigner.GetObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey, 60)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Got a presigned %v request to URL:\n\t%v\n",
presignedGetRequest.Method,
 presignedGetRequest.URL)
log.Println("Using net/http to send the request...")
getResponse, err := httpRequester.Get(presignedGetRequest.URL)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("%v object %v with presigned URL returned %v.",
presignedGetRequest.Method,
 uploadKey, getResponse.StatusCode)
defer getResponse.Body.Close()
downloadBody, err := io.ReadAll(getResponse.Body)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Downloaded %v bytes. Here are the first 100 of them:\n",
len(downloadBody))
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
log.Println(string(downloadBody[:100]))
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Now we'll create a new request to put the same object using a
presigned post request")
questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
presignPostRequest, err := presigner.PresignPostObject(ctx, bucketName,
uploadKey, 60)
if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Got a presigned post request to url %v with values %v\n",
 presignPostRequest.URL, presignPostRequest.Values)
 log.Println("Using net/http multipart to send the request...")
 uploadFile, err = os.Open(uploadFilename)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 defer uploadFile.Close()
 multiPartResponse, err := sendMultipartRequest(presignPostRequest.URL,
 presignPostRequest.Values, uploadFile, uploadKey, httpRequester)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Presign post object %v with presigned URL returned %v.", uploadKey,
 multiPartResponse.StatusCode)

 log.Println("Let's presign a request to delete the object.")
 questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 presignedDelRequest, err := presigner.DeleteObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Got a presigned %v request to URL:\n\t%v\n",
 presignedDelRequest.Method,
  presignedDelRequest.URL)
 log.Println("Using net/http to send the request...")
 delResponse, err := httpRequester.Delete(presignedDelRequest.URL)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("%v object %v with presigned URL returned %v.\n",
 presignedDelRequest.Method,
  uploadKey, delResponse.StatusCode)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define an HTTP request wrapper used by the example to make HTTP requests.

```
// IHttpRequester abstracts HTTP requests into an interface so it can be mocked
 during
// unit testing.
type IHttpRequester interface {
 Get(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error)
 Post(url, contentType string, body io.Reader) (resp *http.Response, err error)
 Put(url string, contentLength int64, body io.Reader) (resp *http.Response, err
 error)
 Delete(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error)
}

// HttpRequester uses the net/http package to make HTTP requests during the
 scenario.
type HttpRequester struct{}

func (httpReq HttpRequester) Get(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error) {
 return http.Get(url)
}
func (httpReq HttpRequester) Post(url, contentType string, body io.Reader) (resp
 *http.Response, err error) {
 postRequest, err := http.NewRequest("POST", url, body)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 postRequest.Header.Set("Content-Type", contentType)
 return http.DefaultClient.Do(postRequest)
}

func (httpReq HttpRequester) Put(url string, contentLength int64, body io.Reader)
 (resp *http.Response, err error) {
 putRequest, err := http.NewRequest("PUT", url, body)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 putRequest.ContentLength = contentLength
 return http.DefaultClient.Do(putRequest)
}
func (httpReq HttpRequester) Delete(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error)
 {
 delRequest, err := http.NewRequest("DELETE", url, nil)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  return nil, err
 }
 return http.DefaultClient.Do(delRequest)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following shows three example of how to create presigned URLs and use the URLs with HTTP client libraries:

- An HTTP GET request that uses the URL with three HTTP client libraries
- An HTTP PUT request with metadata in headers that uses the URL with three HTTP client libraries
- An HTTP PUT request with query parameters that uses the URL with one HTTP client library

Generate a pre-signed URL for an object, then download it (GET request).

Imports.

```
import com.example.s3.util.PresignUrlUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.GetObjectPresignRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedGetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.IoUtils;

import java.io.ByteArrayOutputStream;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.net.http.HttpClient;
import java.net.http.HttpRequest;
import java.net.http.HttpResponse;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.UUID;
```

Generate the URL.

```
    /* Create a pre-signed URL to download an object in a subsequent GET request.
 */
    public String createPresignedGetUrl(String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try (S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.create()) {

            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(keyName)
                    .build();

            GetObjectPresignRequest presignRequest =
 GetObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                    .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10))  // The URL will
 expire in 10 minutes.
                    .getObjectRequest(objectRequest)
                    .build();

            PresignedGetObjectRequest presignedRequest =
 presigner.presignGetObject(presignRequest);
```

```
            logger.info("Presigned URL: [{}]",
presignedRequest.url().toString());
            logger.info("HTTP method: [{}]",
presignedRequest.httpRequest().method());

            return presignedRequest.url().toExternalForm();
        }
    }
```

Download the object by using any one of the following three approaches.

Use JDK `HttpURLConnection` (since v1.1) class to do the download.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpURLConnection (since v1.1) class to do the download. */
    public byte[] useHttpUrlConnectionToGet(String presignedUrlString) {
        ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
ByteArrayOutputStream(); // Capture the response body to a byte array.

        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            HttpURLConnection connection = (HttpURLConnection)
presignedUrl.openConnection();
            connection.setRequestMethod("GET");
            // Download the result of executing the request.
            try (InputStream content = connection.getInputStream()) {
                IoUtils.copy(content, byteArrayOutputStream);
            }
            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + connection.getResponseCode());

        } catch (S3Exception | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
        return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
    }
```

Use JDK `HttpClient` (since v11) class to do the download.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpClient (since v11) class to do the download. */
    public byte[] useHttpClientToGet(String presignedUrlString) {
        ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
ByteArrayOutputStream(); // Capture the response body to a byte array.
```

```
        HttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = HttpRequest.newBuilder();
        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            HttpResponse<InputStream> response = httpClient.send(requestBuilder
                            .uri(presignedUrl.toURI())
                            .GET()
                            .build(),
                    HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.ofInputStream());

            IoUtils.copy(response.body(), byteArrayOutputStream);

            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + response.statusCode());

        } catch (URISyntaxException | InterruptedException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
        return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
    }
```

Use the AWS SDK for Java `SdkHttpClient` class to do the download.

```
    /* Use the AWS SDK for Java SdkHttpClient class to do the download. */
    public byte[] useSdkHttpClientToGet(String presignedUrlString) {

        ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
ByteArrayOutputStream(); // Capture the response body to a byte array.
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            SdkHttpRequest request = SdkHttpRequest.builder()
                    .method(SdkHttpMethod.GET)
                    .uri(presignedUrl.toURI())
                    .build();

            HttpExecuteRequest executeRequest = HttpExecuteRequest.builder()
                    .request(request)
                    .build();

            try (SdkHttpClient sdkHttpClient = ApacheHttpClient.create()) {
                HttpExecuteResponse response =
sdkHttpClient.prepareRequest(executeRequest).call();
```

```
                response.responseBody().ifPresentOrElse(
                        abortableInputStream -> {
                            try {
                                IoUtils.copy(abortableInputStream,
 byteArrayOutputStream);
                            } catch (IOException e) {
                                throw new RuntimeException(e);
                            }
                        },
                        () -> logger.error("No response body."));

                logger.info("HTTP Response code is {}",
 response.httpResponse().statusCode());
            }
        } catch (URISyntaxException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
        return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
    }
```

Generate a pre-signed URL with metadata in headers for an upload, then upload a file (PUT request).

Imports.

```
import com.example.s3.util.PresignUrlUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.sync.FileContentStreamProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedPutObjectRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PutObjectPresignRequest;
```

```
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.net.http.HttpClient;
import java.net.http.HttpRequest;
import java.net.http.HttpResponse;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.UUID;
```

Generate the URL.

```
   /* Create a presigned URL to use in a subsequent PUT request */
   public String createPresignedUrl(String bucketName, String keyName,
Map<String, String> metadata) {
       try (S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.create()) {

           PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(keyName)
                   .metadata(metadata)
                   .build();

           PutObjectPresignRequest presignRequest =
PutObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                   .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10))  // The URL
expires in 10 minutes.
                   .putObjectRequest(objectRequest)
                   .build();


           PresignedPutObjectRequest presignedRequest =
presigner.presignPutObject(presignRequest);
```

```
            String myURL = presignedRequest.url().toString();
            logger.info("Presigned URL to upload a file to: [{}]", myURL);
            logger.info("HTTP method: [{}]",
 presignedRequest.httpRequest().method());

            return presignedRequest.url().toExternalForm();
        }
    }
```

Upload a file object by using any one of the following three approaches.

Use the JDK `HttpURLConnection` (since v1.1) class to do the upload.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpURLConnection (since v1.1) class to do the upload. */
    public void useHttpUrlConnectionToPut(String presignedUrlString, File
 fileToPut, Map<String, String> metadata) {
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            HttpURLConnection connection = (HttpURLConnection)
 presignedUrl.openConnection();
            connection.setDoOutput(true);
            metadata.forEach((k, v) -> connection.setRequestProperty("x-amz-
meta-" + k, v));
            connection.setRequestMethod("PUT");
            OutputStream out = connection.getOutputStream();

            try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(fileToPut, "r");
                 FileChannel inChannel = file.getChannel()) {
                ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(8192); //Buffer size is
 8k

                while (inChannel.read(buffer) > 0) {
                    buffer.flip();
                    for (int i = 0; i < buffer.limit(); i++) {
                        out.write(buffer.get());
                    }
                    buffer.clear();
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            }
```

```
            out.close();
            connection.getResponseCode();
            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + connection.getResponseCode());

        } catch (S3Exception | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Use the JDK `HttpClient` (since v11) class to do the upload.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpClient (since v11) class to do the upload. */
    public void useHttpClientToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut,
 Map<String, String> metadata) {
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());

        HttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = HttpRequest.newBuilder();
        metadata.forEach((k, v) -> requestBuilder.header("x-amz-meta-" + k, v));

        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();
        try {
            final HttpResponse<Void> response = httpClient.send(requestBuilder
                            .uri(new URL(presignedUrlString).toURI())

 .PUT(HttpRequest.BodyPublishers.ofFile(Path.of(fileToPut.toURI())))
                            .build(),
                    HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.discarding());

            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + response.statusCode());

        } catch (URISyntaxException | InterruptedException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Use the AWS for Java V2 `SdkHttpClient` class to do the upload.

```
    /* Use the AWS SDK for Java V2 SdkHttpClient class to do the upload. */
    public void useSdkHttpClientToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut,
 Map<String, String> metadata) {
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());
```

```
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);

            SdkHttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = SdkHttpRequest.builder()
                    .method(SdkHttpMethod.PUT)
                    .uri(presignedUrl.toURI());
            // Add headers
            metadata.forEach((k, v) -> requestBuilder.putHeader("x-amz-meta-" +
k, v));
            // Finish building the request.
            SdkHttpRequest request = requestBuilder.build();

            HttpExecuteRequest executeRequest = HttpExecuteRequest.builder()
                    .request(request)
                    .contentStreamProvider(new
FileContentStreamProvider(fileToPut.toPath()))
                    .build();

            try (SdkHttpClient sdkHttpClient = ApacheHttpClient.create()) {
                HttpExecuteResponse response =
sdkHttpClient.prepareRequest(executeRequest).call();
                logger.info("Response code: {}",
response.httpResponse().statusCode());
            }
        } catch (URISyntaxException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Generate a pre-signed URL with query parameters for an upload, then upload a file (PUT request).

Imports.

```
import com.example.s3.util.PresignUrlUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.AwsRequestOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.sync.FileContentStreamProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedPutObjectRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PutObjectPresignRequest;

import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.UUID;
```

Generate the URL.

```
   /**
    *  Creates a presigned URL to use in a subsequent HTTP PUT request. The code
 adds query parameters
    *  to the request instead of using headers. By using query parameters, you
 do not need to add the
    *  the parameters as headers when the PUT request is eventually sent.
    *
    * @param bucketName Bucket name where the object will be uploaded.
    * @param keyName Key name of the object that will be uploaded.
    * @param queryParams Query string parameters to be added to the presigned
 URL.
    * @return
    */
   public String createPresignedUrl(String bucketName, String keyName,
 Map<String, String> queryParams) {
       try (S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.create()) {
           // Create an override configuration to store the query parameters.
           AwsRequestOverrideConfiguration.Builder overrideConfigurationBuilder
 = AwsRequestOverrideConfiguration.builder();
```

```
queryParams.forEach(overrideConfigurationBuilder::putRawQueryParameter);

            PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(keyName)

.overrideConfiguration(overrideConfigurationBuilder.build()) // Add the override
configuration.
                    .build();

            PutObjectPresignRequest presignRequest =
PutObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                    .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10))  // The URL
expires in 10 minutes.
                    .putObjectRequest(objectRequest)
                    .build();


            PresignedPutObjectRequest presignedRequest =
presigner.presignPutObject(presignRequest);
            String myURL = presignedRequest.url().toString();
            logger.info("Presigned URL to upload a file to: [{}]", myURL);
            logger.info("HTTP method: [{}]",
presignedRequest.httpRequest().method());

            return presignedRequest.url().toExternalForm();
        }
    }
```

Use the AWS for Java V2 `SdkHttpClient` class to do the upload.

```
    /**
     * Use the AWS SDK for Java V2 SdkHttpClient class to execute the PUT
request. Since the
     * URL contains the query parameters, no headers are needed for metadata, SSE
settings, or ACL settings.
     *
     * @param presignedUrlString The URL for the PUT request.
     * @param fileToPut File to uplaod
     */
```

```
    public void useSdkHttpClientToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut)
{
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());

        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);

            SdkHttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = SdkHttpRequest.builder()
                    .method(SdkHttpMethod.PUT)
                    .uri(presignedUrl.toURI());

            SdkHttpRequest request = requestBuilder.build();

            HttpExecuteRequest executeRequest = HttpExecuteRequest.builder()
                    .request(request)
                    .contentStreamProvider(new
FileContentStreamProvider(fileToPut.toPath()))
                    .build();

            try (SdkHttpClient sdkHttpClient = ApacheHttpClient.create()) {
                HttpExecuteResponse response =
sdkHttpClient.prepareRequest(executeRequest).call();
                logger.info("Response code: {}",
response.httpResponse().statusCode());
            }
        } catch (URISyntaxException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a presigned URL to upload an object to a bucket.

```
import https from "node:https";

import { XMLParser } from "fast-xml-parser";
import { PutObjectCommand, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { fromIni } from "@aws-sdk/credential-providers";
import { HttpRequest } from "@smithy/protocol-http";
import {
  getSignedUrl,
  S3RequestPresigner,
} from "@aws-sdk/s3-request-presigner";
import { parseUrl } from "@smithy/url-parser";
import { formatUrl } from "@aws-sdk/util-format-url";
import { Hash } from "@smithy/hash-node";

const createPresignedUrlWithoutClient = async ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const url = parseUrl(`https://${bucket}.s3.${region}.amazonaws.com/${key}`);
  const presigner = new S3RequestPresigner({
    credentials: fromIni(),
    region,
    sha256: Hash.bind(null, "sha256"),
  });

  const signedUrlObject = await presigner.presign(
    new HttpRequest({ ...url, method: "PUT" }),
  );
  return formatUrl(signedUrlObject);
};

const createPresignedUrlWithClient = ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({ region });
  const command = new PutObjectCommand({ Bucket: bucket, Key: key });
  return getSignedUrl(client, command, { expiresIn: 3600 });
};

/**
 * Make a PUT request to the provided URL.
 *
 * @param {string} url
 * @param {string} data
 */
const put = (url, data) => {
  return new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
    const req = https.request(
```

```
      url,
      { method: "PUT", headers: { "Content-Length": new Blob([data]).size } },
      (res) => {
        let responseBody = "";
        res.on("data", (chunk) => {
          responseBody += chunk;
        });
        res.on("end", () => {
          const parser = new XMLParser();
          if (res.statusCode >= 200 && res.statusCode <= 299) {
            resolve(parser.parse(responseBody, true));
          } else {
            reject(parser.parse(responseBody, true));
          }
        });
      },
    );
    req.on("error", (err) => {
      reject(err);
    });
    req.write(data);
    req.end();
  });
};

/**
 * Create two presigned urls for uploading an object to an S3 bucket.
 * The first presigned URL is created with credentials from the shared INI file
 * in the current environment. The second presigned URL is created using an
 * existing S3Client instance that has already been provided with credentials.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, region: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, region }) => {
  try {
    const noClientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithoutClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      key,
      region,
    });

    const clientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      region,
      key,
```

```
    });

    // After you get the presigned URL, you can provide your own file
    // data. Refer to put() above.
    console.log("Calling PUT using presigned URL without client");
    await put(noClientUrl, "Hello World");

    console.log("Calling PUT using presigned URL with client");
    await put(clientUrl, "Hello World");

    console.log("\nDone. Check your S3 console.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "CredentialsProviderError") {
      console.error(
        `There was an error getting your credentials. Are your local credentials
 configured?\n${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Create a presigned URL to download an object from a bucket.

```
import { GetObjectCommand, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { fromIni } from "@aws-sdk/credential-providers";
import { HttpRequest } from "@smithy/protocol-http";
import {
  getSignedUrl,
  S3RequestPresigner,
} from "@aws-sdk/s3-request-presigner";
import { parseUrl } from "@smithy/url-parser";
import { formatUrl } from "@aws-sdk/util-format-url";
import { Hash } from "@smithy/hash-node";

const createPresignedUrlWithoutClient = async ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const url = parseUrl(`https://${bucket}.s3.${region}.amazonaws.com/${key}`);
  const presigner = new S3RequestPresigner({
    credentials: fromIni(),
    region,
    sha256: Hash.bind(null, "sha256"),
```

```
  });

  const signedUrlObject = await presigner.presign(new HttpRequest(url));
  return formatUrl(signedUrlObject);
};

const createPresignedUrlWithClient = ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({ region });
  const command = new GetObjectCommand({ Bucket: bucket, Key: key });
  return getSignedUrl(client, command, { expiresIn: 3600 });
};

/**
 * Create two presigned urls for downloading an object from an S3 bucket.
 * The first presigned URL is created with credentials from the shared INI file
 * in the current environment. The second presigned URL is created using an
 * existing S3Client instance that has already been provided with credentials.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, region: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, region }) => {
  try {
    const noClientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithoutClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      region,
      key,
    });

    const clientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      region,
      key,
    });

    console.log("Presigned URL without client");
    console.log(noClientUrl);
    console.log("\n");

    console.log("Presigned URL with client");
    console.log(clientUrl);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "CredentialsProviderError") {
      console.error(
        `There was an error getting your credentials. Are your local credentials
 configured?\n${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
```

```
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a `GetObject` presigned request and use the URL to download an object.

```
suspend fun getObjectPresigned(
    s3: S3Client,
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
): String {
    // Create a GetObjectRequest.
    val unsignedRequest =
        GetObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = keyName
        }

    // Presign the GetObject request.
    val presignedRequest = s3.presignGetObject(unsignedRequest, 24.hours)

    // Use the URL from the presigned HttpRequest in a subsequent HTTP GET
 request to retrieve the object.
    val objectContents = URL(presignedRequest.url.toString()).readText()

    return objectContents
```

```
}
```

Create a `GetObject` presigned request with advanced options.

```
suspend fun getObjectPresignedMoreOptions(
    s3: S3Client,
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
): HttpRequest {
    // Create a GetObjectRequest.
    val unsignedRequest =
        GetObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = keyName
        }

    // Presign the GetObject request.
    val presignedRequest =
        s3.presignGetObject(unsignedRequest, signer = CrtAwsSigner) {
            signingDate = Instant.now() + 12.hours // Presigned request can be
 used 12 hours from now.
            algorithm = AwsSigningAlgorithm.SIGV4_ASYMMETRIC
            signatureType = AwsSignatureType.HTTP_REQUEST_VIA_QUERY_PARAMS
            expiresAfter = 8.hours // Presigned request expires 8 hours later.
        }
    return presignedRequest
}
```

Create a `PutObject` presigned request and use it to upload an object.

```
suspend fun putObjectPresigned(
    s3: S3Client,
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
    content: String,
) {
    // Create a PutObjectRequest.
    val unsignedRequest =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = keyName
```

```
        }

    // Presign the request.
    val presignedRequest = s3.presignPutObject(unsignedRequest, 24.hours)

    // Use the URL and any headers from the presigned HttpRequest in a subsequent
 HTTP PUT request to retrieve the object.
    // Create a PUT request using the OKHttpClient API.
    val putRequest =
        Request
            .Builder()
            .url(presignedRequest.url.toString())
            .apply {
                presignedRequest.headers.forEach { key, values ->
                    header(key, values.joinToString(", "))
                }
            }.put(content.toRequestBody())
            .build()

    val response = OkHttpClient().newCall(putRequest).execute()
    assert(response.isSuccessful)
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Kotlin developer guide.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace S3;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use AwsUtilities\PrintableLineBreak;
use AwsUtilities\TestableReadline;
use DateTime;
```

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

class PresignedURL
{
    use PrintableLineBreak;
    use TestableReadline;

    public function run()
    {
        $s3Service = new S3Service();

        $expiration = new DateTime("+20 minutes");
        $linebreak = $this->getLineBreak();

        echo $linebreak;
        echo ("Welcome to the Amazon S3 presigned URL demo.\n");
        echo $linebreak;

        $bucket = $this->testable_readline("First, please enter the name of the
 S3 bucket to use: ");
        $key = $this->testable_readline("Next, provide the key of an object in
 the given bucket: ");
        echo $linebreak;
        $command = $s3Service->getClient()->getCommand('GetObject', [
            'Bucket' => $bucket,
            'Key' => $key,
        ]);
        try {
            $preSignedUrl = $s3Service->preSignedUrl($command, $expiration);
            echo "Your preSignedUrl is \n$preSignedUrl\nand will be good for the
 next 20 minutes.\n";
            echo $linebreak;
            echo "Thanks for trying the Amazon S3 presigned URL demo.\n";
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            echo $linebreak;
            echo "Something went wrong: $exception";
            die();
        }
    }
}

$runner = new PresignedURL();
$runner->run();
```

```
namespace S3;

use Aws\CommandInterface;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Result;
use Aws\S3\Exception\S3Exception;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use DateTimeInterface;

class S3Service extends AWSServiceClass
{
    protected S3Client $client;
    protected bool $verbose;

    public function __construct(S3Client $client = null, $verbose = false)
    {
        if ($client) {
            $this->client = $client;
        } else {
            $this->client = new S3Client([
                'version' => 'latest',
                'region' => 'us-west-2',
            ]);
        }
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function setVerbose($verbose)
    {
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function isVerbose(): bool
    {
        return $this->verbose;
    }

    public function getClient(): S3Client
    {
        return $this->client;
    }
```

```
    public function setClient(S3Client $client)
    {
        $this->client = $client;
    }


    public function emptyAndDeleteBucket($bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $objects = $this->listAllObjects($bucketName, $args);
            $this->deleteObjects($bucketName, $objects, $args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $bucketName.\n";
            }
            $this->deleteBucket($bucketName, $args);
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "\nPlease fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.
\n";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function createBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->createBucket($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Created the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
```

```
        }
    }



    public function putObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key],
$args);
        try {
            $this->client->putObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Uploaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
$bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $key in $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object uploading before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function getObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = []):
Result
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key],
$args);
        try {
            $object = $this->client->getObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Downloaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
$bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to download $key from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object downloading before
continuing.";
```

```
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $object;
    }



    public function copyObject($bucketName, $key, $copySource, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key,
"CopySource" => $copySource], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->copyObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Copied the object from: $copySource in $bucketName to:
$key.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to copy $copySource in $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object copying before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function listObjects(string $bucketName, $start = 0, $max = 1000,
array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Marker' => $start,
"MaxKeys" => $max], $args);
        try {
            $objects = $this->client->listObjectsV2($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve the objects from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
```

```
                echo "Please fix error with list objects before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $objects;
    }



    public function listAllObjects($bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);

        $contents = [];
        $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListObjectsV2", $parameters);

        foreach ($paginator as $result) {
            if($result['KeyCount'] == 0){
                break;
            }
            foreach ($result['Contents'] as $object) {
                $contents[] = $object;
            }
        }
        return $contents;
    }



    public function deleteObjects(string $bucketName, array $objects, array $args
 = [])
    {
        $listOfObjects = array_map(
            function ($object) {
                return ['Key' => $object];
            },
            array_column($objects, 'Key')
        );
        if(!$listOfObjects){
            return;
        }

        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Delete' =>
 ['Objects' => $listOfObjects]], $args);
```

```
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObjects($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete the list of objects from $bucketName with
 error: {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteBucket($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteObject(string $bucketName, string $fileName, array
 $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $fileName],
 $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObject($parameters);
```

```
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the object named: $fileName from $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function listBuckets(array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $buckets = $this->client->listBuckets($args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved all " . count($buckets) . "\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve bucket list with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket lists before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $buckets;
    }



    public function preSignedUrl(CommandInterface $command, DateTimeInterface|
int|string $expires, array $options = [])
    {
        $request = $this->client->createPresignedRequest($command, $expires,
 $options);
        try {
            $presignedUrl = (string)$request->getUri();
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
```

```
                echo "Failed to create a presigned url: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with presigned urls before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $presignedUrl;
    }



    public function createSession(string $bucketName)
    {
        try{
            $result = $this->client->createSession([
                'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            ]);
            return $result;
        }catch(S3Exception $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorType() == "NoSuchBucket"){
                echo "The specified bucket does not exist.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }

}
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned URL that can perform an S3 action for a limited time. Use the Requests package to make a request with the URL.

```
import argparse
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import requests

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def generate_presigned_url(s3_client, client_method, method_parameters,
 expires_in):
    """
    Generate a presigned Amazon S3 URL that can be used to perform an action.

    :param s3_client: A Boto3 Amazon S3 client.
    :param client_method: The name of the client method that the URL performs.
    :param method_parameters: The parameters of the specified client method.
    :param expires_in: The number of seconds the presigned URL is valid for.
    :return: The presigned URL.
    """
    try:
        url = s3_client.generate_presigned_url(
            ClientMethod=client_method, Params=method_parameters,
 ExpiresIn=expires_in
        )
        logger.info("Got presigned URL: %s", url)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't get a presigned URL for client method '%s'.", client_method
        )
        raise
    return url


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 presigned URL demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument("bucket", help="The name of the bucket.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "key",
        help="For a GET operation, the key of the object in Amazon S3. For a "
        "PUT operation, the name of a file to upload.",
    )
    parser.add_argument("action", choices=("get", "put"), help="The action to
perform.")
    args = parser.parse_args()

    s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
    client_action = "get_object" if args.action == "get" else "put_object"
    url = generate_presigned_url(
        s3_client, client_action, {"Bucket": args.bucket, "Key": args.key}, 1000
    )

    print("Using the Requests package to send a request to the URL.")
    response = None
    if args.action == "get":
        response = requests.get(url)
        if response.status_code == 200:
            with open(args.key.split("/")[-1], 'wb') as object_file:
                object_file.write(response.content)
    elif args.action == "put":
        print("Putting data to the URL.")
        try:
            with open(args.key, "rb") as object_file:
                object_text = object_file.read()
            response = requests.put(url, data=object_text)
        except FileNotFoundError:
            print(
                f"Couldn't find {args.key}. For a PUT operation, the key must be
the "
                f"name of a file that exists on your computer."
            )

    if response is not None:
        print(f"Status: {response.status_code}\nReason: {response.reason}")

    print("-" * 88)
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

Generate a presigned POST request to upload a file.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def generate_presigned_post(self, object_key, expires_in):
        """
        Generate a presigned Amazon S3 POST request to upload a file.
        A presigned POST can be used for a limited time to let someone without an
 AWS
        account upload a file to a bucket.

        :param object_key: The object key to identify the uploaded object.
        :param expires_in: The number of seconds the presigned POST is valid.
        :return: A dictionary that contains the URL and form fields that contain
                 required access data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.bucket.meta.client.generate_presigned_post(
                Bucket=self.bucket.name, Key=object_key, ExpiresIn=expires_in
            )
            logger.info("Got presigned POST URL: %s", response["url"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get a presigned POST URL for bucket '%s' and object
 '%s'",
                self.bucket.name,
                object_key,
            )
```

```
            raise
        return response
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'
require 'net/http'

# Creates a presigned URL that can be used to upload content to an object.
#
# @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket.
# @param object_key [String] The key to give the uploaded object.
# @return [URI, nil] The parsed URI if successful; otherwise nil.
def get_presigned_url(bucket, object_key)
  url = bucket.object(object_key).presigned_url(:put)
  puts "Created presigned URL: #{url}"
  URI(url)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't create presigned URL for #{bucket.name}:#{object_key}. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-file.txt"
  object_content = "This is the content of my-file.txt."

  bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(bucket_name)
  presigned_url = get_presigned_url(bucket, object_key)
```

```
  return unless presigned_url

  response = Net::HTTP.start(presigned_url.host) do |http|
    http.send_request('PUT', presigned_url.request_uri, object_content,
 'content_type' => '')
  end

  case response
  when Net::HTTPSuccess
    puts 'Content uploaded!'
  else
    puts response.value
  end
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create presigning requests to GET S3 objects.

```
/// Generate a URL for a presigned GET request.
async fn get_object(
    client: &Client,
    bucket: &str,
    object: &str,
    expires_in: u64,
) -> Result<(), Box<dyn Error>> {
    let expires_in = Duration::from_secs(expires_in);
    let presigned_request = client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(object)
```

```
        .presigned(PresigningConfig::expires_in(expires_in)?)
        .await?;

    println!("Object URI: {}", presigned_request.uri());
    let valid_until = chrono::offset::Local::now() + expires_in;
    println!("Valid until: {valid_until}");

    Ok(())
}
```

Create presigning requests to PUT S3 objects.

```
async fn put_object(
    client: &Client,
    bucket: &str,
    object: &str,
    expires_in: u64,
) -> Result<String, S3ExampleError> {
    let expires_in: std::time::Duration =
 std::time::Duration::from_secs(expires_in);
    let expires_in: aws_sdk_s3::presigning::PresigningConfig =
        PresigningConfig::expires_in(expires_in).map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
                "Failed to convert expiration to PresigningConfig: {err:?}"
            ))
        })?;
    let presigned_request = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(object)
        .presigned(expires_in)
        .await?;

    Ok(presigned_request.uri().into())
}
```

Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

The following code examples show how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

A web page that lists Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to list Amazon S3 objects in a web page.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following code is the relevant React component that makes calls to the AWS SDK. A runnable version of the application containing this component can be found at the preceding GitHub link.

```
import { useEffect, useState } from "react";
import {
  ListObjectsCommand,
  type ListObjectsCommandOutput,
  S3Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { fromCognitoIdentityPool } from "@aws-sdk/credential-providers";
import "./App.css";

function App() {
  const [objects, setObjects] = useState<
    Required<ListObjectsCommandOutput>["Contents"]
  >([]);

  useEffect(() => {
    const client = new S3Client({
      region: "us-east-1",
      // Unless you have a public bucket, you'll need access to a private bucket.
      // One way to do this is to create an Amazon Cognito identity pool, attach
 a role to the pool,
      // and grant the role access to the 's3:GetObject' action.
      //
      // You'll also need to configure the CORS settings on the bucket to allow
 traffic from
      // this example site. Here's an example configuration that allows all
 origins. Don't
      // do this in production.
      //[
```

```
      //  {
      //    "AllowedHeaders": ["*"],
      //    "AllowedMethods": ["GET"],
      //    "AllowedOrigins": ["*"],
      //    "ExposeHeaders": [],
      //  },
      //]
      //
      credentials: fromCognitoIdentityPool({
        clientConfig: { region: "us-east-1" },
        identityPoolId: "<YOUR_IDENTITY_POOL_ID>",
      }),
    });
    const command = new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: "bucket-name" });
    client.send(command).then(({ Contents }) => setObjects(Contents || []));
  }, []);

  return (
    <div className="App">
      {objects.map((o) => (
        <div key={o.ETag}>{o.Key}</div>
      ))}
    </div>
  );
}

export default App;
```

- For API details, see ListObjects in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code examples show how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page.

This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Delete all objects in a given Amazon S3 bucket using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to delete all of the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete all objects for a given Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import {
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  paginateListObjectsV2,
  S3Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 *
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  try {
    console.log(`Deleting all objects in bucket: ${bucketName}`);

    const paginator = paginateListObjectsV2(
      { client },
      {
        Bucket: bucketName,
```

```
      },
    );

    const objectKeys = [];
    for await (const { Contents } of paginator) {
      objectKeys.push(...Contents.map((obj) => ({ Key: obj.Key })));
    }

    const deleteCommand = new DeleteObjectsCommand({
      Bucket: bucketName,
      Delete: { Objects: objectKeys },
    });

    await client.send(deleteCommand);

    console.log(`All objects deleted from bucket: ${bucketName}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error) {
      console.error(
        `Failed to empty ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
    },
  };

  const { values } = parseArgs({ options });
  main(values);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteObjects
  - ListObjectsV2

Delete incomplete multipart uploads to Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to how to delete or stop incomplete Amazon S3 multipart uploads.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

To stop multipart uploads that are in-progress or incomplete for any reason, you can get a list uploads and then delete them as shown in the following example.

```
   /**
    * Aborts all incomplete multipart uploads from the specified S3 bucket.
    * <p>
    * This method retrieves a list of all incomplete multipart uploads in the
specified S3 bucket,
    * and then aborts each of those uploads.
    */
   public static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList() {
       ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
       List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

       AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
       for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
           abortMultipartUploadRequest = AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .key(upload.key())
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
```

```
                .build();

            AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
            if (abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully
aborted.", upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
            }
        }
    }
```

To delete incomplete multipart uploads that were initiated before or after a date, you can selectively delete multipart uploads based on a point in time as shown in the following example.

```
    static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan(Instant pointInTime) {
        ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
        List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

        AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
        for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
            logger.info("Found multipartUpload with upload ID [{}], initiated
[{}]", upload.uploadId(), upload.initiated());
            if (upload.initiated().isBefore(pointInTime)) {
                abortMultipartUploadRequest =
AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(upload.key())
                    .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                    .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
                    .build();

                AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
                if
(abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
```

```
                    logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully
 aborted.", upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

If you have access to the upload ID after you begin a multipart upload, you can delete the in-progress upload by using the ID.

```
    static void abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId() {
        String uploadId = startUploadReturningUploadId();
        AbortMultipartUploadResponse response = s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(b -
> b
            .uploadId(uploadId)
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully aborted.",
 uploadId, bucketName);
        }
    }
```

To consistently delete incomplete multipart uploads older that a certain number of days, set up a bucket lifecycle configuration for the bucket. The following example shows how to create a rule to delete incomplete uploads older than 7 days.

```
    static void abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig() {
        Collection<LifecycleRule> lifeCycleRules =
 List.of(LifecycleRule.builder()
            .abortIncompleteMultipartUpload(b -> b.
                daysAfterInitiation(7))
            .status("Enabled")
            .filter(SdkBuilder::build) // Filter element is required.
            .build());

        // If the action is successful, the service sends back an HTTP 200
 response with an empty HTTP body.
```

```
        PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse response =
s3Client.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .lifecycleConfiguration(b1 -> b1.rules(lifeCycleRules)));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Rule to abort incomplete multipart uploads added to
bucket.");
        } else {
            logger.error("Unsuccessfully applied rule. HTTP status code is [{}]",
response.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AbortMultipartUpload
  - ListMultipartUploads
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration

Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SES

Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in text extracted by Amazon Textract from an image that is stored in Amazon S3.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) in a Jupyter notebook to detect entities in text that is extracted from an image. This example uses Amazon Textract to extract text from an image stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in the extracted text.

This example is a Jupyter notebook and must be run in an environment that can host notebooks. For instructions on how to run the example using Amazon SageMaker AI, see the directions in TextractAndComprehendNotebook.ipynb.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Textract

Detect faces in an image using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Save an image in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (such as smiling).
- Display those details.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Save the image in an Amazon S3 bucket with an **uploads** prefix, use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (smiling, etc.), and display those details.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition with the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

Learn how to:

- Create an unauthenticated user using Amazon Cognito.
- Analyze images for objects using Amazon Rekognition.
- Verify an email address for Amazon SES.
- Send an email notification using Amazon SES.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Kotlin API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a web application that lets you do the following:

- Upload photos to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze and label the photos.
- Use Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send email reports of image analysis.

This example contains two main components: a webpage written in JavaScript that is built with React, and a REST service written in Python that is built with Flask-RESTful.

You can use the React webpage to:

- Display a list of images that are stored in your S3 bucket.
- Upload images from your computer to your S3 bucket.
- Display images and labels that identify items that are detected in the image.
- Get a report of all images in your S3 bucket and send an email of the report.

The webpage calls the REST service. The service sends requests to AWS to perform the following actions:

- Get and filter the list of images in your S3 bucket.
- Upload photos to your S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze individual photos and get a list of labels that identify items that are detected in the photo.
- Analyze all photos in your S3 bucket and use Amazon SES to email a report.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Download S3 'directories' from an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket

The following code example shows how to download and filter the contents of Amazon S3 bucket 'directories'.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example show how to use the S3TransferManager in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x to download 'directories' from an Amazon S3 bucket. It also demonstrates how to use DownloadFilters in the request.

```
   /**
    * For standard buckets, S3 provides the illusion of a directory structure
through the use of keys. When you upload
    * an object to an S3 bucket, you specify a key, which is essentially the
"path" to the object. The key can contain
    * forward slashes ("/") to make it appear as if the object is stored in a
directory structure, but this is just a
    * logical representation, not an actual directory.
    * <p><pre>
    * In this example, our S3 bucket contains the following objects:
    *
    * folder1/file1.txt
    * folder1/file2.txt
    * folder1/file3.txt
    * folder2/file1.txt
    * folder2/file2.txt
    * folder2/file3.txt
    * folder3/file1.txt
    * folder3/file2.txt
    * folder3/file3.txt
    *
    * When method `downloadS3Directories` is invoked with
    * `destinationPathURI` set to `/test`, the downloaded
    * directory looks like:
    *
    * |- test
    *    |- folder1
    *       |- file1.txt
    *       |- file2.txt
    *       |- file3.txt
    *    |- folder3
    *       |- file1.txt
    *       |- file2.txt
    *       |- file3.txt
    * </pre>
    *
    * @param transferManager    An S3TransferManager instance.
    * @param destinationPathURI local directory to hold the downloaded S3
'directories' and files.
```

```
     * @param bucketName         The S3 bucket that contains the 'directories' to
 download.
     * @return The number of objects (files, in this case) that were downloaded.
     */
    public Integer downloadS3Directories(S3TransferManager transferManager,
                                         URI destinationPathURI, String
 bucketName) {

        // Define the filters for which 'directories' we want to download.
        DownloadFilter folder1Filter = (S3Object s3Object) ->
 s3Object.key().startsWith("folder1/");
        DownloadFilter folder3Filter = (S3Object s3Object) ->
 s3Object.key().startsWith("folder3/");
        DownloadFilter folderFilter = s3Object ->
 folder1Filter.or(folder3Filter).test(s3Object);

        DirectoryDownload directoryDownload =
 transferManager.downloadDirectory(DownloadDirectoryRequest.builder()
                .destination(Paths.get(destinationPathURI))
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .filter(folderFilter)
                .build());
        CompletedDirectoryDownload completedDirectoryDownload =
 directoryDownload.completionFuture().join();

        Integer numFilesInFolder1 =
 Paths.get(destinationPathURI).resolve("folder1").toFile().list().length;
        Integer numFilesInFolder3 =
 Paths.get(destinationPathURI).resolve("folder3").toFile().list().length;

        try {
            assert numFilesInFolder1 == 3;
            assert numFilesInFolder3 == 3;
            assert !
Paths.get(destinationPathURI).resolve("folder2").toFile().exists(); // `folder2`
 was not downloaded.
        } catch (AssertionError e) {
            logger.error("An assertion failed.");
        }

        completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers()
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object failed to transfer  [{}]",
 fail.exception().getMessage()));
        return numFilesInFolder1 + numFilesInFolder3;
```

```
    }
```

Download all objects in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to a local directory

The following code example shows how to download all objects in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to a local directory.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an S3TransferManager to download all S3 objects in the same S3 bucket. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedDirectoryDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DirectoryDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DownloadDirectoryRequest;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.HashSet;
import java.util.Set;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;
```

```
    public Integer downloadObjectsToDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
            URI destinationPathURI, String bucketName) {
        DirectoryDownload directoryDownload =
transferManager.downloadDirectory(DownloadDirectoryRequest.builder()
                .destination(Paths.get(destinationPathURI))
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build());
        CompletedDirectoryDownload completedDirectoryDownload =
directoryDownload.completionFuture().join();

        completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers()
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
fail.toString()));
        return completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers().size();
    }
```

- For API details, see DownloadDirectory in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Download a stream of unknown size from an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to download a stream of unknown size from an Amazon S3 object.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSS3
import Foundation
import Smithy
import SmithyHTTPAPI
```

```
import SmithyStreams


    /// Download a file from the specified bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket name to get the file from.
    ///   - key: The name (or path) of the file to download from the bucket.
    ///   - destPath: The pathname on the local filesystem at which to store
    ///     the downloaded file.
    func downloadFile(bucket: String, key: String, destPath: String?) async
 throws {
        let fileURL: URL

        // If no destination path was provided, use the key as the name to use
        // for the file in the downloads folder.

        if destPath == nil {
            do {
                try fileURL = FileManager.default.url(
                    for: .downloadsDirectory,
                    in: .userDomainMask,
                    appropriateFor: URL(string: key),
                    create: true
                ).appendingPathComponent(key)
            } catch {
                throw TransferError.directoryError
            }
        } else {
            fileURL = URL(fileURLWithPath: destPath!)
        }

        let config = try await S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let s3Client = S3Client(config: config)

        // Create a `FileHandle` referencing the local destination. Then
        // create a `ByteStream` from that.

        FileManager.default.createFile(atPath: fileURL.path, contents: nil,
 attributes: nil)
        let fileHandle = try FileHandle(forWritingTo: fileURL)

        // Download the file using `GetObject`.
```

```
        let getInput = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            let getOutput = try await s3Client.getObject(input: getInput)

            guard let body = getOutput.body else {
                throw TransferError.downloadError("Error: No data returned for
download")
            }

            // If the body is returned as a `Data` object, write that to the
            // file. If it's a stream, read the stream chunk by chunk,
            // appending each chunk to the destination file.

            switch body {
            case .data:
                guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                    throw TransferError.downloadError("Download error")
                }

                // Write the `Data` to the file.

                do {
                    try data.write(to: fileURL)
                } catch {
                    throw TransferError.writeError
                }
                break

            case .stream(let stream as ReadableStream):
                while (true) {
                    let chunk = try await stream.readAsync(upToCount: 5 * 1024 *
1024)
                    guard let chunk = chunk else {
                        break
                    }

                    // Write the chunk to the destination file.

                    do {
                        try fileHandle.write(contentsOf: chunk)
```

```
                    } catch {
                        throw TransferError.writeError
                    }
                }

                break
            default:
                throw TransferError.downloadError("Received data is unknown
object type")
            }
        } catch {
            throw TransferError.downloadError("Error downloading the file:
\(error)")
        }

        print("File downloaded to \(fileURL.path).")
    }
```

Get an Amazon S3 object from a Multi-Region Access Point by using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to get an object from a Multi-Region Access Point.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure the S3 client to use the Asymmetric Sigv4 (Sigv4a) signing algorithm.

```
        suspend fun createS3Client(): S3Client {
            // Configure your S3Client to use the Asymmetric SigV4 (SigV4a)
signing algorithm.
            val sigV4aScheme = SigV4AsymmetricAuthScheme(DefaultAwsSigner)
            val s3 = S3Client.fromEnvironment {
                authSchemes = listOf(sigV4aScheme)
```

```
            }
            return s3
        }
```

Use the Multi-Region Access Point ARN instead of a bucket name to retrieve the object.

```
    suspend fun getObjectFromMrap(
        s3: S3Client,
        mrapArn: String,
        keyName: String,
    ): String? {
        val request = GetObjectRequest {
            bucket = mrapArn // Use the ARN instead of the bucket name for object
operations.
            key = keyName
        }

        var stringObj: String? = null
        s3.getObject(request) { resp ->
            stringObj = resp.body?.decodeToString()
            if (stringObj != null) {
                println("Successfully read $keyName from $mrapArn")
            }
        }
        return stringObj
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Kotlin developer guide.
- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Get an object from an Amazon S3 bucket using an AWS SDK, specifying an If-Modified-Since header

The following code example shows how to read data from an object in an S3 bucket, but only if that bucket has not been modified since the last retrieval time.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_sdk_s3::{
    error::SdkError,
    primitives::{ByteStream, DateTime, DateTimeFormat},
    Client,
};
use s3_code_examples::error::S3ExampleError;
use tracing::{error, warn};

const KEY: &str = "key";
const BODY: &str = "Hello, world!";

/// Demonstrate how `if-modified-since` reports that matching objects haven't
/// changed.
///
/// # Steps
/// - Create a bucket.
/// - Put an object in the bucket.
/// - Get the bucket headers.
/// - Get the bucket headers again but only if modified.
/// - Delete the bucket.
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();

    // Get a new UUID to use when creating a unique bucket name.
    let uuid = uuid::Uuid::new_v4();

    // Load the AWS configuration from the environment.
    let client = Client::new(&aws_config::load_from_env().await);

    // Generate a unique bucket name using the previously generated UUID.
    // Then create a new bucket with that name.
```

```
    let bucket_name = format!("if-modified-since-{uuid}");
    client
        .create_bucket()
        .bucket(bucket_name.clone())
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Create a new object in the bucket whose name is `KEY` and whose
    // contents are `BODY`.
    let put_object_output = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .body(ByteStream::from_static(BODY.as_bytes()))
        .send()
        .await;

    // If the `PutObject` succeeded, get the eTag string from it. Otherwise,
    // report an error and return an empty string.
    let e_tag_1 = match put_object_output {
        Ok(put_object) => put_object.e_tag.unwrap(),
        Err(err) => {
            error!("{err:?}");
            String::new()
        }
    };

    // Request the object's headers.
    let head_object_output = client
        .head_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .send()
        .await;

    // If the `HeadObject` request succeeded, create a tuple containing the
    // values of the headers `last-modified` and `etag`. If the request
    // failed, return the error in a tuple instead.
    let (last_modified, e_tag_2) = match head_object_output {
        Ok(head_object) => (
            Ok(head_object.last_modified().cloned().unwrap()),
            head_object.e_tag.unwrap(),
        ),
        Err(err) => (Err(err), String::new()),
```

```
    };

    warn!("last modified: {last_modified:?}");
    assert_eq!(
        e_tag_1, e_tag_2,
        "PutObject and first GetObject had differing eTags"
    );

    println!("First value of last_modified: {last_modified:?}");
    println!("First tag: {}\n", e_tag_1);

    // Send a second `HeadObject` request. This time, the `if_modified_since`
    // option is specified, giving the `last_modified` value returned by the
    // first call to `HeadObject`.
    //
    // Since the object hasn't been changed, and there are no other objects in
    // the bucket, there should be no matching objects.

    let head_object_output = client
        .head_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .if_modified_since(last_modified.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await;

    // If the `HeadObject` request succeeded, the result is a typle containing
    // the `last_modified` and `e_tag_1` properties. This is _not_ the expected
    // result.
    //
    // The _expected_ result of the second call to `HeadObject` is an
    // `SdkError::ServiceError` containing the HTTP error response. If that's
    // the case and the HTTP status is 304 (not modified), the output is a
    // tuple containing the values of the HTTP `last-modified` and `etag`
    // headers.
    //
    // If any other HTTP error occurred, the error is returned as an
    // `SdkError::ServiceError`.

    let (last_modified, e_tag_2) = match head_object_output {
        Ok(head_object) => (
            Ok(head_object.last_modified().cloned().unwrap()),
            head_object.e_tag.unwrap(),
        ),
```

```
        Err(err) => match err {
            SdkError::ServiceError(err) => {
                // Get the raw HTTP response. If its status is 304, the
                // object has not changed. This is the expected code path.
                let http = err.raw();
                match http.status().as_u16() {
                    // If the HTTP status is 304: Not Modified, return a
                    // tuple containing the values of the HTTP
                    // `last-modified` and `etag` headers.
                    304 => (
                        Ok(DateTime::from_str(
                            http.headers().get("last-modified").unwrap(),
                            DateTimeFormat::HttpDate,
                        )
                        .unwrap()),
                        http.headers().get("etag").map(|t| t.into()).unwrap(),
                    ),
                    // Any other HTTP status code is returned as an
                    // `SdkError::ServiceError`.
                    _ => (Err(SdkError::ServiceError(err)), String::new()),
                }
            }
            // Any other kind of error is returned in a tuple containing the
            // error and an empty string.
            _ => (Err(err), String::new()),
        },
    };

    warn!("last modified: {last_modified:?}");
    assert_eq!(
        e_tag_1, e_tag_2,
        "PutObject and second HeadObject had different eTags"
    );

    println!("Second value of last modified: {last_modified:?}");
    println!("Second tag: {}", e_tag_2);

    // Clean up by deleting the object and the bucket.
    client
        .delete_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    client
        .delete_bucket()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Get started with Amazon S3 using the CLI

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an S3 bucket with unique naming and regional configuration
- Configure bucket security settings including public access blocking
- Enable versioning and default encryption for data protection
- Upload objects with and without custom metadata
- Download objects from the bucket to local storage
- Copy objects within the bucket to organize data in folders
- List bucket contents and objects with specific prefixes
- Add tags to buckets for resource management
- Clean up all resources including versioned objects

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Amazon S3 Getting Started Tutorial Script
# This script demonstrates basic S3 operations including:
# - Creating a bucket
# - Configuring bucket settings
# - Uploading, downloading, and copying objects
# - Deleting objects and buckets

# Latest fixes:
# 1. Fixed folder creation using temporary file
# 2. Corrected versioned object deletion in cleanup
# 3. Improved error handling for cleanup operations

# Set up error handling
set -e
trap 'cleanup_handler $?' EXIT

# Log file setup
LOG_FILE="s3-tutorial-$(date +%Y%m%d-%H%M%S).log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Function to log messages
log() {
    echo "[$(date +"%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S")] $1"
}

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
    log "ERROR: $1"
    exit 1
}

# Function to check if a bucket exists
bucket_exists() {
    if aws s3api head-bucket --bucket "$1" 2>/dev/null; then
        return 0
    else
        return 1
    fi
}

# Function to delete all versions of objects in a bucket
```

```
delete_all_versions() {
    local bucket=$1
    log "Deleting all object versions from bucket $bucket..."

    # Get and delete all versions
    versions=$(aws s3api list-object-versions --bucket "$bucket" --query
 'Versions[].{Key:Key,VersionId:VersionId}' --output json 2>/dev/null)
    if [ -n "$versions" ] && [ "$versions" != "null" ]; then
        echo "{\"Objects\": $versions}" | aws s3api delete-objects --bucket
 "$bucket" --delete file:///dev/stdin >/dev/null 2>&1 || log "Warning: Some
 versions could not be deleted"
    fi

    # Get and delete all delete markers
    markers=$(aws s3api list-object-versions --bucket "$bucket" --query
 'DeleteMarkers[].{Key:Key,VersionId:VersionId}' --output json 2>/dev/null)
    if [ -n "$markers" ] && [ "$markers" != "null" ]; then
        echo "{\"Objects\": $markers}" | aws s3api delete-objects --bucket
 "$bucket" --delete file:///dev/stdin >/dev/null 2>&1 || log "Warning: Some
 delete markers could not be deleted"
    fi
}

# Function to handle cleanup on exit
cleanup_handler() {
    local exit_code=$1

    # Only run cleanup if it hasn't been run already
    if [ -z "$CLEANUP_DONE" ]; then
        cleanup
    fi

    exit $exit_code
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
    log "Starting cleanup process..."
    CLEANUP_DONE=1

    # List all resources created for confirmation
    log "Resources created:"
    if [ -n "$BUCKET_NAME" ]; then
        log "- S3 Bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
```

```
        # Only try to list objects if the bucket exists
        if bucket_exists "$BUCKET_NAME"; then
            # Check if any objects were created
            OBJECTS=$(aws s3api list-objects-v2 --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" --query
 'Contents[].Key' --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "")
            if [ -n "$OBJECTS" ]; then
                log "- Objects in bucket:"
                echo "$OBJECTS" | tr '\t' '\n' | while read -r obj; do
                    log "  - $obj"
                done
            fi

            # Ask for confirmation before cleanup
            read -p "Do you want to proceed with cleanup and delete all
 resources? (y/n): " confirm
            if [[ $confirm != [yY] && $confirm != [yY][eE][sS] ]]; then
                log "Cleanup aborted by user."
                return
            fi

            # Delete all versions of objects
            delete_all_versions "$BUCKET_NAME"

            # Delete the bucket
            log "Deleting bucket $BUCKET_NAME..."
            aws s3api delete-bucket --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" || log "Warning:
 Failed to delete bucket"
        else
            log "Bucket $BUCKET_NAME does not exist, skipping cleanup"
        fi
    fi

    # Clean up local files
    log "Removing local files..."
    rm -f sample-file.txt sample-document.txt downloaded-sample-file.txt empty-
file.tmp

    log "Cleanup completed."
}

# Generate a random bucket name
generate_bucket_name() {
    local hex_id
```

```
    hex_id=$(openssl rand -hex 6)
    echo "demo-s3-bucket-$hex_id"
}

# Main script execution
main() {
    log "Starting Amazon S3 Getting Started Tutorial"

    # Generate a unique bucket name
    BUCKET_NAME=$(generate_bucket_name)
    log "Generated bucket name: $BUCKET_NAME"

    # Step 1: Create a bucket
    log "Step 1: Creating S3 bucket..."

    # Get the current region or default to us-east-1
    REGION=$(aws configure get region)
    REGION=${REGION:-us-east-1}
    log "Using region: $REGION"

    if [ "$REGION" = "us-east-1" ]; then
        aws s3api create-bucket --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" || handle_error "Failed
 to create bucket"
    else
        aws s3api create-bucket \
            --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
            --region "$REGION" \
            --create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint="$REGION" ||
 handle_error "Failed to create bucket"
    fi
    log "Bucket created successfully"

    # Configure bucket settings
    log "Configuring bucket settings..."

    # Block public access (security best practice)
    log "Blocking public access..."
    aws s3api put-public-access-block \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --public-access-block-configuration
 "BlockPublicAcls=true,IgnorePublicAcls=true,BlockPublicPolicy=true,RestrictPublicBuckets
 || handle_error "Failed to configure public access block"

    # Enable versioning
```

```
   log "Enabling versioning..."
   aws s3api put-bucket-versioning \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --versioning-configuration Status=Enabled || handle_error "Failed to
enable versioning"

   # Set default encryption
   log "Setting default encryption..."
   aws s3api put-bucket-encryption \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --server-side-encryption-configuration '{"Rules":
[{"ApplyServerSideEncryptionByDefault": {"SSEAlgorithm": "AES256"}}]}' ||
handle_error "Failed to set encryption"

   # Step 2: Upload an object
   log "Step 2: Uploading objects to bucket..."

   # Create a sample file
   echo "This is a sample file for the S3 tutorial." > sample-file.txt

   # Upload the file
   aws s3api put-object \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --key "sample-file.txt" \
       --body "sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Failed to upload object"
   log "Object uploaded successfully"

   # Upload with metadata
   echo "This is a document with metadata." > sample-document.txt
   aws s3api put-object \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --key "documents/sample-document.txt" \
       --body "sample-document.txt" \
       --content-type "text/plain" \
       --metadata "author=AWSDocumentation,purpose=tutorial" || handle_error
"Failed to upload object with metadata"
   log "Object with metadata uploaded successfully"

   # Step 3: Download an object
   log "Step 3: Downloading object from bucket..."
   aws s3api get-object \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --key "sample-file.txt" \
       "downloaded-sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Failed to download object"
```

```
    log "Object downloaded successfully"

    # Check if an object exists
    log "Checking if object exists..."
    aws s3api head-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Object does not exist"
    log "Object exists"

    # Step 4: Copy object to a folder
    log "Step 4: Copying object to a folder..."

    # Create a folder structure using a temporary empty file
    log "Creating folder structure..."
    touch empty-file.tmp
    aws s3api put-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "favorite-files/" \
        --body empty-file.tmp || handle_error "Failed to create folder"

    # Copy the object
    log "Copying object..."
    aws s3api copy-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --copy-source "$BUCKET_NAME/sample-file.txt" \
        --key "favorite-files/sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Failed to copy
object"
    log "Object copied successfully"

    # List objects in the bucket
    log "Listing all objects in the bucket..."
    aws s3api list-objects-v2 \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --query 'Contents[].Key' \
        --output table || handle_error "Failed to list objects"

    # List objects with a specific prefix
    log "Listing objects in the favorite-files folder..."
    aws s3api list-objects-v2 \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --prefix "favorite-files/" \
        --query 'Contents[].Key' \
        --output table || handle_error "Failed to list objects with prefix"
```

```
    # Add tags to the bucket
    log "Adding tags to the bucket..."
    aws s3api put-bucket-tagging \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --tagging 'TagSet=[{Key=Project,Value=S3Tutorial},
{Key=Environment,Value=Demo}]' || handle_error "Failed to add tags"
    log "Tags added successfully"

    log "Tutorial completed successfully!"
}

# Execute the main function
main
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - HeadObject
  - ListObjectVersions
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutBucketEncryption
  - PutBucketTagging
  - PutBucketVersioning
  - PutObject
  - PutPublicAccessBlock

Get started with encryption for Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to get started with encryption for Amazon S3 objects.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to apply client encryption to an object in an
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class SSEClientEncryption
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "exampleobject.txt";
        string copyTargetKeyName = "examplecopy.txt";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

        try
        {
            // Create an encryption key.
            Aes aesEncryption = Aes.Create();
            aesEncryption.KeySize = 256;
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
            string base64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);
```

```
                // Upload the object.
                PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest = await
UploadObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, base64Key);

                // Download the object and verify that its contents match what
you uploaded.
                await DownloadObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, base64Key,
putObjectRequest);

                // Get object metadata and verify that the object uses AES-256
encryption.
                await GetObjectMetadataAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
base64Key);

                // Copy both the source and target objects using server-side
encryption with
                // an encryption key.
                await CopyObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
copyTargetKeyName, aesEncryption, base64Key);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PutObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which
the
        /// object will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to upload to the Amazon
S3
        /// bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key.</param>
        /// <returns>The PutObjectRequest object for use by
DownloadObjectAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<PutObjectRequest> UploadObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
```

```
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key)
        {
            PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                ContentBody = "sample text",
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
 ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse = await
 client.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            return putObjectRequest;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Downloads an encrypted object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// GetObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object
        /// is located.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the Amazon S3 object to download.</
param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key used to encrypt the
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="putObjectRequest">The PutObjectRequest used to upload
        /// the object.</param>
        public static async Task DownloadObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key,
            PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest)
        {
            GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
```

```
                // Provide encryption information for the object stored in Amazon
S3.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            using (GetObjectResponse getResponse = await
client.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest))
            using (StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(getResponse.ResponseStream))
            {
                string content = reader.ReadToEnd();
                if (string.Compare(putObjectRequest.ContentBody, content) == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Object content is same as we uploaded");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Error...Object content is not same.");
                }

                if (getResponse.ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod ==
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Object encryption method is AES256, same
as we set");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Error...Object encryption method is not
the same as AES256 we set");
                }
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the metadata associated with an Amazon S3 object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to call GetObjectMetadataAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing
the
```

```
        /// object for which we want to retrieve metadata.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object for which we wish to
        /// retrieve the metadata.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key associated with the
        /// object.</param>
        public static async Task GetObjectMetadataAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key)
        {
            GetObjectMetadataRequest getObjectMetadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,

                // The object stored in Amazon S3 is encrypted, so provide the
necessary encryption information.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            GetObjectMetadataResponse getObjectMetadataResponse = await
client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(getObjectMetadataRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("The object metadata show encryption method used
is: {0}", getObjectMetadataResponse.ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Copies an encrypted object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// CopyObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket containing the object
        /// to copy.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to copy.</param>
        /// <param name="copyTargetKeyName">The Amazon S3 bucket to which the
object
        /// will be copied.</param>
        /// <param name="aesEncryption">The encryption type to use.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key to use.</param>
```

```
        public static async Task CopyObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string copyTargetKeyName,
            Aes aesEncryption,
            string base64Key)
        {
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
            string copyBase64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);

            CopyObjectRequest copyRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                SourceBucket = bucketName,
                SourceKey = keyName,
                DestinationBucket = bucketName,
                DestinationKey = copyTargetKeyName,

                // Information about the source object's encryption.
                CopySourceServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                CopySourceServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,

                // Information about the target object's encryption.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = copyBase64Key,
            };
            await client.CopyObjectAsync(copyRequest);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - GetObjectMetadata

Get started with tags for Amazon S3 objects using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to get started with tags for Amazon S3 objects.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to work with tags in Amazon Simple Storage
/// Service (Amazon S3) objects.
/// </summary>
public class ObjectTag
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "newobject.txt";
        string filePath = @"*** file path ***";

        // Specify your bucket region (an example region is shown).
        RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        var client = new AmazonS3Client(bucketRegion);
        await PutObjectsWithTagsAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, filePath);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method uploads an object with tags. It then shows the tag
```

```
        /// values, changes the tags, and shows the new tags.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to call the methods to create and change an objects tags.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// bucket where the object will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the key name of the
        /// object to be tagged.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The directory location and file name of the
        /// object to be uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task PutObjectsWithTagsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string keyName, string filePath)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create an object with tags.
                var putRequest = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    FilePath = filePath,
                    TagSet = new List<Tag>
                    {
                        new Tag { Key = "Keyx1", Value = "Value1" },
                        new Tag { Key = "Keyx2", Value = "Value2" },
                    },
                };

                PutObjectResponse response = await
client.PutObjectAsync(putRequest);

                // Now retrieve the new object's tags.
                GetObjectTaggingRequest getTagsRequest = new
GetObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };

                GetObjectTaggingResponse objectTags = await
client.GetObjectTaggingAsync(getTagsRequest);

                // Display the tag values.
                objectTags.Tagging
```

```
                    .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key}, Value:
{t.Value}"));

                Tagging newTagSet = new Tagging()
                {
                    TagSet = new List<Tag>
                    {
                        new Tag { Key = "Key3", Value = "Value3" },
                        new Tag { Key = "Key4", Value = "Value4" },
                    },
                };

                PutObjectTaggingRequest putObjTagsRequest = new
PutObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    Tagging = newTagSet,
                };

                PutObjectTaggingResponse response2 = await
client.PutObjectTaggingAsync(putObjTagsRequest);

                // Retrieve the tags again and show the values.
                GetObjectTaggingRequest getTagsRequest2 = new
GetObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };
                GetObjectTaggingResponse objectTags2 = await
client.GetObjectTaggingAsync(getTagsRequest2);

                objectTags2.Tagging
                    .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key}, Value:
{t.Value}"));
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Error: '{ex.Message}'");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Work with Amazon S3 object lock features using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to work with S3 object lock features.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace S3ObjectLockScenario;

public static class S3ObjectLockWorkflow
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. Create test Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) buckets with different
 lock policies.
```

```
        2. Upload sample objects to each bucket.
        3. Set some Legal Hold and Retention Periods on objects and buckets.
        4. Investigate lock policies by viewing settings or attempting to delete
or overwrite objects.
        5. Clean up objects and buckets.
  */

   public static S3ActionsWrapper _s3ActionsWrapper = null!;
   public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
   private static string _resourcePrefix = null!;
   private static string noLockBucketName = null!;
   private static string lockEnabledBucketName = null!;
   private static string retentionAfterCreationBucketName = null!;
   private static List<string> bucketNames = new List<string>();
   private static List<string> fileNames = new List<string>();

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                   .AddTransient<S3ActionsWrapper>()
           )
           .Build();

       _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
           .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
           .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
           .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
               true) // Optionally, load local settings.
           .Build();

       ConfigurationSetup();

       ServicesSetup(host);

       try
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
Object Locking Feature Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Setup(true);

            await DemoActionChoices();

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon S3 Object Locking Scenario is complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem: {ex.Message}");
            await Cleanup(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _s3ActionsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3ActionsWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Any setup operations needed.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ConfigurationSetup()
    {
        _resourcePrefix = _configuration["resourcePrefix"] ?? "dotnet-example";

        noLockBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-no-lock";
```

```
        lockEnabledBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-lock-enabled";
        retentionAfterCreationBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-retention-after-
creation";

        bucketNames.Add(noLockBucketName);
        bucketNames.Add(lockEnabledBucketName);
        bucketNames.Add(retentionAfterCreationBucketName);
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Setup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this scenario, we will use the AWS SDK for .NET to create
 several S3\n" +
            "buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking features.
\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you are ready to start.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nS3 buckets can be created either with or without
 object lock enabled.");
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(noLockBucketName,
 false);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(lockEnabledBucketName,
 true);
        await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(retentionAfterCreationBucketName,
 false);

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking
 with a default retention period.");
```

```
        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(retentionAfterCreationBucketName,
true,
            ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance, DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(1));

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nObject lock policies can also be added to existing
buckets.");
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.EnableObjectLockOnBucket(lockEnabledBucketName);

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Upload some files to the buckets.
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow let's add some test files:");
        var fileName = _configuration["exampleFileName"] ?? "exampleFile.txt";
        int fileCount = 2;
        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");
        }

        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileCount; i++)
            {
                var numberedFileName = Path.GetFileNameWithoutExtension(fileName)
+ i + Path.GetExtension(fileName);
                fileNames.Add(numberedFileName);
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.UploadFileAsync(bucketName,
numberedFileName, fileName);
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
```

```
        if (!interactive)
            return true;
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow we can set some object lock policies on
individual files:");
        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileNames.Count; i++)
            {
                // No modifications to the objects in the first bucket.
                if (bucketName != bucketNames[0])
                {
                    var exampleFileName = fileNames[i];
                    switch (i)
                    {
                        case 0:
                            {
                                var question =
                                    $"\nWould you like to add a legal hold to
{exampleFileName} in {bucketName}? (y/n)";
                                if (GetYesNoResponse(question))
                                {
                                    // Set a legal hold.
                                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName, exampleFileName,
ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.On);

                                }
                                break;
                            }
                        case 1:
                            {
                                var question =
                                    $"\nWould you like to add a 1 day Governance
retention period to {exampleFileName} in {bucketName}? (y/n)" +
                                    "\nReminder: Only a user with the
s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able to delete this file or its
bucket until the retention period has expired.";
                                if (GetYesNoResponse(question))
                                {
                                    // Set a Governance mode retention period for
1 day.
                                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(
                                        bucketName, exampleFileName,
```

```
                                        ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance,
                                        DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(1));
                                }
                                break;
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return true;
        }

        // <summary>
        /// List all of the current buckets and objects.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
        /// <returns>The list of buckets and objects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<S3ObjectVersion>> ListBucketsAndObjects(bool
interactive)
        {
            var allObjects = new List<S3ObjectVersion>();
            foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
            {
                var objectsInBucket = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketObjectsAndVersions(bucketName);
                foreach (var objectKey in objectsInBucket.Versions)
                {
                    allObjects.Add(objectKey);
                }
            }

            if (interactive)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nCurrent buckets and objects:\n");
                int i = 0;
                foreach (var bucketObject in allObjects)
                {
                    i++;
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"{i}: {bucketObject.Key} \n\tBucket:
{bucketObject.BucketName}\n\tVersion: {bucketObject.VersionId}");
                }
            }
```

```
        return allObjects;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Present the user with the demo action choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DemoActionChoices()
    {
        var choices = new string[]{
            "List all files in buckets.",
            "Attempt to delete a file.",
            "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
            "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
            "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
            "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
            "Finish the scenario."};

        var choice = 0;
        // Keep asking the user until they choose to move on.
        while (choice != 6)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            choice = GetChoiceResponse(
                "\nExplore the S3 locking features by selecting one of the
following choices:"
                , choices);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            switch (choice)
            {
                case 0:
                    {
                        await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        break;
                    }
                case 1:
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
delete:");
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null,
allFiles.Select(f => f.Key).ToArray());
```

```
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, false, allFiles[fileChoice].VersionId);
                        break;
                    }
                case 2:
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
delete:");
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null,
allFiles.Select(f => f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, true, allFiles[fileChoice].VersionId);
                        break;
                    }
                case 3:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null,
allFiles.Select(f => f.Key).ToArray());
                        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
                        if (!File.Exists(allFiles[fileChoice].Key))
                        {
                            await using StreamWriter sw =
File.CreateText(allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                                "This is a sample file for uploading to a
bucket.");
                        }
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.UploadFileAsync(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        break;
                    }
                case 4:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object and
bucket to view:");
```

```
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null,
allFiles.Select(f => f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectRetention(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName);
                        break;
                    }
                case 5:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
view:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null,
allFiles.Select(f => f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectLegalHold(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        break;
                    }
            }
        }
        return true;
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all files
and buckets? (y/n) "))
        {
            // Remove all locks and delete all buckets and objects.
            var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(false);
            foreach (var fileInfo in allFiles)
            {
                // Check for a legal hold.
```

```
                var legalHold = await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectLegalHold(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
                if (legalHold?.Status?.Value == ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.On)
                {
                    await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectLegalHold(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key,
 ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.Off);
                }

                // Check for a retention period.
                var retention = await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectRetention(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
                var hasRetentionPeriod = retention?.Mode ==
 ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance && retention.RetainUntilDate >
 DateTime.UtcNow.Date;
                await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key,
 hasRetentionPeriod, fileInfo.VersionId);
            }

            foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
            {
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteBucketByName(bucketName);
            }

        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
 might incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
 param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a choice response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <param name="choices">The choices to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>The index of the selected choice</returns>
    private static int GetChoiceResponse(string? question, string[] choices)
    {
        if (question != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);

            for (int i = 0; i < choices.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {choices[i]}");
            }
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.Length)
        {
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace S3ObjectLockScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Encapsulate the Amazon S3 operations.
/// </summary>
public class S3ActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonS3 _amazonS3;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3ActionsWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonS3">The injected S3 client.</param>
    public S3ActionsWrapper(IAmazonS3 amazonS3, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonS3 = amazonS3;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <param name="enableObjectLock">True to enable object lock on the
 bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithObjectLock(string bucketName, bool
 enableObjectLock)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName} with object lock
 {enableObjectLock}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true,
                ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = enableObjectLock,
```

```
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableObjectLockOnBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled("Enabled"),
                },
            };
```

```
            var response = await
_amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded an object lock policy to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date retention expires.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime
retainUntilDate)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Retention = new ObjectLockRetention()
                {
                    Mode = retention,
                    RetainUntilDate = retainUntilDate
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSet retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}
until {retainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying retention period:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date for retention until.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime retainUntilDate)
    {
        var enabledString = enableObjectLock ? "Enabled" : "Disabled";
        var timeDifference = retainUntilDate.Subtract(DateTime.Now);
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled(enabledString),
                    Rule = new ObjectLockRule()
                    {
                        DefaultRetention = new DefaultRetention()
                        {
                            Mode = retention,
```

```
                            Days = timeDifference.Days // Can be specified in
days or years but not both.
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await
_amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded a default retention to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object retention details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockRetention> GetObjectRetention(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject retention for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}: " +
                                $"\n\t{response.Retention.Mode} until
{response.Retention.RetainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.Retention;
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock retention:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockRetention();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="holdStatus">The On or Off status for the legal hold.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus holdStatus)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                LegalHold = new ObjectLockLegalHold()
                {
                    Status = holdStatus
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tModified legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object legal hold details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockLegalHold> GetObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}: " +
                              $"\n\tStatus: {response.LegalHold.Status}");
            return response.LegalHold;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockLegalHold();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to get details.</param>
    /// <returns>The bucket's object lock configuration details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockConfiguration>
GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            };
```

```
            var response = await
_amazonS3.GetObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket object lock config for {bucketName} in
{bucketName}: " +
                                $"\n\tEnabled:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled}" +
                                $"\n\tRule:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.Rule?.DefaultRetention}");

            return response.ObjectLockConfiguration;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock config:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockConfiguration();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Upload a file from the local computer to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectName">The object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="filePath">The path, including file name, of the object to
upload.</param>
    /// <returns>True if success.<returns>
    public async Task<bool> UploadFileAsync(string bucketName, string objectName,
string filePath)
    {
        var request = new PutObjectRequest
        {
            BucketName = bucketName,
            Key = objectName,
            FilePath = filePath,
            ChecksumAlgorithm = ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256
        };

        var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(request);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSuccessfully uploaded {objectName} to
{bucketName}.");
            return true;
```

```
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCould not upload {objectName} to
 {bucketName}.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List bucket objects and versions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of objects and versions.</returns>
    public async Task<ListVersionsResponse> ListBucketObjectsAndVersions(string
 bucketName)
    {
        var request = new ListVersionsRequest()
        {
            BucketName = bucketName
        };

        var response = await _amazonS3.ListVersionsAsync(request);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="hasRetention">True if the object has retention settings.</
param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteObjectFromBucket(string bucketName, string
 objectKey, bool hasRetention, string? versionId = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
```

```
                VersionId = versionId,
            };
            if (hasRetention)
            {
                // Set the BypassGovernanceRetention header
                // if the file has retention settings.
                request.BypassGovernanceRetention = true;
            }
            await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Deleted {objectKey} in {bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete object {objectKey} in bucket
{bucketName}: " + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteBucketRequest() { BucketName = bucketName, };
            var response = await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDelete for {bucketName} complete.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete bucket {bucketName}: " +
ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "s3_object_lock/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
```

```
)

// ObjectLockScenario contains the steps to run the S3 Object Lock workflow.
type ObjectLockScenario struct {
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 resources  Resources
 s3Actions  *actions.S3Actions
 sdkConfig  aws.Config
}

// NewObjectLockScenario constructs a new ObjectLockScenario instance.
func NewObjectLockScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) ObjectLockScenario {
 scenario := ObjectLockScenario{
  questioner: questioner,
  resources:  Resources{},
  s3Actions:  &actions.S3Actions{S3Client: s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  sdkConfig:  sdkConfig,
 }
 scenario.s3Actions.S3Manager = manager.NewUploader(scenario.s3Actions.S3Client)
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.s3Actions, questioner)
 return scenario
}

type nameLocked struct {
 name   string
 locked bool
}

var createInfo = []nameLocked{
 {"standard-bucket", false},
 {"lock-bucket", true},
 {"retention-bucket", false},
}

// CreateBuckets creates the S3 buckets required for the workflow.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) CreateBuckets(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("Let's create some S3 buckets to use for this workflow.")
 success := false
 for !success {
  prefix := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "This example creates three buckets. Enter a prefix to name your buckets
 (remember bucket names must be globally unique):")
```

```
  for _, info := range createInfo {
   log.Println(fmt.Sprintf("%s.%s", prefix, info.name))
   bucketName, err := scenario.s3Actions.CreateBucketWithLock(ctx,
 fmt.Sprintf("%s.%s", prefix, info.name), scenario.sdkConfig.Region, info.locked)
   if err != nil {
    switch err.(type) {
    case *types.BucketAlreadyExists, *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou:
     log.Printf("Couldn't create bucket %s.\n", bucketName)
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
    break
   }
   scenario.resources.demoBuckets[info.name] = &DemoBucket{
    name:       bucketName,
    objectKeys: []string{},
   }
   log.Printf("Created bucket %s.\n", bucketName)
  }

  if len(scenario.resources.demoBuckets) < len(createInfo) {
   scenario.resources.deleteBuckets(ctx)
  } else {
   success = true
  }
 }

 log.Println("S3 buckets created.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// EnableLockOnBucket enables object locking on an existing bucket.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) EnableLockOnBucket(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to continue.")

 var err error
 bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets["retention-bucket"]
 err = scenario.s3Actions.EnableObjectLockOnBucket(ctx, bucket.name)
 if err != nil {
  switch err.(type) {
  case *types.NoSuchBucket:
   log.Printf("Couldn't enable object locking on bucket %s.\n", bucket.name)
  default:
```

```
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Printf("Object locking enabled on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
  }

  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SetDefaultRetentionPolicy sets a default retention governance policy on a
 bucket.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) SetDefaultRetentionPolicy(ctx
 context.Context) {
 log.Println("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking with a default
 retention period.")

 bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets["retention-bucket"]
 retentionPeriod := scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter the default retention
 period in days: ")
 err := scenario.s3Actions.ModifyDefaultBucketRetention(ctx,
 bucket.name, types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled, int32(retentionPeriod),
 types.ObjectLockRetentionModeGovernance)
 if err != nil {
  switch err.(type) {
  case *types.NoSuchBucket:
   log.Printf("Couldn't configure a default retention period on bucket %s.\n",
 bucket.name)
  default:
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("Default retention policy set on bucket %s with %d day retention
 period.", bucket.name, retentionPeriod)
  bucket.retentionEnabled = true
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// UploadTestObjects uploads test objects to the S3 buckets.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) UploadTestObjects(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("Uploading test objects to S3 buckets.")

 for _, info := range createInfo {
```

```
  bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  for i := 0; i < 2; i++ {
   key, err := scenario.s3Actions.UploadObject(ctx, bucket.name,
 fmt.Sprintf("example-%d", i),
    fmt.Sprintf("Example object content #%d in bucket %s.", i, bucket.name))
   if err != nil {
    switch err.(type) {
    case *types.NoSuchBucket:
     log.Printf("Couldn't upload %s to bucket %s.\n", key, bucket.name)
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
   } else {
    log.Printf("Uploaded %s to bucket %s.\n", key, bucket.name)
    bucket.objectKeys = append(bucket.objectKeys, key)
   }
  }
 }

 scenario.questioner.Ask("Test objects uploaded. Press Enter to continue.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SetObjectLockConfigurations sets object lock configurations on the test
 objects.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) SetObjectLockConfigurations(ctx
 context.Context) {
 log.Println("Now let's set object lock configurations on individual objects.")

 buckets := []*DemoBucket{scenario.resources.demoBuckets["lock-bucket"],
 scenario.resources.demoBuckets["retention-bucket"]}
 for _, bucket := range buckets {
  for index, objKey := range bucket.objectKeys {
   switch index {
   case 0:
    if scenario.questioner.AskBool(fmt.Sprintf("\nDo you want to add a legal hold
 to %s in %s (y/n)? ", objKey, bucket.name), "y") {
     err := scenario.s3Actions.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, bucket.name, objKey, "",
 types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatusOn)
     if err != nil {
      switch err.(type) {
      case *types.NoSuchKey:
       log.Printf("Couldn't set legal hold on %s.\n", objKey)
      default:
```

```
        panic(err)
       }
      } else {
       log.Printf("Legal hold set on %s.\n", objKey)
      }
     }
    case 1:
     q := fmt.Sprintf("\nDo you want to add a 1 day Governance retention period to
 %s in %s?\n"+
      "Reminder: Only a user with the s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission is
 able to delete this object\n"+
      "or its bucket until the retention period has expired. (y/n) ", objKey,
 bucket.name)
     if scenario.questioner.AskBool(q, "y") {
      err := scenario.s3Actions.PutObjectRetention(ctx, bucket.name, objKey,
 types.ObjectLockRetentionModeGovernance, 1)
      if err != nil {
       switch err.(type) {
       case *types.NoSuchKey:
        log.Printf("Couldn't set retention period on %s in %s.\n", objKey,
 bucket.name)
       default:
        panic(err)
       }
      } else {
       log.Printf("Retention period set to 1 for %s.", objKey)
       bucket.retentionEnabled = true
      }
     }
    }
   }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

const (
 ListAll = iota
 DeleteObject
 DeleteRetentionObject
 OverwriteObject
 ViewRetention
 ViewLegalHold
 Finish
)
```

```
// InteractWithObjects allows the user to interact with the objects and test the
 object lock configurations.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) InteractWithObjects(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("Now you can interact with the objects to explore the object lock
 configurations.")
 interactiveChoices := []string{
  "List all objects and buckets.",
  "Attempt to delete an object.",
  "Attempt to delete an object with retention period bypass.",
  "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
  "View the retention settings for an object.",
  "View the legal hold settings for an object.",
  "Finish the workflow."}

 choice := ListAll
 for choice != Finish {
  objList := scenario.GetAllObjects(ctx)
  objChoices := scenario.makeObjectChoiceList(objList)
  choice = scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Choose an action from the menu:\n",
 interactiveChoices)
  switch choice {
  case ListAll:
   log.Println("The current objects in the example buckets are:")
   for _, objChoice := range objChoices {
    log.Println("\t", objChoice)
   }
  case DeleteObject, DeleteRetentionObject:
   objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
 delete:\n", objChoices)
   obj := objList[objChoice]
   deleted, err := scenario.s3Actions.DeleteObject(ctx, obj.bucket, obj.key,
 obj.versionId, choice == DeleteRetentionObject)
   if err != nil {
    switch err.(type) {
    case *types.NoSuchKey:
     log.Println("Nothing to delete.")
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
   } else if deleted {
    log.Printf("Object %s deleted.\n", obj.key)
   }
  case OverwriteObject:
```

```
  objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
overwrite:\n", objChoices)
  obj := objList[objChoice]
  _, err := scenario.s3Actions.UploadObject(ctx, obj.bucket, obj.key,
fmt.Sprintf("New content in object %s.", obj.key))
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchBucket:
    log.Println("Couldn't upload to nonexistent bucket.")
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Printf("Uploaded new content to object %s.\n", obj.key)
  }
 case ViewRetention:
  objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
view:\n", objChoices)
  obj := objList[objChoice]
  retention, err := scenario.s3Actions.GetObjectRetention(ctx, obj.bucket,
obj.key)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchKey:
    log.Printf("Can't get retention configuration for %s.\n", obj.key)
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else if retention != nil {
   log.Printf("Object %s has retention mode %s until %v.\n", obj.key,
retention.Mode, retention.RetainUntilDate)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not have object retention configured.\n", obj.key)
  }
 case ViewLegalHold:
  objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
view:\n", objChoices)
  obj := objList[objChoice]
  legalHold, err := scenario.s3Actions.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, obj.bucket,
obj.key, obj.versionId)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchKey:
    log.Printf("Can't get legal hold configuration for %s.\n", obj.key)
```

```
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
   } else if legalHold != nil {
    log.Printf("Object %s has legal hold %v.", obj.key, *legalHold)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Object %s does not have legal hold configured.", obj.key)
   }
  case Finish:
   log.Println("Let's clean up.")
  }
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }
}

type BucketKeyVersionId struct {
 bucket    string
 key       string
 versionId string
}

// GetAllObjects gets the object versions in the example S3 buckets and returns
 them in a flattened list.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) GetAllObjects(ctx context.Context)
 []BucketKeyVersionId {
 var objectList []BucketKeyVersionId
 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  versions, err := scenario.s3Actions.ListObjectVersions(ctx, bucket.name)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchBucket:
    log.Printf("Couldn't get object versions for %s.\n", bucket.name)
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   for _, version := range versions {
    objectList = append(objectList,
     BucketKeyVersionId{bucket: bucket.name, key: *version.Key, versionId:
 *version.VersionId})
   }
  }
 }
```

```
 return objectList
}

// makeObjectChoiceList makes the object version list into a list of strings that
 are displayed
// as choices.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) makeObjectChoiceList(bucketObjects
 []BucketKeyVersionId) []string {
 choices := make([]string, len(bucketObjects))
 for i := 0; i < len(bucketObjects); i++ {
  choices[i] = fmt.Sprintf("%s in %s with VersionId %s.",
   bucketObjects[i].key, bucketObjects[i].bucket, bucketObjects[i].versionId)
 }
 return choices
}

// Run runs the S3 Object Lock scenario.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := scenario.questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || scenario.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error
 message (y/n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
   scenario.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Object Lock Feature Scenario.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 scenario.CreateBuckets(ctx)
 scenario.EnableLockOnBucket(ctx)
 scenario.SetDefaultRetentionPolicy(ctx)
 scenario.UploadTestObjects(ctx)
 scenario.SetObjectLockConfigurations(ctx)
 scenario.InteractWithObjects(ctx)

 scenario.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a struct that wraps S3 actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// CreateBucketWithLock creates a new S3 bucket with optional object locking
 enabled
// and waits for the bucket to exist before returning.
func (actor S3Actions) CreateBucketWithLock(ctx context.Context, bucket string,
 region string, enableObjectLock bool) (string, error) {
 input := &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 }
```

```
 if enableObjectLock {
  input.ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = aws.Bool(true)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", bucket)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", bucket)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", bucket)
  }
 }

 return bucket, err
}



// GetObjectLegalHold retrieves the legal hold status for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string) (*types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus, error) {
 var status *types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus
 input := &s3.GetObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket:    aws.String(bucket),
  Key:       aws.String(key),
  VersionId: aws.String(versionId),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noSuchKeyErr *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noSuchKeyErr) {
```

```
    log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = noSuchKeyErr
   } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
    switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
    case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
     log.Printf("Object %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", key)
     err = nil
    case "InvalidRequest":
     log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
     err = nil
    }
   }
  } else {
   status = &output.LegalHold.Status
  }

  return status, err
}



// GetObjectLockConfiguration retrieves the object lock configuration for an S3
 bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx context.Context, bucket
 string) (*types.ObjectLockConfiguration, error) {
 var lockConfig *types.ObjectLockConfiguration
 input := &s3.GetObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() ==
 "ObjectLockConfigurationNotFoundError" {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
   err = nil
  }
 } else {
  lockConfig = output.ObjectLockConfiguration
```

```
 }

 return lockConfig, err
}



// GetObjectRetention retrieves the object retention configuration for an S3
 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string) (*types.ObjectLockRetention, error) {
 var retention *types.ObjectLockRetention
 input := &s3.GetObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
    err = nil
   case "InvalidRequest":
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have locking enabled.", bucket)
    err = nil
   }
  }
 } else {
  retention = output.Retention
 }

 return retention, err
}



// PutObjectLegalHold sets the legal hold configuration for an S3 object.
```

```
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string, legalHoldStatus types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus) error
 {
 input := &s3.PutObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  LegalHold: &types.ObjectLockLegalHold{
   Status: legalHoldStatus,
  },
 }
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  }
 }

 return err
}



// ModifyDefaultBucketRetention modifies the default retention period of an
 existing bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ModifyDefaultBucketRetention(
 ctx context.Context, bucket string, lockMode types.ObjectLockEnabled,
 retentionPeriod int32, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode) error {

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: lockMode,
   Rule: &types.ObjectLockRule{
    DefaultRetention: &types.DefaultRetention{
     Days: aws.Int32(retentionPeriod),
     Mode: retentionMode,
    },
   },
```

```
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}



// EnableObjectLockOnBucket enables object locking on an existing bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) EnableObjectLockOnBucket(ctx context.Context, bucket
 string) error {
 // Versioning must be enabled on the bucket before object locking is enabled.
 verInput := &s3.PutBucketVersioningInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  VersioningConfiguration: &types.VersioningConfiguration{
   MFADelete: types.MFADeleteDisabled,
   Status:    types.BucketVersioningStatusEnabled,
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutBucketVersioning(ctx, verInput)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
  return err
 }

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled,
  },
 }
 _, err = actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}



// PutObjectRetention sets the object retention configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode, retentionPeriodDays int32)
 error {
 input := &s3.PutObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  Retention: &types.ObjectLockRetention{
   Mode:            retentionMode,
   RetainUntilDate: aws.Time(time.Now().AddDate(0, 0, int(retentionPeriodDays))),
  },
  BypassGovernanceRetention: aws.Bool(true),
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  }
 }

 return err
}



// UploadObject uses the S3 upload manager to upload an object to a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) UploadObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, contents string) (string, error) {
```

```
 var outKey string
 input := &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket:            aws.String(bucket),
  Key:               aws.String(key),
  Body:              bytes.NewReader([]byte(contents)),
  ChecksumAlgorithm: types.ChecksumAlgorithmSha256,
 }
 output, err := actor.S3Manager.Upload(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 } else {
  err := s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
   Key:    aws.String(key),
  }, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist in %s.\n", key,
 bucket)
  } else {
   outKey = *output.Key
  }
 }
 return outKey, err
}



// ListObjectVersions lists all versions of all objects in a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ListObjectVersions(ctx context.Context, bucket string)
 ([]types.ObjectVersion, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectVersionsOutput
 var versions []types.ObjectVersion
 input := &s3.ListObjectVersionsInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}
 versionPaginator := s3.NewListObjectVersionsPaginator(actor.S3Client, input)
 for versionPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = versionPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
```

```
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
   versions = append(versions, output.Versions...)
  }
 }
 return versions, err
}



// DeleteObject deletes an object from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string, bypassGovernance bool) (bool, error) {
 deleted := false
 input := &s3.DeleteObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObject(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "AccessDenied":
    log.Printf("Access denied: cannot delete object %s from %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidArgument":
    if bypassGovernance {
     log.Printf("You cannot specify bypass governance on a bucket without lock
 enabled.")
     err = nil
```

```
    }
   }
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: aws.String(key)},
 time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s in bucket %s to be deleted.
\n", key, bucket)
  } else {
   deleted = true
  }
 }
 return deleted, err
}



// DeleteObjects deletes a list of objects from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucket string, objects
 []types.ObjectIdentifier, bypassGovernance bool) error {
 if len(objects) == 0 {
  return nil
 }

 input := s3.DeleteObjectsInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Delete: &types.Delete{
   Objects: objects,
   Quiet:   aws.Bool(true),
  },
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 delOut, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObjects(ctx, &input)
 if err != nil || len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
  log.Printf("Error deleting objects from bucket %s.\n", bucket)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
```

```
    }
   } else if len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
    for _, outErr := range delOut.Errors {
     log.Printf("%s: %s\n", *outErr.Key, *outErr.Message)
    }
    err = fmt.Errorf("%s", *delOut.Errors[0].Message)
   }
  } else {
   for _, delObjs := range delOut.Deleted {
    err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
     ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: delObjs.Key},
  time.Minute)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to be deleted.\n",
  *delObjs.Key)
    } else {
     log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", *delObjs.Key)
    }
   }
  }
  return err
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "s3_object_lock/actions"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// DemoBucket contains metadata for buckets used in this example.
type DemoBucket struct {
```

```
 name             string
 retentionEnabled bool
 objectKeys       []string
}

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during the ObjectLockScenario
 and handles
// cleanup when the scenario finishes.
type Resources struct {
 demoBuckets map[string]*DemoBucket

 s3Actions  *actions.S3Actions
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
}

// init initializes objects in the Resources struct.
func (resources *Resources) init(s3Actions *actions.S3Actions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.s3Actions = s3Actions
 resources.questioner = questioner
 resources.demoBuckets = map[string]*DemoBucket{}
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during the ObjectLockScenario.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources
 " +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if !wantDelete {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
  return
 }

 log.Println("Removing objects from S3 buckets and deleting buckets...")
```

```
 resources.deleteBuckets(ctx)
 //resources.deleteRetentionObjects(resources.retentionBucket,
 resources.retentionObjects)

 log.Println("Cleanup complete.")
}

// deleteBuckets empties and then deletes all buckets created during the
 ObjectLockScenario.
func (resources *Resources) deleteBuckets(ctx context.Context) {
 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  resources.deleteObjects(ctx, bucket)
  _, err := resources.s3Actions.S3Client.DeleteBucket(ctx, &s3.DeleteBucketInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucket.name),
  })
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  err := s3.NewBucketNotExistsWaiter(resources.s3Actions.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket.name)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to be deleted.\n",
 bucket.name)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", bucket.name)
  }
 }
 resources.demoBuckets = map[string]*DemoBucket{}
}

// deleteObjects deletes all objects in the specified bucket.
func (resources *Resources) deleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucket
 *DemoBucket) {
 lockConfig, err := resources.s3Actions.GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx,
 bucket.name)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 versions, err := resources.s3Actions.ListObjectVersions(ctx, bucket.name)
 if err != nil {
```

```
 switch err.(type) {
 case *types.NoSuchBucket:
  log.Printf("No objects to get from %s.\n", bucket.name)
 default:
  panic(err)
 }
}
delObjects := make([]types.ObjectIdentifier, len(versions))
for i, version := range versions {
 if lockConfig != nil && lockConfig.ObjectLockEnabled ==
types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled {
  status, err := resources.s3Actions.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, bucket.name,
*version.Key, *version.VersionId)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchKey:
    log.Printf("Couldn't determine legal hold status for %s in %s.\n",
*version.Key, bucket.name)
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else if status != nil && *status == types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatusOn {
   err = resources.s3Actions.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, bucket.name, *version.Key,
*version.VersionId, types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatusOff)
   if err != nil {
    switch err.(type) {
    case *types.NoSuchKey:
     log.Printf("Couldn't turn off legal hold for %s in %s.\n", *version.Key,
bucket.name)
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
   }
  }
 }
 delObjects[i] = types.ObjectIdentifier{Key: version.Key, VersionId:
version.VersionId}
}
err = resources.s3Actions.DeleteObjects(ctx, bucket.name, delObjects,
bucket.retentionEnabled)
if err != nil {
 switch err.(type) {
 case *types.NoSuchBucket:
  log.Println("Nothing to delete.")
```

```
  default:
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockLegalHold;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetention;
import java.io.BufferedWriter;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

/*
 Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
```

```
 environment, including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Java example performs the following tasks:
    1. Create test Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) buckets with different lock
 policies.
    2. Upload sample objects to each bucket.
    3. Set some Legal Hold and Retention Periods on objects and buckets.
    4. Investigate lock policies by viewing settings or attempting to delete or
 overwrite objects.
    5. Clean up objects and buckets.
 */
public class S3ObjectLockWorkflow {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    static String bucketName;
    static S3LockActions s3LockActions;
    private static final List<String> bucketNames = new ArrayList<>();
    private static final List<String> fileNames = new ArrayList<>();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:
                <bucketName> \s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.
           """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
        s3LockActions = new S3LockActions();
        bucketName = args[0];
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
 Object Locking Feature Scenario.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
```

```
        scanner.nextLine();
        configurationSetup();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        setup();
        System.out.println("Setup is complete. Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Lets present the user with choices.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        demoActionChoices() ;
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Would you like to clean up the resources? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            cleanup();
            System.out.println("Clean up is complete.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Amazon S3 Object Locking Workflow is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Present the user with the demo action choices.
    public static void demoActionChoices() {
        String[] choices = {
            "List all files in buckets.",
            "Attempt to delete a file.",
            "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
            "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
            "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
            "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
            "Finish the workflow."
```

```
        };

        int choice = 0;
        while (true) {
            System.out.println(DASHES);
            choice = getChoiceResponse("Explore the S3 locking features by
selecting one of the following choices:", choices);
            System.out.println(DASHES);
            System.out.println("You selected "+choices[choice]);
            switch (choice) {
                case 0 -> {
                    s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                }

                case 1 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
delete:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    String version = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getVersion();
                    s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, objectKey,
false, version);
                }

                case 2 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
delete:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    String version = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getVersion();
                    s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, objectKey,
true, version);
```

```
                }

                case 3 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();

                    // Attempt to overwrite the file.
                    try (BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
java.io.FileWriter(objectKey))) {
                        writer.write("This is a modified text.");

                    } catch (IOException e) {
                        e.printStackTrace();
                    }
                    s3LockActions.uploadFile(bucketName, objectKey, objectKey);
                }

                case 4 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    s3LockActions.getObjectRetention(bucketName, objectKey);
                }

                case 5 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
view:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
```

```
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    s3LockActions.getObjectLegalHold(bucketName, objectKey);
                    s3LockActions.getBucketObjectLockConfiguration(bucketName);
                }

                case 6 -> {
                    System.out.println("Exiting the workflow...");
                    return;
                }

                default -> {
                    System.out.println("Invalid choice. Please select again.");
                }
            }
        }
    }

    // Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    private static void cleanup() {
        List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, false);
        for (S3InfoObject fileInfo : allFiles) {
            String bucketName = fileInfo.getBucketName();
            String key = fileInfo.getKeyName();
            String version = fileInfo.getVersion();
            if (bucketName.contains("lock-enabled") ||
(bucketName.contains("retention-after-creation"))) {
                ObjectLockLegalHold legalHold =
s3LockActions.getObjectLegalHold(bucketName, key);
                if (legalHold != null) {
                    String holdStatus = legalHold.status().name();
                    System.out.println(holdStatus);
                    if (holdStatus.compareTo("ON") == 0) {
                        s3LockActions.modifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName, key,
false);
                    }
                }
                // Check for a retention period.
```

```
                ObjectLockRetention retention =
s3LockActions.getObjectRetention(bucketName, key);
                boolean hasRetentionPeriod ;
                hasRetentionPeriod = retention != null;
                s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName,
key,hasRetentionPeriod, version);

            } else {
                System.out.println(bucketName +" objects do not have a legal
lock");
                s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, key,false,
version);
            }
        }

        // Delete the buckets.
        System.out.println("Delete "+bucketName);
        for (String bucket : bucketNames){
            s3LockActions.deleteBucketByName(bucket);
        }
    }

    private static void setup() {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
                For this workflow, we will use the AWS SDK for Java to create
several S3
                buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking
features.
                """);

        System.out.println("S3 buckets can be created either with or without
object lock enabled.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();

        // Create three S3 buckets.
        s3LockActions.createBucketWithLockOptions(false, bucketNames.get(0));
        s3LockActions.createBucketWithLockOptions(true, bucketNames.get(1));
        s3LockActions.createBucketWithLockOptions(false, bucketNames.get(2));
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        scanner.nextLine();
```

```
        System.out.println("Bucket "+bucketNames.get(2) +" will be configured to
use object locking with a default retention period.");
        s3LockActions.modifyBucketDefaultRetention(bucketNames.get(2));
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        scanner.nextLine();

        System.out.println("Object lock policies can also be added to existing
buckets. For this example, we will use "+bucketNames.get(1));
        s3LockActions.enableObjectLockOnBucket(bucketNames.get(1));
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        scanner.nextLine();

        // Upload some files to the buckets.
        System.out.println("Now let's add some test files:");
        String fileName = "exampleFile.txt";
        int fileCount = 2;
        try (BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
java.io.FileWriter(fileName))) {
            writer.write("This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");

        } catch (IOException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }

        for (String bucketName : bucketNames){
            for (int i = 0; i < fileCount; i++) {
                // Get the file name without extension.
                String fileNameWithoutExtension =
java.nio.file.Paths.get(fileName).getFileName().toString();
                int extensionIndex = fileNameWithoutExtension.lastIndexOf('.');
                if (extensionIndex > 0) {
                    fileNameWithoutExtension =
fileNameWithoutExtension.substring(0, extensionIndex);
                }

                // Create the numbered file names.
                String numberedFileName = fileNameWithoutExtension + i +
getFileExtension(fileName);
                fileNames.add(numberedFileName);
                s3LockActions.uploadFile(bucketName, numberedFileName, fileName);
            }
        }

        String question = null;
```

```
        System.out.print("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Now we can set some object lock policies on
individual files:");
        for (String bucketName : bucketNames) {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileNames.size(); i++){

                // No modifications to the objects in the first bucket.
                if (!bucketName.equals(bucketNames.get(0))) {
                    String exampleFileName = fileNames.get(i);
                    switch (i) {
                        case 0 -> {
                            question = "Would you like to add a legal hold to " +
exampleFileName + " in " + bucketName + " (y/n)?";
                            System.out.println(question);
                            String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                            if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
                                System.out.println("**** You have selected to put
a legal hold " + exampleFileName);

                                // Set a legal hold.
                                s3LockActions.modifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName,
exampleFileName, true);
                            }
                        }
                        case 1 -> {
                            """
                                Would you like to add a 1 day Governance
retention period to %s in %s (y/n)?
                                Reminder: Only a user with the
s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able to delete this file or its
bucket until the retention period has expired.
                                """.formatted(exampleFileName, bucketName);
                            System.out.println(question);
                            String ans2 = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                            if (ans2.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {

s3LockActions.modifyObjectRetentionPeriod(bucketName, exampleFileName);
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }
```

```
    }

    // Get file extension.
    private static String getFileExtension(String fileName) {
        int dotIndex = fileName.lastIndexOf('.');
        if (dotIndex > 0) {
            return fileName.substring(dotIndex);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void configurationSetup() {
        String noLockBucketName = bucketName + "-no-lock";
        String lockEnabledBucketName = bucketName + "-lock-enabled";
        String retentionAfterCreationBucketName = bucketName + "-retention-after-
creation";
        bucketNames.add(noLockBucketName);
        bucketNames.add(lockEnabledBucketName);
        bucketNames.add(retentionAfterCreationBucketName);
    }

    public static int getChoiceResponse(String question, String[] choices) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        if (question != null) {
            System.out.println(question);
            for (int i = 0; i < choices.length; i++) {
                System.out.println("\t" + (i + 1) + ". " + choices[i]);
            }
        }

        int choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.length) {
            String choice = scanner.nextLine();
            try {
                choiceNumber = Integer.parseInt(choice);
            } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid choice. Please enter a valid
 number.");
            }
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketVersioningStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ChecksumAlgorithm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DefaultRetention;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLegalHoldRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLegalHoldResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLockConfigurationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRetentionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRetentionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MFADelete;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockEnabled;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockLegalHold;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetention;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetentionMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketVersioningRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectLegalHoldRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRetentionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.VersioningConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
```

```
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.ZoneId;
import java.time.ZonedDateTime;
import java.time.format.DateTimeFormatter;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicInteger;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

// Contains application logic for the Amazon S3 operations used in this workflow.
public class S3LockActions {

    private static S3Client getClient() {
        return S3Client.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();
    }

    // Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyObjectRetentionPeriod(String bucketName, String objectKey)
 {
        // Calculate the instant one day from now.
        Instant futureInstant = Instant.now().plus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

        // Convert the Instant to a ZonedDateTime object with a specific time
 zone.
        ZonedDateTime zonedDateTime =
 futureInstant.atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

        // Define a formatter for human-readable output.
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-dd
 HH:mm:ss");

        // Format the ZonedDateTime object to a human-readable date string.
        String humanReadableDate = formatter.format(zonedDateTime);

        // Print the formatted date string.
        System.out.println("Formatted Date: " + humanReadableDate);
        ObjectLockRetention retention = ObjectLockRetention.builder()
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .retainUntilDate(futureInstant)
            .build();
```

```
        PutObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
PutObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectKey)
            .retention(retention)
            .build();

        getClient().putObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
        System.out.println("Set retention for "+objectKey +" in " +bucketName +"
until "+ humanReadableDate +".");
    }

    // Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    public ObjectLockLegalHold getObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String
objectKey) {
        try {
            GetObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
GetObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

            GetObjectLegalHoldResponse response =
getClient().getObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest);
            System.out.println("Object legal hold for " + objectKey + " in " +
bucketName +
                ":\n\tStatus: " + response.legalHold().status());
            return response.legalHold();

        } catch (S3Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '" +
ex.getMessage() + "'");
        }

        return null;
    }

    // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock options.
    public void createBucketWithLockOptions(boolean enableObjectLock, String
bucketName) {
        S3Waiter s3Waiter = getClient().waiter();
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockEnabledForBucket(enableObjectLock)
```

```
            .build();

        getClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
        s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
        System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");
    }

    public List<S3InfoObject> listBucketsAndObjects(List<String> bucketNames,
Boolean interactive) {
        AtomicInteger counter = new AtomicInteger(0); // Initialize counter.
        return bucketNames.stream()
            .flatMap(bucketName ->
listBucketObjectsAndVersions(bucketName).versions().stream()
                .map(version -> {
                    S3InfoObject s3InfoObject = new S3InfoObject();
                    s3InfoObject.setBucketName(bucketName);
                    s3InfoObject.setVersion(version.versionId());
                    s3InfoObject.setKeyName(version.key());
                    return s3InfoObject;
                }))
            .peek(s3InfoObject -> {
                int i = counter.incrementAndGet(); // Increment and get the
updated value.
                if (interactive) {
                    System.out.println(i + ": "+ s3InfoObject.getKeyName());
                    System.out.printf("%5s Bucket name: %s\n", "",
s3InfoObject.getBucketName());
                    System.out.printf("%5s Version: %s\n", "",
s3InfoObject.getVersion());
                }
            })
            .collect(Collectors.toList());
    }

    public ListObjectVersionsResponse listBucketObjectsAndVersions(String
bucketName) {
        ListObjectVersionsRequest versionsRequest =
ListObjectVersionsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
```

```
            .build();

        return getClient().listObjectVersions(versionsRequest);
    }

    // Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyBucketDefaultRetention(String bucketName) {
        VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
            .mfaDelete(MFADelete.DISABLED)
            .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
            .build();

        PutBucketVersioningRequest versioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
            .build();

        getClient().putBucketVersioning(versioningRequest);
        DefaultRetention rention = DefaultRetention.builder()
            .days(1)
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .build();

        ObjectLockRule lockRule = ObjectLockRule.builder()
            .defaultRetention(rention)
            .build();

        ObjectLockConfiguration objectLockConfiguration =
ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
            .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
            .rule(lockRule)
            .build();

        PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest putObjectLockConfigurationRequest =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfiguration)
            .build();


getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(putObjectLockConfigurationRequest) ;
```

```
        System.out.println("Added a default retention to bucket "+bucketName
+".");
    }

    // Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    public void enableObjectLockOnBucket(String bucketName) {
        try {
            VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
                .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

            PutBucketVersioningRequest putBucketVersioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
                .build();

            // Enable versioning on the bucket.
            getClient().putBucketVersioning(putBucketVersioningRequest);
            PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest request =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .objectLockConfiguration(ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
                    .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
                    .build())
                .build();

            getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully enabled object lock on
"+bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("Error modifying object lock: '" + ex.getMessage()
+ "'");
        }
    }

    public void uploadFile(String bucketName, String objectName, String filePath)
{
        Path file = Paths.get(filePath);
        PutObjectRequest request = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectName)
```

```
            .checksumAlgorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256)
            .build();

        PutObjectResponse response = getClient().putObject(request, file);
        if (response != null) {
            System.out.println("\tSuccessfully uploaded " + objectName + " to " +
bucketName + ".");
        } else {
            System.out.println("\tCould not upload " + objectName + " to " +
bucketName + ".");
        }
    }

    // Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String objectKey,
boolean legalHoldOn) {
        ObjectLockLegalHold legalHold ;
        if (legalHoldOn) {
            legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
                .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON)
                .build();
        } else {
            legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
                .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.OFF)
                .build();
        }

        PutObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
PutObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectKey)
            .legalHold(legalHold)
            .build();

        getClient().putObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest) ;
        System.out.println("Modified legal hold for "+ objectKey +" in
"+bucketName +".");
    }

    // Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    public void deleteObjectFromBucket(String bucketName, String objectKey,
boolean hasRetention, String versionId) {
        try {
            DeleteObjectRequest objectRequest;
```

```
            if (hasRetention) {
                objectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .versionId(versionId)
                    .bypassGovernanceRetention(true)
                    .build();
            } else {
                objectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .versionId(versionId)
                    .build();
            }

            getClient().deleteObject(objectRequest) ;
            System.out.println("The object was successfully deleted");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }

    // Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    public ObjectLockRetention getObjectRetention(String bucketName, String key){
        try {
            GetObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
GetObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .build();

            GetObjectRetentionResponse response =
getClient().getObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
            System.out.println("tObject retention for "+key +"
in "+ bucketName +": " + response.retention().mode() +" until "+
response.retention().retainUntilDate() +".");
            return response.retention();

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return null;
        }
    }
```

```
    public void deleteBucketByName(String bucketName) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketRequest request = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            getClient().deleteBucket(request);
            System.out.println(bucketName +" was deleted.");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }

    // Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    public void getBucketObjectLockConfiguration(String bucketName) {
        GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest objectLockConfigurationRequest =
 GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        GetObjectLockConfigurationResponse response =
 getClient().getObjectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfigurationRequest);
        System.out.println("Bucket object lock config for "+bucketName +":  ");
        System.out.println("\tEnabled:
 "+response.objectLockConfiguration().objectLockEnabled());
        System.out.println("\tRule: "+
 response.objectLockConfiguration().rule().defaultRetention());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Entrypoint for the scenario (index.js). This orchestrates all of the steps. Visit GitHub to see the implementation details for Scenario, ScenarioInput, ScenarioOutput, and ScenarioAction.

```
import * as Scenarios from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  exitOnFalse,
  loadState,
  saveState,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";

import { welcome, welcomeContinue } from "./welcome.steps.js";
import {
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention,
  confirmUpdateLockPolicy,
  confirmUpdateRetention,
  createBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  getBucketPrefix,
  populateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
  setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction,
  setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction,
  setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction,
  setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction,
  updateLockPolicy,
  updateLockPolicyAction,
  updateRetention,
```

```
  updateRetentionAction,
} from "./setup.steps.js";

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {Record<string, any>} initialState
 */
export const getWorkflowStages = (scenarios, initialState = {}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  return {
    deploy: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Object Locking - Deploy",
      [
        welcome(scenarios),
        welcomeContinue(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "welcomeContinue"),
        getBucketPrefix(scenarios),
        createBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmCreateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCreateBuckets"),
        createBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        updateRetention(scenarios),
        confirmUpdateRetention(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmUpdateRetention"),
        updateRetentionAction(scenarios, client),
        populateBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmPopulateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmPopulateBuckets"),
        populateBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        updateLockPolicy(scenarios),
        confirmUpdateLockPolicy(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmUpdateLockPolicy"),
        updateLockPolicyAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled(scenarios),
        setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled(scenarios),
        setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention(scenarios),
        setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention(scenarios),
        setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction(scenarios, client),
        saveState,
      ],
```

```
      initialState,
    ),
    demo: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Object Locking - Demo",
      [loadState, replAction(scenarios, client)],
      initialState,
    ),
    clean: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Object Locking - Destroy",
      [
        loadState,
        confirmCleanup(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCleanup"),
        cleanupAction(scenarios, client),
      ],
      initialState,
    ),
  };
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { cleanupAction, confirmCleanup } from "./clean.steps.js";
import { replAction } from "./repl.steps.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const objectLockingScenarios = getWorkflowStages(Scenarios);
  Scenarios.parseScenarioArgs(objectLockingScenarios, {
    name: "Amazon S3 object locking workflow",
    description:
      "Work with Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) object locking
 features.",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | clean> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
  });
}
```

Output welcome messages to the console (welcome.steps.js).

```
/**
```

```
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcome = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "welcome",
    "Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) Object Locking Feature
 Scenario. For this workflow, we will use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create
 several S3 buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking features.",
    { header: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcomeContinue = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "welcomeContinue",
    "Press Enter when you are ready to start.",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

export { welcome, welcomeContinue };
```

Deploy buckets, objects, and file settings (setup.steps.js).

```
import {
  BucketVersioningStatus,
  ChecksumAlgorithm,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  MFADeleteStatus,
  PutBucketVersioningCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  PutObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  PutObjectRetentionCommand,
  ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus,
  ObjectLockRetentionMode,
  GetBucketVersioningCommand,
```

```
  BucketAlreadyExists,
  BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilBucketExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const getBucketPrefix = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "bucketPrefix",
    "Provide a prefix that will be used for bucket creation.",
    { type: "input", default: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const createBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "createBuckets",
    (state) => `The following buckets will be created:
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock with object lock False.
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled with object lock True.
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation with object lock False.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCreateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCreateBuckets", "Create the buckets?", {
```

```
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const createBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("createBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    const noLockBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock`;
    const lockEnabledBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled`;
    const retentionBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation`;

    try {
      await client.send(new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: noLockBucketName }));
      await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: noLockBucketName });
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({
          Bucket: lockEnabledBucketName,
          ObjectLockEnabledForBucket: true,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists(
        { client },
        { Bucket: lockEnabledBucketName },
      );
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: retentionBucketName }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: retentionBucketName });

      state.noLockBucketName = noLockBucketName;
      state.lockEnabledBucketName = lockEnabledBucketName;
      state.retentionBucketName = retentionBucketName;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyExists ||
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
      ) {
        console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
        state.earlyExit = true;
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
```

```
    }
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const populateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "populateBuckets",
    (state) => `The following test files will be created:
         file0.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock.
         file1.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock.
         file0.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled.
         file1.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled.
         file0.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation.
         file1.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmPopulateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmPopulateBuckets",
    "Populate the buckets?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const populateBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("populateBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    try {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.noLockBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
```

```
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.noLockBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
        console.error(
```

```
          `Error from S3 while uploading object.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
        );
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const updateRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "updateRetention",
    (state) => `A bucket can be configured to use object locking with a default
 retention period.
A default retention period will be configured for ${state.bucketPrefix}-
retention-after-creation.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmUpdateRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmUpdateRetention",
    "Configure default retention period?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const updateRetentionAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("updateRetentionAction", async (state) => {
    await client.send(
      new PutBucketVersioningCommand({
        Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
        VersioningConfiguration: {
          MFADelete: MFADeleteStatus.Disabled,
          Status: BucketVersioningStatus.Enabled,
```

```
        },
      }),
    );

    const getBucketVersioning = new GetBucketVersioningCommand({
      Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
    });

    await retry({ intervalInMs: 500, maxRetries: 10 }, async () => {
      const { Status } = await client.send(getBucketVersioning);
      if (Status !== "Enabled") {
        throw new Error("Bucket versioning is not enabled.");
      }
    });

    await client.send(
      new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
        ObjectLockConfiguration: {
          ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
          Rule: {
            DefaultRetention: {
              Mode: "GOVERNANCE",
              Years: 1,
            },
          },
        },
      }),
    );
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const updateLockPolicy = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "updateLockPolicy",
    (state) => `Object lock policies can also be added to existing buckets.
An object lock policy will be added to ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
```

```
 */
const confirmUpdateLockPolicy = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmUpdateLockPolicy",
    "Add object lock policy?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const updateLockPolicyAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("updateLockPolicyAction", async (state) => {
    await client.send(
      new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
        ObjectLockConfiguration: {
          ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
        },
      }),
    );
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a legal hold to file0.txt in
 ${state.lockEnabledBucketName}?`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction = (scenarios, client) =>
```

```
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction",
    async (state) => {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          LegalHold: {
            Status: ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON,
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Modified legal hold for file0.txt in ${state.lockEnabledBucketName}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a 1 day Governance retention period to file1.txt in
 ${state.lockEnabledBucketName}?
Reminder: Only a user with the s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be
 able to delete this file or its bucket until the retention period has expired.`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction",
    async (state) => {
```

```
      const retentionDate = new Date();
      retentionDate.setDate(retentionDate.getDate() + 1);
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectRetentionCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Retention: {
            Mode: ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE,
            RetainUntilDate: retentionDate,
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Set retention for file1.txt in ${state.lockEnabledBucketName} until
 ${retentionDate.toISOString().split("T")[0]}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a legal hold to file0.txt in
 ${state.retentionBucketName}?`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction",
    async (state) => {
      await client.send(
```

```
        new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          LegalHold: {
            Status: ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON,
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Modified legal hold for file0.txt in ${state.retentionBucketName}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a 1 day Governance retention period to file1.txt in
 ${state.retentionBucketName}?
Reminder: Only a user with the s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be
 able to delete this file or its bucket until the retention period has expired.`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction",
    async (state) => {
      const retentionDate = new Date();
      retentionDate.setDate(retentionDate.getDate() + 1);
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectRetentionCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
```

```
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Retention: {
            Mode: ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE,
            RetainUntilDate: retentionDate,
          },
          BypassGovernanceRetention: true,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Set retention for file1.txt in ${state.retentionBucketName} until
 ${retentionDate.toISOString().split("T")[0]}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention },
  );

export {
  getBucketPrefix,
  createBuckets,
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  populateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
  updateRetention,
  confirmUpdateRetention,
  updateRetentionAction,
  updateLockPolicy,
  confirmUpdateLockPolicy,
  updateLockPolicyAction,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled,
  setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled,
  setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention,
  setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention,
  setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction,
};
```

View and delete files in the buckets (repl.steps.js).

```
import {
  ChecksumAlgorithm,
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  GetObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  GetObjectRetentionCommand,
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

const choices = {
  EXIT: 0,
  LIST_ALL_FILES: 1,
  DELETE_FILE: 2,
  DELETE_FILE_WITH_RETENTION: 3,
  OVERWRITE_FILE: 4,
  VIEW_RETENTION_SETTINGS: 5,
  VIEW_LEGAL_HOLD_SETTINGS: 6,
};

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const replInput = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "replChoice",
    "Explore the S3 locking features by selecting one of the following choices",
    {
      type: "select",
      choices: [
        { name: "List all files in buckets", value: choices.LIST_ALL_FILES },
        { name: "Attempt to delete a file.", value: choices.DELETE_FILE },
        {
          name: "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
          value: choices.DELETE_FILE_WITH_RETENTION,
```

```
        },
        { name: "Attempt to overwrite a file.", value: choices.OVERWRITE_FILE },
        {
          name: "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
          value: choices.VIEW_RETENTION_SETTINGS,
        },
        {
          name: "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
          value: choices.VIEW_LEGAL_HOLD_SETTINGS,
        },
        { name: "Finish the workflow.", value: choices.EXIT },
      ],
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 */
const getAllFiles = async (client, buckets) => {
  /** @type {{bucket: string, key: string, version: string}[]} */
  const files = [];
  for (const bucket of buckets) {
    const objectsResponse = await client.send(
      new ListObjectVersionsCommand({ Bucket: bucket }),
    );
    for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
      const { Key, VersionId } = version;
      files.push({ bucket, key: Key, version: VersionId });
    }
  }

  return files;
};

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const replAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "replAction",
    async (state) => {
      const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
```

```
        state.noLockBucketName,
        state.lockEnabledBucketName,
        state.retentionBucketName,
      ]);

      const fileInput = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectedFile",
        "Select a file:",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: files.map((file, index) => ({
            name: `${index + 1}: ${file.bucket}: ${file.key} (version: ${
              file.version
            })`,
            value: index,
          })),
        },
      );

      const { replChoice } = state;

      switch (replChoice) {
        case choices.LIST_ALL_FILES: {
          const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
            state.noLockBucketName,
            state.lockEnabledBucketName,
            state.retentionBucketName,
          ]);
          state.replOutput = files
            .map(
              (file) =>
                `${file.bucket}: ${file.key} (version: ${file.version})`,
            )
            .join("\n");
          break;
        }
        case choices.DELETE_FILE: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToDelete = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToDelete];
          try {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
```

```
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Deleted ${selectedFile.key} in
${selectedFile.bucket}.`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to delete object ${selectedFile.key} in
bucket ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${err.message}`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.DELETE_FILE_WITH_RETENTION: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToDelete = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToDelete];
          try {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
                BypassGovernanceRetention: true,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Deleted ${selectedFile.key} in
${selectedFile.bucket}.`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to delete object ${selectedFile.key} in
bucket ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${err.message}`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.OVERWRITE_FILE: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToOverwrite = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToOverwrite];
          try {
            await client.send(
              new PutObjectCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                Body: "New content",
                ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
```

```
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Overwrote ${selectedFile.key} in
 ${selectedFile.bucket}.`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to overwrite object ${selectedFile.key} in
 bucket ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${err.message}`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.VIEW_RETENTION_SETTINGS: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToView = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToView];
          try {
            const retention = await client.send(
              new GetObjectRetentionCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
              }),
            );
            const bucketConfig = await client.send(
              new GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Object retention for ${selectedFile.key}
 in ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${retention.Retention?.Mode} until
 ${retention.Retention?.RetainUntilDate?.toISOString()}.
Bucket object lock config for ${selectedFile.bucket} in ${selectedFile.bucket}:
Enabled: ${bucketConfig.ObjectLockConfiguration?.ObjectLockEnabled}
Rule:
 ${JSON.stringify(bucketConfig.ObjectLockConfiguration?.Rule?.DefaultRetention)}`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to fetch object lock retention:
 '${err.message}'`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.VIEW_LEGAL_HOLD_SETTINGS: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToView = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToView];
```

```
          try {
            const legalHold = await client.send(
              new GetObjectLegalHoldCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Object legal hold for ${selectedFile.key} in
 ${selectedFile.bucket}: Status: ${legalHold.LegalHold?.Status}`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to fetch legal hold: '${err.message}'`;
          }
          break;
        }
        default:
          throw new Error(`Invalid replChoice: ${replChoice}`);
      }
    },
    {
      whileConfig: {
        whileFn: ({ replChoice }) => replChoice !== choices.EXIT,
        input: replInput(scenarios),
        output: new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
          "REPL output",
          (state) => state.replOutput,
          { preformatted: true },
        ),
      },
    },
  );

export { replInput, replAction, choices };
```

Destroy all created resources (clean.steps.js).

```
import {
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
  GetObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  GetObjectRetentionCommand,
```

```
  PutObjectLegalHoldCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCleanup = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCleanup", "Clean up resources?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const cleanupAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("cleanupAction", async (state) => {
    const { noLockBucketName, lockEnabledBucketName, retentionBucketName } =
      state;

    const buckets = [
      noLockBucketName,
      lockEnabledBucketName,
      retentionBucketName,
    ];

    for (const bucket of buckets) {
      /** @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").ListObjectVersionsCommandOutput} */
      let objectsResponse;

      try {
        objectsResponse = await client.send(
          new ListObjectVersionsCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
          }),
        );
```

```
      } catch (e) {
        if (e instanceof Error && e.name === "NoSuchBucket") {
          console.log("Object's bucket has already been deleted.");
          continue;
        }
        throw e;
      }

      for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
        const { Key, VersionId } = version;

        try {
          const legalHold = await client.send(
            new GetObjectLegalHoldCommand({
              Bucket: bucket,
              Key,
              VersionId,
            }),
          );

          if (legalHold.LegalHold?.Status === "ON") {
            await client.send(
              new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
                Bucket: bucket,
                Key,
                VersionId,
                LegalHold: {
                  Status: "OFF",
                },
              }),
            );
          }
        } catch (err) {
          console.log(
            `Unable to fetch legal hold for ${Key} in ${bucket}:
'${err.message}'`,
          );
        }

        try {
          const retention = await client.send(
            new GetObjectRetentionCommand({
              Bucket: bucket,
              Key,
```

```
              VersionId,
            }),
          );

          if (retention.Retention?.Mode === "GOVERNANCE") {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: bucket,
                Key,
                VersionId,
                BypassGovernanceRetention: true,
              }),
            );
          }
        } catch (err) {
          console.log(
            `Unable to fetch object lock retention for ${Key} in ${bucket}:
 '${err.message}'`,
          );
        }

        await client.send(
          new DeleteObjectCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
            Key,
            VersionId,
          }),
        );
      }

      await client.send(new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucket }));
      console.log(`Delete for ${bucket} complete.`);
    }
  });

export { confirmCleanup, cleanupAction };
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention

- PutObjectLegalHold
- PutObjectLockConfiguration
- PutObjectRetention

Make Amazon S3 conditional requests using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to add preconditions to Amazon S3 requests.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 conditional request features.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace S3ConditionalRequestsScenario;

public static class S3ConditionalRequestsScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3 operations.
    You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests to
 return or copy
    an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date.
```

```
    You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by ensuring
    there is no existing object with the same key.
   */

    public static S3ActionsWrapper _s3ActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
    public static string _resourcePrefix = null!;
    public static string _sourceBucketName = null!;
    public static string _destinationBucketName = null!;
    public static string _sampleObjectKey = null!;
    public static string _sampleObjectEtag = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;


    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                    .AddTransient<S3ActionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
Conditional Requests Feature Scenario.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            ConfigurationSetup();
            _sampleObjectEtag = await Setup(_sourceBucketName,
_destinationBucketName, _sampleObjectKey);

            await DisplayDemoChoices(_sourceBucketName, _destinationBucketName,
_sampleObjectKey, _sampleObjectEtag, 0);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon S3 Conditional Requests Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem: {ex.Message}");
            await CleanupScenario(_sourceBucketName, _destinationBucketName);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _s3ActionsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3ActionsWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Any setup operations needed.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ConfigurationSetup()
    {
        _resourcePrefix = _configuration["resourcePrefix"] ?? "dotnet-example";

        _sourceBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-source";
```

```
        _destinationBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-dest";
        _sampleObjectKey = _resourcePrefix + "-sample-object.txt";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sets up the scenario by creating a source and destination bucket, and
 uploading a test file to the source bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the test file to add to the source
 bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag of the uploaded test file.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> Setup(string sourceBucket, string
 destBucket, string objectKey)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this scenario, we will use the AWS SDK for .NET to create
 several S3\n" +
            "buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 conditional
 requests.\n" +
            "This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3
 operations.\r\n" +
            "You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read
 requests to return or copy\r\n" +
            "an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date. \r
\n" +
            "You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by
 ensuring \r\n" +
            "there is no existing object with the same key. \r\n\r\n" +
            "This example will allow you to perform conditional reads\r\n" +
            "and writes that will succeed or fail based on your selected options.
\r\n\r\n" +
            "Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the
 example.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you are ready to start.");
        if (_interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithName(destBucket);
```

```
        var eTag = await _s3ActionsWrapper.PutObjectConditional(objectKey,
 sourceBucket,
            "Test file content.");

        return eTag;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up the scenario by deleting the source and destination buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    public static async Task CleanupScenario(string sourceBucket, string
 destBucket)
    {
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanupBucketByName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanupBucketByName(destBucket);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays a list of the objects in the test buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    public static async Task DisplayBuckets(string sourceBucket, string
 destBucket)
    {
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketContentsByName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketContentsByName(destBucket);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays the menu of conditional request options for the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the test object in the source
 bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="etag">The ETag of the test object in the source bucket.</
param>
    public static async Task DisplayDemoChoices(string sourceBucket, string
 destBucket, string objectKey, string etag, int defaultChoice)
    {
        var actions = new[]
```

```
        {
            "Print a list of bucket items.",
            "Perform a conditional read.",
            "Perform a conditional copy.",
            "Perform a conditional write.",
            "Clean up and exit."
        };

        var conditions = new[]
        {
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should
 fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
 succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
 fail."
        };

        var conditionTypes = new[]
        {
            S3ConditionType.IfMatch,
            S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch,
            S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince,
            S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince,
        };

        var yesterdayDate = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-1);

        int choice;
        while ((choice = GetChoiceResponse("\nExplore the S3 conditional request
 features by selecting one of the following choices:", actions, defaultChoice)) !
= 4)
        {
            switch (choice)
            {
                case 0:
                    Console.WriteLine("Listing the objects and buckets.");
                    await DisplayBuckets(sourceBucket, destBucket);
                    break;
                case 1:
                    int conditionTypeIndex = GetChoiceResponse("Perform a
 conditional read:", conditions, 1);
                    if (conditionTypeIndex == 0 || conditionTypeIndex == 1)
```

```
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectConditional(objectKey,
sourceBucket, conditionTypes[conditionTypeIndex], null, _sampleObjectEtag);
                    }
                    else if (conditionTypeIndex == 2 || conditionTypeIndex == 3)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectConditional(objectKey,
sourceBucket, conditionTypes[conditionTypeIndex], yesterdayDate);
                    }
                    break;
                case 2:
                    int copyConditionTypeIndex = GetChoiceResponse("Perform a
conditional copy:", conditions, 1);
                    string destKey = GetStringResponse("Enter an object key:",
"sampleObjectKey");
                    if (copyConditionTypeIndex == 0 || copyConditionTypeIndex ==
1)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CopyObjectConditional(objectKey,
destKey, sourceBucket, destBucket, conditionTypes[copyConditionTypeIndex], null,
etag);
                    }
                    else if (copyConditionTypeIndex == 2 ||
copyConditionTypeIndex == 3)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CopyObjectConditional(objectKey,
destKey, sourceBucket, destBucket, conditionTypes[copyConditionTypeIndex],
yesterdayDate);
                    }
                    break;
                case 3:
                    Console.WriteLine("Perform a conditional write using
IfNoneMatch condition on the object key.");
                    Console.WriteLine("If the key is a duplicate, the write will
fail.");
                    string newObjectKey = GetStringResponse("Enter an object
key:", "newObjectKey");
                    await _s3ActionsWrapper.PutObjectConditional(newObjectKey,
sourceBucket, "Conditional write example data.");
                    break;
            }

            if (!_interactive)
            {
```

```
                break;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Proceeding to cleanup.");
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all files
 and buckets? (y/n) "))
        {
            await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanUpBucketByName(_sourceBucketName);
            await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanUpBucketByName(_destinationBucketName);

        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
 might incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a choice response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <param name="choices">The choices to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>The index of the selected choice</returns>
    private static int GetChoiceResponse(string? question, string[] choices, int
 defaultChoice)
    {
        if (question != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);

            for (int i = 0; i < choices.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {choices[i]}");
            }
        }

        if (!_interactive)
            return defaultChoice;

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.Length)
        {
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a string response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question to print.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">A default answer to use when not
 interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>The string response.</returns>
    public static string GetStringResponse(string? question, string
 defaultAnswer)
    {
        string? answer = "";
        if (_interactive)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                answer = Console.ReadLine();
            } while (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(answer));
        }
        else
        {
            answer = defaultAnswer;
        }

        return answer;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace S3ConditionalRequestsScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Encapsulate the Amazon S3 operations.
/// </summary>
public class S3ActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonS3 _amazonS3;
    private readonly ILogger<S3ActionsWrapper> _logger;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3ActionsWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonS3">The injected S3 client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The class logger.</param>
    public S3ActionsWrapper(IAmazonS3 amazonS3, ILogger<S3ActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonS3 = amazonS3;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition: 'IfMatch',
 'IfNoneMatch', 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional read is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
 sourceBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null,
 string? etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = sourceBucket,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
```

```
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
 conditionType, null);
            }

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest);
            var sampleBytes = new byte[20];
            await response.ResponseStream.ReadAsync(sampleBytes, 0, 20);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional read
 successful. Here are the first 20 bytes of the object:
\n{System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(sampleBytes)}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "NotModified")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
 overwrite using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="content">The content to upload as a string.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag if the conditional write is successful, empty
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
bucket, string content)
    {
        try
        {
            var putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucket,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = content,
                IfNoneMatch = "*"
            };

            var putResult = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional write successful for key
{objectKey} in bucket {bucket}.");
            return putResult.ETag;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional write failed: Precondition
failed");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
request.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="sourceKey">The key of the source object to copy.</param>
    /// <param name="destKey">The key of the destination object.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The destination bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition to apply, e.g.
 'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional copy is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CopyObjectConditional(string sourceKey, string
 destKey, string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null,
 string? etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var copyObjectRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                DestinationBucket = destBucket,
                DestinationKey = destKey,
                SourceBucket = sourceBucket,
                SourceKey = sourceKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
```

```
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            await _amazonS3.CopyObjectAsync(copyObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional copy successful for key
{destKey} in bucket {destBucket}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "304")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with a specified name and check that the
bucket is ready.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithName(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true
```

```
            };

            await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);
            var bucketReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (!bucketReady && retries > 0)
            {
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                bucketReady = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_amazonS3, bucketName);
                retries--;
            }

            return bucketReady;
        }
        catch (BucketAlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Bucket already exists: '{ex.Message}'");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up objects and deletes the bucket by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CleanupBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var listObjectsResponse = await _amazonS3.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request { BucketName = bucketName });
            foreach (var obj in listObjectsResponse.S3Objects)
            {
                await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(new DeleteObjectRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName, Key = obj.Key });
            }
```

```
            await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Cleaned up bucket: {bucketName}.");
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Bucket {bucketName} does not exist, skipping
cleanup.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting bucket: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the contents of the bucket with their ETag.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<S3Object>> ListBucketContentsByName(string bucketName)
    {
        var results = new List<S3Object>();
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t Items in bucket {bucketName}");
            var listObjectsResponse = await _amazonS3.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request { BucketName = bucketName });
            if (listObjectsResponse.S3Objects.Count == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\t\tNo objects found.");
            }
            else
            {
                foreach (var obj in listObjectsResponse.S3Objects)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"\t\t object: {obj.Key} ETag {obj.ETag}");
                }
            }
            results = listObjectsResponse.S3Objects;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "NoSuchBucket")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Bucket {bucketName} does not exist.");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Error listing bucket and objects:
{e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
        }

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteObjectFromBucket(string bucketName, string
objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };
            await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Deleted {objectKey} in {bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete object {objectKey} in bucket
{bucketName}: " + ex.Message);
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a specific bucket by deleting the objects and then the bucket
 itself.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CleanUpBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var allFiles = await ListBucketContentsByName(bucketName);

            foreach (var fileInfo in allFiles)
            {
                await DeleteObjectFromBucket(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
            }

            var request = new DeleteBucketRequest() { BucketName = bucketName, };
            var response = await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDelete for {bucketName} complete.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete bucket {bucketName}: " +
 ex.Message);
            return false;
        }

    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject

- PutObject

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Entrypoint for the workflow (index.js). This orchestrates all of the steps. Visit GitHub to see the implementation details for Scenario, ScenarioInput, ScenarioOutput, and ScenarioAction.

```
import * as Scenarios from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  exitOnFalse,
  loadState,
  saveState,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";

import { welcome, welcomeContinue } from "./welcome.steps.js";
import {
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  createBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  getBucketPrefix,
  populateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
} from "./setup.steps.js";

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {Record<string, any>} initialState
 */
export const getWorkflowStages = (scenarios, initialState = {}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  return {
```

```
    deploy: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Conditional Requests - Deploy",
      [
        welcome(scenarios),
        welcomeContinue(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "welcomeContinue"),
        getBucketPrefix(scenarios),
        createBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmCreateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCreateBuckets"),
        createBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        populateBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmPopulateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmPopulateBuckets"),
        populateBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        saveState,
      ],
      initialState,
    ),
    demo: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Conditional Requests - Demo",
      [loadState, welcome(scenarios), replAction(scenarios, client)],
      initialState,
    ),
    clean: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Conditional Requests - Destroy",
      [
        loadState,
        confirmCleanup(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCleanup"),
        cleanupAction(scenarios, client),
      ],
      initialState,
    ),
  };
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { cleanupAction, confirmCleanup } from "./clean.steps.js";
import { replAction } from "./repl.steps.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
```

```
  const objectLockingScenarios = getWorkflowStages(Scenarios);
  Scenarios.parseScenarioArgs(objectLockingScenarios, {
    name: "Amazon S3 object locking workflow",
    description:
      "Work with Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) object locking
 features.",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | clean> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
  });
}
```

Output welcome messages to the console (welcome.steps.js).

```
/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcome = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "welcome",
    "This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3
 operations." +
      " You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests
 to return " +
      "or copy an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified
 date.You can use " +
      "a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by ensuring there is no
 existing " +
      "object with the same key.\n" +
      "This example will enable you to perform conditional reads and writes that
 will succeed " +
      "or fail based on your selected options.\n" +
      "Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the example.
\n" +
      "Some steps require a key name prefix to be defined by the user. Before you
 begin, you can " +
      "optionally edit this prefix in ./object_name.json. If you do so, please
 reload the scenario before you begin.",
```

```
    { header: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcomeContinue = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "welcomeContinue",
    "Press Enter when you are ready to start.",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

export { welcome, welcomeContinue };
```

Deploy buckets and objects (setup.steps.js).

```
import {
  ChecksumAlgorithm,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  BucketAlreadyExists,
  BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilBucketExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const getBucketPrefix = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "bucketPrefix",
    "Provide a prefix that will be used for bucket creation.",
```

```
    { type: "input", default: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" },
  );
/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const createBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "createBuckets",
    (state) => `The following buckets will be created:
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-source-bucket.
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-destination-bucket.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCreateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCreateBuckets", "Create the buckets?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const createBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("createBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    const sourceBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-source-bucket`;
    const destinationBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-destination-bucket`;

    try {
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({
          Bucket: sourceBucketName,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: sourceBucketName });
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({
          Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists(
```

```
        { client },
        { Bucket: destinationBucketName },
      );

      state.sourceBucketName = sourceBucketName;
      state.destinationBucketName = destinationBucketName;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyExists ||
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
      ) {
        console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
        state.earlyExit = true;
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const populateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "populateBuckets",
    (state) => `The following test files will be created:
         file01.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-source-bucket.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmPopulateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmPopulateBuckets",
    "Populate the buckets?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
```

```
const populateBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("populateBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    try {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.sourceBucketName,
          Key: "file01.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
        console.error(
          `Error from S3 while uploading object.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
        );
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });

export {
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  createBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  getBucketPrefix,
  populateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
};
```

Get, copy, and put objects using S3 conditional requests (repl.steps.js).

```
import path from "node:path";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";

import {
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
```

```
  GetObjectCommand,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import data from "./object_name.json" assert { type: "json" };
import { readFile } from "node:fs/promises";
import {
  ScenarioInput,
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "../../../libs/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

const choices = {
  EXIT: 0,
  LIST_ALL_FILES: 1,
  CONDITIONAL_READ: 2,
  CONDITIONAL_COPY: 3,
  CONDITIONAL_WRITE: 4,
};

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const replInput = (scenarios) =>
  new ScenarioInput(
    "replChoice",
    "Explore the S3 conditional request features by selecting one of the
 following choices",
    {
      type: "select",
      choices: [
        { name: "Print list of bucket items.", value: choices.LIST_ALL_FILES },
        {
          name: "Perform a conditional read.",
          value: choices.CONDITIONAL_READ,
```

```
        },
        {
          name: "Perform a conditional copy. These examples use the key name
 prefix defined in ./object_name.json.",
          value: choices.CONDITIONAL_COPY,
        },
        {
          name: "Perform a conditional write. This example use the sample file ./
text02.txt.",
          value: choices.CONDITIONAL_WRITE,
        },
        { name: "Finish the workflow.", value: choices.EXIT },
      ],
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 */
const getAllFiles = async (client, buckets) => {
  /** @type {{bucket: string, key: string, version: string}[]} */
  const files = [];
  for (const bucket of buckets) {
    const objectsResponse = await client.send(
      new ListObjectVersionsCommand({ Bucket: bucket }),
    );
    for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
      const { Key } = version;
      files.push({ bucket, key: Key });
    }
  }
  return files;
};

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 * @param {string} key
 */
const getEtag = async (client, bucket, key) => {
  const objectsResponse = await client.send(
    new GetObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucket,
```

```
      Key: key,
    }),
  );
  return objectsResponse.ETag;
};

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
export const replAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new ScenarioAction(
    "replAction",
    async (state) => {
      const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
        state.sourceBucketName,
        state.destinationBucketName,
      ]);

      const fileInput = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectedFile",
        "Select a file to use:",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: files.map((file, index) => ({
            name: `${index + 1}: ${file.bucket}: ${file.key} (Etag: ${
              file.version
            })`,
            value: index,
          })),
        },
      );
      const condReadOptions = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectOption",
        "Which conditional read action would you like to take?",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: [
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
```

```
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should
fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail.",
          ],
        },
      );
      const condCopyOptions = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectOption",
        "Which conditional copy action would you like to take?",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: [
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should
fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail.",
          ],
        },
      );
      const condWriteOptions = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectOption",
        "Which conditional write action would you like to take?",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: [
            "IfNoneMatch condition on the object key: If the key is a duplicate,
the write will fail.",
          ],
        },
      );

      const { replChoice } = state;

      switch (replChoice) {
        case choices.LIST_ALL_FILES: {
          const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
            state.sourceBucketName,
            state.destinationBucketName,
```

```
          ]);
          state.replOutput = files
            .map(
              (file) => `Items in bucket ${file.bucket}: object: ${file.key} `,
            )
            .join("\n");
          break;
        }
        case choices.CONDITIONAL_READ:
          {
            const selectedCondRead = await condReadOptions.handle(state);
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed."
            ) {
              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";
              const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);

              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfMatch: ETag,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in bucket ${state.sourceBucketName}
read because ETag provided matches the object's ETag.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `Unable to read object ${key} in bucket
${state.sourceBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should
fail."
            ) {
              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";
              const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);
```

```
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfNoneMatch: ETag,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was
returned.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was not
read: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed."
            ) {
              const date = new Date();
              date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfModifiedSince: date,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in bucket ${state.sourceBucketName}
read because it has been created or modified in the last 24 hours.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `Unable to read object ${key} in bucket
${state.sourceBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
```

```
              "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail."
            ) {
              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";

              const date = new Date();
              date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfUnmodifiedSince: date,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was
read.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was not
read: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
          }
          break;
        case choices.CONDITIONAL_COPY: {
          const selectedCondCopy = await condCopyOptions.handle(state);
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);

            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;
            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
```

```
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfMatch: ETag,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${key} copied as ${copiedKey} to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because ETag provided matches the object's
ETag.`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object ${key} as ${copiedKey} to
bucket ${state.destinationBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
            }
            break;
          }
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);
            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;

            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfNoneMatch: ETag,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${copiedKey} copied to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName}`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object as ${key} as as
${copiedKey} to bucket ${state.destinationBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
            }
            break;
```

```
          }
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;

            const date = new Date();
            date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfModifiedSince: date,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${key} copied as ${copiedKey} to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because it has been created or modified in the
last 24 hours.`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object ${key} as ${copiedKey} to
bucket ${state.destinationBucketName} : ${err.message}`;
            }
            break;
          }
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
```

```
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;

            const date = new Date();
            date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince: date,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${copiedKey} copied to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because it has not been created or modified in
the last 24 hours.`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object ${key} to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
            }
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.CONDITIONAL_WRITE:
          {
            const selectedCondWrite = await condWriteOptions.handle(state);
            if (
              selectedCondWrite ===
              "IfNoneMatch condition on the object key: If the key is a
duplicate, the write will fail."
            ) {
              // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
              const key = "text02.txt";
              const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
              const __dirname = dirname(__filename);
              const filePath = path.join(__dirname, "text02.txt");
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new PutObjectCommand({
```

```
                    Bucket: `${state.destinationBucketName}`,
                    Key: `${key}`,
                    Body: await readFile(filePath),
                    IfNoneMatch: "*",
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} uploaded to bucket
 ${state.destinationBucketName} because the key is not a duplicate.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `Unable to upload object to bucket
 ${state.destinationBucketName}:${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
          }
          break;

        default:
          throw new Error(`Invalid replChoice: ${replChoice}`);
      }
    },
    {
      whileConfig: {
        whileFn: ({ replChoice }) => replChoice !== choices.EXIT,
        input: replInput(scenarios),
        output: new ScenarioOutput("REPL output", (state) => state.replOutput, {
          preformatted: true,
        }),
      },
    },
  );

export { replInput, choices };
```

Destroy all created resources (clean.steps.js).

```
import {
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCleanup = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCleanup", "Clean up resources?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const cleanupAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("cleanupAction", async (state) => {
    const { sourceBucketName, destinationBucketName } = state;
    const buckets = [sourceBucketName, destinationBucketName].filter((b) => b);

    for (const bucket of buckets) {
      try {
        let objectsResponse;
        objectsResponse = await client.send(
          new ListObjectVersionsCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
          }),
        );
        for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
          const { Key, VersionId } = version;
          try {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: bucket,
                Key,
                VersionId,
              }),
            );
          } catch (err) {
```

```
            console.log(`An error occurred: ${err.message} `);
          }
        }
      } catch (e) {
        if (e instanceof Error && e.name === "NoSuchBucket") {
          console.log("Objects and buckets have already been deleted.");
          continue;
        }
        throw e;
      }

      await client.send(new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucket }));
      console.log(`Delete for ${bucket} complete.`);
    }
  });

export { confirmCleanup, cleanupAction };
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 conditional requests.

```
"""
Purpose
```

```
Shows how to use AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get started using conditional
 requests for
Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3).

"""

import logging
import random
import sys
import datetime

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from s3_conditional_requests import S3ConditionalRequests

# Add relative path to include demo_tools in this code example without need for
 setup.
sys.path.append("../../../..")
import demo_tools.question as q  # noqa

# Constants
FILE_CONTENT = "This is a test file for S3 conditional requests."
RANDOM_SUFFIX = str(random.randint(100, 999))

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class ConditionalRequestsScenario:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to use S3 Conditional Requests."""

    def __init__(self, conditional_requests, s3_client):
        """
        :param conditional_requests: An object that wraps S3 conditional request
 actions.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client for setup and cleanup operations.
        """
        self.conditional_requests = conditional_requests
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    def setup_scenario(self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str, object_key:
 str):
        """
        Sets up the scenario by creating a source and destination bucket.
```

```
        Prompts the user to provide a bucket name prefix.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        :param object_key: The name of a test file to add to the source bucket.
        """

        # Create the buckets.
        try:
            self.s3_client.create_bucket(Bucket=source_bucket)
            self.s3_client.create_bucket(Bucket=dest_bucket)
            print(
                f"Created source bucket: {source_bucket} and destination bucket:
{dest_bucket}"
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Error creating buckets: {error_code}")
            raise

        # Upload test file into the source bucket.
        try:
            print(f"Uploading file {object_key} to bucket {source_bucket}")
            response = self.s3_client.put_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket, Key=object_key, Body=FILE_CONTENT
            )
            object_etag = response["ETag"]
            return object_etag

        except Exception as e:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to upload file {object_key} to bucket {source_bucket}:
{e}"
            )


    def cleanup_scenario(self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str):
        """
        Cleans up the scenario by deleting the source and destination buckets.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        """
        self.cleanup_bucket(source_bucket)
```

```
        self.cleanup_bucket(dest_bucket)

    def cleanup_bucket(self, bucket_name: str):
        """
        Cleans up the bucket by deleting all objects and then the bucket itself.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            # Get list of all objects in the bucket.
            list_response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(Bucket=bucket_name)
            objs = list_response.get("Contents", [])
            for obj in objs:
                key = obj["Key"]
                self.s3_client.delete_object(Bucket=bucket_name, Key=key)
            self.s3_client.delete_bucket(Bucket=bucket_name)
            print(f"Cleaned up bucket: {bucket_name}.")
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "NoSuchBucket":
                logger.info(f"Bucket {bucket_name} does not exist, skipping
cleanup.")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Error deleting bucket: {error_code}")
                raise


    def display_buckets(self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str):
        """
        Display a list of the objects in the test buckets.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        """
        self.list_bucket_contents(source_bucket)
        self.list_bucket_contents(dest_bucket)

    def list_bucket_contents(self, bucket_name):
        """
        Display a list of the objects in the bucket.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
```

```
            # Get list of all objects in the bucket.
            print(f"\t Items in bucket {bucket_name}")
            list_response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(Bucket=bucket_name)
            objs = list_response.get("Contents", [])
            if not objs:
                print("\t\tNo objects found.")
            for obj in objs:
                key = obj["Key"]
                print(f"\t\t object: {key} ETag {obj['ETag']}")
            return objs
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "NoSuchBucket":
                logger.info(f"Bucket {bucket_name} does not exist.")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Error listing bucket and objects: {error_code}")
                raise


    def display_menu(
        self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str, object_key: str, etag: str
    ):
        """
        Displays the menu of conditional request options for the user.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        :param object_key: The key of the test object in the source bucket.
        :param etag: The etag of the test object in the source bucket.
        """

        actions = [
            "Print list of bucket items.",
            "Perform a conditional read.",
            "Perform a conditional copy.",
            "Perform a conditional write.",
            "Clean up and exit.",
        ]

        conditions = [
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should
fail.",
```

```
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail.",
        ]

        condition_types = [
            "IfMatch",
            "IfNoneMatch",
            "IfModifiedSince",
            "IfUnmodifiedSince",
        ]
        copy_condition_types = [
            "CopySourceIfMatch",
            "CopySourceIfNoneMatch",
            "CopySourceIfModifiedSince",
            "CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince",
        ]

        yesterday_date = datetime.datetime.utcnow() - datetime.timedelta(days=1)

        choice = 0
        while choice != 4:
            print("-" * 88)
            print("Choose an action to explore some example conditional
requests.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                print("Listing the objects and buckets.")
                self.display_buckets(source_bucket, dest_bucket)
            elif choice == 1:
                print("Perform a conditional read.")
                condition_type = q.choose("Enter the condition type : ",
conditions)
                if condition_type == 0 or condition_type == 1:
                    self.conditional_requests.get_object_conditional(
                        object_key, source_bucket,
condition_types[condition_type], etag
                    )
                elif condition_type == 2 or condition_type == 3:
                    self.conditional_requests.get_object_conditional(
                        object_key,
                        source_bucket,
                        condition_types[condition_type],
```

```
                        yesterday_date,
                    )
            elif choice == 2:
                print("Perform a conditional copy.")
                condition_type = q.choose("Enter the condition type : ",
conditions)
                dest_key = q.ask("Enter an object key: ", q.non_empty)
                if condition_type == 0 or condition_type == 1:
                    self.conditional_requests.copy_object_conditional(
                        object_key,
                        dest_key,
                        source_bucket,
                        dest_bucket,
                        copy_condition_types[condition_type],
                        etag,
                    )
                elif condition_type == 2 or condition_type == 3:
                    self.conditional_requests.copy_object_conditional(
                        object_key,
                        dest_key,
                        copy_condition_types[condition_type],
                        yesterday_date,
                    )
            elif choice == 3:
                print(
                    "Perform a conditional write using IfNoneMatch condition on
the object key."
                )
                print("If the key is a duplicate, the write will fail.")
                object_key = q.ask("Enter an object key: ", q.non_empty)
                self.conditional_requests.put_object_conditional(
                    object_key, source_bucket, b"Conditional write example data."
                )
            elif choice == 4:
                print("Proceeding to cleanup.")


    def run_scenario(self):
        """
        Runs the interactive scenario.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 conditional requests example.")
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        print(
            f"""\
        This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3
 operations.
        You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests
 to return or copy
        an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date.
        You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by
 ensuring
        there is no existing object with the same key.

        This example will allow you to perform conditional reads
        and writes that will succeed or fail based on your selected options.

        Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the
 example.
        """
        )

        bucket_prefix = q.ask("Enter a bucket name prefix: ", q.non_empty)
        source_bucket_name = f"{bucket_prefix}-source-{RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
        dest_bucket_name = f"{bucket_prefix}-dest-{RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
        object_key = "test-upload-file.txt"

        try:
            etag = self.setup_scenario(source_bucket_name, dest_bucket_name,
 object_key)
            self.display_menu(source_bucket_name, dest_bucket_name, object_key,
 etag)
        finally:
            self.cleanup_scenario(source_bucket_name, dest_bucket_name)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("Thanks for watching.")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    scenario = ConditionalRequestsScenario(
        S3ConditionalRequests.from_client(), boto3.client("s3")
    )
    scenario.run_scenario()
```

A wrapper class that defines the conditional request operations.

```
import boto3
import logging

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Configure logging
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)



    def get_object_conditional(
        self,
        object_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
    ):
        """
        Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to retrieve.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
```

```
        :param condition_type: The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            response = self.s3.get_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket,
                Key=object_key,
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            sample_bytes = response["Body"].read(20)
            print(
                f"\tConditional read successful. Here are the first 20 bytes of
the object:\n"
            )
            print(f"\t{sample_bytes}")
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional read failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional read failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise



    def put_object_conditional(self, object_key: str, source_bucket: str, data:
bytes):
        """
        Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
overwrite
        using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to upload.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param data: The data to upload.
        """
        try:
            self.s3.put_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket, Key=object_key, Body=data, IfNoneMatch="*"
            )
            print(
```

```
                f"\tConditional write successful for key {object_key} in bucket
{source_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional write failed: Precondition failed")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise


    def copy_object_conditional(
        self,
        source_key: str,
        dest_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        dest_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
    ):
        """
        Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
request.

        :param source_key: The key of the source object to copy.
        :param dest_key: The key of the destination object.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param dest_bucket: The destination bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition to apply, e.g.
        'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch',
'CopySourceIfModifiedSince', 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            self.s3.copy_object(
                Bucket=dest_bucket,
                Key=dest_key,
                CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": source_key},
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional copy successful for key {dest_key} in bucket
{dest_bucket}."
```

```
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Manage access control lists (ACLs) for Amazon S3 buckets using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to manage access control lists (ACLs) for Amazon S3 buckets.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
```

```
    /// This example shows how to manage Amazon Simple Storage Service
    /// (Amazon S3) access control lists (ACLs) to control Amazon S3 bucket
    /// access.
    /// </summary>
    public class ManageACLs
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
            string newBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
            string keyName = "sample-object.txt";
            string emailAddress = "someone@example.com";

            // If the AWS Region where your bucket is located is different from
            // the Region defined for the default user, pass the Amazon S3
bucket's
            // name to the client constructor. It should look like this:
            // RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await TestBucketObjectACLsAsync(client, bucketName, newBucketName,
keyName, emailAddress);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with a canned ACL, then retrieves the
ACL
        /// information and then adds a new ACL to one of the objects in the
        /// Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// methods to create a bucket, get an ACL, and add a different ACL to
        /// one of the objects.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the original Amazon S3
        /// bucket name.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// new bucket that will be created.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the key name of an Amazon
S3
        /// object for which we will change the ACL.</param>
        /// <param name="emailAddress">A string representing the email address
        /// belonging to the person to whom access to the Amazon S3 bucket will
be
```

```
        /// granted.</param>
        public static async Task TestBucketObjectACLsAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string newBucketName,
            string keyName,
            string emailAddress)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket and specify canned ACL.
                var success = await CreateBucketWithCannedACLAsync(client,
 newBucketName);

                // Get the ACL on a bucket.
                await GetBucketACLAsync(client, bucketName);

                // Add (replace) the ACL on an object in a bucket.
                await AddACLToExistingObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
 emailAddress);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception amazonS3Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Exception: {amazonS3Exception.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with a canned ACL attached.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// new Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a boolean value indicating success or failure.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithCannedACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string newBucketName)
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = newBucketName,
                BucketRegion = S3Region.EUWest1,
```

```
                // Add a canned ACL.
                CannedACL = S3CannedACL.LogDeliveryWrite,
            };

            var response = await client.PutBucketAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the ACL associated with the Amazon S3 bucket name in the
        /// bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket for which we want to
 get the
        /// ACL list.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns an S3AccessControlList returned from the call to
        /// GetACLAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<S3AccessControlList> GetBucketACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName)
        {
            GetACLResponse response = await client.GetACLAsync(new GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            });

            return response.AccessControlList;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Adds a new ACL to an existing object in the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the Amazon
 S3
        /// bucket containing the object to which we want to apply a new ACL.</
param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the name of the object
        /// to which we want to apply the new ACL.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the person to whom
        /// we will be applying to whom access will be granted.</param>
        public static async Task AddACLToExistingObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 string bucketName, string keyName, string emailAddress)
        {
            // Retrieve the ACL for an object.
            GetACLResponse aclResponse = await client.GetACLAsync(new
 GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
            });

            S3AccessControlList acl = aclResponse.AccessControlList;

            // Retrieve the owner.
            Owner owner = acl.Owner;

            // Clear existing grants.
            acl.Grants.Clear();

            // Add a grant to reset the owner's full permission
            // (the previous clear statement removed all permissions).
            var fullControlGrant = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { CanonicalUser = acl.Owner.Id },
            };
            acl.AddGrant(fullControlGrant.Grantee, S3Permission.FULL_CONTROL);

            // Specify email to identify grantee for granting permissions.
            var grantUsingEmail = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { EmailAddress = emailAddress },
                Permission = S3Permission.WRITE_ACP,
            };

            // Specify log delivery group as grantee.
            var grantLogDeliveryGroup = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { URI = "http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/
s3/LogDelivery" },
                Permission = S3Permission.WRITE,
            };
```

```
            // Create a new ACL.
            var newAcl = new S3AccessControlList
            {
                Grants = new List<S3Grant> { grantUsingEmail,
grantLogDeliveryGroup },
                Owner = owner,
            };

            // Set the new ACL. We're throwing away the response here.
            _ = await client.PutACLAsync(new PutACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                AccessControlList = newAcl,
            });
        }

    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - GetBucketAcl
  - GetObjectAcl
  - PutBucketAcl
  - PutObjectAcl

Manage large Amazon SQS messages using Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use the Amazon SQS Extended Client Library to work with large Amazon SQS messages.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSExtendedClient;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ExtendedClientConfiguration;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import org.joda.time.DateTime;
import org.joda.time.format.DateTimeFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketLifecycleConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpirationStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleExpiration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRuleFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;

/**
 * Example of using Amazon SQS Extended Client Library for Java 2.x.
 */
public class SqsExtendedClientExample {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SqsExtendedClientExample.class);

    private String s3BucketName;
```

```
    private String queueUrl;
    private final String queueName;
    private final S3Client s3Client;
    private final SqsClient sqsExtendedClient;
    private final int messageSize;

    /**
     * Constructor with default clients and message size.
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample() {
        this(S3Client.create(), 300000);
    }

    /**
     * Constructor with custom S3 client and message size.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client to use
     * @param messageSize The size of the test message to create
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample(S3Client s3Client, int messageSize) {
        this.s3Client = s3Client;
        this.messageSize = messageSize;

        // Generate a unique bucket name.
        this.s3BucketName = UUID.randomUUID() + "-" +
                DateTimeFormat.forPattern("yyMMdd-hhmmss").print(new DateTime());

        // Generate a unique queue name.
        this.queueName = "MyQueue-" + UUID.randomUUID();

        // Configure the SQS extended client.
        final ExtendedClientConfiguration extendedClientConfig = new
ExtendedClientConfiguration()
                .withPayloadSupportEnabled(s3Client, s3BucketName);

        this.sqsExtendedClient = new
AmazonSQSExtendedClient(SqsClient.builder().build(), extendedClientConfig);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsExtendedClientExample example = new SqsExtendedClientExample();
        try {
            example.setup();
            example.sendAndReceiveMessage();
```

```
        } finally {
            example.cleanup();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Send a large message and receive it back.
     *
     * @return The received message
     */
    public Message sendAndReceiveMessage() {
        try {
            // Create a large message.
            char[] chars = new char[messageSize];
            Arrays.fill(chars, 'x');
            String largeMessage = new String(chars);

            // Send the message.
            final SendMessageRequest sendMessageRequest =
SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody(largeMessage)
                    .build();

            sqsExtendedClient.sendMessage(sendMessageRequest);
            logger.info("Sent message of size: {}", largeMessage.length());

            // Receive and return the message.
            final ReceiveMessageResponse receiveMessageResponse =
sqsExtendedClient.receiveMessage(
                    ReceiveMessageRequest.builder().queueUrl(queueUrl).build());

            List<Message> messages = receiveMessageResponse.messages();
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No messages received");
            }

            Message message = messages.getFirst();
            logger.info("\nMessage received.");
            logger.info("  ID: {}", message.messageId());
            logger.info("  Receipt handle: {}", message.receiptHandle());
            logger.info("  Message body size: {}", message.body().length());
            logger.info("  Message body (first 5 characters): {}",
message.body().substring(0, 5));
```

```
            return message;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.error("Error during message processing: {}", e.getMessage(),
e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide.
- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SendMessage

Manage versioned Amazon S3 objects in batches with a Lambda function using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to manage versioned S3 objects in batches with a Lambda function.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to manipulate Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) versioned objects in batches by creating jobs that call AWS Lambda functions to perform processing. This example creates a version-enabled bucket, uploads the stanzas from the poem *You Are Old, Father William* by Lewis Carroll, and uses Amazon S3 batch jobs to twist the poem in various ways.

Learn how to:

- Create Lambda functions that operate on versioned objects.
- Create a manifest of objects to update.
- Create batch jobs that invoke Lambda functions to update objects.

- Delete Lambda functions.
- Empty and delete a versioned bucket.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon S3

Parse Amazon S3 URIs using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to parse Amazon S3 URIs to extract important components like the bucket name and object key.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Parse an Amazon S3 URI by using the S3Uri class.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Uri;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Utilities;

import java.net.URI;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     *
     * @param s3Client    - An S3Client through which you acquire an S3Uri
 instance.
```

```
     * @param s3ObjectUrl - A complex URL (String) that is used to demonstrate
 S3Uri
     *                    capabilities.
     */
    public static void parseS3UriExample(S3Client s3Client, String s3ObjectUrl) {
        logger.info(s3ObjectUrl);
        // Console output:
        // 'https://s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/myBucket/resources/doc.txt?
versionId=abc123&partNumber=77&partNumber=88'.

        // Create an S3Utilities object using the configuration of the s3Client.
        S3Utilities s3Utilities = s3Client.utilities();

        // From a String URL create a URI object to pass to the parseUri()
 method.
        URI uri = URI.create(s3ObjectUrl);
        S3Uri s3Uri = s3Utilities.parseUri(uri);

        // If the URI contains no value for the Region, bucket or key, the SDK
 returns
        // an empty Optional.
        // The SDK returns decoded URI values.

        Region region = s3Uri.region().orElse(null);
        log("region", region);
        // Console output: 'region: us-west-1'.

        String bucket = s3Uri.bucket().orElse(null);
        log("bucket", bucket);
        // Console output: 'bucket: myBucket'.

        String key = s3Uri.key().orElse(null);
        log("key", key);
        // Console output: 'key: resources/doc.txt'.

        Boolean isPathStyle = s3Uri.isPathStyle();
        log("isPathStyle", isPathStyle);
        // Console output: 'isPathStyle: true'.

        // If the URI contains no query parameters, the SDK returns an empty map.
        Map<String, List<String>> queryParams = s3Uri.rawQueryParameters();
        log("rawQueryParameters", queryParams);
        // Console output: 'rawQueryParameters: {versionId=[abc123],
 partNumber=[77,
```

```
        // 88]}'.

        // Retrieve the first or all values for a query parameter as shown in the
        // following code.
        String versionId =
 s3Uri.firstMatchingRawQueryParameter("versionId").orElse(null);
        log("firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-versionId", versionId);
        // Console output: 'firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-versionId: abc123'.

        String partNumber =
 s3Uri.firstMatchingRawQueryParameter("partNumber").orElse(null);
        log("firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-partNumber", partNumber);
        // Console output: 'firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-partNumber: 77'.

        List<String> partNumbers =
 s3Uri.firstMatchingRawQueryParameters("partNumber");
        log("firstMatchingRawQueryParameter", partNumbers);
        // Console output: 'firstMatchingRawQueryParameter: [77, 88]'.

        /*
         * Object keys and query parameters with reserved or unsafe characters,
 must be
         * URL-encoded.
         * For example replace whitespace " " with "%20".
         * Valid:
         * "https://s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/myBucket/object%20key?query=
%5Bbrackets%5D"
         * Invalid:
         * "https://s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/myBucket/object key?
query=[brackets]"
         *
         * Virtual-hosted-style URIs with bucket names that contain a dot, ".",
 the dot
         * must not be URL-encoded.
         * Valid: "https://my.Bucket.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/key"
         * Invalid: "https://my%2EBucket.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/key"
         */
    }

    private static void log(String s3UriElement, Object element) {
        if (element == null) {
            logger.info("{}: {}", s3UriElement, "null");
        } else {
            logger.info("{}: {}", s3UriElement, element);
```

```
        }
    }
```

Perform a multipart copy of an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to perform a multipart copy of an Amazon S3 object.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to perform a multi-part copy from one Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to another.
/// </summary>
public class MPUapiCopyObj
{
    private const string SourceBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
    private const string TargetBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
    private const string SourceObjectKey = "example.mov";
    private const string TargetObjectKey = "copied_video_file.mov";

    /// <summary>
    /// This method starts the multi-part upload.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Copying object...");
            await MPUCopyObjectAsync(s3Client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method uses the passed client object to perform a multipart
        /// copy operation.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client object that will be used
        /// to perform the copy.</param>
        public static async Task MPUCopyObjectAsync(AmazonS3Client client)
        {
            // Create a list to store the copy part responses.
            var copyResponses = new List<CopyPartResponse>();

            // Setup information required to initiate the multipart upload.
            var initiateRequest = new InitiateMultipartUploadRequest
            {
                BucketName = TargetBucket,
                Key = TargetObjectKey,
            };

            // Initiate the upload.
            InitiateMultipartUploadResponse initResponse =
                await client.InitiateMultipartUploadAsync(initiateRequest);

            // Save the upload ID.
            string uploadId = initResponse.UploadId;

            try
            {
                // Get the size of the object.
                var metadataRequest = new GetObjectMetadataRequest
                {
                    BucketName = SourceBucket,
                    Key = SourceObjectKey,
                };

                GetObjectMetadataResponse metadataResponse =
                    await client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);
                var objectSize = metadataResponse.ContentLength; // Length in
bytes.

                // Copy the parts.
```

```
                var partSize = 5 * (long)Math.Pow(2, 20); // Part size is 5 MB.

                long bytePosition = 0;
                for (int i = 1; bytePosition < objectSize; i++)
                {
                    var copyRequest = new CopyPartRequest
                    {
                        DestinationBucket = TargetBucket,
                        DestinationKey = TargetObjectKey,
                        SourceBucket = SourceBucket,
                        SourceKey = SourceObjectKey,
                        UploadId = uploadId,
                        FirstByte = bytePosition,
                        LastByte = bytePosition + partSize - 1 >= objectSize ?
objectSize - 1 : bytePosition + partSize - 1,
                        PartNumber = i,
                    };

                    copyResponses.Add(await client.CopyPartAsync(copyRequest));

                    bytePosition += partSize;
                }

                // Set up to complete the copy.
                var completeRequest = new CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = TargetBucket,
                    Key = TargetObjectKey,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };
                completeRequest.AddPartETags(copyResponses);

                // Complete the copy.
                CompleteMultipartUploadResponse completeUploadResponse =
                    await client.CompleteMultipartUploadAsync(completeRequest);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
Message:'{e.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Unknown encountered on server.
Message:'{e.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - GetObjectMetadata
  - UploadPartCopy

Receive and process Amazon S3 event notifications by using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to work with S3 event notifications in an object-oriented way.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example show how to process S3 notification event by using Amazon SQS.

```
    /**
     * This method receives S3 event notifications by using an SqsAsyncClient.
     * After the client receives the messages it deserializes the JSON payload
and logs them. It uses
     * the S3EventNotification class (part of the S3 event notification API for
Java) to deserialize
     * the JSON payload and access the messages in an object-oriented way.
     *
```

```
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the AWS SQS queue that receives the S3 event
 notifications.
     * @see <a href="https://sdk.amazonaws.com/java/api/latest/software/amazon/
awssdk/eventnotifications/s3/model/package-summary.html">S3EventNotification
 API</a>.
     * <p>
     * To use S3 event notification serialization/deserialization to objects, add
 the following
     * dependency to your Maven pom.xml file.
     * <dependency>
     * <groupId>software.amazon.awssdk</groupId>
     * <artifactId>s3-event-notifications</artifactId>
     * <version><LATEST></version>
     * </dependency>
     * <p>
     * The S3 event notification API became available with version 2.25.11 of the
 Java SDK.
     * <p>
     * This example shows the use of the API with AWS SQS, but it can be used to
 process S3 event notifications
     * in AWS SNS or AWS Lambda as well.
     * <p>
     * Note: The S3EventNotification class does not work with messages routed
 through AWS EventBridge.
     */
    static void processS3Events(String bucketName, String queueUrl, String
 queueArn) {
        try {
            // Configure the bucket to send Object Created and Object Tagging
 notifications to an existing SQS queue.
            s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                    .notificationConfiguration(ncb -> ncb
                            .queueConfigurations(qcb -> qcb
                                    .events(Event.S3_OBJECT_CREATED,
 Event.S3_OBJECT_TAGGING)
                                    .queueArn(queueArn)))
                            .bucket(bucketName)
            ).join();

            triggerS3EventNotifications(bucketName);
            // Wait for event notifications to propagate.
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(5).toMillis());

            boolean didReceiveMessages = true;
```

```
            while (didReceiveMessages) {
                // Display the number of messages that are available in the
queue.
                sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(b -> b
                                .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.attributeNames(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)
                        ).thenAccept(attributeResponse ->
                                logger.info("Approximate number of messages in
the queue: {}",

attributeResponse.attributes().get(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)))
                        .join();

                // Receive the messages.
                ReceiveMessageResponse response = sqsClient.receiveMessage(b -> b
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                ).get();
                logger.info("Count of received messages: {}",
response.messages().size());
                didReceiveMessages = !response.messages().isEmpty();

                // Create a collection to hold the received message for deletion
                // after we log the messages.
                HashSet<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> messagesToDelete = new
HashSet<>();
                // Process each message.
                response.messages().forEach(message -> {
                    logger.info("Message id: {}", message.messageId());
                    // Deserialize JSON message body to a S3EventNotification
object
                    // to access messages in an object-oriented way.
                    S3EventNotification event =
S3EventNotification.fromJson(message.body());

                    // Log the S3 event notification record details.
                    if (event.getRecords() != null) {
                        event.getRecords().forEach(record -> {
                            String eventName = record.getEventName();
                            String key = record.getS3().getObject().getKey();
                            logger.info(record.toString());
                            logger.info("Event name is {} and key is {}",
eventName, key);
                        });
```

```
                    }
                    // Add logged messages to collection for batch deletion.
                    messagesToDelete.add(DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                            .id(message.messageId())
                            .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                            .build());
                });
                // Delete messages.
                if (!messagesToDelete.isEmpty()) {

sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .entries(messagesToDelete)
                            .build()
                    ).join();
                }
            } // End of while block.
        } catch (InterruptedException | ExecutionException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage

Save EXIF and other image information using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Get EXIF information from a a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file.
- Upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (labels) in the file.
- Add the EXIF and label information to an Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Get EXIF information from a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file, upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (*labels* in Amazon Rekognition) in the file, and add the EXIF and label information to a Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Send S3 event notifications to Amazon EventBridge using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to enable a bucket to send S3 event notifications to EventBridge and route notifications to an Amazon SNS topic and Amazon SQS queue.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /** This method configures a bucket to send events to AWS EventBridge and
creates a rule
    * to route the S3 object created events to a topic and a queue.
    *
    * @param bucketName Name of existing bucket
    * @param topicArn ARN of existing topic to receive S3 event notifications
    * @param queueArn ARN of existing queue to receive S3 event notifications
    *
```

```
    *  An AWS CloudFormation stack sets up the bucket, queue, topic before the
method runs.
    */
   public static String setBucketNotificationToEventBridge(String bucketName,
String topicArn, String queueArn) {
       try {
           // Enable bucket to emit S3 Event notifications to EventBridge.
           s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .notificationConfiguration(b1 -> b1
                           .eventBridgeConfiguration(
                                   SdkBuilder::build)
                   ).build()).join();

           // Create an EventBridge rule to route Object Created notifications.
           PutRuleRequest putRuleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                   .name(RULE_NAME)
                   .eventPattern("""
                           {
                             "source": ["aws.s3"],
                             "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
                             "detail": {
                               "bucket": {
                                 "name": ["%s"]
                               }
                             }
                           }
                           """.formatted(bucketName))
                   .build();

           // Add the rule to the default event bus.
           PutRuleResponse putRuleResponse =
eventBridgeClient.putRule(putRuleRequest)
                   .whenComplete((r, t) -> {
                       if (t != null) {
                           logger.error("Error creating event bus rule: " +
t.getMessage(), t);
                           throw new RuntimeException(t.getCause().getMessage(),
t);
                       }
                       logger.info("Event bus rule creation request sent
successfully. ARN is: {}", r.ruleArn());
                   }).join();
```

```
            // Add the existing SNS topic and SQS queue as targets to the rule.
            eventBridgeClient.putTargets(b -> b
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .rule(RULE_NAME)
                    .targets(List.of (
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(queueArn)
                                    .id("Queue")
                                    .build(),
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(topicArn)
                                    .id("Topic")
                                    .build())
                            )
                    ).join();
            return putRuleResponse.ruleArn();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Track an Amazon S3 object upload or download using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to track an Amazon S3 object upload or download.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Track the progress of a file upload.

```
   public void trackUploadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
bucketName,
                            String key, URI filePathURI) {
       UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
               .putObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
               .addTransferListener(LoggingTransferListener.create())  // Add
listener.
               .source(Paths.get(filePathURI))
               .build();

       FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);

       fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
       /*
           The SDK provides a LoggingTransferListener implementation of the
TransferListener interface.
           You can also implement the interface to provide your own logic.

           Configure log4J2 with settings such as the following.
               <Configuration status="WARN">
                   <Appenders>
                       <Console name="AlignedConsoleAppender"
target="SYSTEM_OUT">
                           <PatternLayout pattern="%m%n"/>
                       </Console>
                   </Appenders>

                   <Loggers>
                       <logger
name="software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener"
level="INFO" additivity="false">
```

```
                            <AppenderRef ref="AlignedConsoleAppender"/>
                        </logger>
                    </Loggers>
                </Configuration>

            Log4J2 logs the progress. The following is example output for a 21.3
MB file upload.
                Transfer initiated...
                |                    | 0.0%
                |====                | 21.1%
                |============        | 60.5%
                |====================| 100.0%
                Transfer complete!
        */
    }
```

Track the progress of a file download.

```
    public void trackDownloadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
bucketName,
                             String key, String downloadedFileWithPath) {
        DownloadFileRequest downloadFileRequest = DownloadFileRequest.builder()
                .getObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
                .addTransferListener(LoggingTransferListener.create())  // Add
listener.
                .destination(Paths.get(downloadedFileWithPath))
                .build();

        FileDownload downloadFile =
transferManager.downloadFile(downloadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileDownload downloadResult =
downloadFile.completionFuture().join();
        /*
            The SDK provides a LoggingTransferListener implementation of the
TransferListener interface.
            You can also implement the interface to provide your own logic.

            Configure log4J2 with settings such as the following.
                <Configuration status="WARN">
                    <Appenders>
```

```
                        <Console name="AlignedConsoleAppender"
target="SYSTEM_OUT">
                            <PatternLayout pattern="%m%n"/>
                        </Console>
                    </Appenders>

                    <Loggers>
                        <logger
name="software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener"
level="INFO" additivity="false">
                            <AppenderRef ref="AlignedConsoleAppender"/>
                        </logger>
                    </Loggers>
                </Configuration>

            Log4J2 logs the progress. The following is example output for a 21.3
MB file download.
                Transfer initiated...
                |=======             | 39.4%
                |===============     | 78.8%
                |====================| 100.0%
                Transfer complete!
        */
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda

The following code example shows how to transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to add custom code to standard S3 GET requests to modify the requested object retrieved from S3 so that the object suit the needs of the requesting client or application.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Amazon S3

Example approaches for unit and integration testing with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to examples for best-practice techniques when writing unit and integration tests using an AWS SDK.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Cargo.toml for testing examples.

```
[package]
name = "testing-examples"
version = "0.1.0"
authors = [
  "John Disanti <jdisanti@amazon.com>",
  "Doug Schwartz <dougsch@amazon.com>",
]
edition = "2021"

[dependencies]
async-trait = "0.1.51"
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-credential-types = { version = "1.0.1", features = [ "hardcoded-
credentials", ] }
aws-sdk-s3 = { version = "1.4.0" }
aws-smithy-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
```

```
aws-smithy-runtime = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["test-util"] }
aws-smithy-runtime-api = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["test-util"] }
aws-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
clap = { version = "4.4", features = ["derive"] }
http = "0.2.9"
mockall = "0.11.4"
serde_json = "1"
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full"] }
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }

[[bin]]
name = "main"
path = "src/main.rs"
```

Unit testing example using automock and a service wrapper.

```
use aws_sdk_s3 as s3;
#[allow(unused_imports)]
use mockall::automock;

use s3::operation::list_objects_v2::{ListObjectsV2Error, ListObjectsV2Output};

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockS3Impl as S3;
#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use S3Impl as S3;

#[allow(dead_code)]
pub struct S3Impl {
    inner: s3::Client,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl S3Impl {
    #[allow(dead_code)]
    pub fn new(inner: s3::Client) -> Self {
        Self { inner }
    }

    #[allow(dead_code)]
    pub async fn list_objects(
```

```
        &self,
        bucket: &str,
        prefix: &str,
        continuation_token: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<ListObjectsV2Output, s3::error::SdkError<ListObjectsV2Error>> {
        self.inner
            .list_objects_v2()
            .bucket(bucket)
            .prefix(prefix)
            .set_continuation_token(continuation_token)
            .send()
            .await
    }
}

#[allow(dead_code)]
pub async fn determine_prefix_file_size(
    // Now we take a reference to our trait object instead of the S3 client
    // s3_list: ListObjectsService,
    s3_list: S3,
    bucket: &str,
    prefix: &str,
) -> Result<usize, s3::Error> {
    let mut next_token: Option<String> = None;
    let mut total_size_bytes = 0;
    loop {
        let result = s3_list
            .list_objects(bucket, prefix, next_token.take())
            .await?;

        // Add up the file sizes we got back
        for object in result.contents() {
            total_size_bytes += object.size().unwrap_or(0) as usize;
        }

        // Handle pagination, and break the loop if there are no more pages
        next_token = result.next_continuation_token.clone();
        if next_token.is_none() {
            break;
        }
    }
    Ok(total_size_bytes)
}
```

```
#[cfg(test)]
mod test {
    use super::*;
    use mockall::predicate::eq;

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_single_page() {
        let mut mock = MockS3Impl::default();
        mock.expect_list_objects()
            .with(eq("test-bucket"), eq("test-prefix"), eq(None))
            .return_once(|_, _, _| {
                Ok(ListObjectsV2Output::builder()
                    .set_contents(Some(vec![
                        // Mock content for ListObjectsV2 response
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(5).build(),
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(2).build(),
                    ]))
                    .build())
            });

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(mock, "test-bucket", "test-prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Verify we got the correct total size back
        assert_eq!(7, size);
    }

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_multiple_pages() {
        // Create the Mock instance with two pages of objects now
        let mut mock = MockS3Impl::default();
        mock.expect_list_objects()
            .with(eq("test-bucket"), eq("test-prefix"), eq(None))
            .return_once(|_, _, _| {
                Ok(ListObjectsV2Output::builder()
                    .set_contents(Some(vec![
                        // Mock content for ListObjectsV2 response
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(5).build(),
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(2).build(),
                    ]))
                    .set_next_continuation_token(Some("next".to_string()))
                    .build())
```

```
            });
        mock.expect_list_objects()
            .with(
                eq("test-bucket"),
                eq("test-prefix"),
                eq(Some("next".to_string())),
            )
            .return_once(|_, _, _| {
                Ok(ListObjectsV2Output::builder()
                    .set_contents(Some(vec![
                        // Mock content for ListObjectsV2 response
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(3).build(),
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(9).build(),
                    ]))
                    .build())
            });

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(mock, "test-bucket", "test-prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        assert_eq!(19, size);
    }
}
```

Integration testing example using StaticReplayClient.

```
use aws_sdk_s3 as s3;

#[allow(dead_code)]
pub async fn determine_prefix_file_size(
    // Now we take a reference to our trait object instead of the S3 client
    // s3_list: ListObjectsService,
    s3: s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    prefix: &str,
) -> Result<usize, s3::Error> {
    let mut next_token: Option<String> = None;
    let mut total_size_bytes = 0;
    loop {
```

```
        let result = s3
            .list_objects_v2()
            .prefix(prefix)
            .bucket(bucket)
            .set_continuation_token(next_token.take())
            .send()
            .await?;

        // Add up the file sizes we got back
        for object in result.contents() {
            total_size_bytes += object.size().unwrap_or(0) as usize;
        }

        // Handle pagination, and break the loop if there are no more pages
        next_token = result.next_continuation_token.clone();
        if next_token.is_none() {
            break;
        }
    }
    Ok(total_size_bytes)
}

#[allow(dead_code)]
fn make_s3_test_credentials() -> s3::config::Credentials {
    s3::config::Credentials::new(
        "ATESTCLIENT",
        "astestsecretkey",
        Some("atestsessiontoken".to_string()),
        None,
        "",
    )
}

#[cfg(test)]
mod test {
    use super::*;
    use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
    use aws_sdk_s3 as s3;
    use aws_smithy_runtime::client::http::test_util::{ReplayEvent,
 StaticReplayClient};
    use aws_smithy_types::body::SdkBody;

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_single_page() {
```

```
        let page_1 = ReplayEvent::new(
                http::Request::builder()
                    .method("GET")
                    .uri("https://test-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/?list-
type=2&prefix=test-prefix")
                    .body(SdkBody::empty())
                    .unwrap(),
                http::Response::builder()
                    .status(200)
                    .body(SdkBody::from(include_str!("./testing/
response_1.xml")))
                    .unwrap(),
            );
        let replay_client = StaticReplayClient::new(vec![page_1]);
        let client: s3::Client = s3::Client::from_conf(
            s3::Config::builder()
                .behavior_version(BehaviorVersion::latest())
                .credentials_provider(make_s3_test_credentials())
                .region(s3::config::Region::new("us-east-1"))
                .http_client(replay_client.clone())
                .build(),
        );

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(client, "test-bucket", "test-
prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Verify we got the correct total size back
        assert_eq!(7, size);
        replay_client.assert_requests_match(&[]);
    }

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_multiple_pages() {
        let page_1 = ReplayEvent::new(
                http::Request::builder()
                    .method("GET")
                    .uri("https://test-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/?list-
type=2&prefix=test-prefix")
                    .body(SdkBody::empty())
                    .unwrap(),
                http::Response::builder()
```

```
                    .status(200)
                    .body(SdkBody::from(include_str!("./testing/
response_multi_1.xml")))
                    .unwrap(),
            );
        let page_2 = ReplayEvent::new(
                http::Request::builder()
                    .method("GET")
                    .uri("https://test-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/?list-
type=2&prefix=test-prefix&continuation-token=next")
                    .body(SdkBody::empty())
                    .unwrap(),
                http::Response::builder()
                    .status(200)
                    .body(SdkBody::from(include_str!("./testing/
response_multi_2.xml")))
                    .unwrap(),
            );
        let replay_client = StaticReplayClient::new(vec![page_1, page_2]);
        let client: s3::Client = s3::Client::from_conf(
            s3::Config::builder()
                .behavior_version(BehaviorVersion::latest())
                .credentials_provider(make_s3_test_credentials())
                .region(s3::config::Region::new("us-east-1"))
                .http_client(replay_client.clone())
                .build(),
        );

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(client, "test-bucket", "test-
prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        assert_eq!(19, size);

        replay_client.assert_requests_match(&[]);
    }
}
```

Recursively upload a local directory to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket

The following code example shows how to upload a local directory recursively to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an S3TransferManager to upload a local directory. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedDirectoryUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DirectoryUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadDirectoryRequest;

import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.UUID;

    public Integer uploadDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
            URI sourceDirectory, String bucketName) {
        DirectoryUpload directoryUpload =
 transferManager.uploadDirectory(UploadDirectoryRequest.builder()
                .source(Paths.get(sourceDirectory))
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build());

        CompletedDirectoryUpload completedDirectoryUpload =
 directoryUpload.completionFuture().join();
```

```
        completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers()
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
 fail.toString()));
        return completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers().size();
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadDirectory in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call functions that transfer files to and from an S3 bucket using the Amazon S3 TransferUtility.

```
global using System.Text;
global using Amazon.S3;
global using Amazon.S3.Model;
global using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
global using TransferUtilityBasics;



// This Amazon S3 client uses the default user credentials
// defined for this computer.
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
var transferUtil = new TransferUtility(client);
```

```
IConfiguration _configuration;

_configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
    .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
    .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from JSON file.
    .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
        true) // Optionally load local settings.
    .Build();

// Edit the values in settings.json to use an S3 bucket and files that
// exist on your AWS account and on the local computer where you
// run this scenario.
var bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"];
var localPath =
 $"{Environment.GetFolderPath(Environment.SpecialFolder.ApplicationData)}\
\TransferFolder";

DisplayInstructions();

PressEnter();

Console.WriteLine();

// Upload a single file to an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Upload a single file");

var fileToUpload = _configuration["FileToUpload"];
Console.WriteLine($"Uploading {fileToUpload} to the S3 bucket, {bucketName}.");

var success = await TransferMethods.UploadSingleFileAsync(transferUtil,
 bucketName, fileToUpload, localPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded the file, {fileToUpload} to
 {bucketName}.");
}

PressEnter();

// Upload a local directory to an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Upload all files from a local directory");
Console.WriteLine("Upload all the files in a local folder to an S3 bucket.");
const string keyPrefix = "UploadFolder";
var uploadPath = $"{localPath}\\UploadFolder";
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"Uploading the files in {uploadPath} to {bucketName}");
DisplayTitle($"{uploadPath} files");
DisplayLocalFiles(uploadPath);
Console.WriteLine();

PressEnter();

success = await TransferMethods.UploadFullDirectoryAsync(transferUtil,
 bucketName, keyPrefix, uploadPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded the files in {uploadPath} to
 {bucketName}.");
    Console.WriteLine($"{bucketName} currently contains the following files:");
    await DisplayBucketFiles(client, bucketName, keyPrefix);
    Console.WriteLine();
}

PressEnter();

// Download a single file from an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Download a single file");
Console.WriteLine("Now we will download a single file from an S3 bucket.");

var keyName = _configuration["FileToDownload"];

Console.WriteLine($"Downloading {keyName} from {bucketName}.");

success = await TransferMethods.DownloadSingleFileAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 keyName, localPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine("$Successfully downloaded the file, {keyName} from
 {bucketName}.");
}

PressEnter();

// Download the contents of a directory from an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Download the contents of an S3 bucket");
var s3Path = _configuration["S3Path"];
var downloadPath = $"{localPath}\\{s3Path}";
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"Downloading the contents of {bucketName}\\{s3Path}");
Console.WriteLine($"{bucketName}\\{s3Path} contains the following files:");
await DisplayBucketFiles(client, bucketName, s3Path);
Console.WriteLine();

success = await TransferMethods.DownloadS3DirectoryAsync(transferUtil,
 bucketName, s3Path, downloadPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded the files in {bucketName} to
 {downloadPath}.");
    Console.WriteLine($"{downloadPath} now contains the following files:");
    DisplayLocalFiles(downloadPath);
}

Console.WriteLine("\nThe TransferUtility Basics application has completed.");
PressEnter();

// Displays the title for a section of the scenario.
static void DisplayTitle(string titleText)
{
    var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    Console.WriteLine(CenterText(titleText));
    Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
}

// Displays a description of the actions to be performed by the scenario.
static void DisplayInstructions()
{
    var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    DisplayTitle("Amazon S3 Transfer Utility Basics");
    Console.WriteLine("This program shows how to use the Amazon S3 Transfer
 Utility.");
    Console.WriteLine("It performs the following actions:");
    Console.WriteLine("\t1. Upload a single object to an S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t2. Upload an entire directory from the local computer to
 an\n\t  S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t3. Download a single object from an S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t4. Download the objects in an S3 bucket to a local
 directory.");
    Console.WriteLine($"\n{sepBar}");
```

```
}

// Pauses the scenario.
static void PressEnter()
{
    Console.WriteLine("Press <Enter> to continue.");
    _ = Console.ReadLine();
    Console.WriteLine("\n");
}

// Returns the string textToCenter, padded on the left with spaces
// that center the text on the console display.
static string CenterText(string textToCenter)
{
    var centeredText = new StringBuilder();
    var screenWidth = Console.WindowWidth;
    centeredText.Append(new string(' ', (int)(screenWidth -
 textToCenter.Length) / 2));
    centeredText.Append(textToCenter);
    return centeredText.ToString();
}

// Displays a list of file names included in the specified path.
static void DisplayLocalFiles(string localPath)
{
    var fileList = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
    if (fileList.Length > 0)
    {
        foreach (var fileName in fileList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(fileName);
        }
    }
}

// Displays a list of the files in the specified S3 bucket and prefix.
static async Task DisplayBucketFiles(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName, string
 s3Path)
{
    ListObjectsV2Request request = new()
    {
        BucketName = bucketName,
        Prefix = s3Path,
        MaxKeys = 5,
```

```
    };

    var response = new ListObjectsV2Response();

    do
    {
        response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);

        response.S3Objects
            .ForEach(obj => Console.WriteLine($"{obj.Key}"));

        // If the response is truncated, set the request ContinuationToken
        // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
        request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
    } while (response.IsTruncated);
}
```

Upload a single file.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads a single file from the local computer to an S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket where the file
        /// will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="fileName">The name of the file to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local path where the file is stored.</
param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadSingleFileAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string fileName,
            string localPath)
        {
            if (File.Exists($"{localPath}\\{fileName}"))
            {
                try
```

```
                {
                    await transferUtil.UploadAsync(new
TransferUtilityUploadRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        Key = fileName,
                        FilePath = $"{localPath}\\{fileName}",
                    });

                    return true;
                }
                catch (AmazonS3Exception s3Ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {fileName} from
{localPath} because:");
                    Console.WriteLine(s3Ex.Message);
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{fileName} does not exist in {localPath}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Upload an entire local directory.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads all the files in a local directory to a directory in an S3
        /// bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket where the files
        /// will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="keyPrefix">The key prefix is the S3 directory where
        /// the files will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local directory that contains the files
        /// to be uploaded.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadFullDirectoryAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string keyPrefix,
            string localPath)
        {
            if (Directory.Exists(localPath))
            {
                try
                {
                    await transferUtil.UploadDirectoryAsync(new
 TransferUtilityUploadDirectoryRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        KeyPrefix = keyPrefix,
                        Directory = localPath,
                    });

                    return true;
                }
                catch (AmazonS3Exception s3Ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Can't upload the contents of {localPath}
 because:");
                    Console.WriteLine(s3Ex?.Message);
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The directory {localPath} does not exist.");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Download a single file.

```
        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Download a single file from an S3 bucket to the local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket containing the
        /// file to download.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the file to download.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The path on the local computer where the
        /// downloaded file will be saved.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the results of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadSingleFileAsync(
        TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string localPath)
        {
            await transferUtil.DownloadAsync(new TransferUtilityDownloadRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                FilePath = $"{localPath}\\{keyName}",
            });

            return (File.Exists($"{localPath}\\{keyName}"));
        }
```

Download contents of an S3 bucket.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Downloads the contents of a directory in an S3 bucket to a
        /// directory on the local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket containing the files to
 download.</param>
        /// <param name="s3Path">The S3 directory where the files are located.</
param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local path to which the files will be
```

```
        /// saved.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadS3DirectoryAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string s3Path,
            string localPath)
        {
            int fileCount = 0;

            // If the directory doesn't exist, it will be created.
            if (Directory.Exists(s3Path))
            {
                var files = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
                fileCount = files.Length;
            }

            await transferUtil.DownloadDirectoryAsync(new
 TransferUtilityDownloadDirectoryRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                LocalDirectory = localPath,
                S3Directory = s3Path,
            });

            if (Directory.Exists(localPath))
            {
                var files = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
                if (files.Length > fileCount)
                {
                    return true;
                }

                // No change in the number of files. Assume
                // the download failed.
                return false;
            }

            // The local directory doesn't exist. No files
            // were downloaded.
            return false;
        }
```

Track the progress of an upload using the TransferUtility.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Transfer;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to track the progress of a multipart upload
/// using the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) TransferUtility to
/// upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
/// </summary>
public class TrackMPUUsingHighLevelAPI
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "sample_pic.png";
        string path = "filepath/directory/";
        string filePath = $"{path}{keyName}";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2 or RegionEndpoint.USEast2.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

        await TrackMPUAsync(client, bucketName, filePath, keyName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts an Amazon S3 multipart upload and assigns an event handler to
    /// track the progress of the upload.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
    /// perform the multipart upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to which to upload
    /// the file.</param>
    /// <param name="filePath">The path, including the file name of the
    /// file to be uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The file name to be used in the
```

```
        /// destination Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task TrackMPUAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string filePath,
            string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var fileTransferUtility = new TransferUtility(client);

                // Use TransferUtilityUploadRequest to configure options.
                // In this example we subscribe to an event.
                var uploadRequest =
                    new TransferUtilityUploadRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        FilePath = filePath,
                        Key = keyName,
                    };

                uploadRequest.UploadProgressEvent +=
                    new EventHandler<UploadProgressArgs>(
                        UploadRequest_UploadPartProgressEvent);

                await fileTransferUtility.UploadAsync(uploadRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Upload completed");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error:: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Event handler to check the progress of the multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="sender">The object that raised the event.</param>
        /// <param name="e">The object that contains multipart upload
        /// information.</param>
        public static void UploadRequest_UploadPartProgressEvent(object sender,
UploadProgressArgs e)
        {
            // Process event.
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"{e.TransferredBytes}/{e.TotalBytes}");
        }
    }
```

Upload an object with encryption.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Security.Cryptography;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) low level API to
    /// perform a multipart upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class SSECLowLevelMPUcopyObject
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string existingBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string sourceKeyName = "sample_file.txt";
            string targetKeyName = "sample_file_copy.txt";
            string filePath = $"sample\\{targetKeyName}";

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USEast1.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            // Create the encryption key.
            var base64Key = CreateEncryptionKey();

            await CreateSampleObjUsingClientEncryptionKeyAsync(
                client,
                existingBucketName,
                sourceKeyName,
                filePath,
```

```
                base64Key);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates the encryption key to use with the multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <returns>A string containing the base64-encoded key for encrypting
        /// the multipart upload.</returns>
        public static string CreateEncryptionKey()
        {
            Aes aesEncryption = Aes.Create();
            aesEncryption.KeySize = 256;
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
            string base64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);
            return base64Key;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates and uploads an object using a multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 object used to
        /// initialize and perform the multipart upload.</param>
        /// <param name="existingBucketName">The name of the bucket to which
        /// the object will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceKeyName">The source object name.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The location of the source object.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key to use with the upload.</
param>
        public static async Task CreateSampleObjUsingClientEncryptionKeyAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string existingBucketName,
            string sourceKeyName,
            string filePath,
            string base64Key)
        {
            List<UploadPartResponse> uploadResponses = new
 List<UploadPartResponse>();

            InitiateMultipartUploadRequest initiateRequest = new
 InitiateMultipartUploadRequest
            {
                BucketName = existingBucketName,
                Key = sourceKeyName,
```

```
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            InitiateMultipartUploadResponse initResponse =
               await client.InitiateMultipartUploadAsync(initiateRequest);

            long contentLength = new FileInfo(filePath).Length;
            long partSize = 5 * (long)Math.Pow(2, 20); // 5 MB

            try
            {
                long filePosition = 0;
                for (int i = 1; filePosition < contentLength; i++)
                {
                    UploadPartRequest uploadRequest = new UploadPartRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = existingBucketName,
                        Key = sourceKeyName,
                        UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                        PartNumber = i,
                        PartSize = partSize,
                        FilePosition = filePosition,
                        FilePath = filePath,
                        ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                        ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
                    };

                    // Upload part and add response to our list.
                    uploadResponses.Add(await
client.UploadPartAsync(uploadRequest));

                    filePosition += partSize;
                }

                CompleteMultipartUploadRequest completeRequest = new
CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = existingBucketName,
                    Key = sourceKeyName,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };
```

```
                completeRequest.AddPartETags(uploadResponses);

                CompleteMultipartUploadResponse completeUploadResponse =
                    await client.CompleteMultipartUploadAsync(completeRequest);
            }
            catch (Exception exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Exception occurred: {exception.Message}");

                // If there was an error, abort the multipart upload.
                AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMPURequest = new
 AbortMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = existingBucketName,
                    Key = sourceKeyName,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };

                await client.AbortMultipartUploadAsync(abortMPURequest);
            }
        }
    }
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that use upload and download managers to break the data into parts and transfer them concurrently.

```
import (
 "bytes"
```

```
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform
 bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// UploadLargeObject uses an upload manager to upload data to an object in a
 bucket.
// The upload manager breaks large data into parts and uploads the parts
 concurrently.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string, largeObject []byte) error {
 largeBuffer := bytes.NewReader(largeObject)
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 uploader := manager.NewUploader(basics.S3Client, func(u *manager.Uploader) {
  u.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 _, err := uploader.Upload(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
  Body:   largeBuffer,
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  var apiErr smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
   log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
    "The maximum size for a multipart upload is 5TB.", bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't upload large object to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
    bucketName, objectKey, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }

 return err
}



// DownloadLargeObject uses a download manager to download an object from a
 bucket.
// The download manager gets the data in parts and writes them to a buffer until
 all of
// the data has been downloaded.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string) ([]byte, error) {
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 downloader := manager.NewDownloader(basics.S3Client, func(d *manager.Downloader)
 {
  d.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 buffer := manager.NewWriteAtBuffer([]byte{})
 _, err := downloader.Download(ctx, buffer, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't download large object from %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return buffer.Bytes(), err
```

```
}
```

Run an interactive scenario that shows you how to use the upload and download managers in context.

```
import (
 "context"
 "crypto/rand"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/s3/actions"
)

// RunLargeObjectScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use
 Amazon
// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to upload and download large objects.
//
// 1. Create a bucket.
// 3. Upload a large object to the bucket by using an upload manager.
// 5. Download a large object by using a download manager.
// 8. Delete all objects in the bucket.
// 9. Delete the bucket.
//
// This example creates an Amazon S3 service client from the specified sdkConfig
 so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunLargeObjectScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
```

```
    if isMock || questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message (y/
n)?", "y") {
     log.Println(r)
    }
   }
  }()

  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 large object demo.")
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

  s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
  bucketBasics := actions.BucketBasics{S3Client: s3Client}

  bucketName := questioner.Ask("Let's create a bucket. Enter a name for your
  bucket:",
   demotools.NotEmpty{})
  bucketExists, err := bucketBasics.BucketExists(ctx, bucketName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  if !bucketExists {
   err = bucketBasics.CreateBucket(ctx, bucketName, sdkConfig.Region)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   } else {
    log.Println("Bucket created.")
   }
  }
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

  mibs := 30
  log.Printf("Let's create a slice of %v MiB of random bytes and upload it to your
  bucket. ", mibs)
  questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
  largeBytes := make([]byte, 1024*1024*mibs)
  _, _ = rand.Read(largeBytes)
  largeKey := "doc-example-large"
  log.Println("Uploading...")
  err = bucketBasics.UploadLargeObject(ctx, bucketName, largeKey, largeBytes)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Uploaded %v MiB object as %v", mibs, largeKey)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Let's download the %v MiB object.", mibs)
 questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 log.Println("Downloading...")
 largeDownload, err := bucketBasics.DownloadLargeObject(ctx, bucketName,
 largeKey)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Downloaded %v bytes.", len(largeDownload))
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete your bucket and all of its "+
  "contents? (y/n)", "y") {
  log.Println("Deleting object.")
  err = bucketBasics.DeleteObjects(ctx, bucketName, []string{largeKey})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Deleting bucket.")
  err = bucketBasics.DeleteBucket(ctx, bucketName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  log.Println("Okay. Don't forget to delete objects from your bucket to avoid
 charges.")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call functions that transfer files to and from an S3 bucket using the S3TransferManager.

```
   public Integer downloadObjectsToDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
           URI destinationPathURI, String bucketName) {
       DirectoryDownload directoryDownload =
transferManager.downloadDirectory(DownloadDirectoryRequest.builder()
               .destination(Paths.get(destinationPathURI))
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .build());
       CompletedDirectoryDownload completedDirectoryDownload =
directoryDownload.completionFuture().join();

       completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers()
               .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
fail.toString()));
       return completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers().size();
   }
```

Upload an entire local directory.

```
   public Integer uploadDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
           URI sourceDirectory, String bucketName) {
       DirectoryUpload directoryUpload =
transferManager.uploadDirectory(UploadDirectoryRequest.builder()
               .source(Paths.get(sourceDirectory))
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .build());

       CompletedDirectoryUpload completedDirectoryUpload =
directoryUpload.completionFuture().join();
       completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers()
```

```
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
fail.toString()));
        return completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers().size();
    }
```

Upload a single file.

```
    public String uploadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
bucketName,
                             String key, URI filePathURI) {
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
            .source(Paths.get(filePathURI))
            .build();

        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileUpload uploadResult = fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        return uploadResult.response().eTag();
    }
```

The code examples use the following imports.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadFileRequest;
```

```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
```

Use the S3 Transfer Manager on top of the AWS CRT-based S3 client to transparently perform a multipart upload when the size of the content exceeds a threshold. The default threshold size is 8 MB.

```
    /**
     * Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 bucket using the S3TransferManager.
     *
     * @param filePath the file path of the file to be uploaded
     */
    public void multipartUploadWithTransferManager(String filePath) {
        S3TransferManager transferManager = S3TransferManager.create();
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key))
            .source(Paths.get(filePath))
            .build();
        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);
        fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        transferManager.close();
    }
```

Use the S3Client API to perform a multipart upload.

```
    /**
     * Performs a multipart upload to Amazon S3 using the provided S3 client.
     *
     * @param filePath the path to the file to be uploaded
     */
```

```
    public void multipartUploadWithS3Client(String filePath) {

        // Initiate the multipart upload.
        CreateMultipartUploadResponse createMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.createMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));
        String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();

        // Upload the parts of the file.
        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(1024 * 1024 * 5); // 5 MB byte buffer

        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath, "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            long position = 0;
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                long read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                    uploadPartRequest,
                    RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                    .build();
                completedParts.add(part);

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
```

```
        } catch (IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        }

        // Complete the multipart upload.
        s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .uploadId(uploadId)

.multipartUpload(CompletedMultipartUpload.builder().parts(completedParts).build()));
    }
```

Use the S3AsyncClient API with multipart support enabled to perform a multipart upload.

```
    /**
     * Uploads a file to an S3 bucket using the S3AsyncClient and enabling
multipart support.
     *
     * @param filePath the local file path of the file to be uploaded
     */
    public void multipartUploadWithS3AsyncClient(String filePath) {
        // Enable multipart support.
        S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
            .multipartEnabled(true)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> response = s3AsyncClient.putObject(b
-> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key),
            Paths.get(filePath));

        response.join();
        logger.info("File uploaded in multiple 8 MiB parts using
S3AsyncClient.");
    }
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload a large file.

```
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

import {
  ProgressBar,
  logger,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";

const twentyFiveMB = 25 * 1024 * 1024;

export const createString = (size = twentyFiveMB) => {
  return "x".repeat(size);
};

/**
 * Create a 25MB file and upload it in parts to the specified
 * Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const str = createString();
  const buffer = Buffer.from(str, "utf8");
  const progressBar = new ProgressBar({
    description: `Uploading "${key}" to "${bucketName}"`,
    barLength: 30,
  });

  try {
    const upload = new Upload({
      client: new S3Client({}),
      params: {
```

```
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        Body: buffer,
      },
    });

    upload.on("httpUploadProgress", ({ loaded, total }) => {
      progressBar.update({ current: loaded, total });
    });

    await upload.done();
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "AbortError") {
      logger.error(`Multipart upload was aborted. ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Download a large file.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { GetObjectCommand, NoSuchKey, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { createWriteStream, rmSync } from "node:fs";

const s3Client = new S3Client({});
const oneMB = 1024 * 1024;

export const getObjectRange = ({ bucket, key, start, end }) => {
  const command = new GetObjectCommand({
    Bucket: bucket,
    Key: key,
    Range: `bytes=${start}-${end}`,
  });

  return s3Client.send(command);
};

/**
 * @param {string | undefined} contentRange
```

```
 */
export const getRangeAndLength = (contentRange) => {
  const [range, length] = contentRange.split("/");
  const [start, end] = range.split("-");
  return {
    start: Number.parseInt(start),
    end: Number.parseInt(end),
    length: Number.parseInt(length),
  };
};

export const isComplete = ({ end, length }) => end === length - 1;

const downloadInChunks = async ({ bucket, key }) => {
  const writeStream = createWriteStream(
    fileURLToPath(new URL(`./${key}`, import.meta.url)),
  ).on("error", (err) => console.error(err));

  let rangeAndLength = { start: -1, end: -1, length: -1 };

  while (!isComplete(rangeAndLength)) {
    const { end } = rangeAndLength;
    const nextRange = { start: end + 1, end: end + oneMB };

    const { ContentRange, Body } = await getObjectRange({
      bucket,
      key,
      ...nextRange,
    });
    console.log(`Downloaded bytes ${nextRange.start} to ${nextRange.end}`);

    writeStream.write(await Body.transformToByteArray());
    rangeAndLength = getRangeAndLength(ContentRange);
  }
};

/**
 * Download a large object from and Amazon S3 bucket.
 *
 * When downloading a large file, you might want to break it down into
 * smaller pieces. Amazon S3 accepts a Range header to specify the start
 * and end of the byte range to be downloaded.
 *
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
```

```
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  try {
    await downloadInChunks({
      bucket: bucketName,
      key: key,
    });
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(`Failed to download object. No such key "${key}".`);
      rmSync(key);
    }
  }
};
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that transfer files using several of the available transfer manager settings. Use a callback class to write callback progress during file transfer.

```
import sys
import threading

import boto3
from boto3.s3.transfer import TransferConfig


MB = 1024 * 1024
s3 = boto3.resource("s3")


class TransferCallback:
```

```
    """
    Handle callbacks from the transfer manager.

    The transfer manager periodically calls the __call__ method throughout
    the upload and download process so that it can take action, such as
    displaying progress to the user and collecting data about the transfer.
    """

    def __init__(self, target_size):
        self._target_size = target_size
        self._total_transferred = 0
        self._lock = threading.Lock()
        self.thread_info = {}

    def __call__(self, bytes_transferred):
        """
        The callback method that is called by the transfer manager.

        Display progress during file transfer and collect per-thread transfer
        data. This method can be called by multiple threads, so shared instance
        data is protected by a thread lock.
        """
        thread = threading.current_thread()
        with self._lock:
            self._total_transferred += bytes_transferred
            if thread.ident not in self.thread_info.keys():
                self.thread_info[thread.ident] = bytes_transferred
            else:
                self.thread_info[thread.ident] += bytes_transferred

            target = self._target_size * MB
            sys.stdout.write(
                f"\r{self._total_transferred} of {target} transferred "
                f"({(self._total_transferred / target) * 100:.2f}%)."
            )
            sys.stdout.flush()


def upload_with_default_configuration(
    local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, using the default
    configuration.
```

```
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path, object_key, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def upload_with_chunksize_and_meta(
    local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key, file_size_mb, metadata=None
):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, setting a
    multipart chunk size and adding metadata to the Amazon S3 object.

    The multipart chunk size controls the size of the chunks of data that are
    sent in the request. A smaller chunk size typically results in the transfer
    manager using more threads for the upload.

    The metadata is a set of key-value pairs that are stored with the object
    in Amazon S3.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)

    config = TransferConfig(multipart_chunksize=1 * MB)
    extra_args = {"Metadata": metadata} if metadata else None
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path,
        object_key,
        Config=config,
        ExtraArgs=extra_args,
        Callback=transfer_callback,
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def upload_with_high_threshold(local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key,
 file_size_mb):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, setting a
    multipart threshold larger than the size of the file.

    Setting a multipart threshold larger than the size of the file results
    in the transfer manager sending the file as a standard upload instead of
```

```
    a multipart upload.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    config = TransferConfig(multipart_threshold=file_size_mb * 2 * MB)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path, object_key, Config=config, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def upload_with_sse(
    local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key, file_size_mb, sse_key=None
):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, adding server-side
    encryption with customer-provided encryption keys to the object.

    When this kind of encryption is specified, Amazon S3 encrypts the object
    at rest and allows downloads only when the expected encryption key is
    provided in the download request.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    if sse_key:
        extra_args = {"SSECustomerAlgorithm": "AES256", "SSECustomerKey":
 sse_key}
    else:
        extra_args = None
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path, object_key, ExtraArgs=extra_args,
 Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_default_configuration(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, using the
    default configuration.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, Callback=transfer_callback
```

```
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_single_thread(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, using a
    single thread.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    config = TransferConfig(use_threads=False)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, Config=config, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_high_threshold(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, setting a
    multipart threshold larger than the size of the file.

    Setting a multipart threshold larger than the size of the file results
    in the transfer manager sending the file as a standard download instead
    of a multipart download.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    config = TransferConfig(multipart_threshold=file_size_mb * 2 * MB)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, Config=config, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_sse(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb, sse_key
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, adding a
    customer-provided encryption key to the request.
```

```
    When this kind of encryption is specified, Amazon S3 encrypts the object
    at rest and allows downloads only when the expected encryption key is
    provided in the download request.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)

    if sse_key:
        extra_args = {"SSECustomerAlgorithm": "AES256", "SSECustomerKey":
 sse_key}
    else:
        extra_args = None
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, ExtraArgs=extra_args, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info
```

Demonstrate the transfer manager functions and report results.

```
import hashlib
import os
import platform
import shutil
import time

import boto3
from boto3.s3.transfer import TransferConfig
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from botocore.exceptions import ParamValidationError
from botocore.exceptions import NoCredentialsError

import file_transfer

MB = 1024 * 1024
# These configuration attributes affect both uploads and downloads.
CONFIG_ATTRS = (
    "multipart_threshold",
    "multipart_chunksize",
    "max_concurrency",
    "use_threads",
```

```
)
# These configuration attributes affect only downloads.
DOWNLOAD_CONFIG_ATTRS = ("max_io_queue", "io_chunksize", "num_download_attempts")


class TransferDemoManager:
    """
    Manages the demonstration. Collects user input from a command line, reports
    transfer results, maintains a list of artifacts created during the
    demonstration, and cleans them up after the demonstration is completed.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        self._s3 = boto3.resource("s3")
        self._chore_list = []
        self._create_file_cmd = None
        self._size_multiplier = 0
        self.file_size_mb = 30
        self.demo_folder = None
        self.demo_bucket = None
        self._setup_platform_specific()
        self._terminal_width = shutil.get_terminal_size(fallback=(80, 80))[0]

    def collect_user_info(self):
        """
        Collect local folder and Amazon S3 bucket name from the user. These
        locations are used to store files during the demonstration.
        """
        while not self.demo_folder:
            self.demo_folder = input(
                "Which file folder do you want to use to store " "demonstration
 files? "
            )
            if not os.path.isdir(self.demo_folder):
                print(f"{self.demo_folder} isn't a folder!")
                self.demo_folder = None

        while not self.demo_bucket:
            self.demo_bucket = input(
                "Which Amazon S3 bucket do you want to use to store "
                "demonstration files? "
            )
            try:
                self._s3.meta.client.head_bucket(Bucket=self.demo_bucket)
```

```
            except ParamValidationError as err:
                print(err)
                self.demo_bucket = None
            except ClientError as err:
                print(err)
                print(
                    f"Either {self.demo_bucket} doesn't exist or you don't "
                    f"have access to it."
                )
                self.demo_bucket = None

    def demo(
        self, question, upload_func, download_func, upload_args=None,
download_args=None
    ):
        """Run a demonstration.

        Ask the user if they want to run this specific demonstration.
        If they say yes, create a file on the local path, upload it
        using the specified upload function, then download it using the
        specified download function.
        """
        if download_args is None:
            download_args = {}
        if upload_args is None:
            upload_args = {}
        question = question.format(self.file_size_mb)
        answer = input(f"{question} (y/n)")
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            local_file_path, object_key, download_file_path =
self._create_demo_file()

            file_transfer.TransferConfig = self._config_wrapper(
                TransferConfig, CONFIG_ATTRS
            )
            self._report_transfer_params(
                "Uploading", local_file_path, object_key, **upload_args
            )
            start_time = time.perf_counter()
            thread_info = upload_func(
                local_file_path,
                self.demo_bucket,
                object_key,
                self.file_size_mb,
```

```
                **upload_args,
            )
            end_time = time.perf_counter()
            self._report_transfer_result(thread_info, end_time - start_time)

            file_transfer.TransferConfig = self._config_wrapper(
                TransferConfig, CONFIG_ATTRS + DOWNLOAD_CONFIG_ATTRS
            )
            self._report_transfer_params(
                "Downloading", object_key, download_file_path, **download_args
            )
            start_time = time.perf_counter()
            thread_info = download_func(
                self.demo_bucket,
                object_key,
                download_file_path,
                self.file_size_mb,
                **download_args,
            )
            end_time = time.perf_counter()
            self._report_transfer_result(thread_info, end_time - start_time)

    def last_name_set(self):
        """Get the name set used for the last demo."""
        return self._chore_list[-1]

    def cleanup(self):
        """
        Remove files from the demo folder, and uploaded objects from the
        Amazon S3 bucket.
        """
        print("-" * self._terminal_width)
        for local_file_path, s3_object_key, downloaded_file_path in
self._chore_list:
            print(f"Removing {local_file_path}")
            try:
                os.remove(local_file_path)
            except FileNotFoundError as err:
                print(err)

            print(f"Removing {downloaded_file_path}")
            try:
                os.remove(downloaded_file_path)
            except FileNotFoundError as err:
```

```
                print(err)

            if self.demo_bucket:
                print(f"Removing {self.demo_bucket}:{s3_object_key}")
                try:

self._s3.Bucket(self.demo_bucket).Object(s3_object_key).delete()
                except ClientError as err:
                    print(err)

    def _setup_platform_specific(self):
        """Set up platform-specific command used to create a large file."""
        if platform.system() == "Windows":
            self._create_file_cmd = "fsutil file createnew {} {}"
            self._size_multiplier = MB
        elif platform.system() == "Linux" or platform.system() == "Darwin":
            self._create_file_cmd = f"dd if=/dev/urandom of={{}} " f"bs={MB}
count={{}}"
            self._size_multiplier = 1
        else:
            raise EnvironmentError(
                f"Demo of platform {platform.system()} isn't supported."
            )

    def _create_demo_file(self):
        """
        Create a file in the demo folder specified by the user. Store the local
        path, object name, and download path for later cleanup.

        Only the local file is created by this method. The Amazon S3 object and
        download file are created later during the demonstration.

        Returns:
        A tuple that contains the local file path, object name, and download
        file path.
        """
        file_name_template = "TestFile{}-{}.demo"
        local_suffix = "local"
        object_suffix = "s3object"
        download_suffix = "downloaded"
        file_tag = len(self._chore_list) + 1

        local_file_path = os.path.join(
            self.demo_folder, file_name_template.format(file_tag, local_suffix)
```

```
        )

        s3_object_key = file_name_template.format(file_tag, object_suffix)

        downloaded_file_path = os.path.join(
            self.demo_folder, file_name_template.format(file_tag,
download_suffix)
        )

        filled_cmd = self._create_file_cmd.format(
            local_file_path, self.file_size_mb * self._size_multiplier
        )

        print(
            f"Creating file of size {self.file_size_mb} MB "
            f"in {self.demo_folder} by running:"
        )
        print(f"{'':4}{filled_cmd}")
        os.system(filled_cmd)

        chore = (local_file_path, s3_object_key, downloaded_file_path)
        self._chore_list.append(chore)
        return chore

    def _report_transfer_params(self, verb, source_name, dest_name, **kwargs):
        """Report configuration and extra arguments used for a file transfer."""
        print("-" * self._terminal_width)
        print(f"{verb} {source_name} ({self.file_size_mb} MB) to {dest_name}")
        if kwargs:
            print("With extra args:")
            for arg, value in kwargs.items():
                print(f'{"":4}{arg:<20}: {value}')

    @staticmethod
    def ask_user(question):
        """
        Ask the user a yes or no question.

        Returns:
        True when the user answers 'y' or 'Y'; otherwise, False.
        """
        answer = input(f"{question} (y/n) ")
        return answer.lower() == "y"
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def _config_wrapper(func, config_attrs):
        def wrapper(*args, **kwargs):
            config = func(*args, **kwargs)
            print("With configuration:")
            for attr in config_attrs:
                print(f'{"":4}{attr:<20}: {getattr(config, attr)}')
            return config

        return wrapper

    @staticmethod
    def _report_transfer_result(thread_info, elapsed):
        """Report the result of a transfer, including per-thread data."""
        print(f"\nUsed {len(thread_info)} threads.")
        for ident, byte_count in thread_info.items():
            print(f"{'':4}Thread {ident} copied {byte_count} bytes.")
        print(f"Your transfer took {elapsed:.2f} seconds.")


def main():
    """
    Run the demonstration script for s3_file_transfer.
    """
    demo_manager = TransferDemoManager()
    demo_manager.collect_user_info()

    # Upload and download with default configuration. Because the file is 30 MB
    # and the default multipart_threshold is 8 MB, both upload and download are
    # multipart transfers.
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload and download a {} MB file "
        "using the default configuration?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_default_configuration,
        file_transfer.download_with_default_configuration,
    )

    # Upload and download with multipart_threshold set higher than the size of
    # the file. This causes the transfer manager to use standard transfers
    # instead of multipart transfers.
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload and download a {} MB file "
        "as a standard (not multipart) transfer?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_high_threshold,
```

```
        file_transfer.download_with_high_threshold,
    )

    # Upload with specific chunk size and additional metadata.
    # Download with a single thread.
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload a {} MB file with a smaller chunk size and "
        "then download the same file using a single thread?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_chunksize_and_meta,
        file_transfer.download_with_single_thread,
        upload_args={
            "metadata": {
                "upload_type": "chunky",
                "favorite_color": "aqua",
                "size": "medium",
            }
        },
    )

    # Upload using server-side encryption with customer-provided
    # encryption keys.
    # Generate a 256-bit key from a passphrase.
    sse_key = hashlib.sha256("demo_passphrase".encode("utf-8")).digest()
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload and download a {} MB file using "
        "server-side encryption?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_sse,
        file_transfer.download_with_sse,
        upload_args={"sse_key": sse_key},
        download_args={"sse_key": sse_key},
    )

    # Download without specifying an encryption key to show that the
    # encryption key must be included to download an encrypted object.
    if demo_manager.ask_user(
        "Do you want to try to download the encrypted "
        "object without sending the required key?"
    ):
        try:
            _, object_key, download_file_path = demo_manager.last_name_set()
            file_transfer.download_with_default_configuration(
                demo_manager.demo_bucket,
                object_key,
                download_file_path,
```

```
                demo_manager.file_size_mb,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            print(
                "Got expected error when trying to download an encrypted "
                "object without specifying encryption info:"
            )
            print(f"{'':4}{err}")

    # Remove all created and downloaded files, remove all objects from
    # S3 storage.
    if demo_manager.ask_user(
        "Demonstration complete. Do you want to remove local files " "and S3
 objects?"
    ):
        demo_manager.cleanup()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        main()
    except NoCredentialsError as error:
        print(error)
        print(
            "To run this example, you must have valid credentials in "
            "a shared credential file or set in environment variables."
        )
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use std::fs::File;
```

```
use std::io::prelude::*;
use std::path::Path;

use aws_config::meta::region::RegionProviderChain;
use aws_sdk_s3::error::DisplayErrorContext;
use aws_sdk_s3::operation::{
    create_multipart_upload::CreateMultipartUploadOutput,
 get_object::GetObjectOutput,
};
use aws_sdk_s3::types::{CompletedMultipartUpload, CompletedPart};
use aws_sdk_s3::{config::Region, Client as S3Client};
use aws_smithy_types::byte_stream::{ByteStream, Length};
use rand::distributions::Alphanumeric;
use rand::{thread_rng, Rng};
use s3_code_examples::error::S3ExampleError;
use std::process;
use uuid::Uuid;

//In bytes, minimum chunk size of 5MB. Increase CHUNK_SIZE to send larger chunks.
const CHUNK_SIZE: u64 = 1024 * 1024 * 5;
const MAX_CHUNKS: u64 = 10000;

#[tokio::main]
pub async fn main() {
    if let Err(err) = run_example().await {
        eprintln!("Error: {}", DisplayErrorContext(err));
        process::exit(1);
    }
}

async fn run_example() -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let shared_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let client = S3Client::new(&shared_config);

    let bucket_name = format!("amzn-s3-demo-bucket-{}", Uuid::new_v4());
    let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::first_try(Region::new("us-
west-2"));
    let region = region_provider.region().await.unwrap();
    s3_code_examples::create_bucket(&client, &bucket_name, &region).await?;

    let key = "sample.txt".to_string();
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
```

```
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;

    //Create a file of random characters for the upload.
    let mut file = File::create(&key).expect("Could not create sample file.");
    // Loop until the file is 5 chunks.
    while file.metadata().unwrap().len() <= CHUNK_SIZE * 4 {
        let rand_string: String = thread_rng()
            .sample_iter(&Alphanumeric)
            .take(256)
            .map(char::from)
            .collect();
        let return_string: String = "\n".to_string();
        file.write_all(rand_string.as_ref())
            .expect("Error writing to file.");
        file.write_all(return_string.as_ref())
            .expect("Error writing to file.");
    }

    let path = Path::new(&key);
    let file_size = tokio::fs::metadata(path)
        .await
        .expect("it exists I swear")
        .len();

    let mut chunk_count = (file_size / CHUNK_SIZE) + 1;
    let mut size_of_last_chunk = file_size % CHUNK_SIZE;
    if size_of_last_chunk == 0 {
        size_of_last_chunk = CHUNK_SIZE;
        chunk_count -= 1;
    }

    if file_size == 0 {
        return Err(S3ExampleError::new("Bad file size."));
    }
    if chunk_count > MAX_CHUNKS {
        return Err(S3ExampleError::new(
```

```
            "Too many chunks! Try increasing your chunk size.",
        ));
    }

    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }

    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
```

```
        .build();

    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let data: GetObjectOutput =
        s3_code_examples::download_object(&client, &bucket_name, &key).await?;
    let data_length: u64 = data
        .content_length()
        .unwrap_or_default()
        .try_into()
        .unwrap();
    if file.metadata().unwrap().len() == data_length {
        println!("Data lengths match.");
    } else {
        println!("The data was not the same size!");
    }

    s3_code_examples::clear_bucket(&client, &bucket_name)
        .await
        .expect("Error emptying bucket.");
    s3_code_examples::delete_bucket(&client, &bucket_name)
        .await
        .expect("Error deleting bucket.");

    Ok(())
}
```

Upload a stream of unknown size to an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to upload a stream of unknown size to an Amazon S3 object.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the AWS CRT-based S3 Client.

```
import com.example.s3.util.AsyncExampleUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

public class PutObjectFromStreamAsync {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(PutObjectFromStreamAsync.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID(); // Change
 bucket name.
        String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();

        AsyncExampleUtils.createBucket(bucketName);
        try {
            PutObjectFromStreamAsync example = new PutObjectFromStreamAsync();
            S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClientCrt = S3AsyncClient.crtCreate();
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse =
 example.putObjectFromStreamCrt(s3AsyncClientCrt, bucketName, key);
```

```
            logger.info("Object {} etag: {}", key, putObjectResponse.eTag());
            logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        } finally {
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteObject(bucketName, key);
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteBucket(bucketName);
        }
    }

    /**
     * @param s33CrtAsyncClient - To upload content from a stream of unknown
size, use can the AWS CRT-based S3 client.
     * @param bucketName - The name of the bucket.
     * @param key - The name of the object.
     * @return software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse -
Returns metadata pertaining to the put object operation.
     */
    public PutObjectResponse putObjectFromStreamCrt(S3AsyncClient
s33CrtAsyncClient, String bucketName, String key) {

        // AsyncExampleUtils.randomString() returns a random string up to 100
characters.
        String randomString = AsyncExampleUtils.randomString();
        logger.info("random string to upload: {}: length={}", randomString,
randomString.length());
        InputStream inputStream = new
ByteArrayInputStream(randomString.getBytes());

        // Executor required to handle reading from the InputStream on a separate
thread so the main upload is not blocked.
        ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
        // Specify `null` for the content length when you don't know the content
length.
        AsyncRequestBody body = AsyncRequestBody.fromInputStream(inputStream,
null, executor);

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> responseFuture =
                s33CrtAsyncClient.putObject(r -> r.bucket(bucketName).key(key),
body);

        PutObjectResponse response = responseFuture.join(); // Wait for the
response.
        logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
```

```
        executor.shutdown();
        return response;
    }
}
```

Use the standard asynchronous S3 client with multipart upload enabled.

```
import com.example.s3.util.AsyncExampleUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

public class PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID(); // Change
 bucket name.
        String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();

        AsyncExampleUtils.createBucket(bucketName);
        try {
            PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp example = new
 PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp();
            S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClientMp =
 S3AsyncClient.builder().multipartEnabled(true).build();
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse =
 example.putObjectFromStreamMp(s3AsyncClientMp, bucketName, key);
            logger.info("Object {} etag: {}", key, putObjectResponse.eTag());
            logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
```

```
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        } finally {
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteObject(bucketName, key);
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteBucket(bucketName);
        }
    }

    /**
     * @param s3AsyncClientMp - To upload content from a stream of unknown size,
use can the S3 asynchronous client with multipart enabled.
     * @param bucketName - The name of the bucket.
     * @param key - The name of the object.
     * @return software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse -
Returns metadata pertaining to the put object operation.
     */
    public PutObjectResponse putObjectFromStreamMp(S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClientMp,
String bucketName, String key) {

        // AsyncExampleUtils.randomString() returns a random string up to 100
characters.
        String randomString = AsyncExampleUtils.randomString();
        logger.info("random string to upload: {}: length={}", randomString,
randomString.length());
        InputStream inputStream = new
ByteArrayInputStream(randomString.getBytes());

        // Executor required to handle reading from the InputStream on a separate
thread so the main upload is not blocked.
        ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
        // Specify `null` for the content length when you don't know the content
length.
        AsyncRequestBody body = AsyncRequestBody.fromInputStream(inputStream,
null, executor);

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> responseFuture =
                s3AsyncClientMp.putObject(r -> r.bucket(bucketName).key(key),
body);

        PutObjectResponse response = responseFuture.join(); // Wait for the
response.
        logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        executor.shutdown();
        return response;
```

```
    }
}
```

Use the Amazon S3 Transfer Manager.

```
import com.example.s3.util.AsyncExampleUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.Upload;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

public class UploadStream {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(UploadStream.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" + UUID.randomUUID();
        String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();

        AsyncExampleUtils.createBucket(bucketName);
        try {
            UploadStream example = new UploadStream();
            CompletedUpload completedUpload =
 example.uploadStream(S3TransferManager.create(), bucketName, key);
            logger.info("Object {} etag: {}", key,
 completedUpload.response().eTag());
            logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        } finally {
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteObject(bucketName, key);
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteBucket(bucketName);
```

```
        }
    }

    /**
     * @param transferManager - To upload content from a stream of unknown size,
 you can use the S3TransferManager based on the AWS CRT-based S3 client.
     * @param bucketName - The name of the bucket.
     * @param key - The name of the object.
     * @return - software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedUpload - The
 result of the completed upload.
     */
    public CompletedUpload uploadStream(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
 bucketName, String key) {

        // AsyncExampleUtils.randomString() returns a random string up to 100
 characters.
        String randomString = AsyncExampleUtils.randomString();
        logger.info("random string to upload: {}: length={}", randomString,
 randomString.length());
        InputStream inputStream = new
 ByteArrayInputStream(randomString.getBytes());

        // Executor required to handle reading from the InputStream on a separate
 thread so the main upload is not blocked.
        ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
        // Specify `null` for the content length when you don't know the content
 length.
        AsyncRequestBody body = AsyncRequestBody.fromInputStream(inputStream,
 null, executor);

        Upload upload = transferManager.upload(builder -> builder
                .requestBody(body)
                .putObjectRequest(req -> req.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
                .build());

        CompletedUpload completedUpload = upload.completionFuture().join();
        executor.shutdown();
        return completedUpload;
    }
}
```

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSS3
import Foundation
import Smithy
import SmithyHTTPAPI
import SmithyStreams


    /// Upload a file to the specified bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket name to store the file into.
    ///   - key: The name (or path) of the file to upload to in the `bucket`.
    ///   - sourcePath: The pathname on the local filesystem of the file to
    ///     upload.
    func uploadFile(sourcePath: String, bucket: String, key: String?) async
 throws {
        let fileURL: URL = URL(fileURLWithPath: sourcePath)
        let fileName: String

        // If no key was provided, use the last component of the filename.

        if key == nil {
            fileName = fileURL.lastPathComponent
        } else {
            fileName = key!
        }

        let s3Client = try await S3Client()

        // Create a FileHandle for the source file.
```

```
        let fileHandle = FileHandle(forReadingAtPath: sourcePath)
        guard let fileHandle = fileHandle else {
            throw TransferError.readError
        }

        // Create a byte stream to retrieve the file's contents. This uses the
        // Smithy FileStream and ByteStream types.

        let stream = FileStream(fileHandle: fileHandle)
        let body = ByteStream.stream(stream)

        // Create a `PutObjectInput` with the ByteStream as the body of the
        // request's data. The AWS SDK for Swift will handle sending the
        // entire file in chunks, regardless of its size.

        let putInput = PutObjectInput(
            body: body,
            bucket: bucket,
            key: fileName
        )

        do {
            _ = try await s3Client.putObject(input: putInput)
        } catch {
            throw TransferError.uploadError("Error uploading the file: \(error)")
        }

        print("File uploaded to \(fileURL.path).")
    }
```

Use checksums to work with an Amazon S3 object using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use checksums to work with an Amazon S3 object.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The code examples use a subset of the following imports.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ChecksumAlgorithm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ChecksumMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadFileRequest;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.security.DigestInputStream;
import java.security.MessageDigest;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Base64;
```

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.UUID;
```

Specify a checksum algorithm for the `putObject` method when you build the `PutObjectRequest`.

```
    public void putObjectWithChecksum() {
        s3Client.putObject(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumAlgorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm.CRC32),
            RequestBody.fromString("This is a test"));
    }
```

Verify the checksum for the `getObject` method when you build the GetObjectRequest.

```
    public GetObjectResponse getObjectWithChecksum() {
        return s3Client.getObject(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumMode(ChecksumMode.ENABLED))
            .response();
    }
```

Pre-calculate a checksum for the `putObject` method when you build the `PutObjectRequest`.

```
    public void putObjectWithPrecalculatedChecksum(String filePath) {
        String checksum = calculateChecksum(filePath, "SHA-256");

        s3Client.putObject((b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumSHA256(checksum)),
            RequestBody.fromFile(Paths.get(filePath)));
    }
```

Use the S3 Transfer Manager on top of the AWS CRT-based S3 client to transparently perform a multipart upload when the size of the content exceeds a threshold. The default threshold size is 8 MB.

You can specify a checksum algorithm for the SDK to use. By default, the SDK uses the CRC32 algorithm.

```
    public void multipartUploadWithChecksumTm(String filePath) {
        S3TransferManager transferManager = S3TransferManager.create();
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumAlgorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA1))
            .source(Paths.get(filePath))
            .build();
        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);
        fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        transferManager.close();
    }
```

Use the S3Client API or (S3AsyncClient API) to perform a multipart upload. If you specify an additional checksum, you must specify the algorithm to use on the initiation of the upload. You must also specify the algorithm for each part request and provide the checksum calculated for each part after it is uploaded.

```
    public void multipartUploadWithChecksumS3Client(String filePath) {
        ChecksumAlgorithm algorithm = ChecksumAlgorithm.CRC32;

        // Initiate the multipart upload.
        CreateMultipartUploadResponse createMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.createMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .checksumAlgorithm(algorithm)); // Checksum specified on initiation.
        String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();

        // Upload the parts of the file.
        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(1024 * 1024 * 5); // 5 MB byte buffer
```

```
        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath, "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            long position = 0;
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                long read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .checksumAlgorithm(algorithm) // Checksum specified on each
part.
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                    uploadPartRequest,
                    RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .checksumCRC32(partResponse.checksumCRC32()) // Provide the
calculated checksum.
                    .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                    .build();
                completedParts.add(part);

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        // Complete the multipart upload.
        s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .uploadId(uploadId)
```

```
.multipartUpload(CompletedMultipartUpload.builder().parts(completedParts).build()));
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - UploadPart

Work with Amazon S3 object integrity features using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object integrity features.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object integrity features.

```
//! Routine which runs the S3 object integrity workflow.
/*!
   \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::s3ObjectIntegrityWorkflow(
        const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    /*
     * Create a large file to be used for multipart uploads.
     */
    if (!createLargeFileIfNotExists()) {
        std::cerr << "Workflow exiting because large file creation failed." <<
 std::endl;
```

```
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String bucketName = TEST_BUCKET_PREFIX;
    bucketName += Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
    bucketName = Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(bucketName.c_str());

    bucketName.resize(std::min(bucketName.size(), MAX_BUCKET_NAME_LENGTH));

    introductoryExplanations(bucketName);

    if (!AwsDoc::S3::createBucket(bucketName, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Workflow exiting because bucket creation failed." <<
std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration s3ClientConfiguration(clientConfiguration);
    std::shared_ptr<Aws::S3::S3Client> client =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::S3::S3Client>("S3Client", s3ClientConfiguration);

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Choose from one of the following checksum algorithms."
              << std::endl;

    for (HASH_METHOD hashMethod = DEFAULT; hashMethod <= SHA256; ++hashMethod) {
        std::cout << "  " << hashMethod << " - " <<
stringForHashMethod(hashMethod)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    HASH_METHOD chosenHashMethod = askQuestionForIntRange("Enter an index: ",
DEFAULT,
                                                          SHA256);


    gUseCalculatedChecksum = !askYesNoQuestion(
            "Let the SDK calculate the checksum for you? (y/n) ");

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "The workflow will now upload a file using PutObject."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Object integrity will be verified using the "
```

```
              << stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) << " algorithm."
              << std::endl;
   if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
       std::cout
               << "A checksum computed by this workflow will be used for object
integrity verification,"
               << std::endl;
       std::cout << "except for the TransferManager upload." << std::endl;
   } else {
       std::cout
               << "A checksum computed by the SDK will be used for object
integrity verification."
               << std::endl;
   }

   pressEnterToContinue();
   printAsterisksLine();

   std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> inputData =
           Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                         TEST_FILE,
                                         std::ios_base::in |
                                         std::ios_base::binary);

   if (!*inputData) {
       std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << TEST_FILE << std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   Hasher hasher;
   HASH_METHOD putObjectHashMethod = chosenHashMethod;
   if (putObjectHashMethod == DEFAULT) {
       putObjectHashMethod = MD5; // MD5 is the default hash method for
PutObject.

       std::cout << "The default checksum algorithm for PutObject is "
                 << stringForHashMethod(putObjectHashMethod)
                 << std::endl;
   }

   // Demonstrate in code how the hash is computed.
   if (!hasher.calculateObjectHash(*inputData, putObjectHashMethod)) {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Error calculating hash for file " << TEST_FILE <<
std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
    Aws::String key = stringForHashMethod(putObjectHashMethod);
    key += "_";
    key += TEST_FILE_KEY;
    Aws::String localHash = hasher.getBase64HashString();

    // Upload the object with PutObject
    if (!putObjectWithHash(bucketName, key, localHash, putObjectHashMethod,
                           inputData, chosenHashMethod == DEFAULT,
                           *client)) {
        std::cerr << "Error putting file " << TEST_FILE << " to bucket "
                  << bucketName << " with key " << key << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String retrievedHash;
    if (!retrieveObjectHash(bucketName, key,
                            putObjectHashMethod, retrievedHash,
                            nullptr, *client)) {
        std::cerr << "Error getting file " << TEST_FILE << " from bucket "
                  << bucketName << " with key " << key << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    explainPutObjectResults();
    verifyHashingResults(retrievedHash, hasher,
                         "PutObject upload", putObjectHashMethod);


    printAsterisksLine();
    pressEnterToContinue();

    key = "tr_";
    key += stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) + "_" + MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE;

    introductoryTransferManagerUploadExplanations(key);

    HASH_METHOD transferManagerHashMethod = chosenHashMethod;
```

```
   if (transferManagerHashMethod == DEFAULT) {
       transferManagerHashMethod = CRC32;  // The default hash method for the
TransferManager is CRC32.

       std::cout << "The default checksum algorithm for TransferManager is "
                 << stringForHashMethod(transferManagerHashMethod)
                 << std::endl;
   }

   // Upload the large file using the transfer manager.
   if (!doTransferManagerUpload(bucketName, key, transferManagerHashMethod,
chosenHashMethod == DEFAULT,
                                client)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in doTransferManagerUpload." <<
std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   std::vector<Aws::String> retrievedTransferManagerPartHashes;
   Aws::String retrievedTransferManagerFinalHash;

   // Retrieve all the hashes for the TransferManager upload.
   if (!retrieveObjectHash(bucketName, key,
                           transferManagerHashMethod,
                           retrievedTransferManagerFinalHash,
                           &retrievedTransferManagerPartHashes, *client)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in retrieveObjectHash for
TransferManager." << std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   AwsDoc::S3::Hasher locallyCalculatedFinalHash;
   std::vector<Aws::String> locallyCalculatedPartHashes;

   // Calculate the hashes locally to demonstrate how TransferManager hashes are
computed.
   if (!calculatePartHashesForFile(transferManagerHashMethod,
MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE,
                                   UPLOAD_BUFFER_SIZE,
                                   locallyCalculatedFinalHash,
                                   locallyCalculatedPartHashes)) {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in calculatePartHashesForFile."
<< std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    verifyHashingResults(retrievedTransferManagerFinalHash,
                         locallyCalculatedFinalHash, "TransferManager upload",
                         transferManagerHashMethod,
                         retrievedTransferManagerPartHashes,
                         locallyCalculatedPartHashes);

    printAsterisksLine();

    key = "mp_";
    key += stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) + "_" + MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE;

    multiPartUploadExplanations(key, chosenHashMethod);

    pressEnterToContinue();

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> largeFileInputData =
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                          MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE,
                                          std::ios_base::in |
                                          std::ios_base::binary);

    if (!largeFileInputData->good()) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << TEST_FILE << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    HASH_METHOD multipartUploadHashMethod = chosenHashMethod;
    if (multipartUploadHashMethod == DEFAULT) {
        multipartUploadHashMethod = MD5;  // The default hash method for
multipart uploads is MD5.

        std::cout << "The default checksum algorithm for multipart upload is "
                  << stringForHashMethod(putObjectHashMethod)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    AwsDoc::S3::Hasher hashData;
```

```
   std::vector<Aws::String> partHashes;

   if (!doMultipartUpload(bucketName, key,
                          multipartUploadHashMethod,
                          largeFileInputData, chosenHashMethod == DEFAULT,
                          hashData,
                          partHashes,
                          *client)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in doMultipartUpload." <<
std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   std::cout << "Finished multipart upload of with hash method " <<
             stringForHashMethod(multipartUploadHashMethod) << std::endl;

   std::cout << "Now we will retrieve the checksums from the server." <<
std::endl;

   retrievedHash.clear();
   std::vector<Aws::String> retrievedPartHashes;
   if (!retrieveObjectHash(bucketName, key,
                           multipartUploadHashMethod,
                           retrievedHash, &retrievedPartHashes, *client)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in retrieveObjectHash for
multipart." << std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   verifyHashingResults(retrievedHash, hashData, "MultiPart upload",
                        multipartUploadHashMethod,
                        retrievedPartHashes, partHashes);

   printAsterisksLine();

   if (askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to delete the resources created in this
workflow? (y/n)")) {
       return cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
   } else {
       std::cout << "The bucket " << bucketName << " was not deleted." <<
std::endl;
       return true;
```

```
    }
}

//! Routine which uploads an object to an S3 bucket with different object
 integrity hashing methods.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashData: The hash value that will be associated with the uploaded
 object.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash
 value.
   \param body: The data content of the object being uploaded.
   \param useDefaultHashMethod: A flag indicating whether to use the default hash
 method or the one specified in the hashMethod parameter.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::putObjectWithHash(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                   const Aws::String &hashData,
                                   AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                   const std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &body,
                                   bool useDefaultHashMethod,
                                   const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    if (!useDefaultHashMethod) {
        if (hashMethod != MD5) {

 request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(hashMethod));
        }
    }

    if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
        switch (hashMethod) {
            case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                request.SetContentMD5(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                request.SetChecksumSHA1(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
```

```
                request.SetChecksumSHA256(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32C(hashData);
                break;
            default:
                std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                return false;
        }
    }
    request.SetBody(body);
    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome = client.PutObject(request);
    body->seekg(0, body->beg);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Object successfully uploaded." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error uploading object." <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}


// ! Routine which retrieves the hash value of an object stored in an S3 bucket.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) of the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm used to calculate the hash value of
 the object.
   \param[out] hashData: The retrieved hash.
   \param[out] partHashes: The part hashes if available.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to retrieve the object.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::retrieveObjectHash(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                    AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                    Aws::String &hashData,
                                    std::vector<Aws::String> *partHashes,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesRequest request;
```

```
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (hashMethod == MD5) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ETag);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            hashData = result.GetETag();
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object etag attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } else { // hashMethod != MD5
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::Checksum);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            switch (hashMethod) {
                case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                    break;  // Default is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic push
#pragma ide diagnostic ignored "UnreachableCode"
                case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                    break;  // MD5 is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic pop
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA1();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA256();
```

```
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32C();
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                    return false;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object checksum attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (nullptr != partHashes) {
            attributes.clear();
            attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ObjectParts);
            request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);
            outcome = client.GetObjectAttributes(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart> parts =
result.GetObjectParts().GetParts();
                for (const Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart &part: parts) {
                    switch (hashMethod) {
                        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // Default is not supported.
NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5: // MD5 is not supported.
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA1());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA256());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
```

```
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32C());
                            break;
                        default:
                            std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                            return false;
                    }
                }
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error retrieving object attributes for object
 parts." <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Verifies the hashing results between the retrieved and local hashes.
/*!
 \param retrievedHash The hash value retrieved from the remote source.
 \param localHash The hash value calculated locally.
 \param uploadtype The type of upload (e.g., "multipart", "single-part").
 \param hashMethod The hashing method used (e.g., MD5, SHA-256).
 \param retrievedPartHashes (Optional) The list of hashes for the individual
 parts retrieved from the remote source.
 \param localPartHashes (Optional) The list of hashes for the individual parts
 calculated locally.
 */
void AwsDoc::S3::verifyHashingResults(const Aws::String &retrievedHash,
                                      const Hasher &localHash,
                                      const Aws::String &uploadtype,
                                      HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                      const std::vector<Aws::String>
 &retrievedPartHashes,
                                      const std::vector<Aws::String>
 &localPartHashes) {
    std::cout << "For " << uploadtype << " retrieved hash is " << retrievedHash
 << std::endl;
    if (!retrievedPartHashes.empty()) {
        std::cout << retrievedPartHashes.size() << " part hash(es) were also
 retrieved."
                  << std::endl;
```

```
        for (auto &retrievedPartHash: retrievedPartHashes) {
            std::cout << "  Part hash " << retrievedPartHash << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::String hashString;
    if (hashMethod == MD5) {
        hashString = localHash.getHexHashString();
        if (!localPartHashes.empty()) {
            hashString += "-" + std::to_string(localPartHashes.size());
        }
    } else {
        hashString = localHash.getBase64HashString();
    }

    bool allMatch = true;
    if (hashString != retrievedHash) {
        std::cerr << "For " << uploadtype << ", the main hashes do not match" <<
std::endl;
        std::cerr << "Local hash- '" << hashString << "'" << std::endl;
        std::cerr << "Remote hash - '" << retrievedHash << "'" << std::endl;
        allMatch = false;
    }

    if (hashMethod != MD5) {
        if (localPartHashes.size() != retrievedPartHashes.size()) {
            std::cerr << "For " << uploadtype << ", the number of part hashes do
not match" << std::endl;
            std::cerr << "Local number of hashes- '" << localPartHashes.size() <<
"'"
                      << std::endl;
            std::cerr << "Remote number of hashes - '"
                      << retrievedPartHashes.size()
                      << "'" << std::endl;
        }

        for (int i = 0; i < localPartHashes.size(); ++i) {
            if (localPartHashes[i] != retrievedPartHashes[i]) {
                std::cerr << "For " << uploadtype << ", the part hashes do not
match for part " << i + 1
                          << "." << std::endl;
                std::cerr << "Local hash- '" << localPartHashes[i] << "'"
                          << std::endl;
                std::cerr << "Remote hash - '" << retrievedPartHashes[i] << "'"
                          << std::endl;
```

```
                allMatch = false;
            }
        }
    }

    if (allMatch) {
        std::cout << "For " << uploadtype << ", locally and remotely calculated
 hashes all match!" << std::endl;
    }

}

static void transferManagerErrorCallback(const Aws::Transfer::TransferManager *,
                                         const std::shared_ptr<const
 Aws::Transfer::TransferHandle> &,
                                         const
 Aws::Client::AWSError<Aws::S3::S3Errors> &err) {
    std::cerr << "Error during transfer: '" << err.GetMessage() << "'" <<
 std::endl;
}

static void transferManagerStatusCallback(const Aws::Transfer::TransferManager *,
                                          const std::shared_ptr<const
 Aws::Transfer::TransferHandle> &handle) {
    if (handle->GetStatus() == Aws::Transfer::TransferStatus::IN_PROGRESS) {
        std::cout << "Bytes transferred: " << handle->GetBytesTransferred() <<
 std::endl;
    }
}

//! Routine which uploads an object to an S3 bucket using the AWS C++ SDK's
 Transfer Manager.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash
 value.
   \param useDefaultHashMethod: A flag indicating whether to use the default hash
 method or the one specified in the hashMethod parameter.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool
```

```
AwsDoc::S3::doTransferManagerUpload(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                     AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                     bool useDefaultHashMethod,
                                     const std::shared_ptr<Aws::S3::S3Client>
 &client) {
    std::shared_ptr<Aws::Utils::Threading::PooledThreadExecutor> executor =
 Aws::MakeShared<Aws::Utils::Threading::PooledThreadExecutor>(
            "executor", 25);
    Aws::Transfer::TransferManagerConfiguration transfer_config(executor.get());
    transfer_config.s3Client = client;
    transfer_config.bufferSize = UPLOAD_BUFFER_SIZE;
    if (!useDefaultHashMethod) {
        if (hashMethod == MD5) {
            transfer_config.computeContentMD5 = true;
        } else {
            transfer_config.checksumAlgorithm =
 getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(
                    hashMethod);
        }
    }
    transfer_config.errorCallback = transferManagerErrorCallback;
    transfer_config.transferStatusUpdatedCallback =
 transferManagerStatusCallback;

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::Transfer::TransferManager> transfer_manager =
 Aws::Transfer::TransferManager::Create(
            transfer_config);

    std::cout << "Uploading the file..." << std::endl;
    std::shared_ptr<Aws::Transfer::TransferHandle> uploadHandle =
 transfer_manager->UploadFile(MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE,

              bucket, key,

              "text/plain",

              Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String>());
    uploadHandle->WaitUntilFinished();
    bool success =
            uploadHandle->GetStatus() ==
 Aws::Transfer::TransferStatus::COMPLETED;
    if (!success) {
```

```
        Aws::Client::AWSError<Aws::S3::S3Errors> err = uploadHandle-
>GetLastError();
        std::cerr << "File upload failed:  " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return success;
}

//! Routine which calculates the hash values for each part of a file being
 uploaded to an S3 bucket.
/*!
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash
 values.
   \param fileName: The path to the file for which the part hashes will be
 calculated.
   \param bufferSize: The size of the buffer to use when reading the file.
   \param[out] hashDataResult: The Hasher object that will store the concatenated
 hash value.
   \param[out] partHashes: The vector that will store the calculated hash values
 for each part of the file.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::calculatePartHashesForFile(AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                            const Aws::String &fileName,
                                            size_t bufferSize,
                                            AwsDoc::S3::Hasher &hashDataResult,
                                            std::vector<Aws::String> &partHashes)
 {
    std::ifstream fileStream(fileName.c_str(), std::ifstream::binary);
    fileStream.seekg(0, std::ifstream::end);
    size_t objectSize = fileStream.tellg();
    fileStream.seekg(0, std::ifstream::beg);
    std::vector<unsigned char> totalHashBuffer;
    size_t uploadedBytes = 0;


    while (uploadedBytes < objectSize) {
        std::vector<unsigned char> buffer(bufferSize);
        std::streamsize bytesToRead =
 static_cast<std::streamsize>(std::min(buffer.size(), objectSize -
 uploadedBytes));
        fileStream.read((char *) buffer.data(), bytesToRead);
        Aws::Utils::Stream::PreallocatedStreamBuf
 preallocatedStreamBuf(buffer.data(),
```

```
 bytesToRead);
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> body =
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::IOStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                                &preallocatedStreamBuf);
        Hasher hasher;
        if (!hasher.calculateObjectHash(*body, hashMethod)) {
            std::cerr << "Error calculating hash." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        Aws::String base64HashString = hasher.getBase64HashString();
        partHashes.push_back(base64HashString);

        Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer hashBuffer = hasher.getByteBufferHash();

        totalHashBuffer.insert(totalHashBuffer.end(),
 hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData(),
                               hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData() +
 hashBuffer.GetLength());

        uploadedBytes += bytesToRead;
    }

    return hashDataResult.calculateObjectHash(totalHashBuffer, hashMethod);
}

//! Create a multipart upload.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return Aws::String: Upload ID or empty string if failed.
*/
Aws::String
AwsDoc::S3::createMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                  Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm
 checksumAlgorithm,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
```

```
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateMultipartUpload(request);

    Aws::String uploadID;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        uploadID = outcome.GetResult().GetUploadId();
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return uploadID;
}

//! Upload a part to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param partNumber:
    \param checksumAlgorithm: Checksum algorithm, ignored when NOT_SET.
    \param calculatedHash: A data integrity hash to set, depending on the
 checksum algorithm,
                            ignored when it is an empty string.
    \param body: An shared_ptr IOStream of the data to be uploaded.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return UploadPartOutcome: The outcome.
*/

Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartOutcome AwsDoc::S3::uploadPart(const Aws::String
 &bucket,
                                                         const Aws::String &key,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &uploadID,
                                                         int partNumber,

 Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm checksumAlgorithm,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &calculatedHash,
                                                         const
 std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &body,
```

```
                                                                const Aws::S3::S3Client
 &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetPartNumber(partNumber);
    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }
    request.SetBody(body);

    if (!calculatedHash.empty()) {
        switch (checksumAlgorithm) {
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET:
                request.SetContentMD5(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32C:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32C(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA1:
                request.SetChecksumSHA1(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA256:
                request.SetChecksumSHA256(calculatedHash);
                break;
        }
    }

    return client.UploadPart(request);
}

//! Abort a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
```

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::abortMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                      const Aws::String &key,
                                      const Aws::String &uploadID,
                                      const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);

    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.AbortMultipartUpload(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Multipart upload aborted." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error aborting multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Complete a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param parts: A vector of CompleteParts.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome: The request outcome.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome
 AwsDoc::S3::completeMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,

  const Aws::String &key,

  const Aws::String &uploadID,

  const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart> &parts,

  const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload;
    completedMultipartUpload.SetParts(parts);
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetMultipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CompleteMultipartUpload(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error completing multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome;
}

//! Routine which performs a multi-part upload.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash
 value.
    \param ioStream: An IOStream for the data to be uploaded.
    \param useDefaultHashMethod: A flag indicating whether to use the default
 hash method or the one specified in the hashMethod parameter.
    \param[out] hashDataResult: The Hasher object that will store the
 concatenated hash value.
    \param[out] partHashes: The vector that will store the calculated hash values
 for each part of the file.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::doMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                   const Aws::String &key,
                                   AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                   const std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream>
 &ioStream,
                                   bool useDefaultHashMethod,
                                   AwsDoc::S3::Hasher &hashDataResult,
                                   std::vector<Aws::String> &partHashes,
                                   const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    // Get object size.
    ioStream->seekg(0, ioStream->end);
    size_t objectSize = ioStream->tellg();
```

```
   ioStream->seekg(0, ioStream->beg);

   Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm checksumAlgorithm =
Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET;
   if (!useDefaultHashMethod) {
       if (hashMethod != MD5) {
           checksumAlgorithm = getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(hashMethod);
       }
   }
   Aws::String uploadID = createMultipartUpload(bucket, key, checksumAlgorithm,
client);
   if (uploadID.empty()) {
       return false;
   }

   std::vector<unsigned char> totalHashBuffer;
   bool uploadSucceeded = true;
   std::streamsize uploadedBytes = 0;
   int partNumber = 1;
   Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart> parts;
   while (uploadedBytes < objectSize) {
       std::cout << "Uploading part " << partNumber << "." << std::endl;

       std::vector<unsigned char> buffer(UPLOAD_BUFFER_SIZE);
       std::streamsize bytesToRead =
static_cast<std::streamsize>(std::min(buffer.size(),

objectSize - uploadedBytes));
       ioStream->read((char *) buffer.data(), bytesToRead);
       Aws::Utils::Stream::PreallocatedStreamBuf
preallocatedStreamBuf(buffer.data(),

bytesToRead);
       std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> body =
               Aws::MakeShared<Aws::IOStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                              &preallocatedStreamBuf);

       Hasher hasher;
       if (!hasher.calculateObjectHash(*body, hashMethod)) {
           std::cerr << "Error calculating hash." << std::endl;
           uploadSucceeded = false;
           break;
       }
```

```
        Aws::String base64HashString = hasher.getBase64HashString();
        partHashes.push_back(base64HashString);

        Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer hashBuffer = hasher.getByteBufferHash();

        totalHashBuffer.insert(totalHashBuffer.end(),
hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData(),
                               hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData() +
hashBuffer.GetLength());

        Aws::String calculatedHash;
        if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
            calculatedHash = base64HashString;
        }
        Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartOutcome uploadPartOutcome = uploadPart(bucket,
key, uploadID, partNumber,

checksumAlgorithm, base64HashString, body,
                                                                        client);
        if (uploadPartOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartResult &uploadPartResult =
uploadPartOutcome.GetResult();
            Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart completedPart;
            completedPart.SetETag(uploadPartResult.GetETag());
            completedPart.SetPartNumber(partNumber);
            switch (hashMethod) {
                case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                    break; // Do nothing.
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:

completedPart.SetChecksumSHA1(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumSHA1());
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:

completedPart.SetChecksumSHA256(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumSHA256());
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:

completedPart.SetChecksumCRC32(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumCRC32());
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:

completedPart.SetChecksumCRC32C(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumCRC32C());
                    break;
```

```
                default:
                    std::cerr << "Unhandled hash method for completedPart." <<
std::endl;
                    break;
            }

            parts.push_back(completedPart);
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error uploading part. " <<
                      uploadPartOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            uploadSucceeded = false;
            break;
        }

        uploadedBytes += bytesToRead;
        partNumber++;
    }

    if (!uploadSucceeded) {
        abortMultipartUpload(bucket, key, uploadID, client);
        return false;
    } else {

        Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome
completeMultipartUploadOutcome = completeMultipartUpload(bucket,

                                 key,

                                 uploadID,

                                 parts,

                                 client);

        if (completeMultipartUploadOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Multipart upload completed." << std::endl;
            if (!hashDataResult.calculateObjectHash(totalHashBuffer, hashMethod))
{
                std::cerr << "Error calculating hash." << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error completing multipart upload." <<
                      completeMultipartUploadOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                        << std::endl;
        }

        return completeMultipartUploadOutcome.IsSuccess();
    }
}

//! Routine which retrieves the string for a HASH_METHOD constant.
/*!
    \param: hashMethod: A HASH_METHOD constant.
    \return: String: A string description of the hash method.
*/
Aws::String AwsDoc::S3::stringForHashMethod(AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod) {
    switch (hashMethod) {
        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT:
            return "Default";
        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
            return "MD5";
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
            return "SHA1";
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
            return "SHA256";
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
            return "CRC32";
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
            return "CRC32C";
        default:
            return "Unknown";
    }
}

//! Routine that returns the ChecksumAlgorithm for a HASH_METHOD constant.
/*!
    \param: hashMethod: A HASH_METHOD constant.
    \return: ChecksumAlgorithm: The ChecksumAlgorithm enum.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm
AwsDoc::S3::getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod)
 {
    Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm result =
 Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET;
    switch (hashMethod) {
        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT:
```

```
            std::cerr << "getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod- DEFAULT is not
 valid." << std::endl;
            break;  // Default is not supported.
        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
            break; // Ignore MD5.
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA1;
            break;
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA256;
            break;
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32;
            break;
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32C;
            break;
        default:
            std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
            break;

    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which cleans up after the example is complete.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object was uploaded.
    \param clientConfiguration: The client configuration for the S3 client.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::cleanUp(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                         const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> keysResult;
    bool result = true;
    if (AwsDoc::S3::listObjects(bucketName, keysResult, clientConfiguration)) {
        if (!keysResult.empty()) {
            result = AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjects(keysResult, bucketName,
                                               clientConfiguration);
        }
    } else {
```

```
        result = false;
    }

    return result && AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
}

//! Console interaction introducing the workflow.
/*!
  \param bucketName: The name of the S3 bucket to use.
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::introductoryExplanations(const Aws::String &bucketName) {

    std::cout
            << "Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) object
 integrity workflow."
            << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout
            << "This workflow demonstrates how Amazon S3 uses checksum values to
 verify the integrity of data\n";
    std::cout << "uploaded to Amazon S3 buckets" << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The AWS SDK for C++ automatically handles checksums.\n";
    std::cout
            << "By default it calculates a checksum that is uploaded with an
 object.\n"
            << "The default checksum algorithm for PutObject and MultiPart upload
 is an MD5 hash.\n"
            << "The default checksum algorithm for TransferManager uploads is a
 CRC32 checksum."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "You can override the default behavior, requiring one of the
 following checksums,\n";
    std::cout << "MD5, CRC32, CRC32C, SHA-1 or SHA-256." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "You can also set the checksum hash value, instead of letting
 the SDK calculate the value."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/
latest/userguide/checking-object-integrity.html."
            << std::endl;

    std::cout
```

```
            << "This workflow will locally compute checksums for files uploaded
 to an Amazon S3 bucket,\n";
    std::cout << "even when the SDK also computes the checksum." << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "This is done to provide demonstration code for how the checksums
 are calculated."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "A bucket named '" << bucketName << "' will be created for the
 object uploads."
              << std::endl;
}

//! Console interaction which explains the PutObject results.
/*!
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::explainPutObjectResults() {

    std::cout << "The upload was successful.\n";
    std::cout << "If the checksums had not matched, the upload would have
 failed."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The checksums calculated by the server have been retrieved using
 the GetObjectAttributes."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The locally calculated checksums have been verified against the
 retrieved checksums."
            << std::endl;
}

//! Console interaction explaining transfer manager uploads.
/*!
  \param objectKey: The key for the object being uploaded.
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::introductoryTransferManagerUploadExplanations(
        const Aws::String &objectKey) {
    std::cout
            << "Now the workflow will demonstrate object integrity for
 TransferManager multi-part uploads."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The AWS C++ SDK has a TransferManager class which simplifies
 multipart uploads."
```

```
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The following code lets the TransferManager handle much of the
 checksum configuration."
            << std::endl;

    std::cout << "An object with the key '" << objectKey
              << " will be uploaded by the TransferManager using a "
              << BUFFER_SIZE_IN_MEGABYTES << " MB buffer." << std::endl;
    if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
        std::cout << "For TransferManager uploads, this demo always lets the SDK
 calculate the hash value."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    pressEnterToContinue();
    printAsterisksLine();
}

//! Console interaction explaining multi-part uploads.
/*!
  \param objectKey: The key for the object being uploaded.
  \param chosenHashMethod: The hash method selected by the user.
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::multiPartUploadExplanations(const Aws::String &objectKey,
                                             HASH_METHOD chosenHashMethod) {
    std::cout
            << "Now we will provide an in-depth demonstration of multi-part
 uploading by calling the multi-part upload APIs directly."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "These are the same APIs used by the TransferManager when
 uploading large files."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "In the following code, the checksums are also calculated locally
 and then compared."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "For multi-part uploads, a checksum is uploaded with each part.
 The final checksum is a concatenation of"
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "the checksums for each part." << std::endl;
    std::cout
```

```
            << "This is explained in the user guide, https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AmazonS3/latest/userguide/checking-object-integrity.html,\""
            << " in the section \"Using part-level checksums for multipart
 uploads\"." << std::endl;

    std::cout << "Starting multipart upload of with hash method " <<
              stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) << " uploading to with object
 key\n"
              << "'" << objectKey << "'," << std::endl;

}

//! Create a large file for doing multi-part uploads.
/*!
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::createLargeFileIfNotExists() {
    // Generate a large file by writing this source file multiple times to a new
 file.
    if (std::filesystem::exists(MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE)) {
        return true;
    }

    std::ofstream newFile(MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE, std::ios::out

                                                | std::ios::binary);

    if (!newFile) {
        std::cerr << "createLargeFileIfNotExists- Error creating file " <<
 MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::ifstream input(TEST_FILE, std::ios::in

                                  | std::ios::binary);
    if (!input) {
        std::cerr << "Error opening file " << TEST_FILE <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }
    std::stringstream buffer;
    buffer << input.rdbuf();
```

```
    input.close();

    while (newFile.tellp() < LARGE_FILE_SIZE && !newFile.bad()) {
        buffer.seekg(std::stringstream::beg);
        newFile << buffer.rdbuf();
    }

    newFile.close();

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - AbortMultipartUpload
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObjectAttributes
  - PutObject
  - UploadPart

Work with Amazon S3 versioned objects using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a versioned S3 bucket.
- Get all versions of an object.
- Roll an object back to a previous version.
- Delete and restore a versioned object.
- Permanently delete all versions of an object.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap S3 actions.

```
def create_versioned_bucket(bucket_name, prefix):
    """
    Creates an Amazon S3 bucket, enables it for versioning, and configures a
 lifecycle
    that expires noncurrent object versions after 7 days.

    Adding a lifecycle configuration to a versioned bucket is a best practice.
    It helps prevent objects in the bucket from accumulating a large number of
    noncurrent versions, which can slow down request performance.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to create.
    :param prefix: Identifies which objects are automatically expired under the
                   configured lifecycle rules.
    :return: The newly created bucket.
    """
    try:
        bucket = s3.create_bucket(
            Bucket=bucket_name,
            CreateBucketConfiguration={
                "LocationConstraint": s3.meta.client.meta.region_name
            },
        )
        logger.info("Created bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou":
            logger.warning("Bucket %s already exists! Using it.", bucket_name)
            bucket = s3.Bucket(bucket_name)
        else:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't create bucket %s.", bucket_name)
            raise

    try:
        bucket.Versioning().enable()
        logger.info("Enabled versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't enable versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
        raise

    try:
        expiration = 7
        bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().put(
            LifecycleConfiguration={
                "Rules": [
                    {
                        "Status": "Enabled",
                        "Prefix": prefix,
                        "NoncurrentVersionExpiration": {"NoncurrentDays":
 expiration},
                    }
                ]
            }
        )
        logger.info(
            "Configured lifecycle to expire noncurrent versions after %s days "
            "on bucket %s.",
            expiration,
            bucket.name,
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.warning(
            "Couldn't configure lifecycle on bucket %s because %s. "
            "Continuing anyway.",
            bucket.name,
            error,
        )

    return bucket



def rollback_object(bucket, object_key, version_id):
    """
```

```
    Rolls back an object to an earlier version by deleting all versions that
    occurred after the specified rollback version.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that holds the object to roll back.
    :param object_key: The object to roll back.
    :param version_id: The version ID to roll back to.
    """
    # Versions must be sorted by last_modified date because delete markers are
    # at the end of the list even when they are interspersed in time.
    versions = sorted(
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key),
        key=attrgetter("last_modified"),
        reverse=True,
    )

    logger.debug(
        "Got versions:\n%s",
        "\n".join(
            [
                f"\t{version.version_id}, last modified {version.last_modified}"
                for version in versions
            ]
        ),
    )

    if version_id in [ver.version_id for ver in versions]:
        print(f"Rolling back to version {version_id}")
        for version in versions:
            if version.version_id != version_id:
                version.delete()
                print(f"Deleted version {version.version_id}")
            else:
                break

        print(f"Active version is now {bucket.Object(object_key).version_id}")
    else:
        raise KeyError(
            f"{version_id} was not found in the list of versions for "
f"{object_key}."
        )
```

```
def revive_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Revives a versioned object that was deleted by removing the object's active
    delete marker.
    A versioned object presents as deleted when its latest version is a delete
 marker.
    By removing the delete marker, we make the previous version the latest
 version
    and the object then presents as *not* deleted.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to revive.
    """
    # Get the latest version for the object.
    response = s3.meta.client.list_object_versions(
        Bucket=bucket.name, Prefix=object_key, MaxKeys=1
    )

    if "DeleteMarkers" in response:
        latest_version = response["DeleteMarkers"][0]
        if latest_version["IsLatest"]:
            logger.info(
                "Object %s was indeed deleted on %s. Let's revive it.",
                object_key,
                latest_version["LastModified"],
            )
            obj = bucket.Object(object_key)
            obj.Version(latest_version["VersionId"]).delete()
            logger.info(
                "Revived %s, active version is now %s  with body '%s'",
                object_key,
                obj.version_id,
                obj.get()["Body"].read(),
            )
        else:
            logger.warning(
                "Delete marker is not the latest version for %s!", object_key
            )
    elif "Versions" in response:
```

```
        logger.warning("Got an active version for %s, nothing to do.",
 object_key)
    else:
        logger.error("Couldn't get any version info for %s.", object_key)



def permanently_delete_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Permanently deletes a versioned object by deleting all of its versions.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to delete.
    """
    try:
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key).delete()
        logger.info("Permanently deleted all versions of object %s.", object_key)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete all versions of %s.", object_key)
        raise
```

Upload the stanza of a poem to a versioned object and perform a series of actions on it.

```
def usage_demo_single_object(obj_prefix="demo-versioning/"):
    """
    Demonstrates usage of versioned object functions. This demo uploads a stanza
    of a poem and performs a series of revisions, deletions, and revivals on it.

    :param obj_prefix: The prefix to assign to objects created by this demo.
    """
    with open("father_william.txt") as file:
        stanzas = file.read().split("\n\n")

    width = get_terminal_size((80, 20))[0]
    print("-" * width)
    print("Welcome to the usage demonstration of Amazon S3 versioning.")
    print(
```

```
        "This demonstration uploads a single stanza of a poem to an Amazon "
        "S3 bucket and then applies various revisions to it."
    )
    print("-" * width)
    print("Creating a version-enabled bucket for the demo...")
    bucket = create_versioned_bucket("bucket-" + str(uuid.uuid1()), obj_prefix)

    print("\nThe initial version of our stanza:")
    print(stanzas[0])

    # Add the first stanza and revise it a few times.
    print("\nApplying some revisions to the stanza...")
    obj_stanza_1 = bucket.Object(f"{obj_prefix}stanza-1")
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0], "utf-8"))
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0].upper(), "utf-8"))
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0].lower(), "utf-8"))
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0][::-1], "utf-8"))
    print(
        "The latest version of the stanza is now:",
        obj_stanza_1.get()["Body"].read().decode("utf-8"),
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Versions are returned in order, most recent first.
    obj_stanza_1_versions =
 bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=obj_stanza_1.key)
    print(
        "The version data of the stanza revisions:",
        *[
            f"    {version.version_id}, last modified {version.last_modified}"
            for version in obj_stanza_1_versions
        ],
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Rollback two versions.
    print("\nRolling back two versions...")
    rollback_object(bucket, obj_stanza_1.key, list(obj_stanza_1_versions)
[2].version_id)
    print(
        "The latest version of the stanza:",
        obj_stanza_1.get()["Body"].read().decode("utf-8"),
        sep="\n",
    )
```

```
    # Delete the stanza
    print("\nDeleting the stanza...")
    obj_stanza_1.delete()
    try:
        obj_stanza_1.get()
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchKey":
            print("The stanza is now deleted (as expected).")
        else:
            raise

    # Revive the stanza
    print("\nRestoring the stanza...")
    revive_object(bucket, obj_stanza_1.key)
    print(
        "The stanza is restored! The latest version is again:",
        obj_stanza_1.get()["Body"].read().decode("utf-8"),
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Permanently delete all versions of the object. This cannot be undone!
    print("\nPermanently deleting all versions of the stanza...")
    permanently_delete_object(bucket, obj_stanza_1.key)
    obj_stanza_1_versions =
 bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=obj_stanza_1.key)
    if len(list(obj_stanza_1_versions)) == 0:
        print("The stanza has been permanently deleted and now has no versions.")
    else:
        print("Something went wrong. The stanza still exists!")

    print(f"\nRemoving {bucket.name}...")
    bucket.delete()
    print(f"{bucket.name} deleted.")
    print("Demo done!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteObject

- ListObjectVersions
- PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration

Serverless examples for Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to use Amazon S3 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.S3;
using System;
using Amazon.Lambda.S3Events;
using System.Web;
```

```
// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace S3Integration
{
    public class Function
    {
        private static AmazonS3Client _s3Client;
        public Function() : this(null)
        {
        }

        internal Function(AmazonS3Client s3Client)
        {
            _s3Client = s3Client ?? new AmazonS3Client();
        }

        public async Task<string> Handler(S3Event evt, ILambdaContext context)
        {
            try
            {
                if (evt.Records.Count <= 0)
                {
                    context.Logger.LogLine("Empty S3 Event received");
                    return string.Empty;
                }

                var bucket = evt.Records[0].S3.Bucket.Name;
                var key = HttpUtility.UrlDecode(evt.Records[0].S3.Object.Key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Request is for {bucket} and {key}");

                var objectResult = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Returning {objectResult.Key}");

                return objectResult.Key;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                context.Logger.LogLine($"Error processing request -
 {e.Message}");
```

```
                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, s3Event events.S3Event) error {
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("failed to load default config: %s", err)
  return err
 }
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 for _, record := range s3Event.Records {
```

```
  bucket := record.S3.Bucket.Name
  key := record.S3.Object.URLDecodedKey
  headOutput, err := s3Client.HeadObject(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: &bucket,
   Key:    &key,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("error getting head of object %s/%s: %s", bucket, key, err)
   return err
  }
  log.Printf("successfully retrieved %s/%s of type %s", bucket, key,
 *headOutput.ContentType)
 }

 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
```

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.S3Event;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.s3.S3EventNotification.S3EventNotifi

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<S3Event, String> {
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(Handler.class);
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(S3Event s3event, Context context) {
        try {
          S3EventNotificationRecord record = s3event.getRecords().get(0);
          String srcBucket = record.getS3().getBucket().getName();
          String srcKey = record.getS3().getObject().getUrlDecodedKey();

          S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder().build();
          HeadObjectResponse headObject = getHeadObject(s3Client, srcBucket,
 srcKey);

          logger.info("Successfully retrieved " + srcBucket + "/" + srcKey + " of
 type " + headObject.contentType());

          return "Ok";
        } catch (Exception e) {
          throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private HeadObjectResponse getHeadObject(S3Client s3Client, String bucket,
 String key) {
        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucket)
                .key(key)
                .build();
        return s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

const client = new S3Client();

export const handler = async (event, context) => {

    // Get the object from the event and show its content type
    const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
    const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g,
 ' '));

    try {
        const { ContentType } = await client.send(new HeadObjectCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
            Key: key,
        }));

        console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
        return ContentType;

    } catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
        const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make
 sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
        console.log(message);
        throw new Error(message);
    }
};
```

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { S3Event } from 'aws-lambda';
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from '@aws-sdk/client-s3';

const s3 = new S3Client({ region: process.env.AWS_REGION });

export const handler = async (event: S3Event): Promise<string | undefined> => {
  // Get the object from the event and show its content type
  const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
  const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g, '
 '));
  const params = {
    Bucket: bucket,
    Key: key,
  };
  try {
    const { ContentType } = await s3.send(new HeadObjectCommand(params));
    console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
    return ContentType;
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
    const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make sure
 they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
    console.log(message);
    throw new Error(message);
  }
};
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Event;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Handler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';


class Handler extends S3Handler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    public function handleS3(S3Event $event, Context $context) : void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing S3 records");

        // Get the object from the event and show its content type
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record)
        {
            $bucket = $record->getBucket()->getName();
            $key = urldecode($record->getObject()->getKey());

            try {
                $fileSize = urldecode($record->getObject()->getSize());
                echo "File Size: " . $fileSize . "\n";
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                echo $e->getMessage() . "\n";
                echo 'Error getting object ' . $key . ' from bucket ' .
 $bucket . '. Make sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this
 function.' . "\n";
                throw $e;
            }
        }
```

```
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import json
import urllib.parse
import boto3

print('Loading function')

s3 = boto3.client('s3')


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    #print("Received event: " + json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    # Get the object from the event and show its content type
    bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
    key = urllib.parse.unquote_plus(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 encoding='utf-8')
    try:
        response = s3.get_object(Bucket=bucket, Key=key)
        print("CONTENT TYPE: " + response['ContentType'])
        return response['ContentType']
    except Exception as e:
```

```
        print(e)
        print('Error getting object {} from bucket {}. Make sure they exist and
 your bucket is in the same region as this function.'.format(key, bucket))
        raise e
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'
require 'uri'
require 'aws-sdk'

puts 'Loading function'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  s3 = Aws::S3::Client.new(region: 'region') # Your AWS region
  # puts "Received event: #{JSON.dump(event)}"

  # Get the object from the event and show its content type
  bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
  key = URI.decode_www_form_component(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 Encoding::UTF_8)
  begin
    response = s3.get_object(bucket: bucket, key: key)
    puts "CONTENT TYPE: #{response.content_type}"
    return response.content_type
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts e.message
    puts "Error getting object #{key} from bucket #{bucket}. Make sure they exist
 and your bucket is in the same region as this function."
    raise e
  end
```

```
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::s3::S3Event;
use aws_sdk_s3::{Client};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};


/// Main function
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();

    // Initialize the AWS SDK for Rust
    let config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let s3_client = Client::new(&config);

    let res = run(service_fn(|request: LambdaEvent<S3Event>| {
        function_handler(&s3_client, request)
    })).await;

    res
}
```

```
async fn function_handler(
    s3_client: &Client,
    evt: LambdaEvent<S3Event>
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing::info!(records = ?evt.payload.records.len(), "Received request from
 SQS");

    if evt.payload.records.len() == 0 {
        tracing::info!("Empty S3 event received");
    }

    let bucket = evt.payload.records[0].s3.bucket.name.as_ref().expect("Bucket
 name to exist");
    let key = evt.payload.records[0].s3.object.key.as_ref().expect("Object key to
 exist");

    tracing::info!("Request is for {} and object {}", bucket, key);

    let s3_get_object_result = s3_client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await;

    match s3_get_object_result {
        Ok(_) => tracing::info!("S3 Get Object success, the s3GetObjectResult
 contains a 'body' property of type ByteStream"),
        Err(_) => tracing::info!("Failure with S3 Get Object request")
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

Code examples for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon S3 Control with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Amazon S3 Control User Guide** – More information about Amazon S3 Control.
- **Amazon S3 Control API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon S3 Control actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3 Control

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 Control.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.S3ControlAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.JobListDescriptor;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
```

```
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this example:
 * <p/>
 * The SDK must be able to authenticate AWS requests on your behalf. If you have
 not configured
 * authentication for SDKs and tools,see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkref/
latest/guide/access.html in the AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide.
 * <p/>
 * You must have a runtime environment configured with the Java SDK.
 * See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 in the Developer Guide if this is not set up.
 */
public class HelloS3Batch {
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient asyncClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        S3BatchActions actions = new S3BatchActions();
        String accountId = actions.getAccountId();
        try {
            listBatchJobsAsync(accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("List batch jobs failed: " +
 ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();

        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list batch jobs: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the asynchronous S3 Control client instance.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the {@link
 S3ControlAsyncClient}. If the instance
     * has not been created yet, it will be initialized with the following
 configuration:
```

```
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Retry policy: 3 retries</li>
     *   <li>Region: US_EAST_1</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: {@link
EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider}</li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous S3 Control client instance
     */
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            asyncClient = S3ControlAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return asyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists batch jobs that have completed for the specified
account.
     *
```

```
     * @param accountId the ID of the account to list jobs for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job listing operation
is finished
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listBatchJobsAsync(String accountId) {
        ListJobsRequest jobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobStatuses(JobStatus.COMPLETE)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        ListJobsPublisher publisher =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(jobsRequest);
        return publisher.subscribe(response -> {
            List<JobListDescriptor> jobs = response.jobs();
            for (JobListDescriptor job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("The job id is " + job.jobId());
                System.out.println("The job priority is " + job.priority());
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("Listing batch jobs completed");
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            System.err.println("Failed to list batch jobs: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon S3 Control
  - Learn the basics of Amazon S3 Control with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteJobTagging with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetJobTagging with an AWS SDK

- Use PutJobTagging with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateJobPriority with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateJobStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon S3 Control with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon S3 Control
- Learn the basics of Amazon S3 Control with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteJobTagging with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetJobTagging with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutJobTagging with an AWS SDK
  - Use UpdateJobPriority with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateJobStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon S3 Control

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 Control.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.S3ControlAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.JobListDescriptor;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this example:
 * <p/>
 * The SDK must be able to authenticate AWS requests on your behalf. If you have
 not configured
 * authentication for SDKs and tools,see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkref/
latest/guide/access.html in the AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide.
 * <p/>
 * You must have a runtime environment configured with the Java SDK.
 * See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 in the Developer Guide if this is not set up.
 */
public class HelloS3Batch {
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient asyncClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        S3BatchActions actions = new S3BatchActions();
        String accountId = actions.getAccountId();
        try {
            listBatchJobsAsync(accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("List batch jobs failed: " +
 ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
```

```
                .join();

        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list batch jobs: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the asynchronous S3 Control client instance.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the {@link
S3ControlAsyncClient}. If the instance
     * has not been created yet, it will be initialized with the following
configuration:
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Retry policy: 3 retries</li>
     *   <li>Region: US_EAST_1</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: {@link
EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider}</li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous S3 Control client instance
     */
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();
```

```
            asyncClient = S3ControlAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return asyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists batch jobs that have completed for the specified
account.
     *
     * @param accountId the ID of the account to list jobs for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job listing operation
is finished
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listBatchJobsAsync(String accountId) {
        ListJobsRequest jobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobStatuses(JobStatus.COMPLETE)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        ListJobsPublisher publisher =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(jobsRequest);
        return publisher.subscribe(response -> {
            List<JobListDescriptor> jobs = response.jobs();
            for (JobListDescriptor job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("The job id is " + job.jobId());
                System.out.println("The job priority is " + job.priority());
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("Listing batch jobs completed");
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            System.err.println("Failed to list batch jobs: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Amazon S3 Control with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to learn core operations for Amazon S3 Control.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Learn core operations.

```
package com.example.s3.batch;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

public class S3BatchScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static final String STACK_NAME = "MyS3Stack";
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        S3BatchActions actions = new S3BatchActions();
        String accountId = actions.getAccountId();
        String uuid = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Batch basics scenario.");
        System.out.println("""
            S3 Batch operations enables efficient and cost-effective processing
 of large-scale
            data stored in Amazon S3. It automatically scales resources to handle
 varying workloads
```

```
            without the need for manual intervention.

            One of the key features of S3 Batch is its ability to perform tagging
operations on objects stored in
            S3 buckets. Users can leverage S3 Batch to apply, update, or remove
tags on thousands or millions of
            objects in a single operation, streamlining the management and
organization of their data.

            This can be particularly useful for tasks such as cost allocation,
lifecycle management, or
            metadata-driven workflows, where consistent and accurate tagging is
essential.
            S3 Batch's scalability and serverless nature make it an ideal
solution for organizations with
            growing data volumes and complex data management requirements.

            This Java program walks you through Amazon S3 Batch operations.

            Let's get started...

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        // Use CloudFormation to stand up the resource required for this
scenario.
        System.out.println("Use CloudFormation to stand up the resource required
for this scenario.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);

        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputs(STACK_NAME);
        String iamRoleArn = stackOutputs.get("S3BatchRoleArn");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Setup the required bucket for this scenario.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID(); // Change
bucket name.
        actions.createBucket(bucketName);
        String reportBucketName = "arn:aws:s3:::"+bucketName;
        String manifestLocation = "arn:aws:s3:::"+bucketName+"/job-manifest.csv";
        System.out.println("Populate the bucket with the required files.");
```

```
        String[] fileNames = {"job-manifest.csv", "object-key-1.txt", "object-
key-2.txt", "object-key-3.txt", "object-key-4.txt"};
        actions.uploadFilesToBucket(bucketName, fileNames, actions);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create a S3 Batch Job");
        System.out.println("This job tags all objects listed in the manifest file
 with tags");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobId ;
        try {
            jobId = actions.createS3JobAsync(accountId, iamRoleArn,
 manifestLocation, reportBucketName, uuid).join();
            System.out.println("The Job id is " + jobId);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Update an existing S3 Batch Operations job's
 priority");
        System.out.println("""
             In this step, we modify the job priority value. The higher the
 number, the higher the priority.
             So, a job with a priority of `30` would have a higher priority than
 a job with
             a priority of `20`. This is a common way to represent the priority
 of a task
             or job, with higher numbers indicating a higher priority.

             Ensure that the job status allows for priority updates. Jobs in
 certain
             states (e.g., Cancelled, Failed, or Completed) cannot have their
 priorities
```

```
            updated. Only jobs in the Active or Suspended state typically allow
priority
            updates.
            """);

        try {
            actions.updateJobPriorityAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Update job priority failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to update job priority: " +
ex.getMessage());
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Cancel the S3 Batch job");
        System.out.print("Do you want to cancel the Batch job? (y/n): ");
        String cancelAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (cancelAns != null && cancelAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                actions.cancelJobAsync(jobId, accountId)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        System.err.println("Cancel job failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
            } catch (CompletionException ex) {
                System.err.println("Failed to cancel job: " + ex.getMessage());
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("Job " +jobId +" was not canceled.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Describe the job that was just created");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            actions.describeJobAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Describe job failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to describe job: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Describe the tags associated with the job");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.getJobTagsAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Get job tags failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to get job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Update Batch Job Tags");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.putJobTaggingAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Put job tagging failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to put job tagging: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Delete the Amazon S3 Batch job tagging.");
        System.out.print("Do you want to delete Batch job tagging? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (delAns != null && delAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                actions.deleteBatchJobTagsAsync(jobId, accountId)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        System.err.println("Delete batch job tags failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
            } catch (CompletionException ex) {
                System.err.println("Failed to delete batch job tags: " +
ex.getMessage());
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("Tagging was not deleted.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.print("Do you want to delete the AWS resources used in this
scenario? (y/n)");
        String delResAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (delResAns != null && delResAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            actions.deleteFilesFromBucket(bucketName, fileNames, actions);
            actions.deleteBucketFolderAsync(bucketName);
            actions.deleteBucket(bucketName)
                .thenRun(() -> System.out.println("Bucket deletion completed"))
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                });
            CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The AWS resources were not deleted.");
        }
        System.out.println("The Amazon S3 Batch scenario has successfully
completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }
```

```
    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println();
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println();
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }


}
```

An action class that wraps operations.

```
public class S3BatchActions {

    private static S3ControlAsyncClient asyncClient;

    private static S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient ;
    /**
     * Retrieves the asynchronous S3 Control client instance.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the {@link
 S3ControlAsyncClient}. If the instance
     * has not been created yet, it will be initialized with the following
 configuration:
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
```

```
     *   <li>Retry policy: 3 retries</li>
     *   <li>Region: US_EAST_1</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: {@link
EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider}</li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous S3 Control client instance
     */
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();

            asyncClient = S3ControlAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return asyncClient;
    }

    private static S3AsyncClient getS3AsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();
```

```
            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return s3AsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Cancels a job asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId The ID of the job to be canceled.
     * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the job.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job status has
been updated to "CANCELLED".
     *         If an error occurs during the update, the returned future will
complete exceptionally.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> cancelJobAsync(String jobId, String accountId)
{
        UpdateJobStatusRequest updateJobStatusRequest =
UpdateJobStatusRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .jobId(jobId)
            .requestedJobStatus(String.valueOf(JobStatus.CANCELLED))
            .build();

        return asyncClient.updateJobStatus(updateJobStatusRequest)
            .thenAccept(updateJobStatusResponse -> {
                System.out.println("Job status updated to: " +
updateJobStatusResponse.status());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to cancel job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Updates the priority of a job asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to update
     * @param accountId the ID of the account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation, which completes when the job priority has been updated or an error
has occurred
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> updateJobPriorityAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        UpdateJobPriorityRequest priorityRequest =
UpdateJobPriorityRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .jobId(jobId)
            .priority(60)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().updateJobPriority(priorityRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("The job priority was updated");
                future.complete(null); // Complete the CompletableFuture on
successful execution
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to update job priority: " +
ex.getMessage());
                future.completeExceptionally(ex); // Complete the
CompletableFuture exceptionally on error
                return null; // Return null to handle the exception
            });

        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the tags associated with a specific job in an AWS
account.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job for which to retrieve the tags
```

```
     * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job tags have
been retrieved, or with an exception if the operation fails
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while retrieving the job tags
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        GetJobTaggingRequest request = GetJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.getJobTagging(request)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<S3Tag> tags = response.tags();
                if (tags.isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No tags found for job ID: " + jobId);
                } else {
                    for (S3Tag tag : tags) {
                        System.out.println("Tag key is: " + tag.key());
                        System.out.println("Tag value is: " + tag.value());
                    }
                }
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to get job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes the tags associated with a specific batch job.
     *
     * @param jobId     The ID of the batch job whose tags should be deleted.
     * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the batch job.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that completes when the job tags have been
successfully deleted, or an exception is thrown if the deletion fails.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBatchJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        DeleteJobTaggingRequest jobTaggingRequest =
DeleteJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .jobId(jobId)
```

```
            .build();

        return asyncClient.deleteJobTagging(jobTaggingRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted " + jobId + "
tagging.");
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to delete job tags: " +
ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the specified job.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to describe
     * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job
description is available
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while describing the job
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeJobAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        DescribeJobRequest jobRequest = DescribeJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeJob(jobRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("Job ID: " + response.job().jobId());
                System.out.println("Description: " +
response.job().description());
                System.out.println("Status: " + response.job().statusAsString());
                System.out.println("Role ARN: " + response.job().roleArn());
                System.out.println("Priority: " + response.job().priority());
                System.out.println("Progress Summary: " +
response.job().progressSummary());

                // Print out details about the job manifest.
                JobManifest manifest = response.job().manifest();
```

```
                System.out.println("Manifest Location: " +
manifest.location().objectArn());
                System.out.println("Manifest ETag: " +
manifest.location().eTag());

                // Print out details about the job operation.
                JobOperation operation = response.job().operation();
                if (operation.s3PutObjectTagging() != null) {
                    System.out.println("Operation: S3 Put Object Tagging");
                    System.out.println("Tag Set: " +
operation.s3PutObjectTagging().tagSet());
                }

                // Print out details about the job report.
                JobReport report = response.job().report();
                System.out.println("Report Bucket: " + report.bucket());
                System.out.println("Report Prefix: " + report.prefix());
                System.out.println("Report Format: " + report.format());
                System.out.println("Report Enabled: " + report.enabled());
                System.out.println("Report Scope: " +
report.reportScopeAsString());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to describe job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous S3 job using the AWS Java SDK.
     *
     * @param accountId         the AWS account ID associated with the job
     * @param iamRoleArn        the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the job
     * @param manifestLocation  the location of the job manifest file in S3
     * @param reportBucketName  the name of the S3 bucket to store the job report
     * @param uuid              a unique identifier for the job
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous creation of
the S3 job.
     *         The CompletableFuture will return the job ID if the job is created
successfully,
     *         or throw an exception if there is an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createS3JobAsync(String accountId, String
iamRoleArn,
```

```
                                                                String manifestLocation,
 String reportBucketName, String uuid) {

        String[] bucketName = new String[]{""};
        String[] parts = reportBucketName.split(":::");
        if (parts.length > 1) {
            bucketName[0] = parts[1];
        } else {
            System.out.println("The input string does not contain the expected
 format.");
        }

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> getETag(bucketName[0], "job-
manifest.csv"))
            .thenCompose(eTag -> {
                  ArrayList<S3Tag> tagSet = new ArrayList<>();
                S3Tag s3Tag = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyOne")
                    .value("ValueOne")
                    .build();
                S3Tag s3Tag2 = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyTwo")
                    .value("ValueTwo")
                    .build();
                tagSet.add(s3Tag);
                tagSet.add(s3Tag2);

                S3SetObjectTaggingOperation objectTaggingOperation =
 S3SetObjectTaggingOperation.builder()
                    .tagSet(tagSet)
                    .build();

                JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
                    .s3PutObjectTagging(objectTaggingOperation)
                    .build();

                JobManifestLocation jobManifestLocation =
 JobManifestLocation.builder()
                    .objectArn(manifestLocation)
                    .eTag(eTag)
                    .build();

                JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
                    .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
```

```
                    .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
                    .build();

                JobManifest jobManifest = JobManifest.builder()
                    .spec(manifestSpec)
                    .location(jobManifestLocation)
                    .build();

                JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
                    .bucket(reportBucketName)
                    .prefix("reports")
                    .format("Report_CSV_20180820")
                    .enabled(true)
                    .reportScope("AllTasks")
                    .build();

                CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .description("Job created using the AWS Java SDK")
                    .manifest(jobManifest)
                    .operation(jobOperation)
                    .report(jobReport)
                    .priority(42)
                    .roleArn(iamRoleArn)
                    .clientRequestToken(uuid)
                    .confirmationRequired(false)
                    .build();

                // Create the job asynchronously.
                 return getAsyncClient().createJob(jobRequest)
                    .thenApply(CreateJobResponse::jobId);
                 })
                 .handle((jobId, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                    Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                    if (cause instanceof S3ControlException) {
                        throw new CompletionException(cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                    }
                }
                return jobId;
            });
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the ETag (Entity Tag) for an object stored in an Amazon S3
bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the object is
stored
     * @param key the key (file name) of the object in the Amazon S3 bucket
     * @return the ETag of the object
     */
    public String getETag(String bucketName, String key) {
        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        HeadObjectResponse headObjectResponse =
s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
        return headObjectResponse.eTag();
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to a job in the system.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to add tags to
     * @param accountId the account ID associated with the job
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the tagging operation is
finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> putJobTaggingAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        S3Tag departmentTag = S3Tag.builder()
            .key("department")
            .value("Marketing")
            .build();

        S3Tag fiscalYearTag = S3Tag.builder()
            .key("FiscalYear")
            .value("2020")
```

```
            .build();

        PutJobTaggingRequest putJobTaggingRequest =
PutJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .tags(departmentTag, fiscalYearTag)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.putJobTagging(putJobTaggingRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                System.out.println("Additional Tags were added to job " + jobId);
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to add tags to job: " +
ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }

    // Setup the S3 bucket required for this scenario.
    /**
     * Creates an Amazon S3 bucket with the specified name.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error creating the bucket
     */
    public void createBucket(String bucketName) {
        try {
            S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();


            S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();
```

```
            // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
            WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse> waiterResponse =
s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param fileName the name of the file to be uploaded
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs during the file upload
     */
    public void populateBucket(String bucketName, String fileName) {
        // Define the path to the directory.
        Path filePath = Paths.get("src/main/resources/batch/",
fileName).toAbsolutePath();
        PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(fileName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> future =
getS3AsyncClient().putObject(putOb, AsyncRequestBody.fromFile(filePath));
        future.whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                System.err.println("Error uploading file: " + ex.getMessage());
            } else {
                System.out.println("Successfully placed " + fileName + " into
bucket " + bucketName);
            }
        }).join();
    }


    // Update the bucketName in CSV.
    public void updateCSV(String newValue) {
```

```
        Path csvFilePath = Paths.get("src/main/resources/batch/job-
manifest.csv").toAbsolutePath();
        try {
            // Read all lines from the CSV file.
            List<String> lines = Files.readAllLines(csvFilePath);

            // Update the first value in each line.
            List<String> updatedLines = lines.stream()
                .map(line -> {
                    String[] parts = line.split(",");
                    parts[0] = newValue;
                    return String.join(",", parts);
                })
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

            // Write the updated lines back to the CSV file
            Files.write(csvFilePath, updatedLines);
            System.out.println("CSV file updated successfully.");
        } catch (Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an object from an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
     * @param objectName The name of the object to be deleted.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object has
been deleted,
     *         or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if an error occurs during the
deletion.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucketObjects(String bucketName, String
objectName) {
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> toDelete = new ArrayList<>();
        toDelete.add(ObjectIdentifier.builder()
            .key(objectName)
            .build());

        DeleteObjectsRequest dor = DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .delete(Delete.builder()
                .objects(toDelete).build())
```

```
            .build();

        return getS3AsyncClient().deleteObjects(dor)
            .thenAccept(result -> {
                System.out.println("The object was deleted!");
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error deleting object: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a folder and all its contents asynchronously from an Amazon S3
bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the folder to be
deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the folder and its
contents have been deleted
     * @throws RuntimeException if any error occurs during the deletion process
     */
    public void deleteBucketFolderAsync(String bucketName) {
        String folderName = "reports/";
        ListObjectsV2Request request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .prefix(folderName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<ListObjectsV2Response> listObjectsFuture =
getS3AsyncClient().listObjectsV2(request);
        listObjectsFuture.thenCompose(response -> {
            List<CompletableFuture<DeleteObjectResponse>> deleteFutures =
response.contents().stream()
                .map(obj -> {
                    DeleteObjectRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(bucketName)
                        .key(obj.key())
                        .build();
                    return getS3AsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteRequest)
                        .thenApply(deleteResponse -> {
                            System.out.println("Deleted object: " + obj.key());
                            return deleteResponse;
```

```
                        });
                })
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return CompletableFuture.allOf(deleteFutures.toArray(new
CompletableFuture[0]))
                .thenCompose(v -> {
                    // Delete the folder.
                    DeleteObjectRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(bucketName)
                        .key(folderName)
                        .build();
                    return getS3AsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteRequest)
                        .thenApply(deleteResponse -> {
                            System.out.println("Deleted folder: " + folderName);
                            return deleteResponse;
                        });
                });
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the bucket to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket has
been deleted, or exceptionally if there is an error
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error deleting the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucket(String bucketName) {
        S3AsyncClient s3Client = getS3AsyncClient();
        return s3Client.deleteBucket(DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build())
            .thenAccept(deleteBucketResponse -> {
                System.out.println(bucketName + " was deleted");
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                // Handle the exception or rethrow it.
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete bucket: " +
bucketName, ex);
            });
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Uploads a set of files to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the files to
    * @param fileNames an array of file names to be uploaded
    * @param actions an instance of {@link S3BatchActions} that provides the
implementation for the necessary S3 operations
    * @throws IOException if there's an error creating the text files or
uploading the files to the S3 bucket
    */
   public static void uploadFilesToBucket(String bucketName, String[] fileNames,
S3BatchActions actions) throws IOException {
       actions.updateCSV(bucketName);
       createTextFiles(fileNames);
       for (String fileName : fileNames) {
           actions.populateBucket(bucketName, fileName);
       }
       System.out.println("All files are placed in the S3 bucket " +
bucketName);
   }

   /**
    * Deletes the specified files from the given S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
    * @param fileNames an array of file names to be deleted from the bucket
    * @param actions the S3BatchActions instance to be used for the file
deletion
    * @throws IOException if an I/O error occurs during the file deletion
    */
   public void deleteFilesFromBucket(String bucketName, String[] fileNames,
S3BatchActions actions) throws IOException {
       for (String fileName : fileNames) {
                   actions.deleteBucketObjects(bucketName, fileName)
                  .thenRun(() -> System.out.println("Object deletion completed"))
                  .exceptionally(ex -> {
                      System.err.println("Error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
                      return null;
                  });
       }
       System.out.println("All files have been deleted from the bucket " +
bucketName);
   }
```

```
    public static void createTextFiles(String[] fileNames) {
        String currentDirectory = System.getProperty("user.dir");
        String directoryPath = currentDirectory + "\\src\\main\\resources\
\batch";
        Path path = Paths.get(directoryPath);

        try {
            // Create the directory if it doesn't exist.
            if (Files.notExists(path)) {
                Files.createDirectories(path);
                System.out.println("Created directory: " + path.toString());
            } else {
                System.out.println("Directory already exists: " +
 path.toString());
            }

            for (String fileName : fileNames) {
                // Check if the file is a .txt file.
                if (fileName.endsWith(".txt")) {
                    // Define the path for the new file.
                    Path filePath = path.resolve(fileName);
                    System.out.println("Attempting to create file: " +
 filePath.toString());

                    // Create and write content to the new file.
                    Files.write(filePath, "This is a test".getBytes());

                    // Verify the file was created.
                    if (Files.exists(filePath)) {
                        System.out.println("Successfully created file: " +
 filePath.toString());
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Failed to create file: " +
 filePath.toString());
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

```
    public String getAccountId() {
        StsClient stsClient = StsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        GetCallerIdentityResponse callerIdentityResponse =
 stsClient.getCallerIdentity();
        return callerIdentityResponse.account();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteJobTagging
  - DescribeJob
  - GetJobTagging
  - ListJobs
  - PutJobTagging
  - UpdateJobPriority
  - UpdateJobStatus

Actions for Amazon S3 Control using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon S3 Control actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon S3 Control API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteJobTagging with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJobTagging with an AWS SDK

- Use PutJobTagging with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateJobPriority with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateJobStatus with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an Amazon S3 batch operations job

The following `create-job` example creates an Amazon S3 batch operations job to tag objects as `confidential` in the bucket ``employee-records`.

```
aws s3control create-job \
    --account-id 123456789012 \
    --operation '{"S3PutObjectTagging": { "TagSet": [{"Key":"confidential",
 "Value":"true"}] }}' \
    --report '{"Bucket":"arn:aws:s3:::employee-records-logs","Prefix":"batch-op-
create-job",
 "Format":"Report_CSV_20180820","Enabled":true,"ReportScope":"AllTasks"}' \
    --manifest '{"Spec":{"Format":"S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820","Fields":
["Bucket","Key"]},"Location":{"ObjectArn":"arn:aws:s3:::employee-records-logs/
inv-report/7a6a9be4-072c-407e-85a2-
ec3e982f773e.csv","ETag":"69f52a4e9f797e987155d9c8f5880897"}}' \
    --priority 42 \
    --role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/S3BatchJobRole
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "93735294-df46-44d5-8638-6356f335324e"
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an asynchronous S3 job.

```
   /**
    * Creates an asynchronous S3 job using the AWS Java SDK.
    *
    * @param accountId         the AWS account ID associated with the job
    * @param iamRoleArn        the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the job
    * @param manifestLocation  the location of the job manifest file in S3
    * @param reportBucketName  the name of the S3 bucket to store the job report
    * @param uuid              a unique identifier for the job
    * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous creation of
the S3 job.
    *         The CompletableFuture will return the job ID if the job is created
successfully,
    *         or throw an exception if there is an error.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createS3JobAsync(String accountId, String
iamRoleArn,
                                                      String manifestLocation,
String reportBucketName, String uuid) {

       String[] bucketName = new String[]{""};
       String[] parts = reportBucketName.split(":::");
       if (parts.length > 1) {
           bucketName[0] = parts[1];
       } else {
           System.out.println("The input string does not contain the expected
format.");
```

```
        }

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> getETag(bucketName[0], "job-
manifest.csv"))
            .thenCompose(eTag -> {
                  ArrayList<S3Tag> tagSet = new ArrayList<>();
                S3Tag s3Tag = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyOne")
                    .value("ValueOne")
                    .build();
                S3Tag s3Tag2 = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyTwo")
                    .value("ValueTwo")
                    .build();
                tagSet.add(s3Tag);
                tagSet.add(s3Tag2);

                S3SetObjectTaggingOperation objectTaggingOperation =
 S3SetObjectTaggingOperation.builder()
                    .tagSet(tagSet)
                    .build();

                JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
                    .s3PutObjectTagging(objectTaggingOperation)
                    .build();

                JobManifestLocation jobManifestLocation =
 JobManifestLocation.builder()
                    .objectArn(manifestLocation)
                    .eTag(eTag)
                    .build();

                JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
                    .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
                    .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
                    .build();

                JobManifest jobManifest = JobManifest.builder()
                    .spec(manifestSpec)
                    .location(jobManifestLocation)
                    .build();

                JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
                    .bucket(reportBucketName)
```

```
                    .prefix("reports")
                    .format("Report_CSV_20180820")
                    .enabled(true)
                    .reportScope("AllTasks")
                    .build();

                CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .description("Job created using the AWS Java SDK")
                    .manifest(jobManifest)
                    .operation(jobOperation)
                    .report(jobReport)
                    .priority(42)
                    .roleArn(iamRoleArn)
                    .clientRequestToken(uuid)
                    .confirmationRequired(false)
                    .build();

                // Create the job asynchronously.
                 return getAsyncClient().createJob(jobRequest)
                    .thenApply(CreateJobResponse::jobId);
                 })
                 .handle((jobId, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                    Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                    if (cause instanceof S3ControlException) {
                        throw new CompletionException(cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                    }
                }
                return jobId;
            });
    }
```

Create a compliance retention job.

```
    /**
     * Creates a compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control.
     * <p>
```

```
     * A compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control is a feature that allows
 you to
     * set a retention period for objects stored in an S3 bucket.
     * This feature is particularly useful for organizations that need to comply
 with
     * regulatory requirements or internal policies that mandate the retention of
 data for
     * a specific duration.
     *
     * @param s3ControlClient The S3ControlClient instance to use for the API
 call.
     * @return The job ID of the created compliance retention job.
     */
    public static String createComplianceRetentionJob(final S3ControlClient
 s3ControlClient, String roleArn, String bucketName, String accountId) {
        final String manifestObjectArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-manifest-
bucket/compliance-objects-manifest.csv";
        final String manifestObjectVersionId = "your-object-version-Id";

        Instant jan2025 = Instant.parse("2025-01-01T00:00:00Z");
        JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
            .s3PutObjectRetention(S3SetObjectRetentionOperation.builder()
                .retention(S3Retention.builder()
                    .mode(S3ObjectLockRetentionMode.COMPLIANCE)
                    .retainUntilDate(jan2025)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .build();

        JobManifestLocation manifestLocation = JobManifestLocation.builder()
            .objectArn(manifestObjectArn)
            .eTag(manifestObjectVersionId)
            .build();

        JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
            .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
            .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
            .build();

        JobManifest manifestToPublicApi = JobManifest.builder()
            .location(manifestLocation)
            .spec(manifestSpec)
            .build();
```

```
        // Report details.
        final String jobReportBucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::" + bucketName;
        final String jobReportPrefix = "reports/compliance-objects-bops";

        JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .reportScope(JobReportScope.ALL_TASKS)
            .bucket(jobReportBucketArn)
            .prefix(jobReportPrefix)
            .format(JobReportFormat.REPORT_CSV_20180820)
            .build();

        final Boolean requiresConfirmation = true;
        final int priority = 10;
        CreateJobRequest request = CreateJobRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .description("Set compliance retain-until to 1 Jan 2025")
            .manifest(manifestToPublicApi)
            .operation(jobOperation)
            .priority(priority)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .report(jobReport)
            .confirmationRequired(requiresConfirmation)
            .build();

        // Create the job and get the result.
        CreateJobResponse result = s3ControlClient.createJob(request);
        return result.jobId();
    }
```

Create a legal hold off job.

```
    /**
     * Creates a compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control.
     * <p>
     * A compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control is a feature that allows
you to
     * set a retention period for objects stored in an S3 bucket.
     * This feature is particularly useful for organizations that need to comply
with
```

```
     * regulatory requirements or internal policies that mandate the retention of
 data for
     * a specific duration.
     *
     * @param s3ControlClient The S3ControlClient instance to use for the API
 call.
     * @return The job ID of the created compliance retention job.
     */
    public static String createComplianceRetentionJob(final S3ControlClient
 s3ControlClient, String roleArn, String bucketName, String accountId) {
        final String manifestObjectArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-manifest-
bucket/compliance-objects-manifest.csv";
        final String manifestObjectVersionId = "your-object-version-Id";

        Instant jan2025 = Instant.parse("2025-01-01T00:00:00Z");
        JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
            .s3PutObjectRetention(S3SetObjectRetentionOperation.builder()
                .retention(S3Retention.builder()
                    .mode(S3ObjectLockRetentionMode.COMPLIANCE)
                    .retainUntilDate(jan2025)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .build();

        JobManifestLocation manifestLocation = JobManifestLocation.builder()
            .objectArn(manifestObjectArn)
            .eTag(manifestObjectVersionId)
            .build();

        JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
            .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
            .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
            .build();

        JobManifest manifestToPublicApi = JobManifest.builder()
            .location(manifestLocation)
            .spec(manifestSpec)
            .build();

        // Report details.
        final String jobReportBucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::" + bucketName;
        final String jobReportPrefix = "reports/compliance-objects-bops";

        JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
```

```
            .enabled(true)
            .reportScope(JobReportScope.ALL_TASKS)
            .bucket(jobReportBucketArn)
            .prefix(jobReportPrefix)
            .format(JobReportFormat.REPORT_CSV_20180820)
            .build();

        final Boolean requiresConfirmation = true;
        final int priority = 10;
        CreateJobRequest request = CreateJobRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .description("Set compliance retain-until to 1 Jan 2025")
            .manifest(manifestToPublicApi)
            .operation(jobOperation)
            .priority(priority)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .report(jobReport)
            .confirmationRequired(requiresConfirmation)
            .build();

        // Create the job and get the result.
        CreateJobResponse result = s3ControlClient.createJob(request);
        return result.jobId();
    }
```

Create a new governance retention job.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateGovernanceRetentionJob {

    public static void main(String[]args) throws ParseException {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
```

```
                <manifestObjectArn> <jobReportBucketArn> <roleArn> <accountId>
<manifestObjectVersionId>

            Where:
                manifestObjectArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the S3
object that contains the manifest file for the governance objects.\s
                bucketName - The ARN of the S3 bucket where the job report will
be stored.
                roleArn - The ARN of the IAM role that will be used to perform
the governance retention operation.
                accountId - Your AWS account Id.
                manifestObjectVersionId =  A unique value that is used as the
`eTag` property of the `JobManifestLocation` object.
            """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String manifestObjectArn = args[0];
        String jobReportBucketArn = args[1];
        String roleArn = args[2];
        String accountId = args[3];
        String manifestObjectVersionId = args[4];

        S3ControlClient s3ControlClient = S3ControlClient.create();
        createGovernanceRetentionJob(s3ControlClient, manifestObjectArn,
jobReportBucketArn, roleArn, accountId, manifestObjectVersionId);
    }

    public static String createGovernanceRetentionJob(final S3ControlClient
s3ControlClient, String manifestObjectArn, String jobReportBucketArn, String
roleArn, String accountId, String manifestObjectVersionId) throws ParseException
{
        final JobManifestLocation manifestLocation =
JobManifestLocation.builder()
            .objectArn(manifestObjectArn)
            .eTag(manifestObjectVersionId)
            .build();

        final JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
            .format(JobManifestFormat.S3_BATCH_OPERATIONS_CSV_20180820)
```

```
            .fields(Arrays.asList(JobManifestFieldName.BUCKET,
JobManifestFieldName.KEY))
            .build();

        final JobManifest manifestToPublicApi = JobManifest.builder()
            .location(manifestLocation)
            .spec(manifestSpec)
            .build();

        final String jobReportPrefix = "reports/governance-objects";
        final JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .reportScope(JobReportScope.ALL_TASKS)
            .bucket(jobReportBucketArn)
            .prefix(jobReportPrefix)
            .format(JobReportFormat.REPORT_CSV_20180820)
            .build();

        final SimpleDateFormat format = new SimpleDateFormat("dd/MM/yyyy");
        final Date jan30th = format.parse("30/01/2025");

        final S3SetObjectRetentionOperation s3SetObjectRetentionOperation =
S3SetObjectRetentionOperation.builder()
            .retention(S3Retention.builder()
                .mode(S3ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
                .retainUntilDate(jan30th.toInstant())
                .build())
            .build();

        final JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
            .s3PutObjectRetention(s3SetObjectRetentionOperation)
            .build();

        final Boolean requiresConfirmation = true;
        final int priority = 10;

        final CreateJobRequest request = CreateJobRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .description("Put governance retention")
            .manifest(manifestToPublicApi)
            .operation(jobOperation)
            .priority(priority)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .report(jobReport)
```

```
            .confirmationRequired(requiresConfirmation)
            .build();

        final CreateJobResponse result = s3ControlClient.createJob(request);
        return result.jobId();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteJobTagging` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJobTagging`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes the tags associated with a specific batch job.
     *
     * @param jobId     The ID of the batch job whose tags should be deleted.
     * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the batch job.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that completes when the job tags have been
successfully deleted, or an exception is thrown if the deletion fails.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBatchJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
```

```
        DeleteJobTaggingRequest jobTaggingRequest =
DeleteJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .jobId(jobId)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.deleteJobTagging(jobTaggingRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted " + jobId + "
tagging.");
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to delete job tags: " +
ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJobTagging in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DescribeJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an Amazon S3 batch operations job

The following `describe-job` provides configuration parameters and status for the specified batch operations job.

```
aws s3control describe-job \
    --account-id 123456789012 \
    --job-id 93735294-df46-44d5-8638-6356f335324e
```

Output:

```
{
    "Job": {
        "TerminationDate": "2019-10-03T21:49:53.944Z",
        "JobId": "93735294-df46-44d5-8638-6356f335324e",
        "FailureReasons": [],
        "Manifest": {
            "Spec": {
                "Fields": [
                    "Bucket",
                    "Key"
                ],
                "Format": "S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820"
            },
            "Location": {
                "ETag": "69f52a4e9f797e987155d9c8f5880897",
                "ObjectArn": "arn:aws:s3:::employee-records-logs/inv-
report/7a6a9be4-072c-407e-85a2-ec3e982f773e.csv"
            }
        },
        "Operation": {
            "S3PutObjectTagging": {
                "TagSet": [
                    {
                        "Value": "true",
                        "Key": "confidential"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        "RoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/S3BatchJobRole",
        "ProgressSummary": {
            "TotalNumberOfTasks": 8,
            "NumberOfTasksFailed": 0,
            "NumberOfTasksSucceeded": 8
        },
        "Priority": 42,
        "Report": {
            "ReportScope": "AllTasks",
            "Format": "Report_CSV_20180820",
            "Enabled": true,
            "Prefix": "batch-op-create-job",
            "Bucket": "arn:aws:s3:::employee-records-logs"
```

```
        },
        "JobArn": "arn:aws:s3:us-west-2:123456789012:job/93735294-
df46-44d5-8638-6356f335324e",
        "CreationTime": "2019-10-03T21:48:48.048Z",
        "Status": "Complete"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the specified job.
    *
    * @param jobId     the ID of the job to describe
    * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job
description is available
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while describing the job
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeJobAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       DescribeJobRequest jobRequest = DescribeJobRequest.builder()
           .jobId(jobId)
           .accountId(accountId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describeJob(jobRequest)
           .thenAccept(response -> {
               System.out.println("Job ID: " + response.job().jobId());
               System.out.println("Description: " +
response.job().description());
               System.out.println("Status: " + response.job().statusAsString());
```

```
                System.out.println("Role ARN: " + response.job().roleArn());
                System.out.println("Priority: " + response.job().priority());
                System.out.println("Progress Summary: " +
response.job().progressSummary());

                // Print out details about the job manifest.
                JobManifest manifest = response.job().manifest();
                System.out.println("Manifest Location: " +
manifest.location().objectArn());
                System.out.println("Manifest ETag: " +
manifest.location().eTag());

                // Print out details about the job operation.
                JobOperation operation = response.job().operation();
                if (operation.s3PutObjectTagging() != null) {
                    System.out.println("Operation: S3 Put Object Tagging");
                    System.out.println("Tag Set: " +
operation.s3PutObjectTagging().tagSet());
                }

                // Print out details about the job report.
                JobReport report = response.job().report();
                System.out.println("Report Bucket: " + report.bucket());
                System.out.println("Report Prefix: " + report.prefix());
                System.out.println("Report Format: " + report.format());
                System.out.println("Report Enabled: " + report.enabled());
                System.out.println("Report Scope: " +
report.reportScopeAsString());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to describe job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetJobTagging` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobTagging`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the tags associated with a specific job in an AWS
account.
    *
    * @param jobId     the ID of the job for which to retrieve the tags
    * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job tags have
been retrieved, or with an exception if the operation fails
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while retrieving the job tags
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       GetJobTaggingRequest request = GetJobTaggingRequest.builder()
           .jobId(jobId)
           .accountId(accountId)
           .build();

       return asyncClient.getJobTagging(request)
           .thenAccept(response -> {
               List<S3Tag> tags = response.tags();
               if (tags.isEmpty()) {
                   System.out.println("No tags found for job ID: " + jobId);
               } else {
                   for (S3Tag tag : tags) {
                       System.out.println("Tag key is: " + tag.key());
                       System.out.println("Tag value is: " + tag.value());
```

```
                    }
                }
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to get job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobTagging in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `PutJobTagging` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PutJobTagging`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to a job in the system.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to add tags to
     * @param accountId the account ID associated with the job
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the tagging operation is
finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> putJobTaggingAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
```

```
        S3Tag departmentTag = S3Tag.builder()
            .key("department")
            .value("Marketing")
            .build();

        S3Tag fiscalYearTag = S3Tag.builder()
            .key("FiscalYear")
            .value("2020")
            .build();

        PutJobTaggingRequest putJobTaggingRequest =
PutJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .tags(departmentTag, fiscalYearTag)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.putJobTagging(putJobTaggingRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                System.out.println("Additional Tags were added to job " + jobId);
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to add tags to job: " +
ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutJobTagging in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UpdateJobPriority` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateJobPriority`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the job priority of an Amazon S3 batch operations job

The following `update-job-priority` example updates the specified job to a new priority.

```
aws s3control update-job-priority \
    --account-id 123456789012 \
    --job-id 8d9a18fe-c303-4d39-8ccc-860d372da386 \
    --priority 52
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "8d9a18fe-c303-4d39-8ccc-860d372da386",
    "Priority": 52
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobPriority in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the priority of a job asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to update
     * @param accountId the ID of the account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
 operation, which completes when the job priority has been updated or an error
 has occurred
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> updateJobPriorityAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       UpdateJobPriorityRequest priorityRequest =
UpdateJobPriorityRequest.builder()
           .accountId(accountId)
           .jobId(jobId)
           .priority(60)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().updateJobPriority(priorityRequest)
           .thenAccept(response -> {
               System.out.println("The job priority was updated");
               future.complete(null); // Complete the CompletableFuture on
successful execution
           })
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               System.err.println("Failed to update job priority: " +
ex.getMessage());
               future.completeExceptionally(ex); // Complete the
CompletableFuture exceptionally on error
               return null; // Return null to handle the exception
           });

       return future;
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobPriority in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UpdateJobStatus` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateJobStatus`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the status of an Amazon S3 batch operations job

The following `update-job-status` example cancels the specified job which is awaiting approval.

```
aws s3control update-job-status \
    --account-id 123456789012 \
    --job-id 8d9a18fe-c303-4d39-8ccc-860d372da386 \
    --requested-job-status Cancelled
```

Output:

```
{
    "Status": "Cancelled",
    "JobId": "8d9a18fe-c303-4d39-8ccc-860d372da386"
}
```

The following `update-job-status` example confirms and runs the specified which is awaiting approval.

```
aws s3control update-job-status \
    --account-id 123456789012 \
    --job-id 5782949f-3301-4fb3-be34-8d5bab54dbca \
    --requested-job-status Ready

Output::

{
    "Status": "Ready",
    "JobId": "5782949f-3301-4fb3-
be34-8d5bab54dbca"
}
```

The following `update-job-status` example cancels the specified job which is running.

```
aws s3control update-job-status \
```

```
    --account-id 123456789012 \
    --job-id 5782949f-3301-4fb3-be34-8d5bab54dbca \
    --requested-job-status Cancelled

Output::
{
         "Status": "Cancelling",
         "JobId": "5782949f-3301-4fb3-be34-8d5bab54dbca"
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Cancels a job asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobId The ID of the job to be canceled.
    * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the job.
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job status has
 been updated to "CANCELLED".
    *         If an error occurs during the update, the returned future will
 complete exceptionally.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> cancelJobAsync(String jobId, String accountId)
 {
       UpdateJobStatusRequest updateJobStatusRequest =
 UpdateJobStatusRequest.builder()
           .accountId(accountId)
           .jobId(jobId)
           .requestedJobStatus(String.valueOf(JobStatus.CANCELLED))
           .build();

       return asyncClient.updateJobStatus(updateJobStatusRequest)
```

```
            .thenAccept(updateJobStatusResponse -> {
                System.out.println("Job status updated to: " +
updateJobStatusResponse.status());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to cancel job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobStatus in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon S3 Directory Buckets with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **S3 Directory Buckets User Guide** – More information about S3 Directory Buckets.
- **S3 Directory Buckets API Reference** – Details about all available S3 Directory Buckets actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3 directory buckets

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 directory buckets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.s3.directorybucket;


import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DataRedundancy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.util.List;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;

/**
 * Before running this example:
 * <p>
 * The SDK must be able to authenticate AWS requests on your behalf. If you have
 * not configured
```

```
 * authentication for SDKs and tools, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkref/latest/guide/access.html in the AWS SDKs
 * and Tools Reference Guide.
 * <p>
 * You must have a runtime environment configured with the Java SDK.
 * See
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html in
 * the Developer Guide if this is not set up.
 * <p>
 * To use S3 directory buckets, configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the
 * recommended method to enable directory bucket traffic without
 * requiring an internet gateway or NAT device. For more information on
 * configuring VPC gateway endpoints, visit
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/s3-express-
networking.html#s3-express-networking-vpc-gateway.
 * <p>
 * Directory buckets are available in specific AWS Regions and Zones. For
 * details on Regions and Zones supporting directory buckets, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/s3-express-
networking.html#s3-express-endpoints.
 */

public class HelloS3DirectoryBuckets {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloS3DirectoryBuckets.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "test-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis() + "--
usw2-az1--x-s3";
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        String zone = "usw2-az1";
        S3Client s3Client = createS3Client(region);

        try {
            // Create the directory bucket
            createDirectoryBucket(s3Client, bucketName, zone);
            logger.info("Created bucket: {}", bucketName);

            // List all directory buckets
            List<String> bucketNames = listDirectoryBuckets(s3Client);
            bucketNames.forEach(name -> logger.info("Bucket Name: {}", name));
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("An error occurred during S3 operations: {} - Error
 code: {}",
```

```
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
        } finally {
            try {
                // Delete the created bucket
                deleteDirectoryBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
                logger.info("Deleted bucket: {}", bucketName);
            } catch (S3Exception e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the bucket due to S3 error: {} -
Error code: {}",
                        e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the bucket due to unexpected
error: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            } finally {
                s3Client.close();
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The region where the bucket will be created
     * @throws S3Exception if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public static void createDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String zone) throws S3Exception {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: {}", bucketName);

        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
                .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                        .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .name(zone).build())
                .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
                        .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                        .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .build())
                .build();
```

```
        try {
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration).build();
            CreateBucketResponse response = s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: {}",
response.location());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Error creating bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Lists all S3 directory buckets.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @return A list of bucket names
     */
    public static List<String> listDirectoryBuckets(S3Client s3Client) {
        logger.info("Listing all directory buckets");

        try {
            // Create a ListBucketsRequest
            ListDirectoryBucketsRequest listBucketsRequest =
ListDirectoryBucketsRequest.builder().build();

            // Retrieve the list of buckets
            ListDirectoryBucketsResponse response =
s3Client.listDirectoryBuckets(listBucketsRequest);

            // Extract bucket names
            List<String> bucketNames = response.buckets().stream()
                    .map(Bucket::name)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return bucketNames;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list buckets: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
```

```
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to delete
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest =
 DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
            s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket: " + bucketName + " - Error
 code: " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(),
                    e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - ListDirectoryBuckets

Code examples

- Basic examples for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon S3 directory buckets
  - Learn the basics of S3 Directory Buckets with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs
    - Use AbortMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
    - Use CompleteMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK

- Use CopyObject with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateBucket with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSession with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucket with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteObjects with an AWS SDK
- Use GetBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
- Use GetBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use GetObject with an AWS SDK
- Use GetObjectAttributes with an AWS SDK
- Use HeadBucket with an AWS SDK
- Use HeadObject with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDirectoryBuckets with an AWS SDK
- Use ListMultipartUploads with an AWS SDK
- Use ListObjectsV2 with an AWS SDK
- Use ListParts with an AWS SDK
- Use PutBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
- Use PutBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use PutObject with an AWS SDK
- Use UploadPart with an AWS SDK
- Use UploadPartCopy with an AWS SDK

- Scenarios for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs
  - Create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 directory buckets to get an object using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon S3 Directory Buckets with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon S3 directory buckets
- Learn the basics of S3 Directory Buckets with an AWS SDK
- Actions for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs
  - Use AbortMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
  - Use CompleteMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
  - Use CopyObject with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateBucket with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateSession with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteBucket with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteObjects with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetObject with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetObjectAttributes with an AWS SDK
  - Use HeadBucket with an AWS SDK
  - Use HeadObject with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListDirectoryBuckets with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListMultipartUploads with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListObjectsV2 with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListParts with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
  - Use PutObject with an AWS SDK
  - Use UploadPart with an AWS SDK

  - Use UploadPartCopy with an AWS SDK

Hello Amazon S3 directory buckets

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 directory buckets.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.s3.directorybucket;


import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DataRedundancy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.util.List;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this example:
 * <p>
 * The SDK must be able to authenticate AWS requests on your behalf. If you have
 * not configured
 * authentication for SDKs and tools, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkref/latest/guide/access.html in the AWS SDKs
 * and Tools Reference Guide.
 * <p>
 * You must have a runtime environment configured with the Java SDK.
 * See
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html in
 * the Developer Guide if this is not set up.
 * <p>
 * To use S3 directory buckets, configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the
 * recommended method to enable directory bucket traffic without
 * requiring an internet gateway or NAT device. For more information on
 * configuring VPC gateway endpoints, visit
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/s3-express-
networking.html#s3-express-networking-vpc-gateway.
 * <p>
 * Directory buckets are available in specific AWS Regions and Zones. For
 * details on Regions and Zones supporting directory buckets, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/s3-express-
networking.html#s3-express-endpoints.
 */

public class HelloS3DirectoryBuckets {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloS3DirectoryBuckets.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "test-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis() + "--
usw2-az1--x-s3";
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        String zone = "usw2-az1";
        S3Client s3Client = createS3Client(region);

        try {
            // Create the directory bucket
            createDirectoryBucket(s3Client, bucketName, zone);
            logger.info("Created bucket: {}", bucketName);

            // List all directory buckets
            List<String> bucketNames = listDirectoryBuckets(s3Client);
```

```
            bucketNames.forEach(name -> logger.info("Bucket Name: {}", name));
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("An error occurred during S3 operations: {} - Error
code: {}",
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
        } finally {
            try {
                // Delete the created bucket
                deleteDirectoryBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
                logger.info("Deleted bucket: {}", bucketName);
            } catch (S3Exception e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the bucket due to S3 error: {} -
Error code: {}",
                        e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the bucket due to unexpected
error: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            } finally {
                s3Client.close();
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The region where the bucket will be created
     * @throws S3Exception if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public static void createDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String zone) throws S3Exception {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: {}", bucketName);

        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
                .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                        .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .name(zone).build())
                .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
```

```
                        .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                        .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .build())
                .build();
        try {
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration).build();
            CreateBucketResponse response = s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: {}",
response.location());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Error creating bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Lists all S3 directory buckets.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @return A list of bucket names
     */
    public static List<String> listDirectoryBuckets(S3Client s3Client) {
        logger.info("Listing all directory buckets");

        try {
            // Create a ListBucketsRequest
            ListDirectoryBucketsRequest listBucketsRequest =
ListDirectoryBucketsRequest.builder().build();

            // Retrieve the list of buckets
            ListDirectoryBucketsResponse response =
s3Client.listDirectoryBuckets(listBucketsRequest);

            // Extract bucket names
            List<String> bucketNames = response.buckets().stream()
                    .map(Bucket::name)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return bucketNames;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
```

```
            logger.error("Failed to list buckets: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to delete
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest =
 DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
            s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket: " + bucketName + " - Error
 code: " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(),
                    e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - ListDirectoryBuckets

Learn the basics of S3 Directory Buckets with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Set up a VPC and VPC Endpoint.

- Set up the Policies, Roles, and User to work with S3 directory buckets and the S3 Express One Zone storage class.
- Create two S3 Clients.
- Create two buckets.
- Create an object and copy it over.
- Demonstrate performance difference.
- Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
- Prompt the user to see if they want to clean up the resources.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 features.

```
public class S3DirectoriesScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3DirectoriesScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    private static S3AsyncClient mS3RegularClient;
    private static S3AsyncClient mS3ExpressClient;

    private static String mdirectoryBucketName;
    private static String mregularBucketName;

    private static String stackName = "cfn-stack-s3-express-basics--" +
 UUID.randomUUID();
```

```
    private static String regularUser = "";
    private static String vpcId = "";
    private static String expressUser = "";

    private static String vpcEndpointId = "";

    private static final S3DirectoriesActions s3DirectoriesActions = new
S3DirectoriesActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            s3ExpressScenario();
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    // Runs the scenario.
    private static void s3ExpressScenario() {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Express Basics demo using AWS SDK
for Java V2.");
        logger.info("""
            Let's get started! First, please note that S3 Express One Zone works
best when working within the AWS infrastructure,
            specifically when working in the same Availability Zone (AZ). To see
the best results in this example and when you implement
            directory buckets into your infrastructure, it is best to put your
compute resources in the same AZ as your directory
            bucket.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        // Create an optional VPC and create 2 IAM users.
        UserNames userNames = createVpcUsers();
        String expressUserName = userNames.getExpressUserName();
        String regularUserName = userNames.getRegularUserName();

        //  Set up two S3 clients, one regular and one express,
        //  and two buckets, one regular and one directory.
        setupClientsAndBuckets(expressUserName, regularUserName);
```

```
        // Create an S3 session for the express S3 client and add objects to the
buckets.
        logger.info("Now let's add some objects to our buckets and demonstrate
how to work with S3 Sessions.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String bucketObject = createSessionAddObjects();

        // Demonstrate performance differences between regular and directory
buckets.
        demonstratePerformance(bucketObject);

        // Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference between
        // regular and express buckets.
        showLexicographicalDifferences(bucketObject);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("That's it for our tour of the basic operations for S3
Express One Zone.");
        logger.info("Would you like to cleanUp the AWS resources? (y/n): ");
        String response = scanner.next().trim().toLowerCase();
        if (response.equals("y")) {
            cleanUp(stackName);
        }
    }

    /*
      Delete resources created by this scenario.
    */
    public static void cleanUp(String stackName) {
        try {
            if (mdirectoryBucketName != null) {

s3DirectoriesActions.deleteBucketAndObjectsAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName).join();
            }
            logger.info("Deleted directory bucket " + mdirectoryBucketName);
            mdirectoryBucketName = null;
            if (mregularBucketName != null) {

s3DirectoriesActions.deleteBucketAndObjectsAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName).join();
            }
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
```

```
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
        }

        logger.info("Deleted regular bucket " + mregularBucketName);
        mregularBucketName = null;
        CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(stackName);
    }

    private static void showLexicographicalDifferences(String bucketObject) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical (alphabetical)
difference
            when object names are listed. Now let's explore how directory buckets
store
            objects in a different manner to regular buckets. The key is in the
name
            "Directory". Where regular buckets store their key/value pairs in a
            flat manner, directory buckets use actual directories/folders.
            This allows for more rapid indexing, traversing, and therefore
            retrieval times!

            The more segmented your bucket is, with lots of
            directories, sub-directories, and objects, the more efficient it
becomes.
            This structural difference also causes `ListObject` operations to
behave
            differently, which can cause unexpected results. Let's add a few
more
            objects in sub-directories to see how the output of
            ListObjects changes.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        //  Populate a few more files in each bucket so that we can use
        //  ListObjects and show the difference.
        String otherObject = "other/" + bucketObject;
        String altObject = "alt/" + bucketObject;
```

```
        String otherAltObject = "other/alt/" + bucketObject;

        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, otherObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, otherObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, altObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, altObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, otherAltObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, otherAltObject, "").join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof NoSuchBucketException) {
                logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        try {
            // List objects in both S3 buckets.
            List<String> dirBucketObjects =
s3DirectoriesActions.listObjectsAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName).join();
            List<String> regBucketObjects =
s3DirectoriesActions.listObjectsAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName).join();

            logger.info("Directory bucket content");
            for (String obj : dirBucketObjects) {
                logger.info(obj);
            }

            logger.info("Regular bucket content");
            for (String obj : regBucketObjects) {
                logger.info(obj);
```

```
            }
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            logger.error("Async operation failed: {} ",
e.getCause().getMessage());
            return;
        }

        logger.info("""
            Notice how the regular bucket lists objects in lexicographical order,
while the directory bucket does not. This is
            because the regular bucket considers the whole "key" to be the object
identifier, while the directory bucket actually
            creates directories and uses the object "key" as a path to the
object.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
    }

    /**
     * Demonstrates the performance difference between downloading an object from
a directory bucket and a regular bucket.
     *
     * <p>This method:
     * <ul>
     *     <li>Prompts the user to choose the number of downloads (default is
1,000).</li>
     *     <li>Downloads the specified object from the directory bucket and
measures the total time.</li>
     *     <li>Downloads the same object from the regular bucket and measures the
total time.</li>
     *     <li>Compares the time differences and prints the results.</li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * <p>Note: The performance difference will be more pronounced if this
example is run on an EC2 instance
     * in the same Availability Zone as the buckets.
     *
     * @param bucketObject the name of the object to download
     */
    private static void demonstratePerformance(String bucketObject) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Demonstrate the performance difference.");
        logger.info("""
```

```
            Now, let's do a performance test. We'll download the same object from
each
            bucket repeatedly and compare the total time needed.

            Note: the performance difference will be much more pronounced if this
            example is run in an EC2 instance in the same Availability Zone as
            the bucket.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        int downloads = 1000; // Default value.
        logger.info("The default number of downloads of the same object for this
example is set at " + downloads + ".");

        // Ask if the user wants to download a different number.
        logger.info("Would you like to download the file a different number of
times? (y/n): ");
        String response = scanner.next().trim().toLowerCase();
        if (response.equals("y")) {
            int maxDownloads = 1_000_000;

            // Ask for a valid number of downloads.
            while (true) {
                logger.info("Enter a number between 1 and " + maxDownloads + "
for the number of downloads: ");
                if (scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                    downloads = scanner.nextInt();
                    if (downloads >= 1 && downloads <= maxDownloads) {
                        break;
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Please enter a number between 1 and " +
maxDownloads + ".");
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.info("Invalid input. Please enter a valid integer.");
                    scanner.next();
                }
            }

            logger.info("You have chosen to download {}  items.", downloads);
        } else {
            logger.info("No changes made. Using default downloads: {}",
downloads);
        }
```

```
        // Simulating the download process for the directory bucket.
        logger.info("Downloading from the directory bucket.");
        long directoryTimeStart = System.nanoTime();
        for (int index = 0; index < downloads; index++) {
            if (index % 50 == 0) {
                logger.info("Download " + index + " of " + downloads);
            }

            try {
                // Get the object from the directory bucket.
                s3DirectoriesActions.getObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, bucketObject).join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof NoSuchKeyException) {
                    logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                }
                return;
            }
        }
        long directoryTimeDifference = System.nanoTime() - directoryTimeStart;

        // Download from the regular bucket.
        logger.info("Downloading from the regular bucket.");
        long normalTimeStart = System.nanoTime();
        for (int index = 0; index < downloads; index++) {
            if (index % 50 == 0) {
                logger.info("Download " + index + " of " + downloads);
            }

            try {
                s3DirectoriesActions.getObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, bucketObject).join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof NoSuchKeyException) {
                    logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                } else {
```

```
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                }
                return;
            }
        }

        long normalTimeDifference = System.nanoTime() - normalTimeStart;
        logger.info("The directory bucket took " + directoryTimeDifference
+ " nanoseconds, while the regular bucket took " + normalTimeDifference + "
nanoseconds.");
        long difference = normalTimeDifference - directoryTimeDifference;
        logger.info("That's a difference of " + difference + " nanoseconds, or");
        logger.info(difference / 1_000_000_000.0 + " seconds.");

        if (difference < 0) {
            logger.info("The directory buckets were slower. This can happen if
you are not running on the cloud within a VPC.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
    }

    private static String createSessionAddObjects() {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            5. Create an object and copy it.
            We'll create an object consisting of some text and upload it to the
            regular bucket.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        String bucketObject = "basic-text-object.txt";
        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, bucketObject, "Look Ma, I'm a bucket!").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.createSessionAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName).join();

            // Copy the object to the destination S3 bucket.
            s3DirectoriesActions.copyObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mregularBucketName, bucketObject, mdirectoryBucketName, bucketObject).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
```

```
                logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
        }
        logger.info("""
            It worked! This is because the S3Client that performed the copy
operation
            is the expressClient using the credentials for the user with
permission to
            work with directory buckets.

            It's important to remember the user permissions when interacting
with
            directory buckets. Instead of validating permissions on every call
as
            regular buckets do, directory buckets utilize the user credentials
and session
            token to validate. This allows for much faster connection speeds on
every call.
            For single calls, this is low, but for many concurrent calls
            this adds up to a lot of time saved.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        return bucketObject;
    }

    /**
     * Creates VPC users for the S3 Express One Zone scenario.
     * <p>
     * This method performs the following steps:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Optionally creates a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if the application
is running in an EC2 instance in the same Availability Zone as the directory
buckets.</li>
     *     <li>Creates two IAM users: one with S3 Express One Zone permissions
and one without.</li>
     * </ol>
     *
     * @return a {@link UserNames} object containing the names of the created IAM
users
     */
    public static UserNames createVpcUsers() {
```

```
        /*
        Optionally create a VPC.
        Create two IAM users, one with S3 Express One Zone permissions and one
without.
        */
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            1. First, we'll set up a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if this program is
running in an EC2 instance in the same AZ as your\s
            directory buckets will be. Are you running this in an EC2 instance
located in the same AZ as your intended directory buckets?
            """);

        logger.info("Do you want to setup a VPC Endpoint? (y/n)");
        String endpointAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (endpointAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("""
                Great! Let's set up a VPC, retrieve the Route Table from it, and
create a VPC Endpoint to connect the S3 Client to.
                """);
            try {
                s3DirectoriesActions.setupVPCAsync().join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                    logger.error("IamException occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                }
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        } else {
            logger.info("Skipping the VPC setup. Don't forget to use this in
production!");
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            2. Create a RegularUser and ExpressUser by using the AWS CDK.
            One IAM User, named RegularUser, will have permissions to work only
            with regular buckets and one IAM user, named ExpressUser, will have
            permissions to work only with directory buckets.
            """);
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        // Create two users required for this scenario.
        Map<String, String> stackOutputs = createUsersUsingCDK(stackName);
        regularUser = stackOutputs.get("RegularUser");
        expressUser = stackOutputs.get("ExpressUser");

        UserNames names = new UserNames();
        names.setRegularUserName(regularUser);
        names.setExpressUserName(expressUser);
        return names;
    }

    /**
     * Creates users using AWS CloudFormation.
     *
     * @return a {@link Map} of String keys and String values representing the
stack outputs,
     * which may include user-related information such as user names and IDs.
     */
    public static Map<String, String> createUsersUsingCDK(String stackName) {
        logger.info("We'll use an AWS CloudFormation template to create the IAM
users and policies.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(stackName);
        return CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputsAsync(stackName).join();
    }

    /**
     * Sets up the necessary clients and buckets for the S3 Express service.
     *
     * @param expressUserName the username for the user with S3 Express
permissions
     * @param regularUserName the username for the user with regular S3
permissions
     */
    public static void setupClientsAndBuckets(String expressUserName, String
regularUserName) {
        Scanner locscanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String accessKeyIdforRegUser;
        String secretAccessforRegUser;
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyResponse keyResponse =
s3DirectoriesActions.createAccessKeyAsync(regularUserName).join();
            accessKeyIdforRegUser = keyResponse.accessKey().accessKeyId();
```

```
            secretAccessforRegUser = keyResponse.accessKey().secretAccessKey();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IamException) {
                logger.error("IamException occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        String accessKeyIdforExpressUser;
        String secretAccessforExpressUser;
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyResponse keyResponseExpress =
s3DirectoriesActions.createAccessKeyAsync(expressUserName).join();
            accessKeyIdforExpressUser =
keyResponseExpress.accessKey().accessKeyId();
            secretAccessforExpressUser =
keyResponseExpress.accessKey().secretAccessKey();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IamException) {
                logger.error("IamException occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            3. Create two S3Clients; one uses the ExpressUser's credentials and
one uses the RegularUser's credentials.
            The 2 S3Clients will use different credentials.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(locscanner);
        try {
```

```
            mS3RegularClient =
createS3ClientWithAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyIdforRegUser,
secretAccessforRegUser).join();
            mS3ExpressClient =
createS3ClientWithAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyIdforExpressUser,
secretAccessforExpressUser).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IllegalArgumentException) {
                logger.error("An invalid argument exception occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        logger.info("""
            We can now use the ExpressUser client to make calls to S3 Express
operations.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(locscanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            4. Create two buckets.
            Now we will create a directory bucket which is the linchpin of the S3
Express One Zone service. Directory buckets
            behave differently from regular S3 buckets which we will explore
here. We'll also create a regular bucket, put
            an object into the regular bucket, and copy it to the directory
bucket.
            """);

        logger.info("""
            Now, let's choose an availability zone (AZ) for the directory
bucket.
            We'll choose one that is supported.
            """);
        String zoneId;
        String regularBucketName;
        try {
            zoneId = s3DirectoriesActions.selectAvailabilityZoneIdAsync().join();
            regularBucketName = "reg-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis();
```

```
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                logger.error("EC2Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info("""
            Now, let's create the actual directory bucket, as well as a regular
bucket."
             """);

        String directoryBucketName = "test-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis()
+ "--" + zoneId + "--x-s3";
        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.createDirectoryBucketAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
directoryBucketName, zoneId).join();
            logger.info("Created directory bucket {}", directoryBucketName);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.error("The bucket already exists. Moving on: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                return;
            }
        }

        // Assign to the data member.
        mdirectoryBucketName = directoryBucketName;
        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.createBucketAsync(mS3RegularClient,
regularBucketName).join();
            logger.info("Created regular bucket {} ", regularBucketName);
            mregularBucketName = regularBucketName;
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
```

```
                logger.error("The bucket already exists. Moving on: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("Great! Both buckets were created.");
        waitForInputToContinue(locscanner);
    }

    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous S3 client with the specified access key and secret
access key.
     *
     * @param accessKeyId     the AWS access key ID
     * @param secretAccessKey the AWS secret access key
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that asynchronously creates the S3
client
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the access key ID or secret access key
is null
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<S3AsyncClient>
createS3ClientWithAccessKeyAsync(String accessKeyId, String secretAccessKey) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            // Validate input parameters
            if (accessKeyId == null || accessKeyId.isBlank() || secretAccessKey
== null || secretAccessKey.isBlank()) {
                throw new IllegalArgumentException("Access Key ID and Secret
Access Key must not be null or empty");
            }

            AwsBasicCredentials awsCredentials =
AwsBasicCredentials.create(accessKeyId, secretAccessKey);
            return S3AsyncClient.builder()

.credentialsProvider(StaticCredentialsProvider.create(awsCredentials))
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
        });
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
```

```
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon S3 SDK methods.

```
public class S3DirectoriesActions {

    private static IamAsyncClient iamAsyncClient;

    private static Ec2AsyncClient ec2AsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3DirectoriesActions.class);

    private static IamAsyncClient getIAMAsyncClient() {
        if (iamAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();
```

```
            iamAsyncClient = IamAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return iamAsyncClient;
    }

    private static Ec2AsyncClient getEc2AsyncClient() {
        if (ec2AsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            ec2AsyncClient = Ec2AsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return ec2AsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 bucket and all the objects within it
asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3AsyncClient the S3 asynchronous client to use for the operations
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with a {@link
WaiterResponse} containing the
     *         {@link HeadBucketResponse} when the bucket has been successfully
deleted
```

```
    * @throws CompletionException if there was an error deleting the bucket or
its objects
    */
   public CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
deleteBucketAndObjectsAsync(S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient, String bucketName) {
       ListObjectsV2Request listRequest = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       return s3AsyncClient.listObjectsV2(listRequest)
           .thenCompose(listResponse -> {
               if (!listResponse.contents().isEmpty()) {
                   List<ObjectIdentifier> objectIdentifiers =
listResponse.contents().stream()
                       .map(s3Object ->
ObjectIdentifier.builder().key(s3Object.key()).build())
                       .collect(Collectors.toList());

                   DeleteObjectsRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                       .bucket(bucketName)

.delete(Delete.builder().objects(objectIdentifiers).build())
                       .build();

                   return s3AsyncClient.deleteObjects(deleteRequest)
                       .thenAccept(deleteResponse -> {
                           if (!deleteResponse.errors().isEmpty()) {
                               deleteResponse.errors().forEach(error ->
                                   logger.error("Couldn't delete object " +
error.key() + ". Reason: " + error.message()));
                           }
                       });
               }
               return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
           })
           .thenCompose(ignored -> {
               DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest =
DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .build();
               return s3AsyncClient.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
           })
           .thenCompose(ignored -> {
```

```
                S3AsyncWaiter waiter = s3AsyncClient.waiter();
                HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest =
HeadBucketRequest.builder().bucket(bucketName).build();
                return waiter.waitUntilBucketNotExists(headBucketRequest);
            })
            .whenComplete((ignored, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error deleting bucket: " +
bucketName, cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete bucket and
objects: " + bucketName, exception);
                }
                logger.info("Bucket deleted successfully: " + bucketName);
            });
    }

    /**
     *  Lists the objects in an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3Client the S3 async client to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the objects to list
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that contains the list of object keys
in the specified bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<String>> listObjectsAsync(S3AsyncClient
s3Client, String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        return s3Client.listObjectsV2(request)
            .thenApply(response -> response.contents().stream()
                .map(S3Object::key)
                .toList())
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Couldn't list objects in
bucket: " + bucketName, exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Retrieves an object from an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param s3Client   the S3 async client to use for the operation
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
    * @param keyName    the unique identifier (key) of the object to retrieve
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the
object's content as a {@link ResponseBytes} of {@link GetObjectResponse}
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse>>
getObjectAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName, String keyName) {
       GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
           .key(keyName)
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       // Get the object asynchronously and transform it into a byte array
       return s3Client.getObject(objectRequest,
AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes())
           .exceptionally(exception -> {
               Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof NoSuchKeyException) {
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to get the object.
Reason: " + ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
               }
               throw new CompletionException("Failed to get the object",
exception);
           });
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously copies an object from one S3 bucket to another.
    *
    * @param s3Client           the S3 async client to use for the copy
operation
    * @param sourceBucket       the name of the source bucket
    * @param sourceKey          the key of the object to be copied in the source
bucket
    * @param destinationBucket  the name of the destination bucket
    * @param destinationKey     the key of the copied object in the destination
bucket
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the copy operation
is finished
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> copyObjectAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String
sourceBucket, String sourceKey, String destinationBucket, String destinationKey)
{
       CopyObjectRequest copyRequest = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
           .sourceBucket(sourceBucket)
           .sourceKey(sourceKey)
           .destinationBucket(destinationBucket)
           .destinationKey(destinationKey)
           .build();

       return s3Client.copyObject(copyRequest)
           .thenRun(() -> logger.info("Copied object '" + sourceKey + "' from
bucket '" + sourceBucket + "' to bucket '" + destinationBucket + "'"))
           .whenComplete((ignored, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                       throw new CompletionException("Couldn't
copy object '" + sourceKey + "' from bucket '" + sourceBucket + "'
to bucket '" + destinationBucket + "'. Reason: " + ((S3Exception)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to copy object",
exception);
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously creates a session for the specified S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param s3Client   the S3 asynchronous client to use for creating the
session
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket for which to create the
session
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the session is
created, or throws a {@link CompletionException} if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateSessionResponse>
createSessionAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName) {
       CreateSessionRequest request = CreateSessionRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();
```

```
        return s3Client.createSession(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Couldn't create the
session. Reason: " + ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Unexpected error occurred
while creating session", exception);
                }
                logger.info("Created session for bucket: " + bucketName);
            });

    }

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The asynchronous S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The Availability Zone where the bucket will be created
     * @throws CompletionException if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateBucketResponse>
createDirectoryBucketAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName, String
zone) {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: " + bucketName);

        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
            .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                .name(zone)
                .build())
            .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
                .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                .build())
            .build();
```

```
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration)
            .build();

        return s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The bucket already exists:
" + ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Unexpected error occurred
while creating bucket", exception);
                }
                logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: " +
response.location());
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3Client    the S3 async client to use for the bucket creation
     * @param bucketName  the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
WaiterResponse} containing the {@link HeadBucketResponse}
     *         when the bucket is successfully created
     * @throws CompletionException if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
createBucketAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName) {
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        return s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                S3AsyncWaiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
                HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
                return s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
```

```
            })
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The S3 bucket exists: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create access
key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
                logger.info(bucketName + " is ready");
            });
    }

    /**
     * Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3Client     the S3 async client to use for the upload
     * @param bucketName   the destination S3 bucket name
     * @param bucketObject the name of the object to be uploaded
     * @param text         the content to be uploaded as the object
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> putObjectAsync(S3AsyncClient
s3Client, String bucketName, String bucketObject, String text) {
        PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(bucketObject)
            .build();

        return s3Client.putObject(objectRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromString(text))
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof NoSuchBucketException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The S3 bucket does not
exist: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create access
key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an AWS IAM access key asynchronously for the specified user name.
     *
     * @param userName the name of the IAM user for whom to create the access key
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
CreateAccessKeyResponse} containing the created access key
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateAccessKeyResponse> createAccessKeyAsync(String
userName) {
        CreateAccessKeyRequest request = CreateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
            .userName(userName)
            .build();

        return getIAMAsyncClient().createAccessKey(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Access Key Created.");
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof IamException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("IAM error while
creating access key: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                        } else {
                            throw new CompletionException("Failed to create
access key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously selects an Availability Zone ID from the available EC2
zones.
     *
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the selected
Availability Zone ID.
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs during the request or
processing.
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<String> selectAvailabilityZoneIdAsync() {
       DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest zonesRequest =
DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest.builder()
           .build();

       return getEc2AsyncClient().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest)
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               List<AvailabilityZone> zonesList = response.availabilityZones();
               if (zonesList.isEmpty()) {
                   logger.info("No availability zones found.");
                   return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null); // Return
null if no zones are found
               }

               List<String> zoneIds = zonesList.stream()
                   .map(AvailabilityZone::zoneId) // Get the zoneId (e.g.,
"usw2-az1")
                   .toList();

               return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() ->
promptUserForZoneSelection(zonesList, zoneIds))
                   .thenApply(selectedZone -> {
                       // Return only the selected Zone ID (e.g., "usw2-az1").
                       return selectedZone.zoneId();
                   });
           })
           .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
               if (exception == null) {
                   if (result != null) {
                       logger.info("Selected Availability Zone ID: " + result);
                   } else {
                       logger.info("No availability zone selected.");
                   }
               } else {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                       throw new CompletionException("EC2 error while selecting
availability zone: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to select availability
zone: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

```
    /**
     * Prompts the user to select an Availability Zone from the given list.
     *
     * @param zonesList the list of Availability Zones
     * @param zoneIds the list of zone IDs
     * @return the selected Availability Zone
     */
    private static AvailabilityZone
promptUserForZoneSelection(List<AvailabilityZone> zonesList, List<String>
zoneIds) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        int index = -1;

        while (index < 0 || index >= zoneIds.size()) {
            logger.info("Select an availability zone:");
            IntStream.range(0, zoneIds.size()).forEach(i ->
                logger.info(i + ": " + zoneIds.get(i))
            );

            logger.info("Enter the number corresponding to your choice: ");
            if (scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                index = scanner.nextInt();
            } else {
                scanner.next();
            }
        }

        AvailabilityZone selectedZone = zonesList.get(index);
        logger.info("You selected: " + selectedZone.zoneId());
        return selectedZone;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously sets up a new VPC, including creating the VPC, finding the
associated route table, and
     * creating a VPC endpoint for the S3 service.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a
AbstractMap with the
     *         VPC ID and VPC endpoint ID.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<AbstractMap.SimpleEntry<String, String>>
setupVPCAsync() {
```

```
        String cidr = "10.0.0.0/16";
        CreateVpcRequest vpcRequest = CreateVpcRequest.builder()
            .cidrBlock(cidr)
            .build();

        return getEc2AsyncClient().createVpc(vpcRequest)
            .thenCompose(vpcResponse -> {
                String vpcId = vpcResponse.vpc().vpcId();
                logger.info("VPC Created: {}", vpcId);

                Ec2AsyncWaiter waiter = getEc2AsyncClient().waiter();
                DescribeVpcsRequest request = DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
                    .vpcIds(vpcId)
                    .build();

                return waiter.waitUntilVpcAvailable(request)
                    .thenApply(waiterResponse -> vpcId);
            })
            .thenCompose(vpcId -> {
                Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(vpcId)
                    .build();

                DescribeRouteTablesRequest describeRouteTablesRequest =
DescribeRouteTablesRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter)
                    .build();

                return
getEc2AsyncClient().describeRouteTables(describeRouteTablesRequest)
                    .thenApply(routeTablesResponse -> {
                        if (routeTablesResponse.routeTables().isEmpty()) {
                            throw new CompletionException("No route tables found
for VPC: " + vpcId, null);
                        }
                        String routeTableId =
routeTablesResponse.routeTables().get(0).routeTableId();
                        logger.info("Route table found: {}", routeTableId);
                        return new AbstractMap.SimpleEntry<>(vpcId,
routeTableId);
                    });
            })
            .thenCompose(vpcAndRouteTable -> {
```

```
                String vpcId = vpcAndRouteTable.getKey();
                String routeTableId = vpcAndRouteTable.getValue();
                Region region =
 getEc2AsyncClient().serviceClientConfiguration().region();
                String serviceName = String.format("com.amazonaws.%s.s3express",
 region.id());

                CreateVpcEndpointRequest endpointRequest =
 CreateVpcEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .vpcId(vpcId)
                    .routeTableIds(routeTableId)
                    .serviceName(serviceName)
                    .build();

                return getEc2AsyncClient().createVpcEndpoint(endpointRequest)
                    .thenApply(vpcEndpointResponse -> {
                        String vpcEndpointId =
 vpcEndpointResponse.vpcEndpoint().vpcEndpointId();
                        logger.info("VPC Endpoint created: {}", vpcEndpointId);
                        return new AbstractMap.SimpleEntry<>(vpcId,
 vpcEndpointId);
                    });
            })
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
 exception.getCause() : exception;
                if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                    logger.error("EC2 error during VPC setup: {}",
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    throw new CompletionException("EC2 error during VPC setup: "
 + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }

                logger.error("VPC setup failed: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
                throw new CompletionException("VPC setup failed: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
            });
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- CopyObject
- CreateBucket
- DeleteBucket
- DeleteObject
- GetObject
- ListObjects
- PutObject

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario demonstrating the basics of Amazon S3 directory buckets and S3 Express One Zone.

```
        echo "\n";
        echo "--------------------------------------\n";
        echo "Welcome to the Amazon S3 Express Basics demo using PHP!\n";
        echo "--------------------------------------\n";

        // Change these both of these values to use a different region/
availability zone.
        $region = "us-west-2";
        $az = "usw2-az1";

        $this->s3Service = new S3Service(new S3Client(['region' => $region]));
        $this->iamService = new IAMService(new IamClient(['region' => $region]));

        $uuid = uniqid();

        echo <<<INTRO
Let's get started! First, please note that S3 Express One Zone works best when
 working within the AWS infrastructure,
```

```
specifically when working in the same Availability Zone. To see the best results
 in this example, and when you implement
Directory buckets into your infrastructure, it is best to put your Compute
 resources in the same AZ as your Directory
bucket.\n
INTRO;
        pressEnter();
        // 1. Configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the recommended method to
 allow S3 Express One Zone traffic without
        // the need to pass through an internet gateway or NAT device.
        echo "\n";
        echo "1. First, we'll set up a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if this program
 is running in an EC2 instance in the same AZ as your Directory buckets will be.
\n";
        $ec2Choice = testable_readline("Are you running this in an EC2 instance
 located in the same AZ as your intended Directory buckets? Enter Y/y to setup a
 VPC Endpoint, or N/n/blank to skip this section.");
        if($ec2Choice == "Y" || $ec2Choice == "y") {
            echo "Great! Let's set up a VPC, retrieve the Route Table from it,
 and create a VPC Endpoint to connect the S3 Client to.\n";
            pressEnter();
            $this->ec2Service = new EC2Service(new Ec2Client(['region' =>
 $region]));
            $cidr = "10.0.0.0/16";
            $vpc = $this->ec2Service->createVpc($cidr);
            $this->resources['vpcId'] = $vpc['VpcId'];

            $this->ec2Service->waitForVpcAvailable($vpc['VpcId']);

            $routeTable = $this->ec2Service->describeRouteTables([], [
                [
                    'Name' => "vpc-id",
                    'Values' => [$vpc['VpcId']],
                ],
            ]);

            $serviceName = "com.amazonaws." . $this->ec2Service->getRegion() .
 ".s3express";
            $vpcEndpoint = $this->ec2Service->createVpcEndpoint($serviceName,
 $vpc['VpcId'], [$routeTable[0]]);
            $this->resources['vpcEndpointId'] = $vpcEndpoint['VpcEndpointId'];
        }else{
            echo "Skipping the VPC setup. Don't forget to use this in production!
\n";
```

```
        }

        // 2. Policies, user, and roles with CDK.
        echo "\n";
        echo "2. Policies, users, and roles with CDK.\n";
        echo "Now, we'll set up some policies, roles, and a user. This user will
 only have permissions to do S3 Express One Zone actions.\n";
        pressEnter();

        $this->cloudFormationClient = new CloudFormationClient([]);
        $stackName = "cfn-stack-s3-express-basics-" . uniqid();
        $file = file_get_contents(__DIR__ . "/../../../../resources/cfn/
s3_express_basics/s3_express_template.yml");
        $result = $this->cloudFormationClient->createStack([
            'StackName' => $stackName,
            'TemplateBody' => $file,
            'Capabilities' => ['CAPABILITY_IAM'],
        ]);
        $waiter = $this->cloudFormationClient->getWaiter("StackCreateComplete",
 ['StackName' => $stackName]);
        try {
            $waiter->promise()->wait();
        }catch(CloudFormationException $caught){
            echo "Error waiting for the CloudFormation stack to create: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
        $this->resources['stackName'] = $stackName;
        $stackInfo = $this->cloudFormationClient->describeStacks([
            'StackName' => $result['StackId'],
        ]);

        $expressUserName = "";
        $regularUserName = "";
        foreach($stackInfo['Stacks'][0]['Outputs'] as $output) {
            if ($output['OutputKey'] == "RegularUser") {
                $regularUserName = $output['OutputValue'];
            }
            if ($output['OutputKey'] == "ExpressUser") {
                $expressUserName = $output['OutputValue'];
            }
        }
        $regularKey = $this->iamService->createAccessKey($regularUserName);
```

```
        $regularCredentials = new Credentials($regularKey['AccessKeyId'],
 $regularKey['SecretAccessKey']);
        $expressKey = $this->iamService->createAccessKey($expressUserName);
        $expressCredentials = new Credentials($expressKey['AccessKeyId'],
 $expressKey['SecretAccessKey']);

        // 3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express
 permissions.
        echo "\n";
        echo "3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3
 Express permissions.\n";
        echo "This client is created with the credentials associated with the
 user account with the S3 Express policy attached, so it can perform S3 Express
 operations.\n";
        pressEnter();
        $s3RegularClient = new S3Client([
            'Region' => $region,
            'Credentials' => $regularCredentials,
        ]);
        $s3RegularService = new S3Service($s3RegularClient);
        $s3ExpressClient = new S3Client([
            'Region' => $region,
            'Credentials' => $expressCredentials,
        ]);
        $s3ExpressService = new S3Service($s3ExpressClient);
        echo "All the roles and policies were created an attached to the user.
 Then, a new S3 Client and Service were created using that user's credentials.
\n";
        echo "We can now use this client to make calls to S3 Express operations.
 Keeping permissions in mind (and adhering to least-privilege) is crucial to S3
 Express.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 4. Create two buckets.
        echo "\n";
        echo "3. Create two buckets.\n";
        echo "Now we will create a Directory bucket, which is the linchpin of the
 S3 Express One Zone service.\n";
        echo "Directory buckets behave in different ways from regular S3 buckets,
 which we will explore here.\n";
        echo "We'll also create a normal bucket, put an object into the normal
 bucket, and copy it over to the Directory bucket.\n";
        pressEnter();
```

```
        // Create a directory bucket. These are different from normal S3 buckets
 in subtle ways.
        $directoryBucketName = "s3-express-demo-directory-bucket-$uuid--$az--x-
s3";
        echo "Now, let's create the actual Directory bucket, as well as a regular
 bucket.\n";
        pressEnter();
        $s3ExpressService->createBucket($directoryBucketName, [
            'CreateBucketConfiguration' => [
                'Bucket' => [
                    'Type' => "Directory", // This is what causes S3 to create a
 Directory bucket as opposed to a normal bucket.
                    'DataRedundancy' => "SingleAvailabilityZone",
                ],
                'Location' => [
                    'Name' => $az,
                    'Type' => "AvailabilityZone",
                ],
            ],
        ]);
        $this->resources['directoryBucketName'] = $directoryBucketName;

        // Create a normal bucket.
        $normalBucketName = "normal-bucket-$uuid";
        $s3RegularService->createBucket($normalBucketName);
        $this->resources['normalBucketName'] = $normalBucketName;
        echo "Great! Both buckets were created.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 5. Create an object and copy it over.
        echo "\n";
        echo "5. Create an object and copy it over.\n";
        echo "We'll create a basic object consisting of some text and upload it
 to the normal bucket.\n";
        echo "Next, we'll copy the object into the Directory bucket using the
 regular client.\n";
        echo "This works fine, because Copy operations are not restricted for
 Directory buckets.\n";
        pressEnter();

        $objectKey = "basic-text-object";
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $objectKey, $args =
 ['Body' => "Look Ma, I'm a bucket!"]);
        $this->resources['objectKey'] = $objectKey;
```

```
        // Create a session to access the directory bucket. The SDK Client will
automatically refresh this as needed.
        $s3ExpressService->createSession($directoryBucketName);
        $s3ExpressService->copyObject($directoryBucketName, $objectKey,
"$normalBucketName/$objectKey");

        echo "It worked! It's important to remember the user permissions when
interacting with Directory buckets.\n";
        echo "Instead of validating permissions on every call as normal buckets
do, Directory buckets utilize the user credentials and session token to
validate.\n";
        echo "This allows for much faster connection speeds on every call. For
single calls, this is low, but for many concurrent calls, this adds up to a lot
of time saved.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 6. Demonstrate performance difference.
        echo "\n";
        echo "6. Demonstrate performance difference.\n";
        $downloads = 1000;
        echo "Now, let's do a performance test. We'll download the same object
from each bucket $downloads times and compare the total time needed. Note: the
performance difference will be much more pronounced if this example is run in an
EC2 instance in the same AZ as the bucket.\n";
        $downloadChoice = testable_readline("If you would like to download each
object $downloads times, press enter. Otherwise, enter a custom amount and press
enter.");
        if($downloadChoice && is_numeric($downloadChoice) && $downloadChoice <
1000000){ // A million is enough. I promise.
            $downloads = $downloadChoice;
        }

        // Download the object $downloads times from each bucket and time it to
demonstrate the speed difference.
        $directoryStartTime = hrtime(true);
        for($i = 0; $i < $downloads; ++$i){
            $s3ExpressService->getObject($directoryBucketName, $objectKey);
        }
        $directoryEndTime = hrtime(true);
        $directoryTimeDiff = $directoryEndTime - $directoryStartTime;

        $normalStartTime = hrtime(true);
        for($i = 0; $i < $downloads; ++$i){
```

```
            $s3RegularService->getObject($normalBucketName, $objectKey);
        }
        $normalEndTime = hrtime(true);
        $normalTimeDiff = $normalEndTime - $normalStartTime;

        echo "The directory bucket took $directoryTimeDiff nanoseconds, while the
 normal bucket took $normalTimeDiff.\n";
        echo "That's a difference of " . ($normalTimeDiff - $directoryTimeDiff) .
 " nanoseconds, or " . (($normalTimeDiff - $directoryTimeDiff)/1000000000) . "
 seconds.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
        echo "\n";
        echo "7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.\n";
        echo "Now let's explore how Directory buckets store objects in a
 different manner to regular buckets.\n";
        echo "The key is in the name \"Directory!\"\n";
        echo "Where regular buckets store their key/value pairs in a flat manner,
 Directory buckets use actual directories/folders.\n";
        echo "This allows for more rapid indexing, traversing, and therefore
 retrieval times!\n";
        echo "The more segmented your bucket is, with lots of directories, sub-
directories, and objects, the more efficient it becomes.\n";
        echo "This structural difference also causes ListObjects to behave
 differently, which can cause unexpected results.\n";
        echo "Let's add a few more objects with layered directories as see how
 the output of ListObjects changes.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // Populate a few more files in each bucket so that we can use
 ListObjects and show the difference.
        $otherObject = "other/$objectKey";
        $altObject = "alt/$objectKey";
        $otherAltObject = "other/alt/$objectKey";
        $s3ExpressService->putObject($directoryBucketName, $otherObject);
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $otherObject);
        $this->resources['otherObject'] = $otherObject;
        $s3ExpressService->putObject($directoryBucketName, $altObject);
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $altObject);
        $this->resources['altObject'] = $altObject;
        $s3ExpressService->putObject($directoryBucketName, $otherAltObject);
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $otherAltObject);
        $this->resources['otherAltObject'] = $otherAltObject;
```

```
        $listDirectoryBucket = $s3ExpressService-
>listObjects($directoryBucketName);
        $listNormalBucket = $s3RegularService->listObjects($normalBucketName);

        // Directory bucket content
        echo "Directory bucket content\n";
        foreach($listDirectoryBucket['Contents'] as $result){
            echo $result['Key'] . "\n";
        }

        // Normal bucket content
        echo "\nNormal bucket content\n";
        foreach($listNormalBucket['Contents'] as $result){
            echo $result['Key'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "Notice how the normal bucket lists objects in lexicographical
 order, while the directory bucket does not. This is because the normal bucket
 considers the whole \"key\" to be the object identifies, while the directory
 bucket actually creates directories and uses the object \"key\" as a path to the
 object.\n";
        pressEnter();

        echo "\n";
        echo "That's it for our tour of the basic operations for S3 Express One
 Zone.\n";
        $cleanUp = testable_readline("Would you like to delete all the resources
 created during this demo? Enter Y/y to delete all the resources.");
        if($cleanUp){
            $this->cleanUp();
        }



namespace S3;

use Aws\CommandInterface;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Result;
use Aws\S3\Exception\S3Exception;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use DateTimeInterface;
```

```
class S3Service extends AWSServiceClass
{
    protected S3Client $client;
    protected bool $verbose;

    public function __construct(S3Client $client = null, $verbose = false)
    {
        if ($client) {
            $this->client = $client;
        } else {
            $this->client = new S3Client([
                'version' => 'latest',
                'region' => 'us-west-2',
            ]);
        }
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function setVerbose($verbose)
    {
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function isVerbose(): bool
    {
        return $this->verbose;
    }

    public function getClient(): S3Client
    {
        return $this->client;
    }

    public function setClient(S3Client $client)
    {
        $this->client = $client;
    }


    public function emptyAndDeleteBucket($bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $objects = $this->listAllObjects($bucketName, $args);
```

```
            $this->deleteObjects($bucketName, $objects, $args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $bucketName.\n";
            }
            $this->deleteBucket($bucketName, $args);
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "\nPlease fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.
\n";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function createBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->createBucket($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Created the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function putObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key],
 $args);
        try {
            $this->client->putObject($parameters);
```

```
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Uploaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
$bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $key in $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object uploading before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function getObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = []):
Result
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key],
$args);
        try {
            $object = $this->client->getObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Downloaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
$bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to download $key from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object downloading before
continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $object;
    }



    public function copyObject($bucketName, $key, $copySource, array $args = [])
    {
```

```
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key,
"CopySource" => $copySource], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->copyObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Copied the object from: $copySource in $bucketName to:
$key.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to copy $copySource in $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object copying before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function listObjects(string $bucketName, $start = 0, $max = 1000,
array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Marker' => $start,
"MaxKeys" => $max], $args);
        try {
            $objects = $this->client->listObjectsV2($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve the objects from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with list objects before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $objects;
    }



    public function listAllObjects($bucketName, array $args = [])
```

```
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);

        $contents = [];
        $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListObjectsV2", $parameters);

        foreach ($paginator as $result) {
            if($result['KeyCount'] == 0){
                break;
            }
            foreach ($result['Contents'] as $object) {
                $contents[] = $object;
            }
        }
        return $contents;
    }



    public function deleteObjects(string $bucketName, array $objects, array $args
= [])
    {
        $listOfObjects = array_map(
            function ($object) {
                return ['Key' => $object];
            },
            array_column($objects, 'Key')
        );
        if(!$listOfObjects){
            return;
        }

        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Delete' =>
['Objects' => $listOfObjects]], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObjects($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete the list of objects from $bucketName with
error: {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
```

```
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteBucket($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteObject(string $bucketName, string $fileName, array
 $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $fileName],
 $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the object named: $fileName from $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
```

```
        }
    }



    public function listBuckets(array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $buckets = $this->client->listBuckets($args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved all " . count($buckets) . "\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve bucket list with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket lists before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $buckets;
    }



    public function preSignedUrl(CommandInterface $command, DateTimeInterface|
int|string $expires, array $options = [])
    {
        $request = $this->client->createPresignedRequest($command, $expires,
 $options);
        try {
            $presignedUrl = (string)$request->getUri();
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create a presigned url: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with presigned urls before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $presignedUrl;
    }
```

```
    public function createSession(string $bucketName)
    {
        try{
            $result = $this->client->createSession([
                'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            ]);
            return $result;
        }catch(S3Exception $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorType() == "NoSuchBucket"){
                echo "The specified bucket does not exist.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObject
  - ListObjects
  - PutObject

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario demonstrating the basics of Amazon S3 directory buckets and S3 Express One Zone.

```
class S3ExpressScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started with S3
 Express."""

    def __init__(
        self,
        cloud_formation_resource: ServiceResource,
        ec2_client: client,
        iam_client: client,
    ):
        self.cloud_formation_resource = cloud_formation_resource
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        self.region = ec2_client.meta.region_name
        self.stack = None
        self.vpc_id = None
        self.vpc_endpoint_id = None
        self.regular_bucket_name = None
        self.directory_bucket_name = None
        self.s3_express_wrapper = None
        self.s3_regular_wrapper = None

    def s3_express_scenario(self):
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """
        print("")
        print_dashes()
        print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Express Basics demo using Python (Boto
 3)!")
        print_dashes()
        print(
            """
Let's get started! First, please note that S3 Express One Zone works best when
 working within the AWS infrastructure,
specifically when working in the same Availability Zone. To see the best results
 in this example and when you implement
Directory buckets into your infrastructure, it is best to put your compute
 resources in the same AZ as your Directory
bucket.
```

```
    """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        # Create an optional VPC and create 2 IAM users.
        express_user_name, regular_user_name = self.create_vpc_and_users()

        # Set up two S3 clients, one regular and one express, and two buckets,
one regular and one express.
        self.setup_clients_and_buckets(express_user_name, regular_user_name)

        # Create an S3 session for the express S3 client and add objects to the
buckets.
        bucket_object = self.create_session_and_add_objects()

        # Demonstrate performance differences between regular and express
buckets.
        self.demonstrate_performance(bucket_object)

        # Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference between
regular and express buckets.
        self.show_lexicographical_differences(bucket_object)

        print("")
        print("That's it for our tour of the basic operations for S3 Express One
Zone.")

        if q.ask(
            "Would you like to delete all the resources created during this demo
(y/n)? ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            self.cleanup()

    def create_vpc_and_users(self) -> None:
        """
        Optionally create a VPC.
        Create two IAM users, one with S3 Express One Zone permissions and one
without.
        """
        # Configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the recommended method to
allow S3 Express One Zone traffic without
        # the need to pass through an internet gateway or NAT device.
        print(
```

```
            """
1. First, we'll set up a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if this program is running in
 an EC2 instance in the same AZ as your
Directory buckets will be. Are you running this in an EC2 instance located in the
 same AZ as your intended Directory buckets?
"""
        )
        if q.ask("Do you want to setup a VPC Endpoint? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno):
            print(
                "Great! Let's set up a VPC, retrieve the Route Table from it, and
 create a VPC Endpoint to connect the S3 Client to."
            )
            self.setup_vpc()
            press_enter_to_continue()
        else:
            print("Skipping the VPC setup. Don't forget to use this in
 production!")
        print(
            """
2. Policies, users, and roles with CDK.
Now, we'll set up some policies, roles, and a user. This user will only have
 permissions to do S3 Express One Zone actions.
            """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        stack_name = f"cfn-stack-s3-express-basics--{uuid.uuid4()}"
        template_as_string = S3ExpressScenario.get_template_as_string()
        self.stack = self.deploy_cloudformation_stack(stack_name,
 template_as_string)
        regular_user_name = None
        express_user_name = None
        outputs = self.stack.outputs
        for output in outputs:
            if output.get("OutputKey") == "RegularUser":
                regular_user_name = output.get("OutputValue")
            elif output.get("OutputKey") == "ExpressUser":
                express_user_name = output.get("OutputValue")
        if not regular_user_name or not express_user_name:
            error_string = f"""
            Failed to retrieve required outputs from CloudFormation stack.
            'regular_user_name'={regular_user_name},
 'express_user_name'={express_user_name}
            """
            logger.error(error_string)
```

```
            raise ValueError(error_string)
        return express_user_name, regular_user_name

    def setup_clients_and_buckets(
        self, express_user_name: str, regular_user_name: str
    ) -> None:
        """
        Set up two S3 clients, one regular and one express, and two buckets, one
 regular and one express.
        :param express_user_name: The name of the user with S3 Express
 permissions.
        :param regular_user_name: The name of the user with regular S3
 permissions.
        """
        regular_credentials = self.create_access_key(regular_user_name)
        express_credentials = self.create_access_key(express_user_name)
        # 3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express
 permissions.
        print(
            """
3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express permissions.
 This client is created with the
credentials associated with the user account with the S3 Express policy attached,
 so it can perform S3 Express operations.
"""
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        s3_regular_client = self.create_s3__client_with_access_key_credentials(
            regular_credentials
        )
        self.s3_regular_wrapper = S3ExpressWrapper(s3_regular_client)
        s3_express_client = self.create_s3__client_with_access_key_credentials(
            express_credentials
        )
        self.s3_express_wrapper = S3ExpressWrapper(s3_express_client)
        print(
            """
All the roles and policies were created and attached to the user. Then a new S3
 Client were created using
that user's credentials. We can now use this client to make calls to S3 Express
 operations. Keeping permissions in mind
(and adhering to least-privilege) is crucial to S3 Express.
 """
        )
```

```
        press_enter_to_continue()
        # 4. Create two buckets.
        print(
            """
3. Create two buckets.
Now we will create a Directory bucket which is the linchpin of the S3 Express One
 Zone service. Directory buckets
behave in different ways from regular S3 buckets which we will explore here.
 We'll also create a normal bucket, put
an object into the normal bucket, and copy it over to the Directory bucket.
"""
        )

        # Create a directory bucket. These are different from normal S3 buckets
 in subtle ways.
        bucket_prefix = q.ask(
            "Enter a bucket name prefix that will be used for both buckets: ",
            q.re_match(r"[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-\.]*)[a-z0-9]$"),
        )

        # Some availability zones are not supported for Directory buckets. We'll
 choose one that is supported.
        print(
            "Now, let's choose an availability zone for the Directory bucket.
 We'll choose one that is supported."
        )
        while True:
            availability_zone = self.select_availability_zone_id(self.region)
            # Construct the parts of a directory bucket name that is made unique
 with a UUID string.
            directory_bucket_suffix = f"--{availability_zone['ZoneId']}--x-s3"
            max_uuid_length = 63 - len(bucket_prefix) -
 len(directory_bucket_suffix) - 1
            bucket_uuid = str(uuid.uuid4()).replace("-", "")[:max_uuid_length]
            directory_bucket_name = (
                f"{bucket_prefix}-{bucket_uuid}{directory_bucket_suffix}"
            )
            regular_bucket_name = f"{bucket_prefix}-regular-{bucket_uuid}"
            configuration = {
                "Bucket": {
                    "Type": "Directory",
                    "DataRedundancy": "SingleAvailabilityZone",
                },
                "Location": {
```

```
                    "Name": availability_zone["ZoneId"],
                    "Type": "AvailabilityZone",
                },
            }
            press_enter_to_continue()
            print(
                "Now, let's create the actual Directory bucket, as well as a
regular bucket."
            )
            press_enter_to_continue()
            try:
                self.s3_express_wrapper.create_bucket(
                    directory_bucket_name, configuration
                )
                break
            except ClientError as client_error:
                if client_error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidBucketName":
                    print(
                        f"Bucket '{directory_bucket_name}' is invalid. This may
be because of selected availability zone."
                    )
                    if q.ask(
                        "Would you like to select a different availability zone?
",
                        q.is_yesno,
                    ):
                        continue
                    else:
                        raise
                else:
                    raise
        print(f"Created directory bucket, '{directory_bucket_name}'")
        self.directory_bucket_name = directory_bucket_name

        self.s3_regular_wrapper.create_bucket(regular_bucket_name)
        print(f"Created regular bucket, '{regular_bucket_name}'")
        self.regular_bucket_name = regular_bucket_name
        print("Great! Both buckets were created.")
        press_enter_to_continue()

    def create_session_and_add_objects(self) -> None:
        """
        Create a session for the express S3 client and add objects to the
buckets.
```

```
        """
        print(
            """
5. Create an object and copy it over.
We'll create a basic object consisting of some text and upload it to the normal
 bucket. Next we'll copy the object
into the Directory bucket using the regular client. This works fine because copy
 operations are not restricted for
Directory buckets.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        bucket_object = "basic-text-object"
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(
            self.regular_bucket_name, bucket_object, "Look Ma, I'm a bucket!"
        )
        self.s3_express_wrapper.create_session(self.directory_bucket_name)
        self.s3_express_wrapper.copy_object(
            self.regular_bucket_name,
            bucket_object,
            self.directory_bucket_name,
            bucket_object,
        )
        print(
            """
It worked! It's important to remember the user permissions when interacting with
 Directory buckets. Instead of validating
permissions on every call as normal buckets do, Directory buckets utilize the
 user credentials and session token to validate.
This allows for much faster connection speeds on every call. For single calls,
 this is low, but for many concurrent calls
this adds up to a lot of time saved.
"""
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        return bucket_object

    def demonstrate_performance(self, bucket_object: str) -> None:
        """
        Demonstrate performance differences between regular and Directory
 buckets.
        :param bucket_object: The name of the object to download from each
 bucket.
        """
```

```
        print("")
        print("6. Demonstrate performance difference.")
        print(
            """
Now, let's do a performance test. We'll download the same object from each bucket
 'downloads' times
and compare the total time needed. Note: the performance difference will be much
 more pronounced if this
example is run in an EC2 instance in the same Availability Zone as the bucket.
"""
        )
        downloads = 1000
        print(
            f"The number of downloads of the same object for this example is set
 at {downloads}."
        )
        if q.ask("Would you like to download a different number? (y/n) ",
 q.is_yesno):
            max_downloads = 1000000
            downloads = q.ask(
                f"Enter a number between 1 and {max_downloads} for the number of
 downloads: ",
                q.is_int,
                q.in_range(1, max_downloads),
            )
        # Download the object 'downloads' times from each bucket and time it to
 demonstrate the speed difference.
        print("Downloading from the Directory bucket.")
        directory_time_start = time.time_ns()

        for index in range(downloads):
            if index % 10 == 0:
                print(f"Download {index} of {downloads}")

            self.s3_express_wrapper.get_object(
                self.directory_bucket_name, bucket_object
            )

        directory_time_difference = time.time_ns() - directory_time_start
        print("Downloading from the normal bucket.")
        normal_time_start = time.time_ns()

        for index in range(downloads):
            if index % 10 == 0:
```

```
                print(f"Download {index} of {downloads}")
            self.s3_regular_wrapper.get_object(self.regular_bucket_name,
 bucket_object)

        normal_time_difference = time.time_ns() - normal_time_start
        print(
            f"The directory bucket took {directory_time_difference} nanoseconds,
 while the normal bucket took {normal_time_difference}."
        )
        difference = normal_time_difference - directory_time_difference
        print(f"That's a difference of {difference} nanoseconds, or")
        print(f"{(difference) / 1000000000} seconds.")
        if difference < 0:
            print(
                "The directory buckets were slower. This can happen if you are
 not running on the cloud within a vpc."
            )
        press_enter_to_continue()

    def show_lexicographical_differences(self, bucket_object: str) -> None:
        """
        Show the lexicographical difference between Directory buckets and regular
 buckets.
        This is done by creating a few objects in each bucket and listing them to
 show the difference.
        :param bucket_object: The object to use for the listing operations.
        """
        print(
            """
7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
Now let's explore how Directory buckets store objects in a different manner to
 regular buckets. The key is in the name
"Directory". Where regular buckets store their key/value pairs in a flat manner,
 Directory buckets use actual
directories/folders. This allows for more rapid indexing, traversing, and
 therefore retrieval times! The more segmented
your bucket is, with lots of directories, sub-directories, and objects, the more
 efficient it becomes. This structural
difference also causes ListObjects to behave differently, which can cause
 unexpected results. Let's add a few more
objects with layered directories to see how the output of ListObjects changes.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
```

```
        # Populate a few more files in each bucket so that we can use ListObjects
 and show the difference.
        other_object = f"other/{bucket_object}"
        alt_object = f"alt/{bucket_object}"
        other_alt_object = f"other/alt/{bucket_object}"
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(self.regular_bucket_name,
 other_object, "")
        self.s3_express_wrapper.put_object(self.directory_bucket_name,
 other_object, "")
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(self.regular_bucket_name, alt_object,
 "")
        self.s3_express_wrapper.put_object(self.directory_bucket_name,
 alt_object, "")
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(
            self.regular_bucket_name, other_alt_object, ""
        )
        self.s3_express_wrapper.put_object(
            self.directory_bucket_name, other_alt_object, ""
        )
        directory_bucket_objects = self.s3_express_wrapper.list_objects(
            self.directory_bucket_name
        )

        regular_bucket_objects = self.s3_regular_wrapper.list_objects(
            self.regular_bucket_name
        )

        print("Directory bucket content")
        for bucket_object in directory_bucket_objects:
            print(f"   {bucket_object['Key']}")
        print("Normal bucket content")
        for bucket_object in regular_bucket_objects:
            print(f"   {bucket_object['Key']}")
        print(
            """
Notice how the normal bucket lists objects in lexicographical order, while the
 directory bucket does not. This is
because the normal bucket considers the whole "key" to be the object identifier,
 while the directory bucket actually
creates directories and uses the object "key" as a path to the object.
            """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
```

```
    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Delete resources created by this scenario.
        """
        if self.directory_bucket_name is not None:
            self.s3_express_wrapper.delete_bucket_and_objects(
                self.directory_bucket_name
            )
            print(f"Deleted directory bucket, '{self.directory_bucket_name}'")
            self.directory_bucket_name = None

        if self.regular_bucket_name is not None:

self.s3_regular_wrapper.delete_bucket_and_objects(self.regular_bucket_name)
            print(f"Deleted regular bucket, '{self.regular_bucket_name}'")
            self.regular_bucket_name = None

        if self.stack is not None:
            self.destroy_cloudformation_stack(self.stack)
            self.stack = None

        self.tear_done_vpc()

    def create_access_key(self, user_name: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates an access key for the user.
        :param user_name: The name of the user.
        :return: The access key for the user.
        """
        try:
            access_key = self.iam_client.create_access_key(UserName=user_name)
            return access_key["AccessKey"]
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the access key. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def create_s3__client_with_access_key_credentials(
        self, access_key: dict[str, any]
    ) -> client:
        """
        Creates an S3 client with access key credentials.
```

```
        :param access_key: The access key for the user.
        :return: The S3 Express One Zone client.
        """
        try:
            s3_express_client = boto3.client(
                "s3",
                aws_access_key_id=access_key["AccessKeyId"],
                aws_secret_access_key=access_key["SecretAccessKey"],
                region_name=self.region,
            )
            return s3_express_client
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the S3 Express One Zone client. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def select_availability_zone_id(self, region: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Selects an availability zone.
        :param region: The region to select the availability zone from.
        :return: The availability zone dictionary.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones(
                Filters=[{"Name": "region-name", "Values": [region]}]
            )
            availability_zones = response["AvailabilityZones"]
            zone_names = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in availability_zones]
            index = q.choose("Select an availability zone: ", zone_names)
            return availability_zones[index]
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe availability zones. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def deploy_cloudformation_stack(
        self, stack_name: str, cfn_template: str
    ) -> ServiceResource:
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
```

```
        defined in the associated `cfn_template.yaml` AWS CloudFormation script
and are deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.

        :param stack_name: The name of the CloudFormation stack.
        :param cfn_template: The CloudFormation template as a string.
        :return: The CloudFormation stack resource.
        """
        print(f"Deploying CloudFormation stack: {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cloud_formation_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=cfn_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
        )
        print(f"CloudFormation stack creation started: {stack_name}")
        print("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to complete...")
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_create_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print("CloudFormation stack creation complete.")

        return stack

    def destroy_cloudformation_stack(self, stack: ServiceResource) -> None:
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example
resources.
        """
        try:
            print(
                f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' is being deleted. This may
take a few minutes."
            )
            stack.delete()
            waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
                "stack_delete_complete"
            )
            waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
```

```
            print(f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' has been deleted.")
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete the CloudFormation stack. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )

    @staticmethod
    def get_template_as_string() -> str:
        """
        Returns a string containing this scenario's CloudFormation template.
        """
        script_directory = os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))
        template_file_path = os.path.join(script_directory,
 "s3_express_template.yaml")
        file = open(template_file_path, "r")
        return file.read()

    def setup_vpc(self):
        cidr = "10.0.0.0/16"
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc(CidrBlock=cidr)
            self.vpc_id = response["Vpc"]["VpcId"]

            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("vpc_available")
            waiter.wait(VpcIds=[self.vpc_id])
            print(f"Created vpc {self.vpc_id}")

        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the vpc. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_route_tables(
                Filters=[{"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [self.vpc_id]}]
            )
            route_table_id = response["RouteTables"][0]["RouteTableId"]
            service_name = f"com.amazonaws.
{self.ec2_client.meta.region_name}.s3express"

            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc_endpoint(
                VpcId=self.vpc_id,
```

```
                RouteTableIds=[route_table_id],
                ServiceName=service_name,
            )
            self.vpc_endpoint_id = response["VpcEndpoint"]["VpcEndpointId"]
            print(f"Created vpc endpoint {self.vpc_endpoint_id}")

        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the vpc endpoint. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def tear_done_vpc(self) -> None:
        if self.vpc_endpoint_id is not None:
            try:
                self.ec2_client.delete_vpc_endpoints(
                    VpcEndpointIds=[self.vpc_endpoint_id]
                )
                print(f"Deleted vpc endpoint {self.vpc_endpoint_id}.")
                self.vpc_endpoint_id = None
            except ClientError as client_error:
                logging.error(
                    "Couldn't delete the vpc endpoint %s. Here's why: %s",
                    self.vpc_endpoint_id,
                    client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
        if self.vpc_id is not None:
            try:
                self.ec2_client.delete_vpc(VpcId=self.vpc_id)
                print(f"Deleted vpc {self.vpc_id}")
                self.vpc_id = None
            except ClientError as client_error:
                logging.error(
                    "Couldn't delete the vpc %s. Here's why: %s",
                    self.vpc_id,
                    client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

A wrapper class for Amazon S3 Express SDK functions.

```
class S3ExpressWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Express One Zone actions using the client
 interface."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the S3ExpressWrapper with an S3 client.

        :param s3_client: A Boto3 Amazon S3 client. This client provides low-
level
                              access to AWS S3 services.
        """
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "S3ExpressWrapper":
        """
        Creates an S3ExpressWrapper instance with a default s3 client.

        :return: An instance of S3ExpressWrapper initialized with the default S3
 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)


    def create_bucket(
        self, bucket_name: str, bucket_configuration: dict[str, any] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Creates a bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        :param bucket_configuration: The optional configuration for the bucket.
        """
        try:
            params = {"Bucket": bucket_name}
            if bucket_configuration:
                params["CreateBucketConfiguration"] = bucket_configuration

            self.s3_client.create_bucket(**params)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            # Do not log InvalidBucketName error because it is logged elsewhere.
            if client_error.response["Error"]["Code"] != "InvalidBucketName":
```

```
                logging.error(
                    "Couldn't create the bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                    bucket_name,
                    client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise

    def delete_bucket_and_objects(self, bucket_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a bucket and its objects.
         :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            # Delete the objects in the bucket first. This is required for a
bucket to be deleted.
            paginator = self.s3_client.get_paginator("list_objects_v2")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(Bucket=bucket_name)
            for page in page_iterator:
                if "Contents" in page:
                    delete_keys = {
                        "Objects": [{"Key": obj["Key"]} for obj in
page["Contents"]]
                    }
                    response = self.s3_client.delete_objects(
                        Bucket=bucket_name, Delete=delete_keys
                    )
                    if "Errors" in response:
                        for error in response["Errors"]:
                            logging.error(
                                "Couldn't delete object %s. Here's why: %s",
                                error["Key"],
                                error["Message"],
                            )

            self.s3_client.delete_bucket(Bucket=bucket_name)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete the bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )

    def put_object(self, bucket_name: str, object_key: str, content: str) ->
None:
```

```
        """
        Puts an object into a bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        :param object_key: The key of the object.
        :param content: The content of the object.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.put_object(Body=content, Bucket=bucket_name,
Key=object_key)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't put the object %s into bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                object_key,
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def list_objects(self, bucket: str) -> list[str]:
        """
        Lists objects in a bucket.
        :param bucket: The name of the bucket.
        :return: The list of objects in the bucket.
        """
        try:
            response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(Bucket=bucket)
            return response.get("Contents", [])
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list objects in bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                bucket,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def copy_object(
        self,
        source_bucket: str,
        source_key: str,
        destination_bucket: str,
        destination_key: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Copies an object from one bucket to another.
```

```
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket.
        :param source_key: The source key.
        :param destination_bucket: The destination bucket.
        :param destination_key: The destination key.
        :return: None
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.copy_object(
                CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": source_key},
                Bucket=destination_bucket,
                Key=destination_key,
            )
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't copy object %s from bucket %s to bucket %s. Here's why:
%s",
                source_key,
                source_bucket,
                destination_bucket,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def create_session(self, bucket_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an express session.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.create_session(Bucket=bucket_name)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the express session for bucket %s. Here's why:
%s",
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_object(self, bucket_name: str, object_key: str) -> None:
        """
        Gets an object from a bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
```

```
        :param object_key: The key of the object.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.get_object(Bucket=bucket_name, Key=object_key)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get the object %s from bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                object_key,
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObject
  - ListObjects
  - PutObject

Actions for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual S3 Directory Buckets actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the S3 Directory Buckets API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon S3 Directory Buckets API Reference.

Examples

- Use AbortMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
- Use CompleteMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
- Use CopyObject with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateBucket with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateMultipartUpload with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateSession with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucket with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteObject with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteObjects with an AWS SDK
- Use GetBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
- Use GetBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use GetObject with an AWS SDK
- Use GetObjectAttributes with an AWS SDK
- Use HeadBucket with an AWS SDK
- Use HeadObject with an AWS SDK
- Use ListDirectoryBuckets with an AWS SDK
- Use ListMultipartUploads with an AWS SDK
- Use ListObjectsV2 with an AWS SDK
- Use ListParts with an AWS SDK
- Use PutBucketEncryption with an AWS SDK
- Use PutBucketPolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use PutObject with an AWS SDK
- Use UploadPart with an AWS SDK
- Use UploadPartCopy with an AWS SDK

Use `AbortMultipartUpload` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `AbortMultipartUpload`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Abort a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AbortMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;


    /**
     * Aborts a specific multipart upload for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
     * @param uploadId   The upload ID of the multipart upload to abort
     * @return True if the multipart upload is successfully aborted, false
 otherwise
     */
    public static boolean abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload(S3Client s3Client,
 String bucketName,
            String objectKey, String uploadId) {
        logger.info("Aborting multipart upload: {} for bucket: {}", uploadId,
 bucketName);
        try {
            // Abort the multipart upload
```

```
            AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest =
AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .build();

            s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
            logger.info("Aborted multipart upload: {} for object: {}", uploadId,
objectKey);
            return true;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to abort multipart upload: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CompleteMultipartUpload` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CompleteMultipartUpload`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Complete a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompleteMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompleteMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;


    /**
     * This method completes the multipart upload request by collating all the
     * upload parts.
     *
     * @param s3Client    The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName  The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey   The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
     * @param uploadId    The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     * @param uploadParts The list of completed parts
     * @return True if the multipart upload is successfully completed, false
     *         otherwise
     */
    public static boolean completeDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload(S3Client
 s3Client, String bucketName, String objectKey,
            String uploadId, List<CompletedPart> uploadParts) {
        try {
            CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload =
 CompletedMultipartUpload.builder()
                    .parts(uploadParts)
                    .build();
```

```
            CompleteMultipartUploadRequest completeMultipartUploadRequest =
CompleteMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .multipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload)
                    .build();

            CompleteMultipartUploadResponse response =
s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(completeMultipartUploadRequest);
            logger.info("Multipart upload completed. ETag: {}", response.eTag());
            return true;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to complete multipart upload: {} - Error code:
{}", e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CopyObject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object from a directory bucket to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CopyObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CopyObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Copies an object from one S3 general purpose bucket to one S3 directory
     * bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client     The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param sourceBucket The name of the source bucket
     * @param objectKey    The key (name) of the object to be copied
     * @param targetBucket The name of the target bucket
     */
    public static void copyDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
 sourceBucket, String objectKey,
            String targetBucket) {
        logger.info("Copying object: {} from bucket: {} to bucket: {}",
 objectKey, sourceBucket, targetBucket);

        try {
            // Create a CopyObjectRequest
            CopyObjectRequest copyReq = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
                    .sourceBucket(sourceBucket)
                    .sourceKey(objectKey)
                    .destinationBucket(targetBucket)
                    .destinationKey(objectKey)
```

```
                    .build();

            // Copy the object
            CopyObjectResponse copyRes = s3Client.copyObject(copyReq);
            logger.info("Successfully copied {} from bucket {} into bucket {}.
CopyObjectResponse: {}",
                    objectKey, sourceBucket, targetBucket,
copyRes.copyObjectResult().toString());

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to copy object: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateBucket` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an S3 directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DataRedundancy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The region where the bucket will be created
     * @throws S3Exception if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public static void createDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String zone) throws S3Exception {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: {}", bucketName);

        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
 CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
                .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                        .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .name(zone).build())
                .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
                        .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                        .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .build())
                .build();
        try {
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration).build();
            CreateBucketResponse response = s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: {}",
response.location());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Error creating bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateMultipartUpload` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMultipartUpload`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
```

```
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * This method creates a multipart upload request that generates a unique
 upload
     * ID used to track
     * all the upload parts.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
     * @return The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     */
    public static String createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload(S3Client s3Client,
 String bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Creating multipart upload for object: {} in bucket: {}",
 objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a CreateMultipartUploadRequest
            CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
 CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Initiate the multipart upload
            CreateMultipartUploadResponse response =
 s3Client.createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest);
            String uploadId = response.uploadId();
            logger.info("Multipart upload initiated. Upload ID: {}", uploadId);
            return uploadId;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to create multipart upload: {} - Error code:
 {}", e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `CreateSession` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSession`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class S3ExpressWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Express One Zone actions using the client
 interface."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the S3ExpressWrapper with an S3 client.

        :param s3_client: A Boto3 Amazon S3 client. This client provides low-
level
                              access to AWS S3 services.
        """
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "S3ExpressWrapper":
        """
        Creates an S3ExpressWrapper instance with a default s3 client.

        :return: An instance of S3ExpressWrapper initialized with the default S3
 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)


    def create_session(self, bucket_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an express session.
```

```
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.create_session(Bucket=bucket_name)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the express session for bucket %s. Here's why: 
%s",
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateSession in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucket` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an S3 directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;

    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket to delete
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        logger.info("Deleting bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a DeleteBucketRequest
            DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest =
 DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Delete the bucket
            s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
            logger.info("Successfully deleted bucket: {}", bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucketEncryption` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketEncryption`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the encryption configuration for a directory bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketEncryptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Deletes the encryption configuration from an S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketEncryption(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketEncryptionRequest deleteRequest =
 DeleteBucketEncryptionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        try {
            s3Client.deleteBucketEncryption(deleteRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket encryption deleted for bucket: {}", bucketName);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket encryption: {} - Error code:
 {}", e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
```

```
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteBucketPolicy` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a bucket policy for a directory bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getAwsAccountId;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketPolicy;

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;


    /**
```

```
     * Deletes the bucket policy for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketPolicy(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName) {
        logger.info("Deleting policy for bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a DeleteBucketPolicyRequest
            DeleteBucketPolicyRequest deletePolicyReq =
DeleteBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Delete the bucket policy
            s3Client.deleteBucketPolicy(deletePolicyReq);
            logger.info("Successfully deleted bucket policy");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket policy: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteObject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;




    /**
     * Deletes an object from the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be deleted
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Deleting object: {} from bucket: {}", objectKey,
 bucketName);
```

```
        try {
            // Create a DeleteObjectRequest
            DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest =
DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Delete the object
            s3Client.deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);
            logger.info("Object {} has been deleted", objectKey);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete object: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `DeleteObjects` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete multiple objects in a directory bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Delete;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.List;

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;


    /**
     * Deletes multiple objects from the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKeys The list of keys (names) of the objects to be deleted
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketObjects(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, List<String> objectKeys) {
        logger.info("Deleting objects from bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a list of ObjectIdentifier.
            List<ObjectIdentifier> identifiers = objectKeys.stream()
                    .map(key -> ObjectIdentifier.builder().key(key).build())
                    .toList();

            Delete delete = Delete.builder()
                    .objects(identifiers)
                    .build();
```

```
            DeleteObjectsRequest deleteObjectsRequest =
 DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .delete(delete)
                    .build();

            DeleteObjectsResponse deleteObjectsResponse =
 s3Client.deleteObjects(deleteObjectsRequest);
            deleteObjectsResponse.deleted().forEach(deleted ->
 logger.info("Deleted object: {}", deleted.key()));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete objects: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetBucketEncryption` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketEncryption`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the encryption configuration of a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketEncryptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketEncryptionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionRule;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Retrieves the encryption configuration for an S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @return The type of server-side encryption applied to the bucket (e.g.,
     *         AES256, aws:kms)
     */
    public static String getDirectoryBucketEncryption(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        try {
            // Create a GetBucketEncryptionRequest
            GetBucketEncryptionRequest getRequest =
 GetBucketEncryptionRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the bucket encryption configuration
            GetBucketEncryptionResponse response =
 s3Client.getBucketEncryption(getRequest);
            ServerSideEncryptionRule rule =
 response.serverSideEncryptionConfiguration().rules().get(0);

            String encryptionType =
 rule.applyServerSideEncryptionByDefault().sseAlgorithmAsString();
            logger.info("Bucket encryption algorithm: {}", encryptionType);
            logger.info("KMS Customer Managed Key ID: {}",
 rule.applyServerSideEncryptionByDefault().kmsMasterKeyID());
            logger.info("Bucket Key Enabled: {}", rule.bucketKeyEnabled());

            return encryptionType;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to get bucket encryption: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
```

```
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetBucketPolicy` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the policy of a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getAwsAccountId;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketPolicy;

    /**
     * Retrieves the bucket policy for the specified S3 directory bucket.
```

```
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @return The bucket policy text
     */
    public static String getDirectoryBucketPolicy(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName) {
        logger.info("Getting policy for bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a GetBucketPolicyRequest
            GetBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = GetBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the bucket policy
            GetBucketPolicyResponse response =
s3Client.getBucketPolicy(policyReq);

            // Print and return the policy text
            String policyText = response.policy();
            logger.info("Bucket policy: {}", policyText);
            return policyText;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to get bucket policy: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetObject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Learn the basics

- Create a presigned URL to get an object

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object from a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Retrieves an object from the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be retrieved
```

```
     * @return The retrieved object as a ResponseInputStream
     */
    public static boolean getDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Retrieving object: {} from bucket: {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a GetObjectRequest
            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the object as bytes
            ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
s3Client.getObjectAsBytes(objectRequest);
            byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();

            // Print object contents to console
            String objectContent = new String(data, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
            logger.info("Object contents: \n{}", objectContent);

            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to retrieve object: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `GetObjectAttributes` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectAttributes`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object attributes from a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectAttributes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Retrieves attributes for an object in the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to retrieve attributes for
     * @return True if the object attributes are successfully retrieved, false
     *         otherwise
     */
```

```
   public static boolean getDirectoryBucketObjectAttributes(S3Client s3Client,
String bucketName, String objectKey) {
       logger.info("Retrieving attributes for object: {} from bucket: {}",
objectKey, bucketName);

       try {
           // Create a GetObjectAttributesRequest
           GetObjectAttributesRequest getObjectAttributesRequest =
GetObjectAttributesRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(objectKey)
                   .objectAttributes(ObjectAttributes.E_TAG,
ObjectAttributes.STORAGE_CLASS,
                           ObjectAttributes.OBJECT_SIZE)
                   .build();

           // Retrieve the object attributes
           GetObjectAttributesResponse response =
s3Client.getObjectAttributes(getObjectAttributesRequest);
           logger.info("Attributes for object {}:", objectKey);
           logger.info("ETag: {}", response.eTag());
           logger.info("Storage Class: {}", response.storageClass());
           logger.info("Object Size: {}", response.objectSize());
           return true;

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to retrieve object attributes: {} - Error code:
{}",
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
           return false;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `HeadBucket` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `HeadBucket`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Checks if the specified S3 directory bucket exists and is accessible.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Checks if the specified S3 directory bucket exists and is accessible.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket to check
     * @return True if the bucket exists and is accessible, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean headDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        logger.info("Checking if bucket exists: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a HeadBucketRequest
            HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
            // If the bucket doesn't exist, the following statement throws
 NoSuchBucketException,
            // which is a subclass of S3Exception.
```

```
            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest);
            logger.info("Amazon S3 directory bucket: \"{}\" found.", bucketName);
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to access bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `HeadObject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `HeadObject`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get metadata of an object in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;
```

```
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Retrieves metadata for an object in the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to retrieve metadata for
     * @return True if the object exists, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean headDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Retrieving metadata for object: {} from bucket: {}",
 objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a HeadObjectRequest
            HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the object metadata
            HeadObjectResponse response = s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
            logger.info("Amazon S3 object: \"{}\" found in bucket: \"{}\" with
 ETag: \"{}\"", objectKey, bucketName,
                    response.eTag());
            logger.info("Content-Type: {}", response.contentType());
            logger.info("Content-Length: {}", response.contentLength());
            logger.info("Last Modified: {}", response.lastModified());
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to retrieve object metadata: {} - Error code:
 {}", e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListDirectoryBuckets` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListDirectoryBuckets`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all directory buckets.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

     /**
```

```
     * Lists all S3 directory buckets and no general purpose buckets.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @return A list of bucket names
     */
    public static List<String> listDirectoryBuckets(S3Client s3Client) {
        logger.info("Listing all directory buckets");

        try {
            // Create a ListBucketsRequest
            ListDirectoryBucketsRequest listDirectoryBucketsRequest =
ListDirectoryBucketsRequest.builder().build();

            // Retrieve the list of buckets
            ListDirectoryBucketsResponse response =
s3Client.listDirectoryBuckets(listDirectoryBucketsRequest);

            // Extract bucket names
            List<String> bucketNames = response.buckets().stream()
                    .map(Bucket::name)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return bucketNames;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list buckets: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDirectoryBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListMultipartUploads` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListMultipartUploads`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List multipart uploads in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;


    /**
     * Lists multipart uploads for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
```

```
    * @return A list of MultipartUpload objects representing the multipart
uploads
    */
   public static List<MultipartUpload>
listDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
       logger.info("Listing in-progress multipart uploads for bucket: {}",
bucketName);

       try {
           // Create a ListMultipartUploadsRequest
           ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .build();

           // List the multipart uploads
           ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
           List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();
           for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
               logger.info("In-progress multipart upload: Upload ID: {}, Key:
{}, Initiated: {}", upload.uploadId(),
                       upload.key(), upload.initiated());
           }
           return uploads;

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to list multipart uploads: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
           return List.of(); // Return an empty list if an exception is thrown
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListMultipartUploads in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListObjectsV2` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List objects in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Object;

import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Lists objects in the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @return A list of object keys in the bucket
     */
```

```
   public static List<String> listDirectoryBucketObjectsV2(S3Client s3Client,
String bucketName) {
       logger.info("Listing objects in bucket: {}", bucketName);

       try {
           // Create a ListObjectsV2Request
           ListObjectsV2Request listObjectsV2Request =
ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .build();

           // Retrieve the list of objects
           ListObjectsV2Response response =
s3Client.listObjectsV2(listObjectsV2Request);

           // Extract and return the object keys
           return response.contents().stream()
                   .map(S3Object::key)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to list objects: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `ListParts` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListParts`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List parts of a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListPartsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListPartsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Part;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Lists the parts of a multipart upload for the specified S3 directory
 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
```

```
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object being uploaded
     * @param uploadId   The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     * @return A list of Part representing the parts of the multipart upload
     */
    public static List<Part> listDirectoryBucketMultipartUploadParts(S3Client
s3Client, String bucketName,
            String objectKey, String uploadId) {
        logger.info("Listing parts for object: {} in bucket: {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a ListPartsRequest
            ListPartsRequest listPartsRequest = ListPartsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // List the parts of the multipart upload
            ListPartsResponse response = s3Client.listParts(listPartsRequest);
            List<Part> parts = response.parts();
            for (Part part : parts) {
                logger.info("Uploaded part: Part number = \"{}\", etag = {}",
part.partNumber(), part.eTag());
            }
            return parts;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list parts: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            return List.of(); // Return an empty list if an exception is thrown
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListParts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `PutBucketEncryption` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketEncryption`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set bucket encryption to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketEncryptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryption;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionRule;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createKmsClient;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createKmsKey;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.scheduleKeyDeletion;

    /**
     * Sets the default encryption configuration for an S3 bucket as SSE-KMS.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param kmsKeyId   The ID of the customer-managed KMS key
     */
    public static void putDirectoryBucketEncryption(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String kmsKeyId) {
        // Define the default encryption configuration to use SSE-KMS. For
 directory
```

```
        // buckets, AWS managed KMS keys aren't supported. Only customer-managed
keys
        // are supported.
        ServerSideEncryptionByDefault encryptionByDefault =
ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.builder()
                .sseAlgorithm(ServerSideEncryption.AWS_KMS)
                .kmsMasterKeyID(kmsKeyId)
                .build();

        // Create a server-side encryption rule to apply the default encryption
        // configuration. For directory buckets, the bucketKeyEnabled field is
enforced
        // to be true.
        ServerSideEncryptionRule rule = ServerSideEncryptionRule.builder()
                .bucketKeyEnabled(true)
                .applyServerSideEncryptionByDefault(encryptionByDefault)
                .build();

        // Create the server-side encryption configuration for the bucket
        ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration encryptionConfiguration =
ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration.builder()
                .rules(rule)
                .build();

        // Create the PutBucketEncryption request
        PutBucketEncryptionRequest putRequest =
PutBucketEncryptionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .serverSideEncryptionConfiguration(encryptionConfiguration)
                .build();

        // Set the bucket encryption
        try {
            s3Client.putBucketEncryption(putRequest);
            logger.info("SSE-KMS Bucket encryption configuration set for the
directory bucket: {}", bucketName);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to set bucket encryption: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `PutBucketPolicy` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketPolicy`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Apply a bucket policy to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getAwsAccountId;

    /**
     * Sets the following bucket policy for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *<pre>
     * {
     *     "Version": "2012-10-17",
     *     "Statement": [
     *         {
     *             "Sid": "AdminPolicy",
```

```
     *             "Effect": "Allow",
     *             "Principal": {
     *                 "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::<ACCOUNT_ID>:root"
     *             },
     *             "Action": "s3express:*",
     *             "Resource": "arn:aws:s3express:us-west-2:<ACCOUNT_ID>:bucket/
<DIR_BUCKET_NAME>
     *         }
     *     ]
     * }
     * </pre>
     * This policy grants all S3 directory bucket actions to identities in the
 same account as the bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param policyText The policy text to be applied
     */
    public static void putDirectoryBucketPolicy(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String policyText) {
        logger.info("Setting policy on bucket: {}", bucketName);
        logger.info("Policy: {}", policyText);

        try {
            PutBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = PutBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .policy(policyText)
                    .build();

            s3Client.putBucketPolicy(policyReq);
            logger.info("Bucket policy set successfully!");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to set bucket policy: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `PutObject` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object into a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.exception.AwsErrorDetails;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.UncheckedIOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;

    /**
```

```
     * Puts an object into the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be placed in the bucket
     * @param filePath   The path of the file to be uploaded
     */
    public static void putDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String objectKey, Path filePath) {
        logger.info("Putting object: {} into bucket: {}", objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a PutObjectRequest
            PutObjectRequest putObj = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Upload the object
            s3Client.putObject(putObj, filePath);
            logger.info("Successfully placed {} into bucket {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

        } catch (UncheckedIOException e) {
            throw S3Exception.builder().message("Failed to read the file: " +
e.getMessage()).cause(e)
                    .awsErrorDetails(AwsErrorDetails.builder()
                            .errorCode("ClientSideException:FailedToReadFile")
                            .errorMessage(e.getMessage())
                            .build())
                    .build();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to put object: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UploadPart` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPart`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload part of a multipart upload for a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;

    /**
     * This method creates part requests and uploads individual parts to S3.
```

```
    * While it uses the UploadPart API to upload a single part, it does so
    * sequentially to handle multiple parts of a file, returning all the
completed
    * parts.
    *
    * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
    * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
    * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
    * @param uploadId   The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
    * @param filePath   The path to the file to be uploaded
    * @return A list of uploaded parts
    * @throws IOException if an I/O error occurs
    */
   public static List<CompletedPart> multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket(S3Client
s3Client, String bucketName,
           String objectKey, String uploadId, Path filePath) throws IOException
{
       logger.info("Uploading parts for object: {} in bucket: {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

       int partNumber = 1;
       List<CompletedPart> uploadedParts = new ArrayList<>();
       ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(1024 * 1024 * 5); // 5 MB byte buffer

       // Read the local file, break down into chunks and process
       try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath.toFile(),
"r")) {
           long fileSize = file.length();
           int position = 0;

           // Sequentially upload parts of the file
           while (position < fileSize) {
               file.seek(position);
               int read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

               bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer
               UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                       .bucket(bucketName)
                       .key(objectKey)
                       .uploadId(uploadId)
                       .partNumber(partNumber)
                       .build();
```

```
                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                        uploadPartRequest,
                        RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                // Build the uploaded part
                CompletedPart uploadedPart = CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(partNumber)
                        .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                        .build();

                // Add the uploaded part to the list
                uploadedParts.add(uploadedPart);

                // Log to indicate the part upload is done
                logger.info("Uploaded part number: {} with ETag: {}", partNumber,
partResponse.eTag());

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list parts: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            throw e;
        }
        return uploadedParts;
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `UploadPartCopy` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPartCopy`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create copy parts based on source object size and copy over individual parts to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartCopyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartCopyResponse;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.completeDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
```

```
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Creates copy parts based on source object size and copies over individual
     * parts.
     *
     * @param s3Client          The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param sourceBucket      The name of the source bucket
     * @param sourceKey         The key (name) of the source object
     * @param destinationBucket The name of the destination bucket
     * @param destinationKey    The key (name) of the destination object
     * @param uploadId          The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     * @return A list of completed parts
     */
    public static List<CompletedPart>
 multipartUploadCopyForDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String sourceBucket,
            String sourceKey, String destinationBucket, String destinationKey,
 String uploadId) {
        // Get the object size to track the end of the copy operation
        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(sourceBucket)
                .key(sourceKey)
                .build();
        HeadObjectResponse headObjectResponse =
 s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
        long objectSize = headObjectResponse.contentLength();

        logger.info("Source Object size: {}", objectSize);

        // Copy the object using 20 MB parts
        long partSize = 20 * 1024 * 1024; // 20 MB
        long bytePosition = 0;
        int partNum = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> uploadedParts = new ArrayList<>();

        while (bytePosition < objectSize) {
            long lastByte = Math.min(bytePosition + partSize - 1, objectSize -
 1);
            logger.info("Part Number: {}, Byte Position: {}, Last Byte: {}",
 partNum, bytePosition, lastByte);

            try {
```

```
                UploadPartCopyRequest uploadPartCopyRequest =
UploadPartCopyRequest.builder()
                        .sourceBucket(sourceBucket)
                        .sourceKey(sourceKey)
                        .destinationBucket(destinationBucket)
                        .destinationKey(destinationKey)
                        .uploadId(uploadId)
                        .copySourceRange("bytes=" + bytePosition + "-" +
lastByte)
                        .partNumber(partNum)
                        .build();
                UploadPartCopyResponse uploadPartCopyResponse =
s3Client.uploadPartCopy(uploadPartCopyRequest);

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(partNum)
                        .eTag(uploadPartCopyResponse.copyPartResult().eTag())
                        .build();
                uploadedParts.add(part);

                bytePosition += partSize;
                partNum++;
            } catch (S3Exception e) {
                logger.error("Failed to copy part number {}: {} - Error code:
{}", partNum,
                        e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                throw e;
            }
        }

        return uploadedParts;
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadPartCopy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios for S3 Directory Buckets using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in S3 Directory Buckets with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within S3 Directory Buckets or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario

includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 directory buckets to get an object using an AWS SDK

Create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 directory buckets to get an object using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for S3 directory buckets and get an object.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned GET URL for accessing an object in an S3 directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.GetObjectPresignRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedGetObjectRequest;

import java.nio.file.Path;
```

```
import java.time.Duration;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Presigner;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;


    /**
     * Generates a presigned URL for accessing an object in the specified S3
     * directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Presigner The S3 presigner client used to generate the presigned
 URL
     * @param bucketName  The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey   The key (name) of the object to access
     * @return A presigned URL for accessing the specified object
     */
    public static String generatePresignedGetURLForDirectoryBucket(S3Presigner
 s3Presigner, String bucketName,
            String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Generating presigned URL for object: {} in bucket: {}",
 objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a GetObjectRequest
            GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Create a GetObjectPresignRequest
            GetObjectPresignRequest getObjectPresignRequest =
 GetObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                    .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10)) // Presigned URL
 valid for 10 minutes
                    .getObjectRequest(getObjectRequest)
                    .build();
```

```
            // Generate the presigned URL
            PresignedGetObjectRequest presignedGetObjectRequest =
s3Presigner.presignGetObject(getObjectPresignRequest);

            // Get the presigned URL
            String presignedURL = presignedGetObjectRequest.url().toString();
            logger.info("Presigned URL: {}", presignedURL);
            return presignedURL;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to generate presigned URL: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon S3 Glacier with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **S3 Glacier Developer Guide** – More information about S3 Glacier.
- **S3 Glacier API Reference** – Details about all available S3 Glacier actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3 Glacier

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 Glacier.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.Glacier;
using Amazon.Glacier.Model;

namespace GlacierActions;

public static class HelloGlacier
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
        var glacierService = new AmazonGlacierClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello Amazon Glacier!");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list your Glacier vaults:");

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the vaults using a paginator.
        var glacierVaultPaginator = glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
            new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });

        await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{vault.CreationDate}:{vault.VaultName}, ARN:
{vault.VaultARN}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon S3 Glacier
  - Actions for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTagsToVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteArchive with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetJobOutput with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use InitiateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTagsForVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListVaults with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SetVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UploadArchive with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use UploadMultipartPart with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs
  - Archive a file to Amazon S3 Glacier, get notifications, and initiate a job using an AWS SDK
  - Get Amazon S3 Glacier archive content and delete the archive using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon S3 Glacier with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon S3 Glacier

- Actions for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTagsToVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteArchive with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetJobOutput with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use InitiateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTagsForVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListVaults with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SetVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UploadArchive with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UploadMultipartPart with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon S3 Glacier

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 Glacier.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.Glacier;
using Amazon.Glacier.Model;
```

```
namespace GlacierActions;

public static class HelloGlacier
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
        var glacierService = new AmazonGlacierClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello Amazon Glacier!");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list your Glacier vaults:");

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the vaults using a paginator.
        var glacierVaultPaginator = glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
            new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });

        await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{vault.CreationDate}:{vault.VaultName}, ARN:
{vault.VaultARN}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Actions for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual S3 Glacier actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the S3 Glacier API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon S3 Glacier API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTagsToVault with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use CreateVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteArchive with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetJobOutput with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use InitiateJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTagsForVault with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListVaults with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetVaultNotifications with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadArchive with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UploadMultipartPart with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AddTagsToVault` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddTagsToVault`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Add tags to the items in an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
/// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to add tags to.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The name of the object to tag.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The tag value to add.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddTagsToVaultAsync(string vaultName, string key,
 string value)
    {
        var request = new AddTagsToVaultRequest
        {
            Tags = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { key, value },
                },
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.AddTagsToVaultAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command adds two tags to a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier add-tags-to-vault --account-id - --vault-name my-vault --
tags id=1234,date=july2015
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see AddTagsToVault in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `CreateVault` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVault`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Create an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to create.</param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> CreateVaultAsync(string vaultName)
{
    var request = new CreateVaultRequest
    {
        // Setting the AccountId to "-" means that
        // the account associated with the current
        // account will be used.
        AccountId = "-",
        VaultName = vaultName,
    };

    var response = await _glacierService.CreateVaultAsync(request);

    Console.WriteLine($"Created {vaultName} at: {response.Location}");

    return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.Created;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command creates a new vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier create-vault --vault-name my-vault --account-id -
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.CreateVaultRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.CreateVaultResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateVault {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:    <vaultName>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault to create.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        createGlacierVault(glacier, vaultName);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void createGlacierVault(GlacierClient glacier, String
 vaultName) {
        try {
            CreateVaultRequest vaultRequest = CreateVaultRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .build();

            CreateVaultResponse createVaultResult =
 glacier.createVault(vaultRequest);
            System.out.println("The URI of the new vault is " +
 createVaultResult.location());

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
const { GlacierClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-glacier");
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const glacierClient = new GlacierClient({ region: REGION });
export { glacierClient };
```

Create the vault.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
import { CreateVaultCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-glacier";
import { glacierClient } from "./libs/glacierClient.js";

// Set the parameters
const vaultname = "VAULT_NAME"; // VAULT_NAME
const params = { vaultName: vaultname };

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await glacierClient.send(new CreateVaultCommand(params));
    console.log("Success, vault created!");
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error");
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create a new service object
var glacier = new AWS.Glacier({ apiVersion: "2012-06-01" });
// Call Glacier to create the vault
glacier.createVault({ vaultName: "YOUR_VAULT_NAME" }, function (err) {
  if (!err) {
    console.log("Created vault!");
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new vault for the user's account. As no value was supplied to the -AccountId parameter the cmdlets uses a default of "-" indicating the current account.

```
New-GLCVault -VaultName myvault
```

Output:

```
/01234567812/vaults/myvault
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new vault for the user's account. As no value was supplied to the -AccountId parameter the cmdlets uses a default of "-" indicating the current account.

```
New-GLCVault -VaultName myvault
```

Output:

```
/01234567812/vaults/myvault
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def create_vault(self, vault_name):
        """
```

```
        Creates a vault.

        :param vault_name: The name to give the vault.
        :return: The newly created vault.
        """
        try:
            vault = self.glacier_resource.create_vault(vaultName=vault_name)
            logger.info("Created vault %s.", vault_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create vault %s.", vault_name)
            raise
        else:
            return vault
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteArchive` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteArchive`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get archive content and delete the archive

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an archive from a vault

The following `delete-archive` example removes the specified archive from `example_vault`.

```
aws glacier delete-archive \
    --account-id 111122223333  \
    --vault-name example_vault \
    --archive-id Sc0u9ZP8yaWkmh-XGlIvAVprtLhaLCGnNwNl5I5x9HqPIkX5mjc0DrId3Ln-
Gi_k2HzmlIDZUz117KSdVMdMXLuFWi9PJUitxWO73edQ43eTlMWkH0pd9zVSAuV_XXZBVhKhyGhJ7w
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteArchive in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DeleteArchiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteArchive {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName> <accountId> <archiveId>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault that contains the archive to
 delete.
                   accountId - The account ID value.
                   archiveId - The archive ID value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        String archiveId = args[2];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deleteGlacierArchive(glacier, vaultName, accountId, archiveId);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void deleteGlacierArchive(GlacierClient glacier, String
 vaultName, String accountId,
            String archiveId) {
        try {
            DeleteArchiveRequest delArcRequest = DeleteArchiveRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .archiveId(archiveId)
                    .build();

            glacier.deleteArchive(delArcRequest);
            System.out.println("The archive was deleted.");

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteArchive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_archive(archive):
        """
        Deletes an archive from a vault.

        :param archive: The archive to delete.
        """
        try:
            archive.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted archive %s from vault %s.", archive.id,
 archive.vault_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteArchive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteVault` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVault`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get archive content and delete the archive

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command deletes a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier delete-vault --vault-name my-vault --account-id -
```

This command does not produce any output. Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see DeleteVault in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DeleteVaultRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteVault {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deleteGlacierVault(glacier, vaultName);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void deleteGlacierVault(GlacierClient glacier, String
 vaultName) {
        try {
            DeleteVaultRequest delVaultRequest = DeleteVaultRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .build();

            glacier.deleteVault(delVaultRequest);
            System.out.println("The vault was deleted!");

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVault in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_vault(vault):
        """
        Deletes a vault.

        :param vault: The vault to delete.
        """
        try:
            vault.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete vault %s.", vault.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVault in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteVaultNotifications` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVaultNotifications`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove the SNS notifications for a vault

The following `delete-vault-notifications` example removes notifications sent by Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) for the specified vault.

```
aws glacier delete-vault-notifications \
    --account-id 111122223333 \
    --vault-name example_vault
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteVaultNotifications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
```

```
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def stop_notifications(notification):
        """
        Stops notifications to the configured Amazon SNS topic.

        :param notification: The notification configuration to remove.
        """
        try:
            notification.delete()
            logger.info("Notifications stopped.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't stop notifications.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVaultNotifications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeJob`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves information about an inventory retrieval job on a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier describe-job --account-id - --vault-name my-
vault --job-id zbxcm3Z_3z5UkoroF7SuZKrxgGoDc3RloGduS7Eg-
RO47Yc6FxsdGBgf_Q2DK5Ejh18CnTS5XW4_XqlNHS61dsO4CnMW
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "InventoryRetrievalParameters": {
        "Format": "JSON"
    },
    "VaultARN": "arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:0123456789012:vaults/my-vault",
    "Completed": false,
    "JobId": "zbxcm3Z_3z5UkoroF7SuZKrxgGoDc3RloGduS7Eg-
RO47Yc6FxsdGBgf_Q2DK5Ejh18CnTS5XW4_XqlNHS61dsO4CnMW",
    "Action": "InventoryRetrieval",
    "CreationDate": "2015-07-17T20:23:41.616Z",
    "StatusCode": "InProgress"
}
```

The job ID can be found in the output of `aws glacier initiate-job` and `aws glacier list-jobs`. Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns details of the specified job. When the job completes successfully the Read-GCJobOutput cmdlet can be used to retrieve the contents of the job (an archive or inventory list) to the local file system.

```
Get-GLCJob -VaultName myvault -JobId "op1x...JSbthM"
```

Output:

```
Action                       : ArchiveRetrieval
ArchiveId                    : o9O9j...X-TpIhQJw
ArchiveSHA256TreeHash        : 79f3ea754c02f58...dc57bf4395b
ArchiveSizeInBytes           : 38034480
Completed                    : False
CompletionDate               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
CreationDate                 : 12/13/2018 11:00:14 AM
InventoryRetrievalParameters :
InventorySizeInBytes         : 0
JobDescription               :
JobId                        : op1x...JSbthM
```

```
JobOutputPath                :
OutputLocation               :
RetrievalByteRange           : 0-38034479
SelectParameters             :
SHA256TreeHash               : 79f3ea754c02f58...dc57bf4395b
SNSTopic                     :
StatusCode                   : InProgress
StatusMessage                :
Tier                         : Standard
VaultARN                     : arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:012345678912:vaults/test
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified job. When the job completes successfully the Read-GCJobOutput cmdlet can be used to retrieve the contents of the job (an archive or inventory list) to the local file system.

```
Get-GLCJob -VaultName myvault -JobId "op1x...JSbthM"
```

Output:

```
Action                       : ArchiveRetrieval
ArchiveId                    : o9O9j...X-TpIhQJw
ArchiveSHA256TreeHash        : 79f3ea754c02f58...dc57bf4395b
ArchiveSizeInBytes           : 38034480
Completed                    : False
CompletionDate               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
CreationDate                 : 12/13/2018 11:00:14 AM
InventoryRetrievalParameters :
InventorySizeInBytes         : 0
JobDescription               :
JobId                        : op1x...JSbthM
JobOutputPath                :
OutputLocation               :
RetrievalByteRange           : 0-38034479
SelectParameters             :
SHA256TreeHash               : 79f3ea754c02f58...dc57bf4395b
SNSTopic                     :
StatusCode                   : InProgress
StatusMessage                :
Tier                         : Standard
```

```
VaultARN                    : arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:012345678912:vaults/test
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def get_job_status(job):
        """
        Gets the status of a job.

        :param job: The job to query.
        :return: The current status of the job.
        """
        try:
            job.load()
            logger.info(
                "Job %s is performing action %s and has status %s.",
                job.id,
                job.action,
                job.status_code,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get status for job %s.", job.id)
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return job.status_code
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeVault` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeVault`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the vault.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DescribeVaultAsync(string vaultName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeVaultRequest
        {
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.DescribeVaultAsync(request);

        // Display the information about the vault.
        Console.WriteLine($"{response.VaultName}\tARN: {response.VaultARN}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Created on: {response.CreationDate}\tNumber
of Archives: {response.NumberOfArchives}\tSize (in bytes):
{response.SizeInBytes}");
```

```
        if (response.LastInventoryDate != DateTime.MinValue)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Last inventory: {response.LastInventoryDate}");
        }

        return response.VaultARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command retrieves data about a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier describe-vault --vault-name my-vault --account-id -
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see DescribeVault in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `GetJobOutput` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetJobOutput`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get archive content and delete the archive

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command saves the output from a vault inventory job to a file in the current directory named `output.json`:

```
aws glacier get-job-output --account-id - --vault-name my-
vault --job-id zbxcm3Z_3z5UkoroF7SuZKrxgGoDc3RloGduS7Eg-
RO47Yc6FxsdGBgf_Q2DK5Ejh18CnTS5XW4_XqlNHS61dsO4CnMW output.json
```

The `job-id` is available in the output of `aws glacier list-jobs`. Note that the output file name is a positional argument that is not prefixed by an option name. Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

Output:

```
{
    "status": 200,
    "acceptRanges": "bytes",
    "contentType": "application/json"
}
```

`output.json`:

```
{"VaultARN":"arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:0123456789012:vaults/
my-vault","InventoryDate":"2015-04-07T00:26:18Z","ArchiveList":
[{"ArchiveId":"kKB7ymWJVpPSwhGP6ycSOAekp9ZYe_--zM_mw6k76ZFGEIWQX-
ybtRDvc2VkPSDtfKmQrj0IRQLSGsNuDp-
AJVlu2ccmDSyDUmZwKbwbpAdGATGDiB3hHO0bjbGehXTcApVud_wyDw","ArchiveDescription":"multipart
 upload
 test","CreationDate":"2015-04-06T22:24:34Z","Size":3145728,"SHA256TreeHash":"9628195fcdb
```

- For API details, see GetJobOutput in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Downloads the archive content that was scheduled for retrieval in the specified job and stores the contents into a file on disk. The download validates the checksum for you, if one is available. If desired the entire response including the checksum can be returned by specifying `-Select '*'`.

```
Read-GLCJobOutput -VaultName myvault -JobId "HSWjArc...Zq2XLiW" -FilePath "c:
\temp\blue.bin"
```

- For API details, see GetJobOutput in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Downloads the archive content that was scheduled for retrieval in the specified job and stores the contents into a file on disk. The download validates the checksum for you, if one is available. If desired the entire response including the checksum can be returned by specifying `-Select '*'`.

```
Read-GLCJobOutput -VaultName myvault -JobId "HSWjArc...Zq2XLiW" -FilePath "c:
\temp\blue.bin"
```

- For API details, see GetJobOutput in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def get_job_output(job):
        """
        Gets the output of a job, such as a vault inventory or the contents of an
        archive.

        :param job: The job to get output from.
```

```
        :return: The job output, in bytes.
        """
        try:
            response = job.get_output()
            out_bytes = response["body"].read()
            logger.info("Read %s bytes from job %s.", len(out_bytes), job.id)
            if "archiveDescription" in response:
                logger.info(
                    "These bytes are described as '%s'",
response["archiveDescription"]
                )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get output for job %s.", job.id)
            raise
        else:
            return out_bytes
```

- For API details, see GetJobOutput in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetVaultNotifications` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetVaultNotifications`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command gets a description of the notification configuration for a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier get-vault-notifications --account-id - --vault-name my-vault
```

Output:

```
{
    "vaultNotificationConfig": {
        "Events": [
            "InventoryRetrievalCompleted",
            "ArchiveRetrievalCompleted"
        ],
```

```
        "SNSTopic": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:0123456789012:my-vault"
    }
}
```

If no notifications have been configured for the vault, an error is returned. Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see GetVaultNotifications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def get_notification(vault):
        """
        Gets the currently notification configuration for a vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :return: The notification configuration for the specified vault.
        """
        try:
            notification = vault.Notification()
            logger.info(
                "Vault %s notifies %s on %s events.",
```

```
                vault.name,
                notification.sns_topic,
                notification.events,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get notification data for %s.",
vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return notification
```

- For API details, see GetVaultNotifications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `InitiateJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `InitiateJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve an archive from a vault. This example uses the ArchiveTransferManager class. For API details see ArchiveTransferManager.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Download an archive from an Amazon S3 Glacier vault using the Archive
    /// Transfer Manager.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault containing the object.</
param>
    /// <param name="archiveId">The Id of the archive to download.</param>
    /// <param name="localFilePath">The local directory where the file will
    /// be stored after download.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DownloadArchiveWithArchiveManagerAsync(string
 vaultName, string archiveId, string localFilePath)
    {
        try
        {
            var manager = new ArchiveTransferManager(_glacierService);

            var options = new DownloadOptions
            {
                StreamTransferProgress = Progress!,
            };

            // Download an archive.
            Console.WriteLine("Initiating the archive retrieval job and then
 polling SQS queue for the archive to be available.");
            Console.WriteLine("When the archive is available, downloading will
 begin.");
            await manager.DownloadAsync(vaultName, archiveId, localFilePath,
 options);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonGlacierException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Event handler to track the progress of the Archive Transfer Manager.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sender">The object that raised the event.</param>
    /// <param name="args">The argument values from the object that raised the
    /// event.</param>
    static void Progress(object sender, StreamTransferProgressArgs args)
    {
        if (args.PercentDone != _currentPercentage)
```

```
        {
            _currentPercentage = args.PercentDone;
            Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded {_currentPercentage}%");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command initiates a job to get an inventory of the vault `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier initiate-job --account-id - --vault-name my-vault --job-parameters
 '{"Type": "inventory-retrieval"}'
```

Output:

```
{
    "location": "/0123456789012/vaults/my-vault/jobs/
zbxcm3Z_3z5UkoroF7SuZKrxgGoDc3RloGduS7Eg-
RO47Yc6FxsdGBgf_Q2DK5Ejh18CnTS5XW4_XqlNHS61dsO4CnMW",
    "jobId": "zbxcm3Z_3z5UkoroF7SuZKrxgGoDc3RloGduS7Eg-
RO47Yc6FxsdGBgf_Q2DK5Ejh18CnTS5XW4_XqlNHS61dsO4CnMW"
}
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

The following command initiates a job to retrieve an archive from the vault `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier initiate-job --account-id - --vault-name my-vault --job-
parameters file://job-archive-retrieval.json
```

`job-archive-retrieval.json` is a JSON file in the local folder that specifies the type of job, archive ID, and some optional parameters:

```
{
```

```
  "Type": "archive-retrieval",
  "ArchiveId": "kKB7ymWJVpPSwhGP6ycSOAekp9ZYe_--zM_mw6k76ZFGEIWQX-
ybtRDvc2VkPSDtfKmQrj0IRQLSGsNuDp-
AJVlu2ccmDSyDUmZwKbwbpAdGATGDiB3hHO0bjbGehXTcApVud_wyDw",
  "Description": "Retrieve archive on 2015-07-17",
  "SNSTopic": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:0123456789012:my-topic"
}
```

Archive IDs are available in the output of `aws glacier upload-archive` and `aws glacier get-job-output`.

Output:

```
{
    "location": "/011685312445/vaults/mwunderl/jobs/l7IL5-
EkXyEY9Ws95fClzIbk2O5uLYaFdAYOi-
azsX_Z8V6NH4yERHzars8wTKYQMX6nBDI9cMNHzyZJO59-8N9aHWav",
    "jobId": "l7IL5-EkXy2O5uLYaFdAYOiEY9Ws95fClzIbk-
azsX_Z8V6NH4yERHzars8wTKYQMX6nBDI9cMNHzyZJO59-8N9aHWav"
}
```

See Initiate Job in the *Amazon Glacier API Reference* for details on the job parameters format.

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve a vault inventory.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.JobParameters;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.InitiateJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.InitiateJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DescribeJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DescribeJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GetJobOutputRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GetJobOutputResponse;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ArchiveDownload {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName> <accountId> <path>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault.
                   accountId - The account ID value.
                   path - The path where the file is written to.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        String path = args[2];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        String jobNum = createJob(glacier, vaultName, accountId);
        checkJob(glacier, jobNum, vaultName, accountId, path);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static String createJob(GlacierClient glacier, String vaultName,
String accountId) {
        try {
            JobParameters job = JobParameters.builder()
                    .type("inventory-retrieval")
                    .build();

            InitiateJobRequest initJob = InitiateJobRequest.builder()
                    .jobParameters(job)
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .build();

            InitiateJobResponse response = glacier.initiateJob(initJob);
            System.out.println("The job ID is: " + response.jobId());
            System.out.println("The relative URI path of the job is: " +
response.location());
            return response.jobId();

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);

        }
        return "";
    }

    // Poll S3 Glacier = Polling a Job may take 4-6 hours according to the
    // Documentation.
    public static void checkJob(GlacierClient glacier, String jobId, String name,
String account, String path) {
        try {
            boolean finished = false;
            String jobStatus;
            int yy = 0;

            while (!finished) {
```

```
                DescribeJobRequest jobRequest = DescribeJobRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(jobId)
                        .accountId(account)
                        .vaultName(name)
                        .build();

                DescribeJobResponse response = glacier.describeJob(jobRequest);
                jobStatus = response.statusCodeAsString();

                if (jobStatus.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0)
                    finished = true;
                else {
                    System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + jobStatus);
                    Thread.sleep(1000);
                }
                yy++;
            }

            System.out.println("Job has Succeeded");
            GetJobOutputRequest jobOutputRequest = GetJobOutputRequest.builder()
                    .jobId(jobId)
                    .vaultName(name)
                    .accountId(account)
                    .build();

            ResponseBytes<GetJobOutputResponse> objectBytes =
 glacier.getJobOutputAsBytes(jobOutputRequest);
            // Write the data to a local file.
            byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();
            File myFile = new File(path);
            OutputStream os = new FileOutputStream(myFile);
            os.write(data);
            System.out.println("Successfully obtained bytes from a Glacier
 vault");
            os.close();

        } catch (GlacierException | InterruptedException | IOException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);

        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Starts a job to retrieve an archive from the specified vault owned by the user. The status of the job can be checked using the Get-GLCJob cmdlet. When the job completes successfully the Read-GCJobOutput cmdlet can be used to retrieve the contents of the archive to the local file system.

```
Start-GLCJob -VaultName myvault -JobType "archive-retrieval" -JobDescription
 "archive retrieval" -ArchiveId "o9O9j...TX-TpIhQJw"
```

Output:

```
JobId            JobOutputPath Location
-----            ------------- --------
op1x...JSbthM                  /012345678912/vaults/test/jobs/
op1xe...I4HqCHkSJSbthM
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Starts a job to retrieve an archive from the specified vault owned by the user. The status of the job can be checked using the Get-GLCJob cmdlet. When the job completes successfully the Read-GCJobOutput cmdlet can be used to retrieve the contents of the archive to the local file system.

```
Start-GLCJob -VaultName myvault -JobType "archive-retrieval" -JobDescription
 "archive retrieval" -ArchiveId "o9O9j...TX-TpIhQJw"
```

Output:

```
JobId            JobOutputPath Location
-----            ------------- --------
```

```
op1x...JSbthM                  /012345678912/vaults/test/jobs/
op1xe...I4HqCHkSJSbthM
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve a vault inventory.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def initiate_inventory_retrieval(vault):
        """
        Initiates an inventory retrieval job. The inventory describes the
 contents
        of the vault. Standard retrievals typically complete within 3–5 hours.
        When the job completes, you can get the inventory by calling
 get_output().

        :param vault: The vault to inventory.
        :return: The inventory retrieval job.
        """
        try:
            job = vault.initiate_inventory_retrieval()
            logger.info("Started %s job with ID %s.", job.action, job.id)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start job on vault %s.", vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

Retrieve an archive from a vault.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def initiate_archive_retrieval(archive):
        """
        Initiates an archive retrieval job. Standard retrievals typically
 complete
        within 3-5 hours. When the job completes, you can get the archive
 contents
        by calling get_output().

        :param archive: The archive to retrieve.
        :return: The archive retrieval job.
        """
        try:
            job = archive.initiate_archive_retrieval()
            logger.info("Started %s job with ID %s.", job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start job on archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListJobs`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job
- Get archive content and delete the archive

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List Amazon S3 Glacier jobs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to list jobs for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon S3 Glacier jobs.</returns>
    public async Task<List<GlacierJobDescription>> ListJobsAsync(string
vaultName)
    {
        var request = new ListJobsRequest
        {
            // Using a hyphen "-" for the Account Id will
            // cause the SDK to use the Account Id associated
            // with the current account.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.ListJobsAsync(request);
```

```
        return response.JobList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command lists in-progress and recently completed jobs for a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier list-jobs --account-id - --vault-name my-vault
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobList": [
        {
            "VaultARN": "arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:0123456789012:vaults/my-
vault",
            "RetrievalByteRange": "0-3145727",
            "SNSTopic": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:0123456789012:my-vault",
            "Completed": false,
            "SHA256TreeHash":
 "9628195fcdbcbbe76cdde932d4646fa7de5f219fb39823836d81f0cc0e18aa67",
            "JobId": "l7IL5-EkXyEY9Ws95fClzIbk2O5uLYaFdAYOi-
azsX_Z8V6NH4yERHzars8wTKYQMX6nBDI9cMNHzyZJO59-8N9aHWav",
            "ArchiveId": "kKB7ymWJVpPSwhGP6ycSOAekp9ZYe_--
zM_mw6k76ZFGEIWQX-ybtRDvc2VkPSDtfKmQrj0IRQLSGsNuDp-
AJVlu2ccmDSyDUmZwKbwbpAdGATGDiB3hHO0bjbGehXTcApVud_wyDw",
            "JobDescription": "Retrieve archive on 2015-07-17",
            "ArchiveSizeInBytes": 3145728,
            "Action": "ArchiveRetrieval",
            "ArchiveSHA256TreeHash":
 "9628195fcdbcbbe76cdde932d4646fa7de5f219fb39823836d81f0cc0e18aa67",
            "CreationDate": "2015-07-17T21:16:13.840Z",
            "StatusCode": "InProgress"
        },
```

```
        {
            "InventoryRetrievalParameters": {
                "Format": "JSON"
            },
            "VaultARN": "arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:0123456789012:vaults/my-
vault",
            "Completed": false,
            "JobId": "zbxcm3Z_3z5UkoroF7SuZKrxgGoDc3RloGduS7Eg-
RO47Yc6FxsdGBgf_Q2DK5Ejh18CnTS5XW4_XqlNHS61dsO4CnMW",
            "Action": "InventoryRetrieval",
            "CreationDate": "2015-07-17T20:23:41.616Z",
            "StatusCode": ""InProgress""
        }
    ]
}
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
```

```
    def list_jobs(vault, job_type):
        """
        Lists jobs by type for the specified vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :param job_type: The type of job to list.
        :return: The list of jobs of the requested type.
        """
        job_list = []
        try:
            if job_type == "all":
                jobs = vault.jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "in_progress":
                jobs = vault.jobs_in_progress.all()
            elif job_type == "completed":
                jobs = vault.completed_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "succeeded":
                jobs = vault.succeeded_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "failed":
                jobs = vault.failed_jobs.all()
            else:
                jobs = []
                logger.warning("%s isn't a type of job I can get.", job_type)
            for job in jobs:
                job_list.append(job)
                logger.info("Got %s %s job %s.", job_type, job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s jobs from %s.", job_type,
vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_list
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListTagsForVault` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForVault`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List tags for an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to list tags for.</param>
    /// <returns>A dictionary listing the tags attached to each object in the
    /// vault and its tags.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, string>> ListTagsForVaultAsync(string
vaultName)
    {
        var request = new ListTagsForVaultRequest
        {
            // Using a hyphen "-" for the Account Id will
            // cause the SDK to use the Account Id associated
            // with the default user.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.ListTagsForVaultAsync(request);

        return response.Tags;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command lists the tags applied to a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier list-tags-for-vault --account-id - --vault-name my-vault
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tags": {
        "date": "july2015",
        "id": "1234"
    }
}
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see ListTagsForVault in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Use `ListVaults` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListVaults`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the Amazon S3 Glacier vaults associated with the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list containing information about each vault.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DescribeVaultOutput>> ListVaultsAsync()
    {
        var glacierVaultPaginator = _glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
            new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });
        var vaultList = new List<DescribeVaultOutput>();

        await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
        {
            vaultList.Add(vault);
        }

        return vaultList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command lists the vaults in the default account and region:

```
aws glacier list-vaults --account-id -
```

Output:

```
{
    "VaultList": [
        {
            "SizeInBytes": 3178496,
            "VaultARN": "arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:0123456789012:vaults/my-
vault",
            "LastInventoryDate": "2015-04-07T00:26:19.028Z",
            "VaultName": "my-vault",
            "NumberOfArchives": 1,
            "CreationDate": "2015-04-06T21:23:45.708Z"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.ListVaultsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.ListVaultsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DescribeVaultOutput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListVaults {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        listAllVault(glacier);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void listAllVault(GlacierClient glacier) {
        boolean listComplete = false;
        String newMarker = null;
        int totalVaults = 0;
        System.out.println("Your Amazon Glacier vaults:");
        try {
            while (!listComplete) {
                ListVaultsResponse response = null;
                if (newMarker != null) {
                    ListVaultsRequest request = ListVaultsRequest.builder()
                            .marker(newMarker)
                            .build();

                    response = glacier.listVaults(request);
                } else {
                    ListVaultsRequest request = ListVaultsRequest.builder()
                            .build();
                    response = glacier.listVaults(request);
                }

                List<DescribeVaultOutput> vaultList = response.vaultList();
                for (DescribeVaultOutput v : vaultList) {
                    totalVaults += 1;
                    System.out.println("* " + v.vaultName());
                }

                // Check for further results.
                newMarker = response.marker();
                if (newMarker == null) {
                    listComplete = true;
                }
            }

            if (totalVaults == 0) {
                System.out.println("No vaults found.");
            }

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def list_vaults(self):
        """
        Lists vaults for the current account.
        """
        try:
            for vault in self.glacier_resource.vaults.all():
                logger.info("Got vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list vaults.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SetVaultNotifications` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetVaultNotifications`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command configures SNS notifications for a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier set-vault-notifications --account-id - --vault-name my-vault --vault-notification-config file://notificationconfig.json
```

`notificationconfig.json` is a JSON file in the current folder that specifies an SNS topic and the events to publish:

```
{
  "SNSTopic": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:0123456789012:my-vault",
  "Events": ["ArchiveRetrievalCompleted", "InventoryRetrievalCompleted"]
}
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

- For API details, see SetVaultNotifications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def set_notifications(self, vault, sns_topic_arn):
        """
        Sets an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic as a target
        for notifications. Amazon S3 Glacier publishes messages to this topic for
        the configured list of events.

        :param vault: The vault to set up to publish notifications.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the topic that
                              receives notifications.
        :return: Data about the new notification configuration.
        """
        try:
            notification = self.glacier_resource.Notification("-", vault.name)
            notification.set(
                vaultNotificationConfig={
                    "SNSTopic": sns_topic_arn,
                    "Events": [
                        "ArchiveRetrievalCompleted",
                        "InventoryRetrievalCompleted",
                    ],
                }
            )
            logger.info(
                "Notifications will be sent to %s for events %s from %s.",
                notification.sns_topic,
                notification.events,
                notification.vault_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't set notifications to %s on %s.", sns_topic_arn,
 vault.name
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return notification
```

- For API details, see SetVaultNotifications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UploadArchive` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UploadArchive`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Upload an object to an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the Amazon S3 Glacier vault to upload
   /// the archive to.</param>
   /// <param name="archiveFilePath">The file path of the archive to upload to
the vault.</param>
   /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
   public async Task<string> UploadArchiveWithArchiveManager(string vaultName,
string archiveFilePath)
   {
       try
       {
```

```
            var manager = new ArchiveTransferManager(_glacierService);

            // Upload an archive.
            var response = await manager.UploadAsync(vaultName, "upload archive
 test", archiveFilePath);
            return response.ArchiveId;
        }
        catch (AmazonGlacierException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command uploads an archive in the current folder named `archive.zip` to a vault named `my-vault`:

```
aws glacier upload-archive --account-id - --vault-name my-vault --
body archive.zip
```

Output:

```
{
    "archiveId": "kKB7ymWJVpPSwhGP6ycSOAekp9ZYe_--
zM_mw6k76ZFGEIWQX-ybtRDvc2VkPSDtfKmQrj0IRQLSGsNuDp-
AJVlu2ccmDSyDUmZwKbwbpAdGATGDiB3hHO0bjbGehXTcApVud_wyDw",
    "checksum":
 "969fb39823836d81f0cc028195fcdbcbbe76cdde932d4646fa7de5f21e18aa67",
    "location": "/0123456789012/vaults/my-vault/archives/
kKB7ymWJVpPSwhGP6ycSOAekp9ZYe_--zM_mw6k76ZFGEIWQX-
ybtRDvc2VkPSDtfKmQrj0IRQLSGsNuDp-
AJVlu2ccmDSyDUmZwKbwbpAdGATGDiB3hHO0bjbGehXTcApVud_wyDw"
}
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

To retrieve an uploaded archive, initiate a retrieval job with the aws glacier initiate-job command.

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.UploadArchiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.UploadArchiveResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;
import java.io.File;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.security.MessageDigest;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class UploadArchive {
```

```
    static final int ONE_MB = 1024 * 1024;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <strPath> <vaultName>\s

                Where:
                   strPath - The path to the archive to upload (for example, C:\
\AWS\\test.pdf).
                   vaultName - The name of the vault.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String strPath = args[0];
        String vaultName = args[1];
        File myFile = new File(strPath);
        Path path = Paths.get(strPath);
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String archiveId = uploadContent(glacier, path, vaultName, myFile);
        System.out.println("The ID of the archived item is " + archiveId);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static String uploadContent(GlacierClient glacier, Path path, String
 vaultName, File myFile) {
        // Get an SHA-256 tree hash value.
        String checkVal = computeSHA256(myFile);
        try {
            UploadArchiveRequest uploadRequest = UploadArchiveRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .checksum(checkVal)
                    .build();

            UploadArchiveResponse res = glacier.uploadArchive(uploadRequest,
 path);
            return res.archiveId();
```

```
        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    private static String computeSHA256(File inputFile) {
        try {
            byte[] treeHash = computeSHA256TreeHash(inputFile);
            System.out.printf("SHA-256 tree hash = %s\n", toHex(treeHash));
            return toHex(treeHash);

        } catch (IOException ioe) {
            System.err.format("Exception when reading from file %s: %s",
inputFile, ioe.getMessage());
            System.exit(-1);

        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException nsae) {
            System.err.format("Cannot locate MessageDigest algorithm for SHA-256:
%s", nsae.getMessage());
            System.exit(-1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static byte[] computeSHA256TreeHash(File inputFile) throws
IOException,
            NoSuchAlgorithmException {

        byte[][] chunkSHA256Hashes = getChunkSHA256Hashes(inputFile);
        return computeSHA256TreeHash(chunkSHA256Hashes);
    }

    /**
     * Computes an SHA256 checksum for each 1 MB chunk of the input file. This
     * includes the checksum for the last chunk, even if it's smaller than 1 MB.
     */
    public static byte[][] getChunkSHA256Hashes(File file) throws IOException,
            NoSuchAlgorithmException {

        MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance("SHA-256");
        long numChunks = file.length() / ONE_MB;
```

```
        if (file.length() % ONE_MB > 0) {
            numChunks++;
        }

        if (numChunks == 0) {
            return new byte[][] { md.digest() };
        }

        byte[][] chunkSHA256Hashes = new byte[(int) numChunks][];
        FileInputStream fileStream = null;

        try {
            fileStream = new FileInputStream(file);
            byte[] buff = new byte[ONE_MB];

            int bytesRead;
            int idx = 0;

            while ((bytesRead = fileStream.read(buff, 0, ONE_MB)) > 0) {
                md.reset();
                md.update(buff, 0, bytesRead);
                chunkSHA256Hashes[idx++] = md.digest();
            }

            return chunkSHA256Hashes;

        } finally {
            if (fileStream != null) {
                try {
                    fileStream.close();
                } catch (IOException ioe) {
                    System.err.printf("Exception while closing %s.\n %s",
file.getName(),
                            ioe.getMessage());
                }
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Computes the SHA-256 tree hash for the passed array of 1 MB chunk
     * checksums.
     */
    public static byte[] computeSHA256TreeHash(byte[][] chunkSHA256Hashes)
```

```
            throws NoSuchAlgorithmException {

        MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance("SHA-256");
        byte[][] prevLvlHashes = chunkSHA256Hashes;
        while (prevLvlHashes.length > 1) {
            int len = prevLvlHashes.length / 2;
            if (prevLvlHashes.length % 2 != 0) {
                len++;
            }

            byte[][] currLvlHashes = new byte[len][];
            int j = 0;
            for (int i = 0; i < prevLvlHashes.length; i = i + 2, j++) {

                // If there are at least two elements remaining.
                if (prevLvlHashes.length - i > 1) {

                    // Calculate a digest of the concatenated nodes.
                    md.reset();
                    md.update(prevLvlHashes[i]);
                    md.update(prevLvlHashes[i + 1]);
                    currLvlHashes[j] = md.digest();

                } else { // Take care of the remaining odd chunk
                    currLvlHashes[j] = prevLvlHashes[i];
                }
            }

            prevLvlHashes = currLvlHashes;
        }

        return prevLvlHashes[0];
    }

    /**
     * Returns the hexadecimal representation of the input byte array
     */
    public static String toHex(byte[] data) {
        StringBuilder sb = new StringBuilder(data.length * 2);
        for (byte datum : data) {
            String hex = Integer.toHexString(datum & 0xFF);

            if (hex.length() == 1) {
                // Append leading zero.
```

```
                sb.append("0");
            }
            sb.append(hex);
        }
        return sb.toString().toLowerCase();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
const { GlacierClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-glacier");
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const glacierClient = new GlacierClient({ region: REGION });
export { glacierClient };
```

Upload the archive.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
import { UploadArchiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-glacier";
import { glacierClient } from "./libs/glacierClient.js";

// Set the parameters
const vaultname = "VAULT_NAME"; // VAULT_NAME

// Create a new service object and buffer
```

```
const buffer = new Buffer.alloc(2.5 * 1024 * 1024); // 2.5MB buffer
const params = { vaultName: vaultname, body: buffer };

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await glacierClient.send(new UploadArchiveCommand(params));
    console.log("Archive ID", data.archiveId);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error uploading archive!", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create a new service object and buffer
var glacier = new AWS.Glacier({ apiVersion: "2012-06-01" });
buffer = Buffer.alloc(2.5 * 1024 * 1024); // 2.5MB buffer

var params = { vaultName: "YOUR_VAULT_NAME", body: buffer };
// Call Glacier to upload the archive.
glacier.uploadArchive(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error uploading archive!", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Archive ID", data.archiveId);
```

```
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Uploads a single file to the specified vault, returning the archive ID and computed checksum.

```
Write-GLCArchive -VaultName myvault -FilePath c:\temp\blue.bin
```

Output:

```
FilePath                    ArchiveId              Checksum
--------                    ---------              --------
C:\temp\blue.bin            o9O9jUUs...TTX-TpIhQJw 79f3e...f4395b
```

Example 2: Uploads the contents of a folder hierarchy to the specified vault in the user's account. For each file uploaded the cmdlet emits the filename, corresponding archive ID and the computed checksum of the archive.

```
Write-GLCArchive -VaultName myvault -FolderPath . -Recurse
```

Output:

```
FilePath                    ArchiveId              Checksum
--------                    ---------              --------
C:\temp\blue.bin            o9O9jUUs...TTX-TpIhQJw 79f3e...f4395b
C:\temp\green.bin           qXAfOdSG...czo729UHXrw d50a1...9184b9
C:\temp\lum.bin             39aNifP3...q9nb8nZkFIg 28886...5c3e27
C:\temp\red.bin             vp7E6rU_...Ejk_HhjAxKA e05f7...4e34f5
C:\temp\Folder1\file1.txt   _eRINlip...5Sxy7dD2BaA d0d2a...c8a3ba
C:\temp\Folder2\file2.iso   -Ix3jlmu...iXiDh-XfOPA 7469e...3e86f1
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Uploads a single file to the specified vault, returning the archive ID and computed checksum.

```
Write-GLCArchive -VaultName myvault -FilePath c:\temp\blue.bin
```

Output:

```
FilePath                    ArchiveId              Checksum
--------                    ---------              --------
C:\temp\blue.bin            o9O9jUUs...TTX-TpIhQJw 79f3e...f4395b
```

Example 2: Uploads the contents of a folder hierarchy to the specified vault in the user's account. For each file uploaded the cmdlet emits the filename, corresponding archive ID and the computed checksum of the archive.

```
Write-GLCArchive -VaultName myvault -FolderPath . -Recurse
```

Output:

```
FilePath                    ArchiveId              Checksum
--------                    ---------              --------
C:\temp\blue.bin            o9O9jUUs...TTX-TpIhQJw 79f3e...f4395b
C:\temp\green.bin           qXAfOdSG...czo729UHXrw d50a1...9184b9
C:\temp\lum.bin             39aNifP3...q9nb8nZkFIg 28886...5c3e27
C:\temp\red.bin             vp7E6rU_...Ejk_HhjAxKA e05f7...4e34f5
C:\temp\Folder1\file1.txt   _eRINlip...5Sxy7dD2BaA d0d2a...c8a3ba
C:\temp\Folder2\file2.iso   -Ix3jlmu...iXiDh-XfOPA 7469e...3e86f1
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def upload_archive(vault, archive_description, archive_file):
        """
        Uploads an archive to a vault.

        :param vault: The vault where the archive is put.
        :param archive_description: A description of the archive.
        :param archive_file: The archive file to put in the vault.
        :return: The uploaded archive.
        """
        try:
            archive = vault.upload_archive(
                archiveDescription=archive_description, body=archive_file
            )
            logger.info(
                "Uploaded %s with ID %s to vault %s.",
                archive_description,
                archive.id,
                vault.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't upload %s to %s.", archive_description, vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return archive
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UploadMultipartPart` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UploadMultipartPart`.

CLI

AWS CLI

The following command uploads the first 1 MiB (1024 x 1024 bytes) part of an archive:

```
aws glacier upload-multipart-part --body part1 --range 'bytes
 0-1048575/*' --account-id - --vault-name my-vault --upload-
id 19gaRezEXAMPLES6Ry5YYdqthHOC_kGRCT03L9yetr220UmPtBYKk-
OssZtLqyFu7sY1_lR7vgFuJV6NtcV5zpsJ
```

Amazon Glacier requires an account ID argument when performing operations, but you can use a hyphen to specify the in-use account.

The body parameter takes a path to a part file on the local filesystem. The range parameter takes an HTTP content range indicating the bytes that the part occupies in the completed archive. The upload ID is returned by the `aws glacier initiate-multipart-upload` command and can also be obtained by using `aws glacier list-multipart-uploads`.

For more information on multipart uploads to Amazon Glacier using the AWS CLI, see Using Amazon Glacier in the *AWS CLI User Guide*.

- For API details, see UploadMultipartPart in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a multipart upload of 1 megabyte chunks of a Buffer object.

```
// Create a new service object and some supporting variables
var glacier = new AWS.Glacier({ apiVersion: "2012-06-01" }),
  vaultName = "YOUR_VAULT_NAME",
  buffer = new Buffer(2.5 * 1024 * 1024), // 2.5MB buffer
  partSize = 1024 * 1024, // 1MB chunks,
  numPartsLeft = Math.ceil(buffer.length / partSize),
  startTime = new Date(),
  params = { vaultName: vaultName, partSize: partSize.toString() };

// Compute the complete SHA-256 tree hash so we can pass it
// to completeMultipartUpload request at the end
var treeHash = glacier.computeChecksums(buffer).treeHash;

// Initiate the multipart upload
console.log("Initiating upload to", vaultName);
// Call Glacier to initiate the upload.
glacier.initiateMultipartUpload(params, function (mpErr, multipart) {
  if (mpErr) {
    console.log("Error!", mpErr.stack);
    return;
  }
  console.log("Got upload ID", multipart.uploadId);

  // Grab each partSize chunk and upload it as a part
  for (var i = 0; i < buffer.length; i += partSize) {
    var end = Math.min(i + partSize, buffer.length),
      partParams = {
        vaultName: vaultName,
        uploadId: multipart.uploadId,
        range: "bytes " + i + "-" + (end - 1) + "/*",
        body: buffer.slice(i, end),
```

```
      };

    // Send a single part
    console.log("Uploading part", i, "=", partParams.range);
    glacier.uploadMultipartPart(partParams, function (multiErr, mData) {
      if (multiErr) return;
      console.log("Completed part", this.request.params.range);
      if (--numPartsLeft > 0) return; // complete only when all parts uploaded

      var doneParams = {
        vaultName: vaultName,
        uploadId: multipart.uploadId,
        archiveSize: buffer.length.toString(),
        checksum: treeHash, // the computed tree hash
      };

      console.log("Completing upload...");
      glacier.completeMultipartUpload(doneParams, function (err, data) {
        if (err) {
          console.log("An error occurred while uploading the archive");
          console.log(err);
        } else {
          var delta = (new Date() - startTime) / 1000;
          console.log("Completed upload in", delta, "seconds");
          console.log("Archive ID:", data.archiveId);
          console.log("Checksum:  ", data.checksum);
        }
      });
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UploadMultipartPart in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios for S3 Glacier using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in S3 Glacier with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions

within S3 Glacier or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Archive a file to Amazon S3 Glacier, get notifications, and initiate a job using an AWS SDK
- Get Amazon S3 Glacier archive content and delete the archive using an AWS SDK

Archive a file to Amazon S3 Glacier, get notifications, and initiate a job using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
- Configure the vault to publish notifications to an Amazon SNS topic.
- Upload an archive file to the vault.
- Initiate an archive retrieval job.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps S3 Glacier operations.

```
import argparse
import logging
import os
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def create_vault(self, vault_name):
        """
        Creates a vault.

        :param vault_name: The name to give the vault.
        :return: The newly created vault.
        """
        try:
            vault = self.glacier_resource.create_vault(vaultName=vault_name)
            logger.info("Created vault %s.", vault_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create vault %s.", vault_name)
            raise
        else:
            return vault


    def list_vaults(self):
        """
        Lists vaults for the current account.
        """
        try:
            for vault in self.glacier_resource.vaults.all():
                logger.info("Got vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list vaults.")
            raise


    @staticmethod
    def upload_archive(vault, archive_description, archive_file):
```

```
        """
        Uploads an archive to a vault.

        :param vault: The vault where the archive is put.
        :param archive_description: A description of the archive.
        :param archive_file: The archive file to put in the vault.
        :return: The uploaded archive.
        """
        try:
            archive = vault.upload_archive(
                archiveDescription=archive_description, body=archive_file
            )
            logger.info(
                "Uploaded %s with ID %s to vault %s.",
                archive_description,
                archive.id,
                vault.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't upload %s to %s.", archive_description, vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return archive


    @staticmethod
    def initiate_archive_retrieval(archive):
        """
        Initiates an archive retrieval job. Standard retrievals typically
complete
        within 3-5 hours. When the job completes, you can get the archive
contents
        by calling get_output().

        :param archive: The archive to retrieve.
        :return: The archive retrieval job.
        """
        try:
            job = archive.initiate_archive_retrieval()
            logger.info("Started %s job with ID %s.", job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start job on archive %s.", archive.id)
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return job


    @staticmethod
    def list_jobs(vault, job_type):
        """
        Lists jobs by type for the specified vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :param job_type: The type of job to list.
        :return: The list of jobs of the requested type.
        """
        job_list = []
        try:
            if job_type == "all":
                jobs = vault.jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "in_progress":
                jobs = vault.jobs_in_progress.all()
            elif job_type == "completed":
                jobs = vault.completed_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "succeeded":
                jobs = vault.succeeded_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "failed":
                jobs = vault.failed_jobs.all()
            else:
                jobs = []
                logger.warning("%s isn't a type of job I can get.", job_type)
            for job in jobs:
                job_list.append(job)
                logger.info("Got %s %s job %s.", job_type, job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s jobs from %s.", job_type,
vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_list


    def set_notifications(self, vault, sns_topic_arn):
        """
        Sets an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic as a target
        for notifications. Amazon S3 Glacier publishes messages to this topic for
```

```
        the configured list of events.

        :param vault: The vault to set up to publish notifications.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the topic that
                              receives notifications.
        :return: Data about the new notification configuration.
        """
        try:
            notification = self.glacier_resource.Notification("-", vault.name)
            notification.set(
                vaultNotificationConfig={
                    "SNSTopic": sns_topic_arn,
                    "Events": [
                        "ArchiveRetrievalCompleted",
                        "InventoryRetrievalCompleted",
                    ],
                }
            )
            logger.info(
                "Notifications will be sent to %s for events %s from %s.",
                notification.sns_topic,
                notification.events,
                notification.vault_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't set notifications to %s on %s.", sns_topic_arn,
 vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return notification
```

Call functions on the wrapper class to create a vault and upload a file, then configure the vault to publish notifications and initiate a job to retrieve the archive.

```
def upload_demo(glacier, vault_name, topic_arn):
    """
    Shows how to:
    * Create a vault.
    * Configure the vault to publish notifications to an Amazon SNS topic.
```

```
    * Upload an archive.
    * Start a job to retrieve the archive.

    :param glacier: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
    :param vault_name: The name of the vault to create.
    :param topic_arn: The ARN of an Amazon SNS topic that receives notification
of
                      Amazon S3 Glacier events.
    """
    print(f"\nCreating vault {vault_name}.")
    vault = glacier.create_vault(vault_name)
    print("\nList of vaults in your account:")
    glacier.list_vaults()
    print(f"\nUploading glacier_basics.py to {vault.name}.")
    with open("glacier_basics.py", "rb") as upload_file:
        archive = glacier.upload_archive(vault, "glacier_basics.py", upload_file)
    print(
        "\nStarting an archive retrieval request to get the file back from the "
        "vault."
    )
    glacier.initiate_archive_retrieval(archive)
    print("\nListing in progress jobs:")
    glacier.list_jobs(vault, "in_progress")
    print(
        "\nBecause Amazon S3 Glacier is intended for infrequent retrieval, an "
        "archive request with Standard retrieval typically completes within 3-5 "
        "hours."
    )
    if topic_arn:
        notification = glacier.set_notifications(vault, topic_arn)
        print(
            f"\nVault {vault.name} is configured to notify the "
            f"{notification.sns_topic} topic when {notification.events} "
            f"events occur. You can subscribe to this topic to receive "
            f"a message when the archive retrieval completes.\n"
        )
    else:
        print(
            f"\nVault {vault.name} is not configured to notify an Amazon SNS
topic "
            f"when the archive retrieval completes so wait a few hours."
        )
    print("\nRetrieve your job output by running this script with the --retrieve
flag.")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateVault
  - InitiateJob
  - ListJobs
  - ListVaults
  - SetVaultNotifications
  - UploadArchive

Get Amazon S3 Glacier archive content and delete the archive using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- List jobs for an Amazon S3 Glacier vault and get job status.
- Get the output of a completed archive retrieval job.
- Delete an archive.
- Delete a vault.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps S3 Glacier operations.

```
import argparse
import logging
import os
import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def list_jobs(vault, job_type):
        """
        Lists jobs by type for the specified vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :param job_type: The type of job to list.
        :return: The list of jobs of the requested type.
        """
        job_list = []
        try:
            if job_type == "all":
                jobs = vault.jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "in_progress":
                jobs = vault.jobs_in_progress.all()
            elif job_type == "completed":
                jobs = vault.completed_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "succeeded":
                jobs = vault.succeeded_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "failed":
                jobs = vault.failed_jobs.all()
            else:
                jobs = []
                logger.warning("%s isn't a type of job I can get.", job_type)
            for job in jobs:
                job_list.append(job)
                logger.info("Got %s %s job %s.", job_type, job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s jobs from %s.", job_type,
vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_list


    @staticmethod
    def get_job_output(job):
        """
        Gets the output of a job, such as a vault inventory or the contents of an
        archive.

        :param job: The job to get output from.
        :return: The job output, in bytes.
        """
        try:
            response = job.get_output()
            out_bytes = response["body"].read()
            logger.info("Read %s bytes from job %s.", len(out_bytes), job.id)
            if "archiveDescription" in response:
                logger.info(
                    "These bytes are described as '%s'",
response["archiveDescription"]
                )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get output for job %s.", job.id)
            raise
        else:
            return out_bytes


    @staticmethod
    def delete_archive(archive):
        """
        Deletes an archive from a vault.

        :param archive: The archive to delete.
        """
        try:
            archive.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted archive %s from vault %s.", archive.id,
archive.vault_name
```

```
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise


    @staticmethod
    def delete_vault(vault):
        """
        Deletes a vault.

        :param vault: The vault to delete.
        """
        try:
            vault.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete vault %s.", vault.name)
            raise
```

Call functions on the wrapper class to get archive content from a completed job, then delete the archive.

```
def retrieve_demo(glacier, vault_name):
    """
    Shows how to:
    * List jobs for a vault and get job status.
    * Get the output of a completed archive retrieval job.
    * Delete an archive.
    * Delete a vault.

    :param glacier: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
    :param vault_name: The name of the vault to query for jobs.
    """
    vault = glacier.glacier_resource.Vault("-", vault_name)
    try:
        vault.load()
    except ClientError as err:
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            print(
```

```
                f"\nVault {vault_name} doesn't exist. You must first run this
script "
                f"with the --upload flag to create the vault."
            )
            return
        else:
            raise

    print(f"\nGetting completed jobs for {vault.name}.")
    jobs = glacier.list_jobs(vault, "completed")
    if not jobs:
        print("\nNo completed jobs found. Give it some time and try again
later.")
        return

    retrieval_job = None
    for job in jobs:
        if job.action == "ArchiveRetrieval" and job.status_code == "Succeeded":
            retrieval_job = job
            break
    if retrieval_job is None:
        print(
            "\nNo ArchiveRetrieval jobs found. Give it some time and try again "
            "later."
        )
        return

    print(f"\nGetting output from job {retrieval_job.id}.")
    archive_bytes = glacier.get_job_output(retrieval_job)
    archive_str = archive_bytes.decode("utf-8")
    print("\nGot archive data. Printing the first 10 lines.")
    print(os.linesep.join(archive_str.split(os.linesep)[:10]))

    print(f"\nDeleting the archive from {vault.name}.")
    archive = glacier.glacier_resource.Archive(
        "-", vault.name, retrieval_job.archive_id
    )
    glacier.delete_archive(archive)

    print(f"\nDeleting {vault.name}.")
    glacier.delete_vault(vault)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteArchive
  - DeleteVault
  - GetJobOutput
  - ListJobs

Code examples for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon SageMaker AI with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **SageMaker AI Developer Guide** – More information about SageMaker AI.
- **SageMaker AI API Reference** – Details about all available SageMaker AI actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code examples show how to get started using SageMaker AI.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;

namespace SageMakerActions;

public static class HelloSageMaker
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your
 notebook instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five notebook instances.
        var response = await sageMakerClient.ListNotebookInstancesAsync(
            new ListNotebookInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        if (!response.NotebookInstances.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No notebook instances found.");
            Console.WriteLine("See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/
dg/howitworks-create-ws.html to create one.");
        }

        foreach (var notebookInstance in response.NotebookInstances)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tInstance:
 {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCreation Date:
 {notebookInstance.CreationTime.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloSageMaker {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SageMakerClient sageMakerClient = SageMakerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listBooks(sageMakerClient);
        sageMakerClient.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void listBooks(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient) {
        try {
            ListNotebookInstancesResponse notebookInstancesResponse =
 sageMakerClient.listNotebookInstances();
            List<NotebookInstanceSummary> items =
 notebookInstancesResponse.notebookInstances();
            for (NotebookInstanceSummary item : items) {
                System.out.println("The notebook name is: " +
 item.notebookInstanceName());
            }

        } catch (SageMakerException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  SageMakerClient,
  ListNotebookInstancesCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker";

const client = new SageMakerClient({
  region: "us-west-2",
});
```

```
export const helloSagemaker = async () => {
  const command = new ListNotebookInstancesCommand({ MaxResults: 5 });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(
    "Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your notebook instances:",
  );

  const instances = response.NotebookInstances || [];

  if (instances.length === 0) {
    console.log(
      "• No notebook instances found. Try creating one in the AWS Management
 Console or with the CreateNotebookInstanceCommand.",
    );
  } else {
    console.log(
      instances
        .map(
          (i) =>
            `• Instance: ${i.NotebookInstanceName}\n  Arn:${
              i.NotebookInstanceArn
            } \n  Creation Date: ${i.CreationTime.toISOString()}`,
        )
        .join("\n"),
    );
  }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBooks() {
    SageMakerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { sageMakerClient ->
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.listNotebookInstances(ListNotebookInstancesRequest {})
        response.notebookInstances?.forEach { item ->
            println("The notebook name is: ${item.notebookInstanceName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs
  - Hello SageMaker AI
  - Actions for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateEndpoint with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreatePipeline with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateTrainingJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateTransformJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteEndpoint with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteModel with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeletePipeline with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribePipelineExecution with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeTrainingJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListAlgorithms with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListModels with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListNotebookInstances with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListTrainingJobs with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartPipelineExecution with an AWS SDK
    - Use UpdatePipeline with an AWS SDK

- Scenarios for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs
  - Get started with SageMaker AI geospatial jobs in a pipeline using an AWS SDK
  - Get started with SageMaker AI models and endpoints using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon SageMaker AI with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello SageMaker AI
- Actions for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateEndpoint with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateModel with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreatePipeline with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateTrainingJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateTransformJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteEndpoint with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteModel with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeletePipeline with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribePipelineExecution with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeTrainingJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListAlgorithms with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListModels with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListNotebookInstances with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListTrainingJobs with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartPipelineExecution with an AWS SDK
  - Use UpdatePipeline with an AWS SDK

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code examples show how to get started using SageMaker AI.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;

namespace SageMakerActions;

public static class HelloSageMaker
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your
 notebook instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five notebook instances.
        var response = await sageMakerClient.ListNotebookInstancesAsync(
            new ListNotebookInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        if (!response.NotebookInstances.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No notebook instances found.");
            Console.WriteLine("See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/
dg/howitworks-create-ws.html to create one.");
        }

        foreach (var notebookInstance in response.NotebookInstances)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tInstance:
 {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCreation Date:
 {notebookInstance.CreationTime.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloSageMaker {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SageMakerClient sageMakerClient = SageMakerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listBooks(sageMakerClient);
        sageMakerClient.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void listBooks(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient) {
        try {
            ListNotebookInstancesResponse notebookInstancesResponse =
 sageMakerClient.listNotebookInstances();
            List<NotebookInstanceSummary> items =
 notebookInstancesResponse.notebookInstances();
            for (NotebookInstanceSummary item : items) {
                System.out.println("The notebook name is: " +
 item.notebookInstanceName());
            }

        } catch (SageMakerException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  SageMakerClient,
  ListNotebookInstancesCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker";

const client = new SageMakerClient({
  region: "us-west-2",
});
```

```
export const helloSagemaker = async () => {
  const command = new ListNotebookInstancesCommand({ MaxResults: 5 });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(
    "Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your notebook instances:",
  );

  const instances = response.NotebookInstances || [];

  if (instances.length === 0) {
    console.log(
      "• No notebook instances found. Try creating one in the AWS Management
 Console or with the CreateNotebookInstanceCommand.",
    );
  } else {
    console.log(
      instances
        .map(
          (i) =>
            `• Instance: ${i.NotebookInstanceName}\n  Arn:${
              i.NotebookInstanceArn
            } \n  Creation Date: ${i.CreationTime.toISOString()}`,
        )
        .join("\n"),
    );
  }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBooks() {
    SageMakerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { sageMakerClient ->
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.listNotebookInstances(ListNotebookInstancesRequest {})
        response.notebookInstances?.forEach { item ->
            println("The notebook name is: ${item.notebookInstanceName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Actions for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual SageMaker AI actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the SageMaker AI API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon SageMaker AI API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateEndpoint with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateModel with an AWS SDK
- Use CreatePipeline with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateTrainingJob with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateTransformJob with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteEndpoint with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteModel with an AWS SDK
- Use DeletePipeline with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribePipelineExecution with an AWS SDK

- Use DescribeTrainingJob with an AWS SDK
- Use ListAlgorithms with an AWS SDK
- Use ListModels with an AWS SDK
- Use ListNotebookInstances with an AWS SDK
- Use ListTrainingJobs with an AWS SDK
- Use StartPipelineExecution with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdatePipeline with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateEndpoint` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEndpoint`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with models and endpoints

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_production_variants TYPE /aws1/
cl_sgmproductionvariant=>tt_productionvariantlist.
    DATA lo_production_variants TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmproductionvariant.
    DATA oo_ep_config_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcreateendptcfgout.

    "Create a production variant as an ABAP object."
    "Identifies a model that you want to host and the resources chosen to deploy
 for hosting it."
    lo_production_variants = NEW #( iv_variantname = iv_variant_name
```

```
                                    iv_modelname = iv_model_name
                                    iv_initialinstancecount =
iv_initial_instance_count
                                    iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type ).

   INSERT lo_production_variants INTO TABLE lt_production_variants.

   "Create an endpoint configuration."
   TRY.
       oo_ep_config_result = lo_sgm->createendpointconfig(
         iv_endpointconfigname = iv_endpoint_config_name
         it_productionvariants = lt_production_variants ).
       MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Create an endpoint."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sgm->createendpoint(     " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
           iv_endpointconfigname = iv_endpoint_config_name
           iv_endpointname = iv_endpoint_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Endpoint created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateEndpoint in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `CreateModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateModel`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with models and endpoints

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   DATA lo_primarycontainer TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcontainerdefn.

   "Create an ABAP object for the container image based on input variables."
   lo_primarycontainer = NEW #( iv_image = iv_container_image
                                iv_modeldataurl = iv_model_data_url ).

   "Create an Amazon SageMaker model."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sgm->createmodel(        " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
         iv_executionrolearn = iv_execution_role_arn
         iv_modelname = iv_model_name
         io_primarycontainer = lo_primarycontainer ).
       MESSAGE 'Model created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `CreatePipeline` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePipeline`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
 already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
 string name, string description, string displayName)
    {
        try
        {
            var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
                new UpdatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
            return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
        catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
```

```
            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
    public static void setupPipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
filePath, String roleArn,
            String functionArn, String pipelineName) {
        System.out.println("Setting up the pipeline.");
        JSONParser parser = new JSONParser();

        // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
        try (FileReader reader = new FileReader(filePath)) {
            Object obj = parser.parse(reader);
            JSONObject jsonObject = (JSONObject) obj;
            JSONArray stepsArray = (JSONArray) jsonObject.get("Steps");
            for (Object stepObj : stepsArray) {
                JSONObject step = (JSONObject) stepObj;
                if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                    step.put("FunctionArn", functionArn);
                }
            }
            System.out.println(jsonObject);

            // Create the pipeline.
            CreatePipelineRequest pipelineRequest =
CreatePipelineRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineDescription("Java SDK example pipeline")
```

```
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                    .pipelineDefinition(jsonObject.toString())
                    .build();

            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (IOException | ParseException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A function that creates a SageMaker AI pipeline using a locally provided JSON definition.

```
/**
 * Create the Amazon SageMaker pipeline using a JSON pipeline definition. The
 definition
 * can also be provided as an Amazon S3 object using
 PipelineDefinitionS3Location.
 * @param {{roleArn: string, name: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/
client-sagemaker').SageMakerClient}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerPipeline({
  // Assumes an AWS IAM role has been created for this pipeline.
  roleArn,
  name,
```

```
  // Assumes an AWS Lambda function has been created for this pipeline.
  functionArn,
  sagemakerClient,
}) {
  const pipelineDefinition = readFileSync(
    // dirnameFromMetaUrl is a local utility function. You can find its
 implementation
    // on GitHub.
    `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
      import.meta.url,
    )}../../../../../scenarios/features/sagemaker_pipelines/resources/
GeoSpatialPipeline.json`,
  )
    .toString()
    .replace(/\*FUNCTION_ARN\*/g, functionArn);

  let arn = null;

  const createPipeline = () =>
    sagemakerClient.send(
      new CreatePipelineCommand({
        PipelineName: name,
        PipelineDefinition: pipelineDefinition,
        RoleArn: roleArn,
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { PipelineArn } = await createPipeline();
    arn = PipelineArn;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ValidationException" &&
      caught.message.includes(
        "Pipeline names must be unique within an AWS account and region",
      )
    ) {
      const { PipelineArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DescribePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
      arn = PipelineArn;
    } else {
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  }

  return {
    arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DeletePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
    },
  };
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
suspend fun setupPipeline(filePath: String?, roleArnVal: String?, functionArnVal:
 String?, pipelineNameVal: String?) {
    println("Setting up the pipeline.")
    val parser = JSONParser()

    // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
    FileReader(filePath).use { reader ->
        val obj: Any = parser.parse(reader)
        val jsonObject: JSONObject = obj as JSONObject
        val stepsArray: JSONArray = jsonObject.get("Steps") as JSONArray
        for (stepObj in stepsArray) {
            val step: JSONObject = stepObj as JSONObject
            if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                step.put("FunctionArn", functionArnVal)
            }
```

```
        }
        println(jsonObject)

        // Create the pipeline.
        val pipelineRequest = CreatePipelineRequest {
            pipelineDescription = "Kotlin SDK example pipeline"
            roleArn = roleArnVal
            pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
            pipelineDefinition = jsonObject.toString()
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `CreateTrainingJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTrainingJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with models and endpoints

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lo_hyperparameters_w TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmhyperparameters_w.
```

```
    DATA lt_hyperparameters TYPE /aws1/
cl_sgmhyperparameters_w=>tt_hyperparameters.
    DATA lt_input_data_config TYPE /aws1/cl_sgmchannel=>tt_inputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_trn_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
    DATA lo_trn_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
    DATA lo_trn_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
    DATA lo_val_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
    DATA lo_val_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
    DATA lo_val_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
    DATA lo_algorithm_specification TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmalgorithmspec.
    DATA lo_resource_config  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmresourceconfig.
    DATA lo_output_data_config TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmoutputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_stopping_condition TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmstoppingcondition.

    "Create ABAP internal table for hyperparameters based on input variables."
    "These hyperparameters are based on the Amazon SageMaker built-in algorithm,
 XGBoost."
    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_max_depth ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'max_depth' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eta ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eta' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eval_metric ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eval_metric' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO
 TABLE lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_scale_pos_weight ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'scale_pos_weight' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO
 TABLE lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_subsample ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'subsample' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_objective ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'objective' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_num_round ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'num_round' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.
```

```
   "Create ABAP objects for training data sources."
   lo_trn_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_trn_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_trn_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_trn_data_s3uri ).

   lo_trn_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_trn_s3datasource ).

   lo_trn_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'train'
                           io_datasource = lo_trn_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_trn_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_trn_data_contenttype ).

   INSERT lo_trn_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Create ABAP objects for validation data sources."
   lo_val_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_val_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_val_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_val_data_s3uri ).

   lo_val_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_val_s3datasource ).

   lo_val_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'validation'
                           io_datasource = lo_val_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_val_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_val_data_contenttype ).

   INSERT lo_val_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Create an ABAP object for algorithm specification."
   lo_algorithm_specification = NEW #( iv_trainingimage = iv_training_image
                                       iv_traininginputmode =
iv_training_input_mode ).

   "Create an ABAP object for resource configuration."
   lo_resource_config = NEW #( iv_instancecount = iv_instance_count
                               iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type
                               iv_volumesizeingb = iv_volume_sizeingb ).

   "Create an ABAP object for output data configuration."
   lo_output_data_config = NEW #( iv_s3outputpath = iv_s3_output_path ).
```

```
   "Create an ABAP object for stopping condition."
   lo_stopping_condition = NEW #( iv_maxruntimeinseconds =
iv_max_runtime_in_seconds ).

   "Create a training job."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sgm->createtrainingjob(    " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
         iv_trainingjobname           = iv_training_job_name
         iv_rolearn                   = iv_role_arn
         it_hyperparameters           = lt_hyperparameters
         it_inputdataconfig           = lt_input_data_config
         io_algorithmspecification    = lo_algorithm_specification
         io_outputdataconfig          = lo_output_data_config
         io_resourceconfig            = lo_resource_config
         io_stoppingcondition         = lo_stopping_condition ).
       MESSAGE 'Training job created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTrainingJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `CreateTransformJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTransformJob`.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   DATA lo_transforminput TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransforminput.
   DATA lo_transformoutput TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransformoutput.
   DATA lo_transformresources TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransformresources.
   DATA lo_datasource  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransformdatasrc.
   DATA lo_s3datasource  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransforms3datasrc.

   "Create an ABAP object for an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) data
source."
   lo_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_tf_data_s3uri
                            iv_s3datatype = iv_tf_data_s3datatype ).

   "Create an ABAP object for data source."
   lo_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_s3datasource ).

   "Create an ABAP object for transform data source."
   lo_transforminput = NEW #( io_datasource = lo_datasource
                              iv_contenttype = iv_tf_data_contenttype
                              iv_compressiontype = iv_tf_data_compressiontype ).

   "Create an ABAP object for resource configuration."
   lo_transformresources = NEW #( iv_instancecount = iv_instance_count
                                  iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type ).

   "Create an ABAP object for output data configuration."
   lo_transformoutput = NEW #( iv_s3outputpath = iv_s3_output_path ).

   "Create a transform job."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sgm->createtransformjob(     " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
           iv_modelname = iv_tf_model_name
           iv_transformjobname = iv_tf_job_name
           io_transforminput = lo_transforminput
           io_transformoutput = lo_transformoutput
           io_transformresources = lo_transformresources ).
       MESSAGE 'Transform job created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTransformJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DeleteEndpoint` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEndpoint`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with models and endpoints

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Delete an endpoint."
    TRY.
        lo_sgm->deleteendpoint(
            iv_endpointname = iv_endpoint_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_endpoint_exception).
        DATA(lv_endpoint_error) = |"{ lo_endpoint_exception->av_err_code }" -
{ lo_endpoint_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_endpoint_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Delete an endpoint configuration."
    TRY.
        lo_sgm->deleteendpointconfig(
```

```
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_endpoint_config_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_endpointconfig_exception).
        DATA(lv_endpointconfig_error) = |"{ lo_endpointconfig_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_endpointconfig_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_endpointconfig_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteEndpoint in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DeleteModel` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteModel`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with models and endpoints

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sgm->deletemodel(
                  iv_modelname = iv_model_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Model deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DeletePipeline` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePipeline`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline to delete.</param>
/// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
public async Task<string> DeletePipelineByName(string pipelineName)
{
    var deleteResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.DeletePipelineAsync(
        new DeletePipelineRequest()
        {
            PipelineName = pipelineName
        });

    return deleteResponse.PipelineArn;
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
   public static void deletePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
pipelineName) {
       DeletePipelineRequest pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest.builder()
               .pipelineName(pipelineName)
               .build();

       sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest);
       System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + pipelineName);
   }
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The syntax for deleting a SageMaker AI pipeline. This code is part of a larger function. Refer to 'Create a pipeline' or the GitHub repository for more context.

```
      await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DeletePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
```

```
    );
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
suspend fun deletePipeline(pipelineNameVal: String) {
    val pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest {
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $pipelineNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribePipelineExecution` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePipelineExecution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the status of a run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineExecutionArn">The ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<PipelineExecutionStatus>
CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(string pipelineExecutionArn)
    {
        var describeResponse = await
_amazonSageMaker.DescribePipelineExecutionAsync(
            new DescribePipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineExecutionArn = pipelineExecutionArn
            });

        return describeResponse.PipelineExecutionStatus;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Check the status of a pipeline execution.
    public static void waitForPipelineExecution(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient,
String executionArn)
            throws InterruptedException {
        String status;
        int index = 0;
        do {
            DescribePipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
DescribePipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineExecutionArn(executionArn)
                    .build();

            DescribePipelineExecutionResponse response = sageMakerClient
                    .describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatusAsString();
            System.out.println(index + ". The Status of the pipeline is " +
status);
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4);
            index++;
        } while ("Executing".equals(status));
        System.out.println("Pipeline finished with status " + status);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Wait for a SageMaker AI pipeline execution to succeed, fail, or stop.

```
/**
 * Poll the executing pipeline until the status is 'SUCCEEDED', 'STOPPED', or
 'FAILED'.
```

```
 * @param {{ arn: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
sagemaker').SageMakerClient, wait: (ms: number) => Promise<void>}} props
 */
export async function waitForPipelineComplete({ arn, sagemakerClient, wait }) {
  const command = new DescribePipelineExecutionCommand({
    PipelineExecutionArn: arn,
  });

  let complete = false;
  const intervalInSeconds = 15;
  const COMPLETION_STATUSES = [
    PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.SUCCEEDED,
  ];

  do {
    const { PipelineExecutionStatus: status, FailureReason } =
      await sagemakerClient.send(command);

    complete = COMPLETION_STATUSES.includes(status);

    if (!complete) {
      console.log(
        `Pipeline is ${status}. Waiting ${intervalInSeconds} seconds before
 checking again.`,
      );
      await wait(intervalInSeconds);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED) {
      throw new Error(`Pipeline failed because: ${FailureReason}`);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED) {
      throw new Error("Pipeline was forcefully stopped.");
    } else {
      console.log(`Pipeline execution ${status}.`);
    }
  } while (!complete);
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun waitForPipelineExecution(executionArn: String?) {
    var status: String
    var index = 0
    do {
        val pipelineExecutionRequest = DescribePipelineExecutionRequest {
            pipelineExecutionArn = executionArn
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            val response =
 sageMakerClient.describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatus.toString()
            println("$index. The status of the pipeline is $status")
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4)
            index++
        }
    } while ("Executing" == status)
    println("Pipeline finished with status $status")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `DescribeTrainingJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTrainingJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with models and endpoints

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->describetrainingjob(      " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_trainingjobname = iv_training_job_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved description of training job.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrainingJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListAlgorithms` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListAlgorithms`.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
```

```
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listalgorithms(         " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of algorithms.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListAlgorithms in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListModels` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListModels`.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listmodels(           " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of models.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListModels in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListNotebookInstances` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListNotebookInstances`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_instances(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let notebooks = client.list_notebook_instances().send().await?;

    println!("Notebooks:");

    for n in notebooks.notebook_instances() {
        let n_instance_type = n.instance_type().unwrap();
        let n_status = n.notebook_instance_status().unwrap();
        let n_name = n.notebook_instance_name();

        println!("  Name :          {}", n_name.unwrap_or("Unknown"));
        println!("  Status :        {}", n_status.as_ref());
        println!("  Instance Type : {}", n_instance_type.as_ref());
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listnotebookinstances(        " oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of notebook instances.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListTrainingJobs` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListTrainingJobs`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_jobs(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    let job_details = client.list_training_jobs().send().await?;

    println!("Jobs:");

    for j in job_details.training_job_summaries() {
        let name = j.training_job_name().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let creation_time = j.creation_time().expect("creation
 time").to_chrono_utc()?;
        let training_end_time = j
            .training_end_time()
            .expect("Training end time")
            .to_chrono_utc()?;

        let status = j.training_job_status().expect("training status");
        let duration = training_end_time - creation_time;

        println!("  Name:               {}", name);
        println!(
            "  Creation date/time: {}",
            creation_time.format("%Y-%m-%d@%H:%M:%S")
        );
        println!("  Duration (seconds): {}", duration.num_seconds());
        println!("  Status:             {:?}", status);

        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListTrainingJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listtrainingjobs(       " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains
          iv_maxresults = iv_max_results ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of training jobs.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTrainingJobs in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `StartPipelineExecution` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartPipelineExecution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Run a pipeline with input and output file locations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue to use for pipeline
 callbacks.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="inputLocationUrl">The input location in Amazon Simple
 Storage Service (Amazon S3).</param>
    /// <param name="outputLocationUrl">The output location in Amazon S3.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="executionRoleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline run.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string inputLocationUrl,
        string outputLocationUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string executionRoleArn)
    {
        var inputConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig()
        {
            DataSourceConfig = new()
            {
                S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputLocationUrl
                }
            },
            DocumentType = VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV
        };

        var exportConfig = new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig()
        {
            S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
            {
                S3Uri = outputLocationUrl
            }
        };

        var jobConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobConfig()
        {
            ReverseGeocodingConfig = new ReverseGeocodingConfig()
            {
                XAttributeName = "Longitude",
                YAttributeName = "Latitude"
            }
        };

#pragma warning disable SageMaker1002 // Property value does not match required
 pattern is allowed here to match the pipeline definition.
```

```
        var startExecutionResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.StartPipelineExecutionAsync(
            new StartPipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName,
                PipelineExecutionDisplayName = pipelineName + "-example-
execution",
                PipelineParameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_execution_role", Value =
 executionRoleArn },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_queue_url", Value =
 queueUrl },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_input_config", Value
 = JsonSerializer.Serialize(inputConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_export_config", Value
 = JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config", Value
 = JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobConfig) }
                }
            });
#pragma warning restore SageMaker1002
        return startExecutionResponse.PipelineExecutionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    public static String executePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
 bucketName, String queueUrl,
            String roleArn, String pipelineName) {
```

```
        System.out.println("Starting pipeline execution.");
        String inputBucketLocation = "s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv";
        String output = "s3://" + bucketName + "/outputfiles/";
        Gson gson = new GsonBuilder()
                .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                .setPrettyPrinting().create();

        // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
        List<Parameter> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        Parameter para1 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_execution_role")
                .value(roleArn)
                .build();

        Parameter para2 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_queue_url")
                .value(queueUrl)
                .build();

        String inputJSON = "{\n" +
                "  \"DataSourceConfig\": {\n" +
                "    \"S3Data\": {\n" +
                "      \"S3Uri\": \"s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv\"\n" +
                "    },\n" +
                "    \"Type\": \"S3_DATA\"\n" +
                "  },\n" +
                "  \"DocumentType\": \"CSV\"\n" +
                "}";

        System.out.println(inputJSON);

        Parameter para3 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_input_config")
                .value(inputJSON)
                .build();

        // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
        VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data.builder()
                .s3Uri(output)
                .build();
```

```
        ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig outputConfig =
 ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig.builder()
                .s3Data(jobS3Data)
                .build();

        String gson4 = gson.toJson(outputConfig);
        Parameter para4 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_export_config")
                .value(gson4)
                .build();
        System.out.println("parameter_vej_export_config:" +
 gson.toJson(outputConfig));

        // Create a VectorEnrichmentJobConfig object.
        ReverseGeocodingConfig reverseGeocodingConfig =
 ReverseGeocodingConfig.builder()
                .xAttributeName("Longitude")
                .yAttributeName("Latitude")
                .build();

        VectorEnrichmentJobConfig jobConfig = VectorEnrichmentJobConfig.builder()
                .reverseGeocodingConfig(reverseGeocodingConfig)
                .build();

        String para5JSON = "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig
\":{\"XAttributeName\":\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}";
        Parameter para5 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_step_1_vej_config")
                .value(para5JSON)
                .build();

        System.out.println("parameter_step_1_vej_config:" +
 gson.toJson(jobConfig));
        parameters.add(para1);
        parameters.add(para2);
        parameters.add(para3);
        parameters.add(para4);
        parameters.add(para5);

        StartPipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
 StartPipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                .pipelineExecutionDescription("Created using Java SDK")
                .pipelineExecutionDisplayName(pipelineName + "-example-
execution")
```

```
                .pipelineParameters(parameters)
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                .build();

        StartPipelineExecutionResponse response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn();
    }
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start a SageMaker AI pipeline execution.

```
/**
 * Start the execution of the Amazon SageMaker pipeline. Parameters that are
 * passed in are used in the AWS Lambda function.
 * @param {{
 *   name: string,
 *   sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker').SageMakerClient,
 *   roleArn: string,
 *   queueUrl: string,
 *   s3InputBucketName: string,
 * }} props
 */
export async function startPipelineExecution({
  sagemakerClient,
  name,
  bucketName,
  roleArn,
  queueUrl,
}) {
```

```
  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job requests CSV data. This configuration points to a
 CSV
   * file in an Amazon S3 bucket.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig}
   */
  const inputConfig = {
    DataSourceConfig: {
      S3Data: {
        S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/input/sample_data.csv`,
      },
    },
    DocumentType: VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV,
  };

  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job adds additional data to the source CSV. This
 configuration points
   * to an Amazon S3 prefix where the output will be stored.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig}
   */
  const outputConfig = {
    S3Data: {
      S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/output/`,
    },
  };

  /**
   * This job will be a Reverse Geocoding Vector Enrichment Job. Reverse
 Geocoding requires
   * latitude and longitude values.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobConfig}
   */
  const jobConfig = {
    ReverseGeocodingConfig: {
      XAttributeName: "Longitude",
      YAttributeName: "Latitude",
    },
  };

  const { PipelineExecutionArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
```

```
    new StartPipelineExecutionCommand({
      PipelineName: name,
      PipelineExecutionDisplayName: `${name}-example-execution`,
      PipelineParameters: [
        { Name: "parameter_execution_role", Value: roleArn },
        { Name: "parameter_queue_url", Value: queueUrl },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_input_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(inputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_export_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(outputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_step_1_vej_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(jobConfig),
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  return {
    arn: PipelineExecutionArn,
  };
}
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
```

```
suspend fun executePipeline(bucketName: String, queueUrl: String?, roleArn:
 String?, pipelineNameVal: String): String? {
    println("Starting pipeline execution.")
    val inputBucketLocation = "s3://$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
    val output = "s3://$bucketName/outputfiles/"

    val gson = GsonBuilder()
        .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
        .setPrettyPrinting()
        .create()

    // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
    val parameters: MutableList<Parameter> = java.util.ArrayList<Parameter>()

    val para1 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_execution_role"
        value = roleArn
    }
    val para2 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_queue_url"
        value = queueUrl
    }

    val inputJSON = """{
        "DataSourceConfig": {
        "S3Data": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
        },
        "Type": "S3_DATA"
        },
        "DocumentType": "CSV"
    }"""
    println(inputJSON)
    val para3 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_input_config"
        value = inputJSON
    }

    // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
    val jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data {
        s3Uri = output
    }

    val outputConfig = ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig {
```

```
        s3Data = jobS3Data
    }

    val gson4: String = gson.toJson(outputConfig)
    val para4: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_export_config"
        value = gson4
    }
    println("parameter_vej_export_config:" + gson.toJson(outputConfig))

    val para5JSON =
        "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig\":{\"XAttributeName
\":\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}"

    val para5: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config"
        value = para5JSON
    }

    parameters.add(para1)
    parameters.add(para2)
    parameters.add(para3)
    parameters.add(para4)
    parameters.add(para5)

    val pipelineExecutionRequest = StartPipelineExecutionRequest {
        pipelineExecutionDescription = "Created using Kotlin SDK"
        pipelineExecutionDisplayName = "$pipelineName-example-execution"
        pipelineParameters = parameters
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `UpdatePipeline` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `UpdatePipeline`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
already exists.
   /// </summary>
   /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
   public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
string name, string description, string displayName)
   {
       try
       {
           var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
               new UpdatePipelineRequest()
               {
                   PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                   PipelineDescription = description,
                   PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                   PipelineName = name,
                   RoleArn = roleArn
               });
           return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
       }
       catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
       {
```

```
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios for SageMaker AI using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in SageMaker AI with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within SageMaker AI or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Get started with SageMaker AI geospatial jobs in a pipeline using an AWS SDK
- Get started with SageMaker AI models and endpoints using an AWS SDK

Get started with SageMaker AI geospatial jobs in a pipeline using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Set up resources for a pipeline.
- Set up a pipeline that executes a geospatial job.
- Start a pipeline execution.
- Monitor the status of the execution.

- View the output of the pipeline.
- Clean up resources.

For more information, see Create and run SageMaker pipelines using AWS SDKs on Community.aws.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps SageMaker AI operations.

```
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial.Model;

namespace SageMakerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon SageMaker actions and logic.
/// </summary>
public class SageMakerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSageMaker _amazonSageMaker;
    public SageMakerWrapper(IAmazonSageMaker amazonSageMaker)
    {
        _amazonSageMaker = amazonSageMaker;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
 already exists.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
string name, string description, string displayName)
    {
        try
        {
            var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
                new UpdatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
            return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
        catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run a pipeline with input and output file locations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue to use for pipeline
callbacks.</param>
    /// <param name="inputLocationUrl">The input location in Amazon Simple
Storage Service (Amazon S3).</param>
    /// <param name="outputLocationUrl">The output location in Amazon S3.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="executionRoleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline run.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string inputLocationUrl,
        string outputLocationUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string executionRoleArn)
    {
        var inputConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig()
        {
            DataSourceConfig = new()
            {
                S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputLocationUrl
                }
            },
            DocumentType = VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV
        };

        var exportConfig = new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig()
        {
            S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
            {
                S3Uri = outputLocationUrl
            }
        };

        var jobConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobConfig()
        {
            ReverseGeocodingConfig = new ReverseGeocodingConfig()
            {
                XAttributeName = "Longitude",
                YAttributeName = "Latitude"
            }
        };

#pragma warning disable SageMaker1002 // Property value does not match required
 pattern is allowed here to match the pipeline definition.
        var startExecutionResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.StartPipelineExecutionAsync(
            new StartPipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName,
```

```
                PipelineExecutionDisplayName = pipelineName + "-example-
execution",
                PipelineParameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_execution_role", Value =
 executionRoleArn },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_queue_url", Value =
 queueUrl },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_input_config", Value
 = JsonSerializer.Serialize(inputConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_export_config", Value
 = JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config", Value
 = JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobConfig) }
                }
            });
#pragma warning restore SageMaker1002
        return startExecutionResponse.PipelineExecutionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check the status of a run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineExecutionArn">The ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<PipelineExecutionStatus>
 CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(string pipelineExecutionArn)
    {
        var describeResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.DescribePipelineExecutionAsync(
            new DescribePipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineExecutionArn = pipelineExecutionArn
            });

        return describeResponse.PipelineExecutionStatus;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeletePipelineByName(string pipelineName)
```

```
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.DeletePipelineAsync(
            new DeletePipelineRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName
            });

        return deleteResponse.PipelineArn;
    }
}
```

Create a function that handles callbacks from the SageMaker AI pipeline.

```
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial.Model;

// Assembly attribute to enable the AWS Lambda function's JSON input to be
 converted into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace SageMakerLambda;

/// <summary>
/// The AWS Lambda function handler for the Amazon SageMaker pipeline.
/// </summary>
public class SageMakerLambdaFunction
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Default constructor. This constructor is used by AWS Lambda to construct
 the instance. When invoked in a Lambda environment
    /// the AWS credentials will come from the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role associated with the function. The AWS Region will be set to the
    /// Region that the Lambda function is running in.
    /// </summary>
    public SageMakerLambdaFunction()
```

```
    {
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// The AWS Lambda function handler that processes events from the SageMaker
 pipeline and starts a job or export.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="request">The custom SageMaker pipeline request object.</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context.</param>
    /// <returns>The dictionary of output parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, string>> FunctionHandler(PipelineRequest
 request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        var geoSpatialClient = new AmazonSageMakerGeospatialClient();
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();
        var responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        context.Logger.LogInformation("Function handler started with request: " +
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(request));
        if (request.Records != null && request.Records.Any())
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Records found, this is a queue event.
 Processing the queue records.");
            foreach (var message in request.Records)
            {
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context, geoSpatialClient,
 sageMakerClient);
            }
        }
        else if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.vej_export_config))
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Export configuration found, this is an
 export. Start the Vector Enrichment Job (VEJ) export.");

            var outputConfig =

 JsonSerializer.Deserialize<ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig>(
                    request.vej_export_config);

            var exportResponse = await
 geoSpatialClient.ExportVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    Arn = request.vej_arn,
```

```
                    ExecutionRoleArn = request.Role,
                    OutputConfig = outputConfig
                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Export response:
{JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportResponse)}");
            responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "export_eoj_status", exportResponse.ExportStatus.ToString() },
                { "vej_arn", exportResponse.Arn }
            };
        }
        else if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.vej_name))
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Vector Enrichment Job name found,
starting the job.");
            var inputConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig>(
                    request.vej_input_config);

            var jobConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<VectorEnrichmentJobConfig>(
                    request.vej_config);

            var jobResponse = await
geoSpatialClient.StartVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new StartVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    ExecutionRoleArn = request.Role,
                    InputConfig = inputConfig,
                    Name = request.vej_name,
                    JobConfig = jobConfig

                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Job response: " +
JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobResponse));
            responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "vej_arn", jobResponse.Arn },
                { "statusCode", jobResponse.HttpStatusCode.ToString() }
            };
        }
        return responseDictionary;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Process a queue message and check the status of a SageMaker job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The queue message.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context.</param>
    /// <param name="geoClient">The SageMaker GeoSpatial client.</param>
    /// <param name="sageMakerClient">The SageMaker client.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
ILambdaContext context,
        AmazonSageMakerGeospatialClient geoClient, AmazonSageMakerClient
sageMakerClient)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

        // Get information about the SageMaker job.
        var payload = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<QueuePayload>(message.Body);
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Payload token {payload!.token}");
        var token = payload.token;

        if (payload.arguments.ContainsKey("vej_arn"))
        {
            // Use the job ARN and the token to get the job status.
            var job_arn = payload.arguments["vej_arn"];
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Token: {token}, arn {job_arn}");

            var jobInfo = geoClient.GetVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new GetVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    Arn = job_arn
                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Job info: " +
JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobInfo));
            if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.COMPLETED)
            {
                context.Logger.LogInformation($"Status completed, resuming
pipeline...");
                await sageMakerClient.SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccessAsync(
                    new SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccessRequest()
                    {
                        CallbackToken = token,
                        OutputParameters = new List<OutputParameter>()
                        {
                            new OutputParameter()
```

```
                                { Name = "export_status", Value =
 jobInfo.Result.Status }
                        }
                    });
            }
            else if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.FAILED)
            {
                context.Logger.LogInformation($"Status failed, stopping
 pipeline...");
                await sageMakerClient.SendPipelineExecutionStepFailureAsync(
                    new SendPipelineExecutionStepFailureRequest()
                    {
                        CallbackToken = token,
                        FailureReason = jobInfo.Result.ErrorDetails.ErrorMessage
                    });
            }
            else if (jobInfo.Result.Status ==
 VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.IN_PROGRESS)
            {
                // Put this message back in the queue to reprocess later.
                context.Logger.LogInformation(
                    $"Status still in progress, check back later.");
                throw new("Job still running.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public static class PipelineWorkflow
{
    public static IAmazonIdentityManagementService _iamClient = null!;
    public static SageMakerWrapper _sageMakerWrapper = null!;
    public static IAmazonSQS _sqsClient = null!;
    public static IAmazonS3 _s3Client = null!;
    public static IAmazonLambda _lambdaClient = null!;
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    public static string lambdaFunctionName = "SageMakerExampleFunction";
    public static string sageMakerRoleName = "SageMakerExampleRole";
    public static string lambdaRoleName = "SageMakerExampleLambdaRole";
```

```
    private static string[] lambdaRolePolicies = null!;
    private static string[] sageMakerRolePolicies = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var options = new AWSOptions() { Region = RegionEndpoint.USWest2 };
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSageMaker>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSageMakerGeospatial>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonLambda>(options)
                    .AddTransient<SageMakerWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        string queueUrl = "";
        string queueName = _configuration["queueName"];
        string bucketName = _configuration["bucketName"];
        var pipelineName = _configuration["pipelineName"];

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                "Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nThis example scenario will guide you through setting up and
 running an" +
                "\nAmazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS Lambda
 function and an" +
                "\nAmazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse geocode
 job to" +
                "\nreverse geocode addresses in an input file and store the
 results in an export file.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(
                "First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue needed by
 the SageMaker pipeline.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            var lambdaRoleArn = await CreateLambdaRole();
            var sageMakerRoleArn = await CreateSageMakerRole();
            var functionArn = await SetupLambda(lambdaRoleArn, true);
            queueUrl = await SetupQueue(queueName);
            await SetupBucket(bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Now we can create and run our pipeline.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await SetupPipeline(sageMakerRoleArn, functionArn, pipelineName);
            var executionArn = await ExecutePipeline(queueUrl, sageMakerRoleArn,
 pipelineName, bucketName);
            await WaitForPipelineExecution(executionArn);

            await GetOutputResults(bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline
 and runs " +
                              "in SageMaker Studio, follow these instructions:" +
                              "\nhttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/
pipelines-studio.html");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await CleanupResources(true, queueUrl, pipelineName, bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources(true, queueUrl, pipelineName, bucketName);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _sageMakerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SageMakerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _sqsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSQS>();
        _s3Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonS3>();
        _lambdaClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonLambda>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up AWS Lambda, either by updating an existing function or creating a
new function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to use for the
Lambda function.</param>
    /// <param name="askUser">True to ask the user before updating.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the function.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupLambda(string roleArn, bool askUser)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Setting up the Lambda function for the pipeline.");
        var handlerName =
"SageMakerLambda::SageMakerLambda.SageMakerLambdaFunction::FunctionHandler";
        var functionArn = "";
        try
        {
            var functionInfo = await _lambdaClient.GetFunctionAsync(new
GetFunctionRequest()
            {
                FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
            });

            var updateFunction = true;
            if (askUser)
            {
                updateFunction = GetYesNoResponse(
                    $"\tThe Lambda function {lambdaFunctionName} already exists,
do you want to update it?");
            }

            if (updateFunction)
            {
                // Update the Lambda function.
                using var zipMemoryStream = new MemoryStream(await
File.ReadAllBytesAsync("SageMakerLambda.zip"));
                await _lambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
                    new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest()
                    {
                        FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                        ZipFile = zipMemoryStream,
                    });
            }

            functionArn = functionInfo.Configuration.FunctionArn;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tThe Lambda function {lambdaFunctionName} was
not found, creating the new function.");

            // Create the function if it does not already exist.
            using var zipMemoryStream = new MemoryStream(await
File.ReadAllBytesAsync("SageMakerLambda.zip"));
            var createResult = await _lambdaClient.CreateFunctionAsync(
```

```
                new CreateFunctionRequest()
                {
                    FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                    Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
                    Description = "SageMaker example function.",
                    Code = new FunctionCode()
                    {
                        ZipFile = zipMemoryStream
                    },
                    Handler = handlerName,
                    Role = roleArn,
                    Timeout = 30
                });

            functionArn = createResult.FunctionArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\tLambda ready with ARN {functionArn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return functionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by AWS Lambda. Does not create the role if it
already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role ARN.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateLambdaRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        lambdaRolePolicies = new string[]{
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
"AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
"AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
"AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole"
        };

        var roleArn = await GetRoleArnIfExists(lambdaRoleName);
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(roleArn))
```

```
        {
            return roleArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine("\tCreating a role to for AWS Lambda to use.");

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                               "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                               "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                    "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                    "\"Principal\": {" +
                                        $"\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                            "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com
\"," +
                                            "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                            "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                    "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                               "}]" +
                           "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
        foreach (var policy in lambdaRolePolicies)
        {
            await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
                new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    PolicyArn = policy,
                    RoleName = lambdaRoleName
                });
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRole ready with ARN {roleResult.Role.Arn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by SageMaker.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateSageMakerRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        sageMakerRolePolicies = new string[]{
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess",
        };

        var roleArn = await GetRoleArnIfExists(sageMakerRoleName);
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(roleArn))
        {
            return roleArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine("\tCreating a role to use with SageMaker.");

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                                        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                        "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                            "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                            "\"Principal\": {" +
                                                $"\"Service\": [" +
                                                    "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com
\"," +
                                                    "\"sagemaker-
geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                    "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                    "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                                "]" +
                                            "}," +
                                            "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                        "}]" +
                                    "}";
```

```
        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
            });

        foreach (var policy in sageMakerRolePolicies)
        {
            await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
                new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    PolicyArn = policy,
                    RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
                });
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRole ready with ARN {roleResult.Role.Arn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The URL for the queue.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupQueue(string queueName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up queue {queueName}.");

        try
        {
            var queueInfo = await _sqsClient.GetQueueUrlAsync(new
GetQueueUrlRequest()
            { QueueName = queueName });
            return queueInfo.QueueUrl;
        }
        catch (QueueDoesNotExistException)
        {
```

```
            var attrs = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.DelaySeconds,
                    "5"
                },
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds,
                    "5"
                },
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.VisibilityTimeout,
                    "300"
                },
            };

            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                Attributes = attrs,
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            var response = await _sqsClient.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await ConnectLambda(response.QueueUrl);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue ready with Url {response.QueueUrl}.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ConnectLambda(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the
pipeline.");

        var queueAttributes = await _sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
```

```
            new GetQueueAttributesRequest() { QueueUrl = queueUrl, AttributeNames
= new List<string>() { "All" } });
        var queueArn = queueAttributes.QueueARN;

        var eventSource = await _lambdaClient.ListEventSourceMappingsAsync(
             new ListEventSourceMappingsRequest()
             {
                 FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
             });

        if (!eventSource.EventSourceMappings.Any())
        {
            // Only add the event source mapping if it does not already exist.
            await _lambdaClient.CreateEventSourceMappingAsync(
                new CreateEventSourceMappingRequest()
                {
                    EventSourceArn = queueArn,
                    FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                    Enabled = true
                });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the bucket to use for pipeline input and output.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up bucket {bucketName}.");

        var bucketExists = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_s3Client,
            bucketName);

        if (!bucketExists)
        {
            await _s3Client.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
```

```
                BucketRegion = S3Region.USWest2
            });

            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            await _s3Client.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = "samplefiles/latlongtest.csv",
                FilePath = "latlongtest.csv"
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket {bucketName} ready.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display some results from the output directory.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> GetOutputResults(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting output results {bucketName}.");
        string outputKey = "";
        Thread.Sleep(15000);
        var outputFiles = await _s3Client.ListObjectsAsync(
              new ListObjectsRequest()
              {
                  BucketName = bucketName,
                  Prefix = "outputfiles/"
              });

        if (outputFiles.S3Objects.Any())
        {
            var sampleOutput = outputFiles.S3Objects.OrderBy(s =>
s.LastModified).Last();
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOutput file: {sampleOutput.Key}");
            var outputSampleResponse = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(
                new GetObjectRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
```

```
                    Key = sampleOutput.Key
                });
            outputKey = sampleOutput.Key;
            StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(outputSampleResponse.ResponseStream);
            await reader.ReadLineAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\tOutput file contents: \n");
            for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
            {
                if (!reader.EndOfStream)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("\t" + await reader.ReadLineAsync());
                }
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return outputKey;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON
    /// that includes the Lambda, callback, processing, and export jobs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role for the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="functionArn">The ARN of the Lambda function for the
pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name for the pipeline.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string roleArn, string
functionArn, string pipelineName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up the pipeline.");

        var pipelineJson = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync("GeoSpatialPipeline.json");

        // Add the correct function ARN instead of the placeholder.
        pipelineJson = pipelineJson.Replace("*FUNCTION_ARN*", functionArn);

        var pipelineArn = await _sageMakerWrapper.SetupPipeline(pipelineJson,
roleArn, pipelineName,
            "sdk example pipeline", pipelineName);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"\tPipeline set up with ARN {pipelineArn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return pipelineArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue used in the pipeline.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>The pipeline run ARN.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string roleArn,
        string pipelineName,
        string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Starting pipeline execution.");

        var input = $"s3://{bucketName}/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv";
        var output = $"s3://{bucketName}/outputfiles/";

        var executionARN =
            await _sageMakerWrapper.ExecutePipeline(queueUrl, input, output,
                pipelineName, roleArn);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tRun started with ARN {executionARN}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return executionARN;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for a pipeline run to complete.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The pipeline run ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task WaitForPipelineExecution(string executionArn)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for pipeline to finish.");

        PipelineExecutionStatus status;
        do
        {
            status = await
 _sageMakerWrapper.CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(executionArn);
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tStatus is {status}.");
        } while (status == PipelineExecutionStatus.Executing);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPipeline finished with status {status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="askUser">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CleanupResources(
        bool askUser,
        string queueUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete pipeline {pipelineName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting pipeline.");
            // Delete the pipeline.
            await _sageMakerWrapper.DeletePipelineByName(pipelineName);
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl) && (!askUser ||
 GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete queue {queueUrl}? (y/n)")))
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting queue.");
            // Delete the queue.
            await _sqsClient.DeleteQueueAsync(new DeleteQueueRequest(queueUrl));
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon S3 bucket
{bucketName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting bucket.");
            // Delete all objects in the bucket.
            var deleteList = await _s3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
            if (deleteList.KeyCount > 0)
            {
                await _s3Client.DeleteObjectsAsync(new DeleteObjectsRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Objects = deleteList.S3Objects
                        .Select(o => new KeyVersion { Key = o.Key }).ToList()
                });
            }

            // Now delete the bucket.
            await _s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete lambda {lambdaFunctionName}?
(y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting lambda function.");

            await _lambdaClient.DeleteFunctionAsync(new DeleteFunctionRequest()
            {
                FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
            });
        }
```

```
        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {lambdaRoleName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policies and deleting role.");

            foreach (var policy in lambdaRolePolicies)
            {
                await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    RoleName = lambdaRoleName,
                    PolicyArn = policy
                });
            }

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {sageMakerRoleName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policies and deleting role.");

            foreach (var policy in sageMakerRolePolicies)
            {
                await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    RoleName = sageMakerRoleName,
                    PolicyArn = policy
                });
            }

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a role's ARN if it already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) Role to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>The role ARN if it exists, otherwise an empty string.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetRoleArnIfExists(string roleName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Checking for role named {roleName}.");

        try
        {
            var existingRole = await _iamClient.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
            return existingRole.Role.Arn;
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class SagemakerWorkflow {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");
    private static String eventSourceMapping = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <sageMakerRoleName> <lambdaRoleName> <functionFileLocation>
 <functionName> <queueName> <bucketName> <lnglatData> <spatialPipelinePath>
 <pipelineName>\n\n"
                +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    sageMakerRoleName - The name of the Amazon SageMaker role.\n
\n" +
                "    lambdaRoleName - The name of the AWS Lambda role.\n\n" +
                "    functionFileLocation - The file location where the JAR file
 that represents the AWS Lambda function is located.\n\n"
                +
                "    functionName - The name of the AWS Lambda function (for
 example,SageMakerExampleFunction).\n\n" +
```

```
                "    queueName - The name of the Amazon Simple Queue Service
(Amazon SQS) queue.\n\n" +
                "    bucketName - The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service
(Amazon S3) bucket.\n\n" +
                "    lnglatData - The file location of the latlongtest.csv file
required for this use case.\n\n" +
                "    spatialPipelinePath - The file location of the
GeoSpatialPipeline.json file required for this use case.\n\n"
                +
                "    pipelineName - The name of the pipeline to create (for
example, sagemaker-sdk-example-pipeline).\n\n";

        if (args.length != 9) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sageMakerRoleName = args[0];
        String lambdaRoleName = args[1];
        String functionFileLocation = args[2];
        String functionName = args[3];
        String queueName = args[4];
        String bucketName = args[5];
        String lnglatData = args[6];
        String spatialPipelinePath = args[7];
        String pipelineName = args[8];
        String handlerName =
"org.example.SageMakerLambdaFunction::handleRequest";

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SageMakerClient sageMakerClient = SageMakerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        LambdaClient lambdaClient = LambdaClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example
scenario.");
        System.out.println(
                "\nThis example workflow will guide you through setting up and
running an" +
                        "\nAmazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS
Lambda function and an" +
                        "\nAmazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse
geocode job to" +
                        "\nreverse geocode addresses in an input file and store
the results in an export file.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue
needed by the SageMaker pipeline.");
        String lambdaRoleArn = checkLambdaRole(iam, lambdaRoleName);
        String sageMakerRoleArn = checkSageMakerRole(iam, sageMakerRoleName);

        String functionArn = checkFunction(lambdaClient, functionName,
functionFileLocation, lambdaRoleArn,
                handlerName);
        String queueUrl = checkQueue(sqsClient, lambdaClient, queueName,
functionName);
        System.out.println("The queue URL is " + queueUrl);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Setting up bucket " + bucketName);
        if (!checkBucket(s3Client, bucketName)) {
            setupBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
            System.out.println("Put " + lnglatData + " into " + bucketName);
            putS3Object(s3Client, bucketName, "latlongtest.csv", lnglatData);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Now we can create and run our pipeline.");
        setupPipeline(sageMakerClient, spatialPipelinePath, sageMakerRoleArn,
 functionArn, pipelineName);
        String pipelineExecutionARN = executePipeline(sageMakerClient,
 bucketName, queueUrl, sageMakerRoleArn,
                pipelineName);
        System.out.println("The pipeline execution ARN value is " +
 pipelineExecutionARN);
        waitForPipelineExecution(sageMakerClient, pipelineExecutionARN);
        System.out.println("Getting output results " + bucketName);
        getOutputResults(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline and
 runs " +
                "in SageMaker Studio, follow these instructions:" +
                "\nhttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/pipelines-
studio.html");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Do you want to delete the AWS resources used in this
 Workflow? (y/n)");
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String delResources = in.nextLine();
        if (delResources.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            System.out.println("Lets clean up the AWS resources. Wait 30
 seconds");
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
            deleteEventSourceMapping(lambdaClient);
            deleteSQSQueue(sqsClient, queueName);
            listBucketObjects(s3Client, bucketName);
            deleteBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
            deleteLambdaFunction(lambdaClient, functionName);
            deleteLambdaRole(iam, lambdaRoleName);
            deleteSagemakerRole(iam, sageMakerRoleName);
            deletePipeline(sageMakerClient, pipelineName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The AWS Resources were not deleted!");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    private static void readObject(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName, String
key) {
        System.out.println("Output file contents: \n");
        GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .build();

        ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
s3Client.getObjectAsBytes(objectRequest);
        byte[] byteArray = objectBytes.asByteArray();
        String text = new String(byteArray, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
        System.out.println("Text output: " + text);
    }

    // Display some results from the output directory.
    public static void getOutputResults(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        System.out.println("Getting output results {bucketName}.");
        ListObjectsRequest listObjectsRequest = ListObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .prefix("outputfiles/")
                .build();

        ListObjectsResponse response = s3Client.listObjects(listObjectsRequest);
        List<S3Object> s3Objects = response.contents();
        for (S3Object object : s3Objects) {
            readObject(s3Client, bucketName, object.key());
        }
    }

    // Check the status of a pipeline execution.
    public static void waitForPipelineExecution(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient,
String executionArn)
            throws InterruptedException {
        String status;
        int index = 0;
        do {
            DescribePipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
DescribePipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineExecutionArn(executionArn)
```

```
                    .build();

            DescribePipelineExecutionResponse response = sageMakerClient
                    .describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatusAsString();
            System.out.println(index + ". The Status of the pipeline is " +
status);
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4);
            index++;
        } while ("Executing".equals(status));
        System.out.println("Pipeline finished with status " + status);
    }

    // Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    public static void deletePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
pipelineName) {
        DeletePipelineRequest pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest.builder()
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                .build();

        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + pipelineName);
    }

    // Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
    public static void setupPipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
filePath, String roleArn,
            String functionArn, String pipelineName) {
        System.out.println("Setting up the pipeline.");
        JSONParser parser = new JSONParser();

        // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
        try (FileReader reader = new FileReader(filePath)) {
            Object obj = parser.parse(reader);
            JSONObject jsonObject = (JSONObject) obj;
            JSONArray stepsArray = (JSONArray) jsonObject.get("Steps");
            for (Object stepObj : stepsArray) {
                JSONObject step = (JSONObject) stepObj;
                if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                    step.put("FunctionArn", functionArn);
                }
            }
            System.out.println(jsonObject);
```

```
            // Create the pipeline.
            CreatePipelineRequest pipelineRequest =
 CreatePipelineRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineDescription("Java SDK example pipeline")
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                    .pipelineDefinition(jsonObject.toString())
                    .build();

            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (IOException | ParseException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    // Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    public static String executePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
 bucketName, String queueUrl,
            String roleArn, String pipelineName) {
        System.out.println("Starting pipeline execution.");
        String inputBucketLocation = "s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv";
        String output = "s3://" + bucketName + "/outputfiles/";
        Gson gson = new GsonBuilder()
                .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                .setPrettyPrinting().create();

        // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
        List<Parameter> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        Parameter para1 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_execution_role")
                .value(roleArn)
                .build();

        Parameter para2 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_queue_url")
                .value(queueUrl)
                .build();

        String inputJSON = "{\n" +
```

```
                "  \"DataSourceConfig\": {\n" +
                "    \"S3Data\": {\n" +
                "      \"S3Uri\": \"s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv\"\n" +
                "    },\n" +
                "    \"Type\": \"S3_DATA\"\n" +
                "  },\n" +
                "  \"DocumentType\": \"CSV\"\n" +
                "}";

        System.out.println(inputJSON);

        Parameter para3 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_input_config")
                .value(inputJSON)
                .build();

        // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
        VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data.builder()
                .s3Uri(output)
                .build();

        ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig outputConfig =
 ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig.builder()
                .s3Data(jobS3Data)
                .build();

        String gson4 = gson.toJson(outputConfig);
        Parameter para4 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_export_config")
                .value(gson4)
                .build();
        System.out.println("parameter_vej_export_config:" +
 gson.toJson(outputConfig));

        // Create a VectorEnrichmentJobConfig object.
        ReverseGeocodingConfig reverseGeocodingConfig =
 ReverseGeocodingConfig.builder()
                .xAttributeName("Longitude")
                .yAttributeName("Latitude")
                .build();

        VectorEnrichmentJobConfig jobConfig = VectorEnrichmentJobConfig.builder()
                .reverseGeocodingConfig(reverseGeocodingConfig)
```

```
                .build();

        String para5JSON = "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig
\":{\"XAttributeName\":\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}";
        Parameter para5 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_step_1_vej_config")
                .value(para5JSON)
                .build();

        System.out.println("parameter_step_1_vej_config:" +
 gson.toJson(jobConfig));
        parameters.add(para1);
        parameters.add(para2);
        parameters.add(para3);
        parameters.add(para4);
        parameters.add(para5);

        StartPipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
 StartPipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                .pipelineExecutionDescription("Created using Java SDK")
                .pipelineExecutionDisplayName(pipelineName + "-example-
execution")
                .pipelineParameters(parameters)
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                .build();

        StartPipelineExecutionResponse response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn();
    }

    public static void deleteEventSourceMapping(LambdaClient lambdaClient) {
        DeleteEventSourceMappingRequest eventSourceMappingRequest =
 DeleteEventSourceMappingRequest.builder()
                .uuid(eventSourceMapping)
                .build();

        lambdaClient.deleteEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest);
    }

    public static void deleteSagemakerRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies();
        try {
            for (String policy : sageMakerRolePolicies) {
```

```
                // First the policy needs to be detached.
                DetachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .build();

                iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
            }

            // Delete the role.
            DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteLambdaRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies();
        try {
            for (String policy : lambdaRolePolicies) {
                // First the policy needs to be detached.
                DetachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .build();

                iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
            }

            // Delete the role.
            DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the specific AWS Lambda function.
    public static void deleteLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName) {
        try {
            DeleteFunctionRequest request = DeleteFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .build();

            awsLambda.deleteFunction(request);
            System.out.println("*** " + functionName + " was deleted");

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the specific S3 bucket.
    public static void deleteBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();
        s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        System.out.println("*** " + bucketName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public static void listBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            ListObjectsRequest listObjects = ListObjectsRequest
                    .builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            ListObjectsResponse res = s3.listObjects(listObjects);
            List<S3Object> objects = res.contents();
            for (S3Object myValue : objects) {
```

```
                System.out.print("\n The name of the key is " + myValue.key());
                deleteBucketObjects(s3, bucketName, myValue.key());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 objectName) {
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> toDelete = new ArrayList<>();
        toDelete.add(ObjectIdentifier.builder()
                .key(objectName)
                .build());
        try {
            DeleteObjectsRequest dor = DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .delete(Delete.builder()
                            .objects(toDelete).build())
                    .build();

            s3.deleteObjects(dor);
            System.out.println("*** " + bucketName + " objects were deleted.");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the specific Amazon SQS queue.
    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .build();
```

```
            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void putS3Object(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 objectKey, String objectPath) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> metadata = new HashMap<>();
            metadata.put("x-amz-meta-myVal", "test");
            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key("samplefiles/" + objectKey)
                    .metadata(metadata)
                    .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromFile(new File(objectPath)));
            System.out.println("Successfully placed " + objectKey + " into bucket
 " + bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void setupBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
            WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse> waiterResponse =
 s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
```

```
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
    public static String setupQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, LambdaClient
lambdaClient, String queueName,
            String lambdaName) {
        System.out.println("Setting up queue named " + queueName);
        try {
            Map<QueueAttributeName, String> queueAtt = new HashMap<>();
            queueAtt.put(QueueAttributeName.DELAY_SECONDS, "5");
            queueAtt.put(QueueAttributeName.RECEIVE_MESSAGE_WAIT_TIME_SECONDS,
"5");
            queueAtt.put(QueueAttributeName.VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT, "300");
            CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .attributes(queueAtt)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
            System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
            GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);

            connectLambda(sqsClient, lambdaClient,
getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl(), lambdaName);
            System.out.println("Queue ready with Url " +
getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl());
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
```

```
        return "";
    }

    // Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
    public static void connectLambda(SqsClient sqsClient, LambdaClient
lambdaClient, String queueUrl,
            String lambdaName) {
        System.out.println("Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the
pipeline.");
        String queueArn = "";

        // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
        List<QueueAttributeName> atts = new ArrayList<>();
        atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QUEUE_ARN);
        GetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
GetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributeNames(atts)
                .build();

        GetQueueAttributesResponse response =
sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
        Map<String, String> queueAtts = response.attributesAsStrings();
        for (Map.Entry<String, String> queueAtt : queueAtts.entrySet()) {
            System.out.println("Key = " + queueAtt.getKey() + ", Value = " +
queueAtt.getValue());
            queueArn = queueAtt.getValue();
        }

        CreateEventSourceMappingRequest eventSourceMappingRequest =
CreateEventSourceMappingRequest.builder()
                .eventSourceArn(queueArn)
                .functionName(lambdaName)
                .build();

        CreateEventSourceMappingResponse response1 =
lambdaClient.createEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest);
        eventSourceMapping = response1.uuid();
        System.out.println("The mapping between the event source and Lambda
function was successful");
    }

    // Create an AWS Lambda function.
```

```
    public static String createLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String filePath, String role,
            String handler) {
        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            InputStream is = new FileInputStream(filePath);
            SdkBytes fileToUpload = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(is);
            FunctionCode code = FunctionCode.builder()
                    .zipFile(fileToUpload)
                    .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest =
CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .description("SageMaker example function.")
                    .code(code)
                    .handler(handler)
                    .runtime(Runtime.JAVA11)
                    .timeout(200)
                    .memorySize(1024)
                    .role(role)
                    .build();

            // Create a Lambda function using a waiter.
            CreateFunctionResponse functionResponse =
awsLambda.createFunction(functionRequest);
            GetFunctionRequest getFunctionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .build();
            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter.waitUntilFunctionExists(getFunctionRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("The function ARN is " +
functionResponse.functionArn());
            return functionResponse.functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException | FileNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createSageMakerRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
```

```
        String[] sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies();
        System.out.println("Creating a role to use with SageMaker.");
        String assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": [" +
                "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "]" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(assumeRolePolicy)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse roleResult = iam.createRole(request);

            // Attach the policies to the role.
            for (String policy : sageMakerRolePolicies) {
                AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .build();

                iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
            }

            // Allow time for the role to be ready.
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
            System.out.println("Role ready with ARN " + roleResult.role().arn());
            return roleResult.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        return "";
    }

    private static String createLambdaRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies();
        String assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": [" +
                "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "]" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(assumeRolePolicy)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse roleResult = iam.createRole(request);

            // Attach the policies to the role.
            for (String policy : lambdaRolePolicies) {
                AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .build();

                iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
```

```
            }

            // Allow time for the role to be ready.
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
            System.out.println("Role ready with ARN " + roleResult.role().arn());
            return roleResult.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());

        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String checkFunction(LambdaClient lambdaClient, String
functionName, String filePath, String role,
            String handler) {
        System.out.println("Create an AWS Lambda function used in this
workflow.");
        String functionArn;
        try {
            // Does this function already exist.
            GetFunctionRequest functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .build();

            GetFunctionResponse response =
lambdaClient.getFunction(functionRequest);
            functionArn = response.configuration().functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            functionArn = createLambdaFunction(lambdaClient, functionName,
filePath, role, handler);
        }
        return functionArn;
    }

    // Check to see if the specific S3 bucket exists. If the S3 bucket exists,
this
    // method returns true.
    public static boolean checkBucket(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
```

```
        try {
            HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3.headBucket(headBucketRequest);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " exists");
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon SQS queue exists. If not, this method creates
a
    // new queue
    // and returns the ARN value.
    public static String checkQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, LambdaClient
lambdaClient, String queueName,
            String lambdaName) {
        System.out.println("Creating a queue for this use case.");
        String queueUrl;
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest request = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(request);
            queueUrl = response.queueUrl();
            System.out.println(queueUrl);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            queueUrl = setupQueue(sqsClient, lambdaClient, queueName,
lambdaName);
        }
        return queueUrl;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Lambda role exists. If not, this method creates it.
    public static String checkLambdaRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        System.out.println("Creating a role to for AWS Lambda to use.");
```

```
        String roleArn;
        try {
            GetRoleRequest roleRequest = GetRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            GetRoleResponse response = iam.getRole(roleRequest);
            roleArn = response.role().arn();
            System.out.println(roleArn);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            roleArn = createLambdaRole(iam, roleName);
        }
        return roleArn;
    }

    // Checks to see if the SageMaker role exists. If not, this method creates
 it.
    public static String checkSageMakerRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        System.out.println("Creating a role to for AWS SageMaker to use.");
        String roleArn;
        try {
            GetRoleRequest roleRequest = GetRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            GetRoleResponse response = iam.getRole(roleRequest);
            roleArn = response.role().arn();
            System.out.println(roleArn);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            roleArn = createSageMakerRole(iam, roleName);
        }
        return roleArn;
    }

    private static String[] getSageMakerRolePolicies() {
        String[] sageMakerRolePolicies = new String[3];
        sageMakerRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonSageMakerFullAccess";
        sageMakerRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess";
```

```
        sageMakerRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess";
        return sageMakerRolePolicies;
    }

    private static String[] getLambdaRolePolicies() {
        String[] lambdaRolePolicies = new String[5];
        lambdaRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonSageMakerFullAccess";
        lambdaRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess";
        lambdaRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess";
        lambdaRolePolicies[3] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/"
                + "AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy";
        lambdaRolePolicies[4] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole";
        return lambdaRolePolicies;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following file excerpt contains functions that use the SageMaker AI client to manage a pipeline.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";

import {
  CreateRoleCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  GetRoleCommand,
  ListPoliciesCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

import {
  PublishLayerVersionCommand,
  DeleteLayerVersionCommand,
  CreateFunctionCommand,
  Runtime,
  DeleteFunctionCommand,
  CreateEventSourceMappingCommand,
  DeleteEventSourceMappingCommand,
  GetFunctionCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-lambda";

import {
  PutObjectCommand,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  GetObjectCommand,
  ListObjectsV2Command,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import {
  CreatePipelineCommand,
  DeletePipelineCommand,
  DescribePipelineCommand,
  DescribePipelineExecutionCommand,
  PipelineExecutionStatus,
  StartPipelineExecutionCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker";
```

```
import { VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType } from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial";

import {
  CreateQueueCommand,
  DeleteQueueCommand,
  GetQueueAttributesCommand,
  GetQueueUrlCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

/**
 * Create the AWS IAM role that will be assumed by AWS Lambda.
 * @param {{ name: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient }}
 props
 */
export async function createLambdaExecutionRole({ name, iamClient }) {
  const createRole = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: name,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
          Version: "2012-10-17",
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Action: ["sts:AssumeRole"],
              Principal: { Service: ["lambda.amazonaws.com"] },
            },
          ],
        }),
      }),
    );

  let role = null;

  try {
    const { Role } = await createRole();
    role = Role;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
```

```
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Role } = await iamClient.send(
        new GetRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }),
      );
      role = Role;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: role.Arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an AWS IAM policy that will be attached to the AWS IAM role assumed by
 the AWS Lambda function.
 * The policy grants permission to work with Amazon SQS, Amazon CloudWatch, and
 Amazon SageMaker.
 * @param {{name: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient,
 pipelineExecutionRoleArn: string}} props
 */
export async function createLambdaExecutionPolicy({
  name,
  iamClient,
  pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
}) {
  const policyConfig = {
    Version: "2012-10-17",
    Statement: [
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        Action: [
          "sqs:ReceiveMessage",
          "sqs:DeleteMessage",
          "sqs:GetQueueAttributes",
          "logs:CreateLogGroup",
          "logs:CreateLogStream",
          "logs:PutLogEvents",
```

```
          "sagemaker-geospatial:StartVectorEnrichmentJob",
          "sagemaker-geospatial:GetVectorEnrichmentJob",
          "sagemaker:SendPipelineExecutionStepFailure",
          "sagemaker:SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccess",
          "sagemaker-geospatial:ExportVectorEnrichmentJob",
        ],
        Resource: "*",
      },
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        // The AWS Lambda function needs permission to pass the pipeline
 execution role to
        // the StartVectorEnrichmentCommand. This restriction prevents an AWS
 Lambda function
        // from elevating privileges. For more information, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_use_passrole.html
        Action: ["iam:PassRole"],
        Resource: `${pipelineExecutionRoleArn}`,
        Condition: {
          StringEquals: {
            "iam:PassedToService": [
              "sagemaker.amazonaws.com",
              "sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com",
            ],
          },
        },
      },
    ],
  };

  const createPolicy = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify(policyConfig),
        PolicyName: name,
      }),
    );

  let policy = null;

  try {
    const { Policy } = await createPolicy();
    policy = Policy;
```

```
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Policies } = await iamClient.send(new ListPoliciesCommand({}));
      if (Policies) {
        policy = Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === name);
      } else {
        throw new Error("No policies found.");
      }
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: policy?.Arn,
    policyConfig,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeletePolicyCommand({ PolicyArn: policy?.Arn }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Attach an AWS IAM policy to an AWS IAM role.
 * @param {{roleName: string, policyArn: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/
client-iam').IAMClient}} props
 */
export async function attachPolicy({ roleName, policyArn, iamClient }) {
  const attachPolicyCommand = new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
  });

  await iamClient.send(attachPolicyCommand);
  return {
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: roleName,
          PolicyArn: policyArn,
        }),
```

```
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an AWS Lambda layer that contains the Amazon SageMaker and Amazon
 SageMaker Geospatial clients
 * in the runtime. The default runtime supports v3.188.0 of the JavaScript SDK.
 The Amazon SageMaker
 * Geospatial client wasn't introduced until v3.221.0.
 * @param {{ name: string, lambdaClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').LambdaClient }} props
 */
export async function createLambdaLayer({ name, lambdaClient }) {
  const layerPath = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url)}lambda/nodejs.zip`;
  const { LayerVersionArn, Version } = await lambdaClient.send(
    new PublishLayerVersionCommand({
      LayerName: name,
      Content: {
        ZipFile: Uint8Array.from(readFileSync(layerPath)),
      },
    }),
  );

  return {
    versionArn: LayerVersionArn,
    version: Version,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await lambdaClient.send(
        new DeleteLayerVersionCommand({
          LayerName: name,
          VersionNumber: Version,
        }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Deploy the AWS Lambda function that will be used to respond to Amazon
 SageMaker pipeline
 * execution steps.
```

```
 * @param {{roleArn: string, name: string, lambdaClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').LambdaClient, layerVersionArn: string}} props
 */
export async function createLambdaFunction({
  name,
  roleArn,
  lambdaClient,
  layerVersionArn,
}) {
  const lambdaPath = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
    import.meta.url,
  )}lambda/dist/index.mjs.zip`;

  // If a function of the same name already exists, return that
  // function's ARN instead. By default this is
  // "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-function", so collisions are
  // unlikely.
  const createFunction = async () => {
    try {
      return await lambdaClient.send(
        new CreateFunctionCommand({
          Code: {
            ZipFile: Uint8Array.from(readFileSync(lambdaPath)),
          },
          Runtime: Runtime.nodejs18x,
          Handler: "index.handler",
          Layers: [layerVersionArn],
          FunctionName: name,
          Role: roleArn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "ResourceConflictException"
      ) {
        const { Configuration } = await lambdaClient.send(
          new GetFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: name }),
        );
        return Configuration;
      }
      throw caught;
    }
  };
```

```
  // Function creation fails if the Role is not ready. This retries
  // function creation until it succeeds or it times out.
  const { FunctionArn } = await retry(
    { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 },
    createFunction,
  );

  return {
    arn: FunctionArn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await lambdaClient.send(
        new DeleteFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: name }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * This uploads some sample coordinate data to an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * The Amazon SageMaker Geospatial vector enrichment job will take the simple
 Lat/Long
 * coordinates in this file and augment them with more detailed location data.
 * @param {{bucketName: string, s3Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').S3Client}}
 props
 */
export async function uploadCSVDataToS3({ bucketName, s3Client }) {
  const s3Path = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
    import.meta.url,
  )}../../../../../scenarios/features/sagemaker_pipelines/resources/
latlongtest.csv`;

  await s3Client.send(
    new PutObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucketName,
      Key: "input/sample_data.csv",
      Body: readFileSync(s3Path),
    }),
  );
}

/**
 * Create the AWS IAM role that will be assumed by the Amazon SageMaker pipeline.
```

```
 * @param {{name: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient,
 wait: (ms: number) => Promise<void>}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerRole({ name, iamClient, wait }) {
  let role = null;

  const createRole = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: name,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
          Version: "2012-10-17",
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Action: ["sts:AssumeRole"],
              Principal: {
                Service: [
                  "sagemaker.amazonaws.com",
                  "sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com",
                ],
              },
            },
          ],
        }),
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { Role } = await createRole();
    role = Role;
    // Wait for the role to be ready.
    await wait(10);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Role } = await iamClient.send(
        new GetRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }),
      );
      role = Role;
    } else {
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: role.Arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create the Amazon SageMaker execution policy. This policy grants permission to
 * invoke the AWS Lambda function, read/write to the Amazon S3 bucket, and send
 messages to
 * the Amazon SQS queue.
 * @param {{ name: string, sqsQueueArn: string, lambdaArn: string, iamClient:
 import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient, s3BucketName: string}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerExecutionPolicy({
  sqsQueueArn,
  lambdaArn,
  iamClient,
  name,
  s3BucketName,
}) {
  const policyConfig = {
    Version: "2012-10-17",
    Statement: [
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        Action: ["lambda:InvokeFunction"],
        Resource: lambdaArn,
      },
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        Action: ["s3:*"],
        Resource: [
          `arn:aws:s3:::${s3BucketName}`,
          `arn:aws:s3:::${s3BucketName}/*`,
        ],
      },
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
```

```
        Action: ["sqs:SendMessage"],
        Resource: sqsQueueArn,
      },
    ],
  };

  const createPolicy = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify(policyConfig),
        PolicyName: name,
      }),
    );

  let policy = null;

  try {
    const { Policy } = await createPolicy();
    policy = Policy;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Policies } = await iamClient.send(new ListPoliciesCommand({}));
      if (Policies) {
        policy = Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === name);
      } else {
        throw new Error("No policies found.");
      }
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: policy?.Arn,
    policyConfig,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeletePolicyCommand({ PolicyArn: policy?.Arn }));
    },
  };
}
```

```
/**
 * Create the Amazon SageMaker pipeline using a JSON pipeline definition. The
 definition
 * can also be provided as an Amazon S3 object using
 PipelineDefinitionS3Location.
 * @param {{roleArn: string, name: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/
client-sagemaker').SageMakerClient}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerPipeline({
  // Assumes an AWS IAM role has been created for this pipeline.
  roleArn,
  name,
  // Assumes an AWS Lambda function has been created for this pipeline.
  functionArn,
  sagemakerClient,
}) {
  const pipelineDefinition = readFileSync(
    // dirnameFromMetaUrl is a local utility function. You can find its
 implementation
    // on GitHub.
    `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
      import.meta.url,
    )}../../../../../scenarios/features/sagemaker_pipelines/resources/
GeoSpatialPipeline.json`,
  )
    .toString()
    .replace(/\*FUNCTION_ARN\*/g, functionArn);

  let arn = null;

  const createPipeline = () =>
    sagemakerClient.send(
      new CreatePipelineCommand({
        PipelineName: name,
        PipelineDefinition: pipelineDefinition,
        RoleArn: roleArn,
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { PipelineArn } = await createPipeline();
    arn = PipelineArn;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
```

```
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ValidationException" &&
      caught.message.includes(
        "Pipeline names must be unique within an AWS account and region",
      )
    ) {
      const { PipelineArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DescribePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
      arn = PipelineArn;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DeletePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an Amazon SQS queue. The Amazon SageMaker pipeline will send messages
 * to this queue that are then processed by the AWS Lambda function.
 * @param {{name: string, sqsClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-sqs').SQSClient}}
 props
 */
export async function createSQSQueue({ name, sqsClient }) {
  const createSqsQueue = () =>
    sqsClient.send(
      new CreateQueueCommand({
        QueueName: name,
        Attributes: {
          DelaySeconds: "5",
          ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "5",
          VisibilityTimeout: "300",
        },
      }),
    );
```

```
  let queueUrl = null;
  try {
    const { QueueUrl } = await createSqsQueue();
    queueUrl = QueueUrl;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "QueueNameExists") {
      const { QueueUrl } = await sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueUrlCommand({ QueueName: name }),
      );
      queueUrl = QueueUrl;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  const { Attributes } = await retry(
    { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 },
    () =>
      sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
          QueueUrl: queueUrl,
          AttributeNames: ["QueueArn"],
        }),
      ),
  );

  return {
    queueUrl,
    queueArn: Attributes.QueueArn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await sqsClient.send(new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queueUrl }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Configure the AWS Lambda function to long poll for messages from the Amazon
 SQS
 * queue.
 * @param {{
 *   paginateListEventSourceMappings: () => Generator<import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').ListEventSourceMappingsCommandOutput>,
 *   lambdaName: string,
 *   queueArn: string,
```

```
 *   lambdaClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-lambda').LambdaClient}} props
 */
export async function configureLambdaSQSEventSource({
  lambdaName,
  queueArn,
  lambdaClient,
  paginateListEventSourceMappings,
}) {
  let uuid = null;
  const createEvenSourceMapping = () =>
    lambdaClient.send(
      new CreateEventSourceMappingCommand({
        EventSourceArn: queueArn,
        FunctionName: lambdaName,
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { UUID } = await createEvenSourceMapping();
    uuid = UUID;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ResourceConflictException"
    ) {
      const paginator = paginateListEventSourceMappings(
        { client: lambdaClient },
        {},
      );
      /**
       * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').EventSourceMappingConfiguration[]}
       */
      const eventSourceMappings = [];
      for await (const page of paginator) {
        eventSourceMappings.concat(page.EventSourceMappings || []);
      }

      const { Configuration } = await lambdaClient.send(
        new GetFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: lambdaName }),
      );

      uuid = eventSourceMappings.find(
        (mapping) =>
```

```
          mapping.EventSourceArn === queueArn &&
          mapping.FunctionArn === Configuration.FunctionArn,
      ).UUID;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await lambdaClient.send(
        new DeleteEventSourceMappingCommand({
          UUID: uuid,
        }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an Amazon S3 bucket that will store the simple coordinate file as input
 * and the output of the Amazon SageMaker Geospatial vector enrichment job.
 * @param {{
 *   s3Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').S3Client,
 *   name: string,
 *   paginateListObjectsV2: () => Generator<import('@aws-sdk/client-
s3').ListObjectsCommandOutput>
 * }} props
 */
export async function createS3Bucket({
  name,
  s3Client,
  paginateListObjectsV2,
}) {
  await s3Client.send(new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: name }));

  return {
    cleanUp: async () => {
      const paginator = paginateListObjectsV2(
        { client: s3Client },
        { Bucket: name },
      );
      for await (const page of paginator) {
        const objects = page.Contents;
```

```
        if (objects) {
          for (const object of objects) {
            await s3Client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({ Bucket: name, Key: object.Key }),
            );
          }
        }
      }
      await s3Client.send(new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: name }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Start the execution of the Amazon SageMaker pipeline. Parameters that are
 * passed in are used in the AWS Lambda function.
 * @param {{
 *   name: string,
 *   sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker').SageMakerClient,
 *   roleArn: string,
 *   queueUrl: string,
 *   s3InputBucketName: string,
 * }} props
 */
export async function startPipelineExecution({
  sagemakerClient,
  name,
  bucketName,
  roleArn,
  queueUrl,
}) {
  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job requests CSV data. This configuration points to a
 CSV
   * file in an Amazon S3 bucket.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig}
   */
  const inputConfig = {
    DataSourceConfig: {
      S3Data: {
        S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/input/sample_data.csv`,
      },
    },
```

```
    DocumentType: VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV,
  };

  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job adds additional data to the source CSV. This
 configuration points
   * to an Amazon S3 prefix where the output will be stored.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig}
   */
  const outputConfig = {
    S3Data: {
      S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/output/`,
    },
  };

  /**
   * This job will be a Reverse Geocoding Vector Enrichment Job. Reverse
 Geocoding requires
   * latitude and longitude values.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobConfig}
   */
  const jobConfig = {
    ReverseGeocodingConfig: {
      XAttributeName: "Longitude",
      YAttributeName: "Latitude",
    },
  };

  const { PipelineExecutionArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
    new StartPipelineExecutionCommand({
      PipelineName: name,
      PipelineExecutionDisplayName: `${name}-example-execution`,
      PipelineParameters: [
        { Name: "parameter_execution_role", Value: roleArn },
        { Name: "parameter_queue_url", Value: queueUrl },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_input_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(inputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_export_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(outputConfig),
```

```
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_step_1_vej_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(jobConfig),
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  return {
    arn: PipelineExecutionArn,
  };
}

/**
 * Poll the executing pipeline until the status is 'SUCCEEDED', 'STOPPED', or
 'FAILED'.
 * @param {{ arn: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
sagemaker').SageMakerClient, wait: (ms: number) => Promise<void>}} props
 */
export async function waitForPipelineComplete({ arn, sagemakerClient, wait }) {
  const command = new DescribePipelineExecutionCommand({
    PipelineExecutionArn: arn,
  });

  let complete = false;
  const intervalInSeconds = 15;
  const COMPLETION_STATUSES = [
    PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.SUCCEEDED,
  ];

  do {
    const { PipelineExecutionStatus: status, FailureReason } =
      await sagemakerClient.send(command);

    complete = COMPLETION_STATUSES.includes(status);

    if (!complete) {
      console.log(
        `Pipeline is ${status}. Waiting ${intervalInSeconds} seconds before
 checking again.`,
      );
```

```
      await wait(intervalInSeconds);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED) {
      throw new Error(`Pipeline failed because: ${FailureReason}`);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED) {
      throw new Error("Pipeline was forcefully stopped.");
    } else {
      console.log(`Pipeline execution ${status}.`);
    }
  } while (!complete);
}

/**
 * Return the string value of an Amazon S3 object.
 * @param {{ bucket: string, key: string, s3Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-
s3').S3Client}} param0
 */
export async function getObject({ bucket, s3Client }) {
  const prefix = "output/";
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(
    new ListObjectsV2Command({ MaxKeys: 1, Bucket: bucket, Prefix: prefix }),
  );

  if (!Contents.length) {
    throw new Error("No objects found in bucket.");
  }

  // Find the CSV file.
  const outputObject = Contents.find((obj) => obj.Key.endsWith(".csv"));

  if (!outputObject) {
    throw new Error(`No CSV file found in bucket with the prefix "${prefix}".`);
  }

  const { Body } = await s3Client.send(
    new GetObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucket,
      Key: outputObject.Key,
    }),
  );

  return Body.transformToString();
}
```

This function is an excerpt from a file that uses the preceding library functions to set up a SageMaker AI pipeline, execute it, and delete all created resources.

```
import { retry, wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import {
  attachPolicy,
  configureLambdaSQSEventSource,
  createLambdaExecutionPolicy,
  createLambdaExecutionRole,
  createLambdaFunction,
  createLambdaLayer,
  createS3Bucket,
  createSQSQueue,
  createSagemakerExecutionPolicy,
  createSagemakerPipeline,
  createSagemakerRole,
  getObject,
  startPipelineExecution,
  uploadCSVDataToS3,
  waitForPipelineComplete,
} from "./lib.js";
import { MESSAGES } from "./messages.js";

export class SageMakerPipelinesWkflw {
  names = {
    LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE: "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-execution-role",
    LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY:
      "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-execution-role-policy",
    LAMBDA_FUNCTION: "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-function",
    LAMBDA_LAYER: "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-layer",
    SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE: "sagemaker-wkflw-pipeline-execution-role",
    SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY:
      "sagemaker-wkflw-pipeline-execution-role-policy",
    SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE: "sagemaker-wkflw-pipeline",
    SQS_QUEUE: "sagemaker-wkflw-sqs-queue",
    S3_BUCKET: `sagemaker-wkflw-s3-bucket-${Date.now()}`,
  };

  cleanUpFunctions = [];

  /**
   * @param {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js").Prompter} prompter
   * @param {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/logger.js").Logger} logger
```

```
   * @param {{ IAM: import("@aws-sdk/client-iam").IAMClient, Lambda:
 import("@aws-sdk/client-lambda").LambdaClient, SageMaker: import("@aws-sdk/
client-sagemaker").SageMakerClient, S3: import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client,
 SQS: import("@aws-sdk/client-sqs").SQSClient }} clients
   */
  constructor(prompter, logger, clients) {
    this.prompter = prompter;
    this.logger = logger;
    this.clients = clients;
  }

  async run() {
    try {
      await this.startWorkflow();
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(err);
      throw err;
    } finally {
      this.logger.logSeparator();
      const doCleanUp = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: "Clean up resources?",
      });
      if (doCleanUp) {
        await this.cleanUp();
      }
    }
  }

  async cleanUp() {
    // Run all of the clean up functions. If any fail, we log the error and
 continue.
    // This ensures all clean up functions are run.
    for (let i = this.cleanUpFunctions.length - 1; i >= 0; i--) {
      await retry(
        { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60, swallowError: true },
        this.cleanUpFunctions[i],
      );
    }
  }

  async startWorkflow() {
    this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.greetingHeader);
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.greeting);
```

```
    this.logger.logSeparator();
    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingRole.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    // Create an IAM role that will be assumed by the AWS Lambda function. This
function
    // is triggered by Amazon SQS messages and calls SageMaker and SageMaker
GeoSpatial actions.
    const { arn: lambdaExecutionRoleArn, cleanUp: lambdaExecutionRoleCleanUp } =
      await createLambdaExecutionRole({
        name: this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
        iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      });
    // Add a clean up step to a stack for every resource created.
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaExecutionRoleCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.roleCreated.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingRole.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    // Create an IAM role that will be assumed by the SageMaker pipeline. The
pipeline
    // sends messages to an Amazon SQS queue and puts/retrieves Amazon S3
objects.
    const {
      arn: pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
      cleanUp: pipelineExecutionRoleCleanUp,
    } = await createSagemakerRole({
```

```
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      wait,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineExecutionRoleCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.roleCreated.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    // Create an IAM policy that allows the AWS Lambda function to invoke
  SageMaker APIs.
    const {
      arn: lambdaExecutionPolicyArn,
      policy: lambdaPolicy,
      cleanUp: lambdaExecutionPolicyCleanUp,
    } = await createLambdaExecutionPolicy({
      name: this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY,
      s3BucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaExecutionPolicyCleanUp);

    console.log(JSON.stringify(lambdaPolicy, null, 2), "\n");

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.attachPolicy
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY)
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE),
    );

    await this.prompter.checkContinue();

    // Attach the Lambda execution policy to the execution role.
    const { cleanUp: lambdaExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp } = await attachPolicy({
      roleName: this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      policyArn: lambdaExecutionPolicyArn,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
```

```
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.policyAttached);

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    // Create Lambda layer for SageMaker packages.
    const { versionArn: layerVersionArn, cleanUp: lambdaLayerCleanUp } =
      await createLambdaLayer({
        name: this.names.LAMBDA_LAYER,
        lambdaClient: this.clients.Lambda,
      });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaLayerCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingFunction.replace(
        "${FUNCTION_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
      ),
    );

    // Create the Lambda function with the execution role.
    const { arn: lambdaArn, cleanUp: lambdaCleanUp } =
      await createLambdaFunction({
        roleArn: lambdaExecutionRoleArn,
        lambdaClient: this.clients.Lambda,
        name: this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
        layerVersionArn,
      });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.functionCreated.replace(
        "${FUNCTION_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingSQSQueue.replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );
```

```
    // Create an SQS queue for the SageMaker pipeline.
    const {
      queueUrl,
      queueArn,
      cleanUp: queueCleanUp,
    } = await createSQSQueue({
      name: this.names.SQS_QUEUE,
      sqsClient: this.clients.SQS,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(queueCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.sqsQueueCreated.replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.configuringLambdaSQSEventSource
        .replace("${LAMBDA_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION)
        .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    // Configure the SQS queue as an event source for the Lambda.
    const { cleanUp: lambdaSQSEventSourceCleanUp } =
      await configureLambdaSQSEventSource({
        lambdaArn,
        lambdaName: this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
        queueArn,
        sqsClient: this.clients.SQS,
        lambdaClient: this.clients.Lambda,
      });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaSQSEventSourceCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.lambdaSQSEventSourceConfigured
        .replace("${LAMBDA_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION)
        .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();
```

```
    // Create an IAM policy that allows the SageMaker pipeline to invoke AWS
Lambda
    // and send messages to the Amazon SQS queue.
    const {
      arn: pipelineExecutionPolicyArn,
      policy: sagemakerPolicy,
      cleanUp: pipelineExecutionPolicyCleanUp,
    } = await createSagemakerExecutionPolicy({
      sqsQueueArn: queueArn,
      lambdaArn,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY,
      s3BucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineExecutionPolicyCleanUp);

    console.log(JSON.stringify(sagemakerPolicy, null, 2));

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.attachPolicy
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY)
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE),
    );

    await this.prompter.checkContinue();

    // Attach the SageMaker execution policy to the execution role.
    const { cleanUp: pipelineExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp } = await attachPolicy({
      roleName: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      policyArn: pipelineExecutionPolicyArn,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp);
    // Wait for the role to be ready. If the role is used immediately,
    // the pipeline will fail.
    await wait(5);

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.policyAttached);

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingPipeline.replace(
        "${PIPELINE_NAME}",
```

```
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
      ),
    );

    // Create the SageMaker pipeline.
    const { cleanUp: pipelineCleanUp } = await createSagemakerPipeline({
      roleArn: pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
      functionArn: lambdaArn,
      sagemakerClient: this.clients.SageMaker,
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.pipelineCreated.replace(
        "${PIPELINE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingS3Bucket.replace("${BUCKET_NAME}", this.names.S3_BUCKET),
    );

    // Create an S3 bucket for storing inputs and outputs.
    const { cleanUp: s3BucketCleanUp } = await createS3Bucket({
      name: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      s3Client: this.clients.S3,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(s3BucketCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.s3BucketCreated.replace("${BUCKET_NAME}", this.names.S3_BUCKET),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.uploadingInputData.replace(
        "${BUCKET_NAME}",
        this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      ),
```

```
    );

    // Upload CSV Lat/Long data to S3.
    await uploadCSVDataToS3({
      bucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      s3Client: this.clients.S3,
    });

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.inputDataUploaded);

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.prompter.checkContinue(MESSAGES.executePipeline);

    // Execute the SageMaker pipeline.
    const { arn: pipelineExecutionArn } = await startPipelineExecution({
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
      sagemakerClient: this.clients.SageMaker,
      roleArn: pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
      bucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      queueUrl,
    });

    // Wait for the pipeline execution to finish.
    await waitForPipelineComplete({
      arn: pipelineExecutionArn,
      sagemakerClient: this.clients.SageMaker,
      wait,
    });

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.outputDelay);

    // The getOutput function will throw an error if the output is not
    // found. The retry function will retry a failed function call once
    // ever 10 seconds for 2 minutes.
    const output = await retry({ intervalInMs: 10000, maxRetries: 12 }, () =>
      getObject({
        bucket: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
        s3Client: this.clients.S3,
      }),
    );
```

```
    this.logger.logSeparator();
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.outputDataRetrieved);
    console.log(output.split("\n").slice(0, 6).join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
private var eventSourceMapping = ""

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
          <sageMakerRoleName> <lambdaRoleName> <functionName> <functionKey>
 <queueName> <bucketName> <bucketFunction> <lnglatData> <spatialPipelinePath>
 <pipelineName>

    Where:
        sageMakerRoleName - The name of the Amazon SageMaker role.
        lambdaRoleName - The name of the AWS Lambda role.
        functionName - The name of the AWS Lambda function (for
 example,SageMakerExampleFunction).
```

```
        functionKey - The name of the Amazon S3 key name that represents the
Lambda function (for example, SageMakerLambda.zip).
        queueName - The name of the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS)
queue.
        bucketName - The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
bucket.
        bucketFunction - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
Lambda ZIP file.
        lnglatData - The file location of the latlongtest.csv file required for
this use case.
        spatialPipelinePath - The file location of the GeoSpatialPipeline.json
file required for this use case.
        pipelineName - The name of the pipeline to create (for example,
sagemaker-sdk-example-pipeline).
    """

    if (args.size != 10) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val sageMakerRoleName = args[0]
    val lambdaRoleName = args[1]
    val functionKey = args[2]
    val functionName = args[3]
    val queueName = args[4]
    val bucketName = args[5]
    val bucketFunction = args[6]
    val lnglatData = args[7]
    val spatialPipelinePath = args[8]
    val pipelineName = args[9]
    val handlerName = "org.example.SageMakerLambdaFunction::handleRequest"

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example scenario.")
    println(
        """
         This example workflow will guide you through setting up and running an
         Amazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS Lambda function and
an
         Amazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse geocode job to
         reverse geocode addresses in an input file and store the results in an
export file.
        """.trimIndent(),
```

```
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue needed by the
 SageMaker pipeline.")
    val lambdaRoleArn: String = checkLambdaRole(lambdaRoleName)
    val sageMakerRoleArn: String = checkSageMakerRole(sageMakerRoleName)
    val functionArn = checkFunction(functionName, bucketFunction, functionKey,
 handlerName, lambdaRoleArn)
    val queueUrl = checkQueue(queueName, functionName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Setting up bucket $bucketName")
    if (!checkBucket(bucketName)) {
        setupBucket(bucketName)
        println("Put $lnglatData into $bucketName")
        val objectKey = "samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
        putS3Object(bucketName, objectKey, lnglatData)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Now we can create and run our pipeline.")
    setupPipeline(spatialPipelinePath, sageMakerRoleArn, functionArn,
 pipelineName)
    val pipelineExecutionARN = executePipeline(bucketName, queueUrl,
 sageMakerRoleArn, pipelineName)
    println("The pipeline execution ARN value is $pipelineExecutionARN")
    waitForPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionARN)
    println("Wait 30 secs to get output results $bucketName")
    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30)
    getOutputResults(bucketName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
            The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline and runs in
 SageMaker Studio, follow these instructions:
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/pipelines-
studio.html
        """.trimIndent(),
```

```
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Do you want to delete the AWS resources used in this Workflow? (y/
n)")
    val `in` = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val delResources = `in`.nextLine()
    if (delResources.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        println("Lets clean up the AWS resources. Wait 30 seconds")
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30)
        deleteEventSourceMapping(functionName)
        deleteSQSQueue(queueName)
        listBucketObjects(bucketName)
        deleteBucket(bucketName)
        delLambdaFunction(functionName)
        deleteLambdaRole(lambdaRoleName)
        deleteSagemakerRole(sageMakerRoleName)
        deletePipeline(pipelineName)
    } else {
        println("The AWS Resources were not deleted!")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.")
    println(DASHES)
}

// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
suspend fun deletePipeline(pipelineNameVal: String) {
    val pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest {
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $pipelineNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSagemakerRole(roleNameVal: String) {
    val sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies()
    IamClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { iam ->
```

```
        for (policy in sageMakerRolePolicies) {
            // First the policy needs to be detached.
            val rolePolicyRequest = DetachRolePolicyRequest {
                policyArn = policy
                roleName = roleNameVal
            }
            iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)
        }

        // Delete the role.
        val roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteLambdaRole(roleNameVal: String) {
    val lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies()
    IamClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { iam ->
        for (policy in lambdaRolePolicies) {
            // First the policy needs to be detached.
            val rolePolicyRequest = DetachRolePolicyRequest {
                policyArn = policy
                roleName = roleNameVal
            }
            iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)
        }

        // Delete the role.
        val roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun delLambdaFunction(myFunctionName: String) {
    val request = DeleteFunctionRequest {
        functionName = myFunctionName
    }
```

```
    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.deleteFunction(request)
        println("$myFunctionName was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucket(bucketName: String?) {
    val request = DeleteBucketRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
    }
    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteBucket(request)
        println("The $bucketName was successfully deleted!")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucketObjects(bucketName: String, objectName: String?) {
    val toDelete = ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier>()
    val obId = ObjectIdentifier {
        key = objectName
    }
    toDelete.add(obId)
    val delOb = Delete {
        objects = toDelete
    }
    val dor = DeleteObjectsRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        delete = delOb
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.deleteObjects(dor)
        println("*** $bucketName objects were deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun listBucketObjects(bucketNameVal: String) {
    val listObjects = ListObjectsRequest {
        bucket = bucketNameVal
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        val res = s3Client.listObjects(listObjects)
        val objects = res.contents
```

```
        if (objects != null) {
            for (myValue in objects) {
                println("The name of the key is ${myValue.key}")
                deleteBucketObjects(bucketNameVal, myValue.key)
            }
        }
    }
}

// Delete the specific Amazon SQS queue.
suspend fun deleteSQSQueue(queueNameVal: String?) {
    val getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val urlVal = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl
        val deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = urlVal
        }
        sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest)
    }
}

// Delete the queue event mapping.
suspend fun deleteEventSourceMapping(functionNameVal: String) {
    if (eventSourceMapping.compareTo("") == 0) {
        LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
            val request = ListEventSourceMappingsRequest {
                functionName = functionNameVal
            }
            val response = lambdaClient.listEventSourceMappings(request)
            val eventList = response.eventSourceMappings
            if (eventList != null) {
                for (event in eventList) {
                    eventSourceMapping = event.uuid.toString()
                }
            }
        }
    }

    val eventSourceMappingRequest = DeleteEventSourceMappingRequest {
        uuid = eventSourceMapping
    }
```

```
    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
        lambdaClient.deleteEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest)
        println("The event mapping is deleted!")
    }
}

// Reads the objects in the S3 bucket and displays the values.
private suspend fun readObject(bucketName: String, keyVal: String?) {
    println("Output file contents: \n")
    val objectRequest = GetObjectRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        key = keyVal
    }
    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.getObject(objectRequest) { resp ->
            val byteArray = resp.body?.toByteArray()
            val text = byteArray?.let { String(it, StandardCharsets.UTF_8) }
            println("Text output: $text")
        }
    }
}

// Display the results from the output directory.
suspend fun getOutputResults(bucketName: String?) {
    println("Getting output results $bucketName.")
    val listObjectsRequest = ListObjectsRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        prefix = "outputfiles/"
    }
    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        val response = s3Client.listObjects(listObjectsRequest)
        val s3Objects: List<Object>? = response.contents
        if (s3Objects != null) {
            for (`object` in s3Objects) {
                if (bucketName != null) {
                    readObject(bucketName, (`object`.key))
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun waitForPipelineExecution(executionArn: String?) {
    var status: String
```

```
    var index = 0
    do {
        val pipelineExecutionRequest = DescribePipelineExecutionRequest {
            pipelineExecutionArn = executionArn
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            val response =
 sageMakerClient.describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatus.toString()
            println("$index. The status of the pipeline is $status")
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4)
            index++
        }
    } while ("Executing" == status)
    println("Pipeline finished with status $status")
}

// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
suspend fun executePipeline(bucketName: String, queueUrl: String?, roleArn:
 String?, pipelineNameVal: String): String? {
    println("Starting pipeline execution.")
    val inputBucketLocation = "s3://$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
    val output = "s3://$bucketName/outputfiles/"

    val gson = GsonBuilder()
        .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
        .setPrettyPrinting()
        .create()

    // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
    val parameters: MutableList<Parameter> = java.util.ArrayList<Parameter>()

    val para1 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_execution_role"
        value = roleArn
    }
    val para2 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_queue_url"
        value = queueUrl
    }

    val inputJSON = """{
        "DataSourceConfig": {
```

```
        "S3Data": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
        },
        "Type": "S3_DATA"
        },
        "DocumentType": "CSV"
    }"""
    println(inputJSON)
    val para3 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_input_config"
        value = inputJSON
    }

    // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
    val jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data {
        s3Uri = output
    }

    val outputConfig = ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig {
        s3Data = jobS3Data
    }

    val gson4: String = gson.toJson(outputConfig)
    val para4: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_export_config"
        value = gson4
    }
    println("parameter_vej_export_config:" + gson.toJson(outputConfig))

    val para5JSON =
        "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig\":{\"XAttributeName
\":\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}"

    val para5: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config"
        value = para5JSON
    }

    parameters.add(para1)
    parameters.add(para2)
    parameters.add(para3)
    parameters.add(para4)
    parameters.add(para5)
```

```
    val pipelineExecutionRequest = StartPipelineExecutionRequest {
        pipelineExecutionDescription = "Created using Kotlin SDK"
        pipelineExecutionDisplayName = "$pipelineName-example-execution"
        pipelineParameters = parameters
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn
    }
}

// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
suspend fun setupPipeline(filePath: String?, roleArnVal: String?, functionArnVal:
 String?, pipelineNameVal: String?) {
    println("Setting up the pipeline.")
    val parser = JSONParser()

    // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
    FileReader(filePath).use { reader ->
        val obj: Any = parser.parse(reader)
        val jsonObject: JSONObject = obj as JSONObject
        val stepsArray: JSONArray = jsonObject.get("Steps") as JSONArray
        for (stepObj in stepsArray) {
            val step: JSONObject = stepObj as JSONObject
            if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                step.put("FunctionArn", functionArnVal)
            }
        }
        println(jsonObject)

        // Create the pipeline.
        val pipelineRequest = CreatePipelineRequest {
            pipelineDescription = "Kotlin SDK example pipeline"
            roleArn = roleArnVal
            pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
            pipelineDefinition = jsonObject.toString()
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest)
        }
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun putS3Object(bucketName: String, objectKey: String, objectPath:
 String) {
    val request = PutObjectRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        key = objectKey
        body = File(objectPath).asByteStream()
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.putObject(request)
        println("Successfully placed $objectKey into bucket $bucketName")
    }
}

suspend fun setupBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request = CreateBucketRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun checkBucket(bucketName: String): Boolean {
    try {
        val headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
        S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest)
            println("$bucketName exists")
            return true
        }
    } catch (e: S3Exception) {
        println("Bucket does not exist")
    }
    return false
}
```

```
// Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
suspend fun connectLambda(queueUrlVal: String?, lambdaNameVal: String?) {
    println("Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the pipeline.")
    var queueArn = ""

    // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
    val atts: MutableList<QueueAttributeName> = ArrayList()
    atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QueueArn)
    val attributesRequest = GetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributeNames = atts
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        val queueAtts = response.attributes
        if (queueAtts != null) {
            for ((key, value) in queueAtts) {
                println("Key = $key, Value = $value")
                queueArn = value
            }
        }
    }
    val eventSourceMappingRequest = CreateEventSourceMappingRequest {
        eventSourceArn = queueArn
        functionName = lambdaNameVal
    }
    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
        val response1 =
 lambdaClient.createEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest)
        eventSourceMapping = response1.uuid.toString()
        println("The mapping between the event source and Lambda function was
 successful")
    }
}

// Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
suspend fun setupQueue(queueNameVal: String, lambdaNameVal: String): String {
    println("Setting up queue named $queueNameVal")
    val queueAtt: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    queueAtt.put("DelaySeconds", "5")
    queueAtt.put("ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds", "5")
    queueAtt.put("VisibilityTimeout", "300")
```

```
    val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
        attributes = queueAtt
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
        println("\nGet queue url")
        val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest
 { queueName = queueNameVal })
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15)
        connectLambda(getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl, lambdaNameVal)
        println("Queue ready with Url " + getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl)
        return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl.toString()
    }
}

// Checks to see if the Amazon SQS queue exists. If not, this method creates a
 new queue
// and returns the ARN value.
suspend fun checkQueue(queueNameVal: String, lambdaNameVal: String): String? {
    println("Checking to see if the queue exists. If not, a new queue will be
 created for use in this workflow.")
    var queueUrl: String
    try {
        val request = GetQueueUrlRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
            val response = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(request)
            queueUrl = response.queueUrl.toString()
            println(queueUrl)
        }
    } catch (e: SqsException) {
        println(e.message + " A new queue will be created")
        queueUrl = setupQueue(queueNameVal, lambdaNameVal)
    }
    return queueUrl
}

suspend fun createNewFunction(myFunctionName: String, s3BucketName: String,
 myS3Key: String, myHandler: String, myRole: String): String {
    val functionCode = FunctionCode {
```

```
        s3Bucket = s3BucketName
        s3Key = myS3Key
    }

    val request = CreateFunctionRequest {
        functionName = myFunctionName
        code = functionCode
        description = "Created by the Lambda Kotlin API"
        handler = myHandler
        role = myRole
        runtime = Runtime.Java11
        memorySize = 1024
        timeout = 200
    }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val functionResponse = awsLambda.createFunction(request)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionActive {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        println("${functionResponse.functionArn} was created")
        return functionResponse.functionArn.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun checkFunction(myFunctionName: String, s3BucketName: String, myS3Key:
 String, myHandler: String, myRole: String): String {
    println("Checking to see if the function exists. If not, a new AWS Lambda
 function will be created for use in this workflow.")
    var functionArn: String
    try {
        // Does this function already exist.
        val functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
            val response = lambdaClient.getFunction(functionRequest)
            functionArn = response.configuration?.functionArn.toString()
            println("$functionArn exists")
        }
    } catch (e: LambdaException) {
        println(e.message + " A new function will be created")
        functionArn = createNewFunction(myFunctionName, s3BucketName, myS3Key,
 myHandler, myRole)
```

```
    }
    return functionArn
}

// Checks to see if the SageMaker role exists. If not, this method creates it.
suspend fun checkSageMakerRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    println("Checking to see if the role exists. If not, a new role will be
 created for AWS SageMaker to use.")
    var roleArn: String
    try {
        val roleRequest = GetRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
        IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
            val response = iamClient.getRole(roleRequest)
            roleArn = response.role?.arn.toString()
            println(roleArn)
        }
    } catch (e: IamException) {
        println(e.message + " A new role will be created")
        roleArn = createSageMakerRole(roleNameVal)
    }
    return roleArn
}

suspend fun createSageMakerRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    val sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies()
    println("Creating a role to use with SageMaker.")
    val assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
        "\"Statement\": [{" +
        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
        "\"Principal\": {" +
        "\"Service\": [" +
        "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
        "]" +
        "}," +
        "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
        "}]" +
        "}"
```

```
    val request = CreateRoleRequest {
        roleName = roleNameVal
        assumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy
        description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }
    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val roleResult = iamClient.createRole(request)

        // Attach the policies to the role.
        for (policy in sageMakerRolePolicies) {
            val attachRequest = AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policy
            }
            iamClient.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest)
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15)
        System.out.println("Role ready with ARN ${roleResult.role?.arn}")
        return roleResult.role?.arn.toString()
    }
}

// Checks to see if the Lambda role exists. If not, this method creates it.
suspend fun checkLambdaRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    println("Checking to see if the role exists. If not, a new role will be
 created for AWS Lambda to use.")
    var roleArn: String
    val roleRequest = GetRoleRequest {
        roleName = roleNameVal
    }

    try {
        IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
            val response = iamClient.getRole(roleRequest)
            roleArn = response.role?.arn.toString()
            println(roleArn)
        }
    } catch (e: IamException) {
        println(e.message + " A new role will be created")
        roleArn = createLambdaRole(roleNameVal)
    }
```

```
    return roleArn
}

private suspend fun createLambdaRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    val lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies()
    val assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
        "\"Statement\": [{" +
        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
        "\"Principal\": {" +
        "\"Service\": [" +
        "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
        "]" +
        "}," +
        "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
        "}]" +
        "}"

    val request = CreateRoleRequest {
        roleName = roleNameVal
        assumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy
        description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }

    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val roleResult = iamClient.createRole(request)

        // Attach the policies to the role.
        for (policy in lambdaRolePolicies) {
            val attachRequest = AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policy
            }
            iamClient.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest)
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15)
        println("Role ready with ARN " + roleResult.role?.arn)
        return roleResult.role?.arn.toString()
    }
```

```
}

fun getLambdaRolePolicies(): Array<String?> {
    val lambdaRolePolicies = arrayOfNulls<String>(5)
    lambdaRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess"
    lambdaRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess"
    lambdaRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess"
    lambdaRolePolicies[3] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy"
    lambdaRolePolicies[4] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole"
    return lambdaRolePolicies
}

fun getSageMakerRolePolicies(): Array<String?> {
    val sageMakerRolePolicies = arrayOfNulls<String>(3)
    sageMakerRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonSageMakerFullAccess"
    sageMakerRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess"
    sageMakerRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess"
    return sageMakerRolePolicies
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Get started with SageMaker AI models and endpoints using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Start a training job and create a SageMaker AI model.
- Create an endpoint configuration.
- Create an endpoint, then clean up resources.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lo_hyperparameters_w TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmhyperparameters_w.
    DATA lo_trn_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
    DATA lo_trn_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
    DATA lo_trn_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
    DATA lo_val_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
    DATA lo_val_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
    DATA lo_val_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
    DATA lo_algorithm_specification TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmalgorithmspec.
    DATA lo_resource_config  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmresourceconfig.
    DATA lo_output_data_config TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmoutputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_stopping_condition TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmstoppingcondition.
    DATA lo_primarycontainer TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcontainerdefn.
    DATA lo_production_variants TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmproductionvariant.
    DATA lo_ep_config_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcreateendptcfgout.
    DATA lo_training_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdescrtrnjobrsp.
    DATA lt_production_variants TYPE /aws1/
cl_sgmproductionvariant=>tt_productionvariantlist.
    DATA lt_input_data_config TYPE /aws1/cl_sgmchannel=>tt_inputdataconfig.
    DATA lt_hyperparameters TYPE /aws1/
cl_sgmhyperparameters_w=>tt_hyperparameters.
    DATA lv_model_data_url TYPE /aws1/sgmurl.

    lv_model_data_url = iv_s3_output_path && iv_training_job_name && '/output/
model.tar.gz'.

    "Create ABAP internal table for hyperparameters based on input variables."
    "These hyperparameters are based on Amazon SageMaker built-in algorithm -
 XGBoost"
    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_max_depth ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'max_depth' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.
```

```
   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eta ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eta' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eval_metric ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eval_metric' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO
TABLE lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_scale_pos_weight ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'scale_pos_weight' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO
TABLE lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_subsample ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'subsample' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_objective ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'objective' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_num_round ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'num_round' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   "Create ABAP internal table for data based on input variables."
   "Training data."
   lo_trn_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_trn_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_trn_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_trn_data_s3uri ).

   lo_trn_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_trn_s3datasource ).

   lo_trn_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'train'
                           io_datasource = lo_trn_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_trn_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_trn_data_contenttype ).
   INSERT lo_trn_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Validation data."
   lo_val_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_val_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_val_data_s3datadistribution
```

```
                                iv_s3uri = iv_val_data_s3uri ).

   lo_val_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_val_s3datasource ).

   lo_val_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'validation'
                           io_datasource = lo_val_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_val_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_val_data_contenttype ).
   INSERT lo_val_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Create an ABAP object for algorithm specification based on input variables."
   lo_algorithm_specification = NEW #( iv_trainingimage = iv_training_image
                                       iv_traininginputmode =
iv_training_input_mode ).

   "Create an ABAP object for resource configuration."
   lo_resource_config = NEW #( iv_instancecount = iv_instance_count
                               iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type
                               iv_volumesizeingb = iv_volume_sizeingb ).

   "Create an ABAP object for output data configuration."
   lo_output_data_config = NEW #( iv_s3outputpath = iv_s3_output_path ).

   "Create an ABAP object for stopping condition."
   lo_stopping_condition = NEW #( iv_maxruntimeinseconds =
iv_max_runtime_in_seconds ).

   TRY.
       lo_sgm->createtrainingjob(
         iv_trainingjobname           = iv_training_job_name
         iv_rolearn                   = iv_role_arn
         it_hyperparameters           = lt_hyperparameters
         it_inputdataconfig           = lt_input_data_config
         io_algorithmspecification    = lo_algorithm_specification
         io_outputdataconfig          = lo_output_data_config
         io_resourceconfig            = lo_resource_config
         io_stoppingcondition         = lo_stopping_condition ).
       MESSAGE 'Training job created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Wait for training job to be completed."
    lo_training_result = lo_sgm->describetrainingjob( iv_trainingjobname =
iv_training_job_name ).
    WHILE lo_training_result->get_trainingjobstatus( ) <> 'Completed'.
      IF sy-index = 30.
        EXIT.               "Maximum 900 seconds."
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
      lo_training_result = lo_sgm->describetrainingjob( iv_trainingjobname =
iv_training_job_name ).
    ENDWHILE.

    "Create ABAP object for the container image based on input variables."
    lo_primarycontainer = NEW #( iv_image = iv_training_image
                                 iv_modeldataurl = lv_model_data_url ).

    "Create an Amazon SageMaker model."
    TRY.
        lo_sgm->createmodel(
          iv_executionrolearn = iv_role_arn
          iv_modelname = iv_model_name
          io_primarycontainer = lo_primarycontainer ).
        MESSAGE 'Model created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Create an endpoint production variant."
    lo_production_variants = NEW #( iv_variantname = iv_ep_variant_name
                                    iv_modelname = iv_model_name
                                    iv_initialinstancecount =
iv_ep_initial_instance_count
                                    iv_instancetype = iv_ep_instance_type ).
    INSERT lo_production_variants INTO TABLE lt_production_variants.

    TRY.
        "Create an endpoint configuration."
        lo_ep_config_result = lo_sgm->createendpointconfig(
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_ep_cfg_name
```

```
          it_productionvariants = lt_production_variants ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration created.' TYPE 'I'.

        "Create an endpoint."
        oo_ep_output = lo_sgm->createendpoint(        " oo_ep_output is returned
 for testing purposes. "
            iv_endpointconfigname = iv_ep_cfg_name
            iv_endpointname = iv_ep_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE
 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Wait for endpoint creation to be completed."
    DATA(lo_endpoint_result) = lo_sgm->describeendpoint( iv_endpointname =
 iv_ep_name ).
    WHILE lo_endpoint_result->get_endpointstatus( ) <> 'InService'.
      IF sy-index = 30.
        EXIT.               "Maximum 900 seconds."
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
      lo_endpoint_result = lo_sgm->describeendpoint( iv_endpointname =
 iv_ep_name ).
    ENDWHILE.

    TRY.
        "Delete an endpoint."
        lo_sgm->deleteendpoint(
            iv_endpointname = iv_ep_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint deleted' TYPE 'I'.

        "Delete an endpoint configuration."
        lo_sgm->deleteendpointconfig(
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_ep_cfg_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration deleted.' TYPE 'I'.

        "Delete model."
        lo_sgm->deletemodel(
                  iv_modelname = iv_model_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Model deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_endpointconfig_exception).
        DATA(lv_endpointconfig_error) = |"{ lo_endpointconfig_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_endpointconfig_exception->av_err_msg }|.
```

```
        MESSAGE lv_endpointconfig_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateEndpoint
  - CreateEndpointConfig
  - CreateModel
  - CreateTrainingJob
  - DeleteEndpoint
  - DeleteEndpointConfig
  - DeleteModel
  - DescribeEndpoint
  - DescribeTrainingJob

Code examples for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Secrets Manager with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Secrets Manager User Guide** – More information about Secrets Manager.
- **Secrets Manager API Reference** – Details about all available Secrets Manager actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs
    - Use BatchGetSecretValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetSecretValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs
  - Create a lending library REST API

Basic examples for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Secrets Manager with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs
  - Use BatchGetSecretValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetSecretValue with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Secrets Manager actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Secrets Manager API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Secrets Manager API Reference.

Examples

- Use BatchGetSecretValue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSecretValue with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `BatchGetSecretValue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `BatchGetSecretValue`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To retrieve the secret value for a group of secrets listed by name

The following `batch-get-secret-value` example gets the secret value secrets for three secrets.

```
aws secretsmanager batch-get-secret-value \
    --secret-id-list MySecret1 MySecret2 MySecret3
```

Output:

```
{
    "SecretValues": [
        {
            "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-
west-2:123456789012:secret:MySecret1-a1b2c3",
            "Name": "MySecret1",
            "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLEaaaaa",
            "SecretString": "{\"username\":\"diego_ramirez\",
\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-PASSWORD\",\"engine\":\"mysql\",\"host\":
\"secretsmanagertutorial.cluster.us-west-2.rds.amazonaws.com\",\"port\":3306,
\"dbClusterIdentifier\":\"secretsmanagertutorial\"}",
            "VersionStages": [
                "AWSCURRENT"
            ],
            "CreatedDate": "1523477145.729"
        },
        {
            "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-
west-2:123456789012:secret:MySecret2-a1b2c3",
            "Name": "MySecret2",
            "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLEbbbbb",
            "SecretString": "{\"username\":\"akua_mansa\",\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-
PASSWORD\"",
            "VersionStages": [
                "AWSCURRENT"
            ],
            "CreatedDate": "1673477781.275"
        },
        {
```

```
            "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-
west-2:123456789012:secret:MySecret3-a1b2c3",
            "Name": "MySecret3",
            "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLEccccc",
            "SecretString": "{\"username\":\"jie_liu\",\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-
PASSWORD\"",
            "VersionStages": [
                "AWSCURRENT"
            ],
            "CreatedDate": "1373477721.124"
        }
    ],
    "Errors": []
}
```

For more information, see Retrieve a group of secrets in a batch in the *AWS Secrets Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To retrieve the secret value for a group of secrets selected by filter

The following `batch-get-secret-value` example gets the secret value secrets in your account that have `MySecret` in the name. Filtering by name is case sensitive.

```
aws secretsmanager batch-get-secret-value \
    --filters Key="name",Values="MySecret"
```

Output:

```
{
    "SecretValues": [
        {
            "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-
west-2:123456789012:secret:MySecret1-a1b2c3",
            "Name": "MySecret1",
            "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLEaaaaa",
            "SecretString": "{\"username\":\"diego_ramirez\",
\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-PASSWORD\",\"engine\":\"mysql\",\"host\":
\"secretsmanagertutorial.cluster.us-west-2.rds.amazonaws.com\",\"port\":3306,
\"dbClusterIdentifier\":\"secretsmanagertutorial\"}",
            "VersionStages": [
                "AWSCURRENT"
            ],
            "CreatedDate": "1523477145.729"
```

```
        },
        {
            "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-
west-2:123456789012:secret:MySecret2-a1b2c3",
            "Name": "MySecret2",
            "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLEbbbbb",
            "SecretString": "{\"username\":\"akua_mansa\",\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-
PASSWORD\"",
            "VersionStages": [
                "AWSCURRENT"
            ],
            "CreatedDate": "1673477781.275"
        },
        {
            "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-
west-2:123456789012:secret:MySecret3-a1b2c3",
            "Name": "MySecret3",
            "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLEccccc",
            "SecretString": "{\"username\":\"jie_liu\",\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-
PASSWORD\"",
            "VersionStages": [
                "AWSCURRENT"
            ],
            "CreatedDate": "1373477721.124"
        }
    ],
    "Errors": []
}
```

For more information, see Retrieve a group of secrets in a batch in the *AWS Secrets Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see BatchGetSecretValue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BatchGetSecretsWrapper:
    def __init__(self, secretsmanager_client):
        self.client = secretsmanager_client


    def batch_get_secrets(self, filter_name):
        """
        Retrieve multiple secrets from AWS Secrets Manager using the
 batch_get_secret_value API.
        This function assumes the stack mentioned in the source code README has
 been successfully deployed.
        This stack includes 7 secrets, all of which have names beginning with
 "mySecret".

        :param filter_name: The full or partial name of secrets to be fetched.
        :type filter_name: str
        """
        try:
            secrets = []
            response = self.client.batch_get_secret_value(
                Filters=[{"Key": "name", "Values": [f"{filter_name}"]}]
            )
            for secret in response["SecretValues"]:
                secrets.append(json.loads(secret["SecretString"]))
            if secrets:
                logger.info("Secrets retrieved successfully.")
            else:
                logger.info("Zero secrets returned without error.")
            return secrets
        except self.client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException:
            msg = f"One or more requested secrets were not found with filter:
 {filter_name}"
            logger.info(msg)
            return msg
        except Exception as e:
            logger.error(f"An unknown error occurred:\n{str(e)}.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see BatchGetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetSecretValue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSecretValue`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SecretsManager;
using Amazon.SecretsManager.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example uses the Amazon Web Service Secrets Manager to retrieve
/// the secret value for the provided secret name.
/// </summary>
public class GetSecretValue
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The main method initializes the necessary values and then calls
    /// the GetSecretAsync and DecodeString methods to get the decoded
    /// secret value for the secret named in secretName.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string secretName = "<<{{MySecretName}}>>";
        string secret;

        IAmazonSecretsManager client = new AmazonSecretsManagerClient();

        var response = await GetSecretAsync(client, secretName);

        if (response is not null)
        {
            secret = DecodeString(response);
```

```
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(secret))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"The decoded secret value is: {secret}.");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("No secret value was returned.");
                }
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the secret value given the name of the secret to
        /// retrieve.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The client object used to retrieve the secret
        /// value for the given secret name.</param>
        /// <param name="secretName">The name of the secret value to retrieve.</
param>
        /// <returns>The GetSecretValueReponse object returned by
        /// GetSecretValueAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<GetSecretValueResponse> GetSecretAsync(
            IAmazonSecretsManager client,
            string secretName)
        {
            GetSecretValueRequest request = new GetSecretValueRequest()
            {
                SecretId = secretName,
                VersionStage = "AWSCURRENT", // VersionStage defaults to
 AWSCURRENT if unspecified.
            };

            GetSecretValueResponse response = null;

            // For the sake of simplicity, this example handles only the most
            // general SecretsManager exception.
            try
            {
                response = await client.GetSecretValueAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonSecretsManagerException e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {e.Message}");
```

```
            }

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Decodes the secret returned by the call to GetSecretValueAsync and
        /// returns it to the calling program.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="response">A GetSecretValueResponse object containing
        /// the requested secret value returned by GetSecretValueAsync.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the decoded secret value.</returns>
        public static string DecodeString(GetSecretValueResponse response)
        {
            // Decrypts secret using the associated AWS Key Management Service
            // Customer Master Key (CMK.) Depending on whether the secret is a
            // string or binary value, one of these fields will be populated.
            if (response.SecretString is not null)
            {
                var secret = response.SecretString;
                return secret;
            }
            else if (response.SecretBinary is not null)
            {
                var memoryStream = response.SecretBinary;
                StreamReader reader = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
                string decodedBinarySecret =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(Convert.FromBase64String(reader.ReadToEnd()));
                return decodedBinarySecret;
            }
            else
            {
                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve an AWS Secrets Manager encrypted secret.
/*!
  \param secretID: The ID for the secret.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SecretsManager::getSecretValue(const Aws::String &secretID,
                                            const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SecretsManager::SecretsManagerClient
 secretsManagerClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SecretsManager::Model::GetSecretValueRequest request;
    request.SetSecretId(secretID);

    Aws::SecretsManager::Model::GetSecretValueOutcome getSecretValueOutcome =
 secretsManagerClient.GetSecretValue(
            request);
    if (getSecretValueOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Secret is: "
                  << getSecretValueOutcome.GetResult().GetSecretString() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed with Error: " << getSecretValueOutcome.GetError()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return getSecretValueOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To retrieve the encrypted secret value of a secret

The following `get-secret-value` example gets the current secret value.

```
aws secretsmanager get-secret-value \
    --secret-id MyTestSecret
```

Output:

```
{
    "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-west-2:123456789012:secret:MyTestSecret-
a1b2c3",
    "Name": "MyTestSecret",
    "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
    "SecretString": "{\"user\":\"diegor\",\"password\":\"EXAMPLE-PASSWORD\"}",
    "VersionStages": [
        "AWSCURRENT"
    ],
    "CreatedDate": 1523477145.713
}
```

For more information, see Retrieve a secret in the *Secrets Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To retrieve the previous secret value

The following `get-secret-value` example gets the previous secret value.:

```
aws secretsmanager get-secret-value \
    --secret-id MyTestSecret
    --version-stage AWSPREVIOUS
```

Output:

```
{
    "ARN": "arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-west-2:123456789012:secret:MyTestSecret-
a1b2c3",
    "Name": "MyTestSecret",
    "VersionId": "a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE22222",
```

```
    "SecretString": "{\"user\":\"diegor\",\"password\":\"PREVIOUS-EXAMPLE-
PASSWORD\"}",
    "VersionStages": [
        "AWSPREVIOUS"
    ],
    "CreatedDate": 1523477145.713
}
```

For more information, see Retrieve a secret in the *Secrets Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.SecretsManagerException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * We recommend that you cache your secret values by using client-side caching.
 *
```

```
 * Caching secrets improves speed and reduces your costs. For more information,
 * see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/retrieving-
secrets.html
 */
public class GetSecretValue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <secretName>\s

                Where:
                    secretName - The name of the secret (for example, tutorials/
MyFirstSecret).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String secretName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SecretsManagerClient secretsClient = SecretsManagerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getValue(secretsClient, secretName);
        secretsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getValue(SecretsManagerClient secretsClient, String
 secretName) {
        try {
            GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                    .secretId(secretName)
                    .build();

            GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
 secretsClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
            String secret = valueResponse.secretString();
            System.out.println(secret);
```

```
        } catch (SecretsManagerException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetSecretValueCommand,
  SecretsManagerClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-secrets-manager";

export const getSecretValue = async (secretName = "SECRET_NAME") => {
  const client = new SecretsManagerClient();
  const response = await client.send(
    new GetSecretValueCommand({
      SecretId: secretName,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '584eb612-f8b0-48c9-855e-6d246461b604',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
```

```
  //   },
  //   ARN: 'arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:secret:binary-
secret-3873048-xxxxxx',
  //   CreatedDate: 2023-08-08T19:29:51.294Z,
  //   Name: 'binary-secret-3873048',
  //   SecretBinary: Uint8Array(11) [
  //      98, 105, 110, 97, 114,
  //     121,  32, 100, 97, 116,
  //      97
  //   ],
  //   VersionId: '712083f4-0d26-415e-8044-16735142cd6a',
  //   VersionStages: [ 'AWSCURRENT' ]
  // }

  if (response.SecretString) {
    return response.SecretString;
  }

  if (response.SecretBinary) {
    return response.SecretBinary;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getValue(secretName: String?) {
    val valueRequest =
        GetSecretValueRequest {
            secretId = secretName
        }
```

```
    SecretsManagerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { secretsClient ->
        val response = secretsClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest)
        val secret = response.secretString
        println("The secret value is $secret")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GetSecretWrapper:
    def __init__(self, secretsmanager_client):
        self.client = secretsmanager_client


    def get_secret(self, secret_name):
        """
        Retrieve individual secrets from AWS Secrets Manager using the
 get_secret_value API.
        This function assumes the stack mentioned in the source code README has
 been successfully deployed.
        This stack includes 7 secrets, all of which have names beginning with
 "mySecret".

        :param secret_name: The name of the secret fetched.
        :type secret_name: str
        """
        try:
            get_secret_value_response = self.client.get_secret_value(
                SecretId=secret_name
            )
```

```
            logging.info("Secret retrieved successfully.")
            return get_secret_value_response["SecretString"]
        except self.client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException:
            msg = f"The requested secret {secret_name} was not found."
            logger.info(msg)
            return msg
        except Exception as e:
            logger.error(f"An unknown error occurred: {str(e)}.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_secret(client: &Client, name: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.get_secret_value().secret_id(name).send().await?;

    println!("Value: {}", resp.secret_string().unwrap_or("No value!"));

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Secrets Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Secrets Manager with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple

functions within Secrets Manager or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a lending library REST API

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora

- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Code examples for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Simple Email Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon SES Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon SES.
- **Amazon SES API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon SES actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateReceiptFilter with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateReceiptRule with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateTemplate with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteReceiptFilter with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteReceiptRule with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteTemplate with an AWS SDK

- Use DescribeReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
- Use GetIdentityVerificationAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSendQuota with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSendStatistics with a CLI
- Use GetTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use ListIdentities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListReceiptFilters with an AWS SDK
- Use ListTemplates with an AWS SDK
- Use SendBulkTemplatedEmail with an AWS SDK
- Use SendEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SendRawEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SendTemplatedEmail with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use VerifyDomainIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use VerifyEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs
  - Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
  - Copy Amazon SES email and domain identities from one AWS Region to another using an AWS SDK
  - Create a web application to track DynamoDB data
  - Create an Amazon Redshift item tracker
  - Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker
  - Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
  - Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
  - Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
  - Generate credentials to connect to an Amazon SES SMTP endpoint
  - Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions
  - Verify an email identity and send messages with Amazon SES using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Simple Email Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateReceiptFilter with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateReceiptRule with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateTemplate with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteReceiptFilter with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteReceiptRule with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteTemplate with an AWS SDK
  - Use DescribeReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetIdentityVerificationAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetSendQuota with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetSendStatistics with a CLI
  - Use GetTemplate with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListIdentities with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListReceiptFilters with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListTemplates with an AWS SDK
  - Use SendBulkTemplatedEmail with an AWS SDK
  - Use SendEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SendRawEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SendTemplatedEmail with an AWS SDK
  - Use UpdateTemplate with an AWS SDK
  - Use VerifyDomainIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use VerifyEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon SES actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon SES API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Simple Email Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateReceiptFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateReceiptRule with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteReceiptFilter with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteReceiptRule with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeReceiptRuleSet with an AWS SDK
- Use GetIdentityVerificationAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSendQuota with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSendStatistics with a CLI
- Use GetTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use ListIdentities with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListReceiptFilters with an AWS SDK
- Use ListTemplates with an AWS SDK
- Use SendBulkTemplatedEmail with an AWS SDK
- Use SendEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use SendRawEmail with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SendTemplatedEmail with an AWS SDK
- Use UpdateTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use VerifyDomainIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use VerifyEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateReceiptFilter` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateReceiptFilter`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt filter..
/*!
  \param receiptFilterName: The name for the receipt filter.
  \param cidr: IP address or IP address range in Classless Inter-Domain Routing
 (CIDR) notation.
  \param policy: Block or allow enum of type ReceiptFilterPolicy.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createReceiptFilter(const Aws::String &receiptFilterName,
                                      const Aws::String &cidr,
                                      Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptFilterPolicy
 policy,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptFilterRequest createReceiptFilterRequest;
    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptFilter receiptFilter;
    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptIpFilter receiptIpFilter;
```

```
    receiptIpFilter.SetCidr(cidr);
    receiptIpFilter.SetPolicy(policy);
    receiptFilter.SetName(receiptFilterName);
    receiptFilter.SetIpFilter(receiptIpFilter);
    createReceiptFilterRequest.SetFilter(receiptFilter);
    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptFilterOutcome createReceiptFilterOutcome =
 sesClient.CreateReceiptFilter(
            createReceiptFilterRequest);
    if (createReceiptFilterOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created receipt filter." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating receipt filter: " <<
                  createReceiptFilterOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return createReceiptFilterOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateReceiptFilterCommand,
  ReceiptFilterPolicy,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const createCreateReceiptFilterCommand = ({ policy, ipOrRange, name }) => {
  return new CreateReceiptFilterCommand({
```

```
    Filter: {
      IpFilter: {
        Cidr: ipOrRange, // string, either a single IP address (10.0.0.1) or an
 IP address range in CIDR notation (10.0.0.1/24)).
        Policy: policy, // enum ReceiptFilterPolicy, email traffic from the
 filtered addressesOptions.
      },
      /*
        The name of the IP address filter. Only ASCII letters, numbers,
 underscores, or dashes.
        Must be less than 64 characters and start and end with a letter or
 number.
       */
      Name: name,
    },
  });
};

const FILTER_NAME = getUniqueName("ReceiptFilter");

const run = async () => {
  const createReceiptFilterCommand = createCreateReceiptFilterCommand({
    policy: ReceiptFilterPolicy.Allow,
    ipOrRange: "10.0.0.1",
    name: FILTER_NAME,
  });

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(createReceiptFilterCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def create_receipt_filter(self, filter_name, ip_address_or_range, allow):
        """
        Creates a filter that allows or blocks incoming mail from an IP address
 or
        range.

        :param filter_name: The name to give the filter.
        :param ip_address_or_range: The IP address or range to block or allow.
        :param allow: When True, incoming mail is allowed from the specified IP
                      address or range; otherwise, it is blocked.
        """
        try:
            policy = "Allow" if allow else "Block"
            self.ses_client.create_receipt_filter(
                Filter={
                    "Name": filter_name,
                    "IpFilter": {"Cidr": ip_address_or_range, "Policy": policy},
                }
            )
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Created receipt filter %s to %s IP of %s.",
                filter_name,
                policy,
                ip_address_or_range,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create receipt filter %s.", filter_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateReceiptRule` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateReceiptRule`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule.
/*!
  \param receiptRuleName: The name for the receipt rule.
  \param s3BucketName: The name of the S3 bucket for incoming mail.
  \param s3ObjectKeyPrefix: The prefix for the objects in the S3 bucket.
  \param ruleSetName: The name of the rule set where the receipt rule is added.
  \param recipients: Aws::Vector of recipients.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createReceiptRule(const Aws::String &receiptRuleName,
                                    const Aws::String &s3BucketName,
                                    const Aws::String &s3ObjectKeyPrefix,
                                    const Aws::String &ruleSetName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &recipients,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptRuleRequest createReceiptRuleRequest;

    Aws::SES::Model::S3Action s3Action;
    s3Action.SetBucketName(s3BucketName);
    s3Action.SetObjectKeyPrefix(s3ObjectKeyPrefix);

    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptAction receiptAction;
    receiptAction.SetS3Action(s3Action);

    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptRule receiptRule;
    receiptRule.SetName(receiptRuleName);
    receiptRule.WithRecipients(recipients);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptAction> receiptActionList;
    receiptActionList.emplace_back(receiptAction);
    receiptRule.SetActions(receiptActionList);

    createReceiptRuleRequest.SetRuleSetName(ruleSetName);
    createReceiptRuleRequest.SetRule(receiptRule);

    auto outcome = sesClient.CreateReceiptRule(createReceiptRuleRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created receipt rule." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating receipt rule. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateReceiptRuleCommand, TlsPolicy } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");
const RULE_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleName");
const S3_BUCKET_NAME = getUniqueName("S3BucketName");

const createS3ReceiptRuleCommand = ({
  bucketName,
  emailAddresses,
  name,
  ruleSet,
}) => {
  return new CreateReceiptRuleCommand({
    Rule: {
      Actions: [
        {
          S3Action: {
            BucketName: bucketName,
            ObjectKeyPrefix: "email",
          },
        },
      ],
      Recipients: emailAddresses,
      Enabled: true,
      Name: name,
      ScanEnabled: false,
      TlsPolicy: TlsPolicy.Optional,
    },
    RuleSetName: ruleSet, // Required
  });
```

```
};

const run = async () => {
  const s3ReceiptRuleCommand = createS3ReceiptRuleCommand({
    bucketName: S3_BUCKET_NAME,
    emailAddresses: ["email@example.com"],
    name: RULE_NAME,
    ruleSet: RULE_SET_NAME,
  });

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(s3ReceiptRuleCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to create S3 receipt rule.", err);
    throw err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon S3 bucket where Amazon SES can put copies of incoming emails and create a rule that copies incoming email to the bucket for a specific list of recipients.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
```

```
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def create_bucket_for_copy(self, bucket_name):
        """
        Creates a bucket that can receive copies of emails from Amazon SES. This
        includes adding a policy to the bucket that grants Amazon SES permission
        to put objects in the bucket.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to create.
        :return: The newly created bucket.
        """
        allow_ses_put_policy = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "AllowSESPut",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ses.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "s3:PutObject",
                    "Resource": f"arn:aws:s3:::{bucket_name}/*",
                }
            ],
        }
        bucket = None
        try:
            bucket = self.s3_resource.create_bucket(
                Bucket=bucket_name,
                CreateBucketConfiguration={
                    "LocationConstraint":
self.s3_resource.meta.client.meta.region_name
                },
            )
            bucket.wait_until_exists()
            bucket.Policy().put(Policy=json.dumps(allow_ses_put_policy))
            logger.info("Created bucket %s to receive copies of emails.",
bucket_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create bucket to receive copies of
emails.")
            if bucket is not None:
                bucket.delete()
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return bucket


    def create_s3_copy_rule(
        self, rule_set_name, rule_name, recipients, bucket_name, prefix
    ):
        """
        Creates a rule so that all emails received by the specified recipients
are
        copied to an Amazon S3 bucket.

        :param rule_set_name: The name of a previously created rule set to
contain
                              this rule.
        :param rule_name: The name to give the rule.
        :param recipients: When an email is received by one of these recipients,
it
                           is copied to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to receive email copies. This
                            bucket must allow Amazon SES to put objects into it.
        :param prefix: An object key prefix to give the emails copied to the
bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.create_receipt_rule(
                RuleSetName=rule_set_name,
                Rule={
                    "Name": rule_name,
                    "Enabled": True,
                    "Recipients": recipients,
                    "Actions": [
                        {
                            "S3Action": {
                                "BucketName": bucket_name,
                                "ObjectKeyPrefix": prefix,
                            }
                        }
                    ],
                },
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created rule %s to copy mail received by %s to bucket %s.",
                rule_name,
```

```
                recipients,
                bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateReceiptRuleSet` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateReceiptRuleSet`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule set.
/*!
  \param ruleSetName: The name of the rule set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createReceiptRuleSet(const Aws::String &ruleSetName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptRuleSetRequest createReceiptRuleSetRequest;

    createReceiptRuleSetRequest.SetRuleSetName(ruleSetName);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptRuleSetOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.CreateReceiptRuleSet(
```

```
            createReceiptRuleSetRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created receipt rule set." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating receipt rule set. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateReceiptRuleSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");

const createCreateReceiptRuleSetCommand = (ruleSetName) => {
  return new CreateReceiptRuleSetCommand({ RuleSetName: ruleSetName });
};

const run = async () => {
  const createReceiptRuleSetCommand =
    createCreateReceiptRuleSetCommand(RULE_SET_NAME);

  try {
```

```
    return await sesClient.send(createReceiptRuleSetCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to create receipt rule set", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def create_receipt_rule_set(self, rule_set_name):
        """
        Creates an empty rule set. Rule sets contain individual rules and can be
        used to organize rules.

        :param rule_set_name: The name to give the rule set.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.create_receipt_rule_set(RuleSetName=rule_set_name)
            logger.info("Created receipt rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create receipt rule set %s.",
rule_set_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateTemplate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Email subject.</param>
    /// <param name="text">Email body text.</param>
    /// <param name="html">Email HTML body text.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string name, string subject,
string text,
        string html)
```

```
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.CreateTemplateAsync(
                new CreateTemplateRequest
                {
                    Template = new Template
                    {
                        TemplateName = name,
                        SubjectPart = subject,
                        TextPart = text,
                        HtmlPart = html
                    }
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("CreateEmailTemplateAsync failed with exception: "
 + ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) template.
/*!
```

```
  \param templateName: The name of the template.
  \param htmlPart: The HTML body of the email.
  \param subjectPart: The subject line of the email.
  \param textPart: The plain text version of the email.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                                 const Aws::String &htmlPart,
                                 const Aws::String &subjectPart,
                                 const Aws::String &textPart,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateTemplateRequest createTemplateRequest;
    Aws::SES::Model::Template aTemplate;

    aTemplate.SetTemplateName(templateName);
    aTemplate.SetHtmlPart(htmlPart);
    aTemplate.SetSubjectPart(subjectPart);
    aTemplate.SetTextPart(textPart);

    createTemplateRequest.SetTemplate(aTemplate);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateTemplateOutcome outcome = sesClient.CreateTemplate(
            createTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created template." << templateName << "."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating template. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TestTemplateName");

const createCreateTemplateCommand = () => {
  return new CreateTemplateCommand({
    /**
     * The template feature in Amazon SES is based on the Handlebars template
 system.
     */
    Template: {
      /**
       * The name of an existing template in Amazon SES.
       */
      TemplateName: TEMPLATE_NAME,
      HtmlPart: `
        <h1>Hello, {{contact.firstName}}!</h1>
        <p>
        Did you know Amazon has a mascot named Peccy?
        </p>
      `,
      SubjectPart: "Amazon Tip",
    },
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const createTemplateCommand = createCreateTemplateCommand();
```

```
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(createTemplateCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to create template.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text +
 html))
```

```
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def create_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Creates an email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.create_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Created template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create template %s.", name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteIdentity` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteIdentity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an email identity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="identityEmail">The identity email to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteIdentityAsync(string identityEmail)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.DeleteIdentityAsync(
                new DeleteIdentityRequest
                {
                    Identity = identityEmail
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteIdentityAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete the specified identity (an email address or a domain).
/*!
  \param identity: The identity to delete.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteIdentity(const Aws::String &identity,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteIdentityRequest deleteIdentityRequest;

    deleteIdentityRequest.SetIdentity(identity);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteIdentityOutcome outcome = sesClient.DeleteIdentity(
            deleteIdentityRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted identity." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting identity. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an identity

The following example uses the `delete-identity` command to delete an identity from the list of identities verified with Amazon SES:

```
aws ses delete-identity --identity user@example.com
```

For more information about verified identities, see Verifying Email Addresses and Domains in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const IDENTITY_EMAIL = "fake@example.com";

const createDeleteIdentityCommand = (identityName) => {
  return new DeleteIdentityCommand({
    Identity: identityName,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
```

```
  const deleteIdentityCommand = createDeleteIdentityCommand(IDENTITY_EMAIL);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteIdentityCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete identity.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def delete_identity(self, identity):
        """
        Deletes an identity.

        :param identity: The identity to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_identity(Identity=identity)
            logger.info("Deleted identity %s.", identity)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete identity %s.", identity)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteReceiptFilter` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteReceiptFilter`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt filter.
/*!
  \param receiptFilterName: The name for the receipt filter.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteReceiptFilter(const Aws::String &receiptFilterName,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptFilterRequest deleteReceiptFilterRequest;

    deleteReceiptFilterRequest.SetFilterName(receiptFilterName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptFilterOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.DeleteReceiptFilter(
            deleteReceiptFilterRequest);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted receipt filter." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting receipt filter. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteReceiptFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const RECEIPT_FILTER_NAME = getUniqueName("ReceiptFilterName");

const createDeleteReceiptFilterCommand = (filterName) => {
  return new DeleteReceiptFilterCommand({ FilterName: filterName });
};

const run = async () => {
  const deleteReceiptFilterCommand =
    createDeleteReceiptFilterCommand(RECEIPT_FILTER_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteReceiptFilterCommand);
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    console.log("Error deleting receipt filter.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def delete_receipt_filter(self, filter_name):
        """
        Deletes a receipt filter.

        :param filter_name: The name of the filter to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_receipt_filter(FilterName=filter_name)
            logger.info("Deleted receipt filter %s.", filter_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete receipt filter %s.", filter_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteReceiptRule` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteReceiptRule`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule.
/*!
  \param receiptRuleName: The name for the receipt rule.
  \param receiptRuleSetName: The name for the receipt rule set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteReceiptRule(const Aws::String &receiptRuleName,
                                    const Aws::String &receiptRuleSetName,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleRequest deleteReceiptRuleRequest;

    deleteReceiptRuleRequest.SetRuleName(receiptRuleName);
    deleteReceiptRuleRequest.SetRuleSetName(receiptRuleSetName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.DeleteReceiptRule(
            deleteReceiptRuleRequest);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted receipt rule." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error deleting receipt rule. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteReceiptRuleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const RULE_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleName");
const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");

const createDeleteReceiptRuleCommand = () => {
  return new DeleteReceiptRuleCommand({
    RuleName: RULE_NAME,
    RuleSetName: RULE_SET_NAME,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const deleteReceiptRuleCommand = createDeleteReceiptRuleCommand();
```

```
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteReceiptRuleCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete receipt rule.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def delete_receipt_rule(self, rule_set_name, rule_name):
        """
        Deletes a rule.

        :param rule_set_name: The rule set that contains the rule to delete.
        :param rule_name: The rule to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_receipt_rule(
```

```
                RuleSetName=rule_set_name, RuleName=rule_name
            )
            logger.info("Removed rule %s from rule set %s.", rule_name,
 rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't remove rule %s from rule set %s.", rule_name,
 rule_set_name
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteReceiptRuleSet` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteReceiptRuleSet`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule set.
/*!
  \param receiptRuleSetName: The name for the receipt rule set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteReceiptRuleSet(const Aws::String &receiptRuleSetName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleSetRequest deleteReceiptRuleSetRequest;
```

```
    deleteReceiptRuleSetRequest.SetRuleSetName(receiptRuleSetName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleSetOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.DeleteReceiptRuleSet(
            deleteReceiptRuleSetRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted receipt rule set." << std::endl;
    }

    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting receipt rule set. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");

const createDeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand = () => {
  return new DeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand({ RuleSetName: RULE_SET_NAME });
};
```

```
const run = async () => {
  const deleteReceiptRuleSetCommand = createDeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteReceiptRuleSetCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete receipt rule set.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def delete_receipt_rule_set(self, rule_set_name):
        """
        Deletes a rule set. When a rule set is deleted, all of the rules it
 contains
        are also deleted.
```

```
        :param rule_set_name: The name of the rule set to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_receipt_rule_set(RuleSetName=rule_set_name)
            logger.info("Deleted rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteTemplate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">Name of the template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.DeleteTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteTemplateRequest
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteEmailTemplateAsync failed with exception: "
 + ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) template.
/*!
  \param templateName: The name for the template.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteTemplateRequest deleteTemplateRequest;

    deleteTemplateRequest.SetTemplateName(templateName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteTemplateOutcome outcome = sesClient.DeleteTemplate(
            deleteTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted template." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting template. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TemplateName");
```

```
const createDeleteTemplateCommand = (templateName) =>
  new DeleteTemplateCommand({ TemplateName: templateName });

const run = async () => {
  const deleteTemplateCommand = createDeleteTemplateCommand(TEMPLATE_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteTemplateCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete template.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.
```

```
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text +
html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes an email template.
        """
        try:

self.ses_client.delete_template(TemplateName=self.template["TemplateName"])
            logger.info("Deleted template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"])
            self.template = None
            self.template_tags = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"]
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeReceiptRuleSet` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeReceiptRuleSet`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def describe_receipt_rule_set(self, rule_set_name):
        """
        Gets data about a rule set.

        :param rule_set_name: The name of the rule set to retrieve.
        :return: Data about the rule set.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.describe_receipt_rule_set(
                RuleSetName=rule_set_name
            )
            logger.info("Got data for rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DescribeReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetIdentityVerificationAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get identity verification status for an email.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The verification status of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<VerificationStatus> GetIdentityStatusAsync(string email)
    {
        var result = VerificationStatus.TemporaryFailure;
        try
        {
            var response =
                await
_amazonSimpleEmailService.GetIdentityVerificationAttributesAsync(
                    new GetIdentityVerificationAttributesRequest
                    {
                        Identities = new List<string> { email }
                    });

            if (response.VerificationAttributes.ContainsKey(email))
                result =
response.VerificationAttributes[email].VerificationStatus;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("GetIdentityStatusAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the Amazon SES verification status for a list of identities

The following example uses the `get-identity-verification-attributes` command to retrieve the Amazon SES verification status for a list of identities:

```
aws ses get-identity-verification-attributes --
identities "user1@example.com" "user2@example.com"
```

Output:

```
{
   "VerificationAttributes": {
       "user1@example.com": {
           "VerificationStatus": "Success"
       },
       "user2@example.com": {
           "VerificationStatus": "Pending"
       }
   }
}
```

If you call this command with an identity that you have never submitted for verification, that identity won't appear in the output.

For more information about verified identities, see Verifying Email Addresses and Domains in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def get_identity_status(self, identity):
        """
        Gets the status of an identity. This can be used to discover whether
        an identity has been successfully verified.

        :param identity: The identity to query.
        :return: The status of the identity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_identity_verification_attributes(
                Identities=[identity]
            )
            status = response["VerificationAttributes"].get(
                identity, {"VerificationStatus": "NotFound"}
            )["VerificationStatus"]
            logger.info("Got status of %s for %s.", status, identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get status for %s.", identity)
            raise
        else:
            return status
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create client in us-west-2 region
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
client = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Get up to 1000 identities
ids = client.list_identities({
                              identity_type: 'EmailAddress'
                            })

ids.identities.each do |email|
  attrs = client.get_identity_verification_attributes({
                                                        identities: [email]
                                                      })

  status = attrs.verification_attributes[email].verification_status

  # Display email addresses that have been verified
  puts email if status == 'Success'
end
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `GetSendQuota` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSendQuota`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information on the current account's send quota.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The send quota response data.</returns>
    public async Task<GetSendQuotaResponse> GetSendQuotaAsync()
    {
        var result = new GetSendQuotaResponse();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.GetSendQuotaAsync(
                new GetSendQuotaRequest());
            result = response;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("GetSendQuotaAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get your Amazon SES sending limits

The following example uses the `get-send-quota` command to return your Amazon SES sending limits:

```
aws ses get-send-quota
```

Output:

```
{
   "Max24HourSend": 200.0,
   "SentLast24Hours": 1.0,
   "MaxSendRate": 1.0
}
```

Max24HourSend is your sending quota, which is the maximum number of emails that you can send in a 24-hour period. The sending quota reflects a rolling time period. Every time you try to send an email, Amazon SES checks how many emails you sent in the previous 24 hours. As long as the total number of emails that you have sent is less than your quota, your send request will be accepted and your email will be sent.

SentLast24Hours is the number of emails that you have sent in the previous 24 hours.

MaxSendRate is the maximum number of emails that you can send per second.

Note that sending limits are based on recipients rather than on messages. For example, an email that has 10 recipients counts as 10 against your sending quota.

For more information, see Managing Your Amazon SES Sending Limits in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the user's current sending limits.

```
Get-SESSendQuota
```

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the user's current sending limits.

```
Get-SESSendQuota
```

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetSendStatistics` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSendStatistics`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get your Amazon SES sending statistics

The following example uses the `get-send-statistics` command to return your Amazon SES sending statistics

```
aws ses get-send-statistics
```

Output:

```
{
   "SendDataPoints": [
       {
           "Complaints": 0,
           "Timestamp": "2013-06-12T19:32:00Z",
           "DeliveryAttempts": 2,
           "Bounces": 0,
           "Rejects": 0
       },
       {
           "Complaints": 0,
```

```
            "Timestamp": "2013-06-12T00:47:00Z",
            "DeliveryAttempts": 1,
            "Bounces": 0,
            "Rejects": 0
        }
    ]
}
```

The result is a list of data points, representing the last two weeks of sending activity. Each data point in the list contains statistics for a 15-minute interval.

In this example, there are only two data points because the only emails that the user sent in the last two weeks fell within two 15-minute intervals.

For more information, see Monitoring Your Amazon SES Usage Statistics in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetSendStatistics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns the user's sending statistics. The result is a list of data points, representing the last two weeks of sending activity. Each data point in the list contains statistics for a 15-minute interval.

```
Get-SESSendStatistic
```

- For API details, see GetSendStatistics in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the user's sending statistics. The result is a list of data points, representing the last two weeks of sending activity. Each data point in the list contains statistics for a 15-minute interval.

```
Get-SESSendStatistic
```

- For API details, see GetSendStatistics in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetTemplate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get a template's attributes.
/*!
  \param templateName: The name for the template.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::getTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::GetTemplateRequest getTemplateRequest;

    getTemplateRequest.SetTemplateName(templateName);

    Aws::SES::Model::GetTemplateOutcome outcome = sesClient.GetTemplate(
            getTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully got template." << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting template. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { GetTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TemplateName");

const createGetTemplateCommand = (templateName) =>
  new GetTemplateCommand({ TemplateName: templateName });

const run = async () => {
  const getTemplateCommand = createGetTemplateCommand(TEMPLATE_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(getTemplateCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
```

```
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text +
 html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)
```

```
    def get_template(self, name):
        """
        Gets a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved email template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_template(TemplateName=name)
            self.template = response["Template"]
            logger.info("Got template %s.", name)
            self._extract_tags(
                self.template["SubjectPart"],
                self.template["TextPart"],
                self.template["HtmlPart"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get template %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.template
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListIdentities` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListIdentities`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Copy email and domain identities across Regions
- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the identities of a specified type for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="identityType">IdentityType to list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of identities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListIdentitiesAsync(IdentityType
identityType)
    {
        var result = new List<string>();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.ListIdentitiesAsync(
                new ListIdentitiesRequest
                {
                    IdentityType = identityType
                });
            result = response.Identities;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ListIdentitiesAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the identities associated with this account.
/*!
  \param identityType: The identity type enum. "NOT_SET" is a valid option.
  \param identities; A vector to receive the retrieved identities.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::listIdentities(Aws::SES::Model::IdentityType identityType,
                                 Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &identities,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::ListIdentitiesRequest listIdentitiesRequest;

    if (identityType != Aws::SES::Model::IdentityType::NOT_SET) {
        listIdentitiesRequest.SetIdentityType(identityType);
    }

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listIdentitiesRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
        Aws::SES::Model::ListIdentitiesOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.ListIdentities(
                listIdentitiesRequest);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const auto &retrievedIdentities =
 outcome.GetResult().GetIdentities();
            if (!retrievedIdentities.empty()) {
```

```
                identities.insert(identities.cend(),
 retrievedIdentities.cbegin(),
                                  retrievedIdentities.cend());
            }
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Error listing identities. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all identities (email addresses and domains) for a specific AWS account

The following example uses the `list-identities` command to list all identities that have been submitted for verification with Amazon SES:

```
aws ses list-identities
```

Output:

```
{
    "Identities": [
      "user@example.com",
      "example.com"
    ]
}
```

The list that is returned contains all identities regardless of verification status (verified, pending verification, failure, etc.).

In this example, email addresses *and* domains are returned because we did not specify the identity-type parameter.

For more information about verification, see Verifying Email Addresses and Domains in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.SesClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.ListIdentitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SesException;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListIdentities {

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SesClient client = SesClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listSESIdentities(client);
    }

    public static void listSESIdentities(SesClient client) {
        try {
            ListIdentitiesResponse identitiesResponse = client.listIdentities();
            List<String> identities = identitiesResponse.identities();
            for (String identity : identities) {
                System.out.println("The identity is " + identity);
            }

        } catch (SesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListIdentitiesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createListIdentitiesCommand = () =>
  new ListIdentitiesCommand({ IdentityType: "EmailAddress", MaxItems: 10 });

const run = async () => {
  const listIdentitiesCommand = createListIdentitiesCommand();
```

```
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(listIdentitiesCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to list identities.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command returns a list containing all of the identities (email addresses and domains) for a specific AWS Account, regardless of verification status.

```
Get-SESIdentity
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns a list containing all of the identities (email addresses and domains) for a specific AWS Account, regardless of verification status.

```
Get-SESIdentity
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def list_identities(self, identity_type, max_items):
        """
        Gets the identities of the specified type for the current account.

        :param identity_type: The type of identity to retrieve, such as
 EmailAddress.
        :param max_items: The maximum number of identities to retrieve.
        :return: The list of retrieved identities.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_identities(
                IdentityType=identity_type, MaxItems=max_items
            )
            identities = response["Identities"]
            logger.info("Got %s identities for the current account.",
 len(identities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list identities for the current account.")
            raise
        else:
            return identities
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create client in us-west-2 region
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
client = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Get up to 1000 identities
ids = client.list_identities({
                              identity_type: 'EmailAddress'
                            })

ids.identities.each do |email|
  attrs = client.get_identity_verification_attributes({
                                                        identities: [email]
                                                      })

  status = attrs.verification_attributes[email].verification_status

  # Display email addresses that have been verified
  puts email if status == 'Success'
end
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ListReceiptFilters` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListReceiptFilters`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the receipt filters associated with this account.
/*!
  \param filters; A vector of "ReceiptFilter" to receive the retrieved filters.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SES::listReceiptFilters(Aws::Vector<Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptFilter>
 &filters,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SES::Model::ListReceiptFiltersRequest listReceiptFiltersRequest;

    Aws::SES::Model::ListReceiptFiltersOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.ListReceiptFilters(
            listReceiptFiltersRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto &retrievedFilters = outcome.GetResult().GetFilters();
        if (!retrievedFilters.empty()) {
            filters.insert(filters.cend(), retrievedFilters.cbegin(),
                           retrievedFilters.cend());
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error retrieving IP address filters: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ListReceiptFilters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListReceiptFiltersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createListReceiptFiltersCommand = () => new ListReceiptFiltersCommand({});

const run = async () => {
  const listReceiptFiltersCommand = createListReceiptFiltersCommand();

  return await sesClient.send(listReceiptFiltersCommand);
};
```

- For API details, see ListReceiptFilters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def list_receipt_filters(self):
        """
        Gets the list of receipt filters for the current account.

        :return: The list of receipt filters.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_receipt_filters()
            filters = response["Filters"]
            logger.info("Got %s receipt filters.", len(filters))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get receipt filters.")
            raise
        else:
            return filters
```

- For API details, see ListReceiptFilters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListTemplates` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListTemplates`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List email templates for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of template metadata.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TemplateMetadata>> ListEmailTemplatesAsync()
    {
        var result = new List<TemplateMetadata>();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.ListTemplatesAsync(
                new ListTemplatesRequest());
            result = response.TemplatesMetadata;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ListEmailTemplatesAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.SesV2Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.ListEmailTemplatesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.ListEmailTemplatesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SesV2Exception;

public class ListTemplates {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllTemplates(sesv2Client);
    }

    public static void listAllTemplates(SesV2Client sesv2Client) {
        try {
            ListEmailTemplatesRequest templatesRequest =
 ListEmailTemplatesRequest.builder()
                    .pageSize(1)
                    .build();

            ListEmailTemplatesResponse response =
 sesv2Client.listEmailTemplates(templatesRequest);
            response.templatesMetadata()
                    .forEach(template -> System.out.println("Template name: " +
 template.templateName()));

        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListTemplatesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createListTemplatesCommand = (maxItems) =>
  new ListTemplatesCommand({ MaxItems: maxItems });

const run = async () => {
  const listTemplatesCommand = createListTemplatesCommand(10);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(listTemplatesCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to list templates.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text +
 html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def list_templates(self):
        """
        Gets a list of all email templates for the current account.

        :return: The list of retrieved email templates.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_templates()
```

```
            templates = response["TemplatesMetadata"]
            logger.info("Got %s templates.", len(templates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get templates.")
            raise
        else:
            return templates
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SendBulkTemplatedEmail` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `SendBulkTemplatedEmail`.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendBulkTemplatedEmailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import {
  getUniqueName,
  postfix,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

/**
 * Replace this with the name of an existing template.
 */
const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("ReminderTemplate");

/**
 * Replace these with existing verified emails.
 */
const VERIFIED_EMAIL_1 = postfix(getUniqueName("Bilbo"), "@example.com");
```

```
const VERIFIED_EMAIL_2 = postfix(getUniqueName("Frodo"), "@example.com");

const USERS = [
  { firstName: "Bilbo", emailAddress: VERIFIED_EMAIL_1 },
  { firstName: "Frodo", emailAddress: VERIFIED_EMAIL_2 },
];

/**
 *
 * @param { { emailAddress: string, firstName: string }[] } users
 * @param { string } templateName the name of an existing template in SES
 * @returns { SendBulkTemplatedEmailCommand }
 */
const createBulkReminderEmailCommand = (users, templateName) => {
  return new SendBulkTemplatedEmailCommand({
    /**
     * Each 'Destination' uses a corresponding set of replacement data. We can
 map each user
     * to a 'Destination' and provide user specific replacement data to create
 personalized emails.
     *
     * Here's an example of how a template would be replaced with user data:
     * Template: <h1>Hello {{name}},</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!</
p>
     * Destination 1: <h1>Hello Bilbo,</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!
</p>
     * Destination 2: <h1>Hello Frodo,</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!
</p>
     */
    Destinations: users.map((user) => ({
      Destination: { ToAddresses: [user.emailAddress] },
      ReplacementTemplateData: JSON.stringify({ name: user.firstName }),
    })),
    DefaultTemplateData: JSON.stringify({ name: "Shireling" }),
    Source: VERIFIED_EMAIL_1,
    Template: templateName,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const sendBulkTemplateEmailCommand = createBulkReminderEmailCommand(
    USERS,
    TEMPLATE_NAME,
  );
```

```
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(sendBulkTemplateEmailCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendBulkTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `SendEmail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SendEmail`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    ///  Send an email by using Amazon SES.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toAddresses">List of recipients.</param>
    /// <param name="ccAddresses">List of cc recipients.</param>
    /// <param name="bccAddresses">List of bcc recipients.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="bodyHtml">Body of the email in HTML.</param>
    /// <param name="bodyText">Body of the email in plain text.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject line of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="senderAddress">From address.</param>
    /// <returns>The messageId of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(List<string> toAddresses,
        List<string> ccAddresses, List<string> bccAddresses,
        string bodyHtml, string bodyText, string subject, string senderAddress)
    {
        var messageId = "";
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.SendEmailAsync(
                new SendEmailRequest
                {
                    Destination = new Destination
                    {
                        BccAddresses = bccAddresses,
                        CcAddresses = ccAddresses,
                        ToAddresses = toAddresses
                    },
                    Message = new Message
                    {
                        Body = new Body
                        {
                            Html = new Content
                            {
                                Charset = "UTF-8",
                                Data = bodyHtml
                            },
                            Text = new Content
                            {
                                Charset = "UTF-8",
                                Data = bodyText
                            }
                        },
                        Subject = new Content
                        {
                            Charset = "UTF-8",
                            Data = subject
                        }
                    },
                    Source = senderAddress
                });
```

```
            messageId = response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("SendEmailAsync failed with exception: " +
 ex.Message);
        }

        return messageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Send an email to a list of recipients.
/*!
  \param recipients; Vector of recipient email addresses.
  \param subject: Email subject.
  \param htmlBody: Email body as HTML. At least one body data is required.
  \param textBody: Email body as plain text. At least one body data is required.
  \param senderEmailAddress: Email address of sender. Ignored if empty string.
  \param ccAddresses: Vector of cc addresses. Ignored if empty.
  \param replyToAddress: Reply to email address. Ignored if empty string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::sendEmail(const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &recipients,
                            const Aws::String &subject,
                            const Aws::String &htmlBody,
                            const Aws::String &textBody,
                            const Aws::String &senderEmailAddress,
```

```
                            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &ccAddresses,
                            const Aws::String &replyToAddress,
                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
&clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

   Aws::SES::Model::Destination destination;
   if (!ccAddresses.empty()) {
       destination.WithCcAddresses(ccAddresses);
   }
   if (!recipients.empty()) {
       destination.WithToAddresses(recipients);
   }

   Aws::SES::Model::Body message_body;
   if (!htmlBody.empty()) {
       message_body.SetHtml(

Aws::SES::Model::Content().WithCharset("UTF-8").WithData(htmlBody));
   }

   if (!textBody.empty()) {
       message_body.SetText(

Aws::SES::Model::Content().WithCharset("UTF-8").WithData(textBody));
   }

   Aws::SES::Model::Message message;
   message.SetBody(message_body);
   message.SetSubject(
           Aws::SES::Model::Content().WithCharset("UTF-8").WithData(subject));

   Aws::SES::Model::SendEmailRequest sendEmailRequest;
   sendEmailRequest.SetDestination(destination);
   sendEmailRequest.SetMessage(message);
   if (!senderEmailAddress.empty()) {
       sendEmailRequest.SetSource(senderEmailAddress);
   }
   if (!replyToAddress.empty()) {
       sendEmailRequest.AddReplyToAddresses(replyToAddress);
   }

   auto outcome = sesClient.SendEmail(sendEmailRequest);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully sent message with ID "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId()
                  << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error sending message. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send a formatted email using Amazon SES

The following example uses the `send-email` command to send a formatted email:

```
aws ses send-email --from sender@example.com --destination file://
destination.json --message file://message.json
```

Output:

```
{
   "MessageId": "EXAMPLEf3a5efcd1-51adec81-d2a4-4e3f-9fe2-5d85c1b23783-000000"
}
```

The destination and the message are JSON data structures saved in .json files in the current directory. These files are as follows:

`destination.json`:

```
{
  "ToAddresses":  ["recipient1@example.com", "recipient2@example.com"],
```

```
  "CcAddresses":  ["recipient3@example.com"],
  "BccAddresses": []
}
```

`message.json`:

```
{
   "Subject": {
       "Data": "Test email sent using the AWS CLI",
       "Charset": "UTF-8"
   },
   "Body": {
       "Text": {
           "Data": "This is the message body in text format.",
           "Charset": "UTF-8"
       },
       "Html": {
           "Data": "This message body contains HTML formatting. It can, for
 example, contain links like this one: <a class=\"ulink\" href=\"http://
docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/DeveloperGuide\" target=\"_blank\">Amazon SES
 Developer Guide</a>.",
           "Charset": "UTF-8"
       }
   }
}
```

Replace the sender and recipient email addresses with the ones you want to use. Note that the sender's email address must be verified with Amazon SES. Until you are granted production access to Amazon SES, you must also verify the email address of each recipient unless the recipient is the Amazon SES mailbox simulator. For more information on verification, see Verifying Email Addresses and Domains in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

The Message ID in the output indicates that the call to send-email was successful.

If you don't receive the email, check your Junk box.

For more information on sending formatted email, see Sending Formatted Email Using the Amazon SES API in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.SesClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SendEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SesException;

import javax.mail.MessagingException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SendMessageEmailRequest {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sender> <recipient> <subject>\s

                Where:
                    sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                    recipient -  An email address that represents the recipient.
\s
                    subject - The  subject line.\s
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesClient client = SesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        // The HTML body of the email.
        String bodyHTML = "<html>" + "<head></head>" + "<body>" + "<h1>Hello!</
h1>"
                + "<p> See the list of customers.</p>" + "</body>" + "</html>";

        try {
            send(client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyHTML);
            client.close();
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (MessagingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    public static void send(SesClient client,
            String sender,
            String recipient,
            String subject,
            String bodyHTML) throws MessagingException {

        Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(recipient)
                .build();

        Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(bodyHTML)
                .build();
```

```
        Content sub = Content.builder()
                .data(subject)
                .build();

        Body body = Body.builder()
                .html(content)
                .build();

        Message msg = Message.builder()
                .subject(sub)
                .body(body)
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest emailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .destination(destination)
                .message(msg)
                .source(sender)
                .build();

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email through Amazon SES "
 + "using the AWS SDK for Java...");
            client.sendEmail(emailRequest);

        } catch (SesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.SesClient;
import javax.activation.DataHandler;
import javax.activation.DataSource;
import javax.mail.Message;
import javax.mail.MessagingException;
import javax.mail.Session;
import javax.mail.internet.AddressException;
import javax.mail.internet.InternetAddress;
import javax.mail.internet.MimeMessage;
import javax.mail.internet.MimeMultipart;
import javax.mail.internet.MimeBodyPart;
```

```
import javax.mail.util.ByteArrayDataSource;
import java.io.ByteArrayOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.util.Properties;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SendRawEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.RawMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SesException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class SendMessageAttachment {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sender> <recipient> <subject> <fileLocation>\s

                Where:
                    sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                    recipient -  An email address that represents the recipient.
\s
                    subject - The  subject line.\s
                    fileLocation - The location of a Microsoft Excel file to use
 as an attachment (C:/AWS/customers.xls).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
```

```
        String subject = args[2];
        String fileLocation = args[3];

        // The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
        String bodyText = "Hello,\r\n" + "Please see the attached file for a list
 "
                + "of customers to contact.";

        // The HTML body of the email.
        String bodyHTML = "<html>" + "<head></head>" + "<body>" + "<h1>Hello!</
h1>"
                + "<p>Please see the attached file for a " + "list of customers
 to contact.</p>" + "</body>"
                + "</html>";

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SesClient client = SesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        try {
            sendemailAttachment(client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyText,
 bodyHTML, fileLocation);
            client.close();
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (IOException | MessagingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    public static void sendemailAttachment(SesClient client,
            String sender,
            String recipient,
            String subject,
            String bodyText,
            String bodyHTML,
            String fileLocation) throws AddressException, MessagingException,
 IOException {

        java.io.File theFile = new java.io.File(fileLocation);
        byte[] fileContent = Files.readAllBytes(theFile.toPath());

        Session session = Session.getDefaultInstance(new Properties());
```

```
        // Create a new MimeMessage object.
        MimeMessage message = new MimeMessage(session);

        // Add subject, from and to lines.
        message.setSubject(subject, "UTF-8");
        message.setFrom(new InternetAddress(sender));
        message.setRecipients(Message.RecipientType.TO,
 InternetAddress.parse(recipient));

        // Create a multipart/alternative child container.
        MimeMultipart msgBody = new MimeMultipart("alternative");

        // Create a wrapper for the HTML and text parts.
        MimeBodyPart wrap = new MimeBodyPart();

        // Define the text part.
        MimeBodyPart textPart = new MimeBodyPart();
        textPart.setContent(bodyText, "text/plain; charset=UTF-8");

        // Define the HTML part.
        MimeBodyPart htmlPart = new MimeBodyPart();
        htmlPart.setContent(bodyHTML, "text/html; charset=UTF-8");

        // Add the text and HTML parts to the child container.
        msgBody.addBodyPart(textPart);
        msgBody.addBodyPart(htmlPart);

        // Add the child container to the wrapper object.
        wrap.setContent(msgBody);

        // Create a multipart/mixed parent container.
        MimeMultipart msg = new MimeMultipart("mixed");

        // Add the parent container to the message.
        message.setContent(msg);
        msg.addBodyPart(wrap);

        // Define the attachment.
        MimeBodyPart att = new MimeBodyPart();
        DataSource fds = new ByteArrayDataSource(fileContent,
                "application/vnd.openxmlformats-
officedocument.spreadsheetml.sheet");
        att.setDataHandler(new DataHandler(fds));
```

```
        String reportName = "WorkReport.xls";
        att.setFileName(reportName);

        // Add the attachment to the message.
        msg.addBodyPart(att);

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email through Amazon SES "
 + "using the AWS SDK for Java...");

            ByteArrayOutputStream outputStream = new ByteArrayOutputStream();
            message.writeTo(outputStream);

            ByteBuffer buf = ByteBuffer.wrap(outputStream.toByteArray());

            byte[] arr = new byte[buf.remaining()];
            buf.get(arr);

            SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromByteArray(arr);
            RawMessage rawMessage = RawMessage.builder()
                    .data(data)
                    .build();

            SendRawEmailRequest rawEmailRequest = SendRawEmailRequest.builder()
                    .rawMessage(rawMessage)
                    .build();

            client.sendRawEmail(rawEmailRequest);

        } catch (SesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Email sent using SesClient with attachment");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendEmailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createSendEmailCommand = (toAddress, fromAddress) => {
  return new SendEmailCommand({
    Destination: {
      /* required */
      CcAddresses: [
        /* more items */
      ],
      ToAddresses: [
        toAddress,
        /* more To-email addresses */
      ],
    },
    Message: {
      /* required */
      Body: {
        /* required */
        Html: {
          Charset: "UTF-8",
          Data: "HTML_FORMAT_BODY",
        },
        Text: {
          Charset: "UTF-8",
          Data: "TEXT_FORMAT_BODY",
        },
      },
      Subject: {
        Charset: "UTF-8",
        Data: "EMAIL_SUBJECT",
      },
```

```
    },
    Source: fromAddress,
    ReplyToAddresses: [
      /* more items */
    ],
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const sendEmailCommand = createSendEmailCommand(
    "recipient@example.com",
    "sender@example.com",
  );

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(sendEmailCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesMailSender:
    """Encapsulates functions to send emails with Amazon SES."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def send_email(self, source, destination, subject, text, html,
reply_tos=None):
        """
        Sends an email.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the body of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the body of the email.
        :param reply_tos: Email accounts that will receive a reply if the
recipient
                          replies to the message.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Message": {
                "Subject": {"Data": subject},
                "Body": {"Text": {"Data": text}, "Html": {"Data": html}},
            },
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent mail %s from %s to %s.", message_id, source,
destination.tos
            )
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send mail from %s to %s.", source, destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Replace sender@example.com with your "From" address.
# This address must be verified with Amazon SES.
sender = 'sender@example.com'

# Replace recipient@example.com with a "To" address. If your account
# is still in the sandbox, this address must be verified.
recipient = 'recipient@example.com'

# Specify a configuration set. To use a configuration
# set, uncomment the next line and line 74.
#   configsetname = "ConfigSet"

# The subject line for the email.
subject = 'Amazon SES test (AWS SDK for Ruby)'

# The HTML body of the email.
htmlbody =
  '<h1>Amazon SES test (AWS SDK for Ruby)</h1>'\
```

```
  '<p>This email was sent with <a href="https://aws.amazon.com/ses/">'\
  'Amazon SES</a> using the <a href="https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-ruby/">'\
  'AWS SDK for Ruby</a>.'

# The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
textbody = 'This email was sent with Amazon SES using the AWS SDK for Ruby.'

# Specify the text encoding scheme.
encoding = 'UTF-8'

# Create a new SES client in the us-west-2 region.
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
ses = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Try to send the email.
begin
  # Provide the contents of the email.
  ses.send_email(
    destination: {
      to_addresses: [
        recipient
      ]
    },
    message: {
      body: {
        html: {
          charset: encoding,
          data: htmlbody
        },
        text: {
          charset: encoding,
          data: textbody
        }
      },
      subject: {
        charset: encoding,
        data: subject
      }
    },
    source: sender
    # Uncomment the following line to use a configuration set.
    # configuration_set_name: configsetname,
  )
```

```
  puts "Email sent to #{recipient}"

# If something goes wrong, display an error message.
rescue Aws::SES::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Email not sent. Error message: #{e}"
end
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `SendRawEmail` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SendRawEmail`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send a raw email using Amazon SES

The following example uses the `send-raw-email` command to send an email with a TXT attachment:

```
aws ses send-raw-email --raw-message file://message.json
```

Output:

```
{
   "MessageId": "EXAMPLEf3f73d99b-c63fb06f-d263-41f8-a0fb-d0dc67d56c07-000000"
}
```

The raw message is a JSON data structure saved in a file named `message.json` in the current directory. It contains the following:

```
{
   "Data": "From: sender@example.com\nTo: recipient@example.com\nSubject:
 Test email sent using the AWS CLI (contains an attachment)\nMIME-Version:
 1.0\nContent-type: Multipart/Mixed; boundary=\"NextPart\"\n\n--NextPart
\nContent-Type: text/plain\n\nThis is the message body.\n\n--NextPart\nContent-
Type: text/plain;\nContent-Disposition: attachment; filename=\"attachment.txt\"\n
\nThis is the text in the attachment.\n\n--NextPart--"
```

```
}
```

As you can see, "Data" is one long string that contains the entire raw email content in MIME format, including an attachment called attachment.txt.

Replace sender@example.com and recipient@example.com with the addresses you want to use. Note that the sender's email address must be verified with Amazon SES. Until you are granted production access to Amazon SES, you must also verify the email address of the recipient unless the recipient is the Amazon SES mailbox simulator. For more information on verification, see Verifying Email Addresses and Domains in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

The Message ID in the output indicates that the call to send-raw-email was successful.

If you don't receive the email, check your Junk box.

For more information on sending raw email, see Sending Raw Email Using the Amazon SES API in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see SendRawEmail in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use nodemailer to send an email with an attachment.

```
import sesClientModule from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
/**
 * nodemailer wraps the SES SDK and calls SendRawEmail. Use this for more
 advanced
 * functionality like adding attachments to your email.
 *
 * https://nodemailer.com/transports/ses/
 */
import nodemailer from "nodemailer";
```

```
/**
 * @param {string} from An Amazon SES verified email address.
 * @param {*} to An Amazon SES verified email address.
 */
export const sendEmailWithAttachments = (
  from = "from@example.com",
  to = "to@example.com",
) => {
  const ses = new sesClientModule.SESClient({});
  const transporter = nodemailer.createTransport({
    SES: { ses, aws: sesClientModule },
  });

  return new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
    transporter.sendMail(
      {
        from,
        to,
        subject: "Hello World",
        text: "Greetings from Amazon SES!",
        attachments: [{ content: "Hello World!", filename: "hello.txt" }],
      },
      (err, info) => {
        if (err) {
          reject(err);
        } else {
          resolve(info);
        }
      },
    );
  });
};
```

- For API details, see SendRawEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `SendTemplatedEmail` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Send an email using a template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sender">Address of the sender.</param>
    /// <param name="recipients">Addresses of the recipients.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">Name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="templateDataObject">Data for the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>The messageId of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendTemplateEmailAsync(string sender, List<string>
recipients,
        string templateName, object templateDataObject)
    {
        var messageId = "";
        try
        {
            // Template data should be serialized JSON from either a class or a
dynamic object.
            var templateData = JsonSerializer.Serialize(templateDataObject);

            var response = await
_amazonSimpleEmailService.SendTemplatedEmailAsync(
                new SendTemplatedEmailRequest
                {
                    Source = sender,
                    Destination = new Destination
                    {
                        ToAddresses = recipients
                    },
                    Template = templateName,
```

```
                    TemplateData = templateData
                });
            messageId = response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("SendTemplateEmailAsync failed with exception: " +
 ex.Message);
        }

        return messageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Send a templated email to a list of recipients.
/*!
  \param recipients; Vector of recipient email addresses.
  \param templateName: The name of the template to use.
  \param templateData: Map of key-value pairs for replacing text in template.
  \param senderEmailAddress: Email address of sender. Ignored if empty string.
  \param ccAddresses: Vector of cc addresses. Ignored if empty.
  \param replyToAddress: Reply to email address. Ignored if empty string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::sendTemplatedEmail(const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &recipients,
                                     const Aws::String &templateName,
                                     const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String>
 &templateData,
```

```
                                        const Aws::String &senderEmailAddress,
                                        const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &ccAddresses,
                                        const Aws::String &replyToAddress,
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
&clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

   Aws::SES::Model::Destination destination;
   if (!ccAddresses.empty()) {
       destination.WithCcAddresses(ccAddresses);
   }
   if (!recipients.empty()) {
       destination.WithToAddresses(recipients);
   }

   Aws::SES::Model::SendTemplatedEmailRequest sendTemplatedEmailRequest;
   sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetDestination(destination);
   sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetTemplate(templateName);

   std::ostringstream templateDataStream;
   templateDataStream << "{";
   size_t dataCount = 0;
   for (auto &pair: templateData) {
       templateDataStream << "\"" << pair.first << "\":\"" << pair.second <<
"\"";
       dataCount++;
       if (dataCount < templateData.size()) {
           templateDataStream << ",";
       }
   }
   templateDataStream << "}";

   sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetTemplateData(templateDataStream.str());

   if (!senderEmailAddress.empty()) {
       sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetSource(senderEmailAddress);
   }
   if (!replyToAddress.empty()) {
       sendTemplatedEmailRequest.AddReplyToAddresses(replyToAddress);
   }

   auto outcome = sesClient.SendTemplatedEmail(sendTemplatedEmailRequest);

   if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
        std::cout << "Successfully sent templated message with ID "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId()
                  << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error sending templated message. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SendEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SesV2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.SesV2Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Template;

/**
 * Before running this AWS SDK for Java (v2) example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
```

```
 *
 * Also, make sure that you create a template. See the following documentation
 * topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/dg/send-personalized-email-api.html
 */

public class SendEmailTemplate {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <template> <sender> <recipient>\s

                Where:
                    template - The name of the email template.
                    sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                    recipient - An email address that represents the recipient.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String templateName = args[0];
        String sender = args[1];
        String recipient = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        send(sesv2Client, sender, recipient, templateName);
    }

    public static void send(SesV2Client client, String sender, String recipient,
 String templateName) {
        Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(recipient)
                .build();

        /*
```

```
         * Specify both name and favorite animal (favoriteanimal) in your code
 when
         * defining the Template object.
         * If you don't specify all the variables in the template, Amazon SES
 doesn't
         * send the email.
         */
        Template myTemplate = Template.builder()
                .templateName(templateName)
                .templateData("{\n" +
                        "  \"name\": \"Jason\"\n," +
                        "  \"favoriteanimal\": \"Cat\"\n" +
                        "}")
                .build();

        EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .template(myTemplate)
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest emailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .fromEmailAddress(sender)
                .build();

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email based on a template
 using the AWS SDK for Java (v2)...");
            client.sendEmail(emailRequest);
            System.out.println("email based on a template was sent");

        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendTemplatedEmailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import {
  getUniqueName,
  postfix,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

/**
 * Replace this with the name of an existing template.
 */
const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("ReminderTemplate");

/**
 * Replace these with existing verified emails.
 */
const VERIFIED_EMAIL = postfix(getUniqueName("Bilbo"), "@example.com");

const USER = { firstName: "Bilbo", emailAddress: VERIFIED_EMAIL };

/**
 *
 * @param { { emailAddress: string, firstName: string } } user
 * @param { string } templateName - The name of an existing template in Amazon
 SES.
 * @returns { SendTemplatedEmailCommand }
 */
const createReminderEmailCommand = (user, templateName) => {
  return new SendTemplatedEmailCommand({
    /**
     * Here's an example of how a template would be replaced with user data:
     * Template: <h1>Hello {{contact.firstName}},</h1><p>Don't forget about the
 party gifts!</p>
```

```
     * Destination: <h1>Hello Bilbo,</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!</
p>
     */
    Destination: { ToAddresses: [user.emailAddress] },
    TemplateData: JSON.stringify({ contact: { firstName: user.firstName } }),
    Source: VERIFIED_EMAIL,
    Template: templateName,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const sendReminderEmailCommand = createReminderEmailCommand(
    USER,
    TEMPLATE_NAME,
  );
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(sendReminderEmailCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesMailSender:
    """Encapsulates functions to send emails with Amazon SES."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def send_templated_email(
        self, source, destination, template_name, template_data, reply_tos=None
    ):
        """
        Sends an email based on a template. A template contains replaceable tags
        each enclosed in two curly braces, such as {{name}}. The template data
passed
        in this function contains key-value pairs that define the values to
insert
        in place of the template tags.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param template_name: The name of a previously created template.
        :param template_data: JSON-formatted key-value pairs of replacement
values
                              that are inserted in the template before it is
sent.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Template": template_name,
            "TemplateData": json.dumps(template_data),
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_templated_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent templated mail %s from %s to %s.",
```

```
                message_id,
                source,
                destination.tos,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send templated mail from %s to %s.", source,
 destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateTemplate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Verify an email identity and send messages

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) template.
/*!
  \param templateName: The name of the template.
```

```
  \param htmlPart: The HTML body of the email.
  \param subjectPart: The subject line of the email.
  \param textPart: The plain text version of the email.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::updateTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                                 const Aws::String &htmlPart,
                                 const Aws::String &subjectPart,
                                 const Aws::String &textPart,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::Template templateValues;

    templateValues.SetTemplateName(templateName);
    templateValues.SetSubjectPart(subjectPart);
    templateValues.SetHtmlPart(htmlPart);
    templateValues.SetTextPart(textPart);

    Aws::SES::Model::UpdateTemplateRequest updateTemplateRequest;
    updateTemplateRequest.SetTemplate(templateValues);

    Aws::SES::Model::UpdateTemplateOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.UpdateTemplate(updateTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated template." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error updating template. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UpdateTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TemplateName");
const HTML_PART = "<h1>Hello, World!</h1>";

const createUpdateTemplateCommand = () => {
  return new UpdateTemplateCommand({
    Template: {
      TemplateName: TEMPLATE_NAME,
      HtmlPart: HTML_PART,
      SubjectPart: "Example",
      TextPart: "Updated template text.",
    },
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const updateTemplateCommand = createUpdateTemplateCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(updateTemplateCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to update template.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text +
 html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def update_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Updates a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
```

```
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.update_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Updated template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't update template %s.", name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `VerifyDomainIdentity` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `VerifyDomainIdentity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Copy email and domain identities across Regions
- Verify an email identity and send messages

CLI

AWS CLI

To verify a domain with Amazon SES

The following example uses the `verify-domain-identity` command to verify a domain:

```
aws ses verify-domain-identity --domain example.com
```

Output:

```
{
   "VerificationToken": "eoEmxw+YaYhb3h3iVJHuXMJXqeu1q1/wwmvjuEXAMPLE"
}
```

To complete domain verification, you must add a TXT record with the returned verification token to your domain's DNS settings. For more information, see Verifying Domains in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see VerifyDomainIdentity in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { VerifyDomainIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import {
  getUniqueName,
  postfix,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

/**
 * You must have access to the domain's DNS settings to complete the
 * domain verification process.
 */
const DOMAIN_NAME = postfix(getUniqueName("Domain"), ".example.com");

const createVerifyDomainIdentityCommand = () => {
  return new VerifyDomainIdentityCommand({ Domain: DOMAIN_NAME });
};

const run = async () => {
  const VerifyDomainIdentityCommand = createVerifyDomainIdentityCommand();
```

```
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(VerifyDomainIdentityCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to verify domain.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see VerifyDomainIdentity in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def verify_domain_identity(self, domain_name):
        """
        Starts verification of a domain identity. To complete verification, you
 must
        create a TXT record with a specific format through your DNS provider.

        For more information, see *Verifying a domain with Amazon SES* in the
        Amazon SES documentation:
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/DeveloperGuide/verify-domain-
procedure.html
```

```
        :param domain_name: The name of the domain to verify.
        :return: The token to include in the TXT record with your DNS provider.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.verify_domain_identity(Domain=domain_name)
            token = response["VerificationToken"]
            logger.info("Got domain verification token for %s.", domain_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't verify domain %s.", domain_name)
            raise
        else:
            return token
```

- For API details, see VerifyDomainIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `VerifyEmailIdentity` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Copy email and domain identities across Regions
- Verify an email identity and send messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Starts verification of an email identity. This request sends an email
    /// from Amazon SES to the specified email address. To complete
    /// verification, follow the instructions in the email.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="recipientEmailAddress">Email address to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyEmailIdentityAsync(string
recipientEmailAddress)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonSimpleEmailService.VerifyEmailIdentityAsync(
                new VerifyEmailIdentityRequest
                {
                    EmailAddress = recipientEmailAddress
                });

            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("VerifyEmailIdentityAsync failed with exception: "
+ ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Add an email address to the list of identities associated with this account
 and
//! initiate verification.
/*!
  \param emailAddress; The email address to add.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::verifyEmailIdentity(const Aws::String &emailAddress,
                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration)
{
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::VerifyEmailIdentityRequest verifyEmailIdentityRequest;

    verifyEmailIdentityRequest.SetEmailAddress(emailAddress);

    Aws::SES::Model::VerifyEmailIdentityOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.VerifyEmailIdentity(verifyEmailIdentityRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess())
    {
        std::cout << "Email verification initiated." << std::endl;
    }

    else
    {
        std::cerr << "Error initiating email verification. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To verify an email address with Amazon SES

The following example uses the `verify-email-identity` command to verify an email address:

```
aws ses verify-email-identity --email-address user@example.com
```

Before you can send an email using Amazon SES, you must verify the address or domain that you are sending the email from to prove that you own it. If you do not have production access yet, you also need to verify any email addresses that you send emails to except for email addresses provided by the Amazon SES mailbox simulator.

After verify-email-identity is called, the email address will receive a verification email. The user must click on the link in the email to complete the verification process.

For more information, see Verifying Email Addresses in Amazon SES in the *Amazon Simple Email Service Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { VerifyEmailIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const EMAIL_ADDRESS = "name@example.com";

const createVerifyEmailIdentityCommand = (emailAddress) => {
```

```
  return new VerifyEmailIdentityCommand({ EmailAddress: emailAddress });
};

const run = async () => {
  const verifyEmailIdentityCommand =
    createVerifyEmailIdentityCommand(EMAIL_ADDRESS);
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(verifyEmailIdentityCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to verify email identity.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def verify_email_identity(self, email_address):
        """
        Starts verification of an email identity. This function causes an email
        to be sent to the specified email address from Amazon SES. To complete
        verification, follow the instructions in the email.
```

```
        :param email_address: The email address to verify.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.verify_email_identity(EmailAddress=email_address)
            logger.info("Started verification of %s.", email_address)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start verification of %s.", email_address)
            raise
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Replace recipient@example.com with a "To" address.
recipient = 'recipient@example.com'

# Create a new SES resource in the us-west-2 region.
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
ses = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Try to verify email address.
begin
  ses.verify_email_identity({
                              email_address: recipient
                            })

  puts "Email sent to #{recipient}"
```

```
# If something goes wrong, display an error message.
rescue Aws::SES::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Email not sent. Error message: #{e}"
end
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon SES using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon SES with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon SES or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
- Copy Amazon SES email and domain identities from one AWS Region to another using an AWS SDK
- Create a web application to track DynamoDB data
- Create an Amazon Redshift item tracker
- Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker
- Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Generate credentials to connect to an Amazon SES SMTP endpoint
- Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions
- Verify an email identity and send messages with Amazon SES using an AWS SDK

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Copy Amazon SES email and domain identities from one AWS Region to another using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to copy Amazon SES email and domain identities from one AWS Region to another. When domain identities are managed by Route 53, verification records are copied to the domain for the destination Region.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import argparse
import json
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_identities(ses_client):
    """
    Gets the identities for the current Region. The Region is specified in the
    Boto3 Amazon SES client object.

    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The list of email identities and the list of domain identities.
    """
    email_identities = []
    domain_identities = []
    try:
        identity_paginator = ses_client.get_paginator("list_identities")
        identity_iterator = identity_paginator.paginate(
            PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 20}
        )
        for identity_page in identity_iterator:
            for identity in identity_page["Identities"]:
                if "@" in identity:
                    email_identities.append(identity)
                else:
                    domain_identities.append(identity)
        logger.info(
            "Found %s email and %s domain identities.",
            len(email_identities),
            len(domain_identities),
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get identities.")
        raise
    else:
        return email_identities, domain_identities


def verify_emails(email_list, ses_client):
    """
    Starts verification of a list of email addresses. Verification causes an
 email
    to be sent to each address. To complete verification, the recipient must
 follow
```

```
    the instructions in the email.

    :param email_list: The list of email addresses to verify.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The list of emails that were successfully submitted for
 verification.
    """
    verified_emails = []
    for email in email_list:
        try:
            ses_client.verify_email_identity(EmailAddress=email)
            verified_emails.append(email)
            logger.info("Started verification of %s.", email)
        except ClientError:
            logger.warning("Couldn't start verification of %s.", email)
    return verified_emails


def verify_domains(domain_list, ses_client):
    """
    Starts verification for a list of domain identities. This returns a token for
    each domain, which must be registered as a TXT record with the DNS provider
 for
    the domain.

    :param domain_list: The list of domains to verify.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The generated domain tokens to use to completed verification.
    """
    domain_tokens = {}
    for domain in domain_list:
        try:
            response = ses_client.verify_domain_identity(Domain=domain)
            token = response["VerificationToken"]
            domain_tokens[domain] = token
            logger.info("Got verification token %s for domain %s.", token,
 domain)
        except ClientError:
            logger.warning("Couldn't get verification token for domain %s.",
 domain)
    return domain_tokens


def get_hosted_zones(route53_client):
```

```
    """
    Gets the Amazon Route 53 hosted zones for the current account.

    :param route53_client: A Boto3 Route 53 client.
    :return: The list of hosted zones.
    """
    zones = []
    try:
        zone_paginator = route53_client.get_paginator("list_hosted_zones")
        zone_iterator = zone_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"PageSize":
 20})
        zones = [
            zone for zone_page in zone_iterator for zone in
 zone_page["HostedZones"]
        ]
        logger.info("Found %s hosted zones.", len(zones))
    except ClientError:
        logger.warning("Couldn't get hosted zones.")
    return zones


def find_domain_zone_matches(domains, zones):
    """
    Finds matches between Amazon SES verified domains and Route 53 hosted zones.
    Subdomain matches are taken when found, otherwise root domain matches are
 taken.

    :param domains: The list of domains to match.
    :param zones: The list of hosted zones to match.
    :return: The set of matched domain-zone pairs. When a match is not found, the
             domain is included in the set with a zone value of None.
    """
    domain_zones = {}
    for domain in domains:
        domain_zones[domain] = None
        # Start at the most specific sub-domain and walk up to the root domain
 until a
        # zone match is found.
        domain_split = domain.split(".")
        for index in range(0, len(domain_split) - 1):
            sub_domain = ".".join(domain_split[index:])
            for zone in zones:
                # Normalize the zone name from Route 53 by removing the trailing
 '.'.
```

```
                zone_name = zone["Name"][:-1]
                if sub_domain == zone_name:
                    domain_zones[domain] = zone
                    break
            if domain_zones[domain] is not None:
                break
    return domain_zones


def add_route53_verification_record(domain, token, zone, route53_client):
    """
    Adds a domain verification TXT record to the specified Route 53 hosted zone.
    When a TXT record already exists in the hosted zone for the specified domain,
    the existing values are preserved and the new token is added to the list.

    :param domain: The domain to add.
    :param token: The verification token for the domain.
    :param zone: The hosted zone where the domain verification record is added.
    :param route53_client: A Boto3 Route 53 client.
    """
    domain_token_record_set_name = f"_amazonses.{domain}"
    record_set_paginator =
 route53_client.get_paginator("list_resource_record_sets")
    record_set_iterator = record_set_paginator.paginate(
        HostedZoneId=zone["Id"], PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 20}
    )
    records = []
    for record_set_page in record_set_iterator:
        try:
            txt_record_set = next(
                record_set
                for record_set in record_set_page["ResourceRecordSets"]
                if record_set["Name"][:-1] == domain_token_record_set_name
                and record_set["Type"] == "TXT"
            )
            records = txt_record_set["ResourceRecords"]
            logger.info(
                "Existing TXT record found in set %s for zone %s.",
                domain_token_record_set_name,
                zone["Name"],
            )
            break
        except StopIteration:
            pass
```

```
    records.append({"Value": json.dumps(token)})
    changes = [
        {
            "Action": "UPSERT",
            "ResourceRecordSet": {
                "Name": domain_token_record_set_name,
                "Type": "TXT",
                "TTL": 1800,
                "ResourceRecords": records,
            },
        }
    ]
    try:
        route53_client.change_resource_record_sets(
            HostedZoneId=zone["Id"], ChangeBatch={"Changes": changes}
        )
        logger.info(
            "Created or updated the TXT record in set %s for zone %s.",
            domain_token_record_set_name,
            zone["Name"],
        )
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.warning(
            "Got error %s. Couldn't create or update the TXT record for zone
 %s.",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            zone["Name"],
        )


def generate_dkim_tokens(domain, ses_client):
    """
    Generates DKIM tokens for a domain. These must be added as CNAME records to
 the
    DNS provider for the domain.

    :param domain: The domain to generate tokens for.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The list of generated DKIM tokens.
    """
    dkim_tokens = []
    try:
        dkim_tokens = ses_client.verify_domain_dkim(Domain=domain)["DkimTokens"]
```

```
        logger.info("Generated %s DKIM tokens for domain %s.", len(dkim_tokens),
 domain)
    except ClientError:
        logger.warning("Couldn't generate DKIM tokens for domain %s.", domain)
    return dkim_tokens


def add_dkim_domain_tokens(hosted_zone, domain, tokens, route53_client):
    """
    Adds DKIM domain token CNAME records to a Route 53 hosted zone.

    :param hosted_zone: The hosted zone where the records are added.
    :param domain: The domain to add.
    :param tokens: The DKIM tokens for the domain to add.
    :param route53_client: A Boto3 Route 53 client.
    """
    try:
        changes = [
            {
                "Action": "UPSERT",
                "ResourceRecordSet": {
                    "Name": f"{token}._domainkey.{domain}",
                    "Type": "CNAME",
                    "TTL": 1800,
                    "ResourceRecords": [{"Value":
 f"{token}.dkim.amazonses.com"}],
                },
            }
            for token in tokens
        ]
        route53_client.change_resource_record_sets(
            HostedZoneId=hosted_zone["Id"], ChangeBatch={"Changes": changes}
        )
        logger.info(
            "Added %s DKIM CNAME records to %s in zone %s.",
            len(tokens),
            domain,
            hosted_zone["Name"],
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.warning(
            "Couldn't add DKIM CNAME records for %s to zone %s.",
            domain,
            hosted_zone["Name"],
```

```
        )


def configure_sns_topics(identity, topics, ses_client):
    """
    Configures Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notifications for
    an identity. The Amazon SNS topics must already exist.

    :param identity: The identity to configure.
    :param topics: The list of topics to configure. The choices are Bounce,
 Delivery,
                   or Complaint.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    """
    for topic in topics:
        topic_arn = input(
            f"Enter the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the {topic} topic or press
 "
            f"Enter to skip: "
        )
        if topic_arn != "":
            try:
                ses_client.set_identity_notification_topic(
                    Identity=identity, NotificationType=topic, SnsTopic=topic_arn
                )
                logger.info("Configured %s for %s notifications.", identity,
 topic)
            except ClientError:
                logger.warning(
                    "Couldn't configure %s for %s notifications.", identity,
 topic
                )


def replicate(source_client, destination_client, route53_client):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        f"Replicating Amazon SES identities and other configuration from "
        f"{source_client.meta.region_name} to
 {destination_client.meta.region_name}."
    )
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(f"Retrieving identities from {source_client.meta.region_name}.")
    source_emails, source_domains = get_identities(source_client)
    print("Email addresses found:")
    print(*source_emails)
    print("Domains found:")
    print(*source_domains)

    print("Starting verification for email identities.")
    dest_emails = verify_emails(source_emails, destination_client)
    print("Getting domain tokens for domain identities.")
    dest_domain_tokens = verify_domains(source_domains, destination_client)

    # Get Route 53 hosted zones and match them with Amazon SES domains.
    answer = input(
        "Is the DNS configuration for your domains managed by Amazon Route 53 (y/
n)? "
    )
    use_route53 = answer.lower() == "y"
    hosted_zones = get_hosted_zones(route53_client) if use_route53 else []
    if use_route53:
        print("Adding or updating Route 53 TXT records for your domains.")
        domain_zones = find_domain_zone_matches(dest_domain_tokens.keys(),
 hosted_zones)
        for domain in domain_zones:
            add_route53_verification_record(
                domain, dest_domain_tokens[domain], domain_zones[domain],
 route53_client
            )
    else:
        print(
            "Use these verification tokens to create TXT records through your DNS
 "
            "provider:"
        )
        pprint(dest_domain_tokens)

    answer = input("Do you want to configure DKIM signing for your identities (y/
n)? ")
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        # Build a set of unique domains from email and domain identities.
        domains = {email.split("@")[1] for email in dest_emails}
        domains.update(dest_domain_tokens)
        domain_zones = find_domain_zone_matches(domains, hosted_zones)
```

```
        for domain, zone in domain_zones.items():
            answer = input(
                f"Do you want to configure DKIM signing for {domain} (y/n)? "
            )
            if answer.lower() == "y":
                dkim_tokens = generate_dkim_tokens(domain, destination_client)
                if use_route53 and zone is not None:
                    add_dkim_domain_tokens(zone, domain, dkim_tokens,
 route53_client)
                else:
                    print(
                        "Add the following DKIM tokens as CNAME records through
 your "
                        "DNS provider:"
                    )
                    print(*dkim_tokens, sep="\n")

    answer = input(
        "Do you want to configure Amazon SNS notifications for your identities
 (y/n)? "
    )
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        for identity in dest_emails + list(dest_domain_tokens.keys()):
            answer = input(
                f"Do you want to configure Amazon SNS topics for {identity} (y/
n)? "
            )
            if answer.lower() == "y":
                configure_sns_topics(
                    identity, ["Bounce", "Delivery", "Complaint"],
 destination_client
                )

    print(f"Replication complete for {destination_client.meta.region_name}.")
    print("-" * 88)


def main():
    boto3_session = boto3.Session()
    ses_regions = boto3_session.get_available_regions("ses")
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Copies email address and domain identities from one AWS
 Region to "
        "another. Optionally adds records for domain verification and DKIM "
```

```
        "signing to domains that are managed by Amazon Route 53, "
        "and sets up Amazon SNS notifications for events of interest."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "source_region", choices=ses_regions, help="The region to copy from."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "destination_region", choices=ses_regions, help="The region to copy to."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    source_client = boto3.client("ses", region_name=args.source_region)
    destination_client = boto3.client("ses", region_name=args.destination_region)
    route53_client = boto3.client("route53")
    replicate(source_client, destination_client, route53_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - ListIdentities
  - SetIdentityNotificationTopic
  - VerifyDomainDkim
  - VerifyDomainIdentity
  - VerifyEmailIdentity

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB .NET API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in Amazon DynamoDB and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in a DynamoDB table.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example in the AWS Code Examples Repository on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create an Amazon Redshift item tracker

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items using an Amazon Redshift database.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code examples show how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora

- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora

- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Detect PPE in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition with the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

Learn how to:

- Create an unauthenticated user using Amazon Cognito.
- Analyze images for objects using Amazon Rekognition.
- Verify an email address for Amazon SES.
- Send an email notification using Amazon SES.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SES

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Kotlin API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a web application that lets you do the following:

- Upload photos to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze and label the photos.
- Use Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send email reports of image analysis.

This example contains two main components: a webpage written in JavaScript that is built with React, and a REST service written in Python that is built with Flask-RESTful.

You can use the React webpage to:

- Display a list of images that are stored in your S3 bucket.
- Upload images from your computer to your S3 bucket.
- Display images and labels that identify items that are detected in the image.
- Get a report of all images in your S3 bucket and send an email of the report.

The webpage calls the REST service. The service sends requests to AWS to perform the following actions:

- Get and filter the list of images in your S3 bucket.
- Upload photos to your S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze individual photos and get a list of labels that identify items that are detected in the photo.
- Analyze all photos in your S3 bucket and use Amazon SES to email a report.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Generate credentials to connect to an Amazon SES SMTP endpoint

The following code example shows how to generate credentials to connect to an Amazon SES SMTP endpoint.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python3

import hmac
import hashlib
import base64
import argparse

SMTP_REGIONS = [
    "us-east-2",  # US East (Ohio)
    "us-east-1",  # US East (N. Virginia)
    "us-west-2",  # US West (Oregon)
    "ap-south-1",  # Asia Pacific (Mumbai)
    "ap-northeast-2",  # Asia Pacific (Seoul)
    "ap-southeast-1",  # Asia Pacific (Singapore)
    "ap-southeast-2",  # Asia Pacific (Sydney)
    "ap-northeast-1",  # Asia Pacific (Tokyo)
    "ca-central-1",  # Canada (Central)
    "eu-central-1",  # Europe (Frankfurt)
    "eu-west-1",  # Europe (Ireland)
    "eu-west-2",  # Europe (London)
    "eu-south-1",  # Europe (Milan)
    "eu-north-1",  # Europe (Stockholm)
    "sa-east-1",  # South America (Sao Paulo)
    "us-gov-west-1",  # AWS GovCloud (US)
    "us-gov-east-1",  # AWS GovCloud (US)
]

# These values are required to calculate the signature. Do not change them.
DATE = "11111111"
SERVICE = "ses"
MESSAGE = "SendRawEmail"
TERMINAL = "aws4_request"
VERSION = 0x04


def sign(key, msg):
    return hmac.new(key, msg.encode("utf-8"), hashlib.sha256).digest()


def calculate_key(secret_access_key, region):
    if region not in SMTP_REGIONS:
        raise ValueError(f"The {region} Region doesn't have an SMTP endpoint.")
```

```
    signature = sign(("AWS4" + secret_access_key).encode("utf-8"), DATE)
    signature = sign(signature, region)
    signature = sign(signature, SERVICE)
    signature = sign(signature, TERMINAL)
    signature = sign(signature, MESSAGE)
    signature_and_version = bytes([VERSION]) + signature
    smtp_password = base64.b64encode(signature_and_version)
    return smtp_password.decode("utf-8")


def main():
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Convert a Secret Access Key to an SMTP password."
    )
    parser.add_argument("secret", help="The Secret Access Key to convert.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "region",
        help="The AWS Region where the SMTP password will be used.",
        choices=SMTP_REGIONS,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    print(calculate_key(args.secret, args.region))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Verify an email identity and send messages with Amazon SES using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Add and verify an email address with Amazon SES.
- Send a standard email message.
- Create a template and send a templated email message.
- Send a message by using an Amazon SES SMTP server.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Verify an email address with Amazon SES and send messages.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) email demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    ses_client = boto3.client("ses")
    ses_identity = SesIdentity(ses_client)
    ses_mail_sender = SesMailSender(ses_client)
    ses_template = SesTemplate(ses_client)
```

```
    email = input("Enter an email address to send mail with Amazon SES: ")
    status = ses_identity.get_identity_status(email)
    verified = status == "Success"
    if not verified:
        answer = input(
            f"The address '{email}' is not verified with Amazon SES. Unless your
"
            f"Amazon SES account is out of sandbox, you can send mail only from "
            f"and to verified accounts. Do you want to verify this account for
use "
            f"with Amazon SES? If yes, the address will receive a verification "
            f"email (y/n): "
        )
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            ses_identity.verify_email_identity(email)
            print(f"Follow the steps in the email to {email} to complete
verification.")
            print("Waiting for verification...")
            try:
                ses_identity.wait_until_identity_exists(email)
                print(f"Identity verified for {email}.")
                verified = True
            except WaiterError:
                print(
                    f"Verification timeout exceeded. You must complete the "
                    f"steps in the email sent to {email} to verify the address."
                )

    if verified:
        test_message_text = "Hello from the Amazon SES mail demo!"
        test_message_html = "<p>Hello!</p><p>From the <b>Amazon SES</b> mail
demo!</p>"

        print(f"Sending mail from {email} to {email}.")
        ses_mail_sender.send_email(
            email,
            SesDestination([email]),
            "Amazon SES demo",
            test_message_text,
            test_message_html,
        )
        input("Mail sent. Check your inbox and press Enter to continue.")

        template = {
```

```
            "name": "doc-example-template",
            "subject": "Example of an email template.",
            "text": "This is what {{name}} will {{action}} if {{name}} can't
 display "
            "HTML.",
            "html": "<p><i>This</i> is what {{name}} will {{action}} if {{name}}
 "
            "<b>can</b> display HTML.</p>",
        }
        print("Creating a template and sending a templated email.")
        ses_template.create_template(**template)
        template_data = {"name": email.split("@")[0], "action": "read"}
        if ses_template.verify_tags(template_data):
            ses_mail_sender.send_templated_email(
                email, SesDestination([email]), ses_template.name(),
 template_data
            )
            input("Mail sent. Check your inbox and press Enter to continue.")

        print("Sending mail through the Amazon SES SMTP server.")
        boto3_session = boto3.Session()
        region = boto3_session.region_name
        credentials = boto3_session.get_credentials()
        port = 587
        smtp_server = f"email-smtp.{region}.amazonaws.com"
        password = calculate_key(credentials.secret_key, region)
        message = """
Subject: Hi there

This message is sent from the Amazon SES SMTP mail demo."""
        context = ssl.create_default_context()
        with smtplib.SMTP(smtp_server, port) as server:
            server.starttls(context=context)
            server.login(credentials.access_key, password)
            server.sendmail(email, email, message)
        print("Mail sent. Check your inbox!")

    if ses_template.template is not None:
        print("Deleting demo template.")
        ses_template.delete_template()
    if verified:
        answer = input(f"Do you want to remove {email} from Amazon SES (y/n)? ")
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            ses_identity.delete_identity(email)
```

```
    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

Create functions to wrap Amazon SES identity actions.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def verify_domain_identity(self, domain_name):
        """
        Starts verification of a domain identity. To complete verification, you
 must
        create a TXT record with a specific format through your DNS provider.

        For more information, see *Verifying a domain with Amazon SES* in the
        Amazon SES documentation:
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/DeveloperGuide/verify-domain-
procedure.html

        :param domain_name: The name of the domain to verify.
        :return: The token to include in the TXT record with your DNS provider.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.verify_domain_identity(Domain=domain_name)
            token = response["VerificationToken"]
            logger.info("Got domain verification token for %s.", domain_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't verify domain %s.", domain_name)
            raise
        else:
            return token
```

```
    def verify_email_identity(self, email_address):
        """
        Starts verification of an email identity. This function causes an email
        to be sent to the specified email address from Amazon SES. To complete
        verification, follow the instructions in the email.

        :param email_address: The email address to verify.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.verify_email_identity(EmailAddress=email_address)
            logger.info("Started verification of %s.", email_address)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start verification of %s.", email_address)
            raise


    def wait_until_identity_exists(self, identity):
        """
        Waits until an identity exists. The waiter polls Amazon SES until the
        identity has been successfully verified or until it exceeds its maximum
time.

        :param identity: The identity to wait for.
        """
        try:
            waiter = self.ses_client.get_waiter("identity_exists")
            logger.info("Waiting until %s exists.", identity)
            waiter.wait(Identities=[identity])
        except WaiterError:
            logger.error("Waiting for identity %s failed or timed out.",
identity)
            raise


    def get_identity_status(self, identity):
        """
        Gets the status of an identity. This can be used to discover whether
        an identity has been successfully verified.

        :param identity: The identity to query.
        :return: The status of the identity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_identity_verification_attributes(
```

```
                Identities=[identity]
            )
            status = response["VerificationAttributes"].get(
                identity, {"VerificationStatus": "NotFound"}
            )["VerificationStatus"]
            logger.info("Got status of %s for %s.", status, identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get status for %s.", identity)
            raise
        else:
            return status


    def delete_identity(self, identity):
        """
        Deletes an identity.

        :param identity: The identity to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_identity(Identity=identity)
            logger.info("Deleted identity %s.", identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete identity %s.", identity)
            raise


    def list_identities(self, identity_type, max_items):
        """
        Gets the identities of the specified type for the current account.

        :param identity_type: The type of identity to retrieve, such as
EmailAddress.
        :param max_items: The maximum number of identities to retrieve.
        :return: The list of retrieved identities.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_identities(
                IdentityType=identity_type, MaxItems=max_items
            )
            identities = response["Identities"]
            logger.info("Got %s identities for the current account.",
len(identities))
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't list identities for the current account.")
            raise
        else:
            return identities
```

Create functions to wrap Amazon SES template actions.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text +
 html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def create_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Creates an email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
        """
```

```
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.create_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Created template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create template %s.", name)
            raise


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes an email template.
        """
        try:

self.ses_client.delete_template(TemplateName=self.template["TemplateName"])
            logger.info("Deleted template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"])
            self.template = None
            self.template_tags = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"]
            )
            raise


    def get_template(self, name):
        """
        Gets a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved email template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_template(TemplateName=name)
            self.template = response["Template"]
            logger.info("Got template %s.", name)
```

```
            self._extract_tags(
                self.template["SubjectPart"],
                self.template["TextPart"],
                self.template["HtmlPart"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get template %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.template


    def list_templates(self):
        """
        Gets a list of all email templates for the current account.

        :return: The list of retrieved email templates.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_templates()
            templates = response["TemplatesMetadata"]
            logger.info("Got %s templates.", len(templates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get templates.")
            raise
        else:
            return templates


    def update_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Updates a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
```

```
            }
            self.ses_client.update_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Updated template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't update template %s.", name)
            raise
```

Create functions to wrap Amazon SES email actions.

```
class SesDestination:
    """Contains data about an email destination."""

    def __init__(self, tos, ccs=None, bccs=None):
        """
        :param tos: The list of recipients on the 'To:' line.
        :param ccs: The list of recipients on the 'CC:' line.
        :param bccs: The list of recipients on the 'BCC:' line.
        """
        self.tos = tos
        self.ccs = ccs
        self.bccs = bccs

    def to_service_format(self):
        """
        :return: The destination data in the format expected by Amazon SES.
        """
        svc_format = {"ToAddresses": self.tos}
        if self.ccs is not None:
            svc_format["CcAddresses"] = self.ccs
        if self.bccs is not None:
            svc_format["BccAddresses"] = self.bccs
        return svc_format



class SesMailSender:
    """Encapsulates functions to send emails with Amazon SES."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def send_email(self, source, destination, subject, text, html,
reply_tos=None):
        """
        Sends an email.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the body of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the body of the email.
        :param reply_tos: Email accounts that will receive a reply if the
recipient
                          replies to the message.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Message": {
                "Subject": {"Data": subject},
                "Body": {"Text": {"Data": text}, "Html": {"Data": html}},
            },
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent mail %s from %s to %s.", message_id, source,
destination.tos
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't send mail from %s to %s.", source, destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id


    def send_templated_email(
        self, source, destination, template_name, template_data, reply_tos=None
    ):
        """
        Sends an email based on a template. A template contains replaceable tags
        each enclosed in two curly braces, such as {{name}}. The template data
passed
        in this function contains key-value pairs that define the values to
insert
        in place of the template tags.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param template_name: The name of a previously created template.
        :param template_data: JSON-formatted key-value pairs of replacement
values
                              that are inserted in the template before it is
sent.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Template": template_name,
            "TemplateData": json.dumps(template_data),
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_templated_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent templated mail %s from %s to %s.",
                message_id,
```

```
                source,
                destination.tos,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send templated mail from %s to %s.", source,
destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTemplate
  - DeleteIdentity
  - DeleteTemplate
  - GetIdentityVerificationAttributes
  - GetTemplate
  - ListIdentities
  - ListTemplates
  - SendEmail
  - SendTemplatedEmail
  - UpdateTemplate
  - VerifyDomainIdentity
  - VerifyEmailIdentity

Code examples for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Simple Email Service API v2 with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon SES API v2 Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon SES API v2.
- **Amazon SES API v2 API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon SES API v2 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateContact with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateContactList with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateEmailTemplate with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteContactList with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteEmailTemplate with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListContactLists with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListContacts with an AWS SDK
    - Use SendEmail with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs
  - A complete Amazon SES API v2 Newsletter scenario using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Simple Email Service API v2 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateContact with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateContactList with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateEmailTemplate with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteContactList with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
  - Use DeleteEmailTemplate with an AWS SDK
  - Use GetEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListContactLists with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListContacts with an AWS SDK
  - Use SendEmail with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon SES API v2 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon SES API v2 API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Simple Email Service API v2 API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateContact with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateContactList with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
- Use CreateEmailTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteContactList with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK

- Use DeleteEmailTemplate with an AWS SDK
- Use GetEmailIdentity with an AWS SDK
- Use ListContactLists with an AWS SDK
- Use ListContacts with an AWS SDK
- Use SendEmail with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateContact` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateContact`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact and adds it to the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the contact.</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateContact operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactAsync(string emailAddress, string
contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactRequest
        {
            EmailAddress = emailAddress,
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact with email address {emailAddress} already
exists in the contact list {contactListName}.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
      try {
        // Create a new contact with the provided email address in the
        CreateContactRequest contactRequest = CreateContactRequest.builder()
            .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .emailAddress(emailAddress)
            .build();

        sesClient.createContact(contactRequest);
        contacts.add(emailAddress);

        System.out.println("Contact created: " + emailAddress);

        // Send a welcome email to the new contact
        String welcomeHtml = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.html"));
        String welcomeText = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.txt"));

        SendEmailRequest welcomeEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(
                    Message.builder()
                        .subject(Content.builder().data("Welcome to the Weekly
 Coupons Newsletter").build())
                        .body(Body.builder()
                            .text(Content.builder().data(welcomeText).build())
                            .html(Content.builder().data(welcomeHtml).build())
                            .build())
                        .build())
                .build())
```

```
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse welcomeEmailResponse =
 sesClient.sendEmail(welcomeEmailRequest);
        System.out.println("Welcome email sent: " +
 welcomeEmailResponse.messageId());
      } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
        // If the contact already exists, skip this step for that contact and
 proceed
        // with the next contact
        System.out.println("Contact already exists, skipping creation...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while processing email address " +
 emailAddress + ": " + e.getMessage());
        throw e;
      }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
```

```
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


            try:
                # Create a new contact
                self.ses_client.create_contact(
                    ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME, EmailAddress=email
                )
                print(f"Contact with email '{email}' created successfully.")

                # Send the welcome email
                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons
 Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")
                if self.sleep:
                    # 1 email per second in sandbox mode, remove in production.
                    sleep(1.1)
```

```
            except ClientError as e:
                # If the contact already exists, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                    print(f"Contact with email '{email}' already exists.
 Skipping...")
                else:
                    raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn add_contact(client: &Client, list: &str, email: &str) -> Result<(),
 Error> {
    client
        .create_contact()
        .contact_list_name(list)
        .email_address(email)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created contact");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateContactList` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateContactList`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact list with the specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list with name {contactListName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact
list: {ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // 2. Create a contact list
      String contactListName = CONTACT_LIST_NAME;
      CreateContactListRequest createContactListRequest =
CreateContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(contactListName)
          .build();
      sesClient.createContactList(createContactListRequest);
      System.out.println("Contact list created: " + contactListName);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      System.out.println("Contact list already exists, skipping creation: weekly-
coupons-newsletter");
```

```
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      System.err.println("Limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
      throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error creating contact list: " + e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
```

```
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:

 self.ses_client.create_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_list(client: &Client, contact_list: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .create_contact_list()
        .contact_list_name(contact_list)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created contact list.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateEmailIdentity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateEmailIdentity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email identity (email address or domain) and starts the
verification process.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to create and
verify.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateEmailIdentity operation.</returns>
    public async Task<CreateEmailIdentityResponse>
CreateEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(request);
```

```
            return response;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {emailIdentity} already exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being
modified by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email identities has been
exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email
identity: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   try {
     CreateEmailIdentityRequest createEmailIdentityRequest =
CreateEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
         .emailIdentity(verifiedEmail)
         .build();
     sesClient.createEmailIdentity(createEmailIdentityRequest);
     System.out.println("Email identity created: " + verifiedEmail);
   } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
     System.out.println("Email identity already exists, skipping creation: " +
verifiedEmail);
   } catch (NotFoundException e) {
     System.err.println("The provided email address is not verified: " +
verifiedEmail);
     throw e;
   } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
     System.err
         .println("You have reached the limit for email identities. Please
remove some identities and try again.");
     throw e;
   } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
     System.err.println("Error creating email identity: " + e.getMessage());
     throw e;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:

 self.ses_client.create_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
```

```
            print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' created
successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email identity already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .create_email_identity()
            .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity created
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailIdentityError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email identity already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email identity: {}", e)),
            },
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `CreateEmailTemplate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateEmailTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email template with the specified content.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName, string
subject, string htmlContent, string textContent)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName,
            TemplateContent = new EmailTemplateContent
            {
                Subject = subject,
```

```
                Html = htmlContent,
                Text = textContent
            }
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template with name {templateName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email templates has been
exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email
template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // Create an email template named "weekly-coupons"
      String newsletterHtml = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html");
      String newsletterText = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.txt");

      CreateEmailTemplateRequest templateRequest =
 CreateEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .templateContent(EmailTemplateContent.builder()
              .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
              .html(newsletterHtml)
              .text(newsletterText)
              .build())
          .build();

      sesClient.createEmailTemplate(templateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template created: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      // If the template already exists, skip this step and proceed with the next
      // operation
      System.out.println("Email template already exists, skipping creation...");
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      // If the limit for email templates is exceeded, fail the workflow and
 inform
      // the user
      System.err.println("You have reached the limit for email templates. Please
 remove some templates and try again.");
      throw e;
    } catch (Exception e) {
```

```
        System.err.println("Error occurred while creating email template: " +
 e.getMessage());
        throw e;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
```

```
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            template_content = {
                "Subject": "Weekly Coupons Newsletter",
                "Html": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.html"),
                "Text": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.txt"),
            }
            self.ses_client.create_email_template(
                TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME, TemplateContent=template_content
            )
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the template already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let template_html =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-
newsletter.html".to_string());
        let template_text =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.txt")
```

```
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-newsletter.txt".to_string());

        // Create the email template
        let template_content = EmailTemplateContent::builder()
            .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
            .html(template_html)
            .text(template_text)
            .build();

        match self
            .client
            .create_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .template_content(template_content)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template created
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailTemplateError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email template already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email template: {}", e)),
            },
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteContactList` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteContactList`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a contact list and all contacts within it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} is being
 modified by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the contact
list: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // Delete the contact list
      DeleteContactListRequest deleteContactListRequest =
DeleteContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteContactList(deleteContactListRequest);

      System.out.println("Contact list deleted: " + CONTACT_LIST_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the contact list does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Contact list not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the contact list: " +
e.getMessage());
```

```
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep
```

```
        try:

self.ses_client.delete_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .delete_contact_list()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact list deleted
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting contact list: {e}")),
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteEmailIdentity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteEmailIdentity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email identity (email address or domain).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being
 modified by another operation or thread.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email
identity: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
      try {
        // Delete the email identity
        DeleteEmailIdentityRequest deleteIdentityRequest =
DeleteEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
            .emailIdentity(this.verifiedEmail)
            .build();
```

```
        sesClient.deleteEmailIdentity(deleteIdentityRequest);

        System.out.println("Email identity deleted: " + this.verifiedEmail);
      } catch (NotFoundException e) {
        // If the email identity does not exist, log the error and proceed
        System.out.println("Email identity not found. Skipping deletion...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email identity: " +
 e.getMessage());
        e.printStackTrace();
      }
    } else {
      System.out.println("Skipping email identity deletion.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


            try:

 self.ses_client.delete_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' deleted
 successfully.")
            except ClientError as e:
                # If the email identity doesn't exist, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                    print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' does not
 exist.")
                else:
                    print(e)
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            match self
```

```
                .client
                .delete_email_identity()
                .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity deleted
 successfully.")?,
                Err(e) => {
                    return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email identity: {}", e));
                }
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DeleteEmailTemplate` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteEmailTemplate`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to delete.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email template {templateName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email
template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // Delete the template
      DeleteEmailTemplateRequest deleteTemplateRequest =
DeleteEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteEmailTemplate(deleteTemplateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template deleted: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the email template does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Email template not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email template: " +
e.getMessage());
      e.printStackTrace();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_email_template(TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME)
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email template doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .delete_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template deleted
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => {
                return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email template: {e}"));
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetEmailIdentity` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `GetEmailIdentity`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Determines whether an email address has been verified.

```
async fn is_verified(client: &Client, email: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .get_email_identity()
        .email_identity(email)
        .send()
        .await?;

    if resp.verified_for_sending_status() {
        println!("The address is verified");
    } else {
        println!("The address is not verified");
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListContactLists` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `ListContactLists`.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_lists(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_contact_lists().send().await?;

    println!("Contact lists:");

    for list in resp.contact_lists() {
```

```
        println!("  {}", list.contact_list_name().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListContactLists in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `ListContacts` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListContacts`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Newsletter scenario

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the contacts in the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of contacts response from the ListContacts operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Contact>> ListContactsAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new ListContactsRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.ListContactsAsync(request);
            return response.Contacts;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing the contacts:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return new List<Contact>();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    ListContactsRequest contactListRequest = ListContactsRequest.builder()
        .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
```

```
            .build();

        List<String> contactEmails;
        try {
          ListContactsResponse contactListResponse =
 sesClient.listContacts(contactListRequest);

          contactEmails = contactListResponse.contacts().stream()
              .map(Contact::emailAddress)
              .toList();
        } catch (Exception e) {
          // TODO: Remove when listContacts's GET body issue is resolved.
          contactEmails = this.contacts;
        }
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            contacts_response = self.ses_client.list_contacts(
                ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
                return
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_contacts(client: &Client, list: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .list_contacts()
```

```
        .contact_list_name(list)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Contacts:");

    for contact in resp.contacts() {
        println!("  {}", contact.email_address().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `SendEmail` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `SendEmail`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Sends an email with the specified content and options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The email address to send the email
from.</param>
    /// <param name="toEmailAddresses">The email addresses to send the email
to.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to use
(optional).</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="templateData">The data to replace placeholders in the email
template (optional).</param>
   /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list for
unsubscribe functionality (optional).</param>
   /// <returns>The MessageId response from the SendEmail operation.</returns>
   public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(string fromEmailAddress,
List<string> toEmailAddresses, string? subject,
       string? htmlContent, string? textContent, string? templateName = null,
string? templateData = null, string? contactListName = null)
   {
       var request = new SendEmailRequest
       {
           FromEmailAddress = fromEmailAddress
       };

       if (toEmailAddresses.Any())
       {
           request.Destination = new Destination { ToAddresses =
toEmailAddresses };
       }

       if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(templateName))
       {
           request.Content = new EmailContent()
           {
               Template = new Template
               {
                   TemplateName = templateName,
                   TemplateData = templateData
               }
           };
       }
       else
       {
           request.Content = new EmailContent
           {
               Simple = new Message
               {
                   Subject = new Content { Data = subject },
                   Body = new Body
                   {
                       Html = new Content { Data = htmlContent },
                       Text = new Content { Data = textContent }
                   }
```

```
                }
            };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(contactListName))
        {
            request.ListManagementOptions = new ListManagementOptions
            {
                ContactListName = contactListName
            };
        }

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.SendEmailAsync(request);
            return response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (AccountSuspendedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email has been
permanently restricted.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MailFromDomainNotVerifiedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The sending domain is not verified.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MessageRejectedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message content is invalid.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (SendingPausedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email is currently
paused.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while sending the email:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return string.Empty;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sends a message.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SendEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SesV2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.SesV2Client;

/**
 * Before running this AWS SDK for Java (v2) example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class SendEmail {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                            Usage:
                                <sender> <recipient> <subject>\s

                            Where:
                                sender - An email address that represents the
 sender.\s
                                recipient - An email address that represents the
 recipient.\s
                                subject - The subject line.\s
                            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        // The HTML body of the email.
        String bodyHTML = "<html>" + "<head></head>" + "<body>" + "<h1>Hello!</
h1>"
                + "<p> See the list of customers.</p>" + "</body>" + "</html>";

        send(sesv2Client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyHTML);
    }

    public static void send(SesV2Client client,
                            String sender,
                            String recipient,
```

```
                        String subject,
                        String bodyHTML) {

        Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(recipient)
                .build();

        Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(bodyHTML)
                .build();

        Content sub = Content.builder()
                .data(subject)
                .build();

        Body body = Body.builder()
                .html(content)
                .build();

        Message msg = Message.builder()
                .subject(sub)
                .body(body)
                .build();

        EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(msg)
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest emailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .fromEmailAddress(sender)
                .build();

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email through Amazon SES "
                    + "using the AWS SDK for Java...");
            client.sendEmail(emailRequest);
            System.out.println("email was sent");

        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

Sends a message using a template.

```
      String coupons = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/coupon_newsletter/
sample_coupons.json"));
      for (String emailAddress : contactEmails) {
        SendEmailRequest newsletterRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
                .template(Template.builder()
                    .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                    .templateData(coupons)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .listManagementOptions(ListManagementOptions.builder()
                .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse newsletterResponse =
 sesClient.sendEmail(newsletterRequest);
        System.out.println("Newsletter sent to " + emailAddress + ": " +
 newsletterResponse.messageId());
      }
```

Sends a message with header information.

```
public class SendwithHeader {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <sender> <recipient> <subject>\s

            Where:
                sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                recipient - An email address that represents the recipient.\s
                subject - The subject line.\s
```

```
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String bodyHTML = """
                <html>
                    <head></head>
                    <body>
                        <h1>Hello!</h1>
                        <p>See the list of customers.</p>
                    </body>
                </html>
                """;

        sendWithHeader(sesv2Client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyHTML);
        sesv2Client.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sends an email using the AWS SES V2 client.
     *
     * @param sesv2Client the SES V2 client to use for sending the email
     * @param sender the email address of the sender
     * @param recipient the email address of the recipient
     * @param subject the subject of the email
     * @param bodyHTML the HTML content of the email body
     */
    public static void sendWithHeader(SesV2Client sesv2Client,
                                      String sender,
                                      String recipient,
                                      String subject,
                                      String bodyHTML) {
        EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
```

```
                .simple(Message.builder()
                        .body(b -> b.html(c ->
 c.charset(UTF_8.name()).data(bodyHTML))
                                .text(c ->
 c.charset(UTF_8.name()).data(bodyHTML)))
                        .subject(c -> c.charset(UTF_8.name()).data(subject))
                        .headers(List.of(
                                MessageHeader.builder()
                                        .name("List-Unsubscribe")
                                        .value("<https://nutrition.co/?
address=x&topic=x>, <mailto:unsubscribe@nutrition.co?subject=TopicUnsubscribe>")
                                        .build(),
                                MessageHeader.builder()
                                        .name("List-Unsubscribe-Post")
                                        .value("List-Unsubscribe=One-Click")
                                        .build()))
                        .build())
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest request = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .fromEmailAddress(sender)
                .destination(d -> d.toAddresses(recipient))
                .content(emailContent)
                .build();

        try {
            SendEmailResponse response = sesv2Client.sendEmail(request);
            System.out.println("Email sent! Message ID: " +
 response.messageId());
        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to send email: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sends a message to all members of the contact list.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
```

```
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons
 Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")
```

Sends a message to all members of the contact list using a template.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
```

```
        self.sleep = sleep


                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email_address]},
                    Content={
                        "Template": {
                            "TemplateName": TEMPLATE_NAME,
                            "TemplateData": coupon_items,
                        }
                    },
                    ListManagementOptions={"ContactListName": CONTACT_LIST_NAME},
                )
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sesv2'
require_relative 'config' # Recipient and sender email addresses.

# Set up the SESv2 client.
client = Aws::SESV2::Client.new(region: AWS_REGION)

def send_email(client, sender_email, recipient_email)
  response = client.send_email(
    {
      from_email_address: sender_email,
      destination: {
        to_addresses: [recipient_email]
      },
      content: {
```

```
        simple: {
          subject: {
            data: 'Test email subject'
          },
          body: {
            text: {
              data: 'Test email body'
            }
          }
        }
      }
    }
  )
  puts "Email sent from #{SENDER_EMAIL} to #{RECIPIENT_EMAIL} with message ID:
 #{response.message_id}"
end

send_email(client, SENDER_EMAIL, RECIPIENT_EMAIL)
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sends a message to all members of the contact list.

```
async fn send_message(
    client: &Client,
    list: &str,
    from: &str,
    subject: &str,
    message: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    // Get list of email addresses from contact list.
```

```
    let resp = client
        .list_contacts()
        .contact_list_name(list)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let contacts = resp.contacts();

    let cs: Vec<String> = contacts
        .iter()
        .map(|i| i.email_address().unwrap_or_default().to_string())
        .collect();

    let mut dest: Destination = Destination::builder().build();
    dest.to_addresses = Some(cs);
    let subject_content = Content::builder()
        .data(subject)
        .charset("UTF-8")
        .build()
        .expect("building Content");
    let body_content = Content::builder()
        .data(message)
        .charset("UTF-8")
        .build()
        .expect("building Content");
    let body = Body::builder().text(body_content).build();

    let msg = Message::builder()
        .subject(subject_content)
        .body(body)
        .build();

    let email_content = EmailContent::builder().simple(msg).build();

    client
        .send_email()
        .from_email_address(from)
        .destination(dest)
        .content(email_content)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Email sent to list");
```

```
    Ok(())
}
```

Sends a message to all members of the contact list using a template.

```
            let coupons = std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/
sample_coupons.json")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| r#"{"coupons":[]}"#.to_string());
            let email_content = EmailContent::builder()
                .template(
                    Template::builder()
                        .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                        .template_data(coupons)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build();

            match self
                .client
                .send_email()
                .from_email_address(self.verified_email.clone())

 .destination(Destination::builder().to_addresses(email.clone()).build())
                .content(email_content)
                .list_management_options(
                    ListManagementOptions::builder()
                        .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                        .build()?,
                )
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(output) => {
                    if let Some(message_id) = output.message_id {
                        writeln!(
                            self.stdout,
                            "Newsletter sent to {} with message ID {}",
                            email, message_id
                        )?;
                    } else {
                        writeln!(self.stdout, "Newsletter sent to {}", email)?;
                    }
```

```
                }
                Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error sending newsletter to {}:
{}", email, e)),
            }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon SES API v2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon SES API v2 with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon SES API v2 or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- A complete Amazon SES API v2 Newsletter scenario using an AWS SDK

A complete Amazon SES API v2 Newsletter scenario using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to run the Amazon SES API v2 newsletter scenario.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
using System.Diagnostics;
```

```
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace Sesv2Scenario;

public static class NewsletterWorkflow
{
    /*
      This scenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon Simple Email Service (SES)
 v2 to send a coupon newsletter to a list of subscribers.
      The scenario performs the following tasks:

      1. Prepare the application:
         - Create a verified email identity for sending and replying to emails.
         - Create a contact list to store the subscribers' email addresses.
         - Create an email template for the coupon newsletter.

      2. Gather subscriber email addresses:
         - Prompt the user for a base email address.
         - Create 3 variants of the email address using subaddress extensions
 (e.g., user+ses-weekly-newsletter-1@example.com).
         - Add each variant as a contact to the contact list.
         - Send a welcome email to each new contact.

      3. Send the coupon newsletter:
         - Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact list.
         - Send the coupon newsletter using the email template to each contact.

      4. Monitor and review:
         - Provide instructions for the user to review the sending activity and
 metrics in the AWS console.

      5. Clean up resources:
         - Delete the contact list (which also deletes all contacts within it).
         - Delete the email template.
         - Optionally delete the verified email identity.

    */
```

```
    public static SESv2Wrapper _sesv2Wrapper;
    public static string? _baseEmailAddress = null;
    public static string? _verifiedEmail = null;
    private static string _contactListName = "weekly-coupons-newsletter";
    private static string _templateName = "weekly-coupons";
    private static string _subject = "Weekly Coupons Newsletter";
    private static string _htmlContentFile = "coupon-newsletter.html";
    private static string _textContentFile = "coupon-newsletter.txt";
    private static string _htmlWelcomeFile = "welcome.html";
    private static string _textWelcomeFile = "welcome.txt";
    private static string _couponsDataFile = "sample_coupons.json";

    // Relative location of the resources folder.
    private static string _resourcesFilePathLocation = "../../../../resources/";

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2>()
                    .AddTransient<SESv2Wrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon SES v2 Coupon Newsletter
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine("This scenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon
Simple Email Service (SES) v2 " +
                              "\r\nto send a coupon newsletter to a list of
subscribers.");
```

```
            // Prepare the application.
            var emailIdentity = await PrepareApplication();

            // Gather subscriber email addresses.
            await GatherSubscriberEmailAddresses(emailIdentity);

            // Send the coupon newsletter.
            await SendCouponNewsletter(emailIdentity);

            // Monitor and review.
            MonitorAndReview(true);

            // Clean up resources.
            await Cleanup(emailIdentity, true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon SES v2 Coupon Newsletter scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _sesv2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SESv2Wrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The email address of the verified identity.</returns>
    public static async Task<string?> PrepareApplication()
    {
```

```
        var htmlContent = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation
+ _htmlContentFile);
        var textContent = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation
+ _textContentFile);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("1. In this step, we will prepare the application:" +
                          "\r\n  - Create a verified email identity for sending
and replying to emails." +
                          "\r\n  - Create a contact list to store the
subscribers' email addresses." +
                          "\r\n  - Create an email template for the coupon
newsletter.\r\n");

        // Prompt the user for a verified email address.
        while (!IsEmail(_verifiedEmail))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a verified email address or an email to verify:
");
            _verifiedEmail = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        try
        {
            // Create an email identity and start the verification process.
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(_verifiedEmail);
            Console.WriteLine($"Identity {_verifiedEmail} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Identity {_verifiedEmail} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating email identity: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Create a contact list.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateContactListAsync(_contactListName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} already
exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating contact list: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Create an email template.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(_templateName, _subject,
htmlContent, textContent);
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating email template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return _verifiedEmail;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Generate subscriber addresses and send welcome emails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> GatherSubscriberEmailAddresses(string
fromEmailAddress)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("2. In Step 2, we will gather subscriber email
addresses:" +
                          "\r\n  - Prompt the user for a base email address." +
                          "\r\n  - Create 3 variants of the email address using
subaddress extensions (e.g., user+ses-weekly-newsletter-1@example.com)." +
```

```
                            "\r\n  - Add each variant as a contact to the contact
 list." +
                            "\r\n  - Send a welcome email to each new contact.\r
\n");

        // Prompt the user for a base email address.
        while (!IsEmail(_baseEmailAddress))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a base email address (e.g., user@example.com):
 ");
            _baseEmailAddress = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        // Create 3 variants of the email address using +ses-weekly-newsletter-1,
 +ses-weekly-newsletter-2, etc.
        var baseEmailAddressParts = _baseEmailAddress!.Split("@");
        for (int i = 1; i <= 3; i++)
        {
            string emailAddress = $"{baseEmailAddressParts[0]}+ses-weekly-
newsletter-{i}@{baseEmailAddressParts[1]}";

            try
            {
                // Create a contact with the email address in the contact list.
                await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateContactAsync(emailAddress,
 _contactListName);
                Console.WriteLine($"Contact {emailAddress} added to the
 {_contactListName} contact list.");
            }
            catch (AlreadyExistsException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Contact {emailAddress} already exists in the
 {_contactListName} contact list.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error creating contact {emailAddress}:
 {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }

            // Send a welcome email to the new contact.
            try
            {
```

```
                string subject = "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter";
                string htmlContent = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _htmlWelcomeFile);
                string textContent = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _textWelcomeFile);

                await _sesv2Wrapper.SendEmailAsync(fromEmailAddress, new
List<string> { emailAddress }, subject, htmlContent, textContent);
                Console.WriteLine($"Welcome email sent to {emailAddress}.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error sending welcome email to
{emailAddress}: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }

            // Wait 2 seconds before sending the next email (if the account is in
the SES Sandbox).
            await Task.Delay(2000);
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    ///  Send the coupon newsletter to the subscribers in the contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> SendCouponNewsletter(string fromEmailAddress)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("3. In this step, we will send the coupon newsletter:"
+
                          "\r\n  - Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact
list." +
                          "\r\n  - Send the coupon newsletter using the email
template to each contact.\r\n");


        // Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact list.
        var contacts = await _sesv2Wrapper.ListContactsAsync(_contactListName);
```

```
        if (!contacts.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No contacts found in the {_contactListName}
contact list.");
            return false;
        }

        // Load the coupon data from the sample_coupons.json file.
        string couponsData = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _couponsDataFile);

        // Send the coupon newsletter to each contact using the email template.
        try
        {
            foreach (var contact in contacts)
            {
                // To use the Contact List for list management, send to only one
address at a time.
                await _sesv2Wrapper.SendEmailAsync(fromEmailAddress,
                    new List<string> { contact.EmailAddress },
                    null, null, null, _templateName, couponsData,
_contactListName);
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"Coupon newsletter sent to contact list
{_contactListName}.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error sending coupon newsletter to contact list
{_contactListName}: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Provide instructions for monitoring sending activity and metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run in interactive mode.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static bool MonitorAndReview(bool interactive)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("4. In step 4, we will monitor and review:" +
                          "\r\n  - Provide instructions for the user to review
the sending activity and metrics in the AWS console.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine("Review your sending activity using the SES Homepage in
the AWS console.");
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to open the SES Homepage in your default
browser...");
        if (interactive)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
            try
            {
                // Open the SES Homepage in the default browser.
                Process.Start(new ProcessStartInfo
                {
                    FileName = "https://console.aws.amazon.com/ses/home",
                    UseShellExecute = true
                });
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error opening the SES Homepage:
{ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Review the sending activity and email metrics, then
press Enter to continue...");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources used in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="verifiedEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <param name="interactive">True if interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(string verifiedEmailAddress, bool
 interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("5. Finally, we clean up resources:" +
                          "\r\n  - Delete the contact list (which also deletes
 all contacts within it)." +
                          "\r\n  - Delete the email template." +
                          "\r\n  - Optionally delete the verified email identity.
\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources...");

        // Delete the contact list (this also deletes all contacts in the list).
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteContactListAsync(_contactListName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} deleted.");
        }
        catch (NotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} not found.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting contact list {_contactListName}:
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        // Delete the email template.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(_templateName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} deleted.");
        }
        catch (NotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} not found.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting email template {_templateName}:
 {ex.Message}");
```

```
            return false;
        }

        // Ask the user if they want to delete the email identity.
        var deleteIdentity = !interactive ||
            GetYesNoResponse(
                $"Do you want to delete the email identity
 {verifiedEmailAddress}? (y/n) ");
        if (deleteIdentity)
        {
            try
            {
                await
 _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(verifiedEmailAddress);
                Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}
 deleted.");
            }
            catch (NotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Email identity {verifiedEmailAddress} not found.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Error deleting email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}:
 {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Skipping deletion of email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}.");
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
 param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Simple check to verify a string is an email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The string to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if a valid email.</returns>
    private static bool IsEmail(string? email)
    {
        if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email))
            return false;
        return Regex.IsMatch(email, @"^[^@\s]+@[^@\s]+\.[^@\s]+$",
 RegexOptions.IgnoreCase);
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2.Model;

namespace Sesv2Scenario;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon Simple Email Service (SES) v2 operations.
/// </summary>
public class SESv2Wrapper
{

    private readonly IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2 _sesClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SESv2Wrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sesClient">The injected SES v2 client.</param>
    public SESv2Wrapper(IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2 sesClient)
    {
        _sesClient = sesClient;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact and adds it to the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the contact.</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateContact operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactAsync(string emailAddress, string
 contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactRequest
        {
            EmailAddress = emailAddress,
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact with email address {emailAddress} already
 exists in the contact list {contactListName}.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact list with the specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list with name {contactListName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact
list: {ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email identity (email address or domain) and starts the
verification process.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to create and
verify.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateEmailIdentity operation.</returns>
    public async Task<CreateEmailIdentityResponse>
CreateEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {emailIdentity} already exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being
modified by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email identities has been
exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email
identity: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email template with the specified content.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName, string
subject, string htmlContent, string textContent)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName,
            TemplateContent = new EmailTemplateContent
            {
                Subject = subject,
```

```
                Html = htmlContent,
                Text = textContent
            }
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template with name {templateName} already
 exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email templates has been
 exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email
 template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a contact list and all contacts within it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteContactListAsync(string contactListName)
```

```
    {
        var request = new DeleteContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} is being
 modified by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the contact
 list: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email identity (email address or domain).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being
 modified by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email
 identity: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to delete.</
 param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email template {templateName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email
 template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the contacts in the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of contacts response from the ListContacts operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Contact>> ListContactsAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new ListContactsRequest
        {
```

```
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.ListContactsAsync(request);
            return response.Contacts;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing the contacts:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return new List<Contact>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends an email with the specified content and options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The email address to send the email
from.</param>
    /// <param name="toEmailAddresses">The email addresses to send the email
to.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to use
(optional).</param>
    /// <param name="templateData">The data to replace placeholders in the email
template (optional).</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list for
unsubscribe functionality (optional).</param>
   /// <returns>The MessageId response from the SendEmail operation.</returns>
   public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(string fromEmailAddress,
List<string> toEmailAddresses, string? subject,
       string? htmlContent, string? textContent, string? templateName = null,
string? templateData = null, string? contactListName = null)
   {
       var request = new SendEmailRequest
       {
           FromEmailAddress = fromEmailAddress
       };

       if (toEmailAddresses.Any())
       {
           request.Destination = new Destination { ToAddresses =
toEmailAddresses };
       }

       if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(templateName))
       {
           request.Content = new EmailContent()
           {
               Template = new Template
               {
                   TemplateName = templateName,
                   TemplateData = templateData
               }
           };
       }
       else
       {
           request.Content = new EmailContent
           {
               Simple = new Message
               {
                   Subject = new Content { Data = subject },
                   Body = new Body
                   {
                       Html = new Content { Data = htmlContent },
                       Text = new Content { Data = textContent }
                   }
               }
           };
```

```
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(contactListName))
        {
            request.ListManagementOptions = new ListManagementOptions
            {
                ContactListName = contactListName
            };
        }

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.SendEmailAsync(request);
            return response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (AccountSuspendedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email has been
permanently restricted.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MailFromDomainNotVerifiedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The sending domain is not verified.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MessageRejectedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message content is invalid.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (SendingPausedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email is currently
paused.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while sending the email:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return string.Empty;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // 2. Create a contact list
      String contactListName = CONTACT_LIST_NAME;
      CreateContactListRequest createContactListRequest =
 CreateContactListRequest.builder()
```

```
            .contactListName(contactListName)
            .build();
        sesClient.createContactList(createContactListRequest);
        System.out.println("Contact list created: " + contactListName);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
        System.out.println("Contact list already exists, skipping creation: weekly-
coupons-newsletter");
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
        System.err.println("Limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
        throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error creating contact list: " + e.getMessage());
        throw e;
    }

        try {
            // Create a new contact with the provided email address in the
            CreateContactRequest contactRequest = CreateContactRequest.builder()
                .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .emailAddress(emailAddress)
                .build();

            sesClient.createContact(contactRequest);
            contacts.add(emailAddress);

            System.out.println("Contact created: " + emailAddress);

            // Send a welcome email to the new contact
            String welcomeHtml = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.html"));
            String welcomeText = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.txt"));

            SendEmailRequest welcomeEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
                .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
                .content(EmailContent.builder()
                    .simple(
                        Message.builder()
                            .subject(Content.builder().data("Welcome to the Weekly
 Coupons Newsletter").build())
                            .body(Body.builder()
                                .text(Content.builder().data(welcomeText).build())
                                .html(Content.builder().data(welcomeHtml).build())
```

```
                            .build())
                        .build())
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse welcomeEmailResponse =
 sesClient.sendEmail(welcomeEmailRequest);
        System.out.println("Welcome email sent: " +
 welcomeEmailResponse.messageId());
      } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
        // If the contact already exists, skip this step for that contact and
 proceed
        // with the next contact
        System.out.println("Contact already exists, skipping creation...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while processing email address " +
 emailAddress + ": " + e.getMessage());
        throw e;
      }
    }

      ListContactsRequest contactListRequest = ListContactsRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      List<String> contactEmails;
      try {
        ListContactsResponse contactListResponse =
 sesClient.listContacts(contactListRequest);

        contactEmails = contactListResponse.contacts().stream()
            .map(Contact::emailAddress)
            .toList();
      } catch (Exception e) {
        // TODO: Remove when listContacts's GET body issue is resolved.
        contactEmails = this.contacts;
      }


      String coupons = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/coupon_newsletter/
sample_coupons.json"));
      for (String emailAddress : contactEmails) {
        SendEmailRequest newsletterRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
```

```
                .template(Template.builder()
                    .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                    .templateData(coupons)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .listManagementOptions(ListManagementOptions.builder()
                .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse newsletterResponse =
 sesClient.sendEmail(newsletterRequest);
        System.out.println("Newsletter sent to " + emailAddress + ": " +
 newsletterResponse.messageId());
      }

    try {
      CreateEmailIdentityRequest createEmailIdentityRequest =
 CreateEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
          .emailIdentity(verifiedEmail)
          .build();
      sesClient.createEmailIdentity(createEmailIdentityRequest);
      System.out.println("Email identity created: " + verifiedEmail);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      System.out.println("Email identity already exists, skipping creation: " +
 verifiedEmail);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      System.err.println("The provided email address is not verified: " +
 verifiedEmail);
      throw e;
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      System.err
          .println("You have reached the limit for email identities. Please
 remove some identities and try again.");
      throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error creating email identity: " + e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }

    try {
      // Create an email template named "weekly-coupons"
      String newsletterHtml = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html");
```

```
      String newsletterText = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.txt");

      CreateEmailTemplateRequest templateRequest =
 CreateEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .templateContent(EmailTemplateContent.builder()
              .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
              .html(newsletterHtml)
              .text(newsletterText)
              .build())
          .build();

      sesClient.createEmailTemplate(templateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template created: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      // If the template already exists, skip this step and proceed with the next
      // operation
      System.out.println("Email template already exists, skipping creation...");
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      // If the limit for email templates is exceeded, fail the workflow and
 inform
      // the user
      System.err.println("You have reached the limit for email templates. Please
 remove some templates and try again.");
      throw e;
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while creating email template: " +
 e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }

    try {
      // Delete the contact list
      DeleteContactListRequest deleteContactListRequest =
 DeleteContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteContactList(deleteContactListRequest);

      System.out.println("Contact list deleted: " + CONTACT_LIST_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
```

```
      // If the contact list does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Contact list not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the contact list: " +
e.getMessage());
      e.printStackTrace();
    }

      try {
        // Delete the email identity
        DeleteEmailIdentityRequest deleteIdentityRequest =
DeleteEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
            .emailIdentity(this.verifiedEmail)
            .build();

        sesClient.deleteEmailIdentity(deleteIdentityRequest);

        System.out.println("Email identity deleted: " + this.verifiedEmail);
      } catch (NotFoundException e) {
        // If the email identity does not exist, log the error and proceed
        System.out.println("Email identity not found. Skipping deletion...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email identity: " +
e.getMessage());
        e.printStackTrace();
      }
    } else {
      System.out.println("Skipping email identity deletion.");
    }

    try {
      // Delete the template
      DeleteEmailTemplateRequest deleteTemplateRequest =
DeleteEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteEmailTemplate(deleteTemplateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template deleted: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the email template does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Email template not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
```

```
        System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email template: " +
 e.getMessage());
        e.printStackTrace();
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
```

```
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:

 self.ses_client.create_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e

            try:
                # Create a new contact
                self.ses_client.create_contact(
                    ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME, EmailAddress=email
                )
                print(f"Contact with email '{email}' created successfully.")

                # Send the welcome email
                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
```

```
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons
Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")
                if self.sleep:
                    # 1 email per second in sandbox mode, remove in production.
                    sleep(1.1)
            except ClientError as e:
                # If the contact already exists, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                    print(f"Contact with email '{email}' already exists.
Skipping...")
                else:
                    raise e

        try:
            contacts_response = self.ses_client.list_contacts(
                ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
                return
            else:
                raise e

                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons
Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
```

```
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")

                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email_address]},
                    Content={
                        "Template": {
                            "TemplateName": TEMPLATE_NAME,
                            "TemplateData": coupon_items,
                        }
                    },
                    ListManagementOptions={"ContactListName": CONTACT_LIST_NAME},
                )

        try:

self.ses_client.create_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
            print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' created
successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email identity already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e

        try:
            template_content = {
                "Subject": "Weekly Coupons Newsletter",
                "Html": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.html"),
                "Text": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.txt"),
            }
            self.ses_client.create_email_template(
                TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME, TemplateContent=template_content
            )
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the template already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
```

```
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e

        try:

self.ses_client.delete_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)

            try:

self.ses_client.delete_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' deleted
successfully.")
            except ClientError as e:
                # If the email identity doesn't exist, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                    print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' does not
exist.")
                else:
                    print(e)

        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_email_template(TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME)
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email template doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList

- CreateEmailIdentity
- CreateEmailTemplate
- DeleteContactList
- DeleteEmailIdentity
- DeleteEmailTemplate
- ListContacts
- SendEmail.simple
- SendEmail.template

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .create_contact_list()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact list created
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateContactListError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Contact list already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating contact list: {}", e)),
            },
        }
```

```
            match self
                .client
                .create_contact()
                .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .email_address(email.clone())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact created for {}", email)?,
                Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                    CreateContactError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Contact already exists for {}, skipping creation.",
                        email
                    )?,
                    e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating contact for {}: {}",
 email, e)),
                },
            }

        let contacts: Vec<Contact> = match self
            .client
            .list_contacts()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(list_contacts_output) => {
                list_contacts_output.contacts.unwrap().into_iter().collect()
            }
            Err(e) => {
                return Err(anyhow!(
                    "Error retrieving contact list {}: {}",
                    CONTACT_LIST_NAME,
                    e
                ))
            }
        };

            let coupons = std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/
sample_coupons.json")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| r#"{"coupons":[]}"#.to_string());
            let email_content = EmailContent::builder()
```

```
                .template(
                    Template::builder()
                        .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                        .template_data(coupons)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build();

            match self
                .client
                .send_email()
                .from_email_address(self.verified_email.clone())

.destination(Destination::builder().to_addresses(email.clone()).build())
                .content(email_content)
                .list_management_options(
                    ListManagementOptions::builder()
                        .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                        .build()?,
                )
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(output) => {
                    if let Some(message_id) = output.message_id {
                        writeln!(
                            self.stdout,
                            "Newsletter sent to {} with message ID {}",
                            email, message_id
                        )?;
                    } else {
                        writeln!(self.stdout, "Newsletter sent to {}", email)?;
                    }
                }
                Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error sending newsletter to {}:
{}", email, e)),
            }

        match self
            .client
            .create_email_identity()
            .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
            .send()
            .await
```

```
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity created
 successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailIdentityError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email identity already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email identity: {}", e)),
            },
        }

        let template_html =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-
newsletter.html".to_string());
        let template_text =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.txt")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-newsletter.txt".to_string());

        // Create the email template
        let template_content = EmailTemplateContent::builder()
            .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
            .html(template_html)
            .text(template_text)
            .build();

        match self
            .client
            .create_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .template_content(template_content)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template created
 successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailTemplateError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
```

```
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email template already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email template: {}", e)),
            },
        }

        match self
            .client
            .delete_contact_list()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact list deleted
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting contact list: {e}")),
        }

            match self
                .client
                .delete_email_identity()
                .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity deleted
successfully.")?,
                Err(e) => {
                    return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email identity: {}", e));
                }
            }

        match self
            .client
            .delete_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template deleted
successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => {
```

```
                return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email template: {e}"));
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Code examples for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Simple Notification Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon SNS Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon SNS.
- **Amazon SNS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon SNS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

namespace SNSActions;

public static class HelloSNS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var snsClient = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SNS! Following are some of your
 topics:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get a list of topics.
        var response = await snsClient.ListTopicsAsync(
            new ListTopicsRequest());

        foreach (var topic in response.Topics)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTopic ARN: {topic.TopicArn}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS sns)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_sns")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})
```

```
if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_sns.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_sns.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/sns/SNSClient.h>
#include <aws/sns/model/ListTopicsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello SNS" starter application which initializes an Amazon Simple
 Notification
 *  Service (Amazon SNS) client and lists the SNS topics in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_sns'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Topic> allTopics;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated
response.
        do {
            Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsRequest request;

            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            const Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsOutcome outcome =
snsClient.ListTopics(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Topic> &paginatedTopics =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetTopics();
                if (!paginatedTopics.empty()) {
                    allTopics.insert(allTopics.cend(), paginatedTopics.cbegin(),
                                     paginatedTopics.cend());
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing topics " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                return 1;
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Hello Amazon SNS! You have " << allTopics.size() << "
topic"
                  << (allTopics.size() == 1 ? "" : "s") << " in your account."
                  << std::endl;
```

```
        if (!allTopics.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Here are your topic ARNs." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::SNS::Model::Topic &topic: allTopics) {
                std::cout << "  * " << topic.GetTopicArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
```

```
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 snsClient := sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the topics for your account.")
 var topics []types.Topic
 paginator := sns.NewListTopicsPaginator(snsClient, &sns.ListTopicsInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get topics. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   topics = append(topics, output.Topics...)
  }
 }
 if len(topics) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any topics!")
 } else {
  for _, topic := range topics {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *topic.TopicArn)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.paginators.ListTopicsIterable;

public class HelloSNS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSTopics(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSTopics(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListTopicsIterable listTopics = snsClient.listTopicsPaginator();
            listTopics.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.topics().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Topic ARN: " +
 content.topicArn()));

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Initialize an SNS client and and list topics in your account.

```
import { SNSClient, paginateListTopics } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

export const helloSns = async () => {
  // The configuration object (`{}`) is required. If the region and credentials
  // are omitted, the SDK uses your local configuration if it exists.
  const client = new SNSClient({});

  // You can also use `ListTopicsCommand`, but to use that command you must
  // handle the pagination yourself. You can do that by sending the
 `ListTopicsCommand`
  // with the `NextToken` parameter from the previous request.
  const paginatedTopics = paginateListTopics({ client }, {});
  const topics = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedTopics) {
    if (page.Topics?.length) {
      topics.push(...page.Topics);
    }
  }

  const suffix = topics.length === 1 ? "" : "s";

  console.log(
    `Hello, Amazon SNS! You have ${topics.length} topic${suffix} in your
 account.`,
  );
  console.log(topics.map((t) => `  * ${t.TopicArn}`).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.ListTopicsRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.paginators.listTopicsPaginated
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform

/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main() {
    listTopicsPag()
}

suspend fun listTopicsPag() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient
            .listTopicsPaginated(ListTopicsRequest { })
            .transform { it.topics?.forEach { topic -> emit(topic) } }
            .collect { topic ->
                println("The topic ARN is ${topic.topicArn}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The Package.swift file.

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "sns-basics",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "sns-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSSNS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
```

```
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The main Swift program.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "sns-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to list all of your available Amazon SNS topics.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        var topics: [String] = []
        let outputPages = snsClient.listTopicsPaginated(
            input: ListTopicsInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let topicList = output.topics else {
```

```
                print("Unable to get a page of Amazon SNS topics.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the topics listed on this page, adding their ARNs
            // to the `topics` array.

            for topic in topicList {
                guard let arn = topic.topicArn else {
                    print("Topic has no ARN.")
                    return
                }
                topics.append(arn)
            }
        }

        print("You have \(topics.count) topics:")
        for topic in topics {
            print("   \(topic)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon SNS
  - Actions for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs
    - Use CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ConfirmSubscription with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateTopic with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteTopic with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetSMSAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetTopicAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListSubscriptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListTopics with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Publish with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SetSMSAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SetSubscriptionAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SetSubscriptionAttributesRedrivePolicy with an AWS SDK
    - Use SetTopicAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Subscribe with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use Unsubscribe with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs
  - Build an application to submit data to a DynamoDB table
  - Build a publish and subscription application that translates messages
  - Create a platform endpoint for Amazon SNS push notifications using an AWS SDK
  - Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
  - Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
  - Create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK
  - Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
  - Publish SMS messages to an Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK

  - Publish a large message to Amazon SNS with Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK

- Publish an Amazon SNS SMS text message using an AWS SDK
- Publish Amazon SNS messages to Amazon SQS queues using an AWS SDK
- Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function
- Serverless examples for Amazon SNS
  - Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

Basic examples for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Simple Notification Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon SNS
- Actions for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs
  - Use CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ConfirmSubscription with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateTopic with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteTopic with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetSMSAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetTopicAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListSubscriptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTopics with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Publish with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SetSMSAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SetSubscriptionAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use SetSubscriptionAttributesRedrivePolicy with an AWS SDK
  - Use SetTopicAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Subscribe with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use Unsubscribe with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

namespace SNSActions;

public static class HelloSNS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var snsClient = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SNS! Following are some of your
 topics:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get a list of topics.
        var response = await snsClient.ListTopicsAsync(
            new ListTopicsRequest());

        foreach (var topic in response.Topics)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTopic ARN: {topic.TopicArn}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS sns)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_sns")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})
```

```
if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_sns.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_sns.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/sns/SNSClient.h>
#include <aws/sns/model/ListTopicsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello SNS" starter application which initializes an Amazon Simple
 Notification
 *  Service (Amazon SNS) client and lists the SNS topics in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_sns'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
```

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Topic> allTopics;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated
response.
        do {
            Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsRequest request;

            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            const Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsOutcome outcome =
snsClient.ListTopics(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Topic> &paginatedTopics =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetTopics();
                if (!paginatedTopics.empty()) {
                    allTopics.insert(allTopics.cend(), paginatedTopics.cbegin(),
                                     paginatedTopics.cend());
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing topics " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                return 1;
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Hello Amazon SNS! You have " << allTopics.size() << "
topic"
                  << (allTopics.size() == 1 ? "" : "s") << " in your account."
                  << std::endl;

        if (!allTopics.empty()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "Here are your topic ARNs." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::SNS::Model::Topic &topic: allTopics) {
                std::cout << "  * " << topic.GetTopicArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
```

```
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 snsClient := sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the topics for your account.")
 var topics []types.Topic
 paginator := sns.NewListTopicsPaginator(snsClient, &sns.ListTopicsInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get topics. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   topics = append(topics, output.Topics...)
  }
 }
 if len(topics) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any topics!")
 } else {
  for _, topic := range topics {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *topic.TopicArn)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.paginators.ListTopicsIterable;

public class HelloSNS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSTopics(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSTopics(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListTopicsIterable listTopics = snsClient.listTopicsPaginator();
            listTopics.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.topics().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Topic ARN: " +
 content.topicArn()));

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Initialize an SNS client and and list topics in your account.

```
import { SNSClient, paginateListTopics } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

export const helloSns = async () => {
  // The configuration object (`{}`) is required. If the region and credentials
  // are omitted, the SDK uses your local configuration if it exists.
  const client = new SNSClient({});

  // You can also use `ListTopicsCommand`, but to use that command you must
  // handle the pagination yourself. You can do that by sending the
 `ListTopicsCommand`
  // with the `NextToken` parameter from the previous request.
  const paginatedTopics = paginateListTopics({ client }, {});
  const topics = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedTopics) {
    if (page.Topics?.length) {
      topics.push(...page.Topics);
    }
  }

  const suffix = topics.length === 1 ? "" : "s";

  console.log(
    `Hello, Amazon SNS! You have ${topics.length} topic${suffix} in your
 account.`,
  );
  console.log(topics.map((t) => `  * ${t.TopicArn}`).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.ListTopicsRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.paginators.listTopicsPaginated
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform

/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main() {
    listTopicsPag()
}

suspend fun listTopicsPag() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient
            .listTopicsPaginated(ListTopicsRequest { })
            .transform { it.topics?.forEach { topic -> emit(topic) } }
            .collect { topic ->
                println("The topic ARN is ${topic.topicArn}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The Package.swift file.

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "sns-basics",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "sns-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSSNS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
```

```
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The main Swift program.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "sns-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to list all of your available Amazon SNS topics.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        var topics: [String] = []
        let outputPages = snsClient.listTopicsPaginated(
            input: ListTopicsInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let topicList = output.topics else {
```

```
                print("Unable to get a page of Amazon SNS topics.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the topics listed on this page, adding their ARNs
            // to the `topics` array.

            for topic in topicList {
                guard let arn = topic.topicArn else {
                    print("Topic has no ARN.")
                    return
                }
                topics.append(arn)
            }
        }

        print("You have \(topics.count) topics:")
        for topic in topics {
            print("   \(topic)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Actions for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon SNS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon SNS API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Simple Notification Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ConfirmSubscription with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateTopic with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTopic with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetSMSAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetTopicAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListSubscriptions with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTopics with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Publish with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetSMSAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetSubscriptionAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetSubscriptionAttributesRedrivePolicy with an AWS SDK
- Use SetTopicAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Subscribe with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use TagResource with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use Unsubscribe with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service
/// (Amazon SNS) to check whether a phone number has been opted out.
/// </summary>
public class IsPhoneNumOptedOut
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string phoneNumber = "+15551112222";

        IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

        await CheckIfOptedOutAsync(client, phoneNumber);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Checks to see if the supplied phone number has been opted out.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS Client object used
    /// to check if the phone number has been opted out.</param>
    /// <param name="phoneNumber">A string representing the phone number
    /// to check.</param>
    public static async Task
CheckIfOptedOutAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string
phoneNumber)
    {
```

```
            var request = new CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest
            {
                PhoneNumber = phoneNumber,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await
 client.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutAsync(request);

                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    string optOutStatus = response.IsOptedOut ? "opted out" :
 "not opted out.";
                    Console.WriteLine($"The phone number: {phoneNumber} is
 {optOutStatus}");
                }
            }
            catch (AuthorizationErrorException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To check SMS message opt-out for a phone number

The following `check-if-phone-number-is-opted-out` example checks whether the specified phone number is opted out of receiving SMS messages from the current AWS account.

```
aws sns check-if-phone-number-is-opted-out \
    --phone-number +1555550100
```

Output:

```
{
    "isOptedOut": false
}
```

- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CheckOptOut {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <phoneNumber>
```

```
                Where:
                   phoneNumber - The mobile phone number to look up (for example,
 +1XXX5550100).

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String phoneNumber = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        checkPhone(snsClient, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void checkPhone(SnsClient snsClient, String phoneNumber) {
        try {
            CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest request =
 CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest.builder()
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .build();

            CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutResponse result =
 snsClient.checkIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut(request);
            System.out.println(
                    result.isOptedOut() + "Phone Number " + phoneNumber + " has
 Opted Out of receiving sns messages." +
                            "\n\nStatus was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const checkIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut = async (
  phoneNumber = "5555555555",
) => {
  const command = new CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutCommand({
    phoneNumber,
  });

  const response = await snsClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
```

```
  //     requestId: '3341c28a-cdc8-5b39-a3ee-9fb0ee125732',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   isOptedOut: false
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Indicates whether the phone number owner has opted out of receiving SMS
 messages from your AWS SNS account.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */
```

```
$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$phone = '+1XXX5550100';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->checkIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut([
        'phoneNumber' => $phone,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `ConfirmSubscription` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ConfirmSubscription`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To confirm a subscription

The following `confirm-subscription` command completes the confirmation process started when you subscribed to an SNS topic named `my-topic`. The --token parameter comes from the confirmation message sent to the notification endpoint specified in the subscribe call.

```
aws sns confirm-subscription \
    --topic-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic \
    --
token 2336412f37fb687f5d51e6e241d7700ae02f7124d8268910b858cb4db727ceeb2474bb937929d3bdd7c
```

Output:

```
{
    "SubscriptionArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-
topic:8a21d249-4329-4871-acc6-7be709c6ea7f"
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ConfirmSubscriptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ConfirmSubscriptionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ConfirmSubscription {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <subscriptionToken> <topicArn>

                Where:
```

```
                    subscriptionToken - A short-lived token sent to an endpoint
during the Subscribe action.
                    topicArn - The ARN of the topic.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subscriptionToken = args[0];
        String topicArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        confirmSub(snsClient, subscriptionToken, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void confirmSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionToken,
String topicArn) {
        try {
            ConfirmSubscriptionRequest request =
ConfirmSubscriptionRequest.builder()
                    .token(subscriptionToken)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            ConfirmSubscriptionResponse result =
snsClient.confirmSubscription(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n\nSubscription Arn: \n\n"
                    + result.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { ConfirmSubscriptionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} token - This token is sent the subscriber. Only subscribers
 *                         that are not AWS services (HTTP/S, email) need to be
 confirmed.
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic for which you wish to confirm
 a subscription.
 */
export const confirmSubscription = async (
  token = "TOKEN",
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    // A subscription only needs to be confirmed if the endpoint type is
    // HTTP/S, email, or in another AWS account.
    new ConfirmSubscriptionCommand({
      Token: token,
      TopicArn: topicArn,
```

```
      // If this is true, the subscriber cannot unsubscribe while
 unauthenticated.
      AuthenticateOnUnsubscribe: "false",
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '4bb5bce9-805a-5517-8333-e1d2cface90b',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:TOPIC_NAME:xxxxxxxx-
xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;
```

```
/**
 * Verifies an endpoint owner's intent to receive messages by
 * validating the token sent to the endpoint by an earlier Subscribe action.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$subscription_token = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic:123456-
abcd-12ab-1234-12ba3dc1234a';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->confirmSubscription([
        'Token' => $subscription_token,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `CreateTopic` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTopic`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create and publish to a FIFO topic

- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a topic with a specific name.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use Amazon Simple Notification Service
/// (Amazon SNS) to add a new Amazon SNS topic.
/// </summary>
public class CreateSNSTopic
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string topicName = "ExampleSNSTopic";

        IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

        var topicArn = await CreateSNSTopicAsync(client, topicName);
        Console.WriteLine($"New topic ARN: {topicArn}");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new SNS topic using the supplied topic name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized SNS client object used to
    /// create the new topic.</param>
    /// <param name="topicName">A string representing the topic name.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created topic.</
returns>
        public static async Task<string>
 CreateSNSTopicAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string topicName)
        {
            var request = new CreateTopicRequest
            {
                Name = topicName,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateTopicAsync(request);

            return response.TopicArn;
        }
    }
```

Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication attributes.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
```

```
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
 "true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
/*!
  \param topicName: An Amazon SNS topic name.
  \param topicARNResult: String to return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the
 topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::createTopic(const Aws::String &topicName,
                              Aws::String &topicARNResult,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicRequest request;
    request.SetName(topicName);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.CreateTopic(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        topicARNResult = outcome.GetResult().GetTopicArn();
        std::cout << "Successfully created an Amazon SNS topic " << topicName
                  << " with topic ARN '" << topicARNResult
                  << "'." << std::endl;

    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating topic " << topicName << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        topicARNResult.clear();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an SNS topic

The following `create-topic` example creates an SNS topic named `my-topic`.

```
aws sns create-topic \
    --name my-topic
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "ResponseMetadata": {
        "RequestId": "1469e8d7-1642-564e-b85d-a19b4b341f83"
    },
    "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
}
```

For more information, see Using the AWS Command Line Interface with Amazon SQS and Amazon SNS in the *AWS Command Line Interface User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}
```

```
// CreateTopic creates an Amazon SNS topic with the specified name. You can
 optionally
// specify that the topic is created as a FIFO topic and whether it uses content-
based
// deduplication instead of ID-based deduplication.
func (actor SnsActions) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context, topicName string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool) (string, error) {
 var topicArn string
 topicAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
 }
 if contentBasedDeduplication {
  topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
 }
 topic, err := actor.SnsClient.CreateTopic(ctx, &sns.CreateTopicInput{
  Name:       aws.String(topicName),
  Attributes: topicAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicName, err)
 } else {
  topicArn = *topic.TopicArn
 }

 return topicArn, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicName>

                Where:
                   topicName - The name of the topic to create (for example,
 mytopic).

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicName = args[0];
        System.out.println("Creating a topic with name: " + topicName);
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String arnVal = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
        System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + arnVal);
        snsClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                    .name(topicName)
                    .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { CreateTopicCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicName - The name of the topic to create.
 */
export const createTopic = async (topicName = "TOPIC_NAME") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new CreateTopicCommand({ Name: topicName }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '087b8ad2-4593-50c4-a496-d7e90b82cf3e',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:TOPIC_NAME'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createSNSTopic(topicName: String): String {
    val request =
        CreateTopicRequest {
            name = topicName
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.createTopic(request)
        return result.topicArn.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Create a Simple Notification Service topics in your AWS account at the
 requested region.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
```

```
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$topicname = 'myTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->createTopic([
        'Name' => $topicname,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource
```

```
    def create_topic(self, name):
        """
        Creates a notification topic.

        :param name: The name of the topic to create.
        :return: The newly created topic.
        """
        try:
            topic = self.sns_resource.create_topic(Name=name)
            logger.info("Created topic %s with ARN %s.", name, topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create topic %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return topic
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This class demonstrates how to create an Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (SNS) topic.
class SNSTopicCreator
  # Initializes an SNS client.
  #
  # Utilizes the default AWS configuration for region and credentials.
  def initialize
    @sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  end

  # Attempts to create an SNS topic with the specified name.
```

```
  #
  # @param topic_name [String] The name of the SNS topic to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the topic was successfully created, false
 otherwise.
  def create_topic(topic_name)
    @sns_client.create_topic(name: topic_name)
    puts "The topic '#{topic_name}' was successfully created."
    true
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    # Handles SNS service errors gracefully.
    puts "Error while creating the topic named '#{topic_name}': #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  topic_name = 'YourTopicName' # Replace with your topic name
  sns_topic_creator = SNSTopicCreator.new

  puts "Creating the topic '#{topic_name}'..."
  unless sns_topic_creator.create_topic(topic_name)
    puts 'The topic was not created. Stopping program.'
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_topic(client: &Client, topic_name: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.create_topic().name(topic_name).send().await?;

    println!(
        "Created topic with ARN: {}",
        resp.topic_arn().unwrap_or_default()
    );

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sns->createtopic( iv_name = iv_topic_name ). " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'SNS topic created' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snstopiclimitexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Unable to create more topics. You have reached the maximum
 number of topics allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.createTopic(
            input: CreateTopicInput(name: name)
        )

        guard let arn = output.topicArn else {
            print("No topic ARN returned by Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteTopic` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTopic`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a topic by its topic ARN.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
{
    var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
        new DeleteTopicRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn
        });
    return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::deleteTopic(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.DeleteTopic(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted the Amazon SNS topic " << topicARN <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting topic " << topicARN << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete an SNS topic

The following `delete-topic` example deletes the specified SNS topic.

```
aws sns delete-topic \
    --topic-arn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// DeleteTopic delete an Amazon SNS topic.
func (actor SnsActions) DeleteTopic(ctx context.Context, topicArn string) error {
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.DeleteTopic(ctx, &sns.DeleteTopicInput{
  TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:     <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to delete.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Deleting a topic with name: " + topicArn);
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DeleteTopicCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic to delete.
 */
export const deleteTopic = async (topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new DeleteTopicCommand({ TopicArn: topicArn }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'a10e2886-5a8f-5114-af36-75bd39498332',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTopicRequest {
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println("$topicArnVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;
```

```
/**
 * Deletes an SNS topic and all its subscriptions.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->deleteTopic([
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_topic(topic):
        """
        Deletes a topic. All subscriptions to the topic are also deleted.
        """
        try:
            topic.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sns->deletetopic( iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn ).
        MESSAGE 'SNS topic deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        _ = try await snsClient.deleteTopic(
            input: DeleteTopicInput(topicArn: arn)
        )
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetSMSAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSMSAttributes`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve the default settings for sending SMS messages from your AWS account
 by using
//! Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SNS::getSMSType(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::GetSMSAttributesRequest request;
    //Set the request to only retrieve the DefaultSMSType setting.
    //Without the following line, GetSMSAttributes would retrieve all settings.
    request.AddAttributes("DefaultSMSType");

    const Aws::SNS::Model::GetSMSAttributesOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.GetSMSAttributes(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> attributes =
                outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
        if (!attributes.empty()) {
            for (auto const &att: attributes) {
                std::cout << att.first << ":  " << att.second << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cout
                    << "AwsDoc::SNS::getSMSType - an empty map of attributes was
 retrieved."
                    << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while getting SMS Type: '"
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << "'" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the default SMS message attributes

The following `get-sms-attributes` example lists the default attributes for sending SMS messages.

```
aws sns get-sms-attributes
```

Output:

```
{
    "attributes": {
        "DefaultSenderID": "MyName"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetSubscriptionAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetSMSAtrributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic from which to retrieve
 attributes.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        getSNSAttrutes(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getSNSAttrutes(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            GetSubscriptionAttributesRequest request =
 GetSubscriptionAttributesRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .subscriptionArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            // Get the Subscription attributes
            GetSubscriptionAttributesResponse res =
 snsClient.getSubscriptionAttributes(request);
            Map<String, String> map = res.attributes();

            // Iterate through the map
            Iterator iter = map.entrySet().iterator();
            while (iter.hasNext()) {
                Map.Entry entry = (Map.Entry) iter.next();
                System.out.println("[Key] : " + entry.getKey() + " [Value] : " +
 entry.getValue());
            }

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("\n\nStatus was good");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
```

```
// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { GetSMSAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const getSmsAttributes = async () => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    // If you have not modified the account-level mobile settings of SNS,
    // the DefaultSMSType is undefined. For this example, it was set to
    // Transactional.
    new GetSMSAttributesCommand({ attributes: ["DefaultSMSType"] }),
  );

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '67ad8386-4169-58f1-bdb9-debd281d48d5',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   attributes: { DefaultSMSType: 'Transactional' }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Get the type of SMS Message sent by default from the AWS SNS service.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->getSMSAttributes([
        'attributes' => ['DefaultSMSType'],
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `GetTopicAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to retrieve the attributes of an Amazon Simple
    /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class GetTopicAttributes
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-
west-2:000000000000:ExampleSNSTopic";
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
 AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            var attributes = await GetTopicAttributesAsync(client, topicArn);
            DisplayTopicAttributes(attributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Given the ARN of the Amazon SNS topic, this method retrieves the
topic
        /// attributes.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to retrieve the attributes for the Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic for which to retrieve
        /// the attributes.</param>
        /// <returns>A Dictionary of topic attributes.</returns>
        public static async Task<Dictionary<string, string>>
GetTopicAttributesAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn)
        {
            var response = await client.GetTopicAttributesAsync(topicArn);

            return response.Attributes;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method displays the attributes for an Amazon SNS topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="topicAttributes">A Dictionary containing the
        /// attributes for an Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        public static void DisplayTopicAttributes(Dictionary<string, string>
topicAttributes)
        {
            foreach (KeyValuePair<string, string> entry in topicAttributes)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{entry.Key}: {entry.Value}\n");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve the properties of an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::getTopicAttributes(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SNS::Model::GetTopicAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::GetTopicAttributesOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.GetTopicAttributes(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Topic Attributes:" << std::endl;
        for (auto const &attribute: outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes()) {
            std::cout << "  * " << attribute.first << " : " << attribute.second
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while getting Topic attributes "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the attributes of a topic

The following `get-topic-attributes` example displays the attributes for the specified topic.

```
aws sns get-topic-attributes \
    --topic-arn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Attributes": {
        "SubscriptionsConfirmed": "1",
        "DisplayName": "my-topic",
        "SubscriptionsDeleted": "0",
        "EffectiveDeliveryPolicy": "{\"http\":{\"defaultHealthyRetryPolicy
\":{\"minDelayTarget\":20,\"maxDelayTarget\":20,\"numRetries\":3,
\"numMaxDelayRetries\":0,\"numNoDelayRetries\":0,\"numMinDelayRetries\":0,
\"backoffFunction\":\"linear\"},\"disableSubscriptionOverrides\":false}}",
        "Owner": "123456789012",
        "Policy": "{\"Version\":\"2008-10-17\",\"Id\":\"__default_policy_ID
\",\"Statement\":[{\"Sid\":\"__default_statement_ID\",\"Effect\":
\"Allow\",\"Principal\":{\"AWS\":\"*\"},\"Action\":[\"SNS:Subscribe\",
\"SNS:ListSubscriptionsByTopic\",\"SNS:DeleteTopic\",\"SNS:GetTopicAttributes
\",\"SNS:Publish\",\"SNS:RemovePermission\",\"SNS:AddPermission\",
\"SNS:SetTopicAttributes\"],\"Resource\":\"arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-
topic\",\"Condition\":{\"StringEquals\":{\"AWS:SourceOwner\":
\"0123456789012\"}}}]}",
        "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic",
        "SubscriptionsPending": "0"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetTopicAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetTopicAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetTopicAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to look up.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Getting attributes for a topic with name: " +
 topicArn);
        getSNSTopicAttributes(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getSNSTopicAttributes(SnsClient snsClient, String
 topicArn) {
        try {
            GetTopicAttributesRequest request =
 GetTopicAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            GetTopicAttributesResponse result =
 snsClient.getTopicAttributes(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus is " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n\nAttributes: \n\n"
                    + result.attributes());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { GetTopicAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic to retrieve attributes for.
 */
export const getTopicAttributes = async (topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new GetTopicAttributesCommand({
      TopicArn: topicArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '36b6a24e-5473-5d4e-ac32-ff72d9a73d94',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
```

```
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Attributes: {
  //     Policy: '{...}',
  //     Owner: 'xxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     SubscriptionsPending: '1',
  //     TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:mytopic',
  //     TracingConfig: 'PassThrough',
  //     EffectiveDeliveryPolicy: '{"http":{"defaultHealthyRetryPolicy":
{"minDelayTarget":20,"maxDelayTarget":20,"numRetries":3,"numMaxDelayRetries":0,"numNoDela
{"headerContentType":"text/plain; charset=UTF-8"}}}',
  //     SubscriptionsConfirmed: '0',
  //     DisplayName: '',
  //     SubscriptionsDeleted: '1'
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create promise and SNS service object
var getTopicAttribsPromise = new AWS.SNS({ apiVersion: "2010-03-31" })
  .getTopicAttributes({ TopicArn: "TOPIC_ARN" })
  .promise();
```

```
// Handle promise's fulfilled/rejected states
getTopicAttribsPromise
  .then(function (data) {
    console.log(data);
  })
  .catch(function (err) {
    console.error(err, err.stack);
  });
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSNSTopicAttributes(topicArnVal: String) {
    val request =
        GetTopicAttributesRequest {
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.getTopicAttributes(request)
        println("${result.attributes}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->getTopicAttributes([
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->gettopicattributes( iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn ). "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_attributes) = oo_result->get_attributes( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved attributes/properties of a topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list SMS message opt-outs

The following `list-phone-numbers-opted-out` example lists the phone numbers opted out of receiving SMS messages.

```
aws sns list-phone-numbers-opted-out
```

Output:

```
{
    "phoneNumbers": [
        "+15555550100"
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListOptOut {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listOpts(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listOpts(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutRequest request =
 ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutRequest.builder().build();
            ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutResponse result =
 snsClient.listPhoneNumbersOptedOut(request);
```

```
            System.out.println("Status is " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n\nPhone Numbers: \n\n"
                    + result.phoneNumbers());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Returns a list of phone numbers that are opted out of receiving SMS messages
 from your AWS SNS account.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
```

```
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->listPhoneNumbersOptedOut();
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `ListSubscriptions` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example will retrieve a list of the existing Amazon Simple
    /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) subscriptions.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListSubscriptions
```

```
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
 AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            Console.WriteLine("Enter a topic ARN to list subscriptions for a
 specific topic, " +
                              "or press Enter to list subscriptions for all
 topics.");
            var topicArn = Console.ReadLine();
            Console.WriteLine();

            var subscriptions = await GetSubscriptionsListAsync(client,
 topicArn);

            DisplaySubscriptionList(subscriptions);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Gets a list of the existing Amazon SNS subscriptions, optionally by
 specifying a topic ARN.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to obtain the list of subscriptions.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The optional ARN of a specific topic. Defaults
 to null.</param>
        /// <returns>A list containing information about each subscription.</
returns>
        public static async Task<List<Subscription>>
 GetSubscriptionsListAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string
 topicArn = null)
        {
            var results = new List<Subscription>();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(topicArn))
            {
                var paginateByTopic = client.Paginators.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
                    new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest()
                    {
                        TopicArn = topicArn,
                    });

                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
```

```
                await foreach (var subscription in paginateByTopic.Subscriptions)
                {
                    results.Add(subscription);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                var paginateAllSubscriptions =
client.Paginators.ListSubscriptions(new ListSubscriptionsRequest());

                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var subscription in
paginateAllSubscriptions.Subscriptions)
                {
                    results.Add(subscription);
                }
            }

            return results;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Display a list of Amazon SNS subscription information.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="subscriptionList">A list containing details for existing
        /// Amazon SNS subscriptions.</param>
        public static void DisplaySubscriptionList(List<Subscription>
subscriptionList)
        {
            foreach (var subscription in subscriptionList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Owner: {subscription.Owner}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Subscription ARN:
{subscription.SubscriptionArn}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Topic ARN: {subscription.TopicArn}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Endpoint: {subscription.Endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Protocol: {subscription.Protocol}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve a list of Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 subscriptions.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::listSubscriptions(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated response.
    bool result = true;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Subscription> subscriptions;
    do {
        Aws::SNS::Model::ListSubscriptionsRequest request;

        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        const Aws::SNS::Model::ListSubscriptionsOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.ListSubscriptions(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Subscription> &newSubscriptions =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptions();
            subscriptions.insert(subscriptions.cend(), newSubscriptions.begin(),
                                 newSubscriptions.end());
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing subscriptions "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      <<
                      std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }

        nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    if (result) {
        if (subscriptions.empty()) {
            std::cout << "No subscriptions found" << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Subscriptions list:" << std::endl;
            for (auto const &subscription: subscriptions) {
                std::cout << "  * " << subscription.GetSubscriptionArn() <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
    }
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your SNS subscriptions

The following `list-subscriptions` example displays a list of the SNS subscriptions in your AWS account.

```
aws sns list-subscriptions
```

Output:

```
{
    "Subscriptions": [
        {
            "Owner": "123456789012",
            "Endpoint": "my-email@example.com",
            "Protocol": "email",
            "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic",
            "SubscriptionArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-
topic:8a21d249-4329-4871-acc6-7be709c6ea7f"
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListSubscriptionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListSubscriptionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListSubscriptions {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSSubscriptions(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSSubscriptions(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListSubscriptionsRequest request = ListSubscriptionsRequest.builder()
                    .build();

            ListSubscriptionsResponse result =
 snsClient.listSubscriptions(request);
            System.out.println(result.subscriptions());

        } catch (SnsException e) {

            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
```

```
// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { ListSubscriptionsByTopicCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic for which you wish to list
 subscriptions.
 */
export const listSubscriptionsByTopic = async (topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new ListSubscriptionsByTopicCommand({ TopicArn: topicArn }),
  );

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '0934fedf-0c4b-572e-9ed2-a3e38fadb0c8',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Subscriptions: [
  //     {
  //       SubscriptionArn: 'PendingConfirmation',
  //       Owner: '901487484989',
  //       Protocol: 'email',
  //       Endpoint: 'corepyle@amazon.com',
  //       TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:901487484989:mytopic'
  //     }
  //   ]
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listSNSSubscriptions() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.listSubscriptions(ListSubscriptionsRequest {})
        response.subscriptions?.forEach { sub ->
            println("Sub ARN is ${sub.subscriptionArn}")
            println("Sub protocol is ${sub.protocol}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';
```

```
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Returns a list of Amazon SNS subscriptions in the requested region.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->listSubscriptions();
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def list_subscriptions(self, topic=None):
        """
        Lists subscriptions for the current account, optionally limited to a
        specific topic.

        :param topic: When specified, only subscriptions to this topic are
returned.
        :return: An iterator that yields the subscriptions.
        """
        try:
            if topic is None:
                subs_iter = self.sns_resource.subscriptions.all()
            else:
                subs_iter = topic.subscriptions.all()
            logger.info("Got subscriptions.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get subscriptions.")
            raise
        else:
            return subs_iter
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This class demonstrates how to list subscriptions to an Amazon Simple
 Notification Service (SNS) topic
class SnsSubscriptionLister
  def initialize(sns_client)
    @sns_client = sns_client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists subscriptions for a given SNS topic
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @return [Types::ListSubscriptionsResponse] subscriptions: The response object
  def list_subscriptions(topic_arn)
    @logger.info("Listing subscriptions for topic: #{topic_arn}")
    subscriptions = @sns_client.list_subscriptions_by_topic(topic_arn: topic_arn)
    subscriptions.subscriptions.each do |subscription|
      @logger.info("Subscription endpoint: #{subscription.endpoint}")
    end
    subscriptions
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing subscriptions: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  topic_arn = 'SNS_TOPIC_ARN' # Replace with your SNS topic ARN
  lister = SnsSubscriptionLister.new(sns_client)

  begin
    lister.list_subscriptions(topic_arn)
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts "Failed to list subscriptions: #{e.message}"
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->listsubscriptions( ).                " oo_result is
returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_subscriptions) = oo_result->get_subscriptions( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of subscribers.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_generic.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to list subscribers.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListTopics` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTopics`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
```

```
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
    /// topics for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListSNSTopics
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            await GetTopicListAsync(client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the list of Amazon SNS topics in groups of up to 100
        /// topics.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to retrieve the list of topics.</param>
        public static async Task
GetTopicListAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client)
        {
            // If there are more than 100 Amazon SNS topics, the call to
            // ListTopicsAsync will return a value to pass to the
            // method to retrieve the next 100 (or less) topics.
            string nextToken = string.Empty;

            do
            {
                var response = await client.ListTopicsAsync(nextToken);
                DisplayTopicsList(response.Topics);
                nextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
            while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(nextToken));
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of Amazon SNS Topic ARNs.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="topicList">The list of Topic ARNs.</param>
        public static void DisplayTopicsList(List<Topic> topicList)
```

```
        {
            foreach (var topic in topicList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{topic.TopicArn}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve a list of Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topics.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SNS::listTopics(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated response.
    bool result = true;
    do {
        Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsRequest request;

        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        const Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsOutcome outcome = snsClient.ListTopics(
```

```
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Topics list:" << std::endl;
            for (auto const &topic: outcome.GetResult().GetTopics()) {
                std::cout << "  * " << topic.GetTopicArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing topics " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                      std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }

        nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your SNS topics

The following `list-topics` example lists all of SNS topics in your AWS account.

```
aws sns list-topics
```

Output:

```
{
    "Topics": [
        {
            "TopicArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
```

```
 snsClient := sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the topics for your account.")
 var topics []types.Topic
 paginator := sns.NewListTopicsPaginator(snsClient, &sns.ListTopicsInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get topics. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   topics = append(topics, output.Topics...)
  }
 }
 if len(topics) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any topics!")
 } else {
  for _, topic := range topics {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *topic.TopicArn)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListTopicsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListTopicsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListTopics {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSTopics(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSTopics(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListTopicsRequest request = ListTopicsRequest.builder()
                    .build();

            ListTopicsResponse result = snsClient.listTopics(request);
            System.out.println(
                    "Status was " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n
\nTopics\n\n" + result.topics());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { ListTopicsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const listTopics = async () => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(new ListTopicsCommand({}));
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '936bc5ad-83ca-53c2-b0b7-9891167b909e',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Topics: [ { TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:mytopic' } ]
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listSNSTopics() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.listTopics(ListTopicsRequest { })
        response.topics?.forEach { topic ->
            println("The topic ARN is ${topic.topicArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;
```

```
/**
 * Returns a list of the requester's topics from your AWS SNS account in the
 region specified.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->listTopics();
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def list_topics(self):
        """
        Lists topics for the current account.

        :return: An iterator that yields the topics.
        """
        try:
            topics_iter = self.sns_resource.topics.all()
            logger.info("Got topics.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topics.")
            raise
        else:
            return topics_iter
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sns' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

def list_topics?(sns_client)
  sns_client.topics.each do |topic|
    puts topic.arn
```

```
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts "Error while listing the topics: #{e.message}"
  end
end

def run_me
  region = 'REGION'
  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Resource.new(region: region)

  puts 'Listing the topics.'

  return if list_topics?(sns_client)

  puts 'The bucket was not created. Stopping program.'
  exit 1
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_topics(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_topics().send().await?;

    println!("Topic ARNs:");

    for topic in resp.topics() {
```

```
        println!("{}", topic.topic_arn().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->listtopics( ).            " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_topics) = oo_result->get_topics( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of topics.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_generic.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to list topics.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        var topics: [String] = []
        let outputPages = snsClient.listTopicsPaginated(
            input: ListTopicsInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let topicList = output.topics else {
                print("Unable to get a page of Amazon SNS topics.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the topics listed on this page, adding their ARNs
            // to the `topics` array.

            for topic in topicList {
                guard let arn = topic.topicArn else {
                    print("Topic has no ARN.")
                    return
                }
                topics.append(arn)
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `Publish` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Publish`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create and publish to a FIFO topic
- Publish an SMS text message

- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Publish a message to a topic.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example publishes a message to an Amazon Simple Notification
    /// Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class PublishToSNSTopic
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-
east-2:000000000000:ExampleSNSTopic";
            string messageText = "This is an example message to publish to the
 ExampleSNSTopic.";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
 AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            await PublishToTopicAsync(client, topicArn, messageText);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to publish
```

```
        /// to the Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
        /// <param name="messageText">The text of the message.</param>
        public static async Task PublishToTopicAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn,
            string messageText)
        {
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn,
                Message = messageText,
            };

            var response = await client.PublishAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully published message ID:
{response.MessageId}");
        }
    }
```

Publish a message to a topic with group, duplication, and attribute options.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is
a sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must
set a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID
for this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this
message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID
for this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?",
 false);
        }
    }
```

Apply the user's selections to the publish action.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
```

```
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
 attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Send a message to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
/*!
  \param message: The message to publish.
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::publishToTopic(const Aws::String &message,
                                 const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
    request.SetMessage(message);
```

```
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Message published successfully with id '"
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId() << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while publishing message "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Publish a message with an attribute.

```
        static const Aws::String TONE_ATTRIBUTE("tone");
        static const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> TONES = {"cheerful", "funny",
 "serious",
                                                       "sincere"};

        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
        Aws::String message = askQuestion("Enter a message text to publish.  ");
        request.SetMessage(message);

        if (filteringMessages && askYesNoQuestion(
                "Add an attribute to this message? (y/n) ")) {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < TONES.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "  " << (i + 1) << ". " << TONES[i] << std::endl;
            }
            int selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter a number for an attribute. ",
```

```
                    1, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));
            Aws::SNS::Model::MessageAttributeValue messageAttributeValue;
            messageAttributeValue.SetDataType("String");
            messageAttributeValue.SetStringValue(TONES[selection - 1]);
            request.AddMessageAttributes(TONE_ATTRIBUTE, messageAttributeValue);
        }

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Your message was successfully published." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Publish. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To publish a message to a topic

The following `publish` example publishes the specified message to the specified SNS topic. The message comes from a text file, which enables you to include line breaks.

```
aws sns publish \
    --topic-arn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" \
    --message file://message.txt
```

Contents of `message.txt`:

```
Hello World
Second Line
```

Output:

```
{
    "MessageId": "123a45b6-7890-12c3-45d6-111122223333"
}
```

Example 2: To publish an SMS message to a phone number

The following `publish` example publishes the message `Hello world!` to the phone number `+1-555-555-0100`.

```
aws sns publish \
    --message "Hello world!" \
    --phone-number +1-555-555-0100
```

Output:

```
{
    "MessageId": "123a45b6-7890-12c3-45d6-333322221111"
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
```

```
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// Publish publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The message is then sent
 to all
// subscribers. When the topic is a FIFO topic, the message must also contain a
 group ID
// and, when ID-based deduplication is used, a deduplication ID. An optional key-
value
// filter attribute can be specified so that the message can be filtered
 according to
// a filter policy.
func (actor SnsActions) Publish(ctx context.Context, topicArn string, message
 string, groupId string, dedupId string, filterKey string, filterValue string)
 error {
 publishInput := sns.PublishInput{TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn), Message:
 aws.String(message)}
 if groupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageGroupId = aws.String(groupId)
 }
 if dedupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageDeduplicationId = aws.String(dedupId)
 }
 if filterKey != "" && filterValue != "" {
  publishInput.MessageAttributes = map[string]types.MessageAttributeValue{
   filterKey: {DataType: aws.String("String"), StringValue:
 aws.String(filterValue)},
  }
 }
```

```
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.Publish(ctx, &publishInput)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't publish message to topic %v. Here's why: %v", topicArn,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PublishTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <message> <topicArn>
```

```
                Where:
                   message - The message text to send.
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to publish.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String message = args[0];
        String topicArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        pubTopic(snsClient, message, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void pubTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
 topicArn) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                    .message(message)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                    .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status is " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PublishCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string | Record<string, any>} message - The message to send. Can be a
 plain string or an object
 *                                                    if you are using the `json`
 `MessageStructure`.
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic to which you would like to
 publish.
 */
export const publish = async (
  message = "Hello from SNS!",
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new PublishCommand({
      Message: message,
      TopicArn: topicArn,
    }),
```

```
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'e7f77526-e295-5325-9ee4-281a43ad1f05',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   MessageId: 'xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Publish a message to a topic with group, duplication, and attribute options.

```
  async publishMessages() {
    const message = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.publishMessagePrompt,
    });

    let groupId;
    let deduplicationId;
    let choices;

    if (this.isFifo) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.groupIdNotice);
      groupId = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.groupIdPrompt,
      });

      if (this.autoDedup === false) {
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationIdNotice);
        deduplicationId = await this.prompter.input({
          message: MESSAGES.deduplicationIdPrompt,
        });
      }

      choices = await this.prompter.checkbox({
        message: MESSAGES.messageAttributesPrompt,
```

```
        choices: toneChoices,
      });
    }

    await this.snsClient.send(
      new PublishCommand({
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Message: message,
        ...(groupId
          ? {
              MessageGroupId: groupId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(deduplicationId
          ? {
              MessageDeduplicationId: deduplicationId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(choices
          ? {
              MessageAttributes: {
                tone: {
                  DataType: "String.Array",
                  StringValue: JSON.stringify(choices),
                },
              },
            }
          : {}),
      }),
    );

    const publishAnother = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.publishAnother,
    });

    if (publishAnother) {
      await this.publishMessages();
    }
  }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun pubTopic(
    topicArnVal: String,
    messageVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        PublishRequest {
            message = messageVal
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';
```

```
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Sends a message to an Amazon SNS topic.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$message = 'This message is sent from a Amazon SNS code sample.';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->publish([
        'Message' => $message,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows publishing a message with a single MessageAttribute declared inline.

```
Publish-SNSMessage -TopicArn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -
Message "Hello" -MessageAttribute
 @{'City'=[Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue]@{DataType='Strin
 StringValue ='AnyCity'}}
```

Example 2: This example shows publishing a message with multiple MessageAttributes declared in advance.

```
$cityAttributeValue = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$cityAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$cityAttributeValue.StringValue = "AnyCity"

$populationAttributeValue = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$populationAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$populationAttributeValue.StringValue = "1250800"

$messageAttributes = New-Object System.Collections.Hashtable
$messageAttributes.Add("City", $cityAttributeValue)
$messageAttributes.Add("Population", $populationAttributeValue)

Publish-SNSMessage -TopicArn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -
Message "Hello" -MessageAttribute $messageAttributes
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows publishing a message with a single MessageAttribute declared inline.

```
Publish-SNSMessage -TopicArn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -
Message "Hello" -MessageAttribute
```

```
 @{'City'=[Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue]@{DataType='Strin
 StringValue ='AnyCity'}}
```

Example 2: This example shows publishing a message with multiple MessageAttributes declared in advance.

```
$cityAttributeValue = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$cityAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$cityAttributeValue.StringValue = "AnyCity"

$populationAttributeValue = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$populationAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$populationAttributeValue.StringValue = "1250800"

$messageAttributes = New-Object System.Collections.Hashtable
$messageAttributes.Add("City", $cityAttributeValue)
$messageAttributes.Add("Population", $populationAttributeValue)

Publish-SNSMessage -TopicArn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -
Message "Hello" -MessageAttribute $messageAttributes
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Publish a message with attributes so that a subscription can filter based on attributes.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
```

```
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def publish_message(topic, message, attributes):
        """
        Publishes a message, with attributes, to a topic. Subscriptions can be
filtered
        based on message attributes so that a subscription receives messages only
        when specified attributes are present.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param message: The message to publish.
        :param attributes: The key-value attributes to attach to the message.
Values
                           must be either `str` or `bytes`.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            att_dict = {}
            for key, value in attributes.items():
                if isinstance(value, str):
                    att_dict[key] = {"DataType": "String", "StringValue": value}
                elif isinstance(value, bytes):
                    att_dict[key] = {"DataType": "Binary", "BinaryValue": value}
            response = topic.publish(Message=message, MessageAttributes=att_dict)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Published message with attributes %s to topic %s.",
                attributes,
                topic.arn,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

Publish a message that takes different forms based on the protocol of the subscriber.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def publish_multi_message(
        topic, subject, default_message, sms_message, email_message
    ):
        """
        Publishes a multi-format message to a topic. A multi-format message takes
        different forms based on the protocol of the subscriber. For example,
        an SMS subscriber might receive a short version of the message
        while an email subscriber could receive a longer version.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param subject: The subject of the message.
        :param default_message: The default version of the message. This version
 is
                                sent to subscribers that have protocols that are
 not
                                otherwise specified in the structured message.
        :param sms_message: The version of the message sent to SMS subscribers.
        :param email_message: The version of the message sent to email
 subscribers.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            message = {
                "default": default_message,
                "sms": sms_message,
                "email": email_message,
            }
            response = topic.publish(
                Message=json.dumps(message), Subject=subject,
 MessageStructure="json"
            )
```

```
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published multi-format message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Service class for sending messages using Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (SNS)
class SnsMessageSender
  # Initializes the SnsMessageSender with an SNS client
  #
  # @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] The SNS client
  def initialize(sns_client)
    @sns_client = sns_client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Sends a message to a specified SNS topic
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param message [String] The message to send
  # @return [Boolean] true if message was successfully sent, false otherwise
  def send_message(topic_arn, message)
    @sns_client.publish(topic_arn: topic_arn, message: message)
    @logger.info("Message sent successfully to #{topic_arn}.")
```

```
    true
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error while sending the message: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  topic_arn = 'SNS_TOPIC_ARN' # Should be replaced with a real topic ARN
  message = 'MESSAGE'         # Should be replaced with the actual message
 content

  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  message_sender = SnsMessageSender.new(sns_client)

  @logger.info('Sending message.')
  unless message_sender.send_message(topic_arn, message)
    @logger.error('Message sending failed. Stopping program.')
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn subscribe_and_publish(
    client: &Client,
    topic_arn: &str,
    email_address: &str,
```

```
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    println!("Receiving on topic with ARN: `{}`", topic_arn);

    let rsp = client
        .subscribe()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .protocol("email")
        .endpoint(email_address)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Added a subscription: {:?}", rsp);

    let rsp = client
        .publish()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .message("hello sns!")
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Published message: {:?}", rsp);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->publish(              " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
          iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn
```

```
          iv_message = iv_message ).
        MESSAGE 'Message published to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.publish(
            input: PublishInput(
                message: message,
                topicArn: arn
            )
        )

        guard let messageId = output.messageId else {
            print("No message ID received from Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }

        print("Published message with ID \(messageId)")
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `SetSMSAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetSMSAttributes`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

How to use Amazon SNS to set the DefaultSMSType attribute.

```
//! Set the default settings for sending SMS messages.
/*!
  \param smsType: The type of SMS message that you will send by default.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::setSMSType(const Aws::String &smsType,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SetSMSAttributesRequest request;
    request.AddAttributes("DefaultSMSType", smsType);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SetSMSAttributesOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.SetSMSAttributes(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "SMS Type set successfully " << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while setting SMS Type: '"
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << "'" << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set SMS message attributes

The following `set-sms-attributes` example sets the default sender ID for SMS messages to `MyName`.

```
aws sns set-sms-attributes \
    --attributes DefaultSenderID=MyName
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SetSMSAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        HashMap<String, String> attributes = new HashMap<>(1);
        attributes.put("DefaultSMSType", "Transactional");
        attributes.put("UsageReportS3Bucket", "janbucket");

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        setSNSAttributes(snsClient, attributes);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void setSNSAttributes(SnsClient snsClient, HashMap<String,
 String> attributes) {
        try {
            SetSmsAttributesRequest request = SetSmsAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .attributes(attributes)
                    .build();

            SetSmsAttributesResponse result =
 snsClient.setSMSAttributes(request);
            System.out.println("Set default Attributes to " + attributes + ".
 Status was "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { SetSMSAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {"Transactional" | "Promotional"} defaultSmsType
 */
export const setSmsType = async (defaultSmsType = "Transactional") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SetSMSAttributesCommand({
      attributes: {
        // Promotional - (Default) Noncritical messages, such as marketing
 messages.
        // Transactional - Critical messages that support customer transactions,
        // such as one-time passcodes for multi-factor authentication.
        DefaultSMSType: defaultSmsType,
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
```

```
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '1885b977-2d7e-535e-8214-e44be727e265',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->SetSMSAttributes([
        'attributes' => [
            'DefaultSMSType' => 'Transactional',
        ],
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
```

```
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Use `SetSubscriptionAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetSubscriptionAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set subscription attributes

The following `set-subscription-attributes` example sets the `RawMessageDelivery` attribute to an SQS subscription.

```
aws sns set-subscription-attributes \
    --subscription-arn arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:123456789012:mytopic:f248de18-2cf6-578c-8592-b6f1eaa877dc \
    --attribute-name RawMessageDelivery \
    --attribute-value true
```

This command produces no output.

The following `set-subscription-attributes` example sets a `FilterPolicy` attribute to an SQS subscription.

```
aws sns set-subscription-attributes \
    --subscription-arn arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:123456789012:mytopic:f248de18-2cf6-578c-8592-b6f1eaa877dc \
    --attribute-name FilterPolicy \
    --attribute-value "{ \"anyMandatoryKey\": [\"any\", \"of\", \"these\"] }"
```

This command produces no output.

The following `set-subscription-attributes` example removes the `FilterPolicy` attribute from an SQS subscription.

```
aws sns set-subscription-attributes \
    --subscription-arn arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:123456789012:mytopic:f248de18-2cf6-578c-8592-b6f1eaa877dc \
    --attribute-name FilterPolicy \
    --attribute-value "{}"
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see SetSubscriptionAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class UseMessageFilterPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <subscriptionArn>

                Where:
```

```
                    subscriptionArn - The ARN of a subscription.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subscriptionArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        usePolicy(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void usePolicy(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            SNSMessageFilterPolicy fp = new SNSMessageFilterPolicy();
            // Add a filter policy attribute with a single value
            fp.addAttribute("store", "example_corp");
            fp.addAttribute("event", "order_placed");

            // Add a prefix attribute
            fp.addAttributePrefix("customer_interests", "bas");

            // Add an anything-but attribute
            fp.addAttributeAnythingBut("customer_interests", "baseball");

            // Add a filter policy attribute with a list of values
            ArrayList<String> attributeValues = new ArrayList<>();
            attributeValues.add("rugby");
            attributeValues.add("soccer");
            attributeValues.add("hockey");
            fp.addAttribute("customer_interests", attributeValues);

            // Add a numeric attribute
            fp.addAttribute("price_usd", "=", 0);

            // Add a numeric attribute with a range
            fp.addAttributeRange("price_usd", ">", 0, "<=", 100);
```

```
            // Apply the filter policy attributes to an Amazon SNS subscription
            fp.apply(snsClient, subscriptionArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetSubscriptionAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def add_subscription_filter(subscription, attributes):
        """
        Adds a filter policy to a subscription. A filter policy is a key and a
        list of values that are allowed. When a message is published, it must
 have an
        attribute that passes the filter or it will not be sent to the
 subscription.
```

```
        :param subscription: The subscription the filter policy is attached to.
        :param attributes: A dictionary of key-value pairs that define the
filter.
        """
        try:
            att_policy = {key: [value] for key, value in attributes.items()}
            subscription.set_attributes(
                AttributeName="FilterPolicy",
AttributeValue=json.dumps(att_policy)
            )
            logger.info("Added filter to subscription %s.", subscription.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add filter to subscription %s.", subscription.arn
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see SetSubscriptionAttributes in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `SetSubscriptionAttributesRedrivePolicy` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `SetSubscriptionAttributesRedrivePolicy`.

Java

SDK for Java 1.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Specify the ARN of the Amazon SNS subscription.
String subscriptionArn =
    "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:123456789012:MyEndpoint:1234a567-
bc89-012d-3e45-6fg7h890123i";
```

```
// Specify the ARN of the Amazon SQS queue to use as a dead-letter queue.
String redrivePolicy =
    "{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-2:123456789012:MyDeadLetterQueue\"}";

// Set the specified Amazon SQS queue as a dead-letter queue
// of the specified Amazon SNS subscription by setting the RedrivePolicy
 attribute.
SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest request = new SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest()
    .withSubscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
    .withAttributeName("RedrivePolicy")
    .withAttributeValue(redrivePolicy);
sns.setSubscriptionAttributes(request);
```

Use `SetTopicAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set an attribute for a topic

The following `set-topic-attributes` example sets the `DisplayName` attribute for the specified topic.

```
aws sns set-topic-attributes \
    --topic-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:MyTopic \
    --attribute-name DisplayName \
    --attribute-value MyTopicDisplayName
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetTopicAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetTopicAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SetTopicAttributes {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <attribute> <topicArn> <value>

                Where:
                   attribute - The attribute action to use. Valid parameters are:
 Policy | DisplayName | DeliveryPolicy .
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic.\s
                   value - The value for the attribute.
                """;

        if (args.length < 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }

        String attribute = args[0];
        String topicArn = args[1];
        String value = args[2];

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        setTopAttr(snsClient, attribute, topicArn, value);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void setTopAttr(SnsClient snsClient, String attribute, String
 topicArn, String value) {
        try {
            SetTopicAttributesRequest request =
 SetTopicAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .attributeName(attribute)
                    .attributeValue(value)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SetTopicAttributesResponse result =
 snsClient.setTopicAttributes(request);
            System.out.println(
                    "\n\nStatus was " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() +
 "\n\nTopic " + request.topicArn()
                            + " updated " + request.attributeName() + " to " +
 request.attributeValue());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { SetTopicAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const setTopicAttributes = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  attributeName = "DisplayName",
  attributeValue = "Test Topic",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SetTopicAttributesCommand({
      AttributeName: attributeName,
      AttributeValue: attributeValue,
      TopicArn: topicArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'd1b08d0e-e9a4-54c3-b8b1-d03238d2b935',
```

```
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun setTopAttr(
    attribute: String?,
    topicArnVal: String?,
    value: String?,
) {
    val request =
        SetTopicAttributesRequest {
            attributeName = attribute
            attributeValue = value
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.setTopicAttributes(request)
        println("Topic ${request.topicArn} was updated.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Configure the message delivery status attributes for an Amazon SNS Topic.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);
$attribute = 'Policy | DisplayName | DeliveryPolicy';
$value = 'First Topic';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->setTopicAttributes([
        'AttributeName' => $attribute,
        'AttributeValue' => $value,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
```

```
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Service class to enable an SNS resource with a specified policy
class SnsResourceEnabler
  # Initializes the SnsResourceEnabler with an SNS resource client
  #
  # @param sns_resource [Aws::SNS::Resource] The SNS resource client
  def initialize(sns_resource)
    @sns_resource = sns_resource
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Sets a policy on a specified SNS topic
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param resource_arn [String] The ARN of the resource to include in the policy
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy attribute to set
  def enable_resource(topic_arn, resource_arn, policy_name)
    policy = generate_policy(topic_arn, resource_arn)
    topic = @sns_resource.topic(topic_arn)

    topic.set_attributes({
                           attribute_name: policy_name,
                           attribute_value: policy
                         })
```

```
    @logger.info("Policy #{policy_name} set successfully for topic
 #{topic_arn}.")
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to set policy: #{e.message}")
  end

  private

  # Generates a policy string with dynamic resource ARNs
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param resource_arn [String] The ARN of the resource
  # @return [String] The policy as a JSON string
  def generate_policy(topic_arn, resource_arn)
    {
      Version: '2008-10-17',
      Id: '__default_policy_ID',
      Statement: [{
        Sid: '__default_statement_ID',
        Effect: 'Allow',
        Principal: { "AWS": '*' },
        Action: ['SNS:Publish'],
        Resource: topic_arn,
        Condition: {
          ArnEquals: {
            "AWS:SourceArn": resource_arn
          }
        }
      }]
    }.to_json
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  topic_arn = 'MY_TOPIC_ARN' # Should be replaced with a real topic ARN
  resource_arn = 'MY_RESOURCE_ARN' # Should be replaced with a real resource ARN
  policy_name = 'POLICY_NAME' # Typically, this is "Policy"

  sns_resource = Aws::SNS::Resource.new
  enabler = SnsResourceEnabler.new(sns_resource)

  enabler.enable_resource(topic_arn, resource_arn, policy_name)
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    lo_sns->settopicattributes(
        iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn
        iv_attributename  = iv_attribute_name
        iv_attributevalue = iv_attribute_value ).
    MESSAGE 'Set/updated SNS topic attributes.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
    MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `Subscribe` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Subscribe`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create and publish to a FIFO topic
- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
/// <summary>
/// Creates a new subscription to a topic.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object, used
/// to create an Amazon SNS subscription.</param>
/// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic to subscribe to.</param>
/// <returns>A SubscribeResponse object which includes the subscription
/// ARN for the new subscription.</returns>
public static async Task<SubscribeResponse> TopicSubscribeAsync(
    IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
    string topicArn)
{
    SubscribeRequest request = new SubscribeRequest()
    {
        TopicArn = topicArn,
        ReturnSubscriptionArn = true,
        Protocol = "email",
        Endpoint = "recipient@example.com",
    };

    var response = await client.SubscribeAsync(request);

    return response;
}
```

Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
{ { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
//! Subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic with
 delivery to an email address.
/*!
  \param topicARN: An SNS topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
  \param emailAddress: An email address.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::subscribeEmail(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                 const Aws::String &emailAddress,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
    request.SetProtocol("email");
    request.SetEndpoint(emailAddress);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Subscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Subscribed successfully." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subscription ARN '" <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn()
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while subscribing " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Subscribe a mobile application to a topic.

```
//! Subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic with
 delivery to a mobile app.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param endpointARN: The ARN for a mobile app or device endpoint.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SNS::subscribeApp(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                          const Aws::String &endpointARN,
                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
    request.SetProtocol("application");
    request.SetEndpoint(endpointARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Subscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Subscribed successfully." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subscription ARN '" <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn()
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while subscribing " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
//! Subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic with
 delivery to an AWS Lambda function.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param lambdaFunctionARN: The ARN for an AWS Lambda function.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::subscribeLambda(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                  const Aws::String &lambdaFunctionARN,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
    request.SetProtocol("lambda");
    request.SetEndpoint(lambdaFunctionARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Subscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Subscribed successfully." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subscription ARN '" <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn()
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while subscribing " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Subscribe an SQS queue to a topic.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";
```

```
   Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

           Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
           request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
           request.SetProtocol("sqs");
           request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);

           Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
snsClient.Subscribe(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               Aws::String subscriptionARN =
outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
               std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                         << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                         << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
               std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN <<
"."
                         << std::endl;
               subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
           }
           else {
               std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                         << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                         << std::endl;

               cleanUp(topicARN,
                       queueURLS,
                       subscriptionARNS,
                       snsClient,
                       sqsClient);

               return false;
           }
```

Subscribe with a filter to a topic.

```
       static const Aws::String TONE_ATTRIBUTE("tone");
       static const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> TONES = {"cheerful", "funny",
"serious",
                                                      "sincere"};
```

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
            request.SetProtocol("sqs");
            request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);
            if (isFifoTopic) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout << "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have
 filters."
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout
                            << "If you add a filter to this subscription, then
 only the filtered messages "
                            << "will be received in the queue." << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For information about message filtering, "
                              << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
sns-message-filtering.html"
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For this example, you can filter messages by a
 \""
                              << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attribute." << std::endl;
                }

                std::ostringstream ostringstream;
                ostringstream << "Filter messages for \"" << queueName
                              << "\"'s subscription to the topic \""
                              << topicName << "\"?  (y/n)";

                // Add filter if user answers yes.
                if (askYesNoQuestion(ostringstream.str())) {
                    Aws::String jsonPolicy = getFilterPolicyFromUser();
                    if (!jsonPolicy.empty()) {
                        filteringMessages = true;

                        std::cout << "This is the filter policy for this
 subscription."
                                  << std::endl;
                        std::cout << jsonPolicy << std::endl;
```

```
                        request.AddAttributes("FilterPolicy", jsonPolicy);
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout
                                << "Because you did not select any attributes, no
 filter "
                                << "will be added to this subscription." <<
 std::endl;
                    }
                }
            }  // if (isFifoTopic)
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Subscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN <<
 "."
                          << std::endl;
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }

//! Routine that lets the user select attributes for a subscription filter
 policy.
/*!
 \sa getFilterPolicyFromUser()
```

```
 \return Aws::String: The filter policy as JSON.
 */
Aws::String AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::getFilterPolicyFromUser() {
    std::cout
            << "You can filter messages by one or more of the following \""
            << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attributes." << std::endl;

    std::vector<Aws::String> filterSelections;
    int selection;
    do {
        for (size_t j = 0; j < TONES.size(); ++j) {
            std::cout << "  " << (j + 1) << ". " << TONES[j]
                      << std::endl;
        }
        selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                "Enter a number (or enter zero to stop adding more). ",
                0, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));

        if (selection != 0) {
            const Aws::String &selectedTone(TONES[selection - 1]);
            // Add the tone to the selection if it is not already added.
            if (std::find(filterSelections.begin(),
                          filterSelections.end(),
                          selectedTone)
                == filterSelections.end()) {
                filterSelections.push_back(selectedTone);
            }
        }
    } while (selection != 0);

    Aws::String result;
    if (!filterSelections.empty()) {
        std::ostringstream jsonPolicyStream;
        jsonPolicyStream << "{ \"" << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\": [";


        for (size_t j = 0; j < filterSelections.size(); ++j) {
            jsonPolicyStream << "\"" << filterSelections[j] << "\"";
            if (j < filterSelections.size() - 1) {
                jsonPolicyStream << ",";
            }
        }
        jsonPolicyStream << "] }";
```

```
        result = jsonPolicyStream.str();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To subscribe to a topic

The following `subscribe` command subscribes an email address to the specified topic.

```
aws sns subscribe \
    --topic-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic \
    --protocol email \
    --notification-endpoint my-email@example.com
```

Output:

```
{
    "SubscriptionArn": "pending confirmation"
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// SubscribeQueue subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to
 an
// Amazon SNS topic. When filterMap is not nil, it is used to specify a filter
 policy
// so that messages are only sent to the queue when the message has the specified
 attributes.
func (actor SnsActions) SubscribeQueue(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 queueArn string, filterMap map[string][]string) (string, error) {
 var subscriptionArn string
 var attributes map[string]string
 if filterMap != nil {
  filterBytes, err := json.Marshal(filterMap)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create filter policy, here's why: %v\n", err)
   return "", err
  }
  attributes = map[string]string{"FilterPolicy": string(filterBytes)}
 }
 output, err := actor.SnsClient.Subscribe(ctx, &sns.SubscribeInput{
  Protocol:              aws.String("sqs"),
  TopicArn:              aws.String(topicArn),
  Attributes:            attributes,
  Endpoint:              aws.String(queueArn),
```

```
  ReturnSubscriptionArn: true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't susbscribe queue %v to topic %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   queueArn, topicArn, err)
 } else {
  subscriptionArn = *output.SubscriptionArn
 }

 return subscriptionArn, err
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
```

```
 */
public class SubscribeEmail {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:     <topicArn> <email>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   email - The email address to use.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String email = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        subEmail(snsClient, topicArn, email);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void subEmail(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
 email) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("email")
                    .endpoint(email)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + result.subscriptionArn() +
 "\n\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

Subscribe an HTTP endpoint to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SubscribeHTTPS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn> <url>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   url - The HTTPS endpoint that you want to receive
 notifications.
                """;

        if (args.length < 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String url = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        subHTTPS(snsClient, topicArn, url);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void subHTTPS(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String url)
 {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("https")
                    .endpoint(url)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN is " + result.subscriptionArn()
 + "\n\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SubscribeLambda {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn> <lambdaArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   lambdaArn - The ARN of an AWS Lambda function.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String lambdaArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String arnValue = subLambda(snsClient, topicArn, lambdaArn);
        System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + arnValue);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static String subLambda(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
 lambdaArn) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("lambda")
                    .endpoint(lambdaArn)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            return result.subscriptionArn();
```

```
        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { SubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic for which you wish to confirm
 a subscription.
```

```
 * @param {string} emailAddress - The email address that is subscribed to the
 topic.
 */
export const subscribeEmail = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  emailAddress = "usern@me.com",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SubscribeCommand({
      Protocol: "email",
      TopicArn: topicArn,
      Endpoint: emailAddress,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'c8e35bcd-b3c0-5940-9f66-06f6fcc108f0',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'pending confirmation'
  // }
};
```

Subscribe a mobile application to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic the subscriber is subscribing
 to.
 * @param {string} endpoint - The Endpoint ARN of an application. This endpoint
 is created
 *                            when an application registers for notifications.
 */
export const subscribeApp = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
```

```
  endpoint = "ENDPOINT",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SubscribeCommand({
      Protocol: "application",
      TopicArn: topicArn,
      Endpoint: endpoint,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'c8e35bcd-b3c0-5940-9f66-06f6fcc108f0',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'pending confirmation'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic the subscriber is subscribing
 to.
 * @param {string} endpoint - The Endpoint ARN of and AWS Lambda function.
 */
export const subscribeLambda = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  endpoint = "ENDPOINT",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SubscribeCommand({
      Protocol: "lambda",
      TopicArn: topicArn,
```

```
      Endpoint: endpoint,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'c8e35bcd-b3c0-5940-9f66-06f6fcc108f0',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'pending confirmation'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Subscribe an SQS queue to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand, SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

const client = new SNSClient({});

export const subscribeQueue = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  queueArn = "QUEUE_ARN",
) => {
  const command = new SubscribeCommand({
    TopicArn: topicArn,
    Protocol: "sqs",
    Endpoint: queueArn,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '931e13d9-5e2b-543f-8781-4e9e494c5ff2',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
```

```
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:subscribe-queue-
test-430895:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Subscribe with a filter to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand, SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

const client = new SNSClient({});

export const subscribeQueueFiltered = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  queueArn = "QUEUE_ARN",
) => {
  const command = new SubscribeCommand({
    TopicArn: topicArn,
    Protocol: "sqs",
    Endpoint: queueArn,
    Attributes: {
      // This subscription will only receive messages with the 'event' attribute
 set to 'order_placed'.
      FilterPolicyScope: "MessageAttributes",
      FilterPolicy: JSON.stringify({
        event: ["order_placed"],
      }),
    },
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '931e13d9-5e2b-543f-8781-4e9e494c5ff2',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
```

```
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:subscribe-queue-
test-430895:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
suspend fun subEmail(
    topicArnVal: String,
    email: String,
): String {
    val request =
        SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "email"
            endpoint = email
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
        return result.subscriptionArn.toString()
    }
}
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
suspend fun subLambda(
    topicArnVal: String?,
    lambdaArn: String?,
) {
    val request =
        SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "lambda"
            endpoint = lambdaArn
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
        println(" The subscription Arn is ${result.subscriptionArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;
```

```
/**
 * Prepares to subscribe an endpoint by sending the endpoint a confirmation
 message.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$protocol = 'email';
$endpoint = 'sample@example.com';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->subscribe([
        'Protocol' => $protocol,
        'Endpoint' => $endpoint,
        'ReturnSubscriptionArn' => true,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

Subscribe an HTTP endpoint to a topic.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;
```

```
/**
 * Prepares to subscribe an endpoint by sending the endpoint a confirmation
 message.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$protocol = 'https';
$endpoint = 'https://';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->subscribe([
        'Protocol' => $protocol,
        'Endpoint' => $endpoint,
        'ReturnSubscriptionArn' => true,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def subscribe(topic, protocol, endpoint):
        """
        Subscribes an endpoint to the topic. Some endpoint types, such as email,
        must be confirmed before their subscriptions are active. When a
 subscription
        is not confirmed, its Amazon Resource Number (ARN) is set to
        'PendingConfirmation'.

        :param topic: The topic to subscribe to.
        :param protocol: The protocol of the endpoint, such as 'sms' or 'email'.
        :param endpoint: The endpoint that receives messages, such as a phone
 number
                         (in E.164 format) for SMS messages, or an email address
 for
                         email messages.
        :return: The newly added subscription.
        """
        try:
            subscription = topic.subscribe(
                Protocol=protocol, Endpoint=endpoint, ReturnSubscriptionArn=True
```

```
            )
            logger.info("Subscribed %s %s to topic %s.", protocol, endpoint,
 topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't subscribe %s %s to topic %s.", protocol, endpoint,
 topic.arn
            )
            raise
        else:
            return subscription
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sns'
require 'logger'

# Represents a service for creating subscriptions in Amazon Simple Notification
 Service (SNS)
class SubscriptionService
  # Initializes the SubscriptionService with an SNS client
  #
  # @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] The SNS client
  def initialize(sns_client)
    @sns_client = sns_client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end
```

```
  # Attempts to create a subscription to a topic
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param protocol [String] The subscription protocol (e.g., email)
  # @param endpoint [String] The endpoint that receives the notifications (email
 address)
  # @return [Boolean] true if subscription was successfully created, false
 otherwise
  def create_subscription(topic_arn, protocol, endpoint)
    @sns_client.subscribe(topic_arn: topic_arn, protocol: protocol, endpoint:
 endpoint)
    @logger.info('Subscription created successfully.')
    true
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error while creating the subscription: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end

# Main execution if the script is run directly
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  protocol = 'email'
  endpoint = 'EMAIL_ADDRESS' # Should be replaced with a real email address
  topic_arn = 'TOPIC_ARN'    # Should be replaced with a real topic ARN

  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  subscription_service = SubscriptionService.new(sns_client)

  @logger.info('Creating the subscription.')
  unless subscription_service.create_subscription(topic_arn, protocol, endpoint)
    @logger.error('Subscription creation failed. Stopping program.')
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
async fn subscribe_and_publish(
    client: &Client,
    topic_arn: &str,
    email_address: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    println!("Receiving on topic with ARN: `{}`", topic_arn);

    let rsp = client
        .subscribe()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .protocol("email")
        .endpoint(email_address)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Added a subscription: {:?}", rsp);

    let rsp = client
        .publish()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .message("hello sns!")
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Published message: {:?}", rsp);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sns->subscribe(                       "oo_result is
returned for testing purposes."
               iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn
               iv_protocol = 'email'
               iv_endpoint = iv_email_address
               iv_returnsubscriptionarn = abap_true ).
       MESSAGE 'Email address subscribed to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
       MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snssubscriptionlmte00.
       MESSAGE 'Unable to create subscriptions. You have reached the maximum
number of subscriptions allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                endpoint: email,
                protocol: "email",
                returnSubscriptionArn: true,
                topicArn: arn
            )
        )

        guard let subscriptionArn = output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("No subscription ARN received from Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }

        print("Subscription \(subscriptionArn) created.")
```

Subscribe a phone number to a topic to receive notifications by SMS.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                endpoint: phone,
                protocol: "sms",
                returnSubscriptionArn: true,
                topicArn: arn
            )
        )

        guard let subscriptionArn = output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("No subscription ARN received from Amazon SNS.")
            return
```

```
        }

        print("Subscription \(subscriptionArn) created.")
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `TagResource` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TagResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a tag to a topic

The following `tag-resource` example adds a metadata tag to the specified Amazon SNS topic.

```
aws sns tag-resource \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:MyTopic \
    --tags Key=Team,Value=Alpha
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.Tag;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.TagResourceRequest;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class AddTags {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to which tags are added.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        addTopicTags(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void addTopicTags(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            Tag tag = Tag.builder()
                    .key("Team")
                    .value("Development")
```

```
                .build();

            Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
                    .key("Environment")
                    .value("Gamma")
                    .build();

            List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
            tagList.add(tag);
            tagList.add(tag2);

            TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(topicArn)
                    .tags(tagList)
                    .build();

            snsClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);
            System.out.println("Tags have been added to " + topicArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addTopicTags(topicArn: String) {
    val tag =
        Tag {
```

```
            key = "Team"
            value = "Development"
        }

    val tag2 =
        Tag {
            key = "Environment"
            value = "Gamma"
        }

    val tagList = mutableListOf<Tag>()
    tagList.add(tag)
    tagList.add(tag2)

    val request =
        TagResourceRequest {
            resourceArn = topicArn
            tags = tagList
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.tagResource(request)
        println("Tags have been added to $topicArn")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `Unsubscribe` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `Unsubscribe`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.

```
/// <summary>
/// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
{
    var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
        new UnsubscribeRequest()
        {
            SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
        });
    return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete a subscription to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic.
/*!
  \param subscriptionARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic
 subscription.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::unsubscribe(const Aws::String &subscriptionARN,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetSubscriptionArn(subscriptionARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Unsubscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Unsubscribed successfully " << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while unsubscribing " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To unsubscribe from a topic

The following `unsubscribe` example deletes the specified subscription from a topic.

```
aws sns unsubscribe \
    --subscription-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:0123456789012:my-
topic:8a21d249-4329-4871-acc6-7be709c6ea7f
```

This command produces no output.

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class Unsubscribe {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <subscriptionArn>

                Where:
                   subscriptionArn - The ARN of the subscription to delete.
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length < 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subscriptionArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        unSub(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void unSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            UnsubscribeRequest request = UnsubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
                    .build();

            UnsubscribeResponse result = snsClient.unsubscribe(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
                    + "\n\nSubscription was removed for " +
 request.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave
 it blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { UnsubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} subscriptionArn - The ARN of the subscription to cancel.
 */
const unsubscribe = async (
  subscriptionArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:mytopic:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-
xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new UnsubscribeCommand({
      SubscriptionArn: subscriptionArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '0178259a-9204-507c-b620-78a7570a44c6',
```

```
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun unSub(subscriptionArnVal: String) {
    val request =
        UnsubscribeRequest {
            subscriptionArn = subscriptionArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.unsubscribe(request)
        println("Subscription was removed for ${request.subscriptionArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Deletes a subscription to an Amazon SNS topic.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$subscription = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MySubscription';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->unsubscribe([
        'SubscriptionArn' => $subscription,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_subscription(subscription):
        """
        Unsubscribes and deletes a subscription.
        """
        try:
            subscription.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted subscription %s.", subscription.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete subscription %s.",
 subscription.arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_sns->unsubscribe( iv_subscriptionarn = iv_subscription_arn ).
       MESSAGE 'Subscription deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
       MESSAGE 'Subscription does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snsinvalidparameterex.
       MESSAGE 'Subscription with "PendingConfirmation" status cannot be
deleted/unsubscribed. Confirm subscription before performing unsubscribe
operation.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
```

```
            input: UnsubscribeInput(
                subscriptionArn: arn
            )
        )

        print("Unsubscribed.")
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon SNS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon SNS with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon SNS or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build an application to submit data to a DynamoDB table
- Build a publish and subscription application that translates messages
- Create a platform endpoint for Amazon SNS push notifications using an AWS SDK
- Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels
- Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
- Create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK
- Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Publish SMS messages to an Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK
- Publish a large message to Amazon SNS with Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK
- Publish an Amazon SNS SMS text message using an AWS SDK
- Publish Amazon SNS messages to Amazon SQS queues using an AWS SDK
- Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function
- Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

Build an application to submit data to a DynamoDB table

The following code examples show how to build an application that submits data to an Amazon DynamoDB table and notifies you when a user updates the table.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a dynamic web application that submits data using the Amazon DynamoDB Java API and sends a text message using the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example shows how to build an app that enables users to submit data to an Amazon DynamoDB table, and send a text message to the administrator using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

Build a publish and subscription application that translates messages

The following code examples show how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service .NET API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run the example that uses the Java Async API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SNS Kotlin API to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a web app, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a native Android app, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create a platform endpoint for Amazon SNS push notifications using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create a platform endpoint for Amazon SNS push notifications.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a platform application endpoint

The following `create-platform-endpoint` example creates an endpoint for the specified platform application using the specified token.

```
aws sns create-platform-endpoint \
    --platform-application-arn arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:app/GCM/
MyApplication \
    --token EXAMPLE12345...
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
      "EndpointArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:1234567890:endpoint/GCM/
MyApplication/12345678-abcd-9012-efgh-345678901234"
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreatePlatformEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreatePlatformEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * In addition, create a platform application using the AWS Management Console.
 * See this doc topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/mobile-push-send-register.html
 *
 * Without the values created by following the previous link, this code examples
 * does not work.
 */

public class RegistrationExample {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
            Usage:     <token> <platformApplicationArn>

            Where:
               token - The device token or registration ID of the mobile device.
This is a unique
               identifier provided by the device platform (e.g., Apple Push
Notification Service (APNS) for iOS devices, Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM)
               for Android devices) when the mobile app is registered to receive
push notifications.

               platformApplicationArn - The ARN value of platform application.
You can get this value from the AWS Management Console.\s

            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String token = args[0];
        String platformApplicationArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        createEndpoint(snsClient, token, platformApplicationArn);
    }
    public static void createEndpoint(SnsClient snsClient, String token, String
platformApplicationArn) {
        System.out.println("Creating platform endpoint with token " + token);
        try {
            CreatePlatformEndpointRequest endpointRequest =
CreatePlatformEndpointRequest.builder()
                .token(token)
                .platformApplicationArn(platformApplicationArn)
                .build();

            CreatePlatformEndpointResponse response =
snsClient.createPlatformEndpoint(endpointRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the endpoint is " +
response.endpointArn());
```

```
        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

Create a photo asset management application that lets users manage photos using labels

The following code examples show how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

C++

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SNS

PHP

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Rust

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code examples show how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example

- creates an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, two Amazon SQS FIFO queues, and one Standard queue.
- subscribes the queues to the topic and publishes a message to the topic.

The test verifies the receipt of the message to each queue. The complete example also shows the addition of access policies and deletes the resources at the end.

```
public class PriceUpdateExample {
    public final static SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.create();
    public final static SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage: " +
            "    <topicName> <wholesaleQueueFifoName> <retailQueueFifoName>
 <analyticsQueueName>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "   fifoTopicName - The name of the FIFO topic that you want to
 create. \n\n" +
            "   wholesaleQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will be
 created for the wholesale consumer. \n\n"
            +
            "   retailQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will created
 for the retail consumer. \n\n" +
            "   analyticsQueueARN - The name of a SQS standard queue that will be
 created for the analytics consumer. \n\n";
        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String fifoTopicName = args[0];
        final String wholeSaleQueueName = args[1];
        final String retailQueueName = args[2];
        final String analyticsQueueName = args[3];

        // For convenience, the QueueData class holds metadata about a queue:
 ARN, URL,
        // name and type.
        List<QueueData> queues = List.of(
            new QueueData(wholeSaleQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(retailQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(analyticsQueueName, QueueType.Standard));

        // Create queues.
        createQueues(queues);
```

```
        // Create a topic.
        String topicARN = createFIFOTopic(fifoTopicName);

        // Subscribe each queue to the topic.
        subscribeQueues(queues, topicARN);

        // Allow the newly created topic to send messages to the queues.
        addAccessPolicyToQueuesFINAL(queues, topicARN);

        // Publish a sample price update message with payload.
        publishPriceUpdate(topicARN, "{\"product\": 214, \"price\": 79.99}",
"Consumables");

        // Clean up resources.
        deleteSubscriptions(queues);
        deleteQueues(queues);
        deleteTopic(topicARN);
    }

    public static String createFIFOTopic(String topicName) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = Map.of(
                "FifoTopic", "true",
                "ContentBasedDeduplication", "false",
                "FifoThroughputScope", "MessageGroup");

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            String topicArn = response.topicArn();
            System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + topicArn);

            return topicArn;

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
```

```
    }

    public static void subscribeQueues(List<QueueData> queues, String topicARN) {
        queues.forEach(queue -> {
            SubscribeRequest subscribeRequest = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicARN)
                .endpoint(queue.queueARN)
                .protocol("sqs")
                .build();

            // Subscribe to the endpoint by using the SNS service client.
            // Only Amazon SQS queues can receive notifications from an Amazon
SNS FIFO
            // topic.
            SubscribeResponse subscribeResponse =
snsClient.subscribe(subscribeRequest);
            System.out.println("The queue [" + queue.queueARN + "] subscribed to
the topic [" + topicARN + "]");
            queue.subscriptionARN = subscribeResponse.subscriptionArn();
        });
    }

    public static void publishPriceUpdate(String topicArn, String payload, String
groupId) {

        try {
            // Create and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.
            String subject = "Price Update";
            String dedupId = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
            String attributeName = "business";
            String attributeValue = "wholesale";

            MessageAttributeValue msgAttValue = MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                .dataType("String")
                .stringValue(attributeValue)
                .build();

            Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes = new HashMap<>();
            attributes.put(attributeName, msgAttValue);
            PublishRequest pubRequest = PublishRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .subject(subject)
                .message(payload)
                .messageGroupId(groupId)
```

```
                .messageDeduplicationId(dedupId)
                .messageAttributes(attributes)
                .build();

            final PublishResponse response = snsClient.publish(pubRequest);
            System.out.println(response.messageId());
            System.out.println(response.sequenceNumber());
            System.out.println("Message was published to " + topicArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, subscribe Amazon SQS FIFO and standard queues to the topic, and publish a message to the topic.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to subscribe queues to a FIFO topic."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the `Subscribe queues to a FIFO topic` demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    sns = boto3.resource("sns")
    sqs = boto3.resource("sqs")
    fifo_topic_wrapper = FifoTopicWrapper(sns)
    sns_wrapper = SnsWrapper(sns)

    prefix = "sqs-subscribe-demo-"
    queues = set()
    subscriptions = set()

    wholesale_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "wholesale.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(wholesale_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {wholesale_queue.url}.")

    retail_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "retail.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(retail_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {retail_queue.url}.")

    analytics_queue = sqs.create_queue(QueueName=prefix + "analytics",
Attributes={})
    queues.add(analytics_queue)
    print(f"Created standard queue with URL: {analytics_queue.url}.")

    topic = fifo_topic_wrapper.create_fifo_topic("price-updates-topic.fifo")
    print(f"Created FIFO topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
```

```
        fifo_topic_wrapper.add_access_policy(q, topic.attributes["TopicArn"])

    print(f"Added access policies for topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
        sub = fifo_topic_wrapper.subscribe_queue_to_topic(
            topic, q.attributes["QueueArn"]
        )
        subscriptions.add(sub)

    print(f"Subscribed queues to topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    input("Press Enter to publish a message to the topic.")

    message_id = fifo_topic_wrapper.publish_price_update(
        topic, '{"product": 214, "price": 79.99}', "Consumables"
    )

    print(f"Published price update with message ID: {message_id}.")

    # Clean up the subscriptions, queues, and topic.
    input("Press Enter to clean up resources.")
    for s in subscriptions:
        sns_wrapper.delete_subscription(s)

    sns_wrapper.delete_topic(topic)

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.delete_queue(q)

    print(f"Deleted subscriptions, queues, and topic.")

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)



class FifoTopicWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS FIFO topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
```

```
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource

    def create_fifo_topic(self, topic_name):
        """
        Create a FIFO topic.
        Topic names must be made up of only uppercase and lowercase ASCII
letters,
        numbers, underscores, and hyphens, and must be between 1 and 256
characters long.
        For a FIFO topic, the name must end with the .fifo suffix.

        :param topic_name: The name for the topic.
        :return: The new topic.
        """
        try:
            topic = self.sns_resource.create_topic(
                Name=topic_name,
                Attributes={
                    "FifoTopic": str(True),
                    "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(False),
                    "FifoThroughputScope": "MessageGroup",
                },
            )
            logger.info("Created FIFO topic with name=%s.", topic_name)
            return topic
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create topic with name=%s!", topic_name)
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def add_access_policy(queue, topic_arn):
        """
        Add the necessary access policy to a queue, so
        it can receive messages from a topic.

        :param queue: The queue resource.
        :param topic_arn: The ARN of the topic.
        :return: None.
        """
        try:
            queue.set_attributes(
                Attributes={
                    "Policy": json.dumps(
```

```
                        {
                            "Version": "2012-10-17",
                            "Statement": [
                                {
                                    "Sid": "test-sid",
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {"AWS": "*"},
                                    "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": queue.attributes["QueueArn"],
                                    "Condition": {
                                        "ArnLike": {"aws:SourceArn": topic_arn}
                                    },
                                }
                            ],
                        }
                    )
                }
            )
            logger.info("Added trust policy to the queue.")
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add trust policy to the queue!")
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def subscribe_queue_to_topic(topic, queue_arn):
        """
        Subscribe a queue to a topic.

        :param topic: The topic resource.
        :param queue_arn: The ARN of the queue.
        :return: The subscription resource.
        """
        try:
            subscription = topic.subscribe(
                Protocol="sqs",
                Endpoint=queue_arn,
            )
            logger.info("The queue is subscribed to the topic.")
            return subscription
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't subscribe queue to topic!")
            raise error
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def publish_price_update(topic, payload, group_id):
        """
        Compose and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param payload: The message to publish.
        :param group_id: The group ID for the message.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            att_dict = {"business": {"DataType": "String", "StringValue":
 "wholesale"}}
            dedup_id = uuid.uuid4()
            response = topic.publish(
                Subject="Price Update",
                Message=payload,
                MessageAttributes=att_dict,
                MessageGroupId=group_id,
                MessageDeduplicationId=str(dedup_id),
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise error
        return message_id


    @staticmethod
    def delete_queue(queue):
        """
        Removes an SQS queue. When run against an AWS account, it can take up to
        60 seconds before the queue is actually deleted.

        :param queue: The queue to delete.
        :return: None
        """
        try:
            queue.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted queue with URL=%s.", queue.url)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete queue with URL=%s!", queue.url)
```

```
            raise error
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a FIFO topic, subscribe an Amazon SQS FIFO queue to the topic, and publish a message to an Amazon SNS topic.

```
    " Creates a FIFO topic. "
    DATA lt_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>tt_topicattributesmap.
    DATA ls_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>ts_topicattributesmap_maprow.
    ls_tpc_attributes-key = 'FifoTopic'.
    ls_tpc_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snstopicattrsmap_w( iv_value =
 'true' ).
    INSERT ls_tpc_attributes INTO TABLE lt_tpc_attributes.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_create_result) = lo_sns->createtopic(
               iv_name = iv_topic_name
               it_attributes = lt_tpc_attributes ).
        DATA(lv_topic_arn) = lo_create_result->get_topicarn( ).
```

```
        ov_topic_arn = lv_topic_arn.                                        "
 ov_topic_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'FIFO topic created' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snstopiclimitexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create more topics. You have reached the maximum
 number of topics allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Subscribes an endpoint to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon
 SNS) topic. "
    " Only Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) FIFO queues can be subscribed
 to an SNS FIFO topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_subscribe_result) = lo_sns->subscribe(
               iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
               iv_protocol = 'sqs'
               iv_endpoint = iv_queue_arn ).
        DATA(lv_subscription_arn) = lo_subscribe_result->get_subscriptionarn( ).
        ov_subscription_arn = lv_subscription_arn.                          "
 ov_subscription_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue was subscribed to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snssubscriptionlmte00.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create subscriptions. You have reached the maximum
 number of subscriptions allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Publish message to SNS topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA lt_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>tt_messageattributemap.
        DATA ls_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>ts_messageattributemap_maprow.
        ls_msg_attributes-key = 'Importance'.
        ls_msg_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snsmessageattrvalue( iv_datatype =
 'String'

 iv_stringvalue = 'High' ).
        INSERT ls_msg_attributes INTO TABLE lt_msg_attributes.

        DATA(lo_result) = lo_sns->publish(
             iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
```

```
            iv_message = 'The price of your mobile plan has been increased from
$19 to $23'
            iv_subject = 'Changes to mobile plan'
            iv_messagegroupid = 'Update-2'
            iv_messagededuplicationid = 'Update-2.1'
            it_messageattributes = lt_msg_attributes ).
       ov_message_id = lo_result->get_messageid( ).                    "
ov_message_id is returned for testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'Message was published to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
       MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Publish SMS messages to an Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon SNS topic.
- Subscribe phone numbers to the topic.
- Publish SMS messages to the topic so that all subscribed phone numbers receive the message at once.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a topic and return its ARN.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class CreateTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicName>

                Where:
                   topicName - The name of the topic to create (for example,
 mytopic).

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String topicName = args[0];
        System.out.println("Creating a topic with name: " + topicName);
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String arnVal = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
        System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + arnVal);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                    .name(topicName)
                    .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Subscribe an endpoint to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SubscribeTextSMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn> <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   phoneNumber - A mobile phone number that receives
 notifications (for example, +1XXX5550100).
                """;

        if (args.length < 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        subTextSNS(snsClient, topicArn, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void subTextSNS(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
 phoneNumber) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("sms")
                    .endpoint(phoneNumber)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
```

```
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + result.subscriptionArn() +
 "\n\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Set attributes on the message, such as the ID of the sender, the maximum price, and its type. Message attributes are optional.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SetSMSAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        HashMap<String, String> attributes = new HashMap<>(1);
        attributes.put("DefaultSMSType", "Transactional");
        attributes.put("UsageReportS3Bucket", "janbucket");

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        setSNSAttributes(snsClient, attributes);
        snsClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void setSNSAttributes(SnsClient snsClient, HashMap<String,
 String> attributes) {
        try {
            SetSmsAttributesRequest request = SetSmsAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .attributes(attributes)
                    .build();

            SetSmsAttributesResponse result =
 snsClient.setSMSAttributes(request);
            System.out.println("Set default Attributes to " + attributes + ".
 Status was "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Publish a message to a topic. The message is sent to every subscriber.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PublishTextSMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:    <message> <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   message - The message text to send.
                   phoneNumber - The mobile phone number to which a message is
 sent (for example, +1XXX5550100).\s
                """;

       if (args.length != 2) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String message = args[0];
       String phoneNumber = args[1];
       SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();
       pubTextSMS(snsClient, message, phoneNumber);
       snsClient.close();
   }

   public static void pubTextSMS(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
 phoneNumber) {
       try {
           PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                   .message(message)
                   .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                   .build();

           PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
           System.out
                   .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

       } catch (SnsException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
}
```

Publish a large message to Amazon SNS with Amazon S3 using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to publish a large message to Amazon SNS using Amazon S3 to store the message payload.

Java

SDK for Java 1.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

To publish a large message, use the Amazon SNS Extended Client Library for Java. The message that you send references an Amazon S3 object containing the actual message content.

```
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSExtendedClient;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ExtendedClientConfiguration;
import com.amazonaws.regions.Region;
import com.amazonaws.regions.Regions;
import com.amazonaws.services.s3.AmazonS3;
import com.amazonaws.services.s3.AmazonS3ClientBuilder;
import com.amazonaws.services.sns.AmazonSNS;
import com.amazonaws.services.sns.AmazonSNSClientBuilder;
import com.amazonaws.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.sns.util.Topics;
import com.amazonaws.services.sqs.AmazonSQS;
import com.amazonaws.services.sqs.AmazonSQSClientBuilder;
import com.amazonaws.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import com.amazonaws.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResult;
import software.amazon.sns.AmazonSNSExtendedClient;
import software.amazon.sns.SNSExtendedClientConfiguration;

public class Example {

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String BUCKET_NAME = "extended-client-bucket";
```

```
                final String TOPIC_NAME = "extended-client-topic";
                final String QUEUE_NAME = "extended-client-queue";
                final Regions region = Regions.DEFAULT_REGION;

                // Message threshold controls the maximum message size that will
be allowed to
                // be published
                // through SNS using the extended client. Payload of messages
exceeding this
                // value will be stored in
                // S3. The default value of this parameter is 256 KB which is the
maximum
                // message size in SNS (and SQS).
                final int EXTENDED_STORAGE_MESSAGE_SIZE_THRESHOLD = 32;

                // Initialize SNS, SQS and S3 clients
                final AmazonSNS snsClient =
AmazonSNSClientBuilder.standard().withRegion(region).build();
                final AmazonSQS sqsClient =
AmazonSQSClientBuilder.standard().withRegion(region).build();
                final AmazonS3 s3Client =
AmazonS3ClientBuilder.standard().withRegion(region).build();

                // Create bucket, topic, queue and subscription
                s3Client.createBucket(BUCKET_NAME);
                final String topicArn = snsClient.createTopic(
                                new
CreateTopicRequest().withName(TOPIC_NAME)).getTopicArn();
                final String queueUrl = sqsClient.createQueue(
                                new
CreateQueueRequest().withQueueName(QUEUE_NAME)).getQueueUrl();
                final String subscriptionArn = Topics.subscribeQueue(
                                snsClient, sqsClient, topicArn, queueUrl);

                // To read message content stored in S3 transparently through SQS
extended
                // client,
                // set the RawMessageDelivery subscription attribute to TRUE
                final SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest
subscriptionAttributesRequest = new SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest();

subscriptionAttributesRequest.setSubscriptionArn(subscriptionArn);

subscriptionAttributesRequest.setAttributeName("RawMessageDelivery");
```

```
                subscriptionAttributesRequest.setAttributeValue("TRUE");

 snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(subscriptionAttributesRequest);

                // Initialize SNS extended client
                // PayloadSizeThreshold triggers message content storage in S3
 when the
                // threshold is exceeded
                // To store all messages content in S3, use AlwaysThroughS3 flag
                final SNSExtendedClientConfiguration
 snsExtendedClientConfiguration = new SNSExtendedClientConfiguration()
                                .withPayloadSupportEnabled(s3Client, BUCKET_NAME)

 .withPayloadSizeThreshold(EXTENDED_STORAGE_MESSAGE_SIZE_THRESHOLD);
                final AmazonSNSExtendedClient snsExtendedClient = new
 AmazonSNSExtendedClient(snsClient,
                                snsExtendedClientConfiguration);

                // Publish message via SNS with storage in S3
                final String message = "This message is stored in S3 as it
 exceeds the threshold of 32 bytes set above.";
                snsExtendedClient.publish(topicArn, message);

                // Initialize SQS extended client
                final ExtendedClientConfiguration sqsExtendedClientConfiguration
 = new ExtendedClientConfiguration()
                                .withPayloadSupportEnabled(s3Client,
 BUCKET_NAME);
                final AmazonSQSExtendedClient sqsExtendedClient = new
 AmazonSQSExtendedClient(sqsClient,
                                sqsExtendedClientConfiguration);

                // Read the message from the queue
                final ReceiveMessageResult result =
 sqsExtendedClient.receiveMessage(queueUrl);
                System.out.println("Received message is " +
 result.getMessages().get(0).getBody());
        }
}
```

Publish an Amazon SNS SMS text message using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace SNSMessageExample
{
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    public class SNSMessage
    {
        private AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient snsClient;

        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="SNSMessage"/> class.
        /// Constructs a new SNSMessage object initializing the Amazon Simple
        /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) client using the supplied
        /// Region endpoint.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="regionEndpoint">The Amazon Region endpoint to use in
        /// sending test messages with this object.</param>
        public SNSMessage(RegionEndpoint regionEndpoint)
        {
            snsClient = new
 AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient(regionEndpoint);
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Sends the SMS message passed in the text parameter to the phone
 number
        /// in phoneNum.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="phoneNum">The ten-digit phone number to which the text
        /// message will be sent.</param>
        /// <param name="text">The text of the message to send.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public async Task SendTextMessageAsync(string phoneNum, string text)
        {
            if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(phoneNum) || string.IsNullOrEmpty(text))
            {
                return;
            }

            // Now actually send the message.
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                Message = text,
                PhoneNumber = phoneNum,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await snsClient.PublishAsync(request);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error sending message: {ex}");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Publish SMS: use Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send an
 SMS text message to a phone number.
 * Note: This requires additional AWS configuration prior to running example.
 *
 *  NOTE: When you start using Amazon SNS to send SMS messages, your AWS account
 is in the SMS sandbox and you can only
 *  use verified destination phone numbers. See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/
latest/dg/sns-sms-sandbox.html.
 *  NOTE: If destination is in the US, you also have an additional restriction
 that you have use a dedicated
 *  origination ID (phone number). You can request an origination number using
 Amazon Pinpoint for a fee.
 *  See https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/compute/provisioning-and-using-10dlc-
origination-numbers-with-amazon-sns/
 *  for more information.
 *
 *  <phone_number_value> input parameter uses E.164 format.
 *  For example, in United States, this input value should be of the form:
 +12223334444
 */

//! Send an SMS text message to a phone number.
/*!
  \param message: The message to publish.
  \param phoneNumber: The phone number of the recipient in E.164 format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::publishSms(const Aws::String &message,
                             const Aws::String &phoneNumber,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
    request.SetMessage(message);
    request.SetPhoneNumber(phoneNumber);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Message published successfully with message id, '"
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId() << "'."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while publishing message "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class PublishTextSMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <message> <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   message - The message text to send.
                   phoneNumber - The mobile phone number to which a message is
 sent (for example, +1XXX5550100).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String message = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        pubTextSMS(snsClient, message, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void pubTextSMS(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
 phoneNumber) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                    .message(message)
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .build();
```

```
            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                    .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun pubTextSMS(
    messageVal: String?,
    phoneNumberVal: String?,
) {
    val request =
        PublishRequest {
            message = messageVal
            phoneNumber = phoneNumberVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Sends a text message (SMS message) directly to a phone number using Amazon
 SNS.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/
guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$message = 'This message is sent from a Amazon SNS code sample.';
$phone = '+1XXX5550100';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->publish([
        'Message' => $message,
        'PhoneNumber' => $phone,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
```

```
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def publish_text_message(self, phone_number, message):
        """
        Publishes a text message directly to a phone number without need for a
        subscription.

        :param phone_number: The phone number that receives the message. This
 must be
                             in E.164 format. For example, a United States phone
                             number might be +12065550101.
        :param message: The message to send.
        :return: The ID of the message.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.sns_resource.meta.client.publish(
                PhoneNumber=phone_number, Message=message
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published message to %s.", phone_number)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to %s.", phone_number)
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish Amazon SNS messages to Amazon SQS queues using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Console application to run a feature scenario for topics and queues.
```

```
/// </summary>
public static class TopicsAndQueues
{
    private static bool _useFifoTopic = false;
    private static bool _useContentBasedDeduplication = false;
    private static string _topicName = null!;
    private static string _topicArn = null!;

    private static readonly int _queueCount = 2;
    private static readonly string[] _queueUrls = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _subscriptionArns = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _tones = { "cheerful", "funny", "serious",
 "sincere" };
    public static SNSWrapper SnsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static SQSWrapper SqsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static bool UseConsole { get; set; } = true;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
                    .AddTransient<SNSWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SQSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        PrintDescription();

        await RunScenario();

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        SnsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SNSWrapper>();
        SqsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SQSWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run the scenario for working with topics and queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> RunScenario()
    {
        try
        {
            await SetupTopic();

            await SetupQueues();

            await PublishMessages();

            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                var messages = await PollForMessages(queueUrl);
                if (messages.Any())
                {
                    await DeleteMessages(queueUrl, messages);
                }
            }
            await CleanupResources();

            Console.WriteLine("Messaging with topics and queues scenario is
complete.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Print a description for the tasks in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static void PrintDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
 subscribe {_queueCount} SQS queues to the topic." +
                          $"\r\nYou can select from several options for
 configuring the topic and the subscriptions for the 2 queues." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the
 results in the queues.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SNS topic to be used with the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out)." +
                          $"\r\nFIFO topics deliver messages in order and support
 deduplication and message filtering." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the
 results in the queues.\r\n");

        _useFifoTopic = GetYesNoResponse("Would you like to work with FIFO
 topics?");

        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            _topicName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for your SNS topic: ",
 "example-topic");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended
 to the topic name.\r\n");

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"Because you have chosen a FIFO topic,
 deduplication is supported." +
                              $"\r\nDeduplication IDs are either set in the
 message or automatically generated " +
                              $"\r\nfrom content using a hash function.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nIf a message is successfully published to an
 SNS FIFO topic, any message " +
                              $"\r\npublished and determined to have the same
 deduplication ID, " +
                              $"\r\nwithin the five-minute deduplication
 interval, is accepted but not delivered.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nFor more information about deduplication, " +
                              $"\r\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/
dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            _useContentBasedDeduplication = GetYesNoResponse("Use content-based
 deduplication instead of entering a deduplication ID?");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }

        _topicArn = await SnsWrapper.CreateTopicWithName(_topicName,
 _useFifoTopic, _useContentBasedDeduplication);

        Console.WriteLine($"Your new topic with the name {_topicName}" +
                          $"\r\nand Amazon Resource Name (ARN) {_topicArn}" +
                          $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return _topicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task SetupQueues()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Now you will create {_queueCount} Amazon Simple Queue
Service (Amazon SQS) queues to subscribe to the topic.");

        // Repeat this section for each queue.
        for (int i = 0; i < _queueCount; i++)
        {
            var queueName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for an Amazon SQS
queue: ", $"example-queue-{i}");
            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                // Only explain this once.
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the queue name.");
                }

                var queueUrl = await SqsWrapper.CreateQueueWithName(queueName,
_useFifoTopic);

                _queueUrls[i] = queueUrl;

                Console.WriteLine($"Your new queue with the name {queueName}" +
                                  $"\r\nand queue URL {queueUrl}" +
                                  $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN,\r\n" +
                        $"which is used to create a subscription.");
                    Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                }

                var queueArn = await SqsWrapper.GetQueueArnByUrl(queueUrl);

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy must
be attached to an SQS queue, enabling it to receive\r\n" +
                        $"messages from an SNS topic");
                }
```

```
                await SqsWrapper.SetQueuePolicyForTopic(queueArn, _topicArn,
 queueUrl);

                await SetupFilters(i, queueArn, queueName);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up filters with user options for a queue.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueCount">The number of this queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupFilters(int queueCount, string queueArn, string
 queueName)
    {
        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            // Only explain this once.
            if (queueCount == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters." +
                    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the
 filtered messages " +
                    "will be received in the queue.");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For information about message filtering, " +
                    "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a" +
                    "TONE attribute.");
            }
```

```
            var useFilter = GetYesNoResponse($"Filter messages for {queueName}'s
subscription to the topic?");

            string? filterPolicy = null;
            if (useFilter)
            {
                filterPolicy = CreateFilterPolicy();
            }
            var subscriptionArn = await
SnsWrapper.SubscribeTopicWithFilter(_topicArn, filterPolicy,
                queueArn);
            _subscriptionArns[queueCount] = subscriptionArn;

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"The queue {queueName} has been subscribed to the topic
{_topicName} " +
                $"with the subscription ARN {subscriptionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use user input to create a filter policy for a subscription.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The serialized filter policy.</returns>
    public static string CreateFilterPolicy()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"You can filter messages by one or more of the following" +
            $"TONE attributes.");

        List<string> filterSelections = new List<string>();

        var selectionNumber = 0;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Enter a number to add a TONE filter, or enter 0 to stop adding
filters.");
            for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
            }
```

```
            var selection = GetUserResponse("", filterSelections.Any() ? "0" :
 "1");
            int.TryParse(selection, out selectionNumber);
            if (selectionNumber > 0 && !
filterSelections.Contains(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]))
            {
                filterSelections.Add(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]);
            }
        } while (selectionNumber != 0);

        var filters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>
        {
            { "tone", filterSelections }
        };
        string filterPolicy = JsonSerializer.Serialize(filters);
        return filterPolicy;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is
 a sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must
 set a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
 received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");
```

```
                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID
for this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this
message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID
for this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?",
false);
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Poll for the published messages to see the results of the user's choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> PollForMessages(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now the SQS queue at {queueUrl} will be polled to
retrieve the messages." +
                          "\r\nPress any key to continue.");
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var moreMessages = true;
        var messages = new List<Message>();
        while (moreMessages)
        {
            var newMessages = await SqsWrapper.ReceiveMessagesByUrl(queueUrl,
10);

            moreMessages = newMessages.Any();
            if (moreMessages)
            {
                messages.AddRange(newMessages);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"{messages.Count} message(s) were received by the
queue at {queueUrl}.");

        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tMessage:" +
                              $"\n\t{message.Body}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete the message using handles in a batch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteMessages(string queueUrl, List<Message>
messages)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the messages in this queue in a
batch.");
        await SqsWrapper.DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(queueUrl, messages);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        try
        {
            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl))
                {
                    var deleteQueue =
                        GetYesNoResponse($"Delete queue with url {queueUrl}?");
                    if (deleteQueue)
                    {
                        await SqsWrapper.DeleteQueueByUrl(queueUrl);
                    }
                }
            }

            foreach (var subscriptionArn in _subscriptionArns)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subscriptionArn))
                {
                    await SnsWrapper.UnsubscribeByArn(subscriptionArn);
                }
            }
```

```
            var deleteTopic = GetYesNoResponse($"Delete topic {_topicName}?");
            if (deleteTopic)
            {
                await SnsWrapper.DeleteTopicByArn(_topicArn);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Unable to clean up resources. Here's why:
 {ex.Message}.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question, bool defaultAnswer =
 true)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
            var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
            var response = ynResponse != null &&
                           ynResponse.Equals("y",
                               StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a string response from the user through the console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
```

```
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static string GetUserResponse(string question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            var response = "";
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(response))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                response = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SQS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SQSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSQS _amazonSQSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SQS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SQS client.</param>
    public SQSWrapper(IAmazonSQS amazonSQS)
    {
        _amazonSQSClient = amazonSQS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await
_amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string
topicArn, string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
                                           "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                               $"\"aws:SourceArn\":
\"{topicArn}\"" +
                                            "}" +
                                        "}" +
                                "}]" +
```

```
                                "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
 queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl,
 List<Message> messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
```

```
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
 _amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SNS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SNSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleNotificationService _amazonSNSClient;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SNS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SNS client.</param>
    public SNSWrapper(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService amazonSNS)
    {
        _amazonSNSClient = amazonSNS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
 "true");
```

```
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
{ { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
 attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes

- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Workflow for messaging with topics and queues using Amazon SNS and Amazon
 SQS.
/*!
 \param clientConfig Aws client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::messagingWithTopicsAndQueues(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    std::cout << "Welcome to messaging with topics and queues." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "In this workflow, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe "
              << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES <<
              " SQS queues to the topic." << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the "
            << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES << " queues." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the
 queues."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    printAsterisksLine();
```

```
    std::cout << "SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out)."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication
 and message filtering."
            << std::endl;
    bool isFifoTopic = askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n) ");

    bool contentBasedDeduplication = false;
    Aws::String topicName;
    if (isFifoTopic) {
        printAsterisksLine();
        std::cout << "Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is
 supported."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or
 automatically generated "
                << "from content using a hash function." << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic,
 any message "
                << "published and determined to have the same deduplication ID, "
                << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted
 but not delivered."
                << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "For more information about deduplication, "
                << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-
dedup.html."
                << std::endl;
        contentBasedDeduplication = askYesNoQuestion(
                "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID? (y/n) ");
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueURLS;
```

```
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> subscriptionARNS;

    Aws::String topicARN;
    {
        topicName = askQuestion("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ");

        // 1.  Create an Amazon SNS topic, either FIFO or non-FIFO.
        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicRequest request;

        if (isFifoTopic) {
            request.AddAttributes("FifoTopic", "true");
            if (contentBasedDeduplication) {
                request.AddAttributes("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }
            topicName = topicName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

            std::cout
                    << "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the topic name."
                    << std::endl;
        }

        request.SetName(topicName);

        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicOutcome outcome =
snsClient.CreateTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            topicARN = outcome.GetResult().GetTopicArn();
            std::cout << "Your new topic with the name '" << topicName
                      << "' and the topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN) " <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "'" << topicARN << "' has been created." << std::endl;

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::CreateTopic. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
```

```
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now you will create " << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES
              << " SQS queues to subscribe to the topic." << std::endl;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueNames;
    bool filteringMessages = false;
    bool first = true;
    for (int i = 1; i <= NUMBER_OF_QUEUES; ++i) {
        Aws::String queueURL;
        Aws::String queueName;
        {
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::ostringstream ostringstream;
            ostringstream << "Enter a name for " << (first ? "an" : "the next")
                          << " SQS queue. ";
            queueName = askQuestion(ostringstream.str());

            // 2.  Create an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueRequest request;
            if (isFifoTopic) {

request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::FifoQueue,
                                      "true");
                queueName = queueName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

                if (first) // Only explain this once.
                {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue,
'.fifo' must "
                            << "be appended to the queue name." << std::endl;
                }
            }

            request.SetQueueName(queueName);
            queueNames.push_back(queueName);

            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueOutcome outcome =
```

```
                    sqsClient.CreateQueue(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                queueURL = outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl();
                std::cout << "Your new SQS queue with the name '" << queueName
                          << "' and the queue URL " << std::endl;
                std::cout << "'" << queueURL << "' has been created." <<
std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::CreateQueue. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
        queueURLS.push_back(queueURL);

        if (first) // Only explain this once.
        {
            std::cout
                    << "The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN, which is
"
                    << "used to create a subscription." << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::String queueARN;
        {
            // 3.  Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.
            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

request.AddAttributeNames(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(request);
```

```
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName, Aws::String>
&attributes =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
                const auto &iter = attributes.find(
                        Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);
                if (iter != attributes.end()) {
                    queueARN = iter->second;
                    std::cout << "The queue ARN '" << queueARN
                              << "' has been retrieved."
                              << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr
                            << "Error ARN attribute not returned by
GetQueueAttribute."
                            << std::endl;

                    cleanUp(topicARN,
                            queueURLS,
                            subscriptionARNS,
                            snsClient,
                            sqsClient);

                    return false;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::GetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        if (first) {
            std::cout
```

```
                    << "An IAM policy must be attached to an SQS queue, enabling
it to receive "
                       "messages from an SNS topic." << std::endl;
       }

       {
           // 4.  Set the SQS queue policy attribute with a policy enabling the
receipt of SNS messages.
           Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
           request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
           Aws::String policy = createPolicyForQueue(queueARN, topicARN);
           request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::Policy,
                                 policy);

           Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                   sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               std::cout << "The attributes for the queue '" << queueName
                         << "' were successfully updated." << std::endl;
           }
           else {
               std::cerr << "Error with SQS::SetQueueAttributes. "
                         << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                         << std::endl;

               cleanUp(topicARN,
                       queueURLS,
                       subscriptionARNS,
                       snsClient,
                       sqsClient);

               return false;
           }
       }

       printAsterisksLine();

       {
           // 5.  Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic.
           Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
           request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
           request.SetProtocol("sqs");
           request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);
```

```
            if (isFifoTopic) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout << "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have
 filters."
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout
                            << "If you add a filter to this subscription, then
 only the filtered messages "
                            << "will be received in the queue." << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For information about message filtering, "
                              << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
sns-message-filtering.html"
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For this example, you can filter messages by a
 \""
                              << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attribute." << std::endl;
                }

                std::ostringstream ostringstream;
                ostringstream << "Filter messages for \"" << queueName
                              << "\"'s subscription to the topic \""
                              << topicName << "\"?  (y/n)";

                // Add filter if user answers yes.
                if (askYesNoQuestion(ostringstream.str())) {
                    Aws::String jsonPolicy = getFilterPolicyFromUser();
                    if (!jsonPolicy.empty()) {
                        filteringMessages = true;

                        std::cout << "This is the filter policy for this
 subscription."
                                  << std::endl;
                        std::cout << jsonPolicy << std::endl;

                        request.AddAttributes("FilterPolicy", jsonPolicy);
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout
                                << "Because you did not select any attributes, no
 filter "
                                << "will be added to this subscription." <<
 std::endl;
                    }
                }
```

```
            }  // if (isFifoTopic)
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
snsClient.Subscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN <<
"."
                          << std::endl;
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        first = false;
    }

    first = true;
    do {
        printAsterisksLine();

        // 6.  Publish a message to the SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
        Aws::String message = askQuestion("Enter a message text to publish.  ");
        request.SetMessage(message);
        if (isFifoTopic) {
            if (first) {
```

```
                std::cout
                        << "Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a
message group ID."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout
                        << "All messages within the same group will be received
in the "
                        << "order they were published." << std::endl;
            }
            Aws::String messageGroupID = askQuestion(
                    "Enter a message group ID for this message. ");
            request.SetMessageGroupId(messageGroupID);
            if (!contentBasedDeduplication) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, "
                            << "you must enter a deduplication ID." << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::String deduplicationID = askQuestion(
                        "Enter a deduplication ID for this message. ");
                request.SetMessageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID);
            }
        }

        if (filteringMessages && askYesNoQuestion(
                "Add an attribute to this message? (y/n) ")) {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < TONES.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "  " << (i + 1) << ". " << TONES[i] << std::endl;
            }
            int selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter a number for an attribute. ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));
            Aws::SNS::Model::MessageAttributeValue messageAttributeValue;
            messageAttributeValue.SetDataType("String");
            messageAttributeValue.SetStringValue(TONES[selection - 1]);
            request.AddMessageAttributes(TONE_ATTRIBUTE, messageAttributeValue);
        }

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Your message was successfully published." << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Publish. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }

        first = false;
    } while (askYesNoQuestion("Post another message? (y/n) "));

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now the SQS queue will be polled to retrieve the messages."
              << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press any key to continue...", alwaysTrueTest);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < queueURLS.size(); ++i) {
        // 7.  Poll an SQS queue for its messages.
        std::vector<Aws::String> messages;
        std::vector<Aws::String> receiptHandles;
        while (true) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageRequest request;
            request.SetMaxNumberOfMessages(10);
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);

            // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
            // For information about long polling, see
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
            request.SetWaitTimeSeconds(1);
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.ReceiveMessage(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SQS::Model::Message> &newMessages =
 outcome.GetResult().GetMessages();
                if (newMessages.empty()) {
```

```
                    break;
                }
                else {
                    for (const Aws::SQS::Model::Message &message: newMessages) {
                        messages.push_back(message.GetBody());
                        receiptHandles.push_back(message.GetReceiptHandle());
                    }
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ReceiveMessage. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();

        if (messages.empty()) {
            std::cout << "No messages were ";
        }
        else if (messages.size() == 1) {
            std::cout << "One message was ";
        }
        else {
            std::cout << messages.size() << " messages were ";
        }
        std::cout << "received by the queue '" << queueNames[i]
                  << "'." << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::String &message: messages) {
            std::cout << "  Message : '" << message << "'."
                      << std::endl;
        }

        // 8.  Delete a batch of messages from an SQS queue.
        if (!receiptHandles.empty()) {
```

```
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);
            int id = 1; // Ids must be unique within a batch delete request.
            for (const Aws::String &receiptHandle: receiptHandles) {
                Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry;
                entry.SetId(std::to_string(id));
                ++id;
                entry.SetReceiptHandle(receiptHandle);
                request.AddEntries(entry);
            }

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The batch deletion of messages was successful."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteMessageBatch. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return cleanUp(topicARN,
                   queueURLS,
                   subscriptionARNS,
                   snsClient,
                   sqsClient,
                   true); // askUser
}


bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::cleanUp(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &queueURLS,
```

```
                                        const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
&subscriptionARNS,
                                        const Aws::SNS::SNSClient &snsClient,
                                        const Aws::SQS::SQSClient &sqsClient,
                                        bool askUser) {
   bool result = true;
   printAsterisksLine();
   if (!queueURLS.empty() && askUser &&
       askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SQS queues? (y/n) ")) {

       for (const auto &queueURL: queueURLS) {
           // 9.  Delete an SQS queue.
           Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueRequest request;
           request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

           Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueOutcome outcome =
                   sqsClient.DeleteQueue(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               std::cout << "The queue with URL '" << queueURL
                         << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
           }
           else {
               std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteQueue. "
                         << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                         << std::endl;
               result = false;
           }
       }

       for (const auto &subscriptionARN: subscriptionARNS) {
           // 10. Unsubscribe an SNS subscription.
           Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeRequest request;
           request.SetSubscriptionArn(subscriptionARN);

           Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeOutcome outcome =
                   snsClient.Unsubscribe(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               std::cout << "Unsubscribe of subscription ARN '" <<
subscriptionARN
                         << "' was successful." << std::endl;
           }
           else {
```

```
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Unsubscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!topicARN.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SNS topic? (y/n) ")) {

        // 11. Delete an SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.DeleteTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The topic with ARN '" << topicARN
                      << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::DeleteTopicRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Create an IAM policy that gives an SQS queue permission to receive messages
 from an SNS topic.
/*!
 \sa createPolicyForQueue()
 \param queueARN: The SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
 \param topicARN: The SNS topic ARN.
 \return Aws::String: The policy as JSON.
 */
Aws::String AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::createPolicyForQueue(const Aws::String
 &queueARN,
```

```
                                                                const Aws::String
 &topicARN) {
    std::ostringstream policyStream;
    policyStream << R"({
        "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                    "Resource": ")" << queueARN << R"(",
                    "Condition": {
                "ArnEquals": {
                    "aws:SourceArn": ")" << topicARN << R"("
                }
            }
        }
        ]
    })";

    return policyStream.str();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

const FIFO_SUFFIX = ".fifo"
const TONE_KEY = "tone"

var ToneChoices = []string{"cheerful", "funny", "serious", "sincere"}

// MessageBody is used to deserialize the body of a message from a JSON string.
type MessageBody struct {
 Message string
}

// ScenarioRunner separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions
 so that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ScenarioRunner struct {
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
```

```
 snsActor   *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor   *actions.SqsActions
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context) (string, string,
 bool, bool) {
 log.Println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out) or
 standard.\n" +
  "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and message
 filtering.")
 isFifoTopic := runner.questioner.AskBool("\nWould you like to work with FIFO
 topics? (y/n) ", "y")

 contentBasedDeduplication := false
 if isFifoTopic {
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  log.Println("Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.
\n" +
   "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are automatically
 generated\n" +
   "from content using a hash function. If a message is successfully published to
\n" +
   "an SNS FIFO topic, any message published and determined to have the same\n" +
   "deduplication ID, within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted
\n" +
   "but not delivered. For more information about deduplication, see:\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.")
  contentBasedDeduplication = runner.questioner.AskBool(
   "\nDo you want to use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID? (y/n) ", "y")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 topicName := runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ")
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", topicName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
  log.Printf("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '%v' must be appended to
\n"+
   "the topic name.", FIFO_SUFFIX)
 }

 topicArn, err := runner.snsActor.CreateTopic(ctx, topicName, isFifoTopic,
 contentBasedDeduplication)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Your new topic with the name '%v' and Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
 \n"+
  "'%v' has been created.", topicName, topicArn)

 return topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, string) {
 queueName := runner.questioner.Ask(fmt.Sprintf("Enter a name for the %v SQS
 queue. ", ordinal))
 if isFifoTopic {
  queueName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", queueName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
  if ordinal == "first" {
   log.Printf("Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue, '%v' must "+
    "be appended to the queue name.\n", FIFO_SUFFIX)
  }
 }
 queueUrl, err := runner.sqsActor.CreateQueue(ctx, queueName, isFifoTopic)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Your new SQS queue with the name '%v' and the queue URL "+
  "'%v' has been created.", queueName, queueUrl)

 return queueName, queueUrl
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) SubscribeQueueToTopic(
 ctx context.Context, queueName string, queueUrl string, topicName string,
 topicArn string, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, bool) {

 queueArn, err := runner.sqsActor.GetQueueArn(ctx, queueUrl)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("The ARN of your queue is: %v.\n", queueArn)

 err = runner.sqsActor.AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx, queueUrl, queueArn, topicArn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
}
log.Println("Attached an IAM policy to the queue so the SNS topic can send " +
 "messages to it.")
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

var filterPolicy map[string][]string
if isFifoTopic {
 if ordinal == "first" {
  log.Println("Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters.\n" +
   "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered messages\n"
+
   "will be received in the queue.\n" +
   "For information about message filtering, see\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n" +
   "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\" attribute.")
 }

 wantFiltering := runner.questioner.AskBool(
  fmt.Sprintf("Do you want to filter messages that are sent to \"%v\"\n"+
   "from the %v topic? (y/n) ", queueName, topicName), "y")
 if wantFiltering {
  log.Println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following \"tone\"
attributes.")

  var toneSelections []string
  askAboutTones := true
  for askAboutTones {
   toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
    "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
   toneSelections = append(toneSelections, ToneChoices[toneIndex])
   askAboutTones = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to add another tone to
the filter? (y/n) ", "y")
  }
  log.Printf("Your subscription will be filtered to only pass the following
tones: %v\n", toneSelections)
  filterPolicy = map[string][]string{TONE_KEY: toneSelections}
 }
}

subscriptionArn, err := runner.snsActor.SubscribeQueue(ctx, topicArn, queueArn,
filterPolicy)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
```

```
 log.Printf("The queue %v is now subscribed to the topic %v with the subscription
 ARN %v.\n",
  queueName, topicName, subscriptionArn)

 return subscriptionArn, filterPolicy != nil
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PublishMessages(ctx context.Context, topicArn
 string, isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool, usingFilters bool) {
 var message string
 var groupId string
 var dedupId string
 var toneSelection string
 publishMore := true
 for publishMore {
  groupId = ""
  dedupId = ""
  toneSelection = ""
  message = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message to publish: ")
  if isFifoTopic {
   log.Println("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a message group
 ID.\n" +
    "All messages within the same group will be received in the order they were
 published.")
   groupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message group ID: ")
   if !contentBasedDeduplication {
    log.Println("Because you are not using content-based deduplication,\n" +
     "you must enter a deduplication ID.")
    dedupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a deduplication ID: ")
   }
  }
  if usingFilters {
   if runner.questioner.AskBool("Add a tone attribute so this message can be
 filtered? (y/n) ", "y") {
    toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
     "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
    toneSelection = ToneChoices[toneIndex]
   }
  }

  err := runner.snsActor.Publish(ctx, topicArn, message, groupId, dedupId,
 TONE_KEY, toneSelection)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
```

```
  }
  log.Println(("Your message was published."))

  publishMore = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to publish another
 messsage? (y/n) ", "y")
 }
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PollForMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrls
 []string) {
 log.Println("Polling queues for messages...")
 for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
  var messages []types.Message
  for {
   currentMsgs, err := runner.sqsActor.GetMessages(ctx, queueUrl, 10, 1)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   if len(currentMsgs) == 0 {
    break
   }
   messages = append(messages, currentMsgs...)
  }
  if len(messages) == 0 {
   log.Printf("No messages were received by queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  } else if len(messages) == 1 {
   log.Printf("One message was received by queue %v:\n", queueUrl)

  } else {
   log.Printf("%v messages were received by queue %v:\n", len(messages),
 queueUrl)
  }
  for msgIndex, message := range messages {
   messageBody := MessageBody{}
   err := json.Unmarshal([]byte(*message.Body), &messageBody)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Message %v: %v\n", msgIndex+1, messageBody.Message)
  }

  if len(messages) > 0 {
   log.Printf("Deleting %v messages from queue %v.\n", len(messages), queueUrl)
   err := runner.sqsActor.DeleteMessages(ctx, queueUrl, messages)
```

```
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
  }
 }

// RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use
 the
// AWS SDK for Go to create and use Amazon SNS topics and Amazon SQS queues.
//
// 1. Create a topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
// 2. Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
// 3. Publish messages to the topic.
// 4. Poll the queues for messages received.
// 5. Delete the topic and the queues.
//
// This example creates service clients from the specified sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario(
 ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources := Resources{}
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.\n" +
    "Cleaning up any resources that were created...")
   resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()
 queueCount := 2

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.\n\n"+
  "In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe %v SQS queues to
 the\n"+
  "topic. You can select from several options for configuring the topic and the
\n"+
  "subscriptions for the queues. You can then post to the topic and see the
 results\n"+
  "in the queues.\n", queueCount)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 runner := ScenarioRunner{
  questioner: questioner,
  snsActor:   &actions.SnsActions{SnsClient: sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  sqsActor:   &actions.SqsActions{SqsClient: sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 resources.snsActor = runner.snsActor
 resources.sqsActor = runner.sqsActor

 topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication :=
 runner.CreateTopic(ctx)
 resources.topicArn = topicArn
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Now you will create %v SQS queues and subscribe them to the topic.
\n", queueCount)
 ordinals := []string{"first", "next"}
 usingFilters := false
 for _, ordinal := range ordinals {
  queueName, queueUrl := runner.CreateQueue(ctx, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  resources.queueUrls = append(resources.queueUrls, queueUrl)

  _, filtering := runner.SubscribeQueueToTopic(ctx, queueName, queueUrl,
 topicName, topicArn, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  usingFilters = usingFilters || filtering
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PublishMessages(ctx, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication,
 usingFilters)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PollForMessages(ctx, resources.queueUrls)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 wantCleanup := questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all AWS resources
 created for this scenario? (y/n) ", "y")
 if wantCleanup {
  log.Println("Cleaning up resources...")
  resources.Cleanup(ctx)
 }
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SNS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// CreateTopic creates an Amazon SNS topic with the specified name. You can
 optionally
// specify that the topic is created as a FIFO topic and whether it uses content-
based
// deduplication instead of ID-based deduplication.
func (actor SnsActions) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context, topicName string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool) (string, error) {
 var topicArn string
 topicAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
 }
 if contentBasedDeduplication {
  topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
```

```
 }
 topic, err := actor.SnsClient.CreateTopic(ctx, &sns.CreateTopicInput{
  Name:       aws.String(topicName),
  Attributes: topicAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicName, err)
 } else {
  topicArn = *topic.TopicArn
 }

 return topicArn, err
}



// DeleteTopic delete an Amazon SNS topic.
func (actor SnsActions) DeleteTopic(ctx context.Context, topicArn string) error {
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.DeleteTopic(ctx, &sns.DeleteTopicInput{
  TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SubscribeQueue subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to
 an
// Amazon SNS topic. When filterMap is not nil, it is used to specify a filter
 policy
// so that messages are only sent to the queue when the message has the specified
 attributes.
func (actor SnsActions) SubscribeQueue(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 queueArn string, filterMap map[string][]string) (string, error) {
 var subscriptionArn string
 var attributes map[string]string
 if filterMap != nil {
  filterBytes, err := json.Marshal(filterMap)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create filter policy, here's why: %v\n", err)
   return "", err
  }
```

```
  attributes = map[string]string{"FilterPolicy": string(filterBytes)}
 }
 output, err := actor.SnsClient.Subscribe(ctx, &sns.SubscribeInput{
  Protocol:              aws.String("sqs"),
  TopicArn:              aws.String(topicArn),
  Attributes:            attributes,
  Endpoint:              aws.String(queueArn),
  ReturnSubscriptionArn: true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't susbscribe queue %v to topic %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   queueArn, topicArn, err)
 } else {
  subscriptionArn = *output.SubscriptionArn
 }

 return subscriptionArn, err
}



// Publish publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The message is then sent
 to all
// subscribers. When the topic is a FIFO topic, the message must also contain a
 group ID
// and, when ID-based deduplication is used, a deduplication ID. An optional key-
value
// filter attribute can be specified so that the message can be filtered
 according to
// a filter policy.
func (actor SnsActions) Publish(ctx context.Context, topicArn string, message
 string, groupId string, dedupId string, filterKey string, filterValue string)
 error {
 publishInput := sns.PublishInput{TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn), Message:
 aws.String(message)}
 if groupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageGroupId = aws.String(groupId)
 }
 if dedupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageDeduplicationId = aws.String(dedupId)
 }
 if filterKey != "" && filterValue != "" {
  publishInput.MessageAttributes = map[string]types.MessageAttributeValue{
```

```
   filterKey: {DataType: aws.String("String"), StringValue:
 aws.String(filterValue)},
  }
 }
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.Publish(ctx, &publishInput)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't publish message to topic %v. Here's why: %v", topicArn,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SQS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// CreateQueue creates an Amazon SQS queue with the specified name. You can
 specify
// whether the queue is created as a FIFO queue.
func (actor SqsActions) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, queueName string,
 isFifoQueue bool) (string, error) {
 var queueUrl string
 queueAttributes := map[string]string{}
```

```
 if isFifoQueue {
  queueAttributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
 }
 queue, err := actor.SqsClient.CreateQueue(ctx, &sqs.CreateQueueInput{
  QueueName:  aws.String(queueName),
  Attributes: queueAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueName, err)
 } else {
  queueUrl = *queue.QueueUrl
 }

 return queueUrl, err
}



// GetQueueArn uses the GetQueueAttributes action to get the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
// of an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetQueueArn(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string)
 (string, error) {
 var queueArn string
 arnAttributeName := types.QueueAttributeNameQueueArn
 attribute, err := actor.SqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(ctx,
 &sqs.GetQueueAttributesInput{
  QueueUrl:       aws.String(queueUrl),
  AttributeNames: []types.QueueAttributeName{arnAttributeName},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get ARN for queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  queueArn = attribute.Attributes[string(arnAttributeName)]
 }
 return queueArn, err
}



// AttachSendMessagePolicy uses the SetQueueAttributes action to attach a policy
 to an
// Amazon SQS queue that allows the specified Amazon SNS topic to send messages
 to the
```

```
// queue.
func (actor SqsActions) AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx context.Context, queueUrl
 string, queueArn string, topicArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Action:    "sqs:SendMessage",
   Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"},
   Resource:  aws.String(queueArn),
   Condition: PolicyCondition{"ArnEquals": map[string]string{"aws:SourceArn":
 topicArn}},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = actor.SqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(ctx, &sqs.SetQueueAttributesInput{
  Attributes: map[string]string{
   string(types.QueueAttributeNamePolicy): string(policyBytes),
  },
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't set send message policy on queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}

// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
```

```
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
 Condition PolicyCondition   `json:",omitempty"`
}

// PolicyCondition defines a condition in a policy.
type PolicyCondition map[string]map[string]string



// GetMessages uses the ReceiveMessage action to get messages from an Amazon SQS
 queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 maxMessages int32, waitTime int32) ([]types.Message, error) {
 var messages []types.Message
 result, err := actor.SqsClient.ReceiveMessage(ctx, &sqs.ReceiveMessageInput{
  QueueUrl:            aws.String(queueUrl),
  MaxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
  WaitTimeSeconds:     waitTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl,
 err)
 } else {
  messages = result.Messages
 }
 return messages, err
}



// DeleteMessages uses the DeleteMessageBatch action to delete a batch of
 messages from
// an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 messages []types.Message) error {
 entries := make([]types.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry, len(messages))
 for msgIndex := range messages {
  entries[msgIndex].Id = aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v", msgIndex))
  entries[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle = messages[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle
 }
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(ctx, &sqs.DeleteMessageBatchInput{
  Entries:  entries,
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteQueue deletes an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteQueue(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) error {
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteQueue(ctx, &sqs.DeleteQueueInput{
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 topicArn  string
 queueUrls []string
 snsActor  *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor  *actions.SqsActions
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
```

```
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Println("Something went wrong during cleanup. Use the AWS Management
 Console\n" +
    "to remove any remaining resources that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 var err error
 if resources.topicArn != "" {
  log.Printf("Deleting topic %v.\n", resources.topicArn)
  err = resources.snsActor.DeleteTopic(ctx, resources.topicArn)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }

 for _, queueUrl := range resources.queueUrls {
  log.Printf("Deleting queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  err = resources.sqsActor.DeleteQueue(ctx, queueUrl)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.JsonArray;
import com.google.gson.JsonObject;
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 * 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 * 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 * 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 * 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 * 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 * 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 * 8. Displays the messages.
 * 9. Deletes the received message.
 * 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 * 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */
public class SNSWorkflow {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage:\n" +
```

```
            "    <fifoQueueARN>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "    accountId - Your AWS account Id value.";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String accountId = args[0];
        String useFIFO;
        String duplication = "n";
        String topicName;
        String deduplicationID = null;
        String groupId = null;

        String topicArn;
        String sqsQueueName;
        String sqsQueueUrl;
        String sqsQueueArn;
        String subscriptionArn;
        boolean selectFIFO = false;

        String message;
        List<Message> messageList;
        List<String> filterList = new ArrayList<>();
        String msgAttValue = "";

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");
        System.out.println("In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
subscribe an SQS queue to the topic.\n" +
```

```
            "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the queue.\n" +
            "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out).\n" +
            "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering.\n" +
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)");
        useFIFO = in.nextLine();
        if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            selectFIFO = true;
            System.out.println("You have selected FIFO");
            System.out.println(" Because you have chosen a FIFO topic,
 deduplication is supported.\n" +
                "        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or
 automatically generated from content using a hash function.\n"
                +
                "        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO
 topic, any message published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,
\n"
                +
                "        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is
 accepted but not delivered.\n" +
                "        For more information about deduplication, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            System.out.println(
                "Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)");
            duplication = in.nextLine();
            if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            } else {
                System.out.println("Please enter deduplication Id value");
                deduplicationID = in.nextLine();
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            }
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a topic.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.");
        topicName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo'
must be appended to the topic name.");
            topicName = topicName + ".fifo";
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createFIFO(snsClient, topicName, duplication);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        } else {
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create an SQS queue.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.");
        sqsQueueName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            sqsQueueName = sqsQueueName + ".fifo";
        }
        sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName, selectFIFO);
        System.out.println("The queue URL is " + sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.");
        sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new queue is " + sqsQueueArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.");

        // Define the policy to use. Make sure that you change the REGION if you
are
        // running this code
```

```
        // in a different region.
        String policy = """
        {
             "Statement": [
             {
                 "Effect": "Allow",
                         "Principal": {
                     "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                 },
                 "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                         "Resource": "arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:%s:%s",
                         "Condition": {
                     "ArnEquals": {
                         "aws:SourceArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:%s:%s"
                     }
                 }
             }
             ]
         }
        """.formatted(accountId, sqsQueueName, accountId, topicName);

        setQueueAttr(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, policy);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println(
                "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.\n"
                    +
                    "For information about message filtering, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n"
                    +
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\"
 attribute.");
            System.out.println("Would you like to filter messages for " +
 sqsQueueName + "'s subscription to the topic "
                + topicName + "?  (y/n)");
            String filterAns = in.nextLine();
            if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                boolean moreAns = false;
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
 following \"tone\" attributes.");
```

```
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                while (!moreAns) {
                    System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    switch (ans) {
                        case "1":
                            filterList.add("cheerful");
                            break;
                        case "2":
                            filterList.add("funny");
                            break;
                        case "3":
                            filterList.add("serious");
                            break;
                        case "4":
                            filterList.add("sincere");
                            break;
                        default:
                            moreAns = true;
                            break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        subscriptionArn = subQueue(snsClient, topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Publish a message to the topic.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Would you like to add an attribute to this
message?  (y/n)");
            String msgAns = in.nextLine();
            if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
following \"tone\" attributes.");
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
```

```
                String ans = in.nextLine();
                switch (ans) {
                    case "1":
                        msgAttValue = "cheerful";
                        break;
                    case "2":
                        msgAttValue = "funny";
                        break;
                    case "3":
                        msgAttValue = "serious";
                        break;
                    default:
                        msgAttValue = "sincere";
                        break;
                }

                System.out.println("Selected value is " + msgAttValue);
            }
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessageFIFO(snsClient, message, topicArn, msgAttValue,
duplication, groupId, deduplicationID);

        } else {
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessage(snsClient, message, topicArn);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        messageList = receiveMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue);
        for (Message mes : messageList) {
            System.out.println("Message Id: " + mes.messageId());
            System.out.println("Full Message: " + mes.body());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to
continue.");
        in.nextLine();
```

```
        deleteMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, messageList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue.
Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        unSub(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        deleteSQSQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
```

```
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);
            System.out.println(queueName + " was successfully deleted.");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void unSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            UnsubscribeRequest request = UnsubscribeRequest.builder()
                .subscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
                .build();

            UnsubscribeResponse result = snsClient.unsubscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
                + "\nSubscription was removed for " + request.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {
        try {
            List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();
            for (Message msg : messages) {
                DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry =
DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                    .id(msg.messageId())
                    .build();

                entries.add(entry);
            }
```

```
            DeleteMessageBatchRequest deleteMessageBatchRequest =
DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .entries(entries)
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest);
            System.out.println("The batch delete of messages was successful");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String
queueUrl, String msgAttValue) {
        try {
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
                return
sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();
            } else {
                // We know there are filters on the message.
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageAttributeNames(msgAttValue) // Include other message
attributes if needed.
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();

                return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
```

```
    }

    public static void pubMessage(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
topicArn) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                .message(message)
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status is " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void pubMessageFIFO(SnsClient snsClient,
                                      String message,
                                      String topicArn,
                                      String msgAttValue,
                                      String duplication,
                                      String groupId,
                                      String deduplicationID) {

        try {
            PublishRequest request;
            // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
```

```
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                }

            } else {
                Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
HashMap<>();
                messageAttributes.put(msgAttValue,
MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                    .dataType("String")
                    .stringValue("true")
                    .build());

                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .messageAttributes(messageAttributes)
                        .build();
                }
            }

            // Publish the message to the topic.
            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Subscribe to the SQS queue.
```

```
   public static String subQueue(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
queueArn, List<String> filterList) {
       try {
           SubscribeRequest request;
           if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
               // No filter subscription is added.
               request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                   .protocol("sqs")
                   .endpoint(queueArn)
                   .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                   .topicArn(topicArn)
                   .build();

               SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
               System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been
subscribed to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                   "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());
               return result.subscriptionArn();
           } else {
               request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                   .protocol("sqs")
                   .endpoint(queueArn)
                   .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                   .topicArn(topicArn)
                   .build();

               SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
               System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been
subscribed to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                   "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());

               String attributeName = "FilterPolicy";
               Gson gson = new Gson();
               String jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}";
               JsonObject jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString,
JsonObject.class);
               JsonArray toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone");
               for (String value : filterList) {
                   toneArray.add(new JsonPrimitive(value));
               }

               String updatedJsonString = gson.toJson(jsonObject);
               System.out.println(updatedJsonString);
```

```
                SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest attRequest =
SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(result.subscriptionArn())
                    .attributeName(attributeName)
                    .attributeValue(updatedJsonString)
                    .build();

                snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest);
                return result.subscriptionArn();
            }

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Attach a policy to the queue.
    public static void setQueueAttr(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl, String
policy) {
        try {
            Map<software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName,
String> attrMap = new HashMap<>();
            attrMap.put(QueueAttributeName.POLICY, policy);

            SetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
SetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributes(attrMap)
                .build();

            sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
            System.out.println("The policy has been successfully attached.");

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getSQSQueueAttrs(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {
        // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
        List<QueueAttributeName> atts = new ArrayList<>();
```

```
        atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QUEUE_ARN);

        GetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
GetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
            .attributeNames(atts)
            .build();

        GetQueueAttributesResponse response =
sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
        Map<String, String> queueAtts = response.attributesAsStrings();
        for (Map.Entry<String, String> queueAtt : queueAtts.entrySet())
            return queueAtt.getValue();

        return "";
    }

    public static String createQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName,
Boolean selectFIFO) {
        try {
            System.out.println("\nCreate Queue");
            if (selectFIFO) {
                Map<QueueAttributeName, String> attrs = new HashMap<>();
                attrs.put(QueueAttributeName.FIFO_QUEUE, "true");
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest =
CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .attributes(attrs)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            } else {
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest =
CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
```

```
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createFIFO(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName, String
duplication) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = new HashMap<>();
            if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "false");
            } else {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
```

```
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            return response.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This is the entry point for this scenario.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

import { TopicsQueuesWkflw } from "./TopicsQueuesWkflw.js";
import { Prompter } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js";

export const startSnsWorkflow = () => {
  const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
  const sqsClient = new SQSClient({});
  const prompter = new Prompter();
  const logger = console;

  const wkflw = new TopicsQueuesWkflw(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger);

  wkflw.start();
};
```

The preceding code provides the necessary dependencies and starts the scenario. The next section contains the bulk of the example.

```
const toneChoices = [
  { name: "cheerful", value: "cheerful" },
  { name: "funny", value: "funny" },
  { name: "serious", value: "serious" },
  { name: "sincere", value: "sincere" },
];

export class TopicsQueuesWkflw {
  // SNS topic is configured as First-In-First-Out
  isFifo = true;

  // Automatic content-based deduplication is enabled.
  autoDedup = false;

  snsClient;
  sqsClient;
  topicName;
  topicArn;
```

```
  subscriptionArns = [];
  /**
   * @type {{ queueName: string, queueArn: string, queueUrl: string, policy?:
 string }[]}
   */
  queues = [];
  prompter;

  /**
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SNSClient} snsClient
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sqs').SQSClient} sqsClient
   * @param {import('../../libs/prompter.js').Prompter} prompter
   * @param {import('../../libs/logger.js').Logger} logger
   */
  constructor(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger) {
    this.snsClient = snsClient;
    this.sqsClient = sqsClient;
    this.prompter = prompter;
    this.logger = logger;
  }

  async welcome() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.description);
  }

  async confirmFifo() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.snsFifoDescription);
    this.isFifo = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.snsFifoPrompt,
    });

    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerDedup);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationNotice);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationDescription);
      this.autoDedup = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.deduplicationPrompt,
      });
    }
  }

  async createTopic() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.creatingTopics);
    this.topicName = await this.prompter.input({
```

```
      message: MESSAGES.topicNamePrompt,
    });
    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.topicName += ".fifo";
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifoNaming);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
    }

    const response = await this.snsClient.send(
      new CreateTopicCommand({
        Name: this.topicName,
        Attributes: {
          FifoTopic: this.isFifo ? "true" : "false",
          ...(this.autoDedup ? { ContentBasedDeduplication: "true" } : {}),
        },
      }),
    );

    this.topicArn = response.TopicArn;

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.topicCreatedNotice
        .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
        .replace("${TOPIC_ARN}", this.topicArn),
    );
  }

  async createQueues() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.createQueuesNotice);
    // Increase this number to add more queues.
    const maxQueues = 2;

    for (let i = 0; i < maxQueues; i++) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.queueCount.replace("${COUNT}", i + 1));
      let queueName = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.queueNamePrompt.replace(
          "${EXAMPLE_NAME}",
          i === 0 ? "good-news" : "bad-news",
        ),
      });

      if (this.isFifo) {
        queueName += ".fifo";
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
```

```
      }

      const response = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new CreateQueueCommand({
          QueueName: queueName,
          Attributes: { ...(this.isFifo ? { FifoQueue: "true" } : {}) },
        }),
      );

      const { Attributes } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
          QueueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
          AttributeNames: ["QueueArn"],
        }),
      );

      this.queues.push({
        queueName,
        queueArn: Attributes.QueueArn,
        queueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
      });

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueCreatedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queueName)
          .replace("${QUEUE_URL}", response.QueueUrl)
          .replace("${QUEUE_ARN}", Attributes.QueueArn),
      );
    }
  }

  async attachQueueIamPolicies() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      const policy = JSON.stringify(
        {
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Principal: {
                Service: "sns.amazonaws.com",
              },
              Action: "sqs:SendMessage",
              Resource: queue.queueArn,
              Condition: {
```

```
                ArnEquals: {
                  "aws:SourceArn": this.topicArn,
                },
              },
            },
          ],
        },
        null,
        2,
      );

      if (index !== 0) {
        this.logger.logSeparator();
      }

      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.attachPolicyNotice);
      console.log(policy);
      const addPolicy = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.addPolicyConfirmation.replace(
          "${QUEUE_NAME}",
          queue.queueName,
        ),
      });

      if (addPolicy) {
        await this.sqsClient.send(
          new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Attributes: {
              Policy: policy,
            },
          }),
        );
        queue.policy = policy;
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.policyNotAttachedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }
  }
```

```
  async subscribeQueuesToTopic() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      /**
       * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SubscribeCommandInput}
       */
      const subscribeParams = {
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Protocol: "sqs",
        Endpoint: queue.queueArn,
      };
      let tones = [];

      if (this.isFifo) {
        if (index === 0) {
          await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.fifoFilterNotice);
        }
        tones = await this.prompter.checkbox({
          message: MESSAGES.fifoFilterSelect.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
          choices: toneChoices,
        });

        if (tones.length) {
          subscribeParams.Attributes = {
            FilterPolicyScope: "MessageAttributes",
            FilterPolicy: JSON.stringify({
              tone: tones,
            }),
          };
        }
      }

      const { SubscriptionArn } = await this.snsClient.send(
        new SubscribeCommand(subscribeParams),
      );

      this.subscriptionArns.push(SubscriptionArn);

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueSubscribedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queue.queueName)
```

```
          .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
          .replace("${TONES}", tones.length ? tones.join(", ") : "none"),
      );
    }
  }

  async publishMessages() {
    const message = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.publishMessagePrompt,
    });

    let groupId;
    let deduplicationId;
    let choices;

    if (this.isFifo) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.groupIdNotice);
      groupId = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.groupIdPrompt,
      });

      if (this.autoDedup === false) {
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationIdNotice);
        deduplicationId = await this.prompter.input({
          message: MESSAGES.deduplicationIdPrompt,
        });
      }

      choices = await this.prompter.checkbox({
        message: MESSAGES.messageAttributesPrompt,
        choices: toneChoices,
      });
    }

    await this.snsClient.send(
      new PublishCommand({
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Message: message,
        ...(groupId
          ? {
              MessageGroupId: groupId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(deduplicationId
```

```
          ? {
              MessageDeduplicationId: deduplicationId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(choices
          ? {
              MessageAttributes: {
                tone: {
                  DataType: "String.Array",
                  StringValue: JSON.stringify(choices),
                },
              },
            }
          : {}),
      }),
    );

    const publishAnother = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.publishAnother,
    });

    if (publishAnother) {
      await this.publishMessages();
    }
  }

  async receiveAndDeleteMessages() {
    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      const { Messages } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new ReceiveMessageCommand({
          QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
        }),
      );

      if (Messages) {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.messagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
        console.log(Messages);

        await this.sqsClient.send(
```

```
          new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
              Id: message.MessageId,
              ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
            })),
          }),
        );
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.noMessagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }

    const deleteAndPoll = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.deleteAndPollConfirmation,
    });

    if (deleteAndPoll) {
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    }
  }

  async destroyResources() {
    for (const subscriptionArn of this.subscriptionArns) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new UnsubscribeCommand({ SubscriptionArn: subscriptionArn }),
      );
    }

    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      await this.sqsClient.send(
        new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl }),
      );
    }

    if (this.topicArn) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new DeleteTopicCommand({ TopicArn: this.topicArn }),
      );
```

```
    }
  }

  async start() {
    console.clear();

    try {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerWelcome);
      await this.welcome();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifo);
      await this.confirmFifo();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateTopic);
      await this.createTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateQueues);
      await this.createQueues();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerAttachPolicy);
      await this.attachQueueIamPolicies();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerSubscribeQueues);
      await this.subscribeQueuesToTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerPublishMessage);
      await this.publishMessages();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerReceiveMessages);
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(err);
    } finally {
      await this.destroyResources();
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish

- ReceiveMessage
- SetQueueAttributes
- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns

import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.PublishRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.Message
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest
import com.google.gson.Gson
import com.google.gson.JsonObject
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive
import java.util.Scanner
```

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your AWS credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 8. Displays the messages.
 9. Deletes the received message.
 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */

val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main() {
    val input = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val useFIFO: String
    var duplication = "n"
    var topicName: String
    var deduplicationID: String? = null
    var groupId: String? = null
    val topicArn: String?
    var sqsQueueName: String
    val sqsQueueUrl: String?
    val sqsQueueArn: String
    val subscriptionArn: String?
    var selectFIFO = false
    val message: String
    val messageList: List<Message?>?
    val filterList = ArrayList<String>()
    var msgAttValue = ""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Kotlin messaging with topics and
 queues.")
```

```
    println(
        """
                In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe an
 SQS queue to the topic.
                You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the queue.
                You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
                SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out).
                FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication
 and message filtering.
                Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    useFIFO = input.nextLine()
    if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        selectFIFO = true
        println("You have selected FIFO")
        println(
            """ Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.
        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or automatically
 generated from content using a hash function.
        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any message
 published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,
        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted but not
 delivered.
        For more information about deduplication, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.""",
        )

        println("Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)")
        duplication = input.nextLine()
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        } else {
            println("Enter deduplication Id value")
```

```
            deduplicationID = input.nextLine()
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Create a topic.")
    println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.")
    topicName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended
 to the topic name.")
        topicName = "$topicName.fifo"
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createFIFO(topicName, duplication)
        println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    } else {
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createSNSTopic(topicName)
        println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create an SQS queue.")
    println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.")
    sqsQueueName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        sqsQueueName = "$sqsQueueName.fifo"
    }
    sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsQueueName, selectFIFO)
    println("The queue URL is $sqsQueueUrl")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.")
    sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsQueueUrl)
    println("The ARN of the new queue is $sqsQueueArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.")
```

```
    // Define the policy to use.
    val policy = """{
     "Statement": [
     {
         "Effect": "Allow",
                 "Principal": {
             "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
         },
         "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                 "Resource": "$sqsQueueArn",
                 "Condition": {
             "ArnEquals": {
                 "aws:SourceArn": "$topicArn"
             }
         }
     }
     ]
     }"""
    setQueueAttr(sqsQueueUrl, policy)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println(
            """If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.
For information about message filtering, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/
latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html
For this example, you can filter messages by a "tone" attribute.""",
        )
        println("Would you like to filter messages for $sqsQueueName's
 subscription to the topic $topicName?  (y/n)")
        val filterAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            var moreAns = false
            println("You can filter messages by using one or more of the
 following \"tone\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            while (!moreAns) {
                println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
```

```
                val ans: String = input.nextLine()
                when (ans) {
                    "1" -> filterList.add("cheerful")
                    "2" -> filterList.add("funny")
                    "3" -> filterList.add("serious")
                    "4" -> filterList.add("sincere")
                    else -> moreAns = true
                }
            }
        }
    }
    subscriptionArn = subQueue(topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Publish a message to the topic.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Would you like to add an attribute to this message?  (y/n)")
        val msgAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following
\"tone\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
            val ans: String = input.nextLine()
            msgAttValue = when (ans) {
                "1" -> "cheerful"
                "2" -> "funny"
                "3" -> "serious"
                else -> "sincere"
            }
            println("Selected value is $msgAttValue")
        }
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessageFIFO(message, topicArn, msgAttValue, duplication, groupId,
deduplicationID)
    } else {
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessage(message, topicArn)
```

```
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    messageList = receiveMessages(sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue)
    if (messageList != null) {
        for (mes in messageList) {
            println("Message Id: ${mes.messageId}")
            println("Full Message: ${mes.body}")
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    if (messageList != null) {
        deleteMessages(sqsQueueUrl, messageList)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue. Press any key
 to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    unSub(subscriptionArn)
    deleteSQSQueue(sqsQueueName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    deleteSNSTopic(topicArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = DeleteTopicRequest {
```

```
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println("$topicArnVal was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSQSQueue(queueNameVal: String) {
    val getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val queueUrlVal = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl
        val deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

        sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest)
        println("$queueNameVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun unSub(subscripArn: String?) {
    val request = UnsubscribeRequest {
        subscriptionArn = subscripArn
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.unsubscribe(request)
        println("Subscription was removed for $subscripArn")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, messages: List<Message>) {
    val entriesVal: MutableList<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> = mutableListOf()
    for (msg in messages) {
        val entry = DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = msg.messageId
        }
        entriesVal.add(entry)
    }
```

```
    val deleteMessageBatchRequest = DeleteMessageBatchRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        entries = entriesVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest)
        println("The batch delete of messages was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun receiveMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, msgAttValue: String):
 List<Message>? {
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        val request = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(request).messages
        }
    } else {
        val receiveRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            waitTimeSeconds = 1
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages
        }
    }
}

suspend fun pubMessage(messageVal: String?, topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = PublishRequest {
        message = messageVal
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun pubMessageFIFO(
    messageVal: String?,
    topicArnVal: String?,
    msgAttValue: String,
    duplication: String,
    groupIdVal: String?,
    deduplicationID: String?,
) {
    // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    } else {
        val messAttr = aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue {
            dataType = "String"
            stringValue = "true"
        }

        val mapAtt: Map<String,
 aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue> =
            mapOf(msgAttValue to messAttr)
```

```
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
            val request = PublishRequest {
                topicArn = topicArnVal
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                messageAttributes = mapAtt
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Subscribe to the SQS queue.
suspend fun subQueue(topicArnVal: String?, queueArnVal: String, filterList:
 List<String?>): String? {
    val request: SubscribeRequest
    if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
        // No filter subscription is added.
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
```

```
            println(
                "The queue " + queueArnVal + " has been subscribed to the topic "
 + topicArnVal + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn,
            )
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    } else {
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
            println("The queue $queueArnVal has been subscribed to the topic
 $topicArnVal with the subscription ARN ${result.subscriptionArn}")

            val attributeNameVal = "FilterPolicy"
            val gson = Gson()
            val jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}"
            val jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString, JsonObject::class.java)
            val toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone")
            for (value: String? in filterList) {
                toneArray.add(JsonPrimitive(value))
            }

            val updatedJsonString: String = gson.toJson(jsonObject)
            println(updatedJsonString)
            val attRequest = SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest {
                subscriptionArn = result.subscriptionArn
                attributeName = attributeNameVal
                attributeValue = updatedJsonString
            }

            snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest)
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    }
}

suspend fun setQueueAttr(queueUrlVal: String?, policy: String) {
```

```
    val attrMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attrMap[QueueAttributeName.Policy.toString()] = policy

    val attributesRequest = SetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributes = attrMap
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        println("The policy has been successfully attached.")
    }
}

suspend fun getSQSQueueAttrs(queueUrlVal: String?): String {
    val atts: MutableList<QueueAttributeName> = ArrayList()
    atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QueueArn)

    val attributesRequest = GetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributeNames = atts
    }
    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        val mapAtts = response.attributes
        if (mapAtts != null) {
            mapAtts.forEach { entry ->
                println("${entry.key} : ${entry.value}")
                return entry.value
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun createQueue(queueNameVal: String?, selectFIFO: Boolean): String? {
    println("\nCreate Queue")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        val attrs = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
        attrs[QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue.toString()] = "true"

        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
            attributes = attrs
```

```
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("\nGet queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    } else {
        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("Get queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createSNSTopic(topicName: String?): String? {
    val request = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.createTopic(request)
        return result.topicArn
    }
}

suspend fun createFIFO(topicName: String?, duplication: String): String? {
```

```
    val topicAttributes: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "false"
    } else {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
    }

    val topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
        attributes = topicAttributes
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest)
        return response.topicArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "queue-scenario",
        abstract: """
        This example interactively demonstrates how to use Amazon Simple
        Notification Service (Amazon SNS) and Amazon Simple Queue Service
        (Amazon SQS) together to publish and receive messages using queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        Supports filtering using a "tone" attribute.
        """
    )

    /// Prompt for an input string. Only non-empty strings are allowed.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: The prompt to display.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string input by the user.
    func stringRequest(prompt: String) -> String {
        var str: String?

        while str == nil {
            print(prompt, terminator: "")
```

```
            str = readLine()

            if str != nil && str?.count == 0 {
                str = nil
            }
        }

        return str!
    }

    /// Ask a yes/no question.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: A prompt string to print.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user answered "Y", otherwise `false`.
    func yesNoRequest(prompt: String) -> Bool {
        while true {
            let answer = stringRequest(prompt: prompt).lowercased()
            if answer == "y" || answer == "n" {
                return answer == "y"
            }
        }
    }

    /// Display a menu of options then request a selection.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt string to display before the menu.
    ///   - options: An array of strings giving the menu options.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The index number of the selected option or 0 if no item was
    ///   selected.
    func menuRequest(prompt: String, options: [String]) -> Int {
        let numOptions = options.count

        if numOptions == 0 {
            return 0
        }

        print(prompt)

        for (index, value) in options.enumerated() {
            print("(\(index)) \(value)")
        }
```

```
        repeat {
            print("Enter your selection (0 - \(numOptions-1)): ", terminator: "")
            if let answer = readLine() {
                guard let answer = Int(answer) else {
                    print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
                    continue
                }

                if answer >= 0 && answer < numOptions {
                    return answer
                } else {
                    print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
                }
            }
        } while true
    }

    /// Ask the user too press RETURN. Accepts any input but ignores it.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: The text prompt to display.
    func returnRequest(prompt: String) {
        print(prompt, terminator: "")
        _ = readLine()
    }

    var attrValues = [
        "<none>",
        "cheerful",
        "funny",
        "serious",
        "sincere"
    ]

    /// Ask the user to choose one of the attribute values to use as a filter.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - message: A message to display before the menu of values.
    ///   - attrValues: An array of strings giving the values to choose from.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string corresponding to the selected option.
    func askForFilter(message: String, attrValues: [String]) -> String? {
        print(message)
        for (index, value) in attrValues.enumerated() {
```

```
            print("  [\(index)] \(value)")
        }

        var answer: Int?
        repeat {
            answer = Int(stringRequest(prompt: "Select an value for the 'tone'
attribute or 0 to end: "))
        } while answer == nil || answer! < 0 || answer! > attrValues.count + 1

        if answer == 0 {
            return nil
        }
        return attrValues[answer!]
    }

    /// Prompts the user for filter terms and constructs the attribute
    /// record that specifies them.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A mapping of "FilterPolicy" to a JSON string representing
    ///   the user-defined filter.
    func buildFilterAttributes() -> [String:String] {
        var attr: [String:String] = [:]
        var filterString = ""

        var first = true

        while let ans = askForFilter(message: "Choose a value to apply to the
'tone' attribute.",
                                     attrValues: attrValues) {
            if !first {
                filterString += ","
            }
            first = false

            filterString += "\"\(ans)\""
        }

        let filterJSON = "{ \"tone\": [\(filterString)]}"
        attr["FilterPolicy"] = filterJSON

        return attr
    }
    /// Create a queue, returning its URL string.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt to ask for the queue name.
    ///   - isFIFO: Whether or not to create a FIFO queue.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the queue.
    func createQueue(prompt: String, sqsClient: SQSClient, isFIFO: Bool) async
throws -> String? {
        repeat {
            var queueName = stringRequest(prompt: prompt)
            var attributes: [String: String] = [:]

            if isFIFO {
                queueName += ".fifo"
                attributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
            }

            do {
                let output = try await sqsClient.createQueue(
                    input: CreateQueueInput(
                        attributes: attributes,
                        queueName: queueName
                    )
                )
                guard let url = output.queueUrl else {
                    return nil
                }

                return url
            } catch _ as QueueDeletedRecently {
                print("You need to use a different queue name. A queue by that
name was recently deleted.")
                continue
            }
        } while true
    }

    /// Return the ARN of a queue given its URL.
    ///
    /// - Parameter queueUrl: The URL of the queue for which to return the
    ///   ARN.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ARN of the specified queue.
    func getQueueARN(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async throws ->
String? {
```

```
        let output = try await sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(
            input: GetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributeNames: [.queuearn],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )

        guard let attributes = output.attributes else {
            return nil
        }

        return attributes["QueueArn"]
    }

    /// Applies the needed policy to the specified queue.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - queueArn: The ARN of the queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - topicArn: The topic that should have access via the policy.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from the SQS `SetQueueAttributes` action.
    func setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                        queueArn: String, topicArn: String) async throws {
        _ = try await sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(
            input: SetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributes: [
                    "Policy":
                        """
                        {
                            "Statement": [
                                {
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {
                                        "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                                    },
                                    "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": "\(queueArn)",
                                    "Condition": {
                                        "ArnEquals": {
                                            "aws:SourceArn": "\(topicArn)"
                                        }
                                    }
```

```
                                }
                            ]
                        }
                        """

                ],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )
    }

    /// Receive the available messages on a queue, outputting them to the
    /// screen. Returns a dictionary you pass to DeleteMessageBatch to delete
    /// all the received messages.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue on which to receive messages.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.receiveMessage()`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
    ///   items, each describing one received message in the format needed to
    ///   delete it.
    func receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async
throws
                                ->
[SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] {
        let output = try await sqsClient.receiveMessage(
            input: ReceiveMessageInput(
                maxNumberOfMessages: 10,
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )

        guard let messages = output.messages else {
            print("No messages received.")
            return []
        }

        var deleteList: [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] = []

        // Print out all the messages that were received, including their
        // attributes, if any.
```

```
        for message in messages {
            print("Message ID:     \(message.messageId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Receipt handle: \(message.receiptHandle ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Message JSON:   \(message.body ?? "<body missing>")")

            if message.receiptHandle != nil {
                deleteList.append(
                    SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry(
                        id: message.messageId,
                        receiptHandle: message.receiptHandle
                    )
                )
            }
        }

        return deleteList
    }

    /// Delete all the messages in the specified list.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue to delete messages from.
    ///   - deleteList: A list of `DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry` objects
    ///     describing the messages to delete.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.deleteMessageBatch()`.
    func deleteMessageList(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                           deleteList:
[SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry]) async throws {
        let output = try await sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(
            input: DeleteMessageBatchInput(entries: deleteList, queueUrl:
queueUrl)
        )

        if let failed = output.failed {
            print("\(failed.count) errors occurred deleting messages from the
queue.")
            for message in failed {
                print("---> Failed to delete message \(message.id ?? "<unknown
ID>") with error: \(message.code ?? "<unknown>") (\(message.message ?? "...")")
            }
        }
```

```
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let rowOfStars = String(repeating: "*", count: 75)

        print("""
              \(rowOfStars)
              Welcome to the cross-service messaging with topics and queues
 example.
              In this workflow, you'll create an SNS topic, then create two SQS
              queues which will be subscribed to that topic.

              You can specify several options for configuring the topic, as well
 as
              the queue subscriptions. You can then post messages to the topic
 and
              receive the results on the queues.
              \(rowOfStars)\n
              """
        )

        // 0. Create SNS and SQS clients.

        let snsConfig = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region:
 region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: snsConfig)

        let sqsConfig = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region:
 region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: sqsConfig)

        // 1. Ask the user whether to create a FIFO topic. If so, ask whether
        //    to use content-based deduplication instead of requiring a
        //    deduplication ID.

        let isFIFO = yesNoRequest(prompt: "Do you want to create a FIFO topic (Y/
N)? ")
        var isContentBasedDeduplication = false

        if isFIFO {
            print("""
                  \(rowOfStars)
                  Because you've chosen to create a FIFO topic, deduplication is
```

```
                  supported.

                  Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are
 automatically
                  generated from the content using a hash function.

                  If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic,
 any
                  message published and found to have the same deduplication ID
                  (within a five-minute deduplication interval), is accepted but
                  not delivered.

                  For more information about deduplication, see:
                  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-
dedup.html.
                  """
            )

            isContentBasedDeduplication = yesNoRequest(
                prompt: "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID (Y/N)? ")
            print(rowOfStars)
        }

        var topicName = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter the name of the topic to
 create: ")

        // 2. Create the topic. Append ".fifo" to the name if FIFO was
        //    requested, and set the "FifoTopic" attribute to "true" if so as
        //    well. Set the "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute to "true" if
        //    content-based deduplication was requested.

        if isFIFO {
            topicName += ".fifo"
        }

        print("Topic name: \(topicName)")

        var attributes = [
            "FifoTopic": (isFIFO ? "true" : "false")
        ]

        // If it's a FIFO topic with content-based deduplication, set the
        // "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute.
```

```
        if isContentBasedDeduplication {
            attributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
        }

        // Create the topic and retrieve the ARN.

        let output = try await snsClient.createTopic(
            input: CreateTopicInput(
                attributes: attributes,
                name: topicName
            )
        )

        guard let topicArn = output.topicArn else {
            print("No topic ARN returned!")
            return
        }

        print("""
              Topic '\(topicName) has been created with the
              topic ARN \(topicArn)."
              """
        )

        print(rowOfStars)

        // 3. Create an SQS queue. Append ".fifo" to the name if one of the
        //    FIFO topic configurations was chosen, and set "FifoQueue" to
        //    "true" if the topic is FIFO.

        print("""
              Next, you will create two SQS queues that will be subscribed
              to the topic you just created.\n
              """
        )

        let q1Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the first
queue: ",
                                          sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)
        guard let q1Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 1!")
            return
        }
```

```
        // 4. Get the SQS queue's ARN attribute using `GetQueueAttributes`.

        let q1Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url)

        guard let q1Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 1!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 1 ARN: \(q1Arn)")

        // 5. Attach an AWS IAM policy to the queue using
        //    `SetQueueAttributes`.

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
                                 queueArn: q1Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        // 6. Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic. Set the topic ARN in
        //    the request. Set the protocol to "sqs". Set the queue ARN to the
        //    ARN just received in step 5. For FIFO topics, give the option to
        //    apply a filter. A filter allows only matching messages to enter
        //    the queue.

        var q1Attributes: [String:String]? = nil

        if isFIFO {
            print(
                """

                If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will
                be received in the queue. For information about message
 filtering, see
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html
                For this example, you can filter messages by a 'tone' attribute.

                """
            )

            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the first queue's
 subscription to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
```

```
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q1Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub1Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q1Attributes,
                endpoint: q1Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q1SubscriptionArn = sub1Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 7. Repeat steps 3-6 for the second queue.

        let q2Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the second
queue: ",
                                  sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)

        guard let q2Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 2!")
            return
        }

        let q2Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url)

        guard let q2Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 2!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 2 ARN: \(q2Arn)")

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
                                 queueArn: q2Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        var q2Attributes: [String:String]? = nil
```

```
        if isFIFO {
            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the second queue's
subscription to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q2Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub2Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q2Attributes,
                endpoint: q2Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q2SubscriptionArn = sub2Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 8. Let the user publish messages to the topic, asking for a message
        //    body for each message. Handle the types of topic correctly (SEE
        //    MVP INFORMATION AND FIX THESE COMMENTS!!!

        print("\n\(rowOfStars)\n")

        var first = true

        repeat {
            var publishInput = PublishInput(
                topicArn: topicArn
            )

            publishInput.message = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter message text to
publish: ")

            // If using a FIFO topic, a message group ID must be set on the
            // message.
```

```
            if isFIFO {
                if first {
                    print("""
                        Because you're using a FIFO topic, you must set a message
                        group ID. All messages within the same group will be
                        received in the same order in which they were published.
\n
                        """
                    )
                }
                publishInput.messageGroupId = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter a
 message group ID for this message: ")

                if !isContentBasedDeduplication {
                    if first {
                        print("""
                              Because you're not using content-based
 deduplication, you
                              must enter a deduplication ID. If other messages
 with the
                              same deduplication ID are published within the same
                              deduplication interval, they will not be delivered.
                              """
                        )
                    }
                    publishInput.messageDeduplicationId = stringRequest(prompt:
 "Enter a deduplication ID for this message: ")
                }
            }

            // Allow the user to add a value for the "tone" attribute if they
            // wish to do so.

            var messageAttributes: [String:SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue]
 = [:]
            let attrValSelection = menuRequest(prompt: "Choose a tone to apply to
 this message.", options: attrValues)

            if attrValSelection != 0 {
                let val = SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue(dataType:
 "String", stringValue: attrValues[attrValSelection])
                messageAttributes["tone"] = val
            }
```

```
            publishInput.messageAttributes = messageAttributes

            // Publish the message and display its ID.

            let publishOutput = try await snsClient.publish(input: publishInput)

            guard let messageID = publishOutput.messageId else {
                print("Unable to get the published message's ID!")
                return
            }

            print("Message published with ID \(messageID).")
            first = false

            // 9. Repeat step 8 until the user says they don't want to post
            //    another.

        } while (yesNoRequest(prompt: "Post another message (Y/N)? "))

        // 10. Display a list of the messages in each queue by using
        //     `ReceiveMessage`. Show at least the body and the attributes.

        print(rowOfStars)
        print("Contents of queue 1:")
        let q1DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q1Url)
        print("\n\nContents of queue 2:")
        let q2DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q2Url)
        print(rowOfStars)

        returnRequest(prompt: "\nPress return to clean up: ")

        // 11. Delete the received messages using `DeleteMessageBatch`.

        print("Deleting the messages from queue 1...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
deleteList: q1DeleteList)
        print("\nDeleting the messages from queue 2...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
deleteList: q2DeleteList)

        // 12. Unsubscribe and delete both queues.
```

```
        print("\nUnsubscribing from queue 1...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q1SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Unsubscribing from queue 2...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q2SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 1...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q1Url)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 2...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q2Url)
        )

        // 13. Delete the topic.

        print("Deleting the SNS topic...")
        _ = try await snsClient.deleteTopic(
            input: DeleteTopicInput(topicArn: topicArn)
        )
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.

- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code examples show how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB

- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.

- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples for Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to use Amazon SNS with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SNSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace SnsIntegration;

public class Function
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SNSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessRecordAsync(record, context);
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessRecordAsync(SNSEvent.SNSRecord record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed record
 {record.Sns.Message}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, snsEvent events.SNSEvent) {
 for _, record := range snsEvent.Records {
  processMessage(record)
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
}

func processMessage(record events.SNSEventRecord) {
 message := record.SNS.Message
 fmt.Printf("Processed message: %s\n", message)
 // TODO: Process your record here
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
```

```
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent.SNSRecord;


import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;

public class SNSEventHandler implements RequestHandler<SNSEvent, Boolean> {
    LambdaLogger logger;

    @Override
    public Boolean handleRequest(SNSEvent event, Context context) {
        logger = context.getLogger();
        List<SNSRecord> records = event.getRecords();
        if (!records.isEmpty()) {
            Iterator<SNSRecord> recordsIter = records.iterator();
            while (recordsIter.hasNext()) {
                processRecord(recordsIter.next());
            }
        }
```

```
        return Boolean.TRUE;
    }

    public void processRecord(SNSRecord record) {
        try {
            String message = record.getSNS().getMessage();
            logger.log("message: " + message);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record) {
  try {
    const message = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
```

```
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SNSEvent, Context, SNSHandler, SNSEventRecord } from "aws-lambda";

export const functionHandler: SNSHandler = async (
  event: SNSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SNSEventRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    const message: string = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

/*
Since native PHP support for AWS Lambda is not available, we are utilizing Bref's
 PHP functions runtime for AWS Lambda.
For more information on Bref's PHP runtime for Lambda, refer to: https://bref.sh/
docs/runtimes/function

Another approach would be to create a custom runtime.
A practical example can be found here: https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/apn/aws-
lambda-custom-runtime-for-php-a-practical-example/
*/

// Additional composer packages may be required when using Bref or any other PHP
 functions runtime.
// require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsHandler;

class Handler extends SnsHandler
{
    public function handleSns(SnsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $message = $record->getMessage();

            // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
```

```
            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be
 marked as failed

            echo "Processed Message: $message" . PHP_EOL;
        }
    }
}

return new Handler();
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event['Records']:
        process_message(record)
    print("done")

def process_message(record):
    try:
        message = record['Sns']['Message']
        print(f"Processed message {message}")
        # TODO; Process your record here

    except Exception as e:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise e
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].map { |record| process_message(record) }
end

def process_message(record)
  message = record['Sns']['Message']
  puts("Processing message: #{message}")
rescue StandardError => e
  puts("Error processing message: #{e}")
  raise
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sns::SnsEvent;
use aws_lambda_events::sns::SnsRecord;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use tracing::info;

// Built with the following dependencies:
//  aws_lambda_events = { version = "0.10.0", default-features = false, features
 = ["sns"] }
//  lambda_runtime = "0.8.1"
//  tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//  tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//  tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SnsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    for event in event.payload.records {
        process_record(&event)?;
    }

    Ok(())
}

fn process_record(record: &SnsRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    info!("Processing SNS Message: {}", record.sns.message);

    // Implement your record handling code here.

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Code examples for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Simple Queue Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon SQS Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon SQS.
- **Amazon SQS API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon SQS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSActions;
```

```
public static class HelloSQS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SQS! Following are some of your
 queues:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five queues.
        var response = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync(
            new ListQueuesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        foreach (var queue in response.QueueUrls)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue Url: {queue}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS sqs)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_sqs")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if(WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_sqs.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_sqs.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/sqs/SQSClient.h>
#include <aws/sqs/model/ListQueuesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello SQS" starter application that initializes an Amazon Simple Queue
 Service
 *  (Amazon SQS) client and lists the SQS queues in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_sqs'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allQueueUrls;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated
 response.
        do {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesRequest request;

            Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.ListQueues(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &pageOfQueueUrls =
 outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrls();
                if (!pageOfQueueUrls.empty()) {
                    allQueueUrls.insert(allQueueUrls.cend(),
 pageOfQueueUrls.cbegin(),
                                        pageOfQueueUrls.cend());
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ListQueues. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } while (!nextToken.empty());


        std::cout << "Hello Amazon SQS! You have " << allQueueUrls.size() << "
 queue"
                  << (allQueueUrls.size() == 1 ? "" : "s") << " in your account."
                  << std::endl;

        if (!allQueueUrls.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Here are your queue URLs." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::String &queueUrl: allQueueUrls) {
                std::cout << "  * " << queueUrl << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Queue Service
// (Amazon SQS) client and list the queues in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 sqsClient := sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the queues for your account.")
 var queueUrls []string
 paginator := sqs.NewListQueuesPaginator(sqsClient, &sqs.ListQueuesInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Printf("Couldn't get queues. Here's why: %v\n", err)
    break
   } else {
    queueUrls = append(queueUrls, output.QueueUrls...)
   }
  }
  if len(queueUrls) == 0 {
   fmt.Println("You don't have any queues!")
  } else {
   for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
    fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", queueUrl)
   }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.paginators.ListQueuesIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
```

```
 */
public class HelloSQS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        listQueues(sqsClient);
        sqsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listQueues(SqsClient sqsClient) {
        try {
            ListQueuesIterable listQueues = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginator();
            listQueues.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.queueUrls().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Queue URL: " +
 content.toLowerCase()));

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Initialize an Amazon SQS client and list queues.

```
import { SQSClient, paginateListQueues } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";
```

```
export const helloSqs = async () => {
  // The configuration object (`{}`) is required. If the region and credentials
  // are omitted, the SDK uses your local configuration if it exists.
  const client = new SQSClient({});

  // You can also use `ListQueuesCommand`, but to use that command you must
  // handle the pagination yourself. You can do that by sending the
 `ListQueuesCommand`
  // with the `NextToken` parameter from the previous request.
  const paginatedQueues = paginateListQueues({ client }, {});
  const queues = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedQueues) {
    if (page.QueueUrls?.length) {
      queues.push(...page.QueueUrls);
    }
  }

  const suffix = queues.length === 1 ? "" : "s";

  console.log(
    `Hello, Amazon SQS! You have ${queues.length} queue${suffix} in your
 account.`,
  );
  console.log(queues.map((t) => `  * ${t}`).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.kotlin.sqs
```

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.paginators.listQueuesPaginated
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform

suspend fun main() {
    listTopicsPag()
}

suspend fun listTopicsPag() {
    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient
            .listQueuesPaginated { }
            .transform { it.queueUrls?.forEach { queue -> emit(queue) } }
            .collect { queue ->
                println("The Queue URL is $queue")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "sqs-basics",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
```

```
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "sqs-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSSQS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift source code, `entry.swift`.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "sqs-basics",
```

```
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to list all of your available Amazon SQS queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        var queues: [String] = []
        let outputPages = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginated(
            input: ListQueuesInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let urls = output.queueUrls else {
                print("No queues found.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the queue URLs listed on this page, adding them
            // to the `queues` array.

            for queueUrl in urls {
                queues.append(queueUrl)
            }
        }

        print("You have \(queues.count) queues:")
        for queue in queues {
            print("   \(queue)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
```

```
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Amazon SQS
  - Actions for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddPermission with a CLI
    - Use ChangeMessageVisibility with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch with a CLI
    - Use CreateQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteMessageBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetQueueAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetQueueUrl with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use ListDeadLetterSourceQueues with a CLI
    - Use ListQueues with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use PurgeQueue with a CLI
    - Use ReceiveMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use RemovePermission with a CLI
    - Use SendMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use SendMessageBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI

    - Use SetQueueAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs
  - Create a web application that sends and retrieves messages by using Amazon SQS
  - Create a messenger application with Step Functions
  - Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
  - Create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK
  - Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
  - Manage large Amazon SQS messages using Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK
  - Receive and process Amazon S3 event notifications by using an AWS SDK
  - Publish Amazon SNS messages to Amazon SQS queues using an AWS SDK
  - Send and receive batches of messages with Amazon SQS using an AWS SDK
  - Use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET to publish and receive Amazon SQS messages
  - Use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the Java Message Service (JMS) interface for Amazon SQS
  - Work with queue tags and Amazon SQS using an AWS SDK
- Serverless examples for Amazon SQS
  - Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger
  - Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

Basic examples for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Simple Queue Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Amazon SQS
- Actions for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddPermission with a CLI
  - Use ChangeMessageVisibility with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch with a CLI
  - Use CreateQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DeleteMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteMessageBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetQueueAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetQueueUrl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDeadLetterSourceQueues with a CLI
- Use ListQueues with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PurgeQueue with a CLI
- Use ReceiveMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemovePermission with a CLI
- Use SendMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SendMessageBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetQueueAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSActions;

public static class HelloSQS
{
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SQS! Following are some of your
 queues:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five queues.
        var response = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync(
            new ListQueuesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        foreach (var queue in response.QueueUrls)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue Url: {queue}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)
```

```
# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS sqs)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_sqs")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed
 libraries for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if(WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory
 for running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line you
 may need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_sqs.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_sqs.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/sqs/SQSClient.h>
#include <aws/sqs/model/ListQueuesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello SQS" starter application that initializes an Amazon Simple Queue
 Service
 *  (Amazon SQS) client and lists the SQS queues in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_sqs'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allQueueUrls;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated
 response.
        do {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesRequest request;

            Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.ListQueues(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &pageOfQueueUrls =
 outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrls();
                if (!pageOfQueueUrls.empty()) {
                    allQueueUrls.insert(allQueueUrls.cend(),
 pageOfQueueUrls.cbegin(),
```

```
                                        pageOfQueueUrls.cend());
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ListQueues. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } while (!nextToken.empty());


        std::cout << "Hello Amazon SQS! You have " << allQueueUrls.size() << "
 queue"
                  << (allQueueUrls.size() == 1 ? "" : "s") << " in your account."
                  << std::endl;

        if (!allQueueUrls.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Here are your queue URLs." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::String &queueUrl: allQueueUrls) {
                std::cout << "  * " << queueUrl << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Queue Service
// (Amazon SQS) client and list the queues in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 sqsClient := sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the queues for your account.")
 var queueUrls []string
 paginator := sqs.NewListQueuesPaginator(sqsClient, &sqs.ListQueuesInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get queues. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   queueUrls = append(queueUrls, output.QueueUrls...)
  }
 }
 if len(queueUrls) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any queues!")
 } else {
  for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", queueUrl)
```

```
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.paginators.ListQueuesIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class HelloSQS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        listQueues(sqsClient);
        sqsClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void listQueues(SqsClient sqsClient) {
        try {
            ListQueuesIterable listQueues = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginator();
            listQueues.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.queueUrls().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Queue URL: " +
 content.toLowerCase()));

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Initialize an Amazon SQS client and list queues.

```
import { SQSClient, paginateListQueues } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

export const helloSqs = async () => {
  // The configuration object (`{}`) is required. If the region and credentials
  // are omitted, the SDK uses your local configuration if it exists.
  const client = new SQSClient({});

  // You can also use `ListQueuesCommand`, but to use that command you must
  // handle the pagination yourself. You can do that by sending the
 `ListQueuesCommand`
  // with the `NextToken` parameter from the previous request.
  const paginatedQueues = paginateListQueues({ client }, {});
```

```
  const queues = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedQueues) {
    if (page.QueueUrls?.length) {
      queues.push(...page.QueueUrls);
    }
  }

  const suffix = queues.length === 1 ? "" : "s";

  console.log(
    `Hello, Amazon SQS! You have ${queues.length} queue${suffix} in your
 account.`,
  );
  console.log(queues.map((t) => `  * ${t}`).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.kotlin.sqs

import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.paginators.listQueuesPaginated
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform

suspend fun main() {
    listTopicsPag()
}

suspend fun listTopicsPag() {
    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
```

```
        sqsClient
            .listQueuesPaginated { }
            .transform { it.queueUrls?.forEach { queue -> emit(queue) } }
            .collect { queue ->
                println("The Queue URL is $queue")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "sqs-basics",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
```

```
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module
 or a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "sqs-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSSQS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-
parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift source code, `entry.swift`.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "sqs-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to list all of your available Amazon SQS queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)
```

```
        var queues: [String] = []
        let outputPages = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginated(
            input: ListQueuesInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let urls = output.queueUrls else {
                print("No queues found.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the queue URLs listed on this page, adding them
            // to the `queues` array.

            for queueUrl in urls {
                queues.append(queueUrl)
            }
        }

        print("You have \(queues.count) queues:")
        for queue in queues {
            print("   \(queue)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Actions for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon SQS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon SQS API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Simple Queue Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddPermission with a CLI
- Use ChangeMessageVisibility with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch with a CLI
- Use CreateQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteMessageBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteQueue with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetQueueAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetQueueUrl with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListDeadLetterSourceQueues with a CLI
- Use ListQueues with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use PurgeQueue with a CLI
- Use ReceiveMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RemovePermission with a CLI
- Use SendMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SendMessageBatch with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use SetQueueAttributes with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AddPermission` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddPermission`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add a permission to a queue

This example enables the specified AWS account to send messages to the specified queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs add-permission --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --label SendMessagesFromMyQueue --aws-
account-ids 12345EXAMPLE --actions SendMessage
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see AddPermission in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example allows the specified AWS account to send messages from the specified queue.

```
Add-SQSPermission -Action SendMessage -AWSAccountId 80398EXAMPLE
 -Label SendMessagesFromMyQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see AddPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example allows the specified AWS account to send messages from the specified queue.

```
Add-SQSPermission -Action SendMessage -AWSAccountId 80398EXAMPLE
 -Label SendMessagesFromMyQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see AddPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ChangeMessageVisibility` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ChangeMessageVisibility`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Changes the visibility timeout of a message in an Amazon Simple Queue Service
//! (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param messageReceiptHandle: A message receipt handle.
  \param visibilityTimeoutSeconds: Visibility timeout in seconds.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::changeMessageVisibility(
        const Aws::String &queue_url,
        const Aws::String &messageReceiptHandle,
        int visibilityTimeoutSeconds,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest request;
```

```
    request.SetQueueUrl(queue_url);
    request.SetReceiptHandle(messageReceiptHandle);
    request.SetVisibilityTimeout(visibilityTimeoutSeconds);

    auto outcome = sqsClient.ChangeMessageVisibility(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully changed visibility of message " <<
                  messageReceiptHandle << " from queue " << queue_url <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error changing visibility of message from queue "
                  << queue_url << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change a message's timeout visibility

This example changes the specified message's timeout visibility to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds).

Command:

```
aws sqs change-message-visibility --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --receipt-handle AQEBTpyI...t6HyQg== --
visibility-timeout 36000
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive an Amazon SQS message and change its timeout visibility.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  ChangeMessageVisibilityCommand,
  SQSClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 1,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  const response = await client.send(
    new ChangeMessageVisibilityCommand({
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
```

```
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive an Amazon SQS message and change its timeout visibility.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region to us-west-2
AWS.config.update({ region: "us-west-2" });

// Create the SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var queueURL = "https://sqs.REGION.amazonaws.com/ACCOUNT-ID/QUEUE-NAME";

var params = {
  AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
  MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
  MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
  QueueUrl: queueURL,
};

sqs.receiveMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Receive Error", err);
  } else {
    // Make sure we have a message
    if (data.Messages != null) {
      var visibilityParams = {
        QueueUrl: queueURL,
        ReceiptHandle: data.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
        VisibilityTimeout: 20, // 20 second timeout
```

```
      };
      sqs.changeMessageVisibility(visibilityParams, function (err, data) {
        if (err) {
          console.log("Delete Error", err);
        } else {
          console.log("Timeout Changed", data);
        }
      });
    } else {
      console.log("No messages to change");
    }
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the visibility timeout for the message with the specified receipt handle in the specified queue to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 36000 seconds).

```
Edit-SQSMessageVisibility -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/8039EXAMPLE/MyQueue -ReceiptHandle AQEBgGDh...J/Iqww== -
VisibilityTimeout 36000
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the visibility timeout for the message with the specified receipt handle in the specified queue to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 36000 seconds).

```
Edit-SQSMessageVisibility -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/8039EXAMPLE/MyQueue -ReceiptHandle AQEBgGDh...J/Iqww== -
VisibilityTimeout 36000
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
sqs = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

begin
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  queue_url = sqs.get_queue_url(queue_name: queue_name).queue_url

  # Receive up to 10 messages
  receive_message_result_before = sqs.receive_message({
                                                        queue_url: queue_url,
                                                        max_number_of_messages:
 10
                                                      })

  puts "Before attempting to change message visibility timeout: received
 #{receive_message_result_before.messages.count} message(s)."

  receive_message_result_before.messages.each do |message|
    sqs.change_message_visibility({
                                    queue_url: queue_url,
                                    receipt_handle: message.receipt_handle,
```

```
                                    visibility_timeout: 30 # This message will
 not be visible for 30 seconds after first receipt.
                                 })
  end

  # Try to retrieve the original messages after setting their visibility timeout.
  receive_message_result_after = sqs.receive_message({
                                                       queue_url: queue_url,
                                                       max_number_of_messages: 10
                                                     })

  puts "\nAfter attempting to change message visibility timeout: received
 #{receive_message_result_after.messages.count} message(s)."
rescue Aws::SQS::Errors::NonExistentQueue
  puts "Cannot receive messages for a queue named '#{queue_name}', as it does not
 exist."
end
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To change multiple messages' timeout visibilities as a batch

This example changes the 2 specified messages' timeout visibilities to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds).

Command:

```
aws sqs change-message-visibility-batch --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --entries file://change-message-
visibility-batch.json
```

Input file (change-message-visibility-batch.json):

```
[
```

```
  {
    "Id": "FirstMessage",
        "ReceiptHandle": "AQEBhz2q...Jf3kaw==",
        "VisibilityTimeout": 36000
  },
  {
    "Id": "SecondMessage",
        "ReceiptHandle": "AQEBkTUH...HifSnw==",
        "VisibilityTimeout": 36000
  }
]
```

Output:

```
{
  "Successful": [
    {
      "Id": "SecondMessage"
    },
    {
      "Id": "FirstMessage"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example changes the visibility timeout for 2 messages with the specified receipt handles in the specified queue. The first message's visibility timeout is changed to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 36000 seconds). The second message's visibility timeout is changed to 5 hours (5 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 18000 seconds).

```
$changeVisibilityRequest1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.ChangeMessageVisibilityBatchRequestEntry
$changeVisibilityRequest1.Id = "Request1"
$changeVisibilityRequest1.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBd329...v6gl8Q=="
```

```
$changeVisibilityRequest1.VisibilityTimeout = 36000

$changeVisibilityRequest2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.ChangeMessageVisibilityBatchRequestEntry
$changeVisibilityRequest2.Id = "Request2"
$changeVisibilityRequest2.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBgGDh...J/Iqww=="
$changeVisibilityRequest2.VisibilityTimeout = 18000

Edit-SQSMessageVisibilityBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue -Entry $changeVisibilityRequest1,
 $changeVisibilityRequest2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {Request2, Request1}
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the visibility timeout for 2 messages with the specified receipt handles in the specified queue. The first message's visibility timeout is changed to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 36000 seconds). The second message's visibility timeout is changed to 5 hours (5 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 18000 seconds).

```
$changeVisibilityRequest1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.ChangeMessageVisibilityBatchRequestEntry
$changeVisibilityRequest1.Id = "Request1"
$changeVisibilityRequest1.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBd329...v6gl8Q=="
$changeVisibilityRequest1.VisibilityTimeout = 36000

$changeVisibilityRequest2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.ChangeMessageVisibilityBatchRequestEntry
$changeVisibilityRequest2.Id = "Request2"
$changeVisibilityRequest2.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBgGDh...J/Iqww=="
$changeVisibilityRequest2.VisibilityTimeout = 18000
```

```
Edit-SQSMessageVisibilityBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue -Entry $changeVisibilityRequest1,
 $changeVisibilityRequest2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {Request2, Request1}
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateQueue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateQueue`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Publish messages to queues
- Send and receive batches of messages
- Use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the JMS interface

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a queue with a specific name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
 useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue and send a message to it.

```
   using System;
   using System.Collections.Generic;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon;
   using Amazon.SQS;
   using Amazon.SQS.Model;

   public class CreateSendExample
   {
       // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
       private static readonly string QueueName = "Example_Queue";
       private static readonly RegionEndpoint ServiceRegion =
RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
       private static IAmazonSQS client;

       public static async Task Main()
       {
           client = new AmazonSQSClient(ServiceRegion);
           var createQueueResponse = await CreateQueue(client, QueueName);

           string queueUrl = createQueueResponse.QueueUrl;

           Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
           {
               { "Title",   new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
StringValue = "The Whistler" } },
               { "Author",  new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
StringValue = "John Grisham" } },
               { "WeeksOn", new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "Number",
StringValue = "6" } },
           };

           string messageBody = "Information about current NY Times fiction
bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.";

           var sendMsgResponse = await SendMessage(client, queueUrl,
messageBody, messageAttributes);
       }

       /// <summary>
       /// Creates a new Amazon SQS queue using the queue name passed to it
```

```
        /// in queueName.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing the name of the queue
        /// to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A CreateQueueResponse that contains information about the
        /// newly created queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<CreateQueueResponse> CreateQueue(IAmazonSQS
 client, string queueName)
        {
            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "DelaySeconds", "60" },
                    { "MessageRetentionPeriod", "86400" },
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created a queue with URL : {response.QueueUrl}");

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a message to an SQS queue.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to which to send the
        /// message.</param>
        /// <param name="messageBody">A string representing the body of the
        /// message to be sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <param name="messageAttributes">Attributes for the message to be
        /// sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <returns>A SendMessageResponse object that contains information
        /// about the message that was sent.</returns>
        public static async Task<SendMessageResponse> SendMessage(
            IAmazonSQS client,
            string queueUrl,
            string messageBody,
```

```
            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes)
        {
            var sendMessageRequest = new SendMessageRequest
            {
                DelaySeconds = 10,
                MessageAttributes = messageAttributes,
                MessageBody = messageBody,
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            };

            var response = await client.SendMessageAsync(sendMessageRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sent a message with id : {response.MessageId}");

            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Create an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueName: An Amazon SQS queue name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::createQueue(const Aws::String &queueName,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueRequest request;
    request.SetQueueName(queueName);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.CreateQueue(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created queue " << queueName << " with a queue
 URL "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl() << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating queue " << queueName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a queue

This example creates a queue with the specified name, sets the message retention period to 3 days (3 days * 24 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds), and sets the queue's dead letter queue to the specified queue with a maximum receive count of 1,000 messages.

Command:

```
aws sqs create-queue --queue-name MyQueue --attributes file://create-queue.json
```

Input file (create-queue.json):

```
{
```

```
  "RedrivePolicy": "{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDeadLetterQueue\",\"maxReceiveCount\":\"1000\"}",
  "MessageRetentionPeriod": "259200"
}
```

Output:

```
{
  "QueueUrl": "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue"
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}
```

```
// CreateQueue creates an Amazon SQS queue with the specified name. You can
 specify
// whether the queue is created as a FIFO queue.
func (actor SqsActions) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, queueName string,
 isFifoQueue bool) (string, error) {
 var queueUrl string
 queueAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoQueue {
  queueAttributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
 }
 queue, err := actor.SqsClient.CreateQueue(ctx, &sqs.CreateQueueInput{
  QueueName:  aws.String(queueName),
  Attributes: queueAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueName, err)
 } else {
  queueUrl = *queue.QueueUrl
 }

 return queueUrl, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ListQueuesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ListQueuesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SQSExample {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String queueName = "queue" + System.currentTimeMillis();
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        // Perform various tasks on the Amazon SQS queue.
        String queueUrl = createQueue(sqsClient, queueName);
        listQueues(sqsClient);
        listQueuesFilter(sqsClient, queueUrl);
        List<Message> messages = receiveMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl);
        sendBatchMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl);
        changeMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl, messages);
        deleteMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl, messages);
        sqsClient.close();
    }

    public static String createQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            System.out.println("\nCreate Queue");
```

```
            CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);

            System.out.println("\nGet queue url");

            GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void listQueues(SqsClient sqsClient) {

        System.out.println("\nList Queues");
        String prefix = "que";

        try {
            ListQueuesRequest listQueuesRequest =
ListQueuesRequest.builder().queueNamePrefix(prefix).build();
            ListQueuesResponse listQueuesResponse =
sqsClient.listQueues(listQueuesRequest);
            for (String url : listQueuesResponse.queueUrls()) {
                System.out.println(url);
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listQueuesFilter(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {
        // List queues with filters
        String namePrefix = "queue";
```

```
        ListQueuesRequest filterListRequest = ListQueuesRequest.builder()
                .queueNamePrefix(namePrefix)
                .build();

        ListQueuesResponse listQueuesFilteredResponse =
sqsClient.listQueues(filterListRequest);
        System.out.println("Queue URLs with prefix: " + namePrefix);
        for (String url : listQueuesFilteredResponse.queueUrls()) {
            System.out.println(url);
        }

        System.out.println("\nSend message");
        try {
            sqsClient.sendMessage(SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody("Hello world!")
                    .delaySeconds(10)
                    .build());

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void sendBatchMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {

        System.out.println("\nSend multiple messages");
        try {
            SendMessageBatchRequest sendMessageBatchRequest =
SendMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.entries(SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id1").messageBody("Hello
from msg 1").build(),

SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id2").messageBody("msg
2").delaySeconds(10)
                                    .build())
                    .build();
            sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendMessageBatchRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String
queueUrl) {

        System.out.println("\nReceive messages");
        try {
            ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    public static void changeMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {

        System.out.println("\nChange Message Visibility");
        try {

            for (Message message : messages) {
                ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest req =
ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest.builder()
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                        .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                        .visibilityTimeout(100)
                        .build();
                sqsClient.changeMessageVisibility(req);
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void deleteMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
 List<Message> messages) {
        System.out.println("\nDelete Messages");

        try {
            for (Message message : messages) {
                DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
 DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                        .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                        .build();
                sqsClient.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
            }
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS standard queue.

```
import { CreateQueueCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_NAME = "test-queue";

export const main = async (sqsQueueName = SQS_QUEUE_NAME) => {
```

```
  const command = new CreateQueueCommand({
    QueueName: sqsQueueName,
    Attributes: {
      DelaySeconds: "60",
      MessageRetentionPeriod: "86400",
    },
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue with long polling.

```
import { CreateQueueCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_NAME = "queue_name";

export const main = async (queueName = SQS_QUEUE_NAME) => {
  const response = await client.send(
    new CreateQueueCommand({
      QueueName: queueName,
      Attributes: {
        // When the wait time for the ReceiveMessage API action is greater than
 0,
        // long polling is in effect. The maximum long polling wait time is 20
        // seconds. Long polling helps reduce the cost of using Amazon SQS by,
        // eliminating the number of empty responses and false empty responses.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "20",
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS standard queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueName: "SQS_QUEUE_NAME",
  Attributes: {
    DelaySeconds: "60",
    MessageRetentionPeriod: "86400",
  },
};

sqs.createQueue(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrl);
  }
});
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue that waits for a message to arrive.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
```

```
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueName: "SQS_QUEUE_NAME",
  Attributes: {
    ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "20",
  },
};

sqs.createQueue(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrl);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createQueue(queueNameVal: String): String {
    println("Create Queue")
    val createQueueRequest =
        CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }
```

```
    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
        println("Get queue url")

        val getQueueUrlRequest =
            GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

        val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueUrlRequest)
        return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a queue with the specified name.

```
New-SQSQueue -QueueName MyQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a queue with the specified name.

```
New-SQSQueue -QueueName MyQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_queue(name, attributes=None):
    """
    Creates an Amazon SQS queue.

    :param name: The name of the queue. This is part of the URL assigned to the
 queue.
    :param attributes: The attributes of the queue, such as maximum message size
 or
                       whether it's a FIFO queue.
    :return: A Queue object that contains metadata about the queue and that can
 be used
             to perform queue operations like sending and receiving messages.
    """
    if not attributes:
        attributes = {}

    try:
        queue = sqs.create_queue(QueueName=name, Attributes=attributes)
        logger.info("Created queue '%s' with URL=%s", name, queue.url)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create queue named '%s'.", name)
        raise error
    else:
        return queue
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This code example demonstrates how to create a queue in Amazon Simple Queue
 Service (Amazon SQS).

require 'aws-sdk-sqs'

# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_name [String] The name of the queue.
# @return [Boolean] true if the queue was created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless queue_created?(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-queue'
#   )
def queue_created?(sqs_client, queue_name)
  sqs_client.create_queue(queue_name: queue_name)
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating queue: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Creating the queue named '#{queue_name}'..."

  if queue_created?(sqs_client, queue_name)
    puts 'Queue created.'
```

```
  else
    puts 'Queue not created.'
  end
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS standard queue.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->createqueue( iv_queuename = iv_queue_name ).        "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuedeldrecently.
        MESSAGE 'After deleting a queue, wait 60 seconds before creating another
 queue with the same name.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuenameexists.
        MESSAGE 'A queue with this name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue that waits for a message to arrive.

```
    TRY.
        DATA lt_attributes TYPE /aws1/cl_sqsqueueattrmap_w=>tt_queueattributemap.
        DATA ls_attribute TYPE /aws1/
cl_sqsqueueattrmap_w=>ts_queueattributemap_maprow.
```

```
        ls_attribute-key = 'ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds'.               " Time
in seconds for long polling, such as how long the call waits for a message to
arrive in the queue before returning. "
        ls_attribute-value = NEW /aws1/cl_sqsqueueattrmap_w( iv_value =
iv_wait_time ).
        INSERT ls_attribute INTO TABLE lt_attributes.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->createqueue(                  " oo_result is returned
for testing purposes. "
                iv_queuename = iv_queue_name
                it_attributes = lt_attributes ).
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuedeldrecently.
        MESSAGE 'After deleting a queue, wait 60 seconds before creating another
queue with the same name.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuenameexists.
        MESSAGE 'A queue with this name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await sqsClient.createQueue(
            input: CreateQueueInput(
                queueName: queueName
            )
        )
```

```
        guard let queueUrl = output.queueUrl else {
            print("No queue URL returned.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteMessage` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMessage`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Send and receive batches of messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue and then delete the message.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the AWS Region you want to use is different from
            // the AWS Region defined for the default user, supply
            // the specify your AWS Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();
            string queueName = "Example_Queue";

            var queueUrl = await GetQueueUrl(client, queueName);
            Console.WriteLine($"The SQS queue's URL is {queueUrl}");

            var response = await ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(client, queueUrl);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Message: {response.Messages[0]}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the queue URL for the queue named in the queueName
        /// property using the client object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon SQS client used to retrieve the
        /// queue URL.</param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing  name of the queue
        /// for which to retrieve the URL.</param>
        /// <returns>The URL of the queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetQueueUrl(IAmazonSQS client, string
 queueName)
        {
            var request = new GetQueueUrlRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = await
 client.GetQueueUrlAsync(request);
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the message from the quque at the URL passed in the
        /// queueURL parameters using the client.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The SQS client used to retrieve a message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue from which to retrieve
        /// a message.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the call to ReceiveMessageAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse>
 ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(IAmazonSQS client, string queueUrl)
        {
            // Receive a single message from the queue.
            var receiveMessageRequest = new ReceiveMessageRequest
            {
                AttributeNames = { "SentTimestamp" },
                MaxNumberOfMessages = 1,
                MessageAttributeNames = { "All" },
```

```
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                VisibilityTimeout = 0,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 0,
            };

            var receiveMessageResponse = await
 client.ReceiveMessageAsync(receiveMessageRequest);

            // Delete the received message from the queue.
            var deleteMessageRequest = new DeleteMessageRequest
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                ReceiptHandle = receiveMessageResponse.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
            };

            await client.DeleteMessageAsync(deleteMessageRequest);

            return receiveMessageResponse;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Delete a message from an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
```

```
  \param messageReceiptHandle: A message receipt handle.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::deleteMessage(const Aws::String &queueUrl,
                                const Aws::String &messageReceiptHandle,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueUrl);
    request.SetReceiptHandle(messageReceiptHandle);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.DeleteMessage(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted message from queue " << queueUrl
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting message from queue " << queueUrl << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a message

This example deletes the specified message.

Command:

```
aws sqs delete-message --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --receipt-handle AQEBRXTo...q2doVA==
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        try {
            for (Message message : messages) {
                DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                        .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                        .build();
                sqsClient.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
            }
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive and delete Amazon SQS messages.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  DeleteMessageCommand,
  SQSClient,
  DeleteMessageBatchCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  if (!Messages) {
    return;
  }

  if (Messages.length === 1) {
    console.log(Messages[0].Body);
```

```
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      }),
    );
  } else {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
          Id: message.MessageId,
          ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
        })),
      }),
    );
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive and delete Amazon SQS messages.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var queueURL = "SQS_QUEUE_URL";

var params = {
```

```
  AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
  MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
  MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
  QueueUrl: queueURL,
  VisibilityTimeout: 20,
  WaitTimeSeconds: 0,
};

sqs.receiveMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Receive Error", err);
  } else if (data.Messages) {
    var deleteParams = {
      QueueUrl: queueURL,
      ReceiptHandle: data.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
    };
    sqs.deleteMessage(deleteParams, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Delete Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Message Deleted", data);
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String) {
```

```
    println("Delete Messages from $queueUrlVal")

    val purgeRequest =
        PurgeQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.purgeQueue(purgeRequest)
        println("Messages are successfully deleted from $queueUrlVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteQueue(queueUrlVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteQueue(request)
        println("$queueUrlVal was deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the message with the specified receipt handle from the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSMessage -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -ReceiptHandle AQEBd329...v6gl8Q==
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the message with the specified receipt handle from the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSMessage -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -ReceiptHandle AQEBd329...v6gl8Q==
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_message(message):
    """
    Delete a message from a queue. Clients must delete messages after they
    are received and processed to remove them from the queue.

    :param message: The message to delete. The message's queue URL is contained
 in
                    the message's metadata.
    :return: None
    """
    try:
        message.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted message: %s", message.message_id)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete message: %s", message.message_id)
        raise error
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteMessageBatch` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Process S3 event notifications
- Publish messages to queues
- Send and receive batches of messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl,
List<Message> messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
```

```
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
_amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);
            int id = 1; // Ids must be unique within a batch delete request.
            for (const Aws::String &receiptHandle: receiptHandles) {
                Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry;
                entry.SetId(std::to_string(id));
                ++id;
                entry.SetReceiptHandle(receiptHandle);
                request.AddEntries(entry);
            }

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
                std::cout << "The batch deletion of messages was successful."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteMessageBatch. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete multiple messages as a batch

This example deletes the specified messages.

Command:

```
aws sqs delete-message-batch --queue-url https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --entries file://delete-message-batch.json
```

Input file (delete-message-batch.json):

```
[
  {
        "Id": "FirstMessage",
        "ReceiptHandle": "AQEB1mgl...Z4GuLw=="
  },
  {
    "Id": "SecondMessage",
```

```
        "ReceiptHandle": "AQEBLsYM...VQubAA=="
  }
]
```

Output:

```
{
  "Successful": [
    {
      "Id": "FirstMessage"
    },
    {
      "Id": "SecondMessage"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)
```

```
// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// DeleteMessages uses the DeleteMessageBatch action to delete a batch of
 messages from
// an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 messages []types.Message) error {
 entries := make([]types.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry, len(messages))
 for msgIndex := range messages {
  entries[msgIndex].Id = aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v", msgIndex))
  entries[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle = messages[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle
 }
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(ctx, &sqs.DeleteMessageBatchInput{
  Entries:  entries,
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  DeleteMessageCommand,
  SQSClient,
  DeleteMessageBatchCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  if (!Messages) {
    return;
  }

  if (Messages.length === 1) {
    console.log(Messages[0].Body);
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      }),
    );
  } else {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
          Id: message.MessageId,
```

```
          ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
        })),
      }),
    );
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes 2 messages with the specified receipt handles from the specified queue.

```
$deleteMessageRequest1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
$deleteMessageRequest1.Id = "Request1"
$deleteMessageRequest1.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBX2g4...wtJSQg=="

$deleteMessageRequest2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
$deleteMessageRequest2.Id = "Request2"
$deleteMessageRequest2.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBqOVY...KTsLYg=="

Remove-SQSMessageBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue -Entry $deleteMessageRequest1,
 $deleteMessageRequest2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {Request1, Request2}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes 2 messages with the specified receipt handles from the specified queue.

```
$deleteMessageRequest1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
$deleteMessageRequest1.Id = "Request1"
$deleteMessageRequest1.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBX2g4...wtJSQg=="

$deleteMessageRequest2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
$deleteMessageRequest2.Id = "Request2"
$deleteMessageRequest2.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBqOVY...KTsLYg=="

Remove-SQSMessageBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue -Entry $deleteMessageRequest1,
 $deleteMessageRequest2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {Request1, Request2}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_messages(queue, messages):
```

```
    """
    Delete a batch of messages from a queue in a single request.

    :param queue: The queue from which to delete the messages.
    :param messages: The list of messages to delete.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and
failed
             message deletions.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {"Id": str(ind), "ReceiptHandle": msg.receipt_handle}
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.delete_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info("Deleted %s",
messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle)
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Could not delete %s",
messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle
                )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete messages from queue %s", queue)
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        // Create the list of message entries.

        var entries: [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] = []
        var messageNumber = 1

        for handle in handles {
            let entry = SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry(
                id: "\(messageNumber)",
                receiptHandle: handle
            )
            entries.append(entry)
            messageNumber += 1
        }

        // Delete the messages.

        let output = try await sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(
            input: DeleteMessageBatchInput(
                entries: entries,
                queueUrl: queue
            )
        )

        // Get the lists of failed and successful deletions from the output.

        guard let failedEntries = output.failed else {
            print("Failed deletion list is missing!")
```

```
            return
        }
        guard let successfulEntries = output.successful else {
            print("Successful deletion list is missing!")
            return
        }

        // Display a list of the failed deletions along with their
        // corresponding explanation messages.

        if failedEntries.count != 0 {
            print("Failed deletions:")

            for entry in failedEntries {
                print("Message #\(entry.id ?? "<unknown>") failed:
\(entry.message ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
        } else {
            print("No failed deletions.")
        }

        // Output a list of the message numbers that were successfully deleted.

        if successfulEntries.count != 0 {
            var successes = ""

            for entry in successfulEntries {
                if successes.count == 0 {
                    successes = entry.id ?? "<unknown>"
                } else {
                    successes = "\(successes), \(entry.id ?? "<unknown>")"
                }
            }
            print("Succeeded: ", successes)
        } else {
            print("No successful deletions.")
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `DeleteQueue` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteQueue`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Publish messages to queues
- Send and receive batches of messages
- Use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the JMS interface

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a queue by using its URL.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a queue by its URL.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
{
    var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
        new DeleteQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl
        });
    return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Delete an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueURL: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::deleteQueue(const Aws::String &queueURL,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.DeleteQueue(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted queue with url " << queueURL <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting queue " << queueURL << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a queue

This example deletes the specified queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs delete-queue --queue-url https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyNewerQueue
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)
```

```
// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// DeleteQueue deletes an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteQueue(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) error {
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteQueue(ctx, &sqs.DeleteQueueInput{
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DeleteQueue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <queueName>

                Where:
                   queueName - The name of the Amazon SQS queue to delete.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String queueName = args[0];
        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        deleteSQSQueue(sqs, queueName);
        sqs.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import { DeleteQueueCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "test-queue-url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queueUrl });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon SQS queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueUrl: "SQS_QUEUE_URL",
};

sqs.deleteQueue(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String) {
    println("Delete Messages from $queueUrlVal")

    val purgeRequest =
        PurgeQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.purgeQueue(purgeRequest)
        println("Messages are successfully deleted from $queueUrlVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteQueue(queueUrlVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteQueue(request)
        println("$queueUrlVal was deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def remove_queue(queue):
    """
    Removes an SQS queue. When run against an AWS account, it can take up to
    60 seconds before the queue is actually deleted.

    :param queue: The queue to delete.
    :return: None
    """
    try:
        queue.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted queue with URL=%s.", queue.url)
    except ClientError as error:
```

```
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete queue with URL=%s!", queue.url)
        raise error
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
sqs = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

sqs.delete_queue(queue_url: URL)
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sqs->deletequeue( iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url ).
```

```
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue deleted' TYPE 'I'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        do {
            _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
                input: DeleteQueueInput(
                    queueUrl: queueUrl
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AWSSQS.QueueDoesNotExist {
            print("Error: The specified queue doesn't exist.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetQueueAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Process S3 event notifications
- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await
_amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

request.AddAttributeNames(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName, Aws::String>
&attributes =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
                const auto &iter = attributes.find(
                        Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);
                if (iter != attributes.end()) {
                    queueARN = iter->second;
                    std::cout << "The queue ARN '" << queueARN
                              << "' has been retrieved."
                              << std::endl;
                }

            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::GetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
```

```
            }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a queue's attributes

This example gets all of the specified queue's attributes.

Command:

```
aws sqs get-queue-attributes --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --attribute-names All
```

Output:

```
{
  "Attributes": {
    "ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible": "0",
    "RedrivePolicy": "{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDeadLetterQueue\",\"maxReceiveCount\":1000}",
    "MessageRetentionPeriod": "345600",
    "ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed": "0",
    "MaximumMessageSize": "262144",
    "CreatedTimestamp": "1442426968",
    "ApproximateNumberOfMessages": "0",
    "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": "0",
    "DelaySeconds": "0",
    "VisibilityTimeout": "30",
    "LastModifiedTimestamp": "1442426968",
    "QueueArn": "arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyNewQueue"
  }
}
```

This example gets only the specified queue's maximum message size and visibility timeout attributes.

Command:

```
aws sqs get-queue-attributes --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyNewQueue --attribute-
names MaximumMessageSize VisibilityTimeout
```

Output:

```
{
  "Attributes": {
    "VisibilityTimeout": "30",
    "MaximumMessageSize": "262144"
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
```

```
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// GetQueueArn uses the GetQueueAttributes action to get the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
// of an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetQueueArn(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string)
 (string, error) {
 var queueArn string
 arnAttributeName := types.QueueAttributeNameQueueArn
 attribute, err := actor.SqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(ctx,
 &sqs.GetQueueAttributesInput{
  QueueUrl:       aws.String(queueUrl),
  AttributeNames: []types.QueueAttributeName{arnAttributeName},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get ARN for queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  queueArn = attribute.Attributes[string(arnAttributeName)]
 }
 return queueArn, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { GetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";
```

```
const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue-url";

export const getQueueAttributes = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
    AttributeNames: ["DelaySeconds"],
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '747a1192-c334-5682-a508-4cd5e8dc4e79',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Attributes: { DelaySeconds: '1' }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all attributes for the specified queue.

```
Get-SQSQueueAttribute -AttributeName All -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
VisibilityTimeout                       : 30
DelaySeconds                            : 0
```

```
MaximumMessageSize                    : 262144
MessageRetentionPeriod                : 345600
ApproximateNumberOfMessages           : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed    : 0
CreatedTimestamp                      : 2/11/2015 5:53:35 PM
LastModifiedTimestamp                 : 12/29/2015 2:23:17 PM
QueueARN                              : arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue
Policy                                :
 {"Version":"2008-10-17","Id":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue/
SQSDefaultPolicy","Statement":[{"Sid":"Sid14

 495134224EX","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"*"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80
                                        398EXAMPLE:MyQueue","Condition":
{"ArnEquals":{"aws:SourceArn":"arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyTopic"}}},
{"Sid":

 "SendMessagesFromMyQueue","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"80398EXAMPLE"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"
                                        arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue"}]}
Attributes                            : {[QueueArn, arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue], [ApproximateNumberOfMessages, 0],
                                        [ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible,
 0], [ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed, 0]...}
```

Example 2: This example lists separately only the specified attributes for the specified queue.

```
Get-SQSQueueAttribute -AttributeName MaximumMessageSize, VisibilityTimeout -
QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
VisibilityTimeout                     : 30
DelaySeconds                          : 0
MaximumMessageSize                    : 262144
MessageRetentionPeriod                : 345600
ApproximateNumberOfMessages           : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed    : 0
```

```
CreatedTimestamp                      : 2/11/2015 5:53:35 PM
LastModifiedTimestamp                 : 12/29/2015 2:23:17 PM
QueueARN                              : arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue
Policy                                :
 {"Version":"2008-10-17","Id":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue/
SQSDefaultPolicy","Statement":[{"Sid":"Sid14

 495134224EX","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"*"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80
                                          398EXAMPLE:MyQueue","Condition":
{"ArnEquals":{"aws:SourceArn":"arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyTopic"}}},
{"Sid":

 "SendMessagesFromMyQueue","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"80398EXAMPLE"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"
                                          arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue"}]}
Attributes                            : {[MaximumMessageSize, 262144],
 [VisibilityTimeout, 30]}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all attributes for the specified queue.

```
Get-SQSQueueAttribute -AttributeName All -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
VisibilityTimeout                     : 30
DelaySeconds                          : 0
MaximumMessageSize                    : 262144
MessageRetentionPeriod                : 345600
ApproximateNumberOfMessages           : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed    : 0
CreatedTimestamp                      : 2/11/2015 5:53:35 PM
LastModifiedTimestamp                 : 12/29/2015 2:23:17 PM
QueueARN                              : arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue
```

```
Policy                                  :
 {"Version":"2008-10-17","Id":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue/
SQSDefaultPolicy","Statement":[{"Sid":"Sid14

 495134224EX","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"*"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80
                                         398EXAMPLE:MyQueue","Condition":
{"ArnEquals":{"aws:SourceArn":"arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyTopic"}}},
{"Sid":

 "SendMessagesFromMyQueue","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"80398EXAMPLE"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"
                                         arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue"}]}
Attributes                              : {[QueueArn, arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue], [ApproximateNumberOfMessages, 0],
                                         [ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible,
 0], [ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed, 0]...}
```

Example 2: This example lists separately only the specified attributes for the specified queue.

```
Get-SQSQueueAttribute -AttributeName MaximumMessageSize, VisibilityTimeout -
QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
VisibilityTimeout                       : 30
DelaySeconds                            : 0
MaximumMessageSize                      : 262144
MessageRetentionPeriod                  : 345600
ApproximateNumberOfMessages             : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed    : 0
CreatedTimestamp                        : 2/11/2015 5:53:35 PM
LastModifiedTimestamp                   : 12/29/2015 2:23:17 PM
QueueARN                                : arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue
Policy                                  :
 {"Version":"2008-10-17","Id":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue/
SQSDefaultPolicy","Statement":[{"Sid":"Sid14
```

```
 495134224EX","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"*"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80
                                          398EXAMPLE:MyQueue","Condition":
{"ArnEquals":{"aws:SourceArn":"arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyTopic"}}},
{"Sid":

 "SendMessagesFromMyQueue","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"80398EXAMPLE"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"
                                          arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue"}]}
Attributes                              : {[MaximumMessageSize, 262144],
 [VisibilityTimeout, 30]}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(
            input: GetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributeNames: [
                    .approximatenumberofmessages,
                    .maximummessagesize
                ],
                queueUrl: url
            )
        )

        guard let attributes = output.attributes else {
```

```
            print("No queue attributes returned.")
            return
        }

        for (attr, value) in attributes {
            switch(attr) {
            case "ApproximateNumberOfMessages":
                print("Approximate message count: \(value)")
            case "MaximumMessageSize":
                print("Maximum message size: \(value)kB")
            default:
                continue
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `GetQueueUrl` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

public class GetQueueUrl
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Amazon SQS client object and then calls the
```

```
        /// GetQueueUrlAsync method to retrieve the URL of an Amazon SQS
        /// queue.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the Amazon SQS message queue is not in the same AWS Region as
your
            // default user, you need to provide the AWS Region as a parameter to
the
            // client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();

            string queueName = "New-Example-Queue";

            try
            {
                var response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(queueName);

                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"The URL for {queueName} is:
{response.QueueUrl}");
                }
            }
            catch (QueueDoesNotExistException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine($"The queue {queueName} was not found.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Get the URL for an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueName: An Amazon SQS queue name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::getQueueUrl(const Aws::String &queueName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueUrlRequest request;
    request.SetQueueName(queueName);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueUrlOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.GetQueueUrl(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Queue " << queueName << " has url " <<
                  outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting url for queue " << queueName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a queue URL

This example gets the specified queue's URL.

Command:

```
aws sqs get-queue-url --queue-name MyQueue
```

Output:

```
{
  "QueueUrl": "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue"
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the URL for an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import { GetQueueUrlCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_NAME = "test-queue";

export const main = async (queueName = SQS_QUEUE_NAME) => {
  const command = new GetQueueUrlCommand({ QueueName: queueName });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the URL for an Amazon SQS queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
```

```
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueName: "SQS_QUEUE_NAME",
};

sqs.getQueueUrl(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrl);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the URL of the queue with the specified name.

```
Get-SQSQueueUrl -QueueName MyQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the URL of the queue with the specified name.

```
Get-SQSQueueUrl -QueueName MyQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_queue(name):
    """
    Gets an SQS queue by name.

    :param name: The name that was used to create the queue.
    :return: A Queue object.
    """
    try:
        queue = sqs.get_queue_by_name(QueueName=name)
        logger.info("Got queue '%s' with URL=%s", name, queue.url)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get queue named %s.", name)
        raise error
    else:
        return queue
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sqs->getqueueurl( iv_queuename = iv_queue_name ).        "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'Queue URL retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuedoesnotexist.
       MESSAGE 'The requested queue does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListDeadLetterSourceQueues` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDeadLetterSourceQueues`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list dead letter source queues

This example lists the queues that are associated with the specified dead letter source queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs list-dead-letter-source-queues --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Output:

```
{
  "queueUrls": [
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue",
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListDeadLetterSourceQueues in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the URLs of any queues that rely on the specified queue as their dead letter queue.

```
Get-SQSDeadLetterSourceQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
```

- For API details, see ListDeadLetterSourceQueues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the URLs of any queues that rely on the specified queue as their dead letter queue.

```
Get-SQSDeadLetterSourceQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
```

- For API details, see ListDeadLetterSourceQueues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListQueues` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListQueues`.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! List the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queues within an AWS
 account.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SQS::listQueues(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesRequest listQueuesRequest;

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allQueueUrls;

    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listQueuesRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
        const Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesOutcome outcome = sqsClient.ListQueues(
```

```
                listQueuesRequest);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &queueUrls =
 outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrls();
            allQueueUrls.insert(allQueueUrls.end(),
                                queueUrls.begin(),
                                queueUrls.end());

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing queues: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allQueueUrls.size() << " Amazon SQS queue(s) found." <<
 std::endl;
    for (const auto &iter: allQueueUrls) {
        std::cout << " " << iter << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list queues

This example lists all queues.

Command:

```
aws sqs list-queues
```

Output:

```
{
  "QueueUrls": [
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue",
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue",
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue",
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/TestQueue1",
        "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/TestQueue2"
  ]
}
```

This example lists only queues that start with "My".

Command:

```
aws sqs list-queues --queue-name-prefix My
```

Output:

```
{
  "QueueUrls": [
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue",
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue",
    "https://queue.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue"
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main
```

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Queue Service
// (Amazon SQS) client and list the queues in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 sqsClient := sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the queues for your account.")
 var queueUrls []string
 paginator := sqs.NewListQueuesPaginator(sqsClient, &sqs.ListQueuesInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get queues. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   queueUrls = append(queueUrls, output.QueueUrls...)
  }
 }
 if len(queueUrls) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any queues!")
 } else {
  for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", queueUrl)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        String prefix = "que";

        try {
            ListQueuesRequest listQueuesRequest =
ListQueuesRequest.builder().queueNamePrefix(prefix).build();
            ListQueuesResponse listQueuesResponse =
sqsClient.listQueues(listQueuesRequest);
            for (String url : listQueuesResponse.queueUrls()) {
                System.out.println(url);
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your Amazon SQS queues.

```
import { paginateListQueues, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const paginatedListQueues = paginateListQueues({ client }, {});

  /** @type {string[]} */
  const urls = [];
  for await (const page of paginatedListQueues) {
    const nextUrls = page.QueueUrls?.filter((qurl) => !!qurl) || [];
    urls.push(...nextUrls);
    for (const url of urls) {
      console.log(url);
    }
  }

  return urls;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your Amazon SQS queues.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {};

sqs.listQueues(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrls);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listQueues() {
    println("\nList Queues")

    val prefix = "que"
    val listQueuesRequest =
        ListQueuesRequest {
            queueNamePrefix = prefix
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.listQueues(listQueuesRequest)
        response.queueUrls?.forEach { url ->
            println(url)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all queues.

```
Get-SQSQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/AnotherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/DeadLetterQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Example 2: This example lists any queues that start with the specified name.

```
Get-SQSQueue -QueueNamePrefix My
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all queues.

```
Get-SQSQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/AnotherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/DeadLetterQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Example 2: This example lists any queues that start with the specified name.

```
Get-SQSQueue -QueueNamePrefix My
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_queues(prefix=None):
    """
    Gets a list of SQS queues. When a prefix is specified, only queues with names
    that start with the prefix are returned.

    :param prefix: The prefix used to restrict the list of returned queues.
    :return: A list of Queue objects.
    """
    if prefix:
        queue_iter = sqs.queues.filter(QueueNamePrefix=prefix)
    else:
        queue_iter = sqs.queues.all()
    queues = list(queue_iter)
    if queues:
        logger.info("Got queues: %s", ", ".join([q.url for q in queues]))
    else:
        logger.warning("No queues found.")
    return queues
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @example
#   list_queue_urls(Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
```

```
def list_queue_urls(sqs_client)
  queues = sqs_client.list_queues

  queues.queue_urls.each do |url|
    puts url
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error listing queue URLs: #{e.message}"
end

# Lists the attributes of a queue in Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
#
# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @example
#   list_queue_attributes(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
#   )
def list_queue_attributes(sqs_client, queue_url)
  attributes = sqs_client.get_queue_attributes(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    attribute_names: ['All']
  )

  attributes.attributes.each do |key, value|
    puts "#{key}: #{value}"
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting queue attributes: #{e.message}"
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts 'Listing available queue URLs...'
  list_queue_urls(sqs_client)

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)
```

```
  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  puts "\nGetting information about queue '#{queue_name}'..."
  list_queue_attributes(sqs_client, queue_url)
end
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve the first Amazon SQS queue listed in the Region.

```
async fn find_first_queue(client: &Client) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let queues = client.list_queues().send().await?;
    let queue_urls = queues.queue_urls();
    Ok(queue_urls
        .first()
        .expect("No queues in this account and Region. Create a queue to
 proceed.")
        .to_string())
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->listqueues( ).        " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of queues.' TYPE 'I'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        var queues: [String] = []
        let outputPages = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginated(
            input: ListQueuesInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.
```

```
        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let urls = output.queueUrls else {
                print("No queues found.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the queue URLs listed on this page, adding them
            // to the `queues` array.

            for queueUrl in urls {
                queues.append(queueUrl)
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use PurgeQueue with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use PurgeQueue.

CLI

AWS CLI

To purge a queue

This example deletes all messages in the specified queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs purge-queue --queue-url https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyNewQueue
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see PurgeQueue in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes all messages from the specified queue.

```
Clear-SQSQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see PurgeQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes all messages from the specified queue.

```
Clear-SQSQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see PurgeQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ReceiveMessage` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Manage large messages using S3
- Process S3 event notifications
- Publish messages to queues
- Send and receive batches of messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive messages from a queue by using its URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue, and then delete the message.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the AWS Region you want to use is different from
            // the AWS Region defined for the default user, supply
            // the specify your AWS Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();
            string queueName = "Example_Queue";

            var queueUrl = await GetQueueUrl(client, queueName);
            Console.WriteLine($"The SQS queue's URL is {queueUrl}");

            var response = await ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(client, queueUrl);

            Console.WriteLine($"Message: {response.Messages[0]}");
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the queue URL for the queue named in the queueName
        /// property using the client object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon SQS client used to retrieve the
        /// queue URL.</param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing  name of the queue
        /// for which to retrieve the URL.</param>
        /// <returns>The URL of the queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetQueueUrl(IAmazonSQS client, string
 queueName)
        {
            var request = new GetQueueUrlRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = await
 client.GetQueueUrlAsync(request);
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the message from the quque at the URL passed in the
        /// queueURL parameters using the client.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The SQS client used to retrieve a message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue from which to retrieve
        /// a message.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the call to ReceiveMessageAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse>
 ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(IAmazonSQS client, string queueUrl)
        {
            // Receive a single message from the queue.
            var receiveMessageRequest = new ReceiveMessageRequest
            {
                AttributeNames = { "SentTimestamp" },
                MaxNumberOfMessages = 1,
                MessageAttributeNames = { "All" },
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                VisibilityTimeout = 0,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 0,
            };
```

```
            var receiveMessageResponse = await
 client.ReceiveMessageAsync(receiveMessageRequest);

            // Delete the received message from the queue.
            var deleteMessageRequest = new DeleteMessageRequest
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                ReceiptHandle = receiveMessageResponse.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
            };

            await client.DeleteMessageAsync(deleteMessageRequest);

            return receiveMessageResponse;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Receive a message from an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::receiveMessage(const Aws::String &queueUrl,
```

```
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueUrl);
    request.SetMaxNumberOfMessages(1);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.ReceiveMessage(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {

        const Aws::Vector<Aws::SQS::Model::Message> &messages =
                outcome.GetResult().GetMessages();
        if (!messages.empty()) {
            const Aws::SQS::Model::Message &message = messages[0];
            std::cout << "Received message:" << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  MessageId: " << message.GetMessageId() << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  ReceiptHandle: " << message.GetReceiptHandle() <<
 std::endl;
            std::cout << "  Body: " << message.GetBody() << std::endl <<
 std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "No messages received from queue " << queueUrl <<
                      std::endl;

        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error receiving message from queue " << queueUrl << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To receive a message

This example receives up to 10 available messages, returning all available attributes.

Command:

```
aws sqs receive-message --queue-url https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --attribute-names All --message-attribute-names All --max-number-of-messages 10
```

Output:

```
{
  "Messages": [
    {
      "Body": "My first message.",
      "ReceiptHandle": "AQEBzbVv...fqNzFw==",
      "MD5OfBody": "1000f835...a35411fa",
      "MD5OfMessageAttributes": "9424c491...26bc3ae7",
      "MessageId": "d6790f8d-d575-4f01-bc51-40122EXAMPLE",
      "Attributes": {
        "ApproximateFirstReceiveTimestamp": "1442428276921",
        "SenderId": "AIDAIAZKMSNQ7TEXAMPLE",
        "ApproximateReceiveCount": "5",
        "SentTimestamp": "1442428276921"
      },
      "MessageAttributes": {
        "PostalCode": {
          "DataType": "String",
          "StringValue": "ABC123"
        },
        "City": {
          "DataType": "String",
          "StringValue": "Any City"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

This example receives the next available message, returning only the SenderId and SentTimestamp attributes as well as the PostalCode message attribute.

Command:

```
aws sqs receive-message --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --attribute-
names SenderId SentTimestamp --message-attribute-names PostalCode
```

Output:

```
{
  "Messages": [
    {
      "Body": "My first message.",
      "ReceiptHandle": "AQEB6nR4...HzlvZQ==",
      "MD5OfBody": "1000f835...a35411fa",
      "MD5OfMessageAttributes": "b8e89563...e088e74f",
      "MessageId": "d6790f8d-d575-4f01-bc51-40122EXAMPLE",
      "Attributes": {
        "SenderId": "AIDAIAZKMSNQ7TEXAMPLE",
        "SentTimestamp": "1442428276921"
      },
      "MessageAttributes": {
        "PostalCode": {
          "DataType": "String",
          "StringValue": "ABC123"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// GetMessages uses the ReceiveMessage action to get messages from an Amazon SQS
 queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 maxMessages int32, waitTime int32) ([]types.Message, error) {
 var messages []types.Message
 result, err := actor.SqsClient.ReceiveMessage(ctx, &sqs.ReceiveMessageInput{
  QueueUrl:            aws.String(queueUrl),
  MaxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
  WaitTimeSeconds:     waitTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't get messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl,
 err)
 } else {
  messages = result.Messages
 }
 return messages, err
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        try {
            ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  DeleteMessageCommand,
  SQSClient,
  DeleteMessageBatchCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  if (!Messages) {
    return;
  }

  if (Messages.length === 1) {
    console.log(Messages[0].Body);
```

```
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      }),
    );
  } else {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
          Id: message.MessageId,
          ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
        })),
      }),
    );
  }
};
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue using long-poll support.

```
import { ReceiveMessageCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue-url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new ReceiveMessageCommand({
    AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
    MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
    MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
    // The duration (in seconds) for which the call waits for a message
    // to arrive in the queue before returning. If a message is available,
    // the call returns sooner than WaitTimeSeconds. If no messages are
    // available and the wait time expires, the call returns successfully
    // with an empty list of messages.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/APIReference/
API_ReceiveMessage.html#API_ReceiveMessage_RequestSyntax
    WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
  });
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue using long-poll support.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var queueURL = "SQS_QUEUE_URL";

var params = {
  AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
  MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
  MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
  QueueUrl: queueURL,
  WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
};

sqs.receiveMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun receiveMessages(queueUrlVal: String?) {
    println("Retrieving messages from $queueUrlVal")

    val receiveMessageRequest =
        ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest)
        response.messages?.forEach { message ->
            println(message.body)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists information for up to the next 10 messages to be received for the specified queue. The information will contain values for the specified message attributes, if they exist.

```
Receive-SQSMessage -AttributeName SenderId, SentTimestamp -MessageAttributeName
 StudentName, StudentGrade -MessageCount 10 -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
Attributes             : {[SenderId, AIDAIAZKMSNQ7TEXAMPLE], [SentTimestamp,
 1451495923744]}
Body                   : Information about John Doe's grade.
MD5OfBody              : ea572796e3c231f974fe75d89EXAMPLE
MD5OfMessageAttributes : 48c1ee811f0fe7c4e88fbe0f5EXAMPLE
MessageAttributes      : {[StudentGrade, Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue],
 [StudentName, Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue]}
MessageId              : 53828c4b-631b-469b-8833-c093cEXAMPLE
ReceiptHandle          : AQEBpfGp...20Q5cg==
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists information for up to the next 10 messages to be received for the specified queue. The information will contain values for the specified message attributes, if they exist.

```
Receive-SQSMessage -AttributeName SenderId, SentTimestamp -MessageAttributeName
 StudentName, StudentGrade -MessageCount 10 -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
Attributes             : {[SenderId, AIDAIAZKMSNQ7TEXAMPLE], [SentTimestamp,
 1451495923744]}
Body                   : Information about John Doe's grade.
MD5OfBody              : ea572796e3c231f974fe75d89EXAMPLE
```

```
MD5OfMessageAttributes : 48c1ee811f0fe7c4e88fbe0f5EXAMPLE
MessageAttributes      : {[StudentGrade, Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue],
 [StudentName, Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue]}
MessageId              : 53828c4b-631b-469b-8833-c093cEXAMPLE
ReceiptHandle          : AQEBpfGp...20Q5cg==
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def receive_messages(queue, max_number, wait_time):
    """
    Receive a batch of messages in a single request from an SQS queue.

    :param queue: The queue from which to receive messages.
    :param max_number: The maximum number of messages to receive. The actual
 number
                        of messages received might be less.
    :param wait_time: The maximum time to wait (in seconds) before returning.
 When
                       this number is greater than zero, long polling is used.
 This
                       can result in reduced costs and fewer false empty
 responses.
    :return: The list of Message objects received. These each contain the body
             of the message and metadata and custom attributes.
    """
    try:
        messages = queue.receive_messages(
            MessageAttributeNames=["All"],
            MaxNumberOfMessages=max_number,
            WaitTimeSeconds=wait_time,
        )
        for msg in messages:
```

```
            logger.info("Received message: %s: %s", msg.message_id, msg.body)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't receive messages from queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return messages
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

# Receives messages in a queue in Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
#
# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @param max_number_of_messages [Integer] The maximum number of messages
#   to receive. This number must be 10 or less. The default is 10.
# @example
#   receive_messages(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue',
#     10
#   )
def receive_messages(sqs_client, queue_url, max_number_of_messages = 10)
  if max_number_of_messages > 10
    puts 'Maximum number of messages to receive must be 10 or less. ' \
      'Stopping program.'
```

```
    return
  end

  response = sqs_client.receive_message(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    max_number_of_messages: max_number_of_messages
  )

  if response.messages.count.zero?
    puts 'No messages to receive, or all messages have already ' \
      'been previously received.'
    return
  end

  response.messages.each do |message|
    puts '-' * 20
    puts "Message body: #{message.body}"
    puts "Message ID:   #{message.message_id}"
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error receiving messages: #{e.message}"
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  max_number_of_messages = 10

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)

  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Receiving messages from queue '#{queue_name}'..."

  receive_messages(sqs_client, queue_url, max_number_of_messages)
end
```

```
# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn receive(client: &Client, queue_url: &String) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let rcv_message_output =
 client.receive_message().queue_url(queue_url).send().await?;

    println!("Messages from queue with url: {}", queue_url);

    for message in rcv_message_output.messages.unwrap_or_default() {
        println!("Got the message: {:#?}", message);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sqs->receivemessage( iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url ).    "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
       DATA(lt_messages) = oo_result->get_messages( ).
       MESSAGE 'Message received from SQS queue.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsoverlimit.
       MESSAGE 'Maximum number of in-flight messages reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue using long-poll support.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sqs->receivemessage(           " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
               iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url
               iv_waittimeseconds = iv_wait_time ).    " Time in seconds for
long polling, such as how long the call waits for a message to arrive in the
queue before returning. " ).
       DATA(lt_messages) = oo_result->get_messages( ).
       MESSAGE 'Message received from SQS queue.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsoverlimit.
       MESSAGE 'Maximum number of in-flight messages reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await sqsClient.receiveMessage(
            input: ReceiveMessageInput(
                maxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
                queueUrl: url
            )
        )

        guard let messages = output.messages else {
            print("No messages received.")
            return
        }

        for message in messages {
            print("Message ID:     \(message.messageId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Receipt handle: \(message.receiptHandle ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(message.body ?? "<body missing>")
            print("---")
        }
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `RemovePermission` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemovePermission`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a permission

This example removes the permission with the specified label from the specified queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs remove-permission --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --label SendMessagesFromMyQueue
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes the permission settings with the specified label from the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSPermission -Label SendMessagesFromMyQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the permission settings with the specified label from the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSPermission -Label SendMessagesFromMyQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use SendMessage with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use SendMessage.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Manage large messages using S3
- Send and receive batches of messages

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS queue and send a message to it.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class CreateSendExample
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly string QueueName = "Example_Queue";
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ServiceRegion =
RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
        private static IAmazonSQS client;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            client = new AmazonSQSClient(ServiceRegion);
            var createQueueResponse = await CreateQueue(client, QueueName);
```

```
            string queueUrl = createQueueResponse.QueueUrl;

            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
 Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
            {
                { "Title",   new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "The Whistler" } },
                { "Author",  new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "John Grisham" } },
                { "WeeksOn", new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "Number",
 StringValue = "6" } },
            };

            string messageBody = "Information about current NY Times fiction
 bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.";

            var sendMsgResponse = await SendMessage(client, queueUrl,
 messageBody, messageAttributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon SQS queue using the queue name passed to it
        /// in queueName.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing the name of the queue
        /// to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A CreateQueueResponse that contains information about the
        /// newly created queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<CreateQueueResponse> CreateQueue(IAmazonSQS
 client, string queueName)
        {
            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "DelaySeconds", "60" },
                    { "MessageRetentionPeriod", "86400" },
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateQueueAsync(request);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Created a queue with URL : {response.QueueUrl}");

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a message to an SQS queue.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to which to send the
        /// message.</param>
        /// <param name="messageBody">A string representing the body of the
        /// message to be sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <param name="messageAttributes">Attributes for the message to be
        /// sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <returns>A SendMessageResponse object that contains information
        /// about the message that was sent.</returns>
        public static async Task<SendMessageResponse> SendMessage(
            IAmazonSQS client,
            string queueUrl,
            string messageBody,
            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes)
        {
            var sendMessageRequest = new SendMessageRequest
            {
                DelaySeconds = 10,
                MessageAttributes = messageAttributes,
                MessageBody = messageBody,
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            };

            var response = await client.SendMessageAsync(sendMessageRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sent a message with id : {response.MessageId}");

            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Send a message to an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param messageBody: A message body.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::sendMessage(const Aws::String &queueUrl,
                              const Aws::String &messageBody,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SendMessageRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueUrl);
    request.SetMessageBody(messageBody);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SendMessageOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.SendMessage(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully sent message to " << queueUrl <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error sending message to " << queueUrl << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To send a message

This example sends a message with the specified message body, delay period, and message attributes, to the specified queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs send-message --queue-url https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --message-body "Information about the largest city in Any Region." --delay-seconds 10 --message-attributes file://send-message.json
```

Input file (send-message.json):

```
{
  "City": {
    "DataType": "String",
    "StringValue": "Any City"
  },
  "Greeting": {
    "DataType": "Binary",
    "BinaryValue": "Hello, World!"
  },
  "Population": {
    "DataType": "Number",
    "StringValue": "1250800"
  }
}
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
  "MD5OfMessageBody": "51b0a325...39163aa0",
  "MD5OfMessageAttributes": "00484c68...59e48f06",
  "MessageId": "da68f62c-0c07-4bee-bf5f-7e856EXAMPLE"
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Two examples of the `SendMessage` operation follow:

- Send a message with a body and a delay
- Send a message with a body and message attributes

Send a message with a body and a delay.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class SendMessages {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <queueName> <message>

                Where:
                   queueName - The name of the queue.
                   message - The message to send.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String queueName = args[0];
        String message = args[1];
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
        sendMessage(sqsClient, queueName, message);
        sqsClient.close();
    }

    public static void sendMessage(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName, String
 message) {
        try {
            CreateQueueRequest request = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();
            sqsClient.createQueue(request);

            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            SendMessageRequest sendMsgRequest = SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody(message)
                    .delaySeconds(5)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.sendMessage(sendMsgRequest);
```

```
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Send a message with a body and message attributes.

```
    /**
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to add message attributes to a message.
     * Each attribute must specify a name, value, and data type. You use a Java
 Map to supply the attributes. The map's
     * key is the attribute name, and you specify the map's entry value using a
 builder that includes the attribute
     * value and data type.</p>
     *
     * <p>The data type must start with one of "String", "Number" or "Binary".
 You can optionally
     * define a custom extension by using a "." and your extension.</p>
     *
     * <p>The SQS Developer Guide provides more information on @see <a
     * href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-message-metadata.html#sqs-message-attributes">message
     * attributes</a>.</p>
     *
     * @param thumbailPath Filesystem path of the image.
     * @param queueUrl     URL of the SQS queue.
     */
    static void sendMessageWithAttributes(Path thumbailPath, String queueUrl) {
        Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributeMap;
        try {
            messageAttributeMap = Map.of(
                    "Name", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                            .stringValue("Jane Doe")
                            .dataType("String").build(),
                    "Age", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                            .stringValue("42")
                            .dataType("Number.int").build(),
                    "Image", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
```

```
.binaryValue(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(Files.readAllBytes(thumbailPath)))
                            .dataType("Binary.jpg").build()
            );
        } catch (IOException e) {
            LOGGER.error("An I/O exception occurred reading thumbnail image: {}",
e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

        SendMessageRequest request = SendMessageRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .messageBody("Hello SQS")
                .messageAttributes(messageAttributeMap)
                .build();
        try {
            SendMessageResponse sendMessageResponse =
SQS_CLIENT.sendMessage(request);
            LOGGER.info("Message ID: {}", sendMessageResponse.messageId());
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Exception occurred sending message: {}",
e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a message to an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import { SendMessageCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";
```

```
const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

export const main = async (sqsQueueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new SendMessageCommand({
    QueueUrl: sqsQueueUrl,
    DelaySeconds: 10,
    MessageAttributes: {
      Title: {
        DataType: "String",
        StringValue: "The Whistler",
      },
      Author: {
        DataType: "String",
        StringValue: "John Grisham",
      },
      WeeksOn: {
        DataType: "Number",
        StringValue: "6",
      },
    },
    MessageBody:
      "Information about current NY Times fiction bestseller for week of
 12/11/2016.",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a message to an Amazon SQS queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  // Remove DelaySeconds parameter and value for FIFO queues
  DelaySeconds: 10,
  MessageAttributes: {
    Title: {
      DataType: "String",
      StringValue: "The Whistler",
    },
    Author: {
      DataType: "String",
      StringValue: "John Grisham",
    },
    WeeksOn: {
      DataType: "Number",
      StringValue: "6",
    },
  },
  MessageBody:
    "Information about current NY Times fiction bestseller for week of
 12/11/2016.",
  // MessageDeduplicationId: "TheWhistler",  // Required for FIFO queues
  // MessageGroupId: "Group1",  // Required for FIFO queues
  QueueUrl: "SQS_QUEUE_URL",
};

sqs.sendMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.MessageId);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun sendMessages(
    queueUrlVal: String,
    message: String,
) {
    println("Sending multiple messages")
    println("\nSend message")
    val sendRequest =
        SendMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            messageBody = message
            delaySeconds = 10
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.sendMessage(sendRequest)
        println("A single message was successfully sent.")
    }
}

suspend fun sendBatchMessages(queueUrlVal: String?) {
    println("Sending multiple messages")

    val msg1 =
        SendMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = "id1"
            messageBody = "Hello from msg 1"
        }
```

```
    val msg2 =
        SendMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = "id2"
            messageBody = "Hello from msg 2"
        }

    val sendMessageBatchRequest =
        SendMessageBatchRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            entries = listOf(msg1, msg2)
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendMessageBatchRequest)
        println("Batch message were successfully sent.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sends a message with the specified attributes and message body to the specified queue with message delivery delayed for 10 seconds.

```
$cityAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$cityAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$cityAttributeValue.StringValue = "AnyCity"

$populationAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$populationAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$populationAttributeValue.StringValue = "1250800"

$messageAttributes = New-Object System.Collections.Hashtable
$messageAttributes.Add("City", $cityAttributeValue)
$messageAttributes.Add("Population", $populationAttributeValue)
```

```
Send-SQSMessage -DelayInSeconds 10 -MessageAttributes $messageAttributes -
MessageBody "Information about the largest city in Any Region." -QueueUrl
 https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
MD5OfMessageAttributes              MD5OfMessageBody                    MessageId

----------------------              ----------------                    ---------

1d3e51347bc042efbdf6dda31EXAMPLE    51b0a3256d59467f973009b73EXAMPLE    c35fed8f-
c739-4d0c-818b-1820eEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sends a message with the specified attributes and message body to the specified queue with message delivery delayed for 10 seconds.

```
$cityAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$cityAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$cityAttributeValue.StringValue = "AnyCity"

$populationAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$populationAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$populationAttributeValue.StringValue = "1250800"

$messageAttributes = New-Object System.Collections.Hashtable
$messageAttributes.Add("City", $cityAttributeValue)
$messageAttributes.Add("Population", $populationAttributeValue)

Send-SQSMessage -DelayInSeconds 10 -MessageAttributes $messageAttributes -
MessageBody "Information about the largest city in Any Region." -QueueUrl
 https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
MD5OfMessageAttributes              MD5OfMessageBody                    MessageId

----------------------              ----------------                    ---------
```

```
1d3e51347bc042efbdf6dda31EXAMPLE    51b0a3256d59467f973009b73EXAMPLE    c35fed8f-
c739-4d0c-818b-1820eEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def send_message(queue, message_body, message_attributes=None):
    """
    Send a message to an Amazon SQS queue.

    :param queue: The queue that receives the message.
    :param message_body: The body text of the message.
    :param message_attributes: Custom attributes of the message. These are key-
value
                               pairs that can be whatever you want.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the assigned message ID.
    """
    if not message_attributes:
        message_attributes = {}

    try:
        response = queue.send_message(
            MessageBody=message_body, MessageAttributes=message_attributes
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Send message failed: %s", message_body)
        raise error
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @param message_body [String] The contents of the message to be sent.
# @return [Boolean] true if the message was sent; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless message_sent?(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue',
#     'This is my message.'
#   )
def message_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, message_body)
  sqs_client.send_message(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    message_body: message_body
  )
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error sending message: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
```

```
  message_body = 'This is my message.'

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)

  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Sending a message to the queue named '#{queue_name}'..."

  if message_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, message_body)
    puts 'Message sent.'
  else
    puts 'Message not sent.'
  end
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn send(client: &Client, queue_url: &String, message: &SQSMessage) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    println!("Sending message to queue with URL: {}", queue_url);

    let rsp = client
        .send_message()
```

```
        .queue_url(queue_url)
        .message_body(&message.body)
        // If the queue is FIFO, you need to set .message_deduplication_id
        // and message_group_id or configure the queue for
 ContentBasedDeduplication.
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Send message to the queue: {:#?}", rsp);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->sendmessage(              " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
           iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url
           iv_messagebody = iv_message ).
        MESSAGE 'Message sent to SQS queue.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsinvalidmsgconts.
        MESSAGE 'Message contains non-valid characters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsunsupportedop.
        MESSAGE 'Operation not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `SendMessageBatch` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SendMessageBatch`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Send and receive batches of messages

CLI

AWS CLI

To send multiple messages as a batch

This example sends 2 messages with the specified message bodies, delay periods, and message attributes, to the specified queue.

Command:

```
aws sqs send-message-batch --queue-url https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue --entries file://send-message-batch.json
```

Input file (send-message-batch.json):

```
[
  {
    "Id": "FuelReport-0001-2015-09-16T140731Z",
        "MessageBody": "Fuel report for account 0001 on 2015-09-16 at 02:07:31
 PM.",
        "DelaySeconds": 10,
        "MessageAttributes": {
          "SellerName": {
            "DataType": "String",
                "StringValue": "Example Store"
      },
          "City": {
        "DataType": "String",
        "StringValue": "Any City"
      },
          "Region": {
            "DataType": "String",
```

```
                "StringValue": "WA"
      },
          "PostalCode": {
            "DataType": "String",
                "StringValue": "99065"
          },
          "PricePerGallon": {
            "DataType": "Number",
                "StringValue": "1.99"
      }
        }
  },
  {
    "Id": "FuelReport-0002-2015-09-16T140930Z",
        "MessageBody": "Fuel report for account 0002 on 2015-09-16 at 02:09:30
 PM.",
        "DelaySeconds": 10,
        "MessageAttributes": {
          "SellerName": {
            "DataType": "String",
                "StringValue": "Example Fuels"
      },
          "City": {
        "DataType": "String",
        "StringValue": "North Town"
      },
          "Region": {
            "DataType": "String",
                "StringValue": "WA"
      },
          "PostalCode": {
            "DataType": "String",
                "StringValue": "99123"
          },
          "PricePerGallon": {
            "DataType": "Number",
                "StringValue": "1.87"
      }
        }
  }
]
```

Output:

```
{
  "Successful": [
    {
      "MD5OfMessageBody": "203c4a38...7943237e",
      "MD5OfMessageAttributes": "10809b55...baf283ef",
      "Id": "FuelReport-0001-2015-09-16T140731Z",
      "MessageId": "d175070c-d6b8-4101-861d-adeb3EXAMPLE"
    },
    {
      "MD5OfMessageBody": "2cf0159a...c1980595",
      "MD5OfMessageAttributes": "55623928...ae354a25",
      "Id": "FuelReport-0002-2015-09-16T140930Z",
      "MessageId": "f9b7d55d-0570-413e-b9c5-a9264EXAMPLE"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            SendMessageBatchRequest sendMessageBatchRequest =
SendMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                   .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.entries(SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id1").messageBody("Hello
from msg 1").build(),

SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id2").messageBody("msg
2").delaySeconds(10)
                                   .build())
                   .build();
            sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendMessageBatchRequest);
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example sends 2 messages with the specified attributes and message bodies to the specified queue. Delivery is delayed for 15 seconds for the first message and 10 seconds for the second message.

```
$student1NameAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student1NameAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$student1NameAttributeValue.StringValue = "John Doe"

$student1GradeAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student1GradeAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$student1GradeAttributeValue.StringValue = "89"

$student2NameAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student2NameAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$student2NameAttributeValue.StringValue = "Jane Doe"

$student2GradeAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student2GradeAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$student2GradeAttributeValue.StringValue = "93"

$message1 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry
$message1.DelaySeconds = 15
$message1.Id = "FirstMessage"
$message1.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentName", $student1NameAttributeValue)
$message1.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentGrade", $student1GradeAttributeValue)
$message1.MessageBody = "Information about John Doe's grade."

$message2 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry
$message2.DelaySeconds = 10
$message2.Id = "SecondMessage"
$message2.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentName", $student2NameAttributeValue)
$message2.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentGrade", $student2GradeAttributeValue)
$message2.MessageBody = "Information about Jane Doe's grade."
```

```
Send-SQSMessageBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -Entry $message1, $message2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {FirstMessage, SecondMessage}
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sends 2 messages with the specified attributes and message bodies to the specified queue. Delivery is delayed for 15 seconds for the first message and 10 seconds for the second message.

```
$student1NameAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student1NameAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$student1NameAttributeValue.StringValue = "John Doe"

$student1GradeAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student1GradeAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$student1GradeAttributeValue.StringValue = "89"

$student2NameAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student2NameAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$student2NameAttributeValue.StringValue = "Jane Doe"

$student2GradeAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student2GradeAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$student2GradeAttributeValue.StringValue = "93"

$message1 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry
$message1.DelaySeconds = 15
$message1.Id = "FirstMessage"
$message1.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentName", $student1NameAttributeValue)
$message1.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentGrade", $student1GradeAttributeValue)
$message1.MessageBody = "Information about John Doe's grade."

$message2 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry
```

```
$message2.DelaySeconds = 10
$message2.Id = "SecondMessage"
$message2.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentName", $student2NameAttributeValue)
$message2.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentGrade", $student2GradeAttributeValue)
$message2.MessageBody = "Information about Jane Doe's grade."

Send-SQSMessageBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -Entry $message1, $message2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {FirstMessage, SecondMessage}
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def send_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Send a batch of messages in a single request to an SQS queue.
    This request may return overall success even when some messages were not
 sent.
    The caller must inspect the Successful and Failed lists in the response and
    resend any failed messages.

    :param queue: The queue to receive the messages.
    :param messages: The messages to send to the queue. These are simplified to
                     contain only the message body and attributes.
```

```
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and
failed
             messages.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {
                "Id": str(ind),
                "MessageBody": msg["body"],
                "MessageAttributes": msg["attributes"],
            }
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.send_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info(
                    "Message sent: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Failed to send: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Send messages failed to queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

#
# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @param entries [Hash] The contents of the messages to be sent,
#   in the correct format.
# @return [Boolean] true if the messages were sent; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless messages_sent?(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue',
#     [
#       {
#         id: 'Message1',
#         message_body: 'This is the first message.'
#       },
#       {
#         id: 'Message2',
#         message_body: 'This is the second message.'
#       }
#     ]
#   )
def messages_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, entries)
  sqs_client.send_message_batch(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    entries: entries
  )
  true
rescue StandardError => e
```

```
  puts "Error sending messages: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  entries = [
    {
      id: 'Message1',
      message_body: 'This is the first message.'
    },
    {
      id: 'Message2',
      message_body: 'This is the second message.'
    }
  ]

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)

  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Sending messages to the queue named '#{queue_name}'..."

  if messages_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, entries)
    puts 'Messages sent.'
  else
    puts 'Messages not sent.'
  end
end
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Use `SetQueueAttributes` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Publish messages to queues

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string
 topicArn, string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
```

```
                                                "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                     $"\"aws:SourceArn\":
 \"{topicArn}\"" +
                                                 "}" +
                                            "}" +
                                 "}]" +
                              "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
 queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Set the value for an attribute in an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS)
 queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param attributeName: An attribute name enum.
  \param attribute: The attribute value as a string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::setQueueAttributes(const Aws::String &queueURL,
                                     Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName
 attributeName,
                                     const Aws::String &attribute,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
    request.AddAttributes(
            attributeName,
            attribute);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully set the attribute  " <<

 Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeNameMapper::GetNameForQueueAttributeName(
                         attributeName)
                  << " with value " << attribute << " in queue " <<
                  queueURL << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error setting attribute for  queue " <<
                  queueURL << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Configure a dead-letter queue.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Connect an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to an associated
```

```
//! dead-letter queue.
/*!
  \param srcQueueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param deadLetterQueueARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an Amazon SQS
 dead-letter queue.
  \param maxReceiveCount: The max receive count of a message before it is sent to
 the dead-letter queue.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::setDeadLetterQueue(const Aws::String &srcQueueUrl,
                                     const Aws::String &deadLetterQueueARN,
                                     int maxReceiveCount,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String redrivePolicy = MakeRedrivePolicy(deadLetterQueueARN,
 maxReceiveCount);

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(srcQueueUrl);
    request.AddAttributes(
            Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::RedrivePolicy,
            redrivePolicy);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
            sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully set dead letter queue for queue  " <<
                  srcQueueUrl << " to " << deadLetterQueueARN << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error setting dead letter queue for queue " <<
                  srcQueueUrl << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Make a redrive policy for a dead-letter queue.
/*!
  \param queueArn: An Amazon SQS ARN for the dead-letter queue.
```

```
  \param maxReceiveCount: The max receive count of a message before it is sent to
 the dead-letter queue.
  \return Aws::String: Policy as JSON string.
 */
Aws::String MakeRedrivePolicy(const Aws::String &queueArn, int maxReceiveCount) {
    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue redrive_arn_entry;
    redrive_arn_entry.AsString(queueArn);

    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue max_msg_entry;
    max_msg_entry.AsInteger(maxReceiveCount);

    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue policy_map;
    policy_map.WithObject("deadLetterTargetArn", redrive_arn_entry);
    policy_map.WithObject("maxReceiveCount", max_msg_entry);

    return policy_map.View().WriteReadable();
}
```

Configure an Amazon SQS queue to use long polling.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Set the wait time for an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue poll.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param pollTimeSeconds: The receive message wait time in seconds.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::setQueueLongPollingAttribute(const Aws::String &queueURL,
                                               const Aws::String
 &pollTimeSeconds,
                                               const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
    request.AddAttributes(
            Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds,
```

```
            pollTimeSeconds);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated long polling time for queue " <<
                  queueURL << " to " << pollTimeSeconds << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error updating long polling time for queue " <<
                  queueURL << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set queue attributes

This example sets the specified queue to a delivery delay of 10 seconds, a maximum message size of 128 KB (128 KB * 1,024 bytes), a message retention period of 3 days (3 days * 24 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds), a receive message wait time of 20 seconds, and a default visibility timeout of 60 seconds. This example also associates the specified dead letter queue with a maximum receive count of 1,000 messages.

Command:

```
aws sqs set-queue-attributes --queue-url https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyNewQueue --attributes file://set-queue-
attributes.json
```

Input file (set-queue-attributes.json):

```
{
```

```
  "DelaySeconds": "10",
  "MaximumMessageSize": "131072",
  "MessageRetentionPeriod": "259200",
  "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": "20",
  "RedrivePolicy": "{\"deadLetterTargetArn\":\"arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDeadLetterQueue\",\"maxReceiveCount\":\"1000\"}",
  "VisibilityTimeout": "60"
}
```

Output:

```
None.
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
```

```
}



// AttachSendMessagePolicy uses the SetQueueAttributes action to attach a policy
 to an
// Amazon SQS queue that allows the specified Amazon SNS topic to send messages
 to the
// queue.
func (actor SqsActions) AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx context.Context, queueUrl
 string, queueArn string, topicArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Action:    "sqs:SendMessage",
   Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"},
   Resource:  aws.String(queueArn),
   Condition: PolicyCondition{"ArnEquals": map[string]string{"aws:SourceArn":
 topicArn}},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = actor.SqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(ctx, &sqs.SetQueueAttributesInput{
  Attributes: map[string]string{
   string(types.QueueAttributeNamePolicy): string(policyBytes),
  },
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't set send message policy on queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}

// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
```

```
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
 Condition PolicyCondition   `json:",omitempty"`
}

// PolicyCondition defines a condition in a policy.
type PolicyCondition map[string]map[string]string
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure an Amazon SQS to use server-side encryption (SSE) using a custom KMS key.

```
    public static void addEncryption(String queueName, String kmsMasterKeyAlias)
 {
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();

        GetQueueUrlRequest urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build();

        GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse;
        try {
            getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest);
```

```
        } catch (QueueDoesNotExistException e) {
            LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        String queueUrl = getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();


        Map<QueueAttributeName, String> attributes = Map.of(
                QueueAttributeName.KMS_MASTER_KEY_ID, kmsMasterKeyAlias,
                QueueAttributeName.KMS_DATA_KEY_REUSE_PERIOD_SECONDS, "140" //
Set the data key reuse period to 140 seconds.
        );                                                                  //
This is how long SQS can reuse the data key before requesting a new one from
KMS.

        SetQueueAttributesRequest attRequest =
SetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributes(attributes)
                .build();
        try {
            sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attRequest);
            LOGGER.info("The attributes have been applied to {}", queueName);
        } catch (InvalidAttributeNameException | InvalidAttributeValueException
e) {
            LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        } finally {
            sqsClient.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue-url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
    Attributes: {
      DelaySeconds: "1",
    },
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Configure an Amazon SQS queue to use long polling.

```
import { SetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
    Attributes: {
      ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "20",
    },
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
```

```
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Configure a dead-letter queue.

```
import { SetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";
const DEAD_LETTER_QUEUE_ARN = "dead_letter_queue_arn";

export const main = async (
  queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL,
  deadLetterQueueArn = DEAD_LETTER_QUEUE_ARN,
) => {
  const command = new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
    Attributes: {
      RedrivePolicy: JSON.stringify({
        // Amazon SQS supports dead-letter queues (DLQ), which other
        // queues (source queues) can target for messages that can't
        // be processed (consumed) successfully.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-dead-letter-queues.html
        deadLetterTargetArn: deadLetterQueueArn,
        maxReceiveCount: "10",
      }),
    },
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows how to set a policy subscribing a queue to an SNS topic. When a message is published to the topic, a message is sent to the subscribed queue.

```
# create the queue and topic to be associated
$qurl = New-SQSQueue -QueueName "myQueue"
$topicarn = New-SNSTopic -Name "myTopic"

# get the queue ARN to inject into the policy; it will be returned
# in the output's QueueARN member but we need to put it into a variable
# so text expansion in the policy string takes effect
$qarn = (Get-SQSQueueAttribute -QueueUrl $qurl -AttributeName
 "QueueArn").QueueARN

# construct the policy and inject arns
$policy = @"
{
  "Version": "2008-10-17",
  "Id": "$qarn/SQSPOLICY",
  "Statement": [
      {
      "Sid": "1",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": "*",
      "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
      "Resource": "$qarn",
      "Condition": {
        "ArnEquals": {
          "aws:SourceArn": "$topicarn"
          }
      }
    }
  ]
}
"@

# set the policy
Set-SQSQueueAttribute -QueueUrl $qurl -Attribute @{ Policy=$policy }
```

Example 2: This example sets the specified attributes for the specified queue.

```
Set-SQSQueueAttribute -Attribute @{"DelaySeconds" = "10"; "MaximumMessageSize" =
 "131072"} -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to set a policy subscribing a queue to an SNS topic. When a message is published to the topic, a message is sent to the subscribed queue.

```
# create the queue and topic to be associated
$qurl = New-SQSQueue -QueueName "myQueue"
$topicarn = New-SNSTopic -Name "myTopic"

# get the queue ARN to inject into the policy; it will be returned
# in the output's QueueARN member but we need to put it into a variable
# so text expansion in the policy string takes effect
$qarn = (Get-SQSQueueAttribute -QueueUrl $qurl -AttributeName
 "QueueArn").QueueARN

# construct the policy and inject arns
$policy = @"
{
  "Version": "2008-10-17",
  "Id": "$qarn/SQSPOLICY",
  "Statement": [
      {
      "Sid": "1",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": "*",
      "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
      "Resource": "$qarn",
      "Condition": {
        "ArnEquals": {
          "aws:SourceArn": "$topicarn"
          }
      }
    }
  ]
}
"@

# set the policy
```

```
Set-SQSQueueAttribute -QueueUrl $qurl -Attribute @{ Policy=$policy }
```

Example 2: This example sets the specified attributes for the specified queue.

```
Set-SQSQueueAttribute -Attribute @{"DelaySeconds" = "10"; "MaximumMessageSize" =
 "131072"} -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        do {
            _ = try await sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(
                input: SetQueueAttributesInput(
                    attributes: [
                        "MaximumMessageSize": "\(maxSize)"
                    ],
                    queueUrl: url
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AWSSQS.InvalidAttributeValue {
            print("Invalid maximum message size: \(maxSize) kB.")
        }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon SQS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon SQS with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon SQS or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a web application that sends and retrieves messages by using Amazon SQS
- Create a messenger application with Step Functions
- Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
- Create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK
- Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK
- Manage large Amazon SQS messages using Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK
- Receive and process Amazon S3 event notifications by using an AWS SDK
- Publish Amazon SNS messages to Amazon SQS queues using an AWS SDK
- Send and receive batches of messages with Amazon SQS using an AWS SDK
- Use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET to publish and receive Amazon SQS messages
- Use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the Java Message Service (JMS) interface for Amazon SQS
- Work with queue tags and Amazon SQS using an AWS SDK

Create a web application that sends and retrieves messages by using Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to create a messaging application by using Amazon SQS.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Create a messenger application with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).

- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code examples show how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example

- creates an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, two Amazon SQS FIFO queues, and one Standard queue.
- subscribes the queues to the topic and publishes a message to the topic.

The test verifies the receipt of the message to each queue. The complete example also shows the addition of access policies and deletes the resources at the end.

```
public class PriceUpdateExample {
    public final static SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.create();
    public final static SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage: " +
            "    <topicName> <wholesaleQueueFifoName> <retailQueueFifoName>
 <analyticsQueueName>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "   fifoTopicName - The name of the FIFO topic that you want to
 create. \n\n" +
            "   wholesaleQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will be
 created for the wholesale consumer. \n\n"
            +
            "   retailQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will created
 for the retail consumer. \n\n" +
            "   analyticsQueueARN - The name of a SQS standard queue that will be
 created for the analytics consumer. \n\n";
        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        final String fifoTopicName = args[0];
        final String wholeSaleQueueName = args[1];
        final String retailQueueName = args[2];
        final String analyticsQueueName = args[3];

        // For convenience, the QueueData class holds metadata about a queue:
ARN, URL,
        // name and type.
        List<QueueData> queues = List.of(
            new QueueData(wholeSaleQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(retailQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(analyticsQueueName, QueueType.Standard));

        // Create queues.
        createQueues(queues);

        // Create a topic.
        String topicARN = createFIFOTopic(fifoTopicName);

        // Subscribe each queue to the topic.
        subscribeQueues(queues, topicARN);

        // Allow the newly created topic to send messages to the queues.
        addAccessPolicyToQueuesFINAL(queues, topicARN);

        // Publish a sample price update message with payload.
        publishPriceUpdate(topicARN, "{\"product\": 214, \"price\": 79.99}",
"Consumables");

        // Clean up resources.
        deleteSubscriptions(queues);
        deleteQueues(queues);
        deleteTopic(topicARN);
    }

    public static String createFIFOTopic(String topicName) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = Map.of(
                "FifoTopic", "true",
                "ContentBasedDeduplication", "false",
                "FifoThroughputScope", "MessageGroup");
```

```
            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            String topicArn = response.topicArn();
            System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + topicArn);

            return topicArn;

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void subscribeQueues(List<QueueData> queues, String topicARN) {
        queues.forEach(queue -> {
            SubscribeRequest subscribeRequest = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicARN)
                .endpoint(queue.queueARN)
                .protocol("sqs")
                .build();

            // Subscribe to the endpoint by using the SNS service client.
            // Only Amazon SQS queues can receive notifications from an Amazon
SNS FIFO
            // topic.
            SubscribeResponse subscribeResponse =
snsClient.subscribe(subscribeRequest);
            System.out.println("The queue [" + queue.queueARN + "] subscribed to
the topic [" + topicARN + "]");
            queue.subscriptionARN = subscribeResponse.subscriptionArn();
        });
    }

    public static void publishPriceUpdate(String topicArn, String payload, String
groupId) {

        try {
            // Create and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.
            String subject = "Price Update";
```

```
            String dedupId = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
            String attributeName = "business";
            String attributeValue = "wholesale";

            MessageAttributeValue msgAttValue = MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                .dataType("String")
                .stringValue(attributeValue)
                .build();

            Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes = new HashMap<>();
            attributes.put(attributeName, msgAttValue);
            PublishRequest pubRequest = PublishRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .subject(subject)
                .message(payload)
                .messageGroupId(groupId)
                .messageDeduplicationId(dedupId)
                .messageAttributes(attributes)
                .build();

            final PublishResponse response = snsClient.publish(pubRequest);
            System.out.println(response.messageId());
            System.out.println(response.sequenceNumber());
            System.out.println("Message was published to " + topicArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, subscribe Amazon SQS FIFO and standard queues to the topic, and publish a message to the topic.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to subscribe queues to a FIFO topic."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the `Subscribe queues to a FIFO topic` demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    sns = boto3.resource("sns")
    sqs = boto3.resource("sqs")
    fifo_topic_wrapper = FifoTopicWrapper(sns)
    sns_wrapper = SnsWrapper(sns)

    prefix = "sqs-subscribe-demo-"
    queues = set()
    subscriptions = set()

    wholesale_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "wholesale.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(wholesale_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {wholesale_queue.url}.")

    retail_queue = sqs.create_queue(
```

```
        QueueName=prefix + "retail.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(retail_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {retail_queue.url}.")

    analytics_queue = sqs.create_queue(QueueName=prefix + "analytics",
Attributes={})
    queues.add(analytics_queue)
    print(f"Created standard queue with URL: {analytics_queue.url}.")

    topic = fifo_topic_wrapper.create_fifo_topic("price-updates-topic.fifo")
    print(f"Created FIFO topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.add_access_policy(q, topic.attributes["TopicArn"])

    print(f"Added access policies for topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
        sub = fifo_topic_wrapper.subscribe_queue_to_topic(
            topic, q.attributes["QueueArn"]
        )
        subscriptions.add(sub)

    print(f"Subscribed queues to topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    input("Press Enter to publish a message to the topic.")

    message_id = fifo_topic_wrapper.publish_price_update(
        topic, '{"product": 214, "price": 79.99}', "Consumables"
    )

    print(f"Published price update with message ID: {message_id}.")

    # Clean up the subscriptions, queues, and topic.
    input("Press Enter to clean up resources.")
    for s in subscriptions:
```

```
        sns_wrapper.delete_subscription(s)

    sns_wrapper.delete_topic(topic)

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.delete_queue(q)

    print(f"Deleted subscriptions, queues, and topic.")

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)



class FifoTopicWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS FIFO topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource

    def create_fifo_topic(self, topic_name):
        """
        Create a FIFO topic.
        Topic names must be made up of only uppercase and lowercase ASCII
 letters,
        numbers, underscores, and hyphens, and must be between 1 and 256
 characters long.
        For a FIFO topic, the name must end with the .fifo suffix.

        :param topic_name: The name for the topic.
        :return: The new topic.
        """
        try:
            topic = self.sns_resource.create_topic(
                Name=topic_name,
                Attributes={
                    "FifoTopic": str(True),
                    "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(False),
                    "FifoThroughputScope": "MessageGroup",
                },
            )
```

```
            logger.info("Created FIFO topic with name=%s.", topic_name)
            return topic
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create topic with name=%s!", topic_name)
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def add_access_policy(queue, topic_arn):
        """
        Add the necessary access policy to a queue, so
        it can receive messages from a topic.

        :param queue: The queue resource.
        :param topic_arn: The ARN of the topic.
        :return: None.
        """
        try:
            queue.set_attributes(
                Attributes={
                    "Policy": json.dumps(
                        {
                            "Version": "2012-10-17",
                            "Statement": [
                                {
                                    "Sid": "test-sid",
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {"AWS": "*"},
                                    "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": queue.attributes["QueueArn"],
                                    "Condition": {
                                        "ArnLike": {"aws:SourceArn": topic_arn}
                                    },
                                }
                            ],
                        }
                    )
                }
            )
            logger.info("Added trust policy to the queue.")
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add trust policy to the queue!")
            raise error
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def subscribe_queue_to_topic(topic, queue_arn):
        """
        Subscribe a queue to a topic.

        :param topic: The topic resource.
        :param queue_arn: The ARN of the queue.
        :return: The subscription resource.
        """
        try:
            subscription = topic.subscribe(
                Protocol="sqs",
                Endpoint=queue_arn,
            )
            logger.info("The queue is subscribed to the topic.")
            return subscription
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't subscribe queue to topic!")
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def publish_price_update(topic, payload, group_id):
        """
        Compose and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param payload: The message to publish.
        :param group_id: The group ID for the message.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            att_dict = {"business": {"DataType": "String", "StringValue":
 "wholesale"}}
            dedup_id = uuid.uuid4()
            response = topic.publish(
                Subject="Price Update",
                Message=payload,
                MessageAttributes=att_dict,
                MessageGroupId=group_id,
                MessageDeduplicationId=str(dedup_id),
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
```

```
            logger.info("Published message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise error
        return message_id


    @staticmethod
    def delete_queue(queue):
        """
        Removes an SQS queue. When run against an AWS account, it can take up to
        60 seconds before the queue is actually deleted.

        :param queue: The queue to delete.
        :return: None
        """
        try:
            queue.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted queue with URL=%s.", queue.url)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete queue with URL=%s!", queue.url)
            raise error
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a FIFO topic, subscribe an Amazon SQS FIFO queue to the topic, and publish a message to an Amazon SNS topic.

```
    " Creates a FIFO topic. "
    DATA lt_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>tt_topicattributesmap.
    DATA ls_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>ts_topicattributesmap_maprow.
    ls_tpc_attributes-key = 'FifoTopic'.
    ls_tpc_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snstopicattrsmap_w( iv_value =
 'true' ).
    INSERT ls_tpc_attributes INTO TABLE lt_tpc_attributes.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_create_result) = lo_sns->createtopic(
               iv_name = iv_topic_name
               it_attributes = lt_tpc_attributes ).
        DATA(lv_topic_arn) = lo_create_result->get_topicarn( ).
        ov_topic_arn = lv_topic_arn.                                    "
 ov_topic_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'FIFO topic created' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snstopiclimitexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create more topics. You have reached the maximum
 number of topics allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Subscribes an endpoint to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon
 SNS) topic. "
    " Only Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) FIFO queues can be subscribed
 to an SNS FIFO topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_subscribe_result) = lo_sns->subscribe(
               iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
               iv_protocol = 'sqs'
               iv_endpoint = iv_queue_arn ).
        DATA(lv_subscription_arn) = lo_subscribe_result->get_subscriptionarn( ).
        ov_subscription_arn = lv_subscription_arn.                      "
 ov_subscription_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue was subscribed to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snssubscriptionlmte00.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create subscriptions. You have reached the maximum
 number of subscriptions allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Publish message to SNS topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA lt_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>tt_messageattributemap.
        DATA ls_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>ts_messageattributemap_maprow.
        ls_msg_attributes-key = 'Importance'.
        ls_msg_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snsmessageattrvalue( iv_datatype =
 'String'

 iv_stringvalue = 'High' ).
        INSERT ls_msg_attributes INTO TABLE lt_msg_attributes.

        DATA(lo_result) = lo_sns->publish(
             iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
             iv_message = 'The price of your mobile plan has been increased from
 $19 to $23'
             iv_subject = 'Changes to mobile plan'
             iv_messagegroupid = 'Update-2'
             iv_messagededuplicationid = 'Update-2.1'
             it_messageattributes = lt_msg_attributes ).
        ov_message_id = lo_result->get_messageid( ).                    "
 ov_message_id is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Message was published to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Manage large Amazon SQS messages using Amazon S3 with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use the Amazon SQS Extended Client Library to work with large Amazon SQS messages.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSExtendedClient;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ExtendedClientConfiguration;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import org.joda.time.DateTime;
import org.joda.time.format.DateTimeFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketLifecycleConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpirationStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleExpiration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRuleFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;

/**
 * Example of using Amazon SQS Extended Client Library for Java 2.x.
 */
public class SqsExtendedClientExample {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SqsExtendedClientExample.class);

    private String s3BucketName;
    private String queueUrl;
    private final String queueName;
    private final S3Client s3Client;
    private final SqsClient sqsExtendedClient;
    private final int messageSize;

    /**
     * Constructor with default clients and message size.
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample() {
        this(S3Client.create(), 300000);
    }

    /**
     * Constructor with custom S3 client and message size.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client to use
     * @param messageSize The size of the test message to create
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample(S3Client s3Client, int messageSize) {
```

```
        this.s3Client = s3Client;
        this.messageSize = messageSize;

        // Generate a unique bucket name.
        this.s3BucketName = UUID.randomUUID() + "-" +
                DateTimeFormat.forPattern("yyMMdd-hhmmss").print(new DateTime());

        // Generate a unique queue name.
        this.queueName = "MyQueue-" + UUID.randomUUID();

        // Configure the SQS extended client.
        final ExtendedClientConfiguration extendedClientConfig = new
ExtendedClientConfiguration()
                .withPayloadSupportEnabled(s3Client, s3BucketName);

        this.sqsExtendedClient = new
AmazonSQSExtendedClient(SqsClient.builder().build(), extendedClientConfig);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsExtendedClientExample example = new SqsExtendedClientExample();
        try {
            example.setup();
            example.sendAndReceiveMessage();
        } finally {
            example.cleanup();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Send a large message and receive it back.
     *
     * @return The received message
     */
    public Message sendAndReceiveMessage() {
        try {
            // Create a large message.
            char[] chars = new char[messageSize];
            Arrays.fill(chars, 'x');
            String largeMessage = new String(chars);

            // Send the message.
            final SendMessageRequest sendMessageRequest =
SendMessageRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody(largeMessage)
                    .build();

            sqsExtendedClient.sendMessage(sendMessageRequest);
            logger.info("Sent message of size: {}", largeMessage.length());

            // Receive and return the message.
            final ReceiveMessageResponse receiveMessageResponse =
sqsExtendedClient.receiveMessage(
                    ReceiveMessageRequest.builder().queueUrl(queueUrl).build());

            List<Message> messages = receiveMessageResponse.messages();
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No messages received");
            }

            Message message = messages.getFirst();
            logger.info("\nMessage received.");
            logger.info("  ID: {}", message.messageId());
            logger.info("  Receipt handle: {}", message.receiptHandle());
            logger.info("  Message body size: {}", message.body().length());
            logger.info("  Message body (first 5 characters): {}",
message.body().substring(0, 5));

            return message;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.error("Error during message processing: {}", e.getMessage(),
e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide.
- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SendMessage

Receive and process Amazon S3 event notifications by using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to work with S3 event notifications in an object-oriented way.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example show how to process S3 notification event by using Amazon SQS.

```
    /**
     * This method receives S3 event notifications by using an SqsAsyncClient.
     * After the client receives the messages it deserializes the JSON payload
 and logs them. It uses
     * the S3EventNotification class (part of the S3 event notification API for
 Java) to deserialize
     * the JSON payload and access the messages in an object-oriented way.
     *
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the AWS SQS queue that receives the S3 event
 notifications.
     * @see <a href="https://sdk.amazonaws.com/java/api/latest/software/amazon/
awssdk/eventnotifications/s3/model/package-summary.html">S3EventNotification
 API</a>.
     * <p>
     * To use S3 event notification serialization/deserialization to objects, add
 the following
     * dependency to your Maven pom.xml file.
     * <dependency>
     * <groupId>software.amazon.awssdk</groupId>
     * <artifactId>s3-event-notifications</artifactId>
     * <version><LATEST></version>
     * </dependency>
     * <p>
     * The S3 event notification API became available with version 2.25.11 of the
 Java SDK.
```

```
    * <p>
    * This example shows the use of the API with AWS SQS, but it can be used to
process S3 event notifications
    * in AWS SNS or AWS Lambda as well.
    * <p>
    * Note: The S3EventNotification class does not work with messages routed
through AWS EventBridge.
    */
   static void processS3Events(String bucketName, String queueUrl, String
queueArn) {
       try {
           // Configure the bucket to send Object Created and Object Tagging
notifications to an existing SQS queue.
           s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                   .notificationConfiguration(ncb -> ncb
                           .queueConfigurations(qcb -> qcb
                                   .events(Event.S3_OBJECT_CREATED,
Event.S3_OBJECT_TAGGING)
                                   .queueArn(queueArn)))
                           .bucket(bucketName)
           ).join();

           triggerS3EventNotifications(bucketName);
           // Wait for event notifications to propagate.
           Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(5).toMillis());

           boolean didReceiveMessages = true;
           while (didReceiveMessages) {
               // Display the number of messages that are available in the
queue.
               sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(b -> b
                               .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.attributeNames(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)
                       ).thenAccept(attributeResponse ->
                               logger.info("Approximate number of messages in
the queue: {}",

attributeResponse.attributes().get(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)))
                       .join();

               // Receive the messages.
               ReceiveMessageResponse response = sqsClient.receiveMessage(b -> b
                       .queueUrl(queueUrl)
```

```
                ).get();
                logger.info("Count of received messages: {}",
response.messages().size());
                didReceiveMessages = !response.messages().isEmpty();

                // Create a collection to hold the received message for deletion
                // after we log the messages.
                HashSet<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> messagesToDelete = new
HashSet<>();
                // Process each message.
                response.messages().forEach(message -> {
                    logger.info("Message id: {}", message.messageId());
                    // Deserialize JSON message body to a S3EventNotification
object
                    // to access messages in an object-oriented way.
                    S3EventNotification event =
S3EventNotification.fromJson(message.body());

                    // Log the S3 event notification record details.
                    if (event.getRecords() != null) {
                        event.getRecords().forEach(record -> {
                            String eventName = record.getEventName();
                            String key = record.getS3().getObject().getKey();
                            logger.info(record.toString());
                            logger.info("Event name is {} and key is {}",
eventName, key);
                        });
                    }
                    // Add logged messages to collection for batch deletion.
                    messagesToDelete.add(DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                            .id(message.messageId())
                            .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                            .build());
                });
                // Delete messages.
                if (!messagesToDelete.isEmpty()) {

sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .entries(messagesToDelete)
                            .build()
                    ).join();
                }
            } // End of while block.
```

```
        } catch (InterruptedException | ExecutionException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage

Publish Amazon SNS messages to Amazon SQS queues using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Console application to run a feature scenario for topics and queues.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicsAndQueues
```

```
{
    private static bool _useFifoTopic = false;
    private static bool _useContentBasedDeduplication = false;
    private static string _topicName = null!;
    private static string _topicArn = null!;

    private static readonly int _queueCount = 2;
    private static readonly string[] _queueUrls = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _subscriptionArns = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _tones = { "cheerful", "funny", "serious",
 "sincere" };
    public static SNSWrapper SnsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static SQSWrapper SqsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static bool UseConsole { get; set; } = true;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
                    .AddTransient<SNSWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SQSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        PrintDescription();

        await RunScenario();

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
```

```
    {
        SnsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SNSWrapper>();
        SqsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SQSWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run the scenario for working with topics and queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> RunScenario()
    {
        try
        {
            await SetupTopic();

            await SetupQueues();

            await PublishMessages();

            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                var messages = await PollForMessages(queueUrl);
                if (messages.Any())
                {
                    await DeleteMessages(queueUrl, messages);
                }
            }
            await CleanupResources();

            Console.WriteLine("Messaging with topics and queues scenario is
complete.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Print a description for the tasks in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static void PrintDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
 subscribe {_queueCount} SQS queues to the topic." +
                          $"\r\nYou can select from several options for
 configuring the topic and the subscriptions for the 2 queues." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the
 results in the queues.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SNS topic to be used with the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out)." +
                          $"\r\nFIFO topics deliver messages in order and support
 deduplication and message filtering." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the
 results in the queues.\r\n");

        _useFifoTopic = GetYesNoResponse("Would you like to work with FIFO
 topics?");

        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            _topicName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for your SNS topic: ",
 "example-topic");
            Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended
 to the topic name.\r\n");

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"Because you have chosen a FIFO topic,
 deduplication is supported." +
                              $"\r\nDeduplication IDs are either set in the
 message or automatically generated " +
                              $"\r\nfrom content using a hash function.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nIf a message is successfully published to an
 SNS FIFO topic, any message " +
                              $"\r\npublished and determined to have the same
 deduplication ID, " +
                              $"\r\nwithin the five-minute deduplication
 interval, is accepted but not delivered.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nFor more information about deduplication, " +
                              $"\r\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/
dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            _useContentBasedDeduplication = GetYesNoResponse("Use content-based
 deduplication instead of entering a deduplication ID?");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }

        _topicArn = await SnsWrapper.CreateTopicWithName(_topicName,
 _useFifoTopic, _useContentBasedDeduplication);

        Console.WriteLine($"Your new topic with the name {_topicName}" +
                          $"\r\nand Amazon Resource Name (ARN) {_topicArn}" +
                          $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return _topicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task SetupQueues()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now you will create {_queueCount} Amazon Simple Queue
 Service (Amazon SQS) queues to subscribe to the topic.");
```

```
        // Repeat this section for each queue.
        for (int i = 0; i < _queueCount; i++)
        {
            var queueName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for an Amazon SQS
queue: ", $"example-queue-{i}");
            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                // Only explain this once.
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the queue name.");
                }

                var queueUrl = await SqsWrapper.CreateQueueWithName(queueName,
_useFifoTopic);

                _queueUrls[i] = queueUrl;

                Console.WriteLine($"Your new queue with the name {queueName}" +
                                  $"\r\nand queue URL {queueUrl}" +
                                  $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN,\r\n" +
                        $"which is used to create a subscription.");
                    Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                }

                var queueArn = await SqsWrapper.GetQueueArnByUrl(queueUrl);

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy must
be attached to an SQS queue, enabling it to receive\r\n" +
                        $"messages from an SNS topic");
                }
```

```
                await SqsWrapper.SetQueuePolicyForTopic(queueArn, _topicArn,
 queueUrl);

                await SetupFilters(i, queueArn, queueName);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up filters with user options for a queue.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueCount">The number of this queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupFilters(int queueCount, string queueArn, string
 queueName)
    {
        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            // Only explain this once.
            if (queueCount == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters." +
                    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the
 filtered messages " +
                    "will be received in the queue.");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For information about message filtering, " +
                    "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a" +
                    "TONE attribute.");
            }

            var useFilter = GetYesNoResponse($"Filter messages for {queueName}'s
 subscription to the topic?");
```

```
            string? filterPolicy = null;
            if (useFilter)
            {
                filterPolicy = CreateFilterPolicy();
            }
            var subscriptionArn = await
SnsWrapper.SubscribeTopicWithFilter(_topicArn, filterPolicy,
                queueArn);
            _subscriptionArns[queueCount] = subscriptionArn;

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"The queue {queueName} has been subscribed to the topic
{_topicName} " +
                $"with the subscription ARN {subscriptionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use user input to create a filter policy for a subscription.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The serialized filter policy.</returns>
    public static string CreateFilterPolicy()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"You can filter messages by one or more of the following" +
            $"TONE attributes.");

        List<string> filterSelections = new List<string>();

        var selectionNumber = 0;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Enter a number to add a TONE filter, or enter 0 to stop adding
filters.");
            for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
            }
```

```
            var selection = GetUserResponse("", filterSelections.Any() ? "0" :
 "1");
            int.TryParse(selection, out selectionNumber);
            if (selectionNumber > 0 && !
filterSelections.Contains(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]))
            {
                filterSelections.Add(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]);
            }
        } while (selectionNumber != 0);

        var filters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>
        {
            { "tone", filterSelections }
        };
        string filterPolicy = JsonSerializer.Serialize(filters);
        return filterPolicy;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is
 a sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must
 set a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
 received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
```

```
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID
for this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this
message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID
for this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?",
false);
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Poll for the published messages to see the results of the user's choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> PollForMessages(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now the SQS queue at {queueUrl} will be polled to
retrieve the messages." +
                          "\r\nPress any key to continue.");
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var moreMessages = true;
        var messages = new List<Message>();
        while (moreMessages)
        {
            var newMessages = await SqsWrapper.ReceiveMessagesByUrl(queueUrl,
10);

            moreMessages = newMessages.Any();
            if (moreMessages)
            {
                messages.AddRange(newMessages);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"{messages.Count} message(s) were received by the
queue at {queueUrl}.");

        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tMessage:" +
                              $"\n\t{message.Body}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the message using handles in a batch.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteMessages(string queueUrl, List<Message>
messages)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the messages in this queue in a
batch.");
        await SqsWrapper.DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(queueUrl, messages);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        try
        {
            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl))
                {
                    var deleteQueue =
                        GetYesNoResponse($"Delete queue with url {queueUrl}?");
                    if (deleteQueue)
                    {
                        await SqsWrapper.DeleteQueueByUrl(queueUrl);
                    }
                }
            }

            foreach (var subscriptionArn in _subscriptionArns)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subscriptionArn))
                {
                    await SnsWrapper.UnsubscribeByArn(subscriptionArn);
                }
            }
```

```
            var deleteTopic = GetYesNoResponse($"Delete topic {_topicName}?");
            if (deleteTopic)
            {
                await SnsWrapper.DeleteTopicByArn(_topicArn);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Unable to clean up resources. Here's why:
 {ex.Message}.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question, bool defaultAnswer =
 true)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
            var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
            var response = ynResponse != null &&
                           ynResponse.Equals("y",
                               StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a string response from the user through the console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</
param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static string GetUserResponse(string question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            var response = "";
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(response))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                response = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SQS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SQSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSQS _amazonSQSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SQS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SQS client.</param>
    public SQSWrapper(IAmazonSQS amazonSQS)
    {
        _amazonSQSClient = amazonSQS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
 useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await
_amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string
topicArn, string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
                                           "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                $"\"aws:SourceArn\":
\"{topicArn}\"" +
                                            "}" +
                                        "}" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";
```

```
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
 queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl,
 List<Message> messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
```

```
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
 _amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SNS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SNSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleNotificationService _amazonSNSClient;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SNS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SNS client.</param>
    public SNSWrapper(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService amazonSNS)
    {
        _amazonSNSClient = amazonSNS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
 "true");
            }
```

```
        }

        var createResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
 subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
 filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
 { { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</
param>
```

```
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the
message.</param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Workflow for messaging with topics and queues using Amazon SNS and Amazon
 SQS.
/*!
 \param clientConfig Aws client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::messagingWithTopicsAndQueues(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    std::cout << "Welcome to messaging with topics and queues." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "In this workflow, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe "
              << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES <<
              " SQS queues to the topic." << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the "
            << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES << " queues." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the
 queues."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out)."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
```

```
            << "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication
 and message filtering."
            << std::endl;
    bool isFifoTopic = askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n) ");

    bool contentBasedDeduplication = false;
    Aws::String topicName;
    if (isFifoTopic) {
        printAsterisksLine();
        std::cout << "Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is
 supported."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or
 automatically generated "
                << "from content using a hash function." << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic,
 any message "
                << "published and determined to have the same deduplication ID, "
                << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted
 but not delivered."
                << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "For more information about deduplication, "
                << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-
dedup.html."
                << std::endl;
        contentBasedDeduplication = askYesNoQuestion(
                "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID? (y/n) ");
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueURLS;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> subscriptionARNS;

    Aws::String topicARN;
    {
```

```
        topicName = askQuestion("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ");

        // 1.  Create an Amazon SNS topic, either FIFO or non-FIFO.
        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicRequest request;

        if (isFifoTopic) {
            request.AddAttributes("FifoTopic", "true");
            if (contentBasedDeduplication) {
                request.AddAttributes("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }
            topicName = topicName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

            std::cout
                    << "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the topic name."
                    << std::endl;
        }

        request.SetName(topicName);

        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicOutcome outcome =
snsClient.CreateTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            topicARN = outcome.GetResult().GetTopicArn();
            std::cout << "Your new topic with the name '" << topicName
                      << "' and the topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN) " <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "'" << topicARN << "' has been created." << std::endl;

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::CreateTopic. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now you will create " << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES
              << " SQS queues to subscribe to the topic." << std::endl;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueNames;
    bool filteringMessages = false;
    bool first = true;
    for (int i = 1; i <= NUMBER_OF_QUEUES; ++i) {
        Aws::String queueURL;
        Aws::String queueName;
        {
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::ostringstream ostringstream;
            ostringstream << "Enter a name for " << (first ? "an" : "the next")
                          << " SQS queue. ";
            queueName = askQuestion(ostringstream.str());

            // 2.  Create an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueRequest request;
            if (isFifoTopic) {

request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::FifoQueue,
                                      "true");
                queueName = queueName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

                if (first) // Only explain this once.
                {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue,
'.fifo' must "
                            << "be appended to the queue name." << std::endl;
                }
            }

            request.SetQueueName(queueName);
            queueNames.push_back(queueName);

            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.CreateQueue(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                queueURL = outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl();
```

```
                std::cout << "Your new SQS queue with the name '" << queueName
                          << "' and the queue URL " << std::endl;
                std::cout << "'" << queueURL << "' has been created." <<
std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::CreateQueue. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
        queueURLS.push_back(queueURL);

        if (first) // Only explain this once.
        {
            std::cout
                    << "The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN, which is
"
                    << "used to create a subscription." << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::String queueARN;
        {
            // 3.  Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.
            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

request.AddAttributeNames(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName, Aws::String>
&attributes =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
```

```
                const auto &iter = attributes.find(
                        Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);
                if (iter != attributes.end()) {
                    queueARN = iter->second;
                    std::cout << "The queue ARN '" << queueARN
                              << "' has been retrieved."
                              << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr
                            << "Error ARN attribute not returned by
GetQueueAttribute."
                            << std::endl;

                    cleanUp(topicARN,
                            queueURLS,
                            subscriptionARNS,
                            snsClient,
                            sqsClient);

                    return false;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::GetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        if (first) {
            std::cout
                    << "An IAM policy must be attached to an SQS queue, enabling
it to receive "
                       "messages from an SNS topic." << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        {
            // 4.  Set the SQS queue policy attribute with a policy enabling the
receipt of SNS messages.
            Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
            Aws::String policy = createPolicyForQueue(queueARN, topicARN);
            request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::Policy,
                                  policy);

            Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The attributes for the queue '" << queueName
                          << "' were successfully updated." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::SetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();

        {
            // 5.  Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic.
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
            request.SetProtocol("sqs");
            request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);
            if (isFifoTopic) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout << "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have
filters."
```

```
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout
                            << "If you add a filter to this subscription, then
 only the filtered messages "
                            << "will be received in the queue." << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For information about message filtering, "
                              << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
sns-message-filtering.html"
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For this example, you can filter messages by a
 \""
                              << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attribute." << std::endl;
                }

                std::ostringstream ostringstream;
                ostringstream << "Filter messages for \"" << queueName
                              << "\"'s subscription to the topic \""
                              << topicName << "\"?  (y/n)";

                // Add filter if user answers yes.
                if (askYesNoQuestion(ostringstream.str())) {
                    Aws::String jsonPolicy = getFilterPolicyFromUser();
                    if (!jsonPolicy.empty()) {
                        filteringMessages = true;

                        std::cout << "This is the filter policy for this
 subscription."
                                  << std::endl;
                        std::cout << jsonPolicy << std::endl;

                        request.AddAttributes("FilterPolicy", jsonPolicy);
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout
                                << "Because you did not select any attributes, no
 filter "
                                << "will be added to this subscription." <<
 std::endl;
                    }
                }
            }  // if (isFifoTopic)
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Subscribe(request);
```

```
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN <<
"."
                          << std::endl;
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        first = false;
    }

    first = true;
    do {
        printAsterisksLine();

        // 6.  Publish a message to the SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
        Aws::String message = askQuestion("Enter a message text to publish.  ");
        request.SetMessage(message);
        if (isFifoTopic) {
            if (first) {
                std::cout
                        << "Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a
message group ID."
                        << std::endl;
```

```
                std::cout
                        << "All messages within the same group will be received
in the "
                        << "order they were published." << std::endl;
            }
            Aws::String messageGroupID = askQuestion(
                    "Enter a message group ID for this message. ");
            request.SetMessageGroupId(messageGroupID);
            if (!contentBasedDeduplication) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, "
                            << "you must enter a deduplication ID." << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::String deduplicationID = askQuestion(
                        "Enter a deduplication ID for this message. ");
                request.SetMessageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID);
            }
        }

        if (filteringMessages && askYesNoQuestion(
                "Add an attribute to this message? (y/n) ")) {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < TONES.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "  " << (i + 1) << ". " << TONES[i] << std::endl;
            }
            int selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter a number for an attribute. ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));
            Aws::SNS::Model::MessageAttributeValue messageAttributeValue;
            messageAttributeValue.SetDataType("String");
            messageAttributeValue.SetStringValue(TONES[selection - 1]);
            request.AddMessageAttributes(TONE_ATTRIBUTE, messageAttributeValue);
        }

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Your message was successfully published." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Publish. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }

        first = false;
    } while (askYesNoQuestion("Post another message? (y/n) "));

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now the SQS queue will be polled to retrieve the messages."
              << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press any key to continue...", alwaysTrueTest);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < queueURLS.size(); ++i) {
        // 7.  Poll an SQS queue for its messages.
        std::vector<Aws::String> messages;
        std::vector<Aws::String> receiptHandles;
        while (true) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageRequest request;
            request.SetMaxNumberOfMessages(10);
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);

            // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
            // For information about long polling, see
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
            request.SetWaitTimeSeconds(1);
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.ReceiveMessage(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SQS::Model::Message> &newMessages =
 outcome.GetResult().GetMessages();
                if (newMessages.empty()) {
                    break;
                }
                else {
                    for (const Aws::SQS::Model::Message &message: newMessages) {
```

```
                        messages.push_back(message.GetBody());
                        receiptHandles.push_back(message.GetReceiptHandle());
                    }
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ReceiveMessage. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();

        if (messages.empty()) {
            std::cout << "No messages were ";
        }
        else if (messages.size() == 1) {
            std::cout << "One message was ";
        }
        else {
            std::cout << messages.size() << " messages were ";
        }
        std::cout << "received by the queue '" << queueNames[i]
                  << "'." << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::String &message: messages) {
            std::cout << "  Message : '" << message << "'."
                      << std::endl;
        }

        // 8.  Delete a batch of messages from an SQS queue.
        if (!receiptHandles.empty()) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);
            int id = 1; // Ids must be unique within a batch delete request.
            for (const Aws::String &receiptHandle: receiptHandles) {
```

```
                Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry;
                entry.SetId(std::to_string(id));
                ++id;
                entry.SetReceiptHandle(receiptHandle);
                request.AddEntries(entry);
            }

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The batch deletion of messages was successful."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteMessageBatch. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return cleanUp(topicARN,
                   queueURLS,
                   subscriptionARNS,
                   snsClient,
                   sqsClient,
                   true); // askUser
}


bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::cleanUp(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &queueURLS,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &subscriptionARNS,
                                      const Aws::SNS::SNSClient &snsClient,
                                      const Aws::SQS::SQSClient &sqsClient,
```

```
                                        bool askUser) {
    bool result = true;
    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!queueURLS.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SQS queues? (y/n) ")) {

        for (const auto &queueURL: queueURLS) {
            // 9.  Delete an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteQueue(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The queue with URL '" << queueURL
                          << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteQueue. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        for (const auto &subscriptionARN: subscriptionARNS) {
            // 10. Unsubscribe an SNS subscription.
            Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetSubscriptionArn(subscriptionARN);

            Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeOutcome outcome =
                    snsClient.Unsubscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Unsubscribe of subscription ARN '" <<
subscriptionARN
                          << "' was successful." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Unsubscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
```

```
            }
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!topicARN.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SNS topic? (y/n) ")) {

        // 11. Delete an SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.DeleteTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The topic with ARN '" << topicARN
                      << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::DeleteTopicRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Create an IAM policy that gives an SQS queue permission to receive messages
 from an SNS topic.
/*!
 \sa createPolicyForQueue()
 \param queueARN: The SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
 \param topicARN: The SNS topic ARN.
 \return Aws::String: The policy as JSON.
 */
Aws::String AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::createPolicyForQueue(const Aws::String
 &queueARN,
                                                           const Aws::String
 &topicARN) {
    std::ostringstream policyStream;
    policyStream << R"({
```

```
        "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                    "Resource": ")" << queueARN << R"(",
                    "Condition": {
                "ArnEquals": {
                    "aws:SourceArn": ")" << topicARN << R"("
                }
            }
        }
        ]
    })";

    return policyStream.str();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

const FIFO_SUFFIX = ".fifo"
const TONE_KEY = "tone"

var ToneChoices = []string{"cheerful", "funny", "serious", "sincere"}

// MessageBody is used to deserialize the body of a message from a JSON string.
type MessageBody struct {
 Message string
}

// ScenarioRunner separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions
 so that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ScenarioRunner struct {
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
```

```
 snsActor   *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor   *actions.SqsActions
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context) (string, string,
 bool, bool) {
 log.Println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out) or
 standard.\n" +
  "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and message
 filtering.")
 isFifoTopic := runner.questioner.AskBool("\nWould you like to work with FIFO
 topics? (y/n) ", "y")

 contentBasedDeduplication := false
 if isFifoTopic {
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  log.Println("Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.
\n" +
   "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are automatically
 generated\n" +
   "from content using a hash function. If a message is successfully published to
\n" +
   "an SNS FIFO topic, any message published and determined to have the same\n" +
   "deduplication ID, within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted
\n" +
   "but not delivered. For more information about deduplication, see:\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.")
  contentBasedDeduplication = runner.questioner.AskBool(
   "\nDo you want to use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID? (y/n) ", "y")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 topicName := runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ")
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", topicName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
  log.Printf("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '%v' must be appended to
\n"+
   "the topic name.", FIFO_SUFFIX)
 }

 topicArn, err := runner.snsActor.CreateTopic(ctx, topicName, isFifoTopic,
 contentBasedDeduplication)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Your new topic with the name '%v' and Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
 \n"+
  "'%v' has been created.", topicName, topicArn)

 return topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, string) {
 queueName := runner.questioner.Ask(fmt.Sprintf("Enter a name for the %v SQS
 queue. ", ordinal))
 if isFifoTopic {
  queueName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", queueName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
  if ordinal == "first" {
   log.Printf("Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue, '%v' must "+
    "be appended to the queue name.\n", FIFO_SUFFIX)
  }
 }
 queueUrl, err := runner.sqsActor.CreateQueue(ctx, queueName, isFifoTopic)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Your new SQS queue with the name '%v' and the queue URL "+
  "'%v' has been created.", queueName, queueUrl)

 return queueName, queueUrl
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) SubscribeQueueToTopic(
 ctx context.Context, queueName string, queueUrl string, topicName string,
 topicArn string, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, bool) {

 queueArn, err := runner.sqsActor.GetQueueArn(ctx, queueUrl)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("The ARN of your queue is: %v.\n", queueArn)

 err = runner.sqsActor.AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx, queueUrl, queueArn, topicArn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
}
log.Println("Attached an IAM policy to the queue so the SNS topic can send " +
 "messages to it.")
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

var filterPolicy map[string][]string
if isFifoTopic {
 if ordinal == "first" {
  log.Println("Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters.\n" +
   "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered messages\n"
+
   "will be received in the queue.\n" +
   "For information about message filtering, see\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n" +
   "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\" attribute.")
 }

 wantFiltering := runner.questioner.AskBool(
  fmt.Sprintf("Do you want to filter messages that are sent to \"%v\"\n"+
   "from the %v topic? (y/n) ", queueName, topicName), "y")
 if wantFiltering {
  log.Println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following \"tone\"
attributes.")

  var toneSelections []string
  askAboutTones := true
  for askAboutTones {
   toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
    "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
   toneSelections = append(toneSelections, ToneChoices[toneIndex])
   askAboutTones = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to add another tone to
the filter? (y/n) ", "y")
  }
  log.Printf("Your subscription will be filtered to only pass the following
tones: %v\n", toneSelections)
  filterPolicy = map[string][]string{TONE_KEY: toneSelections}
 }
}

subscriptionArn, err := runner.snsActor.SubscribeQueue(ctx, topicArn, queueArn,
filterPolicy)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
```

```
 log.Printf("The queue %v is now subscribed to the topic %v with the subscription
 ARN %v.\n",
  queueName, topicName, subscriptionArn)

 return subscriptionArn, filterPolicy != nil
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PublishMessages(ctx context.Context, topicArn
 string, isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool, usingFilters bool) {
 var message string
 var groupId string
 var dedupId string
 var toneSelection string
 publishMore := true
 for publishMore {
  groupId = ""
  dedupId = ""
  toneSelection = ""
  message = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message to publish: ")
  if isFifoTopic {
   log.Println("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a message group
 ID.\n" +
    "All messages within the same group will be received in the order they were
 published.")
   groupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message group ID: ")
   if !contentBasedDeduplication {
    log.Println("Because you are not using content-based deduplication,\n" +
     "you must enter a deduplication ID.")
    dedupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a deduplication ID: ")
   }
  }
  if usingFilters {
   if runner.questioner.AskBool("Add a tone attribute so this message can be
 filtered? (y/n) ", "y") {
    toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
     "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
    toneSelection = ToneChoices[toneIndex]
   }
  }

  err := runner.snsActor.Publish(ctx, topicArn, message, groupId, dedupId,
 TONE_KEY, toneSelection)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
```

```
  }
  log.Println(("Your message was published."))

  publishMore = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to publish another
 messsage? (y/n) ", "y")
 }
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PollForMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrls
 []string) {
 log.Println("Polling queues for messages...")
 for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
  var messages []types.Message
  for {
   currentMsgs, err := runner.sqsActor.GetMessages(ctx, queueUrl, 10, 1)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   if len(currentMsgs) == 0 {
    break
   }
   messages = append(messages, currentMsgs...)
  }
  if len(messages) == 0 {
   log.Printf("No messages were received by queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  } else if len(messages) == 1 {
   log.Printf("One message was received by queue %v:\n", queueUrl)

  } else {
   log.Printf("%v messages were received by queue %v:\n", len(messages),
 queueUrl)
  }
  for msgIndex, message := range messages {
   messageBody := MessageBody{}
   err := json.Unmarshal([]byte(*message.Body), &messageBody)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Message %v: %v\n", msgIndex+1, messageBody.Message)
  }

  if len(messages) > 0 {
   log.Printf("Deleting %v messages from queue %v.\n", len(messages), queueUrl)
   err := runner.sqsActor.DeleteMessages(ctx, queueUrl, messages)
```

```
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
  }
 }

// RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use
 the
// AWS SDK for Go to create and use Amazon SNS topics and Amazon SQS queues.
//
// 1. Create a topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
// 2. Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
// 3. Publish messages to the topic.
// 4. Poll the queues for messages received.
// 5. Delete the topic and the queues.
//
// This example creates service clients from the specified sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario(
 ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources := Resources{}
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.\n" +
    "Cleaning up any resources that were created...")
   resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()
 queueCount := 2

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.\n\n"+
  "In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe %v SQS queues to
 the\n"+
  "topic. You can select from several options for configuring the topic and the
\n"+
  "subscriptions for the queues. You can then post to the topic and see the
 results\n"+
  "in the queues.\n", queueCount)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 runner := ScenarioRunner{
  questioner: questioner,
  snsActor:   &actions.SnsActions{SnsClient: sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  sqsActor:   &actions.SqsActions{SqsClient: sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 resources.snsActor = runner.snsActor
 resources.sqsActor = runner.sqsActor

 topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication :=
 runner.CreateTopic(ctx)
 resources.topicArn = topicArn
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Now you will create %v SQS queues and subscribe them to the topic.
\n", queueCount)
 ordinals := []string{"first", "next"}
 usingFilters := false
 for _, ordinal := range ordinals {
  queueName, queueUrl := runner.CreateQueue(ctx, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  resources.queueUrls = append(resources.queueUrls, queueUrl)

  _, filtering := runner.SubscribeQueueToTopic(ctx, queueName, queueUrl,
 topicName, topicArn, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  usingFilters = usingFilters || filtering
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PublishMessages(ctx, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication,
 usingFilters)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PollForMessages(ctx, resources.queueUrls)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 wantCleanup := questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all AWS resources
 created for this scenario? (y/n) ", "y")
 if wantCleanup {
  log.Println("Cleaning up resources...")
  resources.Cleanup(ctx)
 }
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SNS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// CreateTopic creates an Amazon SNS topic with the specified name. You can
 optionally
// specify that the topic is created as a FIFO topic and whether it uses content-
based
// deduplication instead of ID-based deduplication.
func (actor SnsActions) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context, topicName string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool) (string, error) {
 var topicArn string
 topicAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
 }
 if contentBasedDeduplication {
  topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
```

```
 }
 topic, err := actor.SnsClient.CreateTopic(ctx, &sns.CreateTopicInput{
  Name:       aws.String(topicName),
  Attributes: topicAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicName, err)
 } else {
  topicArn = *topic.TopicArn
 }

 return topicArn, err
}



// DeleteTopic delete an Amazon SNS topic.
func (actor SnsActions) DeleteTopic(ctx context.Context, topicArn string) error {
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.DeleteTopic(ctx, &sns.DeleteTopicInput{
  TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SubscribeQueue subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to
 an
// Amazon SNS topic. When filterMap is not nil, it is used to specify a filter
 policy
// so that messages are only sent to the queue when the message has the specified
 attributes.
func (actor SnsActions) SubscribeQueue(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 queueArn string, filterMap map[string][]string) (string, error) {
 var subscriptionArn string
 var attributes map[string]string
 if filterMap != nil {
  filterBytes, err := json.Marshal(filterMap)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create filter policy, here's why: %v\n", err)
   return "", err
  }
```

```
  attributes = map[string]string{"FilterPolicy": string(filterBytes)}
 }
 output, err := actor.SnsClient.Subscribe(ctx, &sns.SubscribeInput{
  Protocol:              aws.String("sqs"),
  TopicArn:              aws.String(topicArn),
  Attributes:            attributes,
  Endpoint:              aws.String(queueArn),
  ReturnSubscriptionArn: true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't susbscribe queue %v to topic %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   queueArn, topicArn, err)
 } else {
  subscriptionArn = *output.SubscriptionArn
 }

 return subscriptionArn, err
}



// Publish publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The message is then sent
 to all
// subscribers. When the topic is a FIFO topic, the message must also contain a
 group ID
// and, when ID-based deduplication is used, a deduplication ID. An optional key-
value
// filter attribute can be specified so that the message can be filtered
 according to
// a filter policy.
func (actor SnsActions) Publish(ctx context.Context, topicArn string, message
 string, groupId string, dedupId string, filterKey string, filterValue string)
 error {
 publishInput := sns.PublishInput{TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn), Message:
 aws.String(message)}
 if groupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageGroupId = aws.String(groupId)
 }
 if dedupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageDeduplicationId = aws.String(dedupId)
 }
 if filterKey != "" && filterValue != "" {
  publishInput.MessageAttributes = map[string]types.MessageAttributeValue{
```

```
   filterKey: {DataType: aws.String("String"), StringValue:
 aws.String(filterValue)},
  }
 }
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.Publish(ctx, &publishInput)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't publish message to topic %v. Here's why: %v", topicArn,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SQS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// CreateQueue creates an Amazon SQS queue with the specified name. You can
 specify
// whether the queue is created as a FIFO queue.
func (actor SqsActions) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, queueName string,
 isFifoQueue bool) (string, error) {
 var queueUrl string
 queueAttributes := map[string]string{}
```

```
 if isFifoQueue {
  queueAttributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
 }
 queue, err := actor.SqsClient.CreateQueue(ctx, &sqs.CreateQueueInput{
  QueueName:  aws.String(queueName),
  Attributes: queueAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueName, err)
 } else {
  queueUrl = *queue.QueueUrl
 }

 return queueUrl, err
}



// GetQueueArn uses the GetQueueAttributes action to get the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
// of an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetQueueArn(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string)
 (string, error) {
 var queueArn string
 arnAttributeName := types.QueueAttributeNameQueueArn
 attribute, err := actor.SqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(ctx,
 &sqs.GetQueueAttributesInput{
  QueueUrl:       aws.String(queueUrl),
  AttributeNames: []types.QueueAttributeName{arnAttributeName},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get ARN for queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  queueArn = attribute.Attributes[string(arnAttributeName)]
 }
 return queueArn, err
}



// AttachSendMessagePolicy uses the SetQueueAttributes action to attach a policy
 to an
// Amazon SQS queue that allows the specified Amazon SNS topic to send messages
 to the
```

```
// queue.
func (actor SqsActions) AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx context.Context, queueUrl
 string, queueArn string, topicArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Action:    "sqs:SendMessage",
   Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"},
   Resource:  aws.String(queueArn),
   Condition: PolicyCondition{"ArnEquals": map[string]string{"aws:SourceArn":
 topicArn}},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = actor.SqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(ctx, &sqs.SetQueueAttributesInput{
  Attributes: map[string]string{
   string(types.QueueAttributeNamePolicy): string(policyBytes),
  },
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't set send message policy on queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}

// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
```

```
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
 Condition PolicyCondition   `json:",omitempty"`
}

// PolicyCondition defines a condition in a policy.
type PolicyCondition map[string]map[string]string



// GetMessages uses the ReceiveMessage action to get messages from an Amazon SQS
 queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 maxMessages int32, waitTime int32) ([]types.Message, error) {
 var messages []types.Message
 result, err := actor.SqsClient.ReceiveMessage(ctx, &sqs.ReceiveMessageInput{
  QueueUrl:            aws.String(queueUrl),
  MaxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
  WaitTimeSeconds:     waitTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl,
 err)
 } else {
  messages = result.Messages
 }
 return messages, err
}



// DeleteMessages uses the DeleteMessageBatch action to delete a batch of
 messages from
// an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 messages []types.Message) error {
 entries := make([]types.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry, len(messages))
 for msgIndex := range messages {
  entries[msgIndex].Id = aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v", msgIndex))
  entries[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle = messages[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle
 }
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(ctx, &sqs.DeleteMessageBatchInput{
  Entries:  entries,
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteQueue deletes an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteQueue(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) error {
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteQueue(ctx, &sqs.DeleteQueueInput{
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 topicArn  string
 queueUrls []string
 snsActor  *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor  *actions.SqsActions
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
```

```
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Println("Something went wrong during cleanup. Use the AWS Management
 Console\n" +
    "to remove any remaining resources that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 var err error
 if resources.topicArn != "" {
  log.Printf("Deleting topic %v.\n", resources.topicArn)
  err = resources.snsActor.DeleteTopic(ctx, resources.topicArn)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }

 for _, queueUrl := range resources.queueUrls {
  log.Printf("Deleting queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  err = resources.sqsActor.DeleteQueue(ctx, queueUrl)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.JsonArray;
import com.google.gson.JsonObject;
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 * 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 * 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 * 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 * 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 * 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 * 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 * 8. Displays the messages.
 * 9. Deletes the received message.
 * 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 * 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */
public class SNSWorkflow {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage:\n" +
```

```
            "    <fifoQueueARN>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "    accountId - Your AWS account Id value.";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String accountId = args[0];
        String useFIFO;
        String duplication = "n";
        String topicName;
        String deduplicationID = null;
        String groupId = null;

        String topicArn;
        String sqsQueueName;
        String sqsQueueUrl;
        String sqsQueueArn;
        String subscriptionArn;
        boolean selectFIFO = false;

        String message;
        List<Message> messageList;
        List<String> filterList = new ArrayList<>();
        String msgAttValue = "";

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");
        System.out.println("In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
subscribe an SQS queue to the topic.\n" +
```

```
            "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the queue.\n" +
            "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out).\n" +
            "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering.\n" +
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)");
        useFIFO = in.nextLine();
        if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            selectFIFO = true;
            System.out.println("You have selected FIFO");
            System.out.println(" Because you have chosen a FIFO topic,
 deduplication is supported.\n" +
                "        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or
 automatically generated from content using a hash function.\n"
                +
                "        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO
 topic, any message published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,
\n"
                +
                "        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is
 accepted but not delivered.\n" +
                "        For more information about deduplication, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            System.out.println(
                "Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)");
            duplication = in.nextLine();
            if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            } else {
                System.out.println("Please enter deduplication Id value");
                deduplicationID = in.nextLine();
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            }
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a topic.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.");
        topicName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo'
must be appended to the topic name.");
            topicName = topicName + ".fifo";
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createFIFO(snsClient, topicName, duplication);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        } else {
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create an SQS queue.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.");
        sqsQueueName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            sqsQueueName = sqsQueueName + ".fifo";
        }
        sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName, selectFIFO);
        System.out.println("The queue URL is " + sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.");
        sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new queue is " + sqsQueueArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.");

        // Define the policy to use. Make sure that you change the REGION if you
are
        // running this code
```

```
        // in a different region.
        String policy = """
        {
             "Statement": [
             {
                 "Effect": "Allow",
                         "Principal": {
                     "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                 },
                 "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                         "Resource": "arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:%s:%s",
                         "Condition": {
                     "ArnEquals": {
                         "aws:SourceArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:%s:%s"
                     }
                 }
             }
             ]
         }
        """.formatted(accountId, sqsQueueName, accountId, topicName);

        setQueueAttr(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, policy);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println(
                "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.\n"
                    +
                    "For information about message filtering, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n"
                    +
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\"
 attribute.");
            System.out.println("Would you like to filter messages for " +
 sqsQueueName + "'s subscription to the topic "
                + topicName + "?  (y/n)");
            String filterAns = in.nextLine();
            if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                boolean moreAns = false;
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
 following \"tone\" attributes.");
```

```
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                while (!moreAns) {
                    System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    switch (ans) {
                        case "1":
                            filterList.add("cheerful");
                            break;
                        case "2":
                            filterList.add("funny");
                            break;
                        case "3":
                            filterList.add("serious");
                            break;
                        case "4":
                            filterList.add("sincere");
                            break;
                        default:
                            moreAns = true;
                            break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        subscriptionArn = subQueue(snsClient, topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Publish a message to the topic.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Would you like to add an attribute to this
message?  (y/n)");
            String msgAns = in.nextLine();
            if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
following \"tone\" attributes.");
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
```

```
                String ans = in.nextLine();
                switch (ans) {
                    case "1":
                        msgAttValue = "cheerful";
                        break;
                    case "2":
                        msgAttValue = "funny";
                        break;
                    case "3":
                        msgAttValue = "serious";
                        break;
                    default:
                        msgAttValue = "sincere";
                        break;
                }

                System.out.println("Selected value is " + msgAttValue);
            }
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessageFIFO(snsClient, message, topicArn, msgAttValue,
duplication, groupId, deduplicationID);

        } else {
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessage(snsClient, message, topicArn);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        messageList = receiveMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue);
        for (Message mes : messageList) {
            System.out.println("Message Id: " + mes.messageId());
            System.out.println("Full Message: " + mes.body());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to
continue.");
        in.nextLine();
```

```
        deleteMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, messageList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue.
Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        unSub(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        deleteSQSQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
```

```
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);
            System.out.println(queueName + " was successfully deleted.");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void unSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            UnsubscribeRequest request = UnsubscribeRequest.builder()
                .subscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
                .build();

            UnsubscribeResponse result = snsClient.unsubscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
                + "\nSubscription was removed for " + request.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {
        try {
            List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();
            for (Message msg : messages) {
                DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry =
DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                    .id(msg.messageId())
                    .build();

                entries.add(entry);
            }
```

```
            DeleteMessageBatchRequest deleteMessageBatchRequest =
DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .entries(entries)
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest);
            System.out.println("The batch delete of messages was successful");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String
queueUrl, String msgAttValue) {
        try {
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
                return
sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();
            } else {
                // We know there are filters on the message.
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageAttributeNames(msgAttValue) // Include other message
attributes if needed.
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();

                return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
```

```
    }

    public static void pubMessage(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
topicArn) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                .message(message)
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status is " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void pubMessageFIFO(SnsClient snsClient,
                                      String message,
                                      String topicArn,
                                      String msgAttValue,
                                      String duplication,
                                      String groupId,
                                      String deduplicationID) {

        try {
            PublishRequest request;
            // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
```

```
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                }

            } else {
                Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
HashMap<>();
                messageAttributes.put(msgAttValue,
MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                    .dataType("String")
                    .stringValue("true")
                    .build());

                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .messageAttributes(messageAttributes)
                        .build();
                }
            }

            // Publish the message to the topic.
            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Subscribe to the SQS queue.
```

```
   public static String subQueue(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
queueArn, List<String> filterList) {
       try {
           SubscribeRequest request;
           if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
               // No filter subscription is added.
               request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                   .protocol("sqs")
                   .endpoint(queueArn)
                   .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                   .topicArn(topicArn)
                   .build();

               SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
               System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been
subscribed to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                   "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());
               return result.subscriptionArn();
           } else {
               request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                   .protocol("sqs")
                   .endpoint(queueArn)
                   .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                   .topicArn(topicArn)
                   .build();

               SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
               System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been
subscribed to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                   "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());

               String attributeName = "FilterPolicy";
               Gson gson = new Gson();
               String jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}";
               JsonObject jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString,
JsonObject.class);
               JsonArray toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone");
               for (String value : filterList) {
                   toneArray.add(new JsonPrimitive(value));
               }

               String updatedJsonString = gson.toJson(jsonObject);
               System.out.println(updatedJsonString);
```

```
                SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest attRequest =
SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(result.subscriptionArn())
                    .attributeName(attributeName)
                    .attributeValue(updatedJsonString)
                    .build();

                snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest);
                return result.subscriptionArn();
            }

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Attach a policy to the queue.
    public static void setQueueAttr(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl, String
policy) {
        try {
            Map<software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName,
String> attrMap = new HashMap<>();
            attrMap.put(QueueAttributeName.POLICY, policy);

            SetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
SetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributes(attrMap)
                .build();

            sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
            System.out.println("The policy has been successfully attached.");

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getSQSQueueAttrs(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {
        // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
        List<QueueAttributeName> atts = new ArrayList<>();
```

```
        atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QUEUE_ARN);

        GetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
GetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
            .attributeNames(atts)
            .build();

        GetQueueAttributesResponse response =
sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
        Map<String, String> queueAtts = response.attributesAsStrings();
        for (Map.Entry<String, String> queueAtt : queueAtts.entrySet())
            return queueAtt.getValue();

        return "";
    }

    public static String createQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName,
Boolean selectFIFO) {
        try {
            System.out.println("\nCreate Queue");
            if (selectFIFO) {
                Map<QueueAttributeName, String> attrs = new HashMap<>();
                attrs.put(QueueAttributeName.FIFO_QUEUE, "true");
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest =
CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .attributes(attrs)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            } else {
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest =
CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
```

```
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createFIFO(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName, String
duplication) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = new HashMap<>();
            if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "false");
            } else {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
```

```
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            return response.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This is the entry point for this scenario.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

import { TopicsQueuesWkflw } from "./TopicsQueuesWkflw.js";
import { Prompter } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js";

export const startSnsWorkflow = () => {
  const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
  const sqsClient = new SQSClient({});
  const prompter = new Prompter();
  const logger = console;

  const wkflw = new TopicsQueuesWkflw(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger);

  wkflw.start();
};
```

The preceding code provides the necessary dependencies and starts the scenario. The next section contains the bulk of the example.

```
const toneChoices = [
  { name: "cheerful", value: "cheerful" },
  { name: "funny", value: "funny" },
  { name: "serious", value: "serious" },
  { name: "sincere", value: "sincere" },
];

export class TopicsQueuesWkflw {
  // SNS topic is configured as First-In-First-Out
  isFifo = true;

  // Automatic content-based deduplication is enabled.
  autoDedup = false;

  snsClient;
  sqsClient;
  topicName;
  topicArn;
```

```
  subscriptionArns = [];
  /**
   * @type {{ queueName: string, queueArn: string, queueUrl: string, policy?:
 string }[]}
   */
  queues = [];
  prompter;

  /**
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SNSClient} snsClient
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sqs').SQSClient} sqsClient
   * @param {import('../../libs/prompter.js').Prompter} prompter
   * @param {import('../../libs/logger.js').Logger} logger
   */
  constructor(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger) {
    this.snsClient = snsClient;
    this.sqsClient = sqsClient;
    this.prompter = prompter;
    this.logger = logger;
  }

  async welcome() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.description);
  }

  async confirmFifo() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.snsFifoDescription);
    this.isFifo = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.snsFifoPrompt,
    });

    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerDedup);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationNotice);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationDescription);
      this.autoDedup = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.deduplicationPrompt,
      });
    }
  }

  async createTopic() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.creatingTopics);
    this.topicName = await this.prompter.input({
```

```
      message: MESSAGES.topicNamePrompt,
    });
    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.topicName += ".fifo";
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifoNaming);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
    }

    const response = await this.snsClient.send(
      new CreateTopicCommand({
        Name: this.topicName,
        Attributes: {
          FifoTopic: this.isFifo ? "true" : "false",
          ...(this.autoDedup ? { ContentBasedDeduplication: "true" } : {}),
        },
      }),
    );

    this.topicArn = response.TopicArn;

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.topicCreatedNotice
        .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
        .replace("${TOPIC_ARN}", this.topicArn),
    );
  }

  async createQueues() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.createQueuesNotice);
    // Increase this number to add more queues.
    const maxQueues = 2;

    for (let i = 0; i < maxQueues; i++) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.queueCount.replace("${COUNT}", i + 1));
      let queueName = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.queueNamePrompt.replace(
          "${EXAMPLE_NAME}",
          i === 0 ? "good-news" : "bad-news",
        ),
      });

      if (this.isFifo) {
        queueName += ".fifo";
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
```

```
      }

      const response = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new CreateQueueCommand({
          QueueName: queueName,
          Attributes: { ...(this.isFifo ? { FifoQueue: "true" } : {}) },
        }),
      );

      const { Attributes } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
          QueueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
          AttributeNames: ["QueueArn"],
        }),
      );

      this.queues.push({
        queueName,
        queueArn: Attributes.QueueArn,
        queueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
      });

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueCreatedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queueName)
          .replace("${QUEUE_URL}", response.QueueUrl)
          .replace("${QUEUE_ARN}", Attributes.QueueArn),
      );
    }
  }

  async attachQueueIamPolicies() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      const policy = JSON.stringify(
        {
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Principal: {
                Service: "sns.amazonaws.com",
              },
              Action: "sqs:SendMessage",
              Resource: queue.queueArn,
              Condition: {
```

```
                ArnEquals: {
                  "aws:SourceArn": this.topicArn,
                },
              },
            },
          ],
        },
        null,
        2,
      );

      if (index !== 0) {
        this.logger.logSeparator();
      }

      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.attachPolicyNotice);
      console.log(policy);
      const addPolicy = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.addPolicyConfirmation.replace(
          "${QUEUE_NAME}",
          queue.queueName,
        ),
      });

      if (addPolicy) {
        await this.sqsClient.send(
          new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Attributes: {
              Policy: policy,
            },
          }),
        );
        queue.policy = policy;
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.policyNotAttachedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }
  }
```

```
  async subscribeQueuesToTopic() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      /**
       * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SubscribeCommandInput}
       */
      const subscribeParams = {
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Protocol: "sqs",
        Endpoint: queue.queueArn,
      };
      let tones = [];

      if (this.isFifo) {
        if (index === 0) {
          await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.fifoFilterNotice);
        }
        tones = await this.prompter.checkbox({
          message: MESSAGES.fifoFilterSelect.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
          choices: toneChoices,
        });

        if (tones.length) {
          subscribeParams.Attributes = {
            FilterPolicyScope: "MessageAttributes",
            FilterPolicy: JSON.stringify({
              tone: tones,
            }),
          };
        }
      }

      const { SubscriptionArn } = await this.snsClient.send(
        new SubscribeCommand(subscribeParams),
      );

      this.subscriptionArns.push(SubscriptionArn);

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueSubscribedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queue.queueName)
```

```
        .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
        .replace("${TONES}", tones.length ? tones.join(", ") : "none"),
    );
  }
}

async publishMessages() {
  const message = await this.prompter.input({
    message: MESSAGES.publishMessagePrompt,
  });

  let groupId;
  let deduplicationId;
  let choices;

  if (this.isFifo) {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.groupIdNotice);
    groupId = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.groupIdPrompt,
    });

    if (this.autoDedup === false) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationIdNotice);
      deduplicationId = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.deduplicationIdPrompt,
      });
    }

    choices = await this.prompter.checkbox({
      message: MESSAGES.messageAttributesPrompt,
      choices: toneChoices,
    });
  }

  await this.snsClient.send(
    new PublishCommand({
      TopicArn: this.topicArn,
      Message: message,
      ...(groupId
        ? {
            MessageGroupId: groupId,
          }
        : {}),
      ...(deduplicationId
```

```
          ? {
              MessageDeduplicationId: deduplicationId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(choices
          ? {
              MessageAttributes: {
                tone: {
                  DataType: "String.Array",
                  StringValue: JSON.stringify(choices),
                },
              },
            }
          : {}),
      }),
    );

    const publishAnother = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.publishAnother,
    });

    if (publishAnother) {
      await this.publishMessages();
    }
  }

  async receiveAndDeleteMessages() {
    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      const { Messages } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new ReceiveMessageCommand({
          QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
        }),
      );

      if (Messages) {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.messagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
        console.log(Messages);

        await this.sqsClient.send(
```

```
          new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
              Id: message.MessageId,
              ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
            })),
          }),
        );
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.noMessagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }

    const deleteAndPoll = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.deleteAndPollConfirmation,
    });

    if (deleteAndPoll) {
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    }
  }

  async destroyResources() {
    for (const subscriptionArn of this.subscriptionArns) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new UnsubscribeCommand({ SubscriptionArn: subscriptionArn }),
      );
    }

    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      await this.sqsClient.send(
        new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl }),
      );
    }

    if (this.topicArn) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new DeleteTopicCommand({ TopicArn: this.topicArn }),
      );
```

```
    }
  }

  async start() {
    console.clear();

    try {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerWelcome);
      await this.welcome();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifo);
      await this.confirmFifo();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateTopic);
      await this.createTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateQueues);
      await this.createQueues();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerAttachPolicy);
      await this.attachQueueIamPolicies();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerSubscribeQueues);
      await this.subscribeQueuesToTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerPublishMessage);
      await this.publishMessages();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerReceiveMessages);
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(err);
    } finally {
      await this.destroyResources();
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish

- ReceiveMessage
- SetQueueAttributes
- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns

import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.PublishRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.Message
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest
import com.google.gson.Gson
import com.google.gson.JsonObject
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive
import java.util.Scanner
```

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your AWS credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 8. Displays the messages.
 9. Deletes the received message.
 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */

val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main() {
    val input = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val useFIFO: String
    var duplication = "n"
    var topicName: String
    var deduplicationID: String? = null
    var groupId: String? = null
    val topicArn: String?
    var sqsQueueName: String
    val sqsQueueUrl: String?
    val sqsQueueArn: String
    val subscriptionArn: String?
    var selectFIFO = false
    val message: String
    val messageList: List<Message?>?
    val filterList = ArrayList<String>()
    var msgAttValue = ""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Kotlin messaging with topics and
 queues.")
```

```
    println(
        """
                In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe an
 SQS queue to the topic.
                You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the queue.
                You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
                SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out).
                FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication
 and message filtering.
                Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    useFIFO = input.nextLine()
    if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        selectFIFO = true
        println("You have selected FIFO")
        println(
            """ Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.
        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or automatically
 generated from content using a hash function.
        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any message
 published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,
        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted but not
 delivered.
        For more information about deduplication, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.""",
        )

        println("Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)")
        duplication = input.nextLine()
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        } else {
            println("Enter deduplication Id value")
```

```
            deduplicationID = input.nextLine()
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Create a topic.")
    println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.")
    topicName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended
 to the topic name.")
        topicName = "$topicName.fifo"
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createFIFO(topicName, duplication)
        println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    } else {
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createSNSTopic(topicName)
        println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create an SQS queue.")
    println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.")
    sqsQueueName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        sqsQueueName = "$sqsQueueName.fifo"
    }
    sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsQueueName, selectFIFO)
    println("The queue URL is $sqsQueueUrl")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.")
    sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsQueueUrl)
    println("The ARN of the new queue is $sqsQueueArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.")
```

```
    // Define the policy to use.
    val policy = """{
     "Statement": [
     {
         "Effect": "Allow",
                 "Principal": {
             "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
         },
         "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                 "Resource": "$sqsQueueArn",
                 "Condition": {
             "ArnEquals": {
                 "aws:SourceArn": "$topicArn"
             }
         }
     }
     ]
     }"""
    setQueueAttr(sqsQueueUrl, policy)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println(
            """If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.
For information about message filtering, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/
latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html
For this example, you can filter messages by a "tone" attribute.""",
        )
        println("Would you like to filter messages for $sqsQueueName's
 subscription to the topic $topicName?  (y/n)")
        val filterAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            var moreAns = false
            println("You can filter messages by using one or more of the
 following \"tone\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            while (!moreAns) {
                println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
```

```
                val ans: String = input.nextLine()
                when (ans) {
                    "1" -> filterList.add("cheerful")
                    "2" -> filterList.add("funny")
                    "3" -> filterList.add("serious")
                    "4" -> filterList.add("sincere")
                    else -> moreAns = true
                }
            }
        }
    }
    subscriptionArn = subQueue(topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Publish a message to the topic.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Would you like to add an attribute to this message?  (y/n)")
        val msgAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following
\"tone\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
            val ans: String = input.nextLine()
            msgAttValue = when (ans) {
                "1" -> "cheerful"
                "2" -> "funny"
                "3" -> "serious"
                else -> "sincere"
            }
            println("Selected value is $msgAttValue")
        }
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessageFIFO(message, topicArn, msgAttValue, duplication, groupId,
deduplicationID)
    } else {
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessage(message, topicArn)
```

```
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    messageList = receiveMessages(sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue)
    if (messageList != null) {
        for (mes in messageList) {
            println("Message Id: ${mes.messageId}")
            println("Full Message: ${mes.body}")
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    if (messageList != null) {
        deleteMessages(sqsQueueUrl, messageList)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue. Press any key
 to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    unSub(subscriptionArn)
    deleteSQSQueue(sqsQueueName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    deleteSNSTopic(topicArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = DeleteTopicRequest {
```

```
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println("$topicArnVal was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSQSQueue(queueNameVal: String) {
    val getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val queueUrlVal = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl
        val deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

        sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest)
        println("$queueNameVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun unSub(subscripArn: String?) {
    val request = UnsubscribeRequest {
        subscriptionArn = subscripArn
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.unsubscribe(request)
        println("Subscription was removed for $subscripArn")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, messages: List<Message>) {
    val entriesVal: MutableList<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> = mutableListOf()
    for (msg in messages) {
        val entry = DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = msg.messageId
        }
        entriesVal.add(entry)
    }
```

```
    val deleteMessageBatchRequest = DeleteMessageBatchRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        entries = entriesVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest)
        println("The batch delete of messages was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun receiveMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, msgAttValue: String):
 List<Message>? {
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        val request = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(request).messages
        }
    } else {
        val receiveRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            waitTimeSeconds = 1
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages
        }
    }
}

suspend fun pubMessage(messageVal: String?, topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = PublishRequest {
        message = messageVal
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun pubMessageFIFO(
    messageVal: String?,
    topicArnVal: String?,
    msgAttValue: String,
    duplication: String,
    groupIdVal: String?,
    deduplicationID: String?,
) {
    // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    } else {
        val messAttr = aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue {
            dataType = "String"
            stringValue = "true"
        }

        val mapAtt: Map<String,
 aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue> =
            mapOf(msgAttValue to messAttr)
```

```
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
            val request = PublishRequest {
                topicArn = topicArnVal
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                messageAttributes = mapAtt
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Subscribe to the SQS queue.
suspend fun subQueue(topicArnVal: String?, queueArnVal: String, filterList:
 List<String?>): String? {
    val request: SubscribeRequest
    if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
        // No filter subscription is added.
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
```

```
            println(
                "The queue " + queueArnVal + " has been subscribed to the topic "
 + topicArnVal + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn,
            )
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    } else {
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
            println("The queue $queueArnVal has been subscribed to the topic
 $topicArnVal with the subscription ARN ${result.subscriptionArn}")

            val attributeNameVal = "FilterPolicy"
            val gson = Gson()
            val jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}"
            val jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString, JsonObject::class.java)
            val toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone")
            for (value: String? in filterList) {
                toneArray.add(JsonPrimitive(value))
            }

            val updatedJsonString: String = gson.toJson(jsonObject)
            println(updatedJsonString)
            val attRequest = SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest {
                subscriptionArn = result.subscriptionArn
                attributeName = attributeNameVal
                attributeValue = updatedJsonString
            }

            snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest)
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    }
}

suspend fun setQueueAttr(queueUrlVal: String?, policy: String) {
```

```
    val attrMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attrMap[QueueAttributeName.Policy.toString()] = policy

    val attributesRequest = SetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributes = attrMap
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        println("The policy has been successfully attached.")
    }
}

suspend fun getSQSQueueAttrs(queueUrlVal: String?): String {
    val atts: MutableList<QueueAttributeName> = ArrayList()
    atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QueueArn)

    val attributesRequest = GetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributeNames = atts
    }
    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        val mapAtts = response.attributes
        if (mapAtts != null) {
            mapAtts.forEach { entry ->
                println("${entry.key} : ${entry.value}")
                return entry.value
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun createQueue(queueNameVal: String?, selectFIFO: Boolean): String? {
    println("\nCreate Queue")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        val attrs = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
        attrs[QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue.toString()] = "true"

        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
            attributes = attrs
```

```
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("\nGet queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    } else {
        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("Get queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createSNSTopic(topicName: String?): String? {
    val request = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.createTopic(request)
        return result.topicArn
    }
}

suspend fun createFIFO(topicName: String?, duplication: String): String? {
```

```
    val topicAttributes: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "false"
    } else {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
    }

    val topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
        attributes = topicAttributes
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest)
        return response.topicArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "queue-scenario",
        abstract: """
        This example interactively demonstrates how to use Amazon Simple
        Notification Service (Amazon SNS) and Amazon Simple Queue Service
        (Amazon SQS) together to publish and receive messages using queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        Supports filtering using a "tone" attribute.
        """
    )

    /// Prompt for an input string. Only non-empty strings are allowed.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: The prompt to display.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string input by the user.
    func stringRequest(prompt: String) -> String {
        var str: String?

        while str == nil {
            print(prompt, terminator: "")
```

```
            str = readLine()

            if str != nil && str?.count == 0 {
                str = nil
            }
        }

        return str!
    }

    /// Ask a yes/no question.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: A prompt string to print.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user answered "Y", otherwise `false`.
    func yesNoRequest(prompt: String) -> Bool {
        while true {
            let answer = stringRequest(prompt: prompt).lowercased()
            if answer == "y" || answer == "n" {
                return answer == "y"
            }
        }
    }

    /// Display a menu of options then request a selection.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt string to display before the menu.
    ///   - options: An array of strings giving the menu options.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The index number of the selected option or 0 if no item was
    ///   selected.
    func menuRequest(prompt: String, options: [String]) -> Int {
        let numOptions = options.count

        if numOptions == 0 {
            return 0
        }

        print(prompt)

        for (index, value) in options.enumerated() {
            print("(\(index)) \(value)")
        }
```

```
        repeat {
            print("Enter your selection (0 - \(numOptions-1)): ", terminator: "")
            if let answer = readLine() {
                guard let answer = Int(answer) else {
                    print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
                    continue
                }

                if answer >= 0 && answer < numOptions {
                    return answer
                } else {
                    print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
                }
            }
        } while true
    }

    /// Ask the user too press RETURN. Accepts any input but ignores it.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: The text prompt to display.
    func returnRequest(prompt: String) {
        print(prompt, terminator: "")
        _ = readLine()
    }

    var attrValues = [
        "<none>",
        "cheerful",
        "funny",
        "serious",
        "sincere"
    ]

    /// Ask the user to choose one of the attribute values to use as a filter.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - message: A message to display before the menu of values.
    ///   - attrValues: An array of strings giving the values to choose from.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string corresponding to the selected option.
    func askForFilter(message: String, attrValues: [String]) -> String? {
        print(message)
        for (index, value) in attrValues.enumerated() {
```

```
            print("  [\(index)] \(value)")
        }

        var answer: Int?
        repeat {
            answer = Int(stringRequest(prompt: "Select an value for the 'tone'
attribute or 0 to end: "))
        } while answer == nil || answer! < 0 || answer! > attrValues.count + 1

        if answer == 0 {
            return nil
        }
        return attrValues[answer!]
    }

    /// Prompts the user for filter terms and constructs the attribute
    /// record that specifies them.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A mapping of "FilterPolicy" to a JSON string representing
    ///   the user-defined filter.
    func buildFilterAttributes() -> [String:String] {
        var attr: [String:String] = [:]
        var filterString = ""

        var first = true

        while let ans = askForFilter(message: "Choose a value to apply to the
'tone' attribute.",
                                     attrValues: attrValues) {
            if !first {
                filterString += ","
            }
            first = false

            filterString += "\"\(ans)\""
        }

        let filterJSON = "{ \"tone\": [\(filterString)]}"
        attr["FilterPolicy"] = filterJSON

        return attr
    }
    /// Create a queue, returning its URL string.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt to ask for the queue name.
    ///   - isFIFO: Whether or not to create a FIFO queue.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the queue.
    func createQueue(prompt: String, sqsClient: SQSClient, isFIFO: Bool) async
throws -> String? {
        repeat {
            var queueName = stringRequest(prompt: prompt)
            var attributes: [String: String] = [:]

            if isFIFO {
                queueName += ".fifo"
                attributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
            }

            do {
                let output = try await sqsClient.createQueue(
                    input: CreateQueueInput(
                        attributes: attributes,
                        queueName: queueName
                    )
                )
                guard let url = output.queueUrl else {
                    return nil
                }

                return url
            } catch _ as QueueDeletedRecently {
                print("You need to use a different queue name. A queue by that
name was recently deleted.")
                continue
            }
        } while true
    }

    /// Return the ARN of a queue given its URL.
    ///
    /// - Parameter queueUrl: The URL of the queue for which to return the
    ///   ARN.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ARN of the specified queue.
    func getQueueARN(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async throws ->
String? {
```

```
        let output = try await sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(
            input: GetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributeNames: [.queuearn],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )

        guard let attributes = output.attributes else {
            return nil
        }

        return attributes["QueueArn"]
    }

    /// Applies the needed policy to the specified queue.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - queueArn: The ARN of the queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - topicArn: The topic that should have access via the policy.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from the SQS `SetQueueAttributes` action.
    func setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                        queueArn: String, topicArn: String) async throws {
        _ = try await sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(
            input: SetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributes: [
                    "Policy":
                        """
                        {
                            "Statement": [
                                {
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {
                                        "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                                    },
                                    "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": "\(queueArn)",
                                    "Condition": {
                                        "ArnEquals": {
                                            "aws:SourceArn": "\(topicArn)"
                                        }
                                    }
```

```
                                }
                            ]
                        }
                        """

                ],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )
    }

    /// Receive the available messages on a queue, outputting them to the
    /// screen. Returns a dictionary you pass to DeleteMessageBatch to delete
    /// all the received messages.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue on which to receive messages.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.receiveMessage()`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
    ///   items, each describing one received message in the format needed to
    ///   delete it.
    func receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async
throws
                                ->
[SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] {
        let output = try await sqsClient.receiveMessage(
            input: ReceiveMessageInput(
                maxNumberOfMessages: 10,
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )

        guard let messages = output.messages else {
            print("No messages received.")
            return []
        }

        var deleteList: [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] = []

        // Print out all the messages that were received, including their
        // attributes, if any.
```

```
        for message in messages {
            print("Message ID:     \(message.messageId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Receipt handle: \(message.receiptHandle ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Message JSON:   \(message.body ?? "<body missing>")")

            if message.receiptHandle != nil {
                deleteList.append(
                    SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry(
                        id: message.messageId,
                        receiptHandle: message.receiptHandle
                    )
                )
            }
        }

        return deleteList
    }

    /// Delete all the messages in the specified list.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue to delete messages from.
    ///   - deleteList: A list of `DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry` objects
    ///     describing the messages to delete.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.deleteMessageBatch()`.
    func deleteMessageList(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                           deleteList:
[SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry]) async throws {
        let output = try await sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(
            input: DeleteMessageBatchInput(entries: deleteList, queueUrl:
queueUrl)
        )

        if let failed = output.failed {
            print("\(failed.count) errors occurred deleting messages from the
queue.")
            for message in failed {
                print("---> Failed to delete message \(message.id ?? "<unknown
ID>") with error: \(message.code ?? "<unknown>") (\(message.message ?? "...")")
            }
        }
```

```
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let rowOfStars = String(repeating: "*", count: 75)

        print("""
              \(rowOfStars)
              Welcome to the cross-service messaging with topics and queues
 example.
              In this workflow, you'll create an SNS topic, then create two SQS
              queues which will be subscribed to that topic.

              You can specify several options for configuring the topic, as well
 as
              the queue subscriptions. You can then post messages to the topic
 and
              receive the results on the queues.
              \(rowOfStars)\n
              """
        )

        // 0. Create SNS and SQS clients.

        let snsConfig = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region:
 region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: snsConfig)

        let sqsConfig = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region:
 region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: sqsConfig)

        // 1. Ask the user whether to create a FIFO topic. If so, ask whether
        //    to use content-based deduplication instead of requiring a
        //    deduplication ID.

        let isFIFO = yesNoRequest(prompt: "Do you want to create a FIFO topic (Y/
N)? ")
        var isContentBasedDeduplication = false

        if isFIFO {
            print("""
                  \(rowOfStars)
                  Because you've chosen to create a FIFO topic, deduplication is
```

```
                  supported.

                  Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are
 automatically
                  generated from the content using a hash function.

                  If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic,
 any
                  message published and found to have the same deduplication ID
                  (within a five-minute deduplication interval), is accepted but
                  not delivered.

                  For more information about deduplication, see:
                  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-
dedup.html.
                  """
            )

            isContentBasedDeduplication = yesNoRequest(
                prompt: "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID (Y/N)? ")
            print(rowOfStars)
        }

        var topicName = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter the name of the topic to
 create: ")

        // 2. Create the topic. Append ".fifo" to the name if FIFO was
        //    requested, and set the "FifoTopic" attribute to "true" if so as
        //    well. Set the "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute to "true" if
        //    content-based deduplication was requested.

        if isFIFO {
            topicName += ".fifo"
        }

        print("Topic name: \(topicName)")

        var attributes = [
            "FifoTopic": (isFIFO ? "true" : "false")
        ]

        // If it's a FIFO topic with content-based deduplication, set the
        // "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute.
```

```
        if isContentBasedDeduplication {
            attributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
        }

        // Create the topic and retrieve the ARN.

        let output = try await snsClient.createTopic(
            input: CreateTopicInput(
                attributes: attributes,
                name: topicName
            )
        )

        guard let topicArn = output.topicArn else {
            print("No topic ARN returned!")
            return
        }

        print("""
              Topic '\(topicName) has been created with the
              topic ARN \(topicArn)."
              """
        )

        print(rowOfStars)

        // 3. Create an SQS queue. Append ".fifo" to the name if one of the
        //    FIFO topic configurations was chosen, and set "FifoQueue" to
        //    "true" if the topic is FIFO.

        print("""
              Next, you will create two SQS queues that will be subscribed
              to the topic you just created.\n
              """
        )

        let q1Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the first
queue: ",
                                          sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)
        guard let q1Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 1!")
            return
        }
```

```
        // 4. Get the SQS queue's ARN attribute using `GetQueueAttributes`.

        let q1Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url)

        guard let q1Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 1!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 1 ARN: \(q1Arn)")

        // 5. Attach an AWS IAM policy to the queue using
        //    `SetQueueAttributes`.

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
                                 queueArn: q1Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        // 6. Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic. Set the topic ARN in
        //    the request. Set the protocol to "sqs". Set the queue ARN to the
        //    ARN just received in step 5. For FIFO topics, give the option to
        //    apply a filter. A filter allows only matching messages to enter
        //    the queue.

        var q1Attributes: [String:String]? = nil

        if isFIFO {
            print(
                """

                If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will
                be received in the queue. For information about message
 filtering, see
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html
                For this example, you can filter messages by a 'tone' attribute.

                """
            )

            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the first queue's
 subscription to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
```

```
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q1Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub1Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q1Attributes,
                endpoint: q1Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q1SubscriptionArn = sub1Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 7. Repeat steps 3-6 for the second queue.

        let q2Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the second
queue: ",
                                  sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)

        guard let q2Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 2!")
            return
        }

        let q2Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url)

        guard let q2Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 2!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 2 ARN: \(q2Arn)")

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
                                 queueArn: q2Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        var q2Attributes: [String:String]? = nil
```

```
        if isFIFO {
            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the second queue's
subscription to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q2Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub2Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q2Attributes,
                endpoint: q2Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q2SubscriptionArn = sub2Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 8. Let the user publish messages to the topic, asking for a message
        //    body for each message. Handle the types of topic correctly (SEE
        //    MVP INFORMATION AND FIX THESE COMMENTS!!!

        print("\n\(rowOfStars)\n")

        var first = true

        repeat {
            var publishInput = PublishInput(
                topicArn: topicArn
            )

            publishInput.message = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter message text to
publish: ")

            // If using a FIFO topic, a message group ID must be set on the
            // message.
```

```
            if isFIFO {
                if first {
                    print("""
                        Because you're using a FIFO topic, you must set a message
                        group ID. All messages within the same group will be
                        received in the same order in which they were published.
\n
                        """
                    )
                }
                publishInput.messageGroupId = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter a
 message group ID for this message: ")

                if !isContentBasedDeduplication {
                    if first {
                        print("""
                              Because you're not using content-based
 deduplication, you
                              must enter a deduplication ID. If other messages
 with the
                              same deduplication ID are published within the same
                              deduplication interval, they will not be delivered.
                              """
                        )
                    }
                    publishInput.messageDeduplicationId = stringRequest(prompt:
 "Enter a deduplication ID for this message: ")
                }
            }

            // Allow the user to add a value for the "tone" attribute if they
            // wish to do so.

            var messageAttributes: [String:SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue]
 = [:]
            let attrValSelection = menuRequest(prompt: "Choose a tone to apply to
 this message.", options: attrValues)

            if attrValSelection != 0 {
                let val = SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue(dataType:
 "String", stringValue: attrValues[attrValSelection])
                messageAttributes["tone"] = val
            }
```

```
            publishInput.messageAttributes = messageAttributes

            // Publish the message and display its ID.

            let publishOutput = try await snsClient.publish(input: publishInput)

            guard let messageID = publishOutput.messageId else {
                print("Unable to get the published message's ID!")
                return
            }

            print("Message published with ID \(messageID).")
            first = false

            // 9. Repeat step 8 until the user says they don't want to post
            //    another.

        } while (yesNoRequest(prompt: "Post another message (Y/N)? "))

        // 10. Display a list of the messages in each queue by using
        //     `ReceiveMessage`. Show at least the body and the attributes.

        print(rowOfStars)
        print("Contents of queue 1:")
        let q1DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q1Url)
        print("\n\nContents of queue 2:")
        let q2DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q2Url)
        print(rowOfStars)

        returnRequest(prompt: "\nPress return to clean up: ")

        // 11. Delete the received messages using `DeleteMessageBatch`.

        print("Deleting the messages from queue 1...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
deleteList: q1DeleteList)
        print("\nDeleting the messages from queue 2...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
deleteList: q2DeleteList)

        // 12. Unsubscribe and delete both queues.
```

```
        print("\nUnsubscribing from queue 1...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q1SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Unsubscribing from queue 2...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q2SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 1...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q1Url)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 2...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q2Url)
        )

        // 13. Delete the topic.

        print("Deleting the SNS topic...")
        _ = try await snsClient.deleteTopic(
            input: DeleteTopicInput(topicArn: topicArn)
        )
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Send and receive batches of messages with Amazon SQS using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an Amazon SQS queue.
- Send batches of messages to the queue.
- Receive batches of messages from the queue.
- Delete batches of messages from the queue.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

As shown in the following examples, you can handle batch message operations with Amazon SQS using two different approaches with the AWS SDK for Java 2.x:

SendRecvBatch.java uses explicit batch operations. You manually create message batches and call `sendMessageBatch()` and `deleteMessageBatch()` directly. You also handle batch responses, including any failed messages. This approach gives you full control over batch sizing and error handling. However, it requires more code to manage the batching logic.

SimpleProducerConsumer.java uses the high-level `SqsAsyncBatchManager` library for automatic request batching. You make individual `sendMessage()` and `deleteMessage()` calls with the same method signatures as the standard client. The SDK automatically buffers these calls and sends them as batch operations. This approach requires minimal code changes while providing batching performance benefits.

Use explicit batching when you need fine-grained control over batch composition and error handling. Use automatic batching when you want to optimize performance with minimal code changes.

SendRecvBatch.java - Uses explicit batch operations with messages.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.BatchResultErrorEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchResultEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.MessageAttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchResultEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.io.BufferedReader;
import java.io.IOException;
```

```
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.io.InputStreamReader;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;


/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

/**
 * This code demonstrates basic message operations in Amazon Simple Queue Service
 (Amazon SQS).
 */

public class SendRecvBatch {
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SendRecvBatch.class);
    private static final SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();


    public static void main(String[] args) {
        usageDemo();
    }
    /**
     * Send a batch of messages in a single request to an SQS queue.
     * This request may return overall success even when some messages were not
 sent.
     * The caller must inspect the Successful and Failed lists in the response
 and
     * resend any failed messages.
     *
     * @param queueUrl  The URL of the queue to receive the messages.
     * @param messages  The messages to send to the queue. Each message contains
 a body and attributes.
```

```
    * @return The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and
failed messages.
    */
   public static SendMessageBatchResponse sendMessages(
           String queueUrl, List<MessageEntry> messages) {

       try {
           List<SendMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();

           for (int i = 0; i < messages.size(); i++) {
               MessageEntry message = messages.get(i);
               entries.add(SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                       .id(String.valueOf(i))
                       .messageBody(message.getBody())
                       .messageAttributes(message.getAttributes())
                       .build());
           }

           SendMessageBatchRequest sendBatchRequest =
SendMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                   .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                   .entries(entries)
                   .build();

           SendMessageBatchResponse response =
sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendBatchRequest);

           if (!response.successful().isEmpty()) {
               for (SendMessageBatchResultEntry resultEntry :
response.successful()) {
                   LOGGER.info("Message sent: {}: {}", resultEntry.messageId(),

messages.get(Integer.parseInt(resultEntry.id())).getBody());
               }
           }

           if (!response.failed().isEmpty()) {
               for (BatchResultErrorEntry errorEntry : response.failed()) {
                   LOGGER.warn("Failed to send: {}: {}", errorEntry.id(),

messages.get(Integer.parseInt(errorEntry.id())).getBody());
               }
           }
```

```
            return response;

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Send messages failed to queue: {}", queueUrl, e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Receive a batch of messages in a single request from an SQS queue.
     *
     * @param queueUrl   The URL of the queue from which to receive messages.
     * @param maxNumber  The maximum number of messages to receive (capped at 10
by SQS).
     *                   The actual number of messages received might be less.
     * @param waitTime   The maximum time to wait (in seconds) before returning.
When
     *                   this number is greater than zero, long polling is used.
This
     *                   can result in reduced costs and fewer false empty
responses.
     * @return The list of Message objects received. These each contain the body
     *         of the message and metadata and custom attributes.
     */
    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(String queueUrl, int maxNumber,
int waitTime) {
        try {
            ReceiveMessageRequest receiveRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(maxNumber)
                    .waitTimeSeconds(waitTime)
                    .messageAttributeNames("All")
                    .build();

            List<Message> messages =
sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages();

            for (Message message : messages) {
                LOGGER.info("Received message: {}: {}", message.messageId(),
message.body());
            }

            return messages;
```

```
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Couldn't receive messages from queue: {}", queueUrl,
e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Delete a batch of messages from a queue in a single request.
     *
     * @param queueUrl  The URL of the queue from which to delete the messages.
     * @param messages  The list of messages to delete.
     * @return The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and
failed
     *         message deletions.
     */
    public static DeleteMessageBatchResponse deleteMessages(String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {
        try {
            List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();

            for (int i = 0; i < messages.size(); i++) {
                entries.add(DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                        .id(String.valueOf(i))
                        .receiptHandle(messages.get(i).receiptHandle())
                        .build());
            }

            DeleteMessageBatchRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .entries(entries)
                    .build();

            DeleteMessageBatchResponse response =
sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteRequest);

            if (!response.successful().isEmpty()) {
                for (DeleteMessageBatchResultEntry resultEntry :
response.successful()) {
                    LOGGER.info("Deleted {}",
messages.get(Integer.parseInt(resultEntry.id())).receiptHandle());
                }
```

```
            }

            if (!response.failed().isEmpty()) {
                for (BatchResultErrorEntry errorEntry : response.failed()) {
                    LOGGER.warn("Could not delete {}",
messages.get(Integer.parseInt(errorEntry.id())).receiptHandle());
                }
            }

            return response;

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Couldn't delete messages from queue {}", queueUrl, e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Helper class to represent a message with body and attributes.
     */
    public static class MessageEntry {
        private final String body;
        private final Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes;

        public MessageEntry(String body, Map<String, MessageAttributeValue>
attributes) {
            this.body = body;
            this.attributes = attributes != null ? attributes : new HashMap<>();
        }

        public String getBody() {
            return body;
        }

        public Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> getAttributes() {
            return attributes;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Shows how to:
     * * Read the lines from a file and send the lines in
     *   batches of 10 as messages to a queue.
     * * Receive the messages in batches until the queue is empty.
```

```
    * * Reassemble the lines of the file and verify they match the original
file.
    */
   public static void usageDemo() {
       LOGGER.info("-".repeat(88));
       LOGGER.info("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS)
demo!");
       LOGGER.info("-".repeat(88));

       String queueUrl = null;
       try {
           // Create a queue for the demo.
           String queueName = "sqs-usage-demo-message-wrapper-" +
System.currentTimeMillis();
           CreateQueueRequest createRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                   .queueName(queueName)
                   .build();
           queueUrl = sqsClient.createQueue(createRequest).queueUrl();
           LOGGER.info("Created queue: {}", queueUrl);

           try (InputStream inputStream =
SendRecvBatch.class.getResourceAsStream("/log4j2.xml");
                BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(new
InputStreamReader(inputStream))) {

               List<String> lines = reader.lines().toList();

               // Send file lines in batches.
               int batchSize = 10;
               LOGGER.info("Sending file lines in batches of {} as messages.",
batchSize);

               for (int i = 0; i < lines.size(); i += batchSize) {
                   List<MessageEntry> messageBatch = new ArrayList<>();

                   for (int j = i; j < Math.min(i + batchSize, lines.size()); j+
+) {
                       String line = lines.get(j);
                       if (line == null || line.trim().isEmpty()) {
                           continue; // Skip empty lines.
                       }

                       Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes = new
HashMap<>();
```

```
                        attributes.put("line", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                                .dataType("String")
                                .stringValue(String.valueOf(j))
                                .build());

                        messageBatch.add(new MessageEntry(lines.get(j),
attributes));
                    }

                    sendMessages(queueUrl, messageBatch);
                    System.out.print(".");
                    System.out.flush();
                }

                LOGGER.info("\nDone. Sent {} messages.", lines.size());

                // Receive and process messages.
                LOGGER.info("Receiving, handling, and deleting messages in
batches of {}.", batchSize);
                String[] receivedLines = new String[lines.size()];
                boolean moreMessages = true;

                while (moreMessages) {
                    List<Message> receivedMessages = receiveMessages(queueUrl,
batchSize, 5);

                    for (Message message : receivedMessages) {
                        int lineNumber =
Integer.parseInt(message.messageAttributes().get("line").stringValue());
                        receivedLines[lineNumber] = message.body();
                    }

                    if (!receivedMessages.isEmpty()) {
                        deleteMessages(queueUrl, receivedMessages);
                    } else {
                        moreMessages = false;
                    }
                }

                LOGGER.info("\nDone.");

                // Verify that all lines were received correctly.
                boolean allLinesMatch = true;
                for (int i = 0; i < lines.size(); i++) {
```

```
                    String originalLine = lines.get(i);
                    String receivedLine = receivedLines[i] == null ? "" :
receivedLines[i];

                    if (!originalLine.equals(receivedLine)) {
                        allLinesMatch = false;
                        break;
                    }
                }

                if (allLinesMatch) {
                    LOGGER.info("Successfully reassembled all file lines!");
                } else {
                    LOGGER.info("Uh oh, some lines were missed!");
                }
            }
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("SQS operation failed", e);
        } catch (RuntimeException | IOException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Unexpected runtime error during demo", e);
        } finally {
            // Clean up by deleting the queue if it was created.
            if (queueUrl != null) {
                try {
                    DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest =
DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .build();
                    sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);
                    LOGGER.info("Deleted queue: {}", queueUrl);
                } catch (SqsException e) {
                    LOGGER.error("Failed to delete queue: {}", queueUrl, e);
                }
            }
        }

        LOGGER.info("Thanks for watching!");
        LOGGER.info("-".repeat(88));
    }
}
```

SimpleProducerConsumer.java - Uses automatic batching of messages.

```
package com.example.sqs;

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.batchmanager.SqsAsyncBatchManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Random;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicBoolean;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicInteger;

/**
 * Demonstrates the AWS SDK for Java 2.x Automatic Request Batching API for
 Amazon SQS.
 *
 * This example showcases the high-level SqsAsyncBatchManager library that
 provides
 * efficient batching and buffering for SQS operations. The batch manager offers
 * methods that directly mirror SqsAsyncClient methods—sendMessage,
 changeMessageVisibility,
 * deleteMessage, and receiveMessage—making it a drop-in replacement with minimal
 code changes.
 *
 * Key features of the SqsAsyncBatchManager:
 * - Automatic batching: The SDK automatically buffers individual requests and
 sends them
 *   as batches when maxBatchSize (default: 10) or sendRequestFrequency (default:
 200ms)
 *   thresholds are reached
```

```
 * - Familiar API: Method signatures match SqsAsyncClient exactly, requiring no
 learning curve
 * - Background optimization: The batch manager maintains internal buffers and
 handles
 *   batching logic transparently
 * - Asynchronous operations: All methods return CompletableFuture for non-
blocking execution
 *
 * Performance benefits demonstrated:
 * - Reduced API calls: Multiple individual requests are consolidated into single
 batch operations
 * - Lower costs: Fewer API calls result in reduced SQS charges
 * - Higher throughput: Batch operations process more messages per second
 * - Efficient resource utilization: Fewer network round trips and better
 connection reuse
 *
 * This example compares:
 * 1. Single-message operations using SqsAsyncClient directly
 * 2. Batch operations using SqsAsyncBatchManager with identical method calls
 *
 * Usage patterns:
 * - Set batch size to 1 to use SqsAsyncClient for baseline performance
 measurement
 * - Set batch size > 1 to use SqsAsyncBatchManager for optimized batch
 processing
 * - Monitor real-time throughput metrics to observe performance improvements
 *
 * Prerequisites:
 * - AWS SDK for Java 2.x version 2.28.0 or later
 * - An existing SQS queue
 * - Valid AWS credentials configured
 *
 * The program displays real-time metrics showing the dramatic performance
 difference
 * between individual operations and automatic batching.
 */
public class SimpleProducerConsumer {

    // The maximum runtime of the program.
    private final static int MAX_RUNTIME_MINUTES = 60;
    private final static Logger log =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SimpleProducerConsumer.class);

    /**
```

```
    * Runs the SQS batching demonstration with user-configured parameters.
    *
    * Prompts for queue name, thread counts, batch size, message size, and
runtime.
    * Creates producer and consumer threads to demonstrate batching performance.
    *
    * @param args command line arguments (not used)
    * @throws InterruptedException if thread operations are interrupted
    */
   public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {

       final Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);

       System.out.print("Enter the queue name: ");
       final String queueName = input.nextLine();

       System.out.print("Enter the number of producers: ");
       final int producerCount = input.nextInt();

       System.out.print("Enter the number of consumers: ");
       final int consumerCount = input.nextInt();

       System.out.print("Enter the number of messages per batch: ");
       final int batchSize = input.nextInt();

       System.out.print("Enter the message size in bytes: ");
       final int messageSizeByte = input.nextInt();

       System.out.print("Enter the run time in minutes: ");
       final int runTimeMinutes = input.nextInt();

       // Create SQS async client and batch manager for all operations.
       // The SqsAsyncBatchManager is created from the SqsAsyncClient using the
       // batchManager() factory method, which provides default batching
configuration.
       // This high-level library automatically handles request buffering and
batching
       // while maintaining the same method signatures as SqsAsyncClient.
       final SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient = SqsAsyncClient.create();
       final SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager = sqsAsyncClient.batchManager();

       final String queueUrl =
sqsAsyncClient.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
               .queueName(queueName)
```

```
                .build()).join().queueUrl();

        // The flag used to stop producer, consumer, and monitor threads.
        final AtomicBoolean stop = new AtomicBoolean(false);

        // Start the producers.
        final AtomicInteger producedCount = new AtomicInteger();
        final Thread[] producers = new Thread[producerCount];
        for (int i = 0; i < producerCount; i++) {
            if (batchSize == 1) {
                producers[i] = new Producer(sqsAsyncClient, queueUrl,
messageSizeByte,
                        producedCount, stop);
            } else {
                producers[i] = new BatchProducer(batchManager, queueUrl,
batchSize,
                        messageSizeByte, producedCount, stop);
            }
            producers[i].start();
        }

        // Start the consumers.
        final AtomicInteger consumedCount = new AtomicInteger();
        final Thread[] consumers = new Thread[consumerCount];
        for (int i = 0; i < consumerCount; i++) {
            if (batchSize == 1) {
                consumers[i] = new Consumer(sqsAsyncClient, queueUrl,
consumedCount, stop);
            } else {
                consumers[i] = new BatchConsumer(batchManager, queueUrl,
batchSize,
                        consumedCount, stop);
            }
            consumers[i].start();
        }

        // Start the monitor thread.
        final Thread monitor = new Monitor(producedCount, consumedCount, stop);
        monitor.start();

        // Wait for the specified amount of time then stop.
        Thread.sleep(TimeUnit.MINUTES.toMillis(Math.min(runTimeMinutes,
                MAX_RUNTIME_MINUTES)));
        stop.set(true);
```

```
        // Join all threads.
        for (int i = 0; i < producerCount; i++) {
            producers[i].join();
        }

        for (int i = 0; i < consumerCount; i++) {
            consumers[i].join();
        }

        monitor.interrupt();
        monitor.join();

        // Close resources
        batchManager.close();
        sqsAsyncClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a random string of approximately the specified size in bytes.
     *
     * @param sizeByte the target size in bytes for the generated string
     * @return a random string encoded in base-32
     */
    private static String makeRandomString(int sizeByte) {
        final byte[] bs = new byte[(int) Math.ceil(sizeByte * 5 / 8)];
        new Random().nextBytes(bs);
        bs[0] = (byte) ((bs[0] | 64) & 127);
        return new BigInteger(bs).toString(32);
    }

    /**
     * Sends messages individually using SqsAsyncClient for baseline performance
measurement.
     *
     * This producer demonstrates traditional single-message operations without
batching.
     * Each sendMessage() call results in a separate API request to SQS,
providing
     * a performance baseline for comparison with the batch operations.
     *
     * The sendMessage() method signature is identical to
SqsAsyncBatchManager.sendMessage(),
```

```
    * showing how the high-level batching library maintains API compatibility
while
    * adding automatic optimization behind the scenes.
    */
   private static class Producer extends Thread {
       final SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient;
       final String queueUrl;
       final AtomicInteger producedCount;
       final AtomicBoolean stop;
       final String theMessage;

       /**
        * Creates a producer thread for single-message operations.
        *
        * @param sqsAsyncClient the SQS client for sending messages
        * @param queueUrl the URL of the target queue
        * @param messageSizeByte the size of messages to generate
        * @param producedCount shared counter for tracking sent messages
        * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
        */
       Producer(SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient, String queueUrl, int
messageSizeByte,
                AtomicInteger producedCount, AtomicBoolean stop) {
           this.sqsAsyncClient = sqsAsyncClient;
           this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
           this.producedCount = producedCount;
           this.stop = stop;
           this.theMessage = makeRandomString(messageSizeByte);
       }

       /**
        * Continuously sends messages until the stop flag is set.
        *
        * Uses SqsAsyncClient.sendMessage() directly, resulting in one API call
per message.
        * This approach provides baseline performance metrics for comparison
with batching.
        * Each call blocks until the individual message is sent, demonstrating
traditional
        * one-request-per-operation behavior.
        */
       public void run() {
           try {
               while (!stop.get()) {
```

```
                    sqsAsyncClient.sendMessage(SendMessageRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .messageBody(theMessage)
                            .build()).join();
                    producedCount.incrementAndGet();
                }
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
                // Handle both SdkException and CompletionException from async
operations.
                // If this unlikely condition occurs, stop.
                log.error("Producer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Sends messages using SqsAsyncBatchManager for automatic request batching
and optimization.
     *
     * This producer demonstrates the AWS SDK for Java 2.x high-level batching
library.
     * The SqsAsyncBatchManager automatically buffers individual sendMessage()
calls and
     * sends them as batches when thresholds are reached:
     * - maxBatchSize: Maximum 10 messages per batch (default)
     * - sendRequestFrequency: 200ms timeout before sending partial batches
(default)
     *
     * Key advantages of the batching approach:
     * - Identical API: batchManager.sendMessage() has the same signature as
sqsAsyncClient.sendMessage()
     * - Automatic optimization: No code changes needed to benefit from batching
     * - Transparent buffering: The SDK handles batching logic internally
     * - Reduced API calls: Multiple messages sent in single batch requests
     * - Lower costs: Fewer API calls result in reduced SQS charges
     * - Higher throughput: Batch operations process significantly more messages
per second
     */
    private static class BatchProducer extends Thread {
        final SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager;
        final String queueUrl;
        final int batchSize;
        final AtomicInteger producedCount;
```

```
        final AtomicBoolean stop;
        final String theMessage;

        /**
         * Creates a producer thread for batch operations.
         *
         * @param batchManager the batch manager for efficient message sending
         * @param queueUrl the URL of the target queue
         * @param batchSize the number of messages to send per batch
         * @param messageSizeByte the size of messages to generate
         * @param producedCount shared counter for tracking sent messages
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        BatchProducer(SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager, String queueUrl, int
batchSize,
                      int messageSizeByte, AtomicInteger producedCount,
                      AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.batchManager = batchManager;
            this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
            this.batchSize = batchSize;
            this.producedCount = producedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
            this.theMessage = makeRandomString(messageSizeByte);
        }

        /**
         * Continuously sends batches of messages using the high-level batching
library.
         *
         * Notice how batchManager.sendMessage() uses the exact same method
signature
         * and request builder pattern as SqsAsyncClient.sendMessage(). This
demonstrates
         * the drop-in replacement capability of the SqsAsyncBatchManager.
         *
         * The SDK automatically:
         * - Buffers individual sendMessage() calls internally
         * - Groups them into batch requests when thresholds are met
         * - Sends SendMessageBatchRequest operations to SQS
         * - Returns individual CompletableFuture responses for each message
         *
         * This transparent batching provides significant performance
improvements
```

```
        * without requiring changes to application logic or error handling
patterns.
        */
       public void run() {
           try {
               while (!stop.get()) {
                   // Send multiple messages using the high-level batch manager.
                   // Each batchManager.sendMessage() call uses identical syntax
to
                   // sqsAsyncClient.sendMessage(), demonstrating API
compatibility.
                   // The SDK automatically buffers these calls and sends them
as
                   // batch operations when maxBatchSize (10) or
sendRequestFrequency (200ms)
                   // thresholds are reached, significantly improving
throughput.
                   for (int i = 0; i < batchSize; i++) {
                       CompletableFuture<SendMessageResponse> future =
batchManager.sendMessage(
                                SendMessageRequest.builder()
                                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                        .messageBody(theMessage)
                                        .build());

                       // Handle the response asynchronously
                       future.whenComplete((response, throwable) -> {
                           if (throwable == null) {
                               producedCount.incrementAndGet();
                           } else if (!(throwable instanceof
java.util.concurrent.CancellationException) &&
                                   !(throwable.getMessage() != null &&
throwable.getMessage().contains("executor not accepting a task"))) {
                               log.error("BatchProducer: Failed to send
message", throwable);
                           }
                           // Ignore CancellationException and executor shutdown
errors - expected during shutdown
                       });
                   }

                   // Small delay to allow batching to occur
                   Thread.sleep(10);
               }
```

```
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                log.error("BatchProducer interrupted: " + e.getMessage());
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
                log.error("BatchProducer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Receives and deletes messages individually using SqsAsyncClient for
baseline measurement.
     *
     * This consumer demonstrates traditional single-message operations without
batching.
     * Each receiveMessage() and deleteMessage() call results in separate API
requests,
     * providing a performance baseline for comparison with batch operations.
     *
     * The method signatures are identical to SqsAsyncBatchManager methods:
     * - receiveMessage() matches batchManager.receiveMessage()
     * - deleteMessage() matches batchManager.deleteMessage()
     *
     * This API consistency allows easy migration to the high-level batching
library.
     */
    private static class Consumer extends Thread {
        final SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient;
        final String queueUrl;
        final AtomicInteger consumedCount;
        final AtomicBoolean stop;

        /**
         * Creates a consumer thread for single-message operations.
         *
         * @param sqsAsyncClient the SQS client for receiving messages
         * @param queueUrl the URL of the source queue
         * @param consumedCount shared counter for tracking processed messages
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        Consumer(SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient, String queueUrl, AtomicInteger
consumedCount,
                 AtomicBoolean stop) {
```

```
            this.sqsAsyncClient = sqsAsyncClient;
            this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
            this.consumedCount = consumedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
        }

        /**
         * Continuously receives and deletes messages using traditional single-
request operations.
         *
         * Uses SqsAsyncClient methods directly:
         * - receiveMessage(): One API call per receive operation
         * - deleteMessage(): One API call per delete operation
         *
         * This approach demonstrates the baseline performance without batching
 optimization.
         * Compare these method calls with the identical signatures used in
 BatchConsumer
         * to see how the high-level batching library maintains API
 compatibility.
         */
        public void run() {
            try {
                while (!stop.get()) {
                    try {
                        final ReceiveMessageResponse result =
 sqsAsyncClient.receiveMessage(
                                ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                        .build()).join();

                        if (!result.messages().isEmpty()) {
                            final Message m = result.messages().get(0);
                            // Note: deleteMessage() signature identical to
 batchManager.deleteMessage()

 sqsAsyncClient.deleteMessage(DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                    .receiptHandle(m.receiptHandle())
                                    .build()).join();
                            consumedCount.incrementAndGet();
                        }
                    } catch (SdkException |
 java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
```

```
                        log.error(e.getMessage());
                    }
                }
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
                // Handle both SdkException and CompletionException from async
operations.
                // If this unlikely condition occurs, stop.
                log.error("Consumer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Receives and deletes messages using SqsAsyncBatchManager for automatic
optimization.
     *
     * This consumer demonstrates the AWS SDK for Java 2.x high-level batching
library
     * for message consumption. The SqsAsyncBatchManager provides two key
optimizations:
     *
     * 1. Receive optimization: Maintains an internal buffer of messages fetched
in the
     *    background, so receiveMessage() calls return immediately from the
buffer
     * 2. Delete batching: Automatically buffers deleteMessage() calls and sends
them
     *    as DeleteMessageBatchRequest operations when thresholds are reached
     *
     * Key features:
     * - Identical API: receiveMessage() and deleteMessage() have the same
signatures
     *   as SqsAsyncClient methods, making this a true drop-in replacement
     * - Background fetching: The batch manager continuously fetches messages to
keep
     *   the internal buffer populated, reducing receive latency
     * - Automatic delete batching: Individual deleteMessage() calls are buffered
and
     *   sent as batch operations (up to 10 per batch, 200ms frequency)
     * - Transparent optimization: No application logic changes needed to benefit
     *
     * Performance benefits:
     * - Reduced API calls through automatic batching of delete operations
```

```
     * - Lower latency for receives due to background message buffering
     * - Higher overall throughput with fewer network round trips
     */
    private static class BatchConsumer extends Thread {
        final SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager;
        final String queueUrl;
        final int batchSize;
        final AtomicInteger consumedCount;
        final AtomicBoolean stop;

        /**
         * Creates a consumer thread for batch operations.
         *
         * @param batchManager the batch manager for efficient message processing
         * @param queueUrl the URL of the source queue
         * @param batchSize the maximum number of messages to receive per batch
         * @param consumedCount shared counter for tracking processed messages
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        BatchConsumer(SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager, String queueUrl, int
batchSize,
                      AtomicInteger consumedCount, AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.batchManager = batchManager;
            this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
            this.batchSize = batchSize;
            this.consumedCount = consumedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
        }

        /**
         * Continuously receives and deletes messages using the high-level
batching library.
         *
         * Demonstrates the key advantage of SqsAsyncBatchManager: identical
method signatures
         * with automatic optimization. Notice how:
         *
         * - batchManager.receiveMessage() uses the same syntax as
sqsAsyncClient.receiveMessage()
         * - batchManager.deleteMessage() uses the same syntax as
sqsAsyncClient.deleteMessage()
         *
         * Behind the scenes, the batch manager:
```

```
        * 1. Maintains an internal message buffer populated by background
fetching
        * 2. Returns messages immediately from the buffer (reduced latency)
        * 3. Automatically batches deleteMessage() calls into
DeleteMessageBatchRequest operations
        * 4. Sends batch deletes when maxBatchSize (10) or sendRequestFrequency
(200ms) is reached
        *
        * This provides significant performance improvements with zero code
changes
        * compared to traditional SqsAsyncClient usage patterns.
        */
       public void run() {
           try {
               while (!stop.get()) {
                   // Receive messages using the high-level batch manager.
                   // This call uses identical syntax to
sqsAsyncClient.receiveMessage()
                   // but benefits from internal message buffering for improved
performance.
                   final ReceiveMessageResponse result =
batchManager.receiveMessage(
                           ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                                   .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                   .maxNumberOfMessages(Math.min(batchSize, 10))
                                   .build()).join();

                   if (!result.messages().isEmpty()) {
                       final List<Message> messages = result.messages();

                       // Delete messages using the batch manager.
                       // Each deleteMessage() call uses identical syntax to
SqsAsyncClient
                       // but the SDK automatically buffers these calls and
sends them
                       // as DeleteMessageBatchRequest operations for optimal
performance.
                       for (Message message : messages) {
                           CompletableFuture<DeleteMessageResponse> future =
batchManager.deleteMessage(
                                   DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                                           .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
```

```
                                            .build());

                            future.whenComplete((response, throwable) -> {
                                if (throwable == null) {
                                    consumedCount.incrementAndGet();
                                } else if (!(throwable instanceof
java.util.concurrent.CancellationException) &&
                                        !(throwable.getMessage() != null &&
throwable.getMessage().contains("executor not accepting a task"))) {
                                    log.error("BatchConsumer: Failed to delete
message", throwable);
                                }
                                // Ignore CancellationException and executor
shutdown errors - expected during shutdown
                            });
                        }
                    }

                    // Small delay to prevent tight polling
                    Thread.sleep(10);
                }
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                log.error("BatchConsumer interrupted: " + e.getMessage());
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
                // Handle both SdkException and CompletionException from async
operations.
                // If this unlikely condition occurs, stop.
                log.error("BatchConsumer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Displays real-time throughput statistics every second.
     *
     * This thread logs the current count of produced and consumed messages
     * to help you monitor the performance comparison.
     */
    private static class Monitor extends Thread {
        private final AtomicInteger producedCount;
        private final AtomicInteger consumedCount;
        private final AtomicBoolean stop;
```

```
        /**
         * Creates a monitoring thread that displays throughput statistics.
         *
         * @param producedCount shared counter for messages sent
         * @param consumedCount shared counter for messages processed
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        Monitor(AtomicInteger producedCount, AtomicInteger consumedCount,
                AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.producedCount = producedCount;
            this.consumedCount = consumedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
        }

        /**
         * Logs throughput statistics every second until stopped.
         *
         * Displays the current count of produced and consumed messages
         * to help monitor the performance comparison between batching
 strategies.
         */
        public void run() {
            try {
                while (!stop.get()) {
                    Thread.sleep(1000);
                    log.info("produced messages = " + producedCount.get()
                            + ", consumed messages = " + consumedCount.get());
                }
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                // Allow the thread to exit.
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - DeleteMessage
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue

- ReceiveMessage
- SendMessage
- SendMessageBatch

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions to wrap Amazon SQS message functions.

```
import logging
import sys

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

import queue_wrapper

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
sqs = boto3.resource("sqs")

def send_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Send a batch of messages in a single request to an SQS queue.
    This request may return overall success even when some messages were not
 sent.
    The caller must inspect the Successful and Failed lists in the response and
    resend any failed messages.

    :param queue: The queue to receive the messages.
    :param messages: The messages to send to the queue. These are simplified to
                     contain only the message body and attributes.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and
 failed
             messages.
```

```
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {
                "Id": str(ind),
                "MessageBody": msg["body"],
                "MessageAttributes": msg["attributes"],
            }
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.send_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info(
                    "Message sent: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Failed to send: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Send messages failed to queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return response



def receive_messages(queue, max_number, wait_time):
    """
    Receive a batch of messages in a single request from an SQS queue.

    :param queue: The queue from which to receive messages.
    :param max_number: The maximum number of messages to receive. The actual
 number
                        of messages received might be less.
    :param wait_time: The maximum time to wait (in seconds) before returning.
 When
```

```
                        this number is greater than zero, long polling is used.
 This
                        can result in reduced costs and fewer false empty
 responses.
    :return: The list of Message objects received. These each contain the body
             of the message and metadata and custom attributes.
    """
    try:
        messages = queue.receive_messages(
            MessageAttributeNames=["All"],
            MaxNumberOfMessages=max_number,
            WaitTimeSeconds=wait_time,
        )
        for msg in messages:
            logger.info("Received message: %s: %s", msg.message_id, msg.body)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't receive messages from queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return messages



def delete_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Delete a batch of messages from a queue in a single request.

    :param queue: The queue from which to delete the messages.
    :param messages: The list of messages to delete.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and
 failed
             message deletions.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {"Id": str(ind), "ReceiptHandle": msg.receipt_handle}
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.delete_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info("Deleted %s",
 messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle)
        if "Failed" in response:
```

```
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Could not delete %s",
 messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle
                )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete messages from queue %s", queue)
    else:
        return response
```

Use the wrapper functions to send and receive messages in batches.

```
def usage_demo():
    """
    Shows how to:
    * Read the lines from this Python file and send the lines in
      batches of 10 as messages to a queue.
    * Receive the messages in batches until the queue is empty.
    * Reassemble the lines of the file and verify they match the original file.
    """

    def pack_message(msg_path, msg_body, msg_line):
        return {
            "body": msg_body,
            "attributes": {
                "path": {"StringValue": msg_path, "DataType": "String"},
                "line": {"StringValue": str(msg_line), "DataType": "String"},
            },
        }

    def unpack_message(msg):
        return (
            msg.message_attributes["path"]["StringValue"],
            msg.body,
            int(msg.message_attributes["line"]["StringValue"]),
        )

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    queue = queue_wrapper.create_queue("sqs-usage-demo-message-wrapper")

    with open(__file__) as file:
        lines = file.readlines()

    line = 0
    batch_size = 10
    received_lines = [None] * len(lines)
    print(f"Sending file lines in batches of {batch_size} as messages.")
    while line < len(lines):
        messages = [
            pack_message(__file__, lines[index], index)
            for index in range(line, min(line + batch_size, len(lines)))
        ]
        line = line + batch_size
        send_messages(queue, messages)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print(f"Done. Sent {len(lines) - 1} messages.")

    print(f"Receiving, handling, and deleting messages in batches of
{batch_size}.")
    more_messages = True
    while more_messages:
        received_messages = receive_messages(queue, batch_size, 2)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
        for message in received_messages:
            path, body, line = unpack_message(message)
            received_lines[line] = body
        if received_messages:
            delete_messages(queue, received_messages)
        else:
            more_messages = False
    print("Done.")

    if all([lines[index] == received_lines[index] for index in
range(len(lines))]):
        print(f"Successfully reassembled all file lines!")
    else:
        print(f"Uh oh, some lines were missed!")

    queue.delete()
```

```
    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - DeleteMessage
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SendMessage
  - SendMessageBatch

Use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET to publish and receive Amazon SQS messages

The following code example shows how to create applications that publish and receive Amazon SQS messages using the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Provides a tutorial for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET. The tutorial creates a web application that allows the user to publish an Amazon SQS message and a command-line application that receives the message.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full tutorial in the AWS SDK for .NET Developer Guide and the example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SQS

Use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the Java Message Service (JMS) interface for Amazon SQS

The following code example shows how to use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the JMS interface.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following examples work with standard Amazon SQS queues and include:

- Sending a text message.
- Receiving messages synchronously.
- Receiving messages asynchronously.
- Receiving messages using CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.
- Receiving messages using the UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.
- Using Spring to inject dependencies.
- A utility class that provides common methods used by the other examples.

For more information on using JMS with Amazon SQS, see the Amazon SQS Developer Guide.

Sending a text message.

```
   /**
    * This method establishes a connection to a standard Amazon SQS queue using
the Amazon SQS
    * Java Messaging Library and sends text messages to it. It uses JMS (Java
Message Service) API
    * with automatic acknowledgment mode to ensure reliable message delivery,
and automatically
    * manages all messaging resources.
    *
```

```
    * @throws JMSException If there is a problem connecting to or sending
messages to the queue
    */
   public static void doSendTextMessage() throws JMSException {
       // Create a connection factory.
       SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
               new ProviderConfiguration(),
               SqsClient.create()
       );

       // Create the connection in a try-with-resources statement so that it's
closed automatically.
       try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection()) {

           // Create the queue if needed.
           SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);

           // Create a session that uses the JMS auto-acknowledge mode.
           Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);
           MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

           createAndSendMessages(session, producer);
       } // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
       LOGGER.info("Connection closed");
   }

   /**
    * This method reads text input from the keyboard and sends each line as a
separate message
    * to a standard Amazon SQS queue using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging
Library. It continues
    * to accept input until the user enters an empty line, using JMS (Java
Message Service) API to
    * handle the message delivery.
    *
    * @param session The JMS session used to create messages
    * @param producer The JMS message producer used to send messages to the
queue
    */
   private static void createAndSendMessages(Session session, MessageProducer
producer) {
```

```
        BufferedReader inputReader = new BufferedReader(
                new InputStreamReader(System.in, Charset.defaultCharset()));

        try {
            String input;
            while (true) {
                LOGGER.info("Enter message to send (leave empty to exit): ");
                input = inputReader.readLine();
                if (input == null || input.isEmpty()) break;

                TextMessage message = session.createTextMessage(input);
                producer.send(message);
                LOGGER.info("Send message {}", message.getJMSMessageID());
            }
        } catch (EOFException e) {
            // Just return on EOF
        } catch (IOException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Failed reading input: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Failed sending message: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Receiving messages synchronously.

```
    /**
     * This method receives messages from a standard Amazon SQS queue using the
Amazon SQS Java
     * Messaging Library. It creates a connection to the queue using JMS (Java
Message Service),
     * waits for messages to arrive, and processes them one at a time. The method
handles all
     * necessary setup and cleanup of messaging resources.
     *
     * @throws JMSException If there is a problem connecting to or receiving
messages from the queue
     */
    public static void doReceiveMessageSync() throws JMSException {
        // Create a connection factory.
        SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                new ProviderConfiguration(),
                SqsClient.create()
```

```
        );

        // Create a connection.
        try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

            // Create the queue if needed.
            SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);

            // Create a session.
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);
            MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

            connection.start();

            receiveMessages(consumer);
        }  // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info("Connection closed");
    }

    /**
     * This method continuously checks for new messages from a standard Amazon
SQS queue using
     * the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library. It waits up to 20 seconds for each
message, processes
     * it using JMS (Java Message Service), and confirms receipt. The method
stops checking for
     * messages after 20 seconds of no activity.
     *
     * @param consumer The JMS message consumer that receives messages from the
queue
     */
    private static void receiveMessages(MessageConsumer consumer) {
        try {
            while (true) {
                LOGGER.info("Waiting for messages...");
                // Wait 1 minute for a message
                Message message =
consumer.receive(Duration.ofSeconds(20).toMillis());
                if (message == null) {
                    LOGGER.info("Shutting down after 20 seconds of silence.");
                    break;
```

```
                }
                SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                message.acknowledge();
                LOGGER.info("Acknowledged message {}",
message.getJMSMessageID());
            }
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Error receiving from SQS: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Receiving messages asynchronously.

```
    /**
     * This method sets up automatic message handling for a standard Amazon SQS
queue using the
     * Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library. It creates a listener that processes
messages as soon
     * as they arrive using JMS (Java Message Service), runs for 5 seconds, then
cleans up all
     * messaging resources.
     *
     * @throws JMSException If there is a problem connecting to or receiving
messages from the queue
     */
    public static void doReceiveMessageAsync() throws JMSException {
        // Create a connection factory.
        SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                new ProviderConfiguration(),
                SqsClient.create()
        );

        // Create a connection.
        try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

            // Create the queue if needed.
            SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);

            // Create a session.
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);
```

```
            try {
                // Create a consumer for the queue.
                MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));
                // Provide an implementation of the MessageListener interface,
which has a single 'onMessage' method.
                // We use a lambda expression for the implementation.
                consumer.setMessageListener(message -> {
                    try {
                        SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                        message.acknowledge();
                    } catch (JMSException e) {
                        LOGGER.error("Error processing message: {}",
e.getMessage());
                    }
                });
                // Start receiving incoming messages.
                connection.start();
                LOGGER.info("Waiting for messages...");
            } catch (JMSException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
            try {
                Thread.sleep(5000);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }  // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info( "Connection closed" );
    }
```

Receiving messages using CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.

```
    /**
     * This method demonstrates how message acknowledgment affects message
processing in a standard
     * Amazon SQS queue using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library. It sends
messages to the queue,
     * then shows how JMS (Java Message Service) client acknowledgment mode
handles both explicit
```

```
    * and implicit message confirmations, including how acknowledging one
message can automatically
    * acknowledge previous messages.
    *
    * @throws JMSException If there is a problem with the messaging operations
    */
   public static void doReceiveMessagesSyncClientAcknowledge() throws
JMSException {
       // Create a connection factory.
       SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
               new ProviderConfiguration(),
               SqsClient.create()
       );

       // Create the connection in a try-with-resources statement so that it's
closed automatically.
       try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

           // Create the queue if needed.
           SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
TIME_OUT_SECONDS);

           // Create a session with client acknowledge mode.
           Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);

           // Create a producer and consumer.
           MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));
           MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

           // Open the connection.
           connection.start();

           // Send two text messages.
           sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 1");
           sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 2");

           // Receive a message and don't acknowledge it.
           receiveMessage(consumer, false);

           // Receive another message and acknowledge it.
           receiveMessage(consumer, true);
```

```
            // Wait for the visibility time out, so that unacknowledged messages
reappear in the queue,
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for visibility timeout...");
            try {
                Thread.sleep(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Interrupted while waiting for visibility timeout",
e);
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException("Processing interrupted", e);
            }

            /*  We will attempt to receive another message, but none will be
available. This is because in
                CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode, when we acknowledged the second message,
all previous messages were
                automatically acknowledged as well. Therefore, although we never
directly acknowledged the first
                message, it was implicitly acknowledged when we confirmed the
second one. */
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);
        } // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info("Connection closed.");

    }


    /**
     * Sends a text message using the specified JMS MessageProducer and Session.
     *
     * @param producer    The JMS MessageProducer used to send the message
     * @param session     The JMS Session used to create the text message
     * @param messageText The text content to be sent in the message
     * @throws JMSException If there is an error creating or sending the message
     */
    private static void sendMessage(MessageProducer producer, Session session,
String messageText) throws JMSException {
        // Create a text message and send it.
        producer.send(session.createTextMessage(messageText));
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Receives and processes a message from a JMS queue using the specified
consumer.
    * The method waits for a message until the configured timeout period is
reached.
    * If a message is received, it is logged and optionally acknowledged based
on the
    * acknowledge parameter.
    *
    * @param consumer    The JMS MessageConsumer used to receive messages from
the queue
    * @param acknowledge Boolean flag indicating whether to acknowledge the
message.
    *                    If true, the message will be acknowledged after
processing
    * @throws JMSException If there is an error receiving, processing, or
acknowledging the message
    */
   private static void receiveMessage(MessageConsumer consumer, boolean
acknowledge) throws JMSException {
       // Receive a message.
       Message message = consumer.receive(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);

       if (message == null) {
           LOGGER.info("Queue is empty!");
       } else {
           // Since this queue has only text messages, cast the message object
and print the text.
           LOGGER.info("Received: {}    Acknowledged: {}", ((TextMessage)
message).getText(), acknowledge);

           // Acknowledge the message if asked.
           if (acknowledge) message.acknowledge();
       }
   }
```

Receiving messages using the UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.

```
   /**
    * Demonstrates message acknowledgment behavior in UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode
with Amazon SQS JMS.
    * In this mode, each message must be explicitly acknowledged regardless of
receive order.
```

```
    * Unacknowledged messages return to the queue after the visibility timeout
expires,
    * unlike CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode where acknowledging one message
acknowledges all previous messages.
    *
    * @throws JMSException         If a JMS-related error occurs during message
operations
    */
   public static void doReceiveMessagesUnorderedAcknowledge() throws
JMSException {
       // Create a connection factory.
       SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
               new ProviderConfiguration(),
               SqsClient.create()
       );

       // Create the connection in a try-with-resources statement so that it's
closed automatically.
       try( SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

           // Create the queue if needed.
           SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
TIME_OUT_SECONDS);

           // Create a session with unordered acknowledge mode.
           Session session = connection.createSession(false,
SQSSession.UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE);

           // Create the producer and consumer.
           MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));
           MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

           // Open a connection.
           connection.start();

           // Send two text messages.
           sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 1");
           sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 2");

           // Receive a message and don't acknowledge it.
           receiveMessage(consumer, false);
```

```
            // Receive another message and acknowledge it.
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);

            // Wait for the visibility time out, so that unacknowledged messages
reappear in the queue.
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for visibility timeout...");
            try {
                Thread.sleep(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Interrupted while waiting for visibility timeout",
e);
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException("Processing interrupted", e);
            }

            /*  We will attempt to receive another message, and we'll get the
first message again. This occurs
                because in UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode, each message requires its
own separate acknowledgment.
                Since we only acknowledged the second message, the first message
remains in the queue for
                redelivery. */
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);

            LOGGER.info("Connection closed.");
        } // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
    }

    /**
     * Sends a text message to an Amazon SQS queue using JMS.
     *
     * @param producer    The JMS MessageProducer for the queue
     * @param session     The JMS Session for message creation
     * @param messageText The message content
     * @throws JMSException If message creation or sending fails
     */
    private static void sendMessage(MessageProducer producer, Session session,
String messageText) throws JMSException {
        // Create a text message and send it.
        producer.send(session.createTextMessage(messageText));
    }
    /**
     * Synchronously receives a message from an Amazon SQS queue using the JMS
API
```

```
     * with an acknowledgment parameter.
     *
     * @param consumer    The JMS MessageConsumer for the queue
     * @param acknowledge If true, acknowledges the message after receipt
     * @throws JMSException If message reception or acknowledgment fails
     */
    private static void receiveMessage(MessageConsumer consumer, boolean
 acknowledge) throws JMSException {
        // Receive a message.
        Message message = consumer.receive(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);

        if (message == null) {
            LOGGER.info("Queue is empty!");
        } else {
            // Since this queue has only text messages, cast the message object
 and print the text.
            LOGGER.info("Received: {}    Acknowledged: {}", ((TextMessage)
 message).getText(), acknowledge);

            // Acknowledge the message if asked.
            if (acknowledge) message.acknowledge();
        }
    }
```

Using Spring to inject dependencies.

```
package com.example.sqs.jms.spring;

import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnection;
import com.example.sqs.jms.SqsJmsExampleUtils;
import jakarta.jms.*;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import org.springframework.beans.factory.NoSuchBeanDefinitionException;
import org.springframework.context.support.FileSystemXmlApplicationContext;

import java.io.File;
import java.net.URL;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;

/**
```

```
 * Demonstrates how to send and receive messages using the Amazon SQS Java
 Messaging Library
 * with Spring Framework integration. This example connects to a standard Amazon
 SQS message
 * queue using Spring's dependency injection to configure the connection and
 messaging components.
 * The application uses the JMS (Java Message Service) API to handle message
 operations.
 */
public class SpringExample {
    private static final Integer POLLING_SECONDS = 15;
    private static final String SPRING_XML_CONFIG_FILE =
 "SpringExampleConfiguration.xml.txt";
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SpringExample.class);

    /**
     * Demonstrates sending and receiving messages through a standard Amazon SQS
 message queue
     * using Spring Framework configuration. This method loads connection
 settings from an XML file,
     * establishes a messaging session using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging
 Library, and processes
     * messages using JMS (Java Message Service) operations. If the queue doesn't
 exist, it will
     * be created automatically.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments (not used)
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        URL resource =
 SpringExample.class.getClassLoader().getResource(SPRING_XML_CONFIG_FILE);
        File springFile = new File(resource.getFile());
        if (!springFile.exists() || !springFile.canRead()) {
            LOGGER.error("File " + SPRING_XML_CONFIG_FILE + " doesn't exist or
 isn't readable.");
            System.exit(1);
        }

        try (FileSystemXmlApplicationContext context =
                     new FileSystemXmlApplicationContext("file://" +
 springFile.getAbsolutePath())) {
```

```
            Connection connection;
            try {
                connection = context.getBean(Connection.class);
            } catch (NoSuchBeanDefinitionException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Can't find the JMS connection to use: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                System.exit(2);
                return;
            }

            String queueName;
            try {
                queueName = context.getBean("queueName", String.class);
            } catch (NoSuchBeanDefinitionException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Can't find the name of the queue to use: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                System.exit(3);
                return;
            }
            try {
                if (connection instanceof SQSConnection) {
                    SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists((SQSConnection)
connection, queueName, SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);
                }
                // Create the JMS session.
                Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);

                SqsJmsExampleUtils.sendTextMessage(session, queueName);
                MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(queueName));

                receiveMessages(consumer);
            } catch (JMSException e) {
                LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }   // Spring context autocloses. Managed Spring beans that implement
AutoClosable, such as the
        // 'connection' bean, are also closed.
        LOGGER.info("Context closed");
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Continuously checks for and processes messages from a standard Amazon SQS
 message queue
     * using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library underlying the JMS API. This
 method waits for incoming messages,
     * processes them when they arrive, and acknowledges their receipt using JMS
 (Java Message
     * Service) operations. The method will stop checking for messages after 15
 seconds of
     * inactivity.
     *
     * @param consumer The JMS message consumer used to receive messages from the
 queue
     */
    private static void receiveMessages(MessageConsumer consumer) {
        try {
            while (true) {
                LOGGER.info("Waiting for messages...");
                // Wait 15 seconds for a message.
                Message message =
 consumer.receive(TimeUnit.SECONDS.toMillis(POLLING_SECONDS));
                if (message == null) {
                    LOGGER.info("Shutting down after {} seconds of silence.",
 POLLING_SECONDS);
                    break;
                }
                SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                message.acknowledge();
                LOGGER.info("Message acknowledged.");
            }
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Error receiving from SQS.", e);
        }
    }
}
```

Spring bean definitions.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<beans
        xmlns="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans"
        xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
        xsi:schemaLocation="
```

```
http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans http://www.springframework.org/
schema/beans/spring-beans-3.0.xsd
        ">
    <!-- Define the AWS Region -->
    <bean id="region" class="software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region" factory-
method="of">
        <constructor-arg value="us-east-1"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="credentialsProviderBean"
 class="software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider"
          factory-method="create"/>

    <bean id="clientBuilder"
 class="software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient" factory-method="builder"/>

    <bean id="regionSetClientBuilder" factory-bean="clientBuilder" factory-
method="region">
        <constructor-arg ref="region"/>
    </bean>

    <!-- Configure the Builder with Credentials Provider -->
    <bean id="sqsClient" factory-bean="regionSetClientBuilder" factory-
method="credentialsProvider">
        <constructor-arg ref="credentialsProviderBean"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="providerConfiguration"
 class="com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ProviderConfiguration">
        <property name="numberOfMessagesToPrefetch" value="5"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="connectionFactory"
 class="com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnectionFactory">
        <constructor-arg ref="providerConfiguration"/>
        <constructor-arg ref="clientBuilder"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="connection"
          factory-bean="connectionFactory"
          factory-method="createConnection"
          init-method="start"
          destroy-method="close"/>
```

```
    <bean id="queueName" class="java.lang.String">
        <constructor-arg value="SQSJMSClientExampleQueue"/>
    </bean>
</beans>
```

A utility class that provides common methods used by the other examples.

```
package com.example.sqs.jms;

import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSMessagingClientWrapper;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ProviderConfiguration;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnection;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnectionFactory;
import jakarta.jms.*;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName;

import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * This utility class provides helper methods for working with Amazon Simple
 Queue Service (Amazon SQS)
 * through the Java Message Service (JMS) interface. It contains common
 operations for managing message
 * queues and handling message delivery.
 */
public class SqsJmsExampleUtils {
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SqsJmsExampleUtils.class);
    public static final Long QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT = 5L;

    /**
     * This method verifies that a message queue exists and creates it if
 necessary. The method checks for
     * an existing queue first to optimize performance.
```

```
    *
    * @param connection The active connection to the messaging service
    * @param queueName The name of the queue to verify or create
    * @param visibilityTimeout The duration in seconds that messages will be
hidden after being received
    * @throws JMSException If there is an error accessing or creating the queue
    */
   public static void ensureQueueExists(SQSConnection connection, String
queueName, Long visibilityTimeout) throws JMSException {
       AmazonSQSMessagingClientWrapper client =
connection.getWrappedAmazonSQSClient();

      /* In most cases, you can do this with just a 'createQueue' call, but
'getQueueUrl'
      (called by 'queueExists') is a faster operation for the common case where
the queue
      already exists. Also, many users and roles have permission to call
'getQueueUrl'
      but don't have permission to call 'createQueue'.
      */
       if( !client.queueExists(queueName) ) {
           CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                   .queueName(queueName)
                   .attributes(Map.of(QueueAttributeName.VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT,
String.valueOf(visibilityTimeout)))
                   .build();
           client.createQueue( createQueueRequest );
       }
   }

   /**
    * This method sends a simple text message to a specified message queue. It
handles all necessary
    * setup for the message delivery process.
    *
    * @param session The active messaging session used to create and send the
message
    * @param queueName The name of the queue where the message will be sent
    */
   public static void sendTextMessage(Session session, String queueName) {
       // Rest of implementation...

       try {
```

```
            MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer( session.createQueue( queueName) );
            Message message = session.createTextMessage("Hello world!");
            producer.send(message);
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error( "Error receiving from SQS", e );
        }
    }

    /**
     * This method processes incoming messages and logs their content based on
the message type.
     * It supports text messages, binary data, and Java objects.
     *
     * @param message The message to be processed and logged
     * @throws JMSException If there is an error reading the message content
     */
    public static void handleMessage(Message message) throws JMSException {
        // Rest of implementation...
        LOGGER.info( "Got message {}", message.getJMSMessageID() );
        LOGGER.info( "Content: ");
        if(message instanceof TextMessage txtMessage) {
            LOGGER.info( "\t{}", txtMessage.getText() );
        } else if(message instanceof BytesMessage byteMessage){
            // Assume the length fits in an int - SQS only supports sizes up to
256k so that
            // should be true
            byte[] bytes = new byte[(int)byteMessage.getBodyLength()];
            byteMessage.readBytes(bytes);
            LOGGER.info( "\t{}", Base64.getEncoder().encodeToString( bytes ) );
        } else if( message instanceof ObjectMessage) {
            ObjectMessage objMessage = (ObjectMessage) message;
            LOGGER.info( "\t{}", objMessage.getObject() );
        }
    }

    /**
     * This method sets up automatic message processing for a specified queue. It
creates a listener
     * that will receive and handle incoming messages without blocking the main
program.
     *
     * @param session The active messaging session
     * @param queueName The name of the queue to monitor
```

```
     * @param connection The active connection to the messaging service
     */
    public static void receiveMessagesAsync(Session session, String queueName,
Connection connection) {
        // Rest of implementation...
        try {
            // Create a consumer for the queue.
            MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(queueName));
            // Provide an implementation of the MessageListener interface, which
has a single 'onMessage' method.
            // We use a lambda expression for the implementation.
            consumer.setMessageListener(message -> {
                try {
                    SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                    message.acknowledge();
                } catch (JMSException e) {
                    LOGGER.error("Error processing message: {}", e.getMessage());
                }
            });
            // Start receiving incoming messages.
            connection.start();
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        try {
            Thread.sleep(2000);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }


    /**
     * This method performs cleanup operations after message processing is
complete. It receives
     * any messages in the specified queue, removes the message queue and closes
all
     * active connections to prevent resource leaks.
     *
     * @param queueName The name of the queue to be removed
     * @param visibilityTimeout The duration in seconds that messages are hidden
after being received
     * @throws JMSException If there is an error during the cleanup process
```

```
    */
   public static void cleanUpExample(String queueName, Long visibilityTimeout)
throws JMSException {
       LOGGER.info("Performing cleanup.");

       SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
               new ProviderConfiguration(),
               SqsClient.create()
       );

       try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {
           ensureQueueExists(connection, queueName, visibilityTimeout);
           Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);

           receiveMessagesAsync(session, queueName, connection);

           SqsClient sqsClient =
connection.getWrappedAmazonSQSClient().getAmazonSQSClient();
           try {
               String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(b ->
b.queueName(queueName)).queueUrl();
               sqsClient.deleteQueue(b -> b.queueUrl(queueUrl));
               LOGGER.info("Queue deleted: {}", queueUrl);
           } catch (SdkException e) {
               LOGGER.error("Error during SQS operations: ", e);
           }
       }
       LOGGER.info("Clean up: Connection closed");
   }

   /**
    * This method creates a background task that sends multiple messages to a
specified queue
    * after waiting for a set time period. The task operates independently to
ensure efficient
    * message processing without interrupting other operations.
    *
    * @param queueName The name of the queue where messages will be sent
    * @param secondsToWait The number of seconds to wait before sending messages
    * @param numMessages The number of messages to send
    * @param visibilityTimeout The duration in seconds that messages remain
hidden after being received
    * @return A task that can be executed to send the messages
```

```
     */
    public static Runnable sendAMessageAsync(String queueName, Long
 secondsToWait, Integer numMessages, Long visibilityTimeout) {
        return () -> {
            try {
                Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(secondsToWait).toMillis());
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
            try {
                SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new
 SQSConnectionFactory(
                        new ProviderConfiguration(),
                        SqsClient.create()
                );
                try (SQSConnection connection =
 connectionFactory.createConnection()) {
                    ensureQueueExists(connection, queueName, visibilityTimeout);
                    Session session = connection.createSession(false,
 Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);
                    for (int i = 1; i <= numMessages; i++) {
                        MessageProducer producer =
 session.createProducer(session.createQueue(queueName));
                        producer.send(session.createTextMessage("Hello World " +
 i + "!"));
                    }
                }
            } catch (JMSException e) {
                LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        };
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - DeleteQueue

Work with queue tags and Amazon SQS using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to perform tagging operation with Amazon SQS.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example creates tags for a queue, lists tags, and removes a tag.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ListQueueTagsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueDoesNotExistException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.UUID;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials. For more
 * information, see the <a href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/
developer-guide/get-started.html">AWS
 * SDK for Java Developer Guide</a>.
 */
public class TagExamples {
    static final SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();
    static final String queueName = "TagExamples-queue-" +
 UUID.randomUUID().toString().replace("-", "").substring(0, 20);
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(TagExamples.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        final String queueUrl;
        try {
            queueUrl = sqsClient.createQueue(b ->
b.queueName(queueName)).queueUrl();
            LOGGER.info("Queue created. The URL is: {}", queueUrl);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Program ending because queue was not created.");
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        try {
            addTags(queueUrl);
            listTags(queueUrl);
            removeTags(queueUrl);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Program ending because of an error in a method.");
        } finally {
            try {
                sqsClient.deleteQueue(b -> b.queueUrl(queueUrl));
                LOGGER.info("Queue successfully deleted. Program ending.");
                sqsClient.close();
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Program ending.");
            } finally {
                sqsClient.close();
            }
        }
    }

    /** This method demonstrates how to use a Java Map to a tag a aueue.
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the queue to tag.
     */
    public static void addTags(String queueUrl) {
        // Build a map of the tags.
        final Map<String, String> tagsToAdd = Map.of(
                "Team", "Development",
                "Priority", "Beta",
                "Accounting ID", "456def");

        try {
            // Add tags to the queue using a Consumer<TagQueueRequest.Builder>
parameter.
            sqsClient.tagQueue(b -> b
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .tags(tagsToAdd)
```

```
            );
        } catch (QueueDoesNotExistException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Queue does not exist: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    /** This method demonstrates how to view the tags for a queue.
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the queue whose tags you want to list.
     */
    public static void listTags(String queueUrl) {
        ListQueueTagsResponse response;
        try {
            // Call the listQueueTags method with a
Consumer<ListQueueTagsRequest.Builder> parameter that creates a
ListQueueTagsRequest.
            response = sqsClient.listQueueTags(b -> b
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl));
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Exception thrown: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

        // Log the tags.
        response.tags()
                .forEach((k, v) ->
                        LOGGER.info("Key: {} -> Value: {}", k, v));
    }

    /**
     * This method demonstrates how to remove tags from a queue.
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the queue whose tags you want to remove.
     */
    public static void removeTags(String queueUrl) {
        try {
            // Call the untagQueue method with a
Consumer<UntagQueueRequest.Builder> parameter.
            sqsClient.untagQueue(b -> b
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .tagKeys("Accounting ID") // Remove a single tag.
            );
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Exception thrown: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListQueueTags
  - TagQueue
  - UntagQueue

Serverless examples for Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to use Amazon SQS with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger
- Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code examples show how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri

namespace SqsIntegrationSampleCode
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }

    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package integration_sqs_to_lambda

import (
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.SQSEvent) error {
 for _, record := range event.Records {
  err := processMessage(record)
  if err != nil {
   return err
  }
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
 return nil
}

func processMessage(record events.SQSMessage) error {
 fmt.Printf("Processed message %s\n", record.Body)
 // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent.SQSMessage;

public class Function implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {
        for (SQSMessage msg : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            processMessage(msg, context);
        }
        context.getLogger().log("done");
        return null;
    }

    private void processMessage(SQSMessage msg, Context context) {
        try {
            context.getLogger().log("Processed message " + msg.getBody());

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message

        } catch (Exception e) {
            context.getLogger().log("An error occurred");
            throw e;
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message) {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, Context, SQSHandler, SQSRecord } from "aws-lambda";
```

```
export const functionHandler: SQSHandler = async (
  event: SQSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message: SQSRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
```

```
use Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $body = $record->getBody();
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        }
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for message in event['Records']:
        process_message(message)
    print("done")

def process_message(message):
    try:
        print(f"Processed message {message['body']}")
        # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    except Exception as err:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise err
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |message|
    process_message(message)
  end
  puts "done"
end

def process_message(message)
  begin
    puts "Processed message #{message['body']}"
    # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
```

```
  rescue StandardError => err
    puts "An error occurred"
    raise err
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sqs::SqsEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        // process the record
        tracing::info!("Message body: {}",
 record.body.as_deref().unwrap_or_default())
    });

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion
 time.
        .without_time()
```

```
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code examples show how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeri
namespace sqsSample;

public class Function
{
    public async Task<SQSBatchResponse> FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
```

```
        foreach(var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                //process your message
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
            }
            catch (System.Exception)
            {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.Add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier=message.MessageId});
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(message.Body))
        {
            throw new Exception("No Body in SQS Message.");
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");
        // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        await Task.CompletedTask;
    }
}
```

Go

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, sqsEvent events.SQSEvent)
 (map[string]interface{}, error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, message := range sqsEvent.Records {

  if /* Your message processing condition here */ {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": message.MessageId})
  }
 }

 sqsBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
 }
 return sqsBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSBatchResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessSQSMessageBatch implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent,
 SQSBatchResponse> {
    @Override
    public SQSBatchResponse handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {

        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        String messageId = "";
        for (SQSEvent.SQSMessage message : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //process your message
            } catch (Exception e) {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure(message.getMessageId()));
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Node.js 20.x Lambda runtime, AWS SDK for Javascript V3
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    const batchItemFailures = [];
    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record, context);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }
    return { batchItemFailures };
};

async function processMessageAsync(record, context) {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error("There is an error in the SQS Message.");
    }
    console.log(`Processed message: ${record.body}`);
}
```

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, SQSBatchResponse, Context, SQSBatchItemFailure, SQSRecord }
 from 'aws-lambda';

export const handler = async (event: SQSEvent, context: Context):
 Promise<SQSBatchResponse> => {
    const batchItemFailures: SQSBatchItemFailure[] = [];
```

```
    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }

    return {batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures};
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SQSRecord): Promise<void> {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error('There is an error in the SQS Message.');
    }
    console.log(`Processed message ${record.body}`);
}
```

PHP

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';
```

```
class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing SQS records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                // Assuming the SQS message is in JSON format
                $message = json_decode($record->getBody(), true);
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($message));
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $this->markAsFailed($record);
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords SQS records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    if event:
        batch_item_failures = []
        sqs_batch_response = {}

        for record in event["Records"]:
            try:
                # process message
            except Exception as e:
                batch_item_failures.append({"itemIdentifier":
 record['messageId']})

        sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
        return sqs_batch_response
```

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  if event
    batch_item_failures = []
    sqs_batch_response = {}

    event["Records"].each do |record|
      begin
        # process message
      rescue StandardError => e
        batch_item_failures << {"itemIdentifier" => record['messageId']}
      end
    end

    sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
    return sqs_batch_response
  end
end
```

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::sqs::{SqsBatchResponse, SqsEvent},
```

```
    sqs::{BatchItemFailure, SqsMessage},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn process_record(_: &SqsMessage) -> Result<(), Error> {
    Err(Error::from("Error processing message"))
}

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) ->
 Result<SqsBatchResponse, Error> {
    let mut batch_item_failures = Vec::new();
    for record in event.payload.records {
        match process_record(&record).await {
            Ok(_) => (),
            Err(_) => batch_item_failures.push(BatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.message_id.unwrap(),
            }),
        }
    }

    Ok(SqsBatchResponse {
        batch_item_failures,
    })
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Code examples for Step Functions using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Step Functions with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Step Functions Developer Guide** – More information about Step Functions.
- **Step Functions API Reference** – Details about all available Step Functions actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Step Functions

The following code examples show how to get started using Step Functions.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

public class HelloStepFunctions
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
        var stepFunctionsClient = new AmazonStepFunctionsClient();

        Console.Clear();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to AWS Step Functions");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:");
        var stateMachineListRequest = new ListStateMachinesRequest { MaxResults =
 10 };

        // Get information for up to 10 Step Functions state machines.
        var response = await
 stepFunctionsClient.ListStateMachinesAsync(stateMachineListRequest);

        if (response.StateMachines.Count > 0)
        {
            response.StateMachines.ForEach(stateMachine =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"State Machine
 Name: {stateMachine.Name}\tAmazon Resource Name (ARN):
 {stateMachine.StateMachineArn}");
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo state machines were found.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Java version of Hello.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.StateMachineListItem;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListStateMachines {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMachines(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMachines(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListStateMachinesResponse response = sfnClient.listStateMachines();
            List<StateMachineListItem> machines = response.stateMachines();
            for (StateMachineListItem machine : machines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the state machine is: " +
 machine.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN value is : " +
 machine.stateMachineArn());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest

/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

suspend fun main() {
    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Hello example.")
    println("Lets list up to ten of your state machines:")
    println(DASHES)

    listMachines()
}

suspend fun listMachines() {
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listStateMachines(ListStateMachinesRequest {})
        response.stateMachines?.forEach { machine ->
            println("The name of the state machine is ${machine.name}")
            println("The ARN value is ${machine.stateMachineArn}")
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_stepfunctions(stepfunctions_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Step Functions client and
 list
    the state machines in your account. This list might be empty if you haven't
 created
    any state machines.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Step Functions! Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:")
    state_machines = stepfunctions_client.list_state_machines(maxResults=10)
    for sm in state_machines["stateMachines"]:
        print(f"\t{sm['name']}: {sm['stateMachineArn']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_stepfunctions(boto3.client("stepfunctions"))
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Step Functions using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Step Functions
  - Learn the basics of Step Functions with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Step Functions using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateActivity with an AWS SDK
    - Use CreateStateMachine with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteActivity with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteStateMachine with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeExecution with an AWS SDK
    - Use DescribeStateMachine with an AWS SDK
    - Use GetActivityTask with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListActivities with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListExecutions with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListStateMachines with an AWS SDK
    - Use SendTaskSuccess with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartExecution with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Step Functions using AWS SDKs
  - Create a messenger application with Step Functions
  - Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions
  - Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

Basic examples for Step Functions using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Step Functions with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Step Functions
- Learn the basics of Step Functions with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Step Functions using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateActivity with an AWS SDK
  - Use CreateStateMachine with an AWS SDK

- Use DeleteActivity with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteStateMachine with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeExecution with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeStateMachine with an AWS SDK
- Use GetActivityTask with an AWS SDK
- Use ListActivities with an AWS SDK
- Use ListExecutions with an AWS SDK
- Use ListStateMachines with an AWS SDK
- Use SendTaskSuccess with an AWS SDK
- Use StartExecution with an AWS SDK

Hello Step Functions

The following code examples show how to get started using Step Functions.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

public class HelloStepFunctions
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
        var stepFunctionsClient = new AmazonStepFunctionsClient();
```

```
        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to AWS Step Functions");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:");
        var stateMachineListRequest = new ListStateMachinesRequest { MaxResults =
 10 };

        // Get information for up to 10 Step Functions state machines.
        var response = await
 stepFunctionsClient.ListStateMachinesAsync(stateMachineListRequest);

        if (response.StateMachines.Count > 0)
        {
            response.StateMachines.ForEach(stateMachine =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"State Machine
 Name: {stateMachine.Name}\tAmazon Resource Name (ARN):
 {stateMachine.StateMachineArn}");
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo state machines were found.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Java version of Hello.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.StateMachineListItem;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListStateMachines {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMachines(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMachines(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListStateMachinesResponse response = sfnClient.listStateMachines();
            List<StateMachineListItem> machines = response.stateMachines();
            for (StateMachineListItem machine : machines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the state machine is: " +
 machine.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN value is : " +
 machine.stateMachineArn());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest

/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

suspend fun main() {
    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Hello example.")
    println("Lets list up to ten of your state machines:")
    println(DASHES)

    listMachines()
}

suspend fun listMachines() {
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listStateMachines(ListStateMachinesRequest {})
        response.stateMachines?.forEach { machine ->
            println("The name of the state machine is ${machine.name}")
            println("The ARN value is ${machine.stateMachineArn}")
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_stepfunctions(stepfunctions_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Step Functions client and
 list
    the state machines in your account. This list might be empty if you haven't
 created
    any state machines.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Step Functions! Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:")
    state_machines = stepfunctions_client.list_state_machines(maxResults=10)
    for sm in state_machines["stateMachines"]:
        print(f"\t{sm['name']}: {sm['stateMachineArn']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_stepfunctions(boto3.client("stepfunctions"))
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Step Functions with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create an activity.
- Create a state machine from an Amazon States Language definition that contains the previously created activity as a step.
- Run the state machine and respond to the activity with user input.
- Get the final status and output after the run completes, then clean up resources.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
global using System.Text.Json;
global using Amazon.StepFunctions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
global using StepFunctionsActions;
global using LogLevel = Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.LogLevel;



using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;
```

```
namespace StepFunctionsBasics;

public class StepFunctionsBasics
{
    private static ILogger _logger = null!;
    private static IConfigurationRoot _configuration = null!;
    private static IAmazonIdentityManagementService _iamService = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Step Functions.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonStepFunctions>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddTransient<StepFunctionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<StepFunctionsBasics>();

        // Load configuration settings.
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var activityName = _configuration["ActivityName"];
        var stateMachineName = _configuration["StateMachineName"];

        var roleName = _configuration["RoleName"];
        var repoBaseDir = _configuration["RepoBaseDir"];
        var jsonFilePath = _configuration["JsonFilePath"];
        var jsonFileName = _configuration["JsonFileName"];
```

```
        var uiMethods = new UiMethods();
        var stepFunctionsWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<StepFunctionsWrapper>();

        _iamService =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();

        // Load definition for the state machine from a JSON file.
        var stateDefinitionJson = File.ReadAllText($"{repoBaseDir}{jsonFilePath}
{jsonFileName}");

        Console.Clear();
        uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create activity");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's start by creating an activity.");
        string activityArn;
        string stateMachineArn;

        // Check to see if the activity already exists.
        var activityList = await stepFunctionsWrapper.ListActivitiesAsync();
        var existingActivity = activityList.FirstOrDefault(activity =>
 activity.Name == activityName);
        if (existingActivity is not null)
        {
            activityArn = existingActivity.ActivityArn;
            Console.WriteLine($"Activity, {activityName}, already exists.");
        }
        else
        {
            activityArn = await
 stepFunctionsWrapper.CreateActivity(activityName);
        }

        // Swap the placeholder in the JSON file with the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
        // of the recently created activity.
        var stateDefinition =
 stateDefinitionJson.Replace("{{DOC_EXAMPLE_ACTIVITY_ARN}}", activityArn);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create state machine");
        Console.WriteLine("Now we'll create a state machine.");
```

```
        // Find or create an IAM role that can be assumed by Step Functions.
        var role = await GetOrCreateStateMachineRole(roleName);

        // See if the state machine already exists.
        var stateMachineList = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.ListStateMachinesAsync();
        var existingStateMachine =
            stateMachineList.FirstOrDefault(stateMachine => stateMachine.Name ==
stateMachineName);
        if (existingStateMachine is not null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"State machine, {stateMachineName}, already
exists.");
            stateMachineArn = existingStateMachine.StateMachineArn;
        }
        else
        {
            // Create the state machine.
            stateMachineArn =
                await stepFunctionsWrapper.CreateStateMachine(stateMachineName,
stateDefinition, role.Arn);
            uiMethods.PressEnter();
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The state machine has been created.");
        var describeStateMachineResponse = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.DescribeStateMachineAsync(stateMachineArn);


Console.WriteLine($"{describeStateMachineResponse.Name}\t{describeStateMachineResponse.S
        Console.WriteLine($"Current status:
{describeStateMachineResponse.Status}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role assumed by the
state machine: {describeStateMachineResponse.RoleArn}");

        var userName = string.Empty;
        Console.Write("Before we start the state machine, tell me what should
ChatSFN call you? ");
        userName = Console.ReadLine();

        // Keep asking until the user enters a string value.
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(userName))
        {
```

```
            Console.Write("Enter your name: ");
            userName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var executionJson = @"{""name"": """ + userName + @"""}";

        // Start the state machine execution.
        Console.WriteLine("Now we'll start execution of the state machine.");
        var executionArn = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.StartExecutionAsync(executionJson, stateMachineArn);
        Console.WriteLine("State machine started.");

        Console.WriteLine($"Thank you, {userName}. Now let's get started...");
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("ChatSFN");

        var isDone = false;
        var response = new GetActivityTaskResponse();
        var taskToken = string.Empty;
        var userChoice = string.Empty;

        while (!isDone)
        {
            response = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.GetActivityTaskAsync(activityArn, "MvpWorker");
            taskToken = response.TaskToken;

            // Parse the returned JSON string.
            var taskJsonResponse = JsonDocument.Parse(response.Input);
            var taskJsonObject = taskJsonResponse.RootElement;
            var message = taskJsonObject.GetProperty("message").GetString();
            var actions =
taskJsonObject.GetProperty("actions").EnumerateArray().Select(x =>
x.ToString()).ToList();
            Console.WriteLine($"\n{message}\n");

            // Prompt the user for another choice.
            Console.WriteLine("ChatSFN: What would you like me to do?");
            actions.ForEach(action => Console.WriteLine($"\t{action}"));
            Console.Write($"\n{userName}, tell me your choice: ");
            userChoice = Console.ReadLine();
            if (userChoice?.ToLower() == "done")
            {
```

```
                isDone = true;
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"You have selected: {userChoice}");
            var jsonResponse = @"{""action"": """ + userChoice + @"""}";

            await stepFunctionsWrapper.SendTaskSuccessAsync(taskToken,
jsonResponse);
        }

        await stepFunctionsWrapper.StopExecution(executionArn);
        Console.WriteLine("Now we will wait for the execution to stop.");
        DescribeExecutionResponse executionResponse;
        do
        {
            executionResponse = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.DescribeExecutionAsync(executionArn);
        } while (executionResponse.Status == ExecutionStatus.RUNNING);

        Console.WriteLine("State machine stopped.");
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("State machine executions");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's take a look at the execution values for the
state machine.");

        // List the executions.
        var executions = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.ListExecutionsAsync(stateMachineArn);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step function execution values");
        executions.ForEach(execution =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{execution.Name}\t{execution.StartDate} to
{execution.StopDate}");
        });

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Now delete the state machine and the activity.
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the state machine...");

        await stepFunctionsWrapper.DeleteStateMachine(stateMachineArn);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("State machine deleted.");

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the activity...");
        await stepFunctionsWrapper.DeleteActivity(activityArn);
        Console.WriteLine("Activity deleted.");

        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon Step Functions scenario is now complete.");
    }

    static async Task<Role> GetOrCreateStateMachineRole(string roleName)
    {
        // Define the policy document for the role.
        var stateMachineRolePolicy = @"{
         ""Version"": ""2012-10-17"",
        ""Statement"": [{
            ""Sid"": """",
            ""Effect"": ""Allow"",
            ""Principal"": {
                ""Service"": ""states.amazonaws.com""},
            ""Action"": ""sts:AssumeRole""}]}";

        var role = new Role();
        var roleExists = false;

        try
        {
            var getRoleResponse = await _iamService.GetRoleAsync(new
GetRoleRequest { RoleName = roleName });
            roleExists = true;
            role = getRoleResponse.Role;
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            // The role doesn't exist. Create it.
            Console.WriteLine($"Role, {roleName} doesn't exist. Creating it...");
        }

        if (!roleExists)
        {
            var request = new CreateRoleRequest
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = stateMachineRolePolicy,
            };
```

```
            var createRoleResponse = await _iamService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
            role = createRoleResponse.Role;
        }

        return role;
    }
}


namespace StepFunctionsBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Some useful methods to make screen display easier.
/// </summary>
public class UiMethods
{
    private readonly string _sepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();
        DisplayTitle("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Demo");

        Console.WriteLine("This example application will do the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 1. Create an activity.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 2. Create a state machine.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 3. Start an execution.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 4. Run the worker, then stop it.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 5. List executions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 6. Clean up the resources created for the
 example.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter"></param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    private string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title, and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(_sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(_sepBar);
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps state machine and activity actions.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper that performs AWS Step Functions actions.
/// </summary>
public class StepFunctionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonStepFunctions _amazonStepFunctions;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// The constructor for the StepFunctionsWrapper. Initializes the
    /// client object passed to it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonStepFunctions">An initialized Step Functions client
object.</param>
    public StepFunctionsWrapper(IAmazonStepFunctions amazonStepFunctions)
    {
        _amazonStepFunctions = amazonStepFunctions;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions activity using the supplied name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityName">The name for the new Step Functions
activity.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the new activity.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateActivity(string activityName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateActivityAsync(new
CreateActivityRequest { Name = activityName });
        return response.ActivityArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineName">Name for the new Step Functions state
    /// machine.</param>
    /// <param name="definition">A JSON string that defines the Step Functions
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateStateMachine(string stateMachineName, string
definition, string roleArn)
    {
        var request = new CreateStateMachineRequest
        {
            Name = stateMachineName,
            Definition = definition,
            RoleArn = roleArn
        };
```

```
        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateStateMachineAsync(request);
        return response.StateMachineArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Machine activity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the activity.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteActivity(string activityArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteActivityAsync(new
DeleteActivityRequest { ActivityArn = activityArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteStateMachine(string stateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteStateMachineAsync(new
DeleteStateMachineRequest
        { StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions execution.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions execution.</param>
    /// <returns>The API response returned by the API.</returns>
    public async Task<DescribeExecutionResponse> DescribeExecutionAsync(string
executionArn)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeExecutionAsync(new
 DescribeExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="StateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine to retrieve.</param>
    /// <returns>Information about the specified Step Functions state machine.</
returns>
    public async Task<DescribeStateMachineResponse>
 DescribeStateMachineAsync(string StateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeStateMachineAsync(new
 DescribeStateMachineRequest { StateMachineArn = StateMachineArn });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a task with the specified Step Functions activity
    /// with the specified Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions activity.</param>
    /// <param name="workerName">The name of the Step Functions worker.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the Step Functions activity.</returns>
    public async Task<GetActivityTaskResponse> GetActivityTaskAsync(string
 activityArn, string workerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.GetActivityTaskAsync(new
 GetActivityTaskRequest
        { ActivityArn = activityArn, WorkerName = workerName });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the Step Functions activities for the current account.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>A list of ActivityListItems.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ActivityListItem>> ListActivitiesAsync()
    {
        var request = new ListActivitiesRequest();
        var activities = new List<ActivityListItem>();

        do
        {
            var response = await
_amazonStepFunctions.ListActivitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }

            activities.AddRange(response.Activities);
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        return activities;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about executions of a Step Functions
    /// state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of ExecutionListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ExecutionListItem>> ListExecutionsAsync(string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executions = new List<ExecutionListItem>();
        ListExecutionsResponse response;
        var request = new ListExecutionsRequest { StateMachineArn =
stateMachineArn };

        do
        {
            response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListExecutionsAsync(request);
            executions.AddRange(response.Executions);
            if (response.NextToken is not null)
```

```
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return executions;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of Step Functions state machines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of StateMachineListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<StateMachineListItem>> ListStateMachinesAsync()
    {
        var stateMachines = new List<StateMachineListItem>();
        var listStateMachinesPaginator =
            _amazonStepFunctions.Paginators.ListStateMachines(new
ListStateMachinesRequest());

        await foreach (var response in listStateMachinesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            stateMachines.AddRange(response.StateMachines);
        }

        return stateMachines;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Indicate that the Step Functions task, indicated by the
    /// task token, has completed successfully.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="taskToken">Identifies the task.</param>
    /// <param name="taskResponse">The response received from executing the
task.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SendTaskSuccessAsync(string taskToken, string
taskResponse)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.SendTaskSuccessAsync(new
SendTaskSuccessRequest
        { TaskToken = taskToken, Output = taskResponse });
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start execution of an AWS Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionName">The name to use for the execution.</param>
    /// <param name="executionJson">The JSON string to pass for execution.</
param>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Step Functions
    /// execution.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartExecutionAsync(string executionJson, string
 stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executionRequest = new StartExecutionRequest
        {
            Input = executionJson,
            StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonStepFunctions.StartExecutionAsync(executionRequest);
        return response.ExecutionArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Stop execution of a Step Functions workflow.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions execution to stop.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> StopExecution(string executionArn)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.StopExecutionAsync(new
 StopExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask
  - ListActivities
  - ListStateMachines
  - SendTaskSuccess
  - StartExecution
  - StopExecution

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * You can obtain the JSON file to create a state machine in the following
 * GitHub location.
 * <p>
 * https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/resources/
sample_files
 * <p>
```

```
 * To run this code example, place the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file into
 * your project's resources folder.
 * <p>
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Creates an activity.
 * 2. Creates a state machine.
 * 3. Describes the state machine.
 * 4. Starts execution of the state machine and interacts with it.
 * 5. Describes the execution.
 * 6. Delete the activity.
 * 7. Deletes the state machine.
 */
public class StepFunctionsScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <roleARN> <activityName> <stateMachineName>

            Where:
                roleName - The name of the IAM role to create for this state
 machine.
                activityName - The name of an activity to create.
                stateMachineName - The name of the state machine to create.
                jsonFile - The location of the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file.
 You can located it in resources/sample_files.
            """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String roleName = args[0];
        String activityName = args[1];
        String stateMachineName = args[2];
        String jsonFile = args[3];
        String polJSON = """
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Sid": "",
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {
                            "Service": "states.amazonaws.com"
                        },
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                    }
                ]
            }
            """;


        Scanner sc = new Scanner(System.in);
        boolean action = false;

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        Region regionGl = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
            .region(regionGl)
            .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions example
 scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create an activity.");
        String activityArn = createActivity(sfnClient, activityName);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the activity is " + activityArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        // Read the file using FileInputStream
        FileInputStream inputStream = new FileInputStream(jsonFile);
        ObjectMapper mapper = new ObjectMapper();
        JsonNode jsonNode = mapper.readValue(inputStream, JsonNode.class);
        String jsonString = mapper.writeValueAsString(jsonNode);

        // Modify the Resource node.
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        JsonNode root = objectMapper.readTree(jsonString);
        ((ObjectNode) root.path("States").path("GetInput")).put("Resource",
activityArn);

        // Convert the modified Java object back to a JSON string.
        String stateDefinition = objectMapper.writeValueAsString(root);
        System.out.println(stateDefinition);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a state machine.");
        String roleARN = createIAMRole(iam, roleName, polJSON);
        String stateMachineArn = createMachine(sfnClient, roleARN,
stateMachineName, stateDefinition);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the state machine is " + stateMachineArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Describe the state machine.");
        describeStateMachine(sfnClient, stateMachineArn);
        System.out.println("What should ChatSFN call you?");
        String userName = sc.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Hello " + userName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        // The JSON to pass to the StartExecution call.
        String executionJson = "{ \"name\" : \"" + userName + "\" }";
        System.out.println(executionJson);
        System.out.println("4. Start execution of the state machine and interact
with it.");
        String runArn = startWorkflow(sfnClient, stateMachineArn, executionJson);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the state machine execution is " +
runArn);
        List<String> myList;
        while (!action) {
```

```
            myList = getActivityTask(sfnClient, activityArn);
            System.out.println("ChatSFN: " + myList.get(1));
            System.out.println(userName + " please specify a value.");
            String myAction = sc.nextLine();
            if (myAction.compareTo("done") == 0)
                action = true;

            System.out.println("You have selected " + myAction);
            String taskJson = "{ \"action\" : \"" + myAction + "\" }";
            System.out.println(taskJson);
            sendTaskSuccess(sfnClient, myList.get(0), taskJson);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Describe the execution.");
        describeExe(sfnClient, runArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Delete the activity.");
        deleteActivity(sfnClient, activityArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Delete the state machines.");
        deleteMachine(sfnClient, stateMachineArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The AWS Step Functions example scenario is
complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
polJSON) {
        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(rolename)
                .assumeRolePolicyDocument(polJSON)
                .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                .build();
```

```
            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            return response.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void describeExe(SfnClient sfnClient, String executionArn) {
        try {
            DescribeExecutionRequest executionRequest =
DescribeExecutionRequest.builder()
                .executionArn(executionArn)
                .build();

            String status = "";
            boolean hasSucceeded = false;
            while (!hasSucceeded) {
                DescribeExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                if (status.compareTo("RUNNING") == 0) {
                    System.out.println("The state machine is still running, let's
wait for it to finish.");
                    Thread.sleep(2000);
                } else if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                    System.out.println("The Step Function workflow has
succeeded");
                    hasSucceeded = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The Status is neither running or
succeeded");
                }
            }
            System.out.println("The Status is " + status);

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
   public static void sendTaskSuccess(SfnClient sfnClient, String token, String
 json) {
       try {
           SendTaskSuccessRequest successRequest =
 SendTaskSuccessRequest.builder()
               .taskToken(token)
               .output(json)
               .build();

           sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest);

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static List<String> getActivityTask(SfnClient sfnClient, String
 actArn) {
       List<String> myList = new ArrayList<>();
       GetActivityTaskRequest getActivityTaskRequest =
 GetActivityTaskRequest.builder()
           .activityArn(actArn)
           .build();

       GetActivityTaskResponse response =
 sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest);
       myList.add(response.taskToken());
       myList.add(response.input());
       return myList;
   }

   public static void deleteActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String actArn) {
       try {
           DeleteActivityRequest activityRequest =
 DeleteActivityRequest.builder()
               .activityArn(actArn)
               .build();

           sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest);
           System.out.println("You have deleted " + actArn);

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeStateMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String
stateMachineArn) {
        try {
            DescribeStateMachineRequest stateMachineRequest =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest);
            System.out.println("The name of the State machine is " +
response.name());
            System.out.println("The status of the State machine is " +
response.status());
            System.out.println("The ARN value of the State machine is " +
response.stateMachineArn());
            System.out.println("The role ARN value is " + response.roleArn());

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String stateMachineArn)
{
        try {
            DeleteStateMachineRequest deleteStateMachineRequest =
DeleteStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest);
            DescribeStateMachineRequest describeStateMachine =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            while (true) {
                DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(describeStateMachine);
```

```
                System.out.println("The state machine is not deleted yet. The
status is " + response.status());
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(stateMachineArn + " was successfully deleted.");
    }

    public static String startWorkflow(SfnClient sfnClient, String
stateMachineArn, String jsonEx) {
        UUID uuid = UUID.randomUUID();
        String uuidValue = uuid.toString();
        try {
            StartExecutionRequest executionRequest =
StartExecutionRequest.builder()
                .input(jsonEx)
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .name(uuidValue)
                .build();

            StartExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest);
            return response.executionArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String roleARN,
String stateMachineName, String json) {
        try {
            CreateStateMachineRequest machineRequest =
CreateStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .definition(json)
                .name(stateMachineName)
                .roleArn(roleARN)
                .type(StateMachineType.STANDARD)
                .build();
```

```
            CreateStateMachineResponse response =
 sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest);
            return response.stateMachineArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String activityName)
 {
        try {
            CreateActivityRequest activityRequest =
 CreateActivityRequest.builder()
                .name(activityName)
                .build();

            CreateActivityResponse response =
 sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest);
            return response.activityArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine

- GetActivityTask
- ListActivities
- ListStateMachines
- SendTaskSuccess
- StartExecution
- StopExecution

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iam.IamClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iam.model.CreateRoleRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.CreateActivityRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.CreateStateMachineRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DeleteActivityRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DeleteStateMachineRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DescribeExecutionRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DescribeStateMachineRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.GetActivityTaskRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListActivitiesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.SendTaskSuccessRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.StartExecutionRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.StateMachineType
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.paginators.listActivitiesPaginated
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.paginators.listStateMachinesPaginated
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.node.ObjectNode
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform
import java.util.Scanner
```

```
import java.util.UUID
import kotlin.collections.ArrayList
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

/**
 To run this code example, place the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file into your
 project's resources folder.

 You can obtain the JSON file to create a state machine in the following GitHub
 location:

 https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/resources/sample_files

 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Kotlin code example performs the following tasks:

 1. List activities using a paginator.
 2. List state machines using a paginator.
 3. Creates an activity.
 4. Creates a state machine.
 5. Describes the state machine.
 6. Starts execution of the state machine and interacts with it.
 7. Describes the execution.
 8. Deletes the activity.
 9. Deletes the state machine.
 */

val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <roleARN> <activityName> <stateMachineName>

    Where:
        roleName - The name of the IAM role to create for this state machine.
        activityName - The name of an activity to create.
        stateMachineName - The name of the state machine to create.
```

```
        jsonFile - The location of the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file. You can
located it in resources/sample_files.
    """

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val roleName = args[0]
    val activityName = args[1]
    val stateMachineName = args[2]
    val jsonFile = args[3]
    val sc = Scanner(System.`in`)
    var action = false

    val polJSON = """{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "states.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
    }"""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. List activities using a Paginator.")
    listActivitesPagnator()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List state machines using a paginator.")
    listStatemachinesPagnator()
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create a new activity.")
    val activityArn = createActivity(activityName)
    println("The ARN of the Activity is $activityArn")
    println(DASHES)

    // Get JSON to use for the state machine and place the activityArn value into
it.
    val stream = GetStream()
    val jsonString = stream.getStream(jsonFile)

    // Modify the Resource node.
    val objectMapper = ObjectMapper()
    val root: JsonNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonString)
    (root.path("States").path("GetInput") as ObjectNode).put("Resource",
activityArn)

    // Convert the modified Java object back to a JSON string.
    val stateDefinition = objectMapper.writeValueAsString(root)
    println(stateDefinition)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a state machine.")
    val roleARN = createIAMRole(roleName, polJSON)
    val stateMachineArn = createMachine(roleARN, stateMachineName,
stateDefinition)
    println("The ARN of the state machine is $stateMachineArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Describe the state machine.")
    describeStateMachine(stateMachineArn)
    println("What should ChatSFN call you?")
    val userName = sc.nextLine()
    println("Hello $userName")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    // The JSON to pass to the StartExecution call.
    val executionJson = "{ \"name\" : \"$userName\" }"
    println(executionJson)
    println("6. Start execution of the state machine and interact with it.")
    val runArn = startWorkflow(stateMachineArn, executionJson)
    println("The ARN of the state machine execution is $runArn")
```

```
    var myList: List<String>
    while (!action) {
        myList = getActivityTask(activityArn)
        println("ChatSFN: " + myList[1])
        println("$userName please specify a value.")
        val myAction = sc.nextLine()
        if (myAction.compareTo("done") == 0) {
            action = true
        }
        println("You have selected $myAction")
        val taskJson = "{ \"action\" : \"$myAction\" }"
        println(taskJson)
        sendTaskSuccess(myList[0], taskJson)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Describe the execution.")
    describeExe(runArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Delete the activity.")
    deleteActivity(activityArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Delete the state machines.")
    deleteMachine(stateMachineArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The AWS Step Functions example scenario is complete.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun listStatemachinesPagnator() {
    val machineRequest =
        ListStateMachinesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient
```

```
            .listStateMachinesPaginated(machineRequest)
            .transform { it.stateMachines?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" The state machine ARN is ${obj.stateMachineArn}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listActivitesPagnator() {
    val activitiesRequest =
        ListActivitiesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient
            .listActivitiesPaginated(activitiesRequest)
            .transform { it.activities?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" The activity ARN is ${obj.activityArn}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val deleteStateMachineRequest =
        DeleteStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest)
        println("$stateMachineArnVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteActivity(actArn: String?) {
    val activityRequest =
        DeleteActivityRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest)
```

```
        println("You have deleted $actArn")
    }
}

suspend fun describeExe(executionArnVal: String?) {
    val executionRequest =
        DescribeExecutionRequest {
            executionArn = executionArnVal
        }

    var status = ""
    var hasSucceeded = false
    while (!hasSucceeded) {
        SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
            val response = sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest)
            status = response.status.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Running") == 0) {
                println("The state machine is still running, let's wait for it to
 finish.")
                Thread.sleep(2000)
            } else if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                println("The Step Function workflow has succeeded")
                hasSucceeded = true
            } else {
                println("The Status is $status")
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Status is $status")
}

suspend fun sendTaskSuccess(
    token: String?,
    json: String?,
) {
    val successRequest =
        SendTaskSuccessRequest {
            taskToken = token
            output = json
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest)
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun getActivityTask(actArn: String?): List<String> {
    val myList: MutableList<String> = ArrayList()
    val getActivityTaskRequest =
        GetActivityTaskRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest)
        myList.add(response.taskToken.toString())
        myList.add(response.input.toString())
        return myList
    }
}

suspend fun startWorkflow(
    stateMachineArnVal: String?,
    jsonEx: String?,
): String? {
    val uuid = UUID.randomUUID()
    val uuidValue = uuid.toString()
    val executionRequest =
        StartExecutionRequest {
            input = jsonEx
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
            name = uuidValue
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest)
        return response.executionArn
    }
}

suspend fun describeStateMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val stateMachineRequest =
        DescribeStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest)
        println("The name of the State machine is ${response.name}")
        println("The status of the State machine is ${response.status}")
        println("The ARN value of the State machine is
 ${response.stateMachineArn}")
```

```
        println("The role ARN value is ${response.roleArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun createMachine(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    stateMachineName: String?,
    jsonVal: String?,
): String? {
    val machineRequest =
        CreateStateMachineRequest {
            definition = jsonVal
            name = stateMachineName
            roleArn = roleARNVal
            type = StateMachineType.Standard
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest)
        return response.stateMachineArn
    }
}

suspend fun createIAMRole(
    roleNameVal: String?,
    polJSON: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
            assumeRolePolicyDocument = polJSON
            description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createRole(request)
        return response.role?.arn
    }
}

suspend fun createActivity(activityName: String): String? {
    val activityRequest =
        CreateActivityRequest {
            name = activityName
```

```
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest)
        return response.activityArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask
  - ListActivities
  - ListStateMachines
  - SendTaskSuccess
  - StartExecution
  - StopExecution

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class StateMachineScenario:
```

```
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using Step
Functions."""

    def __init__(self, activity, state_machine, iam_client):
        """
        :param activity: An object that wraps activity actions.
        :param state_machine: An object that wraps state machine actions.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
client.
        """
        self.activity = activity
        self.state_machine = state_machine
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        self.state_machine_role = None

    def prerequisites(self, state_machine_role_name):
        """
        Finds or creates an IAM role that can be assumed by Step Functions.
        A role of this kind is required to create a state machine.
        The state machine used in this example does not call any additional
services,
        so it needs no additional permissions.

        :param state_machine_role_name: The name of the role.
        :return: Data about the role.
        """
        trust_policy = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "states.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        try:
            role = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=state_machine_role_name)
            print(f"Prerequisite IAM role {state_machine_role_name} already
exists.")
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                role = None
```

```
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get prerequisite IAM role %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    state_machine_role_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        if role is None:
            try:
                role = self.iam_client.create_role(
                    RoleName=state_machine_role_name,
                    AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy),
                )
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create prerequisite IAM role %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    state_machine_role_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        self.state_machine_role = role["Role"]

    def find_or_create_activity(self, activity_name):
        """
        Finds or creates a Step Functions activity.

        :param activity_name: The name of the activity.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the activity.
        """
        print("First, let's set up an activity and state machine.")
        activity_arn = self.activity.find(activity_name)
        if activity_arn is None:
            activity_arn = self.activity.create(activity_name)
            print(
                f"Activity {activity_name} created. Its Amazon Resource Name
(ARN) is "
                f"{activity_arn}."
            )
        else:
            print(f"Activity {activity_name} already exists.")
        return activity_arn
```

```
    def find_or_create_state_machine(
        self, state_machine_name, activity_arn, state_machine_file
    ):
        """
        Finds or creates a Step Functions state machine.

        :param state_machine_name: The name of the state machine.
        :param activity_arn: The ARN of an activity that is used as a step in the
state
                                machine. This ARN is injected into the state machine
                                definition that's used to create the state machine.
        :param state_machine_file: The path to a file containing the state
machine
                                      definition.
        :return: The ARN of the state machine.
        """
        state_machine_arn = self.state_machine.find(state_machine_name)
        if state_machine_arn is None:
            with open(state_machine_file) as state_machine_file:
                state_machine_def = state_machine_file.read().replace(
                    "{{DOC_EXAMPLE_ACTIVITY_ARN}}", activity_arn
                )
                state_machine_arn = self.state_machine.create(
                    state_machine_name,
                    state_machine_def,
                    self.state_machine_role["Arn"],
                )
            print(f"State machine {state_machine_name} created.")
        else:
            print(f"State machine {state_machine_name} already exists.")
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Here's some information about state machine
{state_machine_name}:")
        state_machine_info = self.state_machine.describe(state_machine_arn)
        for field in ["name", "status", "stateMachineArn", "roleArn"]:
            print(f"\t{field}: {state_machine_info[field]}")
        return state_machine_arn

    def run_state_machine(self, state_machine_arn, activity_arn):
        """
        Run the state machine. The state machine used in this example is a simple
        chat simulation. It contains an activity step in a loop that is used for
user
```

```
        interaction. When the state machine gets to the activity step, it waits
for
        an external application to get task data and submit a response. This
function
        acts as the activity application by getting task input and responding
with
        user input.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine.
        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity used as a step in the state
machine.
        :return: The ARN of the run.
        """
        print(
            f"Let's run the state machine. It's a simplistic, non-AI chat
simulator "
            f"we'll call ChatSFN."
        )
        user_name = q.ask("What should ChatSFN call you? ", q.non_empty)
        run_input = {"name": user_name}
        print("Starting state machine...")
        run_arn = self.state_machine.start(state_machine_arn,
json.dumps(run_input))
        action = None
        while action != "done":
            activity_task = self.activity.get_task(activity_arn)
            task_input = json.loads(activity_task["input"])
            print(f"ChatSFN: {task_input['message']}")
            action = task_input["actions"][
                q.choose("What now? ", task_input["actions"])
            ]
            task_response = {"action": action}
            self.activity.send_task_success(
                activity_task["taskToken"], json.dumps(task_response)
            )
        return run_arn

    def finish_state_machine_run(self, run_arn):
        """
        Wait for the state machine run to finish, then print final status and
output.

        :param run_arn: The ARN of the run to retrieve.
        """
```

```
        print(f"Let's get the final output from the state machine:")
        status = "RUNNING"
        while status == "RUNNING":
            run_output = self.state_machine.describe_run(run_arn)
            status = run_output["status"]
            if status == "RUNNING":
                print(
                    "The state machine is still running, let's wait for it to
finish."
                )
                wait(1)
            elif status == "SUCCEEDED":
                print(f"ChatSFN: {json.loads(run_output['output'])['message']}")
            else:
                print(f"Run status: {status}.")

    def cleanup(
        self,
        state_machine_name,
        state_machine_arn,
        activity_name,
        activity_arn,
        state_machine_role_name,
    ):
        """
        Clean up resources created by this example.

        :param state_machine_name: The name of the state machine.
        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine.
        :param activity_name: The name of the activity.
        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity.
        :param state_machine_role_name: The name of the role used by the state
machine.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to delete the state machine, activity, and role created
for this "
            "example? (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            self.state_machine.delete(state_machine_arn)
            print(f"Deleted state machine {state_machine_name}.")
            self.activity.delete(activity_arn)
            print(f"Deleted activity {activity_name}.")
```

```
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=state_machine_role_name)
            print(f"Deleted role {state_machine_role_name}.")

    def run_scenario(self, activity_name, state_machine_name):
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions state machines demo.")
        print("-" * 88)

        activity_arn = self.find_or_create_activity(activity_name)
        state_machine_arn = self.find_or_create_state_machine(
            state_machine_name,
            activity_arn,
            "../../../resources/sample_files/chat_sfn_state_machine.json",
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        run_arn = self.run_state_machine(state_machine_arn, activity_arn)
        print("-" * 88)
        self.finish_state_machine_run(run_arn)
        print("-" * 88)
        self.cleanup(
            state_machine_name,
            state_machine_arn,
            activity_name,
            activity_arn,
            self.state_machine_role["RoleName"],
        )

        print("-" * 88)
        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    try:
        stepfunctions_client = boto3.client("stepfunctions")
        iam_client = boto3.client("iam")
        scenario = StateMachineScenario(
            Activity(stepfunctions_client),
            StateMachine(stepfunctions_client),
            iam_client,
        )
        scenario.prerequisites("doc-example-state-machine-chat")
```

```
        scenario.run_scenario("doc-example-activity", "doc-example-state-
machine")
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps state machine actions.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name, definition, role_arn):
        """
        Creates a state machine with the specific definition. The state machine
 assumes
        the provided role before it starts a run.

        :param name: The name to give the state machine.
        :param definition: The Amazon States Language definition of the steps in
 the
                           the state machine.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that is
 assumed by
                         Step Functions when the state machine is run.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created state machine.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_state_machine(
                name=name, definition=definition, roleArn=role_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["stateMachineArn"]


    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find a state machine by name. This requires listing the state machines
until
        one is found with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the state machine to search for.
        :return: The ARN of the state machine if found; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_state_machines")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for state_machine in page.get("stateMachines", []):
                    if state_machine["name"] == name:
                        return state_machine["stateMachineArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list state machines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to look up.
        :return: The retrieved state machine data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't describe state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def start(self, state_machine_arn, run_input):
        """
        Start a run of a state machine with a specified input. A run is also
 known
        as an "execution" in Step Functions.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to run.
        :param run_input: The input to the state machine, in JSON format.
        :return: The ARN of the run. This can be used to get information about
 the run,
                 including its current status and final output.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.start_execution(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn, input=run_input
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["executionArn"]


    def describe_run(self, run_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine run, such as its current status or final
 output.

        :param run_arn: The ARN of the run to look up.
```

```
        :return: The retrieved run data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_execution(
                executionArn=run_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                run_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def delete(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Delete a state machine and all of its run data.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

Define a class that wraps activity actions.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name):
        """
        Create an activity.

        :param name: The name of the activity to create.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_activity(name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["activityArn"]


    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find an activity by name. This requires listing activities until one is
 found
        with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the activity to search for.
        :return: If found, the ARN of the activity; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
```

```
            paginator =
self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_activities")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for activity in page.get("activities", []):
                    if activity["name"] == name:
                        return activity["activityArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list activities. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_task(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Gets task data for an activity. When a state machine is waiting for the
        specified activity, a response is returned with data from the state
machine.
        When a state machine is not waiting, this call blocks for 60 seconds.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to get task data for.
        :return: The task data for the activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.get_activity_task(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get a task for activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def send_task_success(self, task_token, task_response):
        """
```

```
        Sends a success response to a waiting activity step. A state machine with
an
        activity step waits for the activity to get task data and then respond
with
        either success or failure before it resumes processing.

        :param task_token: The token associated with the task. This is included
in the
                           response to the get_activity_task action and must be
sent
                           without modification.
        :param task_response: The response data from the activity. This data is
                              received and processed by the state machine.
        """
        try:
            self.stepfunctions_client.send_task_success(
                taskToken=task_token, output=task_response
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send task success. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Delete an activity.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_activity(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask
  - ListActivities
  - ListStateMachines
  - SendTaskSuccess
  - StartExecution
  - StopExecution

Actions for Step Functions using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Step Functions actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Step Functions API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Step Functions using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Step Functions API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateActivity with an AWS SDK

- Use CreateStateMachine with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteActivity with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteStateMachine with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeExecution with an AWS SDK
- Use DescribeStateMachine with an AWS SDK
- Use GetActivityTask with an AWS SDK
- Use ListActivities with an AWS SDK
- Use ListExecutions with an AWS SDK
- Use ListStateMachines with an AWS SDK
- Use SendTaskSuccess with an AWS SDK
- Use StartExecution with an AWS SDK

Use `CreateActivity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateActivity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions activity using the supplied name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityName">The name for the new Step Functions
activity.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the new activity.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateActivity(string activityName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateActivityAsync(new
CreateActivityRequest { Name = activityName });
        return response.ActivityArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String activityName)
{
        try {
            CreateActivityRequest activityRequest =
CreateActivityRequest.builder()
                .name(activityName)
                .build();

            CreateActivityResponse response =
sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest);
            return response.activityArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createActivity(activityName: String): String? {
    val activityRequest =
        CreateActivityRequest {
            name = activityName
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest)
        return response.activityArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name):
        """
        Create an activity.

        :param name: The name of the activity to create.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_activity(name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["activityArn"]
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateStateMachine` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `CreateStateMachine`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineName">Name for the new Step Functions state
    /// machine.</param>
    /// <param name="definition">A JSON string that defines the Step Functions
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateStateMachine(string stateMachineName, string
 definition, string roleArn)
    {
        var request = new CreateStateMachineRequest
        {
            Name = stateMachineName,
            Definition = definition,
            RoleArn = roleArn
        };

        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateStateMachineAsync(request);
        return response.StateMachineArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String roleARN,
String stateMachineName, String json) {
       try {
           CreateStateMachineRequest machineRequest =
CreateStateMachineRequest.builder()
               .definition(json)
               .name(stateMachineName)
               .roleArn(roleARN)
               .type(StateMachineType.STANDARD)
               .build();

           CreateStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest);
           return response.stateMachineArn();

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createMachine(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    stateMachineName: String?,
    jsonVal: String?,
): String? {
    val machineRequest =
        CreateStateMachineRequest {
            definition = jsonVal
            name = stateMachineName
            roleArn = roleARNVal
            type = StateMachineType.Standard
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest)
        return response.stateMachineArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name, definition, role_arn):
        """
        Creates a state machine with the specific definition. The state machine
 assumes
        the provided role before it starts a run.

        :param name: The name to give the state machine.
        :param definition: The Amazon States Language definition of the steps in
 the
                           the state machine.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that is
 assumed by
                         Step Functions when the state machine is run.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created state machine.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_state_machine(
                name=name, definition=definition, roleArn=role_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["stateMachineArn"]
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteActivity` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteActivity`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Machine activity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the activity.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteActivity(string activityArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteActivityAsync(new
DeleteActivityRequest { ActivityArn = activityArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String actArn) {
        try {
            DeleteActivityRequest activityRequest =
DeleteActivityRequest.builder()
                .activityArn(actArn)
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest);
            System.out.println("You have deleted " + actArn);

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteActivity(actArn: String?) {
```

```
    val activityRequest =
        DeleteActivityRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest)
        println("You have deleted $actArn")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def delete(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Delete an activity.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_activity(
```

```
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteStateMachine` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteStateMachine`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// state machine.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteStateMachine(string stateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteStateMachineAsync(new
DeleteStateMachineRequest
        { StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String stateMachineArn)
{
        try {
            DeleteStateMachineRequest deleteStateMachineRequest =
DeleteStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest);
            DescribeStateMachineRequest describeStateMachine =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            while (true) {
                DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(describeStateMachine);
                System.out.println("The state machine is not deleted yet. The
status is " + response.status());
```

```
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(stateMachineArn + " was successfully deleted.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val deleteStateMachineRequest =
        DeleteStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest)
        println("$stateMachineArnVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def delete(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Delete a state machine and all of its run data.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeExecution` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeExecution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions execution.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions execution.</param>
    /// <returns>The API response returned by the API.</returns>
    public async Task<DescribeExecutionResponse> DescribeExecutionAsync(string
executionArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeExecutionAsync(new
DescribeExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeExe(SfnClient sfnClient, String executionArn) {
       try {
           DescribeExecutionRequest executionRequest =
DescribeExecutionRequest.builder()
               .executionArn(executionArn)
               .build();

           String status = "";
           boolean hasSucceeded = false;
           while (!hasSucceeded) {
               DescribeExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest);
               status = response.statusAsString();
               if (status.compareTo("RUNNING") == 0) {
                   System.out.println("The state machine is still running, let's
wait for it to finish.");
                   Thread.sleep(2000);
               } else if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                   System.out.println("The Step Function workflow has
succeeded");
                   hasSucceeded = true;
               } else {
                   System.out.println("The Status is neither running or
succeeded");
               }
           }
           System.out.println("The Status is " + status);

       } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeExe(executionArnVal: String?) {
    val executionRequest =
        DescribeExecutionRequest {
            executionArn = executionArnVal
        }

    var status = ""
    var hasSucceeded = false
    while (!hasSucceeded) {
        SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
            val response = sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest)
            status = response.status.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Running") == 0) {
                println("The state machine is still running, let's wait for it to
 finish.")
                Thread.sleep(2000)
            } else if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                println("The Step Function workflow has succeeded")
                hasSucceeded = true
            } else {
                println("The Status is $status")
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Status is $status")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    def describe_run(self, run_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine run, such as its current status or final
output.

        :param run_arn: The ARN of the run to look up.
        :return: The retrieved run data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_execution(
                executionArn=run_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                run_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeStateMachine` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeStateMachine`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="StateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine to retrieve.</param>
    /// <returns>Information about the specified Step Functions state machine.</
returns>
    public async Task<DescribeStateMachineResponse>
 DescribeStateMachineAsync(string StateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeStateMachineAsync(new
 DescribeStateMachineRequest { StateMachineArn = StateMachineArn });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeStateMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String
stateMachineArn) {
       try {
           DescribeStateMachineRequest stateMachineRequest =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
               .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
               .build();

           DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest);
           System.out.println("The name of the State machine is " +
response.name());
           System.out.println("The status of the State machine is " +
response.status());
           System.out.println("The ARN value of the State machine is " +
response.stateMachineArn());
           System.out.println("The role ARN value is " + response.roleArn());

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeStateMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val stateMachineRequest =
        DescribeStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest)
        println("The name of the State machine is ${response.name}")
        println("The status of the State machine is ${response.status}")
        println("The ARN value of the State machine is
 ${response.stateMachineArn}")
        println("The role ARN value is ${response.roleArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def describe(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to look up.
        :return: The retrieved state machine data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetActivityTask` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `GetActivityTask`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a task with the specified Step Functions activity
    /// with the specified Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions activity.</param>
    /// <param name="workerName">The name of the Step Functions worker.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the Step Functions activity.</returns>
    public async Task<GetActivityTaskResponse> GetActivityTaskAsync(string
activityArn, string workerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.GetActivityTaskAsync(new
GetActivityTaskRequest
        { ActivityArn = activityArn, WorkerName = workerName });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static List<String> getActivityTask(SfnClient sfnClient, String
 actArn) {
        List<String> myList = new ArrayList<>();
        GetActivityTaskRequest getActivityTaskRequest =
 GetActivityTaskRequest.builder()
            .activityArn(actArn)
            .build();

        GetActivityTaskResponse response =
 sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest);
        myList.add(response.taskToken());
        myList.add(response.input());
        return myList;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getActivityTask(actArn: String?): List<String> {
    val myList: MutableList<String> = ArrayList()
    val getActivityTaskRequest =
        GetActivityTaskRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest)
        myList.add(response.taskToken.toString())
        myList.add(response.input.toString())
        return myList
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def get_task(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Gets task data for an activity. When a state machine is waiting for the
        specified activity, a response is returned with data from the state
 machine.
        When a state machine is not waiting, this call blocks for 60 seconds.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to get task data for.
        :return: The task data for the activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.get_activity_task(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get a task for activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListActivities` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListActivities`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List the Step Functions activities for the current account.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>A list of ActivityListItems.</returns>
public async Task<List<ActivityListItem>> ListActivitiesAsync()
{
    var request = new ListActivitiesRequest();
    var activities = new List<ActivityListItem>();

    do
```

```
        {
            var response = await
 _amazonStepFunctions.ListActivitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }

            activities.AddRange(response.Activities);
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        return activities;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListActivitiesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListActivitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ActivityListItem;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListActivities {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllActivites(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllActivites(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListActivitiesRequest activitiesRequest =
 ListActivitiesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListActivitiesResponse response =
 sfnClient.listActivities(activitiesRequest);
            List<ActivityListItem> items = response.activities();
            for (ActivityListItem item : items) {
                System.out.println("The activity ARN is " + item.activityArn());
                System.out.println("The activity name is " + item.name());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllActivites() {
    val activitiesRequest =
        ListActivitiesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listActivities(activitiesRequest)
        response.activities?.forEach { item ->
            println("The activity ARN is ${item.activityArn}")
            println("The activity name is ${item.name}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find an activity by name. This requires listing activities until one is
found
        with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the activity to search for.
        :return: If found, the ARN of the activity; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_activities")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for activity in page.get("activities", []):
                    if activity["name"] == name:
                        return activity["activityArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list activities. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListExecutions` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListExecutions`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about executions of a Step Functions
    /// state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of ExecutionListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ExecutionListItem>> ListExecutionsAsync(string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executions = new List<ExecutionListItem>();
        ListExecutionsResponse response;
        var request = new ListExecutionsRequest { StateMachineArn =
stateMachineArn };

        do
        {
            response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListExecutionsAsync(request);
            executions.AddRange(response.Executions);
            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return executions;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void getExeHistory(SfnClient sfnClient, String exeARN) {
        try {
            GetExecutionHistoryRequest historyRequest =
GetExecutionHistoryRequest.builder()
                    .executionArn(exeARN)
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            GetExecutionHistoryResponse historyResponse =
sfnClient.getExecutionHistory(historyRequest);
            List<HistoryEvent> events = historyResponse.events();
            for (HistoryEvent event : events) {
                System.out.println("The event type is " +
event.type().toString());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getExeHistory(exeARN: String?) {
    val historyRequest =
        GetExecutionHistoryRequest {
            executionArn = exeARN
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.getExecutionHistory(historyRequest)
        response.events?.forEach { event ->
            println("The event type is ${event.type}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Use `ListStateMachines` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListStateMachines`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of Step Functions state machines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of StateMachineListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<StateMachineListItem>> ListStateMachinesAsync()
    {
        var stateMachines = new List<StateMachineListItem>();
        var listStateMachinesPaginator =
            _amazonStepFunctions.Paginators.ListStateMachines(new
ListStateMachinesRequest());

        await foreach (var response in listStateMachinesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            stateMachines.AddRange(response.StateMachines);
        }

        return stateMachines;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.StateMachineListItem;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class ListStateMachines {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMachines(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMachines(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListStateMachinesResponse response = sfnClient.listStateMachines();
            List<StateMachineListItem> machines = response.stateMachines();
            for (StateMachineListItem machine : machines) {
```

```
                System.out.println("The name of the state machine is: " +
 machine.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN value is : " +
 machine.stateMachineArn());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest

/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

suspend fun main() {
    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Hello example.")
    println("Lets list up to ten of your state machines:")
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    listMachines()
}

suspend fun listMachines() {
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listStateMachines(ListStateMachinesRequest {})
        response.stateMachines?.forEach { machine ->
            println("The name of the state machine is ${machine.name}")
            println("The ARN value is ${machine.stateMachineArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Find a state machine by name by searching the list of state machines for the account.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def find(self, name):
        """
```

```
        Find a state machine by name. This requires listing the state machines
until
        one is found with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the state machine to search for.
        :return: The ARN of the state machine if found; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_state_machines")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for state_machine in page.get("stateMachines", []):
                    if state_machine["name"] == name:
                        return state_machine["stateMachineArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list state machines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use SendTaskSuccess with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `SendTaskSuccess`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Indicate that the Step Functions task, indicated by the
    /// task token, has completed successfully.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="taskToken">Identifies the task.</param>
    /// <param name="taskResponse">The response received from executing the
task.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SendTaskSuccessAsync(string taskToken, string
taskResponse)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.SendTaskSuccessAsync(new
SendTaskSuccessRequest
        { TaskToken = taskToken, Output = taskResponse });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void sendTaskSuccess(SfnClient sfnClient, String token, String
 json) {
        try {
            SendTaskSuccessRequest successRequest =
 SendTaskSuccessRequest.builder()
                .taskToken(token)
                .output(json)
                .build();

            sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest);

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun sendTaskSuccess(
    token: String?,
    json: String?,
) {
    val successRequest =
        SendTaskSuccessRequest {
            taskToken = token
            output = json
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest)
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def send_task_success(self, task_token, task_response):
        """
        Sends a success response to a waiting activity step. A state machine with
 an
        activity step waits for the activity to get task data and then respond
 with
        either success or failure before it resumes processing.

        :param task_token: The token associated with the task. This is included
 in the
                           response to the get_activity_task action and must be
 sent
                           without modification.
        :param task_response: The response data from the activity. This data is
                              received and processed by the state machine.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.stepfunctions_client.send_task_success(
                taskToken=task_token, output=task_response
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send task success. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartExecution` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartExecution`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start execution of an AWS Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionName">The name to use for the execution.</param>
    /// <param name="executionJson">The JSON string to pass for execution.</
param>
```

```
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Step Functions
    /// execution.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartExecutionAsync(string executionJson, string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executionRequest = new StartExecutionRequest
        {
            Input = executionJson,
            StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn
        };

        var response = await
_amazonStepFunctions.StartExecutionAsync(executionRequest);
        return response.ExecutionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String startWorkflow(SfnClient sfnClient, String
stateMachineArn, String jsonEx) {
        UUID uuid = UUID.randomUUID();
        String uuidValue = uuid.toString();
        try {
            StartExecutionRequest executionRequest =
StartExecutionRequest.builder()
                .input(jsonEx)
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .name(uuidValue)
```

```
                .build();

            StartExecutionResponse response =
 sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest);
            return response.executionArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SFNClient, StartExecutionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sfn";

/**
 * @param {{ sfnClient: SFNClient, stateMachineArn: string }} config
 */
export async function startExecution({ sfnClient, stateMachineArn }) {
  const response = await sfnClient.send(
    new StartExecutionCommand({
      stateMachineArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // Example response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
```

```
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '202a9309-c16a-454b-adeb-c4d19afe3bf2',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   executionArn: 'arn:aws:states:us-
east-1:000000000000:execution:MyStateMachine:aaaaaaaa-f787-49fb-
a20c-1b61c64eafe6',
  //   startDate: 2024-01-04T15:54:08.362Z
  // }
  return response;
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  startExecution({ sfnClient: new SFNClient({}), stateMachineArn: "ARN" });
}
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun startWorkflow(
    stateMachineArnVal: String?,
    jsonEx: String?,
): String? {
    val uuid = UUID.randomUUID()
    val uuidValue = uuid.toString()
    val executionRequest =
        StartExecutionRequest {
```

```
            input = jsonEx
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
            name = uuidValue
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest)
        return response.executionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def start(self, state_machine_arn, run_input):
        """
        Start a run of a state machine with a specified input. A run is also
 known
        as an "execution" in Step Functions.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to run.
        :param run_input: The input to the state machine, in JSON format.
```

```
        :return: The ARN of the run. This can be used to get information about
the run,
                 including its current status and final output.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.start_execution(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn, input=run_input
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["executionArn"]
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Step Functions using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Step Functions with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Step Functions or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create a messenger application with Step Functions
- Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions
- Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

Create a messenger application with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Code examples for AWS STS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Security Token Service with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **AWS STS User Guide** – More information about AWS STS.
- **AWS STS API Reference** – Details about all available AWS STS actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS STS using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS STS using AWS SDKs
    - Use AssumeRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity with a CLI
    - Use DecodeAuthorizationMessage with a CLI
    - Use GetFederationToken with a CLI
    - Use GetSessionToken with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for AWS STS using AWS SDKs
  - Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token with AWS STS using an AWS SDK
  - Construct a URL with AWS STS for federated users using an AWS SDK
  - Get a session token that requires an MFA token with AWS STS using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for AWS STS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Security Token Service with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS STS using AWS SDKs
  - Use AssumeRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity with a CLI
  - Use DecodeAuthorizationMessage with a CLI
  - Use GetFederationToken with a CLI
  - Use GetSessionToken with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for AWS STS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS STS actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the AWS STS API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for AWS STS using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Security Token Service API Reference.

Examples

- Use AssumeRole with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity with a CLI
- Use DecodeAuthorizationMessage with a CLI
- Use GetFederationToken with a CLI
- Use GetSessionToken with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AssumeRole` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssumeRole`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token
- Construct a URL for federated users

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace AssumeRoleExample
{
```

```
    class AssumeRole
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This example shows how to use the AWS Security Token
        /// Service (AWS STS) to assume an IAM role.
        ///
        /// NOTE: It is important that the role that will be assumed has a
        /// trust relationship with the account that will assume the role.
        ///
        /// Before you run the example, you need to create the role you want to
        /// assume and have it trust the IAM account that will assume that role.
        ///
        /// See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_create.html
        /// for help in working with roles.
        /// </summary>

        // A region property may be used if the profile or credentials loaded do
 not specify a region,
        // or to use a specific region.
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint REGION = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the SecurityToken client and then display the identity of
 the
            // default user.
            var roleArnToAssume = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
testAssumeRole";

            var client = new
 Amazon.SecurityToken.AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(REGION);

            // Get and display the information about the identity of the default
 user.
            var callerIdRequest = new GetCallerIdentityRequest();
            var caller = await client.GetCallerIdentityAsync(callerIdRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Original Caller: {caller.Arn}");

            // Create the request to use with the AssumeRoleAsync call.
            var assumeRoleReq = new AssumeRoleRequest()
            {
                DurationSeconds = 1600,
                RoleSessionName = "Session1",
```

```
                RoleArn = roleArnToAssume
            };

            var assumeRoleRes = await client.AssumeRoleAsync(assumeRoleReq);

            // Now create a new client based on the credentials of the caller
 assuming the role.
            var client2 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(credentials:
 assumeRoleRes.Credentials, REGION);

            // Get and display information about the caller that has assumed the
 defined role.
            var caller2 = await client2.GetCallerIdentityAsync(callerIdRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"AssumedRole Caller: {caller2.Arn}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Bash

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function sts_assume_role
#
# This function assumes a role in the AWS account and returns the temporary
#  credentials.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_session_name -- The name of the session.
#       -r role_arn -- The ARN of the role to assume.
#
# Returns:
#       [access_key_id, secret_access_key, session_token]
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
##############################################################################
function sts_assume_role() {
  local role_session_name role_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function sts_assume_role"
    echo "Assumes a role in the AWS account and returns the temporary
 credentials:"
    echo "  -n role_session_name -- The name of the session."
    echo "  -r role_arn -- The ARN of the role to assume."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts n:r:h option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_session_name=${OPTARG} ;;
      r) role_arn=${OPTARG} ;;
```

```
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  response=$(aws sts assume-role \
    --role-session-name "$role_session_name" \
    --role-arn "$role_arn" \
    --output text \
    --query "Credentials.[AccessKeyId, SecretAccessKey, SessionToken]")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::STS::assumeRole(const Aws::String &roleArn,
                             const Aws::String &roleSessionName,
                             const Aws::String &externalId,
                             Aws::Auth::AWSCredentials &credentials,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::STS::STSClient sts(clientConfig);
    Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleRequest sts_req;

    sts_req.SetRoleArn(roleArn);
    sts_req.SetRoleSessionName(roleSessionName);
    sts_req.SetExternalId(externalId);

    const Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleOutcome outcome = sts.AssumeRole(sts_req);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error assuming IAM role. " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Credentials successfully retrieved." << std::endl;
        const Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleResult result = outcome.GetResult();
        const Aws::STS::Model::Credentials &temp_credentials =
 result.GetCredentials();

        // Store temporary credentials in return argument.
        // Note: The credentials object returned by assumeRole differs
        // from the AWSCredentials object used in most situations.
        credentials.SetAWSAccessKeyId(temp_credentials.GetAccessKeyId());
        credentials.SetAWSSecretKey(temp_credentials.GetSecretAccessKey());
        credentials.SetSessionToken(temp_credentials.GetSessionToken());
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To assume a role

The following `assume-role` command retrieves a set of short-term credentials for the IAM role `s3-access-example`.

```
aws sts assume-role \
    --role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/xaccounts3access \
    --role-session-name s3-access-example
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssumedRoleUser": {
        "AssumedRoleId": "AROA3XFRBF535PLBIFPI4:s3-access-example",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:sts::123456789012:assumed-role/xaccounts3access/s3-
access-example"
    },
    "Credentials": {
        "SecretAccessKey": "9drTJvcXLB89EXAMPLELB8923FB892xMFI",
        "SessionToken": "AQoXdzELDDY//////////
wEaoAK1wvxJY12r2IrDFT2IvAzTCn3zHoZ7YNtpiQLF0MqZye/
qwjzP2iEXAMPLEbw/m3hsj8VBTkPORGvr9jM5sgP+w9IZWZnU+LWhmg
+a5fDi2oTGUYcdg9uexQ4mtCHIHfi4citgqZTgco40Yqr4lIlo4V2b2Dyauk0eYFNebHtYlFVgAUj
+7Indz3LU0aTWk1WKIjHmmMCIoTkyYp/k7kUG7moeEYKSitwQIi6Gjn+nyzM
+PtoA3685ixzv0R7i5rjQi0YE0lf1oeie3bDiNHncmzosRM6SFiPzSvp6h/32xQuZsjcypmwsPSDtTPYcs0+YN/8B
IcrxSpnWEXAMPLEXSDFTAQAM6Dl9zR0tXoybnlrZIwMLlMi1Kcgo5OytwU=",
        "Expiration": "2016-03-15T00:05:07Z",
        "AccessKeyId": "ASIAJEXAMPLEXEG2JICEA"
    }
}
```

The output of the command contains an access key, secret key, and session token that you can use to authenticate to AWS.

For AWS CLI use, you can set up a named profile associated with a role. When you use the profile, the AWS CLI will call assume-role and manage credentials for you. For more information, see Use an IAM role in the AWS CLI in the *AWS CLI User Guide*.

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.AssumeRoleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.StsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.AssumeRoleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.Credentials;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.ZoneId;
import java.time.format.DateTimeFormatter;
import java.time.format.FormatStyle;
import java.util.Locale;

/**
 * To make this code example work, create a Role that you want to assume.
 * Then define a Trust Relationship in the AWS Console. You can use this as an
 * example:
 *
 * {
 * "Version": "2012-10-17",
 * "Statement": [
 * {
 * "Effect": "Allow",
 * "Principal": {
 * "AWS": "<Specify the ARN of your IAM user you are using in this code
 * example>"
 * },
 * "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
 * }
 * ]
 * }
 *
 * For more information, see "Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing
```

```
 * Role" in the AWS Directory Service guide.
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class AssumeRole {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleArn> <roleSessionName>\s

                Where:
                    roleArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to
 assume (for example, rn:aws:iam::000008047983:role/s3role).\s
                    roleSessionName - An identifier for the assumed role session
 (for example, mysession).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String roleArn = args[0];
        String roleSessionName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        StsClient stsClient = StsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        assumeGivenRole(stsClient, roleArn, roleSessionName);
        stsClient.close();
    }

    public static void assumeGivenRole(StsClient stsClient, String roleArn,
 String roleSessionName) {
        try {
            AssumeRoleRequest roleRequest = AssumeRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
```

```
                    .roleSessionName(roleSessionName)
                    .build();

            AssumeRoleResponse roleResponse = stsClient.assumeRole(roleRequest);
            Credentials myCreds = roleResponse.credentials();

            // Display the time when the temp creds expire.
            Instant exTime = myCreds.expiration();
            String tokenInfo = myCreds.sessionToken();

            // Convert the Instant to readable date.
            DateTimeFormatter formatter =
 DateTimeFormatter.ofLocalizedDateTime(FormatStyle.SHORT)
                    .withLocale(Locale.US)
                    .withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

            formatter.format(exTime);
            System.out.println("The token " + tokenInfo + "  expires on " +
 exTime);

        } catch (StsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { STSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "us-east-1";
// Create an AWS STS service client object.
export const client = new STSClient({ region: REGION });
```

Assume the IAM role.

```
import { AssumeRoleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Returns a set of temporary security credentials that you can use to
    // access Amazon Web Services resources that you might not normally
    // have access to.
    const command = new AssumeRoleCommand({
      // The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to assume.
      RoleArn: "ROLE_ARN",
      // An identifier for the assumed role session.
      RoleSessionName: "session1",
      // The duration, in seconds, of the role session. The value specified
      // can range from 900 seconds (15 minutes) up to the maximum session
      // duration set for the role.
      DurationSeconds: 900,
    });
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
const AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

var roleToAssume = {
  RoleArn: "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/RoleName",
  RoleSessionName: "session1",
  DurationSeconds: 900,
};
var roleCreds;

// Create the STS service object
var sts = new AWS.STS({ apiVersion: "2011-06-15" });

//Assume Role
sts.assumeRole(roleToAssume, function (err, data) {
  if (err) console.log(err, err.stack);
  else {
    roleCreds = {
      accessKeyId: data.Credentials.AccessKeyId,
      secretAccessKey: data.Credentials.SecretAccessKey,
      sessionToken: data.Credentials.SessionToken,
    };
    stsGetCallerIdentity(roleCreds);
  }
});

//Get Arn of current identity
function stsGetCallerIdentity(creds) {
  var stsParams = { credentials: creds };
  // Create STS service object
  var sts = new AWS.STS(stsParams);
```

```
  sts.getCallerIdentity({}, function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log(err, err.stack);
    } else {
      console.log(data.Arn);
    }
  });
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns a set of temporary credentials (access key, secret key and session token) that can be used for one hour to access AWS resources that the requesting user might not normally have access to. The returned credentials have the permissions that are allowed by the access policy of the role being assumed and the policy that was supplied (you cannot use the supplied policy to grant permissions in excess of those defined by the access policy of the role being assumed).

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -Policy "...JSON policy..." -DurationInSeconds 3600
```

Example 2: Returns a set of temporary credentials, valid for one hour, that have the same permissions that are defined in the access policy of the role being assumed.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -DurationInSeconds 3600
```

Example 3: Returns a set of temporary credentials supplying the serial number and generated token from an MFA associated with the user credentials used to execute the cmdlet.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -DurationInSeconds 3600 -SerialNumber "GAHT12345678" -TokenCode "123456"
```

Example 4: Returns a set of temporary credentials that have assumed a role defined in a customer account. For each role that the third party can assume, the customer account must create a role using an identifier that must be passed in the -ExternalId parameter each time the role is assumed.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ExternalId "ABC123"
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a set of temporary credentials (access key, secret key and session token) that can be used for one hour to access AWS resources that the requesting user might not normally have access to. The returned credentials have the permissions that are allowed by the access policy of the role being assumed and the policy that was supplied (you cannot use the supplied policy to grant permissions in excess of those defined by the access policy of the role being assumed).

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -Policy "...JSON policy..." -DurationInSeconds 3600
```

Example 2: Returns a set of temporary credentials, valid for one hour, that have the same permissions that are defined in the access policy of the role being assumed.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -DurationInSeconds 3600
```

Example 3: Returns a set of temporary credentials supplying the serial number and generated token from an MFA associated with the user credentials used to execute the cmdlet.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -DurationInSeconds 3600 -SerialNumber "GAHT12345678" -TokenCode "123456"
```

Example 4: Returns a set of temporary credentials that have assumed a role defined in a customer account. For each role that the third party can assume, the customer account must create a role using an identifier that must be passed in the -ExternalId parameter each time the role is assumed.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo"
 -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ExternalId "ABC123"
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token and use temporary credentials to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.

```
def list_buckets_from_assumed_role_with_mfa(
    assume_role_arn, session_name, mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp, sts_client
):
    """
    Assumes a role from another account and uses the temporary credentials from
    that role to list the Amazon S3 buckets that are owned by the other account.
    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    The assumed role must grant permission to list the buckets in the other
 account.

    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that
                            grants access to list the other account's buckets.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual
 MFA
                              device, this is an ARN.
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the
 role.
    """
    response = sts_client.assume_role(
        RoleArn=assume_role_arn,
```

```
        RoleSessionName=session_name,
        SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number,
        TokenCode=mfa_totp,
    )
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
    print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Listing buckets for the assumed role's account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Creates an AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) client with specified
credentials.
 # This is separated into a factory function so that it can be mocked for unit
testing.
 #
 # @param key_id [String] The ID of the access key used by the STS client.
 # @param key_secret [String] The secret part of the access key used by the STS
client.
 def create_sts_client(key_id, key_secret)
```

```
    Aws::STS::Client.new(access_key_id: key_id, secret_access_key: key_secret)
  end

  # Gets temporary credentials that can be used to assume a role.
  #
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role that is assumed when these
 credentials
  #                           are used.
  # @param sts_client [AWS::STS::Client] An AWS STS client.
  # @return [Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials] The credentials that can be used to
 assume the role.
  def assume_role(role_arn, sts_client)
    credentials = Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials.new(
      client: sts_client,
      role_arn: role_arn,
      role_session_name: 'create-use-assume-role-scenario'
    )
    @logger.info("Assumed role '#{role_arn}', got temporary credentials.")
    credentials
  end
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn assume_role(config: &SdkConfig, role_name: String, session_name:
 Option<String>) {
    let provider = aws_config::sts::AssumeRoleProvider::builder(role_name)
        .session_name(session_name.unwrap_or("rust_sdk_example_session".into()))
        .configure(config)
        .build()
        .await;
```

```
    let local_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(provider)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&local_config);
    let req = client.get_caller_identity();
    let resp = req.send().await;
    match resp {
        Ok(e) => {
            println!("UserID :               {}",
 e.user_id().unwrap_or_default());
            println!("Account:               {}",
 e.account().unwrap_or_default());
            println!("Arn    :               {}", e.arn().unwrap_or_default());
        }
        Err(e) => println!("{:?}", e),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSTS

    public func assumeRole(role: IAMClientTypes.Role, sessionName: String)
        async throws -> STSClientTypes.Credentials
    {
        let input = AssumeRoleInput(
            roleArn: role.arn,
            roleSessionName: sessionName
        )
        do {
```

```
            let output = try await stsClient.assumeRole(input: input)

            guard let credentials = output.credentials else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.authError
            }

            return credentials
        } catch {
            print("Error assuming role: ", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Use `AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get short-term credentials for a role authenticated with Web Identity (OAuth 2."0)

The following `assume-role-with-web-identity` command retrieves a set of short-term credentials for the IAM role `app1`. The request is authenticated by using the web identity token supplied by the specified web identity provider. Two additional policies are applied to the session to further restrict what the user can do. The returned credentials expire one hour after they are generated.

```
aws sts assume-role-with-web-identity \
    --duration-seconds 3600 \
    --role-session-name "app1" \
    --provider-id "www.amazon.com" \
    --policy-arns "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
q=webidentitydemopolicy1","arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
webidentitydemopolicy2" \
    --role-arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/FederatedWebIdentityRole \
    --web-identity-token "Atza
%7CIQEBLjAsAhRFiXuWpUXuRvQ9PZL3GMFcYevydwIUFAHZwXZXXXXXXXXJnrulxKDHwy87oGKPznh0D6bEQZTSCz
```

```
CrKqjG7nPBjNIL016GGvuS5gSvPRUxWES3VYfm1wl7WTI7jn-Pcb6M-
buCgHhFOzTQxod27L9CqnOLio7N3gZAGpsp6n1-
AJBOCJckcyXe2c6uD0srOJeZlKUm2eTDVMf8IehDVI0r1QOnTV6KzzAI3OY87Vd_cVMQ"
```

Output:

```
{
    "SubjectFromWebIdentityToken": "amzn1.account.AF6RHO7KZU5XRVQJGXK6HB56KR2A",
    "Audience": "client.5498841531868486423.1548@apps.example.com",
    "AssumedRoleUser": {
        "Arn": "arn:aws:sts::123456789012:assumed-role/FederatedWebIdentityRole/
app1",
        "AssumedRoleId": "AROACLKWSDQRAOEXAMPLE:app1"
    },
    "Credentials": {
        "AccessKeyId": "AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "SecretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYzEXAMPLEKEY",
        "SessionToken": "AQoEXAMPLEH4aoAH0gNCAPyJxz4BlCFFxWNE1OPTgk5TthT
+FvwqnKwRcOIfrRh3c/LTo6UDdyJwOOvEVPvLXCrrrUtdnniCEXAMPLE/
IvU1dYUg2RVAJBanLiHb4IgRmpRV3zrkuWJOgQs8IZZaIv2BXIa2R4OlgkBN9bkUDNCJiBeb/
AXlzBBko7b15fjrBs2+cTQtpZ3CYWFXG8C5zqx37wnOE49mRl/+OtkIKGO7fAE",
        "Expiration": "2020-05-19T18:06:10+00:00"
    },
    "Provider": "www.amazon.com"
}
```

For more information, see Requesting Temporary Security Credentials in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns a temporary set of credentials, valid for one hour, for a user who has been authenticated with the Login with Amazon identity provider. The credentials assume the access policy associated with the role identified by the role ARN. Optionally, you can pass a JSON policy to the -Policy parameter that further refine the access permissions (you cannot grant more permissions than are available in the permissions associated with the role). The value supplied to the -WebIdentityToken is the unique user identifier that was returned by the identity provider.

```
Use-STSWebIdentityRole -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProviderId "www.amazon.com"
 -RoleSessionName "app1" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
FederatedWebIdentityRole" -WebIdentityToken "Atza...DVI0r1"
```

- For API details, see AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a temporary set of credentials, valid for one hour, for a user who has been authenticated with the Login with Amazon identity provider. The credentials assume the access policy associated with the role identified by the role ARN. Optionally, you can pass a JSON policy to the -Policy parameter that further refine the access permissions (you cannot grant more permissions than are available in the permissions associated with the role). The value supplied to the -WebIdentityToken is the unique user identifier that was returned by the identity provider.

```
Use-STSWebIdentityRole -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProviderId "www.amazon.com"
 -RoleSessionName "app1" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
FederatedWebIdentityRole" -WebIdentityToken "Atza...DVI0r1"
```

- For API details, see AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DecodeAuthorizationMessage` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DecodeAuthorizationMessage`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To decode an encoded authorization message returned in response to a request

The following `decode-authorization-message` example decodes additional information about the authorization status of a request from an encoded message returned in response to an Amazon Web Services request.

```
aws sts decode-authorization-message \
    --encoded-message EXAMPLEWodyRNrtlQARDip-
eTA6i6DrlUhHhPQrLWB_lAbl5pAKxl9mPDLexYcGBreyIKQC1BGBIpBKr3dFDkwqeO7e2NMk5j_hmzAiChJN-8oy3
```

```
0jau7BMjOTWwOtHPhV_Zaz87yENdipr745EjQwRd5LaoL3vN8_5ZfA9UiBMKDgVh1gjqZJFUiQoubv78V1RbHNYnK
pOu3FZjwYStfvTb3GHs3-6rLribGO9jZOktkfE6vqxlFzLyeDr4P2ihC1wty9tArCvvGzIAUNmARQJ2VVWPxioqgo
JWP5pwe_mAyqh0NLw-r1S56YC_90onj9A80sNrHlI-
tIiNd7tgNTYzDuPQYD2FMDBnp82V9eVmYGtPp5NIeSpuf3fOHanFuBZgENxZQZ2dlH3xJGMTtYayzZrRXjiq_SfX9
FaoPIb8LmmKVBLpIB0iFhU9sEHPqKHVPi6jdxXqKaZaFGvYVmVOiuQdNQKuyk0p067POFrZECLjjOtNPBOZCcuEKE
```

Output:

```
{
    "DecodedMessage": "{\"allowed\":false,\"explicitDeny\":true,
\"matchedStatements\":{\"items\":[{\"statementId\":\"VisualEditor0\",\"effect
\":\"DENY\",\"principals\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"AROA123456789EXAMPLE
\"}]},\"principalGroups\":{\"items\":[]},\"actions\":{\"items\":[{\"value
\":\"ec2:RunInstances\"}]},\"resources\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"*
\"}]},\"conditions\":{\"items\":[]}}]},\"failures\":{\"items\":[]},
\"context\":{\"principal\":{\"id\":\"AROA123456789EXAMPLE:Ana\",\"arn
\":\"arn:aws:sts::111122223333:assumed-role/Developer/Ana\"},\"action\":
\"RunInstances\",\"resource\":\"arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:111122223333:instance/*
\",\"conditions\":{\"items\":[{\"key\":\"ec2:MetadataHttpPutResponseHopLimit\",
\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"2\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:InstanceMarketType
\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"on-demand\"}]}},{\"key\":\"aws:Resource
\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"instance/*\"}]}},{\"key\":\"aws:Account
\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"111122223333\"}]}},{\"key\":
\"ec2:AvailabilityZone\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"us-east-1f\"}]}},
{\"key\":\"ec2:ebsOptimized\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":\"false\"}]}},
{\"key\":\"ec2:IsLaunchTemplateResource\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value\":
\"false\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:InstanceType\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value
\":\"t2.micro\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:RootDeviceType\",\"values\":{\"items\":
[{\"value\":\"ebs\"}]}},{\"key\":\"aws:Region\",\"values\":{\"items\":[{\"value
\":\"us-east-1\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:MetadataHttpEndpoint\",\"values\":{\"items
\":[{\"value\":\"enabled\"}]}},{\"key\":\"aws:Service\",\"values\":{\"items
\":[{\"value\":\"ec2\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:InstanceID\",\"values\":{\"items\":
[{\"value\":\"*\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:MetadataHttpTokens\",\"values\":{\"items
\":[{\"value\":\"required\"}]}},{\"key\":\"aws:Type\",\"values\":{\"items
\":[{\"value\":\"instance\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:Tenancy\",\"values\":{\"items
\":[{\"value\":\"default\"}]}},{\"key\":\"ec2:Region\",\"values\":{\"items
\":[{\"value\":\"us-east-1\"}]}},{\"key\":\"aws:ARN\",\"values\":{\"items\":
[{\"value\":\"arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:111122223333:instance/*\"}]}}]}}}"
}
```

For more information, see Policy evaluation logic in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see DecodeAuthorizationMessage in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Decodes the additional information contained in the supplied encoded message content that was returned in response to a request. The additional information is encoded because details of the authorization status can constitute privileged information that the user who requested the action should not see.

```
Convert-STSAuthorizationMessage -EncodedMessage "...encoded message..."
```

- For API details, see DecodeAuthorizationMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Decodes the additional information contained in the supplied encoded message content that was returned in response to a request. The additional information is encoded because details of the authorization status can constitute privileged information that the user who requested the action should not see.

```
Convert-STSAuthorizationMessage -EncodedMessage "...encoded message..."
```

- For API details, see DecodeAuthorizationMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetFederationToken` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetFederationToken`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To return a set of temporary security credentials using IAM user access key credentials

The following `get-federation-token` example returns a set of temporary security credentials (consisting of an access key ID, a secret access key, and a security token) for a user. You must call the `GetFederationToken` operation using the long-term security credentials of an IAM user.

```
aws sts get-federation-token \
    --name Bob \
    --policy file://myfile.json \
    --policy-arns arn=arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess \
    --duration-seconds 900
```

Contents of `myfile.json`:

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "ec2:Describe*",
            "Resource": "*"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "elasticloadbalancing:Describe*",
            "Resource": "*"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "cloudwatch:ListMetrics",
                "cloudwatch:GetMetricStatistics",
                "cloudwatch:Describe*"
            ],
            "Resource": "*"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "autoscaling:Describe*",
            "Resource": "*"
        }
    ]
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "Credentials": {
```

```
        "AccessKeyId": "ASIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "SecretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY",
        "SessionToken": "EXAMPLEpZ2luX2VjEGoaCXVzLXdlc3QtMiJIMEYCIQC/
W9pL5ArQyDD5JwFL3/h5+WGopQ24GEXweNctwhi9sgIhAMkg
+MZE35iWM8s4r5Lr25f9rSTVPFH98G42QQunWMTfKq0DCOP/////////
wEQAxoMNDUyOTI1MTcwNTA3Igxuy3AOpuuoLsk3MJwqgQPg8QOd9HuoClUxq26wnc/nm
+eZLjHDyGf2KUAHK2DuaS/nrGSEXAMPLE",
        "Expiration": "2023-12-20T02:06:07+00:00"
    },
    "FederatedUser": {
        "FederatedUserId": "111122223333:Bob",
        "Arn": "arn:aws:sts::111122223333:federated-user/Bob"
    },
    "PackedPolicySize": 36
}
```

For more information, see Requesting Temporary Security Credentials in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetFederationToken in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Requests a federated token valid for one hour using "Bob" as the name of the federated user. This name can be used to reference the federated user name in a resource-based policy (such as an Amazon S3 bucket policy). The supplied IAM policy, in JSON format, is used to scope down the permissions that are available to the IAM user. The supplied policy cannot grant more permissions than those granted to the requesting user, with the final permissions for the federated user being the most restrictive set based on the intersection of the passed policy and the IAM user policy.

```
Get-STSFederationToken -Name "Bob" -Policy "...JSON policy..." -DurationInSeconds
 3600
```

- For API details, see GetFederationToken in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Requests a federated token valid for one hour using "Bob" as the name of the federated user. This name can be used to reference the federated user name in a

resource-based policy (such as an Amazon S3 bucket policy). The supplied IAM policy, in JSON format, is used to scope down the permissions that are available to the IAM user. The supplied policy cannot grant more permissions than those granted to the requesting user, with the final permissions for the federated user being the most restrictive set based on the intersection of the passed policy and the IAM user policy.

```
Get-STSFederationToken -Name "Bob" -Policy "...JSON policy..." -DurationInSeconds
 3600
```

- For API details, see GetFederationToken in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetSessionToken` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetSessionToken`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get a session token that requires an MFA token

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a set of short term credentials for an IAM identity

The following `get-session-token` command retrieves a set of short-term credentials for the IAM identity making the call. The resulting credentials can be used for requests where multi-factor authentication (MFA) is required by policy. The credentials expire 15 minutes after they are generated.

```
aws sts get-session-token \
    --duration-seconds 900 \
    --serial-number "YourMFADeviceSerialNumber" \
    --token-code 123456
```

Output:

```
{
    "Credentials": {
```

```
        "AccessKeyId": "ASIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE",
        "SecretAccessKey": "wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYzEXAMPLEKEY",
        "SessionToken": "AQoEXAMPLEH4aoAH0gNCAPyJxz4BlCFFxWNE1OPTgk5TthT
+FvwqnKwRcOIfrRh3c/LTo6UDdyJwOOvEVPvLXCrrrUtdnniCEXAMPLE/
IvU1dYUg2RVAJBanLiHb4IgRmpRV3zrkuWJOgQs8IZZaIv2BXIa2R4OlgkBN9bkUDNCJiBeb/
AXlzBBko7b15fjrBs2+cTQtpZ3CYWFXG8C5zqx37wnOE49mRl/+OtkIKGO7fAE",
        "Expiration": "2020-05-19T18:06:10+00:00"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Requesting Temporary Security Credentials in the *AWS IAM User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for a set period of time. The credentials used to request temporary credentials are inferred from the current shell defaults. To specify other credentials, use the -ProfileName or -AccessKey/-SecretKey parameters.

```
Get-STSSessionToken
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                              Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                         SessionToken
-----------                              ----------
 ---------------                         ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                       2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...               SamPleTokeN.....
```

Example 2: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for one hour. The credentials used to make the request are obtained from the specified profile.

```
Get-STSSessionToken -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProfileName myprofile
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                             Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                        SessionToken
-----------                             ----------
 ---------------                        ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                      2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...              SamPleTokeN.....
```

Example 3: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for one hour using the identification number of the MFA device associated with the account whose credentials are specified in the profile 'myprofilename' and the value provided by the device.

```
Get-STSSessionToken -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProfileName myprofile -SerialNumber
 YourMFADeviceSerialNumber -TokenCode 123456
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                             Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                        SessionToken
-----------                             ----------
 ---------------                        ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                      2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...              SamPleTokeN.....
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for a set period of time. The credentials used to request temporary credentials are inferred from the current shell defaults. To specify other credentials, use the -ProfileName or -AccessKey/-SecretKey parameters.

```
Get-STSSessionToken
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                             Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                        SessionToken
```

```
-----------                                 ----------
 ---------------                            ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                          2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...                  SamPleTokeN.....
```

Example 2: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for one hour. The credentials used to make the request are obtained from the specified profile.

```
Get-STSSessionToken -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProfileName myprofile
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                                 Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                            SessionToken
-----------                                 ----------
 ---------------                            ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                          2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...                  SamPleTokeN.....
```

Example 3: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for one hour using the identification number of the MFA device associated with the account whose credentials are specified in the profile 'myprofilename' and the value provided by the device.

```
Get-STSSessionToken -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProfileName myprofile -SerialNumber
 YourMFADeviceSerialNumber -TokenCode 123456
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                                 Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                            SessionToken
-----------                                 ----------
 ---------------                            ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                          2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...                  SamPleTokeN.....
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a session token by passing an MFA token and use it to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.

```
def list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp,
 sts_client):
    """
    Gets a session token with MFA credentials and uses the temporary session
    credentials to list Amazon S3 buckets.

    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual
 MFA
                              device, this is an Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the
 role.
    """
    if mfa_serial_number is not None:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token(
            SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number, TokenCode=mfa_totp
        )
    else:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token()
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )
```

```
    print(f"Buckets for the account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for AWS STS using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in AWS STS with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within AWS STS or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token with AWS STS using an AWS SDK
- Construct a URL with AWS STS for federated users using an AWS SDK
- Get a session token that requires an MFA token with AWS STS using an AWS SDK

Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token with AWS STS using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to assume a role that requires an MFA token.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create an IAM role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets.

- Create an IAM user that has permission to assume the role only when MFA credentials are provided.
- Register an MFA device for the user.
- Assume the role and use temporary credentials to list S3 buckets.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user, register an MFA device, and create a role that grants permission to list S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role.

```
def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a new user with no permissions.
    Creates a new virtual MFA device.
    Displays the QR code to seed the device.
    Asks for two codes from the MFA device.
    Registers the MFA device for the user.
    Creates an access key pair for the user.
    Creates a role with a policy that lets the user assume the role and requires
 MFA.
    Creates a policy that allows listing Amazon S3 buckets.
    Attaches the policy to the role.
    Creates an inline policy for the user that lets the user assume the role.

    For demonstration purposes, the user is created in the same account as the
 role,
    but in practice the user would likely be from another account.

    Any MFA device that can scan a QR code will work with this demonstration.
    Common choices are mobile apps like LastPass Authenticator,
    Microsoft Authenticator, or Google Authenticator.
```

```
    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
resource
                         that has permissions to create users, roles, and
policies
                         in the account.
    :return: The newly created user, user key, virtual MFA device, and role.
    """
    user = iam_resource.create_user(UserName=unique_name("user"))
    print(f"Created user {user.name}.")

    virtual_mfa_device = iam_resource.create_virtual_mfa_device(
        VirtualMFADeviceName=unique_name("mfa")
    )
    print(f"Created virtual MFA device {virtual_mfa_device.serial_number}")

    print(
        f"Showing the QR code for the device. Scan this in the MFA app of your "
        f"choice."
    )
    with open("qr.png", "wb") as qr_file:
        qr_file.write(virtual_mfa_device.qr_code_png)
    webbrowser.open(qr_file.name)

    print(f"Enter two consecutive code from your MFA device.")
    mfa_code_1 = input("Enter the first code: ")
    mfa_code_2 = input("Enter the second code: ")
    user.enable_mfa(
        SerialNumber=virtual_mfa_device.serial_number,
        AuthenticationCode1=mfa_code_1,
        AuthenticationCode2=mfa_code_2,
    )
    os.remove(qr_file.name)
    print(f"MFA device is registered with the user.")

    user_key = user.create_access_key_pair()
    print(f"Created access key pair for user.")

    print(f"Wait for user to be ready.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    role = iam_resource.create_role(
        RoleName=unique_name("role"),
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
```

```
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {"AWS": user.arn},
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                        "Condition": {"Bool": {"aws:MultiFactorAuthPresent":
True}},
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    print(f"Created role {role.name} that requires MFA.")

    policy = iam_resource.create_policy(
        PolicyName=unique_name("policy"),
        PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                        "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    role.attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy.arn)
    print(f"Created policy {policy.policy_name} and attached it to the role.")

    user.create_policy(
        PolicyName=unique_name("user-policy"),
        PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                        "Resource": role.arn,
                    }
```

```
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    print(
        f"Created an inline policy for {user.name} that lets the user assume "
        f"the role."
    )

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.",
end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device, role
```

Show that assuming the role without an MFA token is not allowed.

```
def try_to_assume_role_without_mfa(assume_role_arn, session_name, sts_client):
    """
    Shows that attempting to assume the role without sending MFA credentials
results
    in an AccessDenied error.

    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to assume.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the
role.
    """
    print(f"Trying to assume the role without sending MFA credentials...")
    try:
        sts_client.assume_role(RoleArn=assume_role_arn,
RoleSessionName=session_name)
        raise RuntimeError("Expected AccessDenied error.")
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
            print("Got AccessDenied.")
        else:
            raise
```

Assume the role that grants permission to list S3 buckets, passing the required MFA token, and show that buckets can be listed.

```
def list_buckets_from_assumed_role_with_mfa(
    assume_role_arn, session_name, mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp, sts_client
):
    """
    Assumes a role from another account and uses the temporary credentials from
    that role to list the Amazon S3 buckets that are owned by the other account.
    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    The assumed role must grant permission to list the buckets in the other
 account.

    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that
                            grants access to list the other account's buckets.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual
 MFA
                              device, this is an ARN.
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the
 role.
    """
    response = sts_client.assume_role(
        RoleArn=assume_role_arn,
        RoleSessionName=session_name,
        SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number,
        TokenCode=mfa_totp,
    )
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
    print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Listing buckets for the assumed role's account:")
```

```
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

Destroy the resources created for the demo.

```
def teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device, role):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.

    :param user: The demo user.
    :param role: The demo role.
    """
    for attached in role.attached_policies.all():
        policy_name = attached.policy_name
        role.detach_policy(PolicyArn=attached.arn)
        attached.delete()
        print(f"Detached and deleted {policy_name}.")
    role.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
    for user_pol in user.policies.all():
        user_pol.delete()
        print("Deleted inline user policy.")
    for key in user.access_keys.all():
        key.delete()
        print("Deleted user's access key.")
    for mfa in user.mfa_devices.all():
        mfa.disassociate()
    virtual_mfa_device.delete()
    user.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {user.name}.")
```

Run this scenario by using the previously defined functions.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
```

```
        f"Welcome to the AWS Security Token Service assume role demo, "
        f"starring multi-factor authentication (MFA)!"
    )
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device, role = setup(iam_resource)
    print(f"Created {user.name} and {role.name}.")
    try:
        sts_client = boto3.client(
            "sts", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id,
aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
        )
        try_to_assume_role_without_mfa(role.arn, "demo-sts-session", sts_client)
        mfa_totp = input("Enter the code from your registered MFA device: ")
        list_buckets_from_assumed_role_with_mfa(
            role.arn,
            "demo-sts-session",
            virtual_mfa_device.serial_number,
            mfa_totp,
            sts_client,
        )
    finally:
        teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device, role)
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Construct a URL with AWS STS for federated users using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role that grants read-only access to the current account's Amazon S3 resources.
- Get a security token from the AWS federation endpoint.
- Construct a URL that can be used to access the console with federated credentials.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a role that grants read-only access to the current account's S3 resources.

```
def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a role that can be assumed by the current user.
    Attaches a policy that allows only Amazon S3 read-only access.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 instance
                         that has the permission to create a role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    role = iam_resource.create_role(
        RoleName=unique_name("role"),
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {"AWS": iam_resource.CurrentUser().arn},
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    role.attach_policy(PolicyArn="arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess")
    print(f"Created role {role.name}.")

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.",
 end="")
```

```
    progress_bar(10)

    return role
```

Get a security token from the AWS federation endpoint and construct a URL that can be used to access the console with federated credentials.

```
def construct_federated_url(assume_role_arn, session_name, issuer, sts_client):
    """
    Constructs a URL that gives federated users direct access to the AWS
 Management
    Console.

    1. Acquires temporary credentials from AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS)
 that
       can be used to assume a role with limited permissions.
    2. Uses the temporary credentials to request a sign-in token from the
       AWS federation endpoint.
    3. Builds a URL that can be used in a browser to navigate to the AWS
 federation
       endpoint, includes the sign-in token for authentication, and redirects to
       the AWS Management Console with permissions defined by the role that was
       specified in step 1.

    :param assume_role_arn: The role that specifies the permissions that are
 granted.
                            The current user must have permission to assume the
 role.
    :param session_name: The name for the STS session.
    :param issuer: The organization that issues the URL.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that can assume the role.
    :return: The federated URL.
    """
    response = sts_client.assume_role(
        RoleArn=assume_role_arn, RoleSessionName=session_name
    )
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
    print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")

    session_data = {
```

```
        "sessionId": temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        "sessionKey": temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        "sessionToken": temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    }
    aws_federated_signin_endpoint = "https://signin.aws.amazon.com/federation"

    # Make a request to the AWS federation endpoint to get a sign-in token.
    # The requests.get function URL-encodes the parameters and builds the query
 string
    # before making the request.
    response = requests.get(
        aws_federated_signin_endpoint,
        params={
            "Action": "getSigninToken",
            "SessionDuration": str(datetime.timedelta(hours=12).seconds),
            "Session": json.dumps(session_data),
        },
    )
    signin_token = json.loads(response.text)
    print(f"Got a sign-in token from the AWS sign-in federation endpoint.")

    # Make a federated URL that can be used to sign into the AWS Management
 Console.
    query_string = urllib.parse.urlencode(
        {
            "Action": "login",
            "Issuer": issuer,
            "Destination": "https://console.aws.amazon.com/",
            "SigninToken": signin_token["SigninToken"],
        }
    )
    federated_url = f"{aws_federated_signin_endpoint}?{query_string}"
    return federated_url
```

Destroy the resources created for the demo.

```
def teardown(role):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.
```

```
    :param role: The demo role.
    """
    for attached in role.attached_policies.all():
        role.detach_policy(PolicyArn=attached.arn)
        print(f"Detached {attached.policy_name}.")
    role.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
```

Run this scenario by using the previously defined functions.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(f"Welcome to the AWS Security Token Service federated URL demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    role = setup(iam_resource)
    sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
    try:
        federated_url = construct_federated_url(
            role.arn, "AssumeRoleDemoSession", "example.org", sts_client
        )
        print(
            "Constructed a federated URL that can be used to connect to the "
            "AWS Management Console with role-defined permissions:"
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        print(federated_url)
        print("-" * 88)
        _ = input(
            "Copy and paste the above URL into a browser to open the AWS "
            "Management Console with limited permissions. When done, press "
            "Enter to clean up and complete this demo."
        )
    finally:
        teardown(role)
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get a session token that requires an MFA token with AWS STS using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to get a session token that requires an MFA token.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create an IAM role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets.
- Create an IAM user that has permission to assume the role only when MFA credentials are provided.
- Register an MFA device for the user.
- Provide MFA credentials to get a session token and use temporary credentials to list S3 buckets.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user, register an MFA device, and create a role that grants permission to let the user list S3 buckets only when MFA credentials are used.

```
def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a new user with no permissions.
    Creates a new virtual multi-factor authentication (MFA) device.
    Displays the QR code to seed the device.
    Asks for two codes from the MFA device.
```

```
    Registers the MFA device for the user.
    Creates an access key pair for the user.
    Creates an inline policy for the user that lets the user list Amazon S3
buckets,
    but only when MFA credentials are used.

    Any MFA device that can scan a QR code will work with this demonstration.
    Common choices are mobile apps like LastPass Authenticator,
    Microsoft Authenticator, or Google Authenticator.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
resource
                         that has permissions to create users, MFA devices, and
                         policies in the account.
    :return: The newly created user, user key, and virtual MFA device.
    """
    user = iam_resource.create_user(UserName=unique_name("user"))
    print(f"Created user {user.name}.")

    virtual_mfa_device = iam_resource.create_virtual_mfa_device(
        VirtualMFADeviceName=unique_name("mfa")
    )
    print(f"Created virtual MFA device {virtual_mfa_device.serial_number}")

    print(
        f"Showing the QR code for the device. Scan this in the MFA app of your "
        f"choice."
    )
    with open("qr.png", "wb") as qr_file:
        qr_file.write(virtual_mfa_device.qr_code_png)
    webbrowser.open(qr_file.name)

    print(f"Enter two consecutive code from your MFA device.")
    mfa_code_1 = input("Enter the first code: ")
    mfa_code_2 = input("Enter the second code: ")
    user.enable_mfa(
        SerialNumber=virtual_mfa_device.serial_number,
        AuthenticationCode1=mfa_code_1,
        AuthenticationCode2=mfa_code_2,
    )
    os.remove(qr_file.name)
    print(f"MFA device is registered with the user.")

    user_key = user.create_access_key_pair()
```

```
    print(f"Created access key pair for user.")

    print(f"Wait for user to be ready.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    user.create_policy(
        PolicyName=unique_name("user-policy"),
        PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                        "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
                        "Condition": {"Bool": {"aws:MultiFactorAuthPresent":
 True}},
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    print(
        f"Created an inline policy for {user.name} that lets the user list
 buckets, "
        f"but only when MFA credentials are present."
    )

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.",
 end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device
```

Get temporary session credentials by passing an MFA token, and use the credentials to list S3 buckets for the account.

```
def list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp,
 sts_client):
    """
```

```
    Gets a session token with MFA credentials and uses the temporary session
    credentials to list Amazon S3 buckets.

    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual
 MFA
                              device, this is an Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the
 role.
    """
    if mfa_serial_number is not None:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token(
            SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number, TokenCode=mfa_totp
        )
    else:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token()
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Buckets for the account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

Destroy the resources created for the demo.

```
def teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.

    :param user: The demo user.
    :param role: The demo MFA device.
    """
```

```
    for user_pol in user.policies.all():
        user_pol.delete()
        print("Deleted inline user policy.")
    for key in user.access_keys.all():
        key.delete()
        print("Deleted user's access key.")
    for mfa in user.mfa_devices.all():
        mfa.disassociate()
    virtual_mfa_device.delete()
    user.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {user.name}.")
```

Run this scenario by using the previously defined functions.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        f"Welcome to the AWS Security Token Service assume role demo, "
        f"starring multi-factor authentication (MFA)!"
    )
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device = setup(iam_resource)
    try:
        sts_client = boto3.client(
            "sts", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id,
 aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
        )
        try:
            print("Listing buckets without specifying MFA credentials.")
            list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(None, None, sts_client)
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
                print("Got expected AccessDenied error.")
        mfa_totp = input("Enter the code from your registered MFA device: ")
        list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(
            virtual_mfa_device.serial_number, mfa_totp, sts_client
        )
    finally:
```

```
        teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device)
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Support using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Support with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Support User Guide** – More information about Support.
- **Support API Reference** – Details about all available Support actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.AWSSupport;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

public static class HelloSupport
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the AWS Support service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        // You must have one of the following AWS Support plans: Business,
 Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise. Otherwise, an exception will be thrown.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var supportClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonAWSSupport>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await supportClient.DescribeServicesAsync();
        Console.WriteLine($"\tHello AWS Support! There are
 {response.Services.Count} services available.");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.SupportClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Category;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SupportException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS
 * Support Java API. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/
 *
 * This Java example performs the following task:
 *
 * 1. Gets and displays available services.
 *
 *
 * NOTE: To see multiple operations, see SupportScenario.
```

```
 */

public class HelloSupport {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SupportClient supportClient = SupportClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("***** Step 1. Get and display available services.");
        displayServices(supportClient);
    }

    // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
    public static void displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
 DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeServicesResponse response =
 supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
            List<Service> services = response.services();

            System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
            int index = 1;
            for (Service service : services) {
                if (index == 11)
                    break;

                System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());

                // Display the Categories for this service.
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                }
                index++;
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke `main()` to run the example.

```
import {
  DescribeServicesCommand,
  SupportClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

// Change the value of 'region' to your preferred AWS Region.
const client = new SupportClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

const getServiceCount = async () => {
  try {
    const { services } = await client.send(new DescribeServicesCommand({}));
    return services.length;
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.name === "SubscriptionRequiredException") {
      throw new Error(
        "You must be subscribed to the AWS Support plan to use this feature.",
      );
    }
    throw err;
  }
};

export const main = async () => {
```

```
  try {
    const count = await getServiceCount();
    console.log(`Hello, AWS Support! There are ${count} services available.`);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Failed to get service count: ", err.message);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS Support
 Java API. For more information, see:

https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/

This Kotlin example performs the following task:

1. Gets and displays available services.
 */

suspend fun main() {
    displaySomeServices()
}
```

```
// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displaySomeServices() {
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is: " + service.name)

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                index++
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def hello_support(support_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Support client and count
    the available services in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param support_client: A Boto3 Support Client object.
    """
    try:
        print("Hello, AWS Support! Let's count the available Support services:")
        response = support_client.describe_services()
        print(f"There are {len(response['services'])} services available.")
    except ClientError as err:
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
            logger.info(
                "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
                "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                "examples."
            )
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't count services. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_support(boto3.client("support"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Support using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Support
  - Learn the basics of Support with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Support using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddAttachmentsToSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use AddCommunicationToCase with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateCase with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeAttachment with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeCases with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeCommunications with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeServices with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeSeverityLevels with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks with a CLI
    - Use RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck with a CLI
    - Use ResolveCase with an AWS SDK or CLI

Basic examples for Support using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Support with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Support
- Learn the basics of Support with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Support using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddAttachmentsToSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use AddCommunicationToCase with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateCase with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DescribeAttachment with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use DescribeCases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeCommunications with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeServices with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSeverityLevels with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks with a CLI
- Use RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck with a CLI
- Use ResolveCase with an AWS SDK or CLI

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.AWSSupport;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

public static class HelloSupport
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the AWS Support service.
```

```
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
 profile.
        // You must have one of the following AWS Support plans: Business,
 Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise. Otherwise, an exception will be thrown.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var supportClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonAWSSupport>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await supportClient.DescribeServicesAsync();
        Console.WriteLine($"\tHello AWS Support! There are
 {response.Services.Count} services available.");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.SupportClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Category;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SupportException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 *
 * In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS
 * Support Java API. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/
 *
 * This Java example performs the following task:
 *
 * 1. Gets and displays available services.
 *
 *
 * NOTE: To see multiple operations, see SupportScenario.
 */

public class HelloSupport {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SupportClient supportClient = SupportClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("***** Step 1. Get and display available services.");
        displayServices(supportClient);
    }

    // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
    public static void displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
 DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeServicesResponse response =
 supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
```

```
            List<Service> services = response.services();

            System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
            int index = 1;
            for (Service service : services) {
                if (index == 11)
                    break;

                System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());

                // Display the Categories for this service.
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                }
                index++;
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke `main()` to run the example.

```
import {
  DescribeServicesCommand,
```

```
  SupportClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

// Change the value of 'region' to your preferred AWS Region.
const client = new SupportClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

const getServiceCount = async () => {
  try {
    const { services } = await client.send(new DescribeServicesCommand({}));
    return services.length;
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.name === "SubscriptionRequiredException") {
      throw new Error(
        "You must be subscribed to the AWS Support plan to use this feature.",
      );
    }
    throw err;
  }
};

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    const count = await getServiceCount();
    console.log(`Hello, AWS Support! There are ${count} services available.`);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Failed to get service count: ", err.message);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS Support
 Java API. For more information, see:

https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/

This Kotlin example performs the following task:

1. Gets and displays available services.
 */

suspend fun main() {
    displaySomeServices()
}

// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displaySomeServices() {
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is: " + service.name)

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
```

```
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                index++
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def hello_support(support_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Support client and count
    the available services in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param support_client: A Boto3 Support Client object.
    """
    try:
        print("Hello, AWS Support! Let's count the available Support services:")
        response = support_client.describe_services()
        print(f"There are {len(response['services'])} services available.")
    except ClientError as err:
```

```
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
            logger.info(
                "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
                "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                "examples."
            )
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't count services. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_support(boto3.client("support"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Support with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Hello AWS Support example.
/// </summary>
public static class SupportCaseScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
    To use the AWS Support API, you must have one of the following AWS Support
 plans: Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Get and display services. Select a service from the list.
    2.  Select a category from the selected service.
    3.  Get and display severity levels and select a severity level from the
 list.
    4.  Create a support case using the selected service, category, and severity
 level.
    5.  Get and display a list of open support cases for the current day.
    6.  Create an attachment set with a sample text file to add to the case.
    7.  Add a communication with the attachment to the support case.
    8.  List the communications of the support case.
    9.  Describe the attachment set.
    10. Resolve the support case.
    11. Get a list of resolved cases for the current day.
   */

    private static SupportWrapper _supportWrapper = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
```

```
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS Support service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default
profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>(new AWSOptions()
{ Profile = "default" })
                    .AddTransient<SupportWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        var logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger(typeof(SupportCaseScenario));

        _supportWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SupportWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the AWS Support case example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            var apiSupported = await _supportWrapper.VerifySubscription();
            if (!apiSupported)
            {
                logger.LogError("You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or
Enterprise Support " +
                                "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease
upgrade your subscription to run these examples.");
                return;
            }

            var service = await DisplayAndSelectServices();

            var category = DisplayAndSelectCategories(service);
```

```
            var severityLevel = await DisplayAndSelectSeverity();

            var caseId = await CreateSupportCase(service, category,
severityLevel);

            await DescribeTodayOpenCases();

            var attachmentSetId = await CreateAttachmentSet();

            await AddCommunicationToCase(attachmentSetId, caseId);

            var attachmentId = await ListCommunicationsForCase(caseId);

            await DescribeCaseAttachment(attachmentId);

            await ResolveCase(caseId);

            await DescribeTodayResolvedCases();

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Support case example scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List some available services from AWS Support, and select a service for
the example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected service.</returns>
    private static async Task<Service> DisplayAndSelectServices()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var services = await _supportWrapper.DescribeServices();
        Console.WriteLine($"AWS Support client returned {services.Count}
services.");

        Console.WriteLine($"1. Displaying first 10 services:");
        for (int i = 0; i < 10 && i < services.Count; i++)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {services[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > services.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example support service by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return services[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the available categories for a service and select a category for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="service">Service to use for displaying categories.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected category.</returns>
    private static Category DisplayAndSelectCategories(Service service)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine($"2. Available support categories for Service
\"{service.Name}\":");
        for (int i = 0; i < service.Categories.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {service.Categories[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > service.Categories.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example support category by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return service.Categories[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List available severity levels from AWS Support, and select a level for
the example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected severity level.</returns>
    private static async Task<SeverityLevel> DisplayAndSelectSeverity()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var severityLevels = await _supportWrapper.DescribeSeverityLevels();

        Console.WriteLine($"3. Get and display available severity levels:");
        for (int i = 0; i < 10 && i < severityLevels.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {severityLevels[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > severityLevels.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example severity level by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return severityLevels[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an example support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="service">Service to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="category">Category to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severity">Severity to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateSupportCase(Service service,
```

```
        Category category, SeverityLevel severity)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. Create an example support case" +
                          $" with the following settings:" +
                          $" \n\tService: {service.Name}, Category:
{category.Name} " +
                          $"and Severity Level: {severity.Name}.");
        var caseId = await _supportWrapper.CreateCase(service.Code,
category.Code, severity.Code,
            "Example case for testing, ignore.", "This is my example support
case.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew case created with ID {caseId}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return caseId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List open cases for the current day.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeTodayOpenCases()
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"5. List the open support cases for the current
day.");
        // Describe the cases. If it is empty, try again and allow time for the
new case to appear.
        List<CaseDetails> currentOpenCases = null!;
        while (currentOpenCases == null || currentOpenCases.Count == 0)
        {
            Thread.Sleep(1000);
            currentOpenCases = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCases(
                new List<string>(),
                null,
                false,
                false,
                DateTime.UtcNow.Date,
                DateTime.UtcNow);
        }

        foreach (var openCase in currentOpenCases)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCase: {openCase.CaseId} created
 {openCase.TimeCreated}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an attachment set for a support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The attachment set id.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateAttachmentSet()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. Create an attachment set for a support case.");
        var fileName = "example_attachment.txt";

        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for attachment to a support case.");
        }

        await using var ms = new MemoryStream(await
 File.ReadAllBytesAsync(fileName));

        var attachmentSetId = await _supportWrapper.AddAttachmentToSet(
            ms,
            fileName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew attachment set created with id: \n
\t{attachmentSetId.Substring(0, 65)}...");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return attachmentSetId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment set and communication to a case.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Id of the attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to receive the attachment set.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddCommunicationToCase(string attachmentSetId,
 string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Add attachment set and communication to
 {caseId}.");

        await _supportWrapper.AddCommunicationToCase(
            caseId,
            "This is an example communication added to a support case.",
            attachmentSetId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew attachment set and communication added to
 {caseId}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the communications for a case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>An attachment id.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> ListCommunicationsForCase(string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. List communications for case {caseId}.");

        var communications = await
 _supportWrapper.DescribeCommunications(caseId);
        var attachmentId = "";
        foreach (var communication in communications)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tCommunication created on: {communication.TimeCreated} has
 {communication.AttachmentSet.Count} attachments.");
            if (communication.AttachmentSet.Any())
            {
                attachmentId = communication.AttachmentSet.First().AttachmentId;
            }
```

```
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return attachmentId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe an attachment by id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeCaseAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Describe the attachment set.");

        var attachment = await _supportWrapper.DescribeAttachment(attachmentId);
        var data = Encoding.ASCII.GetString(attachment.Data.ToArray());
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAttachment includes {attachment.FileName} with
data: \n\t{data}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Resolve the support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to resolve.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ResolveCase(string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Resolve case {caseId}.");

        var status = await _supportWrapper.ResolveCase(caseId);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCase {caseId} has final status {status}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List resolved cases for the current day.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
```

```
    private static async Task DescribeTodayResolvedCases()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"11. List the resolved support cases for the current
 day.");
        var currentCases = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCases(
            new List<string>(),
            null,
            false,
            true,
            DateTime.UtcNow.Date,
            DateTime.UtcNow);

        foreach (var currentCase in currentCases)
        {
            if (currentCase.Status == "resolved")
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tCase: {currentCase.CaseId}: status
 {currentCase.Status}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for Support actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use AWS Support for working with support cases.
/// </summary>
public class SupportWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAWSSupport _amazonSupport;
    public SupportWrapper(IAmazonAWSSupport amazonSupport)
    {
        _amazonSupport = amazonSupport;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of AWS services.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for services.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
(“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of AWS service descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Service>> DescribeServices(string language = "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
            new DescribeServicesRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.Services;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of support severity levels.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for severity levels.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
(“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of support severity levels.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SeverityLevel>> DescribeSeverityLevels(string language
= "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeSeverityLevelsAsync(
            new DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.SeverityLevels;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceCode">Service code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="categoryCode">Category for the new case.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="severityCode">Severity code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
(“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set for the
new case.</param>
    /// <param name="issueType">Optional issue type for the new case. Options are
"customer-service" or "technical".</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateCase(string serviceCode, string categoryCode,
string severityCode, string subject,
        string body, string language = "en", string? attachmentSetId = null,
string issueType = "customer-service")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.CreateCaseAsync(
            new CreateCaseRequest()
            {
                ServiceCode = serviceCode,
                CategoryCode = categoryCode,
                SeverityCode = severityCode,
                Subject = subject,
                Language = language,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                IssueType = issueType,
                CommunicationBody = body
            });
        return response.CaseId;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does
not exist.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="data">The data for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="fileName">The file name for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional setId for the attachment. Creates
a new attachment set if empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The setId of the attachment.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddAttachmentToSet(MemoryStream data, string
fileName, string? attachmentSetId = null)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddAttachmentsToSetAsync(
            new AddAttachmentsToSetRequest
            {
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                Attachments = new List<Attachment>
                {
                    new Attachment
                    {
                        Data = data,
                        FileName = fileName
                    }
                }
            });
        return response.AttachmentSetId;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get description of a specific attachment.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment, usually fetched by
 describing the communications of a case.</param>
    /// <returns>The attachment object.</returns>
    public async Task<Attachment> DescribeAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeAttachmentAsync(
            new DescribeAttachmentRequest()
            {
                AttachmentId = attachmentId
            });
        return response.Attachment;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Add communication to a case, including optional attachment set ID and CC
 email addresses.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the communication.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="ccEmailAddresses">Optional list of CC email addresses.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddCommunicationToCase(string caseId, string body,
        string? attachmentSetId = null, List<string>? ccEmailAddresses = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddCommunicationToCaseAsync(
            new AddCommunicationToCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                CommunicationBody = body,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                CcEmailAddresses = ccEmailAddresses
            });
        return response.Result;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the communications for a case, optionally with a date filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">The ID of the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of communications for the case.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Communication>> DescribeCommunications(string caseId,
 DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime? beforeTime = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Communication>();
        var paginateCommunications =
 _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCommunications(
            new DescribeCommunicationsRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s")
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var communications in
 paginateCommunications.Communications)
        {
```

```
            results.Add(communications);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get case details for a list of case ids, optionally with date filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseIds">The list of case IDs.</param>
    /// <param name="displayId">Optional display ID.</param>
    /// <param name="includeCommunication">True to include communication.
 Defaults to true.</param>
    /// <param name="includeResolvedCases">True to include resolved cases.
 Defaults to false.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
 (“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of CaseDetails.</returns>
    public async Task<List<CaseDetails>> DescribeCases(List<string> caseIds,
 string? displayId = null, bool includeCommunication = true,
        bool includeResolvedCases = false, DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime?
 beforeTime = null,
        string language = "en")
    {
        var results = new List<CaseDetails>();
        var paginateCases = _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCases(
            new DescribeCasesRequest()
            {
                CaseIdList = caseIds,
                DisplayId = displayId,
                IncludeCommunications = includeCommunication,
                IncludeResolvedCases = includeResolvedCases,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s"),
                Language = language
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var cases in paginateCases.Cases)
```

```
        {
            results.Add(cases);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Resolve a support case by caseId.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <returns>The final status of the case after resolving.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ResolveCase(string caseId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.ResolveCaseAsync(
            new ResolveCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId
            });
        return response.FinalCaseStatus;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the support level for AWS Support API access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the subscription level supports API access.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifySubscription()
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
                new DescribeServicesRequest()
                {
                    Language = "en"
                });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Amazon.AWSSupport.AmazonAWSSupportException ex)
        {
            if (ex.ErrorCode == "SubscriptionRequiredException")
            {
                return false;
```

```
            }
            else throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels
  - ResolveCase

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run various Support operations.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.SupportClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddAttachmentsToSetResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddCommunicationToCaseRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddCommunicationToCaseResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Attachment;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AttachmentDetails;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.CaseDetails;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Category;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Communication;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.CreateCaseRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.CreateCaseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeAttachmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeAttachmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCasesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCasesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCommunicationsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCommunicationsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeSeverityLevelsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.ResolveCaseRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.ResolveCaseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SeverityLevel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SupportException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddAttachmentsToSetRequest;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
```

```
 *
 * In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS
 * Support Java API. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Gets and displays available services.
 * 2. Gets and displays severity levels.
 * 3. Creates a support case by using the selected service, category, and
 * severity level.
 * 4. Gets a list of open cases for the current day.
 * 5. Creates an attachment set with a generated file.
 * 6. Adds a communication with the attachment to the support case.
 * 7. Lists the communications of the support case.
 * 8. Describes the attachment set included with the communication.
 * 9. Resolves the support case.
 * 10. Gets a list of resolved cases for the current day.
 */
public class SupportScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <fileAttachment>Where:
                    fileAttachment - The file can be a simple saved .txt file to
 use as an email attachment.\s
                """;

      //  if (args.length != 1) {
      //      System.out.println(usage);
      //      System.exit(1);
      //  }

        String fileAttachment = "C:\\AWS\\test.txt" ; //args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SupportClient supportClient = SupportClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("***** Welcome to the AWS Support case example
scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Get and display available services.");
        List<String> sevCatList = displayServices(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Get and display Support severity levels.");
        String sevLevel = displaySevLevels(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create a support case using the selected service,
category, and severity level.");
        String caseId = createSupportCase(supportClient, sevCatList, sevLevel);
        if (caseId.compareTo("") == 0) {
            System.out.println("A support case was not successfully created!");
            System.exit(1);
        } else
            System.out.println("Support case " + caseId + " was successfully
created!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get open support cases.");
        getOpenCase(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Create an attachment set with a generated file to
add to the case.");
        String attachmentSetId = addAttachment(supportClient, fileAttachment);
        System.out.println("The Attachment Set id value is" + attachmentSetId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Add communication with the attachment to the
support case.");
        addAttachSupportCase(supportClient, caseId, attachmentSetId);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. List the communications of the support case.");
        String attachId = listCommunications(supportClient, caseId);
        System.out.println("The Attachment id value is" + attachId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Describe the attachment set included with the
communication.");
        describeAttachment(supportClient, attachId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Resolve the support case.");
        resolveSupportCase(supportClient, caseId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get a list of resolved cases for the current
day.");
        getResolvedCase(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("***** This Scenario has successfully completed");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void getResolvedCase(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            // Specify the start and end time.
            Instant now = Instant.now();
            java.time.LocalDate.now();
            Instant yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

            DescribeCasesRequest describeCasesRequest =
DescribeCasesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(30)
                    .afterTime(yesterday.toString())
                    .beforeTime(now.toString())
                    .includeResolvedCases(true)
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeCasesResponse response =
supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest);
            List<CaseDetails> cases = response.cases();
            for (CaseDetails sinCase : cases) {
                if (sinCase.status().compareTo("resolved") == 0)
                    System.out.println("The case status is " + sinCase.status());
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void resolveSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId) {
        try {
            ResolveCaseRequest caseRequest = ResolveCaseRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .build();

            ResolveCaseResponse response =
supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest);
            System.out.println("The status of case " + caseId + " is " +
response.finalCaseStatus());

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
attachId) {
        try {
            DescribeAttachmentRequest attachmentRequest =
DescribeAttachmentRequest.builder()
                    .attachmentId(attachId)
                    .build();

            DescribeAttachmentResponse response =
supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The name of the file is " +
response.attachment().fileName());

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String listCommunications(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId) {
        try {
            String attachId = null;
            DescribeCommunicationsRequest communicationsRequest =
DescribeCommunicationsRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            DescribeCommunicationsResponse response =
supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest);
            List<Communication> communications = response.communications();
            for (Communication comm : communications) {
                System.out.println("the body is: " + comm.body());

                // Get the attachment id value.
                List<AttachmentDetails> attachments = comm.attachmentSet();
                for (AttachmentDetails detail : attachments) {
                    attachId = detail.attachmentId();
                }
            }
            return attachId;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void addAttachSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId, String attachmentSetId) {
        try {
```

```
            AddCommunicationToCaseRequest caseRequest =
AddCommunicationToCaseRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .attachmentSetId(attachmentSetId)
                    .communicationBody("Please refer to attachment for details.")
                    .build();

            AddCommunicationToCaseResponse response =
supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest);
            if (response.result())
                System.out.println("You have successfully added a communication
to an AWS Support case");
            else
                System.out.println("There was an error adding the communication
to an AWS Support case");

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String addAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
fileAttachment) {
        try {
            File myFile = new File(fileAttachment);
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(myFile);
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            Attachment attachment = Attachment.builder()
                    .fileName(myFile.getName())
                    .data(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            AddAttachmentsToSetRequest setRequest =
AddAttachmentsToSetRequest.builder()
                    .attachments(attachment)
                    .build();

            AddAttachmentsToSetResponse response =
supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest);
            return response.attachmentSetId();

        } catch (SupportException | FileNotFoundException e) {
```

```
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void getOpenCase(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            // Specify the start and end time.
            Instant now = Instant.now();
            java.time.LocalDate.now();
            Instant yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

            DescribeCasesRequest describeCasesRequest =
DescribeCasesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .afterTime(yesterday.toString())
                    .beforeTime(now.toString())
                    .build();

            DescribeCasesResponse response =
supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest);
            List<CaseDetails> cases = response.cases();
            for (CaseDetails sinCase : cases) {
                System.out.println("The case status is " + sinCase.status());
                System.out.println("The case Id is " + sinCase.caseId());
                System.out.println("The case subject is " + sinCase.subject());
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient,
List<String> sevCatList, String sevLevel) {
        try {
            String serviceCode = sevCatList.get(0);
            String caseCat = sevCatList.get(1);
            CreateCaseRequest caseRequest = CreateCaseRequest.builder()
                    .categoryCode(caseCat.toLowerCase())
                    .serviceCode(serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                    .severityCode(sevLevel.toLowerCase())
```

```
                    .communicationBody("Test issue with " +
serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                    .subject("Test case, please ignore")
                    .language("en")
                    .issueType("technical")
                    .build();

            CreateCaseResponse response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest);
            return response.caseId();

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String displaySevLevels(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest severityLevelsRequest =
DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeSeverityLevelsResponse response =
supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest);
            List<SeverityLevel> severityLevels = response.severityLevels();
            String levelName = null;
            for (SeverityLevel sevLevel : severityLevels) {
                System.out.println("The severity level name is: " +
sevLevel.name());
                if (sevLevel.name().compareTo("High") == 0)
                    levelName = sevLevel.name();
            }
            return levelName;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
```

```
    public static List<String> displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeServicesResponse response =
supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
            String serviceCode = null;
            String catName = null;
            List<String> sevCatList = new ArrayList<>();
            List<Service> services = response.services();

            System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
            int index = 1;
            for (Service service : services) {
                if (index == 11)
                    break;

                System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());
                if (service.name().compareTo("Account") == 0)
                    serviceCode = service.code();

                // Get the Categories for this service.
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                    if (cat.name().compareTo("Security") == 0)
                        catName = cat.name();
                }
                index++;
            }

            // Push the two values to the list.
            sevCatList.add(serviceCode);
            sevCatList.add(catName);
            return sevCatList;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels
  - ResolveCase

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario in the terminal.

```
import {
  AddAttachmentsToSetCommand,
  AddCommunicationToCaseCommand,
  CreateCaseCommand,
  DescribeAttachmentCommand,
  DescribeCasesCommand,
  DescribeCommunicationsCommand,
  DescribeServicesCommand,
  DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand,
  ResolveCaseCommand,
  SupportClient,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-support";
import * as inquirer from "@inquirer/prompts";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

const wrapText = (text, char = "=") => {
  const rule = char.repeat(80);
  return `${rule}\n    ${text}\n${rule}\n`;
};

const client = new SupportClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Verify that the account has a Support plan.
export const verifyAccount = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeServicesCommand({});

  try {
    await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.name === "SubscriptionRequiredException") {
      throw new Error(
        "You must be subscribed to the AWS Support plan to use this feature.",
      );
    }
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select a service from the list returned from DescribeServices.
 */
export const getService = async () => {
  const { services } = await client.send(new DescribeServicesCommand({}));
  const selectedService = await inquirer.select({
    message:
      "Select a service. Your support case will be created for this service. The
 list of services is truncated for readability.",
    choices: services.slice(0, 10).map((s) => ({ name: s.name, value: s })),
  });
  return selectedService;
};

/**
 * @param {{ categories: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Category[]}} service
 */
```

```
export const getCategory = async (service) => {
  const selectedCategory = await inquirer.select({
    message: "Select a category.",
    choices: service.categories.map((c) => ({ name: c.name, value: c })),
  });
  return selectedCategory;
};

// Get the available severity levels for the account.
export const getSeverityLevel = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand({});
  const { severityLevels } = await client.send(command);
  const selectedSeverityLevel = await inquirer.select({
    message: "Select a severity level.",
    choices: severityLevels.map((s) => ({ name: s.name, value: s })),
  });
  return selectedSeverityLevel;
};

/**
 * Create a new support case
 * @param {{
 *  selectedService: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Service
 *  selectedCategory: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Category
 *  selectedSeverityLevel: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').SeverityLevel
 * }} selections
 * @returns
 */
export const createCase = async ({
  selectedService,
  selectedCategory,
  selectedSeverityLevel,
}) => {
  const command = new CreateCaseCommand({
    subject: "IGNORE: Test case",
    communicationBody: "This is a test. Please ignore.",
    serviceCode: selectedService.code,
    categoryCode: selectedCategory.code,
    severityCode: selectedSeverityLevel.code,
  });
  const { caseId } = await client.send(command);
  return caseId;
};
```

```
// Get a list of open support cases created today.
export const getTodaysOpenCases = async () => {
  const d = new Date();
  const startOfToday = new Date(d.getFullYear(), d.getMonth(), d.getDate());
  const command = new DescribeCasesCommand({
    includeCommunications: false,
    afterTime: startOfToday.toISOString(),
  });

  const { cases } = await client.send(command);

  if (cases.length === 0) {
    throw new Error(
      "Unexpected number of cases. Expected more than 0 open cases.",
    );
  }
  return cases;
};

// Create an attachment set.
export const createAttachmentSet = async () => {
  const command = new AddAttachmentsToSetCommand({
    attachments: [
      {
        fileName: "example.txt",
        data: new TextEncoder().encode("some example text"),
      },
    ],
  });
  const { attachmentSetId } = await client.send(command);
  return attachmentSetId;
};

export const linkAttachmentSetToCase = async (attachmentSetId, caseId) => {
  const command = new AddCommunicationToCaseCommand({
    attachmentSetId,
    caseId,
    communicationBody: "Adding attachment set to case.",
  });
  await client.send(command);
};

// Get all communications for a support case.
export const getCommunications = async (caseId) => {
```

```
  const command = new DescribeCommunicationsCommand({
    caseId,
  });
  const { communications } = await client.send(command);
  return communications;
};

/**
 * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Communication[]} communications
 */
export const getFirstAttachment = (communications) => {
  const firstCommWithAttachment = communications.find(
    (c) => c.attachmentSet.length > 0,
  );
  return firstCommWithAttachment?.attachmentSet[0].attachmentId;
};

// Get an attachment.
export const getAttachment = async (attachmentId) => {
  const command = new DescribeAttachmentCommand({
    attachmentId,
  });
  const { attachment } = await client.send(command);
  return attachment;
};

// Resolve the case matching the given case ID.
export const resolveCase = async (caseId) => {
  const shouldResolve = await inquirer.confirm({
    message: `Do you want to resolve ${caseId}?`,
  });

  if (shouldResolve) {
    const command = new ResolveCaseCommand({
      caseId: caseId,
    });

    await client.send(command);
    return true;
  }
  return false;
};

/**
```

```
 * Find a specific case in the list of provided cases by case ID.
 * If the case is not found, and the results are paginated, continue
 * paging through the results.
 * @param {{
 *   caseId: string,
 *   cases: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').CaseDetails[]
 *   nextToken: string
 * }} options
 * @returns
 */
export const findCase = async ({ caseId, cases, nextToken }) => {
  const foundCase = cases.find((c) => c.caseId === caseId);

  if (foundCase) {
    return foundCase;
  }

  if (nextToken) {
    const response = await client.send(
      new DescribeCasesCommand({
        nextToken,
        includeResolvedCases: true,
      }),
    );
    return findCase({
      caseId,
      cases: response.cases,
      nextToken: response.nextToken,
    });
  }

  throw new Error(`${caseId} not found.`);
};

// Get all cases created today.
export const getTodaysResolvedCases = async (caseIdToWaitFor) => {
  const d = new Date("2023-01-18");
  const startOfToday = new Date(d.getFullYear(), d.getMonth(), d.getDate());
  const command = new DescribeCasesCommand({
    includeCommunications: false,
    afterTime: startOfToday.toISOString(),
    includeResolvedCases: true,
  });
  const { cases, nextToken } = await client.send(command);
```

```
  await findCase({ cases, caseId: caseIdToWaitFor, nextToken });
  return cases.filter((c) => c.status === "resolved");
};

const main = async () => {
  let caseId;
  try {
    console.log(wrapText("Welcome to the AWS Support basic usage scenario."));

    // Verify that the account is subscribed to support.
    await verifyAccount();

    // Provided a truncated list of services and prompt the user to select one.
    const selectedService = await getService();

    // Provided the categories for the selected service and prompt the user to
 select one.
    const selectedCategory = await getCategory(selectedService);

    // Provide the severity available severity levels for the account and prompt
 the user to select one.
    const selectedSeverityLevel = await getSeverityLevel();

    // Create a support case.
    console.log("\nCreating a support case.");
    caseId = await createCase({
      selectedService,
      selectedCategory,
      selectedSeverityLevel,
    });
    console.log(`Support case created: ${caseId}`);

    // Display a list of open support cases created today.
    const todaysOpenCases = await retry(
      { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 15 },
      getTodaysOpenCases,
    );
    console.log(
      `\nOpen support cases created today: ${todaysOpenCases.length}`,
    );
    console.log(todaysOpenCases.map((c) => `${c.caseId}`).join("\n"));

    // Create an attachment set.
    console.log("\nCreating an attachment set.");
```

```
    const attachmentSetId = await createAttachmentSet();
    console.log(`Attachment set created: ${attachmentSetId}`);

    // Add the attachment set to the support case.
    console.log(`\nAdding attachment set to ${caseId}`);
    await linkAttachmentSetToCase(attachmentSetId, caseId);
    console.log(`Attachment set added to ${caseId}`);

    // List the communications for a support case.
    console.log(`\nListing communications for ${caseId}`);
    const communications = await getCommunications(caseId);
    console.log(
      communications
        .map(
          (c) =>
            `Communication created on ${c.timeCreated}. Has
${c.attachmentSet.length} attachments.`,
        )
        .join("\n"),
    );

    // Describe the first attachment.
    console.log(`\nDescribing attachment ${attachmentSetId}`);
    const attachmentId = getFirstAttachment(communications);
    const attachment = await getAttachment(attachmentId);
    console.log(
      `Attachment is the file '${
        attachment.fileName
      }' with data: \n${new TextDecoder().decode(attachment.data)}`,
    );

    // Confirm that the support case should be resolved.
    const isResolved = await resolveCase(caseId);
    if (isResolved) {
      // List the resolved cases and include the one previously created.
      // Resolved cases can take a while to appear.
      console.log(
        "\nWaiting for case status to be marked as resolved. This can take some
time.",
      );
      const resolvedCases = await retry(
        { intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 },
        () => getTodaysResolvedCases(caseId),
      );
```

```
      console.log("Resolved cases:");
      console.log(resolvedCases.map((c) => c.caseId).join("\n"));
    }
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels
  - ResolveCase

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
```

```
In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS Support
 Java API. For more information, see:

https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:
1. Gets and displays available services.
2. Gets and displays severity levels.
3. Creates a support case by using the selected service, category, and severity
 level.
4. Gets a list of open cases for the current day.
5. Creates an attachment set with a generated file.
6. Adds a communication with the attachment to the support case.
7. Lists the communications of the support case.
8. Describes the attachment set included with the communication.
9. Resolves the support case.
10. Gets a list of resolved cases for the current day.
*/

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <fileAttachment>
    Where:
         fileAttachment - The file can be a simple saved .txt file to use as an
 email attachment.
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val fileAttachment = args[0]
    println("***** Welcome to the AWS Support case example scenario.")
    println("***** Step 1. Get and display available services.")
    val sevCatList = displayServices()

    println("***** Step 2. Get and display Support severity levels.")
    val sevLevel = displaySevLevels()

    println("***** Step 3. Create a support case using the selected service,
 category, and severity level.")
    val caseIdVal = createSupportCase(sevCatList, sevLevel)
```

```
    if (caseIdVal != null) {
        println("Support case $caseIdVal was successfully created!")
    } else {
        println("A support case was not successfully created!")
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    println("***** Step 4. Get open support cases.")
    getOpenCase()

    println("***** Step 5. Create an attachment set with a generated file to add
 to the case.")
    val attachmentSetId = addAttachment(fileAttachment)
    println("The Attachment Set id value is $attachmentSetId")

    println("***** Step 6. Add communication with the attachment to the support
 case.")
    addAttachSupportCase(caseIdVal, attachmentSetId)

    println("***** Step 7. List the communications of the support case.")
    val attachId = listCommunications(caseIdVal)
    println("The Attachment id value is $attachId")

    println("***** Step 8. Describe the attachment set included with the
 communication.")
    describeAttachment(attachId)

    println("***** Step 9. Resolve the support case.")
    resolveSupportCase(caseIdVal)

    println("***** Step 10. Get a list of resolved cases for the current day.")
    getResolvedCase()
    println("***** This Scenario has successfully completed")
}

suspend fun getResolvedCase() {
    // Specify the start and end time.
    val now = Instant.now()
    LocalDate.now()
    val yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS)
    val describeCasesRequest =
        DescribeCasesRequest {
            maxResults = 30
            afterTime = yesterday.toString()
```

```
            beforeTime = now.toString()
            includeResolvedCases = true
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest)
        response.cases?.forEach { sinCase ->
            println("The case status is ${sinCase.status}")
            println("The case Id is ${sinCase.caseId}")
            println("The case subject is ${sinCase.subject}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun resolveSupportCase(caseIdVal: String) {
    val caseRequest =
        ResolveCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
        }
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest)
        println("The status of case $caseIdVal is ${response.finalCaseStatus}")
    }
}

suspend fun describeAttachment(attachId: String?) {
    val attachmentRequest =
        DescribeAttachmentRequest {
            attachmentId = attachId
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest)
        println("The name of the file is ${response.attachment?.fileName}")
    }
}

suspend fun listCommunications(caseIdVal: String?): String? {
    val communicationsRequest =
        DescribeCommunicationsRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            maxResults = 10
        }
```

```
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response =
 supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest)
        response.communications?.forEach { comm ->
            println("the body is: " + comm.body)
            comm.attachmentSet?.forEach { detail ->
                return detail.attachmentId
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun addAttachSupportCase(
    caseIdVal: String?,
    attachmentSetIdVal: String?,
) {
    val caseRequest =
        AddCommunicationToCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            attachmentSetId = attachmentSetIdVal
            communicationBody = "Please refer to attachment for details."
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest)
        if (response.result) {
            println("You have successfully added a communication to an AWS
 Support case")
        } else {
            println("There was an error adding the communication to an AWS
 Support case")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun addAttachment(fileAttachment: String): String? {
    val myFile = File(fileAttachment)
    val sourceBytes = (File(fileAttachment).readBytes())
    val attachmentVal =
        Attachment {
            fileName = myFile.name
            data = sourceBytes
        }
```

```
    val setRequest =
        AddAttachmentsToSetRequest {
            attachments = listOf(attachmentVal)
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest)
        return response.attachmentSetId
    }
}

suspend fun getOpenCase() {
    // Specify the start and end time.
    val now = Instant.now()
    LocalDate.now()
    val yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS)
    val describeCasesRequest =
        DescribeCasesRequest {
            maxResults = 20
            afterTime = yesterday.toString()
            beforeTime = now.toString()
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest)
        response.cases?.forEach { sinCase ->
            println("The case status is ${sinCase.status}")
            println("The case Id is ${sinCase.caseId}")
            println("The case subject is ${sinCase.subject}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createSupportCase(
    sevCatListVal: List<String>,
    sevLevelVal: String,
): String? {
    val serCode = sevCatListVal[0]
    val caseCategory = sevCatListVal[1]
    val caseRequest =
        CreateCaseRequest {
            categoryCode = caseCategory.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            serviceCode = serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
```

```
            severityCode = sevLevelVal.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            communicationBody = "Test issue with
 ${serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())}"
            subject = "Test case, please ignore"
            language = "en"
            issueType = "technical"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest)
        return response.caseId
    }
}

suspend fun displaySevLevels(): String {
    var levelName = ""
    val severityLevelsRequest =
        DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response =
 supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest)
        response.severityLevels?.forEach { sevLevel ->
            println("The severity level name is: ${sevLevel.name}")
            if (sevLevel.name == "High") {
                levelName = sevLevel.name!!
            }
        }
        return levelName
    }
}

// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displayServices(): List<String> {
    var serviceCode = ""
    var catName = ""
    val sevCatList = mutableListOf<String>()
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }
```

```
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is ${service.name}")
            if (service.name == "Account") {
                serviceCode = service.code.toString()
            }

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                if (cat.name == "Security") {
                    catName = cat.name!!
                }
            }
            index++
        }
    }

    // Push the two values to the list.
    serviceCode.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    catName.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    return sevCatList
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications

- DescribeServices
- DescribeSeverityLevels
- ResolveCase

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class SupportCasesScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using AWS
 Support."""

    def __init__(self, support_wrapper):
        """
        :param support_wrapper: An object that wraps AWS Support actions.
        """
        self.support_wrapper = support_wrapper

    def display_and_select_service(self):
        """
        Lists support services and prompts the user to select one.

        :return: The support service selected by the user.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        services_list = self.support_wrapper.describe_services("en")
        print(f"AWS Support client returned {len(services_list)} services.")
        print("Displaying first 10 services:")

        service_choices = [svc["name"] for svc in services_list[:10]]
        selected_index = q.choose(
            "Select an example support service by entering a number from the
 preceding list:",
```

```
            service_choices,
        )
        selected_service = services_list[selected_index]
        print("-" * 88)
        return selected_service

    def display_and_select_category(self, service):
        """
        Lists categories for a support service and prompts the user to select
one.

        :param service: The service of the categories.
        :return: The selected category.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            f"Available support categories for Service {service['name']}
{len(service['categories'])}:"
        )
        categories_choices = [category["name"] for category in
service["categories"]]
        selected_index = q.choose(
            "Select an example support category by entering a number from the
preceding list:",
            categories_choices,
        )
        selected_category = service["categories"][selected_index]
        print("-" * 88)
        return selected_category

    def display_and_select_severity(self):
        """
        Lists available severity levels and prompts the user to select one.

        :return: The selected severity level.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        severity_levels_list =
self.support_wrapper.describe_severity_levels("en")
        print(f"Available severity levels:")
        severity_choices = [level["name"] for level in severity_levels_list]
        selected_index = q.choose(
            "Select an example severity level by entering a number from the
preceding list:",
```

```
            severity_choices,
        )
        selected_severity = severity_levels_list[selected_index]
        print("-" * 88)
        return selected_severity

    def create_example_case(self, service, category, severity_level):
        """
        Creates an example support case with the user's selections.

        :param service: The service for the new case.
        :param category: The category for the new case.
        :param severity_level: The severity level for the new case.
        :return: The caseId of the new support case.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Creating new case for service {service['name']}.")
        case_id = self.support_wrapper.create_case(service, category,
severity_level)
        print(f"\tNew case created with ID {case_id}.")
        print("-" * 88)
        return case_id

    def list_open_cases(self):
        """
        List the open cases for the current day.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the open cases for the current day.")
        start_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date())
        end_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date() + timedelta(days=1))
        open_cases = self.support_wrapper.describe_cases(start_time, end_time,
False)
        for case in open_cases:
            print(f"\tCase: {case['caseId']}: status {case['status']}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_attachment_set(self):
        """
        Create an attachment set with a sample file.

        :return: The attachment set ID of the new attachment set.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        print("Creating attachment set with a sample file.")
        attachment_set_id = self.support_wrapper.add_attachment_to_set()
        print(f"\tNew attachment set created with ID {attachment_set_id}.")
        print("-" * 88)
        return attachment_set_id

    def add_communication(self, case_id, attachment_set_id):
        """
        Add a communication with an attachment set to the case.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case for the communication.
        :param attachment_set_id: The ID of the attachment set to
        add to the communication.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Adding a communication and attachment set to the case.")
        self.support_wrapper.add_communication_to_case(attachment_set_id,
case_id)
        print(
            f"Added a communication and attachment set {attachment_set_id} to the
case {case_id}."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

    def list_communications(self, case_id):
        """
        List the communications associated with a case.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        :return: The attachment ID of an attachment.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the communications for our case.")
        attachment_id = ""
        communications =
self.support_wrapper.describe_all_case_communications(case_id)
        for communication in communications:
            print(
                f"\tCommunication created on {communication['timeCreated']} "
                f"has {len(communication['attachmentSet'])} attachments."
            )
            if len(communication["attachmentSet"]) > 0:
                attachment_id = communication["attachmentSet"][0]["attachmentId"]
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        return attachment_id

    def describe_case_attachment(self, attachment_id):
        """
        Describe an attachment associated with a case.

        :param attachment_id: The ID of the attachment.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the communications for our case.")
        attached_file = self.support_wrapper.describe_attachment(attachment_id)
        print(f"\tAttachment includes file {attached_file}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def resolve_case(self, case_id):
        """
        Shows how to resolve an AWS Support case by its ID.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case to resolve.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Resolving case with ID {case_id}.")
        case_status = self.support_wrapper.resolve_case(case_id)
        print(f"\tFinal case status is {case_status}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def list_resolved_cases(self):
        """
        List the resolved cases for the current day.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the resolved cases for the current day.")
        start_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date())
        end_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date() + timedelta(days=1))
        resolved_cases = self.support_wrapper.describe_cases(start_time,
end_time, True)
        for case in resolved_cases:
            print(f"\tCase: {case['caseId']}: status {case['status']}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def run_scenario(self):
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s:
%(message)s")
```

```
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the AWS Support get started with support cases demo.")
        print("-" * 88)

        selected_service = self.display_and_select_service()
        selected_category = self.display_and_select_category(selected_service)
        selected_severity = self.display_and_select_severity()
        new_case_id = self.create_example_case(
            selected_service, selected_category, selected_severity
        )
        wait(10)
        self.list_open_cases()
        new_attachment_set_id = self.create_attachment_set()
        self.add_communication(new_case_id, new_attachment_set_id)
        new_attachment_id = self.list_communications(new_case_id)
        self.describe_case_attachment(new_attachment_id)
        self.resolve_case(new_case_id)
        wait(10)
        self.list_resolved_cases()

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = SupportCasesScenario(SupportWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps support client actions.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_services(self, language):
        """
        Get the descriptions of AWS services available for support for a
language.

        :param language: The language for support services.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of AWS service descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_services(language=language)
            services = response["services"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get Support services for language %s. Here's why:
%s: %s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return services


    def describe_severity_levels(self, language):
```

```
        """
        Get the descriptions of available severity levels for support cases for a
language.

        :param language: The language for support severity levels.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of severity levels.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.support_client.describe_severity_levels(language=language)
            severity_levels = response["severityLevels"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get severity levels for language %s. Here's why:
%s: %s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return severity_levels


    def create_case(self, service, category, severity):
        """
        Create a new support case.

        :param service: The service to use for the new case.
        :param category: The category to use for the new case.
        :param severity: The severity to use for the new case.
        :return: The caseId of the new case.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.support_client.create_case(
                subject="Example case for testing, ignore.",
                serviceCode=service["code"],
                severityCode=severity["code"],
                categoryCode=category["code"],
                communicationBody="Example support case body.",
                language="en",
                issueType="customer-service",
            )
            case_id = response["caseId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return case_id


    def add_attachment_to_set(self):
        """
        Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does
not exist.

        :return: The attachment set ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.add_attachments_to_set(
                attachments=[
                    {
                        "fileName": "attachment_file.txt",
                        "data": b"This is a sample file for attachment to a
support case.",
```

```
                    }
                ]
            )
            new_set_id = response["attachmentSetId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add attachment. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return new_set_id


    def add_communication_to_case(self, attachment_set_id, case_id):
        """
        Add a communication and an attachment set to a case.

        :param attachment_set_id: The ID of an existing attachment set.
        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        """
        try:
            self.support_client.add_communication_to_case(
                caseId=case_id,
                communicationBody="This is an example communication added to a
support case.",
                attachmentSetId=attachment_set_id,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
```

```
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add communication. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def describe_all_case_communications(self, case_id):
        """
        Describe all the communications for a case using a paginator.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        :return: The communications for the case.
        """
        try:
            communications = []
            paginator =
self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_communications")
            for page in paginator.paginate(caseId=case_id):
                communications += page["communications"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe communications. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return communications
```

```
    def describe_attachment(self, attachment_id):
        """
        Get information about an attachment by its attachmentID.

        :param attachment_id: The ID of the attachment.
        :return: The name of the attached file.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_attachment(
                attachmentId=attachment_id
            )
            attached_file = response["attachment"]["fileName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get attachment description. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return attached_file


    def resolve_case(self, case_id):
        """
        Resolve a support case by its caseId.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case to resolve.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.resolve_case(caseId=case_id)
            final_status = response["finalCaseStatus"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't resolve case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return final_status


    def describe_cases(self, after_time, before_time, resolved):
        """
        Describe support cases over a period of time, optionally filtering
        by status.

        :param after_time: The start time to include for cases.
        :param before_time: The end time to include for cases.
        :param resolved: True to include resolved cases in the results,
            otherwise results are open cases.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            cases = []
            paginator = self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_cases")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                afterTime=after_time,
                beforeTime=before_time,
                includeResolvedCases=resolved,
                language="en",
            ):
                cases += page["cases"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
```

```
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe cases. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            if resolved:
                cases = filter(lambda case: case["status"] == "resolved", cases)
            return cases
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels
  - ResolveCase

Actions for Support using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Support actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Support API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddAttachmentsToSet with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use AddCommunicationToCase with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateCase with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeAttachment with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeCases with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeCommunications with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeServices with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeSeverityLevels with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries with a CLI
- Use DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks with a CLI
- Use RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck with a CLI
- Use ResolveCase with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AddAttachmentsToSet` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does
not exist.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="data">The data for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="fileName">The file name for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional setId for the attachment. Creates
a new attachment set if empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The setId of the attachment.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddAttachmentToSet(MemoryStream data, string
fileName, string? attachmentSetId = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddAttachmentsToSetAsync(
            new AddAttachmentsToSetRequest
            {
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                Attachments = new List<Attachment>
                {
                    new Attachment
                    {
                        Data = data,
                        FileName = fileName
                    }
                }
            });
        return response.AttachmentSetId;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add an attachment to a set

The following `add-attachments-to-set` example adds an image to a set that you can then specify for a support case in your AWS account.

```
aws support add-attachments-to-set \
    --attachment-set-id "as-2f5a6faa2a4a1e600-mu-nk5xQlBr70-
G1cUos5LZkd38KOAHZa9BMDVzNEXAMPLE" \
    --attachments fileName=troubleshoot-screenshot.png,data=base64-encoded-string
```

Output:

```
{
    "attachmentSetId": "as-2f5a6faa2a4a1e600-mu-nk5xQlBr70-
G1cUos5LZkd38KOAHZa9BMDVzNEXAMPLE",
    "expiryTime": "2020-05-14T17:04:40.790+0000"
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String addAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
 fileAttachment) {
        try {
            File myFile = new File(fileAttachment);
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(myFile);
```

```
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            Attachment attachment = Attachment.builder()
                    .fileName(myFile.getName())
                    .data(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            AddAttachmentsToSetRequest setRequest =
 AddAttachmentsToSetRequest.builder()
                    .attachments(attachment)
                    .build();

            AddAttachmentsToSetResponse response =
 supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest);
            return response.attachmentSetId();

        } catch (SupportException | FileNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AddAttachmentsToSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
```

```
    // Create a new attachment set or add attachments to an existing set.
    // Provide an 'attachmentSetId' value to add attachments to an existing set.
    // Use AddCommunicationToCase or CreateCase to associate an attachment set
 with a support case.
    const response = await client.send(
      new AddAttachmentsToSetCommand({
        // You can add up to three attachments per set. The size limit is 5 MB
 per attachment.
        attachments: [
          {
            fileName: "example.txt",
            data: new TextEncoder().encode("some example text"),
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    // Use this ID in AddCommunicationToCase or CreateCase.
    console.log(response.attachmentSetId);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addAttachment(fileAttachment: String): String? {
    val myFile = File(fileAttachment)
    val sourceBytes = (File(fileAttachment).readBytes())
    val attachmentVal =
        Attachment {
```

```
            fileName = myFile.name
            data = sourceBytes
        }

    val setRequest =
        AddAttachmentsToSetRequest {
            attachments = listOf(attachmentVal)
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest)
        return response.attachmentSetId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
```

```
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def add_attachment_to_set(self):
        """
        Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does
not exist.

        :return: The attachment set ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.add_attachments_to_set(
                attachments=[
                    {
                        "fileName": "attachment_file.txt",
                        "data": b"This is a sample file for attachment to a
support case.",
                    }
                ]
            )
            new_set_id = response["attachmentSetId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add attachment. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return new_set_id
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `AddCommunicationToCase` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add communication to a case, including optional attachment set ID and CC
 email addresses.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the communication.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="ccEmailAddresses">Optional list of CC email addresses.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddCommunicationToCase(string caseId, string body,
        string? attachmentSetId = null, List<string>? ccEmailAddresses = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddCommunicationToCaseAsync(
            new AddCommunicationToCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                CommunicationBody = body,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                CcEmailAddresses = ccEmailAddresses
            });
        return response.Result;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add communication to a case

The following `add-communication-to-case` example adds communications to a support case in your AWS account.

```
aws support add-communication-to-case \
    --case-id "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" \
    --communication-body "I'm attaching a set of images to this case." \
    --cc-email-addresses "myemail@example.com" \
    --attachment-set-id "as-2f5a6faa2a4a1e600-mu-nk5xQlBr70-
G1cUos5LZkd38KOAHZa9BMDVzNEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "result": true
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void addAttachSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId, String attachmentSetId) {
       try {
           AddCommunicationToCaseRequest caseRequest =
AddCommunicationToCaseRequest.builder()
                   .caseId(caseId)
                   .attachmentSetId(attachmentSetId)
                   .communicationBody("Please refer to attachment for details.")
                   .build();

           AddCommunicationToCaseResponse response =
supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest);
           if (response.result())
               System.out.println("You have successfully added a communication
to an AWS Support case");
           else
               System.out.println("There was an error adding the communication
to an AWS Support case");

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AddCommunicationToCaseCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  let attachmentSetId;

  try {
    // Add a communication to a case.
    const response = await client.send(
      new AddCommunicationToCaseCommand({
        communicationBody: "Adding an attachment.",
        // Set value to an existing support case id.
        caseId: "CASE_ID",
        // Optional. Set value to an existing attachment set id to add
 attachments to the case.
        attachmentSetId,
      }),
    );
    console.log(response);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addAttachSupportCase(
    caseIdVal: String?,
    attachmentSetIdVal: String?,
) {
    val caseRequest =
        AddCommunicationToCaseRequest {
```

```
            caseId = caseIdVal
            attachmentSetId = attachmentSetIdVal
            communicationBody = "Please refer to attachment for details."
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest)
        if (response.result) {
            println("You have successfully added a communication to an AWS
 Support case")
        } else {
            println("There was an error adding the communication to an AWS
 Support case")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Adds the body of an email communication to the specified case.

```
Add-ASACommunicationToCase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -
CommunicationBody "Some text about the case"
```

Example 2: Adds the body of an email communication to the specified case plus one or more email addresses contained in the CC line of the email.

```
Add-ASACommunicationToCase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -
CcEmailAddress @("email1@address.com", "email2@address.com") -CommunicationBody
 "Some text about the case"
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Adds the body of an email communication to the specified case.

```
Add-ASACommunicationToCase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -
CommunicationBody "Some text about the case"
```

Example 2: Adds the body of an email communication to the specified case plus one or more email addresses contained in the CC line of the email.

```
Add-ASACommunicationToCase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -
CcEmailAddress @("email1@address.com", "email2@address.com") -CommunicationBody
 "Some text about the case"
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)
```

```
    def add_communication_to_case(self, attachment_set_id, case_id):
        """
        Add a communication and an attachment set to a case.

        :param attachment_set_id: The ID of an existing attachment set.
        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        """
        try:
            self.support_client.add_communication_to_case(
                caseId=case_id,
                communicationBody="This is an example communication added to a
support case.",
                attachmentSetId=attachment_set_id,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add communication. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateCase` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateCase`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceCode">Service code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="categoryCode">Category for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severityCode">Severity code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
(“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set for the
new case.</param>
    /// <param name="issueType">Optional issue type for the new case. Options are
"customer-service" or "technical".</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateCase(string serviceCode, string categoryCode,
string severityCode, string subject,
        string body, string language = "en", string? attachmentSetId = null,
string issueType = "customer-service")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.CreateCaseAsync(
            new CreateCaseRequest()
            {
                ServiceCode = serviceCode,
                CategoryCode = categoryCode,
                SeverityCode = severityCode,
                Subject = subject,
                Language = language,
```

```
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                IssueType = issueType,
                CommunicationBody = body
            });
        return response.CaseId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a case

The following `create-case` example creates a support case for your AWS account.

```
aws support create-case \
    --category-code "using-aws" \
    --cc-email-addresses "myemail@example.com" \
    --communication-body "I want to learn more about an AWS service." \
    --issue-type "technical" \
    --language "en" \
    --service-code "general-info" \
    --severity-code "low" \
    --subject "Question about my account"
```

Output:

```
{
    "caseId": "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient,
List<String> sevCatList, String sevLevel) {
       try {
           String serviceCode = sevCatList.get(0);
           String caseCat = sevCatList.get(1);
           CreateCaseRequest caseRequest = CreateCaseRequest.builder()
                   .categoryCode(caseCat.toLowerCase())
                   .serviceCode(serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                   .severityCode(sevLevel.toLowerCase())
                   .communicationBody("Test issue with " +
serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                   .subject("Test case, please ignore")
                   .language("en")
                   .issueType("technical")
                   .build();

           CreateCaseResponse response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest);
           return response.caseId();

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateCaseCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Create a new case and log the case id.
    // Important: This creates a real support case in your account.
    const response = await client.send(
      new CreateCaseCommand({
        // The subject line of the case.
        subject: "IGNORE: Test case",
        // Use DescribeServices to find available service codes for each service.
        serviceCode: "service-quicksight-end-user",
        // Use DescribeSecurityLevels to find available severity codes for your
 support plan.
        severityCode: "low",
        // Use DescribeServices to find available category codes for each
 service.
        categoryCode: "end-user-support",
        // The main description of the support case.
        communicationBody: "This is a test. Please ignore.",
      }),
    );
    console.log(response.caseId);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createSupportCase(
    sevCatListVal: List<String>,
    sevLevelVal: String,
): String? {
    val serCode = sevCatListVal[0]
    val caseCategory = sevCatListVal[1]
    val caseRequest =
        CreateCaseRequest {
            categoryCode = caseCategory.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            serviceCode = serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            severityCode = sevLevelVal.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            communicationBody = "Test issue with
 ${serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())}"
            subject = "Test case, please ignore"
            language = "en"
            issueType = "technical"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest)
        return response.caseId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Creates a new case in the AWS Support Center. Values for the -ServiceCode and -CategoryCode parameters can be obtained using the Get-ASAService cmdlet. The value for the -SeverityCode parameter can be obtained using the Get-ASASeverityLevel cmdlet. The -IssueType parameter value can be either "customer-service" or "technical". If successful the AWS Support case number is output. By default the case will be handled in English, to use Japanese add the -Language "ja" parameter. The -ServiceCode, -CategoryCode, -Subject and -CommunicationBody parameters are mandatory.

```
New-ASACase -ServiceCode "amazon-cloudfront" -CategoryCode "APIs" -SeverityCode
 "low" -Subject "subject text" -CommunicationBody "description of the case" -
CcEmailAddress @("email1@domain.com", "email2@domain.com") -IssueType "technical"
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new case in the AWS Support Center. Values for the -ServiceCode and -CategoryCode parameters can be obtained using the Get-ASAService cmdlet. The value for the -SeverityCode parameter can be obtained using the Get-ASASeverityLevel cmdlet. The -IssueType parameter value can be either "customer-service" or "technical". If successful the AWS Support case number is output. By default the case will be handled in English, to use Japanese add the -Language "ja" parameter. The -ServiceCode, -CategoryCode, -Subject and -CommunicationBody parameters are mandatory.

```
New-ASACase -ServiceCode "amazon-cloudfront" -CategoryCode "APIs" -SeverityCode
 "low" -Subject "subject text" -CommunicationBody "description of the case" -
CcEmailAddress @("email1@domain.com", "email2@domain.com") -IssueType "technical"
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def create_case(self, service, category, severity):
        """
        Create a new support case.

        :param service: The service to use for the new case.
        :param category: The category to use for the new case.
        :param severity: The severity to use for the new case.
        :return: The caseId of the new case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.create_case(
                subject="Example case for testing, ignore.",
                serviceCode=service["code"],
                severityCode=severity["code"],
```

```
                categoryCode=category["code"],
                communicationBody="Example support case body.",
                language="en",
                issueType="customer-service",
            )
            case_id = response["caseId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return case_id
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeAttachment` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get description of a specific attachment.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment, usually fetched by
 describing the communications of a case.</param>
    /// <returns>The attachment object.</returns>
    public async Task<Attachment> DescribeAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeAttachmentAsync(
            new DescribeAttachmentRequest()
            {
                AttachmentId = attachmentId
            });
        return response.Attachment;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an attachment

The following `describe-attachment` example returns information about the attachment with the specified ID.

```
aws support describe-attachment \
```

```
    --attachment-id "attachment-KBnjRNrePd9D6Jx0-Mm00xZuDEaL2JAj_0-
gJv9qqDooTipsz3V1Nb19rCfkZneeQeDPgp8X1iVJyHH7UuhZDdNeqGoduZsPrAhyMakqlc60-
iJjL5HqyYGiT1FG8EXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "attachment": {
        "fileName": "troubleshoot-screenshot.png",
        "data": "base64-blob"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
attachId) {
       try {
           DescribeAttachmentRequest attachmentRequest =
DescribeAttachmentRequest.builder()
                   .attachmentId(attachId)
                   .build();

           DescribeAttachmentResponse response =
supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest);
           System.out.println("The name of the file is " +
response.attachment().fileName());

       } catch (SupportException e) {
```

```
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeAttachmentCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get the metadata and content of an attachment.
    const response = await client.send(
      new DescribeAttachmentCommand({
        // Set value to an existing attachment id.
        // Use DescribeCommunications or DescribeCases to find an attachment id.
        attachmentId: "ATTACHMENT_ID",
      }),
    );
    console.log(response.attachment?.fileName);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAttachment(attachId: String?) {
    val attachmentRequest =
        DescribeAttachmentRequest {
            attachmentId = attachId
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest)
        println("The name of the file is ${response.attachment?.fileName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
```

```
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_attachment(self, attachment_id):
        """
        Get information about an attachment by its attachmentID.

        :param attachment_id: The ID of the attachment.
        :return: The name of the attached file.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_attachment(
                attachmentId=attachment_id
            )
            attached_file = response["attachment"]["fileName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get attachment description. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return attached_file
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeCases` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCases`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get case details for a list of case ids, optionally with date filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseIds">The list of case IDs.</param>
    /// <param name="displayId">Optional display ID.</param>
    /// <param name="includeCommunication">True to include communication.
 Defaults to true.</param>
    /// <param name="includeResolvedCases">True to include resolved cases.
 Defaults to false.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
 (“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of CaseDetails.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<CaseDetails>> DescribeCases(List<string> caseIds,
 string? displayId = null, bool includeCommunication = true,
        bool includeResolvedCases = false, DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime?
 beforeTime = null,
        string language = "en")
    {
        var results = new List<CaseDetails>();
        var paginateCases = _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCases(
            new DescribeCasesRequest()
            {
                CaseIdList = caseIds,
                DisplayId = displayId,
                IncludeCommunications = includeCommunication,
                IncludeResolvedCases = includeResolvedCases,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s"),
                Language = language
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var cases in paginateCases.Cases)
        {
            results.Add(cases);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a case

The following `describe-cases` example returns information about the specified support case in your AWS account.

```
aws support describe-cases \
    --display-id "1234567890" \
    --after-time "2020-03-23T21:31:47.774Z" \
    --include-resolved-cases \
```

```
    --language "en" \
    --no-include-communications \
    --max-item 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "cases": [
        {
            "status": "resolved",
            "ccEmailAddresses": [],
            "timeCreated": "2020-03-23T21:31:47.774Z",
            "caseId": "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47",
            "severityCode": "low",
            "language": "en",
            "categoryCode": "using-aws",
            "serviceCode": "general-info",
            "submittedBy": "myemail@example.com",
            "displayId": "1234567890",
            "subject": "Question about my account"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void getOpenCase(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            // Specify the start and end time.
```

```
            Instant now = Instant.now();
            java.time.LocalDate.now();
            Instant yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

            DescribeCasesRequest describeCasesRequest =
 DescribeCasesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .afterTime(yesterday.toString())
                    .beforeTime(now.toString())
                    .build();

            DescribeCasesResponse response =
 supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest);
            List<CaseDetails> cases = response.cases();
            for (CaseDetails sinCase : cases) {
                System.out.println("The case status is " + sinCase.status());
                System.out.println("The case Id is " + sinCase.caseId());
                System.out.println("The case subject is " + sinCase.subject());
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeCasesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get all of the unresolved cases in your account.
    // Filter or expand results by providing parameters to the
 DescribeCasesCommand. Refer
    // to the TypeScript definition and the API doc for more information on
 possible parameters.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/clients/client-
support/interfaces/describecasescommandinput.html
    const response = await client.send(new DescribeCasesCommand({}));
    const caseIds = response.cases.map((supportCase) => supportCase.caseId);
    console.log(caseIds);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getOpenCase() {
    // Specify the start and end time.
    val now = Instant.now()
    LocalDate.now()
    val yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS)
    val describeCasesRequest =
        DescribeCasesRequest {
            maxResults = 20
            afterTime = yesterday.toString()
            beforeTime = now.toString()
```

```
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest)
        response.cases?.forEach { sinCase ->
            println("The case status is ${sinCase.status}")
            println("The case Id is ${sinCase.caseId}")
            println("The case subject is ${sinCase.subject}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the details of all support cases.

```
Get-ASACase
```

Example 2: Returns the details of all support cases since the specified date and time.

```
Get-ASACase -AfterTime "2013-09-10T03:06Z"
```

Example 3: Returns the details of the first 10 support cases, including those that have been resolved.

```
Get-ASACase -MaxResult 10 -IncludeResolvedCases $true
```

Example 4: Returns the details of the single specified support case.

```
Get-ASACase -CaseIdList "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Example 5: Returns the details of specified support cases.

```
Get-ASACase -CaseIdList @("case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47",
 "case-18929034710-2011-c4fdeabf33c5cf47")
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the details of all support cases.

```
Get-ASACase
```

Example 2: Returns the details of all support cases since the specified date and time.

```
Get-ASACase -AfterTime "2013-09-10T03:06Z"
```

Example 3: Returns the details of the first 10 support cases, including those that have been resolved.

```
Get-ASACase -MaxResult 10 -IncludeResolvedCases $true
```

Example 4: Returns the details of the single specified support case.

```
Get-ASACase -CaseIdList "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Example 5: Returns the details of specified support cases.

```
Get-ASACase -CaseIdList @("case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47",
 "case-18929034710-2011-c4fdeabf33c5cf47")
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_cases(self, after_time, before_time, resolved):
        """
        Describe support cases over a period of time, optionally filtering
        by status.

        :param after_time: The start time to include for cases.
        :param before_time: The end time to include for cases.
        :param resolved: True to include resolved cases in the results,
            otherwise results are open cases.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            cases = []
            paginator = self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_cases")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                afterTime=after_time,
                beforeTime=before_time,
                includeResolvedCases=resolved,
                language="en",
            ):
                cases += page["cases"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
```

```
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe cases. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            if resolved:
                cases = filter(lambda case: case["status"] == "resolved", cases)
            return cases
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeCommunications` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Describe the communications for a case, optionally with a date filter.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">The ID of the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of communications for the case.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Communication>> DescribeCommunications(string caseId,
 DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime? beforeTime = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Communication>();
        var paginateCommunications =
 _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCommunications(
            new DescribeCommunicationsRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s")
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var communications in
 paginateCommunications.Communications)
        {
            results.Add(communications);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the latest communication for a case

The following `describe-communications` example returns the latest communication for the specified support case in your AWS account.

```
aws support describe-communications \
    --case-id "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" \
```

```
    --after-time "2020-03-23T21:31:47.774Z" \
    --max-item 1
```

Output:

```
{
    "communications": [
        {
            "body": "I want to learn more about an AWS service.",
            "attachmentSet": [],
            "caseId": "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47",
            "timeCreated": "2020-05-12T23:12:35.000Z",
            "submittedBy": "Amazon Web Services"
        }
    ],
    "NextToken":
 "eyJuZXh0VG9rZW4iOiBudWxsLCAiYm90b190cnVuY2F0ZV9hbW91bnQEXAMPLE=="
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String listCommunications(SupportClient supportClient, String
 caseId) {
        try {
            String attachId = null;
            DescribeCommunicationsRequest communicationsRequest =
 DescribeCommunicationsRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .maxResults(10)
```

```
                    .build();

            DescribeCommunicationsResponse response =
 supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest);
            List<Communication> communications = response.communications();
            for (Communication comm : communications) {
                System.out.println("the body is: " + comm.body());

                // Get the attachment id value.
                List<AttachmentDetails> attachments = comm.attachmentSet();
                for (AttachmentDetails detail : attachments) {
                    attachId = detail.attachmentId();
                }
            }
            return attachId;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeCommunicationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
```

```
    // Get all communications for the support case.
    // Filter results by providing parameters to the
 DescribeCommunicationsCommand. Refer
    // to the TypeScript definition and the API doc for more information on
 possible parameters.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/clients/client-
support/interfaces/describecommunicationscommandinput.html
    const response = await client.send(
      new DescribeCommunicationsCommand({
        // Set value to an existing case id.
        caseId: "CASE_ID",
      }),
    );
    const text = response.communications.map((item) => item.body).join("\n");
    console.log(text);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listCommunications(caseIdVal: String?): String? {
    val communicationsRequest =
        DescribeCommunicationsRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
```

```
        val response =
 supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest)
        response.communications?.forEach { comm ->
            println("the body is: " + comm.body)
            comm.attachmentSet?.forEach { detail ->
                return detail.attachmentId
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all communications for the specified case.

```
Get-ASACommunication -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Example 2: Returns all communications since midnight UTC on January 1st 2012 for the specified case.

```
Get-ASACommunication -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -AfterTime
 "2012-01-10T00:00Z"
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all communications for the specified case.

```
Get-ASACommunication -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Example 2: Returns all communications since midnight UTC on January 1st 2012 for the specified case.

```
Get-ASACommunication -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -AfterTime
 "2012-01-10T00:00Z"
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_all_case_communications(self, case_id):
        """
        Describe all the communications for a case using a paginator.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        :return: The communications for the case.
        """
```

```
        try:
            communications = []
            paginator =
self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_communications")
            for page in paginator.paginate(caseId=case_id):
                communications += page["communications"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe communications. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return communications
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeServices` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeServices`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of AWS services.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for services.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
(“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of AWS service descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Service>> DescribeServices(string language = "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
            new DescribeServicesRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.Services;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list AWS services and service categories

The following `describe-services` example lists the available service categories for requesting general information.

```
aws support describe-services \
    --service-code-list "general-info"
```

Output:

```
{
    "services": [
        {
            "code": "general-info",
            "name": "General Info and Getting Started",
            "categories": [
                {
                    "code": "charges",
                    "name": "How Will I Be Charged?"
                },
                {
                    "code": "gdpr-queries",
                    "name": "Data Privacy Query"
                },
                {
                    "code": "reserved-instances",
                    "name": "Reserved Instances"
                },
                {
                    "code": "resource",
                    "name": "Where is my Resource?"
                },
                {
                    "code": "using-aws",
                    "name": "Using AWS & Services"
                },
                {
                    "code": "free-tier",
                    "name": "Free Tier"
                },
                {
                    "code": "security-and-compliance",
                    "name": "Security & Compliance"
                },
                {
                    "code": "account-structure",
                    "name": "Account Structure"
                }
```

```
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
   public static List<String> displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
       try {
           DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                   .language("en")
                   .build();

           DescribeServicesResponse response =
supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
           String serviceCode = null;
           String catName = null;
           List<String> sevCatList = new ArrayList<>();
           List<Service> services = response.services();

           System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
           int index = 1;
           for (Service service : services) {
               if (index == 11)
                   break;

               System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());
               if (service.name().compareTo("Account") == 0)
```

```
                    serviceCode = service.code();

                // Get the Categories for this service.
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                    if (cat.name().compareTo("Security") == 0)
                        catName = cat.name();
                }
                index++;
            }

            // Push the two values to the list.
            sevCatList.add(serviceCode);
            sevCatList.add(catName);
            return sevCatList;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displayServices(): List<String> {
    var serviceCode = ""
    var catName = ""
    val sevCatList = mutableListOf<String>()
```

```
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is ${service.name}")
            if (service.name == "Account") {
                serviceCode = service.code.toString()
            }

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                if (cat.name == "Security") {
                    catName = cat.name!!
                }
            }
            index++
        }
    }

    // Push the two values to the list.
    serviceCode.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    catName.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    return sevCatList
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns all available service codes, names and categories.

```
Get-ASAService
```

Example 2: Returns the name and categories for the service with the specified code.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList "amazon-cloudfront"
```

Example 3: Returns the name and categories for the specified service codes.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList @("amazon-cloudfront", "amazon-cloudwatch")
```

Example 4: Returns the name and categories (in Japanese) for the specified service codes. Currently English ("en") and Japanese ("ja") language codes are supported.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList @("amazon-cloudfront", "amazon-cloudwatch") -
Language "ja"
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all available service codes, names and categories.

```
Get-ASAService
```

Example 2: Returns the name and categories for the service with the specified code.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList "amazon-cloudfront"
```

Example 3: Returns the name and categories for the specified service codes.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList @("amazon-cloudfront", "amazon-cloudwatch")
```

Example 4: Returns the name and categories (in Japanese) for the specified service codes. Currently English ("en") and Japanese ("ja") language codes are supported.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList @("amazon-cloudfront", "amazon-cloudwatch") -
Language "ja"
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_services(self, language):
        """
        Get the descriptions of AWS services available for support for a
 language.

        :param language: The language for support services.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of AWS service descriptions.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_services(language=language)
            services = response["services"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get Support services for language %s. Here's why:
%s: %s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return services
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeSeverityLevels` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of support severity levels.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for severity levels.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean
(“ko”) are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of support severity levels.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SeverityLevel>> DescribeSeverityLevels(string language
= "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeSeverityLevelsAsync(
            new DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.SeverityLevels;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the available severity levels

The following `describe-severity-levels` example lists the available severity levels for a support case.

```
aws support describe-severity-levels
```

Output:

```
{
    "severityLevels": [
        {
            "code": "low",
            "name": "Low"
        },
        {
            "code": "normal",
            "name": "Normal"
        },
        {
            "code": "high",
            "name": "High"
        },
        {
            "code": "urgent",
            "name": "Urgent"
        },
        {
            "code": "critical",
            "name": "Critical"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Choosing a severity in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String displaySevLevels(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest severityLevelsRequest =
DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeSeverityLevelsResponse response =
supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest);
            List<SeverityLevel> severityLevels = response.severityLevels();
            String levelName = null;
            for (SeverityLevel sevLevel : severityLevels) {
                System.out.println("The severity level name is: " +
sevLevel.name());
                if (sevLevel.name().compareTo("High") == 0)
                    levelName = sevLevel.name();
            }
            return levelName;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";
```

```
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get the list of severity levels.
    // The available values depend on the support plan for the account.
    const response = await client.send(new DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand({}));
    console.log(response.severityLevels);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun displaySevLevels(): String {
    var levelName = ""
    val severityLevelsRequest =
        DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response =
 supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest)
        response.severityLevels?.forEach { sevLevel ->
            println("The severity level name is: ${sevLevel.name}")
            if (sevLevel.name == "High") {
                levelName = sevLevel.name!!
            }
```

```
        }
        return levelName
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the list of severity levels that can be assigned to an AWS Support case.

```
Get-ASASeverityLevel
```

Example 2: Returns the list of severity levels that can be assigned to an AWS Support case. The names of the levels are returned in Japanese.

```
Get-ASASeverityLevel -Language "ja"
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the list of severity levels that can be assigned to an AWS Support case.

```
Get-ASASeverityLevel
```

Example 2: Returns the list of severity levels that can be assigned to an AWS Support case. The names of the levels are returned in Japanese.

```
Get-ASASeverityLevel -Language "ja"
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_severity_levels(self, language):
        """
        Get the descriptions of available severity levels for support cases for a
 language.

        :param language: The language for support severity levels.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of severity levels.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.support_client.describe_severity_levels(language=language)
            severity_levels = response["severityLevels"]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get severity levels for language %s. Here's why:
 %s: %s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return severity_levels
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the refresh statuses of AWS Trusted Advisor checks

The following `describe-trusted-advisor-check-refresh-statuses` example lists the refresh statuses for two Trusted Advisor checks: Amazon S3 Bucket Permissions and IAM Use.

```
aws support describe-trusted-advisor-check-refresh-statuses \
    --check-id "Pfx0RwqBli" "zXCkfM1nI3"
```

Output:

```
{
    "statuses": [
        {
            "checkId": "Pfx0RwqBli",
            "status": "none",
            "millisUntilNextRefreshable": 0
        },
        {
            "checkId": "zXCkfM1nI3",
            "status": "none",
            "millisUntilNextRefreshable": 0
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS Trusted Advisor in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the current status of refresh requests for the specified checks. Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh can be used to request that the status information of the checks be refreshed.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatus -CheckId @("checkid1", "checkid2")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the current status of refresh requests for the specified checks. Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh can be used to request that the status information of the checks be refreshed.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatus -CheckId @("checkid1", "checkid2")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the results of an AWS Trusted Advisor check

The following `describe-trusted-advisor-check-result` example lists the results of the IAM Use check.

```
aws support describe-trusted-advisor-check-result \
    --check-id "zXCkfM1nI3"
```

Output:

```
{
    "result": {
        "checkId": "zXCkfM1nI3",
        "timestamp": "2020-05-13T21:38:05Z",
        "status": "ok",
        "resourcesSummary": {
            "resourcesProcessed": 1,
            "resourcesFlagged": 0,
            "resourcesIgnored": 0,
            "resourcesSuppressed": 0
        },
        "categorySpecificSummary": {
            "costOptimizing": {
                "estimatedMonthlySavings": 0.0,
                "estimatedPercentMonthlySavings": 0.0
            }
        },
        "flaggedResources": [
            {
                "status": "ok",
                "resourceId": "47DEQpj8HBSa-_TImW-5JCeuQeRkm5NMpJWZEXAMPLE",
```

```
                "isSuppressed": false
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Trusted Advisor in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the results of a Trusted Advisor check. The list of available Trusted Advisor checks can be obtained using Get-ASATrustedAdvisorChecks. The output is the overall status of the check, the timestamp at which the check was last run and the unique checkid for the specific check. To have the results output in Japanese, add the -Language "ja" parameter.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckResult -CheckId "checkid1"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the results of a Trusted Advisor check. The list of available Trusted Advisor checks can be obtained using Get-ASATrustedAdvisorChecks. The output is the overall status of the check, the timestamp at which the check was last run and the unique checkid for the specific check. To have the results output in Japanese, add the -Language "ja" parameter.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckResult -CheckId "checkid1"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the summaries of AWS Trusted Advisor checks

The following `describe-trusted-advisor-check-summaries` example lists the results for two Trusted Advisor checks: Amazon S3 Bucket Permissions and IAM Use.

```
aws support describe-trusted-advisor-check-summaries \
    --check-ids "Pfx0RwqBli" "zXCkfM1nI3"
```

Output:

```
{
    "summaries": [
        {
            "checkId": "Pfx0RwqBli",
            "timestamp": "2020-05-13T21:38:12Z",
            "status": "ok",
            "hasFlaggedResources": true,
            "resourcesSummary": {
                "resourcesProcessed": 44,
                "resourcesFlagged": 0,
                "resourcesIgnored": 0,
                "resourcesSuppressed": 0
            },
            "categorySpecificSummary": {
                "costOptimizing": {
                    "estimatedMonthlySavings": 0.0,
                    "estimatedPercentMonthlySavings": 0.0
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "checkId": "zXCkfM1nI3",
            "timestamp": "2020-05-13T21:38:05Z",
            "status": "ok",
            "hasFlaggedResources": true,
            "resourcesSummary": {
                "resourcesProcessed": 1,
                "resourcesFlagged": 0,
                "resourcesIgnored": 0,
```

```
                "resourcesSuppressed": 0
            },
            "categorySpecificSummary": {
                "costOptimizing": {
                    "estimatedMonthlySavings": 0.0,
                    "estimatedPercentMonthlySavings": 0.0
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS Trusted Advisor in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the latest summary for the specified Trusted Advisor check.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary -CheckId "checkid1"
```

Example 2: Returns the latest summaries for the specified Trusted Advisor checks.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary -CheckId @("checkid1", "checkid2")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the latest summary for the specified Trusted Advisor check.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary -CheckId "checkid1"
```

Example 2: Returns the latest summaries for the specified Trusted Advisor checks.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary -CheckId @("checkid1", "checkid2")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the available AWS Trusted Advisor checks

The following `describe-trusted-advisor-checks` example lists the available Trusted Advisor checks in your AWS account. This information includes the check name, ID, description, category, and metadata. Note that the output is shortened for readability.

```
aws support describe-trusted-advisor-checks \
    --language "en"
```

Output:

```
{
    "checks": [
        {
            "id": "zXCkfM1nI3",
            "name": "IAM Use",
            "description": "Checks for your use of AWS Identity and Access
 Management (IAM). You can use IAM to create users, groups, and roles in
 AWS, and you can use permissions to control access to AWS resources. \n<br>
\n<br>\n<b>Alert Criteria</b><br>\nYellow: No IAM users have been created
 for this account.\n<br>\n<br>\n<b>Recommended Action</b><br>\nCreate one or
 more IAM users and groups in your account. You can then create additional
 users whose permissions are limited to perform specific tasks in your AWS
 environment. For more information, see <a href=\"https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
IAM/latest/UserGuide/IAMGettingStarted.html\" target=\"_blank\">Getting
 Started</a>. \n<br><br>\n<b>Additional Resources</b><br>\n<a href=\"https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/IAM_Introduction.html\" target=\"_blank
\">What Is IAM?</a>",
            "category": "security",
            "metadata": []
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS Trusted Advisor in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the collection of Trusted Advisor checks. You must specify the Language parameter which can accept either "en" for English output or "ja" for Japanese output.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheck -Language "en"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of Trusted Advisor checks. You must specify the Language parameter which can accept either "en" for English output or "ja" for Japanese output.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheck -Language "en"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To refresh an AWS Trusted Advisor check

The following `refresh-trusted-advisor-check` example refreshes the Amazon S3 Bucket Permissions Trusted Advisor check in your AWS account.

```
aws support refresh-trusted-advisor-check \
    --check-id "Pfx0RwqBli"
```

Output:

```
{
    "status": {
        "checkId": "Pfx0RwqBli",
        "status": "enqueued",
        "millisUntilNextRefreshable": 3599992
    }
}
```

For more information, see AWS Trusted Advisor in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Requests a refresh for the specified Trusted Advisor check.

```
Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh -CheckId "checkid1"
```

- For API details, see RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Requests a refresh for the specified Trusted Advisor check.

```
Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh -CheckId "checkid1"
```

- For API details, see RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ResolveCase` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ResolveCase`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Resolve a support case by caseId.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
/// <returns>The final status of the case after resolving.</returns>
public async Task<string> ResolveCase(string caseId)
{
    var response = await _amazonSupport.ResolveCaseAsync(
        new ResolveCaseRequest()
        {
            CaseId = caseId
        });
    return response.FinalCaseStatus;
}
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To resolve a support case

The following `resolve-case` example resolves a support case in your AWS account.

```
aws support resolve-case \
    --case-id "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Output:

```
{
    "finalCaseStatus": "resolved",
    "initialCaseStatus": "work-in-progress"
}
```

For more information, see Case management in the *AWS Support User Guide*.

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void resolveSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
 caseId) {
        try {
            ResolveCaseRequest caseRequest = ResolveCaseRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .build();

            ResolveCaseResponse response =
 supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The status of case " + caseId + " is " +
 response.finalCaseStatus());

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ResolveCaseCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const main = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new ResolveCaseCommand({
        caseId: "CASE_ID",
      }),
    );

    console.log(response.finalCaseStatus);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun resolveSupportCase(caseIdVal: String) {
    val caseRequest =
        ResolveCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
        }
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest)
        println("The status of case $caseIdVal is ${response.finalCaseStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Returns the initial state of the specified case and the current state after the call to resolve it is completed.

```
Resolve-ASACase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the initial state of the specified case and the current state after the call to resolve it is completed.

```
Resolve-ASACase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def resolve_case(self, case_id):
        """
        Resolve a support case by its caseId.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case to resolve.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.resolve_case(caseId=case_id)
```

```
            final_status = response["finalCaseStatus"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't resolve case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return final_status
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS Systems Manager with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **Systems Manager User Guide** – More information about Systems Manager.
- **Systems Manager API Reference** – Details about all available Systems Manager actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Get started

Hello Systems Manager

The following code examples show how to get started using Systems Manager.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.DocumentFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ListDocumentsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ListDocumentsResponse;

public class HelloSSM {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <awsAccount>

                Where:
                    awsAccount - Your AWS Account number.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String awsAccount = args[0] ;
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
```

```
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listDocuments(ssmClient, awsAccount);
    }

    /*
    This code automatically fetches the next set of results using the `nextToken`
 and
    stops once the desired maxResults (20 in this case) have been reached.
    */
    public static void listDocuments(SsmClient ssmClient, String awsAccount) {
        String nextToken = null;
        int totalDocumentsReturned = 0;
        int maxResults = 20;
        do {
            ListDocumentsRequest request = ListDocumentsRequest.builder()
                .documentFilterList(
                    DocumentFilter.builder()
                        .key("Owner")
                        .value(awsAccount)
                        .build()
                    )
                .maxResults(maxResults)
                .nextToken(nextToken)
                .build();

            ListDocumentsResponse response = ssmClient.listDocuments(request);
            response.documentIdentifiers().forEach(identifier ->
 System.out.println("Document Name: " + identifier.name()));
            nextToken = response.nextToken();
            totalDocumentsReturned += response.documentIdentifiers().size();
        } while (nextToken != null && totalDocumentsReturned < maxResults);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { paginateListDocuments, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";

// Call ListDocuments and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new SSMClient();
  const listDocumentsPaginated = [];
  console.log(
    "Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n",
  );
  try {
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListDocuments({ client }, { MaxResults: 5 });
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listDocumentsPaginated.push(...page.DocumentIdentifiers);
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(`There was a problem saying hello: ${caught.message}`);
    throw caught;
  }

  for (const { Name, DocumentFormat, CreatedDate } of listDocumentsPaginated) {
    console.log(`${Name} - ${DocumentFormat} - ${CreatedDate}`);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def hello_systems_manager(ssm_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Systems Manager
    client and list the first 5 documents in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ssm_client: A Boto3 AWS Systems Manager Client object. This object
 wraps
                               the low-level AWS Systems Manager service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n")

    paginator = ssm_client.get_paginator("list_documents")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 5})
    for page in page_iterator:
        for document in page["DocumentIdentifiers"]:
            print(f"  {document['Name']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        hello_systems_manager(boto3.client("ssm"))
    except ClientError as err:
        print("Hello systems manager had an error.")
        print(err.response["Error"]["Code"])
```

```
        print(err.response["Error"]["Message"])
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs
  - Hello Systems Manager
  - Learn the basics of Systems Manager with an AWS SDK
  - Actions for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs
    - Use AddTagsToResource with a CLI
    - Use CancelCommand with a CLI
    - Use CreateActivation with a CLI
    - Use CreateAssociation with a CLI
    - Use CreateAssociationBatch with a CLI
    - Use CreateDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreateOpsItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use CreatePatchBaseline with a CLI
    - Use DeleteActivation with a CLI
    - Use DeleteAssociation with a CLI
    - Use DeleteDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DeleteOpsItem with an AWS SDK
    - Use DeleteParameter with a CLI
    - Use DeletePatchBaseline with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterManagedInstance with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
    - Use DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
    - Use DescribeActivations with a CLI

- Use DescribeAssociation with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociationExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutomationExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutomationStepExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAvailablePatches with a CLI
- Use DescribeDocument with a CLI
- Use DescribeDocumentPermission with a CLI
- Use DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations with a CLI
- Use DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceInformation with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatchStates with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatches with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindows with a CLI
- Use DescribeOpsItems with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeParameters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribePatchBaselines with a CLI
- Use DescribePatchGroupState with a CLI
- Use DescribePatchGroups with a CLI
- Use GetAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use GetCommandInvocation with a CLI
- Use GetConnectionStatus with a CLI

- Use GetDefaultPatchBaseline with a CLI

- Use GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance with a CLI
- Use GetDocument with a CLI
- Use GetInventory with a CLI
- Use GetInventorySchema with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindowExecution with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask with a CLI
- Use GetParameter with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetParameterHistory with a CLI
- Use GetParameters with a CLI
- Use GetPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use ListAssociationVersions with a CLI
- Use ListAssociations with a CLI
- Use ListCommandInvocations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCommands with a CLI
- Use ListComplianceItems with a CLI
- Use ListComplianceSummaries with a CLI
- Use ListDocumentVersions with a CLI
- Use ListDocuments with a CLI
- Use ListInventoryEntries with a CLI
- Use ListResourceComplianceSummaries with a CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with a CLI
- Use ModifyDocumentPermission with a CLI
- Use PutComplianceItems with a CLI
- Use PutInventory with a CLI
- Use PutParameter with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI

- Use RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow with a CLI

- Use RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromResource with a CLI
- Use SendCommand with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use StartSession with a CLI
- Use StopAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssociation with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssociationStatus with a CLI
- Use UpdateDocument with a CLI
- Use UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion with a CLI
- Use UpdateMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateManagedInstanceRole with a CLI
- Use UpdateOpsItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdatePatchBaseline with a CLI

Basic examples for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS Systems Manager with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Hello Systems Manager
- Learn the basics of Systems Manager with an AWS SDK
- Actions for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs
  - Use AddTagsToResource with a CLI
  - Use CancelCommand with a CLI
  - Use CreateActivation with a CLI
  - Use CreateAssociation with a CLI
  - Use CreateAssociationBatch with a CLI
  - Use CreateDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use CreateOpsItem with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use CreatePatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use DeleteActivation with a CLI
- Use DeleteAssociation with a CLI
- Use DeleteDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteOpsItem with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteParameter with a CLI
- Use DeletePatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use DeregisterManagedInstance with a CLI
- Use DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use DescribeActivations with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociation with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociationExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutomationExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutomationStepExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAvailablePatches with a CLI
- Use DescribeDocument with a CLI
- Use DescribeDocumentPermission with a CLI
- Use DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations with a CLI
- Use DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceInformation with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatchStates with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatches with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations with a CLI

- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks with a CLI

- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindows with a CLI
- Use DescribeOpsItems with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeParameters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribePatchBaselines with a CLI
- Use DescribePatchGroupState with a CLI
- Use DescribePatchGroups with a CLI
- Use GetAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use GetCommandInvocation with a CLI
- Use GetConnectionStatus with a CLI
- Use GetDefaultPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance with a CLI
- Use GetDocument with a CLI
- Use GetInventory with a CLI
- Use GetInventorySchema with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindowExecution with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask with a CLI
- Use GetParameter with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetParameterHistory with a CLI
- Use GetParameters with a CLI
- Use GetPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use ListAssociationVersions with a CLI
- Use ListAssociations with a CLI
- Use ListCommandInvocations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCommands with a CLI

- Use ListComplianceItems with a CLI

- Use ListComplianceSummaries with a CLI
- Use ListDocumentVersions with a CLI
- Use ListDocuments with a CLI
- Use ListInventoryEntries with a CLI
- Use ListResourceComplianceSummaries with a CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with a CLI
- Use ModifyDocumentPermission with a CLI
- Use PutComplianceItems with a CLI
- Use PutInventory with a CLI
- Use PutParameter with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromResource with a CLI
- Use SendCommand with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use StartSession with a CLI
- Use StopAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssociation with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssociationStatus with a CLI
- Use UpdateDocument with a CLI
- Use UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion with a CLI
- Use UpdateMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateManagedInstanceRole with a CLI
- Use UpdateOpsItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdatePatchBaseline with a CLI

Hello Systems Manager

Basics 14674

The following code examples show how to get started using Systems Manager.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.DocumentFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ListDocumentsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ListDocumentsResponse;

public class HelloSSM {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <awsAccount>

                Where:
                    awsAccount - Your AWS Account number.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String awsAccount = args[0] ;
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listDocuments(ssmClient, awsAccount);
    }
```

```
    /*
    This code automatically fetches the next set of results using the `nextToken`
 and
    stops once the desired maxResults (20 in this case) have been reached.
    */
    public static void listDocuments(SsmClient ssmClient, String awsAccount) {
        String nextToken = null;
        int totalDocumentsReturned = 0;
        int maxResults = 20;
        do {
            ListDocumentsRequest request = ListDocumentsRequest.builder()
                .documentFilterList(
                    DocumentFilter.builder()
                        .key("Owner")
                        .value(awsAccount)
                        .build()
                    )
                .maxResults(maxResults)
                .nextToken(nextToken)
                .build();

            ListDocumentsResponse response = ssmClient.listDocuments(request);
            response.documentIdentifiers().forEach(identifier ->
 System.out.println("Document Name: " + identifier.name()));
            nextToken = response.nextToken();
            totalDocumentsReturned += response.documentIdentifiers().size();
        } while (nextToken != null && totalDocumentsReturned < maxResults);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { paginateListDocuments, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";

// Call ListDocuments and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new SSMClient();
  const listDocumentsPaginated = [];
  console.log(
    "Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n",
  );
  try {
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListDocuments({ client }, { MaxResults: 5 });
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listDocumentsPaginated.push(...page.DocumentIdentifiers);
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(`There was a problem saying hello: ${caught.message}`);
    throw caught;
  }

  for (const { Name, DocumentFormat, CreatedDate } of listDocumentsPaginated) {
    console.log(`${Name} - ${DocumentFormat} - ${CreatedDate}`);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def hello_systems_manager(ssm_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Systems Manager
    client and list the first 5 documents in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ssm_client: A Boto3 AWS Systems Manager Client object. This object
 wraps
                               the low-level AWS Systems Manager service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n")

    paginator = ssm_client.get_paginator("list_documents")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 5})
    for page in page_iterator:
        for document in page["DocumentIdentifiers"]:
            print(f"  {document['Name']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        hello_systems_manager(boto3.client("ssm"))
    except ClientError as err:
        print("Hello systems manager had an error.")
        print(err.response["Error"]["Code"])
        print(err.response["Error"]["Message"])
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Learn the basics of Systems Manager with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Create a maintenance window.
- Modify the maintenance window schedule.
- Create a document.
- Send a command to a specified EC2 instance.
- Create an OpsItem.
- Update and resolve the OpsItem.
- Delete the maintenance window, OpsItem, and document.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.DocumentAlreadyExistsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.SsmException;

import java.util.Scanner;
public class SSMScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0",
 "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String usage = """
            Usage:
              <instanceId> <title> <source> <category> <severity>

            Where:
```

```
                instanceId - The Amazon EC2 Linux/UNIX instance Id that AWS
Systems Manager uses (ie, i-0149338494ed95f06).
                title - The title of the parameter (default is Disk Space Alert).
                source - The source of the parameter (default is EC2).
                category - The category of the parameter. Valid values are
'Availability', 'Cost', 'Performance', 'Recovery', 'Security' (default is
Performance).
                severity - The severity of the parameter. Severity should be a
number from 1 to 4 (default is 2).
        """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        SSMActions actions = new SSMActions();
        String documentName;
        String windowName;
        String instanceId = args[0];
        String title = "Disk Space Alert" ;
        String source = "EC2" ;
        String category = "Availability" ;
        String severity = "2" ;

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Welcome to the AWS Systems Manager SDK Basics scenario.
                This Java program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Systems
Manager using the AWS SDK for Java (v2).
                AWS Systems Manager is the operations hub for your AWS
applications and resources and a secure end-to-end management solution.
                The program's primary functionalities include creating a
maintenance window, creating a document, sending a command to a document,
                listing documents, listing commands, creating an OpsItem,
modifying an OpsItem, and deleting AWS SSM resources.
                Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
                Let's get started...

                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("1. Create an SSM maintenance window.");
        System.out.println("Please enter the maintenance window name (default is
ssm-maintenance-window):");
        String win = scanner.nextLine();
        windowName = win.isEmpty() ? "ssm-maintenance-window" : win;
        String winId = null;
        try {
            winId = actions.createMaintenanceWindow(windowName);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The maintenance window ID is: " + winId);
        } catch (DocumentAlreadyExistsException e) {
            System.err.println("The SSM maintenance window already exists.
Retrieving existing window ID...");
            String existingWinId = actions.createMaintenanceWindow(windowName);
            System.out.println("Existing window ID: " + existingWinId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("2. Modify the maintenance window by changing the
schedule");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.updateSSMMaintenanceWindow(winId, windowName);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The SSM maintenance window was successfully
updated");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("3. Create an SSM document that defines the actions
that Systems Manager performs on your managed nodes.");
        System.out.println("Please enter the document name (default is
ssmdocument):");
        String doc = scanner.nextLine();
        documentName = doc.isEmpty() ? "ssmdocument" : doc;
        try {
            actions.createSSMDoc(documentName);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The SSM document was successfully created");
        } catch (DocumentAlreadyExistsException e) {
            System.err.println("The SSM document already exists. Moving on");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("4. Now we are going to run a command on an EC2
instance");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String commandId="";
        try {
            commandId = actions.sendSSMCommand(documentName, instanceId);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The command was successfully sent. Command ID: "
+ commandId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println("Thread was interrupted: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("5. Lets get the time when the specific command was
sent to the specific managed node");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
```

```
            actions.displayCommands(commandId);
            System.out.println("The command invocations were successfully
displayed.");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
             6. Now we will create an SSM OpsItem.
             A SSM OpsItem is a feature provided by Amazon's Systems Manager
(SSM) service.
             It is a type of operational data item that allows you to manage and
track various operational issues,
             events, or tasks within your AWS environment.

             You can create OpsItems to track and manage operational issues as
they arise.
             For example, you could create an OpsItem whenever your application
detects a critical error
             or an anomaly in your infrastructure.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String opsItemId;
        try {
            opsItemId = actions.createSSMOpsItem(title, source, category,
severity);
            System.out.println(opsItemId + " was created");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Now we will update the SSM OpsItem "+opsItemId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String description = "An update to "+opsItemId ;
        try {
            actions.updateOpsItem(opsItemId, title, description);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Now we will get the status of the SSM OpsItem
 "+opsItemId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.describeOpsItems(opsItemId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Now we will resolve the SSM OpsItem "+opsItemId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.resolveOpsItem(opsItemId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("10. Would you like to delete the AWS Systems Manager
 resources? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            System.out.println("You selected to delete the resources.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                actions.deleteMaintenanceWindow(winId);
                actions.deleteDoc(documentName);
            } catch (SsmException e) {
                System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
                return;
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("The AWS Systems Manager resources will not be
 deleted");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("This concludes the AWS Systems Manager SDK Basics
 scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Systems Manager SDK methods.

```
public class SSMActions {

    private static SsmAsyncClient ssmAsyncClient;

    private static SsmAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ssmAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                    .maxConcurrency(100)
                    .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                    .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                    .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                    .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                            .numRetries(3)
                            .build())
                    .build();

            ssmAsyncClient = SsmAsyncClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .httpClient(httpClient)
                    .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param documentName The name of the document to delete.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM document.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
```

```
    public void deleteDoc(String documentName) {
        DeleteDocumentRequest documentRequest = DeleteDocumentRequest.builder()
                .name(documentName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().deleteDocument(documentRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("The SSM document was successfully
deleted.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM Maintenance Window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param winId The ID of the Maintenance Window to delete.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM Maintenance
Window.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void deleteMaintenanceWindow(String winId) {
```

```
        DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest windowRequest =
DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
                .windowId(winId)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().deleteMaintenanceWindow(windowRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("The maintenance window was
successfully deleted.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Resolves an AWS SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param opsID The ID of the OpsItem to resolve.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to resolve an SSM OpsItem.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void resolveOpsItem(String opsID) {
        UpdateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = UpdateOpsItemRequest.builder()
```

```
                .opsItemId(opsID)
                .status(OpsItemStatus.RESOLVED)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().updateOpsItem(opsItemRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("OpsItem resolved successfully.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Describes AWS SSM OpsItems asynchronously.
     *
     * @param key The key to filter OpsItems by (e.g., OPS_ITEM_ID).
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe SSM OpsItems.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the title and status of each
OpsItem.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void describeOpsItems(String key) {
        OpsItemFilter filter = OpsItemFilter.builder()
```

```
                .key(OpsItemFilterKey.OPS_ITEM_ID)
                .values(key)
                .operator(OpsItemFilterOperator.EQUAL)
                .build();

        DescribeOpsItemsRequest itemsRequest = DescribeOpsItemsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .opsItemFilters(filter)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().describeOpsItems(itemsRequest)
                    .thenAccept(itemsResponse -> {
                        List<OpsItemSummary> items =
itemsResponse.opsItemSummaries();
                        for (OpsItemSummary item : items) {
                            System.out.println("The item title is " +
item.title() + " and the status is " + item.status().toString());
                        }
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Updates the AWS SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param opsItemId The ID of the OpsItem to update.
     * @param title The new title of the OpsItem.
     * @param description The new description of the OpsItem.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update an SSM OpsItem.
     * If the request is successful, it completes without returning a value.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void updateOpsItem(String opsItemId, String title, String description)
{
        Map<String, OpsItemDataValue> operationalData = new HashMap<>();
        operationalData.put("key1",
OpsItemDataValue.builder().value("value1").build());
        operationalData.put("key2",
OpsItemDataValue.builder().value("value2").build());

        CompletableFuture<Void> future =
getOpsItem(opsItemId).thenCompose(opsItem -> {
            UpdateOpsItemRequest request = UpdateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                    .opsItemId(opsItemId)
                    .title(title)
                    .operationalData(operationalData)
                    .status(opsItem.statusAsString())
                    .description(description)
                    .build();

            return getAsyncClient().updateOpsItem(request).thenAccept(response ->
{
                System.out.println(opsItemId + " updated successfully.");
            }).exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new CompletionException(ex);
            });
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
```

```
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }


    private static CompletableFuture<OpsItem> getOpsItem(String opsItemId) {
        GetOpsItemRequest request =
GetOpsItemRequest.builder().opsItemId(opsItemId).build();
        return
getAsyncClient().getOpsItem(request).thenApply(GetOpsItemResponse::opsItem);
    }

    /**
     * Creates an SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param title The title of the OpsItem.
     * @param source The source of the OpsItem.
     * @param category The category of the OpsItem.
     * @param severity The severity of the OpsItem.
     * @return The ID of the created OpsItem.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM OpsItem.
     * If the request is successful, it returns the OpsItem ID.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public String createSSMOpsItem(String title, String source, String category,
String severity) {
        CreateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = CreateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                .description("Created by the SSM Java API")
                .title(title)
                .source(source)
                .category(category)
                .severity(severity)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateOpsItemResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createOpsItem(opsItemRequest);
```

```
        try {
            CreateOpsItemResponse response = future.join();
            return response.opsItemId();
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            Throwable cause = e.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw (SsmException) cause;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Displays the date and time when the specific command was invoked.
     *
     * @param commandId The ID of the command to describe.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list command invocations
and prints the date and time of each command invocation.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void displayCommands(String commandId) {
        ListCommandInvocationsRequest commandInvocationsRequest =
ListCommandInvocationsRequest.builder()
                .commandId(commandId)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<ListCommandInvocationsResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listCommandInvocations(commandInvocationsRequest);
        future.thenAccept(response -> {
            List<CommandInvocation> commandList = response.commandInvocations();
            DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-dd
HH:mm:ss").withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());
            for (CommandInvocation invocation : commandList) {
                System.out.println("The time of the command invocation is " +
formatter.format(invocation.requestedDateTime()));
            }
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw (SsmException) cause;
            } else {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Sends a SSM command to a managed node asynchronously.
     *
     * @param documentName The name of the document to use.
     * @param instanceId The ID of the instance to send the command to.
     * @return The command ID.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates asynchronous requests to send a SSM command to a
managed node.
     * It waits until the document is active, sends the command, and checks the
command execution status.
     */
    public String sendSSMCommand(String documentName, String instanceId) throws
InterruptedException, SsmException {
        // Before we use Document to send a command - make sure it is active.
        CompletableFuture<Void> documentActiveFuture =
CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            boolean isDocumentActive = false;
            DescribeDocumentRequest request = DescribeDocumentRequest.builder()
                    .name(documentName)
                    .build();

            while (!isDocumentActive) {
                CompletableFuture<DescribeDocumentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeDocument(request);
                String documentStatus =
response.join().document().statusAsString();
                if (documentStatus.equals("Active")) {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is active and ready to
use.");
                    isDocumentActive = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is not active. Status: "
+ documentStatus);
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(5000);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(e);
                    }
```

```
                }
            }
        });

        documentActiveFuture.join();

        // Create the SendCommandRequest.
        SendCommandRequest commandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .documentName(documentName)
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .build();

        // Send the command.
        CompletableFuture<SendCommandResponse> commandFuture =
getAsyncClient().sendCommand(commandRequest);
        final String[] commandId = {null};

        commandFuture.whenComplete((commandResponse, ex) -> {
            if (commandResponse != null) {
                commandId[0] = commandResponse.command().commandId();
                System.out.println("Command ID: " + commandId[0]);

                // Wait for the command execution to complete.
                GetCommandInvocationRequest invocationRequest =
GetCommandInvocationRequest.builder()
                        .commandId(commandId[0])
                        .instanceId(instanceId)
                        .build();

                try {
                    System.out.println("Wait 5 secs");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);

                    // Retrieve the command execution details.
                    CompletableFuture<GetCommandInvocationResponse>
invocationFuture = getAsyncClient().getCommandInvocation(invocationRequest);
                    invocationFuture.whenComplete((commandInvocationResponse,
invocationEx) -> {
                        if (commandInvocationResponse != null) {
                            // Check the status of the command execution.
                            CommandInvocationStatus status =
commandInvocationResponse.status();
                            if (status == CommandInvocationStatus.SUCCESS) {
```

```
                                System.out.println("Command execution
successful");
                            } else {
                                System.out.println("Command execution failed.
Status: " + status);
                            }
                        } else {
                            Throwable invocationCause = (invocationEx instanceof
CompletionException) ? invocationEx.getCause() : invocationEx;
                            throw new CompletionException(invocationCause);
                        }
                    }).join();
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException(e);
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw (SsmException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        return commandId[0];
    }

    /**
     * Creates an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param docName The name of the document to create.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM document.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the document status.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void createSSMDoc(String docName) throws SsmException {
        String jsonData = """
        {
        "schemaVersion": "2.2",
        "description": "Run a simple shell command",
        "mainSteps": [
```

```
            {
                "action": "aws:runShellScript",
                "name": "runEchoCommand",
                "inputs": {
                  "runCommand": [
                    "echo 'Hello, world!'"
                  ]
                }
              }
            ]
        }
        """;

        CreateDocumentRequest request = CreateDocumentRequest.builder()
                .content(jsonData)
                .name(docName)
                .documentType(DocumentType.COMMAND)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateDocumentResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createDocument(request);
        future.thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("The status of the SSM document is " +
response.documentDescription().status());
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Updates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param id The ID of the maintenance window to update.
     * @param name The new name for the maintenance window.
     * <p>
```

```
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update an SSM maintenance
window.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a success message.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public void updateSSMMaintenanceWindow(String id, String name) throws
SsmException {
       UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest updateRequest =
UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .windowId(id)
               .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
               .duration(24)
               .enabled(true)
               .name(name)
               .schedule("cron(0 0 ? * MON *)")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().updateMaintenanceWindow(updateRequest);
       future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               System.out.println("The SSM maintenance window was successfully
updated");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
               if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                   throw new CompletionException(cause);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException(cause);
               }
           }
       }).join();
   }

   /**
    * Creates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
    *
    * @param winName The name of the maintenance window.
    * @return The ID of the created or existing maintenance window.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM maintenance
window.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the maintenance window ID.
```

```
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public String createMaintenanceWindow(String winName) throws SsmException,
DocumentAlreadyExistsException {
        CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest request =
CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
                .name(winName)
                .description("This is my maintenance window")
                .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
                .duration(2)
                .cutoff(1)
                .schedule("cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)")
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createMaintenanceWindow(request);
        final String[] windowId = {null};
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String maintenanceWindowId = response.windowId();
                System.out.println("The maintenance window id is " +
maintenanceWindowId);
                windowId[0] = maintenanceWindowId;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        if (windowId[0] == null) {
            MaintenanceWindowFilter filter = MaintenanceWindowFilter.builder()
                    .key("name")
                    .values(winName)
                    .build();

            DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest winRequest =
DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .filters(filter)
                    .build();

            CompletableFuture<DescribeMaintenanceWindowsResponse> describeFuture
 = getAsyncClient().describeMaintenanceWindows(winRequest);
            describeFuture.whenComplete((describeResponse, describeEx) -> {
                if (describeResponse != null) {
                    List<MaintenanceWindowIdentity> windows =
 describeResponse.windowIdentities();
                    if (!windows.isEmpty()) {
                        windowId[0] = windows.get(0).windowId();
                        System.out.println("Window ID: " + windowId[0]);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Window not found.");
                        windowId[0] = "";
                    }
                } else {
                    Throwable describeCause = (describeEx instanceof
 CompletionException) ? describeEx.getCause() : describeEx;
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error describing maintenance
 windows: " + describeCause.getMessage(), describeCause);
                }
            }).join();
        }

        return windowId[0];
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDocument
  - CreateMaintenanceWindow
  - CreateOpsItem
  - DeleteMaintenanceWindow
  - ListCommandInvocations
  - SendCommand
  - UpdateOpsItem

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  CreateDocumentCommand,
  CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand,
  CreateOpsItemCommand,
  DeleteDocumentCommand,
  DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand,
  DeleteOpsItemCommand,
  DescribeOpsItemsCommand,
  DocumentAlreadyExists,
  OpsItemStatus,
  waitUntilCommandExecuted,
  CancelCommandCommand,
  paginateListCommandInvocations,
  SendCommandCommand,
  UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand,
  UpdateOpsItemCommand,
  SSMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   ssmClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').SSMClient,
 *   documentName?: string
 *   maintenanceWindow?: string
```

```
 *   winId?: int
 *   ec2InstanceId?: string
 *   requestedDateTime?: Date
 *   opsItemId?: string
 *   askToDeleteResources?: boolean
 * }} State
 */

const defaultMaintenanceWindow = "ssm-maintenance-window";
const defaultDocumentName = "ssmdocument";
// The timeout duration is highly dependent on the specific setup and environment
 necessary. This example handles only the most common error cases, and uses a
 much shorter duration than most productions systems would use.
const COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS = 30; // 30 seconds

const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "confirm",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  `Welcome to the AWS Systems Manager SDK Getting Started scenario.
    This program demonstrates how to interact with Systems Manager using the AWS
 SDK for JavaScript V3.
    Systems Manager is the operations hub for your AWS applications and resources
 and a secure end-to-end management solution.
    The program's primary functions include creating a maintenance window,
 creating a document, sending a command to a document,
    listing documents, listing commands, creating an OpsItem, modifying an
 OpsItem, and deleting Systems Manager resources.
    Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
    Let's get started...`,
  { header: true },
);

const createMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "createMaintenanceWindow",
  "Step 1: Create a Systems Manager maintenance window.",
);

const getMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioInput(
  "maintenanceWindow",
  "Please enter the maintenance window name:",
  { type: "input", default: defaultMaintenanceWindow },
```

```
);

export const sdkCreateMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateMaintenanceWindow",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
          Name: state.maintenanceWindow,
          Schedule: "cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)", //The schedule of the maintenance
 window in the form of a cron or rate expression.
          Duration: 2, //The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
          Cutoff: 1, //The number of hours before the end of the maintenance
 window that Amazon Web Services Systems Manager stops scheduling new tasks for
 execution.
          AllowUnassociatedTargets: true, //Allow the maintenance window to run
 on managed nodes, even if you haven't registered those nodes as targets.
        }),
      );
      state.winId = response.WindowId;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while creating the maintenance window. Please fix the
 error and try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const modifyMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "modifyMaintenanceWindow",
  "Modify the maintenance window by changing the schedule.",
);

const sdkModifyMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkModifyMaintenanceWindow",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
          WindowId: state.winId,
          Schedule: "cron(0 0 ? * MON *)",
```

```
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while modifying the maintenance window. Please fix the
 error and try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const createSystemsManagerActions = new ScenarioOutput(
  "createSystemsManagerActions",
  "Create a document that defines the actions that Systems Manager performs on
 your EC2 instance.",
);

const getDocumentName = new ScenarioInput(
  "documentName",
  "Please enter the document: ",
  { type: "input", default: defaultDocumentName },
);

const sdkCreateSSMDoc = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateSSMDoc",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const contentData = `{
                "schemaVersion": "2.2",
                "description": "Run a simple shell command",
                "mainSteps": [
                    {
                        "action": "aws:runShellScript",
                        "name": "runEchoCommand",
                        "inputs": {
                          "runCommand": [
                            "echo 'Hello, world!'"
                          ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }`;
    try {
```

```
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new CreateDocumentCommand({
          Content: contentData,
          Name: state.documentName,
          DocumentType: "Command",
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(`Exception type: (${typeof caught})`);
      if (caught instanceof DocumentAlreadyExists) {
        console.log("Document already exists. Continuing...\n");
      } else {
        console.error(caught.message);
        console.log(
          `An error occurred while creating the document. Please fix the error
 and try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  },
);

const ec2HelloWorld = new ScenarioOutput(
  "ec2HelloWorld",
  `Now you have the option of running a command on an EC2 instance that echoes
 'Hello, world!'. In order to run this command, you must provide the instance ID
 of a Linux EC2 instance. If you do not already have a running Linux EC2 instance
 in your account, you can create one using the AWS console. For information
 about creating an EC2 instance, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/
UserGuide/ec2-launch-instance-wizard.html.`,
);

const enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld = new ScenarioInput(
  "enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld",
  "Enter your EC2 InstanceId or press enter to skip this step: ",
  { type: "input", default: "" },
);

const sdkEC2HelloWorld = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkEC2HelloWorld",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
```

```
        new SendCommandCommand({
          DocumentName: state.documentName,
          InstanceIds: [state.ec2InstanceId],
          TimeoutSeconds: COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS,
        }),
      );
      state.CommandId = response.Command.CommandId;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while sending the command. Please fix the error and
 try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld === "",
  },
);

const sdkGetCommandTime = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetCommandTime",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const listInvocationsPaginated = [];
    console.log(
      "Let's get the time when the specific command was sent to the specific
 managed node.",
    );

    console.log(
      `First, we'll wait for the command to finish executing. This may take up to
 ${COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS} seconds.`,
    );
    const commandExecutedResult = waitUntilCommandExecuted(
      { client: state.ssmClient },
      {
        CommandId: state.CommandId,
        InstanceId: state.ec2InstanceId,
      },
    );
    // This is necessary because the TimeoutSeconds of SendCommandCommand is only
 for the delivery, not execution.
```

```
    try {
      await new Promise((_, reject) =>
        setTimeout(
          reject,
          COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS * 1000,
          new Error("Command Timed Out"),
        ),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.message === "Command Timed Out") {
        commandExecutedResult.state = "TIMED_OUT";
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }

    if (commandExecutedResult.state !== "SUCCESS") {
      console.log(
        `The command with id: ${state.CommandId} did not execute in the allotted
time. Canceling command.`,
      );
      state.ssmClient.send(
        new CancelCommandCommand({
          CommandId: state.CommandId,
        }),
      );
      state.enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld === "";
      return;
    }

    for await (const page of paginateListCommandInvocations(
      { client: state.ssmClient },
      { CommandId: state.CommandId },
    )) {
      listInvocationsPaginated.push(...page.CommandInvocations);
    }
    /**
     * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').CommandInvocation}
     */
    const commandInvocation = listInvocationsPaginated.shift(); // Because the
call was made with CommandId, there's only one result, so shift it off.
    state.requestedDateTime = commandInvocation.RequestedDateTime;

    console.log(
```

```
      `The command invocation happened at: ${state.requestedDateTime}.`,
    );
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld === "",
  },
);

const createSSMOpsItem = new ScenarioOutput(
  "createSSMOpsItem",
  `Now we will create a Systems Manager OpsItem. An OpsItem is a feature provided
 by the Systems Manager service. It is a type of operational data item that
 allows you to manage and track various operational issues, events, or tasks
 within your AWS environment.
You can create OpsItems to track and manage operational issues as they arise.
 For example, you could create an OpsItem whenever your application detects a
 critical error or an anomaly in your infrastructure.`,
);

const sdkCreateSSMOpsItem = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateSSMOpsItem",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new CreateOpsItemCommand({
          Description: "Created by the System Manager Javascript API",
          Title: "Disk Space Alert",
          Source: "EC2",
          Category: "Performance",
          Severity: "2",
        }),
      );
      state.opsItemId = response.OpsItemId;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while creating the ops item. Please fix the error and
 try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);
```

```
const updateOpsItem = new ScenarioOutput(
  "updateOpsItem",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Now we will update the OpsItem: ${state.opsItemId}`,
);

const sdkUpdateOpsItem = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkUpdateOpsItem",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const _response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new UpdateOpsItemCommand({
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
          Description: `An update to ${state.opsItemId}`,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while updating the ops item. Please fix the error and
 try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const getOpsItemStatus = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getOpsItemStatus",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Now we will get the status of the OpsItem: ${state.opsItemId}`,
);

const sdkOpsItemStatus = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetOpsItemStatus",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new DescribeOpsItemsCommand({
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
        }),
      );
      state.opsItemStatus = response.OpsItemStatus;
```

```
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while describing the ops item. Please fix the error
 and try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const resolveOpsItem = new ScenarioOutput(
  "resolveOpsItem",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Now we will resolve the OpsItem: ${state.opsItemId}`,
);

const sdkResolveOpsItem = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkResolveOpsItem",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const _response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new UpdateOpsItemCommand({
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
          Status: OpsItemStatus.RESOLVED,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while updating the ops item. Please fix the error and
 try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const askToDeleteResources = new ScenarioInput(
  "askToDeleteResources",
  "Would you like to delete the Systems Manager resources created during this
 example run?",
  { type: "confirm" },
);
```

```
const confirmDeleteChoice = new ScenarioOutput(
  "confirmDeleteChoice",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (state.askToDeleteResources) {
      return "You chose to delete the resources.";
    }
    return "The Systems Manager resources will not be deleted. Please delete them
 manually to avoid charges.";
  },
);

export const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new DeleteOpsItemCommand({
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(`The ops item: ${state.opsItemId} was successfully deleted.`);
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(
        `There was a problem deleting the ops item: ${state.opsItemId}. Please
 delete it manually. Error: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    }

    try {
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand({
          Name: state.maintenanceWindow,
          WindowId: state.winId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `The maintenance window: ${state.maintenanceWindow} was successfully
 deleted.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(
        `There was a problem deleting the maintenance window: ${state.opsItemId}.
 Please delete it manually. Error: ${caught.message}`,
```

```
      );
    }

    try {
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new DeleteDocumentCommand({
          Name: state.documentName,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `The document: ${state.documentName} was successfully deleted.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(
        `There was a problem deleting the document: ${state.documentName}. Please
 delete it manually. Error: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.askToDeleteResources },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "This concludes the Systems Manager Basics scenario for the AWS Javascript SDK
 v3. Thank you!",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario(
  "SSM Basics",
  [
    greet,
    pressEnter,
    createMaintenanceWindow,
    getMaintenanceWindow,
    sdkCreateMaintenanceWindow,
    modifyMaintenanceWindow,
    pressEnter,
    sdkModifyMaintenanceWindow,
    createSystemsManagerActions,
    getDocumentName,
    sdkCreateSSMDoc,
    ec2HelloWorld,
    enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld,
```

```
    sdkEC2HelloWorld,
    sdkGetCommandTime,
    pressEnter,
    createSSMOpsItem,
    pressEnter,
    sdkCreateSSMOpsItem,
    updateOpsItem,
    pressEnter,
    sdkUpdateOpsItem,
    getOpsItemStatus,
    pressEnter,
    sdkOpsItemStatus,
    resolveOpsItem,
    pressEnter,
    sdkResolveOpsItem,
    askToDeleteResources,
    confirmDeleteChoice,
    sdkDeleteResources,
    goodbye,
  ],
  { ssmClient: new SSMClient({}) },
);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

- CreateDocument
- CreateMaintenanceWindow
- CreateOpsItem
- DeleteMaintenanceWindow
- ListCommandInvocations
- SendCommand
- UpdateOpsItem

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class SystemsManagerScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon
 Systems Manager."""

    def __init__(self, document_wrapper, maintenance_window_wrapper,
 ops_item_wrapper):
        """
        :param document_wrapper: An object that wraps Systems Manager document
 functions.
        :param maintenance_window_wrapper: An object that wraps Systems Manager
 maintenance window functions.
        :param ops_item_wrapper: An object that wraps Systems Manager OpsItem
 functions.
        """
        self.document_wrapper = document_wrapper
        self.maintenance_window_wrapper = maintenance_window_wrapper
        self.ops_item_wrapper = ops_item_wrapper

    def run(self):
```

```
        """Demonstrates how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get started
 with Systems Manager."""
        try:
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                """
Welcome to the AWS Systems Manager SDK Getting Started scenario.
This program demonstrates how to interact with Systems Manager using the AWS SDK
 for Python (Boto3).
Systems Manager is the operations hub for your AWS applications and resources and
 a secure end-to-end management
solution. The program's primary functions include creating a maintenance window,
 creating a document, sending a
command to a document, listing documents, listing commands, creating an OpsItem,
 modifying an OpsItem, and deleting
Systems Manager resources. Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are
 cleaned up.
Let's get started..."""
            )
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            print("-" * 88)
            print("Create a Systems Manager maintenance window.")
            maintenance_window_name = q.ask(
                "Please enter the maintenance window name (default is ssm-
maintenance-window):",
            )
            if not maintenance_window_name:
                maintenance_window_name = "ssm-maintenance-window"

            self.maintenance_window_wrapper.create(
                name=maintenance_window_name,
                schedule="cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)",
                duration=2,
                cutoff=1,
                allow_unassociated_targets=True,
            )

            print("-" * 88)
            print("Modify the maintenance window by changing the schedule")
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.maintenance_window_wrapper.update(
                name=maintenance_window_name,
```

```
                schedule="cron(0 0 ? * MON *)",
                duration=24,
                cutoff=1,
                allow_unassociated_targets=True,
                enabled=True,
            )

            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                "Create a document that defines the actions that Systems Manager
 performs on your EC2 instance."
            )
            document_name = q.ask(
                "Please enter the document name (default is ssmdocument):"
            )

            if not document_name:
                document_name = "ssmdocument"

            self.document_wrapper.create(
                name=document_name,
                content="""
{
    "schemaVersion": "2.2",
    "description": "Run a simple shell command",
    "mainSteps": [
        {
            "action": "aws:runShellScript",
            "name": "runEchoCommand",
            "inputs": {
              "runCommand": [
                "echo 'Hello, world!'"
              ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
            """,
            )

            self.document_wrapper.wait_until_active()

            print(
                """
```

```
Now you have the option of running a command on an EC2 instance that echoes
 'Hello, world!'.
In order to run this command, you must provide the instance ID of a Linux EC2
 instance. If you do
not already have a running Linux EC2 instance in your account, you can create one
 using the AWS console.
For information about creating an EC2 instance, see
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-launch-instance-
wizard.html.
            """
            )

            if q.ask(
                "Would you like to run a command on an EC2 instance? (y/n)",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                instance_id = q.ask(
                    "Please enter the instance ID of the EC2 instance:",
 q.non_empty
                )
                command_id = self.document_wrapper.send_command(
                    instance_ids=[instance_id]
                )

                self.document_wrapper.wait_command_executed(
                    command_id=command_id, instance_id=instance_id
                )

                print("-" * 88)
                print(
                    "Lets get the time when the specific command was sent to the
 specific managed node"
                )
                q.ask("Please hit Enter")


 self.document_wrapper.list_command_invocations(instance_id=instance_id)

            print("-" * 88)
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                """
Now we will create a  Systems Manager OpsItem.
An OpsItem is a feature provided by the Systems Manager service.
```

```
It is a type of operational data item that allows you to manage and track various
 operational issues,
events, or tasks within your AWS environment.

You can create OpsItems to track and manage operational issues as they arise.
For example, you could create an OpsItem whenever your application detects a
 critical error
or an anomaly in your infrastructure.
            """
            )
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.ops_item_wrapper.create(
                title="Disk Space Alert",
                description="Created by the Systems Manager Python (Boto3) API",
                source="EC2",
                category="Performance",
                severity="2",
            )

            print("-" * 88)
            print("-" * 88)
            print(f"Now we will update  the OpsItem {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}")
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.ops_item_wrapper.update(
                title="Disk Space Alert",
                description=f"An update to {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}",
            )

            print(
                f"Now we will get the status of the OpsItem
 {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}"
            )
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            # It may take a second for the ops item to be available
            counter = 0
            while not self.ops_item_wrapper.describe() and counter < 5:
                counter += 1
                time.sleep(1)

            print(f"Now we will resolve the OpsItem {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}")
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")
```

```
            self.ops_item_wrapper.update(status="Resolved")

            print("-" * 88)
            print("-" * 88)
            if q.ask(
                "Would you like to delete the Systems Manager resources? (y/n)",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print("You selected to delete the resources.")
                self.cleanup()
            else:
                print("The Systems Manager resources will not be deleted")

            print("-" * 88)
            print("This concludes the Systems Manager SDK Getting Started
 scenario.")
            print("-" * 88)

        except Exception:
            self.cleanup()
            raise

    def cleanup(self):
        self.maintenance_window_wrapper.delete()
        self.ops_item_wrapper.delete()
        self.document_wrapper.delete()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = SystemsManagerScenario(
            DocumentWrapper.from_client(),
            MaintenanceWindowWrapper.from_client(),
            OpsItemWrapper.from_client(),
        )
        scenario.run()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps document and command actions.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, content, name):
        """
        Creates a document.

        :param content: The content of the document.
        :param name: The name of the document.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.create_document(
                Name=name, Content=content, DocumentType="Command"
            )
            self.name = name
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.DocumentAlreadyExists:
            print(f"Document {name} already exists.")
            self.name = name
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete(self):
        """
```

```
        Deletes an AWS Systems Manager document.
        """
        if self.name is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_document(Name=self.name)
            print(f"Deleted document {self.name}.")
            self.name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def send_command(self, instance_ids):
        """
        Sends a command to one or more instances.

        :param instance_ids: The IDs of the instances to send the command to.
        :return: The ID of the command.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=instance_ids, DocumentName=self.name,
TimeoutSeconds=3600
            )
            return response["Command"]["CommandId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send command to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe(self):
        """
```

```
        Describes the document.

        :return: Document status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.describe_document(Name=self.name)
            return response["Document"]["Status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def wait_until_active(self, max_attempts=20, delay=5):
        """
        Waits until the document is active.

        :param max_attempts: The maximum number of attempts for checking the
status.
        :param delay: The delay in seconds between each check.
        """
        attempt = 0
        status = ""
        while attempt <= max_attempts:
            status = self.describe()
            if status == "Active":
                break
            attempt += 1
            time.sleep(delay)

        if status != "Active":
            logger.error("Document is not active.")
        else:
            logger.info("Document is active.")

    def wait_command_executed(self, command_id, instance_id):
        """
        Waits until the command is executed on the instance.

        :param command_id: The ID of the command.
```

```
        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance.
        """

        waiter = self.ssm_client.get_waiter("command_executed")
        waiter.wait(CommandId=command_id, InstanceId=instance_id)

    def list_command_invocations(self, instance_id):
        """
        Lists the commands for an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance.
        :return: The list of commands.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("list_command_invocations")
            command_invocations = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(InstanceId=instance_id):
                command_invocations.extend(page["CommandInvocations"])
            num_of_commands = len(command_invocations)
            print(
                f"{num_of_commands} command invocation(s) found for instance
{instance_id}."
            )

            if num_of_commands > 10:
                print("Displaying the first 10 commands:")
                num_of_commands = 10
            date_format = "%A, %d %B %Y %I:%M%p"
            for command in command_invocations[:num_of_commands]:
                print(
                    f"   The time of command invocation is
{command['RequestedDateTime'].strftime(date_format)}"
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list commands for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps ops item actions.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, title, source, category, severity, description):
        """
        Create an OpsItem

        :param title: The OpsItem title.
        :param source: The OpsItem source.
        :param category: The OpsItem category.
        :param severity: The OpsItem severity.
        :param description: The OpsItem description.

        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_ops_item(
                Title=title,
                Source=source,
                Category=category,
                Severity=severity,
                Description=description,
            )
            self.id = response["OpsItemId"]
```

```
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.OpsItemLimitExceededException as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item because you have exceeded your open
 OpsItem limit. "
                "Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the OpsItem.
        """
        if self.id is None:
            return
        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_ops_item(OpsItemId=self.id)
            print(f"Deleted ops item with id {self.id}")
            self.id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe(self):
        """
        Describe an OpsItem.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("describe_ops_items")
```

```
            ops_items = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                OpsItemFilters=[
                    {"Key": "OpsItemId", "Values": [self.id], "Operator":
"Equal"}
                ]
            ):
                ops_items.extend(page["OpsItemSummaries"])

            for item in ops_items:
                print(
                    f"The item title is {item['Title']} and the status is
{item['Status']}"
                )
            return len(ops_items) > 0
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def update(self, title=None, description=None, status=None):
        """
        Update an OpsItem.

        :param title: The new OpsItem title.
        :param description: The new OpsItem description.
        :param status: The new OpsItem status.
        :return:
        """
        args = dict(OpsItemId=self.id)
        if title is not None:
            args["Title"] = title
        if description is not None:
            args["Description"] = description
        if status is not None:
            args["Status"] = status
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_ops_item(**args)
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps maintenance window actions.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, name, schedule, duration, cutoff,
 allow_unassociated_targets):
        """
        Create an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
 managed nodes, even
```

```
                                                if you haven't registered those nodes
as targets.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_maintenance_window(
                Name=name,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.window_id = response["WindowId"]
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Created maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to create maintenance
window %s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the associated AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.
        """
        if self.window_id is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_maintenance_window(WindowId=self.window_id)
            logger.info("Deleted maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
            print(f"Deleted maintenance window {self.name}")
            self.window_id = None
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.window_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def update(
        self, name, enabled, schedule, duration, cutoff,
allow_unassociated_targets
    ):
        """
        Update an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param enabled: Whether the maintenance window is enabled to run on
managed nodes.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
managed nodes, even
                                            if you haven't registered those nodes
as targets.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_maintenance_window(
                WindowId=self.window_id,
                Name=name,
                Enabled=enabled,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Updated maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to update maintenance
window %s. Here's why: %s",
```

```
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDocument
  - CreateMaintenanceWindow
  - CreateOpsItem
  - DeleteMaintenanceWindow
  - ListCommandInvocations
  - SendCommand
  - UpdateOpsItem

Actions for Systems Manager using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Systems Manager actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS Systems Manager API Reference.

Examples

- Use AddTagsToResource with a CLI
- Use CancelCommand with a CLI
- Use CreateActivation with a CLI

- Use CreateAssociation with a CLI
- Use CreateAssociationBatch with a CLI
- Use CreateDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreateOpsItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use CreatePatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use DeleteActivation with a CLI
- Use DeleteAssociation with a CLI
- Use DeleteDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteOpsItem with an AWS SDK
- Use DeleteParameter with a CLI
- Use DeletePatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use DeregisterManagedInstance with a CLI
- Use DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use DescribeActivations with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociation with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeAssociationExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutomationExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAutomationStepExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeAvailablePatches with a CLI
- Use DescribeDocument with a CLI
- Use DescribeDocumentPermission with a CLI
- Use DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations with a CLI
- Use DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline with a CLI

- Use DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstanceInformation with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatchStates with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use DescribeInstancePatches with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks with a CLI
- Use DescribeMaintenanceWindows with a CLI
- Use DescribeOpsItems with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribeParameters with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DescribePatchBaselines with a CLI
- Use DescribePatchGroupState with a CLI
- Use DescribePatchGroups with a CLI
- Use GetAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use GetCommandInvocation with a CLI
- Use GetConnectionStatus with a CLI
- Use GetDefaultPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance with a CLI
- Use GetDocument with a CLI
- Use GetInventory with a CLI
- Use GetInventorySchema with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindowExecution with a CLI
- Use GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask with a CLI
- Use GetParameter with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use GetParameterHistory with a CLI
- Use GetParameters with a CLI
- Use GetPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use ListAssociationVersions with a CLI
- Use ListAssociations with a CLI
- Use ListCommandInvocations with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListCommands with a CLI
- Use ListComplianceItems with a CLI
- Use ListComplianceSummaries with a CLI
- Use ListDocumentVersions with a CLI
- Use ListDocuments with a CLI
- Use ListInventoryEntries with a CLI
- Use ListResourceComplianceSummaries with a CLI
- Use ListTagsForResource with a CLI
- Use ModifyDocumentPermission with a CLI
- Use PutComplianceItems with a CLI
- Use PutInventory with a CLI
- Use PutParameter with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline with a CLI
- Use RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup with a CLI
- Use RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow with a CLI
- Use RemoveTagsFromResource with a CLI
- Use SendCommand with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use StartSession with a CLI
- Use StopAutomationExecution with a CLI
- Use UpdateAssociation with a CLI

- Use UpdateAssociationStatus with a CLI
- Use UpdateDocument with a CLI
- Use UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion with a CLI
- Use UpdateMaintenanceWindow with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateManagedInstanceRole with a CLI
- Use UpdateOpsItem with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdatePatchBaseline with a CLI

Use `AddTagsToResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AddTagsToResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To add tags to a maintenance window

The following `add-tags-to-resource` example adds a tag to the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm add-tags-to-resource \
    --resource-type "MaintenanceWindow" \
    --resource-id "mw-03eb9db428EXAMPLE" \
    --tags "Key=Stack,Value=Production"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To add tags to a parameter

The following `add-tags-to-resource` example adds two tags to to the specified parameter.

```
aws ssm add-tags-to-resource \
    --resource-type "Parameter" \
    --resource-id "My-Parameter" \
    --tags '[{"Key":"Region","Value":"East"},{"Key":"Environment",
 "Value":"Production"}]'
```

This command produces no output.

Example 3: To add tags to an SSM document

The following `add-tags-to-resource` example adds a tag to to the specified document.

```
aws ssm add-tags-to-resource \
    --resource-type "Document" \
    --resource-id "My-Document" \
    --tags "Key=Quarter,Value=Q322"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Systems Manager resources in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see AddTagsToResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates a maintenance window with new tags. There is no output if the command succeeds. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$option1 = @{Key="Stack";Value=@("Production")}
Add-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -Tag $option1
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each tag. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
$tag1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.Tag
$tag1.Key = "Stack"
$tag1.Value = "Production"

Add-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -Tag $tag1
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates a maintenance window with new tags. There is no output if the command succeeds. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$option1 = @{Key="Stack";Value=@("Production")}
Add-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -Tag $option1
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each tag. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
$tag1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.Tag
$tag1.Key = "Stack"
$tag1.Value = "Production"

Add-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -Tag $tag1
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CancelCommand` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CancelCommand`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To cancel a command for all instances

The following `cancel-command` example attempts to cancel the specified command that is already running for all instances.

```
aws ssm cancel-command \
    --command-id "662add3d-5831-4a10-b64a-f2ff3EXAMPLE"
```

This command produces no output.

Example 2: To cancel a command for specific instances

The following `cancel-command` example attempts to cancel a command for the specified instance only.

```
aws ssm cancel-command \
    --command-id "662add3d-5831-4a10-b64a-f2ff3EXAMPLE"
    --instance-ids "i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging Systems Manager Parameters in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CancelCommand in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example attempts to cancel a command. There is no output if the operation succeeds.

```
Stop-SSMCommand -CommandId "9ded293e-e792-4440-8e3e-7b8ec5feaa38"
```

- For API details, see CancelCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attempts to cancel a command. There is no output if the operation succeeds.

```
Stop-SSMCommand -CommandId "9ded293e-e792-4440-8e3e-7b8ec5feaa38"
```

- For API details, see CancelCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateActivation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateActivation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a managed instance activation

The following `create-activation` example creates a managed instance activation.

```
aws ssm create-activation \
    --default-instance-name "HybridWebServers" \
    --iam-role "HybridWebServersRole" \
    --registration-limit 5
```

Output:

```
{
    "ActivationId": "5743558d-563b-4457-8682-d16c3EXAMPLE",
    "ActivationCode": "dRmgnYaFv567vEXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Step 4: Create a Managed-Instance Activation for a Hybrid Environment in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateActivation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a managed instance.

```
New-SSMActivation -DefaultInstanceName "MyWebServers" -IamRole
 "SSMAutomationRole" -RegistrationLimit 10
```

Output:

```
ActivationCode       ActivationId
--------------       ------------
KWChhOxBTiwDcKE9BlKC 08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363
```

- For API details, see CreateActivation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a managed instance.

```
New-SSMActivation -DefaultInstanceName "MyWebServers" -IamRole
 "SSMAutomationRole" -RegistrationLimit 10
```

Output:

```
ActivationCode       ActivationId
--------------       ------------
KWChhOxBTiwDcKE9BlKC 08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363
```

- For API details, see CreateActivation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateAssociation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAssociation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To associate a document using instance IDs

This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using instance IDs.

```
aws ssm create-association \
    --instance-id "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" \
    --name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Status": {
            "Date": 1487875500.33,
            "Message": "Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "Name": "Associated"
        },
        "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
```

```
        "InstanceId": "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f",
        "Overview": {
            "Status": "Pending",
            "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
        },
        "AssociationId": "b7c3266e-a544-44db-877e-b20d3a108189",
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1487875500.33,
        "Date": 1487875500.33,
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Values": [
                    "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f"
                ],
                "Key": "InstanceIds"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see CreateAssociation in the *AWS Systems Manager API Reference*.

Example 2: To associate a document using targets

This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets.

```
aws ssm create-association \
    --name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" \
    --targets "Key=instanceids,Values=i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Status": {
            "Date": 1487875500.33,
            "Message": "Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "Name": "Associated"
        },
        "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
        "InstanceId": "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f",
        "Overview": {
            "Status": "Pending",
```

```
            "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
        },
        "AssociationId": "b7c3266e-a544-44db-877e-b20d3a108189",
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1487875500.33,
        "Date": 1487875500.33,
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Values": [
                    "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f"
                ],
                "Key": "InstanceIds"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see CreateAssociation in the *AWS Systems Manager API Reference*.

Example 3: To create an association that runs only once

This example creates a new association that only runs once on the specified date and time. Associations created with a date in the past or present (by the time it is processed the date is in the past) run immediately.

```
aws ssm create-association \
    --name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" \
    --targets "Key=instanceids,Values=i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" \
    --schedule-expression "at(2020-05-14T15:55:00)"  \
    --apply-only-at-cron-interval
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Status": {
            "Date": 1487875500.33,
            "Message": "Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "Name": "Associated"
        },
        "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
        "InstanceId": "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f",
```

```
        "Overview": {
            "Status": "Pending",
            "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
        },
        "AssociationId": "b7c3266e-a544-44db-877e-b20d3a108189",
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1487875500.33,
        "Date": 1487875500.33,
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Values": [
                    "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f"
                ],
                "Key": "InstanceIds"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see CreateAssociation in the *AWS Systems Manager API Reference* or Reference: Cron and rate expressions for Systems Manager in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using instance IDs.

```
New-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Date                  : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name           : Associated
Status.Date           : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message        : Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
```

```
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 2: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets.

```
$target = @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
New-SSMAssociation -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" -Target $target
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 3/1/2017 6:22:21 PM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 3: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets and parameters.

```
$target = @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
$params = @{
  "action"="configure"
  "mode"="ec2"
  "optionalConfigurationSource"="ssm"
  "optionalConfigurationLocation"=""
  "optionalRestart"="yes"
}
New-SSMAssociation -Name "Configure-CloudWatch" -AssociationName
 "CWConfiguration" -Target $target -Parameter $params
```

Output:

```
Name                  : Configure-CloudWatch
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 5/17/2018 3:17:44 PM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 4: This example creates an association with all instances in the region, with `AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory`. It also provides custom files and registry locations in the parameters to collect

```
$params =
 [Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,Collections.Generic.List[String]]]::new()
$params["windowsRegistry"] ='[{"Path":"HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Amazon
\MachineImage","Recursive":false,"ValueNames":["AMIName"]}]'
$params["files"] = '[{"Path":"C:\Program Files","Pattern":
["*.exe"],"Recursive":true}, {"Path":"C:\ProgramData","Pattern":
["*.log"],"Recursive":true}]'
New-SSMAssociation -AssociationName new-in-mum -Name AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
 -Target @{Key="instanceids";Values="*"} -Parameter $params -region ap-south-1 -
ScheduleExpression "rate(720 minutes)"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 6/9/2019 8:57:56 AM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using instance IDs.

```
New-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Date                  : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name           : Associated
Status.Date           : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
```

```
Status.Message        : Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 2: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets.

```
$target = @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
New-SSMAssociation -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" -Target $target
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 3/1/2017 6:22:21 PM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 3: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets and parameters.

```
$target = @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
$params = @{
  "action"="configure"
  "mode"="ec2"
  "optionalConfigurationSource"="ssm"
  "optionalConfigurationLocation"=""
  "optionalRestart"="yes"
}
New-SSMAssociation -Name "Configure-CloudWatch" -AssociationName
 "CWConfiguration" -Target $target -Parameter $params
```

Output:

```
Name                  : Configure-CloudWatch
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 5/17/2018 3:17:44 PM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
```

```
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 4: This example creates an association with all instances in the region, with `AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory`. It also provides custom files and registry locations in the parameters to collect

```
$params =
 [Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,Collections.Generic.List[String]]]::new()
$params["windowsRegistry"] ='[{"Path":"HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Amazon
\MachineImage","Recursive":false,"ValueNames":["AMIName"]}]'
$params["files"] = '[{"Path":"C:\Program Files","Pattern":
["*.exe"],"Recursive":true}, {"Path":"C:\ProgramData","Pattern":
["*.log"],"Recursive":true}]'
New-SSMAssociation -AssociationName new-in-mum -Name AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
 -Target @{Key="instanceids";Values="*"} -Parameter $params -region ap-south-1 -
ScheduleExpression "rate(720 minutes)"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 6/9/2019 8:57:56 AM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateAssociationBatch` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateAssociationBatch`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create multiple associations

This example associates a configuration document with multiple instances. The output returns a list of successful and failed operations, if applicable.

Command:

```
aws ssm create-association-batch --entries "Name=AWS-UpdateSSMAgent,InstanceId=i-1234567890abcdef0" "Name=AWS-UpdateSSMAgent,InstanceId=i-9876543210abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
  "Successful": [
      {
          "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
          "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "AssociationVersion": "1",
          "Date": 1550504725.007,
          "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1550504725.007,
          "Status": {
              "Date": 1550504725.007,
              "Name": "Associated",
              "Message": "Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
          },
          "Overview": {
              "Status": "Pending",
              "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
          },
          "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
          "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
          "Targets": [
              {
                  "Key": "InstanceIds",
                  "Values": [
                      "i-1234567890abcdef0"
                  ]
              }
          ]
      },
      {
          "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
          "InstanceId": "i-9876543210abcdef0",
          "AssociationVersion": "1",
          "Date": 1550504725.057,
          "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1550504725.057,
          "Status": {
```

```
                "Date": 1550504725.057,
                "Name": "Associated",
                "Message": "Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
            },
            "Overview": {
                "Status": "Pending",
                "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
            },
            "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
            "AssociationId": "9c9f7f20-5154-4fed-a83e-0123456789ab",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "i-9876543210abcdef0"
                    ]
                }
            ]
        }
    ],
    "Failed": []
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociationBatch in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example associates a configuration document with multiple instances. The output returns a list of successful and failed operations, if applicable.

```
$option1 = @{InstanceId="i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
$option2 = @{InstanceId="i-0000293ffd8c57862";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
New-SSMAssociationFromBatch -Entry $option1,$option2
```

Output:

```
Failed  Successful
------  ----------
{}      {Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.FailedCreateAssociation,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.FailedCreateAsso...
```

Example 2: This example will show the full details of a successful operation.

```
$option1 = @{InstanceId="i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
$option2 = @{InstanceId="i-0000293ffd8c57862";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
(New-SSMAssociationFromBatch -Entry $option1,$option2).Successful
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociationBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates a configuration document with multiple instances. The output returns a list of successful and failed operations, if applicable.

```
$option1 = @{InstanceId="i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
$option2 = @{InstanceId="i-0000293ffd8c57862";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
New-SSMAssociationFromBatch -Entry $option1,$option2
```

Output:

```
Failed  Successful
------  ----------
{}      {Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.FailedCreateAssociation,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.FailedCreateAsso...
```

Example 2: This example will show the full details of a successful operation.

```
$option1 = @{InstanceId="i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
$option2 = @{InstanceId="i-0000293ffd8c57862";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
(New-SSMAssociationFromBatch -Entry $option1,$option2).Successful
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociationBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateDocument` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateDocument`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a document

The following `create-document` example creates a Systems Manager document.

```
aws ssm create-document \
    --content file://exampleDocument.yml \
    --name "Example" \
    --document-type "Automation" \
    --document-format YAML
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentDescription": {
        "Hash":
 "fc2410281f40779e694a8b95975d0f9f316da8a153daa94e3d9921102EXAMPLE",
        "HashType": "Sha256",
        "Name": "Example",
        "Owner": "29884EXAMPLE",
        "CreatedDate": 1583256349.452,
        "Status": "Creating",
        "DocumentVersion": "1",
        "Description": "Document Example",
        "Parameters": [
            {
                "Name": "AutomationAssumeRole",
                "Type": "String",
                "Description": "(Required) The ARN of the role that allows
 Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified,
 Systems Manager Automation uses your IAM permissions to execute this document.",
                "DefaultValue": ""
            },
            {
                "Name": "InstanceId",
                "Type": "String",
                "Description": "(Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.",
```

```
                "DefaultValue": ""
            }
        ],
        "PlatformTypes": [
            "Windows",
            "Linux"
        ],
        "DocumentType": "Automation",
        "SchemaVersion": "0.3",
        "LatestVersion": "1",
        "DefaultVersion": "1",
        "DocumentFormat": "YAML",
        "Tags": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating Systems Manager Documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param docName The name of the document to create.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM document.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the document status.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void createSSMDoc(String docName) throws SsmException {
        String jsonData = """
```

```
        {
        "schemaVersion": "2.2",
        "description": "Run a simple shell command",
        "mainSteps": [
            {
                "action": "aws:runShellScript",
                "name": "runEchoCommand",
                "inputs": {
                  "runCommand": [
                    "echo 'Hello, world!'"
                  ]
                }
              }
            ]
        }
        """;

        CreateDocumentRequest request = CreateDocumentRequest.builder()
                .content(jsonData)
                .name(docName)
                .documentType(DocumentType.COMMAND)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateDocumentResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createDocument(request);
        future.thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("The status of the SSM document is " +
response.documentDescription().status());
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }).join();
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateDocumentCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM document.
 * @param {{ content: string, name: string, documentType?: DocumentType }}
 */
export const main = async ({ content, name, documentType }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const { documentDescription } = await client.send(
      new CreateDocumentCommand({
        Content: content, // The content for the new SSM document. The content
 must not exceed 64KB.
        Name: name,
        DocumentType: documentType, // Document format type can be JSON, YAML, or
 TEXT. The default format is JSON.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Document created successfully.");
    return { DocumentDescription: documentDescription };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "DocumentAlreadyExists") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide a new document name?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a document in your account. The document must be in JSON format. For more information about writing a configuration document, see Configuration Document in the SSM API Reference.

```
New-SSMDocument -Content (Get-Content -Raw "c:\temp\RunShellScript.json") -Name
 "RunShellScript" -DocumentType "Command"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 3/1/2017 1:21:33 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Hash            :
 1d5ce820e999ff051eb4841ed887593daf77120fd76cae0d18a53cc42e4e22c1
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 1
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 809632081692
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Creating
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a document in your account. The document must be in JSON format. For more information about writing a configuration document, see Configuration Document in the SSM API Reference.

```
New-SSMDocument -Content (Get-Content -Raw "c:\temp\RunShellScript.json") -Name
 "RunShellScript" -DocumentType "Command"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 3/1/2017 1:21:33 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Hash            :
 1d5ce820e999ff051eb4841ed887593daf77120fd76cae0d18a53cc42e4e22c1
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 1
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 809632081692
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Creating
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
```

```
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, content, name):
        """
        Creates a document.

        :param content: The content of the document.
        :param name: The name of the document.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.create_document(
                Name=name, Content=content, DocumentType="Command"
            )
            self.name = name
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.DocumentAlreadyExists:
            print(f"Document {name} already exists.")
            self.name = name
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateMaintenanceWindow` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateMaintenanceWindow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a maintenance window

The following `create-maintenance-window` example creates a new maintenance window that every five minutes for up to two hours (as needed), prevents new tasks from starting within one hour of the end of the maintenance window execution, allows unassociated targets (instances that you haven't registered with the maintenance window), and indicates through the use of custom tags that its creator intends to use it in a tutorial.

```
aws ssm create-maintenance-window \
    --name "My-Tutorial-Maintenance-Window" \
    --schedule "rate(5 minutes)" \
    --duration 2 --cutoff 1 \
    --allow-unassociated-targets \
    --tags "Key=Purpose,Value=Tutorial"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowId": "mw-0c50858d01EXAMPLE"
}
```

Example 2: To create a maintenance window that runs only once

The following `create-maintenance-window` example creates a new maintenance window that only runs one time on the specified date and time.

```
aws ssm create-maintenance-window \
    --name My-One-Time-Maintenance-Window \
    --schedule "at(2020-05-14T15:55:00)" \
    --duration 5 \
    --cutoff 2 \
    --allow-unassociated-targets \
    --tags "Key=Environment,Value=Production"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowId": "mw-01234567890abcdef"
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Maintenance Windows in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
    *
    * @param winName The name of the maintenance window.
    * @return The ID of the created or existing maintenance window.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM maintenance
window.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the maintenance window ID.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public String createMaintenanceWindow(String winName) throws SsmException,
DocumentAlreadyExistsException {
       CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest request =
CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .name(winName)
               .description("This is my maintenance window")
               .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
               .duration(2)
               .cutoff(1)
               .schedule("cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createMaintenanceWindow(request);
       final String[] windowId = {null};
```

```
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String maintenanceWindowId = response.windowId();
                System.out.println("The maintenance window id is " +
maintenanceWindowId);
                windowId[0] = maintenanceWindowId;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        if (windowId[0] == null) {
            MaintenanceWindowFilter filter = MaintenanceWindowFilter.builder()
                    .key("name")
                    .values(winName)
                    .build();

            DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest winRequest =
DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter)
                    .build();

            CompletableFuture<DescribeMaintenanceWindowsResponse> describeFuture
= getAsyncClient().describeMaintenanceWindows(winRequest);
            describeFuture.whenComplete((describeResponse, describeEx) -> {
                if (describeResponse != null) {
                    List<MaintenanceWindowIdentity> windows =
describeResponse.windowIdentities();
                    if (!windows.isEmpty()) {
                        windowId[0] = windows.get(0).windowId();
                        System.out.println("Window ID: " + windowId[0]);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Window not found.");
                        windowId[0] = "";
                    }
                } else {
```

```
                    Throwable describeCause = (describeEx instanceof
 CompletionException) ? describeEx.getCause() : describeEx;
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error describing maintenance
 windows: " + describeCause.getMessage(), describeCause);
                }
            }).join();
        }

        return windowId[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM maintenance window.
 * @param {{ name: string, allowUnassociatedTargets: boolean, duration: number,
 cutoff: number, schedule: string, description?: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  name,
  allowUnassociatedTargets, // Allow the maintenance window to run on managed
 nodes, even if you haven't registered those nodes as targets.
  duration, // The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
  cutoff, // The number of hours before the end of the maintenance window that
 Amazon Web Services Systems Manager stops scheduling new tasks for execution.
  schedule, // The schedule of the maintenance window in the form of a cron or
 rate expression.
  description = undefined,
```

```
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});

  try {
    const { windowId } = await client.send(
      new CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
        Name: name,
        Description: description,
        AllowUnassociatedTargets: allowUnassociatedTargets, // Allow the
 maintenance window to run on managed nodes, even if you haven't registered those
 nodes as targets.
        Duration: duration, // The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
        Cutoff: cutoff, // The number of hours before the end of the maintenance
 window that Amazon Web Services Systems Manager stops scheduling new tasks for
 execution.
        Schedule: schedule, // The schedule of the maintenance window in the form
 of a cron or rate expression.
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Maintenance window created with Id: ${windowId}`);
    return { WindowId: windowId };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a new maintenance window with the specified name that runs at 4 PM on every Tuesday for 4 hours, with a 1 hour cutoff, and that allows unassociated targets.

```
New-SSMMaintenanceWindow -Name "MyMaintenanceWindow" -Duration 4 -Cutoff 1 -
AllowUnassociatedTarget $true -Schedule "cron(0 16 ? * TUE *)"
```

Output:

```
mw-03eb53e1ea7383998
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new maintenance window with the specified name that runs at 4 PM on every Tuesday for 4 hours, with a 1 hour cutoff, and that allows unassociated targets.

```
New-SSMMaintenanceWindow -Name "MyMaintenanceWindow" -Duration 4 -Cutoff 1 -
AllowUnassociatedTarget $true -Schedule "cron(0 16 ? * TUE *)"
```

Output:

```
mw-03eb53e1ea7383998
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
```

```
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, name, schedule, duration, cutoff,
allow_unassociated_targets):
        """
        Create an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
managed nodes, even
                                           if you haven't registered those nodes
as targets.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_maintenance_window(
                Name=name,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.window_id = response["WindowId"]
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Created maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to create maintenance
window %s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
```

```
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreateOpsItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateOpsItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To create an OpsItems

The following `create-ops-item` example uses the /aws/resources key in OperationalData to create an OpsItem with an Amazon DynamoDB related resource.

```
aws ssm create-ops-item \
    --title "EC2 instance disk full" \
    --description "Log clean up may have failed which caused the disk to be full"
 \
    --priority 2 \
    --source ec2 \
```

```
    --operational-data '{"/aws/resources":{"Value":"[{\"arn
\": \"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:12345678:table/OpsItems
\"}]","Type":"SearchableString"}}' \
    --notifications Arn="arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:12345678:TestUser"
```

Output:

```
{
    "OpsItemId": "oi-1a2b3c4d5e6f"
}
```

For more information, see Creating OpsItems in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param title The title of the OpsItem.
     * @param source The source of the OpsItem.
     * @param category The category of the OpsItem.
     * @param severity The severity of the OpsItem.
     * @return The ID of the created OpsItem.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM OpsItem.
     * If the request is successful, it returns the OpsItem ID.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public String createSSMOpsItem(String title, String source, String category,
 String severity) {
        CreateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = CreateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                .description("Created by the SSM Java API")
```

```
                .title(title)
                .source(source)
                .category(category)
                .severity(severity)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateOpsItemResponse> future =
 getAsyncClient().createOpsItem(opsItemRequest);

        try {
            CreateOpsItemResponse response = future.join();
            return response.opsItemId();
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            Throwable cause = e.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw (SsmException) cause;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateOpsItemCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM OpsItem.
 * @param {{ title: string, source: string, category?: string, severity?:
 string }}
```

```
 */
export const main = async ({
  title,
  source,
  category = undefined,
  severity = undefined,
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const { opsItemArn, opsItemId } = await client.send(
      new CreateOpsItemCommand({
        Title: title,
        Source: source, // The origin of the OpsItem, such as Amazon EC2 or
 Systems Manager.
        Category: category,
        Severity: severity,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Ops item created with id: ${opsItemId}`);
    return { OpsItemArn: opsItemArn, OpsItemId: opsItemId };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, title, source, category, severity, description):
        """
        Create an OpsItem

        :param title: The OpsItem title.
        :param source: The OpsItem source.
        :param category: The OpsItem category.
        :param severity: The OpsItem severity.
        :param description: The OpsItem description.

        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_ops_item(
                Title=title,
                Source=source,
                Category=category,
                Severity=severity,
                Description=description,
            )
            self.id = response["OpsItemId"]
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.OpsItemLimitExceededException as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item because you have exceeded your open
 OpsItem limit. "
```

```
                "Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `CreatePatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreatePatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create a patch baseline with auto-approval

The following `create-patch-baseline` example creates a patch baseline for Windows Server that approves patches for a production environment seven days after they are released by Microsoft.

```
aws ssm create-patch-baseline \
    --name "Windows-Production-Baseline-AutoApproval" \
    --operating-system "WINDOWS" \
    --approval-
rules "PatchRules=[{PatchFilterGroup={PatchFilters=[{Key=MSRC_SEVERITY,Values=[Critical,1
{Key=CLASSIFICATION,Values=[SecurityUpdates,Updates,UpdateRollups,CriticalUpdates]}]},App
 \
    --description "Baseline containing all updates approved for Windows Server
 production systems"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-045f10b4f3EXAMPLE"
}
```

Example 2: To create a patch baseline with an approval cutoff date

The following `create-patch-baseline` example creates a patch baseline for Windows Server that approves all patches for a production environment that are released on or before July 7, 2020.

```
aws ssm create-patch-baseline \
    --name "Windows-Production-Baseline-AutoApproval" \
    --operating-system "WINDOWS" \
    --approval-
rules "PatchRules=[{PatchFilterGroup={PatchFilters=[{Key=MSRC_SEVERITY,Values=[Critical,I
{Key=CLASSIFICATION,Values=[SecurityUpdates,Updates,UpdateRollups,CriticalUpdates]}]},App
 \
    --description "Baseline containing all updates approved for Windows Server
 production systems"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-045f10b4f3EXAMPLE"
}
```

Example 3: To create a patch baseline with approval rules stored in a JSON file

The following `create-patch-baseline` example creates a patch baseline for Amazon Linux 2017.09 that approves patches for a production environment seven days after they are released, specifies approval rules for the patch baseline, and specifies a custom repository for patches.

```
aws ssm create-patch-baseline \
    --cli-input-json file://my-amazon-linux-approval-rules-and-repo.json
```

Contents of `my-amazon-linux-approval-rules-and-repo.json`:

```
{
    "Name": "Amazon-Linux-2017.09-Production-Baseline",
```

```
    "Description": "My approval rules patch baseline for Amazon Linux 2017.09
instances",
    "OperatingSystem": "AMAZON_LINUX",
    "Tags": [
        {
            "Key": "Environment",
            "Value": "Production"
        }
    ],
    "ApprovalRules": {
        "PatchRules": [
            {
                "ApproveAfterDays": 7,
                "EnableNonSecurity": true,
                "PatchFilterGroup": {
                    "PatchFilters": [
                        {
                            "Key": "SEVERITY",
                            "Values": [
                                "Important",
                                "Critical"
                            ]
                        },
                        {
                            "Key": "CLASSIFICATION",
                            "Values": [
                                "Security",
                                "Bugfix"
                            ]
                        },
                        {
                            "Key": "PRODUCT",
                            "Values": [
                                "AmazonLinux2017.09"
                            ]
                        }
                    ]
                }
            }
        ]
    },
    "Sources": [
        {
            "Name": "My-AL2017.09",
```

```
            "Products": [
                "AmazonLinux2017.09"
            ],
            "Configuration": "[amzn-main] \nname=amzn-main-Base
\nmirrorlist=http://repo./$awsregion./$awsdomain//$releasever/main/
mirror.list //nmirrorlist_expire=300//nmetadata_expire=300 \npriority=10
 \nfailovermethod=priority \nfastestmirror_enabled=0 \ngpgcheck=1
 \ngpgkey=file:///etc/pki/rpm-gpg/RPM-GPG-KEY-amazon-ga \nenabled=1 \nretries=3
 \ntimeout=5\nreport_instanceid=yes"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 4: To create a patch baseline that specifies approved and rejected patches

The following `create-patch-baseline` example explicitly specifies patches to approve and reject as exception to the default approval rules.

```
aws ssm create-patch-baseline \
    --name "Amazon-Linux-2017.09-Alpha-Baseline" \
    --description "My custom approve/reject patch baseline for Amazon Linux
 2017.09 instances" \
    --operating-system "AMAZON_LINUX" \
    --approved-patches "CVE-2018-1234567,example-pkg-EE-2018*.amzn1.noarch" \
    --approved-patches-compliance-level "HIGH" \
    --approved-patches-enable-non-security \
    --tags "Key=Environment,Value=Alpha"
```

For more information, see Create a Custom Patch Baseline in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see CreatePatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a patch baseline that approves patches, seven days after they are released by Microsoft, for managed instances running Windows Server 2019 in a production environment.

```
$rule = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRule
```

```
$rule.ApproveAfterDays = 7

$ruleFilters = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup

$patchFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$patchFilter.Key="PRODUCT"
$patchFilter.Values="WindowsServer2019"

$severityFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$severityFilter.Key="MSRC_SEVERITY"
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Critical")
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Important")
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Moderate")

$classificationFilter = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$classificationFilter.Key = "CLASSIFICATION"
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "SecurityUpdates" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "Updates" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "UpdateRollups" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "CriticalUpdates" )

$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($severityFilter)
$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($classificationFilter)
$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($patchFilter)
$rule.PatchFilterGroup = $ruleFilters

New-SSMPatchBaseline -Name "Production-Baseline-Windows2019" -Description
 "Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems" -
ApprovalRules_PatchRule $rule
```

Output:

```
pb-0z4z6221c4296b23z
```

- For API details, see CreatePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a patch baseline that approves patches, seven days after they are released by Microsoft, for managed instances running Windows Server 2019 in a production environment.

```
$rule = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRule
$rule.ApproveAfterDays = 7

$ruleFilters = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup

$patchFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$patchFilter.Key="PRODUCT"
$patchFilter.Values="WindowsServer2019"

$severityFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$severityFilter.Key="MSRC_SEVERITY"
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Critical")
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Important")
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Moderate")

$classificationFilter = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$classificationFilter.Key = "CLASSIFICATION"
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "SecurityUpdates" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "Updates" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "UpdateRollups" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "CriticalUpdates" )

$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($severityFilter)
$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($classificationFilter)
$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($patchFilter)
$rule.PatchFilterGroup = $ruleFilters

New-SSMPatchBaseline -Name "Production-Baseline-Windows2019" -Description
 "Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems" -
ApprovalRules_PatchRule $rule
```

Output:

```
pb-0z4z6221c4296b23z
```

- For API details, see CreatePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteActivation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteActivation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a managed instance activation

The following `delete-activation` example deletes a managed instance activation.

```
aws ssm delete-activation \
    --activation-id "aa673477-d926-42c1-8757-1358cEXAMPLE"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Setting Up AWS Systems Manager for Hybrid Environments in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteActivation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes an activation. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMActivation -ActivationId "08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363"
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes an activation. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMActivation -ActivationId "08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363"
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteAssociation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteAssociation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To delete an association using the association ID

The following `delete-association` example deletes the association for the specified association ID. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
aws ssm delete-association \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Editing and creating a new version of an association in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To delete an association

The following `delete-association` example deletes the association between an instance and a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
aws ssm delete-association \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Working with associations in Systems Manager in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes the association between an instance and a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Name "AWS-
UpdateSSMAgent"
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the association between an instance and a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Name "AWS-
UpdateSSMAgent"
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteDocument` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteDocument`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a document

The following `delete-document` example deletes a Systems Manager document.

```
aws ssm delete-document \
    --name "Example"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Creating Systems Manager Documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param documentName The name of the document to delete.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM document.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void deleteDoc(String documentName) {
        DeleteDocumentRequest documentRequest = DeleteDocumentRequest.builder()
                .name(documentName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().deleteDocument(documentRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("The SSM document was successfully
deleted.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
```

```
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
 ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteDocumentCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an SSM document.
 * @param {{ documentName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ documentName }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(new DeleteDocumentCommand({ Name: documentName }));
    console.log(`Document '${documentName}' deleted.`);
    return { Deleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide this value?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
```

```
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript"
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript"
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes an AWS Systems Manager document.
        """
        if self.name is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_document(Name=self.name)
            print(f"Deleted document {self.name}.")
            self.name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteMaintenanceWindow` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMaintenanceWindow`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a maintenance window

This `delete-maintenance-window` example removes the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm delete-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-1a2b3c4d5e6f7g8h9"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowId":"mw-1a2b3c4d5e6f7g8h9"
}
```

For more information, see Delete a Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM Maintenance Window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param winId The ID of the Maintenance Window to delete.
     * <p>
```

```
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM Maintenance
Window.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public void deleteMaintenanceWindow(String winId) {
       DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest windowRequest =
DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .windowId(winId)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
           getAsyncClient().deleteMaintenanceWindow(windowRequest)
                   .thenAccept(response -> {
                       System.out.println("The maintenance window was
successfully deleted.");
                   })
                   .exceptionally(ex -> {
                       throw new CompletionException(ex);
                   }).join();
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
           if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
               throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
           }
       });

       try {
           future.join();
       } catch (CompletionException ex) {
           throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an SSM maintenance window.
 * @param {{ windowId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ windowId }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand({ WindowId: windowId }),
    );
    console.log(`Maintenance window '${windowId}' deleted.`);
    return { Deleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide this value?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes a maintenance window.

```
Remove-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06d59c1a07c022145"
```

Output:

```
mw-06d59c1a07c022145
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a maintenance window.

```
Remove-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06d59c1a07c022145"
```

Output:

```
mw-06d59c1a07c022145
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
```

```
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the associated AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.
        """
        if self.window_id is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_maintenance_window(WindowId=self.window_id)
            logger.info("Deleted maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
            print(f"Deleted maintenance window {self.name}")
            self.window_id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.window_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteOpsItem` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteOpsItem`.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the OpsItem.
        """
        if self.id is None:
            return
        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_ops_item(OpsItemId=self.id)
            print(f"Deleted ops item with id {self.id}")
            self.id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteParameter` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteParameter`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a parameter

The following `delete-parameter` example deletes the specified single parameter.

```
aws ssm delete-parameter \
    --name "MyParameter"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Working with Parameter Store in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteParameter in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMParameter -Name "helloWorld"
```

- For API details, see DeleteParameter in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMParameter -Name "helloWorld"
```

- For API details, see DeleteParameter in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeletePatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeletePatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a patch baseline

The following `delete-patch-baseline` example deletes the specified patch baseline.

```
aws ssm delete-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "pb-045f10b4f382baeda"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-045f10b4f382baeda"
}
```

For more information, see Update or Delete a Patch Baseline (Console) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeletePatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deletes a patch baseline.

```
Remove-SSMPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-045f10b4f382baeda"
```

Output:

```
pb-045f10b4f382baeda
```

- For API details, see DeletePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a patch baseline.

```
Remove-SSMPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-045f10b4f382baeda"
```

Output:

```
pb-045f10b4f382baeda
```

- For API details, see DeletePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterManagedInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterManagedInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister a managed instance

The following `deregister-managed-instance` example deregisters the specified managed instance.

```
aws ssm deregister-managed-instance \
    --instance-id 'mi-08ab247cdfEXAMPLE'
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Deregistering managed nodes in a hybrid and multicloud environment in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeregisterManagedInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deregisters a managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Unregister-SSMManagedInstance -InstanceId "mi-08ab247cdf1046573"
```

- For API details, see DeregisterManagedInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters a managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Unregister-SSMManagedInstance -InstanceId "mi-08ab247cdf1046573"
```

- For API details, see DeregisterManagedInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To deregister a patch group from a patch baseline

The following `deregister-patch-baseline-for-patch-group` example deregisters the specified patch group from the specified patch baseline.

```
aws ssm deregister-patch-baseline-for-patch-group \
```

```
    --patch-group "Production" \
    --baseline-id "pb-0ca44a362fEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
  "PatchGroup":"Production",
  "BaselineId":"pb-0ca44a362fEXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Add a Patch Group to a Patch Baseline in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example deregisters a patch group from a patch baseline.

```
Unregister-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -BaselineId "pb-045f10b4f382baeda" -
PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-045f10b4f382baeda Production
```

- For API details, see DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters a patch group from a patch baseline.

```
Unregister-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -BaselineId "pb-045f10b4f382baeda" -
PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-045f10b4f382baeda Production
```

- For API details, see DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a target from a maintenance window

The following `deregister-target-from-maintenance-window` example removes the specified target from the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm deregister-target-from-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34ef56gh78" \
    --window-target-id "1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowId":"mw-ab12cd34ef56gh78",
    "WindowTargetId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
}
```

For more information, see Update a Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes a target from a maintenance window.

```
Unregister-SSMTargetFromMaintenanceWindow -WindowTargetId
 "6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d" -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
WindowId             WindowTargetId
--------             --------------
mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f 6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a target from a maintenance window.

```
Unregister-SSMTargetFromMaintenanceWindow -WindowTargetId
 "6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d" -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
WindowId             WindowTargetId
--------             --------------
mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f 6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a task from a maintenance window

The following `deregister-task-from-maintenance-window` example removes the specified task from the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm deregister-task-from-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34ef56gh78" \
    --window-task-id "1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d5e6c"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTaskId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d5e6c",
    "WindowId":"mw-ab12cd34ef56gh78"
}
```

For more information, see Systems Manager Maintenance Windows Tutorials (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes a task from a maintenance window.

```
Unregister-SSMTaskFromMaintenanceWindow -WindowTaskId "f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-
a88d-72366b69af1b" -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
```

Output:

```
WindowId             WindowTaskId
--------             ------------
mw-03a342e62c96d31b0 f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a task from a maintenance window.

```
Unregister-SSMTaskFromMaintenanceWindow -WindowTaskId "f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-
a88d-72366b69af1b" -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
```

Output:

```
WindowId             WindowTaskId
--------             ------------
mw-03a342e62c96d31b0 f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeActivations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeActivations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe activations

The following `describe-activations` example lists details about the activations in your AWS account.

```
aws ssm describe-activations
```

Output:

```
{
    "ActivationList": [
        {
            "ActivationId": "5743558d-563b-4457-8682-d16c3EXAMPLE",
```

```
            "Description": "Example1",
            "IamRole": "HybridWebServersRole,
            "RegistrationLimit": 5,
            "RegistrationsCount": 5,
            "ExpirationDate": 1584316800.0,
            "Expired": false,
            "CreatedDate": 1581954699.792
        },
        {
            "ActivationId": "3ee0322b-f62d-40eb-b672-13ebfEXAMPLE",
            "Description": "Example2",
            "IamRole": "HybridDatabaseServersRole",
            "RegistrationLimit": 5,
            "RegistrationsCount": 5,
            "ExpirationDate": 1580515200.0,
            "Expired": true,
            "CreatedDate": 1578064132.002
        },
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Step 4: Create a Managed-Instance Activation for a Hybrid Environment in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeActivations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example provides details about the activations on your account.

```
Get-SSMActivation
```

Output:

```
ActivationId        : 08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363
CreatedDate         : 3/1/2017 12:01:51 AM
DefaultInstanceName : MyWebServers
Description         :
ExpirationDate      : 3/2/2017 12:01:51 AM
Expired             : False
```

```
IamRole             : AutomationRole
RegistrationLimit   : 10
RegistrationsCount  : 0
```

- For API details, see DescribeActivations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example provides details about the activations on your account.

```
Get-SSMActivation
```

Output:

```
ActivationId        : 08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363
CreatedDate         : 3/1/2017 12:01:51 AM
DefaultInstanceName : MyWebServers
Description         :
ExpirationDate      : 3/2/2017 12:01:51 AM
Expired             : False
IamRole             : AutomationRole
RegistrationLimit   : 10
RegistrationsCount  : 0
```

- For API details, see DescribeActivations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAssociation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAssociation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get details of an association

The following `describe-association` example describes the association for the specified association ID.

```
aws ssm describe-association \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Name": "AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory",
        "AssociationVersion": "1",
        "Date": 1534864780.995,
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1543235759.81,
        "Overview": {
            "Status": "Success",
            "AssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                "Success": 2
            }
        },
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "Parameters": {
            "applications": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "awsComponents": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "customInventory": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "files": [
                ""
            ],
            "instanceDetailedInformation": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "networkConfig": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "services": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "windowsRegistry": [
                ""
            ],
            "windowsRoles": [
                "Enabled"
            ],
            "windowsUpdates": [
```

```
                "Enabled"
            ]
        },
        "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Key": "InstanceIds",
                "Values": [
                    "*"
                ]
            }
        ],
        "ScheduleExpression": "rate(24 hours)",
        "LastExecutionDate": 1550501886.0,
        "LastSuccessfulExecutionDate": 1550501886.0,
        "AssociationName": "Inventory-Association"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Editing and creating a new version of an association in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To get details of an association for a specific instance and document

The following `describe-association` example describes the association between an instance and a document.

```
aws ssm describe-association \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Status": {
            "Date": 1487876122.564,
            "Message": "Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "Name": "Associated"
        },
        "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
        "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
        "Overview": {
```

```
            "Status": "Pending",
            "DetailedStatus": "Associated",
            "AssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                "Pending": 1
            }
        },
        "AssociationId": "d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1234567890ab",
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1487876122.564,
        "Date": 1487876122.564,
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Values": [
                    "i-1234567890abcdef0"
                ],
                "Key": "InstanceIds"
            }
        ]
    }
}
```

For more information, see Editing and creating a new version of an association in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the association between an instance and a document.

```
Get-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Date                  : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name           : Pending
Status.Date           : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message        : temp_status_change
```

```
Status.AdditionalInfo : Additional-Config-Needed
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the association between an instance and a document.

```
Get-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Date                  : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name           : Pending
Status.Date           : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message        : temp_status_change
Status.AdditionalInfo : Additional-Config-Needed
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details of an association execution

The following `describe-association-execution-targets` example describes the specified association execution.

```
aws ssm describe-association-execution-targets \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab" \
    --execution-id "7abb6378-a4a5-4f10-8312-0123456789ab"
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "AssociationExecutionTargets": [
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "ExecutionId": "7abb6378-a4a5-4f10-8312-0123456789ab",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "ResourceType": "ManagedInstance",
            "Status": "Success",
            "DetailedStatus": "Success",
            "LastExecutionDate": 1550505538.497,
            "OutputSource": {
                "OutputSourceId": "97fff367-fc5a-4299-aed8-0123456789ab",
                "OutputSourceType": "RunCommand"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing association histories in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the resource ID and its execution status that are part of the the association execution targets

```
Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget -AssociationId 123a45a0-
c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e -ExecutionId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e |
 Select-Object ResourceId, Status
```

Output:

```
ResourceId           Status
----------           ------
i-0b1b2a3456f7a890b  Success
i-01c12a45d6fc7a89f  Success
i-0a1caf234f56d7dc8  Success
i-012a3fd45af6dbcfe  Failed
```

```
i-0ddc1df23c4a5fb67  Success
```

Example 2: This command checks the particular execution of a particular automation since yesterday, where a command document is associated. It further checkes if the association execution failed, and if so, it will display the command invocation details for the execution along with the instance id

```
$AssociationExecution= Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget -
AssociationId 1c234567-890f-1aca-a234-5a678d901cb0 -ExecutionId
 12345ca12-3456-2345-2b45-23456789012 |
    Where-Object {$_.LastExecutionDate -gt (Get-Date -Hour 00 -Minute
 00).AddDays(-1)}

foreach ($execution in $AssociationExecution) {
    if($execution.Status -ne 'Success'){
        Write-Output "There was an issue executing the association
 $($execution.AssociationId) on $($execution.ResourceId)"
        Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId
 $execution.OutputSource.OutputSourceId -Detail:$true | Select-Object -
ExpandProperty CommandPlugins
    }
}
```

Output:

```
There was an issue executing the association 1c234567-890f-1aca-a234-5a678d901cb0
 on i-0a1caf234f56d7dc8


Name                   : aws:runPowerShellScript
Output                 :
                         ----------ERROR-------
                         failed to run commands: exit status 1
OutputS3BucketName     :
OutputS3KeyPrefix      :
OutputS3Region         : eu-west-1
ResponseCode           : 1
ResponseFinishDateTime : 5/29/2019 11:04:49 AM
ResponseStartDateTime  : 5/29/2019 11:04:49 AM
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Failed
```

```
StatusDetails          : Failed
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the resource ID and its execution status that are part of the the association execution targets

```
Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget -AssociationId 123a45a0-
c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e -ExecutionId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e |
 Select-Object ResourceId, Status
```

Output:

```
ResourceId           Status
----------           ------
i-0b1b2a3456f7a890b  Success
i-01c12a45d6fc7a89f  Success
i-0a1caf234f56d7dc8  Success
i-012a3fd45af6dbcfe  Failed
i-0ddc1df23c4a5fb67  Success
```

Example 2: This command checks the particular execution of a particular automation since yesterday, where a command document is associated. It further checkes if the association execution failed, and if so, it will display the command invocation details for the execution along with the instance id

```
$AssociationExecution= Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget -
AssociationId 1c234567-890f-1aca-a234-5a678d901cb0 -ExecutionId
 12345ca12-3456-2345-2b45-23456789012 |
    Where-Object {$_.LastExecutionDate -gt (Get-Date -Hour 00 -Minute
 00).AddDays(-1)}

foreach ($execution in $AssociationExecution) {
    if($execution.Status -ne 'Success'){
        Write-Output "There was an issue executing the association
 $($execution.AssociationId) on $($execution.ResourceId)"
        Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId
 $execution.OutputSource.OutputSourceId -Detail:$true | Select-Object -
ExpandProperty CommandPlugins
```

```
    }
}
```

Output:

```
There was an issue executing the association 1c234567-890f-1aca-a234-5a678d901cb0
 on i-0a1caf234f56d7dc8


Name                   : aws:runPowerShellScript
Output                 :
                         ----------ERROR-------
                         failed to run commands: exit status 1
OutputS3BucketName     :
OutputS3KeyPrefix      :
OutputS3Region         : eu-west-1
ResponseCode           : 1
ResponseFinishDateTime : 5/29/2019 11:04:49 AM
ResponseStartDateTime  : 5/29/2019 11:04:49 AM
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Failed
StatusDetails          : Failed
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAssociationExecutions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAssociationExecutions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get details of all executions for an association

The following `describe-association-executions` example describes all executions of the specified association.

```
aws ssm describe-association-executions \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationExecutions": [
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "ExecutionId": "474925ef-1249-45a2-b93d-0123456789ab",
            "Status": "Success",
            "DetailedStatus": "Success",
            "CreatedTime": 1550505827.119,
            "ResourceCountByStatus": "{Success=1}"
        },
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "ExecutionId": "7abb6378-a4a5-4f10-8312-0123456789ab",
            "Status": "Success",
            "DetailedStatus": "Success",
            "CreatedTime": 1550505536.843,
            "ResourceCountByStatus": "{Success=1}"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing association histories in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To get details of all executions for an association after a specific date and time

The following `describe-association-executions` example describes all executions of an association after the specified date and time.

```
aws ssm describe-association-executions \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab" \
    --filters "Key=CreatedTime,Value=2019-02-18T16:00:00Z,Type=GREATER_THAN"
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "AssociationExecutions": [
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "ExecutionId": "474925ef-1249-45a2-b93d-0123456789ab",
            "Status": "Success",
            "DetailedStatus": "Success",
            "CreatedTime": 1550505827.119,
            "ResourceCountByStatus": "{Success=1}"
        },
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "ExecutionId": "7abb6378-a4a5-4f10-8312-0123456789ab",
            "Status": "Success",
            "DetailedStatus": "Success",
            "CreatedTime": 1550505536.843,
            "ResourceCountByStatus": "{Success=1}"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Viewing association histories in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the executions for the association ID provided

```
Get-SSMAssociationExecution -AssociationId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
```

Output:

```
AssociationId         : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationVersion    : 2
CreatedTime           : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DetailedStatus        :
```

```
ExecutionId           : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
LastExecutionDate     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceCountByStatus : {Success=4}
Status                : Success
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the executions for the association ID provided

```
Get-SSMAssociationExecution -AssociationId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
```

Output:

```
AssociationId         : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationVersion    : 2
CreatedTime           : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DetailedStatus        :
ExecutionId           : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
LastExecutionDate     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceCountByStatus : {Success=4}
Status                : Success
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAutomationExecutions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAutomationExecutions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe an automation execution

The following `describe-automation-executions` example displays details about an Automation execution.

```
aws ssm describe-automation-executions \
```

```
    --filters Key=ExecutionId,Values=73c8eef8-f4ee-4a05-820c-e354fEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "AutomationExecutionMetadataList": [
        {
            "AutomationExecutionId": "73c8eef8-f4ee-4a05-820c-e354fEXAMPLE",
            "DocumentName": "AWS-StartEC2Instance",
            "DocumentVersion": "1",
            "AutomationExecutionStatus": "Success",
            "ExecutionStartTime": 1583737233.748,
            "ExecutionEndTime": 1583737234.719,
            "ExecutedBy": "arn:aws:sts::29884EXAMPLE:assumed-role/
mw_service_role/OrchestrationService",
            "LogFile": "",
            "Outputs": {},
            "Mode": "Auto",
            "Targets": [],
            "ResolvedTargets": {
                "ParameterValues": [],
                "Truncated": false
            },
            "AutomationType": "Local"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Running a Simple Automation Workflow in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationExecutions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes all active and terminated Automation Executions associated with your account.

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId     : 4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909
AutomationExecutionStatus : Failed
DocumentName              : AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi
DocumentVersion           : 1
ExecutedBy                : admin
ExecutionEndTime          : 2/22/2017 9:17:08 PM
ExecutionStartTime        : 2/22/2017 9:17:02 PM
LogFile                   :
Outputs                   : {[createImage.ImageId,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
```

Example 2: This example displays ExecutionID, document, execution start/end timestamp for executions with AutomationExecutionStatus other than 'Success'

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList | Where-Object AutomationExecutionStatus
 -ne "Success" | Select-Object AutomationExecutionId, DocumentName,
 AutomationExecutionStatus, ExecutionStartTime, ExecutionEndTime | Format-Table -
AutoSize
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId                DocumentName
 AutomationExecutionStatus ExecutionStartTime   ExecutionEndTime
---------------------                ------------
 ------------------------- ------------------   ----------------
e1d2bad3-4567-8901-ae23-456c7c8901be AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi
 Cancelled                 4/16/2019 5:37:04 AM 4/16/2019 5:47:29 AM
61234567-a7f8-90e1-2b34-567b8bf9012c Fixed-UpdateAmi
 Cancelled                 4/16/2019 5:33:04 AM 4/16/2019 5:40:15 AM
91234d56-7e89-0ac1-2aee-34ea5d6a7c89 AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi
 Failed                    4/16/2019 5:22:46 AM 4/16/2019 5:27:29 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes all active and terminated Automation Executions associated with your account.

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId     : 4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909
AutomationExecutionStatus : Failed
DocumentName              : AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi
DocumentVersion           : 1
ExecutedBy                : admin
ExecutionEndTime          : 2/22/2017 9:17:08 PM
ExecutionStartTime        : 2/22/2017 9:17:02 PM
LogFile                   :
Outputs                   : {[createImage.ImageId,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
```

Example 2: This example displays ExecutionID, document, execution start/end timestamp for executions with AutomationExecutionStatus other than 'Success'

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList | Where-Object AutomationExecutionStatus
 -ne "Success" | Select-Object AutomationExecutionId, DocumentName,
 AutomationExecutionStatus, ExecutionStartTime, ExecutionEndTime | Format-Table -
AutoSize
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId                DocumentName
 AutomationExecutionStatus ExecutionStartTime   ExecutionEndTime
---------------------                ------------
 ------------------------- ------------------   ----------------
e1d2bad3-4567-8901-ae23-456c7c8901be AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi
 Cancelled                 4/16/2019 5:37:04 AM 4/16/2019 5:47:29 AM
61234567-a7f8-90e1-2b34-567b8bf9012c Fixed-UpdateAmi
 Cancelled                 4/16/2019 5:33:04 AM 4/16/2019 5:40:15 AM
91234d56-7e89-0ac1-2aee-34ea5d6a7c89 AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi
 Failed                    4/16/2019 5:22:46 AM 4/16/2019 5:27:29 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAutomationStepExecutions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAutomationStepExecutions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe all steps for an automation execution

The following `describe-automation-step-executions` example displays details about the steps of an Automation execution.

```
aws ssm describe-automation-step-executions \
    --automation-execution-id 73c8eef8-f4ee-4a05-820c-e354fEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "StepExecutions": [
        {
            "StepName": "startInstances",
            "Action": "aws:changeInstanceState",
            "ExecutionStartTime": 1583737234.134,
            "ExecutionEndTime": 1583737234.672,
            "StepStatus": "Success",
            "Inputs": {
                "DesiredState": "\"running\"",
                "InstanceIds": "[\"i-0cb99161f6EXAMPLE\"]"
            },
            "Outputs": {
                "InstanceStates": [
                    "running"
                ]
            },
            "StepExecutionId": "95e70479-cf20-4d80-8018-7e4e2EXAMPLE",
            "OverriddenParameters": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To describe a specific step for an automation execution

The following `describe-automation-step-executions` example displays details about a specific step of an Automation execution.

```
aws ssm describe-automation-step-executions \
    --automation-execution-id 73c8eef8-f4ee-4a05-820c-e354fEXAMPLE \
    --filters Key=StepExecutionId,Values=95e70479-cf20-4d80-8018-7e4e2EXAMPLE
```

For more information, see Running an Automation Workflow Step by Step (Command Line) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationStepExecutions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This exmaple displays information about all active and terminated step executions in an Automation workflow.

```
Get-SSMAutomationStepExecution -AutomationExecutionId e1d2bad3-4567-8901-
ae23-456c7c8901be | Select-Object StepName, Action, StepStatus
```

Output:

```
StepName                  Action                  StepStatus
--------                  ------                  ----------
LaunchInstance            aws:runInstances        Success
OSCompatibilityCheck      aws:runCommand          Success
RunPreUpdateScript        aws:runCommand          Success
UpdateEC2Config           aws:runCommand          Cancelled
UpdateSSMAgent            aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSPVDriver         aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSEnaNetworkDriver aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSNVMe             aws:runCommand          Pending
InstallWindowsUpdates     aws:runCommand          Pending
RunPostUpdateScript       aws:runCommand          Pending
RunSysprepGeneralize      aws:runCommand          Pending
StopInstance              aws:changeInstanceState Pending
CreateImage               aws:createImage         Pending
TerminateInstance         aws:changeInstanceState Pending
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationStepExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This exmaple displays information about all active and terminated step executions in an Automation workflow.

```
Get-SSMAutomationStepExecution -AutomationExecutionId e1d2bad3-4567-8901-
ae23-456c7c8901be | Select-Object StepName, Action, StepStatus
```

Output:

```
StepName                  Action                  StepStatus
--------                  ------                  ----------
LaunchInstance            aws:runInstances        Success
OSCompatibilityCheck      aws:runCommand          Success
RunPreUpdateScript        aws:runCommand          Success
UpdateEC2Config           aws:runCommand          Cancelled
UpdateSSMAgent            aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSPVDriver         aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSEnaNetworkDriver aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSNVMe             aws:runCommand          Pending
InstallWindowsUpdates     aws:runCommand          Pending
RunPostUpdateScript       aws:runCommand          Pending
RunSysprepGeneralize      aws:runCommand          Pending
StopInstance              aws:changeInstanceState Pending
CreateImage               aws:createImage         Pending
TerminateInstance         aws:changeInstanceState Pending
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationStepExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeAvailablePatches` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeAvailablePatches`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get available patches

The following `describe-available-patches` example retrieves details about all available patches for Windows Server 2019 that have a MSRC severity of Critical.

```
aws ssm describe-available-patches \
    --
filters "Key=PRODUCT,Values=WindowsServer2019" "Key=MSRC_SEVERITY,Values=Critical"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Patches": [
        {
            "Id": "fe6bd8c2-3752-4c8b-ab3e-1a7ed08767ba",
            "ReleaseDate": 1544047205.0,
            "Title": "2018-11 Update for Windows Server 2019 for x64-based
 Systems (KB4470788)",
            "Description": "Install this update to resolve issues in Windows.
 For a complete listing of the issues that are included in this update, see the
 associated Microsoft Knowledge Base article for more information. After you
 install this item, you may have to restart your computer.",
            "ContentUrl": "https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/4470788",
            "Vendor": "Microsoft",
            "ProductFamily": "Windows",
            "Product": "WindowsServer2019",
            "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
            "MsrcSeverity": "Critical",
            "KbNumber": "KB4470788",
            "MsrcNumber": "",
            "Language": "All"
        },
        {
            "Id": "c96115e1-5587-4115-b851-22baa46a3f11",
            "ReleaseDate": 1549994410.0,
            "Title": "2019-02 Security Update for Adobe Flash Player for Windows
 Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4487038)",
            "Description": "A security issue has been identified in a Microsoft
 software product that could affect your system. You can help protect your system
 by installing this update from Microsoft. For a complete listing of the issues
 that are included in this update, see the associated Microsoft Knowledge Base
 article. After you install this update, you may have to restart your system.",
            "ContentUrl": "https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/4487038",
            "Vendor": "Microsoft",
            "ProductFamily": "Windows",
```

```
            "Product": "WindowsServer2019",
            "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
            "MsrcSeverity": "Critical",
            "KbNumber": "KB4487038",
            "MsrcNumber": "",
            "Language": "All"
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

To get details of a specific patch

The following `describe-available-patches` example retrieves details about the specified patch.

```
aws ssm describe-available-patches \
    --filters "Key=PATCH_ID,Values=KB4480979"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Patches": [
        {
            "Id": "680861e3-fb75-432e-818e-d72e5f2be719",
            "ReleaseDate": 1546970408.0,
            "Title": "2019-01 Security Update for Adobe Flash Player for Windows
 Server 2016 for x64-based Systems (KB4480979)",
            "Description": "A security issue has been identified in a Microsoft
 software product that could affect your system. You can help protect your system
 by installing this update from Microsoft. For a complete listing of the issues
 that are included in this update, see the associated Microsoft Knowledge Base
 article. After you install this update, you may have to restart your system.",
            "ContentUrl": "https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/4480979",
            "Vendor": "Microsoft",
            "ProductFamily": "Windows",
            "Product": "WindowsServer2016",
            "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
            "MsrcSeverity": "Critical",
            "KbNumber": "KB4480979",
            "MsrcNumber": "",
            "Language": "All"
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see How Patch Manager Operations Work in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeAvailablePatches in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets all available patches for Windows Server 2012 that have a MSRC severity of Critical. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="PRODUCT";Values=@("WindowsServer2012")}
$filter2 = @{Key="MSRC_SEVERITY";Values=@("Critical")}

Get-SSMAvailablePatch -Filter $filter1,$filter2
```

Output:

```
Classification : SecurityUpdates
ContentUrl     : https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2727528
Description    : A security issue has been identified that could allow an
 unauthenticated remote attacker to compromise your system and gain control
                 over it. You can help protect your system by installing this
 update from Microsoft. After you install this update, you may have to
                 restart your system.
Id             : 1eb507be-2040-4eeb-803d-abc55700b715
KbNumber       : KB2727528
Language       : All
MsrcNumber     : MS12-072
MsrcSeverity   : Critical
Product        : WindowsServer2012
ProductFamily  : Windows
ReleaseDate    : 11/13/2012 6:00:00 PM
Title          : Security Update for Windows Server 2012 (KB2727528)
Vendor         : Microsoft
...
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each filter.

```
$filter1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter1.Key = "PRODUCT"
$filter1.Values = "WindowsServer2012"
$filter2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter2.Key = "MSRC_SEVERITY"
$filter2.Values = "Critical"

Get-SSMAvailablePatch -Filter $filter1,$filter2
```

Example 3: This example fetches all the updates which are released in last 20 days and applicable to products matching WindowsServer2019

```
Get-SSMAvailablePatch | Where-Object ReleaseDate -ge (Get-Date).AddDays(-20)
 | Where-Object Product -eq "WindowsServer2019" | Select-Object ReleaseDate,
 Product, Title
```

Output:

```
ReleaseDate         Product           Title
-----------         -------           -----
4/9/2019 5:00:12 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-04 Security Update for Adobe Flash
 Player for Windows Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493478)
4/9/2019 5:00:06 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-04 Cumulative Update for Windows
 Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493509)
4/2/2019 5:00:06 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-03 Servicing Stack Update for Windows
 Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493510)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailablePatches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets all available patches for Windows Server 2012 that have a MSRC severity of Critical. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="PRODUCT";Values=@("WindowsServer2012")}
```

```
$filter2 = @{Key="MSRC_SEVERITY";Values=@("Critical")}

Get-SSMAvailablePatch -Filter $filter1,$filter2
```

Output:

```
Classification : SecurityUpdates
ContentUrl     : https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2727528
Description    : A security issue has been identified that could allow an
 unauthenticated remote attacker to compromise your system and gain control
                 over it. You can help protect your system by installing this
 update from Microsoft. After you install this update, you may have to
                 restart your system.
Id             : 1eb507be-2040-4eeb-803d-abc55700b715
KbNumber       : KB2727528
Language       : All
MsrcNumber     : MS12-072
MsrcSeverity   : Critical
Product        : WindowsServer2012
ProductFamily  : Windows
ReleaseDate    : 11/13/2012 6:00:00 PM
Title          : Security Update for Windows Server 2012 (KB2727528)
Vendor         : Microsoft
...
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each filter.

```
$filter1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter1.Key = "PRODUCT"
$filter1.Values = "WindowsServer2012"
$filter2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter2.Key = "MSRC_SEVERITY"
$filter2.Values = "Critical"

Get-SSMAvailablePatch -Filter $filter1,$filter2
```

Example 3: This example fetches all the updates which are released in last 20 days and applicable to products matching WindowsServer2019

```
Get-SSMAvailablePatch | Where-Object ReleaseDate -ge (Get-Date).AddDays(-20)
 | Where-Object Product -eq "WindowsServer2019" | Select-Object ReleaseDate,
 Product, Title
```

Output:

```
ReleaseDate         Product           Title
-----------         -------           -----
4/9/2019 5:00:12 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-04 Security Update for Adobe Flash
 Player for Windows Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493478)
4/9/2019 5:00:06 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-04 Cumulative Update for Windows
 Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493509)
4/2/2019 5:00:06 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-03 Servicing Stack Update for Windows
 Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493510)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailablePatches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeDocument` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDocument`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display details of a document

The following `describe-document` example displays details about a Systems Manager document in your AWS account.

```
aws ssm describe-document \
    --name "Example"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Document": {
        "Hash":
 "fc2410281f40779e694a8b95975d0f9f316da8a153daa94e3d9921102EXAMPLE",
```

```
        "HashType": "Sha256",
        "Name": "Example",
        "Owner": "29884EXAMPLE",
        "CreatedDate": 1583257938.266,
        "Status": "Active",
        "DocumentVersion": "1",
        "Description": "Document Example",
        "Parameters": [
            {
                "Name": "AutomationAssumeRole",
                "Type": "String",
                "Description": "(Required) The ARN of the role that allows
 Automation to perform the actions on your behalf. If no role is specified,
 Systems Manager Automation uses your IAM permissions to execute this document.",
                "DefaultValue": ""
            },
            {
                "Name": "InstanceId",
                "Type": "String",
                "Description": "(Required) The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.",
                "DefaultValue": ""
            }
        ],
        "PlatformTypes": [
            "Windows",
            "Linux"
        ],
        "DocumentType": "Automation",
        "SchemaVersion": "0.3",
        "LatestVersion": "1",
        "DefaultVersion": "1",
        "DocumentFormat": "YAML",
        "Tags": []
    }
}
```

For more information, see Creating Systems Manager Documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDocument in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns information about a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentDescription -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 2/24/2017 5:25:13 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Hash            :
 f775e5df4904c6fa46686c4722fae9de1950dace25cd9608ff8d622046b68d9b
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 1
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 123456789012
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Active
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns information about a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentDescription -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 2/24/2017 5:25:13 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
```

```
Hash            :
 f775e5df4904c6fa46686c4722fae9de1950dace25cd9608ff8d622046b68d9b
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 1
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 123456789012
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Active
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeDocumentPermission` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeDocumentPermission`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe document permissions

The following `describe-document-permission` example displays permission details about a Systems Manager document that is shared publicly.

```
aws ssm describe-document-permission \
    --name "Example" \
    --permission-type "Share"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AccountIds": [
        "all"
    ],
    "AccountSharingInfoList": [
        {
            "AccountId": "all",
            "SharedDocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Share a Systems Manager Document in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentPermission in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all the versions for a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentVersionList -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate          DocumentVersion IsDefaultVersion Name
-----------          --------------- ---------------- ----
2/24/2017 5:25:13 AM 1               True             RunShellScript
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the versions for a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentVersionList -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate          DocumentVersion IsDefaultVersion Name
-----------          --------------- ---------------- ----
2/24/2017 5:25:13 AM 1               True             RunShellScript
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get details of the effective associations for an instance

The following `describe-effective-instance-associations` example retrieves details about the effective associations for an instance.

Command:

```
aws ssm describe-effective-instance-associations --instance-
id "i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

Output:


```
{
    "Associations": [
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Content": "{\n    \"schemaVersion\": \"1.2\",\n    \"description\":
 \"Update the Amazon SSM Agent to the latest version or specified version.\",\n
  \"parameters\": {\n        \"version\": {\n            \"default\": \"\",\n
        \"description\": \"(Optional) A specific version of the Amazon SSM Agent
 to install. If not specified, the agent will be updated to the latest version.
\",\n            \"type\": \"String\"\n        },\n        \"allowDowngrade
\": {\n            \"default\": \"false\",\n            \"description\":
 \"(Optional) Allow the Amazon SSM Agent service to be downgraded to an earlier
 version. If set to false, the service can be upgraded to newer versions only
 (default). If set to true, specify the earlier version.\",\n            \"type
\": \"String\",\n            \"allowedValues\": [\n                \"true\",\n
                \"false\"\n            ]\n        }\n    },\n    \"runtimeConfig
\": {\n        \"aws:updateSsmAgent\": {\n            \"properties\": [\n
         {\n                \"agentName\": \"amazon-ssm-agent\",\n
  \"source\": \"https://s3.{Region}.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-{Region}/ssm-agent-
manifest.json\",\n                \"allowDowngrade\": \"{{ allowDowngrade }}\",\n
                \"targetVersion\": \"{{ version }}\"\n                }\n
    ]\n        }\n    }\n}\n",
            "AssociationVersion": "1"
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example describes the effective associations for an instance.

```
Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -
MaxResult 5
```

Output:

```
AssociationId                        Content
-------------                        -------
d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0 {...
```

Example 2: This example displays the contents of the effective associations for an instance.

```
(Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -
MaxResult 5).Content
```

Output:

```
{
    "schemaVersion": "1.2",
    "description": "Update the Amazon SSM Agent to the latest version or
 specified version.",
    "parameters": {
        "version": {
            "default": "",
            "description": "(Optional) A specific version of the Amazon SSM Agent
 to install. If not specified, the agen
t will be updated to the latest version.",
            "type": "String"
        },
```

```
        "allowDowngrade": {
            "default": "false",
            "description": "(Optional) Allow the Amazon SSM Agent service to be
 downgraded to an earlier version. If set
 to false, the service can be upgraded to newer versions only (default). If set
 to true, specify the earlier version.",
            "type": "String",
            "allowedValues": [
                "true",
                "false"
            ]
        }
    },
    "runtimeConfig": {
        "aws:updateSsmAgent": {
            "properties": [
                {
                "agentName": "amazon-ssm-agent",
                "source": "https://s3.{Region}.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-{Region}/
ssm-agent-manifest.json",
                "allowDowngrade": "{{ allowDowngrade }}",
                "targetVersion": "{{ version }}"
                }
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the effective associations for an instance.

```
Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -
MaxResult 5
```

Output:

```
AssociationId                        Content
-------------                        -------
d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0 {...
```

Example 2: This example displays the contents of the effective associations for an instance.

```
(Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -
MaxResult 5).Content
```

Output:

```
{
    "schemaVersion": "1.2",
    "description": "Update the Amazon SSM Agent to the latest version or
 specified version.",
    "parameters": {
        "version": {
            "default": "",
            "description": "(Optional) A specific version of the Amazon SSM Agent
 to install. If not specified, the agen
t will be updated to the latest version.",
            "type": "String"
        },
        "allowDowngrade": {
            "default": "false",
            "description": "(Optional) Allow the Amazon SSM Agent service to be
 downgraded to an earlier version. If set
 to false, the service can be upgraded to newer versions only (default). If set
 to true, specify the earlier version.",
            "type": "String",
            "allowedValues": [
                "true",
                "false"
            ]
        }
    },
    "runtimeConfig": {
        "aws:updateSsmAgent": {
            "properties": [
                {
                "agentName": "amazon-ssm-agent",
                "source": "https://s3.{Region}.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-{Region}/
ssm-agent-manifest.json",
                "allowDowngrade": "{{ allowDowngrade }}",
                "targetVersion": "{{ version }}"
                }
```

```
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get all patches defined by a custom patch baseline

The following `describe-effective-patches-for-patch-baseline` example returns the patches defined by a custom patch baseline in the current AWS account. Note that for a custom baseline, only the ID is required for `--baseline-id`.

```
aws ssm describe-effective-patches-for-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "pb-08b654cf9b9681f04"
```

Output:

```
{
    "EffectivePatches": [
        {
            "Patch": {
                "Id": "fe6bd8c2-3752-4c8b-ab3e-1a7ed08767ba",
                "ReleaseDate": 1544047205.0,
                "Title": "2018-11 Update for Windows Server 2019 for x64-based
 Systems (KB4470788)",
                "Description": "Install this update to resolve issues in Windows.
 For a complete listing of the issues that are included in this update, see the
 associated Microsoft Knowledge Base article for more information. After you
 install this item, you may have to restart your computer.",
                "ContentUrl": "https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/4470788",
                "Vendor": "Microsoft",
```

```
                "ProductFamily": "Windows",
                "Product": "WindowsServer2019",
                "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
                "MsrcSeverity": "Critical",
                "KbNumber": "KB4470788",
                "MsrcNumber": "",
                "Language": "All"
            },
            "PatchStatus": {
                "DeploymentStatus": "APPROVED",
                "ComplianceLevel": "CRITICAL",
                "ApprovalDate": 1544047205.0
            }
        },
        {
            "Patch": {
                "Id": "915a6b1a-f556-4d83-8f50-b2e75a9a7e58",
                "ReleaseDate": 1549994400.0,
                "Title": "2019-02 Cumulative Update for .NET Framework 3.5 and
4.7.2 for Windows Server 2019 for x64 (KB4483452)",
                "Description": "A security issue has been identified in a
Microsoft software product that could affect your system. You can help protect
your system by installing this update from Microsoft. For a complete listing
of the issues that are included in this update, see the associated Microsoft
Knowledge Base article. After you install this update, you may have to restart
your system.",
                "ContentUrl": "https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/4483452",
                "Vendor": "Microsoft",
                "ProductFamily": "Windows",
                "Product": "WindowsServer2019",
                "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
                "MsrcSeverity": "Important",
                "KbNumber": "KB4483452",
                "MsrcNumber": "",
                "Language": "All"
            },
            "PatchStatus": {
                "DeploymentStatus": "APPROVED",
                "ComplianceLevel": "CRITICAL",
                "ApprovalDate": 1549994400.0
            }
        },
        ...
    ],
```

```
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

Example 2: To get all patches defined by an AWS managed patch baseline

The following `describe-effective-patches-for-patch-baseline` example returns the patches defined by an AWS managed patch baseline. Note that for an AWS managed baseline, the complete baseline ARN is required for `--baseline-id`

```
aws ssm describe-effective-patches-for-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:733109147000:patchbaseline/
pb-020d361a05defe4ed"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see How Security Patches Are Selected in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all patch baselines, with a maximum result list of 1.

```
Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31" -
MaxResult 1
```

Output:

```
Patch                                       PatchStatus
-----                                       -----------
Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.Patch
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchStatus
```

Example 2: This example displays the patch status for all patch baselines, with a maximum result list of 1.

```
(Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31" -
MaxResult 1).PatchStatus
```

Output:

```
ApprovalDate          DeploymentStatus
------------          ----------------
12/21/2010 6:00:00 PM APPROVED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all patch baselines, with a maximum result list of 1.

```
Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31" -
MaxResult 1
```

Output:

```
Patch                                       PatchStatus
-----                                       -----------
Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.Patch
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchStatus
```

Example 2: This example displays the patch status for all patch baselines, with a maximum result list of 1.

```
(Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31" -
MaxResult 1).PatchStatus
```

Output:

```
ApprovalDate          DeploymentStatus
------------          ----------------
12/21/2010 6:00:00 PM APPROVED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the status of an instance's associations

This example shows details of the associations for an instance.

Command:

```
aws ssm describe-instance-associations-status --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
  "InstanceAssociationStatusInfos": [
      {
          "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
          "Name": "AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory",
          "DocumentVersion": "1",
          "AssociationVersion": "1",
          "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "ExecutionDate": 1550501886.0,
          "Status": "Success",
          "ExecutionSummary": "1 out of 1 plugin processed, 1 success, 0 failed,
 0 timedout, 0 skipped. ",
          "AssociationName": "Inventory-Association"
      },
      {
          "AssociationId": "5c5a31f6-6dae-46f9-944c-0123456789ab",
          "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
          "DocumentVersion": "1",
          "AssociationVersion": "1",
          "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "ExecutionDate": 1550505828.548,
          "Status": "Success",
          "DetailedStatus": "Success",
          "AssociationName": "UpdateSSMAgent"
      }
  ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows details of the associations for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862"
```

Output:

```
AssociationId    : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DetailedStatus   : Pending
DocumentVersion  : 1
ErrorCode        :
ExecutionDate    : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
ExecutionSummary : temp_status_change
InstanceId       : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Name             : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
OutputUrl        :
Status           : Pending
```

Example 2: This example checks the instance association status for the given instance id and further, displays the execution status of those associations

```
Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus -InstanceId i-012e3cb4df567e8aa | ForEach-
Object {Get-SSMAssociationExecution -AssociationId .AssociationId}
```

Output:

```
AssociationId         : 512a34a5-c678-1234-1234-12345678db9e
AssociationVersion    : 2
CreatedTime           : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DetailedStatus        :
ExecutionId           : 512a34a5-c678-1234-1234-12345678db9e
LastExecutionDate     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceCountByStatus : {Success=9}
Status                : Success
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows details of the associations for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862"
```

Output:

```
AssociationId    : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DetailedStatus   : Pending
DocumentVersion  : 1
ErrorCode        :
ExecutionDate    : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
ExecutionSummary : temp_status_change
InstanceId       : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Name             : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
OutputUrl        :
Status           : Pending
```

Example 2: This example checks the instance association status for the given instance id and further, displays the execution status of those associations

```
Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus -InstanceId i-012e3cb4df567e8aa | ForEach-
Object {Get-SSMAssociationExecution -AssociationId .AssociationId}
```

Output:

```
AssociationId         : 512a34a5-c678-1234-1234-12345678db9e
AssociationVersion    : 2
CreatedTime           : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DetailedStatus        :
ExecutionId           : 512a34a5-c678-1234-1234-12345678db9e
LastExecutionDate     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceCountByStatus : {Success=9}
Status                : Success
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstanceInformation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstanceInformation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To describe managed instance information

The following `describe-instance-information` example retrieves details of each of your managed instances.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-information
```

Example 2: To describe information about a specific managed instance

The following `describe-instance-information` example shows details of the managed instance `i-028ea792daEXAMPLE`.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-information \
    --filters "Key=InstanceIds,Values=i-028ea792daEXAMPLE"
```

Example 3: To describe information about managed instances with a specific tag key

The following `describe-instance-information` example shows details for managed instances that have the tag key `DEV`.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-information \
    --filters "Key=tag-key,Values=DEV"
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceInformationList": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-028ea792daEXAMPLE",
            "PingStatus": "Online",
            "LastPingDateTime": 1582221233.421,
            "AgentVersion": "2.3.842.0",
            "IsLatestVersion": true,
```

```
            "PlatformType": "Linux",
            "PlatformName": "SLES",
            "PlatformVersion": "15.1",
            "ResourceType": "EC2Instance",
            "IPAddress": "192.0.2.0",
            "ComputerName": "ip-198.51.100.0.us-east-2.compute.internal",
            "AssociationStatus": "Success",
            "LastAssociationExecutionDate": 1582220806.0,
            "LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate": 1582220806.0,
            "AssociationOverview": {
                "DetailedStatus": "Success",
                "InstanceAssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                    "Success": 2
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Managed Instances in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceInformation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example shows details of each of your instances.

```
Get-SSMInstanceInformation
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                          :
AgentVersion                          : 2.0.672.0
AssociationOverview                   :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                     : Success
ComputerName                          : ip-172-31-44-222.us-
west-2.compute.internal
IamRole                               :
InstanceId                            : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
IPAddress                             : 172.31.44.222
```

```
IsLatestVersion                         : True
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 2/24/2017 3:18:09 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 2/24/2017 3:35:03 AM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 2/24/2017 3:18:09 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : ConnectionLost
PlatformName                            : Amazon Linux AMI
PlatformType                            : Linux
PlatformVersion                         : 2016.09
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance
```

Example 2: This example shows how to use the -Filter parameter to filter results to only those AWS Systems Manager instances in region `us-east-1` with an `AgentVersion` of `2.2.800.0`. You can find a list of valid -Filter key values in the InstanceInformation API reference topic (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/APIReference/API_InstanceInformation.html#systemsmanager-Type-InstanceInformation-ActivationId).

```
$Filters = @{
    Key="AgentVersion"
    Values="2.2.800.0"
}
Get-SSMInstanceInformation -Region us-east-1 -Filter $Filters
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                            :
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEb0792d98ce
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.01
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:27 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
```

```
PlatformName                           : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                           : Windows
PlatformVersion                        : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                           : EC2Instance

ActivationId                           :
AgentVersion                           : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                    :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                      : Success
ComputerName                           : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                :
InstanceId                             : i-EXAMPLEac7501d023
IPAddress                              : 10.0.0.02
IsLatestVersion                        : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate           : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
LastPingDateTime                       : 8/16/2018 7:40:35 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
Name                                   :
PingStatus                             : Online
PlatformName                           : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                           : Windows
PlatformVersion                        : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                           : EC2Instance
```

Example 3: This example shows how to use the -InstanceInformationFilterList parameter to filter results to only those AWS Systems Manager instances in region `us-east-1` with `PlatformTypes` of `Windows` or `Linux`. You can find a list of valid -InstanceInformationFilterList key values in the InstanceInformationFilter API reference topic (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/APIReference/API_InstanceInformationFilter.html).

```
$Filters = @{
   Key="PlatformTypes"
   ValueSet=("Windows","Linux")
}
Get-SSMInstanceInformation -Region us-east-1 -InstanceInformationFilterList
 $Filters
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                           :
AgentVersion                           : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                    :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                      : Success
ComputerName                           : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                :
InstanceId                             : i-EXAMPLEb0792d98ce
IPAddress                              : 10.0.0.27
IsLatestVersion                        : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate           : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
LastPingDateTime                       : 8/16/2018 7:40:27 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
Name                                   :
PingStatus                             : Online
PlatformName                           : Ubuntu Server 18.04 LTS
PlatformType                           : Linux
PlatformVersion                        : 18.04
RegistrationDate                       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                           : EC2Instance

ActivationId                           :
AgentVersion                           : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                    :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                      : Success
ComputerName                           : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                :
InstanceId                             : i-EXAMPLEac7501d023
IPAddress                              : 10.0.0.100
IsLatestVersion                        : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate           : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
LastPingDateTime                       : 8/16/2018 7:40:35 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
Name                                   :
PingStatus                             : Online
PlatformName                           : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                           : Windows
PlatformVersion                        : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                           : EC2Instance
```

Example 4: This example lists ssm managed instances and exports InstanceId, PingStatus, LastPingDateTime and PlatformName to a csv file.

```
Get-SSMInstanceInformation | Select-Object InstanceId, PingStatus,
 LastPingDateTime, PlatformName | Export-Csv Instance-details.csv -
NoTypeInformation
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceInformation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows details of each of your instances.

```
Get-SSMInstanceInformation
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                          :
AgentVersion                          : 2.0.672.0
AssociationOverview                   :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                     : Success
ComputerName                          : ip-172-31-44-222.us-
west-2.compute.internal
IamRole                               :
InstanceId                            : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
IPAddress                             : 172.31.44.222
IsLatestVersion                       : True
LastAssociationExecutionDate          : 2/24/2017 3:18:09 AM
LastPingDateTime                      : 2/24/2017 3:35:03 AM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 2/24/2017 3:18:09 AM
Name                                  :
PingStatus                            : ConnectionLost
PlatformName                          : Amazon Linux AMI
PlatformType                          : Linux
PlatformVersion                       : 2016.09
RegistrationDate                      : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                          : EC2Instance
```

Example 2: This example shows how to use the -Filter parameter to filter results to only those AWS Systems Manager instances in region `us-east-1` with an `AgentVersion` of

`2.2.800.0`. You can find a list of valid -Filter key values in the InstanceInformation API reference topic (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/APIReference/API_InstanceInformation.html#systemsmanager-Type-InstanceInformation-ActivationId).

```
$Filters = @{
    Key="AgentVersion"
    Values="2.2.800.0"
}
Get-SSMInstanceInformation -Region us-east-1 -Filter $Filters
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                          :
AgentVersion                          : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                   :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                     : Success
ComputerName                          : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                               :
InstanceId                            : i-EXAMPLEb0792d98ce
IPAddress                             : 10.0.0.01
IsLatestVersion                       : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate          : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
LastPingDateTime                      : 8/16/2018 7:40:27 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
Name                                  :
PingStatus                            : Online
PlatformName                          : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                          : Windows
PlatformVersion                       : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                      : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                          : EC2Instance

ActivationId                          :
AgentVersion                          : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                   :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                     : Success
ComputerName                          : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                               :
InstanceId                            : i-EXAMPLEac7501d023
```

```
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.02
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:35 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                            : Windows
PlatformVersion                         : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance
```

Example 3: This example shows how to use the -InstanceInformationFilterList parameter to filter results to only those AWS Systems Manager instances in region `us-east-1` with `PlatformTypes` of `Windows` or `Linux`. You can find a list of valid -InstanceInformationFilterList key values in the InstanceInformationFilter API reference topic (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/APIReference/API_InstanceInformationFilter.html).

```
$Filters = @{
   Key="PlatformTypes"
   ValueSet=("Windows","Linux")
}
Get-SSMInstanceInformation -Region us-east-1 -InstanceInformationFilterList
 $Filters
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                            :
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEb0792d98ce
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.27
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:27 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
```

```
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Ubuntu Server 18.04 LTS
PlatformType                            : Linux
PlatformVersion                         : 18.04
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance

ActivationId                            :
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEac7501d023
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.100
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:35 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                            : Windows
PlatformVersion                         : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance
```

Example 4: This example lists ssm managed instances and exports InstanceId, PingStatus, LastPingDateTime and PlatformName to a csv file.

```
Get-SSMInstanceInformation | Select-Object InstanceId, PingStatus,
 LastPingDateTime, PlatformName | Export-Csv Instance-details.csv -
NoTypeInformation
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceInformation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstancePatchStates` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstancePatchStates`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the patch summary states for instances

This `describe-instance-patch-states` example gets the patch summary states for an instance.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patch-states \
    --instance-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstancePatchStates": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "PatchGroup": "my-patch-group",
            "BaselineId": "pb-0713accee01234567",
            "SnapshotId": "521c3536-930c-4aa9-950e-01234567abcd",
            "CriticalNonCompliantCount": 2,
            "SecurityNonCompliantCount": 2,
            "OtherNonCompliantCount": 1,
            "InstalledCount": 123,
            "InstalledOtherCount": 334,
            "InstalledPendingRebootCount": 0,
            "InstalledRejectedCount": 0,
            "MissingCount": 1,
            "FailedCount": 2,
            "UnreportedNotApplicableCount": 11,
            "NotApplicableCount": 2063,
            "OperationStartTime": "2021-05-03T11:00:56-07:00",
            "OperationEndTime": "2021-05-03T11:01:09-07:00",
            "Operation": "Scan",
            "LastNoRebootInstallOperationTime": "2020-06-14T12:17:41-07:00",
            "RebootOption": "RebootIfNeeded"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see About Patch Compliance in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStates in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the patch summary states for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchState -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407"
```

Example 2: This example gets the patch summary states for two instances.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchState -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407","i-09a618aec652973a9"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the patch summary states for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchState -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407"
```

Example 2: This example gets the patch summary states for two instances.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchState -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407","i-09a618aec652973a9"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get the instance states for a patch group

The following `describe-instance-patch-states-for-patch-group` example retrieves details about the patch summary states per-instance for the specified patch group.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patch-states-for-patch-group \
    --patch-group "Production"
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstancePatchStates": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE",
            "PatchGroup": "Production",
            "BaselineId": "pb-0c10e65780EXAMPLE",
            "SnapshotId": "a3f5ff34-9bc4-4d2c-a665-4d1c1EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerInformation": "",
            "InstalledCount": 32,
            "InstalledOtherCount": 1,
            "InstalledPendingRebootCount": 0,
            "InstalledRejectedCount": 0,
            "MissingCount": 2,
            "FailedCount": 0,
            "UnreportedNotApplicableCount": 2671,
            "NotApplicableCount": 400,
            "OperationStartTime": "2021-08-04T11:03:50.590000-07:00",
            "OperationEndTime": "2021-08-04T11:04:21.555000-07:00",
            "Operation": "Scan",
            "RebootOption": "NoReboot",
            "CriticalNonCompliantCount": 0,
            "SecurityNonCompliantCount": 1,
            "OtherNonCompliantCount": 0
        },
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-0471e04240EXAMPLE",
            "PatchGroup": "Production",
            "BaselineId": "pb-09ca3fb51fEXAMPLE",
            "SnapshotId": "05d8ffb0-1bbe-4812-ba2d-d9b7bEXAMPLE",
            "OwnerInformation": "",
            "InstalledCount": 32,
            "InstalledOtherCount": 1,
            "InstalledPendingRebootCount": 0,
            "InstalledRejectedCount": 0,
            "MissingCount": 2,
```

```
            "FailedCount": 0,
            "UnreportedNotApplicableCount": 2671,
            "NotApplicableCount": 400,
            "OperationStartTime": "2021-08-04T22:06:20.340000-07:00",
            "OperationEndTime": "2021-08-04T22:07:11.220000-07:00",
            "Operation": "Scan",
            "RebootOption": "NoReboot",
            "CriticalNonCompliantCount": 0,
            "SecurityNonCompliantCount": 1,
            "OtherNonCompliantCount": 0
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To get the instance states for a patch group with more than five missing patches

The following `describe-instance-patch-states-for-patch-group` example retrieves details about the patch summary states for the specified patch group for instances with more than five missing patches.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patch-states-for-patch-group \
    --filters Key=MissingCount,Type=GreaterThan,Values=5 \
    --patch-group "Production"
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstancePatchStates": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE",
            "PatchGroup": "Production",
            "BaselineId": "pb-0c10e65780EXAMPLE",
            "SnapshotId": "a3f5ff34-9bc4-4d2c-a665-4d1c1EXAMPLE",
            "OwnerInformation": "",
            "InstalledCount": 46,
            "InstalledOtherCount": 4,
            "InstalledPendingRebootCount": 1,
            "InstalledRejectedCount": 1,
            "MissingCount": 7,
            "FailedCount": 0,
            "UnreportedNotApplicableCount": 232,
```

```
            "NotApplicableCount": 654,
            "OperationStartTime": "2021-08-04T11:03:50.590000-07:00",
            "OperationEndTime": "2021-08-04T11:04:21.555000-07:00",
            "Operation": "Scan",
            "RebootOption": "NoReboot",
            "CriticalNonCompliantCount": 0,
            "SecurityNonCompliantCount": 1,
            "OtherNonCompliantCount": 1
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To get the instance states for a patch group with fewer than ten instances that require a reboot

The following `describe-instance-patch-states-for-patch-group` example retrieves details about the patch summary states for the specified patch group for instances with fewer than ten instances requiring a reboot.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patch-states-for-patch-group \
    --filters Key=InstalledPendingRebootCount,Type=LessThan,Values=10 \
    --patch-group "Production"
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstancePatchStates": [
        {
            "InstanceId": "i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE",
            "BaselineId": "pb-0c10e65780EXAMPLE",
            "SnapshotId": "a3f5ff34-9bc4-4d2c-a665-4d1c1EXAMPLE",
            "PatchGroup": "Production",
            "OwnerInformation": "",
            "InstalledCount": 32,
            "InstalledOtherCount": 1,
            "InstalledPendingRebootCount": 4,
            "InstalledRejectedCount": 0,
            "MissingCount": 2,
            "FailedCount": 0,
            "UnreportedNotApplicableCount": 846,
            "NotApplicableCount": 212,
            "OperationStartTime": "2021-08-046T11:03:50.590000-07:00",
```

```
            "OperationEndTime": "2021-08-06T11:04:21.555000-07:00",
            "Operation": "Scan",
            "RebootOption": "NoReboot",
            "CriticalNonCompliantCount": 0,
            "SecurityNonCompliantCount": 1,
            "OtherNonCompliantCount": 0
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Understanding patch compliance state values in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the patch summary states per-instance for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup -PatchGroup "Production"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the patch summary states per-instance for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup -PatchGroup "Production"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeInstancePatches` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeInstancePatches`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get the patch state details for an instance

The following `describe-instance-patches` example retrieves details about the patches for the specified instance.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patches \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Patches": [
        {
            "Title": "2019-01 Security Update for Adobe Flash Player for Windows
 Server 2016 for x64-based Systems (KB4480979)",
            "KBId": "KB4480979",
            "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
            "Severity": "Critical",
            "State": "Installed",
            "InstalledTime": "2019-01-09T00:00:00+00:00"
        },
        {
            "Title": "",
            "KBId": "KB4481031",
            "Classification": "",
            "Severity": "",
            "State": "InstalledOther",
            "InstalledTime": "2019-02-08T00:00:00+00:00"
        },
        ...
    ],
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

Example 2: To get a list of patches in the Missing state for an instance

The following `describe-instance-patches` example retrieves information about patches that are in the Missing state for the specified instance.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patches \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --filters Key=State,Values=Missing
```

Output:

```
{
    "Patches": [
        {
            "Title": "Windows Malicious Software Removal Tool x64 - February 2019
 (KB890830)",
            "KBId": "KB890830",
            "Classification": "UpdateRollups",
            "Severity": "Unspecified",
            "State": "Missing",
            "InstalledTime": "1970-01-01T00:00:00+00:00"
        },
        ...
    ],
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

For more information, see About Patch Compliance States in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 3: To get a list of patches installed since a specified InstalledTime for an instance

The following `describe-instance-patches` example retrieves information about patches installed since a specified time for the specified instance by combining the use of `--filters` and `--query`.

```
aws ssm describe-instance-patches \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --filters Key=State,Values=Installed \
    --query "Patches[?InstalledTime >= `2023-01-01T16:00:00`]"
```

Output:

```
{
```

```
    "Patches": [
        {
            "Title": "2023-03 Cumulative Update for Windows Server 2019 (1809)
 for x64-based Systems (KB5023702)",
            "KBId": "KB5023702",
            "Classification": "SecurityUpdates",
            "Severity": "Critical",
            "State": "Installed",
            "InstalledTime": "2023-03-16T11:00:00+00:00"
        },
        ...
    ],
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatches in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the patch compliance details for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatch -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the patch compliance details for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatch -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the specific task invocations performed for a maintenance window task execution

The following `describe-maintenance-window-execution-task-invocations` example lists the invocations for the specified task executed as part of the specified maintenance window execution.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-execution-task-invocations \
    --window-execution-id "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355" \
    --task-id "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowExecutionTaskInvocationIdentities": [
        {
            "Status": "SUCCESS",
            "Parameters": "{\"documentName\":\"AWS-RunShellScript\",
\"instanceIds\":[\"i-0000293ffd8c57862\"],\"parameters\":{\"commands\":[\"df\"]},
\"maxConcurrency\":\"1\",\"maxErrors\":\"1\"}",
            "InvocationId": "e274b6e1-fe56-4e32-bd2a-8073c6381d8b",
            "StartTime": 1487692834.723,
            "EndTime": 1487692834.871,
            "WindowExecutionId": "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355",
            "TaskExecutionId": "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View Information About Tasks and Task Executions (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the invocations for a task executed as part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocationList -TaskId "ac0c6ae1-
daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586" -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-
da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
ExecutionId       :
InvocationId      : e274b6e1-fe56-4e32-bd2a-8073c6381d8b
OwnerInformation  :
Parameters        : {"documentName":"AWS-RunShellScript","instanceIds":
["i-0000293ffd8c57862"],"parameters":{"commands":["df"]},"maxConcurrency":"1",
                    "maxErrors":"1"}
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : The instance IDs list contains an invalid entry.
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
WindowTargetId    :
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the invocations for a task executed as part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocationList -TaskId "ac0c6ae1-
daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586" -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-
da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
```

```
ExecutionId       :
InvocationId      : e274b6e1-fe56-4e32-bd2a-8073c6381d8b
OwnerInformation  :
Parameters        : {"documentName":"AWS-RunShellScript","instanceIds":
["i-0000293ffd8c57862"],"parameters":{"commands":["df"]},"maxConcurrency":"1",
                    "maxErrors":"1"}
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : The instance IDs list contains an invalid entry.
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
WindowTargetId    :
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all tasks associated with a maintenance window execution

The following `ssm describe-maintenance-window-execution-tasks` example lists the tasks associated with the specified maintenance window execution.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-execution-tasks \
    --window-execution-id "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2EXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowExecutionTaskIdentities": [
        {
            "Status": "SUCCESS",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-RunShellScript",
            "StartTime": 1487692834.684,
            "TaskType": "RUN_COMMAND",
```

```
            "EndTime": 1487692835.005,
            "WindowExecutionId": "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2EXAMPLE",
            "TaskExecutionId": "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d3845EXAMPLE"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View Information About Tasks and Task Executions (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the tasks associated with a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskList -WindowExecutionId
 "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : SUCCESS
TaskArn           : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
TaskType          : RUN_COMMAND
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the tasks associated with a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskList -WindowExecutionId
 "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : SUCCESS
TaskArn           : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
TaskType          : RUN_COMMAND
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all executions for a maintenance window

The following `describe-maintenance-window-executions` example lists all of the executions for the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-executions \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowExecutions": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowExecutionId": "6027b513-64fe-4cf0-be7d-1191aEXAMPLE",
            "Status": "IN_PROGRESS",
            "StartTime": "2021-08-04T11:00:00.000000-07:00"

        },
        {
```

```
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowExecutionId": "ff75b750-4834-4377-8f61-b3cadEXAMPLE",
            "Status": "SUCCESS",
            "StartTime": "2021-08-03T11:00:00.000000-07:00",
            "EndTime": "2021-08-03T11:37:21.450000-07:00"
        },
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowExecutionId": "9fac7dd9-ff21-42a5-96ad-bbc4bEXAMPLE",
            "Status": "FAILED",
            "StatusDetails": "One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.",
            "StartTime": "2021-08-02T11:00:00.000000-07:00",
            "EndTime": "2021-08-02T11:22:36.190000-07:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all executions for a maintenance window before a specified date

The following `describe-maintenance-window-executions` example lists all of the executions for the specified maintenance window before the specified date.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-executions \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE" \
    --filters "Key=ExecutedBefore,Values=2021-08-03T00:00:00Z"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowExecutions": [
        {
        "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
        "WindowExecutionId": "9fac7dd9-ff21-42a5-96ad-bbc4bEXAMPLE",
        "Status": "FAILED",
        "StatusDetails": "One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.",
        "StartTime": "2021-08-02T11:00:00.000000-07:00",
        "EndTime": "2021-08-02T11:22:36.190000-07:00"
    }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To list all executions for a maintenance window after a specified date

The following `describe-maintenance-window-executions` example lists all of the executions for the specified maintenance window after the specified date.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-executions \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE" \
    --filters "Key=ExecutedAfter,Values=2021-08-04T00:00:00Z"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowExecutions": [
        {
        "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
        "WindowExecutionId": "6027b513-64fe-4cf0-be7d-1191aEXAMPLE",
        "Status": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "StartTime": "2021-08-04T11:00:00.000000-07:00"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View information about tasks and task executions (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/20/2017 6:30:17 PM
StartTime         : 2/20/2017 6:30:16 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.
```

```
WindowExecutionId : 6f3215cf-4101-4fa0-9b7b-9523269599c7
WindowId          : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 2: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window before a specified date.

```
$option1 = @{Key="ExecutedBefore";Values=@("2016-11-04T05:00:00Z")}
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Filter
 $option1
```

Example 3: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window after a specified date.

```
$option1 = @{Key="ExecutedAfter";Values=@("2016-11-04T05:00:00Z")}
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Filter
 $option1
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/20/2017 6:30:17 PM
StartTime         : 2/20/2017 6:30:16 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.
WindowExecutionId : 6f3215cf-4101-4fa0-9b7b-9523269599c7
WindowId          : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 2: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window before a specified date.

```
$option1 = @{Key="ExecutedBefore";Values=@("2016-11-04T05:00:00Z")}
```

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Filter
 $option1
```

Example 3: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window after a specified date.

```
$option1 = @{Key="ExecutedAfter";Values=@("2016-11-04T05:00:00Z")}
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Filter
 $option1
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all targets for a Maintenance Window

The following `describe-maintenance-window-targets` example lists all of the targets for a maintenance window.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-targets \
    --window-id "mw-06cf17cbefEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Targets": [
        {
            "ResourceType": "INSTANCE",
            "OwnerInformation": "Single instance",
            "WindowId": "mw-06cf17cbefEXAMPLE",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Values": [
```

```
                        "i-0000293ffdEXAMPLE"
                    ],
                    "Key": "InstanceIds"
                }
            ],
            "WindowTargetId": "350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c9EXAMPLE"
        },
        {
            "ResourceType": "INSTANCE",
            "OwnerInformation": "Two instances in a list",
            "WindowId": "mw-06cf17cbefEXAMPLE",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Values": [
                        "i-0000293ffdEXAMPLE",
                        "i-0cb2b964d3EXAMPLE"
                    ],
                    "Key": "InstanceIds"
                }
            ],
            "WindowTargetId": "e078a987-2866-47be-bedd-d9cf4EXAMPLE"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all targets for a maintenance window matching a specific owner information value

This `describe-maintenance-window-targets` example lists all of the targets for a maintenance window with a specific value.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-targets \
    --window-id "mw-0ecb1226ddEXAMPLE" \
    --filters "Key=OwnerInformation,Values=CostCenter1"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Targets": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-0ecb1226ddEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTargetId": "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7d0057f9",
```

```
            "ResourceType": "INSTANCE",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "tag:Environment",
                    "Values": [
                        "Prod"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "OwnerInformation": "CostCenter1",
            "Name": "ProdTarget1"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View Information About Maintenance Windows (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all of the targets for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTarget -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
OwnerInformation : Single instance
ResourceType     : INSTANCE
Targets          : {InstanceIds}
WindowId         : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTargetId   : 350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c985838f6

OwnerInformation : Two instances in a list
ResourceType     : INSTANCE
Targets          : {InstanceIds}
WindowId         : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTargetId   : e078a987-2866-47be-bedd-d9cf49177d3a
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all of the targets for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTarget -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
OwnerInformation : Single instance
ResourceType     : INSTANCE
Targets          : {InstanceIds}
WindowId         : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTargetId   : 350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c985838f6

OwnerInformation : Two instances in a list
ResourceType     : INSTANCE
Targets          : {InstanceIds}
WindowId         : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTargetId   : e078a987-2866-47be-bedd-d9cf49177d3a
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all tasks for a maintenance window

The following `describe-maintenance-window-tasks` example lists all of the tasks for the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-tasks \
    --window-id "mw-06cf17cbefEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tasks": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-06cf17cbefEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTaskId": "018b31c3-2d77-4b9e-bd48-c91edEXAMPLE",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-RestartEC2Instance",
            "TaskParameters": {},
            "Type": "AUTOMATION",
            "Description": "Restarting EC2 Instance for maintenance",
            "MaxConcurrency": "1",
            "MaxErrors": "1",
            "Name": "My-Automation-Example-Task",
            "Priority": 0,
            "ServiceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "WindowTargetIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-06cf17cbefEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTaskId": "1943dee0-0a17-4978-9bf4-3cc2fEXAMPLE",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-DisableS3BucketPublicReadWrite",
            "TaskParameters": {},
            "Type": "AUTOMATION",
            "Description": "Automation task to disable read/write access on
 public S3 buckets",
            "MaxConcurrency": "10",
            "MaxErrors": "5",
            "Name": "My-Disable-S3-Public-Read-Write-Access-Automation-Task",
            "Priority": 0,
            "ServiceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "WindowTargetIds",
                    "Values": [
```

```
                        "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all tasks for a maintenance window that invokes the AWS-RunPowerShellScript command document

The following `describe-maintenance-window-tasks` example lists all of the tasks for the specified maintenance window that invokes the `AWS-RunPowerShellScript` command document.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-tasks \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE" \
    --filters "Key=TaskArn,Values=AWS-RunPowerShellScript"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tasks": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTaskId": "0d36e6b4-3a4f-411e-adcb-3558eEXAMPLE",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-RunPowerShellScript",
            "Type": "RUN_COMMAND",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "WindowTargetIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "TaskParameters": {},
            "Priority": 1,
            "ServiceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "MaxConcurrency": "1",
            "MaxErrors": "1",
```

```
            "Name": "MyTask"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To list all tasks for a maintenance window that have a Priority of 3

The following `describe-maintenance-window-tasks` example lists all of the tasks for the specified maintenance window that have a `Priority` of 3.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-tasks \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE" \
    --filters "Key=Priority,Values=3"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tasks": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTaskId": "0d36e6b4-3a4f-411e-adcb-3558eEXAMPLE",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-RunPowerShellScript",
            "Type": "RUN_COMMAND",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "WindowTargetIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "TaskParameters": {},
            "Priority": 3,
            "ServiceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "MaxConcurrency": "1",
            "MaxErrors": "1",
            "Name": "MyRunCommandTask"
        },
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTaskId": "ee45feff-ad65-4a6c-b478-5cab8EXAMPLE",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-RestartEC2Instance",
```

```
            "Type": "AUTOMATION",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "WindowTargetIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "TaskParameters": {},
            "Priority": 3,
            "ServiceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "MaxConcurrency": "10",
            "MaxErrors": "5",
            "Name": "My-Automation-Task",
            "Description": "A description for my Automation task"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 4: To list all tasks for a maintenance window that have a Priority of 1 and use Run Command

This `describe-maintenance-window-tasks` example lists all of the tasks for the specified maintenance window that have a `Priority` of 1 and use `Run Command`.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-tasks \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE" \
    --filters "Key=Priority,Values=1" "Key=TaskType,Values=RUN_COMMAND"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Tasks": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE",
            "WindowTaskId": "0d36e6b4-3a4f-411e-adcb-3558eEXAMPLE",
            "TaskArn": "AWS-RunPowerShellScript",
            "Type": "RUN_COMMAND",
            "Targets": [
                {
```

```
                    "Key": "WindowTargetIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "da89dcc3-7f9c-481d-ba2b-edcb7EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "TaskParameters": {},
            "Priority": 1,
            "ServiceRoleArn": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "MaxConcurrency": "1",
            "MaxErrors": "1",
            "Name": "MyRunCommandTask"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see View information about maintenance windows (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all of the tasks for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTaskList -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
LoggingInfo    :
MaxConcurrency : 1
MaxErrors      : 1
Priority       : 10
ServiceRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole
Targets        : {InstanceIds}
TaskArn        : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskParameters : {[commands,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression]}
Type           : RUN_COMMAND
```

```
WindowId       : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTaskId   : a23e338d-ff30-4398-8aa3-09cd052ebf17
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all of the tasks for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTaskList -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
LoggingInfo    :
MaxConcurrency : 1
MaxErrors      : 1
Priority       : 10
ServiceRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole
Targets        : {InstanceIds}
TaskArn        : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskParameters : {[commands,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression]}
Type           : RUN_COMMAND
WindowId       : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTaskId   : a23e338d-ff30-4398-8aa3-09cd052ebf17
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeMaintenanceWindows` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeMaintenanceWindows`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all maintenance windows

The following `describe-maintenance-windows` example lists all maintenance windows in your AWS account in the current Region.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-windows
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowIdentities": [
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-0ecb1226ddEXAMPLE",
            "Name": "MyMaintenanceWindow-1",
            "Enabled": true,
            "Duration": 2,
            "Cutoff": 1,
            "Schedule": "rate(180 minutes)",
            "NextExecutionTime": "2020-02-12T23:19:20.596Z"
        },
        {
            "WindowId": "mw-03eb9db428EXAMPLE",
            "Name": "MyMaintenanceWindow-2",
            "Enabled": true,
            "Duration": 3,
            "Cutoff": 1,
            "Schedule": "rate(7 days)",
            "NextExecutionTime": "2020-02-17T23:22:00.956Z"
        },
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all enabled maintenance windows

The following `describe-maintenance-windows` example lists all enabled maintenance windows.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-windows \
    --filters "Key=Enabled,Values=true"
```

Example 3: To list maintenance windows matching a specific name

This `describe-maintenance-windows` example lists all maintenance windows with the specified name.

```
aws ssm describe-maintenance-windows \
```

```
    --filters "Key=Name,Values=MyMaintenanceWindow"
```

For more information, see View Information About Maintenance Windows (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindows in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all maintenance windows on your account.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowList
```

Output:

```
Cutoff   : 1
Duration : 4
Enabled  : True
Name     : My-First-Maintenance-Window
WindowId : mw-06d59c1a07c022145
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindows in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all maintenance windows on your account.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowList
```

Output:

```
Cutoff   : 1
Duration : 4
Enabled  : True
Name     : My-First-Maintenance-Window
WindowId : mw-06d59c1a07c022145
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindows in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeOpsItems` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeOpsItems`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list a set of OpsItems

The following `describe-ops-items` example displays a list of all open OpsItems in your AWS account.

```
aws ssm describe-ops-items \
    --ops-item-filters "Key=Status,Values=Open,Operator=Equal"
```

Output:

```
{
    "OpsItemSummaries": [
        {
            "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:sts::111222333444:assumed-role/OpsItem-CWE-
Role/fbf77cbe264a33509569f23e4EXAMPLE",
            "CreatedTime": "2020-03-14T17:02:46.375000-07:00",
            "LastModifiedBy": "arn:aws:sts::111222333444:assumed-role/OpsItem-
CWE-Role/fbf77cbe264a33509569f23e4EXAMPLE",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-03-14T17:02:46.375000-07:00",
            "Source": "SSM",
            "Status": "Open",
            "OpsItemId": "oi-7cfc5EXAMPLE",
            "Title": "SSM Maintenance Window execution failed",
            "OperationalData": {
                "/aws/dedup": {
                    "Value": "{\"dedupString\":\"SSMOpsItems-SSM-maintenance-
window-execution-failed\"}",
                    "Type": "SearchableString"
                },
                "/aws/resources": {
                    "Value": "[{\"arn\":\"arn:aws:ssm:us-
east-2:111222333444:maintenancewindow/mw-034093d322EXAMPLE\"}]",
                    "Type": "SearchableString"
                }
            },
```

```
            "Category": "Availability",
            "Severity": "3"
        },
        {
            "CreatedBy": "arn:aws:sts::1112223233444:assumed-role/OpsItem-CWE-
Role/fbf77cbe264a33509569f23e4EXAMPLE",
            "CreatedTime": "2020-02-26T11:43:15.426000-08:00",
            "LastModifiedBy": "arn:aws:sts::111222333444:assumed-role/OpsItem-
CWE-Role/fbf77cbe264a33509569f23e4EXAMPLE",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-02-26T11:43:15.426000-08:00",
            "Source": "EC2",
            "Status": "Open",
            "OpsItemId": "oi-6f966EXAMPLE",
            "Title": "EC2 instance stopped",
            "OperationalData": {
                "/aws/automations": {
                    "Value": "[ { \"automationType\": \"AWS:SSM:Automation\",
 \"automationId\": \"AWS-RestartEC2Instance\" } ]",
                    "Type": "SearchableString"
                },
                "/aws/dedup": {
                    "Value": "{\"dedupString\":\"SSMOpsItems-EC2-instance-stopped
\"}",
                    "Type": "SearchableString"
                },
                "/aws/resources": {
                    "Value": "[{\"arn\":\"arn:aws:ec2:us-
east-2:111222333444:instance/i-0beccfbc02EXAMPLE\"}]",
                    "Type": "SearchableString"
                }
            },
            "Category": "Availability",
            "Severity": "3"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with OpsItems in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Describes AWS SSM OpsItems asynchronously.
    *
    * @param key The key to filter OpsItems by (e.g., OPS_ITEM_ID).
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe SSM OpsItems.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the title and status of each
OpsItem.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public void describeOpsItems(String key) {
       OpsItemFilter filter = OpsItemFilter.builder()
               .key(OpsItemFilterKey.OPS_ITEM_ID)
               .values(key)
               .operator(OpsItemFilterOperator.EQUAL)
               .build();

       DescribeOpsItemsRequest itemsRequest = DescribeOpsItemsRequest.builder()
               .maxResults(10)
               .opsItemFilters(filter)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
           getAsyncClient().describeOpsItems(itemsRequest)
                   .thenAccept(itemsResponse -> {
                       List<OpsItemSummary> items =
itemsResponse.opsItemSummaries();
                       for (OpsItemSummary item : items) {
                           System.out.println("The item title is " +
item.title() + " and the status is " + item.status().toString());
                       }
                   })
```

```
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
 ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
 cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
 ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  OpsItemFilterOperator,
  OpsItemFilterKey,
  paginateDescribeOpsItems,
  SSMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
```

```
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe SSM OpsItems.
 * @param {{ opsItemId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ opsItemId }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const describeOpsItemsPaginated = [];
    for await (const page of paginateDescribeOpsItems(
      { client },
      {
        OpsItemFilters: {
          Key: OpsItemFilterKey.OPSITEM_ID,
          Operator: OpsItemFilterOperator.EQUAL,
          Values: opsItemId,
        },
      },
    )) {
      describeOpsItemsPaginated.push(...page.OpsItemSummaries);
    }
    console.log("Here are the ops items:");
    console.log(describeOpsItemsPaginated);
    return { OpsItemSummaries: describeOpsItemsPaginated };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide this value?`);
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def describe(self):
        """
        Describe an OpsItem.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("describe_ops_items")
            ops_items = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                OpsItemFilters=[
                    {"Key": "OpsItemId", "Values": [self.id], "Operator":
 "Equal"}
                ]
            ):
```

```
                ops_items.extend(page["OpsItemSummaries"])

            for item in ops_items:
                print(
                    f"The item title is {item['Title']} and the status is
 {item['Status']}"
                )
            return len(ops_items) > 0
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DescribeParameters` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeParameters`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all parameters

The following `describe-parameters` example lists all parameters in the current AWS account and Region.

```
aws ssm describe-parameters
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameters": [
        {
            "Name": "MySecureStringParameter",
```

```
            "Type": "SecureString",
            "KeyId": "alias/aws/ssm",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582155479.205,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:sts::111222333444:assumed-role/Admin/
Richard-Roe-Managed",
            "Description": "This is a SecureString parameter",
            "Version": 2,
            "Tier": "Advanced",
            "Policies": [
                {
                    "PolicyText": "{\"Type\":\"Expiration\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",
\"Attributes\":{\"Timestamp\":\"2020-07-07T22:30:00Z\"}}",
                    "PolicyType": "Expiration",
                    "PolicyStatus": "Pending"
                },
                {
                    "PolicyText": "{\"Type\":\"ExpirationNotification\",\"Version
\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":{\"Before\":\"12\",\"Unit\":\"Hours\"}}",
                    "PolicyType": "ExpirationNotification",
                    "PolicyStatus": "Pending"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "Name": "MyStringListParameter",
            "Type": "StringList",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582154764.222,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:user/Mary-Major",
            "Description": "This is a StringList parameter",
            "Version": 1,
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        },
        {
            "Name": "MyStringParameter",
            "Type": "String",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582154711.976,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:user/Alejandro-
Rosalez",
            "Description": "This is a String parameter",
            "Version": 1,
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        },
```

```
        {
            "Name": "latestAmi",
            "Type": "String",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1580862415.521,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:sts::111222333444:assumed-role/lambda-
ssm-role/Automation-UpdateSSM-Param",
            "Version": 3,
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all parameters matching specific metadata

This `describe-parameters` example lists all parameters matching a filter.

aws ssm describe-parameters --filters "Key=Type,Values=StringList"

Output:

```
{
    "Parameters": [
        {
            "Name": "MyStringListParameter",
            "Type": "StringList",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582154764.222,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:user/Mary-Major",
            "Description": "This is a StringList parameter",
            "Version": 1,
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Searching for Systems Manager Parameters in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParameterRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParameterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.SsmException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class GetParameter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <paraName>

                Where:
                    paraName - The name of the parameter.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String paraName = args[0];
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getParaValue(ssmClient, paraName);
        ssmClient.close();
    }

    public static void getParaValue(SsmClient ssmClient, String paraName) {
        try {
            GetParameterRequest parameterRequest = GetParameterRequest.builder()
                    .name(paraName)
                    .build();

            GetParameterResponse parameterResponse =
 ssmClient.getParameter(parameterRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter value is " +
 parameterResponse.parameter().value());

        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all parameters.

```
Get-SSMParameterList
```

Output:

```
Description      :
KeyId            :
```

```
LastModifiedDate : 3/3/2017 6:58:23 PM
LastModifiedUser : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin
Name             : Welcome
Type             : String
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all parameters.

```
Get-SSMParameterList
```

Output:

```
Description      :
KeyId            :
LastModifiedDate : 3/3/2017 6:58:23 PM
LastModifiedUser : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin
Name             : Welcome
Type             : String
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_parameters(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_parameters().send().await?;

    for param in resp.parameters() {
        println!("  {}", param.name().unwrap_or_default());
    }
```

```
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `DescribePatchBaselines` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePatchBaselines`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list all patch baselines

The following `describe-patch-baselines` example retreives details for all patch baselines in your account in the current Region.

```
aws ssm describe-patch-baselines
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineIdentities": [
        {
            "BaselineName": "AWS-SuseDefaultPatchBaseline",
            "DefaultBaseline": true,
            "BaselineDescription": "Default Patch Baseline for Suse Provided by
 AWS.",
            "BaselineId": "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:733109147000:patchbaseline/
pb-0123fdb36e334a3b2",
            "OperatingSystem": "SUSE"
        },
        {
            "BaselineName": "AWS-DefaultPatchBaseline",
            "DefaultBaseline": false,
            "BaselineDescription": "Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS.",
            "BaselineId": "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:733109147000:patchbaseline/
pb-020d361a05defe4ed",
            "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS"
        },
```

```
        ...
        {
            "BaselineName": "MyWindowsPatchBaseline",
            "DefaultBaseline": true,
            "BaselineDescription": "My patch baseline for EC2 instances for
 Windows Server",
            "BaselineId": "pb-0ad00e0dd7EXAMPLE",
            "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To list all patch baselines provided by AWS

The following `describe-patch-baselines` example lists all patch baselines provided by AWS.

```
aws ssm describe-patch-baselines \
    --filters "Key=OWNER,Values=[AWS]"
```

Example 3: To list all patch baselines that you own

The following `describe-patch-baselines` example lists all custom patch baselines created in your account in the current Region.

```
aws ssm describe-patch-baselines \
    --filters "Key=OWNER,Values=[Self]"
```

For more information, see About Predefined and Custom Patch Baselines in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribePatchBaselines in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all patch baselines.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline
```

Output:

```
BaselineDescription                                                BaselineId
                                                        BaselineName
-------------------                                                ----------
                                                        ------------
Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS.                            arn:aws:ssm:us-
west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966 AWS-DefaultP...
Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
 pb-045f10b4f382baeda
 Production-B...
Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
 pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31
 Production-B...
```

Example 2: This example lists all patch baselines provided by AWS. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="OWNER";Values=@("AWS")}
```

Output:

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Example 3: This example lists all patch baselines with you as the owner. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="OWNER";Values=@("Self")}
```

Output:

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each tag.

```
$filter1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter1.Key = "OWNER"
$filter1.Values = "AWS"
```

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Output:

```
BaselineDescription                     BaselineId
                            BaselineName            DefaultBaselin

                                                    e
-------------------                     ----------
                            ------------            --------------
Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS. arn:aws:ssm:us-
west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966 AWS-DefaultPatchBaseline
 True
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchBaselines in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all patch baselines.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline
```

Output:

```
BaselineDescription                                             BaselineId
                                                      BaselineName
-------------------                                             ----------
                                                      ------------
Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS.                         arn:aws:ssm:us-
west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966 AWS-DefaultP...
Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
 pb-045f10b4f382baeda
 Production-B...
Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
 pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31
 Production-B...
```

Example 2: This example lists all patch baselines provided by AWS. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="OWNER";Values=@("AWS")}
```

Output:

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Example 3: This example lists all patch baselines with you as the owner. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="OWNER";Values=@("Self")}
```

Output:

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each tag.

```
$filter1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter1.Key = "OWNER"
$filter1.Values = "AWS"

Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Output:

```
BaselineDescription                     BaselineId
                            BaselineName             DefaultBaselin


                                                     e
-------------------                     ----------
                            ------------             --------------
Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS. arn:aws:ssm:us-
west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966 AWS-DefaultPatchBaseline
 True
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchBaselines in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribePatchGroupState` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePatchGroupState`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the state of a patch group

The following `describe-patch-group-state` example retrieves the high-level patch compliance summary for a patch group.

```
aws ssm describe-patch-group-state \
    --patch-group "Production"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Instances": 21,
    "InstancesWithCriticalNonCompliantPatches": 1,
    "InstancesWithFailedPatches": 2,
    "InstancesWithInstalledOtherPatches": 3,
    "InstancesWithInstalledPatches": 21,
    "InstancesWithInstalledPendingRebootPatches": 2,
    "InstancesWithInstalledRejectedPatches": 1,
    "InstancesWithMissingPatches": 3,
    "InstancesWithNotApplicablePatches": 4,
    "InstancesWithOtherNonCompliantPatches": 1,
    "InstancesWithSecurityNonCompliantPatches": 1,
    "InstancesWithUnreportedNotApplicablePatches": 2
}
```

For more information, see About patch groups <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/sysman-patch-patchgroups.html>__ and Understanding patch compliance state values in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroupState in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the high-level patch compliance summary for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMPatchGroupState -PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
Instances                          : 4
InstancesWithFailedPatches         : 1
InstancesWithInstalledOtherPatches : 4
InstancesWithInstalledPatches      : 3
InstancesWithMissingPatches        : 0
InstancesWithNotApplicablePatches  : 0
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroupState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the high-level patch compliance summary for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMPatchGroupState -PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
Instances                          : 4
InstancesWithFailedPatches         : 1
InstancesWithInstalledOtherPatches : 4
InstancesWithInstalledPatches      : 3
InstancesWithMissingPatches        : 0
InstancesWithNotApplicablePatches  : 0
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroupState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribePatchGroups` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribePatchGroups`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display patch group registrations

The following `describe-patch-groups` example lists the patch group registrations.

```
aws ssm describe-patch-groups
```

Output:

```
{
    "Mappings": [
        {
            "PatchGroup": "Production",
            "BaselineIdentity": {
                "BaselineId": "pb-0123456789abcdef0",
                "BaselineName": "ProdPatching",
                "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS",
                "BaselineDescription": "Patches for Production",
                "DefaultBaseline": false
            }
        },
        {
            "PatchGroup": "Development",
            "BaselineIdentity": {
                "BaselineId": "pb-0713accee01234567",
                "BaselineName": "DevPatching",
                "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS",
                "BaselineDescription": "Patches for Development",
                "DefaultBaseline": true
            }
        },
        ...
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Create a Patch Group <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/sysman-patch-group-tagging.html>__ and Add a Patch Group to a Patch Baseline in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the patch group registrations.

```
Get-SSMPatchGroup
```

Output:

```
BaselineIdentity                                          PatchGroup
----------------                                          ----------
Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchBaselineIdentity Production
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the patch group registrations.

```
Get-SSMPatchGroup
```

Output:

```
BaselineIdentity                                          PatchGroup
----------------                                          ----------
Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchBaselineIdentity Production
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetAutomationExecution` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetAutomationExecution`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display details about an automation execution

The following `get-automation-execution` example displays detailed information about an Automation execution.

```
aws ssm get-automation-execution \
    --automation-execution-id 73c8eef8-f4ee-4a05-820c-e354fEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
{
    "AutomationExecution": {
        "AutomationExecutionId": "73c8eef8-f4ee-4a05-820c-e354fEXAMPLE",
        "DocumentName": "AWS-StartEC2Instance",
        "DocumentVersion": "1",
        "ExecutionStartTime": 1583737233.748,
        "ExecutionEndTime": 1583737234.719,
        "AutomationExecutionStatus": "Success",
        "StepExecutions": [
            {
                "StepName": "startInstances",
                "Action": "aws:changeInstanceState",
                "ExecutionStartTime": 1583737234.134,
                "ExecutionEndTime": 1583737234.672,
                "StepStatus": "Success",
                "Inputs": {
                    "DesiredState": "\"running\"",
                    "InstanceIds": "[\"i-0cb99161f6EXAMPLE\"]"
                },
                "Outputs": {
                    "InstanceStates": [
                        "running"
                    ]
                },
                "StepExecutionId": "95e70479-cf20-4d80-8018-7e4e2EXAMPLE",
                "OverriddenParameters": {}
            }
        ],
        "StepExecutionsTruncated": false,
        "Parameters": {
            "AutomationAssumeRole": [
                ""
            ],
            "InstanceId": [
                "i-0cb99161f6EXAMPLE"
```

```
            ]
        },
        "Outputs": {},
        "Mode": "Auto",
        "ExecutedBy": "arn:aws:sts::29884EXAMPLE:assumed-role/mw_service_role/
OrchestrationService",
        "Targets": [],
        "ResolvedTargets": {
            "ParameterValues": [],
            "Truncated": false
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Walkthrough: Patch a Linux AMI (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetAutomationExecution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the details of an Automation Execution.

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId "4105a4fc-
f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909"
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId     : 4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909
AutomationExecutionStatus : Failed
DocumentName              : AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi
DocumentVersion           : 1
ExecutionEndTime          : 2/22/2017 9:17:08 PM
ExecutionStartTime        : 2/22/2017 9:17:02 PM
FailureMessage            : Step launchInstance failed maximum allowed times. You
 are not authorized to perform this operation. Encoded
                            authorization failure message:
 B_V2QyyN7NhSZQYpmVzpEc4oSnj2GLTNYnXUHsTbqJkNMoDgubmbtthLmZyaiUYekORIrA42-
fv1x-04q5Fjff6glh
```

```
                              Yb6TI5b0GQeeNrpwNvpDzmO-
PSR1swlAbg9fdM9BcNjyrznspUkWpuKu9EC1Ou6v3OXU1KC9nZ7mPlWMFZNkSioQqpwWEvMw-
GZktsQzm67qOhUhBNOLWYhbS
                              pkfiqzY-5nw3S0obx30fhd3EJa5O_-
GjV_a0nFXQJa70ik40bFOrEh3MtCSbrQT6--DvFy_FQ8TKvkIXadyVskeJI84XOF5WmA60f1pi5GI08i-
nRfZS6oDeU

 gELBjjoFKD8s3L2aI0B6umWVxnQOjqhQRxwJ53b54sZJ2PW3v_mtg9-q0CK0ezS3xfh_y0ilaUGOAZG-
xjQFuvU_JZedWpla3xi-MZsmblAifBI
                              (Service: AmazonEC2; Status Code: 403; Error Code:
 UnauthorizedOperation; Request ID:
                              6a002f94-ba37-43fd-99e6-39517715fce5)
Outputs                     : {[createImage.ImageId,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
Parameters                  : {[AutomationAssumeRole,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]], [InstanceIamRole,

 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]], [SourceAmiId,

 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
StepExecutions              : {launchInstance, updateOSSoftware, stopInstance,
 createImage...}
```

Example 2: This example lists step details for the given automation execution id

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId e1d2bad3-4567-8901-
ae23-456c7c8901be | Select-Object -ExpandProperty StepExecutions | Select-Object
 StepName, Action, StepStatus, ValidNextSteps
```

Output:

```
StepName                   Action                   StepStatus ValidNextSteps
--------                   ------                   ---------- --------------
LaunchInstance             aws:runInstances         Success
 {OSCompatibilityCheck}
OSCompatibilityCheck       aws:runCommand           Success    {RunPreUpdateScript}
RunPreUpdateScript         aws:runCommand           Success    {UpdateEC2Config}
UpdateEC2Config            aws:runCommand           Cancelled  {}
UpdateSSMAgent             aws:runCommand           Pending    {}
UpdateAWSPVDriver          aws:runCommand           Pending    {}
UpdateAWSEnaNetworkDriver aws:runCommand            Pending    {}
UpdateAWSNVMe              aws:runCommand           Pending    {}
InstallWindowsUpdates      aws:runCommand           Pending    {}
```

```
RunPostUpdateScript       aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
RunSysprepGeneralize      aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
StopInstance              aws:changeInstanceState Pending    {}
CreateImage               aws:createImage         Pending    {}
TerminateInstance         aws:changeInstanceState Pending    {}
```

- For API details, see GetAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the details of an Automation Execution.

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId "4105a4fc-
f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909"
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId     : 4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909
AutomationExecutionStatus : Failed
DocumentName              : AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi
DocumentVersion           : 1
ExecutionEndTime          : 2/22/2017 9:17:08 PM
ExecutionStartTime        : 2/22/2017 9:17:02 PM
FailureMessage            : Step launchInstance failed maximum allowed times. You
 are not authorized to perform this operation. Encoded
                            authorization failure message:
 B_V2QyyN7NhSZQYpmVzpEc4oSnj2GLTNYnXUHsTbqJkNMoDgubmbtthLmZyaiUYekORIrA42-
fv1x-04q5Fjff6glh
                            Yb6TI5b0GQeeNrpwNvpDzmO-
PSR1swlAbg9fdM9BcNjyrznspUkWpuKu9EC1Ou6v3OXU1KC9nZ7mPlWMFZNkSioQqpwWEvMw-
GZktsQzm67qOhUhBNOLWYhbS
                            pkfiqzY-5nw3S0obx30fhd3EJa5O_-
GjV_a0nFXQJa70ik40bFOrEh3MtCSbrQT6--DvFy_FQ8TKvkIXadyVskeJI84XOF5WmA60f1pi5GI08i-
nRfZS6oDeU

 gELBjjoFKD8s3L2aI0B6umWVxnQOjqhQRxwJ53b54sZJ2PW3v_mtg9-q0CK0ezS3xfh_y0ilaUGOAZG-
xjQFuvU_JZedWpla3xi-MZsmblAifBI
                            (Service: AmazonEC2; Status Code: 403; Error Code:
 UnauthorizedOperation; Request ID:
                            6a002f94-ba37-43fd-99e6-39517715fce5)
Outputs                   : {[createImage.ImageId,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
```

```
Parameters                : {[AutomationAssumeRole,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]], [InstanceIamRole,

 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]], [SourceAmiId,

 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
StepExecutions            : {launchInstance, updateOSSoftware, stopInstance,
 createImage...}
```

Example 2: This example lists step details for the given automation execution id

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId e1d2bad3-4567-8901-
ae23-456c7c8901be | Select-Object -ExpandProperty StepExecutions | Select-Object
 StepName, Action, StepStatus, ValidNextSteps
```

Output:

```
StepName                  Action                  StepStatus ValidNextSteps
--------                  ------                  ---------- --------------
LaunchInstance            aws:runInstances        Success
 {OSCompatibilityCheck}
OSCompatibilityCheck      aws:runCommand          Success    {RunPreUpdateScript}
RunPreUpdateScript        aws:runCommand          Success    {UpdateEC2Config}
UpdateEC2Config           aws:runCommand          Cancelled  {}
UpdateSSMAgent            aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
UpdateAWSPVDriver         aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
UpdateAWSEnaNetworkDriver aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
UpdateAWSNVMe             aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
InstallWindowsUpdates     aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
RunPostUpdateScript       aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
RunSysprepGeneralize      aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
StopInstance              aws:changeInstanceState Pending    {}
CreateImage               aws:createImage         Pending    {}
TerminateInstance         aws:changeInstanceState Pending    {}
```

- For API details, see GetAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetCommandInvocation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetCommandInvocation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display the details of a command invocation

The following `get-command-invocation` example lists all the invocations of the specified command on the specified instance.

```
aws ssm get-command-invocation \
    --command-id "ef7fdfd8-9b57-4151-a15c-db9a12345678" \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
    "CommandId": "ef7fdfd8-9b57-4151-a15c-db9a12345678",
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Comment": "b48291dd-ba76-43e0-b9df-13e11ddaac26:6960febb-2907-4b59-8e1a-
d6ce8EXAMPLE",
    "DocumentName": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
    "DocumentVersion": "",
    "PluginName": "aws:updateSsmAgent",
    "ResponseCode": 0,
    "ExecutionStartDateTime": "2020-02-19T18:18:03.419Z",
    "ExecutionElapsedTime": "PT0.091S",
    "ExecutionEndDateTime": "2020-02-19T18:18:03.419Z",
    "Status": "Success",
    "StatusDetails": "Success",
    "StandardOutputContent": "Updating amazon-ssm-agent from 2.3.842.0 to latest
\nSuccessfully downloaded https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-us-
east-2/ssm-agent-manifest.json\namazon-ssm-agent 2.3.842.0 has already been
 installed, update skipped\n",
    "StandardOutputUrl": "",
    "StandardErrorContent": "",
    "StandardErrorUrl": "",
    "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
        "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
        "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
    }
}
```

For more information, see Understanding Command Statuses in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetCommandInvocation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the details of a command executed on an instance.

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocationDetail -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -CommandId
 "b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44"
```

Output:

```
CommandId              : b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44
Comment                : IP config
DocumentName           : AWS-RunShellScript
ExecutionElapsedTime   : PT0.004S
ExecutionEndDateTime   : 2017-02-22T20:13:16.651Z
ExecutionStartDateTime : 2017-02-22T20:13:16.651Z
InstanceId             : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
PluginName             : aws:runShellScript
ResponseCode           : 0
StandardErrorContent   :
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputContent  :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Success
StatusDetails          : Success
```

- For API details, see GetCommandInvocation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the details of a command executed on an instance.

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocationDetail -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -CommandId
 "b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44"
```

Output:

```
CommandId              : b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44
Comment                : IP config
DocumentName           : AWS-RunShellScript
ExecutionElapsedTime   : PT0.004S
ExecutionEndDateTime   : 2017-02-22T20:13:16.651Z
ExecutionStartDateTime : 2017-02-22T20:13:16.651Z
InstanceId             : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
PluginName             : aws:runShellScript
ResponseCode           : 0
StandardErrorContent   :
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputContent  :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Success
StatusDetails          : Success
```

- For API details, see GetCommandInvocation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetConnectionStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetConnectionStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display the connection status of a managed instance

This `get-connection-status` example returns the connection status of the specified managed instance.

```
aws ssm get-connection-status \
    --target i-1234567890abcdef0
```

Output:

```
{
    "Target": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "Status": "connected"
}
```

- For API details, see GetConnectionStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves the Session Manager connection status for an instance to determine whether it is connected and ready to receive Session Manager connections.

```
Get-SSMConnectionStatus -Target i-0a1caf234f12d3dc4
```

Output:

```
Status    Target
------    ------
Connected i-0a1caf234f12d3dc4
```

- For API details, see GetConnectionStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the Session Manager connection status for an instance to determine whether it is connected and ready to receive Session Manager connections.

```
Get-SSMConnectionStatus -Target i-0a1caf234f12d3dc4
```

Output:

```
Status    Target
------    ------
Connected i-0a1caf234f12d3dc4
```

- For API details, see GetConnectionStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDefaultPatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDefaultPatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To display the default Windows patch baseline

The following `get-default-patch-baseline` example retrieves details for the default patch baseline for Windows Server.

```
aws ssm get-default-patch-baseline
```

Output:

```
{
  "BaselineId": "pb-0713accee01612345",
  "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS"
}
```

Example 2: To display the default patch baseline for Amazon Linux

The following `get-default-patch-baseline` example retrieves details for the default patch baseline for Amazon Linux.

```
aws ssm get-default-patch-baseline \
    --operating-system AMAZON_LINUX
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-047c6eb9c8fc12345",
    "OperatingSystem": "AMAZON_LINUX"
}
```

For more information, see About Predefined and Custom Patch Baselines <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/sysman-patch-baselines.html>__ and Set an Existing Patch Baseline as the Default in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the default patch baseline.

```
Get-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966
```

- For API details, see GetDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the default patch baseline.

```
Get-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966
```

- For API details, see GetDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To retrieve the current snapshot for the patch baseline an instance uses

The following `get-deployable-patch-snapshot-for-instance` example retrieves details for the current snapshot for the specified patch baseline used by an instance. This

command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, run `aws configure` and specify only the Region of your instance. Leave the `Access Key` and `Secret Key` fields empty.

Tip: Use uuidgen to generate a `snapshot-id`.

```
aws ssm get-deployable-patch-snapshot-for-instance \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --snapshot-id "521c3536-930c-4aa9-950e-01234567abcd"
```

Output:

```
{
    "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
    "SnapshotId": "521c3536-930c-4aa9-950e-01234567abcd",
    "Product": "AmazonLinux2018.03",
    "SnapshotDownloadUrl": "https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-
east-1.s3.amazonaws.com/
ed85194ef27214f5984f28b4d664d14f7313568fea7d4b6ac6c10ad1f729d7e7-773304212436/
AMAZON_LINUX-521c3536-930c-4aa9-950e-01234567abcd?X-Amz-
Algorithm=AWS4-HMAC-SHA256&X-Amz-Date=20190215T164031Z&X-Amz-
SignedHeaders=host&X-Amz-Expires=86400&X-Amz-Credential=AKIAJ5C56P35AEBRX2QQ
%2F20190215%2Fus-east-1%2Fs3%2Faws4_request&X-Amz-
Signature=efaaaf6e3878e77f48a6697e015efdbda9c426b09c5822055075c062f6ad2149"
}
```

For more information, see Parameter name: Snapshot ID in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the current snapshot for the patch baseline used by an Instance. This command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, the example passes an `Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials` object to the Credentials parameter.

```
$credentials = [Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials]::new()
Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance -SnapshotId "4681775b-098f-4435-
a956-0ef33373ac11" -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Credentials $credentials
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          SnapshotDownloadUrl
----------          -------------------
i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-west-2.s3-us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/853d0d3db0f0cafe...1692/4681775b-098f-4435...
```

Example 2: This example shows how to get the full SnapshotDownloadUrl. This command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, the example configures the PowerShell session to use an `Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials` object.

```
Set-AWSCredential -Credential
 ([Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials]::new())
(Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance -SnapshotId "4681775b-098f-4435-
a956-0ef33373ac11" -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f").SnapshotDownloadUrl
```

Output:

```
https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-west-2.s3-us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/853d0d3db0f0cafe...
```

- For API details, see GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the current snapshot for the patch baseline used by an Instance. This command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, the example passes an `Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials` object to the Credentials parameter.

```
$credentials = [Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials]::new()
Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance -SnapshotId "4681775b-098f-4435-
a956-0ef33373ac11" -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Credentials $credentials
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          SnapshotDownloadUrl
----------          -------------------
i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-west-2.s3-us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/853d0d3db0f0cafe...1692/4681775b-098f-4435...
```

Example 2: This example shows how to get the full SnapshotDownloadUrl. This command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, the example configures the PowerShell session to use an `Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials` object.

```
Set-AWSCredential -Credential
 ([Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials]::new())
(Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance -SnapshotId "4681775b-098f-4435-
a956-0ef33373ac11" -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f").SnapshotDownloadUrl
```

Output:

```
https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-west-2.s3-us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/853d0d3db0f0cafe...
```

- For API details, see GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetDocument` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDocument`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get document content

The following `get-document` example displays the content of a Systems Manager document.

```
aws ssm get-document \
    --name "AWS-RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Name": "AWS-RunShellScript",
    "DocumentVersion": "1",
    "Status": "Active",
    "Content": "{\n    \"schemaVersion\":\"1.2\",\n    \"description\":\"Run
 a shell script or specify the commands to run.\",\n    \"parameters\":{\n
        \"commands\":{\n            \"type\":\"StringList\",\n
 \"description\":\"(Required) Specify a shell script or a command to run.\",
\n            \"minItems\":1,\n            \"displayType\":\"textarea\"\n
      },\n        \"workingDirectory\":{\n            \"type\":\"String\",\n
            \"default\":\"\",\n            \"description\":\"(Optional) The
 path to the working directory on your instance.\",\n            \"maxChars
\":4096\n        },\n        \"executionTimeout\":{\n            \"type\":
\"String\",\n            \"default\":\"3600\",\n            \"description
\":\"(Optional) The time in seconds for a command to complete before it is
 considered to have failed. Default is 3600 (1 hour). Maximum is 172800 (48
 hours).\",\n            \"allowedPattern\":\"([1-9][0-9]{0,4})|(1[0-6][0-9]
{4})|(17[0-1][0-9]{3})|(172[0-7][0-9]{2})|(172800)\"\n        }\n    },\n
 \"runtimeConfig\":{\n        \"aws:runShellScript\":{\n            \"properties
\":[\n                {\n                    \"id\":\"0.aws:runShellScript
\",\n                    \"runCommand\":\"{{ commands }}\",\n
      \"workingDirectory\":\"{{ workingDirectory }}\",\n
 \"timeoutSeconds\":\"{{ executionTimeout }}\"\n                }\n
  ]\n        }\n    }\n}\n",
    "DocumentType": "Command",
    "DocumentFormat": "JSON"
}
```

For more information, see AWS Systems Manager Documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetDocument in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns the content of a document.

```
Get-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
Content
-------
{...
```

Example 2: This example displays the complete contents of a document.

```
(Get-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript").Content
{
   "schemaVersion":"2.0",
   "description":"Run an updated script",
   "parameters":{
      "commands":{
         "type":"StringList",
         "description":"(Required) Specify a shell script or a command to run.",
         "minItems":1,
         "displayType":"textarea"
      }
   },
   "mainSteps":[
      {
         "action":"aws:runShellScript",
         "name":"runShellScript",
         "inputs":{
            "commands":"{{ commands }}"
         }
      },
      {
         "action":"aws:runPowerShellScript",
         "name":"runPowerShellScript",
         "inputs":{
            "commands":"{{ commands }}"
         }
      }
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the content of a document.

```
Get-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
Content
-------
{...
```

Example 2: This example displays the complete contents of a document.

```
(Get-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript").Content
{
   "schemaVersion":"2.0",
   "description":"Run an updated script",
   "parameters":{
      "commands":{
         "type":"StringList",
         "description":"(Required) Specify a shell script or a command to run.",
         "minItems":1,
         "displayType":"textarea"
      }
   },
   "mainSteps":[
      {
         "action":"aws:runShellScript",
         "name":"runShellScript",
         "inputs":{
            "commands":"{{ commands }}"
         }
      },
      {
         "action":"aws:runPowerShellScript",
         "name":"runPowerShellScript",
         "inputs":{
            "commands":"{{ commands }}"
         }
      }
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetInventory` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetInventory`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view your inventory

This example gets the custom metadata for your inventory.

Command:

```
aws ssm get-inventory
```

Output:

```
{
  "Entities": [
      {
          "Data": {
              "AWS:InstanceInformation": {
                  "Content": [
                      {
                          "ComputerName": "ip-172-31-44-222.us-
west-2.compute.internal",
                          "InstanceId": "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f",
                          "IpAddress": "172.31.44.222",
                          "AgentType": "amazon-ssm-agent",
                          "ResourceType": "EC2Instance",
                          "AgentVersion": "2.0.672.0",
                          "PlatformVersion": "2016.09",
                          "PlatformName": "Amazon Linux AMI",
                          "PlatformType": "Linux"
                      }
                  ],
                  "TypeName": "AWS:InstanceInformation",
                  "SchemaVersion": "1.0",
                  "CaptureTime": "2017-02-20T18:03:58Z"
              }
          },
          "Id": "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f"
```

```
      }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetInventory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets the custom metadata for your inventory.

```
Get-SSMInventory
```

Output:

```
Data
     Id
----
     --
{[AWS:InstanceInformation,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InventoryResultItem]} i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
```

- For API details, see GetInventory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the custom metadata for your inventory.

```
Get-SSMInventory
```

Output:

```
Data
     Id
----
     --
{[AWS:InstanceInformation,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InventoryResultItem]} i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
```

- For API details, see GetInventory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetInventorySchema` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetInventorySchema`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To view your inventory schema

This example returns a list of inventory type names for the account.

Command:

```
aws ssm get-inventory-schema
```

Output:

```
{
  "Schemas": [
      {
          "TypeName": "AWS:AWSComponent",
          "Version": "1.0",
          "Attributes": [
              {
                  "Name": "Name",
                  "DataType": "STRING"
              },
              {
                  "Name": "ApplicationType",
                  "DataType": "STRING"
              },
              {
                  "Name": "Publisher",
                  "DataType": "STRING"
              },
              {
                  "Name": "Version",
                  "DataType": "STRING"
              },
              {
                  "Name": "InstalledTime",
                  "DataType": "STRING"
```

```
                },
                {
                    "Name": "Architecture",
                    "DataType": "STRING"
                },
                {
                    "Name": "URL",
                    "DataType": "STRING"
                }
            ]
        },
        ...
    ],
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

To view the inventory schema for a specific inventory type

This example return the inventory schema for a the AWS:AWSComponent inventory type.

Command:

```
aws ssm get-inventory-schema --type-name "AWS:AWSComponent"
```

- For API details, see GetInventorySchema in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a list of inventory type names for the account.

```
Get-SSMInventorySchema
```

- For API details, see GetInventorySchema in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of inventory type names for the account.

```
Get-SSMInventorySchema
```

- For API details, see GetInventorySchema in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetMaintenanceWindow` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetMaintenanceWindow`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a maintenance window

The following `get-maintenance-window` example retrieves details about the specified maintenance window.

```
aws ssm get-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-03eb9db428EXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AllowUnassociatedTargets": true,
    "CreatedDate": 1515006912.957,
    "Cutoff": 1,
    "Duration": 6,
    "Enabled": true,
    "ModifiedDate": 2020-01-01T10:04:04.099Z,
    "Name": "My-Maintenance-Window",
    "Schedule": "rate(3 days)",
    "WindowId": "mw-03eb9db428EXAMPLE",
    "NextExecutionTime": "2020-02-25T00:08:15.099Z"
}
```

For more information, see View information about maintenance windows (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets details about a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d"
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
CreatedDate              : 2/20/2017 6:14:05 PM
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
ModifiedDate             : 2/20/2017 6:14:05 PM
Name                     : TestMaintWin
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets details about a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d"
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
CreatedDate              : 2/20/2017 6:14:05 PM
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
ModifiedDate             : 2/20/2017 6:14:05 PM
Name                     : TestMaintWin
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetMaintenanceWindowExecution` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetMaintenanceWindowExecution`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a maintenance window task execution

The following `get-maintenance-window-execution` example lists information about a task executed as part of the specified maintenance window execution.

```
aws ssm get-maintenance-window-execution \
    --window-execution-id "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2EXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Status": "SUCCESS",
    "TaskIds": [
        "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d3845EXAMPLE"
    ],
    "StartTime": 1487692834.595,
    "EndTime": 1487692835.051,
    "WindowExecutionId": "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2EXAMPLE",
}
```

For more information, see View Information About Tasks and Task Executions (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists information about a task executed as part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecution -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-
da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.
TaskIds           : {ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586}
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists information about a task executed as part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecution -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-
da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.
TaskIds           : {ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586}
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a maintenance window task execution

The following `get-maintenance-window-execution-task` example lists information about a task that is part of the specified maintenance window execution.

```
aws ssm get-maintenance-window-execution-task \
    --window-execution-id "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2EXAMPLE" \
    --task-id "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d3845EXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowExecutionId": "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2EXAMPLE",
    "TaskExecutionId": "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d3845EXAMPLE",
    "TaskArn": "AWS-RunPatchBaseline",
    "ServiceRole": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
    "Type": "RUN_COMMAND",
    "TaskParameters": [
        {
            "BaselineOverride": {
                "Values": [
                    ""
                ]
            },
            "InstallOverrideList": {
                "Values": [
                    ""
                ]
            },
            "Operation": {
                "Values": [
                    "Scan"
                ]
            },
```

```
            "RebootOption": {
                "Values": [
                    "RebootIfNeeded"
                ]
            },
            "SnapshotId": {
                "Values": [
                    "{{ aws:ORCHESTRATION_ID }}"
                ]
            },
            "aws:InstanceId": {
                "Values": [
                    "i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE",
                    "i-0471e04240EXAMPLE",
                    "i-07782c72faEXAMPLE"
                ]
            }
        }
    ],
    "Priority": 1,
    "MaxConcurrency": "1",
    "MaxErrors": "3",
    "Status": "SUCCESS",
    "StartTime": "2021-08-04T11:45:35.088000-07:00",
    "EndTime": "2021-08-04T11:53:09.079000-07:00"
}
```

For more information, see View information about tasks and task executions (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists information about a task that was part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask -TaskId "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-
d384503b6586" -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
MaxConcurrency    : 1
MaxErrors         : 1
Priority          : 10
ServiceRole       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : The maximum error count was exceeded.
TaskArn           : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
TaskParameters    :
 {Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendDictionary`2[System.String,Amazon.SimpleSystemsM
                    meterValueExpression]}
Type              : RUN_COMMAND
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists information about a task that was part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask -TaskId "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-
d384503b6586" -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
MaxConcurrency    : 1
MaxErrors         : 1
Priority          : 10
ServiceRole       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : The maximum error count was exceeded.
TaskArn           : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
TaskParameters    :
 {Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendDictionary`2[System.String,Amazon.SimpleSystemsM
```

```
                    meterValueExpression]}
Type              : RUN_COMMAND
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetParameter` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetParameter`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To display the value of a parameter

The following `get-parameter` example lists the value for the specified single parameter.

```
aws ssm get-parameter \
    --name "MyStringParameter"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameter": {
        "Name": "MyStringParameter",
        "Type": "String",
        "Value": "Veni",
        "Version": 1,
        "LastModifiedDate": 1530018761.888,
        "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:111222333444:parameter/MyStringParameter"
        "DataType": "text"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with Parameter Store in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To decrypt the value of a SecureString parameter

The following `get-parameter` example decrypts the value of the specified `SecureString` parameter.

```
aws ssm get-parameter \
    --name "MySecureStringParameter" \
    --with-decryption
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameter": {
        "Name": "MySecureStringParameter",
        "Type": "SecureString",
        "Value": "16679b88-310b-4895-a943-e0764EXAMPLE",
        "Version": 2,
        "LastModifiedDate": 1582155479.205,
        "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:111222333444:parameter/
MySecureStringParameter"
        "DataType": "text"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with Parameter Store in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 3: To display the value of a parameter using labels

The following `get-parameter` example lists the value for the specified single parameter with a specified label.

```
aws ssm get-parameter \
    --name "MyParameter:label"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameter": {
        "Name": "MyParameter",
        "Type": "String",
        "Value": "parameter version 2",
```

```
        "Version": 2,
        "Selector": ":label",
        "LastModifiedDate": "2021-07-12T09:49:15.865000-07:00",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:786973925828:parameter/MyParameter",
        "DataType": "text"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with parameter labels in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 4: To display the value of a parameter using versions

The following `get-parameter` example lists the value for the specified single parameter version.

```
aws ssm get-parameter \
    --name "MyParameter:2"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameter": {
        "Name": "MyParameter",
        "Type": "String",
        "Value": "parameter version 2",
        "Version": 2,
        "Selector": ":2",
        "LastModifiedDate": "2021-07-12T09:49:15.865000-07:00",
        "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:786973925828:parameter/MyParameter",
        "DataType": "text"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with parameter labels in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetParameter in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn list_path(&self, path: &str) -> Result<Vec<Parameter>, EC2Error>
{
        let maybe_params: Vec<Result<Parameter, _>> = TryFlatMap::new(
            self.inner
                .get_parameters_by_path()
                .path(path)
                .into_paginator()
                .send(),
        )
        .flat_map(|item| item.parameters.unwrap_or_default())
        .collect()
        .await;
        // Fail on the first error
        let params = maybe_params
            .into_iter()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<Parameter>, _>>()?;
        Ok(params)
    }
```

- For API details, see GetParameter in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `GetParameterHistory` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetParameterHistory`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get a value history for a parameter

The following `get-parameter-history` example lists the history of changes for the specified parameter, including its value.

```
aws ssm get-parameter-history \
    --name "MyStringParameter"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameters": [
        {
            "Name": "MyStringParameter",
            "Type": "String",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582154711.976,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:user/Mary-Major",
            "Description": "This is the first version of my String parameter",
            "Value": "Veni",
            "Version": 1,
            "Labels": [],
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        },
        {
            "Name": "MyStringParameter",
            "Type": "String",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582156093.471,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:user/Mary-Major",
            "Description": "This is the second version of my String parameter",
            "Value": "Vidi",
            "Version": 2,
            "Labels": [],
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        },
        {
            "Name": "MyStringParameter",
            "Type": "String",
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582156117.545,
            "LastModifiedUser": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:user/Mary-Major",
            "Description": "This is the third version of my String parameter",
            "Value": "Vici",
            "Version": 3,
            "Labels": [],
```

```
            "Tier": "Standard",
            "Policies": []
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with parameter versions in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetParameterHistory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the value history for a parameter.

```
Get-SSMParameterHistory -Name "Welcome"
```

Output:

```
Description      :
KeyId            :
LastModifiedDate : 3/3/2017 6:55:25 PM
LastModifiedUser : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin
Name             : Welcome
Type             : String
Value            : helloWorld
```

- For API details, see GetParameterHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the value history for a parameter.

```
Get-SSMParameterHistory -Name "Welcome"
```

Output:

```
Description      :
```

```
KeyId            :
LastModifiedDate : 3/3/2017 6:55:25 PM
LastModifiedUser : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin
Name             : Welcome
Type             : String
Value            : helloWorld
```

- For API details, see GetParameterHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetParameters` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetParameters`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list the values for a parameter

The following `get-parameters` example lists the values for the three specified parameters.

```
aws ssm get-parameters \
    --names "MyStringParameter" "MyStringListParameter" "MyInvalidParameterName"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameters": [
        {
            "Name": "MyStringListParameter",
            "Type": "StringList",
            "Value": "alpha,beta,gamma",
            "Version": 1,
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582154764.222,
            "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:111222333444:parameter/
MyStringListParameter"
            "DataType": "text"
        },
        {
            "Name": "MyStringParameter",
            "Type": "String",
```

```
            "Value": "Vici",
            "Version": 3,
            "LastModifiedDate": 1582156117.545,
            "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:111222333444:parameter/
MyStringParameter"
            "DataType": "text"
        }
    ],
    "InvalidParameters": [
        "MyInvalidParameterName"
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with Parameter Store in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To list names and values of multiple parameters using the ``--query`` option

The following `get-parameters` example lists the names and values for the specified parameters.

```
aws ssm get-parameters \
    --names MyStringParameter MyStringListParameter \
    --query "Parameters[*].{Name:Name,Value:Value}"
```

Output:

```
[
    {
        "Name": "MyStringListParameter",
        "Value": "alpha,beta,gamma"
    },
    {
        "Name": "MyStringParameter",
        "Value": "Vidi"
    }
]
```

For more information, see Working with Parameter Store in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 3: To display the value of a parameter using labels

The following `get-parameter` example lists the value for the specified single parameter with a specified label.

```
aws ssm get-parameter \
    --name "MyParameter:label"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Parameters": [
        {
            "Name": "MyLabelParameter",
            "Type": "String",
            "Value": "parameter by label",
            "Version": 1,
            "Selector": ":label",
            "LastModifiedDate": "2021-07-12T09:49:15.865000-07:00",
            "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:786973925828:parameter/MyParameter",
            "DataType": "text"
        },
        {
            "Name": "MyVersionParameter",
            "Type": "String",
            "Value": "parameter by version",
            "Version": 2,
            "Selector": ":2",
            "LastModifiedDate": "2021-03-24T16:20:28.236000-07:00",
            "ARN": "arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:786973925828:parameter/unlabel-param",
            "DataType": "text"
        }
    ],
    "InvalidParameters": []
}
```

For more information, see Working with parameter labels in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetParameters in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the values for a parameter.

```
Get-SSMParameterValue -Name "Welcome"
```

Output:

```
InvalidParameters Parameters
----------------- ----------
{}                {Welcome}
```

Example 2: This example lists the details of the value.

```
(Get-SSMParameterValue -Name "Welcome").Parameters
```

Output:

```
Name    Type   Value
----    ----   -----
Welcome String Good day, Sunshine!
```

- For API details, see GetParameters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the values for a parameter.

```
Get-SSMParameterValue -Name "Welcome"
```

Output:

```
InvalidParameters Parameters
----------------- ----------
{}                {Welcome}
```

Example 2: This example lists the details of the value.

```
(Get-SSMParameterValue -Name "Welcome").Parameters
```

Output:

```
Name    Type   Value
----    ----   -----
Welcome String Good day, Sunshine!
```

- For API details, see GetParameters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display a patch baseline

The following `get-patch-baseline` example retrieves the details for the specified patch baseline.

```
aws ssm get-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "pb-0123456789abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-0123456789abcdef0",
    "Name": "WindowsPatching",
    "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS",
    "GlobalFilters": {
        "PatchFilters": []
    },
    "ApprovalRules": {
        "PatchRules": [
            {
                "PatchFilterGroup": {
                    "PatchFilters": [
                        {
```

```
                            "Key": "PRODUCT",
                            "Values": [
                                "WindowsServer2016"
                            ]
                        }
                    ]
                },
                "ComplianceLevel": "CRITICAL",
                "ApproveAfterDays": 0,
                "EnableNonSecurity": false
            }
        ]
    },
    "ApprovedPatches": [],
    "ApprovedPatchesComplianceLevel": "UNSPECIFIED",
    "ApprovedPatchesEnableNonSecurity": false,
    "RejectedPatches": [],
    "RejectedPatchesAction": "ALLOW_AS_DEPENDENCY",
    "PatchGroups": [
        "QA",
        "DEV"
    ],
    "CreatedDate": 1550244180.465,
    "ModifiedDate": 1550244180.465,
    "Description": "Patches for Windows Servers",
    "Sources": []
}
```

For more information, see About Patch Baselines in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetPatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the details for a patch baseline.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaselineDetail -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639"
```

Output:

```
ApprovalRules   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRuleGroup
```

```
ApprovedPatches : {}
BaselineId      : pb-03da896ca3b68b639
CreatedDate     : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Description     : Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
GlobalFilters   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup
ModifiedDate    : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Name            : Production-Baseline
PatchGroups     : {}
RejectedPatches : {}
```

- For API details, see GetPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the details for a patch baseline.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaselineDetail -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639"
```

Output:

```
ApprovalRules   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRuleGroup
ApprovedPatches : {}
BaselineId      : pb-03da896ca3b68b639
CreatedDate     : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Description     : Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
GlobalFilters   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup
ModifiedDate    : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Name            : Production-Baseline
PatchGroups     : {}
RejectedPatches : {}
```

- For API details, see GetPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To display the patch baseline for a patch group

The following `get-patch-baseline-for-patch-group` example retrieves details about the patch baseline for the specified patch group.

```
aws ssm get-patch-baseline-for-patch-group \
    --patch-group "DEV"
```

Output:

```
{
    "PatchGroup": "DEV",
    "BaselineId": "pb-0123456789abcdef0",
    "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Patch Group <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/sysman-patch-group-tagging.html>__ and Add a Patch Group to a Patch Baseline in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example displays the patch baseline for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-045f10b4f382baeda Production
```

- For API details, see GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the patch baseline for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-045f10b4f382baeda Production
```

- For API details, see GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListAssociationVersions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAssociationVersions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list all versions of an association for a specific association ID

The following `list-association-versions` example lists all versions of the specified associations.

```
aws ssm list-association-versions \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab"
```

Output:

```
{
"AssociationVersions": [
        {
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "CreatedDate": 1550505536.726,
            "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "Parameters": {
                "allowDowngrade": [
                    "false"
                ],
                "version": [
```

```
                    ""
                ]
            },
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "i-1234567890abcdef0"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "ScheduleExpression": "cron(0 00 12 ? * SUN *)",
            "AssociationName": "UpdateSSMAgent"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with associations in Systems Manager in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAssociationVersions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example retrieves all versions of the association provided.

```
Get-SSMAssociationVersionList -AssociationId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationName    :
AssociationVersion : 2
ComplianceSeverity :
CreatedDate        : 3/12/2019 9:21:01 AM
DocumentVersion    :
MaxConcurrency     :
MaxErrors          :
Name               : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
OutputLocation     :
```

```
Parameters         : {}
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}

AssociationId      : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationName    : test-case-1234567890
AssociationVersion : 1
ComplianceSeverity :
CreatedDate        : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DocumentVersion    :
MaxConcurrency     :
MaxErrors          :
Name               : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
OutputLocation     :
Parameters         : {}
ScheduleExpression : rate(30minutes)
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

- For API details, see ListAssociationVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves all versions of the association provided.

```
Get-SSMAssociationVersionList -AssociationId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationName    :
AssociationVersion : 2
ComplianceSeverity :
CreatedDate        : 3/12/2019 9:21:01 AM
DocumentVersion    :
MaxConcurrency     :
MaxErrors          :
Name               : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
OutputLocation     :
Parameters         : {}
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

```
AssociationId      : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationName    : test-case-1234567890
AssociationVersion : 1
ComplianceSeverity :
CreatedDate        : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DocumentVersion    :
MaxConcurrency     :
MaxErrors          :
Name               : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
OutputLocation     :
Parameters         : {}
ScheduleExpression : rate(30minutes)
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

- For API details, see ListAssociationVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListAssociations` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListAssociations`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list your associations for a specific instance

The following list-associations example lists all associations with the AssociationName, UpdateSSMAgent.

```
aws ssm list-associations /
    --association-filter-list "key=AssociationName,value=UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Associations": [
        {
            "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
```

```
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "i-016648b75dd622dab"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "Overview": {
                "Status": "Pending",
                "DetailedStatus": "Associated",
                "AssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                    "Pending": 1
                }
            },
            "ScheduleExpression": "cron(0 00 12 ? * SUN *)",
            "AssociationName": "UpdateSSMAgent"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with associations in Systems Manager in the *Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To list your associations for a specific document

The following list-associations example lists all associations for the specified document.

```
aws ssm list-associations /
    --association-filter-list "key=Name,value=AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Associations": [
        {
            "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
```

```
                    "Values": [
                        "i-1234567890abcdef0"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "LastExecutionDate": 1550505828.548,
            "Overview": {
                "Status": "Success",
                "DetailedStatus": "Success",
                "AssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                    "Success": 1
                }
            },
            "ScheduleExpression": "cron(0 00 12 ? * SUN *)",
            "AssociationName": "UpdateSSMAgent"
        },
    {
            "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "InstanceId": "i-9876543210abcdef0",
            "AssociationId": "fbc07ef7-b985-4684-b82b-0123456789ab",
            "AssociationVersion": "1",
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "i-9876543210abcdef0"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "LastExecutionDate": 1550507531.0,
            "Overview": {
                "Status": "Success",
                "AssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                    "Success": 1
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Working with associations in Systems Manager in the *Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListAssociations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all the associations for an instance. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="InstanceId";Value=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862")}
Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter1
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

Example 2: This example lists all associations for a configuration document. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter2 = @{Key="Name";Value=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter2
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each filter.

```
$filter1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationFilter
```

```
$filter1.Key = "InstanceId"
$filter1.Value = "i-0000293ffd8c57862"

Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter1
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

- For API details, see ListAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the associations for an instance. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="InstanceId";Value=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862")}
Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter1
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

Example 2: This example lists all associations for a configuration document. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter2 = @{Key="Name";Value=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter2
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each filter.

```
$filter1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationFilter
$filter1.Key = "InstanceId"
$filter1.Value = "i-0000293ffd8c57862"

Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter1
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

- For API details, see ListAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListCommandInvocations` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListCommandInvocations`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the invocations of a specific command

The following `list-command-invocations` example lists all the invocations of a command.

```
aws ssm list-command-invocations \
    --command-id "ef7fdfd8-9b57-4151-a15c-db9a12345678" \
    --details
```

Output:

```
{
    "CommandInvocations": [
        {
            "CommandId": "ef7fdfd8-9b57-4151-a15c-db9a12345678",
            "InstanceId": "i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE",
            "InstanceName": "",
            "Comment": "b48291dd-ba76-43e0-
b9df-13e11ddaac26:6960febb-2907-4b59-8e1a-d6ce8EXAMPLE",
            "DocumentName": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "DocumentVersion": "",
            "RequestedDateTime": 1582136283.089,
            "Status": "Success",
            "StatusDetails": "Success",
            "StandardOutputUrl": "",
            "StandardErrorUrl": "",
            "CommandPlugins": [
                {
                    "Name": "aws:updateSsmAgent",
                    "Status": "Success",
                    "StatusDetails": "Success",
                    "ResponseCode": 0,
                    "ResponseStartDateTime": 1582136283.419,
                    "ResponseFinishDateTime": 1582136283.51,
                    "Output": "Updating amazon-ssm-agent from 2.3.842.0 to latest
\nSuccessfully downloaded https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-us-
east-2/ssm-agent-manifest.json\namazon-ssm-agent 2.3.842.0 has already been
 installed, update skipped\n",
                    "StandardOutputUrl": "",
```

```
                    "StandardErrorUrl": "",
                    "OutputS3Region": "us-east-2",
                    "OutputS3BucketName": "",
                    "OutputS3KeyPrefix": ""
                }
            ],
            "ServiceRole": "",
            "NotificationConfig": {
                "NotificationArn": "",
                "NotificationEvents": [],
                "NotificationType": ""
            },
            "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
                "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
                "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
            }
        },
        {
            "CommandId": "ef7fdfd8-9b57-4151-a15c-db9a12345678",
            "InstanceId": "i-0471e04240EXAMPLE",
            "InstanceName": "",
            "Comment": "b48291dd-ba76-43e0-
b9df-13e11ddaac26:6960febb-2907-4b59-8e1a-d6ce8EXAMPLE",
            "DocumentName": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "DocumentVersion": "",
            "RequestedDateTime": 1582136283.02,
            "Status": "Success",
            "StatusDetails": "Success",
            "StandardOutputUrl": "",
            "StandardErrorUrl": "",
            "CommandPlugins": [
                {
                    "Name": "aws:updateSsmAgent",
                    "Status": "Success",
                    "StatusDetails": "Success",
                    "ResponseCode": 0,
                    "ResponseStartDateTime": 1582136283.812,
                    "ResponseFinishDateTime": 1582136295.031,
                    "Output": "Updating amazon-ssm-agent from 2.3.672.0 to
 latest\nSuccessfully downloaded https://s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/amazon-
ssm-us-east-2/ssm-agent-manifest.json\nSuccessfully downloaded https://s3.us-
east-2.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-us-east-2/amazon-ssm-agent-updater/2.3.842.0/
amazon-ssm-agent-updater-snap-amd64.tar.gz\nSuccessfully downloaded https://
s3.us-east-2.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-us-east-2/amazon-ssm-agent/2.3.672.0/
```

```
amazon-ssm-agent-snap-amd64.tar.gz\nSuccessfully downloaded https://s3.us-
east-2.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-us-east-2/amazon-ssm-agent/2.3.842.0/amazon-ssm-
agent-snap-amd64.tar.gz\nInitiating amazon-ssm-agent update to 2.3.842.0\namazon-
ssm-agent updated successfully to 2.3.842.0",
                    "StandardOutputUrl": "",
                    "StandardErrorUrl": "",
                    "OutputS3Region": "us-east-2",
                    "OutputS3BucketName": "",
                    "OutputS3KeyPrefix": "8bee3135-398c-4d31-99b6-e42d2EXAMPLE/
i-0471e04240EXAMPLE/awsupdateSsmAgent"
                }
            ],
            "ServiceRole": "",
            "NotificationConfig": {
                "NotificationArn": "",
                "NotificationEvents": [],
                "NotificationType": ""
            },
            "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
                "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
                "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Understanding Command Statuses in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { paginateListCommandInvocations, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
```

```
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * List SSM command invocations on an instance.
 * @param {{ instanceId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceId }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const listCommandInvocationsPaginated = [];
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListCommandInvocations(
      { client },
      {
        InstanceId: instanceId,
      },
    );
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listCommandInvocationsPaginated.push(...page.CommandInvocations);
    }
    console.log("Here is the list of command invocations:");
    console.log(listCommandInvocationsPaginated);
    return { CommandInvocations: listCommandInvocationsPaginated };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ValidationError") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide a valid instance ID?`);
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all the invocations of a command.

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId "b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44" -
Detail $true
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44
CommandPlugins     : {aws:runShellScript}
Comment            : IP config
DocumentName       : AWS-RunShellScript
InstanceId         : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
InstanceName       :
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
RequestedDateTime  : 2/22/2017 8:13:16 PM
ServiceRole        :
StandardErrorUrl   :
StandardOutputUrl  :
Status             : Success
StatusDetails      : Success
TraceOutput        :
```

Example 2: This example lists CommandPlugins for invocation of the command id e1eb2e3c-ed4c-5123-45c1-234f5612345f

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId e1eb2e3c-ed4c-5123-45c1-234f5612345f -Detail:
$true | Select-Object -ExpandProperty CommandPlugins
```

Output:

```
Name                   : aws:runPowerShellScript
Output                 : Completed 17.7 KiB/17.7 KiB (40.1 KiB/s) with 1 file(s)
 remainingdownload: s3://dd-aess-r-ctmer/KUMO.png to ..\..\programdata\KUMO.png
                          kumo available

OutputS3BucketName     :
OutputS3KeyPrefix      :
OutputS3Region         : eu-west-1
ResponseCode           : 0
ResponseFinishDateTime : 4/3/2019 11:53:23 AM
ResponseStartDateTime  : 4/3/2019 11:53:21 AM
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Success
StatusDetails          : Success
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the invocations of a command.

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId "b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44" -
Detail $true
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44
CommandPlugins     : {aws:runShellScript}
Comment            : IP config
DocumentName       : AWS-RunShellScript
InstanceId         : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
InstanceName       :
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
RequestedDateTime  : 2/22/2017 8:13:16 PM
ServiceRole        :
StandardErrorUrl   :
StandardOutputUrl  :
Status             : Success
StatusDetails      : Success
TraceOutput        :
```

Example 2: This example lists CommandPlugins for invocation of the command id e1eb2e3c-ed4c-5123-45c1-234f5612345f

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId e1eb2e3c-ed4c-5123-45c1-234f5612345f -Detail:
$true | Select-Object -ExpandProperty CommandPlugins
```

Output:

```
Name                   : aws:runPowerShellScript
Output                 : Completed 17.7 KiB/17.7 KiB (40.1 KiB/s) with 1 file(s)
 remainingdownload: s3://dd-aess-r-ctmer/KUMO.png to ..\..\programdata\KUMO.png
                          kumo available

OutputS3BucketName     :
OutputS3KeyPrefix      :
```

```
OutputS3Region         : eu-west-1
ResponseCode           : 0
ResponseFinishDateTime : 4/3/2019 11:53:23 AM
ResponseStartDateTime  : 4/3/2019 11:53:21 AM
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Success
StatusDetails          : Success
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def list_command_invocations(self, instance_id):
        """
        Lists the commands for an instance.
```

```
        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance.
        :return: The list of commands.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("list_command_invocations")
            command_invocations = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(InstanceId=instance_id):
                command_invocations.extend(page["CommandInvocations"])
            num_of_commands = len(command_invocations)
            print(
                f"{num_of_commands} command invocation(s) found for instance
{instance_id}."
            )

            if num_of_commands > 10:
                print("Displaying the first 10 commands:")
                num_of_commands = 10
            date_format = "%A, %d %B %Y %I:%M%p"
            for command in command_invocations[:num_of_commands]:
                print(
                    f"   The time of command invocation is
{command['RequestedDateTime'].strftime(date_format)}"
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list commands for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListCommands` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListCommands`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To get the status of a specific command

The following `list-commands` example retrieves and displays the status of the specified command.

```
aws ssm list-commands \
    --command-id "0831e1a8-a1ac-4257-a1fd-c831bEXAMPLE"
```

Example 2: To get the status of commands requested after a specific date

The following `list-commands` example retrieves the details of commands requested after the specified date.

```
aws ssm list-commands \
    --filter "key=InvokedAfter,value=2020-02-01T00:00:00Z"
```

Example 3: To list all commands requested in an AWS account

The following `list-commands` example lists all commands requested by users in the current AWS account and Region.

```
aws ssm list-commands
```

Output:

```
{
    "Commands": [
        {
            "CommandId": "8bee3135-398c-4d31-99b6-e42d2EXAMPLE",
            "DocumentName": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
            "DocumentVersion": "",
            "Comment": "b48291dd-ba76-43e0-
b9df-13e11ddaac26:6960febb-2907-4b59-8e1a-d6ce8EXAMPLE",
            "ExpiresAfter": "2020-02-19T11:28:02.500000-08:00",
            "Parameters": {},
            "InstanceIds": [
                "i-028ea792daEXAMPLE",
                "i-02feef8c46EXAMPLE",
```

```
                "i-038613f3f0EXAMPLE",
                "i-03a530a2d4EXAMPLE",
                "i-083b678d37EXAMPLE",
                "i-0dee81debaEXAMPLE"
            ],
            "Targets": [],
            "RequestedDateTime": "2020-02-19T10:18:02.500000-08:00",
            "Status": "Success",
            "StatusDetails": "Success",
            "OutputS3BucketName": "",
            "OutputS3KeyPrefix": "",
            "MaxConcurrency": "50",
            "MaxErrors": "100%",
            "TargetCount": 6,
            "CompletedCount": 6,
            "ErrorCount": 0,
            "DeliveryTimedOutCount": 0,
            "ServiceRole": "",
            "NotificationConfig": {
                "NotificationArn": "",
                "NotificationEvents": [],
                "NotificationType": ""
            },
            "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
                "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
                "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
            }
        }
        {
            "CommandId": "e9ade581-c03d-476b-9b07-26667EXAMPLE",
            "DocumentName": "AWS-FindWindowsUpdates",
            "DocumentVersion": "1",
            "Comment": "",
            "ExpiresAfter": "2020-01-24T12:37:31.874000-08:00",
            "Parameters": {
                "KbArticleIds": [
                    ""
                ],
                "UpdateLevel": [
                    "All"
                ]
            },
            "InstanceIds": [],
            "Targets": [
```

```
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "i-00ec29b21eEXAMPLE",
                        "i-09911ddd90EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "RequestedDateTime": "2020-01-24T11:27:31.874000-08:00",
            "Status": "Success",
            "StatusDetails": "Success",
            "OutputS3BucketName": "my-us-east-2-bucket",
            "OutputS3KeyPrefix": "my-rc-output",
            "MaxConcurrency": "50",
            "MaxErrors": "0",
            "TargetCount": 2,
            "CompletedCount": 2,
            "ErrorCount": 0,
            "DeliveryTimedOutCount": 0,
            "ServiceRole": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "NotificationConfig": {
                "NotificationArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:111222333444:my-us-
east-2-notification-arn",
                "NotificationEvents": [
                    "All"
                ],
                "NotificationType": "Invocation"
            },
            "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
                "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
                "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
            }
        }
        {
            "CommandId": "d539b6c3-70e8-4853-80e5-0ce4fEXAMPLE",
            "DocumentName": "AWS-RunPatchBaseline",
            "DocumentVersion": "1",
            "Comment": "",
            "ExpiresAfter": "2020-01-24T12:21:04.350000-08:00",
            "Parameters": {
                "InstallOverrideList": [
                    ""
                ],
```

```
                "Operation": [
                    "Install"
                ],
                "RebootOption": [
                    "RebootIfNeeded"
                ],
                "SnapshotId": [
                    ""
                ]
            },
            "InstanceIds": [],
            "Targets": [
                {
                    "Key": "InstanceIds",
                    "Values": [
                        "i-00ec29b21eEXAMPLE",
                        "i-09911ddd90EXAMPLE"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "RequestedDateTime": "2020-01-24T11:11:04.350000-08:00",
            "Status": "Success",
            "StatusDetails": "Success",
            "OutputS3BucketName": "my-us-east-2-bucket",
            "OutputS3KeyPrefix": "my-rc-output",
            "MaxConcurrency": "50",
            "MaxErrors": "0",
            "TargetCount": 2,
            "CompletedCount": 2,
            "ErrorCount": 0,
            "DeliveryTimedOutCount": 0,
            "ServiceRole": "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/aws-service-role/
ssm.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForAmazonSSM",
            "NotificationConfig": {
                "NotificationArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:111222333444:my-us-
east-2-notification-arn",
                "NotificationEvents": [
                    "All"
                ],
                "NotificationType": "Invocation"
            },
            "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
                "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
                "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListCommands in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all commands requested.

```
Get-SSMCommand
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : 4b75a163-d39a-4d97-87c9-98ae52c6be35
Comment            : Apply association with id at update time: 4cc73e42-
d5ae-4879-84f8-57e09c0efcd0
CompletedCount     : 1
DocumentName       : AWS-RefreshAssociation
ErrorCount         : 0
ExpiresAfter       : 2/24/2017 3:19:08 AM
InstanceIds        : {i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f}
MaxConcurrency     : 50
MaxErrors          : 0
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
OutputS3BucketName :
OutputS3KeyPrefix  :
OutputS3Region     :
Parameters         : {[associationIds,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
RequestedDateTime  : 2/24/2017 3:18:08 AM
ServiceRole        :
Status             : Success
StatusDetails      : Success
TargetCount        : 1
Targets            : {}
```

Example 2: This example gets the status of a specific command.

```
Get-SSMCommand -CommandId "4b75a163-d39a-4d97-87c9-98ae52c6be35"
```

Example 3: This example retrieves all SSM commands invoked after 2019-04-01T00:00:00Z

```
Get-SSMCommand -Filter @{Key="InvokedAfter";Value="2019-04-01T00:00:00Z"} |
 Select-Object CommandId, DocumentName, Status, RequestedDateTime | Sort-Object -
Property RequestedDateTime -Descending
```

Output:

```
CommandId                            DocumentName               Status
 RequestedDateTime
---------                            ------------               ------
 -----------------
edb1b23e-456a-7adb-aef8-90e-012ac34f AWS-RunPowerShellScript    Cancelled
 4/16/2019 5:45:23 AM
1a2dc3fb-4567-890d-a1ad-234b5d6bc7d9 AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage    Success
 4/6/2019 9:19:42 AM
12c3456c-7e90-4f12-1232-1234f5b67893 KT-Retrieve-Cloud-Type-Win Failed
 4/2/2019 4:13:07 AM
fe123b45-240c-4123-a2b3-234bdd567ecf AWS-RunInspecChecks        Failed
 4/1/2019 2:27:31 PM
1eb23aa4-567d-4123-12a3-4c1c2ab34561 AWS-RunPowerShellScript    Success
 4/1/2019 1:05:55 PM
1c2f3bb4-ee12-4bc1-1a23-12345eea123e AWS-RunInspecChecks        Failed
 4/1/2019 11:13:09 AM
```

- For API details, see ListCommands in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all commands requested.

```
Get-SSMCommand
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : 4b75a163-d39a-4d97-87c9-98ae52c6be35
```

```
Comment            : Apply association with id at update time: 4cc73e42-
d5ae-4879-84f8-57e09c0efcd0
CompletedCount     : 1
DocumentName       : AWS-RefreshAssociation
ErrorCount         : 0
ExpiresAfter       : 2/24/2017 3:19:08 AM
InstanceIds        : {i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f}
MaxConcurrency     : 50
MaxErrors          : 0
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
OutputS3BucketName :
OutputS3KeyPrefix  :
OutputS3Region     :
Parameters         : {[associationIds,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
RequestedDateTime  : 2/24/2017 3:18:08 AM
ServiceRole        :
Status             : Success
StatusDetails      : Success
TargetCount        : 1
Targets            : {}
```

Example 2: This example gets the status of a specific command.

```
Get-SSMCommand -CommandId "4b75a163-d39a-4d97-87c9-98ae52c6be35"
```

Example 3: This example retrieves all SSM commands invoked after 2019-04-01T00:00:00Z

```
Get-SSMCommand -Filter @{Key="InvokedAfter";Value="2019-04-01T00:00:00Z"} |
 Select-Object CommandId, DocumentName, Status, RequestedDateTime | Sort-Object -
Property RequestedDateTime -Descending
```

Output:

```
CommandId                            DocumentName               Status
 RequestedDateTime
---------                            ------------               ------
 -----------------
edb1b23e-456a-7adb-aef8-90e-012ac34f AWS-RunPowerShellScript    Cancelled
 4/16/2019 5:45:23 AM
```

```
1a2dc3fb-4567-890d-a1ad-234b5d6bc7d9 AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage    Success
 4/6/2019 9:19:42 AM
12c3456c-7e90-4f12-1232-1234f5b67893 KT-Retrieve-Cloud-Type-Win Failed
 4/2/2019 4:13:07 AM
fe123b45-240c-4123-a2b3-234bdd567ecf AWS-RunInspecChecks        Failed
 4/1/2019 2:27:31 PM
1eb23aa4-567d-4123-12a3-4c1c2ab34561 AWS-RunPowerShellScript    Success
 4/1/2019 1:05:55 PM
1c2f3bb4-ee12-4bc1-1a23-12345eea123e AWS-RunInspecChecks        Failed
 4/1/2019 11:13:09 AM
```

- For API details, see ListCommands in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListComplianceItems` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListComplianceItems`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list compliance items for a specific instance

This example lists all compliance items for the specified instance.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-compliance-items --resource-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0" --resource-
types "ManagedInstance"
```

Output:

```
{
  "ComplianceItems": [
      {
          "ComplianceType": "Association",
          "ResourceType": "ManagedInstance",
          "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "Id": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
          "Title": "",
          "Status": "COMPLIANT",
          "Severity": "UNSPECIFIED",
          "ExecutionSummary": {
```

```
                "ExecutionTime": 1550408470.0
            },
            "Details": {
                "DocumentName": "AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory",
                "DocumentVersion": "1"
            }
        },
        {
            "ComplianceType": "Association",
            "ResourceType": "ManagedInstance",
            "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
            "Id": "e4c2ed6d-516f-41aa-aa2a-0123456789ab",
            "Title": "",
            "Status": "COMPLIANT",
            "Severity": "UNSPECIFIED",
            "ExecutionSummary": {
                "ExecutionTime": 1550508475.0
            },
            "Details": {
                "DocumentName": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
                "DocumentVersion": "1"
            }
        },
                ...
    ],
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

To list compliance items for a specific instance and association ID

This example lists all compliance items for the specified instance and association ID.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-compliance-items --resource-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0" --resource-
types "ManagedInstance" --
filters "Key=ComplianceType,Values=Association,Type=EQUAL" "Key=Id,Values=e4c2ed6d-516f-4
aa2a-0123456789ab,Type=EQUAL"
```

To list compliance items for a instance after a specific date and time

This example lists all compliance items for an instance after the specified date and time.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-compliance-items --resource-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0" --resource-
types "ManagedInstance" --
filters "Key=ExecutionTime,Values=2019-02-18T16:00:00Z,Type=GREATER_THAN"
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceItems in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists compliance items list for the given resource id and type, filtering compliance-type being 'Association'

```
Get-SSMComplianceItemList -ResourceId i-1a2caf345f67d0dc2 -ResourceType
 ManagedInstance -Filter @{Key="ComplianceType";Values="Association"}
```

Output:

```
ComplianceType   : Association
Details          : {[DocumentName, AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory],
 [DocumentVersion, 1]}
ExecutionSummary :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.ComplianceExecutionSummary
Id               : 123a45a1-c234-1234-1245-67891236db4e
ResourceId       : i-1a2caf345f67d0dc2
ResourceType     : ManagedInstance
Severity         : UNSPECIFIED
Status           : COMPLIANT
Title            :
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceItems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists compliance items list for the given resource id and type, filtering compliance-type being 'Association'

```
Get-SSMComplianceItemList -ResourceId i-1a2caf345f67d0dc2 -ResourceType
 ManagedInstance -Filter @{Key="ComplianceType";Values="Association"}
```

Output:

```
ComplianceType   : Association
Details          : {[DocumentName, AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory],
 [DocumentVersion, 1]}
ExecutionSummary :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.ComplianceExecutionSummary
Id               : 123a45a1-c234-1234-1245-67891236db4e
ResourceId       : i-1a2caf345f67d0dc2
ResourceType     : ManagedInstance
Severity         : UNSPECIFIED
Status           : COMPLIANT
Title            :
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceItems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListComplianceSummaries` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListComplianceSummaries`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list compliance summaries for all compliance types

This example lists compliance summaries for all compliance types in your account.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-compliance-summaries
```

Output:

```
{
  "ComplianceSummaryItems": [
      {
          "ComplianceType": "Association",
          "CompliantSummary": {
              "CompliantCount": 2,
              "SeveritySummary": {
```

```
                "CriticalCount": 0,
                "HighCount": 0,
                "MediumCount": 0,
                "LowCount": 0,
                "InformationalCount": 0,
                "UnspecifiedCount": 2
            }
        },
        "NonCompliantSummary": {
            "NonCompliantCount": 0,
            "SeveritySummary": {
                "CriticalCount": 0,
                "HighCount": 0,
                "MediumCount": 0,
                "LowCount": 0,
                "InformationalCount": 0,
                "UnspecifiedCount": 0
            }
        }
    },
    {
        "ComplianceType": "Patch",
        "CompliantSummary": {
            "CompliantCount": 1,
            "SeveritySummary": {
                "CriticalCount": 0,
                "HighCount": 0,
                "MediumCount": 0,
                "LowCount": 0,
                "InformationalCount": 0,
                "UnspecifiedCount": 1
            }
        },
        "NonCompliantSummary": {
            "NonCompliantCount": 1,
            "SeveritySummary": {
                "CriticalCount": 1,
                "HighCount": 0,
                "MediumCount": 0,
                "LowCount": 0,
                "InformationalCount": 0,
                "UnspecifiedCount": 0
            }
        }
```

```
      },
              ...
  ],
  "NextToken": "eyJOZXh0VG9rZW4iOiBudWxsLCAiYm90b190cnVuY2F0ZV9hbW91bnQiOiAyfQ=="
}
```

To list compliance summaries for a specific compliance type

This example lists the compliance summary for the Patch compliance type.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-compliance-summaries --
filters "Key=ComplianceType,Values=Patch,Type=EQUAL"
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceSummaries in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example returns a summary count of compliant and non-compliant resources for all compliance types.

```
Get-SSMComplianceSummaryList
```

Output:

```
ComplianceType CompliantSummary
 NonCompliantSummary
-------------- ----------------
 -------------------
FleetTotal     Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Association    Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Custom:InSpec  Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Patch          Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a summary count of compliant and non-compliant resources for all compliance types.

```
Get-SSMComplianceSummaryList
```

Output:

```
ComplianceType CompliantSummary
 NonCompliantSummary
-------------- ----------------
 -------------------
FleetTotal     Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Association    Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Custom:InSpec  Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Patch          Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDocumentVersions` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDocumentVersions`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list document versions

The following `list-document-versions` example lists all versions for a Systems Manager document.

```
aws ssm list-document-versions \
```

```
    --name "Example"
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentVersions": [
        {
            "Name": "Example",
            "DocumentVersion": "1",
            "CreatedDate": 1583257938.266,
            "IsDefaultVersion": true,
            "DocumentFormat": "YAML",
            "Status": "Active"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Sending Commands that Use the Document Version Parameter in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDocumentVersions in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all the versions for a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentVersionList -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate       : 6/1/2021 5:19:10 PM
DocumentFormat    : JSON
DocumentVersion   : 1
IsDefaultVersion  : True
Name              : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Status            : Active
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the versions for a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentVersionList -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate       : 6/1/2021 5:19:10 PM
DocumentFormat    : JSON
DocumentVersion   : 1
IsDefaultVersion  : True
Name              : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Status            : Active
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListDocuments` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListDocuments`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To list documents

The following `list-documents` example lists documents owned by the requesting account tagged with the custom tag.

```
aws ssm list-documents \
    --filters Key=Owner,Values=Self Key=tag:DocUse,Values=Testing
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentIdentifiers": [
        {
            "Name": "Example",
            "Owner": "29884EXAMPLE",
```

```
            "PlatformTypes": [
                "Windows",
                "Linux"
            ],
            "DocumentVersion": "1",
            "DocumentType": "Automation",
            "SchemaVersion": "0.3",
            "DocumentFormat": "YAML",
            "Tags": [
                {
                    "Key": "DocUse",
                    "Value": "Testing"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS Systems Manager Documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To list shared documents

The following `list-documents` example lists shared documents, including private shared documents not owned by AWS.

```
aws ssm list-documents \
    --filters Key=Name,Values=sharedDocNamePrefix  Key=Owner,Values=Private
```

Output:

```
{
    "DocumentIdentifiers": [
        {
            "Name": "Example",
            "Owner": "12345EXAMPLE",
            "PlatformTypes": [
                "Windows",
                "Linux"
            ],
            "DocumentVersion": "1",
            "DocumentType": "Command",
            "SchemaVersion": "0.3",
```

```
            "DocumentFormat": "YAML",
            "Tags": []
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see AWS Systems Manager Documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Lists all the configuration documents in your account.

```
Get-SSMDocumentList
```

Output:

```
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ApplyPatchBaseline
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows}
SchemaVersion   : 1.2

DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows, Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0

DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ConfigureCloudWatch
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows}
SchemaVersion   : 1.2
...
```

Example 2: This example retrieves all automation documents with name matchingi 'Platform'

```
Get-SSMDocumentList -DocumentFilterList @{Key="DocumentType";Value="Automation"}
 | Where-Object Name -Match "Platform"
```

Output:

```
DocumentFormat  : JSON
DocumentType    : Automation
DocumentVersion : 7
Name            : KT-Get-Platform
Owner           : 987654123456
PlatformTypes   : {Windows, Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 0.3
Tags            : {}
TargetType      :
VersionName     :
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Lists all the configuration documents in your account.

```
Get-SSMDocumentList
```

Output:

```
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ApplyPatchBaseline
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows}
SchemaVersion   : 1.2

DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows, Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
```

```
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ConfigureCloudWatch
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows}
SchemaVersion   : 1.2
...
```

Example 2: This example retrieves all automation documents with name matchingi 'Platform'

```
Get-SSMDocumentList -DocumentFilterList @{Key="DocumentType";Value="Automation"}
 | Where-Object Name -Match "Platform"
```

Output:

```
DocumentFormat  : JSON
DocumentType    : Automation
DocumentVersion : 7
Name            : KT-Get-Platform
Owner           : 987654123456
PlatformTypes   : {Windows, Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 0.3
Tags            : {}
TargetType      :
VersionName     :
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListInventoryEntries` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListInventoryEntries`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To view specific inventory type entries for an instance

This following `list-inventory-entries` example lists the inventory entries for the AWS:Application inventory type on a specific instance.

```
aws ssm list-inventory-entries \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --type-name "AWS:Application"
```

Output:

```
{
  "TypeName": "AWS:Application",
  "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
  "SchemaVersion": "1.1",
  "CaptureTime": "2019-02-15T12:17:55Z",
  "Entries": [
    {
      "Architecture": "i386",
      "Name": "Amazon SSM Agent",
      "PackageId": "{88a60be2-89a1-4df8-812a-80863c2a2b68}",
      "Publisher": "Amazon Web Services",
      "Version": "2.3.274.0"
    },
    {
      "Architecture": "x86_64",
      "InstalledTime": "2018-05-03T13:42:34Z",
      "Name": "AmazonCloudWatchAgent",
      "Publisher": "",
      "Version": "1.200442.0"
    }
  ]
}
```

Example 2: To view custom inventory entries assigned to an instance

The following `list-inventory-entries` example lists a custom inventory entry assigned to an instance.

```
aws ssm list-inventory-entries \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --type-name "Custom:RackInfo"
```

Output:

```
{
  "TypeName": "Custom:RackInfo",
```

```
  "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
  "SchemaVersion": "1.0",
  "CaptureTime": "2021-05-22T10:01:01Z",
  "Entries": [
    {
      "RackLocation": "Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf E"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see ListInventoryEntries in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists all the custom inventory entries for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -TypeName
 "Custom:RackInfo"
```

Output:

```
CaptureTime   : 2016-08-22T10:01:01Z
Entries       :
 {Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendDictionary`2[System.String,System.String]}
InstanceId    : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
NextToken     :
SchemaVersion : 1.0
TypeName      : Custom:RackInfo
```

Example 2: This example lists the details.

```
(Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -TypeName
 "Custom:RackInfo").Entries
```

Output:

```
Key          Value
---          -----
RackLocation Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf E
```

- For API details, see ListInventoryEntries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the custom inventory entries for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -TypeName
 "Custom:RackInfo"
```

Output:

```
CaptureTime   : 2016-08-22T10:01:01Z
Entries       :
 {Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendDictionary`2[System.String,System.String]}
InstanceId    : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
NextToken     :
SchemaVersion : 1.0
TypeName      : Custom:RackInfo
```

Example 2: This example lists the details.

```
(Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -TypeName
 "Custom:RackInfo").Entries
```

Output:

```
Key          Value
---          -----
RackLocation Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf E
```

- For API details, see ListInventoryEntries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListResourceComplianceSummaries` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListResourceComplianceSummaries`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list resource-level compliance summary counts

This example lists resource-level compliance summary counts.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-resource-compliance-summaries
```

Output:

```
{
  "ResourceComplianceSummaryItems": [
      {
          "ComplianceType": "Association",
          "ResourceType": "ManagedInstance",
          "ResourceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
          "Status": "COMPLIANT",
          "OverallSeverity": "UNSPECIFIED",
          "ExecutionSummary": {
              "ExecutionTime": 1550509273.0
          },
          "CompliantSummary": {
              "CompliantCount": 2,
              "SeveritySummary": {
                  "CriticalCount": 0,
                  "HighCount": 0,
                  "MediumCount": 0,
                  "LowCount": 0,
                  "InformationalCount": 0,
                  "UnspecifiedCount": 2
              }
          },
          "NonCompliantSummary": {
              "NonCompliantCount": 0,
              "SeveritySummary": {
                  "CriticalCount": 0,
                  "HighCount": 0,
                  "MediumCount": 0,
                  "LowCount": 0,
                  "InformationalCount": 0,
                  "UnspecifiedCount": 0
              }
          }
      },
      {
```

```
            "ComplianceType": "Patch",
            "ResourceType": "ManagedInstance",
            "ResourceId": "i-9876543210abcdef0",
            "Status": "COMPLIANT",
            "OverallSeverity": "UNSPECIFIED",
            "ExecutionSummary": {
                "ExecutionTime": 1550248550.0,
                "ExecutionId": "7abb6378-a4a5-4f10-8312-0123456789ab",
                "ExecutionType": "Command"
            },
            "CompliantSummary": {
                "CompliantCount": 397,
                "SeveritySummary": {
                    "CriticalCount": 0,
                    "HighCount": 0,
                    "MediumCount": 0,
                    "LowCount": 0,
                    "InformationalCount": 0,
                    "UnspecifiedCount": 397
                }
            },
            "NonCompliantSummary": {
                "NonCompliantCount": 0,
                "SeveritySummary": {
                    "CriticalCount": 0,
                    "HighCount": 0,
                    "MediumCount": 0,
                    "LowCount": 0,
                    "InformationalCount": 0,
                    "UnspecifiedCount": 0
                }
            }
        }
    ],
    "NextToken": "--token string truncated--"
}
```

To list resource-level compliance summaries for a specific compliance type

This example lists resource-level compliance summaries for the Patch compliance type.

Command:

```
aws ssm list-resource-compliance-summaries --
filters "Key=ComplianceType,Values=Patch,Type=EQUAL"
```

- For API details, see ListResourceComplianceSummaries in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example gets a resource-level summary count. The summary includes information about compliant and non-compliant statuses and detailed compliance-item severity counts for products that match "Windows10". Because the MaxResult default is 100 if the parameter is not specified, and this value is not valid, MaxResult parameter is added, and the value is set to 50.

```
$FilterValues = @{
  "Key"="Product"
        "Type"="EQUAL"
        "Values"="Windows10"
}
        Get-SSMResourceComplianceSummaryList -Filter $FilterValues -MaxResult 50
```

- For API details, see ListResourceComplianceSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a resource-level summary count. The summary includes information about compliant and non-compliant statuses and detailed compliance-item severity counts for products that match "Windows10". Because the MaxResult default is 100 if the parameter is not specified, and this value is not valid, MaxResult parameter is added, and the value is set to 50.

```
$FilterValues = @{
  "Key"="Product"
        "Type"="EQUAL"
        "Values"="Windows10"
}
        Get-SSMResourceComplianceSummaryList -Filter $FilterValues -MaxResult 50
```

- For API details, see ListResourceComplianceSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ListTagsForResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the tags applied to a patch baseline

The following `list-tags-for-resource` example lists the tags for a patch baseline.

```
aws ssm list-tags-for-resource \
    --resource-type "PatchBaseline" \
    --resource-id "pb-0123456789abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagList": [
        {
            "Key": "Environment",
            "Value": "Production"
        },
        {
            "Key": "Region",
            "Value": "EMEA"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Tagging AWS Resources in the *AWS General Reference*.

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example lists the tags for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow"
```

Output:

```
Key   Value
---   -----
Stack Production
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the tags for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow"
```

Output:

```
Key   Value
---   -----
Stack Production
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyDocumentPermission` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyDocumentPermission`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify document permissions

The following `modify-document-permission` example shares a Systems Manager document publicly.

```
aws ssm modify-document-permission \
    --name "Example" \
    --permission-type "Share" \
    --account-ids-to-add "All"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Share a Systems Manager Document in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyDocumentPermission in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds "share" permissions to all accounts for a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Edit-SSMDocumentPermission -Name "RunShellScript" -PermissionType "Share" -
AccountIdsToAdd all
```

Example 2: This example adds "share" permissions to a specific account for a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Edit-SSMDocumentPermission -Name "RunShellScriptNew" -PermissionType "Share" -
AccountIdsToAdd "123456789012"
```

- For API details, see ModifyDocumentPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds "share" permissions to all accounts for a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Edit-SSMDocumentPermission -Name "RunShellScript" -PermissionType "Share" -
AccountIdsToAdd all
```

Example 2: This example adds "share" permissions to a specific account for a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Edit-SSMDocumentPermission -Name "RunShellScriptNew" -PermissionType "Share" -
AccountIdsToAdd "123456789012"
```

- For API details, see ModifyDocumentPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutComplianceItems` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutComplianceItems`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register a compliance type and compliance details to a designated instance

This example registers the compliance type `Custom:AVCheck` to the specified managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

Command:

```
aws ssm put-compliance-items --resource-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" --
resource-type "ManagedInstance" --compliance-type "Custom:AVCheck"
 --execution-summary "ExecutionTime=2019-02-18T16:00:00Z" --
items "Id=Version2.0,Title=ScanHost,Severity=CRITICAL,Status=COMPLIANT"
```

- For API details, see PutComplianceItems in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example writes a custom compliance item for the given managed instance

```
$item = [Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.ComplianceItemEntry]::new()
```

```
$item.Id = "07Jun2019-3"
$item.Severity="LOW"
$item.Status="COMPLIANT"
$item.Title="Fin-test-1 - custom"
Write-SSMComplianceItem -ResourceId mi-012dcb3ecea45b678 -ComplianceType
 Custom:VSSCompliant2 -ResourceType ManagedInstance -Item $item -
ExecutionSummary_ExecutionTime "07-Jun-2019"
```

- For API details, see PutComplianceItems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example writes a custom compliance item for the given managed instance

```
$item = [Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.ComplianceItemEntry]::new()
$item.Id = "07Jun2019-3"
$item.Severity="LOW"
$item.Status="COMPLIANT"
$item.Title="Fin-test-1 - custom"
Write-SSMComplianceItem -ResourceId mi-012dcb3ecea45b678 -ComplianceType
 Custom:VSSCompliant2 -ResourceType ManagedInstance -Item $item -
ExecutionSummary_ExecutionTime "07-Jun-2019"
```

- For API details, see PutComplianceItems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutInventory` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutInventory`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To assign customer metadata to an instance

This example assigns rack location information to an instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

Command (Linux):

```
aws ssm put-inventory --instance-id "i-016648b75dd622dab" --items
 '[{"TypeName": "Custom:RackInfo","SchemaVersion": "1.0","CaptureTime":
 "2019-01-22T10:01:01Z","Content":[{"RackLocation": "Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf
 E"}]}]'
```

Command (Windows):

```
aws ssm put-inventory --instance-id "i-016648b75dd622dab" --
items "TypeName=Custom:RackInfo,SchemaVersion=1.0,CaptureTime=2019-01-22T10:01:01Z,Conten
 B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf F'}]"
```

- For API details, see PutInventory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example assigns rack location information to an instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
$data = New-Object
 "System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[System.String,System.String]"
$data.Add("RackLocation", "Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf F")

$items = New-Object
 "System.Collections.Generic.List[System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[System.String,
 System.String]]"
$items.Add($data)

$customInventoryItem = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InventoryItem
$customInventoryItem.CaptureTime = "2016-08-22T10:01:01Z"
$customInventoryItem.Content = $items
$customInventoryItem.TypeName = "Custom:TestRackInfo2"
$customInventoryItem.SchemaVersion = "1.0"

$inventoryItems = @($customInventoryItem)

Write-SSMInventory -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Item $inventoryItems
```

- For API details, see PutInventory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example assigns rack location information to an instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
$data = New-Object
 "System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[System.String,System.String]"
$data.Add("RackLocation", "Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf F")

$items = New-Object
 "System.Collections.Generic.List[System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[System.String,
 System.String]]"
$items.Add($data)

$customInventoryItem = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InventoryItem
$customInventoryItem.CaptureTime = "2016-08-22T10:01:01Z"
$customInventoryItem.Content = $items
$customInventoryItem.TypeName = "Custom:TestRackInfo2"
$customInventoryItem.SchemaVersion = "1.0"

$inventoryItems = @($customInventoryItem)

Write-SSMInventory -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Item $inventoryItems
```

- For API details, see PutInventory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `PutParameter` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `PutParameter`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To change a parameter value

The following `put-parameter` example changes the value of the specified parameter.

```
aws ssm put-parameter \
    --name "MyStringParameter" \
    --type "String" \
    --value "Vici" \
```

```
    --overwrite
```

Output:

```
{
    "Version": 2,
    "Tier": "Standard"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Systems Manager parameter (AWS CLI), Managing parameter tiers, and Working with parameter policies in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To create an advanced parameter

The following `put-parameter` example creates an advanced parameter.

```
aws ssm put-parameter \
    --name "MyAdvancedParameter" \
    --description "This is an advanced parameter" \
    --value "Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipiscing elit, sed do
 eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim ad minim
 veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip ex ea commodo
 consequat [truncated]" \
    --type "String" \
    --tier Advanced
```

Output:

```
{
    "Version": 1,
    "Tier": "Advanced"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Systems Manager parameter (AWS CLI), Managing parameter tiers, and Working with parameter policies in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 3: To convert a standard parameter to an advanced parameter

The following `put-parameter` example converts an existing standard parameter into an advanced parameter.

```
aws ssm put-parameter \
    --name "MyConvertedParameter" \
    --value "abc123" \
    --type "String" \
    --tier Advanced \
    --overwrite
```

Output:

```
{
    "Version": 2,
    "Tier": "Advanced"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Systems Manager parameter (AWS CLI), Managing parameter tiers, and Working with parameter policies in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 4: To create a parameter with a policy attached

The following `put-parameter` example creates an advanced parameter with a parameter policy attached.

```
aws ssm put-parameter \
    --name "/Finance/Payroll/q2accesskey" \
    --value "P@sSwW)rd" \
    --type "SecureString" \
    --tier Advanced \
    --policies "[{\"Type\":\"Expiration\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":
{\"Timestamp\":\"2020-06-30T00:00:00.000Z\"}},{\"Type\":\"ExpirationNotification
\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":{\"Before\":\"5\",\"Unit\":\"Days\"}},
{\"Type\":\"NoChangeNotification\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":{\"After\":
\"60\",\"Unit\":\"Days\"}}]"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Version": 1,
    "Tier": "Advanced"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Systems Manager parameter (AWS CLI), Managing parameter tiers, and Working with parameter policies in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 5: To add a policy to an existing parameter

The following `put-parameter` example attaches a policy to an existing advanced parameter.

```
aws ssm put-parameter \
    --name "/Finance/Payroll/q2accesskey" \
    --value "N3wP@sSwW)rd" \
    --type "SecureString" \
    --tier Advanced \
    --policies "[{\"Type\":\"Expiration\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":
{\"Timestamp\":\"2020-06-30T00:00:00.000Z\"}},{\"Type\":\"ExpirationNotification
\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":{\"Before\":\"5\",\"Unit\":\"Days\"}},
{\"Type\":\"NoChangeNotification\",\"Version\":\"1.0\",\"Attributes\":{\"After\":
\"60\",\"Unit\":\"Days\"}}]"
    --overwrite
```

Output:

```
{
    "Version": 2,
    "Tier": "Advanced"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Systems Manager parameter (AWS CLI), Managing parameter tiers, and Working with parameter policies in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ParameterType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.PutParameterRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.SsmException;

public class PutParameter {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <paraName>

                Where:
                    paraName - The name of the parameter.
                    paraValue - The value of the parameter.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String paraName = args[0];
        String paraValue = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putParaValue(ssmClient, paraName, paraValue);
```

```
        ssmClient.close();
    }

    public static void putParaValue(SsmClient ssmClient, String paraName, String
 value) {
        try {
            PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                    .name(paraName)
                    .type(ParameterType.STRING)
                    .value(value)
                    .build();

            ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter was successfully added.");

        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example creates a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Write-SSMParameter -Name "Welcome" -Type "String" -Value "helloWorld"
```

Example 2: This example changes a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Write-SSMParameter -Name "Welcome" -Type "String" -Value "Good day, Sunshine!" -
Overwrite $true
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Write-SSMParameter -Name "Welcome" -Type "String" -Value "helloWorld"
```

Example 2: This example changes a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Write-SSMParameter -Name "Welcome" -Type "String" -Value "Good day, Sunshine!" -
Overwrite $true
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Rust

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_parameter(
    client: &Client,
    name: &str,
    value: &str,
    description: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .put_parameter()
        .overwrite(true)
        .r#type(ParameterType::String)
        .name(name)
        .value(value)
        .description(description)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    println!("Success! Parameter now has version: {}", resp.version());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Use `RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To set the default patch baseline

The following `register-default-patch-baseline` example registers the specified custom patch baseline as the default patch baseline for the operating system type that it supports.

```
aws ssm register-default-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "pb-abc123cf9bEXAMPLE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId":"pb-abc123cf9bEXAMPLE"
}
```

The following `register-default-patch-baseline` example registers the default patch baseline provided by AWS for CentOS as the default patch baseline.

```
aws ssm register-default-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-2:733109147000:patchbaseline/
pb-0574b43a65ea646ed"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId":"pb-abc123cf9bEXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see About Predefined and Custom Patch Baselines in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers a patch baseline as the default patch baseline.

```
Register-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639"
```

Output:

```
pb-03da896ca3b68b639
```

- For API details, see RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a patch baseline as the default patch baseline.

```
Register-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639"
```

Output:

```
pb-03da896ca3b68b639
```

- For API details, see RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register a patch baseline for a patch group

The following `register-patch-baseline-for-patch-group` example registers a patch baseline for a patch group.

```
aws ssm register-patch-baseline-for-patch-group \
    --baseline-id "pb-045f10b4f382baeda" \
    --patch-group "Production"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-045f10b4f382baeda",
    "PatchGroup": "Production"
}
```

For more information, see Create a Patch Group <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/sysman-patch-group-tagging.html>__ and Add a Patch Group to a Patch Baseline in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers a patch baseline for a patch group.

```
Register-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639" -
PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-03da896ca3b68b639 Production
```

- For API details, see RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a patch baseline for a patch group.

```
Register-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639" -
PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-03da896ca3b68b639 Production
```

- For API details, see RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To register a single target with a maintenance window

The following `register-target-with-maintenance-window` example registers an instance with a maintenance window.

```
aws ssm register-target-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34ef56gh78" \
    --target "Key=InstanceIds,Values=i-0000293ffd8c57862" \
    --owner-information "Single instance" \
    --resource-type "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTargetId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
```

```
}
```

Example 2: To register multiple targets with a maintenance window using instance IDs

The following `register-target-with-maintenance-window` example registers two instances with a maintenance window by specifying their instance IDs.

```
aws ssm register-target-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34ef56gh78" \
    --target "Key=InstanceIds,Values=i-0000293ffd8c57862,i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" \
    --owner-information "Two instances in a list" \
    --resource-type "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTargetId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
}
```

Example 3: To register targets with a maintenance window using resource tags

The following `register-target-with-maintenance-window` example registers instances with a maintenance window by specifying resource tags that have been applied to the instances.

```
aws ssm register-target-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" \
    --targets "Key=tag:Environment,Values=Prod" "Key=Role,Values=Web" \
    --owner-information "Production Web Servers" \
    --resource-type "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTargetId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
}
```

Example 4: To register targets using a group of tag keys

The following `register-target-with-maintenance-window` example register instances that all have one or more tag keys assigned to them, regardless of their key values.

```
aws ssm register-target-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-0c50858d01EXAMPLE" \
    --resource-type "INSTANCE" \
    --target "Key=tag-key,Values=Name,Instance-Type,CostCenter"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTargetId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
}
```

Example 5: To register targets using a resource group name

The following `register-target-with-maintenance-window` example register a specified resource group, regardless of the type of resources it contains.

```
aws ssm register-target-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-0c50858d01EXAMPLE" \
    --resource-type "RESOURCE_GROUP" \
    --target "Key=resource-groups:Name,Values=MyResourceGroup"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTargetId":"1a2b3c4d-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b-1a2b3c4d-1a2"
}
```

For more information, see Register a Target Instance with the Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers an instance with a maintenance window.

```
$option1 = @{Key="InstanceIds";Values=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862")}
```

```
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Single instance" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
d8e47760-23ed-46a5-9f28-927337725398
```

Example 2: This example registers multiple instances with a maintenance window.

```
$option1 =
 @{Key="InstanceIds";Values=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862","i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Single instance" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d
```

Example 3: This example registers an instance with a maintenance window using EC2 tags.

```
$option1 = @{Key="tag:Environment";Values=@("Production")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Production Web Servers" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
2994977e-aefb-4a71-beac-df620352f184
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an instance with a maintenance window.

```
$option1 = @{Key="InstanceIds";Values=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Single instance" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
d8e47760-23ed-46a5-9f28-927337725398
```

Example 2: This example registers multiple instances with a maintenance window.

```
$option1 =
 @{Key="InstanceIds";Values=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862","i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Single instance" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d
```

Example 3: This example registers an instance with a maintenance window using EC2 tags.

```
$option1 = @{Key="tag:Environment";Values=@("Production")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Production Web Servers" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
2994977e-aefb-4a71-beac-df620352f184
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To register an Automation task with a maintenance window

The following `register-task-with-maintenance-window` example registers an Automation task with a maintenance window that is targeted at an instance.

```
aws ssm register-task-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-082dcd7649EXAMPLE" \
    --targets Key=InstanceIds,Values=i-1234520122EXAMPLE \
    --task-arn AWS-RestartEC2Instance \
    --service-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/SSM --task-type AUTOMATION
 \
    --task-invocation-parameters "{\"Automation\":{\"DocumentVersion\":\"\$LATEST
\",\"Parameters\":{\"InstanceId\":[\"{{RESOURCE_ID}}\"]}}}" \
    --priority 0 \
    --max-concurrency 1 \
    --max-errors 1 \
    --name "AutomationExample" \
    --description "Restarting EC2 Instance for maintenance"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTaskId":"11144444-5555-6666-7777-88888888"
}
```

For more information, see Register a Task with the Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To register a Lambda task with a Maintenance Window

The following `register-task-with-maintenance-window` example registers a Lambda task with a Maintenance Window that is targeted at an instance.

```
aws ssm register-task-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-082dcd7649dee04e4" \
    --targets Key=InstanceIds,Values=i-12344d305eEXAMPLE \
    --task-arn arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:111222333444:function:SSMTestLAMBDA \
    --service-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/SSM \
    --task-type LAMBDA \
    --task-invocation-parameters '{"Lambda":{"Payload":"{\"InstanceId\":
\"{{RESOURCE_ID}}\",\"targetType\":\"{{TARGET_TYPE}}\"}","Qualifier":"$LATEST"}}'
 \
    --priority 0 \
    --max-concurrency 10 \
    --max-errors 5 \
    --name "Lambda_Example" \
    --description "My Lambda Example"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTaskId":"22244444-5555-6666-7777-88888888"
}
```

For more information, see Register a Task with the Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 3: To register a Run Command task with a maintenance window

The following `register-task-with-maintenance-window` example registers a Run Command task with a maintenance window that is targeted at an instance.

```
aws ssm register-task-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-082dcd7649dee04e4" \
    --targets "Key=InstanceIds,Values=i-12344d305eEXAMPLE" \
    --service-role-arn "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/SSM" \
    --task-type "RUN_COMMAND" \
    --name "SSMInstallPowerShellModule" \
    --task-arn "AWS-InstallPowerShellModule" \
    --task-invocation-parameters "{\"RunCommand\":{\"Comment\":\"\",
\"OutputS3BucketName\":\"runcommandlogs\",\"Parameters\":{\"commands\":[\"Get-
Module -ListAvailable\"],\"executionTimeout\":[\"3600\"],\"source\":[\"https:\/
\/gallery.technet.microsoft.com\/EZOut-33ae0fb7\/file\/110351\/1\/EZOut.zip\"],
\"workingDirectory\":[\"\\\\\"]},\"TimeoutSeconds\":600}}" \
    --max-concurrency 1 \
    --max-errors 1 \
    --priority 10
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTaskId":"33344444-5555-6666-7777-88888888"
}
```

For more information, see Register a Task with the Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 4: To register a Step Functions task with a maintenance window

The following `register-task-with-maintenance-window` example registers a Step Functions task with a maintenance window that is targeted at an instance.

```
aws ssm register-task-with-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-1234d787d6EXAMPLE" \
    --targets Key=WindowTargetIds,Values=12347414-69c3-49f8-95b8-ed2dcEXAMPLE \
    --task-arn arn:aws:states:us-
east-1:111222333444:stateMachine:SSMTestStateMachine \
    --service-role-arn arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/MaintenanceWindows \
    --task-type STEP_FUNCTIONS \
    --task-invocation-parameters '{"StepFunctions":{"Input":"{\"InstanceId\":
\"{{RESOURCE_ID}}\"}"}}' \
    --priority 0 \
    --max-concurrency 10 \
    --max-errors 5 \
    --name "Step_Functions_Example" \
    --description "My Step Functions Example"
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTaskId":"44444444-5555-6666-7777-88888888"
}
```

For more information, see Register a Task with the Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 5: To register a task using a maintenance windows target ID

The following `register-task-with-maintenance-window` example registers a task using a maintenance window target ID. The maintenance window target ID was in the output of the `aws ssm register-target-with-maintenance-window` command. You can also retrieve it from the output of the `aws ssm describe-maintenance-window-targets` command.

```
aws ssm register-task-with-maintenance-window \
    --targets "Key=WindowTargetIds,Values=350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c9EXAMPLE" \
    --task-arn "AWS-RunShellScript" \
    --service-role-arn "arn:aws:iam::111222333444:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole" \
    --window-id "mw-ab12cd34eEXAMPLE" \
    --task-type "RUN_COMMAND" \
```

```
    --task-parameters  "{\"commands\":{\"Values\":[\"df\"]}}" \
    --max-concurrency 1 \
    --max-errors 1 \
    --priority 10
```

Output:

```
{
    "WindowTaskId":"33344444-5555-6666-7777-88888888"
}
```

For more information, see Register a Task with the Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example registers a task with a maintenance window using an instance ID. The output is the Task ID.

```
$parameters = @{}
$parameterValues = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression
$parameterValues.Values = @("Install")
$parameters.Add("Operation", $parameterValues)

Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
 -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
 -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "AWS-RunShellScript" -Target
 @{ Key="InstanceIds";Values="i-0000293ffd8c57862" } -TaskType "RUN_COMMAND" -
Priority 10 -TaskParameter $parameters
```

Output:

```
f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

Example 2: This example registers a task with a maintenance window using a target ID. The output is the Task ID.

```
$parameters = @{}
$parameterValues = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression
$parameterValues.Values = @("Install")
$parameters.Add("Operation", $parameterValues)

register-ssmtaskwithmaintenancewindow -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
 -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
 -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "AWS-RunShellScript" -Target
 @{ Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c985838f6" } -
TaskType "RUN_COMMAND" -Priority 10 -TaskParameter $parameters
```

Output:

```
f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

Example 3: This example creates a parameter object for the run command document `AWS-RunPowerShellScript` and creates a task with given maintenance window using target ID. The return output is the task ID.

```
$parameters =
 [Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,Collections.Generic.List[String]]]::new()
$parameters.Add("commands",@("ipconfig","dir env:\computername"))
$parameters.Add("executionTimeout",@(3600))

$props = @{
    WindowId = "mw-0123e4cce56ff78ae"
    ServiceRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
    MaxConcurrency = 1
    MaxError = 1
    TaskType = "RUN_COMMAND"
    TaskArn = "AWS-RunPowerShellScript"
    Target =
 @{Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="fe1234ea-56d7-890b-12f3-456b789bee0f"}
    Priority = 1
    RunCommand_Parameter = $parameters
    Name = "set-via-cmdlet"
}

Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow @props
```

Output:

```
f1e2ef34-5678-12e3-456a-12334c5c6cbe
```

Example 4: This example registers an AWS Systems Manager Automation task by using a document named `Create-Snapshots`.

```
$automationParameters = @{}
$automationParameters.Add( "instanceId", @("{{ TARGET_ID }}") )
$automationParameters.Add( "AutomationAssumeRole",
 @("{arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AutomationRole}") )
$automationParameters.Add( "SnapshotTimeout", @("PT20M") )
Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId mw-123EXAMPLE456`
    -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MW-Role"`
    -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "CreateVolumeSnapshots"`
    -Target @{ Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="4b5acdf4-946c-4355-
bd68-4329a43a5fd1" }`
    -TaskType "AUTOMATION"`
    -Priority 4`
    -Automation_DocumentVersion '$DEFAULT' -Automation_Parameter
 $automationParameters -Name "Create-Snapshots"
```

- For API details, see RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a task with a maintenance window using an instance ID. The output is the Task ID.

```
$parameters = @{}
$parameterValues = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression
$parameterValues.Values = @("Install")
$parameters.Add("Operation", $parameterValues)

Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
 -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
 -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "AWS-RunShellScript" -Target
 @{ Key="InstanceIds";Values="i-0000293ffd8c57862" } -TaskType "RUN_COMMAND" -
Priority 10 -TaskParameter $parameters
```

Output:

```
f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

Example 2: This example registers a task with a maintenance window using a target ID. The output is the Task ID.

```
$parameters = @{}
$parameterValues = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression
$parameterValues.Values = @("Install")
$parameters.Add("Operation", $parameterValues)

register-ssmtaskwithmaintenancewindow -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
 -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
 -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "AWS-RunShellScript" -Target
 @{ Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c985838f6" } -
TaskType "RUN_COMMAND" -Priority 10 -TaskParameter $parameters
```

Output:

```
f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

Example 3: This example creates a parameter object for the run command document `AWS-RunPowerShellScript` and creates a task with given maintenance window using target ID. The return output is the task ID.

```
$parameters =
 [Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,Collections.Generic.List[String]]]::new()
$parameters.Add("commands",@("ipconfig","dir env:\computername"))
$parameters.Add("executionTimeout",@(3600))

$props = @{
    WindowId = "mw-0123e4cce56ff78ae"
    ServiceRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
    MaxConcurrency = 1
    MaxError = 1
    TaskType = "RUN_COMMAND"
    TaskArn = "AWS-RunPowerShellScript"
    Target =
 @{Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="fe1234ea-56d7-890b-12f3-456b789bee0f"}
    Priority = 1
    RunCommand_Parameter = $parameters
```

```
    Name = "set-via-cmdlet"
}

Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow @props
```

Output:

```
f1e2ef34-5678-12e3-456a-12334c5c6cbe
```

Example 4: This example registers an AWS Systems Manager Automation task by using a document named `Create-Snapshots`.

```
$automationParameters = @{}
$automationParameters.Add( "instanceId", @("{{ TARGET_ID }}") )
$automationParameters.Add( "AutomationAssumeRole",
 @("{arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AutomationRole}") )
$automationParameters.Add( "SnapshotTimeout", @("PT20M") )
Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId mw-123EXAMPLE456`
    -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MW-Role"`
    -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "CreateVolumeSnapshots"`
    -Target @{ Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="4b5acdf4-946c-4355-
bd68-4329a43a5fd1" }`
    -TaskType "AUTOMATION"`
    -Priority 4`
    -Automation_DocumentVersion '$DEFAULT' -Automation_Parameter
 $automationParameters -Name "Create-Snapshots"
```

- For API details, see RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RemoveTagsFromResource` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RemoveTagsFromResource`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To remove a tag from a patch baseline

The following `remove-tags-from-resource` example removes tags from a patch baseline.

```
aws ssm remove-tags-from-resource \
    --resource-type "PatchBaseline" \
    --resource-id "pb-0123456789abcdef0" \
    --tag-keys "Region"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tagging AWS Resources in the *AWS General Reference*.

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromResource in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example removes a tag from a maintenance window. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -TagKey "Production"
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a tag from a maintenance window. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -TagKey "Production"
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use SendCommand with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `SendCommand`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To run a command on one or more remote instances

The following send-command example runs an echo command on a target instance.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --document-name "AWS-RunShellScript" \
    --parameters 'commands=["echo HelloWorld"]' \
    --targets "Key=instanceids,Values=i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --comment "echo HelloWorld"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Command": {
        "CommandId": "92853adf-ba41-4cd6-9a88-142d1EXAMPLE",
        "DocumentName": "AWS-RunShellScript",
        "DocumentVersion": "",
        "Comment": "echo HelloWorld",
        "ExpiresAfter": 1550181014.717,
        "Parameters": {
            "commands": [
                "echo HelloWorld"
            ]
        },
        "InstanceIds": [
            "i-0f00f008a2dcbefe2"
        ],
        "Targets": [],
        "RequestedDateTime": 1550173814.717,
        "Status": "Pending",
        "StatusDetails": "Pending",
        "OutputS3BucketName": "",
        "OutputS3KeyPrefix": "",
        "MaxConcurrency": "50",
        "MaxErrors": "0",
        "TargetCount": 1,
        "CompletedCount": 0,
```

```
        "ErrorCount": 0,
        "DeliveryTimedOutCount": 0,
        "ServiceRole": "",
        "NotificationConfig": {
            "NotificationArn": "",
            "NotificationEvents": [],
            "NotificationType": ""
        },
        "CloudWatchOutputConfig": {
            "CloudWatchLogGroupName": "",
            "CloudWatchOutputEnabled": false
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Examle 2: To get IP information about an instance

The following `send-command` example retrieves the IP information about an instance.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --instance-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --document-name "AWS-RunShellScript" \
    --comment "IP config" \
    --parameters "commands=ifconfig"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 3: To run a command on instances with specific tags

The following `send-command` example runs a command on instances that have the tag key "ENV" and the value "Dev".

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --targets "Key=tag:ENV,Values=Dev" \
    --document-name "AWS-RunShellScript" \
    --parameters "commands=ifconfig"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 4: To run a command that sends SNS notifications

The following send-command example runs a command that sends SNS notifications for all notification events and the Command notification type.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --instance-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --document-name "AWS-RunShellScript" \
    --comment "IP config" \
    --parameters "commands=ifconfig" \
    --service-role-arn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/SNS_Role" \
    --notification-config "NotificationArn=arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:123456789012:SNSTopicName,NotificationEvents=All,NotificationType=Command"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 5: To run a command that outputs to S3 and CloudWatch

The following send-command example runs a command that outputs command details to an S3 bucket and to a CloudWatch Logs log group.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --instance-ids "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --document-name "AWS-RunShellScript" \
    --comment "IP config" \
    --parameters "commands=ifconfig" \
    --output-s3-bucket-name "s3-bucket-name" \
    --output-s3-key-prefix "runcommand" \
    --cloud-watch-output-
config "CloudWatchOutputEnabled=true,CloudWatchLogGroupName=CWLGroupName"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 6: To run commands on multiple instances with different tags

The following send-command example runs a command on instances with two different tag keys and values.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --document-name "AWS-RunPowerShellScript" \
    --parameters commands=["echo helloWorld"] \
    --targets Key=tag:Env,Values=Dev Key=tag:Role,Values=WebServers
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 7: To target multiple instances with the same tag key

The following send-command example runs a command on instances that have the same tag key but with different values.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --document-name "AWS-RunPowerShellScript" \
    --parameters commands=["echo helloWorld"] \
    --targets Key=tag:Env,Values=Dev,Test
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Running Commands Using Systems Manager Run Command in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 8: To run a command that uses a shared document

The following send-command example runs a shared document on a target instance.

```
aws ssm send-command \
    --document-name "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-1:123456789012:document/ExampleDocument"
 \
    --targets "Key=instanceids,Values=i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

See example 1 for sample output.

For more information, see Using shared SSM documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Sends a SSM command to a managed node asynchronously.
    *
    * @param documentName The name of the document to use.
    * @param instanceId The ID of the instance to send the command to.
    * @return The command ID.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates asynchronous requests to send a SSM command to a
managed node.
    * It waits until the document is active, sends the command, and checks the
command execution status.
    */
   public String sendSSMCommand(String documentName, String instanceId) throws
InterruptedException, SsmException {
       // Before we use Document to send a command - make sure it is active.
       CompletableFuture<Void> documentActiveFuture =
CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
           boolean isDocumentActive = false;
           DescribeDocumentRequest request = DescribeDocumentRequest.builder()
                   .name(documentName)
                   .build();

           while (!isDocumentActive) {
               CompletableFuture<DescribeDocumentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeDocument(request);
               String documentStatus =
response.join().document().statusAsString();
```

```
                if (documentStatus.equals("Active")) {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is active and ready to
use.");
                    isDocumentActive = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is not active. Status: "
+ documentStatus);
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(5000);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(e);
                    }
                }
            }
        });

        documentActiveFuture.join();

        // Create the SendCommandRequest.
        SendCommandRequest commandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .documentName(documentName)
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .build();

        // Send the command.
        CompletableFuture<SendCommandResponse> commandFuture =
getAsyncClient().sendCommand(commandRequest);
        final String[] commandId = {null};

        commandFuture.whenComplete((commandResponse, ex) -> {
            if (commandResponse != null) {
                commandId[0] = commandResponse.command().commandId();
                System.out.println("Command ID: " + commandId[0]);

                // Wait for the command execution to complete.
                GetCommandInvocationRequest invocationRequest =
GetCommandInvocationRequest.builder()
                        .commandId(commandId[0])
                        .instanceId(instanceId)
                        .build();

                try {
                    System.out.println("Wait 5 secs");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);
```

```
                    // Retrieve the command execution details.
                    CompletableFuture<GetCommandInvocationResponse>
invocationFuture = getAsyncClient().getCommandInvocation(invocationRequest);
                    invocationFuture.whenComplete((commandInvocationResponse,
invocationEx) -> {
                        if (commandInvocationResponse != null) {
                            // Check the status of the command execution.
                            CommandInvocationStatus status =
commandInvocationResponse.status();
                            if (status == CommandInvocationStatus.SUCCESS) {
                                System.out.println("Command execution
successful");
                            } else {
                                System.out.println("Command execution failed.
Status: " + status);
                            }
                        } else {
                            Throwable invocationCause = (invocationEx instanceof
CompletionException) ? invocationEx.getCause() : invocationEx;
                            throw new CompletionException(invocationCause);
                        }
                    }).join();
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException(e);
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw (SsmException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        return commandId[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendCommandCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Send an SSM command to a managed node.
 * @param {{ documentName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ documentName }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new SendCommandCommand({
        DocumentName: documentName,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Command sent successfully.");
    return { Success: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ValidationError") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide a valid document name?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example runs an echo command on a target instance.

```
Send-SSMCommand -DocumentName "AWS-RunPowerShellScript" -Parameter @{commands =
 "echo helloWorld"} -Target @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : d8d190fc-32c1-4d65-a0df-ff5ff3965524
Comment            :
CompletedCount     : 0
DocumentName       : AWS-RunPowerShellScript
ErrorCount         : 0
ExpiresAfter       : 3/7/2017 10:48:37 PM
InstanceIds        : {}
MaxConcurrency     : 50
MaxErrors          : 0
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
OutputS3BucketName :
OutputS3KeyPrefix  :
OutputS3Region     :
Parameters         : {[commands,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
RequestedDateTime  : 3/7/2017 9:48:37 PM
ServiceRole        :
Status             : Pending
StatusDetails      : Pending
TargetCount        : 0
Targets            : {instanceids}
```

Example 2: This example shows how to run a command that accepts nested parameters.

```
Send-SSMCommand -DocumentName "AWS-RunRemoteScript" -Parameter
 @{ sourceType="GitHub";sourceInfo='{"owner": "me","repository": "amazon-
ssm","path": "Examples/Install-Win32OpenSSH"}'; "commandLine"=".\Install-
Win32OpenSSH.ps1"} -InstanceId i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example runs an echo command on a target instance.

```
Send-SSMCommand -DocumentName "AWS-RunPowerShellScript" -Parameter @{commands =
 "echo helloWorld"} -Target @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : d8d190fc-32c1-4d65-a0df-ff5ff3965524
Comment            :
CompletedCount     : 0
DocumentName       : AWS-RunPowerShellScript
ErrorCount         : 0
ExpiresAfter       : 3/7/2017 10:48:37 PM
InstanceIds        : {}
MaxConcurrency     : 50
MaxErrors          : 0
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
OutputS3BucketName :
OutputS3KeyPrefix  :
OutputS3Region     :
Parameters         : {[commands,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
RequestedDateTime  : 3/7/2017 9:48:37 PM
ServiceRole        :
Status             : Pending
StatusDetails      : Pending
TargetCount        : 0
Targets            : {instanceids}
```

Example 2: This example shows how to run a command that accepts nested parameters.

```
Send-SSMCommand -DocumentName "AWS-RunRemoteScript" -Parameter
 @{ sourceType="GitHub";sourceInfo='{"owner": "me","repository": "amazon-
ssm","path": "Examples/Install-Win32OpenSSH"}'; "commandLine"=".\Install-
Win32OpenSSH.ps1"} -InstanceId i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def send_command(self, instance_ids):
        """
        Sends a command to one or more instances.

        :param instance_ids: The IDs of the instances to send the command to.
        :return: The ID of the command.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=instance_ids, DocumentName=self.name,
 TimeoutSeconds=3600
            )
            return response["Command"]["CommandId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send command to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartAutomationExecution` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartAutomationExecution`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To execute an automation document

The following `start-automation-execution` example runs an Automation document.

```
aws ssm start-automation-execution \
    --document-name "AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi" \
    --parameters "AutomationAssumeRole=arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
SSMAutomationRole,SourceAmiId=ami-EXAMPLE,IamInstanceProfileName=EC2InstanceRole"
```

Output:

```
{
  "AutomationExecutionId": "4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-0a1b2EXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Running an Automation Workflow Manually in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To run a shared automation document

The following `start-automation-execution` example runs a shared Automation document.

```
aws ssm start-automation-execution \
    --document-name "arn:aws:ssm:us-east-1:123456789012:document/ExampleDocument"
```

Output:

```
{
  "AutomationExecutionId": "4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-0a1b2EXAMPLE"
}
```

For more information, see Using shared SSM documents in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see StartAutomationExecution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example runs a document specifying an Automation role, an AMI source ID, and an Amazon EC2 instance role.

```
Start-SSMAutomationExecution -DocumentName AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi -
Parameter @{'AutomationAssumeRole'='arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
SSMAutomationRole';'SourceAmiId'='ami-
f173cc91';'InstanceIamRole'='EC2InstanceRole'}
```

Output:

```
3a532a4f-0382-11e7-9df7-6f11185f6dd1
```

- For API details, see StartAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example runs a document specifying an Automation role, an AMI source ID, and an Amazon EC2 instance role.

```
Start-SSMAutomationExecution -DocumentName AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi -
Parameter @{'AutomationAssumeRole'='arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
```

```
SSMAutomationRole';'SourceAmiId'='ami-
f173cc91';'InstanceIamRole'='EC2InstanceRole'}
```

Output:

```
3a532a4f-0382-11e7-9df7-6f11185f6dd1
```

- For API details, see StartAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StartSession` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartSession`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To start a Session Manager session

This `start-session` example establishes a connection with an instance for a Session Manager session. Note that this interactive command requires the Session Manager plugin to be installed on the client machine making the call.

```
aws ssm start-session \
    --target "i-1234567890abcdef0"
```

Output:

```
Starting session with SessionId: Jane-Roe-07a16060613c408b5
```

Example 2: To start a Session Manager session using SSH

This `start-session` example establishes a connection with an instance for a Session Manager session using SSH. Note that this interactive command requires the Session Manager plugin to be installed on the client machine making the call, and that the command uses the default user on the instance, such as `ec2-user` for EC2 instances for Linux.

```
ssh -i /path/my-key-pair.pem ec2-user@i-02573cafcfEXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
Starting session with SessionId: ec2-user-07a16060613c408b5
```

For more information, see Start a Session and Install the Session Manager Plugin for the AWS CLI in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see StartSession in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example initiates a connection to a target for a Session Manager session, enabling port forwarding.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-064578e5e7454488f' -DocumentName 'AWS-
StartPortForwardingSession' -Parameter @{ localPortNumber = '8080'; portNumber =
 '80' }
```

Output:

```
SessionId    StreamUrl
----------    ----------
random-id0    wss://ssmmessages.amazonaws.com/v1/data-channel/random-id
```

- For API details, see StartSession in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example initiates a connection to a target for a Session Manager session, enabling port forwarding. Note: You need to add Region parameter if not already set using AWSCredentials.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-064578e5e7454488f' -DocumentName 'AWS-
StartPortForwardingSession' -Parameter @{ localPortNumber = '8080'; portNumber =
 '80' } -Region 'us-west-1'
```

Output:

```
Starting session with SessionId: testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy
Port 8080 opened for sessionId testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy.
Waiting for connections...
```

Example 2: This example creates an interactive session with a specified instance for a Session Manager session.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-1234567890abcdef0' -Region 'us-west-1'
```

Output:

```
Starting session with SessionId : testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.



Install the latest PowerShell for new features and improvements!


PS C:\Windows\system32> whoami
ec2amaz-fnsdrwv\ec2-test-user
PS C:\Windows\system32>
```

Example 3: This example creates a session without connecting to it and returns the SessionId, StreamUrl, and TokenValue properties required to connect to the session.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-1234567890abcdef0' -Region 'us-west-1' -
DisablePluginInvocation
```

Output:

```
SessionId        : testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy
StreamUrl        : {StreamUrl value redacted}
TokenValue       : {Token value redacted}
ContentLength    : 1207
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see StartSession in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StopAutomationExecution` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StopAutomationExecution`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To stop an automation execution

The following `stop-automation-execution` example stops an Automation document.

```
aws ssm stop-automation-execution
    --automation-execution-id "4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-0a1b2EXAMPLE"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Running an Automation Workflow Manually in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see StopAutomationExecution in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example stops an Automation Execution. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Stop-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId "4105a4fc-
f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909"
```

- For API details, see StopAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example stops an Automation Execution. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Stop-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId "4105a4fc-
f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909"
```

- For API details, see StopAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateAssociation` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAssociation`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update a document association

The following `update-association` example updates an association with a new document version.

```
aws ssm update-association \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab" \
    --document-version "\$LATEST"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
        "AssociationVersion": "2",
        "Date": 1550508093.293,
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1550508106.596,
        "Overview": {
            "Status": "Pending",
            "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
        },
        "DocumentVersion": "$LATEST",
        "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Key": "tag:Name",
                "Values": [
                    "Linux"
                ]
            }
        ],
```

```
        "LastExecutionDate": 1550508094.879,
        "LastSuccessfulExecutionDate": 1550508094.879
    }
}
```

For more information, see Editing and creating a new version of an association in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

Example 2: To update the schedule expression of an association

The following `update-association` example updates the schedule expression for the specified association.

```
aws ssm update-association \
    --association-id "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab" \
    --schedule-expression "cron(0 0 0/4 1/1 * ? *)"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Name": "AWS-HelloWorld",
        "AssociationVersion": "2",
        "Date": "2021-02-08T13:54:19.203000-08:00",
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": "2021-06-29T11:51:07.933000-07:00",
        "Overview": {
            "Status": "Pending",
            "DetailedStatus": "Creating"
        },
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Key": "aws:NoOpAutomationTag",
                "Values": [
                    "AWS-NoOpAutomationTarget-Value"
                ]
            }
        ],
        "ScheduleExpression": "cron(0 0 0/4 1/1 * ? *)",
        "LastExecutionDate": "2021-06-26T19:00:48.110000-07:00",
        "ApplyOnlyAtCronInterval": false
```

```
    }
}
```

For more information, see Editing and creating a new version of an association in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAssociation in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates an association with a new document version.

```
Update-SSMAssociation -AssociationId "93285663-92df-44cb-9f26-2292d4ecc439" -
DocumentVersion "1"
```

Output:

```
Name                   : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId             :
Date                   : 3/1/2017 6:22:21 PM
Status.Name            :
Status.Date            :
Status.Message         :
Status.AdditionalInfo  :
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates an association with a new document version.

```
Update-SSMAssociation -AssociationId "93285663-92df-44cb-9f26-2292d4ecc439" -
DocumentVersion "1"
```

Output:

```
Name                   : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId             :
Date                   : 3/1/2017 6:22:21 PM
Status.Name            :
```

```
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateAssociationStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateAssociationStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the association status

The following `update-association-status` example updates the association status of the association between an instance and a document.

```
aws ssm update-association-status \
    --name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" \
    --instance-id "i-1234567890abcdef0" \
    --association-
status "Date=1424421071.939,Name=Pending,Message=temp_status_change,AdditionalInfo=Additi
Config-Needed"
```

Output:

```
{
    "AssociationDescription": {
        "Name": "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent",
        "InstanceId": "i-1234567890abcdef0",
        "AssociationVersion": "1",
        "Date": 1550507529.604,
        "LastUpdateAssociationDate": 1550507806.974,
        "Status": {
            "Date": 1424421071.0,
            "Name": "Pending",
            "Message": "temp_status_change",
            "AdditionalInfo": "Additional-Config-Needed"
        },
        "Overview": {
```

```
            "Status": "Success",
            "AssociationStatusAggregatedCount": {
                "Success": 1
            }
        },
        "DocumentVersion": "$DEFAULT",
        "AssociationId": "8dfe3659-4309-493a-8755-0123456789ab",
        "Targets": [
            {
                "Key": "InstanceIds",
                "Values": [
                    "i-1234567890abcdef0"
                ]
            }
        ],
        "LastExecutionDate": 1550507808.0,
        "LastSuccessfulExecutionDate": 1550507808.0
    }
}
```

For more information, see Working with associations in Systems Manager in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateAssociationStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the association status of the association between an instance and a configuration document.

```
Update-SSMAssociationStatus -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" -InstanceId
 "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -AssociationStatus_Date "2015-02-20T08:31:11Z"
 -AssociationStatus_Name "Pending" -AssociationStatus_Message
 "temporary_status_change" -AssociationStatus_AdditionalInfo "Additional-Config-
Needed"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
```

```
Date                   : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name            : Pending
Status.Date            : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message         : temporary_status_change
Status.AdditionalInfo : Additional-Config-Needed
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssociationStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the association status of the association between an instance and a configuration document.

```
Update-SSMAssociationStatus -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" -InstanceId
 "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -AssociationStatus_Date "2015-02-20T08:31:11Z"
 -AssociationStatus_Name "Pending" -AssociationStatus_Message
 "temporary_status_change" -AssociationStatus_AdditionalInfo "Additional-Config-
Needed"
```

Output:

```
Name                   : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId             : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Date                   : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name            : Pending
Status.Date            : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message         : temporary_status_change
Status.AdditionalInfo : Additional-Config-Needed
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssociationStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateDocument` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateDocument`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a new version of a document

The following `update-document` example creates a new version of a document when run on a Windows computer. The document specified by `--document` must be in JSON format. Note that `file://` must be referenced followed by the path of the content file. Because of the $ at the beginning of the `--document-version` parameter, On Windows you must surround the value with double quotes. On Linux, MacOS, or at a PowerShell prompt, you must surround the value with single quotes.

Windows version:

```
aws ssm update-document \
    --name "RunShellScript" \
    --content "file://RunShellScript.json" \
    --document-version "$LATEST"
```

Linux/Mac version:

```
aws ssm update-document \
    --name "RunShellScript" \
    --content "file://RunShellScript.json" \
    --document-version '$LATEST'
```

Output:

```
{
  "DocumentDescription": {
      "Status": "Updating",
      "Hash": "f775e5df4904c6fa46686c4722fae9de1950dace25cd9608ff8d622046b68d9b",
      "Name": "RunShellScript",
      "Parameters": [
          {
              "Type": "StringList",
              "Name": "commands",
              "Description": "(Required) Specify a shell script or a command to
 run."
          }
      ],
      "DocumentType": "Command",
      "PlatformTypes": [
          "Linux"
      ],
      "DocumentVersion": "2",
      "HashType": "Sha256",
```

```
        "CreatedDate": 1487899655.152,
        "Owner": "809632081692",
        "SchemaVersion": "2.0",
        "DefaultVersion": "1",
        "LatestVersion": "2",
        "Description": "Run an updated script"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocument in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This creates a new version of a document with the updated contents of the json file you specify. The document must be in JSON format. You can obtain the document version with the "Get-SSMDocumentVersionList" cmdlet.

```
Update-SSMDocument -Name RunShellScript -DocumentVersion "1" -Content (Get-
Content -Raw "c:\temp\RunShellScript.json")
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 3/1/2017 2:59:17 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 2
Hash            :
 1d5ce820e999ff051eb4841ed887593daf77120fd76cae0d18a53cc42e4e22c1
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 2
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 809632081692
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Updating
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This creates a new version of a document with the updated contents of the json file you specify. The document must be in JSON format. You can obtain the document version with the "Get-SSMDocumentVersionList" cmdlet.

```
Update-SSMDocument -Name RunShellScript -DocumentVersion "1" -Content (Get-
Content -Raw "c:\temp\RunShellScript.json")
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 3/1/2017 2:59:17 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 2
Hash            :
 1d5ce820e999ff051eb4841ed887593daf77120fd76cae0d18a53cc42e4e22c1
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 2
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 809632081692
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Updating
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the default version of a document

The following `update-document-default-version` example updates the default version of a Systems Manager document.

```
aws ssm update-document-default-version \
    --name "Example" \
    --document-version "2"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Description": {
        "Name": "Example",
        "DefaultVersion": "2"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Writing SSM Document Content in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This updates the default version of a document. You can obtain the available document versions with the "Get-SSMDocumentVersionList" cmdlet.

```
Update-SSMDocumentDefaultVersion -Name "RunShellScript" -DocumentVersion "2"
```

Output:

```
DefaultVersion Name
-------------- ----
2              RunShellScript
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This updates the default version of a document. You can obtain the available document versions with the "Get-SSMDocumentVersionList" cmdlet.

```
Update-SSMDocumentDefaultVersion -Name "RunShellScript" -DocumentVersion "2"
```

Output:

```
DefaultVersion Name
-------------- ----
2              RunShellScript
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateMaintenanceWindow` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateMaintenanceWindow`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update a maintenance window

The following `update-maintenance-window` example updates the name of a maintenance window.

```
aws ssm update-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-1a2b3c4d5e6f7g8h9" \
    --name "My-Renamed-MW"
```

Output:

```
{
    "Cutoff": 1,
    "Name": "My-Renamed-MW",
    "Schedule": "cron(0 16 ? * TUE *)",
    "Enabled": true,
    "AllowUnassociatedTargets": true,
    "WindowId": "mw-1a2b3c4d5e6f7g8h9",
    "Duration": 4
}
```

Example 2: To disable a maintenance window

The following `update-maintenance-window` example disables a maintenance window.

```
aws ssm update-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-1a2b3c4d5e6f7g8h9" \
    --no-enabled
```

Example 3: To enable a maintenance window

The following `update-maintenance-window` example enables a maintenance window.

```
aws ssm update-maintenance-window \
    --window-id "mw-1a2b3c4d5e6f7g8h9" \
    --enabled
```

For more information, see Update a Maintenance Window (AWS CLI) in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param id The ID of the maintenance window to update.
     * @param name The new name for the maintenance window.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update an SSM maintenance
 window.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a success message.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
```

```
   public void updateSSMMaintenanceWindow(String id, String name) throws
SsmException {
       UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest updateRequest =
UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .windowId(id)
               .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
               .duration(24)
               .enabled(true)
               .name(name)
               .schedule("cron(0 0 ? * MON *)")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().updateMaintenanceWindow(updateRequest);
       future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               System.out.println("The SSM maintenance window was successfully
updated");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
               if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                   throw new CompletionException(cause);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException(cause);
               }
           }
       }).join();
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Update an SSM maintenance window.
 * @param {{ windowId: string, allowUnassociatedTargets?: boolean, duration?:
 number, enabled?: boolean, name?: string, schedule?: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  windowId,
  allowUnassociatedTargets = undefined, //Allow the maintenance window to run on
 managed nodes, even if you haven't registered those nodes as targets.
  duration = undefined, //The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
  enabled = undefined,
  name = undefined,
  schedule = undefined, //The schedule of the maintenance window in the form of a
 cron or rate expression.
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const { opsItemArn, opsItemId } = await client.send(
      new UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
        WindowId: windowId,
        AllowUnassociatedTargets: allowUnassociatedTargets,
        Duration: duration,
        Enabled: enabled,
        Name: name,
        Schedule: schedule,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Maintenance window updated.");
    return { OpsItemArn: opsItemArn, OpsItemId: opsItemId };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ValidationError") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Are these values correct?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the name of a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Name "My-Renamed-
MW"
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 2: This example enables a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Enabled $true
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 3: This example disables a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Enabled $false
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
```

```
Duration                  : 2
Enabled                   : False
Name                      : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                  : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                  : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the name of a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Name "My-Renamed-
MW"
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 2: This example enables a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Enabled $true
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 3: This example disables a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Enabled $false
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : False
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)
```

```
    def update(
        self, name, enabled, schedule, duration, cutoff,
allow_unassociated_targets
    ):
        """
        Update an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param enabled: Whether the maintenance window is enabled to run on
managed nodes.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
managed nodes, even
                                            if you haven't registered those nodes
as targets.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_maintenance_window(
                WindowId=self.window_id,
                Name=name,
                Enabled=enabled,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Updated maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to update maintenance
window %s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateManagedInstanceRole` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateManagedInstanceRole`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update the IAM role of a managed instance

The following `update-managed-instance-role` example updates the IAM instance profile of a managed instance.

```
aws ssm update-managed-instance-role \
    --instance-id "mi-08ab247cdfEXAMPLE" \
    --iam-role "ExampleRole"
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Step 4: Create an IAM Instance Profile for Systems Manager in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateManagedInstanceRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example updates the role of a managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Update-SSMManagedInstanceRole -InstanceId "mi-08ab247cdf1046573" -IamRole
 "AutomationRole"
```

- For API details, see UpdateManagedInstanceRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the role of a managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Update-SSMManagedInstanceRole -InstanceId "mi-08ab247cdf1046573" -IamRole
 "AutomationRole"
```

- For API details, see UpdateManagedInstanceRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `UpdateOpsItem` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateOpsItem`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Learn the basics

CLI

AWS CLI

To update an OpsItem

The following `update-ops-item` example updates the description, priority, and category for an OpsItem. In addition, the command specifies an SNS topic where the notifications are sent when this OpsItem is edited or changed.

```
aws ssm update-ops-item \
    --ops-item-id "oi-287b5EXAMPLE" \
    --description "Primary OpsItem for failover event 2020-01-01-fh398yf" \
    --priority 2 \
    --category "Security" \
```

```
    --notifications "Arn=arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:111222333444:my-us-east-2-topic"
```

Output:

```
This command produces no output.
```

For more information, see Working with OpsItems in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Resolves an AWS SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
 *
 * @param opsID The ID of the OpsItem to resolve.
 * <p>
 * This method initiates an asynchronous request to resolve an SSM OpsItem.
 * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
 */
public void resolveOpsItem(String opsID) {
    UpdateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = UpdateOpsItemRequest.builder()
            .opsItemId(opsID)
            .status(OpsItemStatus.RESOLVED)
            .build();

    CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
        getAsyncClient().updateOpsItem(opsItemRequest)
                .thenAccept(response -> {
                    System.out.println("OpsItem resolved successfully.");
                })
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    throw new CompletionException(ex);
                }).join();
```

```
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
 ex.getCause() : ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
 cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
 ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UpdateOpsItemCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Update an SSM OpsItem.
 * @param {{ opsItemId: string, status?: OpsItemStatus }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  opsItemId,
```

```
  status = undefined, // The OpsItem status. Status can be Open, In Progress, or
 Resolved
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new UpdateOpsItemCommand({
        OpsItemId: opsItemId,
        Status: status,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Ops item updated.");
    return { Success: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "OpsItemLimitExceededException"
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `Couldn't create ops item because you have exceeded your open OpsItem
 limit. ${caught.message}.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def update(self, title=None, description=None, status=None):
        """
        Update an OpsItem.

        :param title: The new OpsItem title.
        :param description: The new OpsItem description.
        :param status: The new OpsItem status.
        :return:
        """
        args = dict(OpsItemId=self.id)
        if title is not None:
            args["Title"] = title
        if description is not None:
            args["Description"] = description
        if status is not None:
            args["Status"] = status
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_ops_item(**args)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdatePatchBaseline` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdatePatchBaseline`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To update a patch baseline

The following `update-patch-baseline` example adds the specified two patches as rejected and one patch as approved to the specified patch baseline.

```
aws ssm update-patch-baseline \
        --baseline-id "pb-0123456789abcdef0" \
        --rejected-patches "KB2032276" "MS10-048" \
        --approved-patches "KB2124261"
```

Output:

```
{
    "BaselineId": "pb-0123456789abcdef0",
    "Name": "WindowsPatching",
    "OperatingSystem": "WINDOWS",
    "GlobalFilters": {
        "PatchFilters": []
    },
    "ApprovalRules": {
        "PatchRules": [
            {
                "PatchFilterGroup": {
                    "PatchFilters": [
                        {
                            "Key": "PRODUCT",
                            "Values": [
                                "WindowsServer2016"
```

```
                            ]
                        }
                    ]
                },
                "ComplianceLevel": "CRITICAL",
                "ApproveAfterDays": 0,
                "EnableNonSecurity": false
            }
        ]
    },
    "ApprovedPatches": [
        "KB2124261"
    ],
    "ApprovedPatchesComplianceLevel": "UNSPECIFIED",
    "ApprovedPatchesEnableNonSecurity": false,
    "RejectedPatches": [
        "KB2032276",
        "MS10-048"
    ],
    "RejectedPatchesAction": "ALLOW_AS_DEPENDENCY",
    "CreatedDate": 1550244180.465,
    "ModifiedDate": 1550244180.465,
    "Description": "Patches for Windows Servers",
    "Sources": []
}
```

Example 2: To rename a patch baseline

The following `update-patch-baseline` example renames the specified patch baseline.

```
aws ssm update-patch-baseline \
    --baseline-id "pb-0713accee01234567" \
    --name "Windows-Server-2012-R2-Important-and-Critical-Security-Updates"
```

For more information, see Update or Delete a Patch Baseline <https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/patch-baseline-update-or-delete.html>`__ in the *AWS Systems Manager User Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdatePatchBaseline in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds two patches as rejected and one patch as approved to an existing patch baseline.

```
Update-SSMPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639" -RejectedPatch
 "KB2032276","MS10-048" -ApprovedPatch "KB2124261"
```

Output:

```
ApprovalRules   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRuleGroup
ApprovedPatches : {KB2124261}
BaselineId      : pb-03da896ca3b68b639
CreatedDate     : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Description     : Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
GlobalFilters   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup
ModifiedDate    : 3/3/2017 5:22:10 PM
Name            : Production-Baseline
RejectedPatches : {KB2032276, MS10-048}
```

- For API details, see UpdatePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds two patches as rejected and one patch as approved to an existing patch baseline.

```
Update-SSMPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639" -RejectedPatch
 "KB2032276","MS10-048" -ApprovedPatch "KB2124261"
```

Output:

```
ApprovalRules   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRuleGroup
ApprovedPatches : {KB2124261}
BaselineId      : pb-03da896ca3b68b639
CreatedDate     : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Description     : Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
GlobalFilters   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup
```

```
ModifiedDate    : 3/3/2017 5:22:10 PM
Name            : Production-Baseline
RejectedPatches : {KB2032276, MS10-048}
```

- For API details, see UpdatePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Textract with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Textract Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Textract.
- **Amazon Textract API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Textract actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs
    - Use AnalyzeDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use DetectDocumentText with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use GetDocumentAnalysis with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartDocumentAnalysis with an AWS SDK or CLI
    - Use StartDocumentTextDetection with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs

- Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
- Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK
- Get started with Amazon Textract document analysis using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Textract with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs
  - Use AnalyzeDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DetectDocumentText with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetDocumentAnalysis with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartDocumentAnalysis with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartDocumentTextDetection with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Textract actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Textract API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Textract API Reference.

Examples

- Use AnalyzeDocument with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DetectDocumentText with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetDocumentAnalysis with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartDocumentAnalysis with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use StartDocumentTextDetection with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `AnalyzeDocument` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `AnalyzeDocument`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To analyze text in a document

The following `analyze-document` example shows how to analyze text in a document.

Linux/macOS:

```
aws textract analyze-document \
    --document '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"bucket","Name":"document"}}' \
    --feature-types '["TABLES","FORMS"]'
```

Windows:

```
aws textract analyze-document \
    --document "{\"S3Object\":{\"Bucket\":\"bucket\",\"Name\":\"document\"}}" \
    --feature-types "[\"TABLES\",\"FORMS\"]" \
    --region region-name
```

Output:

```
{
    "Blocks": [
        {
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 1.0,
                    "Top": 0.0,
                    "Left": 0.0,
                    "Height": 1.0
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Y": 0.0,
                        "X": 0.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.0,
                        "X": 1.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 1.0,
                        "X": 1.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 1.0,
                        "X": 0.0
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Relationships": [
                {
                    "Type": "CHILD",
                    "Ids": [
                        "87586964-d50d-43e2-ace5-8a890657b9a0",
                        "a1e72126-21d9-44f4-a8d6-5c385f9002ba",
                        "e889d012-8a6b-4d2e-b7cd-7a8b327d876a"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "BlockType": "PAGE",
            "Id": "c2227f12-b25d-4e1f-baea-1ee180d926b2"
        }
    ],
    "DocumentMetadata": {
        "Pages": 1
    }
}
```

For more information, see Analyzing Document Text with Amazon Textract in the *Amazon Textract Developers Guide*

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.AnalyzeDocumentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.FeatureType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.AnalyzeDocumentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Block;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class AnalyzeDocument {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sourceDoc>\s
```

```
                Where:
                    sourceDoc - The path where the document is located (must be
an image, for example, C:/AWS/book.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sourceDoc = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        analyzeDoc(textractClient, sourceDoc);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static void analyzeDoc(TextractClient textractClient, String
sourceDoc) {
        try {
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(new File(sourceDoc));
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            // Get the input Document object as bytes
            Document myDoc = Document.builder()
                    .bytes(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            List<FeatureType> featureTypes = new ArrayList<FeatureType>();
            featureTypes.add(FeatureType.FORMS);
            featureTypes.add(FeatureType.TABLES);

            AnalyzeDocumentRequest analyzeDocumentRequest =
AnalyzeDocumentRequest.builder()
                    .featureTypes(featureTypes)
                    .document(myDoc)
                    .build();

            AnalyzeDocumentResponse analyzeDocument =
textractClient.analyzeDocument(analyzeDocumentRequest);
```

```
            List<Block> docInfo = analyzeDocument.blocks();
            Iterator<Block> blockIterator = docInfo.iterator();

            while (blockIterator.hasNext()) {
                Block block = blockIterator.next();
                System.out.println("The block type is " +
 block.blockType().toString());
            }

        } catch (TextractException | FileNotFoundException e) {

            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource
```

```
    def analyze_file(
        self, feature_types, *, document_file_name=None, document_bytes=None
    ):
        """
        Detects text and additional elements, such as forms or tables, in a local
image
        file or from in-memory byte data.
        The image must be in PNG or JPG format.

        :param feature_types: The types of additional document features to
detect.
        :param document_file_name: The name of a document image file.
        :param document_bytes: In-memory byte data of a document image.
        :return: The response from Amazon Textract, including a list of blocks
                 that describe elements detected in the image.
        """
        if document_file_name is not None:
            with open(document_file_name, "rb") as document_file:
                document_bytes = document_file.read()
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.analyze_document(
                Document={"Bytes": document_bytes}, FeatureTypes=feature_types
            )
            logger.info("Detected %s blocks.", len(response["Blocks"]))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Detects text and additional elements, such as forms or tables,"
   "in a local image file or from in-memory byte data."
   "The image must be in PNG or JPG format."


   "Create ABAP objects for feature type."
   "Add TABLES to return information about the tables."
   "Add FORMS to return detected form data."
   "To perform both types of analysis, add TABLES and FORMS to FeatureTypes."

   DATA(lt_featuretypes) = VALUE /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w=>tt_featuretypes(
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'FORMS' ) )
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'TABLES' ) ) ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_document) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocument( io_s3object = lo_s3object ).

   "Analyze document stored in Amazon S3."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_tex->analyzedocument(      "oo_result is returned for
testing purposes."
         io_document        = lo_document
         it_featuretypes    = lt_featuretypes ).
       LOOP AT oo_result->get_blocks( ) INTO DATA(lo_block).
         IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
           MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
```

```
          ENDIF.
        ENDLOOP.
        MESSAGE 'Analyze document completed.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texhlquotaexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'Human loop quota exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
        MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.

      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `DetectDocumentText` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DetectDocumentText`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To detect text in a document

The following `detect-document-text` The following example shows how to detect text in a document.

Linux/macOS:

```
aws textract detect-document-text \
    --document '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"bucket","Name":"document"}}'
```

Windows:

```
aws textract detect-document-text \
    --document "{\"S3Object\":{\"Bucket\":\"bucket\",\"Name\":\"document\"}}" \
    --region region-name
```

Output:

```
{
    "Blocks": [
        {
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 1.0,
                    "Top": 0.0,
                    "Left": 0.0,
                    "Height": 1.0
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.0,
                        "X": 0.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.0,
                        "X": 1.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 1.0,
                        "X": 1.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 1.0,
                        "X": 0.0
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Relationships": [
                {
```

```
                    "Type": "CHILD",
                    "Ids": [
                        "896a9f10-9e70-4412-81ce-49ead73ed881",
                        "0da18623-dc4c-463d-a3d1-9ac050e9e720",
                        "167338d7-d38c-4760-91f1-79a8ec457bb2"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "BlockType": "PAGE",
            "Id": "21f0535e-60d5-4bc7-adf2-c05dd851fa25"
        },
        {
            "Relationships": [
                {
                    "Type": "CHILD",
                    "Ids": [
                        "62490c26-37ea-49fa-8034-7a9ff9369c9c",
                        "1e4f3f21-05bd-4da9-ba10-15d01e66604c"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "Confidence": 89.11581420898438,
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.33642634749412537,
                    "Top": 0.17169663310050964,
                    "Left": 0.13885067403316498,
                    "Height": 0.49159330129623413
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.17169663310050964,
                        "X": 0.13885067403316498
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.17169663310050964,
                        "X": 0.47527703642845154
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.6632899641990662,
                        "X": 0.47527703642845154
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.6632899641990662,
```

```
                        "X": 0.13885067403316498
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Text": "He llo,",
            "BlockType": "LINE",
            "Id": "896a9f10-9e70-4412-81ce-49ead73ed881"
        },
        {
            "Relationships": [
                {
                    "Type": "CHILD",
                    "Ids": [
                        "19b28058-9516-4352-b929-64d7cef29daf"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "Confidence": 85.5694351196289,
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 0.33182239532470703,
                    "Top": 0.23131252825260162,
                    "Left": 0.5091826915740967,
                    "Height": 0.3766750991344452
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.23131252825260162,
                        "X": 0.5091826915740967
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.23131252825260162,
                        "X": 0.8410050868988037
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.607987642288208,
                        "X": 0.8410050868988037
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.607987642288208,
                        "X": 0.5091826915740967
                    }
                ]
            },
```

```
            "Text": "worlc",
            "BlockType": "LINE",
            "Id": "0da18623-dc4c-463d-a3d1-9ac050e9e720"
        }
    ],
    "DocumentMetadata": {
        "Pages": 1
    }
}
```

For more information, see Detecting Document Text with Amazon Textract in the *Amazon Textract Developers Guide*

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detect text from an input document.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Block;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DocumentMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectDocumentText {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sourceDoc>\s

                Where:
                    sourceDoc - The path where the document is located (must be
 an image, for example, C:/AWS/book.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sourceDoc = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectDocText(textractClient, sourceDoc);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectDocText(TextractClient textractClient, String
 sourceDoc) {
        try {
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(new File(sourceDoc));
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            // Get the input Document object as bytes.
            Document myDoc = Document.builder()
```

```
                    .bytes(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            DetectDocumentTextRequest detectDocumentTextRequest =
 DetectDocumentTextRequest.builder()
                    .document(myDoc)
                    .build();

            // Invoke the Detect operation.
            DetectDocumentTextResponse textResponse =
 textractClient.detectDocumentText(detectDocumentTextRequest);
            List<Block> docInfo = textResponse.blocks();
            for (Block block : docInfo) {
                System.out.println("The block type is " +
 block.blockType().toString());
            }

            DocumentMetadata documentMetadata = textResponse.documentMetadata();
            System.out.println("The number of pages in the document is " +
 documentMetadata.pages());

        } catch (TextractException | FileNotFoundException e) {

            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect text from a document located in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Block;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DocumentMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class DetectDocumentTextS3 {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName> <docName>\s

                Where:
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains
 the document.\s

                    docName - The document name (must be an image, i.e.,
 book.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String docName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectDocTextS3(textractClient, bucketName, docName);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectDocTextS3(TextractClient textractClient, String
 bucketName, String docName) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Object = S3Object.builder()
```

```
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(docName)
                    .build();

            // Create a Document object and reference the s3Object instance.
            Document myDoc = Document.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Object)
                    .build();

            DetectDocumentTextRequest detectDocumentTextRequest =
 DetectDocumentTextRequest.builder()
                    .document(myDoc)
                    .build();

            DetectDocumentTextResponse textResponse =
 textractClient.detectDocumentText(detectDocumentTextRequest);
            for (Block block : textResponse.blocks()) {
                System.out.println("The block type is " +
 block.blockType().toString());
            }

            DocumentMetadata documentMetadata = textResponse.documentMetadata();
            System.out.println("The number of pages in the document is " +
 documentMetadata.pages());

        } catch (TextractException e) {

            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def detect_file_text(self, *, document_file_name=None, document_bytes=None):
        """
        Detects text elements in a local image file or from in-memory byte data.
        The image must be in PNG or JPG format.

        :param document_file_name: The name of a document image file.
        :param document_bytes: In-memory byte data of a document image.
        :return: The response from Amazon Textract, including a list of blocks
                 that describe elements detected in the image.
        """
        if document_file_name is not None:
            with open(document_file_name, "rb") as document_file:
                document_bytes = document_file.read()
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.detect_document_text(
                Document={"Bytes": document_bytes}
            )
            logger.info("Detected %s blocks.", len(response["Blocks"]))
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Detects text in the input document."
   "Amazon Textract can detect lines of text and the words that make up a line
of text."
   "The input document must be in one of the following image formats: JPEG, PNG,
PDF, or TIFF."

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon S3 object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_document) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocument( io_s3object = lo_s3object ).
   "Analyze document stored in Amazon S3."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_tex->detectdocumenttext( io_document = lo_document ).
   "oo_result is returned for testing purposes."
       LOOP AT oo_result->get_blocks( ) INTO DATA(lo_block).
         IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
           MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
         ENDIF.
       ENDLOOP.
```

```
        DATA(lo_metadata) = oo_result->get_documentmetadata( ).
        MESSAGE 'The number of pages in the document is ' && lo_metadata-
>ask_pages( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Detect document text completed.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
        MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `GetDocumentAnalysis` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetDocumentAnalysis`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with document analysis

CLI

AWS CLI

To get the results of asynchronous text analysis of a multi-page document

The following `get-document-analysis` example shows how to get the results of asynchronous text analysis of a multi-page document.

```
aws textract get-document-analysis \
    --job-id df7cf32ebbd2a5de113535fcf4d921926a701b09b4e7d089f3aebadb41e0712b \
    --max-results 1000
```

Output:

```
{
    "Blocks": [
        {
            "Geometry": {
                "BoundingBox": {
                    "Width": 1.0,
                    "Top": 0.0,
                    "Left": 0.0,
                    "Height": 1.0
                },
                "Polygon": [
                    {
                        "Y": 0.0,
                        "X": 0.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 0.0,
                        "X": 1.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 1.0,
                        "X": 1.0
                    },
                    {
                        "Y": 1.0,
                        "X": 0.0
                    }
                ]
            },
            "Relationships": [
                {
                    "Type": "CHILD",
                    "Ids": [
                        "75966e64-81c2-4540-9649-d66ec341cd8f",
```

```
                        "bb099c24-8282-464c-a179-8a9fa0a057f0",
                        "5ebf522d-f9e4-4dc7-bfae-a288dc094595"
                    ]
                }
            ],
            "BlockType": "PAGE",
            "Id": "247c28ee-b63d-4aeb-9af0-5f7ea8ba109e",
            "Page": 1
        }
    ],
    "NextToken": "cY1W3eTFvoB0cH7YrKVudI4Gb0H8J0xAYLo8xI/JunCIPWCthaKQ+07n/
ElyutsSy0+1VOImoTRmP1zw4P0RFtaeV9Bzhnfedpx1YqwB4xaGDA==",
    "DocumentMetadata": {
        "Pages": 1
    },
    "JobStatus": "SUCCEEDED"
}
```

For more information, see Detecting and Analyzing Text in Multi-Page Documents in the *Amazon Textract Developers Guide*

- For API details, see GetDocumentAnalysis in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
```

```
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def get_analysis_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets data for a previously started detection job that includes additional
        elements.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to retrieve.
        :return: The job data, including a list of blocks that describe elements
                 detected in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.get_document_analysis(JobId=job_id)
            job_status = response["JobStatus"]
            logger.info("Job %s status is %s.", job_id, job_status)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"Gets the results for an Amazon Textract"
"asynchronous operation that analyzes text in a document."
```

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = iv_jobid ).
"oo_result is returned for testing purposes."
        WHILE oo_result->get_jobstatus( ) <> 'SUCCEEDED'.
          IF sy-index = 10.
            EXIT.               "Maximum 300 seconds.
          ENDIF.
          WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
          oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = iv_jobid ).
        ENDWHILE.

        DATA(lt_blocks) = oo_result->get_blocks( ).
        LOOP AT lt_blocks INTO DATA(lo_block).
          IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
            MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
          ENDIF.
        ENDLOOP.
        MESSAGE 'Document analysis retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
        MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidjobidex.
        MESSAGE 'Job ID is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
        MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `StartDocumentAnalysis` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartDocumentAnalysis`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with document analysis

CLI

AWS CLI

To start analyzing text in a multi-page document

The following `start-document-analysis` example shows how to start asynchronous analysis of text in a multi-page document.

Linux/macOS:

```
aws textract start-document-analysis \
    --document-location '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"bucket","Name":"document"}}' \
    --feature-types '["TABLES","FORMS"]' \
    --notification-channel "SNSTopicArn=arn:snsTopic,RoleArn=roleArn"
```

Windows:

```
aws textract start-document-analysis \
    --document-location "{\"S3Object\":{\"Bucket\":\"bucket\",\"Name\":\"document
\"}}" \
    --feature-types "[\"TABLES\", \"FORMS\"]" \
    --region region-name \
    --notification-channel "SNSTopicArn=arn:snsTopic,RoleArn=roleArn"
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "df7cf32ebbd2a5de113535fcf4d921926a701b09b4e7d089f3aebadb41e0712b"
}
```

For more information, see Detecting and Analyzing Text in Multi-Page Documents in the *Amazon Textract Developers Guide*

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.StartDocumentAnalysisRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DocumentLocation;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.StartDocumentAnalysisResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.GetDocumentAnalysisRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.GetDocumentAnalysisResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.FeatureType;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */
public class StartDocumentAnalysis {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName> <docName>\s
```

```
                Where:
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains
the document.\s
                    docName - The document name (must be an image, for example,
book.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String docName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String jobId = startDocAnalysisS3(textractClient, bucketName, docName);
        System.out.println("Getting results for job " + jobId);
        String status = getJobResults(textractClient, jobId);
        System.out.println("The job status is " + status);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static String startDocAnalysisS3(TextractClient textractClient, String
bucketName, String docName) {
        try {
            List<FeatureType> myList = new ArrayList<>();
            myList.add(FeatureType.TABLES);
            myList.add(FeatureType.FORMS);

            S3Object s3Object = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(docName)
                    .build();

            DocumentLocation location = DocumentLocation.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Object)
                    .build();

            StartDocumentAnalysisRequest documentAnalysisRequest =
StartDocumentAnalysisRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .documentLocation(location)
                    .featureTypes(myList)
                    .build();

            StartDocumentAnalysisResponse response =
textractClient.startDocumentAnalysis(documentAnalysisRequest);

            // Get the job ID
            String jobId = response.jobId();
            return jobId;

        } catch (TextractException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    private static String getJobResults(TextractClient textractClient, String
jobId) {
        boolean finished = false;
        int index = 0;
        String status = "";

        try {
            while (!finished) {
                GetDocumentAnalysisRequest analysisRequest =
GetDocumentAnalysisRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(jobId)
                        .maxResults(1000)
                        .build();

                GetDocumentAnalysisResponse response =
textractClient.getDocumentAnalysis(analysisRequest);
                status = response.jobStatus().toString();

                if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                    finished = true;
                else {
                    System.out.println(index + " status is: " + status);
                    Thread.sleep(1000);
                }
                index++;
            }
```

```
            return status;

        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start an asynchronous job to analyze a document.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def start_analysis_job(
        self,
```

```
        bucket_name,
        document_file_name,
        feature_types,
        sns_topic_arn,
        sns_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts an asynchronous job to detect text and additional elements, such
as
        forms or tables, in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket. Textract
publishes
        a notification to the specified Amazon SNS topic when the job completes.
        The image must be in PNG, JPG, or PDF format.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
image.
        :param document_file_name: The name of the document image stored in
Amazon S3.
        :param feature_types: The types of additional document features to
detect.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an Amazon SNS
topic
                               where job completion notification is published.
        :param sns_role_arn: The ARN of an AWS Identity and Access Management
(IAM)
                              role that can be assumed by Textract and grants
permission
                              to publish to the Amazon SNS topic.
        :return: The ID of the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.start_document_analysis(
                DocumentLocation={
                    "S3Object": {"Bucket": bucket_name, "Name":
document_file_name}
                },
                NotificationChannel={
                    "SNSTopicArn": sns_topic_arn,
                    "RoleArn": sns_role_arn,
                },
                FeatureTypes=feature_types,
            )
            job_id = response["JobId"]
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Started text analysis job %s on %s.", job_id, document_file_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't analyze text in %s.", document_file_name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_id
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Starts the asynchronous analysis of an input document for relationships"
   "between detected items such as key-value pairs, tables, and selection
elements."

   "Create ABAP objects for feature type."
   "Add TABLES to return information about the tables."
   "Add FORMS to return detected form data."
   "To perform both types of analysis, add TABLES and FORMS to FeatureTypes."

   DATA(lt_featuretypes) = VALUE /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w=>tt_featuretypes(
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'FORMS' ) )
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'TABLES' ) ) ).
   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon S3 object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).
   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_documentlocation) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocumentlocation( io_s3object =
lo_s3object ).
```

```
    "Start async document analysis."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_tex->startdocumentanalysis(      "oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes."
          io_documentlocation     = lo_documentlocation
          it_featuretypes         = lt_featuretypes ).
        DATA(lv_jobid) = oo_result->get_jobid( ).

        MESSAGE 'Document analysis started.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texidempotentprmmis00.
        MESSAGE 'Idempotent parameter mismatch exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
        MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
        MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texlimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'An Amazon Textract service limit was exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `StartDocumentTextDetection` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartDocumentTextDetection`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To start detecting text in a multi-page document

The following `start-document-text-detection` example shows how to start asynchronous detection of text in a multi-page document.

Linux/macOS:

```
aws textract start-document-text-detection \
        --document-location '{"S3Object":{"Bucket":"bucket","Name":"document"}}'
 \
        --notification-channel "SNSTopicArn=arn:snsTopic,RoleArn=roleARN"
```

Windows:

```
aws textract start-document-text-detection \
    --document-location "{\"S3Object\":{\"Bucket\":\"bucket\",\"Name\":\"document
\"}}" \
    --region region-name \
    --notification-channel "SNSTopicArn=arn:snsTopic,RoleArn=roleArn"
```

Output:

```
{
    "JobId": "57849a3dc627d4df74123dca269d69f7b89329c870c65bb16c9fd63409d200b9"
}
```

For more information, see Detecting and Analyzing Text in Multi-Page Documents in the *Amazon Textract Developers Guide*

- For API details, see StartDocumentTextDetection in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start an asynchronous job to detect text in a document.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def start_detection_job(
        self, bucket_name, document_file_name, sns_topic_arn, sns_role_arn
    ):
        """
        Starts an asynchronous job to detect text elements in an image stored in
 an
        Amazon S3 bucket. Textract publishes a notification to the specified
 Amazon SNS
        topic when the job completes.
        The image must be in PNG, JPG, or PDF format.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
 image.
        :param document_file_name: The name of the document image stored in
 Amazon S3.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an Amazon SNS
 topic
```

```
                                 where the job completion notification is published.
        :param sns_role_arn: The ARN of an AWS Identity and Access Management
(IAM)
                                role that can be assumed by Textract and grants
permission
                                to publish to the Amazon SNS topic.
        :return: The ID of the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.start_document_text_detection(
                DocumentLocation={
                    "S3Object": {"Bucket": bucket_name, "Name":
document_file_name}
                },
                NotificationChannel={
                    "SNSTopicArn": sns_topic_arn,
                    "RoleArn": sns_role_arn,
                },
            )
            job_id = response["JobId"]
            logger.info(
                "Started text detection job %s on %s.", job_id,
document_file_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text in %s.", document_file_name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_id
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentTextDetection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Starts the asynchronous detection of text in a document."
   "Amazon Textract can detect lines of text and the words that make up a line
of text."

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon S3 object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).
   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_documentlocation) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocumentlocation( io_s3object =
lo_s3object ).
   "Start document analysis."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_tex->startdocumenttextdetection( io_documentlocation =
lo_documentlocation ).
       DATA(lv_jobid) = oo_result->get_jobid( ).             "oo_result is
returned for testing purposes."
       MESSAGE 'Document analysis started.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
       MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texidempotentprmmis00.
       MESSAGE 'Idempotent parameter mismatch exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
       MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
       MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
       MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texlimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'An Amazon Textract service limit was exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentTextDetection in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Textract using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Textract with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Textract or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Create an Amazon Textract explorer application
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
- Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK
- Get started with Amazon Textract document analysis using an AWS SDK

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code examples show how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

The following code examples show how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

.NET

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into

the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });
```

```
  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );
```

```
  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into

the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Detect entities in text extracted from an image using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in text extracted by Amazon Textract from an image that is stored in Amazon S3.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) in a Jupyter notebook to detect entities in text that is extracted from an image. This example uses Amazon Textract to extract text from an image stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in the extracted text.

This example is a Jupyter notebook and must be run in an environment that can host notebooks. For instructions on how to run the example using Amazon SageMaker AI, see the directions in TextractAndComprehendNotebook.ipynb.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Textract

Get started with Amazon Textract document analysis using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Start asynchronous analysis.
- Get document analysis.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Create ABAP objects for feature type."
   "Add TABLES to return information about the tables."
   "Add FORMS to return detected form data."
   "To perform both types of analysis, add TABLES and FORMS to FeatureTypes."

   DATA(lt_featuretypes) = VALUE /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w=>tt_featuretypes(
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'FORMS' ) )
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'TABLES' ) ) ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
```

```
   DATA(lo_documentlocation) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocumentlocation( io_s3object =
lo_s3object ).

   "Start document analysis."
   TRY.
       DATA(lo_start_result) = lo_tex->startdocumentanalysis(
         io_documentlocation     = lo_documentlocation
         it_featuretypes         = lt_featuretypes ).
       MESSAGE 'Document analysis started.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
       MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texidempotentprmmis00.
       MESSAGE 'Idempotent parameter mismatch exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
       MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
       MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
       MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texlimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'An Amazon Textract service limit was exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
       MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Get job ID from the output."
   DATA(lv_jobid) = lo_start_result->get_jobid( ).

   "Wait for job to complete."
   oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = lv_jobid ).     "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
   WHILE oo_result->get_jobstatus( ) <> 'SUCCEEDED'.
     IF sy-index = 10.
       EXIT.               "Maximum 300 seconds."
```

```
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
      oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = lv_jobid ).
    ENDWHILE.

    DATA(lt_blocks) = oo_result->get_blocks( ).
    LOOP AT lt_blocks INTO DATA(lo_block).
      IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
        MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
      ENDIF.
    ENDLOOP.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - GetDocumentAnalysis
  - StartDocumentAnalysis

Code examples for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Transcribe with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Transcribe.
- **Amazon Transcribe API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Transcribe actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs

- Actions for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListTranscriptionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use ListVocabularies with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartMedicalTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use StartTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use UpdateVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Scenarios for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs
  - Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
  - Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK
  - Create and refine an Amazon Transcribe custom vocabulary using an AWS SDK
  - Transcribe audio and get job data with Amazon Transcribe using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Transcribe with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use DeleteVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
  - Use GetVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Use ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTranscriptionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListVocabularies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartMedicalTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Transcribe actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Transcribe API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Transcribe API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use DeleteVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use GetVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListTranscriptionJobs with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use ListVocabularies with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartMedicalTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use StartTranscriptionJob with an AWS SDK or CLI
- Use UpdateVocabulary with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `CreateVocabulary` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateVocabulary`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a custom vocabulary using a list of phrases. Custom vocabularies
    /// improve transcription accuracy for one or more specific words.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="phrases">Phrases to use in the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name for the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> CreateCustomVocabulary(LanguageCode
languageCode,
        List<string> phrases, string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.CreateVocabularyAsync(
            new CreateVocabularyRequest
            {
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
                Phrases = phrases,
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a custom vocabulary

The following `create-vocabulary` example creates a custom vocabulary. To create a custom vocabulary, you must have created a text file with all the terms that you want to transcribe more accurately. For vocabulary-file-uri, specify the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) URI of that text file. For language-code, specify a language code corresponding to the language of your custom vocabulary. For vocabulary-name, specify what you want to call your custom vocabulary.

```
aws transcribe create-vocabulary \
    --language-code language-code \
    --vocabulary-name cli-vocab-example \
    --vocabulary-file-uri s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/the-text-file-for-the-custom-vocabulary.txt
```

Output:

```
{
    "VocabularyName": "cli-vocab-example",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "VocabularyState": "PENDING"
}
```

For more information, see Custom Vocabularies in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateVocabulary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None,
 table_uri=None
):
    """
    Creates a custom vocabulary that can be used to improve the accuracy of
    transcription jobs. This function returns as soon as the vocabulary
 processing
    is started. Call get_vocabulary to get the current status of the vocabulary.
    The vocabulary is ready to use when its status is 'READY'.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the custom vocabulary.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
                          For example, en-US or nl-NL.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the
 vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in
 the
                      vocabulary.
    :return: Information about the newly created vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.create_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Created custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.exception("Couldn't create custom vocabulary %s.",
 vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see CreateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a medical transcription job. Also deletes the transcript
 associated with the job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">Name of the medical transcription job to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await
 _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                MedicalTranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a medical transcription job

The following `delete-medical-transcription-job` example deletes a medical transcription job.

```
aws transcribe delete-medical-transcription-job \
    --medical-transcription-job-name medical-transcription-job-name
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
```

```
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

Delete a medical transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  MedicalTranscriptionJobName: "MEDICAL_JOB_NAME", // For example,
 'medical_transciption_demo'
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - deleted");
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `DeleteTranscriptionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTranscriptionJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a transcription job. Also deletes the transcript associated with
the job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">Name of the transcription job to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await
_amazonTranscribeService.DeleteTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new DeleteTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete one of your transcription jobs

The following `delete-transcription-job` example deletes one of your transcription jobs.

```
aws transcribe delete-transcription-job \
    --transcription-job-name your-transcription-job
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DeleteTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  TranscriptionJobName: "JOB_NAME", // Required. For example, 'transciption_demo'
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new DeleteTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - deleted");
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a transcription job. This also deletes the transcript associated with
    the job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_transcription_job(TranscriptionJobName=job_name)
```

```
        logger.info("Deleted job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete job %s.", job_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `DeleteVocabulary` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteVocabulary`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an existing custom vocabulary.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name of the vocabulary to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCustomVocabulary(string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteVocabularyAsync(
            new DeleteVocabularyRequest
            {
```

```
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a custom vocabulary

The following `delete-vocabulary` example deletes a custom vocabulary.

```
aws transcribe delete-vocabulary \
    --vocabulary-name vocabulary-name
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Custom Vocabularies in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteVocabulary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a custom vocabulary.
```

```
    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Deleted vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetTranscriptionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetTranscriptionJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary
- Transcribe audio and get job data

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details about a transcription job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the transcription job.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A TranscriptionJob instance with information on the requested
 job.</returns>
    public async Task<TranscriptionJob> GetTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.GetTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new GetTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a specific transcription job

The following `get-transcription-job` example gets information about a specific transcription job. To access the transcription results, use the TranscriptFileUri parameter. Use the MediaFileUri parameter to see which audio file you transcribed with this job. You can use the Settings object to see the optional features you've enabled in the transcription job.

```
aws transcribe get-transcription-job \
    --transcription-job-name your-transcription-job
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "your-transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "MediaSampleRateHertz": 48000,
        "MediaFormat": "mp4",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.file-
extension"
```

```
        },
        "Transcript": {
            "TranscriptFileUri": "https://Amazon-S3-file-location-of-
transcription-output"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-18T22:27:23.970000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-18T22:27:23.948000+00:00",
        "CompletionTime": "2020-09-18T22:28:21.197000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "ChannelIdentification": false,
            "ShowAlternatives": false
        },
        "IdentifyLanguage": true,
        "IdentifiedLanguageScore": 0.8672199249267578
    }
}
```

For more information, see Getting Started (AWS Command Line Interface) in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetTranscriptionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets details about a transcription job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The retrieved transcription job.
    """
    try:
        response = transcribe_client.get_transcription_job(
```

```
            TranscriptionJobName=job_name
        )
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Got job %s.", job["TranscriptionJobName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job
```

- For API details, see GetTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `GetVocabulary` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `GetVocabulary`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a custom vocabulary.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<VocabularyState> GetCustomVocabulary(string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.GetVocabularyAsync(
            new GetVocabularyRequest()
            {
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To get information about a custom vocabulary

The following `get-vocabulary` example gets information on a previously created custom vocabulary.

```
aws transcribe get-vocabulary \
    --vocabulary-name cli-vocab-1
```

Output:

```
{
    "VocabularyName": "cli-vocab-1",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "VocabularyState": "READY",
    "LastModifiedTime": "2020-09-19T23:22:32.836000+00:00",
    "DownloadUri": "https://link-to-download-the-text-file-used-to-create-your-
custom-vocabulary"
}
```

For more information, see Custom Vocabularies in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see GetVocabulary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets information about a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: Information about the vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.get_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Got vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List medical transcription jobs, optionally with a name filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobNameContains">Optional name filter for the medical
transcription jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of summaries about medical transcription jobs.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MedicalTranscriptionJobSummary>>
ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs(
        string? jobNameContains = null)
    {
        var response = await
_amazonTranscribeService.ListMedicalTranscriptionJobsAsync(
            new ListMedicalTranscriptionJobsRequest()
            {
                JobNameContains = jobNameContains
            });
        return response.MedicalTranscriptionJobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your medical transcription jobs

The following `list-medical-transcription-jobs` example lists the medical transcription jobs associated with your AWS account and Region. To get more information about a particular transcription job, copy the value of a MedicalTranscriptionJobName parameter in the transcription output, and specify that value for the `MedicalTranscriptionJobName` option of the `get-medical-transcription-job` command. To see more of your transcription jobs, copy the value of the NextToken parameter, run the `list-medical-transcription-jobs` command again, and specify that value in the `--next-token` option.

```
aws transcribe list-medical-transcription-jobs
```

Output:


```
{
    "NextToken": "3/PblzkiGhzjER3KHuQt2fmbPLF7cDYafjFMEoGn44ON/
gsuUSTIkGyanvRE6WMXFd/ZTEc2EZj+P9eii/
z1O2FDYli6RLI0WoRX4RwMisVrh9G0Kie0Y8ikBCdtqlZB10Wa9McC+ebOl
+LaDtZPC4u6ttoHLRlEfzqstHXSgapXg3tEBtm9piIaPB6MOM5BB6t86+qtmocTR/
qrteHZBBudhTfbCwhsxaqujHiiUvFdm3BQbKKWIW06yV9b+4f38oD2lVIan
+vfUs3gBYAl5VTDmXXzQPBQOHPjtwmFI+IWX15nSUjWuN3TUylHgPWzDaYT8qBtu0Z+3UG4V6b
+K2CC0XszXg5rBq9hYgNzy4XoFh/6s5DoSnzq49Q9xHgHdT2yBADFmvFK7myZBsj75+2vQZOSVpWUPy3WT/32zFAc
+mFYfUjtTZ8n/jq7aQEjQ42A
+X/7K6JgOcdVPtEg8PlDr5kgYYG3q3OmYXX37U3FZuJmnTI63VtIXsNnOU5eGoYObtpk00Nq9UkzgSJxqj84ZD5n
+S0EGy9ZUYBJRRcGeYUM3Q4DbSJfUwSAqcFdLIWZdp8qIREMQIBWy7BLwSdyqsQo2vRrd53hm5aWM7SVf6pPq6X/
IXR5+1eUOOD8/coaTT4ES2DerbV6RkV4o0VT1d0SdVX/
MmtkNG8nYj8PqU07w7988quh1ZP6D80veJS1q73tUUR9MjnGernW2tAnvnLNhdefBcD
+sZVfYq3iBMFY7wTy1P1G6NqW9GrYDYoX3tTPWlD7phpbVSyKrh/
PdYrps5UxnsGoA1b7L/FfAXDfUoGrGUB4N3JsPYXX9D++g+6gV1qBBs/
WfF934aKqfD6UTggm/zV3GAOWiBpfvAZRvEb924i6yGHyMC7y54O1ZAwSBupmI
+FFd13CaPO4kN1vJlth6aM5vUPXg4BpyUhtbRhwD/KxCvf9K0tLJGyL1A==",
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobSummaries": [
        {
            "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "vocabulary-dictation-medical-
transcription-job",
            "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T21:17:27.016000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-09-21T21:17:27.045000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-09-21T21:17:59.561000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "en-US",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "CUSTOMER_BUCKET",
            "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
            "Type": "DICTATION"
```

```
        },
        {
            "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "alternatives-dictation-medical-
transcription-job",
            "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T21:01:14.569000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-09-21T21:01:14.592000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-09-21T21:01:43.606000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "en-US",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "CUSTOMER_BUCKET",
            "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
            "Type": "DICTATION"
        },
        {
            "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "alternatives-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
            "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T19:09:18.171000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-09-21T19:09:18.199000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-09-21T19:10:22.516000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "en-US",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "CUSTOMER_BUCKET",
            "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
            "Type": "CONVERSATION"
        },
        {
            "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "speaker-id-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
            "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T18:43:37.157000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-09-21T18:43:37.265000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-09-21T18:44:21.192000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "en-US",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "CUSTOMER_BUCKET",
            "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
            "Type": "CONVERSATION"
        },
        {
            "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "multichannel-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
            "CreationTime": "2020-09-20T23:46:44.053000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-09-20T23:46:44.081000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-09-20T23:47:35.851000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "en-US",
```

```
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "CUSTOMER_BUCKET",
            "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
            "Type": "CONVERSATION"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/transcribe/latest/dg/batch-med-transcription.html> in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

List medical transcription jobs.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
```

```
  MedicalTranscriptionJobName: "MEDICAL_JOB_NAME", // Required
  OutputBucketName: "OUTPUT_BUCKET_NAME", // Required
  Specialty: "PRIMARYCARE", // Required. Possible values are 'PRIMARYCARE'
  Type: "JOB_TYPE", // Required. Possible values are 'CONVERSATION' and
 'DICTATION'
  LanguageCode: "LANGUAGE_CODE", // For example, 'en-US'
  MediaFormat: "SOURCE_FILE_FORMAT", // For example, 'wav'
  Media: {
    MediaFileUri: "SOURCE_FILE_LOCATION",
    // The S3 object location of the input media file. The URI must be in the
 same region
    // as the API endpoint that you are calling.For example,
    // "https://transcribe-demo.s3-REGION.amazonaws.com/hello_world.wav"
  },
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - put", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `ListTranscriptionJobs` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListTranscriptionJobs`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List transcription jobs, optionally with a name filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobNameContains">Optional name filter for the transcription
jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of transcription job summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TranscriptionJobSummary>>
ListTranscriptionJobs(string? jobNameContains = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.ListTranscriptionJobsAsync(
            new ListTranscriptionJobsRequest()
            {
                JobNameContains = jobNameContains
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your transcription jobs

The following `list-transcription-jobs` example lists the transcription jobs associated with your AWS account and Region.

```
aws transcribe list-transcription-jobs
```

Output:

```
{
    "NextToken": "NextToken",
    "TranscriptionJobSummaries": [
        {
            "TranscriptionJobName": "speak-id-job-1",
            "CreationTime": "2020-08-17T21:06:15.391000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-08-17T21:06:15.416000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-08-17T21:07:05.098000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "SERVICE_BUCKET"
        },
        {
            "TranscriptionJobName": "job-1",
            "CreationTime": "2020-08-17T20:50:24.207000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-08-17T20:50:24.230000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-08-17T20:52:18.737000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "SERVICE_BUCKET"
        },
        {
            "TranscriptionJobName": "sdk-test-job-4",
            "CreationTime": "2020-08-17T20:32:27.917000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-08-17T20:32:27.956000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-08-17T20:33:15.126000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "SERVICE_BUCKET"
        },
        {
            "TranscriptionJobName": "Diarization-speak-id",
            "CreationTime": "2020-08-10T22:10:09.066000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-08-10T22:10:09.116000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-08-10T22:26:48.172000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "SERVICE_BUCKET"
        },
```

```
        {
            "TranscriptionJobName": "your-transcription-job-name",
            "CreationTime": "2020-07-29T17:45:09.791000+00:00",
            "StartTime": "2020-07-29T17:45:09.826000+00:00",
            "CompletionTime": "2020-07-29T17:46:20.831000+00:00",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "TranscriptionJobStatus": "COMPLETED",
            "OutputLocationType": "SERVICE_BUCKET"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Getting Started (AWS Command Line Interface) in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class ListTranscriptionJobs {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        TranscribeClient transcribeClient = TranscribeClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

            listTranscriptionJobs(transcribeClient);
        }

        public static void listTranscriptionJobs(TranscribeClient
 transcribeClient) {
            ListTranscriptionJobsRequest listJobsRequest =
 ListTranscriptionJobsRequest.builder()
                .build();
```

```
transcribeClient.listTranscriptionJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest).stream()
               .flatMap(response ->
response.transcriptionJobSummaries().stream())
               .forEach(jobSummary -> {
                   System.out.println("Job Name: " +
jobSummary.transcriptionJobName());
                   System.out.println("Job Status: " +
jobSummary.transcriptionJobStatus());
                   System.out.println("Output Location: " +
jobSummary.outputLocationType());
                   // Add more information as needed

                   // Retrieve additional details for the job if necessary
                   GetTranscriptionJobResponse jobDetails =
transcribeClient.getTranscriptionJob(
                       GetTranscriptionJobRequest.builder()

.transcriptionJobName(jobSummary.transcriptionJobName())
                           .build());

                   // Display additional details
                   System.out.println("Language Code: " +
jobDetails.transcriptionJob().languageCode());
                   System.out.println("Media Format: " +
jobDetails.transcriptionJob().mediaFormat());
                   // Add more details as needed

                   System.out.println("--------------");
               });
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List transcription jobs.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js

import { ListTranscriptionJobsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  JobNameContains: "KEYWORD", // Not required. Returns only transcription
  // job names containing this string
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new ListTranscriptionJobsCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success", data.TranscriptionJobSummaries);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
```

```
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_jobs(job_filter, transcribe_client):
    """
    Lists summaries of the transcription jobs for the current AWS account.

    :param job_filter: The list of returned jobs must contain this string in
 their
                       names.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The list of retrieved transcription job summaries.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.list_transcription_jobs(JobNameContains=job_filter)
        jobs = response["TranscriptionJobSummaries"]
        next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        while next_token is not None:
            response = transcribe_client.list_transcription_jobs(
                JobNameContains=job_filter, NextToken=next_token
            )
            jobs += response["TranscriptionJobSummaries"]
            next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        logger.info("Got %s jobs with filter %s.", len(jobs), job_filter)
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.exception("Couldn't get jobs with filter %s.", job_filter)
        raise
    else:
        return jobs
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `ListVocabularies` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ListVocabularies`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List custom vocabularies for the current account. Optionally specify a
name
    /// filter and a specific state to filter the vocabularies list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="nameContains">Optional string the vocabulary name must
contain.</param>
    /// <param name="stateEquals">Optional state of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>List of information about the vocabularies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<VocabularyInfo>> ListCustomVocabularies(string?
nameContains = null,
```

```
        VocabularyState? stateEquals = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.ListVocabulariesAsync(
            new ListVocabulariesRequest()
            {
                NameContains = nameContains,
                StateEquals = stateEquals
            });
        return response.Vocabularies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListVocabularies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list your custom vocabularies

The following `list-vocabularies` example lists the custom vocabularies associated with your AWS account and Region.

```
aws transcribe list-vocabularies
```

Output:

```
{
    "NextToken": "NextToken",
    "Vocabularies": [
        {
            "VocabularyName": "ards-test-1",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-04-27T22:00:27.330000+00:00",
            "VocabularyState": "READY"
        },
        {
            "VocabularyName": "sample-test",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-04-24T23:04:11.044000+00:00",
            "VocabularyState": "READY"
```

```
        },
        {
            "VocabularyName": "CRLF-to-LF-test-3-1",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-04-24T22:12:22.277000+00:00",
            "VocabularyState": "READY"
        },
        {
            "VocabularyName": "CRLF-to-LF-test-2",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-04-24T21:53:50.455000+00:00",
            "VocabularyState": "READY"
        },
        {
            "VocabularyName": "CRLF-to-LF-1-1",
            "LanguageCode": "language-code",
            "LastModifiedTime": "2020-04-24T21:39:33.356000+00:00",
            "VocabularyState": "READY"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Custom Vocabularies in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see ListVocabularies in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_vocabularies(vocabulary_filter, transcribe_client):
    """
    Lists the custom vocabularies created for this AWS account.

    :param vocabulary_filter: The returned vocabularies must contain this string
 in
```

```
                                 their names.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The list of retrieved vocabularies.
    """
    try:
        response =
transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(NameContains=vocabulary_filter)
        vocabs = response["Vocabularies"]
        next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        while next_token is not None:
            response = transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(
                NameContains=vocabulary_filter, NextToken=next_token
            )
            vocabs += response["Vocabularies"]
            next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        logger.info(
            "Got %s vocabularies with filter %s.", len(vocabs), vocabulary_filter
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't list vocabularies with filter %s.", vocabulary_filter
        )
        raise
    else:
        return vocabs
```

- For API details, see ListVocabularies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `StartMedicalTranscriptionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start a medical transcription job for a media file. This method returns
    /// as soon as the job is started.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the medical transcription job.</
param>
    /// <param name="mediaFileUri">The URI of the media file, typically an Amazon
 S3 location.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFormat">The format of the media file.</param>
    /// <param name="outputBucketName">Location for the output, typically an
 Amazon S3 location.</param>
    /// <param name="transcriptionType">Conversation or dictation transcription
 type.</param>
    /// <returns>A MedicalTransactionJob instance with information on the new
 job.</returns>
    public async Task<MedicalTranscriptionJob> StartMedicalTranscriptionJob(
        string jobName, string mediaFileUri,
        MediaFormat mediaFormat, string outputBucketName,
 Amazon.TranscribeService.Type transcriptionType)
    {
        var response = await
 _amazonTranscribeService.StartMedicalTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                MedicalTranscriptionJobName = jobName,
                Media = new Media()
                {
                    MediaFileUri = mediaFileUri
                },
                MediaFormat = mediaFormat,
                LanguageCode =
```

```
                    LanguageCode
                        .EnUS, // The value must be en-US for medical
 transcriptions.
                OutputBucketName = outputBucketName,
                OutputKey =
                    jobName, // The value is a key used to fetch the output of
 the transcription.
                Specialty = Specialty.PRIMARYCARE, // The value PRIMARYCARE must
 be set.
                Type = transcriptionType
            });
        return response.MedicalTranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To transcribe a medical dictation stored as an audio file

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example transcribes an audio file. You specify the location of the transcription output in the `OutputBucketName` parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-medical-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myfile.json
```

Contents of `myfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "simple-dictation-medical-transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
    "Type": "DICTATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "simple-dictation-medical-transcription-
job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-20T00:35:22.256000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-20T00:35:22.218000+00:00",
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "DICTATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Batch Transcription Overview in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To transcribe a clinician-patient dialogue stored as an audio file

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example transcribes an audio file containing a clinician-patient dialogue. You specify the location of the transcription output in the OutputBucketName parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-medical-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mysecondfile.json
```

Contents of `mysecondfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "simple-dictation-medical-transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
    "Type": "CONVERSATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "simple-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-20T23:19:49.965000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-20T23:19:49.941000+00:00",
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "CONVERSATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Batch Transcription Overview in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To transcribe a multichannel audio file of a clinician-patient dialogue

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example transcribes the audio from each channel in the audio file and merges the separate transcriptions from each channel into a single transcription output. You specify the location of the transcription output in the `OutputBucketName` parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-medical-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mythirdfile.json
```

Contents of `mythirdfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "multichannel-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
    "Type": "CONVERSATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
        "Media": {
```

```
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
          },
          "Settings":{
            "ChannelIdentification": true
          }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "multichannel-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-20T23:46:44.081000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-20T23:46:44.053000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "ChannelIdentification": true
        },
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "CONVERSATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Channel Identification in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To transcribe an audio file of a clinician-patient dialogue and identify the speakers in the transcription output

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example transcribes an audio file and labels the speech of each speaker in the transcription output. You specify the location of the transcription output in the `OutputBucketName` parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-medical-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myfourthfile.json
```

Contents of `myfourthfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "speaker-id-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
    "Type": "CONVERSATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
    "Settings":{
        "ShowSpeakerLabels": true,
        "MaxSpeakerLabels": 2
        }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "speaker-id-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-21T18:43:37.265000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T18:43:37.157000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "ShowSpeakerLabels": true,
            "MaxSpeakerLabels": 2
        },
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "CONVERSATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Identifying Speakers in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To transcribe a medical conversation stored as an audio file with up to two transcription alternatives

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example creates up to two alternative transcriptions from a single audio file. Every transcriptions has a level of confidence associated with it. By default, Amazon Transcribe returns the transcription with the highest confidence level. You can specify that Amazon Transcribe return additional transcriptions with lower confidence levels. You specify the location of the transcription output in the `OutputBucketName` parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-medical-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myfifthfile.json
```

Contents of `myfifthfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "alternatives-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
    "Type": "CONVERSATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
        "ShowAlternatives": true,
        "MaxAlternatives": 2
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "alternatives-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-21T19:09:18.199000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T19:09:18.171000+00:00",
```

```
        "Settings": {
            "ShowAlternatives": true,
            "MaxAlternatives": 2
        },
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "CONVERSATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Alternative Transcriptions in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 6: To transcribe an audio file of a medical dictation with up to two alternative transcriptions

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example transcribes an audio file and uses a vocabulary filter to mask any unwanted words. You specify the location of the transcription output in the OutputBucketName parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-medical-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mysixthfile.json
```

Contents of `mysixthfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "alternatives-conversation-medical-
transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
    "Type": "DICTATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
          "ShowAlternatives": true,
          "MaxAlternatives": 2
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "alternatives-dictation-medical-
transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-21T21:01:14.592000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T21:01:14.569000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "ShowAlternatives": true,
            "MaxAlternatives": 2
        },
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "DICTATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Alternative Transcriptions in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 7: To transcribe an audio file of a medical dictation with increased accuracy by using a custom vocabulary

The following `start-medical-transcription-job` example transcribes an audio file and uses a medical custom vocabulary you've previously created to increase the transcription accuracy. You specify the location of the transcription output in the `OutputBucketName` parameter.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myseventhfile.json
```

Contents of `mysixthfile.json`:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "vocabulary-dictation-medical-transcription-
job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
```

```
    "Type": "DICTATION",
    "OutputBucketName":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
        "VocabularyName": "cli-medical-vocab-1"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "MedicalTranscriptionJob": {
        "MedicalTranscriptionJobName": "vocabulary-dictation-medical-
transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-21T21:17:27.045000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-21T21:17:27.016000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "VocabularyName": "cli-medical-vocab-1"
        },
        "Specialty": "PRIMARYCARE",
        "Type": "DICTATION"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Medical Custom Vocabularies in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

Start a medical transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  MedicalTranscriptionJobName: "MEDICAL_JOB_NAME", // Required
  OutputBucketName: "OUTPUT_BUCKET_NAME", // Required
  Specialty: "PRIMARYCARE", // Required. Possible values are 'PRIMARYCARE'
  Type: "JOB_TYPE", // Required. Possible values are 'CONVERSATION' and
 'DICTATION'
  LanguageCode: "LANGUAGE_CODE", // For example, 'en-US'
  MediaFormat: "SOURCE_FILE_FORMAT", // For example, 'wav'
  Media: {
    MediaFileUri: "SOURCE_FILE_LOCATION",
    // The S3 object location of the input media file. The URI must be in the
 same region
    // as the API endpoint that you are calling.For example,
    // "https://transcribe-demo.s3-REGION.amazonaws.com/hello_world.wav"
  },
```

```
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - put", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see StartMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use `StartTranscriptionJob` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StartTranscriptionJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary
- Transcribe audio and get job data

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start a transcription job for a media file. This method returns
    /// as soon as the job is started.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the transcription job.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFileUri">The URI of the media file, typically an Amazon
 S3 location.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFormat">The format of the media file.</param>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the media file, such as
 en-US.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Optional name of a custom vocabulary.</
param>
    /// <returns>A TranscriptionJob instance with information on the new job.</
returns>
    public async Task<TranscriptionJob> StartTranscriptionJob(string jobName,
 string mediaFileUri,
        MediaFormat mediaFormat, LanguageCode languageCode, string?
 vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.StartTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new StartTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName,
                Media = new Media()
                {
                    MediaFileUri = mediaFileUri
                },
                MediaFormat = mediaFormat,
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
                Settings = vocabularyName != null ? new Settings()
                {
                    VocabularyName = vocabularyName
                } : null
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To transcribe an audio file

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myfile.json
```

Contents of `myfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-simple-transcription-job",
    "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Getting Started (AWS Command Line Interface) in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 2: To transcribe a multi-channel audio file

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your multi-channel audio file.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mysecondfile.json
```

Contents of `mysecondfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-channelid-job",
    "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
```

```
    },
    "Settings":{
        "ChannelIdentification":true
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-channelid-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-
media-file-name.file-extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-17T16:07:56.817000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-17T16:07:56.784000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "ChannelIdentification": true
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Transcribing Multi-Channel Audio in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 3: To transcribe an audio file and identify the different speakers

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file and identifies the speakers in the transcription output.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mythirdfile.json
```

Contents of `mythirdfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-speakerid-job",
    "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
```

```
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
    "ShowSpeakerLabels": true,
    "MaxSpeakerLabels": 2
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-speakerid-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-
media-file-name.file-extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-17T16:22:59.696000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-17T16:22:59.676000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "ShowSpeakerLabels": true,
            "MaxSpeakerLabels": 2
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Identifying Speakers in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 4: To transcribe an audio file and mask any unwanted words in the transcription output

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file and uses a vocabulary filter you've previously created to mask any unwanted words.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myfourthfile.json
```

Contents of `myfourthfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-filter-mask-job",
    "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
    "Media": {
          "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
        "VocabularyFilterName": "your-vocabulary-filter",
        "VocabularyFilterMethod": "mask"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-filter-mask-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://Amazon-S3-Prefix/your-media-file.file-
extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-18T16:36:18.568000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-18T16:36:18.547000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "VocabularyFilterName": "your-vocabulary-filter",
            "VocabularyFilterMethod": "mask"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Filtering Transcriptions in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 5: To transcribe an audio file and remove any unwanted words in the transcription output

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file and uses a vocabulary filter you've previously created to mask any unwanted words.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
```

```
    --cli-input-json file://myfifthfile.json
```

Contents of `myfifthfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-filter-remove-job",
    "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
        "VocabularyFilterName": "your-vocabulary-filter",
        "VocabularyFilterMethod": "remove"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-filter-remove-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-
media-file-name.file-extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-18T16:36:18.568000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-18T16:36:18.547000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "VocabularyFilterName": "your-vocabulary-filter",
            "VocabularyFilterMethod": "remove"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Filtering Transcriptions in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 6: To transcribe an audio file with increased accuracy using a custom vocabulary

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file and uses a vocabulary filter you've previously created to mask any unwanted words.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mysixthfile.json
```

Contents of `mysixthfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-vocab-job",
    "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
    },
    "Settings":{
        "VocabularyName": "your-vocabulary"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-vocab-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "the-language-of-your-transcription-job",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-
media-file-name.file-extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-18T16:36:18.568000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-18T16:36:18.547000+00:00",
        "Settings": {
            "VocabularyName": "your-vocabulary"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Filtering Transcriptions in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 7: To identify the language of an audio file and transcribe it

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file and uses a vocabulary filter you've previously created to mask any unwanted words.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myseventhfile.json
```

Contents of `myseventhfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-identify-language-transcription-job",
    "IdentifyLanguage": true,
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-media-
file-name.file-extension"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-identify-language-transcription-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-prefix/your-
media-file-name.file-extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-18T22:27:23.970000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-18T22:27:23.948000+00:00",
        "IdentifyLanguage": true
    }
}
```

For more information, see Identifying the Language in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 8: To transcribe an audio file with personally identifiable information redacted

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file and redacts any personally identifiable information in the transcription output.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myeighthfile.json
```

Contents of `myeigthfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-redaction-job",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://Amazon-S3-Prefix/your-media-file.file-extension"
    },
    "ContentRedaction": {
        "RedactionOutput":"redacted",
        "RedactionType":"PII"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-redaction-job",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://Amazon-S3-Prefix/your-media-file.file-
extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-25T23:49:13.195000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-25T23:49:13.176000+00:00",
        "ContentRedaction": {
            "RedactionType": "PII",
            "RedactionOutput": "redacted"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Automatic Content Redaction in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 9: To generate a transcript with personally identifiable information (PII) redacted and an unredacted transcript

The following `start-transcription-job` example generates two transcrptions of your audio file, one with the personally identifiable information redacted, and the other without any redactions.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://myninthfile.json
```

Contents of `myninthfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-redaction-job-with-unredacted-transcript",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Media": {
          "MediaFileUri": "s3://Amazon-S3-Prefix/your-media-file.file-extension"
        },
    "ContentRedaction": {
        "RedactionOutput":"redacted_and_unredacted",
        "RedactionType":"PII"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-redaction-job-with-unredacted-transcript",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://Amazon-S3-Prefix/your-media-file.file-
extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-25T23:59:47.677000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-25T23:59:47.653000+00:00",
        "ContentRedaction": {
            "RedactionType": "PII",
            "RedactionOutput": "redacted_and_unredacted"
        }
    }
}
```

For more information, see Automatic Content Redaction in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

Example 10: To use a custom language model you've previously created to transcribe an audio file.

The following `start-transcription-job` example transcribes your audio file with a custom language model you've previously created.

```
aws transcribe start-transcription-job \
    --cli-input-json file://mytenthfile.json
```

Contents of `mytenthfile.json`:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-clm-2-job-1",
    "LanguageCode": "language-code",
    "Media": {
        "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.file-extension"
    },
    "ModelSettings": {
        "LanguageModelName":"cli-clm-2"
    }
}
```

Output:

```
{
    "TranscriptionJob": {
        "TranscriptionJobName": "cli-clm-2-job-1",
        "TranscriptionJobStatus": "IN_PROGRESS",
        "LanguageCode": "language-code",
        "Media": {
            "MediaFileUri": "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/your-audio-file.file-
extension"
        },
        "StartTime": "2020-09-28T17:56:01.835000+00:00",
        "CreationTime": "2020-09-28T17:56:01.801000+00:00",
        "ModelSettings": {
            "LanguageModelName": "cli-clm-2"
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

For more information, see Improving Domain-Specific Transcription Accuracy with Custom Language Models in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start a transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { StartTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  TranscriptionJobName: "JOB_NAME",
  LanguageCode: "LANGUAGE_CODE", // For example, 'en-US'
  MediaFormat: "SOURCE_FILE_FORMAT", // For example, 'wav'
  Media: {
    MediaFileUri: "SOURCE_LOCATION",
    // For example, "https://transcribe-demo.s3-REGION.amazonaws.com/
hello_world.wav"
  },
  OutputBucketName: "OUTPUT_BUCKET_NAME",
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new StartTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - put", data);
```

```
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def start_job(
    job_name,
    media_uri,
    media_format,
    language_code,
    transcribe_client,
    vocabulary_name=None,
):
    """
```

```
    Starts a transcription job. This function returns as soon as the job is
started.
    To get the current status of the job, call get_transcription_job. The job is
    successfully completed when the job status is 'COMPLETED'.

    :param job_name: The name of the transcription job. This must be unique for
                     your AWS account.
    :param media_uri: The URI where the audio file is stored. This is typically
                      in an Amazon S3 bucket.
    :param media_format: The format of the audio file. For example, mp3 or wav.
    :param language_code: The language code of the audio file.
                          For example, en-US or ja-JP
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param vocabulary_name: The name of a custom vocabulary to use when
transcribing
                            the audio file.
    :return: Data about the job.
    """
    try:
        job_args = {
            "TranscriptionJobName": job_name,
            "Media": {"MediaFileUri": media_uri},
            "MediaFormat": media_format,
            "LanguageCode": language_code,
        }
        if vocabulary_name is not None:
            job_args["Settings"] = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name}
        response = transcribe_client.start_transcription_job(**job_args)
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Started transcription job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't start transcription job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job
```

- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use `UpdateVocabulary` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `UpdateVocabulary`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Create and refine a custom vocabulary

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Update a custom vocabulary with new values. Update overwrites all
existing information.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the vocabulary.</param>
   /// <param name="phrases">Phrases to use in the vocabulary.</param>
   /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name for the vocabulary.</param>
   /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
   public async Task<VocabularyState> UpdateCustomVocabulary(LanguageCode
languageCode,
       List<string> phrases, string vocabularyName)
   {
       var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.UpdateVocabularyAsync(
           new UpdateVocabularyRequest()
           {
               LanguageCode = languageCode,
               Phrases = phrases,
               VocabularyName = vocabularyName
           });
       return response.VocabularyState;
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CLI

AWS CLI

To update a custom vocabulary with new terms.

The following `update-vocabulary` example overwrites the terms used to create a custom vocabulary with the new ones that you provide. Prerequisite: to replace the terms in a custom vocabulary, you need a file with new terms.

```
aws transcribe update-vocabulary \
    --vocabulary-file-uri s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/Amazon-S3-Prefix/custom-vocabulary.txt \
    --vocabulary-name custom-vocabulary \
    --language-code language-code
```

Output:

```
{
    "VocabularyName": "custom-vocabulary",
    "LanguageCode": "language",
    "VocabularyState": "PENDING"
}
```

For more information, see Custom Vocabularies in the *Amazon Transcribe Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see UpdateVocabulary in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def update_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None,
 table_uri=None
):
    """
    Updates an existing custom vocabulary. The entire vocabulary is replaced with
    the contents of the update.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to update.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the
 vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in
 the
                      vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.update_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Updated custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update custom vocabulary %s.",
 vocabulary_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Transcribe using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Transcribe with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Transcribe or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes

a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
- Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK
- Create and refine an Amazon Transcribe custom vocabulary using an AWS SDK
- Transcribe audio and get job data with Amazon Transcribe using an AWS SDK

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Convert text to speech and back to text using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file.
- Upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Transcribe to convert the audio file to text.
- Display the text.

Rust

SDK for Rust

Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file, upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Transcribe to convert that audio file to text, and display the text.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Transcribe

Create and refine an Amazon Transcribe custom vocabulary using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Upload an audio file to Amazon S3.
- Run an Amazon Transcribe job to transcribe the file and get the results.
- Create and refine a custom vocabulary to improve transcription accuracy.
- Run jobs with custom vocabularies and get the results.

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Transcribe an audio file that contains a reading of Jabberwocky by Lewis Carroll. Start by creating functions that wrap Amazon Transcribe actions.

```
def start_job(
    job_name,
    media_uri,
    media_format,
    language_code,
    transcribe_client,
    vocabulary_name=None,
):
    """
    Starts a transcription job. This function returns as soon as the job is
 started.
    To get the current status of the job, call get_transcription_job. The job is
    successfully completed when the job status is 'COMPLETED'.

    :param job_name: The name of the transcription job. This must be unique for
                     your AWS account.
    :param media_uri: The URI where the audio file is stored. This is typically
                      in an Amazon S3 bucket.
    :param media_format: The format of the audio file. For example, mp3 or wav.
    :param language_code: The language code of the audio file.
                          For example, en-US or ja-JP
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param vocabulary_name: The name of a custom vocabulary to use when
 transcribing
                             the audio file.
    :return: Data about the job.
    """
    try:
        job_args = {
```

```
            "TranscriptionJobName": job_name,
            "Media": {"MediaFileUri": media_uri},
            "MediaFormat": media_format,
            "LanguageCode": language_code,
        }
        if vocabulary_name is not None:
            job_args["Settings"] = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name}
        response = transcribe_client.start_transcription_job(**job_args)
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Started transcription job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't start transcription job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job



def get_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets details about a transcription job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The retrieved transcription job.
    """
    try:
        response = transcribe_client.get_transcription_job(
            TranscriptionJobName=job_name
        )
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Got job %s.", job["TranscriptionJobName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job



def delete_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a transcription job. This also deletes the transcript associated with
    the job.
```

```
    :param job_name: The name of the job to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_transcription_job(TranscriptionJobName=job_name)
        logger.info("Deleted job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete job %s.", job_name)
        raise



def create_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None,
 table_uri=None
):
    """
    Creates a custom vocabulary that can be used to improve the accuracy of
    transcription jobs. This function returns as soon as the vocabulary
 processing
    is started. Call get_vocabulary to get the current status of the vocabulary.
    The vocabulary is ready to use when its status is 'READY'.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the custom vocabulary.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
                          For example, en-US or nl-NL.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the
 vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in
 the
                      vocabulary.
    :return: Information about the newly created vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.create_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Created custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create custom vocabulary %s.",
 vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response



def get_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets information about a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: Information about the vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.get_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Got vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response



def update_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None,
 table_uri=None
):
    """
    Updates an existing custom vocabulary. The entire vocabulary is replaced with
    the contents of the update.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to update.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the
 vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in
 the
```

```
                        vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.update_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Updated custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update custom vocabulary %s.",
 vocabulary_name)
        raise



def list_vocabularies(vocabulary_filter, transcribe_client):
    """
    Lists the custom vocabularies created for this AWS account.

    :param vocabulary_filter: The returned vocabularies must contain this string
 in
                              their names.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The list of retrieved vocabularies.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(NameContains=vocabulary_filter)
        vocabs = response["Vocabularies"]
        next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        while next_token is not None:
            response = transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(
                NameContains=vocabulary_filter, NextToken=next_token
            )
            vocabs += response["Vocabularies"]
            next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        logger.info(
            "Got %s vocabularies with filter %s.", len(vocabs), vocabulary_filter
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
```

```
            "Couldn't list vocabularies with filter %s.", vocabulary_filter
        )
        raise
    else:
        return vocabs



def delete_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Deleted vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
```

Call the wrapper functions to transcribe audio without a custom vocabulary and then with different versions of a custom vocabulary to see improved results.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the Amazon Transcribe service."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    s3_resource = boto3.resource("s3")
    transcribe_client = boto3.client("transcribe")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Transcribe demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    bucket_name = f"jabber-bucket-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Creating bucket {bucket_name}.")
    bucket = s3_resource.create_bucket(
        Bucket=bucket_name,
```

```
        CreateBucketConfiguration={
            "LocationConstraint": transcribe_client.meta.region_name
        },
    )
    media_file_name = ".media/Jabberwocky.mp3"
    media_object_key = "Jabberwocky.mp3"
    print(f"Uploading media file {media_file_name}.")
    bucket.upload_file(media_file_name, media_object_key)
    media_uri = f"s3://{bucket.name}/{media_object_key}"

    job_name_simple = f"Jabber-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Starting transcription job {job_name_simple}.")
    start_job(
        job_name_simple,
        f"s3://{bucket_name}/{media_object_key}",
        "mp3",
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
    )
    transcribe_waiter = TranscribeCompleteWaiter(transcribe_client)
    transcribe_waiter.wait(job_name_simple)
    job_simple = get_job(job_name_simple, transcribe_client)
    transcript_simple = requests.get(
        job_simple["Transcript"]["TranscriptFileUri"]
    ).json()
    print(f"Transcript for job {transcript_simple['jobName']}:")
    print(transcript_simple["results"]["transcripts"][0]["transcript"])

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Creating a custom vocabulary that lists the nonsense words to try to "
        "improve the transcription."
    )
    vocabulary_name = f"Jabber-vocabulary-{time.time_ns()}"
    create_vocabulary(
        vocabulary_name,
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        phrases=[
            "brillig",
            "slithy",
            "borogoves",
            "mome",
            "raths",
```

```
            "Jub-Jub",
            "frumious",
            "manxome",
            "Tumtum",
            "uffish",
            "whiffling",
            "tulgey",
            "thou",
            "frabjous",
            "callooh",
            "callay",
            "chortled",
        ],
    )
    vocabulary_ready_waiter = VocabularyReadyWaiter(transcribe_client)
    vocabulary_ready_waiter.wait(vocabulary_name)

    job_name_vocabulary_list = f"Jabber-vocabulary-list-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Starting transcription job {job_name_vocabulary_list}.")
    start_job(
        job_name_vocabulary_list,
        media_uri,
        "mp3",
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        vocabulary_name,
    )
    transcribe_waiter.wait(job_name_vocabulary_list)
    job_vocabulary_list = get_job(job_name_vocabulary_list, transcribe_client)
    transcript_vocabulary_list = requests.get(
        job_vocabulary_list["Transcript"]["TranscriptFileUri"]
    ).json()
    print(f"Transcript for job {transcript_vocabulary_list['jobName']}:")
    print(transcript_vocabulary_list["results"]["transcripts"][0]["transcript"])

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Updating the custom vocabulary with table data that provides additional
"
        "pronunciation hints."
    )
    table_vocab_file = "jabber-vocabulary-table.txt"
    bucket.upload_file(table_vocab_file, table_vocab_file)
    update_vocabulary(
```

```
        vocabulary_name,
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        table_uri=f"s3://{bucket.name}/{table_vocab_file}",
    )
    vocabulary_ready_waiter.wait(vocabulary_name)

    job_name_vocab_table = f"Jabber-vocab-table-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Starting transcription job {job_name_vocab_table}.")
    start_job(
        job_name_vocab_table,
        media_uri,
        "mp3",
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        vocabulary_name=vocabulary_name,
    )
    transcribe_waiter.wait(job_name_vocab_table)
    job_vocab_table = get_job(job_name_vocab_table, transcribe_client)
    transcript_vocab_table = requests.get(
        job_vocab_table["Transcript"]["TranscriptFileUri"]
    ).json()
    print(f"Transcript for job {transcript_vocab_table['jobName']}:")
    print(transcript_vocab_table["results"]["transcripts"][0]["transcript"])

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Getting data for jobs and vocabularies.")
    jabber_jobs = list_jobs("Jabber", transcribe_client)
    print(f"Found {len(jabber_jobs)} jobs:")
    for job_sum in jabber_jobs:
        job = get_job(job_sum["TranscriptionJobName"], transcribe_client)
        print(
            f"\t{job['TranscriptionJobName']}, {job['Media']['MediaFileUri']}, "
            f"{job['Settings'].get('VocabularyName')}"
        )

    jabber_vocabs = list_vocabularies("Jabber", transcribe_client)
    print(f"Found {len(jabber_vocabs)} vocabularies:")
    for vocab_sum in jabber_vocabs:
        vocab = get_vocabulary(vocab_sum["VocabularyName"], transcribe_client)
        vocab_content = requests.get(vocab["DownloadUri"]).text
        print(f"\t{vocab['VocabularyName']} contents:")
        print(vocab_content)
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Deleting demo jobs.")
    for job_name in [job_name_simple, job_name_vocabulary_list,
job_name_vocab_table]:
        delete_job(job_name, transcribe_client)
    print("Deleting demo vocabulary.")
    delete_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client)
    print("Deleting demo bucket.")
    bucket.objects.delete()
    bucket.delete()
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateVocabulary
  - DeleteTranscriptionJob
  - DeleteVocabulary
  - GetTranscriptionJob
  - GetVocabulary
  - ListVocabularies
  - StartTranscriptionJob
  - UpdateVocabulary

Transcribe audio and get job data with Amazon Transcribe using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to:

- Start a transcription job with Amazon Transcribe.
- Wait for the job to complete.
- Get the URI where the transcript is stored.

For more information, see Getting started with Amazon Transcribe.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Transcribes a PCM file.

```
/**
 * To run this AWS code example, ensure that you have set up your development
 * environment, including your AWS credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class TranscribeStreamingDemoFile {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String args[]) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {

        final String USAGE = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <file> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    file - the location of a PCM file to transcribe. In this
 example, ensure the PCM file is 16 hertz (Hz). \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String file = args[0];
        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromFile(file)),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromFile(String file) {
        try {
            File inputFile = new File(file);
            InputStream audioStream = new FileInputStream(inputFile);
            return audioStream;

        } catch (FileNotFoundException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US)
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw.toString());
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
```

```
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully
 ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }

    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (this.currentSubscription == null) {
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                this.currentSubscription.cancel();
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024 * 1;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);
```

```
        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream
inputStream) {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];
```

```
            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

Transcribes streaming audio from your computer's microphone.

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoApp {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String[] args)
            throws URISyntaxException, ExecutionException, InterruptedException,
 LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
```

```
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException
{

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            System.exit(0);
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString())
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
```

```
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw);
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully
 ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }


    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;
        private final InputStream inputStream;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (currentSubscription == null) {
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                currentSubscription.cancel();
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
```

```
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private final ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private final AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream
inputStream) {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }
```

```
        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetTranscriptionJob
  - StartTranscriptionJob

Python

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import time
import boto3


def transcribe_file(job_name, file_uri, transcribe_client):
    transcribe_client.start_transcription_job(
        TranscriptionJobName=job_name,
        Media={"MediaFileUri": file_uri},
        MediaFormat="wav",
        LanguageCode="en-US",
    )

    max_tries = 60
    while max_tries > 0:
        max_tries -= 1
        job =
 transcribe_client.get_transcription_job(TranscriptionJobName=job_name)
        job_status = job["TranscriptionJob"]["TranscriptionJobStatus"]
        if job_status in ["COMPLETED", "FAILED"]:
            print(f"Job {job_name} is {job_status}.")
            if job_status == "COMPLETED":
                print(
                    f"Download the transcript from\n"
                    f"\t{job['TranscriptionJob']['Transcript']
['TranscriptFileUri']}."
                )
            break
        else:
            print(f"Waiting for {job_name}. Current status is {job_status}.")
        time.sleep(10)
```

```
def main():
    transcribe_client = boto3.client("transcribe")
    file_uri = "s3://test-transcribe/answer2.wav"
    transcribe_file("Example-job", file_uri, transcribe_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - GetTranscriptionJob
  - StartTranscriptionJob

Code examples for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Transcribe Streaming with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Transcribe Streaming Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Transcribe Streaming.
- **Amazon Transcribe Streaming API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Transcribe Streaming actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs
    - Use StartMedicalStreamTranscription with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartStreamTranscription with an AWS SDK
- Scenarios for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs
  - Generate a transcription of a file using an AWS SDK
  - Generate a transcription from a microphone using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Transcribe Streaming with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs
  - Use StartMedicalStreamTranscription with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartStreamTranscription with an AWS SDK

Actions for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Transcribe Streaming actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Transcribe Streaming API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Transcribe Streaming API Reference.

Examples

- Use StartMedicalStreamTranscription with an AWS SDK
- Use StartStreamTranscription with an AWS SDK

Use `StartMedicalStreamTranscription` with an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to use `StartMedicalStreamTranscription`.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
To run this AWS code example, ensure that you have set up your development
 environment, including your AWS credentials.

 For information, see this documentation topic:

 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html

This code demonstrates the process of starting a medical transcription job using
 the AWS Transcribe
Streaming service, including setting up the audio input stream, configuring the
 transcription request,
and handling the transcription response.
 */

public class TranscribeMedicalStreamingDemoApp {
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String args[])
        throws ExecutionException, InterruptedException, LineUnavailableException
 {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
            .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startMedicalStreamTranscription(getMedicalRequest(16_000),
            new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
```

```
            getMedicalResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException
{

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            throw new LineUnavailableException("The audio system microphone line
is not supported.");
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionRequest
getMedicalRequest(Integer mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
            .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString()) // For medical
transcription, EN_US is typically used.
            .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
            .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
            .specialty(Specialty.PRIMARYCARE) // Specify the medical specialty.
            .type(Type.CONVERSATION) // Set the type as CONVERSATION or
DICTATION.
            .build();
    }
```

```
    private static StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler
 getMedicalResponseHandler() {
        return StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
            .onResponse(r -> {
                System.out.println("Received Initial response");
            })
            .onError(e -> {
                System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw.toString());
            })
            .onComplete(() -> {
                System.out.println("=== All records streamed successfully ===");
            })
            .subscriber(event -> {
                List<MedicalResult> results = ((MedicalTranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                if (results.size() > 0) {
                    if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                    }
                }
            })
            .build();
    }

    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (this.currentSubscription == null) {
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
```

```
                this.currentSubscription.cancel();
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024 * 1;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream
 inputStream) {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
 positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);
            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
 audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
```

```
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartMedicalStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use `StartStreamTranscription` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartStreamTranscription`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code examples:

- Transcribe an audio file
- Transcribe audio from a microphone

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
int main() {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;

    Aws::InitAPI(options);
    {
        //TODO(User): Set to the region of your AWS account.
        const Aws::String region = Aws::Region::US_WEST_2;

        //Load a profile that has been granted AmazonTranscribeFullAccess AWS
 managed permission policy.
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration config;
#ifdef _WIN32
        // ATTENTION: On Windows with the AWS C++ SDK, this example only runs if
 the SDK is built
        // with the curl library.
        // For more information, see the accompanying ReadMe.
        // For more information, see "Building the SDK for Windows with curl".
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-cpp/v1/developer-guide/setup-
windows.html
        //TODO(User): Update to the location of your .crt file.
        config.caFile = "C:/curl/bin/curl-ca-bundle.crt";
#endif
        config.region = region;

        TranscribeStreamingServiceClient client(config);
```

```
        StartStreamTranscriptionHandler handler;
        handler.SetOnErrorCallback(
                [](const Aws::Client::AWSError<TranscribeStreamingServiceErrors>
&error) {
                        std::cerr << "ERROR: " + error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
                });
        //SetTranscriptEventCallback called for every 'chunk' of file
transcripted.
        // Partial results are returned in real time.
        handler.SetTranscriptEventCallback([](const TranscriptEvent &ev) {
                for (auto &&r: ev.GetTranscript().GetResults()) {
                    if (r.GetIsPartial()) {
                        std::cout << "[partial] ";
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout << "[Final] ";
                    }
                    for (auto &&alt: r.GetAlternatives()) {
                        std::cout << alt.GetTranscript() << std::endl;
                    }
                }
        });

        StartStreamTranscriptionRequest request;
        request.SetMediaSampleRateHertz(SAMPLE_RATE);
        request.SetLanguageCode(LanguageCode::en_US);
        request.SetMediaEncoding(
                MediaEncoding::pcm); // wav and aiff files are PCM formats.
        request.SetEventStreamHandler(handler);

        auto OnStreamReady = [](AudioStream &stream) {
                Aws::FStream file(FILE_NAME, std::ios_base::in |
std::ios_base::binary);
                if (!file.is_open()) {
                    std::cerr << "Failed to open " << FILE_NAME << '\n';
                }
                std::array<char, BUFFER_SIZE> buf;
                int i = 0;
                while (file) {
                    file.read(&buf[0], buf.size());

                    if (!file)
                        std::cout << "File: only " << file.gcount() << " could be
read"
```

```
                                << std::endl;

                    Aws::Vector<unsigned char> bits{buf.begin(), buf.end()};
                    AudioEvent event(std::move(bits));
                    if (!stream) {
                        std::cerr << "Failed to create a stream" << std::endl;
                        break;
                    }
                    //The std::basic_istream::gcount() is used to count the
 characters in the given string. It returns
                    //the number of characters extracted by the last read()
 operation.
                    if (file.gcount() > 0) {
                        if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(event)) {
                            std::cerr << "Failed to write an audio event" <<
 std::endl;
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                    else {
                        break;
                    }
                    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(
                            25)); // Slow down because we are streaming from a
 file.
                }
                if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(
                        AudioEvent())) {
                    // Per the spec, we have to send an empty event (an event
 without a payload) at the end.
                    std::cerr << "Failed to send an empty frame" << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Successfully sent the empty frame" <<
 std::endl;
                }
                stream.flush();
                stream.Close();
        };

        Aws::Utils::Threading::Semaphore signaling(0 /*initialCount*/, 1 /
*maxCount*/);
        auto OnResponseCallback = [&signaling](
                const TranscribeStreamingServiceClient * /*unused*/,
```

```
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionRequest & /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionOutcome &outcome,
                const std::shared_ptr<const Aws::Client::AsyncCallerContext> & /
*unused*/) {

                if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    std::cerr << "Transcribe streaming error "
                              << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                }

                signaling.Release();
        };

        std::cout << "Starting..." << std::endl;
        client.StartStreamTranscriptionAsync(request, OnStreamReady,
 OnResponseCallback,
                                             nullptr /*context*/);
        signaling.WaitOne(); // Prevent the application from exiting until we're
 done.
        std::cout << "Done" << std::endl;
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options);

    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoApp {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
```

```
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String[] args)
            throws URISyntaxException, ExecutionException, InterruptedException,
LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException
{

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            System.exit(0);
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }
```

```
    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
 mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString())
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw);
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully
 ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }


    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
```

```
        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (currentSubscription == null) {
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                currentSubscription.cancel();
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private final ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private final AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream
 inputStream) {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
 positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
```

```
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let client = TranscribeStreamingClient(
            config: try await
TranscribeStreamingClient.TranscribeStreamingClientConfiguration(
                region: region
            )
        )

        // Start the transcription running on the audio stream.

        let output = try await client.startStreamTranscription(
            input: StartStreamTranscriptionInput(
                audioStream: try await createAudioStream(),
                languageCode:
TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.LanguageCode(rawValue: lang),
                mediaEncoding: encoding,
                mediaSampleRateHertz: sampleRate
            )
        )
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Transcribe Streaming using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Transcribe Streaming with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Transcribe Streaming or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Generate a transcription of a file using an AWS SDK
- Generate a transcription from a microphone using an AWS SDK

Generate a transcription of a file using an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to generate a transcription of a source audio file using Amazon Transcribe streaming.

C++

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
int main() {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;

    Aws::InitAPI(options);
    {
        //TODO(User): Set to the region of your AWS account.
        const Aws::String region = Aws::Region::US_WEST_2;
```

```
        //Load a profile that has been granted AmazonTranscribeFullAccess AWS
 managed permission policy.
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration config;
#ifdef _WIN32
        // ATTENTION: On Windows with the AWS C++ SDK, this example only runs if
 the SDK is built
        // with the curl library.
        // For more information, see the accompanying ReadMe.
        // For more information, see "Building the SDK for Windows with curl".
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-cpp/v1/developer-guide/setup-
windows.html
        //TODO(User): Update to the location of your .crt file.
        config.caFile = "C:/curl/bin/curl-ca-bundle.crt";
#endif
        config.region = region;

        TranscribeStreamingServiceClient client(config);
        StartStreamTranscriptionHandler handler;
        handler.SetOnErrorCallback(
                [](const Aws::Client::AWSError<TranscribeStreamingServiceErrors>
 &error) {
                        std::cerr << "ERROR: " + error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
                });
        //SetTranscriptEventCallback called for every 'chunk' of file
 transcripted.
        // Partial results are returned in real time.
        handler.SetTranscriptEventCallback([](const TranscriptEvent &ev) {
                for (auto &&r: ev.GetTranscript().GetResults()) {
                    if (r.GetIsPartial()) {
                        std::cout << "[partial] ";
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout << "[Final] ";
                    }
                    for (auto &&alt: r.GetAlternatives()) {
                        std::cout << alt.GetTranscript() << std::endl;
                    }
                }
        });

        StartStreamTranscriptionRequest request;
        request.SetMediaSampleRateHertz(SAMPLE_RATE);
        request.SetLanguageCode(LanguageCode::en_US);
        request.SetMediaEncoding(
```

```
                MediaEncoding::pcm); // wav and aiff files are PCM formats.
        request.SetEventStreamHandler(handler);

        auto OnStreamReady = [](AudioStream &stream) {
                Aws::FStream file(FILE_NAME, std::ios_base::in |
std::ios_base::binary);
                if (!file.is_open()) {
                    std::cerr << "Failed to open " << FILE_NAME << '\n';
                }
                std::array<char, BUFFER_SIZE> buf;
                int i = 0;
                while (file) {
                    file.read(&buf[0], buf.size());

                    if (!file)
                        std::cout << "File: only " << file.gcount() << " could be
read"
                                  << std::endl;

                    Aws::Vector<unsigned char> bits{buf.begin(), buf.end()};
                    AudioEvent event(std::move(bits));
                    if (!stream) {
                        std::cerr << "Failed to create a stream" << std::endl;
                        break;
                    }
                    //The std::basic_istream::gcount() is used to count the
characters in the given string. It returns
                    //the number of characters extracted by the last read()
operation.
                    if (file.gcount() > 0) {
                        if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(event)) {
                            std::cerr << "Failed to write an audio event" <<
std::endl;
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                    else {
                        break;
                    }
                    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(
                            25)); // Slow down because we are streaming from a
file.
                }
                if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(
```

```
                        AudioEvent())) {
                    // Per the spec, we have to send an empty event (an event
 without a payload) at the end.
                    std::cerr << "Failed to send an empty frame" << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Successfully sent the empty frame" <<
 std::endl;
                }
                stream.flush();
                stream.Close();
        };

        Aws::Utils::Threading::Semaphore signaling(0 /*initialCount*/, 1 /
*maxCount*/);
        auto OnResponseCallback = [&signaling](
                const TranscribeStreamingServiceClient * /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionRequest & /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionOutcome &outcome,
                const std::shared_ptr<const Aws::Client::AsyncCallerContext> & /
*unused*/) {

                if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    std::cerr << "Transcribe streaming error "
                              << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                }

                signaling.Release();
        };

        std::cout << "Starting..." << std::endl;
        client.StartStreamTranscriptionAsync(request, OnStreamReady,
 OnResponseCallback,
                                             nullptr /*context*/);
        signaling.WaitOne(); // Prevent the application from exiting until we're
 done.
        std::cout << "Done" << std::endl;
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options);

    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * To run this AWS code example, ensure that you have set up your development
 * environment, including your AWS credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-
started.html
 */

public class TranscribeStreamingDemoFile {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String args[]) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {

        final String USAGE = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <file> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    file - the location of a PCM file to transcribe. In this
 example, ensure the PCM file is 16 hertz (Hz). \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String file = args[0];
        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromFile(file)),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromFile(String file) {
        try {
            File inputFile = new File(file);
            InputStream audioStream = new FileInputStream(inputFile);
            return audioStream;

        } catch (FileNotFoundException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US)
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
```

```
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw.toString());
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully
 ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }

    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (this.currentSubscription == null) {
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                this.currentSubscription.cancel();
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024 * 1;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
```

```
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream
inputStream) {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
```

```
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Swift

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Amazon Transcribe streaming to transcribe the spoken language in an audio file.

```
/// An example that demonstrates how to watch an transcribe event stream to
/// transcribe audio from a file to the console.

import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSTranscribeStreaming
import Foundation

/// Identify one of the media file formats supported by Amazon Transcribe.
enum TranscribeFormat: String, ExpressibleByArgument {
    case ogg = "ogg"
    case pcm = "pcm"
    case flac = "flac"
}

// -MARK: - Async command line tool

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    // -MARK: Command arguments
    @Flag(help: "Show partial results")
    var showPartial = false
    @Option(help: "Language code to transcribe into")
    var lang: String = "en-US"
    @Option(help: "Format of the source audio file")
    var format: TranscribeFormat
    @Option(help: "Sample rate of the source audio file in Hertz")
    var sampleRate: Int = 16000
    @Option(help: "Path of the source audio file")
    var path: String
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon S3 Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "tsevents",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to use event streaming with Amazon Transcribe.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Create and return an Amazon Transcribe audio stream from the file
    /// specified in the arguments.
```

```
   ///
   /// - Throws: Errors from `TranscribeError`.
   ///
   /// - Returns:
`AsyncThrowingStream<TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream, Error>`
   func createAudioStream() async throws
               ->
AsyncThrowingStream<TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream, Error> {

       let fileURL: URL = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
       let audioData = try Data(contentsOf: fileURL)

       // Properties defining the size of audio chunks and the total size of
       // the audio file in bytes. You should try to send chunks that last on
       // average 125 milliseconds.

       let chunkSizeInMilliseconds = 125.0
       let chunkSize = Int(chunkSizeInMilliseconds  / 1000.0 *
Double(sampleRate) * 2.0)
       let audioDataSize = audioData.count

       // Create an audio stream from the source data. The stream's job is
       // to send the audio in chunks to Amazon Transcribe as
       // `AudioStream.audioevent` events.

       let audioStream =
AsyncThrowingStream<TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream,
                               Error> { continuation in
           Task {
               var currentStart = 0
               var currentEnd = min(chunkSize, audioDataSize - currentStart)

               // Generate and send chunks of audio data as `audioevent`
               // events until the entire file has been sent. Each event is
               // yielded to the SDK after being created.

               while currentStart < audioDataSize {
                   let dataChunk = audioData[currentStart ..< currentEnd]

                   let audioEvent =
TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream.audioevent(
                       .init(audioChunk: dataChunk)
                   )
                   let yieldResult = continuation.yield(audioEvent)
```

```
                    switch yieldResult {
                        case .enqueued(_):
                            // The chunk was successfully enqueued into the
                            // stream. The `remaining` parameter estimates how
                            // much room is left in the queue, but is ignored
here.
                            break
                        case .dropped(_):
                            // The chunk was dropped because the queue buffer
                            // is full. This will cause transcription errors.
                            print("Warning: Dropped audio! The transcription will
be incomplete.")
                        case .terminated:
                            print("Audio stream terminated.")
                            continuation.finish()
                            return
                        default:
                            print("Warning: Unrecognized response during audio
streaming.")
                    }

                    currentStart = currentEnd
                    currentEnd = min(currentStart + chunkSize, audioDataSize)
                }

                // Let the SDK's continuation block know the stream is over.

                continuation.finish()
            }
        }

        return audioStream
    }

    /// Run the transcription process.
    ///
    /// - Throws: An error from `TranscribeError`.
    func transcribe(encoding: TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.MediaEncoding) async
throws {
        // Create the Transcribe Streaming client.

        let client = TranscribeStreamingClient(
            config: try await
TranscribeStreamingClient.TranscribeStreamingClientConfiguration(
```

```
                region: region
            )
        )

        // Start the transcription running on the audio stream.

        let output = try await client.startStreamTranscription(
            input: StartStreamTranscriptionInput(
                audioStream: try await createAudioStream(),
                languageCode:
TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.LanguageCode(rawValue: lang),
                mediaEncoding: encoding,
                mediaSampleRateHertz: sampleRate
            )
        )

        // Iterate over the events in the returned transcript result stream.
        // Each `transcriptevent` contains a list of result fragments which
        // need to be concatenated together to build the final transcript.
        for try await event in output.transcriptResultStream! {
            switch event {
            case .transcriptevent(let event):
            for result in event.transcript?.results ?? [] {
                guard let transcript = result.alternatives?.first?.transcript
else {
                    continue
                }

                // If showing partial results is enabled and the result is
                // partial, show it. Partial results may be incomplete, and
                // may be inaccurate, with upcoming audio making the
                // transcription complete or by giving more context to make
                // transcription make more sense.

                if (result.isPartial && showPartial) {
                    print("[Partial] \(transcript)")
                }

                // When the complete fragment of transcribed text is ready,
                // print it. This could just as easily be used to draw the
                // text as a subtitle over a playing video, though timing
                // would need to be managed.

                if !result.isPartial {
```

```
                    if (showPartial) {
                        print("[Final  ] ", terminator: "")
                    }
                    print(transcript)
                }
            }
            default:
                print("Error: Unexpected message from Amazon Transcribe:")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Convert the value of the `--format` command line option into the
    /// corresponding Transcribe Streaming `MediaEncoding` type.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `MediaEncoding` equivalent of the format specified on
    ///   the command line.
    func getMediaEncoding() -> TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.MediaEncoding {
        let mediaEncoding: TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.MediaEncoding

        switch format {
        case .flac:
            mediaEncoding = .flac
        case .ogg:
            mediaEncoding = .oggOpus
        case .pcm:
            mediaEncoding = .pcm
        }

        return mediaEncoding
    }
}

// -MARK: - Entry point

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.transcribe(encoding: command.getMediaEncoding())
```

```
        } catch let error as TranscribeError {
            print("ERROR: \(error.errorDescription ?? "Unknown error")")
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}

/// Errors thrown by the example's functions.
enum TranscribeError: Error {
    /// No transcription stream available.
    case noTranscriptionStream
    /// The source media file couldn't be read.
    case readError

    var errorDescription: String? {
        switch self {
        case .noTranscriptionStream:
            return "No transcription stream returned by Amazon Transcribe."
        case .readError:
            return "Unable to read the source audio file."
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Generate a transcription from a microphone using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to generate a transcription from a microphone using Amazon Transcribe streaming.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoApp {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String[] args)
            throws URISyntaxException, ExecutionException, InterruptedException,
 LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException
 {

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            System.exit(0);
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }
```

```
    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
 mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString())
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw);
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully
 ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }


    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
```

```
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;
        private final InputStream inputStream;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (currentSubscription == null) {
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                currentSubscription.cancel();
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private final ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private final AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream
 inputStream) {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
 positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
```

```
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
```

```
                        .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                        .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Code examples for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon Translate with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

More resources

- **Amazon Translate Developer Guide** – More information about Amazon Translate.
- **Amazon Translate API Reference** – Details about all available Amazon Translate actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs
    - Use DescribeTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use ListTextTranslationJobs with an AWS SDK
    - Use StartTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use StopTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
    - Use TranslateText with an AWS SDK or CLI

- Scenarios for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs
  - Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
  - Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors
  - Build a publish and subscription application that translates messages
  - Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
  - Get started with Amazon Translate jobs using an AWS SDK

Basic examples for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon Translate with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs
  - Use DescribeTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use ListTextTranslationJobs with an AWS SDK
  - Use StartTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use StopTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
  - Use TranslateText with an AWS SDK or CLI

Actions for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual Amazon Translate actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

These excerpts call the Amazon Translate API and are code excerpts from larger programs that must be run in context. You can see actions in context in Scenarios for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs .

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon Translate API Reference.

Examples

- Use DescribeTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
- Use ListTextTranslationJobs with an AWS SDK

- Use StartTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
- Use StopTextTranslationJob with an AWS SDK
- Use TranslateText with an AWS SDK or CLI

Use `DescribeTextTranslationJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTextTranslationJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with translate jobs

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// The following example shows how to retrieve the details of
/// a text translation job using Amazon Translate.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeTextTranslation
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

        // The Job Id is generated when the text translation job is started
        // with a call to the StartTextTranslationJob method.
```

```
            var jobId = "1234567890abcdef01234567890abcde";

            var request = new DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest
            {
                JobId = jobId,
            };

            var jobProperties = await DescribeTranslationJobAsync(client,
 request);

            DisplayTranslationJobDetails(jobProperties);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve information about an Amazon Translate text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Translate client
 object.</param>
        /// <param name="request">The DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest object.</
param>
        /// <returns>The TextTranslationJobProperties object containing
        /// information about the text translation job..</returns>
        public static async Task<TextTranslationJobProperties>
 DescribeTranslationJobAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.DescribeTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                return response.TextTranslationJobProperties;
            }
            else
            {
                return null;
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the properties of the text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="jobProperties">The properties of the text translation
        /// job returned by the call to DescribeTextTranslationJobAsync.</param>
```

```
        public static void
DisplayTranslationJobDetails(TextTranslationJobProperties jobProperties)
        {
            if (jobProperties is null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No text translation job properties found.");
                return;
            }

            // Display the details of the text translation job.
            Console.WriteLine($"{jobProperties.JobId}: {jobProperties.JobName}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Gets the properties associated with an asynchronous batch translation job."
   "Includes properties such as name, ID, status, source and target languages,
and input/output Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) buckets."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is
returned for testing purposes."
         iv_jobid        = iv_jobid ).
       MESSAGE 'Job description retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `ListTextTranslationJobs` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `ListTextTranslationJobs`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Collections.Generic;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.Translate;
   using Amazon.Translate.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// List Amazon Translate translation jobs, along with details about each
job.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListTranslationJobs
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();
           var filter = new TextTranslationJobFilter
           {
               JobStatus = "COMPLETED",
           };
```

```
            var request = new ListTextTranslationJobsRequest
            {
                MaxResults = 10,
                Filter = filter,
            };

            await ListJobsAsync(client, request);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List Amazon Translate text translation jobs.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Translate client
object.</param>
        /// <param name="request">An Amazon Translate
        /// ListTextTranslationJobsRequest object detailing which text
        /// translation jobs are of interest.</param>
        public static async Task ListJobsAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            ListTextTranslationJobsRequest request)
        {
            ListTextTranslationJobsResponse response;

            do
            {
                response = await client.ListTextTranslationJobsAsync(request);

ShowTranslationJobDetails(response.TextTranslationJobPropertiesList);

                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List existing translation job details.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="properties">A list of Amazon Translate text
        /// translation jobs.</param>
        public static void
ShowTranslationJobDetails(List<TextTranslationJobProperties> properties)
        {
            properties.ForEach(prop =>
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"{prop.JobId}: {prop.JobName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Status: {prop.JobStatus}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Submitted time: {prop.SubmittedTime}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTextTranslationJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Gets a list of the batch translation jobs that you have submitted."

   DATA lo_filter TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8textxlationjobfilt.

   "Create an ABAP object for filtering using jobname."
   lo_filter = NEW #( iv_jobname = iv_jobname ).

   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->listtexttranslationjobs(      "oo_result is returned
for testing purposes."
         io_filter        = lo_filter ).
       MESSAGE 'Jobs retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidfilterex.
       MESSAGE 'The filter specified for the operation is not valid. Specify a
different filter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
       MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTextTranslationJobs in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `StartTextTranslationJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StartTextTranslationJob`.

Action examples are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. You can see this action in context in the following code example:

- Get started with translate jobs

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Collections.Generic;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.Translate;
   using Amazon.Translate.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// This example shows how to use Amazon Translate to process the files in
   /// an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The translated
results
   /// will also be stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
   /// </summary>
   public class BatchTranslate
   {
       public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            var contentType = "text/plain";

            // Set this variable to an S3 bucket location with a folder."
            // Input files must be in a folder and not at the bucket root."
            var s3InputUri = "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket1/FOLDER/";
            var s3OutputUri = "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket2/";

            // This role must have permissions to read the source bucket and to
 read and
            // write to the destination bucket where the translated text will be
 stored.
            var dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::0123456789ab:role/
S3TranslateRole";

            var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

            var inputConfig = new InputDataConfig
            {
                ContentType = contentType,
                S3Uri = s3InputUri,
            };

            var outputConfig = new OutputDataConfig
            {
                S3Uri = s3OutputUri,
            };

            var request = new StartTextTranslationJobRequest
            {
                JobName = "ExampleTranslationJob",
                DataAccessRoleArn = dataAccessRoleArn,
                InputDataConfig = inputConfig,
                OutputDataConfig = outputConfig,
                SourceLanguageCode = "en",
                TargetLanguageCodes = new List<string> { "fr" },
            };

            var response = await StartTextTranslationAsync(client, request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{response.JobId}: {response.JobStatus}");
            }
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Start the Amazon Translate text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized AmazonTranslateClient object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">The request object that includes details such
        /// as source and destination bucket names and the IAM Role that will
        /// be used to access the buckets.</param>
        /// <returns>The StartTextTranslationResponse object that includes the
        /// details of the request response.</returns>
        public static async Task<StartTextTranslationJobResponse>
 StartTextTranslationAsync(AmazonTranslateClient client,
 StartTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.StartTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Starts an asynchronous batch translation job."
    "Use batch translation jobs to translate large volumes of text across
 multiple documents at once."

    DATA lo_inputdataconfig  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8inputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_outputdataconfig TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8outputdataconfig.
```

```
    DATA lt_targetlanguagecodes TYPE /aws1/
cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00=>tt_targetlanguagecodestrlist.
    DATA lo_targetlanguagecodes TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00.

    "Create an ABAP object for the input data config."
    lo_inputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_input_data_s3uri
                                iv_contenttype = iv_input_data_contenttype ).

    "Create an ABAP object for the output data config."
    lo_outputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_output_data_s3uri ).

    "Create an internal table for target languages."
    lo_targetlanguagecodes = NEW #( iv_value = iv_targetlanguagecode ).
    INSERT lo_targetlanguagecodes  INTO TABLE lt_targetlanguagecodes.

    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_xl8->starttexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes."
          io_inputdataconfig = lo_inputdataconfig
            io_outputdataconfig = lo_outputdataconfig
            it_targetlanguagecodes = lt_targetlanguagecodes
            iv_dataaccessrolearn = iv_dataaccessrolearn
            iv_jobname = iv_jobname
            iv_sourcelanguagecode = iv_sourcelanguagecode ).
        MESSAGE 'Translation job started.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
        MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE
 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The value of the parameter is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
        MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8unsuppedlanguage00.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Translate does not support translation from the language
 of the source text into the requested target language.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `StopTextTranslationJob` with an AWS SDK

The following code examples show how to use `StopTextTranslationJob`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to stop a running Amazon Translation Service text translation
/// job.
/// </summary>
public class StopTextTranslationJob
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();
        var jobId = "1234567890abcdef01234567890abcde";

        var request = new StopTextTranslationJobRequest
        {
            JobId = jobId,
        };

        await StopTranslationJobAsync(client, request);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a request to stop a text translation job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">Initialized AmazonTrnslateClient object.</param>
    /// <param name="request">The request object to be passed to the
```

```
        /// StopTextJobAsync method.</param>
        public static async Task StopTranslationJobAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            StopTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.StopTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{response.JobId} as status:
{response.JobStatus}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StopTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Stops an asynchronous batch translation job that is in progress."

   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->stoptexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is returned
for testing purposes."
         iv_jobid        = iv_jobid ).
       MESSAGE 'Translation job stopped.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StopTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Use `TranslateText` with an AWS SDK or CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TranslateText`.

.NET

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Take text from a file stored a Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// object and translate it using the Amazon Transfer Service.
/// </summary>
public class TranslateText
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // If the region you want to use is different from the region
        // defined for the default user, supply it as a parameter to the
        // Amazon Translate client object constructor.
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

        // Set the source language to "auto" to request Amazon Translate to
        // automatically detect te language of the source text.
```

```
            // You can get a list of the languages supposed by Amazon Translate
            // in the Amazon Translate Developer's Guide here:
            //      https://docs.aws.amazon.com/translate/latest/dg/what-is.html
            string srcLang = "en"; // English.
            string destLang = "fr"; // French.

            // The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket where the
            // source text file is stored.
            string srcBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string srcTextFile = "source.txt";

            var srcText = await GetSourceTextAsync(srcBucket, srcTextFile);
            var destText = await TranslatingTextAsync(client, srcLang, destLang,
srcText);

            ShowText(srcText, destText);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Use the Amazon S3 TransferUtility to retrieve the text to translate
        /// from an object in an S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="srcBucket">The name of the S3 bucket where the
        /// text is stored.
        /// </param>
        /// <param name="srcTextFile">The key of the S3 object that
        /// contains the text to translate.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the source text.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetSourceTextAsync(string srcBucket,
string srcTextFile)
        {
            string srcText = string.Empty;

            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            TransferUtility utility = new TransferUtility(s3Client);

            using var stream = await utility.OpenStreamAsync(srcBucket,
srcTextFile);

            StreamReader file = new System.IO.StreamReader(stream);

            srcText = file.ReadToEnd();
            return srcText;
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Use the Amazon Translate Service to translate the document from the
        /// source language to the specified destination language.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon Translate Service client used to
        /// perform the translation.</param>
        /// <param name="srcLang">The language of the source text.</param>
        /// <param name="destLang">The destination language for the translated
        /// text.</param>
        /// <param name="text">A string representing the text to ranslate.</
param>
        /// <returns>The text that has been translated to the destination
        /// language.</returns>
        public static async Task<string>
 TranslatingTextAsync(AmazonTranslateClient client, string srcLang, string
 destLang, string text)
        {
            var request = new TranslateTextRequest
            {
                SourceLanguageCode = srcLang,
                TargetLanguageCode = destLang,
                Text = text,
            };

            var response = await client.TranslateTextAsync(request);

            return response.TranslatedText;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Show the original text followed by the translated text.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="srcText">The original text to be translated.</param>
        /// <param name="destText">The translated text.</param>
        public static void ShowText(string srcText, string destText)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Source text:");
            Console.WriteLine(srcText);
            Console.WriteLine();
            Console.WriteLine("Translated text:");
            Console.WriteLine(destText);
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Converts the specified English text to French. The text to convert can also be passed as the -Text parameter.

```
"Hello World" | ConvertTo-TRNTargetLanguage -SourceLanguageCode en -
TargetLanguageCode fr
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Converts the specified English text to French. The text to convert can also be passed as the -Text parameter.

```
"Hello World" | ConvertTo-TRNTargetLanguage -SourceLanguageCode en -
TargetLanguageCode fr
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Translates input text from the source language to the target language."
    TRY.
```

```
        oo_result = lo_xl8->translatetext(      "oo_result is returned for
testing purposes."
          iv_text        = iv_text
            iv_sourcelanguagecode = iv_sourcelanguagecode
            iv_targetlanguagecode = iv_targetlanguagecode ).
        MESSAGE 'Translation completed.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8detectedlanguage00.
        MESSAGE 'The confidence that Amazon Comprehend accurately detected the
source language is low.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
        MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
        MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8serviceunavailex.
        MESSAGE 'The Amazon Translate service is temporarily unavailable.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8textsizelmtexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The size of the text you submitted exceeds the size limit. '
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8unsuppedlanguage00.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Translate does not support translation from the language
of the source text into the requested target language. ' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios for Amazon Translate using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to implement common scenarios in Amazon Translate with AWS SDKs. These scenarios show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within Amazon Translate or combined with other AWS services. Each scenario includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code.

Scenarios target an intermediate level of experience to help you understand service actions in context.

Examples

- Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app
- Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors
- Build a publish and subscription application that translates messages
- Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio
- Get started with Amazon Translate jobs using an AWS SDK

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Create an Amazon Lex chatbot to engage your website visitors

The following code examples show how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example Building an Amazon Lex chatbot in the AWS SDK for JavaScript developer guide.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Build a publish and subscription application that translates messages

The following code examples show how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

.NET

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service .NET API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run the example that uses the Java Async API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Kotlin

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SNS Kotlin API to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a web app, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a native Android app, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create an application that analyzes customer feedback and synthesizes audio

The following code examples show how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

.NET

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly

- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Java

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

JavaScript

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);
```

```
  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Ruby

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.

- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Get started with Amazon Translate jobs using an AWS SDK

The following code example shows how to:

- Start an asynchronous batch translation job.
- Wait for the asynchronous job to complete.
- Describe the asynchronous job.

SAP ABAP

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lo_inputdataconfig  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8inputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_outputdataconfig TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8outputdataconfig.
    DATA lt_targetlanguagecodes TYPE /aws1/
cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00=>tt_targetlanguagecodestrlist.
```

```
   DATA lo_targetlanguagecodes TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00.

   "Create an ABAP object for the input data config."
   lo_inputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_input_data_s3uri
                               iv_contenttype = iv_input_data_contenttype ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the output data config."
   lo_outputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_output_data_s3uri ).

   "Create an internal table for target languages."
   lo_targetlanguagecodes = NEW #( iv_value = iv_targetlanguagecode ).
   INSERT lo_targetlanguagecodes  INTO TABLE lt_targetlanguagecodes.

   TRY.
       DATA(lo_translationjob_result) = lo_xl8->starttexttranslationjob(
         io_inputdataconfig = lo_inputdataconfig
           io_outputdataconfig = lo_outputdataconfig
           it_targetlanguagecodes = lt_targetlanguagecodes
           iv_dataaccessrolearn = iv_dataaccessrolearn
           iv_jobname = iv_jobname
           iv_sourcelanguagecode = iv_sourcelanguagecode ).
       MESSAGE 'Translation job started.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The value of the parameter is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
       MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time. '
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8unsuppedlanguage00.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon Translate does not support translation from the language
of the source text into the requested target language.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Get the job ID."
   DATA(lv_jobid) = lo_translationjob_result->get_jobid( ).

   "Wait for translate job to complete."
```

```
    DATA(lo_des_translation_result) = lo_xl8-
>describetexttranslationjob( iv_jobid = lv_jobid ).
    WHILE lo_des_translation_result->get_textxlationjobproperties( )-
>get_jobstatus( ) <> 'COMPLETED'.
      IF sy-index = 30.
        EXIT.               "Maximum 900 seconds."
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
      lo_des_translation_result = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob( iv_jobid =
 lv_jobid ).
    ENDWHILE.

    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes."
          iv_jobid        = lv_jobid ).
        MESSAGE 'Job description retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
        MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE
 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
 TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - DescribeTextTranslationJob
  - StartTextTranslationJob

Code examples for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS WAFV2 with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **AWS WAFV2 Developer Guide** – More information about AWS WAFV2.
- **AWS WAFV2 API Reference** – Details about all available AWS WAFV2 actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateWebAcl with a CLI

Basic examples for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of AWS WAFV2 with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateWebAcl with a CLI

Actions for AWS WAFV2 using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual AWS WAFV2 actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the AWS WAFV2 API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateWebAcl with a CLI

Use `CreateWebAcl` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateWebAcl`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To create a web ACL

The following `create-web-acl` command creates a web ACL for regional use. The rule statements for the web ACL are provided in a JSON-formatted file.

```
aws wafv2 create-web-acl \
    --name TestWebAcl \
    --scope REGIONAL \
    --default-action Allow={} \
    --visibility-
config SampledRequestsEnabled=true,CloudWatchMetricsEnabled=true,MetricName=TestWebAclMet
 \
    --rules file://waf-rule.json \
    --region us-west-2
```

Contents of file://waf-rule.json:

```
[
    {
        "Name":"basic-rule",
        "Priority":0,
        "Statement":{
            "AndStatement":{
                "Statements":[
                    {
                        "ByteMatchStatement":{
                            "SearchString":"example.com",
                            "FieldToMatch":{
                                "SingleHeader":{
                                    "Name":"host"
                                }
                            },
                            "TextTransformations":[
                                {
                                    "Priority":0,
                                    "Type":"LOWERCASE"
                                }
                            ],
                            "PositionalConstraint":"EXACTLY"
```

```
                        }
                    },
                    {
                        "GeoMatchStatement":{
                            "CountryCodes":[
                                "US",
                                "IN"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        "Action":{
            "Allow":{

            }
        },
        "VisibilityConfig":{
            "SampledRequestsEnabled":true,
            "CloudWatchMetricsEnabled":true,
            "MetricName":"basic-rule"
        }
    }
]
```

Output:

```
{
    "Summary":{
        "ARN":"arn:aws:wafv2:us-west-2:123456789012:regional/webacl/TestWebAcl/
a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111",
        "Description":"",
        "Name":"TestWebAcl",
        "LockToken":"2294b3a1-eb60-4aa0-a86f-a3ae04329de9",
        "Id":"a1b2c3d4-5678-90ab-cdef-EXAMPLE11111"
    }
}
```

For more information, see Managing and Using a Web Access Control List (Web ACL) in the *AWS WAF, AWS Firewall Manager, and AWS Shield Advanced Developer Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateWebAcl in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This command creates a new web ACL named "waf-test". Kindly note that as per service API documentation, 'DefaultAction' is a required property. Hence, value for either '-DefaultAction_Allow' and/or '-DefaultAction_Block' should be specified. Since '-DefaultAction_Allow' and '-DefaultAction_Block' are not the required properties, value '@{}' could be used as placeholder as shown in above example.

```
New-WAF2WebACL -Name "waf-test" -Scope REGIONAL -Region eu-
west-1 -VisibilityConfig_CloudWatchMetricsEnabled $true -
VisibilityConfig_SampledRequestsEnabled $true -VisibilityConfig_MetricName "waf-
test" -Description "Test" -DefaultAction_Allow @{}
```

Output:

```
ARN         : arn:aws:wafv2:eu-west-1:139480602983:regional/webacl/waf-
test/19460b3f-db14-4b9a-8e23-a417e1eb007f
Description : Test
Id          : 19460b3f-db14-4b9a-8e23-a417e1eb007f
LockToken   : 5a0cd5eb-d911-4341-b313-b429e6d6b6ab
Name        : waf-test
```

- For API details, see CreateWebAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command creates a new web ACL named "waf-test". Kindly note that as per service API documentation, 'DefaultAction' is a required property. Hence, value for either '-DefaultAction_Allow' and/or '-DefaultAction_Block' should be specified. Since '-DefaultAction_Allow' and '-DefaultAction_Block' are not the required properties, value '@{}' could be used as placeholder as shown in above example.

```
New-WAF2WebACL -Name "waf-test" -Scope REGIONAL -Region eu-
west-1 -VisibilityConfig_CloudWatchMetricsEnabled $true -
VisibilityConfig_SampledRequestsEnabled $true -VisibilityConfig_MetricName "waf-
test" -Description "Test" -DefaultAction_Allow @{}
```

Output:

```
ARN         : arn:aws:wafv2:eu-west-1:139480602983:regional/webacl/waf-
test/19460b3f-db14-4b9a-8e23-a417e1eb007f
Description : Test
Id          : 19460b3f-db14-4b9a-8e23-a417e1eb007f
LockToken   : 5a0cd5eb-d911-4341-b313-b429e6d6b6ab
Name        : waf-test
```

- For API details, see CreateWebAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use Amazon WorkSpaces with an AWS software development kit (SDK).

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

More resources

- **WorkSpaces Developer Guide** – More information about WorkSpaces.
- **WorkSpaces API Reference** – Details about all available WorkSpaces actions.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Basic examples for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs
  - Actions for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs
    - Use CreateTags with a CLI
    - Use CreateWorkspaces with a CLI
    - Use DeleteTags with a CLI
    - Use DescribeTags with a CLI
    - Use DescribeWorkspaceBundles with a CLI
    - Use DescribeWorkspaceDirectories with a CLI
    - Use DescribeWorkspaces with a CLI

- Use DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus with a CLI
- Use ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties with a CLI
- Use ModifyWorkspaceProperties with a CLI
- Use ModifyWorkspaceState with a CLI
- Use RebootWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use RebuildWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use RegisterWorkspaceDirectory with a CLI
- Use StopWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use TerminateWorkspaces with a CLI

Basic examples for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show how to use the basics of Amazon WorkSpaces with AWS SDKs.

Examples

- Actions for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs
  - Use CreateTags with a CLI
  - Use CreateWorkspaces with a CLI
  - Use DeleteTags with a CLI
  - Use DescribeTags with a CLI
  - Use DescribeWorkspaceBundles with a CLI
  - Use DescribeWorkspaceDirectories with a CLI
  - Use DescribeWorkspaces with a CLI
  - Use DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus with a CLI
  - Use ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties with a CLI
  - Use ModifyWorkspaceProperties with a CLI
  - Use ModifyWorkspaceState with a CLI
  - Use RebootWorkspaces with a CLI
  - Use RebuildWorkspaces with a CLI
  - Use RegisterWorkspaceDirectory with a CLI
  - Use StopWorkspaces with a CLI

- Use TerminateWorkspaces with a CLI

Actions for WorkSpaces using AWS SDKs

The following code examples demonstrate how to perform individual WorkSpaces actions with AWS SDKs. Each example includes a link to GitHub, where you can find instructions for setting up and running the code.

The following examples include only the most commonly used actions. For a complete list, see the Amazon WorkSpaces API Reference.

Examples

- Use CreateTags with a CLI
- Use CreateWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use DeleteTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeTags with a CLI
- Use DescribeWorkspaceBundles with a CLI
- Use DescribeWorkspaceDirectories with a CLI
- Use DescribeWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus with a CLI
- Use ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties with a CLI
- Use ModifyWorkspaceProperties with a CLI
- Use ModifyWorkspaceState with a CLI
- Use RebootWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use RebuildWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use RegisterWorkspaceDirectory with a CLI
- Use StopWorkspaces with a CLI
- Use TerminateWorkspaces with a CLI

Use `CreateTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To add tags to a WorkSpace

The following `create-tags` example adds the specified tags to the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces create-tags \
    --resource-id ws-dk1xzr417 \
    --tags Key=Department,Value=Finance
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tag WorkSpaces resources in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This example adds a new tag to a workspace named `ws-wsname`. The tag has a key of "Name", and a key value of `AWS_Workspace`.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "Name"
$tag.Value = "AWS_Workspace"
New-WKSTag -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceId ws-wsname -Tag $tag
```

Example 2: This example adds multiple tags to a workspace named `ws-wsname`. One tag has a key of "Name" and a key value of `AWS_Workspace`; the other tag has a tag key of "Stage" and a key value of "Test".

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "Name"
$tag.Value = "AWS_Workspace"

$tag2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag2.Key = "Stage"
```

```
$tag2.Value = "Test"
New-WKSTag -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceId ws-wsname -Tag $tag,$tag2
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a new tag to a workspace named `ws-wsname`. The tag has a key of "Name", and a key value of `AWS_Workspace`.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "Name"
$tag.Value = "AWS_Workspace"
New-WKSTag -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceId ws-wsname -Tag $tag
```

Example 2: This example adds multiple tags to a workspace named `ws-wsname`. One tag has a key of "Name" and a key value of `AWS_Workspace`; the other tag has a tag key of "Stage" and a key value of "Test".

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "Name"
$tag.Value = "AWS_Workspace"

$tag2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag2.Key = "Stage"
$tag2.Value = "Test"
New-WKSTag -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceId ws-wsname -Tag $tag,$tag2
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `CreateWorkspaces` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `CreateWorkspaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

Example 1: To create an AlwaysOn WorkSpace

The following `create-workspaces` example creates an AlwaysOn WorkSpace for the specified user, using the specified directory and bundle.

```
aws workspaces create-workspaces \
    --workspaces DirectoryId=d-926722edaf,UserName=Mateo,BundleId=wsb-0zsvgp8fc
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": [],
    "PendingRequests": [
        {
            "WorkspaceId": "ws-kcqms853t",
            "DirectoryId": "d-926722edaf",
            "UserName": "Mateo",
            "State": "PENDING",
            "BundleId": "wsb-0zsvgp8fc"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 2: To create an AutoStop WorkSpace

The following `create-workspaces` example creates an AutoStop WorkSpace for the specified user, using the specified directory and bundle.

```
aws workspaces create-workspaces \
    --
workspaces DirectoryId=d-926722edaf,UserName=Mary,BundleId=wsb-0zsvgp8fc,WorkspaceProperti
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": [],
    "PendingRequests": [
        {
            "WorkspaceId": "ws-dk1xzr417",
            "DirectoryId": "d-926722edaf",
            "UserName": "Mary",
            "State": "PENDING",
            "BundleId": "wsb-0zsvgp8fc"
        }
    ]
}
```

Example 3: To create a user-decoupled WorkSpace

The following `create-workspaces` example creates a user-decoupled WorkSpace by setting the username to `[UNDEFINED]`, and specifying a WorkSpace name, directory ID, and bundle ID.

```
aws workspaces create-workspaces \
    --workspaces
 DirectoryId=d-926722edaf,UserName='"[UNDEFINED]"',WorkspaceName=MaryWorkspace1,BundleId=
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": [],
    "PendingRequests": [
        {
            "WorkspaceId": "ws-abcd1234",
            "DirectoryId": "d-926722edaf",
            "UserName": "[UNDEFINED]",
            "State": "PENDING",
            "BundleId": "wsb-0zsvgp8fc",
            "WorkspaceName": "MaryWorkspace1"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Launch a virtual desktop in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see CreateWorkspaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Create a WorkSpace for the supplied bundle, directory, and user.

```
New-WKSWorkspace -Workspace @{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d"; "DirectoryId" =
 "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME"}
```

Example 2: This example creates multiple WorkSpaces

```
New-WKSWorkspace -Workspace @{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d"; "DirectoryId"
 = "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME_1"},@{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d";
 "DirectoryId" = "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME_2"}
```

- For API details, see CreateWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create a WorkSpace for the supplied bundle, directory, and user.

```
New-WKSWorkspace -Workspace @{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d"; "DirectoryId" =
 "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME"}
```

Example 2: This example creates multiple WorkSpaces

```
New-WKSWorkspace -Workspace @{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d"; "DirectoryId"
 = "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME_1"},@{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d";
 "DirectoryId" = "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME_2"}
```

- For API details, see CreateWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DeleteTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DeleteTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To delete a tag from a WorkSpace

The following `delete-tags` example deletes the specified tag from the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces delete-tags \
    --resource-id ws-dk1xzr417 \
    --tag-keys Department
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Tag WorkSpaces resources in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample removes the tag associated with the Workspace

```
Remove-WKSTag -ResourceId ws-w10b3abcd -TagKey "Type"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-WKSTag (DeleteTags)" on target "ws-w10b3abcd".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes the tag associated with the Workspace

```
Remove-WKSTag -ResourceId ws-w10b3abcd -TagKey "Type"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-WKSTag (DeleteTags)" on target "ws-w10b3abcd".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeTags` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeTags`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the tags for a WorkSpace

The following `describe-tags` example describes the tags for the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces describe-tags \
    --resource-id ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "TagList": [
        {
            "Key": "Department",
            "Value": "Finance"
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Tag WorkSpaces resources in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This Sample fetches tag for the given Workspace

```
Get-WKSTag -WorkspaceId ws-w361s234r -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
auto-delete no
```

```
purpose     Workbench
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample fetches tag for the given Workspace

```
Get-WKSTag -WorkspaceId ws-w361s234r -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
auto-delete no
purpose     Workbench
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeWorkspaceBundles` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeWorkspaceBundles`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To list the bundles provided by Amazon

The following `describe-workspace-bundles` example lists the names and IDs of the bundles provided by Amazon, in table format and sorted by name.

```
aws workspaces describe-workspace-bundles \
    --owner AMAZON \
    --query "Bundles[*].[Name, BundleId]"
```

Output:

```
[
    [
```

```
        "Standard with Amazon Linux 2",
        "wsb-clj85qzj1"
    ],
    [
        "Performance with Windows 10 (Server 2016 based)",
        "wsb-gm4d5tx2v"
    ],
    [
        "PowerPro with Windows 7",
        "wsb-1pzkp0bx4"
    ],
    [
        "Power with Amazon Linux 2",
        "wsb-2bs6k5lgn"
    ],
    [
        "Graphics with Windows 10 (Server 2019 based)",
        "wsb-03gyjnfyy"
    ],
    ...
]
```

For more information, see WorkSpaces bundles and images in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceBundles in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample fetches details of all the Workspace bundles in the current region

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceBundle
```

Output:

```
BundleId        : wsb-sfhdgv342
ComputeType     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.ComputeType
Description     : This bundle is custom
ImageId         : wsi-235aeqges
LastUpdatedTime : 12/26/2019 06:44:07
```

```
Name            : CustomBundleTest
Owner           : 233816212345
RootStorage     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.RootStorage
UserStorage     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.UserStorage
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceBundles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample fetches details of all the Workspace bundles in the current region

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceBundle
```

Output:

```
BundleId        : wsb-sfhdgv342
ComputeType     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.ComputeType
Description     : This bundle is custom
ImageId         : wsi-235aeqges
LastUpdatedTime : 12/26/2019 06:44:07
Name            : CustomBundleTest
Owner           : 233816212345
RootStorage     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.RootStorage
UserStorage     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.UserStorage
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceBundles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeWorkspaceDirectories` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeWorkspaceDirectories`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a registered directory

The following `describe-workspace-directories` example describes the specified registered directory.

```
aws workspaces describe-workspace-directories \
    --directory-ids d-926722edaf
```

Output:

```
{
    "Directories": [
        {
            "DirectoryId": "d-926722edaf",
            "Alias": "d-926722edaf",
            "DirectoryName": "example.com",
            "RegistrationCode": "WSpdx+9RJ8JT",
            "SubnetIds": [
                "subnet-9d19c4c6",
                "subnet-500d5819"
            ],
            "DnsIpAddresses": [
                "172.16.1.140",
                "172.16.0.30"
            ],
            "CustomerUserName": "Administrator",
            "IamRoleId": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/workspaces_DefaultRole",
            "DirectoryType": "SIMPLE_AD",
            "WorkspaceSecurityGroupId": "sg-0d89e927e5645d7c5",
            "State": "REGISTERED",
            "WorkspaceCreationProperties": {
                "EnableInternetAccess": false,
                "UserEnabledAsLocalAdministrator": true,
                "EnableMaintenanceMode": true
            },
            "WorkspaceAccessProperties": {
                "DeviceTypeWindows": "ALLOW",
                "DeviceTypeOsx": "ALLOW",
                "DeviceTypeWeb": "DENY",
                "DeviceTypeIos": "ALLOW",
                "DeviceTypeAndroid": "ALLOW",
                "DeviceTypeChromeOs": "ALLOW",
                "DeviceTypeZeroClient": "ALLOW",
                "DeviceTypeLinux": "DENY"
            },
            "Tenancy": "SHARED",
            "SelfservicePermissions": {
                "RestartWorkspace": "ENABLED",
```

```
                "IncreaseVolumeSize": "DISABLED",
                "ChangeComputeType": "DISABLED",
                "SwitchRunningMode": "DISABLED",
                "RebuildWorkspace": "DISABLED"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Manage directories for WorkSpaces Personal in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceDirectories in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample lists the directory details for registered directories

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceDirectory
```

Output:

```
Alias                       : TestWorkspace
CustomerUserName            : Administrator
DirectoryId                 : d-123414a369
DirectoryName               : TestDirectory.com
DirectoryType               : MicrosoftAD
DnsIpAddresses              : {172.31.43.45, 172.31.2.97}
IamRoleId                   : arn:aws:iam::761234567801:role/
workspaces_RoleDefault
IpGroupIds                  : {}
RegistrationCode            : WSpdx+4RRT43
SelfservicePermissions      : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.SelfservicePermissions
State                       : REGISTERED
SubnetIds                   : {subnet-1m3m7b43, subnet-ard11aba}
Tenancy                     : SHARED
WorkspaceAccessProperties   : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.WorkspaceAccessProperties
WorkspaceCreationProperties :
 Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.DefaultWorkspaceCreationProperties
WorkspaceSecurityGroupId    : sg-0ed2441234a123c43
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample lists the directory details for registered directories

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceDirectory
```

Output:

```
Alias                       : TestWorkspace
CustomerUserName            : Administrator
DirectoryId                 : d-123414a369
DirectoryName               : TestDirectory.com
DirectoryType               : MicrosoftAD
DnsIpAddresses              : {172.31.43.45, 172.31.2.97}
IamRoleId                   : arn:aws:iam::761234567801:role/
workspaces_RoleDefault
IpGroupIds                  : {}
RegistrationCode            : WSpdx+4RRT43
SelfservicePermissions      : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.SelfservicePermissions
State                       : REGISTERED
SubnetIds                   : {subnet-1m3m7b43, subnet-ard11aba}
Tenancy                     : SHARED
WorkspaceAccessProperties   : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.WorkspaceAccessProperties
WorkspaceCreationProperties :
 Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.DefaultWorkspaceCreationProperties
WorkspaceSecurityGroupId    : sg-0ed2441234a123c43
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeWorkspaces` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeWorkspaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe a WorkSpace

The following `describe-workspaces` example describes the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces describe-workspaces \
    --workspace-ids ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "Workspaces": [
        {
            "WorkspaceId": "ws-dk1xzr417",
            "DirectoryId": "d-926722edaf",
            "UserName": "Mary",
            "IpAddress": "172.16.0.175",
            "State": "STOPPED",
            "BundleId": "wsb-0zsvgp8fc",
            "SubnetId": "subnet-500d5819",
            "ComputerName": "WSAMZN-RBSLTTD9",
            "WorkspaceProperties": {
                "RunningMode": "AUTO_STOP",
                "RunningModeAutoStopTimeoutInMinutes": 60,
                "RootVolumeSizeGib": 80,
                "UserVolumeSizeGib": 10,
                "ComputeTypeName": "VALUE"
            },
            "ModificationStates": []
        }
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Administer your WorkSpaces in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Retrieves details of all your WorkSpaces to the pipeline.

```
Get-WKSWorkspace
```

Output:

```
BundleId                    : wsb-1a2b3c4d
ComputerName                :
DirectoryId                 : d-1a2b3c4d
ErrorCode                   :
ErrorMessage                :
IpAddress                   :
RootVolumeEncryptionEnabled : False
State                       : PENDING
SubnetId                    :
UserName                    : myuser
UserVolumeEncryptionEnabled : False
VolumeEncryptionKey         :
WorkspaceId                 : ws-1a2b3c4d
WorkspaceProperties         : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.WorkspaceProperties
```

Example 2: This command shows the values of child properties of `WorkSpaceProperties` for a workspace in the `us-west-2` region. For more information about the child properties of `WorkSpaceProperties`, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/workspaces/latest/api/API_WorkspaceProperties.html.

```
(Get-WKSWorkspace -Region us-west-2 -WorkSpaceId ws-
xdaf7hc9s).WorkspaceProperties
```

Output:

```
        ComputeTypeName                     : STANDARD
        RootVolumeSizeGib                   : 80
        RunningMode                         : AUTO_STOP
        RunningModeAutoStopTimeoutInMinutes : 60
        UserVolumeSizeGib                   : 50
```

Example 3: This command shows the value of the child property `RootVolumeSizeGib` of `WorkSpaceProperties` for a workspace in the `us-west-2` region. The root volume size, in GiB, is 80.

```
(Get-WKSWorkspace -Region us-west-2 -WorkSpaceId ws-
xdaf7hc9s).WorkspaceProperties.RootVolumeSizeGib
```

Output:

```
        80
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves details of all your WorkSpaces to the pipeline.

```
Get-WKSWorkspace
```

Output:

```
BundleId                    : wsb-1a2b3c4d
ComputerName                :
DirectoryId                 : d-1a2b3c4d
ErrorCode                   :
ErrorMessage                :
IpAddress                   :
RootVolumeEncryptionEnabled : False
State                       : PENDING
SubnetId                    :
UserName                    : myuser
UserVolumeEncryptionEnabled : False
VolumeEncryptionKey         :
WorkspaceId                 : ws-1a2b3c4d
WorkspaceProperties         : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.WorkspaceProperties
```

Example 2: This command shows the values of child properties of `WorkSpaceProperties` for a workspace in the `us-west-2` region. For more information about the child properties of `WorkSpaceProperties`, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/workspaces/latest/api/API_WorkspaceProperties.html.

```
(Get-WKSWorkspace -Region us-west-2 -WorkSpaceId ws-
xdaf7hc9s).WorkspaceProperties
```

Output:

```
        ComputeTypeName                     : STANDARD
        RootVolumeSizeGib                   : 80
        RunningMode                         : AUTO_STOP
        RunningModeAutoStopTimeoutInMinutes : 60
```

```
        UserVolumeSizeGib                   : 50
```

Example 3: This command shows the value of the child property `RootVolumeSizeGib` of `WorkSpaceProperties` for a workspace in the `us-west-2` region. The root volume size, in GiB, is 80.

```
(Get-WKSWorkspace -Region us-west-2 -WorkSpaceId ws-
xdaf7hc9s).WorkspaceProperties.RootVolumeSizeGib
```

Output:

```
        80
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To describe the connection status of a WorkSpace

The following `describe-workspaces-connection-status` example describes the connection status of the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces describe-workspaces-connection-status \
    --workspace-ids ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "WorkspacesConnectionStatus": [
        {
            "WorkspaceId": "ws-dk1xzr417",
            "ConnectionState": "CONNECTED",
            "ConnectionStateCheckTimestamp": 1662526214.744
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

For more information, see Administer your WorkSpaces in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample fetches the connection status for the specified Workspace

```
Get-WKSWorkspacesConnectionStatus -WorkspaceId ws-w123s234r
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample fetches the connection status for the specified Workspace

```
Get-WKSWorkspacesConnectionStatus -WorkspaceId ws-w123s234r
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify a WorkSpace creation property of a directory

The following `modify-workspace-creation-properties` example enables the `EnableInternetAccess` property for the specified directory. This enables automatic assignment of public IP addresses for the WorkSpaces created for the directory.

```
aws workspaces modify-workspace-creation-properties \
    --resource-id d-926722edaf \
    --workspace-creation-properties EnableInternetAccess=true
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Update directory details for your WorkSpaces in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample enables Internet Access and Maintenance Mode to true as default values while creating a Workspace

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceCreationProperty -Region us-west-2 -ResourceId
 d-123454a369 -WorkspaceCreationProperties_EnableInternetAccess $true -
WorkspaceCreationProperties_EnableMaintenanceMode $true
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables Internet Access and Maintenance Mode to true as default values while creating a Workspace

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceCreationProperty -Region us-west-2 -ResourceId
 d-123454a369 -WorkspaceCreationProperties_EnableInternetAccess $true -
WorkspaceCreationProperties_EnableMaintenanceMode $true
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyWorkspaceProperties` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyWorkspaceProperties`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the running mode of a WorkSpace

The following `modify-workspace-properties` example sets the running mode of the specified WorkSpace to `AUTO_STOP`.

```
aws workspaces modify-workspace-properties \
    --workspace-id ws-dk1xzr417 \
    --workspace-properties RunningMode=AUTO_STOP
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Modify a WorkSpace in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceProperties in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This Sample changes the Workspace Running Mode Property to Auto Stop for the specified Workspace

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceProperty -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v -Region us-west-2 -
WorkspaceProperties_RunningMode AUTO_STOP
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample changes the Workspace Running Mode Property to Auto Stop for the specified Workspace

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceProperty -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v -Region us-west-2 -
WorkspaceProperties_RunningMode AUTO_STOP
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `ModifyWorkspaceState` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `ModifyWorkspaceState`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To modify the state of a WorkSpace

The following `modify-workspace-state` example sets the state of the specified WorkSpace to `ADMIN_MAINTENANCE`.

```
aws workspaces modify-workspace-state \
    --workspace-id ws-dk1xzr417 \
    --workspace-state ADMIN_MAINTENANCE
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see WorkSpace maintenance in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceState in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample changes the state of the specified Workspace to Available

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceState -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v -Region us-west-2 -
WorkspaceState AVAILABLE
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample changes the state of the specified Workspace to Available

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceState -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v -Region us-west-2 -
WorkspaceState AVAILABLE
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use RebootWorkspaces with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use RebootWorkspaces.

CLI

AWS CLI

To reboot a WorkSpace

The following reboot-workspaces example reboots the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces reboot-workspaces \
    --reboot-workspace-requests ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": []
}
```

For more information, see Reboot a WorkSpace in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see RebootWorkspaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Reboots the specified WorkSpace.

```
Restart-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d"
```

Example 2: Reboots multiple WorkSpaces.

```
Restart-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d","ws-5a6b7c8d"
```

Example 3: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Restart-WKSWorkspace, causing the WorkSpaces to be restarted.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Restart-WKSWorkspace
```

- For API details, see RebootWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Reboots the specified WorkSpace.

```
Restart-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d"
```

Example 2: Reboots multiple WorkSpaces.

```
Restart-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d","ws-5a6b7c8d"
```

Example 3: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Restart-WKSWorkspace, causing the WorkSpaces to be restarted.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Restart-WKSWorkspace
```

- For API details, see RebootWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RebuildWorkspaces` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RebuildWorkspaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To rebuild a WorkSpace

The following `rebuild-workspaces` example rebuilds the specified WorkSpace.

```
aws workspaces rebuild-workspaces \
    --rebuild-workspace-requests ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": []
}
```

For more information, see Rebuild a WorkSpace in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see RebuildWorkspaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Rebuilds the specified WorkSpace.

```
Reset-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d"
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Reset-WKSWorkspace, causing the WorkSpaces to be rebuilt.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Reset-WKSWorkspace
```

- For API details, see RebuildWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Rebuilds the specified WorkSpace.

```
Reset-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d"
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Reset-WKSWorkspace, causing the WorkSpaces to be rebuilt.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Reset-WKSWorkspace
```

- For API details, see RebuildWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `RegisterWorkspaceDirectory` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `RegisterWorkspaceDirectory`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To register a directory

The following `register-workspace-directory` example registers the specified directory for use with Amazon WorkSpaces.

```
aws workspaces register-workspace-directory \
    --directory-id d-926722edaf
```

This command produces no output.

For more information, see Register an existing AWS Directory Service directory with WorkSpaces Personal in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see RegisterWorkspaceDirectory in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: This sample registers the specified directory for Workspaces Service

```
Register-WKSWorkspaceDirectory -DirectoryId d-123412a123 -EnableWorkDoc $false
```

- For API details, see RegisterWorkspaceDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample registers the specified directory for Workspaces Service

```
Register-WKSWorkspaceDirectory -DirectoryId d-123412a123 -EnableWorkDoc $false
```

- For API details, see RegisterWorkspaceDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `StopWorkspaces` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `StopWorkspaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To stop an AutoStop WorkSpace

The following `stop-workspaces` example stops the specified WorkSpace. The WorkSpace must have a running mode of `AutoStop`.

```
aws workspaces stop-workspaces \
    --stop-workspace-requests WorkspaceId=ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": []
}
```

For more information, see Stop and start an AutoStop WorkSpace in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see StopWorkspaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Stops multiple WorkSpaces.

```
Stop-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d5","ws-6a7b8c9d0"
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Stop-WKSWorkspace causing the WorkSpaces to be stopped.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Stop-WKSWorkspace
```

Example 3: This example shows how to pass StopRequest objects defining the WorkSpaces to be stopped.

```
$arrRequest = @()
$request1 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.StopRequest
$request1.WorkspaceId = 'ws-12345678'
$arrRequest += $request1
$request2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.StopRequest
$request2.WorkspaceId = 'ws-abcdefgh'
$arrRequest += $request2
Stop-WKSWorkspace -Request $arrRequest
```

- For API details, see StopWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Stops multiple WorkSpaces.

```
Stop-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d5","ws-6a7b8c9d0"
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Stop-WKSWorkspace causing the WorkSpaces to be stopped.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Stop-WKSWorkspace
```

Example 3: This example shows how to pass StopRequest objects defining the WorkSpaces to be stopped.

```
$arrRequest = @()
$request1 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.StopRequest
$request1.WorkspaceId = 'ws-12345678'
$arrRequest += $request1
$request2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.StopRequest
$request2.WorkspaceId = 'ws-abcdefgh'
$arrRequest += $request2
```

```
Stop-WKSWorkspace -Request $arrRequest
```

- For API details, see StopWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Use `TerminateWorkspaces` with a CLI

The following code examples show how to use `TerminateWorkspaces`.

CLI

AWS CLI

To terminate a WorkSpace

The following `terminate-workspaces` example terminates the specified workspace.

```
aws workspaces terminate-workspaces \
    --terminate-workspace-requests ws-dk1xzr417
```

Output:

```
{
    "FailedRequests": []
}
```

For more information, see Delete a WorkSpace in the *Amazon WorkSpaces Administration Guide*.

- For API details, see TerminateWorkspaces in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

PowerShell

Tools for PowerShell V4

Example 1: Terminates multiple WorkSpaces. use of the -Force switch stops the cmdlet from prompting for confirmation.

```
Remove-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d5","ws-6a7b8c9d0" -Force
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Remove-WKSWorkspace, terminating all of the WorkSpaces.

The cmdlet will prompt before each WorkSpace is terminated. To suppress the confirmation prompt add the -Force switch.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Remove-WKSWorkspace
```

Example 3: This example shows how to pass TerminateRequest objects defining the WorkSpaces to be terminated. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding, unless the -Force switch parameter is also specified.

```
$arrRequest = @()
$request1 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.TerminateRequest
$request1.WorkspaceId = 'ws-12345678'
$arrRequest += $request1
$request2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.TerminateRequest
$request2.WorkspaceId = 'ws-abcdefgh'
$arrRequest += $request2
Remove-WKSWorkspace -Request $arrRequest
```

- For API details, see TerminateWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V4)*.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Terminates multiple WorkSpaces. use of the -Force switch stops the cmdlet from prompting for confirmation.

```
Remove-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d5","ws-6a7b8c9d0" -Force
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Remove-WKSWorkspace, terminating all of the WorkSpaces. The cmdlet will prompt before each WorkSpace is terminated. To suppress the confirmation prompt add the -Force switch.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Remove-WKSWorkspace
```

Example 3: This example shows how to pass TerminateRequest objects defining the WorkSpaces to be terminated. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding, unless the -Force switch parameter is also specified.

```
$arrRequest = @()
```

```
$request1 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.TerminateRequest
$request1.WorkspaceId = 'ws-12345678'
$arrRequest += $request1
$request2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.TerminateRequest
$request2.WorkspaceId = 'ws-abcdefgh'
$arrRequest += $request2
Remove-WKSWorkspace -Request $arrRequest
```

- For API details, see TerminateWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples by SDK using AWS SDKs

The following code examples show you how to use AWS services with an AWS software development kit (SDK). This section is organized by SDK language.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Code examples

- Code examples for SDK for .NET
- Code examples for SDK for .NET (v4)
- Code examples for AWS CLI with Bash script
- Code examples for SDK for C++
- Code examples for SDK for Go V2
- Code examples for SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- Code examples for SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Code examples for SDK for Java 2.x
- Code examples for SDK for Kotlin
- Code examples for SDK for PHP
- Code examples for Tools for PowerShell V5

- Code examples for SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Code examples for SDK for Ruby
- Code examples for SDK for Rust
- Code examples for SDK for SAP ABAP
- Code examples for SDK for Swift

Code examples for SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for .NET Developer Guide** – More about using .NET with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- ACM examples using SDK for .NET
- API Gateway examples using SDK for .NET
- Aurora examples using SDK for .NET
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for .NET

- CloudWatch examples using SDK for .NET
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for .NET
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon ECS examples using SDK for .NET
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for .NET
- EventBridge examples using SDK for .NET
- EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for .NET
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for .NET
- IAM examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for .NET
- Kinesis examples using SDK for .NET
- AWS KMS examples using SDK for .NET
- Lambda examples using SDK for .NET
- MediaConvert examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for .NET
- Organizations examples using SDK for .NET
- Partner Central examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for .NET
- Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for .NET

- S3 Glacier examples using SDK for .NET
- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for .NET
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for .NET
- Step Functions examples using SDK for .NET
- AWS STS examples using SDK for .NET
- Support examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for .NET
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for .NET

ACM examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with ACM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCertificate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CertificateManager;
using Amazon.CertificateManager.Model;

namespace DescribeCertificate
{
    class DescribeCertificate
    {
        // The following example retrieves and displays the metadata for a
        // certificate using the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) service.

        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ACMRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
        private static AmazonCertificateManagerClient _client;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            _client = new
 Amazon.CertificateManager.AmazonCertificateManagerClient(ACMRegion);

            var describeCertificateReq = new DescribeCertificateRequest();
            // The ARN used here is just an example. Replace it with the ARN of
            // a certificate that exists on your account.
            describeCertificateReq.CertificateArn =
                "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/8cfd7dae-9b6a-2d07-92bc-1c309EXAMPLE";

            var certificateDetailResp =
                DescribeCertificateResponseAsync(client: _client, request:
 describeCertificateReq);
            var certificateDetail = certificateDetailResp.Result.Certificate;
```

```
            if (certificateDetail is not null)
            {
                DisplayCertificateDetails(certificateDetail);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays detailed metadata about a certificate retrieved
        /// using the ACM service.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="certificateDetail">The object that contains details
        /// returned from the call to DescribeCertificateAsync.</param>
        static void DisplayCertificateDetails(CertificateDetail certificateDetail)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCertificate Details: ");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Domain:
{certificateDetail.DomainName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Arn:
{certificateDetail.CertificateArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Subject: {certificateDetail.Subject}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Status: {certificateDetail.Status}");
            foreach (var san in certificateDetail.SubjectAlternativeNames)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate SubjectAlternativeName: {san}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the metadata associated with the ACM service certificate.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An AmazonCertificateManagerClient object
        /// used to call DescribeCertificateResponse.</param>
        /// <param name="request">The DescribeCertificateRequest object that
        /// will be passed to the method call.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        static async Task<DescribeCertificateResponse>
DescribeCertificateResponseAsync(
            AmazonCertificateManagerClient client, DescribeCertificateRequest
request)
        {
            var response = new DescribeCertificateResponse();

            try
            {
```

```
                response = await client.DescribeCertificateAsync(request);
            }
            catch (InvalidArnException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: The ARN specified is invalid.");
            }
            catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: The specified certificate could not be
 found.");
            }

            return response;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CertificateManager;
using Amazon.CertificateManager.Model;

namespace ListCertificates
```

```
{
    // The following example retrieves and displays a list of the
    // certificates defined for the default account using the AWS
    // Certificate Manager (ACM) service.
    class ListCertificates
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).

        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ACMRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
        private static AmazonCertificateManagerClient _client;

        static void Main(string[] args)
        {
            _client = new AmazonCertificateManagerClient(ACMRegion);
            var certificateList = ListCertificatesResponseAsync(client: _client);

            Console.WriteLine("Certificate Summary List\n");

            foreach (var certificate in
 certificateList.Result.CertificateSummaryList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate Domain: {certificate.DomainName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Certificate ARN:
 {certificate.CertificateArn}\n");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves a list of the certificates defined in this Region.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The ACM client object passed to the
        /// ListCertificateResAsync method call.</param>
        /// <param name="request"></param>
        /// <returns>The ListCertificatesResponse.</returns>
        static async Task<ListCertificatesResponse> ListCertificatesResponseAsync(
            AmazonCertificateManagerClient client)
        {
            var request = new ListCertificatesRequest();

            var response = await client.ListCertificatesAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

API Gateway examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with API Gateway.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios
- AWS community contributions

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Aurora examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Aurora.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
```

```
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the minimum size of an Auto Scaling group to zero, terminate all instances in the group, and delete the group.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
```

```
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest = new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            ForceDelete = true,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully deleted {groupName}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete {groupName}.");
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.

- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
```

```
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");
```

```
        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
```

```
        var targetGroup = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
 protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
```

```
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
```

```
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
 different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
 shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
 these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
```

```
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
```

```
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
 auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
 a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
 instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
 recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
 balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
 takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
 instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
```

```
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
```

```
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
```

```
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
```

```
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
{groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
```

```
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
```

```
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
```

```
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
```

```
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
```

```
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
```

```
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how the load balancer forwards
```

```
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });

               var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

               loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
           }
           catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
           {
               loadBalancerReady = false;
           }
           Thread.Sleep(10000);
       }
       // Create the listener.
       await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
           new CreateListenerRequest()
           {
               LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
               Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
               Port = targetGroup.Port,
```

```
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
```

```
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
```

```
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
```

```
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
```

```
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
```

```
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
```

```
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile

- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Nova Canvas
- Amazon Titan Text

- Anthropic Claude
- Cohere Command
- Meta Llama
- Mistral AI

Scenarios

Create a playground application to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models

The following code example shows how to create playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models through different modalities.

SDK for .NET

.NET Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a .NET MAUI Blazor sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock from C# code. This example shows how .NET and C# developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following four playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- A voice chat playground.
- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to and their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.Extensions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Http;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

public static class ConverseToolScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
    The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
    input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
   */

    public static BedrockActionsWrapper _bedrockActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static WeatherTool _weatherTool = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;
```

```
    // Change this string to use a different model with Converse API.
    private static string model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

    private static string system_prompt = @"
        You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
        the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
        If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.
        If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer
 to it in your response.
        To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

        - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
        - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
        - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
        - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
        - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use
          emojis where appropriate.
        - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
        - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
        - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.
    "
    ;

    private static string default_prompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int max_recursions = 5;

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Error)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddHttpClient()
                    .AddSingleton<IAmazonBedrockRuntime>(_ => new
AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1)) // Specify a region that has
access to the chosen model.
                    .AddTransient<BedrockActionsWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<WeatherTool>()
                    .RemoveAll<IHttpMessageHandlerBuilderFilter>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            await RunConversationAsync();

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        finally
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _bedrockActionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<BedrockActionsWrapper>();
        _weatherTool = host.Services.GetRequiredService<WeatherTool>();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The conversation array.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> RunConversationAsync()
    {
        // Print the greeting and a short user guide
        PrintHeader();

        // Start with an empty conversation
        var conversation = new List<Message>();

        // Get the first user input
        var userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();

        while (userInput != null)
        {
            // Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            var message = new Message { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content = new
List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text = userInput } } };
            conversation.Add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            var bedrockResponse = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            await ProcessModelResponseAsync(bedrockResponse, conversation,
max_recursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
        }

        PrintFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
 Bedrock, and returns the response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history including the next
 message to send.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from Amazon Bedrock.</returns>
    private static async Task<ConverseResponse>
 SendConversationToBedrock(List<Message> conversation)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tCalling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
 the response
        return await _bedrockActionsWrapper.SendConverseRequestAsync(model_id,
 system_prompt, conversation, _weatherTool.GetToolSpec());
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
 necessary actions based on the stop reason.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response returned via Amazon
 Bedrock.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    private static async Task ProcessModelResponseAsync(ConverseResponse
 modelResponse, List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0)
        {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
 infinite loop
            Console.WriteLine("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
 Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(modelResponse.Output.Message);

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "tool_use")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
 handler
```

```
            await HandleToolUseAsync(modelResponse.Output, conversation,
 maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "end_turn")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
 and finish the process
            PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.Output.Message.Content[0].Text);
            if (!_interactive)
            {
                default_prompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
 tool's response back to Bedrock.
    /// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
 sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response containing the tool use
 request.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    public static async Task HandleToolUseAsync(ConverseOutput modelResponse,
 List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        // Initialize an empty list of tool results
        var toolResults = new List<ContentBlock>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        foreach (var contentBlock in modelResponse.Message.Content)
        {
            if (!String.IsNullOrEmpty(contentBlock.Text))
            {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.Text);
            }

            if (contentBlock.ToolUse != null)
            {
```

```
                // If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
 tool
                var toolResponse = await InvokeTool(contentBlock.ToolUse);

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
 results
                toolResults.Add(new ContentBlock
                {
                    ToolResult = new ToolResultBlock()
                    {
                        ToolUseId = toolResponse.ToolUseId,
                        Content = new List<ToolResultContentBlock>()
                            { new ToolResultContentBlock { Json =
 toolResponse.Content } }
                    }
                });
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        var message = new Message() { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
 toolResults };

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned its
 final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
 response.
    /// If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="payload">The payload containing the tool name and input data.</
param>
    /// <returns>The tool's response or an error message.</returns>
    public static async Task<ToolResponse> InvokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload)
    {
```

```
        var toolName = payload.Name;

        if (toolName == "Weather_Tool")
        {
            var inputData = payload.Input.AsDictionary();
            PrintToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            var weatherResponse = await
_weatherTool.FetchWeatherDataAsync(inputData["latitude"].ToString(),
inputData["longitude"].ToString());
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
weatherResponse };
        }
        else
        {
            var errorMessage = $"\tThe requested tool with name '{toolName}' does
not exist.";
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content = new
{ error = true, message = errorMessage } };
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
    /// Returns null if the user enters 'x' to exit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="prompt">The prompt to display to the user.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's input or null if the user chooses to exit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetUserInputAsync(string prompt = "\tYour
weather info request:")
    {
        var userInput = default_prompt;
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('*', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"{prompt} (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(userInput))
        {
```

```
            prompt = "\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
city";
            return await GetUserInputAsync(prompt);
        }

        if (userInput.ToLowerInvariant() == "x")
        {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the welcome message and usage guide for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintHeader()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
        ==================================================

        This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
locations.
        You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
coordinates. Weather information
        will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API.

        Example queries:
        - What's the weather like in New York?
        - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
        - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

        To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

        P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English!
        Have fun and experiment with the app!
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the footer information for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    public static void PrintFooter()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!

        For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
        ==================================================
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs information about the tool use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toolName">The name of the tool being used.</param>
    /// <param name="inputData">The input data for the tool.</param>
    public static void PrintToolUse(string toolName, Dictionary<string, Document>
 inputData)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\n\tInvoking tool: {toolName} with input:
 {inputData["latitude"].ToString()}, {inputData["longitude"].ToString()}...\n");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the model's response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The model's response message.</param>
    public static void PrintModelResponse(string message)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tThe model's response:\n");
        Console.WriteLine(message);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Weather tool that will be invoked when requested by the Bedrock response.
/// </summary>
public class WeatherTool
{
    private readonly ILogger<WeatherTool> _logger;
    private readonly IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory;

    public WeatherTool(ILogger<WeatherTool> logger, IHttpClientFactory
 httpClientFactory)
    {
        _logger = logger;
        _httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    /// defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    /// For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The tool specification for the Weather tool.</returns>
    public ToolSpecification GetToolSpec()
    {
        ToolSpecification toolSpecification = new ToolSpecification();

        toolSpecification.Name = "Weather_Tool";
        toolSpecification.Description = "Get the current weather for a given
 location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";

        Document toolSpecDocument = Document.FromObject(
            new
            {
                type = "object",
                properties = new
```

```
                {
                    latitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the location."
                    },
                    longitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location."
                    }
                },
                required = new[] { "latitude", "longitude" }
            });

        toolSpecification.InputSchema = new ToolInputSchema() { Json =
 toolSpecDocument };
        return toolSpecification;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    /// Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="latitude">The latitude of the location.</param>
    /// <param name="longitude">The longitude of the location.</param>
    /// <returns>The weather data or an error message.</returns>
    public async Task<Document> FetchWeatherDataAsync(string latitude, string
 longitude)
    {
        string endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";

        try
        {
            var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            var response = await httpClient.GetAsync($"{endpoint}?
latitude={latitude}&longitude={longitude}&current_weather=True");
            response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();
            var weatherData = await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            Document weatherDocument = Document.FromObject(
                new { weather_data = weatherData });
```

```
            return weatherDocument;
        }
        catch (HttpRequestException e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Unexpected error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/> class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
```

```
// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

Send a conversation of messages to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/> class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
```

```
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Nova
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
```

```
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection.Extensions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Http;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

public static class ConverseToolScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API
 and a weather tool.
    The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide
 weather information based on user
    input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
   */

    public static BedrockActionsWrapper _bedrockActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static WeatherTool _weatherTool = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;
```

```
    // Change this string to use a different model with Converse API.
    private static string model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

    private static string system_prompt = @"
        You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
        the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
        If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.
        If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer
 to it in your response.
        To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

        - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
        - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
        - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
        - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.
        - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use
          emojis where appropriate.
        - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
        - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
        - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.
    "
    ;

    private static string default_prompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int max_recursions = 5;

    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Error)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddHttpClient()
                    .AddSingleton<IAmazonBedrockRuntime>(_ => new
AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1)) // Specify a region that has
access to the chosen model.
                    .AddTransient<BedrockActionsWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<WeatherTool>()
                    .RemoveAll<IHttpMessageHandlerBuilderFilter>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            await RunConversationAsync();

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        finally
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _bedrockActionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<BedrockActionsWrapper>();
        _weatherTool = host.Services.GetRequiredService<WeatherTool>();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The conversation array.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> RunConversationAsync()
    {
        // Print the greeting and a short user guide
        PrintHeader();

        // Start with an empty conversation
        var conversation = new List<Message>();

        // Get the first user input
        var userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();

        while (userInput != null)
        {
            // Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            var message = new Message { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content = new
List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text = userInput } } };
            conversation.Add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            var bedrockResponse = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            await ProcessModelResponseAsync(bedrockResponse, conversation,
max_recursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            userInput = await GetUserInputAsync();
        }

        PrintFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
 Bedrock, and returns the response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history including the next
 message to send.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from Amazon Bedrock.</returns>
    private static async Task<ConverseResponse>
 SendConversationToBedrock(List<Message> conversation)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tCalling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
 the response
        return await _bedrockActionsWrapper.SendConverseRequestAsync(model_id,
 system_prompt, conversation, _weatherTool.GetToolSpec());
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
 necessary actions based on the stop reason.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response returned via Amazon
 Bedrock.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    private static async Task ProcessModelResponseAsync(ConverseResponse
 modelResponse, List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0)
        {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
 infinite loop
            Console.WriteLine("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
 Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(modelResponse.Output.Message);

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "tool_use")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
 handler
```

```
            await HandleToolUseAsync(modelResponse.Output, conversation,
 maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponse.StopReason == "end_turn")
        {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
 and finish the process
            PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.Output.Message.Content[0].Text);
            if (!_interactive)
            {
                default_prompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
 tool's response back to Bedrock.
    /// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
 sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelResponse">The model's response containing the tool use
 request.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The conversation history.</param>
    /// <param name="maxRecursion">The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.</
param>
    public static async Task HandleToolUseAsync(ConverseOutput modelResponse,
 List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion)
    {
        // Initialize an empty list of tool results
        var toolResults = new List<ContentBlock>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        foreach (var contentBlock in modelResponse.Message.Content)
        {
            if (!String.IsNullOrEmpty(contentBlock.Text))
            {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.Text);
            }

            if (contentBlock.ToolUse != null)
            {
```

```
                // If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the
 tool
                var toolResponse = await InvokeTool(contentBlock.ToolUse);

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
 results
                toolResults.Add(new ContentBlock
                {
                    ToolResult = new ToolResultBlock()
                    {
                        ToolUseId = toolResponse.ToolUseId,
                        Content = new List<ToolResultContentBlock>()
                            { new ToolResultContentBlock { Json =
 toolResponse.Content } }
                    }
                });
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        var message = new Message() { Role = ConversationRole.User, Content =
 toolResults };

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.Add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = await SendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned its
 final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
 response.
    /// If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="payload">The payload containing the tool name and input data.</
param>
    /// <returns>The tool's response or an error message.</returns>
    public static async Task<ToolResponse> InvokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload)
    {
```

```
        var toolName = payload.Name;

        if (toolName == "Weather_Tool")
        {
            var inputData = payload.Input.AsDictionary();
            PrintToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            var weatherResponse = await
_weatherTool.FetchWeatherDataAsync(inputData["latitude"].ToString(),
inputData["longitude"].ToString());
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content =
weatherResponse };
        }
        else
        {
            var errorMessage = $"\tThe requested tool with name '{toolName}' does
not exist.";
            return new ToolResponse { ToolUseId = payload.ToolUseId, Content = new
{ error = true, message = errorMessage } };
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
    /// Returns null if the user enters 'x' to exit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="prompt">The prompt to display to the user.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's input or null if the user chooses to exit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetUserInputAsync(string prompt = "\tYour
weather info request:")
    {
        var userInput = default_prompt;
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('*', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"{prompt} (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(userInput))
        {
```

```
            prompt = "\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
city";
            return await GetUserInputAsync(prompt);
        }

        if (userInput.ToLowerInvariant() == "x")
        {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the welcome message and usage guide for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
    public static void PrintHeader()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
        ==================================================

        This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
locations.
        You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
coordinates. Weather information
        will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API.

        Example queries:
        - What's the weather like in New York?
        - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
        - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

        To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

        P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English!
        Have fun and experiment with the app!
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the footer information for the tool use demo.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    public static void PrintFooter()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(@"
        ==================================================
        Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!

        For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look
 at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
        ==================================================
        ");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs information about the tool use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="toolName">The name of the tool being used.</param>
    /// <param name="inputData">The input data for the tool.</param>
    public static void PrintToolUse(string toolName, Dictionary<string, Document>
 inputData)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\n\tInvoking tool: {toolName} with input:
 {inputData["latitude"].ToString()}, {inputData["longitude"].ToString()}...\n");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Logs the model's response.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The model's response message.</param>
    public static void PrintModelResponse(string message)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\tThe model's response:\n");
        Console.WriteLine(message);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime.Documents;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ConverseToolScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Weather tool that will be invoked when requested by the Bedrock response.
/// </summary>
public class WeatherTool
{
    private readonly ILogger<WeatherTool> _logger;
    private readonly IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory;

    public WeatherTool(ILogger<WeatherTool> logger, IHttpClientFactory
 httpClientFactory)
    {
        _logger = logger;
        _httpClientFactory = httpClientFactory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    /// defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    /// For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The tool specification for the Weather tool.</returns>
    public ToolSpecification GetToolSpec()
    {
        ToolSpecification toolSpecification = new ToolSpecification();

        toolSpecification.Name = "Weather_Tool";
        toolSpecification.Description = "Get the current weather for a given
 location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";

        Document toolSpecDocument = Document.FromObject(
            new
            {
                type = "object",
                properties = new
```

```
                {
                    latitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the location."
                    },
                    longitude = new
                    {
                        type = "string",
                        description = "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location."
                    }
                },
                required = new[] { "latitude", "longitude" }
            });

        toolSpecification.InputSchema = new ToolInputSchema() { Json =
 toolSpecDocument };
        return toolSpecification;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-
Meteo API.
    /// Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="latitude">The latitude of the location.</param>
    /// <param name="longitude">The longitude of the location.</param>
    /// <returns>The weather data or an error message.</returns>
    public async Task<Document> FetchWeatherDataAsync(string latitude, string
 longitude)
    {
        string endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";

        try
        {
            var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            var response = await httpClient.GetAsync($"{endpoint}?
latitude={latitude}&longitude={longitude}&current_weather=True");
            response.EnsureSuccessStatusCode();
            var weatherData = await response.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            Document weatherDocument = Document.FromObject(
                new { weather_data = weatherData });
```

```
            return weatherDocument;
        }
        catch (HttpRequestException e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError(e, "Unexpected error fetching weather data: {Message}",
 e.Message);
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for interacting with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
/// </summary>
public class BedrockActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonBedrockRuntime _bedrockClient;
    private readonly ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="BedrockActionsWrapper"/> class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient">The Bedrock Converse API client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The logger instance.</param>
    public BedrockActionsWrapper(IAmazonBedrockRuntime bedrockClient,
 ILogger<BedrockActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _bedrockClient = bedrockClient;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Sends a Converse request to the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="modelId">The Bedrock Model Id.</param>
    /// <param name="systemPrompt">A system prompt instruction.</param>
    /// <param name="conversation">The array of messages in the conversation.</
param>
    /// <param name="toolSpec">The specification for a tool.</param>
    /// <returns>The response of the model.</returns>
    public async Task<ConverseResponse> SendConverseRequestAsync(string modelId,
 string systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ConverseRequest()
            {
                ModelId = modelId,
                System = new List<SystemContentBlock>()
                {
                    new SystemContentBlock()
                    {
                        Text = systemPrompt
                    }
                },
                Messages = conversation,
                ToolConfig = new ToolConfiguration()
                {
                    Tools = new List<Tool>()
                    {
                        new Tool()
                        {
                            ToolSpec = toolSpec
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _bedrockClient.ConverseAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
        catch (ModelNotReadyException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Model not ready, please wait and try again.");
            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error occurred while sending Converse request.");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
// Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
```

```
// Set the model ID.
var modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

// Define the image generation prompt for the model.
var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot.";

// Create a random seed between 0 and 858,993,459
int seed = new Random().Next(0, 858993460);

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    taskType = "TEXT_IMAGE",
    textToImageParams = new
    {
        text = prompt
    },
    imageGenerationConfig = new
    {
        seed,
        quality = "standard",
        width = 512,
        height = 512,
        numberOfImages = 1
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract the image data.
```

```
    var base64Image = modelResponse["images"]?[0].ToString() ?? "";

    // Save the image in a local folder
    string savedPath = AmazonNovaCanvas.InvokeModel.SaveBase64Image(base64Image);
    Console.WriteLine($"Image saved to: {savedPath}");
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
```

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    inputText = userMessage,
    textGenerationConfig = new
    {
        maxTokenCount = 512,
        temperature = 0.5
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["outputText"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
```

```
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
```

```
// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    anthropic_version = "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5,
    messages = new[]
    {
        new { role = "user", content = userMessage }
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["delta"]?["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Cohere Command

InvokeModel: Command R and R+

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";
```

```
// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    message = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModel: Command and Command Light

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});
```

```
// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["generations"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream: Command R and R+

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    message = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);
```

```
    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream: Command and Command Light

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
```

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = userMessage,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["generations"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
```

```
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Meta Llama

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";
```

```
// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Llama 2's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $@"
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_gen_len = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["generation"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Llama 2's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $@"
```

```
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_gen_len = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["generation"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Mistral AI

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral models, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]";
```

```
//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["outputs"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral AI models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the prompt for the model.
var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
var formattedPrompt = $"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    prompt = formattedPrompt,
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest()
```

```
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var streamingResponse = await
 client.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var item in streamingResponse.Body)
    {
        var chunk = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<JsonObject>((item as
 PayloadPart).Bytes);
        var text = chunk["outputs"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
        Console.Write(text);
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with CloudWatch.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List CloudWatch namespaces and metrics.
- Get statistics for a metric and for estimated billing.
- Create and update a dashboard.
- Create and add data to a metric.
- Create and trigger an alarm, then view alarm history.
- Add an anomaly detector.
- Get a metric image, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class CloudWatchScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
```

```
    To enable billing metrics and statistics for this example, make sure billing
 alerts are enabled for your account:
    https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
monitor_estimated_charges_with_cloudwatch.html#turning_on_billing_metrics

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List and select a CloudWatch namespace.
        2. List and select a CloudWatch metric.
        3. Get statistics for a CloudWatch metric.
        4. Get estimated billing statistics for the last week.
        5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with two metrics.
        6. List current CloudWatch dashboards.
        7. Create a CloudWatch custom metric and add metric data.
        8. Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
        9. Create a CloudWatch alarm for the custom metric.
       10. Describe current CloudWatch alarms.
       11. Get recent data for the custom metric.
       12. Add data to the custom metric to trigger the alarm.
       13. Wait for an alarm state.
       14. Get history for the CloudWatch alarm.
       15. Add an anomaly detector.
       16. Describe current anomaly detectors.
       17. Get and display a metric image.
       18. Clean up resources.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static CloudWatchWrapper _cloudWatchWrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
    private static readonly List<string> _statTypes = new List<string>
 { "SampleCount", "Average", "Sum", "Minimum", "Maximum" };
    private static SingleMetricAnomalyDetector? anomalyDetector = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
```

```
            .AddTransient<CloudWatchWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<CloudWatchScenario>();

        _cloudWatchWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<CloudWatchWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            var selectedNamespace = await SelectNamespace();
            var selectedMetric = await SelectMetric(selectedNamespace);
            await GetAndDisplayMetricStatistics(selectedNamespace, selectedMetric);
            await GetAndDisplayEstimatedBilling();
            await CreateDashboardWithMetrics();
            await ListDashboards();
            await CreateNewCustomMetric();
            await AddMetricToDashboard();
            await CreateMetricAlarm();
            await DescribeAlarms();
            await GetCustomMetricData();
            await AddMetricDataForAlarm();
            await CheckForMetricAlarm();
            await GetAlarmHistory();
            anomalyDetector = await AddAnomalyDetector();
            await DescribeAnomalyDetectors();
            await GetAndOpenMetricImage();
            await CleanupResources();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
```

```
            await CleanupResources();
        }

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Select a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected namespace.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SelectNamespace()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. Select a CloudWatch Namespace from a list of
Namespaces.");
        var metrics = await _cloudWatchWrapper.ListMetrics();
        // Get a distinct list of namespaces.
        var namespaces = metrics.Select(m => m.Namespace).Distinct().ToList();
        for (int i = 0; i < namespaces.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {namespaces[i]}");
        }

        var namespaceChoiceNumber = 0;
        while (namespaceChoiceNumber < 1 || namespaceChoiceNumber >
namespaces.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select a namespace by entering a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out namespaceChoiceNumber);
        }

        var selectedNamespace = namespaces[namespaceChoiceNumber - 1];

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return selectedNamespace;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Select a metric from a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <returns>The metric name.</returns>
```

```
    private static async Task<Metric> SelectMetric(string metricNamespace)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Select a CloudWatch metric from a namespace.");

        var namespaceMetrics = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.ListMetrics(metricNamespace);

        for (int i = 0; i < namespaceMetrics.Count && i < 15; i++)
        {
            var dimensionsWithValues = namespaceMetrics[i].Dimensions
                .Where(d => !string.Equals("None", d.Value));
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {namespaceMetrics[i].MetricName} " +
                              $"{string.Join(", :", dimensionsWithValues.Select(d =>
d.Value))}");
        }

        var metricChoiceNumber = 0;
        while (metricChoiceNumber < 1 || metricChoiceNumber >
namespaceMetrics.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select a metric by entering a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out metricChoiceNumber);
        }

        var selectedMetric = namespaceMetrics[metricChoiceNumber - 1];

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return selectedMetric;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get and display metric statistics for a specific metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAndDisplayMetricStatistics(string metricNamespace,
Metric metric)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"3. Get CloudWatch metric statistics for the last day.");

        for (int i = 0; i < _statTypes.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_statTypes[i]}");
        }

        var statisticChoiceNumber = 0;
        while (statisticChoiceNumber < 1 || statisticChoiceNumber >
_statTypes.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select a metric statistic by entering a number from the preceding
list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out statisticChoiceNumber);
        }

        var selectedStatistic = _statTypes[statisticChoiceNumber - 1];
        var statisticsList = new List<string> { selectedStatistic };

        var metricStatistics = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatistics(metricNamespace, metric.MetricName,
statisticsList, metric.Dimensions, 1, 60);

        if (!metricStatistics.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No {selectedStatistic} statistics found for {metric}
in namespace {metricNamespace}.");
        }

        metricStatistics = metricStatistics.OrderBy(s => s.Timestamp).ToList();
        for (int i = 0; i < metricStatistics.Count && i < 10; i++)
        {
            var metricStat = metricStatistics[i];
            var statValue =
metricStat.GetType().GetProperty(selectedStatistic)!.GetValue(metricStat, null);
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. Timestamp
{metricStatistics[i].Timestamp:G} {selectedStatistic}: {statValue}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get and display estimated billing statistics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAndDisplayEstimatedBilling()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last
week.");

        var billingStatistics = await SetupBillingStatistics();

        for (int i = 0; i < billingStatistics.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. Timestamp
{billingStatistics[i].Timestamp:G} : {billingStatistics[i].Maximum}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get billing statistics using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing statistics.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<Datapoint>> SetupBillingStatistics()
    {
        // Make a request for EstimatedCharges with a period of one day for the past
seven days.
        var billingStatistics = await _cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatistics(
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            new List<string>() { "Maximum" },
            new List<Dimension>() { new Dimension { Name = "Currency", Value =
"USD" } },
            7,
            86400);

        billingStatistics = billingStatistics.OrderBy(n => n.Timestamp).ToList();

        return billingStatistics;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a dashboard with metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateDashboardWithMetrics()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.");
        var dashboardName = _configuration["dashboardName"];
        var newDashboard = new DashboardModel();
        _configuration.GetSection("dashboardExampleBody").Bind(newDashboard);
        var newDashboardString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(
            newDashboard,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            {
                DefaultIgnoreCondition = JsonIgnoreCondition.WhenWritingNull
            });
        var validationMessages =
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutDashboard(dashboardName,
newDashboardString);

        Console.WriteLine(validationMessages.Any() ? $"\tValidation messages:" :
null);
        for (int i = 0; i < validationMessages.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {validationMessages[i].Message}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tDashboard {dashboardName} was created.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDashboards()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. List the CloudWatch dashboards in the current
account.");
```

```
        var dashboards = await _cloudWatchWrapper.ListDashboards();

        for (int i = 0; i < dashboards.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {dashboards[i].DashboardName}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and add data for a new custom metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateNewCustomMetric()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Create and add data for a new custom metric.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var customData = await PutRandomMetricData(customMetricName,
customMetricNamespace);

        var valuesString = string.Join(',', customData.Select(d => d.Value));
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded metric values for for metric {customMetricName}:
\n\t{valuesString}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Add some metric data using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    private static async Task<List<MetricDatum>> PutRandomMetricData(string
customMetricName,
        string customMetricNamespace)
    {
        List<MetricDatum> customData = new List<MetricDatum>();
```

```
        Random rnd = new Random();

        // Add 10 random values up to 100, starting with a timestamp 15 minutes in
the past.
        var utcNowMinus15 = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(-15);
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
        {
            var metricValue = rnd.Next(0, 100);
            customData.Add(
                new MetricDatum
                {
                    MetricName = customMetricName,
                    Value = metricValue,
                    TimestampUtc = utcNowMinus15.AddMinutes(i)
                }
            );
        }

        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricData(customMetricNamespace, customData);
        return customData;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddMetricToDashboard()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. Add the new custom metric to the dashboard.");

        var dashboardName = _configuration["dashboardName"];

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var validationMessages = await SetupDashboard(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName, dashboardName);

        Console.WriteLine(validationMessages.Any() ? $"\tValidation messages:" :
null);
        for (int i = 0; i < validationMessages.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {validationMessages[i].Message}");
```

```
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tDashboard {dashboardName} updated with metric
{customMetricName}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Set up a dashboard using a call to the wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> SetupDashboard(
        string customMetricNamespace, string customMetricName, string dashboardName)
    {
        // Get the dashboard model from configuration.
        var newDashboard = new DashboardModel();
        _configuration.GetSection("dashboardExampleBody").Bind(newDashboard);

        // Add a new metric to the dashboard.
        newDashboard.Widgets.Add(new Widget
        {
            Height = 8,
            Width = 8,
            Y = 8,
            X = 0,
            Type = "metric",
            Properties = new Properties
            {
                Metrics = new List<List<object>>
                    { new() { customMetricNamespace, customMetricName } },
                View = "timeSeries",
                Region = "us-east-1",
                Stat = "Sum",
                Period = 86400,
                YAxis = new YAxis { Left = new Left { Min = 0, Max = 100 } },
                Title = "Custom Metric Widget",
                LiveData = true,
                Sparkline = true,
                Trend = true,
                Stacked = false,
                SetPeriodToTimeRange = false
```

```
            }
        });

        var newDashboardString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(newDashboard,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            { DefaultIgnoreCondition = JsonIgnoreCondition.WhenWritingNull });
        var validationMessages =
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutDashboard(dashboardName,
newDashboardString);

        return validationMessages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a CloudWatch alarm for the new metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateMetricAlarm()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Create a CloudWatch alarm for the new metric.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var alarmName = _configuration["exampleAlarmName"];
        var accountId = _configuration["accountId"];
        var region = _configuration["region"];
        var emailTopic = _configuration["emailTopic"];
        var alarmActions = new List<string>();

        if (GetYesNoResponse(
                $"\tAdd an email action for topic {emailTopic} to alarm {alarmName}?
(y/n)"))
        {
            _cloudWatchWrapper.AddEmailAlarmAction(accountId, region, emailTopic,
alarmActions);
        }

        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricEmailAlarm(
            "Example metric alarm",
            alarmName,
            ComparisonOperator.GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold,
            customMetricName,
```

```
            customMetricNamespace,
            100,
            alarmActions);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAlarm {alarmName} added for metric
{customMetricName}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe Alarms.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeAlarms()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Describe CloudWatch alarms in the current
account.");

        var alarms = await _cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAlarms();
        alarms = alarms.OrderByDescending(a => a.StateUpdatedTimestamp).ToList();

        for (int i = 0; i < alarms.Count && i < 10; i++)
        {
            var alarm = alarms[i];
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {alarm.AlarmName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tState: {alarm.StateValue} for {alarm.MetricName}
{alarm.ComparisonOperator} {alarm.Threshold}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the recent data for the metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetCustomMetricData()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"11. Get current data for new custom metric.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];
```

```
        var accountId = _configuration["accountId"];

        var query = new List<MetricDataQuery>
        {
            new MetricDataQuery
            {
                AccountId = accountId,
                Id = "m1",
                Label = "Custom Metric Data",
                MetricStat = new MetricStat
                {
                    Metric = new Metric
                    {
                        MetricName = customMetricName,
                        Namespace = customMetricNamespace,
                    },
                    Period = 1,
                    Stat = "Maximum"
                }
            }
        };

        var metricData = await _cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricData(
            20,
            true,
            DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(1),
            20,
            query);

        for (int i = 0; i < metricData.Count; i++)
        {
            for (int j = 0; j < metricData[i].Values.Count; j++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tTimestamp {metricData[i].Timestamps[j]:G} Value:
{metricData[i].Values[j]}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add metric data to trigger an alarm.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddMetricDataForAlarm()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"12. Add metric data to the custom metric to trigger an
alarm.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];
        var nowUtc = DateTime.UtcNow;
        List<MetricDatum> customData = new List<MetricDatum>
        {
            new MetricDatum
            {
                MetricName = customMetricName,
                Value = 101,
                TimestampUtc = nowUtc.AddMinutes(-2)
            },
            new MetricDatum
            {
                MetricName = customMetricName,
                Value = 101,
                TimestampUtc = nowUtc.AddMinutes(-1)
            },
            new MetricDatum
            {
                MetricName = customMetricName,
                Value = 101,
                TimestampUtc = nowUtc
            }
        };
        var valuesString = string.Join(',', customData.Select(d => d.Value));
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded metric values for for metric {customMetricName}:
\n\t{valuesString}");
        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricData(customMetricNamespace, customData);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check for a metric alarm using the DescribeAlarmsForMetric action.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    private static async Task CheckForMetricAlarm()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"13. Checking for an alarm state.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];
        var hasAlarm = false;
        var retries = 10;
        while (!hasAlarm && retries > 0)
        {
            var alarms = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAlarmsForMetric(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName);
            hasAlarm = alarms.Any(a => a.StateValue == StateValue.ALARM);
            retries--;
            Thread.Sleep(20000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(hasAlarm
            ? $"\tAlarm state found for {customMetricName}."
            : $"\tNo Alarm state found for {customMetricName} after 10 retries.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get history for an alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAlarmHistory()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"14. Get alarm history.");

        var exampleAlarmName = _configuration["exampleAlarmName"];

        var alarmHistory = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAlarmHistory(exampleAlarmName, 2);

        for (int i = 0; i < alarmHistory.Count; i++)
        {
            var history = alarmHistory[i];
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {history.HistorySummary}, time
{history.Timestamp:g}");
        }
        if (!alarmHistory.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tNo alarm history data found for
{exampleAlarmName}.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an anomaly detector.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<SingleMetricAnomalyDetector> AddAnomalyDetector()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Add an anomaly detector.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var detector = new SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
        {
            MetricName = customMetricName,
            Namespace = customMetricNamespace,
            Stat = "Maximum"
        };
        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutAnomalyDetector(detector);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded anomaly detector for metric
{customMetricName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return detector;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe anomaly detectors.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeAnomalyDetectors()
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"16. Describe anomaly detectors in the current
account.");

        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var detectors = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.DescribeAnomalyDetectors(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName);

        for (int i = 0; i < detectors.Count; i++)
        {
            var detector = detectors[i];
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}.
{detector.SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.MetricName}, state {detector.StateValue}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Fetch and open a metrics image for a CloudWatch metric and namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetAndOpenMetricImage()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("17. Get a metric image from CloudWatch.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tGetting Image data for custom metric.");
        var customMetricNamespace = _configuration["customMetricNamespace"];
        var customMetricName = _configuration["customMetricName"];

        var memoryStream = await
_cloudWatchWrapper.GetTimeSeriesMetricImage(customMetricNamespace,
customMetricName, "Maximum", 10);
        var file = _cloudWatchWrapper.SaveMetricImage(memoryStream, "MetricImages");

        ProcessStartInfo info = new ProcessStartInfo();

        Console.WriteLine($"\tFile saved as {Path.GetFileName(file)}.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tPress enter to open the image.");
        Console.ReadLine();
```

```
        info.FileName = Path.Combine("ms-photos://", file);
        info.UseShellExecute = true;
        info.CreateNoWindow = true;
        info.Verb = string.Empty;

        Process.Start(info);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up created resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace for metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The CloudWatch metric.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"18. Clean up resources.");

        var dashboardName = _configuration["dashboardName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete dashboard {dashboardName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting dashboard.");
            var dashboardList = new List<string> { dashboardName };
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.DeleteDashboards(dashboardList);
        }

        var alarmName = _configuration["exampleAlarmName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete alarm {alarmName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCleaning up alarms.");
            var alarms = new List<string> { alarmName };
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.DeleteAlarms(alarms);
        }

        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete anomaly detector? (y/n)") &&
anomalyDetector != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCleaning up anomaly detector.");

            await _cloudWatchWrapper.DeleteAnomalyDetector(
                anomalyDetector);
```

```
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for CloudWatch actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon CloudWatch methods.
/// </summary>
public class CloudWatchWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCloudWatch _amazonCloudWatch;
    private readonly ILogger<CloudWatchWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the CloudWatch wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonCloudWatch">The injected CloudWatch client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public CloudWatchWrapper(IAmazonCloudWatch amazonCloudWatch,
 ILogger<CloudWatchWrapper> logger)

    {
        _logger = logger;
        _amazonCloudWatch = amazonCloudWatch;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List metrics available, optionally within a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">Optional CloudWatch namespace to use when
listing metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="filter">Optional dimension filter.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">Optional metric name filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of metrics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Metric>> ListMetrics(string? metricNamespace = null,
DimensionFilter? filter = null, string? metricName = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Metric>();
        var paginateMetrics = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListMetrics(
            new ListMetricsRequest
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                Dimensions = filter != null ? new List<DimensionFilter> { filter } :
null,
                MetricName = metricName
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var metric in paginateMetrics.Metrics)
        {
            results.Add(metric);
        }

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to get statistics for a specific CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="statistics">The list of statistics to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dimensions">The list of dimensions to include.</param>
    /// <param name="days">The number of days in the past to include.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period for the data.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of DataPoint objects for the statistics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Datapoint>> GetMetricStatistics(string metricNamespace,
        string metricName, List<string> statistics, List<Dimension> dimensions, int
days, int period)
```

```
    {
        var metricStatistics = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(
            new GetMetricStatisticsRequest()
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName,
                Dimensions = dimensions,
                Statistics = statistics,
                StartTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-days),
                EndTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                Period = period
            });

        return metricStatistics.Datapoints;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to create or add to a dashboard with metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name for the dashboard.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardBody">The metric data in JSON for the dashboard.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages for the dashboard.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> PutDashboard(string
 dashboardName,
        string dashboardBody)
    {
        // Updating a dashboard replaces all contents.
        // Best practice is to include a text widget indicating this dashboard was
 created programmatically.
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutDashboardAsync(
            new PutDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName,
                DashboardBody = dashboardBody
            });

        return dashboardResponse.DashboardValidationMessages;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information on a dashboard.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
    /// <returns>A JSON object with dashboard information.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDashboard(string dashboardName)
    {
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetDashboardAsync(
            new GetDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName
            });

        return dashboardResponse.DashboardBody;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of DashboardEntry objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardEntry>> ListDashboards()
    {
        var results = new List<DashboardEntry>();
        var paginateDashboards = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListDashboards(
            new ListDashboardsRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var data in paginateDashboards.DashboardEntries)
        {
            results.Add(data);
        }

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to add metric data to a CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricData">A data object for the metric data.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutMetricData(string metricNamespace,
        List<MetricDatum> metricData)
    {
        var putDataResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricDataAsync(
            new PutMetricDataRequest()
            {
```

```
                MetricData = metricData,
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
            });

        return putDataResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get an image for a metric graphed over time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="stat">The name of the stat to chart.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period to use for the chart.</param>
    /// <returns>A memory stream for the chart image.</returns>
    public async Task<MemoryStream> GetTimeSeriesMetricImage(string metricNamespace,
string metric, string stat, int period)
    {
        var metricImageWidget = new
        {
            title = "Example Metric Graph",
            view = "timeSeries",
            stacked = false,
            period = period,
            width = 1400,
            height = 600,
            metrics = new List<List<object>>
                { new() { metricNamespace, metric, new { stat } } }
        };

        var metricImageWidgetString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(metricImageWidget);
        var imageResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricWidgetImageAsync(
            new GetMetricWidgetImageRequest()
            {
                MetricWidget = metricImageWidgetString
            });

        return imageResponse.MetricWidgetImage;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save a metric image to a file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="memoryStream">The MemoryStream for the metric image.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The path to the file.</returns>
    public string SaveMetricImage(MemoryStream memoryStream, string metricName)
    {
        var metricFileName = $"{metricName}_{DateTime.Now.Ticks}.png";
        using var sr = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
        // Writes the memory stream to a file.
        File.WriteAllBytes(metricFileName, memoryStream.ToArray());
        var filePath = Path.Join(AppDomain.CurrentDomain.BaseDirectory,
            metricFileName);
        return filePath;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get data for CloudWatch metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="minutesOfData">The number of minutes of data to include.</
param>
    /// <param name="useDescendingTime">True to return the data descending by
 time.</param>
    /// <param name="endDateUtc">The end date for the data, in UTC.</param>
    /// <param name="maxDataPoints">The maximum data points to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dataQueries">Optional data queries to include.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the requested metric data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricDataResult>> GetMetricData(int minutesOfData, bool
 useDescendingTime, DateTime? endDateUtc = null,
        int maxDataPoints = 0, List<MetricDataQuery>? dataQueries = null)
    {
        var metricData = new List<MetricDataResult>();
        // If no end time is provided, use the current time for the end time.
        endDateUtc ??= DateTime.UtcNow;
        var timeZoneOffset =
 TimeZoneInfo.Local.GetUtcOffset(endDateUtc.Value.ToLocalTime());
        var startTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value.AddMinutes(-minutesOfData);
        // The timezone string should be in the format +0000, so use the timezone
 offset to format it correctly.
        var timeZoneString = $"{timeZoneOffset.Hours:D2}
{timeZoneOffset.Minutes:D2}";
        var paginatedMetricData = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.GetMetricData(
            new GetMetricDataRequest()
            {
                StartTimeUtc = startTimeUtc,
                EndTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value,
                LabelOptions = new LabelOptions { Timezone = timeZoneString },
```

```
                ScanBy = useDescendingTime ? ScanBy.TimestampDescending :
ScanBy.TimestampAscending,
                MaxDatapoints = maxDataPoints,
                MetricDataQueries = dataQueries,
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedMetricData.MetricDataResults)
        {
            metricData.Add(data);
        }
        return metricData;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add a metric alarm to send an email when the metric passes a threshold.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmDescription">A description of the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmName">The name for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="comparison">The type of comparison to use.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="threshold">The threshold value for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional actions to execute when in an alarm
state.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutMetricEmailAlarm(string alarmDescription, string
alarmName, ComparisonOperator comparison,
        string metricName, string metricNamespace, double threshold, List<string>
alarmActions = null!)
    {
        try
        {
            var putEmailAlarmResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricAlarmAsync(
                new PutMetricAlarmRequest()
                {
                    AlarmActions = alarmActions,
                    AlarmDescription = alarmDescription,
                    AlarmName = alarmName,
                    ComparisonOperator = comparison,
                    Threshold = threshold,
                    Namespace = metricNamespace,
                    MetricName = metricName,
                    EvaluationPeriods = 1,
                    Period = 10,
```

```
                    Statistic = new Statistic("Maximum"),
                    DatapointsToAlarm = 1,
                    TreatMissingData = "ignore"
                });
            return putEmailAlarmResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException lex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(lex, $"Unable to add alarm {alarmName}. Alarm quota has
already been reached.");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add specific email actions to a list of action strings for a CloudWatch
alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accountId">The AccountId for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="region">The region for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="emailTopicName">An Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS)
topic for the alarm email.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional list of existing alarm actions to append
to.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of string actions for an alarm.</returns>
    public List<string> AddEmailAlarmAction(string accountId, string region,
        string emailTopicName, List<string>? alarmActions = null)
    {
        alarmActions ??= new List<string>();
        var snsAlarmAction = $"arn:aws:sns:{region}:{accountId}:{emailTopicName}";
        alarmActions.Add(snsAlarmAction);
        return alarmActions;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms, optionally filtered by state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateValue">Optional filter for alarm state.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarms(StateValue? stateValue =
null)
    {
        List<MetricAlarm> alarms = new List<MetricAlarm>();
```

```
        var paginatedDescribeAlarms = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarms(
            new DescribeAlarmsRequest()
            {
                StateValue = stateValue
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedDescribeAlarms.MetricAlarms)
        {
            alarms.Add(data);
        }
        return alarms;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms for a specific metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarmsForMetric(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        var alarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DescribeAlarmsForMetricAsync(
            new DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest()
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName
            });

        return alarmsResult.MetricAlarms;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the history of an alarm for a number of days in the past.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmName">The name of the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="historyDays">The number of days in the past.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm history data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AlarmHistoryItem>> DescribeAlarmHistory(string alarmName,
int historyDays)
    {
        List<AlarmHistoryItem> alarmHistory = new List<AlarmHistoryItem>();
        var paginatedAlarmHistory =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarmHistory(
```

```
            new DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest()
            {
                AlarmName = alarmName,
                EndDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                HistoryItemType = HistoryItemType.StateUpdate,
                StartDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-historyDays)
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedAlarmHistory.AlarmHistoryItems)
        {
            alarmHistory.Add(data);
        }
        return alarmHistory;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAlarms(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var deleteAlarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAlarmsAsync(
            new DeleteAlarmsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return deleteAlarmsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var disableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DisableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new DisableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });
```

```
        return disableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var enableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.EnableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new EnableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return enableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an anomaly detector for a single metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="anomalyDetector">A single metric anomaly detector.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
    {
        var putAlarmDetectorResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.PutAnomalyDetectorAsync(
            new PutAnomalyDetectorRequest()
            {
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return putAlarmDetectorResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe anomaly detectors for a metric and namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The metric of the anomaly detectors.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The list of detectors.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AnomalyDetector>> DescribeAnomalyDetectors(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        List<AnomalyDetector> detectors = new List<AnomalyDetector>();
        var paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAnomalyDetectors(
            new DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest()
            {
                MetricName = metricName,
                Namespace = metricNamespace
            });

        await foreach (var data in
paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors.AnomalyDetectors)
        {
            detectors.Add(data);
        }

        return detectors;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a single metric anomaly detector.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="anomalyDetector">The anomaly detector to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
    {
        var deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(
            new DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest()
            {
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a list of CloudWatch dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardNames">List of dashboard names to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDashboards(List<string> dashboardNames)
    {
        var deleteDashboardsResponse = await
 _amazonCloudWatch.DeleteDashboardsAsync(
            new DeleteDashboardsRequest()
            {
                DashboardNames = dashboardNames
            });

        return deleteDashboardsResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DeleteAnomalyDetector
  - DeleteDashboards
  - DescribeAlarmHistory
  - DescribeAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DescribeAnomalyDetectors
  - GetMetricData
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - GetMetricWidgetImage
  - ListMetrics
  - PutAnomalyDetector
  - PutDashboard
  - PutMetricAlarm
  - PutMetricData

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms to delete.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteAlarms(List<string> alarmNames)
{
    var deleteAlarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAlarmsAsync(
        new DeleteAlarmsRequest()
        {
            AlarmNames = alarmNames
        });

    return deleteAlarmsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteAnomalyDetector`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAnomalyDetector`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a single metric anomaly detector.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="anomalyDetector">The anomaly detector to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
    {
        var deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DeleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(
            new DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest()
            {
                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
            });

        return deleteAnomalyDetectorResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDashboards`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDashboards`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a list of CloudWatch dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardNames">List of dashboard names to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDashboards(List<string> dashboardNames)
    {
        var deleteDashboardsResponse = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DeleteDashboardsAsync(
            new DeleteDashboardsRequest()
            {
                DashboardNames = dashboardNames
            });

        return deleteDashboardsResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmHistory`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmHistory`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the history of an alarm for a number of days in the past.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmName">The name of the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="historyDays">The number of days in the past.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm history data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AlarmHistoryItem>> DescribeAlarmHistory(string alarmName,
int historyDays)
    {
```

```
        List<AlarmHistoryItem> alarmHistory = new List<AlarmHistoryItem>();
        var paginatedAlarmHistory =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarmHistory(
            new DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest()
            {
                AlarmName = alarmName,
                EndDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                HistoryItemType = HistoryItemType.StateUpdate,
                StartDateUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-historyDays)
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedAlarmHistory.AlarmHistoryItems)
        {
            alarmHistory.Add(data);
        }
        return alarmHistory;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarms`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms, optionally filtered by state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateValue">Optional filter for alarm state.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarms(StateValue? stateValue =
null)
    {
```

```
        List<MetricAlarm> alarms = new List<MetricAlarm>();
        var paginatedDescribeAlarms = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAlarms(
            new DescribeAlarmsRequest()
            {
                StateValue = stateValue
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedDescribeAlarms.MetricAlarms)
        {
            alarms.Add(data);
        }
        return alarms;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the current alarms for a specific metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of alarm data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricAlarm>> DescribeAlarmsForMetric(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        var alarmsResult = await _amazonCloudWatch.DescribeAlarmsForMetricAsync(
            new DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest()
            {
```

```
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName
            });

        return alarmsResult.MetricAlarms;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAnomalyDetectors`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAnomalyDetectors`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe anomaly detectors for a metric and namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The metric of the anomaly detectors.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of detectors.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AnomalyDetector>> DescribeAnomalyDetectors(string
metricNamespace, string metricName)
    {
        List<AnomalyDetector> detectors = new List<AnomalyDetector>();
        var paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors =
_amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.DescribeAnomalyDetectors(
            new DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest()
            {
                MetricName = metricName,
                Namespace = metricNamespace
            });

        await foreach (var data in
paginatedDescribeAnomalyDetectors.AnomalyDetectors)
```

```
        {
            detectors.Add(data);
        }

        return detectors;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var disableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.DisableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new DisableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return disableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the actions for a list of alarms from CloudWatch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="alarmNames">A list of names of alarms.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableAlarmActions(List<string> alarmNames)
    {
        var enableAlarmActionsResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.EnableAlarmActionsAsync(
            new EnableAlarmActionsRequest()
            {
                AlarmNames = alarmNames
            });

        return enableAlarmActionsResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDashboard`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information on a dashboard.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
/// <returns>A JSON object with dashboard information.</returns>
public async Task<string> GetDashboard(string dashboardName)
{
    var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetDashboardAsync(
        new GetDashboardRequest()
        {
            DashboardName = dashboardName
        });

    return dashboardResponse.DashboardBody;
}
```

- For API details, see GetDashboard in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricData`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get data for CloudWatch metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="minutesOfData">The number of minutes of data to include.</
param>
    /// <param name="useDescendingTime">True to return the data descending by
 time.</param>
    /// <param name="endDateUtc">The end date for the data, in UTC.</param>
    /// <param name="maxDataPoints">The maximum data points to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dataQueries">Optional data queries to include.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the requested metric data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MetricDataResult>> GetMetricData(int minutesOfData, bool
 useDescendingTime, DateTime? endDateUtc = null,
        int maxDataPoints = 0, List<MetricDataQuery>? dataQueries = null)
    {
        var metricData = new List<MetricDataResult>();
        // If no end time is provided, use the current time for the end time.
        endDateUtc ??= DateTime.UtcNow;
        var timeZoneOffset =
 TimeZoneInfo.Local.GetUtcOffset(endDateUtc.Value.ToLocalTime());
        var startTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value.AddMinutes(-minutesOfData);
        // The timezone string should be in the format +0000, so use the timezone
 offset to format it correctly.
        var timeZoneString = $"{timeZoneOffset.Hours:D2}
{timeZoneOffset.Minutes:D2}";
        var paginatedMetricData = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.GetMetricData(
            new GetMetricDataRequest()
            {
                StartTimeUtc = startTimeUtc,
                EndTimeUtc = endDateUtc.Value,
                LabelOptions = new LabelOptions { Timezone = timeZoneString },
                ScanBy = useDescendingTime ? ScanBy.TimestampDescending :
 ScanBy.TimestampAscending,
                MaxDatapoints = maxDataPoints,
                MetricDataQueries = dataQueries,
            });

        await foreach (var data in paginatedMetricData.MetricDataResults)
        {
            metricData.Add(data);
        }
        return metricData;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetMetricStatistics

The following code example shows how to use GetMetricStatistics.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get billing statistics using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing statistics.</returns>
    private static async Task<List<Datapoint>> SetupBillingStatistics()
    {
        // Make a request for EstimatedCharges with a period of one day for the past
seven days.
        var billingStatistics = await _cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatistics(
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            new List<string>() { "Maximum" },
            new List<Dimension>() { new Dimension { Name = "Currency", Value =
"USD" } },
            7,
            86400);

        billingStatistics = billingStatistics.OrderBy(n => n.Timestamp).ToList();

        return billingStatistics;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to get statistics for a specific CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="statistics">The list of statistics to include.</param>
    /// <param name="dimensions">The list of dimensions to include.</param>
    /// <param name="days">The number of days in the past to include.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period for the data.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of DataPoint objects for the statistics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Datapoint>> GetMetricStatistics(string metricNamespace,
        string metricName, List<string> statistics, List<Dimension> dimensions, int
days, int period)
    {
        var metricStatistics = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(
            new GetMetricStatisticsRequest()
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                MetricName = metricName,
                Dimensions = dimensions,
                Statistics = statistics,
                StartTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-days),
                EndTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
                Period = period
            });

        return metricStatistics.Datapoints;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetMetricWidgetImage`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricWidgetImage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get an image for a metric graphed over time.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metric">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="stat">The name of the stat to chart.</param>
    /// <param name="period">The period to use for the chart.</param>
    /// <returns>A memory stream for the chart image.</returns>
    public async Task<MemoryStream> GetTimeSeriesMetricImage(string metricNamespace,
string metric, string stat, int period)
    {
        var metricImageWidget = new
        {
            title = "Example Metric Graph",
            view = "timeSeries",
            stacked = false,
            period = period,
            width = 1400,
            height = 600,
            metrics = new List<List<object>>
                { new() { metricNamespace, metric, new { stat } } }
        };

        var metricImageWidgetString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(metricImageWidget);
        var imageResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricWidgetImageAsync(
            new GetMetricWidgetImageRequest()
            {
                MetricWidget = metricImageWidgetString
            });

        return imageResponse.MetricWidgetImage;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save a metric image to a file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="memoryStream">The MemoryStream for the metric image.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric.</param>
    /// <returns>The path to the file.</returns>
    public string SaveMetricImage(MemoryStream memoryStream, string metricName)
    {
        var metricFileName = $"{metricName}_{DateTime.Now.Ticks}.png";
        using var sr = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
        // Writes the memory stream to a file.
        File.WriteAllBytes(metricFileName, memoryStream.ToArray());
        var filePath = Path.Join(AppDomain.CurrentDomain.BaseDirectory,
```

```
            metricFileName);
        return filePath;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListDashboards`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDashboards`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of dashboards.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of DashboardEntry objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardEntry>> ListDashboards()
    {
        var results = new List<DashboardEntry>();
        var paginateDashboards = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListDashboards(
            new ListDashboardsRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var data in paginateDashboards.DashboardEntries)
        {
            results.Add(data);
        }

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListMetrics

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List metrics available, optionally within a namespace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">Optional CloudWatch namespace to use when
listing metrics.</param>
    /// <param name="filter">Optional dimension filter.</param>
    /// <param name="metricName">Optional metric name filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of metrics.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Metric>> ListMetrics(string? metricNamespace = null,
DimensionFilter? filter = null, string? metricName = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Metric>();
        var paginateMetrics = _amazonCloudWatch.Paginators.ListMetrics(
            new ListMetricsRequest
            {
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
                Dimensions = filter != null ? new List<DimensionFilter> { filter } :
null,
                MetricName = metricName
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var metric in paginateMetrics.Metrics)
        {
            results.Add(metric);
        }

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutAnomalyDetector`

The following code example shows how to use `PutAnomalyDetector`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Add an anomaly detector for a single metric.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="anomalyDetector">A single metric anomaly detector.</param>
   /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> PutAnomalyDetector(SingleMetricAnomalyDetector
anomalyDetector)
   {
       var putAlarmDetectorResult = await
_amazonCloudWatch.PutAnomalyDetectorAsync(
           new PutAnomalyDetectorRequest()
           {
               SingleMetricAnomalyDetector = anomalyDetector
           });

       return putAlarmDetectorResult.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
   }
```

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `PutDashboard`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Set up a dashboard using a call to the wrapper class.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
/// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
/// <param name="dashboardName">The name of the dashboard.</param>
/// <returns>A list of validation messages.</returns>
private static async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> SetupDashboard(
    string customMetricNamespace, string customMetricName, string dashboardName)
{
    // Get the dashboard model from configuration.
    var newDashboard = new DashboardModel();
    _configuration.GetSection("dashboardExampleBody").Bind(newDashboard);

    // Add a new metric to the dashboard.
    newDashboard.Widgets.Add(new Widget
    {
        Height = 8,
        Width = 8,
        Y = 8,
        X = 0,
        Type = "metric",
        Properties = new Properties
        {
            Metrics = new List<List<object>>
                { new() { customMetricNamespace, customMetricName } },
            View = "timeSeries",
            Region = "us-east-1",
            Stat = "Sum",
            Period = 86400,
            YAxis = new YAxis { Left = new Left { Min = 0, Max = 100 } },
            Title = "Custom Metric Widget",
            LiveData = true,
```

```
                Sparkline = true,
                Trend = true,
                Stacked = false,
                SetPeriodToTimeRange = false
            }
        });

        var newDashboardString = JsonSerializer.Serialize(newDashboard,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            { DefaultIgnoreCondition = JsonIgnoreCondition.WhenWritingNull });
        var validationMessages =
            await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutDashboard(dashboardName,
 newDashboardString);

        return validationMessages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to create or add to a dashboard with metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dashboardName">The name for the dashboard.</param>
    /// <param name="dashboardBody">The metric data in JSON for the dashboard.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of validation messages for the dashboard.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DashboardValidationMessage>> PutDashboard(string
 dashboardName,
        string dashboardBody)
    {
        // Updating a dashboard replaces all contents.
        // Best practice is to include a text widget indicating this dashboard was
 created programmatically.
        var dashboardResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutDashboardAsync(
            new PutDashboardRequest()
            {
                DashboardName = dashboardName,
                DashboardBody = dashboardBody
            });

        return dashboardResponse.DashboardValidationMessages;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PutMetricAlarm

The following code example shows how to use PutMetricAlarm.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Add a metric alarm to send an email when the metric passes a threshold.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="alarmDescription">A description of the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="alarmName">The name for the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="comparison">The type of comparison to use.</param>
   /// <param name="metricName">The name of the metric for the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
   /// <param name="threshold">The threshold value for the alarm.</param>
   /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional actions to execute when in an alarm
state.</param>
   /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> PutMetricEmailAlarm(string alarmDescription, string
alarmName, ComparisonOperator comparison,
       string metricName, string metricNamespace, double threshold, List<string>
alarmActions = null!)
   {
       try
       {
           var putEmailAlarmResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricAlarmAsync(
               new PutMetricAlarmRequest()
               {
                   AlarmActions = alarmActions,
                   AlarmDescription = alarmDescription,
                   AlarmName = alarmName,
                   ComparisonOperator = comparison,
                   Threshold = threshold,
                   Namespace = metricNamespace,
                   MetricName = metricName,
                   EvaluationPeriods = 1,
                   Period = 10,
```

```
                    Statistic = new Statistic("Maximum"),
                    DatapointsToAlarm = 1,
                    TreatMissingData = "ignore"
                });
            return putEmailAlarmResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException lex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(lex, $"Unable to add alarm {alarmName}. Alarm quota has
already been reached.");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add specific email actions to a list of action strings for a CloudWatch
alarm.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accountId">The AccountId for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="region">The region for the alarm.</param>
    /// <param name="emailTopicName">An Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS)
topic for the alarm email.</param>
    /// <param name="alarmActions">Optional list of existing alarm actions to append
to.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of string actions for an alarm.</returns>
    public List<string> AddEmailAlarmAction(string accountId, string region,
        string emailTopicName, List<string>? alarmActions = null)
    {
        alarmActions ??= new List<string>();
        var snsAlarmAction = $"arn:aws:sns:{region}:{accountId}:{emailTopicName}";
        alarmActions.Add(snsAlarmAction);
        return alarmActions;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PutMetricData

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add some metric data using a call to a wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="customMetricName">The metric name.</param>
    /// <param name="customMetricNamespace">The metric namespace.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    private static async Task<List<MetricDatum>> PutRandomMetricData(string
customMetricName,
        string customMetricNamespace)
    {
        List<MetricDatum> customData = new List<MetricDatum>();
        Random rnd = new Random();

        // Add 10 random values up to 100, starting with a timestamp 15 minutes in
the past.
        var utcNowMinus15 = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(-15);
        for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
        {
            var metricValue = rnd.Next(0, 100);
            customData.Add(
                new MetricDatum
                {
                    MetricName = customMetricName,
                    Value = metricValue,
                    TimestampUtc = utcNowMinus15.AddMinutes(i)
                }
            );
        }

        await _cloudWatchWrapper.PutMetricData(customMetricNamespace, customData);
        return customData;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Wrapper to add metric data to a CloudWatch metric.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="metricNamespace">The namespace of the metric.</param>
    /// <param name="metricData">A data object for the metric data.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutMetricData(string metricNamespace,
        List<MetricDatum> metricData)
    {
        var putDataResponse = await _amazonCloudWatch.PutMetricDataAsync(
            new PutMetricDataRequest()
            {
                MetricData = metricData,
                Namespace = metricNamespace,
            });

        return putDataResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssociateKmsKey`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateKmsKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to associate an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key with
    /// an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
    /// </summary>
    public class AssociateKmsKey
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

            string kmsKeyId = "arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:<account-
number>:key/7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";
            string groupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new AssociateKmsKeyRequest
            {
                KmsKeyId = kmsKeyId,
                LogGroupName = groupName,
            };

            var response = await client.AssociateKmsKeyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully associated KMS key ID: {kmsKeyId}
with log group: {groupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not make the association between:
{kmsKeyId} and {groupName}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateKmsKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CancelExportTask`

The following code example shows how to use `CancelExportTask`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to cancel an Amazon CloudWatch Logs export task.
/// </summary>
public class CancelExportTask
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
```

```
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            string taskId = "exampleTaskId";

            var request = new CancelExportTaskRequest
            {
                TaskId = taskId,
            };

            var response = await client.CancelExportTaskAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{taskId} successfully canceled.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{taskId} could not be canceled.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CancelExportTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateExportTask`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateExportTask`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to create an Export Task to export the contents of the Amazon
    /// CloudWatch Logs to the specified Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
    /// bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateExportTask
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
            // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
            // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            string taskName = "export-task-example";
            string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";
            string destination = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            var fromTime = 1437584472382;
            var toTime = 1437584472833;

            var request = new CreateExportTaskRequest
            {
                From = fromTime,
                To = toTime,
                TaskName = taskName,
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
                Destination = destination,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateExportTaskAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The task, {taskName} with ID: " +
                                  $"{response.TaskId} has been created
successfully.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateExportTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLogGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLogGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
/// </summary>
public class CreateLogGroup
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

        string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

        var request = new CreateLogGroupRequest
        {
            LogGroupName = logGroupName,
        };

        var response = await client.CreateLogGroupAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully create log group with ID:
{logGroupName}.");
```

```
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create log group.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLogGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLogStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLogStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create an Amazon CloudWatch Logs stream for a CloudWatch
/// log group.
/// </summary>
public class CreateLogStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
```

```
            string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";
            string logStreamName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-logstream";

            var request = new CreateLogStreamRequest
            {
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
                LogStreamName = logStreamName,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateLogStreamAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{logStreamName} successfully created for
{logGroupName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create stream.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLogStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteLogGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLogGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
```

```
    using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon CloudWatch Logs Service to delete an existing
    /// CloudWatch Logs log group.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteLogGroup
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            string logGroupName = "cloudwatchlogs-example-loggroup";

            var request = new DeleteLogGroupRequest
            {
                LogGroupName = logGroupName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteLogGroupAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted CloudWatch log group,
{logGroupName}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeExportTasks`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExportTasks`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to retrieve a list of information about Amazon CloudWatch
/// Logs export tasks.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeExportTasks
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // This client object will be associated with the same AWS Region
        // as the default user on this system. If you need to use a
        // different AWS Region, pass it as a parameter to the client
        // constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

        var request = new DescribeExportTasksRequest
        {
            Limit = 5,
        };

        var response = new DescribeExportTasksResponse();

        do
        {
            response = await client.DescribeExportTasksAsync(request);
            response.ExportTasks.ForEach(t =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{t.TaskName} with ID: {t.TaskId} has status:
{t.Status}");
            });
        }
        while (response.NextToken is not null);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeExportTasks in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DescribeLogGroups

The following code example shows how to use DescribeLogGroups.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieves information about existing Amazon CloudWatch Logs log groups
/// and displays the information on the console.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeLogGroups
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Creates a CloudWatch Logs client using the default
        // user. If you need to work with resources in another
        // AWS Region than the one defined for the default user,
        // pass the AWS Region as a parameter to the client constructor.
        var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();

        bool done = false;
        string newToken = null;

        var request = new DescribeLogGroupsRequest
        {
            Limit = 5,
        };

        DescribeLogGroupsResponse response;

        do
        {
```

```
                if (newToken is not null)
                {
                    request.NextToken = newToken;
                }

                response = await client.DescribeLogGroupsAsync(request);

                response.LogGroups.ForEach(lg =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{lg.LogGroupName} is associated with the
key: {lg.KmsKeyId}.");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Created on: {lg.CreationTime.Date.Date}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Date for this group will be stored for:
{lg.RetentionInDays} days.\n");
                });

                if (response.NextToken is null)
                {
                    done = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    newToken = response.NextToken;
                }
            }
            while (!done);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartLiveTail`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for .NET

Include the required files.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs;
```

```
using Amazon.CloudWatchLogs.Model;
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
            var client = new AmazonCloudWatchLogsClient();
            var request = new StartLiveTailRequest
            {
                LogGroupIdentifiers = logGroupIdentifiers,
                LogStreamNames = logStreamNames,
                LogEventFilterPattern = filterPattern,
            };

            var response = await client.StartLiveTailAsync(request);

            // Catch if request fails
            if (response.HttpStatusCode != System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to start live tail session");
                return;
            }
```

You can handle the events from the Live Tail session in two ways:

```
            /* Method 1
            * 1). Asynchronously loop through the event stream
            * 2). Set a timer to dispose the stream and stop the Live Tail session
 at the end.
            */
            var eventStream = response.ResponseStream;
            var task = Task.Run(() =>
            {
                foreach (var item in eventStream)
                {
                    if (item is LiveTailSessionUpdate liveTailSessionUpdate)
                    {
                        foreach (var sessionResult in
 liveTailSessionUpdate.SessionResults)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine("Message : {0}",
 sessionResult.Message);
                        }
```

```
                    }
                    if (item is LiveTailSessionStart)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("Live Tail session started");
                    }
                    // On-stream exceptions are processed here
                    if (item is CloudWatchLogsEventStreamException)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: {item}");
                    }
                }
            });
            // Close the stream to stop the session after a timeout
            if (!task.Wait(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10))){
                eventStream.Dispose();
                Console.WriteLine("End of line");
            }
```

```
            /* Method 2
            * 1). Add event handlers to each event variable
            * 2). Start processing the stream and wait for a timeout using
AutoResetEvent
            */
            AutoResetEvent endEvent = new AutoResetEvent(false);
            var eventStream = response.ResponseStream;
            using (eventStream) // automatically disposes the stream to stop the
session after execution finishes
            {
                eventStream.SessionStartReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("LiveTail session started");
                };
                eventStream.SessionUpdateReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
                    foreach (LiveTailSessionLogEvent logEvent in
e.EventStreamEvent.SessionResults){
                        Console.WriteLine("Message: {0}", logEvent.Message);
                    }
                };
                // On-stream exceptions are captured here
                eventStream.ExceptionReceived += (sender, e) =>
                {
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: {e.EventStreamException.Message}");
                };

                eventStream.StartProcessing();
                // Stream events for this amount of time.
                endEvent.WaitOne(TimeSpan.FromSeconds(10));
                Console.WriteLine("End of line");
            }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the specified user from an Amazon Cognito user pool with administrator
access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="poolId">The Id of the Amazon Cognito user pool.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<UserStatusType> GetAdminUserAsync(string userName, string
poolId)
    {
        AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = new AdminGetUserRequest
        {
            Username = userName,
            UserPoolId = poolId,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminGetUserAsync(userRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"User status {response.UserStatus}");
        return response.UserStatus;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AdminInitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate an admin auth request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID to use.</param>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The ID of the user pool.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to authenticate.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <returns>The session to use in challenge-response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AdminInitiateAuthAsync(string clientId, string
userPoolId, string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var request = new AdminInitiateAuthRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(request);
        return response.Session;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Respond to an admin authentication challenge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID.</param>
    /// <param name="mfaCode">The multi-factor authentication code.</param>
    /// <param name="session">The current application session.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>The result of the authentication response.</returns>
    public async Task<AuthenticationResultType> AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(
        string userName,
        string clientId,
        string mfaCode,
        string session,
        string userPoolId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");

        var challengeResponses = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        challengeResponses.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.Add("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        var respondToAuthChallengeRequest = new AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
        {
            ChallengeName = ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
            ClientId = clientId,
            ChallengeResponses = challengeResponses,
            Session = session,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
        };

        var response = await
_cognitoService.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Response to Authentication
{response.AuthenticationResult.TokenType}");
        return response.AuthenticationResult;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get an MFA token to authenticate the user with the authenticator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The session name.</param>
    /// <returns>The session name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(string session)
    {
        var softwareTokenRequest = new AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            Session = session,
        };

        var tokenResponse = await
_cognitoService.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(softwareTokenRequest);
        var secretCode = tokenResponse.SecretCode;

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the following secret code to set up the
authenticator: {secretCode}");

        return tokenResponse.Session;
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ConfirmDevice`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmDevice`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiates and confirms tracking of the device.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessToken">The user's access token.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceKey">The key of the device from Amazon Cognito.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceName">The device name.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmDeviceAsync(string accessToken, string deviceKey,
string deviceName)
    {
        var request = new ConfirmDeviceRequest
        {
            AccessToken = accessToken,
            DeviceKey = deviceKey,
            DeviceName = deviceName
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmDeviceAsync(request);
        return response.UserConfirmationNecessary;
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConfirmSignUp

The following code example shows how to use ConfirmSignUp.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Confirm that the user has signed up.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of this application.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The confirmation code sent to the user.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmSignupAsync(string clientId, string code, string
userName)
    {
        var signUpRequest = new ConfirmSignUpRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            ConfirmationCode = code,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmSignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{userName} was confirmed");
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InitiateAuth

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateAuth`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate authorization.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user who is authenticating.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The password for the user who is authenticating.</
param>
    /// <returns>The response from the initiate auth request.</returns>
    public async Task<InitiateAuthResponse> InitiateAuthAsync(string clientId,
 string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var authRequest = new InitiateAuthRequest

        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.InitiateAuthAsync(authRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Result Challenge is : {response.ChallengeName}");

        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get a list of users for the Amazon Cognito user pool.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="userPoolId">The user pool ID.</param>
/// <returns>A list of users.</returns>
public async Task<List<UserType>> ListUsersAsync(string userPoolId)
{
    var request = new ListUsersRequest
    {
        UserPoolId = userPoolId
    };

    var users = new List<UserType>();

    var usersPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUsers(request);
    await foreach (var response in usersPaginator.Responses)
    {
        users.AddRange(response.Users);
    }

    return users;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ResendConfirmationCode

The following code example shows how to use ResendConfirmationCode.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Send a new confirmation code to a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of the client application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of user who will receive the code.</
param>
    /// <returns>The delivery details.</returns>
    public async Task<CodeDeliveryDetailsType> ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(string
 clientId, string userName)
    {
        var codeRequest = new ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await
 _cognitoService.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(codeRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"Method of delivery is
 {response.CodeDeliveryDetails.DeliveryMedium}");

        return response.CodeDeliveryDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SignUp

The following code example shows how to use SignUp.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Sign up a new user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to use.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email address of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the user was confirmed.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> SignUpAsync(string clientId, string userName, string
 password, string email)
    {
        var userAttrs = new AttributeType
        {
            Name = "email",
            Value = email,
        };

        var userAttrsList = new List<AttributeType>();

        userAttrsList.Add(userAttrs);

        var signUpRequest = new SignUpRequest
        {
            UserAttributes = userAttrsList,
            Username = userName,
            ClientId = clientId,
            Password = password
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.SignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The name of the session.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The MFA code.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the software token.</returns>
    public async Task<VerifySoftwareTokenResponseType>
VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(string session, string code)
    {
        var tokenRequest = new VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            UserCode = code,
            Session = session,
        };

        var verifyResponse = await
_cognitoService.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(tokenRequest);

        return verifyResponse.Status;
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace CognitoBasics;

public class CognitoBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Cognito.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider>()
            .AddTransient<CognitoWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();
```

```
        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<CognitoBasics>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var cognitoWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<CognitoWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        UiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // clientId - The app client Id value that you get from the AWS CDK script.
        var clientId = configuration["ClientId"]; // "*** REPLACE WITH CLIENT ID
VALUE FROM CDK SCRIPT";

        // poolId - The pool Id that you get from the AWS CDK script.
        var poolId = configuration["PoolId"]!; // "*** REPLACE WITH POOL ID VALUE
FROM CDK SCRIPT";
        var userName = configuration["UserName"];
        var password = configuration["Password"];
        var email = configuration["Email"];

        // If the username wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (userName is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Username: ");
                userName = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(userName));
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\nUsername: {userName}");

        // If the password wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (password is null)
```

```
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Password: ");
                password = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(password));
        }

        // If the email address wasn't set in the configuration file,
        // get it from the user now.
        if (email is null)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Email: ");
                email = Console.ReadLine();
            } while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email));
        }

        // Now sign up the user.
        Console.WriteLine($"\nSigning up {userName} with email address: {email}");
        await cognitoWrapper.SignUpAsync(clientId, userName, password, email);

        // Add the user to the user pool.
        Console.WriteLine($"Adding {userName} to the user pool");
        await cognitoWrapper.GetAdminUserAsync(userName, poolId);

        UiMethods.DisplayTitle("Get confirmation code");
        Console.WriteLine($"Conformation code sent to {userName}.");
        Console.Write("Would you like to send a new code? (Y/N) ");
        var answer = Console.ReadLine();

        if (answer!.ToLower() == "y")
        {
            await cognitoWrapper.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(clientId, userName);
            Console.WriteLine("Sending a new confirmation code");
        }

        Console.Write("Enter confirmation code (from Email): ");
        var code = Console.ReadLine();

        await cognitoWrapper.ConfirmSignupAsync(clientId, code, userName);
```

```
        UiMethods.DisplayTitle("Checking status");
        Console.WriteLine($"Rechecking the status of {userName} in the user pool");
        await cognitoWrapper.GetAdminUserAsync(userName, poolId);

        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up authenticator for {userName} in the user
 pool");
        var setupResponse = await cognitoWrapper.InitiateAuthAsync(clientId,
 userName, password);

        var setupSession = await
 cognitoWrapper.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(setupResponse.Session);
        Console.Write("Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator: ");
        var setupCode = Console.ReadLine();

        var setupResult = await
 cognitoWrapper.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(setupSession, setupCode);
        Console.WriteLine($"Setup status: {setupResult}");

        Console.WriteLine($"Now logging in {userName} in the user pool");
        var authSession = await cognitoWrapper.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(clientId,
 poolId, userName, password);

        Console.Write("Enter a new 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator:
 ");
        var authCode = Console.ReadLine();

        var authResult = await
 cognitoWrapper.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(userName, clientId, authCode,
 authSession, poolId);
        Console.WriteLine($"Authenticated and received access token:
 {authResult.AccessToken}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Cognito scenario is complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}


using System.Net;

namespace CognitoActions;

/// <summary>
```

```
/// Methods to perform Amazon Cognito Identity Provider actions.
/// </summary>
public class CognitoWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider _cognitoService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the wrapper class containing Amazon Cognito actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cognitoService">The Amazon Cognito client object.</param>
    public CognitoWrapper(IAmazonCognitoIdentityProvider cognitoService)
    {
        _cognitoService = cognitoService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the Amazon Cognito user pools for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of UserPoolDescriptionType objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserPoolDescriptionType>> ListUserPoolsAsync()
    {
        var userPools = new List<UserPoolDescriptionType>();

        var userPoolsPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUserPools(new
 ListUserPoolsRequest());

        await foreach (var response in userPoolsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            userPools.AddRange(response.UserPools);
        }

        return userPools;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of users for the Amazon Cognito user pool.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserType>> ListUsersAsync(string userPoolId)
    {
        var request = new ListUsersRequest
        {
```

```
            UserPoolId = userPoolId
        };

        var users = new List<UserType>();

        var usersPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUsers(request);
        await foreach (var response in usersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Respond to an admin authentication challenge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID.</param>
    /// <param name="mfaCode">The multi-factor authentication code.</param>
    /// <param name="session">The current application session.</param>
    /// <param name="clientId">The user pool ID.</param>
    /// <returns>The result of the authentication response.</returns>
    public async Task<AuthenticationResultType> AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(
        string userName,
        string clientId,
        string mfaCode,
        string session,
        string userPoolId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");

        var challengeResponses = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        challengeResponses.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.Add("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        var respondToAuthChallengeRequest = new AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
        {
            ChallengeName = ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
            ClientId = clientId,
            ChallengeResponses = challengeResponses,
            Session = session,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
```

```
        };

        var response = await
_cognitoService.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeAsync(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Response to Authentication
{response.AuthenticationResult.TokenType}");
        return response.AuthenticationResult;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The name of the session.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The MFA code.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the software token.</returns>
    public async Task<VerifySoftwareTokenResponseType>
VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(string session, string code)
    {
        var tokenRequest = new VerifySoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            UserCode = code,
            Session = session,
        };

        var verifyResponse = await
_cognitoService.VerifySoftwareTokenAsync(tokenRequest);

        return verifyResponse.Status;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get an MFA token to authenticate the user with the authenticator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="session">The session name.</param>
    /// <returns>The session name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(string session)
    {
        var softwareTokenRequest = new AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
        {
            Session = session,
        };
```

```
        var tokenResponse = await
_cognitoService.AssociateSoftwareTokenAsync(softwareTokenRequest);
        var secretCode = tokenResponse.SecretCode;

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the following secret code to set up the
authenticator: {secretCode}");

        return tokenResponse.Session;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate an admin auth request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client ID to use.</param>
    /// <param name="userPoolId">The ID of the user pool.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to authenticate.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <returns>The session to use in challenge-response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AdminInitiateAuthAsync(string clientId, string
userPoolId, string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var request = new AdminInitiateAuthRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            UserPoolId = userPoolId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminInitiateAuthAsync(request);
        return response.Session;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate authorization.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user who is authenticating.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="password">The password for the user who is authenticating.</
param>
    /// <returns>The response from the initiate auth request.</returns>
    public async Task<InitiateAuthResponse> InitiateAuthAsync(string clientId,
 string userName, string password)
    {
        var authParameters = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        authParameters.Add("USERNAME", userName);
        authParameters.Add("PASSWORD", password);

        var authRequest = new InitiateAuthRequest

        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            AuthParameters = authParameters,
            AuthFlow = AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.InitiateAuthAsync(authRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"Result Challenge is : {response.ChallengeName}");

        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Confirm that the user has signed up.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of this application.</param>
    /// <param name="code">The confirmation code sent to the user.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmSignupAsync(string clientId, string code, string
 userName)
    {
        var signUpRequest = new ConfirmSignUpRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            ConfirmationCode = code,
            Username = userName,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmSignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"{userName} was confirmed");
            return true;
        }
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Initiates and confirms tracking of the device.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessToken">The user's access token.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceKey">The key of the device from Amazon Cognito.</param>
    /// <param name="deviceName">The device name.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<bool> ConfirmDeviceAsync(string accessToken, string deviceKey,
 string deviceName)
    {
        var request = new ConfirmDeviceRequest
        {
            AccessToken = accessToken,
            DeviceKey = deviceKey,
            DeviceName = deviceName
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.ConfirmDeviceAsync(request);
        return response.UserConfirmationNecessary;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Send a new confirmation code to a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The Id of the client application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of user who will receive the code.</
param>
    /// <returns>The delivery details.</returns>
    public async Task<CodeDeliveryDetailsType> ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(string
 clientId, string userName)
    {
        var codeRequest = new ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
        {
            ClientId = clientId,
            Username = userName,
        };
```

```
        var response = await
 _cognitoService.ResendConfirmationCodeAsync(codeRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"Method of delivery is
 {response.CodeDeliveryDetails.DeliveryMedium}");

        return response.CodeDeliveryDetails;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the specified user from an Amazon Cognito user pool with administrator
 access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the user.</param>
    /// <param name="poolId">The Id of the Amazon Cognito user pool.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<UserStatusType> GetAdminUserAsync(string userName, string
 poolId)
    {
        AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = new AdminGetUserRequest
        {
            Username = userName,
            UserPoolId = poolId,
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.AdminGetUserAsync(userRequest);

        Console.WriteLine($"User status {response.UserStatus}");
        return response.UserStatus;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Sign up a new user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clientId">The client Id of the application.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username to use.</param>
    /// <param name="password">The user's password.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email address of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the user was confirmed.</
returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> SignUpAsync(string clientId, string userName, string
 password, string email)
    {
        var userAttrs = new AttributeType
        {
            Name = "email",
            Value = email,
        };

        var userAttrsList = new List<AttributeType>();

        userAttrsList.Add(userAttrs);

        var signUpRequest = new SignUpRequest
        {
            UserAttributes = userAttrsList,
            Username = userName,
            ClientId = clientId,
            Password = password
        };

        var response = await _cognitoService.SignUpAsync(signUpRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode

- RespondToAuthChallenge
- SignUp
- VerifySoftwareToken

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Comprehend.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DetectDominantLanguage`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDominantLanguage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example calls the Amazon Comprehend service to determine the
    /// dominant language.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectDominantLanguage
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Calls Amazon Comprehend to determine the dominant language used in
        /// the sample text.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle.";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectDominantLanguage\n");
            var detectDominantLanguageRequest = new DetectDominantLanguageRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
            };

            var detectDominantLanguageResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectDominantLanguageAsync(detectDominantLanguageRequest);
            foreach (var dl in detectDominantLanguageResponse.Languages)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Language Code: {dl.LanguageCode}, Score:
{dl.Score}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DetectEntities

The following code example shows how to use DetectEntities.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the AmazonComprehend service detect any
    /// entities in submitted text.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectEntities
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// The main method calls the DetectEntitiesAsync method to find any
        /// entities in the sample code.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectEntities\n");
            var detectEntitiesRequest = new DetectEntitiesRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectEntitiesResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectEntitiesAsync(detectEntitiesRequest);

            foreach (var e in detectEntitiesResponse.Entities)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {e.Text}, Type: {e.Type}, Score:
{e.Score}, BeginOffset: {e.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {e.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectKeyPhrases`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectKeyPhrases`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use the Amazon Comprehend service to
/// search text for key phrases.
/// </summary>
public static class DetectKeyPhrase
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This method calls the Amazon Comprehend method DetectKeyPhrasesAsync
    /// to detect any key phrases in the sample text.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
```

```
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            // Call DetectKeyPhrases API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectKeyPhrases");
            var detectKeyPhrasesRequest = new DetectKeyPhrasesRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectKeyPhrasesResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectKeyPhrasesAsync(detectKeyPhrasesRequest);
            foreach (var kp in detectKeyPhrasesResponse.KeyPhrases)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {kp.Text}, Score: {kp.Score}, BeginOffset:
{kp.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {kp.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectPiiEntities`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectPiiEntities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the Amazon Comprehend service to find
    /// personally identifiable information (PII) within text submitted to the
    /// DetectPiiEntitiesAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectingPII
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the DetectPiiEntitiesAsync method to locate any
        /// personally dientifiable information within the supplied text.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();
            var text = @"Hello Paul Santos. The latest statement for your
                        credit card account 1111-0000-1111-0000 was
                        mailed to 123 Any Street, Seattle, WA 98109.";

            var request = new DetectPiiEntitiesRequest
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "EN",
            };

            var response = await comprehendClient.DetectPiiEntitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.Entities.Count > 0)
            {
                foreach (var entity in response.Entities)
                {
                    var entityValue = text.Substring(entity.BeginOffset,
entity.EndOffset - entity.BeginOffset);
                    Console.WriteLine($"{entity.Type}: {entityValue}");
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectPiiEntities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectSentiment`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSentiment`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Comprehend;
    using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to detect the overall sentiment of the supplied
    /// text using the Amazon Comprehend service.
    /// </summary>
    public static class DetectSentiment
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the DetetectSentimentAsync method to analyze the
        /// supplied text and determine the overal sentiment.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

            var comprehendClient = new
AmazonComprehendClient(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

            // Call DetectKeyPhrases API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectSentiment");
            var detectSentimentRequest = new DetectSentimentRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            var detectSentimentResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectSentimentAsync(detectSentimentRequest);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Sentiment: {detectSentimentResponse.Sentiment}");
            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectSyntax`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSyntax`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect syntax
/// elements by calling the DetectSyntaxAsync method.
/// </summary>
public class DetectingSyntax
{
    /// <summary>
    /// This method calls DetectSynaxAsync to identify the syntax elements
    /// in the sample text.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string text = "It is raining today in Seattle";

        var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();
```

```
            // Call DetectSyntax API
            Console.WriteLine("Calling DetectSyntaxAsync\n");
            var detectSyntaxRequest = new DetectSyntaxRequest()
            {
                Text = text,
                LanguageCode = "en",
            };
            DetectSyntaxResponse detectSyntaxResponse = await
comprehendClient.DetectSyntaxAsync(detectSyntaxRequest);
            foreach (SyntaxToken s in detectSyntaxResponse.SyntaxTokens)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Text: {s.Text}, PartOfSpeech:
{s.PartOfSpeech.Tag}, BeginOffset: {s.BeginOffset}, EndOffset: {s.EndOffset}");
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Done");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartTopicsDetectionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTopicsDetectionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Comprehend;
using Amazon.Comprehend.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example scans the documents in an Amazon Simple Storage Service
```

```
    /// (Amazon S3) bucket and analyzes it for topics. The results are stored
    /// in another bucket and then the resulting job properties are displayed
    /// on the screen. This example was created using the AWS SDK for .NEt
    /// version 3.7 and .NET Core version 5.0.
    /// </summary>
    public static class TopicModeling
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This methos calls a topic detection job by calling the Amazon
        /// Comprehend StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var comprehendClient = new AmazonComprehendClient();

            string inputS3Uri = "s3://input bucket/input path";
            InputFormat inputDocFormat = InputFormat.ONE_DOC_PER_FILE;
            string outputS3Uri = "s3://output bucket/output path";
            string dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::account ID:role/data access
role";
            int numberOfTopics = 10;

            var startTopicsDetectionJobRequest = new
StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest()
            {
                InputDataConfig = new InputDataConfig()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputS3Uri,
                    InputFormat = inputDocFormat,
                },
                OutputDataConfig = new OutputDataConfig()
                {
                    S3Uri = outputS3Uri,
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn = dataAccessRoleArn,
                NumberOfTopics = numberOfTopics,
            };

            var startTopicsDetectionJobResponse = await
comprehendClient.StartTopicsDetectionJobAsync(startTopicsDetectionJobRequest);

            var jobId = startTopicsDetectionJobResponse.JobId;
            Console.WriteLine("JobId: " + jobId);
```

```
            var describeTopicsDetectionJobRequest = new
DescribeTopicsDetectionJobRequest()
            {
                JobId = jobId,
            };

            var describeTopicsDetectionJobResponse = await
comprehendClient.DescribeTopicsDetectionJobAsync(describeTopicsDetectionJobRequest);

PrintJobProperties(describeTopicsDetectionJobResponse.TopicsDetectionJobProperties);

            var listTopicsDetectionJobsResponse = await
comprehendClient.ListTopicsDetectionJobsAsync(new
ListTopicsDetectionJobsRequest());
            foreach (var props in
listTopicsDetectionJobsResponse.TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList)
            {
                PrintJobProperties(props);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method is a helper method that displays the job properties
        /// from the call to StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="props">A list of properties from the call to
        /// StartTopicsDetectionJobRequest.</param>
        private static void PrintJobProperties(TopicsDetectionJobProperties props)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"JobId: {props.JobId}, JobName: {props.JobName},
JobStatus: {props.JobStatus}");
            Console.WriteLine($"NumberOfTopics: {props.NumberOfTopics}\nInputS3Uri:
{props.InputDataConfig.S3Uri}");
            Console.WriteLine($"InputFormat: {props.InputDataConfig.InputFormat},
OutputS3Uri: {props.OutputDataConfig.S3Uri}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using System.Text.Json;
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
//Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted into
 a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaDocDb;

public class Function
{

     /// <summary>
    /// Lambda function entry point to process Amazon DocumentDB events.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="event">The Amazon DocumentDB event.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context object.</param>
    /// <returns>A string to indicate successful processing.</returns>
    public string FunctionHandler(Event evnt, ILambdaContext context)
```

```
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Events)
        {
            ProcessDocumentDBEvent(record, context);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

     private void ProcessDocumentDBEvent(DocumentDBEventRecord record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {

        var eventData = record.Event;
        var operationType = eventData.OperationType;
        var databaseName = eventData.Ns.Db;
        var collectionName = eventData.Ns.Coll;
        var fullDocument = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventData.FullDocument, new
 JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true });

        context.Logger.LogLine($"Operation type: {operationType}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Database: {databaseName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Collection: {collectionName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Full document:\n{fullDocument}");
    }



    public class Event
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("eventSourceArn")]
        public string EventSourceArn { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("events")]
        public List<DocumentDBEventRecord> Events { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("eventSource")]
        public string EventSource { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentDBEventRecord
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("event")]
```

```
        public EventData Event { get; set; }
    }

    public class EventData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public IdData Id { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("clusterTime")]
        public ClusterTime ClusterTime { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("documentKey")]
        public DocumentKey DocumentKey { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("fullDocument")]
        public Dictionary<string, object> FullDocument { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("ns")]
        public Namespace Ns { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("operationType")]
        public string OperationType { get; set; }
    }

    public class IdData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_data")]
        public string Data { get; set; }
    }

    public class ClusterTime
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$timestamp")]
        public Timestamp Timestamp { get; set; }
    }

    public class Timestamp
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("t")]
        public long T { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("i")]
        public int I { get; set; }
    }
```

```
    public class DocumentKey
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public Id Id { get; set; }
    }

    public class Id
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$oid")]
        public string Oid { get; set; }
    }

    public class Namespace
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("db")]
        public string Db { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("coll")]
        public string Coll { get; set; }
    }
}
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with DynamoDB.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table into which the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
```

```
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset += 25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
    /// added to the DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
    /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
    public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
    {
        if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
        {
            return null!;
        }

        using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
        string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
        var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

        if (allMovies is not null)
        {
            // Return the first 250 entries.
            return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
        }
        else
        {
            return null!;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets movies from the movie table by
    /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL SELECT statement.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year of the second movie.</param>
        /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> GetBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            string title2,
            int year1,
            int year2)
        {
            var getBatch = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            if (response.Responses.Count > 0)
            {
```

```
                response.Responses.ForEach(r =>
                {
                    if (r.Item.Any())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"{r.Item["title"]}\t{r.Item["year"]}");
                    }
                });
                return true;
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find either {title1} or {title2}.");
                return false;
            }

        }
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Updates information for multiple movies.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// movies to be updated.</param>
        /// <param name="producer1">The producer name for the first movie
        /// to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year that the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="producer2">The producer name for the second
        /// movie to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year that the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the update.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateBatch(
            string tableName,
            string producer1,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string producer2,
            string title2,
            int year2)
```

```
        {

            string updateBatch = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title = ?
AND year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer1 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer2 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple movies using a PartiQL BatchExecuteAsync
```

```
        /// statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// moves that will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };
```

```
            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;

namespace LowLevelBatchGet
{
    public class LowLevelBatchGet
    {
        private static readonly string _table1Name = "Forum";
        private static readonly string _table2Name = "Thread";

        public static async void RetrieveMultipleItemsBatchGet(AmazonDynamoDBClient
 client)
        {
            var request = new BatchGetItemRequest
            {
                RequestItems = new Dictionary<string, KeysAndAttributes>()
```

```
            {
                { _table1Name,
                  new KeysAndAttributes
                  {
                      Keys = new List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> >()
                      {
                          new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                          {
                              { "Name", new AttributeValue {
                                S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                            } }
                            },
                          new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                          {
                              { "Name", new AttributeValue {
                                S = "Amazon S3"
                            } }
                            }
                      }
                  }},
                {
                    _table2Name,
                    new KeysAndAttributes
                    {
                        Keys = new List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue> >()
                        {
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                                  } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "DynamoDB Thread 1"
                                  } }
                            },
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon DynamoDB"
                                  } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "DynamoDB Thread 2"
                                  } }
                            },
```

```
                            new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>()
                            {
                                { "ForumName", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "Amazon S3"
                                  } },
                                { "Subject", new AttributeValue {
                                      S = "S3 Thread 1"
                                  } }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            };

            BatchGetItemResponse response;
            do
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Making request");
                response = await client.BatchGetItemAsync(request);

                // Check the response.
                var responses = response.Responses; // Attribute list in the
response.

                foreach (var tableResponse in responses)
                {
                    var tableResults = tableResponse.Value;
                    Console.WriteLine("Items retrieved from table {0}",
tableResponse.Key);
                    foreach (var item1 in tableResults)
                    {
                        PrintItem(item1);
                    }
                }

                // Any unprocessed keys? could happen if you exceed
ProvisionedThroughput or some other error.
                Dictionary<string, KeysAndAttributes> unprocessedKeys =
response.UnprocessedKeys;
                foreach (var unprocessedTableKeys in unprocessedKeys)
                {
                    // Print table name.
                    Console.WriteLine(unprocessedTableKeys.Key);
```

```
                    // Print unprocessed primary keys.
                    foreach (var key in unprocessedTableKeys.Value.Keys)
                    {
                        PrintItem(key);
                    }
                }

                request.RequestItems = unprocessedKeys;
            } while (response.UnprocessedKeys.Count > 0);
        }

        private static void PrintItem(Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
 attributeList)
        {
            foreach (KeyValuePair<string, AttributeValue> kvp in attributeList)
            {
                string attributeName = kvp.Key;
                AttributeValue value = kvp.Value;

                Console.WriteLine(
                    attributeName + " " +
                    (value.S == null ? "" : "S=[" + value.S + "]") +
                    (value.N == null ? "" : "N=[" + value.N + "]") +
                    (value.SS == null ? "" : "SS=[" + string.Join(",",
 value.SS.ToArray()) + "]") +
                    (value.NS == null ? "" : "NS=[" + string.Join(",",
 value.NS.ToArray()) + "]")
                    );
            }
            Console.WriteLine("************************************************");
        }

        static void Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            RetrieveMultipleItemsBatchGet(client);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
private static async Task GetTableInformation()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\n*** Retrieving table information ***");

    var response = await Client.DescribeTableAsync(new DescribeTableRequest
    {
        TableName = ExampleTableName
    });

    var table = response.Table;
    Console.WriteLine($"Name: {table.TableName}");
    Console.WriteLine($"# of items: {table.ItemCount}");

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
 'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
```

```
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get a list of items.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve multiple movies by year using a SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movies were released.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetMovies(string tableName, int year)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE year = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
```

```
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
 producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
 = ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete a single movie.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
private static async Task ListMyTables()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\n*** Listing tables ***");

    string lastTableNameEvaluated = null;
    do
    {
        var response = await Client.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
        {
            Limit = 2,
            ExclusiveStartTableName = lastTableNameEvaluated
        });

        foreach (var name in response.TableNames)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(name);
        }

        lastTableNameEvaluated = response.LastEvaluatedTableName;
    } while (lastTableNameEvaluated != null);
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB .NET API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Before you run this example, download 'movies.json' from
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
GettingStarted.Js.02.html,
// and put it in the same folder as the example.

// Separator for the console display.
var SepBar = new string('-', 80);
const string tableName = "movie_table";
const string movieFileName = @"..\..\..\..\..\..\..\..\resources\sample_files
\movies.json";

DisplayInstructions();

// Create the table and wait for it to be active.
Console.WriteLine($"Creating the movie table: {tableName}");

var success = await DynamoDBMethods.CreateMovieTableAsync(tableName);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created table: {tableName}.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Add movie information to the table from moviedata.json. See the
// instructions at the top of this file to download the JSON file.
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"Inserting movies into the new table. Please wait...");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.InsertMovies(tableName, movieFileName);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine("Movies successfully added to the table.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Movies could not be added to the table.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
var title1 = "Star Wars";
var year1 = 1977;
var title2 = "Wizard of Oz";
var year2 = 1939;

Console.WriteLine($"Updating two movies with producer information: {title1} and
 {title2}.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.GetBatch(tableName, title1, title2, year1,
 year2);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully retrieved {title1} and {title2}.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Select statement failed.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
var producer1 = "LucasFilm";
var producer2 = "MGM";

Console.WriteLine($"Updating two movies with producer information: {title1} and
 {title2}.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.UpdateBatch(tableName, producer1, title1, year1,
 producer2, title2, year2);
if (success)
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully updated {title1} and {title2}.");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine("Update failed.");
}

WaitForEnter();

// Delete multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
Console.WriteLine($"Now we will delete {title1} and {title2} from the table.");
success = await PartiQLBatchMethods.DeleteBatch(tableName, title1, year1, title2,
 year2);

if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Deleted {title1} and {title2}");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"could not delete {title1} or {title2}");
}

WaitForEnter();

// DNow that the PartiQL Batch scenario is complete, delete the movie table.
success = await DynamoDBMethods.DeleteTableAsync(tableName);

if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {tableName}");
}
else
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {tableName}");
}

/// <summary>
/// Displays the description of the application on the console.
/// </summary>
void DisplayInstructions()
{
    Console.Clear();
    Console.WriteLine();
```

```
    Console.Write(new string(' ', 24));
    Console.WriteLine("DynamoDB PartiQL Basics Example");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    Console.WriteLine("This demo application shows the basics of using Amazon
 DynamoDB with the AWS SDK for");
    Console.WriteLine(".NET version 3.7 and .NET 6.");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    Console.WriteLine("Creates a table by using the CreateTable method.");
    Console.WriteLine("Gets multiple movies by using a PartiQL SELECT statement.");
    Console.WriteLine("Updates multiple movies by using the ExecuteBatch method.");
    Console.WriteLine("Deletes multiple movies by using a PartiQL DELETE
 statement.");
    Console.WriteLine("Cleans up the resources created for the demo by deleting the
 table.");
    Console.WriteLine(SepBar);

    WaitForEnter();
}

/// <summary>
/// Simple method to wait for the <Enter> key to be pressed.
/// </summary>
void WaitForEnter()
{
    Console.WriteLine("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
    Console.Write(SepBar);
    _ = Console.ReadLine();
}


        /// <summary>
        /// Gets movies from the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year of the second movie.</param>
        /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> GetBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            string title2,
```

```
            int year1,
            int year2)
        {
            var getBatch = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = getBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            if (response.Responses.Count > 0)
            {
                response.Responses.ForEach(r =>
                {
                    if (r.Item.Any())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"{r.Item["title"]}\t{r.Item["year"]}");
                    }
                });
                return true;
```

```
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find either {title1} or {title2}.");
                return false;
            }

        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table into which the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset += 25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
```

```
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);

                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
```

```
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates information for multiple movies.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// movies to be updated.</param>
        /// <param name="producer1">The producer name for the first movie
        /// to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year that the first movie was released.</param>
        /// <param name="producer2">The producer name for the second
        /// movie to update.</param>
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year that the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the update.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateBatch(
            string tableName,
            string producer1,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string producer2,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {
```

```
            string updateBatch = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title = ?
AND year = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer1 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = producer2 },
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple movies using a PartiQL BatchExecuteAsync
        /// statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the
        /// moves that will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="title1">The title of the first movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year1">The year the first movie was released.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="title2">The title of the second movie.</param>
        /// <param name="year2">The year the second movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBatch(
            string tableName,
            string title1,
            int year1,
            string title2,
            int year2)
        {

            string updateBatch = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";
            var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>
            {
                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title1 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year1.ToString() },
                    },
                },

                new BatchStatementRequest
                {
                    Statement = updateBatch,
                    Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                    {
                        new AttributeValue { S = title2 },
                        new AttributeValue { N = year2.ToString() },
                    },
                }
            };

            var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statements = statements,
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
```

```
        }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace PartiQL_Basics_Scenario
{
    public class PartiQLMethods
    {
        private static readonly AmazonDynamoDBClient Client = new
 AmazonDynamoDBClient();


        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts movies imported from a JSON file into the movie table by
        /// using an Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL INSERT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the movie
        /// information will be inserted.</param>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file that contains
        /// movie information.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the insert operation.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<bool> InsertMovies(string tableName, string
movieFileName)
        {
            // Get the list of movies from the JSON file.
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);

            var success = false;

            if (movies is not null)
            {
                // Insert the movies in a batch using PartiQL. Because the
                // batch can contain a maximum of 25 items, insert 25 movies
                // at a time.
                string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
                var statements = new List<BatchStatementRequest>();

                try
                {
                    for (var indexOffset = 0; indexOffset < 250; indexOffset += 25)
                    {
                        for (var i = indexOffset; i < indexOffset + 25; i++)
                        {
                            statements.Add(new BatchStatementRequest
                            {
                                Statement = insertBatch,
                                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                                {
                                    new AttributeValue { S = movies[i].Title },
                                    new AttributeValue { N =
movies[i].Year.ToString() },
                                },
                            });
                        }

                        var response = await Client.BatchExecuteStatementAsync(new
BatchExecuteStatementRequest
                        {
                            Statements = statements,
                        });

                        // Wait between batches for movies to be successfully added.
                        System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(3000);
```

```
                        success = response.HttpStatusCode ==
System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;

                        // Clear the list of statements for the next batch.
                        statements.Clear();
                    }
                }
                catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                }
            }

            return success;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
        /// added to the DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
        /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
        public static List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
        {
            if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
            {
                return null!;
            }

            using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
            string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
            var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

            if (allMovies is not null)
            {
                // Return the first 250 entries.
                return allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
            }
            else
            {
                return null!;
            }
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve multiple movies by year using a SELECT statement.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movies were released.</param>
        /// <returns></returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetMovies(string tableName, int year)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE year = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
```

```
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
= ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
```

```
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
 ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of movies returned from a database query.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="items">The list of movie information to display.</param>
        private static void DisplayMovies(List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>
 items)
        {
            if (items.Count > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Found {items.Count} movies.");
                items.ForEach(item =>
 Console.WriteLine($"{item["year"].N}\t{item["title"].S}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Didn't find a movie that matched the supplied
 criteria.");
            }
        }


    }
}
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uses a PartiQL SELECT statement to retrieve a single movie from the
        /// movie database.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the movie table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to retrieve.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of movie data. If no movie matches the supplied
        /// title, the list is empty.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>>>
GetSingleMovie(string tableName, string movieTitle)
        {
            string selectSingle = $"SELECT * FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ?";
            var parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
            {
                new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
            };

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = selectSingle,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });

            return response.Items;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Inserts a single movie into the movies table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to insert.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
        /// the INSERT operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> InsertSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertBatch = $"INSERT INTO {tableName} VALUE {{'title': ?,
'year': ?}}";
```

```
            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertBatch,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a single movie in the table, adding information for the
        /// producer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">the name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="producer">The name of the producer.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The movie title.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// UPDATE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UpdateSingleMovie(string tableName, string
producer, string movieTitle, int year)
        {
            string insertSingle = $"UPDATE {tableName} SET Producer=? WHERE title
= ? AND year = ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = insertSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = producer },
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });
```

```
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a single movie from the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
        /// <param name="movieTitle">The title of the movie to delete.</param>
        /// <param name="year">The year that the movie was released.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the
        /// DELETE operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteSingleMovie(string tableName, string
movieTitle, int year)
        {
            var deleteSingle = $"DELETE FROM {tableName} WHERE title = ? AND year
= ?";

            var response = await Client.ExecuteStatementAsync(new
ExecuteStatementRequest
            {
                Statement = deleteSingle,
                Parameters = new List<AttributeValue>
                {
                    new AttributeValue { S = movieTitle },
                    new AttributeValue { N = year.ToString() },
                },
            });

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Use a document model

The following code example shows how to perform Create, Read, Update, and Delete (CRUD) and batch operations using a document model for DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see Document model.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Perform CRUD operations using a document model.

```
/// <summary>
/// Performs CRUD operations on an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/// </summary>
public class MidlevelItemCRUD
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var tableName = "ProductCatalog";
        var sampleBookId = 555;

        var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
        var productCatalog = LoadTable(client, tableName);

        await CreateBookItem(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
        RetrieveBook(productCatalog, sampleBookId);

        // Couple of sample updates.
        UpdateMultipleAttributes(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
        UpdateBookPriceConditionally(productCatalog, sampleBookId);

        // Delete.
        await DeleteBook(productCatalog, sampleBookId);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB client object.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to load.</param>
    /// <returns>A DynamoDB table object.</returns>
    public static Table LoadTable(IAmazonDynamoDB client, string tableName)
    {
```

```
            Table productCatalog = Table.LoadTable(client, tableName);
            return productCatalog;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an example book item and adds it to the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async Task CreateBookItem(Table productCatalog, int
sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing CreateBookItem() ***");
            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = sampleBookId,
                ["Title"] = "Book " + sampleBookId,
                ["Price"] = 19.99,
                ["ISBN"] = "111-1111111111",
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2", "Author
3" },
                ["PageCount"] = 500,
                ["Dimensions"] = "8.5x11x.5",
                ["InPublication"] = new DynamoDBBool(true),
                ["InStock"] = new DynamoDBBool(false),
                ["QuantityOnHand"] = 0,
            };

            // Adds the book to the ProductCatalog table.
            await productCatalog.PutItemAsync(book);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves an item, a book, from the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void RetrieveBook(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing RetrieveBook() ***");

            // Optional configuration.
            var config = new GetItemOperationConfig
            {
                AttributesToGet = new List<string> { "Id", "ISBN", "Title",
"Authors", "Price" },
                ConsistentRead = true,
            };

            Document document = await productCatalog.GetItemAsync(sampleBookId,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("RetrieveBook: Printing book retrieved...");
            PrintDocument(document);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates multiple attributes for a book and writes the changes to the
        /// DynamoDB table ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void UpdateMultipleAttributes(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nUpdating multiple attributes....");
            int partitionKey = sampleBookId;

            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = partitionKey,

                // List of attribute updates.
                // The following replaces the existing authors list.
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author x", "Author y" },
                ["newAttribute"] = "New Value",
                ["ISBN"] = null, // Remove it.
            };

            // Optional parameters.
            var config = new UpdateItemOperationConfig
            {
```

```
                // Gets updated item in response.
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllNewAttributes,
            };

            Document updatedBook = await productCatalog.UpdateItemAsync(book,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("UpdateMultipleAttributes: Printing item after
updates ...");
            PrintDocument(updatedBook);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Updates a book item if it meets the specified criteria.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async void UpdateBookPriceConditionally(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing UpdateBookPriceConditionally() ***");

            int partitionKey = sampleBookId;

            var book = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = partitionKey,
                ["Price"] = 29.99,
            };

            // For conditional price update, creating a condition expression.
            var expr = new Expression
            {
                ExpressionStatement = "Price = :val",
            };
            expr.ExpressionAttributeValues[":val"] = 19.00;

            // Optional parameters.
            var config = new UpdateItemOperationConfig
            {
                ConditionalExpression = expr,
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllNewAttributes,
            };
```

```
            Document updatedBook = await productCatalog.UpdateItemAsync(book,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("UpdateBookPriceConditionally: Printing item whose
price was conditionally updated");
            PrintDocument(updatedBook);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the book with the supplied Id value from the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalog">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        /// <param name="sampleBookId">An integer value representing the book's
ID.</param>
        public static async Task DeleteBook(
          Table productCatalog,
          int sampleBookId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\n*** Executing DeleteBook() ***");

            // Optional configuration.
            var config = new DeleteItemOperationConfig
            {
                // Returns the deleted item.
                ReturnValues = ReturnValues.AllOldAttributes,
            };
            Document document = await productCatalog.DeleteItemAsync(sampleBookId,
config);
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteBook: Printing deleted just deleted...");

            PrintDocument(document);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Prints the information for the supplied DynamoDB document.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="updatedDocument">A DynamoDB document object.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document updatedDocument)
        {
            if (updatedDocument is null)
            {
                return;
            }
```

```
            foreach (var attribute in updatedDocument.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = updatedDocument[attribute];

                if (value is null)
                {
                    continue;
                }

                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                  select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}", attribute,
stringValue);
            }
        }
    }
```

Perform batch write operations using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to use mid-level Amazon DynamoDB API calls to perform batch
    /// operations.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelBatchWriteItem
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
```

```
            await SingleTableBatchWrite(client);
            await MultiTableBatchWrite(client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a batch operation on a single DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB object.</param>
        public static async Task SingleTableBatchWrite(IAmazonDynamoDB client)
        {
            Table productCatalog = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");
            var batchWrite = productCatalog.CreateBatchWrite();

            var book1 = new Document
            {
                ["Id"] = 902,
                ["Title"] = "My book1 in batch write using .NET helper classes",
                ["ISBN"] = "902-11-11-1111",
                ["Price"] = 10,
                ["ProductCategory"] = "Book",
                ["Authors"] = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2", "Author
3" },
                ["Dimensions"] = "8.5x11x.5",
                ["InStock"] = new DynamoDBBool(true),
                ["QuantityOnHand"] = new DynamoDBNull(), // Quantity is unknown at
this time.
            };

            batchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(book1);

            // Specify delete item using overload that takes PK.
            batchWrite.AddKeyToDelete(12345);
            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in SingleTableBatchWrite()");
            await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a batch operation involving multiple DynamoDB tables.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized DynamoDB client object.</param>
        public static async Task MultiTableBatchWrite(IAmazonDynamoDB client)
        {
            // Specify item to add in the Forum table.
```

```
            Table forum = Table.LoadTable(client, "Forum");
            var forumBatchWrite = forum.CreateBatchWrite();

            var forum1 = new Document
            {
                ["Name"] = "Test BatchWrite Forum",
                ["Threads"] = 0,
            };
            forumBatchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(forum1);

            // Specify item to add in the Thread table.
            Table thread = Table.LoadTable(client, "Thread");
            var threadBatchWrite = thread.CreateBatchWrite();

            var thread1 = new Document
            {
                ["ForumName"] = "S3 forum",
                ["Subject"] = "My sample question",
                ["Message"] = "Message text",
                ["KeywordTags"] = new List<string> { "S3", "Bucket" },
            };
            threadBatchWrite.AddDocumentToPut(thread1);

            // Specify item to delete from the Thread table.
            threadBatchWrite.AddKeyToDelete("someForumName", "someSubject");

            // Create multi-table batch.
            var superBatch = new MultiTableDocumentBatchWrite();
            superBatch.AddBatch(forumBatchWrite);
            superBatch.AddBatch(threadBatchWrite);
            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in MultiTableBatchWrite()");

            // Execute the batch.
            await superBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }
    }
```

Scan a table using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Shows how to use mid-level Amazon DynamoDB API calls to scan a DynamoDB
    /// table for values.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelScanOnly
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            Table productCatalogTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");

            await FindProductsWithNegativePrice(productCatalogTable);
            await FindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig(productCatalogTable);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves any products that have a negative price in a DynamoDB table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalogTable">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsWithNegativePrice(
          Table productCatalogTable)
        {
            // Assume there is a price error. So we scan to find items priced < 0.
            var scanFilter = new ScanFilter();
            scanFilter.AddCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, 0);

            Search search = productCatalogTable.Scan(scanFilter);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsWithNegativePrice:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Finds any items in the ProductCatalog table using a DynamoDB
```

```
        /// configuration object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="productCatalogTable">A DynamoDB table object.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig(
          Table productCatalogTable)
        {
            // Assume there is a price error. So we scan to find items priced < 0.
            var scanFilter = new ScanFilter();
            scanFilter.AddCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, 0);

            var config = new ScanOperationConfig()
            {
                Filter = scanFilter,
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string> { "Title", "Id" },
            };

            Search search = productCatalogTable.Scan(config);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsWithNegativePriceWithConfig:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the details of the passed DynamoDB document object on the
        /// console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="document">A DynamoDB document object.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document document)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            foreach (var attribute in document.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
```

```
                var value = document[attribute];
                if (value is Primitive)
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                  select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Query and scan a table using a document model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform mid-level query procedures on an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    /// </summary>
    public class MidLevelQueryAndScan
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonDynamoDB client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            // Query examples.
            Table replyTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "Reply");
            string forumName = "Amazon DynamoDB";
            string threadSubject = "DynamoDB Thread 2";

            await FindRepliesInLast15Days(replyTable);
            await FindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig(replyTable, forumName,
threadSubject);
            await FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(replyTable, forumName,
threadSubject);
```

```
            // Get Example.
            Table productCatalogTable = Table.LoadTable(client, "ProductCatalog");
            int productId = 101;

            await GetProduct(productCatalogTable, productId);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves information about a product from the DynamoDB table
        /// ProductCatalog based on the product ID and displays the information
        /// on the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which to retrieve
        /// product information.</param>
        /// <param name="productId">The ID of the product to retrieve.</param>
        public static async Task GetProduct(Table tableName, int productId)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("*** Executing GetProduct() ***");
            Document productDocument = await tableName.GetItemAsync(productId);
            if (productDocument != null)
            {
                PrintDocument(productDocument);
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Error: product " + productId + " does not
exist");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves replies from the passed DynamoDB table object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15Days(
          Table table)
        {
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);
            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, "Id");
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.GreaterThan,
twoWeeksAgoDate);

            // Use Query overloads that take the minimum required query parameters.
```

```
            Search search = table.Query(filter);

            do
            {
                var documentSet = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesInLast15Days:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentSet)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve replies made during a specific time period.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">The subject of the thread, which we are
        /// searching for replies.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(
          Table table,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            DateTime startDate = DateTime.UtcNow.Subtract(new TimeSpan(21, 0, 0,
0));
            DateTime endDate = DateTime.UtcNow.Subtract(new TimeSpan(1, 0, 0, 0));

            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, forumName + "#"
+ threadSubject);
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.Between, startDate,
endDate);

            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Limit = 2, // 2 items/page.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
        {
```

```
          "Message",
          "ReplyDateTime",
          "PostedBy",
        },
                ConsistentRead = true,
                Filter = filter,
            };

            Search search = table.Query(config);

            do
            {
                var documentList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod: printing
replies posted within dates: {0} and {1} ............", startDate, endDate);

                foreach (var document in documentList)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Perform a query for replies made in the last 15 days using a DynamoDB
        /// QueryOperationConfig object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="table">The table we want to query.</param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadName">The bane of the thread that we are searching
        /// for replies.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig(
          Table table,
          string forumName,
          string threadName)
        {
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);
            var filter = new QueryFilter("Id", QueryOperator.Equal, forumName + "#"
+ threadName);
            filter.AddCondition("ReplyDateTime", QueryOperator.GreaterThan,
twoWeeksAgoDate);
```

```
            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Filter = filter,

                // Optional parameters.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
                {
                  "Message",
                  "ReplyDateTime",
                  "PostedBy",
                },
                ConsistentRead = true,
            };

            Search search = table.Query(config);

            do
            {
                var documentSet = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                Console.WriteLine("\nFindRepliesInLast15DaysWithConfig:
printing ............");

                foreach (var document in documentSet)
                {
                    PrintDocument(document);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the contents of the passed DynamoDB document on the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="document">A DynamoDB document to display.</param>
        public static void PrintDocument(Document document)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            foreach (var attribute in document.GetAttributeNames())
            {
                string stringValue = null;
                var value = document[attribute];

                if (value is Primitive)
```

```
                {
                    stringValue = value.AsPrimitive().Value.ToString();
                }
                else if (value is PrimitiveList)
                {
                    stringValue = string.Join(",", (from primitive
                      in value.AsPrimitiveList().Entries
                                                        select
primitive.Value).ToArray());
                }

                Console.WriteLine($"{attribute} - {stringValue}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Use a high-level object persistence model

The following code example shows how to perform Create, Read, Update, and Delete (CRUD) and batch operations using an object persistence model for DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see Object persistence model.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Perform CRUD operations using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform high-level CRUD operations on an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelItemCrud
    {
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
            await PerformCRUDOperations(context);
        }

        public static async Task PerformCRUDOperations(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            int bookId = 1001; // Some unique value.
            Book myBook = new Book
            {
                Id = bookId,
                Title = "object persistence-AWS SDK for.NET SDK-Book 1001",
                Isbn = "111-1111111001",
                BookAuthors = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2" },
            };

            // Save the book to the ProductCatalog table.
            await context.SaveAsync(myBook);

            // Retrieve the book from the ProductCatalog table.
            Book bookRetrieved = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId);

            // Update some properties.
            bookRetrieved.Isbn = "222-2222221001";

            // Update existing authors list with the following values.
            bookRetrieved.BookAuthors = new List<string> { " Author 1", "Author
x" };
            await context.SaveAsync(bookRetrieved);

            // Retrieve the updated book. This time, add the optional
            // ConsistentRead parameter using DynamoDBContextConfig object.
            await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId, new DynamoDBContextConfig
            {
                ConsistentRead = true,
            });

            // Delete the book.
            await context.DeleteAsync<Book>(bookId);

            // Try to retrieve deleted book. It should return null.
```

```
            Book deletedBook = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(bookId, new
DynamoDBContextConfig
            {
                ConsistentRead = true,
            });

            if (deletedBook == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Book is deleted");
            }
        }
    }
```

Perform batch write operations using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Performs high-level batch write operations to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
    /// This example was written using the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.7 and .NET
    /// Core 5.0.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelBatchWriteItem
    {
        public static async Task SingleTableBatchWrite(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            Book book1 = new Book
            {
                Id = 902,
                InPublication = true,
                Isbn = "902-11-11-1111",
                PageCount = "100",
                Price = 10,
                ProductCategory = "Book",
                Title = "My book3 in batch write",
            };

            Book book2 = new Book
            {
                Id = 903,
                InPublication = true,
                Isbn = "903-11-11-1111",
```

```
                PageCount = "200",
                Price = 10,
                ProductCategory = "Book",
                Title = "My book4 in batch write",
            };

            var bookBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Book>();
            bookBatch.AddPutItems(new List<Book> { book1, book2 });

            Console.WriteLine("Adding two books to ProductCatalog table.");
            await bookBatch.ExecuteAsync();
        }

        public static async Task MultiTableBatchWrite(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            // New Forum item.
            Forum newForum = new Forum
            {
                Name = "Test BatchWrite Forum",
                Threads = 0,
            };
            var forumBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Forum>();
            forumBatch.AddPutItem(newForum);

            // New Thread item.
            Thread newThread = new Thread
            {
                ForumName = "S3 forum",
                Subject = "My sample question",
                KeywordTags = new List<string> { "S3", "Bucket" },
                Message = "Message text",
            };

            DynamoDBOperationConfig config = new DynamoDBOperationConfig();
            config.SkipVersionCheck = true;
            var threadBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Thread>(config);
            threadBatch.AddPutItem(newThread);
            threadBatch.AddDeleteKey("some partition key value", "some sort key
value");

            var superBatch = new MultiTableBatchWrite(forumBatch, threadBatch);

            Console.WriteLine("Performing batch write in MultiTableBatchWrite().");
            await superBatch.ExecuteAsync();
```

```
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            AmazonDynamoDBClient client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

            await SingleTableBatchWrite(context);
            await MultiTableBatchWrite(context);
        }
    }
```

Map arbitrary data to a table using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to map arbitrary data to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelMappingArbitraryData
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a book, adds it to the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table, retrieves
        /// the new book from the table, updates the dimensions and writes the
        /// changed item back to the table.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context object used to write and
        /// read data from the table.</param>
        public static async Task AddRetrieveUpdateBook(IDynamoDBContext context)
        {
            // Create a book.
            DimensionType myBookDimensions = new DimensionType()
            {
                Length = 8M,
                Height = 11M,
                Thickness = 0.5M,
            };

            Book myBook = new Book
            {
                Id = 501,
```

```
                Title = "AWS SDK for .NET Object Persistence Model Handling
Arbitrary Data",
                Isbn = "999-9999999999",
                BookAuthors = new List<string> { "Author 1", "Author 2" },
                Dimensions = myBookDimensions,
            };

            // Add the book to the DynamoDB table ProductCatalog.
            await context.SaveAsync(myBook);

            // Retrieve the book.
            Book bookRetrieved = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(501);

            // Update the book dimensions property.
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Height += 1;
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Length += 1;
            bookRetrieved.Dimensions.Thickness += 0.2M;

            // Write the changed item to the table.
            await context.SaveAsync(bookRetrieved);
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();
            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);
            await AddRetrieveUpdateBook(context);
        }
    }
```

Query and scan a table using a high-level object persistence model.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to perform high-level query and scan operations to Amazon
    /// DynamoDB tables.
    /// </summary>
    public class HighLevelQueryAndScan
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
```

```
            var client = new AmazonDynamoDBClient();

            DynamoDBContext context = new DynamoDBContext(client);

            // Get an item.
            await GetBook(context, 101);

            // Sample forum and thread to test queries.
            string forumName = "Amazon DynamoDB";
            string threadSubject = "DynamoDB Thread 1";

            // Sample queries.
            await FindRepliesInLast15Days(context, forumName, threadSubject);
            await FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(context, forumName,
 threadSubject);

            // Scan table.
            await FindProductsPricedLessThanZero(context);
        }

        public static async Task GetBook(IDynamoDBContext context, int productId)
        {
            Book bookItem = await context.LoadAsync<Book>(productId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nGetBook: Printing result.....");
            Console.WriteLine($"Title: {bookItem.Title} \n ISBN:{bookItem.Isbn} \n
 No. of pages: {bookItem.PageCount}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries a DynamoDB table to find replies posted within the last 15 days.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context used to perform the query.</
param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
 in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">The thread object containing the query
 parameters.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesInLast15Days(
          IDynamoDBContext context,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            string replyId = $"{forumName} #{threadSubject}";
```

```
            DateTime twoWeeksAgoDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(15);

            List<object> times = new List<object>();
            times.Add(twoWeeksAgoDate);

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc = new ScanCondition("PostedBy", ScanOperator.GreaterThan,
 times.ToArray());
            scs.Add(sc);

            var cfg = new DynamoDBOperationConfig
            {
                QueryFilter = scs,
            };

            AsyncSearch<Reply> response = context.QueryAsync<Reply>(replyId, cfg);
            IEnumerable<Reply> latestReplies = await response.GetRemainingAsync();

            Console.WriteLine("\nReplies in last 15 days:");

            foreach (Reply r in latestReplies)
            {

 Console.WriteLine($"{r.Id}\t{r.PostedBy}\t{r.Message}\t{r.ReplyDateTime}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries for replies posted within a specific time period.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context used to perform the query.</
param>
        /// <param name="forumName">The name of the forum that we're interested
 in.</param>
        /// <param name="threadSubject">Information about the subject that we're
        /// interested in.</param>
        public static async Task FindRepliesPostedWithinTimePeriod(
          IDynamoDBContext context,
          string forumName,
          string threadSubject)
        {
            string forumId = forumName + "#" + threadSubject;
            Console.WriteLine("\nReplies posted within time period:");
```

```
            DateTime startDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(30);
            DateTime endDate = DateTime.UtcNow - TimeSpan.FromDays(1);

            List<object> times = new List<object>();
            times.Add(startDate);
            times.Add(endDate);

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc = new ScanCondition("LastPostedBy", ScanOperator.Between,
times.ToArray());
            scs.Add(sc);

            var cfg = new DynamoDBOperationConfig
            {
                QueryFilter = scs,
            };

            AsyncSearch<Reply> response = context.QueryAsync<Reply>(forumId, cfg);
            IEnumerable<Reply> repliesInAPeriod = await
response.GetRemainingAsync();

            foreach (Reply r in repliesInAPeriod)
            {

Console.WriteLine("{r.Id}\t{r.PostedBy}\t{r.Message}\t{r.ReplyDateTime}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Queries the DynamoDB ProductCatalog table for products costing less
        /// than zero.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="context">The DynamoDB context object used to perform the
        /// query.</param>
        public static async Task FindProductsPricedLessThanZero(IDynamoDBContext
context)
        {
            int price = 0;

            List<ScanCondition> scs = new List<ScanCondition>();
            var sc1 = new ScanCondition("Price", ScanOperator.LessThan, price);
            var sc2 = new ScanCondition("ProductCategory", ScanOperator.Equal,
"Book");
            scs.Add(sc1);
```

```
            scs.Add(sc2);

            AsyncSearch<Book> response = context.ScanAsync<Book>(scs);

            IEnumerable<Book> itemsWithWrongPrice = await
 response.GetRemainingAsync();

            Console.WriteLine("\nFindProductsPricedLessThanZero: Printing
 result.....");

            foreach (Book r in itemsWithWrongPrice)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{r.Id}\t{r.Title}\t{r.Price}\t{r.Isbn}");
            }
        }
    }
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
```

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public void FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event ID: {record.EventID}");
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event Name: {record.EventName}");

            context.Logger.LogInformation(JsonSerializer.Serialize(record));
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public StreamsEventResponse FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent,
 ILambdaContext context)

    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        StreamsEventResponse streamsEventResponse = new StreamsEventResponse();

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                var sequenceNumber = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
                context.Logger.LogInformation(sequenceNumber);
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                context.Logger.LogError(ex.Message);
                batchItemFailures.Add(new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure()
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber });
            }
        }

        if (batchItemFailures.Count > 0)
        {
            streamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailures = batchItemFailures;
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
        return streamsEventResponse;
    }
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Show Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Basics actions.
/// </summary>
public class EC2Basics
{
    public static ILogger<EC2Basics> _logger = null!;
    public static EC2Wrapper _ec2Wrapper = null!;
    public static SsmWrapper _ssmWrapper = null!;
    public static UiMethods _uiMethods = null!;

    public static string associationId = null!;
    public static string allocationId = null!;
    public static string instanceId = null!;
    public static string keyPairName = null!;
    public static string groupName = null!;
    public static string tempFileName = null!;
    public static string secGroupId = null!;
    public static bool isInteractive = true;

    /// <summary>
    /// Perform the actions defined for the Amazon EC2 Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A Task object.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EC2 and Amazon Simple Systems
        // Management (Amazon SSM) Service.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
```

```
                    .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SsmWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        SetUpServices(host);

        var uniqueName = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();
        keyPairName = "mvp-example-key-pair" + uniqueName;
        groupName = "ec2-scenario-group" + uniqueName;
        var groupDescription = "A security group created for the EC2 Basics
scenario.";

        try
        {
            // Start the scenario.
            _uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Create the key pair.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create RSA key pair");
            Console.Write("Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to ");
            Console.WriteLine("securely connect to your EC2 instance.");
            var keyPair = await _ec2Wrapper.CreateKeyPair(keyPairName);

            // Save key pair information to a temporary file.
            tempFileName = _ec2Wrapper.SaveKeyPair(keyPair);

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Created the key pair: {keyPair.KeyName} and saved it to:
{tempFileName}");
            string? answer = "";
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Would you like to list your existing key pairs?
");
                    answer = Console.ReadLine();
                } while (answer!.ToLower() != "y" && answer.ToLower() != "n");
            }

            if (!isInteractive || answer == "y")
            {
```

```
                // List existing key pairs.
                _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Existing key pairs");

                // Passing an empty string to the DescribeKeyPairs method will
return
                // a list of all existing key pairs.
                var keyPairs = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeKeyPairs("");
                keyPairs.ForEach(kp =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"{kp.KeyName} created at: {kp.CreateTime} Fingerprint:
{kp.KeyFingerprint}");
                });
            }

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Create the security group.
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Let's create a security group to manage access to your instance.");
            secGroupId = await _ec2Wrapper.CreateSecurityGroup(groupName,
groupDescription);
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Let's add rules to allow all HTTP and HTTPS inbound traffic and to
allow SSH only from your current IP address.");

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Security group information");
            var secGroups = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeSecurityGroups(secGroupId);

            Console.WriteLine($"Created security group {groupName} in your default
VPC.");
            secGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                _ec2Wrapper.DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(group);
            });
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we'll authorize the security group we just created so that it
can");
            Console.WriteLine("access the EC2 instances you create.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupName);

            secGroups = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeSecurityGroups(secGroupId);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Now let's look at the permissions again.");
            secGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                _ec2Wrapper.DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(group);
            });
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            // Get list of available Amazon Linux 2 Amazon Machine Images (AMIs).
            var parameters =
                await _ssmWrapper.GetParametersByPath(
                    "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest");

            List<string> imageIds = parameters.Select(param =>
param.Value).ToList();

            var images = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeImages(imageIds);

            var i = 1;
            images.ForEach(image =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i++}\t{image.Description}");
            });

            int choice = 1;
            bool validNumber = false;
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Please select an image: ");
                    var selImage = Console.ReadLine();
                    validNumber = int.TryParse(selImage, out choice);
                } while (!validNumber);
            }

            var selectedImage = images[choice - 1];

            // Display available instance types.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Instance Types");
            var instanceTypes =
                await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstanceTypes(selectedImage.Architecture);

            i = 1;
            instanceTypes.ForEach(instanceType =>
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i++}\t{instanceType.InstanceType}");
            });
            if (isInteractive)
            {
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Please select an instance type: ");
                    var selImage = Console.ReadLine();
                    validNumber = int.TryParse(selImage, out choice);
                } while (!validNumber);
            }

            var selectedInstanceType = instanceTypes[choice - 1].InstanceType;

            // Create an EC2 instance.
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Creating an EC2 Instance");
            instanceId = await _ec2Wrapper.RunInstances(selectedImage.ImageId,
                selectedInstanceType, keyPairName, secGroupId);

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            var instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nYou can use SSH to connect to your instance. For example:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we'll stop the instance and then start it again to see what's
changed.");

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start it up again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nLet's see what changed.");
```

```
            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine("\nNotice the change in the SSH information:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we will stop the instance again. Then we will create and
associate an");
            Console.WriteLine("Elastic IP address to use with our instance.");

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Allocate Elastic IP address");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with your
instance\nto keep a consistent IP address even when your instance restarts.");
            var allocationResponse = await _ec2Wrapper.AllocateAddress();
            allocationId = allocationResponse.AllocationId;
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Now we will associate the Elastic IP address with our instance.");
            associationId = await _ec2Wrapper.AssociateAddress(allocationId,
instanceId);

            // Start the instance again.
            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start the instance again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nLet's see what changed.");

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Instance information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);

            Console.WriteLine("\nHere is the SSH information:");
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tssh -i {tempFileName} ec2-user@{instance.PublicIpAddress}");

            Console.WriteLine("Let's stop and start the instance again.");
```

```
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            await _ec2Wrapper.StopInstances(instanceId);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's start it up again.");
            await _ec2Wrapper.StartInstances(instanceId);

            instance = await _ec2Wrapper.DescribeInstance(instanceId);
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("New Instance Information");
            _ec2Wrapper.DisplayInstanceInformation(instance);
            Console.WriteLine("Note that the IP address did not change this time.");
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);

            await Cleanup();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem with the scenario, starting
cleanup.");
            await Cleanup();
        }

        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("EC2 Basics Scenario completed.");
        _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the services and logging.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host"></param>
    public static void SetUpServices(IHost host)
    {
        var loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });
        _logger = new Logger<EC2Basics>(loggerFactory);

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        _ec2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<EC2Wrapper>();
        _ssmWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SsmWrapper>();
        _uiMethods = new UiMethods();
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up any resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public static async Task Cleanup()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's clean up the resources we created.");

        Console.WriteLine("Disassociate the Elastic IP address and release it.");
        // Disassociate the Elastic IP address.
        await _ec2Wrapper.DisassociateIp(associationId);

        // Delete the Elastic IP address.
        await _ec2Wrapper.ReleaseAddress(allocationId);

        // Terminate the instance.
        Console.WriteLine("Terminating the instance we created.");
        await _ec2Wrapper.TerminateInstances(instanceId);

        // Delete the security group.
        Console.WriteLine($"Deleting the Security Group: {groupName}.");
        await _ec2Wrapper.DeleteSecurityGroup(secGroupId);

        // Delete the RSA key pair.
        Console.WriteLine($"Deleting the key pair: {keyPairName}");
        await _ec2Wrapper.DeleteKeyPair(keyPairName);
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the temporary file with the key information.");
        _ec2Wrapper.DeleteTempFile(tempFileName);
        _uiMethods.PressEnter(isInteractive);
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Methods of this class perform Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
/// </summary>
public class EC2Wrapper
{
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEC2;
    private readonly ILogger<EC2Wrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EC2Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonScheduler">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger.</param>
    public EC2Wrapper(IAmazonEC2 amazonService, ILogger<EC2Wrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonEC2 = amazonService;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
    // instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP address
    // constant even when you restart the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The response object for the allocated address.</returns>
    public async Task<AllocateAddressResponse> AllocateAddress()
    {
        var request = new AllocateAddressRequest();

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AllocateAddressAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Allocated IP: {response.PublicIp} with allocation ID
 {response.AllocationId}.");
            return response;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "AddressLimitExceeded")
            {
                // For more information on Elastic IP address quotas, see:
                // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-ip-
addresses-eip.html#using-instance-addressing-limit
                _logger.LogError($"Unable to allocate Elastic IP, address limit
 exceeded. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while allocating Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association is
    /// created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
 public
    /// IP address of the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of an Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// associate the address with.</param>
    /// <returns>The association Id that represents
    /// the association of the Elastic IP address with an instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateAddress(string allocationId, string
 instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new AssociateAddressRequest
            {
                AllocationId = allocationId,
                InstanceId = instanceId
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.AssociateAddressAsync(request);
            return response.AssociationId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to associate address.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while associating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer ingress to EC2 instances associated
    /// with the virtual private cloud (VPC) security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the security group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the IP address for the local computer.
            var ipAddress = await GetIpAddress();
            Console.WriteLine($"Your IP address is: {ipAddress}");
            var ipRanges =
                new List<IpRange> { new IpRange { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" } };
            var permission = new IpPermission
            {
                Ipv4Ranges = ipRanges,
                IpProtocol = "tcp",
                FromPort = 22,
                ToPort = 22
            };
            var permissions = new List<IpPermission> { permission };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
                new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest(groupName, permissions));
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"The ingress rule already exists. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while authorizing ingress.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer for ingress to
    /// the Amazon EC2 SecurityGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The IPv4 address of the computer running the scenario.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetIpAddress()
    {
        var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        var ipString = await httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");

        // The IP address is returned with a new line
        // character on the end. Trim off the whitespace and
        // return the value to the caller.
        return ipString.Trim();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 key pair with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name for the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon EC2 key pair created.</returns>
    public async Task<KeyPair?> CreateKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateKeyPairRequest { KeyName = keyPairName, };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateKeyPairAsync(request);

            var kp = response.KeyPair;
            // Return the key pair so it can be saved if needed.
```

```
            // Wait until the key pair exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Checking for new KeyPair {keyPairName}...");
                var keyPairs = await DescribeKeyPairs(keyPairName);
                if (keyPairs.Any())
                {
                    return kp;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created KeyPair
{keyPairName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("KeyPair not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} already exists.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save KeyPair information to a temporary file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPair">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The full path to the temporary file.</returns>
    public string SaveKeyPair(KeyPair keyPair)
    {
        var tempPath = Path.GetTempPath();
```

```
        var tempFileName = $"{tempPath}\\{Path.GetRandomFileName()}";
        var pemFileName = Path.ChangeExtension(tempFileName, "pem");

        // Save the key pair to a file in a temporary folder.
        using var stream = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create);
        using var writer = new StreamWriter(stream);
        writer.WriteLine(keyPair.KeyMaterial);

        return pemFileName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 security group with a specified name and description.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new security group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupDescription">A description of the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The group Id of the new security group.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateSecurityGroup(string groupName, string
 groupDescription)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(
                new CreateSecurityGroupRequest(groupName, groupDescription));

            // Wait until the security group exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                var groups = await DescribeSecurityGroups(response.GroupId);
                if (groups.Any())
                {
                    return response.GroupId;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created group {groupName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("security group not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "ResourceAlreadyExists")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group with the name {groupName} already exists.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the security group.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 VPC.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cidrBlock">The CIDR block for the new security group.</param>
    /// <returns>The VPC Id of the new VPC.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> CreateVPC(string cidrBlock)
    {

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateVpcAsync(new CreateVpcRequest
            {
                CidrBlock = cidrBlock,
            });

            Vpc vpc = response.Vpc;
            Console.WriteLine($"Created VPC with ID: {vpc.VpcId}.");
            return vpc.VpcId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't create VPC because: {ex.Message}");
            return null;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEC2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new
DeleteKeyPairRequest(keyPairName)).ConfigureAwait(false);
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"KeyPair {keyPairName} does not exist and cannot
be deleted. Please verify the key pair name and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the key pair because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the temporary file where the key pair information was saved.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tempFileName">The path to the temporary file.</param>
    public void DeleteTempFile(string tempFileName)
    {
        if (File.Exists(tempFileName))
        {
            File.Delete(tempFileName);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteSecurityGroup(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response =
                await _amazonEC2.DeleteSecurityGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteSecurityGroupRequest { GroupId = groupId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Security Group {groupId} does not exist and cannot be deleted.
Please verify the ID and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 VPC.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteVpc(string vpcId)
    {
        var request = new DeleteVpcRequest
        {
            VpcId = vpcId,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DeleteVpcAsync(request);
```

```
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about existing Amazon EC2 images.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of image information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Image>> DescribeImages(List<string>? imageIds)
    {
        var request = new DescribeImagesRequest();
        if (imageIds is not null)
        {
            // If the imageIds list is not null, add the list
            // to the request object.
            request.ImageIds = imageIds;
        }

        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeImagesAsync(request);
        return response.Images;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by DescribeImages.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="images">The list of image information to display.</param>
    public void DisplayImageInfo(List<Image> images)
    {
        images.ForEach(image =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{image.Name} Created on: {image.CreationDate}");
        });

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>An EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<Instance> DescribeInstance(string instanceId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(
```

```
            new DescribeInstancesRequest { InstanceIds = new List<string>
{ instanceId } });
        return response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display EC2 instance information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The instance Id of the EC2 instance.</param>
    public void DisplayInstanceInformation(Instance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"ID: {instance.InstanceId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Image ID: {instance.ImageId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"{instance.InstanceType}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Key Name: {instance.KeyName}");
        Console.WriteLine($"VPC ID: {instance.VpcId}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Public IP: {instance.PublicIpAddress}");
        Console.WriteLine($"State: {instance.State.Name}");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about EC2 instances with a particular state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tagName">The name of the tag to filter on.</param>
    /// <param name="tagValue">The value of the tag to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetInstancesWithState(string state)
    {
        try
        {
            // Filters the results of the instance list.
            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter
                {
                    Name = $"instance-state-name",
                    Values = new List<string> { state, },
                },
            };
            var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest { Filters = filters, };

            Console.WriteLine($"\nShowing instances with state {state}");
            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstances(request);
```

```
            await foreach (var response in paginator.Responses)
            {
                foreach (var reservation in response.Reservations)
                {
                    foreach (var instance in reservation.Instances)
                    {
                        Console.Write($"Instance ID: {instance.InstanceId} ");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tCurrent State:
{instance.State.Name}");
                    }
                }
            }

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Invalid parameter value for filtering instances.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list instances because: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the instance types available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of instance type information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceTypeInfo>>
DescribeInstanceTypes(ArchitectureValues architecture)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeInstanceTypesRequest();

            var filters = new List<Filter>
```

```
            {
                new Filter("processor-info.supported-architecture",
                    new List<string> { architecture.ToString() })
            };
            filters.Add(new Filter("instance-type", new() { "*.micro",
"*.small" }));

            request.Filters = filters;
            var instanceTypes = new List<InstanceTypeInfo>();

            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstanceTypes(request);
            await foreach (var instanceType in paginator.InstanceTypes)
            {
                instanceTypes.Add(instanceType);
            }

            return instanceTypes;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Parameters are invalid. Ensure architecture and size strings
conform to DescribeInstanceTypes API reference.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of key pair information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<KeyPairInfo>> DescribeKeyPairs(string keyPairName)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest();
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyPairName))
            {
                request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest
                {
                    KeyNames = new List<string> { keyPairName }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeKeyPairsAsync(request);
            return response.KeyPairs.ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while describing the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information for one or all Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional Id of a specific Amazon EC2 security
 group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of security group information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> DescribeSecurityGroups(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();
```

```
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupId))
            {
                var groupIds = new List<string> { groupId };
                request.GroupIds = groupIds;
            }

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            return securityGroups;

        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group {groupId} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while listing security groups. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by the call to
    /// DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="securityGroup">A list of security group information.</param>
    public void DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(SecurityGroup securityGroup)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{securityGroup.GroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine("Ingress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissions.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Egress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissionsEgress.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
    }


    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="associationId">The association Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisassociateIp(string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DisassociateAddressAsync(
                new DisassociateAddressRequest { AssociationId = associationId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AssociationId is invalid, unable to disassociate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while disassociating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of available Amazon Linux images.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of image information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Image>> GetEC2AmiList()
    {
        var filter = new Filter { Name = "architecture", Values = new List<string>
{ "x86_64" } };
        var filters = new List<Filter> { filter };
        var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeImagesAsync(new
DescribeImagesRequest { Filters = filters });
        return response.Images;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reboot a specific EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the instance that will be
rebooted.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RebootInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RebootInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.RebootInstancesAsync(request);

            // Wait for the instance to be running.
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId {ec2InstanceId} is invalid, unable to reboot.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while rebooting the instance {ec2InstanceId}.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Release an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
    /// it can no longer be used.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of the Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ReleaseAddress(string allocationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ReleaseAddressRequest { AllocationId = allocationId };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.ReleaseAddressAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AllocationId {allocationId} was not found.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while releasing the AllocationId
 {allocationId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and run an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ImageId">The image Id of the image used as a basis for the
    /// EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The instance type of the EC2 instance to
 create.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The name of the key pair to associate with the
```

```
    /// instance.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the Amazon EC2 security group that will be
    /// allowed to interact with the new EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The instance Id of the new EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RunInstances(string imageId, string instanceType,
string keyName, string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new RunInstancesRequest
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
                KeyName = keyName,
                MinCount = 1,
                MaxCount = 1,
                SecurityGroupIds = new List<string> { groupId }
            };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.RunInstancesAsync(request);
            var instanceId = response.Reservation.Instances[0].InstanceId;

            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return instanceId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroupId.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"GroupId {groupId} was not found. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while running the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the Amazon EC2 instance
    /// to start.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StartInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StartInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StartInstancesAsync(request);

            Console.Write("Waiting for instance to start. ");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to start.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while starting the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Stop an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
```

```
    /// stop.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StopInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StopInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StopInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to stop.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Stopped);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to stop.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while stopping the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance
    /// to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceStateChange>> TerminateInstances(string
ec2InstanceId)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId }
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.TerminateInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to terminate.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Terminated);

            Console.WriteLine($"\nThe instance {ec2InstanceId} has been
terminated.");
            return response.TerminatingInstances;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to terminate.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while terminating the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
```

```
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups

- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
    // instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP address
    // constant even when you restart the associated instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The response object for the allocated address.</returns>
    public async Task<AllocateAddressResponse> AllocateAddress()
    {
        var request = new AllocateAddressRequest();

        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.AllocateAddressAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Allocated IP: {response.PublicIp} with allocation ID
{response.AllocationId}.");
            return response;
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "AddressLimitExceeded")
            {
                // For more information on Elastic IP address quotas, see:
                // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/elastic-ip-
addresses-eip.html#using-instance-addressing-limit
                _logger.LogError($"Unable to allocate Elastic IP, address limit
 exceeded. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while allocating Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association is
    /// created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
 public
    /// IP address of the associated instance.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of an Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// associate the address with.</param>
    /// <returns>The association Id that represents
    /// the association of the Elastic IP address with an instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AssociateAddress(string allocationId, string
 instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new AssociateAddressRequest
            {
                AllocationId = allocationId,
                InstanceId = instanceId
            };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.AssociateAddressAsync(request);
            return response.AssociationId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to associate address.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while associating the Elastic IP.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Authorize the local computer ingress to EC2 instances associated
/// with the virtual private cloud (VPC) security group.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="groupName">The name of the security group.</param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(string groupName)
{
    try
    {
        // Get the IP address for the local computer.
        var ipAddress = await GetIpAddress();
        Console.WriteLine($"Your IP address is: {ipAddress}");
        var ipRanges =
            new List<IpRange> { new IpRange { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" } };
        var permission = new IpPermission
        {
            Ipv4Ranges = ipRanges,
            IpProtocol = "tcp",
            FromPort = 22,
            ToPort = 22
        };
        var permissions = new List<IpPermission> { permission };
        var response = await _amazonEC2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest(groupName, permissions));
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
    catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
    {
        if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate")
        {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"The ingress rule already exists. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while authorizing ingress.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Authorize the local computer for ingress to
    /// the Amazon EC2 SecurityGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The IPv4 address of the computer running the scenario.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetIpAddress()
    {
        var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        var ipString = await httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");

        // The IP address is returned with a new line
        // character on the end. Trim off the whitespace and
        // return the value to the caller.
        return ipString.Trim();
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 key pair with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name for the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon EC2 key pair created.</returns>
    public async Task<KeyPair?> CreateKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateKeyPairRequest { KeyName = keyPairName, };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateKeyPairAsync(request);

            var kp = response.KeyPair;
            // Return the key pair so it can be saved if needed.

            // Wait until the key pair exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Checking for new KeyPair {keyPairName}...");
                var keyPairs = await DescribeKeyPairs(keyPairName);
                if (keyPairs.Any())
                {
                    return kp;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created KeyPair
{keyPairName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("KeyPair not found");
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} already exists.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Save KeyPair information to a temporary file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPair">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>The full path to the temporary file.</returns>
    public string SaveKeyPair(KeyPair keyPair)
    {
        var tempPath = Path.GetTempPath();
        var tempFileName = $"{tempPath}\\{Path.GetRandomFileName()}";
        var pemFileName = Path.ChangeExtension(tempFileName, "pem");

        // Save the key pair to a file in a temporary folder.
        using var stream = new FileStream(pemFileName, FileMode.Create);
        using var writer = new StreamWriter(stream);
        writer.WriteLine(keyPair.KeyMaterial);

        return pemFileName;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
```

```
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon EC2 security group with a specified name and description.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new security group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupDescription">A description of the new security group.</
param>
    /// <returns>The group Id of the new security group.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateSecurityGroup(string groupName, string
 groupDescription)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.CreateSecurityGroupAsync(
                new CreateSecurityGroupRequest(groupName, groupDescription));

            // Wait until the security group exists.
            int retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0)
            {
                var groups = await DescribeSecurityGroups(response.GroupId);
                if (groups.Any())
                {
                    return response.GroupId;
                }

                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                retries--;
            }
            _logger.LogError($"Unable to find newly created group {groupName}.");
            throw new DoesNotExistException("security group not found");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "ResourceAlreadyExists")
```

```
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group with the name {groupName} already exists.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating the security group.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyPair(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            await _amazonEC2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(new
DeleteKeyPairRequest(keyPairName)).ConfigureAwait(false);
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"KeyPair {keyPairName} does not exist and cannot
be deleted. Please verify the key pair name and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the key pair because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the temporary file where the key pair information was saved.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tempFileName">The path to the temporary file.</param>
    public void DeleteTempFile(string tempFileName)
    {
        if (File.Exists(tempFileName))
        {
            File.Delete(tempFileName);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteSecurityGroup(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response =
                await _amazonEC2.DeleteSecurityGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteSecurityGroupRequest { GroupId = groupId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Security Group {groupId} does not exist and cannot be deleted.
Please verify the ID and try again.");
            }

            return false;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAvailabilityZones`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAvailabilityZones`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the instance types available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of instance type information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<InstanceTypeInfo>>
DescribeInstanceTypes(ArchitectureValues architecture)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeInstanceTypesRequest();

            var filters = new List<Filter>
            {
                new Filter("processor-info.supported-architecture",
                    new List<string> { architecture.ToString() })
            };
            filters.Add(new Filter("instance-type", new() { "*.micro",
"*.small" }));

            request.Filters = filters;
            var instanceTypes = new List<InstanceTypeInfo>();

            var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstanceTypes(request);
            await foreach (var instanceType in paginator.InstanceTypes)
            {
                instanceTypes.Add(instanceType);
            }

            return instanceTypes;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Parameters are invalid. Ensure architecture and size strings
conform to DescribeInstanceTypes API reference.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete the security group because:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information about EC2 instances with a particular state.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="tagName">The name of the tag to filter on.</param>
/// <param name="tagValue">The value of the tag to look for.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> GetInstancesWithState(string state)
{
    try
    {
        // Filters the results of the instance list.
        var filters = new List<Filter>
        {
            new Filter
            {
                Name = $"instance-state-name",
                Values = new List<string> { state, },
            },
        };
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest { Filters = filters, };

        Console.WriteLine($"\nShowing instances with state {state}");
        var paginator = _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeInstances(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginator.Responses)
        {
            foreach (var reservation in response.Reservations)
            {
                foreach (var instance in reservation.Instances)
                {
                    Console.Write($"Instance ID: {instance.InstanceId} ");
```

```
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tCurrent State:
{instance.State.Name}");
                    }
                }
            }

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidParameterValue")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Invalid parameter value for filtering instances.");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list instances because: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get information about an Amazon EC2 key pair.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyPairName">The name of the key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of key pair information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<KeyPairInfo>> DescribeKeyPairs(string keyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest();
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyPairName))
            {
                request = new DescribeKeyPairsRequest
                {
                    KeyNames = new List<string> { keyPairName }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeKeyPairsAsync(request);
            return response.KeyPairs.ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A key pair called {keyPairName} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while describing the key pair.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information for one or all Amazon EC2 security group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional Id of a specific Amazon EC2 security
group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of security group information.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SecurityGroup>> DescribeSecurityGroups(string groupId)
    {
        try
        {
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(groupId))
            {
                var groupIds = new List<string> { groupId };
                request.GroupIds = groupIds;
            }

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                _amazonEC2.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            return securityGroups;

        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroup.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"A security group {groupId} does not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while listing security groups. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display the information returned by the call to
    /// DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="securityGroup">A list of security group information.</param>
    public void DisplaySecurityGroupInfoAsync(SecurityGroup securityGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"{securityGroup.GroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine("Ingress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissions.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
```

```
        });
        Console.WriteLine("Egress permissions:");
        securityGroup.IpPermissionsEgress.ForEach(permission =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tFromPort: {permission.FromPort}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIpProtocol: {permission.IpProtocol}");

            Console.Write($"\tIpv4Ranges: ");
            permission.Ipv4Ranges.ForEach(range => { Console.Write($"{range.CidrIp}
"); });

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tIpv6Ranges:");
            permission.Ipv6Ranges.ForEach(range =>
{ Console.Write($"{range.CidrIpv6} "); });

            Console.Write($"\n\tPrefixListIds: ");
            permission.PrefixListIds.ForEach(id => Console.Write($"{id.Id} "));

            Console.WriteLine($"\n\tTo Port: {permission.ToPort}");
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeSubnets`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubnets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeVpcs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVpcs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="associationId">The association Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisassociateIp(string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DisassociateAddressAsync(
                new DisassociateAddressRequest { AssociationId = associationId });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AssociationId is invalid, unable to disassociate address.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while disassociating the Elastic IP.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Reboot an instance by its Id.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reboot a specific EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the instance that will be
rebooted.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RebootInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var request = new RebootInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.RebootInstancesAsync(request);

            // Wait for the instance to be running.
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId {ec2InstanceId} is invalid, unable to reboot.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while rebooting the instance {ec2InstanceId}.:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
```

```
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

Replace the profile for an instance, reboot, and restart a web server.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
```

```
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
```

```
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Release an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
    /// it can no longer be used.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="allocationId">The allocation Id of the Elastic IP address.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ReleaseAddress(string allocationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ReleaseAddressRequest { AllocationId = allocationId };

            var response = await _amazonEC2.ReleaseAddressAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"AllocationId {allocationId} was not found.
 {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while releasing the AllocationId
 {allocationId}.: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
   /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
   /// used to restart the Python web server.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
   /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
```

```
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create and run an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ImageId">The image Id of the image used as a basis for the
    /// EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The instance type of the EC2 instance to
create.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The name of the key pair to associate with the
    /// instance.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the Amazon EC2 security group that will be
    /// allowed to interact with the new EC2 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The instance Id of the new EC2 instance.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RunInstances(string imageId, string instanceType,
string keyName, string groupId)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var request = new RunInstancesRequest
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
                KeyName = keyName,
                MinCount = 1,
                MaxCount = 1,
                SecurityGroupIds = new List<string> { groupId }
            };
            var response = await _amazonEC2.RunInstancesAsync(request);
            var instanceId = response.Reservation.Instances[0].InstanceId;

            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to start.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);

            return instanceId;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidGroupId.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"GroupId {groupId} was not found. {ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while running the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the Amazon EC2 instance
    /// to start.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StartInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StartInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StartInstancesAsync(request);

            Console.Write("Waiting for instance to start. ");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to start.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
```

```
                $"An error occurred while starting the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Stop an EC2 instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance to
    /// stop.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task StopInstances(string ec2InstanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new StopInstancesRequest
            {
                InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId },
            };

            await _amazonEC2.StopInstancesAsync(request);
            Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to stop.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Stopped);

            Console.WriteLine("\nThe instance has stopped.");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to stop.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while stopping the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Terminate an EC2 instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="ec2InstanceId">The instance Id of the EC2 instance
   /// to terminate.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task<List<InstanceStateChange>> TerminateInstances(string
ec2InstanceId)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new TerminateInstancesRequest
           {
               InstanceIds = new List<string> { ec2InstanceId }
           };

           var response = await _amazonEC2.TerminateInstancesAsync(request);
           Console.Write("Waiting for the instance to terminate.");
           await WaitForInstanceState(ec2InstanceId, InstanceStateName.Terminated);

           Console.WriteLine($"\nThe instance {ec2InstanceId} has been
terminated.");
           return response.TerminatingInstances;
       }
       catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
       {
           if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceId")
           {
               _logger.LogError(
                   $"InstanceId is invalid, unable to terminate.
{ec2Exception.Message}");
```

```
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while terminating the instance.: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEC2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
```

```
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
```

```
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
```

```
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
_autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
```

```
            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
 _autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
 ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
```

```
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system\n" +
```

```
                            "to create situations where the web service fails, and
 shows how using a resilient\n" +
                            "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
 these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                            $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                            $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                            "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
 the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
 customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
 "static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
 checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
```

```
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
```

```
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
 can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
 resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
```

```
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
 _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
 _recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
 incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
```

```
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
```

```
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                    "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                    "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                         "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                         "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         "\"Service\": [" +
                                             "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                         "]" +
                                         "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                    "}]" +
                                "}";
```

```
        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
```

```
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
```

```
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
```

```
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
```

```
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
{groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
```

```
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
```

```
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
```

```
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
```

```
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
```

```
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
```

```
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
 client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
```

```
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
 groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
```

```
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
```

```
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
```

```
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
```

```
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
 configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);
```

```
            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
 _amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
```

```
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
```

```
    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances

  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation

- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon ECS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon ECS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`ListClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `ListClusters`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List cluster ARNs available.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetClusterARNSAsync()
    {

        Console.WriteLine("Getting a list of all the clusters in your AWS
account...");
        List<string> clusterArnList = new List<string>();
        // Get a list of all the clusters in your AWS account
        try
        {

            var listClustersResponse = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
ListClustersRequest
            {
            });

            var clusterArns = listClustersResponse.ClusterArns;

            // Print the ARNs of the clusters
            await foreach (var clusterArn in clusterArns)
            {
                clusterArnList.Add(clusterArn);
            }

            if (clusterArnList.Count == 0)
            {
                _logger.LogWarning("No clusters found in your AWS account.");
            }
            return clusterArnList;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
            throw new Exception($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListServices

The following code example shows how to use `ListServices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List service ARNs available.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
/// <returns>The ARN list of services in given cluster.</returns>
public async Task<List<string>> GetServiceARNSAsync(string clusterARN)
{
    List<string> serviceArns = new List<string>();

    var request = new ListServicesRequest
    {
        Cluster = clusterARN
    };
    // Call the ListServices API operation and get the list of service ARNs
    var serviceList = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListServices(request);

    await foreach (var serviceARN in serviceList.ServiceArns)
    {
        if (serviceARN is null)
            continue;

        serviceArns.Add(serviceARN);
    }

    if (serviceArns.Count == 0)
    {
        _logger.LogWarning($"No services found in cluster {clusterARN} .");
    }

    return serviceArns;
}
```

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTasks`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTasks`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List task ARNs available.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
/// <returns>The ARN list of tasks in given cluster.</returns>
public async Task<List<string>> GetTaskARNsAsync(string clusterARN)
{
    // Set up the request to describe the tasks in the service
    var listTasksRequest = new ListTasksRequest
    {
        Cluster = clusterARN
    };
    List<string> taskArns = new List<string>();

    // Call the ListTasks API operation and get the list of task ARNs
    var tasks = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListTasks(listTasksRequest);

    await foreach (var task in tasks.TaskArns)
    {
        if (task is null)
            continue;


        taskArns.Add(task);
    }
```

```
        if (taskArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning("No tasks found in cluster: " + clusterARN);
        }

        return taskArns;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTasks in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Get ARN information for clusters, services, and tasks

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of all clusters.
- Get services for a cluster.
- Get tasks for a cluster.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using ECSActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace ECSScenario;
```

```
public class ECSScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.


    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List ECS Cluster ARNs.
        2. List services in every cluster
        3. List Task ARNs in every cluster.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static ECSWrapper _ecsWrapper = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
        .Build();

        ILoggerFactory loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<ECSScenario>();

        var loggerECSWarpper = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
 { builder.AddConsole(); })
          .CreateLogger<ECSWrapper>();

        var amazonECSClient = new AmazonECSClient();

        _ecsWrapper = new ECSWrapper(amazonECSClient, loggerECSWarpper);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon ECS example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            await ListClusterARNs();
            await ListServiceARNs();
            await ListTaskARNs();

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List ECS Cluster ARNs
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListClusterARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. List Cluster ARNs from ECS.");
        var arns = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var arn in arns)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Cluster arn: {arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Cluster name: {arn.Split("/").Last()}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List services in every cluster
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListServiceARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. List Service ARNs in every cluster.");
        var clusterARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();
```

```
        foreach (var clusterARN in clusterARNs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Getting services for cluster name:
{clusterARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('.', 5));


            var serviceARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetServiceARNSAsync(clusterARN);

            foreach (var serviceARN in serviceARNs)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Service arn: {serviceARN}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Service name: {serviceARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List tasks in every cluster
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task ListTaskARNs()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. List Task ARNs in every cluster.");
        var clusterARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetClusterARNSAsync();

        foreach (var clusterARN in clusterARNs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Getting tasks for cluster name:
{clusterARN.Split("/").Last()}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('.', 5));

            var taskARNs = await _ecsWrapper.GetTaskARNsAsync(clusterARN);

            foreach (var taskARN in taskARNs)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Task arn: {taskARN}");
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
}
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon ECS actions.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using Amazon.ECS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ECSActions;

public class ECSWrapper
{
    private readonly AmazonECSClient _ecsClient;
    private readonly ILogger<ECSWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the ECS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ecsClient">The injected ECS client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public ECSWrapper(AmazonECSClient ecsClient, ILogger<ECSWrapper> logger)

    {
        _logger = logger;
        _ecsClient = ecsClient;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List cluster ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetClusterARNSAsync()
    {

        Console.WriteLine("Getting a list of all the clusters in your AWS
 account...");
        List<string> clusterArnList = new List<string>();
        // Get a list of all the clusters in your AWS account
        try
        {
```

```
            var listClustersResponse = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
ListClustersRequest
            {
            });

            var clusterArns = listClustersResponse.ClusterArns;

            // Print the ARNs of the clusters
            await foreach (var clusterArn in clusterArns)
            {
                clusterArnList.Add(clusterArn);
            }

            if (clusterArnList.Count == 0)
            {
                _logger.LogWarning("No clusters found in your AWS account.");
            }
            return clusterArnList;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
            throw new Exception($"An error occurred while getting a list of all the
clusters in your AWS account. {e.InnerException}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List service ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of services in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetServiceARNSAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        List<string> serviceArns = new List<string>();

        var request = new ListServicesRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        // Call the ListServices API operation and get the list of service ARNs
        var serviceList = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListServices(request);
```

```
        await foreach (var serviceARN in serviceList.ServiceArns)
        {
            if (serviceARN is null)
                continue;

            serviceArns.Add(serviceARN);
        }

        if (serviceArns.Count == 0)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"No services found in cluster {clusterARN} .");
        }

        return serviceArns;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List task ARNs available.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="clusterARN">The arn of the ECS cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN list of tasks in given cluster.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> GetTaskARNsAsync(string clusterARN)
    {
        // Set up the request to describe the tasks in the service
        var listTasksRequest = new ListTasksRequest
        {
            Cluster = clusterARN
        };
        List<string> taskArns = new List<string>();

        // Call the ListTasks API operation and get the list of task ARNs
        var tasks = _ecsClient.Paginators.ListTasks(listTasksRequest);

        await foreach (var task in tasks.TaskArns)
        {
            if (task is null)
                continue;


            taskArns.Add(task);
        }

        if (taskArns.Count == 0)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogWarning("No tasks found in cluster: " + clusterARN);
        }

        return taskArns;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - ListClusters
  - ListServices
  - ListTasks

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateListener`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateListener`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
   /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });
```

```
                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
   /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
   /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
   /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });
```

```
                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTargetGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
```

```
        return targetGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
```

```
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTargetGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
```

```
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
{groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeLoadBalancers`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
```

```
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeTargetHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTargetHealth`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
```

```
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.

- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
```

```
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
```

```
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
```

```
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
```

```
        var targetGroup = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
 protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);

        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
```

```
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
```

```
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
 different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
 shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
 these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
```

```
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
```

```
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
 auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
 a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
 instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
 recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
 balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
 takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
 instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
```

```
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
```

```
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
```

```
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
```

```
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
{groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
```

```
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
```

```
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
```

```
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
```

```
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
    /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
                new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
                {
                    AssociationId = associationId,
                    IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                    {
                        Name = credsProfileName
                    }
                });
            // Allow time before resetting.
            Thread.Sleep(25000);

            await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
                new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
            Thread.Sleep(25000);
            var instanceReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
            {
                var instancesPaginator =
                    _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                        new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
                {
                    instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                    if (instanceReady)
                    {
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
            await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
            Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
```

```
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
```

```
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
```

```
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how the load balancer forwards
```

```
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
   {
       var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
           new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
           {
               Name = name,
               Subnets = subnetIds
           });
       var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

       // Wait for load balancer to be available.
       var loadBalancerReady = false;
       while (!loadBalancerReady)
       {
           try
           {
               var describeResponse =
                   await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                       new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                       {
                           Names = new List<string>() { name }
                       });

               var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

               loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
           }
           catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
           {
               loadBalancerReady = false;
           }
           Thread.Sleep(10000);
       }
       // Create the listener.
       await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
           new CreateListenerRequest()
           {
               LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
               Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
               Port = targetGroup.Port,
```

```
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
```

```
            }
        }

        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
```

```
        while (!done)
        {
            try
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
```

```
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;

    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
```

```
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
```

```
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
```

```
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile

- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

EventBridge examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with EventBridge.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello EventBridge

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.EventBridge;
using Amazon.EventBridge.Model;

namespace EventBridgeActions;

public static class HelloEventBridge
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var eventBridgeClient = new AmazonEventBridgeClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon EventBridge! Following are some of your
 EventBuses:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five event buses.
        var response = await eventBridgeClient.ListEventBusesAsync(
            new ListEventBusesRequest()
            {
                Limit = 5
            });

        foreach (var eventBus in response.EventBuses)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tEventBus: {eventBus.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {eventBus.Arn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPolicy: {eventBus.Policy}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a rule and add a target to it.
- Enable and disable rules.
- List and update rules and targets.
- Send events, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class EventBridgeScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:
    - Create a rule.
    - Add a target to a rule.
    - Enable and disable rules.
    - List rules and targets.
```

```
    - Update rules and targets.
    - Send events.
    - Delete the rule.
    */

    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static EventBridgeWrapper _eventBridgeWrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    private static IAmazonIdentityManagementService? _iamClient = null!;
    private static IAmazonSimpleNotificationService? _snsClient = null!;
    private static IAmazonS3 _s3Client = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEventBridge>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
            .AddTransient<EventBridgeWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<EventBridgeScenario>();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        string topicArn = "";
```

```
        string roleArn = "";

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            roleArn = await CreateRole();

            await CreateBucketWithEventBridgeEvents();

            await AddEventRule(roleArn);

            await ListEventRules();

            topicArn = await CreateSnsTopic();

            var email = await SubscribeToSnsTopic(topicArn);

            await AddSnsTarget(topicArn);

            await ListTargets();

            await ListRulesForTarget(topicArn);

            await UploadS3File(_s3Client);

            await ChangeRuleState(false);

            await GetRuleState();

            await UpdateSnsEventRule(topicArn);

            await ChangeRuleState(true);

            await UploadS3File(_s3Client);

            await UpdateToCustomRule(topicArn);

            await TriggerCustomRule(email);

            await CleanupResources(topicArn);
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
            await CleanupResources(topicArn);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario is complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _eventBridgeWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<EventBridgeWrapper>();
        _snsClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>();
        _s3Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonS3>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by EventBridge.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a role to use with EventBridge and attaching
managed policy AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        var roleName = _configuration["roleName"];

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                                   "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                   "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                   "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                   "\"Principal\": {" +
                                   $"\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
```

```
                                "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                                "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = roleName
            });

        await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
            new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                PolicyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess",
                RoleName = roleName
            });
        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with EventBridge
events enabled.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CreateBucketWithEventBridgeEvents()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating an S3 bucket with EventBridge events enabled.");

        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        var bucketExists = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_s3Client,
            testBucketName);

        if (!bucketExists)
        {
            await _s3Client.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest()
            {
```

```
                BucketName = testBucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true
            });
        }

        await _s3Client.PutBucketNotificationAsync(new
PutBucketNotificationRequest()
        {
            BucketName = testBucketName,
            EventBridgeConfiguration = new EventBridgeConfiguration()
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded bucket {testBucketName} with EventBridge events
enabled.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UploadS3File(IAmazonS3 s3Client)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Uploading a file to the test bucket. This will trigger a
subscription email.");

        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        var fileName = $"example_upload_{DateTime.UtcNow.Ticks}.txt";

        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for testing uploads.");
        }

        await s3Client.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest()
        {
            FilePath = fileName,
            BucketName = testBucketName
```

```
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPress Enter to continue.");
        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic to use as an
EventBridge target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateSnsTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic for
email subscriptions.");

        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];

        string topicPolicy = "{" +
                             "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                             "\"Statement\": [{" +
                             "\"Sid\": \"EventBridgePublishTopic\"," +
                             "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                             "\"Principal\": {" +
                             $"\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                             "}," +
                             "\"Resource\": \"*\"," +
                             "\"Action\": \"sns:Publish\"" +
                             "}]" +
                             "}";

        var topicAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>()
        {
            { "Policy", topicPolicy }
        };

        var topicResponse = await _snsClient!.CreateTopicAsync(new
CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
```

```
            Attributes = topicAttributes

        });

        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded topic {topicName} for email subscriptions.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return topicResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a user email to an SNS topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>The user's email.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SubscribeToSnsTopic(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));


        string email = "";
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS
topic:");
            email = Console.ReadLine()!;
        }

        var subscriptions = new List<string>();
        var paginatedSubscriptions =
_snsClient!.Paginators.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
            new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var subscription in paginatedSubscriptions.Subscriptions)
        {
            subscriptions.Add(subscription.Endpoint);
        }

        if (subscriptions.Contains(email))
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tYour email is already subscribed.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return email;
        }

        await _snsClient.SubscribeAsync(new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "email",
            Endpoint = email
        });

        Console.WriteLine($"Use the link in the email you received to confirm your
subscription, then press Enter to continue.");

        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return email;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add a rule which triggers when a file is uploaded to an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role used by EventBridge.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddEventRule(string roleArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Creating an EventBridge event that sends an email when an
Amazon S3 object is created.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.PutS3UploadRule(roleArn, eventRuleName,
testBucketName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded event rule {eventRuleName} for bucket
{testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an SNS target to the rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddSnsTarget(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Adding a target to the rule to that sends an email when
the rule is triggered.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
        await _eventBridgeWrapper.AddSnsTargetToRule(eventRuleName, topicArn);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded event rule {eventRuleName} with Amazon SNS
target {topicName} for bucket {testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the event rules on the default event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListEventRules()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Current event rules:");

        var rules = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllRulesForEventBus();
        rules.ForEach(r => Console.WriteLine($"\tRule: {r.Name} Description:
{r.Description} State: {r.State}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the event target to use a transform.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The SNS topic ARN target to update.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UpdateSnsEventRule(string topicArn)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Let's update the event target with a transform.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var testBucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];

        await
_eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(eventRuleName, topicArn);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event rule {eventRuleName} with Amazon SNS
target {topicArn} for bucket {testBucketName}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the rule to use a custom event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task UpdateToCustomRule(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Updating the event pattern to be triggered by a custom
event instead.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateCustomEventPattern(eventRuleName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event rule {eventRuleName} to custom
pattern.");
        await _eventBridgeWrapper.UpdateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(eventRuleName,
            topicArn);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tUpdated event target {topicArn}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Send rule events for a custom rule using the user's email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email address to include.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task TriggerCustomRule(string email)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Sending an event to trigger the rule. This will trigger a
subscription email.");

        await _eventBridgeWrapper.PutCustomEmailEvent(email);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tEvents have been sent. Press Enter to continue.");
        Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets for a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListTargets()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("List all of the targets for a particular rule.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        var targets = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllTargetsOnRule(eventRuleName);
        targets.ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"\tTarget: {t.Arn} Id: {t.Id} Input:
{t.Input}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the rules for a particular target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListRulesForTarget(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("List all of the rules for a particular target.");

        var rules = await _eventBridgeWrapper.ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(topicArn);
        rules.ForEach(r => Console.WriteLine($"\tRule: {r}"));

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable or disable a particular rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="isEnabled">True to enable the rule, otherwise false.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ChangeRuleState(bool isEnabled)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        if (!isEnabled)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Disabling the rule: {eventRuleName}");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.DisableRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enabling the rule: {eventRuleName}");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.EnableRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the current state of the rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetRuleState()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];

        var state = await _eventBridgeWrapper.GetRuleStateByRuleName(eventRuleName);
        Console.WriteLine($"Rule {eventRuleName} is in current state {state}.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the SNS topic to clean up.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources(string topicArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        var eventRuleName = _configuration["eventRuleName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete all targets and event rule {eventRuleName}?
(y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRemoving all targets from the event rule.");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName);

            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting event rule.");
            await _eventBridgeWrapper.DeleteRuleByName(eventRuleName);
        }

        var topicName = _configuration["topicName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon SNS subscription topic {topicName}?
(y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting topic.");
            await _snsClient!.DeleteTopicAsync(new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        }

        var bucketName = _configuration["testBucketName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon S3 bucket {bucketName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting bucket.");
            // Delete all objects in the bucket.
            var deleteList = await _s3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
            await _s3Client.DeleteObjectsAsync(new DeleteObjectsRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = deleteList.S3Objects
                    .Select(o => new KeyVersion { Key = o.Key }).ToList()
```

```
            });
            // Now delete the bucket.
            await _s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
        }

        var roleName = _configuration["roleName"];
        if (GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {roleName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policy and deleting role.");

            await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess",
            });

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps EventBridge operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon EventBridge operations.
/// </summary>
public class EventBridgeWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonEventBridge _amazonEventBridge;
    private readonly ILogger<EventBridgeWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EventBridge wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonEventBridge">The injected EventBridge client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger for the wrapper.</param>
    public EventBridgeWrapper(IAmazonEventBridge amazonEventBridge,
 ILogger<EventBridgeWrapper> logger)

    {
        _amazonEventBridge = amazonEventBridge;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the state for a rule by the rule name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusName">The optional name of the event bus. If empty,
 uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the rule.</returns>
    public async Task<RuleState> GetRuleStateByRuleName(string ruleName, string?
 eventBusName = null)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DescribeRuleAsync(
            new DescribeRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                EventBusName = eventBusName
            });
        return ruleResponse.State;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.EnableRuleAsync(
            new EnableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a particular rule on an event bus.
    /// </summary
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DisableRuleAsync(
            new DisableRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });
        return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the rules on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional ARN of the event bus. If empty, uses
 the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rules.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Rule>> ListAllRulesForEventBus(string? eventBusArn =
 null)
    {
        var results = new List<Rule>();
        var request = new ListRulesRequest()
        {
```

```
            EventBusName = eventBusArn
        };
        // Get all of the pages of rules.
        ListRulesResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRulesAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Rules);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the targets matching a rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of targets.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Target>> ListAllTargetsOnRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var results = new List<Target>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Targets);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List names of all rules matching a target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rule names.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<string>> ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(string targetArn)
    {
        var results = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest()
        {
            TargetArn = targetArn
        };
        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRuleNamesByTargetAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.RuleNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in
 a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name to give the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to trigger the event.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutS3UploadRule(string roleArn, string ruleName,
 string bucketName)
    {
        string eventPattern = "{" +
                                "\"source\": [\"aws.s3\"]," +
                                    "\"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"]," +
                                    "\"detail\": {" +
                                        "\"bucket\": {" +
                                            "\"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]" +
                                        "}" +
                                    "}" +
                                "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
```

```
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Example S3 upload rule for EventBridge",
                RoleArn = roleArn,
                EventPattern = eventPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the default
event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(string ruleName,
string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputPathsMap = new Dictionary<string, string>()
                    {
                        {"bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name"},
                        {"time", "$.time"}
                    },
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to
bucket <bucket> at <time>.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
```

```
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update a custom rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the default
event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(string ruleName,
string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.\""
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
```

```
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an event to the event bus that includes an email, message, and time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use in the event detail of the custom
event.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutCustomEmailEvent(string email)
    {
        var eventDetail = new
        {
            UserEmail = email,
            Message = "This event was generated by example code.",
            UtcTime = DateTime.UtcNow.ToString("g")
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutEventsAsync(
            new PutEventsRequest()
            {
                Entries = new List<PutEventsRequestEntry>()
                {
                    new PutEventsRequestEntry()
                    {
                        Source = "ExampleSource",
                        Detail = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventDetail),
                        DetailType = "ExampleType"
                    }
                }
            });

        return response.FailedEntryCount == 0;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update a rule to use a custom defined event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the updated rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomEventPattern(string ruleName)
    {
        string customEventsPattern = "{" +
                                     "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                                     "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                                     "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Custom test rule",
                EventPattern = customEventsPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an Amazon SNS target topic to a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the Amazon SNS target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional event bus name, uses default if
empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddSnsTargetToRule(string ruleName, string targetArn,
string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // Create the list of targets and add a new target.
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Arn = targetArn,
```

```
                Id = targetID
            }
        };

        // Add the targets to the rule.
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });

        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return targetID;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var targetIds = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse targetsResponse;
        do
        {
            targetsResponse = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            targetIds.AddRange(targetsResponse.Targets.Select(t => t.Id));
```

```
            request.NextToken = targetsResponse.NextToken;

        } while (targetsResponse.NextToken is not null);

        var removeResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.RemoveTargetsAsync(
            new RemoveTargetsRequest()
            {
                Rule = ruleName,
                Ids = targetIds
            });

        if (removeResponse.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            removeResponse.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to remove target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
 {e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return removeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRuleByName(string ruleName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.DeleteRuleAsync(
            new DeleteRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName
            });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

- DeleteRule
- DescribeRule
- DisableRule
- EnableRule
- ListRuleNamesByTarget
- ListRules
- ListTargetsByRule
- PutEvents
- PutRule
- PutTargets

Actions

`DeleteRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a rule by its name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete an event rule by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var response = await _amazonEventBridge.DeleteRuleAsync(
        new DeleteRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
```

```
            });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the state of a rule using the rule description.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the state for a rule by the rule name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusName">The optional name of the event bus. If empty,
uses the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the rule.</returns>
    public async Task<RuleState> GetRuleStateByRuleName(string ruleName, string?
eventBusName = null)
    {
        var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DescribeRuleAsync(
            new DescribeRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                EventBusName = eventBusName
            });
        return ruleResponse.State;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Disable a rule by its rule name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Disable a particular rule on an event bus.
/// </summary
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DisableRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.DisableRuleAsync(
        new DisableRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
        });
    return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`EnableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by its rule name.

```
/// <summary>
/// Enable a particular rule on an event bus.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> EnableRuleByName(string ruleName)
{
    var ruleResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.EnableRuleAsync(
        new EnableRuleRequest()
        {
            Name = ruleName
        });
    return ruleResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRuleNamesByTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRuleNamesByTarget`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rule names using the target.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List names of all rules matching a target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rule names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListAllRuleNamesByTarget(string targetArn)
    {
        var results = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest()
        {
            TargetArn = targetArn
        };
        ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRuleNamesByTargetAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.RuleNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRules`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRules`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rules for an event bus.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the rules on an event bus.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional ARN of the event bus. If empty, uses
the default event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of rules.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Rule>> ListAllRulesForEventBus(string? eventBusArn =
null)
    {
        var results = new List<Rule>();
        var request = new ListRulesRequest()
        {
            EventBusName = eventBusArn
        };
        // Get all of the pages of rules.
        ListRulesResponse response;
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListRulesAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.Rules);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTargetsByRule`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTargetsByRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the targets for a rule using the rule name.

```
/// <summary>
/// List all of the targets matching a rule by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
/// <returns>The list of targets.</returns>
public async Task<List<Target>> ListAllTargetsOnRule(string ruleName)
{
    var results = new List<Target>();
    var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
    {
        Rule = ruleName
    };
    ListTargetsByRuleResponse response;
    do
    {
        response = await _amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
        results.AddRange(response.Targets);
        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

    } while (response.NextToken is not null);

    return results;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an event that matches a custom pattern for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an event to the event bus that includes an email, message, and time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use in the event detail of the custom
event.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutCustomEmailEvent(string email)
    {
        var eventDetail = new
        {
            UserEmail = email,
            Message = "This event was generated by example code.",
            UtcTime = DateTime.UtcNow.ToString("g")
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutEventsAsync(
            new PutEventsRequest()
            {
                Entries = new List<PutEventsRequestEntry>()
                {
                    new PutEventsRequestEntry()
                    {
                        Source = "ExampleSource",
                        Detail = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventDetail),
                        DetailType = "ExampleType"
                    }
                }
            });

        return response.FailedEntryCount == 0;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PutRule

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in
 a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name to give the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to trigger the event.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PutS3UploadRule(string roleArn, string ruleName,
 string bucketName)
    {
        string eventPattern = "{" +
                                "\"source\": [\"aws.s3\"]," +
                                    "\"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"]," +
                                    "\"detail\": {" +
                                        "\"bucket\": {" +
                                            "\"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]" +
                                        "}" +
                                    "}" +
                                "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Example S3 upload rule for EventBridge",
                RoleArn = roleArn,
                EventPattern = eventPattern
            });
```

```
        return response.RuleArn;
    }
```

Create a rule that uses a custom pattern.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update a rule to use a custom defined event pattern.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the updated rule.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateCustomEventPattern(string ruleName)
    {
        string customEventsPattern = "{" +
                                     "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                                     "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
                                     "}";

        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutRuleAsync(
            new PutRuleRequest()
            {
                Name = ruleName,
                Description = "Custom test rule",
                EventPattern = customEventsPattern
            });

        return response.RuleArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add an Amazon SNS topic as a target for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add an Amazon SNS target topic to a rule.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule to update.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the Amazon SNS target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">The optional event bus name, uses default if
empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddSnsTargetToRule(string ruleName, string targetArn,
string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // Create the list of targets and add a new target.
        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Arn = targetArn,
                Id = targetID
            }
        };

        // Add the targets to the rule.
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });

        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
```

```
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return targetID;
    }
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the rule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="eventBusArn">Optional event bus ARN. If empty, uses the default
event bus.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the target.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateS3UploadRuleTargetWithTransform(string ruleName,
string targetArn, string? eventBusArn = null)
    {
        var targetID = Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        var targets = new List<Target>
        {
            new Target()
            {
                Id = targetID,
                Arn = targetArn,
                InputTransformer = new InputTransformer()
                {
                    InputPathsMap = new Dictionary<string, string>()
                    {
                        {"bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name"},
                        {"time", "$.time"}
                    },
                    InputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to
bucket <bucket> at <time>.\""
```

```
                }
            }
        };
        var response = await _amazonEventBridge.PutTargetsAsync(
            new PutTargetsRequest()
            {
                EventBusName = eventBusArn,
                Rule = ruleName,
                Targets = targets,
            });
        if (response.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            response.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to add target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }
        return targetID;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RemoveTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTargets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Remove all of the targets for a rule using the rule name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an event rule by name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="ruleName">The name of the event rule.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> RemoveAllTargetsFromRule(string ruleName)
    {
        var targetIds = new List<string>();
        var request = new ListTargetsByRuleRequest()
        {
            Rule = ruleName
        };
        ListTargetsByRuleResponse targetsResponse;
        do
        {
            targetsResponse = await
_amazonEventBridge.ListTargetsByRuleAsync(request);
            targetIds.AddRange(targetsResponse.Targets.Select(t => t.Id));
            request.NextToken = targetsResponse.NextToken;

        } while (targetsResponse.NextToken is not null);

        var removeResponse = await _amazonEventBridge.RemoveTargetsAsync(
            new RemoveTargetsRequest()
            {
                Rule = ruleName,
                Ids = targetIds
            });

        if (removeResponse.FailedEntryCount > 0)
        {
            removeResponse.FailedEntries.ForEach(e =>
            {
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Failed to remove target {e.TargetId}: {e.ErrorMessage}, code
{e.ErrorCode}");
            });
        }

        return removeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with EventBridge Scheduler.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello EventBridge Scheduler

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge Scheduler.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloScheduler
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the EventBridge Scheduler service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var schedulerClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonScheduler>();
```

```
        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response, or a
 paginator to list schedules or groups.
        var results = new List<ScheduleSummary>();
        var paginateSchedules = schedulerClient.Paginators.ListSchedules(
            new ListSchedulesRequest());
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Hello AWS Scheduler! Let's list schedules in your account.");
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var schedule in paginateSchedules.Schedules)
        {
            results.Add(schedule);
        }
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTotal of {results.Count} schedule(s) available.");
        results.ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"\tSchedule: {s.Name}"));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchedule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Creates a new schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleExpression">The schedule expression that defines when
 the schedule should run.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleGroupName">The name of the schedule group to which the
 schedule should be added.</param>
    /// <param name="deleteAfterCompletion">Indicates whether to delete the schedule
 after completion.</param>
    /// <param name="useFlexibleTimeWindow">Indicates whether to use a flexible time
 window for the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">ARN of the event target.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">Execution Role ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was created successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleAsync(
            string name,
            string scheduleExpression,
            string scheduleGroupName,
            string targetArn,
            string roleArn,
            string input,
            bool deleteAfterCompletion = false,
            bool useFlexibleTimeWindow = false)
    {
        try
        {
            int hoursToRun = 1;
            int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

            var request = new CreateScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                ScheduleExpression = scheduleExpression,
                GroupName = scheduleGroupName,
                Target = new Target { Arn = targetArn, RoleArn = roleArn, Input =
 input },
                ActionAfterCompletion = deleteAfterCompletion
                    ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                    : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE,
                StartDate = DateTime.UtcNow, // Ignored for one-time schedules.
                EndDate =
                    DateTime.UtcNow
                        .AddHours(hoursToRun) // Ignored for one-time schedules.
```

```
            };
            // Allow a flexible time window if the caller specifies it.
            request.FlexibleTimeWindow = new FlexibleTimeWindow
            {
                Mode = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                    : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF,
                MaximumWindowInMinutes = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                    : null
            };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule '{name}' " +
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{response.ScheduleArn}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule '{name}' due to a conflict.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating schedule '{name}' "
+
                             $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateScheduleGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule group in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule group '{name}':
{response.ScheduleGroupArn}.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule group '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSchedule`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was deleted successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleAsync(string name, string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                GroupName = groupName
            };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule with name '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule with ID '{name}' because the resource
was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule with ID '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteScheduleGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule group from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was deleted successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };
```

```
            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule group '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule group '{name}' because the resource was
not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Scheduled Events

The following code example shows how to:

- Deploy a AWS CloudFormation stack with required resources.
- Create a EventBridge Scheduler schedule group.
- Create a one-time EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a flexible time window.
- Create a recurring EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a specified rate.
- Delete EventBridge Scheduler the schedule and schedule group.
- Clean up resources and delete the stack.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Scheduler;
using Amazon.Scheduler.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
using SchedulerActions;
using Exception = System.Exception;

namespace SchedulerScenario;

public class SchedulerWorkflow
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
    This .NET code example performs the following tasks for the Amazon EventBridge
 Scheduler workflow:

    1. Prepare the Application:
       - Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription for the
 SNS topic subscription.
       - Prompt the user for a name for the Cloud Formation stack.
       - Deploy the Cloud Formation template in resources/cfn_template.yaml for
 resource creation.
       - Store the outputs of the stack into variables for use in the scenario.
       - Create a schedule group for all schedules.

    2. Create one-time Schedule:
```

```
      - Create a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
      - Use a Flexible Time Window and set the schedule to delete after completion.
      - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.

   3. Create a time-based schedule:
      - Prompt the user for how many X times per Y hours a recurring event should
 be scheduled.
      - Create the scheduled event for X times per hour for Y hours.
      - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
      - Delete the schedule when the user is finished.

   4. Clean up:
      - Prompt the user for y/n answer if they want to destroy the stack and clean
 up all resources.
      - Delete the schedule group.
      - Destroy the Cloud Formation stack and wait until the stack has been
 removed.
   */

   public static ILogger<SchedulerWorkflow> _logger = null!;
   public static SchedulerWrapper _schedulerWrapper = null!;
   public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation = null!;

   private static string _roleArn = null!;
   private static string _snsTopicArn = null!;

   public static bool _interactive = true;
   private static string _stackName = "default-scheduler-scenario-stack-name";
   private static string _scheduleGroupName = "scenario-schedules-group";
   private static string _stackResourcePath = "../../../../../../scenarios/
features/eventbridge_scheduler/resources/cfn_template.yaml";

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonScheduler>()
                   .AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudFormation>()
                   .AddTransient<SchedulerWrapper>()
```

```
            )
            .Build();

        if (_interactive)
        {
            _logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
                .CreateLogger<SchedulerWorkflow>();

            _schedulerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SchedulerWrapper>();
            _amazonCloudFormation =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonCloudFormation>();
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            var prepareSuccess = await PrepareApplication();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            if (prepareSuccess)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                await CreateOneTimeSchedule();
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                await CreateRecurringSchedule();
                Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            }

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem with the scenario, initiating
cleanup...");
            _interactive = false;
```

```
            await Cleanup();
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler scenario completed.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prepares the application by creating the necessary resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the application was prepared successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> PrepareApplication()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Preparing the application...");
        try
        {
            // Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription.
            Console.WriteLine("\nThis example creates resources in a CloudFormation
stack, including an SNS topic" +
                              "\nthat will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler
events. " +
                              "\n\nYou will need to confirm the subscription in order to
receive event emails. ");

            var emailAddress = PromptUserForEmail();

            // Prompt the user for a name for the CloudFormation stack
            _stackName = PromptUserForStackName();

            // Deploy the CloudFormation stack
            var deploySuccess = await DeployCloudFormationStack(_stackName,
emailAddress);

            if (deploySuccess)
            {
                // Create a schedule group for all schedules
                await
_schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(_scheduleGroupName);

                Console.WriteLine("Application preparation complete.");
                return true;
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            _logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred while preparing the
application.");
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Application preparation failed.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploys the CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <param name="email">The email to use for the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the stack was deployed successfully.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> DeployCloudFormationStack(string stackName,
string email)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\nDeploying CloudFormation stack: {stackName}");

        try
        {
            var request = new CreateStackRequest
            {
                StackName = stackName,
                TemplateBody = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_stackResourcePath),
                Capabilities = { Capability.CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM }
            };

            // If an email is provided, set the parameter.
            if (!string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(email))
            {
                request.Parameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new() { ParameterKey = "email", ParameterValue = email }
                };
            }

            var response = await _amazonCloudFormation.CreateStackAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack creation started:
{stackName}");

                // Wait for the stack to be in CREATE_COMPLETE state
```

```
                bool stackCreated = await WaitForStackCompletion(response.StackId);

                if (stackCreated)
                {
                    // Retrieve the output values
                    var success = await GetStackOutputs(response.StackId);
                    return success;
                }
                else
                {
                    _logger.LogError($"CloudFormation stack creation failed:
{stackName}");
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Failed to create CloudFormation stack:
{stackName}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            _logger.LogWarning($"CloudFormation stack '{stackName}' already exists.
Please provide a unique name.");
            var newStackName = PromptUserForStackName();
            return await DeployCloudFormationStack(newStackName, email);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while deploying the
CloudFormation stack: {stackName}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Waits for the CloudFormation stack to be in the CREATE_COMPLETE state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The CloudFormation client.</param>
    /// <param name="stackId">The ID of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the stack was created successfully.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> WaitForStackCompletion(string stackId)
```

```
    {
        int retryCount = 0;
        const int maxRetries = 10;
        const int retryDelay = 30000; // 30 seconds.

        while (retryCount < maxRetries)
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest
            {
                StackName = stackId
            };

            var describeStacksResponse = await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

            if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count > 0)
            {
                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.CREATE_COMPLETE)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("CloudFormation stack creation complete.");
                    return true;
                }
                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.CREATE_FAILED ||
                        describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.ROLLBACK_COMPLETE)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("CloudFormation stack creation failed.");
                    return false;
                }
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to
complete...");
            await Task.Delay(retryDelay);
            retryCount++;
        }

        _logger.LogError("Timed out waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to
complete.");
        return false;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves the output values from the CloudFormation stack.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackId">The ID of the CloudFormation stack.</param>
    private static async Task<bool> GetStackOutputs(string stackId)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest { StackName =
stackId };

            var describeStacksResponse =
                await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

            if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count > 0)
            {
                var stack = describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0];
                _roleArn = GetStackOutputValue(stack, "RoleARN");
                _snsTopicArn = GetStackOutputValue(stack, "SNStopicARN");
                return true;
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"No stack found for stack outputs: {stackId}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                ex, $"Failed to retrieve CloudFormation stack outputs: {stackId}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get an output value by key from a CloudFormation stack.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stack">The CloudFormation stack.</param>
    /// <param name="outputKey">The key of the output.</param>
    /// <returns>The value as a string.</returns>
    private static string GetStackOutputValue(Stack stack, string outputKey)
    {
```

```
        var output = stack.Outputs.First(o => o.OutputKey == outputKey);
        var outputValue = output.OutputValue;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stack output {outputKey}: {outputValue}");
        return outputValue;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the one-time schedule was created successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CreateOneTimeSchedule()
    {
        var scheduleName =
            PromptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the one-time schedule:");

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating a one-time schedule named '{scheduleName}' " +
                          $"\nto send an initial event in 1 minute with a flexible
time window...");
        try
        {
            // Create a one-time schedule with a flexible time
            // window set to delete after completion.
            // You may also set a timezone instead of using UTC.
            var scheduledTime = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(1).ToString("s");

            var createSuccess = await _schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleAsync(
                scheduleName,
                $"at({scheduledTime})",
                _scheduleGroupName,
                _snsTopicArn,
                _roleArn,
                $"One time scheduled event test from schedule {scheduleName}.",
                true,
                useFlexibleTimeWindow: true);

            Console.WriteLine($"Subscription email will receive an email from this
event.");
            Console.WriteLine($"You must confirm your subscription to receive event
emails.");

            Console.WriteLine($"One-time schedule '{scheduleName}' created
successfully.");
            return createSuccess;
        }
```

```
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"The target with ARN '{_snsTopicArn}' was not
found.");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the one-time
schedule '{scheduleName}'.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a recurring schedule to send events at a specified rate in minutes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the recurring schedule was created successfully.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CreateRecurringSchedule()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one
hour...");

        try
        {
            // Prompt the user for a schedule name.
            var scheduleName =
                PromptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the recurring schedule:
");

            // Prompt the user for the schedule rate (in minutes).
            var scheduleRateInMinutes =
                PromptUserForInteger("Enter the desired schedule rate (in minutes):
");

            // Create the recurring schedule.
            var createSuccess = await _schedulerWrapper.CreateScheduleAsync(
                scheduleName,
                $"rate({scheduleRateInMinutes} minutes)",
                _scheduleGroupName,
                _snsTopicArn,
                _roleArn,
                $"Recurrent event test from schedule {scheduleName}.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Subscription email will receive an email from this
event.");
            Console.WriteLine($"You must confirm your subscription to receive event
emails.");

            // Delete the schedule when the user is finished.
            if (!_interactive || GetYesNoResponse($"Are you ready to delete the
'{scheduleName}' schedule? (y/n)"))
            {
                await _schedulerWrapper.DeleteScheduleAsync(scheduleName,
_scheduleGroupName);
            }

            return createSuccess;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"The target with ARN '{_snsTopicArn}' was not
found.");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred while creating the recurring
schedule.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up the resources created during the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the cleanup was successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup()
    {
        // Prompt the user to confirm cleanup.
        var cleanup = !_interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
            "Do you want to delete all resources created by this scenario? (y/n) ");
        if (cleanup)
        {
            try
            {
                // Delete the schedule group.
```

```
                var groupDeleteSuccess = await
_schedulerWrapper.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(_scheduleGroupName);

                // Destroy the CloudFormation stack and wait for it to be removed.
                var stackDeleteSuccess = await DeleteCloudFormationStack(_stackName,
false);

                return groupDeleteSuccess && stackDeleteSuccess;
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                _logger.LogError(ex,
                    "An error occurred while cleaning up the resources.");
                return false;
            }
        }
        _logger.LogInformation("EventBridge Scheduler scenario is complete.");
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the resources in the stack and wait for confirmation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the stack.</param>
    /// <param name="forceDelete">True to force delete the stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> DeleteCloudFormationStack(string stackName, bool
forceDelete)
    {
        var request = new DeleteStackRequest
        {
            StackName = stackName,
        };

        if (forceDelete)
        {
            request.DeletionMode = DeletionMode.FORCE_DELETE_STACK;
        }

        await _amazonCloudFormation.DeleteStackAsync(request);
        Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack '{_stackName}' is being deleted.
This may take a few minutes.");

        bool stackDeleted = await WaitForStackDeletion(_stackName, forceDelete);
```

```
        if (stackDeleted)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"CloudFormation stack '{_stackName}' has been
deleted.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to delete CloudFormation stack
'{_stackName}'.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for the stack to be deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stackName">The name of the stack.</param>
    /// <param name="forceDelete">True to force delete the stack.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    private static async Task<bool> WaitForStackDeletion(string stackName, bool
forceDelete)
    {
        int retryCount = 0;
        const int maxRetries = 10;
        const int retryDelay = 30000; // 30 seconds

        while (retryCount < maxRetries)
        {
            var describeStacksRequest = new DescribeStacksRequest
            {
                StackName = stackName
            };

            try
            {
                var describeStacksResponse = await
_amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStacksAsync(describeStacksRequest);

                if (describeStacksResponse.Stacks.Count == 0 ||
describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus == StackStatus.DELETE_COMPLETE)
                {
                    return true;
```

```
                }
                if (!forceDelete && describeStacksResponse.Stacks[0].StackStatus ==
StackStatus.DELETE_FAILED)
                {
                    // Try one time to force delete.
                    return await DeleteCloudFormationStack(stackName, true);
                }
            }
            catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex) when (ex.ErrorCode ==
"ValidationError")
            {
                // Stack does not exist, so it has been successfully deleted.
                return true;
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for CloudFormation stack '{stackName}' to be
deleted...");
            await Task.Delay(retryDelay);
            retryCount++;
        }

        _logger.LogError($"Timed out waiting for CloudFormation stack '{stackName}'
to be deleted.");
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a valid email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid email address.</returns>
```

```
    private static string PromptUserForEmail()
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Enter an email address to use for event
subscriptions: ");

            string email = Console.ReadLine()!;

            if (!IsValidEmail(email))
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Invalid email address. Please try again.");
                return PromptUserForEmail();
            }
            return email;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return "";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty stack name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForStackName()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Enter a name for the AWS Cloud Formation Stack: ");
        if (_interactive)
        {
            string stackName = Console.ReadLine()!;
            var regex = "[a-zA-Z][-a-zA-Z0-9]|arn:[-a-zA-Z0-9:/._+]";
            if (!Regex.IsMatch(stackName, regex))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Invalid stack name. Please use a name that matches the pattern
{regex}.");
                return PromptUserForStackName();
            }

            return stackName;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return _stackName;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty resource name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static string PromptUserForResourceName(string prompt)
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(prompt);
            string resourceName = Console.ReadLine()!;
            var regex = "[0-9a-zA-Z-_.]+";
            if (!Regex.IsMatch(resourceName, regex))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Invalid resource name. Please use a name that
matches the pattern {regex}.");
                return PromptUserForResourceName(prompt);
            }
            return resourceName!;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return "resource-" + Guid.NewGuid();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Prompt the user for a non-empty resource name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The valid stack name</returns>
    private static int PromptUserForInteger(string prompt)
    {
        if (_interactive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(prompt);
            string stringResponse = Console.ReadLine()!;
            if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(stringResponse) ||
                !Int32.TryParse(stringResponse, out var intResponse))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Invalid integer. ");
                return PromptUserForInteger(prompt);
            }
            return intResponse!;
        }
        // Used when running without user prompts.
        return 1;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use System Mail to check for a valid email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The string to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if a valid email address.</returns>
    private static bool IsValidEmail(string email)
    {
        try
        {
            var mailAddress = new System.Net.Mail.MailAddress(email);
            return mailAddress.Address == email;
        }
        catch
        {
            // Invalid emails will cause an exception, return false.
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
using Amazon.Scheduler;
using Amazon.Scheduler.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace SchedulerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon EventBridge Scheduler operations.
/// </summary>
public class SchedulerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonScheduler _amazonScheduler;
    private readonly ILogger<SchedulerWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SchedulerWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="amazonScheduler">The injected EventBridge Scheduler client.</
param>
    /// <param name="logger">The injected logger.</param>
    public SchedulerWrapper(IAmazonScheduler amazonScheduler,
 ILogger<SchedulerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonScheduler = amazonScheduler;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleExpression">The schedule expression that defines when
 the schedule should run.</param>
    /// <param name="scheduleGroupName">The name of the schedule group to which the
 schedule should be added.</param>
    /// <param name="deleteAfterCompletion">Indicates whether to delete the schedule
 after completion.</param>
    /// <param name="useFlexibleTimeWindow">Indicates whether to use a flexible time
 window for the schedule.</param>
    /// <param name="targetArn">ARN of the event target.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">Execution Role ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was created successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleAsync(
            string name,
            string scheduleExpression,
            string scheduleGroupName,
            string targetArn,
            string roleArn,
            string input,
            bool deleteAfterCompletion = false,
            bool useFlexibleTimeWindow = false)
    {
        try
        {
            int hoursToRun = 1;
            int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

            var request = new CreateScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
```

```
                ScheduleExpression = scheduleExpression,
                GroupName = scheduleGroupName,
                Target = new Target { Arn = targetArn, RoleArn = roleArn, Input =
input },
                ActionAfterCompletion = deleteAfterCompletion
                    ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                    : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE,
                StartDate = DateTime.UtcNow, // Ignored for one-time schedules.
                EndDate =
                    DateTime.UtcNow
                        .AddHours(hoursToRun) // Ignored for one-time schedules.
            };
            // Allow a flexible time window if the caller specifies it.
            request.FlexibleTimeWindow = new FlexibleTimeWindow
            {
                Mode = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                    : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF,
                MaximumWindowInMinutes = useFlexibleTimeWindow
                    ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                    : null
            };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule '{name}' " +
                              $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{response.ScheduleArn}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule '{name}' due to a conflict.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating schedule '{name}' "
+
                             $"in schedule group '{scheduleGroupName}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new schedule group in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was created successfully, false
otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new CreateScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            var response = await _amazonScheduler.CreateScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created schedule group '{name}':
{response.ScheduleGroupArn}.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            // If the name is not unique, a ConflictException will be thrown.
            _logger.LogError($"Failed to create schedule group '{name}' due to a
conflict. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while creating schedule group '{name}':
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name of the schedule to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the schedule was deleted successfully, false otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleAsync(string name, string groupName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteScheduleRequest
            {
                Name = name,
                GroupName = groupName
            };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule with name '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule with ID '{name}' because the resource
 was not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule with ID '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an existing schedule group from Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the schedule group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the schedule group was deleted successfully, false
 otherwise.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            var request = new DeleteScheduleGroupRequest { Name = name };

            await _amazonScheduler.DeleteScheduleGroupAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted schedule group '{name}'.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"Failed to delete schedule group '{name}' because the resource was
 not found: {ex.Message}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(
                $"An error occurred while deleting schedule group '{name}':
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule
  - DeleteScheduleGroups

AWS Glue examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace GlueActions;

public class HelloGlue
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
                .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloGlue>();
        var glueClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonGlue>();

        var request = new ListJobsRequest();
```

```
        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        do
        {
            var response = await glueClient.ListJobsAsync(request);
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
            request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Glue. Let's list your existing Glue Jobs:");
        if (jobNames.Count == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("You don't have any AWS Glue jobs.");
        }
        else
        {
            jobNames.ForEach(Console.WriteLine);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.

- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions that are used in the scenario.

```
using System.Net;

namespace GlueActions;

public class GlueWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonGlue _amazonGlue;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AWS Glue actions wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonGlue"></param>
    public GlueWrapper(IAmazonGlue amazonGlue)
    {
        _amazonGlue = amazonGlue;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name for the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="crawlerDescription">A description of the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to
    /// be assumed by the crawler.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="schedule">The schedule on which the crawler will be executed.</
param>
    /// <param name="s3Path">The path to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon
 S3)
    /// bucket where the Python script has been stored.</param>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name to use for the database that will be
    /// created by the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateCrawlerAsync(
        string crawlerName,
        string crawlerDescription,
        string role,
        string schedule,
        string s3Path,
        string dbName)
    {
        var s3Target = new S3Target
        {
            Path = s3Path,
        };

        var targetList = new List<S3Target>
        {
            s3Target,
        };

        var targets = new CrawlerTargets
        {
            S3Targets = targetList,
        };

        var crawlerRequest = new CreateCrawlerRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            Name = crawlerName,
            Description = crawlerDescription,
            Targets = targets,
            Role = role,
            Schedule = schedule,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to be assumed by
    /// the job.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="scriptUrl">The URL to the script.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateJobAsync(string dbName, string tableName, string
bucketUrl, string jobName, string roleName, string description, string scriptUrl)
    {
        var command = new JobCommand
        {
            PythonVersion = "3",
            Name = "glueetl",
            ScriptLocation = scriptUrl,
        };

        var arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "--input_database", dbName },
            { "--input_table", tableName },
            { "--output_bucket_url", bucketUrl }
        };

        var request = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Command = command,
            DefaultArguments = arguments,
            Description = description,
            GlueVersion = "3.0",
            Name = jobName,
            NumberOfWorkers = 10,
            Role = roleName,
            WorkerType = "G.1X"
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateJobAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteCrawlerAsync(new DeleteCrawlerRequest
{ Name = crawlerName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteDatabaseAsync(new
DeleteDatabaseRequest { Name = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteJobAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteJobAsync(new DeleteJobRequest
{ JobName = jobName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a table from an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The table to delete.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string dbName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteTableAsync(new DeleteTableRequest
{ Name = tableName, DatabaseName = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Crawler object describing the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<Crawler?> GetCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new GetCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            var databaseName = response.Crawler.DatabaseName;
            Console.WriteLine($"{crawlerName} has the database {databaseName}");
            return response.Crawler;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"No information regarding {crawlerName} could be
found.");
        return null;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about the state of an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A value describing the state of the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<CrawlerState> GetCrawlerStateAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(
            new GetCrawlerRequest { Name = crawlerName });
```

```
        return response.Crawler.State;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Database object containing information about the database.</
returns>
    public async Task<Database> GetDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var databasesRequest = new GetDatabaseRequest
        {
            Name = dbName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetDatabaseAsync(databasesRequest);
        return response.Database;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="jobRunId">The Id of the job run.</param>
    /// <returns>A JobRun object with information about the job run.</returns>
    public async Task<JobRun> GetJobRunAsync(string jobName, string jobRunId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetJobRunAsync(new GetJobRunRequest
 { JobName = jobName, RunId = jobRunId });
        return response.JobRun;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about all AWS Glue runs of a specific job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of JobRun objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<JobRun>> GetJobRunsAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var jobRuns = new List<JobRun>();
```

```
        var request = new GetJobRunsRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
        };

        // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us behind
the scenes
        var paginatorForJobRuns =
            _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetJobRuns(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginatorForJobRuns.Responses)
        {
            response.JobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
            {
                jobRuns.Add(jobRun);
            });
        }

        return jobRuns;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of tables for an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Table objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Table>> GetTablesAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var request = new GetTablesRequest { DatabaseName = dbName };
        var tables = new List<Table>();

        // Get a paginator for listing the tables.
        var tablePaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetTables(request);

        await foreach (var response in tablePaginator.Responses)
        {
            tables.AddRange(response.TableList);
        }

        return tables;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List AWS Glue jobs using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of AWS Glue job names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListJobsAsync()
    {
        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        var listJobsPaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.ListJobs(new ListJobsRequest
{ MaxResults = 10 });
        await foreach (var response in listJobsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
        }

        return jobNames;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> StartCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new StartCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the job run Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartJobRunAsync(
```

```
        string jobName,
        string inputDatabase,
        string inputTable,
        string bucketName)
    {
        var request = new StartJobRunRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
            Arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {"--input_database", inputDatabase},
                {"--input_table", inputTable},
                {"--output_bucket_url", $"s3://{bucketName}/"}
            }
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.StartJobRunAsync(request);
        return response.JobRunId;
    }

}
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
global using Amazon.Glue;
global using GlueActions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;



using Amazon.Glue.Model;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

namespace GlueBasics;
```

```
public class GlueBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Glue.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonGlue>()
            .AddTransient<GlueWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UiWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
        .CreateLogger<GlueBasics>();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // These values are stored in settings.json
        // Once you have run the CDK script to deploy the resources,
        // edit the file to set "BucketName", "RoleName", and "ScriptURL"
        // to the appropriate values. Also set "CrawlerName" to the name
        // you want to give the crawler when it is created.
        string bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"]!;
        string bucketUrl = _configuration["BucketUrl"]!;
        string crawlerName = _configuration["CrawlerName"]!;
        string roleName = _configuration["RoleName"]!;
        string sourceData = _configuration["SourceData"]!;
        string dbName = _configuration["DbName"]!;
        string cron = _configuration["Cron"]!;
        string scriptUrl = _configuration["ScriptURL"]!;
```

```
        string jobName = _configuration["JobName"]!;

        var wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<GlueWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UiWrapper>();

        uiWrapper.DisplayOverview();
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Create the crawler and wait for it to be ready.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create AWS Glue crawler");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's begin by creating the AWS Glue crawler.");

        var crawlerDescription = "Crawler created for the AWS Glue Basics
scenario.";
        var crawlerCreated = await wrapper.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerName,
crawlerDescription, roleName, cron, sourceData, dbName);
        if (crawlerCreated)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler: {crawlerName} has been created. Now
let's wait until it's ready.");
            CrawlerState crawlerState;
            do
            {
                crawlerState = await wrapper.GetCrawlerStateAsync(crawlerName);
            }
            while (crawlerState != "READY");
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler {crawlerName} is now ready for use.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't create crawler {crawlerName}.");
            return; // Exit the application.
        }

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Start AWS Glue crawler");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's wait until the crawler has successfully
started.");
        var crawlerStarted = await wrapper.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerName);
        if (crawlerStarted)
        {
            CrawlerState crawlerState;
            do
            {
                crawlerState = await wrapper.GetCrawlerStateAsync(crawlerName);
```

```
            }
            while (crawlerState != "READY");
            Console.WriteLine($"The crawler {crawlerName} is now ready for use.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't start the crawler {crawlerName}.");
            return; // Exit the application.
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine($"\nLet's take a look at the database: {dbName}");
        var database = await wrapper.GetDatabaseAsync(dbName);

        if (database != null)
        {
            uiWrapper.DisplayTitle($"{database.Name} Details");
            Console.WriteLine($"{database.Name} created on {database.CreateTime}");
            Console.WriteLine(database.Description);
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        var tables = await wrapper.GetTablesAsync(dbName);
        if (tables.Count > 0)
        {
            tables.ForEach(table =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{table.Name}\tCreated:
{table.CreateTime}\tUpdated: {table.UpdateTime}");
            });
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create AWS Glue job");
        Console.WriteLine("Creating a new AWS Glue job.");
        var description = "An AWS Glue job created using the AWS SDK for .NET";
        await wrapper.CreateJobAsync(dbName, tables[0].Name, bucketUrl, jobName,
roleName, description, scriptUrl);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Starting AWS Glue job");
        Console.WriteLine("Starting the new AWS Glue job...");
        var jobRunId = await wrapper.StartJobRunAsync(jobName, dbName,
tables[0].Name, bucketName);
        var jobRunComplete = false;
        var jobRun = new JobRun();
        do
        {
            jobRun = await wrapper.GetJobRunAsync(jobName, jobRunId);
            if (jobRun.JobRunState == "SUCCEEDED" || jobRun.JobRunState == "STOPPED"
||
                jobRun.JobRunState == "FAILED" || jobRun.JobRunState == "TIMEOUT")
            {
                jobRunComplete = true;
            }
        } while (!jobRunComplete);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle($"Data in {bucketName}");

        // Get the list of data stored in the S3 bucket.
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        var response = await s3Client.ListObjectsAsync(new ListObjectsRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        response.S3Objects.ForEach(s3Object =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(s3Object.Key);
        });

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("AWS Glue jobs");
        var jobNames = await wrapper.ListJobsAsync();
        jobNames.ForEach(jobName =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(jobName);
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Get AWS Glue job run information");
        Console.WriteLine("Getting information about the AWS Glue job.");
        var jobRuns = await wrapper.GetJobRunsAsync(jobName);

        jobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
        {
```

```
 Console.WriteLine($"{jobRun.JobName}\t{jobRun.JobRunState}\t{jobRun.CompletedOn}");
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Deleting resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the AWS Glue job used by the example.");
        await wrapper.DeleteJobAsync(jobName);

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the tables from the database.");
        tables.ForEach(async table =>
        {
            await wrapper.DeleteTableAsync(dbName, table.Name);
        });

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the database.");
        await wrapper.DeleteDatabaseAsync(dbName);

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the AWS Glue crawler.");
        await wrapper.DeleteCrawlerAsync(crawlerName);

        Console.WriteLine("The AWS Glue scenario has completed.");
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();
    }
}


namespace GlueBasics;

public class UiWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();
        DisplayTitle("Amazon Glue: get started with crawlers and jobs");

        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("\t 1. Create a crawler, pass it the IAM role and the URL
to the public S3 bucket that contains the source data");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 2. Start the crawler.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 3. Get the database created by the crawler and the
tables in the database.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 4. Create a job.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 5. Start a job run.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 6. Wait for the job run to complete.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 7. Show the data stored in the bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 8. List jobs for the account.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 9. Get job run details for the job that was run.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t10. Delete the demo job.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t11. Delete the database and tables created for the
demo.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t12. Delete the crawler.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPlease press <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to center on the screen.</param>
    /// <returns>The string padded to make it center on the screen.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name for the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="crawlerDescription">A description of the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to
    /// be assumed by the crawler.</param>
    /// <param name="schedule">The schedule on which the crawler will be executed.</
param>
    /// <param name="s3Path">The path to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon
 S3)
    /// bucket where the Python script has been stored.</param>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name to use for the database that will be
    /// created by the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateCrawlerAsync(
        string crawlerName,
        string crawlerDescription,
        string role,
        string schedule,
        string s3Path,
        string dbName)
    {
        var s3Target = new S3Target
        {
            Path = s3Path,
        };

        var targetList = new List<S3Target>
        {
            s3Target,
        };

        var targets = new CrawlerTargets
```

```
        {
            S3Targets = targetList,
        };

        var crawlerRequest = new CreateCrawlerRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            Name = crawlerName,
            Description = crawlerDescription,
            Targets = targets,
            Role = role,
            Schedule = schedule,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to be assumed by
    /// the job.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the job.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="scriptUrl">The URL to the script.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateJobAsync(string dbName, string tableName, string
bucketUrl, string jobName, string roleName, string description, string scriptUrl)
    {
        var command = new JobCommand
        {
            PythonVersion = "3",
            Name = "glueetl",
            ScriptLocation = scriptUrl,
        };

        var arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            { "--input_database", dbName },
            { "--input_table", tableName },
            { "--output_bucket_url", bucketUrl }
        };

        var request = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Command = command,
            DefaultArguments = arguments,
            Description = description,
            GlueVersion = "3.0",
            Name = jobName,
            NumberOfWorkers = 10,
            Role = roleName,
            WorkerType = "G.1X"
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.CreateJobAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteCrawlerAsync(new DeleteCrawlerRequest
{ Name = crawlerName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteDatabaseAsync(new
DeleteDatabaseRequest { Name = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteJobAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteJobAsync(new DeleteJobRequest
{ JobName = jobName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a table from an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string dbName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonGlue.DeleteTableAsync(new DeleteTableRequest
{ Name = tableName, DatabaseName = dbName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue crawler.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
    /// <returns>A Crawler object describing the crawler.</returns>
    public async Task<Crawler?> GetCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
    {
        var crawlerRequest = new GetCrawlerRequest
        {
            Name = crawlerName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            var databaseName = response.Crawler.DatabaseName;
            Console.WriteLine($"{crawlerName} has the database {databaseName}");
            return response.Crawler;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"No information regarding {crawlerName} could be
found.");
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A Database object containing information about the database.</
returns>
    public async Task<Database> GetDatabaseAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var databasesRequest = new GetDatabaseRequest
        {
            Name = dbName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetDatabaseAsync(databasesRequest);
        return response.Database;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <param name="jobRunId">The Id of the job run.</param>
    /// <returns>A JobRun object with information about the job run.</returns>
    public async Task<JobRun> GetJobRunAsync(string jobName, string jobRunId)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonGlue.GetJobRunAsync(new GetJobRunRequest
{ JobName = jobName, RunId = jobRunId });
        return response.JobRun;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about all AWS Glue runs of a specific job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of JobRun objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<JobRun>> GetJobRunsAsync(string jobName)
    {
        var jobRuns = new List<JobRun>();

        var request = new GetJobRunsRequest
        {
            JobName = jobName,
        };

        // No need to loop to get all the log groups--the SDK does it for us behind
the scenes
        var paginatorForJobRuns =
            _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetJobRuns(request);

        await foreach (var response in paginatorForJobRuns.Responses)
        {
```

```
            response.JobRuns.ForEach(jobRun =>
            {
                jobRuns.Add(jobRun);
            });
        }

        return jobRuns;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of tables for an AWS Glue database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the database.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Table objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Table>> GetTablesAsync(string dbName)
    {
        var request = new GetTablesRequest { DatabaseName = dbName };
        var tables = new List<Table>();

        // Get a paginator for listing the tables.
        var tablePaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.GetTables(request);

        await foreach (var response in tablePaginator.Responses)
        {
            tables.AddRange(response.TableList);
        }
```

```
        return tables;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List AWS Glue jobs using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of AWS Glue job names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListJobsAsync()
    {
        var jobNames = new List<string>();

        var listJobsPaginator = _amazonGlue.Paginators.ListJobs(new ListJobsRequest
{ MaxResults = 10 });
        await foreach (var response in listJobsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            jobNames.AddRange(response.JobNames);
        }

        return jobNames;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

StartCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Start an AWS Glue crawler.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="crawlerName">The name of the crawler.</param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> StartCrawlerAsync(string crawlerName)
{
    var crawlerRequest = new StartCrawlerRequest
    {
        Name = crawlerName,
    };

    var response = await _amazonGlue.StartCrawlerAsync(crawlerRequest);

    return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

StartJobRun

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Start an AWS Glue job run.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="jobName">The name of the job.</param>
/// <returns>A string representing the job run Id.</returns>
public async Task<string> StartJobRunAsync(
    string jobName,
    string inputDatabase,
    string inputTable,
    string bucketName)
{
    var request = new StartJobRunRequest
    {
        JobName = jobName,
        Arguments = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {"--input_database", inputDatabase},
            {"--input_table", inputTable},
            {"--output_bucket_url", $"s3://{bucketName}/"}
        }
    };

    var response = await _amazonGlue.StartJobRunAsync(request);
    return response.JobRunId;
}
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace IAMActions;

public class HelloIAM
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Getting started with AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM). List
        // the policies for the account.
        var iamClient = new AmazonIdentityManagementServiceClient();

        var listPoliciesPaginator = iamClient.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
 ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();
```

```
        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Here are the policies defined for your account:\n");
        policies.ForEach(policy =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
 {policy.CreateDate}\t{policy.PolicyName}\t{policy.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.

- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
global using Amazon.S3;
global using Amazon.SecurityToken;
global using IAMActions;
global using IamScenariosCommon;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;


namespace IAMActions;

public class IAMWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _IAMService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the IAMWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="IAMService">An IAM client object.</param>
    public IAMWrapper(IAmazonIdentityManagementService IAMService)
    {
        _IAMService = IAMService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an IAM policy to a role.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="policyArn">The policy to attach.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The role that the policy will be attached to.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM access key for a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for which to create the IAM access
    /// key.</param>
    /// <returns>The AccessKey.</returns>
    public async Task<AccessKey> CreateAccessKeyAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateAccessKeyAsync(new
CreateAccessKeyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.AccessKey;

    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name to give the new IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new policy.</param>
    /// <returns>The new IAM policy object.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> CreatePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
policyDocument)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _IAMService.CreatePolicyAsync(new CreatePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            PolicyName = policyName,
        });

        return response.Policy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="rolePolicyDocument">The name of the IAM policy document
    /// for the new role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateRoleAsync(string roleName, string
 rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = rolePolicyDocument,
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM service-linked role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceName">The name of the AWS Service.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the IAM service-linked role.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(string serviceName, string
 description)
    {
        var request = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleRequest
        {
            AWSServiceName = serviceName,
```

```
            Description = description
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for the new IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM user that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<User> CreateUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateUserAsync(new CreateUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user's access key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id for the IAM access key.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user that owns the IAM
    /// access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAccessKeyAsync(string accessKeyId, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(new
DeleteAccessKeyRequest
        {
            AccessKeyId = accessKeyId,
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM policy.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeletePolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeletePolicyAsync(new DeletePolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM role policy to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRolePolicyAsync(string roleName, string
policyName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRolePolicyAsync(new
DeleteRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserAsync(new DeleteUserRequest
 { UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserPolicyAsync(string policyName, string
 userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserPolicyAsync(new
 DeleteUserPolicyRequest { PolicyName = policyName, UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Detach an IAM policy from an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DetachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
```

```
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Gets the IAM password policy for an AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The PasswordPolicy for the AWS account.</returns>
    public async Task<PasswordPolicy> GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync(new
GetAccountPasswordPolicyRequest());
        return response.PasswordPolicy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The IAM policy to retrieve information for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM policy.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> GetPolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {

        var response = await _IAMService.GetPolicyAsync(new GetPolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.Policy;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to retrieve information
    /// for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> GetRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
```

```
        });

        return response.Role;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>An IAM user object.</returns>
    public async Task<User> GetUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetUserAsync(new GetUserRequest { UserName
= userName });
        return response.User;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the IAM role policies that are attached to an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role to list IAM policies for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies attached to the IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AttachedPolicyType>> ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(string
roleName)
    {
        var attachedPolicies = new List<AttachedPolicyType>();
        var attachedRolePoliciesPaginator =
_IAMService.Paginators.ListAttachedRolePolicies(new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });

        await foreach (var response in attachedRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            attachedPolicies.AddRange(response.AttachedPolicies);
        }

        return attachedPolicies;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM groups.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>A list of IAM groups.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Group>> ListGroupsAsync()
    {
        var groupsPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListGroups(new
ListGroupsRequest());
        var groups = new List<Group>();

        await foreach (var response in groupsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            groups.AddRange(response.Groups);
        }

        return groups;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ManagedPolicy>> ListPoliciesAsync()
    {
        var listPoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        return policies;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM role policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role for which to list IAM policies.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM policy names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var listRolePoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRolePolicies(new
ListRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName = roleName });
```

```
        var policyNames = new List<string>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policyNames.AddRange(response.PolicyNames);
        }

        return policyNames;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM roles.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM roles.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Role>> ListRolesAsync()
    {
        var listRolesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRoles(new
ListRolesRequest());
        var roles = new List<Role>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            roles.AddRange(response.Roles);
        }

        return roles;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List SAML authentication providers.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of SAML providers.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SAMLProviderListEntry>> ListSAMLProvidersAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.ListSAMLProvidersAsync(new
ListSAMLProvidersRequest());
        return response.SAMLProviderList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM users.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM users.</returns>
    public async Task<List<User>> ListUsersAsync()
    {
        var listUsersPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListUsers(new
 ListUsersRequest());
        var users = new List<User>();

        await foreach (var response in listUsersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the inline policy document embedded in a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the policy to embed.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to update.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document that defines the role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutRolePolicyAsync(string policyName, string roleName,
 string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutRolePolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Add or update an inline policy document that is embedded in an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The name of the IAM user.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document defining the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutUserPolicyAsync(string userName, string policyName,
 string policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new PutUserPolicyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
            PolicyName = policyName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutUserPolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for a new access key to be ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id of the access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitUntilAccessKeyIsReady(string accessKeyId)
    {
        var keyReady = false;

        do
        {
            try
            {
                var response = await _IAMService.GetAccessKeyLastUsedAsync(
                    new GetAccessKeyLastUsedRequest { AccessKeyId = accessKeyId });
                if (response.UserName is not null)
                {
                    keyReady = true;
                }
            }
            catch (NoSuchEntityException)
            {
                keyReady = false;
            }
        } while (!keyReady);
```

```
        return keyReady;
    }
}



using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace IAMBasics;

public class IAMBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddTransient<IAMWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<IAMBasics>();


        IConfiguration configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // Values needed for user, role, and policies.
        string userName = configuration["UserName"]!;
        string s3PolicyName = configuration["S3PolicyName"]!;
```

```
        string roleName = configuration["RoleName"]!;


        var iamWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAMWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        uiWrapper.DisplayBasicsOverview();
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // First create a user. By default, the new user has
        // no permissions.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create User");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating a new user with user name: {userName}.");
        var user = await iamWrapper.CreateUserAsync(userName);
        var userArn = user.Arn;

        Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created user: {userName} with ARN:
{userArn}.");
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Now let's wait for the user to be ready for use.");

        // Define a role policy document that allows the new user
        // to assume the role.
        string assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{" +
          "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
          "\"Statement\": [{" +
              "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
              "\"Principal\": {" +
              $" \"AWS\": \"{userArn}\"" +
              "}," +
              "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
          "}]" +
        "}";

        // Permissions to list all buckets.
        string policyDocument = "{" +
            "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            " \"Statement\" : [{" +
                " \"Action\" : [\"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\"]," +
                " \"Effect\" : \"Allow\"," +
                " \"Resource\" : \"*\"" +
            "}]" +
        "}";

        // Create an AccessKey for the user.
```

```
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create access key");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's create an access key for the new user.");
        var accessKey = await iamWrapper.CreateAccessKeyAsync(userName);

        var accessKeyId = accessKey.AccessKeyId;
        var secretAccessKey = accessKey.SecretAccessKey;

        Console.WriteLine($"We have created the access key with Access key id:
{accessKeyId}.");

        Console.WriteLine("Now let's wait until the IAM access key is ready to
use.");
        var keyReady = await iamWrapper.WaitUntilAccessKeyIsReady(accessKeyId);

        // Now try listing the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
        // buckets. This should fail at this point because the user doesn't
        // have permissions to perform this task.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Try to display Amazon S3 buckets");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's try to display a list of the user's Amazon S3
buckets.");
        var s3Client1 = new AmazonS3Client(accessKeyId, secretAccessKey);
        var stsClient1 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(accessKeyId,
secretAccessKey);

        var s3Wrapper = new S3Wrapper(s3Client1, stsClient1);
        var buckets = await s3Wrapper.ListMyBucketsAsync();

        Console.WriteLine(buckets is null
            ? "As expected, the call to list the buckets has returned a null list."
            : "Something went wrong. This shouldn't have worked.");

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create IAM role");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the role: {roleName}");

        // Creating an IAM role to allow listing the S3 buckets. A role name
        // is not case sensitive and must be unique to the account for which it
        // is created.
        var roleArn = await iamWrapper.CreateRoleAsync(roleName,
assumeRolePolicyDocument);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();
```

```
        // Create a policy with permissions to list S3 buckets.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create IAM policy");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the policy: {s3PolicyName}");
        Console.WriteLine("with permissions to list the Amazon S3 buckets for the
 account.");
        var policy = await iamWrapper.CreatePolicyAsync(s3PolicyName,
 policyDocument);

        // Wait 15 seconds for the IAM policy to be available.
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Waiting for the policy to be available.");

        // Attach the policy to the role you created earlier.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Attach new IAM policy");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's attach the policy to the role.");
        await iamWrapper.AttachRolePolicyAsync(policy.Arn, roleName);

        // Wait 15 seconds for the role to be updated.
        Console.WriteLine();
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Waiting for the policy to be attached.");

        // Use the AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) to have the user
        // assume the role we created.
        var stsClient2 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(accessKeyId,
 secretAccessKey);

        // Wait for the new credentials to become valid.
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(10, "Waiting for the credentials to be valid.");

        var assumedRoleCredentials = await s3Wrapper.AssumeS3RoleAsync("temporary-
session", roleArn);

        // Try again to list the buckets using the client created with
        // the new user's credentials. This time, it should work.
        var s3Client2 = new AmazonS3Client(assumedRoleCredentials);

        s3Wrapper.UpdateClients(s3Client2, stsClient2);

        buckets = await s3Wrapper.ListMyBucketsAsync();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("List Amazon S3 buckets");
        Console.WriteLine("This time we should have buckets to list.");
        if (buckets is not null)
        {
            buckets.ForEach(bucket =>
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{bucket.BucketName} created:
 {bucket.CreationDate}");
            });
        }

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Now clean up all the resources used in the example.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Thank you for watching. The IAM Basics demo is
 complete.");
        Console.WriteLine("Please wait while we clean up the resources we
 created.");

        await iamWrapper.DetachRolePolicyAsync(policy.Arn, roleName);

        await iamWrapper.DeletePolicyAsync(policy.Arn);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteRoleAsync(roleName);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyId, userName);

        await iamWrapper.DeleteUserAsync(userName);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("All done cleaning up our resources. Thank you for your
 patience.");
    }
}


namespace IamScenariosCommon;

using System.Net;

/// <summary>
/// A class to perform Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions for
/// the IAM Basics scenario.
/// </summary>
public class S3Wrapper
{
    private IAmazonS3 _s3Service;
```

```
    private IAmazonSecurityTokenService _stsService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Service">An Amazon S3 client object.</param>
    /// <param name="stsService">An AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS)
    /// client object.</param>
    public S3Wrapper(IAmazonS3 s3Service, IAmazonSecurityTokenService stsService)
    {
        _s3Service = s3Service;
        _stsService = stsService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Assumes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that allows
    /// Amazon S3 access for the current session.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleSession">A string representing the current session.</param>
    /// <param name="roleToAssume">The name of the IAM role to assume.</param>
    /// <returns>Credentials for the newly assumed IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<Credentials> AssumeS3RoleAsync(string roleSession, string
roleToAssume)
    {
        // Create the request to use with the AssumeRoleAsync call.
        var request = new AssumeRoleRequest()
        {
            RoleSessionName = roleSession,
            RoleArn = roleToAssume,
        };

        var response = await _stsService.AssumeRoleAsync(request);

        return response.Credentials;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the S3 bucket to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteBucketAsync(string bucketName)
    {
```

```
        var result = await _s3Service.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        return result.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the buckets that are owned by the user's account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<S3Bucket>?> ListMyBucketsAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            // Get the list of buckets accessible by the new user.
            var response = await _s3Service.ListBucketsAsync();

            return response.Buckets;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            // Something else went wrong. Display the error message.
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            return null;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the new bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the action completed
    /// successfully.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutBucketAsync(string bucketName)
    {
        var response = await _s3Service.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Update the client objects with new client objects. This is available
    /// because the scenario uses the methods of this class without and then
    /// with the proper permissions to list S3 buckets.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="s3Service">The Amazon S3 client object.</param>
    /// <param name="stsService">The AWS STS client object.</param>
    public void UpdateClients(IAmazonS3 s3Service, IAmazonSecurityTokenService
 stsService)
    {
        _s3Service = s3Service;
        _stsService = stsService;
    }
}


namespace IamScenariosCommon;

public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the IAM Groups scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayGroupsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to the IAM Groups Demo");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates an Amazon Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) group.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Adds an IAM policy to the IAM group giving it full
 access to Amazon S3.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Creates a new IAM user.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Creates an IAM access key for the user.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Adds the user to the IAM group.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Lists the buckets on the account.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Proves that the user has full Amazon S3 access by
 creating a bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. List the buckets again to show the new bucket.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t9. Cleans up all the resources created.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the IAM Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayBasicsOverview()
```

```
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to IAM Basics");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates a user with no permissions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Creates a role and policy that grant
s3:ListAllMyBuckets permission.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Grants the user permission to assume the role.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Creates an S3 client object as the user and tries to
list buckets (this will fail).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Creates a new S3 client object with the temporary
credentials and lists the buckets (this will succeed).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Deletes all the resources.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title, and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
```

```
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy

- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an IAM policy to a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The policy to attach.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The role that the policy will be attached to.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AttachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM access key for a user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for which to create the IAM access
    /// key.</param>
    /// <returns>The AccessKey.</returns>
    public async Task<AccessKey> CreateAccessKeyAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateAccessKeyAsync(new
CreateAccessKeyRequest
        {
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.AccessKey;

    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateInstanceProfile`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
   /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
   /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
   /// clients that run on the instance.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
   /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
   /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
   /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
   /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
   /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
   public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
       string policyName,
       string roleName,
       string profileName,
       string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
       List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
   {

       var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                   "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                   "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                        "\"Principal\": {" +
                                        "\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                        "}," +
                                   "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                   "}]" +
```

```
                                "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
```

```
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
```

```
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name to give the new IAM policy.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new policy.</param>
    /// <returns>The new IAM policy object.</returns>
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> CreatePolicyAsync(string policyName, string
policyDocument)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreatePolicyAsync(new CreatePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            PolicyName = policyName,
        });
```

```
        return response.Policy;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="rolePolicyDocument">The name of the IAM policy document
    /// for the new role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateRoleAsync(string roleName, string
rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = rolePolicyDocument,
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM service-linked role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceName">The name of the AWS Service.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description of the IAM service-linked role.</
param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(string serviceName, string
 description)
    {
        var request = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleRequest
        {
            AWSServiceName = serviceName,
            Description = description
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.CreateServiceLinkedRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username for the new IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM user that was created.</returns>
    public async Task<User> CreateUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.CreateUserAsync(new CreateUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user's access key.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="accessKeyId">The Id for the IAM access key.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user that owns the IAM
    /// access key.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAccessKeyAsync(string accessKeyId, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteAccessKeyAsync(new
DeleteAccessKeyRequest
        {
            AccessKeyId = accessKeyId,
            UserName = userName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteInstanceProfile`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeletePolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeletePolicyAsync(new DeletePolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM role policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM role policy to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteRolePolicyAsync(string roleName, string
policyName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteRolePolicyAsync(new
DeleteRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
```

```
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserAsync(new DeleteUserRequest
{ UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DeleteUserPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an IAM user policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the IAM policy to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the IAM user.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteUserPolicyAsync(string policyName, string
userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DeleteUserPolicyAsync(new
DeleteUserPolicyRequest { PolicyName = policyName, UserName = userName });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DetachRolePolicy

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Detach an IAM policy from an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DetachRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyArn = policyArn,
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets the IAM password policy for an AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The PasswordPolicy for the AWS account.</returns>
    public async Task<PasswordPolicy> GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetAccountPasswordPolicyAsync(new
GetAccountPasswordPolicyRequest());
        return response.PasswordPolicy;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM policy.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The IAM policy to retrieve information for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM policy.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<ManagedPolicy> GetPolicyAsync(string policyArn)
    {

        var response = await _IAMService.GetPolicyAsync(new GetPolicyRequest
{ PolicyArn = policyArn });
        return response.Policy;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to retrieve information
    /// for.</param>
    /// <returns>The IAM role that was retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Role> GetRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        });

        return response.Role;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `GetUser`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an IAM user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="userName">The username of the user.</param>
    /// <returns>An IAM user object.</returns>
    public async Task<User> GetUserAsync(string userName)
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.GetUserAsync(new GetUserRequest { UserName
= userName });
        return response.User;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the IAM role policies that are attached to an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role to list IAM policies for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies attached to the IAM role.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AttachedPolicyType>> ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(string
roleName)
    {
        var attachedPolicies = new List<AttachedPolicyType>();
        var attachedRolePoliciesPaginator =
_IAMService.Paginators.ListAttachedRolePolicies(new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest
{ RoleName = roleName });

        await foreach (var response in attachedRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            attachedPolicies.AddRange(response.AttachedPolicies);
        }

        return attachedPolicies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM groups.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<Group>> ListGroupsAsync()
    {
        var groupsPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListGroups(new
ListGroupsRequest());
        var groups = new List<Group>();

        await foreach (var response in groupsPaginator.Responses)
        {
            groups.AddRange(response.Groups);
        }

        return groups;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of the IAM policies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ManagedPolicy>> ListPoliciesAsync()
    {
        var listPoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListPolicies(new
ListPoliciesRequest());
        var policies = new List<ManagedPolicy>();

        await foreach (var response in listPoliciesPaginator.Responses)
```

```
        {
            policies.AddRange(response.Policies);
        }

        return policies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM role policies.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The IAM role for which to list IAM policies.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM policy names.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListRolePoliciesAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var listRolePoliciesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRolePolicies(new
ListRolePoliciesRequest { RoleName = roleName });
        var policyNames = new List<string>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolePoliciesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            policyNames.AddRange(response.PolicyNames);
        }

        return policyNames;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM roles.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM roles.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Role>> ListRolesAsync()
    {
        var listRolesPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListRoles(new
ListRolesRequest());
        var roles = new List<Role>();

        await foreach (var response in listRolesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            roles.AddRange(response.Roles);
        }

        return roles;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List SAML authentication providers.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of SAML providers.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SAMLProviderListEntry>> ListSAMLProvidersAsync()
    {
        var response = await _IAMService.ListSAMLProvidersAsync(new
ListSAMLProvidersRequest());
        return response.SAMLProviderList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List IAM users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of IAM users.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<User>> ListUsersAsync()
    {
        var listUsersPaginator = _IAMService.Paginators.ListUsers(new
 ListUsersRequest());
        var users = new List<User>();

        await foreach (var response in listUsersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            users.AddRange(response.Users);
        }

        return users;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRolePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the inline policy document embedded in a role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">The name of the policy to embed.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to update.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document that defines the role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutRolePolicyAsync(string policyName, string roleName,
 string policyDocument)
    {
```

```
        var request = new PutRolePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyName = policyName,
            RoleName = roleName,
            PolicyDocument = policyDocument
        };

        var response = await _IAMService.PutRolePolicyAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();


        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS services.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                    .AddTransient<AutoScalerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SmParameterWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<Recommendations>()
                    .AddSingleton<IConfiguration>(_configuration)
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
```

```
        ResourcesSetup();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Resilient Architecture Example
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Deploy(true);

            Console.WriteLine("Now let's begin the scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Demo(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await DestroyResources(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Resilient Architecture Example Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await DestroyResources(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Setup any common resources, also used for integration testing.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ResourcesSetup()
    {
        _httpClient = new HttpClient();
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _recommendations = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Recommendations>();
        _autoScalerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalerWrapper>();
        _smParameterWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<SmParameterWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Deploy(bool interactive)
    {
        var protocol = "HTTP";
        var port = 80;
        var sshPort = 22;

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several AWS
resources\n" +
            "to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore some ways to
make it resilient\n" +
            "against various kinds of failures.\n\n" +
            "Some of the resources create by this demo are:\n");

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to provide book,
movie, and song recommendations.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that each contain
a Python web server.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances across several
Availability Zones.");
        Console.WriteLine(
```

```
            "\t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that targets the Auto
Scaling group to distribute requests.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
resources.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Create and populate the DynamoDB table.
        var databaseTableName = _configuration["databaseName"];
        var recommendationsPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "recommendations_objects.json");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named
{databaseTableName}.");
        await _recommendations.CreateDatabaseWithName(databaseTableName);
        await _recommendations.PopulateDatabase(databaseTableName,
recommendationsPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        // Create the EC2 Launch Template.

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Creating an EC2 launch template that runs 'server_startup_script.sh'
when an instance starts.\n"
            + "\nThis script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server\n"
            + "listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.\n"
            + "For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to\n"
            + "run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged
credentials.");
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nThe template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants\n"
            + "permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters\n"
            + "that control the flow of the demo.");

        var startupScriptPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "server_startup_script.sh");
        var instancePolicyPath = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "instance_policy.json");
```

```
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateTemplate(startupScriptPath,
instancePolicyPath);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2 instances,
each in a different\n"
            + "Availability Zone.\n");
        var zones = await _autoScalerWrapper.DescribeAvailabilityZones();
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateGroupOfSize(3, _autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
zones);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine(
            "At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for\n"
            + "HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or continue
with the demo.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nCreating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group\n"
            + "defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a\n"
            + "single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.");

        var defaultVpc = await _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultVpc();
        var subnets = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(defaultVpc.VpcId, zones);
        var subnetIds = subnets.Select(s => s.SubnetId).ToList();
        var targetGroup = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroupN
protocol, port, defaultVpc.VpcId);
```

```
        await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadB
 subnetIds, targetGroup);
        await
 _autoScalerWrapper.AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName,
 targetGroup.TargetGroupArn);
        Console.WriteLine("\nVerifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        var endPoint = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.Lo
        var loadBalancerAccess = await
 _elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);

        if (!loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nCouldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
 that the port is open...");

            var ipString = await _httpClient.GetStringAsync("https://
checkip.amazonaws.com");
            ipString = ipString.Trim();

            var defaultSecurityGroup = await
 _autoScalerWrapper.GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(defaultVpc);
            var portIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, port, ipString);
            var sshPortIsOpen =
 _autoScalerWrapper.VerifyInboundPortForGroup(defaultSecurityGroup, sshPort,
 ipString);

            if (!portIsOpen)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "\nFor this example to work, the default security group for your
 default VPC must\n"
                    + "allows access from this computer. You can either add it
 automatically from this\n"
                    + "example or add it yourself using the AWS Management Console.
\n");

                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
 inbound traffic from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
```

```
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, port, ipString);
                }
            }

            if (!sshPortIsOpen)
            {
                if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse(
                        "Do you want to add a rule to the security group to allow
inbound SSH traffic for debugging from your computer's IP address?"))
                {
                    await
_autoScalerWrapper.OpenInboundPort(defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId, sshPort,
ipString);
                }
            }
            loadBalancerAccess = await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(endPoint);
        }

        if (loadBalancerAccess)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nCouldn't get a successful response from the load balancer
endpoint. Troubleshoot by\n"
                + "manually verifying that your VPC and security group are
configured correctly and that\n"
                + "you can successfully make a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint:\n");
            Console.WriteLine($"\thttp://{endPoint}\n");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Demonstrate the steps of the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as an interactive scenario.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Demo(bool interactive)
    {
        var ssmOnlyPolicy = Path.Join(_configuration["resourcePath"],
            "ssm_only_policy.json");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine("\nThis part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
 different parts of the system\n" +
                          "to create situations where the web service fails, and
 shows how using a resilient\n" +
                          "architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
 these failures.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
 recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine($"The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
 recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.\n" +
                          $"The table name is contained in a Systems Manager
 parameter named '{_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter}'.\n" +
                          $"To simulate a failure of the recommendation service,
 let's set this parameter to name a non-existent table.\n");
        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
 endpoint returns a failure code. But, the service reports as\n" +
                          "healthy to the load balancer because shallow health
 checks don't check for failure of the recommendation service.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.FailureResponseParameter,
"static");

        Console.WriteLine("\nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint returns a static response.");
        Console.WriteLine("The service still reports as healthy because health
checks are still shallow.");
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.\n");
        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter,
_smParameterWrapper.TableName);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nLet's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in the
target group so that it can't\n" +
            "access the DynamoDB recommendation table.\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsPolicyName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName,
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            ssmOnlyPolicy,
            new List<string> { "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore" }
        );
        var instances = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstancesByGroupName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName);
        var badInstanceId = instances.First();
        var instanceProfile = await
_autoScalerWrapper.GetInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Replacing the profile for instance {badInstanceId} with a profile that
contains\n" +
            "bad credentials...\n"
        );
        await _autoScalerWrapper.ReplaceInstanceProfile(
            badInstanceId,
```

```
            _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
            instanceProfile.AssociationId
        );
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns either
a recommendation or a static response,\n" +
            "depending on which instance is selected by the load balancer.\n"
        );
        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nLet's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a
deep health check tests whether");
        Console.WriteLine("the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it
depends on for recommendations. Note that");
        Console.WriteLine("the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for
Auto Scaling instance health.");
        Console.WriteLine("This kind of deep health check is not recommended for
Auto Scaling instance health, because it");
        Console.WriteLine("risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto
Scaling group when a dependent service fails.");

        Console.WriteLine("\nBy implementing deep health checks, the load balancer
can detect when one of the instances is failing");
        Console.WriteLine("and take that instance out of rotation.");

        await
_smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.HealthCheckParameter,
"deep");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nNow, checking target health indicates that the
instance with bad credentials ({badInstanceId})");
        Console.WriteLine("is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for
the load balancer to detect the unhealthy");
        Console.WriteLine("instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer
endpoint always returns a recommendation, because");
        Console.WriteLine("the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its
rotation.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nBecause the instances in this demo are controlled by an
auto scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start
 a new instance to replace it.");

        await _autoScalerWrapper.TryTerminateInstanceById(badInstanceId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nEven while the instance is terminating and the new
 instance is starting, sending a GET");
        Console.WriteLine("request to the web service continues to get a successful
 recommendation response because");
        Console.WriteLine("starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load
 balancing rotation.");
        Console.WriteLine("Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically
 takes several minutes, during which time you");
        Console.WriteLine("can see the changing health check status until the new
 instance is running and healthy.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();

        Console.WriteLine("\nIf the recommendation service fails now, deep health
 checks mean all instances report as unhealthy.");

        await
 _smParameterWrapper.PutParameterByName(_smParameterWrapper.TableParameter, "this-
is-not-a-table");

        Console.WriteLine($"\nWhen all instances are unhealthy, the load balancer
 continues to route requests even to");
        Console.WriteLine("unhealthy instances, allowing them to fail open and
 return a static response rather than fail");
        Console.WriteLine("closed and report failure to the customer.");

        if (interactive)
            await DemoActionChoices();
        await _smParameterWrapper.Reset();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DestroyResources(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            "To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account, we
can clean up all AWS resources\n" +
            "that were created for this demo."
        );

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all demo
resources? (y/n) "))
        {
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteLoadBalancerByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.LoadBalanc
            await
_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.DeleteTargetGroupByName(_elasticLoadBalancerWrapper.TargetGroup
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(_autoScalerWrapper.GroupName)
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteKeyPairByName(_autoScalerWrapper.KeyPairName);
            await
_autoScalerWrapper.DeleteTemplateByName(_autoScalerWrapper.LaunchTemplateName);
            await _autoScalerWrapper.DeleteInstanceProfile(
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsProfileName,
                _autoScalerWrapper.BadCredsRoleName
            );
            await
_recommendations.DestroyDatabaseByName(_recommendations.TableName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management methods.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSsm;
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _amazonIam;
    private readonly ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> _logger;

    private readonly string _instanceType = "";
    private readonly string _amiParam = "";
    private readonly string _launchTemplateName = "";
    private readonly string _groupName = "";
    private readonly string _instancePolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _instanceProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsProfileName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsRoleName = "";
    private readonly string _badCredsPolicyName = "";
    private readonly string _keyPairName = "";

    public string GroupName => _groupName;
    public string KeyPairName => _keyPairName;
    public string LaunchTemplateName => _launchTemplateName;
    public string InstancePolicyName => _instancePolicyName;
    public string BadCredsProfileName => _badCredsProfileName;
    public string BadCredsRoleName => _badCredsRoleName;
    public string BadCredsPolicyName => _badCredsPolicyName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalerWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected AutoScaling client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected EC2 client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonIam">The injected IAM client.</param>
    /// <param name="amazonSsm">The injected SSM client.</param>
    public AutoScalerWrapper(
        IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling,
        IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2,
        IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement amazonSsm,
```

```
        IAmazonIdentityManagementService amazonIam,
        IConfiguration configuration,
        ILogger<AutoScalerWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
        _amazonSsm = amazonSsm;
        _amazonIam = amazonIam;
        _logger = logger;

        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _instanceType = configuration["instanceType"];
        _amiParam = configuration["amiParam"];

        _launchTemplateName = prefix + "-template";
        _groupName = prefix + "-group";
        _instancePolicyName = prefix + "-pol";
        _instanceRoleName = prefix + "-role";
        _instanceProfileName = prefix + "-prof";
        _badCredsPolicyName = prefix + "-bc-pol";
        _badCredsRoleName = prefix + "-bc-role";
        _badCredsProfileName = prefix + "-bc-prof";
        _keyPairName = prefix + "-key-pair";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances with a
specified name.
    /// An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed by the
    /// instance.The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
    /// clients that run on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyName">Name to use for the policy.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">Name to use for the role.</param>
    /// <param name="profileName">Name to use for the profile.</param>
    /// <param name="ssmOnlyPolicyFile">Path to a policy file for SSM.</param>
    /// <param name="awsManagedPolicies">AWS Managed policies to be attached to the
role.</param>
    /// <returns>The Arn of the profile.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateInstanceProfileWithName(
        string policyName,
        string roleName,
        string profileName,
```

```
        string ssmOnlyPolicyFile,
        List<string>? awsManagedPolicies = null)
    {

        var assumeRoleDoc = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                     "\"Service\": [" +
                                         "\"ec2.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                     "]" +
                                     "}," +
                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";

        var policyDocument = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(ssmOnlyPolicyFile);

        var policyArn = "";

        try
        {
            var createPolicyResult = await _amazonIam.CreatePolicyAsync(
                new CreatePolicyRequest
                {
                    PolicyName = policyName,
                    PolicyDocument = policyDocument
                });
            policyArn = createPolicyResult.Policy.Arn;
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            // The policy already exists, so we look it up to get the Arn.
            var policiesPaginator = _amazonIam.Paginators.ListPolicies(
                new ListPoliciesRequest()
                {
                    Scope = PolicyScopeType.Local
                });
            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var policy in policiesPaginator.Policies)
            {
                if (policy.PolicyName.Equals(policyName))
                {
```

```
                    policyArn = policy.Arn;
                }
            }

            if (policyArn == null)
            {
                throw new InvalidOperationException("Policy not found");
            }
        }

        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.CreateRoleAsync(new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRoleDoc,
            });
            await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                PolicyArn = policyArn
            });
            if (awsManagedPolicies != null)
            {
                foreach (var awsPolicy in awsManagedPolicies)
                {
                    await _amazonIam.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        PolicyArn = $"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{awsPolicy}",
                        RoleName = roleName
                    });
                }
            }
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Role already exists.");
        }

        string profileArn = "";
        try
        {
            var profileCreateResponse = await _amazonIam.CreateInstanceProfileAsync(
```

```
                new CreateInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            // Allow time for the profile to be ready.
            profileArn = profileCreateResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await _amazonIam.AddRoleToInstanceProfileAsync(
                new AddRoleToInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });

        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Policy already exists.");
            var profileGetResponse = await _amazonIam.GetInstanceProfileAsync(
                new GetInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName
                });
            profileArn = profileGetResponse.InstanceProfile.Arn;
        }
        return profileArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new key pair and save the file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newKeyPairName">The name of the new key pair.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateKeyPair(string newKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            var keyResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateKeyPairAsync(
                new CreateKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = newKeyPairName });
            await File.WriteAllTextAsync($"{newKeyPairName}.pem",
                keyResponse.KeyPair.KeyMaterial);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created key pair {newKeyPairName}.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key pair already exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the key pair and file by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="deleteKeyPairName">The key pair to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteKeyPairByName(string deleteKeyPairName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteKeyPairAsync(
                new DeleteKeyPairRequest() { KeyName = deleteKeyPairName });
            File.Delete($"{deleteKeyPairName}.pem");
        }
        catch (FileNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Key pair {deleteKeyPairName} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
    /// The launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
    /// the instance is started. This script installs the Python packages and starts
a Python
    /// web server on the instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startupScriptPath">The path to a Bash script file that is
run.</param>
    /// <param name="instancePolicyPath">The path to a permissions policy to create
and attach to the profile.</param>
    /// <returns>The template object.</returns>
    public async Task<Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchTemplate> CreateTemplate(string
startupScriptPath, string instancePolicyPath)
    {
        try
        {
            await CreateKeyPair(_keyPairName);
```

```
            await CreateInstanceProfileWithName(_instancePolicyName,
_instanceRoleName,
                _instanceProfileName, instancePolicyPath);

            var startServerText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(startupScriptPath);
            var plainTextBytes =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(startServerText);

            var amiLatest = await _amazonSsm.GetParameterAsync(
                new GetParameterRequest() { Name = _amiParam });
            var amiId = amiLatest.Parameter.Value;
            var launchTemplateResponse = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                    LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData()
                    {
                        InstanceType = _instanceType,
                        ImageId = amiId,
                        IamInstanceProfile =
                            new

LaunchTemplateIamInstanceProfileSpecificationRequest()
                            {
                                Name = _instanceProfileName
                            },
                        KeyName = _keyPairName,
                        UserData = System.Convert.ToBase64String(plainTextBytes)
                    }
                });
            return launchTemplateResponse.LaunchTemplate;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Could not create the template, the name
{_launchTemplateName} already exists. " +
                                 $"Please try again with a unique name.");
            }

            throw;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while creating the template.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2 Client.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> DescribeAvailabilityZones()
    {
        try
        {
            var zoneResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
                new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());
            return zoneResponse.AvailabilityZones.Select(z => z.ZoneName).ToList();
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An Amazon EC2 error occurred while listing
 availability zones.: {ec2Exception.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while listing availability zones.:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an EC2 Auto Scaling group of a specified size and name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupSize">The size for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The availability zones for the group.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CreateGroupOfSize(int groupSize, string groupName,
 List<string> availabilityZones)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    AvailabilityZones = availabilityZones,
                    LaunchTemplate =
                        new Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.LaunchTemplateSpecification()
                        {
                            LaunchTemplateName = _launchTemplateName,
                            Version = "$Default"
                        },
                    MaxSize = groupSize,
                    MinSize = groupSize
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} with size
{groupSize}.");
        }
        catch (EntityAlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"EC2 Auto Scaling group {groupName} already
exists.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default VPC for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The default VPC object.</returns>
    public async Task<Vpc> GetDefaultVpc()
    {
        try
        {
            var vpcResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeVpcsAsync(
                new DescribeVpcsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("is-default", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });
            return vpcResponse.Vpcs[0];
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "UnauthorizedOperation")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"You do not have the necessary
permissions to describe VPCs.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the vpcs.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get all the subnets for a Vpc in a set of availability zones.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc.</param>
    /// <param name="availabilityZones">The list of availability zones.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of subnet objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Subnet>> GetAllVpcSubnetsForZones(string vpcId,
List<string> availabilityZones)
    {
        try
        {
            var subnets = new List<Subnet>();
            var subnetPaginator = _amazonEc2.Paginators.DescribeSubnets(
                new DescribeSubnetsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpcId }),
                        new("availability-zone", availabilityZones),
                        new("default-for-az", new List<string>() { "true" })
                    }
                });

            // Get the entire list using the paginator.
            await foreach (var subnet in subnetPaginator.Subnets)
```

```
            {
                subnets.Add(subnet);
            }

            return subnets;
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"The specified VPC ID {vpcId} does
not exist.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while describing the subnets.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a launch template by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTemplateByName(string templateName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest()
                {
                    LaunchTemplateName = templateName
                });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode ==
"InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError(
                    $"Could not delete the template, the name {_launchTemplateName}
was not found.");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError($"An error occurred while deleting the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
    /// and deletes all the resources.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="profileName">The name of the profile to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteInstanceProfile(string profileName, string roleName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonIam.RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileAsync(
                new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest()
                {
                    InstanceProfileName = profileName,
                    RoleName = roleName
                });
            await _amazonIam.DeleteInstanceProfileAsync(
                new DeleteInstanceProfileRequest() { InstanceProfileName =
profileName });
            var attachedPolicies = await _amazonIam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesAsync(
                new ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
            foreach (var policy in attachedPolicies.AttachedPolicies)
            {
                await _amazonIam.DetachRolePolicyAsync(
                    new DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                    {
                        RoleName = roleName,
                        PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
```

```
                    });
                // Delete the custom policies only.
                if (!policy.PolicyArn.StartsWith("arn:aws:iam::aws"))
                {
                    await _amazonIam.DeletePolicyAsync(
                        new Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.DeletePolicyRequest()
                        {
                            PolicyArn = policy.PolicyArn
                        });
                }
            }

            await _amazonIam.DeleteRoleAsync(
                new DeleteRoleRequest() { RoleName = roleName });
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Instance profile {profileName} does not exist.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets data about the instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group by its group
name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="group">The name of the auto scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of instance Ids.</returns>
    public async Task<IEnumerable<string>> GetInstancesByGroupName(string group)
    {
        var instanceResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { group }
            });
        var instanceIds = instanceResponse.AutoScalingGroups.SelectMany(
            g => g.Instances.Select(i => i.InstanceId));
        return instanceIds;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the instance profile association data for an instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Instance profile associations data.</returns>
    public async Task<IamInstanceProfileAssociation> GetInstanceProfile(string
instanceId)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonEc2.DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsAsync(
                new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest()
                {
                    Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                    {
                        new("instance-id", new List<string>() { instanceId })
                    },
                });
            return response.IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0];
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while creating the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Replace the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
replaced, the instance
    /// is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile. When the instance is
ready, Systems Manager is
    /// used to restart the Python web server.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to update.</param>
    /// <param name="credsProfileName">The name of the new profile to associate with
the specified instance.</param>
```

```
   /// <param name="associationId">The Id of the existing profile association for
the instance.</param>
   /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
   public async Task ReplaceInstanceProfile(string instanceId, string
credsProfileName, string associationId)
   {
       try
       {
           await _amazonEc2.ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationAsync(
               new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest()
               {
                   AssociationId = associationId,
                   IamInstanceProfile = new IamInstanceProfileSpecification()
                   {
                       Name = credsProfileName
                   }
               });
           // Allow time before resetting.
           Thread.Sleep(25000);

           await _amazonEc2.RebootInstancesAsync(
               new RebootInstancesRequest(new List<string>() { instanceId }));
           Thread.Sleep(25000);
           var instanceReady = false;
           var retries = 5;
           while (retries-- > 0 && !instanceReady)
           {
               var instancesPaginator =
                   _amazonSsm.Paginators.DescribeInstanceInformation(
                       new DescribeInstanceInformationRequest());
               // Get the entire list using the paginator.
               await foreach (var instance in
instancesPaginator.InstanceInformationList)
               {
                   instanceReady = instance.InstanceId == instanceId;
                   if (instanceReady)
                   {
                       break;
                   }
               }
           }
           Console.WriteLine("Waiting for instance to be running.");
           await WaitForInstanceState(instanceId, InstanceStateName.Running);
           Console.WriteLine("Instance ready.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Sending restart command to instance {instanceId}");
            await _amazonSsm.SendCommandAsync(
                new SendCommandRequest()
                {
                    InstanceIds = new List<string>() { instanceId },
                    DocumentName = "AWS-RunShellScript",
                    Parameters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>()
                    {
                        {
                            "commands",
                            new List<string>() { "cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80" }
                        }
                    }
                });
            Console.WriteLine($"Restarted the web server on instance {instanceId}");
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ec2Exception)
        {
            if (ec2Exception.ErrorCode == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound")
            {
                _logger.LogError(ec2Exception, $"Instance {instanceId} not found");
            }

            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, $"An error occurred while replacing the template.:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Try to terminate an instance by its Id.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The Id of the instance to terminate.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryTerminateInstanceById(string instanceId)
    {
        var stopping = false;
        Console.WriteLine($"Stopping {instanceId}...");
        while (!stopping)
```

```
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        InstanceId = instanceId,
                        ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
                    });
                stopping = true;
            }
            catch (ScalingActivityInProgressException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Scaling activity in progress for {instanceId}.
Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Tries to delete the EC2 Auto Scaling group. If the group is in use or in
progress,
    /// waits and retries until the group is successfully deleted.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to try to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TryDeleteGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var stopped = false;
        while (!stopped)
        {
            try
            {
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                    {
                        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName
                    });
                stopped = true;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
                when ((e is ScalingActivityInProgressException)
                      || (e is Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.ResourceInUseException))
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Some instances are still running. Waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate instances and delete the Auto Scaling group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task TerminateAndDeleteAutoScalingGroupWithName(string groupName)
    {
        var describeGroupsResponse = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupNames = new List<string>() { groupName }
            });
        if (describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups.Any())
        {
            // Update the size to 0.
            await _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
                new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest()
                {
                    AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
                    MinSize = 0
                });
            var group = describeGroupsResponse.AutoScalingGroups[0];
            foreach (var instance in group.Instances)
            {
                await TryTerminateInstanceById(instance.InstanceId);
            }

            await TryDeleteGroupByName(groupName);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No groups found with name {groupName}.");
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the default security group for a specified Vpc.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The Vpc to search.</param>
    /// <returns>The default security group.</returns>
    public async Task<SecurityGroup> GetDefaultSecurityGroupForVpc(Vpc vpc)
    {
        var groupResponse = await _amazonEc2.DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest()
            {
                Filters = new List<Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter>()
                {
                    new ("group-name", new List<string>() { "default" }),
                    new ("vpc-id", new List<string>() { vpc.VpcId })
                }
            });
        return groupResponse.SecurityGroups[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the default security group of a Vpc allows ingress from the calling
computer.
    /// This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP address.
    /// In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you must
instead specify
    /// a prefix list Id. You can also temporarily open the port to any IP address
while running this example.
    /// If you do, be sure to remove public access when you're done.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vpc">The group to check.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to verify.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">This computer's IP address.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the ip address is allowed on the group.</returns>
    public bool VerifyInboundPortForGroup(SecurityGroup group, int port, string
ipAddress)
    {
        var portIsOpen = false;
        foreach (var ipPermission in group.IpPermissions)
        {
            if (ipPermission.FromPort == port)
            {
                foreach (var ipRange in ipPermission.Ipv4Ranges)
                {
                    var cidr = ipRange.CidrIp;
```

```
                    if (cidr.StartsWith(ipAddress) || cidr == "0.0.0.0/0")
                    {
                        portIsOpen = true;
                    }
                }

                if (ipPermission.PrefixListIds.Any())
                {
                    portIsOpen = true;
                }

                if (!portIsOpen)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("The inbound rule does not appear to be open
to either this computer's IP\n" +
                                      "address, to all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or
to a prefix list ID.");
                }
                else
                {
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        return portIsOpen;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
    /// specified port from the specified IP address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupId">The Id of the security group to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to open.</param>
    /// <param name="ipAddress">The IP address to allow access.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task OpenInboundPort(string groupId, int port, string ipAddress)
    {
        await _amazonEc2.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressAsync(
            new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest()
            {
                GroupId = groupId,
                IpPermissions = new List<IpPermission>()
```

```
                {
                    new IpPermission()
                    {
                        FromPort = port,
                        ToPort = port,
                        IpProtocol = "tcp",
                        Ipv4Ranges = new List<IpRange>()
                        {
                            new IpRange() { CidrIp = $"{ipAddress}/32" }
                        }
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
 Scaling group.
    /// The
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="autoScalingGroupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <param name="targetGroupArn">The Arn for the target group.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task AttachLoadBalancerToGroup(string autoScalingGroupName, string
 targetGroupArn)
    {
        await _amazonAutoScaling.AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsAsync(
            new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest()
            {
                AutoScalingGroupName = autoScalingGroupName,
                TargetGroupARNs = new List<string>() { targetGroupArn }
            });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait until an EC2 instance is in a specified state.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id.</param>
    /// <param name="stateName">The state to wait for.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> WaitForInstanceState(string instanceId,
 InstanceStateName stateName)
    {
```

```
        var request = new DescribeInstancesRequest
        {
            InstanceIds = new List<string> { instanceId }
        };

        // Wait until the instance is in the specified state.
        var hasState = false;
        do
        {
            // Wait 5 seconds.
            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            // Check for the desired state.
            var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeInstancesAsync(request);
            var instance = response.Reservations[0].Instances[0];
            hasState = instance.State.Name == stateName;
            Console.Write(". ");
        } while (!hasState);

        return hasState;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancer actions.
/// </summary>
public class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
    private string? _endpoint = null;
    private readonly string _targetGroupName = "";
    private readonly string _loadBalancerName = "";
    HttpClient _httpClient = new();

    public string TargetGroupName => _targetGroupName;
    public string LoadBalancerName => _loadBalancerName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Elastic Load Balancer wrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2">The injected load balancing v2
client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(
        IAmazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2,
        IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2 = amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2;
        var prefix = configuration["resourcePrefix"];
        _targetGroupName = prefix + "-tg";
        _loadBalancerName = prefix + "-lb";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the HTTP Endpoint of a load balancer by its name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="loadBalancerName">The name of the load balancer.</param>
    /// <returns>The HTTP endpoint.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndpointForLoadBalancerByName(string
loadBalancerName)
    {
        if (_endpoint == null)
        {
            var endpointResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { loadBalancerName }
                    });
            _endpoint = endpointResponse.LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
        }

        return _endpoint;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return the GET response for an endpoint as text.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint for the request.</param>
    /// <returns>The request response.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetEndPointResponse(string endpoint)
    {
        var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://{endpoint}");
```

```
        var textResponse = await endpointResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();
        return textResponse!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the target health for a group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the group.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of health descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TargetHealthDescription>>
CheckTargetHealthForGroup(string groupName)
    {
        List<TargetHealthDescription> result = null!;
        try
        {
            var groupResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                    });
            var healthResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetHealthAsync(
                    new DescribeTargetHealthRequest()
                    {
                        TargetGroupArn =
groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn
                    });
            ;
            result = healthResponse.TargetHealthDescriptions;
        }
        catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Target group {groupName} not found.");
        }
        return result;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how the load balancer forwards
    /// requests to instances in the group and how instance health is checked.
    ///
```

```
    /// To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and lower thresholds. In production,
    /// you might want to decrease the sensitivity of your health checks to avoid
 unwanted failures.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the group.</param>
    /// <param name="protocol">The protocol, such as HTTP.</param>
    /// <param name="port">The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.</param>
    /// <param name="vpcId">The Id of the Vpc in which the load balancer exists.</
param>
    /// <returns>The new TargetGroup object.</returns>
    public async Task<TargetGroup> CreateTargetGroupOnVpc(string groupName,
 ProtocolEnum protocol, int port, string vpcId)
    {
        var createResponse = await
 _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateTargetGroupAsync(
            new CreateTargetGroupRequest()
            {
                Name = groupName,
                Protocol = protocol,
                Port = port,
                HealthCheckPath = "/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds = 10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds = 5,
                HealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount = 2,
                VpcId = vpcId
            });
        var targetGroup = createResponse.TargetGroups[0];
        return targetGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
    /// and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name for the new load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="subnetIds">Subnets for the load balancer.</param>
    /// <param name="targetGroup">Target group for forwarded requests.</param>
    /// <returns>The new LoadBalancer object.</returns>
    public async Task<LoadBalancer> CreateLoadBalancerAndListener(string name,
 List<string> subnetIds, TargetGroup targetGroup)
    {
```

```
        var createLbResponse = await
_amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateLoadBalancerAsync(
            new CreateLoadBalancerRequest()
            {
                Name = name,
                Subnets = subnetIds
            });
        var loadBalancerArn = createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;

        // Wait for load balancer to be available.
        var loadBalancerReady = false;
        while (!loadBalancerReady)
        {
            try
            {
                var describeResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                        new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { name }
                        });

                var loadBalancerState =
describeResponse.LoadBalancers[0].State.Code;

                loadBalancerReady = loadBalancerState ==
LoadBalancerStateEnum.Active;
            }
            catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
            {
                loadBalancerReady = false;
            }
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
        }
        // Create the listener.
        await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.CreateListenerAsync(
            new CreateListenerRequest()
            {
                LoadBalancerArn = loadBalancerArn,
                Protocol = targetGroup.Protocol,
                Port = targetGroup.Port,
                DefaultActions = new List<Action>()
                {
                    new Action()
```

```
                    {
                        Type = ActionTypeEnum.Forward,
                        TargetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn
                    }
                }
            });
        return createLbResponse.LoadBalancers[0];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the
    /// load balancer endpoint.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="endpoint">The endpoint to check.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(string endpoint)
    {
        var success = false;
        var retries = 3;
        while (!success && retries > 0)
        {
            try
            {
                var endpointResponse = await _httpClient.GetAsync($"http://
{endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Response: {endpointResponse.StatusCode}.");

                if (endpointResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode)
                {
                    success = true;
                }
                else
                {
                    retries = 0;
                }
            }
            catch (HttpRequestException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Connection error, retrying...");
                retries--;
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
```

```
        return success;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a load balancer by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the load balancer to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteLoadBalancerByName(string name)
    {
        try
        {
            var describeLoadBalancerResponse =
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeLoadBalancersAsync(
                    new DescribeLoadBalancersRequest()
                    {
                        Names = new List<string>() { name }
                    });
            var lbArn =
describeLoadBalancerResponse.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
            await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteLoadBalancerAsync(
                new DeleteLoadBalancerRequest()
                {
                    LoadBalancerArn = lbArn
                }
            );
        }
        catch (LoadBalancerNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Load balancer {name} not found.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a TargetGroup by its specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">Name of the group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DeleteTargetGroupByName(string groupName)
    {
        var done = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            try
```

```
            {
                var groupResponse =
                    await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DescribeTargetGroupsAsync(
                        new DescribeTargetGroupsRequest()
                        {
                            Names = new List<string>() { groupName }
                        });

                var targetArn = groupResponse.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn;
                await _amazonElasticLoadBalancingV2.DeleteTargetGroupAsync(
                    new DeleteTargetGroupRequest() { TargetGroupArn = targetArn });
                Console.WriteLine($"Deleted load balancing target group
 {groupName}.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (TargetGroupNotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Target group {groupName} not found, could not delete.");
                done = true;
            }
            catch (ResourceInUseException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Target group not yet released, waiting...");
                Thread.Sleep(10000);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
 and songs.
/// </summary>
public class Recommendations
{
    private readonly IAmazonDynamoDB _amazonDynamoDb;
    private readonly DynamoDBContext _context;
    private readonly string _tableName;
```

```
    public string TableName => _tableName;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Recommendations service.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonDynamoDb">The injected DynamoDb client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public Recommendations(IAmazonDynamoDB amazonDynamoDb, IConfiguration
configuration)
    {
        _amazonDynamoDb = amazonDynamoDb;
        _context = new DynamoDBContext(_amazonDynamoDb);
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create the DynamoDb table with a specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name for the table.</param>
    /// <returns>True when ready.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateDatabaseWithName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.Write($"Creating table {tableName}...");
            var createRequest = new CreateTableRequest()
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                    {
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
                        },
                        new AttributeDefinition()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
                        }
                    },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                    {
                        new KeySchemaElement()
```

```
                        {
                            AttributeName = "MediaType",
                            KeyType = KeyType.HASH
                        },
                        new KeySchemaElement()
                        {
                            AttributeName = "ItemId",
                            KeyType = KeyType.RANGE
                        }
                    },
                ProvisionedThroughput = new ProvisionedThroughput()
                {
                    ReadCapacityUnits = 5,
                    WriteCapacityUnits = 5
                }
            };
            await _amazonDynamoDb.CreateTableAsync(createRequest);

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("\nWaiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName
            };

            TableStatus status;
            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(2000);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDb.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists.");
```

```
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the database table with data from a specified path.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="databaseTableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="recommendationsPath">The path of the recommendations data.</
param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PopulateDatabase(string databaseTableName, string
 recommendationsPath)
    {
        var recommendationsText = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(recommendationsPath);
        var records =
            JsonSerializer.Deserialize<RecommendationModel[]>(recommendationsText);
        var batchWrite = _context.CreateBatchWrite<RecommendationModel>();

        foreach (var record in records!)
        {
            batchWrite.AddPutItem(record);
        }

        await batchWrite.ExecuteAsync();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the recommendation table by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the recommendation table.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task DestroyDatabaseByName(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            await _amazonDynamoDb.DeleteTableAsync(
                new DeleteTableRequest() { TableName = tableName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was deleted.");
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} not found");
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Encapsulates Systems Manager parameter operations. This example uses these
 parameters
/// to drive the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a
 dependency or
/// how the service responds to a health check.
/// </summary>
public class SmParameterWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;

    private readonly string _tableParameter = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
table";
    private readonly string _failureResponseParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    private readonly string _healthCheckParameter = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-health-check";
    private readonly string _tableName = "";

    public string TableParameter => _tableParameter;
    public string TableName => _tableName;
    public string HealthCheckParameter => _healthCheckParameter;
    public string FailureResponseParameter => _failureResponseParameter;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SmParameterWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSimpleSystemsManagement">The injected Simple Systems
 Management client.</param>
    /// <param name="configuration">The injected configuration.</param>
    public SmParameterWrapper(IAmazonSimpleSystemsManagement
 amazonSimpleSystemsManagement, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement = amazonSimpleSystemsManagement;
        _tableName = configuration["databaseName"]!;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reset the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task Reset()
    {
        await this.PutParameterByName(_tableParameter, _tableName);
        await this.PutParameterByName(_failureResponseParameter, "none");
        await this.PutParameterByName(_healthCheckParameter, "shallow");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the parameter.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The value to set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task PutParameterByName(string name, string value)
    {
        await _amazonSimpleSystemsManagement.PutParameterAsync(
            new PutParameterRequest() { Name = name, Value = value, Overwrite =
 true });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer

- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Keyspaces.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

public class HelloKeyspaces
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra).
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
                .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloKeyspaces>();

        var keyspacesClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonKeyspaces>();
        var keyspacesWrapper = new KeyspacesWrapper(keyspacesClient);

        Console.WriteLine("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list your keyspaces:");
        await keyspacesWrapper.ListKeyspaces();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a keyspace and table. The table schema holds movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
- Connect to the keyspace using a secure TLS connection with SigV4 authentication.
- Query the table. Add, retrieve, and update movie data.
- Update the table. Add a column to track watched movies.
- Restore the table to its previous state and clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using System.Security.Cryptography.X509Certificates;
global using Amazon.Keyspaces;
global using Amazon.Keyspaces.Model;
global using KeyspacesActions;
global using KeyspacesScenario;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
```

```
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
global using Newtonsoft.Json;


namespace KeyspacesBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) scenario. Shows some of the basic
/// actions performed with Amazon Keyspaces.
/// </summary>
public class KeyspacesBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonKeyspaces>()
            .AddTransient<KeyspacesWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<CassandraWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<KeyspacesBasics>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var keyspacesWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<KeyspacesWrapper>();
        var uiMethods = new UiMethods();

        var keyspaceName = configuration["KeyspaceName"];
```

```
        var tableName = configuration["TableName"];

        bool success; // Used to track the results of some operations.

        uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Create the keyspace.
        var keyspaceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.CreateKeyspace(keyspaceName);

        // Wait for the keyspace to be available. GetKeyspace results in a
        // resource not found error until it is ready for use.
        try
        {
            var getKeyspaceArn = "";
            Console.Write($"Created {keyspaceName}. Waiting for it to become
available. ");
            do
            {
                getKeyspaceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.GetKeyspace(keyspaceName);
                Console.Write(". ");
            } while (getKeyspaceArn != keyspaceArn);
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Waiting for keyspace to be created.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe keyspace {keyspaceName} is ready for use.");

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Create the table.
        // First define the schema.
        var allColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition>
        {
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "title", Type = "text" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "year", Type = "int" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "release_date", Type = "timestamp" },
            new ColumnDefinition { Name = "plot", Type = "text" },
        };

        var partitionKeys = new List<PartitionKey>
        {
```

```
            new PartitionKey { Name = "year", },
            new PartitionKey { Name = "title" },
        };

        var tableSchema = new SchemaDefinition
        {
            AllColumns = allColumns,
            PartitionKeys = partitionKeys,
        };

        var tableArn = await keyspacesWrapper.CreateTable(keyspaceName, tableSchema,
tableName);

        // Wait for the table to be active.
        try
        {
            var resp = new GetTableResponse();
            Console.Write("Waiting for the new table to be active. ");
            do
            {
                try
                {
                    resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName, tableName);
                    Console.Write(".");
                }
                catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
                {
                    Console.Write(".");
                }
            } while (resp.Status != TableStatus.ACTIVE);

            // Display the table's schema.
            Console.WriteLine($"\nTable {tableName} has been created in
{keyspaceName}");
            Console.WriteLine("Let's take a look at the schema.");
            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("All columns");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.AllColumns.ForEach(column =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{column.Name,-40}\t{column.Type,-20}");
            });

            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Cluster keys");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.ClusteringKeys.ForEach(clusterKey =>
            {
```

```
Console.WriteLine($"{clusterKey.Name,-40}\t{clusterKey.OrderBy,-20}");
            });

            uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Partition keys");
            resp.SchemaDefinition.PartitionKeys.ForEach(partitionKey =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{partitionKey.Name}");
            });

            uiMethods.PressEnter();
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Access Apache Cassandra using the Cassandra drive for C#.
        var cassandraWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<CassandraWrapper>();
        var movieFilePath = configuration["MovieFile"];

        Console.WriteLine("Let's add some movies to the table we created.");
        var inserted = await cassandraWrapper.InsertIntoMovieTable(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieFilePath);

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("Added the following movies to the table:");
        var rows = await cassandraWrapper.GetMovies(keyspaceName, tableName);
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("All Movies");

        foreach (var row in rows)
        {
            var title = row.GetValue<string>("title");
            var year = row.GetValue<int>("year");
            var plot = row.GetValue<string>("plot");
            var release_date = row.GetValue<DateTime>("release_date");
            Console.WriteLine($"{release_date}\t{title}\t{year}\n{plot}");
            Console.WriteLine(uiMethods.SepBar);
        }

        // Update the table schema
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Update table schema");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Now we will update the table to add a boolean field
called watched.");

        // First save the current time as a UTC Date so the original
        // table can be restored later.
        var timeChanged = DateTime.UtcNow;

        // Now update the schema.
        var resourceArn = await keyspacesWrapper.UpdateTable(keyspaceName,
tableName);
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("Now let's mark some of the movies as watched.");

        // Pick some files to mark as watched.
        var movieToWatch = rows[2].GetValue<string>("title");
        var watchedMovieYear = rows[2].GetValue<int>("year");
        var changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[6].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[6].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[9].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[9].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[10].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[10].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        movieToWatch = rows[13].GetValue<string>("title");
        watchedMovieYear = rows[13].GetValue<int>("year");
        changedRows = await cassandraWrapper.MarkMovieAsWatched(keyspaceName,
tableName, movieToWatch, watchedMovieYear);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Watched movies");
        Console.WriteLine("These movies have been marked as watched:");
        rows = await cassandraWrapper.GetWatchedMovies(keyspaceName, tableName);
        foreach (var row in rows)
```

```
        {
            var title = row.GetValue<string>("title");
            var year = row.GetValue<int>("year");
            Console.WriteLine($"{title,-40}\t{year,8}");
        }
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        Console.WriteLine("We can restore the table to its previous state but that
can take up to 20 minutes to complete.");
        string answer;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Do you want to restore the table? (y/n)");
            answer = Console.ReadLine();
        } while (answer.ToLower() != "y" && answer.ToLower() != "n");

        if (answer == "y")
        {
            var restoredTableName = $"{tableName}_restored";
            var restoredTableArn = await keyspacesWrapper.RestoreTable(
                keyspaceName,
                tableName,
                restoredTableName,
                timeChanged);
            // Loop and call GetTable until the table is gone. Once it has been
            // deleted completely, GetTable will raise a ResourceNotFoundException.
            bool wasRestored = false;

            try
            {
                do
                {
                    var resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName,
restoredTableName);
                    wasRestored = (resp.Status == TableStatus.ACTIVE);
                } while (!wasRestored);
            }
            catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
            {
                // If the restored table raised an error, it isn't
                // ready yet.
                Console.Write(".");
            }
        }
```

```
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources.");

        // Delete the table.
        success = await keyspacesWrapper.DeleteTable(keyspaceName, tableName);

        Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} successfully deleted from
 {keyspaceName}.");
        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for the table to be removed completely. ");

        // Loop and call GetTable until the table is gone. Once it has been
        // deleted completely, GetTable will raise a ResourceNotFoundException.
        bool wasDeleted = false;

        try
        {
            do
            {
                var resp = await keyspacesWrapper.GetTable(keyspaceName, tableName);
            } while (!wasDeleted);
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            wasDeleted = true;
            Console.WriteLine($"{ex.Message} indicates that the table has been
 deleted.");
        }

        // Delete the keyspace.
        success = await keyspacesWrapper.DeleteKeyspace(keyspaceName);
        Console.WriteLine("The keyspace has been deleted and the demo is now
 complete.");
    }
}
```

```
namespace KeyspacesActions;

/// <summary>
/// Performs Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) actions.
/// </summary>
public class KeyspacesWrapper
```

```
{
    private readonly IAmazonKeyspaces _amazonKeyspaces;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the KeyspaceWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonKeyspaces">An Amazon Keyspaces client object.</param>
    public KeyspacesWrapper(IAmazonKeyspaces amazonKeyspaces)
    {
        _amazonKeyspaces = amazonKeyspaces;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name for the new keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateKeyspaceAsync(
                new CreateKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace where the table will be created.</
param>
    /// <param name="schema">The schema for the new table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the new table.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTable(string keyspaceName, SchemaDefinition
 schema, string tableName)
    {
        var request = new CreateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SchemaDefinition = schema,
            TableName = tableName,
            PointInTimeRecovery = new PointInTimeRecovery { Status =
 PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED }
```

```
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an existing keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName"></param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteKeyspaceAsync(
            new DeleteKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteTableAsync(
            new DeleteTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetKeyspaceAsync(
            new GetKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
```

```
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <returns>The response containing data about the table.</returns>
    public async Task<GetTableResponse> GetTable(string keyspaceName, string
tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetTableAsync(
            new GetTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Lists all keyspaces for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ListKeyspaces()
    {
        var paginator = _amazonKeyspaces.Paginators.ListKeyspaces(new
ListKeyspacesRequest());

        Console.WriteLine("{0, -30}\t{1}", "Keyspace name", "Keyspace ARN");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', Console.WindowWidth));
        await foreach (var keyspace in paginator.Keyspaces)
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{keyspace.KeyspaceName,-30}\t{keyspace.ResourceArn}");
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Keyspaces tables in a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of TableSummary objects.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<TableSummary>> ListTables(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
 { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        response.Tables.ForEach(table =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{table.KeyspaceName}\t{table.TableName}\t{table.ResourceArn}");
        });

        return response.Tables;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Restores the specified table to the specified point in time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to restore.</param>
    /// <param name="timestamp">The time to which the table will be restored.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the restored table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RestoreTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName,
 string restoredTableName, DateTime timestamp)
    {
        var request = new RestoreTableRequest
        {
            RestoreTimestamp = timestamp,
            SourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SourceTableName = tableName,
            TargetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TargetTableName = restoredTableName
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.RestoreTableAsync(request);
        return response.RestoredTableARN;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Updates the movie table to add a boolean column named watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to change.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the updated table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> UpdateTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var newColumn = new ColumnDefinition { Name = "watched", Type = "boolean" };
        var request = new UpdateTableRequest
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TableName = tableName,
            AddColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition> { newColumn }
        };
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.UpdateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }

}
```

```
using System.Net;
using Cassandra;

namespace KeyspacesScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Class to perform CRUD methods on an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra)
 database.
///
/// NOTE: This sample uses a plain text authenticator for example purposes only.
/// Recommended best practice is to use a SigV4 authentication plugin, if available.
/// </summary>
public class CassandraWrapper
{
    private readonly IConfiguration _configuration;
    private readonly string _localPathToFile;
    private const string _certLocation = "https://certs.secureserver.net/repository/
sf-class2-root.crt";
    private const string _certFileName = "sf-class2-root.crt";
    private readonly X509Certificate2Collection _certCollection;
    private X509Certificate2 _amazoncert;
    private Cluster _cluster;

    // User name and password for the service.
    private string _userName = null!;
```

```
    private string _pwd = null!;

    public CassandraWrapper()
    {
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        _localPathToFile = Path.GetTempPath();

        // Get the Starfield digital certificate and save it locally.
        var client = new WebClient();
        client.DownloadFile(_certLocation, $"{_localPathToFile}/{_certFileName}");

        //var httpClient = new HttpClient();
        //var httpResult = httpClient.Get(fileUrl);
        //using var resultStream = await httpResult.Content.ReadAsStreamAsync();
        //using var fileStream = File.Create(pathToSave);
        //resultStream.CopyTo(fileStream);

        _certCollection = new X509Certificate2Collection();
        _amazoncert = new X509Certificate2($"{_localPathToFile}/{_certFileName}");

        // Get the user name and password stored in the configuration file.
        _userName = _configuration["UserName"]!;
        _pwd = _configuration["Password"]!;

        // For a list of Service Endpoints for Amazon Keyspaces, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/
programmatic.endpoints.html
        var awsEndpoint = _configuration["ServiceEndpoint"];

        _cluster = Cluster.Builder()
            .AddContactPoints(awsEndpoint)
            .WithPort(9142)
            .WithAuthProvider(new PlainTextAuthProvider(_userName, _pwd))
            .WithSSL(new SSLOptions().SetCertificateCollection(_certCollection))
            .WithQueryOptions(
                new QueryOptions()
                    .SetConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LocalQuorum)
                    .SetSerialConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LocalSerial))
```

```
            .Build();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
    /// added to the Apache Cassandra table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">The full path to the JSON file.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of movie objects.</returns>
    public List<Movie> ImportMoviesFromJson(string movieFileName, int numToImport =
0)
    {
        if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
        {
            return null!;
        }

        using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
        string json = sr.ReadToEnd();

        var allMovies = JsonConvert.DeserializeObject<List<Movie>>(json);

        // If numToImport = 0, return all movies in the collection.
        if (numToImport == 0)
        {
            // Now return the entire list of movies.
            return allMovies;
        }
        else
        {
            // Now return the first numToImport entries.
            return allMovies.GetRange(0, numToImport);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Insert movies into the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="movieTableName">The Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <param name="movieFilePath">The path to the resource file containing
    /// movie data to insert into the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> InsertIntoMovieTable(string keyspaceName, string
movieTableName, string movieFilePath, int numToImport = 20)
    {
        // Get some movie data from the movies.json file
        var movies = ImportMoviesFromJson(movieFilePath, numToImport);

        var session = _cluster.Connect(keyspaceName);

        string insertCql;

        RowSet rs;

        // Now we insert the numToImport movies into the table.
        foreach (var movie in movies)
        {
            // Escape single quote characters in the plot.
            insertCql = $"INSERT INTO {keyspaceName}.{movieTableName}
(title, year, release_date, plot) values($${movie.Title}$$, {movie.Year},
'{movie.Info.Release_Date.ToString("yyyy-MM-dd")}', $${movie.Info.Plot}$$)";
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement(insertCql));
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets all of the movies in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of row objects containing movie data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> GetMovies(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        RowSet rs;
        try
        {
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement($"SELECT * FROM
{keyspaceName}.{tableName}"));

            // Extract the row data from the returned RowSet.
            var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
            return rows;
        }
```

```
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return null!;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Mark a movie in the movie table as watched.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <param name="title">The title of the movie to mark as watched.</param>
    /// <param name="year">The year the movie was released.</param>
    /// <returns>A set of rows containing the changed data.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> MarkMovieAsWatched(string keyspaceName, string
 tableName, string title, int year)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        string updateCql = $"UPDATE {keyspaceName}.{tableName} SET watched=true
 WHERE title = $${title}$$ AND year = {year};";
        var rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement(updateCql));
        var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
        return rows;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the movies in the movies table where watched is true.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of row objects containing information about movies
    /// where watched is true.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Row>> GetWatchedMovies(string keyspaceName, string
 tableName)
    {
        var session = _cluster.Connect();
        RowSet rs;
        try
        {
            rs = await session.ExecuteAsync(new SimpleStatement($"SELECT title,
 year, plot FROM {keyspaceName}.{tableName} WHERE watched = true ALLOW FILTERING"));

            // Extract the row data from the returned RowSet.
```

```
            var rows = rs.GetRows().ToList();
            return rows;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return null!;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Actions

`CreateKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyspace`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name for the new keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateKeyspaceAsync(
                new CreateKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace where the table will be created.</
param>
    /// <param name="schema">The schema for the new table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the new table.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTable(string keyspaceName, SchemaDefinition
 schema, string tableName)
    {
        var request = new CreateTableRequest
```

```
        {
            KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SchemaDefinition = schema,
            TableName = tableName,
            PointInTimeRecovery = new PointInTimeRecovery { Status =
PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED }
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.CreateTableAsync(request);
        return response.ResourceArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyspace`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an existing keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName"></param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteKeyspaceAsync(
            new DeleteKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon Keyspaces table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.DeleteTableAsync(
            new DeleteTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `GetKeyspace`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get data about a keyspace.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the keyspace.</returns>
public async Task<string> GetKeyspace(string keyspaceName)
{
    var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetKeyspaceAsync(
        new GetKeyspaceRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
    return response.ResourceArn;
}
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTable`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get information about an Amazon Keyspaces table.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the Amazon Keyspaces table.</param>
    /// <returns>The response containing data about the table.</returns>
    public async Task<GetTableResponse> GetTable(string keyspaceName, string
tableName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.GetTableAsync(
            new GetTableRequest { KeyspaceName = keyspaceName, TableName =
tableName });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListKeyspaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyspaces`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists all keyspaces for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task ListKeyspaces()
    {
        var paginator = _amazonKeyspaces.Paginators.ListKeyspaces(new
ListKeyspacesRequest());

        Console.WriteLine("{0, -30}\t{1}", "Keyspace name", "Keyspace ARN");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', Console.WindowWidth));
        await foreach (var keyspace in paginator.Keyspaces)
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{keyspace.KeyspaceName,-30}\t{keyspace.ResourceArn}");
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Keyspaces tables in a keyspace.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The name of the keyspace.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of TableSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TableSummary>> ListTables(string keyspaceName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.ListTablesAsync(new ListTablesRequest
{ KeyspaceName = keyspaceName });
        response.Tables.ForEach(table =>
        {

Console.WriteLine($"{table.KeyspaceName}\t{table.TableName}\t{table.ResourceArn}");
        });

        return response.Tables;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RestoreTable`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Restores the specified table to the specified point in time.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to restore.</param>
    /// <param name="timestamp">The time to which the table will be restored.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the restored table.</returns>
    public async Task<string> RestoreTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName,
 string restoredTableName, DateTime timestamp)
    {
        var request = new RestoreTableRequest
        {
            RestoreTimestamp = timestamp,
            SourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            SourceTableName = tableName,
            TargetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
            TargetTableName = restoredTableName
        };

        var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.RestoreTableAsync(request);
        return response.RestoredTableARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTable`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Updates the movie table to add a boolean column named watched.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="keyspaceName">The keyspace containing the table.</param>
/// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to change.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the updated table.</returns>
public async Task<string> UpdateTable(string keyspaceName, string tableName)
{
    var newColumn = new ColumnDefinition { Name = "watched", Type = "boolean" };
    var request = new UpdateTableRequest
    {
        KeyspaceName = keyspaceName,
        TableName = tableName,
        AddColumns = new List<ColumnDefinition> { newColumn }
    };
    var response = await _amazonKeyspaces.UpdateTableAsync(request);
    return response.ResourceArn;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`AddTagsToStream`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to apply key/value pairs to an Amazon Kinesis
/// stream.
/// </summary>
public class TagStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

        string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";
```

```
            var tags = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "Project", "Sample Kinesis Project" },
                { "Application", "Sample Kinesis App" },
            };

            var success = await ApplyTagsToStreamAsync(client, streamName, tags);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Taggs successfully added to {streamName}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Tags were not added to the stream.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Applies the set of tags to the named Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Kinesis client.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the Kinesis stream to which
        /// the tags will be attached.</param>
        /// <param name="tags">A sictionary containing key/value pairs which
        /// will be used to create the Kinesis tags.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value which represents the success or failure
        /// of AddTagsToStreamAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> ApplyTagsToStreamAsync(
            IAmazonKinesis client,
            string streamName,
            Dictionary<string, string> tags)
        {
            var request = new AddTagsToStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                Tags = tags,
            };

            var response = await client.AddTagsToStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to create a new Amazon Kinesis stream.
/// </summary>
public class CreateStream
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

        string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";
        int shardCount = 1;

        var success = await CreateNewStreamAsync(client, streamName,
shardCount);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The stream, {streamName} successfully
created.");
        }
    }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name for the new stream.</param>
        /// <param name="shardCount">The number of shards the new stream will
        /// use. The throughput of the stream is a function of the number of
        /// shards; more shards are required for greater provisioned
        /// throughput.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating whether the stream was created.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateNewStreamAsync(IAmazonKinesis client,
 string streamName, int shardCount)
        {
            var request = new CreateStreamRequest
            {
                StreamName = streamName,
                ShardCount = shardCount,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to delete an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteStream
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";

            var success = await DeleteStreamAsync(client, streamName);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Stream, {streamName} successfully deleted.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Stream not deleted.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the string to delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteStreamAsync(IAmazonKinesis client,
 string streamName)
        {
            // If EnforceConsumerDeletion is true, any consumers
            // of this stream will also be deleted. If it is set
            // to false and this stream has any consumers, the
            // call will fail with a ResourceInUseException.
            var request = new DeleteStreamRequest
            {
```

```
                StreamName = streamName,
                EnforceConsumerDeletion = true,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteStreamAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeregisterStreamConsumer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeregisterStreamConsumer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to deregister a consumer from an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeregisterConsumer
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";
```

```
            string consumerName = "CONSUMER_NAME";
            string consumerARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream/consumer/CONSUMER_NAME:000000000000";

            var success = await DeregisterConsumerAsync(client, streamARN,
 consumerARN, consumerName);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumerName} successfully deregistered.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumerName} was not successfully
 deregistered.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deregisters a consumer from a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of a Kinesis stream.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerARN">The ARN of the consumer.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerName">The name of the consumer.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeregisterConsumerAsync(
            IAmazonKinesis client,
            string streamARN,
            string consumerARN,
            string consumerName)
        {
            var request = new DeregisterStreamConsumerRequest
            {
                StreamARN = streamARN,
                ConsumerARN = consumerARN,
                ConsumerName = consumerName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeregisterStreamConsumerAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeregisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListStreamConsumers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreamConsumers`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// List the consumers of an Amazon Kinesis stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListConsumers
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();

            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";
            int maxResults = 10;

            var consumers = await ListConsumersAsync(client, streamARN, maxResults);

            if (consumers.Count > 0)
            {
```

```
                consumers
                    .ForEach(c => Console.WriteLine($"Name: {c.ConsumerName} ARN:
 {c.ConsumerARN}"));
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No consumers found.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve a list of the consumers for a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of the stream for which we want to
        /// retrieve a list of clients.</param>
        /// <param name="maxResults">The maximum number of results to return.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of Consumer objects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<Consumer>> ListConsumersAsync(IAmazonKinesis
 client, string streamARN, int maxResults)
        {
            var request = new ListStreamConsumersRequest
            {
                StreamARN = streamARN,
                MaxResults = maxResults,
            };

            var response = await client.ListStreamConsumersAsync(request);

            return response.Consumers;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStreamConsumers in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListStreams`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreams`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Kinesis;
using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieves and displays a list of existing Amazon Kinesis streams.
/// </summary>
public class ListStreams
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
        var response = await client.ListStreamsAsync(new ListStreamsRequest());

        List<string> streamNames = response.StreamNames;

        if (streamNames.Count > 0)
        {
            streamNames
                .ForEach(s => Console.WriteLine($"Stream name: {s}"));
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No streams were found.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListTagsForStream

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForStream`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to list the tags that have been attached to an Amazon Kinesis
    /// stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListTags
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string streamName = "AmazonKinesisStream";

            await ListTagsAsync(client, streamName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List the tags attached to a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="streamName">The name of the Kinesis stream for which you
        /// wish to display tags.</param>
        public static async Task ListTagsAsync(IAmazonKinesis client, string
streamName)
        {
            var request = new ListTagsForStreamRequest
            {
```

```
                StreamName = streamName,
                Limit = 10,
            };

            var response = await client.ListTagsForStreamAsync(request);
            DisplayTags(response.Tags);

            while (response.HasMoreTags)
            {
                request.ExclusiveStartTagKey = response.Tags[response.Tags.Count -
1].Key;
                response = await client.ListTagsForStreamAsync(request);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the items in a list of Kinesis tags.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="tags">A list of the Tag objects to be displayed.</param>
        public static void DisplayTags(List<Tag> tags)
        {
            tags
                .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key} Value: {t.Value}"));
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RegisterStreamConsumer`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterStreamConsumer`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Kinesis;
    using Amazon.Kinesis.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to register a consumer to an Amazon Kinesis
    /// stream.
    /// </summary>
    public class RegisterConsumer
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonKinesis client = new AmazonKinesisClient();
            string consumerName = "NEW_CONSUMER_NAME";
            string streamARN = "arn:aws:kinesis:us-east-2:000000000000:stream/
AmazonKinesisStream";

            var consumer = await RegisterConsumerAsync(client, consumerName,
 streamARN);

            if (consumer is not null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{consumer.ConsumerName}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Registers the consumer to a Kinesis stream.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Kinesis client object.</param>
        /// <param name="consumerName">A string representing the consumer.</param>
        /// <param name="streamARN">The ARN of the stream.</param>
        /// <returns>A Consumer object that contains information about the
 consumer.</returns>
        public static async Task<Consumer> RegisterConsumerAsync(IAmazonKinesis
 client, string consumerName, string streamARN)
        {
            var request = new RegisterStreamConsumerRequest
            {
                ConsumerName = consumerName,
                StreamARN = streamARN,
            };
```

```
            var response = await client.RegisterStreamConsumerAsync(request);
            return response.Consumer;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegrationSampleCode;
```

```
public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return;
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                throw;
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegration;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task<StreamsEventResponse> FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
```

```
            return new StreamsEventResponse();
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
{record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
failed item onwards. */
                return new StreamsEventResponse
                {
                    BatchItemFailures = new
List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>
                    {
                        new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure { ItemIdentifier =
record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber }
                    }
                };
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
records.");
        return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
```

```
}

public class StreamsEventResponse
{
    [JsonPropertyName("batchItemFailures")]
    public IList<BatchItemFailure> BatchItemFailures { get; set; }
    public class BatchItemFailure
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("itemIdentifier")]
        public string ItemIdentifier { get; set; }
    }
}
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS KMS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAlias`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates an alias for an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// </summary>
public class CreateAlias
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The alias name must start with alias/ and can be
        // up to 256 alphanumeric characters long.
        var aliasName = "alias/ExampleAlias";

        // The value supplied as the TargetKeyId can be either
        // the key ID or key Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
        // AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

        var request = new CreateAliasRequest
        {
            AliasName = aliasName,
            TargetKeyId = keyId,
        };

        var response = await client.CreateAliasAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Alias, {aliasName}, successfully created.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not create alias.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGrant`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            // The identity that is given permission to perform the operations
            // specified in the grant.
            var grantee = "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:role/ExampleRole";

            // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to which the grant applies. You
            // can use the key ID or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS key.
            var keyId = "7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";

            var request = new CreateGrantRequest
            {
                GranteePrincipal = grantee,
                KeyId = keyId,

                // A list of operations that the grant allows.
                Operations = new List<string>
                {
                    "Encrypt",
                    "Decrypt",
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateGrantAsync(request);
```

```
            string grantId = response.GrantId; // The unique identifier of the
grant.
            string grantToken = response.GrantToken; // The grant token.

            Console.WriteLine($"Id: {grantId}, Token: {grantToken}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to create a new AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS)
/// key.
/// </summary>
public class CreateKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Note that if you need to create a Key in an AWS Region
        // other than the Region defined for the default user, you need to
        // pass the Region to the client constructor.
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
```

```
            // The call to CreateKeyAsync will create a symmetrical AWS KMS
            // key. For more information about symmetrical and asymmetrical
            // keys, see:
            //
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/kms/latest/developerguide/symm-asymm-
choose.html
            var response = await client.CreateKeyAsync(new CreateKeyRequest());

            // The KeyMetadata object contains information about the new AWS KMS
 key.
            KeyMetadata keyMetadata = response.KeyMetadata;

            if (keyMetadata is not null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"KMS Key: {keyMetadata.KeyId} was successfully
 created.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create KMS Key.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
    using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
    /// You can supply either the key Id or the key Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
    /// to the DescribeKeyRequest KeyId property.
    /// </summary>
    public class DescribeKey
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var keyId = "7c9eccc2-38cb-4c4f-9db3-766ee8dd3ad4";
            var request = new DescribeKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            };

            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

            var response = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(request);
            var metadata = response.KeyMetadata;

            Console.WriteLine($"{metadata.KeyId} created on:
{metadata.CreationDate}");
            Console.WriteLine($"State: {metadata.KeyState}");
            Console.WriteLine($"{metadata.Description}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Disable an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key and then retrieve
/// the key's status to show that it has been disabled.
/// </summary>
public class DisableKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to disable. You can use the
        // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";

        var request = new DisableKeyRequest
        {
            KeyId = keyId,
        };

        var response = await client.DisableKeyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            // Retrieve information about the key to show that it has now
            // been disabled.
            var describeResponse = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(new
DescribeKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
```

```
                });
                Console.WriteLine($"{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId} - state:
{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyState}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`EnableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKey`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Enable an AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) key.
/// </summary>
public class EnableKey
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();

        // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to enable. You can use the
        // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
        var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";
```

```
            var request = new EnableKeyRequest
            {
                KeyId = keyId,
            };

            var response = await client.EnableKeyAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                // Retrieve information about the key to show that it has now
                // been enabled.
                var describeResponse = await client.DescribeKeyAsync(new
DescribeKeyRequest
                {
                    KeyId = keyId,
                });
                Console.WriteLine($"{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyId} - state:
{describeResponse.KeyMetadata.KeyState}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAliases`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) aliases that have been defined
for
    /// the keys in the same AWS Region as the default user. If you want to list
    /// the aliases in a different Region, pass the Region to the client
    /// constructor.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListAliases
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
            var request = new ListAliasesRequest();
            var response = new ListAliasesResponse();

            do
            {
                response = await client.ListAliasesAsync(request);

                response.Aliases.ForEach(alias =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Created: {alias.CreationDate} Last Update:
{alias.LastUpdatedDate} Name: {alias.AliasName}");
                });

                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListGrants`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGrants`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
   using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// List the AWS Key Management Service (AWS KMS) grants that are associated
with
   /// a specific key.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListGrants
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           // The identifier of the AWS KMS key to disable. You can use the
           // key Id or the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS KMS key.
           var keyId = "1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab";
           var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
           var request = new ListGrantsRequest
           {
               KeyId = keyId,
           };

           var response = new ListGrantsResponse();

           do
           {
               response = await client.ListGrantsAsync(request);

               response.Grants.ForEach(grant =>
               {
                   Console.WriteLine($"{grant.GrantId}");
               });
```

```
                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService;
using Amazon.KeyManagementService.Model;

/// <summary>
/// List the AWS Key Managements Service (AWS KMS) keys for the AWS Region
/// of the default user. To list keys in another AWS Region, supply the Region
/// as a parameter to the client constructor.
/// </summary>
public class ListKeys
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonKeyManagementServiceClient();
        var request = new ListKeysRequest();
        var response = new ListKeysResponse();

        do
        {
```

```
                response = await client.ListKeysAsync(request);

                response.Keys.ForEach(key =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"ID: {key.KeyId}, {key.KeyArn}");
                });

                // Set the Marker property when response.Truncated is true
                // in order to get the next keys.
                request.Marker = response.NextMarker;
            }
            while (response.Truncated);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;

public class HelloLambda
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var lambdaClient = new AmazonLambdaClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello AWS Lambda");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get started with AWS Lambda by listing your
 existing Lambda functions:");

        var response = await lambdaClient.ListFunctionsAsync();
        response.Functions.ForEach(function =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{function.FunctionName}\t{function.Description}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

- AWS community contributions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create methods that perform Lambda actions.

```
namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.Lambda;
using Amazon.Lambda.Model;

/// <summary>
/// A class that implements AWS Lambda methods.
/// </summary>
public class LambdaWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonLambda _lambdaService;

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Constructor for the LambdaWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="lambdaService">An initialized Lambda service client.</param>
    public LambdaWrapper(IAmazonLambda lambdaService)
    {
        _lambdaService = lambdaService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Bucket">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
    /// bucket where the zip file containing the code is located.</param>
    /// <param name="s3Key">The Amazon S3 key of the zip file.</param>
    /// <param name="role">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role with the
    /// appropriate Lambda permissions.</param>
    /// <param name="handler">The name of the handler function.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created
    /// Lambda function.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string s3Bucket,
        string s3Key,
        string role,
        string handler)
    {
        // Defines the location for the function code.
        // S3Bucket - The S3 bucket where the file containing
        //            the source code is stored.
        // S3Key    - The name of the file containing the code.
        var functionCode = new FunctionCode
        {
            S3Bucket = s3Bucket,
            S3Key = s3Key,
        };

        var createFunctionRequest = new CreateFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Description = "Created by the Lambda .NET API",
            Code = functionCode,
            Handler = handler,
            Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
```

```
            Role = role,
        };

        var reponse = await
_lambdaService.CreateFunctionAsync(createFunctionRequest);
        return reponse.FunctionArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.DeleteFunctionAsync(request);

        // A return value of NoContent means that the request was processed.
        // In this case, the function was deleted, and the return value
        // is intentionally blank.
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function for
    /// which to retrieve information.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<FunctionConfiguration> GetFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var functionRequest = new GetFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };
```

```
        var response = await _lambdaService.GetFunctionAsync(functionRequest);
        return response.Configuration;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Invoke a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// invoke.</param
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameter values that will be passed to the
function.</param>
    /// <returns>A System Threading Task.</returns>
    public async Task<string> InvokeFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string parameters)
    {
        var payload = parameters;
        var request = new InvokeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Payload = payload,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.InvokeAsync(request);
        MemoryStream stream = response.Payload;
        string returnValue = System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(stream.ToArray());
        return returnValue;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of Lambda functions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of FunctionConfiguration objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<FunctionConfiguration>> ListFunctionsAsync()
    {
        var functionList = new List<FunctionConfiguration>();

        var functionPaginator =
            _lambdaService.Paginators.ListFunctions(new ListFunctionsRequest());
        await foreach (var function in functionPaginator.Functions)
        {
            functionList.Add(function);
```

```
        }

        return functionList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update an existing Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to update.</
param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket where the zip file containing
    /// the Lambda function code is stored.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The key name of the source code file.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
        string functionName,
        string bucketName,
        string key)
    {
        var functionCodeRequest = new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Publish = true,
            S3Bucket = bucketName,
            S3Key = key,
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionCodeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"The Function was last modified at
 {response.LastModified}.");
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the code of a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function to update.</param>
    /// <param name="functionHandler">The code that performs the function's
 actions.</param>
    /// <param name="environmentVariables">A dictionary of environment variables.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
        string functionName,
        string functionHandler,
        Dictionary<string, string> environmentVariables)
    {
        var request = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest
        {
            Handler = functionHandler,
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Environment = new Amazon.Lambda.Model.Environment { Variables =
 environmentVariables },
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine(response.LastModified);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


}
```

Create a function that runs the scenario.

```
global using System.Threading.Tasks;
global using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
global using Amazon.Lambda;
global using LambdaActions;
global using LambdaScenarioCommon;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;


using Amazon.Lambda.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
```

```
namespace LambdaBasics;

public class LambdaBasics
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonLambda>()
            .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
            .AddTransient<LambdaWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<LambdaRoleWrapper>()
            .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
            true) // Optionally load local settings.
        .Build();


        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<LambdaBasics>();

        var lambdaWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<LambdaWrapper>();
        var lambdaRoleWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<LambdaRoleWrapper>();
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        string functionName = configuration["FunctionName"]!;
        string roleName = configuration["RoleName"]!;
        string policyDocument = "{" +
            " \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
```

```
            " \"Statement\": [ " +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Principal\": {" +
            "            \"Service\": \"lambda.amazonaws.com\" " +
            "    }," +
            "        \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\" " +
            "    }" +
            "]" +
        "}";

        var incrementHandler = configuration["IncrementHandler"];
        var calculatorHandler = configuration["CalculatorHandler"];
        var bucketName = configuration["BucketName"];
        var incrementKey = configuration["IncrementKey"];
        var calculatorKey = configuration["CalculatorKey"];
        var policyArn = configuration["PolicyArn"];

        uiWrapper.DisplayLambdaBasicsOverview();

        // Create the policy to use with the AWS Lambda functions and then attach
the
        // policy to a new role.
        var roleArn = await lambdaRoleWrapper.CreateLambdaRoleAsync(roleName,
policyDocument);

        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for role to become active.");
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Wait until the role is active before trying to use
it.");

        // Attach the appropriate AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role
policy to the new role.
        var success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.AttachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(policyArn,
roleName);
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(10, "Allow time for the IAM policy to be attached to the
role.");

        // Create the Lambda function using a zip file stored in an Amazon Simple
Storage Service
        // (Amazon S3) bucket.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Create Lambda Function");
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the AWS Lambda function: {functionName}.");
        var lambdaArn = await lambdaWrapper.CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
            functionName,
```

```
            bucketName,
            incrementKey,
            roleArn,
            incrementHandler);

        Console.WriteLine("Waiting for the new function to be available.");
        Console.WriteLine($"The AWS Lambda ARN is {lambdaArn}");

        // Get the Lambda function.
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting the {functionName} AWS Lambda function.");
        FunctionConfiguration config;
        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.State != State.Active);

        Console.WriteLine($"\nThe function, {functionName} has been created.");
        Console.WriteLine($"The runtime of this Lambda function is
{config.Runtime}.");

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // List the Lambda functions.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Listing all Lambda functions.");
        var functions = await lambdaWrapper.ListFunctionsAsync();
        DisplayFunctionList(functions);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Invoke increment function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now that it has been created, invoke the Lambda increment
function.");
        string? value;
        do
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a value to increment: ");
            value = Console.ReadLine();
        }
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(value));

        string functionParameters = "{" +
            "\"action\": \"increment\", " +
            "\"x\": \"" + value + "\"" +
        "}";
```

```
        var answer = await lambdaWrapper.InvokeFunctionAsync(functionName,
functionParameters);
        Console.WriteLine($"{value} + 1 = {answer}.");

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Update function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now update the Lambda function code.");
        await lambdaWrapper.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionName, bucketName,
calculatorKey);

        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.LastUpdateStatus == LastUpdateStatus.InProgress);

        await lambdaWrapper.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
            functionName,
            calculatorHandler,
            new Dictionary<string, string> { { "LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG" } });

        do
        {
            config = await lambdaWrapper.GetFunctionAsync(functionName);
            Console.Write(".");
        }
        while (config.LastUpdateStatus == LastUpdateStatus.InProgress);

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Call updated function");
        Console.WriteLine("Now call the updated function...");

        bool done = false;

        do
        {
            string? opSelected;

            Console.WriteLine("Select the operation to perform:");
            Console.WriteLine("\t1. add");
            Console.WriteLine("\t2. subtract");
            Console.WriteLine("\t3. multiply");
            Console.WriteLine("\t4. divide");
            Console.WriteLine("\tOr enter \"q\" to quit.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Enter the number (1, 2, 3, 4, or q) of the operation
you want to perform: ");
            do
            {
                Console.Write("Your choice? ");
                opSelected = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            while (opSelected == string.Empty);

            var operation = (opSelected) switch
            {
                "1" => "add",
                "2" => "subtract",
                "3" => "multiply",
                "4" => "divide",
                "q" => "quit",
                _ => "add",
            };

            if (operation == "quit")
            {
                done = true;
            }
            else
            {
                // Get two numbers and an action from the user.
                value = string.Empty;
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Enter the first value: ");
                    value = Console.ReadLine();
                }
                while (value == string.Empty);

                string? value2;
                do
                {
                    Console.Write("Enter a second value: ");
                    value2 = Console.ReadLine();
                }
                while (value2 == string.Empty);

                functionParameters = "{" +
                    "\"action\": \"" + operation + "\", " +
```

```
                    "\"x\": \"" + value + "\"," +
                    "\"y\": \"" + value2 + "\"" +
                "}";

                answer = await lambdaWrapper.InvokeFunctionAsync(functionName,
functionParameters);
                Console.WriteLine($"The answer when we {operation} the two numbers
is: {answer}.");
            }

            uiWrapper.PressEnter();
        } while (!done);

        // Delete the function created earlier.

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        // Detach the IAM policy from the IAM role.
        Console.WriteLine("First detach the IAM policy from the role.");
        success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.DetachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(policyArn,
roleName);
        uiWrapper.WaitABit(15, "Let's wait for the policy to be fully detached from
the role.");

        Console.WriteLine("Delete the AWS Lambda function.");
        success = await lambdaWrapper.DeleteFunctionAsync(functionName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The {functionName} function was deleted.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not remove the function {functionName}");
        }

        // Now delete the IAM role created for use with the functions
        // created by the application.
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the role that we created.");
        success = await lambdaRoleWrapper.DeleteLambdaRoleAsync(roleName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The role has been successfully removed.");
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Couldn't delete the role.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The Lambda Scenario is now complete.");
        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        // Displays a formatted list of existing functions returned by the
        // LambdaMethods.ListFunctions.
        void DisplayFunctionList(List<FunctionConfiguration> functions)
        {
            functions.ForEach(functionConfig =>
            {

 Console.WriteLine($"{functionConfig.FunctionName}\t{functionConfig.Description}");
            });
        }
    }
}


namespace LambdaActions;

using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;

public class LambdaRoleWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonIdentityManagementService _lambdaRoleService;

    public LambdaRoleWrapper(IAmazonIdentityManagementService lambdaRoleService)
    {
        _lambdaRoleService = lambdaRoleService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Attach an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role policy to the
    /// IAM role to be assumed by the AWS Lambda functions created for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="policyArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM policy.</
param>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to attach the IAM policy
 to.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> AttachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.AttachRolePolicyAsync(new
 AttachRolePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn, RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the IAM role to create.</param>
    /// <param name="policyDocument">The policy document for the new IAM role.</
param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the ARN for newly created role.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLambdaRoleAsync(string roleName, string
 policyDocument)
    {
        var request = new CreateRoleRequest
        {
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument = policyDocument,
            RoleName = roleName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
        return response.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an IAM role.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the role to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteLambdaRoleAsync(string roleName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteRoleRequest
        {
            RoleName = roleName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.DeleteRoleAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DetachLambdaRolePolicyAsync(string policyArn, string
 roleName)
    {
        var response = await _lambdaRoleService.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest { PolicyArn = policyArn, RoleName = roleName });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}


namespace LambdaScenarioCommon;
public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the AWS Lambda Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayLambdaBasicsOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();

        DisplayTitle("Welcome to AWS Lambda Basics");
        Console.WriteLine("This example application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role that will be assumed by the functions we create.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Attaches an IAM role policy that has Lambda
 permissions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Creates a Lambda function that increments the value
 passed to it.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Calls the increment function and passes a value.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Updates the code so that the function is a simple
 calculator.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Calls the calculator function with the values
 entered.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Deletes the Lambda function.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Detaches the IAM role policy.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. Deletes the IAM role.");
        PressEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
```

```
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaIncrement;

public class Function
{

    /// <summary>
    /// A simple function increments the integer parameter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">A JSON string containing an action, which must be
    /// "increment" and a string representing the value to increment.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The context object passed by Lambda containing
    /// information about invocation, function, and execution environment.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the incremented value of the parameter.</
returns>
    public int FunctionHandler(Dictionary<string, string> input, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        if (input["action"] == "increment")
        {
            int inputValue = Convert.ToInt32(input["x"]);
            return inputValue + 1;
        }
        else
        {
            return 0;
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaCalculator;

public class Function
{

    /// <summary>
    /// A simple function that takes two number in string format and performs
    /// the requested arithmetic function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="input">JSON data containing an action, and x and y values.
    /// Valid actions include: add, subtract, multiply, and divide.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The context object passed by Lambda containing
    /// information about invocation, function, and execution environment.</param>
    /// <returns>A string representing the results of the calculation.</returns>
    public int FunctionHandler(Dictionary<string, string> input, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        var action = input["action"];
        int x = Convert.ToInt32(input["x"]);
        int y = Convert.ToInt32(input["y"]);
        int result;
        switch (action)
        {
            case "add":
                result = x + y;
                break;
            case "subtract":
                result = x - y;
                break;
```

```
            case "multiply":
                result = x * y;
                break;
            case "divide":
                if (y == 0)
                {
                    Console.Error.WriteLine("Divide by zero error.");
                    result = 0;
                }
                else
                    result = x / y;
                break;
            default:
                Console.Error.WriteLine($"{action} is not a valid operation.");
                result = 0;
                break;
        }
        return result;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Creates a new Lambda function.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="functionName">The name of the function.</param>
/// <param name="s3Bucket">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket where the zip file containing the code is located.</param>
/// <param name="s3Key">The Amazon S3 key of the zip file.</param>
/// <param name="role">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role with the
/// appropriate Lambda permissions.</param>
/// <param name="handler">The name of the handler function.</param>
/// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created
/// Lambda function.</returns>
public async Task<string> CreateLambdaFunctionAsync(
    string functionName,
    string s3Bucket,
    string s3Key,
    string role,
    string handler)
{
    // Defines the location for the function code.
    // S3Bucket - The S3 bucket where the file containing
    //            the source code is stored.
    // S3Key    - The name of the file containing the code.
    var functionCode = new FunctionCode
    {
        S3Bucket = s3Bucket,
        S3Key = s3Key,
    };

    var createFunctionRequest = new CreateFunctionRequest
    {
        FunctionName = functionName,
        Description = "Created by the Lambda .NET API",
        Code = functionCode,
```

```
            Handler = handler,
            Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
            Role = role,
        };

        var reponse = await
_lambdaService.CreateFunctionAsync(createFunctionRequest);
        return reponse.FunctionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an AWS Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.DeleteFunctionAsync(request);

        // A return value of NoContent means that the request was processed.
```

```
        // In this case, the function was deleted, and the return value
        // is intentionally blank.
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function for
    /// which to retrieve information.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<FunctionConfiguration> GetFunctionAsync(string functionName)
    {
        var functionRequest = new GetFunctionRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.GetFunctionAsync(functionRequest);
        return response.Configuration;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Invoke

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Invoke a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to
    /// invoke.</param
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameter values that will be passed to the
function.</param>
    /// <returns>A System Threading Task.</returns>
    public async Task<string> InvokeFunctionAsync(
        string functionName,
        string parameters)
    {
        var payload = parameters;
        var request = new InvokeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Payload = payload,
        };

        var response = await _lambdaService.InvokeAsync(request);
        MemoryStream stream = response.Payload;
        string returnValue = System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(stream.ToArray());
        return returnValue;
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Get a list of Lambda functions.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>A list of FunctionConfiguration objects.</returns>
public async Task<List<FunctionConfiguration>> ListFunctionsAsync()
{
    var functionList = new List<FunctionConfiguration>();

    var functionPaginator =
        _lambdaService.Paginators.ListFunctions(new ListFunctionsRequest());
    await foreach (var function in functionPaginator.Functions)
    {
        functionList.Add(function);
    }

    return functionList;
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update an existing Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the Lambda function to update.</
param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket where the zip file containing
    /// the Lambda function code is stored.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The key name of the source code file.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
        string functionName,
        string bucketName,
        string key)
    {
        var functionCodeRequest = new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest
        {
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Publish = true,
            S3Bucket = bucketName,
            S3Key = key,
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(functionCodeRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"The Function was last modified at
 {response.LastModified}.");
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

UpdateFunctionConfiguration

The following code example shows how to use UpdateFunctionConfiguration.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the code of a Lambda function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="functionName">The name of the function to update.</param>
    /// <param name="functionHandler">The code that performs the function's
 actions.</param>
    /// <param name="environmentVariables">A dictionary of environment variables.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(
        string functionName,
        string functionHandler,
        Dictionary<string, string> environmentVariables)
    {
        var request = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest
        {
            Handler = functionHandler,
            FunctionName = functionName,
            Environment = new Amazon.Lambda.Model.Environment { Variables =
 environmentVariables },
        };

        var response = await
 _lambdaService.UpdateFunctionConfigurationAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine(response.LastModified);

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various

languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Transform data with S3 Object Lambda

The following code example shows how to transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to add custom code to standard S3 GET requests to modify the requested object retrieved from S3 so that the object suit the needs of the requesting client or application.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Amazon S3

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using .NET.

```
using System.Data;
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.APIGatewayEvents;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using MySql.Data.MySqlClient;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace aws_rds;

public class InputModel
{
    public string key1 { get; set; }
    public string key2 { get; set; }
}

public class Function
{
    /// <summary>
    // Handles the Lambda function execution for connecting to RDS using IAM
 authentication.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="input">The input event data passed to the Lambda function</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda execution context that provides runtime
 information</param>
    /// <returns>A response object containing the execution result</returns>

    public async Task<APIGatewayProxyResponse>
 FunctionHandler(APIGatewayProxyRequest request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        // Sample Input: {"body": "{\"key1\":\"20\", \"key2\":\"25\"}"}
        var input = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<InputModel>(request.Body);

        /// Obtain authentication token
        var authToken = RDSAuthTokenGenerator.GenerateAuthToken(
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT"),
            Convert.ToInt32(Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")),
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")
        );

        /// Build the Connection String with the Token
        string connectionString =
 $"Server={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT")};" +

 $"Port={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")};" +

 $"Uid={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")};" +
                                 $"Pwd={authToken};";



        try
        {
            await using var connection = new MySqlConnection(connectionString);
            await connection.OpenAsync();

            const string sql = "SELECT @param1 + @param2 AS Sum";

            await using var command = new MySqlCommand(sql, connection);
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param1", int.Parse(input.key1 ??
 "0"));
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param2", int.Parse(input.key2 ??
 "0"));

            await using var reader = await command.ExecuteReaderAsync();
            if (await reader.ReadAsync())
```

```
            {
                int result = reader.GetInt32("Sum");

                //Sample Response: {"statusCode":200,"body":"{\"message\":\"The sum
 is: 45\"}","isBase64Encoded":false}
                return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
                {
                    StatusCode = 200,
                    Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { message = $"The sum is:
 {result}" })
                };
            }

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = 500,
            Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { error = "Internal server error" })
        };
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegrationSampleCode;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return;
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
 {record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                throw;
            }
```

```
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
 records.");
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
```

```
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public void FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event ID: {record.EventID}");
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Event Name: {record.EventName}");

            context.Logger.LogInformation(JsonSerializer.Serialize(record));
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using System.Text.Json;
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
//Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted into
 a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace LambdaDocDb;

public class Function
{

     /// <summary>
    /// Lambda function entry point to process Amazon DocumentDB events.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="event">The Amazon DocumentDB event.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context object.</param>
    /// <returns>A string to indicate successful processing.</returns>
    public string FunctionHandler(Event evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Events)
        {
            ProcessDocumentDBEvent(record, context);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

     private void ProcessDocumentDBEvent(DocumentDBEventRecord record,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {

        var eventData = record.Event;
        var operationType = eventData.OperationType;
        var databaseName = eventData.Ns.Db;
        var collectionName = eventData.Ns.Coll;
        var fullDocument = JsonSerializer.Serialize(eventData.FullDocument, new
 JsonSerializerOptions { WriteIndented = true });
```

```
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Operation type: {operationType}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Database: {databaseName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Collection: {collectionName}");
        context.Logger.LogLine($"Full document:\n{fullDocument}");
    }



    public class Event
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("eventSourceArn")]
        public string EventSourceArn { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("events")]
        public List<DocumentDBEventRecord> Events { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("eventSource")]
        public string EventSource { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentDBEventRecord
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("event")]
        public EventData Event { get; set; }
    }

    public class EventData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public IdData Id { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("clusterTime")]
        public ClusterTime ClusterTime { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("documentKey")]
        public DocumentKey DocumentKey { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("fullDocument")]
        public Dictionary<string, object> FullDocument { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("ns")]
        public Namespace Ns { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("operationType")]
```

```
        public string OperationType { get; set; }
    }

    public class IdData
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_data")]
        public string Data { get; set; }
    }

    public class ClusterTime
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$timestamp")]
        public Timestamp Timestamp { get; set; }
    }

    public class Timestamp
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("t")]
        public long T { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("i")]
        public int I { get; set; }
    }

    public class DocumentKey
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("_id")]
        public Id Id { get; set; }
    }

    public class Id
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("$oid")]
        public string Oid { get; set; }
    }

    public class Namespace
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("db")]
        public string Db { get; set; }

        [JsonPropertyName("coll")]
        public string Coll { get; set; }
    }
```

```
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KafkaEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace MSKLambda;

public class Function
{


    /// <param name="input">The event for the Lambda function handler to process.</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The ILambdaContext that provides methods for logging
 and describing the Lambda environment.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public void FunctionHandler(KafkaEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
```

```
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key:" + record.Key);
            foreach (var eventRecord in record.Value)
            {
                var valueBytes = eventRecord.Value.ToArray();
                var valueText = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(valueBytes);

                Console.WriteLine("Message:" + valueText);
            }
        }
    }


}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.S3;
```

```
using System;
using Amazon.Lambda.S3Events;
using System.Web;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace S3Integration
{
    public class Function
    {
        private static AmazonS3Client _s3Client;
        public Function() : this(null)
        {
        }

        internal Function(AmazonS3Client s3Client)
        {
            _s3Client = s3Client ?? new AmazonS3Client();
        }

        public async Task<string> Handler(S3Event evt, ILambdaContext context)
        {
            try
            {
                if (evt.Records.Count <= 0)
                {
                    context.Logger.LogLine("Empty S3 Event received");
                    return string.Empty;
                }

                var bucket = evt.Records[0].S3.Bucket.Name;
                var key = HttpUtility.UrlDecode(evt.Records[0].S3.Object.Key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Request is for {bucket} and {key}");

                var objectResult = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Returning {objectResult.Key}");

                return objectResult.Key;
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                context.Logger.LogLine($"Error processing request - {e.Message}");

                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SNSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SnsIntegration;

public class Function
{
```

```
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SNSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessRecordAsync(record, context);
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessRecordAsync(SNSEvent.SNSRecord record, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed record {record.Sns.Message}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SqsIntegrationSampleCode
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }

    }
```

```
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text;
using System.Text.Json.Serialization;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KinesisEvents;
using AWS.Lambda.Powertools.Logging;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace KinesisIntegration;

public class Function
{
    // Powertools Logger requires an environment variables against your function
    // POWERTOOLS_SERVICE_NAME
    [Logging(LogEvent = true)]
    public async Task<StreamsEventResponse> FunctionHandler(KinesisEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
```

```
    {
        if (evnt.Records.Count == 0)
        {
            Logger.LogInformation("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return new StreamsEventResponse();
        }

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                Logger.LogInformation($"Processed Event with EventId:
{record.EventId}");
                string data = await GetRecordDataAsync(record.Kinesis, context);
                Logger.LogInformation($"Data: {data}");
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Logger.LogError($"An error occurred {ex.Message}");
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
failed item onwards. */
                return new StreamsEventResponse
                {
                    BatchItemFailures = new
List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>
                    {
                        new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure { ItemIdentifier =
record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber }
                    }
                };
            }
        }
        Logger.LogInformation($"Successfully processed {evnt.Records.Count}
records.");
        return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }

    private async Task<string> GetRecordDataAsync(KinesisEvent.Record record,
ILambdaContext context)
    {
        byte[] bytes = record.Data.ToArray();
```

```
        string data = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(bytes);
        await Task.CompletedTask; //Placeholder for actual async work
        return data;
    }
}

public class StreamsEventResponse
{
    [JsonPropertyName("batchItemFailures")]
    public IList<BatchItemFailure> BatchItemFailures { get; set; }
    public class BatchItemFailure
    {
        [JsonPropertyName("itemIdentifier")]
        public string ItemIdentifier { get; set; }
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.DynamoDBEvents;
```

```
// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace AWSLambda_DDB;

public class Function
{
    public StreamsEventResponse FunctionHandler(DynamoDBEvent dynamoEvent,
 ILambdaContext context)

    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Beginning to process
 {dynamoEvent.Records.Count} records...");
        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        StreamsEventResponse streamsEventResponse = new StreamsEventResponse();

        foreach (var record in dynamoEvent.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                var sequenceNumber = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
                context.Logger.LogInformation(sequenceNumber);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                context.Logger.LogError(ex.Message);
                batchItemFailures.Add(new StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure()
 { ItemIdentifier = record.Dynamodb.SequenceNumber });
            }
        }

        if (batchItemFailures.Count > 0)
        {
            streamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailures = batchItemFailures;
        }

        context.Logger.LogInformation("Stream processing complete.");
        return streamsEventResponse;
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali
namespace sqsSample;

public class Function
{
    public async Task<SQSBatchResponse> FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        foreach(var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                //process your message
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
            }
            catch (System.Exception)
```

```
            {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.Add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier=message.MessageId});
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(message.Body))
        {
            throw new Exception("No Body in SQS Message.");
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");
        // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        await Task.CompletedTask;
    }
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for .NET

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the .NET SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

MediaConvert examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with MediaConvert.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello MediaConvert

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Elemental MediaConvert.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.MediaConvert;
using Amazon.MediaConvert.Model;

namespace MediaConvertActions;

public static class HelloMediaConvert
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the client using the default profile.
        var mediaConvertClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello AWS Elemental MediaConvert! Your MediaConvert Jobs
 are:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
```

```
        // Let's get some MediaConvert jobs.
        var response = await mediaConvertClient.ListJobsAsync(
            new ListJobsRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 10
            }
            );

        foreach (var job in response.Jobs)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tJob: {job.Id} status {job.Status}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoints in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating job for input file {fileInput}.");
        var jobId = await wrapper.CreateJob(mediaConvertRole!, fileInput!,
 fileOutput!);
        Console.WriteLine($"Created job with Job ID: {jobId}");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

Create the job using the wrapper method and return the job ID.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a job to convert a media file.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="mediaConvertRole">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the media
 convert role, as specified here:
    /// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-in-
mediaconvert-configured.html</param>
    /// <param name="fileInput">The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 location of the input media file.</param>
    /// <param name="fileOutput">The Amazon S3 location for the output media file.</
param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the new job.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateJob(string mediaConvertRole, string fileInput,
        string fileOutput)
    {
        CreateJobRequest createJobRequest = new CreateJobRequest
        {
            Role = mediaConvertRole
```

```
        };

        createJobRequest.UserMetadata.Add("Customer", "Amazon");

        JobSettings jobSettings = new JobSettings
        {
            AdAvailOffset = 0,
            TimecodeConfig = new TimecodeConfig
            {
                Source = TimecodeSource.EMBEDDED
            }
        };
        createJobRequest.Settings = jobSettings;

        #region OutputGroup

        OutputGroup ofg = new OutputGroup
        {
            Name = "File Group",
            OutputGroupSettings = new OutputGroupSettings
            {
                Type = OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS,
                FileGroupSettings = new FileGroupSettings
                {
                    Destination = fileOutput
                }
            }
        };

        Output output = new Output
        {
            NameModifier = "_1"
        };

        #region VideoDescription

        VideoDescription vdes = new VideoDescription
        {
            ScalingBehavior = ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT,
            TimecodeInsertion = VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED,
            AntiAlias = AntiAlias.ENABLED,
            Sharpness = 50,
            AfdSignaling = AfdSignaling.NONE,
            DropFrameTimecode = DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED,
```

```
            RespondToAfd = RespondToAfd.NONE,
            ColorMetadata = ColorMetadata.INSERT,
            CodecSettings = new VideoCodecSettings
            {
                Codec = VideoCodec.H_264
            }
        };
        output.VideoDescription = vdes;

        H264Settings h264 = new H264Settings
        {
            InterlaceMode = H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE,
            NumberReferenceFrames = 3,
            Syntax = H264Syntax.DEFAULT,
            Softness = 0,
            GopClosedCadence = 1,
            GopSize = 90,
            Slices = 1,
            GopBReference = H264GopBReference.DISABLED,
            SlowPal = H264SlowPal.DISABLED,
            SpatialAdaptiveQuantization = H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED,
            TemporalAdaptiveQuantization = H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED,
            FlickerAdaptiveQuantization = H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED,
            EntropyEncoding = H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC,
            Bitrate = 5000000,
            FramerateControl = H264FramerateControl.SPECIFIED,
            RateControlMode = H264RateControlMode.CBR,
            CodecProfile = H264CodecProfile.MAIN,
            Telecine = H264Telecine.NONE,
            MinIInterval = 0,
            AdaptiveQuantization = H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH,
            CodecLevel = H264CodecLevel.AUTO,
            FieldEncoding = H264FieldEncoding.PAFF,
            SceneChangeDetect = H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED,
            QualityTuningLevel = H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS,
            FramerateConversionAlgorithm =
                H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP,
            UnregisteredSeiTimecode = H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED,
            GopSizeUnits = H264GopSizeUnits.FRAMES,
            ParControl = H264ParControl.SPECIFIED,
            NumberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames = 2,
            RepeatPps = H264RepeatPps.DISABLED,
            FramerateNumerator = 30,
            FramerateDenominator = 1,
```

```
            ParNumerator = 1,
            ParDenominator = 1
        };
        output.VideoDescription.CodecSettings.H264Settings = h264;

        #endregion VideoDescription

        #region AudioDescription

        AudioDescription ades = new AudioDescription
        {
            LanguageCodeControl = AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT,
            // This name matches one specified in the following Inputs.
            AudioSourceName = "Audio Selector 1",
            CodecSettings = new AudioCodecSettings
            {
                Codec = AudioCodec.AAC
            }
        };

        AacSettings aac = new AacSettings
        {
            AudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix =
AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL,
            RateControlMode = AacRateControlMode.CBR,
            CodecProfile = AacCodecProfile.LC,
            CodingMode = AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0,
            RawFormat = AacRawFormat.NONE,
            SampleRate = 48000,
            Specification = AacSpecification.MPEG4,
            Bitrate = 64000
        };
        ades.CodecSettings.AacSettings = aac;
        output.AudioDescriptions.Add(ades);

        #endregion AudioDescription

        #region Mp4 Container

        output.ContainerSettings = new ContainerSettings
        {
            Container = ContainerType.MP4
        };
        Mp4Settings mp4 = new Mp4Settings
```

```
        {
            CslgAtom = Mp4CslgAtom.INCLUDE,
            FreeSpaceBox = Mp4FreeSpaceBox.EXCLUDE,
            MoovPlacement = Mp4MoovPlacement.PROGRESSIVE_DOWNLOAD
        };
        output.ContainerSettings.Mp4Settings = mp4;

        #endregion Mp4 Container

        ofg.Outputs.Add(output);
        createJobRequest.Settings.OutputGroups.Add(ofg);

        #endregion OutputGroup

        #region Input

        Input input = new Input
        {
            FilterEnable = InputFilterEnable.AUTO,
            PsiControl = InputPsiControl.USE_PSI,
            FilterStrength = 0,
            DeblockFilter = InputDeblockFilter.DISABLED,
            DenoiseFilter = InputDenoiseFilter.DISABLED,
            TimecodeSource = InputTimecodeSource.EMBEDDED,
            FileInput = fileInput
        };

        AudioSelector audsel = new AudioSelector
        {
            Offset = 0,
            DefaultSelection = AudioDefaultSelection.NOT_DEFAULT,
            ProgramSelection = 1,
            SelectorType = AudioSelectorType.TRACK
        };
        audsel.Tracks.Add(1);
        input.AudioSelectors.Add("Audio Selector 1", audsel);

        input.VideoSelector = new VideoSelector
        {
            ColorSpace = ColorSpace.FOLLOW
        };

        createJobRequest.Settings.Inputs.Add(input);
```

```
        #endregion Input

        CreateJobResponse createJobResponse =
            await _amazonMediaConvert.CreateJobAsync(createJobRequest);

        var jobId = createJobResponse.Job.Id;

        return jobId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

Get a job by its ID.

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting job information for Job ID {jobId}");
        var job = await wrapper.GetJobById(jobId);
        Console.WriteLine($"Job {job.Id} created on {job.CreatedAt:d} has status
{job.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the job information for a job by its ID.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobId">The ID of the job.</param>
    /// <returns>The Job object.</returns>
    public async Task<Job> GetJobById(string jobId)
    {
        var jobResponse = await _amazonMediaConvert.GetJobAsync(
                new GetJobRequest
                {
                    Id = jobId
                });

        return jobResponse.Job;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up the file locations, client, and wrapper.

```
        // MediaConvert role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
        // For information on creating this role, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/mediaconvert/latest/ug/creating-the-iam-role-
in-mediaconvert-configured.html.
        var mediaConvertRole = _configuration["mediaConvertRoleARN"];

        // Include the file input and output locations in settings.json or
 settings.local.json.
        var fileInput = _configuration["fileInput"];
        var fileOutput = _configuration["fileOutput"];

        AmazonMediaConvertClient mcClient = new AmazonMediaConvertClient();

        var wrapper = new MediaConvertWrapper(mcClient);
```

List the jobs with a particular status.

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Listing all complete jobs.");
        var completeJobs = await wrapper.ListAllJobsByStatus(JobStatus.COMPLETE);
        completeJobs.ForEach(j =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Job {j.Id} created on {j.CreatedAt:d} has status
 {j.Status}.");
        });
```

List the jobs using a paginator.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all of the jobs with a particular status using a paginator.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="status">The status to use when listing jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of jobs matching the status.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Job>> ListAllJobsByStatus(JobStatus? status = null)
    {
        var returnedJobs = new List<Job>();
```

```
        var paginatedJobs = _amazonMediaConvert.Paginators.ListJobs(
                new ListJobsRequest
                {
                    Status = status
                });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var job in paginatedJobs.Jobs)
        {
            returnedJobs.Add(job);
        }

        return returnedJobs;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using .NET.

```
using System.Text;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.KafkaEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace MSKLambda;

public class Function
{


    /// <param name="input">The event for the Lambda function handler to process.</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The ILambdaContext that provides methods for logging
 and describing the Lambda environment.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public void FunctionHandler(KafkaEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {

        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Key:" + record.Key);
            foreach (var eventRecord in record.Value)
            {
                var valueBytes = eventRecord.Value.ToArray();
                var valueText = Encoding.UTF8.GetString(valueBytes);

                Console.WriteLine("Message:" + valueText);
```

```
            }
        }
    }


}
```

Organizations examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Organizations.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AttachPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to attach an AWS Organizations policy to an organization,
    /// an organizational unit, or an account.
    /// </summary>
    public class AttachPolicy
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then calls the
        /// AttachPolicyAsync method to attach the policy to the root
        /// organization.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
            var policyId = "p-00000000";
            var targetId = "r-0000";

            var request = new AttachPolicyRequest
            {
                PolicyId = policyId,
                TargetId = targetId,
            };

            var response = await client.AttachPolicyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully attached Policy ID {policyId} to
Target ID: {targetId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Was not successful in attaching the policy.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateAccount`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccount`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates a new AWS Organizations account.
/// </summary>
public class CreateAccount
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes an Organizations client object and uses it to create
    /// the new account with the name specified in accountName.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
        var accountName = "ExampleAccount";
        var email = "someone@example.com";

        var request = new CreateAccountRequest
        {
            AccountName = accountName,
            Email = email,
        };

        var response = await client.CreateAccountAsync(request);
        var status = response.CreateAccountStatus;

        Console.WriteLine($"The staus of {status.AccountName} is
{status.State}.");
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccount in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateOrganization`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOrganization`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an organization in AWS Organizations.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateOrganization
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an Organizations client object and then uses it to create
        /// a new organization with the default user as the administrator, and
        /// then displays information about the new organization.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var response = await client.CreateOrganizationAsync(new
CreateOrganizationRequest
            {
                FeatureSet = "ALL",
```

```
            });

            Organization newOrg = response.Organization;

            Console.WriteLine($"Organization: {newOrg.Id} Main Accoount:
{newOrg.MasterAccountId}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganization in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateOrganizationalUnit`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOrganizationalUnit`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new organizational unit in AWS Organizations.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateOrganizationalUnit
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes an Organizations client object and then uses it to call
        /// the CreateOrganizationalUnit method. If the call succeeds, it
        /// displays information about the new organizational unit.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
```

```
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var orgUnitName = "ProductDevelopmentUnit";

            var request = new CreateOrganizationalUnitRequest
            {
                Name = orgUnitName,
                ParentId = "r-0000",
            };

            var response = await client.CreateOrganizationalUnitAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created organizational unit:
{orgUnitName}.");
                Console.WriteLine($"Organizational unit {orgUnitName} Details");
                Console.WriteLine($"ARN: {response.OrganizationalUnit.Arn} Id:
{response.OrganizationalUnit.Id}");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not create new organizational unit.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOrganizationalUnit in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates a new AWS Organizations Policy.
/// </summary>
public class CreatePolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the AWS Organizations client object, uses it to
    /// create a new Organizations Policy, and then displays information
    /// about the newly created Policy.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();
        var policyContent = "{" +
            "   \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            " \"Statement\" : [{" +
                " \"Action\" : [\"s3:*\"]," +
                " \"Effect\" : \"Allow\"," +
                " \"Resource\" : \"*\"" +
            "}]" +
        "}";

        try
        {
            var response = await client.CreatePolicyAsync(new
CreatePolicyRequest
            {
                Content = policyContent,
                Description = "Enables admins of attached accounts to delegate
all Amazon S3 permissions",
                Name = "AllowAllS3Actions",
                Type = "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
            });

            Policy policy = response.Policy;
            Console.WriteLine($"{policy.PolicySummary.Name} has the following
content: {policy.Content}");
        }
```

```
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteOrganization`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteOrganization`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to delete an existing organization using the AWS
/// Organizations Service.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteOrganization
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client and then calls
    /// DeleteOrganizationAsync to delete the organization.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
```

```
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var response = await client.DeleteOrganizationAsync(new
DeleteOrganizationRequest());

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted organization.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not delete organization.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganization in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteOrganizationalUnit`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteOrganizationalUnit`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Organizations;
    using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to delete an existing AWS Organizations organizational unit.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteOrganizationalUnit
```

```
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Organizations client object and calls
        /// DeleteOrganizationalUnitAsync to delete the organizational unit
        /// with the selected ID.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var orgUnitId = "ou-0000-00000000";

            var request = new DeleteOrganizationalUnitRequest
            {
                OrganizationalUnitId = orgUnitId,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteOrganizationalUnitAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted the organizational unit
with ID: {orgUnitId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete the organizational unit with
ID: {orgUnitId}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteOrganizationalUnit in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DeletePolicy

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Deletes an existing AWS Organizations policy.
/// </summary>
public class DeletePolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then uses it to
    /// delete the policy with the specified policyId.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var policyId = "p-00000000";

        var request = new DeletePolicyRequest
        {
            PolicyId = policyId,
        };

        var response = await client.DeletePolicyAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted Policy: {policyId}.");
        }
        else
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete Policy: {policyId}.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetachPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachPolicy`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to detach a policy from an AWS Organizations organization,
/// organizational unit, or account.
/// </summary>
public class DetachPolicy
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and uses it to call
    /// DetachPolicyAsync to detach the policy.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var policyId = "p-00000000";
```

```
            var targetId = "r-0000";

            var request = new DetachPolicyRequest
            {
                PolicyId = policyId,
                TargetId = targetId,
            };

            var response = await client.DetachPolicyAsync(request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully detached policy with Policy Id:
{policyId}.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Could not detach the policy.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachPolicy in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListAccounts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccounts`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;
```

```
/// <summary>
/// Uses the AWS Organizations service to list the accounts associated
/// with the default account.
/// </summary>
public class ListAccounts
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates the Organizations client and then calls its
    /// ListAccountsAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        var request = new ListAccountsRequest
        {
            MaxResults = 5,
        };

        var response = new ListAccountsResponse();
        try
        {
            do
            {
                response = await client.ListAccountsAsync(request);
                response.Accounts.ForEach(a => DisplayAccounts(a));
                if (response.NextToken is not null)
                {
                    request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                }
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }
        catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays information about an Organizations account.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="account">An Organizations account for which to display
        /// information on the console.</param>
        private static void DisplayAccounts(Account account)
        {
            string accountInfo = $"{account.Id} {account.Name}\t{account.Status}";

            Console.WriteLine(accountInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAccounts in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Lists the AWS Organizations organizational units that belong to an
/// organization.
/// </summary>
public class ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes the Organizations client object and then uses it to
    /// call the ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync method to retrieve
    /// the list of organizational units.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the client object using the default account.
            IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

            var parentId = "r-0000";

            var request = new ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentRequest
            {
                ParentId = parentId,
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await
client.ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync(request);
                    response.OrganizationalUnits.ForEach(u =>
DisplayOrganizationalUnit(u));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about an Organizations organizational unit.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="unit">The OrganizationalUnit for which to display
        /// information.</param>
        public static void DisplayOrganizationalUnit(OrganizationalUnit unit)
        {
            string accountInfo = $"{unit.Id} {unit.Name}\t{unit.Arn}";
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(accountInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOrganizationalUnitsForParent in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to list the AWS Organizations policies associated with an
/// organization.
/// </summary>
public class ListPolicies
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Initializes an Organizations client object, and then calls its
    /// ListPoliciesAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Create the client object using the default account.
        IAmazonOrganizations client = new AmazonOrganizationsClient();

        // The value for the Filter parameter is required and must must be
        // one of the following:
```

```
            //     AISERVICES_OPT_OUT_POLICY
            //     BACKUP_POLICY
            //     SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY
            //     TAG_POLICY
            var request = new ListPoliciesRequest
            {
                Filter = "SERVICE_CONTROL_POLICY",
                MaxResults = 5,
            };

            var response = new ListPoliciesResponse();
            try
            {
                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListPoliciesAsync(request);
                    response.Policies.ForEach(p => DisplayPolicies(p));
                    if (response.NextToken is not null)
                    {
                        request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
                    }
                }
                while (response.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays information about the Organizations policies associated
        /// with an organization.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="policy">An Organizations policy summary to display
        /// information on the console.</param>
        private static void DisplayPolicies(PolicySummary policy)
        {
            string policyInfo = $"{policy.Id} {policy.Name}\t{policy.Description}";

            Console.WriteLine(policyInfo);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Partner Central examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Partner Central.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpportunity`.

SDK for .NET

Create an opportunity.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
```

```
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "AWS";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);

                var request = new CreateOpportunityRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    Origin = "Partner Referral",
                    Customer = new Customer
                    {
                        Account = new Account
                        {
                            Address = new Address
                            {
                                CountryCode = "US",
                                PostalCode = "99502",
                                StateOrRegion = "Alaska"
                            },
                            CompanyName = "TestCompanyName",
                            Duns = "123456789",
                            WebsiteUrl = "www.test.io",
                            Industry = "Automotive"
                        },
                        Contacts = new List<Contact>
                        {
                            new Contact
                            {
                                Email = "test@test.io",
                                FirstName = "John  ",
                                LastName = "Doe",
                                Phone = "+14444444444",
                                BusinessTitle = "test title"
                            }
                        }
```

```
                    },
                    LifeCycle = new LifeCycle
                    {
                        ReviewStatus = "Submitted",
                        TargetCloseDate = "2024-12-30"
                    },
                    Marketing = new Marketing
                    {
                        Source = "None"
                    },
                    OpportunityType = "Net New Business",
                    PrimaryNeedsFromAws = new List<string> { "Co-Sell -
Architectural Validation" },
                    Project = new Project
                    {
                        Title = "Moin Test UUID",
                        CustomerBusinessProblem = "Sandbox is not working as
expected",
                        CustomerUseCase = "AI Machine Learning and Analytics",
                        DeliveryModels = new List<string> { "SaaS or PaaS" },
                        ExpectedCustomerSpend = new List<ExpectedCustomerSpend>
                        {
                            new ExpectedCustomerSpend
                            {
                                Amount = "2000.0",
                                CurrencyCode = "USD",
                                Frequency = "Monthly",
                                TargetCompany = "Ibexlabs"
                            }
                        },
                        SalesActivities = new List<string> { "Initialized
discussions with customer" }
                    }
                };

                try
                {
                    var response = await client.CreateOpportunityAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    string formattedJson = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response,
Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                }
                catch (ValidationException ex)
```

```
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                }
                catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOpportunity`.

SDK for .NET

Get an opportunity.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
```

```
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "AWS";
        static readonly string identifier = "O1111111";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);

                var request = new GetOpportunityRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    Identifier = identifier
                };

                try {
                    var response = await client.GetOpportunityAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    string formattedJson = JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response,
 Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                } catch(ValidationException ex) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                } catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListOpportunities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOpportunities`.

SDK for .NET

List opportunities.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// PDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

using System;
using Newtonsoft.Json;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Runtime;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling;
using Amazon.PartnerCentralSelling.Model;

namespace AWSExample
{
    class Program
    {
        static readonly string catalogToUse = "Sandbox";
        static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            // Initialize credentials from .aws/credentials file
            var credentials = new
 Amazon.Runtime.CredentialManagement.SharedCredentialsFile();
            if (credentials.TryGetProfile("default", out var profile))
            {
                AWSCredentials awsCredentials =
 profile.GetAWSCredentials(credentials);

                //var config = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingConfig()
                //{
                //    ServiceURL = "https://partnercentral-selling.us-
east-1.api.aws",
                //};
                //var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials,
 config);
                var client = new AmazonPartnerCentralSellingClient(awsCredentials);
```

```
                var request = new ListOpportunitiesRequest
                {
                    Catalog = catalogToUse,
                    MaxResults = 2
                };

                try {
                    var response = await client.ListOpportunitiesAsync(request);
                    Console.WriteLine(response.HttpStatusCode);
                    foreach (var opportunity in response.OpportunitySummaries)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("Opportunity id: " + opportunity.Id);
                    }
                    string formattedJson =
 JsonConvert.SerializeObject(response.OpportunitySummaries, Formatting.Indented);
                    Console.WriteLine(formattedJson);
                } catch(ValidationException ex) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Validation error: " + ex.Message);
                } catch (AmazonPartnerCentralSellingException e) {
                    Console.WriteLine("Failed:");
                    Console.WriteLine(e.RequestId);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.ErrorCode);
                    Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Profile not found.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendMessages`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessages`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Pinpoint;
using Amazon.Pinpoint.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace SendEmailMessage;

public class SendEmailMainClass
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
        .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
        .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
        .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
```

```
            true) // Optionally load local settings.
        .Build();

        // The AWS Region that you want to use to send the email. For a list of
        // AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
        string region = "us-east-1";

        // The "From" address. This address has to be verified in Amazon Pinpoint
        // in the region you're using to send email.
        string senderAddress = configuration["SenderAddress"]!;

        // The address on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint account is in
        // the sandbox, this address also has to be verified.
        string toAddress = configuration["ToAddress"]!;

        // The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this
message.
        // Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
        // that you choose.
        string appId = configuration["AppId"]!;

        try
        {
            await SendEmailMessage(region, appId, toAddress, senderAddress);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message wasn't sent. Error message: " +
ex.Message);
        }
    }

    public static async Task<MessageResponse> SendEmailMessage(
        string region, string appId, string toAddress, string senderAddress)
    {
        var client = new
AmazonPinpointClient(RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName(region));

        // The subject line of the email.
        string subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Email test";

        // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients don't
        // support HTML content.
```

```
        string textBody = @"Amazon Pinpoint Email Test (.NET)"
                          + "\n---------------------------------"
                          + "\nThis email was sent using the Amazon Pinpoint API
 using the AWS SDK for .NET.";

        // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support
        // HTML content.
        string htmlBody = @"<html>"
                          + "\n<head></head>"
                          + "\n<body>"
                          + "\n  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Email Test (AWS SDK for .NET)</
h1>"
                          + "\n  <p>This email was sent using the "
                          + "\n    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>Amazon
 Pinpoint</a> API "
                          + "\n    using the <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-
for-net/'>AWS SDK for .NET</a>"
                          + "\n  </p>"
                          + "\n</body>"
                          + "\n</html>";

        // The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
        // message body of the email.
        string charset = "UTF-8";

        var sendRequest = new SendMessagesRequest
        {
            ApplicationId = appId,
            MessageRequest = new MessageRequest
            {
                Addresses = new Dictionary<string, AddressConfiguration>
                {
                    {
                        toAddress,
                        new AddressConfiguration
                        {
                            ChannelType = ChannelType.EMAIL
                        }
                    }
                },
                MessageConfiguration = new DirectMessageConfiguration
                {
                    EmailMessage = new EmailMessage
                    {
```

```
                        FromAddress = senderAddress,
                        SimpleEmail = new SimpleEmail
                        {
                            HtmlPart = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = htmlBody
                            },
                            TextPart = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = textBody
                            },
                            Subject = new SimpleEmailPart
                            {
                                Charset = charset,
                                Data = subject
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        };
        Console.WriteLine("Sending message...");
        SendMessagesResponse response = await client.SendMessagesAsync(sendRequest);
        Console.WriteLine("Message sent!");
        return response.MessageResponse;
    }
}
```

Send an SMS message.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Pinpoint;
using Amazon.Pinpoint.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace SendSmsMessage;

public class SendSmsMessageMainClass
```

```
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        // The AWS Region that you want to use to send the message. For a list of
        // AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
        string region = "us-east-1";

        // The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone number
        // or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon
 Pinpoint
        // account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format.
        string originationNumber = configuration["OriginationNumber"]!;

        // The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify the
        // phone number in E.164 format.
        string destinationNumber = configuration["DestinationNumber"]!;

        // The Pinpoint project/ application ID to use when you send this message.
        // Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
        // that you choose.
        string appId = configuration["AppId"]!;

        // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
        // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
        // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
        MessageType messageType = MessageType.TRANSACTIONAL;

        // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
        string? registeredKeyword = configuration["RegisteredKeyword"];

        // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
        // varies by country or region. For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
        string? senderId = configuration["SenderId"];
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await SendSmsMessage(region, appId, destinationNumber,
                originationNumber, registeredKeyword, senderId, messageType);
            Console.WriteLine($"Message sent to
{response.MessageResponse.Result.Count} recipient(s).");
            foreach (var messageResultValue in
                     response.MessageResponse.Result.Select(r => r.Value))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{messageResultValue.MessageId} Status:
{messageResultValue.DeliveryStatus}");
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message wasn't sent. Error message: " +
ex.Message);
        }
    }

    public static async Task<SendMessagesResponse> SendSmsMessage(
        string region, string appId, string destinationNumber, string
originationNumber,
        string? keyword, string? senderId, MessageType messageType)
    {

        // The content of the SMS message.
        string message = "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint using" +
                         " the AWS SDK for .NET. Reply STOP to opt out.";


        var client = new
AmazonPinpointClient(RegionEndpoint.GetBySystemName(region));

        SendMessagesRequest sendRequest = new SendMessagesRequest
        {
            ApplicationId = appId,
            MessageRequest = new MessageRequest
            {
                Addresses =
                    new Dictionary<string, AddressConfiguration>
                    {
                        {
                            destinationNumber,
```

```
                            new AddressConfiguration { ChannelType =
 ChannelType.SMS }
                        }
                    },
                MessageConfiguration = new DirectMessageConfiguration
                {
                    SMSMessage = new SMSMessage
                    {
                        Body = message,
                        MessageType = MessageType.TRANSACTIONAL,
                        OriginationNumber = originationNumber,
                        SenderId = senderId,
                        Keyword = keyword
                    }
                }
            }
        };
        SendMessagesResponse response = await client.SendMessagesAsync(sendRequest);
        return response;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Polly.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLexicon`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Deletes an existing Amazon Polly lexicon using the AWS SDK for .NET.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteLexicon
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

        var success = await DeletePollyLexiconAsync(client, lexiconName);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {lexiconName}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {lexiconName}.");
        }
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the named Amazon Polly lexicon.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Polly client object.</param>
        /// <param name="lexiconName">The name of the Amazon Polly lexicon to
        /// delete.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeletePollyLexiconAsync(
            AmazonPollyClient client,
            string lexiconName)
        {
            var deleteLexiconRequest = new DeleteLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
            };

            var response = await client.DeleteLexiconAsync(deleteLexiconRequest);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeVoices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVoices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Polly;
    using Amazon.Polly.Model;

    public class DescribeVoices
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

            var allVoicesRequest = new DescribeVoicesRequest();
            var enUsVoicesRequest = new DescribeVoicesRequest()
            {
                LanguageCode = "en-US",
            };

            try
            {
                string nextToken;
                do
                {
                    var allVoicesResponse = await
client.DescribeVoicesAsync(allVoicesRequest);
                    nextToken = allVoicesResponse.NextToken;
                    allVoicesRequest.NextToken = nextToken;

                    Console.WriteLine("\nAll voices: ");
                    allVoicesResponse.Voices.ForEach(voice =>
                    {
                        DisplayVoiceInfo(voice);
                    });
                }
                while (nextToken is not null);

                do
                {
                    var enUsVoicesResponse = await
client.DescribeVoicesAsync(enUsVoicesRequest);
                    nextToken = enUsVoicesResponse.NextToken;
                    enUsVoicesRequest.NextToken = nextToken;

                    Console.WriteLine("\nen-US voices: ");
                    enUsVoicesResponse.Voices.ForEach(voice =>
                    {
```

```
                        DisplayVoiceInfo(voice);
                    });
                }
                while (nextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Exception caught: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }

        public static void DisplayVoiceInfo(Voice voice)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($" Name: {voice.Name}\tGender:
{voice.Gender}\tLanguageName: {voice.LanguageName}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `GetLexicon`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Retrieves information about a specific Amazon Polly lexicon.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class GetLexicon
    {
        public static async Task Main(string[] args)
        {
            string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();

            await GetPollyLexiconAsync(client, lexiconName);
        }

        public static async Task GetPollyLexiconAsync(AmazonPollyClient client,
string lexiconName)
        {
            var getLexiconRequest = new GetLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await client.GetLexiconAsync(getLexiconRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Lexicon:\n Name: {response.Lexicon.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Content: {response.Lexicon.Content}");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Error: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListLexicons`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLexicons`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Lists the Amazon Polly lexicons that have been defined. By default,
/// lists the lexicons that are defined in the same AWS Region as the default
/// user. To view Amazon Polly lexicons that are defined in a different AWS
/// Region, supply it as a parameter to the Amazon Polly constructor.
/// </summary>
public class ListLexicons
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
        var request = new ListLexiconsRequest();

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("All voices: ");

            do
            {
                var response = await client.ListLexiconsAsync(request);
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;

                response.Lexicons.ForEach(lexicon =>
                {
                    var attributes = lexicon.Attributes;
                    Console.WriteLine($"Name: {lexicon.Name}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"\tAlphabet: {attributes.Alphabet}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"\tLanguageCode:
{attributes.LanguageCode}");
```

```
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLastModified:
{attributes.LastModified}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLexemesCount:
{attributes.LexemesCount}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tLexiconArn: {attributes.LexiconArn}");
                        Console.WriteLine($"\tSize: {attributes.Size}");
                    });
                }
                while (request.NextToken is not null);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `PutLexicon`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Creates a new Amazon Polly lexicon using the AWS SDK for .NET.
/// </summary>
```

```
    public class PutLexicon
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string lexiconContent = "<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\"?>" +
                "<lexicon version=\"1.0\" xmlns=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/
pronunciation-lexicon\" xmlns:xsi=\"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance\" " +
                "xsi:schemaLocation=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-
lexicon http://www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd\" " +
                "alphabet=\"ipa\" xml:lang=\"en-US\">" +
                "<lexeme><grapheme>test1</grapheme><alias>test2</alias></lexeme>" +
                "</lexicon>";
            string lexiconName = "SampleLexicon";

            var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
            var putLexiconRequest = new PutLexiconRequest()
            {
                Name = lexiconName,
                Content = lexiconContent,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await client.PutLexiconAsync(putLexiconRequest);
                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created Lexicon:
 {lexiconName}.");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Could not create Lexicon: {lexiconName}.");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Exception caught: " + ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SynthesizeSpeech

The following code example shows how to use SynthesizeSpeech.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

public class SynthesizeSpeech
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string outputFileName = "speech.mp3";
        string text = "Twas brillig, and the slithy toves did gyre and gimbol in
the wabe";

        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
        var response = await PollySynthesizeSpeech(client, text);

        WriteSpeechToStream(response.AudioStream, outputFileName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Calls the Amazon Polly SynthesizeSpeechAsync method to convert text
    /// to speech.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The Amazon Polly client object used to connect
    /// to the Amazon Polly service.</param>
    /// <param name="text">The text to convert to speech.</param>
    /// <returns>A SynthesizeSpeechResponse object that includes an AudioStream
    /// object with the converted text.</returns>
    private static async Task<SynthesizeSpeechResponse>
PollySynthesizeSpeech(IAmazonPolly client, string text)
```

```
        {
            var synthesizeSpeechRequest = new SynthesizeSpeechRequest()
            {
                OutputFormat = OutputFormat.Mp3,
                VoiceId = VoiceId.Joanna,
                Text = text,
            };

            var synthesizeSpeechResponse =
                await client.SynthesizeSpeechAsync(synthesizeSpeechRequest);

            return synthesizeSpeechResponse;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Writes the AudioStream returned from the call to
        /// SynthesizeSpeechAsync to a file in MP3 format.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="audioStream">The AudioStream returned from the
        /// call to the SynthesizeSpeechAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="outputFileName">The full path to the file in which to
        /// save the audio stream.</param>
        private static void WriteSpeechToStream(Stream audioStream, string
outputFileName)
        {
            var outputStream = new FileStream(
                outputFileName,
                FileMode.Create,
                FileAccess.Write);
            byte[] buffer = new byte[2 * 1024];
            int readBytes;

            while ((readBytes = audioStream.Read(buffer, 0, 2 * 1024)) > 0)
            {
                outputStream.Write(buffer, 0, readBytes);
            }

            // Flushes the buffer to avoid losing the last second or so of
            // the synthesized text.
            outputStream.Flush();
            Console.WriteLine($"Saved {outputFileName} to disk.");
        }
    }
```

Synthesize speech from text using speech marks with Amazon Polly using an AWS SDK.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Polly;
using Amazon.Polly.Model;

public class SynthesizeSpeechMarks
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonPollyClient();
        string outputFileName = "speechMarks.json";

        var synthesizeSpeechRequest = new SynthesizeSpeechRequest()
        {
            OutputFormat = OutputFormat.Json,
            SpeechMarkTypes = new List<string>
            {
                SpeechMarkType.Viseme,
                SpeechMarkType.Word,
            },
            VoiceId = VoiceId.Joanna,
            Text = "This is a sample text to be synthesized.",
        };

        try
        {
            using (var outputStream = new FileStream(outputFileName,
FileMode.Create, FileAccess.Write))
            {
                var synthesizeSpeechResponse = await
client.SynthesizeSpeechAsync(synthesizeSpeechRequest);
                var buffer = new byte[2 * 1024];
                int readBytes;

                var inputStream = synthesizeSpeechResponse.AudioStream;
                while ((readBytes = inputStream.Read(buffer, 0, 2 * 1024)) > 0)
                {
```

```
                        outputStream.Write(buffer, 0, readBytes);
                    }
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.RDS;
```

```
using Amazon.RDS.Model;

namespace RDSActions;

public static class HelloRds
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var rdsClient = new AmazonRDSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS! Following are some of your DB
 instances:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first twenty DB instances.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBInstancesAsync(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxRecords = 20 // Must be between 20 and 100.
            });

        foreach (var instance in response.DBInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDB name: {instance.DBName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {instance.DBInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tIdentifier: {instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Scenario for RDS DB instance example.
/// </summary>
public class RDSInstanceScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Returns a list of the available DB engine families using the
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
    2.  Selects an engine family and creates a custom DB parameter group using the
 CreateDBParameterGroupAsync method.
    3.  Gets the parameter groups using the DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync method.
    4.  Gets parameters in the group using the DescribeDBParameters method.
    5.  Parses and displays parameters in the group.
```

```
   6.  Modifies both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment
parameters
       using the ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync method.
   7.  Gets and displays the updated parameters using the DescribeDBParameters
method with a source of "user".
   8.  Gets a list of allowed engine versions using the
DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
   9.  Displays and selects from a list of micro instance classes available for the
selected engine and version.
   10. Creates an RDS DB instance that contains a MySql database and uses the
parameter group
       using the CreateDBInstanceAsync method.
   11. Waits for DB instance to be ready using the DescribeDBInstancesAsync method.
   12. Prints out the connection endpoint string for the new DB instance.
   13. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance using the CreateDBSnapshotAsync
method.
   14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready using the DescribeDBSnapshots method.
   15. Deletes the DB instance using the DeleteDBInstanceAsync method.
   16. Waits for DB instance to be deleted using the DescribeDbInstances method.
   17. Deletes the parameter group using the DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync.
   */

   private static readonly string sepBar = new('-', 80);
   private static RDSWrapper rdsWrapper = null!;
   private static ILogger logger = null!;
   private static readonly string engine = "mysql";
   static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon RDS service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
                   .AddTransient<RDSWrapper>()
           )
           .Build();

       logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
       {
           builder.AddConsole();
```

```
        }).CreateLogger<RDSInstanceScenario>();

        rdsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<RDSWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB
instance scenario example.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        try
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = await ChooseParameterGroupFamily();

            var parameterGroup = await CreateDbParameterGroup(parameterGroupFamily);

            var parameters = await
DescribeParametersInGroup(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
                new List<string> { "auto_increment_offset",
"auto_increment_increment" });

            await ModifyParameters(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName, parameters);

            await DescribeUserSourceParameters(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName);

            var engineVersionChoice = await
ChooseDbEngineVersion(parameterGroupFamily);

            var instanceChoice = await ChooseDbInstanceClass(engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion);

            var newInstanceIdentifier = "Example-Instance-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            var newInstance = await CreateRdsNewInstance(parameterGroup, engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
                instanceChoice.DBInstanceClass, newInstanceIdentifier);
            if (newInstance != null)
            {
                DisplayConnectionString(newInstance);

                await CreateSnapshot(newInstance);

                await DeleteRdsInstance(newInstance);
            }
```

```
            await DeleteParameterGroup(parameterGroup);

            Console.WriteLine("Scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose the RDS DB parameter group family from a list of available options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected parameter group family.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ChooseParameterGroupFamily()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // 1. Get a list of available engines.
        var engines = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersions(engine);

        Console.WriteLine("1. The following is a list of available DB parameter
group families:");
        int i = 1;
        var parameterGroupFamilies = engines.GroupBy(e =>
e.DBParameterGroupFamily).ToList();
        foreach (var parameterGroupFamily in parameterGroupFamilies)
        {
            // List the available parameter group families.
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Family: {parameterGroupFamily.Key}");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > parameterGroupFamilies.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Select an available DB parameter group family by
entering a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        var parameterGroupFamilyChoice = parameterGroupFamilies[choiceNumber - 1];
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroupFamilyChoice.Key;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and get information on a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">The DBParameterGroupFamily for the new
DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DBParameterGroup.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDbParameterGroup(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Create new DB parameter group with family
{dbParameterGroupFamily}:");

        var parameterGroup = await rdsWrapper.CreateDBParameterGroup(
            "ExampleParameterGroup-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks,
            dbParameterGroupFamily, "New example parameter group");

        var groupInfo =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameterGroups(parameterGroup
                .DBParameterGroupName);

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"3. New DB parameter group: \n\t{groupInfo[0].Description}, \n\tARN
{groupInfo[0].DBParameterGroupArn}");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get and describe parameters from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterNames">Optional specific names of parameters to
describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of requested parameters.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeParametersInGroup(string
parameterGroupName, List<string>? parameterNames = null)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("4. Get some parameters from the group.");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        var parameters =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameters(parameterGroupName);

        var matchingParameters =
            parameters.Where(p => parameterNames == null ||
parameterNames.Contains(p.ParameterName)).ToList();

        Console.WriteLine("5. Parameter information:");
        matchingParameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        return matchingParameters;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify a parameter from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ModifyParameters(string parameterGroupName,
List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("6. Modify some parameters in the group.");

        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                int newValue = 0;
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the allowed
values {p.AllowedValues} ");
```

```
                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    Int32.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        await rdsWrapper.ModifyDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupName, parameters);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the user source parameters in the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DescribeUserSourceParameters(string parameterGroupName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("7. Describe user source parameters in the group.");

        var parameters =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBParameters(parameterGroupName, "user");


        parameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">DB parameter group family for engine
choice.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The selected engine version.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBEngineVersion> ChooseDbEngineVersion(string
 dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed engines.
        var allowedEngines =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersions(engine,
 dbParameterGroupFamily);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB engine versions for parameter group family
 {dbParameterGroupFamily}:");
        int i = 1;
        foreach (var version in allowedEngines)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Engine: {version.Engine} Version
 {version.EngineVersion}.");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedEngines.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("8. Select an available DB engine version by entering
 a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var engineChoice = allowedEngines[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return engineChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB instance class for a particular engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">DB engine for DB instance choice.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">DB engine version for DB instance choice.</
param>
    /// <returns>The selected orderable DB instance option.</returns>
    public static async Task<OrderableDBInstanceOption> ChooseDbInstanceClass(string
 engine, string engineVersion)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed DB instance classes.
        var allowedInstances =
            await rdsWrapper.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(engine,
 engineVersion);

        Console.WriteLine($"8. Available micro DB instance classes for engine
 {engine} and version {engineVersion}:");
        int i = 1;

        // Filter to micro instances for this example.
        allowedInstances = allowedInstances
            .Where(i => i.DBInstanceClass.Contains("micro")).ToList();

        foreach (var instance in allowedInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Instance class: {instance.DBInstanceClass} (storage type
 {instance.StorageType})");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedInstances.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("9. Select an available DB instance class by entering
 a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var instanceChoice = allowedInstances[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return instanceChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">Parameter group to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB instance.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Instance class to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceIdentifier">Instance identifier to use for the DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB instance.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBInstance?> CreateRdsNewInstance(DBParameterGroup
 parameterGroup,
        string engineName, string engineVersion, string instanceClass, string
 instanceIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Create a new DB instance with identifier
 {instanceIdentifier}.");
        bool isInstanceReady = false;
        DBInstance newInstance;
        var instances = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances();
        isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault(i =>
            i.DBInstanceIdentifier == instanceIdentifier)?.DBInstanceStatus ==
 "available";

        if (isInstanceReady)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Instance already created.");
            newInstance = instances.First(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier ==
 instanceIdentifier);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Please enter an admin user name:");
            var username = Console.ReadLine();

            Console.WriteLine("Please enter an admin password:");
            var password = Console.ReadLine();

            newInstance = await rdsWrapper.CreateDBInstance(
                "ExampleInstance",
                instanceIdentifier,
                parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                instanceClass,
                20,
```

```
                username,
                password
            );

            // 11. Wait for the DB instance to be ready.

            Console.WriteLine("11. Waiting for DB instance to be ready...");
            while (!isInstanceReady)
            {
                instances = await
 rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances(instanceIdentifier);
                isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault()?.DBInstanceStatus ==
 "available";
                newInstance = instances.First();
                Thread.Sleep(30000);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newInstance;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a connection string for an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The DB instance to use to get a connection string.</
param>
    public static void DisplayConnectionString(DBInstance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Display the connection string.
        Console.WriteLine("12. New DB instance connection string: ");
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"\n{engine} -h {instance.Endpoint.Address} -P {instance.Endpoint.Port}
 "
            + $"-u {instance.MasterUsername} -p [YOUR PASSWORD]\n");

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot from an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">DB instance to use when creating a snapshot.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The snapshot object.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateSnapshot(DBInstance instance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Create a snapshot.
        Console.WriteLine($"13. Creating snapshot from DB instance
{instance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
        var snapshot = await
rdsWrapper.CreateDBSnapshot(instance.DBInstanceIdentifier, "ExampleSnapshot-" +
DateTime.Now.Ticks);

        // Wait for the snapshot to be available
        bool isSnapshotReady = false;

        Console.WriteLine($"14. Waiting for snapshot to be ready...");
        while (!isSnapshotReady)
        {
            var snapshots = await
rdsWrapper.DescribeDBSnapshots(instance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
            isSnapshotReady = snapshots.FirstOrDefault()?.Status == "available";
            snapshot = snapshots.First();
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Snapshot {snapshot.DBSnapshotIdentifier} status is
{snapshot.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return snapshot;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an RDS DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instance">The DB instance to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteRdsInstance(DBInstance newInstance)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Delete the DB instance.
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Delete the DB instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
        await rdsWrapper.DeleteDBInstance(newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
```

```
        // Wait for the DB instance to delete.
        Console.WriteLine($"16. Waiting for the DB instance to delete...");
        bool isInstanceDeleted = false;

        while (!isInstanceDeleted)
        {
            var instance = await rdsWrapper.DescribeDBInstances();
            isInstanceDeleted = instance.All(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier !=
 newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
        }

        Console.WriteLine("DB instance deleted.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">The parameter group to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteParameterGroup(DBParameterGroup parameterGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Delete the parameter group.
        Console.WriteLine($"17. Delete the DB parameter group
 {parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName}.");
        await
 rdsWrapper.DeleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB instance actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with DB
 instance operations.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{
```

```
    private readonly IAmazonRDS _amazonRDS;
    public RDSWrapper(IAmazonRDS amazonRDS)
    {
        _amazonRDS = amazonRDS;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family name.</
param>
    /// <returns>List of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>> DescribeDBEngineVersions(string engine,
        string dbParameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
 DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
 _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
```

```
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstances(string
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create an RDS DB instance with a particular set of properties. Use the
action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbName">Name for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">DB parameter group to associate with the
instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="allocatedStorage">The amount of storage in gibibytes (GiB) to
allocate to the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="adminName">Admin user name.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">Admin user password.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstance(string dbName, string
dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName, string dbEngine, string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass, int allocatedStorage, string adminName, string
adminPassword)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBName = dbName,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                DBParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass,
                AllocatedStorage = allocatedStorage,
                MasterUsername = adminName,
                MasterUserPassword = adminPassword
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstance(string dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB parameter groups.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 parameter groups.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{

    /// <summary>
    /// Get descriptions of DB parameter groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of DB parameter group descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBParameterGroup>> DescribeDBParameterGroups(string name
 = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroups;
    }



    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Create a new DB parameter group. Use the action
 DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="family">Family of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">Description of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB parameter group.</returns>
    public async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDBParameterGroup(
        string name, string family, string description)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new CreateDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = family,
                Description = description
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroup;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Update a DB parameter group. Use the action DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">List of parameters. Maximum of 20 per request.</
param>
    /// <returns>The updated DB parameter group name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyDBParameterGroup(
        string name, List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroupName;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group. The group cannot be a default DB parameter
 group
    /// or be associated with any DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDBParameterGroup(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB parameters from a specific parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupName">Name of a specific DB parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="source">Optional source for selecting parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>List of parameter values.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeDBParameters(string
 dbParameterGroupName, string source = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Parameter>();
        var paginateParameters = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBParameters(
            new DescribeDBParametersRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupName,
                Source = source
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var parameters in paginateParameters.Parameters)
        {
            results.Add(parameters);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for DB snapshot actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) with
 snapshots.
/// </summary>
public partial class RDSWrapper
{

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateDBSnapshot(string dbInstanceIdentifier,
 string snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        return response.DBSnapshot;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBSnapshot>> DescribeDBSnapshots(string
 dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBSnapshot>();
```

```
        var snapshotsPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBSnapshots(
            new DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var snapshots in snapshotsPaginator.DBSnapshots)
        {
            results.Add(snapshots);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an RDS DB instance with a particular set of properties. Use the
action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">Name for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">DB parameter group to associate with the
instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="allocatedStorage">The amount of storage in gibibytes (GiB) to
allocate to the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="adminName">Admin user name.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">Admin user password.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstance(string dbName, string
dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName, string dbEngine, string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass, int allocatedStorage, string adminName, string
adminPassword)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBName = dbName,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                DBParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass,
                AllocatedStorage = allocatedStorage,
```

```
                MasterUsername = adminName,
                MasterUserPassword = adminPassword
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB parameter group. Use the action
DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="family">Family of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">Description of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB parameter group.</returns>
    public async Task<DBParameterGroup> CreateDBParameterGroup(
        string name, string family, string description)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new CreateDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = family,
                Description = description
```

```
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBSnapshot> CreateDBSnapshot(string dbInstanceIdentifier,
string snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });

        return response.DBSnapshot;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a particular DB instance.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
/// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstance(string dbInstanceIdentifier)
{
    var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
        new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
        {
            DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
            SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
            DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
        });

    return response.DBInstance;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a DB parameter group. The group cannot be a default DB parameter
group
    /// or be associated with any DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteDBParameterGroup(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBParameterGroupAsync(
            new DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family name.</
param>
    /// <returns>List of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>> DescribeDBEngineVersions(string engine,
        string dbParameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstances(string
 dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get descriptions of DB parameter groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional name of the DB parameter group to describe.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The list of DB parameter group descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBParameterGroup>> DescribeDBParameterGroups(string name
 = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroups;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB parameters from a specific parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupName">Name of a specific DB parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="source">Optional source for selecting parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>List of parameter values.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeDBParameters(string
 dbParameterGroupName, string source = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Parameter>();
        var paginateParameters = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBParameters(
            new DescribeDBParametersRequest()
```

```
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupName,
                Source = source
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var parameters in paginateParameters.Parameters)
        {
            results.Add(parameters);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBSnapshot>> DescribeDBSnapshots(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBSnapshot>();
        var snapshotsPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBSnapshots(
            new DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
```

```
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var snapshots in snapshotsPaginator.DBSnapshots)
        {
            results.Add(snapshots);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
```

```
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
 paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ModifyDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update a DB parameter group. Use the action DescribeDBParameterGroupsAsync
    /// to determine when the DB parameter group is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">List of parameters. Maximum of 20 per request.</
param>
    /// <returns>The updated DB parameter group name.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyDBParameterGroup(
        string name, List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBParameterGroupAsync(
```

```
            new ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest()
            {
                DBParameterGroupName = name,
                Parameters = parameters,
            });
        return response.DBParameterGroupName;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using .NET.

```
using System.Data;
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.APIGatewayEvents;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using MySql.Data.MySqlClient;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace aws_rds;

public class InputModel
{
    public string key1 { get; set; }
    public string key2 { get; set; }
}

public class Function
{
    /// <summary>
    // Handles the Lambda function execution for connecting to RDS using IAM
 authentication.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="input">The input event data passed to the Lambda function</
param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda execution context that provides runtime
 information</param>
    /// <returns>A response object containing the execution result</returns>

    public async Task<APIGatewayProxyResponse>
 FunctionHandler(APIGatewayProxyRequest request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        // Sample Input: {"body": "{\"key1\":\"20\", \"key2\":\"25\"}"}
        var input = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<InputModel>(request.Body);

        /// Obtain authentication token
        var authToken = RDSAuthTokenGenerator.GenerateAuthToken(
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT"),
            Convert.ToInt32(Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")),
            Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")
        );

        /// Build the Connection String with the Token
        string connectionString =
 $"Server={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_ENDPOINT")};" +

 $"Port={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_PORT")};" +

 $"Uid={Environment.GetEnvironmentVariable("RDS_USERNAME")};" +
                                 $"Pwd={authToken};";


        try
        {
            await using var connection = new MySqlConnection(connectionString);
            await connection.OpenAsync();

            const string sql = "SELECT @param1 + @param2 AS Sum";

            await using var command = new MySqlCommand(sql, connection);
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param1", int.Parse(input.key1 ??
 "0"));
            command.Parameters.AddWithValue("@param2", int.Parse(input.key2 ??
 "0"));

            await using var reader = await command.ExecuteReaderAsync();
            if (await reader.ReadAsync())
```

```
            {
                int result = reader.GetInt32("Sum");

                //Sample Response: {"statusCode":200,"body":"{\"message\":\"The sum
 is: 45\"}","isBase64Encoded":false}
                return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
                {
                    StatusCode = 200,
                    Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { message = $"The sum is:
 {result}" })
                };
            }

        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new APIGatewayProxyResponse
        {
            StatusCode = 500,
            Body = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new { error = "Internal server error" })
        };
    }
}
```

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Rekognition.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CompareFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `CompareFaces`.

For more information, see Comparing faces in images.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to compare faces in two images.
/// </summary>
public class CompareFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        float similarityThreshold = 70F;
        string sourceImage = "source.jpg";
        string targetImage = "target.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image imageSource = new
Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();

            try
            {
                using FileStream fs = new FileStream(sourceImage, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                imageSource.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load source image: {sourceImage}");
                return;
            }

            Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image imageTarget = new
Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();

            try
            {
                using FileStream fs = new FileStream(targetImage, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = new byte[fs.Length];
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                imageTarget.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load target image: {targetImage}");
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                return;
            }

            var compareFacesRequest = new CompareFacesRequest
            {
                SourceImage = imageSource,
                TargetImage = imageTarget,
                SimilarityThreshold = similarityThreshold,
            };
```

```
            // Call operation
            var compareFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.CompareFacesAsync(compareFacesRequest);

            // Display results
            compareFacesResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(match =>
            {
                ComparedFace face = match.Face;
                BoundingBox position = face.BoundingBox;
                Console.WriteLine($"Face at {position.Left} {position.Top} matches
with {match.Similarity}% confidence.");
            });

            Console.WriteLine($"Found {compareFacesResponse.UnmatchedFaces.Count}
face(s) that did not match.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCollection`.

For more information, see Creating a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
```

```
    /// Uses Amazon Rekognition to create a collection to which you can add
    /// faces using the IndexFaces operation.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateCollection
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            Console.WriteLine("Creating collection: " + collectionId);

            var createCollectionRequest = new CreateCollectionRequest
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
            };

            CreateCollectionResponse createCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.CreateCollectionAsync(createCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"CollectionArn :
{createCollectionResponse.CollectionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Status code :
{createCollectionResponse.StatusCode}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCollection`.

For more information, see Deleting a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to delete an existing collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteCollection
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            string collectionId = "MyCollection";
            Console.WriteLine("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);

            var deleteCollectionRequest = new DeleteCollectionRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
            };

            var deleteCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DeleteCollectionAsync(deleteCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"{collectionId}:
{deleteCollectionResponse.StatusCode}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFaces`.

For more information, see Deleting faces from a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to delete one or more faces from
/// a Rekognition collection.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        var faces = new List<string> { "xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx" };

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var deleteFacesRequest = new DeleteFacesRequest()
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
            FaceIds = faces,
        };

        DeleteFacesResponse deleteFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DeleteFacesAsync(deleteFacesRequest);
        deleteFacesResponse.DeletedFaces.ForEach(face =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"FaceID: {face}");
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCollection`.

For more information, see Describing a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to describe the contents of a
/// collection.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeCollection
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        Console.WriteLine($"Describing collection: {collectionId}");

        var describeCollectionRequest = new DescribeCollectionRequest()
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
        };
```

```
            var describeCollectionResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DescribeCollectionAsync(describeCollectionRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Collection ARN:
{describeCollectionResponse.CollectionARN}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face count:
{describeCollectionResponse.FaceCount}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face model version:
{describeCollectionResponse.FaceModelVersion}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Created:
{describeCollectionResponse.CreationTimestamp}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectFaces`.

For more information, see Detecting faces in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect faces within an image
/// stored in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DetectFaces
```

```
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = "input.jpg";
            string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var detectFacesRequest = new DetectFacesRequest()
            {
                Image = new Image()
                {
                    S3Object = new S3Object()
                    {
                        Name = photo,
                        Bucket = bucket,
                    },
                },

                // Attributes can be "ALL" or "DEFAULT".
                // "DEFAULT": BoundingBox, Confidence, Landmarks, Pose, and Quality.
                // "ALL": See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/
items/Rekognition/TFaceDetail.html
                Attributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
            };

            try
            {
                DetectFacesResponse detectFacesResponse = await
 rekognitionClient.DetectFacesAsync(detectFacesRequest);
                bool hasAll = detectFacesRequest.Attributes.Contains("ALL");
                foreach (FaceDetail face in detectFacesResponse.FaceDetails)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"BoundingBox: top={face.BoundingBox.Left}
 left={face.BoundingBox.Top} width={face.BoundingBox.Width}
 height={face.BoundingBox.Height}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {face.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Landmarks: {face.Landmarks.Count}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Pose: pitch={face.Pose.Pitch}
 roll={face.Pose.Roll} yaw={face.Pose.Yaw}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Brightness:
 {face.Quality.Brightness}\tSharpness: {face.Quality.Sharpness}");

                    if (hasAll)
```

```
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"Estimated age is between
{face.AgeRange.Low} and {face.AgeRange.High} years old.");
                    }
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

Display bounding box information for all faces in an image.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Drawing;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to display the details of the
    /// bounding boxes around the faces detected in an image.
    /// </summary>
    public class ImageOrientationBoundingBox
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = @"D:\Development\AWS-Examples\Rekognition\target.jpg"; //
"photo.jpg";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var image = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
```

```
                byte[] data = null;
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                image.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to load file " + photo);
                return;
            }

            int height;
            int width;

            // Used to extract original photo width/height
            using (var imageBitmap = new Bitmap(photo))
            {
                height = imageBitmap.Height;
                width = imageBitmap.Width;
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Image Information:");
            Console.WriteLine(photo);
            Console.WriteLine("Image Height: " + height);
            Console.WriteLine("Image Width: " + width);

            try
            {
                var detectFacesRequest = new DetectFacesRequest()
                {
                    Image = image,
                    Attributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
                };

                DetectFacesResponse detectFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectFacesAsync(detectFacesRequest);
                detectFacesResponse.FaceDetails.ForEach(face =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Face:");
                    ShowBoundingBoxPositions(
                        height,
                        width,
                        face.BoundingBox,
                        detectFacesResponse.OrientationCorrection);
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine($"BoundingBox: top={face.BoundingBox.Left}
 left={face.BoundingBox.Top} width={face.BoundingBox.Width}
 height={face.BoundingBox.Height}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"The detected face is estimated to be between
 {face.AgeRange.Low} and {face.AgeRange.High} years old.\n");
                });
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Display the bounding box information for an image.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="imageHeight">The height of the image.</param>
        /// <param name="imageWidth">The width of the image.</param>
        /// <param name="box">The bounding box for a face found within the image.</
param>
        /// <param name="rotation">The rotation of the face's bounding box.</param>
        public static void ShowBoundingBoxPositions(int imageHeight, int imageWidth,
 BoundingBox box, string rotation)
        {
            float left;
            float top;

            if (rotation == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No estimated orientation. Check Exif data.");
                return;
            }

            // Calculate face position based on image orientation.
            switch (rotation)
            {
                case "ROTATE_0":
                    left = imageWidth * box.Left;
                    top = imageHeight * box.Top;
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_90":
                    left = imageHeight * (1 - (box.Top + box.Height));
                    top = imageWidth * box.Left;
```

```
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_180":
                    left = imageWidth - (imageWidth * (box.Left + box.Width));
                    top = imageHeight * (1 - (box.Top + box.Height));
                    break;
                case "ROTATE_270":
                    left = imageHeight * box.Top;
                    top = imageWidth * (1 - box.Left - box.Width);
                    break;
                default:
                    Console.WriteLine("No estimated orientation information. Check
Exif data.");
                    return;
            }

            // Display face location information.
            Console.WriteLine($"Left: {left}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Top: {top}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face Width: {imageWidth * box.Width}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Face Height: {imageHeight * box.Height}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
```

```
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect labels within an image
/// stored in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DetectLabels
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string photo = "del_river_02092020_01.jpg"; // "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // "bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectlabelsRequest = new DetectLabelsRequest
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
                },
            },
            MaxLabels = 10,
            MinConfidence = 75F,
        };

        try
        {
            DetectLabelsResponse detectLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectLabelsAsync(detectlabelsRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Detected labels for " + photo);
            foreach (Label label in detectLabelsResponse.Labels)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Name: {label.Name} Confidence:
{label.Confidence}");
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

Detect labels in an image file stored on your computer.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect labels within an image
    /// stored locally.
    /// </summary>
    public class DetectLabelsLocalFile
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string photo = "input.jpg";

            var image = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
            try
            {
                using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
                byte[] data = null;
                data = new byte[fs.Length];
                fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
                image.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            }
            catch (Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to load file " + photo);
                return;
            }

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            var detectlabelsRequest = new DetectLabelsRequest
            {
                Image = image,
                MaxLabels = 10,
                MinConfidence = 77F,
            };

            try
            {
                DetectLabelsResponse detectLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectLabelsAsync(detectlabelsRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Detected labels for {photo}");
                foreach (Label label in detectLabelsResponse.Labels)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{label.Name}: {label.Confidence}");
                }
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectModerationLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectModerationLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting inappropriate images.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect unsafe content in a
/// JPEG or PNG format image.
/// </summary>
public class DetectModerationLabels
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        string photo = "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var detectModerationLabelsRequest = new DetectModerationLabelsRequest()
        {
            Image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Name = photo,
                    Bucket = bucket,
                },
            },
            MinConfidence = 60F,
        };

        try
        {
            var detectModerationLabelsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectModerationLabelsAsync(detectModerationLabelsRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Detected labels for " + photo);
            foreach (ModerationLabel label in
detectModerationLabelsResponse.ModerationLabels)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Label: {label.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {label.Confidence}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Parent: {label.ParentName}");
            }
```

```
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DetectText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectText`.

For more information, see Detecting text in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect text in an image. The
/// example was created using the AWS SDK for .NET version 3.7 and .NET
/// Core 5.0.
/// </summary>
public class DetectText
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string photo = "Dad_photographer.jpg"; // "input.jpg";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // "bucket";
```

```
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var detectTextRequest = new DetectTextRequest()
            {
                Image = new Image()
                {
                    S3Object = new S3Object()
                    {
                        Name = photo,
                        Bucket = bucket,
                    },
                },
            };

            try
            {
                DetectTextResponse detectTextResponse = await
rekognitionClient.DetectTextAsync(detectTextRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Detected lines and words for {photo}");
                detectTextResponse.TextDetections.ForEach(text =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Detected: {text.DetectedText}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Confidence: {text.Confidence}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Id : {text.Id}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Parent Id: {text.ParentId}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"Type: {text.Type}");
                });
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetCelebrityInfo`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCelebrityInfo`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition to retrieve information about the
/// celebrity identified by the supplied celebrity Id.
/// </summary>
public class CelebrityInfo
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string celebId = "nnnnnnnn";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var celebrityInfoRequest = new GetCelebrityInfoRequest
        {
            Id = celebId,
        };

        Console.WriteLine($"Getting information for celebrity: {celebId}");

        var celebrityInfoResponse = await
rekognitionClient.GetCelebrityInfoAsync(celebrityInfoRequest);

        // Display celebrity information.
        Console.WriteLine($"celebrity name: {celebrityInfoResponse.Name}");
        Console.WriteLine("Further information (if available):");
        celebrityInfoResponse.Urls.ForEach(url =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine(url);
        });
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCelebrityInfo in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`IndexFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `IndexFaces`.

For more information, see Adding faces to a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to detect faces in an image
/// that has been uploaded to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// bucket and then adds the information to a collection.
/// </summary>
public class AddFaces
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection2";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string photo = "input.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();
```

```
            var image = new Image
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object
                {
                    Bucket = bucket,
                    Name = photo,
                },
            };

            var indexFacesRequest = new IndexFacesRequest
            {
                Image = image,
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                ExternalImageId = photo,
                DetectionAttributes = new List<string>() { "ALL" },
            };

            IndexFacesResponse indexFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.IndexFacesAsync(indexFacesRequest);

            Console.WriteLine($"{photo} added");
            foreach (FaceRecord faceRecord in indexFacesResponse.FaceRecords)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Face detected: Faceid is
{faceRecord.Face.FaceId}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListCollections`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCollections`.

For more information, see Listing collections.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses Amazon Rekognition to list the collection IDs in the
/// current account.
/// </summary>
public class ListCollections
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Listing collections");
        int limit = 10;

        var listCollectionsRequest = new ListCollectionsRequest
        {
            MaxResults = limit,
        };

        var listCollectionsResponse = new ListCollectionsResponse();

        do
        {
            if (listCollectionsResponse is not null)
            {
                listCollectionsRequest.NextToken =
listCollectionsResponse.NextToken;
            }
```

```
                listCollectionsResponse = await
rekognitionClient.ListCollectionsAsync(listCollectionsRequest);

                listCollectionsResponse.CollectionIds.ForEach(id =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(id);
                });
            }
            while (listCollectionsResponse.NextToken is not null);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFaces`.

For more information, see Listing faces in a collection.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Rekognition;
    using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to retrieve the list of faces
    /// stored in a collection.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListFaces
    {
```

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string collectionId = "MyCollection2";

            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            var listFacesResponse = new ListFacesResponse();
            Console.WriteLine($"Faces in collection {collectionId}");

            var listFacesRequest = new ListFacesRequest
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                MaxResults = 1,
            };

            do
            {
                listFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.ListFacesAsync(listFacesRequest);
                listFacesResponse.Faces.ForEach(face =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(face.FaceId);
                });

                listFacesRequest.NextToken = listFacesResponse.NextToken;
            }
            while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(listFacesResponse.NextToken));
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RecognizeCelebrities`

The following code example shows how to use `RecognizeCelebrities`.

For more information, see Recognizing celebrities in an image.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition to identify celebrities in a photo.
/// </summary>
public class CelebritiesInImage
{
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        string photo = "moviestars.jpg";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        var recognizeCelebritiesRequest = new RecognizeCelebritiesRequest();

        var img = new Amazon.Rekognition.Model.Image();
        byte[] data = null;
        try
        {
            using var fs = new FileStream(photo, FileMode.Open,
FileAccess.Read);
            data = new byte[fs.Length];
            fs.Read(data, 0, (int)fs.Length);
        }
        catch (Exception)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Failed to load file {photo}");
            return;
        }
```

```
            img.Bytes = new MemoryStream(data);
            recognizeCelebritiesRequest.Image = img;

            Console.WriteLine($"Looking for celebrities in image {photo}\n");

            var recognizeCelebritiesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.RecognizeCelebritiesAsync(recognizeCelebritiesRequest);

            Console.WriteLine($"{recognizeCelebritiesResponse.CelebrityFaces.Count}
celebrity(s) were recognized.\n");
            recognizeCelebritiesResponse.CelebrityFaces.ForEach(celeb =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Celebrity recognized: {celeb.Name}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Celebrity ID: {celeb.Id}");
                BoundingBox boundingBox = celeb.Face.BoundingBox;
                Console.WriteLine($"position: {boundingBox.Left}
{boundingBox.Top}");
                Console.WriteLine("Further information (if available):");
                celeb.Urls.ForEach(url =>
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(url);
                });
            });


Console.WriteLine($"{recognizeCelebritiesResponse.UnrecognizedFaces.Count} face(s)
were unrecognized.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SearchFaces

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFaces`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (face ID).

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to find faces in an image that
/// match the face Id provided in the method request.
/// </summary>
public class SearchFacesMatchingId
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        string faceId = "xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx";

        var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

        // Search collection for faces matching the face id.
        var searchFacesRequest = new SearchFacesRequest
        {
            CollectionId = collectionId,
            FaceId = faceId,
            FaceMatchThreshold = 70F,
            MaxFaces = 2,
        };

        SearchFacesResponse searchFacesResponse = await
rekognitionClient.SearchFacesAsync(searchFacesRequest);

        Console.WriteLine("Face matching faceId " + faceId);

        Console.WriteLine("Matche(s): ");
        searchFacesResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(face =>
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceId: {face.Face.FaceId} Similarity:
{face.Similarity}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SearchFacesByImage`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFacesByImage`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (image).

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Rekognition;
using Amazon.Rekognition.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Rekognition Service to search for images matching those
/// in a collection.
/// </summary>
public class SearchFacesMatchingImage
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string collectionId = "MyCollection";
        string bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string photo = "input.jpg";
```

```
            var rekognitionClient = new AmazonRekognitionClient();

            // Get an image object from S3 bucket.
            var image = new Image()
            {
                S3Object = new S3Object()
                {
                    Bucket = bucket,
                    Name = photo,
                },
            };

            var searchFacesByImageRequest = new SearchFacesByImageRequest()
            {
                CollectionId = collectionId,
                Image = image,
                FaceMatchThreshold = 70F,
                MaxFaces = 2,
            };

            SearchFacesByImageResponse searchFacesByImageResponse = await
rekognitionClient.SearchFacesByImageAsync(searchFacesByImageRequest);

            Console.WriteLine("Faces matching largest face in image from " + photo);
            searchFacesByImageResponse.FaceMatches.ForEach(face =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"FaceId: {face.Face.FaceId}, Similarity:
{face.Similarity}");
            });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Route 53 domain registration.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Route 53 domain registration

The following code examples show how to get started using Route 53 domain registration.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public static class HelloRoute53Domains
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon Route 53 domain registration service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
```

```
        var route53Client =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await route53Client.ListPricesAsync(new ListPricesRequest
{ Tld = "com" });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon Route 53 Domains! Following are prices
for .com domain operations:");
        var comPrices = response.Prices.FirstOrDefault();
        if (comPrices != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration: {comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Price}
{comPrices.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Price}
{comPrices.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List current domains, and list operations in the past year.
- View billing for the past year, and view prices for domain types.
- Get domain suggestions.
- Check domain availability and transferability.
- Optionally, request a domain registration.
- Get an operation detail.
- Optionally, get a domain detail.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public static class Route53DomainScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. List current domains.
        2. List operations in the past year.
        3. View billing for the account in the past year.
        4. View prices for domain types.
        5. Get domain suggestions.
        6. Check domain availability.
        7. Check domain transferability.
        8. Optionally, request a domain registration.
        9. Get an operation detail.
       10. Optionally, get a domain detail.
   */

    private static Route53Wrapper _route53Wrapper = null!;
    private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
                    .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
```

```
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRoute53Domains>()
                .AddTransient<Route53Wrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        var logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger(typeof(Route53DomainScenario));

        _route53Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<Route53Wrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example
scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            await ListDomains();
            await ListOperations();
            await ListBillingRecords();
            await ListPrices();
            await ListDomainSuggestions();
            await CheckDomainAvailability();
            await CheckDomainTransferability();
            var operationId = await RequestDomainRegistration();
            await GetOperationalDetail(operationId);
            await GetDomainDetails();
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon Route 53 domains example scenario is
complete.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List account registered domains.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDomains()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"1. List account domains.");
        var domains = await _route53Wrapper.ListDomains();
        for (int i = 0; i < domains.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {domains[i].DomainName}");
        }

        if (!domains.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo domains found in this account.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List domain operations in the past year.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListOperations()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"2. List account domain operations in the past year.");
        var operations = await _route53Wrapper.ListOperations(
            DateTime.Today.AddYears(-1));
        for (int i = 0; i < operations.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOperation Id: {operations[i].OperationId}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tStatus: {operations[i].Status}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDate: {operations[i].SubmittedDate}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List billing in the past year.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListBillingRecords()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"3. View billing for the account in the past year.");
        var billingRecords = await _route53Wrapper.ViewBilling(
            DateTime.Today.AddYears(-1),
            DateTime.Today);
        for (int i = 0; i < billingRecords.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBill Date:
{billingRecords[i].BillDate.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOperation: {billingRecords[i].Operation}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tPrice: {billingRecords[i].Price}");
        }
        if (!billingRecords.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo billing records found in this account for the
past year.");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for a few domain types.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListPrices()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. View prices for domain types.");
        var domainTypes = new List<string> { "net", "com", "org", "co" };

        var prices = await _route53Wrapper.ListPrices(domainTypes);
        foreach (var pr in prices)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tName: {pr.Name}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRegistration: {pr.RegistrationPrice?.Price}
{pr.RegistrationPrice?.Currency}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRenewal: {pr.RenewalPrice?.Price}
{pr.RenewalPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTransfer: {pr.TransferPrice?.Price}
{pr.TransferPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tChange Ownership: {pr.ChangeOwnershipPrice?.Price}
{pr.ChangeOwnershipPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tRestoration: {pr.RestorationPrice?.Price}
{pr.RestorationPrice?.Currency}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List domain suggestions for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ListDomainSuggestions()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"5. Get domain suggestions.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to get available domain
suggestions.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var suggestions = await _route53Wrapper.GetDomainSuggestions(domainName,
true, 5);
        foreach (var suggestion in suggestions)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSuggestion Name: {suggestion.DomainName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAvailability: {suggestion.Availability}");
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check availability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckDomainAvailability()
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. Check domain availability.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to check domain availability.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var availability = await
_route53Wrapper.CheckDomainAvailability(domainName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAvailability: {availability}");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check transferability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CheckDomainTransferability()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Check domain transferability.");
        string? domainName = null;
        while (domainName == null || string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(domainName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enter a domain name to check domain
transferability.");
            domainName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var transferability = await
_route53Wrapper.CheckDomainTransferability(domainName);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTransferability: {transferability}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check transferability for a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> RequestDomainRegistration()
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. Optionally, request a domain registration.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNote: This example uses domain request settings in
 settings.json.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tTo change the domain registration settings, set the
 values in that file.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRemember, registering an actual domain will incur an
 account billing cost.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tWould you like to begin a domain registration? (y/
n)");
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        if (ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase))
        {
            string domainName = _configuration["DomainName"];
            ContactDetail contact = new ContactDetail();
            contact.CountryCode =
 CountryCode.FindValue(_configuration["Contact:CountryCode"]);
            contact.ContactType =
 ContactType.FindValue(_configuration["Contact:ContactType"]);

            _configuration.GetSection("Contact").Bind(contact);

            var operationId = await _route53Wrapper.RegisterDomain(
                domainName,
                Convert.ToBoolean(_configuration["AutoRenew"]),
                Convert.ToInt32(_configuration["DurationInYears"]),
                contact);
            if (operationId != null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tRegistration requested. Operation Id: {operationId}");
            }

            return operationId;
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return null;
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get details for an operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task GetOperationalDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Get an operation detail.");

        var operationDetails =
            await _route53Wrapper.GetOperationDetail(operationId);

        Console.WriteLine(operationDetails);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Optionally, get details for a registered domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string?> GetDomainDetails()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Get details on a domain.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNote: you must have a registered domain to get
details.");
        Console.WriteLine($"\tWould you like to get domain details? (y/n)");
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        if (ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase))
        {
            string? domainName = null;
            while (domainName == null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tEnter a domain name to get details.");
                domainName = Console.ReadLine();
            }

            var domainDetails = await _route53Wrapper.GetDomainDetail(domainName);
            Console.WriteLine(domainDetails);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        return null;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for Route 53 domain registration actions.

```
public class Route53Wrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRoute53Domains _amazonRoute53Domains;
    private readonly ILogger<Route53Wrapper> _logger;
    public Route53Wrapper(IAmazonRoute53Domains amazonRoute53Domains,
 ILogger<Route53Wrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonRoute53Domains = amazonRoute53Domains;
        _logger = logger;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for domain type operations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domainTypes">Domain types to include in the results.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of domain prices.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainPrice>> ListPrices(List<string> domainTypes)
    {
        var results = new List<DomainPrice>();
        var paginatePrices = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListPrices(new
 ListPricesRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var prices in paginatePrices.Prices)
        {
            results.Add(prices);
        }
        return results.Where(p => domainTypes.Contains(p.Name)).ToList();
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Check the availability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for availability.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>An availability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainAvailability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainAvailabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Availability.Value;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Check the transferability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for transferability.</param>
    /// <returns>A transferability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainTransferability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainTransferabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Transferability.Transferable.Value;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of suggestions for a given domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for suggestions.</param>
    /// <param name="onlyAvailable">If true, only returns available domains.</param>
    /// <param name="suggestionCount">The number of suggestions to return. Defaults
 to the max of 50.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain suggestions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSuggestion>> GetDomainSuggestions(string domain,
 bool onlyAvailable, int suggestionCount = 50)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainSuggestionsAsync(
            new GetDomainSuggestionsRequest
            {
```

```
                DomainName = domain,
                OnlyAvailable = onlyAvailable,
                SuggestionCount = suggestionCount
            }
        );
        return result.SuggestionsList;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain action operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The operational Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A string describing the operational details.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetOperationDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        if (operationId == null)
            return "Unable to get operational details because ID is null.";
        try
        {
            var operationDetails =
                await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetOperationDetailAsync(
                    new GetOperationDetailRequest
                    {
                        OperationId = operationId
                    }
                );

            var details = $"\tOperation {operationId}:\n" +
                          $"\tFor domain {operationDetails.DomainName} on
{operationDetails.SubmittedDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                          $"\tMessage is {operationDetails.Message}.\n" +
                          $"\tStatus is {operationDetails.Status}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (AmazonRoute53DomainsException ex)
        {
            return $"Unable to get operation details. Here's why: {ex.Message}.";
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Initiate a domain registration request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contact">Contact details.</param>
    /// <param name="domainName">The domain name to register.</param>
    /// <param name="autoRenew">True if the domain should automatically renew.</
param>
    /// <param name="duration">The duration in years for the domain registration.</
param>
    /// <returns>The operation Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> RegisterDomain(string domainName, bool autoRenew, int
 duration, ContactDetail contact)
    {
        // This example uses the same contact information for admin, registrant, and
 tech contacts.
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.RegisterDomainAsync(
                new RegisterDomainRequest()
                {
                    AdminContact = contact,
                    RegistrantContact = contact,
                    TechContact = contact,
                    DomainName = domainName,
                    AutoRenew = autoRenew,
                    DurationInYears = duration,
                    PrivacyProtectAdminContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectTechContact = false
                }
            );
            return result.OperationId;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            _logger.LogInformation($"Unable to request registration for domain
 {domainName}");
            return null;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// View billing records for the account between a start and end date.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="startDate">The start date for billing results.</param>
    /// <param name="endDate">The end date for billing results.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BillingRecord>> ViewBilling(DateTime startDate, DateTime
endDate)
    {
        var results = new List<BillingRecord>();
        var paginateBilling = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ViewBilling(
            new ViewBillingRequest()
            {
                Start = startDate,
                End = endDate
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var billingRecords in paginateBilling.BillingRecords)
        {
            results.Add(billingRecords);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List the domains for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSummary>> ListDomains()
    {
        var results = new List<DomainSummary>();
        var paginateDomains = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListDomains(
            new ListDomainsRequest());

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var domain in paginateDomains.Domains)
        {
            results.Add(domain);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List operations for the account that are submitted after a specified date.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of operation summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OperationSummary>> ListOperations(DateTime
 submittedSince)
    {
        var results = new List<OperationSummary>();
        var paginateOperations = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListOperations(
            new ListOperationsRequest()
            {
                SubmittedSince = submittedSince
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var operations in paginateOperations.Operations)
        {
            results.Add(operations);
        }
        return results;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string with detail information about the domain.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDomainDetail(string domainName)
    {
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainDetailAsync(
                new GetDomainDetailRequest()
                {
                    DomainName = domainName
                });
            var details = $"\tDomain {domainName}:\n" +
                          $"\tCreated on {result.CreationDate.ToShortDateString()}.
\n" +
                          $"\tAdmin contact is {result.AdminContact.Email}.\n" +
                          $"\tAuto-renew is {result.AutoRenew}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
```

```
            return $"Domain {domainName} was not found in your account.";
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail
  - GetDomainSuggestions
  - GetOperationDetail
  - ListDomains
  - ListOperations
  - ListPrices
  - RegisterDomain
  - ViewBilling

Actions

`CheckDomainAvailability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainAvailability`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the availability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for availability.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>An availability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainAvailability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainAvailabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
        return result.Availability.Value;
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CheckDomainTransferability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainTransferability`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the transferability of a domain name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for transferability.</param>
    /// <returns>A transferability result string.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CheckDomainTransferability(string domain)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.CheckDomainTransferabilityAsync(
            new CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain
            }
        );
```

```
        return result.Transferability.Transferable.Value;
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDomainDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainDetail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string with detail information about the domain.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetDomainDetail(string domainName)
    {
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainDetailAsync(
                new GetDomainDetailRequest()
                {
                    DomainName = domainName
                });
            var details = $"\tDomain {domainName}:\n" +
                          $"\tCreated on {result.CreationDate.ToShortDateString()}.
\n" +
                          $"\tAdmin contact is {result.AdminContact.Email}.\n" +
                          $"\tAuto-renew is {result.AutoRenew}.\n";

            return details;
        }
        catch (InvalidInputException)
```

```
        {
            return $"Domain {domainName} was not found in your account.";
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetDomainSuggestions`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainSuggestions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of suggestions for a given domain.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domain">The domain to check for suggestions.</param>
    /// <param name="onlyAvailable">If true, only returns available domains.</param>
    /// <param name="suggestionCount">The number of suggestions to return. Defaults
to the max of 50.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain suggestions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSuggestion>> GetDomainSuggestions(string domain,
bool onlyAvailable, int suggestionCount = 50)
    {
        var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetDomainSuggestionsAsync(
            new GetDomainSuggestionsRequest
            {
                DomainName = domain,
                OnlyAvailable = onlyAvailable,
                SuggestionCount = suggestionCount
            }
        );
        return result.SuggestionsList;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetOperationDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOperationDetail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details for a domain action operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The operational Id.</param>
    /// <returns>A string describing the operational details.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetOperationDetail(string? operationId)
    {
        if (operationId == null)
            return "Unable to get operational details because ID is null.";
        try
        {
            var operationDetails =
                await _amazonRoute53Domains.GetOperationDetailAsync(
                    new GetOperationDetailRequest
                    {
                        OperationId = operationId
                    }
                );

            var details = $"\tOperation {operationId}:\n" +
                          $"\tFor domain {operationDetails.DomainName} on
{operationDetails.SubmittedDate.ToShortDateString()}.\n" +
                          $"\tMessage is {operationDetails.Message}.\n" +
                          $"\tStatus is {operationDetails.Status}.\n";
```

```
            return details;
        }
        catch (AmazonRoute53DomainsException ex)
        {
            return $"Unable to get operation details. Here's why: {ex.Message}.";
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListDomains`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDomains`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the domains for the account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of domain summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainSummary>> ListDomains()
    {
        var results = new List<DomainSummary>();
        var paginateDomains = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListDomains(
            new ListDomainsRequest());

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var domain in paginateDomains.Domains)
        {
            results.Add(domain);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListOperations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOperations`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List operations for the account that are submitted after a specified date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of operation summary records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OperationSummary>> ListOperations(DateTime
submittedSince)
    {
        var results = new List<OperationSummary>();
        var paginateOperations = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListOperations(
            new ListOperationsRequest()
            {
                SubmittedSince = submittedSince
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var operations in paginateOperations.Operations)
        {
            results.Add(operations);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListPrices`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPrices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List prices for domain type operations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="domainTypes">Domain types to include in the results.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of domain prices.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DomainPrice>> ListPrices(List<string> domainTypes)
    {
        var results = new List<DomainPrice>();
        var paginatePrices = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ListPrices(new
ListPricesRequest());
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var prices in paginatePrices.Prices)
        {
            results.Add(prices);
        }
        return results.Where(p => domainTypes.Contains(p.Name)).ToList();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RegisterDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterDomain`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Initiate a domain registration request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contact">Contact details.</param>
    /// <param name="domainName">The domain name to register.</param>
    /// <param name="autoRenew">True if the domain should automatically renew.</
param>
    /// <param name="duration">The duration in years for the domain registration.</
param>
    /// <returns>The operation Id.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> RegisterDomain(string domainName, bool autoRenew, int
 duration, ContactDetail contact)
    {
        // This example uses the same contact information for admin, registrant, and
 tech contacts.
        try
        {
            var result = await _amazonRoute53Domains.RegisterDomainAsync(
                new RegisterDomainRequest()
                {
                    AdminContact = contact,
                    RegistrantContact = contact,
                    TechContact = contact,
                    DomainName = domainName,
                    AutoRenew = autoRenew,
                    DurationInYears = duration,
                    PrivacyProtectAdminContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectRegistrantContact = false,
                    PrivacyProtectTechContact = false
                }
            );
            return result.OperationId;
        }
```

```
        catch (InvalidInputException)
        {
            _logger.LogInformation($"Unable to request registration for domain
{domainName}");
            return null;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ViewBilling`

The following code example shows how to use `ViewBilling`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// View billing records for the account between a start and end date.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="startDate">The start date for billing results.</param>
    /// <param name="endDate">The end date for billing results.</param>
    /// <returns>A collection of billing records.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BillingRecord>> ViewBilling(DateTime startDate, DateTime
endDate)
    {
        var results = new List<BillingRecord>();
        var paginateBilling = _amazonRoute53Domains.Paginators.ViewBilling(
            new ViewBillingRequest()
            {
                Start = startDate,
                End = endDate
            });

        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
```

```
        await foreach (var billingRecords in paginateBilling.BillingRecords)
        {
            results.Add(billingRecords);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.

- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public class S3_Basics
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create an Amazon S3 client object. The constructor uses the
            // default user installed on the system. To work with Amazon S3
            // features in a different AWS Region, pass the AWS Region as a
            // parameter to the client constructor.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
            string bucketName = string.Empty;
            string filePath = string.Empty;
            string keyName = string.Empty;

            var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) basic");
            Console.WriteLine("procedures. This application will:");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t1. Create a bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t2. Upload an object to the new bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t3. Copy the uploaded object to a folder in the
bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t4. List the items in the new bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t5. Delete all the items in the bucket");
            Console.WriteLine("\n\t6. Delete the bucket");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
```

```
            // Create a bucket.
            Console.WriteLine($"\n{sepBar}");
            Console.WriteLine("\nCreate a new Amazon S3 bucket.\n");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

            Console.Write("Please enter a name for the new bucket: ");
            bucketName = Console.ReadLine();

            var success = await S3Bucket.CreateBucketAsync(client, bucketName);
            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created bucket: {bucketName}.\n");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not create bucket: {bucketName}.\n");
            }

            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
            Console.WriteLine("Upload a file to the new bucket.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

            // Get the local path and filename for the file to upload.
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(filePath))
            {
                Console.Write("Please enter the path and filename of the file to
upload: ");
                filePath = Console.ReadLine();

                // Confirm that the file exists on the local computer.
                if (!File.Exists(filePath))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find {filePath}. Try again.\n");
                    filePath = string.Empty;
                }
            }

            // Get the file name from the full path.
            keyName = Path.GetFileName(filePath);

            success = await S3Bucket.UploadFileAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
filePath);

            if (success)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded {keyName} from {filePath}
to {bucketName}.\n");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {keyName}.\n");
            }

            // Set the file path to an empty string to avoid overwriting the
            // file we just uploaded to the bucket.
            filePath = string.Empty;

            // Now get a new location where we can save the file.
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(filePath))
            {
                // First get the path to which the file will be downloaded.
                Console.Write("Please enter the path where the file will be
downloaded: ");
                filePath = Console.ReadLine();

                // Confirm that the file exists on the local computer.
                if (File.Exists($"{filePath}\\{keyName}"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Sorry, the file already exists in that
location.\n");
                    filePath = string.Empty;
                }
            }

            // Download an object from a bucket.
            success = await S3Bucket.DownloadObjectFromBucketAsync(client,
bucketName, keyName, filePath);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully downloaded {keyName}.\n");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Sorry, could not download {keyName}.\n");
            }

            // Copy the object to a different folder in the bucket.
```

```
            string folderName = string.Empty;

            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(folderName))
            {
                Console.Write("Please enter the name of the folder to copy your
object to: ");
                folderName = Console.ReadLine();
            }

            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(keyName))
            {
                // Get the name to give to the object once uploaded.
                Console.Write("Enter the name of the object to copy: ");
                keyName = Console.ReadLine();
            }

            await S3Bucket.CopyObjectInBucketAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
folderName);

            // List the objects in the bucket.
            await S3Bucket.ListBucketContentsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Delete the contents of the bucket.
            await S3Bucket.DeleteBucketContentsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Deleting the bucket too quickly after deleting its contents will
            // cause an error that the bucket isn't empty. So...
            Console.WriteLine("Press <Enter> when you are ready to delete the
bucket.");
            _ = Console.ReadLine();

            // Delete the bucket.
            await S3Bucket.DeleteBucketAsync(client, bucketName);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket

- DeleteObjects
- GetObject
- ListObjectsV2
- PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

public class CopyObject
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // Specify the AWS Region where your buckets are located if it is
        // different from the AWS Region of the default user.
        IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

        // Remember to change these values to refer to your Amazon S3 objects.
        string sourceBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
        string destinationBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
        string sourceObjectKey = "testfile.txt";
        string destinationObjectKey = "testfilecopy.txt";

        Console.WriteLine($"Copying {sourceObjectKey} from {sourceBucketName} to
");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"{destinationBucketName} as {destinationObjectKey}");

            var response = await CopyingObjectAsync(
                s3Client,
                sourceObjectKey,
                destinationObjectKey,
                sourceBucketName,
                destinationBucketName);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nCopy complete.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method calls the AWS SDK for .NET to copy an
        /// object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceKey">The name of the object to be copied.</param>
        /// <param name="destinationKey">The name under which to save the copy.</
param>
        /// <param name="sourceBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket
        /// where the file is located now.</param>
        /// <param name="destinationBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3
        /// bucket where the copy should be saved.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a CopyObjectResponse object with the results from
        /// the async call.</returns>
        public static async Task<CopyObjectResponse> CopyingObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string sourceKey,
            string destinationKey,
            string sourceBucketName,
            string destinationBucketName)
        {
            var response = new CopyObjectResponse();
            try
            {
                var request = new CopyObjectRequest
                {
                    SourceBucket = sourceBucketName,
                    SourceKey = sourceKey,
                    DestinationBucket = destinationBucketName,
```

```
                    DestinationKey = destinationKey,
                };
                response = await client.CopyObjectAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error copying object: '{ex.Message}'");
            }

            return response;
        }
    }
```

Copy an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
 request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceKey">The key of the source object to copy.</param>
    /// <param name="destKey">The key of the destination object.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The destination bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition to apply, e.g.
 'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional copy is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CopyObjectConditional(string sourceKey, string destKey,
 string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var copyObjectRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
```

```
                DestinationBucket = destBucket,
                DestinationKey = destKey,
                SourceBucket = sourceBucket,
                SourceKey = sourceKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            await _amazonS3.CopyObjectAsync(copyObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional copy successful for key {destKey}
in bucket {destBucket}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "304")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to create a new Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value representing the success or failure of
        /// the bucket creation process.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new PutBucketRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    UseClientRegion = true,
                };

                var response = await client.PutBucketAsync(request);
```

```
                return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Create a bucket with object lock enabled.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <param name="enableObjectLock">True to enable object lock on the bucket.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithObjectLock(string bucketName, bool
 enableObjectLock)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName} with object lock
 {enableObjectLock}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true,
                ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = enableObjectLock,
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to delete an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to delete.</
param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value that represents the success or failure of
        /// the delete operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new DeleteBucketRequest { BucketName = bucketName, };

                await client.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting bucket: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketCors`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes a CORS configuration from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to delete the CORS configuration from the bucket.</param>
        private static async Task DeleteCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client
client)
        {
            DeleteCORSConfigurationRequest request = new
DeleteCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
            };
            await client.DeleteCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketLifecycle`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketLifecycle`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// This method removes the Lifecycle configuration from the named
        /// S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client object used to call
        /// the RemoveLifecycleConfigAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// S3 bucket from which the configuration will be removed.</param>
        public static async Task RemoveLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            var request = new DeleteLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };
            await client.DeleteLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketLifecycle in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object in a non-versioned S3 bucket.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to delete an object from a non-versioned Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class DeleteObject
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The Main method initializes the necessary variables and then calls
    /// the DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync method to delete the object
    /// named by the keyName parameter.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        const string keyName = "testfile.txt";

        // If the Amazon S3 bucket is located in an AWS Region other than the
        // Region of the default account, define the AWS Region for the
        // Amazon S3 bucket in your call to the AmazonS3Client constructor.
        // For example RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
        await DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// The DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync takes care of deleting the
    /// desired object from the named bucket.
    /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client used to delete
        /// an object from an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which the
        /// object will be deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to delete.</param>
        public static async Task DeleteObjectNonVersionedBucketAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var deleteObjectRequest = new DeleteObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };

                Console.WriteLine($"Deleting object: {keyName}");
                await client.DeleteObjectAsync(deleteObjectRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Object: {keyName} deleted from {bucketName}.");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
Message:'{ex.Message}' when deleting an object.");
            }
        }
    }
```

Delete an object in a versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example creates an object in an Amazon Simple Storage Service
    /// (Amazon S3) bucket and then deletes the object version that was
    /// created.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteObjectVersion
```

```
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "verstioned-object.txt";

            // If the AWS Region of the default user is different from the AWS
            // Region of the Amazon S3 bucket, pass the AWS Region of the
            // bucket region to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // Define it like this:
            //      RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await CreateAndDeleteObjectVersionAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates and then deletes a versioned object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// create and delete the object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
        /// object will be created and deleted.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The key name of the object to create.</param>
        public static async Task CreateAndDeleteObjectVersionAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                // Add a sample object.
                string versionID = await PutAnObject(client, bucketName, keyName);

                // Delete the object by specifying an object key and a version ID.
                DeleteObjectRequest request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    VersionId = versionID,
                };

                Console.WriteLine("Deleting an object");
                await client.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method is used to create the temporary Amazon S3 object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 object which will be used
        /// to create the temporary Amazon S3 object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object
        /// will be created.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the Amazon S3 object co create.</
param>
        /// <returns>The Version ID of the created object.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> PutAnObject(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
            };

            PutObjectResponse response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
            return response.VersionId;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete all objects in an S3 bucket.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Delete all of the objects stored in an existing Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which the
        /// contents will be deleted.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value that represents the success or failure of
        /// deleting all of the objects in the bucket.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DeleteBucketContentsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName)
        {
            // Iterate over the contents of the bucket and delete all objects.
            var request = new ListObjectsV2Request
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };

            try
            {
                ListObjectsV2Response response;

                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);
                    response.S3Objects
                        .ForEach(async obj => await
client.DeleteObjectAsync(bucketName, obj.Key));

                    // If the response is truncated, set the request
ContinuationToken
                    // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
                    request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
```

```
                }
                while (response.IsTruncated);

                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting objects: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Delete multiple objects in a non-versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to delete multiple objects from an Amazon Simple
    /// Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteMultipleObjects
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// The Main method initializes the Amazon S3 client and the name of
        /// the bucket and then passes those values to MultiObjectDeleteAsync.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            // If the Amazon S3 bucket from which you wish to delete objects is not
            // located in the same AWS Region as the default user, define the
            // AWS Region for the Amazon S3 bucket as a parameter to the client
            // constructor.
            IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await MultiObjectDeleteAsync(s3Client, bucketName);
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method uses the passed Amazon S3 client to first create and then
        /// delete three files from the named bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// Amazon S3 methods.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where objects
        /// will be created and then deleted.</param>
        public static async Task MultiObjectDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            // Create three sample objects which we will then delete.
            var keysAndVersions = await PutObjectsAsync(client, 3, bucketName);

            // Now perform the multi-object delete, passing the key names and
            // version IDs. Since we are working with a non-versioned bucket,
            // the object keys collection includes null version IDs.
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keysAndVersions,
            };

            // You can add a specific object key to the delete request using the
            // AddKey method of the multiObjectDeleteRequest.
            try
            {
                DeleteObjectsResponse response = await
client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted all the {0} items",
response.DeletedObjects.Count);
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException e)
            {
                PrintDeletionErrorStatus(e);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Prints the list of errors raised by the call to DeleteObjectsAsync.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="ex">A collection of exceptions returned by the call to
        /// DeleteObjectsAsync.</param>
        public static void PrintDeletionErrorStatus(DeleteObjectsException ex)
        {
            DeleteObjectsResponse errorResponse = ex.Response;
            Console.WriteLine("x {0}", errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted
 {errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count}.");
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects failed to delete =
 {errorResponse.DeleteErrors.Count}");

            Console.WriteLine("Printing error data...");
            foreach (DeleteError deleteError in errorResponse.DeleteErrors)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Object Key:
 {deleteError.Key}\t{deleteError.Code}\t{deleteError.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates simple text file objects that can be used in
        /// the delete method.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon S3 client used to call PutObjectAsync.</
param>
        /// <param name="number">The number of objects to create.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the objects
        /// will be created.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of keys (object keys) and versions that the calling
        /// method will use to delete the newly created files.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<KeyVersion>> PutObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 int number, string bucketName)
        {
            List<KeyVersion> keys = new List<KeyVersion>();
            for (int i = 0; i < number; i++)
            {
                string key = "ExampleObject-" + new System.Random().Next();
                PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = key,
                    ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
                };
```

```
                PutObjectResponse response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);

                // For non-versioned bucket operations, we only need the
                // object key.
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = key,
                };
                keys.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            return keys;
        }
    }
```

Delete multiple objects in a versioned S3 bucket.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to delete objects in a version-enabled Amazon
    /// Simple StorageService (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class DeleteMultipleObjects
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

            // If the AWS Region for your Amazon S3 bucket is different from
            // the AWS Region of the default user, define the AWS Region for
            // the Amazon S3 bucket and pass it to the client constructor
            // like this:
            // RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
            IAmazonS3 s3Client;
```

```
            s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            await DeleteMultipleObjectsFromVersionedBucketAsync(s3Client,
bucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method removes multiple versions and objects from a
        /// version-enabled Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        public static async Task
DeleteMultipleObjectsFromVersionedBucketAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName)
        {
            // Delete objects (specifying object version in the request).
            await DeleteObjectVersionsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Delete objects (without specifying object version in the request).
            var deletedObjects = await DeleteObjectsAsync(client, bucketName);

            // Additional exercise - remove the delete markers Amazon S3 returned
from
            // the preceding response. This results in the objects reappearing
            // in the bucket (you can verify the appearance/disappearance of
            // objects in the console).
            await RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync(client, bucketName, deletedObjects);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates and then deletes non-versioned Amazon S3 objects and then
deletes
        /// them again. The method returns a list of the Amazon S3 objects deleted.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PubObjectsAsync and NonVersionedDeleteAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the objects
        /// will be created and then deleted.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of DeletedObjects.</returns>
```

```
        public static async Task<List<DeletedObject>> DeleteObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName)
        {
            // Upload the sample objects.
            var keysAndVersions2 = await PutObjectsAsync(client, bucketName, 3);

            // Delete objects using only keys. Amazon S3 creates a delete marker and
            // returns its version ID in the response.
            List<DeletedObject> deletedObjects = await
NonVersionedDeleteAsync(client, bucketName, keysAndVersions2);
            return deletedObjects;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method creates several temporary objects and then deletes them.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task DeleteObjectVersionsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            // Upload the sample objects.
            var keysAndVersions1 = await PutObjectsAsync(client, bucketName, 3);

            // Delete the specific object versions.
            await VersionedDeleteAsync(client, bucketName, keysAndVersions1);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of information about deleted files to the console.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="e">Error information from the delete process.</param>
        private static void DisplayDeletionErrors(DeleteObjectsException e)
        {
            var errorResponse = e.Response;
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects successfully deleted =
{errorResponse.DeletedObjects.Count}");
            Console.WriteLine($"No. of objects failed to delete =
{errorResponse.DeleteErrors.Count}");
            Console.WriteLine("Printing error data...");
            foreach (var deleteError in errorResponse.DeleteErrors)
            {
```

```
                Console.WriteLine($"Object Key:
 {deleteError.Key}\t{deleteError.Code}\t{deleteError.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Delete multiple objects from a version-enabled bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="keys">A list of key names for the objects to delete.</
param>
        private static async Task VersionedDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, List<KeyVersion> keys)
        {
            var multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keys, // This includes the object keys and specific
 version IDs.
            };

            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Executing VersionedDelete...");
                DeleteObjectsResponse response = await
 client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted all the
 {response.DeletedObjects.Count} items");
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes multiple objects from a non-versioned Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="keys">A list of key names for the objects to delete.</
param>
        /// <returns>A list of the deleted objects.</returns>
        private static async Task<List<DeletedObject>>
 NonVersionedDeleteAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName, List<KeyVersion> keys)
        {
            // Create a request that includes only the object key names.
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest = new
 DeleteObjectsRequest();
            multiObjectDeleteRequest.BucketName = bucketName;

            foreach (var key in keys)
            {
                multiObjectDeleteRequest.AddKey(key.Key);
            }

            // Execute DeleteObjectsAsync.
            // The DeleteObjectsAsync method adds a delete marker for each
            // object deleted. You can verify that the objects were removed
            // using the Amazon S3 console.
            DeleteObjectsResponse response;
            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Executing NonVersionedDelete...");
                response = await
 client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted all the {0} items",
 response.DeletedObjects.Count);
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
                throw; // Some deletions failed. Investigate before continuing.
            }

            // This response contains the DeletedObjects list which we use to delete
 the delete markers.
            return response.DeletedObjects;
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Deletes the markers left after deleting the temporary objects.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// DeleteObjectVersionsAsync, DeleteObjectsAsync, and
        /// RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket from which to delete
        /// objects.</param>
        /// <param name="deletedObjects">A list of the objects that were deleted.</
param>
        private static async Task RemoveDeleteMarkersAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, List<DeletedObject> deletedObjects)
        {
            var keyVersionList = new List<KeyVersion>();

            foreach (var deletedObject in deletedObjects)
            {
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = deletedObject.Key,
                    VersionId = deletedObject.DeleteMarkerVersionId,
                };
                keyVersionList.Add(keyVersion);
            }

            // Create another request to delete the delete markers.
            var multiObjectDeleteRequest = new DeleteObjectsRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Objects = keyVersionList,
            };

            // Now, delete the delete marker to bring your objects back to the
 bucket.
            try
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Removing the delete markers .....");
                var deleteObjectResponse = await
 client.DeleteObjectsAsync(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted the
 {deleteObjectResponse.DeletedObjects.Count} delete markers");
```

```
            }
            catch (DeleteObjectsException ex)
            {
                DisplayDeletionErrors(ex);
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Create temporary Amazon S3 objects to show how object deletion wors in
an
        /// Amazon S3 bucket with versioning enabled.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PutObjectAsync to create temporary objects for the example.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the S3
        /// bucket where we will create the temporary objects.</param>
        /// <param name="number">The number of temporary objects to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A list of the KeyVersion objects.</returns>
        private static async Task<List<KeyVersion>> PutObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3
client, string bucketName, int number)
        {
            var keys = new List<KeyVersion>();

            for (var i = 0; i < number; i++)
            {
                string key = "ObjectToDelete-" + new System.Random().Next();
                PutObjectRequest request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = key,
                    ContentBody = "This is the content body!",
                };

                var response = await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
                KeyVersion keyVersion = new KeyVersion
                {
                    Key = key,
                    VersionId = response.VersionId,
                };

                keys.Add(keyVersion);
            }
```

```
            return keys;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketAcl`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Get the access control list (ACL) for the new bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to get the
        /// access control list (ACL) of the bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">The name of the newly created bucket.</
param>
        /// <returns>An S3AccessControlList.</returns>
        public static async Task<S3AccessControlList> GetACLForBucketAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string newBucketName)
        {
            // Retrieve bucket ACL to show that the ACL was properly applied to
            // the new bucket.
            GetACLResponse getACLResponse = await client.GetACLAsync(new
 GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = newBucketName,
            });

            return getACLResponse.AccessControlList;
```

```
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketCors`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the CORS configuration applied to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to retrieve the CORS configuration.</param>
        /// <returns>The created CORS configuration object.</returns>
        private static async Task<CORSConfiguration>
RetrieveCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client client)
        {
            GetCORSConfigurationRequest request = new GetCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
            };
            var response = await client.GetCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
            var configuration = response.Configuration;
            PrintCORSRules(configuration);
            return configuration;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetBucketEncryption

The following code example shows how to use GetBucketEncryption.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get and print the encryption settings of a bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task GetEncryptionSettings(string bucketName)
    {
        // Check and print the bucket encryption settings.
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting encryption settings for bucket {bucketName}.");

        try
        {
            var settings =
                await _s3Client.GetBucketEncryptionAsync(
                    new GetBucketEncryptionRequest() { BucketName = bucketName });

            foreach (var encryptionSettings in
settings?.ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration?.ServerSideEncryptionRules!)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tAlgorithm:
{encryptionSettings.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm}");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tKey:
{encryptionSettings.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServiceK
            }
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.ErrorCode == "InvalidBucketName"
                ? $"Bucket {bucketName} was not found."
```

```
                : $"Unable to get bucket encryption for bucket {bucketName},
{ex.Message}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Returns a configuration object for the supplied bucket name.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client object used to call
        /// the GetLifecycleConfigurationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket for which a
        /// configuration will be created.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a new LifecycleConfiguration object.</returns>
        public static async Task<LifecycleConfiguration>
RetrieveLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName)
        {
            var request = new GetLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            };
            var response = await client.GetLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
            var configuration = response.Configuration;
            return configuration;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketWebsite`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
                // Get the website configuration.
                GetBucketWebsiteRequest getRequest = new GetBucketWebsiteRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
                GetBucketWebsiteResponse getResponse = await
client.GetBucketWebsiteAsync(getRequest);
                Console.WriteLine($"Index document:
{getResponse.WebsiteConfiguration.IndexDocumentSuffix}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Error document:
{getResponse.WebsiteConfiguration.ErrorDocument}");
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to download an object from an Amazon S3 bucket to the
        /// local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket where the object is
        /// currently stored.</param>
        /// <param name="objectName">The name of the object to download.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path, including filename, where the
        /// downloaded object will be stored.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// download process.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadObjectFromBucketAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string objectName,
            string filePath)
        {
            // Create a GetObject request
            var request = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectName,
            };

            // Issue request and remember to dispose of the response
            using GetObjectResponse response = await client.GetObjectAsync(request);

            try
            {
                // Save object to local file
                await response.WriteResponseStreamToFileAsync($"{filePath}\
\{objectName}", true, CancellationToken.None);
```

```
                return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error saving {objectName}: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Get an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional read is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
 sourceBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = sourceBucket,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
```

```
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest);
            var sampleBytes = new byte[20];
            await response.ResponseStream.ReadAsync(sampleBytes, 0, 20);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional read successful. Here are the first
20 bytes of the object:\n{System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(sampleBytes)}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "NotModified")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object legal hold details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockLegalHold> GetObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject legal hold for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                                $"\n\tStatus: {response.LegalHold.Status}");
            return response.LegalHold;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockLegalHold();
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to get details.</param>
    /// <returns>The bucket's object lock configuration details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockConfiguration>
GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket object lock config for {bucketName} in
{bucketName}: " +
                              $"\n\tEnabled:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled}" +
                              $"\n\tRule:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.Rule?.DefaultRetention}");

            return response.ObjectLockConfiguration;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock config:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockConfiguration();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectRetention`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object retention details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockRetention> GetObjectRetention(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };
```

```
            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                                $"\n\t{response.Retention.Mode} until
{response.Retention.RetainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.Retention;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock retention:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockRetention();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace ListBucketsExample
{
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example uses the AWS SDK for .NET to list the Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) buckets belonging to the default account.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    public class ListBuckets
    {
        private static IAmazonS3 _s3Client;

        /// <summary>
        /// Get a list of the buckets owned by the default user.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the ListingBuckets call that contains a
        /// list of the buckets owned by the default user.</returns>
        public static async Task<ListBucketsResponse> GetBuckets(IAmazonS3 client)
        {
            return await client.ListBucketsAsync();
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method lists the name and creation date for the buckets in
        /// the passed List of S3 buckets.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="bucketList">A List of S3 bucket objects.</param>
        public static void DisplayBucketList(List<S3Bucket> bucketList)
        {
            bucketList
                .ForEach(b => Console.WriteLine($"Bucket name: {b.BucketName},
 created on: {b.CreationDate}"));
        }

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // The client uses the AWS Region of the default user.
            // If the Region where the buckets were created is different,
            // pass the Region to the client constructor. For example:
            // _s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);
            _s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            var response = await GetBuckets(_s3Client);
            DisplayBucketList(response.Buckets);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ListObjectVersions

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectVersions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example lists the versions of the objects in a version enabled
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class ListObjectVersions
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        // If the AWS Region where your bucket is defined is different from
        // the AWS Region where the Amazon S3 bucket is defined, pass the
constant
        // for the AWS Region to the client constructor like this:
        //      var client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
        await GetObjectListWithAllVersionsAsync(client, bucketName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method lists all versions of the objects within an Amazon S3
    /// version enabled bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
    /// ListVersionsAsync.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the version enabled Amazon S3
 bucket
        /// for which you want to list the versions of the contained objects.</
param>
        public static async Task GetObjectListWithAllVersionsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                // When you instantiate the ListVersionRequest, you can
                // optionally specify a key name prefix in the request
                // if you want a list of object versions of a specific object.

                // For this example we set a small limit in MaxKeys to return
                // a small list of versions.
                ListVersionsRequest request = new ListVersionsRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    MaxKeys = 2,
                };

                do
                {
                    ListVersionsResponse response = await
 client.ListVersionsAsync(request);

                    // Process response.
                    foreach (S3ObjectVersion entry in response.Versions)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"key: {entry.Key} size: {entry.Size}");
                    }

                    // If response is truncated, set the marker to get the next
                    // set of keys.
                    if (response.IsTruncated)
                    {
                        request.KeyMarker = response.NextKeyMarker;
                        request.VersionIdMarker = response.NextVersionIdMarker;
                    }
                    else
                    {
                        request = null;
                    }
                }
```

```
                while (request != null);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: '{ex.Message}'");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to list the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket for which to list
        /// the contents.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// copy operation.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> ListBucketContentsAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new ListObjectsV2Request
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
```

```
                    MaxKeys = 5,
                };

                Console.WriteLine("--------------------------------------");
                Console.WriteLine($"Listing the contents of {bucketName}:");
                Console.WriteLine("--------------------------------------");

                ListObjectsV2Response response;

                do
                {
                    response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);

                    response.S3Objects
                        .ForEach(obj => Console.WriteLine($"{obj.Key,-35}
{obj.LastModified.ToShortDateString(),10}{obj.Size,10}"));

                    // If the response is truncated, set the request
 ContinuationToken
                    // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
                    request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
                }
                while (response.IsTruncated);

                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
 Message:'{ex.Message}' getting list of objects.");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

List objects with a paginator.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// The following example lists objects in an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListObjectsPaginator
    {
        private const string BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();

            Console.WriteLine($"Listing the objects contained in {BucketName}:\n");
            await ListingObjectsAsync(s3Client, BucketName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method uses a paginator to retrieve the list of objects in an
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket whose objects
        /// you want to list.</param>
        public static async Task ListingObjectsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName)
        {
            var listObjectsV2Paginator = client.Paginators.ListObjectsV2(new
ListObjectsV2Request
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            });

            await foreach (var response in listObjectsV2Paginator.Responses)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"HttpStatusCode: {response.HttpStatusCode}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Number of Keys: {response.KeyCount}");
                foreach (var entry in response.S3Objects)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Key = {entry.Key} Size = {entry.Size}");
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) Transfer Acceleration is a
/// bucket-level feature that enables you to perform faster data transfers
/// to Amazon S3. This example shows how to configure Transfer
/// Acceleration.
/// </summary>
public class TransferAcceleration
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The main method initializes the client object and sets the
    /// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket name before
    /// calling EnableAccelerationAsync.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
        const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";

        await EnableAccelerationAsync(s3Client, bucketName);
    }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// This method sets the configuration to enable transfer acceleration
        /// for the bucket referred to in the bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client used to enable the
        /// acceleration on an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which the
        /// method will be enabling acceleration.</param>
        private static async Task EnableAccelerationAsync(AmazonS3Client client,
string bucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                var putRequest = new PutBucketAccelerateConfigurationRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    AccelerateConfiguration = new AccelerateConfiguration
                    {
                        Status = BucketAccelerateStatus.Enabled,
                    },
                };
                await client.PutBucketAccelerateConfigurationAsync(putRequest);

                var getRequest = new GetBucketAccelerateConfigurationRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
                var response = await
client.GetBucketAccelerateConfigurationAsync(getRequest);

                Console.WriteLine($"Acceleration state = '{response.Status}' ");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error occurred. Message:'{ex.Message}' when
setting transfer acceleration");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PutBucketAcl

The following code example shows how to use PutBucketAcl.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates an Amazon S3 bucket with an ACL to control access to the
        /// bucket and the objects stored in it.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to create
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket, with an ACL applied to the bucket.
        /// </param>
        /// <param name="region">The AWS Region where the bucket will be created.</
param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating success or failure.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketUseCannedACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, S3Region region, string newBucketName)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with Canned ACL.
                var putBucketRequest = new PutBucketRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = newBucketName,
                    BucketRegion = region,
                    CannedACL = S3CannedACL.LogDeliveryWrite,
                };

                PutBucketResponse putBucketResponse = await
 client.PutBucketAsync(putBucketRequest);

                return putBucketResponse.HttpStatusCode ==
 System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
            }
```

```
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Amazon S3 error: {ex.Message}");
            }

            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketCors`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Add CORS configuration to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to apply the CORS configuration to an Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="configuration">The CORS configuration to apply.</param>
        private static async Task PutCORSConfigurationAsync(AmazonS3Client client,
CORSConfiguration configuration)
        {
            PutCORSConfigurationRequest request = new PutCORSConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = BucketName,
                Configuration = configuration,
            };

            _ = await client.PutCORSConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketEncryption`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Set the bucket server side encryption to use AWSKMS with a customer-managed
key id.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="bucketName">Name of the bucket.</param>
   /// <param name="kmsKeyId">The Id of the KMS Key.</param>
   /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
   public static async Task<bool> SetBucketServerSideEncryption(string bucketName,
string kmsKeyId)
   {
       var serverSideEncryptionByDefault = new ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration
       {
           ServerSideEncryptionRules = new List<ServerSideEncryptionRule>
           {
               new ServerSideEncryptionRule
               {
                   ServerSideEncryptionByDefault = new
ServerSideEncryptionByDefault
                   {
                       ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm =
ServerSideEncryptionMethod.AWSKMS,
                       ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServiceKeyId = kmsKeyId
                   }
               }
           }
```

```
        };
        try
        {
            var encryptionResponse = await _s3Client.PutBucketEncryptionAsync(new
PutBucketEncryptionRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration = serverSideEncryptionByDefault,
            });

            return encryptionResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.ErrorCode == "AccessDenied"
                ? $"This account does not have permission to set encryption on
{bucketName}, please try again."
                : $"Unable to set bucket encryption for bucket {bucketName},
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Adds lifecycle configuration information to the S3 bucket named in
        /// the bucketName parameter.
```

```
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The S3 client used to call the
        /// PutLifecycleConfigurationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the S3 bucket to
        /// which configuration information will be added.</param>
        /// <param name="configuration">A LifecycleConfiguration object that
        /// will be applied to the S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task AddExampleLifecycleConfigAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, LifecycleConfiguration configuration)
        {
            var request = new PutLifecycleConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Configuration = configuration,
            };
            var response = await client.PutLifecycleConfigurationAsync(request);
        }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketLogging`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketLogging`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.IO;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;
    using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// This example shows how to enable logging on an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket. You need to have two Amazon S3 buckets for
    /// this example. The first is the bucket for which you wish to enable
    /// logging, and the second is the location where you want to store the
    /// logs.
    /// </summary>
    public class ServerAccessLogging
    {
        private static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            LoadConfig();

            string bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"];
            string logBucketName = _configuration["LogBucketName"];
            string logObjectKeyPrefix = _configuration["LogObjectKeyPrefix"];
            string accountId = _configuration["AccountId"];

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2 or RegionEndpoint.USEast2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            try
            {
                // Update bucket policy for target bucket to allow delivery of logs
 to it.
                await SetBucketPolicyToAllowLogDelivery(
                    client,
                    bucketName,
                    logBucketName,
                    logObjectKeyPrefix,
                    accountId);

                // Enable logging on the source bucket.
                await EnableLoggingAsync(
                    client,
                    bucketName,
                    logBucketName,
                    logObjectKeyPrefix);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {e.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method grants appropriate permissions for logging to the
        /// Amazon S3 bucket where the logs will be stored.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client which will be used
        /// to apply the bucket policy.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceBucketName">The name of the source bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="logBucketName">The name of the bucket where logging
        /// information will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="logPrefix">The logging prefix where the logs should be
delivered.</param>
        /// <param name="accountId">The account id of the account where the source
bucket exists.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task SetBucketPolicyToAllowLogDelivery(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string sourceBucketName,
            string logBucketName,
            string logPrefix,
            string accountId)
        {
            var resourceArn = @"""arn:aws:s3:::" + logBucketName + "/" + logPrefix +
@"*""";

            var newPolicy = @"{
                                ""Statement"":[{
                                ""Sid"": ""S3ServerAccessLogsPolicy"",
                                ""Effect"": ""Allow"",
                                ""Principal"": { ""Service"":
""logging.s3.amazonaws.com"" },
                                ""Action"": [""s3:PutObject""],
                                ""Resource"": [" + resourceArn + @"],
                                ""Condition"": {
                                ""ArnLike"": { ""aws:SourceArn"": ""arn:aws:s3:::" +
sourceBucketName + @""" },
                                ""StringEquals"": { ""aws:SourceAccount"": """ +
accountId + @""" }
                                        }
                                    }]
```

```
                                }";
            Console.WriteLine($"The policy to apply to bucket {logBucketName} to
enable logging:");
            Console.WriteLine(newPolicy);

            PutBucketPolicyRequest putRequest = new PutBucketPolicyRequest
            {
                BucketName = logBucketName,
                Policy = newPolicy,
            };
            await client.PutBucketPolicyAsync(putRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("Policy applied.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method enables logging for an Amazon S3 bucket. Logs will be stored
        /// in the bucket you selected for logging. Selected prefix
        /// will be prepended to each log object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client which will be used
        /// to configure and apply logging to the selected Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which you
        /// wish to enable logging.</param>
        /// <param name="logBucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where
logging
        /// information will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="logObjectKeyPrefix">The prefix to prepend to each
        /// object key.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public static async Task EnableLoggingAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string logBucketName,
            string logObjectKeyPrefix)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Enabling logging for bucket {bucketName}.");
            var loggingConfig = new S3BucketLoggingConfig
            {
                TargetBucketName = logBucketName,
                TargetPrefix = logObjectKeyPrefix,
            };

            var putBucketLoggingRequest = new PutBucketLoggingRequest
            {
```

```
                BucketName = bucketName,
                LoggingConfig = loggingConfig,
            };
            await client.PutBucketLoggingAsync(putBucketLoggingRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Logging enabled.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Loads configuration from settings files.
        /// </summary>
        public static void LoadConfig()
        {
            _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
                .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
                .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
                .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json", true) // Optionally, load local
settings.
                .Build();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLogging in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutBucketNotificationConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketNotificationConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to enable notifications for an Amazon Simple
    /// Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
    /// </summary>
    public class EnableNotifications
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
            const string snsTopic = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:0123456789ab:bucket-
notify";
            const string sqsQueue = "arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-2:0123456789ab:Example_Queue";

            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(Amazon.RegionEndpoint.USEast2);
            await EnableNotificationAsync(client, bucketName, snsTopic, sqsQueue);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method makes the call to the PutBucketNotificationAsync method.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client used to call
        /// the PutBucketNotificationAsync method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket for which
        /// notifications will be turned on.</param>
        /// <param name="snsTopic">The ARN for the Amazon Simple Notification
        /// Service (Amazon SNS) topic associated with the S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="sqsQueue">The ARN of the Amazon Simple Queue Service
        /// (Amazon SQS) queue to which notifications will be pushed.</param>
        public static async Task EnableNotificationAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string snsTopic,
            string sqsQueue)
        {
            try
            {
                // The bucket for which we are setting up notifications.
                var request = new PutBucketNotificationRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                };
```

```
                // Defines the topic to use when sending a notification.
                var topicConfig = new TopicConfiguration()
                {
                    Events = new List<EventType> { EventType.ObjectCreatedCopy },
                    Topic = snsTopic,
                };
                request.TopicConfigurations = new List<TopicConfiguration>
                {
                    topicConfig,
                };
                request.QueueConfigurations = new List<QueueConfiguration>
                {
                    new QueueConfiguration()
                    {
                        Events = new List<EventType> { EventType.ObjectCreatedPut },
                        Queue = sqsQueue,
                    },
                };

                // Now apply the notification settings to the bucket.
                PutBucketNotificationResponse response = await
client.PutBucketNotificationAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotificationConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

PutBucketWebsite

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
                // Put the website configuration.
                PutBucketWebsiteRequest putRequest = new PutBucketWebsiteRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    WebsiteConfiguration = new WebsiteConfiguration()
                    {
                        IndexDocumentSuffix = indexDocumentSuffix,
                        ErrorDocument = errorDocument,
                    },
                };
                PutBucketWebsiteResponse response = await
client.PutBucketWebsiteAsync(putRequest);
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Shows how to upload a file from the local computer to an Amazon S3
```

```
        /// bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized Amazon S3 client object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to which the object
        /// will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="objectName">The object to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path, including file name, of the object
        /// on the local computer to upload.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// upload procedure.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadFileAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string objectName,
            string filePath)
        {
            try
            {
                var request = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectName,
                    FilePath = filePath,
                };

                await client.PutObjectAsync(request);
                Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded {objectName} to
{bucketName}.");
                return true;
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {objectName} to {bucketName}:
'{ex.Message}'");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Upload an object with server-side encryption.

```
    using System;
```

```
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to upload an object to an Amazon Simple Storage
    /// Service (Amazon S3) bucket with server-side encryption enabled.
    /// </summary>
    public class ServerSideEncryption
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            string keyName = "samplefile.txt";

            // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
            // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
            // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
            // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await WritingAnObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Upload a sample object include a setting for encryption.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
        /// to upload a file and apply server-side encryption.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
        /// encrypted object will reside.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name for the object that you want to
        /// create in the supplied bucket.</param>
        public static async Task WritingAnObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string keyName)
        {
            try
            {
                var putRequest = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    ContentBody = "sample text",
                    ServerSideEncryptionMethod = ServerSideEncryptionMethod.AES256,
```

```
                };

                var putResponse = await client.PutObjectAsync(putRequest);

                // Determine the encryption state of an object.
                GetObjectMetadataRequest metadataRequest = new
 GetObjectMetadataRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };
                GetObjectMetadataResponse response = await
 client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);
                ServerSideEncryptionMethod objectEncryption =
 response.ServerSideEncryptionMethod;

                Console.WriteLine($"Encryption method used: {0}",
 objectEncryption.ToString());
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: '{ex.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
        }
    }
```

Put an object using a conditional request.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
 overwrite using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="content">The content to upload as a string.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag if the conditional write is successful, empty otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<string> PutObjectConditional(string objectKey, string bucket,
 string content)
    {
        try
```

```
        {
            var putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucket,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = content,
                IfNoneMatch = "*"
            };

            var putResult = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional write successful for key
{objectKey} in bucket {bucket}.");
            return putResult.ETag;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional write failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="holdStatus">The On or Off status for the legal hold.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus holdStatus)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                LegalHold = new ObjectLockLegalHold()
                {
                    Status = holdStatus
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tModified legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableObjectLockOnBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled("Enabled"),
                },
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded an object lock policy to bucket
{bucketName}.");
```

```
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date for retention until.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime retainUntilDate)
    {
        var enabledString = enableObjectLock ? "Enabled" : "Disabled";
        var timeDifference = retainUntilDate.Subtract(DateTime.Now);
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
```

```
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled(enabledString),
                    Rule = new ObjectLockRule()
                    {
                        DefaultRetention = new DefaultRetention()
                        {
                            Mode = retention,
                            Days = timeDifference.Days // Can be specified in days
or years but not both.
                        }
                    }
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded a default retention to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectRetention`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date retention expires.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime
retainUntilDate)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Retention = new ObjectLockRetention()
                {
                    Mode = retention,
                    RetainUntilDate = retainUntilDate
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSet retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}
until {retainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying retention period:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`RestoreObject`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreObject`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to restore an archived object in an Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class RestoreArchivedObject
{
    public static void Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string objectKey = "archived-object.txt";

        // Specify your bucket region (an example region is shown).
        RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(bucketRegion);
        RestoreObjectAsync(client, bucketName, objectKey).Wait();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method restores an archived object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
    /// RestoreObjectAsync.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
    /// bucket where the object was located before it was archived.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">A string representing the name of the
    /// archived object to restore.</param>
```

```
        public static async Task RestoreObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            try
            {
                var restoreRequest = new RestoreObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectKey,
                    Days = 2,
                };
                RestoreObjectResponse response = await
client.RestoreObjectAsync(restoreRequest);

                // Check the status of the restoration.
                await CheckRestorationStatusAsync(client, bucketName, objectKey);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception amazonS3Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {amazonS3Exception.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method retrieves the status of the object's restoration.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// GetObjectMetadataAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the Amazon
        /// S3 bucket which contains the archived object.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">A string representing the name of the
        /// archived object you want to restore.</param>
        public static async Task CheckRestorationStatusAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
string bucketName, string objectKey)
        {
            GetObjectMetadataRequest metadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
            };
```

```
            GetObjectMetadataResponse response = await
client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);

            var restStatus = response.RestoreInProgress ? "in-progress" : "finished
or failed";
            Console.WriteLine($"Restoration status: {restStatus}");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreObject in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned URL that can perform an Amazon S3 action for a limited time.

```
    using System;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    public class GenPresignedUrl
    {
        public static void Main()
        {
            const string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
            const string objectKey = "sample.txt";
```

```
            // Specify how long the presigned URL lasts, in hours
            const double timeoutDuration = 12;

            // Specify the AWS Region of your Amazon S3 bucket. If it is
            // different from the Region defined for the default user,
            // pass the Region to the constructor for the client. For
            // example: new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            // If using the Region us-east-1, and server-side encryption with AWS
 KMS, you must specify Signature Version 4.
            // Region us-east-1 defaults to Signature Version 2 unless explicitly
 set to Version 4 as shown below.
            // For more details, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/UsingAWSSDK.html#specify-signature-version
            // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/items/Amazon/
TAWSConfigsS3.html
            AWSConfigsS3.UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
            IAmazonS3 s3Client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            string urlString = GeneratePresignedURL(s3Client, bucketName, objectKey,
 timeoutDuration);
            Console.WriteLine($"The generated URL is: {urlString}.");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Generate a presigned URL that can be used to access the file named
        /// in the objectKey parameter for the amount of time specified in the
        /// duration parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An initialized S3 client object used to call
        /// the GetPresignedUrl method.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket containing the
        /// object for which to create the presigned URL.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the object to access with the
        /// presigned URL.</param>
        /// <param name="duration">The length of time for which the presigned
        /// URL will be valid.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the generated presigned URL.</returns>
        public static string GeneratePresignedURL(IAmazonS3 client, string
 bucketName, string objectKey, double duration)
        {
            string urlString = string.Empty;
            try
            {
```

```
                var request = new GetPreSignedUrlRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = objectKey,
                    Expires = DateTime.UtcNow.AddHours(duration),
                };
                urlString = client.GetPreSignedURL(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error:'{ex.Message}'");
            }

            return urlString;
        }
    }
```

Generate a presigned URL and perform an upload using that URL.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Net.Http;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to upload an object to an Amazon Simple Storage
/// Service (Amazon S3) bucket using a presigned URL. The code first
/// creates a presigned URL and then uses it to upload an object to an
/// Amazon S3 bucket using that URL.
/// </summary>
public class UploadUsingPresignedURL
{
    private static HttpClient httpClient = new HttpClient();

    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "samplefile.txt";
```

```
            string filePath = $"source\\{keyName}";

            // Specify how long the signed URL will be valid in hours.
            double timeoutDuration = 12;

            // Specify the AWS Region of your Amazon S3 bucket. If it is
            // different from the Region defined for the default user,
            // pass the Region to the constructor for the client. For
            // example: new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            // If using the Region us-east-1, and server-side encryption with AWS
 KMS, you must specify Signature Version 4.
            // Region us-east-1 defaults to Signature Version 2 unless explicitly
 set to Version 4 as shown below.
            // For more details, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/
userguide/UsingAWSSDK.html#specify-signature-version
            // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v3/apidocs/items/Amazon/
TAWSConfigsS3.html
            AWSConfigsS3.UseSignatureVersion4 = true;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

            var url = GeneratePreSignedURL(client, bucketName, keyName,
 timeoutDuration);
            var success = await UploadObject(filePath, url);

            if (success)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Upload succeeded.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Upload failed.");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket using the presigned URL passed
 in
        /// the url parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="filePath">The path (including file name) to the local
        /// file you want to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="url">The presigned URL that will be used to upload the
        /// file to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
        /// operation, based on the HttpWebResponse.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadObject(string filePath, string url)
        {
            using var streamContent = new StreamContent(
                new FileStream(filePath, FileMode.Open, FileAccess.Read));

            var response = await httpClient.PutAsync(url, streamContent);
            return response.IsSuccessStatusCode;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Generates a presigned URL which will be used to upload an object to
        /// an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// GetPreSignedURL.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which the
        /// presigned URL will point.</param>
        /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the file that will be uploaded.</
param>
        /// <param name="duration">How long (in hours) the presigned URL will
        /// be valid.</param>
        /// <returns>The generated URL.</returns>
        public static string GeneratePreSignedURL(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string objectKey,
            double duration)
        {
            var request = new GetPreSignedUrlRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Verb = HttpVerb.PUT,
                Expires = DateTime.UtcNow.AddHours(duration),
            };

            string url = client.GetPreSignedURL(request);
            return url;
        }
    }
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Get started with encryption

The following code example shows how to get started with encryption for Amazon S3 objects.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to apply client encryption to an object in an
/// Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/// </summary>
public class SSEClientEncryption
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "exampleobject.txt";
        string copyTargetKeyName = "examplecopy.txt";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2.
```

```
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            try
            {
                // Create an encryption key.
                Aes aesEncryption = Aes.Create();
                aesEncryption.KeySize = 256;
                aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
                string base64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);

                // Upload the object.
                PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest = await UploadObjectAsync(client,
bucketName, keyName, base64Key);

                // Download the object and verify that its contents match what you
uploaded.
                await DownloadObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, base64Key,
putObjectRequest);

                // Get object metadata and verify that the object uses AES-256
encryption.
                await GetObjectMetadataAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
base64Key);

                // Copy both the source and target objects using server-side
encryption with
                // an encryption key.
                await CopyObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
copyTargetKeyName, aesEncryption, base64Key);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// PutObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to which the
        /// object will be uploaded.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to upload to the Amazon S3
        /// bucket.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key.</param>
        /// <returns>The PutObjectRequest object for use by DownloadObjectAsync.</
returns>
        public static async Task<PutObjectRequest> UploadObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key)
        {
            PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                ContentBody = "sample text",
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
 ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse = await
 client.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            return putObjectRequest;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Downloads an encrypted object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
 call
        /// GetObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object
        /// is located.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the Amazon S3 object to download.</
param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key used to encrypt the
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="putObjectRequest">The PutObjectRequest used to upload
        /// the object.</param>
        public static async Task DownloadObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
```

```
            string base64Key,
            PutObjectRequest putObjectRequest)
        {
            GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,

                // Provide encryption information for the object stored in Amazon
S3.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            using (GetObjectResponse getResponse = await
client.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest))
            using (StreamReader reader = new
StreamReader(getResponse.ResponseStream))
            {
                string content = reader.ReadToEnd();
                if (string.Compare(putObjectRequest.ContentBody, content) == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Object content is same as we uploaded");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Error...Object content is not same.");
                }

                if (getResponse.ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod ==
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Object encryption method is AES256, same as
we set");
                }
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Error...Object encryption method is not the
same as AES256 we set");
                }
            }
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the metadata associated with an Amazon S3 object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to call GetObjectMetadataAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the
        /// object for which we want to retrieve metadata.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object for which we wish to
        /// retrieve the metadata.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key associated with the
        /// object.</param>
        public static async Task GetObjectMetadataAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string base64Key)
        {
            GetObjectMetadataRequest getObjectMetadataRequest = new
GetObjectMetadataRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,

                // The object stored in Amazon S3 is encrypted, so provide the
necessary encryption information.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            GetObjectMetadataResponse getObjectMetadataResponse = await
client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(getObjectMetadataRequest);
            Console.WriteLine("The object metadata show encryption method used is:
{0}", getObjectMetadataResponse.ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Copies an encrypted object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// CopyObjectAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket containing the object
        /// to copy.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the object to copy.</param>
        /// <param name="copyTargetKeyName">The Amazon S3 bucket to which the object
        /// will be copied.</param>
        /// <param name="aesEncryption">The encryption type to use.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key to use.</param>
        public static async Task CopyObjectAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string copyTargetKeyName,
            Aes aesEncryption,
            string base64Key)
        {
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
            string copyBase64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);

            CopyObjectRequest copyRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                SourceBucket = bucketName,
                SourceKey = keyName,
                DestinationBucket = bucketName,
                DestinationKey = copyTargetKeyName,

                // Information about the source object's encryption.
                CopySourceServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                CopySourceServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,

                // Information about the target object's encryption.
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = copyBase64Key,
            };
            await client.CopyObjectAsync(copyRequest);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject

- GetObjectMetadata

Get started with tags

The following code example shows how to get started with tags for Amazon S3 objects.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to work with tags in Amazon Simple Storage
/// Service (Amazon S3) objects.
/// </summary>
public class ObjectTag
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "newobject.txt";
        string filePath = @"*** file path ***";

        // Specify your bucket region (an example region is shown).
        RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        var client = new AmazonS3Client(bucketRegion);
        await PutObjectsWithTagsAsync(client, bucketName, keyName, filePath);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method uploads an object with tags. It then shows the tag
```

```
        /// values, changes the tags, and shows the new tags.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Initialized Amazon S3 client object used
        /// to call the methods to create and change an objects tags.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// bucket where the object will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the key name of the
        /// object to be tagged.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The directory location and file name of the
        /// object to be uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        public static async Task PutObjectsWithTagsAsync(IAmazonS3 client, string
bucketName, string keyName, string filePath)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create an object with tags.
                var putRequest = new PutObjectRequest
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    FilePath = filePath,
                    TagSet = new List<Tag>
                    {
                        new Tag { Key = "Keyx1", Value = "Value1" },
                        new Tag { Key = "Keyx2", Value = "Value2" },
                    },
                };

                PutObjectResponse response = await
client.PutObjectAsync(putRequest);

                // Now retrieve the new object's tags.
                GetObjectTaggingRequest getTagsRequest = new
GetObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };

                GetObjectTaggingResponse objectTags = await
client.GetObjectTaggingAsync(getTagsRequest);

                // Display the tag values.
                objectTags.Tagging
```

```
                    .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key}, Value:
{t.Value}"));

                Tagging newTagSet = new Tagging()
                {
                    TagSet = new List<Tag>
                    {
                        new Tag { Key = "Key3", Value = "Value3" },
                        new Tag { Key = "Key4", Value = "Value4" },
                    },
                };

                PutObjectTaggingRequest putObjTagsRequest = new
PutObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                    Tagging = newTagSet,
                };

                PutObjectTaggingResponse response2 = await
client.PutObjectTaggingAsync(putObjTagsRequest);

                // Retrieve the tags again and show the values.
                GetObjectTaggingRequest getTagsRequest2 = new
GetObjectTaggingRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = keyName,
                };
                GetObjectTaggingResponse objectTags2 = await
client.GetObjectTaggingAsync(getTagsRequest2);

                objectTags2.Tagging
                    .ForEach(t => Console.WriteLine($"Key: {t.Key}, Value:
{t.Value}"));
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Error: '{ex.Message}'");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Lock Amazon S3 objects

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object lock features.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace S3ObjectLockScenario;

public static class S3ObjectLockWorkflow
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
        1. Create test Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) buckets with different
 lock policies.
        2. Upload sample objects to each bucket.
        3. Set some Legal Hold and Retention Periods on objects and buckets.
```

```
        4. Investigate lock policies by viewing settings or attempting to delete or
overwrite objects.
        5. Clean up objects and buckets.
  */

   public static S3ActionsWrapper _s3ActionsWrapper = null!;
   public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
   private static string _resourcePrefix = null!;
   private static string noLockBucketName = null!;
   private static string lockEnabledBucketName = null!;
   private static string retentionAfterCreationBucketName = null!;
   private static List<string> bucketNames = new List<string>();
   private static List<string> fileNames = new List<string>();

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                   .AddTransient<S3ActionsWrapper>()
           )
           .Build();

       _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
           .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
           .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
           .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
               true) // Optionally, load local settings.
           .Build();

       ConfigurationSetup();

       ServicesSetup(host);

       try
       {
           Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
Object Locking Feature Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Setup(true);

            await DemoActionChoices();

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon S3 Object Locking Scenario is complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem: {ex.Message}");
            await Cleanup(true);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _s3ActionsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3ActionsWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Any setup operations needed.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ConfigurationSetup()
    {
        _resourcePrefix = _configuration["resourcePrefix"] ?? "dotnet-example";

        noLockBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-no-lock";
        lockEnabledBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-lock-enabled";
```

```
        retentionAfterCreationBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-retention-after-
creation";

        bucketNames.Add(noLockBucketName);
        bucketNames.Add(lockEnabledBucketName);
        bucketNames.Add(retentionAfterCreationBucketName);
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Deploy necessary resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Setup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this scenario, we will use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
 S3\n" +
            "buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking features.\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you are ready to start.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nS3 buckets can be created either with or without object
 lock enabled.");
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(noLockBucketName, false);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(lockEnabledBucketName,
 true);
        await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithObjectLock(retentionAfterCreationBucketName,
 false);

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking with a
 default retention period.");
        await
 _s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(retentionAfterCreationBucketName,
 true,
            ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance, DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(1));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        Console.WriteLine("\nObject lock policies can also be added to existing
buckets.");
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.EnableObjectLockOnBucket(lockEnabledBucketName);

        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        // Upload some files to the buckets.
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow let's add some test files:");
        var fileName = _configuration["exampleFileName"] ?? "exampleFile.txt";
        int fileCount = 2;
        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");
        }

        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileCount; i++)
            {
                var numberedFileName = Path.GetFileNameWithoutExtension(fileName) +
i + Path.GetExtension(fileName);
                fileNames.Add(numberedFileName);
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.UploadFileAsync(bucketName,
numberedFileName, fileName);
            }
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to continue.");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        if (!interactive)
            return true;
        Console.WriteLine("\nNow we can set some object lock policies on individual
files:");
```

```
        foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
        {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileNames.Count; i++)
            {
                // No modifications to the objects in the first bucket.
                if (bucketName != bucketNames[0])
                {
                    var exampleFileName = fileNames[i];
                    switch (i)
                    {
                        case 0:
                            {
                                var question =
                                    $"\nWould you like to add a legal hold to
{exampleFileName} in {bucketName}? (y/n)";
                                if (GetYesNoResponse(question))
                                {
                                    // Set a legal hold.
                                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName, exampleFileName,
ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.On);

                                }
                                break;
                            }
                        case 1:
                            {
                                var question =
                                    $"\nWould you like to add a 1 day Governance
retention period to {exampleFileName} in {bucketName}? (y/n)" +
                                    "\nReminder: Only a user with the
s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able to delete this file or its
bucket until the retention period has expired.";
                                if (GetYesNoResponse(question))
                                {
                                    // Set a Governance mode retention period for 1
day.
                                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(
                                        bucketName, exampleFileName,
                                        ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance,
                                        DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(1));
                                }
                                break;
```

```
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return true;
        }

        // <summary>
        /// List all of the current buckets and objects.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
        /// <returns>The list of buckets and objects.</returns>
        public static async Task<List<S3ObjectVersion>> ListBucketsAndObjects(bool
interactive)
        {
            var allObjects = new List<S3ObjectVersion>();
            foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
            {
                var objectsInBucket = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketObjectsAndVersions(bucketName);
                foreach (var objectKey in objectsInBucket.Versions)
                {
                    allObjects.Add(objectKey);
                }
            }

            if (interactive)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nCurrent buckets and objects:\n");
                int i = 0;
                foreach (var bucketObject in allObjects)
                {
                    i++;
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"{i}: {bucketObject.Key} \n\tBucket:
{bucketObject.BucketName}\n\tVersion: {bucketObject.VersionId}");
                }
            }

            return allObjects;
        }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Present the user with the demo action choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> DemoActionChoices()
    {
        var choices = new string[]{
            "List all files in buckets.",
            "Attempt to delete a file.",
            "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
            "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
            "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
            "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
            "Finish the scenario."};

        var choice = 0;
        // Keep asking the user until they choose to move on.
        while (choice != 6)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            choice = GetChoiceResponse(
                "\nExplore the S3 locking features by selecting one of the following
choices:"
                , choices);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            switch (choice)
            {
                case 0:
                    {
                        await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        break;
                    }
                case 1:
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
delete:");
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, false, allFiles[fileChoice].VersionId);
                        break;
                    }
```

```
                case 2:
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
delete:");
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, true, allFiles[fileChoice].VersionId);
                        break;
                    }
                case 3:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
                        if (!File.Exists(allFiles[fileChoice].Key))
                        {
                            await using StreamWriter sw =
File.CreateText(allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                                "This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");
                        }
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.UploadFileAsync(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key, allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        break;
                    }
                case 4:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object and
bucket to view:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectRetention(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName);
```

```
                        break;
                    }
                case 5:
                    {
                        var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(true);
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnter the number of the object to
view:");
                        var fileChoice = GetChoiceResponse(null, allFiles.Select(f
=> f.Key).ToArray());
                        await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectLegalHold(allFiles[fileChoice].BucketName,
allFiles[fileChoice].Key);
                        break;
                    }
            }
        }
        return true;
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all files and
buckets? (y/n) "))
        {
            // Remove all locks and delete all buckets and objects.
            var allFiles = await ListBucketsAndObjects(false);
            foreach (var fileInfo in allFiles)
            {
                // Check for a legal hold.
                var legalHold = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectLegalHold(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
                if (legalHold?.Status?.Value == ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.On)
                {
                    await
_s3ActionsWrapper.ModifyObjectLegalHold(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key,
ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.Off);
                }
```

```
                // Check for a retention period.
                var retention = await
_s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectRetention(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
                var hasRetentionPeriod = retention?.Mode ==
ObjectLockRetentionMode.Governance && retention.RetainUntilDate >
DateTime.UtcNow.Date;
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteObjectFromBucket(fileInfo.BucketName,
fileInfo.Key, hasRetentionPeriod, fileInfo.VersionId);
            }

            foreach (var bucketName in bucketNames)
            {
                await _s3ActionsWrapper.DeleteBucketByName(bucketName);
            }

        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a choice response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="choices">The choices to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>The index of the selected choice</returns>
    private static int GetChoiceResponse(string? question, string[] choices)
    {
        if (question != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);

            for (int i = 0; i < choices.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {choices[i]}");
            }
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.Length)
        {
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

namespace S3ObjectLockScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Encapsulate the Amazon S3 operations.
/// </summary>
```

```
public class S3ActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonS3 _amazonS3;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3ActionsWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonS3">The injected S3 client.</param>
    public S3ActionsWrapper(IAmazonS3 amazonS3, IConfiguration configuration)
    {
        _amazonS3 = amazonS3;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <param name="enableObjectLock">True to enable object lock on the bucket.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithObjectLock(string bucketName, bool
 enableObjectLock)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName} with object lock
 {enableObjectLock}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true,
                ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = enableObjectLock,
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);

            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableObjectLockOnBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
            await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
                {
                    EnableMfaDelete = false,
                    Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
                }
            });

            var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
                {
                    ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled("Enabled"),
                },
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded an object lock policy to bucket
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date retention expires.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectRetentionPeriod(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime
retainUntilDate)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                Retention = new ObjectLockRetention()
                {
                    Mode = retention,
                    RetainUntilDate = retainUntilDate
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSet retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}
until {retainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying retention period:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="retention">The retention mode.</param>
    /// <param name="retainUntilDate">The date for retention until.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
   public async Task<bool> ModifyBucketDefaultRetention(string bucketName, bool
enableObjectLock, ObjectLockRetentionMode retention, DateTime retainUntilDate)
   {
       var enabledString = enableObjectLock ? "Enabled" : "Disabled";
       var timeDifference = retainUntilDate.Subtract(DateTime.Now);
       try
       {
           // First, enable Versioning on the bucket.
           await _amazonS3.PutBucketVersioningAsync(new
PutBucketVersioningRequest()
           {
               BucketName = bucketName,
               VersioningConfig = new S3BucketVersioningConfig()
               {
                   EnableMfaDelete = false,
                   Status = VersionStatus.Enabled
               }
           });

           var request = new PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
           {
               BucketName = bucketName,
               ObjectLockConfiguration = new ObjectLockConfiguration()
               {
                   ObjectLockEnabled = new ObjectLockEnabled(enabledString),
                   Rule = new ObjectLockRule()
                   {
                       DefaultRetention = new DefaultRetention()
                       {
                           Mode = retention,
                           Days = timeDifference.Days // Can be specified in days
or years but not both.
                       }
                   }
               }
           };

           var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
           Console.WriteLine($"\tAdded a default retention to bucket
{bucketName}.");
           return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
       }
       catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
       {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying object lock: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object retention details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockRetention> GetObjectRetention(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectRetentionRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectRetentionAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject retention for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                              $"\n\t{response.Retention.Mode} until
{response.Retention.RetainUntilDate:d}.");
            return response.Retention;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock retention:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockRetention();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="holdStatus">The On or Off status for the legal hold.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> ModifyObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey, ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus holdStatus)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new PutObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                LegalHold = new ObjectLockLegalHold()
                {
                    Status = holdStatus
                }
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tModified legal hold for {objectKey} in
{bucketName}.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tError modifying legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key.</param>
    /// <returns>The object legal hold details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockLegalHold> GetObjectLegalHold(string bucketName,
        string objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLegalHoldRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };
```

```
            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLegalHoldAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tObject legal hold for {objectKey} in {bucketName}:
" +
                                $"\n\tStatus: {response.LegalHold.Status}");
            return response.LegalHold;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockLegalHold();
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket to get details.</param>
    /// <returns>The bucket's object lock configuration details.</returns>
    public async Task<ObjectLockConfiguration>
GetBucketObjectLockConfiguration(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            };

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectLockConfigurationAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket object lock config for {bucketName} in
{bucketName}: " +
                                $"\n\tEnabled:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled}" +
                                $"\n\tRule:
{response.ObjectLockConfiguration.Rule?.DefaultRetention}");

            return response.ObjectLockConfiguration;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to fetch object lock config:
'{ex.Message}'");
            return new ObjectLockConfiguration();
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Upload a file from the local computer to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectName">The object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="filePath">The path, including file name, of the object to
upload.</param>
    /// <returns>True if success.<returns>
    public async Task<bool> UploadFileAsync(string bucketName, string objectName,
string filePath)
    {
        var request = new PutObjectRequest
        {
            BucketName = bucketName,
            Key = objectName,
            FilePath = filePath,
            ChecksumAlgorithm = ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256
        };

        var response = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(request);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tSuccessfully uploaded {objectName} to
{bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCould not upload {objectName} to {bucketName}.");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List bucket objects and versions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of objects and versions.</returns>
    public async Task<ListVersionsResponse> ListBucketObjectsAndVersions(string
bucketName)
    {
        var request = new ListVersionsRequest()
```

```
        {
            BucketName = bucketName
        };

        var response = await _amazonS3.ListVersionsAsync(request);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="hasRetention">True if the object has retention settings.</
param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteObjectFromBucket(string bucketName, string
 objectKey, bool hasRetention, string? versionId = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey,
                VersionId = versionId,
            };
            if (hasRetention)
            {
                // Set the BypassGovernanceRetention header
                // if the file has retention settings.
                request.BypassGovernanceRetention = true;
            }
            await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Deleted {objectKey} in {bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete object {objectKey} in bucket
 {bucketName}: " + ex.Message);
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteBucketRequest() { BucketName = bucketName, };
            var response = await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDelete for {bucketName} complete.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete bucket {bucketName}: " +
 ex.Message);
            return false;
        }

    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Make conditional requests

The following code example shows how to add preconditions to Amazon S3 requests.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 conditional request features.

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace S3ConditionalRequestsScenario;

public static class S3ConditionalRequestsScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

    This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3 operations.
    You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests to
 return or copy
    an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date.
    You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by ensuring
    there is no existing object with the same key.
   */

    public static S3ActionsWrapper _s3ActionsWrapper = null!;
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;
    public static string _resourcePrefix = null!;
    public static string _sourceBucketName = null!;
```

```
    public static string _destinationBucketName = null!;
    public static string _sampleObjectKey = null!;
    public static string _sampleObjectEtag = null!;
    public static bool _interactive = true;


    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                    .AddTransient<S3ActionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3)
Conditional Requests Feature Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            ConfigurationSetup();
            _sampleObjectEtag = await Setup(_sourceBucketName,
_destinationBucketName, _sampleObjectKey);

            await DisplayDemoChoices(_sourceBucketName, _destinationBucketName,
_sampleObjectKey, _sampleObjectEtag, 0);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            await Cleanup(true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon S3 Conditional Requests Feature Scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem: {ex.Message}");
            await CleanupScenario(_sourceBucketName, _destinationBucketName);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _s3ActionsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3ActionsWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Any setup operations needed.
    /// </summary>
    public static void ConfigurationSetup()
    {
        _resourcePrefix = _configuration["resourcePrefix"] ?? "dotnet-example";

        _sourceBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-source";
        _destinationBucketName = _resourcePrefix + "-dest";
        _sampleObjectKey = _resourcePrefix + "-sample-object.txt";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sets up the scenario by creating a source and destination bucket, and
uploading a test file to the source bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The name of the test file to add to the source
 bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag of the uploaded test file.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> Setup(string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
 string objectKey)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(
            "\nFor this scenario, we will use the AWS SDK for .NET to create several
 S3\n" +
            "buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 conditional requests.
\n" +
            "This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3
 operations.\r\n" +
            "You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read
 requests to return or copy\r\n" +
            "an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date. \r\n"
 +
            "You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by
 ensuring \r\n" +
            "there is no existing object with the same key. \r\n\r\n" +
            "This example will allow you to perform conditional reads\r\n" +
            "and writes that will succeed or fail based on your selected options.\r
\n\r\n" +
            "Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the
 example.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter when you are ready to start.");
        if (_interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();

        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CreateBucketWithName(destBucket);

        var eTag = await _s3ActionsWrapper.PutObjectConditional(objectKey,
 sourceBucket,
            "Test file content.");

        return eTag;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up the scenario by deleting the source and destination buckets.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    public static async Task CleanupScenario(string sourceBucket, string destBucket)
    {
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanupBucketByName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanupBucketByName(destBucket);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays a list of the objects in the test buckets.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    public static async Task DisplayBuckets(string sourceBucket, string destBucket)
    {
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketContentsByName(sourceBucket);
        await _s3ActionsWrapper.ListBucketContentsByName(destBucket);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays the menu of conditional request options for the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The name of the source bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The name of the destination bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the test object in the source bucket.</
param>
    /// <param name="etag">The ETag of the test object in the source bucket.</param>
    public static async Task DisplayDemoChoices(string sourceBucket, string
 destBucket, string objectKey, string etag, int defaultChoice)
    {
        var actions = new[]
        {
            "Print a list of bucket items.",
            "Perform a conditional read.",
            "Perform a conditional copy.",
            "Perform a conditional write.",
            "Clean up and exit."
        };

        var conditions = new[]
        {
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail.",
```

```
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail."
        };

        var conditionTypes = new[]
        {
            S3ConditionType.IfMatch,
            S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch,
            S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince,
            S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince,
        };

        var yesterdayDate = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-1);

        int choice;
        while ((choice = GetChoiceResponse("\nExplore the S3 conditional request
features by selecting one of the following choices:", actions, defaultChoice)) !=
4)
        {
            switch (choice)
            {
                case 0:
                    Console.WriteLine("Listing the objects and buckets.");
                    await DisplayBuckets(sourceBucket, destBucket);
                    break;
                case 1:
                    int conditionTypeIndex = GetChoiceResponse("Perform a
conditional read:", conditions, 1);
                    if (conditionTypeIndex == 0 || conditionTypeIndex == 1)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectConditional(objectKey,
sourceBucket, conditionTypes[conditionTypeIndex], null, _sampleObjectEtag);
                    }
                    else if (conditionTypeIndex == 2 || conditionTypeIndex == 3)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.GetObjectConditional(objectKey,
sourceBucket, conditionTypes[conditionTypeIndex], yesterdayDate);
                    }
                    break;
                case 2:
                    int copyConditionTypeIndex = GetChoiceResponse("Perform a
conditional copy:", conditions, 1);
```

```
                    string destKey = GetStringResponse("Enter an object key:",
"sampleObjectKey");
                    if (copyConditionTypeIndex == 0 || copyConditionTypeIndex == 1)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CopyObjectConditional(objectKey,
destKey, sourceBucket, destBucket, conditionTypes[copyConditionTypeIndex], null,
etag);
                    }
                    else if (copyConditionTypeIndex == 2 || copyConditionTypeIndex
== 3)
                    {
                        await _s3ActionsWrapper.CopyObjectConditional(objectKey,
destKey, sourceBucket, destBucket, conditionTypes[copyConditionTypeIndex],
yesterdayDate);
                    }
                    break;
                case 3:
                    Console.WriteLine("Perform a conditional write using IfNoneMatch
condition on the object key.");
                    Console.WriteLine("If the key is a duplicate, the write will
fail.");
                    string newObjectKey = GetStringResponse("Enter an object key:",
"newObjectKey");
                    await _s3ActionsWrapper.PutObjectConditional(newObjectKey,
sourceBucket, "Conditional write example data.");
                    break;
            }

            if (!_interactive)
            {
                break;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Proceeding to cleanup.");
    }

    // <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run as interactive.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(bool interactive)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        if (!interactive || GetYesNoResponse("Do you want to clean up all files and
buckets? (y/n) "))
        {
            await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanUpBucketByName(_sourceBucketName);
            await _s3ActionsWrapper.CleanUpBucketByName(_destinationBucketName);

        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Ok, we'll leave the resources intact.\n" +
                "Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you might
incur unexpected charges."
            );
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a choice response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="choices">The choices to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>The index of the selected choice</returns>
    private static int GetChoiceResponse(string? question, string[] choices, int
defaultChoice)
```

```
    {
        if (question != null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);

            for (int i = 0; i < choices.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {choices[i]}");
            }
        }

        if (!_interactive)
            return defaultChoice;

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.Length)
        {
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a string response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question to print.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">A default answer to use when not interactive.</
param>
    /// <returns>The string response.</returns>
    public static string GetStringResponse(string? question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        string? answer = "";
        if (_interactive)
        {
            do
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                answer = Console.ReadLine();
            } while (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(answer));
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            answer = defaultAnswer;
        }

        return answer;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace S3ConditionalRequestsScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Encapsulate the Amazon S3 operations.
/// </summary>
public class S3ActionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonS3 _amazonS3;
    private readonly ILogger<S3ActionsWrapper> _logger;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the S3ActionsWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonS3">The injected S3 client.</param>
    /// <param name="logger">The class logger.</param>
    public S3ActionsWrapper(IAmazonS3 amazonS3, ILogger<S3ActionsWrapper> logger)
    {
        _amazonS3 = amazonS3;
        _logger = logger;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
 'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional read is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> GetObjectConditional(string objectKey, string
 sourceBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
        try
        {
            var getObjectRequest = new GetObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = sourceBucket,
                Key = objectKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    getObjectRequest.EtagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    getObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
 conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
 conditionType, null);
            }

            var response = await _amazonS3.GetObjectAsync(getObjectRequest);
            var sampleBytes = new byte[20];
```

```
            await response.ResponseStream.ReadAsync(sampleBytes, 0, 20);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional read successful. Here are the first
 20 bytes of the object:\n{System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(sampleBytes)}");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "NotModified")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional read failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
 overwrite using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="content">The content to upload as a string.</param>
    /// <returns>The ETag if the conditional write is successful, empty otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<string> PutObjectConditional(string objectKey, string bucket,
 string content)
    {
        try
        {
            var putObjectRequest = new PutObjectRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucket,
                Key = objectKey,
                ContentBody = content,
                IfNoneMatch = "*"
```

```
            };

            var putResult = await _amazonS3.PutObjectAsync(putObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional write successful for key
 {objectKey} in bucket {bucket}.");
            return putResult.ETag;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional write failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
 request.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sourceKey">The key of the source object to copy.</param>
    /// <param name="destKey">The key of the destination object.</param>
    /// <param name="sourceBucket">The source bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="destBucket">The destination bucket of the object.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionType">The type of condition to apply, e.g.
 'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
 'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.</param>
    /// <param name="conditionDateValue">The value to use for the condition for
 dates.</param>
    /// <param name="etagConditionalValue">The value to use for the condition for
 etags.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the conditional copy is successful, False otherwise.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> CopyObjectConditional(string sourceKey, string destKey,
 string sourceBucket, string destBucket,
        S3ConditionType conditionType, DateTime? conditionDateValue = null, string?
 etagConditionalValue = null)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var copyObjectRequest = new CopyObjectRequest
            {
                DestinationBucket = destBucket,
                DestinationKey = destKey,
                SourceBucket = sourceBucket,
                SourceKey = sourceKey
            };

            switch (conditionType)
            {
                case S3ConditionType.IfMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfNoneMatch:
                    copyObjectRequest.ETagToNotMatch = etagConditionalValue;
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfModifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.ModifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                case S3ConditionType.IfUnmodifiedSince:
                    copyObjectRequest.UnmodifiedSinceDateUtc =
conditionDateValue.GetValueOrDefault();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException(nameof(conditionType),
conditionType, null);
            }

            await _amazonS3.CopyObjectAsync(copyObjectRequest);
            _logger.LogInformation($"Conditional copy successful for key {destKey}
in bucket {destBucket}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "PreconditionFailed")
            {
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Precondition failed");
            }
            else if (e.ErrorCode == "304")
            {
```

```
                _logger.LogError("Conditional copy failed: Object not modified");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Unexpected error: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with a specified name and check that the
bucket is ready.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to create.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithName(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCreating bucket {bucketName}.");
        try
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                UseClientRegion = true
            };

            await _amazonS3.PutBucketAsync(request);
            var bucketReady = false;
            var retries = 5;
            while (!bucketReady && retries > 0)
            {
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                bucketReady = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_amazonS3, bucketName);
                retries--;
            }

            return bucketReady;
        }
        catch (BucketAlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Bucket already exists: '{ex.Message}'");
```

```
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating bucket: '{ex.Message}'");
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Cleans up objects and deletes the bucket by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task CleanupBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var listObjectsResponse = await _amazonS3.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request { BucketName = bucketName });
            foreach (var obj in listObjectsResponse.S3Objects)
            {
                await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(new DeleteObjectRequest
{ BucketName = bucketName, Key = obj.Key });
            }
            await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest { BucketName =
bucketName });
            Console.WriteLine($"Cleaned up bucket: {bucketName}.");
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Bucket {bucketName} does not exist, skipping
cleanup.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting bucket: {e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the contents of the bucket with their ETag.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public async Task<List<S3Object>> ListBucketContentsByName(string bucketName)
    {
        var results = new List<S3Object>();
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t Items in bucket {bucketName}");
            var listObjectsResponse = await _amazonS3.ListObjectsV2Async(new
ListObjectsV2Request { BucketName = bucketName });
            if (listObjectsResponse.S3Objects.Count == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\t\tNo objects found.");
            }
            else
            {
                foreach (var obj in listObjectsResponse.S3Objects)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"\t\t object: {obj.Key} ETag {obj.ETag}");
                }
            }
            results = listObjectsResponse.S3Objects;

        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
        {
            if (e.ErrorCode == "NoSuchBucket")
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Bucket {bucketName} does not exist.");
            }
            else
            {
                _logger.LogError($"Error listing bucket and objects:
{e.ErrorCode}");
                throw;
            }
        }

        return results;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an object from a specific bucket.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteObjectFromBucket(string bucketName, string
objectKey)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = objectKey
            };
            await _amazonS3.DeleteObjectAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Deleted {objectKey} in {bucketName}.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete object {objectKey} in bucket
{bucketName}: " + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a specific bucket by deleting the objects and then the bucket itself.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket to use.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The key of the object to delete.</param>
    /// <param name="versionId">Optional versionId.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CleanUpBucketByName(string bucketName)
    {
        try
        {
            var allFiles = await ListBucketContentsByName(bucketName);

            foreach (var fileInfo in allFiles)
            {
                await DeleteObjectFromBucket(fileInfo.BucketName, fileInfo.Key);
```

```
            }

            var request = new DeleteBucketRequest() { BucketName = bucketName, };
            var response = await _amazonS3.DeleteBucketAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDelete for {bucketName} complete.");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tUnable to delete bucket {bucketName}: " +
 ex.Message);
            return false;
        }

    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Manage access control lists (ACLs)

The following code example shows how to manage access control lists (ACLs) for Amazon S3 buckets.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to manage Amazon Simple Storage Service
    /// (Amazon S3) access control lists (ACLs) to control Amazon S3 bucket
    /// access.
    /// </summary>
    public class ManageACLs
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
            string newBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
            string keyName = "sample-object.txt";
            string emailAddress = "someone@example.com";

            // If the AWS Region where your bucket is located is different from
            // the Region defined for the default user, pass the Amazon S3 bucket's
            // name to the client constructor. It should look like this:
            // RegionEndpoint bucketRegion = RegionEndpoint.USEast1;
            IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

            await TestBucketObjectACLsAsync(client, bucketName, newBucketName,
keyName, emailAddress);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with a canned ACL, then retrieves the ACL
        /// information and then adds a new ACL to one of the objects in the
        /// Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
call
        /// methods to create a bucket, get an ACL, and add a different ACL to
        /// one of the objects.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the original Amazon S3
        /// bucket name.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// new bucket that will be created.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the key name of an Amazon S3
        /// object for which we will change the ACL.</param>
        /// <param name="emailAddress">A string representing the email address
        /// belonging to the person to whom access to the Amazon S3 bucket will be
```

```
        /// granted.</param>
        public static async Task TestBucketObjectACLsAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string bucketName,
            string newBucketName,
            string keyName,
            string emailAddress)
        {
            try
            {
                // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket and specify canned ACL.
                var success = await CreateBucketWithCannedACLAsync(client,
 newBucketName);

                // Get the ACL on a bucket.
                await GetBucketACLAsync(client, bucketName);

                // Add (replace) the ACL on an object in a bucket.
                await AddACLToExistingObjectAsync(client, bucketName, keyName,
 emailAddress);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception amazonS3Exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Exception: {amazonS3Exception.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon S3 bucket with a canned ACL attached.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="newBucketName">A string representing the name of the
        /// new Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns a boolean value indicating success or failure.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> CreateBucketWithCannedACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string newBucketName)
        {
            var request = new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = newBucketName,
                BucketRegion = S3Region.EUWest1,
```

```
                // Add a canned ACL.
                CannedACL = S3CannedACL.LogDeliveryWrite,
            };

            var response = await client.PutBucketAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }


        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the ACL associated with the Amazon S3 bucket name in the
        /// bucketName parameter.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The Amazon S3 bucket for which we want to get
 the
        /// ACL list.</param>
        /// <returns>Returns an S3AccessControlList returned from the call to
        /// GetACLAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<S3AccessControlList> GetBucketACLAsync(IAmazonS3
 client, string bucketName)
        {
            GetACLResponse response = await client.GetACLAsync(new GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
            });

            return response.AccessControlList;
        }



        /// <summary>
        /// Adds a new ACL to an existing object in the Amazon S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to call
        /// PutBucketAsync.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">A string representing the name of the Amazon S3
        /// bucket containing the object to which we want to apply a new ACL.</
param>
        /// <param name="keyName">A string representing the name of the object
        /// to which we want to apply the new ACL.</param>
        /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the person to whom
```

```
        /// we will be applying to whom access will be granted.</param>
        public static async Task AddACLToExistingObjectAsync(IAmazonS3 client,
 string bucketName, string keyName, string emailAddress)
        {
            // Retrieve the ACL for an object.
            GetACLResponse aclResponse = await client.GetACLAsync(new GetACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
            });

            S3AccessControlList acl = aclResponse.AccessControlList;

            // Retrieve the owner.
            Owner owner = acl.Owner;

            // Clear existing grants.
            acl.Grants.Clear();

            // Add a grant to reset the owner's full permission
            // (the previous clear statement removed all permissions).
            var fullControlGrant = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { CanonicalUser = acl.Owner.Id },
            };
            acl.AddGrant(fullControlGrant.Grantee, S3Permission.FULL_CONTROL);

            // Specify email to identify grantee for granting permissions.
            var grantUsingEmail = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { EmailAddress = emailAddress },
                Permission = S3Permission.WRITE_ACP,
            };

            // Specify log delivery group as grantee.
            var grantLogDeliveryGroup = new S3Grant
            {
                Grantee = new S3Grantee { URI = "http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/s3/
LogDelivery" },
                Permission = S3Permission.WRITE,
            };

            // Create a new ACL.
            var newAcl = new S3AccessControlList
```

```
            {
                Grants = new List<S3Grant> { grantUsingEmail,
grantLogDeliveryGroup },
                Owner = owner,
            };

            // Set the new ACL. We're throwing away the response here.
            _ = await client.PutACLAsync(new PutACLRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                AccessControlList = newAcl,
            });
        }

    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - GetBucketAcl
  - GetObjectAcl
  - PutBucketAcl
  - PutObjectAcl

Perform a multipart copy

The following code example shows how to perform a multipart copy of an Amazon S3 object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
```

```
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to perform a multi-part copy from one Amazon
/// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to another.
/// </summary>
public class MPUapiCopyObj
{
    private const string SourceBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1";
    private const string TargetBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2";
    private const string SourceObjectKey = "example.mov";
    private const string TargetObjectKey = "copied_video_file.mov";

    /// <summary>
    /// This method starts the multi-part upload.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
        Console.WriteLine("Copying object...");
        await MPUCopyObjectAsync(s3Client);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// This method uses the passed client object to perform a multipart
    /// copy operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">An Amazon S3 client object that will be used
    /// to perform the copy.</param>
    public static async Task MPUCopyObjectAsync(AmazonS3Client client)
    {
        // Create a list to store the copy part responses.
        var copyResponses = new List<CopyPartResponse>();

        // Setup information required to initiate the multipart upload.
        var initiateRequest = new InitiateMultipartUploadRequest
        {
            BucketName = TargetBucket,
            Key = TargetObjectKey,
        };

        // Initiate the upload.
        InitiateMultipartUploadResponse initResponse =
```

```
                await client.InitiateMultipartUploadAsync(initiateRequest);

            // Save the upload ID.
            string uploadId = initResponse.UploadId;

            try
            {
                // Get the size of the object.
                var metadataRequest = new GetObjectMetadataRequest
                {
                    BucketName = SourceBucket,
                    Key = SourceObjectKey,
                };

                GetObjectMetadataResponse metadataResponse =
                    await client.GetObjectMetadataAsync(metadataRequest);
                var objectSize = metadataResponse.ContentLength; // Length in bytes.

                // Copy the parts.
                var partSize = 5 * (long)Math.Pow(2, 20); // Part size is 5 MB.

                long bytePosition = 0;
                for (int i = 1; bytePosition < objectSize; i++)
                {
                    var copyRequest = new CopyPartRequest
                    {
                        DestinationBucket = TargetBucket,
                        DestinationKey = TargetObjectKey,
                        SourceBucket = SourceBucket,
                        SourceKey = SourceObjectKey,
                        UploadId = uploadId,
                        FirstByte = bytePosition,
                        LastByte = bytePosition + partSize - 1 >= objectSize ?
objectSize - 1 : bytePosition + partSize - 1,
                        PartNumber = i,
                    };

                    copyResponses.Add(await client.CopyPartAsync(copyRequest));

                    bytePosition += partSize;
                }

                // Set up to complete the copy.
                var completeRequest = new CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
```

```
                {
                    BucketName = TargetBucket,
                    Key = TargetObjectKey,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };
                completeRequest.AddPartETags(copyResponses);

                // Complete the copy.
                CompleteMultipartUploadResponse completeUploadResponse =
                    await client.CompleteMultipartUploadAsync(completeRequest);
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error encountered on server.
Message:'{e.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Unknown encountered on server.
Message:'{e.Message}' when writing an object");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - GetObjectMetadata
  - UploadPartCopy

Transform data with S3 Object Lambda

The following code example shows how to transform data for your application with S3 Object Lambda.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to add custom code to standard S3 GET requests to modify the requested object retrieved from S3 so that the object suit the needs of the requesting client or application.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Amazon S3

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call functions that transfer files to and from an S3 bucket using the Amazon S3 TransferUtility.

```
global using System.Text;
global using Amazon.S3;
global using Amazon.S3.Model;
global using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
global using TransferUtilityBasics;



// This Amazon S3 client uses the default user credentials
// defined for this computer.
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;

IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();
var transferUtil = new TransferUtility(client);
IConfiguration _configuration;

_configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
    .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
```

```
    .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from JSON file.
    .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
        true) // Optionally load local settings.
    .Build();

// Edit the values in settings.json to use an S3 bucket and files that
// exist on your AWS account and on the local computer where you
// run this scenario.
var bucketName = _configuration["BucketName"];
var localPath =
 $"{Environment.GetFolderPath(Environment.SpecialFolder.ApplicationData)}\
\TransferFolder";

DisplayInstructions();

PressEnter();

Console.WriteLine();

// Upload a single file to an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Upload a single file");

var fileToUpload = _configuration["FileToUpload"];
Console.WriteLine($"Uploading {fileToUpload} to the S3 bucket, {bucketName}.");

var success = await TransferMethods.UploadSingleFileAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 fileToUpload, localPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded the file, {fileToUpload} to
 {bucketName}.");
}

PressEnter();

// Upload a local directory to an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Upload all files from a local directory");
Console.WriteLine("Upload all the files in a local folder to an S3 bucket.");
const string keyPrefix = "UploadFolder";
var uploadPath = $"{localPath}\\UploadFolder";

Console.WriteLine($"Uploading the files in {uploadPath} to {bucketName}");
DisplayTitle($"{uploadPath} files");
DisplayLocalFiles(uploadPath);
```

```
Console.WriteLine();

PressEnter();

success = await TransferMethods.UploadFullDirectoryAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 keyPrefix, uploadPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Successfully uploaded the files in {uploadPath} to
 {bucketName}.");
    Console.WriteLine($"{bucketName} currently contains the following files:");
    await DisplayBucketFiles(client, bucketName, keyPrefix);
    Console.WriteLine();
}

PressEnter();

// Download a single file from an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Download a single file");
Console.WriteLine("Now we will download a single file from an S3 bucket.");

var keyName = _configuration["FileToDownload"];

Console.WriteLine($"Downloading {keyName} from {bucketName}.");

success = await TransferMethods.DownloadSingleFileAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 keyName, localPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine("$Successfully downloaded the file, {keyName} from
 {bucketName}.");
}

PressEnter();

// Download the contents of a directory from an S3 bucket.
DisplayTitle("Download the contents of an S3 bucket");
var s3Path = _configuration["S3Path"];
var downloadPath = $"{localPath}\\{s3Path}";

Console.WriteLine($"Downloading the contents of {bucketName}\\{s3Path}");
Console.WriteLine($"{bucketName}\\{s3Path} contains the following files:");
await DisplayBucketFiles(client, bucketName, s3Path);
Console.WriteLine();
```

```
success = await TransferMethods.DownloadS3DirectoryAsync(transferUtil, bucketName,
 s3Path, downloadPath);
if (success)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded the files in {bucketName} to {downloadPath}.");
    Console.WriteLine($"{downloadPath} now contains the following files:");
    DisplayLocalFiles(downloadPath);
}

Console.WriteLine("\nThe TransferUtility Basics application has completed.");
PressEnter();

// Displays the title for a section of the scenario.
static void DisplayTitle(string titleText)
{
    var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    Console.WriteLine(CenterText(titleText));
    Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
}

// Displays a description of the actions to be performed by the scenario.
static void DisplayInstructions()
{
    var sepBar = new string('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    DisplayTitle("Amazon S3 Transfer Utility Basics");
    Console.WriteLine("This program shows how to use the Amazon S3 Transfer
 Utility.");
    Console.WriteLine("It performs the following actions:");
    Console.WriteLine("\t1. Upload a single object to an S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t2. Upload an entire directory from the local computer to an
\n\t  S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t3. Download a single object from an S3 bucket.");
    Console.WriteLine("\t4. Download the objects in an S3 bucket to a local
 directory.");
    Console.WriteLine($"\n{sepBar}");
}

// Pauses the scenario.
static void PressEnter()
{
```

```
    Console.WriteLine("Press <Enter> to continue.");
    _ = Console.ReadLine();
    Console.WriteLine("\n");
}

// Returns the string textToCenter, padded on the left with spaces
// that center the text on the console display.
static string CenterText(string textToCenter)
{
    var centeredText = new StringBuilder();
    var screenWidth = Console.WindowWidth;
    centeredText.Append(new string(' ', (int)(screenWidth - textToCenter.Length) /
 2));
    centeredText.Append(textToCenter);
    return centeredText.ToString();
}

// Displays a list of file names included in the specified path.
static void DisplayLocalFiles(string localPath)
{
    var fileList = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
    if (fileList.Length > 0)
    {
        foreach (var fileName in fileList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(fileName);
        }
    }
}

// Displays a list of the files in the specified S3 bucket and prefix.
static async Task DisplayBucketFiles(IAmazonS3 client, string bucketName, string
 s3Path)
{
    ListObjectsV2Request request = new()
    {
        BucketName = bucketName,
        Prefix = s3Path,
        MaxKeys = 5,
    };

    var response = new ListObjectsV2Response();

    do
```

```
    {
        response = await client.ListObjectsV2Async(request);

        response.S3Objects
            .ForEach(obj => Console.WriteLine($"{obj.Key}"));

        // If the response is truncated, set the request ContinuationToken
        // from the NextContinuationToken property of the response.
        request.ContinuationToken = response.NextContinuationToken;
    } while (response.IsTruncated);
}
```

Upload a single file.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads a single file from the local computer to an S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket where the file
        /// will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="fileName">The name of the file to upload.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local path where the file is stored.</param>
        /// <returns>A boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadSingleFileAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string fileName,
            string localPath)
        {
            if (File.Exists($"{localPath}\\{fileName}"))
            {
                try
                {
                    await transferUtil.UploadAsync(new TransferUtilityUploadRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        Key = fileName,
                        FilePath = $"{localPath}\\{fileName}",
                    });
```

```
                    return true;
                }
                catch (AmazonS3Exception s3Ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Could not upload {fileName} from {localPath}
 because:");
                    Console.WriteLine(s3Ex.Message);
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{fileName} does not exist in {localPath}");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Upload an entire local directory.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Uploads all the files in a local directory to a directory in an S3
        /// bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket where the files
        /// will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="keyPrefix">The key prefix is the S3 directory where
        /// the files will be stored.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local directory that contains the files
        /// to be uploaded.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> UploadFullDirectoryAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string keyPrefix,
            string localPath)
        {
            if (Directory.Exists(localPath))
```

```
            {
                try
                {
                    await transferUtil.UploadDirectoryAsync(new
TransferUtilityUploadDirectoryRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        KeyPrefix = keyPrefix,
                        Directory = localPath,
                    });

                    return true;
                }
                catch (AmazonS3Exception s3Ex)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"Can't upload the contents of {localPath}
because:");
                    Console.WriteLine(s3Ex?.Message);
                    return false;
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The directory {localPath} does not exist.");
                return false;
            }
        }
```

Download a single file.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Download a single file from an S3 bucket to the local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the S3 bucket containing the
        /// file to download.</param>
        /// <param name="keyName">The name of the file to download.</param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The path on the local computer where the
        /// downloaded file will be saved.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the results of the action.</returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadSingleFileAsync(
        TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string keyName,
            string localPath)
        {
            await transferUtil.DownloadAsync(new TransferUtilityDownloadRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = keyName,
                FilePath = $"{localPath}\\{keyName}",
            });

            return (File.Exists($"{localPath}\\{keyName}"));
        }
```

Download contents of an S3 bucket.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Downloads the contents of a directory in an S3 bucket to a
        /// directory on the local computer.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="transferUtil">The transfer initialized TransferUtility
        /// object.</param>
        /// <param name="bucketName">The bucket containing the files to download.</
param>
        /// <param name="s3Path">The S3 directory where the files are located.</
param>
        /// <param name="localPath">The local path to which the files will be
        /// saved.</param>
        /// <returns>A Boolean value representing the success of the action.</
returns>
        public static async Task<bool> DownloadS3DirectoryAsync(
            TransferUtility transferUtil,
            string bucketName,
            string s3Path,
            string localPath)
        {
            int fileCount = 0;
```

```
            // If the directory doesn't exist, it will be created.
            if (Directory.Exists(s3Path))
            {
                var files = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
                fileCount = files.Length;
            }

            await transferUtil.DownloadDirectoryAsync(new
TransferUtilityDownloadDirectoryRequest
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                LocalDirectory = localPath,
                S3Directory = s3Path,
            });

            if (Directory.Exists(localPath))
            {
                var files = Directory.GetFiles(localPath);
                if (files.Length > fileCount)
                {
                    return true;
                }

                // No change in the number of files. Assume
                // the download failed.
                return false;
            }

            // The local directory doesn't exist. No files
            // were downloaded.
            return false;
        }
```

Track the progress of an upload using the TransferUtility.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.S3;
    using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
```

```
/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to track the progress of a multipart upload
/// using the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) TransferUtility to
/// upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
/// </summary>
public class TrackMPUUsingHighLevelAPI
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string keyName = "sample_pic.png";
        string path = "filepath/directory/";
        string filePath = $"{path}{keyName}";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USWest2 or RegionEndpoint.USEast2.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

        await TrackMPUAsync(client, bucketName, filePath, keyName);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Starts an Amazon S3 multipart upload and assigns an event handler to
    /// track the progress of the upload.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 client object used to
    /// perform the multipart upload.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket to which to upload
    /// the file.</param>
    /// <param name="filePath">The path, including the file name of the
    /// file to be uploaded to the Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="keyName">The file name to be used in the
    /// destination Amazon S3 bucket.</param>
    public static async Task TrackMPUAsync(
        IAmazonS3 client,
        string bucketName,
        string filePath,
        string keyName)
    {
        try
        {
            var fileTransferUtility = new TransferUtility(client);
```

```
                // Use TransferUtilityUploadRequest to configure options.
                // In this example we subscribe to an event.
                var uploadRequest =
                    new TransferUtilityUploadRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = bucketName,
                        FilePath = filePath,
                        Key = keyName,
                    };

                uploadRequest.UploadProgressEvent +=
                    new EventHandler<UploadProgressArgs>(
                        UploadRequest_UploadPartProgressEvent);

                await fileTransferUtility.UploadAsync(uploadRequest);
                Console.WriteLine("Upload completed");
            }
            catch (AmazonS3Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error:: {ex.Message}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Event handler to check the progress of the multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="sender">The object that raised the event.</param>
        /// <param name="e">The object that contains multipart upload
        /// information.</param>
        public static void UploadRequest_UploadPartProgressEvent(object sender,
UploadProgressArgs e)
        {
            // Process event.
            Console.WriteLine($"{e.TransferredBytes}/{e.TotalBytes}");
        }
    }
```

Upload an object with encryption.

```
    using System;
```

```
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.IO;
using System.Security.Cryptography;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Uses the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) low level API to
/// perform a multipart upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
/// </summary>
public class SSECLowLevelMPUcopyObject
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string existingBucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string sourceKeyName = "sample_file.txt";
        string targetKeyName = "sample_file_copy.txt";
        string filePath = $"sample\\{targetKeyName}";

        // If the AWS Region defined for your default user is different
        // from the Region where your Amazon S3 bucket is located,
        // pass the Region name to the Amazon S3 client object's constructor.
        // For example: RegionEndpoint.USEast1.
        IAmazonS3 client = new AmazonS3Client();

        // Create the encryption key.
        var base64Key = CreateEncryptionKey();

        await CreateSampleObjUsingClientEncryptionKeyAsync(
            client,
            existingBucketName,
            sourceKeyName,
            filePath,
            base64Key);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates the encryption key to use with the multipart upload.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A string containing the base64-encoded key for encrypting
    /// the multipart upload.</returns>
    public static string CreateEncryptionKey()
    {
```

```
            Aes aesEncryption = Aes.Create();
            aesEncryption.KeySize = 256;
            aesEncryption.GenerateKey();
            string base64Key = Convert.ToBase64String(aesEncryption.Key);
            return base64Key;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates and uploads an object using a multipart upload.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon S3 object used to
        /// initialize and perform the multipart upload.</param>
        /// <param name="existingBucketName">The name of the bucket to which
        /// the object will be uploaded.</param>
        /// <param name="sourceKeyName">The source object name.</param>
        /// <param name="filePath">The location of the source object.</param>
        /// <param name="base64Key">The encryption key to use with the upload.</
param>
        public static async Task CreateSampleObjUsingClientEncryptionKeyAsync(
            IAmazonS3 client,
            string existingBucketName,
            string sourceKeyName,
            string filePath,
            string base64Key)
        {
            List<UploadPartResponse> uploadResponses = new
 List<UploadPartResponse>();

            InitiateMultipartUploadRequest initiateRequest = new
 InitiateMultipartUploadRequest
            {
                BucketName = existingBucketName,
                Key = sourceKeyName,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
 ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
            };

            InitiateMultipartUploadResponse initResponse =
               await client.InitiateMultipartUploadAsync(initiateRequest);

            long contentLength = new FileInfo(filePath).Length;
            long partSize = 5 * (long)Math.Pow(2, 20); // 5 MB
```

```
            try
            {
                long filePosition = 0;
                for (int i = 1; filePosition < contentLength; i++)
                {
                    UploadPartRequest uploadRequest = new UploadPartRequest
                    {
                        BucketName = existingBucketName,
                        Key = sourceKeyName,
                        UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                        PartNumber = i,
                        PartSize = partSize,
                        FilePosition = filePosition,
                        FilePath = filePath,
                        ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod =
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod.AES256,
                        ServerSideEncryptionCustomerProvidedKey = base64Key,
                    };

                    // Upload part and add response to our list.
                    uploadResponses.Add(await
client.UploadPartAsync(uploadRequest));

                    filePosition += partSize;
                }

                CompleteMultipartUploadRequest completeRequest = new
CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = existingBucketName,
                    Key = sourceKeyName,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };
                completeRequest.AddPartETags(uploadResponses);

                CompleteMultipartUploadResponse completeUploadResponse =
                    await client.CompleteMultipartUploadAsync(completeRequest);
            }
            catch (Exception exception)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Exception occurred: {exception.Message}");

                // If there was an error, abort the multipart upload.
```

```
                AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMPURequest = new
AbortMultipartUploadRequest
                {
                    BucketName = existingBucketName,
                    Key = sourceKeyName,
                    UploadId = initResponse.UploadId,
                };

                await client.AbortMultipartUploadAsync(abortMPURequest);
            }
        }
    }
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.S3;
using System;
using Amazon.Lambda.S3Events;
```

```
using System.Web;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace S3Integration
{
    public class Function
    {
        private static AmazonS3Client _s3Client;
        public Function() : this(null)
        {
        }

        internal Function(AmazonS3Client s3Client)
        {
            _s3Client = s3Client ?? new AmazonS3Client();
        }

        public async Task<string> Handler(S3Event evt, ILambdaContext context)
        {
            try
            {
                if (evt.Records.Count <= 0)
                {
                    context.Logger.LogLine("Empty S3 Event received");
                    return string.Empty;
                }

                var bucket = evt.Records[0].S3.Bucket.Name;
                var key = HttpUtility.UrlDecode(evt.Records[0].S3.Object.Key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Request is for {bucket} and {key}");

                var objectResult = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(bucket, key);

                context.Logger.LogLine($"Returning {objectResult.Key}");

                return objectResult.Key;
            }
            catch (Exception e)
            {
```

```
                context.Logger.LogLine($"Error processing request - {e.Message}");

                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
}
```

S3 Glacier examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with S3 Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3 Glacier

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 Glacier.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.Glacier;
using Amazon.Glacier.Model;

namespace GlacierActions;

public static class HelloGlacier
```

```
{
    static async Task Main()
    {
        var glacierService = new AmazonGlacierClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Hello Amazon Glacier!");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list your Glacier vaults:");

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the vaults using a paginator.
        var glacierVaultPaginator = glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
            new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });

        await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{vault.CreationDate}:{vault.VaultName}, ARN:
{vault.VaultARN}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AddTagsToVault`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add tags to the items in an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to add tags to.</param>
    /// <param name="key">The name of the object to tag.</param>
    /// <param name="value">The tag value to add.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddTagsToVaultAsync(string vaultName, string key, string
value)
    {
        var request = new AddTagsToVaultRequest
        {
            Tags = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { key, value },
                },
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.AddTagsToVaultAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.NoContent;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateVault`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to create.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateVaultAsync(string vaultName)
    {
        var request = new CreateVaultRequest
        {
            // Setting the AccountId to "-" means that
            // the account associated with the current
            // account will be used.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.CreateVaultAsync(request);

        Console.WriteLine($"Created {vaultName} at: {response.Location}");

        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.Created;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeVault`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the vault.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DescribeVaultAsync(string vaultName)
```

```
    {
        var request = new DescribeVaultRequest
        {
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.DescribeVaultAsync(request);

        // Display the information about the vault.
        Console.WriteLine($"{response.VaultName}\tARN: {response.VaultARN}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Created on: {response.CreationDate}\tNumber of Archives:
{response.NumberOfArchives}\tSize (in bytes): {response.SizeInBytes}");
        if (response.LastInventoryDate != DateTime.MinValue)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Last inventory: {response.LastInventoryDate}");
        }

        return response.VaultARN;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`InitiateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve an archive from a vault. This example uses the ArchiveTransferManager class. For API details see ArchiveTransferManager.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Download an archive from an Amazon S3 Glacier vault using the Archive
```

```
    /// Transfer Manager.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault containing the object.</param>
    /// <param name="archiveId">The Id of the archive to download.</param>
    /// <param name="localFilePath">The local directory where the file will
    /// be stored after download.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DownloadArchiveWithArchiveManagerAsync(string vaultName,
string archiveId, string localFilePath)
    {
        try
        {
            var manager = new ArchiveTransferManager(_glacierService);

            var options = new DownloadOptions
            {
                StreamTransferProgress = Progress!,
            };

            // Download an archive.
            Console.WriteLine("Initiating the archive retrieval job and then polling
SQS queue for the archive to be available.");
            Console.WriteLine("When the archive is available, downloading will
begin.");
            await manager.DownloadAsync(vaultName, archiveId, localFilePath,
options);

            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonGlacierException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Event handler to track the progress of the Archive Transfer Manager.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sender">The object that raised the event.</param>
    /// <param name="args">The argument values from the object that raised the
    /// event.</param>
    static void Progress(object sender, StreamTransferProgressArgs args)
    {
```

```
        if (args.PercentDone != _currentPercentage)
        {
            _currentPercentage = args.PercentDone;
            Console.WriteLine($"Downloaded {_currentPercentage}%");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List Amazon S3 Glacier jobs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to list jobs for.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon S3 Glacier jobs.</returns>
    public async Task<List<GlacierJobDescription>> ListJobsAsync(string vaultName)
    {
        var request = new ListJobsRequest
        {
            // Using a hyphen "-" for the Account Id will
            // cause the SDK to use the Account Id associated
            // with the current account.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.ListJobsAsync(request);
```

```
        return response.JobList;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTagsForVault`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForVault`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List tags for an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the vault to list tags for.</param>
    /// <returns>A dictionary listing the tags attached to each object in the
    /// vault and its tags.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, string>> ListTagsForVaultAsync(string
vaultName)
    {
        var request = new ListTagsForVaultRequest
        {
            // Using a hyphen "-" for the Account Id will
            // cause the SDK to use the Account Id associated
            // with the default user.
            AccountId = "-",
            VaultName = vaultName,
        };

        var response = await _glacierService.ListTagsForVaultAsync(request);

        return response.Tags;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForVault in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListVaults`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVaults`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// List the Amazon S3 Glacier vaults associated with the current account.
/// </summary>
/// <returns>A list containing information about each vault.</returns>
public async Task<List<DescribeVaultOutput>> ListVaultsAsync()
{
    var glacierVaultPaginator = _glacierService.Paginators.ListVaults(
        new ListVaultsRequest { AccountId = "-" });
    var vaultList = new List<DescribeVaultOutput>();

    await foreach (var vault in glacierVaultPaginator.VaultList)
    {
        vaultList.Add(vault);
    }

    return vaultList;
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UploadArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadArchive`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Upload an object to an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="vaultName">The name of the Amazon S3 Glacier vault to upload
   /// the archive to.</param>
   /// <param name="archiveFilePath">The file path of the archive to upload to the
vault.</param>
   /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
   public async Task<string> UploadArchiveWithArchiveManager(string vaultName,
string archiveFilePath)
   {
       try
       {
           var manager = new ArchiveTransferManager(_glacierService);

           // Upload an archive.
           var response = await manager.UploadAsync(vaultName, "upload archive
test", archiveFilePath);
           return response.ArchiveId;
       }
       catch (AmazonGlacierException ex)
       {
           Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
           return string.Empty;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code examples show how to get started using SageMaker AI.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;

namespace SageMakerActions;

public static class HelloSageMaker
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your notebook
 instances:");
```

```
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five notebook instances.
        var response = await sageMakerClient.ListNotebookInstancesAsync(
            new ListNotebookInstancesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        if (!response.NotebookInstances.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No notebook instances found.");
            Console.WriteLine("See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/
howitworks-create-ws.html to create one.");
        }

        foreach (var notebookInstance in response.NotebookInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tInstance:
 {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tArn: {notebookInstance.NotebookInstanceArn}");
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCreation Date:
 {notebookInstance.CreationTime.ToShortDateString()}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreatePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePipeline`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
already exists.
   /// </summary>
   /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
   public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
string name, string description, string displayName)
   {
       try
       {
           var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
               new UpdatePipelineRequest()
               {
                   PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                   PipelineDescription = description,
                   PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                   PipelineName = name,
                   RoleArn = roleArn
               });
           return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
       }
       catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
       {
           var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
               new CreatePipelineRequest()
               {
                   PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                   PipelineDescription = description,
                   PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                   PipelineName = name,
                   RoleArn = roleArn
               });

           return createResponse.PipelineArn;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeletePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePipeline`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeletePipelineByName(string pipelineName)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.DeletePipelineAsync(
            new DeletePipelineRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName
            });

        return deleteResponse.PipelineArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribePipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePipelineExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Check the status of a run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineExecutionArn">The ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<PipelineExecutionStatus> CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(string
pipelineExecutionArn)
    {
        var describeResponse = await
_amazonSageMaker.DescribePipelineExecutionAsync(
            new DescribePipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineExecutionArn = pipelineExecutionArn
            });

        return describeResponse.PipelineExecutionStatus;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartPipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartPipelineExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Run a pipeline with input and output file locations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue to use for pipeline
callbacks.</param>
    /// <param name="inputLocationUrl">The input location in Amazon Simple Storage
Service (Amazon S3).</param>
    /// <param name="outputLocationUrl">The output location in Amazon S3.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="executionRoleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline run.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string inputLocationUrl,
        string outputLocationUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string executionRoleArn)
    {
        var inputConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig()
        {
            DataSourceConfig = new()
            {
                S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputLocationUrl
                }
            },
            DocumentType = VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV
        };

        var exportConfig = new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig()
        {
            S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
            {
                S3Uri = outputLocationUrl
            }
        };

        var jobConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobConfig()
        {
            ReverseGeocodingConfig = new ReverseGeocodingConfig()
            {
                XAttributeName = "Longitude",
```

```
                YAttributeName = "Latitude"
            }
        };

#pragma warning disable SageMaker1002 // Property value does not match required
 pattern is allowed here to match the pipeline definition.
        var startExecutionResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.StartPipelineExecutionAsync(
            new StartPipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName,
                PipelineExecutionDisplayName = pipelineName + "-example-execution",
                PipelineParameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_execution_role", Value =
 executionRoleArn },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_queue_url", Value =
 queueUrl },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_input_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(inputConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_export_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobConfig) }
                }
            });
#pragma warning restore SageMaker1002
        return startExecutionResponse.PipelineExecutionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

UpdatePipeline

The following code example shows how to use `UpdatePipeline`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
string name, string description, string displayName)
    {
        try
        {
            var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
                new UpdatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
            return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
        catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up resources for a pipeline.
- Set up a pipeline that executes a geospatial job.
- Start a pipeline execution.
- Monitor the status of the execution.
- View the output of the pipeline.
- Clean up resources.

For more information, see Create and run SageMaker pipelines using AWS SDKs on Community.aws.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps SageMaker AI operations.

```
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial.Model;
```

```
namespace SageMakerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon SageMaker actions and logic.
/// </summary>
public class SageMakerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSageMaker _amazonSageMaker;
    public SageMakerWrapper(IAmazonSageMaker amazonSageMaker)
    {
        _amazonSageMaker = amazonSageMaker;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from a JSON definition, or update it if the pipeline
 already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string pipelineJson, string roleArn,
 string name, string description, string displayName)
    {
        try
        {
            var updateResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.UpdatePipelineAsync(
                new UpdatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
                });
            return updateResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
        catch (Amazon.SageMaker.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            var createResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.CreatePipelineAsync(
                new CreatePipelineRequest()
                {
                    PipelineDefinition = pipelineJson,
                    PipelineDescription = description,
                    PipelineDisplayName = displayName,
                    PipelineName = name,
                    RoleArn = roleArn
```

```
                });

            return createResponse.PipelineArn;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run a pipeline with input and output file locations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue to use for pipeline
callbacks.</param>
    /// <param name="inputLocationUrl">The input location in Amazon Simple Storage
Service (Amazon S3).</param>
    /// <param name="outputLocationUrl">The output location in Amazon S3.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="executionRoleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline run.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string inputLocationUrl,
        string outputLocationUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string executionRoleArn)
    {
        var inputConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig()
        {
            DataSourceConfig = new()
            {
                S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
                {
                    S3Uri = inputLocationUrl
                }
            },
            DocumentType = VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV
        };

        var exportConfig = new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig()
        {
            S3Data = new VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data()
            {
                S3Uri = outputLocationUrl
            }
        };
```

```
        var jobConfig = new VectorEnrichmentJobConfig()
        {
            ReverseGeocodingConfig = new ReverseGeocodingConfig()
            {
                XAttributeName = "Longitude",
                YAttributeName = "Latitude"
            }
        };

#pragma warning disable SageMaker1002 // Property value does not match required
 pattern is allowed here to match the pipeline definition.
        var startExecutionResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.StartPipelineExecutionAsync(
            new StartPipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName,
                PipelineExecutionDisplayName = pipelineName + "-example-execution",
                PipelineParameters = new List<Parameter>()
                {
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_execution_role", Value =
 executionRoleArn },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_queue_url", Value =
 queueUrl },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_input_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(inputConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_vej_export_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportConfig) },
                    new Parameter() { Name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config", Value =
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobConfig) }
                }
            });
#pragma warning restore SageMaker1002
        return startExecutionResponse.PipelineExecutionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Check the status of a run.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineExecutionArn">The ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>The status of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<PipelineExecutionStatus> CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(string
 pipelineExecutionArn)
    {
```

```
        var describeResponse = await
 _amazonSageMaker.DescribePipelineExecutionAsync(
            new DescribePipelineExecutionRequest()
            {
                PipelineExecutionArn = pipelineExecutionArn
            });

        return describeResponse.PipelineExecutionStatus;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeletePipelineByName(string pipelineName)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSageMaker.DeletePipelineAsync(
            new DeletePipelineRequest()
            {
                PipelineName = pipelineName
            });

        return deleteResponse.PipelineArn;
    }
}
```

Create a function that handles callbacks from the SageMaker AI pipeline.

```
using System.Text.Json;
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;
using Amazon.SageMaker;
using Amazon.SageMaker.Model;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial;
using Amazon.SageMakerGeospatial.Model;

// Assembly attribute to enable the AWS Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali
```

```
namespace SageMakerLambda;

/// <summary>
/// The AWS Lambda function handler for the Amazon SageMaker pipeline.
/// </summary>
public class SageMakerLambdaFunction
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Default constructor. This constructor is used by AWS Lambda to construct the
 instance. When invoked in a Lambda environment
    /// the AWS credentials will come from the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) role associated with the function. The AWS Region will be set to the
    /// Region that the Lambda function is running in.
    /// </summary>
    public SageMakerLambdaFunction()
    {
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// The AWS Lambda function handler that processes events from the SageMaker
 pipeline and starts a job or export.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="request">The custom SageMaker pipeline request object.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context.</param>
    /// <returns>The dictionary of output parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, string>> FunctionHandler(PipelineRequest
 request, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        var geoSpatialClient = new AmazonSageMakerGeospatialClient();
        var sageMakerClient = new AmazonSageMakerClient();
        var responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>();
        context.Logger.LogInformation("Function handler started with request: " +
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(request));
        if (request.Records != null && request.Records.Any())
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Records found, this is a queue event.
 Processing the queue records.");
            foreach (var message in request.Records)
            {
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context, geoSpatialClient,
 sageMakerClient);
            }
        }
```

```
        else if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.vej_export_config))
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Export configuration found, this is an
export. Start the Vector Enrichment Job (VEJ) export.");

            var outputConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig>(
                    request.vej_export_config);

            var exportResponse = await
geoSpatialClient.ExportVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new ExportVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    Arn = request.vej_arn,
                    ExecutionRoleArn = request.Role,
                    OutputConfig = outputConfig
                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Export response:
{JsonSerializer.Serialize(exportResponse)}");
            responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "export_eoj_status", exportResponse.ExportStatus.ToString() },
                { "vej_arn", exportResponse.Arn }
            };
        }
        else if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(request.vej_name))
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Vector Enrichment Job name found,
starting the job.");
            var inputConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig>(
                    request.vej_input_config);

            var jobConfig =
                JsonSerializer.Deserialize<VectorEnrichmentJobConfig>(
                    request.vej_config);

            var jobResponse = await geoSpatialClient.StartVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new StartVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    ExecutionRoleArn = request.Role,
                    InputConfig = inputConfig,
                    Name = request.vej_name,
                    JobConfig = jobConfig
```

```
                });
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Job response: " +
JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobResponse));
            responseDictionary = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "vej_arn", jobResponse.Arn },
                { "statusCode", jobResponse.HttpStatusCode.ToString() }
            };
        }
        return responseDictionary;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Process a queue message and check the status of a SageMaker job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="message">The queue message.</param>
    /// <param name="context">The Lambda context.</param>
    /// <param name="geoClient">The SageMaker GeoSpatial client.</param>
    /// <param name="sageMakerClient">The SageMaker client.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
ILambdaContext context,
        AmazonSageMakerGeospatialClient geoClient, AmazonSageMakerClient
sageMakerClient)
    {
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

        // Get information about the SageMaker job.
        var payload = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<QueuePayload>(message.Body);
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Payload token {payload!.token}");
        var token = payload.token;

        if (payload.arguments.ContainsKey("vej_arn"))
        {
            // Use the job ARN and the token to get the job status.
            var job_arn = payload.arguments["vej_arn"];
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Token: {token}, arn {job_arn}");

            var jobInfo = geoClient.GetVectorEnrichmentJobAsync(
                new GetVectorEnrichmentJobRequest()
                {
                    Arn = job_arn
                });
```

```
            context.Logger.LogInformation("Job info: " +
 JsonSerializer.Serialize(jobInfo));
            if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.COMPLETED)
            {
                context.Logger.LogInformation($"Status completed, resuming
 pipeline...");
                await sageMakerClient.SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccessAsync(
                    new SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccessRequest()
                    {
                        CallbackToken = token,
                        OutputParameters = new List<OutputParameter>()
                        {
                            new OutputParameter()
                                { Name = "export_status", Value =
 jobInfo.Result.Status }
                        }
                    });
            }
            else if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.FAILED)
            {
                context.Logger.LogInformation($"Status failed, stopping
 pipeline...");
                await sageMakerClient.SendPipelineExecutionStepFailureAsync(
                    new SendPipelineExecutionStepFailureRequest()
                    {
                        CallbackToken = token,
                        FailureReason = jobInfo.Result.ErrorDetails.ErrorMessage
                    });
            }
            else if (jobInfo.Result.Status == VectorEnrichmentJobStatus.IN_PROGRESS)
            {
                // Put this message back in the queue to reprocess later.
                context.Logger.LogInformation(
                    $"Status still in progress, check back later.");
                throw new("Job still running.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public static class PipelineWorkflow
{
    public static IAmazonIdentityManagementService _iamClient = null!;
    public static SageMakerWrapper _sageMakerWrapper = null!;
    public static IAmazonSQS _sqsClient = null!;
    public static IAmazonS3 _s3Client = null!;
    public static IAmazonLambda _lambdaClient = null!;
    public static IConfiguration _configuration = null!;

    public static string lambdaFunctionName = "SageMakerExampleFunction";
    public static string sageMakerRoleName = "SageMakerExampleRole";
    public static string lambdaRoleName = "SageMakerExampleLambdaRole";

    private static string[] lambdaRolePolicies = null!;
    private static string[] sageMakerRolePolicies = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var options = new AWSOptions() { Region = RegionEndpoint.USWest2 };
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS service.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSageMaker>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSageMakerGeospatial>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>(options)
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonLambda>(options)
                    .AddTransient<SageMakerWrapper>()
        )
        .Build();

        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally, load local settings.
```

```
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        string queueUrl = "";
        string queueName = _configuration["queueName"];
        string bucketName = _configuration["bucketName"];
        var pipelineName = _configuration["pipelineName"];

        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "\nThis example scenario will guide you through setting up and
running an" +
                "\nAmazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS Lambda
function and an" +
                "\nAmazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse geocode job
to" +
                "\nreverse geocode addresses in an input file and store the results
in an export file.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(
                "First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue needed by the
SageMaker pipeline.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            var lambdaRoleArn = await CreateLambdaRole();
            var sageMakerRoleArn = await CreateSageMakerRole();
            var functionArn = await SetupLambda(lambdaRoleArn, true);
            queueUrl = await SetupQueue(queueName);
            await SetupBucket(bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Now we can create and run our pipeline.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await SetupPipeline(sageMakerRoleArn, functionArn, pipelineName);
            var executionArn = await ExecutePipeline(queueUrl, sageMakerRoleArn,
pipelineName, bucketName);
            await WaitForPipelineExecution(executionArn);
```

```
            await GetOutputResults(bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline and
 runs " +
                              "in SageMaker Studio, follow these instructions:" +
                              "\nhttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/
pipelines-studio.html");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Finally, let's clean up our resources.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

            await CleanupResources(true, queueUrl, pipelineName, bucketName);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
 {ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources(true, queueUrl, pipelineName, bucketName);
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        _sageMakerWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SageMakerWrapper>();
        _iamClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();
        _sqsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSQS>();
        _s3Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonS3>();
        _lambdaClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonLambda>();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set up AWS Lambda, either by updating an existing function or creating a new
function.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN) to use for the
Lambda function.</param>
    /// <param name="askUser">True to ask the user before updating.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the function.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupLambda(string roleArn, bool askUser)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Setting up the Lambda function for the pipeline.");
        var handlerName =
"SageMakerLambda::SageMakerLambda.SageMakerLambdaFunction::FunctionHandler";
        var functionArn = "";
        try
        {
            var functionInfo = await _lambdaClient.GetFunctionAsync(new
GetFunctionRequest()
            {
                FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
            });

            var updateFunction = true;
            if (askUser)
            {
                updateFunction = GetYesNoResponse(
                    $"\tThe Lambda function {lambdaFunctionName} already exists, do
you want to update it?");
            }

            if (updateFunction)
            {
                // Update the Lambda function.
                using var zipMemoryStream = new MemoryStream(await
File.ReadAllBytesAsync("SageMakerLambda.zip"));
                await _lambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCodeAsync(
                    new UpdateFunctionCodeRequest()
                    {
                        FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                        ZipFile = zipMemoryStream,
                    });
            }
```

```
            functionArn = functionInfo.Configuration.FunctionArn;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tThe Lambda function {lambdaFunctionName} was not
found, creating the new function.");

            // Create the function if it does not already exist.
            using var zipMemoryStream = new MemoryStream(await
File.ReadAllBytesAsync("SageMakerLambda.zip"));
            var createResult = await _lambdaClient.CreateFunctionAsync(
                new CreateFunctionRequest()
                {
                    FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                    Runtime = Runtime.Dotnet6,
                    Description = "SageMaker example function.",
                    Code = new FunctionCode()
                    {
                        ZipFile = zipMemoryStream
                    },
                    Handler = handlerName,
                    Role = roleArn,
                    Timeout = 30
                });

            functionArn = createResult.FunctionArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\tLambda ready with ARN {functionArn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return functionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by AWS Lambda. Does not create the role if it
already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role ARN.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateLambdaRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        lambdaRolePolicies = new string[]{
```

```
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole"
        };

        var roleArn = await GetRoleArnIfExists(lambdaRoleName);
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(roleArn))
        {
            return roleArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine("\tCreating a role to for AWS Lambda to use.");

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                               "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                               "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                    "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                    "\"Principal\": {" +
                                        $"\"Service\": [" +
                                            "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                            "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com
\"," +
                                            "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                            "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                        "]" +
                                    "}," +
                                    "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                               "}]" +
                           "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
        foreach (var policy in lambdaRolePolicies)
        {
```

```
            await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
                new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    PolicyArn = policy,
                    RoleName = lambdaRoleName
                });
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRole ready with ARN {roleResult.Role.Arn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a role to be used by SageMaker.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The role Amazon Resource Name (ARN).</returns>
    public static async Task<string> CreateSageMakerRole()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        sageMakerRolePolicies = new string[]{
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess",
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess",
        };

        var roleArn = await GetRoleArnIfExists(sageMakerRoleName);
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(roleArn))
        {
            return roleArn;
        }

        Console.WriteLine("\tCreating a role to use with SageMaker.");

        var assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                                        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                        "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                            "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                            "\"Principal\": {" +
                                                $"\"Service\": [" +
```

```
                                                        "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                        "\"sagemaker-
geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                        "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                                                        "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                                    "]" +
                                                "}," +
                                                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                                            "}]" +
                                        "}";

        var roleResult = await _iamClient!.CreateRoleAsync(
            new CreateRoleRequest()
            {
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy,
                Path = "/",
                RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
            });

        foreach (var policy in sageMakerRolePolicies)
        {
            await _iamClient.AttachRolePolicyAsync(
                new AttachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    PolicyArn = policy,
                    RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
                });
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        Thread.Sleep(10000);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tRole ready with ARN {roleResult.Role.Arn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return roleResult.Role.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The URL for the queue.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupQueue(string queueName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up queue {queueName}.");

        try
        {
            var queueInfo = await _sqsClient.GetQueueUrlAsync(new
GetQueueUrlRequest()
            { QueueName = queueName });
            return queueInfo.QueueUrl;
        }
        catch (QueueDoesNotExistException)
        {
            var attrs = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.DelaySeconds,
                    "5"
                },
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds,
                    "5"
                },
                {
                    QueueAttributeName.VisibilityTimeout,
                    "300"
                },
            };

            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                Attributes = attrs,
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            var response = await _sqsClient.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Thread.Sleep(10000);
            await ConnectLambda(response.QueueUrl);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue ready with Url {response.QueueUrl}.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ConnectLambda(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the
pipeline.");

        var queueAttributes = await _sqsClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new GetQueueAttributesRequest() { QueueUrl = queueUrl, AttributeNames =
new List<string>() { "All" } });
        var queueArn = queueAttributes.QueueARN;

        var eventSource = await _lambdaClient.ListEventSourceMappingsAsync(
             new ListEventSourceMappingsRequest()
             {
                 FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
             });

        if (!eventSource.EventSourceMappings.Any())
        {
            // Only add the event source mapping if it does not already exist.
            await _lambdaClient.CreateEventSourceMappingAsync(
                new CreateEventSourceMappingRequest()
                {
                    EventSourceArn = queueArn,
                    FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName,
                    Enabled = true
                });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the bucket to use for pipeline input and output.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupBucket(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up bucket {bucketName}.");
```

```
        var bucketExists = await
Amazon.S3.Util.AmazonS3Util.DoesS3BucketExistV2Async(_s3Client,
            bucketName);

        if (!bucketExists)
        {
            await _s3Client.PutBucketAsync(new PutBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                BucketRegion = S3Region.USWest2
            });

            Thread.Sleep(5000);

            await _s3Client.PutObjectAsync(new PutObjectRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName,
                Key = "samplefiles/latlongtest.csv",
                FilePath = "latlongtest.csv"
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"\tBucket {bucketName} ready.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display some results from the output directory.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name for the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> GetOutputResults(string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Getting output results {bucketName}.");
        string outputKey = "";
        Thread.Sleep(15000);
        var outputFiles = await _s3Client.ListObjectsAsync(
              new ListObjectsRequest()
              {
                  BucketName = bucketName,
                  Prefix = "outputfiles/"
              });
```

```
        if (outputFiles.S3Objects.Any())
        {
            var sampleOutput = outputFiles.S3Objects.OrderBy(s =>
 s.LastModified).Last();
            Console.WriteLine($"\tOutput file: {sampleOutput.Key}");
            var outputSampleResponse = await _s3Client.GetObjectAsync(
                new GetObjectRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Key = sampleOutput.Key
                });
            outputKey = sampleOutput.Key;
            StreamReader reader = new
 StreamReader(outputSampleResponse.ResponseStream);
            await reader.ReadLineAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\tOutput file contents: \n");
            for (int i = 0; i < 10; i++)
            {
                if (!reader.EndOfStream)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("\t" + await reader.ReadLineAsync());
                }
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return outputKey;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON
    /// that includes the Lambda, callback, processing, and export jobs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role for the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="functionArn">The ARN of the Lambda function for the pipeline.</
param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name for the pipeline.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the pipeline.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> SetupPipeline(string roleArn, string
 functionArn, string pipelineName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Setting up the pipeline.");
```

```
        var pipelineJson = await File.ReadAllTextAsync("GeoSpatialPipeline.json");

        // Add the correct function ARN instead of the placeholder.
        pipelineJson = pipelineJson.Replace("*FUNCTION_ARN*", functionArn);

        var pipelineArn = await _sageMakerWrapper.SetupPipeline(pipelineJson,
roleArn, pipelineName,
            "sdk example pipeline", pipelineName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPipeline set up with ARN {pipelineArn}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return pipelineArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL for the queue used in the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The ARN of the role.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>The pipeline run ARN.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ExecutePipeline(
        string queueUrl,
        string roleArn,
        string pipelineName,
        string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Starting pipeline execution.");

        var input = $"s3://{bucketName}/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv";
        var output = $"s3://{bucketName}/outputfiles/";

        var executionARN =
            await _sageMakerWrapper.ExecutePipeline(queueUrl, input, output,
                pipelineName, roleArn);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tRun started with ARN {executionARN}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return executionARN;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Wait for a pipeline run to complete.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The pipeline run ARN.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task WaitForPipelineExecution(string executionArn)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for pipeline to finish.");

        PipelineExecutionStatus status;
        do
        {
            status = await
 _sageMakerWrapper.CheckPipelineExecutionStatus(executionArn);
            Thread.Sleep(30000);
            Console.WriteLine($"\tStatus is {status}.");
        } while (status == PipelineExecutionStatus.Executing);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tPipeline finished with status {status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="askUser">True to ask the user for cleanup.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="pipelineName">The name of the pipeline.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> CleanupResources(
        bool askUser,
        string queueUrl,
        string pipelineName,
        string bucketName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete pipeline {pipelineName}? (y/
n)"))
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting pipeline.");
            // Delete the pipeline.
            await _sageMakerWrapper.DeletePipelineByName(pipelineName);
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl) && (!askUser ||
 GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete queue {queueUrl}? (y/n)")))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting queue.");
            // Delete the queue.
            await _sqsClient.DeleteQueueAsync(new DeleteQueueRequest(queueUrl));
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete Amazon S3 bucket {bucketName}?
 (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting bucket.");
            // Delete all objects in the bucket.
            var deleteList = await _s3Client.ListObjectsV2Async(new
 ListObjectsV2Request()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
            if (deleteList.KeyCount > 0)
            {
                await _s3Client.DeleteObjectsAsync(new DeleteObjectsRequest()
                {
                    BucketName = bucketName,
                    Objects = deleteList.S3Objects
                        .Select(o => new KeyVersion { Key = o.Key }).ToList()
                });
            }

            // Now delete the bucket.
            await _s3Client.DeleteBucketAsync(new DeleteBucketRequest()
            {
                BucketName = bucketName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete lambda {lambdaFunctionName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDeleting lambda function.");

            await _lambdaClient.DeleteFunctionAsync(new DeleteFunctionRequest()
            {
                FunctionName = lambdaFunctionName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {lambdaRoleName}? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policies and deleting role.");

            foreach (var policy in lambdaRolePolicies)
            {
                await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    RoleName = lambdaRoleName,
                    PolicyArn = policy
                });
            }

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
        }

        if (!askUser || GetYesNoResponse($"\tDelete role {sageMakerRoleName}? (y/
n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tDetaching policies and deleting role.");

            foreach (var policy in sageMakerRolePolicies)
            {
                await _iamClient!.DetachRolePolicyAsync(new
 DetachRolePolicyRequest()
                {
                    RoleName = sageMakerRoleName,
                    PolicyArn = policy
                });
            }

            await _iamClient!.DeleteRoleAsync(new DeleteRoleRequest()
```

```
            {
                RoleName = sageMakerRoleName
            });
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a role's ARN if it already exists.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="roleName">The name of the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) Role to look for.</param>
    /// <returns>The role ARN if it exists, otherwise an empty string.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> GetRoleArnIfExists(string roleName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Checking for role named {roleName}.");

        try
        {
            var existingRole = await _iamClient.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest()
            {
                RoleName = lambdaRoleName
            });
            return existingRole.Role.Arn;
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            return string.Empty;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
```

```
                                StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.SecretsManager;
using Amazon.SecretsManager.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example uses the Amazon Web Service Secrets Manager to retrieve
/// the secret value for the provided secret name.
/// </summary>
public class GetSecretValue
{
    /// <summary>
    /// The main method initializes the necessary values and then calls
    /// the GetSecretAsync and DecodeString methods to get the decoded
    /// secret value for the secret named in secretName.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        string secretName = "<<{{MySecretName}}>>";
        string secret;

        IAmazonSecretsManager client = new AmazonSecretsManagerClient();

        var response = await GetSecretAsync(client, secretName);

        if (response is not null)
        {
            secret = DecodeString(response);

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(secret))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The decoded secret value is: {secret}.");
            }
```

```
                else
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("No secret value was returned.");
                }
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the secret value given the name of the secret to
        /// retrieve.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The client object used to retrieve the secret
        /// value for the given secret name.</param>
        /// <param name="secretName">The name of the secret value to retrieve.</
param>
        /// <returns>The GetSecretValueReponse object returned by
        /// GetSecretValueAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<GetSecretValueResponse> GetSecretAsync(
            IAmazonSecretsManager client,
            string secretName)
        {
            GetSecretValueRequest request = new GetSecretValueRequest()
            {
                SecretId = secretName,
                VersionStage = "AWSCURRENT", // VersionStage defaults to AWSCURRENT
 if unspecified.
            };

            GetSecretValueResponse response = null;

            // For the sake of simplicity, this example handles only the most
            // general SecretsManager exception.
            try
            {
                response = await client.GetSecretValueAsync(request);
            }
            catch (AmazonSecretsManagerException e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error: {e.Message}");
            }

            return response;
        }
```

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Decodes the secret returned by the call to GetSecretValueAsync and
        /// returns it to the calling program.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="response">A GetSecretValueResponse object containing
        /// the requested secret value returned by GetSecretValueAsync.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the decoded secret value.</returns>
        public static string DecodeString(GetSecretValueResponse response)
        {
            // Decrypts secret using the associated AWS Key Management Service
            // Customer Master Key (CMK.) Depending on whether the secret is a
            // string or binary value, one of these fields will be populated.
            if (response.SecretString is not null)
            {
                var secret = response.SecretString;
                return secret;
            }
            else if (response.SecretBinary is not null)
            {
                var memoryStream = response.SecretBinary;
                StreamReader reader = new StreamReader(memoryStream);
                string decodedBinarySecret =
System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetString(Convert.FromBase64String(reader.ReadToEnd()));
                return decodedBinarySecret;
            }
            else
            {
                return string.Empty;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon SES examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Name of the template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Email subject.</param>
    /// <param name="text">Email body text.</param>
    /// <param name="html">Email HTML body text.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string name, string subject,
string text,
        string html)
    {
        var success = false;
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.CreateTemplateAsync(
                new CreateTemplateRequest
                {
                    Template = new Template
                    {
                        TemplateName = name,
                        SubjectPart = subject,
                        TextPart = text,
                        HtmlPart = html
                    }
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("CreateEmailTemplateAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete an email identity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="identityEmail">The identity email to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteIdentityAsync(string identityEmail)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.DeleteIdentityAsync(
                new DeleteIdentityRequest
                {
                    Identity = identityEmail
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteIdentityAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">Name of the template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.DeleteTemplateAsync(
                new DeleteTemplateRequest
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName
                });
            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("DeleteEmailTemplateAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get identity verification status for an email.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The verification status of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<VerificationStatus> GetIdentityStatusAsync(string email)
    {
        var result = VerificationStatus.TemporaryFailure;
        try
        {
            var response =
                await
_amazonSimpleEmailService.GetIdentityVerificationAttributesAsync(
                    new GetIdentityVerificationAttributesRequest
                    {
                        Identities = new List<string> { email }
                    });

            if (response.VerificationAttributes.ContainsKey(email))
                result = response.VerificationAttributes[email].VerificationStatus;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("GetIdentityStatusAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetSendQuota`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSendQuota`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information on the current account's send quota.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The send quota response data.</returns>
    public async Task<GetSendQuotaResponse> GetSendQuotaAsync()
    {
        var result = new GetSendQuotaResponse();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.GetSendQuotaAsync(
                new GetSendQuotaRequest());
            result = response;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("GetSendQuotaAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the identities of a specified type for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="identityType">IdentityType to list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of identities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<string>> ListIdentitiesAsync(IdentityType identityType)
    {
        var result = new List<string>();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.ListIdentitiesAsync(
                new ListIdentitiesRequest
                {
                    IdentityType = identityType
                });
            result = response.Identities;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ListIdentitiesAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTemplates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTemplates`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List email templates for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of template metadata.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TemplateMetadata>> ListEmailTemplatesAsync()
    {
        var result = new List<TemplateMetadata>();
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.ListTemplatesAsync(
                new ListTemplatesRequest());
            result = response.TemplatesMetadata;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("ListEmailTemplatesAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
///  Send an email by using Amazon SES.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="toAddresses">List of recipients.</param>
/// <param name="ccAddresses">List of cc recipients.</param>
/// <param name="bccAddresses">List of bcc recipients.</param>
/// <param name="bodyHtml">Body of the email in HTML.</param>
/// <param name="bodyText">Body of the email in plain text.</param>
/// <param name="subject">Subject line of the email.</param>
/// <param name="senderAddress">From address.</param>
/// <returns>The messageId of the email.</returns>
public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(List<string> toAddresses,
    List<string> ccAddresses, List<string> bccAddresses,
    string bodyHtml, string bodyText, string subject, string senderAddress)
{
    var messageId = "";
    try
    {
        var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.SendEmailAsync(
            new SendEmailRequest
            {
                Destination = new Destination
                {
                    BccAddresses = bccAddresses,
                    CcAddresses = ccAddresses,
                    ToAddresses = toAddresses
                },
                Message = new Message
                {
                    Body = new Body
                    {
                        Html = new Content
                        {
```

```
                                Charset = "UTF-8",
                                Data = bodyHtml
                            },
                            Text = new Content
                            {
                                Charset = "UTF-8",
                                Data = bodyText
                            }
                        },
                        Subject = new Content
                        {
                            Charset = "UTF-8",
                            Data = subject
                        }
                    },
                    Source = senderAddress
                });
            messageId = response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("SendEmailAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return messageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SendTemplatedEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Send an email using a template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sender">Address of the sender.</param>
    /// <param name="recipients">Addresses of the recipients.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">Name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="templateDataObject">Data for the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>The messageId of the email.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendTemplateEmailAsync(string sender, List<string>
recipients,
        string templateName, object templateDataObject)
    {
        var messageId = "";
        try
        {
            // Template data should be serialized JSON from either a class or a
dynamic object.
            var templateData = JsonSerializer.Serialize(templateDataObject);

            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.SendTemplatedEmailAsync(
                new SendTemplatedEmailRequest
                {
                    Source = sender,
                    Destination = new Destination
                    {
                        ToAddresses = recipients
                    },
                    Template = templateName,
                    TemplateData = templateData
                });
            messageId = response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("SendTemplateEmailAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return messageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`VerifyEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Starts verification of an email identity. This request sends an email
    /// from Amazon SES to the specified email address. To complete
    /// verification, follow the instructions in the email.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="recipientEmailAddress">Email address to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifyEmailIdentityAsync(string recipientEmailAddress)
    {
        var success = false;
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSimpleEmailService.VerifyEmailIdentityAsync(
                new VerifyEmailIdentityRequest
                {
                    EmailAddress = recipientEmailAddress
                });

            success = response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("VerifyEmailIdentityAsync failed with exception: " +
ex.Message);
        }

        return success;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB .NET API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for .NET to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful .NET backend.

- Integrate a React web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Aurora table.

- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition .NET API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateContact`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContact`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Creates a contact and adds it to the specified contact list.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the contact.</param>
   /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
   /// <returns>The response from the CreateContact operation.</returns>
   public async Task<bool> CreateContactAsync(string emailAddress, string
contactListName)
   {
       var request = new CreateContactRequest
       {
           EmailAddress = emailAddress,
```

```
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact with email address {emailAddress} already
exists in the contact list {contactListName}.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContactList`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact list with the specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list with name {contactListName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact list:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email identity (email address or domain) and starts the
verification process.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to create and
verify.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateEmailIdentity operation.</returns>
    public async Task<CreateEmailIdentityResponse> CreateEmailIdentityAsync(string
emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(request);
```

```
            return response;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {emailIdentity} already exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email identities has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email template with the specified content.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName, string
subject, string htmlContent, string textContent)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName,
            TemplateContent = new EmailTemplateContent
            {
                Subject = subject,
                Html = htmlContent,
                Text = textContent
            }
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template with name {templateName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email templates has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email template:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteContactList`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a contact list and all contacts within it.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} is being modified
 by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the contact list:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailIdentity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email identity (email address or domain).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailTemplate`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName
        };
```

```
        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email template {templateName} does not exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email template:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListContacts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContacts`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Lists the contacts in the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of contacts response from the ListContacts operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Contact>> ListContactsAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new ListContactsRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.ListContactsAsync(request);
            return response.Contacts;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing the contacts:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new List<Contact>();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SendEmail

The following code example shows how to use SendEmail.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Sends an email with the specified content and options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The email address to send the email from.</
param>
    /// <param name="toEmailAddresses">The email addresses to send the email to.</
param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to use
 (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="templateData">The data to replace placeholders in the email
 template (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list for unsubscribe
 functionality (optional).</param>
    /// <returns>The MessageId response from the SendEmail operation.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(string fromEmailAddress, List<string>
 toEmailAddresses, string? subject,
        string? htmlContent, string? textContent, string? templateName = null,
 string? templateData = null, string? contactListName = null)
    {
        var request = new SendEmailRequest
        {
            FromEmailAddress = fromEmailAddress
        };

        if (toEmailAddresses.Any())
        {
            request.Destination = new Destination { ToAddresses =
 toEmailAddresses };
```

```
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(templateName))
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent()
            {
                Template = new Template
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName,
                    TemplateData = templateData
                }
            };
        }
        else
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent
            {
                Simple = new Message
                {
                    Subject = new Content { Data = subject },
                    Body = new Body
                    {
                        Html = new Content { Data = htmlContent },
                        Text = new Content { Data = textContent }
                    }
                }
            };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(contactListName))
        {
            request.ListManagementOptions = new ListManagementOptions
            {
                ContactListName = contactListName
            };
        }

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.SendEmailAsync(request);
            return response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (AccountSuspendedException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email has been
permanently restricted.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MailFromDomainNotVerifiedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The sending domain is not verified.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MessageRejectedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message content is invalid.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (SendingPausedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email is currently
paused.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while sending the email:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return string.Empty;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Newsletter scenario

The following code example shows how to run the Amazon SES API v2 newsletter scenario.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
using System.Diagnostics;
using System.Text.RegularExpressions;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace Sesv2Scenario;

public static class NewsletterWorkflow
{
    /*
      This scenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon Simple Email Service (SES) v2
 to send a coupon newsletter to a list of subscribers.
      The scenario performs the following tasks:

      1. Prepare the application:
         - Create a verified email identity for sending and replying to emails.
         - Create a contact list to store the subscribers' email addresses.
         - Create an email template for the coupon newsletter.

      2. Gather subscriber email addresses:
         - Prompt the user for a base email address.
         - Create 3 variants of the email address using subaddress extensions (e.g.,
 user+ses-weekly-newsletter-1@example.com).
         - Add each variant as a contact to the contact list.
         - Send a welcome email to each new contact.

      3. Send the coupon newsletter:
         - Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact list.
```

```
        - Send the coupon newsletter using the email template to each contact.

     4. Monitor and review:
        - Provide instructions for the user to review the sending activity and
metrics in the AWS console.

     5. Clean up resources:
        - Delete the contact list (which also deletes all contacts within it).
        - Delete the email template.
        - Optionally delete the verified email identity.

   */

   public static SESv2Wrapper _sesv2Wrapper;
   public static string? _baseEmailAddress = null;
   public static string? _verifiedEmail = null;
   private static string _contactListName = "weekly-coupons-newsletter";
   private static string _templateName = "weekly-coupons";
   private static string _subject = "Weekly Coupons Newsletter";
   private static string _htmlContentFile = "coupon-newsletter.html";
   private static string _textContentFile = "coupon-newsletter.txt";
   private static string _htmlWelcomeFile = "welcome.html";
   private static string _textWelcomeFile = "welcome.txt";
   private static string _couponsDataFile = "sample_coupons.json";

   // Relative location of the resources folder.
   private static string _resourcesFilePathLocation = "../../../../resources/";

   public static async Task Main(string[] args)
   {
       // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon service.
       using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
           .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
               logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                   .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                   .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
           .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
               services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2>()
                   .AddTransient<SESv2Wrapper>()
           )
           .Build();

       ServicesSetup(host);
```

```
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the Amazon SES v2 Coupon Newsletter
Scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine("This scenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon
Simple Email Service (SES) v2 " +
                              "\r\nto send a coupon newsletter to a list of
subscribers.");

            // Prepare the application.
            var emailIdentity = await PrepareApplication();

            // Gather subscriber email addresses.
            await GatherSubscriberEmailAddresses(emailIdentity);

            // Send the coupon newsletter.
            await SendCouponNewsletter(emailIdentity);

            // Monitor and review.
            MonitorAndReview(true);

            // Clean up resources.
            await Cleanup(emailIdentity, true);

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("Amazon SES v2 Coupon Newsletter scenario is
complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
```

```
    {
        _sesv2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SESv2Wrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the resources for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The email address of the verified identity.</returns>
    public static async Task<string?> PrepareApplication()
    {
        var htmlContent = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation +
_htmlContentFile);
        var textContent = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation +
_textContentFile);

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("1. In this step, we will prepare the application:" +
                          "\r\n  - Create a verified email identity for sending and
replying to emails." +
                          "\r\n  - Create a contact list to store the subscribers'
email addresses." +
                          "\r\n  - Create an email template for the coupon
newsletter.\r\n");

        // Prompt the user for a verified email address.
        while (!IsEmail(_verifiedEmail))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a verified email address or an email to verify: ");
            _verifiedEmail = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        try
        {
            // Create an email identity and start the verification process.
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(_verifiedEmail);
            Console.WriteLine($"Identity {_verifiedEmail} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Identity {_verifiedEmail} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating email identity: {ex.Message}");
```

```
        }

        // Create a contact list.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateContactListAsync(_contactListName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating contact list: {ex.Message}");
        }

        // Create an email template.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(_templateName, _subject,
htmlContent, textContent);
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} created.");
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} already exists.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error creating email template: {ex.Message}");
        }

        return _verifiedEmail;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Generate subscriber addresses and send welcome emails.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> GatherSubscriberEmailAddresses(string
fromEmailAddress)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("2. In Step 2, we will gather subscriber email addresses:"
 +
                          "\r\n  - Prompt the user for a base email address." +
                          "\r\n  - Create 3 variants of the email address using
 subaddress extensions (e.g., user+ses-weekly-newsletter-1@example.com)." +
                          "\r\n  - Add each variant as a contact to the contact
 list." +
                          "\r\n  - Send a welcome email to each new contact.\r\n");

        // Prompt the user for a base email address.
        while (!IsEmail(_baseEmailAddress))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter a base email address (e.g., user@example.com): ");
            _baseEmailAddress = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        // Create 3 variants of the email address using +ses-weekly-newsletter-1,
 +ses-weekly-newsletter-2, etc.
        var baseEmailAddressParts = _baseEmailAddress!.Split("@");
        for (int i = 1; i <= 3; i++)
        {
            string emailAddress = $"{baseEmailAddressParts[0]}+ses-weekly-
newsletter-{i}@{baseEmailAddressParts[1]}";

            try
            {
                // Create a contact with the email address in the contact list.
                await _sesv2Wrapper.CreateContactAsync(emailAddress,
 _contactListName);
                Console.WriteLine($"Contact {emailAddress} added to the
 {_contactListName} contact list.");
            }
            catch (AlreadyExistsException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Contact {emailAddress} already exists in the
 {_contactListName} contact list.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error creating contact {emailAddress}:
 {ex.Message}");
                return false;
```

```
            }

            // Send a welcome email to the new contact.
            try
            {
                string subject = "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter";
                string htmlContent = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _htmlWelcomeFile);
                string textContent = await
File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation + _textWelcomeFile);

                await _sesv2Wrapper.SendEmailAsync(fromEmailAddress, new
List<string> { emailAddress }, subject, htmlContent, textContent);
                Console.WriteLine($"Welcome email sent to {emailAddress}.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error sending welcome email to {emailAddress}:
{ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }

            // Wait 2 seconds before sending the next email (if the account is in
the SES Sandbox).
            await Task.Delay(2000);
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    ///  Send the coupon newsletter to the subscribers in the contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> SendCouponNewsletter(string fromEmailAddress)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("3. In this step, we will send the coupon newsletter:" +
                          "\r\n  - Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact
list." +
                          "\r\n  - Send the coupon newsletter using the email
template to each contact.\r\n");
```

```
        // Retrieve the list of contacts from the contact list.
        var contacts = await _sesv2Wrapper.ListContactsAsync(_contactListName);
        if (!contacts.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"No contacts found in the {_contactListName} contact
list.");
            return false;
        }

        // Load the coupon data from the sample_coupons.json file.
        string couponsData = await File.ReadAllTextAsync(_resourcesFilePathLocation
+ _couponsDataFile);

        // Send the coupon newsletter to each contact using the email template.
        try
        {
            foreach (var contact in contacts)
            {
                // To use the Contact List for list management, send to only one
address at a time.
                await _sesv2Wrapper.SendEmailAsync(fromEmailAddress,
                    new List<string> { contact.EmailAddress },
                    null, null, null, _templateName, couponsData, _contactListName);
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"Coupon newsletter sent to contact list
{_contactListName}.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error sending coupon newsletter to contact list
{_contactListName}: {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Provide instructions for monitoring sending activity and metrics.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="interactive">True to run in interactive mode.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static bool MonitorAndReview(bool interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("4. In step 4, we will monitor and review:" +
                          "\r\n  - Provide instructions for the user to review the
sending activity and metrics in the AWS console.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine("Review your sending activity using the SES Homepage in
the AWS console.");
        Console.WriteLine("Press Enter to open the SES Homepage in your default
browser...");
        if (interactive)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
            try
            {
                // Open the SES Homepage in the default browser.
                Process.Start(new ProcessStartInfo
                {
                    FileName = "https://console.aws.amazon.com/ses/home",
                    UseShellExecute = true
                });
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error opening the SES Homepage: {ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine("Review the sending activity and email metrics, then press
Enter to continue...");
        if (interactive)
            Console.ReadLine();
        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources used in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="verifiedEmailAddress">The verified email address from
PrepareApplication.</param>
    /// <param name="interactive">True if interactive.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> Cleanup(string verifiedEmailAddress, bool
 interactive)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("5. Finally, we clean up resources:" +
                          "\r\n  - Delete the contact list (which also deletes all
 contacts within it)." +
                          "\r\n  - Delete the email template." +
                          "\r\n  - Optionally delete the verified email identity.\r
\n");

        Console.WriteLine("Cleaning up resources...");

        // Delete the contact list (this also deletes all contacts in the list).
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteContactListAsync(_contactListName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} deleted.");
        }
        catch (NotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list {_contactListName} not found.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting contact list {_contactListName}:
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        // Delete the email template.
        try
        {
            await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(_templateName);
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} deleted.");
        }
        catch (NotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template {_templateName} not found.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Error deleting email template {_templateName}:
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }

        // Ask the user if they want to delete the email identity.
        var deleteIdentity = !interactive ||
            GetYesNoResponse(
                $"Do you want to delete the email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}?
(y/n) ");
        if (deleteIdentity)
        {
            try
            {
                await _sesv2Wrapper.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(verifiedEmailAddress);
                Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}
deleted.");
            }
            catch (NotFoundException)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Email identity {verifiedEmailAddress} not found.");
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Error deleting email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}:
{ex.Message}");
                return false;
            }
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Skipping deletion of email identity {verifiedEmailAddress}.");
        }

        return true;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null && ynResponse.Equals("y",
 StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Simple check to verify a string is an email address.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="email">The string to verify.</param>
    /// <returns>True if a valid email.</returns>
    private static bool IsEmail(string? email)
    {
        if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(email))
            return false;
        return Regex.IsMatch(email, @"^[^@\s]+@[^@\s]+\.[^@\s]+$",
 RegexOptions.IgnoreCase);
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
using System.Net;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2;
using Amazon.SimpleEmailV2.Model;

namespace Sesv2Scenario;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper class for Amazon Simple Email Service (SES) v2 operations.
/// </summary>
public class SESv2Wrapper
{

    private readonly IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2 _sesClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the SESv2Wrapper.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="sesClient">The injected SES v2 client.</param>
    public SESv2Wrapper(IAmazonSimpleEmailServiceV2 sesClient)
    {
        _sesClient = sesClient;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact and adds it to the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailAddress">The email address of the contact.</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateContact operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactAsync(string emailAddress, string
contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactRequest
        {
            EmailAddress = emailAddress,
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact with email address {emailAddress} already
exists in the contact list {contactListName}.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a contact list with the specified name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new CreateContactListRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Contact list with name {contactListName} already
exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            return true;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the contact list:
{ex.Message}");
        }
        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email identity (email address or domain) and starts the
verification process.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to create and
verify.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the CreateEmailIdentity operation.</returns>
    public async Task<CreateEmailIdentityResponse> CreateEmailIdentityAsync(string
emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailIdentityRequest
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email identity {emailIdentity} already exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email identities has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Creates an email template with the specified content.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email template.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email template.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName, string
subject, string htmlContent, string textContent)
    {
        var request = new CreateEmailTemplateRequest
        {
            TemplateName = templateName,
            TemplateContent = new EmailTemplateContent
            {
                Subject = subject,
                Html = htmlContent,
```

```
                Text = textContent
            }
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.CreateEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Email template with name {templateName} already
 exists.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (LimitExceededException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The limit for email templates has been exceeded.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating the email template:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a contact list and all contacts within it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteContactListAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteContactListRequest
```

```
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteContactListAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the contact list:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email identity (email address or domain).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="emailIdentity">The email address or domain to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(string emailIdentity)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailIdentityRequest
```

```
        {
            EmailIdentity = emailIdentity
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailIdentityAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (ConcurrentModificationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} is being modified
by another operation or thread.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email identity {emailIdentity} does not
exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email identity:
{ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes an email template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(string templateName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteEmailTemplateRequest
```

```
        {
            TemplateName = templateName
        };

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.DeleteEmailTemplateAsync(request);
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The email template {templateName} does not exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting the email template:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return false;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the contacts in the specified contact list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of contacts response from the ListContacts operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<List<Contact>> ListContactsAsync(string contactListName)
    {
        var request = new ListContactsRequest
        {
            ContactListName = contactListName
        };

        try
        {
```

```
            var response = await _sesClient.ListContactsAsync(request);
            return response.Contacts;
        }
        catch (NotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"The contact list {contactListName} does not
 exist.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
 later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing the contacts:
 {ex.Message}");
        }

        return new List<Contact>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sends an email with the specified content and options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="fromEmailAddress">The email address to send the email from.</
param>
    /// <param name="toEmailAddresses">The email addresses to send the email to.</
param>
    /// <param name="subject">The subject of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="htmlContent">The HTML content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="textContent">The text content of the email.</param>
    /// <param name="templateName">The name of the email template to use
 (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="templateData">The data to replace placeholders in the email
 template (optional).</param>
    /// <param name="contactListName">The name of the contact list for unsubscribe
 functionality (optional).</param>
    /// <returns>The MessageId response from the SendEmail operation.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SendEmailAsync(string fromEmailAddress, List<string>
 toEmailAddresses, string? subject,
```

```
        string? htmlContent, string? textContent, string? templateName = null,
string? templateData = null, string? contactListName = null)
    {
        var request = new SendEmailRequest
        {
            FromEmailAddress = fromEmailAddress
        };

        if (toEmailAddresses.Any())
        {
            request.Destination = new Destination { ToAddresses =
toEmailAddresses };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(templateName))
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent()
            {
                Template = new Template
                {
                    TemplateName = templateName,
                    TemplateData = templateData
                }
            };
        }
        else
        {
            request.Content = new EmailContent
            {
                Simple = new Message
                {
                    Subject = new Content { Data = subject },
                    Body = new Body
                    {
                        Html = new Content { Data = htmlContent },
                        Text = new Content { Data = textContent }
                    }
                }
            };
        }

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(contactListName))
        {
            request.ListManagementOptions = new ListManagementOptions
```

```
            {
                ContactListName = contactListName
            };
        }

        try
        {
            var response = await _sesClient.SendEmailAsync(request);
            return response.MessageId;
        }
        catch (AccountSuspendedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email has been
permanently restricted.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MailFromDomainNotVerifiedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The sending domain is not verified.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (MessageRejectedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The message content is invalid.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (SendingPausedException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("The account's ability to send email is currently
paused.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (TooManyRequestsException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Too many requests were made. Please try again
later.");
            Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while sending the email:
{ex.Message}");
        }
```

```
        return string.Empty;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

namespace SNSActions;

public static class HelloSNS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var snsClient = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SNS! Following are some of your topics:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get a list of topics.
        var response = await snsClient.ListTopicsAsync(
            new ListTopicsRequest());

        foreach (var topic in response.Topics)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tTopic ARN: {topic.TopicArn}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service
    /// (Amazon SNS) to check whether a phone number has been opted out.
    /// </summary>
    public class IsPhoneNumOptedOut
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string phoneNumber = "+15551112222";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            await CheckIfOptedOutAsync(client, phoneNumber);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Checks to see if the supplied phone number has been opted out.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS Client object used
        /// to check if the phone number has been opted out.</param>
        /// <param name="phoneNumber">A string representing the phone number
        /// to check.</param>
        public static async Task
CheckIfOptedOutAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string phoneNumber)
        {
            var request = new CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest
            {
                PhoneNumber = phoneNumber,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await
client.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutAsync(request);

                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    string optOutStatus = response.IsOptedOut ? "opted out" : "not
opted out.";
                    Console.WriteLine($"The phone number: {phoneNumber} is
{optOutStatus}");
                }
            }
            catch (AuthorizationErrorException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{ex.Message}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a topic with a specific name.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to use Amazon Simple Notification Service
    /// (Amazon SNS) to add a new Amazon SNS topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class CreateSNSTopic
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicName = "ExampleSNSTopic";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            var topicArn = await CreateSNSTopicAsync(client, topicName);
            Console.WriteLine($"New topic ARN: {topicArn}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new SNS topic using the supplied topic name.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized SNS client object used to
        /// create the new topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicName">A string representing the topic name.</param>
        /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created topic.</returns>
        public static async Task<string>
CreateSNSTopicAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string topicName)
        {
            var request = new CreateTopicRequest
```

```
            {
                Name = topicName,
            };

            var response = await client.CreateTopicAsync(request);

            return response.TopicArn;
        }
    }
```

Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication attributes.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
```

```
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
"true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a topic by its topic ARN.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
```

```
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example shows how to retrieve the attributes of an Amazon Simple
    /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class GetTopicAttributes
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:000000000000:ExampleSNSTopic";
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            var attributes = await GetTopicAttributesAsync(client, topicArn);
            DisplayTopicAttributes(attributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
```

```
        /// Given the ARN of the Amazon SNS topic, this method retrieves the topic
        /// attributes.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to retrieve the attributes for the Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic for which to retrieve
        /// the attributes.</param>
        /// <returns>A Dictionary of topic attributes.</returns>
        public static async Task<Dictionary<string, string>>
GetTopicAttributesAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn)
        {
            var response = await client.GetTopicAttributesAsync(topicArn);

            return response.Attributes;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// This method displays the attributes for an Amazon SNS topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="topicAttributes">A Dictionary containing the
        /// attributes for an Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        public static void DisplayTopicAttributes(Dictionary<string, string>
topicAttributes)
        {
            foreach (KeyValuePair<string, string> entry in topicAttributes)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{entry.Key}: {entry.Value}\n");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   using System;
   using System.Collections.Generic;
   using System.Threading.Tasks;
   using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
   using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

   /// <summary>
   /// This example will retrieve a list of the existing Amazon Simple
   /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) subscriptions.
   /// </summary>
   public class ListSubscriptions
   {
       public static async Task Main()
       {
           IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

           Console.WriteLine("Enter a topic ARN to list subscriptions for a
specific topic, " +
                             "or press Enter to list subscriptions for all
topics.");
           var topicArn = Console.ReadLine();
           Console.WriteLine();

           var subscriptions = await GetSubscriptionsListAsync(client, topicArn);

           DisplaySubscriptionList(subscriptions);
       }

       /// <summary>
       /// Gets a list of the existing Amazon SNS subscriptions, optionally by
specifying a topic ARN.
       /// </summary>
       /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
```

```
        /// to obtain the list of subscriptions.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The optional ARN of a specific topic. Defaults to
 null.</param>
        /// <returns>A list containing information about each subscription.</
returns>
        public static async Task<List<Subscription>>
 GetSubscriptionsListAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client, string topicArn
 = null)
        {
            var results = new List<Subscription>();

            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(topicArn))
            {
                var paginateByTopic = client.Paginators.ListSubscriptionsByTopic(
                    new ListSubscriptionsByTopicRequest()
                    {
                        TopicArn = topicArn,
                    });

                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var subscription in paginateByTopic.Subscriptions)
                {
                    results.Add(subscription);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                var paginateAllSubscriptions =
 client.Paginators.ListSubscriptions(new ListSubscriptionsRequest());

                // Get the entire list using the paginator.
                await foreach (var subscription in
 paginateAllSubscriptions.Subscriptions)
                {
                    results.Add(subscription);
                }
            }

            return results;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Display a list of Amazon SNS subscription information.
        /// </summary>
```

```
        /// <param name="subscriptionList">A list containing details for existing
        /// Amazon SNS subscriptions.</param>
        public static void DisplaySubscriptionList(List<Subscription>
subscriptionList)
        {
            foreach (var subscription in subscriptionList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Owner: {subscription.Owner}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Subscription ARN:
{subscription.SubscriptionArn}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Topic ARN: {subscription.TopicArn}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Endpoint: {subscription.Endpoint}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Protocol: {subscription.Protocol}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Lists the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
```

```
    /// topics for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    public class ListSNSTopics
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();

            await GetTopicListAsync(client);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the list of Amazon SNS topics in groups of up to 100
        /// topics.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object used
        /// to retrieve the list of topics.</param>
        public static async Task GetTopicListAsync(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService
client)
        {
            // If there are more than 100 Amazon SNS topics, the call to
            // ListTopicsAsync will return a value to pass to the
            // method to retrieve the next 100 (or less) topics.
            string nextToken = string.Empty;

            do
            {
                var response = await client.ListTopicsAsync(nextToken);
                DisplayTopicsList(response.Topics);
                nextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
            while (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(nextToken));
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the list of Amazon SNS Topic ARNs.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="topicList">The list of Topic ARNs.</param>
        public static void DisplayTopicsList(List<Topic> topicList)
        {
            foreach (var topic in topicList)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{topic.TopicArn}");
```

```
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Publish a message to a topic.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// This example publishes a message to an Amazon Simple Notification
    /// Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
    /// </summary>
    public class PublishToSNSTopic
    {
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            string topicArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-2:000000000000:ExampleSNSTopic";
            string messageText = "This is an example message to publish to the
ExampleSNSTopic.";

            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client = new
AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient();
```

```
            await PublishToTopicAsync(client, topicArn, messageText);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized client object used to publish
        /// to the Amazon SNS topic.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
        /// <param name="messageText">The text of the message.</param>
        public static async Task PublishToTopicAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn,
            string messageText)
        {
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn,
                Message = messageText,
            };

            var response = await client.PublishAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully published message ID:
{response.MessageId}");
        }
    }
```

Publish a message to a topic with group, duplication, and attribute options.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
```

```
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is a
sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set
a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID for
this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID for
this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
```

```
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
 messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?", false);
        }
    }
```

Apply the user's selections to the publish action.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
```

```
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Subscribe

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new subscription to a topic.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon SNS client object, used
        /// to create an Amazon SNS subscription.</param>
        /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic to subscribe to.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A SubscribeResponse object which includes the subscription
        /// ARN for the new subscription.</returns>
        public static async Task<SubscribeResponse> TopicSubscribeAsync(
            IAmazonSimpleNotificationService client,
            string topicArn)
        {
            SubscribeRequest request = new SubscribeRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn,
                ReturnSubscriptionArn = true,
                Protocol = "email",
                Endpoint = "recipient@example.com",
            };

            var response = await client.SubscribeAsync(request);

            return response;
        }
```

Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
```

```
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
{ { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service .NET API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace SNSMessageExample
{
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService;
    using Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model;

    public class SNSMessage
    {
        private AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient snsClient;

        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes a new instance of the <see cref="SNSMessage"/> class.
        /// Constructs a new SNSMessage object initializing the Amazon Simple
        /// Notification Service (Amazon SNS) client using the supplied
        /// Region endpoint.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="regionEndpoint">The Amazon Region endpoint to use in
        /// sending test messages with this object.</param>
        public SNSMessage(RegionEndpoint regionEndpoint)
        {
            snsClient = new AmazonSimpleNotificationServiceClient(regionEndpoint);
```

```
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends the SMS message passed in the text parameter to the phone number
        /// in phoneNum.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="phoneNum">The ten-digit phone number to which the text
        /// message will be sent.</param>
        /// <param name="text">The text of the message to send.</param>
        /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
        public async Task SendTextMessageAsync(string phoneNum, string text)
        {
            if (string.IsNullOrEmpty(phoneNum) || string.IsNullOrEmpty(text))
            {
                return;
            }

            // Now actually send the message.
            var request = new PublishRequest
            {
                Message = text,
                PhoneNumber = phoneNum,
            };

            try
            {
                var response = await snsClient.PublishAsync(request);
            }
            catch (Exception ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Error sending message: {ex}");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Console application to run a feature scenario for topics and queues.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicsAndQueues
{
    private static bool _useFifoTopic = false;
    private static bool _useContentBasedDeduplication = false;
    private static string _topicName = null!;
    private static string _topicArn = null!;

    private static readonly int _queueCount = 2;
    private static readonly string[] _queueUrls = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _subscriptionArns = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _tones = { "cheerful", "funny", "serious",
 "sincere" };
    public static SNSWrapper SnsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static SQSWrapper SqsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static bool UseConsole { get; set; } = true;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
```

```
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
                    .AddTransient<SNSWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SQSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        PrintDescription();

        await RunScenario();

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        SnsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SNSWrapper>();
        SqsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SQSWrapper>();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Run the scenario for working with topics and queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> RunScenario()
    {
        try
        {
            await SetupTopic();

            await SetupQueues();

            await PublishMessages();

            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                var messages = await PollForMessages(queueUrl);
                if (messages.Any())
```

```
                {
                    await DeleteMessages(queueUrl, messages);
                }
            }
            await CleanupResources();

            Console.WriteLine("Messaging with topics and queues scenario is
complete.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Print a description for the tasks in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static void PrintDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
subscribe {_queueCount} SQS queues to the topic." +
                          $"\r\nYou can select from several options for configuring
the topic and the subscriptions for the 2 queues." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
in the queues.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SNS topic to be used with the queues.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out)." +
                          $"\r\nFIFO topics deliver messages in order and support
 deduplication and message filtering." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
 in the queues.\r\n");

        _useFifoTopic = GetYesNoResponse("Would you like to work with FIFO
 topics?");

        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            _topicName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for your SNS topic: ",
 "example-topic");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended to
 the topic name.\r\n");

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication
 is supported." +
                              $"\r\nDeduplication IDs are either set in the message
 or automatically generated " +
                              $"\r\nfrom content using a hash function.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nIf a message is successfully published to an SNS
 FIFO topic, any message " +
                              $"\r\npublished and determined to have the same
 deduplication ID, " +
                              $"\r\nwithin the five-minute deduplication interval,
 is accepted but not delivered.\r\n" +
                              $"\r\nFor more information about deduplication, " +
                              $"\r\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            _useContentBasedDeduplication = GetYesNoResponse("Use content-based
 deduplication instead of entering a deduplication ID?");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
```

```
        _topicArn = await SnsWrapper.CreateTopicWithName(_topicName, _useFifoTopic,
_useContentBasedDeduplication);

        Console.WriteLine($"Your new topic with the name {_topicName}" +
                          $"\r\nand Amazon Resource Name (ARN) {_topicArn}" +
                          $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return _topicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task SetupQueues()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now you will create {_queueCount} Amazon Simple Queue
Service (Amazon SQS) queues to subscribe to the topic.");

        // Repeat this section for each queue.
        for (int i = 0; i < _queueCount; i++)
        {
            var queueName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for an Amazon SQS queue:
", $"example-queue-{i}");
            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                // Only explain this once.
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the queue name.");
                }

                var queueUrl = await SqsWrapper.CreateQueueWithName(queueName,
_useFifoTopic);

                _queueUrls[i] = queueUrl;

                Console.WriteLine($"Your new queue with the name {queueName}" +
                                  $"\r\nand queue URL {queueUrl}" +
                                  $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");
```

```
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN,\r\n" +
                        $"which is used to create a subscription.");
                    Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                }

                var queueArn = await SqsWrapper.GetQueueArnByUrl(queueUrl);

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy must be
attached to an SQS queue, enabling it to receive\r\n" +
                        $"messages from an SNS topic");
                }

                await SqsWrapper.SetQueuePolicyForTopic(queueArn, _topicArn,
queueUrl);

                await SetupFilters(i, queueArn, queueName);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up filters with user options for a queue.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueCount">The number of this queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupFilters(int queueCount, string queueArn, string
queueName)
    {
        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            // Only explain this once.
            if (queueCount == 0)
```

```
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters." +
                    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the
 filtered messages " +
                    "will be received in the queue.");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For information about message filtering, " +
                    "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a" +
                    "TONE attribute.");
            }

            var useFilter = GetYesNoResponse($"Filter messages for {queueName}'s
 subscription to the topic?");

            string? filterPolicy = null;
            if (useFilter)
            {
                filterPolicy = CreateFilterPolicy();
            }
            var subscriptionArn = await
 SnsWrapper.SubscribeTopicWithFilter(_topicArn, filterPolicy,
                queueArn);
            _subscriptionArns[queueCount] = subscriptionArn;

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"The queue {queueName} has been subscribed to the topic
 {_topicName} " +
                $"with the subscription ARN {subscriptionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use user input to create a filter policy for a subscription.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The serialized filter policy.</returns>
    public static string CreateFilterPolicy()
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"You can filter messages by one or more of the following" +
            $"TONE attributes.");

        List<string> filterSelections = new List<string>();

        var selectionNumber = 0;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Enter a number to add a TONE filter, or enter 0 to stop adding
 filters.");
            for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
            }

            var selection = GetUserResponse("", filterSelections.Any() ? "0" : "1");
            int.TryParse(selection, out selectionNumber);
            if (selectionNumber > 0 && !
filterSelections.Contains(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]))
            {
                filterSelections.Add(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]);
            }
        } while (selectionNumber != 0);

        var filters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>
        {
            { "tone", filterSelections }
        };
        string filterPolicy = JsonSerializer.Serialize(filters);
        return filterPolicy;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
```

```
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is a
sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set
a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID for
this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
                                      "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID for
this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
```

```
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?", false);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Poll for the published messages to see the results of the user's choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> PollForMessages(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now the SQS queue at {queueUrl} will be polled to
retrieve the messages." +
                          "\r\nPress any key to continue.");
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var moreMessages = true;
        var messages = new List<Message>();
        while (moreMessages)
        {
            var newMessages = await SqsWrapper.ReceiveMessagesByUrl(queueUrl, 10);

            moreMessages = newMessages.Any();
            if (moreMessages)
            {
                messages.AddRange(newMessages);
            }
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"{messages.Count} message(s) were received by the queue
at {queueUrl}.");

        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tMessage:" +
                              $"\n\t{message.Body}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the message using handles in a batch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteMessages(string queueUrl, List<Message> messages)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the messages in this queue in a
batch.");
        await SqsWrapper.DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(queueUrl, messages);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        try
        {
            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl))
                {
                    var deleteQueue =
                        GetYesNoResponse($"Delete queue with url {queueUrl}?");
                    if (deleteQueue)
```

```
                    {
                        await SqsWrapper.DeleteQueueByUrl(queueUrl);
                    }
                }
            }

            foreach (var subscriptionArn in _subscriptionArns)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subscriptionArn))
                {
                    await SnsWrapper.UnsubscribeByArn(subscriptionArn);
                }
            }

            var deleteTopic = GetYesNoResponse($"Delete topic {_topicName}?");
            if (deleteTopic)
            {
                await SnsWrapper.DeleteTopicByArn(_topicArn);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Unable to clean up resources. Here's why:
{ex.Message}.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question, bool defaultAnswer = true)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
            var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
            var response = ynResponse != null &&
                           ynResponse.Equals("y",
                               StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
```

```
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a string response from the user through the console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static string GetUserResponse(string question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            var response = "";
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(response))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                response = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SQS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SQSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSQS _amazonSQSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SQS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SQS client.</param>
    public SQSWrapper(IAmazonSQS amazonSQS)
    {
        _amazonSQSClient = amazonSQS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
```

```
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string topicArn,
string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
```

```
                                        "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                        $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                         "\"Condition\": {" +
                                              "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                   $"\"aws:SourceArn\": \"{topicArn}\""
 +
                                                    "}" +
                                            "}" +
                                   "}]" +
                              "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
 queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl, List<Message>
 messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
 _amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SNS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SNSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleNotificationService _amazonSNSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SNS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SNS client.</param>
    public SNSWrapper(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService amazonSNS)
    {
        _amazonSNSClient = amazonSNS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }
```

```
            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
"true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
{ { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
_amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
 attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
```

```
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic

- GetQueueAttributes
- Publish
- ReceiveMessage
- SetQueueAttributes
- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SNSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SnsIntegration;

public class Function
```

```
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SNSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var record in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessRecordAsync(record, context);
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessRecordAsync(SNSEvent.SNSRecord record, ILambdaContext
 context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed record {record.Sns.Message}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }
    }
}
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.SQS;
using Amazon.SQS.Model;

namespace SQSActions;

public static class HelloSQS
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var sqsClient = new AmazonSQSClient();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon SQS! Following are some of your queues:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        // Let's get the first five queues.
        var response = await sqsClient.ListQueuesAsync(
            new ListQueuesRequest()
            {
                MaxResults = 5
            });

        foreach (var queue in response.QueueUrls)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"\tQueue Url: {queue}");
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a queue with a specific name.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
useFifoQueue)
    {
```

```
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue and send a message to it.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
```

```
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class CreateSendExample
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly string QueueName = "Example_Queue";
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ServiceRegion =
 RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
        private static IAmazonSQS client;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            client = new AmazonSQSClient(ServiceRegion);
            var createQueueResponse = await CreateQueue(client, QueueName);

            string queueUrl = createQueueResponse.QueueUrl;

            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
 Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
            {
                { "Title",   new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "The Whistler" } },
                { "Author",  new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "John Grisham" } },
                { "WeeksOn", new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "Number",
 StringValue = "6" } },
            };

            string messageBody = "Information about current NY Times fiction
 bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.";

            var sendMsgResponse = await SendMessage(client, queueUrl, messageBody,
 messageAttributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon SQS queue using the queue name passed to it
        /// in queueName.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing the name of the queue
        /// to create.</param>
```

```
        /// <returns>A CreateQueueResponse that contains information about the
        /// newly created queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<CreateQueueResponse> CreateQueue(IAmazonSQS client,
 string queueName)
        {
            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "DelaySeconds", "60" },
                    { "MessageRetentionPeriod", "86400" },
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateQueueAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"Created a queue with URL : {response.QueueUrl}");

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a message to an SQS queue.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to which to send the
        /// message.</param>
        /// <param name="messageBody">A string representing the body of the
        /// message to be sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <param name="messageAttributes">Attributes for the message to be
        /// sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <returns>A SendMessageResponse object that contains information
        /// about the message that was sent.</returns>
        public static async Task<SendMessageResponse> SendMessage(
            IAmazonSQS client,
            string queueUrl,
            string messageBody,
            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes)
        {
            var sendMessageRequest = new SendMessageRequest
            {
                DelaySeconds = 10,
                MessageAttributes = messageAttributes,
```

```
                MessageBody = messageBody,
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            };

            var response = await client.SendMessageAsync(sendMessageRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sent a message with id : {response.MessageId}");

            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue and then delete the message.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the AWS Region you want to use is different from
            // the AWS Region defined for the default user, supply
            // the specify your AWS Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();
            string queueName = "Example_Queue";

            var queueUrl = await GetQueueUrl(client, queueName);
            Console.WriteLine($"The SQS queue's URL is {queueUrl}");

            var response = await ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(client, queueUrl);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Message: {response.Messages[0]}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the queue URL for the queue named in the queueName
        /// property using the client object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon SQS client used to retrieve the
        /// queue URL.</param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing  name of the queue
        /// for which to retrieve the URL.</param>
        /// <returns>The URL of the queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetQueueUrl(IAmazonSQS client, string
queueName)
        {
            var request = new GetQueueUrlRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(request);
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the message from the quque at the URL passed in the
        /// queueURL parameters using the client.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The SQS client used to retrieve a message.</param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue from which to retrieve
        /// a message.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the call to ReceiveMessageAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse>
ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(IAmazonSQS client, string queueUrl)
        {
            // Receive a single message from the queue.
            var receiveMessageRequest = new ReceiveMessageRequest
            {
                AttributeNames = { "SentTimestamp" },
                MaxNumberOfMessages = 1,
                MessageAttributeNames = { "All" },
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                VisibilityTimeout = 0,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 0,
```

```
            };

            var receiveMessageResponse = await
client.ReceiveMessageAsync(receiveMessageRequest);

            // Delete the received message from the queue.
            var deleteMessageRequest = new DeleteMessageRequest
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                ReceiptHandle = receiveMessageResponse.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
            };

            await client.DeleteMessageAsync(deleteMessageRequest);

            return receiveMessageResponse;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl, List<Message>
messages)
    {
```

```
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
_amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a queue by using its URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class GetQueueUrl
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// Initializes the Amazon SQS client object and then calls the
        /// GetQueueUrlAsync method to retrieve the URL of an Amazon SQS
        /// queue.
        /// </summary>
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the Amazon SQS message queue is not in the same AWS Region as your
            // default user, you need to provide the AWS Region as a parameter to
the
            // client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();

            string queueName = "New-Example-Queue";

            try
            {
                var response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(queueName);
```

```
                if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"The URL for {queueName} is:
{response.QueueUrl}");
                }
            }
            catch (QueueDoesNotExistException ex)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine($"The queue {queueName} was not found.");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive messages from a queue by using its URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
```

```
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue, and then delete the message.

```
        public static async Task Main()
        {
            // If the AWS Region you want to use is different from
            // the AWS Region defined for the default user, supply
            // the specify your AWS Region to the client constructor.
            var client = new AmazonSQSClient();
            string queueName = "Example_Queue";

            var queueUrl = await GetQueueUrl(client, queueName);
            Console.WriteLine($"The SQS queue's URL is {queueUrl}");

            var response = await ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(client, queueUrl);

            Console.WriteLine($"Message: {response.Messages[0]}");
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve the queue URL for the queue named in the queueName
        /// property using the client object.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon SQS client used to retrieve the
        /// queue URL.</param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing  name of the queue
        /// for which to retrieve the URL.</param>
        /// <returns>The URL of the queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetQueueUrl(IAmazonSQS client, string
 queueName)
```

```
        {
            var request = new GetQueueUrlRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
            };

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = await client.GetQueueUrlAsync(request);
            return response.QueueUrl;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieves the message from the quque at the URL passed in the
        /// queueURL parameters using the client.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The SQS client used to retrieve a message.</param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue from which to retrieve
        /// a message.</param>
        /// <returns>The response from the call to ReceiveMessageAsync.</returns>
        public static async Task<ReceiveMessageResponse>
ReceiveAndDeleteMessage(IAmazonSQS client, string queueUrl)
        {
            // Receive a single message from the queue.
            var receiveMessageRequest = new ReceiveMessageRequest
            {
                AttributeNames = { "SentTimestamp" },
                MaxNumberOfMessages = 1,
                MessageAttributeNames = { "All" },
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                VisibilityTimeout = 0,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 0,
            };

            var receiveMessageResponse = await
client.ReceiveMessageAsync(receiveMessageRequest);

            // Delete the received message from the queue.
            var deleteMessageRequest = new DeleteMessageRequest
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                ReceiptHandle = receiveMessageResponse.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
            };

            await client.DeleteMessageAsync(deleteMessageRequest);
```

```
            return receiveMessageResponse;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS queue and send a message to it.

```
    using System;
    using System.Collections.Generic;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon;
    using Amazon.SQS;
    using Amazon.SQS.Model;

    public class CreateSendExample
    {
        // Specify your AWS Region (an example Region is shown).
        private static readonly string QueueName = "Example_Queue";
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint ServiceRegion =
RegionEndpoint.USWest2;
        private static IAmazonSQS client;

        public static async Task Main()
        {
            client = new AmazonSQSClient(ServiceRegion);
            var createQueueResponse = await CreateQueue(client, QueueName);
```

```
            string queueUrl = createQueueResponse.QueueUrl;

            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
 Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
            {
                { "Title",   new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "The Whistler" } },
                { "Author",  new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "String",
 StringValue = "John Grisham" } },
                { "WeeksOn", new MessageAttributeValue { DataType = "Number",
 StringValue = "6" } },
            };

            string messageBody = "Information about current NY Times fiction
 bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.";

            var sendMsgResponse = await SendMessage(client, queueUrl, messageBody,
 messageAttributes);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Creates a new Amazon SQS queue using the queue name passed to it
        /// in queueName.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueName">A string representing the name of the queue
        /// to create.</param>
        /// <returns>A CreateQueueResponse that contains information about the
        /// newly created queue.</returns>
        public static async Task<CreateQueueResponse> CreateQueue(IAmazonSQS client,
 string queueName)
        {
            var request = new CreateQueueRequest
            {
                QueueName = queueName,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "DelaySeconds", "60" },
                    { "MessageRetentionPeriod", "86400" },
                },
            };

            var response = await client.CreateQueueAsync(request);
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Created a queue with URL : {response.QueueUrl}");

            return response;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a message to an SQS queue.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">An SQS client object used to send the message.</
param>
        /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue to which to send the
        /// message.</param>
        /// <param name="messageBody">A string representing the body of the
        /// message to be sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <param name="messageAttributes">Attributes for the message to be
        /// sent to the queue.</param>
        /// <returns>A SendMessageResponse object that contains information
        /// about the message that was sent.</returns>
        public static async Task<SendMessageResponse> SendMessage(
            IAmazonSQS client,
            string queueUrl,
            string messageBody,
            Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes)
        {
            var sendMessageRequest = new SendMessageRequest
            {
                DelaySeconds = 10,
                MessageAttributes = messageAttributes,
                MessageBody = messageBody,
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            };

            var response = await client.SendMessageAsync(sendMessageRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Sent a message with id : {response.MessageId}");

            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

SetQueueAttributes

The following code example shows how to use SetQueueAttributes.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string topicArn,
string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
                                           "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                $"\"aws:SourceArn\": \"{topicArn}\""
+
                                            "}" +
                                        "}" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
```

```
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Console application to run a feature scenario for topics and queues.
/// </summary>
public static class TopicsAndQueues
{
    private static bool _useFifoTopic = false;
    private static bool _useContentBasedDeduplication = false;
```

```
    private static string _topicName = null!;
    private static string _topicArn = null!;

    private static readonly int _queueCount = 2;
    private static readonly string[] _queueUrls = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _subscriptionArns = new string[_queueCount];
    private static readonly string[] _tones = { "cheerful", "funny", "serious",
"sincere" };
    public static SNSWrapper SnsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static SQSWrapper SqsWrapper { get; set; } = null!;
    public static bool UseConsole { get; set; } = true;
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EventBridge.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonSQS>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonSimpleNotificationService>()
                    .AddTransient<SNSWrapper>()
                    .AddTransient<SQSWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        ServicesSetup(host);
        PrintDescription();

        await RunScenario();

    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Populate the services for use within the console application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The services host.</param>
    private static void ServicesSetup(IHost host)
    {
        SnsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SNSWrapper>();
        SqsWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SQSWrapper>();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Run the scenario for working with topics and queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> RunScenario()
    {
        try
        {
            await SetupTopic();

            await SetupQueues();

            await PublishMessages();

            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                var messages = await PollForMessages(queueUrl);
                if (messages.Any())
                {
                    await DeleteMessages(queueUrl, messages);
                }
            }
            await CleanupResources();

            Console.WriteLine("Messaging with topics and queues scenario is
complete.");
            return true;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine($"There was a problem running the scenario:
{ex.Message}");
            await CleanupResources();
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            return false;
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Print a description for the tasks in the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
```

```
    private static void PrintDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
 subscribe {_queueCount} SQS queues to the topic." +
                          $"\r\nYou can select from several options for configuring
 the topic and the subscriptions for the 2 queues." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
 in the queues.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the SNS topic to be used with the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupTopic()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out)." +
                          $"\r\nFIFO topics deliver messages in order and support
 deduplication and message filtering." +
                          $"\r\nYou can then post to the topic and see the results
 in the queues.\r\n");

        _useFifoTopic = GetYesNoResponse("Would you like to work with FIFO
 topics?");

        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            _topicName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for your SNS topic: ",
 "example-topic");
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended to
 the topic name.\r\n");

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication
 is supported." +
                               $"\r\nDeduplication IDs are either set in the message
 or automatically generated " +
                               $"\r\nfrom content using a hash function.\r\n" +
                               $"\r\nIf a message is successfully published to an SNS
 FIFO topic, any message " +
                               $"\r\npublished and determined to have the same
 deduplication ID, " +
                               $"\r\nwithin the five-minute deduplication interval,
 is accepted but not delivered.\r\n" +
                               $"\r\nFor more information about deduplication, " +
                               $"\r\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/
fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            _useContentBasedDeduplication = GetYesNoResponse("Use content-based
 deduplication instead of entering a deduplication ID?");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }

        _topicArn = await SnsWrapper.CreateTopicWithName(_topicName, _useFifoTopic,
 _useContentBasedDeduplication);

        Console.WriteLine($"Your new topic with the name {_topicName}" +
                          $"\r\nand Amazon Resource Name (ARN) {_topicArn}" +
                          $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return _topicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the queues.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task SetupQueues()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now you will create {_queueCount} Amazon Simple Queue
 Service (Amazon SQS) queues to subscribe to the topic.");

        // Repeat this section for each queue.
        for (int i = 0; i < _queueCount; i++)
        {
```

```
            var queueName = GetUserResponse("Enter a name for an Amazon SQS queue:
", $"example-queue-{i}");
            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                // Only explain this once.
                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the queue name.");
                }

                var queueUrl = await SqsWrapper.CreateQueueWithName(queueName,
_useFifoTopic);

                _queueUrls[i] = queueUrl;

                Console.WriteLine($"Your new queue with the name {queueName}" +
                                  $"\r\nand queue URL {queueUrl}" +
                                  $"\r\nhas been created.\r\n");

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN,\r\n" +
                        $"which is used to create a subscription.");
                    Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
                }

                var queueArn = await SqsWrapper.GetQueueArnByUrl(queueUrl);

                if (i == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy must be
attached to an SQS queue, enabling it to receive\r\n" +
                        $"messages from an SNS topic");
                }

                await SqsWrapper.SetQueuePolicyForTopic(queueArn, _topicArn,
queueUrl);

                await SetupFilters(i, queueArn, queueName);
            }
```

```
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Set up filters with user options for a queue.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueCount">The number of this queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    public static async Task SetupFilters(int queueCount, string queueArn, string
 queueName)
    {
        if (_useFifoTopic)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            // Only explain this once.
            if (queueCount == 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters." +
                    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the
 filtered messages " +
                    "will be received in the queue.");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For information about message filtering, " +
                    "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-
filtering.html");

                Console.WriteLine(
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a" +
                    "TONE attribute.");
            }

            var useFilter = GetYesNoResponse($"Filter messages for {queueName}'s
 subscription to the topic?");

            string? filterPolicy = null;
            if (useFilter)
            {
                filterPolicy = CreateFilterPolicy();
```

```
            }
            var subscriptionArn = await
 SnsWrapper.SubscribeTopicWithFilter(_topicArn, filterPolicy,
                queueArn);
            _subscriptionArns[queueCount] = subscriptionArn;

            Console.WriteLine(
                $"The queue {queueName} has been subscribed to the topic
 {_topicName} " +
                $"with the subscription ARN {subscriptionArn}");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Use user input to create a filter policy for a subscription.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The serialized filter policy.</returns>
    public static string CreateFilterPolicy()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"You can filter messages by one or more of the following" +
            $"TONE attributes.");

        List<string> filterSelections = new List<string>();

        var selectionNumber = 0;
        do
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"Enter a number to add a TONE filter, or enter 0 to stop adding
 filters.");
            for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
            }

            var selection = GetUserResponse("", filterSelections.Any() ? "0" : "1");
            int.TryParse(selection, out selectionNumber);
            if (selectionNumber > 0 && !
filterSelections.Contains(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]))
            {
                filterSelections.Add(_tones[selectionNumber - 1]);
```

```
            }
        } while (selectionNumber != 0);

        var filters = new Dictionary<string, List<string>>
        {
            { "tone", filterSelections }
        };
        string filterPolicy = JsonSerializer.Serialize(filters);
        return filterPolicy;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish messages using user settings.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task PublishMessages()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can publish messages.");

        var keepSendingMessages = true;
        string? deduplicationId = null;
        string? toneAttribute = null;
        while (keepSendingMessages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine();
            var message = GetUserResponse("Enter a message to publish.", "This is a
sample message");

            if (_useFifoTopic)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set
a message group ID." +
                                  "\r\nAll messages within the same group will be
received in the order " +
                                  "they were published.");

                Console.WriteLine();
                var messageGroupId = GetUserResponse("Enter a message group ID for
this message:", "1");

                if (!_useContentBasedDeduplication)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, " +
```

```
                                        "you must enter a deduplication ID.");

                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a deduplication ID for this message.");
                    deduplicationId = GetUserResponse("Enter a deduplication ID for
this message.", "1");
                }

                if (GetYesNoResponse("Add an attribute to this message?"))
                {
                    Console.WriteLine("Enter a number for an attribute.");
                    for (int i = 0; i < _tones.Length; i++)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {_tones[i]}");
                    }

                    var selection = GetUserResponse("", "1");
                    int.TryParse(selection, out var selectionNumber);

                    if (selectionNumber > 0 && selectionNumber < _tones.Length)
                    {
                        toneAttribute = _tones[selectionNumber - 1];
                    }
                }

                var messageID = await SnsWrapper.PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
                    _topicArn, message, "tone", toneAttribute, deduplicationId,
messageGroupId);

                Console.WriteLine($"Message published with id {messageID}.");
            }

            keepSendingMessages = GetYesNoResponse("Send another message?", false);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Poll for the published messages to see the results of the user's choices.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Message>> PollForMessages(string queueUrl)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Now the SQS queue at {queueUrl} will be polled to
retrieve the messages." +
```

```
                            "\r\nPress any key to continue.");
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var moreMessages = true;
        var messages = new List<Message>();
        while (moreMessages)
        {
            var newMessages = await SqsWrapper.ReceiveMessagesByUrl(queueUrl, 10);

            moreMessages = newMessages.Any();
            if (moreMessages)
            {
                messages.AddRange(newMessages);
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"{messages.Count} message(s) were received by the queue
at {queueUrl}.");

        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tMessage:" +
                              $"\n\t{message.Body}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete the message using handles in a batch.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DeleteMessages(string queueUrl, List<Message> messages)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Now we can delete the messages in this queue in a
batch.");
        await SqsWrapper.DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(queueUrl, messages);
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        try
        {
            foreach (var queueUrl in _queueUrls)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(queueUrl))
                {
                    var deleteQueue =
                        GetYesNoResponse($"Delete queue with url {queueUrl}?");
                    if (deleteQueue)
                    {
                        await SqsWrapper.DeleteQueueByUrl(queueUrl);
                    }
                }
            }

            foreach (var subscriptionArn in _subscriptionArns)
            {
                if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(subscriptionArn))
                {
                    await SnsWrapper.UnsubscribeByArn(subscriptionArn);
                }
            }

            var deleteTopic = GetYesNoResponse($"Delete topic {_topicName}?");
            if (deleteTopic)
            {
                await SnsWrapper.DeleteTopicByArn(_topicArn);
            }
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Unable to clean up resources. Here's why:
{ex.Message}.");
        }
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question, bool defaultAnswer = true)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(question);
            var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
            var response = ynResponse != null &&
                           ynResponse.Equals("y",
                               StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
        return defaultAnswer;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to get a string response from the user through the console.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <param name="defaultAnswer">Optional default answer to use.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static string GetUserResponse(string question, string defaultAnswer)
    {
        if (UseConsole)
        {
            var response = "";
            while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(response))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(question);
                response = Console.ReadLine();
            }
            return response;
        }
        // If not using the console, use the default.
```

```
        return defaultAnswer;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SQS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Queue Service (SQS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SQSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSQS _amazonSQSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SQS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SQS client.</param>
    public SQSWrapper(IAmazonSQS amazonSQS)
    {
        _amazonSQSClient = amazonSQS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a queue with a specific name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueName">The name for the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoQueue">True to use a FIFO queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The url for the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateQueueWithName(string queueName, bool
 useFifoQueue)
    {
        int maxMessage = 256 * 1024;
        var queueAttributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
        {
            {
                QueueAttributeName.MaximumMessageSize,
                maxMessage.ToString()
            }
        };

        var createQueueRequest = new CreateQueueRequest()
```

```
        {
            QueueName = queueName,
            Attributes = queueAttributes
        };

        if (useFifoQueue)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO queue.
            if (!queueName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createQueueRequest.QueueName = queueName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add an attribute for a FIFO queue.
            createQueueRequest.Attributes.Add(
                QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue, "true");
        }

        var createResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.CreateQueueAsync(
            new CreateQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueName = queueName
            });
        return createResponse.QueueUrl;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the ARN for a queue from its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The URL of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the queue.</returns>
    public async Task<string> GetQueueArnByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var getAttributesRequest = new GetQueueAttributesRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            AttributeNames = new List<string>() { QueueAttributeName.QueueArn }
        };

        var getAttributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.GetQueueAttributesAsync(
            getAttributesRequest);

        return getAttributesResponse.QueueARN;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the policy attribute of a queue for a topic.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url for the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetQueuePolicyForTopic(string queueArn, string topicArn,
string queueUrl)
    {
        var queuePolicy = "{" +
                                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                                     "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                                     "\"Principal\": {" +
                                         $"\"Service\": " +
                                             "\"sns.amazonaws.com\"" +
                                            "}," +
                                     "\"Action\": \"sqs:SendMessage\"," +
                                     $"\"Resource\": \"{queueArn}\"," +
                                      "\"Condition\": {" +
                                           "\"ArnEquals\": {" +
                                                $"\"aws:SourceArn\": \"{topicArn}\""
+
                                            "}" +
                                        "}" +
                                "}]" +
                            "}";
        var attributesResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.SetQueueAttributesAsync(
            new SetQueueAttributesRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>() { { "Policy",
queuePolicy } }
            });
        return attributesResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Receive messages from a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of messages.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<Message>> ReceiveMessagesByUrl(string queueUrl, int
 maxMessages)
    {
        // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
        // For information about long polling, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        var messageResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.ReceiveMessageAsync(
            new ReceiveMessageRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl,
                MaxNumberOfMessages = maxMessages,
                WaitTimeSeconds = 1
            });
        return messageResponse.Messages;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a batch of messages from a queue by its url.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMessageBatchByUrl(string queueUrl, List<Message>
 messages)
    {
        var deleteRequest = new DeleteMessageBatchRequest()
        {
            QueueUrl = queueUrl,
            Entries = new List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry>()
        };
        foreach (var message in messages)
        {
            deleteRequest.Entries.Add(new DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry()
            {
                ReceiptHandle = message.ReceiptHandle,
                Id = message.MessageId
            });
        }

        var deleteResponse = await
 _amazonSQSClient.DeleteMessageBatchAsync(deleteRequest);

        return deleteResponse.Failed.Any();
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a queue by its URL.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="queueUrl">The url of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteQueueByUrl(string queueUrl)
    {
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSQSClient.DeleteQueueAsync(
            new DeleteQueueRequest()
            {
                QueueUrl = queueUrl
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Amazon SNS operations.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS) operations.
/// </summary>
public class SNSWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonSimpleNotificationService _amazonSNSClient;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the Amazon SNS wrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonSQS">The injected Amazon SNS client.</param>
    public SNSWrapper(IAmazonSimpleNotificationService amazonSNS)
    {
        _amazonSNSClient = amazonSNS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new topic with a name and specific FIFO and de-duplication
 attributes.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicName">The name for the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">True to use a FIFO topic.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="useContentBasedDeduplication">True to use content-based de-
duplication.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new topic.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateTopicWithName(string topicName, bool
 useFifoTopic, bool useContentBasedDeduplication)
    {
        var createTopicRequest = new CreateTopicRequest()
        {
            Name = topicName,
        };

        if (useFifoTopic)
        {
            // Update the name if it is not correct for a FIFO topic.
            if (!topicName.EndsWith(".fifo"))
            {
                createTopicRequest.Name = topicName + ".fifo";
            }

            // Add the attributes from the method parameters.
            createTopicRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
            {
                { "FifoTopic", "true" }
            };
            if (useContentBasedDeduplication)
            {
                createTopicRequest.Attributes.Add("ContentBasedDeduplication",
 "true");
            }
        }

        var createResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.CreateTopicAsync(createTopicRequest);
        return createResponse.TopicArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="useFifoTopic">The optional filtering policy for the
 subscription.</param>
    /// <param name="queueArn">The ARN of the queue.</param>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the new subscription.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string> SubscribeTopicWithFilter(string topicArn, string?
 filterPolicy, string queueArn)
    {
        var subscribeRequest = new SubscribeRequest()
        {
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Protocol = "sqs",
            Endpoint = queueArn
        };

        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(filterPolicy))
        {
            subscribeRequest.Attributes = new Dictionary<string, string>
 { { "FilterPolicy", filterPolicy } };
        }

        var subscribeResponse = await
 _amazonSNSClient.SubscribeAsync(subscribeRequest);
        return subscribeResponse.SubscriptionArn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Publish a message to a topic with an attribute and optional deduplication
 and group IDs.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <param name="message">The message to publish.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeName">The optional attribute for the message.</param>
    /// <param name="attributeValue">The optional attribute value for the message.</
param>
    /// <param name="deduplicationId">The optional deduplication ID for the
 message.</param>
    /// <param name="groupId">The optional group ID for the message.</param>
    /// <returns>The ID of the message published.</returns>
    public async Task<string> PublishToTopicWithAttribute(
        string topicArn,
        string message,
        string? attributeName = null,
        string? attributeValue = null,
        string? deduplicationId = null,
        string? groupId = null)
    {
        var publishRequest = new PublishRequest()
        {
```

```
            TopicArn = topicArn,
            Message = message,
            MessageDeduplicationId = deduplicationId,
            MessageGroupId = groupId
        };

        if (attributeValue != null)
        {
            // Add the string attribute if it exists.
            publishRequest.MessageAttributes =
                new Dictionary<string, MessageAttributeValue>
                {
                    { attributeName!, new MessageAttributeValue() { StringValue =
attributeValue, DataType = "String"} }
                };
        }

        var publishResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.PublishAsync(publishRequest);
        return publishResponse.MessageId;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Unsubscribe from a topic by a subscription ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="subscriptionArn">The ARN of the subscription.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UnsubscribeByArn(string subscriptionArn)
    {
        var unsubscribeResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.UnsubscribeAsync(
            new UnsubscribeRequest()
            {
                SubscriptionArn = subscriptionArn
            });
        return unsubscribeResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a topic by its topic ARN.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="topicArn">The ARN of the topic.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTopicByArn(string topicArn)
    {
```

```
        var deleteResponse = await _amazonSNSClient.DeleteTopicAsync(
            new DeleteTopicRequest()
            {
                TopicArn = topicArn
            });
        return deleteResponse.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Use the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET with Amazon SQS

The following code example shows how to create applications that publish and receive Amazon SQS messages using the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET.

SDK for .NET

Provides a tutorial for the AWS Message Processing Framework for .NET. The tutorial creates a web application that allows the user to publish an Amazon SQS message and a command-line application that receives the message.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full tutorial in the AWS SDK for .NET Developer Guide and the example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SQS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;


// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali

namespace SqsIntegrationSampleCode
{
    public async Task FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt, ILambdaContext context)
    {
        foreach (var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
        }
```

```
        context.Logger.LogInformation("done");
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        try
        {
            context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
            await Task.CompletedTask;
        }
        catch (Exception e)
        {
            //You can use Dead Letter Queue to handle failures. By configuring a
 Lambda DLQ.
            context.Logger.LogError($"An error occurred");
            throw;
        }

    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using .NET.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
using Amazon.Lambda.Core;
using Amazon.Lambda.SQSEvents;

// Assembly attribute to enable the Lambda function's JSON input to be converted
 into a .NET class.
[assembly:
 LambdaSerializer(typeof(Amazon.Lambda.Serialization.SystemTextJson.DefaultLambdaJsonSeriali
namespace sqsSample;

public class Function
{
    public async Task<SQSBatchResponse> FunctionHandler(SQSEvent evnt,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        foreach(var message in evnt.Records)
        {
            try
            {
                //process your message
                await ProcessMessageAsync(message, context);
            }
            catch (System.Exception)
            {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.Add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier=message.MessageId});
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }

    private async Task ProcessMessageAsync(SQSEvent.SQSMessage message,
 ILambdaContext context)
    {
        if (String.IsNullOrEmpty(message.Body))
        {
            throw new Exception("No Body in SQS Message.");
        }
        context.Logger.LogInformation($"Processed message {message.Body}");
```

```
        // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        await Task.CompletedTask;
    }
}
```

Step Functions examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Step Functions.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Step Functions

The following code examples show how to get started using Step Functions.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

public class HelloStepFunctions
{
    static async Task Main()
```

```
    {
        var stepFunctionsClient = new AmazonStepFunctionsClient();

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to AWS Step Functions");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:");
        var stateMachineListRequest = new ListStateMachinesRequest { MaxResults =
 10 };

        // Get information for up to 10 Step Functions state machines.
        var response = await
 stepFunctionsClient.ListStateMachinesAsync(stateMachineListRequest);

        if (response.StateMachines.Count > 0)
        {
            response.StateMachines.ForEach(stateMachine =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"State Machine Name: {stateMachine.Name}\tAmazon
 Resource Name (ARN): {stateMachine.StateMachineArn}");
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\tNo state machines were found.");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an activity.
- Create a state machine from an Amazon States Language definition that contains the previously created activity as a step.
- Run the state machine and respond to the activity with user input.
- Get the final status and output after the run completes, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
global using System.Text.Json;
global using Amazon.StepFunctions;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
global using StepFunctionsActions;
global using LogLevel = Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.LogLevel;



using Amazon.IdentityManagement;
using Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

namespace StepFunctionsBasics;

public class StepFunctionsBasics
{
    private static ILogger _logger = null!;
    private static IConfigurationRoot _configuration = null!;
    private static IAmazonIdentityManagementService _iamService = null!;
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Step Functions.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonStepFunctions>()
                    .AddAWSService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>()
                    .AddTransient<StepFunctionsWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        _logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<StepFunctionsBasics>();

        // Load configuration settings.
        _configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var activityName = _configuration["ActivityName"];
        var stateMachineName = _configuration["StateMachineName"];

        var roleName = _configuration["RoleName"];
        var repoBaseDir = _configuration["RepoBaseDir"];
        var jsonFilePath = _configuration["JsonFilePath"];
        var jsonFileName = _configuration["JsonFileName"];

        var uiMethods = new UiMethods();
        var stepFunctionsWrapper =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<StepFunctionsWrapper>();

        _iamService =
host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonIdentityManagementService>();

        // Load definition for the state machine from a JSON file.
```

```
        var stateDefinitionJson = File.ReadAllText($"{repoBaseDir}{jsonFilePath}
{jsonFileName}");

        Console.Clear();
        uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create activity");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's start by creating an activity.");
        string activityArn;
        string stateMachineArn;

        // Check to see if the activity already exists.
        var activityList = await stepFunctionsWrapper.ListActivitiesAsync();
        var existingActivity = activityList.FirstOrDefault(activity => activity.Name
 == activityName);
        if (existingActivity is not null)
        {
            activityArn = existingActivity.ActivityArn;
            Console.WriteLine($"Activity, {activityName}, already exists.");
        }
        else
        {
            activityArn = await stepFunctionsWrapper.CreateActivity(activityName);
        }

        // Swap the placeholder in the JSON file with the Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
        // of the recently created activity.
        var stateDefinition =
 stateDefinitionJson.Replace("{{DOC_EXAMPLE_ACTIVITY_ARN}}", activityArn);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Create state machine");
        Console.WriteLine("Now we'll create a state machine.");

        // Find or create an IAM role that can be assumed by Step Functions.
        var role = await GetOrCreateStateMachineRole(roleName);

        // See if the state machine already exists.
        var stateMachineList = await stepFunctionsWrapper.ListStateMachinesAsync();
        var existingStateMachine =
            stateMachineList.FirstOrDefault(stateMachine => stateMachine.Name ==
 stateMachineName);
        if (existingStateMachine is not null)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"State machine, {stateMachineName}, already
exists.");
            stateMachineArn = existingStateMachine.StateMachineArn;
        }
        else
        {
            // Create the state machine.
            stateMachineArn =
                await stepFunctionsWrapper.CreateStateMachine(stateMachineName,
stateDefinition, role.Arn);
            uiMethods.PressEnter();
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The state machine has been created.");
        var describeStateMachineResponse = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.DescribeStateMachineAsync(stateMachineArn);


Console.WriteLine($"{describeStateMachineResponse.Name}\t{describeStateMachineResponse.Stat
        Console.WriteLine($"Current status: {describeStateMachineResponse.Status}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role assumed by the
state machine: {describeStateMachineResponse.RoleArn}");

        var userName = string.Empty;
        Console.Write("Before we start the state machine, tell me what should
ChatSFN call you? ");
        userName = Console.ReadLine();

        // Keep asking until the user enters a string value.
        while (string.IsNullOrEmpty(userName))
        {
            Console.Write("Enter your name: ");
            userName = Console.ReadLine();
        }

        var executionJson = @"{""name"": """ + userName + @"""}";

        // Start the state machine execution.
        Console.WriteLine("Now we'll start execution of the state machine.");
        var executionArn = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.StartExecutionAsync(executionJson, stateMachineArn);
        Console.WriteLine("State machine started.");

        Console.WriteLine($"Thank you, {userName}. Now let's get started...");
```

```
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("ChatSFN");

        var isDone = false;
        var response = new GetActivityTaskResponse();
        var taskToken = string.Empty;
        var userChoice = string.Empty;

        while (!isDone)
        {
            response = await stepFunctionsWrapper.GetActivityTaskAsync(activityArn,
"MvpWorker");
            taskToken = response.TaskToken;

            // Parse the returned JSON string.
            var taskJsonResponse = JsonDocument.Parse(response.Input);
            var taskJsonObject = taskJsonResponse.RootElement;
            var message = taskJsonObject.GetProperty("message").GetString();
            var actions =
taskJsonObject.GetProperty("actions").EnumerateArray().Select(x =>
x.ToString()).ToList();
            Console.WriteLine($"\n{message}\n");

            // Prompt the user for another choice.
            Console.WriteLine("ChatSFN: What would you like me to do?");
            actions.ForEach(action => Console.WriteLine($"\t{action}"));
            Console.Write($"\n{userName}, tell me your choice: ");
            userChoice = Console.ReadLine();
            if (userChoice?.ToLower() == "done")
            {
                isDone = true;
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"You have selected: {userChoice}");
            var jsonResponse = @"{""action"": """ + userChoice + @"""}";

            await stepFunctionsWrapper.SendTaskSuccessAsync(taskToken,
jsonResponse);
        }

        await stepFunctionsWrapper.StopExecution(executionArn);
        Console.WriteLine("Now we will wait for the execution to stop.");
        DescribeExecutionResponse executionResponse;
```

```
        do
        {
            executionResponse = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.DescribeExecutionAsync(executionArn);
        } while (executionResponse.Status == ExecutionStatus.RUNNING);

        Console.WriteLine("State machine stopped.");
        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("State machine executions");
        Console.WriteLine("Now let's take a look at the execution values for the
state machine.");

        // List the executions.
        var executions = await
stepFunctionsWrapper.ListExecutionsAsync(stateMachineArn);

        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step function execution values");
        executions.ForEach(execution =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{execution.Name}\t{execution.StartDate} to
{execution.StopDate}");
        });

        uiMethods.PressEnter();

        // Now delete the state machine and the activity.
        uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the state machine...");

        await stepFunctionsWrapper.DeleteStateMachine(stateMachineArn);
        Console.WriteLine("State machine deleted.");

        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the activity...");
        await stepFunctionsWrapper.DeleteActivity(activityArn);
        Console.WriteLine("Activity deleted.");

        Console.WriteLine("The Amazon Step Functions scenario is now complete.");
    }

    static async Task<Role> GetOrCreateStateMachineRole(string roleName)
    {
        // Define the policy document for the role.
        var stateMachineRolePolicy = @"{
```

```
         ""Version"": ""2012-10-17"",
        ""Statement"": [{
            ""Sid"": """",
            ""Effect"": ""Allow"",
            ""Principal"": {
                ""Service"": ""states.amazonaws.com""},
            ""Action"": ""sts:AssumeRole""}]}";

        var role = new Role();
        var roleExists = false;

        try
        {
            var getRoleResponse = await _iamService.GetRoleAsync(new GetRoleRequest
 { RoleName = roleName });
            roleExists = true;
            role = getRoleResponse.Role;
        }
        catch (NoSuchEntityException)
        {
            // The role doesn't exist. Create it.
            Console.WriteLine($"Role, {roleName} doesn't exist. Creating it...");
        }

        if (!roleExists)
        {
            var request = new CreateRoleRequest
            {
                RoleName = roleName,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument = stateMachineRolePolicy,
            };

            var createRoleResponse = await _iamService.CreateRoleAsync(request);
            role = createRoleResponse.Role;
        }

        return role;
    }
}


namespace StepFunctionsBasics;

/// <summary>
```

```
/// Some useful methods to make screen display easier.
/// </summary>
public class UiMethods
{
    private readonly string _sepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);

    /// <summary>
    /// Show information about the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayOverview()
    {
        Console.Clear();
        DisplayTitle("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Demo");

        Console.WriteLine("This example application will do the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 1. Create an activity.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 2. Create a state machine.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 3. Start an execution.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 4. Run the worker, then stop it.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 5. List executions.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t 6. Clean up the resources created for the example.");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter"></param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    private string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title, and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(_sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(_sepBar);
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps state machine and activity actions.

```
namespace StepFunctionsActions;

using Amazon.StepFunctions;
using Amazon.StepFunctions.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper that performs AWS Step Functions actions.
/// </summary>
public class StepFunctionsWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonStepFunctions _amazonStepFunctions;

    /// <summary>
    /// The constructor for the StepFunctionsWrapper. Initializes the
    /// client object passed to it.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonStepFunctions">An initialized Step Functions client
 object.</param>
    public StepFunctionsWrapper(IAmazonStepFunctions amazonStepFunctions)
    {
        _amazonStepFunctions = amazonStepFunctions;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions activity using the supplied name.
```

```
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityName">The name for the new Step Functions activity.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the new activity.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateActivity(string activityName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateActivityAsync(new
 CreateActivityRequest { Name = activityName });
        return response.ActivityArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineName">Name for the new Step Functions state
    /// machine.</param>
    /// <param name="definition">A JSON string that defines the Step Functions
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateStateMachine(string stateMachineName, string
 definition, string roleArn)
    {
        var request = new CreateStateMachineRequest
        {
            Name = stateMachineName,
            Definition = definition,
            RoleArn = roleArn
        };

        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateStateMachineAsync(request);
        return response.StateMachineArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Machine activity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the activity.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteActivity(string activityArn)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteActivityAsync(new
 DeleteActivityRequest { ActivityArn = activityArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteStateMachine(string stateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteStateMachineAsync(new
 DeleteStateMachineRequest
        { StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions execution.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions execution.</param>
    /// <returns>The API response returned by the API.</returns>
    public async Task<DescribeExecutionResponse> DescribeExecutionAsync(string
 executionArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeExecutionAsync(new
 DescribeExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="StateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine to retrieve.</param>
    /// <returns>Information about the specified Step Functions state machine.</
returns>
```

```
   public async Task<DescribeStateMachineResponse> DescribeStateMachineAsync(string
StateMachineArn)
   {
       var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeStateMachineAsync(new
DescribeStateMachineRequest { StateMachineArn = StateMachineArn });
       return response;
   }


   /// <summary>
   /// Retrieve a task with the specified Step Functions activity
   /// with the specified Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
   /// the Step Functions activity.</param>
   /// <param name="workerName">The name of the Step Functions worker.</param>
   /// <returns>The response from the Step Functions activity.</returns>
   public async Task<GetActivityTaskResponse> GetActivityTaskAsync(string
activityArn, string workerName)
   {
       var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.GetActivityTaskAsync(new
GetActivityTaskRequest
       { ActivityArn = activityArn, WorkerName = workerName });
       return response;
   }


   /// <summary>
   /// List the Step Functions activities for the current account.
   /// </summary>
   /// <returns>A list of ActivityListItems.</returns>
   public async Task<List<ActivityListItem>> ListActivitiesAsync()
   {
       var request = new ListActivitiesRequest();
       var activities = new List<ActivityListItem>();

       do
       {
           var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListActivitiesAsync(request);

           if (response.NextToken is not null)
           {
               request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
           }
```

```
            activities.AddRange(response.Activities);
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        return activities;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about executions of a Step Functions
    /// state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of ExecutionListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ExecutionListItem>> ListExecutionsAsync(string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executions = new List<ExecutionListItem>();
        ListExecutionsResponse response;
        var request = new ListExecutionsRequest { StateMachineArn =
stateMachineArn };

        do
        {
            response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListExecutionsAsync(request);
            executions.AddRange(response.Executions);
            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return executions;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of Step Functions state machines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of StateMachineListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<StateMachineListItem>> ListStateMachinesAsync()
    {
```

```
        var stateMachines = new List<StateMachineListItem>();
        var listStateMachinesPaginator =
            _amazonStepFunctions.Paginators.ListStateMachines(new
 ListStateMachinesRequest());

        await foreach (var response in listStateMachinesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            stateMachines.AddRange(response.StateMachines);
        }

        return stateMachines;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Indicate that the Step Functions task, indicated by the
    /// task token, has completed successfully.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="taskToken">Identifies the task.</param>
    /// <param name="taskResponse">The response received from executing the task.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SendTaskSuccessAsync(string taskToken, string
 taskResponse)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.SendTaskSuccessAsync(new
 SendTaskSuccessRequest
        { TaskToken = taskToken, Output = taskResponse });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Start execution of an AWS Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionName">The name to use for the execution.</param>
    /// <param name="executionJson">The JSON string to pass for execution.</param>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Step Functions
    /// execution.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartExecutionAsync(string executionJson, string
 stateMachineArn)
```

```
    {
        var executionRequest = new StartExecutionRequest
        {
            Input = executionJson,
            StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonStepFunctions.StartExecutionAsync(executionRequest);
        return response.ExecutionArn;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Stop execution of a Step Functions workflow.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions execution to stop.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> StopExecution(string executionArn)
    {
        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.StopExecutionAsync(new StopExecutionRequest
 { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask

- ListActivities
- ListStateMachines
- SendTaskSuccess
- StartExecution
- StopExecution

Actions

`CreateActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateActivity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions activity using the supplied name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityName">The name for the new Step Functions activity.</
param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the new activity.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateActivity(string activityName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateActivityAsync(new
 CreateActivityRequest { Name = activityName });
        return response.ActivityArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStateMachine`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineName">Name for the new Step Functions state
    /// machine.</param>
    /// <param name="definition">A JSON string that defines the Step Functions
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <param name="roleArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role.</param>
    /// <returns></returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateStateMachine(string stateMachineName, string
definition, string roleArn)
    {
        var request = new CreateStateMachineRequest
        {
            Name = stateMachineName,
            Definition = definition,
            RoleArn = roleArn
        };

        var response =
            await _amazonStepFunctions.CreateStateMachineAsync(request);
        return response.StateMachineArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteActivity`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Machine activity.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the activity.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteActivity(string activityArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteActivityAsync(new
DeleteActivityRequest { ActivityArn = activityArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStateMachine`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteStateMachine(string stateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DeleteStateMachineAsync(new
DeleteStateMachineRequest
        { StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions execution.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions execution.</param>
    /// <returns>The API response returned by the API.</returns>
    public async Task<DescribeExecutionResponse> DescribeExecutionAsync(string
executionArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeExecutionAsync(new
DescribeExecutionRequest { ExecutionArn = executionArn });
```

```
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStateMachine`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about the specified Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="StateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine to retrieve.</param>
    /// <returns>Information about the specified Step Functions state machine.</
returns>
    public async Task<DescribeStateMachineResponse> DescribeStateMachineAsync(string
 StateMachineArn)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.DescribeStateMachineAsync(new
 DescribeStateMachineRequest { StateMachineArn = StateMachineArn });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetActivityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `GetActivityTask`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a task with the specified Step Functions activity
    /// with the specified Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="activityArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of
    /// the Step Functions activity.</param>
    /// <param name="workerName">The name of the Step Functions worker.</param>
    /// <returns>The response from the Step Functions activity.</returns>
    public async Task<GetActivityTaskResponse> GetActivityTaskAsync(string
activityArn, string workerName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.GetActivityTaskAsync(new
GetActivityTaskRequest
        { ActivityArn = activityArn, WorkerName = workerName });
        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListActivities`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the Step Functions activities for the current account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of ActivityListItems.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ActivityListItem>> ListActivitiesAsync()
    {
        var request = new ListActivitiesRequest();
        var activities = new List<ActivityListItem>();

        do
        {
            var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListActivitiesAsync(request);

            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }

            activities.AddRange(response.Activities);
        }
        while (request.NextToken is not null);

        return activities;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListExecutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListExecutions`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about executions of a Step Functions
    /// state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of ExecutionListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ExecutionListItem>> ListExecutionsAsync(string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executions = new List<ExecutionListItem>();
        ListExecutionsResponse response;
        var request = new ListExecutionsRequest { StateMachineArn =
stateMachineArn };

        do
        {
            response = await _amazonStepFunctions.ListExecutionsAsync(request);
            executions.AddRange(response.Executions);
            if (response.NextToken is not null)
            {
                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
        } while (response.NextToken is not null);

        return executions;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListStateMachines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStateMachines`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of Step Functions state machines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of StateMachineListItem objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<StateMachineListItem>> ListStateMachinesAsync()
    {
        var stateMachines = new List<StateMachineListItem>();
        var listStateMachinesPaginator =
            _amazonStepFunctions.Paginators.ListStateMachines(new
ListStateMachinesRequest());

        await foreach (var response in listStateMachinesPaginator.Responses)
        {
            stateMachines.AddRange(response.StateMachines);
        }

        return stateMachines;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SendTaskSuccess`

The following code example shows how to use `SendTaskSuccess`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Indicate that the Step Functions task, indicated by the
    /// task token, has completed successfully.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="taskToken">Identifies the task.</param>
    /// <param name="taskResponse">The response received from executing the task.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SendTaskSuccessAsync(string taskToken, string
 taskResponse)
    {
        var response = await _amazonStepFunctions.SendTaskSuccessAsync(new
 SendTaskSuccessRequest
        { TaskToken = taskToken, Output = taskResponse });

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartExecution`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start execution of an AWS Step Functions state machine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="executionName">The name to use for the execution.</param>
    /// <param name="executionJson">The JSON string to pass for execution.</param>
    /// <param name="stateMachineArn">The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the
    /// Step Functions state machine.</param>
    /// <returns>The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Step Functions
    /// execution.</returns>
    public async Task<string> StartExecutionAsync(string executionJson, string
stateMachineArn)
    {
        var executionRequest = new StartExecutionRequest
        {
            Input = executionJson,
            StateMachineArn = stateMachineArn
        };

        var response = await
_amazonStepFunctions.StartExecutionAsync(executionRequest);
        return response.ExecutionArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

AWS STS examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;

namespace AssumeRoleExample
{
    class AssumeRole
    {
        /// <summary>
        /// This example shows how to use the AWS Security Token
        /// Service (AWS STS) to assume an IAM role.
        ///
        /// NOTE: It is important that the role that will be assumed has a
        /// trust relationship with the account that will assume the role.
        ///
        /// Before you run the example, you need to create the role you want to
        /// assume and have it trust the IAM account that will assume that role.
        ///
        /// See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_create.html
        /// for help in working with roles.
        /// </summary>

        // A region property may be used if the profile or credentials loaded do not
 specify a region,
        // or to use a specific region.
```

```
        private static readonly RegionEndpoint REGION = RegionEndpoint.USWest2;

        static async Task Main()
        {
            // Create the SecurityToken client and then display the identity of the
            // default user.
            var roleArnToAssume = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/testAssumeRole";

            var client = new
 Amazon.SecurityToken.AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(REGION);

            // Get and display the information about the identity of the default
 user.
            var callerIdRequest = new GetCallerIdentityRequest();
            var caller = await client.GetCallerIdentityAsync(callerIdRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"Original Caller: {caller.Arn}");

            // Create the request to use with the AssumeRoleAsync call.
            var assumeRoleReq = new AssumeRoleRequest()
            {
                DurationSeconds = 1600,
                RoleSessionName = "Session1",
                RoleArn = roleArnToAssume
            };

            var assumeRoleRes = await client.AssumeRoleAsync(assumeRoleReq);

            // Now create a new client based on the credentials of the caller
 assuming the role.
            var client2 = new AmazonSecurityTokenServiceClient(credentials:
 assumeRoleRes.Credentials, REGION);

            // Get and display information about the caller that has assumed the
 defined role.
            var caller2 = await client2.GetCallerIdentityAsync(callerIdRequest);
            Console.WriteLine($"AssumedRole Caller: {caller2.Arn}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Support examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Support.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.AWSSupport;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

public static class HelloSupport
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the AWS Support service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        // You must have one of the following AWS Support plans: Business,
 Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise. Otherwise, an exception will be thrown.
```

```
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var supportClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonAWSSupport>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await supportClient.DescribeServicesAsync();
        Console.WriteLine($"\tHello AWS Support! There are {response.Services.Count}
 services available.");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
/// <summary>
/// Hello AWS Support example.
/// </summary>
public static class SupportCaseScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
    To use the AWS Support API, you must have one of the following AWS Support
 plans: Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise.

    This .NET example performs the following tasks:
    1.  Get and display services. Select a service from the list.
    2.  Select a category from the selected service.
    3.  Get and display severity levels and select a severity level from the list.
    4.  Create a support case using the selected service, category, and severity
 level.
    5.  Get and display a list of open support cases for the current day.
    6.  Create an attachment set with a sample text file to add to the case.
    7.  Add a communication with the attachment to the support case.
    8.  List the communications of the support case.
    9.  Describe the attachment set.
    10. Resolve the support case.
    11. Get a list of resolved cases for the current day.
   */

    private static SupportWrapper _supportWrapper = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the AWS Support service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
```

```
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAWSSupport>(new AWSOptions() { Profile
= "default" })
                    .AddTransient<SupportWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        var logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger(typeof(SupportCaseScenario));

        _supportWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<SupportWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the AWS Support case example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        try
        {
            var apiSupported = await _supportWrapper.VerifySubscription();
            if (!apiSupported)
            {
                logger.LogError("You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or
Enterprise Support " +
                                "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease
upgrade your subscription to run these examples.");
                return;
            }

            var service = await DisplayAndSelectServices();

            var category = DisplayAndSelectCategories(service);

            var severityLevel = await DisplayAndSelectSeverity();

            var caseId = await CreateSupportCase(service, category, severityLevel);
```

```
            await DescribeTodayOpenCases();

            var attachmentSetId = await CreateAttachmentSet();

            await AddCommunicationToCase(attachmentSetId, caseId);

            var attachmentId = await ListCommunicationsForCase(caseId);

            await DescribeCaseAttachment(attachmentId);

            await ResolveCase(caseId);

            await DescribeTodayResolvedCases();

            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Support case example scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List some available services from AWS Support, and select a service for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected service.</returns>
    private static async Task<Service> DisplayAndSelectServices()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var services = await _supportWrapper.DescribeServices();
        Console.WriteLine($"AWS Support client returned {services.Count}
services.");

        Console.WriteLine($"1. Displaying first 10 services:");
        for (int i = 0; i < 10 && i < services.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {services[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > services.Count)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example support service by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return services[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the available categories for a service and select a category for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="service">Service to use for displaying categories.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected category.</returns>
    private static Category DisplayAndSelectCategories(Service service)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        Console.WriteLine($"2. Available support categories for Service
\"{service.Name}\":");
        for (int i = 0; i < service.Categories.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {service.Categories[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > service.Categories.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example support category by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return service.Categories[choiceNumber - 1];
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List available severity levels from AWS Support, and select a level for the
example.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected severity level.</returns>
    private static async Task<SeverityLevel> DisplayAndSelectSeverity()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        var severityLevels = await _supportWrapper.DescribeSeverityLevels();

        Console.WriteLine($"3. Get and display available severity levels:");
        for (int i = 0; i < 10 && i < severityLevels.Count; i++)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\t{i + 1}. {severityLevels[i].Name}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > severityLevels.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                "Select an example severity level by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return severityLevels[choiceNumber - 1];
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an example support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="service">Service to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="category">Category to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severity">Severity to use for the new case.</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateSupportCase(Service service,
        Category category, SeverityLevel severity)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"4. Create an example support case" +
                          $" with the following settings:" +
```

```
                            $" \n\tService: {service.Name}, Category: {category.Name}
" +
                            $"and Severity Level: {severity.Name}.");
        var caseId = await _supportWrapper.CreateCase(service.Code, category.Code,
severity.Code,
            "Example case for testing, ignore.", "This is my example support
case.");

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew case created with ID {caseId}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return caseId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List open cases for the current day.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeTodayOpenCases()
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"5. List the open support cases for the current day.");
        // Describe the cases. If it is empty, try again and allow time for the new
case to appear.
        List<CaseDetails> currentOpenCases = null!;
        while (currentOpenCases == null || currentOpenCases.Count == 0)
        {
            Thread.Sleep(1000);
            currentOpenCases = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCases(
                new List<string>(),
                null,
                false,
                false,
                DateTime.UtcNow.Date,
                DateTime.UtcNow);
        }

        foreach (var openCase in currentOpenCases)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tCase: {openCase.CaseId} created
{openCase.TimeCreated}");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an attachment set for a support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The attachment set id.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> CreateAttachmentSet()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"6. Create an attachment set for a support case.");
        var fileName = "example_attachment.txt";

        // Create the file if it does not already exist.
        if (!File.Exists(fileName))
        {
            await using StreamWriter sw = File.CreateText(fileName);
            await sw.WriteLineAsync(
                "This is a sample file for attachment to a support case.");
        }

        await using var ms = new MemoryStream(await
 File.ReadAllBytesAsync(fileName));

        var attachmentSetId = await _supportWrapper.AddAttachmentToSet(
            ms,
            fileName);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew attachment set created with id: \n
\t{attachmentSetId.Substring(0, 65)}...");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));

        return attachmentSetId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment set and communication to a case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Id of the attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to receive the attachment set.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task AddCommunicationToCase(string attachmentSetId, string
 caseId)
    {
```

```
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"7. Add attachment set and communication to {caseId}.");

        await _supportWrapper.AddCommunicationToCase(
            caseId,
            "This is an example communication added to a support case.",
            attachmentSetId);

        Console.WriteLine($"\tNew attachment set and communication added to
{caseId}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the communications for a case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>An attachment id.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> ListCommunicationsForCase(string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"8. List communications for case {caseId}.");

        var communications = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCommunications(caseId);
        var attachmentId = "";
        foreach (var communication in communications)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\tCommunication created on: {communication.TimeCreated} has
{communication.AttachmentSet.Count} attachments.");
            if (communication.AttachmentSet.Any())
            {
                attachmentId = communication.AttachmentSet.First().AttachmentId;
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        return attachmentId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe an attachment by id.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeCaseAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Describe the attachment set.");

        var attachment = await _supportWrapper.DescribeAttachment(attachmentId);
        var data = Encoding.ASCII.GetString(attachment.Data.ToArray());
        Console.WriteLine($"\tAttachment includes {attachment.FileName} with data:
\n\t{data}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Resolve the support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id of the case to resolve.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    private static async Task ResolveCase(string caseId)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"10. Resolve case {caseId}.");

        var status = await _supportWrapper.ResolveCase(caseId);
        Console.WriteLine($"\tCase {caseId} has final status {status}");

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List resolved cases for the current day.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    private static async Task DescribeTodayResolvedCases()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"11. List the resolved support cases for the current
day.");
        var currentCases = await _supportWrapper.DescribeCases(
            new List<string>(),
            null,
            false,
```

```
            true,
            DateTime.UtcNow.Date,
            DateTime.UtcNow);

        foreach (var currentCase in currentCases)
        {
            if (currentCase.Status == "resolved")
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tCase: {currentCase.CaseId}: status {currentCase.Status}");
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods used by the scenario for Support actions.

```
/// <summary>
/// Wrapper methods to use AWS Support for working with support cases.
/// </summary>
public class SupportWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAWSSupport _amazonSupport;
    public SupportWrapper(IAmazonAWSSupport amazonSupport)
    {
        _amazonSupport = amazonSupport;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of AWS services.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for services.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
 are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of AWS service descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Service>> DescribeServices(string language = "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
```

```
            new DescribeServicesRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.Services;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of support severity levels.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for severity levels.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of support severity levels.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SeverityLevel>> DescribeSeverityLevels(string language =
"en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeSeverityLevelsAsync(
            new DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.SeverityLevels;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceCode">Service code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="categoryCode">Category for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severityCode">Severity code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set for the new
case.</param>
    /// <param name="issueType">Optional issue type for the new case. Options are
"customer-service" or "technical".</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateCase(string serviceCode, string categoryCode,
string severityCode, string subject,
        string body, string language = "en", string? attachmentSetId = null, string
issueType = "customer-service")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.CreateCaseAsync(
            new CreateCaseRequest()
            {
                ServiceCode = serviceCode,
                CategoryCode = categoryCode,
                SeverityCode = severityCode,
                Subject = subject,
                Language = language,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                IssueType = issueType,
                CommunicationBody = body
            });
        return response.CaseId;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does not
exist.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="data">The data for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="fileName">The file name for the attachment.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional setId for the attachment. Creates a
new attachment set if empty.</param>
    /// <returns>The setId of the attachment.</returns>
    public async Task<string> AddAttachmentToSet(MemoryStream data, string fileName,
string? attachmentSetId = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddAttachmentsToSetAsync(
            new AddAttachmentsToSetRequest
            {
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                Attachments = new List<Attachment>
                {
                    new Attachment
                    {
                        Data = data,
```

```
                        FileName = fileName
                    }
                }
            });
        return response.AttachmentSetId;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get description of a specific attachment.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment, usually fetched by
describing the communications of a case.</param>
    /// <returns>The attachment object.</returns>
    public async Task<Attachment> DescribeAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeAttachmentAsync(
            new DescribeAttachmentRequest()
            {
                AttachmentId = attachmentId
            });
        return response.Attachment;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Add communication to a case, including optional attachment set ID and CC
email addresses.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the communication.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="ccEmailAddresses">Optional list of CC email addresses.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddCommunicationToCase(string caseId, string body,
        string? attachmentSetId = null, List<string>? ccEmailAddresses = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddCommunicationToCaseAsync(
            new AddCommunicationToCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                CommunicationBody = body,
```

```
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                CcEmailAddresses = ccEmailAddresses
            });
        return response.Result;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the communications for a case, optionally with a date filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">The ID of the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of communications for the case.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Communication>> DescribeCommunications(string caseId,
 DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime? beforeTime = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Communication>();
        var paginateCommunications =
 _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCommunications(
            new DescribeCommunicationsRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s")
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var communications in paginateCommunications.Communications)
        {
            results.Add(communications);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get case details for a list of case ids, optionally with date filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseIds">The list of case IDs.</param>
    /// <param name="displayId">Optional display ID.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="includeCommunication">True to include communication. Defaults
 to true.</param>
    /// <param name="includeResolvedCases">True to include resolved cases. Defaults
 to false.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
 are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of CaseDetails.</returns>
    public async Task<List<CaseDetails>> DescribeCases(List<string> caseIds, string?
 displayId = null, bool includeCommunication = true,
        bool includeResolvedCases = false, DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime?
 beforeTime = null,
        string language = "en")
    {
        var results = new List<CaseDetails>();
        var paginateCases = _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCases(
            new DescribeCasesRequest()
            {
                CaseIdList = caseIds,
                DisplayId = displayId,
                IncludeCommunications = includeCommunication,
                IncludeResolvedCases = includeResolvedCases,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s"),
                Language = language
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var cases in paginateCases.Cases)
        {
            results.Add(cases);
        }
        return results;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Resolve a support case by caseId.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>The final status of the case after resolving.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ResolveCase(string caseId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.ResolveCaseAsync(
            new ResolveCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId
            });
        return response.FinalCaseStatus;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Verify the support level for AWS Support API access.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if the subscription level supports API access.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> VerifySubscription()
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
                new DescribeServicesRequest()
                {
                    Language = "en"
                });
            return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (Amazon.AWSSupport.AmazonAWSSupportException ex)
        {
            if (ex.ErrorCode == "SubscriptionRequiredException")
            {
                return false;
            }
            else throw;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase

- CreateCase
- DescribeAttachment
- DescribeCases
- DescribeCommunications
- DescribeServices
- DescribeSeverityLevels
- ResolveCase

Actions

`AddAttachmentsToSet`

The following code example shows how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does not
exist.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="data">The data for the attachment.</param>
   /// <param name="fileName">The file name for the attachment.</param>
   /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional setId for the attachment. Creates a
new attachment set if empty.</param>
   /// <returns>The setId of the attachment.</returns>
   public async Task<string> AddAttachmentToSet(MemoryStream data, string fileName,
string? attachmentSetId = null)
   {
       var response = await _amazonSupport.AddAttachmentsToSetAsync(
           new AddAttachmentsToSetRequest
           {
               AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
```

```
                Attachments = new List<Attachment>
                {
                    new Attachment
                    {
                        Data = data,
                        FileName = fileName
                    }
                }
            });
        return response.AttachmentSetId;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`AddCommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Add communication to a case, including optional attachment set ID and CC
email addresses.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the communication.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set.</param>
    /// <param name="ccEmailAddresses">Optional list of CC email addresses.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> AddCommunicationToCase(string caseId, string body,
        string? attachmentSetId = null, List<string>? ccEmailAddresses = null)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonSupport.AddCommunicationToCaseAsync(
            new AddCommunicationToCaseRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                CommunicationBody = body,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                CcEmailAddresses = ccEmailAddresses
            });
        return response.Result;
    }
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateCase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new support case.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="serviceCode">Service code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="categoryCode">Category for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="severityCode">Severity code for the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="subject">Subject of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="body">Body text of the new case.</param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <param name="attachmentSetId">Optional Id for an attachment set for the new
case.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="issueType">Optional issue type for the new case. Options are
"customer-service" or "technical".</param>
    /// <returns>The caseId of the new support case.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateCase(string serviceCode, string categoryCode,
string severityCode, string subject,
        string body, string language = "en", string? attachmentSetId = null, string
issueType = "customer-service")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.CreateCaseAsync(
            new CreateCaseRequest()
            {
                ServiceCode = serviceCode,
                CategoryCode = categoryCode,
                SeverityCode = severityCode,
                Subject = subject,
                Language = language,
                AttachmentSetId = attachmentSetId,
                IssueType = issueType,
                CommunicationBody = body
            });
        return response.CaseId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAttachment`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Get description of a specific attachment.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="attachmentId">Id of the attachment, usually fetched by
describing the communications of a case.</param>
    /// <returns>The attachment object.</returns>
    public async Task<Attachment> DescribeAttachment(string attachmentId)
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeAttachmentAsync(
            new DescribeAttachmentRequest()
            {
                AttachmentId = attachmentId
            });
        return response.Attachment;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeCases`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCases`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get case details for a list of case ids, optionally with date filters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseIds">The list of case IDs.</param>
    /// <param name="displayId">Optional display ID.</param>
    /// <param name="includeCommunication">True to include communication. Defaults
to true.</param>
    /// <param name="includeResolvedCases">True to include resolved cases. Defaults
to false.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="language">Optional language support for your case.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
 are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of CaseDetails.</returns>
    public async Task<List<CaseDetails>> DescribeCases(List<string> caseIds, string?
 displayId = null, bool includeCommunication = true,
        bool includeResolvedCases = false, DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime?
 beforeTime = null,
        string language = "en")
    {
        var results = new List<CaseDetails>();
        var paginateCases = _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCases(
            new DescribeCasesRequest()
            {
                CaseIdList = caseIds,
                DisplayId = displayId,
                IncludeCommunications = includeCommunication,
                IncludeResolvedCases = includeResolvedCases,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s"),
                Language = language
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var cases in paginateCases.Cases)
        {
            results.Add(cases);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeCommunications`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the communications for a case, optionally with a date filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="caseId">The ID of the support case.</param>
    /// <param name="afterTime">The optional start date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <param name="beforeTime">The optional end date for a filtered search.</
param>
    /// <returns>The list of communications for the case.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Communication>> DescribeCommunications(string caseId,
 DateTime? afterTime = null, DateTime? beforeTime = null)
    {
        var results = new List<Communication>();
        var paginateCommunications =
 _amazonSupport.Paginators.DescribeCommunications(
            new DescribeCommunicationsRequest()
            {
                CaseId = caseId,
                AfterTime = afterTime?.ToString("s"),
                BeforeTime = beforeTime?.ToString("s")
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var communications in paginateCommunications.Communications)
        {
            results.Add(communications);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeServices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeServices`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of AWS services.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for services.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of AWS service descriptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Service>> DescribeServices(string language = "en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeServicesAsync(
            new DescribeServicesRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.Services;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeSeverityLevels`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the descriptions of support severity levels.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">Optional language for severity levels.
    /// Currently Chinese (“zh”), English ("en"), Japanese ("ja") and Korean (“ko”)
are supported.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of support severity levels.</returns>
    public async Task<List<SeverityLevel>> DescribeSeverityLevels(string language =
"en")
    {
        var response = await _amazonSupport.DescribeSeverityLevelsAsync(
            new DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest()
            {
                Language = language
            });
        return response.SeverityLevels;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ResolveCase`

The following code example shows how to use `ResolveCase`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Resolve a support case by caseId.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="caseId">Id for the support case.</param>
/// <returns>The final status of the case after resolving.</returns>
public async Task<string> ResolveCase(string caseId)
{
    var response = await _amazonSupport.ResolveCaseAsync(
        new ResolveCaseRequest()
        {
            CaseId = caseId
        });
    return response.FinalCaseStatus;
}
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Textract.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Transcribe.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a custom vocabulary using a list of phrases. Custom vocabularies
    /// improve transcription accuracy for one or more specific words.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="phrases">Phrases to use in the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name for the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> CreateCustomVocabulary(LanguageCode
languageCode,
        List<string> phrases, string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.CreateVocabularyAsync(
            new CreateVocabularyRequest
            {
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
```

```
                Phrases = phrases,
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a medical transcription job. Also deletes the transcript associated
 with the job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">Name of the medical transcription job to delete.</
param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await
 _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                MedicalTranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a transcription job. Also deletes the transcript associated with the
job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">Name of the transcription job to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new DeleteTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete an existing custom vocabulary.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="vocabularyName">Name of the vocabulary to delete.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteCustomVocabulary(string vocabularyName)
{
    var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.DeleteVocabularyAsync(
        new DeleteVocabularyRequest
        {
            VocabularyName = vocabularyName
        });
    return response.HttpStatusCode == HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get details about a transcription job.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the transcription job.</param>
    /// <returns>A TranscriptionJob instance with information on the requested
job.</returns>
    public async Task<TranscriptionJob> GetTranscriptionJob(string jobName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.GetTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new GetTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `GetVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get information about a custom vocabulary.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> GetCustomVocabulary(string vocabularyName)
    {
```

```
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.GetVocabularyAsync(
            new GetVocabularyRequest()
            {
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List medical transcription jobs, optionally with a name filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobNameContains">Optional name filter for the medical
transcription jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of summaries about medical transcription jobs.</returns>
    public async Task<List<MedicalTranscriptionJobSummary>>
ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs(
        string? jobNameContains = null)
    {
        var response = await
_amazonTranscribeService.ListMedicalTranscriptionJobsAsync(
            new ListMedicalTranscriptionJobsRequest()
            {
                JobNameContains = jobNameContains
            });
```

```
        return response.MedicalTranscriptionJobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List transcription jobs, optionally with a name filter.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobNameContains">Optional name filter for the transcription
jobs.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of transcription job summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<TranscriptionJobSummary>> ListTranscriptionJobs(string?
jobNameContains = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.ListTranscriptionJobsAsync(
            new ListTranscriptionJobsRequest()
            {
                JobNameContains = jobNameContains
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListVocabularies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVocabularies`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List custom vocabularies for the current account. Optionally specify a name
    /// filter and a specific state to filter the vocabularies list.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="nameContains">Optional string the vocabulary name must
contain.</param>
    /// <param name="stateEquals">Optional state of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>List of information about the vocabularies.</returns>
    public async Task<List<VocabularyInfo>> ListCustomVocabularies(string?
nameContains = null,
        VocabularyState? stateEquals = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.ListVocabulariesAsync(
            new ListVocabulariesRequest()
            {
                NameContains = nameContains,
                StateEquals = stateEquals
            });
        return response.Vocabularies;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListVocabularies in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartMedicalTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start a medical transcription job for a media file. This method returns
    /// as soon as the job is started.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the medical transcription job.</
param>
    /// <param name="mediaFileUri">The URI of the media file, typically an Amazon S3
 location.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFormat">The format of the media file.</param>
    /// <param name="outputBucketName">Location for the output, typically an Amazon
 S3 location.</param>
    /// <param name="transcriptionType">Conversation or dictation transcription
 type.</param>
    /// <returns>A MedicalTransactionJob instance with information on the new job.</
returns>
    public async Task<MedicalTranscriptionJob> StartMedicalTranscriptionJob(
        string jobName, string mediaFileUri,
        MediaFormat mediaFormat, string outputBucketName,
 Amazon.TranscribeService.Type transcriptionType)
    {
        var response = await
 _amazonTranscribeService.StartMedicalTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                MedicalTranscriptionJobName = jobName,
                Media = new Media()
                {
                    MediaFileUri = mediaFileUri
                },
                MediaFormat = mediaFormat,
                LanguageCode =
                    LanguageCode
```

```
                        .EnUS, // The value must be en-US for medical
 transcriptions.
                OutputBucketName = outputBucketName,
                OutputKey =
                    jobName, // The value is a key used to fetch the output of the
 transcription.
                Specialty = Specialty.PRIMARYCARE, // The value PRIMARYCARE must be
 set.
                Type = transcriptionType
            });
        return response.MedicalTranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StartTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Start a transcription job for a media file. This method returns
    /// as soon as the job is started.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="jobName">A unique name for the transcription job.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFileUri">The URI of the media file, typically an Amazon S3
 location.</param>
    /// <param name="mediaFormat">The format of the media file.</param>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the media file, such as en-
US.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Optional name of a custom vocabulary.</param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A TranscriptionJob instance with information on the new job.</
returns>
    public async Task<TranscriptionJob> StartTranscriptionJob(string jobName, string
 mediaFileUri,
        MediaFormat mediaFormat, LanguageCode languageCode, string? vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.StartTranscriptionJobAsync(
            new StartTranscriptionJobRequest()
            {
                TranscriptionJobName = jobName,
                Media = new Media()
                {
                    MediaFileUri = mediaFileUri
                },
                MediaFormat = mediaFormat,
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
                Settings = vocabularyName != null ? new Settings()
                {
                    VocabularyName = vocabularyName
                } : null
            });
        return response.TranscriptionJob;
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateVocabulary`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Update a custom vocabulary with new values. Update overwrites all existing
information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="languageCode">The language code of the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="phrases">Phrases to use in the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <param name="vocabularyName">Name for the vocabulary.</param>
    /// <returns>The state of the custom vocabulary.</returns>
    public async Task<VocabularyState> UpdateCustomVocabulary(LanguageCode
languageCode,
        List<string> phrases, string vocabularyName)
    {
        var response = await _amazonTranscribeService.UpdateVocabularyAsync(
            new UpdateVocabularyRequest()
            {
                LanguageCode = languageCode,
                Phrases = phrases,
                VocabularyName = vocabularyName
            });
        return response.VocabularyState;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for .NET

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET with Amazon Translate.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// The following example shows how to retrieve the details of
/// a text translation job using Amazon Translate.
/// </summary>
public class DescribeTextTranslation
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

        // The Job Id is generated when the text translation job is started
        // with a call to the StartTextTranslationJob method.
        var jobId = "1234567890abcdef01234567890abcde";

        var request = new DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest
        {
            JobId = jobId,
        };

        var jobProperties = await DescribeTranslationJobAsync(client, request);
```

```
            DisplayTranslationJobDetails(jobProperties);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Retrieve information about an Amazon Translate text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Translate client object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">The DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest object.</
param>
        /// <returns>The TextTranslationJobProperties object containing
        /// information about the text translation job..</returns>
        public static async Task<TextTranslationJobProperties>
 DescribeTranslationJobAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            DescribeTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.DescribeTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                return response.TextTranslationJobProperties;
            }
            else
            {
                return null;
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Displays the properties of the text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="jobProperties">The properties of the text translation
        /// job returned by the call to DescribeTextTranslationJobAsync.</param>
        public static void DisplayTranslationJobDetails(TextTranslationJobProperties
 jobProperties)
        {
            if (jobProperties is null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("No text translation job properties found.");
                return;
            }

            // Display the details of the text translation job.
            Console.WriteLine($"{jobProperties.JobId}: {jobProperties.JobName}");
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListTextTranslationJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTextTranslationJobs`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// List Amazon Translate translation jobs, along with details about each job.
/// </summary>
public class ListTranslationJobs
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();
        var filter = new TextTranslationJobFilter
        {
            JobStatus = "COMPLETED",
        };

        var request = new ListTextTranslationJobsRequest
        {
            MaxResults = 10,
            Filter = filter,
```

```
            };

            await ListJobsAsync(client, request);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List Amazon Translate text translation jobs.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized Amazon Translate client object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">An Amazon Translate
        /// ListTextTranslationJobsRequest object detailing which text
        /// translation jobs are of interest.</param>
        public static async Task ListJobsAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            ListTextTranslationJobsRequest request)
        {
            ListTextTranslationJobsResponse response;

            do
            {
                response = await client.ListTextTranslationJobsAsync(request);

 ShowTranslationJobDetails(response.TextTranslationJobPropertiesList);

                request.NextToken = response.NextToken;
            }
            while (response.NextToken is not null);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// List existing translation job details.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="properties">A list of Amazon Translate text
        /// translation jobs.</param>
        public static void
 ShowTranslationJobDetails(List<TextTranslationJobProperties> properties)
        {
            properties.ForEach(prop =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{prop.JobId}: {prop.JobName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Status: {prop.JobStatus}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Submitted time: {prop.SubmittedTime}");
            });
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTextTranslationJobs in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

StartTextTranslationJob

The following code example shows how to use `StartTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to use Amazon Translate to process the files in
/// an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The translated results
/// will also be stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
/// </summary>
public class BatchTranslate
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        var contentType = "text/plain";

        // Set this variable to an S3 bucket location with a folder."
        // Input files must be in a folder and not at the bucket root."
        var s3InputUri = "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket1/FOLDER/";
        var s3OutputUri = "s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket2/";
```

```
            // This role must have permissions to read the source bucket and to read
 and
            // write to the destination bucket where the translated text will be
 stored.
            var dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::0123456789ab:role/
S3TranslateRole";

            var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

            var inputConfig = new InputDataConfig
            {
                ContentType = contentType,
                S3Uri = s3InputUri,
            };

            var outputConfig = new OutputDataConfig
            {
                S3Uri = s3OutputUri,
            };

            var request = new StartTextTranslationJobRequest
            {
                JobName = "ExampleTranslationJob",
                DataAccessRoleArn = dataAccessRoleArn,
                InputDataConfig = inputConfig,
                OutputDataConfig = outputConfig,
                SourceLanguageCode = "en",
                TargetLanguageCodes = new List<string> { "fr" },
            };

            var response = await StartTextTranslationAsync(client, request);

            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{response.JobId}: {response.JobStatus}");
            }
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Start the Amazon Translate text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The initialized AmazonTranslateClient object.</
param>
        /// <param name="request">The request object that includes details such
```

```
        /// as source and destination bucket names and the IAM Role that will
        /// be used to access the buckets.</param>
        /// <returns>The StartTextTranslationResponse object that includes the
        /// details of the request response.</returns>
        public static async Task<StartTextTranslationJobResponse>
StartTextTranslationAsync(AmazonTranslateClient client,
StartTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.StartTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            return response;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`StopTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StopTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    using System;
    using System.Threading.Tasks;
    using Amazon.Translate;
    using Amazon.Translate.Model;

    /// <summary>
    /// Shows how to stop a running Amazon Translation Service text translation
    /// job.
    /// </summary>
    public class StopTextTranslationJob
    {
        public static async Task Main()
```

```
        {
            var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();
            var jobId = "1234567890abcdef01234567890abcde";

            var request = new StopTextTranslationJobRequest
            {
                JobId = jobId,
            };

            await StopTranslationJobAsync(client, request);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Sends a request to stop a text translation job.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">Initialized AmazonTrnslateClient object.</param>
        /// <param name="request">The request object to be passed to the
        /// StopTextJobAsync method.</param>
        public static async Task StopTranslationJobAsync(
            AmazonTranslateClient client,
            StopTextTranslationJobRequest request)
        {
            var response = await client.StopTextTranslationJobAsync(request);
            if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{response.JobId} as status:
{response.JobStatus}");
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StopTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`TranslateText`

The following code example shows how to use `TranslateText`.

SDK for .NET

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Threading.Tasks;
using Amazon.S3;
using Amazon.S3.Transfer;
using Amazon.Translate;
using Amazon.Translate.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Take text from a file stored a Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
/// object and translate it using the Amazon Transfer Service.
/// </summary>
public class TranslateText
{
    public static async Task Main()
    {
        // If the region you want to use is different from the region
        // defined for the default user, supply it as a parameter to the
        // Amazon Translate client object constructor.
        var client = new AmazonTranslateClient();

        // Set the source language to "auto" to request Amazon Translate to
        // automatically detect te language of the source text.

        // You can get a list of the languages supposed by Amazon Translate
        // in the Amazon Translate Developer's Guide here:
        //      https://docs.aws.amazon.com/translate/latest/dg/what-is.html
        string srcLang = "en"; // English.
        string destLang = "fr"; // French.

        // The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket where the
        // source text file is stored.
        string srcBucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket";
        string srcTextFile = "source.txt";
```

```
            var srcText = await GetSourceTextAsync(srcBucket, srcTextFile);
            var destText = await TranslatingTextAsync(client, srcLang, destLang,
srcText);

            ShowText(srcText, destText);
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Use the Amazon S3 TransferUtility to retrieve the text to translate
        /// from an object in an S3 bucket.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="srcBucket">The name of the S3 bucket where the
        /// text is stored.
        /// </param>
        /// <param name="srcTextFile">The key of the S3 object that
        /// contains the text to translate.</param>
        /// <returns>A string representing the source text.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> GetSourceTextAsync(string srcBucket, string
srcTextFile)
        {
            string srcText = string.Empty;

            var s3Client = new AmazonS3Client();
            TransferUtility utility = new TransferUtility(s3Client);

            using var stream = await utility.OpenStreamAsync(srcBucket,
srcTextFile);

            StreamReader file = new System.IO.StreamReader(stream);

            srcText = file.ReadToEnd();
            return srcText;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Use the Amazon Translate Service to translate the document from the
        /// source language to the specified destination language.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="client">The Amazon Translate Service client used to
        /// perform the translation.</param>
        /// <param name="srcLang">The language of the source text.</param>
        /// <param name="destLang">The destination language for the translated
        /// text.</param>
```

```
        /// <param name="text">A string representing the text to ranslate.</param>
        /// <returns>The text that has been translated to the destination
        /// language.</returns>
        public static async Task<string> TranslatingTextAsync(AmazonTranslateClient
 client, string srcLang, string destLang, string text)
        {
            var request = new TranslateTextRequest
            {
                SourceLanguageCode = srcLang,
                TargetLanguageCode = destLang,
                Text = text,
            };

            var response = await client.TranslateTextAsync(request);

            return response.TranslatedText;
        }

        /// <summary>
        /// Show the original text followed by the translated text.
        /// </summary>
        /// <param name="srcText">The original text to be translated.</param>
        /// <param name="destText">The translated text.</param>
        public static void ShowText(string srcText, string destText)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Source text:");
            Console.WriteLine(srcText);
            Console.WriteLine();
            Console.WriteLine("Translated text:");
            Console.WriteLine(destText);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for .NET

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service .NET API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for .NET

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly

- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Code examples for SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for .NET (v4) Developer Guide** – More about using .NET with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- Aurora examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- AWS CloudFormation examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- AWS Control Tower examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

- Amazon ECS examples using SDK for .NET (v4)
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

Aurora examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

namespace AuroraActions;

public static class HelloAurora
{
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the
        // Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS).
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection. Fetching it directly here for
 example purposes only.
        var rdsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonRDS>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var response = await rdsClient.DescribeDBClustersAsync(new
 DescribeDBClustersRequest { IncludeShared = true });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon RDS Aurora! Let's list some clusters in
 this account:");
        if (response.DBClusters == null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"\tNo clusters found.");
        }
        else
        {
            foreach (var cluster in response.DBClusters)
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tCluster: database: {cluster.DatabaseName} identifier:
 {cluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;
using AuroraActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace AuroraScenario;

/// <summary>
/// Scenario for Amazon Aurora examples.
/// </summary>
public class AuroraScenario
{
    /*
    Before running this .NET code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
```

```
   This .NET example performs the following tasks:
   1.  Return a list of the available DB engine families for Aurora MySql using the
DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
   2.  Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group using
the CreateDBClusterParameterGroupAsync method.
   3.  Get the parameter group using the DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsAsync
method.
   4.  Get some parameters in the group using the DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync
method.
   5.  Parse and display some parameters in the group.
   6.  Modify the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
       using the ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupAsync method.
   7.  Get and display the updated parameters using the
DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync method with a source of "user".
   8.  Get a list of allowed engine versions using the
DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync method.
   9.  Create an Aurora DB cluster that contains a MySql database and uses the
parameter group.
       using the CreateDBClusterAsync method.
   10. Wait for the DB cluster to be ready using the DescribeDBClustersAsync
method.
   11. Display and select from a list of instance classes available for the
selected engine and version
       using the paginated DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions method.
   12. Create a database instance in the cluster using the CreateDBInstanceAsync
method.
   13. Wait for the DB instance to be ready using the DescribeDBInstances method.
   14. Display the connection endpoint string for the new DB cluster.
   15. Create a snapshot of the DB cluster using the CreateDBClusterSnapshotAsync
method.
   16. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready using the DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsAsync
method.
   17. Delete the DB instance using the DeleteDBInstanceAsync method.
   18. Delete the DB cluster using the DeleteDBClusterAsync method.
   19. Wait for DB cluster to be deleted using the DescribeDBClustersAsync methods.
   20. Delete the cluster parameter group using the
DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupAsync.
   */

   private static readonly string sepBar = new('-', 80);
   private static AuroraWrapper auroraWrapper = null!;
   private static ILogger logger = null!;
   private static readonly string engine = "aurora-mysql";
```

```
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for the Amazon Relational Database Service
(Amazon RDS).
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonRDS>()
                    .AddTransient<AuroraWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        }).CreateLogger<AuroraScenario>();

        auroraWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<AuroraWrapper>();

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Aurora: get started with DB clusters example.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        DBClusterParameterGroup parameterGroup = null!;
        DBCluster? newCluster = null;
        DBInstance? newInstance = null;

        try
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = await ChooseParameterGroupFamilyAsync();

            parameterGroup = await
CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(parameterGroupFamily);

            var parameters = await
DescribeParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName,
                new List<string> { "auto_increment_offset",
"auto_increment_increment" });
```

```
            await ModifyParametersAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName,
parameters);

            await
DescribeUserSourceParameters(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName);

            var engineVersionChoice = await
ChooseDBEngineVersionAsync(parameterGroupFamily);

            var newClusterIdentifier = "Example-Cluster-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            newCluster = await CreateNewCluster
            (
                parameterGroup,
                engine,
                engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
                newClusterIdentifier
            );

            var instanceClassChoice = await ChooseDBInstanceClass(engine,
engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion);

            var newInstanceIdentifier = "Example-Instance-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks;

            newInstance = await CreateNewInstance(
                newClusterIdentifier,
                engine,
                engineVersionChoice.EngineVersion,
                instanceClassChoice.DBInstanceClass,
                newInstanceIdentifier
            );

            DisplayConnectionString(newCluster!);
            await CreateSnapshot(newCluster!);
            await CleanupResources(newInstance, newCluster, parameterGroup);

            Console.WriteLine("Scenario complete.");
            Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            await CleanupResources(newInstance, newCluster, parameterGroup);
            logger.LogError(ex, "There was a problem executing the scenario.");
        }
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose the Aurora DB parameter group family from a list of available
options.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The selected parameter group family.</returns>
    public static async Task<string> ChooseParameterGroupFamilyAsync()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // 1. Get a list of available engines.
        var engines = await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(engine);

        Console.WriteLine($"1. The following is a list of available DB parameter
group families for engine {engine}:");

        var parameterGroupFamilies =
            engines.GroupBy(e => e.DBParameterGroupFamily).ToList();
        for (var i = 1; i <= parameterGroupFamilies.Count; i++)
        {
            var parameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamilies[i - 1];
            // List the available parameter group families.
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Family: {parameterGroupFamily.Key}");
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > parameterGroupFamilies.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("2. Select an available DB parameter group family by
entering a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }
        var parameterGroupFamilyChoice = parameterGroupFamilies[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroupFamilyChoice.Key;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create and get information on a DB parameter group.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">The DBParameterGroupFamily for the new
 DB parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DBParameterGroup.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup>
 CreateDBParameterGroupAsync(string dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"2. Create new DB parameter group with family
 {dbParameterGroupFamily}:");

        var parameterGroup = await
 auroraWrapper.CreateCustomClusterParameterGroupAsync(
            dbParameterGroupFamily,
            "ExampleParameterGroup-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks,
            "New example parameter group");

        var groupInfo =
            await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeCustomDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterG

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"3. New DB parameter group created: \n\t{groupInfo?.Description}, \n
\tARN {groupInfo?.DBClusterParameterGroupName}");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return parameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get and describe parameters from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterNames">Optional specific names of parameters to
 describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The list of requested parameters.</returns>
    public static async Task<List<Parameter>> DescribeParametersInGroupAsync(string
 parameterGroupName, List<string>? parameterNames = null)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("4. Get some parameters from the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        var parameters =
            await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroupName);
```

```
        var matchingParameters =
            parameters.Where(p => parameterNames == null ||
parameterNames.Contains(p.ParameterName)).ToList();

        Console.WriteLine("5. Parameter information:");
        matchingParameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);

        return matchingParameters;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify a parameter from a DBParameterGroup.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">Name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task ModifyParametersAsync(string parameterGroupName,
List<Parameter> parameters)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("6. Modify some parameters in the group.");

        await auroraWrapper.ModifyIntegerParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroupName,
parameters);

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the user source parameters in the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the DBParameterGroup.</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    public static async Task DescribeUserSourceParameters(string parameterGroupName)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine("7. Describe updated user source parameters in the
group.");

        var parameters =
            await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(parameterGroupName, "user");

        parameters.ForEach(p =>
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\n\tParameter: {p.ParameterName}." +
                $"\n\tDescription: {p.Description}." +
                $"\n\tAllowed Values: {p.AllowedValues}." +
                $"\n\tValue: {p.ParameterValue}."));

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbParameterGroupFamily">DB parameter group family for engine
choice.</param>
    /// <returns>The selected engine version.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBEngineVersion> ChooseDBEngineVersionAsync(string
dbParameterGroupFamily)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed engines.
        var allowedEngines =
            await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(engine,
dbParameterGroupFamily);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB engine versions for parameter group family
{dbParameterGroupFamily}:");
        int i = 1;
        foreach (var version in allowedEngines)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. {version.DBEngineVersionDescription}.");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedEngines.Count)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine("8. Select an available DB engine version by entering
 a number from the list above:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var engineChoice = allowedEngines[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return engineChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new RDS DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">Parameter group to use for the DB cluster.</
param>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB cluster.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB cluster.</
param>
    /// <param name="clusterIdentifier">Cluster identifier to use for the DB
 cluster.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB cluster.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBCluster?> CreateNewCluster(DBClusterParameterGroup
 parameterGroup,
        string engineName, string engineVersion, string clusterIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"9. Create a new DB cluster with identifier
 {clusterIdentifier}.");

        DBCluster newCluster;
        var clusters = await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync();
        var isClusterCreated = clusters.Any(i => i.DBClusterIdentifier ==
 clusterIdentifier);

        if (isClusterCreated)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Cluster already created.");
            newCluster = clusters.First(i => i.DBClusterIdentifier ==
 clusterIdentifier);
        }
        else
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("Enter an admin username:");
            var username = Console.ReadLine();

            Console.WriteLine("Enter an admin password:");
            var password = Console.ReadLine();

            newCluster = await auroraWrapper.CreateDBClusterWithAdminAsync(
                "ExampleDatabase",
                clusterIdentifier,
                parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                username!,
                password!
            );

            Console.WriteLine("10. Waiting for DB cluster to be ready...");
            while (newCluster.Status != "available")
            {
                Console.Write(".");
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                clusters = await
 auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync(clusterIdentifier);
                newCluster = clusters.First();
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newCluster;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Choose a DB instance class for a particular engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">DB engine for DB instance choice.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">DB engine version for DB instance choice.</
param>
    /// <returns>The selected orderable DB instance option.</returns>
    public static async Task<OrderableDBInstanceOption> ChooseDBInstanceClass(string
 engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Get a list of allowed DB instance classes.
        var allowedInstances =
```

```
            await auroraWrapper.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPagedAsync(engine,
 engineVersion);

        Console.WriteLine($"Available DB instance classes for engine {engine} and
 version {engineVersion}:");
        int i = 1;

        foreach (var instance in allowedInstances)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(
                $"\t{i}. Instance class: {instance.DBInstanceClass} (storage type
 {instance.StorageType})");
            i++;
        }

        var choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > allowedInstances.Count)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("11. Select an available DB instance class by entering
 a number from the preceding list:");
            var choice = Console.ReadLine();
            Int32.TryParse(choice, out choiceNumber);
        }

        var instanceChoice = allowedInstances[choiceNumber - 1];
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return instanceChoice;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engineName">Engine to use for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Engine version to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Instance class to use for the DB instance.</
param>
    /// <param name="instanceIdentifier">Instance identifier to use for the DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>The new DB instance.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBInstance?> CreateNewInstance(
        string clusterIdentifier,
        string engineName,
        string engineVersion,
```

```
        string instanceClass,
        string instanceIdentifier)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        Console.WriteLine($"12. Create a new DB instance with identifier
{instanceIdentifier}.");
        bool isInstanceReady = false;
        DBInstance newInstance;
        var instances = await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync();
        isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault(i =>
            i.DBInstanceIdentifier == instanceIdentifier)?.DBInstanceStatus ==
"available";

        if (isInstanceReady)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Instance already created.");
            newInstance = instances.First(i => i.DBInstanceIdentifier ==
instanceIdentifier);
        }
        else
        {
            newInstance = await auroraWrapper.CreateDBInstanceInClusterAsync(
                clusterIdentifier,
                instanceIdentifier,
                engineName,
                engineVersion,
                instanceClass
            );

            Console.WriteLine("13. Waiting for DB instance to be ready...");
            while (!isInstanceReady)
            {
                Console.Write(".");
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                instances = await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync(instanceIdentifier);
                isInstanceReady = instances.FirstOrDefault()?.DBInstanceStatus ==
"available";
                newInstance = instances.First();
            }
        }

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return newInstance;
```

```
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a connection string for an Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cluster">The DB cluster to use to get a connection string.</
param>
    public static void DisplayConnectionString(DBCluster cluster)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Display the connection string.
        Console.WriteLine("14. New DB cluster connection string: ");
        Console.WriteLine(
            $"\n{engine} -h {cluster.Endpoint} -P {cluster.Port} "
            + $"-u {cluster.MasterUsername} -p [YOUR PASSWORD]\n");

        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot from an Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="cluster">DB cluster to use when creating a snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>The snapshot object.</returns>
    public static async Task<DBClusterSnapshot> CreateSnapshot(DBCluster cluster)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        // Create a snapshot.
        Console.WriteLine($"15. Creating snapshot from DB cluster
 {cluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
        var snapshot = await auroraWrapper.CreateClusterSnapshotByIdentifierAsync(
            cluster.DBClusterIdentifier,
            "ExampleSnapshot-" + DateTime.Now.Ticks);

        // Wait for the snapshot to be available.
        bool isSnapshotReady = false;

        Console.WriteLine($"16. Waiting for snapshot to be ready...");
        while (!isSnapshotReady)
        {
            Console.Write(".");
            Thread.Sleep(5000);
            var snapshots =
```

```
                await
auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsByIdentifierAsync(cluster.DBClusterIdentifier);
            isSnapshotReady = snapshots.FirstOrDefault()?.Status == "available";
            snapshot = snapshots.First();
        }

        Console.WriteLine(
            $"Snapshot {snapshot.DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier} status is
{snapshot.Status}.");
        Console.WriteLine(sepBar);
        return snapshot;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up resources from the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newInstance">The instance to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="newCluster">The cluster to clean up.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroup">The parameter group to clean up.</param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    private static async Task CleanupResources(
        DBInstance? newInstance,
        DBCluster? newCluster,
        DBClusterParameterGroup? parameterGroup)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
        Console.WriteLine($"Clean up resources.");

        if (newInstance is not null && GetYesNoResponse($"\tClean up instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}? (y/n)"))
        {
            // Delete the DB instance.
            Console.WriteLine($"17. Deleting the DB instance
{newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier}.");
            await
auroraWrapper.DeleteDBInstanceByIdentifierAsync(newInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier);
        }

        if (newCluster is not null && GetYesNoResponse($"\tClean up cluster
{newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier}? (y/n)"))
        {
            // Delete the DB cluster.
            Console.WriteLine($"18. Deleting the DB cluster
{newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier}.");
```

```
            await
auroraWrapper.DeleteDBClusterByIdentifierAsync(newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier);

            // Wait for the DB cluster to delete.
            Console.WriteLine($"19. Waiting for the DB cluster to delete...");
            bool isClusterDeleted = false;

            while (!isClusterDeleted)
            {
                Console.Write(".");
                Thread.Sleep(5000);
                var cluster = await auroraWrapper.DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync();
                isClusterDeleted = cluster.All(i => i.DBClusterIdentifier !=
newCluster.DBClusterIdentifier);
            }

            Console.WriteLine("DB cluster deleted.");
        }

        if (parameterGroup is not null && GetYesNoResponse($"\tClean up parameter
group? (y/n)"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"20. Deleting the DB parameter group
{parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName}.");
            await
auroraWrapper.DeleteClusterParameterGroupByNameAsync(parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroup
            Console.WriteLine("Parameter group deleted.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 80));
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a yes or no response from the user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="question">The question string to print on the console.</param>
    /// <returns>True if the user responds with a yes.</returns>
    private static bool GetYesNoResponse(string question)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(question);
        var ynResponse = Console.ReadLine();
        var response = ynResponse != null &&
                       ynResponse.Equals("y",
                           StringComparison.InvariantCultureIgnoreCase);
```

```
        return response;
    }
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
using Amazon.RDS;
using Amazon.RDS.Model;

namespace AuroraActions;

/// <summary>
/// Wrapper for the Amazon Aurora cluster client operations.
/// </summary>
public class AuroraWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonRDS _amazonRDS;
    public AuroraWrapper(IAmazonRDS amazonRDS)
    {
        _amazonRDS = amazonRDS;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">The name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family name.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>>
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(string engine,
        string? parameterGroupFamily = null)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a custom cluster parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">The family of the parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description for the new parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new parameter group object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup>
 CreateCustomClusterParameterGroupAsync(
        string parameterGroupFamily,
        string groupName,
        string description)
    {
        var request = new CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Description = description,
        };

        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroup;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the cluster parameters in a parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="source">The optional name of the source filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>>
 DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(string groupName, string? source = null)
    {
        var paramList = new List<Parameter>();

        DescribeDBClusterParametersResponse response;
        var request = new DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest
        {
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Source = source,
        };

        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
```

```
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync(request);
            paramList.AddRange(response.Parameters);

            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);

        return paramList;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Get the description of a DB cluster parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the DB parameter group to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The parameter group description.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup?>
DescribeCustomDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsAsync(
            new DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBClusterParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroups.FirstOrDefault();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Modify the specified integer parameters with new values from user input.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name for the parameters.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The list of integer parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="newValue">Optional int value to set for parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>The name of the group that was modified.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyIntegerParametersInGroupAsync(string groupName,
List<Parameter> parameters, int newValue = 0)
    {
        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable.GetValueOrDefault() && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
```

```
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the allowed
values {p.AllowedValues} ");

                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    int.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        var request = new ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            Parameters = parameters,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var result = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return result.DBClusterParameterGroupName;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPagedAsync(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
```

```
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteClusterParameterGroupByNameAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var request = new DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new cluster and database.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbName">The name of the new database.</param>
    /// <param name="clusterIdentifier">The identifier of the cluster.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine to use for the new cluster.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">The version of the engine to use.</param>
    /// <param name="adminName">The admin username.</param>
    /// <param name="adminPassword">The primary admin password.</param>
    /// <returns>The cluster object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBCluster> CreateDBClusterWithAdminAsync(
        string dbName,
        string clusterIdentifier,
        string parameterGroupName,
        string dbEngine,
        string dbEngineVersion,
        string adminName,
        string adminPassword)
    {
```

```
        var request = new CreateDBClusterRequest
        {
            DatabaseName = dbName,
            DBClusterIdentifier = clusterIdentifier,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
            Engine = dbEngine,
            EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
            MasterUsername = adminName,
            MasterUserPassword = adminPassword,
        };

        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterAsync(request);
        return response.DBCluster;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
 instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync(string?
 dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB clusters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB cluster.</
param>
    /// <returns>List of DB clusters.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<DBCluster>> DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync(string?
dbClusterIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBCluster>();

        DescribeDBClustersResponse response;
        DescribeDBClustersRequest request = new DescribeDBClustersRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClustersAsync(request);
            if (response.DBClusters != null)
            {
                results.AddRange(response.DBClusters);
            }
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance
    /// with a particular set of properties. Use the action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstanceInClusterAsync(
        string dbClusterIdentifier,
        string dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string dbEngine,
        string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass)
    {
        // When creating the instance within a cluster, do not specify the name or
size.
```

```
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterSnapshot>
CreateClusterSnapshotByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier, string
snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
            });

        return response.DBClusterSnapshot;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBClusterSnapshot>>
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBClusterSnapshot>();

        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsResponse response;
```

```
        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request = new
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.DBClusterSnapshots);
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB cluster object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBCluster> DeleteDBClusterByIdentifierAsync(string
dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterAsync(
            new DeleteDBClusterRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true
            });

        return response.DBCluster;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstanceByIdentifierAsync(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
```

```
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Create a new cluster and database.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="dbName">The name of the new database.</param>
/// <param name="clusterIdentifier">The identifier of the cluster.</param>
/// <param name="parameterGroupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
/// <param name="dbEngine">The engine to use for the new cluster.</param>
/// <param name="dbEngineVersion">The version of the engine to use.</param>
/// <param name="adminName">The admin username.</param>
/// <param name="adminPassword">The primary admin password.</param>
/// <returns>The cluster object.</returns>
public async Task<DBCluster> CreateDBClusterWithAdminAsync(
    string dbName,
    string clusterIdentifier,
    string parameterGroupName,
    string dbEngine,
    string dbEngineVersion,
    string adminName,
    string adminPassword)
{
    var request = new CreateDBClusterRequest
    {
        DatabaseName = dbName,
        DBClusterIdentifier = clusterIdentifier,
        DBClusterParameterGroupName = parameterGroupName,
        Engine = dbEngine,
        EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
        MasterUsername = adminName,
        MasterUserPassword = adminPassword,
    };

    var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterAsync(request);
    return response.DBCluster;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a custom cluster parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">The family of the parameter group.</
param>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name for the new parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="description">A description for the new parameter group.</param>
    /// <returns>The new parameter group object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup>
 CreateCustomClusterParameterGroupAsync(
        string parameterGroupFamily,
        string groupName,
        string description)
    {
        var request = new CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Description = description,
        };

        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroup;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a snapshot of a cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="snapshotIdentifier">Identifier for the snapshot.</param>
    /// <returns>DB snapshot object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterSnapshot>
CreateClusterSnapshotByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier, string
snapshotIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBClusterSnapshotAsync(
            new CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier = snapshotIdentifier,
            });

        return response.DBClusterSnapshot;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance
    /// with a particular set of properties. Use the action DescribeDBInstancesAsync
    /// to determine when the DB instance is ready to use.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngine">The engine for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="dbEngineVersion">Version for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceClass">Class for the DB instance.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> CreateDBInstanceInClusterAsync(
        string dbClusterIdentifier,
        string dbInstanceIdentifier,
        string dbEngine,
        string dbEngineVersion,
        string instanceClass)
    {
        // When creating the instance within a cluster, do not specify the name or
size.
        var response = await _amazonRDS.CreateDBInstanceAsync(
            new CreateDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                Engine = dbEngine,
                EngineVersion = dbEngineVersion,
                DBInstanceClass = instanceClass
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Delete a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB cluster object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBCluster> DeleteDBClusterByIdentifierAsync(string
dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterAsync(
            new DeleteDBClusterRequest()
            {
                DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true
            });

        return response.DBCluster;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Delete a particular parameter group by name.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
/// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
public async Task<bool> DeleteClusterParameterGroupByNameAsync(string groupName)
{
    var request = new DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
    {
        DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
    };

    var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
    return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
```

```
    /// Delete a particular DB instance.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">DB instance identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>DB instance object.</returns>
    public async Task<DBInstance> DeleteDBInstanceByIdentifierAsync(string
dbInstanceIdentifier)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DeleteDBInstanceAsync(
            new DeleteDBInstanceRequest()
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier,
                SkipFinalSnapshot = true,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups = true
            });

        return response.DBInstance;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the description of a DB cluster parameter group by name.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="name">The name of the DB parameter group to describe.</param>
    /// <returns>The parameter group description.</returns>
    public async Task<DBClusterParameterGroup?>
DescribeCustomDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(string name)
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsAsync(
```

```
            new DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest()
            {
                DBClusterParameterGroupName = name
            });
        return response.DBClusterParameterGroups.FirstOrDefault();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the cluster parameters in a parameter group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the parameter group.</param>
    /// <param name="source">The optional name of the source filter.</param>
    /// <returns>The collection of parameters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Parameter>>
DescribeDBClusterParametersInGroupAsync(string groupName, string? source = null)
    {
        var paramList = new List<Parameter>();

        DescribeDBClusterParametersResponse response;
        var request = new DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest
        {
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
            Source = source,
        };

        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
```

```
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterParametersAsync(request);
            paramList.AddRange(response.Parameters);

            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);

        return paramList;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Return a list of DB snapshots for a particular DB cluster.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbClusterIdentifier">DB cluster identifier.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB snapshots.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBClusterSnapshot>>
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsByIdentifierAsync(string dbClusterIdentifier)
    {
        var results = new List<DBClusterSnapshot>();

        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsResponse response;
        DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request = new
DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest
        {
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
```

```
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsAsync(request);
            results.AddRange(response.DBClusterSnapshots);
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB clusters.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB cluster.</
param>
    /// <returns>List of DB clusters.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBCluster>> DescribeDBClustersPagedAsync(string?
 dbClusterIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBCluster>();

        DescribeDBClustersResponse response;
        DescribeDBClustersRequest request = new DescribeDBClustersRequest
        {
```

```
            DBClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifier
        };
        // Get the full list if there are multiple pages.
        do
        {
            response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBClustersAsync(request);
            if (response.DBClusters != null)
            {
                results.AddRange(response.DBClusters);
            }
            request.Marker = response.Marker;
        }
        while (response.Marker is not null);
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of DB engine versions for a particular DB engine.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">The name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="parameterGroupFamily">Optional parameter group family name.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of DBEngineVersions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBEngineVersion>>
 DescribeDBEngineVersionsForEngineAsync(string engine,
        string? parameterGroupFamily = null)
```

```
    {
        var response = await _amazonRDS.DescribeDBEngineVersionsAsync(
            new DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                DBParameterGroupFamily = parameterGroupFamily
            });
        return response.DBEngineVersions;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Returns a list of DB instances.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="dbInstanceIdentifier">Optional name of a specific DB
instance.</param>
    /// <returns>List of DB instances.</returns>
    public async Task<List<DBInstance>> DescribeDBInstancesPagedAsync(string?
dbInstanceIdentifier = null)
    {
        var results = new List<DBInstance>();
        var instancesPaginator = _amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeDBInstances(
            new DescribeDBInstancesRequest
            {
                DBInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifier
            });
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
```

```
        await foreach (var instances in instancesPaginator.DBInstances)
        {
            results.Add(instances);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get a list of orderable DB instance options for a specific
    /// engine and engine version.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="engine">Name of the engine.</param>
    /// <param name="engineVersion">Version of the engine.</param>
    /// <returns>List of OrderableDBInstanceOptions.</returns>
    public async Task<List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>>
DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPagedAsync(string engine, string engineVersion)
    {
        // Use a paginator to get a list of DB instance options.
        var results = new List<OrderableDBInstanceOption>();
        var paginateInstanceOptions =
_amazonRDS.Paginators.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(
            new DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest()
            {
                Engine = engine,
                EngineVersion = engineVersion,
            });
```

```
        // Get the entire list using the paginator.
        await foreach (var instanceOptions in
paginateInstanceOptions.OrderableDBInstanceOptions)
        {
            results.Add(instanceOptions);
        }
        return results;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Modify the specified integer parameters with new values from user input.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The group name for the parameters.</param>
    /// <param name="parameters">The list of integer parameters to modify.</param>
    /// <param name="newValue">Optional int value to set for parameters.</param>
    /// <returns>The name of the group that was modified.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ModifyIntegerParametersInGroupAsync(string groupName,
List<Parameter> parameters, int newValue = 0)
    {
        foreach (var p in parameters)
        {
            if (p.IsModifiable.GetValueOrDefault() && p.DataType == "integer")
            {
                while (newValue == 0)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine(
```

```
                        $"Enter a new value for {p.ParameterName} from the allowed
values {p.AllowedValues} ");

                    var choice = Console.ReadLine();
                    int.TryParse(choice, out newValue);
                }

                p.ParameterValue = newValue.ToString();
            }
        }

        var request = new ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest
        {
            Parameters = parameters,
            DBClusterParameterGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var result = await _amazonRDS.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupAsync(request);
        return result.DBClusterParameterGroupName;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.AutoScaling;

public class HelloAutoScaling
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Hello Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling. List EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args"></param>
    /// <returns>Async Task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        var client = new AmazonAutoScalingClient();

        Console.WriteLine("Welcome to Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's get a description of your Auto Scaling groups.");

        var response = await client.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync();

        if (response.AutoScalingGroups == null || response.AutoScalingGroups.Count
 == 0)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Sorry, you don't have any Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 groups.");
            return;
        }
        response.AutoScalingGroups.ForEach(autoScalingGroup =>
        {

 Console.WriteLine($"{autoScalingGroup.AutoScalingGroupName}\t{autoScalingGroup.Availability
        });
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
global using Amazon.AutoScaling;
global using Amazon.AutoScaling.Model;
global using Amazon.CloudWatch;
global using AutoScalingActions;
```

```
global using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
global using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;



using Amazon.EC2;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Configuration;
using Host = Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host;

namespace AutoScalingBasics;

public class AutoScalingBasics
{

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling, Amazon
        // CloudWatch, and Amazon EC2.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
            services.AddAWSService<IAmazonAutoScaling>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                .AddTransient<AutoScalingWrapper>()
                .AddTransient<CloudWatchWrapper>()
                .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
                .AddTransient<UIWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();


        var autoScalingWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<AutoScalingWrapper>();
        var cloudWatchWrapper =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<CloudWatchWrapper>();
        var ec2Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<EC2Wrapper>();
```

```
        var uiWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<UIWrapper>();

        var configuration = new ConfigurationBuilder()
            .SetBasePath(Directory.GetCurrentDirectory())
            .AddJsonFile("settings.json") // Load test settings from .json file.
            .AddJsonFile("settings.local.json",
                true) // Optionally load local settings.
            .Build();

        var imageId = configuration["ImageId"];
        var instanceType = configuration["InstanceType"];
        var launchTemplateName = configuration["LaunchTemplateName"];

        launchTemplateName += Guid.NewGuid().ToString();

        // The name of the Auto Scaling group.
        var groupName = configuration["GroupName"];

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Auto Scaling Basics");
        uiWrapper.DisplayAutoScalingBasicsDescription();

        // Create the launch template and save the template Id to use when deleting
the
        // launch template at the end of the application.
        var launchTemplateId = await ec2Wrapper.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(imageId!,
instanceType!, launchTemplateName);

        // Confirm that the template was created by asking for a description of it.
        await ec2Wrapper.DescribeLaunchTemplateAsync(launchTemplateName);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        var availabilityZones = await ec2Wrapper.ListAvailabilityZonesAsync();

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating an Auto Scaling group named {groupName}.");
        await autoScalingWrapper.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
            groupName!,
            launchTemplateName,
            availabilityZones[0].ZoneName);

        // Keep checking the details of the new group until its lifecycle state
        // is "InService".
        Console.WriteLine($"Waiting for the Auto Scaling group to be active.");
```

```
        List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails> instanceDetails;

        do
        {
            instanceDetails = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(groupName!);
        }
        while (instanceDetails.Count <= 0);

        Console.WriteLine($"Auto scaling group {groupName} successfully created.");
        Console.WriteLine($"{instanceDetails.Count} instances were created for the
group.");

        // Display the details of the Auto Scaling group.
        instanceDetails.ForEach(detail =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Group name: {detail.AutoScalingGroupName}");
        });

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Metrics collection");
        Console.WriteLine($"Enable metrics collection for {groupName}");
        await autoScalingWrapper.EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(groupName!);

        // Show the metrics that are collected for the group.

        // Update the maximum size of the group to three instances.
        Console.WriteLine("--- Update the Auto Scaling group to increase max size to
3 ---");
        int maxSize = 3;
        await autoScalingWrapper.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupName!,
launchTemplateName, maxSize);

        Console.WriteLine("--- Describe all Auto Scaling groups to show the current
state of the group ---");
        var groups = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName!);

        uiWrapper.DisplayGroupDetails(groups!);

        uiWrapper.PressEnter();

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Describe account limits");
```

```
        await autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAccountLimitsAsync();

        uiWrapper.WaitABit(60, "Waiting for the resources to be ready.");

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Set desired capacity");
        int desiredCapacity = 2;
        await autoScalingWrapper.SetDesiredCapacityAsync(groupName!,
desiredCapacity);

        Console.WriteLine("Get the two instance Id values");

        // Empty the group before getting the details again.
        groups.Clear();
        groups = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName!);
        if (groups.Any())
        {
            foreach (AutoScalingGroup group in groups)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The group name is
{group.AutoScalingGroupName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"The group ARN is {group.AutoScalingGroupARN}");
                var instances = group.Instances;
                foreach (Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Instance instance in instances)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"The instance id is {instance.InstanceId}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"The lifecycle state is
{instance.LifecycleState}");
                }
            }
        }

        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Scaling Activities");
        Console.WriteLine("Let's list the scaling activities that have occurred for
the group.");
        var activities = await
autoScalingWrapper.DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(groupName!);
        if (activities.Any())
        {
            activities.ForEach(activity =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"The activity Id is {activity.ActivityId}");
                Console.WriteLine($"The activity details are {activity.Details}");
            });
```

```
        }

        // Display the Amazon CloudWatch metrics that have been collected.
        var metrics = await cloudWatchWrapper.GetCloudWatchMetricsAsync(groupName!);
        if (metrics.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Metrics collected for {groupName}:");
            metrics.ForEach(metric =>
            {
                Console.Write($"Metric name: {metric.MetricName}\t");
                Console.WriteLine($"Namespace: {metric.Namespace}");
            });
        }

        var dataPoints = await
cloudWatchWrapper.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(groupName!);
        if (dataPoints.Any())
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Details for the metrics collected:");
            dataPoints.ForEach(detail => { Console.WriteLine(detail); });
        }

        // Disable metrics collection.
        Console.WriteLine("Disabling the collection of metrics for {groupName}.");
        var success = await
autoScalingWrapper.DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(groupName!);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully stopped metrics collection for
{groupName}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not stop metrics collection for
{groupName}.");
        }

        // Terminate all instances in the group.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Terminating Auto Scaling instances");
        Console.WriteLine("Now terminating all instances in the Auto Scaling
group.");

        if (groups is not null)
```

```
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                // Only delete instances in the AutoScaling group we created.
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(async instance =>
                    {
                        await
 autoScalingWrapper.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });
        }

        // After all instances are terminated, delete the group.
        uiWrapper.DisplayTitle("Clean up resources");
        Console.WriteLine("Deleting the Auto Scaling group.");
        await autoScalingWrapper.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupName!);

        // Delete the launch template.
        var deletedLaunchTemplateName = await
 ec2Wrapper.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(launchTemplateId);

        if (deletedLaunchTemplateName == launchTemplateName)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Successfully deleted the launch template.");
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The demo is now concluded.");
    }
}


namespace AutoScalingBasics;

/// <summary>
/// A class to provide user interface methods for the EC2 AutoScaling Basics
/// scenario.
/// </summary>
public class UIWrapper
{
    public readonly string SepBar = new('-', Console.WindowWidth);
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Describe the steps in the EC2 AutoScaling Basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public void DisplayAutoScalingBasicsDescription()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This code example performs the following operations:");
        Console.WriteLine(" 1. Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 2. Creates an Auto Scaling group.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 3. Shows the details of the new Auto Scaling group");
        Console.WriteLine("    to show that only one instance was created.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 4. Enables metrics collection.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 5. Updates the Auto Scaling group to increase the");
        Console.WriteLine("    capacity to three.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 6. Describes Auto Scaling groups again to show the");
        Console.WriteLine("    current state of the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 7. Changes the desired capacity of the Auto Scaling");
        Console.WriteLine("    group to use an additional instance.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 8. Shows that there are now instances in the group.");
        Console.WriteLine(" 9. Lists the scaling activities that have occurred for
the group.");
        Console.WriteLine("10. Displays the Amazon CloudWatch metrics that have");
        Console.WriteLine("    been collected.");
        Console.WriteLine("11. Disables metrics collection.");
        Console.WriteLine("12. Terminates all instances in the Auto Scaling
group.");
        Console.WriteLine("13. Deletes the Auto Scaling group.");
        Console.WriteLine("14. Deletes the Amazon EC2 launch template.");
        PressEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display information about the Amazon Ec2 AutoScaling groups passed
    /// in the list of AutoScalingGroup objects.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groups">A list of AutoScalingGroup objects.</param>
    public void DisplayGroupDetails(List<AutoScalingGroup> groups)
    {
        if (groups is null)
            return;

        groups.ForEach(group =>
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Group name:\t{group.AutoScalingGroupName}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Group created:\t{group.CreatedTime}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Maximum number of instances:\t{group.MaxSize}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Desired number of instances:
\t{group.DesiredCapacity}");
        });
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a message and wait until the user presses enter.
    /// </summary>
    public void PressEnter()
    {
        Console.Write("\nPress <Enter> to continue. ");
        _ = Console.ReadLine();
        Console.WriteLine();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Pad a string with spaces to center it on the console display.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strToCenter">The string to be centered.</param>
    /// <returns>The padded string.</returns>
    public string CenterString(string strToCenter)
    {
        var padAmount = (Console.WindowWidth - strToCenter.Length) / 2;
        var leftPad = new string(' ', padAmount);
        return $"{leftPad}{strToCenter}";
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a line of hyphens, the centered text of the title and another
    /// line of hyphens.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="strTitle">The string to be displayed.</param>
    public void DisplayTitle(string strTitle)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine(CenterString(strTitle));
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Display a countdown and wait for a number of seconds.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="numSeconds">The number of seconds to wait.</param>
```

```
    public void WaitABit(int numSeconds, string msg)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(msg);

        // Wait for the requested number of seconds.
        for (int i = numSeconds; i > 0; i--)
        {
            System.Threading.Thread.Sleep(1000);
            Console.Write($"{i}...");
        }

        PressEnter();
    }
}
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage launch templates and metrics. These functions wrap Auto Scaling, Amazon EC2, and CloudWatch actions.

```
namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.AutoScaling;
using Amazon.AutoScaling.Model;

/// <summary>
/// A class that includes methods to perform Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
/// actions.
/// </summary>
public class AutoScalingWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonAutoScaling _amazonAutoScaling;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the AutoScalingWrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonAutoScaling">The injected Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
 client.</param>
    public AutoScalingWrapper(IAmazonAutoScaling amazonAutoScaling)
    {
        _amazonAutoScaling = amazonAutoScaling;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name to use for the new Auto Scaling
    /// group.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// launch template to use to create instances in the group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        string availabilityZone)
    {
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var zoneList = new List<string>
            {
                availabilityZone,
            };

        var request = new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            AvailabilityZones = zoneList,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
            MaxSize = 6,
            MinSize = 1
        };
        try
        {
            var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group created");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group already exists.");
            return true;
```

```
        }
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling quotas to the
    /// active AWS account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DescribeAccountLimitsAsync()
    {
        var response = await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAccountLimitsAsync();
        Console.WriteLine("The maximum number of Auto Scaling groups is " +
 response.MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups);
        Console.WriteLine("The current number of Auto Scaling groups is " +
 response.NumberOfAutoScalingGroups);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities for an
    /// Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Activity>> DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var activities = new List<Activity>();
        var scalingActivitiesRequest = new DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            MaxRecords = 10,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(scalingActivitiesRequest);
        if (response.Activities != null)
        {
            activities = response.Activities;
```

```
        }
        return activities;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about the instances in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling details.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>>
 DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = await DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName);
        var instanceIds = new List<string>();
        var instanceDetails = new List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>();
        if (groups != null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName && group.Instances !=
 null)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(instance =>
                    {
                        instanceIds.Add(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });

            var scalingGroupsRequest = new DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
            {
                MaxRecords = 10,
                InstanceIds = instanceIds,
            };

            var response =
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
                    scalingGroupsRequest);
            if (response.AutoScalingInstances != null)
            {
```

```
                instanceDetails = response.AutoScalingInstances;
            }
        }

        return instanceDetails;
    }



    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of information about Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingGroup>> DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = new List<AutoScalingGroup>();
        var groupList = new List<string>
            {
                groupName,
            };

        var request = new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupNames = groupList,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(request);
        if (response.AutoScalingGroups != null)
        {
            groups = response.AutoScalingGroups;
        }

        return groups;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest = new DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            ForceDelete = true,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DeleteAutoScalingGroupAsync(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully deleted {groupName}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't delete {groupName}.");
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the collection of metric data for an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var request = new DisableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the collection of metric data for an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var listMetrics = new List<string>
            {
                "GroupMaxSize",
            };

        var collectionRequest = new EnableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            Metrics = listMetrics,
            Granularity = "1Minute",
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(collectionRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Set the desired capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="desiredCapacity">The desired capacity for the Auto
    /// Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetDesiredCapacityAsync(
        string groupName,
        int desiredCapacity)
    {
        var capacityRequest = new SetDesiredCapacityRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            DesiredCapacity = desiredCapacity,
        };
```

```
        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.SetDesiredCapacityAsync(capacityRequest);
        Console.WriteLine($"You have set the DesiredCapacity to
 {desiredCapacity}.");

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate all instances in the Auto Scaling group in preparation for
    /// deleting the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the instance to terminate.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string instanceId)
    {
        var request = new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            InstanceId = instanceId,
            ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);

        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You have terminated the instance: {instanceId}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Could not terminate {instanceId}");
        return false;
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Update the capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
```

```
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the EC2 launch template.</
param>
    /// <param name="maxSize">The maximum number of instances that can be
    /// created for the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        int maxSize)
    {
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var groupRequest = new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            MaxSize = maxSize,
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group
 {groupName}.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            return false;
        }
    }

}


namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.EC2;
using Amazon.EC2.Model;
```

```
public class EC2Wrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonEC2 _amazonEc2;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the EC2Wrapper class.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonEc2">The injected Amazon EC2 client.</param>
    public EC2Wrapper(IAmazonEC2 amazonEc2)
    {
        _amazonEc2 = amazonEc2;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create a new Amazon EC2 launch template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="imageId">The image Id to use for instances launched
    /// using the Amazon EC2 launch template.</param>
    /// <param name="instanceType">The type of EC2 instances to create.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the launch template.</param>
    /// <returns>Returns the TemplateID of the new launch template.</returns>
    public async Task<string> CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(
        string imageId,
        string instanceType,
        string launchTemplateName)
    {
        var request = new CreateLaunchTemplateRequest
        {
            LaunchTemplateData = new RequestLaunchTemplateData
            {
                ImageId = imageId,
                InstanceType = instanceType,
            },
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEc2.CreateLaunchTemplateAsync(request);

        return response.LaunchTemplate.LaunchTemplateId;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Delete an Amazon EC2 launch template.
    /// </summary>
```

```
    /// <param name="launchTemplateId">The TemplateId of the launch template to
    /// delete.</param>
    /// <returns>The name of the EC2 launch template that was deleted.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(string launchTemplateId)
    {
        var request = new DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest
        {
            LaunchTemplateId = launchTemplateId,
        };

        var response = await _amazonEc2.DeleteLaunchTemplateAsync(request);
        return response.LaunchTemplate.LaunchTemplateName;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve information about an EC2 launch template.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the EC2 launch template.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DescribeLaunchTemplateAsync(string launchTemplateName)
    {
        var request = new DescribeLaunchTemplatesRequest
        {
            LaunchTemplateNames = new List<string> { launchTemplateName, },
        };

        var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeLaunchTemplatesAsync(request);

        if (response.LaunchTemplates is not null)
        {
            response.LaunchTemplates.ForEach(template =>
            {
                Console.Write($"{template.LaunchTemplateName}\t");
                Console.WriteLine(template.LaunchTemplateId);
            });

            return true;
        }

        return false;
    }
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the availability zones for the current region.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A collection of availability zones.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AvailabilityZone>> ListAvailabilityZonesAsync()
    {
        var response = await _amazonEc2.DescribeAvailabilityZonesAsync(
            new DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest());

        return response.AvailabilityZones;
    }
}


namespace AutoScalingActions;

using Amazon.CloudWatch;
using Amazon.CloudWatch.Model;

/// <summary>
/// Contains methods to access Amazon CloudWatch metrics for the
/// Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling basics scenario.
/// </summary>
public class CloudWatchWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonCloudWatch _amazonCloudWatch;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the CloudWatchWrapper.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="amazonCloudWatch">The injected CloudWatch client.</param>
    public CloudWatchWrapper(IAmazonCloudWatch amazonCloudWatch)
    {
        _amazonCloudWatch = amazonCloudWatch;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the metrics information collection for the Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A list of Metrics collected for the Auto Scaling group.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Metric>> GetCloudWatchMetricsAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var metrics = new List<Metric>();
```

```
        var filter = new DimensionFilter
        {
            Name = "AutoScalingGroupName",
            Value = $"{groupName}",
        };

        var request = new ListMetricsRequest
        {
            MetricName = "AutoScalingGroupName",
            Dimensions = new List<DimensionFilter> { filter },
            Namespace = "AWS/AutoScaling",
        };

        var response = await _amazonCloudWatch.ListMetricsAsync(request);
        if (response.Metrics != null)
        {
            metrics = response.Metrics;
        }
        return metrics;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve the metric data collected for an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of data points.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Datapoint>> GetMetricStatisticsAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var dataPoints = new List<Datapoint>();
        var metricDimensions = new List<Dimension>
            {
                new Dimension
                {
                    Name = "AutoScalingGroupName",
                    Value = $"{groupName}",
                },
            };

        // The start time will be yesterday.
        var startTime = DateTime.UtcNow.AddDays(-1);

        var request = new GetMetricStatisticsRequest
        {
```

```
            MetricName = "AutoScalingGroupName",
            Dimensions = metricDimensions,
            Namespace = "AWS/AutoScaling",
            Period = 60, // 60 seconds.
            Statistics = new List<string>() { "Minimum" },
            StartTimeUtc = startTime,
            EndTimeUtc = DateTime.UtcNow,
        };

        var response = await _amazonCloudWatch.GetMetricStatisticsAsync(request);
        if (response.Datapoints != null)
        {
            dataPoints = response.Datapoints;
        }

        return dataPoints;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Create a new Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="groupName">The name to use for the new Auto Scaling
/// group.</param>
/// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
/// launch template to use to create instances in the group.</param>
/// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
public async Task<bool> CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
    string groupName,
    string launchTemplateName,
    string availabilityZone)
{
    var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
    {
        LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
    };

    var zoneList = new List<string>
        {
            availabilityZone,
        };

    var request = new CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest
    {
        AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
        AvailabilityZones = zoneList,
```

```
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
            MaxSize = 6,
            MinSize = 1
        };
        try
        {
            var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.CreateAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group created");
            return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
        }
        catch (AlreadyExistsException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"{groupName} Auto Scaling Group already exists.");
            return true;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about the instances in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling details.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>>
DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = await DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName);
        var instanceIds = new List<string>();
        var instanceDetails = new List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>();
        if (groups != null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName && group.Instances !=
null)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(instance =>
                    {
                        instanceIds.Add(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });

            var scalingGroupsRequest = new DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
            {
                MaxRecords = 10,
                InstanceIds = instanceIds,
            };

            var response =
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
                    scalingGroupsRequest);
            if (response.AutoScalingInstances != null)
            {
                instanceDetails = response.AutoScalingInstances;
            }
        }

        return instanceDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get data about the instances in an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling details.</returns>
    public async Task<List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>>
 DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
        var groups = await DescribeAutoScalingGroupsAsync(groupName);
        var instanceIds = new List<string>();
        var instanceDetails = new List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>();
        if (groups != null)
        {
            groups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                if (group.AutoScalingGroupName == groupName && group.Instances !=
 null)
                {
                    group.Instances.ForEach(instance =>
                    {
                        instanceIds.Add(instance.InstanceId);
                    });
                }
            });

            var scalingGroupsRequest = new DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
            {
                MaxRecords = 10,
```

```
                InstanceIds = instanceIds,
            };

            var response =
                await _amazonAutoScaling.DescribeAutoScalingInstancesAsync(
                    scalingGroupsRequest);
            if (response.AutoScalingInstances != null)
            {
                instanceDetails = response.AutoScalingInstances;
            }
        }

        return instanceDetails;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Retrieve a list of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities for an
    /// Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities.</returns>
    public async Task<List<Activity>> DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(
        string groupName)
    {
```

```
        var activities = new List<Activity>();
        var scalingActivitiesRequest = new DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            MaxRecords = 10,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DescribeScalingActivitiesAsync(scalingActivitiesRequest);
        if (response.Activities != null)
        {
            activities = response.Activities;
        }
        return activities;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disable the collection of metric data for an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling
    /// group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var request = new DisableMetricsCollectionRequest
```

```
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.DisableMetricsCollectionAsync(request);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable the collection of metric data for an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(string groupName)
    {
        var listMetrics = new List<string>
            {
                "GroupMaxSize",
            };

        var collectionRequest = new EnableMetricsCollectionRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            Metrics = listMetrics,
            Granularity = "1Minute",
```

```
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.EnableMetricsCollectionAsync(collectionRequest);
        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set the desired capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="desiredCapacity">The desired capacity for the Auto
    /// Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> SetDesiredCapacityAsync(
        string groupName,
        int desiredCapacity)
    {
        var capacityRequest = new SetDesiredCapacityRequest
        {
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            DesiredCapacity = desiredCapacity,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.SetDesiredCapacityAsync(capacityRequest);
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"You have set the DesiredCapacity to
 {desiredCapacity}.");

        return response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK;
    }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Terminate all instances in the Auto Scaling group in preparation for
    /// deleting the group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="instanceId">The instance Id of the instance to terminate.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success or failure of
    /// the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string instanceId)
    {
        var request = new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            InstanceId = instanceId,
            ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false,
        };

        var response = await
 _amazonAutoScaling.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupAsync(request);
```

```
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You have terminated the instance: {instanceId}");
            return true;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Could not terminate {instanceId}");
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Update the capacity of an Auto Scaling group.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="groupName">The name of the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <param name="launchTemplateName">The name of the EC2 launch template.</
param>
    /// <param name="maxSize">The maximum number of instances that can be
    /// created for the Auto Scaling group.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the action.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(
        string groupName,
        string launchTemplateName,
        int maxSize)
    {
```

```
        var templateSpecification = new LaunchTemplateSpecification
        {
            LaunchTemplateName = launchTemplateName,
        };

        var groupRequest = new UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest
        {
            MaxSize = maxSize,
            AutoScalingGroupName = groupName,
            LaunchTemplate = templateSpecification,
        };

        var response = await
_amazonAutoScaling.UpdateAutoScalingGroupAsync(groupRequest);
        if (response.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group
{groupName}.");
            return true;
        }
        else
        {
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon;
using Amazon.Bedrock;
using Amazon.Bedrock.Model;

namespace BedrockActions;

/// <summary>
/// This example shows how to list foundation models.
/// </summary>
internal class HelloBedrock
{
    /// <summary>
    /// Main method to call the ListFoundationModelsAsync method.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args"> The command line arguments. </param>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Specify a region endpoint where Amazon Bedrock is available. For a list
 of supported region see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/what-
is-bedrock.html#bedrock-regions
        AmazonBedrockClient bedrockClient = new(RegionEndpoint.USWest2);

        await ListFoundationModelsAsync(bedrockClient);

    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List foundation models.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="bedrockClient"> The Amazon Bedrock client. </param>
```

```
   private static async Task ListFoundationModelsAsync(AmazonBedrockClient
bedrockClient)
   {
       Console.WriteLine("List foundation models with no filter.");

       try
       {
           var response = await bedrockClient.ListFoundationModelsAsync(new
ListFoundationModelsRequest()
           {
           });

           if (response?.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
           {
               foreach (var fm in response.ModelSummaries)
               {
                   WriteToConsole(fm);
               }
           }
           else
           {
               Console.WriteLine("Something wrong happened");
           }
       }
       catch (AmazonBedrockException e)
       {
           Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
       }
   }


   /// <summary>
   /// Write the foundation model summary to console.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="foundationModel"> The foundation model summary to write to
console. </param>
   private static void WriteToConsole(FoundationModelSummary foundationModel)
   {
       Console.WriteLine($"{foundationModel.ModelId}, Customization:
{string.Join(", ", foundationModel.CustomizationsSupported)}, Stream:
{foundationModel.ResponseStreamingSupported}, Input: {string.Join(",
", foundationModel.InputModalities)}, Output: {string.Join(", ",
foundationModel.OutputModalities)}");
   }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Bedrock foundation models.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// List foundation models.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="bedrockClient"> The Amazon Bedrock client. </param>
   private static async Task ListFoundationModelsAsync(AmazonBedrockClient
bedrockClient)
   {
       Console.WriteLine("List foundation models with no filter.");

       try
       {
           var response = await bedrockClient.ListFoundationModelsAsync(new
ListFoundationModelsRequest()
           {
           });
```

```
            if (response?.HttpStatusCode == System.Net.HttpStatusCode.OK)
            {
                foreach (var fm in response.ModelSummaries)
                {
                    WriteToConsole(fm);
                }
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Something wrong happened");
            }
        }
        catch (AmazonBedrockException e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine(e.Message);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Amazon Titan Text
- Anthropic Claude
- Cohere Command
- Meta Llama
- Mistral AI

Amazon Titan Text

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
```

```
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
```

```
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    inputText = userMessage,
    textGenerationConfig = new
    {
        maxTokenCount = 512,
        temperature = 0.5
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
```

```
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["results"]?[0]?["outputText"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
```

```
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;
```

```
// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
```

```
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

using System;
using System.IO;
using System.Text.Json;
using System.Text.Json.Nodes;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
```

```
// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

//Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
var nativeRequest = JsonSerializer.Serialize(new
{
    anthropic_version = "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens = 512,
    temperature = 0.5,
    messages = new[]
    {
        new { role = "user", content = userMessage }
    }
});

// Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request payload.
var request = new InvokeModelRequest()
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Body = new MemoryStream(System.Text.Encoding.UTF8.GetBytes(nativeRequest)),
    ContentType = "application/json"
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the response.
    var response = await client.InvokeModelAsync(request);

    // Decode the response body.
    var modelResponse = await JsonNode.ParseAsync(response.Body);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    var responseText = modelResponse["content"]?[0]?["text"] ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Cohere Command

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
```

```
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
```

```
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Meta Llama

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
```

```
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama
```

```
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);
```

```
    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Mistral AI

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using Amazon;
```

```
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the response text.
    string responseText = response?.Output?.Message?.Content?[0]?.Text ?? "";
    Console.WriteLine(responseText);
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
```

```
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Linq;
using Amazon;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime;
using Amazon.BedrockRuntime.Model;

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
var client = new AmazonBedrockRuntimeClient(RegionEndpoint.USEast1);

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Define the user message.
```

```
var userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

// Create a request with the model ID, the user message, and an inference
 configuration.
var request = new ConverseStreamRequest
{
    ModelId = modelId,
    Messages = new List<Message>
    {
        new Message
        {
            Role = ConversationRole.User,
            Content = new List<ContentBlock> { new ContentBlock { Text =
 userMessage } }
        }
    },
    InferenceConfig = new InferenceConfiguration()
    {
        MaxTokens = 512,
        Temperature = 0.5F,
        TopP = 0.9F
    }
};

try
{
    // Send the request to the Bedrock Runtime and wait for the result.
    var response = await client.ConverseStreamAsync(request);

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    foreach (var chunk in response.Stream.AsEnumerable())
    {
        if (chunk is ContentBlockDeltaEvent)
        {
            Console.Write((chunk as ContentBlockDeltaEvent).Delta.Text);
        }
    }
}
catch (AmazonBedrockRuntimeException e)
{
    Console.WriteLine($"ERROR: Can't invoke '{modelId}'. Reason: {e.Message}");
    throw;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

AWS CloudFormation examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with AWS CloudFormation.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS CloudFormation

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS CloudFormation.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.CloudFormation;
using Amazon.CloudFormation.Model;
using Amazon.Runtime;

namespace CloudFormationActions;

public static class HelloCloudFormation
{
    public static IAmazonCloudFormation _amazonCloudFormation = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Create the CloudFormation client
        _amazonCloudFormation = new AmazonCloudFormationClient();
        Console.WriteLine($"\nIn Region:
 {_amazonCloudFormation.Config.RegionEndpoint}");
```

```
        // List the resources for each stack
        await ListResources();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Method to list stack resources and other information.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if successful.</returns>
    public static async Task<bool> ListResources()
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Getting CloudFormation stack information...");

            // Get all stacks using the stack paginator.
            var paginatorForDescribeStacks =
                _amazonCloudFormation.Paginators.DescribeStacks(
                    new DescribeStacksRequest());
            if (paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks != null)
            {
                await foreach (Stack stack in paginatorForDescribeStacks.Stacks)
                {
                    // Basic information for each stack
                    Console.WriteLine(
                        "\n-------------------------------------------------");
                    Console.WriteLine($"\nStack: {stack.StackName}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"  Status: {stack.StackStatus.Value}");
                    Console.WriteLine($"  Created: {stack.CreationTime}");

                    // The tags of each stack (etc.)
                    if (stack.Tags != null && stack.Tags.Count > 0)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("  Tags:");
                        foreach (Tag tag in stack.Tags)
                            Console.WriteLine($"    {tag.Key}, {tag.Value}");
                    }

                    // The resources of each stack
                    DescribeStackResourcesResponse responseDescribeResources =
                        await _amazonCloudFormation.DescribeStackResourcesAsync(
                            new DescribeStackResourcesRequest
                            {
                                StackName = stack.StackName
```

```
                            });
                    if (responseDescribeResources.StackResources != null &&
responseDescribeResources.StackResources.Count > 0)
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("  Resources:");
                        foreach (StackResource resource in responseDescribeResources
                                     .StackResources)
                            Console.WriteLine(
                                $"    {resource.LogicalResourceId}:
{resource.ResourceStatus}");
                    }
                }
            }

            Console.WriteLine("\n-----------------------------------------------");
            return true;
        }
        catch (AmazonCloudFormationException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Unable to get stack information:\n" + ex.Message);
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonServiceException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Unable to get IAM security credentials"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are usnig SSO, be sure to install" +
                                  " the AWSSDK.SSO and AWSSDK.SSOOIDC packages.");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
        catch (ArgumentNullException ex)
        {
            if (ex.Message.Contains("Options property cannot be empty: ClientName"))
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine("If you are using SSO, have you logged in?");
```

```
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine(ex.Message);
                Console.WriteLine(ex.StackTrace);
            }

            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with CloudWatch.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello CloudWatch

The following code examples show how to get started using CloudWatch.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.CloudWatch;
using Amazon.CloudWatch.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;

namespace CloudWatchActions;
```

```
public static class HelloCloudWatch
{
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
 the Amazon CloudWatch service.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonCloudWatch>()
            ).Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var cloudWatchClient =
 host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonCloudWatch>();

        // You can use await and any of the async methods to get a response.
        var metricNamespace = "AWS/Billing";
        var response = await cloudWatchClient.ListMetricsAsync(new
 ListMetricsRequest
        {
            Namespace = metricNamespace
        });
        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon CloudWatch! Following are some metrics
 available in the {metricNamespace} namespace:");
        Console.WriteLine();
        if (response.Metrics != null)
        {
            foreach (var metric in response.Metrics.Take(5))
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tMetric: {metric.MetricName}");
                Console.WriteLine($"\tNamespace: {metric.Namespace}");
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"\tDimensions: {string.Join(", ", metric.Dimensions.Select(m =>
 $"{m.Name}:{m.Value}"))}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListUserPools`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUserPools`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the Amazon Cognito user pools for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of UserPoolDescriptionType objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<UserPoolDescriptionType>> ListUserPoolsAsync()
    {
        var userPools = new List<UserPoolDescriptionType>();

        var userPoolsPaginator = _cognitoService.Paginators.ListUserPools(new
ListUserPoolsRequest());

        await foreach (var response in userPoolsPaginator.Responses)
        {
```

```
            userPools.AddRange(response.UserPools);
        }

        return userPools;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

AWS Control Tower examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with AWS Control Tower.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Control Tower

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Control Tower.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
```

```
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;
using LogLevel = Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.LogLevel;

namespace ControlTowerActions;

/// <summary>
/// A class that introduces the AWS Control Tower by listing the
/// available baselines for the account.
/// </summary>
public class HelloControlTower
{
    private static ILogger logger = null!;

    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for AWS Control Tower.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
 LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonControlTower>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<HelloControlTower>();

        var amazonClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonControlTower>();

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine("Hello, AWS Control Tower! Let's list available
 baselines:");
        Console.WriteLine();

        var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

        try
        {
```

```
            var baselinesPaginator = amazonClient.Paginators.ListBaselines(new
 ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            Console.WriteLine($"{baselines.Count} baseline(s) retrieved.");
            foreach (var baseline in baselines)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\t{baseline.Name}");
            }
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.AccessDeniedException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List landing zones.

- List, enable, get, reset, and disable baselines.
- List, enable, get, and disable controls.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Control Tower features.

```
using Amazon.ControlCatalog;
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using Amazon.Organizations;
using Amazon.Organizations.Model;
using Amazon.SecurityToken;
using Amazon.SecurityToken.Model;
using ControlTowerActions;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;

namespace ControlTowerBasics;

/// <summary>
/// Scenario class for AWS Control Tower basics.
/// </summary>
public class ControlTowerBasics
{
    public static bool isInteractive = true;
    public static ILogger logger = null!;
    public static IAmazonOrganizations? orgClient = null;
    public static IAmazonSecurityTokenService? stsClient = null;
    public static ControlTowerWrapper? wrapper = null;
    private static string? ouArn;
    private static bool useLandingZone = false;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Main entry point for the AWS Control Tower basics scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonControlTower>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonControlCatalog>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonOrganizations>()
                .AddAWSService<IAmazonSecurityTokenService>()
                .AddTransient<ControlTowerWrapper>()
            )
            .Build();

        logger = LoggerFactory.Create(builder => { builder.AddConsole(); })
            .CreateLogger<ControlTowerBasics>();

        wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<ControlTowerWrapper>();
        orgClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonOrganizations>();
        stsClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonSecurityTokenService>();

        await RunScenario();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Runs the example scenario.
    /// </summary>
    public static async Task RunScenario()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("\tWelcome to the AWS Control Tower with ControlCatalog
example scenario.");
        Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        Console.WriteLine("This demo will walk you through working with AWS Control
Tower for landing zones,");
        Console.WriteLine("managing baselines, and working with controls.");

        try
        {
            var accountId = (await stsClient!.GetCallerIdentityAsync(new
GetCallerIdentityRequest())).Account;
            Console.WriteLine($"\nAccount ID: {accountId}");
```

```
            Console.WriteLine("\nSome demo operations require the use of a landing
 zone.");
            Console.WriteLine("You can use an existing landing zone or opt out of
 these operations in the demo.");
            Console.WriteLine("For instructions on how to set up a landing zone,");
            Console.WriteLine("see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/controltower/latest/
userguide/getting-started-from-console.html");

            // List available landing zones
            var landingZones = await wrapper!.ListLandingZonesAsync();
            if (landingZones.Count > 0)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nAvailable Landing Zones:");
                for (int i = 0; i < landingZones.Count; i++)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{i + 1}. {landingZones[i].Arn}");
                }

                Console.Write($"\nDo you want to use the first landing zone in the
 list ({landingZones[0].Arn})? (y/n): ");
                if (GetUserConfirmation())
                {
                    useLandingZone = true;
                    Console.WriteLine($"Using landing zone: {landingZones[0].Arn}");
                    ouArn = await SetupOrganizationAsync();
                }
            }

            // Managing Baselines
            Console.WriteLine("\nManaging Baselines:");
            var baselines = await wrapper.ListBaselinesAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\nListing available Baselines:");
            BaselineSummary? controlTowerBaseline = null;
            foreach (var baseline in baselines)
            {
                if (baseline.Name == "AWSControlTowerBaseline")
                    controlTowerBaseline = baseline;
                Console.WriteLine($"  - {baseline.Name}");
            }

            EnabledBaselineSummary? identityCenterBaseline = null;
            string? baselineArn = null;
```

```
            if (useLandingZone && ouArn != null)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("\nListing enabled baselines:");
                var enabledBaselines = await wrapper.ListEnabledBaselinesAsync();
                foreach (var baseline in enabledBaselines)
                {
                    if (baseline.BaselineIdentifier.Contains("baseline/
LN25R72TTG6IGPTQ"))
                        identityCenterBaseline = baseline;
                    Console.WriteLine($"  - {baseline.BaselineIdentifier}");
                }

                if (controlTowerBaseline != null)
                {
                    Console.Write("\nDo you want to enable the Control Tower
 Baseline? (y/n): ");
                    if (GetUserConfirmation())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine("\nEnabling Control Tower Baseline.");
                        var icBaselineArn = identityCenterBaseline?.Arn;
                        baselineArn = await wrapper.EnableBaselineAsync(ouArn,
                            controlTowerBaseline.Arn, "4.0", icBaselineArn ?? "");
                        var alreadyEnabled = false;
                        if (baselineArn != null)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine($"Enabled baseline ARN:
 {baselineArn}");
                        }
                        else
                        {
                            // Find the enabled baseline
                            foreach (var enabled in enabledBaselines)
                            {
                                if (enabled.BaselineIdentifier ==
 controlTowerBaseline.Arn)
                                {
                                    baselineArn = enabled.Arn;
                                    break;
                                }
                            }

                            alreadyEnabled = true;
                            Console.WriteLine("No change, the selected baseline was
 already enabled.");
```

```
                        }

                        if (baselineArn != null)
                        {
                            Console.Write("\nDo you want to reset the Control Tower
Baseline? (y/n): ");
                            if (GetUserConfirmation())
                            {
                                Console.WriteLine($"\nResetting Control Tower
Baseline: {baselineArn}");
                                var operationId = await
wrapper.ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(baselineArn);
                                Console.WriteLine($"Reset baseline operation id:
{operationId}");
                            }

                            Console.Write("\nDo you want to disable the Control
Tower Baseline? (y/n): ");
                            if (GetUserConfirmation())
                            {
                                Console.WriteLine($"Disabling baseline ARN:
{baselineArn}");
                                var operationId = await
wrapper.DisableBaselineAsync(baselineArn);
                                Console.WriteLine($"Disabled baseline operation id:
{operationId}");
                                if (alreadyEnabled)
                                {
                                    Console.WriteLine($"\nRe-enabling Control Tower
Baseline: {baselineArn}");
                                    // Re-enable the Control Tower baseline if it
was originally enabled.
                                    await wrapper.EnableBaselineAsync(ouArn,
                                        controlTowerBaseline.Arn, "4.0",
icBaselineArn ?? "");
                                }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

            // Managing Controls
            Console.WriteLine("\nManaging Controls:");
```

```
            var controls = await wrapper.ListControlsAsync();
            Console.WriteLine("\nListing first 5 available Controls:");
            for (int i = 0; i < Math.Min(5, controls.Count); i++)
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"{i + 1}. {controls[i].Name} -
 {controls[i].Arn}");
            }

            if (useLandingZone && ouArn != null)
            {
                var enabledControls = await wrapper.ListEnabledControlsAsync(ouArn);
                Console.WriteLine("\nListing enabled controls:");
                for (int i = 0; i < enabledControls.Count; i++)
                {
                    Console.WriteLine($"{i + 1}.
 {enabledControls[i].ControlIdentifier}");
                }

                // Find first non-enabled control
                var enabledControlArns = enabledControls.Select(c =>
 c.Arn).ToHashSet();
                var controlArn = controls.FirstOrDefault(c => !
enabledControlArns.Contains(c.Arn))?.Arn;

                if (controlArn != null)
                {
                    Console.Write($"\nDo you want to enable the control
 {controlArn}? (y/n): ");
                    if (GetUserConfirmation())
                    {
                        Console.WriteLine($"\nEnabling control: {controlArn}");
                        var operationId = await
 wrapper.EnableControlAsync(controlArn, ouArn);
                        if (operationId != null)
                        {
                            Console.WriteLine($"Enabled control with operation id:
 {operationId}");

                            Console.Write("\nDo you want to disable the control? (y/
n): ");
                            if (GetUserConfirmation())
                            {
                                Console.WriteLine("\nDisabling the control...");
```

```
                                var disableOpId = await
wrapper.DisableControlAsync(controlArn, ouArn);
                                Console.WriteLine($"Disable operation ID:
{disableOpId}");
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

            Console.WriteLine("\nThis concludes the example scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine("Thanks for watching!");
            Console.WriteLine(new string('-', 88));
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            logger.LogError(ex, "An error occurred during the Control Tower
scenario.");
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred: {ex.Message}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Sets up AWS Organizations and creates or finds a Sandbox OU.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>The ARN of the Sandbox organizational unit.</returns>
    private static async Task<string> SetupOrganizationAsync()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("\nChecking organization status...");

        try
        {
            var orgResponse = await orgClient!.DescribeOrganizationAsync(new
DescribeOrganizationRequest());
            var orgId = orgResponse.Organization.Id;
            Console.WriteLine($"Account is part of organization: {orgId}");
        }
        catch (AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No organization found. Creating a new
organization...");
            var createResponse = await orgClient!.CreateOrganizationAsync(new
CreateOrganizationRequest { FeatureSet = OrganizationFeatureSet.ALL });
            var orgId = createResponse.Organization.Id;
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"Created new organization: {orgId}");
        }

        // Look for Sandbox OU
        var roots = await orgClient.ListRootsAsync(new ListRootsRequest());
        var rootId = roots.Roots[0].Id;

        Console.WriteLine("Checking for Sandbox OU...");
        var ous = await orgClient.ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentAsync(new
 ListOrganizationalUnitsForParentRequest { ParentId = rootId });
        var sandboxOu = ous.OrganizationalUnits.FirstOrDefault(ou => ou.Name ==
 "Sandbox");

        if (sandboxOu == null)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Creating Sandbox OU...");
            var createOuResponse = await orgClient.CreateOrganizationalUnitAsync(new
 CreateOrganizationalUnitRequest { ParentId = rootId, Name = "Sandbox" });
            sandboxOu = createOuResponse.OrganizationalUnit;
            Console.WriteLine($"Created new Sandbox OU: {sandboxOu.Id}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Found existing Sandbox OU: {sandboxOu.Id}");
        }

        return sandboxOu.Arn;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Gets user confirmation by waiting for input or returning true if not
 interactive.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>True if user enters 'y' or if isInteractive is false, otherwise
 false.</returns>
    private static bool GetUserConfirmation()
    {
        return Console.ReadLine()?.ToLower() == "y" || !isInteractive;
    }
}
```

Wrapper methods that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
using Amazon.ControlCatalog;
using Amazon.ControlCatalog.Model;
using Amazon.ControlTower;
using Amazon.ControlTower.Model;
using ValidationException = Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ValidationException;

namespace ControlTowerActions;

/// <summary>
/// Methods to perform AWS Control Tower actions.
/// </summary>
public class ControlTowerWrapper
{
    private readonly IAmazonControlTower _controlTowerService;
    private readonly IAmazonControlCatalog _controlCatalogService;

    /// <summary>
    /// Constructor for the wrapper class containing AWS Control Tower actions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlTowerService">The AWS Control Tower client object.</
param>
    /// <param name="controlCatalogService">The AWS Control Catalog client object.</
param>
    public ControlTowerWrapper(IAmazonControlTower controlTowerService,
 IAmazonControlCatalog controlCatalogService)
    {
        _controlTowerService = controlTowerService;
        _controlCatalogService = controlCatalogService;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// List the AWS Control Tower landing zones for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of LandingZoneSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<LandingZoneSummary>> ListLandingZonesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var landingZones = new List<LandingZoneSummary>();
```

```
            var landingZonesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListLandingZones(new ListLandingZonesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in landingZonesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                landingZones.AddRange(response.LandingZones);
            }

            return landingZones;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List all baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BaselineSummary>> ListBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

            var baselinesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListBaselines(new ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            return baselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list baselines. Here's why: {ex.ErrorCode}:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
```

```
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List all enabled baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledBaselineSummary>> ListEnabledBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var enabledBaselines = new List<EnabledBaselineSummary>();

            var enabledBaselinesPaginator =
 _controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledBaselines(new
 ListEnabledBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in enabledBaselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledBaselines.AddRange(response.EnabledBaselines);
            }

            return enabledBaselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a baseline for the specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="baselineIdentifier">The identifier of baseline to enable.</
param>
    /// <param name="baselineVersion">The version of baseline to enable.</param>
    /// <param name="identityCenterBaseline">The identifier of identity center
 baseline if it is enabled.</param>
    /// <returns>The enabled baseline ARN or null if already enabled.</returns>
```

```
    public async Task<string?> EnableBaselineAsync(string targetIdentifier, string
baselineIdentifier, string baselineVersion, string identityCenterBaseline)
    {
        try
        {
            var parameters = new List<EnabledBaselineParameter>
            {
                new EnabledBaselineParameter
                {
                    Key = "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                    Value = identityCenterBaseline
                }
            };

            var request = new EnableBaselineRequest
            {
                BaselineIdentifier = baselineIdentifier,
                BaselineVersion = baselineVersion,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier,
                Parameters = parameters
            };

            var response = await _controlTowerService.EnableBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return response.Arn;
        }
        catch (ValidationException ex) when (ex.Message.Contains("already enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Baseline is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a baseline for a specific target and wait for the operation to
complete.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the baseline to
disable.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID or null if there was a conflict.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> DisableBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DisableBaselineRequest
            {
                EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
            };

            var response = await _controlTowerService.DisableBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
```

```
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Conflict disabling baseline: {ex.Message}. Skipping
disable step.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Reset an enabled baseline for a specific target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the enabled
baseline to reset.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
    public async Task<string> ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ResetEnabledBaselineRequest
            {
                EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
```

```
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Target not found, unable to reset enabled
baseline.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a baseline operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the baseline operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<BaselineOperationStatus> GetBaselineOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetBaselineOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetBaselineOperationAsync(request);
            return response.BaselineOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's why:
 {ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List enabled controls for a target organizational unit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The target organizational unit identifier.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled control summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledControlSummary>> ListEnabledControlsAsync(string
 targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ListEnabledControlsRequest
            {
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var enabledControls = new List<EnabledControlSummary>();

            var enabledControlsPaginator =
 _controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledControls(request);

            await foreach (var response in enabledControlsPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledControls.AddRange(response.EnabledControls);
            }

            return enabledControls;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
 (ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
 enabling controls.");
```

```
            return new List<EnabledControlSummary>();
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a control for a specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to enable.</param>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID or null if already enabled.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> EnableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            Console.WriteLine(controlArn);
            Console.WriteLine(targetIdentifier);

            var request = new EnableControlRequest
            {
                ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var response = await _controlTowerService.EnableControlAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
                if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
```

```
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ValidationException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("already enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable control. Here's why: {ex.ErrorCode}:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a control for a specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to disable.</param>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DisableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DisableControlRequest
            {
                ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
```

```
            };

            var response = await _controlTowerService.DisableControlAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
                if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable control. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a control operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the control operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<ControlOperationStatus> GetControlOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
```

```
            var request = new GetControlOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetControlOperationAsync(request);
            return response.ControlOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get control operation status. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// List all controls in the Control Tower control catalog.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of control summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<ControlSummary>> ListControlsAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var controls = new List<ControlSummary>();

            var controlsPaginator =
_controlCatalogService.Paginators.ListControls(new
Amazon.ControlCatalog.Model.ListControlsRequest());

            await foreach (var response in controlsPaginator.Responses)
            {
                controls.AddRange(response.Controls);
            }

            return controls;
        }
```

```
        catch (AmazonControlCatalogException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list controls. Here's why: {ex.ErrorCode}:
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - CreateLandingZone
  - DeleteLandingZone
  - DisableBaseline
  - DisableControl
  - EnableBaseline
  - EnableControl
  - GetControlOperation
  - GetLandingZoneOperation
  - ListBaselines
  - ListEnabledBaselines
  - ListEnabledControls
  - ListLandingZones
  - ResetEnabledBaseline

Actions

`DisableBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableBaseline`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Disable a baseline for a specific target and wait for the operation to
complete.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the baseline to
disable.</param>
   /// <returns>The operation ID or null if there was a conflict.</returns>
   public async Task<string?> DisableBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new DisableBaselineRequest
           {
               EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
           };

           var response = await _controlTowerService.DisableBaselineAsync(request);
           var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

           // Wait for operation to complete
           while (true)
           {
               var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
               Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
               if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
               {
                   break;
               }
               await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
           }

           return operationId;
```

```
        }
        catch (ConflictException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Conflict disabling baseline: {ex.Message}. Skipping
disable step.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableBaseline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DisableControl`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableControl`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Disable a control for a specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to disable.</param>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
    /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
    public async Task<string> DisableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var request = new DisableControlRequest
            {
                ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var response = await _controlTowerService.DisableControlAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
                if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't disable control. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableControl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

EnableBaseline

The following code example shows how to use EnableBaseline.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Enable a baseline for the specified target.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The ARN of the target.</param>
    /// <param name="baselineIdentifier">The identifier of baseline to enable.</
param>
    /// <param name="baselineVersion">The version of baseline to enable.</param>
    /// <param name="identityCenterBaseline">The identifier of identity center
 baseline if it is enabled.</param>
    /// <returns>The enabled baseline ARN or null if already enabled.</returns>
    public async Task<string?> EnableBaselineAsync(string targetIdentifier, string
 baselineIdentifier, string baselineVersion, string identityCenterBaseline)
    {
        try
        {
            var parameters = new List<EnabledBaselineParameter>
            {
                new EnabledBaselineParameter
                {
                    Key = "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                    Value = identityCenterBaseline
                }
            };

            var request = new EnableBaselineRequest
            {
                BaselineIdentifier = baselineIdentifier,
                BaselineVersion = baselineVersion,
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier,
                Parameters = parameters
            };
```

```
            var response = await _controlTowerService.EnableBaselineAsync(request);
            var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

            // Wait for operation to complete
            while (true)
            {
                var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
                Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
                if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
                {
                    break;
                }
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return response.Arn;
        }
        catch (ValidationException ex) when (ex.Message.Contains("already enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Baseline is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableBaseline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

EnableControl

The following code example shows how to use `EnableControl`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// <summary>
   /// Enable a control for a specified target.
   /// </summary>
   /// <param name="controlArn">The ARN of the control to enable.</param>
   /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The identifier of the target (e.g., OU
ARN).</param>
   /// <returns>The operation ID or null if already enabled.</returns>
   public async Task<string?> EnableControlAsync(string controlArn, string
targetIdentifier)
   {
       try
       {
           Console.WriteLine(controlArn);
           Console.WriteLine(targetIdentifier);

           var request = new EnableControlRequest
           {
               ControlIdentifier = controlArn,
               TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
           };

           var response = await _controlTowerService.EnableControlAsync(request);
           var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

           // Wait for operation to complete
           while (true)
           {
               var status = await GetControlOperationAsync(operationId);
               Console.WriteLine($"Control operation status: {status}");
               if (status == ControlOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
ControlOperationStatus.FAILED)
               {
                   break;
               }
```

```
                await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
            }

            return operationId;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ValidationException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("already enabled"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Control is already enabled for this target");
            return null;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return null;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't enable control. Here's why: {ex.ErrorCode}:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableControl in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetBaselineOperation`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBaselineOperation`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a baseline operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the baseline operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<BaselineOperationStatus> GetBaselineOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetBaselineOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetBaselineOperationAsync(request);
            return response.BaselineOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBaselineOperation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

GetControlOperation

The following code example shows how to use `GetControlOperation`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Get the status of a control operation.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="operationId">The ID of the control operation.</param>
    /// <returns>The operation status.</returns>
    public async Task<ControlOperationStatus> GetControlOperationAsync(string
operationId)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new GetControlOperationRequest
            {
                OperationIdentifier = operationId
            };

            var response = await
_controlTowerService.GetControlOperationAsync(request);
            return response.ControlOperation.Status;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Operation not found.");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't get control operation status. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetControlOperation in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListBaselines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBaselines`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<BaselineSummary>> ListBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var baselines = new List<BaselineSummary>();

            var baselinesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListBaselines(new ListBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in baselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                baselines.AddRange(response.Baselines);
            }

            return baselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list baselines. Here's why: {ex.ErrorCode}:
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListEnabledBaselines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListEnabledBaselines`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List all enabled baselines.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled baseline summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledBaselineSummary>> ListEnabledBaselinesAsync()
    {
        try
        {
            var enabledBaselines = new List<EnabledBaselineSummary>();

            var enabledBaselinesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledBaselines(new
ListEnabledBaselinesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in enabledBaselinesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                enabledBaselines.AddRange(response.EnabledBaselines);
            }

            return enabledBaselines;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledBaselines in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListEnabledControls`

The following code example shows how to use `ListEnabledControls`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List enabled controls for a target organizational unit.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="targetIdentifier">The target organizational unit identifier.</
param>
    /// <returns>A list of enabled control summaries.</returns>
    public async Task<List<EnabledControlSummary>> ListEnabledControlsAsync(string
 targetIdentifier)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ListEnabledControlsRequest
            {
                TargetIdentifier = targetIdentifier
            };

            var enabledControls = new List<EnabledControlSummary>();

            var enabledControlsPaginator =
 _controlTowerService.Paginators.ListEnabledControls(request);

            await foreach (var response in enabledControlsPaginator.Responses)
            {
```

```
                enabledControls.AddRange(response.EnabledControls);
            }

            return enabledControls;
        }
        catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException ex) when
(ex.Message.Contains("not registered with AWS Control Tower"))
        {
            Console.WriteLine("AWS Control Tower must be enabled to work with
enabling controls.");
            return new List<EnabledControlSummary>();
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledControls in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ListLandingZones`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLandingZones`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// List the AWS Control Tower landing zones for an account.
    /// </summary>
    /// <returns>A list of LandingZoneSummary objects.</returns>
    public async Task<List<LandingZoneSummary>> ListLandingZonesAsync()
    {
```

```
        try
        {
            var landingZones = new List<LandingZoneSummary>();

            var landingZonesPaginator =
_controlTowerService.Paginators.ListLandingZones(new ListLandingZonesRequest());

            await foreach (var response in landingZonesPaginator.Responses)
            {
                landingZones.AddRange(response.LandingZones);
            }

            return landingZones;
        }
        catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListLandingZones in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`ResetEnabledBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `ResetEnabledBaseline`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Reset an enabled baseline for a specific target.
    /// </summary>
```

```
   /// <param name="enabledBaselineIdentifier">The identifier of the enabled
baseline to reset.</param>
   /// <returns>The operation ID.</returns>
   public async Task<string> ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(string
enabledBaselineIdentifier)
   {
       try
       {
           var request = new ResetEnabledBaselineRequest
           {
               EnabledBaselineIdentifier = enabledBaselineIdentifier
           };

           var response = await
_controlTowerService.ResetEnabledBaselineAsync(request);
           var operationId = response.OperationIdentifier;

           // Wait for operation to complete
           while (true)
           {
               var status = await GetBaselineOperationAsync(operationId);
               Console.WriteLine($"Baseline operation status: {status}");
               if (status == BaselineOperationStatus.SUCCEEDED || status ==
BaselineOperationStatus.FAILED)
               {
                   break;
               }
               await Task.Delay(30000); // Wait 30 seconds
           }

           return operationId;
       }
       catch (Amazon.ControlTower.Model.ResourceNotFoundException)
       {
           Console.WriteLine("Target not found, unable to reset enabled
baseline.");
           throw;
       }
       catch (AmazonControlTowerException ex)
       {
           Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why:
{ex.ErrorCode}: {ex.Message}");
           throw;
       }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see ResetEnabledBaseline in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

DynamoDB examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2;
using Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;

namespace DynamoDBActions;

/// <summary>
/// A simple example that demonstrates basic DynamoDB operations.
```

```
/// </summary>
public class HelloDynamoDB
{
    /// <summary>
    /// HelloDynamoDB lists the existing DynamoDB tables for the default user.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon DynamoDB.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
            )
            .Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var dynamoDbClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonDynamoDB>();

        try
        {
            var request = new ListTablesRequest();
            var tableNames = new List<string>();

            var paginatorForTables = dynamoDbClient.Paginators.ListTables(request);

            await foreach (var tableName in paginatorForTables.TableNames)
            {
                tableNames.Add(tableName);
            }

            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the DynamoDB Hello Service example. " +
                              "\nLet's list your DynamoDB tables:");
            tableNames.ForEach(table =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"Table: {table}");
            });
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB service error occurred while
 listing tables. {ex.Message}");
```

```
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing tables.
 {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// This example application performs the following basic Amazon DynamoDB
/// functions:
///     CreateTableAsync
///     PutItemAsync
///     UpdateItemAsync
///     BatchWriteItemAsync
///     GetItemAsync
///     DeleteItemAsync
///     Query
///     Scan
///     DeleteItemAsync.
/// </summary>
public class DynamoDbBasics
{
    public static bool IsInteractive = true;

    // Separator for the console display.
    private static readonly string SepBar = new string('-', 80);

    /// <summary>
    /// The main entry point for the DynamoDB Basics example application.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A task representing the asynchronous operation.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon DynamoDB.
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonDynamoDB>()
                    .AddTransient<DynamoDbWrapper>())
            .Build();

        // Now the wrapper is available for injection.
        var dynamoDbWrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<DynamoDbWrapper>();

        var tableName = "movie_table";

        var movieFileName = @"movies.json";
```

```
        DisplayInstructions();

        // Create a new table and wait for it to be active.
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating the new table: {tableName}");

        var success = await dynamoDbWrapper.CreateMovieTableAsync(tableName);

        Console.WriteLine(success
            ? $"\nTable: {tableName} successfully created."
            : $"\nCould not create {tableName}.");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Add a single new movie to the table.
        var newMovie = new Movie
        {
            Year = 2021,
            Title = "Spider-Man: No Way Home",
        };

        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.PutItemAsync(newMovie, tableName);
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Added {newMovie.Title} to the table.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Could not add movie to table.");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Update the new movie by adding a plot and rank.
        var newInfo = new MovieInfo
        {
            Plot = "With Spider-Man's identity now revealed, Peter asks" +
                   "Doctor Strange for help. When a spell goes wrong, dangerous" +
                   "foes from other worlds start to appear, forcing Peter to" +
                   "discover what it truly means to be Spider-Man.",
            Rank = 9,
        };

        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.UpdateItemAsync(newMovie, newInfo,
tableName);
```

```
        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully updated the movie: {newMovie.Title}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Could not update the movie.");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Add a batch of movies to the DynamoDB table from a list of
        // movies in a JSON file.
        var itemCount = await dynamoDbWrapper.BatchWriteItemsAsync(movieFileName,
tableName);
        Console.WriteLine($"Added {itemCount} movies to the table.");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Get a movie by key. (partition + sort)
        var lookupMovie = new Movie
        {
            Title = "Jurassic Park",
            Year = 1993,
        };

        Console.WriteLine("Looking for the movie \"Jurassic Park\".");
        var item = await dynamoDbWrapper.GetItemAsync(lookupMovie, tableName);
        if (item?.Count > 0)
        {
            dynamoDbWrapper.DisplayItem(item);
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Couldn't find {lookupMovie.Title}");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Delete a movie.
        var movieToDelete = new Movie
        {
            Title = "The Town",
            Year = 2010,
```

```
        };

        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.DeleteItemAsync(tableName, movieToDelete);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {movieToDelete.Title}.");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {movieToDelete.Title}.");
        }

        WaitForEnter();

        // Use Query to find all the movies released in 2010.
        int findYear = 2010;
        Console.WriteLine($"Movies released in {findYear}");
        var queryCount = await dynamoDbWrapper.QueryMoviesAsync(tableName,
findYear);
        Console.WriteLine($"Found {queryCount} movies released in {findYear}");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Use Scan to get a list of movies from 2001 to 2011.
        int startYear = 2001;
        int endYear = 2011;
        var scanCount = await dynamoDbWrapper.ScanTableAsync(tableName, startYear,
endYear);
        Console.WriteLine($"Found {scanCount} movies released between {startYear}
and {endYear}");

        WaitForEnter();

        // Delete the table.
        success = await dynamoDbWrapper.DeleteTableAsync(tableName);

        if (success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Successfully deleted {tableName}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Could not delete {tableName}");
```

```
        }

        Console.WriteLine("The DynamoDB Basics example application is complete.");

        WaitForEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Displays the description of the application on the console.
    /// </summary>
    private static void DisplayInstructions()
    {
        if (!IsInteractive)
        {
            return;
        }

        Console.Clear();
        Console.WriteLine();
        Console.Write(new string(' ', 28));
        Console.WriteLine("DynamoDB Basics Example");
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("This demo application shows the basics of using DynamoDB
with the AWS SDK.");
        Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
        Console.WriteLine("The application does the following:");
        Console.WriteLine("\t1. Creates a table with partition: year and
sort:title.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t2. Adds a single movie to the table.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t3. Adds movies to the table from moviedata.json.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t4. Updates the rating and plot of the movie that was
just added.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t5. Gets a movie using its key (partition + sort).");
        Console.WriteLine("\t6. Deletes a movie.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t7. Uses QueryAsync to return all movies released in a
given year.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t8. Uses ScanAsync to return all movies released within
a range of years.");
        Console.WriteLine("\t9. Finally, it deletes the table that was just
created.");
        WaitForEnter();
    }

    /// <summary>
```

```
    /// Simple method to wait for the Enter key to be pressed.
    /// </summary>
    private static void WaitForEnter()
    {
        if (IsInteractive)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("\nPress <Enter> to continue.");
            Console.WriteLine(SepBar);
            _ = Console.ReadLine();
        }
    }
}
```

Creates a table to contain movie data.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Amazon DynamoDB table and then waits for the new
    /// table to become active.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to create.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateMovieTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.CreateTableAsync(new
 CreateTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
                {
                    new AttributeDefinition
                    {
                        AttributeName = "title",
                        AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S,
                    },
                    new AttributeDefinition
                    {
                        AttributeName = "year",
                        AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N,
```

```
                    },
                },
                KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
                {
                    new KeySchemaElement
                    {
                        AttributeName = "year",
                        KeType = KeyType.HASH,
                    },
                    new KeySchemaElement
                    {
                        AttributeName = "title",
                        KeType = KeyType.RANGE,
                    },
                },
                BillingMode = BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
            });

            // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
            Console.Write("Waiting for table to become active...");

            var request = new DescribeTableRequest
            {
                TableName = response.TableDescription.TableName,
            };

            TableStatus status;

            int sleepDuration = 2000;

            do
            {
                Thread.Sleep(sleepDuration);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDB.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
```

```
        catch (ResourceInUseException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while creating
 table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating table {tableName}.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Adds a single movie to the table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Adds a new item to the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing informtation for
    /// the movie to add to the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the item will be
 added.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the results of adding the item.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutItemAsync(Movie newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var item = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };
```

```
            var request = new PutItemRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                Item = item,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.PutItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while putting
 item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while putting item.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Updates a single item in a table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Updates an existing item in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information for
    /// the movie to update.</param>
    /// <param name="newInfo">A MovieInfo object that contains the
    /// information that will be changed.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table that contains the movie.</
param>
```

```
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateItemAsync(
        Movie newMovie,
        MovieInfo newInfo,
        string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };
            var updates = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValueUpdate>
            {
                ["info.plot"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { S = newInfo.Plot },
                },

                ["info.rating"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { N = newInfo.Rank.ToString() },
                },
            };

            var request = new UpdateItemRequest
            {
                AttributeUpdates = updates,
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.UpdateItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} or item was not found.
 {ex.Message}");
            return false;
```

```
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while updating
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while updating item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Retrieves a single item from the movie table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about an existing movie from the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information about
    /// the movie to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the movie.</param>
    /// <returns>A Dictionary object containing information about the item
    /// retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>> GetItemAsync(Movie
newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new GetItemRequest
            {
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
```

```
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.GetItemAsync(request);
            return response.Item;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>();
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while getting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while getting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Writes a batch of items to the movie table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
    /// added to the DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file.</param>
    /// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
    public List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
    {
        var moviesList = new List<Movie>();
        if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
        {
            return moviesList;
        }
```

```
        using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
        string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
        var allMovies = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<List<Movie>>(
            json,
            new JsonSerializerOptions
            {
                PropertyNameCaseInsensitive = true
            });

        // Now return the first 250 entries.
        if (allMovies != null && allMovies.Any())
        {
            moviesList = allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
        }
        return moviesList;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Writes 250 items to the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">A string containing the full path to
    /// the JSON file containing movie data.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to write items to.</param>
    /// <returns>A long integer value representing the number of movies
    /// imported from the JSON file.</returns>
    public async Task<long> BatchWriteItemsAsync(
        string movieFileName, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);
            if (!movies.Any())
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Couldn't find the JSON file with movie data.");
                return 0;
            }

            var context = new DynamoDBContextBuilder()
                // Optional call to provide a specific instance of IAmazonDynamoDB
                .WithDynamoDBClient(() => _amazonDynamoDB)
                .Build();

            var movieBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Movie>(
                new BatchWriteConfig()
```

```
                {
                    OverrideTableName = tableName
                });
            movieBatch.AddPutItems(movies);

            Console.WriteLine("Adding imported movies to the table.");
            await movieBatch.ExecuteAsync();

            return movies.Count;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table was not found during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred during batch write
operation. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Deletes a single item from the table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a single item from a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which the item
    /// will be deleted.</param>
    /// <param name="movieToDelete">A movie object containing the title and
    /// year of the movie to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
```

```
    /// delete operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteItemAsync(
        string tableName,
        Movie movieToDelete)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = movieToDelete.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = movieToDelete.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new DeleteItemRequest { TableName = tableName, Key =
key, };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Queries the table for movies released in a particular year.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Queries the table for movies released in a particular year and
    /// then displays the information for the movies returned.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to query.</param>
    /// <param name="year">The release year for which we want to
    /// view movies.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies that match the query.</returns>
    public async Task<int> QueryMoviesAsync(string tableName, int year)
    {
        try
        {
            var movieTable = new TableBuilder(_amazonDynamoDB, tableName)
                .AddHashKey("year", DynamoDBEntryType.Numeric)
                .AddRangeKey("title", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
                .Build();

            var filter = new QueryFilter("year", QueryOperator.Equal, year);

            Console.WriteLine("\nFind movies released in: {year}:");

            var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
            {
                Limit = 10, // 10 items per page.
                Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
                AttributesToGet = new List<string>
                {
                    "title",
                    "year",
                },
                ConsistentRead = true,
                Filter = filter,
            };

            // Value used to track how many movies match the
            // supplied criteria.
            var moviesFound = 0;

            var search = movieTable.Query(config);
            do
            {
                var movieList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
                moviesFound += movieList.Count;
```

```
                foreach (var movie in movieList)
                {
                    DisplayDocument(movie);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);

            return moviesFound;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while querying
movies. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while querying movies.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Scans the table for movies released in a range of years.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Scans the table for movies released between the specified years.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to scan.</param>
    /// <param name="startYear">The starting year for the range.</param>
    /// <param name="endYear">The ending year for the range.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies found in the specified year range.</returns>
    public async Task<int> ScanTableAsync(
        string tableName,
        int startYear,
        int endYear)
```

```
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ScanRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "#yr", "year" },
                },
                ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
                {
                    { ":y_a", new AttributeValue { N = startYear.ToString() } },
                    { ":y_z", new AttributeValue { N = endYear.ToString() } },
                },
                FilterExpression = "#yr between :y_a and :y_z",
                ProjectionExpression = "#yr, title, info.actors[0], info.directors,
info.running_time_secs",
                Limit = 10 // Set a limit to demonstrate using the LastEvaluatedKey.
            };

            // Keep track of how many movies were found.
            int foundCount = 0;

            var response = new ScanResponse();
            do
            {
                response = await _amazonDynamoDB.ScanAsync(request);
                foundCount += response.Items.Count;
                response.Items.ForEach(i => DisplayItem(i));
                request.ExclusiveStartKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
            }
            while (response?.LastEvaluatedKey?.Count > 0);
            return foundCount;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while scanning
table. {ex.Message}");
```

```
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while scanning table.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

Deletes the movie table.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteTableAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Table {response.TableDescription.TableName}
successfully deleted.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found and cannot be
deleted. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting table {tableName}.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Writes a batch of items to the movie table.

```
/// <summary>
/// Loads the contents of a JSON file into a list of movies to be
/// added to the DynamoDB table.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="movieFileName">The name of the JSON file.</param>
/// <returns>A generic list of movie objects.</returns>
public List<Movie> ImportMovies(string movieFileName)
{
    var moviesList = new List<Movie>();
    if (!File.Exists(movieFileName))
    {
        return moviesList;
    }

    using var sr = new StreamReader(movieFileName);
    string json = sr.ReadToEnd();
    var allMovies = JsonSerializer.Deserialize<List<Movie>>(
        json,
        new JsonSerializerOptions
        {
            PropertyNameCaseInsensitive = true
        });

    // Now return the first 250 entries.
    if (allMovies != null && allMovies.Any())
    {
        moviesList = allMovies.GetRange(0, 250);
    }
    return moviesList;
}

/// <summary>
```

```
    /// Writes 250 items to the movie table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="movieFileName">A string containing the full path to
    /// the JSON file containing movie data.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to write items to.</param>
    /// <returns>A long integer value representing the number of movies
    /// imported from the JSON file.</returns>
    public async Task<long> BatchWriteItemsAsync(
        string movieFileName, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var movies = ImportMovies(movieFileName);
            if (!movies.Any())
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Couldn't find the JSON file with movie data.");
                return 0;
            }

            var context = new DynamoDBContextBuilder()
                // Optional call to provide a specific instance of IAmazonDynamoDB
                .WithDynamoDBClient(() => _amazonDynamoDB)
                .Build();

            var movieBatch = context.CreateBatchWrite<Movie>(
                new BatchWriteConfig()
                {
                    OverrideTableName = tableName
                });
            movieBatch.AddPutItems(movies);

            Console.WriteLine("Adding imported movies to the table.");
            await movieBatch.ExecuteAsync();

            return movies.Count;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table was not found during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred during batch write
operation. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred during batch write operation.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Creates a new Amazon DynamoDB table and then waits for the new
    /// table to become active.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to create.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> CreateMovieTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.CreateTableAsync(new
CreateTableRequest
            {
```

```
            TableName = tableName,
            AttributeDefinitions = new List<AttributeDefinition>()
            {
                new AttributeDefinition
                {
                    AttributeName = "title",
                    AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S,
                },
                new AttributeDefinition
                {
                    AttributeName = "year",
                    AttributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N,
                },
            },
            KeySchema = new List<KeySchemaElement>()
            {
                new KeySchemaElement
                {
                    AttributeName = "year",
                    KeyType = KeyType.HASH,
                },
                new KeySchemaElement
                {
                    AttributeName = "title",
                    KeyType = KeyType.RANGE,
                },
            },
            BillingMode = BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
        });

        // Wait until the table is ACTIVE and then report success.
        Console.Write("Waiting for table to become active...");

        var request = new DescribeTableRequest
        {
            TableName = response.TableDescription.TableName,
        };

        TableStatus status;

        int sleepDuration = 2000;

        do
        {
```

```
                Thread.Sleep(sleepDuration);

                var describeTableResponse = await
_amazonDynamoDB.DescribeTableAsync(request);
                status = describeTableResponse.Table.TableStatus;

                Console.Write(".");
            }
            while (status != "ACTIVE");

            return status == TableStatus.ACTIVE;
        }
        catch (ResourceInUseException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} already exists. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while creating
table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while creating table {tableName}.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a single item from a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table from which the item
    /// will be deleted.</param>
    /// <param name="movieToDelete">A movie object containing the title and
    /// year of the movie to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success or failure of the
    /// delete operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteItemAsync(
        string tableName,
        Movie movieToDelete)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = movieToDelete.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = movieToDelete.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new DeleteItemRequest { TableName = tableName, Key =
key, };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
```

```
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Deletes a DynamoDB table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to delete.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value indicating the success of the operation.</returns>
    public async Task<bool> DeleteTableAsync(string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new DeleteTableRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
            };
```

```
            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.DeleteTableAsync(request);

            Console.WriteLine($"Table {response.TableDescription.TableName}
successfully deleted.");
            return true;

        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found and cannot be
deleted. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while deleting
table {tableName}. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while deleting table {tableName}.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Gets information about an existing movie from the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information about
    /// the movie to retrieve.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table containing the movie.</param>
    /// <returns>A Dictionary object containing information about the item
    /// retrieved.</returns>
    public async Task<Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>> GetItemAsync(Movie
newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };

            var request = new GetItemRequest
            {
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            var response = await _amazonDynamoDB.GetItemAsync(request);
            return response.Item;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>();
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while getting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
```

```
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while getting item.
 {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Adds a new item to the table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing informtation for
    /// the movie to add to the table.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table where the item will be
 added.</param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the results of adding the item.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> PutItemAsync(Movie newMovie, string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var item = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };
```

```
            var request = new PutItemRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                Item = item,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.PutItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while putting
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while putting item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// <summary>
/// Queries the table for movies released in a particular year and
/// then displays the information for the movies returned.
/// </summary>
/// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to query.</param>
/// <param name="year">The release year for which we want to
/// view movies.</param>
/// <returns>The number of movies that match the query.</returns>
public async Task<int> QueryMoviesAsync(string tableName, int year)
{
    try
    {
        var movieTable = new TableBuilder(_amazonDynamoDB, tableName)
            .AddHashKey("year", DynamoDBEntryType.Numeric)
            .AddRangeKey("title", DynamoDBEntryType.String)
            .Build();

        var filter = new QueryFilter("year", QueryOperator.Equal, year);

        Console.WriteLine("\nFind movies released in: {year}:");

        var config = new QueryOperationConfig()
        {
            Limit = 10, // 10 items per page.
            Select = SelectValues.SpecificAttributes,
            AttributesToGet = new List<string>
            {
                "title",
                "year",
            },
            ConsistentRead = true,
            Filter = filter,
        };

        // Value used to track how many movies match the
        // supplied criteria.
        var moviesFound = 0;

        var search = movieTable.Query(config);
        do
        {
            var movieList = await search.GetNextSetAsync();
```

```
                moviesFound += movieList.Count;

                foreach (var movie in movieList)
                {
                    DisplayDocument(movie);
                }
            }
            while (!search.IsDone);

            return moviesFound;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while querying
movies. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while querying movies.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Scans the table for movies released between the specified years.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table to scan.</param>
    /// <param name="startYear">The starting year for the range.</param>
    /// <param name="endYear">The ending year for the range.</param>
    /// <returns>The number of movies found in the specified year range.</returns>
    public async Task<int> ScanTableAsync(
        string tableName,
        int startYear,
        int endYear)
    {
        try
        {
            var request = new ScanRequest
            {
                TableName = tableName,
                ExpressionAttributeNames = new Dictionary<string, string>
                {
                    { "#yr", "year" },
                },
                ExpressionAttributeValues = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
                {
                    { ":y_a", new AttributeValue { N = startYear.ToString() } },
                    { ":y_z", new AttributeValue { N = endYear.ToString() } },
                },
                FilterExpression = "#yr between :y_a and :y_z",
                ProjectionExpression = "#yr, title, info.actors[0], info.directors,
info.running_time_secs",
                Limit = 10 // Set a limit to demonstrate using the LastEvaluatedKey.
            };

            // Keep track of how many movies were found.
            int foundCount = 0;
```

```
            var response = new ScanResponse();
            do
            {
                response = await _amazonDynamoDB.ScanAsync(request);
                foundCount += response.Items.Count;
                response.Items.ForEach(i => DisplayItem(i));
                request.ExclusiveStartKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
            }
            while (response?.LastEvaluatedKey?.Count > 0);
            return foundCount;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} was not found. {ex.Message}");
            return 0;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while scanning
table. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while scanning table.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Updates an existing item in the movies table.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="newMovie">A Movie object containing information for
    /// the movie to update.</param>
    /// <param name="newInfo">A MovieInfo object that contains the
    /// information that will be changed.</param>
    /// <param name="tableName">The name of the table that contains the movie.</
param>
    /// <returns>A Boolean value that indicates the success of the operation.</
returns>
    public async Task<bool> UpdateItemAsync(
        Movie newMovie,
        MovieInfo newInfo,
        string tableName)
    {
        try
        {
            var key = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValue>
            {
                ["title"] = new AttributeValue { S = newMovie.Title },
                ["year"] = new AttributeValue { N = newMovie.Year.ToString() },
            };
            var updates = new Dictionary<string, AttributeValueUpdate>
            {
                ["info.plot"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { S = newInfo.Plot },
                },

                ["info.rating"] = new AttributeValueUpdate
                {
```

```
                    Action = AttributeAction.PUT,
                    Value = new AttributeValue { N = newInfo.Rank.ToString() },
                },
            };

            var request = new UpdateItemRequest
            {
                AttributeUpdates = updates,
                Key = key,
                TableName = tableName,
            };

            await _amazonDynamoDB.UpdateItemAsync(request);
            return true;
        }
        catch (ResourceNotFoundException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Table {tableName} or item was not found.
{ex.Message}");
            return false;
        }
        catch (AmazonDynamoDBException ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon DynamoDB error occurred while updating
item. {ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while updating item.
{ex.Message}");
            throw;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Amazon EC2.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace EC2Actions;

public class HelloEc2
{
    /// <summary>
    /// HelloEc2 lists the existing security groups for the default users.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments</param>
    /// <returns>Async task.</returns>
    static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2).
        using var host =
 Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonEC2>()
                .AddTransient<EC2Wrapper>()
            )
```

```
            .Build();

        // Now the client is available for injection.
        var ec2Client = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonEC2>();

        try
        {
            // Retrieve information for up to 10 Amazon EC2 security groups.
            var request = new DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest { MaxResults = 10 };
            var securityGroups = new List<SecurityGroup>();

            var paginatorForSecurityGroups =
                ec2Client.Paginators.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);

            await foreach (var securityGroup in
 paginatorForSecurityGroups.SecurityGroups)
            {
                securityGroups.Add(securityGroup);
            }

            // Now print the security groups returned by the call to
            // DescribeSecurityGroupsAsync.
            Console.WriteLine("Welcome to the EC2 Hello Service example. " +
                              "\nLet's list your Security Groups:");
            securityGroups.ForEach(group =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine(
                    $"Security group: {group.GroupName} ID: {group.GroupId}");
            });
        }
        catch (AmazonEC2Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An Amazon EC2 service error occurred while listing
 security groups. {ex.Message}");
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"An error occurred while listing security groups.
 {ex.Message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon ECS examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Amazon ECS.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon ECS

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon ECS.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
using Amazon.ECS;
using Amazon.ECS.Model;
using Microsoft.Extensions.DependencyInjection;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Console;
using Microsoft.Extensions.Logging.Debug;

namespace ECSActions;

/// <summary>
/// A class that introduces the Amazon ECS Client by listing the
/// cluster ARNs for the account.
/// </summary>
public class HelloECS
{
    static async System.Threading.Tasks.Task Main(string[] args)
    {
```

```
        // Use the AWS .NET Core Setup package to set up dependency injection for
the Amazon ECS client.
        // Use your AWS profile name, or leave it blank to use the default profile.
        using var host = Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureLogging(logging =>
                logging.AddFilter("System", LogLevel.Debug)
                    .AddFilter<DebugLoggerProvider>("Microsoft",
LogLevel.Information)
                    .AddFilter<ConsoleLoggerProvider>("Microsoft", LogLevel.Trace))
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonECS>()
            )
            .Build();

        var amazonECSClient = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IAmazonECS>();

        Console.WriteLine($"Hello Amazon ECS! Following are some cluster ARNS
available in the your account");
        Console.WriteLine();

        var clusters = new List<string>();

        var clustersPaginator = amazonECSClient.Paginators.ListClusters(new
ListClustersRequest());

        await foreach (var response in clustersPaginator.Responses)
        {
            clusters.AddRange(response.ClusterArns);
        }

        if (clusters.Count > 0)
        {
            clusters.ForEach(cluster =>
            {
                Console.WriteLine($"\tARN: {cluster}");
                Console.WriteLine($"Cluster Name: {cluster.Split("/").Last()}");
                Console.WriteLine();
            });
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine("No clusters were found.");
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for .NET (v4)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for .NET (v4) with Amazon S3.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreatePresignedPost`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePresignedPost`.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a presigned POST URL.

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Create a presigned POST URL with conditions.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="s3Client">The Amazon S3 client.</param>
    /// <param name="bucketName">The name of the bucket.</param>
    /// <param name="objectKey">The object key (path) where the uploaded file will
 be stored.</param>
    /// <param name="expires">When the presigned URL expires.</param>
    /// <param name="fields">Dictionary of fields to add to the form.</param>
    /// <param name="conditions">List of conditions to apply.</param>
    /// <returns>A CreatePresignedPostResponse object with URL and form fields.</
returns>
    public async Task<CreatePresignedPostResponse> CreatePresignedPostAsync(
        IAmazonS3 s3Client,
        string bucketName,
        string objectKey,
        DateTime expires,
        Dictionary<string, string>? fields = null,
        List<S3PostCondition>? conditions = null)
    {
        var request = new CreatePresignedPostRequest
        {
            BucketName = bucketName,
            Key = objectKey,
            Expires = expires
        };

        // Add custom fields if provided
        if (fields != null)
        {
            foreach (var field in fields)
            {
                request.Fields.Add(field.Key, field.Value);
            }
        }

        // Add conditions if provided
        if (conditions != null)
        {
            foreach (var condition in conditions)
            {
                request.Conditions.Add(condition);
            }
```

```
        }

        return await s3Client.CreatePresignedPostAsync(request);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePresignedPost in *AWS SDK for .NET API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for .NET (v4)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and use presigned POST URLs for direct browser uploads.

```
/// <summary>
/// Scenario demonstrating the complete workflow for presigned POST URLs:
/// 1. Create an S3 bucket
/// 2. Create a presigned POST URL
/// 3. Upload a file using the presigned POST URL
/// 4. Clean up resources
/// </summary>
public class CreatePresignedPostBasics
{
    public static ILogger<CreatePresignedPostBasics> _logger = null!;
    public static S3Wrapper _s3Wrapper = null!;
    public static UiMethods _uiMethods = null!;
    public static IHttpClientFactory _httpClientFactory = null!;
    public static bool _isInteractive = true;
    public static string? _bucketName;
    public static string? _objectKey;
```

```
    /// <summary>
    /// Set up the services and logging.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="host">The IHost instance.</param>
    public static void SetUpServices(IHost host)
    {
        var loggerFactory = LoggerFactory.Create(builder =>
        {
            builder.AddConsole();
        });
        _logger = new Logger<CreatePresignedPostBasics>(loggerFactory);

        _s3Wrapper = host.Services.GetRequiredService<S3Wrapper>();
        _httpClientFactory = host.Services.GetRequiredService<IHttpClientFactory>();
        _uiMethods = new UiMethods();
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Perform the actions defined for the Amazon S3 Presigned POST scenario.
    /// </summary>
    /// <param name="args">Command line arguments.</param>
    /// <returns>A Task object.</returns>
    public static async Task Main(string[] args)
    {
        _isInteractive = !args.Contains("--non-interactive");

        // Set up dependency injection for Amazon S3
        using var host =
Microsoft.Extensions.Hosting.Host.CreateDefaultBuilder(args)
            .ConfigureServices((_, services) =>
                services.AddAWSService<IAmazonS3>()
                    .AddTransient<S3Wrapper>()
                    .AddHttpClient()
            )
            .Build();

        SetUpServices(host);

        try
        {
            // Display overview
            _uiMethods.DisplayOverview();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);
```

```
            // Step 1: Create bucket
            await CreateBucketAsync();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 2: Create presigned URL
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 2: Create presigned POST URL");
            var response = await CreatePresignedPostAsync();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 3: Display URL and fields
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 3: Presigned POST URL details");
            DisplayPresignedPostFields(response);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 4: Upload file
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 4: Upload test file using presigned POST
URL");
            await UploadFileAsync(response);
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 5: Verify file exists
            await VerifyFileExistsAsync();
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);

            // Step 6: Cleanup
            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 6: Clean up resources");
            await CleanupAsync();

            _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("S3 Presigned POST Scenario completed
successfully!");
            _uiMethods.PressEnter(_isInteractive);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error in scenario");
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {ex.Message}");

            // Attempt cleanup if there was an error
            if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(_bucketName))
            {
                _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Cleaning up resources after error");
                await _s3Wrapper.DeleteBucketAsync(_bucketName);
                Console.WriteLine($"Cleaned up bucket: {_bucketName}");
            }
```

```
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Create an S3 bucket for the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task CreateBucketAsync()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 1: Create an S3 bucket");

        // Generate a default bucket name for the scenario
        var defaultBucketName = $"presigned-post-demo-
{DateTime.Now:yyyyMMddHHmmss}".ToLower();

        // Prompt user for bucket name or use default in non-interactive mode
        _bucketName = _uiMethods.GetUserInput(
            $"Enter S3 bucket name (or press Enter for '{defaultBucketName}'): ",
            defaultBucketName,
            _isInteractive);

        // Basic validation to ensure bucket name is not empty
        if (string.IsNullOrWhiteSpace(_bucketName))
        {
            _bucketName = defaultBucketName;
        }

        Console.WriteLine($"Creating bucket: {_bucketName}");

        await _s3Wrapper.CreateBucketAsync(_bucketName);

        Console.WriteLine($"Successfully created bucket: {_bucketName}");
    }


    /// <summary>
    /// Create a presigned POST URL.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task<CreatePresignedPostResponse>
 CreatePresignedPostAsync()
    {
        _objectKey = "example-upload.txt";
        var expiration = DateTime.UtcNow.AddMinutes(10); // Short expiration for the
 demo
```

```
        Console.WriteLine($"Creating presigned POST URL for {_bucketName}/
{_objectKey}");
        Console.WriteLine($"Expiration: {expiration} UTC");

        var s3Client = _s3Wrapper.GetS3Client();

        var response = await _s3Wrapper.CreatePresignedPostAsync(
            s3Client, _bucketName!, _objectKey, expiration);

        Console.WriteLine("Successfully created presigned POST URL");
        return response;
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Upload a file using the presigned POST URL.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task UploadFileAsync(CreatePresignedPostResponse response)
    {

        // Create a temporary test file to upload
        string testFilePath = Path.GetTempFileName();
        string testContent = "This is a test file for the S3 presigned POST
 scenario.";

        await File.WriteAllTextAsync(testFilePath, testContent);
        Console.WriteLine($"Created test file at: {testFilePath}");

        // Upload the file using the presigned POST URL
        Console.WriteLine("\nUploading file using the presigned POST URL...");
        var uploadResult = await UploadFileWithPresignedPostAsync(response,
 testFilePath);

        // Display the upload result
        if (uploadResult.Success)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Upload successful! Status code:
 {uploadResult.StatusCode}");
        }
        else
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Upload failed with status code:
 {uploadResult.StatusCode}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: {uploadResult.Response}");
            throw new Exception("File upload failed");
```

```
        }

        // Clean up the temporary file
        File.Delete(testFilePath);
        Console.WriteLine("Temporary file deleted");
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Helper method to upload a file using a presigned POST URL.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task<(bool Success, HttpStatusCode StatusCode, string
 Response)> UploadFileWithPresignedPostAsync(
        CreatePresignedPostResponse response,
        string filePath)
    {
        try
        {
            _logger.LogInformation("Uploading file {filePath} using presigned POST
 URL", filePath);

            using var httpClient = _httpClientFactory.CreateClient();
            using var formContent = new MultipartFormDataContent();

            // Add all the fields from the presigned POST response
            foreach (var field in response.Fields)
            {
                formContent.Add(new StringContent(field.Value), field.Key);
            }

            // Add the file content
            var fileStream = File.OpenRead(filePath);
            var fileName = Path.GetFileName(filePath);
            var fileContent = new StreamContent(fileStream);
            fileContent.Headers.ContentType = new MediaTypeHeaderValue("text/
plain");
            formContent.Add(fileContent, "file", fileName);

            // Send the POST request
            var httpResponse = await httpClient.PostAsync(response.Url,
 formContent);
            var responseContent = await httpResponse.Content.ReadAsStringAsync();

            // Log and return the result
```

```
            _logger.LogInformation("Upload completed with status code {statusCode}",
 httpResponse.StatusCode);

            return (httpResponse.IsSuccessStatusCode, httpResponse.StatusCode,
 responseContent);
        }
        catch (Exception ex)
        {
            _logger.LogError(ex, "Error uploading file");
            return (false, HttpStatusCode.InternalServerError, ex.Message);
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Verify that the uploaded file exists in the S3 bucket.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task VerifyFileExistsAsync()
    {
        _uiMethods.DisplayTitle("Step 5: Verify uploaded file exists");

        Console.WriteLine($"Checking if file exists at {_bucketName}/
{_objectKey}...");

        try
        {
            var metadata = await _s3Wrapper.GetObjectMetadataAsync(_bucketName!,
 _objectKey!);

            Console.WriteLine($"File verification successful! File exists in the
 bucket.");
            Console.WriteLine($"File size: {metadata.ContentLength} bytes");
            Console.WriteLine($"File type: {metadata.Headers.ContentType}");
            Console.WriteLine($"Last modified: {metadata.LastModified}");
        }
        catch (AmazonS3Exception ex) when (ex.StatusCode ==
 System.Net.HttpStatusCode.NotFound)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Error: File was not found in the bucket.");
            throw;
        }
    }

    private static void DisplayPresignedPostFields(CreatePresignedPostResponse
 response)
```

```
    {
        Console.WriteLine($"Presigned POST URL: {response.Url}");
        Console.WriteLine("Form fields to include:");

        foreach (var field in response.Fields)
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"  {field.Key}: {field.Value}");
        }
    }

    /// <summary>
    /// Clean up resources created by the scenario.
    /// </summary>
    private static async Task CleanupAsync()
    {
        if (!string.IsNullOrEmpty(_bucketName))
        {
            Console.WriteLine($"Deleting bucket {_bucketName} and its contents...");
            bool result = await _s3Wrapper.DeleteBucketAsync(_bucketName);

            if (result)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Bucket deleted successfully");
            }
            else
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Failed to delete bucket - it may have been
 already deleted");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Code examples for AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **AWS CLI with Bash script Developer Guide** – More about using Bash with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- AWS Batch examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- AWS Cloud Map examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- CloudFront examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- DynamoDB examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- Amazon EC2 examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- HealthImaging examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- IAM examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- AWS KMS examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- Lightsail examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- Amazon S3 examples using AWS CLI with Bash script
- AWS STS examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

AWS Batch examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with AWS Batch.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Get started with Batch and Fargate

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM execution role for ECS tasks
- Create a managed Fargate compute environment
- Create a job queue with priority settings
- Register a job definition for containerized workloads
- Submit and monitor a batch job execution
- View job output in CloudWatch Logs
- Clean up resources in proper dependency order

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# AWS Batch Fargate Getting Started Script - Fixed Version
# This script demonstrates creating AWS Batch resources with Fargate orchestration
#
# HIGH SEVERITY FIXES APPLIED:
# 1. Added IAM role propagation delay after role creation
# 2. Added resource state validation before deletion attempts

set -e  # Exit on any error
```

```
# Configuration
SCRIPT_NAME="batch-fargate-tutorial"
LOG_FILE="${SCRIPT_NAME}-$(date +%Y%m%d-%H%M%S).log"
RANDOM_SUFFIX=$(openssl rand -hex 6)
COMPUTE_ENV_NAME="batch-fargate-compute-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
JOB_QUEUE_NAME="batch-fargate-queue-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
JOB_DEF_NAME="batch-fargate-jobdef-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
JOB_NAME="batch-hello-world-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
ROLE_NAME="BatchEcsTaskExecutionRole-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
TRUST_POLICY_FILE="batch-trust-policy-${RANDOM_SUFFIX}.json"

# Array to track created resources for cleanup
CREATED_RESOURCES=()

# Logging function
log() {
    echo "[$(date '+%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S')] $1" | tee -a "$LOG_FILE"
}

# Error handling function
handle_error() {
    log "ERROR: Script failed at line $1"
    log "Attempting to clean up resources created so far..."
    cleanup_resources
    exit 1
}

# Set up error handling
trap 'handle_error $LINENO' ERR

# Function to wait for resource to be ready
wait_for_compute_env() {
    local env_name=$1
    log "Waiting for compute environment $env_name to be VALID..."

    while true; do
        local status=$(aws batch describe-compute-environments \
            --compute-environments "$env_name" \
            --query 'computeEnvironments[0].status' \
            --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")

        if [ "$status" = "VALID" ]; then
            log "Compute environment $env_name is ready"
```

```
            break
        elif [ "$status" = "INVALID" ] || [ "$status" = "NOT_FOUND" ]; then
            log "ERROR: Compute environment $env_name failed to create properly"
            return 1
        fi

        log "Compute environment status: $status. Waiting 10 seconds..."
        sleep 10
    done
}

# Function to wait for job queue to be ready
wait_for_job_queue() {
    local queue_name=$1
    log "Waiting for job queue $queue_name to be VALID..."

    while true; do
        local state=$(aws batch describe-job-queues \
            --job-queues "$queue_name" \
            --query 'jobQueues[0].state' \
            --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")

        if [ "$state" = "ENABLED" ]; then
            log "Job queue $queue_name is ready"
            break
        elif [ "$state" = "DISABLED" ] || [ "$state" = "NOT_FOUND" ]; then
            log "ERROR: Job queue $queue_name failed to create properly"
            return 1
        fi

        log "Job queue state: $state. Waiting 10 seconds..."
        sleep 10
    done
}

# Function to wait for job completion
wait_for_job() {
    local job_id=$1
    log "Waiting for job $job_id to complete..."

    while true; do
        local status=$(aws batch describe-jobs \
            --jobs "$job_id" \
            --query 'jobs[0].status' \
```

```
            --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")

        if [ "$status" = "SUCCEEDED" ]; then
            log "Job $job_id completed successfully"
            break
        elif [ "$status" = "FAILED" ]; then
            log "ERROR: Job $job_id failed"
            return 1
        fi

        log "Job status: $status. Waiting 30 seconds..."
        sleep 30
    done
}

# FIXED: Added function to wait for resource state before deletion
wait_for_resource_state() {
    local resource_type=$1
    local resource_name=$2
    local expected_state=$3
    local max_attempts=30
    local attempt=0

    log "Waiting for $resource_type $resource_name to reach state: $expected_state"

    while [ $attempt -lt $max_attempts ]; do
        local current_state=""

        case $resource_type in
            "JOB_QUEUE")
                current_state=$(aws batch describe-job-queues \
                    --job-queues "$resource_name" \
                    --query 'jobQueues[0].state' \
                    --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")
                ;;
            "COMPUTE_ENV")
                current_state=$(aws batch describe-compute-environments \
                    --compute-environments "$resource_name" \
                    --query 'computeEnvironments[0].status' \
                    --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "NOT_FOUND")
                ;;
        esac

        if [ "$current_state" = "$expected_state" ]; then
```

```
            log "$resource_type $resource_name is now in state: $expected_state"
            return 0
        fi

        log "$resource_type $resource_name state: $current_state (waiting for
 $expected_state)"
        sleep 10
        ((attempt++))
    done

    log "WARNING: $resource_type $resource_name did not reach expected state after
 $max_attempts attempts"
    return 1
}

# Cleanup function
cleanup_resources() {
    log "Starting cleanup of created resources..."

    # Clean up in reverse order of creation
    for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
        local resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[i]}"
        local resource_type=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d: -f1)
        local resource_name=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d: -f2)

        log "Cleaning up $resource_type: $resource_name"

        case $resource_type in
            "JOB_QUEUE")
                # FIXED: Validate state before deletion
                aws batch update-job-queue --job-queue "$resource_name" --state
 DISABLED 2>/dev/null || true
                wait_for_resource_state "JOB_QUEUE" "$resource_name" "DISABLED" ||
 true
                aws batch delete-job-queue --job-queue "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null
 || true
                ;;
            "COMPUTE_ENV")
                # FIXED: Validate state before deletion
                aws batch update-compute-environment --compute-environment
 "$resource_name" --state DISABLED 2>/dev/null || true
                wait_for_resource_state "COMPUTE_ENV" "$resource_name" "DISABLED" ||
 true
```

```
                aws batch delete-compute-environment --compute-environment
 "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null || true
                ;;
            "IAM_ROLE")
                aws iam detach-role-policy --role-name "$resource_name" --policy-arn
 "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonECSTaskExecutionRolePolicy" 2>/dev/null
 || true
                aws iam delete-role --role-name "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null || true
                ;;
            "FILE")
                rm -f "$resource_name" 2>/dev/null || true
                ;;
        esac
    done

    log "Cleanup completed"
}

# Main script execution
main() {
    log "Starting AWS Batch Fargate tutorial script - Fixed Version"
    log "Log file: $LOG_FILE"

    # Get AWS account ID
    log "Getting AWS account ID..."
    ACCOUNT_ID=$(aws sts get-caller-identity --query Account --output text)
    log "Account ID: $ACCOUNT_ID"

    # Get default VPC and subnets
    log "Getting default VPC and subnets..."
    DEFAULT_VPC=$(aws ec2 describe-vpcs \
        --filters "Name=is-default,Values=true" \
        --query 'Vpcs[0].VpcId' \
        --output text)

    if [ "$DEFAULT_VPC" = "None" ] || [ "$DEFAULT_VPC" = "null" ]; then
        log "ERROR: No default VPC found. Please create a VPC first."
        exit 1
    fi

    log "Default VPC: $DEFAULT_VPC"

    # Get subnets in the default VPC
    SUBNETS=$(aws ec2 describe-subnets \
```

```
        --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$DEFAULT_VPC" \
        --query 'Subnets[*].SubnetId' \
        --output text)

    if [ -z "$SUBNETS" ]; then
        log "ERROR: No subnets found in default VPC"
        exit 1
    fi

    # Convert tab/space-separated subnets to JSON array format
    SUBNET_ARRAY=$(echo "$SUBNETS" | tr '\t ' '\n' | sed 's/^/"/;s/$/"/' | paste -sd
 ',' -)
    log "Subnets: $SUBNETS"
    log "Subnet array: [$SUBNET_ARRAY]"

    # Get default security group for the VPC
    DEFAULT_SG=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups \
        --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$DEFAULT_VPC" "Name=group-name,Values=default"
 \
        --query 'SecurityGroups[0].GroupId' \
        --output text)

    if [ "$DEFAULT_SG" = "None" ] || [ "$DEFAULT_SG" = "null" ]; then
        log "ERROR: No default security group found in VPC"
        exit 1
    fi

    log "Default security group: $DEFAULT_SG"

    # Step 1: Create IAM execution role
    log "Step 1: Creating IAM execution role..."

    # Create trust policy document
    cat > "$TRUST_POLICY_FILE" << EOF
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "ecs-tasks.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
```

```
  ]
}
EOF
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("FILE:$TRUST_POLICY_FILE")

    # Create the role
    aws iam create-role \
        --role-name "$ROLE_NAME" \
        --assume-role-policy-document "file://$TRUST_POLICY_FILE"
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("IAM_ROLE:$ROLE_NAME")

    # Attach policy
    aws iam attach-role-policy \
        --role-name "$ROLE_NAME" \
        --policy-arn "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AmazonECSTaskExecutionRolePolicy"

    log "IAM role created: $ROLE_NAME"

    # FIXED: Wait for IAM role propagation
    log "Waiting for IAM role propagation (15 seconds)..."
    sleep 15

    # Step 2: Create compute environment
    log "Step 2: Creating Fargate compute environment..."

    aws batch create-compute-environment \
        --compute-environment-name "$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME" \
        --type MANAGED \
        --state ENABLED \
        --compute-resources "{
            \"type\": \"FARGATE\",
            \"maxvCpus\": 256,
            \"subnets\": [$SUBNET_ARRAY],
            \"securityGroupIds\": [\"$DEFAULT_SG\"]
        }"
    CREATED_RESOURCES+=("COMPUTE_ENV:$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME")

    # Wait for compute environment to be ready
    wait_for_compute_env "$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME"

    # Step 3: Create job queue
    log "Step 3: Creating job queue..."
```

```
aws batch create-job-queue \
    --job-queue-name "$JOB_QUEUE_NAME" \
    --state ENABLED \
    --priority 900 \
    --compute-environment-order order=1,computeEnvironment="$COMPUTE_ENV_NAME"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("JOB_QUEUE:$JOB_QUEUE_NAME")

# Wait for job queue to be ready
wait_for_job_queue "$JOB_QUEUE_NAME"

# Step 4: Create job definition
log "Step 4: Creating job definition..."

aws batch register-job-definition \
    --job-definition-name "$JOB_DEF_NAME" \
    --type container \
    --platform-capabilities FARGATE \
    --container-properties "{
        \"image\": \"busybox\",
        \"resourceRequirements\": [
            {\"type\": \"VCPU\", \"value\": \"0.25\"},
            {\"type\": \"MEMORY\", \"value\": \"512\"}
        ],
        \"command\": [\"echo\", \"hello world\"],
        \"networkConfiguration\": {
            \"assignPublicIp\": \"ENABLED\"
        },
        \"executionRoleArn\": \"arn:aws:iam::${ACCOUNT_ID}:role/${ROLE_NAME}\"
    }"

log "Job definition created: $JOB_DEF_NAME"

# Step 5: Submit job
log "Step 5: Submitting job..."

JOB_ID=$(aws batch submit-job \
    --job-name "$JOB_NAME" \
    --job-queue "$JOB_QUEUE_NAME" \
    --job-definition "$JOB_DEF_NAME" \
    --query 'jobId' \
    --output text)

log "Job submitted with ID: $JOB_ID"
```

```
    # Step 6: Wait for job completion and view output
    log "Step 6: Waiting for job completion..."
    wait_for_job "$JOB_ID"

    # Get log stream name
    log "Getting job logs..."
    LOG_STREAM=$(aws batch describe-jobs \
        --jobs "$JOB_ID" \
        --query 'jobs[0].attempts[0].taskProperties.containers[0].logStreamName' \
        --output text)

    if [ "$LOG_STREAM" != "None" ] && [ "$LOG_STREAM" != "null" ]; then
        log "Log stream: $LOG_STREAM"
        log "Job output:"
        aws logs get-log-events \
            --log-group-name "/aws/batch/job" \
            --log-stream-name "$LOG_STREAM" \
            --query 'events[*].message' \
            --output text | tee -a "$LOG_FILE"
    else
        log "No log stream available for job"
    fi

    log "Tutorial completed successfully!"

    # Show created resources
    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "CREATED RESOURCES"
    echo "============================================"
    echo "The following resources were created:"
    for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
        echo "  - $resource"
    done
    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
    echo "============================================"
    echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
    read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE

    if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
        cleanup_resources
        log "All resources have been cleaned up"
```

```
    else
        log "Resources left intact. You can clean them up manually later."
        echo "To clean up manually, run the following commands:"
        echo "aws batch update-job-queue --job-queue $JOB_QUEUE_NAME --state
 DISABLED"
        echo "aws batch delete-job-queue --job-queue $JOB_QUEUE_NAME"
        echo "aws batch update-compute-environment --compute-environment
 $COMPUTE_ENV_NAME --state DISABLED"
        echo "aws batch delete-compute-environment --compute-environment
 $COMPUTE_ENV_NAME"
        echo "aws iam detach-role-policy --role-name $ROLE_NAME --policy-arn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AmazonECSTaskExecutionRolePolicy"
        echo "aws iam delete-role --role-name $ROLE_NAME"
    fi
}

# Run main function
main "$@"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateComputeEnvironment
  - CreateJobQueue
  - DeleteComputeEnvironment
  - DeleteJobQueue
  - DescribeComputeEnvironments
  - DescribeJobQueues
  - DescribeJobs
  - RegisterJobDefinition
  - SubmitJob
  - UpdateComputeEnvironment
  - UpdateJobQueue

AWS Cloud Map examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with AWS Cloud Map.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Cloud Map custom attributes

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an HTTP namespace for API-based service discovery
- Create a DynamoDB table and register it as a data service with custom attributes
- Create Lambda functions for reading and writing data
- Register Lambda functions as service instances with custom attributes for action-based discovery
- Build client applications that discover services using custom attributes
- Clean up all resources including Lambda functions, DynamoDB table, and Cloud Map services

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# AWS Cloud Map Tutorial Script
# This script demonstrates how to use AWS Cloud Map for service discovery with
 custom attributes

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="cloudmap-tutorial.log"
```

```
echo "AWS Cloud Map Tutorial Script" > $LOG_FILE
echo "Started at $(date)" >> $LOG_FILE

# Array to track created resources for cleanup
CREATED_RESOURCES=()

# Function to log commands and their output
log_cmd() {
  echo "$ $1" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  eval "$1" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
}

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
  local LINE=$1
  echo "An error occurred at line $LINE" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  echo "Resources created so far:" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
    echo "- $resource" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  done
  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  cleanup
  exit 1
}

# Set up error handling
trap 'handle_error $LINENO' ERR

# Helper function to wait for Cloud Map operations to complete
wait_for_operation() {
  local OPERATION_ID=$1
  local TIMEOUT=300  # 5 minutes timeout
  local START_TIME=$(date +%s)

  while true; do
    local STATUS=$(aws servicediscovery get-operation --operation-id $OPERATION_ID
 --query 'Operation.Status' --output text)

    if [ "$STATUS" == "SUCCESS" ]; then
      echo "Operation completed successfully" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      break
    elif [ "$STATUS" == "FAIL" ]; then
      echo "Operation failed" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      return 1
```

```
    fi

    local CURRENT_TIME=$(date +%s)
    if [ $((CURRENT_TIME - START_TIME)) -gt $TIMEOUT ]; then
      echo "Operation timed out" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      return 1
    fi

    sleep 5
  done

  return 0
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
  echo "Cleaning up resources..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

  # Reverse the order of created resources for proper deletion
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    echo "Deleting $resource..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

    if [[ $resource == "instance:"* ]]; then
      # Extract service ID and instance ID
      SERVICE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      INSTANCE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f3)

      # Check if instance exists before trying to deregister
      INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id $SERVICE_ID
 --query "Instances[?Id=='$INSTANCE_ID'].Id" --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "")
      if [[ -n "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
        OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery deregister-instance --service-id
 $SERVICE_ID --instance-id $INSTANCE_ID --query 'OperationId' --output text)

        # Wait for deregistration to complete
        echo "Waiting for instance deregistration to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
        wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
      else
        echo "Instance $INSTANCE_ID already deregistered" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      fi
    elif [[ $resource == "lambda:"* ]]; then
      # Extract function name
      FUNCTION_NAME=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
```

```
      aws lambda delete-function --function-name $FUNCTION_NAME
    elif [[ $resource == "role:"* ]]; then
      # Extract role name
      ROLE_NAME=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)

      # Detach all policies first
      for POLICY_ARN in $(aws iam list-attached-role-policies --role-name $ROLE_NAME
 --query 'AttachedPolicies[*].PolicyArn' --output text); do
        aws iam detach-role-policy --role-name $ROLE_NAME --policy-arn $POLICY_ARN
      done

      # Delete the role
      aws iam delete-role --role-name $ROLE_NAME
    elif [[ $resource == "dynamodb:"* ]]; then
      # Extract table name
      TABLE_NAME=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      aws dynamodb delete-table --table-name $TABLE_NAME

      # Wait for table deletion to complete
      echo "Waiting for DynamoDB table deletion to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
      aws dynamodb wait table-not-exists --table-name $TABLE_NAME
    fi
  done

  # Handle services separately to ensure all instances are deregistered first
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    if [[ $resource == "service:"* ]]; then
      # Extract service ID
      SERVICE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      echo "Deleting service $SERVICE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

      # Make sure all instances are deregistered
      INSTANCES=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id $SERVICE_ID --
query 'Instances[*].Id' --output text)
      if [[ -n "$INSTANCES" ]]; then
        echo "Service still has instances. Waiting before deletion..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
        sleep 10
      fi

      # Try to delete the service
      aws servicediscovery delete-service --id $SERVICE_ID
      sleep 5
```

```
    fi
  done

  # Handle namespaces last to ensure all services are deleted first
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--)); do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    if [[ $resource == "namespace:"* ]]; then
      # Extract namespace ID
      NAMESPACE_ID=$(echo $resource | cut -d':' -f2)
      echo "Deleting namespace $NAMESPACE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

      # Check if namespace still has services
      SERVICES=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query 'Services[*].Id' --
output text)
      if [[ -n "$SERVICES" ]]; then
        echo "Namespace still has services. Deleting them first..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
        for SERVICE_ID in $SERVICES; do
          echo "Deleting service $SERVICE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
          aws servicediscovery delete-service --id $SERVICE_ID
        done
        sleep 5
      fi

      # Try to delete the namespace
      OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery delete-namespace --id $NAMESPACE_ID --
query 'OperationId' --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "")
      if [[ -n "$OPERATION_ID" ]]; then
        echo "Waiting for namespace deletion to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
        wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
      else
        echo "Failed to delete namespace or namespace already deleted" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
      fi
    fi
  done

  echo "Cleanup complete" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
}

# Step 1: Create an AWS Cloud Map namespace
echo "Step 1: Creating AWS Cloud Map namespace..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

```
# Check if namespace already exists
NAMESPACE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-namespaces --query "Namespaces[?
Name=='cloudmap-tutorial'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$NAMESPACE_ID" || "$NAMESPACE_ID" == "None" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery create-http-namespace --name cloudmap-tutorial --
creator-request-id namespace-request"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery create-http-namespace --name cloudmap-tutorial
 --creator-request-id namespace-request --query 'OperationId' --output text)

  # Wait for namespace creation to complete
  echo "Waiting for namespace creation to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID

  # Get the namespace ID
  NAMESPACE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-namespaces --query "Namespaces[?
Name=='cloudmap-tutorial'].Id" --output text)
  echo "Namespace created with ID: $NAMESPACE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
else
  echo "Namespace cloudmap-tutorial already exists with ID: $NAMESPACE_ID" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("namespace:$NAMESPACE_ID")

# Step 2: Create a DynamoDB table
echo "Step 2: Creating DynamoDB table..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Check if table already exists
TABLE_EXISTS=$(aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name cloudmap 2>&1 || echo
 "NOT_EXISTS")

if [[ $TABLE_EXISTS == *"ResourceNotFoundException"* || $TABLE_EXISTS ==
 "NOT_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws dynamodb create-table --table-name cloudmap --attribute-definitions
 AttributeName=id,AttributeType=S --key-schema AttributeName=id,KeyType=HASH --
billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST"

  # Wait for DynamoDB table to become active
  echo "Waiting for DynamoDB table to become active..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name cloudmap
else
  echo "DynamoDB table cloudmap already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi
```

```
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("dynamodb:cloudmap")

# Step 3: Create an AWS Cloud Map data service
echo "Step 3: Creating AWS Cloud Map data service..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Get all services in the namespace
echo "Listing all services in namespace $NAMESPACE_ID..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
SERVICES=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=
$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query 'Services[*].[Id,Name]' --output text)
echo "Services found: $SERVICES" | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Check if data service already exists
DATA_SERVICE_ID=""
while read -r id name || [[ -n "$id" ]]; do
  echo "Checking service: ID=$id, Name=$name" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  if [[ "$name" == "data-service" ]]; then
    DATA_SERVICE_ID="$id"
    break
  fi
done <<< "$SERVICES"

if [[ -z "$DATA_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
  echo "Data service does not exist, creating it..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  # Create the service and capture the ID directly
  echo "$ aws servicediscovery create-service --name data-service --namespace-id
 $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id data-service-request" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  CREATE_OUTPUT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service --name data-service --
namespace-id $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id data-service-request)
  echo "$CREATE_OUTPUT" | tee -a $LOG_FILE

  # Extract the service ID using AWS CLI query
  DATA_SERVICE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query "Services[?
Name=='data-service'].Id" --output text)
  echo "Data service created with ID: $DATA_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
else
  echo "Data service already exists with ID: $DATA_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("service:$DATA_SERVICE_ID")

# Register DynamoDB table as a service instance
echo "Registering DynamoDB table as a service instance..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

```
# Check if instance already exists
INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id $DATA_SERVICE_ID
 --query "Instances[?Id=='data-instance'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $DATA_SERVICE_ID --
instance-id data-instance --attributes tablename=cloudmap,region=$(aws configure get
 region)"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-
id $DATA_SERVICE_ID --instance-id data-instance --attributes
 tablename=cloudmap,region=$(aws configure get region) --query 'OperationId' --
output text)

  # Wait for instance registration to complete
  echo "Waiting for instance registration to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
else
  echo "Instance data-instance already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("instance:$DATA_SERVICE_ID:data-instance")

# Step 4: Create an IAM role for Lambda
echo "Step 4: Creating IAM role for Lambda..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Create a trust policy for Lambda
cat > lambda-trust-policy.json << EOF
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Check if role already exists
echo "Checking if IAM role already exists..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

```
ROLE_EXISTS=$(aws iam get-role --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role 2>&1 || echo
 "NOT_EXISTS")

if [[ $ROLE_EXISTS == *"NoSuchEntity"* || $ROLE_EXISTS == "NOT_EXISTS" ]]; then
    log_cmd "aws iam create-role --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --assume-role-
policy-document file://lambda-trust-policy.json"
else
    echo "Role cloudmap-tutorial-role already exists, using existing role" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
fi

# FIXED: Create a custom policy with least privilege instead of using
 PowerUserAccess
cat > cloudmap-policy.json << EOF
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "logs:CreateLogGroup",
        "logs:CreateLogStream",
        "logs:PutLogEvents"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:*:*:*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/cloudmap"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "servicediscovery:DiscoverInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": "*"
    }
  ]
}
```

```
EOF

# Check if policy already exists
POLICY_ARN=$(aws iam list-policies --query "Policies[?
PolicyName=='CloudMapTutorialPolicy'].Arn" --output text)

if [[ -z "$POLICY_ARN" ]]; then
  echo "Creating CloudMapTutorialPolicy..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  echo "$ aws iam create-policy --policy-name CloudMapTutorialPolicy --policy-
document file://cloudmap-policy.json" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  CREATE_OUTPUT=$(aws iam create-policy --policy-name CloudMapTutorialPolicy --
policy-document file://cloudmap-policy.json)
  echo "$CREATE_OUTPUT" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  POLICY_ARN=$(aws iam list-policies --query "Policies[?
PolicyName=='CloudMapTutorialPolicy'].Arn" --output text)
else
  echo "Policy CloudMapTutorialPolicy already exists with ARN: $POLICY_ARN" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
fi

echo "$ aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-arn
 $POLICY_ARN" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-arn
 $POLICY_ARN | tee -a $LOG_FILE

echo "$ aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-
arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole" | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE
aws iam attach-role-policy --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --policy-arn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Wait for role to propagate
echo "Waiting for IAM role to propagate..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
sleep 10

ROLE_ARN=$(aws iam get-role --role-name cloudmap-tutorial-role --query 'Role.Arn' --
output text)
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("role:cloudmap-tutorial-role")

# Step 5: Create an AWS Cloud Map app service
echo "Step 5: Creating AWS Cloud Map app service..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Get all services in the namespace
```

```
SERVICES=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=
$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query 'Services[*].[Id,Name]' --output text)

# Check if app service already exists
APP_SERVICE_ID=""
while read -r id name || [[ -n "$id" ]]; do
  if [[ "$name" == "app-service" ]]; then
    APP_SERVICE_ID="$id"
    break
  fi
done <<< "$SERVICES"

if [[ -z "$APP_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
  echo "App service does not exist, creating it..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  # Create the service and capture the ID directly
  echo "$ aws servicediscovery create-service --name app-service --namespace-id
 $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id app-service-request" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  CREATE_OUTPUT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service --name app-service --
namespace-id $NAMESPACE_ID --creator-request-id app-service-request)
  echo "$CREATE_OUTPUT" | tee -a $LOG_FILE

  # Extract the service ID using AWS CLI query
  APP_SERVICE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-services --filters
 "Name=NAMESPACE_ID,Values=$NAMESPACE_ID,Condition=EQ" --query "Services[?
Name=='app-service'].Id" --output text)
  echo "App service created with ID: $APP_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
else
  echo "App service already exists with ID: $APP_SERVICE_ID" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("service:$APP_SERVICE_ID")

# Step 6: Create a Lambda function to write data
echo "Step 6: Creating Lambda function to write data..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Create Lambda function code
cat > writefunction.py << EOF
import boto3
import json
import random

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Use AWS Cloud Map to discover the DynamoDB table
    serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')
```

```
    # Discover the data service instance
    response = serviceclient.discover_instances(
        NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
        ServiceName='data-service'
    )

    # Extract table name and region from the instance attributes
    tablename = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['tablename']
    region = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['region']

    # Create DynamoDB client in the specified region
    dynamodb = boto3.resource('dynamodb', region_name=region)
    table = dynamodb.Table(tablename)

    # Write data to the table
    table.put_item(
        Item={
            'id': str(random.randint(1,100)),
            'todo': event
        }
    )

    return {
        'statusCode': 200,
        'body': json.dumps('Data written successfully!')
    }
EOF

# Zip the function code
log_cmd "zip writefunction.zip writefunction.py"

# Create the Lambda function
FUNCTION_EXISTS=$(aws lambda list-functions --query "Functions[?
FunctionName=='writefunction'].FunctionName" --output text)
if [[ -z "$FUNCTION_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws lambda create-function --function-name writefunction --runtime
 python3.12 --role $ROLE_ARN --handler writefunction.lambda_handler --zip-file
 fileb://writefunction.zip --architectures x86_64"

  # Wait for the Lambda function to be active before updating
  echo "Waiting for Lambda function to become active..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  function_state="Pending"
  while [ "$function_state" == "Pending" ]; do
```

```
      sleep 5
      function_state=$(aws lambda get-function --function-name writefunction --query
 'Configuration.State' --output text)
      echo "Current function state: $function_state" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  done

  # Update the function timeout
  log_cmd "aws lambda update-function-configuration --function-name writefunction --
timeout 5"
else
  echo "Lambda function writefunction already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("lambda:writefunction")

# Step 7: Register the Lambda write function as an AWS Cloud Map service instance
echo "Step 7: Registering Lambda write function as a service instance..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE

# Check if instance already exists
INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID
 --query "Instances[?Id=='write-instance'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID --
instance-id write-instance --attributes action=write,functionname=writefunction"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID
 --instance-id write-instance --attributes action=write,functionname=writefunction
 --query 'OperationId' --output text)

  # Wait for instance registration to complete
  echo "Waiting for write instance registration to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
else
  echo "Instance write-instance already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("instance:$APP_SERVICE_ID:write-instance")

# Step 8: Create a Lambda function to read data
echo "Step 8: Creating Lambda function to read data..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

# Create Lambda function code
cat > readfunction.py << EOF
import boto3
```

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Use AWS Cloud Map to discover the DynamoDB table
    serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

    # Discover the data service instance
    response = serviceclient.discover_instances(
        NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
        ServiceName='data-service'
    )

    # Extract table name and region from the instance attributes
    tablename = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['tablename']
    region = response['Instances'][0]['Attributes']['region']

    # Create DynamoDB client in the specified region
    dynamodb = boto3.resource('dynamodb', region_name=region)
    table = dynamodb.Table(tablename)

    # Read data from the table
    response = table.scan()

    return {
        'statusCode': 200,
        'body': json.dumps(response['Items'])
    }
EOF

# Zip the function code
log_cmd "zip readfunction.zip readfunction.py"

# Create the Lambda function
FUNCTION_EXISTS=$(aws lambda list-functions --query "Functions[?
FunctionName=='readfunction'].FunctionName" --output text)
if [[ -z "$FUNCTION_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws lambda create-function --function-name readfunction --runtime
 python3.12 --role $ROLE_ARN --handler readfunction.lambda_handler --zip-file
 fileb://readfunction.zip --architectures x86_64"

  # Wait for the Lambda function to be active before updating
  echo "Waiting for Lambda function to become active..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  function_state="Pending"
  while [ "$function_state" == "Pending" ]; do
```

```
      sleep 5
      function_state=$(aws lambda get-function --function-name readfunction --query
 'Configuration.State' --output text)
      echo "Current function state: $function_state" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  done

  # Update the function timeout
  log_cmd "aws lambda update-function-configuration --function-name readfunction --
timeout 5"
else
  echo "Lambda function readfunction already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("lambda:readfunction")

# Step 9: Register the Lambda read function as an AWS Cloud Map service instance
echo "Step 9: Registering Lambda read function as a service instance..." | tee -a
 $LOG_FILE

# Check if instance already exists
INSTANCE_EXISTS=$(aws servicediscovery list-instances --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID
 --query "Instances[?Id=='read-instance'].Id" --output text)

if [[ -z "$INSTANCE_EXISTS" ]]; then
  log_cmd "aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID --
instance-id read-instance --attributes action=read,functionname=readfunction"
  OPERATION_ID=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance --service-id $APP_SERVICE_ID
 --instance-id read-instance --attributes action=read,functionname=readfunction --
query 'OperationId' --output text)

  # Wait for read instance registration to complete
  echo "Waiting for read instance registration to complete..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
  wait_for_operation $OPERATION_ID
else
  echo "Instance read-instance already exists" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("instance:$APP_SERVICE_ID:read-instance")

# Step 10: Create Python clients to interact with the services
echo "Step 10: Creating Python clients..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE

cat > writeclient.py << EOF
import boto3
```

```
serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

response = serviceclient.discover_instances(NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
 ServiceName='app-service', QueryParameters={ 'action': 'write' })

functionname = response["Instances"][0]["Attributes"]["functionname"]

lambdaclient = boto3.client('lambda')

resp = lambdaclient.invoke(FunctionName=functionname, Payload='"This is a test
 data"')

print(resp["Payload"].read())
EOF

cat > readclient.py << EOF
import boto3

serviceclient = boto3.client('servicediscovery')

response = serviceclient.discover_instances(NamespaceName='cloudmap-tutorial',
 ServiceName='app-service', QueryParameters={ 'action': 'read' })

functionname = response["Instances"][0]["Attributes"]["functionname"]

lambdaclient = boto3.client('lambda')

resp = lambdaclient.invoke(FunctionName=functionname,
 InvocationType='RequestResponse')

print(resp["Payload"].read())
EOF

echo "Running write client..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
log_cmd "python3 writeclient.py"

echo "Running read client..." | tee -a $LOG_FILE
log_cmd "python3 readclient.py"

# Step 11: Clean up resources
echo "Resources created:" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
  echo "- $resource" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
done
```

```
echo "" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "==========================================" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "==========================================" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): " | tee -a $LOG_FILE
read -r CLEANUP_CONFIRM
if [[ $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "y" || $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "Y" ]]; then
  cleanup
else
  echo "Resources were not cleaned up. You can manually clean them up later." | tee
 -a $LOG_FILE
fi

echo "Script completed at $(date)" | tee -a $LOG_FILE
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateHttpNamespace
  - CreateService
  - DeleteNamespace
  - DeleteService
  - DeregisterInstance
  - GetOperation
  - ListNamespaces
  - ListServices
  - RegisterInstance

Cloud Map service discovery

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a public DNS namespace with Route 53 hosted zone integration
- Create services discoverable via DNS queries and API calls
- Register service instances with different discovery configurations
- Discover services using both DNS queries and Cloud Map API
- Verify service discovery using dig command and API calls

- Clean up resources in proper order (instances, services, namespace)

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# AWS Cloud Map Private Namespace Tutorial Script
# This script demonstrates how to use AWS Cloud Map for service discovery
# with DNS queries and API calls

# Exit on error
set -e

# Configuration
REGION="us-east-2"
NAMESPACE_NAME="cloudmap-tutorial.com"
LOG_FILE="cloudmap-tutorial.log"
CREATOR_REQUEST_ID=$(date +%s)

# Function to log messages
log() {
    local message="$1"
    echo "$(date '+%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S') - $message" | tee -a "$LOG_FILE"
}

# Function to check operation status
check_operation() {
    local operation_id="$1"
    local status=""

    log "Checking operation status for $operation_id..."

    while [[ "$status" != "SUCCESS" ]]; do
        sleep 5
        status=$(aws servicediscovery get-operation \
            --operation-id "$operation_id" \
```

```
            --region "$REGION" \
            --query "Operation.Status" \
            --output text)

        log "Operation status: $status"

        if [[ "$status" == "FAIL" ]]; then
            log "Operation failed. Exiting."
            exit 1
        fi
    done

    log "Operation completed successfully."
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
    log "Starting cleanup process..."

    if [[ -n "$FIRST_INSTANCE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deregistering first service instance..."
        aws servicediscovery deregister-instance \
            --service-id "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" \
            --instance-id "$FIRST_INSTANCE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to deregister first instance"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$SECOND_INSTANCE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deregistering second service instance..."
        aws servicediscovery deregister-instance \
            --service-id "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" \
            --instance-id "$SECOND_INSTANCE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to deregister second instance"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deleting public service..."
        aws servicediscovery delete-service \
            --id "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to delete public service"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deleting backend service..."
```

```
        aws servicediscovery delete-service \
            --id "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to delete backend service"
    fi

    if [[ -n "$NAMESPACE_ID" ]]; then
        log "Deleting namespace..."
        aws servicediscovery delete-namespace \
            --id "$NAMESPACE_ID" \
            --region "$REGION" || log "Failed to delete namespace"
    fi

    log "Cleanup completed."
}

# Set up trap for cleanup on script exit
trap cleanup EXIT INT TERM

# Initialize log file
> "$LOG_FILE"
log "Starting AWS Cloud Map tutorial script"

# Step 1: Create an AWS Cloud Map namespace
log "Creating AWS Cloud Map namespace: $NAMESPACE_NAME"
OPERATION_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery create-public-dns-namespace \
    --name "$NAMESPACE_NAME" \
    --creator-request-id "cloudmap-tutorial-$CREATOR_REQUEST_ID" \
    --region "$REGION")

OPERATION_ID=$(echo "$OPERATION_RESULT" | jq -r '.OperationId')
log "Namespace creation initiated. Operation ID: $OPERATION_ID"

# Check operation status
check_operation "$OPERATION_ID"

# Get the namespace ID
log "Getting namespace ID..."
NAMESPACE_ID=$(aws servicediscovery list-namespaces \
    --region "$REGION" \
    --query "Namespaces[?Name=='$NAMESPACE_NAME'].Id" \
    --output text)

log "Namespace ID: $NAMESPACE_ID"
```

```
# Get the hosted zone ID
log "Getting Route 53 hosted zone ID..."
HOSTED_ZONE_ID=$(aws route53 list-hosted-zones-by-name \
    --dns-name "$NAMESPACE_NAME" \
    --query "HostedZones[0].Id" \
    --output text | sed 's|/hostedzone/||')

log "Hosted Zone ID: $HOSTED_ZONE_ID"

# Step 2: Create the AWS Cloud Map services
log "Creating public service..."
PUBLIC_SERVICE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service \
    --name "public-service" \
    --namespace-id "$NAMESPACE_ID" \
    --dns-config "RoutingPolicy=MULTIVALUE,DnsRecords=[{Type=A,TTL=300}]" \
    --region "$REGION")

PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_RESULT" | jq -r '.Service.Id')
log "Public service created. Service ID: $PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID"

log "Creating backend service..."
BACKEND_SERVICE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery create-service \
    --name "backend-service" \
    --namespace-id "$NAMESPACE_ID" \
    --type "HTTP" \
    --region "$REGION")

BACKEND_SERVICE_ID=$(echo "$BACKEND_SERVICE_RESULT" | jq -r '.Service.Id')
log "Backend service created. Service ID: $BACKEND_SERVICE_ID"

# Step 3: Register the AWS Cloud Map service instances
log "Registering first service instance..."
FIRST_INSTANCE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance \
    --service-id "$PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID" \
    --instance-id "first" \
    --attributes "AWS_INSTANCE_IPV4=192.168.2.1" \
    --region "$REGION")

FIRST_INSTANCE_ID="first"
FIRST_OPERATION_ID=$(echo "$FIRST_INSTANCE_RESULT" | jq -r '.OperationId')
log "First instance registration initiated. Operation ID: $FIRST_OPERATION_ID"

# Check operation status
check_operation "$FIRST_OPERATION_ID"
```

```
log "Registering second service instance..."
SECOND_INSTANCE_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery register-instance \
    --service-id "$BACKEND_SERVICE_ID" \
    --instance-id "second" \
    --attributes "service-name=backend" \
    --region "$REGION")

SECOND_INSTANCE_ID="second"
SECOND_OPERATION_ID=$(echo "$SECOND_INSTANCE_RESULT" | jq -r '.OperationId')
log "Second instance registration initiated. Operation ID: $SECOND_OPERATION_ID"

# Check operation status
check_operation "$SECOND_OPERATION_ID"

# Step 4: Discover the AWS Cloud Map service instances
log "Getting Route 53 name servers..."
NAME_SERVERS=$(aws route53 get-hosted-zone \
    --id "$HOSTED_ZONE_ID" \
    --query "DelegationSet.NameServers[0]" \
    --output text)

log "Name server: $NAME_SERVERS"

log "Using dig to query DNS records (this will be simulated)..."
log "Command: dig @$NAME_SERVERS public-service.$NAMESPACE_NAME"
log "Expected output would show: public-service.$NAMESPACE_NAME. 300 IN A
 192.168.2.1"

log "Using AWS CLI to discover backend service instances..."
DISCOVER_RESULT=$(aws servicediscovery discover-instances \
    --namespace-name "$NAMESPACE_NAME" \
    --service-name "backend-service" \
    --region "$REGION")

log "Discovery result: $(echo "$DISCOVER_RESULT" | jq -c '.')"

# Display created resources
log "Resources created:"
log "- Namespace: $NAMESPACE_NAME (ID: $NAMESPACE_ID)"
log "- Public Service: public-service (ID: $PUBLIC_SERVICE_ID)"
log "- Backend Service: backend-service (ID: $BACKEND_SERVICE_ID)"
log "- Service Instance: first (Service: public-service)"
log "- Service Instance: second (Service: backend-service)"
```

```
# Ask user if they want to clean up resources
read -p "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): " CLEANUP_RESPONSE

if [[ "$CLEANUP_RESPONSE" == "y" || "$CLEANUP_RESPONSE" == "Y" ]]; then
    log "User confirmed cleanup. Proceeding with resource deletion."
    # Cleanup function will be called automatically on exit
else
    log "User chose not to clean up resources. Exiting without cleanup."
    trap - EXIT
    exit 0
fi
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreatePublicDnsNamespace
  - CreateService
  - DeleteNamespace
  - DeleteService
  - DeregisterInstance
  - DiscoverInstances
  - GetOperation
  - ListNamespaces
  - RegisterInstance

CloudFront examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with CloudFront.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Get started with CloudFront

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon S3 bucket for content storage
- Upload sample content to the S3 bucket
- Create an origin access control (OAC) for secure S3 access
- Create a CloudFront distribution with S3 as origin
- Update S3 bucket policy to allow CloudFront access
- Wait for distribution deployment and test content access
- Clean up resources including distribution, OAC, and S3 bucket

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# CloudFront Getting Started Tutorial Script
# This script creates an S3 bucket, uploads sample content, creates a CloudFront
 distribution with OAC,
# and demonstrates how to access content through CloudFront.

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="cloudfront-tutorial.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

echo "Starting CloudFront Getting Started Tutorial at $(date)"

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
    echo "ERROR: $1"
    echo "Resources created before error:"
```

```
    if [ -n "$BUCKET_NAME" ]; then
        echo "- S3 Bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
    fi
    if [ -n "$OAC_ID" ]; then
        echo "- CloudFront Origin Access Control: $OAC_ID"
    fi
    if [ -n "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" ]; then
        echo "- CloudFront Distribution: $DISTRIBUTION_ID"
    fi

    echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
    cleanup
    exit 1
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
    echo "Cleaning up resources..."

    if [ -n "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" ]; then
        echo "Disabling CloudFront distribution $DISTRIBUTION_ID..."

        # Get the current configuration and ETag
        ETAG=$(aws cloudfront get-distribution-config --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" --
query 'ETag' --output text)
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to get distribution config. Continuing with cleanup..."
        else
            # Create a modified configuration with Enabled=false
            aws cloudfront get-distribution-config --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" | \
            jq '.DistributionConfig.Enabled = false' > temp_disabled_config.json

            # Update the distribution to disable it
            aws cloudfront update-distribution \
                --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" \
                --distribution-config file://<(jq '.DistributionConfig'
 temp_disabled_config.json) \
                --if-match "$ETAG"

            if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
                echo "Failed to disable distribution. Continuing with cleanup..."
            else
                echo "Waiting for distribution to be disabled (this may take several
 minutes)..."
```

```
                aws cloudfront wait distribution-deployed --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID"

                # Delete the distribution
                ETAG=$(aws cloudfront get-distribution-config --id
 "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" --query 'ETag' --output text)
                aws cloudfront delete-distribution --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID" --if-
match "$ETAG"
                if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
                    echo "Failed to delete distribution. You may need to delete it
 manually."
                else
                    echo "CloudFront distribution deleted."
                fi
            fi
        fi
    fi

    if [ -n "$OAC_ID" ]; then
        echo "Deleting Origin Access Control $OAC_ID..."
        OAC_ETAG=$(aws cloudfront get-origin-access-control --id "$OAC_ID" --query
 'ETag' --output text 2>/dev/null)
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to get Origin Access Control ETag. You may need to delete
 it manually."
        else
            aws cloudfront delete-origin-access-control --id "$OAC_ID" --if-match
 "$OAC_ETAG"
            if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
                echo "Failed to delete Origin Access Control. You may need to delete
 it manually."
            else
                echo "Origin Access Control deleted."
            fi
        fi
    fi

    if [ -n "$BUCKET_NAME" ]; then
        echo "Deleting S3 bucket $BUCKET_NAME and its contents..."
        aws s3 rm "s3://$BUCKET_NAME" --recursive
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to remove bucket contents. Continuing with bucket
 deletion..."
        fi
```

```
        aws s3 rb "s3://$BUCKET_NAME"
        if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
            echo "Failed to delete bucket. You may need to delete it manually."
        else
            echo "S3 bucket deleted."
        fi
    fi

    # Clean up temporary files
    rm -f temp_disabled_config.json
    rm -rf temp_content
}

# Generate a random identifier for the bucket name
RANDOM_ID=$(openssl rand -hex 6)
BUCKET_NAME="cloudfront-${RANDOM_ID}"
echo "Using bucket name: $BUCKET_NAME"

# Create a temporary directory for content
TEMP_DIR="temp_content"
mkdir -p "$TEMP_DIR/css"
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create temporary directory"
fi

# Step 1: Create an S3 bucket
echo "Creating S3 bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
aws s3 mb "s3://$BUCKET_NAME"
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create S3 bucket"
fi

# Step 2: Create sample content
echo "Creating sample content..."
cat > "$TEMP_DIR/index.html" << 'EOF'
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
    <title>Hello World</title>
    <link rel="stylesheet" type="text/css" href="css/styles.css">
</head>
<body>
    <h1>Hello world!</h1>
</body>
```

```
</html>
EOF

cat > "$TEMP_DIR/css/styles.css" << 'EOF'
body {
    font-family: Arial, sans-serif;
    margin: 40px;
    background-color: #f5f5f5;
}
h1 {
    color: #333;
    text-align: center;
}
EOF

# Step 3: Upload content to the S3 bucket
echo "Uploading content to S3 bucket..."
aws s3 cp "$TEMP_DIR/" "s3://$BUCKET_NAME/" --recursive
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to upload content to S3 bucket"
fi

# Step 4: Create Origin Access Control
echo "Creating Origin Access Control..."
OAC_RESPONSE=$(aws cloudfront create-origin-access-control \
    --origin-access-control-config Name="oac-for-
$BUCKET_NAME",SigningProtocol=sigv4,SigningBehavior=always,OriginAccessControlOriginType=s3)

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Origin Access Control"
fi

OAC_ID=$(echo "$OAC_RESPONSE" | jq -r '.OriginAccessControl.Id')
echo "Created Origin Access Control with ID: $OAC_ID"

# Step 5: Create CloudFront distribution
echo "Creating CloudFront distribution..."

# Get AWS account ID for bucket policy
ACCOUNT_ID=$(aws sts get-caller-identity --query 'Account' --output text)
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to get AWS account ID"
fi
```

```
# Create distribution configuration
cat > distribution-config.json << EOF
{
    "CallerReference": "cli-tutorial-$(date +%s)",
    "Origins": {
        "Quantity": 1,
        "Items": [
            {
                "Id": "S3-$BUCKET_NAME",
                "DomainName": "$BUCKET_NAME.s3.amazonaws.com",
                "S3OriginConfig": {
                    "OriginAccessIdentity": ""
                },
                "OriginAccessControlId": "$OAC_ID"
            }
        ]
    },
    "DefaultCacheBehavior": {
        "TargetOriginId": "S3-$BUCKET_NAME",
        "ViewerProtocolPolicy": "redirect-to-https",
        "AllowedMethods": {
            "Quantity": 2,
            "Items": ["GET", "HEAD"],
            "CachedMethods": {
                "Quantity": 2,
                "Items": ["GET", "HEAD"]
            }
        },
        "DefaultTTL": 86400,
        "MinTTL": 0,
        "MaxTTL": 31536000,
        "Compress": true,
        "ForwardedValues": {
            "QueryString": false,
            "Cookies": {
                "Forward": "none"
            }
        }
    },
    "Comment": "CloudFront distribution for tutorial",
    "Enabled": true,
    "WebACLId": ""
}
EOF
```

```
DIST_RESPONSE=$(aws cloudfront create-distribution --distribution-config file://
distribution-config.json)
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create CloudFront distribution"
fi

DISTRIBUTION_ID=$(echo "$DIST_RESPONSE" | jq -r '.Distribution.Id')
DOMAIN_NAME=$(echo "$DIST_RESPONSE" | jq -r '.Distribution.DomainName')

echo "Created CloudFront distribution with ID: $DISTRIBUTION_ID"
echo "CloudFront domain name: $DOMAIN_NAME"

# Step 6: Update S3 bucket policy
echo "Updating S3 bucket policy..."
cat > bucket-policy.json << EOF
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "AllowCloudFrontServicePrincipal",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "cloudfront.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "s3:GetObject",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::$BUCKET_NAME/*",
            "Condition": {
                "StringEquals": {
                    "AWS:SourceArn": "arn:aws:cloudfront::$ACCOUNT_ID:distribution/
$DISTRIBUTION_ID"
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
EOF

aws s3api put-bucket-policy --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" --policy file://bucket-
policy.json
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to update S3 bucket policy"
fi
```

```
# Step 7: Wait for distribution to deploy
echo "Waiting for CloudFront distribution to deploy (this may take 5-10 minutes)..."
aws cloudfront wait distribution-deployed --id "$DISTRIBUTION_ID"
if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    echo "Warning: Distribution deployment wait timed out. The distribution may
 still be deploying."
else
    echo "CloudFront distribution is now deployed."
fi

# Step 8: Display access information
echo ""
echo "===== CloudFront Distribution Setup Complete ======"
echo "You can access your content at: https://$DOMAIN_NAME/index.html"
echo ""
echo "Resources created:"
echo "- S3 Bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"
echo "- CloudFront Origin Access Control: $OAC_ID"
echo "- CloudFront Distribution: $DISTRIBUTION_ID"
echo ""

# Ask user if they want to clean up resources
read -p "Do you want to clean up all resources created by this script? (y/n): "
 CLEANUP_RESPONSE
if [[ "$CLEANUP_RESPONSE" =~ ^[Yy] ]]; then
    cleanup
    echo "All resources have been cleaned up."
else
    echo "Resources will not be cleaned up. You can manually delete them later."
    echo "To access your content, visit: https://$DOMAIN_NAME/index.html"
fi

echo "Tutorial completed at $(date)"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateDistribution
  - CreateOriginAccessControl
  - DeleteDistribution
  - DeleteOriginAccessControl
  - GetDistribution

- GetDistributionConfig
- GetOriginAccessControl
- UpdateDistribution
- WaitDistributionDeployed

DynamoDB examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.

- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The DynamoDB getting started scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_getting_started_movies
#
# Scenario to create an Amazon DynamoDB table and perform a series of operations on
 the table.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_getting_started_movies() {

  source ./dynamodb_operations.sh

  key_schema_json_file="dynamodb_key_schema.json"
  attribute_definitions_json_file="dynamodb_attr_def.json"
  item_json_file="movie_item.json"
  key_json_file="movie_key.json"
  batch_json_file="batch.json"
  attribute_names_json_file="attribute_names.json"
  attributes_values_json_file="attribute_values.json"

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo
  echo "Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo."
  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  local table_name
```

```
echo -n "Enter a name for a new DynamoDB table: "
get_input
table_name=$get_input_result

echo '[
{"AttributeName": "year", "KeyType": "HASH"},
 {"AttributeName": "title", "KeyType": "RANGE"}
]' >"$key_schema_json_file"

echo '[
{"AttributeName": "year", "AttributeType": "N"},
 {"AttributeName": "title", "AttributeType": "S"}
]' >"$attribute_definitions_json_file"

if dynamodb_create_table -n "$table_name" -a "$attribute_definitions_json_file" \
  -k "$key_schema_json_file" 1>/dev/null; then
  echo "Created a DynamoDB table named $table_name"
else
  errecho "The table failed to create. This demo will exit."
  clean_up
  return 1
fi

echo "Waiting for the table to become active...."

if dynamodb_wait_table_active -n "$table_name"; then
  echo "The table is now active."
else
  errecho "The table failed to become active. This demo will exit."
  cleanup "$table_name"
  return 1
fi

echo
echo_repeat "*" 88
echo

echo -n "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: "
get_input
local added_title
added_title=$get_input_result

local added_year
get_int_input "What year was it released? "
```

```
  added_year=$get_input_result

  local rating
  get_float_input "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? " "1" "10"
  rating=$get_input_result

  local plot
  echo -n "Summarize the plot for me: "
  get_input
  plot=$get_input_result

  echo '{
    "year": {"N" :"'"$added_year"'"},
    "title": {"S" :  "'"$added_title"'"},
    "info": {"M" : {"plot": {"S" : "'"$plot"'"}, "rating": {"N" :"'"$rating"'"} } }
   }' >"$item_json_file"

  if dynamodb_put_item -n "$table_name" -i "$item_json_file"; then
    echo "The movie '$added_title' was successfully added to the table
'$table_name'."
  else
    errecho "Put item failed. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$table_name"
    return 1
  fi

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "Let's update your movie '$added_title'."
  get_float_input "You rated it $rating, what new rating would you give it? " "1"
"10"
  rating=$get_input_result

  echo -n "You summarized the plot as '$plot'."
  echo "What would you say now? "
  get_input
  plot=$get_input_result

  echo '{
    "year": {"N" :"'"$added_year"'"},
    "title": {"S" :  "'"$added_title"'"}
    }' >"$key_json_file"
```

```
  echo '{
    ":r": {"N" :"'"$rating"'"},
    ":p": {"S" : "'"$plot"'"}
   }' >"$item_json_file"

  local update_expression="SET info.rating = :r, info.plot = :p"

  if dynamodb_update_item -n "$table_name" -k "$key_json_file" -e
"$update_expression" -v "$item_json_file"; then
    echo "Updated '$added_title' with new attributes."
  else
    errecho "Update item failed. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$table_name"
    return 1
  fi

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "We will now use batch write to upload 150 movie entries into the table."

  local batch_json
  for batch_json in movie_files/movies_*.json; do
    echo "{ \"$table_name\" : $(<"$batch_json") }" >"$batch_json_file"
    if dynamodb_batch_write_item -i "$batch_json_file" 1>/dev/null; then
      echo "Entries in $batch_json added to table."
    else
      errecho "Batch write failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi
  done

  local title="The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring"
  local year="2001"

  if get_yes_no_input "Let's move on...do you want to get info about '$title'? (y/n)
"; then
    echo '{
  "year": {"N" :"'"$year"'"},
  "title": {"S" :  "'"$title"'"}
  }' >"$key_json_file"
```

```
    local info
    info=$(dynamodb_get_item -n "$table_name" -k "$key_json_file")

    # shellcheck disable=SC2181
    if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
      errecho "Get item failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi

    echo "Here is what I found:"
    echo "$info"
  fi

  local ask_for_year=true
  while [[ "$ask_for_year" == true ]]; do
    echo "Let's get a list of movies released in a given year."
    get_int_input "Enter a year between 1972 and 2018: " "1972" "2018"
    year=$get_input_result
    echo '{
    "#n": "year"
    }' >"$attribute_names_json_file"

    echo '{
    ":v": {"N" :"'"$year"'"}
    }' >"$attributes_values_json_file"

    response=$(dynamodb_query -n "$table_name" -k "#n=:v" -a
"$attribute_names_json_file" -v "$attributes_values_json_file")

    # shellcheck disable=SC2181
    if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
      errecho "Query table failed. This demo will exit."
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi

    echo "Here is what I found:"
    echo "$response"

    if ! get_yes_no_input "Try another year? (y/n) "; then
      ask_for_year=false
    fi
  done
```

```
  echo "Now let's scan for movies released in a range of years. Enter a year: "
  get_int_input "Enter a year between 1972 and 2018: " "1972" "2018"
  local start=$get_input_result

  get_int_input "Enter another year: " "1972" "2018"
  local end=$get_input_result

  echo '{
    "#n": "year"
    }' >"$attribute_names_json_file"

  echo '{
    ":v1": {"N" : "'"$start"'"},
    ":v2": {"N" : "'"$end"'"}
    }' >"$attributes_values_json_file"

  response=$(dynamodb_scan -n "$table_name" -f "#n BETWEEN :v1 AND :v2" -a
"$attribute_names_json_file" -v "$attributes_values_json_file")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "Scan table failed. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$table_name"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "Here is what I found:"
  echo "$response"

  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo "Let's remove your movie '$added_title' from the table."

  if get_yes_no_input "Do you want to remove '$added_title'? (y/n) "; then
    echo '{
  "year": {"N" :"'"$added_year"'"},
  "title": {"S" :  "'"$added_title"'"}
  }' >"$key_json_file"

    if ! dynamodb_delete_item -n "$table_name" -k "$key_json_file"; then
      errecho "Delete item failed. This demo will exit."
```

```
      clean_up "$table_name"
      return 1
    fi
  fi

  if get_yes_no_input "Do you want to delete the table '$table_name'? (y/n) "; then
    if ! clean_up "$table_name"; then
      return 1
    fi
  else
    if ! clean_up; then
      return 1
    fi
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The DynamoDB functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_create_table
#
# This function creates an Amazon DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create.
#       -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their
 types.
#       -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key types.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_create_table() {
  local table_name attribute_definitions key_schema response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
```

```
 function usage() {
   echo "function dynamodb_create_table"
   echo "Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table with on-demand billing."
   echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create."
   echo " -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and
their types."
   echo " -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key
types."
   echo ""
 }

 # Retrieve the calling parameters.
 while getopts "n:a:k:h" option; do
   case "${option}" in
     n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
     a) attribute_definitions="${OPTARG}" ;;
     k) key_schema="${OPTARG}" ;;
     h)
       usage
       return 0
       ;;
     \?)
       echo "Invalid parameter"
       usage
       return 1
       ;;
   esac
 done
 export OPTIND=1

 if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
   errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
   usage
   return 1
 fi

 if [[ -z "$attribute_definitions" ]]; then
   errecho "ERROR: You must provide an attribute definitions json file path the -a
parameter."
   usage
   return 1
 fi

 if [[ -z "$key_schema" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key schema json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    attribute_definitions:   $attribute_definitions"
  iecho "    key_schema:   $key_schema"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --attribute-definitions file://"$attribute_definitions" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --key-schema file://"$key_schema" )

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_describe_table
#
# This function returns the status of a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#
#  Response:
#       - TableStatus:
#     And:
#       0 - Table is active.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_describe_table {
  local table_name
```

```
local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

######################################
# Function usage explanation
######################################
function usage() {
  echo "function dynamodb_describe_table"
  echo "Describe the status of a DynamoDB table."
  echo "  -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

local table_status
  table_status=$(
    aws dynamodb describe-table \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --output text \
      --query 'Table.TableStatus'
  )

 local error_code=${?}
```

```
    if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log "$error_code"
      errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-table operation failed.$table_status"
      return 1
    fi

  echo "$table_status"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_put_item
#
# This function puts an item into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_put_item() {
  local table_name item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_put_item"
    echo "Put an item into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
iecho "    item:   $item"
iecho ""
iecho ""

response=$(aws dynamodb put-item \
  --table-name "$table_name" \
  --item file://"$item")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-item operation failed.$response"
  return 1
fi

return 0
```

```
}

##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_update_item
#
# This function updates an item in a DynamoDB table.
#
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item to
 update.
#       -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more attributes
 to be updated.
#       -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_update_item() {
  local table_name keys update_expression values response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_update_item"
    echo "Update an item in a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to update."
    echo " -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more
 attributes to be updated."
    echo " -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:e:v:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
    e) update_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
    v) values="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi
if [[ -z "$update_expression" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide an update expression with the -e parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$values" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a values json file path the -v parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
iecho "    keys:   $keys"
iecho "    update_expression:   $update_expression"
iecho "    values:   $values"
```

```
  response=$(aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys" \
    --update-expression "$update_expression" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://"$values")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports update-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_batch_write_item
#
# This function writes a batch of items into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_batch_write_item() {
  local item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_batch_write_item"
    echo "Write a batch of items into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
```

```
    case "${option}" in
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    item:   $item"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb batch-write-item \
    --request-items file://"$item")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-write-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_get_item
#
# This function gets an item from a DynamoDB table.
```

```
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item to
 get.
#       [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The item as text output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_get_item() {
  local table_name keys query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_get_item"
    echo "Get an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to get."
    echo " [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression."
    echo ""
  }
  query=""
  while getopts "n:k:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb get-item \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key file://"$keys" \
      --output text \
      --query "$query")
  else
    response=$(
      aws dynamodb get-item \
        --table-name "$table_name" \
        --key file://"$keys" \
        --output text
    )
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports get-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    echo "$response" | sed "/^\t/s/\t//1" # Remove initial tab that the JMSEPath
query inserts on some strings.
  else
    echo "$response"
```

```
  fi

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_query
#
# This function queries a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression.
#       -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute names.
#       -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_query() {
  local table_name key_condition_expression attribute_names attribute_values
 projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_query"
    echo "Query a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression."
    echo " -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute names."
    echo " -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute
 values."
    echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:a:v:p:h" option; do
```

```
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_condition_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_condition_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key condition expression with the -k
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute names with the -a parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute values with the -v parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports query operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_scan
#
# This function scans a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression.
#       -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the expression
 attribute names.
#       -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
```

```
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_scan() {
  local table_name filter_expression expression_attribute_names
 expression_attribute_values projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_scan"
    echo "Scan a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression."
    echo " -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute names."
    echo " -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute values."
    echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:f:a:v:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) filter_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) expression_attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) expression_attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$filter_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a filter expression with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute names with the -a
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute values with the -v
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports scan operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_item
#
# This function deletes an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item to
 delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_item() {
  local table_name keys response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_item"
    echo "Delete an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to delete."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "n:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
```

```
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
iecho "    keys:   $keys"
iecho ""

response=$(aws dynamodb delete-item \
  --table-name "$table_name" \
  --key file://"$keys")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-item operation failed.$response"
  return 1
fi

return 0
```

```
}

##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_table
#
# This function deletes a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_table() {
  local table_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_table"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb delete-table \
    --table-name "$table_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
```

```
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

- BatchWriteItem
- CreateTable
- DeleteItem
- DeleteTable
- DescribeTable
- GetItem
- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_batch_get_item
#
# This function gets a batch of items from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the keys of the items to get.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
```

```
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_batch_get_item() {
  local item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_batch_get_item"
    echo "Get a batch of items from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the keys of the items to get."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws dynamodb batch-get-item \
    --request-items file://"$item")
  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-get-item operation failed.$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_batch_write_item
#
# This function writes a batch of items into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
################################################################################
function dynamodb_batch_write_item() {
```

```
local item response
local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

######################################
# Function usage explanation
######################################
function usage() {
  echo "function dynamodb_batch_write_item"
  echo "Write a batch of items into a DynamoDB table."
  echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the items to write."
  echo ""
}
while getopts "i:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
iecho "    item:   $item"
iecho ""

response=$(aws dynamodb batch-write-item \
  --request-items file://"$item")

local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-write-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
```

```
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_create_table
#
# This function creates an Amazon DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create.
#       -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their
 types.
#       -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key types.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_create_table() {
  local table_name attribute_definitions key_schema response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_create_table"
    echo "Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table with on-demand billing."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to create."
    echo " -a attribute_definitions -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and
 their types."
    echo " -k key_schema -- JSON file path of a list of attributes and their key
 types."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:a:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) attribute_definitions="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_schema="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
```

```
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_definitions" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an attribute definitions json file path the -a
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_schema" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key schema json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    attribute_definitions:   $attribute_definitions"
  iecho "    key_schema:   $key_schema"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --attribute-definitions file://"$attribute_definitions" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --key-schema file://"$key_schema" )

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
```

```
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_item
```

```
#
# This function deletes an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item to
 delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###########################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_item() {
  local table_name keys response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_item"
    echo "Delete an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to delete."
    echo ""
  }
  while getopts "n:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    keys:   $keys"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb delete-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
```

```
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_delete_table
#
# This function deletes a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_delete_table() {
  local table_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_delete_table"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon DynamoDB table."
```

```
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb delete-table \
    --table-name "$table_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-table operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
```

```
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_describe_table
#
# This function returns the status of a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#
```

```
#  Response:
#       - TableStatus:
#     And:
#       0 - Table is active.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_describe_table {
  local table_name
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_describe_table"
    echo "Describe the status of a DynamoDB table."
    echo "  -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local table_status
```

```
    table_status=$(
      aws dynamodb describe-table \
        --table-name "$table_name" \
        --output text \
        --query 'Table.TableStatus'
    )

   local error_code=${?}

    if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log "$error_code"
      errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-table operation failed.$table_status"
      return 1
    fi

  echo "$table_status"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
```

```
# function dynamodb_get_item
#
# This function gets an item from a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item to
 get.
#       [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The item as text output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_get_item() {
  local table_name keys query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_get_item"
    echo "Get an item from a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to get."
    echo " [-q query]  -- Optional JMESPath query expression."
    echo ""
  }
  query=""
  while getopts "n:k:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
```

```
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
  response=$(aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys" \
    --output text \
    --query "$query")
else
  response=$(
    aws dynamodb get-item \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key file://"$keys" \
      --output text
  )
fi

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports get-item operation failed.$response"
  return 1
fi

if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
```

```
    echo "$response" | sed "/^\t/s/\t//1" # Remove initial tab that the JMSEPath
 query inserts on some strings.
  else
    echo "$response"
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_list_tables
#
# This function lists all the tables in a DynamoDB.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##########################################################################
function dynamodb_list_tables() {
  response=$(aws dynamodb list-tables \
    --output text \
```

```
    --query "TableNames")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports batch-write-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response" | tr -s "[:space:]" "\n"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
```

```
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_put_item
#
# This function puts an item into a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
```

```
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_put_item() {
  local table_name item response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ########################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ########################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_put_item"
    echo "Put an item into a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -i item  -- Path to json file containing the item values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) item="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$item" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an item with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    item:   $item"
  iecho ""
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --item file://"$item")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
################################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_query
#
# This function queries a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression.
#       -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute names.
#       -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##########################################################################
function dynamodb_query() {
  local table_name key_condition_expression attribute_names attribute_values
 projection_expression response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
```

```
# Function usage explanation
#####################################
function usage() {
  echo "function dynamodb_query"
  echo "Query a DynamoDB table."
  echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
  echo " -k key_condition_expression -- The key condition expression."
  echo " -a attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute names."
  echo " -v attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the attribute
values."
  echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
  echo ""
}

while getopts "n:k:a:v:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    k) key_condition_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
    a) attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
    v) attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$key_condition_expression" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key condition expression with the -k
parameter."
  usage
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute names with the -a parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a attribute values with the -v parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb query \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --key-condition-expression "$key_condition_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports query operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function dynamodb_scan
#
# This function scans a DynamoDB table.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression.
#       -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the expression
 attribute names.
#       -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
 expression attribute values.
#       [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression.
#
#  Returns:
#       The items as json output.
#  And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function dynamodb_scan() {
  local table_name filter_expression expression_attribute_names
 expression_attribute_values projection_expression response
```

```
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_scan"
    echo "Scan a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -f filter_expression  -- The filter expression."
    echo " -a expression_attribute_names -- Path to JSON file containing the
expression attribute names."
    echo " -v expression_attribute_values -- Path to JSON file containing the
expression attribute values."
    echo " [-p projection_expression]  -- Optional projection expression."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:f:a:v:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) filter_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      a) expression_attribute_names="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) expression_attribute_values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) projection_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$filter_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a filter expression with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_names" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute names with the -a
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$expression_attribute_values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide expression attribute values with the -v
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$projection_expression" ]]; then
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values")
  else
    response=$(aws dynamodb scan \
      --table-name "$table_name" \
      --filter-expression "$filter_expression" \
      --expression-attribute-names file://"$expression_attribute_names" \
      --expression-attribute-values file://"$expression_attribute_values" \
      --projection-expression "$projection_expression")
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports scan operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
```

```
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function dynamodb_update_item
#
# This function updates an item in a DynamoDB table.
#
#
# Parameters:
#       -n table_name  -- The name of the table.
#       -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item to
 update.
#       -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more attributes
 to be updated.
#       -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values.
#
#  Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
```

```
##############################################################################
function dynamodb_update_item() {
  local table_name keys update_expression values response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  ######################################
  # Function usage explanation
  ######################################
  function usage() {
    echo "function dynamodb_update_item"
    echo "Update an item in a DynamoDB table."
    echo " -n table_name  -- The name of the table."
    echo " -k keys  -- Path to json file containing the keys that identify the item
 to update."
    echo " -e update expression  -- An expression that defines one or more
 attributes to be updated."
    echo " -v values  -- Path to json file containing the update values."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts "n:k:e:v:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) table_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) keys="${OPTARG}" ;;
      e) update_expression="${OPTARG}" ;;
      v) values="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$table_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a table name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$keys" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a keys json file path the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
  if [[ -z "$update_expression" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an update expression with the -e parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$values" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a values json file path the -v parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    table_name:   $table_name"
  iecho "    keys:   $keys"
  iecho "    update_expression:   $update_expression"
  iecho "    values:   $values"

  response=$(aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name "$table_name" \
    --key file://"$keys" \
    --update-expression "$update_expression" \
    --expression-attribute-values file://"$values")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports update-item operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0

}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/topic/return-codes.html#cli-aws-help-
return-codes.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
#############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Scenarios

Advanced Global Secondary Index scenarios

The following code example shows how to work with advanced Global Secondary Index configurations.

- Create a table with multiple GSIs.
- Create a table with on-demand capacity and GSI.
- Put items into a table with multiple GSIs.
- Query multiple GSIs with different conditions.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with multiple GSIs.

```
# Create a table with multiple GSIs
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
```

```
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=AlbumTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Genre,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Year,AttributeType=N \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "[
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"AlbumIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [{\"AttributeName\":\"AlbumTitle\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH
\"}],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"ALL\"}
            },
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"GenreYearIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"Genre\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"Year\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"INCLUDE\",\"NonKeyAttributes
\":[\"Artist\",\"SongTitle\"]}
            }
        ]"
```

Create a table with on-demand capacity and GSI.

```
# Create a table with on-demand capacity and GSI
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicOnDemand \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Genre,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "[
```

```
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"GenreIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [{\"AttributeName\":\"Genre\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"}],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"ALL\"}
            }
        ]"
```

Put items into a table with multiple GSIs.

```
# Add items to MusicLibrary table
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --item '{
        "Artist": {"S": "The Beatles"},
        "SongTitle": {"S": "Hey Jude"},
        "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Past Masters"},
        "Genre": {"S": "Rock"},
        "Year": {"N": "1968"}
    }'

aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --item '{
        "Artist": {"S": "Miles Davis"},
        "SongTitle": {"S": "So What"},
        "AlbumTitle": {"S": "Kind of Blue"},
        "Genre": {"S": "Jazz"},
        "Year": {"N": "1959"}
    }'
```

Query items from a table with multiple GSIs.

```
# Query the AlbumIndex GSI
echo "Querying AlbumIndex GSI:"
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --index-name AlbumIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "AlbumTitle = :album" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":album":{"S":"Kind of Blue"}}'

# Query the GenreYearIndex GSI with a range condition
```

```
echo "Querying GenreYearIndex GSI with range condition:"
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicLibrary \
    --index-name GenreYearIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "Genre = :genre AND #yr > :year" \
    --expression-attribute-names '{"#yr": "Year"}' \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":genre":{"S":"Rock"},":year":{"N":"1965"}}'
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - PutItem
  - Query

Create and manage MRSC global tables

The following code example shows how to create and manage DynamoDB global tables with Multi-Region Strong Consistency (MRSC).

- Create a table with Multi-Region Strong Consistency.
- Verify MRSC configuration and replica status.
- Test strong consistency across Regions with immediate reads.
- Perform conditional writes with MRSC guarantees.
- Clean up MRSC global table resources.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with Multi-Region Strong Consistency.

```
# Step 1: Create a new table in us-east-2 (primary region for MRSC)
# Note: Table must be empty when enabling MRSC
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
```

```
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --region us-east-2

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name MusicTable --region us-east-2

# Step 2: Add replica and witness with Multi-Region Strong Consistency
# MRSC requires exactly three replicas in supported regions
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --replica-updates '[{"Create": {"RegionName": "us-east-1"}}]' \
    --global-table-witness-updates '[{"Create": {"RegionName": "us-west-2"}}]' \
    --multi-region-consistency STRONG \
    --region us-east-2
```

Verify MRSC configuration and replica status.

```
# Verify the global table configuration and MRSC setting
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --region us-east-2 \
    --query 'Table.
{TableName:TableName,TableStatus:TableStatus,MultiRegionConsistency:MultiRegionConsistency,R
{Region:RegionName,Status:ReplicaStatus}}'
```

Test strong consistency with immediate reads across Regions.

```
# Write an item to the primary region
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --item '{"Artist": {"S":"The Beatles"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Hey Jude"},"Album":
 {"S":"The Beatles 1967-1970"},"Year": {"N":"1968"}}' \
    --region us-east-2

# Read the item from replica region to verify strong consistency (cannot read or
 write to witness)
# No wait time needed - MRSC provides immediate consistency
echo "Reading from us-east-1 (immediate consistency):"
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"The Beatles"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Hey Jude"}}' \
```

```
    --consistent-read \
    --region us-east-1
```

Perform conditional writes with MRSC guarantees.

```
# Perform a conditional update from a different region
# This demonstrates that conditions work consistently across all regions
aws dynamodb update-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"The Beatles"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Hey Jude"}}' \
    --update-expression "SET #rating = :rating" \
    --condition-expression "attribute_exists(Artist)" \
    --expression-attribute-names '{"#rating": "Rating"}' \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":rating": {"N":"5"}}' \
    --region us-east-1
```

Clean up MRSC global table resources.

```
# Remove replica tables (must be done before deleting the primary table)
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --replica-updates '[{"Delete": {"RegionName": "us-east-1"}}]' \
    --global-table-witness-updates '[{"Delete": {"RegionName": "us-west-2"}}]' \
    --region us-east-2

# Wait for replicas to be deleted
echo "Waiting for replicas to be deleted..."
sleep 30

# Delete the primary table
aws dynamodb delete-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --region us-east-2
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable

- GetItem
- PutItem
- UpdateItem
- UpdateTable

Manage Global Secondary Indexes

The following code example shows how to manage the complete lifecycle of Global Secondary Indexes.

- Create a table with a Global Secondary Index.
- Add a new GSI to an existing table.
- Update (increase) GSI warm throughput.
- Query data using GSIs.
- Delete a GSI.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with a Global Secondary Index.

```
# Create a table with a GSI
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=AlbumTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --global-secondary-indexes \
        "IndexName=AlbumIndex,\
        KeySchema=[{AttributeName=AlbumTitle,KeyType=HASH}],\
        Projection={ProjectionType=ALL}"
```

Add a new (on-demand) GSI to an existing table.

```
# Add a new GSI to an existing table
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Genre,AttributeType=S \
    --global-secondary-index-updates \
        "[{\"Create\":{\"IndexName\":\"GenreIndex\",\
        \"KeySchema\":[{\"AttributeName\":\"Genre\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"}],\
        \"Projection\":{\"ProjectionType\":\"ALL\"}}}]"
```

Update (increase) GSI warm throughput.

```
# Increase the warm throughput of a GSI (default values are 12k reads, 4k writes)
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --global-secondary-index-updates \
        "[{\"Update\":{\"IndexName\":\"AlbumIndex\",\
        \"WarmThroughput\":{\"ReadUnitsPerSecond\":15000,\"WriteUnitsPerSecond
\":6000}}}]"
```

Query data using GSIs.

```
# Query the AlbumIndex GSI
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --index-name AlbumIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "AlbumTitle = :album" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":album":{"S":"Let It Be"}}'

# Query the GenreIndex GSI
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --index-name GenreIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "Genre = :genre" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{":genre":{"S":"Jazz"}}'
```

Delete a GSI.

```
# Delete a GSI from a table
```

```
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --global-secondary-index-updates \
        "[{\"Delete\":{\"IndexName\":\"GenreIndex\"}}]"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - Query
  - UpdateTable

Manage resource-based policies

The following code example shows how to manage the complete lifecycle of resource-based policies for DynamoDB tables.

- Create a table with a resource policy.
- Get a resource policy.
- Update a resource policy.
- Delete a resource policy.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with a resource policy.

```
# Step 1: Create a DynamoDB table
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicCollection \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST

# Step 2: Create a resource-based policy document
cat > policy.json << 'EOF'
```

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/DynamoDBReadOnly"
      },
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 3: Attach the resource-based policy to the table
aws dynamodb put-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection \
    --policy file://policy.json
```

Get a resource policy.

```
# Get the resource-based policy attached to a table
aws dynamodb get-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection
```

Update a resource policy.

```
# Step 1: Create an updated policy document
cat > updated-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
```

```
        "AWS": [
          "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/DynamoDBReadOnly",
          "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/DynamoDBAnalytics"
        ]
      },
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 2: Update the resource-based policy on the table
aws dynamodb put-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection \
    --policy file://updated-policy.json
```

Delete a resource policy.

```
# Delete the resource-based policy from a table
aws dynamodb delete-resource-policy \
    --resource-arn arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/MusicCollection
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteResourcePolicy
  - GetResourcePolicy
  - PutResourcePolicy

Set up Attribute-Based Access Control

The following code example shows how to implement Attribute-Based Access Control (ABAC) for DynamoDB.

- Create an IAM policy for ABAC.
- Create tables with tags for different departments.
- List and filter tables based on tags.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create an IAM policy for ABAC.

```
# Step 1: Create a policy document for ABAC
cat > abac-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}"
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
        "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchWriteItem"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}",
          "aws:ResourceTag/Environment": "Development"
        }
```

```
      }
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 2: Create the IAM policy
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name DynamoDBDepartmentBasedAccess \
    --policy-document file://abac-policy.json
```

Create tables with tags for different departments.

```
# Create a DynamoDB table with tags for ABAC
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name FinanceData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Finance \
        Key=Environment,Value=Development

# Create another table with different tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MarketingData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Marketing \
        Key=Environment,Value=Production
```

List and filter tables based on tags.

```
# List all DynamoDB tables
echo "Listing all tables:"
```

```
aws dynamodb list-tables

# Get ARNs for all tables
echo -e "\nGetting ARNs for all tables:"
TABLE_ARNS=$(aws dynamodb list-tables --query "TableNames[*]" --output text | xargs
 -I {} aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name {} --query "Table.TableArn" --output
 text)

# For each table ARN, list its tags
echo -e "\nListing tags for each table:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    echo -e "\nTags for table: $TABLE_NAME"
    aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN
done

# Example: Find tables with a specific tag
echo -e "\nFinding tables with Environment=Production tag:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    TAGS=$(aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN --query "Tags[?
Key=='Environment' && Value=='Production']" --output text)
    if [ ! -z "$TAGS" ]; then
        echo "Table with Production tag: $TABLE_NAME"
    fi
done
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateTable
  - ListTables

Work with Local Secondary Indexes

The following code example shows how to create and query tables with Local Secondary Indexes.

- Create a table with a Local Secondary Index (LSI).
- Create a table with multiple LSIs with different projection types.
- Query data using LSIs.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with a Local Secondary Index.

```
# Create a table with a Local Secondary Index
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerOrders \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=OrderID,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=OrderDate,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=OrderID,KeyType=RANGE \
    --local-secondary-indexes \
        "IndexName=OrderDateIndex,\
        KeySchema=[{AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH},
{AttributeName=OrderDate,KeyType=RANGE}],\
        Projection={ProjectionType=ALL}" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST
```

Create a table with multiple LSIs.

```
# Create a table with multiple Local Secondary Indexes
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerDetails \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Name,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=Email,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=RegistrationDate,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=Name,KeyType=RANGE \
    --local-secondary-indexes \
        "[
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"EmailIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"CustomerID\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"Email\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
```

```
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"INCLUDE\",\"NonKeyAttributes
\":[\"Address\",\"Phone\"]}
            },
            {
                \"IndexName\": \"RegistrationIndex\",
                \"KeySchema\": [
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"CustomerID\",\"KeyType\":\"HASH\"},
                    {\"AttributeName\":\"RegistrationDate\",\"KeyType\":\"RANGE\"}
                ],
                \"Projection\": {\"ProjectionType\":\"KEYS_ONLY\"}
            }
        ]" \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST
```

Query data using LSIs.

```
# Query the OrderDateIndex LSI
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name CustomerOrders \
    --index-name OrderDateIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "CustomerID = :custId AND OrderDate BETWEEN :date1
 AND :date2" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{
        ":custId": {"S": "C1"},
        ":date1": {"S": "2023-01-01"},
        ":date2": {"S": "2023-02-01"}
    }'

# Query with a filter expression
aws dynamodb query \
    --table-name CustomerOrders \
    --index-name OrderDateIndex \
    --key-condition-expression "CustomerID = :custId" \
    --filter-expression "Amount > :amount" \
    --expression-attribute-values '{
        ":custId": {"S": "C1"},
        ":amount": {"N": "150"}
    }'
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable

- Query

Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

The following code example shows how to manage DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live features.

- Create a table with Streams enabled.
- Describe Streams.
- Create a Lambda function for processing Streams.
- Enable TTL on a table.
- Add items with TTL attributes.
- Describe TTL settings.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with Streams enabled.

```
# Create a table with DynamoDB Streams enabled
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES
```

Describe Streams.

```
# Get information about the stream
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.StreamSpecification"

# Get the stream ARN
STREAM_ARN=$(aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.LatestStreamArn" \
```

```
    --output text)

echo "Stream ARN: $STREAM_ARN"

# Describe the stream
aws dynamodbstreams describe-stream \
    --stream-arn $STREAM_ARN
```

Create a Lambda function for Streams.

```
# Step 1: Create an IAM role for the Lambda function
cat > trust-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF

aws iam create-role \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://trust-policy.json

# Step 2: Attach permissions to the role
aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaDynamoDBExecutionRole

# Step 3: Create a Lambda function (code would be in a separate file)
echo "Lambda function creation would be done separately with appropriate code"

# Step 4: Create an event source mapping
echo "Example command to create event source mapping:"
echo "aws lambda create-event-source-mapping \\"
echo "    --function-name ProcessDynamoDBRecords \\"
```

```
echo "    --event-source $STREAM_ARN \\"
echo "    --batch-size 100 \\"
echo "    --starting-position LATEST"
```

Enable TTL on a table.

```
# Create a table for TTL demonstration
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name TTLDemo

# Enable TTL on the table
aws dynamodb update-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --time-to-live-specification "Enabled=true, AttributeName=ExpirationTime"
```

Add items with TTL attributes.

```
# Calculate expiration time (current time + 1 day in seconds)
EXPIRATION_TIME=$(date -d "+1 day" +%s)

# Add an item with TTL attribute
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item1"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 day"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME'"}
    }'

# Add an item that expires in 1 hour
EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR=$(date -d "+1 hour" +%s)
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
```

```
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item2"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 hour"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR'"}
    }'
```

Describe TTL settings.

```
# Describe TTL settings for a table
aws dynamodb describe-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - DescribeTimeToLive
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTimeToLive

Work with global tables and multi-Region replication eventual consistency (MREC)

The following code example shows how to manage DynamoDB global tables with multi-Region replication with eventual consistency (MREC).

- Create a table with multi-Region replication (MREC).
- Put and get items from replica tables.
- Remove replicas one-by-one.
- Clean up by deleting the table.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with multi-Region replication.

```
# Step 1: Create a new table (MusicTable) in US East (Ohio), with DynamoDB Streams
 enabled (NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES)
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=Artist,AttributeType=S \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=Artist,KeyType=HASH \
        AttributeName=SongTitle,KeyType=RANGE \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES \
    --region us-east-2

# Step 2: Create an identical MusicTable table in US East (N. Virginia)
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Create": {
        "RegionName": "us-east-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2

# Step 3: Create a table in Europe (Ireland)
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Create": {
        "RegionName": "eu-west-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2
```

Describe the multi-Region table.

```
# Step 4: View the list of replicas created using describe-table
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --region us-east-2 \
    --query 'Table.
{TableName:TableName,TableStatus:TableStatus,MultiRegionConsistency:MultiRegionConsistency,R
{Region:RegionName,Status:ReplicaStatus}}'
```

Put items in a replica table.

```
# Step 5: To verify that replication is working, add a new item to the Music table
 in US East (Ohio)
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --item '{"Artist": {"S":"item_1"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Song Value 1"}}' \
    --region us-east-2
```

Get items from replica tables.

```
# Step 6: Wait for a few seconds, and then check to see whether the item has been
# successfully replicated to US East (N. Virginia) and Europe (Ireland)
aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"item_1"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Song Value 1"}}' \
    --region us-east-1

aws dynamodb get-item \
    --table-name MusicTable \
    --key '{"Artist": {"S":"item_1"},"SongTitle": {"S":"Song Value 1"}}' \
    --region eu-west-1
```

Remove replicas.

```
# Step 7: Delete the replica table in Europe (Ireland) Region
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
```

```
  [
    {
      "Delete": {
        "RegionName": "eu-west-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2

# Delete the replica table in US East (N. Virginia) Region
aws dynamodb update-table --table-name MusicTable --cli-input-json \
'{
  "ReplicaUpdates":
  [
    {
      "Delete": {
        "RegionName": "us-east-1"
      }
    }
  ]
}' \
--region us-east-2
```

Clean up by deleting the table.

```
# Clean up: Delete the primary table
aws dynamodb delete-table --table-name MusicTable --region us-east-2

echo "Global table demonstration complete."
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTable

Work with resource tagging

The following code example shows how to manage tags for DynamoDB resources.

- Create a table with tags.
- List tags for a resource.
- Add tags to a resource.
- Remove tags from a resource.
- Filter tables by tags.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with tags.

```
# Create a table with tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name TaggedTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Environment,Value=Production \
        Key=Project,Value=Analytics \
        Key=Owner,Value=DataTeam
```

List tags for a resource.

```
# Get the table ARN
TABLE_ARN=$(aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name TaggedTable \
    --query "Table.TableArn" \
    --output text)

# List tags for the table
aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource \
    --resource-arn $TABLE_ARN
```

Add tags to a resource.

```
# Add tags to an existing table
aws dynamodb tag-resource \
    --resource-arn $TABLE_ARN \
    --tags \
        Key=CostCenter,Value=12345 \
        Key=BackupSchedule,Value=Daily
```

Remove tags from a resource.

```
# Remove tags from a table
aws dynamodb untag-resource \
    --resource-arn $TABLE_ARN \
    --tag-keys Owner BackupSchedule
```

Filter tables by tags.

```
# Create another table with different tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name AnotherTaggedTable \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Environment,Value=Development \
        Key=Project,Value=Testing

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name AnotherTaggedTable

# List all tables
echo "All tables:"
aws dynamodb list-tables

# Get ARNs for all tables
echo -e "\nFiltering tables by Environment=Production tag:"
```

```
TABLE_ARNS=$(aws dynamodb list-tables --query "TableNames[*]" --output text | xargs
 -I {} aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name {} --query "Table.TableArn" --output
 text)

# Find tables with specific tag
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    TAGS=$(aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN --query "Tags[?
Key=='Environment' && Value=='Production']" --output text)
    if [ ! -z "$TAGS" ]; then
        echo "Table with Production tag: $TABLE_NAME"
    fi
done
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - ListTagsOfResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

Work with table encryption

The following code example shows how to manage encryption options for DynamoDB tables.

- Create a table with default encryption.
- Create a table with a customer managed CMK.
- Update table encryption settings.
- Describe table encryption.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with default encryption.

```
# Create a table with default encryption (AWS owned key)
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
```

```
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS
```

Create a table with a customer managed CMK.

```
# Step 1: Create a customer managed key in KMS
aws kms create-key \
    --description "Key for DynamoDB table encryption" \
    --key-usage ENCRYPT_DECRYPT \
    --customer-master-key-spec SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT

# Store the key ID for later use
KEY_ID=$(aws kms list-keys --query "Keys[?contains(KeyArn, 'Key for
 DynamoDB')].KeyId" --output text)

# Step 2: Create a table with the customer managed key
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name SensitiveData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Update table encryption.

```
# Update a table to use a different KMS key
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Describe table encryption.

```
# Describe the table to see encryption settings
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
```

```
    --query "Table.SSEDescription"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateKey
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - UpdateTable

Amazon EC2 examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.

- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
###############################################################################
# function get_started_with_ec2_instances
#
# Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using EC2 instances.
#
#     "EC2 access" permissions are needed to run this code.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function get_started_with_ec2_instances() {
  # Requires version 4 for mapfile.
  local required_version=4.0

  # Get the current Bash version
  # Check if BASH_VERSION is set
  local current_version
  if [[ -n "$BASH_VERSION" ]]; then
    # Convert BASH_VERSION to a number for comparison
    current_version=$BASH_VERSION
  else
    # Get the current Bash version using the bash command
    current_version=$(bash --version | head -n 1 | awk '{ print $4 }')
  fi

  # Convert version strings to numbers for comparison
```

```
 local required_version_num current_version_num
 required_version_num=$(echo "$required_version" | awk -F. '{ print ($1 * 10000) +
($2 * 100) + $3 }')
 current_version_num=$(echo "$current_version" | awk -F. '{ print ($1 * 10000) +
($2 * 100) + $3 }')

 # Compare versions
 if ((current_version_num < required_version_num)); then
   echo "Error: This script requires Bash version $required_version or higher."
   echo "Your current Bash version is number is $current_version."
   exit 1
 fi

 {
   if [ "$EC2_OPERATIONS_SOURCED" != "True" ]; then

     source ./ec2_operations.sh
   fi
 }

 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) get started with
instances demo."
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo

 echo "Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to securely connect to "
 echo "your EC2 instance."

 echo -n "Enter a unique name for your key: "
 get_input
 local key_name
 key_name=$get_input_result

 local temp_dir
 temp_dir=$(mktemp -d)
 local key_file_name="$temp_dir/${key_name}.pem"

 if ec2_create_keypair -n "${key_name}" -f "${key_file_name}"; then
   echo "Created a key pair $key_name and saved the private key to $key_file_name"
   echo
 else
   errecho "The key pair failed to create. This demo will exit."
   return 1
```

```
fi

chmod 400 "${key_file_name}"

if yes_no_input "Do you want to list some of your key pairs? (y/n) "; then
  local keys_and_fingerprints
  keys_and_fingerprints="$(ec2_describe_key_pairs)" && {
    local image_name_and_id
    while IFS=$'\n' read -r image_name_and_id; do
      local entries
      IFS=$'\t' read -ra entries <<<"$image_name_and_id"
      echo "Found rsa key ${entries[0]} with fingerprint:"
      echo "     ${entries[1]}"
    done <<<"$keys_and_fingerprints"

  }
fi

echo_repeat "*" 88
echo_repeat "*" 88

echo "Let's create a security group to manage access to your instance."
echo -n "Enter a unique name for your security group: "
get_input
local security_group_name
security_group_name=$get_input_result
local security_group_id
security_group_id=$(ec2_create_security_group -n "$security_group_name" \
  -d "Security group for EC2 instance") || {
  errecho "The security failed to create. This demo will exit."
  clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name"
  return 1
}

echo "Security group created with ID $security_group_id"
echo

local public_ip
public_ip=$(curl -s http://checkip.amazonaws.com)

echo "Let's add a rule to allow SSH only from your current IP address."
echo "Your public IP address is $public_ip"
echo -n "press return to add this rule to your security group."
get_input
```

```
  if ! ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress -g "$security_group_id" -i "$public_ip"
 -p tcp -f 22 -t 22; then
    errecho "The security group rules failed to update. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "Security group rules updated"

  local security_group_description
  security_group_description="$(ec2_describe_security_groups -g
 "${security_group_id}")" || {
    errecho "Failed to describe security groups. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  }

  mapfile -t parameters <<<"$security_group_description"
  IFS=$'\t' read -ra entries <<<"${parameters[0]}"
  echo "Security group: ${entries[0]}"
  echo "    ID: ${entries[1]}"
  echo "    VPC: ${entries[2]}"
  echo "Inbound permissions:"
  IFS=$'\t' read -ra entries <<<"${parameters[1]}"
  echo "    IpProtocol: ${entries[0]}"
  echo "    FromPort: ${entries[1]}"
  echo "    ToPort: ${entries[2]}"
  echo "    CidrIp: ${parameters[2]}"

  local parameters
  parameters="$(ssm_get_parameters_by_path -p "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-
latest")" || {
    errecho "Failed to get parameters. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1

  }

  local image_ids=""
  mapfile -t parameters <<<"$parameters"
  for image_name_and_id in "${parameters[@]}"; do
    IFS=$'\t' read -ra values <<<"$image_name_and_id"
    if [[ "${values[0]}" == *"amzn2"* ]]; then
```

```
      image_ids+="${values[1]} "
    fi
  done

  local images
  images="$(ec2_describe_images -i "$image_ids")" || {
    errecho "Failed to describe images. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1

  }

  new_line_and_tab_to_list "$images"
  local images=("${list_result[@]}")

  # Get the size of the array
  local images_count=${#images[@]}

  if ((images_count == 0)); then
    errecho "No images found. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  fi

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI. Here are some options:"
  for ((i = 0; i < images_count; i += 3)); do
    echo "$(((i / 3) + 1)) - ${images[$i]}"
  done

  integer_input "Please enter the number of the AMI you want to use: " 1
"$((images_count / 3))"
  local choice=$get_input_result
  choice=$(((choice - 1) * 3))

  echo "Great choice."
  echo

  local architecture=${images[$((choice + 1))]}
  local image_id=${images[$((choice + 2))]}
  echo "Here are some instance types that support the ${architecture} architecture
of the image:"
```

```
  response="$(ec2_describe_instance_types -a "${architecture}" -t
 "*.micro,*.small")" || {
    errecho "Failed to describe instance types. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  }

  local instance_types
  mapfile -t instance_types <<<"$response"

  # Get the size of the array
  local instance_types_count=${#instance_types[@]}

  echo "Here are some options:"
  for ((i = 0; i < instance_types_count; i++)); do
    echo "$((i + 1)) - ${instance_types[$i]}"
  done

  integer_input "Which one do you want to use? " 1 "${#instance_types[@]}
"
  choice=$get_input_result
  local instance_type=${instance_types[$((choice - 1))]}
  echo "Another great choice."
  echo

  echo "Creating your instance and waiting for it to start..."
  local instance_id
  instance_id=$(ec2_run_instances -i "$image_id" -t "$instance_type" -k "$key_name"
 -s "$security_group_id") || {
    errecho "Failed to run instance. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id"
    return 1
  }

  ec2_wait_for_instance_running -i "$instance_id"
  echo "Your instance is ready:"
  echo

  local instance_details
  instance_details="$(ec2_describe_instances -i "${instance_id}")"

  echo
  print_instance_details "${instance_details}"
```

```
  local public_ip
  public_ip=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $6}')
  echo
  echo "You can use SSH to connect to your instance"
  echo "If the connection attempt times out, you might have to manually update the
SSH ingress rule"
  echo "for your IP address in the AWS Management Console."
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$public_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes."
  echo "Stopping your instance and waiting until it's stopped..."
  ec2_stop_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_stopped -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is stopped. Restarting..."

  ec2_start_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_running -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is running again."
  local instance_details
  instance_details="$(ec2_describe_instances -i "${instance_id}")"

  print_instance_details "${instance_details}"

  public_ip=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $6}')

  echo "Every time your instance is restarted, its public IP address changes"
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$public_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with your instance"
  echo "to keep a consistent IP address even when your instance restarts."
```

```
  local result
  result=$(ec2_allocate_address -d vpc) || {
    errecho "Failed to allocate an address. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id" "$instance_id"
    return 1
  }

  local elastic_ip allocation_id
  elastic_ip=$(echo "$result" | awk '{print $1}')
  allocation_id=$(echo "$result" | awk '{print $2}')

  echo "Allocated static Elastic IP address: $elastic_ip"

  local association_id
  association_id=$(ec2_associate_address -i "$instance_id" -a "$allocation_id") || {
    errecho "Failed to associate an address. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id" "$instance_id"
"$allocation_id"
    return 1
  }

  echo "Associated your Elastic IP with your instance."
  echo "You can now use SSH to connect to your instance by using the Elastic IP."
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$elastic_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  echo "Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes."
  echo "Stopping your instance and waiting until it's stopped..."
  ec2_stop_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_stopped -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is stopped. Restarting..."

  ec2_start_instances -i "$instance_id"
  ec2_wait_for_instance_running -i "$instance_id"

  echo "Your instance is running again."
  local instance_details
```

```
  instance_details="$(ec2_describe_instances -i "${instance_id}")"

  print_instance_details "${instance_details}"

  echo "Because you have associated an Elastic IP with your instance, you can"
  echo "connect by using a consistent IP address after the instance restarts."
  connect_to_instance "$key_file_name" "$elastic_ip"

  echo -n "Press Enter when you're ready to continue the demo: "
  get_input

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo_repeat "*" 88

  if yes_no_input "Do you want to delete the resources created in this demo: (y/n)
 "; then
    clean_up "$key_name" "$key_file_name" "$security_group_id" "$instance_id" \
      "$allocation_id" "$association_id"
  else
    echo "The following resources were not deleted."
    echo "Key pair: $key_name"
    echo "Key file: $key_file_name"
    echo "Security group: $security_group_id"
    echo "Instance: $instance_id"
    echo "Elastic IP address: $elastic_ip"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function clean_up
#
# This function cleans up the created resources.
#     $1 - The name of the ec2 key pair to delete.
#     $2 - The name of the key file to delete.
#     $3 - The ID of the security group to delete.
#     $4 - The ID of the instance to terminate.
#     $5 - The ID of the elastic IP address to release.
#     $6 - The ID of the elastic IP address to disassociate.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function clean_up() {
```

```
  local result=0
  local key_pair_name=$1
  local key_file_name=$2
  local security_group_id=$3
  local instance_id=$4
  local allocation_id=$5
  local association_id=$6

  if [ -n "$association_id" ]; then
    # bashsupport disable=BP2002
    if (ec2_disassociate_address -a "$association_id"); then
      echo "Disassociated elastic IP address with ID $association_id"
    else
      errecho "The elastic IP address disassociation failed."
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  if [ -n "$allocation_id" ]; then
    # bashsupport disable=BP2002
    if (ec2_release_address -a "$allocation_id"); then
      echo "Released elastic IP address with ID $allocation_id"
    else
      errecho "The elastic IP address release failed."
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  if [ -n "$instance_id" ]; then
    # bashsupport disable=BP2002
    if (ec2_terminate_instances -i "$instance_id"); then
      echo "Started terminating instance with ID $instance_id"

      ec2_wait_for_instance_terminated -i "$instance_id"
    else
      errecho "The instance terminate failed."
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  if [ -n "$security_group_id" ]; then
    # bashsupport disable=BP2002
    if (ec2_delete_security_group -i "$security_group_id"); then
      echo "Deleted security group with ID $security_group_id"
```

```
    else
      errecho "The security group delete failed."
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  if [ -n "$key_pair_name" ]; then
    # bashsupport disable=BP2002
    if (ec2_delete_keypair -n "$key_pair_name"); then
      echo "Deleted key pair named $key_pair_name"
    else
      errecho "The key pair delete failed."
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  if [ -n "$key_file_name" ]; then
    rm -f "$key_file_name"
  fi

  return $result
}

###############################################################################
# function ssm_get_parameters_by_path
#
# This function retrieves one or more parameters from the AWS Systems Manager
 Parameter Store
# by specifying a parameter path.
#
# Parameters:
#       -p parameter_path - The path of the parameter(s) to retrieve.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ssm_get_parameters_by_path() {
  local parameter_path response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ssm_get_parameters_by_path"
```

```
    echo "Retrieves one or more parameters from the AWS Systems Manager Parameter
 Store by specifying a parameter path."
    echo "  -p parameter_path - The path of the parameter(s) to retrieve."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      p) parameter_path="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$parameter_path" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a parameter path with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ssm get-parameters-by-path \
    --path "$parameter_path" \
    --query "Parameters[*].[Name, Value]" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log $?
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports get-parameters-by-path operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function print_instance_details
#
# This function prints the details of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       instance_details - The instance details in the format "InstanceId ImageId
 InstanceType KeyName VpcId PublicIpAddress State.Name".
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function print_instance_details() {
  local instance_details="$1"

  if [[ -z "${instance_details}" ]]; then
    echo "Error: Missing required instance details argument."
    return 1
  fi

  local instance_id image_id instance_type key_name vpc_id public_ip state
  instance_id=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $1}')
  image_id=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $2}')
  instance_type=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $3}')
  key_name=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $4}')
  vpc_id=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $5}')
  public_ip=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $6}')
  state=$(echo "${instance_details}" | awk '{print $7}')

  echo "    ID: ${instance_id}"
  echo "    Image ID: ${image_id}"
  echo "    Instance type: ${instance_type}"
  echo "    Key name: ${key_name}"
  echo "    VPC ID: ${vpc_id}"
  echo "    Public IP: ${public_ip}"
  echo "    State: ${state}"

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function connect_to_instance
#
```

```
# This function displays the public IP address of an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance and prompts the user to connect to the instance via SSH.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the key file used to connect to the instance.
#       $2 - The public IP address of the instance.
#
# Returns:
#       None
##############################################################################
function connect_to_instance() {
  local key_file_name="$1"
  local public_ip="$2"

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$key_file_name" ]]; then
    echo "ERROR: You must provide a key file name as the first argument." >&2
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$public_ip" ]]; then
    echo "ERROR: You must provide a public IP address as the second argument." >&2
    return 1
  fi

  # Display the public IP address and connection command
  echo "To connect, run the following command:"
  echo "    ssh -i ${key_file_name} ec2-user@${public_ip}"

  # Prompt the user to connect to the instance
  if yes_no_input "Do you want to connect now? (y/n) "; then
    echo "After you have connected, you can return to this example by typing 'exit'"
    ssh -i "${key_file_name}" ec2-user@"${public_ip}"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function get_input
#
# This function gets user input from the command line.
#
# Outputs:
#   User input to stdout.
#
```

```
# Returns:
#       0
##############################################################################
function get_input() {

  if [ -z "${mock_input+x}" ]; then
    read -r get_input_result
  else

    if [ "$mock_input_array_index" -lt ${#mock_input_array[@]} ]; then
      get_input_result="${mock_input_array[$mock_input_array_index]}"
      # bashsupport disable=BP2001
      # shellcheck disable=SC2206
      ((mock_input_array_index++))
      echo -n "$get_input_result"
    else
      echo "MOCK_INPUT_ARRAY has no more elements" 1>&2
      return 1
    fi
  fi

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function yes_no_input
#
# This function requests a yes/no answer from the user, following to a prompt.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The prompt.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If yes.
#       1 - If no.
##############################################################################
function yes_no_input() {
  if [ -z "$1" ]; then
    echo "Internal error yes_no_input"
    return 1
  fi

  local index=0
  local response="N"
```

```
  while [[ $index -lt 10 ]]; do
    index=$((index + 1))
    echo -n "$1"
    if ! get_input; then
      return 1
    fi
    response=$(echo "$get_input_result" | tr '[:upper:]' '[:lower:]')
    if [ "$response" = "y" ] || [ "$response" = "n" ]; then
      break
    else
      echo -e "\nPlease enter or 'y' or 'n'."
    fi
  done

  echo

  if [ "$response" = "y" ]; then
    return 0
  else
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function integer_input
#
# This function prompts the user to enter an integer within a specified range
# and validates the input.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The prompt message to display to the user.
#       $2 - The minimum value of the accepted range.
#       $3 - The maximum value of the accepted range.
#
# Returns:
#       The valid integer input from the user.
#       If the input is invalid or out of range, the function will continue
#       prompting the user until a valid input is provided.
##############################################################################
function integer_input() {
  local prompt="$1"
  local min_value="$2"
  local max_value="$3"
  local input=""
```

```
  while true; do
    # Display the prompt message and wait for user input
    echo -n "$prompt"

    if ! get_input; then
      return 1
    fi

    input="$get_input_result"

    # Check if the input is a valid integer
    if [[ "$input" =~ ^-?[0-9]+$ ]]; then
      # Check if the input is within the specified range
      if ((input >= min_value && input <= max_value)); then
        return 0
      else
        echo "Error: Input, $input, must be between $min_value and $max_value."
      fi
    else
      echo "Error: Invalid input- $input. Please enter an integer."
    fi
  done
}
##############################################################################
# function new_line_and_tab_to_list
#
# This function takes a string input containing newlines and tabs, and
# converts it into a list (array) of elements.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The input string containing newlines and tabs.
#
# Returns:
#       The resulting list (array) is stored in the global variable
#       'list_result'.
##############################################################################
function new_line_and_tab_to_list() {
  local input=$1
  export list_result

  list_result=()
  mapfile -t lines <<<"$input"
  local line
```

```
  for line in "${lines[@]}"; do
    IFS=$'\t' read -ra parameters <<<"$line"
    list_result+=("${parameters[@]}")
  done
}

###############################################################################
# function echo_repeat
#
# This function prints a string 'n' times to stdout.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The string.
#       $2 - Number of times to print the string.
#
# Outputs:
#   String 'n' times to stdout.
#
# Returns:
#       0
###############################################################################
function echo_repeat() {
  local end=$2
  for ((i = 0; i < end; i++)); do
    echo -n "$1"
  done
  echo
}
```

The DynamoDB functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_create_keypair
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or
 2048-bit RSA key pair
# and writes it to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#       -f file_path - File to store the key pair.
#
```

```
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_create_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name file_path response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_keypair"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or 2048-bit
 RSA key pair"
    echo " and writes it to a file."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo "  -f file_path - File to store the key pair."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_path="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$file_path" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a file path with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 create-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --query 'KeyMaterial' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  if [[ -n "$file_path" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_path"
  fi

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_key_pairs
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key
 pairs.
#
# Parameters:
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_key_pairs() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_key_pairs"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key
 pairs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
```

```
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-key-pairs \
    --query 'KeyPairs[*].[KeyName, KeyFingerprint]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-key-pairs operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_create_security_group
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n security_group_name - The name of the security group.
#       -d security_group_description - The description of the security group.
#
# Returns:
```

```
#       The ID of the created security group, or an error message if the operation
 fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_create_security_group() {
  local security_group_name security_group_description response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_security_group"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -n security_group_name - The name of the security group."
    echo "  -d security_group_description - The description of the security group."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "n:d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) security_group_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      d) security_group_description="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$security_group_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group name with the -n parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$security_group_description" ]]; then
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group description with the -d
 parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Create the security group
  response=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
    --group-name "$security_group_name" \
    --description "$security_group_description" \
    --query "GroupId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-security-group operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_security_groups
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 security groups.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe (optional).
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_security_groups() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_security_groups"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security
 groups."
```

```
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe
 (optional)."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local query="SecurityGroups[*].[GroupName, GroupId, VpcId, IpPermissions[*].
[IpProtocol, FromPort, ToPort, IpRanges[*].CidrIp]]"

  if [[ -n "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --group-ids "$security_group_id" --
query "${query}" --output text)
  else
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --query "${query}" --output text)
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-security-groups operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress
#
# This function authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group.
#       -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize.
#       -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp).
#       -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize.
#       -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress() {
  local security_group_id ip_address protocol from_port to_port response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress"
    echo "Authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2) security group."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group."
    echo "  -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize."
    echo "  -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp)."
    echo "  -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize."
    echo "  -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:i:p:f:t:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) ip_address="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) protocol="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) from_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) to_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
```

```
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -g parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$ip_address" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an IP address or CIDR block with the -i
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$protocol" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a protocol with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$from_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a start port with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$to_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an end port with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
```

```
    --group-id "$security_group_id" \
    --cidr "${ip_address}/32" \
    --protocol "$protocol" \
    --port "$from_port-$to_port" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports authorize-security-group-ingress operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_images
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 images.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_ids - A space-separated  list of image IDs (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_images() {
  local image_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_images"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) images."
    echo "  -i image_ids - A space-separated list of image IDs (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
```

```
      i) image_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$image_ids" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--image-ids" $image_ids)
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-images \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    --query 'Images[*].[Description,Architecture,ImageId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-images operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# ec2_describe_instance_types
#
# This function describes EC2 instance types filtered by processor architecture
# and optionally by instance type. It takes the following arguments:
#
# -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture (e.g., x86_64)
# -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance types (e.g.,
 t2.micro)
```

```
# -h, --help                      Show the usage help
#
# The function prints the instance type and supported architecture for each
# matching instance type.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_instance_types() {
  local architecture=""
  local instance_types=""

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "Usage: ec2_describe_instance_types [-a|--architecture ARCHITECTURE] [-t|--
type INSTANCE_TYPE] [-h|--help]"
    echo "  -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture
 (e.g., x86_64)"
    echo "  -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance types
 (e.g., t2.micro)"
    echo "  -h, --help                       Show this help message"
  }

  while [[ $# -gt 0 ]]; do
    case "$1" in
      -a | --architecture)
        architecture="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -t | --type)
        instance_types="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -h | --help)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      *)
        echo "Unknown argument: $1"
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$architecture" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Architecture not specified."
    usage
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_types" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Instance type not specified."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local tmp_json_file="temp_ec2.json"
  echo -n '[
    {
      "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
      "Values": [' >"$tmp_json_file"

  local items
  IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$architecture"
  local array_size
  array_size=${#items[@]}
  for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
    echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
      echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    fi
  done
  echo -n ']},
    {
    "Name": "instance-type",
      "Values": [' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$instance_types"
  local array_size
  array_size=${#items[@]}
  for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
    echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
      echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    fi
  done

  echo -n ']}]' >>"$tmp_json_file"

  local response
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instance-types --filters file://"$tmp_json_file" \
    --query 'InstanceTypes[*].[InstanceType]' --output text)
```

```
  local error_code=$?

  rm "$tmp_json_file"

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    echo "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instance-types operation failed."
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_run_instances
#
# This function launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use.
#       -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro).
#       -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use.
#       -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use.
#       -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_run_instances() {
  local image_id instance_type key_pair_name security_group_id count response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_run_instances"
    echo "Launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use."
    echo "  -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro)."
    echo "  -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use."
```

```
    echo "  -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use."
    echo "  -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:t:k:s:c:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) instance_type="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      s) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      c) count="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$image_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) ID with the -i
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_type" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance type with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
```

```
  fi

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -s parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$count" ]]; then
    count=1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id "$image_id" \
    --instance-type "$instance_type" \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --security-group-ids "$security_group_id" \
    --count "$count" \
    --query 'Instances[*].[InstanceId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports run-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_instances
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional).
#       -q query - The query to filter the response (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
```

```
##############################################################################
function ec2_describe_instances() {
  local instance_id query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_instances"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional)."
    echo "  -q query - The query to filter the response (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$instance_id" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--instance-ids" $instance_id)
  fi

  local query_arg=""
  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    query_arg="--query '$query'"
```

```
  else
    query_arg="--query Reservations[*].Instances[*].
[InstanceId,ImageId,InstanceType,KeyName,VpcId,PublicIpAddress,State.Name]"
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instances \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    $query_arg \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_stop_instances
#
# This function stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_stop_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_stop_instances"
    echo "Stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-
separated)."
```

```
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 stop-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports stop-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_start_instances
#
# This function starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
```

```
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_start_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_start_instances"
    echo "Starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
```

```
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 start-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports start-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_allocate_address
#
# This function allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region.
#
# Parameters:
#       -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard').
#
# Returns:
#       The allocated Elastic IP address, or an error message if the operation
 fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_allocate_address() {
  local domain response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_allocate_address"
    echo "Allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region."
    echo "  -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard')."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
```

```
  while getopts "d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      d) domain="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$domain" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a domain with the -d parameter (either 'vpc' or
 'standard')."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ "$domain" != "vpc" && "$domain" != "standard" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: Invalid domain value. Must be either 'vpc' or 'standard'."
    return 1
  fi

  # Allocate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --domain "$domain" \
    --query "[PublicIp,AllocationId]" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports allocate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function ec2_associate_address
#
# This function associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to associate.
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
 address with.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_associate_address() {
  local allocation_id instance_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_associate_address"
    echo "Associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 associate."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
 address with."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance ID with the -i parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Associate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 associate-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id" \
    --instance-id "$instance_id" \
    --query "AssociationId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports associate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_disassociate_address
#
# This function disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a association_id - The association ID that represents the association of
 the Elastic IP address with an instance.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
```

```
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_disassociate_address() {
  local association_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_disassociate_address"
    echo "Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a association_id - The association ID that represents the association
 of the Elastic IP address with an instance."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) association_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$association_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an association ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 disassociate-address \
    --association-id "$association_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports disassociate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
```

```
  }

  return 0
}

##############################################################################
# function ec2_release_address
#
# This function releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to release.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_release_address() {
  local allocation_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_release_address"
    echo "Releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 release."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
```

```
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 release-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports release-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function ec2_terminate_instances
#
# This function terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# instances using the AWS CLI.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs.
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_terminate_instances() {
  local instance_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_terminate_instances"
```

```
    echo "Terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Check if instance ID is provided
  if [[ -z "${instance_ids}" ]]; then
    echo "Error: Missing required instance IDs parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 terminate-instances \
    "--instance-ids" $instance_ids \
    --query 'TerminatingInstances[*].[InstanceId,CurrentState.Name]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports terminate-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_delete_security_group
#
# This function deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_delete_security_group() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_security_group"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$security_group_id" --output
 text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-security-group operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}

################################################################################
# function ec2_delete_keypair
#
# This function deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
################################################################################
function ec2_delete_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name response

  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_keypair"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
```

```
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-key-pair operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this scenario.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes

- DescribeInstances
- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_allocate_address
#
# This function allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region.
#
# Parameters:
#       -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard').
#
# Returns:
#       The allocated Elastic IP address, or an error message if the operation
 fails.
```

```
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_allocate_address() {
  local domain response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_allocate_address"
    echo "Allocates an Elastic IP address for use with Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instances in a specific AWS Region."
    echo "  -d domain - The domain for the Elastic IP address (either 'vpc' or
 'standard')."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      d) domain="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$domain" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a domain with the -d parameter (either 'vpc' or
 'standard')."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ "$domain" != "vpc" && "$domain" != "standard" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: Invalid domain value. Must be either 'vpc' or 'standard'."
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  # Allocate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 allocate-address \
    --domain "$domain" \
    --query "[PublicIp,AllocationId]" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports allocate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
################################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
```

```
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_associate_address
#
# This function associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
```

```
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to associate.
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
 address with.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_associate_address() {
  local allocation_id instance_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_associate_address"
    echo "Associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 associate."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
 address with."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
```

```
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance ID with the -i parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Associate the Elastic IP address
  response=$(aws ec2 associate-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id" \
    --instance-id "$instance_id" \
    --query "AssociationId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports associate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress
#
# This function authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group.
#       -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize.
#       -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp).
#       -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize.
#       -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress() {
  local security_group_id ip_address protocol from_port to_port response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_authorize_security_group_ingress"
    echo "Authorizes an ingress rule for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon
 EC2) security group."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group."
    echo "  -i ip_address - The IP address or CIDR block to authorize."
    echo "  -p protocol - The protocol to authorize (e.g., tcp, udp, icmp)."
    echo "  -f from_port - The start of the port range to authorize."
    echo "  -t to_port - The end of the port range to authorize."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:i:p:f:t:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      i) ip_address="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) protocol="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) from_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) to_port="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
```

```
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -g parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$ip_address" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an IP address or CIDR block with the -i
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$protocol" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a protocol with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$from_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a start port with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$to_port" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an end port with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress \
```

```
    --group-id "$security_group_id" \
    --cidr "${ip_address}/32" \
    --protocol "$protocol" \
    --port "$from_port-$to_port" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports authorize-security-group-ingress operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###########################################################################
# function ec2_create_keypair
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or
 2048-bit RSA key pair
# and writes it to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#       -f file_path - File to store the key pair.
```

```
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_create_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name file_path response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_keypair"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) ED25519 or 2048-bit
 RSA key pair"
    echo " and writes it to a file."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo "  -f file_path - File to store the key pair."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_path="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$file_path" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a file path with the -f parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 create-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --query 'KeyMaterial' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  if [[ -n "$file_path" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_path"
  fi

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
```

```
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function ec2_create_security_group
```

```
#
# This function creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n security_group_name - The name of the security group.
#       -d security_group_description - The description of the security group.
#
# Returns:
#       The ID of the created security group, or an error message if the operation
 fails.
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
##############################################################################
function ec2_create_security_group() {
  local security_group_name security_group_description response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_create_security_group"
    echo "Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -n security_group_name - The name of the security group."
    echo "  -d security_group_description - The description of the security group."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "n:d:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) security_group_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      d) security_group_description="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$security_group_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group name with the -n parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$security_group_description" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group description with the -d
 parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  # Create the security group
  response=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
    --group-name "$security_group_name" \
    --description "$security_group_description" \
    --query "GroupId" \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-security-group operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
```

```
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_delete_keypair
#
# This function deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n key_pair_name - A key pair name.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_delete_keypair() {
  local key_pair_name response

  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_keypair"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon EC2 ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair."
    echo "  -n key_pair_name - A key pair name."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
```

```
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-key-pair \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-key-pair operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
```

```
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
```

```
# function ec2_delete_security_group
#
# This function deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_delete_security_group() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_delete_security_group"
    echo "Deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group."
    echo "  -i security_group_id - The ID of the security group to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
    return 1
```

```
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$security_group_id" --output
 text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-security-group operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
################################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_images
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 images.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_ids - A space-separated  list of image IDs (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
```

```
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_images() {
  local image_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_images"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) images."
    echo "  -i image_ids - A space-separated list of image IDs (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$image_ids" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--image-ids" $image_ids)
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-images \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    --query 'Images[*].[Description,Architecture,ImageId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
```

```
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-images operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# ec2_describe_instance_types
#
# This function describes EC2 instance types filtered by processor architecture
# and optionally by instance type. It takes the following arguments:
#
# -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture (e.g., x86_64)
# -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance types (e.g.,
 t2.micro)
# -h, --help                       Show the usage help
#
# The function prints the instance type and supported architecture for each
# matching instance type.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_instance_types() {
```

```
  local architecture=""
  local instance_types=""

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "Usage: ec2_describe_instance_types [-a|--architecture ARCHITECTURE] [-t|--
type INSTANCE_TYPE] [-h|--help]"
    echo "  -a, --architecture ARCHITECTURE  Specify the processor architecture
 (e.g., x86_64)"
    echo "  -t, --type INSTANCE_TYPE         Comma-separated list of instance types
 (e.g., t2.micro)"
    echo "  -h, --help                       Show this help message"
  }

  while [[ $# -gt 0 ]]; do
    case "$1" in
      -a | --architecture)
        architecture="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -t | --type)
        instance_types="$2"
        shift 2
        ;;
      -h | --help)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      *)
        echo "Unknown argument: $1"
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$architecture" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Architecture not specified."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_types" ]]; then
    errecho "Error: Instance type not specified."
    usage
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  local tmp_json_file="temp_ec2.json"
  echo -n '[
    {
      "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
      "Values": [' >"$tmp_json_file"

  local items
  IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$architecture"
  local array_size
  array_size=${#items[@]}
  for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
    echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
      echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    fi
  done
  echo -n ']},
    {
    "Name": "instance-type",
      "Values": [' >>"$tmp_json_file"
  IFS=',' read -ra items <<<"$instance_types"
  local array_size
  array_size=${#items[@]}
  for i in $(seq 0 $((array_size - 1))); do
    echo -n '"'"${items[$i]}"'"' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    if [[ $i -lt $((array_size - 1)) ]]; then
      echo -n ',' >>"$tmp_json_file"
    fi
  done

  echo -n ']}]' >>"$tmp_json_file"

  local response
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instance-types --filters file://"$tmp_json_file" \
    --query 'InstanceTypes[*].[InstanceType]' --output text)

  local error_code=$?

  rm "$tmp_json_file"

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
```

```
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    echo "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instance-types operation failed."
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_instances
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional).
#       -q query - The query to filter the response (optional).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function ec2_describe_instances() {
  local instance_id query response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_instances"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID of the instance to describe (optional)."
    echo "  -q query - The query to filter the response (optional)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:q:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      q) query="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local aws_cli_args=()

  if [[ -n "$instance_id" ]]; then
    # shellcheck disable=SC2206
    aws_cli_args+=("--instance-ids" $instance_id)
  fi

  local query_arg=""
  if [[ -n "$query" ]]; then
    query_arg="--query '$query'"
  else
```

```
    query_arg="--query Reservations[*].Instances[*].
[InstanceId,ImageId,InstanceType,KeyName,VpcId,PublicIpAddress,State.Name]"
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 describe-instances \
    "${aws_cli_args[@]}" \
    $query_arg \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
################################################################################
```

```
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_key_pairs
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key
 pairs.
```

```
#
# Parameters:
#       -h - Display help.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function ec2_describe_key_pairs() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_key_pairs"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key
 pairs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response

  response=$(aws ec2 describe-key-pairs \
    --query 'KeyPairs[*].[KeyName, KeyFingerprint]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-key-pairs operation failed.$response"
    return 1
```

```
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
```

```
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_describe_security_groups
#
# This function describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 security groups.
#
# Parameters:
#       -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe (optional).
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_describe_security_groups() {
  local security_group_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
```

```
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_describe_security_groups"
    echo "Describes one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security
 groups."
    echo "  -g security_group_id - The ID of the security group to describe
 (optional)."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "g:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      g) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local query="SecurityGroups[*].[GroupName, GroupId, VpcId, IpPermissions[*].
[IpProtocol, FromPort, ToPort, IpRanges[*].CidrIp]]"

  if [[ -n "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --group-ids "$security_group_id" --
query "${query}" --output text)
  else
    response=$(aws ec2 describe-security-groups --query "${query}" --output text)
  fi

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports describe-security-groups operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
#############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
```

```
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_disassociate_address
#
# This function disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a association_id - The association ID that represents the association of
 the Elastic IP address with an instance.
#
# And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_disassociate_address() {
  local association_id response
```

```
  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_disassociate_address"
    echo "Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
    echo "  -a association_id - The association ID that represents the association
 of the Elastic IP address with an instance."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) association_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$association_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an association ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 disassociate-address \
    --association-id "$association_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports disassociate-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
################################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_release_address
#
# This function releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Parameters:
#       -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to release.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
#
###############################################################################
function ec2_release_address() {
  local allocation_id response

  # Function to display usage information
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_release_address"
    echo "Releases an Elastic IP address from an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
 (Amazon EC2) instance."
```

```
    echo "  -a allocation_id - The allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to
 release."
    echo ""
  }

  # Parse the command-line arguments
  while getopts "a:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      a) allocation_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Validate the input parameters
  if [[ -z "$allocation_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an allocation ID with the -a parameter."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 release-address \
    --allocation-id "$allocation_id") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports release-address operation failed."
    errecho "$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
```

```
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

################################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
################################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

RunInstances

The following code example shows how to use RunInstances.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_run_instances
#
# This function launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use.
#       -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro).
#       -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use.
#       -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use.
#       -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_run_instances() {
  local image_id instance_type key_pair_name security_group_id count response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_run_instances"
    echo "Launches one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i image_id - The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use."
    echo "  -t instance_type - The instance type to use (e.g., t2.micro)."
    echo "  -k key_pair_name - The name of the key pair to use."
    echo "  -s security_group_id - The ID of the security group to use."
    echo "  -c count - The number of instances to launch (default: 1)."
```

```
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:t:k:s:c:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) image_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      t) instance_type="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) key_pair_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      s) security_group_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      c) count="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$image_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) ID with the -i
parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$instance_type" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an instance type with the -t parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$key_pair_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a key pair name with the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$security_group_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a security group ID with the -s parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$count" ]]; then
    count=1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
    --image-id "$image_id" \
    --instance-type "$instance_type" \
    --key-name "$key_pair_name" \
    --security-group-ids "$security_group_id" \
    --count "$count" \
    --query 'Instances[*].[InstanceId]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports run-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

#############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
```

```
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_start_instances
#
# This function starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_start_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_start_instances"
    echo "Starts one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to start (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
```

```
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 start-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports start-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
```

```
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_stop_instances
#
# This function stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-separated).
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_stop_instances() {
  local instance_ids
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_stop_instances"
    echo "Stops one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances."
    echo "  -i instance_id - The ID(s) of the instance(s) to stop (comma-
separated)."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
```

```
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$instance_ids" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide one or more instance IDs with the -i
 parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws ec2 stop-instances \
    --instance-ids "${instance_ids}") || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports stop-instances operation failed with $response."
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
```

```
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
##############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function ec2_terminate_instances
#
# This function terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# instances using the AWS CLI.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs.
#       -h - Display help.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function ec2_terminate_instances() {
  local instance_ids response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function ec2_terminate_instances"
    echo "Terminates one or more Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instances."
    echo "  -i instance_ids - A space-separated list of instance IDs."
    echo "  -h - Display help."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) instance_ids="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
```

```
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  # Check if instance ID is provided
  if [[ -z "${instance_ids}" ]]; then
    echo "Error: Missing required instance IDs parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws ec2 terminate-instances \
    "--instance-ids" $instance_ids \
    --query 'TerminatingInstances[*].[InstanceId,CurrentState.Name]' \
    --output text) || {
    aws_cli_error_log ${?}
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports terminate-instances operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  }

  return 0
}
```

The utility functions used in this example.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}
```

```
###############################################################################
# function aws_cli_error_log()
#
# This function is used to log the error messages from the AWS CLI.
#
# The function expects the following argument:
#         $1 - The error code returned by the AWS CLI.
#
#  Returns:
#          0: - Success.
#
###############################################################################
function aws_cli_error_log() {
  local err_code=$1
  errecho "Error code : $err_code"
  if [ "$err_code" == 1 ]; then
    errecho "  One or more S3 transfers failed."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 2 ]; then
    errecho "  Command line failed to parse."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 130 ]; then
    errecho "  Process received SIGINT."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 252 ]; then
    errecho "  Command syntax invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 253 ]; then
    errecho "  The system environment or configuration was invalid."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 254 ]; then
    errecho "  The service returned an error."
  elif [ "$err_code" == 255 ]; then
    errecho "  255 is a catch-all error."
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a VPC with private subnets and NAT gateways using the CLI.
- Set up the necessary components including VPC, subnets, route tables, and NAT gateways.
- Configure security groups and IAM roles for proper access and security.
- Use CLI commands to automate the creation and configuration of these resources.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# VPC with Private Subnets and NAT Gateways (IMDSv2 Compliant Version)
# This script creates a VPC with public and private subnets in two Availability
 Zones,
# NAT gateways, an internet gateway, route tables, a VPC endpoint for S3,
# security groups, a launch template, an Auto Scaling group, and an Application Load
 Balancer.

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="vpc-private-subnets-nat.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Cleanup function to delete all created resources
cleanup_resources() {
  echo "Cleaning up resources..."

  # Delete Auto Scaling group if it exists
  if [ -n "${ASG_NAME:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Auto Scaling group: $ASG_NAME"
    aws autoscaling delete-auto-scaling-group --auto-scaling-group-name "$ASG_NAME"
 --force-delete
    echo "Waiting for Auto Scaling group to be deleted..."
    aws autoscaling wait auto-scaling-groups-deleted --auto-scaling-group-names
 "$ASG_NAME"
  fi
```

```
# Delete load balancer if it exists
if [ -n "${LB_ARN:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting load balancer: $LB_ARN"
  aws elbv2 delete-load-balancer --load-balancer-arn "$LB_ARN"
  # Wait for load balancer to be deleted
  sleep 30
fi

# Delete target group if it exists
if [ -n "${TARGET_GROUP_ARN:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting target group: $TARGET_GROUP_ARN"
  aws elbv2 delete-target-group --target-group-arn "$TARGET_GROUP_ARN"
fi

# Delete launch template if it exists
if [ -n "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting launch template: $LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME"
  aws ec2 delete-launch-template --launch-template-name "$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME"
fi

# Delete NAT Gateways if they exist
if [ -n "${NAT_GW1_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting NAT Gateway 1: $NAT_GW1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-nat-gateway --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW1_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${NAT_GW2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting NAT Gateway 2: $NAT_GW2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-nat-gateway --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW2_ID"
fi

# Wait for NAT Gateways to be deleted
if [ -n "${NAT_GW1_ID:-}" ] || [ -n "${NAT_GW2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Waiting for NAT Gateways to be deleted..."
  sleep 60
fi

# Release Elastic IPs if they exist
if [ -n "${EIP1_ALLOC_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Releasing Elastic IP 1: $EIP1_ALLOC_ID"
  aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id "$EIP1_ALLOC_ID"
fi
```

```
  if [ -n "${EIP2_ALLOC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Releasing Elastic IP 2: $EIP2_ALLOC_ID"
    aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id "$EIP2_ALLOC_ID"
  fi

  # Delete VPC endpoint if it exists
  if [ -n "${VPC_ENDPOINT_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting VPC endpoint: $VPC_ENDPOINT_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-vpc-endpoints --vpc-endpoint-ids "$VPC_ENDPOINT_ID"
  fi

  # Delete security groups if they exist
  if [ -n "${APP_SG_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting application security group: $APP_SG_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$APP_SG_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${LB_SG_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting load balancer security group: $LB_SG_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$LB_SG_ID"
  fi

  # Detach and delete Internet Gateway if it exists
  if [ -n "${IGW_ID:-}" ] && [ -n "${VPC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Detaching Internet Gateway: $IGW_ID from VPC: $VPC_ID"
    aws ec2 detach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID" --vpc-id
"$VPC_ID"
    echo "Deleting Internet Gateway: $IGW_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID"
  fi

  # Delete route table associations and route tables if they exist
  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating public route table from subnet 1: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID"
    aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating public route table from subnet 2: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID"
    aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID"
  fi

  if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Disassociating private route table 1: $PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID"
```

```
  aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Disassociating private route table 2: $PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID"
  aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PUBLIC_RT_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting public route table: $PUBLIC_RT_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT1_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting private route table 1: $PRIVATE_RT1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PRIVATE_RT2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting private route table 2: $PRIVATE_RT2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID"
fi

# Delete subnets if they exist
if [ -n "${PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting public subnet 1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting public subnet 2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting private subnet 1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID"
fi

if [ -n "${PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID:-}" ]; then
  echo "Deleting private subnet 2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID"
fi
```

```
  # Delete VPC if it exists
  if [ -n "${VPC_ID:-}" ]; then
    echo "Deleting VPC: $VPC_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id "$VPC_ID"
  fi

  echo "Cleanup completed."
}

# Error handling function
handle_error() {
  echo "ERROR: $1"
  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  exit 1
}

# Function to check command success
check_command() {
  if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "$1"
  fi
}

# Generate a random identifier for resource names
RANDOM_ID=$(openssl rand -hex 4)
echo "Using random identifier: $RANDOM_ID"

# Create VPC
echo "Creating VPC..."
VPC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=ProductionVPC-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create VPC"

VPC_ID=$(echo "$VPC_RESULT" | jq -r '.Vpc.VpcId')
echo "VPC created with ID: $VPC_ID"

# Get Availability Zones
echo "Getting Availability Zones..."
AZ_RESULT=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query
 'AvailabilityZones[0:2].ZoneName' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get Availability Zones"

# Convert space-separated output to array
```

```
read -r -a AZS <<< "$AZ_RESULT"
AZ1=${AZS[0]}
AZ2=${AZS[1]}
echo "Using Availability Zones: $AZ1 and $AZ2"

# Create subnets
echo "Creating subnets..."
PUBLIC_SUBNET1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ1" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PublicSubnet1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create public subnet 1"
PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

PRIVATE_SUBNET1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.1.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ1" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateSubnet1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private subnet 1"
PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

PUBLIC_SUBNET2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.2.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ2" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PublicSubnet2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create public subnet 2"
PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

PRIVATE_SUBNET2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
cidr-block 10.0.3.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ2" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateSubnet2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private subnet 2"
PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_RESULT" | jq -r '.Subnet.SubnetId')

echo "Subnets created with IDs:"
echo "Public Subnet 1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID"
echo "Public Subnet 2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID"

# Create Internet Gateway
echo "Creating Internet Gateway..."
IGW_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-internet-gateway --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=internet-gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=ProductionIGW-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create Internet Gateway"
IGW_ID=$(echo "$IGW_RESULT" | jq -r '.InternetGateway.InternetGatewayId')
echo "Internet Gateway created with ID: $IGW_ID"
```

```
# Attach Internet Gateway to VPC
echo "Attaching Internet Gateway to VPC..."
aws ec2 attach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID" --vpc-id "$VPC_ID"
check_command "Failed to attach Internet Gateway to VPC"

# Create route tables
echo "Creating route tables..."
PUBLIC_RT_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-
specifications "ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PublicRouteTable-
$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create public route table"
PUBLIC_RT_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_RT_RESULT" | jq -r '.RouteTable.RouteTableId')

PRIVATE_RT1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-
specifications "ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateRouteTable1-
$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private route table 1"
PRIVATE_RT1_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT1_RESULT" | jq -r '.RouteTable.RouteTableId')

PRIVATE_RT2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-
specifications "ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=PrivateRouteTable2-
$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create private route table 2"
PRIVATE_RT2_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT2_RESULT" | jq -r '.RouteTable.RouteTableId')

echo "Route tables created with IDs:"
echo "Public Route Table: $PUBLIC_RT_ID"
echo "Private Route Table 1: $PRIVATE_RT1_ID"
echo "Private Route Table 2: $PRIVATE_RT2_ID"

# Add route to Internet Gateway in public route table
echo "Adding route to Internet Gateway in public route table..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --gateway-id "$IGW_ID"
check_command "Failed to add route to Internet Gateway"

# Associate subnets with route tables
echo "Associating subnets with route tables..."
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PUBLIC_RT_ID" --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate public subnet 1 with route table"
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')
```

```
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PUBLIC_RT_ID" --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate public subnet 2 with route table"
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID=$(echo "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')

PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID" --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate private subnet 1 with route table"
PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')

PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id
 "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID" --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID")
check_command "Failed to associate private subnet 2 with route table"
PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID=$(echo "$PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_RESULT" | jq -r '.AssociationId')

echo "Route table associations created with IDs:"
echo "Public Subnet 1 Association: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC1_ID"
echo "Public Subnet 2 Association: $PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC2_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 1 Association: $PRIVATE_RT1_ASSOC_ID"
echo "Private Subnet 2 Association: $PRIVATE_RT2_ASSOC_ID"

# Create NAT Gateways
echo "Creating NAT Gateways..."

# Allocate Elastic IPs for NAT Gateways
echo "Allocating Elastic IPs for NAT Gateways..."
EIP1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 allocate-address --domain vpc --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=elastic-ip,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT1-EIP-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to allocate Elastic IP 1"
EIP1_ALLOC_ID=$(echo "$EIP1_RESULT" | jq -r '.AllocationId')

EIP2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 allocate-address --domain vpc --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=elastic-ip,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT2-EIP-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to allocate Elastic IP 2"
EIP2_ALLOC_ID=$(echo "$EIP2_RESULT" | jq -r '.AllocationId')

echo "Elastic IPs allocated with IDs:"
echo "EIP 1 Allocation ID: $EIP1_ALLOC_ID"
echo "EIP 2 Allocation ID: $EIP2_ALLOC_ID"

# Create NAT Gateways
echo "Creating NAT Gateway in public subnet 1..."
```

```
NAT_GW1_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-nat-gateway --subnet-id
 "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID" --allocation-id "$EIP1_ALLOC_ID" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=natgateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT-Gateway1-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create NAT Gateway 1"
NAT_GW1_ID=$(echo "$NAT_GW1_RESULT" | jq -r '.NatGateway.NatGatewayId')

echo "Creating NAT Gateway in public subnet 2..."
NAT_GW2_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-nat-gateway --subnet-id
 "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID" --allocation-id "$EIP2_ALLOC_ID" --tag-specifications
 "ResourceType=natgateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=NAT-Gateway2-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create NAT Gateway 2"
NAT_GW2_ID=$(echo "$NAT_GW2_RESULT" | jq -r '.NatGateway.NatGatewayId')

echo "NAT Gateways created with IDs:"
echo "NAT Gateway 1: $NAT_GW1_ID"
echo "NAT Gateway 2: $NAT_GW2_ID"

# Wait for NAT Gateways to be available
echo "Waiting for NAT Gateways to be available..."
aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-available --nat-gateway-ids "$NAT_GW1_ID"
check_command "NAT Gateway 1 did not become available"
aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-available --nat-gateway-ids "$NAT_GW2_ID"
check_command "NAT Gateway 2 did not become available"
echo "NAT Gateways are now available"

# Add routes to NAT Gateways in private route tables
echo "Adding routes to NAT Gateways in private route tables..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW1_ID"
check_command "Failed to add route to NAT Gateway 1"

aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW2_ID"
check_command "Failed to add route to NAT Gateway 2"

# Create VPC Endpoint for S3
echo "Creating VPC Endpoint for S3..."
S3_PREFIX_LIST_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-prefix-lists --filters "Name=prefix-
list-name,Values=com.amazonaws.$(aws configure get region).s3" --query
 'PrefixLists[0].PrefixListId' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get S3 prefix list ID"

VPC_ENDPOINT_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-vpc-endpoint --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
service-name "com.amazonaws.$(aws configure get region).s3" --route-table-ids
```

```
 "$PRIVATE_RT1_ID" "$PRIVATE_RT2_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=vpc-
endpoint,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=S3-Endpoint-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create VPC endpoint for S3"
VPC_ENDPOINT_ID=$(echo "$VPC_ENDPOINT_RESULT" | jq -r '.VpcEndpoint.VpcEndpointId')
echo "VPC Endpoint created with ID: $VPC_ENDPOINT_ID"

# Create security groups
echo "Creating security groups..."
LB_SG_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-security-group --group-name "LoadBalancerSG-
$RANDOM_ID" --description "Security group for the load balancer"
 --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --tag-specifications "ResourceType=security-
group,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=LoadBalancerSG-$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create load balancer security group"
LB_SG_ID=$(echo "$LB_SG_RESULT" | jq -r '.GroupId')

# Allow inbound HTTP traffic from anywhere to the load balancer
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$LB_SG_ID" --protocol tcp --
port 80 --cidr 0.0.0.0/0
check_command "Failed to authorize ingress to load balancer security group"

APP_SG_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-security-group --group-name "AppServerSG-$RANDOM_ID"
 --description "Security group for the application servers" --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --
tag-specifications "ResourceType=security-group,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=AppServerSG-
$RANDOM_ID}]")
check_command "Failed to create application server security group"
APP_SG_ID=$(echo "$APP_SG_RESULT" | jq -r '.GroupId')

# Allow inbound HTTP traffic from the load balancer security group to the
 application servers
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$APP_SG_ID" --protocol tcp --
port 80 --source-group "$LB_SG_ID"
check_command "Failed to authorize ingress to application server security group"

echo "Security groups created with IDs:"
echo "Load Balancer Security Group: $LB_SG_ID"
echo "Application Server Security Group: $APP_SG_ID"

# Create a launch template
echo "Creating launch template..."

# Create user data script with IMDSv2 support
cat > user-data.sh << 'EOF'
#!/bin/bash
yum update -y
```

```
yum install -y httpd
systemctl start httpd
systemctl enable httpd

# Use IMDSv2 with session token
TOKEN=$(curl -X PUT "http://169.254.169.254/latest/api/token" -H "X-aws-ec2-
metadata-token-ttl-seconds: 21600")
AZ=$(curl -H "X-aws-ec2-metadata-token: $TOKEN" -s http://169.254.169.254/latest/
meta-data/placement/availability-zone)
HOSTNAME=$(hostname -f)

echo "<h1>Hello from $HOSTNAME in $AZ</h1>" > /var/www/html/index.html
EOF

# Encode user data
USER_DATA=$(base64 -w 0 user-data.sh)

# Get latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI
echo "Getting latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI..."
AMI_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-images --owners amazon --filters "Name=name,Values=amzn2-
ami-hvm-*-x86_64-gp2" "Name=state,Values=available" --query 'sort_by(Images,
 &CreationDate)[-1].ImageId' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI"
echo "Using AMI: $AMI_ID"

# Create launch template with IMDSv2 required
LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME="AppServerTemplate-$RANDOM_ID"
echo "Creating launch template: $LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME"

aws ec2 create-launch-template \
  --launch-template-name "$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME" \
  --version-description "Initial version" \
  --tag-specifications "ResourceType=launch-template,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=
$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}]" \
  --launch-template-data "{
    \"NetworkInterfaces\": [{
      \"DeviceIndex\": 0,
      \"Groups\": [\"$APP_SG_ID\"],
      \"DeleteOnTermination\": true
    }],
    \"ImageId\": \"$AMI_ID\",
    \"InstanceType\": \"t3.micro\",
    \"UserData\": \"$USER_DATA\",
    \"MetadataOptions\": {
```

```
      \"HttpTokens\": \"required\",
      \"HttpEndpoint\": \"enabled\"
    },
    \"TagSpecifications\": [{
      \"ResourceType\": \"instance\",
      \"Tags\": [{
        \"Key\": \"Name\",
        \"Value\": \"AppServer-$RANDOM_ID\"
      }]
    }]
  }"
check_command "Failed to create launch template"

# Create target group
echo "Creating target group..."
TARGET_GROUP_NAME="AppTargetGroup-$RANDOM_ID"
TARGET_GROUP_RESULT=$(aws elbv2 create-target-group \
  --name "$TARGET_GROUP_NAME" \
  --protocol HTTP \
  --port 80 \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --target-type instance \
  --health-check-protocol HTTP \
  --health-check-path "/" \
  --health-check-port traffic-port)
check_command "Failed to create target group"
TARGET_GROUP_ARN=$(echo "$TARGET_GROUP_RESULT" | jq -r
 '.TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn')
echo "Target group created with ARN: $TARGET_GROUP_ARN"

# Create load balancer
echo "Creating load balancer..."
LB_NAME="AppLoadBalancer-$RANDOM_ID"
LB_RESULT=$(aws elbv2 create-load-balancer \
  --name "$LB_NAME" \
  --subnets "$PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID" "$PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID" \
  --security-groups "$LB_SG_ID" \
  --tags "Key=Name,Value=$LB_NAME")
check_command "Failed to create load balancer"
LB_ARN=$(echo "$LB_RESULT" | jq -r '.LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn')
echo "Load balancer created with ARN: $LB_ARN"

# Wait for load balancer to be active
echo "Waiting for load balancer to be active..."
```

```
aws elbv2 wait load-balancer-available --load-balancer-arns "$LB_ARN"
check_command "Load balancer did not become available"

# Create listener
echo "Creating listener..."
LISTENER_RESULT=$(aws elbv2 create-listener \
  --load-balancer-arn "$LB_ARN" \
  --protocol HTTP \
  --port 80 \
  --default-actions "Type=forward,TargetGroupArn=$TARGET_GROUP_ARN")
check_command "Failed to create listener"
LISTENER_ARN=$(echo "$LISTENER_RESULT" | jq -r '.Listeners[0].ListenerArn')
echo "Listener created with ARN: $LISTENER_ARN"

# Create Auto Scaling group
echo "Creating Auto Scaling group..."
ASG_NAME="AppAutoScalingGroup-$RANDOM_ID"
aws autoscaling create-auto-scaling-group \
  --auto-scaling-group-name "$ASG_NAME" \
  --launch-template "LaunchTemplateName=$LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME,Version=\$Latest" \
  --min-size 2 \
  --max-size 4 \
  --desired-capacity 2 \
  --vpc-zone-identifier "$PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID,$PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID" \
  --target-group-arns "$TARGET_GROUP_ARN" \
  --health-check-type ELB \
  --health-check-grace-period 300 \
  --tags "Key=Name,Value=AppServer-$RANDOM_ID,PropagateAtLaunch=true"
check_command "Failed to create Auto Scaling group"
echo "Auto Scaling group created with name: $ASG_NAME"

# Get load balancer DNS name
LB_DNS_NAME=$(aws elbv2 describe-load-balancers --load-balancer-arns "$LB_ARN" --
query 'LoadBalancers[0].DNSName' --output text)
check_command "Failed to get load balancer DNS name"

echo ""
echo "============================================"
echo "DEPLOYMENT COMPLETE"
echo "============================================"
echo "VPC ID: $VPC_ID"
echo "Public Subnet 1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET1_ID (AZ: $AZ1)"
echo "Private Subnet 1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET1_ID (AZ: $AZ1)"
echo "Public Subnet 2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET2_ID (AZ: $AZ2)"
```

```
echo "Private Subnet 2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET2_ID (AZ: $AZ2)"
echo "NAT Gateway 1: $NAT_GW1_ID"
echo "NAT Gateway 2: $NAT_GW2_ID"
echo "Load Balancer: $LB_NAME"
echo "Auto Scaling Group: $ASG_NAME"
echo ""
echo "Your application will be available at: http://$LB_DNS_NAME"
echo "It may take a few minutes for the instances to launch and pass health checks."
echo ""

# Add health check monitoring
echo "============================================"
echo "MONITORING INSTANCE HEALTH AND LOAD BALANCER"
echo "============================================"
echo "Waiting for instances to launch and pass health checks..."
echo "This may take 3-5 minutes. Checking every 30 seconds..."

# Monitor instance health and load balancer accessibility
MAX_ATTEMPTS=10
ATTEMPT=1
HEALTHY_INSTANCES=0

while [ $ATTEMPT -le $MAX_ATTEMPTS ] && [ $HEALTHY_INSTANCES -lt 2 ]; do
  echo "Check attempt $ATTEMPT of $MAX_ATTEMPTS..."

  # Check Auto Scaling group instances
  echo "Checking Auto Scaling group instances..."
  ASG_INSTANCES=$(aws autoscaling describe-auto-scaling-groups --auto-
scaling-group-names "$ASG_NAME" --query 'AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[*].
[InstanceId,HealthStatus]' --output json)
  echo "ASG Instances status:"
  echo "$ASG_INSTANCES" | jq -r '.[] | "Instance: \(.[0]), Health: \(.[1])"'

  # Check target group health
  echo "Checking target group health..."
  TARGET_HEALTH=$(aws elbv2 describe-target-health --target-group-arn
 "$TARGET_GROUP_ARN" --output json)
  echo "Target health status:"
  echo "$TARGET_HEALTH" | jq -r '.TargetHealthDescriptions[] | "Instance:
 \(.Target.Id), State: \(.TargetHealth.State), Reason: \(.TargetHealth.Reason // "N/
A"), Description: \(.TargetHealth.Description // "N/A")"'

  # Count healthy instances
```

```
 HEALTHY_INSTANCES=$(echo "$TARGET_HEALTH" | jq -r '[.TargetHealthDescriptions[] |
select(.TargetHealth.State=="healthy")] | length')
 echo "Number of healthy instances: $HEALTHY_INSTANCES of 2 expected"

 # Check if we have healthy instances
 if [ $HEALTHY_INSTANCES -ge 2 ]; then
   echo "All instances are healthy!"

   # Test load balancer accessibility
   echo "Testing load balancer accessibility..."
   HTTP_STATUS=$(curl -s -o /dev/null -w "%{http_code}" "http://$LB_DNS_NAME")

   if [ "$HTTP_STATUS" = "200" ]; then
     echo "Load balancer is accessible! HTTP Status: $HTTP_STATUS"
     echo "You can access your application at: http://$LB_DNS_NAME"

     # Try to get the content to verify IMDSv2 is working
     echo "Fetching content to verify IMDSv2 functionality..."
     CONTENT=$(curl -s "http://$LB_DNS_NAME")
     echo "Response from server:"
     echo "$CONTENT"

     # Check if the content contains the expected pattern
     if [[ "$CONTENT" == *"Hello from"* && "$CONTENT" == *"in"* ]]; then
       echo "IMDSv2 is working correctly! The instance was able to access metadata
using the token-based approach."
     else
       echo "Warning: Content doesn't match expected pattern. IMDSv2 functionality
could not be verified."
     fi

     break
   else
     echo "Load balancer returned HTTP status: $HTTP_STATUS"
     echo "Will try again in 30 seconds..."
   fi
 else
   echo "Waiting for instances to become healthy..."
   echo "Will check again in 30 seconds..."
 fi

 ATTEMPT=$((ATTEMPT+1))

 if [ $ATTEMPT -le $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
```

```
    sleep 30
  fi
done

if [ $HEALTHY_INSTANCES -lt 2 ]; then
  echo "Warning: Not all instances are healthy after maximum attempts."
  echo "You may need to wait longer or check for configuration issues."
fi

echo "To test your application, run:"
echo "curl http://$LB_DNS_NAME"
echo ""
echo "============================================"
echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
echo "============================================"
echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE

if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
  cleanup_resources
  echo "All resources have been deleted."
else
  echo "Resources will not be deleted. You can manually delete them later."
  echo "To delete resources, run this script again and choose to clean up."
fi
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateRouteTable
  - AttachInternetGateway
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateInternetGateway
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateNatGateway
  - CreateRoute
  - CreateRouteTable
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - CreateSubnet

- CreateVpc
- CreateVpcEndpoint
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInternetGateway
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteNatGateway
- DeleteRouteTable
- DeleteSecurityGroup
- DeleteSubnet
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DeleteVpc
- DeleteVpcEndpoints
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeImages
- DescribePrefixLists
- DetachInternetGateway
- ReleaseAddress

Get started with Amazon VPC

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up your account
- Create and configure a VPC
- Configure your network
- Configure security
- Deploy resources
- Test and verify
- Clean up resources
- Consider production implications
- Consider security implications

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# VPC Creation Script
# This script creates a VPC with public and private subnets, internet gateway, NAT
 gateway, and security groups

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="vpc_creation.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
  echo "ERROR: $1"
  echo "Resources created before error:"
  for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"
  do
    echo "- $resource"
  done

  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  exit 1
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup_resources() {
  echo "Cleaning up resources in reverse order..."

  # Reverse the array to delete in reverse order of creation
  for ((i=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1; i>=0; i--))
  do
    resource="${CREATED_RESOURCES[$i]}"
    resource_type=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d':' -f1)
```

```
   resource_id=$(echo "$resource" | cut -d':' -f2)

   case "$resource_type" in
     "INSTANCE")
       echo "Terminating EC2 instance: $resource_id"
       aws ec2 terminate-instances --instance-ids "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to
terminate instance: $resource_id"
       # Wait for instance to terminate
       echo "Waiting for instance to terminate..."
       aws ec2 wait instance-terminated --instance-ids "$resource_id" || echo
"Failed to wait for instance termination: $resource_id"
       ;;
     "KEY_PAIR")
       echo "Deleting key pair: $resource_id"
       aws ec2 delete-key-pair --key-name "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to delete
key pair: $resource_id"
       # Remove the .pem file if it exists
       if [ -f "${resource_id}.pem" ]; then
         rm -f "${resource_id}.pem"
       fi
       ;;
     "NAT_GATEWAY")
       echo "Deleting NAT Gateway: $resource_id"
       aws ec2 delete-nat-gateway --nat-gateway-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed
to delete NAT Gateway: $resource_id"
       # NAT Gateway deletion takes time, wait for it to complete
       echo "Waiting for NAT Gateway to be deleted..."
       aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-deleted --nat-gateway-ids "$resource_id" || echo
"Failed to wait for NAT Gateway deletion: $resource_id"
       ;;
     "EIP")
       echo "Releasing Elastic IP: $resource_id"
       aws ec2 release-address --allocation-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to
release Elastic IP: $resource_id"
       ;;
     "ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION")
       echo "Disassociating Route Table: $resource_id"
       aws ec2 disassociate-route-table --association-id "$resource_id" || echo
"Failed to disassociate Route Table: $resource_id"
       ;;
     "ROUTE_TABLE")
       echo "Deleting Route Table: $resource_id"
       aws ec2 delete-route-table --route-table-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed
to delete Route Table: $resource_id"
```

```
        ;;
      "INTERNET_GATEWAY")
        echo "Detaching Internet Gateway: $resource_id from VPC: $VPC_ID"
        aws ec2 detach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$resource_id" --vpc-
id "$VPC_ID" || echo "Failed to detach Internet Gateway: $resource_id"
        echo "Deleting Internet Gateway: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$resource_id" || echo
 "Failed to delete Internet Gateway: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "SECURITY_GROUP")
        echo "Deleting Security Group: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-security-group --group-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to
 delete Security Group: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "SUBNET")
        echo "Deleting Subnet: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-subnet --subnet-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to delete
 Subnet: $resource_id"
        ;;
      "VPC")
        echo "Deleting VPC: $resource_id"
        aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id "$resource_id" || echo "Failed to delete VPC:
 $resource_id"
        ;;
    esac
  done
}

# Initialize array to track created resources
CREATED_RESOURCES=()

echo "Starting VPC creation script at $(date)"

# Verify AWS CLI configuration
echo "Verifying AWS CLI configuration..."
aws configure list || handle_error "AWS CLI is not properly configured"

# Verify identity and permissions
echo "Verifying identity and permissions..."
if ! aws sts get-caller-identity; then
  echo "ERROR: Unable to verify AWS identity. This could be due to:"
  echo "  - Expired credentials"
  echo "  - Missing or invalid AWS credentials"
  echo "  - Insufficient permissions"
```

```
  echo ""
  echo "Please run 'aws configure' to update your credentials or check your IAM
 permissions."
  exit 1
fi

# Create VPC
echo "Creating VPC with CIDR block 10.0.0.0/16..."
VPC_ID=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyVPC}]' --query 'Vpc.VpcId' --output text)

if [ -z "$VPC_ID" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create VPC"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("VPC:$VPC_ID")
echo "VPC created with ID: $VPC_ID"

# Enable DNS support and hostnames
echo "Enabling DNS support and hostnames for VPC..."
aws ec2 modify-vpc-attribute --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --enable-dns-support || handle_error
 "Failed to enable DNS support"
aws ec2 modify-vpc-attribute --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" --enable-dns-hostnames ||
 handle_error "Failed to enable DNS hostnames"

# Get available Availability Zones
echo "Getting available Availability Zones..."
AZ1=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query 'AvailabilityZones[0].ZoneName' --
output text)
AZ2=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query 'AvailabilityZones[1].ZoneName' --
output text)

if [ -z "$AZ1" ] || [ -z "$AZ2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to get Availability Zones"
fi

echo "Using Availability Zones: $AZ1 and $AZ2"

# Create public subnets
echo "Creating public subnet in $AZ1..."
PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.0.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ1" \
```

```
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Public-Subnet-
AZ1}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create public subnet in AZ1"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1")
echo "Public subnet created in $AZ1 with ID: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1"

echo "Creating public subnet in $AZ2..."
PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.1.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ2" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Public-Subnet-
AZ2}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create public subnet in AZ2"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2")
echo "Public subnet created in $AZ2 with ID: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2"

# Create private subnets
echo "Creating private subnet in $AZ1..."
PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.2.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ1" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Private-Subnet-
AZ1}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create private subnet in AZ1"
fi
```

```
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1")
echo "Private subnet created in $AZ1 with ID: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1"

echo "Creating private subnet in $AZ2..."
PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2=$(aws ec2 create-subnet \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --cidr-block 10.0.3.0/24 \
  --availability-zone "$AZ2" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Private-Subnet-
AZ2}]' \
  --query 'Subnet.SubnetId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create private subnet in AZ2"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SUBNET:$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2")
echo "Private subnet created in $AZ2 with ID: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2"

# Create Internet Gateway
echo "Creating Internet Gateway..."
IGW_ID=$(aws ec2 create-internet-gateway \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=internet-gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyIGW}]'
 \
  --query 'InternetGateway.InternetGatewayId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$IGW_ID" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create Internet Gateway"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("INTERNET_GATEWAY:$IGW_ID")
echo "Internet Gateway created with ID: $IGW_ID"

# Attach Internet Gateway to VPC
echo "Attaching Internet Gateway to VPC..."
aws ec2 attach-internet-gateway --internet-gateway-id "$IGW_ID" --vpc-id "$VPC_ID"
 || handle_error "Failed to attach Internet Gateway to VPC"

# Create public route table
echo "Creating public route table..."
PUBLIC_RT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
```

```
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Public-RT}]'
 \
  --query 'RouteTable.RouteTableId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_RT" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create public route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE:$PUBLIC_RT")
echo "Public route table created with ID: $PUBLIC_RT"

# Add route to Internet Gateway
echo "Adding route to Internet Gateway in public route table..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --gateway-id "$IGW_ID" || handle_error "Failed to add route to Internet
 Gateway"

# Associate public subnets with public route table
echo "Associating public subnet in $AZ1 with public route table..."
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_1=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT" --
subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate public subnet in AZ1 with public route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_1")

echo "Associating public subnet in $AZ2 with public route table..."
PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_2=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PUBLIC_RT" --
subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate public subnet in AZ2 with public route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PUBLIC_RT_ASSOC_2")

# Create private route table
echo "Creating private route table..."
PRIVATE_RT=$(aws ec2 create-route-table \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
```

```
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=route-table,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=Private-RT}]'
 \
  --query 'RouteTable.RouteTableId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_RT" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create private route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE:$PRIVATE_RT")
echo "Private route table created with ID: $PRIVATE_RT"

# Associate private subnets with private route table
echo "Associating private subnet in $AZ1 with private route table..."
PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_1=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT" --
subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_1" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate private subnet in AZ1 with private route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_1")

echo "Associating private subnet in $AZ2 with private route table..."
PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_2=$(aws ec2 associate-route-table --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT" --
subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2" --query 'AssociationId' --output text)

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_2" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to associate private subnet in AZ2 with private route table"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("ROUTE_TABLE_ASSOCIATION:$PRIVATE_RT_ASSOC_2")

# Allocate Elastic IP for NAT Gateway
echo "Allocating Elastic IP for NAT Gateway..."
EIP_ALLOC=$(aws ec2 allocate-address --domain vpc --query 'AllocationId' --output
 text)

if [ -z "$EIP_ALLOC" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to allocate Elastic IP"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("EIP:$EIP_ALLOC")
echo "Elastic IP allocated with ID: $EIP_ALLOC"
```

```
# Create NAT Gateway
echo "Creating NAT Gateway in public subnet in $AZ1..."
NAT_GW=$(aws ec2 create-nat-gateway \
  --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" \
  --allocation-id "$EIP_ALLOC" \
  --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=natgateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyNATGateway}]' \
  --query 'NatGateway.NatGatewayId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$NAT_GW" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create NAT Gateway"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("NAT_GATEWAY:$NAT_GW")
echo "NAT Gateway created with ID: $NAT_GW"

# Wait for NAT Gateway to be available
echo "Waiting for NAT Gateway to be available..."
aws ec2 wait nat-gateway-available --nat-gateway-ids "$NAT_GW" || handle_error "NAT
 Gateway did not become available"

# Add route to NAT Gateway in private route table
echo "Adding route to NAT Gateway in private route table..."
aws ec2 create-route --route-table-id "$PRIVATE_RT" --destination-cidr-block
 0.0.0.0/0 --nat-gateway-id "$NAT_GW" || handle_error "Failed to add route to NAT
 Gateway"

# Enable auto-assign public IP for instances in public subnets
echo "Enabling auto-assign public IP for instances in public subnet in $AZ1..."
aws ec2 modify-subnet-attribute --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" --map-public-ip-on-
launch || handle_error "Failed to enable auto-assign public IP for public subnet in
 AZ1"

echo "Enabling auto-assign public IP for instances in public subnet in $AZ2..."
aws ec2 modify-subnet-attribute --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2" --map-public-ip-on-
launch || handle_error "Failed to enable auto-assign public IP for public subnet in
 AZ2"

# Create security group for web servers
echo "Creating security group for web servers..."
WEB_SG=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
  --group-name "WebServerSG-$(date +%s)" \
```

```
  --description "Security group for web servers" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --query 'GroupId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$WEB_SG" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create security group for web servers"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SECURITY_GROUP:$WEB_SG")
echo "Security group for web servers created with ID: $WEB_SG"

# Allow HTTP and HTTPS traffic
echo "Allowing HTTP traffic to web servers security group..."
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$WEB_SG" --protocol tcp --port
 80 --cidr 0.0.0.0/0 || handle_error "Failed to allow HTTP traffic"

echo "Allowing HTTPS traffic to web servers security group..."
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$WEB_SG" --protocol tcp --port
 443 --cidr 0.0.0.0/0 || handle_error "Failed to allow HTTPS traffic"

# Note: In a production environment, you should restrict the source IP ranges for
 security
echo "NOTE: In a production environment, you should restrict the source IP ranges
 for HTTP and HTTPS traffic"

# Create security group for database servers
echo "Creating security group for database servers..."
DB_SG=$(aws ec2 create-security-group \
  --group-name "DBServerSG-$(date +%s)" \
  --description "Security group for database servers" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" \
  --query 'GroupId' \
  --output text)

if [ -z "$DB_SG" ]; then
  handle_error "Failed to create security group for database servers"
fi

CREATED_RESOURCES+=("SECURITY_GROUP:$DB_SG")
echo "Security group for database servers created with ID: $DB_SG"

# Allow MySQL/Aurora traffic from web servers only
echo "Allowing MySQL/Aurora traffic from web servers to database servers..."
```

```
aws ec2 authorize-security-group-ingress --group-id "$DB_SG" --protocol tcp --
port 3306 --source-group "$WEB_SG" || handle_error "Failed to allow MySQL/Aurora
 traffic"

# Verify VPC configuration
echo "Verifying VPC configuration..."
echo "VPC:"
aws ec2 describe-vpcs --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" || handle_error "Failed to describe VPC"

echo "Subnets:"
aws ec2 describe-subnets --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" || handle_error
 "Failed to describe subnets"

echo "Route tables:"
aws ec2 describe-route-tables --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" || handle_error
 "Failed to describe route tables"

echo "Internet gateway:"
aws ec2 describe-internet-gateways --filters "Name=attachment.vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID"
 || handle_error "Failed to describe Internet Gateway"

echo "NAT gateway:"
aws ec2 describe-nat-gateways --filter "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" || handle_error
 "Failed to describe NAT Gateway"

echo "Security groups:"
aws ec2 describe-security-groups --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC_ID" ||
 handle_error "Failed to describe security groups"

echo ""
# Summary of created resources
echo "VPC creation completed successfully!"
echo "Summary of created resources:"
echo "- VPC: $VPC_ID"
echo "- Public Subnet in $AZ1: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1"
echo "- Public Subnet in $AZ2: $PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ2"
echo "- Private Subnet in $AZ1: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1"
echo "- Private Subnet in $AZ2: $PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ2"
echo "- Internet Gateway: $IGW_ID"
echo "- Public Route Table: $PUBLIC_RT"
echo "- Private Route Table: $PRIVATE_RT"
echo "- Elastic IP: $EIP_ALLOC"
echo "- NAT Gateway: $NAT_GW"
echo "- Web Servers Security Group: $WEB_SG"
```

```
echo "- Database Servers Security Group: $DB_SG"

# Deploy EC2 instances
echo ""
echo "Deploying EC2 instances..."

# Create key pair for SSH access
KEY_NAME="vpc-tutorial-key-$(date +%s)"
echo "Creating key pair $KEY_NAME..."
aws ec2 create-key-pair --key-name "$KEY_NAME" --query 'KeyMaterial' --output text >
 "${KEY_NAME}.pem" || handle_error "Failed to create key pair"
chmod 400 "${KEY_NAME}.pem"
echo "Key pair saved to ${KEY_NAME}.pem"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("KEY_PAIR:$KEY_NAME")

# Get latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI
echo "Getting latest Amazon Linux 2 AMI..."
AMI_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-images --owners amazon \
  --filters "Name=name,Values=amzn2-ami-hvm-*-x86_64-gp2"
 "Name=state,Values=available" \
  --query "sort_by(Images, &CreationDate)[-1].ImageId" --output text) ||
 handle_error "Failed to get AMI"
echo "Using AMI: $AMI_ID"

# Launch web server in public subnet
echo "Launching web server in public subnet..."
WEB_INSTANCE=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
  --image-id "$AMI_ID" \
  --count 1 \
  --instance-type t2.micro \
  --key-name "$KEY_NAME" \
  --security-group-ids "$WEB_SG" \
  --subnet-id "$PUBLIC_SUBNET_AZ1" \
  --associate-public-ip-address \
  --user-data '#!/bin/bash
    yum update -y
    yum install -y httpd
    systemctl start httpd
    systemctl enable httpd
    echo "<h1>Hello from $(hostname -f) in the public subnet</h1>" > /var/www/html/
index.html' \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=instance,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=WebServer}]' \
  --query 'Instances[0].InstanceId' \
  --output text) || handle_error "Failed to launch web server"
```

```
echo "Web server instance created with ID: $WEB_INSTANCE"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("INSTANCE:$WEB_INSTANCE")

# Wait for web server to be running
echo "Waiting for web server to be running..."
aws ec2 wait instance-running --instance-ids "$WEB_INSTANCE"

# Get web server public IP
WEB_PUBLIC_IP=$(aws ec2 describe-instances --instance-ids "$WEB_INSTANCE" \
  --query 'Reservations[0].Instances[0].PublicIpAddress' --output text)
echo "Web server public IP: $WEB_PUBLIC_IP"
echo "You can access the web server at: http://$WEB_PUBLIC_IP"

# Launch database server in private subnet
echo "Launching database server in private subnet..."
DB_INSTANCE=$(aws ec2 run-instances \
  --image-id "$AMI_ID" \
  --count 1 \
  --instance-type t2.micro \
  --key-name "$KEY_NAME" \
  --security-group-ids "$DB_SG" \
  --subnet-id "$PRIVATE_SUBNET_AZ1" \
  --user-data '#!/bin/bash
    yum update -y
    yum install -y mariadb-server
    systemctl start mariadb
    systemctl enable mariadb' \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=instance,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=DBServer}]' \
  --query 'Instances[0].InstanceId' \
  --output text) || handle_error "Failed to launch database server"
echo "Database server instance created with ID: $DB_INSTANCE"
CREATED_RESOURCES+=("INSTANCE:$DB_INSTANCE")

# Wait for database server to be running
echo "Waiting for database server to be running..."
aws ec2 wait instance-running --instance-ids "$DB_INSTANCE"

# Get database server private IP
DB_PRIVATE_IP=$(aws ec2 describe-instances --instance-ids "$DB_INSTANCE" \
  --query 'Reservations[0].Instances[0].PrivateIpAddress' --output text)
echo "Database server private IP: $DB_PRIVATE_IP"

echo "EC2 instances deployed successfully!"
echo "- Web Server (Public): $WEB_INSTANCE ($WEB_PUBLIC_IP)"
```

```
echo "- Database Server (Private): $DB_INSTANCE ($DB_PRIVATE_IP)"
echo ""
echo "Note: To connect to the web server: ssh -i ${KEY_NAME}.pem ec2-user@
$WEB_PUBLIC_IP"
echo "To connect to the database server, you must first connect to the web server,
 then use it as a bastion host."
echo "============================================"
echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
echo "============================================"
echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE
if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
  echo "Cleaning up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  echo "All resources have been cleaned up."
else
  echo "Resources will not be cleaned up. You can manually clean them up later."
fi

echo "Script completed at $(date)"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateRouteTable
  - AttachInternetGateway
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateInternetGateway
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateNatGateway
  - CreateRoute
  - CreateRouteTable
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - CreateSubnet
  - CreateVpc
  - DeleteInternetGateway
  - DeleteKeyPair

- DeleteNatGateway
- DeleteRouteTable
- DeleteSecurityGroup
- DeleteSubnet
- DeleteVpc
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeInternetGateways
- DescribeNatGateways
- DescribeRouteTables
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeVpcs
- DetachInternetGateway
- DisassociateRouteTable
- ModifySubnetAttribute
- ModifyVpcAttribute
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- TerminateInstances

Get started with Transit Gateway

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a transit gateway with DNS support and default route table settings
- Wait for the transit gateway to become available
- Attach two VPCs to the transit gateway using subnets
- Wait for VPC attachments to become available
- Add routes between VPCs through the transit gateway
- Test connectivity between VPC resources

- Clean up resources including routes, attachments, and transit gateway

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Amazon VPC Transit Gateway CLI Script
# This script demonstrates how to create a transit gateway and connect two VPCs
# Modified to work with older AWS CLI versions that don't support transit gateway
 wait commands

# Error handling
set -e
LOG_FILE="transit-gateway-tutorial.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Function to wait for transit gateway to be available
wait_for_tgw() {
  local tgw_id=$1
  echo "Waiting for Transit Gateway $tgw_id to become available..."

  while true; do
    status=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateways --transit-gateway-ids "$tgw_id" --
query "TransitGateways[0].State" --output text)
    echo "Current status: $status"

    if [ "$status" = "available" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway is now available"
      break
    fi

    echo "Waiting for transit gateway to become available. Current state: $status"
    sleep 10
  done
}
```

```
# Function to wait for transit gateway attachment to be available
wait_for_tgw_attachment() {
  local attachment_id=$1
  echo "Waiting for Transit Gateway Attachment $attachment_id to become
 available..."

  while true; do
    status=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateway-vpc-attachments --transit-gateway-
attachment-ids "$attachment_id" --query "TransitGatewayVpcAttachments[0].State" --
output text)
    echo "Current status: $status"

    if [ "$status" = "available" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway Attachment is now available"
      break
    fi

    echo "Waiting for transit gateway attachment to become available. Current state:
 $status"
    sleep 10
  done
}

# Function to wait for transit gateway attachment to be deleted
wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted() {
  local attachment_id=$1
  echo "Waiting for Transit Gateway Attachment $attachment_id to be deleted..."

  while true; do
    # Check if the attachment still exists
    count=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateway-vpc-attachments --filters
 "Name=transit-gateway-attachment-id,Values=$attachment_id" --query
 "length(TransitGatewayVpcAttachments)" --output text)

    if [ "$count" = "0" ]; then
      echo "Transit Gateway Attachment has been deleted"
      break
    fi

    status=$(aws ec2 describe-transit-gateway-vpc-attachments --transit-gateway-
attachment-ids "$attachment_id" --query "TransitGatewayVpcAttachments[0].State" --
output text 2>/dev/null || echo "deleted")

    if [ "$status" = "deleted" ]; then
```

```
      echo "Transit Gateway Attachment has been deleted"
      break
    fi

    echo "Waiting for transit gateway attachment to be deleted. Current state:
 $status"
    sleep 10
  done
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
  echo "Error occurred. Cleaning up resources..."

  # Delete resources in reverse order
  if [ ! -z "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment 1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID" || true
    wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID" || true
  fi

  if [ ! -z "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment 2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID" || true
    wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID" || true
  fi

  if [ ! -z "$TGW_ID" ]; then
    echo "Deleting Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"
    aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID" || true
  fi

  exit 1
}

# Set up trap for error handling
trap cleanup ERR

echo "=== Amazon VPC Transit Gateway Tutorial ==="
echo "This script will create a transit gateway and connect two VPCs"
echo ""
```

```
# Get a valid availability zone dynamically
echo "Getting available AZ in current region..."
AZ=$(aws ec2 describe-availability-zones --query "AvailabilityZones[0].ZoneName" --
output text)
echo "Using availability zone: $AZ"

# Check if VPCs exist
echo "Checking for existing VPCs..."
VPC1_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-vpcs --filters "Name=tag:Name,Values=VPC1" --query
 "Vpcs[0].VpcId" --output text)
VPC2_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-vpcs --filters "Name=tag:Name,Values=VPC2" --query
 "Vpcs[0].VpcId" --output text)

if [ "$VPC1_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$VPC1_ID" ]; then
  echo "Creating VPC1..."
  VPC1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.1.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1}]' --query Vpc.VpcId --output text)
  echo "Created VPC1: $VPC1_ID"

  # Create a subnet in VPC1
  echo "Creating subnet in VPC1..."
  SUBNET1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC1_ID" --cidr-
block 10.1.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1-Subnet}]' --query Subnet.SubnetId
 --output text)
  echo "Created subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
else
  echo "Using existing VPC1: $VPC1_ID"
  SUBNET1_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-subnets --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC1_ID" --
query "Subnets[0].SubnetId" --output text)
  if [ "$SUBNET1_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$SUBNET1_ID" ]; then
    echo "Creating subnet in VPC1..."
    SUBNET1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC1_ID" --cidr-
block 10.1.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1-Subnet}]' --query Subnet.SubnetId
 --output text)
    echo "Created subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
  else
    echo "Using existing subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
  fi
fi

if [ "$VPC2_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$VPC2_ID" ]; then
  echo "Creating VPC2..."
```

```
  VPC2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-vpc --cidr-block 10.2.0.0/16 --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2}]' --query Vpc.VpcId --output text)
  echo "Created VPC2: $VPC2_ID"

  # Create a subnet in VPC2
  echo "Creating subnet in VPC2..."
  SUBNET2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC2_ID" --cidr-
block 10.2.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2-Subnet}]' --query Subnet.SubnetId
 --output text)
  echo "Created subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
else
  echo "Using existing VPC2: $VPC2_ID"
  SUBNET2_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-subnets --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC2_ID" --
query "Subnets[0].SubnetId" --output text)
  if [ "$SUBNET2_ID" == "None" ] || [ -z "$SUBNET2_ID" ]; then
    echo "Creating subnet in VPC2..."
    SUBNET2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-subnet --vpc-id "$VPC2_ID" --cidr-
block 10.2.0.0/24 --availability-zone "$AZ" --tag-specifications
 'ResourceType=subnet,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2-Subnet}]' --query Subnet.SubnetId
 --output text)
    echo "Created subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
  else
    echo "Using existing subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
  fi
fi

# Get route tables for each VPC
RTB1_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-route-tables --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC1_ID" --
query "RouteTables[0].RouteTableId" --output text)
RTB2_ID=$(aws ec2 describe-route-tables --filters "Name=vpc-id,Values=$VPC2_ID" --
query "RouteTables[0].RouteTableId" --output text)

echo "Route table for VPC1: $RTB1_ID"
echo "Route table for VPC2: $RTB2_ID"

# Step 1: Create the transit gateway
echo "Creating Transit Gateway..."
TGW_ID=$(aws ec2 create-transit-gateway \
  --description "My Transit Gateway" \
  --options
 AmazonSideAsn=64512,AutoAcceptSharedAttachments=disable,DefaultRouteTableAssociation=enable
 \
```

```
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=transit-
gateway,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=MyTransitGateway}]' \
  --query TransitGateway.TransitGatewayId \
  --output text)

echo "Created Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"

# Wait for the transit gateway to become available
wait_for_tgw "$TGW_ID"

# Step 2: Attach VPCs to the transit gateway
echo "Attaching VPC1 to Transit Gateway..."
TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID=$(aws ec2 create-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment \
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC1_ID" \
  --subnet-ids "$SUBNET1_ID" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=transit-gateway-
attachment,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC1-Attachment}]' \
  --query TransitGatewayVpcAttachment.TransitGatewayAttachmentId \
  --output text)

echo "Created Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"

echo "Attaching VPC2 to Transit Gateway..."
TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID=$(aws ec2 create-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment \
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID" \
  --vpc-id "$VPC2_ID" \
  --subnet-ids "$SUBNET2_ID" \
  --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=transit-gateway-
attachment,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=VPC2-Attachment}]' \
  --query TransitGatewayVpcAttachment.TransitGatewayAttachmentId \
  --output text)

echo "Created Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

# Wait for the attachments to become available
wait_for_tgw_attachment "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
wait_for_tgw_attachment "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

# Step 3: Add routes between the transit gateway and VPCs
echo "Adding route from VPC1 to VPC2 via Transit Gateway..."
aws ec2 create-route \
  --route-table-id "$RTB1_ID" \
  --destination-cidr-block 10.2.0.0/16 \
```

```
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID"

echo "Adding route from VPC2 to VPC1 via Transit Gateway..."
aws ec2 create-route \
  --route-table-id "$RTB2_ID" \
  --destination-cidr-block 10.1.0.0/16 \
  --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID"

echo "Routes added successfully"

# Step 4: Display information for testing
echo ""
echo "=== Transit Gateway Setup Complete ==="
echo "Transit Gateway ID: $TGW_ID"
echo "VPC1 ID: $VPC1_ID"
echo "VPC2 ID: $VPC2_ID"
echo ""
echo "To test connectivity:"
echo "1. Launch an EC2 instance in each VPC"
echo "2. Configure security groups to allow ICMP traffic"
echo "3. Connect to one instance and ping the other instance's private IP"
echo ""

# Prompt user before cleanup
read -p "Press Enter to view created resources, or Ctrl+C to exit without
 cleanup..."

echo ""
echo "=== Resources Created ===="
echo "Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"
echo "VPC1: $VPC1_ID"
echo "VPC2: $VPC2_ID"
echo "Subnet in VPC1: $SUBNET1_ID"
echo "Subnet in VPC2: $SUBNET2_ID"
echo "Transit Gateway Attachment for VPC1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
echo "Transit Gateway Attachment for VPC2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"
echo ""

read -p "Do you want to clean up these resources? (y/n): " CLEANUP_CONFIRM
if [[ $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "y" || $CLEANUP_CONFIRM == "Y" ]]; then
  echo "Starting cleanup..."

  # Delete routes
  echo "Deleting routes..."
```

```
  aws ec2 delete-route --route-table-id "$RTB1_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 10.2.0.0/16
  aws ec2 delete-route --route-table-id "$RTB2_ID" --destination-cidr-block
 10.1.0.0/16

  # Delete transit gateway attachments
  echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC1: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"

  echo "Deleting Transit Gateway VPC Attachment for VPC2: $TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway-vpc-attachment --transit-gateway-attachment-id
 "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

  # Wait for attachments to be deleted
  wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_1_ID"
  wait_for_tgw_attachment_deleted "$TGW_ATTACHMENT_2_ID"

  # Delete transit gateway
  echo "Deleting Transit Gateway: $TGW_ID"
  aws ec2 delete-transit-gateway --transit-gateway-id "$TGW_ID"

  echo "Cleanup completed successfully"
else
  echo "Skipping cleanup. Resources will continue to incur charges until manually
 deleted."
fi

echo "Tutorial completed. See $LOG_FILE for detailed logs."
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateRoute
  - CreateSubnet
  - CreateTransitGateway
  - CreateTransitGatewayVpcAttachment
  - CreateVpc
  - DeleteRoute
  - DeleteTransitGateway
  - DeleteTransitGatewayVpcAttachment

- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeRouteTables
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTransitGatewayAttachments
- DescribeTransitGatewayVpcAttachments
- DescribeTransitGateways
- DescribeVpcs

Get started with VPC IPAM

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up and configure Amazon VPC IP Address Manager (IPAM) using the CLI.
- Create an IPAM with operating regions (e.g., us-east-1, us-west-2).
- Retrieve the private scope ID for the IPAM.
- Create a hierarchical structure of IPv4 pools (top-level, regional, and development pools).
- Provision CIDR blocks to each pool (e.g., 10.0.0.0/8, 10.0.0.0/16, 10.0.0.0/24).
- Create a VPC using a CIDR allocated from an IPAM pool.
- Verify IPAM pool allocations and VPC creation.
- Troubleshoot common issues like permission errors, CIDR allocation failures, and dependency violations.
- Clean up IPAM resources (VPC, pools, CIDRs, and IPAM) to avoid unnecessary charges.
- Explore next steps for advanced IPAM features.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash
```

```
# IPAM Getting Started CLI Script - Version 7
# This script creates an IPAM, creates a hierarchy of IP address pools, and
 allocates a CIDR to a VPC
# Fixed to correctly identify the private scope ID, wait for resources to be
 available, add locale to development pool,
# use the correct parameter names for VPC creation, and wait for CIDR provisioning
 to complete

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="ipam_script.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

echo "Starting IPAM setup script at $(date)"
echo "All commands and outputs will be logged to $LOG_FILE"

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
    echo "ERROR: $1"
    echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
    cleanup_resources
    exit 1
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup_resources() {
    echo ""
    echo "==========================================="
    echo "RESOURCES CREATED:"
    echo "==========================================="

    if [ -n "$VPC_ID" ]; then
        echo "VPC: $VPC_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$DEV_POOL_ID" ]; then
        echo "Development Pool: $DEV_POOL_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" ]; then
        echo "Regional Pool: $REGIONAL_POOL_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$TOP_POOL_ID" ]; then
```

```
        echo "Top-level Pool: $TOP_POOL_ID"
    fi

    if [ -n "$IPAM_ID" ]; then
        echo "IPAM: $IPAM_ID"
    fi

    echo ""
    echo "============================================"
    echo "CLEANUP CONFIRMATION"
    echo "============================================"
    echo "Do you want to clean up all created resources? (y/n): "
    read -r CLEANUP_CHOICE

    if [[ "$CLEANUP_CHOICE" =~ ^[Yy]$ ]]; then
        echo "Starting cleanup..."

        # Delete resources in reverse order of creation to handle dependencies

        if [ -n "$VPC_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting VPC: $VPC_ID"
            aws ec2 delete-vpc --vpc-id "$VPC_ID" || echo "Failed to delete VPC"
            echo "Waiting for VPC to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$DEV_POOL_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting Development Pool: $DEV_POOL_ID"
            # First deprovision any CIDRs from the pool
            CIDRS=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" --
query 'IpamPoolCidrs[].Cidr' --output text)
            for CIDR in $CIDRS; do
                echo "Deprovisioning CIDR $CIDR from Development Pool"
                aws ec2 deprovision-ipam-pool-cidr --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" --
cidr "$CIDR" || echo "Failed to deprovision CIDR $CIDR"
                sleep 5
            done
            aws ec2 delete-ipam-pool --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" || echo "Failed
 to delete Development Pool"
            echo "Waiting for Development Pool to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" ]; then
```

```
            echo "Deleting Regional Pool: $REGIONAL_POOL_ID"
            # First deprovision any CIDRs from the pool
            CIDRS=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID"
 --query 'IpamPoolCidrs[].Cidr' --output text)
            for CIDR in $CIDRS; do
                echo "Deprovisioning CIDR $CIDR from Regional Pool"
                aws ec2 deprovision-ipam-pool-cidr --ipam-pool-id
 "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" --cidr "$CIDR" || echo "Failed to deprovision CIDR $CIDR"
                sleep 5
            done
            aws ec2 delete-ipam-pool --ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" || echo
 "Failed to delete Regional Pool"
            echo "Waiting for Regional Pool to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$TOP_POOL_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting Top-level Pool: $TOP_POOL_ID"
            # First deprovision any CIDRs from the pool
            CIDRS=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" --
query 'IpamPoolCidrs[].Cidr' --output text)
            for CIDR in $CIDRS; do
                echo "Deprovisioning CIDR $CIDR from Top-level Pool"
                aws ec2 deprovision-ipam-pool-cidr --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" --
cidr "$CIDR" || echo "Failed to deprovision CIDR $CIDR"
                sleep 5
            done
            aws ec2 delete-ipam-pool --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" || echo "Failed
 to delete Top-level Pool"
            echo "Waiting for Top-level Pool to be deleted..."
            sleep 10
        fi

        if [ -n "$IPAM_ID" ]; then
            echo "Deleting IPAM: $IPAM_ID"
            aws ec2 delete-ipam --ipam-id "$IPAM_ID" || echo "Failed to delete IPAM"
        fi

        echo "Cleanup completed."
    else
        echo "Cleanup skipped. Resources will remain in your account."
    fi
}
```

```
# Function to wait for a pool to be in the 'create-complete' state
wait_for_pool() {
    local pool_id=$1
    local max_attempts=30
    local attempt=1
    local state=""

    echo "Waiting for pool $pool_id to be available..."

    while [ $attempt -le $max_attempts ]; do
        state=$(aws ec2 describe-ipam-pools --ipam-pool-ids "$pool_id" --query
 'IpamPools[0].State' --output text)

        if [ "$state" = "create-complete" ]; then
            echo "Pool $pool_id is now available (state: $state)"
            return 0
        fi

        echo "Attempt $attempt/$max_attempts: Pool $pool_id is in state: $state.
 Waiting..."
        sleep 10
        ((attempt++))
    done

    echo "Timed out waiting for pool $pool_id to be available"
    return 1
}

# Function to wait for a CIDR to be fully provisioned
wait_for_cidr_provisioning() {
    local pool_id=$1
    local cidr=$2
    local max_attempts=30
    local attempt=1
    local state=""

    echo "Waiting for CIDR $cidr to be fully provisioned in pool $pool_id..."

    while [ $attempt -le $max_attempts ]; do
        state=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-cidrs --ipam-pool-id "$pool_id" --query
 "IpamPoolCidrs[?Cidr=='$cidr'].State" --output text)

        if [ "$state" = "provisioned" ]; then
            echo "CIDR $cidr is now fully provisioned (state: $state)"
```

```
            return 0
        fi

        echo "Attempt $attempt/$max_attempts: CIDR $cidr is in state: $state.
 Waiting..."
        sleep 10
        ((attempt++))
    done

    echo "Timed out waiting for CIDR $cidr to be provisioned"
    return 1
}

# Step 1: Create an IPAM
echo "Creating IPAM..."
IPAM_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam \
    --description "My IPAM" \
    --operating-regions RegionName=us-east-1 RegionName=us-west-2)

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create IPAM"
fi

IPAM_ID=$(echo "$IPAM_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamId": "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "IPAM created with ID: $IPAM_ID"

# Wait for IPAM to be created and available
echo "Waiting for IPAM to be available..."
sleep 20

# Step 2: Get the IPAM Scope ID - FIXED to correctly identify the private scope
echo "Getting IPAM Scope ID..."
SCOPE_RESULT=$(aws ec2 describe-ipams --ipam-id "$IPAM_ID")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to get IPAM details"
fi

# Extract the private scope ID directly from the IPAM details
PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID=$(echo "$SCOPE_RESULT" | grep -o '"PrivateDefaultScopeId": "[^"]*'
 | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "Private Scope ID: $PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID"

if [ -z "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" ]; then
```

```
    handle_error "Failed to get Private Scope ID"
fi

# Step 3: Create a Top-Level IPv4 Pool
echo "Creating Top-level IPv4 Pool..."
TOP_POOL_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam-pool \
    --ipam-scope-id "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" \
    --address-family ipv4 \
    --description "Top-level pool")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Top-level Pool"
fi

TOP_POOL_ID=$(echo "$TOP_POOL_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamPoolId": "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -
f4)
echo "Top-level Pool created with ID: $TOP_POOL_ID"

# Wait for the top-level pool to be available
if ! wait_for_pool "$TOP_POOL_ID"; then
    handle_error "Top-level Pool did not become available in time"
fi

# Provision CIDR to the top-level pool
echo "Provisioning CIDR to Top-level Pool..."
TOP_POOL_CIDR="10.0.0.0/8"
PROVISION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 provision-ipam-pool-cidr \
    --ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" \
    --cidr "$TOP_POOL_CIDR")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to provision CIDR to Top-level Pool"
fi

echo "$PROVISION_RESULT"

# Wait for the CIDR to be fully provisioned
if ! wait_for_cidr_provisioning "$TOP_POOL_ID" "$TOP_POOL_CIDR"; then
    handle_error "CIDR provisioning to Top-level Pool did not complete in time"
fi

# Step 4: Create a Regional IPv4 Pool
echo "Creating Regional IPv4 Pool..."
REGIONAL_POOL_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam-pool \
```

```
    --ipam-scope-id "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" \
    --source-ipam-pool-id "$TOP_POOL_ID" \
    --locale us-east-1 \
    --address-family ipv4 \
    --description "Regional pool in us-east-1")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Regional Pool"
fi

REGIONAL_POOL_ID=$(echo "$REGIONAL_POOL_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamPoolId": "[^"]*' |
 cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "Regional Pool created with ID: $REGIONAL_POOL_ID"

# Wait for the regional pool to be available
if ! wait_for_pool "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID"; then
    handle_error "Regional Pool did not become available in time"
fi

# Provision CIDR to the regional pool
echo "Provisioning CIDR to Regional Pool..."
REGIONAL_POOL_CIDR="10.0.0.0/16"
PROVISION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 provision-ipam-pool-cidr \
    --ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" \
    --cidr "$REGIONAL_POOL_CIDR")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to provision CIDR to Regional Pool"
fi

echo "$PROVISION_RESULT"

# Wait for the CIDR to be fully provisioned
if ! wait_for_cidr_provisioning "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" "$REGIONAL_POOL_CIDR"; then
    handle_error "CIDR provisioning to Regional Pool did not complete in time"
fi

# Step 5: Create a Development IPv4 Pool - FIXED to include locale
echo "Creating Development IPv4 Pool..."
DEV_POOL_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-ipam-pool \
    --ipam-scope-id "$PRIVATE_SCOPE_ID" \
    --source-ipam-pool-id "$REGIONAL_POOL_ID" \
    --locale us-east-1 \
    --address-family ipv4 \
```

```
    --description "Development pool")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create Development Pool"
fi

DEV_POOL_ID=$(echo "$DEV_POOL_RESULT" | grep -o '"IpamPoolId": "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -
f4)
echo "Development Pool created with ID: $DEV_POOL_ID"

# Wait for the development pool to be available
if ! wait_for_pool "$DEV_POOL_ID"; then
    handle_error "Development Pool did not become available in time"
fi

# Provision CIDR to the development pool
echo "Provisioning CIDR to Development Pool..."
DEV_POOL_CIDR="10.0.0.0/24"
PROVISION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 provision-ipam-pool-cidr \
    --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" \
    --cidr "$DEV_POOL_CIDR")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to provision CIDR to Development Pool"
fi

echo "$PROVISION_RESULT"

# Wait for the CIDR to be fully provisioned
if ! wait_for_cidr_provisioning "$DEV_POOL_ID" "$DEV_POOL_CIDR"; then
    handle_error "CIDR provisioning to Development Pool did not complete in time"
fi

# Step 6: Create a VPC Using an IPAM Pool CIDR - FIXED to use the correct parameter
 names and a smaller netmask length
echo "Creating VPC using IPAM Pool CIDR..."
VPC_RESULT=$(aws ec2 create-vpc \
    --ipv4-ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID" \
    --ipv4-netmask-length 26 \
    --tag-specifications 'ResourceType=vpc,Tags=[{Key=Name,Value=IPAM-VPC}]')

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to create VPC"
fi
```

```
VPC_ID=$(echo "$VPC_RESULT" | grep -o '"VpcId": "[^"]*' | cut -d'"' -f4)
echo "VPC created with ID: $VPC_ID"

# Step 7: Verify the IPAM Pool Allocation
echo "Verifying IPAM Pool Allocation..."
ALLOCATION_RESULT=$(aws ec2 get-ipam-pool-allocations \
    --ipam-pool-id "$DEV_POOL_ID")

if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "Failed to verify IPAM Pool Allocation"
fi

echo "IPAM Pool Allocation verified:"
echo "$ALLOCATION_RESULT" | grep -A 5 "Allocations"

echo ""
echo "IPAM setup completed successfully!"
echo ""

# Prompt for cleanup
cleanup_resources

echo "Script completed at $(date)"
exit 0
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateIpam
  - CreateIpamPool
  - CreateVpc
  - DeleteIpam
  - DeleteIpamPool
  - DeleteVpc
  - DeprovisionIpamPoolCidr
  - DescribeIpamPools
  - DescribeIpams
  - DescribeVpcs
  - GetIpamPoolAllocations

- GetIpamPoolCidrs
- ProvisionIpamPoolCidr

HealthImaging examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with HealthImaging.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatastore`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function imaging_create_datastore
#
# This function creates an AWS HealthImaging data store for importing DICOM P10
 files.
#
```

```
# Parameters:
#       -n data_store_name - The name of the data store.
#
# Returns:
#       The datastore ID.
#    And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_create_datastore() {
  local datastore_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_create_datastore"
    echo "Creates an AWS HealthImaging data store for importing DICOM P10 files."
    echo "  -n data_store_name - The name of the data store."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) datastore_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$datastore_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a data store name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  response=$(aws medical-imaging create-datastore \
    --datastore-name "$datastore_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'datastoreId')

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports medical-imaging create-datastore operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatastore`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function imaging_delete_datastore
#
# This function deletes an AWS HealthImaging data store.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i datastore_id - The ID of the data store.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_delete_datastore() {
  local datastore_id response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_delete_datastore"
    echo "Deletes an AWS HealthImaging data store."
    echo "  -i datastore_id - The ID of the data store."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) datastore_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$datastore_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a data store ID with the -i parameter."
    usage
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws medical-imaging delete-datastore \
    --datastore-id "$datastore_id")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports medical-imaging delete-datastore operation failed.
$response"
    return 1
  fi

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatastore`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
###########################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###########################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###########################################################################
```

```
# function imaging_get_datastore
#
# Get a data store's properties.
#
# Parameters:
#       -i data_store_id - The ID of the data store.
#
# Returns:
#       [datastore_name, datastore_id, datastore_status, datastore_arn,  created_at,
 updated_at]
#    And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_get_datastore() {
  local datastore_id option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local error_code
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_get_datastore"
    echo "Gets a data store's properties."
    echo "  -i datastore_id - The ID of the data store."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "i:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      i) datastore_id="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$datastore_id" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a data store ID with the -i parameter."
```

```
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local response

  response=$(
    aws medical-imaging get-datastore \
      --datastore-id "$datastore_id" \
      --output text \
      --query "[ datastoreProperties.datastoreName,
 datastoreProperties.datastoreId, datastoreProperties.datastoreStatus,
 datastoreProperties.datastoreArn,  datastoreProperties.createdAt,
 datastoreProperties.updatedAt]"
  )
  error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-datastores operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDatastores`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatastores`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function imaging_list_datastores
#
# List the HealthImaging data stores in the account.
#
# Returns:
#       [[datastore_name, datastore_id, datastore_status]]
#    And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function imaging_list_datastores() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local error_code
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function imaging_list_datastores"
    echo "Lists the AWS HealthImaging data stores in the account."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response
  response=$(aws medical-imaging list-datastores \
    --output text \
    --query "datastoreSummaries[*][datastoreName, datastoreId, datastoreStatus]")
  error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-datastores operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

IAM examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user_assume_role
#
```

```
# Scenario to create an IAM user, create an IAM role, and apply the role to the
 user.
#
#     "IAM access" permissions are needed to run this code.
#     "STS assume role" permissions are needed to run this code. (Note: It might be
 necessary to
#           create a custom policy).
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
##############################################################################
function iam_create_user_assume_role() {
  {
    if [ "$IAM_OPERATIONS_SOURCED" != "True" ]; then

      source ./iam_operations.sh
    fi
  }

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "Welcome to the IAM create user and assume role demo."
  echo
  echo "This demo will create an IAM user, create an IAM role, and apply the role to
 the user."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  echo -n "Enter a name for a new IAM user: "
  get_input
  user_name=$get_input_result

  local user_arn
  user_arn=$(iam_create_user -u "$user_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} == 0 ]]; then
    echo "Created demo IAM user named $user_name"
  else
    errecho "$user_arn"
    errecho "The user failed to create. This demo will exit."
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  local access_key_response
  access_key_response=$(iam_create_user_access_key -u "$user_name")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} != 0 ]]; then
    errecho "The access key failed to create. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$user_name"
    return 1
  fi

  IFS=$'\t ' read -r -a access_key_values <<<"$access_key_response"
  local key_name=${access_key_values[0]}
  local key_secret=${access_key_values[1]}

  echo "Created access key named $key_name"

  echo "Wait 10 seconds for the user to be ready."
  sleep 10
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  local iam_role_name
  iam_role_name=$(generate_random_name "test-role")
  echo "Creating a role named $iam_role_name with user $user_name as the principal."

  local assume_role_policy_document="{
    \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
    \"Statement\": [{
        \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
        \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"$user_arn\"},
        \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
        }]
    }"

  local role_arn
  role_arn=$(iam_create_role -n "$iam_role_name" -p "$assume_role_policy_document")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
    echo "Created IAM role named $iam_role_name"
  else
    errecho "The role failed to create. This demo will exit."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name"
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  local policy_name
  policy_name=$(generate_random_name "test-policy")
  local policy_document="{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]}"

  local policy_arn
  policy_arn=$(iam_create_policy -n "$policy_name" -p "$policy_document")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} == 0 ]]; then
    echo "Created  IAM policy named $policy_name"
  else
    errecho "The policy failed to create."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name"
    return 1
  fi

  if (iam_attach_role_policy -n "$iam_role_name" -p "$policy_arn"); then
    echo "Attached policy $policy_arn to role $iam_role_name"
  else
    errecho "The policy failed to attach."
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn"
    return 1
  fi

  local assume_role_policy_document="{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\",
                    \"Resource\": \"$role_arn\"}]}"

  local assume_role_policy_name
  assume_role_policy_name=$(generate_random_name "test-assume-role-")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  local assume_role_policy_arn
  assume_role_policy_arn=$(iam_create_policy -n "$assume_role_policy_name" -p
"$assume_role_policy_document")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
```

```
 if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
   echo "Created  IAM policy named $assume_role_policy_name for sts assume role"
 else
   errecho "The policy failed to create."
   clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn" "$policy_arn"
   return 1
 fi

 echo "Wait 10 seconds to give AWS time to propagate these new resources and
connections."
 sleep 10
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo

 echo "Try to list buckets without the new user assuming the role."
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo

 # Set the environment variables for the created user.
 # bashsupport disable=BP2001
 export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=$key_name
 # bashsupport disable=BP2001
 export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=$key_secret

 local buckets
 buckets=$(s3_list_buckets)

 # shellcheck disable=SC2181
 if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
   local bucket_count
   bucket_count=$(echo "$buckets" | wc -w | xargs)
   echo "There are $bucket_count buckets in the account. This should not have
happened."
 else
   errecho "Because the role with permissions has not been assumed, listing buckets
failed."
 fi

 echo
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo "Now assume the role $iam_role_name and list the buckets."
 echo_repeat "*" 88
 echo
```

```
  local credentials

  credentials=$(sts_assume_role -r "$role_arn" -n "AssumeRoleDemoSession")
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
    echo "Assumed role $iam_role_name"
  else
    errecho "Failed to assume role."
    export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=""
    export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=""
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn" "$policy_arn"
"$assume_role_policy_arn"
    return 1
  fi

  IFS=$'\t ' read -r -a credentials <<<"$credentials"

  export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=${credentials[0]}
  export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=${credentials[1]}
  # bashsupport disable=BP2001
  export AWS_SESSION_TOKEN=${credentials[2]}

  buckets=$(s3_list_buckets)

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [ ${?} == 0 ]; then
    local bucket_count
    bucket_count=$(echo "$buckets" | wc -w | xargs)
    echo "There are $bucket_count buckets in the account. Listing buckets succeeded
because of "
    echo "the assumed role."
  else
    errecho "Failed to list buckets. This should not happen."
    export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=""
    export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=""
    export AWS_SESSION_TOKEN=""
    clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn" "$policy_arn"
"$assume_role_policy_arn"
    return 1
  fi

  local result=0
  export AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID=""
  export AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY=""
```

```
  echo
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "The created resources will now be deleted."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo

  clean_up "$user_name" "$key_name" "$iam_role_name" "$policy_arn" "$policy_arn"
 "$assume_role_policy_arn"

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    result=1
  fi

  return $result
}
```

The IAM functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function iam_user_exists
#
# This function checks to see if the specified AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) user already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the IAM user to check.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If the user already exists.
#       1 - If the user doesn't exist.
###############################################################################
function iam_user_exists() {
  local user_name
  user_name=$1

  # Check whether the IAM user already exists.
  # We suppress all output - we're interested only in the return code.

  local errors
  errors=$(aws iam get-user \
```

```
    --user-name "$user_name" 2>&1 >/dev/null)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -eq 0 ]]; then
    return 0 # 0 in Bash script means true.
  else
    if [[ $errors != *"error"*"(NoSuchEntity)"* ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log $error_code
      errecho "Error calling iam get-user $errors"
    fi

    return 1 # 1 in Bash script means false.
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user
#
# This function creates the specified IAM user, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the user.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must supply
 a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user. It must be unique within the
 account."
    echo ""
  }
```

```
# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "u:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
iecho ""

# If the user already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
if (iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
  errecho "ERROR: A user with that name already exists in the account."
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-user --user-name "$user_name" \
  --output text \
  --query 'User.Arn')

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-user operation failed.$response"
  return 1
```

```
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user_access_key
#
# This function creates an IAM access key for the specified user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name -- The name of the IAM user.
#       [-f file_name] -- The optional file name for the access key output.
#
# Returns:
#       [access_key_id access_key_secret]
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_user_access_key() {
  local user_name file_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) key pair."
    echo "  -u user_name   The name of the IAM user."
    echo "  [-f file_name]   Optional file name for the access key output."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
```

```
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-access-key \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$file_name" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_name"
  fi

  local key_id key_secret
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_id=$(echo $response | cut -f 2 -d ' ')
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_secret=$(echo $response | cut -f 4 -d ' ')

  echo "$key_id $key_secret"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_role
```

```
#
# This function creates an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the role.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_role() {
  local role_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1
```

```
  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-role \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --assume-role-policy-document "$policy_document" \
    --output text \
    --query Role.Arn)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_policy
#
# This function creates an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_name -- The name of the IAM policy.
#       -p policy_json -- The policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function iam_create_policy() {
  local policy_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_policy"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy."
    echo "  -n policy_name   The name of the IAM policy."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The policy document."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-policy \
```

```
    --policy-name "$policy_name" \
    --policy-document "$policy_document" \
    --output text \
    --query Policy.Arn)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_attach_role_policy
#
# This function attaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_attach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_attach_role_policy"
    echo "Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
```

```
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports attach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
```

```
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_detach_role_policy
#
# This function detaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_detach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_detach_role_policy"
    echo "Detaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
```

```
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam detach-role-policy \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports detach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_policy
#
# This function deletes an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function iam_delete_policy() {
  local policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_policy"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy"
    echo "  -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy arn with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Policy arn:  $policy_arn"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-policy \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-policy response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_role
#
# This function deletes an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_role() {
  local role_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_role"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role"
    echo "  -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
```

```
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  echo "role_name:$role_name"
  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Role name:  $role_name"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-role \
    --role-name "$role_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-role response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}

################################################################################
# function iam_delete_access_key
#
# This function deletes an IAM access key for the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user.
```

```
#       -k access_key -- The access key to delete.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_access_key() {
  local user_name access_key response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_access_key"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key for the
 specified IAM user"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo "  -k access_key   The access key to delete."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:k:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      k) access_key="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  if [[ -z "$access_key" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide an access key with the -k parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Username:   $user_name"
  iecho "    Access key:   $access_key"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-access-key \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --access-key-id "$access_key")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-access-key operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-access-key response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_user
#
# This function deletes the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
```

```
# bashsupport disable=BP5008
function usage() {
  echo "function iam_delete_user"
  echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must supply
a username:"
  echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "u:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
iecho ""

# If the user does not exist, we don't want to try to delete it.
if (! iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
  errecho "ERROR: A user with that name does not exist in the account."
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam delete-user \
```

```
    --user-name "$user_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-user operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-user response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_attach_role_policy
#
# This function attaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_attach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_attach_role_policy"
    echo "Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
```

```
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam attach-role-policy \
  --role-name "$role_name" \
  --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports attach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
  return 1
fi
```

```
  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_user_access_key
#
# This function creates an IAM access key for the specified user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name -- The name of the IAM user.
#       [-f file_name] -- The optional file name for the access key output.
#
# Returns:
#       [access_key_id access_key_secret]
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
```

```
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_user_access_key() {
  local user_name file_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) key pair."
    echo "  -u user_name   The name of the IAM user."
    echo "  [-f file_name]   Optional file name for the access key output."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:f:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      f) file_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-access-key \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text)

  local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-access-key operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -n "$file_name" ]]; then
    echo "$response" >"$file_name"
  fi

  local key_id key_secret
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_id=$(echo $response | cut -f 2 -d ' ')
  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  key_secret=$(echo $response | cut -f 4 -d ' ')

  echo "$key_id $key_secret"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
```

```
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_policy
#
# This function creates an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_name -- The name of the IAM policy.
#       -p policy_json -- The policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_policy() {
  local policy_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_policy"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy."
    echo "  -n policy_name   The name of the IAM policy."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The policy document."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name "$policy_name" \
    --policy-document "$policy_document" \
    --output text \
    --query Policy.Arn)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_create_role
#
# This function creates an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the role.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_create_role() {
  local role_name policy_document response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user_access_key"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_json -- The assume role policy document."
```

```
  echo ""
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    p) policy_document="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$policy_document" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy document with the -p parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

response=$(aws iam create-role \
  --role-name "$role_name" \
  --assume-role-policy-document "$policy_document" \
  --output text \
  --query Role.Arn)

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-role operation failed.\n$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
```

```
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_create_user
#
# This function creates the specified IAM user, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       The ARN of the user.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_create_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_create_user"
    echo "Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must supply
 a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user. It must be unique within the
 account."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
```

```
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
  iecho ""

  # If the user already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
  if (iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A user with that name already exists in the account."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam create-user --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'User.Arn')

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-user operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_access_key
#
# This function deletes an IAM access key for the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user.
#       -k access_key -- The access key to delete.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_access_key() {
  local user_name access_key response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_access_key"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key for the
 specified IAM user"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo "  -k access_key   The access key to delete."
    echo ""
```

```
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "u:k:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    k) access_key="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

if [[ -z "$access_key" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide an access key with the -k parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    Username:   $user_name"
iecho "    Access key:   $access_key"
iecho ""

response=$(aws iam delete-access-key \
  --user-name "$user_name" \
  --access-key-id "$access_key")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
```

```
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-access-key operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-access-key response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
```

```
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_delete_policy
#
# This function deletes an IAM policy.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_delete_policy() {
  local policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_policy"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy"
    echo "  -n policy_arn -- The name of the IAM policy arn."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
```

```
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy arn with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Policy arn:  $policy_arn"
  iecho ""

  response=$(aws iam delete-policy \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-policy response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
##############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_delete_role
#
# This function deletes an IAM role.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_delete_role() {
  local role_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_role"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role"
    echo "  -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role."
    echo ""
```

```
}

# Retrieve the calling parameters.
while getopts "n:h" option; do
  case "${option}" in
    n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
    h)
      usage
      return 0
      ;;
    \?)
      echo "Invalid parameter"
      usage
      return 1
      ;;
  esac
done
export OPTIND=1

echo "role_name:$role_name"
if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
  errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
  usage
  return 1
fi

iecho "Parameters:\n"
iecho "    Role name:  $role_name"
iecho ""

response=$(aws iam delete-role \
  --role-name "$role_name")

local error_code=${?}

if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
  aws_cli_error_log $error_code
  errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-role operation failed.\n$response"
  return 1
fi

iecho "delete-role response:$response"
iecho
```

```
  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_delete_user
#
```

```
# This function deletes the specified IAM user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user to create.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function iam_delete_user() {
  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_delete_user"
    echo "Deletes an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user. You must supply
 a username:"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi
```

```
  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    User name:   $user_name"
  iecho ""

  # If the user does not exist, we don't want to try to delete it.
  if (! iam_user_exists "$user_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A user with that name does not exist in the account."
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam delete-user \
    --user-name "$user_name")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports delete-user operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  iecho "delete-user response:$response"
  iecho

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
##############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
##############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

##############################################################################
# function iam_detach_role_policy
#
# This function detaches an IAM policy to a tole.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_name -- The name of the IAM role.
#       -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN..
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_detach_role_policy() {
  local role_name policy_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_detach_role_policy"
    echo "Detaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to an IAM
 role."
    echo "  -n role_name   The name of the IAM role."
    echo "  -p policy_ARN -- The IAM policy document ARN."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "n:p:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      p) policy_arn="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
```

```
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$role_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a role name with the -n parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  if [[ -z "$policy_arn" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a policy ARN with the -p parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam detach-role-policy \
    --role-name "$role_name" \
    --policy-arn "$policy_arn")

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports detach-role-policy operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

GetUser

The following code example shows how to use GetUser.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_user_exists
#
# This function checks to see if the specified AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM) user already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the IAM user to check.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If the user already exists.
#       1 - If the user doesn't exist.
###############################################################################
function iam_user_exists() {
  local user_name
  user_name=$1

  # Check whether the IAM user already exists.
  # We suppress all output - we're interested only in the return code.

  local errors
  errors=$(aws iam get-user \
```

```
    --user-name "$user_name" 2>&1 >/dev/null)

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -eq 0 ]]; then
    return 0 # 0 in Bash script means true.
  else
    if [[ $errors != *"error"*"(NoSuchEntity)"* ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log $error_code
      errecho "Error calling iam get-user $errors"
    fi

    return 1 # 1 in Bash script means false.
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_list_access_keys
```

```
#
# This function lists the access keys for the specified user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name -- The name of the IAM user.
#
# Returns:
#       access_key_ids
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_list_access_keys() {

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_list_access_keys"
    echo "Lists the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access key IDs for the
 specified user."
    echo "  -u user_name   The name of the IAM user."
    echo ""
  }

  local user_name response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "u:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
```

```
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  response=$(aws iam list-access-keys \
    --user-name "$user_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'AccessKeyMetadata[].AccessKeyId')

  local error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-access-keys operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
```

```
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function iam_list_users
#
# List the IAM users in the account.
#
# Returns:
#       The list of users names
#    And:
#       0 - If the user already exists.
#       1 - If the user doesn't exist.
###############################################################################
function iam_list_users() {
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local error_code
  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_list_users"
    echo "Lists the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) user in the account."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done
  export OPTIND=1

  local response

  response=$(aws iam list-users \
```

```
    --output text \
    --query "Users[].UserName")
  error_code=${?}

  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports list-users operation failed.$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`UpdateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iam_update_access_key
#
# This function can activate or deactivate an IAM access key for the specified IAM
 user.
#
# Parameters:
#       -u user_name  -- The name of the user.
#       -k access_key -- The access key to update.
#       -a            -- Activate the selected access key.
#       -d            -- Deactivate the selected access key.
#
```

```
# Example:
#       # To deactivate the selected access key for IAM user Bob
#       iam_update_access_key -u Bob -k AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -d
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function iam_update_access_key() {
  local user_name access_key status response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.
  local activate_flag=false deactivate_flag=false

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function iam_update_access_key"
    echo "Updates the status of an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) access
 key for the specified IAM user"
    echo "  -u user_name    The name of the user."
    echo "  -k access_key   The access key to update."
    echo "  -a              Activate the access key."
    echo "  -d              Deactivate the access key."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
    while getopts "u:k:adh" option; do
      case "${option}" in
        u) user_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
        k) access_key="${OPTARG}" ;;
        a) activate_flag=true ;;
        d) deactivate_flag=true ;;
        h)
          usage
          return 0
          ;;
        \?)
          echo "Invalid parameter"
          usage
          return 1
          ;;
      esac
    done
    export OPTIND=1
```

```
  # Validate input parameters
   if [[ -z "$user_name" ]]; then
     errecho "ERROR: You must provide a username with the -u parameter."
     usage
     return 1
   fi

   if [[ -z "$access_key" ]]; then
     errecho "ERROR: You must provide an access key with the -k parameter."
     usage
     return 1
   fi

   # Ensure that only -a or -d is specified
   if [[ "$activate_flag" == true && "$deactivate_flag" == true ]]; then
     errecho "ERROR: You cannot specify both -a (activate) and -d (deactivate) at
the same time."
     usage
     return 1
   fi

   # If neither -a nor -d is provided, return an error
   if [[ "$activate_flag" == false && "$deactivate_flag" == false ]]; then
     errecho "ERROR: You must specify either -a (activate) or -d (deactivate)."
     usage
     return 1
   fi

   # Determine the status based on the flag
   if [[ "$activate_flag" == true ]]; then
     status="Active"
   elif [[ "$deactivate_flag" == true ]]; then
     status="Inactive"
   fi

   iecho "Parameters:\n"
   iecho "    Username:   $user_name"
   iecho "    Access key: $access_key"
   iecho "    New status: $status"
   iecho ""

   # Update the access key status
   response=$(aws iam update-access-key \
```

```
      --user-name "$user_name" \
      --access-key-id "$access_key" \
      --status "$status" 2>&1)

    local error_code=${?}

    if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
      aws_cli_error_log $error_code
      errecho "ERROR: AWS reports update-access-key operation failed.\n$response"
      return 1
    fi

    iecho "update-access-key response: $response"
    iecho

    return 0
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Scenarios

Set up Attribute-Based Access Control

The following code example shows how to implement Attribute-Based Access Control (ABAC) for DynamoDB.

- Create an IAM policy for ABAC.
- Create tables with tags for different departments.
- List and filter tables based on tags.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create an IAM policy for ABAC.

```
# Step 1: Create a policy document for ABAC
cat > abac-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
```

```
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchGetItem",
        "dynamodb:Query",
        "dynamodb:Scan"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}"
        }
      }
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
        "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
        "dynamodb:BatchWriteItem"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/*",
      "Condition": {
        "StringEquals": {
          "aws:ResourceTag/Department": "${aws:PrincipalTag/Department}",
          "aws:ResourceTag/Environment": "Development"
        }
      }
    }
  ]
}
EOF

# Step 2: Create the IAM policy
aws iam create-policy \
    --policy-name DynamoDBDepartmentBasedAccess \
    --policy-document file://abac-policy.json
```

Create tables with tags for different departments.

```
# Create a DynamoDB table with tags for ABAC
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name FinanceData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Finance \
        Key=Environment,Value=Development

# Create another table with different tags
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name MarketingData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --tags \
        Key=Department,Value=Marketing \
        Key=Environment,Value=Production
```

List and filter tables based on tags.

```
# List all DynamoDB tables
echo "Listing all tables:"
aws dynamodb list-tables

# Get ARNs for all tables
echo -e "\nGetting ARNs for all tables:"
TABLE_ARNS=$(aws dynamodb list-tables --query "TableNames[*]" --output text | xargs
 -I {} aws dynamodb describe-table --table-name {} --query "Table.TableArn" --output
 text)

# For each table ARN, list its tags
echo -e "\nListing tags for each table:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    echo -e "\nTags for table: $TABLE_NAME"
    aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN
```

```
done

# Example: Find tables with a specific tag
echo -e "\nFinding tables with Environment=Production tag:"
for ARN in $TABLE_ARNS; do
    TABLE_NAME=$(echo $ARN | awk -F/ '{print $2}')
    TAGS=$(aws dynamodb list-tags-of-resource --resource-arn $ARN --query "Tags[?
Key=='Environment' && Value=='Production']" --output text)
    if [ ! -z "$TAGS" ]; then
        echo "Table with Production tag: $TABLE_NAME"
    fi
done
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateTable
  - ListTables

Work with Streams and Time-to-Live

The following code example shows how to manage DynamoDB Streams and Time-to-Live features.

- Create a table with Streams enabled.
- Describe Streams.
- Create a Lambda function for processing Streams.
- Enable TTL on a table.
- Add items with TTL attributes.
- Describe TTL settings.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with Streams enabled.

```
# Create a table with DynamoDB Streams enabled
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
```

```
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --stream-specification StreamEnabled=true,StreamViewType=NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES
```

Describe Streams.

```
# Get information about the stream
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.StreamSpecification"

# Get the stream ARN
STREAM_ARN=$(aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name StreamsDemo \
    --query "Table.LatestStreamArn" \
    --output text)

echo "Stream ARN: $STREAM_ARN"

# Describe the stream
aws dynamodbstreams describe-stream \
    --stream-arn $STREAM_ARN
```

Create a Lambda function for Streams.

```
# Step 1: Create an IAM role for the Lambda function
cat > trust-policy.json << 'EOF'
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
EOF
```

```
aws iam create-role \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --assume-role-policy-document file://trust-policy.json

# Step 2: Attach permissions to the role
aws iam attach-role-policy \
    --role-name DynamoDBStreamsLambdaRole \
    --policy-arn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaDynamoDBExecutionRole

# Step 3: Create a Lambda function (code would be in a separate file)
echo "Lambda function creation would be done separately with appropriate code"

# Step 4: Create an event source mapping
echo "Example command to create event source mapping:"
echo "aws lambda create-event-source-mapping \\"
echo "    --function-name ProcessDynamoDBRecords \\"
echo "    --event-source $STREAM_ARN \\"
echo "    --batch-size 100 \\"
echo "    --starting-position LATEST"
```

Enable TTL on a table.

```
# Create a table for TTL demonstration
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=ID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=ID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST

# Wait for table to become active
aws dynamodb wait table-exists --table-name TTLDemo

# Enable TTL on the table
aws dynamodb update-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --time-to-live-specification "Enabled=true, AttributeName=ExpirationTime"
```

Add items with TTL attributes.

```
# Calculate expiration time (current time + 1 day in seconds)
EXPIRATION_TIME=$(date -d "+1 day" +%s)

# Add an item with TTL attribute
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item1"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 day"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME'"}
    }'

# Add an item that expires in 1 hour
EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR=$(date -d "+1 hour" +%s)
aws dynamodb put-item \
    --table-name TTLDemo \
    --item '{
        "ID": {"S": "item2"},
        "Data": {"S": "This item will expire in 1 hour"},
        "ExpirationTime": {"N": "'$EXPIRATION_TIME_HOUR'"}
    }'
```

Describe TTL settings.

```
# Describe TTL settings for a table
aws dynamodb describe-time-to-live \
    --table-name TTLDemo
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - DescribeTimeToLive
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTimeToLive

AWS KMS examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with AWS KMS.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Work with table encryption

The following code example shows how to manage encryption options for DynamoDB tables.

- Create a table with default encryption.
- Create a table with a customer managed CMK.
- Update table encryption settings.
- Describe table encryption.

AWS CLI with Bash script

Create a table with default encryption.

```
# Create a table with default encryption (AWS owned key)
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=CustomerID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS
```

Create a table with a customer managed CMK.

```
# Step 1: Create a customer managed key in KMS
aws kms create-key \
    --description "Key for DynamoDB table encryption" \
    --key-usage ENCRYPT_DECRYPT \
    --customer-master-key-spec SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT

# Store the key ID for later use
KEY_ID=$(aws kms list-keys --query "Keys[?contains(KeyArn, 'Key for
 DynamoDB')].KeyId" --output text)

# Step 2: Create a table with the customer managed key
aws dynamodb create-table \
    --table-name SensitiveData \
    --attribute-definitions \
        AttributeName=RecordID,AttributeType=S \
    --key-schema \
        AttributeName=RecordID,KeyType=HASH \
    --billing-mode PAY_PER_REQUEST \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Update table encryption.

```
# Update a table to use a different KMS key
aws dynamodb update-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --sse-specification Enabled=true,SSEType=KMS,KMSMasterKeyId=$KEY_ID
```

Describe table encryption.

```
# Describe the table to see encryption settings
aws dynamodb describe-table \
    --table-name CustomerData \
    --query "Table.SSEDescription"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CreateKey

- CreateTable
- DescribeTable
- UpdateTable

Lightsail examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with Lightsail.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Get started with Lightsail

The following code example shows how to:

- Explore available blueprints and bundles for instance creation
- Create a Lightsail instance with Amazon Linux 2023
- Monitor instance status until running
- Download default key pair for SSH access
- Create and attach additional block storage disk
- Create an instance snapshot for backup
- Clean up resources to avoid ongoing charges

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Amazon Lightsail Getting Started CLI Script
# This script demonstrates how to create and manage Lightsail resources using the
 AWS CLI

# FIXES APPLIED:
# 1. Added polling mechanism to check disk state before attaching
# 2. Added polling mechanism to check snapshot state before proceeding with cleanup
# 3. Set AWS_REGION variable to us-west-2 for consistent region usage

# Set AWS region
export AWS_REGION="us-west-2"
echo "Using AWS region: $AWS_REGION"

# Set up logging
LOG_FILE="lightsail-script.log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

echo "Starting Lightsail Getting Started script at $(date)"

# Error handling function
handle_error() {
  echo "ERROR: $1"
  echo "Attempting to clean up resources..."
  cleanup_resources
  exit 1
}

# Function to check if a command succeeded
check_status() {
  if [ $? -ne 0 ]; then
    handle_error "$1"
  fi
```

```
}

# Generate a random identifier for resource names
RANDOM_ID=$(openssl rand -hex 4)
INSTANCE_NAME="LightsailInstance-${RANDOM_ID}"
DISK_NAME="LightsailDisk-${RANDOM_ID}"
SNAPSHOT_NAME="LightsailSnapshot-${RANDOM_ID}"

# Array to track created resources
declare -a CREATED_RESOURCES

# Function to add a resource to the tracking array
track_resource() {
  CREATED_RESOURCES+=("$1:$2")
  echo "Created $1: $2"
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup_resources() {
  echo "Resources created by this script:"
  for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
    echo "  $resource"
  done

  # Reverse the array to delete resources in reverse order
  for (( idx=${#CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}-1 ; idx>=0 ; idx-- )); do
    IFS=':' read -r type name <<< "${CREATED_RESOURCES[idx]}"

    case "$type" in
      "instance_snapshot")
        echo "Deleting instance snapshot: $name"
        aws lightsail delete-instance-snapshot --instance-snapshot-name "$name" --
region $AWS_REGION
        ;;
      "disk_snapshot")
        echo "Deleting disk snapshot: $name"
        aws lightsail delete-disk-snapshot --disk-snapshot-name "$name" --region
 $AWS_REGION
        ;;
      "disk")
        echo "Detaching disk: $name"
        aws lightsail detach-disk --disk-name "$name" --region $AWS_REGION
        sleep 10 # Wait for detach to complete
        echo "Deleting disk: $name"
```

```
        aws lightsail delete-disk --disk-name "$name" --region $AWS_REGION
        ;;
      "instance")
        echo "Deleting instance: $name"
        # Check instance state before attempting to delete
        INSTANCE_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-instance-state --instance-name "$name" --
region $AWS_REGION --query 'state.name' --output text 2>/dev/null)
        if [ "$INSTANCE_STATE" == "pending" ]; then
          echo "Instance is in pending state. Waiting for it to be ready before
 deleting..."
          MAX_WAIT=30
          WAITED=0
          while [ "$INSTANCE_STATE" == "pending" ] && [ $WAITED -lt $MAX_WAIT ]; do
            sleep 10
            WAITED=$((WAITED+1))
            INSTANCE_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-instance-state --instance-name
 "$name" --region $AWS_REGION --query 'state.name' --output text 2>/dev/null)
            echo "Instance state: $INSTANCE_STATE"
          done
        fi
        aws lightsail delete-instance --instance-name "$name" --region $AWS_REGION
        ;;
    esac
  done

  echo "Cleanup completed"
}

# Step 1: Verify AWS CLI configuration
echo "Step 1: Verifying AWS CLI configuration"
aws configure list
check_status "Failed to verify AWS CLI configuration"

# Step 2: Get available blueprints and bundles
echo "Step 2: Getting available blueprints and bundles"
echo "Available blueprints (showing first 5):"
aws lightsail get-blueprints --region $AWS_REGION --query 'blueprints[0:5].
[blueprintId,name]' --output table
check_status "Failed to get blueprints"

echo "Available bundles (showing first 5):"
aws lightsail get-bundles --region $AWS_REGION --query 'bundles[0:5].
[bundleId,name,price]' --output table
check_status "Failed to get bundles"
```

```
# Get available regions and availability zones
echo "Getting available regions and availability zones"
# Use a specific availability zone in us-west-2 region
AVAILABILITY_ZONE="us-west-2a"
echo "Using availability zone: $AVAILABILITY_ZONE"

# Step 3: Create a Lightsail instance
echo "Step 3: Creating Lightsail instance: $INSTANCE_NAME"
aws lightsail create-instances \
  --instance-names "$INSTANCE_NAME" \
  --availability-zone "$AVAILABILITY_ZONE" \
  --blueprint-id amazon_linux_2023 \
  --bundle-id nano_3_0 \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to create Lightsail instance"
track_resource "instance" "$INSTANCE_NAME"

# Wait for the instance to be in a running state
echo "Waiting for instance to be in running state..."
# Wait for the instance to be ready (polling approach)
MAX_ATTEMPTS=30
ATTEMPTS=0
while [ $ATTEMPTS -lt $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; do
  STATUS=$(aws lightsail get-instance-state --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" --
region $AWS_REGION --query 'state.name' --output text)
  if [ "$STATUS" == "running" ]; then
    echo "Instance is now running"
    break
  fi
  echo "Instance status: $STATUS. Waiting..."
  ATTEMPTS=$((ATTEMPTS+1))
  sleep 10
done

if [ $ATTEMPTS -eq $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
  handle_error "Instance failed to reach running state after 5 minutes"
fi

# Get instance details
echo "Getting instance details"
INSTANCE_IP=$(aws lightsail get-instance --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" --region
 $AWS_REGION --query 'instance.publicIpAddress' --output text)
check_status "Failed to get instance IP address"
```

```
echo "Instance IP address: $INSTANCE_IP"

# Step 4: Download the default key pair
echo "Step 4: Downloading default key pair"
KEY_FILE="lightsail_key_${RANDOM_ID}.pem"
aws lightsail download-default-key-pair --region $AWS_REGION --output text >
 "$KEY_FILE"
check_status "Failed to download key pair"
chmod 400 "$KEY_FILE"
check_status "Failed to set permissions on key pair"
echo "Key pair downloaded to $KEY_FILE"

echo "To connect to your instance, use:"
echo "ssh -i $KEY_FILE ec2-user@$INSTANCE_IP"

# Step 5: Create a block storage disk
echo "Step 5: Creating block storage disk: $DISK_NAME"
aws lightsail create-disk \
  --disk-name "$DISK_NAME" \
  --availability-zone "$AVAILABILITY_ZONE" \
  --size-in-gb 8 \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to create disk"
track_resource "disk" "$DISK_NAME"

# FIX: Wait for the disk to be available using polling instead of fixed sleep
echo "Waiting for disk to be available..."
MAX_ATTEMPTS=30
ATTEMPTS=0
while [ $ATTEMPTS -lt $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; do
  DISK_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-disk --disk-name "$DISK_NAME" --region $AWS_REGION
 --query 'disk.state' --output text 2>/dev/null)
  if [ "$DISK_STATE" == "available" ]; then
    echo "Disk is now available"
    break
  fi
  echo "Disk status: $DISK_STATE. Waiting..."
  ATTEMPTS=$((ATTEMPTS+1))
  sleep 10
done

if [ $ATTEMPTS -eq $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
  handle_error "Disk failed to become available after 5 minutes"
fi
```

```
# Attach the disk to the instance
echo "Attaching disk to instance"
aws lightsail attach-disk \
  --disk-name "$DISK_NAME" \
  --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" \
  --disk-path /dev/xvdf \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to attach disk to instance"

echo "Disk attached. To format and mount the disk, connect to your instance and
 run:"
echo "sudo mkfs -t ext4 /dev/xvdf"
echo "sudo mkdir -p /mnt/my-data"
echo "sudo mount /dev/xvdf /mnt/my-data"
echo "sudo chown ec2-user:ec2-user /mnt/my-data"

# Step 6: Create a snapshot of the instance
echo "Step 6: Creating snapshot of the instance: $SNAPSHOT_NAME"
aws lightsail create-instance-snapshot \
  --instance-name "$INSTANCE_NAME" \
  --instance-snapshot-name "$SNAPSHOT_NAME" \
  --region $AWS_REGION
check_status "Failed to create instance snapshot"
track_resource "instance_snapshot" "$SNAPSHOT_NAME"

# FIX: Wait for the snapshot to complete using polling instead of fixed sleep
echo "Waiting for snapshot to complete... (this may take several minutes)"
MAX_ATTEMPTS=60  # Increased timeout for snapshot creation
ATTEMPTS=0
while [ $ATTEMPTS -lt $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; do
  SNAPSHOT_STATE=$(aws lightsail get-instance-snapshot --instance-snapshot-name
 "$SNAPSHOT_NAME" --region $AWS_REGION --query 'instanceSnapshot.state' --output
 text 2>/dev/null)
  if [ "$SNAPSHOT_STATE" == "completed" ]; then
    echo "Snapshot creation completed"
    break
  fi
  echo "Snapshot status: $SNAPSHOT_STATE. Waiting... ($ATTEMPTS/$MAX_ATTEMPTS)"
  ATTEMPTS=$((ATTEMPTS+1))
  sleep 10
done

if [ $ATTEMPTS -eq $MAX_ATTEMPTS ]; then
```

```
  echo "Warning: Snapshot creation is taking longer than expected but will continue
 in the background."
  echo "You can check its status later with: aws lightsail get-instance-snapshot --
instance-snapshot-name $SNAPSHOT_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
fi

# Step 7: Clean up resources
echo "Step 7: Clean up resources"
echo "The script has created the following resources:"
for resource in "${CREATED_RESOURCES[@]}"; do
  echo "  $resource"
done

read -p "Do you want to clean up these resources? (y/n): " CLEANUP_CONFIRM
if [[ "$CLEANUP_CONFIRM" == "y" || "$CLEANUP_CONFIRM" == "Y" ]]; then
  cleanup_resources
else
  echo "Resources will not be cleaned up. You can manually delete them later."
  echo "To clean up manually, use the following commands:"
  echo "aws lightsail delete-instance-snapshot --instance-snapshot-name
 $SNAPSHOT_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
  echo "aws lightsail detach-disk --disk-name $DISK_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
  echo "aws lightsail delete-disk --disk-name $DISK_NAME --region $AWS_REGION"
  echo "aws lightsail delete-instance --instance-name $INSTANCE_NAME --region
 $AWS_REGION"
fi

echo "Script completed at $(date)"
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - AttachDisk
  - CreateDisk
  - CreateInstanceSnapshot
  - CreateInstances
  - DeleteDisk
  - DeleteInstance
  - DeleteInstanceSnapshot
  - DetachDisk
  - DownloadDefaultKeyPair

- GetBlueprints
- GetBundles
- GetDisk
- GetInstance
- GetInstanceSnapshot
- GetInstanceState

Amazon S3 examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.

- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function s3_getting_started
#
# This function creates, copies, and deletes S3 buckets and objects.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
###############################################################################
function s3_getting_started() {
  {
    if [ "$BUCKET_OPERATIONS_SOURCED" != "True" ]; then
      cd bucket-lifecycle-operations || exit

      source ./bucket_operations.sh
      cd ..
    fi
  }

  echo_repeat "*" 88
  echo "Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo."
  echo_repeat "*" 88
    echo "A unique bucket will be created by appending a Universally Unique
 Identifier to a bucket name prefix."
    echo -n "Enter a prefix for the S3 bucket that will be used in this demo: "
    get_input
    bucket_name_prefix=$get_input_result
  local bucket_name
  bucket_name=$(generate_random_name "$bucket_name_prefix")
```

```
  local region_code
  region_code=$(aws configure get region)

  if create_bucket -b "$bucket_name" -r "$region_code"; then
    echo "Created demo bucket named $bucket_name"
  else
    errecho "The bucket failed to create. This demo will exit."
    return 1
  fi

  local file_name
  while [ -z "$file_name" ]; do
    echo -n "Enter a file you want to upload to your bucket: "
    get_input
    file_name=$get_input_result

    if [ ! -f "$file_name" ]; then
      echo "Could not find file $file_name. Are you sure it exists?"
      file_name=""
    fi
  done

  local key
  key="$(basename "$file_name")"

  local result=0
  if copy_file_to_bucket "$bucket_name" "$file_name" "$key"; then
    echo "Uploaded file $file_name into bucket $bucket_name with key $key."
  else
    result=1
  fi

  local destination_file
  destination_file="$file_name.download"
  if yes_no_input "Would you like to download $key to the file $destination_file?
(y/n) "; then
    if download_object_from_bucket "$bucket_name" "$destination_file" "$key"; then
      echo "Downloaded $key in the bucket $bucket_name to the file
$destination_file."
    else
      result=1
    fi
  fi
```

```
  if yes_no_input "Would you like to copy $key a new object key in your bucket? (y/
n) "; then
    local to_key
    to_key="demo/$key"
    if copy_item_in_bucket "$bucket_name" "$key" "$to_key"; then
      echo "Copied $key in the bucket $bucket_name to the  $to_key."
    else
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  local bucket_items
  bucket_items=$(list_items_in_bucket "$bucket_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    result=1
  fi

  echo "Your bucket contains the following items."
  echo -e "Name\t\tSize"
  echo "$bucket_items"

  if yes_no_input "Delete the bucket, $bucket_name, as well as the objects in it?
 (y/n) "; then
    bucket_items=$(echo "$bucket_items" | cut -f 1)

    if delete_items_in_bucket "$bucket_name" "$bucket_items"; then
      echo "The following items were deleted from the bucket $bucket_name"
      echo "$bucket_items"
    else
      result=1
    fi

    if delete_bucket "$bucket_name"; then
      echo "Deleted the bucket $bucket_name"
    else
      result=1
    fi
  fi

  return $result
}
```

The Amazon S3 functions used in this scenario.

```
###############################################################################
# function create-bucket
#
# This function creates the specified bucket in the specified AWS Region, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -b bucket_name  -- The name of the bucket to create.
#       -r region_code  -- The code for an AWS Region in which to
#                          create the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       The URL of the bucket that was created.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function create_bucket() {
  local bucket_name region_code response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function create_bucket"
    echo "Creates an Amazon S3 bucket. You must supply a bucket name:"
    echo "  -b bucket_name    The name of the bucket. It must be globally unique."
    echo "  [-r region_code]    The code for an AWS Region in which the bucket is
 created."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "b:r:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      b) bucket_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      r) region_code="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
```

```
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$bucket_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a bucket name with the -b parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local bucket_config_arg
  # A location constraint for "us-east-1" returns an error.
  if [[ -n "$region_code" ]] && [[ "$region_code" != "us-east-1" ]]; then
    bucket_config_arg="--create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint=
$region_code"
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Bucket name:   $bucket_name"
  iecho "    Region code:   $region_code"
  iecho ""

  # If the bucket already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
  if (bucket_exists "$bucket_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A bucket with that name already exists. Try again."
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws s3api create-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    $bucket_config_arg)

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-bucket operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function copy_file_to_bucket
#
# This function creates a file in the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file to.
#       $2 - The path and file name of the local file to copy to the bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) to call the copy of the file in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function copy_file_to_bucket() {
  local response bucket_name source_file destination_file_name
  bucket_name=$1
  source_file=$2
  destination_file_name=$3

  response=$(aws s3api put-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --body "$source_file" \
    --key "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function download_object_from_bucket
#
# This function downloads an object in a bucket to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to download the object from.
#       $2 - The path and file name to store the downloaded bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) of the object in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
```

```
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function download_object_from_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local destination_file_name=$2
  local object_name=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api get-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --key "$object_name" \
    "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

##############################################################################
# function copy_item_in_bucket
#
# This function creates a copy of the specified file in the same bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file from and to.
#       $2 - The key of the source file to copy.
#       $3 - The key of the destination file.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function copy_item_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local source_key=$2
  local destination_key=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api copy-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --copy-source "$bucket_name/$source_key" \
```

```
    --key "$destination_key")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api copy-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function list_items_in_bucket
#
# This function displays a list of the files in the bucket with each file's
# size. The function uses the --query parameter to retrieve only the key and
# size fields from the Contents collection.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       The list of files in text format.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function list_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api list-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'Contents[].{Key: Key, Size: Size}')

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -eq 0 ]]; then
    echo "$response"
  else
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api list-objects operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function delete_items_in_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified list of keys from the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#       $2 - A list of keys in the bucket to delete.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local keys=$2
  local response

  # Create the JSON for the items to delete.
  local delete_items
  delete_items="{\"Objects\":["
  for key in $keys; do
    delete_items="$delete_items{\"Key\": \"$key\"},"
  done
  delete_items=${delete_items%?} # Remove the final comma.
  delete_items="$delete_items]}"

  response=$(aws s3api delete-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --delete "$delete_items")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api delete-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function delete_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
```

```
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api delete-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api delete-bucket failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function copy_item_in_bucket
#
# This function creates a copy of the specified file in the same bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file from and to.
#       $2 - The key of the source file to copy.
#       $3 - The key of the destination file.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function copy_item_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local source_key=$2
  local destination_key=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api copy-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --copy-source "$bucket_name/$source_key" \
    --key "$destination_key")
```

```
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api copy-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}
```

```
##############################################################################
# function create-bucket
#
# This function creates the specified bucket in the specified AWS Region, unless
# it already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       -b bucket_name  -- The name of the bucket to create.
#       -r region_code  -- The code for an AWS Region in which to
#                          create the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       The URL of the bucket that was created.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
##############################################################################
function create_bucket() {
  local bucket_name region_code response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function create_bucket"
    echo "Creates an Amazon S3 bucket. You must supply a bucket name:"
    echo "  -b bucket_name    The name of the bucket. It must be globally unique."
    echo "  [-r region_code]    The code for an AWS Region in which the bucket is
 created."
    echo ""
  }

  # Retrieve the calling parameters.
  while getopts "b:r:h" option; do
    case "${option}" in
      b) bucket_name="${OPTARG}" ;;
      r) region_code="${OPTARG}" ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
```

```
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  if [[ -z "$bucket_name" ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: You must provide a bucket name with the -b parameter."
    usage
    return 1
  fi

  local bucket_config_arg
  # A location constraint for "us-east-1" returns an error.
  if [[ -n "$region_code" ]] && [[ "$region_code" != "us-east-1" ]]; then
    bucket_config_arg="--create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint=
$region_code"
  fi

  iecho "Parameters:\n"
  iecho "    Bucket name:   $bucket_name"
  iecho "    Region code:   $region_code"
  iecho ""

  # If the bucket already exists, we don't want to try to create it.
  if (bucket_exists "$bucket_name"); then
    errecho "ERROR: A bucket with that name already exists. Try again."
    return 1
  fi

  # shellcheck disable=SC2086
  response=$(aws s3api create-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    $bucket_config_arg)

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-bucket operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function delete_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api delete-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api delete-bucket failed.\n$response"
```

```
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function delete_item_in_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified file from the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#       $2 - The key (file name) in the bucket to delete.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
```

```
function delete_item_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local key=$2
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api delete-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --key "$key")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api delete-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
```

```
# function delete_items_in_bucket
#
# This function deletes the specified list of keys from the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
#       $2 - A list of keys in the bucket to delete.

# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function delete_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local keys=$2
  local response

  # Create the JSON for the items to delete.
  local delete_items
  delete_items="{\"Objects\":["
  for key in $keys; do
    delete_items="$delete_items{\"Key\": \"$key\"},"
  done
  delete_items=${delete_items%?} # Remove the final comma.
  delete_items="$delete_items]}"

  response=$(aws s3api delete-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --delete "$delete_items")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ $? -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR:  AWS reports s3api delete-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

GetObject

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function download_object_from_bucket
#
# This function downloads an object in a bucket to a file.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to download the object from.
#       $2 - The path and file name to store the downloaded bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) of the object in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function download_object_from_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local destination_file_name=$2
  local object_name=$3
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api get-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --key "$object_name" \
    "$destination_file_name")
```

```
  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`HeadBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadBucket`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function bucket_exists
#
# This function checks to see if the specified bucket already exists.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to check.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If the bucket already exists.
#       1 - If the bucket doesn't exist.
################################################################################
function bucket_exists() {
  local bucket_name
  bucket_name=$1

  # Check whether the bucket already exists.
  # We suppress all output - we're interested only in the return code.
```

```
  if aws s3api head-bucket \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    >/dev/null 2>&1; then
    return 0 # 0 in Bash script means true.
  else
    return 1 # 1 in Bash script means false.
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function list_items_in_bucket
#
# This function displays a list of the files in the bucket with each file's
# size. The function uses the --query parameter to retrieve only the key and
# size fields from the Contents collection.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket.
```

```
#
# Returns:
#       The list of files in text format.
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function list_items_in_bucket() {
  local bucket_name=$1
  local response

  response=$(aws s3api list-objects \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --output text \
    --query 'Contents[].{Key: Key, Size: Size}')

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -eq 0 ]]; then
    echo "$response"
  else
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports s3api list-objects operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
```

```
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function copy_file_to_bucket
#
# This function creates a file in the specified bucket.
#
# Parameters:
#       $1 - The name of the bucket to copy the file to.
#       $2 - The path and file name of the local file to copy to the bucket.
#       $3 - The key (name) to call the copy of the file in the bucket.
#
# Returns:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If it fails.
###############################################################################
function copy_file_to_bucket() {
  local response bucket_name source_file destination_file_name
  bucket_name=$1
  source_file=$2
  destination_file_name=$3

  response=$(aws s3api put-object \
    --bucket "$bucket_name" \
    --body "$source_file" \
    --key "$destination_file_name")

  # shellcheck disable=SC2181
  if [[ ${?} -ne 0 ]]; then
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports put-object operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with S3

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an S3 bucket with unique naming and regional configuration
- Configure bucket security settings including public access blocking
- Enable versioning and default encryption for data protection
- Upload objects with and without custom metadata
- Download objects from the bucket to local storage
- Copy objects within the bucket to organize data in folders
- List bucket contents and objects with specific prefixes
- Add tags to buckets for resource management
- Clean up all resources including versioned objects

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Sample developer tutorials repository.

```
#!/bin/bash

# Amazon S3 Getting Started Tutorial Script
# This script demonstrates basic S3 operations including:
# - Creating a bucket
# - Configuring bucket settings
# - Uploading, downloading, and copying objects
# - Deleting objects and buckets

# Latest fixes:
# 1. Fixed folder creation using temporary file
# 2. Corrected versioned object deletion in cleanup
# 3. Improved error handling for cleanup operations
```

```
# Set up error handling
set -e
trap 'cleanup_handler $?' EXIT

# Log file setup
LOG_FILE="s3-tutorial-$(date +%Y%m%d-%H%M%S).log"
exec > >(tee -a "$LOG_FILE") 2>&1

# Function to log messages
log() {
    echo "[$(date +"%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S")] $1"
}

# Function to handle errors
handle_error() {
    log "ERROR: $1"
    exit 1
}

# Function to check if a bucket exists
bucket_exists() {
    if aws s3api head-bucket --bucket "$1" 2>/dev/null; then
        return 0
    else
        return 1
    fi
}

# Function to delete all versions of objects in a bucket
delete_all_versions() {
    local bucket=$1
    log "Deleting all object versions from bucket $bucket..."

    # Get and delete all versions
    versions=$(aws s3api list-object-versions --bucket "$bucket" --query
 'Versions[].{Key:Key,VersionId:VersionId}' --output json 2>/dev/null)
    if [ -n "$versions" ] && [ "$versions" != "null" ]; then
        echo "{\"Objects\": $versions}" | aws s3api delete-objects --bucket
 "$bucket" --delete file:///dev/stdin >/dev/null 2>&1 || log "Warning: Some versions
 could not be deleted"
    fi

    # Get and delete all delete markers
```

```
    markers=$(aws s3api list-object-versions --bucket "$bucket" --query
 'DeleteMarkers[].{Key:Key,VersionId:VersionId}' --output json 2>/dev/null)
    if [ -n "$markers" ] && [ "$markers" != "null" ]; then
        echo "{\"Objects\": $markers}" | aws s3api delete-objects --bucket "$bucket"
 --delete file:///dev/stdin >/dev/null 2>&1 || log "Warning: Some delete markers
 could not be deleted"
    fi
}

# Function to handle cleanup on exit
cleanup_handler() {
    local exit_code=$1

    # Only run cleanup if it hasn't been run already
    if [ -z "$CLEANUP_DONE" ]; then
        cleanup
    fi

    exit $exit_code
}

# Function to clean up resources
cleanup() {
    log "Starting cleanup process..."
    CLEANUP_DONE=1

    # List all resources created for confirmation
    log "Resources created:"
    if [ -n "$BUCKET_NAME" ]; then
        log "- S3 Bucket: $BUCKET_NAME"

        # Only try to list objects if the bucket exists
        if bucket_exists "$BUCKET_NAME"; then
            # Check if any objects were created
            OBJECTS=$(aws s3api list-objects-v2 --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" --query
 'Contents[].Key' --output text 2>/dev/null || echo "")
            if [ -n "$OBJECTS" ]; then
                log "- Objects in bucket:"
                echo "$OBJECTS" | tr '\t' '\n' | while read -r obj; do
                    log "  - $obj"
                done
            fi

            # Ask for confirmation before cleanup
```

```
            read -p "Do you want to proceed with cleanup and delete all resources?
 (y/n): " confirm
            if [[ $confirm != [yY] && $confirm != [yY][eE][sS] ]]; then
                log "Cleanup aborted by user."
                return
            fi

            # Delete all versions of objects
            delete_all_versions "$BUCKET_NAME"

            # Delete the bucket
            log "Deleting bucket $BUCKET_NAME..."
            aws s3api delete-bucket --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" || log "Warning: Failed
 to delete bucket"
        else
            log "Bucket $BUCKET_NAME does not exist, skipping cleanup"
        fi
    fi

    # Clean up local files
    log "Removing local files..."
    rm -f sample-file.txt sample-document.txt downloaded-sample-file.txt empty-
file.tmp

    log "Cleanup completed."
}

# Generate a random bucket name
generate_bucket_name() {
    local hex_id
    hex_id=$(openssl rand -hex 6)
    echo "demo-s3-bucket-$hex_id"
}

# Main script execution
main() {
    log "Starting Amazon S3 Getting Started Tutorial"

    # Generate a unique bucket name
    BUCKET_NAME=$(generate_bucket_name)
    log "Generated bucket name: $BUCKET_NAME"

    # Step 1: Create a bucket
    log "Step 1: Creating S3 bucket..."
```

```
   # Get the current region or default to us-east-1
   REGION=$(aws configure get region)
   REGION=${REGION:-us-east-1}
   log "Using region: $REGION"

   if [ "$REGION" = "us-east-1" ]; then
       aws s3api create-bucket --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" || handle_error "Failed to
create bucket"
   else
       aws s3api create-bucket \
           --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
           --region "$REGION" \
           --create-bucket-configuration LocationConstraint="$REGION" ||
handle_error "Failed to create bucket"
   fi
   log "Bucket created successfully"

   # Configure bucket settings
   log "Configuring bucket settings..."

   # Block public access (security best practice)
   log "Blocking public access..."
   aws s3api put-public-access-block \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --public-access-block-configuration
"BlockPublicAcls=true,IgnorePublicAcls=true,BlockPublicPolicy=true,RestrictPublicBuckets=tr
|| handle_error "Failed to configure public access block"

   # Enable versioning
   log "Enabling versioning..."
   aws s3api put-bucket-versioning \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --versioning-configuration Status=Enabled || handle_error "Failed to enable
versioning"

   # Set default encryption
   log "Setting default encryption..."
   aws s3api put-bucket-encryption \
       --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
       --server-side-encryption-configuration '{"Rules":
[{"ApplyServerSideEncryptionByDefault": {"SSEAlgorithm": "AES256"}}]}' ||
handle_error "Failed to set encryption"
```

```
    # Step 2: Upload an object
    log "Step 2: Uploading objects to bucket..."

    # Create a sample file
    echo "This is a sample file for the S3 tutorial." > sample-file.txt

    # Upload the file
    aws s3api put-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "sample-file.txt" \
        --body "sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Failed to upload object"
    log "Object uploaded successfully"

    # Upload with metadata
    echo "This is a document with metadata." > sample-document.txt
    aws s3api put-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "documents/sample-document.txt" \
        --body "sample-document.txt" \
        --content-type "text/plain" \
        --metadata "author=AWSDocumentation,purpose=tutorial" || handle_error
"Failed to upload object with metadata"
    log "Object with metadata uploaded successfully"

    # Step 3: Download an object
    log "Step 3: Downloading object from bucket..."
    aws s3api get-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "sample-file.txt" \
        "downloaded-sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Failed to download object"
    log "Object downloaded successfully"

    # Check if an object exists
    log "Checking if object exists..."
    aws s3api head-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Object does not exist"
    log "Object exists"

    # Step 4: Copy object to a folder
    log "Step 4: Copying object to a folder..."

    # Create a folder structure using a temporary empty file
    log "Creating folder structure..."
```

```
    touch empty-file.tmp
    aws s3api put-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --key "favorite-files/" \
        --body empty-file.tmp || handle_error "Failed to create folder"

    # Copy the object
    log "Copying object..."
    aws s3api copy-object \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --copy-source "$BUCKET_NAME/sample-file.txt" \
        --key "favorite-files/sample-file.txt" || handle_error "Failed to copy
 object"
    log "Object copied successfully"

    # List objects in the bucket
    log "Listing all objects in the bucket..."
    aws s3api list-objects-v2 \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --query 'Contents[].Key' \
        --output table || handle_error "Failed to list objects"

    # List objects with a specific prefix
    log "Listing objects in the favorite-files folder..."
    aws s3api list-objects-v2 \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --prefix "favorite-files/" \
        --query 'Contents[].Key' \
        --output table || handle_error "Failed to list objects with prefix"

    # Add tags to the bucket
    log "Adding tags to the bucket..."
    aws s3api put-bucket-tagging \
        --bucket "$BUCKET_NAME" \
        --tagging 'TagSet=[{Key=Project,Value=S3Tutorial},
{Key=Environment,Value=Demo}]' || handle_error "Failed to add tags"
    log "Tags added successfully"

    log "Tutorial completed successfully!"
}

# Execute the main function
main
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - HeadObject
  - ListObjectVersions
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutBucketEncryption
  - PutBucketTagging
  - PutBucketVersioning
  - PutObject
  - PutPublicAccessBlock

AWS STS examples using AWS CLI with Bash script

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Command Line Interface with Bash script with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

AWS CLI with Bash script

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
###############################################################################
# function iecho
#
# This function enables the script to display the specified text only if
# the global variable $VERBOSE is set to true.
###############################################################################
function iecho() {
  if [[ $VERBOSE == true ]]; then
    echo "$@"
  fi
}

###############################################################################
# function errecho
#
# This function outputs everything sent to it to STDERR (standard error output).
###############################################################################
function errecho() {
  printf "%s\n" "$*" 1>&2
}

###############################################################################
# function sts_assume_role
#
# This function assumes a role in the AWS account and returns the temporary
#  credentials.
#
# Parameters:
#       -n role_session_name -- The name of the session.
```

```
#       -r role_arn -- The ARN of the role to assume.
#
# Returns:
#       [access_key_id, secret_access_key, session_token]
#     And:
#       0 - If successful.
#       1 - If an error occurred.
##############################################################################
function sts_assume_role() {
  local role_session_name role_arn response
  local option OPTARG # Required to use getopts command in a function.

  # bashsupport disable=BP5008
  function usage() {
    echo "function sts_assume_role"
    echo "Assumes a role in the AWS account and returns the temporary credentials:"
    echo "  -n role_session_name -- The name of the session."
    echo "  -r role_arn -- The ARN of the role to assume."
    echo ""
  }

  while getopts n:r:h option; do
    case "${option}" in
      n) role_session_name=${OPTARG} ;;
      r) role_arn=${OPTARG} ;;
      h)
        usage
        return 0
        ;;
      \?)
        echo "Invalid parameter"
        usage
        return 1
        ;;
    esac
  done

  response=$(aws sts assume-role \
    --role-session-name "$role_session_name" \
    --role-arn "$role_arn" \
    --output text \
    --query "Credentials.[AccessKeyId, SecretAccessKey, SessionToken]")

  local error_code=${?}
```

```
  if [[ $error_code -ne 0 ]]; then
    aws_cli_error_log $error_code
    errecho "ERROR: AWS reports create-role operation failed.\n$response"
    return 1
  fi

  echo "$response"

  return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS CLI Command Reference*.

Code examples for SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for C++ with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for C++ Developer Guide** – More about using C++ with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- ACM examples using SDK for C++

- API Gateway examples using SDK for C++
- Aurora examples using SDK for C++
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for C++
- CloudTrail examples using SDK for C++
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for C++
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for C++
- CodeBuild examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for C++
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for C++
- EventBridge examples using SDK for C++
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for C++
- HealthImaging examples using SDK for C++
- IAM examples using SDK for C++
- AWS IoT examples using SDK for C++
- AWS IoT data examples using SDK for C++
- Lambda examples using SDK for C++
- MediaConvert examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for C++
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for C++
- AWS STS examples using SDK for C++
- Amazon Transcribe Streaming examples using SDK for C++

ACM examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with ACM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AddTagsToCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Add tags to an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param tagKey: The key for the tag.
  \param tagValue: The value for the tag.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::addTagsToCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                       const Aws::String &tagKey,
                                       const Aws::String &tagValue,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
```

```
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::AddTagsToCertificateRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::Tag> tags;
    Aws::ACM::Model::Tag tag;

    tag.WithKey(tagKey).WithValue(tagValue);
    tags.push_back(tag);

    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn).WithTags(tags);

    Aws::ACM::Model::AddTagsToCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.AddTagsToCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: addTagsToCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Tag with key '" << tagKey <<
                  "' and value '" << tagValue <<
                  "' added to certificate with ARN '" <<
                  certificateArn << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::deleteCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DeleteCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DeleteCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.DeleteCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: DeleteCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The certificate with the ARN '" <<
                  certificateArn << "' is deleted." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::describeCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acm_client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DescribeCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::DescribeCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acm_client.DescribeCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: DescribeCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateDetail certificate =
                outcome.GetResult().GetCertificate();

        std::cout << "Success: Information about certificate "
                     "with ARN '" << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl <<
 std::endl;

        std::cout << "ARN:                 " << certificate.GetCertificateArn()
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Authority ARN:       " <<
                  certificate.GetCertificateAuthorityArn() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Created at (GMT):    " <<
```

```
                certificate.GetCreatedAt().ToGmtString(
                        Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Domain name:         " << certificate.GetDomainName()
                << std::endl;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::DomainValidation> options =
                certificate.GetDomainValidationOptions();

        if (!options.empty()) {
            std::cout << std::endl << "Domain validation information: "
                      << std::endl << std::endl;

            for (auto &validation: options) {
                std::cout << "  Domain name:              " <<
                          validation.GetDomainName() << std::endl;

                const Aws::ACM::Model::ResourceRecord &record =
                        validation.GetResourceRecord();

                std::cout << "  Resource record name:     " <<
                          record.GetName() << std::endl;

                Aws::ACM::Model::RecordType recordType = record.GetType();
                Aws::String type;

                switch (recordType) {
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::RecordType::CNAME:
                        type = "CNAME";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::RecordType::NOT_SET:
                        type = "Not set";
                        break;
                    default:
                        type = "Cannot determine.";
                        break;
                }

                std::cout << "  Resource record type:     " << type <<
                          std::endl;

                std::cout << "  Resource record value:    " <<
                          record.GetValue() << std::endl;
```

```
                std::cout << "  Validation domain:        " <<
                          validation.GetValidationDomain() << std::endl;

                Aws::Vector<Aws::String> emails =
                        validation.GetValidationEmails();

                if (!emails.empty()) {
                    std::cout << "  Validation emails:" << std::endl <<
                              std::endl;

                    for (auto &email: emails) {
                        std::cout << "    " << email << std::endl;
                    }

                    std::cout << std::endl;
                }

                Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod validationMethod =
                        validation.GetValidationMethod();
                Aws::String method;

                switch (validationMethod) {
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod::DNS:
                        method = "DNS";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod::EMAIL:
                        method = "Email";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ValidationMethod::NOT_SET:
                        method = "Not set";
                        break;
                    default:
                        method = "Cannot determine";
                }

                std::cout << "  Validation method:        " <<
                          method << std::endl;

                Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus domainStatus =
                        validation.GetValidationStatus();
                Aws::String status;

                switch (domainStatus) {
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::FAILED:
```

```
                    status = "Failed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::NOT_SET:
                    status = "Not set";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::PENDING_VALIDATION:
                    status = "Pending validation";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::DomainStatus::SUCCESS:
                    status = "Success";
                    break;
                default:
                    status = "Cannot determine";
            }

            std::cout << "  Domain validation status: " << status <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;

        }
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsage> usages =
            certificate.GetExtendedKeyUsages();

    if (!usages.empty()) {
        std::cout << std::endl << "Extended key usages:" <<
                  std::endl << std::endl;

        for (auto &usage: usages) {
            Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName usageName =
                    usage.GetName();
            Aws::String name;

            switch (usageName) {
                case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::ANY:
                    name = "Any";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::CODE_SIGNING:
                    name = "Code signing";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::CUSTOM:
                    name = "Custom";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::EMAIL_PROTECTION:
```

```
                        name = "Email protection";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::IPSEC_END_SYSTEM:
                        name = "IPSEC end system";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::IPSEC_TUNNEL:
                        name = "IPSEC tunnel";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::IPSEC_USER:
                        name = "IPSEC user";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::NONE:
                        name = "None";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::NOT_SET:
                        name = "Not set";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::OCSP_SIGNING:
                        name = "OCSP signing";
                        break;
                    case Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::TIME_STAMPING:
                        name = "Time stamping";
                        break;
                    case
Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::TLS_WEB_CLIENT_AUTHENTICATION:
                        name = "TLS web client authentication";
                        break;
                    case
Aws::ACM::Model::ExtendedKeyUsageName::TLS_WEB_SERVER_AUTHENTICATION:
                        name = "TLS web server authentication";
                        break;
                    default:
                        name = "Cannot determine";
                }

                std::cout << "  Name: " << name << std::endl;
                std::cout << "  OID:  " << usage.GetOID() <<
                          std::endl << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus certificateStatus =
```

```
                certificate.GetStatus();
        Aws::String status;

        switch (certificateStatus) {
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::EXPIRED:
                status = "Expired";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::FAILED:
                status = "Failed";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::INACTIVE:
                status = "Inactive";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::ISSUED:
                status = "Issued";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::NOT_SET:
                status = "Not set";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::PENDING_VALIDATION:
                status = "Pending validation";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::REVOKED:
                status = "Revoked";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::VALIDATION_TIMED_OUT:
                status = "Validation timed out";
                break;
            default:
                status = "Cannot determine";
        }

        std::cout << "Status:              " << status << std::endl;

        if (certificate.GetStatus() ==
            Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::FAILED) {
            Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason failureReason =
                    certificate.GetFailureReason();
            Aws::String reason;

            switch (failureReason) {
                case
Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::ADDITIONAL_VERIFICATION_REQUIRED:
                    reason = "Additional verification required";
```

```
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::CAA_ERROR:
                    reason = "CAA error";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::DOMAIN_NOT_ALLOWED:
                    reason = "Domain not allowed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::DOMAIN_VALIDATION_DENIED:
                    reason = "Domain validation denied";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::INVALID_PUBLIC_DOMAIN:
                    reason = "Invalid public domain";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::NOT_SET:
                    reason = "Not set";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::NO_AVAILABLE_CONTACTS:
                    reason = "No available contacts";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::OTHER:
                    reason = "Other";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_ACCESS_DENIED:
                    reason = "PCA access denied";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_ARGS:
                    reason = "PCA invalid args";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_ARN:
                    reason = "PCA invalid ARN";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_DURATION:
                    reason = "PCA invalid duration";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_INVALID_STATE:
                    reason = "PCA invalid state";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_LIMIT_EXCEEDED:
                    reason = "PCA limit exceeded";
                    break;
                case
Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_NAME_CONSTRAINTS_VALIDATION:
                    reason = "PCA name constraints validation";
                    break;
```

```
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_REQUEST_FAILED:
                    reason = "PCA request failed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::FailureReason::PCA_RESOURCE_NOT_FOUND:
                    reason = "PCA resource not found";
                    break;
                default:
                    reason = "Cannot determine";
            }

            std::cout << "Failure reason:      " << reason << std::endl;
        }

        if (certificate.GetStatus() == Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::REVOKED)
{
            std::cout << "Revoked at (GMT):    " <<
                      certificate.GetRevokedAt().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;

            Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason revocationReason =
                    certificate.GetRevocationReason();
            Aws::String reason;

            switch (revocationReason) {
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::AFFILIATION_CHANGED:
                    reason = "Affiliation changed";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::A_A_COMPROMISE:
                    reason = "AA compromise";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::CA_COMPROMISE:
                    reason = "CA compromise";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::CERTIFICATE_HOLD:
                    reason = "Certificate hold";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::CESSATION_OF_OPERATION:
                    reason = "Cessation of operation";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::KEY_COMPROMISE:
                    reason = "Key compromise";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::NOT_SET:
```

```
                    reason = "Not set";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::PRIVILEGE_WITHDRAWN:
                    reason = "Privilege withdrawn";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::REMOVE_FROM_CRL:
                    reason = "Revoke from CRL";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::SUPERCEDED:
                    reason = "Superceded";
                    break;
                case Aws::ACM::Model::RevocationReason::UNSPECIFIED:
                    reason = "Unspecified";
                    break;
                default:
                    reason = "Cannot determine";
            }

            std::cout << "Revocation reason:   " << reason << std::endl;
        }

        if (certificate.GetType() == Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::IMPORTED) {
            std::cout << "Imported at (GMT):   " <<
                      certificate.GetImportedAt().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> inUseBys = certificate.GetInUseBy();

        if (!inUseBys.empty()) {
            std::cout << std::endl << "In use by:" << std::endl << std::endl;

            for (auto &in_use_by: inUseBys) {
                std::cout << "  " << in_use_by << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << std::endl;
        }

        if (certificate.GetType() == Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::AMAZON_ISSUED
&&
            certificate.GetStatus() == Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::ISSUED) {
            std::cout << "Issued at (GMT):     " <<
```

```
                certificate.GetIssuedAt().ToGmtString(
                        Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                << std::endl;
        }

        std::cout << "Issuer:              " << certificate.GetIssuer() <<
                  std::endl;

        Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm keyAlgorithm =
                certificate.GetKeyAlgorithm();
        Aws::String algorithm;

        switch (keyAlgorithm) {
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::EC_prime256v1:
                algorithm = "P-256 (secp256r1, prime256v1)";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::EC_secp384r1:
                algorithm = "P-384 (secp384r1)";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::EC_secp521r1:
                algorithm = "P-521 (secp521r1)";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::NOT_SET:
                algorithm = "Not set";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::RSA_1024:
                algorithm = "RSA 1024";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::RSA_2048:
                algorithm = "RSA 2048";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::KeyAlgorithm::RSA_4096:
                algorithm = "RSA 4096";
                break;
            default:
                algorithm = "Cannot determine";
        }

        std::cout << "Key algorithm:       " << algorithm << std::endl;

        if (certificate.GetStatus() == Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateStatus::ISSUED) {
            std::cout << "Not valid after (GMT): " <<
                      certificate.GetNotAfter().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
```

```
                      << std::endl;
           std::cout << "Not valid before (GMT): " <<
                      certificate.GetNotBefore().ToGmtString(
                              Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                      << std::endl;
       }

       Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference loggingPreference
=

certificate.GetOptions().GetCertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference();
       Aws::String preference;

       switch (loggingPreference) {
           case
Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::DISABLED:
               preference = "Disabled";
               break;
           case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::ENABLED:
               preference = "Enabled";
               break;
           case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::NOT_SET:
               preference = "Not set";
               break;
           default:
               preference = "Cannot determine";
       }

       std::cout << "Logging preference:  " << preference << std::endl;

       std::cout << "Serial:              " << certificate.GetSerial() <<
                 std::endl;
       std::cout << "Signature algorithm: "
                 << certificate.GetSignatureAlgorithm() << std::endl;
       std::cout << "Subject:             " << certificate.GetSubject() <<
                 std::endl;

       Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType certificateType = certificate.GetType();
       Aws::String type;

       switch (certificateType) {
           case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::AMAZON_ISSUED:
               type = "Amazon issued";
               break;
```

```
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::IMPORTED:
                type = "Imported";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::NOT_SET:
                type = "Not set";
                break;
            case Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateType::PRIVATE_:
                type = "Private";
                break;
            default:
                type = "Cannot determine";
        }

        std::cout << "Type:                " << type << std::endl;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> altNames =
                certificate.GetSubjectAlternativeNames();

        if (!altNames.empty()) {
            std::cout << std::endl << "Alternative names:" <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;

            for (auto &alt_name: altNames) {
                std::cout << "  " << alt_name << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ExportCertificate

The following code example shows how to use `ExportCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Export an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM)  certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param passphrase: A passphrase to decrypt the exported certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::exportCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                    const Aws::String &passphrase,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acm_client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ExportCertificateRequest request;
    Aws::Utils::CryptoBuffer cryptoBuffer(
            reinterpret_cast<const unsigned char *>(passphrase.c_str()),
            passphrase.length());
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn).WithPassphrase(cryptoBuffer);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ExportCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acm_client.ExportCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: ExportCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Information about certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;

        auto result = outcome.GetResult();

        std::cout << "Certificate:       " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificate() << std::endl << std::endl;
```

```
        std::cout << "Certificate chain: " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificateChain() << std::endl << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Private key:       " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetPrivateKey() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ExportCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::getCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::GetCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::GetCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.GetCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Error: GetCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Information about certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;

        auto result = outcome.GetResult();

        std::cout << "Certificate: " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificate() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate chain: " << std::endl << std::endl <<
                  result.GetCertificateChain() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ImportCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `ImportCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Import an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateFile: Path to certificate to import.
  \param privateKeyFile: Path to file containing a private key.
  \param certificateChainFile: Path to file containing a PEM encoded certificate
 chain.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::ACM::importCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateFile,
                                    const Aws::String &privateKeyFile,
                                    const Aws::String &certificateChainFile,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    std::ifstream certificateInStream(certificateFile.c_str());
    if (!certificateInStream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: The certificate file '" << certificateFile <<
                  "' does not exist." << std::endl;

        return false;
    }

    std::ifstream privateKeyInstream(privateKeyFile.c_str());
    if (!privateKeyInstream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: The private key file '" << privateKeyFile <<
                  "' does not exist." << std::endl;

        return false;
    }

    std::ifstream certificateChainInStream(certificateChainFile.c_str());
    if (!certificateChainInStream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: The certificate chain file '"
                  << certificateChainFile << "' does not exist." << std::endl;

        return false;
    }

    Aws::String certificate;
    certificate.assign(std::istreambuf_iterator<char>(certificateInStream),
                       std::istreambuf_iterator<char>());

    Aws::String privateKey;
    privateKey.assign(std::istreambuf_iterator<char>(privateKeyInstream),
                      std::istreambuf_iterator<char>());

    Aws::String certificateChain;

 certificateChain.assign(std::istreambuf_iterator<char>(certificateChainInStream),
                         std::istreambuf_iterator<char>());

    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::ACM::Model::ImportCertificateRequest request;

    request.WithCertificate(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
                                                           certificate.c_str(),
                                                   certificate.size()))
            .WithPrivateKey(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
                                                           privateKey.c_str(),
                                                   privateKey.size()))
            .WithCertificateChain(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)

 certificateChain.c_str(),
                                                         certificateChain.size()));

    Aws::ACM::Model::ImportCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.ImportCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: ImportCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Certificate associated with ARN '" <<
                  outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn() << "' imported."
                  << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificates in an account.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::listCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ListCertificatesRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateSummary> allCertificates;
    Aws::String nextToken;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::ACM::Model::ListCertificatesOutcome outcome =
                acmClient.ListCertificates(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: ListCertificates: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            return false;
        }
        else {
            const Aws::ACM::Model::ListCertificatesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateSummary> &certificates =
                    result.GetCertificateSummaryList();
            allCertificates.insert(allCertificates.end(), certificates.begin(),
                                   certificates.end());
```

```
            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    if (!allCertificates.empty()) {
        for (const Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateSummary &certificate:
 allCertificates) {
            std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " <<
                      certificate.GetCertificateArn() << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Domain name:     " <<
                      certificate.GetDomainName() << std::endl << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "No available certificates found in account."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListTagsForCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the tags for an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::listTagsForCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                         const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acm_client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ListTagsForCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ListTagsForCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acm_client.ListTagsForCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Error: ListTagsForCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Information about tags for "
                     "certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;

        auto result = outcome.GetResult();

        Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::Tag> tags =
                result.GetTags();

        if (tags.size() > 0) {
            for (const Aws::ACM::Model::Tag &tag: tags) {
                std::cout << "Key:   " << tag.GetKey() << std::endl;
                std::cout << "Value: " << tag.GetValue()
                          << std::endl << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "No tags found." << std::endl;
        }

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`RemoveTagsFromCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTagsFromCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Remove a tag from an ACM certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param tagKey: The key for the tag.
  \param tagValue: The value for the tag.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::removeTagsFromCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                            const Aws::String &tagKey,
                                            const Aws::String &tagValue,
                                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::ACM::Model::Tag> tags;

    Aws::ACM::Model::Tag tag;
    tag.SetKey(tagKey);

    tags.push_back(tag);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RemoveTagsFromCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn)
            .WithTags(tags);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RemoveTagsFromCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.RemoveTagsFromCertificate(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: RemoveTagFromCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Tag with key '" << tagKey << "' removed from "
                  << "certificate with ARN '" << certificateArn << "'." <<
 std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`RenewCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RenewCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Renew an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::renewCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::ACM::Model::RenewCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RenewCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.RenewCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: RenewCertificate: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: Renewed certificate with ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "'." << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RenewCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`RequestCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RequestCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Request an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
/*!
  \param domainName: A fully qualified domain name.
  \param idempotencyToken: Customer chosen string for idempotency.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::ACM::requestCertificate(const Aws::String &domainName,
                                     const Aws::String &idempotencyToken,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RequestCertificateRequest request;
    request.WithDomainName(domainName)
            .WithIdempotencyToken(idempotencyToken);

    Aws::ACM::Model::RequestCertificateOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.RequestCertificate(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "RequestCertificate error: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The newly requested certificate's "
                     "ARN is '" <<
                  outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn() <<
                  "'." << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ResendValidationEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendValidationEmail`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Resend the email that requests domain ownership validation.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param domainName: A fully qualified domain name.
  \param validationDomain: The base validation domain that will act as the suffix
                           of the email addresses.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::resendValidationEmail(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                        const Aws::String &domainName,
                                        const Aws::String &validationDomain,
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ResendValidationEmailRequest request;
    request.WithCertificateArn(certificateArn)
            .WithDomain(domainName)
            .WithValidationDomain(validationDomain);

    Aws::ACM::Model::ResendValidationEmailOutcome outcome =
            acmClient.ResendValidationEmail(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "ResendValidationEmail error: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The validation email has been resent."
                  << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

UpdateCertificateOptions

The following code example shows how to use UpdateCertificateOptions.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate option.
/*!
  \param certificateArn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a certificate.
  \param loggingEnabled: Boolean specifying logging enabled.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::ACM::updateCertificateOption(const Aws::String &certificateArn,
                                          bool loggingEnabled,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::ACM::ACMClient acmClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::ACM::Model::UpdateCertificateOptionsRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateArn(certificateArn);

    Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateOptions options;

    if (loggingEnabled) {
        options.SetCertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference(
                Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::ENABLED);
    }
    else {
        options.SetCertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference(

 Aws::ACM::Model::CertificateTransparencyLoggingPreference::DISABLED);
    }

    request.SetOptions(options);

    Aws::ACM::Model::UpdateCertificateOptionsOutcome outcome =
```

```
            acmClient.UpdateCertificateOptions(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "UpdateCertificateOption error: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

        return false;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Success: The option '"
                  << (loggingEnabled ? "enabled" : "disabled") << "' has been set
 for "
                                                                  "the certificate
 with the ARN '"
                  << certificateArn << "'."
                  << std::endl;

        return true;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateCertificateOptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

API Gateway examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with API Gateway.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Aurora examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rds)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_aurora")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
```

```
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_aurora.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_aurora.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rds/RDSClient.h>
#include <aws/rds/model/DescribeDBClustersRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Aurora" starter application which initializes an Amazon Relational
 Database Service (Amazon RDS) client
 *  and describes the Amazon Aurora (Aurora) clusters.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_aurora'
 *
 */
int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
```

```
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::RDS::RDSClient rdsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::String> clusterIds;
        do {
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
                    rdsClient.DescribeDBClusters(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &cluster: outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()) {
                    clusterIds.push_back(cluster.GetDBClusterIdentifier());
                }
                marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
            } else {
                result = 1;
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());

        std::cout << clusterIds.size() << " Aurora clusters found." << std::endl;
        for (auto &clusterId: clusterIds) {
            std::cout << "  clusterId " << clusterId << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Routine which creates an Amazon Aurora DB cluster and demonstrates several
 operations
//! on that cluster.
/*!
 \sa gettingStartedWithDBClusters()
 \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::gettingStartedWithDBClusters(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
```

```
    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon Aurora)"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "get started with DB clusters demo." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
              CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "'." << std::endl;
    Aws::String dbParameterGroupFamily("Undefined");
    bool parameterGroupFound = true;
    {
        // 1. Check if the DB cluster parameter group already exists.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
                      CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." <<
std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily =
outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterParameterGroups()[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_PARAMETER_GROUP_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
                      CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' does not exist." <<
std::endl;
            parameterGroupFound = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;
```

```
        // 2. Get available parameter group families for the specified engine.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, NO_PARAMETER_GROUP_FAMILY,
                                 engineVersions, client)) {
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Getting available parameter group families for " << DB_ENGINE
                  << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::vector<Aws::String> families;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &version: engineVersions) {
            Aws::String family = version.GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
            if (std::find(families.begin(), families.end(), family) ==
                families.end()) {
                families.push_back(family);
                std::cout << "  " << families.size() << ": " << family << std::endl;
            }
        }

        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which family do you want to use? ", 1,
                                            static_cast<int>(families.size()));
        dbParameterGroupFamily = families[choice - 1];
    }
    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        // 3.  Create a DB cluster parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
        request.SetDescription("Example cluster parameter group.");

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Let's set some parameter values in your cluster parameter group."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> autoIncrementParameters;
    // 4.  Get the parameters in the DB cluster parameter group.
    if (!getDBClusterParameters(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, AUTO_INCREMENT_PREFIX,
                                NO_SOURCE,
                                autoIncrementParameters,
                                client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> updateParameters;

    for (Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &autoIncParameter: autoIncrementParameters) {
        if (autoIncParameter.GetIsModifiable() &&
            (autoIncParameter.GetDataType() == "integer")) {
            std::cout << "The " << autoIncParameter.GetParameterName()
                      << " is described as: " <<
                      autoIncParameter.GetDescription() << "." << std::endl;
            if (autoIncParameter.ParameterValueHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "The current value is "
                          << autoIncParameter.GetParameterValue()
                          << "." << std::endl;
            }
            std::vector<int> splitValues = splitToInts(
                    autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues(), '-');
            if (splitValues.size() == 2) {
                int newValue = askQuestionForIntRange(
                        Aws::String("Enter a new value between ") +
                        autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues() + ": ",
                        splitValues[0], splitValues[1]);
                autoIncParameter.SetParameterValue(std::to_string(newValue));
                updateParameters.push_back(autoIncParameter);

            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error parsing " << autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues()
                          << std::endl;
            }
```

```
        }
    }

    {
        // 5.  Modify the auto increment parameters in the DB cluster parameter
group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully modified."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source
of 'user'."
            << std::endl;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> userParameters;
    // 6.  Display the modified parameters in the DB cluster parameter group.
    if (!getDBClusterParameters(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, NO_NAME_PREFIX,
"user",
                                userParameters,
                                client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
        return false;
    }

    for (const auto &userParameter: userParameters) {
        std::cout << "  " << userParameter.GetParameterName() << ", " <<
                  userParameter.GetDescription() << ", parameter value - "
                  << userParameter.GetParameterValue() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB Cluster." << std::endl;

    Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster dbCluster;
    // 7.  Check if the DB cluster already exists.
    if (!describeDBCluster(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, dbCluster, client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String engineVersionName;
    Aws::String engineName;
    if (dbCluster.DBClusterIdentifierHasBeenSet()) {
        std::cout << "The DB cluster already exists." << std::endl;
        engineVersionName = dbCluster.GetEngineVersion();
        engineName = dbCluster.GetEngine();

    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Let's create a DB cluster." << std::endl;
        const Aws::String administratorName = askQuestion(
                "Enter an administrator username for the database: ");
        const Aws::String administratorPassword = askQuestion(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ");
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 8.  Get a list of engine versions for the parameter group family.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, dbParameterGroupFamily, engineVersions,
                                 client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "The available engines for your parameter group family are:"
                  << std::endl;

        int index = 1;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &engineVersion: engineVersions)
{
            std::cout << "  " << index << ": " << engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                      << std::endl;
            ++index;
        }
```

```
        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which engine do you want to use? ", 1,

static_cast<int>(engineVersions.size()));
        const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion engineVersion = engineVersions[choice
-
                                                                                1];

        engineName = engineVersion.GetEngine();
        engineVersionName = engineVersion.GetEngineVersion();
        std::cout << "Creating a DB cluster named '" << DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER
                  << "' and database '" << DB_NAME << "'.\n"
                  << "The DB cluster is configured to use your custom cluster
parameter group '"
                  << CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "', and \n"
                  << "selected engine version " << engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                  << ".\nThis typically takes several minutes." << std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersionName);
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBCluster(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBCluster. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the DB cluster to become available." << std::endl;

    int counter = 0;
```

```
    // 11. Wait for the DB cluster to become available.
    do {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 900) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for cluster to become available timed out ofter "
                      << counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                             DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        dbCluster = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
        if (!describeDBCluster(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, dbCluster, client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                             DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            std::cout << "Current DB cluster status is '"
                      << dbCluster.GetStatus()
                      << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
        }
    } while (dbCluster.GetStatus() != "available");

    if (dbCluster.GetStatus() == "available") {
        std::cout << "The DB cluster has been created." << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance;
    // 11.  Check if the DB instance already exists.
    if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
        cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, "",
                         client);
        return false;
    }

    if (dbInstance.DbInstancePortHasBeenSet()) {
        std::cout << "The DB instance already exists." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
```

```
        std::cout << "Let's create a DB instance." << std::endl;

        Aws::String dbInstanceClass;
        // 12.  Get a list of instance classes.
        if (!chooseDBInstanceClass(engineName,
                                   engineVersionName,
                                   dbInstanceClass,
                                   client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
"",
                             client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Creating a DB instance named '" << DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER
                  << "' with selected DB instance class '" << dbInstanceClass
                  << "'.\nThis typically takes several minutes." << std::endl;

        // 13. Create a DB instance.
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
"",
                             client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the DB instance to become available." << std::endl;
```

```
    counter = 0;
    // 14. Wait for the DB instance to become available.
    do {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 900) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for instance to become available timed out ofter "
                      << counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                             DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, client);
            return false;
        }

        dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
        if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                             DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, client);
            return false;
        }

        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                      << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus()
                      << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
        }
    } while (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() != "available");

    if (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() == "available") {
        std::cout << "The DB instance has been created." << std::endl;
    }

    // 15. Display the connection string that can be used to connect a 'mysql' shell
 to the database.
    displayConnection(dbCluster);

    printAsterisksLine();

    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB cluster (y/n)? ")) {
        Aws::String snapshotID(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER + "-" +
                               Aws::String(Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID()));
        {
```

```
            std::cout << "Creating a snapshot named " << snapshotID << "." <<
std::endl;
            std::cout << "This typically takes a few minutes." << std::endl;

            // 16. Create a snapshot of the DB cluster. (CreateDBClusterSnapshot)
            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                    client.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
        }

        std::cout << "Waiting for the snapshot to become available." << std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::DBClusterSnapshot snapshot;
        counter = 0;
        do {
            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            ++counter;
            if (counter > 600) {
                std::cerr << "Wait for snapshot to be available timed out ofter "
                          << counter
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
```

```
            // 17. Wait for the snapshot to become available.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
                std::cout << "Current snapshot status is '"
                          << snapshot.GetStatus()
                          << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
            }
        } while (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available");

        if (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available") {
            std::cout << "A snapshot has been created." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    bool result = true;
    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to delete the DB cluster, DB instance, and parameter group
(y/n)? ")) {
        result = cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                  DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                                  client);
    }

    return result;
```

```
}

//! Routine which gets a DB cluster description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbClusterIdentifier: A DB cluster identifier.
 \param clusterResult: The 'DBCluster' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBCluster(const Aws::String &dbClusterIdentifier,
                                       Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster &clusterResult,
                                       const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBClusters(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        clusterResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_CLUSTER_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB cluster does not exist.
        // Instead, clusterResult is set to empty.
    else {
        clusterResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
    }

    return result;

}


//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBClusterParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBCLusterParameters()
```

```
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the cluster parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBClusterParameters(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                            const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                            const Aws::String &source,
                                            Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter>
 &parametersResult,
                                            const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                         const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersionsResult,
                                         const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersions =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();

            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
                                        engineVersions.begin(),
 engineVersions.end());
            marker  = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance &instanceResult,
                                        const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBInstances. "
```

```
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}


//! Routine which gets available DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::chooseDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                           const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                           Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                           const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption> &options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
```

```
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option: options)
 {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                              instanceClass) == instanceClasses.end()) {
                    instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available DB instance classes for your database engine are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}

//! Routine which deletes resources created by the scenario.
/*!
\sa cleanUpResources()
\param parameterGroupName: A parameter group name, this may be empty.
\param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier, this may be empty.
\param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
\return bool: Successful completion.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::cleanUpResources(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                      const Aws::String &dbClusterIdentifier,
                                      const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                      const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    bool result = true;
```

```
    bool instanceDeleting = false;
    bool clusterDeleting = false;
    if (!dbInstanceIdentifier.empty()) {
        {
            // 18. Delete the DB instance.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
            request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                instanceDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB instance to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBInstance. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    if (!dbClusterIdentifier.empty()) {
        {
            // 19. Delete the DB cluster.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBCluster(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB cluster deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
```

```
                clusterDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB cluster to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout << "This may take a while." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBCluster. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }
    int counter = 0;

    while (clusterDeleting || instanceDeleting) {
        // 20. Wait for the DB cluster and instance to be deleted.
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 800) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for instance to delete timed out ofter " << counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
        if (instanceDeleting) {
            if (!describeDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbInstance, client)) {
                return false;
            }
            instanceDeleting = dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifierHasBeenSet();
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster dbCluster = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
        if (clusterDeleting) {
            if (!describeDBCluster(dbClusterIdentifier, dbCluster, client)) {
                return false;
            }

            clusterDeleting = dbCluster.DBClusterIdentifierHasBeenSet();
        }
```

```
        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            if (instanceDeleting) {
                std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                          << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() << "." << std::endl;
            }

            if (clusterDeleting) {
                std::cout << "Current DB cluster status is '"
                          << dbCluster.GetStatus() << "." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    if (!parameterGroupName.empty()) {
        // 21. Delete the DB cluster parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance

- DeleteDBCluster
- DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
- DeleteDBInstance
- DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
- DescribeDBClusterParameters
- DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
- DescribeDBClusters
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
    request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersionName);
```

```
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBCluster(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBCluster. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", "", client);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
```

```
        request.SetDescription("Example cluster parameter group.");

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBClusterSnapshotOutcome outcome =
```

```
                    client.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::CreateDBClusterSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetEngine(engineName);
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
"",
                             client);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
```

```
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBCluster(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB cluster deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                clusterDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB cluster to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout << "This may take a while." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBCluster. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
            request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);
```

```
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
                instanceDeleting = true;
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for DB instance to delete before deleting the
parameter group."
                        << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DeleteDBInstance. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsRequest request;
```

```
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB cluster parameter group named '" <<
                      CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." <<
std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily =
outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterParameterGroups()[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);
```

```
//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBClusterParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBCLusterParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the cluster parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBCLusterParameters(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                            const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                            const Aws::String &source,
                                            Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter>
 &parametersResult,
                                            const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBClusterParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }
```

```
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusterSnapshots()[0];
```

```
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBClusterSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                                 DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
 client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

//! Routine which gets a DB cluster description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbClusterIdentifier: A DB cluster identifier.
 \param clusterResult: The 'DBCluster' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBCluster(const Aws::String &dbClusterIdentifier,
                                       Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster &clusterResult,
```

```
                                        const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBClustersOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBClusters(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        clusterResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBClusters()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_CLUSTER_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::GDescribeDBClusters. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB cluster does not exist.
        // Instead, clusterResult is set to empty.
    else {
        clusterResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBCluster();
    }

    return result;

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                         const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersionsResult,
                                         const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> &engineVersions =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();
```

```
            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
                                        engineVersions.begin(),
 engineVersions.end());
            marker  = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBCluster()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
```

```
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance &instanceResult,
                                        const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeDBInstances. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Aurora::chooseDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                           const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                           Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                           const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker; // The marker is used for pagination.
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption> &options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option: options)
 {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                              instanceClass) == instanceClasses.end()) {
                    instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available DB instance classes for your database engine are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupRequest request;
    request.SetDBClusterParameterGroupName(CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
    request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

    Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
            client.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB cluster parameter group was successfully modified."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with Aurora::ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS autoscaling)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_autoscaling")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_autoscaling.cpp)
```

```
target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_autoscaling.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/autoscaling/AutoScalingClient.h>
#include <aws/autoscaling/model/DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Autoscaling" starter application which initializes an Amazon EC2 Auto
 Scaling client and describes the
 *  Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling groups.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_autoscaling'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoscalingClient(clientConfig);

        std::vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.

        do {

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
```

```
            }

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
                    autoscalingClient.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup>
 &autoScalingGroups =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
                for (auto &group: autoScalingGroups) {
                    groupNames.push_back(group.GetAutoScalingGroupName());
                }
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << groupNames.size() << " AutoScaling groups." <<
 std::endl;
        for (auto &groupName: groupNames) {
            std::cout << "AutoScaling group: " << groupName << std::endl;
        }

    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Routine which demonstrates using an Auto Scaling group
//! to manage Amazon EC2 instances.
/*!
  \sa groupsAndInstancesScenario()
  \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::groupsAndInstancesScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::String templateName;
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfig);

    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Auto
 Scaling "
```

```
            << "demo for managing groups and instances." << std::endl;
    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " \n"
              << std::endl;

    std::cout << "This example requires an EC2 launch template." << std::endl;
    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to use an existing EC2 launch template (y/n)?  ")) {

        // 1. Specify the name of an existing EC2 launch template.
        templateName = askQuestion(
                "Enter the name of the existing EC2 launch template.  ");

        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeLaunchTemplatesRequest request;
        request.AddLaunchTemplateNames(templateName);
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeLaunchTemplatesOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.DescribeLaunchTemplates(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Validated the EC2 launch template '" << templateName
                      << "' exists by calling DescribeLaunchTemplate." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error validating the existence of the launch template. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else { // 2.  Or create a new EC2 launch template.
        templateName = askQuestion("Enter the name for a new EC2 launch template:
");

        Aws::EC2::Model::CreateLaunchTemplateRequest request;
        request.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);

        Aws::EC2::Model::RequestLaunchTemplateData requestLaunchTemplateData;

requestLaunchTemplateData.SetInstanceType(EC2_LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_INSTANCE_TYPE);
        requestLaunchTemplateData.SetImageId(EC2_LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_IMAGE_ID);

        request.SetLaunchTemplateData(requestLaunchTemplateData);

        Aws::EC2::Model::CreateLaunchTemplateOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.CreateLaunchTemplate(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The EC2 launch template '" << templateName << " was
created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetExceptionName() ==
                 "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException") {
            std::cout << "The EC2 template '" << templateName << "' already exists"
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with EC2::CreateLaunchTemplate. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);
    std::cout << "Let's create an Auto Scaling group." << std::endl;
    Aws::String groupName = askQuestion(
            "Enter a name for the Auto Scaling group:  ");
    // 3. Retrieve a list of EC2 Availability Zones.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::AvailabilityZone> availabilityZones;
    {
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest request;

        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.DescribeAvailabilityZones(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "EC2 instances can be created in the following Availability
Zones:"
                    << std::endl;

            availabilityZones = outcome.GetResult().GetAvailabilityZones();
            for (size_t i = 0; i < availabilityZones.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ".  "
                          << availabilityZones[i].GetZoneName() << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with EC2::DescribeAvailabilityZones. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            cleanupResources("", templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    int availabilityZoneChoice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Choose an Availability Zone:  ", 1,
            static_cast<int>(availabilityZones.size()));
    // 4. Create an Auto Scaling group with the specified Availability Zone.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> availabilityGroupZones;
        availabilityGroupZones.push_back(
                availabilityZones[availabilityZoneChoice - 1].GetZoneName());
        request.SetAvailabilityZones(availabilityGroupZones);
        request.SetMaxSize(1);
        request.SetMinSize(1);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::LaunchTemplateSpecification
launchTemplateSpecification;
        launchTemplateSpecification.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);
        request.SetLaunchTemplate(launchTemplateSpecification);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.CreateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Created Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "'..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingErrors::ALREADY_EXISTS_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' already exists."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::CreateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources("", templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> autoScalingGroups;
    if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                           autoScalingClient)) {
        std::cout << "Here is the Auto Scaling group description." << std::endl;
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            logAutoScalingGroupInfo(autoScalingGroups);
        }
    }
    else {
        cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
        return false;
    }

    std::cout
            << "Waiting for the EC2 instance in the Auto Scaling group to become
active..."
            << std::endl;
    if (!waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient)) {
        cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
        return false;
    }

    bool enableMetrics = askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to collect metrics about the A"
            "Auto Scaling group during this demo (y/n)?  ");
    // 7. Optionally enable metrics collection for the Auto Scaling group.
    if (enableMetrics) {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        request.AddMetrics("GroupMinSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupMaxSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupDesiredCapacity");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupInServiceInstances");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupTotalInstances");
        request.SetGranularity("1Minute");

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.EnableMetricsCollection(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling metrics have been enabled."
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::EnableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Let's update the maximum number of EC2 instances in '" <<
groupName <<
              "' from 1 to 3." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);
    // 8. Update the Auto Scaling group, setting a new maximum size.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        request.SetMaxSize(3);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.UpdateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::UpdateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                           autoScalingClient)) {
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            const auto &instances = autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances();
            std::cout
                    << "The group still has one running EC2 instance, but it can
have up to 3.\n"
                    << std::endl;
            logAutoScalingGroupInfo(autoScalingGroups);
        }
        else {
            std::cerr
```

```
                    << "No EC2 launch groups were retrieved from DescribeGroup
request."
                    << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\n" << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << "\n"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Let's update the desired capacity in '" << groupName <<
              "' from 1 to 2." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);
    //  9. Update the Auto Scaling group, setting a new desired capacity.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
        request.SetDesiredCapacity(2);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.SetDesiredCapacity(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::SetDesiredCapacityRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                           autoScalingClient)) {
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            std::cout
                    << "Here is the current state of the group." << std::endl;
            logAutoScalingGroupInfo(autoScalingGroups);
        }
        else {
            std::cerr
                    << "No EC2 launch groups were retrieved from DescribeGroup
request."
                    << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
```

```
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the new EC2 instance to start..." << std::endl;
    waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient);

    std::cout << "\n" << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << "\n"
              << std::endl;

    std::cout << "Let's terminate one of the EC2 instances in " << groupName << "."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Because the desired capacity is 2, another EC2 instance will start
"
              << "to replace the terminated EC2 instance."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "The currently running EC2 instances are:" << std::endl;

    if (autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
        std::cerr << "Error describing groups. No groups returned." << std::endl;
        cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
        return false;
    }

    int instanceNumber = 1;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> instanceIDs = instancesToInstanceIDs(
            autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances());
    for (const Aws::String &instanceID: instanceIDs) {
        std::cout << "   " << instanceNumber << ". " << instanceID << std::endl;
        ++instanceNumber;
    }

    instanceNumber = askQuestionForIntRange("Which EC2 instance do you want to stop?
",
                                            1,
                                            static_cast<int>(instanceIDs.size()));

    // 10. Terminate an EC2 instance in the Auto Scaling group.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetInstanceId(instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1]);
        request.SetShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false);
```

```
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome
=
                autoScalingClient.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Waiting for EC2 instance with ID '"
                      << instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1] << "' to terminate..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
AutoScaling::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient);

    std::cout << "\n" << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << "\n"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Let's get a report of scaling activities for EC2 launch group '"
              << groupName << "'."
              << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);
    // 11. Get a description of activities for the Auto Scaling group.
    {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> allActivities;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DescribeScalingActivities(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> &activities =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetActivities();
```

```
                allActivities.insert(allActivities.end(), activities.begin(),
activities.end());
                nextToken  = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeScalingActivities. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient,
ec2Client);
                return false;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << allActivities.size() << " activities."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Activities are ordered with the most recent first."
                  << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity &activity: allActivities) {
            std::cout << activity.GetDescription() << std::endl;
            std::cout << activity.GetDetails() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    if (enableMetrics) {
        if (!logAutoScalingMetrics(groupName, clientConfig)) {
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Let's  clean up." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press enter to continue:  ", alwaysTrueTest);

    // 13. Disable metrics collection if enabled.
    if (enableMetrics) {
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.DisableMetricsCollection(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Metrics collection has been disabled." << std::endl;
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DisableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    return cleanupResources(groupName, templateName, autoScalingClient, ec2Client);
}

//! Routine which waits for EC2 instances in an Auto Scaling group to
//! complete startup or shutdown.
/*!
 \sa waitForInstances()
 \param groupName: An Auto Scaling group name.
 \param autoScalingGroups: Vector to receive 'AutoScalingGroup' records.
 \param client: 'AutoScalingClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::waitForInstances(const Aws::String &groupName,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> &autoScalingGroups,
                                            const Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient
 &client) {
    bool ready = false;
    const std::vector<Aws::String> READY_STATES = {"InService", "Terminated"};

    int count = 0;
    int desiredCapacity = 0;
    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(4));
    while (!ready) {
        if (WAIT_FOR_INSTANCES_TIMEOUT < count) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for instance timed out." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++count;
        if (!describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups, client)) {
            return false;
        }
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> instanceIDs;
        if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
            instanceIDs =
instancesToInstanceIDs(autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances());
            desiredCapacity = autoScalingGroups[0].GetDesiredCapacity();
        }

        if (instanceIDs.empty()) {
            if (desiredCapacity == 0) {
                break;
            }
            else {
                if ((count % 5) == 0) {
                    std::cout << "No instance IDs returned for group." << std::endl;
                }

                continue;
            }
        }

        // 6.  Check lifecycle state of the instances using
DescribeAutoScalingInstances.
        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest request;
        request.SetInstanceIds(instanceIDs);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeAutoScalingInstances(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingInstanceDetails>
&instancesDetails =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingInstances();
            ready = instancesDetails.size() >= desiredCapacity;
            for (const Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingInstanceDetails &details:
instancesDetails) {
                if (!stringInVector(details.GetLifecycleState(), READY_STATES)) {
                    ready = false;
                    break;
                }
            }
            // Log the status while waiting.
            if (((count % 5) == 1) || ready) {
                logInstancesLifecycleState(instancesDetails);
            }
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingInstances. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (!describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Routine to cleanup resources created in 'groupsAndInstancesScenario'.
/*!
 \sa cleanupResources()
 \param groupName: Optional Auto Scaling group name.
 \param templateName: Optional EC2 launch template name.
 \param autoScalingClient: 'AutoScalingClient' instance.
 \param ec2Client: 'EC2Client' instance.
\return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::cleanupResources(const Aws::String &groupName,
                                           const Aws::String &templateName,
                                           const Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient
 &autoScalingClient,
                                           const Aws::EC2::EC2Client &ec2Client) {
    bool result = true;

    // 14. Delete the Auto Scaling group.
    if (!groupName.empty() &&
        (askYesNoQuestion(
                Aws::String("Delete the Auto Scaling group '") + groupName +
                "'  (y/n)?"))) {
        {
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
            request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
            request.SetMinSize(0);
            request.SetDesiredCapacity(0);

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
```

```
                    autoScalingClient.UpdateAutoScalingGroup(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout
                        << "The minimum size and desired capacity of the Auto
Scaling group "
                        << "was set to zero before terminating the instances."
                        << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::UpdateAutoScalingGroup. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> autoScalingGroups;
        if (AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(groupName, autoScalingGroups,
                                               autoScalingClient)) {
            if (!autoScalingGroups.empty()) {
                Aws::Vector<Aws::String> instanceIDs = instancesToInstanceIDs(
                        autoScalingGroups[0].GetInstances());
                for (const Aws::String &instanceID: instanceIDs) {

Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
                    request.SetInstanceId(instanceID);
                    request.SetShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(true);


Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                            autoScalingClient.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(
                                    request);

                    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                        std::cout << "Initiating termination of EC2 instance '"
                                  << instanceID << "'." << std::endl;
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cerr
                                << "Error with
AutoScaling::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup. "
                                << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                        result = false;
                    }
```

```
                }
            }

            std::cout
                    << "Waiting for the EC2 instances to terminate before deleting
the "
                    << "Auto Scaling group..." << std::endl;
            waitForInstances(groupName, autoScalingGroups, autoScalingClient);
        }

        {
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
            request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DeleteAutoScalingGroup(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' was deleted."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DeleteAutoScalingGroup. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    // 15. Delete the EC2 launch template.
    if (!templateName.empty() && (askYesNoQuestion(
            Aws::String("Delete the EC2 launch template '") + templateName +
            "' (y/n)?"))) {
        Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteLaunchTemplateRequest request;
        request.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);

        Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteLaunchTemplateOutcome outcome =
                ec2Client.DeleteLaunchTemplate(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "EC2 launch template '" << templateName << "' was deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with EC2::DeleteLaunchTemplate. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which retrieves Auto Scaling group descriptions.
/*!
 \sa describeGroup()
 \param groupName: An Auto Scaling group name.
 \param autoScalingGroups: Vector to receive 'AutoScalingGroup' records.
 \param client: 'AutoScalingClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::AutoScaling::describeGroup(const Aws::String &groupName,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingGroup> &autoScalingGroup,
                                         const Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient
 &client) {
    // 5. Retrieve a description of the Auto Scaling group.
    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
    groupNames.push_back(groupName);
    request.SetAutoScalingGroupNames(groupNames);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        autoScalingGroup = outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
    request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> availabilityGroupZones;
```

```
        availabilityGroupZones.push_back(
                availabilityZones[availabilityZoneChoice - 1].GetZoneName());
        request.SetAvailabilityZones(availabilityGroupZones);
        request.SetMaxSize(1);
        request.SetMinSize(1);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::LaunchTemplateSpecification
launchTemplateSpecification;
        launchTemplateSpecification.SetLaunchTemplateName(templateName);
        request.SetLaunchTemplate(launchTemplateSpecification);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::CreateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.CreateAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Created Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "'..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingErrors::ALREADY_EXISTS_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' already exists."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::CreateAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DeleteAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.DeleteAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling group '" << groupName << "' was deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DeleteAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request;
Aws::Vector<Aws::String> groupNames;
groupNames.push_back(groupName);
request.SetAutoScalingGroupNames(groupNames);

Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingGroupsOutcome outcome =
        client.DescribeAutoScalingGroups(request);

if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
    autoScalingGroup = outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingGroups();
}
else {
    std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingGroups. "
              << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
              << std::endl;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest request;
        request.SetInstanceIds(instanceIDs);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeAutoScalingInstancesOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeAutoScalingInstances(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::AutoScalingInstanceDetails>
&instancesDetails =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetAutoScalingInstances();

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeAutoScalingInstances. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> allActivities;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DescribeScalingActivitiesOutcome outcome =
                    autoScalingClient.DescribeScalingActivities(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity> &activities =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetActivities();
                allActivities.insert(allActivities.end(), activities.begin(),
activities.end());
                nextToken  = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DescribeScalingActivities. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Found " << allActivities.size() << " activities."
```

```
                << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Activities are ordered with the most recent first."
                << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::AutoScaling::Model::Activity &activity: allActivities) {
            std::cout << activity.GetDescription() << std::endl;
            std::cout << activity.GetDetails() << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::DisableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.DisableMetricsCollection(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Metrics collection has been disabled." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::DisableMetricsCollection. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
```

```
                        << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionRequest request;
        request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);

        request.AddMetrics("GroupMinSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupMaxSize");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupDesiredCapacity");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupInServiceInstances");
        request.AddMetrics("GroupTotalInstances");
        request.SetGranularity("1Minute");

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::EnableMetricsCollectionOutcome outcome =
                autoScalingClient.EnableMetricsCollection(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Auto Scaling metrics have been enabled."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::EnableMetricsCollection. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;

    }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityRequest request;
    request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
    request.SetDesiredCapacity(2);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::SetDesiredCapacityOutcome outcome =
            autoScalingClient.SetDesiredCapacity(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::SetDesiredCapacityRequest. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;

    }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
        request.SetInstanceId(instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1]);
        request.SetShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false);

        Aws::AutoScaling::Model::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome
=
                autoScalingClient.TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Waiting for EC2 instance with ID '"
                      << instanceIDs[instanceNumber - 1] << "' to terminate..."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
AutoScaling::TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

        }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::AutoScaling::AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest request;
    request.SetAutoScalingGroupName(groupName);
    request.SetMaxSize(3);

    Aws::AutoScaling::Model::UpdateAutoScalingGroupOutcome outcome =
            autoScalingClient.UpdateAutoScalingGroup(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error with AutoScaling::UpdateAutoScalingGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;

    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CloudTrail examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with CloudTrail.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTrail`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which creates an AWS CloudTrail trail.
/*!
  \param trailName: The name of the CloudTrail trail.
  \param bucketName: The Amazon S3 bucket designate for publishing logs.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::createTrail(const Aws::String trailName,
                                     const Aws::String bucketName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient trailClient(clientConfig);
```

```
    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::CreateTrailRequest request;
    request.SetName(trailName);
    request.SetS3BucketName(bucketName);

    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::CreateTrailOutcome outcome = trailClient.CreateTrail(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created trail " << trailName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create trail " << trailName <<
                  ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTrail`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which deletes an AWS CloudTrail trail.
/*!
  \param trailName: The name of the CloudTrail trail.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::deleteTrail(const Aws::String trailName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
```

```
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient trailClient(clientConfig);

    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::DeleteTrailRequest request;
    request.SetName(trailName);

    auto outcome = trailClient.DeleteTrail(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted trail " << trailName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting trail " << trailName << " " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTrail`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which describes the AWS CloudTrail trails in an account.
/*!
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/

bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::describeTrails(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient cloudTrailClient(clientConfig);
```

```
    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::DescribeTrailsRequest request;

    auto outcome = cloudTrailClient.DescribeTrails(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::Vector<Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Trail> &trails =
 outcome.GetResult().GetTrailList();
        std::cout << trails.size() << " trail(s) found." << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Trail &trail: trails) {
            std::cout << trail.GetName() << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe trails." << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`LookupEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `LookupEvents`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Routine which looks up events captured by AWS CloudTrail.
/*!
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::CloudTrail::lookupEvents(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::CloudTrail::CloudTrailClient cloudtrail(clientConfig);
```

```
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Event> allEvents;

    Aws::CloudTrail::Model::LookupEventsRequest request;

    size_t count = 0;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::CloudTrail::Model::LookupEventsOutcome outcome =
 cloudtrail.LookupEvents(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::CloudTrail::Model::Event> &events =
 outcome.GetResult().GetEvents();
            count += events.size();
            allEvents.insert(allEvents.end(), events.begin(), events.end());
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty() && count <= 50); // Limit to 50 events.

    std::cout << "Found " << allEvents.size() << " event(s)." << std::endl;

    for (auto &event: allEvents) {
        std::cout << "Event name: " << event.GetEventName() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Event source: " << event.GetEventSource() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Event id: " << event.GetEventId() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Resources: " << std::endl;
        for (auto &resource: event.GetResources()) {
            std::cout << "  " << resource.GetResourceName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DeleteAlarmsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Delete the alarm.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::DeleteAlarmsRequest request;
        request.AddAlarmNames(alarm_name);
```

```
        auto outcome = cw.DeleteAlarms(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to delete CloudWatch alarm:" <<
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted CloudWatch alarm " << alarm_name
                << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DescribeAlarmsRequest.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DescribeAlarmsResult.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>
```

Describe the alarms.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
```

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::DescribeAlarmsRequest request;
        request.SetMaxRecords(1);

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            auto outcome = cw.DescribeAlarms(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
            {
                std::cout << "Failed to describe CloudWatch alarms:" <<
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
            }

            if (!header)
            {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                    std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                    std::setw(64) << "Arn" <<
                    std::setw(64) << "Description" <<
                    std::setw(20) << "LastUpdated" <<
                    std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &alarms = outcome.GetResult().GetMetricAlarms();
            for (const auto &alarm : alarms)
            {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                    std::setw(32) << alarm.GetAlarmName() <<
                    std::setw(64) << alarm.GetAlarmArn() <<
                    std::setw(64) << alarm.GetAlarmDescription() <<
                    std::setw(20) <<
                    alarm.GetAlarmConfigurationUpdatedTimestamp().ToGmtString(
                        SIMPLE_DATE_FORMAT_STR) <<
                    std::endl;
            }

            const auto &next_token = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            request.SetNextToken(next_token);
            done = next_token.empty();
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/DisableAlarmActionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Disable the alarm actions.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::DisableAlarmActionsRequest
 disableAlarmActionsRequest;
        disableAlarmActionsRequest.AddAlarmNames(alarm_name);

        auto disableAlarmActionsOutcome =
 cw.DisableAlarmActions(disableAlarmActionsRequest);
        if (!disableAlarmActionsOutcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to disable actions for alarm " << alarm_name <<
                ": " << disableAlarmActionsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        }
```

```
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully disabled actions for alarm " <<
                alarm_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/EnableAlarmActionsRequest.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/PutMetricAlarmRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Enable the alarm actions.

```
    Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
    Aws::CloudWatch::Model::PutMetricAlarmRequest request;
    request.SetAlarmName(alarm_name);
    request.SetComparisonOperator(
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::ComparisonOperator::GreaterThanThreshold);
    request.SetEvaluationPeriods(1);
    request.SetMetricName("CPUUtilization");
    request.SetNamespace("AWS/EC2");
```

```
    request.SetPeriod(60);
    request.SetStatistic(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Statistic::Average);
    request.SetThreshold(70.0);
    request.SetActionsEnabled(false);
    request.SetAlarmDescription("Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%");
    request.SetUnit(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::StandardUnit::Seconds);
    request.AddAlarmActions(actionArn);

    Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Dimension dimension;
    dimension.SetName("InstanceId");
    dimension.SetValue(instanceId);
    request.AddDimensions(dimension);

    auto outcome = cw.PutMetricAlarm(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
    {
        std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch alarm:" <<
            outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return;
    }

    Aws::CloudWatch::Model::EnableAlarmActionsRequest enable_request;
    enable_request.AddAlarmNames(alarm_name);

    auto enable_outcome = cw.EnableAlarmActions(enable_request);
    if (!enable_outcome.IsSuccess())
    {
        std::cout << "Failed to enable alarm actions:" <<
            enable_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return;
    }

    std::cout << "Successfully created alarm " << alarm_name <<
        " and enabled actions on it." << std::endl;
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ListMetrics

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/ListMetricsRequest.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/ListMetricsResult.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>
```

List the metrics.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::ListMetricsRequest request;

        if (argc > 1)
        {
            request.SetMetricName(argv[1]);
        }

        if (argc > 2)
        {
            request.SetNamespace(argv[2]);
        }

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done)
        {
            auto outcome = cw.ListMetrics(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
            {
                std::cout << "Failed to list CloudWatch metrics:" <<
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
                break;
            }

            if (!header)
            {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(48) << "MetricName" <<
                    std::setw(32) << "Namespace" << "DimensionNameValuePairs" <<
                    std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &metrics = outcome.GetResult().GetMetrics();
            for (const auto &metric : metrics)
            {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(48) <<
                    metric.GetMetricName() << std::setw(32) <<
                    metric.GetNamespace();
                const auto &dimensions = metric.GetDimensions();
                for (auto iter = dimensions.cbegin();
                    iter != dimensions.cend(); ++iter)
                {
                    const auto &dimkv = *iter;
                    std::cout << dimkv.GetName() << " = " << dimkv.GetValue();
                    if (iter + 1 != dimensions.cend())
                    {
                        std::cout << ", ";
                    }
                }
                std::cout << std::endl;
            }

            const auto &next_token = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            request.SetNextToken(next_token);
            done = next_token.empty();
        }
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/PutMetricAlarmRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Create the alarm to watch the metric.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::PutMetricAlarmRequest request;
        request.SetAlarmName(alarm_name);
        request.SetComparisonOperator(
            Aws::CloudWatch::Model::ComparisonOperator::GreaterThanThreshold);
        request.SetEvaluationPeriods(1);
        request.SetMetricName("CPUUtilization");
        request.SetNamespace("AWS/EC2");
        request.SetPeriod(60);
        request.SetStatistic(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Statistic::Average);
        request.SetThreshold(70.0);
        request.SetActionsEnabled(false);
        request.SetAlarmDescription("Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%");
        request.SetUnit(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::StandardUnit::Seconds);

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Dimension dimension;
        dimension.SetName("InstanceId");
        dimension.SetValue(instanceId);

        request.AddDimensions(dimension);

        auto outcome = cw.PutMetricAlarm(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
```

```
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch alarm:" <<
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully created CloudWatch alarm " << alarm_name
                << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/CloudWatchClient.h>
#include <aws/monitoring/model/PutMetricDataRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Put data into the metric.

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::CloudWatchClient cw;

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::Dimension dimension;
        dimension.SetName("UNIQUE_PAGES");
        dimension.SetValue("URLS");
```

```
        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::MetricDatum datum;
        datum.SetMetricName("PAGES_VISITED");
        datum.SetUnit(Aws::CloudWatch::Model::StandardUnit::None);
        datum.SetValue(data_point);
        datum.AddDimensions(dimension);

        Aws::CloudWatch::Model::PutMetricDataRequest request;
        request.SetNamespace("SITE/TRAFFIC");
        request.AddMetricData(datum);

        auto outcome = cw.PutMetricData(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to put sample metric data:" <<
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully put sample metric data" << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <aws/logs/CloudWatchLogsClient.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Delete the subscription filter.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::CloudWatchLogsClient cwl;
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Model::DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest request;
        request.SetFilterName(filter_name);
        request.SetLogGroupName(log_group);

        auto outcome = cwl.DeleteSubscriptionFilter(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Failed to delete CloudWatch log subscription filter "
                << filter_name << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted CloudWatch logs subscription " <<
                "filter " << filter_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeSubscriptionFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <aws/logs/CloudWatchLogsClient.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/DescribeSubscriptionFiltersResult.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>
```

List the subscription filters.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::CloudWatchLogsClient cwl;
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Model::DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest request;
        request.SetLogGroupName(log_group);
        request.SetLimit(1);

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done) {
            auto outcome = cwl.DescribeSubscriptionFilters(
                    request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Failed to describe CloudWatch subscription filters "
                    << "for log group " << log_group << ": " <<
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
```

```
            }

            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                    std::setw(64) << "FilterPattern" << std::setw(64) <<
                    "DestinationArn" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &filters = outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionFilters();
            for (const auto &filter : filters) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) <<
                    filter.GetFilterName() << std::setw(64) <<
                    filter.GetFilterPattern() << std::setw(64) <<
                    filter.GetDestinationArn() << std::endl;
            }

            const auto &next_token = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            request.SetNextToken(next_token);
            done = next_token.empty();
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `PutSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/logs/CloudWatchLogsClient.h>
#include <aws/logs/model/PutSubscriptionFilterRequest.h>
```

```
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Create the subscription filter.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::CloudWatchLogsClient cwl;
        Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Model::PutSubscriptionFilterRequest request;
        request.SetFilterName(filter_name);
        request.SetFilterPattern(filter_pattern);
        request.SetLogGroupName(log_group);
        request.SetDestinationArn(dest_arn);
        auto outcome = cwl.PutSubscriptionFilter(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch logs subscription filter "
                << filter_name << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully created CloudWatch logs subscription " <<
                "filter " << filter_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CodeBuild examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with CodeBuild.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListBuilds`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuilds`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the CodeBuild builds.
/*!
  \param sortType: 'SortOrderType' type.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::CodeBuild::listBuilds(Aws::CodeBuild::Model::SortOrderType sortType,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::CodeBuild::CodeBuildClient codeBuildClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListBuildsRequest listBuildsRequest;
    listBuildsRequest.SetSortOrder(sortType);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.

    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listBuildsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListBuildsOutcome listBuildsOutcome =
 codeBuildClient.ListBuilds(
                listBuildsRequest);

        if (listBuildsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &ids =
 listBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetIds();
            if (!ids.empty()) {
```

```
                std::cout << "Information about each build:" << std::endl;
                Aws::CodeBuild::Model::BatchGetBuildsRequest getBuildsRequest;
                getBuildsRequest.SetIds(listBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetIds());
                Aws::CodeBuild::Model::BatchGetBuildsOutcome getBuildsOutcome =
 codeBuildClient.BatchGetBuilds(
                        getBuildsRequest);

                if (getBuildsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    const Aws::Vector<Aws::CodeBuild::Model::Build> &builds =
 getBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetBuilds();
                    std::cout << builds.size() << " build(s) found." << std::endl;
                    for (auto val: builds) {
                        std::cout << val.GetId() << std::endl;
                    }
                } else {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting builds"
                              << getBuildsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                    return false;
                }
            } else {
                std::cout << "No builds found." << std::endl;
            }

            // Get the next token for pagination.

            nextToken = listBuildsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing builds"
                      << listBuildsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.

            empty()

            );

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuilds in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListProjects`

The following code example shows how to use `ListProjects`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the CodeBuild projects.
/*!
  \param sortType: 'SortOrderType' type.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::CodeBuild::listProjects(Aws::CodeBuild::Model::SortOrderType sortType,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::CodeBuild::CodeBuildClient codeBuildClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListProjectsRequest listProjectsRequest;
    listProjectsRequest.SetSortOrder(sortType);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Next token for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allProjects;

    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listProjectsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::CodeBuild::Model::ListProjectsOutcome outcome =
 codeBuildClient.ListProjects(
                listProjectsRequest);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &projects =
 outcome.GetResult().GetProjects();
            allProjects.insert(allProjects.end(), projects.begin(), projects.end());
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing projects" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allProjects.size() << " project(s) found." << std::endl;
    for (auto project: allProjects) {
        std::cout << project << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`StartBuild`

The following code example shows how to use `StartBuild`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Start an AWS CodeBuild project build.
/*!
  \param projectName: A CodeBuild project name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
 */
bool AwsDoc::CodeBuild::startBuild(const Aws::String &projectName,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::CodeBuild::CodeBuildClient codeBuildClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::StartBuildRequest startBuildRequest;
    startBuildRequest.SetProjectName(projectName);

    Aws::CodeBuild::Model::StartBuildOutcome outcome = codeBuildClient.StartBuild(
            startBuildRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully started build" << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Build ID: " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuild().GetId()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    else {
        std::cerr << "Error starting build" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see StartBuild in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS cognito-idp)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_cognito")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
```

```
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                    # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_cognito.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_cognito.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/cognito-idp/CognitoIdentityProviderClient.h>
#include <aws/cognito-idp/model/ListUserPoolsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Cognito" starter application which initializes an Amazon Cognito client
 and lists the Amazon Cognito
 *  user pools.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_cognito'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
```

```
   {
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
cognitoClient(clientConfig);

       Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
       std::vector<Aws::String> userPools;

       do {
           Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ListUserPoolsRequest
listUserPoolsRequest;
           if (!nextToken.empty()) {
               listUserPoolsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
           }

           Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ListUserPoolsOutcome
listUserPoolsOutcome =
                   cognitoClient.ListUserPools(listUserPoolsRequest);

           if (listUserPoolsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
               for (auto &userPool:
listUserPoolsOutcome.GetResult().GetUserPools()) {

                   userPools.push_back(userPool.GetName());
               }

               nextToken = listUserPoolsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
           } else {
               std::cerr << "ListUserPools error: " <<
listUserPoolsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
               result = 1;
               break;
           }


       } while (!nextToken.empty());
       std::cout << userPools.size() << " user pools found." << std::endl;
       for (auto &userPool: userPools) {
           std::cout << "   user pool: " << userPool << std::endl;
       }
   }
```

```
    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 client(clientConfig);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserRequest request;
    request.SetUsername(userName);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminGetUser(request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The status for " << userName << " is " <<

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::UserStatusTypeMapper::GetNameForUserStatusType(
                            outcome.GetResult().GetUserStatus()) << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Enabled is " << outcome.GetResult().GetEnabled() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminGetUser. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`AdminInitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthRequest request;
    request.SetClientId(clientID);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
    request.AddAuthParameters("USERNAME", userName);
    request.AddAuthParameters("PASSWORD", password);
    request.SetAuthFlow(
```

```
Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AuthFlowType::ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH);


   Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthOutcome outcome =
           client.AdminInitiateAuth(request);

   if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
       std::cout << "Call to AdminInitiateAuth was successful." << std::endl;
       sessionResult = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
   }
   else {
       std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminInitiateAuth. "
                 << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                 << std::endl;
   }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
request;
       request.AddChallengeResponses("USERNAME", userName);
```

```
        request.AddChallengeResponses("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);
        request.SetChallengeName(

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ChallengeNameType::SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeOutcome
outcome =
                client.AdminRespondToAuthChallenge(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Here is the response to the challenge.\n" <<

outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            accessToken =
outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().GetAccessToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminRespondToAuthChallenge. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest request;
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenOutcome outcome =
                client.AssociateSoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "Enter this setup key into an authenticator app, for example
 Google Authenticator."
                    << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Setup key: " << outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode()
                      << std::endl;
#ifdef USING_QR
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::cout << "\nOr scan the QR code in the file '" << QR_CODE_PATH <<
 "."
                      << std::endl;

            saveQRCode(std::string("otpauth://totp/") + userName + "?secret=" +
                       outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode());
#endif // USING_QR
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::AssociateSoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ConfirmSignUp

The following code example shows how to use ConfirmSignUp.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpRequest request;
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        request.SetConfirmationCode(confirmationCode);
        request.SetUsername(userName);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpOutcome outcome =
                client.ConfirmSignUp(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "ConfirmSignup was Successful."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::ConfirmSignUp. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
        request.SetAccessToken(accessToken);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteUser(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The user " << userName << " was deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::DeleteUser. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeRequest request;
        request.SetUsername(userName);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeOutcome outcome =
                client.ResendConfirmationCode(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode was
successful."
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

SignUp

The following code example shows how to use SignUp.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpRequest request;
        request.AddUserAttributes(
                Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AttributeType().WithName(
                        "email").WithValue(email));
        request.SetUsername(userName);
        request.SetPassword(password);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpOutcome outcome =
                client.SignUp(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The signup request for " << userName << " was successful."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderErrors::USERNAME_EXISTS) {
            std::cout
                    << "The username already exists. Please enter a different
username."
                    << std::endl;
            userExists = true;
        }
        else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::SignUpRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenRequest request;
        request.SetUserCode(userCode);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenOutcome outcome =
                client.VerifySoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Verification of the code was successful."
                      << std::endl;
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::VerifySoftwareToken. "
```

```
                        << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                        << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Scenario that adds a user to an Amazon Cognito user pool.
/*!
  \sa gettingStartedWithUserPools()
  \param clientID: Client ID associated with an Amazon Cognito user pool.
  \param userPoolID: An Amazon Cognito user pool ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Cognito::gettingStartedWithUserPools(const Aws::String &clientID,
                                                  const Aws::String &userPoolID,
```

```
                                                        const
Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
   printAsterisksLine();
   std::cout
           << "Welcome to the Amazon Cognito example scenario."
           << std::endl;
   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout
           << "This scenario will add a user to an Amazon Cognito user pool."
           << std::endl;
   const Aws::String userName = askQuestion("Enter a new username: ");
   const Aws::String password = askQuestion("Enter a new password: ");
   const Aws::String email = askQuestion("Enter a valid email for the user: ");

   std::cout << "Signing up " << userName << std::endl;

   Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient
client(clientConfig);
   bool userExists = false;
   do {
       // 1. Add a user with a username, password, and email address.
       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpRequest request;
       request.AddUserAttributes(
               Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AttributeType().WithName(
                       "email").WithValue(email));
       request.SetUsername(userName);
       request.SetPassword(password);
       request.SetClientId(clientID);
       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::SignUpOutcome outcome =
               client.SignUp(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cout << "The signup request for " << userName << " was successful."
                     << std::endl;
       }
       else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==

Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderErrors::USERNAME_EXISTS) {
           std::cout
                   << "The username already exists. Please enter a different
username."
                   << std::endl;
           userExists = true;
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::SignUpRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (userExists);

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Retrieving status of " << userName << " in the user pool."
              << std::endl;
    // 2. Confirm that the user was added to the user pool.
    if (!checkAdminUserStatus(userName, userPoolID, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    std::cout << "A confirmation code was sent to " << email << "." << std::endl;

    bool resend = askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to send a new code? (y/n) ");
    if (resend) {
        // Request a resend of the confirmation code to the email address.
(ResendConfirmationCode)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeRequest request;
        request.SetUsername(userName);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ResendConfirmationCodeOutcome outcome =
                client.ResendConfirmationCode(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode was
successful."
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
CognitoIdentityProvider::ResendConfirmationCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
   printAsterisksLine();

   {
       // 4. Send the confirmation code that's received in the email.
(ConfirmSignUp)
       const Aws::String confirmationCode = askQuestion(
               "Enter the confirmation code that was emailed: ");
       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpRequest request;
       request.SetClientId(clientID);
       request.SetConfirmationCode(confirmationCode);
       request.SetUsername(userName);

       Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ConfirmSignUpOutcome outcome =
               client.ConfirmSignUp(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cout << "ConfirmSignup was Successful."
                     << std::endl;
       }
       else {
           std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::ConfirmSignUp. "
                     << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                     << std::endl;
           return false;
       }
   }

   std::cout << "Rechecking the status of " << userName << " in the user pool."
             << std::endl;
   if (!checkAdminUserStatus(userName, userPoolID, client)) {
       return false;
   }

   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "Initiating authorization using the username and password."
             << std::endl;

   Aws::String session;
   // 5. Initiate authorization with username and password. (AdminInitiateAuth)
   if (!adminInitiateAuthorization(clientID, userPoolID,  userName, password,
session, client)) {
       return false;
```

```
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout
            << "Starting setup of time-based one-time password (TOTP) multi-factor
 authentication (MFA)."
            << std::endl;

    {
        // 6. Request a setup key for one-time password (TOTP)
        //    multi-factor authentication (MFA). (AssociateSoftwareToken)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest request;
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AssociateSoftwareTokenOutcome outcome =
                client.AssociateSoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout
                    << "Enter this setup key into an authenticator app, for example
 Google Authenticator."
                    << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Setup key: " << outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode()
                      << std::endl;
#ifdef USING_QR
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::cout << "\nOr scan the QR code in the file '" << QR_CODE_PATH <<
 "."
                      << std::endl;

            saveQRCode(std::string("otpauth://totp/") + userName + "?secret=" +
                       outcome.GetResult().GetSecretCode());
#endif // USING_QR
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::AssociateSoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    askQuestion("Type enter to continue...", alwaysTrueTest);

    printAsterisksLine();

    {
        Aws::String userCode = askQuestion(
                "Enter the 6 digit code displayed in the authenticator app: ");

        //  7. Send the MFA code copied from an authenticator app.
(VerifySoftwareToken)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenRequest request;
        request.SetUserCode(userCode);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::VerifySoftwareTokenOutcome outcome =
                client.VerifySoftwareToken(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Verification of the code was successful."
                      << std::endl;
            session = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::VerifySoftwareToken. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "You have completed the MFA authentication setup." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Now, sign in." << std::endl;

    // 8. Initiate authorization again with username and password.
(AdminInitiateAuth)
    if (!adminInitiateAuthorization(clientID, userPoolID, userName, password,
session, client)) {
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String accessToken;
    {
        Aws::String mfaCode = askQuestion(
```

```
                "Re-enter the 6 digit code displayed in the authenticator app: ");

        // 9. Send a new MFA code copied from an authenticator app.
 (AdminRespondToAuthChallenge)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest
 request;
        request.AddChallengeResponses("USERNAME", userName);
        request.AddChallengeResponses("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);
        request.SetChallengeName(

 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::ChallengeNameType::SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA);
        request.SetClientId(clientID);
        request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
        request.SetSession(session);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminRespondToAuthChallengeOutcome
 outcome =
                client.AdminRespondToAuthChallenge(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Here is the response to the challenge.\n" <<

 outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            accessToken =
 outcome.GetResult().GetAuthenticationResult().GetAccessToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with
 CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminRespondToAuthChallenge. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "You have successfully added a user to Amazon Cognito."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    if (askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to delete the user that you just added? (y/
n) ")) {
        // 10. Delete the user that you just added. (DeleteUser)
        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
```

```
        request.SetAccessToken(accessToken);

        Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::DeleteUserOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteUser(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The user " << userName << " was deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::DeleteUser. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Routine which checks the user status in an Amazon Cognito user pool.
/*!
 \sa checkAdminUserStatus()
 \param userName: A username.
 \param userPoolID: An Amazon Cognito user pool ID.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Cognito::checkAdminUserStatus(const Aws::String &userName,
                                           const Aws::String &userPoolID,
                                           const
 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient &client) {
    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserRequest request;
    request.SetUsername(userName);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);

    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminGetUserOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminGetUser(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The status for " << userName << " is " <<

 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::UserStatusTypeMapper::GetNameForUserStatusType(
                          outcome.GetResult().GetUserStatus()) << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Enabled is " << outcome.GetResult().GetEnabled() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminGetUser. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which starts authorization of an Amazon Cognito user.
//! This routine requires administrator credentials.
/*!
 \sa adminInitiateAuthorization()
 \param clientID: Client ID of tracked device.
 \param userPoolID: An Amazon Cognito user pool ID.
 \param userName: A username.
 \param password: A password.
 \param sessionResult: String to receive a session token.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Cognito::adminInitiateAuthorization(const Aws::String &clientID,
                                                 const Aws::String &userPoolID,
                                                 const Aws::String &userName,
                                                 const Aws::String &password,
                                                 Aws::String &sessionResult,
                                                 const
 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::CognitoIdentityProviderClient &client) {
    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthRequest request;
    request.SetClientId(clientID);
    request.SetUserPoolId(userPoolID);
    request.AddAuthParameters("USERNAME", userName);
    request.AddAuthParameters("PASSWORD", password);
    request.SetAuthFlow(

 Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AuthFlowType::ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH);


    Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Model::AdminInitiateAuthOutcome outcome =
            client.AdminInitiateAuth(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Call to AdminInitiateAuth was successful." << std::endl;
        sessionResult = outcome.GetResult().GetSession();
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with CognitoIdentityProvider::AdminInitiateAuth. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

DynamoDB examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS dynamodb)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_dynamodb")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
```

```
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_dynamodb.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_dynamodb.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/dynamodb/DynamoDBClient.h>
#include <aws/dynamodb/model/ListTablesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello DynamoDB" starter application which initializes an Amazon DynamoDB
 (DynamoDB) client and lists the
 *  DynamoDB tables.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_dynamodb'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
```

```
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.

    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamodbClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesRequest listTablesRequest;
        listTablesRequest.SetLimit(50);
        do {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesOutcome &outcome =
 dynamodbClient.ListTables(
                    listTablesRequest);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }

            for (const auto &tableName: outcome.GetResult().GetTableNames()) {
                std::cout << tableName << std::endl;
            }

            listTablesRequest.SetExclusiveStartTableName(
                    outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedTableName());

        } while (!listTablesRequest.GetExclusiveStartTableName().empty());
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        //  1. Create a table with partition: year (N) and sort: title (S).
(CreateTable)
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig)) {

            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::dynamodbGettingStartedScenario(clientConfig);

            // 9. Delete the table. (DeleteTable)
            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig);
        }
    }
```

```
//! Scenario to modify and query a DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa dynamodbGettingStartedScenario()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::dynamodbGettingStartedScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo." <<
 std::endl;
    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;

    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    // 2. Add a new movie.
    Aws::String title;
    float rating;
    int year;
    Aws::String plot;
    {
        title = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        year = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange("On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it?
 ",
                                          1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemRequest putItemRequest;
        putItemRequest.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        putItemRequest.AddItem(YEAR_KEY,
                               Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        putItemRequest.AddItem(TITLE_KEY,
                               Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));

        // Create attribute for the info map.
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
 Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
```

```
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        ratingAttribute->SetN(rating);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        plotAttribute->SetS(plot);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);

        putItemRequest.AddItem(INFO_KEY, infoMapAttribute);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemOutcome outcome = dynamoClient.PutItem(
                putItemRequest);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add an item: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nAdded '" << title << "' to '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'."
              << std::endl;

    // 3. Update the rating and plot of the movie by using an update expression.
    {
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it  ") +
                std::to_string(rating)
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion(Aws::String("You summarized the plot as '") + plot +
                           "'.\nWhat would you say now? ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemRequest request;
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);
        request.AddKey(TITLE_KEY,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        request.AddKey(YEAR_KEY, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        std::stringstream expressionStream;
        expressionStream << "set " << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << " =:r, "
                         << INFO_KEY << "." << PLOT_KEY << " =:p";
        request.SetUpdateExpression(expressionStream.str());
        request.SetExpressionAttributeValues({
```

```
                                                        {":r",
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                                                rating)},
                                                        {":p",
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(
                                                                plot)}
                                                });

        request.SetReturnValues(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ReturnValue::UPDATED_NEW);

        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemOutcome &result =
dynamoClient.UpdateItem(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error updating movie " + result.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nUpdated '" << title << "' with new attributes:" << std::endl;

    // 4. Put 250 movies in the table from moviedata.json.
    {
        std::cout << "Adding movies from a json file to the database." << std::endl;
        const size_t MAX_SIZE_FOR_BATCH_WRITE = 25;
        const size_t MOVIES_TO_WRITE = 10 * MAX_SIZE_FOR_BATCH_WRITE;
        Aws::String jsonString = getMovieJSON();
        if (!jsonString.empty()) {
            Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue json(jsonString);
            Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> movieJsons =
json.View().AsArray();
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest> writeRequests;

            // To add movies with a cross-section of years, use an appropriate
increment
            // value for iterating through the database.
            size_t increment = movieJsons.GetLength() / MOVIES_TO_WRITE;
            for (size_t i = 0; i < movieJsons.GetLength(); i += increment) {
                writeRequests.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest());
                Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> putItems
= movieJsonViewToAttributeMap(
                        movieJsons[i]);
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutRequest putRequest;
```

```
                putRequest.SetItem(putItems);
                writeRequests.back().SetPutRequest(putRequest);
                if (writeRequests.size() == MAX_SIZE_FOR_BATCH_WRITE) {
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemRequest request;
                    request.AddRequestItems(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME, writeRequests);
                    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(
                            request);
                    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                        std::cerr << "Unable to batch write movie data: "
                                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                                  << std::endl;
                        writeRequests.clear();
                        break;
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout << "Added batch of " << writeRequests.size()
                                  << " movies to the database."
                                  << std::endl;
                    }
                    writeRequests.clear();
                }
            }
        }
    }

    std::cout << std::setfill('*') << std::setw(ASTERISK_FILL_WIDTH) << " "
              << std::endl;

    // 5. Get a movie by Key (partition + sort).
    {
        Aws::String titleToGet("King Kong");
        Aws::String answer = askQuestion(Aws::String(
                "Let's move on...Would you like to get info about '" + titleToGet +
                "'? (y/n) "));
        if (answer == "y") {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemRequest request;
            request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);
            request.AddKey(TITLE_KEY,
                           Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titleToGet));
            request.AddKey(YEAR_KEY,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(1933));
```

```
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemOutcome &result =
dynamoClient.GetItem(
                    request);
            if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error " << result.GetError().GetMessage();
            }
            else {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = result.GetResult().GetItem();
                if (!item.empty()) {
                    std::cout << "\nHere's what I found:" << std::endl;
                    printMovieInfo(item);
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "\nThe movie was not found in the database."
                              << std::endl;
                }
            }
        }
    }

    // 6. Use Query with a key condition expression to return all movies
    //    released in a given year.
    Aws::String doAgain = "n";
    do {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryRequest req;

        req.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        // "year" is a DynamoDB reserved keyword and must be replaced with an
        // expression attribute name.
        req.SetKeyConditionExpression("#dynobase_year = :valueToMatch");
        req.SetExpressionAttributeNames({{"#dynobase_year", YEAR_KEY}});

        int yearToMatch = askQuestionForIntRange(
                "\nLet's get a list of movies released in"
                " a given year. Enter a year between 1972 and 2018 ",
                1972, 2018);
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValues;
        attributeValues.emplace(":valueToMatch",
                                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                        yearToMatch));
        req.SetExpressionAttributeValues(attributeValues);
```

```
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryOutcome &result = dynamoClient.Query(req);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetResult().GetItems();
            if (!items.empty()) {
                std::cout << "\nThere were " << items.size()
                          << " movies in the database from "
                          << yearToMatch << "." << std::endl;
                for (const auto &item: items) {
                    printMovieInfo(item);
                }
                doAgain = "n";
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "\nNo movies from " << yearToMatch
                          << " were found in the database"
                          << std::endl;
                doAgain = askQuestion(Aws::String("Try another year? (y/n) "));
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to Query items: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

    } while (doAgain == "y");

    //  7. Use Scan to return movies released within a range of years.
    //     Show how to paginate data using ExclusiveStartKey. (Scan +
FilterExpression)
    {
        int startYear = askQuestionForIntRange("\nNow let's scan a range of years "
                                               "for movies in the database. Enter a
start year: ",
                                               1972, 2018);
        int endYear = askQuestionForIntRange("\nEnter an end year: ",
                                             startYear, 2018);
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
exclusiveStartKey;
        do {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanRequest scanRequest;
            scanRequest.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);
            scanRequest.SetFilterExpression(
                    "#dynobase_year >= :startYear AND #dynobase_year <= :endYear");
```

```
            scanRequest.SetExpressionAttributeNames({{"#dynobase_year", YEAR_KEY}});

            Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
attributeValues;
            attributeValues.emplace(":startYear",
                                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                            startYear));
            attributeValues.emplace(":endYear",
                                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(
                                            endYear));
            scanRequest.SetExpressionAttributeValues(attributeValues);

            if (!exclusiveStartKey.empty()) {
                scanRequest.SetExclusiveStartKey(exclusiveStartKey);
            }

            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanOutcome &result = dynamoClient.Scan(
                    scanRequest);
            if (result.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetResult().GetItems();
                if (!items.empty()) {
                    std::stringstream stringStream;
                    stringStream << "\nFound " << items.size() << " movies in one
scan."
                                 << " How many would you like to see? ";
                    size_t count = askQuestionForInt(stringStream.str());
                    for (size_t i = 0; i < count && i < items.size(); ++i) {
                        printMovieInfo(items[i]);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "\nNo movies in the database between " << startYear
<<
                              " and " << endYear << "." << std::endl;
                }

                exclusiveStartKey = result.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedKey();
                if (!exclusiveStartKey.empty()) {
                    std::cout << "Not all movies were retrieved. Scanning for more."
                              << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "All movies were retrieved with this scan."
```

```
                                << std::endl;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to Scan movies: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            }
        } while (!exclusiveStartKey.empty());
    }

    // 8. Delete a movie. (DeleteItem)
    {
        std::stringstream stringStream;
        stringStream << "\nWould you like to delete the movie " << title
                     << " from the database? (y/n) ";
        Aws::String answer = askQuestion(stringStream.str());
        if (answer == "y") {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemRequest request;
            request.AddKey(YEAR_KEY,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
            request.AddKey(TITLE_KEY,
                           Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
            request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteItem(
                    request);
            if (result.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "\nRemoved \"" << title << "\" from the database."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movie: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Routine to convert a JsonView object to an attribute map.
/*!
```

```
  \sa movieJsonViewToAttributeMap()
  \param jsonView: Json view object.
  \return map: Map that can be used in a DynamoDB request.
 */
Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
AwsDoc::DynamoDB::movieJsonViewToAttributeMap(
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &jsonView) {
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> result;

    if (jsonView.KeyExists(YEAR_KEY)) {
        result[YEAR_KEY].SetN(jsonView.GetInteger(YEAR_KEY));
    }
    if (jsonView.KeyExists(TITLE_KEY)) {
        result[TITLE_KEY].SetS(jsonView.GetString(TITLE_KEY));
    }
    if (jsonView.KeyExists(INFO_KEY)) {
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, const
 std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> infoMap;
        Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView infoView = jsonView.GetObject(INFO_KEY);
        if (infoView.KeyExists(RATING_KEY)) {
            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValue =
 std::make_shared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>();
            attributeValue->SetN(infoView.GetDouble(RATING_KEY));
            infoMap.emplace(std::make_pair(RATING_KEY, attributeValue));
        }
        if (infoView.KeyExists(PLOT_KEY)) {
            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValue =
 std::make_shared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>();
            attributeValue->SetS(infoView.GetString(PLOT_KEY));
            infoMap.emplace(std::make_pair(PLOT_KEY, attributeValue));
        }

        result[INFO_KEY].SetM(infoMap);
    }

    return result;
}

//! Create a DynamoDB table to be used in sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa createMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
```

```
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    bool movieTableAlreadyExisted = false;

    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition yearAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(YEAR_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::N);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition titleAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(TITLE_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement yearKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(YEAR_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement titleKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(TITLE_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::RANGE);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
        throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS);
        request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        std::cout << "Creating table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'..." << std::endl;
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            if (result.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
```

```
                Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
                std::cout << "Table already exists." << std::endl;
                movieTableAlreadyExisted = true;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to create table: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage();
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    // Wait for table to become active.
    if (!movieTableAlreadyExisted) {
        std::cout << "Waiting for table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME
                  << "' to become active...." << std::endl;
        if (!AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME,
 clientConfiguration)) {
            return false;
        }
        std::cout << "Table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "' created and active."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Delete the DynamoDB table used for sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}

//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
    // 2. Add multiple movies using "Insert" statements. (BatchExecuteStatement)
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::vector<Aws::String> titles;
    std::vector<float> ratings;
    std::vector<int> years;
    std::vector<Aws::String> plots;
    Aws::String doAgain = "n";
    do {
        Aws::String aTitle = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        titles.push_back(aTitle);
        int aYear = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        years.push_back(aYear);
        float aRating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? ",
                1, 10);
        ratings.push_back(aRating);
        Aws::String aPlot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");
        plots.push_back(aPlot);

        doAgain = askQuestion(Aws::String("Would you like to add more movies? (y/n)
"));
    } while (doAgain == "y");

    std::cout << "Adding " << titles.size()
              << (titles.size() == 1 ? " movie " : " movies ")
              << "to the table using a batch \"INSERT\" statement." << std::endl;

    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());

        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
```

```
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));

            // Create attribute for the info map.
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            ratingAttribute->SetN(ratings[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            plotAttribute->SetS(plots[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
            attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add the movies: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
   // 3. Get the data for multiple movies using "Select" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
   {
       Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
               titles.size());
       std::stringstream sqlStream;
       sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                 << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

       std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

       for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
           statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
           Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
           attributes.push_back(
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
           statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
       }

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

       request.SetStatements(statements);

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
               request);
       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

           const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse>
&responses = result.GetResponses();

           for (const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse &response:
responses) {
               const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = response.GetItem();

               printMovieInfo(item);
           }
       }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
    // 4. Update the data for multiple movies using "Update" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)

    for (size_t i = 0; i < titles.size(); ++i) {
        ratings[i] = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your the movie, \"") + titles[i] +
                ".\nYou rated it  " + std::to_string(ratings[i])
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
    }

    std::cout << "Updating the movie with a batch \"UPDATE\" statement." <<
std::endl;

    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());

        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                  << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";


        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(ratings[i]));
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));
```

```
attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
    // 6. Delete multiple movies using "Delete" statements. (BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;
```

```
        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
 dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movies: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Batch get items from different Amazon DynamoDB tables.
/*!
  \sa batchGetItem()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::batchGetItem(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchGetItemRequest request;

    // Table1: Forum.
    Aws::String table1Name = "Forum";
```

```
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeysAndAttributes table1KeysAndAttributes;

    // Table1: Projection expression.
    table1KeysAndAttributes.SetProjectionExpression("#n, Category, Messages, #v");

    // Table1: Expression attribute names.
    Aws::Http::HeaderValueCollection headerValueCollection;
    headerValueCollection.emplace("#n", "Name");
    headerValueCollection.emplace("#v", "Views");
    table1KeysAndAttributes.SetExpressionAttributeNames(headerValueCollection);

    // Table1: Set key name, type, and value to search.
    std::vector<Aws::String> nameValues = {"Amazon DynamoDB", "Amazon S3"};
    for (const Aws::String &name: nameValues) {
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> keys;
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue key;
        key.SetS(name);
        keys.emplace("Name", key);
        table1KeysAndAttributes.AddKeys(keys);
    }

    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeysAndAttributes> requestItems;
    requestItems.emplace(table1Name, table1KeysAndAttributes);

    // Table2: ProductCatalog.
    Aws::String table2Name = "ProductCatalog";
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeysAndAttributes table2KeysAndAttributes;
    table2KeysAndAttributes.SetProjectionExpression("Title, Price, Color");

    // Table2: Set key name, type, and value to search.
    std::vector<Aws::String> idValues = {"102", "103", "201"};
    for (const Aws::String &id: idValues) {
        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> keys;
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue key;
        key.SetN(id);
        keys.emplace("Id", key);
        table2KeysAndAttributes.AddKeys(keys);
    }

    requestItems.emplace(table2Name, table2KeysAndAttributes);

    bool result = true;
    do {  // Use a do loop to handle pagination.
        request.SetRequestItems(requestItems);
```

```
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchGetItemOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchGetItem(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            for (const auto &responsesMapEntry: outcome.GetResult().GetResponses())
{
                Aws::String tableName = responsesMapEntry.first;
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &tableResults = responsesMapEntry.second;
                std::cout << "Retrieved " << tableResults.size()
                          << " responses for table '" << tableName << "'.\n"
                          << std::endl;
                if (tableName == "Forum") {

                    std::cout << "Name | Category | Message | Views" << std::endl;
                    for (const Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &item: tableResults) {
                        std::cout << item.at("Name").GetS() << " | ";
                        std::cout << item.at("Category").GetS() << " | ";
                        std::cout << (item.count("Message") == 0 ? "" : item.at(
                                "Messages").GetN()) << " | ";
                        std::cout << (item.count("Views") == 0 ? "" : item.at(
                                "Views").GetN()) << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Title | Price | Color" << std::endl;
                    for (const Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &item: tableResults) {
                        std::cout << item.at("Title").GetS() << " | ";
                        std::cout << (item.count("Price") == 0 ? "" : item.at(
                                "Price").GetN());
                        if (item.count("Color")) {
                            std::cout << " | ";
                            for (const
std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &listItem: item.at(
                                        "Color").GetL())
                                std::cout << listItem->GetS() << " ";
                        }
                        std::cout << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                std::cout << std::endl;
```

```
            }

            // If necessary, repeat request for remaining items.
            requestItems = outcome.GetResult().GetUnprocessedKeys();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Batch get item failed: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }
    } while (!requestItems.empty());

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Batch write items from a JSON file.
/*!
  \sa batchWriteItem()
  \param jsonFilePath: JSON file path.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

/*
```

```
 * The input for this routine is a JSON file that you can download from the
 following URL:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/SampleData.html.
 *
 * The JSON data uses the BatchWriteItem API request syntax. The JSON strings are
 * converted to AttributeValue objects. These AttributeValue objects will then
 generate
 * JSON strings when constructing the BatchWriteItem request, essentially outputting
 * their input.
 *
 * This is perhaps an artificial example, but it demonstrates the APIs.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::batchWriteItem(const Aws::String &jsonFilePath,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    std::ifstream fileStream(jsonFilePath);

    if (!fileStream) {
        std::cerr << "Error: could not open file '" << jsonFilePath << "'."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    std::stringstream stringStream;
    stringStream << fileStream.rdbuf();
    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(stringStream);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemRequest batchWriteItemRequest;
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> level1Map =
 jsonValue.View().GetAllObjects();
    for (const auto &level1Entry: level1Map) {
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &entriesView = level1Entry.second;
        const Aws::String &tableName = level1Entry.first;
        // The JSON entries at this level are as follows:
        //  key - table name
        //  value - list of request objects
        if (!entriesView.IsListType()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: JSON file entry '"
                      << tableName << "' is not a list." << std::endl;
            continue;
        }

        Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> entries =
 entriesView.AsArray();
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest> writeRequests;
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::addWriteRequests(tableName, entries,
                                               writeRequests)) {
            batchWriteItemRequest.AddRequestItems(tableName, writeRequests);
        }
    }

    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchWriteItemOutcome outcome =
 dynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(
            batchWriteItemRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "DynamoDB::BatchWriteItem was successful." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with DynamoDB::BatchWriteItem. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Convert requests in JSON format to a vector of WriteRequest objects.
/*!
  \sa addWriteRequests()
  \param tableName: Name of the table for the write operations.
  \param requestsJson: Request data in JSON format.
  \param writeRequests: Vector to receive the WriteRequest objects.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::addWriteRequests(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                        const
 Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> &requestsJson,

 Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest> &writeRequests) {
    for (size_t i = 0; i < requestsJson.GetLength(); ++i) {
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &requestsEntry = requestsJson[i];
        if (!requestsEntry.IsObject()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: incorrect requestsEntry type "
```

```
                      << requestsEntry.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> requestsMap =
 requestsEntry.GetAllObjects();

        for (const auto &request: requestsMap) {
            const Aws::String &requestType = request.first;
            const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &requestJsonView = request.second;

            if (requestType == "PutRequest") {
                if (!requestJsonView.ValueExists("Item")) {
                    std::cerr << "Error: item key missing for requests "
                              << requestJsonView.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
                    return false;
                }
                Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
 attributes;
                if (!getAttributeObjectsMap(requestJsonView.GetObject("Item"),
                                            attributes)) {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting attributes "
                              << requestJsonView.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
                    return false;
                }

                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutRequest putRequest;
                putRequest.SetItem(attributes);
                writeRequests.push_back(
                        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::WriteRequest().WithPutRequest(
                                putRequest));
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: unimplemented request type '" << requestType
                          << "'." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Generate a map of AttributeValue objects from JSON records.
/*!
```

```
  \sa getAttributeObjectsMap()
  \param jsonView: JSONView of attribute records.
  \param writeRequests: Map to receive the AttributeValue objects.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::DynamoDB::getAttributeObjectsMap(const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &jsonView,
                                         Aws::Map<Aws::String,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &attributes) {
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> objectsMap =
 jsonView.GetAllObjects();
    for (const auto &entry: objectsMap) {
        const Aws::String &attributeKey = entry.first;
        const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView &attributeJsonView = entry.second;

        if (!attributeJsonView.IsObject()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: attribute not an object "
                      << attributeJsonView.WriteReadable() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        attributes.emplace(attributeKey,
                           Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue(attributeJsonView));
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa createTable()
  \param tableName: Name for the DynamoDB table.
  \param primaryKey: Primary key for the DynamoDB table.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                   const Aws::String &primaryKey,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::cout << "Creating table " << tableName <<
              " with a simple primary key: \"" << primaryKey << "\"." << std::endl;

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition hashKey;
    hashKey.SetAttributeName(primaryKey);
    hashKey.SetAttributeType(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
    request.AddAttributeDefinitions(hashKey);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement keySchemaElement;
    keySchemaElement.WithAttributeName(primaryKey).WithKeyType(
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
    request.AddKeySchema(keySchemaElement);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
    throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(5).WithWriteCapacityUnits(5);
    request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Table \""
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName() <<
                  " created!" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Failed to create table: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an item from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa deleteItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemRequest request;

    request.AddKey(partitionKey,
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(partitionValue));
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteItemOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.DeleteItem(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Item \"" << partitionValue << "\" deleted!" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete item: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
```

```
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa deleteTable()
```

```
  \param tableName: The DynamoDB table name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa describeTable()
  \param tableName: The DynamoDB table name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::describeTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableDescription &td =
 outcome.GetResult().GetTable();
        std::cout << "Table name  : " << td.GetTableName() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Table ARN   : " << td.GetTableArn() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Status      : "
                  << Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatusMapper::GetNameForTableStatus(
                          td.GetTableStatus()) << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Item count  : " << td.GetItemCount() << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Size (bytes): " << td.GetTableSizeBytes() << std::endl;

        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughputDescription &ptd =
 td.GetProvisionedThroughput();
        std::cout << "Throughput" << std::endl;
        std::cout << "  Read Capacity : " << ptd.GetReadCapacityUnits() <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "  Write Capacity: " << ptd.GetWriteCapacityUnits() <<
 std::endl;

        const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition> &ad =
 td.GetAttributeDefinitions();
        std::cout << "Attributes" << std::endl;
        for (const auto &a: ad)
            std::cout << "  " << a.GetAttributeName() << " (" <<
```

```
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeTypeMapper::GetNameForScalarAttributeType(
                              a.GetAttributeType()) <<
                       ")" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe table: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    // 2. Add a new movie using an "Insert" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    Aws::String title;
    float rating;
    int year;
    Aws::String plot;
    {
        title = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        year = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
```

```
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange("On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it?
",
                                          1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        // Create the parameter attributes.
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        ratingAttribute->SetN(rating);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        plotAttribute->SetS(plot);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
        attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add a movie: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
    //  3. Get the data for the movie using a "Select" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            // Print the retrieved movie information.
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetItems();

            if (items.size() == 1) {
                printMovieInfo(items[0]);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: " << items.size() << " movies were retrieved. "
                          << " There should be only one movie." << std::endl;
            }
```

```
        }
    }
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
    //  4. Update the data for the movie using an "Update" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it  ") +
                std::to_string(rating)
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                  << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(rating));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update a movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
            return false;
        }
    }
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete an item.

```
    // 6. Delete the movie using a "Delete" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
 dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get an item from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
```

```
  \sa getItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::getItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                               const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                               const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemRequest request;

    // Set up the request.
    request.SetTableName(tableName);
    request.AddKey(partitionKey,
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(partitionValue));

    // Retrieve the item's fields and values.
    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::GetItemOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.GetItem(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        // Reference the retrieved fields/values.
        const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> &item =
 outcome.GetResult().GetItem();
        if (!item.empty()) {
            // Output each retrieved field and its value.
            for (const auto &i: item)
                std::cout << "Values: " << i.first << ": " << i.second.GetS()
                          << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "No item found with the key " << partitionKey << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get item: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the Amazon DynamoDB tables for the current AWS account.
/*!
  \sa listTables()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::listTables(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesRequest listTablesRequest;
    listTablesRequest.SetLimit(50);
    do {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ListTablesOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.ListTables(
                listTablesRequest);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        for (const auto &tableName: outcome.GetResult().GetTableNames())
            std::cout << tableName << std::endl;
        listTablesRequest.SetExclusiveStartTableName(
                outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedTableName());
```

```
    } while (!listTablesRequest.GetExclusiveStartTableName().empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Put an item in an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa putItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param artistKey: The artist key. This is the partition key for the table.
  \param artistValue: The artist value.
  \param albumTitleKey: The album title key.
  \param albumTitleValue: The album title value.
  \param awardsKey: The awards key.
  \param awardsValue: The awards value.
  \param songTitleKey: The song title key.
  \param songTitleValue: The song title value.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::putItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                               const Aws::String &artistKey,
                               const Aws::String &artistValue,
                               const Aws::String &albumTitleKey,
                               const Aws::String &albumTitleValue,
                               const Aws::String &awardsKey,
```

```
                                const Aws::String &awardsValue,
                                const Aws::String &songTitleKey,
                                const Aws::String &songTitleValue,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemRequest putItemRequest;
    putItemRequest.SetTableName(tableName);

    putItemRequest.AddItem(artistKey, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(
            artistValue)); // This is the hash key.
    putItemRequest.AddItem(albumTitleKey,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(
            albumTitleValue));
    putItemRequest.AddItem(awardsKey,

 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(awardsValue));
    putItemRequest.AddItem(songTitleKey,

 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(songTitleValue));

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::PutItemOutcome outcome = dynamoClient.PutItem(
            putItemRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully added Item!" << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
```

```
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Perform a query on an Amazon DynamoDB Table and retrieve items.
/*!
  \sa queryItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param projectionExpression: The projections expression, which is ignored if
 empty.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */

/*
 * The partition key attribute is searched with the specified value. By default, all
 fields and values
 * contained in the item are returned. If an optional projection expression is
 * specified on the command line, only the specified fields and values are
 * returned.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::queryItems(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                                  const Aws::String &projectionExpression,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryRequest request;

    request.SetTableName(tableName);
```

```
    if (!projectionExpression.empty()) {
        request.SetProjectionExpression(projectionExpression);
    }

    // Set query key condition expression.
    request.SetKeyConditionExpression(partitionKey + "= :valueToMatch");

    // Set Expression AttributeValues.
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributeValues;
    attributeValues.emplace(":valueToMatch", partitionValue);

    request.SetExpressionAttributeValues(attributeValues);

    bool result = true;

    // "exclusiveStartKey" is used for pagination.
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> exclusiveStartKey;
    do {
        if (!exclusiveStartKey.empty()) {
            request.SetExclusiveStartKey(exclusiveStartKey);
            exclusiveStartKey.clear();
        }
        // Perform Query operation.
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::QueryOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.Query(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            // Reference the retrieved items.
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = outcome.GetResult().GetItems();
            if (!items.empty()) {
                std::cout << "Number of items retrieved from Query: " <<
items.size()
                          << std::endl;
                // Iterate each item and print.
                for (const auto &item: items) {
                    std::cout
                            <<
"*******************************************************"
                            << std::endl;
                    // Output each retrieved field and its value.
                    for (const auto &i: item)
                        std::cout << i.first << ": " << i.second.GetS() <<
std::endl;
                }
```

```
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "No item found in table: " << tableName << std::endl;
            }

            exclusiveStartKey = outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedKey();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to Query items: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
            result = false;
            break;
        }
    } while (!exclusiveStartKey.empty());

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Scan an Amazon DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa scanTable()
  \param tableName: Name for the DynamoDB table.
  \param projectionExpression: An optional projection expression, ignored if empty.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::scanTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                 const Aws::String &projectionExpression,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    if (!projectionExpression.empty())
        request.SetProjectionExpression(projectionExpression);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>>
 all_items;
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
 last_evaluated_key; // Used for pagination;
    do {
        if (!last_evaluated_key.empty()) {
            request.SetExclusiveStartKey(last_evaluated_key);
        }
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScanOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.Scan(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            // Reference the retrieved items.
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
 Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = outcome.GetResult().GetItems();
            all_items.insert(all_items.end(), items.begin(), items.end());

            last_evaluated_key = outcome.GetResult().GetLastEvaluatedKey();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to Scan items: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!last_evaluated_key.empty());

    if (!all_items.empty()) {
        std::cout << "Number of items retrieved from scan: " << all_items.size()
                  << std::endl;
        // Iterate each item and print.
        for (const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
 &itemMap: all_items) {
            std::cout << "*****************************************************"
```

```
                        << std::endl;
            // Output each retrieved field and its value.
            for (const auto &itemEntry: itemMap)
                std::cout << itemEntry.first << ": " << itemEntry.second.GetS()
                          << std::endl;
        }
    }

    else {
        std::cout << "No items found in table: " << tableName << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an Amazon DynamoDB table item.
/*!
  \sa updateItem()
  \param tableName: The table name.
  \param partitionKey: The partition key.
  \param partitionValue: The value for the partition key.
  \param attributeKey: The key for the attribute to be updated.
  \param attributeValue: The value for the attribute to be updated.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
```

```
/*
 *  The example code only sets/updates an attribute value. It processes
 *  the attribute value as a string, even if the value could be interpreted
 *  as a number. Also, the example code does not remove an existing attribute
 *  from the key value.
 */

bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::updateItem(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionKey,
                                  const Aws::String &partitionValue,
                                  const Aws::String &attributeKey,
                                  const Aws::String &attributeValue,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    // *** Define UpdateItem request arguments.
    // Define TableName argument.
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    // Define KeyName argument.
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue attribValue;
    attribValue.SetS(partitionValue);
    request.AddKey(partitionKey, attribValue);

    // Construct the SET update expression argument.
    Aws::String update_expression("SET #a = :valueA");
    request.SetUpdateExpression(update_expression);

    // Construct attribute name argument.
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> expressionAttributeNames;
    expressionAttributeNames["#a"] = attributeKey;
    request.SetExpressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames);

    // Construct attribute value argument.
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue attributeUpdatedValue;
    attributeUpdatedValue.SetS(attributeValue);
    Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
 expressionAttributeValues;
    expressionAttributeValues[":valueA"] = attributeUpdatedValue;
    request.SetExpressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues);
```

```
    // Update the item.
    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateItemOutcome &outcome =
 dynamoClient.UpdateItem(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Item was updated" << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
```

```
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTable`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update a DynamoDB table.
/*!
  \sa updateTable()
  \param tableName: Name for the DynamoDB table.
  \param readCapacity: Provisioned read capacity.
  \param writeCapacity: Provisioned write capacity.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::updateTable(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                   long long readCapacity, long long writeCapacity,
```

```
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
&clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

   std::cout << "Updating " << tableName << " with new provisioned throughput
values"
             << std::endl;
   std::cout << "Read capacity : " << readCapacity << std::endl;
   std::cout << "Write capacity: " << writeCapacity << std::endl;

   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateTableRequest request;
   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput provisionedThroughput;

provisionedThroughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(readCapacity).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
           writeCapacity);

request.WithProvisionedThroughput(provisionedThroughput).WithTableName(tableName);

   const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::UpdateTableOutcome &outcome =
dynamoClient.UpdateTable(
           request);
   if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
       std::cout << "Successfully updated the table." << std::endl;
   } else {
       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBError &error = outcome.GetError();
       if (error.GetErrorType() == Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::VALIDATION &&
           error.GetMessage().find("The provisioned throughput for the table will
not change") != std::string::npos) {
           std::cout << "The provisioned throughput for the table will not change."
<< std::endl;
       } else {
           std::cerr << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
           return false;
       }
   }

   return waitTableActive(tableName, dynamoClient);
}
```

Code that waits for the table to become active.

```
//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
```

```
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        //  1. Create a table. (CreateTable)
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig)) {

            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlBatchExecuteScenario(clientConfig);

            // 7. Delete the table. (DeleteTable)
            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig);
        }

//! Scenario to modify and query a DynamoDB table using PartiQL batch statements.
/*!
  \sa partiqlBatchExecuteScenario()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlBatchExecuteScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    // 2. Add multiple movies using "Insert" statements. (BatchExecuteStatement)
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    std::vector<Aws::String> titles;
    std::vector<float> ratings;
    std::vector<int> years;
    std::vector<Aws::String> plots;
    Aws::String doAgain = "n";
    do {
        Aws::String aTitle = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        titles.push_back(aTitle);
        int aYear = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        years.push_back(aYear);
        float aRating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
```

```
                "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? ",
                1, 10);
        ratings.push_back(aRating);
        Aws::String aPlot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");
        plots.push_back(aPlot);

        doAgain = askQuestion(Aws::String("Would you like to add more movies? (y/n)
"));
    } while (doAgain == "y");

    std::cout << "Adding " << titles.size()
              << (titles.size() == 1 ? " movie " : " movies ")
              << "to the table using a batch \"INSERT\" statement." << std::endl;

    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());

        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));

            // Create attribute for the info map.
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            ratingAttribute->SetN(ratings[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);
```

```
            std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                    ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
            plotAttribute->SetS(plots[i]);
            infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
            attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add the movies: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Retrieving the movie data with a batch \"SELECT\" statement."
              << std::endl;

    // 3. Get the data for multiple movies using "Select" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));
```

```
attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse>
&responses = result.GetResponses();

            for (const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse &response:
responses) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = response.GetItem();

                printMovieInfo(item);
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 4. Update the data for multiple movies using "Update" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)

    for (size_t i = 0; i < titles.size(); ++i) {
        ratings[i] = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your the movie, \"") + titles[i] +
                ".\nYou rated it  " + std::to_string(ratings[i])
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);
    }
```

```
   std::cout << "Updating the movie with a batch \"UPDATE\" statement." <<
std::endl;

   {
       Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
               titles.size());

       std::stringstream sqlStream;
       sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                 << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
                 << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";


       std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

       for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
           statements[i].SetStatement(sql);

           Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
           attributes.push_back(
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(ratings[i]));
           attributes.push_back(
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
           statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
       }

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

       request.SetStatements(statements);
       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
               request);
       if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cerr << "Failed to update movie information: "
                     << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
           return false;
       }
   }

   std::cout << "Retrieving the updated movie data with a batch \"SELECT\"
statement."
             << std::endl;
```

```
   // 5. Get the updated data for multiple movies using "Select" statements.
(BatchExecuteStatement)
   {
       Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
               titles.size());
       std::stringstream sqlStream;
       sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                 << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

       std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

       for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
           statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
           Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
           attributes.push_back(
                   Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
           statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
       }

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

       request.SetStatements(statements);

       Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
               request);
       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

           const Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse>
&responses = result.GetResponses();

           for (const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementResponse &response:
responses) {
               const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>
&item = response.GetItem();

               printMovieInfo(item);
           }
       }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movies information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Deleting the movie data with a batch \"DELETE\" statement."
              << std::endl;

    // 6. Delete multiple movies using "Delete" statements. (BatchExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchStatementRequest> statements(
                titles.size());
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        std::string sql(sqlStream.str());

        for (size_t i = 0; i < statements.size(); ++i) {
            statements[i].SetStatement(sql);
            Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
            attributes.push_back(
                    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(titles[i]));

attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(years[i]));
            statements[i].SetParameters(attributes);
        }

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementRequest request;

        request.SetStatements(statements);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::BatchExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.BatchExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movies: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
    return true;
}

//! Create a DynamoDB table to be used in sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa createMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    bool movieTableAlreadyExisted = false;

    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition yearAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(YEAR_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::N);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition titleAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(TITLE_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement yearKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(YEAR_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement titleKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(TITLE_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::RANGE);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
        throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
```

```
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS);
        request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        std::cout << "Creating table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'..." << std::endl;
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            if (result.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
                std::cout << "Table already exists." << std::endl;
                movieTableAlreadyExisted = true;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to create table: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage();
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    // Wait for table to become active.
    if (!movieTableAlreadyExisted) {
        std::cout << "Waiting for table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME
                  << "' to become active...." << std::endl;
        if (!AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME,
 clientConfiguration)) {
            return false;
        }
        std::cout << "Table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "' created and active."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Delete the DynamoDB table used for sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(
```

```
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}

//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        //  1. Create a table. (CreateTable)
        if (AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig)) {

            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlExecuteScenario(clientConfig);

            // 7. Delete the table. (DeleteTable)
            AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(clientConfig);
        }

//! Scenario to modify and query a DynamoDB table using single PartiQL statements.
/*!
  \sa partiqlExecuteScenario()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::DynamoDB::partiqlExecuteScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    // 2. Add a new movie using an "Insert" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    Aws::String title;
    float rating;
    int year;
    Aws::String plot;
    {
        title = askQuestion(
                "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: ");
        year = askQuestionForInt("What year was it released? ");
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange("On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it?
 ",
                                          1, 10);
        plot = askQuestion("Summarize the plot for me: ");

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "INSERT INTO \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" VALUE {'"
                  << TITLE_KEY << "': ?, '" << YEAR_KEY << "': ?, '"
                  << INFO_KEY << "': ?}";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        // Create the parameter attributes.
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue infoMapAttribute;

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> ratingAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        ratingAttribute->SetN(rating);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(RATING_KEY, ratingAttribute);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> plotAttribute =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>(
                ALLOCATION_TAG.c_str());
        plotAttribute->SetS(plot);
        infoMapAttribute.AddMEntry(PLOT_KEY, plotAttribute);
        attributes.push_back(infoMapAttribute);
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to add a movie: " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nAdded '" << title << "' to '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'."
              << std::endl;

    //  3. Get the data for the movie using a "Select" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve movie information: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            // Print the retrieved movie information.
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetItems();

            if (items.size() == 1) {
                printMovieInfo(items[0]);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: " << items.size() << " movies were retrieved. "
                          << " There should be only one movie." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    //  4. Update the data for the movie using an "Update" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        rating = askQuestionForFloatRange(
                Aws::String("\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it  ") +
                std::to_string(rating)
                + ", what new rating would you give it? ", 1, 10);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "UPDATE \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" SET "
                  << INFO_KEY << "." << RATING_KEY << "=? WHERE "
```

```
                << TITLE_KEY << "=? AND " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(rating));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));

        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to update a movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage();
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "\nUpdated '" << title << "' with new attributes:" << std::endl;

    //  5. Get the updated data for the movie using a "Select" statement.
(ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "SELECT * FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to retrieve the movie information: "
```

```
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();

            const Aws::Vector<Aws::Map<Aws::String,
Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue>> &items = result.GetItems();

            if (items.size() == 1) {
                printMovieInfo(items[0]);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error: " << items.size() << " movies were retrieved. "
                          << " There should be only one movie." << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Deleting the movie" << std::endl;

    // 6. Delete the movie using a "Delete" statement. (ExecuteStatement)
    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementRequest request;
        std::stringstream sqlStream;
        sqlStream << "DELETE FROM  \"" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "\" WHERE "
                  << TITLE_KEY << "=? and " << YEAR_KEY << "=?";

        request.SetStatement(sqlStream.str());

        Aws::Vector<Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetS(title));
        attributes.push_back(Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeValue().SetN(year));
        request.SetParameters(attributes);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ExecuteStatementOutcome outcome =
dynamoClient.ExecuteStatement(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to delete the movie: "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    std::cout << "Movie successfully deleted." << std::endl;
    return true;
}

//! Create a DynamoDB table to be used in sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa createMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::createMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    bool movieTableAlreadyExisted = false;

    {
        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableRequest request;

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition yearAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(YEAR_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::N);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::AttributeDefinition titleAttributeDefinition;
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeName(TITLE_KEY);
        yearAttributeDefinition.SetAttributeType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ScalarAttributeType::S);
        request.AddAttributeDefinitions(yearAttributeDefinition);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement yearKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(YEAR_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::HASH);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeySchemaElement titleKeySchema;
        yearKeySchema.WithAttributeName(TITLE_KEY).WithKeyType(
                Aws::DynamoDB::Model::KeyType::RANGE);
        request.AddKeySchema(yearKeySchema);

        Aws::DynamoDB::Model::ProvisionedThroughput throughput;
```

```
        throughput.WithReadCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS).WithWriteCapacityUnits(
                PROVISIONED_THROUGHPUT_UNITS);
        request.SetProvisionedThroughput(throughput);
        request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

        std::cout << "Creating table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "'..." << std::endl;
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::CreateTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.CreateTable(
                request);
        if (!result.IsSuccess()) {
            if (result.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
                std::cout << "Table already exists." << std::endl;
                movieTableAlreadyExisted = true;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to create table: "
                          << result.GetError().GetMessage();
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    // Wait for table to become active.
    if (!movieTableAlreadyExisted) {
        std::cout << "Waiting for table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME
                  << "' to become active...." << std::endl;
        if (!AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME,
 clientConfiguration)) {
            return false;
        }
        std::cout << "Table '" << MOVIE_TABLE_NAME << "' created and active."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Delete the DynamoDB table used for sample code scenarios.
/*!
  \sa deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable()
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::deleteMoviesDynamoDBTable(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient dynamoClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(MOVIE_TABLE_NAME);

    const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DeleteTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DeleteTable(
            request);
    if (result.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Your table \""
                  << result.GetResult().GetTableDescription().GetTableName()
                  << " was deleted.\n";
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete table: " << result.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result.IsSuccess();
}

//! Query a newly created DynamoDB table until it is active.
/*!
  \sa waitTableActive()
  \param waitTableActive: The DynamoDB table's name.
  \param dynamoClient: A DynamoDB client.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::DynamoDB::waitTableActive(const Aws::String &tableName,
                                       const Aws::DynamoDB::DynamoDBClient
 &dynamoClient) {

    // Repeatedly call DescribeTable until table is ACTIVE.
    const int MAX_QUERIES = 20;
    Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableRequest request;
    request.SetTableName(tableName);

    int count = 0;
    while (count < MAX_QUERIES) {
        const Aws::DynamoDB::Model::DescribeTableOutcome &result =
 dynamoClient.DescribeTable(
```

```
                request);
        if (result.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus status =
 result.GetResult().GetTable().GetTableStatus();

            if (Aws::DynamoDB::Model::TableStatus::ACTIVE != status) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
            else {
                return true;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error DynamoDB::waitTableActive "
                      << result.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        count++;
    }
    return false;
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon EC2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ec2)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_ec2")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
```

```
                                    # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_ec2.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_ec2.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/ec2/EC2Client.h>
#include <aws/ec2/model/DescribeInstancesRequest.h>
#include <iomanip>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello EC2" starter application which initializes an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud (Amazon EC2) client and describes
 *  the Amazon EC2 instances.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_ec2'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    (void)argc;
    (void)argv;

    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
```

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfig);
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesRequest request;
        bool header = false;
        bool done = false;
        while (!done) {
            Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesOutcome outcome =
ec2Client.DescribeInstances(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                if (!header) {
                    std::cout << std::left <<
                              std::setw(48) << "Name" <<
                              std::setw(20) << "ID" <<
                              std::setw(25) << "Ami" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "Type" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "State" <<
                              std::setw(15) << "Monitoring" << std::endl;
                    header = true;
                }

                const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Reservation> &reservations =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetReservations();

                for (const auto &reservation: reservations) {
                    const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
                            reservation.GetInstances();
                    for (const auto &instance: instances) {
                        Aws::String instanceStateString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceStateNameMapper::GetNameForInstanceStateName(
                                        instance.GetState().GetName());

                        Aws::String typeString =

Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceTypeMapper::GetNameForInstanceType(
                                        instance.GetInstanceType());

                        Aws::String monitorString =

Aws::EC2::Model::MonitoringStateMapper::GetNameForMonitoringState(
                                        instance.GetMonitoring().GetState());
```

```
                        Aws::String name = "Unknown";

                        const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags =
 instance.GetTags();
                        auto nameIter = std::find_if(tags.cbegin(), tags.cend(),
                                                     [](const Aws::EC2::Model::Tag
 &tag) {
                                                         return tag.GetKey() ==
 "Name";
                                                     });
                        if (nameIter != tags.cend()) {
                            name = nameIter->GetValue();
                        }
                        std::cout <<
                                  std::setw(48) << name <<
                                  std::setw(20) << instance.GetInstanceId() <<
                                  std::setw(25) << instance.GetImageId() <<
                                  std::setw(15) << typeString <<
                                  std::setw(15) << instanceStateString <<
                                  std::setw(15) << monitorString << std::endl;
                    }
                }

                if (!outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken().empty()) {
                    request.SetNextToken(outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken());
                } else {
                    done = true;
                }
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Failed to describe EC2 instances:" <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with an Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud
//! (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param[out] publicIPAddress: String to return the public IP address.
  \param[out] allocationID: String to return the allocation ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::allocateAndAssociateAddress(const Aws::String &instanceId,
 Aws::String &publicIPAddress,
                                               Aws::String &allocationID,
                                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AllocateAddressRequest request;
    request.SetDomain(Aws::EC2::Model::DomainType::vpc);

    const Aws::EC2::Model::AllocateAddressOutcome outcome =
            ec2Client.AllocateAddress(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to allocate Elastic IP address:" <<
```

```
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
    const Aws::EC2::Model::AllocateAddressResponse &response = outcome.GetResult();
    allocationID = response.GetAllocationId();
    publicIPAddress = response.GetPublicIp();


    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

//! Associate an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceId: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param allocationId: An Elastic IP allocation ID.
  \param[out] associationID: String to receive the association ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: True if the address was associated with the instance; otherwise,
 false.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::associateAddress(const Aws::String &instanceId, const Aws::String
 &allocationId,
                                   Aws::String &associationID,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
```

```
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AssociateAddressRequest request;
    request.SetInstanceId(instanceId);
    request.SetAllocationId(allocationId);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AssociateAddressOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.AssociateAddress(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to associate address " << allocationId <<
                  " with instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully associated address " << allocationId <<
                  " with instance " << instanceId << std::endl;
        associationID = outcome.GetResult().GetAssociationId();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Authorize ingress to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) group.
/*!
  \param groupID: The EC2 group ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: The ClientConfiguration object.
  \return bool: True if the operation was successful, false otherwise.
```

```
 */
bool
AwsDoc::EC2::authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(const Aws::String &groupID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest
 authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest;
    authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.SetGroupId(groupID);
    buildSampleIngressRule(authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest);

    Aws::EC2::Model::AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome
 authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome =

 ec2Client.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest);

    if (authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully authorized security group ingress." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error authorizing security group ingress: "
                  << authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return authorizeSecurityGroupIngressOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Utility function to build an ingress rule.

```
//! Build a sample ingress rule.
/*!
  \param authorize_request: An 'AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest' instance.
  \return void:
 */
void buildSampleIngressRule(
        Aws::EC2::Model::AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest &authorize_request) {
    Aws::String ingressIPRange = "203.0.113.0/24";  // Configure this for your
 allowed IP range.
    Aws::EC2::Model::IpRange ip_range;
    ip_range.SetCidrIp(ingressIPRange);

    Aws::EC2::Model::IpPermission permission1;
```

```
    permission1.SetIpProtocol("tcp");
    permission1.SetToPort(80);
    permission1.SetFromPort(80);
    permission1.AddIpRanges(ip_range);

    authorize_request.AddIpPermissions(permission1);

    Aws::EC2::Model::IpPermission permission2;
    permission2.SetIpProtocol("tcp");
    permission2.SetToPort(22);
    permission2.SetFromPort(22);
    permission2.AddIpRanges(ip_range);

    authorize_request.AddIpPermissions(permission2);
}
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance key pair.
/*!
  \param keyPairName: A name for a key pair.
  \param keyFilePath: File path where the credentials are stored. Ignored if it is
 an empty string;
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::createKeyPair(const Aws::String &keyPairName, const Aws::String
 &keyFilePath,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
&clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
   Aws::EC2::Model::CreateKeyPairRequest request;
   request.SetKeyName(keyPairName);

   Aws::EC2::Model::CreateKeyPairOutcome outcome =
ec2Client.CreateKeyPair(request);
   if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
       std::cerr << "Failed to create key pair - "  << keyPairName << ". " <<
                 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
   } else {
       std::cout << "Successfully created key pair named " <<
                 keyPairName << std::endl;
       if (!keyFilePath.empty()) {
           std::ofstream keyFile(keyFilePath.c_str());
           keyFile << outcome.GetResult().GetKeyMaterial();
           keyFile.close();
           std::cout << "Keys written to the file " <<
                     keyFilePath << std::endl;
       }

   }

   return outcome.IsSuccess();

}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create a security group.
/*!
  \param groupName: A security group name.
  \param description: A description.
  \param vpcID: A virtual private cloud (VPC) ID.
  \param[out] groupIDResult: A string to receive the group ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::createSecurityGroup(const Aws::String &groupName,
                                      const Aws::String &description,
                                      const Aws::String &vpcID,
                                      Aws::String &groupIDResult,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateSecurityGroupRequest request;

    request.SetGroupName(groupName);
    request.SetDescription(description);
    request.SetVpcId(vpcID);

    const Aws::EC2::Model::CreateSecurityGroupOutcome outcome =
            ec2Client.CreateSecurityGroup(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create security group:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::cout << "Successfully created security group named " << groupName <<
              std::endl;


    groupIDResult = outcome.GetResult().GetGroupId();

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateTags`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTags`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Add or overwrite only the specified tags for the specified Amazon Elastic
 Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource or resources.
/*!
  \param resources: The resources for the tags.
  \param tags: Vector of tags.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::createTags(const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &resources,
                             const Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateTagsRequest createTagsRequest;
    createTagsRequest.SetResources(resources);
    createTagsRequest.SetTags(tags);

    Aws::EC2::Model::CreateTagsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.CreateTags(createTagsRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created tags for resources" << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create tags for resources, " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance key pair.
/*!
  \param keyPairName: A name for a key pair.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::EC2::deleteKeyPair(const Aws::String &keyPairName,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteKeyPairRequest request;

    request.SetKeyName(keyPairName);
    const Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteKeyPairOutcome outcome = ec2Client.DeleteKeyPair(
            request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete key pair " << keyPairName <<
                  ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted key pair named " << keyPairName <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete a security group.
/*!
  \param securityGroupID: A security group ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::deleteSecurityGroup(const Aws::String &securityGroupID,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteSecurityGroupRequest request;

    request.SetGroupId(securityGroupID);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DeleteSecurityGroupOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DeleteSecurityGroup(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete security group " << securityGroupID <<
                  ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted security group " << securityGroupID <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeAddresses`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAddresses`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Elastic IP addresses.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeAddresses(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAddressesRequest request;
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAddressesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeAddresses(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left << std::setw(20) << "InstanceId" <<
                  std::setw(15) << "Public IP" << std::setw(10) << "Domain" <<
                  std::setw(30) << "Allocation ID" << std::setw(25) <<
                  "NIC ID" << std::endl;

        const Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Address> &addresses =
 outcome.GetResult().GetAddresses();
        for (const auto &address: addresses) {
            Aws::String domainString =
                    Aws::EC2::Model::DomainTypeMapper::GetNameForDomainType(
                            address.GetDomain());

            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(20) <<
```

```
                        address.GetInstanceId() << std::setw(15) <<
                        address.GetPublicIp() << std::setw(10) << domainString <<
                        std::setw(30) << address.GetAllocationId() << std::setw(25)
                        << address.GetNetworkInterfaceId() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe Elastic IP addresses:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeAvailabilityZones`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAvailabilityZones`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! DescribeAvailabilityZones
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
int AwsDoc::EC2::describeAvailabilityZones(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest request;
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeAvailabilityZonesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeAvailabilityZones(request);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left <<
                  std::setw(32) << "ZoneName" <<
                  std::setw(20) << "State" <<
                  std::setw(32) << "Region" << std::endl;

        const auto &zones =
                outcome.GetResult().GetAvailabilityZones();

        for (const auto &zone: zones) {
            Aws::String stateString =

 Aws::EC2::Model::AvailabilityZoneStateMapper::GetNameForAvailabilityZoneState(
                            zone.GetState());
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << zone.GetZoneName() <<
                      std::setw(20) << stateString <<
                      std::setw(32) << zone.GetRegionName() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe availability zones:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances associated with
 an account.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeInstances(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesRequest request;
    bool header = false;
    bool done = false;
    while (!done) {
        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeInstances(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                          std::setw(48) << "Name" <<
                          std::setw(20) << "ID" <<
                          std::setw(25) << "Ami" <<
                          std::setw(15) << "Type" <<
                          std::setw(15) << "State" <<
                          std::setw(15) << "Monitoring" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Reservation> &reservations =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetReservations();

            for (const auto &reservation: reservations) {
                const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
                        reservation.GetInstances();
                for (const auto &instance: instances) {
                    Aws::String instanceStateString =

 Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceStateNameMapper::GetNameForInstanceStateName(
                                      instance.GetState().GetName());

                    Aws::String typeString =

 Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceTypeMapper::GetNameForInstanceType(
                                      instance.GetInstanceType());
```

```
                    Aws::String monitorString =

 Aws::EC2::Model::MonitoringStateMapper::GetNameForMonitoringState(
                                    instance.GetMonitoring().GetState());
                    Aws::String name = "Unknown";

                    const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Tag> &tags =
 instance.GetTags();
                    auto nameIter = std::find_if(tags.cbegin(), tags.cend(),
                                                 [](const Aws::EC2::Model::Tag &tag)
 {
                                                     return tag.GetKey() == "Name";
                                                 });
                    if (nameIter != tags.cend()) {
                        name = nameIter->GetValue();
                    }
                    std::cout <<
                              std::setw(48) << name <<
                              std::setw(20) << instance.GetInstanceId() <<
                              std::setw(25) << instance.GetImageId() <<
                              std::setw(15) << typeString <<
                              std::setw(15) << instanceStateString <<
                              std::setw(15) << monitorString << std::endl;
                }
            }

            if (!outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken().empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken());
            } else {
                done = true;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to describe EC2 instances:" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

DescribeKeyPairs

The following code example shows how to use DescribeKeyPairs.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance key pairs.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeKeyPairs(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeKeyPairsRequest request;

    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeKeyPairsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeKeyPairs(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left <<
                  std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                  std::setw(64) << "Fingerprint" << std::endl;

        const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::KeyPairInfo> &key_pairs =
                outcome.GetResult().GetKeyPairs();
        for (const auto &key_pair: key_pairs) {
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << key_pair.GetKeyName() <<
                      std::setw(64) << key_pair.GetKeyFingerprint() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe key pairs:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeRegions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRegions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Regions.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeRegions(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeRegionsRequest request;
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeRegionsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeRegions(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << std::left <<
                  std::setw(32) << "RegionName" <<
                  std::setw(64) << "Endpoint" << std::endl;

        const auto &regions = outcome.GetResult().GetRegions();
        for (const auto &region: regions) {
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << region.GetRegionName() <<
                      std::setw(64) << region.GetEndpoint() << std::endl;
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to describe regions:" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
    }

    std::cout << std::endl;

    return outcome.IsSuccess();

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe all Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security groups, or a
 specific group.
/*!
  \param groupID: A group ID, ignored if empty.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::describeSecurityGroups(const Aws::String &groupID,
                                         const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request;

    if (!groupID.empty()) {
        request.AddGroupIds(groupID);
    }

    Aws::String nextToken;
```

```
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::EC2::Model::DescribeSecurityGroupsOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.DescribeSecurityGroups(request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << std::left <<
                      std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "GroupId" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "VpcId" <<
                      std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::endl;

            const std::vector<Aws::EC2::Model::SecurityGroup> &securityGroups =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetSecurityGroups();

            for (const auto &securityGroup: securityGroups) {
                std::cout << std::left <<
                          std::setw(32) << securityGroup.GetGroupName() <<
                          std::setw(30) << securityGroup.GetGroupId() <<
                          std::setw(30) << securityGroup.GetVpcId() <<
                          std::setw(64) << securityGroup.GetDescription() <<
                          std::endl;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to describe security groups:" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`MonitorInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `MonitorInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Enable detailed monitoring for an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceId: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::enableMonitoring(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::MonitorInstancesRequest request;
    request.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    request.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::MonitorInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.MonitorInstances(request);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to enable monitoring on instance. A dry run
 should trigger an error."
                <<
                std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType()
               != Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cerr << "Failed dry run to enable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << ": " << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetDryRun(false);
```

```
    Aws::EC2::Model::MonitorInstancesOutcome monitorInstancesOutcome =
 ec2Client.MonitorInstances(request);
    if (!monitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to enable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << ": " <<
                  monitorInstancesOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully enabled monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << std::endl;
    }

    return monitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Reboot an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::rebootInstance(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RebootInstancesRequest request;
```

```
    request.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    request.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RebootInstancesOutcome dry_run_outcome =
 ec2Client.RebootInstances(request);
    if (dry_run_outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to reboot on instance. A dry run should trigger
 an error."
                <<
                std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dry_run_outcome.GetError().GetErrorType()
               != Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to reboot instance " << instanceId << ": "
                  << dry_run_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::RebootInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.RebootInstances(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to reboot instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully rebooted instance " << instanceId <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Release an Elastic IP address.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::releaseAddress(const Aws::String &allocationID,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::ReleaseAddressRequest request;
    request.SetAllocationId(allocationID);

    Aws::EC2::Model::ReleaseAddressOutcome outcome = ec2.ReleaseAddress(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to release Elastic IP address " <<
                  allocationID << ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully released Elastic IP address " <<
                  allocationID << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Launch an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceName: A name for the EC2 instance.
  \param amiId: An Amazon Machine Image (AMI) identifier.
  \param[out] instanceID: String to return the instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::runInstance(const Aws::String &instanceName,
                              const Aws::String &amiId,
                              Aws::String &instanceID,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RunInstancesRequest runRequest;
    runRequest.SetImageId(amiId);
    runRequest.SetInstanceType(Aws::EC2::Model::InstanceType::t1_micro);
    runRequest.SetMinCount(1);
    runRequest.SetMaxCount(1);

    Aws::EC2::Model::RunInstancesOutcome runOutcome = ec2Client.RunInstances(
            runRequest);
    if (!runOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to launch EC2 instance " << instanceName <<
                  " based on ami " << amiId << ":" <<
                  runOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    const Aws::Vector<Aws::EC2::Model::Instance> &instances =
 runOutcome.GetResult().GetInstances();
    if (instances.empty()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to launch EC2 instance " << instanceName <<
```

```
                  " based on ami " << amiId << ":" <<
                  runOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    instanceID = instances[0].GetInstanceId();

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Start an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::startInstance(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::StartInstancesRequest startRequest;
    startRequest.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    startRequest.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::StartInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.StartInstances(startRequest);
```

```
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to start instance. A dry run should trigger an
error."
                << std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
               Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to start instance " << instanceId << ": "
                  << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    startRequest.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::StartInstancesOutcome startInstancesOutcome =
ec2Client.StartInstances(startRequest);

    if (!startInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to start instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  startInstancesOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully started instance " << instanceId <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return startInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Stop an EC2 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::stopInstance(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::StopInstancesRequest request;
    request.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    request.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::StopInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.StopInstances(request);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to stop instance. A dry run should trigger an
 error."
                << std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
               Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to stop instance " << instanceId << ": "
                  << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::StopInstancesOutcome outcome =
 ec2Client.StopInstances(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to stop instance " << instanceId << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully stopped instance " << instanceId <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

```
void PrintUsage() {
    std::cout << "Usage: run_start_stop_instance <instance_id> <start|stop>" <<
              std::endl;
}
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Terminate an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
/*!
  \param instanceID: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::terminateInstances(const Aws::String &instanceID,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::EC2::Model::TerminateInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetInstanceIds({instanceID});

    Aws::EC2::Model::TerminateInstancesOutcome outcome =
            ec2Client.TerminateInstances(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Ec2 instance '" << instanceID <<
                  "' was terminated." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to terminate ec2 instance " << instanceID <<
                  ", " <<
```

```
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UnmonitorInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `UnmonitorInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Disable monitoring for an EC2 instance.
/*!
  \param instanceId: An EC2 instance ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::EC2::disableMonitoring(const Aws::String &instanceId,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::EC2::EC2Client ec2Client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::EC2::Model::UnmonitorInstancesRequest unrequest;
    unrequest.AddInstanceIds(instanceId);
    unrequest.SetDryRun(true);

    Aws::EC2::Model::UnmonitorInstancesOutcome dryRunOutcome =
 ec2Client.UnmonitorInstances(unrequest);
    if (dryRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr
                << "Failed dry run to disable monitoring on instance. A dry run
 should trigger an error."
```

```
                <<
                std::endl;
        return false;
    } else if (dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
               Aws::EC2::EC2Errors::DRY_RUN_OPERATION) {
        std::cout << "Failed dry run to disable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << ": " << dryRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    unrequest.SetDryRun(false);
    Aws::EC2::Model::UnmonitorInstancesOutcome unmonitorInstancesOutcome =
 ec2Client.UnmonitorInstances(unrequest);
    if (!unmonitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Failed to disable monitoring on instance " << instanceId
                  << ": " << unmonitorInstancesOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully disable monitoring on instance " <<
                  instanceId << std::endl;
    }

    return unmonitorInstancesOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

EventBridge examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with EventBridge.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/events/EventBridgeClient.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutEventsRequest.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutEventsResult.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Send the event.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::EventBridgeClient cwe;

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutEventsRequestEntry event_entry;
        event_entry.SetDetail(MakeDetails(event_key, event_value));
        event_entry.SetDetailType("sampleSubmitted");
        event_entry.AddResources(resource_arn);
        event_entry.SetSource("aws-sdk-cpp-cloudwatch-example");

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutEventsRequest request;
        request.AddEntries(event_entry);

        auto outcome = cwe.PutEvents(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to post CloudWatch event: " <<
```

```
                outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully posted CloudWatch event" << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/events/EventBridgeClient.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutRuleRequest.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutRuleResult.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Create the rule.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::EventBridgeClient cwe;
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutRuleRequest request;
        request.SetName(rule_name);
        request.SetRoleArn(role_arn);
        request.SetScheduleExpression("rate(5 minutes)");
        request.SetState(Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::RuleState::ENABLED);
```

```
        auto outcome = cwe.PutRule(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch events rule " <<
                rule_name << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully created CloudWatch events rule " <<
                rule_name << " with resulting Arn " <<
                outcome.GetResult().GetRuleArn() << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Include the required files.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/events/EventBridgeClient.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutTargetsRequest.h>
#include <aws/events/model/PutTargetsResult.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/Outcome.h>
#include <iostream>
```

Add the target.

```
        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::EventBridgeClient cwe;

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::Target target;
        target.SetArn(lambda_arn);
        target.SetId(target_id);

        Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Model::PutTargetsRequest request;
        request.SetRule(rule_name);
        request.AddTargets(target);

        auto putTargetsOutcome = cwe.PutTargets(request);
        if (!putTargetsOutcome.IsSuccess())
        {
            std::cout << "Failed to create CloudWatch events target for rule "
                << rule_name << ": " <<
                putTargetsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }
        else
        {
            std::cout <<
                "Successfully created CloudWatch events target for rule "
                << rule_name << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS glue)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_glue")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.
```

```
    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
                                    # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_glue.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_glue.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/glue/GlueClient.h>
#include <aws/glue/model/ListJobsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Glue" starter application which initializes an AWS Glue client and
 lists the
 *  AWS Glue job definitions.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_glue'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Glue::GlueClient glueClient(clientConfig);

        std::vector<Aws::String> jobs;

        Aws::String nextToken;  // Used for pagination.
        do {
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome = glueClient.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);

            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
 listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                jobs.insert(jobs.end(), jobNames.begin(), jobNames.end());

                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Your account has " << jobs.size() << " jobs."
                  << std::endl;
        for (size_t i = 0; i < jobs.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << jobs[i] << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Scenario which demonstrates using AWS Glue to add a crawler and run a job.
/*!
 \\sa runGettingStartedWithGlueScenario()
 \param bucketName: An S3 bucket created in the setup.
 \param roleName: An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role created in the
 setup.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */

bool AwsDoc::Glue::runGettingStartedWithGlueScenario(const Aws::String &bucketName,
```

```
                                                        const Aws::String &roleName,
                                                        const
Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
   Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

   Aws::String roleArn;
   if (!getRoleArn(roleName, roleArn, clientConfig)) {
       std::cerr << "Error getting role ARN for role." << std::endl;
       return false;
   }

   // 1. Upload the job script to the S3 bucket.
   {
       std::cout << "Uploading the job script '"
                 << AwsDoc::Glue::PYTHON_SCRIPT
                 << "'." << std::endl;

       if (!AwsDoc::Glue::uploadFile(bucketName,
                                     AwsDoc::Glue::PYTHON_SCRIPT_PATH,
                                     AwsDoc::Glue::PYTHON_SCRIPT,
                                     clientConfig)) {
           std::cerr << "Error uploading the job file." << std::endl;
           return false;
       }
   }

   // 2. Create a crawler.
   {
       Aws::Glue::Model::S3Target s3Target;
       s3Target.SetPath("s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv");
       Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerTargets crawlerTargets;
       crawlerTargets.AddS3Targets(s3Target);

       Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerRequest request;
       request.SetTargets(crawlerTargets);
       request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);
       request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
       request.SetTablePrefix(CRAWLER_DATABASE_PREFIX);
       request.SetRole(roleArn);

       Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.CreateCrawler(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "Successfully created the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating a crawler. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets("", CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName, clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 3. Get a crawler.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome outcome = client.GetCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
outcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
            std::cout << "Retrieved crawler with state " <<
                      Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                              crawlerState)
                      << "." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 4. Start a crawler.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.StartCrawler(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess() || (Aws::Glue::GlueErrors::CRAWLER_RUNNING ==
                                    outcome.GetError().GetErrorType())) {
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Crawler was already started." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully started crawler." << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << "This may take a while to run." << std::endl;

            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::NOT_SET;
            int iterations = 0;
            while (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY != crawlerState) {
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                ++iterations;
                if ((iterations % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                    std::cout << "Crawler status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                                        crawlerState)
                                << ". After " << iterations
                                << " seconds elapsed."
                                << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest getCrawlerRequest;
                getCrawlerRequest.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome getCrawlerOutcome =
client.GetCrawler(
                        getCrawlerRequest);

                if (getCrawlerOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    crawlerState =
getCrawlerOutcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting crawler.  "
                                << getCrawlerOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    break;
                }
            }
```

```
            if (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY == crawlerState) {
                std::cout << "Crawler finished running after " << iterations
                          << " seconds."
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 5. Get a database.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseOutcome outcome = client.GetDatabase(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Glue::Model::Database &database =
outcome.GetResult().GetDatabase();

            std::cout << "Successfully retrieve the database\n" <<
                      database.Jsonize().View().WriteReadable() << "'." <<
std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error getting the database.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 6. Get tables.
    Aws::String tableName;
```

```
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesRequest request;
        request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> all_tables;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        do {
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesOutcome outcome = client.GetTables(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> &tables =
outcome.GetResult().GetTableList();
                all_tables.insert(all_tables.end(), tables.begin(), tables.end());
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting the tables. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                             clientConfig);
                return false;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "The database contains " << all_tables.size()
                  << (all_tables.size() == 1 ?
                      " table." : "tables.") << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Here is a list of the tables in the database.";
        for (size_t index = 0; index < all_tables.size(); ++index) {
            std::cout << "    " << index + 1 << ":  " << all_tables[index].GetName()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        if (!all_tables.empty()) {
            int tableIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter an index to display the database detail ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(all_tables.size()));
            std::cout << all_tables[tableIndex - 1].Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            tableName = all_tables[tableIndex - 1].GetName();
        }
    }
```

```
    // 7. Create a job.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobRequest request;
        request.SetName(JOB_NAME);
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetGlueVersion(GLUE_VERSION);

        Aws::Glue::Model::JobCommand command;
        command.SetName(JOB_COMMAND_NAME);
        command.SetPythonVersion(JOB_PYTHON_VERSION);
        command.SetScriptLocation(
                Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName + "/" + PYTHON_SCRIPT);
        request.SetCommand(command);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobOutcome outcome = client.CreateJob(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully created the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating the job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 8. Start a job run.
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> arguments;
        arguments["--input_database"] = CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME;
        arguments["--input_table"] = tableName;
        arguments["--output_bucket_url"] = Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName + "/";
        request.SetArguments(arguments);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunOutcome outcome = client.StartJobRun(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully started the job." << std::endl;
```

```
            Aws::String jobRunId = outcome.GetResult().GetJobRunId();

            int iterator = 0;
            bool done = false;
            while (!done) {
                ++iterator;
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
                jobRunRequest.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);
                jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunId);

                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome = client.GetJobRun(
                        jobRunRequest);

                if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    const Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun &jobRun =
jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun();
                    Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState jobRunState =
jobRun.GetJobRunState();

                    if ((jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::STOPPED) ||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::FAILED) ||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::TIMEOUT)) {
                        std::cerr << "Error running job. "
                                  << jobRun.GetErrorMessage()
                                  << std::endl;
                        deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
                                     bucketName,
                                     clientConfig);
                        return false;
                    }
                    else if (jobRunState ==
                             Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::SUCCEEDED) {
                        std::cout << "Job run succeeded after  " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                        done = true;
                    }
                    else if ((iterator % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                        std::cout << "Job run status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunStateMapper::GetNameForJobRunState(
                                          jobRunState) <<
                                  ". " << iterator <<
```

```
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error retrieving job run state. "
                              << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                              << std::endl;
                    deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
                                 bucketName, clientConfig);
                    return false;
                }
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a job. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME, bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 9. List the output data stored in the S3 bucket.
    {
        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client;
        Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);
        request.SetPrefix(OUTPUT_FILE_PREFIX);

        Aws::String continuationToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> allObjects;
        do {
            if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
                request.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
            }
            Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Outcome outcome = s3Client.ListObjectsV2(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> &objects =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetContents();
                allObjects.insert(allObjects.end(), objects.begin(), objects.end());
                continuationToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextContinuationToken();
            }
```

```
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing objects. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!continuationToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Data from your job is in " << allObjects.size() <<
                  " files in the S3 bucket, " << bucketName << "." << std::endl;

        for (size_t i = 0; i < allObjects.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "    " << i + 1 << ". " << allObjects[i].GetKey()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        int objectIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                std::string(
                        "Enter the number of a block to download it and see the
first ") +
                std::to_string(LINES_OF_RUN_FILE_TO_DISPLAY) +
                " lines of JSON output in the block: ", 1,
                static_cast<int>(allObjects.size()));

        Aws::String objectKey = allObjects[objectIndex - 1].GetKey();

        std::stringstream stringStream;
        if (getObjectFromBucket(bucketName, objectKey, stringStream,
                                clientConfig)) {
            for (int i = 0; i < LINES_OF_RUN_FILE_TO_DISPLAY && stringStream; ++i) {
                std::string line;
                std::getline(stringStream, line);
                std::cout << "    " << line << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME, bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
    }

    // 10. List all the jobs.
    Aws::String jobName;
```

```
    {
        Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken;
        std::vector<Aws::String> allJobNames;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome = client.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);

            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                allJobNames.insert(allJobNames.end(), jobNames.begin(),
jobNames.end());
                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());
        std::cout << "Your account has " << allJobNames.size() << " jobs."
                  << std::endl;
        for (size_t i = 0; i < allJobNames.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << allJobNames[i] << std::endl;
        }
        int jobIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                Aws::String("Enter a number between 1 and ") +
                std::to_string(allJobNames.size()) +
                " to see the list of runs for a job: ",
                1, static_cast<int>(allJobNames.size()));

        jobName = allJobNames[jobIndex - 1];
    }

    // 11. Get the job runs for a job.
    Aws::String jobRunID;
    if (!jobName.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsRequest getJobRunsRequest;
```

```
        getJobRunsRequest.SetJobName(jobName);

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> allJobRuns;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                getJobRunsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsOutcome jobRunsOutcome = client.GetJobRuns(
                    getJobRunsRequest);

            if (jobRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> &jobRuns =
jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRuns();
                allJobRuns.insert(allJobRuns.end(), jobRuns.begin(), jobRuns.end());

                nextToken = jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting job runs. "
                          << jobRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "There are " << allJobRuns.size() << " runs in the job '"
                  <<
                  jobName << "'." << std::endl;

        for (size_t i = 0; i < allJobRuns.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ". " << allJobRuns[i].GetJobName()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        int runIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                Aws::String("Enter a number between 1 and ") +
                std::to_string(allJobRuns.size()) +
                " to see details for a run: ",
                1, static_cast<int>(allJobRuns.size()));
        jobRunID = allJobRuns[runIndex - 1].GetId();
    }

    // 12. Get a single job run.
```

```
    if (!jobRunID.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
        jobRunRequest.SetJobName(jobName);
        jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunID);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome = client.GetJobRun(
                jobRunRequest);

        if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Displaying the job run JSON description." << std::endl;
            std::cout
                    <<
 jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error get a job run. "
                      << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME, bucketName,
                        clientConfig);
}

//! Cleanup routine to delete created assets.
/*!
 \\sa deleteAssets()
 \param crawler: Name of an AWS Glue crawler.
 \param database: The name of an AWS Glue database.
 \param job: The name of an AWS Glue job.
 \param bucketName: The name of an S3 bucket.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Glue::deleteAssets(const Aws::String &crawler, const Aws::String
 &database,
                                const Aws::String &job, const Aws::String
 &bucketName,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    const Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);
    bool result = true;
```

```
    // 13. Delete a job.
    if (!job.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(job);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobOutcome outcome = client.DeleteJob(request);


        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    // 14. Delete a database.
    if (!database.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(database);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseOutcome outcome = client.DeleteDatabase(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the database." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting database. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    // 15. Delete a crawler.
    if (!crawler.empty()) {
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(crawler);
```

```
        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerOutcome outcome =
 client.DeleteCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the crawler. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    // 16. Delete the job script and run data from the S3 bucket.
    result &= AwsDoc::Glue::deleteAllObjectsInS3Bucket(bucketName,
                                                       clientConfig);
    return result;
}

//! Routine which uploads a file to an S3 bucket.
/*!
 \\sa uploadFile()
 \param bucketName: An S3 bucket created in the setup.
 \param filePath: The path of the file to upload.
 \param fileName The name for the uploaded file.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::Glue::uploadFile(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                         const Aws::String &filePath,
                         const Aws::String &fileName,
                         const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3_client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(fileName);

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> inputData =
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                          filePath.c_str(),
                                          std::ios_base::in |
 std::ios_base::binary);
```

```
    if (!*inputData) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << filePath << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetBody(inputData);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome =
            s3_client.PutObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: PutObject: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Added object '" << filePath << "' to bucket '"
                  << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which deletes all objects in an S3 bucket.
/*!
 \\sa deleteAllObjectsInS3Bucket()
 \param bucketName: The S3 bucket name.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Glue::deleteAllObjectsInS3Bucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request listObjectsRequest;
    listObjectsRequest.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::String continuationToken; // Used for pagination.
    bool result = true;
    do {
        if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
            listObjectsRequest.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
        }
```

```
        Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Outcome listObjectsOutcome =
client.ListObjectsV2(
                listObjectsRequest);

        if (listObjectsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> &objects =
listObjectsOutcome.GetResult().GetContents();
            if (!objects.empty()) {
                Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsRequest deleteObjectsRequest;
                deleteObjectsRequest.SetBucket(bucketName);

                std::vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectIdentifier> objectIdentifiers;
                for (const Aws::S3::Model::Object &object: objects) {
                    objectIdentifiers.push_back(
                            Aws::S3::Model::ObjectIdentifier().WithKey(
                                    object.GetKey()));
                }
                Aws::S3::Model::Delete objectsDelete;
                objectsDelete.SetObjects(objectIdentifiers);
                objectsDelete.SetQuiet(true);
                deleteObjectsRequest.SetDelete(objectsDelete);

                Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsOutcome deleteObjectsOutcome =
                        client.DeleteObjects(deleteObjectsRequest);

                if (!deleteObjectsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    std::cerr << "Error deleting objects. " <<
                              deleteObjectsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    result = false;
                    break;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Successfully deleted the objects." << std::endl;

                }
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "No objects to delete in '" << bucketName << "'."
                          << std::endl;
            }

            continuationToken =
listObjectsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextContinuationToken();
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing objects. "
                      << listObjectsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }
    } while (!continuationToken.empty());

    return result;
}

//! Routine which retrieves an object from an S3 bucket.
/*!
 \\sa getObjectFromBucket()
 \param bucketName: The S3 bucket name.
 \param objectKey: The object's name.
 \param objectStream: A stream to receive the retrieved data.
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Glue::getObjectFromBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                       const Aws::String &objectKey,
                                       std::ostream &objectStream,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectOutcome outcome = client.GetObject(request);


    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully retrieved '" << objectKey << "'." << std::endl;
        auto &body = outcome.GetResult().GetBody();
        objectStream << body.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error retrieving object. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::S3Target s3Target;
        s3Target.SetPath("s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv");
        Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerTargets crawlerTargets;
        crawlerTargets.AddS3Targets(s3Target);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetTargets(crawlerTargets);
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);
        request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
        request.SetTablePrefix(CRAWLER_DATABASE_PREFIX);
        request.SetRole(roleArn);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.CreateCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully created the crawler." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating a crawler. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets("", CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName, clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobRequest request;
        request.SetName(JOB_NAME);
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetGlueVersion(GLUE_VERSION);

        Aws::Glue::Model::JobCommand command;
        command.SetName(JOB_COMMAND_NAME);
        command.SetPythonVersion(JOB_PYTHON_VERSION);
        command.SetScriptLocation(
                Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName + "/" + PYTHON_SCRIPT);
        request.SetCommand(command);

        Aws::Glue::Model::CreateJobOutcome outcome = client.CreateJob(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully created the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error creating the job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

       Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerRequest request;
       request.SetName(crawler);

       Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.DeleteCrawler(request);

       if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
           std::cout << "Successfully deleted the crawler." << std::endl;
       }
       else {
           std::cerr << "Error deleting the crawler. "
                     << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
           result = false;
       }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(database);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteDatabaseOutcome outcome = client.DeleteDatabase(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the database." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting database. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(job);

        Aws::Glue::Model::DeleteJobOutcome outcome = client.DeleteJob(request);


        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the job." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting the job. " <<
outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome outcome = client.GetCrawler(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
outcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
            std::cout << "Retrieved crawler with state " <<
                      Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                              crawlerState)
                      << "." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

GetDatabase

The following code example shows how to use GetDatabase.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseRequest request;
        request.SetName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetDatabaseOutcome outcome = client.GetDatabase(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Glue::Model::Database &database =
outcome.GetResult().GetDatabase();

            std::cout << "Successfully retrieve the database\n" <<
                      database.Jsonize().View().WriteReadable() << "'." <<
std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error getting the database.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

GetJobRun

The following code example shows how to use GetJobRun.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
        jobRunRequest.SetJobName(jobName);
        jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunID);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome = client.GetJobRun(
                jobRunRequest);

        if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Displaying the job run JSON description." << std::endl;
            std::cout
                    <<
jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error get a job run. "
                      << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

GetJobRuns

The following code example shows how to use GetJobRuns.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsRequest getJobRunsRequest;
        getJobRunsRequest.SetJobName(jobName);

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> allJobRuns;
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                getJobRunsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunsOutcome jobRunsOutcome = client.GetJobRuns(
                    getJobRunsRequest);

            if (jobRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun> &jobRuns =
jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRuns();
                allJobRuns.insert(allJobRuns.end(), jobRuns.begin(), jobRuns.end());

                nextToken = jobRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting job runs. "
                          << jobRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
```

```
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesRequest request;
        request.SetDatabaseName(CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME);
        std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> all_tables;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        do {
            Aws::Glue::Model::GetTablesOutcome outcome = client.GetTables(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::Glue::Model::Table> &tables =
outcome.GetResult().GetTableList();
                all_tables.insert(all_tables.end(), tables.begin(), tables.end());
                nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error getting the tables. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
```

```
                deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                             clientConfig);
                return false;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "The database contains " << all_tables.size()
                  << (all_tables.size() == 1 ?
                      " table." : "tables.") << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Here is a list of the tables in the database.";
        for (size_t index = 0; index < all_tables.size(); ++index) {
            std::cout << "    " << index + 1 << ":  " << all_tables[index].GetName()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        if (!all_tables.empty()) {
            int tableIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter an index to display the database detail ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(all_tables.size()));
            std::cout << all_tables[tableIndex - 1].Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;

            tableName = all_tables[tableIndex - 1].GetName();
        }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken;
        std::vector<Aws::String> allJobNames;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listJobsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::Glue::Model::ListJobsOutcome listRunsOutcome = client.ListJobs(
                    listJobsRequest);

            if (listRunsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const std::vector<Aws::String> &jobNames =
listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetJobNames();
                allJobNames.insert(allJobNames.end(), jobNames.begin(),
jobNames.end());
                nextToken = listRunsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing jobs. "
                          << listRunsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

StartCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
       Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
       // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
       // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

   Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

       Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerRequest request;
       request.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

       Aws::Glue::Model::StartCrawlerOutcome outcome =
client.StartCrawler(request);


       if (outcome.IsSuccess() || (Aws::Glue::GlueErrors::CRAWLER_RUNNING ==
                                   outcome.GetError().GetErrorType())) {
           if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               std::cout << "Crawler was already started." << std::endl;
           }
           else {
               std::cout << "Successfully started crawler." << std::endl;
           }

           std::cout << "This may take a while to run." << std::endl;

           Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState crawlerState =
Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::NOT_SET;
           int iterations = 0;
           while (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY != crawlerState) {
               std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
               ++iterations;
               if ((iterations % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                   std::cout << "Crawler status " <<
```

```
Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerStateMapper::GetNameForCrawlerState(
                                    crawlerState)
                            << ". After " << iterations
                            << " seconds elapsed."
                            << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerRequest getCrawlerRequest;
                getCrawlerRequest.SetName(CRAWLER_NAME);

                Aws::Glue::Model::GetCrawlerOutcome getCrawlerOutcome =
client.GetCrawler(
                        getCrawlerRequest);

                if (getCrawlerOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    crawlerState =
getCrawlerOutcome.GetResult().GetCrawler().GetState();
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error getting crawler.  "
                              << getCrawlerOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
                    break;
                }
            }

            if (Aws::Glue::Model::CrawlerState::READY == crawlerState) {
                std::cout << "Crawler finished running after " << iterations
                          << " seconds."
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a crawler.  "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, "", bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

StartJobRun

The following code example shows how to use StartJobRun.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Glue::GlueClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunRequest request;
        request.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> arguments;
        arguments["--input_database"] = CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME;
        arguments["--input_table"] = tableName;
        arguments["--output_bucket_url"] = Aws::String("s3://") + bucketName + "/";
        request.SetArguments(arguments);

        Aws::Glue::Model::StartJobRunOutcome outcome = client.StartJobRun(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Successfully started the job." << std::endl;

            Aws::String jobRunId = outcome.GetResult().GetJobRunId();

            int iterator = 0;
            bool done = false;
            while (!done) {
                ++iterator;
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunRequest jobRunRequest;
                jobRunRequest.SetJobName(JOB_NAME);
                jobRunRequest.SetRunId(jobRunId);
```

```
                Aws::Glue::Model::GetJobRunOutcome jobRunOutcome = client.GetJobRun(
                        jobRunRequest);

                if (jobRunOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    const Aws::Glue::Model::JobRun &jobRun =
jobRunOutcome.GetResult().GetJobRun();
                    Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState jobRunState =
jobRun.GetJobRunState();

                    if ((jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::STOPPED) ||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::FAILED) ||
                        (jobRunState == Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::TIMEOUT)) {
                        std::cerr << "Error running job. "
                                  << jobRun.GetErrorMessage()
                                  << std::endl;
                        deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
                                     bucketName,
                                     clientConfig);
                        return false;
                    }
                    else if (jobRunState ==
                             Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunState::SUCCEEDED) {
                        std::cout << "Job run succeeded after  " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                        done = true;
                    }
                    else if ((iterator % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                        std::cout << "Job run status " <<

Aws::Glue::Model::JobRunStateMapper::GetNameForJobRunState(
                                          jobRunState) <<
                                  ". " << iterator <<
                                  " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
                    }
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error retrieving job run state. "
                              << jobRunOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                              << std::endl;
                    deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME,
                                 bucketName, clientConfig);
                    return false;
                }
```

```
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error starting a job. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteAssets(CRAWLER_NAME, CRAWLER_DATABASE_NAME, JOB_NAME, bucketName,
                         clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

HealthImaging examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with HealthImaging.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello HealthImaging

The following code examples show how to get started using HealthImaging.

SDK for C++

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS medical-imaging)
```

```
# Set this project's name.
project("hello_health-imaging")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you may
 need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executable location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_health_imaging.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_health_imaging.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
```

```
#include <aws/medical-imaging/MedicalImagingClient.h>
#include <aws/medical-imaging/model/ListDatastoresRequest.h>

#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello HealthImaging" starter application which initializes an AWS
 HealthImaging (HealthImaging) client
 *  and lists the HealthImaging data stores in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_health-imaging'
 *
 */
#include <aws/core/auth/AWSCredentialsProviderChain.h>
#include <aws/core/platform/Environment.h>

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    (void) argc;
    (void) argv;
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //   Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;

    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ListDatastoresRequest listDatastoresRequest;

        Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DatastoreSummary>
 allDataStoreSummaries;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listDatastoresRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }
            Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ListDatastoresOutcome listDatastoresOutcome
 =
```

```
                    medicalImagingClient.ListDatastores(listDatastoresRequest);
            if (listDatastoresOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DatastoreSummary>
 &dataStoreSummaries =
                        listDatastoresOutcome.GetResult().GetDatastoreSummaries();
                allDataStoreSummaries.insert(allDataStoreSummaries.cend(),
                                             dataStoreSummaries.cbegin(),
                                             dataStoreSummaries.cend());
                nextToken = listDatastoresOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "ListDatastores error: "
                          << listDatastoresOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << allDataStoreSummaries.size() << " HealthImaging data "
                  << ((allDataStoreSummaries.size() == 1) ?
                      "store was retrieved." : "stores were retrieved.") <<
 std::endl;

        for (auto const &dataStoreSummary: allDataStoreSummaries) {
            std::cout << "  Datastore: " << dataStoreSummary.GetDatastoreName()
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  Datastore ID: " << dataStoreSummary.GetDatastoreId()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteImageSet`.

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which deletes an AWS HealthImaging image set.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The image set ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::deleteImageSet(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID, const Aws::String &imageSetID,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DeleteImageSetRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DeleteImageSetOutcome outcome =
 client.DeleteImageSet(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted image set " << imageSetID
                  << " from data store " << dataStoreID << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting image set " << imageSetID << " from data store
 "
                  << dataStoreID << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetDICOMImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging DICOM import job's properties.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param importJobID: The DICOM import job ID
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return GetDICOMImportJobOutcome: The import job outcome.
*/
Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getDICOMImportJob(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                           const Aws::String &importJobID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetJobId(importJobID);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome outcome =
 client.GetDICOMImportJob(
            request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "GetDICOMImportJob error: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome;
}
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageFrame`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageFrame`.

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which downloads an AWS HealthImaging image frame.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The image set ID.
  \param frameID: The image frame ID.
  \param jphFile: File to store the downloaded frame.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageFrame(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                            const Aws::String &imageSetID,
                                            const Aws::String &frameID,
                                            const Aws::String &jphFile,
                                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ImageFrameInformation imageFrameInformation;
    imageFrameInformation.SetImageFrameId(frameID);
    request.SetImageFrameInformation(imageFrameInformation);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameOutcome outcome = client.GetImageFrame(
```

```
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully retrieved image frame." << std::endl;
        auto &buffer = outcome.GetResult().GetImageFrameBlob();

        std::ofstream outfile(jphFile, std::ios::binary);
        outfile << buffer.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error retrieving image frame." <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                 << std::endl;

    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for C++

Utility function to get image set metadata.

```
//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging image set's metadata.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The HealthImaging image set ID.
  \param versionID: The HealthImaging image set version ID, ignored if empty.
  \param outputFilePath: The path where the metadata will be stored as gzipped json.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
```

```
  \\return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                                  const Aws::String &imageSetID,
                                                  const Aws::String &versionID,
                                                  const Aws::String &outputFilePath,
                                                  const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);
    if (!versionID.empty()) {
        request.SetVersionId(versionID);
    }
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataOutcome outcome =
 client.GetImageSetMetadata(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::ofstream file(outputFilePath, std::ios::binary);
        auto &metadata = outcome.GetResult().GetImageSetMetadataBlob();
        file << metadata.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get image set metadata: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Get image set metadata without version.

```
        if (AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(dataStoreID, imageSetID,
 "", outputFilePath, clientConfig))
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully retrieved image set metadata." << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Metadata stored in: " << outputFilePath << std::endl;
        }
```

Get image set metadata with version.

```
        if (AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(dataStoreID, imageSetID,
 versionID, outputFilePath, clientConfig))
        {
            std::cout << "Successfully retrieved image set metadata." << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Metadata stored in: " << outputFilePath << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`SearchImageSets`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchImageSets`.

SDK for C++

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
//! Routine which searches for image sets based on defined input attributes.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param searchCriteria: A search criteria instance.
  \param imageSetResults: Vector to receive the image set IDs.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                              const
 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria &searchCriteria,
                                              Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &imageSetResults,
                                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchImageSetsRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
```

```
    request.SetSearchCriteria(searchCriteria);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
    bool result = true;
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchImageSetsOutcome outcome =
 client.SearchImageSets(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            for (auto &imageSetMetadataSummary:
 outcome.GetResult().GetImageSetsMetadataSummaries()) {
                imageSetResults.push_back(imageSetMetadataSummary.GetImageSetId());
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return result;
}
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> imageIDsForPatientID;
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria searchCriteriaEqualsPatientID;
        Aws::Vector<Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter> patientIDSearchFilters
 = {

 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter().WithOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operato

 .WithValues({Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue().WithDICOMPatientId(patien
        };

        searchCriteriaEqualsPatientID.SetFilters(patientIDSearchFilters);
```

```
        bool result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,

 searchCriteriaEqualsPatientID,
                                                                imageIDsForPatientID,
                                                                clientConfig);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << imageIDsForPatientID.size() << " image sets found for the
 patient with ID '"
            <<  patientID << "'." << std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : imageIDsForPatientID) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult << std::endl;
            }
        }
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
         Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase2StartDate;

 useCase2StartDate.SetDICOMStudyDateAndTime(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DICOMStudyDateAndTim
        .WithDICOMStudyDate("19990101")
        .WithDICOMStudyTime("000000.000"));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase2EndDate;

 useCase2EndDate.SetDICOMStudyDateAndTime(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::DICOMStudyDateAndTime(

 .WithDICOMStudyDate(Aws::Utils::DateTime(std::chrono::system_clock::now()).ToLocalTimeStrin
%m%d"))
        .WithDICOMStudyTime("000000.000"));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase2SearchFilter;
        useCase2SearchFilter.SetValues({useCase2StartDate, useCase2EndDate});

 useCase2SearchFilter.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::BETWEEN);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria useCase2SearchCriteria;
        useCase2SearchCriteria.SetFilters({useCase2SearchFilter});

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> usesCase2Results;
        result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,
                                                          useCase2SearchCriteria,
```

```
                                                            usesCase2Results,
                                                            clientConfig);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << usesCase2Results.size() << " image sets found for between
1999/01/01 and present."
                      <<  std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : usesCase2Results) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult << std::endl;
            }
        }
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase3StartDate;

useCase3StartDate.SetCreatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime("20231130T000000000Z",Aws::Utils::DateF

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase3EndDate;

useCase3EndDate.SetCreatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime(std::chrono::system_clock::now()));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase3SearchFilter;
        useCase3SearchFilter.SetValues({useCase3StartDate, useCase3EndDate});

useCase3SearchFilter.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::BETWEEN);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria useCase3SearchCriteria;
        useCase3SearchCriteria.SetFilters({useCase3SearchFilter});

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> usesCase3Results;
        result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,
                                                            useCase3SearchCriteria,
                                                            usesCase3Results,
                                                            clientConfig);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << usesCase3Results.size() << " image sets found for created
between 2023/11/30 and present."
                      <<  std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : usesCase3Results) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult << std::endl;
            }
        }
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase4StartDate;

useCase4StartDate.SetUpdatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime("20231130T000000000Z",Aws::Utils::DateF

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue useCase4EndDate;

useCase4EndDate.SetUpdatedAt(Aws::Utils::DateTime(std::chrono::system_clock::now()));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase4SearchFilterBetween;
        useCase4SearchFilterBetween.SetValues({useCase4StartDate, useCase4EndDate});

useCase4SearchFilterBetween.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::BETWEEN);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchByAttributeValue seriesInstanceUID;
        seriesInstanceUID.SetDICOMSeriesInstanceUID(dicomSeriesInstanceUID);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchFilter useCase4SearchFilterEqual;
        useCase4SearchFilterEqual.SetValues({seriesInstanceUID});

useCase4SearchFilterEqual.SetOperator(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Operator::EQUAL);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria useCase4SearchCriteria;
        useCase4SearchCriteria.SetFilters({useCase4SearchFilterBetween,
useCase4SearchFilterEqual});

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::Sort useCase4Sort;
        useCase4Sort.SetSortField(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SortField::updatedAt);
        useCase4Sort.SetSortOrder(Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SortOrder::ASC);

        useCase4SearchCriteria.SetSort(useCase4Sort);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> usesCase4Results;
        result = AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::searchImageSets(dataStoreID,
                                                          useCase4SearchCriteria,
                                                          usesCase4Results,
                                                          clientConfig);
        if (result) {
```

```
            std::cout << usesCase4Results.size() << " image sets found for EQUAL
 operator "
            << "on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response
\n"
            <<  "in ASC order on updatedAt field." <<  std::endl;
            for (auto &imageSetResult : usesCase4Results) {
                std::cout << "  Image set with ID '" << imageSetResult << std::endl;
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`StartDICOMImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for C++

```
//! Routine which starts a HealthImaging import job.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param inputBucketName: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
  \param inputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket containing the DICOM files.
  \param outputBucketName: The name of the S3 bucket for the output.
  \param outputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket to store the output.
  \param roleArn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions for the import.
  \param importJobId: A string to receive the import job ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::startDICOMImportJob(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID, const Aws::String &inputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &inputDirectory, const Aws::String &outputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &outputDirectory, const Aws::String &roleArn,
```

```
        Aws::String &importJobId,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::String inputURI = "s3://" + inputBucketName + "/" + inputDirectory + "/";
    Aws::String outputURI = "s3://" + outputBucketName + "/" + outputDirectory +
 "/";
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobRequest
 startDICOMImportJobRequest;
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDataAccessRoleArn(roleArn);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetInputS3Uri(inputURI);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetOutputS3Uri(outputURI);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobOutcome
 startDICOMImportJobOutcome = medicalImagingClient.StartDICOMImportJob(
            startDICOMImportJobRequest);

    if (startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        importJobId = startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobId();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to start DICOM import job because "
                  << startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scenarios

Get started with image sets and image frames

The following code example shows how to import DICOM files and download image frames in HealthImaging.

The implementation is structured as a command-line application.

- Set up resources for a DICOM import.
- Import DICOM files into a data store.
- Retrieve the image set IDs for the import job.
- Retrieve the image frame IDs for the image sets.
- Download, decode and verify the image frames.
- Clean up resources.

SDK for C++

Create an AWS CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.

```
    Aws::String inputBucketName;
    Aws::String outputBucketName;
    Aws::String dataStoreId;
    Aws::String roleArn;
    Aws::String stackName;

    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to let this workflow create the resources for you? (y/n)
")) {
        stackName = askQuestion(
                "Enter a name for the AWS CloudFormation stack to create. ");
        Aws::String dataStoreName = askQuestion(
                "Enter a name for the HealthImaging datastore to create. ");

        Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> outputs = createCloudFormationStack(
                stackName,
                dataStoreName,
                clientConfiguration);
```

```
        if (!retrieveOutputs(outputs, dataStoreId, inputBucketName,
outputBucketName,
                             roleArn)) {
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "The following resources have been created." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "A HealthImaging datastore with ID: " << dataStoreId << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "An Amazon S3 input bucket named: " << inputBucketName << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "An Amazon S3 output bucket named: " << outputBucketName << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << "An IAM role with the ARN: " << roleArn << "." << std::endl;
        askQuestion("Enter return to continue.", alwaysTrueTest);
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "You have chosen to use preexisting resources:" << std::endl;
        dataStoreId = askQuestion(
                "Enter the data store ID of the HealthImaging datastore you wish to
use: ");
        inputBucketName = askQuestion(
                "Enter the name of the S3 input bucket you wish to use: ");
        outputBucketName = askQuestion(
                "Enter the name of the S3 output bucket you wish to use: ");
        roleArn = askQuestion(
                "Enter the ARN for the IAM role with the proper permissions to
import a DICOM series: ");
    }
```

Copy DICOM files to the Amazon S3 import bucket.

```
    std::cout
            << "This workflow uses DICOM files from the National Cancer Institute
Imaging Data\n"
            << "Commons (IDC) Collections." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Here is the link to their website." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "https://registry.opendata.aws/nci-imaging-data-commons/" <<
std::endl;
    std::cout << "We will use DICOM files stored in an S3 bucket managed by the
IDC."
              << std::endl;
```

```
    std::cout
            << "First one of the DICOM folders in the IDC collection must be copied
 to your\n"
               "input S3 bucket."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "You have the choice of one of the following "
              << IDC_ImageChoices.size() << " folders to copy." << std::endl;

    int index = 1;
    for (auto &idcChoice: IDC_ImageChoices) {
        std::cout << index << " - " << idcChoice.mDescription << std::endl;
        index++;
    }
    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Choose DICOM files to import: ", 1, 4);

    Aws::String fromDirectory = IDC_ImageChoices[choice - 1].mDirectory;
    Aws::String inputDirectory = "input";

    std::cout << "The files in the directory '" << fromDirectory << "' in the bucket
 '"
              << IDC_S3_BucketName << "' will be copied " << std::endl;
    std::cout << "to the folder '" << inputDirectory << "/" << fromDirectory
              << "' in the bucket '" << inputBucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Enter return to start the copy.", alwaysTrueTest);

    if (!AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::copySeriesBetweenBuckets(
            IDC_S3_BucketName,
            fromDirectory,
            inputBucketName,
            inputDirectory, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "This workflow will exit because of an error." << std::endl;
        cleanup(stackName, dataStoreId, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

Import the DICOM files to the Amazon S3 data store.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::startDicomImport(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                               const Aws::String &inputBucketName,
                                               const Aws::String &inputDirectory,
                                               const Aws::String &outputBucketName,
                                               const Aws::String &outputDirectory,
```

```
                                                const Aws::String &roleArn,
                                                Aws::String &importJobId,
                                                const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    bool result = false;
    if (startDICOMImportJob(dataStoreID, inputBucketName, inputDirectory,
                            outputBucketName, outputDirectory, roleArn, importJobId,
                            clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cout << "DICOM import job started with job ID " << importJobId << "."
                  << std::endl;
        result = waitImportJobCompleted(dataStoreID, importJobId,
 clientConfiguration);
        if (result) {
            std::cout << "DICOM import job completed." << std::endl;

        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which starts a HealthImaging import job.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param inputBucketName: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
  \param inputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket containing the DICOM files.
  \param outputBucketName: The name of the S3 bucket for the output.
  \param outputDirectory: The directory in the S3 bucket to store the output.
  \param roleArn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions for the import.
  \param importJobId: A string to receive the import job ID.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
  */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::startDICOMImportJob(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID, const Aws::String &inputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &inputDirectory, const Aws::String &outputBucketName,
        const Aws::String &outputDirectory, const Aws::String &roleArn,
        Aws::String &importJobId,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::String inputURI = "s3://" + inputBucketName + "/" + inputDirectory + "/";
    Aws::String outputURI = "s3://" + outputBucketName + "/" + outputDirectory +
 "/";
```

```
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobRequest
 startDICOMImportJobRequest;
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetDataAccessRoleArn(roleArn);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetInputS3Uri(inputURI);
    startDICOMImportJobRequest.SetOutputS3Uri(outputURI);

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::StartDICOMImportJobOutcome
 startDICOMImportJobOutcome = medicalImagingClient.StartDICOMImportJob(
            startDICOMImportJobRequest);

    if (startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        importJobId = startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobId();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to start DICOM import job because "
                  << startDICOMImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }

    return startDICOMImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess();
}


//! Routine which waits for a DICOM import job to complete.
/*!
 * @param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
 * @param importJobId: The import job ID.
 * @param clientConfiguration : Aws client configuration.
 * @return  bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::waitImportJobCompleted(const Aws::String &datastoreID,
                                                     const Aws::String &importJobId,
                                                     const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus jobStatus =
 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus::IN_PROGRESS;
    while (jobStatus == Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus::IN_PROGRESS) {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome
 getDicomImportJobOutcome = getDICOMImportJob(
                datastoreID, importJobId,
```

```
                clientConfiguration);

        if (getDicomImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            jobStatus =
 getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobProperties().GetJobStatus();

            std::cout << "DICOM import job status: " <<

 Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatusMapper::GetNameForJobStatus(
                              jobStatus) << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to get import job status because "
                      << getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    return jobStatus == Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::JobStatus::COMPLETED;
}

//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging DICOM import job's properties.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param importJobID: The DICOM import job ID
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return GetDICOMImportJobOutcome: The import job outcome.
*/
Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getDICOMImportJob(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                           const Aws::String &importJobID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetJobId(importJobID);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome outcome =
 client.GetDICOMImportJob(
            request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "GetDICOMImportJob error: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
    }

    return outcome;
}
```

Get image sets created by the DICOM import job.

```
bool
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetsForDicomImportJob(const Aws::String
 &datastoreID,
                                                        const Aws::String
 &importJobId,
                                                        Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &imageSets,
                                                        const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetDICOMImportJobOutcome getDicomImportJobOutcome =
 getDICOMImportJob(
            datastoreID, importJobId, clientConfiguration);
    bool result = false;
    if (getDicomImportJobOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto outputURI =
 getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetResult().GetJobProperties().GetOutputS3Uri();
        Aws::Http::URI uri(outputURI);
        const Aws::String &bucket = uri.GetAuthority();
        Aws::String key = uri.GetPath();

        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfiguration);
        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest objectRequest;
        objectRequest.SetBucket(bucket);
        objectRequest.SetKey(key + "/" + IMPORT_JOB_MANIFEST_FILE_NAME);

        auto getObjectOutcome = s3Client.GetObject(objectRequest);
        if (getObjectOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            auto &data = getObjectOutcome.GetResult().GetBody();

            std::stringstream stringStream;
            stringStream << data.rdbuf();

            try {
                // Use JMESPath to extract the image set IDs.
                // https://jmespath.org/specification.html
```

```
                std::string jmesPathExpression =
 "jobSummary.imageSetsSummary[].imageSetId";
                jsoncons::json doc = jsoncons::json::parse(stringStream.str());

                jsoncons::json imageSetsJson = jsoncons::jmespath::search(doc,

 jmesPathExpression);\
                for (auto &imageSet: imageSetsJson.array_range()) {
                    imageSets.push_back(imageSet.as_string());
                }

                result = true;
            }
            catch (const std::exception &e) {
                std::cerr << e.what() << '\n';
            }

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Failed to get object because "
                      << getObjectOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        }

    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get import job status because "
                  << getDicomImportJobOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}
```

Get image frame information for image sets.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageFramesForImageSet(const Aws::String
 &dataStoreID,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &imageSetID,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &outDirectory,
                                                         Aws::Vector<ImageFrameInfo>
 &imageFrames,
```

```
                                                        const
Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
   Aws::String fileName = outDirectory + "/" + imageSetID + "_metadata.json.gzip";
   bool result = false;
   if (getImageSetMetadata(dataStoreID, imageSetID, "", // Empty string for version
ID.
                           fileName, clientConfiguration)) {
       try {
           std::string metadataGZip;
           {
               std::ifstream inFileStream(fileName.c_str(), std::ios::binary);
               if (!inFileStream) {
                   throw std::runtime_error("Failed to open file " + fileName);
               }

               std::stringstream stringStream;
               stringStream << inFileStream.rdbuf();
               metadataGZip = stringStream.str();
           }
           std::string metadataJson = gzip::decompress(metadataGZip.data(),
                                                        metadataGZip.size());
           // Use JMESPath to extract the image set IDs.
           // https://jmespath.org/specification.html
           jsoncons::json doc = jsoncons::json::parse(metadataJson);
           std::string jmesPathExpression = "Study.Series.*.Instances[].*[]";
           jsoncons::json instances = jsoncons::jmespath::search(doc,

jmesPathExpression);
           for (auto &instance: instances.array_range()) {
               jmesPathExpression = "DICOM.RescaleSlope";
               std::string rescaleSlope = jsoncons::jmespath::search(instance,

jmesPathExpression).to_string();
               jmesPathExpression = "DICOM.RescaleIntercept";
               std::string rescaleIntercept = jsoncons::jmespath::search(instance,

jmesPathExpression).to_string();

               jmesPathExpression = "ImageFrames[][]";
               jsoncons::json imageFramesJson =
jsoncons::jmespath::search(instance,

jmesPathExpression);
```

```
                for (auto &imageFrame: imageFramesJson.array_range()) {
                    ImageFrameInfo imageFrameIDs;
                    imageFrameIDs.mImageSetId = imageSetID;
                    imageFrameIDs.mImageFrameId = imageFrame.find(
                            "ID")->value().as_string();
                    imageFrameIDs.mRescaleIntercept = rescaleIntercept;
                    imageFrameIDs.mRescaleSlope = rescaleSlope;
                    imageFrameIDs.MinPixelValue = imageFrame.find(
                            "MinPixelValue")->value().as_string();
                    imageFrameIDs.MaxPixelValue = imageFrame.find(
                            "MaxPixelValue")->value().as_string();

                    jmesPathExpression =
 "max_by(PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution, &Width).Checksum";
                    jsoncons::json checksumJson =
 jsoncons::jmespath::search(imageFrame,

 jmesPathExpression);
                    imageFrameIDs.mFullResolutionChecksum =
 checksumJson.as_integer<uint32_t>();

                    imageFrames.emplace_back(imageFrameIDs);
                }
            }

            result = true;
        }
        catch (const std::exception &e) {
            std::cerr << "getImageFramesForImageSet failed because " << e.what()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which gets a HealthImaging image set's metadata.
/*!
  \param dataStoreID: The HealthImaging data store ID.
  \param imageSetID: The HealthImaging image set ID.
  \param versionID: The HealthImaging image set version ID, ignored if empty.
  \param outputFilePath: The path where the metadata will be stored as gzipped json.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \\return bool: Function succeeded.
```

```
*/
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::getImageSetMetadata(const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
                                                  const Aws::String &imageSetID,
                                                  const Aws::String &versionID,
                                                  const Aws::String &outputFilePath,
                                                  const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataRequest request;
    request.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
    request.SetImageSetId(imageSetID);
    if (!versionID.empty()) {
        request.SetVersionId(versionID);
    }
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageSetMetadataOutcome outcome =
 client.GetImageSetMetadata(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::ofstream file(outputFilePath, std::ios::binary);
        auto &metadata = outcome.GetResult().GetImageSetMetadataBlob();
        file << metadata.rdbuf();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get image set metadata: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Download, decode and verify image frames.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::downloadDecodeAndCheckImageFrames(
        const Aws::String &dataStoreID,
        const Aws::Vector<ImageFrameInfo> &imageFrames,
        const Aws::String &outDirectory,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfiguration1(clientConfiguration);
    clientConfiguration1.executor =
 Aws::MakeShared<Aws::Utils::Threading::PooledThreadExecutor>(
            "executor", 25);
```

```
    Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient(
            clientConfiguration1);

    Aws::Utils::Threading::Semaphore semaphore(0, 1);
    std::atomic<size_t> count(imageFrames.size());

    bool result = true;
    for (auto &imageFrame: imageFrames) {
        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameRequest getImageFrameRequest;
        getImageFrameRequest.SetDatastoreId(dataStoreID);
        getImageFrameRequest.SetImageSetId(imageFrame.mImageSetId);

        Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::ImageFrameInformation imageFrameInformation;
        imageFrameInformation.SetImageFrameId(imageFrame.mImageFrameId);
        getImageFrameRequest.SetImageFrameInformation(imageFrameInformation);

        auto getImageFrameAsyncLambda = [&semaphore, &result, &count, imageFrame,
outDirectory](
                const Aws::MedicalImaging::MedicalImagingClient *client,
                const Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameRequest &request,
                Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::GetImageFrameOutcome outcome,
                const std::shared_ptr<const Aws::Client::AsyncCallerContext>
&context) {

                if (!handleGetImageFrameResult(outcome, outDirectory, imageFrame)) {
                    std::cerr << "Failed to download and convert image frame: "
                              << imageFrame.mImageFrameId << " from image set: "
                              << imageFrame.mImageSetId << std::endl;
                    result = false;
                }

                count--;
                if (count <= 0) {

                    semaphore.ReleaseAll();
                }
        }; // End of 'getImageFrameAsyncLambda' lambda.

        medicalImagingClient.GetImageFrameAsync(getImageFrameRequest,
                                                getImageFrameAsyncLambda);
    }

    if (count > 0) {
        semaphore.WaitOne();
```

```
    }

    if (result) {
        std::cout << imageFrames.size() << " image files were downloaded."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}

bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::decodeJPHFileAndValidateWithChecksum(
        const Aws::String &jphFile,
        uint32_t crc32Checksum) {
    opj_image_t *outputImage = jphImageToOpjBitmap(jphFile);
    if (!outputImage) {
        return false;
    }

    bool result = true;
    if (!verifyChecksumForImage(outputImage, crc32Checksum)) {
        std::cerr << "The checksum for the image does not match the expected value."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cerr << "File :" << jphFile << std::endl;
        result = false;
    }

    opj_image_destroy(outputImage);

    return result;
}

opj_image *
AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::jphImageToOpjBitmap(const Aws::String &jphFile) {
    opj_stream_t *inFileStream = nullptr;
    opj_codec_t *decompressorCodec = nullptr;
    opj_image_t *outputImage = nullptr;
    try {
        std::shared_ptr<opj_dparameters> decodeParameters =
 std::make_shared<opj_dparameters>();
        memset(decodeParameters.get(), 0, sizeof(opj_dparameters));

        opj_set_default_decoder_parameters(decodeParameters.get());

        decodeParameters->decod_format = 1; // JP2 image format.
```

```
        decodeParameters->cod_format = 2; // BMP image format.

        std::strncpy(decodeParameters->infile, jphFile.c_str(),
                     OPJ_PATH_LEN);

        inFileStream = opj_stream_create_default_file_stream(
                decodeParameters->infile, true);
        if (!inFileStream) {
            throw std::runtime_error(
                    "Unable to create input file stream for file '" + jphFile +
"'.");
        }

        decompressorCodec = opj_create_decompress(OPJ_CODEC_JP2);
        if (!decompressorCodec) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to create decompression codec.");
        }

        int decodeMessageLevel = 1;
        if (!setupCodecLogging(decompressorCodec, &decodeMessageLevel)) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to setup codec logging." << std::endl;
        }

        if (!opj_setup_decoder(decompressorCodec, decodeParameters.get())) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to setup decompression codec.");
        }
        if (!opj_codec_set_threads(decompressorCodec, 4)) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to set decompression codec threads.");
        }

        if (!opj_read_header(inFileStream, decompressorCodec, &outputImage)) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to read header.");
        }

        if (!opj_decode(decompressorCodec, inFileStream,
                        outputImage)) {
            throw std::runtime_error("Failed to decode.");
        }

        if (DEBUGGING) {
            std::cout << "image width : " << outputImage->x1 - outputImage->x0
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "image height : " << outputImage->y1 - outputImage->y0
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            std::cout << "number of channels: " << outputImage->numcomps
                      << std::endl;
            std::cout << "colorspace : " << outputImage->color_space << std::endl;
        }

    } catch (const std::exception &e) {
        std::cerr << e.what() << std::endl;
        if (outputImage) {
            opj_image_destroy(outputImage);
            outputImage = nullptr;
        }
    }
    if (inFileStream) {
        opj_stream_destroy(inFileStream);
    }
    if (decompressorCodec) {
        opj_destroy_codec(decompressorCodec);
    }

    return outputImage;
}

//! Template function which converts a planar image bitmap to an interleaved image
 bitmap and
//! then verifies the checksum of the bitmap.
/*!
 * @param image: The OpenJPEG image struct.
 * @param crc32Checksum: The CRC32 checksum.
 * @return  bool: Function succeeded.
 */
template<class myType>
bool verifyChecksumForImageForType(opj_image_t *image, uint32_t crc32Checksum) {
    uint32_t width = image->x1 - image->x0;
    uint32_t height = image->y1 - image->y0;
    uint32_t numOfChannels = image->numcomps;

    // Buffer for interleaved bitmap.
    std::vector<myType> buffer(width * height * numOfChannels);

    // Convert planar bitmap to interleaved bitmap.
    for (uint32_t channel = 0; channel < numOfChannels; channel++) {
        for (uint32_t row = 0; row < height; row++) {
            uint32_t fromRowStart = row / image->comps[channel].dy * width /
                                    image->comps[channel].dx;
```

```
            uint32_t toIndex = (row * width) * numOfChannels + channel;

            for (uint32_t col = 0; col < width; col++) {
                uint32_t fromIndex = fromRowStart + col / image->comps[channel].dx;

                buffer[toIndex] = static_cast<myType>(image-
>comps[channel].data[fromIndex]);

                toIndex += numOfChannels;
            }
        }
    }

    // Verify checksum.
    boost::crc_32_type crc32;
    crc32.process_bytes(reinterpret_cast<char *>(buffer.data()),
                        buffer.size() * sizeof(myType));

    bool result = crc32.checksum() == crc32Checksum;
    if (!result) {
        std::cerr << "verifyChecksumForImage, checksum mismatch, expected - "
                  << crc32Checksum << ", actual - " << crc32.checksum()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which verifies the checksum of an OpenJPEG image struct.
/*!
 * @param image: The OpenJPEG image struct.
 * @param crc32Checksum: The CRC32 checksum.
 * @return  bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::verifyChecksumForImage(opj_image_t *image,
                                                     uint32_t crc32Checksum) {
    uint32_t channels = image->numcomps;
    bool result = false;
    if (0 < channels) {
        // Assume the precision is the same for all channels.
        uint32_t precision = image->comps[0].prec;
        bool signedData = image->comps[0].sgnd;
        uint32_t bytes = (precision + 7) / 8;
```

```
        if (signedData) {
            switch (bytes) {
                case 1 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<int8_t>(image,
                                                                   crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 2 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<int16_t>(image,
                                                                    crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 4 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<int32_t>(image,
                                                                    crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr
                            << "verifyChecksumForImage, unsupported data type,
signed bytes - "
                            << bytes << std::endl;
                    break;
            }
        }
        else {
            switch (bytes) {
                case 1 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<uint8_t>(image,
                                                                    crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 2 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<uint16_t>(image,
                                                                     crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                case 4 :
                    result = verifyChecksumForImageForType<uint32_t>(image,
                                                                     crc32Checksum);
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr
                            << "verifyChecksumForImage, unsupported data type,
unsigned bytes - "
                            << bytes << std::endl;
                    break;
            }
        }
```

```
        if (!result) {
            std::cerr << "verifyChecksumForImage, error bytes " << bytes
                      << " signed "
                      << signedData << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "'verifyChecksumForImage', no channels in the image."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return result;
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::cleanup(const Aws::String &stackName,
                                      const Aws::String &dataStoreId,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    bool result = true;

    if (!stackName.empty() && askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to delete the stack " + stackName + "? (y/n)")) {
        std::cout << "Deleting the image sets in the stack." << std::endl;
        result &= emptyDatastore(dataStoreId, clientConfiguration);
        printAsterisksLine();
        std::cout << "Deleting the stack." << std::endl;
        result &= deleteStack(stackName, clientConfiguration);
    }
    return result;
}

bool AwsDoc::Medical_Imaging::emptyDatastore(const Aws::String &datastoreID,
                                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::MedicalImaging::Model::SearchCriteria emptyCriteria;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> imageSetIDs;
    bool result = false;
    if (searchImageSets(datastoreID, emptyCriteria, imageSetIDs,
                        clientConfiguration)) {
```

```
        result = true;
        for (auto &imageSetID: imageSetIDs) {
            result &= deleteImageSet(datastoreID, imageSetID, clientConfiguration);
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - DeleteImageSet
  - GetDICOMImportJob
  - GetImageFrame
  - GetImageSetMetadata
  - SearchImageSets
  - StartDICOMImportJob

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

IAM examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS iam)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_iam")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.
```

```
    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_iam.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the iam.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/iam/IAMClient.h>
#include <aws/iam/model/ListPoliciesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <iomanip>

/*
 *  A "Hello IAM" starter application which initializes an AWS Identity and Access
 Management (IAM) client
 *  and lists the IAM policies.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_iam'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT("%Y-%m-%d");
```

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::IAM::IAMClient iamClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::IAM::Model::ListPoliciesRequest request;

        bool done = false;
        bool header = false;
        while (!done) {
            auto outcome = iamClient.ListPolicies(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Failed to list iam policies: " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
            }

            if (!header) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                          std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                          std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::setw(12) <<
                          "CreateDate" << std::endl;
                header = true;
            }

            const auto &policies = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicies();
            for (const auto &policy: policies) {
                std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                          policy.GetPolicyName() << std::setw(30) <<
                          policy.GetPolicyId() << std::setw(80) << policy.GetArn()
<<
                          std::setw(64) << policy.GetDescription() << std::setw(12)
<<
                          policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
                          std::endl;
            }

            if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
                request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
            } else {
                done = true;
            }
        }
```

```
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AwsDoc {
    namespace IAM {

        //! Cleanup by deleting created entities.
        /*!
          \sa DeleteCreatedEntities
          \param client: IAM client.
          \param role: IAM role.
          \param user: IAM user.
          \param policy: IAM policy.
        */
        static bool DeleteCreatedEntities(const Aws::IAM::IAMClient &client,
                                          const Aws::IAM::Model::Role &role,
                                          const Aws::IAM::Model::User &user,
                                          const Aws::IAM::Model::Policy &policy);
    }

    static const int LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC = 20;

    static const char ALLOCATION_TAG[] = "example_code";
}

//! Scenario to create an IAM user, create an IAM role, and apply the role to the
 user.
// "IAM access" permissions are needed to run this code.
// "STS assume role" permissions are needed to run this code. (Note: It might be
 necessary to
//    create a custom policy).
/*!
  \sa iamCreateUserAssumeRoleScenario
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Successful completion.
*/
bool AwsDoc::IAM::iamCreateUserAssumeRoleScenario(
```

```
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {

    Aws::IAM::IAMClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::User user;
    Aws::IAM::Model::Role role;
    Aws::IAM::Model::Policy policy;

    // 1. Create a user.
    {
        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateUserRequest request;
        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String userName = "iam-demo-user-" +
                               Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetUserName(userName);

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateUserOutcome outcome = client.CreateUser(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Error creating IAM user " << userName << ":" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully created IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
        }

        user = outcome.GetResult().GetUser();
    }

    // 2. Create a role.
    {
        // Get the IAM user for the current client in order to access its ARN.
        Aws::String iamUserArn;
        {
            Aws::IAM::Model::GetUserRequest request;
            Aws::IAM::Model::GetUserOutcome outcome = client.GetUser(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error getting Iam user. " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

                DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
                return false;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully retrieved Iam user "
```

```
                        << outcome.GetResult().GetUser().GetUserName()
                        << std::endl;
            }

            iamUserArn = outcome.GetResult().GetUser().GetArn();
        }

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleRequest request;

        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String roleName = "iam-demo-role-" +
                               Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetRoleName(roleName);

        // Build policy document for role.
        Aws::Utils::Document jsonStatement;
        jsonStatement.WithString("Effect", "Allow");

        Aws::Utils::Document jsonPrincipal;
        jsonPrincipal.WithString("AWS", iamUserArn);
        jsonStatement.WithObject("Principal", jsonPrincipal);
        jsonStatement.WithString("Action", "sts:AssumeRole");
        jsonStatement.WithObject("Condition", Aws::Utils::Document());

        Aws::Utils::Document policyDocument;
        policyDocument.WithString("Version", "2012-10-17");

        Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Document> statements(1);
        statements[0] = jsonStatement;
        policyDocument.WithArray("Statement", statements);

        std::cout << "Setting policy for role\n   "
                  << policyDocument.View().WriteCompact() << std::endl;

        // Set role policy document as JSON string.
        request.SetAssumeRolePolicyDocument(policyDocument.View().WriteCompact());

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleOutcome outcome = client.CreateRole(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error creating role. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
            return false;
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully created a role with name " << roleName
                      << std::endl;
        }

        role = outcome.GetResult().GetRole();
    }

    // 3. Create an IAM policy.
    {
        Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyRequest request;
        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String policyName = "iam-demo-policy-" +
                                 Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetPolicyName(policyName);

        // Build IAM policy document.
        Aws::Utils::Document jsonStatement;
        jsonStatement.WithString("Effect", "Allow");
        jsonStatement.WithString("Action", "s3:ListAllMyBuckets");
        jsonStatement.WithString("Resource", "arn:aws:s3:::*");

        Aws::Utils::Document policyDocument;
        policyDocument.WithString("Version", "2012-10-17");

        Aws::Utils::Array<Aws::Utils::Document> statements(1);
        statements[0] = jsonStatement;
        policyDocument.WithArray("Statement", statements);

        std::cout << "Creating a policy.\n   " <<
policyDocument.View().WriteCompact()
                  << std::endl;

        // Set IAM policy document as JSON string.
        request.SetPolicyDocument(policyDocument.View().WriteCompact());

        Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyOutcome outcome = client.CreatePolicy(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error creating policy. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
            return false;
```

```
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully created a policy with name, " << policyName
<<
                      "." << std::endl;
        }

        policy = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy();
    }

    // 4. Assume the new role using the AWS Security Token Service (STS).
    Aws::STS::Model::Credentials credentials;
    {
        Aws::STS::STSClient stsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleRequest request;
        request.SetRoleArn(role.GetArn());
        Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
        Aws::String roleSessionName = "iam-demo-role-session-" +

Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());
        request.SetRoleSessionName(roleSessionName);

        Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleOutcome assumeRoleOutcome;

        // Repeatedly call AssumeRole, because there is often a delay
        // before the role is available to be assumed.
        // Repeat at most 20 times when access is denied.
        int count = 0;
        while (true) {
            assumeRoleOutcome = stsClient.AssumeRole(request);
            if (!assumeRoleOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                if (count > 20 ||
                    assumeRoleOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                    Aws::STS::STSErrors::ACCESS_DENIED) {
                    std::cerr << "Error assuming role after 20 tries. " <<
                              assumeRoleOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
std::endl;

                    DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
                    return false;
                }
                std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            }
```

```
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully assumed the role after " << count
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                break;
            }
            count++;
        }

        credentials = assumeRoleOutcome.GetResult().GetCredentials();
    }


    // 5. List objects in the bucket (This should fail).
    {
        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(
                Aws::Auth::AWSCredentials(credentials.GetAccessKeyId(),
                                          credentials.GetSecretAccessKey(),
                                          credentials.GetSessionToken()),
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::S3::S3EndpointProvider>(ALLOCATION_TAG),
                clientConfig);
        Aws::S3::Model::ListBucketsOutcome listBucketsOutcome =
s3Client.ListBuckets();
        if (!listBucketsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            if (listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                Aws::S3::S3Errors::ACCESS_DENIED) {
                std::cerr << "Could not lists buckets. " <<
                          listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cout
                        << "Access to list buckets denied because privileges have
not been applied."
                        << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr
                    << "Successfully retrieved bucket lists when this should not
happen."
                    << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 6. Attach the policy to the role.
```

```
    {
        Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyRequest request;
        request.SetRoleName(role.GetRoleName());
        request.WithPolicyArn(policy.GetArn());

        Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyOutcome outcome = client.AttachRolePolicy(
                request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error creating policy. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;

            DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
            return false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully attached the policy with name, "
                      << policy.GetPolicyName() <<
                      ", to the role, " << role.GetRoleName() << "." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    int count = 0;
    // 7. List objects in the bucket (this should succeed).
    // Repeatedly call ListBuckets, because there is often a delay
    // before the policy with ListBucket permissions has been applied to the role.
    // Repeat at most LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC times when access is denied.
    while (true) {
        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(
                Aws::Auth::AWSCredentials(credentials.GetAccessKeyId(),
                                          credentials.GetSecretAccessKey(),
                                          credentials.GetSessionToken()),
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::S3::S3EndpointProvider>(ALLOCATION_TAG),
                clientConfig);
        Aws::S3::Model::ListBucketsOutcome listBucketsOutcome =
s3Client.ListBuckets();
        if (!listBucketsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            if ((count > LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC) ||
                listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                Aws::S3::S3Errors::ACCESS_DENIED) {
                std::cerr << "Could not lists buckets after " <<
LIST_BUCKETS_WAIT_SEC << " seconds. " <<
                          listBucketsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
                return false;
```

```
            }

            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        }
        else {

            std::cout << "Successfully retrieved bucket lists after " << count
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            break;
        }
        count++;
    }

    // 8. Delete all the created resources.
    return DeleteCreatedEntities(client, role, user, policy);
}

bool AwsDoc::IAM::DeleteCreatedEntities(const Aws::IAM::IAMClient &client,
                                        const Aws::IAM::Model::Role &role,
                                        const Aws::IAM::Model::User &user,
                                        const Aws::IAM::Model::Policy &policy) {
    bool result = true;
    if (policy.ArnHasBeenSet()) {
        // Detach the policy from the role.
        {
            Aws::IAM::Model::DetachRolePolicyRequest request;
            request.SetPolicyArn(policy.GetArn());
            request.SetRoleName(role.GetRoleName());

            Aws::IAM::Model::DetachRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
 client.DetachRolePolicy(
                    request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error Detaching policy from roles. " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully detached the policy with arn "
                          << policy.GetArn()
                          << " from role " << role.GetRoleName() << "." <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
```

```
        // Delete the policy.
        {
            Aws::IAM::Model::DeletePolicyRequest request;
            request.WithPolicyArn(policy.GetArn());

            Aws::IAM::Model::DeletePolicyOutcome outcome =
client.DeletePolicy(request);
            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error deleting policy. " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "Successfully deleted the policy with arn "
                          << policy.GetArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }

    }

    if (role.RoleIdHasBeenSet()) {
        // Delete the role.
        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteRoleRequest request;
        request.SetRoleName(role.GetRoleName());

        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteRoleOutcome outcome = client.DeleteRole(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting role. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the role with name "
                      << role.GetRoleName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    if (user.ArnHasBeenSet()) {
        // Delete the user.
        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
        request.WithUserName(user.GetUserName());

        Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteUserOutcome outcome = client.DeleteUser(request);
```

```
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting user. " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Successfully deleted the user with name "
                      << user.GetUserName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::attachRolePolicy(const Aws::String &roleName,
                                   const Aws::String &policyArn,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest list_request;
    list_request.SetRoleName(roleName);

    bool done = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto list_outcome = iam.ListAttachedRolePolicies(list_request);
        if (!list_outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list attached policies of role " <<
                      roleName << ": " << list_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                      std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        const auto &policies = list_outcome.GetResult().GetAttachedPolicies();
        if (std::any_of(policies.cbegin(), policies.cend(),
                        [=](const Aws::IAM::Model::AttachedPolicy &policy) {
                                return policy.GetPolicyArn() == policyArn;
                        })) {
            std::cout << "Policy " << policyArn <<
                      " is already attached to role " << roleName << std::endl;
            return true;
        }

        done = !list_outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated();
        list_request.SetMarker(list_outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
    }

    Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyRequest request;
```

```
    request.SetRoleName(roleName);
    request.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    Aws::IAM::Model::AttachRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
 iam.AttachRolePolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to attach policy " << policyArn << " to role " <<
                  roleName << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully attached policy " << policyArn << " to role " <<
                  roleName << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
Aws::String AwsDoc::IAM::createAccessKey(const Aws::String &userName,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccessKeyRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);

    Aws::String result;
```

```
    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccessKeyOutcome outcome = iam.CreateAccessKey(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating access key for IAM user " << userName
                  << ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        const auto &accessKey = outcome.GetResult().GetAccessKey();
        std::cout << "Successfully created access key for IAM user " <<
                  userName << std::endl << "  aws_access_key_id = " <<
                  accessKey.GetAccessKeyId() << std::endl <<
                  " aws_secret_access_key = " << accessKey.GetSecretAccessKey() <<
                  std::endl;
        result = accessKey.GetAccessKeyId();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::createAccountAlias(const Aws::String &aliasName,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccountAliasRequest request;
    request.SetAccountAlias(aliasName);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateAccountAliasOutcome outcome = iam.CreateAccountAlias(
```

```
            request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating account alias " << aliasName << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully created account alias " << aliasName <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
Aws::String AwsDoc::IAM::createPolicy(const Aws::String &policyName,
                                      const Aws::String &rsrcArn,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyRequest request;
    request.SetPolicyName(policyName);
    request.SetPolicyDocument(BuildSamplePolicyDocument(rsrcArn));

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreatePolicyOutcome outcome = iam.CreatePolicy(request);
    Aws::String result;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating policy " << policyName << ": " <<
```

```
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        result = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy().GetArn();
        std::cout << "Successfully created policy " << policyName <<
                    std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}

Aws::String AwsDoc::IAM::BuildSamplePolicyDocument(const Aws::String &rsrc_arn) {
    std::stringstream stringStream;
    stringStream << "{"
                 << "  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\","
                 << "  \"Statement\": ["
                 << "    {"
                 << "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\","
                 << "        \"Action\": \"logs:CreateLogGroup\","
                 << "        \"Resource\": \""
                 << rsrc_arn
                 << "\""
                 << "    },"
                 << "    {"
                 << "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\","
                 << "        \"Action\": ["
                 << "            \"dynamodb:DeleteItem\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:GetItem\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:PutItem\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:Scan\","
                 << "            \"dynamodb:UpdateItem\""
                 << "       ],"
                 << "       \"Resource\": \""
                 << rsrc_arn
                 << "\""
                 << "    }"
                 << "   ]"
                 << "}";

    return stringStream.str();
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::createIamRole(
        const Aws::String &roleName,
        const Aws::String &policy,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient client(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleRequest request;

    request.SetRoleName(roleName);
    request.SetAssumeRolePolicyDocument(policy);

    Aws::IAM::Model::CreateRoleOutcome outcome = client.CreateRole(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error creating role. " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        const Aws::IAM::Model::Role iamRole = outcome.GetResult().GetRole();
        std::cout << "Created role " << iamRole.GetRoleName() << "\n";
        std::cout << "ID: " << iamRole.GetRoleId() << "\n";
        std::cout << "ARN: " << iamRole.GetArn() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

Aws::IAM::Model::CreateUserRequest create_request;
create_request.SetUserName(userName);

auto create_outcome = iam.CreateUser(create_request);
if (!create_outcome.IsSuccess()) {
    std::cerr << "Error creating IAM user " << userName << ":" <<
              create_outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
}
else {
    std::cout << "Successfully created IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
}

return create_outcome.IsSuccess();
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deleteAccessKey(const Aws::String &userName,
                                  const Aws::String &accessKeyID,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteAccessKeyRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);
    request.SetAccessKeyId(accessKeyID);

    auto outcome = iam.DeleteAccessKey(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting access key " << accessKeyID << " from user "
                  << userName << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted access key " << accessKeyID
                  << " for IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deleteAccountAlias(const Aws::String &accountAlias,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteAccountAliasRequest request;
    request.SetAccountAlias(accountAlias);

    const auto outcome = iam.DeleteAccountAlias(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting account alias " << accountAlias << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted account alias " << accountAlias <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deletePolicy(const Aws::String &policyArn,
                               const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::DeletePolicyRequest request;
    request.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    auto outcome = iam.DeletePolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting policy with arn " << policyArn << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted policy with arn " << policyArn
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServerCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::deleteServerCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateName,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteServerCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetServerCertificateName(certificateName);

    const auto outcome = iam.DeleteServerCertificate(request);
    bool result = true;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
 Aws::IAM::IAMErrors::NO_SUCH_ENTITY) {
            std::cerr << "Error deleting server certificate " << certificateName <<
                      ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Certificate '" << certificateName
                      << "' not found." << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted server certificate " << certificateName
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

Aws::IAM::Model::DeleteUserRequest request;
request.SetUserName(userName);
auto outcome = iam.DeleteUser(request);
if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
    std::cerr << "Error deleting IAM user " << userName << ": " <<
              outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;;
}
else {
    std::cout << "Successfully deleted IAM user " << userName << std::endl;
}

return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::DetachRolePolicyRequest detachRequest;
    detachRequest.SetRoleName(roleName);
    detachRequest.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);

    auto detachOutcome = iam.DetachRolePolicy(detachRequest);
    if (!detachOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to detach policy " << policyArn << " from role "
                  << roleName << ": " << detachOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully detached policy " << policyArn << " from role "
                  << roleName << std::endl;
    }

    return detachOutcome.IsSuccess();
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetAccessKeyLastUsed`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccessKeyLastUsed`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::accessKeyLastUsed(const Aws::String &secretKeyID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetAccessKeyLastUsedRequest request;

    request.SetAccessKeyId(secretKeyID);
```

```
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetAccessKeyLastUsedOutcome outcome = iam.GetAccessKeyLastUsed(
            request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error querying last used time for access key " <<
                  secretKeyID << ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        Aws::String lastUsedTimeString =
                outcome.GetResult()
                        .GetAccessKeyLastUsed()
                        .GetLastUsedDate()
                        .ToGmtString(Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601);
        std::cout << "Access key " << secretKeyID << " last used at time " <<
                  lastUsedTimeString << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::getPolicy(const Aws::String &policyArn,
                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetPolicyArn(policyArn);
```

```
    auto outcome = iam.GetPolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error getting policy " << policyArn << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        const auto &policy = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy();
        std::cout << "Name: " << policy.GetPolicyName() << std::endl <<
                  "ID: " << policy.GetPolicyId() << std::endl << "Arn: " <<
                  policy.GetArn() << std::endl << "Description: " <<
                  policy.GetDescription() << std::endl << "CreateDate: " <<

 policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(Aws::Utils::DateFormat::ISO_8601)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetServerCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::getServerCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::GetServerCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetServerCertificateName(certificateName);
```

```
    auto outcome = iam.GetServerCertificate(request);
    bool result = true;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
 Aws::IAM::IAMErrors::NO_SUCH_ENTITY) {
            std::cerr << "Error getting server certificate " << certificateName <<
                      ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Certificate '" << certificateName
                      << "' not found." << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        const auto &certificate = outcome.GetResult().GetServerCertificate();
        std::cout << "Name: " <<

 certificate.GetServerCertificateMetadata().GetServerCertificateName()
                 << std::endl << "Body: " << certificate.GetCertificateBody() <<
                 std::endl << "Chain: " << certificate.GetCertificateChain() <<
                 std::endl;
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listAccessKeys(const Aws::String &userName,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListAccessKeysRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListAccessKeys(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list access keys for user " << userName
                      << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "UserName" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "KeyID" << std::setw(20) << "Status" <<
                      std::setw(20) << "CreateDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &keys = outcome.GetResult().GetAccessKeyMetadata();
        const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT = "%Y-%m-%d";

        for (const auto &key: keys) {
            Aws::String statusString =
                    Aws::IAM::Model::StatusTypeMapper::GetNameForStatusType(
                            key.GetStatus());
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << key.GetUserName() <<
                      std::setw(30) << key.GetAccessKeyId() << std::setw(20) <<
                      statusString << std::setw(20) <<
                      key.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
 std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
```

```
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool
AwsDoc::IAM::listAccountAliases(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListAccountAliasesRequest request;

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListAccountAliases(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list account aliases: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        const auto &aliases = outcome.GetResult().GetAccountAliases();
        if (!header) {
            if (aliases.size() == 0) {
                std::cout << "Account has no aliases" << std::endl;
```

```
                break;
            }
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "Alias" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        for (const auto &alias: aliases) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << alias << std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listPolicies(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT("%Y-%m-%d");
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListPoliciesRequest request;
```

```
    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListPolicies(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list iam policies: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                      std::setw(64) << "Description" << std::setw(12) <<
                      "CreateDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &policies = outcome.GetResult().GetPolicies();
        for (const auto &policy: policies) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                      policy.GetPolicyName() << std::setw(30) <<
                      policy.GetPolicyId() << std::setw(80) << policy.GetArn() <<
                      std::setw(64) << policy.GetDescription() << std::setw(12) <<
                      policy.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str()) <<
                      std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ListServerCertificates

The following code example shows how to use `ListServerCertificates`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listServerCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT = "%Y-%m-%d";

    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListServerCertificatesRequest request;

    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListServerCertificates(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list server certificates: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(80) << "Arn" <<
                      std::setw(14) << "UploadDate" << std::setw(14) <<
                      "ExpirationDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &certificates =
                outcome.GetResult().GetServerCertificateMetadataList();

        for (const auto &certificate: certificates) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(55) <<
                      certificate.GetServerCertificateName() << std::setw(30) <<
```

```
                        certificate.GetServerCertificateId() << std::setw(80) <<
                        certificate.GetArn() << std::setw(14) <<
                        certificate.GetUploadDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str())
 <<
                        std::setw(14) <<
                        certificate.GetExpiration().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str())
 <<
                        std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::listUsers(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    const Aws::String DATE_FORMAT = "%Y-%m-%d";
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::ListUsersRequest request;
```

```
    bool done = false;
    bool header = false;
    while (!done) {
        auto outcome = iam.ListUsers(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed to list iam users:" <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (!header) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << "Name" <<
                      std::setw(30) << "ID" << std::setw(64) << "Arn" <<
                      std::setw(20) << "CreateDate" << std::endl;
            header = true;
        }

        const auto &users = outcome.GetResult().GetUsers();
        for (const auto &user: users) {
            std::cout << std::left << std::setw(32) << user.GetUserName() <<
                      std::setw(30) << user.GetUserId() << std::setw(64) <<
                      user.GetArn() << std::setw(20) <<
                      user.GetCreateDate().ToGmtString(DATE_FORMAT.c_str())
                      << std::endl;
        }

        if (outcome.GetResult().GetIsTruncated()) {
            request.SetMarker(outcome.GetResult().GetMarker());
        }
        else {
            done = true;
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRolePolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::putRolePolicy(
        const Aws::String &roleName,
        const Aws::String &policyName,
        const Aws::String &policyDocument,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iamClient(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::PutRolePolicyRequest request;

    request.SetRoleName(roleName);
    request.SetPolicyName(policyName);
    request.SetPolicyDocument(policyDocument);

    Aws::IAM::Model::PutRolePolicyOutcome outcome =
 iamClient.PutRolePolicy(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error putting policy on role. " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Successfully put the role policy." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::updateAccessKey(const Aws::String &userName,
                                  const Aws::String &accessKeyID,
                                  Aws::IAM::Model::StatusType status,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::UpdateAccessKeyRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(userName);
    request.SetAccessKeyId(accessKeyID);
    request.SetStatus(status);

    auto outcome = iam.UpdateAccessKey(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated status of access key "
                  << accessKeyID << " for user " << userName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error updated status of access key " << accessKeyID <<
                  " for user " << userName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateServerCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::updateServerCertificate(const Aws::String &currentCertificateName,
                                          const Aws::String &newCertificateName,
                                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);
    Aws::IAM::Model::UpdateServerCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetServerCertificateName(currentCertificateName);
    request.SetNewServerCertificateName(newCertificateName);

    auto outcome = iam.UpdateServerCertificate(request);
    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Server certificate " << currentCertificateName
                  << " successfully renamed as " << newCertificateName
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
 Aws::IAM::IAMErrors::NO_SUCH_ENTITY) {
            std::cerr << "Error changing name of server certificate " <<
                      currentCertificateName << " to " << newCertificateName << ":"
 <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Certificate '" << currentCertificateName
                      << "' not found." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::IAM::updateUser(const Aws::String &currentUserName,
                             const Aws::String &newUserName,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::IAM::IAMClient iam(clientConfig);

    Aws::IAM::Model::UpdateUserRequest request;
    request.SetUserName(currentUserName);
    request.SetNewUserName(newUserName);

    auto outcome = iam.UpdateUser(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "IAM user " << currentUserName <<
                  " successfully updated with new user name " << newUserName <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error updating user name for IAM user " << currentUserName <<
                  ":" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

AWS IoT examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with AWS IoT.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT.

SDK for C++

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS iot)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_iot")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
```

```
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you may
 need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_iot.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_iot.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/iot/IoTClient.h>
#include <aws/iot/model/ListThingsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello IoT" starter application which initializes an AWS IoT client and
 *  lists the AWS IoT topics in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_iot'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
```

```
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //  Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //  options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfig);
        // List the things in the current account.
        Aws::IoT::Model::ListThingsRequest listThingsRequest;

        Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
        Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingAttribute> allThings;

        do {
            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                listThingsRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            Aws::IoT::Model::ListThingsOutcome listThingsOutcome =
iotClient.ListThings(
                    listThingsRequest);
            if (listThingsOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingAttribute> &things =
listThingsOutcome.GetResult().GetThings();
                allThings.insert(allThings.end(), things.begin(), things.end());
                nextToken = listThingsOutcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "List things failed"
                          << listThingsOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << allThings.size() << " thing(s) found." << std::endl;
        for (auto const &thing: allThings) {
            std::cout << thing.GetThingName() << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
```

```
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS IoT Thing.
- Generate a device certificate.
- Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.
- Return a unique endpoint.
- List your AWS IoT certificates.
- Create an AWS IoT shadow.
- Write out state information.
- Creates a rule.
- List your rules.
- Search things using the Thing name.
- Delete an AWS IoT Thing.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an AWS IoT thing.

```
    Aws::String thingName = askQuestion("Enter a thing name: ");

    if (!createThing(thingName, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because createThing failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup("", "", "", "", "", false, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

```
//! Create an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingRequest createThingRequest;
    createThingRequest.SetThingName(thingName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.CreateThing(
            createThingRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Generate and attach a device certificate.

```
    Aws::String certificateARN;
    Aws::String certificateID;
    if (askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to create a certificate for your thing? (y/
n) ")) {
        Aws::String outputFolder;
        if (askYesNoQuestion(
                "Would you like to save the certificate and keys to file? (y/n) "))
 {
            outputFolder = std::filesystem::current_path();
            outputFolder += "/device_keys_and_certificates";

            std::filesystem::create_directories(outputFolder);

            std::cout << "The certificate and keys will be saved to the folder: "
                      << outputFolder << std::endl;
        }

        if (!createKeysAndCertificate(outputFolder, certificateARN, certificateID,
                                      clientConfiguration)) {
            std::cerr << "Exiting because createKeysAndCertificate failed."
                      << std::endl;
            cleanup(thingName, "", "", "", "", false, clientConfiguration);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "\nNext, the certificate will be attached to the thing.\n"
                  << std::endl;
        if (!attachThingPrincipal(certificateARN, thingName, clientConfiguration)) {
            std::cerr << "Exiting because attachThingPrincipal failed." <<
std::endl;
            cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "",
                    false,
                    clientConfiguration);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

```
//! Create keys and certificate for an Aws IoT device.
//! This routine will save certificates and keys to an output folder, if provided.
/*!
  \param outputFolder: Location for storing output in files, ignored when string is
 empty.
  \param certificateARNResult: A string to receive the ARN of the created
 certificate.
  \param certificateID: A string to receive the ID of the created certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createKeysAndCertificate(const Aws::String &outputFolder,
                                           Aws::String &certificateARNResult,
                                           Aws::String &certificateID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateRequest
 createKeysAndCertificateRequest;

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateKeysAndCertificate(createKeysAndCertificateRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created a certificate and keys" << std::endl;
        certificateARNResult = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn();
        certificateID = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateId();
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificateARNResult << ", certificate
 ID: "
                  << certificateID << std::endl;

        if (!outputFolder.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Writing certificate and keys to the folder '" <<
 outputFolder
                      << "'." << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Be sure these files are stored securely." << std::endl;

            Aws::String certificateFilePath = outputFolder + "/certificate.pem.crt";
            std::ofstream certificateFile(certificateFilePath);
            if (!certificateFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening certificate file, '" <<
 certificateFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
```

```
                return false;
            }
            certificateFile << outcome.GetResult().GetCertificatePem();
            certificateFile.close();

            const Aws::IoT::Model::KeyPair &keyPair =
 outcome.GetResult().GetKeyPair();

            Aws::String privateKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/private.pem.key";
            std::ofstream privateKeyFile(privateKeyFilePath);
            if (!privateKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening private key file, '" <<
 privateKeyFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            privateKeyFile << keyPair.GetPrivateKey();
            privateKeyFile.close();

            Aws::String publicKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/public.pem.key";
            std::ofstream publicKeyFile(publicKeyFilePath);
            if (!publicKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening public key file, '" << publicKeyFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            publicKeyFile << keyPair.GetPublicKey();
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating keys and certificate: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Attach a principal to an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to attach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
```

```
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::attachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalRequest request;
    request.SetPrincipal(principal);
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 client.AttachThingPrincipal(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully attached principal to thing." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to attach principal to thing." <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Perform various operations on the AWS IoT thing.

```
    if (!updateThing(thingName, { {"location", "Office"}, {"firmwareVersion",
 "v2.0"} }, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because updateThing failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now an endpoint will be retrieved for your account.\n" <<
 std::endl;
    std::cout << "An IoT Endpoint refers to a specific URL or Uniform Resource
 Locator that serves as the entry point\n"
    << "for communication between IoT devices and the AWS IoT service." <<
 std::endl;
```

```
    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

    Aws::String endpoint;
    if (!describeEndpoint(endpoint, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because getEndpoint failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
    std::cout <<"Your endpoint is " << endpoint << "." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now the certificates in your account will be listed." <<
 std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

    if (!listCertificates(clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because listCertificates failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now the shadow for the thing will be updated.\n" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "A thing shadow refers to a feature that enables you to create a
 virtual representation, or \"shadow,\"\n"
    << "of a physical device or thing. The thing shadow allows you to synchronize
 and control the state of a device between\n"
    << "the cloud and the device itself. and the AWS IoT service. For example, you
 can write and retrieve JSON data from a thing shadow." << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

    if (!updateThingShadow(thingName, R"({"state":{"reported":
{"temperature":25,"humidity":50}}})", clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because updateThingShadow failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
```

```
   std::cout << "Now, the state information for the shadow will be retrieved.\n" <<
std::endl;
   askQuestion("Press Enter to continue:", alwaysTrueTest);

   Aws::String shadowState;
   if (!getThingShadow(thingName, shadowState, clientConfiguration)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because getThingShadow failed." << std::endl;
       cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
               clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }
   std::cout << "The retrieved shadow state is: " << shadowState << std::endl;

   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "A rule with now be added to to the thing.\n" << std::endl;
   std::cout << "Any user who has permission to create rules will be able to access
data processed by the rule." << std::endl;
   std::cout << "In this case, the rule will use an Simple Notification Service
(SNS) topic and an IAM rule." << std::endl;
   std::cout << "These resources will be created using a CloudFormation template."
<< std::endl;
   std::cout << "Stack creation may take a few minutes." << std::endl;

   askQuestion("Press Enter to continue: ", alwaysTrueTest);
   Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> outputs
=createCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME,clientConfiguration);
   if (outputs.empty()) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because createCloudFormationStack failed." <<
std::endl;
       cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, "", "", false,
               clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   // Retrieve the topic ARN and role ARN from the CloudFormation stack outputs.
   auto topicArnIter = outputs.find(SNS_TOPIC_ARN_OUTPUT);
   auto roleArnIter = outputs.find(ROLE_ARN_OUTPUT);
   if ((topicArnIter == outputs.end()) || (roleArnIter == outputs.end())) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because output '" << SNS_TOPIC_ARN_OUTPUT <<
       "' or '" << ROLE_ARN_OUTPUT << "'not found in the CloudFormation stack."  <<
std::endl;
       cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, "",
```

```
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String topicArn = topicArnIter->second;
    Aws::String roleArn = roleArnIter->second;
    Aws::String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM '";
    sqlStatement += MQTT_MESSAGE_TOPIC_FILTER;
    sqlStatement += "'";

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now a rule will be created.\n" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "Rules are an administrator-level action. Any user who has
 permission\n"
                << "to create rules will be able to access data processed by the
 rule." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "In this case, the rule will use an SNS topic" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "and the following SQL statement '" << sqlStatement << "'." <<
 std::endl;
    std::cout << "For more information on IoT SQL, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
iot/latest/developerguide/iot-sql-reference.html" << std::endl;
    Aws::String ruleName = askQuestion("Enter a rule name: ");
    if (!createTopicRule(ruleName, topicArn, sqlStatement, roleArn,
 clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because createRule failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, "",
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now your rules will be listed.\n" << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press Enter to continue: ", alwaysTrueTest);
    if (!listTopicRules(clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because listRules failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, ruleName,
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
```

```
    printAsterisksLine();
    Aws::String queryString = "thingName:" + thingName;
    std::cout << "Now the AWS IoT fleet index will be queried with the query\n'"
    << queryString << "'.\n" << std::endl;
    std::cout << "For query information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/
developerguide/query-syntax.html" << std::endl;

    std::cout << "For this query to work, thing indexing must be enabled in your
 account.\n"
    << "This can be done with the awscli command line by calling 'aws iot update-
indexing-configuration'\n"
       << "or it can be done programmatically." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/
developerguide/managing-index.html" << std::endl;
    if (askYesNoQuestion("Do you want to enable thing indexing in your account? (y/
n) "))
    {
        Aws::IoT::Model::ThingIndexingConfiguration thingIndexingConfiguration;

 thingIndexingConfiguration.SetThingIndexingMode(Aws::IoT::Model::ThingIndexingMode::REGISTR

 thingIndexingConfiguration.SetThingConnectivityIndexingMode(Aws::IoT::Model::ThingConnectiv
        // The ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration object is ignored if not set.
        Aws::IoT::Model::ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration
 thingGroupIndexingConfiguration;
        if (!updateIndexingConfiguration(thingIndexingConfiguration,
 thingGroupIndexingConfiguration, clientConfiguration)) {
            std::cerr << "Exiting because updateIndexingConfiguration failed." <<
 std::endl;
            cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME,
                    ruleName, false,
                    clientConfiguration);
            return false;
        }
    }

    if (!searchIndex(queryString, clientConfiguration)) {

        std::cerr << "Exiting because searchIndex failed." << std::endl;
        cleanup(thingName, certificateARN, certificateID, STACK_NAME, ruleName,
                false,
                clientConfiguration);
        return false;
```

```
    }
```

```
//! Update an AWS IoT thing with attributes.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param attributeMap: A map of key/value attributes/
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const std::map<Aws::String, Aws::String>
 &attributeMap,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttributePayload attributePayload;
    for (const auto &attribute: attributeMap) {
        attributePayload.AddAttributes(attribute.first, attribute.second);
    }
    request.SetAttributePayload(attributePayload);

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.UpdateThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to update thing " << thingName << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Describe the endpoint specific to the AWS account making the call.
/*!
  \param endpointResult: String to receive the endpoint result.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::describeEndpoint(Aws::String &endpointResult,
```

```
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String endpoint;
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointRequest describeEndpointRequest;
    describeEndpointRequest.SetEndpointType(
            "iot:Data-ATS"); // Recommended endpoint type.

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointOutcome outcome = iotClient.DescribeEndpoint(
            describeEndpointRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully described endpoint." << std::endl;
        endpointResult = outcome.GetResult().GetEndpointAddress();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error describing endpoint" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! List certificates registered in the AWS account making the call.
/*!
   \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::listCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesRequest request;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::Certificate> allCertificates;
    Aws::String marker; // Used to paginate results.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.ListCertificates(
                request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
            allCertificates.insert(allCertificates.end(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().begin(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().end());
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << allCertificates.size() << " certificate(s) found." << std::endl;

    for (auto &certificate: allCertificates) {
        std::cout << "Certificate ID: " << certificate.GetCertificateId() <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificate.GetCertificateArn()
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}

//! Update the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param document: The state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                    const Aws::String &document,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient iotDataPlaneClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest;
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    std::shared_ptr<std::stringstream> streamBuf =
 std::make_shared<std::stringstream>(
            document);
```

```
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetBody(streamBuf);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowOutcome outcome =
 iotDataPlaneClient.UpdateThingShadow(
            updateThingShadowRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing shadow." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while updating thing shadow."
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Get the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param documentResult: String to receive the state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::getThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                 Aws::String &documentResult,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::GetThingShadowRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    auto outcome = iotClient.GetThingShadow(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::stringstream ss;
        ss << outcome.GetResult().GetPayload().rdbuf();
        documentResult = ss.str();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting thing shadow: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Create an AWS IoT rule with an SNS topic as the target.
```

```
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param snsTopic: The SNS topic ARN for the action.
  \param sql: The SQL statement used to query the topic.
  \param roleARN: The IAM role ARN for the action.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::IoT::createTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                             const Aws::String &snsTopicARN, const Aws::String &sql,
                             const Aws::String &roleARN,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SnsAction snsAction;
    snsAction.SetTargetArn(snsTopicARN);
    snsAction.SetRoleArn(roleARN);

    Aws::IoT::Model::Action action;
    action.SetSns(snsAction);

    Aws::IoT::Model::TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload;
    topicRulePayload.SetSql(sql);
    topicRulePayload.SetActions({action});

    request.SetTopicRulePayload(topicRulePayload);
    auto outcome = iotClient.CreateTopicRule(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created topic rule " << ruleName << "." <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating topic rule " << ruleName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Lists the AWS IoT topic rules.
```

```
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::listTopicRules(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::ListTopicRulesRequest request;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::TopicRuleListItem> allRules;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::ListTopicRulesOutcome outcome = iotClient.ListTopicRules(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::ListTopicRulesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            allRules.insert(allRules.end(),
                            result.GetRules().cbegin(),
                            result.GetRules().cend());

            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "ListTopicRules error: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << "ListTopicRules: " << allRules.size() << " rule(s) found."
              << std::endl;
    for (auto &rule: allRules) {
        std::cout << "  Rule name: " << rule.GetRuleName() << ", rule ARN: "
                  << rule.GetRuleArn() << "." << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
```

```
}

//! Query the AWS IoT fleet index.
//! For query information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/
developerguide/query-syntax.html
/*!
  \param: query: The query string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::searchIndex(const Aws::String &query,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexRequest request;
    request.SetQueryString(query);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingDocument> allThingDocuments;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.SearchIndex(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexResult &result = outcome.GetResult();
            allThingDocuments.insert(allThingDocuments.end(),
                                     result.GetThings().cbegin(),
                                     result.GetThings().cend());
            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error in SearchIndex: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());
```

```
    std::cout << allThingDocuments.size() << " thing document(s) found." <<
 std::endl;
    for (const auto thingDocument: allThingDocuments) {
        std::cout << "  Thing name: " << thingDocument.GetThingName() << "."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return true;
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
bool
AwsDoc::IoT::cleanup(const Aws::String &thingName, const Aws::String
 &certificateARN,
                     const Aws::String &certificateID, const Aws::String &stackName,
                     const Aws::String &ruleName, bool askForConfirmation,
                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    bool result = true;

    if (!ruleName.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                              askYesNoQuestion("Delete the rule '" + ruleName +
                                               "'? (y/n) "))) {
        result &= deleteTopicRule(ruleName, clientConfiguration);
    }

    Aws::CloudFormation::CloudFormationClient
 cloudFormationClient(clientConfiguration);

    if (!stackName.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                              askYesNoQuestion(
                                      "Delete the CloudFormation stack '" +
 stackName +
                                      "'? (y/n) "))) {
        result &= deleteStack(stackName, clientConfiguration);
    }

    if (!certificateARN.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                                    askYesNoQuestion("Delete the certificate '" +
                                                     certificateARN + "'? (y/n) ")))
 {
        result &= detachThingPrincipal(certificateARN, thingName,
 clientConfiguration);
```

```
        result &= deleteCertificate(certificateID, clientConfiguration);
    }

    if (!thingName.empty() && (!askForConfirmation ||
                               askYesNoQuestion("Delete the thing '" + thingName +
                                                "'? (y/n) "))) {
        result &= deleteThing(thingName, clientConfiguration);
    }

    return result;
}
```

```
//! Detach a principal from an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to detach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::detachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalRequest detachThingPrincipalRequest;
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetPrincipal(principal);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DetachThingPrincipal(
            detachThingPrincipalRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully detached principal " << principal << " from thing
 "
                  << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to detach principal " << principal << " from thing "
                  << thingName << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Delete a certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateID: The ID of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateId(certificateID);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateOutcome outcome = iotClient.DeleteCertificate(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted certificate " << certificateID <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting certificate " << certificateID << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Delete an AWS IoT rule.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleOutcome outcome = iotClient.DeleteTopicRule(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted rule " << ruleName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete rule " << ruleName <<
                  ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Delete an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    const auto outcome = iotClient.DeleteThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Actions

`AttachThingPrincipal`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachThingPrincipal`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Attach a principal to an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to attach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::attachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalRequest request;
    request.SetPrincipal(principal);
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 client.AttachThingPrincipal(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully attached principal to thing." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to attach principal to thing." <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateKeysAndCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeysAndCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create keys and certificate for an Aws IoT device.
//! This routine will save certificates and keys to an output folder, if provided.
/*!
  \param outputFolder: Location for storing output in files, ignored when string is
 empty.
  \param certificateARNResult: A string to receive the ARN of the created
 certificate.
  \param certificateID: A string to receive the ID of the created certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createKeysAndCertificate(const Aws::String &outputFolder,
                                           Aws::String &certificateARNResult,
                                           Aws::String &certificateID,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateRequest
 createKeysAndCertificateRequest;

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateKeysAndCertificateOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateKeysAndCertificate(createKeysAndCertificateRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created a certificate and keys" << std::endl;
        certificateARNResult = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateArn();
        certificateID = outcome.GetResult().GetCertificateId();
```

```
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificateARNResult << ", certificate
ID: "
                  << certificateID << std::endl;

        if (!outputFolder.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Writing certificate and keys to the folder '" <<
outputFolder
                      << "'." << std::endl;
            std::cout << "Be sure these files are stored securely." << std::endl;

            Aws::String certificateFilePath = outputFolder + "/certificate.pem.crt";
            std::ofstream certificateFile(certificateFilePath);
            if (!certificateFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening certificate file, '" <<
certificateFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            certificateFile << outcome.GetResult().GetCertificatePem();
            certificateFile.close();

            const Aws::IoT::Model::KeyPair &keyPair =
outcome.GetResult().GetKeyPair();

            Aws::String privateKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/private.pem.key";
            std::ofstream privateKeyFile(privateKeyFilePath);
            if (!privateKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening private key file, '" <<
privateKeyFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
            privateKeyFile << keyPair.GetPrivateKey();
            privateKeyFile.close();

            Aws::String publicKeyFilePath = outputFolder + "/public.pem.key";
            std::ofstream publicKeyFile(publicKeyFilePath);
            if (!publicKeyFile.is_open()) {
                std::cerr << "Error opening public key file, '" << publicKeyFilePath
                          << "'."
                          << std::endl;
                return false;
```

```
            }
            publicKeyFile << keyPair.GetPublicKey();
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating keys and certificate: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateThing`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateThing`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::createThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingRequest createThingRequest;
    createThingRequest.SetThingName(thingName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.CreateThing(
            createThingRequest);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to create thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateTopicRule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopicRule`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an AWS IoT rule with an SNS topic as the target.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param snsTopic: The SNS topic ARN for the action.
  \param sql: The SQL statement used to query the topic.
  \param roleARN: The IAM role ARN for the action.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::IoT::createTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                             const Aws::String &snsTopicARN, const Aws::String &sql,
                             const Aws::String &roleARN,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::IoT::Model::CreateTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SnsAction snsAction;
    snsAction.SetTargetArn(snsTopicARN);
    snsAction.SetRoleArn(roleARN);

    Aws::IoT::Model::Action action;
    action.SetSns(snsAction);

    Aws::IoT::Model::TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload;
    topicRulePayload.SetSql(sql);
    topicRulePayload.SetActions({action});

    request.SetTopicRulePayload(topicRulePayload);
    auto outcome = iotClient.CreateTopicRule(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created topic rule " << ruleName << "." <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating topic rule " << ruleName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete a certificate.
/*!
  \param certificateID: The ID of a certificate.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteCertificate(const Aws::String &certificateID,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateRequest request;
    request.SetCertificateId(certificateID);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteCertificateOutcome outcome = iotClient.DeleteCertificate(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted certificate " << certificateID <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting certificate " << certificateID << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteThing`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteThing`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    const auto outcome = iotClient.DeleteThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteTopicRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopicRule`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an AWS IoT rule.
/*!
  \param ruleName: The name for the rule.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::deleteTopicRule(const Aws::String &ruleName,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleRequest request;
    request.SetRuleName(ruleName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DeleteTopicRuleOutcome outcome = iotClient.DeleteTopicRule(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted rule " << ruleName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to delete rule " << ruleName <<
                  ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopicRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeEndpoint`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe the endpoint specific to the AWS account making the call.
/*!
  \param endpointResult: String to receive the endpoint result.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::describeEndpoint(Aws::String &endpointResult,
                                   const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String endpoint;
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointRequest describeEndpointRequest;
    describeEndpointRequest.SetEndpointType(
            "iot:Data-ATS"); // Recommended endpoint type.

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeEndpointOutcome outcome = iotClient.DescribeEndpoint(
            describeEndpointRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully described endpoint." << std::endl;
        endpointResult = outcome.GetResult().GetEndpointAddress();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error describing endpoint" << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeThing`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeThing`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Describe an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::describeThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeThingOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DescribeThing(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::IoT::Model::DescribeThingResult &result = outcome.GetResult();
        std::cout << "Retrieved thing '" << result.GetThingName() << "'" <<
 std::endl;
        std::cout << "thingArn: " << result.GetThingArn() << std::endl;
        std::cout << result.GetAttributes().size() << " attribute(s) retrieved"
                  << std::endl;
        for (const auto &attribute: result.GetAttributes()) {
            std::cout << "  attribute: " << attribute.first << "=" <<
 attribute.second
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Error describing thing " << thingName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DetachThingPrincipal`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachThingPrincipal`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Detach a principal from an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param principal: A principal to detach.
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::detachThingPrincipal(const Aws::String &principal,
                                       const Aws::String &thingName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalRequest detachThingPrincipalRequest;
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    detachThingPrincipalRequest.SetPrincipal(principal);

    Aws::IoT::Model::DetachThingPrincipalOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.DetachThingPrincipal(
            detachThingPrincipalRequest);
```

```
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully detached principal " << principal << " from thing
 "
                  << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to detach principal " << principal << " from thing "
                  << thingName << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List certificates registered in the AWS account making the call.
/*!
   \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::listCertificates(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesRequest request;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::Certificate> allCertificates;
```

```
    Aws::String marker; // Used to paginate results.
    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesOutcome outcome =
iotClient.ListCertificates(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::ListCertificatesResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
            allCertificates.insert(allCertificates.end(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().begin(),
                                   result.GetCertificates().end());
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << allCertificates.size() << " certificate(s) found." << std::endl;

    for (auto &certificate: allCertificates) {
        std::cout << "Certificate ID: " << certificate.GetCertificateId() <<
std::endl;
        std::cout << "Certificate ARN: " << certificate.GetCertificateArn()
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`SearchIndex`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchIndex`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Query the AWS IoT fleet index.
//! For query information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/iot/latest/
developerguide/query-syntax.html
/*!
  \param: query: The query string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::searchIndex(const Aws::String &query,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexRequest request;
    request.SetQueryString(query);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::IoT::Model::ThingDocument> allThingDocuments;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.SearchIndex(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::IoT::Model::SearchIndexResult &result = outcome.GetResult();
            allThingDocuments.insert(allThingDocuments.end(),
                                     result.GetThings().cbegin(),
                                     result.GetThings().cend());
            nextToken = result.GetNextToken();

        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error in SearchIndex: " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allThingDocuments.size() << " thing document(s) found." <<
 std::endl;
    for (const auto thingDocument: allThingDocuments) {
        std::cout << "  Thing name: " << thingDocument.GetThingName() << "."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateIndexingConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateIndexingConfiguration`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update the indexing configuration.
/*!
  \param thingIndexingConfiguration: A ThingIndexingConfiguration object which is
 ignored if not set.
  \param thingGroupIndexingConfiguration: A ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration object
 which is ignored if not set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateIndexingConfiguration(
```

```
        const Aws::IoT::Model::ThingIndexingConfiguration
 &thingIndexingConfiguration,
        const Aws::IoT::Model::ThingGroupIndexingConfiguration
 &thingGroupIndexingConfiguration,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateIndexingConfigurationRequest request;

    if (thingIndexingConfiguration.ThingIndexingModeHasBeenSet()) {
        request.SetThingIndexingConfiguration(thingIndexingConfiguration);
    }

    if (thingGroupIndexingConfiguration.ThingGroupIndexingModeHasBeenSet()) {
        request.SetThingGroupIndexingConfiguration(thingGroupIndexingConfiguration);
    }

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateIndexingConfigurationOutcome outcome =
 iotClient.UpdateIndexingConfiguration(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "UpdateIndexingConfiguration succeeded." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "UpdateIndexingConfiguration failed."
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateIndexingConfiguration in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

UpdateThing

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateThing`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an AWS IoT thing with attributes.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param attributeMap: A map of key/value attributes/
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThing(const Aws::String &thingName,
                              const std::map<Aws::String, Aws::String>
 &attributeMap,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoT::IoTClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    Aws::IoT::Model::AttributePayload attributePayload;
    for (const auto &attribute: attributeMap) {
        attributePayload.AddAttributes(attribute.first, attribute.second);
    }
    request.SetAttributePayload(attributePayload);

    Aws::IoT::Model::UpdateThingOutcome outcome = iotClient.UpdateThing(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing " << thingName << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed to update thing " << thingName << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

AWS IoT data examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with AWS IoT data.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetThingShadow`

The following code example shows how to use `GetThingShadow`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param documentResult: String to receive the state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::getThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
                                 Aws::String &documentResult,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient iotClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::GetThingShadowRequest request;
    request.SetThingName(thingName);
    auto outcome = iotClient.GetThingShadow(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::stringstream ss;
        ss << outcome.GetResult().GetPayload().rdbuf();
        documentResult = ss.str();
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting thing shadow: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateThingShadow`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateThingShadow`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update the shadow of an AWS IoT thing.
/*!
  \param thingName: The name for the thing.
  \param document: The state information, in JSON format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::IoT::updateThingShadow(const Aws::String &thingName,
```

```
                                    const Aws::String &document,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::IoTDataPlaneClient iotDataPlaneClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest;
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetThingName(thingName);
    std::shared_ptr<std::stringstream> streamBuf =
 std::make_shared<std::stringstream>(
            document);
    updateThingShadowRequest.SetBody(streamBuf);
    Aws::IoTDataPlane::Model::UpdateThingShadowOutcome outcome =
 iotDataPlaneClient.UpdateThingShadow(
            updateThingShadowRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated thing shadow." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while updating thing shadow."
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS lambda)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_lambda")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
```

```
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
                                    # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_lambda.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_lambda.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/lambda/LambdaClient.h>
#include <aws/lambda/model/ListFunctionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Lambda" starter application which initializes an AWS Lambda (Lambda)
 client and lists the Lambda functions.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_lambda'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
```

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient lambdaClient(clientConfig);
        std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
        Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.

        do {
            Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
            if (!marker.empty()) {
                request.SetMarker(marker);
            }

            Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome =
lambdaClient.ListFunctions(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult &listFunctionsResult =
outcome.GetResult();
                std::cout << listFunctionsResult.GetFunctions().size()
                          << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;

                for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: listFunctionsResult.GetFunctions()) {
                    functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                    std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                              << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() <<
std::endl;
                    std::cout << "   "
                              <<
Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                      functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                              << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                              << std::endl;
                }
                marker = listFunctionsResult.GetNextMarker();
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = 1;
                break;
```

```
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get started with functions scenario.
/*!
 \param clientConfig: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Lambda::getStartedWithFunctionsScenario(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

    // 1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role for Lambda
 function.
    Aws::String roleArn;
    if (!getIamRoleArn(roleArn, clientConfig)) {
        return false;
    }

    // 2. Create a Lambda function.
    int seconds = 0;
    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetDescription(LAMBDA_DESCRIPTION); // Optional.
#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::provided_al2);
        request.SetTimeout(15);
        request.SetMemorySize(128);

        // Assume the AWS Lambda function was built in Docker with same architecture
        // as this code.
#if  defined(__x86_64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::x86_64});
#elif defined(__aarch64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::arm64});
#else
#error "Unimplemented architecture"
#endif // defined(architecture)
#else
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::python3_9);
#endif
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetHandler(LAMBDA_HANDLER_NAME);
        request.SetPublish(true);
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionCode code;
        std::ifstream ifstream(INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();

        code.SetZipFile(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
 buffer.str().c_str(),
                                                buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetCode(code);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionOutcome outcome = client.CreateFunction(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda function was successfully created. " << seconds
                      << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            break;
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::INVALID_PARAMETER_VALUE &&
                 outcome.GetError().GetMessage().find("role") >= 0) {
            if ((seconds % 5) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                std::cout
                        << "Waiting for the IAM role to become available as a
 CreateFunction parameter. "
                        << seconds
                        << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;

                std::cout << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
```

```
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CreateFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
        ++seconds;
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
    } while (60 > seconds);

    std::cout << "The current Lambda function increments 1 by an input." <<
std::endl;

    // 3.  Invoke the Lambda function.
    {
        int increment = askQuestionForInt("Enter an increment integer: ");

        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeResult invokeResult;
        Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonPayload;
        jsonPayload.WithString("action", "increment");
        jsonPayload.WithInteger("number", increment);
        if (invokeLambdaFunction(jsonPayload, Aws::Lambda::Model::LogType::Tail,
                                 invokeResult, client)) {
            Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(invokeResult.GetPayload());
            Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> values =
                    jsonValue.View().GetAllObjects();
            auto iter = values.find("result");
            if (iter != values.end() && iter->second.IsIntegerType()) {
                {
                    std::cout << INCREMENT_RESUlT_PREFIX
                              << iter->second.AsInteger() << std::endl;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "There was an error in execution. Here is the log."
                          << std::endl;
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer buffer =
Aws::Utils::HashingUtils::Base64Decode(
                        invokeResult.GetLogResult());
                std::cout << "With log " << buffer.GetUnderlyingData() << std::endl;
            }
```

```
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "The Lambda function will now be updated with new code. Press return
 to continue, ";
    Aws::String answer;
    std::getline(std::cin, answer);

    // 4.  Update the Lambda function code.
    {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        std::ifstream ifstream(CALCULATOR_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteLambdaFunction(client);
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();
        request.SetZipFile(
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *) buffer.str().c_str(),
                                       buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetPublish(true);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeOutcome outcome =
 client.UpdateFunctionCode(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda code was successfully updated." << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "This function uses an environment variable to control the logging
level."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "UpdateFunctionConfiguration will be used to set the LOG_LEVEL to
DEBUG."
            << std::endl;
    seconds = 0;

    // 5.  Update the Lambda function configuration.
    do {
        ++seconds;
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::Environment environment;
        environment.AddVariables("LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG");
        request.SetEnvironment(environment);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutcome outcome =
client.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda configuration was successfully updated."
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }

            // RESOURCE_IN_USE: function code update not completed.
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
                 Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::RESOURCE_IN_USE) {
            if ((seconds % 10) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                std::cout << "Lambda function update in progress . After " <<
seconds
                          << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
```

```
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionConfiguration. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

    } while (0 < seconds);

    if (0 > seconds) {
        std::cerr << "Function failed to become active." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Updated function active after " << seconds << " seconds."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    std::cout
            << "\nThe new code applies an arithmetic operator to two variables, x an
y."
            << std::endl;
    std::vector<Aws::String> operators = {"plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"};
    for (size_t i = 0; i < operators.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << " " << operators[i] << std::endl;
    }

    // 6.  Invoke the updated Lambda function.
    do {
        int operatorIndex = askQuestionForIntRange("Select an operator index 1 - 4
", 1,
                                                   4);
        int x = askQuestionForInt("Enter an integer for the x value ");
        int y = askQuestionForInt("Enter an integer for the y value ");

        Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue calculateJsonPayload;
        calculateJsonPayload.WithString("action", operators[operatorIndex - 1]);
        calculateJsonPayload.WithInteger("x", x);
        calculateJsonPayload.WithInteger("y", y);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeResult calculatedResult;
        if (invokeLambdaFunction(calculateJsonPayload,
                                 Aws::Lambda::Model::LogType::Tail,
                                 calculatedResult, client)) {
            Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(calculatedResult.GetPayload());
```

```
            Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::Utils::Json::JsonView> values =
                    jsonValue.View().GetAllObjects();
            auto iter = values.find("result");
            if (iter != values.end() && iter->second.IsIntegerType()) {
                std::cout << ARITHMETIC_RESUlT_PREFIX << x << " "
                          << operators[operatorIndex - 1] << " "
                          << y << " is " << iter->second.AsInteger() << std::endl;
            }
            else if (iter != values.end() && iter->second.IsFloatingPointType()) {
                std::cout << ARITHMETIC_RESUlT_PREFIX << x << " "
                          << operators[operatorIndex - 1] << " "
                          << y << " is " << iter->second.AsDouble() << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cout << "There was an error in execution. Here is the log."
                          << std::endl;
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer buffer =
Aws::Utils::HashingUtils::Base64Decode(
                        calculatedResult.GetLogResult());
                std::cout << "With log " << buffer.GetUnderlyingData() << std::endl;
            }
        }

        answer = askQuestion("Would you like to try another operation? (y/n) ");
    } while (answer == "y");

    std::cout
            << "A list of the lambda functions will be retrieved. Press return to
continue, ";
    std::getline(std::cin, answer);

    // 7.  List the Lambda functions.

    std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
    Aws::String marker;

    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome = client.ListFunctions(
                request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
            std::cout << result.GetFunctions().size()
                      << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;

            for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: result.GetFunctions()) {
                functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() << std::endl;
                std::cout << "   "
                          << Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                  functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                          << std::endl;
            }
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    // 8.  Get a Lambda function.
    if (!functions.empty()) {
        std::stringstream question;
        question << "Choose a function to retrieve between 1 and " <<
functions.size()
                 << " ";
        int functionIndex = askQuestionForIntRange(question.str(), 1,

static_cast<int>(functions.size()));

        Aws::String functionName = functions[functionIndex - 1];

        Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(functionName);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionOutcome outcome =
client.GetFunction(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Function retrieve.\n" <<

 outcome.GetResult().GetConfiguration().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::GetFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "The resources will be deleted. Press return to continue, ";
    std::getline(std::cin, answer);

    // 9.  Delete the Lambda function.
    bool result = deleteLambdaFunction(client);

    // 10. Delete the IAM role.
    return result && deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
}

//! Routine which invokes a Lambda function and returns the result.
/*!
 \param jsonPayload: Payload for invoke function.
 \param logType: Log type setting for invoke function.
 \param invokeResult: InvokeResult object to receive the result.
 \param client: Lambda client.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::Lambda::invokeLambdaFunction(const Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue &jsonPayload,
                                     Aws::Lambda::Model::LogType logType,
                                     Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeResult &invokeResult,
                                     const Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient &client) {
    int seconds = 0;
    bool result = false;
    /*
     * In this example, the Invoke function can be called before recently created
 resources are
     * available.  The Invoke function is called repeatedly until the resources are
     * available.
```

```
     */
    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetLogType(logType);
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> payload = Aws::MakeShared<Aws::StringStream>(
                "FunctionTest");
        *payload << jsonPayload.View().WriteReadable();
        request.SetBody(payload);
        request.SetContentType("application/json");
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeOutcome outcome = client.Invoke(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            invokeResult = std::move(outcome.GetResult());
            result = true;
            break;
        }

            // ACCESS_DENIED: because the role is not available yet.
            // RESOURCE_CONFLICT: because the Lambda function is being created or
updated.
        else if ((outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                  Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::ACCESS_DENIED) ||
                 (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                  Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::RESOURCE_CONFLICT)) {
            if ((seconds % 5) == 0) { // Log status every 10 seconds.
                std::cout << "Waiting for the invoke api to be available, status "
<<
                          ((outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                            Aws::Lambda::LambdaErrors::ACCESS_DENIED ?
                            "ACCESS_DENIED" : "RESOURCE_CONFLICT")) << ". " <<
seconds
                          << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::InvokeRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }
        ++seconds;
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
    } while (seconds < 60);
```

```
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
 (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetDescription(LAMBDA_DESCRIPTION); // Optional.
#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
```

```
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::provided_al2);
        request.SetTimeout(15);
        request.SetMemorySize(128);

        // Assume the AWS Lambda function was built in Docker with same architecture
        // as this code.
#if  defined(__x86_64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::x86_64});
#elif defined(__aarch64__)
        request.SetArchitectures({Aws::Lambda::Model::Architecture::arm64});
#else
#error "Unimplemented architecture"
#endif // defined(architecture)
#else
        request.SetRuntime(Aws::Lambda::Model::Runtime::python3_9);
#endif
        request.SetRole(roleArn);
        request.SetHandler(LAMBDA_HANDLER_NAME);
        request.SetPublish(true);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionCode code;
        std::ifstream ifstream(INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();

        code.SetZipFile(Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *)
 buffer.str().c_str(),
                                               buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetCode(code);
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::CreateFunctionOutcome outcome = client.CreateFunction(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda function was successfully created. " << seconds
                      << " seconds elapsed." << std::endl;
            break;
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with CreateFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::Lambda::Model::DeleteFunctionRequest request;
    request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
```

```
    Aws::Lambda::Model::DeleteFunctionOutcome outcome = client.DeleteFunction(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The lambda function was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::DeleteFunction. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(functionName);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::GetFunctionOutcome outcome =
client.GetFunction(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Function retrieve.\n" <<

outcome.GetResult().GetConfiguration().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::GetFunction. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Invoke

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        request.SetLogType(logType);
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> payload = Aws::MakeShared<Aws::StringStream>(
                "FunctionTest");
        *payload << jsonPayload.View().WriteReadable();
        request.SetBody(payload);
```

```
        request.SetContentType("application/json");
        Aws::Lambda::Model::InvokeOutcome outcome = client.Invoke(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            invokeResult = std::move(outcome.GetResult());
            result = true;
            break;
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::InvokeRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

    std::vector<Aws::String> functions;
    Aws::String marker;
```

```
    do {
        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsRequest request;
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsOutcome outcome = client.ListFunctions(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Lambda::Model::ListFunctionsResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
            std::cout << result.GetFunctions().size()
                      << " lambda functions were retrieved." << std::endl;

            for (const Aws::Lambda::Model::FunctionConfiguration
&functionConfiguration: result.GetFunctions()) {
                functions.push_back(functionConfiguration.GetFunctionName());
                std::cout << functions.size() << "  "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetDescription() << std::endl;
                std::cout << "   "
                          << Aws::Lambda::Model::RuntimeMapper::GetNameForRuntime(
                                  functionConfiguration.GetRuntime()) << ": "
                          << functionConfiguration.GetHandler()
                          << std::endl;
            }
            marker = result.GetNextMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::ListFunctions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
 (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        std::ifstream ifstream(CALCULATOR_LAMBDA_CODE.c_str(),
                               std::ios_base::in | std::ios_base::binary);
        if (!ifstream.is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error opening file " << INCREMENT_LAMBDA_CODE << "." <<
 std::endl;

#if USE_CPP_LAMBDA_FUNCTION
            std::cerr
                    << "The cpp Lambda function must be built following the
 instructions in the cpp_lambda/README.md file. "
                    << std::endl;
#endif
            deleteLambdaFunction(client);
            deleteIamRole(clientConfig);
            return false;
        }

        Aws::StringStream buffer;
        buffer << ifstream.rdbuf();
        request.SetZipFile(
                Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer((unsigned char *) buffer.str().c_str(),
                                       buffer.str().length()));
        request.SetPublish(true);
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionCodeOutcome outcome =
client.UpdateFunctionCode(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda code was successfully updated." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionCode. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region in which the bucket was created
(overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::Lambda::LambdaClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest request;
        request.SetFunctionName(LAMBDA_NAME);
        Aws::Lambda::Model::Environment environment;
        environment.AddVariables("LOG_LEVEL", "DEBUG");
        request.SetEnvironment(environment);
```

```
        Aws::Lambda::Model::UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutcome outcome =
client.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The lambda configuration was successfully updated."
                      << std::endl;
            break;
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with Lambda::UpdateFunctionConfiguration. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

MediaConvert examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with MediaConvert.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an AWS Elemental MediaConvert job.
/*!
  \param mediaConvertRole: An Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the AWS Identity and
                           Access Management (IAM) role for the job.
  \param fileInput: A URI to an input file that is stored in Amazon Simple Storage
 Service
                    (Amazon S3) or on an HTTP(S) server.
  \param fileOutput: A URI for an Amazon S3 output location and the output file name
 base.
```

```
  \param jobSettingsFile: An optional JSON settings file.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */

bool AwsDoc::MediaConvert::createJob(const Aws::String &mediaConvertRole,
                                     const Aws::String &fileInput,
                                     const Aws::String &fileOutput,
                                     const Aws::String &jobSettingsFile,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::MediaConvert::Model::CreateJobRequest createJobRequest;

    createJobRequest.SetRole(mediaConvertRole);
    Aws::Http::HeaderValueCollection hvc;
    hvc.emplace("Customer", "Amazon");
    createJobRequest.SetUserMetadata(hvc);

    if (!jobSettingsFile.empty()) // Use a JSON file for the job settings.
    {
        std::ifstream jobSettingsStream(jobSettingsFile, std::ios::ate);
        if (!jobSettingsStream) {
            std::cerr << "Unable to open the job template file." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        std::vector<char> buffer(jobSettingsStream.tellg());
        jobSettingsStream.seekg(0);
        jobSettingsStream.read(buffer.data(), buffer.size());
        std::string jobSettingsJSON(buffer.data(), buffer.size());
        size_t pos = jobSettingsJSON.find(INPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER);
        if (pos != std::string::npos) {
            jobSettingsJSON.replace(pos, strlen(INPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER), fileInput);
        }

        pos = jobSettingsJSON.find(OUTPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER);
        if (pos != std::string::npos) {
            jobSettingsJSON.replace(pos, strlen(OUTPUT_FILE_PLACEHOLDER),
 fileOutput);
        }
        Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue jsonValue(jobSettingsJSON);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::JobSettings jobSettings(jsonValue);

        createJobRequest.SetSettings(jobSettings);
    }
```

```
    else { // Configure the job settings programmatically.
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::JobSettings jobSettings;
        jobSettings.SetAdAvailOffset(0);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::TimecodeConfig timecodeConfig;

timecodeConfig.SetSource(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::TimecodeSource::EMBEDDED);
        jobSettings.SetTimecodeConfig(timecodeConfig);

        // Configure the output group.
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::OutputGroup outputGroup;
        outputGroup.SetName("File Group");
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::OutputGroupSettings outputGroupSettings;
        outputGroupSettings.SetType(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::OutputGroupType::FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::FileGroupSettings fileGroupSettings;
        fileGroupSettings.SetDestination(fileOutput);
        outputGroupSettings.SetFileGroupSettings(fileGroupSettings);
        outputGroup.SetOutputGroupSettings(outputGroupSettings);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Output output;
        output.SetNameModifier("_1");

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoDescription videoDescription;
        videoDescription.SetScalingBehavior(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ScalingBehavior::DEFAULT);
        videoDescription.SetTimecodeInsertion(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoTimecodeInsertion::DISABLED);
        videoDescription.SetAntiAlias(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AntiAlias::ENABLED);
        videoDescription.SetSharpness(50);

videoDescription.SetAfdSignaling(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AfdSignaling::NONE);
        videoDescription.SetDropFrameTimecode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::DropFrameTimecode::ENABLED);

videoDescription.SetRespondToAfd(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::RespondToAfd::NONE);
        videoDescription.SetColorMetadata(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ColorMetadata::INSERT);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoCodecSettings videoCodecSettings;
        videoCodecSettings.SetCodec(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoCodec::H_264);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264Settings h264Settings;
        h264Settings.SetNumberReferenceFrames(3);
        h264Settings.SetSyntax(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264Syntax::DEFAULT);
        h264Settings.SetSoftness(0);
```

```
        h264Settings.SetGopClosedCadence(1);
        h264Settings.SetGopSize(90);
        h264Settings.SetSlices(1);
        h264Settings.SetGopBReference(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264GopBReference::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetSlowPal(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264SlowPal::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetSpatialAdaptiveQuantization(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization::ENABLED);
        h264Settings.SetTemporalAdaptiveQuantization(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization::ENABLED);
        h264Settings.SetFlickerAdaptiveQuantization(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetEntropyEncoding(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264EntropyEncoding::CABAC);
        h264Settings.SetBitrate(5000000);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateControl(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FramerateControl::SPECIFIED);
        h264Settings.SetRateControlMode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264RateControlMode::CBR);

h264Settings.SetCodecProfile(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264CodecProfile::MAIN);
        h264Settings.SetTelecine(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264Telecine::NONE);
        h264Settings.SetMinIInterval(0);
        h264Settings.SetAdaptiveQuantization(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264AdaptiveQuantization::HIGH);
        h264Settings.SetCodecLevel(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264CodecLevel::AUTO);
        h264Settings.SetFieldEncoding(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FieldEncoding::PAFF);
        h264Settings.SetSceneChangeDetect(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264SceneChangeDetect::ENABLED);
        h264Settings.SetQualityTuningLevel(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264QualityTuningLevel::SINGLE_PASS);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateConversionAlgorithm(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm::DUPLICATE_DROP);
        h264Settings.SetUnregisteredSeiTimecode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetGopSizeUnits(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264GopSizeUnits::FRAMES);

h264Settings.SetParControl(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264ParControl::SPECIFIED);
        h264Settings.SetNumberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames(2);
```

```
h264Settings.SetRepeatPps(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::H264RepeatPps::DISABLED);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateNumerator(30);
        h264Settings.SetFramerateDenominator(1);
        h264Settings.SetParNumerator(1);
        h264Settings.SetParDenominator(1);
        videoCodecSettings.SetH264Settings(h264Settings);
        videoDescription.SetCodecSettings(videoCodecSettings);
        output.SetVideoDescription(videoDescription);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioDescription audioDescription;
        audioDescription.SetLanguageCodeControl(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioLanguageCodeControl::FOLLOW_INPUT);
        audioDescription.SetAudioSourceName(AUDIO_SOURCE_NAME);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioCodecSettings audioCodecSettings;
        audioCodecSettings.SetCodec(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioCodec::AAC);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacSettings aacSettings;
        aacSettings.SetAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix(

Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix::NORMAL);
        aacSettings.SetRateControlMode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacRateControlMode::CBR);
        aacSettings.SetCodecProfile(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacCodecProfile::LC);
        aacSettings.SetCodingMode(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacCodingMode::CODING_MODE_2_0);
        aacSettings.SetRawFormat(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacRawFormat::NONE);
        aacSettings.SetSampleRate(48000);

aacSettings.SetSpecification(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AacSpecification::MPEG4);
        aacSettings.SetBitrate(64000);
        audioCodecSettings.SetAacSettings(aacSettings);
        audioDescription.SetCodecSettings(audioCodecSettings);
        Aws::Vector<Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioDescription> audioDescriptions;
        audioDescriptions.emplace_back(audioDescription);
        output.SetAudioDescriptions(audioDescriptions);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ContainerSettings mp4container;
        mp4container.SetContainer(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ContainerType::MP4);
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4Settings mp4Settings;
        mp4Settings.SetCslgAtom(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4CslgAtom::INCLUDE);

mp4Settings.SetFreeSpaceBox(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4FreeSpaceBox::EXCLUDE);
        mp4Settings.SetMoovPlacement(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Mp4MoovPlacement::PROGRESSIVE_DOWNLOAD);
```

```
        mp4container.SetMp4Settings(mp4Settings);
        output.SetContainerSettings(mp4container);

        outputGroup.AddOutputs(output);
        jobSettings.AddOutputGroups(outputGroup);

        // Configure inputs.
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Input input;
        input.SetFilterEnable(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputFilterEnable::AUTO);
        input.SetPsiControl(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputPsiControl::USE_PSI);
        input.SetFilterStrength(0);

input.SetDeblockFilter(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputDeblockFilter::DISABLED);

input.SetDenoiseFilter(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputDenoiseFilter::DISABLED);
        input.SetTimecodeSource(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::InputTimecodeSource::EMBEDDED);
        input.SetFileInput(fileInput);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioSelector audioSelector;
        audioSelector.SetOffset(0);
        audioSelector.SetDefaultSelection(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioDefaultSelection::NOT_DEFAULT);
        audioSelector.SetProgramSelection(1);
        audioSelector.SetSelectorType(
                Aws::MediaConvert::Model::AudioSelectorType::TRACK);
        audioSelector.AddTracks(1);
        input.AddAudioSelectors(AUDIO_SOURCE_NAME, audioSelector);

        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::VideoSelector videoSelector;
        videoSelector.SetColorSpace(Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ColorSpace::FOLLOW);
        input.SetVideoSelector(videoSelector);

        jobSettings.AddInputs(input);

        createJobRequest.SetSettings(jobSettings);
    }

    Aws::MediaConvert::MediaConvertClient client(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::MediaConvert::Model::CreateJobOutcome outcome = client.CreateJob(
            createJobRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Job successfully created with ID - "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetJob().GetId() << std::endl;
```

```
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error CreateJob - " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJob`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve the information for a specific completed transcoding job.
/*!
  \param jobID: A job ID.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::MediaConvert::getJob(const Aws::String &jobID,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::MediaConvert::MediaConvertClient client(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::MediaConvert::Model::GetJobRequest request;
    request.SetId(jobID);
    const Aws::MediaConvert::Model::GetJobOutcome outcome = client.GetJob(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << outcome.GetResult().GetJob().Jsonize().View().WriteReadable()
                  << std::endl;
```

```
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "DescribeEndpoints error - " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }


    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve a list of created jobs.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::MediaConvert::listJobs(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    Aws::MediaConvert::MediaConvertClient client(clientConfiguration);

    bool result = true;
    Aws::String nextToken; // Used to handle paginated results.
    do {
        Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ListJobsRequest request;
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
```

```
        const Aws::MediaConvert::Model::ListJobsOutcome outcome = client.ListJobs(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Job> &jobs =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetJobs();
            std::cout << jobs.size() << " jobs retrieved." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::MediaConvert::Model::Job &job: jobs) {
                std::cout << "  " << job.Jsonize().View().WriteReadable() <<
 std::endl;
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "DescribeEndpoints error - " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;

        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());


    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rds)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_rds")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
```

```
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

     # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                     # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

     AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_rds.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_rds.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rds/RDSClient.h>
#include <aws/rds/model/DescribeDBInstancesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Rds" starter application which initializes an Amazon Relational
 Database Service (Amazon RDS) client and
 *  describes the Amazon RDS instances.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_rds'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
```

```
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::RDS::RDSClient rdsClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::String marker;
        std::vector<Aws::String> instanceDBIDs;

        do {
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;

            if (!marker.empty()) {
                request.SetMarker(marker);
            }

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
                    rdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                for (auto &instance: outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()) {
                    instanceDBIDs.push_back(instance.GetDBInstanceIdentifier());
                }
                marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
            } else {
                result = 1;
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
        } while (!marker.empty());

        std::cout << instanceDBIDs.size() << " RDS instances found." << std::endl;
        for (auto &instanceDBID: instanceDBIDs) {
            std::cout << "   Instance: " << instanceDBID << std::endl;
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Routine which creates an Amazon RDS instance and demonstrates several operations
//! on that instance.
/*!
```

```
 \sa gettingStartedWithDBInstances()
 \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::gettingStartedWithDBInstances(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)"
              << std::endl;
    std::cout << "get started with DB instances demo." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB parameter group named '" <<
              PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "'." << std::endl;
    Aws::String dbParameterGroupFamily("Undefined");
    bool parameterGroupFound = true;
    {
        // 1. Check if the DB parameter group already exists.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB parameter group named '" <<
                      PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." << std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily = outcome.GetResult().GetDBParameterGroups()
[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }
        else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() ==
                 Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_PARAMETER_GROUP_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
            std::cout << "DB parameter group named '" <<
                      PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' does not exist." << std::endl;
            parameterGroupFound = false;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

```
    }

    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 2. Get available engine versions for the specified engine.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, NO_PARAMETER_GROUP_FAMILY,
                                 engineVersions, client)) {
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Getting available database engine versions for " << DB_ENGINE
                  << "."
                  << std::endl;
        std::vector<Aws::String> families;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &version: engineVersions) {
            Aws::String family = version.GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
            if (std::find(families.begin(), families.end(), family) ==
                families.end()) {
                families.push_back(family);
                std::cout << "  " << families.size() << ": " << family << std::endl;
            }
        }

        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which family do you want to use? ", 1,
                                            static_cast<int>(families.size()));
        dbParameterGroupFamily = families[choice - 1];
    }
    if (!parameterGroupFound) {
        // 3.  Create a DB parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
        request.SetDescription("Example parameter group.");

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully created."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBParameterGroup. "
```

```
                    << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                    << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::String marker;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> autoIncrementParameters;
    // 4.  Get the parameters in the DB parameter group.
    if (!getDBParameters(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, AUTO_INCREMENT_PREFIX, NO_SOURCE,
                         autoIncrementParameters,
                         client)) {
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> updateParameters;

    for (Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &autoIncParameter: autoIncrementParameters) {
        if (autoIncParameter.GetIsModifiable() &&
            (autoIncParameter.GetDataType() == "integer")) {
            std::cout << "The " << autoIncParameter.GetParameterName()
                      << " is described as: " <<
                      autoIncParameter.GetDescription() << "." << std::endl;
            if (autoIncParameter.ParameterValueHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "The current value is "
                          << autoIncParameter.GetParameterValue()
                          << "." << std::endl;
            }
            std::vector<int> splitValues = splitToInts(
                    autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues(), '-');
            if (splitValues.size() == 2) {
                int newValue = askQuestionForIntRange(
                        Aws::String("Enter a new value in the range ") +
                        autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues() + ": ",
                        splitValues[0], splitValues[1]);
                autoIncParameter.SetParameterValue(std::to_string(newValue));
                updateParameters.push_back(autoIncParameter);

            }
```

```
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error parsing " << autoIncParameter.GetAllowedValues()
                          << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    {
        // 5.  Modify the auto increment parameters in the group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

        Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.ModifyDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully modified."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::ModifyDBParameterGroup. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }

    std::cout
            << "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source
of 'user'."
            << std::endl;

    Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> userParameters;
    // 6.  Display the modified parameters in the group.
    if (!getDBParameters(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, NO_NAME_PREFIX, "user",
userParameters,
                         client)) {
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
        return false;
    }

    for (const auto &userParameter: userParameters) {
        std::cout << "  " << userParameter.GetParameterName() << ", " <<
                  userParameter.GetDescription() << ", parameter value - "
```

```
                << userParameter.GetParameterValue() << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "Checking for an existing DB instance." << std::endl;

    Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance;
    // 7.  Check if the DB instance already exists.
    if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
        cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
        return false;
    }

    if (dbInstance.DbInstancePortHasBeenSet()) {
        std::cout << "The DB instance already exists." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Let's create a DB instance." << std::endl;
        const Aws::String administratorName = askQuestion(
                "Enter an administrator username for the database: ");
        const Aws::String administratorPassword = askQuestion(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ");
        Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion> engineVersions;

        // 8.  Get a list of available engine versions.
        if (!getDBEngineVersions(DB_ENGINE, dbParameterGroupFamily, engineVersions,
                                 client)) {
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "The available engines for your parameter group are:" <<
std::endl;

        int index = 1;
        for (const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion &engineVersion: engineVersions)
{
            std::cout << "  " << index << ": " << engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                      << std::endl;
            ++index;
        }
        int choice = askQuestionForIntRange("Which engine do you want to use? ", 1,

static_cast<int>(engineVersions.size()));
```

```
        const Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion engineVersion = engineVersions[choice
-
                                                                                1];

        Aws::String dbInstanceClass;
        // 9.  Get a list of micro instance classes.
        if (!chooseMicroDBInstanceClass(engineVersion.GetEngine(),
                                        engineVersion.GetEngineVersion(),
                                        dbInstanceClass,
                                        client)) {
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }

        std::cout << "Creating a DB instance named '" << DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER
                  << "' and database '" << DB_NAME << "'.\n"
                  << "The DB instance is configured to use your custom parameter
group '"
                  << PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "',\n"
                  << "selected engine version " << engineVersion.GetEngineVersion()
                  << ",\n"
                  << "selected DB instance class '" << dbInstanceClass << "',"
                  << " and " << DB_ALLOCATED_STORAGE << " GiB of " <<
DB_STORAGE_TYPE
                  << " storage.\nThis typically takes several minutes." <<
std::endl;

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBName(DB_NAME);
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetEngine(engineVersion.GetEngine());
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion.GetEngineVersion());
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);
        request.SetStorageType(DB_STORAGE_TYPE);
        request.SetAllocatedStorage(DB_ALLOCATED_STORAGE);
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
```

```
                    << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }
    }

    std::cout << "Waiting for the DB instance to become available." << std::endl;

    int counter = 0;
    // 11. Wait for the DB instance to become available.
    do {
        std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
        ++counter;
        if (counter > 900) {
            std::cerr << "Wait for instance to become available timed out ofter "
                      << counter
                      << " seconds." << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, client);
            return false;
        }

        dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
        if (!describeDBInstance(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, dbInstance, client)) {
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER, client);
            return false;
        }

        if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
            std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                      << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus()
                      << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
        }
    } while (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() != "available");

    if (dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus() == "available") {
        std::cout << "The DB instance has been created." << std::endl;
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
```

```
   // 12. Display the connection string that can be used to connect a 'mysql' shell
to the database.
   displayConnection(dbInstance);

   printAsterisksLine();

   if (askYesNoQuestion(
           "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB instance (y/n)? ")) {
       Aws::String snapshotID(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER + "-" +
                              Aws::String(Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID()));
       {
           std::cout << "Creating a snapshot named " << snapshotID << "." <<
std::endl;
           std::cout << "This typically takes a few minutes." << std::endl;

           // 13. Create a snapshot of the DB instance.
           Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotRequest request;
           request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
           request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

           Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                   client.CreateDBSnapshot(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                         << std::endl;
           }
           else {
               std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBSnapshot. "
                         << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                         << std::endl;
               cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
               return false;
           }
       }

       std::cout << "Waiting for snapshot to become available." << std::endl;

       Aws::RDS::Model::DBSnapshot snapshot;
       counter = 0;
       do {
           std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
```

```
            ++counter;
            if (counter > 600) {
                std::cerr << "Wait for snapshot to be available timed out ofter "
                          << counter
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            // 14. Wait for the snapshot to become available.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }

            if ((counter % 20) == 0) {
                std::cout << "Current snapshot status is '"
                          << snapshot.GetStatus()
                          << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
            }
        } while (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available");

        if (snapshot.GetStatus() != "available") {
            std::cout << "A snapshot has been created." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    bool result = true;
```

```
    if (askYesNoQuestion(
            "Do you want to delete the DB instance and parameter group (y/n)? ")) {
        result = cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
 client);
    }

    return result;
}


//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBParameters(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                  const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                  const Aws::String &source,
                                  Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter>
 &parametersResult,
                                  const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
```

```
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                      const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,
                                      Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion>
 &engineVersionsResult,
                                      const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
```

```
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.

    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }


        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            auto &engineVersions = outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();
            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
 engineVersions.begin(),
                                        engineVersions.end());
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!marker.empty());


    return true;
}


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBInstance()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
```

```
                                    Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance &instanceResult,
                                    const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}


//! Routine which gets available 'micro' DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseMicroDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::chooseMicroDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                             const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                             Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                             const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
```

```
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption> &options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option: options)
{
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (instanceClass.find("micro") != std::string::npos) {
                    if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                                  instanceClass) ==
                        instanceClasses.end()) {
                        instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                    }
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available micro DB instance classes for your database engine
are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
```

```
            "Which micro DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}

//! Routine which deletes resources created by the scenario.
/*!
\sa cleanUpResources()
\param parameterGroupName: A parameter group name, this may be empty.
\param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier, this may be empty.
\param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
\return bool: Successful completion.
*/
bool AwsDoc::RDS::cleanUpResources(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                   const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                   const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    bool result = true;
    if (!dbInstanceIdentifier.empty()) {
        {
            // 15. Delete the DB instance.
            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
            request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
            request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                    client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBInstance. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        std::cout
                << "Waiting for DB instance to delete before deleting the parameter
 group."
```

```
                << std::endl;
        std::cout << "This may take a while." << std::endl;

        int counter = 0;
        Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance dbInstance;
        do {
            std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::seconds(1));
            ++counter;
            if (counter > 800) {
                std::cerr << "Wait for instance to delete timed out ofter " <<
counter
                          << " seconds." << std::endl;
                return false;
            }

            dbInstance = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
            // 16. Wait for the DB instance to be deleted.
            if (!describeDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbInstance, client)) {
                return false;
            }

            if (dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifierHasBeenSet() && (counter % 20) == 0)
{
                std::cout << "Current DB instance status is '"
                          << dbInstance.GetDBInstanceStatus()
                          << "' after " << counter << " seconds." << std::endl;
            }
        } while (dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifierHasBeenSet());
    }

    if (!parameterGroupName.empty()) {
        // 17. Delete the parameter group.
        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBParameterGroup(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBParameterGroup. "
```

```
                        << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                        << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBName(DB_NAME);
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        request.SetEngine(engineVersion.GetEngine());
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion.GetEngineVersion());
        request.SetDBInstanceClass(dbInstanceClass);
        request.SetStorageType(DB_STORAGE_TYPE);
        request.SetAllocatedStorage(DB_ALLOCATED_STORAGE);
        request.SetMasterUsername(administratorName);
        request.SetMasterUserPassword(administratorPassword);

        Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.CreateDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The DB instance creation has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, "", client);
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupRequest request;
    request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
    request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily);
    request.SetDescription("Example parameter group.");

    Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateDBParameterGroup(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully created."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBParameterGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotRequest request;
            request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER);
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::CreateDBSnapshotOutcome outcome =
                    client.CreateDBSnapshot(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Snapshot creation has started."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::CreateDBSnapshot. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceRequest request;
        request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);
        request.SetSkipFinalSnapshot(true);
        request.SetDeleteAutomatedBackups(true);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBInstanceOutcome outcome =
                client.DeleteDBInstance(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB instance deletion has started."
                      << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBInstance. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupRequest request;
    request.SetDBParameterGroupName(parameterGroupName);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DeleteDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteDBParameterGroup(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully deleted."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DeleteDBParameterGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
        result = false;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available DB engine versions for an engine name and
//! an optional parameter group family.
/*!
 \sa getDBEngineVersions()
 \param engineName: A DB engine name.
 \param parameterGroupFamily: A parameter group family name, ignored if empty.
 \param engineVersionsResult: Vector of 'DBEngineVersion' objects returned by the
 routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBEngineVersions(const Aws::String &engineName,
                                      const Aws::String &parameterGroupFamily,
                                      Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::DBEngineVersion>
 &engineVersionsResult,
                                      const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest request;
    request.SetEngine(engineName);
    if (!parameterGroupFamily.empty()) {
        request.SetDBParameterGroupFamily(parameterGroupFamily);
    }

    engineVersionsResult.clear();
    Aws::String marker; // Used for pagination.

    do {
        if (!marker.empty()) {
```

```
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }


        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBEngineVersionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBEngineVersions(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            auto &engineVersions = outcome.GetResult().GetDBEngineVersions();
            engineVersionsResult.insert(engineVersionsResult.end(),
 engineVersions.begin(),
                                        engineVersions.end());
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBEngineVersionsRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!marker.empty());


    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets a DB instance description.
/*!
 \sa describeDBInstance()
 \param dbInstanceIdentifier: A DB instance identifier.
 \param instanceResult: The 'DBInstance' object containing the description.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::describeDBInstance(const Aws::String &dbInstanceIdentifier,
                                     Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance &instanceResult,
                                     const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesRequest request;
    request.SetDBInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier);

    Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBInstancesOutcome outcome =
            client.DescribeDBInstances(request);

    bool result = true;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        instanceResult = outcome.GetResult().GetDBInstances()[0];
    }
    else if (outcome.GetError().GetErrorType() !=
             Aws::RDS::RDSErrors::D_B_INSTANCE_NOT_FOUND_FAULT) {
        result = false;
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBInstances. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
        // This example does not log an error if the DB instance does not exist.
        // Instead, instanceResult is set to empty.
    else {
        instanceResult = Aws::RDS::Model::DBInstance();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParameterGroupsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameterGroups(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "DB parameter group named '" <<
                      PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME << "' already exists." << std::endl;
            dbParameterGroupFamily = outcome.GetResult().GetDBParameterGroups()
[0].GetDBParameterGroupFamily();
        }

        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameterGroups. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets DB parameters using the 'DescribeDBParameters' api.
/*!
 \sa getDBParameters()
 \param parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group.
 \param namePrefix: Prefix string to filter results by parameter name.
 \param source: A source such as 'user', ignored if empty.
 \param parametersResult: Vector of 'Parameter' objects returned by the routine.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::getDBParameters(const Aws::String &parameterGroupName,
                                  const Aws::String &namePrefix,
                                  const Aws::String &source,
                                  Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter>
 &parametersResult,
                                  const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
```

```
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersRequest request;
        request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }
        if (!source.empty()) {
            request.SetSource(source);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBParametersOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeDBParameters(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter> &parameters =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetParameters();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::Parameter &parameter: parameters) {
                if (!namePrefix.empty()) {
                    if (parameter.GetParameterName().find(namePrefix) == 0) {
                        parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                    }
                }
                else {
                    parametersResult.push_back(parameter);
                }
            }

            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBParameters. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

DescribeDBSnapshots

The following code example shows how to use DescribeDBSnapshots.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsRequest request;
            request.SetDBSnapshotIdentifier(snapshotID);

            Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeDBSnapshotsOutcome outcome =
                    client.DescribeDBSnapshots(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                snapshot = outcome.GetResult().GetDBSnapshots()[0];
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeDBSnapshots. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUpResources(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME, DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
client);
                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions

The following code example shows how to use DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);


//! Routine which gets available 'micro' DB instance classes, displays the list
//! to the user, and returns the user selection.
/*!
 \sa chooseMicroDBInstanceClass()
 \param engineName: The DB engine name.
 \param engineVersion: The DB engine version.
 \param dbInstanceClass: String for DB instance class chosen by the user.
 \param client: 'RDSClient' instance.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::RDS::chooseMicroDBInstanceClass(const Aws::String &engine,
                                             const Aws::String &engineVersion,
                                             Aws::String &dbInstanceClass,
                                             const Aws::RDS::RDSClient &client) {
    std::vector<Aws::String> instanceClasses;
    Aws::String marker;
    do {
        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsRequest request;
        request.SetEngine(engine);
        request.SetEngineVersion(engineVersion);
        if (!marker.empty()) {
            request.SetMarker(marker);
        }

        Aws::RDS::Model::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutcome outcome =
                client.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption> &options =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetOrderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (const Aws::RDS::Model::OrderableDBInstanceOption &option: options)
 {
                const Aws::String &instanceClass = option.GetDBInstanceClass();
                if (instanceClass.find("micro") != std::string::npos) {
                    if (std::find(instanceClasses.begin(), instanceClasses.end(),
                                  instanceClass) ==
                        instanceClasses.end()) {
                        instanceClasses.push_back(instanceClass);
                    }
                }
            }
            marker = outcome.GetResult().GetMarker();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with RDS::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!marker.empty());

    std::cout << "The available micro DB instance classes for your database engine
 are:"
              << std::endl;
    for (int i = 0; i < instanceClasses.size(); ++i) {
        std::cout << "   " << i + 1 << ": " << instanceClasses[i] << std::endl;
    }

    int choice = askQuestionForIntRange(
            "Which micro DB instance class do you want to use? ",
            1, static_cast<int>(instanceClasses.size()));
    dbInstanceClass = instanceClasses[choice - 1];
    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ModifyDBParameterGroup

The following code example shows how to use ModifyDBParameterGroup.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
    // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
    // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

Aws::RDS::RDSClient client(clientConfig);

    Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupRequest request;
    request.SetDBParameterGroupName(PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME);
    request.SetParameters(updateParameters);

    Aws::RDS::Model::ModifyDBParameterGroupOutcome outcome =
            client.ModifyDBParameterGroup(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "The DB parameter group was successfully modified."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error with RDS::ModifyDBParameterGroup. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon Rekognition.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Rekognition

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS rekognition)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_rekognition")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
     # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.
```

```
    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line, you
 may need to uncomment this
                                    # and set the proper subdirectory to the
 executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_rekognition.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_rekognition.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/rekognition/RekognitionClient.h>
#include <aws/rekognition/model/ListCollectionsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello Rekognition" starter application which initializes an Amazon
 Rekognition client and
 *  lists the Amazon Rekognition collections in the current account and region.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_rekognition'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    //  Optional: change the log level for debugging.
    //  options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Aws::Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
```

```
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::Rekognition::RekognitionClient rekognitionClient(clientConfig);
        Aws::Rekognition::Model::ListCollectionsRequest request;
        Aws::Rekognition::Model::ListCollectionsOutcome outcome =
                rekognitionClient.ListCollections(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>& collectionsIds =
 outcome.GetResult().GetCollectionIds();
            if (!collectionsIds.empty()) {
                std::cout << "collectionsIds: " << std::endl;
                for (auto &collectionId : collectionsIds) {
                    std::cout << "- " << collectionId << std::endl;
                }
            } else {
                std::cout << "No collections found" << std::endl;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error with ListCollections: " << outcome.GetError()
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DetectLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Detect instances of real-world entities within an image by using Amazon
 Rekognition
/*!
  \param imageBucket: The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
 containing an image.
  \param imageKey: The Amazon S3 key of an image object.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::Rekognition::detectLabels(const Aws::String &imageBucket,
                                       const Aws::String &imageKey,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::Rekognition::RekognitionClient rekognitionClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::Rekognition::Model::DetectLabelsRequest request;
    Aws::Rekognition::Model::S3Object s3Object;
    s3Object.SetBucket(imageBucket);
    s3Object.SetName(imageKey);

    Aws::Rekognition::Model::Image image;
    image.SetS3Object(s3Object);

    request.SetImage(image);

    const Aws::Rekognition::Model::DetectLabelsOutcome outcome =
 rekognitionClient.DetectLabels(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::Vector<Aws::Rekognition::Model::Label> &labels =
 outcome.GetResult().GetLabels();
        if (labels.empty()) {
```

```
            std::cout << "No labels detected" << std::endl;
        } else {
            for (const Aws::Rekognition::Model::Label &label: labels) {
                std::cout << label.GetName() << ": " << label.GetConfidence() <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error while detecting labels: '"
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << "'" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS s3)
```

```
# Set this project's name.
project("hello_s3")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # if you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_s3.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_s3.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
```

```
#include <aws/s3/S3Client.h>
#include <iostream>
#include <aws/core/auth/AWSCredentialsProviderChain.h>
using namespace Aws;
using namespace Aws::Auth;

/*
 *  A "Hello S3" starter application which initializes an Amazon Simple Storage
 Service (Amazon S3) client
 *  and lists the Amazon S3 buckets in the selected region.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_s3'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    int result = 0;
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        // You don't normally have to test that you are authenticated. But the S3
 service permits anonymous requests, thus the s3Client will return "success" and 0
 buckets even if you are unauthenticated, which can be confusing to a new user.
        auto provider = Aws::MakeShared<DefaultAWSCredentialsProviderChain>("alloc-
tag");
        auto creds = provider->GetAWSCredentials();
        if (creds.IsEmpty()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed authentication" << std::endl;
        }

        Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);
        auto outcome = s3Client.ListBuckets();

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Failed with error: " << outcome.GetError() << std::endl;
            result = 1;
```

```
        } else {
            std::cout << "Found " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets().size()
                      << " buckets\n";
            for (auto &bucket: outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets()) {
                std::cout << bucket.GetName() << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
#include <iostream>
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/s3/S3Client.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/CopyObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/CreateBucketRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/DeleteBucketRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/DeleteObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/GetObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/ListObjectsV2Request.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/PutObjectRequest.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/BucketLocationConstraint.h>
#include <aws/s3/model/CreateBucketConfiguration.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/UUID.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/StringUtils.h>
#include <aws/core/utils/memory/stl/AWSAllocator.h>
#include <fstream>
#include "s3_examples.h"

namespace AwsDoc {
    namespace S3 {

        //! Delete an S3 bucket.
        /*!
          \param bucketName: The S3 bucket's name.
          \param client: An S3 client.
          \return bool: Function succeeded.
        */
        static bool
        deleteBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName, Aws::S3::S3Client &client);

        //! Delete an object in an S3 bucket.
        /*!
          \param bucketName: The S3 bucket's name.
          \param key: The key for the object in the S3 bucket.
```

```
          \param client: An S3 client.
          \return bool: Function succeeded.
         */
        static bool
        deleteObjectFromBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName, const Aws::String
 &key,
                               Aws::S3::S3Client &client);
    }
}


//! Scenario to create, copy, and delete S3 buckets and objects.
/*!
  \param bucketNamePrefix: A prefix for a bucket name.
  \param uploadFilePath: Path to file to upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
  \param saveFilePath: Path for saving a downloaded S3 object.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::S3::S3_GettingStartedScenario(const Aws::String &bucketNamePrefix,
        const Aws::String &uploadFilePath,
                                           const Aws::String &saveFilePath,
                                           const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {

    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    // Create a unique bucket name which is only temporary and will be deleted.
    // Format: <bucketNamePrefix> + "-" + lowercase UUID.
    Aws::String uuid = Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
    Aws::String bucketName = bucketNamePrefix +
                             Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(uuid.c_str());

    // 1. Create a bucket.
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketRequest request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);

        if (clientConfig.region != Aws::Region::US_EAST_1) {
            Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketConfiguration createBucketConfiguration;
            createBucketConfiguration.WithLocationConstraint(

 Aws::S3::Model::BucketLocationConstraintMapper::GetBucketLocationConstraintForName(
                             clientConfig.region));
```

```
            request.WithCreateBucketConfiguration(createBucketConfiguration);
        }

        Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketOutcome outcome = client.CreateBucket(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
            std::cerr << "Error: createBucket: " <<
                      err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
            return false;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Created the bucket, '" << bucketName <<
                      "', in the region, '" << clientConfig.region << "'." <<
std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 2. Upload a local file to the bucket.
    Aws::String key = "key-for-test";
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);
        request.SetKey(key);

        std::shared_ptr<Aws::FStream> input_data =
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                              uploadFilePath,
                                              std::ios_base::in |
                                              std::ios_base::binary);

        if (!input_data->is_open()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: unable to open file, '" << uploadFilePath << "'."
                      << std::endl;
            AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, client);
            return false;
        }

        request.SetBody(input_data);

        Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome =
                client.PutObject(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error: putObject: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, key, client);
            AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, client);
            return false;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Added the object with the key, '" << key
                      << "', to the bucket, '"
                      << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 3. Download the object to a local file.
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest request;
        request.SetBucket(bucketName);
        request.SetKey(key);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectOutcome outcome =
                client.GetObject(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
            std::cerr << "Error: getObject: " <<
                      err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Downloaded the object with the key, '" << key
                      << "', in the bucket, '"
                      << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;

            Aws::IOStream &ioStream = outcome.GetResultWithOwnership().
                    GetBody();
            Aws::OFStream outStream(saveFilePath,
                                    std::ios_base::out | std::ios_base::binary);
            if (!outStream.is_open()) {
                std::cout << "Error: unable to open file, '" << saveFilePath << "'."
                          << std::endl;
            } else {
                outStream << ioStream.rdbuf();
                std::cout << "Wrote the downloaded object to the file '"
                          << saveFilePath << "'." << std::endl;
            }
        }
```

```
    }

    // 4. Copy the object to a different "folder" in the bucket.
    Aws::String copiedToKey = "test-folder/" + key;
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectRequest request;
        request.WithBucket(bucketName)
                .WithKey(copiedToKey)
                .WithCopySource(bucketName + "/" + key);

        Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectOutcome outcome =
                client.CopyObject(request);
        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: copyObject: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        } else {
            std::cout << "Copied the object with the key, '" << key
                      << "', to the key, '" << copiedToKey
                      << ", in the bucket, '" << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 5. List objects in the bucket.
    {
        Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request request;
        request.WithBucket(bucketName);

        Aws::String continuationToken;
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> allObjects;

        do {
            if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
                request.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
            }
            Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Outcome outcome = client.ListObjectsV2(
                    request);

            if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cerr << "Error: ListObjects: " <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                break;
            } else {
                Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> objects =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetContents();
```

```
                allObjects.insert(allObjects.end(), objects.begin(), objects.end());
                continuationToken = outcome.GetResult().GetContinuationToken();
            }
        } while (!continuationToken.empty());

        std::cout << allObjects.size() << " objects in the bucket, '" << bucketName
                  << "':" << std::endl;

        for (Aws::S3::Model::Object &object: allObjects) {
            std::cout << "     '" << object.GetKey() << "'" << std::endl;
        }
    }

    // 6. Delete all objects in the bucket.
    // All objects in the bucket must be deleted before deleting the bucket.
    AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, copiedToKey, client);
    AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, key, client);

    // 7. Delete the bucket.
    return AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, client);
}

bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjectFromBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                        const Aws::String &key,
                                        Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(key);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteObject: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Deleted the object with the key, '" << key
                  << "', from the bucket, '"
                  << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

```
bool
AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName, Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteBucket(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucket: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Deleted the bucket, '" << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`AbortMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `AbortMultipartUpload`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Abort a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/

bool AwsDoc::S3::abortMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                      const Aws::String &key,
                                      const Aws::String &uploadID,
                                      const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);

    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.AbortMultipartUpload(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Multipart upload aborted." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error aborting multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

CompleteMultipartUpload

The following code example shows how to use `CompleteMultipartUpload`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Complete a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param parts: A vector of CompleteParts.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome: The request outcome.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome
 AwsDoc::S3::completeMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,

 const Aws::String &key,

 const Aws::String &uploadID,

 const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart> &parts,

 const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload;
    completedMultipartUpload.SetParts(parts);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetMultipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CompleteMultipartUpload(request);
```

```
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error completing multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome;
}
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::copyObject(const Aws::String &objectKey, const Aws::String
 &fromBucket, const Aws::String &toBucket,
                            const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectRequest request;

    request.WithCopySource(fromBucket + "/" + objectKey)
            .WithKey(objectKey)
            .WithBucket(toBucket);

    Aws::S3::Model::CopyObjectOutcome outcome = client.CopyObject(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: copyObject: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;

    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully copied " << objectKey << " from " << fromBucket
 <<
                  " to " << toBucket << "." << std::endl;
```

```
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::createBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    if (clientConfig.region != "us-east-1") {
        Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketConfiguration createBucketConfig;
        createBucketConfig.SetLocationConstraint(

 Aws::S3::Model::BucketLocationConstraintMapper::GetBucketLocationConstraintForName(
                        clientConfig.region));
        request.SetCreateBucketConfiguration(createBucketConfig);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::CreateBucketOutcome outcome = client.CreateBucket(request);
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: createBucket: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Created bucket " << bucketName <<
```

```
                    " in the specified AWS Region." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMultipartUpload`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create a multipart upload.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return Aws::String: Upload ID or empty string if failed.
*/
Aws::String
AwsDoc::S3::createMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String &key,
                                  Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm
 checksumAlgorithm,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateMultipartUpload(request);

    Aws::String uploadID;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        uploadID = outcome.GetResult().GetUploadId();
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return uploadID;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {

    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteBucket(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucket: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "The bucket was deleted" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucketPolicy(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketPolicyOutcome outcome =
 client.DeleteBucketPolicy(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucketPolicy: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
```

```
        std::cout << "Policy was deleted from the bucket." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketWebsite`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucketWebsite(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                     const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteBucketWebsiteOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteBucketWebsite(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteBucketWebsite: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Website configuration was removed." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteObject(const Aws::String &objectKey,
                              const Aws::String &fromBucket,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectRequest request;

    request.WithKey(objectKey)
            .WithBucket(fromBucket);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: deleteObject: " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted the object." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

DeleteObjects

The following code example shows how to use DeleteObjects.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjects(const std::vector<Aws::String> &objectKeys,
                               const Aws::String &fromBucket,
                               const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsRequest request;

    Aws::S3::Model::Delete deleteObject;
    for (const Aws::String &objectKey: objectKeys) {

 deleteObject.AddObjects(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectIdentifier().WithKey(objectKey));
    }

    request.SetDelete(deleteObject);
    request.SetBucket(fromBucket);

    Aws::S3::Model::DeleteObjectsOutcome outcome =
            client.DeleteObjects(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error deleting objects. " <<
                  err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted the objects.";
        for (size_t i = 0; i < objectKeys.size(); ++i) {
            std::cout << objectKeys[i];
            if (i < objectKeys.size() - 1) {
                std::cout << ", ";
            }
        }
```

```
        std::cout << " from bucket " << fromBucket << "." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketAcl`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getBucketAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketAclRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetBucketAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getBucketAcl: "
                  << err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants =
                outcome.GetResult().GetGrants();

        for (auto it = grants.begin(); it != grants.end(); it++) {
            Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant = *it;
```

```
            Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee = grant.GetGrantee();

            std::cout << "For bucket " << bucketName << ": "
                      << std::endl << std::endl;

            if (grantee.TypeHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Type:          "
                          << getGranteeTypeString(grantee.GetType()) << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.DisplayNameHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Display name:  "
                          << grantee.GetDisplayName() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.EmailAddressHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Email address: "
                          << grantee.GetEmailAddress() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.IDHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "ID:            "
                          << grantee.GetID() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.URIHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "URI:           "
                          << grantee.GetURI() << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << "Permission:    " <<
                      getPermissionString(grant.GetPermission()) <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable string.
/*!
 \param type: Type enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string.
*/
```

```
Aws::String getGranteeTypeString(const Aws::S3::Model::Type &type) {
    switch (type) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail:
            return "Email address of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser:
            return "Canonical user ID of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group:
            return "Predefined Amazon S3 group";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET:
            return "Not set";
        default:
            return "Type unknown";
    }
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable string.
/*!
 \param permission: Permission enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string.
*/

Aws::String getPermissionString(const Aws::S3::Model::Permission &permission) {
    switch (permission) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL:
            return "Can list objects in this bucket, create/overwrite/delete "
                   "objects in this bucket, and read/write this "
                   "bucket's permissions";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET:
            return "Permission not set";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ:
            return "Can list objects in this bucket";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP:
            return "Can read this bucket's permissions";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE:
            return "Can create, overwrite, and delete objects in this bucket";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP:
            return "Can write this bucket's permissions";
        default:
            return "Permission unknown";
    }

    return "Permission unknown";
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getBucketPolicy(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                 const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketPolicyOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetBucketPolicy(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getBucketPolicy: "
                  << err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::StringStream policy_stream;
        Aws::String line;

        outcome.GetResult().GetPolicy() >> line;
        policy_stream << line;

        std::cout << "Retrieve the policy for bucket '" << bucketName << "':\n\n" <<
                  policy_stream.str() << std::endl;
```

```
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketWebsite`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getWebsiteConfig(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketWebsiteRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketWebsiteOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetBucketWebsite(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();

        std::cerr << "Error: GetBucketWebsite: "
                  << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        Aws::S3::Model::GetBucketWebsiteResult websiteResult = outcome.GetResult();

        std::cout << "Success: GetBucketWebsite: "
                  << std::endl << std::endl
                  << "For bucket '" << bucketName << "':"
```

```
                    << std::endl
                    << "Index page : "
                    << websiteResult.GetIndexDocument().GetSuffix()
                    << std::endl
                    << "Error page: "
                    << websiteResult.GetErrorDocument().GetKey()
                    << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getObject(const Aws::String &objectKey,
                           const Aws::String &fromBucket,
                           const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(fromBucket);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectOutcome outcome =
            client.GetObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getObject: " <<
```

```
                    err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully retrieved '" << objectKey << "' from '"
                  << fromBucket << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetObjectAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectAcl`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::getObjectAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                              const Aws::String &objectKey,
                              const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAclRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.GetObjectAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &err = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: getObjectAcl: "
                  << err.GetExceptionName() << ": " << err.GetMessage() <<
 std::endl;
    } else {
```

```
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants =
                outcome.GetResult().GetGrants();

        for (auto it = grants.begin(); it != grants.end(); it++) {
            std::cout << "For object " << objectKey << ": "
                      << std::endl << std::endl;

            Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant = *it;
            Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee = grant.GetGrantee();

            if (grantee.TypeHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Type:          "
                          << getGranteeTypeString(grantee.GetType()) << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.DisplayNameHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Display name:  "
                          << grantee.GetDisplayName() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.EmailAddressHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "Email address: "
                          << grantee.GetEmailAddress() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.IDHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "ID:            "
                          << grantee.GetID() << std::endl;
            }

            if (grantee.URIHasBeenSet()) {
                std::cout << "URI:           "
                          << grantee.GetURI() << std::endl;
            }

            std::cout << "Permission:    " <<
                      getPermissionString(grant.GetPermission()) <<
                      std::endl << std::endl;
        }
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

```
//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable string.
/*!
 \param type: Type enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string
*/
Aws::String getGranteeTypeString(const Aws::S3::Model::Type &type) {
    switch (type) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail:
            return "Email address of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser:
            return "Canonical user ID of an AWS account";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group:
            return "Predefined Amazon S3 group";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET:
            return "Not set";
        default:
            return "Type unknown";
    }
}

//! Routine which converts a built-in type enumeration to a human-readable string.
/*!
 \param permission: Permission enumeration.
 \return String: Human-readable string
*/
Aws::String getPermissionString(const Aws::S3::Model::Permission &permission) {
    switch (permission) {
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL:
            return "Can read this object's data and its metadata, "
                   "and read/write this object's permissions";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET:
            return "Permission not set";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ:
            return "Can read this object's data and its metadata";
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP:
            return "Can read this object's permissions";
            // case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE // Not applicable.
        case Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP:
            return "Can write this object's permissions";
        default:
            return "Permission unknown";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetObjectAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectAttributes`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// ! Routine which retrieves the hash value of an object stored in an S3 bucket.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) of the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm used to calculate the hash value of the
 object.
   \param[out] hashData: The retrieved hash.
   \param[out] partHashes: The part hashes if available.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to retrieve the object.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::retrieveObjectHash(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                    AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                    Aws::String &hashData,
                                    std::vector<Aws::String> *partHashes,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (hashMethod == MD5) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ETag);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);
```

```
        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            hashData = result.GetETag();
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object etag attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } else { // hashMethod != MD5
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::Checksum);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            switch (hashMethod) {
                case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                    break;  // Default is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic push
#pragma ide diagnostic ignored "UnreachableCode"
                case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                    break;  // MD5 is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic pop
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA1();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA256();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32C();
                    break;
                default:
```

```
                    std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                    return false;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object checksum attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (nullptr != partHashes) {
            attributes.clear();
            attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ObjectParts);
            request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);
            outcome = client.GetObjectAttributes(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
outcome.GetResult();
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart> parts =
result.GetObjectParts().GetParts();
                for (const Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart &part: parts) {
                    switch (hashMethod) {
                        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // Default is not supported.
NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5: // MD5 is not supported.
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA1());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA256());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32C());
                            break;
                        default:
                            std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                            return false;
                    }
                }
            } else {
```

```
                std::cerr << "Error retrieving object attributes for object parts."
 <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::listBuckets(const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    auto outcome = client.ListBuckets();

    bool result = true;
    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Failed with error: " << outcome.GetError() << std::endl;
        result = false;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Found " << outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets().size() << "
 buckets\n";
        for (auto &&b: outcome.GetResult().GetBuckets()) {
            std::cout << b.GetName() << std::endl;
        }
    }
```

```
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::listObjects(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                             Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &keysResult,
                             const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::ListObjectsV2Request request;
    request.WithBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::String continuationToken; // Used for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> allObjects;

    do {
        if (!continuationToken.empty()) {
            request.SetContinuationToken(continuationToken);
        }

        auto outcome = s3Client.ListObjectsV2(request);

        if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cerr << "Error: listObjects: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        } else {
```

```
            Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Object> objects =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetContents();

            allObjects.insert(allObjects.end(), objects.begin(), objects.end());
            continuationToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextContinuationToken();
        }
    } while (!continuationToken.empty());

    std::cout << allObjects.size() << " object(s) found:" << std::endl;

    for (const auto &object: allObjects) {
        std::cout << "  " << object.GetKey() << std::endl;
        keysResult.push_back(object.GetKey());
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putBucketAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName, const Aws::String
 &ownerID,
                              const Aws::String &granteePermission,
                              const Aws::String &granteeType, const Aws::String
 &granteeID,
                              const Aws::String &granteeEmailAddress,
                              const Aws::String &granteeURI, const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::Owner owner;
    owner.SetID(ownerID);

    Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee;
    grantee.SetType(setGranteeType(granteeType));

    if (!granteeEmailAddress.empty()) {
        grantee.SetEmailAddress(granteeEmailAddress);
    }

    if (!granteeID.empty()) {
        grantee.SetID(granteeID);
    }

    if (!granteeURI.empty()) {
        grantee.SetURI(granteeURI);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant;
    grant.SetGrantee(grantee);
    grant.SetPermission(setGranteePermission(granteePermission));

    Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants;
    grants.push_back(grant);

    Aws::S3::Model::AccessControlPolicy acp;
    acp.SetOwner(owner);
    acp.SetGrants(grants);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketAclRequest request;
    request.SetAccessControlPolicy(acp);
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutBucketAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::S3::S3Error &error = outcome.GetError();

        std::cerr << "Error: putBucketAcl: " << error.GetExceptionName()
                  << " - " << error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully added an ACL to the bucket '" << bucketName
```

```
                    << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type enumeration.
/*!
 \param access: Human readable string.
 \return Permission: A Permission enum.
*/

Aws::S3::Model::Permission setGranteePermission(const Aws::String &access) {
    if (access == "FULL_CONTROL")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL;
    if (access == "WRITE")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE;
    if (access == "READ")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ;
    if (access == "WRITE_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP;
    if (access == "READ_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET;
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type enumeration.
/*!
 \param type: Human readable string.
 \return Type: Type enumeration
*/

Aws::S3::Model::Type setGranteeType(const Aws::String &type) {
    if (type == "Amazon customer by email")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail;
    if (type == "Canonical user")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser;
    if (type == "Group")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET;
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

PutBucketPolicy

The following code example shows how to use PutBucketPolicy.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putBucketPolicy(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                 const Aws::String &policyBody,
                                 const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig)
 {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::StringStream> request_body =
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::StringStream>("");
    *request_body << policyBody;

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketPolicyRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetBody(request_body);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketPolicyOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutBucketPolicy(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: putBucketPolicy: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Set the following policy body for the bucket '" <<
                  bucketName << "':" << std::endl << std::endl;
        std::cout << policyBody << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}


//! Build a policy JSON string.
```

```
/*!
  \param userArn: Aws user Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
      For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
reference_identifiers.html#identifiers-arns.
  \param bucketName: Name of a bucket.
  \return String: Policy as JSON string.
*/

Aws::String getPolicyString(const Aws::String &userArn,
                            const Aws::String &bucketName) {
    return
            "{\n"
            "   \"Version\":\"2012-10-17\",\n"
            "   \"Statement\":[\n"
            "       {\n"
            "           \"Sid\": \"1\",\n"
            "           \"Effect\": \"Allow\",\n"
            "           \"Principal\": {\n"
            "               \"AWS\": \""
            + userArn +
            "\"\n""           },\n"
            "           \"Action\": [ \"s3:getObject\" ],\n"
            "           \"Resource\": [ \"arn:aws:s3:::"
            + bucketName +
            "/*\" ]\n"
            "       }\n"
            "   ]\n"
            "}";
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

PutBucketWebsite

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putWebsiteConfig(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                  const Aws::String &indexPage, const Aws::String
 &errorPage,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::IndexDocument indexDocument;
    indexDocument.SetSuffix(indexPage);

    Aws::S3::Model::ErrorDocument errorDocument;
    errorDocument.SetKey(errorPage);

    Aws::S3::Model::WebsiteConfiguration websiteConfiguration;
    websiteConfiguration.SetIndexDocument(indexDocument);
    websiteConfiguration.SetErrorDocument(errorDocument);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketWebsiteRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetWebsiteConfiguration(websiteConfiguration);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutBucketWebsiteOutcome outcome =
            client.PutBucketWebsite(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: PutBucketWebsite: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Success: Set website configuration for bucket '"
                  << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putObject(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                           const Aws::String &fileName,
                           const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    //We are using the name of the file as the key for the object in the bucket.
    //However, this is just a string and can be set according to your retrieval
 needs.
    request.SetKey(fileName);

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> inputData =
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                          fileName.c_str(),
                                          std::ios_base::in |
 std::ios_base::binary);

    if (!*inputData) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << fileName << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    request.SetBody(inputData);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome =
```

```
            s3Client.PutObject(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error: putObject: " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Added object '" << fileName << "' to bucket '"
                  << bucketName << "'.";
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`PutObjectAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectAcl`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::S3::putObjectAcl(const Aws::String &bucketName, const Aws::String
 &objectKey, const Aws::String &ownerID,
                              const Aws::String &granteePermission, const
 Aws::String &granteeType,
                              const Aws::String &granteeID, const Aws::String
 &granteeEmailAddress,
                              const Aws::String &granteeURI, const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client s3Client(clientConfig);

    Aws::S3::Model::Owner owner;
    owner.SetID(ownerID);

    Aws::S3::Model::Grantee grantee;
```

```
    grantee.SetType(setGranteeType(granteeType));

    if (!granteeEmailAddress.empty()) {
        grantee.SetEmailAddress(granteeEmailAddress);
    }

    if (!granteeID.empty()) {
        grantee.SetID(granteeID);
    }

    if (!granteeURI.empty()) {
        grantee.SetURI(granteeURI);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::Grant grant;
    grant.SetGrantee(grantee);
    grant.SetPermission(setGranteePermission(granteePermission));

    Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::Grant> grants;
    grants.push_back(grant);

    Aws::S3::Model::AccessControlPolicy acp;
    acp.SetOwner(owner);
    acp.SetGrants(grants);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectAclRequest request;
    request.SetAccessControlPolicy(acp);
    request.SetBucket(bucketName);
    request.SetKey(objectKey);

    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectAclOutcome outcome =
            s3Client.PutObjectAcl(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto error = outcome.GetError();
        std::cerr << "Error: putObjectAcl: " << error.GetExceptionName()
                  << " - " << error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cout << "Successfully added an ACL to the object '" << objectKey
                  << "' in the bucket '" << bucketName << "'." << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

```
//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type enumeration.
/*!
 \param access: Human readable string.
 \return Permission: Permission enumeration.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::Permission setGranteePermission(const Aws::String &access) {
    if (access == "FULL_CONTROL")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::FULL_CONTROL;
    if (access == "WRITE")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE;
    if (access == "READ")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ;
    if (access == "WRITE_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::WRITE_ACP;
    if (access == "READ_ACP")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::READ_ACP;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Permission::NOT_SET;
}

//! Routine which converts a human-readable string to a built-in type enumeration.
/*!
 \param type: Human readable string.
 \return Type: Type enumeration.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::Type setGranteeType(const Aws::String &type) {
    if (type == "Amazon customer by email")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::AmazonCustomerByEmail;
    if (type == "Canonical user")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::CanonicalUser;
    if (type == "Group")
        return Aws::S3::Model::Type::Group;
    return Aws::S3::Model::Type::NOT_SET;
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UploadPart`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPart`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Upload a part to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param partNumber:
    \param checksumAlgorithm: Checksum algorithm, ignored when NOT_SET.
    \param calculatedHash: A data integrity hash to set, depending on the checksum
 algorithm,
                            ignored when it is an empty string.
    \param body: An shared_ptr IOStream of the data to be uploaded.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return UploadPartOutcome: The outcome.
*/

Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartOutcome AwsDoc::S3::uploadPart(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                                         const Aws::String &key,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &uploadID,
                                                         int partNumber,

 Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm checksumAlgorithm,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &calculatedHash,
                                                         const
 std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &body,
                                                         const Aws::S3::S3Client
 &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetPartNumber(partNumber);
    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
```

```
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }
    request.SetBody(body);

    if (!calculatedHash.empty()) {
        switch (checksumAlgorithm) {
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET:
                request.SetContentMD5(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32C:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32C(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA1:
                request.SetChecksumSHA1(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA256:
                request.SetChecksumSHA256(calculatedHash);
                break;
        }
    }

    return client.UploadPart(request);
}
```

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a pre-signed URL to download an object.

```
//! Routine which demonstrates creating a pre-signed URL to download an object from
 an
//! Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/*!
  \param bucketName: Name of the bucket.
  \param key: Name of an object key.
  \param expirationSeconds: Expiration in seconds for pre-signed URL.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return Aws::String: A pre-signed URL.
*/
Aws::String AwsDoc::S3::generatePreSignedGetObjectUrl(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                                      const Aws::String &key,
                                                      uint64_t expirationSeconds,
                                                      const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    return client.GeneratePresignedUrl(bucketName, key,
 Aws::Http::HttpMethod::HTTP_GET,
                                       expirationSeconds);
}
```

Download using libcurl.

```
static size_t myCurlWriteBack(char *buffer, size_t size, size_t nitems, void
 *userdata) {
    Aws::StringStream *str = (Aws::StringStream *) userdata;

    if (nitems > 0) {
        str->write(buffer, size * nitems);
    }
    return size * nitems;
```

```
}

//! Utility routine to test getObject with a pre-signed URL.
/*!
  \param presignedURL: A pre-signed URL to get an object from a bucket.
  \param resultString: A string to hold the result.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::getObjectWithPresignedObjectUrl(const Aws::String &presignedURL,
                                                 Aws::String &resultString) {
    CURL *curl = curl_easy_init();
    CURLcode result;

    std::stringstream outWriteString;

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEDATA, &outWriteString);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEDATA " << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION, myCurlWriteBack);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_URL, presignedURL.c_str());

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_URL" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_perform(curl);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to perform CURL request" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    resultString = outWriteString.str();
```

```
    if (resultString.find("<?xml") == 0) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to get object, response:\n" << resultString <<
 std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    return true;
}
```

Generate a pre-signed URL to upload an object.

```
//! Routine which demonstrates creating a pre-signed URL to upload an object to an
//! Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
/*!
  \param bucketName: Name of the bucket.
  \param key: Name of an object key.
  \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
  \return Aws::String: A pre-signed URL.
*/
Aws::String AwsDoc::S3::generatePreSignedPutObjectUrl(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                                                      const Aws::String &key,
                                                      uint64_t expirationSeconds,
                                                      const
 Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::S3::S3Client client(clientConfig);
    return client.GeneratePresignedUrl(bucketName, key,
 Aws::Http::HttpMethod::HTTP_PUT,
                                       expirationSeconds);
}
```

Upload using libcurl.

```
static size_t myCurlReadBack(char *buffer, size_t size, size_t nitems, void
 *userdata) {
    Aws::StringStream *str = (Aws::StringStream *) userdata;

    str->read(buffer, size * nitems);

    return str->gcount();
}
```

```
static size_t myCurlWriteBack(char *buffer, size_t size, size_t nitems, void
 *userdata) {
    Aws::StringStream *str = (Aws::StringStream *) userdata;

    if (nitems > 0) {
        str->write(buffer, size * nitems);
    }
    return size * nitems;
}

//! Utility routine to test putObject with a pre-signed URL.
/*!
  \param presignedURL: A pre-signed URL to put an object in a bucket.
  \param data: Body of the putObject request.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::PutStringWithPresignedObjectURL(const Aws::String &presignedURL,
                                                 const Aws::String &data) {
    CURL *curl = curl_easy_init();
    CURLcode result;

    Aws::StringStream readStringStream;
    readStringStream << data;
    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_READFUNCTION, myCurlReadBack);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_READFUNCTION" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_READDATA, &readStringStream);
    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_READDATA" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_INFILESIZE_LARGE,
                              (curl_off_t) data.size());

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_INFILESIZE_LARGE" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
```

```
    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION, myCurlWriteBack);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEFUNCTION" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::stringstream outWriteString;

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_WRITEDATA, &outWriteString);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_WRITEDATA " << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_URL, presignedURL.c_str());

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_URL" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_setopt(curl, CURLOPT_UPLOAD, 1L);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to set CURLOPT_PUT" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    result = curl_easy_perform(curl);

    if (result != CURLE_OK) {
        std::cerr << "Failed to perform CURL request" << std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::string outString = outWriteString.str();
    if (outString.empty()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully put object." << std::endl;
        return true;
    } else {
        std::cout << "A server error was encountered, output:\n" << outString
```

```
                    << std::endl;
        return false;
    }
}
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Work with Amazon S3 object integrity

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object integrity features.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object integrity features.

```
//! Routine which runs the S3 object integrity workflow.
/*!
   \param clientConfig: Aws client configuration.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::s3ObjectIntegrityWorkflow(
        const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {

    /*
     * Create a large file to be used for multipart uploads.
     */
    if (!createLargeFileIfNotExists()) {
        std::cerr << "Workflow exiting because large file creation failed." <<
 std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String bucketName = TEST_BUCKET_PREFIX;
    bucketName += Aws::Utils::UUID::RandomUUID();
    bucketName = Aws::Utils::StringUtils::ToLower(bucketName.c_str());

    bucketName.resize(std::min(bucketName.size(), MAX_BUCKET_NAME_LENGTH));

    introductoryExplanations(bucketName);

    if (!AwsDoc::S3::createBucket(bucketName, clientConfiguration)) {
        std::cerr << "Workflow exiting because bucket creation failed." <<
 std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration s3ClientConfiguration(clientConfiguration);
```

```
   std::shared_ptr<Aws::S3::S3Client> client =
Aws::MakeShared<Aws::S3::S3Client>("S3Client", s3ClientConfiguration);

   printAsterisksLine();
   std::cout << "Choose from one of the following checksum algorithms."
             << std::endl;

   for (HASH_METHOD hashMethod = DEFAULT; hashMethod <= SHA256; ++hashMethod) {
       std::cout << "  " << hashMethod << " - " << stringForHashMethod(hashMethod)
                 << std::endl;
   }

   HASH_METHOD chosenHashMethod = askQuestionForIntRange("Enter an index: ",
DEFAULT,
                                                         SHA256);


   gUseCalculatedChecksum = !askYesNoQuestion(
           "Let the SDK calculate the checksum for you? (y/n) ");

   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "The workflow will now upload a file using PutObject."
             << std::endl;
   std::cout << "Object integrity will be verified using the "
             << stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) << " algorithm."
             << std::endl;
   if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
       std::cout
               << "A checksum computed by this workflow will be used for object
integrity verification,"
               << std::endl;
       std::cout << "except for the TransferManager upload." << std::endl;
   } else {
       std::cout
               << "A checksum computed by the SDK will be used for object integrity
verification."
               << std::endl;
   }

   pressEnterToContinue();
   printAsterisksLine();

   std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> inputData =
```

```
            Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                          TEST_FILE,
                                          std::ios_base::in |
                                          std::ios_base::binary);

    if (!*inputData) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << TEST_FILE << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    Hasher hasher;
    HASH_METHOD putObjectHashMethod = chosenHashMethod;
    if (putObjectHashMethod == DEFAULT) {
        putObjectHashMethod = MD5; // MD5 is the default hash method for PutObject.

        std::cout << "The default checksum algorithm for PutObject is "
                  << stringForHashMethod(putObjectHashMethod)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    // Demonstrate in code how the hash is computed.
    if (!hasher.calculateObjectHash(*inputData, putObjectHashMethod)) {
        std::cerr << "Error calculating hash for file " << TEST_FILE << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }
    Aws::String key = stringForHashMethod(putObjectHashMethod);
    key += "_";
    key += TEST_FILE_KEY;
    Aws::String localHash = hasher.getBase64HashString();

    // Upload the object with PutObject
    if (!putObjectWithHash(bucketName, key, localHash, putObjectHashMethod,
                           inputData, chosenHashMethod == DEFAULT,
                           *client)) {
        std::cerr << "Error putting file " << TEST_FILE << " to bucket "
                  << bucketName << " with key " << key << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    Aws::String retrievedHash;
    if (!retrieveObjectHash(bucketName, key,
```

```
                            putObjectHashMethod, retrievedHash,
                            nullptr, *client)) {
        std::cerr << "Error getting file " << TEST_FILE << " from bucket "
                  << bucketName << " with key " << key << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    explainPutObjectResults();
    verifyHashingResults(retrievedHash, hasher,
                         "PutObject upload", putObjectHashMethod);


    printAsterisksLine();
    pressEnterToContinue();

    key = "tr_";
    key += stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) + "_" + MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE;

    introductoryTransferManagerUploadExplanations(key);

    HASH_METHOD transferManagerHashMethod = chosenHashMethod;
    if (transferManagerHashMethod == DEFAULT) {
        transferManagerHashMethod = CRC32;  // The default hash method for the
TransferManager is CRC32.

        std::cout << "The default checksum algorithm for TransferManager is "
                  << stringForHashMethod(transferManagerHashMethod)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    // Upload the large file using the transfer manager.
    if (!doTransferManagerUpload(bucketName, key, transferManagerHashMethod,
chosenHashMethod == DEFAULT,
                                 client)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in doTransferManagerUpload." <<
std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    std::vector<Aws::String> retrievedTransferManagerPartHashes;
    Aws::String retrievedTransferManagerFinalHash;
```

```
   // Retrieve all the hashes for the TransferManager upload.
   if (!retrieveObjectHash(bucketName, key,
                           transferManagerHashMethod,
                           retrievedTransferManagerFinalHash,
                           &retrievedTransferManagerPartHashes, *client)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in retrieveObjectHash for
TransferManager." << std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   AwsDoc::S3::Hasher locallyCalculatedFinalHash;
   std::vector<Aws::String> locallyCalculatedPartHashes;

   // Calculate the hashes locally to demonstrate how TransferManager hashes are
computed.
   if (!calculatePartHashesForFile(transferManagerHashMethod, MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE,
                                   UPLOAD_BUFFER_SIZE,
                                   locallyCalculatedFinalHash,
                                   locallyCalculatedPartHashes)) {
       std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in calculatePartHashesForFile." <<
std::endl;
       cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
       return false;
   }

   verifyHashingResults(retrievedTransferManagerFinalHash,
                        locallyCalculatedFinalHash, "TransferManager upload",
                        transferManagerHashMethod,
                        retrievedTransferManagerPartHashes,
                        locallyCalculatedPartHashes);

   printAsterisksLine();

   key = "mp_";
   key += stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) + "_" + MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE;

   multiPartUploadExplanations(key, chosenHashMethod);

   pressEnterToContinue();

   std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> largeFileInputData =
           Aws::MakeShared<Aws::FStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                         MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE,
```

```
                                        std::ios_base::in |
                                        std::ios_base::binary);

    if (!largeFileInputData->good()) {
        std::cerr << "Error unable to read file " << TEST_FILE << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    HASH_METHOD multipartUploadHashMethod = chosenHashMethod;
    if (multipartUploadHashMethod == DEFAULT) {
        multipartUploadHashMethod = MD5;  // The default hash method for multipart
uploads is MD5.

        std::cout << "The default checksum algorithm for multipart upload is "
                  << stringForHashMethod(putObjectHashMethod)
                  << std::endl;
    }

    AwsDoc::S3::Hasher hashData;
    std::vector<Aws::String> partHashes;

    if (!doMultipartUpload(bucketName, key,
                           multipartUploadHashMethod,
                           largeFileInputData, chosenHashMethod == DEFAULT,
                           hashData,
                           partHashes,
                           *client)) {
        std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in doMultipartUpload." <<
std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    std::cout << "Finished multipart upload of with hash method " <<
              stringForHashMethod(multipartUploadHashMethod) << std::endl;

    std::cout << "Now we will retrieve the checksums from the server." << std::endl;

    retrievedHash.clear();
    std::vector<Aws::String> retrievedPartHashes;
    if (!retrieveObjectHash(bucketName, key,
                            multipartUploadHashMethod,
                            retrievedHash, &retrievedPartHashes, *client)) {
```

```
        std::cerr << "Exiting because of an error in retrieveObjectHash for
 multipart." << std::endl;
        cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
        return false;
    }

    verifyHashingResults(retrievedHash, hashData, "MultiPart upload",
                         multipartUploadHashMethod,
                         retrievedPartHashes, partHashes);

    printAsterisksLine();

    if (askYesNoQuestion("Would you like to delete the resources created in this
 workflow? (y/n)")) {
        return cleanUp(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
    } else {
        std::cout << "The bucket " << bucketName << " was not deleted." <<
 std::endl;
        return true;
    }
}

//! Routine which uploads an object to an S3 bucket with different object integrity
 hashing methods.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashData: The hash value that will be associated with the uploaded object.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash value.
   \param body: The data content of the object being uploaded.
   \param useDefaultHashMethod: A flag indicating whether to use the default hash
 method or the one specified in the hashMethod parameter.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::putObjectWithHash(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                   const Aws::String &hashData,
                                   AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                   const std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &body,
                                   bool useDefaultHashMethod,
                                   const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
```

```
    request.SetKey(key);
    if (!useDefaultHashMethod) {
        if (hashMethod != MD5) {

 request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(hashMethod));
        }
    }

    if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
        switch (hashMethod) {
            case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                request.SetContentMD5(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                request.SetChecksumSHA1(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                request.SetChecksumSHA256(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32(hashData);
                break;
            case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32C(hashData);
                break;
            default:
                std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                return false;
        }
    }
    request.SetBody(body);
    Aws::S3::Model::PutObjectOutcome outcome = client.PutObject(request);
    body->seekg(0, body->beg);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Object successfully uploaded." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error uploading object." <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}


// ! Routine which retrieves the hash value of an object stored in an S3 bucket.
```

```
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) of the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm used to calculate the hash value of the
 object.
   \param[out] hashData: The retrieved hash.
   \param[out] partHashes: The part hashes if available.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to retrieve the object.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::retrieveObjectHash(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                    AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                    Aws::String &hashData,
                                    std::vector<Aws::String> *partHashes,
                                    const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (hashMethod == MD5) {
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ETag);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            hashData = result.GetETag();
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object etag attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } else { // hashMethod != MD5
        Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes> attributes;
        attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::Checksum);
        request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);

        Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesOutcome outcome =
 client.GetObjectAttributes(
```

```
                request);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
            switch (hashMethod) {
                case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                    break;  // Default is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic push
#pragma ide diagnostic ignored "UnreachableCode"
                case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                    break;  // MD5 is not supported.
#pragma clang diagnostic pop
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA1();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumSHA256();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32();
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                    hashData = result.GetChecksum().GetChecksumCRC32C();
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                    return false;
            }
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error retrieving object checksum attributes." <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

        if (nullptr != partHashes) {
            attributes.clear();
            attributes.push_back(Aws::S3::Model::ObjectAttributes::ObjectParts);
            request.SetObjectAttributes(attributes);
            outcome = client.GetObjectAttributes(request);
            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::S3::Model::GetObjectAttributesResult &result =
 outcome.GetResult();
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart> parts =
 result.GetObjectParts().GetParts();
```

```
                for (const Aws::S3::Model::ObjectPart &part: parts) {
                    switch (hashMethod) {
                        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT: // Default is not supported.
 NOLINT(*-branch-clone)
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5: // MD5 is not supported.
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA1());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumSHA256());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32());
                            break;
                        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
                            partHashes->push_back(part.GetChecksumCRC32C());
                            break;
                        default:
                            std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
                            return false;
                    }
                }
            } else {
                std::cerr << "Error retrieving object attributes for object parts."
 <<
                          outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return true;
}

//! Verifies the hashing results between the retrieved and local hashes.
/*!
 \param retrievedHash The hash value retrieved from the remote source.
 \param localHash The hash value calculated locally.
 \param uploadtype The type of upload (e.g., "multipart", "single-part").
 \param hashMethod The hashing method used (e.g., MD5, SHA-256).
 \param retrievedPartHashes (Optional) The list of hashes for the individual parts
 retrieved from the remote source.
```

```
 \param localPartHashes (Optional) The list of hashes for the individual parts
 calculated locally.
 */
void AwsDoc::S3::verifyHashingResults(const Aws::String &retrievedHash,
                                       const Hasher &localHash,
                                       const Aws::String &uploadtype,
                                       HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                       const std::vector<Aws::String>
 &retrievedPartHashes,
                                       const std::vector<Aws::String>
 &localPartHashes) {
    std::cout << "For " << uploadtype << " retrieved hash is " << retrievedHash <<
 std::endl;
    if (!retrievedPartHashes.empty()) {
        std::cout << retrievedPartHashes.size() << " part hash(es) were also
 retrieved."
                  << std::endl;
        for (auto &retrievedPartHash: retrievedPartHashes) {
            std::cout << "  Part hash " << retrievedPartHash << std::endl;
        }
    }
    Aws::String hashString;
    if (hashMethod == MD5) {
        hashString = localHash.getHexHashString();
        if (!localPartHashes.empty()) {
            hashString += "-" + std::to_string(localPartHashes.size());
        }
    } else {
        hashString = localHash.getBase64HashString();
    }

    bool allMatch = true;
    if (hashString != retrievedHash) {
        std::cerr << "For " << uploadtype << ", the main hashes do not match" <<
 std::endl;
        std::cerr << "Local hash- '" << hashString << "'" << std::endl;
        std::cerr << "Remote hash - '" << retrievedHash << "'" << std::endl;
        allMatch = false;
    }

    if (hashMethod != MD5) {
        if (localPartHashes.size() != retrievedPartHashes.size()) {
            std::cerr << "For " << uploadtype << ", the number of part hashes do not
 match" << std::endl;
```

```
            std::cerr << "Local number of hashes- '" << localPartHashes.size() <<
 "'"
                      << std::endl;
            std::cerr << "Remote number of hashes - '"
                      << retrievedPartHashes.size()
                      << "'" << std::endl;
        }

        for (int i = 0; i < localPartHashes.size(); ++i) {
            if (localPartHashes[i] != retrievedPartHashes[i]) {
                std::cerr << "For " << uploadtype << ", the part hashes do not match
 for part " << i + 1
                          << "." << std::endl;
                std::cerr << "Local hash- '" << localPartHashes[i] << "'"
                          << std::endl;
                std::cerr << "Remote hash - '" << retrievedPartHashes[i] << "'"
                          << std::endl;
                allMatch = false;
            }
        }
    }

    if (allMatch) {
        std::cout << "For " << uploadtype << ", locally and remotely calculated
 hashes all match!" << std::endl;
    }

}

static void transferManagerErrorCallback(const Aws::Transfer::TransferManager *,
                                         const std::shared_ptr<const
 Aws::Transfer::TransferHandle> &,
                                         const
 Aws::Client::AWSError<Aws::S3::S3Errors> &err) {
    std::cerr << "Error during transfer: '" << err.GetMessage() << "'" << std::endl;
}

static void transferManagerStatusCallback(const Aws::Transfer::TransferManager *,
                                          const std::shared_ptr<const
 Aws::Transfer::TransferHandle> &handle) {
    if (handle->GetStatus() == Aws::Transfer::TransferStatus::IN_PROGRESS) {
        std::cout << "Bytes transferred: " << handle->GetBytesTransferred() <<
 std::endl;
    }
```

```
}

//! Routine which uploads an object to an S3 bucket using the AWS C++ SDK's Transfer
 Manager.
/*!
   \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
   \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash value.
   \param useDefaultHashMethod: A flag indicating whether to use the default hash
 method or the one specified in the hashMethod parameter.
   \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool
AwsDoc::S3::doTransferManagerUpload(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String
 &key,
                                    AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                    bool useDefaultHashMethod,
                                    const std::shared_ptr<Aws::S3::S3Client>
 &client) {
    std::shared_ptr<Aws::Utils::Threading::PooledThreadExecutor> executor =
 Aws::MakeShared<Aws::Utils::Threading::PooledThreadExecutor>(
            "executor", 25);
    Aws::Transfer::TransferManagerConfiguration transfer_config(executor.get());
    transfer_config.s3Client = client;
    transfer_config.bufferSize = UPLOAD_BUFFER_SIZE;
    if (!useDefaultHashMethod) {
        if (hashMethod == MD5) {
            transfer_config.computeContentMD5 = true;
        } else {
            transfer_config.checksumAlgorithm = getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(
                    hashMethod);
        }
    }
    transfer_config.errorCallback = transferManagerErrorCallback;
    transfer_config.transferStatusUpdatedCallback = transferManagerStatusCallback;

    std::shared_ptr<Aws::Transfer::TransferManager> transfer_manager =
 Aws::Transfer::TransferManager::Create(
            transfer_config);

    std::cout << "Uploading the file..." << std::endl;
    std::shared_ptr<Aws::Transfer::TransferHandle> uploadHandle = transfer_manager-
>UploadFile(MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE,
```

```
            bucket, key,

            "text/plain",

            Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String>());
    uploadHandle->WaitUntilFinished();
    bool success =
            uploadHandle->GetStatus() == Aws::Transfer::TransferStatus::COMPLETED;
    if (!success) {
        Aws::Client::AWSError<Aws::S3::S3Errors> err = uploadHandle->GetLastError();
        std::cerr << "File upload failed:  " << err.GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return success;
}

//! Routine which calculates the hash values for each part of a file being uploaded
 to an S3 bucket.
/*!
   \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash values.
   \param fileName: The path to the file for which the part hashes will be
 calculated.
   \param bufferSize: The size of the buffer to use when reading the file.
   \param[out] hashDataResult: The Hasher object that will store the concatenated
 hash value.
   \param[out] partHashes: The vector that will store the calculated hash values for
 each part of the file.
   \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::calculatePartHashesForFile(AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                            const Aws::String &fileName,
                                            size_t bufferSize,
                                            AwsDoc::S3::Hasher &hashDataResult,
                                            std::vector<Aws::String> &partHashes) {
    std::ifstream fileStream(fileName.c_str(), std::ifstream::binary);
    fileStream.seekg(0, std::ifstream::end);
    size_t objectSize = fileStream.tellg();
    fileStream.seekg(0, std::ifstream::beg);
    std::vector<unsigned char> totalHashBuffer;
    size_t uploadedBytes = 0;


    while (uploadedBytes < objectSize) {
```

```
        std::vector<unsigned char> buffer(bufferSize);
        std::streamsize bytesToRead =
 static_cast<std::streamsize>(std::min(buffer.size(), objectSize - uploadedBytes));
        fileStream.read((char *) buffer.data(), bytesToRead);
        Aws::Utils::Stream::PreallocatedStreamBuf
 preallocatedStreamBuf(buffer.data(),

 bytesToRead);
        std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> body =
                Aws::MakeShared<Aws::IOStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                               &preallocatedStreamBuf);
        Hasher hasher;
        if (!hasher.calculateObjectHash(*body, hashMethod)) {
            std::cerr << "Error calculating hash." << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
        Aws::String base64HashString = hasher.getBase64HashString();
        partHashes.push_back(base64HashString);

        Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer hashBuffer = hasher.getByteBufferHash();

        totalHashBuffer.insert(totalHashBuffer.end(),
 hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData(),
                               hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData() +
 hashBuffer.GetLength());

        uploadedBytes += bytesToRead;
    }

    return hashDataResult.calculateObjectHash(totalHashBuffer, hashMethod);
}

//! Create a multipart upload.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return Aws::String: Upload ID or empty string if failed.
*/
Aws::String
AwsDoc::S3::createMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket, const Aws::String &key,
                                  Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm
 checksumAlgorithm,
                                  const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
```

```
    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);

    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }

    Aws::S3::Model::CreateMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CreateMultipartUpload(request);

    Aws::String uploadID;
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        uploadID = outcome.GetResult().GetUploadId();
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return uploadID;
}

//! Upload a part to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param partNumber:
    \param checksumAlgorithm: Checksum algorithm, ignored when NOT_SET.
    \param calculatedHash: A data integrity hash to set, depending on the checksum
 algorithm,
                            ignored when it is an empty string.
    \param body: An shared_ptr IOStream of the data to be uploaded.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return UploadPartOutcome: The outcome.
*/

Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartOutcome AwsDoc::S3::uploadPart(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                                         const Aws::String &key,
                                                         const Aws::String
 &uploadID,
                                                         int partNumber,

 Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm checksumAlgorithm,
```

```
                                                                const Aws::String
 &calculatedHash,
                                                                const
 std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &body,
                                                                const Aws::S3::S3Client
 &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetPartNumber(partNumber);
    if (checksumAlgorithm != Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET) {
        request.SetChecksumAlgorithm(checksumAlgorithm);
    }
    request.SetBody(body);

    if (!calculatedHash.empty()) {
        switch (checksumAlgorithm) {
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET:
                request.SetContentMD5(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32C:
                request.SetChecksumCRC32C(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA1:
                request.SetChecksumSHA1(calculatedHash);
                break;
            case Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA256:
                request.SetChecksumSHA256(calculatedHash);
                break;
        }
    }

    return client.UploadPart(request);
}

//! Abort a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
```

```
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/

bool AwsDoc::S3::abortMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                      const Aws::String &key,
                                      const Aws::String &uploadID,
                                      const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);

    Aws::S3::Model::AbortMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.AbortMultipartUpload(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Multipart upload aborted." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error aborting multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Complete a multipart upload to an S3 bucket.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param uploadID: An upload ID string.
    \param parts: A vector of CompleteParts.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome: The request outcome.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome
 AwsDoc::S3::completeMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,

 const Aws::String &key,

 const Aws::String &uploadID,

 const Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart> &parts,
```

```
 const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
    Aws::S3::Model::CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload;
    completedMultipartUpload.SetParts(parts);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadRequest request;
    request.SetBucket(bucket);
    request.SetKey(key);
    request.SetUploadId(uploadID);
    request.SetMultipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload);

    Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome outcome =
            client.CompleteMultipartUpload(request);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error completing multipart upload: " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome;
}

//! Routine which performs a multi-part upload.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object will be uploaded.
    \param key: The unique identifier (key) for the object within the S3 bucket.
    \param hashMethod: The hashing algorithm to use when calculating the hash value.
    \param ioStream: An IOStream for the data to be uploaded.
    \param useDefaultHashMethod: A flag indicating whether to use the default hash
 method or the one specified in the hashMethod parameter.
    \param[out] hashDataResult: The Hasher object that will store the concatenated
 hash value.
    \param[out] partHashes: The vector that will store the calculated hash values
 for each part of the file.
    \param client: The S3 client instance used to perform the upload operation.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::doMultipartUpload(const Aws::String &bucket,
                                   const Aws::String &key,
                                   AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod,
                                   const std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> &ioStream,
                                   bool useDefaultHashMethod,
                                   AwsDoc::S3::Hasher &hashDataResult,
                                   std::vector<Aws::String> &partHashes,
                                   const Aws::S3::S3Client &client) {
```

```
   // Get object size.
   ioStream->seekg(0, ioStream->end);
   size_t objectSize = ioStream->tellg();
   ioStream->seekg(0, ioStream->beg);

   Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm checksumAlgorithm =
Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET;
   if (!useDefaultHashMethod) {
       if (hashMethod != MD5) {
           checksumAlgorithm = getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(hashMethod);
       }
   }
   Aws::String uploadID = createMultipartUpload(bucket, key, checksumAlgorithm,
client);
   if (uploadID.empty()) {
       return false;
   }

   std::vector<unsigned char> totalHashBuffer;
   bool uploadSucceeded = true;
   std::streamsize uploadedBytes = 0;
   int partNumber = 1;
   Aws::Vector<Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart> parts;
   while (uploadedBytes < objectSize) {
       std::cout << "Uploading part " << partNumber << "." << std::endl;

       std::vector<unsigned char> buffer(UPLOAD_BUFFER_SIZE);
       std::streamsize bytesToRead =
static_cast<std::streamsize>(std::min(buffer.size(),

objectSize - uploadedBytes));
       ioStream->read((char *) buffer.data(), bytesToRead);
       Aws::Utils::Stream::PreallocatedStreamBuf
preallocatedStreamBuf(buffer.data(),

bytesToRead);
       std::shared_ptr<Aws::IOStream> body =
               Aws::MakeShared<Aws::IOStream>("SampleAllocationTag",
                                              &preallocatedStreamBuf);

       Hasher hasher;
       if (!hasher.calculateObjectHash(*body, hashMethod)) {
           std::cerr << "Error calculating hash." << std::endl;
           uploadSucceeded = false;
```

```
            break;
        }

        Aws::String base64HashString = hasher.getBase64HashString();
        partHashes.push_back(base64HashString);

        Aws::Utils::ByteBuffer hashBuffer = hasher.getByteBufferHash();

        totalHashBuffer.insert(totalHashBuffer.end(),
hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData(),
                               hashBuffer.GetUnderlyingData() +
hashBuffer.GetLength());

        Aws::String calculatedHash;
        if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
            calculatedHash = base64HashString;
        }
        Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartOutcome uploadPartOutcome = uploadPart(bucket,
key, uploadID, partNumber,

checksumAlgorithm, base64HashString, body,
                                                                        client);
        if (uploadPartOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::S3::Model::UploadPartResult &uploadPartResult =
uploadPartOutcome.GetResult();
            Aws::S3::Model::CompletedPart completedPart;
            completedPart.SetETag(uploadPartResult.GetETag());
            completedPart.SetPartNumber(partNumber);
            switch (hashMethod) {
                case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
                    break; // Do nothing.
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:

completedPart.SetChecksumSHA1(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumSHA1());
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:

completedPart.SetChecksumSHA256(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumSHA256());
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:

completedPart.SetChecksumCRC32(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumCRC32());
                    break;
                case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
```

```
completedPart.SetChecksumCRC32C(uploadPartResult.GetChecksumCRC32C());
                    break;
                default:
                    std::cerr << "Unhandled hash method for completedPart." <<
std::endl;
                    break;
            }

            parts.push_back(completedPart);
        } else {
            std::cerr << "Error uploading part. " <<
                      uploadPartOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            uploadSucceeded = false;
            break;
        }

        uploadedBytes += bytesToRead;
        partNumber++;
    }

    if (!uploadSucceeded) {
        abortMultipartUpload(bucket, key, uploadID, client);
        return false;
    } else {

        Aws::S3::Model::CompleteMultipartUploadOutcome
completeMultipartUploadOutcome = completeMultipartUpload(bucket,

                                 key,

                                 uploadID,

                                 parts,

                                 client);

        if (completeMultipartUploadOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Multipart upload completed." << std::endl;
            if (!hashDataResult.calculateObjectHash(totalHashBuffer, hashMethod)) {
                std::cerr << "Error calculating hash." << std::endl;
                return false;
            }
        } else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error completing multipart upload." <<
                      completeMultipartUploadOutcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
        }

        return completeMultipartUploadOutcome.IsSuccess();
    }
}

//! Routine which retrieves the string for a HASH_METHOD constant.
/*!
    \param: hashMethod: A HASH_METHOD constant.
    \return: String: A string description of the hash method.
*/
Aws::String AwsDoc::S3::stringForHashMethod(AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod) {
    switch (hashMethod) {
        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT:
            return "Default";
        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
            return "MD5";
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
            return "SHA1";
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
            return "SHA256";
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
            return "CRC32";
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
            return "CRC32C";
        default:
            return "Unknown";
    }
}

//! Routine that returns the ChecksumAlgorithm for a HASH_METHOD constant.
/*!
    \param: hashMethod: A HASH_METHOD constant.
    \return: ChecksumAlgorithm: The ChecksumAlgorithm enum.
*/
Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm
AwsDoc::S3::getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod(AwsDoc::S3::HASH_METHOD hashMethod) {
    Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm result =
 Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::NOT_SET;
    switch (hashMethod) {
        case AwsDoc::S3::DEFAULT:
```

```
            std::cerr << "getChecksumAlgorithmForHashMethod- DEFAULT is not valid."
 << std::endl;
            break;  // Default is not supported.
        case AwsDoc::S3::MD5:
            break; // Ignore MD5.
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA1:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA1;
            break;
        case AwsDoc::S3::SHA256:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::SHA256;
            break;
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32;
            break;
        case AwsDoc::S3::CRC32C:
            result = Aws::S3::Model::ChecksumAlgorithm::CRC32C;
            break;
        default:
            std::cerr << "Unknown hash method." << std::endl;
            break;

    }

    return result;
}

//! Routine which cleans up after the example is complete.
/*!
    \param bucket: The name of the S3 bucket where the object was uploaded.
    \param clientConfiguration: The client configuration for the S3 client.
    \return bool: Function succeeded.
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::cleanUp(const Aws::String &bucketName,
                         const Aws::S3::S3ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration)
 {

    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> keysResult;
    bool result = true;
    if (AwsDoc::S3::listObjects(bucketName, keysResult, clientConfiguration)) {
        if (!keysResult.empty()) {
            result = AwsDoc::S3::deleteObjects(keysResult, bucketName,
                                               clientConfiguration);
        }
    } else {
```

```
        result = false;
    }

    return result && AwsDoc::S3::deleteBucket(bucketName, clientConfiguration);
}

//! Console interaction introducing the workflow.
/*!
  \param bucketName: The name of the S3 bucket to use.
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::introductoryExplanations(const Aws::String &bucketName) {

    std::cout
            << "Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) object
 integrity workflow."
            << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout
            << "This workflow demonstrates how Amazon S3 uses checksum values to
 verify the integrity of data\n";
    std::cout << "uploaded to Amazon S3 buckets" << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The AWS SDK for C++ automatically handles checksums.\n";
    std::cout
            << "By default it calculates a checksum that is uploaded with an object.
\n"
            << "The default checksum algorithm for PutObject and MultiPart upload is
 an MD5 hash.\n"
            << "The default checksum algorithm for TransferManager uploads is a
 CRC32 checksum."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "You can override the default behavior, requiring one of the
 following checksums,\n";
    std::cout << "MD5, CRC32, CRC32C, SHA-1 or SHA-256." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "You can also set the checksum hash value, instead of letting the
 SDK calculate the value."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/
latest/userguide/checking-object-integrity.html."
            << std::endl;

    std::cout
```

```
            << "This workflow will locally compute checksums for files uploaded to
 an Amazon S3 bucket,\n";
    std::cout << "even when the SDK also computes the checksum." << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "This is done to provide demonstration code for how the checksums are
 calculated."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "A bucket named '" << bucketName << "' will be created for the
 object uploads."
              << std::endl;
}

//! Console interaction which explains the PutObject results.
/*!
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::explainPutObjectResults() {

    std::cout << "The upload was successful.\n";
    std::cout << "If the checksums had not matched, the upload would have failed."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The checksums calculated by the server have been retrieved using the
 GetObjectAttributes."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The locally calculated checksums have been verified against the
 retrieved checksums."
            << std::endl;
}

//! Console interaction explaining transfer manager uploads.
/*!
  \param objectKey: The key for the object being uploaded.
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::introductoryTransferManagerUploadExplanations(
        const Aws::String &objectKey) {
    std::cout
            << "Now the workflow will demonstrate object integrity for
 TransferManager multi-part uploads."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "The AWS C++ SDK has a TransferManager class which simplifies
 multipart uploads."
            << std::endl;
```

```
    std::cout
            << "The following code lets the TransferManager handle much of the
 checksum configuration."
            << std::endl;

    std::cout << "An object with the key '" << objectKey
              << " will be uploaded by the TransferManager using a "
              << BUFFER_SIZE_IN_MEGABYTES << " MB buffer." << std::endl;
    if (gUseCalculatedChecksum) {
        std::cout << "For TransferManager uploads, this demo always lets the SDK
 calculate the hash value."
                  << std::endl;
    }

    pressEnterToContinue();
    printAsterisksLine();
}

//! Console interaction explaining multi-part uploads.
/*!
  \param objectKey: The key for the object being uploaded.
  \param chosenHashMethod: The hash method selected by the user.
*/
void AwsDoc::S3::multiPartUploadExplanations(const Aws::String &objectKey,
                                             HASH_METHOD chosenHashMethod) {
    std::cout
            << "Now we will provide an in-depth demonstration of multi-part
 uploading by calling the multi-part upload APIs directly."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "These are the same APIs used by the TransferManager when uploading
 large files."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "In the following code, the checksums are also calculated locally and
 then compared."
            << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "For multi-part uploads, a checksum is uploaded with each part. The
 final checksum is a concatenation of"
            << std::endl;
    std::cout << "the checksums for each part." << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "This is explained in the user guide, https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AmazonS3/latest/userguide/checking-object-integrity.html,\""
```

```
            << " in the section \"Using part-level checksums for multipart uploads
\"." << std::endl;

    std::cout << "Starting multipart upload of with hash method " <<
              stringForHashMethod(chosenHashMethod) << " uploading to with object
 key\n"
              << "'" << objectKey << "'," << std::endl;

}

//! Create a large file for doing multi-part uploads.
/*!
*/
bool AwsDoc::S3::createLargeFileIfNotExists() {
    // Generate a large file by writing this source file multiple times to a new
 file.
    if (std::filesystem::exists(MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE)) {
        return true;
    }

    std::ofstream newFile(MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE, std::ios::out

                                                | std::ios::binary);

    if (!newFile) {
        std::cerr << "createLargeFileIfNotExists- Error creating file " <<
 MULTI_PART_TEST_FILE <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }

    std::ifstream input(TEST_FILE, std::ios::in

                                    | std::ios::binary);
    if (!input) {
        std::cerr << "Error opening file " << TEST_FILE <<
                  std::endl;
        return false;
    }
    std::stringstream buffer;
    buffer << input.rdbuf();

    input.close();
```

```
    while (newFile.tellp() < LARGE_FILE_SIZE && !newFile.bad()) {
        buffer.seekg(std::stringstream::beg);
        newFile << buffer.rdbuf();
    }

    newFile.close();

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - AbortMultipartUpload
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObjectAttributes
  - PutObject
  - UploadPart

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve an AWS Secrets Manager encrypted secret.
/*!
  \param secretID: The ID for the secret.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SecretsManager::getSecretValue(const Aws::String &secretID,
                                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SecretsManager::SecretsManagerClient
 secretsManagerClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SecretsManager::Model::GetSecretValueRequest request;
    request.SetSecretId(secretID);

    Aws::SecretsManager::Model::GetSecretValueOutcome getSecretValueOutcome =
 secretsManagerClient.GetSecretValue(
            request);
    if (getSecretValueOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Secret is: "
                  << getSecretValueOutcome.GetResult().GetSecretString() <<
 std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Failed with Error: " << getSecretValueOutcome.GetError()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return getSecretValueOutcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Amazon SES examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateReceiptFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptFilter`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt filter..
```

```
/*!
  \param receiptFilterName: The name for the receipt filter.
  \param cidr: IP address or IP address range in Classless Inter-Domain Routing
 (CIDR) notation.
  \param policy: Block or allow enum of type ReceiptFilterPolicy.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createReceiptFilter(const Aws::String &receiptFilterName,
                                      const Aws::String &cidr,
                                      Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptFilterPolicy policy,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptFilterRequest createReceiptFilterRequest;
    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptFilter receiptFilter;
    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptIpFilter receiptIpFilter;
    receiptIpFilter.SetCidr(cidr);
    receiptIpFilter.SetPolicy(policy);
    receiptFilter.SetName(receiptFilterName);
    receiptFilter.SetIpFilter(receiptIpFilter);
    createReceiptFilterRequest.SetFilter(receiptFilter);
    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptFilterOutcome createReceiptFilterOutcome =
 sesClient.CreateReceiptFilter(
            createReceiptFilterRequest);
    if (createReceiptFilterOutcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created receipt filter." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating receipt filter: " <<
                  createReceiptFilterOutcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return createReceiptFilterOutcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateReceiptRule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptRule`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule.
/*!
  \param receiptRuleName: The name for the receipt rule.
  \param s3BucketName: The name of the S3 bucket for incoming mail.
  \param s3ObjectKeyPrefix: The prefix for the objects in the S3 bucket.
  \param ruleSetName: The name of the rule set where the receipt rule is added.
  \param recipients: Aws::Vector of recipients.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createReceiptRule(const Aws::String &receiptRuleName,
                                    const Aws::String &s3BucketName,
                                    const Aws::String &s3ObjectKeyPrefix,
                                    const Aws::String &ruleSetName,
                                    const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &recipients,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptRuleRequest createReceiptRuleRequest;

    Aws::SES::Model::S3Action s3Action;
    s3Action.SetBucketName(s3BucketName);
    s3Action.SetObjectKeyPrefix(s3ObjectKeyPrefix);

    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptAction receiptAction;
    receiptAction.SetS3Action(s3Action);

    Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptRule receiptRule;
    receiptRule.SetName(receiptRuleName);
    receiptRule.WithRecipients(recipients);

    Aws::Vector<Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptAction> receiptActionList;
    receiptActionList.emplace_back(receiptAction);
```

```
    receiptRule.SetActions(receiptActionList);

    createReceiptRuleRequest.SetRuleSetName(ruleSetName);
    createReceiptRuleRequest.SetRule(receiptRule);

    auto outcome = sesClient.CreateReceiptRule(createReceiptRuleRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created receipt rule." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating receipt rule. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateReceiptRuleSet`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule set.
/*!
  \param ruleSetName: The name of the rule set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
```

```
bool AwsDoc::SES::createReceiptRuleSet(const Aws::String &ruleSetName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptRuleSetRequest createReceiptRuleSetRequest;

    createReceiptRuleSetRequest.SetRuleSetName(ruleSetName);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateReceiptRuleSetOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.CreateReceiptRuleSet(
            createReceiptRuleSetRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created receipt rule set." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating receipt rule set. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTemplate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) template.
```

```
/*!
  \param templateName: The name of the template.
  \param htmlPart: The HTML body of the email.
  \param subjectPart: The subject line of the email.
  \param textPart: The plain text version of the email.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::createTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                                 const Aws::String &htmlPart,
                                 const Aws::String &subjectPart,
                                 const Aws::String &textPart,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateTemplateRequest createTemplateRequest;
    Aws::SES::Model::Template aTemplate;

    aTemplate.SetTemplateName(templateName);
    aTemplate.SetHtmlPart(htmlPart);
    aTemplate.SetSubjectPart(subjectPart);
    aTemplate.SetTextPart(textPart);

    createTemplateRequest.SetTemplate(aTemplate);

    Aws::SES::Model::CreateTemplateOutcome outcome = sesClient.CreateTemplate(
            createTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created template." << templateName << "."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating template. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentity`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete the specified identity (an email address or a domain).
/*!
  \param identity: The identity to delete.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteIdentity(const Aws::String &identity,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteIdentityRequest deleteIdentityRequest;

    deleteIdentityRequest.SetIdentity(identity);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteIdentityOutcome outcome = sesClient.DeleteIdentity(
            deleteIdentityRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted identity." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting identity. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptFilter`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt filter.
/*!
  \param receiptFilterName: The name for the receipt filter.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteReceiptFilter(const Aws::String &receiptFilterName,
                                      const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptFilterRequest deleteReceiptFilterRequest;

    deleteReceiptFilterRequest.SetFilterName(receiptFilterName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptFilterOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.DeleteReceiptFilter(
            deleteReceiptFilterRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted receipt filter." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting receipt filter. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptRule`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule.
/*!
  \param receiptRuleName: The name for the receipt rule.
  \param receiptRuleSetName: The name for the receipt rule set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteReceiptRule(const Aws::String &receiptRuleName,
                                    const Aws::String &receiptRuleSetName,
                                    const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleRequest deleteReceiptRuleRequest;

    deleteReceiptRuleRequest.SetRuleName(receiptRuleName);
    deleteReceiptRuleRequest.SetRuleSetName(receiptRuleSetName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleOutcome outcome = sesClient.DeleteReceiptRule(
            deleteReceiptRuleRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted receipt rule." << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    else {
        std::cout << "Error deleting receipt rule. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptRuleSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) receipt rule set.
/*!
  \param receiptRuleSetName: The name for the receipt rule set.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteReceiptRuleSet(const Aws::String &receiptRuleSetName,
                                       const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleSetRequest deleteReceiptRuleSetRequest;

    deleteReceiptRuleSetRequest.SetRuleSetName(receiptRuleSetName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteReceiptRuleSetOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.DeleteReceiptRuleSet(
```

```
            deleteReceiptRuleSetRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted receipt rule set." << std::endl;
    }

    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting receipt rule set. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTemplate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) template.
/*!
  \param templateName: The name for the template.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::deleteTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteTemplateRequest deleteTemplateRequest;
```

```
    deleteTemplateRequest.SetTemplateName(templateName);

    Aws::SES::Model::DeleteTemplateOutcome outcome = sesClient.DeleteTemplate(
            deleteTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted template." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting template. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTemplate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Get a template's attributes.
/*!
  \param templateName: The name for the template.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::getTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
```

```
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::GetTemplateRequest getTemplateRequest;

    getTemplateRequest.SetTemplateName(templateName);

    Aws::SES::Model::GetTemplateOutcome outcome = sesClient.GetTemplate(
            getTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully got template." << std::endl;
    }

    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting template. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the identities associated with this account.
/*!
  \param identityType: The identity type enum. "NOT_SET" is a valid option.
  \param identities; A vector to receive the retrieved identities.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
```

```
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::listIdentities(Aws::SES::Model::IdentityType identityType,
                                 Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &identities,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::ListIdentitiesRequest listIdentitiesRequest;

    if (identityType != Aws::SES::Model::IdentityType::NOT_SET) {
        listIdentitiesRequest.SetIdentityType(identityType);
    }

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for paginated results.
    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listIdentitiesRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
        Aws::SES::Model::ListIdentitiesOutcome outcome = sesClient.ListIdentities(
                listIdentitiesRequest);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const auto &retrievedIdentities = outcome.GetResult().GetIdentities();
            if (!retrievedIdentities.empty()) {
                identities.insert(identities.cend(), retrievedIdentities.cbegin(),
                                  retrievedIdentities.cend());
            }
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Error listing identities. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            return false;
        }
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ListReceiptFilters

The following code example shows how to use `ListReceiptFilters`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! List the receipt filters associated with this account.
/*!
  \param filters; A vector of "ReceiptFilter" to receive the retrieved filters.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SES::listReceiptFilters(Aws::Vector<Aws::SES::Model::ReceiptFilter>
 &filters,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SES::Model::ListReceiptFiltersRequest listReceiptFiltersRequest;

    Aws::SES::Model::ListReceiptFiltersOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.ListReceiptFilters(
            listReceiptFiltersRequest);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        auto &retrievedFilters = outcome.GetResult().GetFilters();
        if (!retrievedFilters.empty()) {
            filters.insert(filters.cend(), retrievedFilters.cbegin(),
                           retrievedFilters.cend());
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error retrieving IP address filters: "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ListReceiptFilters in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

SendEmail

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Send an email to a list of recipients.
/*!
  \param recipients; Vector of recipient email addresses.
  \param subject: Email subject.
  \param htmlBody: Email body as HTML. At least one body data is required.
  \param textBody: Email body as plain text. At least one body data is required.
  \param senderEmailAddress: Email address of sender. Ignored if empty string.
  \param ccAddresses: Vector of cc addresses. Ignored if empty.
  \param replyToAddress: Reply to email address. Ignored if empty string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::sendEmail(const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &recipients,
                            const Aws::String &subject,
                            const Aws::String &htmlBody,
                            const Aws::String &textBody,
                            const Aws::String &senderEmailAddress,
                            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &ccAddresses,
                            const Aws::String &replyToAddress,
                            const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::Destination destination;
    if (!ccAddresses.empty()) {
        destination.WithCcAddresses(ccAddresses);
```

```
    }
    if (!recipients.empty()) {
        destination.WithToAddresses(recipients);
    }

    Aws::SES::Model::Body message_body;
    if (!htmlBody.empty()) {
        message_body.SetHtml(
                Aws::SES::Model::Content().WithCharset("UTF-8").WithData(htmlBody));
    }

    if (!textBody.empty()) {
        message_body.SetText(
                Aws::SES::Model::Content().WithCharset("UTF-8").WithData(textBody));
    }

    Aws::SES::Model::Message message;
    message.SetBody(message_body);
    message.SetSubject(
            Aws::SES::Model::Content().WithCharset("UTF-8").WithData(subject));

    Aws::SES::Model::SendEmailRequest sendEmailRequest;
    sendEmailRequest.SetDestination(destination);
    sendEmailRequest.SetMessage(message);
    if (!senderEmailAddress.empty()) {
        sendEmailRequest.SetSource(senderEmailAddress);
    }
    if (!replyToAddress.empty()) {
        sendEmailRequest.AddReplyToAddresses(replyToAddress);
    }

    auto outcome = sesClient.SendEmail(sendEmailRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully sent message with ID "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId()
                  << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error sending message. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`SendTemplatedEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Send a templated email to a list of recipients.
/*!
  \param recipients; Vector of recipient email addresses.
  \param templateName: The name of the template to use.
  \param templateData: Map of key-value pairs for replacing text in template.
  \param senderEmailAddress: Email address of sender. Ignored if empty string.
  \param ccAddresses: Vector of cc addresses. Ignored if empty.
  \param replyToAddress: Reply to email address. Ignored if empty string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::sendTemplatedEmail(const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &recipients,
                                     const Aws::String &templateName,
                                     const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String>
 &templateData,
                                     const Aws::String &senderEmailAddress,
                                     const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &ccAddresses,
                                     const Aws::String &replyToAddress,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::Destination destination;
    if (!ccAddresses.empty()) {
        destination.WithCcAddresses(ccAddresses);
```

```
    }
    if (!recipients.empty()) {
        destination.WithToAddresses(recipients);
    }

    Aws::SES::Model::SendTemplatedEmailRequest sendTemplatedEmailRequest;
    sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetDestination(destination);
    sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetTemplate(templateName);

    std::ostringstream templateDataStream;
    templateDataStream << "{";
    size_t dataCount = 0;
    for (auto &pair: templateData) {
        templateDataStream << "\"" << pair.first << "\":\"" << pair.second << "\"";
        dataCount++;
        if (dataCount < templateData.size()) {
            templateDataStream << ",";
        }
    }
    templateDataStream << "}";

    sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetTemplateData(templateDataStream.str());

    if (!senderEmailAddress.empty()) {
        sendTemplatedEmailRequest.SetSource(senderEmailAddress);
    }
    if (!replyToAddress.empty()) {
        sendTemplatedEmailRequest.AddReplyToAddresses(replyToAddress);
    }

    auto outcome = sesClient.SendTemplatedEmail(sendTemplatedEmailRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully sent templated message with ID "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId()
                  << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error sending templated message. "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`UpdateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTemplate`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Update an Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) template.
/*!
  \param templateName: The name of the template.
  \param htmlPart: The HTML body of the email.
  \param subjectPart: The subject line of the email.
  \param textPart: The plain text version of the email.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::updateTemplate(const Aws::String &templateName,
                                 const Aws::String &htmlPart,
                                 const Aws::String &subjectPart,
                                 const Aws::String &textPart,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SES::Model::Template templateValues;

    templateValues.SetTemplateName(templateName);
    templateValues.SetSubjectPart(subjectPart);
    templateValues.SetHtmlPart(htmlPart);
    templateValues.SetTextPart(textPart);

    Aws::SES::Model::UpdateTemplateRequest updateTemplateRequest;
```

```
    updateTemplateRequest.SetTemplate(templateValues);

    Aws::SES::Model::UpdateTemplateOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.UpdateTemplate(updateTemplateRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated template." << std::endl;
    } else {
        std::cerr << "Error updating template. " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTemplate in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`VerifyEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Add an email address to the list of identities associated with this account and
//! initiate verification.
/*!
  \param emailAddress; The email address to add.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SES::verifyEmailIdentity(const Aws::String &emailAddress,
                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration)
{
    Aws::SES::SESClient sesClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::SES::Model::VerifyEmailIdentityRequest verifyEmailIdentityRequest;

    verifyEmailIdentityRequest.SetEmailAddress(emailAddress);

    Aws::SES::Model::VerifyEmailIdentityOutcome outcome =
 sesClient.VerifyEmailIdentity(verifyEmailIdentityRequest);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess())
    {
        std::cout << "Email verification initiated." << std::endl;
    }

    else
    {
        std::cerr << "Error initiating email verification. " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for C++

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a C++ REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)
```

```
# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS sns)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_sns")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)

# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif ()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_sns.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_sns.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/sns/SNSClient.h>
#include <aws/sns/model/ListTopicsRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello SNS" starter application which initializes an Amazon Simple
 Notification
 *  Service (Amazon SNS) client and lists the SNS topics in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_sns'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Topic> allTopics;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated response.
        do {
            Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsRequest request;

            if (!nextToken.empty()) {
                request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
            }

            const Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsOutcome outcome = snsClient.ListTopics(
                    request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Topic> &paginatedTopics =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetTopics();
```

```
                if (!paginatedTopics.empty()) {
                    allTopics.insert(allTopics.cend(), paginatedTopics.cbegin(),
                                     paginatedTopics.cend());
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error listing topics " <<
 outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                return 1;
            }

            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        } while (!nextToken.empty());

        std::cout << "Hello Amazon SNS! You have " << allTopics.size() << " topic"
                  << (allTopics.size() == 1 ? "" : "s") << " in your account."
                  << std::endl;

        if (!allTopics.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Here are your topic ARNs." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::SNS::Model::Topic &topic: allTopics) {
                std::cout << "  * " << topic.GetTopicArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }


    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Create an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
/*!
  \param topicName: An Amazon SNS topic name.
  \param topicARNResult: String to return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the
 topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::createTopic(const Aws::String &topicName,
                              Aws::String &topicARNResult,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicRequest request;
    request.SetName(topicName);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.CreateTopic(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        topicARNResult = outcome.GetResult().GetTopicArn();
        std::cout << "Successfully created an Amazon SNS topic " << topicName
                  << " with topic ARN '" << topicARNResult
                  << "'." << std::endl;

    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating topic " << topicName << ":" <<
```

```
                    outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
        topicARNResult.clear();
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::deleteTopic(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.DeleteTopic(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted the Amazon SNS topic " << topicARN <<
 std::endl;
```

```
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting topic " << topicARN << ":" <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve the default settings for sending SMS messages from your AWS account by
 using
//! Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SNS::getSMSType(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration)
 {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::GetSMSAttributesRequest request;
    //Set the request to only retrieve the DefaultSMSType setting.
    //Without the following line, GetSMSAttributes would retrieve all settings.
    request.AddAttributes("DefaultSMSType");
```

```
    const Aws::SNS::Model::GetSMSAttributesOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.GetSMSAttributes(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        const Aws::Map<Aws::String, Aws::String> attributes =
                outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
        if (!attributes.empty()) {
            for (auto const &att: attributes) {
                std::cout << att.first << ":  " << att.second << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cout
                    << "AwsDoc::SNS::getSMSType - an empty map of attributes was
 retrieved."
                    << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while getting SMS Type: '"
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << "'" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve the properties of an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::getTopicAttributes(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SNS::Model::GetTopicAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::GetTopicAttributesOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.GetTopicAttributes(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Topic Attributes:" << std::endl;
        for (auto const &attribute: outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes()) {
            std::cout << "  * " << attribute.first << " : " << attribute.second
                      << std::endl;
        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while getting Topic attributes "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve a list of Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 subscriptions.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::listSubscriptions(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated response.
    bool result = true;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Subscription> subscriptions;
    do {
        Aws::SNS::Model::ListSubscriptionsRequest request;

        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        const Aws::SNS::Model::ListSubscriptionsOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.ListSubscriptions(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::SNS::Model::Subscription> &newSubscriptions =
                    outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptions();
            subscriptions.insert(subscriptions.cend(), newSubscriptions.begin(),
                                 newSubscriptions.end());
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing subscriptions "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      <<
```

```
                        std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }

        nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    if (result) {
        if (subscriptions.empty()) {
            std::cout << "No subscriptions found" << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "Subscriptions list:" << std::endl;
            for (auto const &subscription: subscriptions) {
                std::cout << "  * " << subscription.GetSubscriptionArn() <<
 std::endl;
            }
        }
    }
    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Retrieve a list of Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topics.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
```

```
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SNS::listTopics(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration)
 {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated response.
    bool result = true;
    do {
        Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsRequest request;

        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            request.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }

        const Aws::SNS::Model::ListTopicsOutcome outcome = snsClient.ListTopics(
                request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Topics list:" << std::endl;
            for (auto const &topic: outcome.GetResult().GetTopics()) {
                std::cout << "  * " << topic.GetTopicArn() << std::endl;
            }
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing topics " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
 <<
                      std::endl;
            result = false;
            break;
        }

        nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Publish

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Send a message to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
/*!
  \param message: The message to publish.
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::publishToTopic(const Aws::String &message,
                                 const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
    request.SetMessage(message);
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Message published successfully with id '"
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId() << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while publishing message "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Publish a message with an attribute.

```
        static const Aws::String TONE_ATTRIBUTE("tone");
        static const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> TONES = {"cheerful", "funny",
"serious",
                                                       "sincere"};

        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
        Aws::String message = askQuestion("Enter a message text to publish.  ");
        request.SetMessage(message);

        if (filteringMessages && askYesNoQuestion(
                "Add an attribute to this message? (y/n) ")) {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < TONES.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "  " << (i + 1) << ". " << TONES[i] << std::endl;
            }
            int selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter a number for an attribute. ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));
            Aws::SNS::Model::MessageAttributeValue messageAttributeValue;
            messageAttributeValue.SetDataType("String");
            messageAttributeValue.SetStringValue(TONES[selection - 1]);
            request.AddMessageAttributes(TONE_ATTRIBUTE, messageAttributeValue);
        }

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Your message was successfully published." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Publish. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
```

```
            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`SetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

How to use Amazon SNS to set the DefaultSMSType attribute.

```
//! Set the default settings for sending SMS messages.
/*!
  \param smsType: The type of SMS message that you will send by default.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::setSMSType(const Aws::String &smsType,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SetSMSAttributesRequest request;
    request.AddAttributes("DefaultSMSType", smsType);
```

```
    const Aws::SNS::Model::SetSMSAttributesOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.SetSMSAttributes(
            request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "SMS Type set successfully " << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while setting SMS Type: '"
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << "'" << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Subscribe

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
//! Subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic with
 delivery to an email address.
/*!
  \param topicARN: An SNS topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
  \param emailAddress: An email address.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::subscribeEmail(const Aws::String &topicARN,
```

```
                                const Aws::String &emailAddress,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
    request.SetProtocol("email");
    request.SetEndpoint(emailAddress);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome = snsClient.Subscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Subscribed successfully." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subscription ARN '" <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn()
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while subscribing " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Subscribe a mobile application to a topic.

```
//! Subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic with
 delivery to a mobile app.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param endpointARN: The ARN for a mobile app or device endpoint.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SNS::subscribeApp(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                          const Aws::String &endpointARN,
                          const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);
```

```
    Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
    request.SetProtocol("application");
    request.SetEndpoint(endpointARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome = snsClient.Subscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Subscribed successfully." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subscription ARN '" <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn()
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while subscribing " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
//! Subscribe to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic with
 delivery to an AWS Lambda function.
/*!
  \param topicARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic.
  \param lambdaFunctionARN: The ARN for an AWS Lambda function.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::subscribeLambda(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                  const Aws::String &lambdaFunctionARN,
                                  const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
    request.SetProtocol("lambda");
```

```
    request.SetEndpoint(lambdaFunctionARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome = snsClient.Subscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Subscribed successfully." << std::endl;
        std::cout << "Subscription ARN '" <<
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn()
                  << "'." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while subscribing " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Subscribe an SQS queue to a topic.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
            request.SetProtocol("sqs");
            request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);

            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Subscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
 outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN << "."
                          << std::endl;
```

```
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
```

Subscribe with a filter to a topic.

```
        static const Aws::String TONE_ATTRIBUTE("tone");
        static const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> TONES = {"cheerful", "funny",
"serious",
                                                       "sincere"};

        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
            request.SetProtocol("sqs");
            request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);
            if (isFifoTopic) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout << "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters."
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout
                            << "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only
the filtered messages "
                            << "will be received in the queue." << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For information about message filtering, "
```

```
                              << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-
message-filtering.html"
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For this example, you can filter messages by a \""
                              << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attribute." << std::endl;
                }

                std::ostringstream ostringstream;
                ostringstream << "Filter messages for \"" << queueName
                              << "\"'s subscription to the topic \""
                              << topicName << "\"?  (y/n)";

                // Add filter if user answers yes.
                if (askYesNoQuestion(ostringstream.str())) {
                    Aws::String jsonPolicy = getFilterPolicyFromUser();
                    if (!jsonPolicy.empty()) {
                        filteringMessages = true;

                        std::cout << "This is the filter policy for this
subscription."
                                  << std::endl;
                        std::cout << jsonPolicy << std::endl;

                        request.AddAttributes("FilterPolicy", jsonPolicy);
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout
                                << "Because you did not select any attributes, no
filter "
                                << "will be added to this subscription." <<
std::endl;
                    }
                }
            }  // if (isFifoTopic)
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
snsClient.Subscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN << "."
```

```
                          << std::endl;
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }

//! Routine that lets the user select attributes for a subscription filter policy.
/*!
 \sa getFilterPolicyFromUser()
 \return Aws::String: The filter policy as JSON.
 */
Aws::String AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::getFilterPolicyFromUser() {
    std::cout
            << "You can filter messages by one or more of the following \""
            << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attributes." << std::endl;

    std::vector<Aws::String> filterSelections;
    int selection;
    do {
        for (size_t j = 0; j < TONES.size(); ++j) {
            std::cout << "  " << (j + 1) << ". " << TONES[j]
                      << std::endl;
        }
        selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                "Enter a number (or enter zero to stop adding more). ",
                0, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));

        if (selection != 0) {
            const Aws::String &selectedTone(TONES[selection - 1]);
            // Add the tone to the selection if it is not already added.
            if (std::find(filterSelections.begin(),
                          filterSelections.end(),
                          selectedTone)
```

```
                == filterSelections.end()) {
                filterSelections.push_back(selectedTone);
            }
        }
    } while (selection != 0);

    Aws::String result;
    if (!filterSelections.empty()) {
        std::ostringstream jsonPolicyStream;
        jsonPolicyStream << "{ \"" << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\": [";


        for (size_t j = 0; j < filterSelections.size(); ++j) {
            jsonPolicyStream << "\"" << filterSelections[j] << "\"";
            if (j < filterSelections.size() - 1) {
                jsonPolicyStream << ",";
            }
        }
        jsonPolicyStream << "] }";

        result = jsonPolicyStream.str();
    }

    return result;
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//! Delete a subscription to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic.
/*!
  \param subscriptionARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for an Amazon SNS topic
 subscription.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::unsubscribe(const Aws::String &subscriptionARN,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeRequest request;
    request.SetSubscriptionArn(subscriptionARN);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.Unsubscribe(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Unsubscribed successfully " << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while unsubscribing " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for C++

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Publish SMS: use Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send an SMS
 text message to a phone number.
 * Note: This requires additional AWS configuration prior to running example.
 *
 *  NOTE: When you start using Amazon SNS to send SMS messages, your AWS account is
 in the SMS sandbox and you can only
 *  use verified destination phone numbers. See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/
latest/dg/sns-sms-sandbox.html.
```

```
 *  NOTE: If destination is in the US, you also have an additional restriction that
 you have use a dedicated
 *  origination ID (phone number). You can request an origination number using
 Amazon Pinpoint for a fee.
 *  See https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/compute/provisioning-and-using-10dlc-
origination-numbers-with-amazon-sns/
 *  for more information.
 *
 *  <phone_number_value> input parameter uses E.164 format.
 *  For example, in United States, this input value should be of the form:
 +12223334444
 */

//! Send an SMS text message to a phone number.
/*!
  \param message: The message to publish.
  \param phoneNumber: The phone number of the recipient in E.164 format.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SNS::publishSms(const Aws::String &message,
                             const Aws::String &phoneNumber,
                             const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
    request.SetMessage(message);
    request.SetPhoneNumber(phoneNumber);

    const Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Message published successfully with message id, '"
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetMessageId() << "'."
                  << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error while publishing message "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                  << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Workflow for messaging with topics and queues using Amazon SNS and Amazon SQS.
/*!
 \param clientConfig Aws client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::messagingWithTopicsAndQueues(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    std::cout << "Welcome to messaging with topics and queues." << std::endl;
    printAsterisksLine();
    std::cout << "In this workflow, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe "
              << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES <<
              " SQS queues to the topic." << std::endl;
    std::cout
```

```
            << "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the "
            << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES << " queues." << std::endl;
    std::cout << "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queues."
              << std::endl;

    Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out)."
              << std::endl;
    std::cout
            << "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering."
            << std::endl;
    bool isFifoTopic = askYesNoQuestion(
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n) ");

    bool contentBasedDeduplication = false;
    Aws::String topicName;
    if (isFifoTopic) {
        printAsterisksLine();
        std::cout << "Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is
 supported."
                  << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or automatically
 generated "
                << "from content using a hash function." << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any
 message "
                << "published and determined to have the same deduplication ID, "
                << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted but
 not delivered."
                << std::endl;
        std::cout
                << "For more information about deduplication, "
                << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-
dedup.html."
                << std::endl;
```

```
        contentBasedDeduplication = askYesNoQuestion(
                "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a deduplication
ID? (y/n) ");
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueURLS;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> subscriptionARNS;

    Aws::String topicARN;
    {
        topicName = askQuestion("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ");

        // 1.  Create an Amazon SNS topic, either FIFO or non-FIFO.
        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicRequest request;

        if (isFifoTopic) {
            request.AddAttributes("FifoTopic", "true");
            if (contentBasedDeduplication) {
                request.AddAttributes("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }
            topicName = topicName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

            std::cout
                    << "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
appended to the topic name."
                    << std::endl;
        }

        request.SetName(topicName);

        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicOutcome outcome =
snsClient.CreateTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            topicARN = outcome.GetResult().GetTopicArn();
            std::cout << "Your new topic with the name '" << topicName
                      << "' and the topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN) " << std::endl;
            std::cout << "'" << topicARN << "' has been created." << std::endl;

        }
        else {
```

```
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::CreateTopic. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now you will create " << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES
              << " SQS queues to subscribe to the topic." << std::endl;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueNames;
    bool filteringMessages = false;
    bool first = true;
    for (int i = 1; i <= NUMBER_OF_QUEUES; ++i) {
        Aws::String queueURL;
        Aws::String queueName;
        {
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::ostringstream ostringstream;
            ostringstream << "Enter a name for " << (first ? "an" : "the next")
                          << " SQS queue. ";
            queueName = askQuestion(ostringstream.str());

            // 2.  Create an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueRequest request;
            if (isFifoTopic) {

request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::FifoQueue,
                                      "true");
                queueName = queueName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

                if (first) // Only explain this once.
                {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue, '.fifo'
must "
```

```
                            << "be appended to the queue name." << std::endl;
                    }
                }

                request.SetQueueName(queueName);
                queueNames.push_back(queueName);

                Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueOutcome outcome =
                        sqsClient.CreateQueue(request);

                if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    queueURL = outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl();
                    std::cout << "Your new SQS queue with the name '" << queueName
                              << "' and the queue URL " << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "'" << queueURL << "' has been created." << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr << "Error with SQS::CreateQueue. "
                              << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                              << std::endl;

                    cleanUp(topicARN,
                            queueURLS,
                            subscriptionARNS,
                            snsClient,
                            sqsClient);

                    return false;
                }
            }
            queueURLS.push_back(queueURL);

            if (first) // Only explain this once.
            {
                std::cout
                        << "The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN, which is "
                        << "used to create a subscription." << std::endl;
            }

            Aws::String queueARN;
            {
                // 3.  Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.
                Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesRequest request;
                request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
```

```
request.AddAttributeNames(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);

           Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                   sqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(request);

           if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
               const Aws::Map<Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName, Aws::String>
&attributes =
                       outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
               const auto &iter = attributes.find(
                       Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);
               if (iter != attributes.end()) {
                   queueARN = iter->second;
                   std::cout << "The queue ARN '" << queueARN
                             << "' has been retrieved."
                             << std::endl;
               }
               else {
                   std::cerr
                           << "Error ARN attribute not returned by
GetQueueAttribute."
                           << std::endl;

                   cleanUp(topicARN,
                           queueURLS,
                           subscriptionARNS,
                           snsClient,
                           sqsClient);

                   return false;
               }
           }
           else {
               std::cerr << "Error with SQS::GetQueueAttributes. "
                         << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                         << std::endl;

               cleanUp(topicARN,
                       queueURLS,
                       subscriptionARNS,
                       snsClient,
                       sqsClient);
```

```
                return false;
            }
        }

        if (first) {
            std::cout
                    << "An IAM policy must be attached to an SQS queue, enabling it
to receive "
                       "messages from an SNS topic." << std::endl;
        }

        {
            // 4.  Set the SQS queue policy attribute with a policy enabling the
receipt of SNS messages.
            Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
            Aws::String policy = createPolicyForQueue(queueARN, topicARN);
            request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::Policy,
                                  policy);

            Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The attributes for the queue '" << queueName
                          << "' were successfully updated." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::SetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();
```

```
        {
            // 5.  Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic.
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
            request.SetProtocol("sqs");
            request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);
            if (isFifoTopic) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout << "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters."
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout
                            << "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only
 the filtered messages "
                            << "will be received in the queue." << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For information about message filtering, "
                              << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-
message-filtering.html"
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For this example, you can filter messages by a \""
                              << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attribute." << std::endl;
                }

                std::ostringstream ostringstream;
                ostringstream << "Filter messages for \"" << queueName
                              << "\"'s subscription to the topic \""
                              << topicName << "\"?  (y/n)";

                // Add filter if user answers yes.
                if (askYesNoQuestion(ostringstream.str())) {
                    Aws::String jsonPolicy = getFilterPolicyFromUser();
                    if (!jsonPolicy.empty()) {
                        filteringMessages = true;

                        std::cout << "This is the filter policy for this
 subscription."
                                  << std::endl;
                        std::cout << jsonPolicy << std::endl;

                        request.AddAttributes("FilterPolicy", jsonPolicy);
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout
                                << "Because you did not select any attributes, no
 filter "
```

```
                                << "will be added to this subscription." <<
std::endl;
                    }
                }
            }  // if (isFifoTopic)
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
snsClient.Subscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN << "."
                          << std::endl;
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        first = false;
    }

    first = true;
    do {
        printAsterisksLine();

        // 6.  Publish a message to the SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
        Aws::String message = askQuestion("Enter a message text to publish.  ");
```

```
        request.SetMessage(message);
        if (isFifoTopic) {
            if (first) {
                std::cout
                        << "Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a
message group ID."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout
                        << "All messages within the same group will be received in
the "
                        << "order they were published." << std::endl;
            }
            Aws::String messageGroupID = askQuestion(
                    "Enter a message group ID for this message. ");
            request.SetMessageGroupId(messageGroupID);
            if (!contentBasedDeduplication) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, "
                            << "you must enter a deduplication ID." << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::String deduplicationID = askQuestion(
                        "Enter a deduplication ID for this message. ");
                request.SetMessageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID);
            }
        }

        if (filteringMessages && askYesNoQuestion(
                "Add an attribute to this message? (y/n) ")) {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < TONES.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "  " << (i + 1) << ". " << TONES[i] << std::endl;
            }
            int selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter a number for an attribute. ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));
            Aws::SNS::Model::MessageAttributeValue messageAttributeValue;
            messageAttributeValue.SetDataType("String");
            messageAttributeValue.SetStringValue(TONES[selection - 1]);
            request.AddMessageAttributes(TONE_ATTRIBUTE, messageAttributeValue);
        }

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);
```

```
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Your message was successfully published." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Publish. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }

        first = false;
    } while (askYesNoQuestion("Post another message? (y/n) "));

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now the SQS queue will be polled to retrieve the messages."
              << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press any key to continue...", alwaysTrueTest);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < queueURLS.size(); ++i) {
        // 7.  Poll an SQS queue for its messages.
        std::vector<Aws::String> messages;
        std::vector<Aws::String> receiptHandles;
        while (true) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageRequest request;
            request.SetMaxNumberOfMessages(10);
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);

            // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
            // For information about long polling, see
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
            request.SetWaitTimeSeconds(1);
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.ReceiveMessage(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
```

```
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SQS::Model::Message> &newMessages =
outcome.GetResult().GetMessages();
                if (newMessages.empty()) {
                    break;
                }
                else {
                    for (const Aws::SQS::Model::Message &message: newMessages) {
                        messages.push_back(message.GetBody());
                        receiptHandles.push_back(message.GetReceiptHandle());
                    }
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ReceiveMessage. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();

        if (messages.empty()) {
            std::cout << "No messages were ";
        }
        else if (messages.size() == 1) {
            std::cout << "One message was ";
        }
        else {
            std::cout << messages.size() << " messages were ";
        }
        std::cout << "received by the queue '" << queueNames[i]
                  << "'." << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::String &message: messages) {
            std::cout << "  Message : '" << message << "'."
                      << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        // 8.  Delete a batch of messages from an SQS queue.
        if (!receiptHandles.empty()) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);
            int id = 1; // Ids must be unique within a batch delete request.
            for (const Aws::String &receiptHandle: receiptHandles) {
                Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry;
                entry.SetId(std::to_string(id));
                ++id;
                entry.SetReceiptHandle(receiptHandle);
                request.AddEntries(entry);
            }

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The batch deletion of messages was successful."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteMessageBatch. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return cleanUp(topicARN,
                   queueURLS,
                   subscriptionARNS,
                   snsClient,
                   sqsClient,
                   true); // askUser
}
```

```
bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::cleanUp(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &queueURLS,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &subscriptionARNS,
                                      const Aws::SNS::SNSClient &snsClient,
                                      const Aws::SQS::SQSClient &sqsClient,
                                      bool askUser) {
    bool result = true;
    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!queueURLS.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SQS queues? (y/n) ")) {

        for (const auto &queueURL: queueURLS) {
            // 9.  Delete an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteQueue(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The queue with URL '" << queueURL
                          << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteQueue. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        for (const auto &subscriptionARN: subscriptionARNS) {
            // 10. Unsubscribe an SNS subscription.
            Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetSubscriptionArn(subscriptionARN);

            Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeOutcome outcome =
                    snsClient.Unsubscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Unsubscribe of subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN
                          << "' was successful." << std::endl;
```

```
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Unsubscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!topicARN.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SNS topic? (y/n) ")) {

        // 11. Delete an SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.DeleteTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The topic with ARN '" << topicARN
                      << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::DeleteTopicRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Create an IAM policy that gives an SQS queue permission to receive messages from
 an SNS topic.
/*!
 \sa createPolicyForQueue()
 \param queueARN: The SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
 \param topicARN: The SNS topic ARN.
 \return Aws::String: The policy as JSON.
 */
```

```
Aws::String AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::createPolicyForQueue(const Aws::String
 &queueARN,
                                                                const Aws::String
 &topicARN) {
    std::ostringstream policyStream;
    policyStream << R"({
        "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                    "Resource": ")" << queueARN << R"(",
                    "Condition": {
                "ArnEquals": {
                    "aws:SourceArn": ")" << topicARN << R"("
                }
            }
        }
        ]
    })";

    return policyStream.str();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the CMakeLists.txt CMake file.

```
# Set the minimum required version of CMake for this project.
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.13)

# Set the AWS service components used by this project.
set(SERVICE_COMPONENTS sqs)

# Set this project's name.
project("hello_sqs")

# Set the C++ standard to use to build this target.
# At least C++ 11 is required for the AWS SDK for C++.
set(CMAKE_CXX_STANDARD 11)
```

```
# Use the MSVC variable to determine if this is a Windows build.
set(WINDOWS_BUILD ${MSVC})

if (WINDOWS_BUILD) # Set the location where CMake can find the installed libraries
 for the AWS SDK.
    string(REPLACE ";" "/aws-cpp-sdk-all;" SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH
 "${CMAKE_SYSTEM_PREFIX_PATH}/aws-cpp-sdk-all")
    list(APPEND CMAKE_PREFIX_PATH ${SYSTEM_MODULE_PATH})
endif ()

# Find the AWS SDK for C++ package.
find_package(AWSSDK REQUIRED COMPONENTS ${SERVICE_COMPONENTS})

if(WINDOWS_BUILD AND AWSSDK_INSTALL_AS_SHARED_LIBS)
    # Copy relevant AWS SDK for C++ libraries into the current binary directory for
 running and debugging.

    # set(BIN_SUB_DIR "/Debug") # If you are building from the command line you may
 need to uncomment this
    # and set the proper subdirectory to the executables' location.

    AWSSDK_CPY_DYN_LIBS(SERVICE_COMPONENTS ""
 ${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}${BIN_SUB_DIR})
endif()

add_executable(${PROJECT_NAME}
        hello_sqs.cpp)

target_link_libraries(${PROJECT_NAME}
        ${AWSSDK_LINK_LIBRARIES})
```

Code for the hello_sqs.cpp source file.

```
#include <aws/core/Aws.h>
#include <aws/sqs/SQSClient.h>
#include <aws/sqs/model/ListQueuesRequest.h>
#include <iostream>

/*
 *  A "Hello SQS" starter application that initializes an Amazon Simple Queue
 Service
```

```
 *  (Amazon SQS) client and lists the SQS queues in the current account.
 *
 *  main function
 *
 *  Usage: 'hello_sqs'
 *
 */

int main(int argc, char **argv) {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;
    // Optionally change the log level for debugging.
//   options.loggingOptions.logLevel = Utils::Logging::LogLevel::Debug;
    Aws::InitAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    {
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

        Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfig);

        Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allQueueUrls;
        Aws::String nextToken; // Next token is used to handle a paginated response.
        do {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesRequest request;

            Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.ListQueues(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &pageOfQueueUrls =
 outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrls();
                if (!pageOfQueueUrls.empty()) {
                    allQueueUrls.insert(allQueueUrls.cend(),
 pageOfQueueUrls.cbegin(),
                                        pageOfQueueUrls.cend());
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ListQueues. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                break;
            }
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
```

```
        } while (!nextToken.empty());


        std::cout << "Hello Amazon SQS! You have " << allQueueUrls.size() << "
 queue"
                  << (allQueueUrls.size() == 1 ? "" : "s") << " in your account."
                  << std::endl;

        if (!allQueueUrls.empty()) {
            std::cout << "Here are your queue URLs." << std::endl;
            for (const Aws::String &queueUrl: allQueueUrls) {
                std::cout << "  * " << queueUrl << std::endl;
            }
        }
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options); // Should only be called once.
    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`ChangeMessageVisibility`

The following code example shows how to use `ChangeMessageVisibility`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Changes the visibility timeout of a message in an Amazon Simple Queue Service
//! (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param messageReceiptHandle: A message receipt handle.
  \param visibilityTimeoutSeconds: Visibility timeout in seconds.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::changeMessageVisibility(
        const Aws::String &queue_url,
        const Aws::String &messageReceiptHandle,
        int visibilityTimeoutSeconds,
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queue_url);
    request.SetReceiptHandle(messageReceiptHandle);
    request.SetVisibilityTimeout(visibilityTimeoutSeconds);

    auto outcome = sqsClient.ChangeMessageVisibility(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully changed visibility of message " <<
                  messageReceiptHandle << " from queue " << queue_url << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error changing visibility of message from queue "
                  << queue_url << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Create an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueName: An Amazon SQS queue name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::createQueue(const Aws::String &queueName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueRequest request;
    request.SetQueueName(queueName);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.CreateQueue(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully created queue " << queueName << " with a queue
 URL "
                  << outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl() << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error creating queue " << queueName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Delete a message from an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param messageReceiptHandle: A message receipt handle.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::deleteMessage(const Aws::String &queueUrl,
                                const Aws::String &messageReceiptHandle,
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueUrl);
    request.SetReceiptHandle(messageReceiptHandle);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageOutcome outcome = sqsClient.DeleteMessage(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted message from queue " << queueUrl
```

```
                << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting message from queue " << queueUrl << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);
            int id = 1; // Ids must be unique within a batch delete request.
            for (const Aws::String &receiptHandle: receiptHandles) {
                Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry;
                entry.SetId(std::to_string(id));
                ++id;
                entry.SetReceiptHandle(receiptHandle);
                request.AddEntries(entry);
            }
```

```
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The batch deletion of messages was successful."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteMessageBatch. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Delete an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
```

```
/*!
  \param queueURL: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::deleteQueue(const Aws::String &queueURL,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.DeleteQueue(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully deleted queue with url " << queueURL <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error deleting queue " << queueURL << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`GetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
```

```
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

request.AddAttributeNames(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName, Aws::String>
&attributes =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
                const auto &iter = attributes.find(
                        Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);
                if (iter != attributes.end()) {
                    queueARN = iter->second;
                    std::cout << "The queue ARN '" << queueARN
                              << "' has been retrieved."
                              << std::endl;
                }

            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::GetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;


            }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

GetQueueUrl

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Get the URL for an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueName: An Amazon SQS queue name.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::getQueueUrl(const Aws::String &queueName,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueUrlRequest request;
    request.SetQueueName(queueName);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueUrlOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.GetQueueUrl(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Queue " << queueName << " has url " <<
                  outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error getting url for queue " << queueName << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

ListQueues

The following code example shows how to use ListQueues.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! List the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queues within an AWS account.
/*!
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool
AwsDoc::SQS::listQueues(const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration)
 {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesRequest listQueuesRequest;

    Aws::String nextToken; // Used for pagination.
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> allQueueUrls;

    do {
        if (!nextToken.empty()) {
            listQueuesRequest.SetNextToken(nextToken);
        }
        const Aws::SQS::Model::ListQueuesOutcome outcome = sqsClient.ListQueues(
                listQueuesRequest);
        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &queueUrls =
 outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrls();
            allQueueUrls.insert(allQueueUrls.end(),
                                queueUrls.begin(),
                                queueUrls.end());
```

```
            nextToken = outcome.GetResult().GetNextToken();
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error listing queues: " <<
                      outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
            return false;
        }

    } while (!nextToken.empty());

    std::cout << allQueueUrls.size() << " Amazon SQS queue(s) found." << std::endl;
    for (const auto &iter: allQueueUrls) {
        std::cout << " " << iter << std::endl;
    }

    return true;
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Receive a message from an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
```

```
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::receiveMessage(const Aws::String &queueUrl,
                                 const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueUrl);
    request.SetMaxNumberOfMessages(1);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageOutcome outcome = sqsClient.ReceiveMessage(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {

        const Aws::Vector<Aws::SQS::Model::Message> &messages =
                outcome.GetResult().GetMessages();
        if (!messages.empty()) {
            const Aws::SQS::Model::Message &message = messages[0];
            std::cout << "Received message:" << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  MessageId: " << message.GetMessageId() << std::endl;
            std::cout << "  ReceiptHandle: " << message.GetReceiptHandle() <<
 std::endl;
            std::cout << "  Body: " << message.GetBody() << std::endl << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cout << "No messages received from queue " << queueUrl <<
                      std::endl;

        }
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error receiving message from queue " << queueUrl << ": "
                  << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Send a message to an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param messageBody: A message body.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::sendMessage(const Aws::String &queueUrl,
                              const Aws::String &messageBody,
                              const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SendMessageRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueUrl);
    request.SetMessageBody(messageBody);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SendMessageOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.SendMessage(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully sent message to " << queueUrl <<
                  std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error sending message to " << queueUrl << ": " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
```

```
    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

`SetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Set the value for an attribute in an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS)
 queue.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param attributeName: An attribute name enum.
  \param attribute: The attribute value as a string.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::setQueueAttributes(const Aws::String &queueURL,
                                     Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName
 attributeName,
                                     const Aws::String &attribute,
                                     const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
```

```
    request.AddAttributes(
            attributeName,
            attribute);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully set the attribute  " <<

 Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeNameMapper::GetNameForQueueAttributeName(
                         attributeName)
                  << " with value " << attribute << " in queue " <<
                  queueURL << "." << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error setting attribute for  queue " <<
                  queueURL << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

Configure a dead-letter queue.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Connect an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to an associated
//! dead-letter queue.
/*!
  \param srcQueueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param deadLetterQueueARN: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an Amazon SQS dead-
letter queue.
  \param maxReceiveCount: The max receive count of a message before it is sent to
 the dead-letter queue.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::setDeadLetterQueue(const Aws::String &srcQueueUrl,
```

```
                                        const Aws::String &deadLetterQueueARN,
                                        int maxReceiveCount,
                                        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration
 &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::String redrivePolicy = MakeRedrivePolicy(deadLetterQueueARN,
 maxReceiveCount);

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(srcQueueUrl);
    request.AddAttributes(
            Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::RedrivePolicy,
            redrivePolicy);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
            sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully set dead letter queue for queue  " <<
                  srcQueueUrl << " to " << deadLetterQueueARN << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cerr << "Error setting dead letter queue for queue " <<
                  srcQueueUrl << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
                  std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}

//! Make a redrive policy for a dead-letter queue.
/*!
  \param queueArn: An Amazon SQS ARN for the dead-letter queue.
  \param maxReceiveCount: The max receive count of a message before it is sent to
 the dead-letter queue.
  \return Aws::String: Policy as JSON string.
 */
Aws::String MakeRedrivePolicy(const Aws::String &queueArn, int maxReceiveCount) {
    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue redrive_arn_entry;
    redrive_arn_entry.AsString(queueArn);

    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue max_msg_entry;
    max_msg_entry.AsInteger(maxReceiveCount);
```

```
    Aws::Utils::Json::JsonValue policy_map;
    policy_map.WithObject("deadLetterTargetArn", redrive_arn_entry);
    policy_map.WithObject("maxReceiveCount", max_msg_entry);

    return policy_map.View().WriteReadable();
}
```

Configure an Amazon SQS queue to use long polling.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Set the wait time for an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue poll.
/*!
  \param queueUrl: An Amazon SQS queue URL.
  \param pollTimeSeconds: The receive message wait time in seconds.
  \param clientConfiguration: AWS client configuration.
  \return bool: Function succeeded.
 */
bool AwsDoc::SQS::setQueueLongPollingAttribute(const Aws::String &queueURL,
                                               const Aws::String &pollTimeSeconds,
                                               const
 Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);

    Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
    request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
    request.AddAttributes(
            Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds,
            pollTimeSeconds);

    const Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
 sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(
            request);
    if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cout << "Successfully updated long polling time for queue " <<
                  queueURL << " to " << pollTimeSeconds << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Error updating long polling time for queue " <<
                  queueURL << ": " << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() <<
```

```
                    std::endl;
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration clientConfig;
        // Optional: Set to the AWS Region (overrides config file).
        // clientConfig.region = "us-east-1";

//! Workflow for messaging with topics and queues using Amazon SNS and Amazon SQS.
/*!
 \param clientConfig Aws client configuration.
 \return bool: Successful completion.
 */
bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::messagingWithTopicsAndQueues(
        const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfiguration) {
    std::cout << "Welcome to messaging with topics and queues." << std::endl;
```

```
   printAsterisksLine();
   std::cout << "In this workflow, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe "
             << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES <<
             " SQS queues to the topic." << std::endl;
   std::cout
           << "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
the subscriptions for the "
           << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES << " queues." << std::endl;
   std::cout << "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queues."
             << std::endl;

   Aws::SNS::SNSClient snsClient(clientConfiguration);

   printAsterisksLine();

   std::cout << "SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out)."
             << std::endl;
   std::cout
           << "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
message filtering."
           << std::endl;
   bool isFifoTopic = askYesNoQuestion(
           "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n) ");

   bool contentBasedDeduplication = false;
   Aws::String topicName;
   if (isFifoTopic) {
       printAsterisksLine();
       std::cout << "Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is
supported."
                 << std::endl;
       std::cout
               << "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or automatically
generated "
               << "from content using a hash function." << std::endl;
       std::cout
               << "If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any
message "
               << "published and determined to have the same deduplication ID, "
               << std::endl;
       std::cout
               << "within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted but
not delivered."
               << std::endl;
```

```
        std::cout
                << "For more information about deduplication, "
                << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-
dedup.html."
                << std::endl;
        contentBasedDeduplication = askYesNoQuestion(
                "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a deduplication
 ID? (y/n) ");
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    Aws::SQS::SQSClient sqsClient(clientConfiguration);
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueURLS;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> subscriptionARNS;

    Aws::String topicARN;
    {
        topicName = askQuestion("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ");

        // 1.  Create an Amazon SNS topic, either FIFO or non-FIFO.
        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicRequest request;

        if (isFifoTopic) {
            request.AddAttributes("FifoTopic", "true");
            if (contentBasedDeduplication) {
                request.AddAttributes("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }
            topicName = topicName + FIFO_SUFFIX;

            std::cout
                    << "Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be
 appended to the topic name."
                    << std::endl;
        }

        request.SetName(topicName);

        Aws::SNS::Model::CreateTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.CreateTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            topicARN = outcome.GetResult().GetTopicArn();
            std::cout << "Your new topic with the name '" << topicName
```

```
                      << "' and the topic Amazon Resource Name (ARN) " << std::endl;
            std::cout << "'" << topicARN << "' has been created." << std::endl;

        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::CreateTopic. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now you will create " << NUMBER_OF_QUEUES
              << " SQS queues to subscribe to the topic." << std::endl;
    Aws::Vector<Aws::String> queueNames;
    bool filteringMessages = false;
    bool first = true;
    for (int i = 1; i <= NUMBER_OF_QUEUES; ++i) {
        Aws::String queueURL;
        Aws::String queueName;
        {
            printAsterisksLine();
            std::ostringstream ostringstream;
            ostringstream << "Enter a name for " << (first ? "an" : "the next")
                          << " SQS queue. ";
            queueName = askQuestion(ostringstream.str());

            // 2.  Create an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueRequest request;
            if (isFifoTopic) {

request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::FifoQueue,
                                      "true");
                queueName = queueName + FIFO_SUFFIX;
```

```
                if (first) // Only explain this once.
                {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue, '.fifo'
must "
                            << "be appended to the queue name." << std::endl;
                }
            }

            request.SetQueueName(queueName);
            queueNames.push_back(queueName);

            Aws::SQS::Model::CreateQueueOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.CreateQueue(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                queueURL = outcome.GetResult().GetQueueUrl();
                std::cout << "Your new SQS queue with the name '" << queueName
                          << "' and the queue URL " << std::endl;
                std::cout << "'" << queueURL << "' has been created." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::CreateQueue. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
        queueURLS.push_back(queueURL);

        if (first) // Only explain this once.
        {
            std::cout
                    << "The queue URL is used to retrieve the queue ARN, which is "
                    << "used to create a subscription." << std::endl;
        }
```

```
        Aws::String queueARN;
        {
            // 3.  Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.
            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

request.AddAttributeNames(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);

            Aws::SQS::Model::GetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Map<Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName, Aws::String>
&attributes =
                        outcome.GetResult().GetAttributes();
                const auto &iter = attributes.find(
                        Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::QueueArn);
                if (iter != attributes.end()) {
                    queueARN = iter->second;
                    std::cout << "The queue ARN '" << queueARN
                              << "' has been retrieved."
                              << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cerr
                            << "Error ARN attribute not returned by
GetQueueAttribute."
                            << std::endl;

                    cleanUp(topicARN,
                            queueURLS,
                            subscriptionARNS,
                            snsClient,
                            sqsClient);

                    return false;
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::GetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
```

```
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        if (first) {
            std::cout
                    << "An IAM policy must be attached to an SQS queue, enabling it
to receive "
                       "messages from an SNS topic." << std::endl;
        }

        {
            // 4.  Set the SQS queue policy attribute with a policy enabling the
receipt of SNS messages.
            Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);
            Aws::String policy = createPolicyForQueue(queueARN, topicARN);
            request.AddAttributes(Aws::SQS::Model::QueueAttributeName::Policy,
                                  policy);

            Aws::SQS::Model::SetQueueAttributesOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The attributes for the queue '" << queueName
                          << "' were successfully updated." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::SetQueueAttributes. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
```

```
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();

        {
            // 5.  Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic.
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
            request.SetProtocol("sqs");
            request.SetEndpoint(queueARN);
            if (isFifoTopic) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout << "Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters."
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout
                            << "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only
 the filtered messages "
                            << "will be received in the queue." << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For information about message filtering, "
                              << "see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-
message-filtering.html"
                              << std::endl;
                    std::cout << "For this example, you can filter messages by a \""
                              << TONE_ATTRIBUTE << "\" attribute." << std::endl;
                }

                std::ostringstream ostringstream;
                ostringstream << "Filter messages for \"" << queueName
                              << "\"'s subscription to the topic \""
                              << topicName << "\"?  (y/n)";

                // Add filter if user answers yes.
                if (askYesNoQuestion(ostringstream.str())) {
                    Aws::String jsonPolicy = getFilterPolicyFromUser();
                    if (!jsonPolicy.empty()) {
                        filteringMessages = true;

                        std::cout << "This is the filter policy for this
 subscription."
                                  << std::endl;
                        std::cout << jsonPolicy << std::endl;

                        request.AddAttributes("FilterPolicy", jsonPolicy);
```

```
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout
                                << "Because you did not select any attributes, no
filter "
                                << "will be added to this subscription." <<
std::endl;
                    }
                }
            }  // if (isFifoTopic)
            Aws::SNS::Model::SubscribeOutcome outcome =
snsClient.Subscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                Aws::String subscriptionARN =
outcome.GetResult().GetSubscriptionArn();
                std::cout << "The queue '" << queueName
                          << "' has been subscribed to the topic '"
                          << "'" << topicName << "'" << std::endl;
                std::cout << "with the subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN << "."
                          << std::endl;
                subscriptionARNS.push_back(subscriptionARN);
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Subscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        first = false;
    }

    first = true;
    do {
        printAsterisksLine();
```

```
        // 6.  Publish a message to the SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);
        Aws::String message = askQuestion("Enter a message text to publish.  ");
        request.SetMessage(message);
        if (isFifoTopic) {
            if (first) {
                std::cout
                        << "Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a
message group ID."
                        << std::endl;
                std::cout
                        << "All messages within the same group will be received in
the "
                        << "order they were published." << std::endl;
            }
            Aws::String messageGroupID = askQuestion(
                    "Enter a message group ID for this message. ");
            request.SetMessageGroupId(messageGroupID);
            if (!contentBasedDeduplication) {
                if (first) {
                    std::cout
                            << "Because you are not using content-based
deduplication, "
                            << "you must enter a deduplication ID." << std::endl;
                }
                Aws::String deduplicationID = askQuestion(
                        "Enter a deduplication ID for this message. ");
                request.SetMessageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID);
            }
        }

        if (filteringMessages && askYesNoQuestion(
                "Add an attribute to this message? (y/n) ")) {
            for (size_t i = 0; i < TONES.size(); ++i) {
                std::cout << "  " << (i + 1) << ". " << TONES[i] << std::endl;
            }
            int selection = askQuestionForIntRange(
                    "Enter a number for an attribute. ",
                    1, static_cast<int>(TONES.size()));
            Aws::SNS::Model::MessageAttributeValue messageAttributeValue;
            messageAttributeValue.SetDataType("String");
            messageAttributeValue.SetStringValue(TONES[selection - 1]);
```

```
            request.AddMessageAttributes(TONE_ATTRIBUTE, messageAttributeValue);
        }

        Aws::SNS::Model::PublishOutcome outcome = snsClient.Publish(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "Your message was successfully published." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Publish. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;

            cleanUp(topicARN,
                    queueURLS,
                    subscriptionARNS,
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient);

            return false;
        }

        first = false;
    } while (askYesNoQuestion("Post another message? (y/n) "));

    printAsterisksLine();

    std::cout << "Now the SQS queue will be polled to retrieve the messages."
              << std::endl;
    askQuestion("Press any key to continue...", alwaysTrueTest);

    for (size_t i = 0; i < queueURLS.size(); ++i) {
        // 7.  Poll an SQS queue for its messages.
        std::vector<Aws::String> messages;
        std::vector<Aws::String> receiptHandles;
        while (true) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageRequest request;
            request.SetMaxNumberOfMessages(10);
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);

            // Setting WaitTimeSeconds to non-zero enables long polling.
            // For information about long polling, see
            // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
```

```
            request.SetWaitTimeSeconds(1);
            Aws::SQS::Model::ReceiveMessageOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.ReceiveMessage(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                const Aws::Vector<Aws::SQS::Model::Message> &newMessages =
outcome.GetResult().GetMessages();
                if (newMessages.empty()) {
                    break;
                }
                else {
                    for (const Aws::SQS::Model::Message &message: newMessages) {
                        messages.push_back(message.GetBody());
                        receiptHandles.push_back(message.GetReceiptHandle());
                    }
                }
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::ReceiveMessage. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;

                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }

        printAsterisksLine();

        if (messages.empty()) {
            std::cout << "No messages were ";
        }
        else if (messages.size() == 1) {
            std::cout << "One message was ";
        }
        else {
            std::cout << messages.size() << " messages were ";
        }
        std::cout << "received by the queue '" << queueNames[i]
```

```
                << "'." << std::endl;
        for (const Aws::String &message: messages) {
            std::cout << "  Message : '" << message << "'."
                      << std::endl;
        }

        // 8.  Delete a batch of messages from an SQS queue.
        if (!receiptHandles.empty()) {
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURLS[i]);
            int id = 1; // Ids must be unique within a batch delete request.
            for (const Aws::String &receiptHandle: receiptHandles) {
                Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry;
                entry.SetId(std::to_string(id));
                ++id;
                entry.SetReceiptHandle(receiptHandle);
                request.AddEntries(entry);
            }

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteMessageBatchOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The batch deletion of messages was successful."
                          << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteMessageBatch. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                cleanUp(topicARN,
                        queueURLS,
                        subscriptionARNS,
                        snsClient,
                        sqsClient);

                return false;
            }
        }
    }

    return cleanUp(topicARN,
                   queueURLS,
                   subscriptionARNS,
```

```
                    snsClient,
                    sqsClient,
                    true); // askUser
}


bool AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::cleanUp(const Aws::String &topicARN,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String> &queueURLS,
                                      const Aws::Vector<Aws::String>
 &subscriptionARNS,
                                      const Aws::SNS::SNSClient &snsClient,
                                      const Aws::SQS::SQSClient &sqsClient,
                                      bool askUser) {
    bool result = true;
    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!queueURLS.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SQS queues? (y/n) ")) {

        for (const auto &queueURL: queueURLS) {
            // 9.  Delete an SQS queue.
            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueRequest request;
            request.SetQueueUrl(queueURL);

            Aws::SQS::Model::DeleteQueueOutcome outcome =
                    sqsClient.DeleteQueue(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "The queue with URL '" << queueURL
                          << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with SQS::DeleteQueue. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }

        for (const auto &subscriptionARN: subscriptionARNS) {
            // 10. Unsubscribe an SNS subscription.
            Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeRequest request;
            request.SetSubscriptionArn(subscriptionARN);

            Aws::SNS::Model::UnsubscribeOutcome outcome =
```

```
                    snsClient.Unsubscribe(request);

            if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                std::cout << "Unsubscribe of subscription ARN '" << subscriptionARN
                          << "' was successful." << std::endl;
            }
            else {
                std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::Unsubscribe. "
                          << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                          << std::endl;
                result = false;
            }
        }
    }

    printAsterisksLine();
    if (!topicARN.empty() && askUser &&
        askYesNoQuestion("Delete the SNS topic? (y/n) ")) {

        // 11. Delete an SNS topic.
        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicRequest request;
        request.SetTopicArn(topicARN);

        Aws::SNS::Model::DeleteTopicOutcome outcome =
 snsClient.DeleteTopic(request);

        if (outcome.IsSuccess()) {
            std::cout << "The topic with ARN '" << topicARN
                      << "' was successfully deleted." << std::endl;
        }
        else {
            std::cerr << "Error with TopicsAndQueues::DeleteTopicRequest. "
                      << outcome.GetError().GetMessage()
                      << std::endl;
            result = false;
        }
    }

    return result;
}

//! Create an IAM policy that gives an SQS queue permission to receive messages from
 an SNS topic.
/*!
```

```
 \sa createPolicyForQueue()
 \param queueARN: The SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
 \param topicARN: The SNS topic ARN.
 \return Aws::String: The policy as JSON.
 */
Aws::String AwsDoc::TopicsAndQueues::createPolicyForQueue(const Aws::String
 &queueARN,
                                                           const Aws::String
 &topicARN) {
    std::ostringstream policyStream;
    policyStream << R"({
        "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {
                "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                    "Resource": ")" << queueARN << R"(",
                    "Condition": {
                "ArnEquals": {
                    "aws:SourceArn": ")" << topicARN << R"("
                }
            }
        }
        ]
    })";

    return policyStream.str();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish

- ReceiveMessage
- SetQueueAttributes
- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

AWS STS examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
bool AwsDoc::STS::assumeRole(const Aws::String &roleArn,
                             const Aws::String &roleSessionName,
                             const Aws::String &externalId,
                             Aws::Auth::AWSCredentials &credentials,
```

```
                                const Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration &clientConfig) {
    Aws::STS::STSClient sts(clientConfig);
    Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleRequest sts_req;

    sts_req.SetRoleArn(roleArn);
    sts_req.SetRoleSessionName(roleSessionName);
    sts_req.SetExternalId(externalId);

    const Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleOutcome outcome = sts.AssumeRole(sts_req);

    if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
        std::cerr << "Error assuming IAM role. " <<
                  outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
    }
    else {
        std::cout << "Credentials successfully retrieved." << std::endl;
        const Aws::STS::Model::AssumeRoleResult result = outcome.GetResult();
        const Aws::STS::Model::Credentials &temp_credentials =
 result.GetCredentials();

        // Store temporary credentials in return argument.
        // Note: The credentials object returned by assumeRole differs
        // from the AWSCredentials object used in most situations.
        credentials.SetAWSAccessKeyId(temp_credentials.GetAccessKeyId());
        credentials.SetAWSSecretKey(temp_credentials.GetSecretAccessKey());
        credentials.SetSessionToken(temp_credentials.GetSessionToken());
    }

    return outcome.IsSuccess();
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Amazon Transcribe Streaming examples using SDK for C++

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for C++ with Amazon Transcribe Streaming.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`StartStreamTranscription`

The following code example shows how to use `StartStreamTranscription`.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
int main() {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;

    Aws::InitAPI(options);
    {
        //TODO(User): Set to the region of your AWS account.
        const Aws::String region = Aws::Region::US_WEST_2;

        //Load a profile that has been granted AmazonTranscribeFullAccess AWS
 managed permission policy.
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration config;
#ifdef _WIN32
        // ATTENTION: On Windows with the AWS C++ SDK, this example only runs if the
 SDK is built
        // with the curl library.
        // For more information, see the accompanying ReadMe.
        // For more information, see "Building the SDK for Windows with curl".
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-cpp/v1/developer-guide/setup-
windows.html
        //TODO(User): Update to the location of your .crt file.
        config.caFile = "C:/curl/bin/curl-ca-bundle.crt";
#endif
        config.region = region;

        TranscribeStreamingServiceClient client(config);
        StartStreamTranscriptionHandler handler;
        handler.SetOnErrorCallback(
                [](const Aws::Client::AWSError<TranscribeStreamingServiceErrors>
 &error) {
                        std::cerr << "ERROR: " + error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
                });
        //SetTranscriptEventCallback called for every 'chunk' of file transcripted.
        // Partial results are returned in real time.
        handler.SetTranscriptEventCallback([](const TranscriptEvent &ev) {
                for (auto &&r: ev.GetTranscript().GetResults()) {
                    if (r.GetIsPartial()) {
                        std::cout << "[partial] ";
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout << "[Final] ";
                    }
                    for (auto &&alt: r.GetAlternatives()) {
                        std::cout << alt.GetTranscript() << std::endl;
                    }
                }
        });

        StartStreamTranscriptionRequest request;
        request.SetMediaSampleRateHertz(SAMPLE_RATE);
        request.SetLanguageCode(LanguageCode::en_US);
        request.SetMediaEncoding(
                MediaEncoding::pcm); // wav and aiff files are PCM formats.
        request.SetEventStreamHandler(handler);

        auto OnStreamReady = [](AudioStream &stream) {
                Aws::FStream file(FILE_NAME, std::ios_base::in |
 std::ios_base::binary);
                if (!file.is_open()) {
                    std::cerr << "Failed to open " << FILE_NAME << '\n';
                }
                std::array<char, BUFFER_SIZE> buf;
```

```
                int i = 0;
                while (file) {
                    file.read(&buf[0], buf.size());

                    if (!file)
                        std::cout << "File: only " << file.gcount() << " could be
read"
                                  << std::endl;

                    Aws::Vector<unsigned char> bits{buf.begin(), buf.end()};
                    AudioEvent event(std::move(bits));
                    if (!stream) {
                        std::cerr << "Failed to create a stream" << std::endl;
                        break;
                    }
                    //The std::basic_istream::gcount() is used to count the
characters in the given string. It returns
                    //the number of characters extracted by the last read()
operation.
                    if (file.gcount() > 0) {
                        if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(event)) {
                            std::cerr << "Failed to write an audio event" <<
std::endl;
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                    else {
                        break;
                    }
                    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(
                            25)); // Slow down because we are streaming from a file.
                }
                if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(
                        AudioEvent())) {
                    // Per the spec, we have to send an empty event (an event
without a payload) at the end.
                    std::cerr << "Failed to send an empty frame" << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Successfully sent the empty frame" << std::endl;
                }
                stream.flush();
                stream.Close();
        };
```

```
        Aws::Utils::Threading::Semaphore signaling(0 /*initialCount*/, 1 /
*maxCount*/);
        auto OnResponseCallback = [&signaling](
                const TranscribeStreamingServiceClient * /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionRequest & /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionOutcome &outcome,
                const std::shared_ptr<const Aws::Client::AsyncCallerContext> & /
*unused*/) {

                if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    std::cerr << "Transcribe streaming error "
                              << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                }

                signaling.Release();
        };

        std::cout << "Starting..." << std::endl;
        client.StartStreamTranscriptionAsync(request, OnStreamReady,
 OnResponseCallback,
                                             nullptr /*context*/);
        signaling.WaitOne(); // Prevent the application from exiting until we're
 done.
        std::cout << "Done" << std::endl;
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options);

    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Scenarios

Transcribe an audio file

The following code example shows how to generate a transcription of a source audio file using Amazon Transcribe streaming.

SDK for C++

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
int main() {
    Aws::SDKOptions options;

    Aws::InitAPI(options);
    {
        //TODO(User): Set to the region of your AWS account.
        const Aws::String region = Aws::Region::US_WEST_2;

        //Load a profile that has been granted AmazonTranscribeFullAccess AWS
 managed permission policy.
        Aws::Client::ClientConfiguration config;
#ifdef _WIN32
        // ATTENTION: On Windows with the AWS C++ SDK, this example only runs if the
 SDK is built
        // with the curl library.
        // For more information, see the accompanying ReadMe.
        // For more information, see "Building the SDK for Windows with curl".
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-cpp/v1/developer-guide/setup-
windows.html
        //TODO(User): Update to the location of your .crt file.
        config.caFile = "C:/curl/bin/curl-ca-bundle.crt";
#endif
        config.region = region;

        TranscribeStreamingServiceClient client(config);
        StartStreamTranscriptionHandler handler;
        handler.SetOnErrorCallback(
                []( const Aws::Client::AWSError<TranscribeStreamingServiceErrors>
 &error) {
                        std::cerr << "ERROR: " + error.GetMessage() << std::endl;
                });
        //SetTranscriptEventCallback called for every 'chunk' of file transcripted.
        // Partial results are returned in real time.
        handler.SetTranscriptEventCallback([](const TranscriptEvent &ev) {
```

```
                for (auto &&r: ev.GetTranscript().GetResults()) {
                    if (r.GetIsPartial()) {
                        std::cout << "[partial] ";
                    }
                    else {
                        std::cout << "[Final] ";
                    }
                    for (auto &&alt: r.GetAlternatives()) {
                        std::cout << alt.GetTranscript() << std::endl;
                    }
                }
        });

        StartStreamTranscriptionRequest request;
        request.SetMediaSampleRateHertz(SAMPLE_RATE);
        request.SetLanguageCode(LanguageCode::en_US);
        request.SetMediaEncoding(
                MediaEncoding::pcm); // wav and aiff files are PCM formats.
        request.SetEventStreamHandler(handler);

        auto OnStreamReady = [](AudioStream &stream) {
                Aws::FStream file(FILE_NAME, std::ios_base::in |
std::ios_base::binary);
                if (!file.is_open()) {
                    std::cerr << "Failed to open " << FILE_NAME << '\n';
                }
                std::array<char, BUFFER_SIZE> buf;
                int i = 0;
                while (file) {
                    file.read(&buf[0], buf.size());

                    if (!file)
                        std::cout << "File: only " << file.gcount() << " could be
read"
                                  << std::endl;

                    Aws::Vector<unsigned char> bits{buf.begin(), buf.end()};
                    AudioEvent event(std::move(bits));
                    if (!stream) {
                        std::cerr << "Failed to create a stream" << std::endl;
                        break;
                    }
                    //The std::basic_istream::gcount() is used to count the
characters in the given string. It returns
```

```
                    //the number of characters extracted by the last read()
 operation.
                    if (file.gcount() > 0) {
                        if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(event)) {
                            std::cerr << "Failed to write an audio event" <<
 std::endl;
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                    else {
                        break;
                    }
                    std::this_thread::sleep_for(std::chrono::milliseconds(
                            25)); // Slow down because we are streaming from a file.
                }
                if (!stream.WriteAudioEvent(
                        AudioEvent())) {
                    // Per the spec, we have to send an empty event (an event
 without a payload) at the end.
                    std::cerr << "Failed to send an empty frame" << std::endl;
                }
                else {
                    std::cout << "Successfully sent the empty frame" << std::endl;
                }
                stream.flush();
                stream.Close();
        };

        Aws::Utils::Threading::Semaphore signaling(0 /*initialCount*/, 1 /
*maxCount*/);
        auto OnResponseCallback = [&signaling](
                const TranscribeStreamingServiceClient * /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionRequest & /*unused*/,
                const Model::StartStreamTranscriptionOutcome &outcome,
                const std::shared_ptr<const Aws::Client::AsyncCallerContext> & /
*unused*/) {

                if (!outcome.IsSuccess()) {
                    std::cerr << "Transcribe streaming error "
                              << outcome.GetError().GetMessage() << std::endl;
                }

                signaling.Release();
        };
```

```
        std::cout << "Starting..." << std::endl;
        client.StartStreamTranscriptionAsync(request, OnStreamReady,
 OnResponseCallback,
                                             nullptr /*context*/);
        signaling.WaitOne(); // Prevent the application from exiting until we're
 done.
        std::cout << "Done" << std::endl;
    }

    Aws::ShutdownAPI(options);

    return 0;
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for C++ API Reference*.

Code examples for SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Go V2 with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Go V2 Developer Guide** – More about using Go with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- API Gateway examples using SDK for Go V2
- Aurora examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Go V2
- AWS CloudFormation examples using SDK for Go V2
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Go V2
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Go V2
- IAM examples using SDK for Go V2
- Kinesis examples using SDK for Go V2
- Lambda examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Go V2
- Partner Central examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Go V2
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Go V2

API Gateway examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with API Gateway.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- AWS community contributions

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Go V2

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Go SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Aurora examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Aurora client and list up to
 20
// DB clusters in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 auroraClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxClusters = 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v DB clusters.\n", maxClusters)
 output, err := auroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{MaxRecords: aws.Int32(maxClusters)})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list DB clusters: %v\n", err)
  return
```

```
 }
 if len(output.DBClusters) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("No DB clusters found.")
 } else {
  for _, cluster := range output.DBClusters {
   fmt.Printf("DB cluster %v has database %v.\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier,
    *cluster.DatabaseName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "aurora/actions"
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "slices"
 "sort"
 "strconv"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/google/uuid"
)

// GetStartedClusters is an interactive example that shows you how to use the AWS
 SDK for Go
// with Amazon Aurora to do the following:
//
// 1. Create a custom DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
// 2. Create an Aurora DB cluster that is configured to use the parameter group.
// 3. Create a DB instance in the DB cluster that contains a database.
// 4. Take a snapshot of the DB cluster.
// 5. Delete the DB instance, DB cluster, and parameter group.
type GetStartedClusters struct {
 sdkConfig  aws.Config
 dbClusters actions.DbClusters
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 helper     IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun  bool
}

// NewGetStartedClusters constructs a GetStartedClusters instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon
 RDS)
// client and create wrappers for the actions used in the scenario.
func NewGetStartedClusters(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
```

```
 helper IScenarioHelper) GetStartedClusters {
 auroraClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return GetStartedClusters{
  sdkConfig:  sdkConfig,
  dbClusters: actions.DbClusters{AuroraClient: auroraClient},
  questioner: questioner,
  helper:     helper,
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) Run(ctx context.Context, dbEngine string,
 parameterGroupName string,
 clusterName string, dbName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon Aurora DB Cluster demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 parameterGroup := scenario.CreateParameterGroup(ctx, dbEngine, parameterGroupName)
 scenario.SetUserParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName)
 cluster := scenario.CreateCluster(ctx, clusterName, dbEngine, dbName,
 parameterGroup)
 scenario.helper.Pause(5)
 dbInstance := scenario.CreateInstance(ctx, cluster)
 scenario.DisplayConnection(cluster)
 scenario.CreateSnapshot(ctx, clusterName)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, dbInstance, cluster, parameterGroup)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateParameterGroup shows how to get available engine versions for a specified
// database engine and create a DB cluster parameter group that is compatible with a
// selected engine family.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 dbEngine string,
```

```
parameterGroupName string) *types.DBClusterParameterGroup {

log.Printf("Checking for an existing DB cluster parameter group named %v.\n",
 parameterGroupName)
parameterGroup, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
parameterGroupName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if parameterGroup == nil {
 log.Printf("Getting available database engine versions for %v.\n", dbEngine)
 engineVersions, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine, "")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 familySet := map[string]struct{}{}
 for _, family := range engineVersions {
  familySet[*family.DBParameterGroupFamily] = struct{}{}
 }
 var families []string
 for family := range familySet {
  families = append(families, family)
 }
 sort.Strings(families)
 familyIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Which family do you want to use?\n",
families)
 log.Println("Creating a DB cluster parameter group.")
 _, err = scenario.dbClusters.CreateParameterGroup(
  ctx, parameterGroupName, families[familyIndex], "Example parameter group.")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 parameterGroup, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
parameterGroupName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}
log.Printf("Parameter group %v:\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
log.Printf("\tName: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupArn)
log.Printf("\tFamily: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
log.Printf("\tDescription: %v\n", *parameterGroup.Description)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return parameterGroup

}

// SetUserParameters shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom parameter
// group and update some of the parameter values in the group.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) SetUserParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) {
 log.Println("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
 dbParameters, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName, "")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 var updateParams []types.Parameter
 for _, dbParam := range dbParameters {
  if strings.HasPrefix(*dbParam.ParameterName, "auto_increment") &&
   *dbParam.IsModifiable && *dbParam.DataType == "integer" {
   log.Printf("The %v parameter is described as:\n\t%v",
    *dbParam.ParameterName, *dbParam.Description)
   rangeSplit := strings.Split(*dbParam.AllowedValues, "-")
   lower, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[0])
   upper, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[1])
   newValue := scenario.questioner.AskInt(
    fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", lower, upper),
    demotools.InIntRange{Lower: lower, Upper: upper})
   dbParam.ParameterValue = aws.String(strconv.Itoa(newValue))
   updateParams = append(updateParams, dbParam)
  }
 }
 err = scenario.dbClusters.UpdateParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName, updateParams)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source of
 'user'.")
 userParameters, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName,
 "user")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Here are the parameters you've set:")
 for _, param := range userParameters {
  log.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *param.ParameterName, *param.ParameterValue)
```

```
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateCluster shows how to create an Aurora DB cluster that contains a database
// of a specified type. The database is also configured to use a custom DB cluster
// parameter group.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, dbEngine string,
 dbName string, parameterGroup *types.DBClusterParameterGroup) *types.DBCluster {

 log.Println("Checking for an existing DB cluster.")
 cluster, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetDbCluster(ctx, clusterName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if cluster == nil {
  adminUsername := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "Enter an administrator user name for the database: ", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  adminPassword := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
  engineVersions, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine,
 *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  var engineChoices []string
  for _, engine := range engineVersions {
   engineChoices = append(engineChoices, *engine.EngineVersion)
  }
  log.Println("The available engines for your parameter group are:")
  engineIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Which engine do you want to use?\n",
 engineChoices)
  log.Printf("Creating DB cluster %v and database %v.\n", clusterName, dbName)
  log.Printf("The DB cluster is configured to use\nyour custom parameter group %v
\n",
   *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
  log.Printf("and selected engine %v.\n", engineChoices[engineIndex])
  log.Println("This typically takes several minutes.")
  cluster, err = scenario.dbClusters.CreateDbCluster(
   ctx, clusterName, *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName, dbName, dbEngine,
   engineChoices[engineIndex], adminUsername, adminPassword)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    panic(err)
   }
   for *cluster.Status != "available" {
    scenario.helper.Pause(30)
    cluster, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetDbCluster(ctx, clusterName)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
    log.Println("Cluster created and available.")
   }
  }
  log.Println("Cluster data:")
  log.Printf("\tDBClusterIdentifier: %v\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *cluster.DBClusterArn)
  log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *cluster.Status)
  log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *cluster.Engine)
  log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *cluster.EngineVersion)
  log.Printf("\tDBClusterParameterGroup: %v\n", *cluster.DBClusterParameterGroup)
  log.Printf("\tEngineMode: %v\n", *cluster.EngineMode)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  return cluster
}

// CreateInstance shows how to create a DB instance in an existing Aurora DB
 cluster.
// A new DB cluster contains no DB instances, so you must add one. The first DB
 instance
// that is added to a DB cluster defaults to a read-write DB instance.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, cluster
 *types.DBCluster) *types.DBInstance {
  log.Println("Checking for an existing database instance.")
  dbInstance, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetInstance(ctx,
  *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  if dbInstance == nil {
   log.Println("Let's create a database instance in your DB cluster.")
   log.Println("First, choose a DB instance type:")
   instOpts, err := scenario.dbClusters.GetOrderableInstances(
    ctx, *cluster.Engine, *cluster.EngineVersion)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
```

```
  var instChoices []string
  for _, opt := range instOpts {
   instChoices = append(instChoices, *opt.DBInstanceClass)
  }
  slices.Sort(instChoices)
  instChoices = slices.Compact(instChoices)
  instIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice(
   "Which DB instance class do you want to use?\n", instChoices)
  log.Println("Creating a database instance. This typically takes several minutes.")
  dbInstance, err = scenario.dbClusters.CreateInstanceInCluster(
   ctx, *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier, *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier, *cluster.Engine,
   instChoices[instIndex])
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *dbInstance.DBInstanceStatus != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   dbInstance, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetInstance(ctx,
 *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
 }
 log.Println("Instance data:")
 log.Printf("\tDBInstanceIdentifier: %v\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
 log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceArn)
 log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceStatus)
 log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *dbInstance.Engine)
 log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *dbInstance.EngineVersion)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return dbInstance
}

// DisplayConnection displays connection information about an Aurora DB cluster and
 tips
// on how to connect to it.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) DisplayConnection(cluster *types.DBCluster) {
 log.Println(
  "You can now connect to your database using your favorite MySql client.\n" +
   "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2 instance\n" +
   "that is running in the same VPC as your database cluster. Pass the endpoint,\n"
 +
   "port, and administrator user name to 'mysql' and enter your password\n" +
```

```
   "when prompted:")
 log.Printf("\n\tmysql -h %v -P %v -u %v -p\n",
  *cluster.Endpoint, *cluster.Port, *cluster.MasterUsername)
 log.Println("For more information, see the User Guide for Aurora:\n" +
  "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/AuroraUserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.CreatingConnecting.Aurora.html#CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.Aurora.Co
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateSnapshot shows how to create a DB cluster snapshot and wait until it's
 available.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB cluster (y/n)? ", "y") {
  snapshotId := fmt.Sprintf("%v-%v", clusterName, scenario.helper.UniqueId())
  log.Printf("Creating a snapshot named %v. This typically takes a few minutes.\n",
 snapshotId)
  snapshot, err := scenario.dbClusters.CreateClusterSnapshot(ctx, clusterName,
 snapshotId)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *snapshot.Status != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   snapshot, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetClusterSnapshot(ctx, snapshotId)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Println("Snapshot data:")
  log.Printf("\tDBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: %v\n",
 *snapshot.DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *snapshot.DBClusterSnapshotArn)
  log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *snapshot.Status)
  log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *snapshot.Engine)
  log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *snapshot.EngineVersion)
  log.Printf("\tDBClusterIdentifier: %v\n", *snapshot.DBClusterIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tSnapshotCreateTime: %v\n", *snapshot.SnapshotCreateTime)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }
}
```

```
// Cleanup shows how to clean up a DB instance, DB cluster, and DB cluster parameter
 group.
// Before the DB cluster parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB instances
 and
// DB clusters must first be deleted.
func (scenario GetStartedClusters) Cleanup(ctx context.Context, dbInstance
 *types.DBInstance, cluster *types.DBCluster,
 parameterGroup *types.DBClusterParameterGroup) {

 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "\nDo you want to delete the database instance, DB cluster, and parameter group
 (y/n)? ", "y") {
  log.Printf("Deleting database instance %v.\n", *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  err := scenario.dbClusters.DeleteInstance(ctx, *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Deleting database cluster %v.\n", *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
  err = scenario.dbClusters.DeleteDbCluster(ctx, *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println(
   "Waiting for the DB instance and DB cluster to delete. This typically takes
 several minutes.")
  for dbInstance != nil || cluster != nil {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   if dbInstance != nil {
    dbInstance, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetInstance(ctx,
 *dbInstance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
   if cluster != nil {
    cluster, err = scenario.dbClusters.GetDbCluster(ctx,
 *cluster.DBClusterIdentifier)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
  }
  log.Printf("Deleting parameter group %v.",
 *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
```

```
  err = scenario.dbClusters.DeleteParameterGroup(ctx,
 *parameterGroup.DBClusterParameterGroupName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts the function from a scenario so that it
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 UniqueId() string
}
type ScenarioHelper struct{}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}

// UniqueId returns a new UUID.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) UniqueId() string {
 return uuid.New().String()
}
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
```

```
}


// GetParameterGroup gets a DB cluster parameter group by name.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}


// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the
 specified
// parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily:      aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:                 aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
```

```
  return output.DBClusterParameterGroup, err
 }
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter
 group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeDBClusterParametersPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:                      aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get paramaeters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
```

```
    params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
   }
  }
  return params, err
}



// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:                  params,
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetDbCluster gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string)
 (*types.DBCluster, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{
   DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBClusterNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB cluster %v does not exist.\n", clusterName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusters[0], err
```

```
 }
}



// CreateDbCluster creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified
 parameter group.
// The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified engine
 and
// engine version.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string,
 parameterGroupName string,
 dbName string, dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, adminName string,
 adminPassword string) (
 *types.DBCluster, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBCluster(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:                      aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  DatabaseName:                aws.String(dbName),
  EngineVersion:               aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  MasterUserPassword:          aws.String(adminPassword),
  MasterUsername:              aws.String(adminName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBCluster, err
 }
}



// DeleteDbCluster deletes a DB cluster without keeping a final snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string)
 error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBCluster(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:   aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// CreateClusterSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterSnapshotInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterSnapshot, nil
 }
}



// GetClusterSnapshot gets a DB cluster snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName
 string) (*types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsInput{
   DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}
```

```
// CreateInstanceInCluster creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster.
 The first database that is
// created defaults to a read-write DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateInstanceInCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, instanceName string,
 dbEngine string, dbInstanceClass string) (*types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBClusterIdentifier:  aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string) (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}
```

```
// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string)
 error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine string,
 parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
```

```
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instances []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instances: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instances = append(instances, output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instances, err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots

- DescribeDBClusters
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateDbCluster creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified
 parameter group.
```

```
// The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified engine
 and
// engine version.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string,
 parameterGroupName string,
 dbName string, dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, adminName string,
 adminPassword string) (
 *types.DBCluster, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBCluster(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:                      aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  DatabaseName:                aws.String(dbName),
  EngineVersion:               aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  MasterUserPassword:          aws.String(adminPassword),
  MasterUsername:              aws.String(adminName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBCluster, err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the
 specified
// parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily:      aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:                 aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterParameterGroup, err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateClusterSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBClusterSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBClusterSnapshotInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier:         aws.String(clusterName),
  DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBClusterSnapshot, nil
```

```
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateInstanceInCluster creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster.
 The first database that is
// created defaults to a read-write DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) CreateInstanceInCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName
 string, instanceName string,
 dbEngine string, dbInstanceClass string) (*types.DBInstance, error) {
```

```
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBClusterIdentifier:  aws.String(clusterName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)
```

```
type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteDbCluster deletes a DB cluster without keeping a final snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string)
 error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBCluster(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBClusterInput{
  DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:   aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string)
 error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetParameterGroup gets a DB cluster parameter group by name.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBClusterParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBClusterParameterGroupsInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
```

```
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter
 group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, source string) (
```

```
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeDBClusterParametersPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterParametersInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:                      aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get paramaeters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
```

```
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetClusterSnapshot gets a DB cluster snapshot.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetClusterSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName
 string) (*types.DBClusterSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusterSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClusterSnapshotsInput{
   DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBClusterSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetDbCluster gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetDbCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterName string)
 (*types.DBCluster, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBClusters(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBClustersInput{
   DBClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBClusterNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB cluster %v does not exist.\n", clusterName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get DB cluster %v: %v\n", clusterName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
```

```
  return &output.DBClusters[0], err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine string,
 parameterGroupFamily string) (
```

```
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)
```

```
type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string) (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := clusters.AuroraClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (clusters *DbClusters) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instances []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(clusters.AuroraClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instances: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instances = append(instances, output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instances, err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbClusters struct {
 AuroraClient *rds.Client
}



// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB cluster parameter group.
func (clusters *DbClusters) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := clusters.AuroraClient.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupInput{
   DBClusterParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:                  params,
```

```
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main
```

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock"
)

const region = "us-east-1"

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an Amazon Bedrock client and
// list the available foundation models in your account and the chosen region.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx, config.WithRegion(region))
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 bedrockClient := bedrock.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 result, err := bedrockClient.ListFoundationModels(ctx,
 &bedrock.ListFoundationModelsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list foundation models. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.ModelSummaries) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("There are no foundation models.")
 }
 for _, modelSummary := range result.ModelSummaries {
  fmt.Println(*modelSummary.ModelId)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Bedrock foundation models.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrock/types"
)

// FoundationModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock service client that is used to perform foundation model
 actions.
type FoundationModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockClient *bedrock.Client
}



// ListPolicies lists Bedrock foundation models that you can use.
func (wrapper FoundationModelWrapper) ListFoundationModels(ctx context.Context)
 ([]types.FoundationModelSummary, error) {

 var models []types.FoundationModelSummary
```

```
 result, err := wrapper.BedrockClient.ListFoundationModels(ctx,
 &bedrock.ListFoundationModelsInput{})

 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list foundation models. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  models = result.ModelSummaries
 }
 return models, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main
```

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "flag"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// Each model provider defines their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for the different models, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters.html

type ClaudeRequest struct {
 Prompt            string `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int    `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 // Omitting optional request parameters
}

type ClaudeResponse struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client
// and invokes Anthropic Claude 2 inside your account and the chosen region.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {

 region := flag.String("region", "us-east-1", "The AWS region")
 flag.Parse()

 fmt.Printf("Using AWS region: %s\n", *region)

 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx, config.WithRegion(*region))
 if err != nil {
```

```
 fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
account?")
 fmt.Println(err)
 return
}

client := bedrockruntime.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"

prompt := "Hello, how are you today?"

// Anthropic Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
prefix := "Human: "
postfix := "\n\nAssistant:"
wrappedPrompt := prefix + prompt + postfix

request := ClaudeRequest{
 Prompt:            wrappedPrompt,
 MaxTokensToSample: 200,
}

body, err := json.Marshal(request)
if err != nil {
 log.Panicln("Couldn't marshal the request: ", err)
}

result, err := client.InvokeModel(ctx, &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
 ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
 ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
 Body:        body,
})

if err != nil {
 errMsg := err.Error()
 if strings.Contains(errMsg, "no such host") {
  fmt.Printf("Error: The Bedrock service is not available in the selected
region. Please double-check the service availability for your region at https://
aws.amazon.com/about-aws/global-infrastructure/regional-product-services/.\n")
 } else if strings.Contains(errMsg, "Could not resolve the foundation model") {
  fmt.Printf("Error: Could not resolve the foundation model from model identifier:
\"%v\". Please verify that the requested model exists and is accessible within the
specified region.\n", modelId)
 } else {
```

```
    fmt.Printf("Error: Couldn't invoke Anthropic Claude. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
   os.Exit(1)
  }

  var response ClaudeResponse

  err = json.Unmarshal(result.Body, &response)

  if err != nil {
   log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
  }
  fmt.Println("Prompt:\n", prompt)
  fmt.Println("Response from Anthropic Claude:\n", response.Completion)
 }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Amazon Titan Image Generator
- Amazon Titan Text
- Anthropic Claude

Scenarios

Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to prepare and send a prompt to a variety of large-language models (LLMs) on Amazon Bedrock

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/base64"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "math/rand"
 "os"
 "path/filepath"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/bedrock-runtime/actions"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// InvokeModelsScenario demonstrates how to use the Amazon Bedrock Runtime client
// to invoke various foundation models for text and image generation
//
// 1. Generate text with Anthropic Claude 2
// 2. Generate text with AI21 Labs Jurassic-2
// 3. Generate text with Meta Llama 2 Chat
// 4. Generate text and asynchronously process the response stream with Anthropic
 Claude 2
// 5. Generate an image with the Amazon Titan image generation model
// 6. Generate text with Amazon Titan Text G1 Express model
type InvokeModelsScenario struct {
 sdkConfig             aws.Config
 invokeModelWrapper    actions.InvokeModelWrapper
 responseStreamWrapper actions.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper
 questioner            demotools.IQuestioner
}

// NewInvokeModelsScenario constructs an InvokeModelsScenario instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get a Bedrock Runtime client and create wrappers
 for the
// actions used in the scenario.
func NewInvokeModelsScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 InvokeModelsScenario {
 client := bedrockruntime.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
```

```
 return InvokeModelsScenario{
  sdkConfig:             sdkConfig,
  invokeModelWrapper:    actions.InvokeModelWrapper{BedrockRuntimeClient: client},
  responseStreamWrapper:
 actions.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper{BedrockRuntimeClient: client},
  questioner:            questioner,
 }
}

// Runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo: %v\n", r)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Runtime model invocation demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))

 log.Printf("First, let's invoke a few large-language models using the synchronous
 client:\n\n")

 text2textPrompt := "In one paragraph, who are you?"

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Claude with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeClaude(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Jurassic-2 with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeJurassic2(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Printf("Now, let's invoke Claude with the asynchronous client and process the
 response stream:\n\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Claude with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeWithResponseStream(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
```

```
 log.Printf("Now, let's create an image with the Amazon Titan image generation
 model:\n\n")

 text2ImagePrompt := "stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot"
 seed := rand.Int63n(2147483648)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Amazon Titan with prompt: %v\n", text2ImagePrompt)
 scenario.InvokeTitanImage(ctx, text2ImagePrompt, seed)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 77))
 log.Printf("Invoking Titan Text Express with prompt: %v\n", text2textPrompt)
 scenario.InvokeTitanText(ctx, text2textPrompt)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("=", 77))
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeClaude(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) {
 completion, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeClaude(ctx, prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nClaude     : %v\n", strings.TrimSpace(completion))
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeJurassic2(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) {
 completion, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeJurassic2(ctx, prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nJurassic-2 : %v\n", strings.TrimSpace(completion))
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeWithResponseStream(ctx context.Context,
 prompt string) {
 log.Println("\nClaude with response stream:")
 _, err := scenario.responseStreamWrapper.InvokeModelWithResponseStream(ctx, prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
 log.Println()
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeTitanImage(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string, seed int64) {
 base64ImageData, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeTitanImage(ctx, prompt,
 seed)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 imagePath := saveImage(base64ImageData, "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1")
 fmt.Printf("The generated image has been saved to %s\n", imagePath)
}

func (scenario InvokeModelsScenario) InvokeTitanText(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) {
 completion, err := scenario.invokeModelWrapper.InvokeTitanText(ctx, prompt)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nTitan Text Express    : %v\n\n", strings.TrimSpace(completion))
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - InvokeModel
  - InvokeModelWithResponseStream

Amazon Titan Image Generator

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// InvokeModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



type TitanImageRequest struct {
 TaskType              string                `json:"taskType"`
 TextToImageParams     TextToImageParams     `json:"textToImageParams"`
 ImageGenerationConfig ImageGenerationConfig `json:"imageGenerationConfig"`
}
type TextToImageParams struct {
 Text string `json:"text"`
}
type ImageGenerationConfig struct {
 NumberOfImages int     `json:"numberOfImages"`
 Quality        string  `json:"quality"`
 CfgScale       float64 `json:"cfgScale"`
 Height         int     `json:"height"`
 Width          int     `json:"width"`
```

```
 Seed           int64   `json:"seed"`
}

type TitanImageResponse struct {
 Images []string `json:"images"`
}

// Invokes the Titan Image model to create an image using the input provided
// in the request body.
func (wrapper InvokeModelWrapper) InvokeTitanImage(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string, seed int64) (string, error) {
 modelId := "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1"

 body, err := json.Marshal(TitanImageRequest{
  TaskType: "TEXT_IMAGE",
  TextToImageParams: TextToImageParams{
   Text: prompt,
  },
  ImageGenerationConfig: ImageGenerationConfig{
   NumberOfImages: 1,
   Quality:        "standard",
   CfgScale:       8.0,
   Height:         512,
   Width:          512,
   Seed:           seed,
  },
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to marshal", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModel(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 var response TitanImageResponse
```

```
 if err := json.Unmarshal(output.Body, &response); err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }

 base64ImageData := response.Images[0]

 return base64ImageData, nil

}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)
```

```
// InvokeModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



// Each model provider has their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for Amazon Titan Text, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-titan-
text.html
type TitanTextRequest struct {
 InputText            string                `json:"inputText"`
 TextGenerationConfig TextGenerationConfig `json:"textGenerationConfig"`
}

type TextGenerationConfig struct {
 Temperature   float64  `json:"temperature"`
 TopP          float64  `json:"topP"`
 MaxTokenCount int      `json:"maxTokenCount"`
 StopSequences []string `json:"stopSequences,omitempty"`
}

type TitanTextResponse struct {
 InputTextTokenCount int      `json:"inputTextTokenCount"`
 Results             []Result `json:"results"`
}

type Result struct {
 TokenCount       int    `json:"tokenCount"`
 OutputText       string `json:"outputText"`
 CompletionReason string `json:"completionReason"`
}

func (wrapper InvokeModelWrapper) InvokeTitanText(ctx context.Context, prompt
 string) (string, error) {
 modelId := "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

 body, err := json.Marshal(TitanTextRequest{
  InputText: prompt,
  TextGenerationConfig: TextGenerationConfig{
   Temperature:   0,
   TopP:          1,
```

```
   MaxTokenCount: 4096,
  },
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to marshal", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModel(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 var response TitanTextResponse
 if err := json.Unmarshal(output.Body, &response); err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }

 return response.Results[0].OutputText, nil
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime/types"
)

// ConverseWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke Bedrock.
type ConverseWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



func (wrapper ConverseWrapper) ConverseClaude(ctx context.Context, prompt string)
 (string, error) {
 var content = types.ContentBlockMemberText{
  Value: prompt,
 }
 var message = types.Message{
  Content: []types.ContentBlock{&content},
  Role:    "user",
 }
 modelId := "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
 var converseInput = bedrockruntime.ConverseInput{
  ModelId:  aws.String(modelId),
  Messages: []types.Message{message},
 }
 response, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.Converse(ctx, &converseInput)
 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
```

```
 }

 responseText, _ := response.Output.(*types.ConverseOutputMemberMessage)
 responseContentBlock := responseText.Value.Content[0]
 text, _ := responseContentBlock.(*types.ContentBlockMemberText)
 return text.Value, nil

}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
)

// InvokeModelWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWrapper struct {
```

```
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}




// Each model provider has their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for Anthropic Claude, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-claude.html

type ClaudeRequest struct {
 Prompt            string   `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int      `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 Temperature       float64  `json:"temperature,omitempty"`
 StopSequences     []string `json:"stop_sequences,omitempty"`
}

type ClaudeResponse struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// Invokes Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock to run an inference using the input
// provided in the request body.
func (wrapper InvokeModelWrapper) InvokeClaude(ctx context.Context, prompt string)
 (string, error) {
 modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"

 // Anthropic Claude requires enclosing the prompt as follows:
 enclosedPrompt := "Human: " + prompt + "\n\nAssistant:"

 body, err := json.Marshal(ClaudeRequest{
  Prompt:            enclosedPrompt,
  MaxTokensToSample: 200,
  Temperature:       0.5,
  StopSequences:     []string{"\n\nHuman:"},
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to marshal", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModel(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelInput{
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
```

```
  Body:        body,
 })

 if err != nil {
  ProcessError(err, modelId)
 }

 var response ClaudeResponse
 if err := json.Unmarshal(output.Body, &response); err != nil {
  log.Fatal("failed to unmarshal", err)
 }

 return response.Completion, nil
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/bedrockruntime/types"
)

// InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper encapsulates Amazon Bedrock actions used in
 the examples.
// It contains a Bedrock Runtime client that is used to invoke foundation models.
type InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper struct {
 BedrockRuntimeClient *bedrockruntime.Client
}



// Each model provider defines their own individual request and response formats.
// For the format, ranges, and default values for the different models, refer to:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters.html

type Request struct {
 Prompt            string  `json:"prompt"`
 MaxTokensToSample int     `json:"max_tokens_to_sample"`
 Temperature       float64 `json:"temperature,omitempty"`
}

type Response struct {
 Completion string `json:"completion"`
}

// Invokes Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock to run an inference and asynchronously
// process the response stream.

func (wrapper InvokeModelWithResponseStreamWrapper)
 InvokeModelWithResponseStream(ctx context.Context, prompt string) (string, error) {

 modelId := "anthropic.claude-v2"

 // Anthropic Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
 prefix := "Human: "
 postfix := "\n\nAssistant:"
 prompt = prefix + prompt + postfix

 request := ClaudeRequest{
  Prompt:            prompt,
```

```
  MaxTokensToSample: 200,
  Temperature:       0.5,
  StopSequences:     []string{"\n\nHuman:"},
 }

 body, err := json.Marshal(request)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln("Couldn't marshal the request: ", err)
 }

 output, err := wrapper.BedrockRuntimeClient.InvokeModelWithResponseStream(ctx,
 &bedrockruntime.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamInput{
  Body:        body,
  ModelId:     aws.String(modelId),
  ContentType: aws.String("application/json"),
 })

 if err != nil {
  errMsg := err.Error()
  if strings.Contains(errMsg, "no such host") {
   log.Printf("The Bedrock service is not available in the selected region. Please
 double-check the service availability for your region at https://aws.amazon.com/
about-aws/global-infrastructure/regional-product-services/.\n")
  } else if strings.Contains(errMsg, "Could not resolve the foundation model") {
   log.Printf("Could not resolve the foundation model from model identifier: \"%v
\". Please verify that the requested model exists and is accessible within the
 specified region.\n", modelId)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't invoke Anthropic Claude. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }

 resp, err := processStreamingOutput(ctx, output, func(ctx context.Context, part
 []byte) error {
  fmt.Print(string(part))
  return nil
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal("streaming output processing error: ", err)
 }

 return resp.Completion, nil
```

```
}

type StreamingOutputHandler func(ctx context.Context, part []byte) error

func processStreamingOutput(ctx context.Context, output
 *bedrockruntime.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamOutput, handler
 StreamingOutputHandler) (Response, error) {

 var combinedResult string
 resp := Response{}

 for event := range output.GetStream().Events() {
  switch v := event.(type) {
  case *types.ResponseStreamMemberChunk:

   //fmt.Println("payload", string(v.Value.Bytes))

   var resp Response
   err := json.NewDecoder(bytes.NewReader(v.Value.Bytes)).Decode(&resp)
   if err != nil {
    return resp, err
   }

   err = handler(ctx, []byte(resp.Completion))
   if err != nil {
    return resp, err
   }

   combinedResult += resp.Completion

  case *types.UnknownUnionMember:
   fmt.Println("unknown tag:", v.Tag)

  default:
   fmt.Println("union is nil or unknown type")
  }
 }

 resp.Completion = combinedResult

 return resp, nil
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

AWS CloudFormation examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with AWS CloudFormation.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeStacks`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStacks`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
```

```
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`StartLiveTail`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for Go V2

Include the required files.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)
```

Handle the events from the Live Tail session.

```
func handleEventStreamAsync(stream *cloudwatchlogs.StartLiveTailEventStream) {
 eventsChan := stream.Events()
 for {
  event := <-eventsChan
  switch e := event.(type) {
  case *types.StartLiveTailResponseStreamMemberSessionStart:
   log.Println("Received SessionStart event")
  case *types.StartLiveTailResponseStreamMemberSessionUpdate:
   for _, logEvent := range e.Value.SessionResults {
    log.Println(*logEvent.Message)
   }
  default:
   // Handle on-stream exceptions
   if err := stream.Err(); err != nil {
    log.Fatalf("Error occured during streaming: %v", err)
   } else if event == nil {
```

```
    log.Println("Stream is Closed")
    return
   } else {
    log.Fatalf("Unknown event type: %T", e)
   }
  }
 }
}
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
cfg, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())
if err != nil {
 panic("configuration error, " + err.Error())
}
client := cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(cfg)

request := &cloudwatchlogs.StartLiveTailInput{
 LogGroupIdentifiers:   logGroupIdentifiers,
 LogStreamNames:        logStreamNames,
 LogEventFilterPattern: logEventFilterPattern,
}

response, err := client.StartLiveTail(context.TODO(), request)
// Handle pre-stream Exceptions
if err != nil {
 log.Fatalf("Failed to start streaming: %v", err)
}

// Start a Goroutine to handle events over stream
stream := response.GetStream()
go handleEventStreamAsync(stream)
```

Stop the Live Tail session after a period of time has elapsed.

```
// Close the stream (which ends the session) after a timeout
time.Sleep(10 * time.Second)
stream.Close()
log.Println("Event stream closed")
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
```

```
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 cognitoClient := cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the user pools for your account.")
 var pools []types.UserPoolDescriptionType
 paginator := cognitoidentityprovider.NewListUserPoolsPaginator(
  cognitoClient, &cognitoidentityprovider.ListUserPoolsInput{MaxResults:
 aws.Int32(10)})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get user pools. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   pools = append(pools, output.UserPools...)
  }
 }
 if len(pools) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any user pools!")
 } else {
  for _, pool := range pools {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *pool.Name, *pool.Id)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminCreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminCreateUser`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
```

```
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see AdminCreateUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`AdminSetUserPassword`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminSetUserPassword`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see AdminSetUserPassword in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ConfirmForgotPassword`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmForgotPassword`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
```

```
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmForgotPassword in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
```

```
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ForgotPassword`

The following code example shows how to use `ForgotPassword`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}
```

- For API details, see ForgotPassword in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`InitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateAuth`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListUserPools`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUserPools`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 cognitoClient := cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the user pools for your account.")
 var pools []types.UserPoolDescriptionType
 paginator := cognitoidentityprovider.NewListUserPoolsPaginator(
  cognitoClient, &cognitoidentityprovider.ListUserPoolsInput{MaxResults:
 aws.Int32(10)})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
```

```
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get user pools. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   pools = append(pools, output.UserPools...)
  }
 }
 if len(pools) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any user pools!")
 } else {
  for _, pool := range pools {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *pool.Name, *pool.Id)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`SignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `SignUp`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
```

```
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`UpdateUserPool`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUserPool`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
```

```
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUserPool in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scenarios

Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PreSignUp` trigger.
- Sign up a user with Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically confirms known users.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// AutoConfirm separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type AutoConfirm struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewAutoConfirm constructs a new auto confirm runner.
```

```
func NewAutoConfirm(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, helper
 IScenarioHelper) AutoConfirm {
 scenario := AutoConfirm{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddPreSignUpTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PreSignUp trigger.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PreSignUp trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when a user signs up, and lets your function take action
 before the main Cognito\n" +
  "sign up processing occurs.\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PreSignUp, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the PreSignUp
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)
}

// SignUpUser signs up a user from the known user table with a password you specify.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignUpUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 usersTable string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("Let's sign up a user to your Cognito user pool. When the user's email
 matches an email in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, it is automatically verified and the user is
 confirmed.")

 knownUsers, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, usersTable)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 userChoice := runner.questioner.AskChoice("Which user do you want to use?\n",
 knownUsers.UserNameList())
 user := knownUsers.Users[userChoice]

 var signedUp bool
 var userConfirmed bool
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter a password that has at least eight
 characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !signedUp {
  log.Printf("Signing up user '%v' with email '%v' to Cognito.\n", user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
  userConfirmed, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignUp(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
 password, user.UserEmail)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   signedUp = true
  }
 }
 log.Printf("User %v signed up, confirmed = %v.\n", user.UserName, userConfirmed)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// SignInUser signs in a user.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) string {
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 log.Printf("Let's sign in as %v...\n", userName)
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
 log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
 (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return *authResult.AccessToken
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])

 runner.AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers, actions.PreSignUp)
 userName, password := runner.SignUpUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunction"])
 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
  runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password))

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PreSignUp event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
```

```
// specifying whether they should be confirmed and verified.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup) (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup,
 error) {
 log.Printf("Received presignup from %v for user '%v'", event.TriggerSource,
 event.UserName)
 if event.TriggerSource != "PreSignUp_SignUp" {
  // Other trigger sources, such as PreSignUp_AdminInitiateAuth, ignore the response
 from this handler.
  return event, nil
 }
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
 }
 log.Printf("Looking up email %v in table %v.\n", user.UserEmail, tableName)
 output, err := h.dynamoClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key:       user.GetKey(),
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error looking up email %v.\n", user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }
 if output.Item == nil {
  log.Printf("Email %v not found. Email verification is required.\n",
 user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }

 err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(output.Item, &user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return event, err
 }

 if user.UserName != event.UserName {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found, but stored UserName '%v' does not match supplied
 UserName '%v'. Verification is required.\n",
   user.UserEmail, user.UserName, event.UserName)
 } else {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found with matching UserName %v. User is confirmed.\n",
 user.UserEmail, user.UserName)
  event.Response.AutoConfirmUser = true
```

```
  event.Response.AutoVerifyEmail = true
 }

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
```

```
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}
```

```
// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for this
 example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users table...
\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the specified
 Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with your
 Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
```

```
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
```

```
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
```

```
    log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
   }
  }
  return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
```

```
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
```

```
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_%v",
 i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user User)
 error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx, &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)
```

```
// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
```

```
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources \n"
 +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i], HandlerArn:
 nil}
  }
```

```
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `MigrateUser` trigger.
- Sign in to Amazon Cognito with a username and email that is not in the user pool.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically migrates known users to the user pool.
- Perform the forgot password flow to reset the password for the migrated user.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// MigrateUser separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type MigrateUser struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewMigrateUser constructs a new migrate user runner.
func NewMigrateUser(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, helper
 IScenarioHelper) MigrateUser {
 scenario := MigrateUser{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
```

```
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddMigrateUserTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 MigrateUser trigger.
func (runner *MigrateUser) AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the MigrateUser trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when an unknown user signs in, and lets your function take
 action before Cognito\n" +
  "rejects the user.\n\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.UserMigration, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the MigrateUser
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser adds a new user to the known users table and signs that user in to
 Amazon Cognito.
func (runner *MigrateUser) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, usersTable string,
 clientId string) (bool, actions.User) {
 log.Println("Let's sign in a user to your Cognito user pool. When the username and
 email matches an entry in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, the email is automatically verified and the user is
 migrated to the Cognito user pool.")

 user := actions.User{}
 user.UserName = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter a username:")
 user.UserEmail = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter an email that you own. This email
 will be used to confirm user migration\n" +
  "during this example:")
```

```
 runner.helper.AddKnownUser(ctx, usersTable, user)

 var err error
 var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 signedIn := false
 for !signedIn && resetRequired == nil {
  log.Printf("Signing in to Cognito as user '%v'. The expected result is a
 PasswordResetRequiredException.\n\n", user.UserName)
  authResult, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName, "_")
  if err != nil {
   if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
    log.Printf("\nUser '%v' is not in the Cognito user pool but was found in the
 DynamoDB known users table.\n"+
     "User migration is started and a password reset is required.", user.UserName)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Printf("User '%v' successfully signed in. This is unexpected and probably
 means you have not\n"+
    "cleaned up a previous run of this scenario, so the user exist in the Cognito
 user pool.\n"+
    "You can continue this example and select to clean up resources, or manually
 remove\n"+
    "the user from your user pool and try again.", user.UserName)
   runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
   signedIn = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return resetRequired != nil, user
}

// ResetPassword starts a password recovery flow.
func (runner *MigrateUser) ResetPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string, user
 actions.User) {
 wantCode := runner.questioner.AskBool(fmt.Sprintf("In order to migrate the user to
 Cognito, you must be able to receive a confirmation\n"+
  "code by email at %v. Do you want to send a code (y/n)?", user.UserEmail), "y")
 if !wantCode {
```

```
 log.Println("To complete this example and successfully migrate a user to Cognito,
you must enter an email\n" +
  "you own that can receive a confirmation code.")
 return
}
codeDelivery, err := runner.cognitoActor.ForgotPassword(ctx, clientId,
user.UserName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("\nA confirmation code has been sent to %v.", *codeDelivery.Destination)
code := runner.questioner.Ask("Check your email and enter it here:")

confirmed := false
password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
 "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
for !confirmed {
 log.Printf("\nConfirming password reset for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
 err = runner.cognitoActor.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx, clientId, code,
user.UserName, password)
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
  } else {
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = true
 }
}
log.Printf("User '%v' successfully confirmed and migrated.\n", user.UserName)
log.Println("Signing in with your username and password...")
authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
password)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
(*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
*authResult.AccessToken)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *MigrateUser) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]

 runner.AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.UserMigration)
 resetNeeded, user := runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"],
 stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"])
 if resetNeeded {
  runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunction"])
  runner.ResetPassword(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], user)
 }

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `MigrateUser` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the MigrateUser event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be migrated to the user pool.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser) (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser,
 error) {
 log.Printf("Received migrate trigger from %v for user '%v'", event.TriggerSource,
 event.UserName)
 if event.TriggerSource != "UserMigration_Authentication" {
  return event, nil
 }
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserName: event.UserName,
```

```
 }
 log.Printf("Looking up user '%v' in table %v.\n", user.UserName, tableName)
 filterEx := expression.Name("UserName").Equal(expression.Value(user.UserName))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filterEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error building expression to query for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  return event, err
 }
 output, err := h.dynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName:                 aws.String(tableName),
  FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
  ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
  ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error looking up user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  return event, err
 }
 if len(output.Items) == 0 {
  log.Printf("User '%v' not found, not migrating user.\n", user.UserName)
  return event, err
 }

 var users []UserInfo
 err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &users)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB items. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return event, err
 }

 user = users[0]
 log.Printf("UserName '%v' found with email %v. User is migrated and must reset
 password.\n", user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.UserAttributes = map[string]string{
  "email":          user.UserEmail,
  "email_verified": "true", // email_verified is required for the forgot password
 flow.
 }
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.FinalUserStatus = "RESET_REQUIRED"
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.MessageAction = "SUPPRESS"

 return event, err
}
```

```
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}
```

```
// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for this
 example.\n", tableName)
```

```
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users table...
\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the specified
 Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with your
 Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
```

```
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
```

```
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
```

```
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
```

```
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
```

```
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
```

```
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)
```

```
// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_%v",
 i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
```

```
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user User)
 error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
```

```
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
```

```
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx, &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
```

```
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
```

```
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources \n"
 +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i], HandlerArn:
 nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
```

```
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - ConfirmForgotPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - ForgotPassword
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

The following code example shows how to write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication.

- Use administrator functions to add a user to a user pool.
- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PostAuthentication` trigger.
- Sign the new user in to Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function writes custom information to CloudWatch Logs and to an DynamoDB table.
- Get and display custom data from the DynamoDB table, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// ActivityLog separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ActivityLog struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewActivityLog constructs a new activity log runner.
func NewActivityLog(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, helper
 IScenarioHelper) ActivityLog {
 scenario := ActivityLog{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddUserToPool selects a user from the known users table and uses administrator
 credentials to add the user to the user pool.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddUserToPool(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 tableName string) (string, string) {
```

```
 log.Println("To facilitate this example, let's add a user to the user pool using
 administrator privileges.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 user := users.Users[0]
 log.Printf("Adding known user %v to the user pool.\n", user.UserName)
 err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminCreateUser(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 pwSet := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !pwSet {
  log.Printf("\nSetting password for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   pwSet = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// AddActivityLogTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PostAuthentication trigger.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, activityLogArn string) {
 log.Println("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PostAuthentication trigger
 from Cognito.\n" +
```

```
  "This trigger happens after a user is authenticated, and lets your function take
 action, such as logging\n" +
  "the outcome.")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PostAuthentication, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(activityLogArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.PostAuthentication)
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle PostAuthentication
 Cognito trigger.\n",
  activityLogArn, userPoolId)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser signs in as the specified user.
func (runner *ActivityLog) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) {
 log.Printf("Now we'll sign in user %v and check the results in the logs and the
 DynamoDB table.", userName)
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Sign in successful.",
  "The PostAuthentication Lambda handler writes custom information to CloudWatch
 Logs.")

 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
}

// GetKnownUserLastLogin gets the login info for a user from the Amazon DynamoDB
 table and displays it.
func (runner *ActivityLog) GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string, userName string) {
 log.Println("The PostAuthentication handler also writes login data to the DynamoDB
 table.")
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
```

```
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, user := range users.Users {
  if user.UserName == userName {
   log.Println("The last login info for the user in the known users table is:")
   log.Printf("\t%+v", *user.LastLogin)
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *ActivityLog) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])
 userName, password := runner.AddUserToPool(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])

 runner.AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunctionArn"])
 runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password)
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunction"])
 runner.GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"], userName)

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PostAuthentication` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// LoginInfo defines structured login data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string `dynamodbav:"UserPoolId"`
 ClientId   string `dynamodbav:"ClientId"`
 Time       string `dynamodbav:"Time"`
}

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string    `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string    `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
 LastLogin LoginInfo `dynamodbav:"LastLogin"`
}
```

```
// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PostAuthentication event by writing custom data to the
 logs and
// to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context,
 event events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication)
 (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication, error) {
 log.Printf("Received post authentication trigger from %v for user '%v'",
 event.TriggerSource, event.UserName)
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserName:  event.UserName,
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
  LastLogin: LoginInfo{
   UserPoolId: event.UserPoolID,
   ClientId:   event.CallerContext.ClientID,
   Time:       time.Now().Format(time.UnixDate),
  },
 }
 // Write to CloudWatch Logs.
 fmt.Printf("%#v", user)

 // Also write to an external system. This examples uses DynamoDB to demonstrate.
 userMap, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshal to DynamoDB map. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else if len(userMap) == 0 {
  log.Printf("User info marshaled to an empty map.")
 } else {
  _, err := h.dynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
   Item:      userMap,
```

```
    TableName: aws.String(tableName),
   })
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't write to DynamoDB. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Wrote user info to DynamoDB table %v.\n", tableName)
   }
  }

  return event, nil
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)
```

```
// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}
```

```
// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for this
 example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users table...
\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the specified
 Lambda function and displays them.
```

```
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with your
 Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}
```

```
// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
```

```
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
```

```
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
```

```
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
```

```
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_%v",
 i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
```

```
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user User)
 error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
```

```
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx, &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
```

```
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources \n"
 +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
```

```
    }
    log.Println("Deleted user.")
   }
   triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
   for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
    triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i], HandlerArn:
  nil}
   }
   err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
  triggerList...)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
  } else {
   log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
  unexpected charges!")
  }
 }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - AdminCreateUser
  - AdminSetUserPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - UpdateUserPool

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type Event struct {
 Events []Record `json:"events"`
}

type Record struct {
 Event struct {
  OperationType string `json:"operationType"`
  NS            struct {
   DB   string `json:"db"`
   Coll string `json:"coll"`
  } `json:"ns"`
  FullDocument interface{} `json:"fullDocument"`
 } `json:"event"`
```

```
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}

func handler(ctx context.Context, event Event) (string, error) {
 fmt.Println("Loading function")
 for _, record := range event.Events {
  logDocumentDBEvent(record)
 }

 return "OK", nil
}

func logDocumentDBEvent(record Record) {
 fmt.Printf("Operation type: %s\n", record.Event.OperationType)
 fmt.Printf("db: %s\n", record.Event.NS.DB)
 fmt.Printf("collection: %s\n", record.Event.NS.Coll)
 docBytes, _ := json.MarshalIndent(record.Event.FullDocument, "", "  ")
 fmt.Printf("Full document: %s\n", string(docBytes))
}
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario to create the table and perform actions on it.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/dynamodb/actions"
)

// RunMovieScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use the AWS SDK
 for Go
// to create and use an Amazon DynamoDB table that stores data about movies.
//
//  1. Create a table that can hold movie data.
//  2. Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
//  3. Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
//  4. Query for movies that were released in a given year.
//  5. Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
//  6. Delete a movie from the table.
//  7. Delete the table.
//
// This example creates a DynamoDB service client from the specified sdkConfig so
 that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
//
// The specified movie sampler is used to get sample data from a URL that is loaded
// into the named table.
func RunMovieScenario(
 ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 tableName string,
 movieSampler actions.IMovieSampler) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 tableBasics := actions.TableBasics{TableName: tableName,
  DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)}
```

```
exists, err := tableBasics.TableExists(ctx)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !exists {
 log.Printf("Creating table %v...\n", tableName)
 _, err = tableBasics.CreateMovieTable(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Created table %v.\n", tableName)
 }
} else {
 log.Printf("Table %v already exists.\n", tableName)
}

var customMovie actions.Movie
customMovie.Title = questioner.Ask("Enter a movie title to add to the table:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
customMovie.Year = questioner.AskInt("What year was it released?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{}, demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1900, Upper: 2030})
customMovie.Info = map[string]interface{}{}
customMovie.Info["rating"] = questioner.AskFloat64(
 "Enter a rating between 1 and 10:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{}, demotools.InFloatRange{Lower: 1, Upper: 10})
customMovie.Info["plot"] = questioner.Ask("What's the plot? ",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
err = tableBasics.AddMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Added %v to the movie table.\n", customMovie.Title)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's update your movie. You previously rated it %v.\n",
customMovie.Info["rating"])
customMovie.Info["rating"] = questioner.AskFloat64(
 "What new rating would you give it?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{}, demotools.InFloatRange{Lower: 1, Upper: 10})
log.Printf("You summarized the plot as '%v'.\n", customMovie.Info["plot"])
customMovie.Info["plot"] = questioner.Ask("What would you say now?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
attributes, err := tableBasics.UpdateMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
```

```
 log.Printf("Updated %v with new values.\n", customMovie.Title)
 for _, attVal := range attributes {
  for valKey, val := range attVal {
   log.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", valKey, val)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Getting movie data from %v and adding 250 movies to the table...\n",
 movieSampler.GetURL())
movies := movieSampler.GetSampleMovies()
written, err := tableBasics.AddMovieBatch(ctx, movies, 250)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
} else {
 log.Printf("Added %v movies to the table.\n", written)
}

show := 10
if show > written {
 show = written
}
log.Printf("The first %v movies in the table are:", show)
for index, movie := range movies[:show] {
 log.Printf("\t%v. %v\n", index+1, movie.Title)
}
movieIndex := questioner.AskInt(
 "Enter the number of a movie to get info about it: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1, Upper: show},
)
movie, err := tableBasics.GetMovie(ctx, movies[movieIndex-1].Title,
movies[movieIndex-1].Year)
if err == nil {
 log.Println(movie)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Let's get a list of movies released in a given year.")
releaseYear := questioner.AskInt("Enter a year between 1972 and 2018: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1972, Upper: 2018},
)
releases, err := tableBasics.Query(ctx, releaseYear)
if err == nil {
```

```
 if len(releases) == 0 {
  log.Printf("I couldn't find any movies released in %v!\n", releaseYear)
 } else {
  for _, movie = range releases {
   log.Println(movie)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Now let's scan for movies released in a range of years.")
startYear := questioner.AskInt("Enter a year: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1972, Upper: 2018})
endYear := questioner.AskInt("Enter another year: ",
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 1972, Upper: 2018})
releases, err = tableBasics.Scan(ctx, startYear, endYear)
if err == nil {
 if len(releases) == 0 {
  log.Printf("I couldn't find any movies released between %v and %v!\n", startYear,
endYear)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Found %v movies. In this list, the plot is <nil> because "+
   "we used a projection expression when scanning for items to return only "+
   "the title, year, and rating.\n", len(releases))
  for _, movie = range releases {
   log.Println(movie)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

var tables []string
if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to list all of your tables? (y/n) ", "y") {
 tables, err = tableBasics.ListTables(ctx)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Found %v tables:", len(tables))
  for _, table := range tables {
   log.Printf("\t%v", table)
  }
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's remove your movie '%v'.\n", customMovie.Title)
```

```
 if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete it from the table? (y/n) ", "y") {
  err = tableBasics.DeleteMovie(ctx, customMovie)
 }
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted %v.\n", customMovie.Title)
 }

 if questioner.AskBool("Delete the table, too? (y/n)", "y") {
  err = tableBasics.DeleteTable(ctx)
 } else {
  log.Println("Don't forget to delete the table when you're done or you might " +
   "incur charges on your account.")
 }
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted table %v.\n", tableBasics.TableName)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
```

```
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

Create a struct and methods that call DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// TableExists determines whether a DynamoDB table exists.
func (basics TableBasics) TableExists(ctx context.Context) (bool, error) {
 exists := true
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DescribeTable(
  ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundEx *types.ResourceNotFoundException
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundEx) {
   log.Printf("Table %v does not exist.\n", basics.TableName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't determine existence of table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  }
  exists = false
 }
 return exists, err
}



// CreateMovieTable creates a DynamoDB table with a composite primary key defined as
// a string sort key named `title`, and a numeric partition key named `year`.
// This function uses NewTableExistsWaiter to wait for the table to be created by
// DynamoDB before it returns.
func (basics TableBasics) CreateMovieTable(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.TableDescription, error) {
 var tableDesc *types.TableDescription
```

```
 table, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.CreateTable(ctx, &dynamodb.CreateTableInput{
  AttributeDefinitions: []types.AttributeDefinition{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
   AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeN,
  }, {
   AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
   AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeS,
  }},
  KeySchema: []types.KeySchemaElement{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
   KeyType:       types.KeyTypeHash,
  }, {
   AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
   KeyType:       types.KeyTypeRange,
  }},
  TableName:   aws.String(basics.TableName),
  BillingMode: types.BillingModePayPerRequest,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 } else {
  waiter := dynamodb.NewTableExistsWaiter(basics.DynamoDbClient)
  err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{
   TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)}, 5*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Wait for table exists failed. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  tableDesc = table.TableDescription
  log.Printf("Ccreating table test")
 }
 return tableDesc, err
}



// ListTables lists the DynamoDB table names for the current account.
func (basics TableBasics) ListTables(ctx context.Context) ([]string, error) {
 var tableNames []string
 var output *dynamodb.ListTablesOutput
 var err error
 tablePaginator := dynamodb.NewListTablesPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ListTablesInput{})
 for tablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = tablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
```

```
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   tableNames = append(tableNames, output.TableNames...)
  }
 }
 return tableNames, err
}



// AddMovie adds a movie the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 item, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Item: item,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't add item to table. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// UpdateMovie updates the rating and plot of a movie that already exists in the
// DynamoDB table. This function uses the `expression` package to build the update
// expression.
func (basics TableBasics) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie)
 (map[string]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.UpdateItemOutput
 var attributeMap map[string]map[string]interface{}
 update := expression.Set(expression.Name("info.rating"),
 expression.Value(movie.Info["rating"]))
 update.Set(expression.Name("info.plot"), expression.Value(movie.Info["plot"]))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithUpdate(update).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for update. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
```

```
  response, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.UpdateItem(ctx, &dynamodb.UpdateItemInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   Key:                       movie.GetKey(),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   UpdateExpression:          expr.Update(),
   ReturnValues:              types.ReturnValueUpdatedNew,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
  } else {
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Attributes, &attributeMap)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshall update response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
  }
 }
 return attributeMap, err
}



// AddMovieBatch adds a slice of movies to the DynamoDB table. The function sends
// batches of 25 movies to DynamoDB until all movies are added or it reaches the
// specified maximum.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 maxMovies int) (int, error) {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 written := 0
 batchSize := 25 // DynamoDB allows a maximum batch size of 25 items.
 start := 0
 end := start + batchSize
 for start < maxMovies && start < len(movies) {
  var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
  if end > len(movies) {
   end = len(movies)
  }
  for _, movie := range movies[start:end] {
   item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't marshal movie %v for batch writing. Here's why: %v\n",
 movie.Title, err)
   } else {
```

```
    writeReqs = append(
     writeReqs,
     types.WriteRequest{PutRequest: &types.PutRequest{Item: item}},
    )
   }
  }
  _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
   RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{basics.TableName: writeReqs}})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't add a batch of movies to %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  } else {
   written += len(writeReqs)
  }
  start = end
  end += batchSize
 }

 return written, err
}



// GetMovie gets movie data from the DynamoDB table by using the primary composite
 key
// made of title and year.
func (basics TableBasics) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 movie := Movie{Title: title, Year: year}
 response, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key: movie.GetKey(), TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}
```

```
// Query gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in the specified
 year.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the key condition expression
// that is used in the query.
func (basics TableBasics) Query(ctx context.Context, releaseYear int) ([]Movie,
 error) {
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.QueryOutput
 var movies []Movie
 keyEx := expression.Key("year").Equal(expression.Value(releaseYear))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithKeyCondition(keyEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for query. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  queryPaginator := dynamodb.NewQueryPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.QueryInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   KeyConditionExpression:    expr.KeyCondition(),
  })
  for queryPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = queryPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't query for movies released in %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 releaseYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
     movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
    }
   }
  }
 }
 return movies, err
}
```

```
// Scan gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in a range of years
// and projects them to return a reduced set of fields.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the filter and projection
// expressions.
func (basics TableBasics) Scan(ctx context.Context, startYear int, endYear int)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 var movies []Movie
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.ScanOutput
 filtEx := expression.Name("year").Between(expression.Value(startYear),
 expression.Value(endYear))
 projEx := expression.NamesList(
  expression.Name("year"), expression.Name("title"), expression.Name("info.rating"))
 expr, err :=
 expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filtEx).WithProjection(projEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expressions for scan. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  scanPaginator := dynamodb.NewScanPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ScanInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
   ProjectionExpression:      expr.Projection(),
  })
  for scanPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = scanPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't scan for movies released between %v and %v. Here's why: %v
\n",
     startYear, endYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
     movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
    }
   }
```

```
  }
 }
 return movies, err
}



// DeleteMovie removes a movie from the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Key: movie.GetKey(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteTable deletes the DynamoDB table and all of its data.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteTable(ctx context.Context) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteTable(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteTableInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem

- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a function receiver struct for the example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
```

```
}
```

Use batches of INSERT statements to add items.

```
// AddMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL INSERT statements to add multiple movies to
 the
// DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie) error
 {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year,
 movie.Info})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf(
    "INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use batches of SELECT statements to get items.

```
// GetMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL SELECT statements to get multiple movies
 from
// the DynamoDB table by title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?", runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 output, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 var outMovies []Movie
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  for _, response := range output.Responses {
   var movie Movie
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    outMovies = append(outMovies, movie)
   }
  }
 }
 return outMovies, err
}
```

Use batches of UPDATE statements to update items.

```
// UpdateMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL UPDATE statements to update the rating
 of
// multiple movies that already exist in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 ratings []float64) error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{ratings[index],
 movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use batches of DELETE statements to delete items.

```
// DeleteMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL DELETE statements to remove multiple
 movies
// from the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
```

```
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?", runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
```

```
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovieBatch adds a slice of movies to the DynamoDB table. The function sends
// batches of 25 movies to DynamoDB until all movies are added or it reaches the
// specified maximum.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 maxMovies int) (int, error) {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 written := 0
 batchSize := 25 // DynamoDB allows a maximum batch size of 25 items.
 start := 0
 end := start + batchSize
 for start < maxMovies && start < len(movies) {
  var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
  if end > len(movies) {
   end = len(movies)
  }
  for _, movie := range movies[start:end] {
   item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
   if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Printf("Couldn't marshal movie %v for batch writing. Here's why: %v\n",
 movie.Title, err)
   } else {
    writeReqs = append(
     writeReqs,
     types.WriteRequest{PutRequest: &types.PutRequest{Item: item}},
    )
   }
  }
  _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
   RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{basics.TableName: writeReqs}})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't add a batch of movies to %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  } else {
   written += len(writeReqs)
  }
  start = end
  end += batchSize
 }

 return written, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)
```

```
// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// CreateMovieTable creates a DynamoDB table with a composite primary key defined as
// a string sort key named `title`, and a numeric partition key named `year`.
// This function uses NewTableExistsWaiter to wait for the table to be created by
// DynamoDB before it returns.
func (basics TableBasics) CreateMovieTable(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.TableDescription, error) {
 var tableDesc *types.TableDescription
 table, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.CreateTable(ctx, &dynamodb.CreateTableInput{
  AttributeDefinitions: []types.AttributeDefinition{{
   AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
```

```
    AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeN,
   }, {
    AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
    AttributeType: types.ScalarAttributeTypeS,
   }},
   KeySchema: []types.KeySchemaElement{{
    AttributeName: aws.String("year"),
    KeyType:       types.KeyTypeHash,
   }, {
    AttributeName: aws.String("title"),
    KeyType:       types.KeyTypeRange,
   }},
   TableName:   aws.String(basics.TableName),
   BillingMode: types.BillingModePayPerRequest,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
  } else {
   waiter := dynamodb.NewTableExistsWaiter(basics.DynamoDbClient)
   err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{
    TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)}, 5*time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Wait for table exists failed. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
   tableDesc = table.TableDescription
   log.Printf("Ccreating table test")
  }
  return tableDesc, err
 }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// DeleteMovie removes a movie from the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Key: movie.GetKey(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
```

```
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
```

```
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// DeleteTable deletes the DynamoDB table and all of its data.
func (basics TableBasics) DeleteTable(ctx context.Context) error {
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DeleteTable(ctx, &dynamodb.DeleteTableInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete table %v. Here's why: %v\n", basics.TableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// TableExists determines whether a DynamoDB table exists.
func (basics TableBasics) TableExists(ctx context.Context) (bool, error) {
 exists := true
 _, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.DescribeTable(
  ctx, &dynamodb.DescribeTableInput{TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundEx *types.ResourceNotFoundException
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundEx) {
   log.Printf("Table %v does not exist.\n", basics.TableName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't determine existence of table %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 basics.TableName, err)
  }
  exists = false
 }
 return exists, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a function receiver struct for the example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}
```

Use an INSERT statement to add an item.

```
// AddMovie runs a PartiQL INSERT statement to add a movie to the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year,
 movie.Info})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert an item with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use a SELECT statement to get an item.

```
// GetMovie runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get a movie from the DynamoDB table
 by
// title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 var movie Movie
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{title, year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 response, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Items[0], &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
```

```
 }
 return movie, err
}
```

Use a SELECT statement to get a list of items and project the results.

```
// GetAllMovies runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get all movies from the DynamoDB
 table.
// pageSize is not typically required and is used to show how to paginate the
 results.
// The results are projected to return only the title and rating of each movie.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetAllMovies(ctx context.Context, pageSize int32)
 ([]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var output []map[string]interface{}
 var response *dynamodb.ExecuteStatementOutput
 var err error
 var nextToken *string
 for moreData := true; moreData; {
  response, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT title, info.rating FROM \"%v\"", runner.TableName)),
   Limit:     aws.Int32(pageSize),
   NextToken: nextToken,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   moreData = false
  } else {
   var pageOutput []map[string]interface{}
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &pageOutput)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Got a page of length %v.\n", len(response.Items))
    output = append(output, pageOutput...)
   }
   nextToken = response.NextToken
   moreData = nextToken != nil
  }
```

```
 }
 return output, err
}
```

Use an UPDATE statement to update an item.

```
// UpdateMovie runs a PartiQL UPDATE statement to update the rating of a movie that
// already exists in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie, rating
 float64) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{rating, movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Use a DELETE statement to delete an item.

```
// DeleteMovie runs a PartiQL DELETE statement to remove a movie from the DynamoDB
 table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}
```

```
// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
```

```
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// GetMovie gets movie data from the DynamoDB table by using the primary composite
 key
// made of title and year.
func (basics TableBasics) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 movie := Movie{Title: title, Year: year}
 response, err := basics.DynamoDbClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key: movie.GetKey(), TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
```

```
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}
```

```
// ListTables lists the DynamoDB table names for the current account.
func (basics TableBasics) ListTables(ctx context.Context) ([]string, error) {
 var tableNames []string
 var output *dynamodb.ListTablesOutput
 var err error
 tablePaginator := dynamodb.NewListTablesPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ListTablesInput{})
 for tablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = tablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   tableNames = append(tableNames, output.TableNames...)
  }
 }
 return tableNames, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovie adds a movie the DynamoDB table.
func (basics TableBasics) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 item, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(movie)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  TableName: aws.String(basics.TableName), Item: item,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't add item to table. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
```

```
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// Query gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in the specified
 year.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the key condition expression
// that is used in the query.
func (basics TableBasics) Query(ctx context.Context, releaseYear int) ([]Movie,
 error) {
 var err error
```

```
 var response *dynamodb.QueryOutput
 var movies []Movie
 keyEx := expression.Key("year").Equal(expression.Value(releaseYear))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithKeyCondition(keyEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for query. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  queryPaginator := dynamodb.NewQueryPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.QueryInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   KeyConditionExpression:    expr.KeyCondition(),
  })
  for queryPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = queryPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't query for movies released in %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 releaseYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
     movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
    }
   }
  }
 }
 return movies, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
```

```
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// Scan gets all movies in the DynamoDB table that were released in a range of years
// and projects them to return a reduced set of fields.
// The function uses the `expression` package to build the filter and projection
// expressions.
```

```
func (basics TableBasics) Scan(ctx context.Context, startYear int, endYear int)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 var movies []Movie
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.ScanOutput
 filtEx := expression.Name("year").Between(expression.Value(startYear),
 expression.Value(endYear))
 projEx := expression.NamesList(
  expression.Name("year"), expression.Name("title"), expression.Name("info.rating"))
 expr, err :=
 expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filtEx).WithProjection(projEx).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expressions for scan. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  scanPaginator := dynamodb.NewScanPaginator(basics.DynamoDbClient,
 &dynamodb.ScanInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
   ProjectionExpression:      expr.Projection(),
  })
  for scanPaginator.HasMorePages() {
   response, err = scanPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't scan for movies released between %v and %v. Here's why: %v
\n",
     startYear, endYear, err)
    break
   } else {
    var moviePage []Movie
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &moviePage)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal query response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
     break
    } else {
     movies = append(movies, moviePage...)
    }
   }
  }
 }
 return movies, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}
```

```
// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// TableBasics encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
 examples.
// It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on the specified table.
type TableBasics struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
```

```
 TableName      string
}



// UpdateMovie updates the rating and plot of a movie that already exists in the
// DynamoDB table. This function uses the `expression` package to build the update
// expression.
func (basics TableBasics) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie)
 (map[string]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var err error
 var response *dynamodb.UpdateItemOutput
 var attributeMap map[string]map[string]interface{}
 update := expression.Set(expression.Name("info.rating"),
 expression.Value(movie.Info["rating"]))
 update.Set(expression.Name("info.plot"), expression.Value(movie.Info["plot"]))
 expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithUpdate(update).Build()
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't build expression for update. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  response, err = basics.DynamoDbClient.UpdateItem(ctx, &dynamodb.UpdateItemInput{
   TableName:                 aws.String(basics.TableName),
   Key:                       movie.GetKey(),
   ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
   ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
   UpdateExpression:          expr.Update(),
   ReturnValues:              types.ReturnValueUpdatedNew,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
  } else {
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Attributes, &attributeMap)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshall update response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
  }
 }
 return attributeMap, err
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
```

```
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scenarios

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs batches of PartiQL queries.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/dynamodb/actions"
)
```

```
// RunPartiQLBatchScenario shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Go
// to run batches of PartiQL statements to query a table that stores data about
 movies.
//
//   - Use batches of PartiQL statements to add, get, update, and delete data for
//     individual movies.
//
// This example creates an Amazon DynamoDB service client from the specified
 sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// This example creates and deletes a DynamoDB table to use during the scenario.
func RunPartiQLBatchScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, tableName
 string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL batch demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 tableBasics := actions.TableBasics{
  DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
  TableName:      tableName,
 }
 runner := actions.PartiQLRunner{
  DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
  TableName:      tableName,
 }

 exists, err := tableBasics.TableExists(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if !exists {
  log.Printf("Creating table %v...\n", tableName)
  _, err = tableBasics.CreateMovieTable(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  } else {
```

```
  log.Printf("Created table %v.\n", tableName)
 }
} else {
 log.Printf("Table %v already exists.\n", tableName)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

currentYear, _, _ := time.Now().Date()
customMovies := []actions.Movie{{
 Title: "House PartiQL",
 Year:  currentYear - 5,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "Wacky high jinks result from querying a mysterious database.",
  "rating": 8.5}}, {
 Title: "House PartiQL 2",
 Year:  currentYear - 3,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "Moderate high jinks result from querying another mysterious
database.",
  "rating": 6.5}}, {
 Title: "House PartiQL 3",
 Year:  currentYear - 1,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "Tepid high jinks result from querying yet another mysterious
database.",
  "rating": 2.5},
},
}

log.Printf("Inserting a batch of movies into table '%v'.\n", tableName)
err = runner.AddMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Added %v movies to the table.\n", len(customMovies))
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Getting data for a batch of movies.")
movies, err := runner.GetMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies)
if err == nil {
 for _, movie := range movies {
  log.Println(movie)
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 newRatings := []float64{7.7, 4.4, 1.1}
 log.Println("Updating a batch of movies with new ratings.")
 err = runner.UpdateMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies, newRatings)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Updated %v movies with new ratings.\n", len(customMovies))
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Getting projected data from the table to verify our update.")
 log.Println("Using a page size of 2 to demonstrate paging.")
 projections, err := runner.GetAllMovies(ctx, 2)
 if err == nil {
  log.Println("All movies:")
  for _, projection := range projections {
   log.Println(projection)
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Deleting a batch of movies.")
 err = runner.DeleteMovieBatch(ctx, customMovies)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted %v movies.\n", len(customMovies))
 }

 err = tableBasics.DeleteTable(ctx)
 if err == nil {
  log.Printf("Deleted table %v.\n", tableBasics.TableName)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
```

```
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                 `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                    `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}

// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

Create a struct and methods that run PartiQL statements.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL INSERT statements to add multiple movies to
 the
// DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie) error
 {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year,
 movie.Info})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf(
    "INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
 runner.TableName)),
```

```
    Parameters: params,
   }
  }

  _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
  &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
   Statements: statementRequests,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't insert a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  return err
}



// GetMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL SELECT statements to get multiple movies
 from
// the DynamoDB table by title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 ([]Movie, error) {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?", runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 output, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 var outMovies []Movie
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a batch of items with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  for _, response := range output.Responses {
   var movie Movie
```

```
    err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Item, &movie)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
    } else {
     outMovies = append(outMovies, movie)
    }
   }
  }
  return outMovies, err
}



// GetAllMovies runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get all movies from the DynamoDB
 table.
// pageSize is not typically required and is used to show how to paginate the
 results.
// The results are projected to return only the title and rating of each movie.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetAllMovies(ctx context.Context, pageSize int32)
 ([]map[string]interface{}, error) {
 var output []map[string]interface{}
 var response *dynamodb.ExecuteStatementOutput
 var err error
 var nextToken *string
 for moreData := true; moreData; {
  response, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("SELECT title, info.rating FROM \"%v\"", runner.TableName)),
   Limit:     aws.Int32(pageSize),
   NextToken: nextToken,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   moreData = false
  } else {
   var pageOutput []map[string]interface{}
   err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(response.Items, &pageOutput)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Got a page of length %v.\n", len(response.Items))
    output = append(output, pageOutput...)
   }
```

```
    nextToken = response.NextToken
    moreData = nextToken != nil
   }
  }
  return output, err
}



// UpdateMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL UPDATE statements to update the rating
 of
// multiple movies that already exist in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie,
 ratings []float64) error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{ratings[index],
 movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
 runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteMovieBatch runs a batch of PartiQL DELETE statements to remove multiple
 movies
// from the DynamoDB table.
```

```
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovieBatch(ctx context.Context, movies []Movie)
 error {
 statementRequests := make([]types.BatchStatementRequest, len(movies))
 for index, movie := range movies {
  params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  statementRequests[index] = types.BatchStatementRequest{
   Statement: aws.String(
    fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?", runner.TableName)),
   Parameters: params,
  }
 }

 _, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.BatchExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
  Statements: statementRequests,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete the batch of movies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/dynamodb/actions"
)

// RunPartiQLSingleScenario shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Go
// to use PartiQL to query a table that stores data about movies.
//
// * Use PartiQL statements to add, get, update, and delete data for individual
 movies.
//
// This example creates an Amazon DynamoDB service client from the specified
 sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// This example creates and deletes a DynamoDB table to use during the scenario.
func RunPartiQLSingleScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, tableName
 string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL single action demo.")
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

tableBasics := actions.TableBasics{
 DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 TableName:      tableName,
}
runner := actions.PartiQLRunner{
 DynamoDbClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 TableName:      tableName,
}

exists, err := tableBasics.TableExists(ctx)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !exists {
 log.Printf("Creating table %v...\n", tableName)
 _, err = tableBasics.CreateMovieTable(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Printf("Created table %v.\n", tableName)
 }
} else {
 log.Printf("Table %v already exists.\n", tableName)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

currentYear, _, _ := time.Now().Date()
customMovie := actions.Movie{
 Title: "24 Hour PartiQL People",
 Year:  currentYear,
 Info: map[string]interface{}{
  "plot":   "A group of data developers discover a new query language they can't
stop using.",
  "rating": 9.9,
 },
}

log.Printf("Inserting movie '%v' released in %v.", customMovie.Title,
customMovie.Year)
err = runner.AddMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
```

```
 log.Printf("Added %v to the movie table.\n", customMovie.Title)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Getting data for movie '%v' released in %v.", customMovie.Title,
customMovie.Year)
movie, err := runner.GetMovie(ctx, customMovie.Title, customMovie.Year)
if err == nil {
 log.Println(movie)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

newRating := 6.6
log.Printf("Updating movie '%v' with a rating of %v.", customMovie.Title,
newRating)
err = runner.UpdateMovie(ctx, customMovie, newRating)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Updated %v with a new rating.\n", customMovie.Title)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Getting data again to verify the update.")
movie, err = runner.GetMovie(ctx, customMovie.Title, customMovie.Year)
if err == nil {
 log.Println(movie)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Deleting movie '%v'.\n", customMovie.Title)
err = runner.DeleteMovie(ctx, customMovie)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Deleted %v.\n", customMovie.Title)
}

err = tableBasics.DeleteTable(ctx)
if err == nil {
 log.Printf("Deleted table %v.\n", tableBasics.TableName)
}

log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a Movie struct that is used in this example.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "net/http"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// Movie encapsulates data about a movie. Title and Year are the composite primary
 key
// of the movie in Amazon DynamoDB. Title is the sort key, Year is the partition
 key,
// and Info is additional data.
type Movie struct {
 Title string                `dynamodbav:"title"`
 Year  int                   `dynamodbav:"year"`
 Info  map[string]interface{} `dynamodbav:"info"`
}

// GetKey returns the composite primary key of the movie in a format that can be
// sent to DynamoDB.
func (movie Movie) GetKey() map[string]types.AttributeValue {
 title, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Title)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 year, err := attributevalue.Marshal(movie.Year)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]types.AttributeValue{"title": title, "year": year}
}
```

```
// String returns the title, year, rating, and plot of a movie, formatted for the
 example.
func (movie Movie) String() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v\n\tReleased: %v\n\tRating: %v\n\tPlot: %v\n",
  movie.Title, movie.Year, movie.Info["rating"], movie.Info["plot"])
}
```

Create a struct and methods that run PartiQL statements.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// PartiQLRunner encapsulates the Amazon DynamoDB service actions used in the
// PartiQL examples. It contains a DynamoDB service client that is used to act on
 the
// specified table.
type PartiQLRunner struct {
 DynamoDbClient *dynamodb.Client
 TableName      string
}



// AddMovie runs a PartiQL INSERT statement to add a movie to the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) AddMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year,
 movie.Info})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
```

```
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("INSERT INTO \"%v\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't insert an item with PartiQL. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// GetMovie runs a PartiQL SELECT statement to get a movie from the DynamoDB table
 by
// title and year.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) GetMovie(ctx context.Context, title string, year int)
 (Movie, error) {
 var movie Movie
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{title, year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 response, err := runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("SELECT * FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about %v. Here's why: %v\n", title, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(response.Items[0], &movie)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal response. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return movie, err
}



// UpdateMovie runs a PartiQL UPDATE statement to update the rating of a movie that
```

```
// already exists in the DynamoDB table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) UpdateMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie, rating
 float64) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{rating, movie.Title,
 movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("UPDATE \"%v\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update movie %v. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title, err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteMovie runs a PartiQL DELETE statement to remove a movie from the DynamoDB
 table.
func (runner PartiQLRunner) DeleteMovie(ctx context.Context, movie Movie) error {
 params, err := attributevalue.MarshalList([]interface{}{movie.Title, movie.Year})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 _, err = runner.DynamoDbClient.ExecuteStatement(ctx,
 &dynamodb.ExecuteStatementInput{
  Statement: aws.String(
   fmt.Sprintf("DELETE FROM \"%v\" WHERE title=? AND year=?",
    runner.TableName)),
  Parameters: params,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete %v from the table. Here's why: %v\n", movie.Title,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "fmt"
)

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent) (*string, error)
 {
 if len(event.Records) == 0 {
  return nil, fmt.Errorf("received empty event")
 }

 for _, record := range event.Records {
   LogDynamoDBRecord(record)
 }
```

```
 message := fmt.Sprintf("Records processed: %d", len(event.Records))
 return &message, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}

func LogDynamoDBRecord(record events.DynamoDBEventRecord){
 fmt.Println(record.EventID)
 fmt.Println(record.EventName)
 fmt.Printf("%+v\n", record.Change)
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)
```

```
type BatchItemFailure struct {
 ItemIdentifier string `json:"ItemIdentifier"`
}

type BatchResult struct {
 BatchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure `json:"BatchItemFailures"`
}

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent) (*BatchResult,
 error) {
 var batchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure
 curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

 for _, record := range event.Records {
  // Process your record
  curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Change.SequenceNumber
 }

 if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
  batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier:
 curRecordSequenceNumber})
 }

 batchResult := BatchResult{
  BatchItemFailures: batchItemFailures,
 }

 return &batchResult, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Go V2

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Go SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

IAM examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM)
// client and list up to 10 policies in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxPols = 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v policies for your account.\n", maxPols)
 result, err := iamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPols),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list policies for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Policies) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any policies!")
 } else {
  for _, policy := range result.Policies {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *policy.PolicyName)
  }
 }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "math/rand"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/credentials"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sts"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/iam/actions"
)

// AssumeRoleScenario shows you how to use the AWS Identity and Access Management
 (IAM)
// service to perform the following actions:
//
//  1. Create a user who has no permissions.
//  2. Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon Simple Storage Service
//     (Amazon S3) buckets for the account.
//  3. Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
//  4. Try and fail to list buckets without permissions.
//  5. Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials.
//  6. Delete the policy, role, and user.
type AssumeRoleScenario struct {
 sdkConfig      aws.Config
 accountWrapper actions.AccountWrapper
 policyWrapper  actions.PolicyWrapper
 roleWrapper    actions.RoleWrapper
 userWrapper    actions.UserWrapper
 questioner     demotools.IQuestioner
 helper         IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun      bool
}
```

```
// NewAssumeRoleScenario constructs an AssumeRoleScenario instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get an IAM client and create wrappers for the
 actions
// used in the scenario.
func NewAssumeRoleScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) AssumeRoleScenario {
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return AssumeRoleScenario{
  sdkConfig:      sdkConfig,
  accountWrapper: actions.AccountWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  policyWrapper:  actions.PolicyWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  roleWrapper:    actions.RoleWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  userWrapper:    actions.UserWrapper{IamClient: iamClient},
  questioner:     questioner,
  helper:         helper,
 }
}

// addTestOptions appends the API options specified in the original configuration to
// another configuration. This is used to attach the middleware stubber to clients
// that are constructed during the scenario, which is needed for unit testing.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) addTestOptions(scenarioConfig *aws.Config) {
 if scenario.isTestRun {
  scenarioConfig.APIOptions = append(scenarioConfig.APIOptions,
 scenario.sdkConfig.APIOptions...)
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.\n")
   log.Println(r)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) assume role
 demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 user := scenario.CreateUser(ctx)
 accessKey := scenario.CreateAccessKey(ctx, user)
 role := scenario.CreateRoleAndPolicies(ctx, user)
 noPermsConfig := scenario.ListBucketsWithoutPermissions(ctx, accessKey)
 scenario.ListBucketsWithAssumedRole(ctx, noPermsConfig, role)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, user, role)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateUser creates a new IAM user. This user has no permissions.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) CreateUser(ctx context.Context) *types.User {
 log.Println("Let's create an example user with no permissions.")
 userName := scenario.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the example user:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 user, err := scenario.userWrapper.GetUser(ctx, userName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if user == nil {
  user, err = scenario.userWrapper.CreateUser(ctx, userName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Created user %v.\n", *user.UserName)
 } else {
  log.Printf("User %v already exists.\n", *user.UserName)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return user
}

// CreateAccessKey creates an access key for the user.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) CreateAccessKey(ctx context.Context, user
 *types.User) *types.AccessKey {
 accessKey, err := scenario.userWrapper.CreateAccessKeyPair(ctx, *user.UserName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created access key %v for your user.", *accessKey.AccessKeyId)
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds for your user to be ready...")
 scenario.helper.Pause(10)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return accessKey
}

// CreateRoleAndPolicies creates a policy that grants permission to list S3 buckets
 for
// the current account and attaches the policy to a newly created role. It also adds
 an
// inline policy to the specified user that grants the user permission to assume the
 role.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) CreateRoleAndPolicies(ctx context.Context, user
 *types.User) *types.Role {
 log.Println("Let's create a role and policy that grant permission to list S3
 buckets.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 listBucketsRole, err := scenario.roleWrapper.CreateRole(ctx,
 scenario.helper.GetName(), *user.Arn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created role %v.\n", *listBucketsRole.RoleName)
 listBucketsPolicy, err := scenario.policyWrapper.CreatePolicy(
  ctx, scenario.helper.GetName(), []string{"s3:ListAllMyBuckets"}, "arn:aws:s3:::*")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created policy %v.\n", *listBucketsPolicy.PolicyName)
 err = scenario.roleWrapper.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, *listBucketsPolicy.Arn,
 *listBucketsRole.RoleName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Attached policy %v to role %v.\n", *listBucketsPolicy.PolicyName,
  *listBucketsRole.RoleName)
 err = scenario.userWrapper.CreateUserPolicy(ctx, *user.UserName,
 scenario.helper.GetName(),
  []string{"sts:AssumeRole"}, *listBucketsRole.Arn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Created an inline policy for user %v that lets the user assume the
 role.\n",
  *user.UserName)
```

```
 log.Println("Let's give AWS a few seconds to propagate these new resources and
 connections...")
 scenario.helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return listBucketsRole
}

// ListBucketsWithoutPermissions creates an Amazon S3 client from the user's access
 key
// credentials and tries to list buckets for the account. Because the user does not
 have
// permission to perform this action, the action fails.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) ListBucketsWithoutPermissions(ctx
 context.Context, accessKey *types.AccessKey) *aws.Config {
 log.Println("Let's try to list buckets without permissions. This should return an
 AccessDenied error.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 noPermsConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx,
  config.WithCredentialsProvider(credentials.NewStaticCredentialsProvider(
   *accessKey.AccessKeyId, *accessKey.SecretAccessKey, ""),
  ))
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 // Add test options if this is a test run. This is needed only for testing
 purposes.
 scenario.addTestOptions(&noPermsConfig)

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(noPermsConfig)
 _, err = s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  // The SDK for Go does not model the AccessDenied error, so check ErrorCode
 directly.
  var ae smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &ae) {
   switch ae.ErrorCode() {
   case "AccessDenied":
    log.Println("Got AccessDenied error, which is the expected result because\n" +
     "the ListBuckets call was made without permissions.")
   default:
    log.Println("Expected AccessDenied, got something else.")
    panic(err)
   }
```

```
  }
 } else {
  log.Println("Expected AccessDenied error when calling ListBuckets without
 permissions,\n" +
   "but the call succeeded. Continuing the example anyway...")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return &noPermsConfig
}

// ListBucketsWithAssumedRole performs the following actions:
//
//  1. Creates an AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) client from the config
 created from
//     the user's access key credentials.
//  2. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role that grants permission to
 list the
//     buckets.
//  3. Creates an Amazon S3 client from the temporary credentials.
//  4. Lists buckets for the account. Because the temporary credentials are
 generated by
//     assuming the role that grants permission, the action succeeds.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) ListBucketsWithAssumedRole(ctx context.Context,
 noPermsConfig *aws.Config, role *types.Role) {
 log.Println("Let's assume the role that grants permission to list buckets and try
 again.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 stsClient := sts.NewFromConfig(*noPermsConfig)
 tempCredentials, err := stsClient.AssumeRole(ctx, &sts.AssumeRoleInput{
  RoleArn:         role.Arn,
  RoleSessionName: aws.String("AssumeRoleExampleSession"),
  DurationSeconds: aws.Int32(900),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't assume role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Assumed role %v, got temporary credentials.\n", *role.RoleName)
 assumeRoleConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx,
  config.WithCredentialsProvider(credentials.NewStaticCredentialsProvider(
   *tempCredentials.Credentials.AccessKeyId,
   *tempCredentials.Credentials.SecretAccessKey,
   *tempCredentials.Credentials.SessionToken),
  ),
```

```
 )
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 // Add test options if this is a test run. This is needed only for testing
 purposes.
 scenario.addTestOptions(&assumeRoleConfig)

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(assumeRoleConfig)
 result, err := s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Println("Couldn't list buckets with assumed role credentials.")
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Successfully called ListBuckets with assumed role credentials, \n" +
  "here are some of them:")
 for i := 0; i < len(result.Buckets) && i < 5; i++ {
  log.Printf("\t%v\n", *result.Buckets[i].Name)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Cleanup deletes all resources created for the scenario.
func (scenario AssumeRoleScenario) Cleanup(ctx context.Context, user *types.User,
 role *types.Role) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "Do you want to delete the resources created for this example? (y/n)", "y",
 ) {
  policies, err := scenario.roleWrapper.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
 *role.RoleName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for _, policy := range policies {
   err = scenario.roleWrapper.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, *role.RoleName,
 *policy.PolicyArn)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   err = scenario.policyWrapper.DeletePolicy(ctx, *policy.PolicyArn)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
```

```
    log.Printf("Detached policy %v from role %v and deleted the policy.\n",
     *policy.PolicyName, *role.RoleName)
   }
   err = scenario.roleWrapper.DeleteRole(ctx, *role.RoleName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Deleted role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)

   userPols, err := scenario.userWrapper.ListUserPolicies(ctx, *user.UserName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   for _, userPol := range userPols {
    err = scenario.userWrapper.DeleteUserPolicy(ctx, *user.UserName, userPol)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
    log.Printf("Deleted policy %v from user %v.\n", userPol, *user.UserName)
   }
   keys, err := scenario.userWrapper.ListAccessKeys(ctx, *user.UserName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   for _, key := range keys {
    err = scenario.userWrapper.DeleteAccessKey(ctx, *user.UserName, *key.AccessKeyId)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
    log.Printf("Deleted access key %v from user %v.\n", *key.AccessKeyId,
  *user.UserName)
   }
   err = scenario.userWrapper.DeleteUser(ctx, *user.UserName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Deleted user %v.\n", *user.UserName)
   log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  }

}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts input and wait functions from a scenario so that they
// can be mocked for unit testing.
```

```
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 GetName() string
 Pause(secs int)
}

const rMax = 100000

type ScenarioHelper struct {
 Prefix string
 Random *rand.Rand
}

// GetName returns a unique name formed of a prefix and a random number.
func (helper *ScenarioHelper) GetName() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", helper.Prefix, helper.Random.Intn(rMax))
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}
```

Define a struct that wraps account actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// AccountWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) account
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform account actions.
type AccountWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}
```

```
// GetAccountPasswordPolicy gets the account password policy for the current
 account.
// If no policy has been set, a NoSuchEntityException is error is returned.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.PasswordPolicy, error) {
 var pwPolicy *types.PasswordPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx,
  &iam.GetAccountPasswordPolicyInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get account password policy. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  pwPolicy = result.PasswordPolicy
 }
 return pwPolicy, err
}



// ListSAMLProviders gets the SAML providers for the account.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) ListSAMLProviders(ctx context.Context)
 ([]types.SAMLProviderListEntry, error) {
 var providers []types.SAMLProviderListEntry
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListSAMLProviders(ctx,
 &iam.ListSAMLProvidersInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list SAML providers. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  providers = result.SAMLProviderList
 }
 return providers, err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps policy actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListPolicies gets up to maxPolicies policies.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) ListPolicies(ctx context.Context, maxPolicies int32)
 ([]types.Policy, error) {
 var policies []types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPolicies),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  policies = result.Policies
 }
 return policies, err
}



// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    []string
```

```
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
}

// CreatePolicy creates a policy that grants a list of actions to the specified
 resource.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) CreatePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyName string,
 actions []string,
 resourceArn string) (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(resourceArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 resourceArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreatePolicy(ctx, &iam.CreatePolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyName, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
 return policy, err
}



// GetPolicy gets data about a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) GetPolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
```

```
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetPolicy(ctx, &iam.GetPolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
 return policy, err
}



// DeletePolicy deletes a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) DeletePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeletePolicy(ctx, &iam.DeletePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps role actions.

```

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
```

```
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListRoles gets up to maxRoles roles.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRoles(ctx context.Context, maxRoles int32)
 ([]types.Role, error) {
 var roles []types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRoles(ctx,
  &iam.ListRolesInput{MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxRoles)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list roles. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  roles = result.Roles
 }
 return roles, err
}



// CreateRole creates a role that trusts a specified user. The trusted user can
 assume
// the role to acquire its permissions.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 trustedUserArn string) (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 trustPolicy := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Principal: map[string]string{"AWS": trustedUserArn},
   Action:    []string{"sts:AssumeRole"},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(trustPolicy)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create trust policy for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 trustedUserArn, err)
  return nil, err
```

```
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateRole(ctx, &iam.CreateRoleInput{
  AssumeRolePolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  RoleName:                 aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}



// GetRole gets data about a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) GetRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetRole(ctx,
  &iam.GetRoleInput{RoleName: aws.String(roleName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}



// CreateServiceLinkedRole creates a service-linked role that is owned by the
 specified service.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context, serviceName
 string, description string) (
 *types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.CreateServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  AWSServiceName: aws.String(serviceName),
  Description:    aws.String(description),
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't create service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 serviceName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}



// DeleteServiceLinkedRole deletes a service-linked role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.DeleteServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// AttachRolePolicy attaches a policy to a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) AttachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string,
 roleName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.AttachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't attach policy %v to role %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn,
 roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListAttachedRolePolicies lists the policies that are attached to the specified
 role.
```

```
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) ([]types.AttachedPolicy, error) {
 var policies []types.AttachedPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list attached policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 roleName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.AttachedPolicies
 }
 return policies, err
}



// DetachRolePolicy detaches a policy from a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DetachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 policyArn string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.DetachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't detach policy from role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListRolePolicies lists the inline policies for a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRolePolicies(ctx, &iam.ListRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
```

```
 }
 return policies, err
}



// DeleteRole deletes a role. All attached policies must be detached before a
// role can be deleted.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteRole(ctx, &iam.DeleteRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps user actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}
```

```
// ListUsers gets up to maxUsers number of users.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUsers(ctx context.Context, maxUsers int32)
 ([]types.User, error) {
 var users []types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUsers(ctx, &iam.ListUsersInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxUsers),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  users = result.Users
 }
 return users, err
}



// GetUser gets data about a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) GetUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetUser(ctx, &iam.GetUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchEntityException:
    log.Printf("User %v does not exist.\n", userName)
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Couldn't get user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}
```

```
// CreateUser creates a new user with the specified name.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateUser(ctx, &iam.CreateUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}



// CreateUserPolicy adds an inline policy to a user. This example creates a policy
 that
// grants a list of actions on a specified role.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string, actions []string,
 roleArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(roleArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleArn,
 err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = wrapper.IamClient.PutUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.PutUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:       aws.String(userName),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListUserPolicies lists the inline policies for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUserPolicies(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUserPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListUserPoliciesInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}



// DeleteUserPolicy deletes an inline policy from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyName: aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:   aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy from user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser deletes a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUser(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}



// CreateAccessKeyPair creates an access key for a user. The returned access key
 contains
// the ID and secret credentials needed to use the key.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateAccessKeyPair(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.AccessKey, error) {
 var key *types.AccessKey
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateAccessKey(ctx, &iam.CreateAccessKeyInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create access key pair for user %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 } else {
  key = result.AccessKey
 }
 return key, err
}



// DeleteAccessKey deletes an access key from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteAccessKey(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 keyId string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteAccessKey(ctx, &iam.DeleteAccessKeyInput{
  AccessKeyId: aws.String(keyId),
  UserName:    aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete access key %v. Here's why: %v\n", keyId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// ListAccessKeys lists the access keys for the specified user.
```

```
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListAccessKeys(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]types.AccessKeyMetadata, error) {
 var keys []types.AccessKeyMetadata
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAccessKeys(ctx, &iam.ListAccessKeysInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list access keys for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 } else {
  keys = result.AccessKeyMetadata
 }
 return keys, err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// AttachRolePolicy attaches a policy to a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) AttachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string,
 roleName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.AttachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't attach policy %v to role %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn,
 roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateAccessKeyPair creates an access key for a user. The returned access key
 contains
// the ID and secret credentials needed to use the key.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateAccessKeyPair(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.AccessKey, error) {
```

```
 var key *types.AccessKey
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateAccessKey(ctx, &iam.CreateAccessKeyInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create access key pair for user %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 } else {
  key = result.AccessKey
 }
 return key, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    []string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
}

// CreatePolicy creates a policy that grants a list of actions to the specified
 resource.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) CreatePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyName string,
 actions []string,
 resourceArn string) (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(resourceArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 resourceArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
```

```
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreatePolicy(ctx, &iam.CreatePolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyName, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
 return policy, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateRole creates a role that trusts a specified user. The trusted user can
 assume
// the role to acquire its permissions.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 trustedUserArn string) (*types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 trustPolicy := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Principal: map[string]string{"AWS": trustedUserArn},
   Action:    []string{"sts:AssumeRole"},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(trustPolicy)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create trust policy for %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 trustedUserArn, err)
  return nil, err
 }
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateRole(ctx, &iam.CreateRoleInput{
  AssumeRolePolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  RoleName:                 aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateServiceLinkedRole creates a service-linked role that is owned by the
 specified service.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context, serviceName
 string, description string) (
 *types.Role, error) {
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.CreateServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  AWSServiceName: aws.String(serviceName),
  Description:    aws.String(description),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 serviceName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
```

```
}



// CreateUser creates a new user with the specified name.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.CreateUser(ctx, &iam.CreateUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteAccessKey deletes an access key from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteAccessKey(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 keyId string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteAccessKey(ctx, &iam.DeleteAccessKeyInput{
  AccessKeyId: aws.String(keyId),
  UserName:    aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete access key %v. Here's why: %v\n", keyId, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeletePolicy deletes a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) DeletePolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeletePolicy(ctx, &iam.DeletePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteRole deletes a role. All attached policies must be detached before a
// role can be deleted.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteRole(ctx, &iam.DeleteRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteServiceLinkedRole deletes a service-linked role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteServiceLinkedRole(ctx,
 &iam.DeleteServiceLinkedRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName)},
 )
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete service-linked role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}
```

```
// DeleteUser deletes a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUser(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DeleteUserPolicy deletes an inline policy from a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) DeleteUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DeleteUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.DeleteUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyName: aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:   aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete policy from user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// DetachRolePolicy detaches a policy from a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) DetachRolePolicy(ctx context.Context, roleName string,
 policyArn string) error {
 _, err := wrapper.IamClient.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.DetachRolePolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
  RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't detach policy from role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// AccountWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) account
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform account actions.
type AccountWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetAccountPasswordPolicy gets the account password policy for the current
 account.
// If no policy has been set, a NoSuchEntityException is error is returned.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx context.Context)
 (*types.PasswordPolicy, error) {
 var pwPolicy *types.PasswordPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetAccountPasswordPolicy(ctx,
  &iam.GetAccountPasswordPolicyInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get account password policy. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  pwPolicy = result.PasswordPolicy
 }
 return pwPolicy, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

GetPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetPolicy gets data about a policy.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) GetPolicy(ctx context.Context, policyArn string)
 (*types.Policy, error) {
 var policy *types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetPolicy(ctx, &iam.GetPolicyInput{
  PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get policy %v. Here's why: %v\n", policyArn, err)
 } else {
  policy = result.Policy
 }
 return policy, err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetRole gets data about a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) GetRole(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 (*types.Role, error) {
```

```
 var role *types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetRole(ctx,
  &iam.GetRoleInput{RoleName: aws.String(roleName)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  role = result.Role
 }
 return role, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `GetUser`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// GetUser gets data about a user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) GetUser(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 (*types.User, error) {
 var user *types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.GetUser(ctx, &iam.GetUserInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchEntityException:
    log.Printf("User %v does not exist.\n", userName)
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Couldn't get user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  user = result.User
 }
 return user, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListAccessKeys lists the access keys for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListAccessKeys(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]types.AccessKeyMetadata, error) {
 var keys []types.AccessKeyMetadata
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAccessKeys(ctx, &iam.ListAccessKeysInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list access keys for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName,
 err)
 } else {
  keys = result.AccessKeyMetadata
 }
```

```
 return keys, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListAttachedRolePolicies lists the policies that are attached to the specified
 role.
```

```
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName
 string) ([]types.AttachedPolicy, error) {
 var policies []types.AttachedPolicy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
 &iam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list attached policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 roleName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.AttachedPolicies
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)
```

```
// GroupWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) group actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform group actions.
type GroupWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListGroups lists up to maxGroups number of groups.
func (wrapper GroupWrapper) ListGroups(ctx context.Context, maxGroups int32)
 ([]types.Group, error) {
 var groups []types.Group
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListGroups(ctx, &iam.ListGroupsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxGroups),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list groups. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  groups = result.Groups
 }
 return groups, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// PolicyWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform policy actions.
type PolicyWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListPolicies gets up to maxPolicies policies.
func (wrapper PolicyWrapper) ListPolicies(ctx context.Context, maxPolicies int32)
 ([]types.Policy, error) {
 var policies []types.Policy
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListPoliciesInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxPolicies),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  policies = result.Policies
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListRolePolicies lists the inline policies for a role.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRolePolicies(ctx context.Context, roleName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRolePolicies(ctx, &iam.ListRolePoliciesInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// RoleWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform role actions.
type RoleWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListRoles gets up to maxRoles roles.
func (wrapper RoleWrapper) ListRoles(ctx context.Context, maxRoles int32)
 ([]types.Role, error) {
 var roles []types.Role
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListRoles(ctx,
```

```
  &iam.ListRolesInput{MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxRoles)},
 )
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list roles. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  roles = result.Roles
 }
 return roles, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
)

// AccountWrapper encapsulates AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) account
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform account actions.
type AccountWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}
```

```
// ListSAMLProviders gets the SAML providers for the account.
func (wrapper AccountWrapper) ListSAMLProviders(ctx context.Context)
 ([]types.SAMLProviderListEntry, error) {
 var providers []types.SAMLProviderListEntry
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListSAMLProviders(ctx,
 &iam.ListSAMLProvidersInput{})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list SAML providers. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  providers = result.SAMLProviderList
 }
 return providers, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListUserPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUserPolicies`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListUserPolicies lists the inline policies for the specified user.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUserPolicies(ctx context.Context, userName string)
 ([]string, error) {
 var policies []string
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUserPolicies(ctx, &iam.ListUserPoliciesInput{
  UserName: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list policies for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 } else {
  policies = result.PolicyNames
 }
 return policies, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPolicies in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// ListUsers gets up to maxUsers number of users.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) ListUsers(ctx context.Context, maxUsers int32)
 ([]types.User, error) {
 var users []types.User
 result, err := wrapper.IamClient.ListUsers(ctx, &iam.ListUsersInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(maxUsers),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't list users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else {
  users = result.Users
 }
 return users, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PutUserPolicy

The following code example shows how to use PutUserPolicy.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// UserWrapper encapsulates user actions used in the examples.
// It contains an IAM service client that is used to perform user actions.
type UserWrapper struct {
 IamClient *iam.Client
}



// CreateUserPolicy adds an inline policy to a user. This example creates a policy
 that
// grants a list of actions on a specified role.
// PolicyDocument shows how to work with a policy document as a data structure and
// serialize it to JSON by using Go's JSON marshaler.
func (wrapper UserWrapper) CreateUserPolicy(ctx context.Context, userName string,
 policyName string, actions []string,
 roleArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
```

```
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:   "Allow",
   Action:   actions,
   Resource: aws.String(roleArn),
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document for %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleArn,
 err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = wrapper.IamClient.PutUserPolicy(ctx, &iam.PutUserPolicyInput{
  PolicyDocument: aws.String(string(policyBytes)),
  PolicyName:     aws.String(policyName),
  UserName:       aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Kinesis.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent) error {
 if len(kinesisEvent.Records) == 0 {
  log.Printf("empty Kinesis event received")
  return nil
 }

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  log.Printf("processed Kinesis event with EventId: %v", record.EventID)
  recordDataBytes := record.Kinesis.Data
  recordDataText := string(recordDataBytes)
  log.Printf("record data: %v", recordDataText)
  // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
```

```
 }
 log.Printf("successfully processed %v records", len(kinesisEvent.Records))
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent)
 (map[string]interface{}, error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}
```

```
 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

  // Process your record
  if /* Your record processing condition here */ {
   curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber
  }

  // Add a condition to check if the record processing failed
  if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": curRecordSequenceNumber})
  }
 }

 kinesisBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
 }
 return kinesisBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Lambda examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go (v2) to create an AWS Lambda client and list up to
 10
// functions in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
```

```
 lambdaClient := lambda.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 maxItems := 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v functions for your account.\n", maxItems)
 result, err := lambdaClient.ListFunctions(ctx, &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Functions) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any functions!")
 } else {
  for _, function := range result.Functions {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *function.FunctionName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.

- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an interactive scenario that shows you how to get started with Lambda functions.

```
import (
 "archive/zip"
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/base64"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam"
 iamtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/iam/types"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/lambda/actions"
)

// GetStartedFunctionsScenario shows you how to use AWS Lambda to perform the
 following
// actions:
```

```
//
//  1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role and Lambda function,
 then upload handler code.
//  2. Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
//  3. Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
//  4. Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned
 execution log.
//  5. List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.
type GetStartedFunctionsScenario struct {
 sdkConfig       aws.Config
 functionWrapper actions.FunctionWrapper
 questioner      demotools.IQuestioner
 helper          IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun       bool
}

// NewGetStartedFunctionsScenario constructs a GetStartedFunctionsScenario instance
 from a configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get a Lambda client and create wrappers for the
 actions
// used in the scenario.
func NewGetStartedFunctionsScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) GetStartedFunctionsScenario {
 lambdaClient := lambda.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return GetStartedFunctionsScenario{
  sdkConfig:       sdkConfig,
  functionWrapper: actions.FunctionWrapper{LambdaClient: lambdaClient},
  questioner:      questioner,
  helper:          helper,
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong with the demo.\n")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the AWS Lambda get started with functions demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 role := scenario.GetOrCreateRole(ctx)
 funcName := scenario.CreateFunction(ctx, role)
 scenario.InvokeIncrement(ctx, funcName)
 scenario.UpdateFunction(ctx, funcName)
 scenario.InvokeCalculator(ctx, funcName)
 scenario.ListFunctions(ctx)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, role, funcName)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// GetOrCreateRole checks whether the specified role exists and returns it if it
 does.
// Otherwise, a role is created that specifies Lambda as a trusted principal.
// The AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole managed policy is attached to the role and the
 role
// is returned.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) GetOrCreateRole(ctx context.Context)
 *iamtypes.Role {
 var role *iamtypes.Role
 iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(scenario.sdkConfig)
 log.Println("First, we need an IAM role that Lambda can assume.")
 roleName := scenario.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the role:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 getOutput, err := iamClient.GetRole(ctx, &iam.GetRoleInput{
  RoleName: aws.String(roleName)})
 if err != nil {
  var noSuch *iamtypes.NoSuchEntityException
  if errors.As(err, &noSuch) {
   log.Printf("Role %v doesn't exist. Creating it....\n", roleName)
  } else {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't check whether role %v exists. Here's why: %v\n",
    roleName, err)
  }
 } else {
  role = getOutput.Role
  log.Printf("Found role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)
 }
 if role == nil {
  trustPolicy := PolicyDocument{
   Version: "2012-10-17",
```

```
    Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
     Effect:    "Allow",
     Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
     Action:    []string{"sts:AssumeRole"},
    }},
   }
   policyArn := "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"
   createOutput, err := iamClient.CreateRole(ctx, &iam.CreateRoleInput{
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument: aws.String(trustPolicy.String()),
    RoleName:                 aws.String(roleName),
   })
   if err != nil {
    log.Panicf("Couldn't create role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName, err)
   }
   role = createOutput.Role
   _, err = iamClient.AttachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.AttachRolePolicyInput{
    PolicyArn: aws.String(policyArn),
    RoleName:  aws.String(roleName),
   })
   if err != nil {
    log.Panicf("Couldn't attach a policy to role %v. Here's why: %v\n", roleName,
  err)
   }
   log.Printf("Created role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)
   log.Println("Let's give AWS a few seconds to propagate resources...")
   scenario.helper.Pause(10)
  }
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  return role
 }

 // CreateFunction creates a Lambda function and uploads a handler written in Python.
 // The code for the Python handler is packaged as a []byte in .zip format.
 func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) CreateFunction(ctx context.Context, role
  *iamtypes.Role) string {
  log.Println("Let's create a function that increments a number.\n" +
   "The function uses the 'lambda_handler_basic.py' script found in the \n" +
   "'handlers' directory of this project.")
  funcName := scenario.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the Lambda function:",
  demotools.NotEmpty{})
  zipPackage := scenario.helper.CreateDeploymentPackage("lambda_handler_basic.py",
  fmt.Sprintf("%v.py", funcName))
  log.Printf("Creating function %v and waiting for it to be ready.", funcName)
```

```
 funcState := scenario.functionWrapper.CreateFunction(ctx, funcName,
 fmt.Sprintf("%v.lambda_handler", funcName),
  role.Arn, zipPackage)
 log.Printf("Your function is %v.", funcState)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return funcName
}

// InvokeIncrement invokes a Lambda function that increments a number. The function
// parameters are contained in a Go struct that is used to serialize the parameters
 to
// a JSON payload that is passed to the function.
// The result payload is deserialized into a Go struct that contains an int value.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) InvokeIncrement(ctx context.Context,
 funcName string) {
 parameters := actions.IncrementParameters{Action: "increment"}
 log.Println("Let's invoke our function. This function increments a number.")
 parameters.Number = scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter a number to increment:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 log.Printf("Invoking %v with %v...\n", funcName, parameters.Number)
 invokeOutput := scenario.functionWrapper.Invoke(ctx, funcName, parameters, false)
 var payload actions.LambdaResultInt
 err := json.Unmarshal(invokeOutput.Payload, &payload)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't unmarshal payload from invoking %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   funcName, err)
 }
 log.Printf("Invoking %v with %v returned %v.\n", funcName, parameters.Number,
 payload)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// UpdateFunction updates the code for a Lambda function by uploading a simple
 arithmetic
// calculator written in Python. The code for the Python handler is packaged as a
// []byte in .zip format.
// After the code is updated, the configuration is also updated with a new log
// level that instructs the handler to log additional information.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) UpdateFunction(ctx context.Context,
 funcName string) {
 log.Println("Let's update the function to an arithmetic calculator.\n" +
  "The function uses the 'lambda_handler_calculator.py' script found in the \n" +
  "'handlers' directory of this project.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
```

```
 log.Println("Creating deployment package...")
 zipPackage :=
 scenario.helper.CreateDeploymentPackage("lambda_handler_calculator.py",
  fmt.Sprintf("%v.py", funcName))
 log.Println("...and updating the Lambda function and waiting for it to be ready.")
 funcState := scenario.functionWrapper.UpdateFunctionCode(ctx, funcName, zipPackage)
 log.Printf("Updated function %v. Its current state is %v.", funcName, funcState)
 log.Println("This function uses an environment variable to control logging level.")
 log.Println("Let's set it to DEBUG to get the most logging.")
 scenario.functionWrapper.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx, funcName,
  map[string]string{"LOG_LEVEL": "DEBUG"})
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// InvokeCalculator invokes the Lambda calculator function. The parameters are
 stored in a
// Go struct that is used to serialize the parameters to a JSON payload. That
 payload is then passed
// to the function.
// The result payload is deserialized to a Go struct that stores the result as
 either an
// int or float32, depending on the kind of operation that was specified.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) InvokeCalculator(ctx context.Context,
 funcName string) {
 wantInvoke := true
 choices := []string{"plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"}
 for wantInvoke {
  choice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Select an arithmetic operation:\n",
 choices)
  x := scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter a value for x:", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  y := scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter a value for y:", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  log.Printf("Invoking %v %v %v...", x, choices[choice], y)
  calcParameters := actions.CalculatorParameters{
   Action: choices[choice],
   X:      x,
   Y:      y,
  }
  invokeOutput := scenario.functionWrapper.Invoke(ctx, funcName, calcParameters,
 true)
  var payload any
  if choice == 3 { // divide-by results in a float.
   payload = actions.LambdaResultFloat{}
  } else {
   payload = actions.LambdaResultInt{}
```

```
  }
  err := json.Unmarshal(invokeOutput.Payload, &payload)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't unmarshal payload from invoking %v. Here's why: %v\n",
    funcName, err)
  }
  log.Printf("Invoking %v with %v %v %v returned %v.\n", funcName,
   calcParameters.X, calcParameters.Action, calcParameters.Y, payload)
  scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to see the logs from the call.")
  logRes, err := base64.StdEncoding.DecodeString(*invokeOutput.LogResult)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't decode log result. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  log.Println(string(logRes))
  wantInvoke = scenario.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to calculate again? (y/n)",
 "y")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// ListFunctions lists up to the specified number of functions for your account.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) ListFunctions(ctx context.Context) {
 count := scenario.questioner.AskInt(
  "Let's list functions for your account. How many do you want to see?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
 functions := scenario.functionWrapper.ListFunctions(ctx, count)
 log.Printf("Found %v functions:", len(functions))
 for _, function := range functions {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *function.FunctionName)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Cleanup removes the IAM and Lambda resources created by the example.
func (scenario GetStartedFunctionsScenario) Cleanup(ctx context.Context, role
 *iamtypes.Role, funcName string) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to clean up resources created for this
 example? (y/n)",
  "y") {
  iamClient := iam.NewFromConfig(scenario.sdkConfig)
  policiesOutput, err := iamClient.ListAttachedRolePolicies(ctx,
   &iam.ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput{RoleName: role.RoleName})
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't get policies attached to role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
```

```
    *role.RoleName, err)
  }
  for _, policy := range policiesOutput.AttachedPolicies {
   _, err = iamClient.DetachRolePolicy(ctx, &iam.DetachRolePolicyInput{
    PolicyArn: policy.PolicyArn, RoleName: role.RoleName,
   })
   if err != nil {
    log.Panicf("Couldn't detach policy %v from role %v. Here's why: %v\n",
     *policy.PolicyArn, *role.RoleName, err)
   }
  }
  _, err = iamClient.DeleteRole(ctx, &iam.DeleteRoleInput{RoleName: role.RoleName})
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't delete role %v. Here's why: %v\n", *role.RoleName, err)
  }
  log.Printf("Deleted role %v.\n", *role.RoleName)

  scenario.functionWrapper.DeleteFunction(ctx, funcName)
  log.Printf("Deleted function %v.\n", funcName)
 } else {
  log.Println("Okay. Don't forget to delete the resources when you're done with
 them.")
 }
}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts I/O and wait functions from a scenario so that they
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 CreateDeploymentPackage(sourceFile string, destinationFile string) *bytes.Buffer
}

// ScenarioHelper lets the caller specify the path to Lambda handler functions.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 HandlerPath string
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper *ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}

// CreateDeploymentPackage creates an AWS Lambda deployment package from a source
 file. The
```

```
// deployment package is stored in .zip format in a bytes.Buffer. The buffer can be
// used to pass a []byte to Lambda when creating the function.
// The specified destinationFile is the name to give the file when it's deployed to
 Lambda.
func (helper *ScenarioHelper) CreateDeploymentPackage(sourceFile string,
 destinationFile string) *bytes.Buffer {
 var err error
 buffer := &bytes.Buffer{}
 writer := zip.NewWriter(buffer)
 zFile, err := writer.Create(destinationFile)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't create destination archive %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 destinationFile, err)
 }
 sourceBody, err := os.ReadFile(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", helper.HandlerPath,
 sourceFile))
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't read handler source file %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   sourceFile, err)
 } else {
  _, err = zFile.Write(sourceBody)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't write handler %v to zip archive. Here's why: %v\n",
    sourceFile, err)
  }
 }
 err = writer.Close()
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't close zip writer. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return buffer
}
```

Create a struct that wraps individual Lambda actions.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
```

```
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}


// GetFunction gets data about the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) GetFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
 types.State {
 var state types.State
 funcOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.GetFunction(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't get function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 } else {
  state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
 }
 return state
}



// CreateFunction creates a new Lambda function from code contained in the
 zipPackage
// buffer. The specified handlerName must match the name of the file and function
// contained in the uploaded code. The role specified by iamRoleArn is assumed by
// Lambda and grants specific permissions.
// When the function already exists, types.StateActive is returned.
// When the function is created, a lambda.FunctionActiveV2Waiter is used to wait
 until the
// function is active.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) CreateFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, handlerName string,
 iamRoleArn *string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
```

```
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.CreateFunction(ctx, &lambda.CreateFunctionInput{
  Code:         &types.FunctionCode{ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes()},
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Role:         iamRoleArn,
  Handler:      aws.String(handlerName),
  Publish:      true,
  Runtime:      types.RuntimePython39,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resConflict *types.ResourceConflictException
  if errors.As(err, &resConflict) {
   log.Printf("Function %v already exists.\n", functionName)
   state = types.StateActive
  } else {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't create function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
  }
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionActiveV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}



// UpdateFunctionCode updates the code for the Lambda function specified by
 functionName.
// The existing code for the Lambda function is entirely replaced by the code in the
// zipPackage buffer. After the update action is called, a
 lambda.FunctionUpdatedV2Waiter
// is used to wait until the update is successful.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionCode(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCode(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionCodeInput{
```

```
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName), ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update code for function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName,
 err)
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionUpdatedV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}



// UpdateFunctionConfiguration updates a map of environment variables configured for
// the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string, envVars map[string]string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Environment:  &types.Environment{Variables: envVars},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update configuration for %v. Here's why: %v", functionName,
 err)
 }
}



// ListFunctions lists up to maxItems functions for the account. This function uses
 a
// lambda.ListFunctionsPaginator to paginate the results.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) ListFunctions(ctx context.Context, maxItems int)
 []types.FunctionConfiguration {
 var functions []types.FunctionConfiguration
```

```
 paginator := lambda.NewListFunctionsPaginator(wrapper.LambdaClient,
 &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
 })
 for paginator.HasMorePages() && len(functions) < maxItems {
  pageOutput, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  functions = append(functions, pageOutput.Functions...)
 }
 return functions
}



// DeleteFunction deletes the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) DeleteFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.DeleteFunction(ctx, &lambda.DeleteFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't delete function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
}



// Invoke invokes the Lambda function specified by functionName, passing the
 parameters
// as a JSON payload. When getLog is true, types.LogTypeTail is specified, which
 tells
// Lambda to include the last few log lines in the returned result.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) Invoke(ctx context.Context, functionName string,
 parameters any, getLog bool) *lambda.InvokeOutput {
 logType := types.LogTypeNone
 if getLog {
  logType = types.LogTypeTail
 }
 payload, err := json.Marshal(parameters)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't marshal parameters to JSON. Here's why %v\n", err)
 }
```

```
 invokeOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.Invoke(ctx, &lambda.InvokeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  LogType:      logType,
  Payload:      payload,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't invoke function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
 return invokeOutput
}



// IncrementParameters is used to serialize parameters to the increment Lambda
 handler.
type IncrementParameters struct {
 Action string `json:"action"`
 Number int    `json:"number"`
}

// CalculatorParameters is used to serialize parameters to the calculator Lambda
 handler.
type CalculatorParameters struct {
 Action string `json:"action"`
 X      int    `json:"x"`
 Y      int    `json:"y"`
}

// LambdaResultInt is used to deserialize an int result from a Lambda handler.
type LambdaResultInt struct {
 Result int `json:"result"`
}

// LambdaResultFloat is used to deserialize a float32 result from a Lambda handler.
type LambdaResultFloat struct {
 Result float32 `json:"result"`
}
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
import logging
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger()
logger.setLevel(logging.INFO)


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and a single number, performs the specified action on the
 number,
    and returns the result. The only allowable action is 'increment'.

    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the action.
    """
    result = None
    action = event.get("action")
    if action == "increment":
        result = event.get("number", 0) + 1
        logger.info("Calculated result of %s", result)
    else:
        logger.error("%s is not a valid action.", action)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
import logging
import os


logger = logging.getLogger()

# Define a list of Python lambda functions that are called by this AWS Lambda
 function.
ACTIONS = {
    "plus": lambda x, y: x + y,
    "minus": lambda x, y: x - y,
```

```
    "times": lambda x, y: x * y,
    "divided-by": lambda x, y: x / y,
}


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and two numbers, performs the specified action on the numbers,
    and returns the result.

    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the specified action.
    """
    # Set the log level based on a variable configured in the Lambda environment.
    logger.setLevel(os.environ.get("LOG_LEVEL", logging.INFO))
    logger.debug("Event: %s", event)

    action = event.get("action")
    func = ACTIONS.get(action)
    x = event.get("x")
    y = event.get("y")
    result = None
    try:
        if func is not None and x is not None and y is not None:
            result = func(x, y)
            logger.info("%s %s %s is %s", x, action, y, result)
        else:
            logger.error("I can't calculate %s %s %s.", x, action, y)
    except ZeroDivisionError:
        logger.warning("I can't divide %s by 0!", x)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction

- GetFunction
- Invoke
- ListFunctions
- UpdateFunctionCode
- UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}
```

```
// CreateFunction creates a new Lambda function from code contained in the
 zipPackage
// buffer. The specified handlerName must match the name of the file and function
// contained in the uploaded code. The role specified by iamRoleArn is assumed by
// Lambda and grants specific permissions.
// When the function already exists, types.StateActive is returned.
// When the function is created, a lambda.FunctionActiveV2Waiter is used to wait
 until the
// function is active.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) CreateFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, handlerName string,
 iamRoleArn *string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.CreateFunction(ctx, &lambda.CreateFunctionInput{
  Code:         &types.FunctionCode{ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes()},
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Role:         iamRoleArn,
  Handler:      aws.String(handlerName),
  Publish:      true,
  Runtime:      types.RuntimePython39,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resConflict *types.ResourceConflictException
  if errors.As(err, &resConflict) {
   log.Printf("Function %v already exists.\n", functionName)
   state = types.StateActive
  } else {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't create function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
  }
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionActiveV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// DeleteFunction deletes the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) DeleteFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
```

```
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.DeleteFunction(ctx, &lambda.DeleteFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't delete function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
```

```
}



// GetFunction gets data about the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) GetFunction(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
 types.State {
 var state types.State
 funcOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.GetFunction(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't get function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 } else {
  state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
 }
 return state
}
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
```

```
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// Invoke invokes the Lambda function specified by functionName, passing the
 parameters
// as a JSON payload. When getLog is true, types.LogTypeTail is specified, which
 tells
// Lambda to include the last few log lines in the returned result.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) Invoke(ctx context.Context, functionName string,
 parameters any, getLog bool) *lambda.InvokeOutput {
 logType := types.LogTypeNone
 if getLog {
  logType = types.LogTypeTail
 }
 payload, err := json.Marshal(parameters)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't marshal parameters to JSON. Here's why %v\n", err)
 }
 invokeOutput, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.Invoke(ctx, &lambda.InvokeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  LogType:      logType,
  Payload:      payload,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't invoke function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName, err)
 }
 return invokeOutput
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// ListFunctions lists up to maxItems functions for the account. This function uses
 a
// lambda.ListFunctionsPaginator to paginate the results.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) ListFunctions(ctx context.Context, maxItems int)
 []types.FunctionConfiguration {
 var functions []types.FunctionConfiguration
 paginator := lambda.NewListFunctionsPaginator(wrapper.LambdaClient,
 &lambda.ListFunctionsInput{
  MaxItems: aws.Int32(int32(maxItems)),
```

```
 })
 for paginator.HasMorePages() && len(functions) < maxItems {
  pageOutput, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't list functions for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  functions = append(functions, pageOutput.Functions...)
 }
 return functions
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)
```

```
// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// UpdateFunctionCode updates the code for the Lambda function specified by
 functionName.
// The existing code for the Lambda function is entirely replaced by the code in the
// zipPackage buffer. After the update action is called, a
 lambda.FunctionUpdatedV2Waiter
// is used to wait until the update is successful.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionCode(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, zipPackage *bytes.Buffer) types.State {
 var state types.State
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionCode(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionCodeInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName), ZipFile: zipPackage.Bytes(),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update code for function %v. Here's why: %v\n", functionName,
 err)
 } else {
  waiter := lambda.NewFunctionUpdatedV2Waiter(wrapper.LambdaClient)
  funcOutput, err := waiter.WaitForOutput(ctx, &lambda.GetFunctionInput{
   FunctionName: aws.String(functionName)}, 1*time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Panicf("Couldn't wait for function %v to be active. Here's why: %v\n",
 functionName, err)
  } else {
   state = funcOutput.Configuration.State
  }
 }
 return state
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

UpdateFunctionConfiguration

The following code example shows how to use UpdateFunctionConfiguration.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/lambda/types"
)

// FunctionWrapper encapsulates function actions used in the examples.
// It contains an AWS Lambda service client that is used to perform user actions.
type FunctionWrapper struct {
 LambdaClient *lambda.Client
}



// UpdateFunctionConfiguration updates a map of environment variables configured for
// the Lambda function specified by functionName.
func (wrapper FunctionWrapper) UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string, envVars map[string]string) {
 _, err := wrapper.LambdaClient.UpdateFunctionConfiguration(ctx,
 &lambda.UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput{
  FunctionName: aws.String(functionName),
  Environment:  &types.Environment{Variables: envVars},
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't update configuration for %v. Here's why: %v", functionName,
 err)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scenarios

Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PreSignUp` trigger.
- Sign up a user with Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically confirms known users.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// AutoConfirm separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type AutoConfirm struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewAutoConfirm constructs a new auto confirm runner.
func NewAutoConfirm(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, helper
 IScenarioHelper) AutoConfirm {
 scenario := AutoConfirm{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddPreSignUpTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PreSignUp trigger.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PreSignUp trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when a user signs up, and lets your function take action
 before the main Cognito\n" +
  "sign up processing occurs.\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PreSignUp, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
```

```
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the PreSignUp
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)
}

// SignUpUser signs up a user from the known user table with a password you specify.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignUpUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 usersTable string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("Let's sign up a user to your Cognito user pool. When the user's email
 matches an email in the\n" +
  "DynamoDB known users table, it is automatically verified and the user is
 confirmed.")

 knownUsers, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, usersTable)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 userChoice := runner.questioner.AskChoice("Which user do you want to use?\n",
 knownUsers.UserNameList())
 user := knownUsers.Users[userChoice]

 var signedUp bool
 var userConfirmed bool
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter a password that has at least eight
 characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !signedUp {
  log.Printf("Signing up user '%v' with email '%v' to Cognito.\n", user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
  userConfirmed, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignUp(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
 password, user.UserEmail)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("Enter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   signedUp = true
  }
 }
```

```
 log.Printf("User %v signed up, confirmed = %v.\n", user.UserName, userConfirmed)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 return user.UserName, password
}

// SignInUser signs in a user.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) string {
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 log.Printf("Let's sign in as %v...\n", userName)
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
 (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 return *authResult.AccessToken
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *AutoConfirm) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])
```

```
 runner.AddPreSignUpTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers, actions.PreSignUp)
 userName, password := runner.SignUpUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["AutoConfirmFunction"])
 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
  runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password))

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}
```

```
// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PreSignUp event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be confirmed and verified.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup) (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPreSignup,
 error) {
 log.Printf("Received presignup from %v for user '%v'", event.TriggerSource,
 event.UserName)
 if event.TriggerSource != "PreSignUp_SignUp" {
  // Other trigger sources, such as PreSignUp_AdminInitiateAuth, ignore the response
 from this handler.
  return event, nil
 }
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
 }
 log.Printf("Looking up email %v in table %v.\n", user.UserEmail, tableName)
 output, err := h.dynamoClient.GetItem(ctx, &dynamodb.GetItemInput{
  Key:       user.GetKey(),
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Error looking up email %v.\n", user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
 }
 if output.Item == nil {
  log.Printf("Email %v not found. Email verification is required.\n",
 user.UserEmail)
  return event, err
```

```
 }

 err = attributevalue.UnmarshalMap(output.Item, &user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return event, err
 }

 if user.UserName != event.UserName {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found, but stored UserName '%v' does not match supplied
 UserName '%v'. Verification is required.\n",
   user.UserEmail, user.UserName, event.UserName)
 } else {
  log.Printf("UserEmail %v found with matching UserName %v. User is confirmed.\n",
 user.UserEmail, user.UserName)
  event.Response.AutoConfirmUser = true
  event.Response.AutoVerifyEmail = true
 }

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
```

```
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
```

```
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for this
 example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users table...
\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
```

```
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the specified
 Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with your
 Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
```

```
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}
```

```
// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}
```

```
// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
```

```
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
```

```
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
```

```
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_%v",
 i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user User)
 error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)
```

```
type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx, &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
```

```
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources \n"
 +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
```

```
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i], HandlerArn:
 nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Automatically migrate known users with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to automatically migrate known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `MigrateUser` trigger.

- Sign in to Amazon Cognito with a username and email that is not in the user pool.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically migrates known users to the user pool.
- Perform the forgot password flow to reset the password for the migrated user.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// MigrateUser separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type MigrateUser struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}
```

```
// NewMigrateUser constructs a new migrate user runner.
func NewMigrateUser(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, helper
 IScenarioHelper) MigrateUser {
 scenario := MigrateUser{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddMigrateUserTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 MigrateUser trigger.
func (runner *MigrateUser) AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, functionArn string) {
 log.Printf("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the MigrateUser trigger from
 Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens when an unknown user signs in, and lets your function take
 action before Cognito\n" +
  "rejects the user.\n\n")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.UserMigration, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(functionArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle the MigrateUser
 trigger.\n",
  functionArn, userPoolId)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser adds a new user to the known users table and signs that user in to
 Amazon Cognito.
func (runner *MigrateUser) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, usersTable string,
 clientId string) (bool, actions.User) {
 log.Println("Let's sign in a user to your Cognito user pool. When the username and
 email matches an entry in the\n" +
```

```
 "DynamoDB known users table, the email is automatically verified and the user is
migrated to the Cognito user pool.")

user := actions.User{}
user.UserName = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter a username:")
user.UserEmail = runner.questioner.Ask("\nEnter an email that you own. This email
will be used to confirm user migration\n" +
 "during this example:")

runner.helper.AddKnownUser(ctx, usersTable, user)

var err error
var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
signedIn := false
for !signedIn && resetRequired == nil {
 log.Printf("Signing in to Cognito as user '%v'. The expected result is a
PasswordResetRequiredException.\n\n", user.UserName)
 authResult, err = runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName, "_")
 if err != nil {
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Printf("\nUser '%v' is not in the Cognito user pool but was found in the
DynamoDB known users table.\n"+
    "User migration is started and a password reset is required.", user.UserName)
  } else {
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("User '%v' successfully signed in. This is unexpected and probably
means you have not\n"+
   "cleaned up a previous run of this scenario, so the user exist in the Cognito
user pool.\n"+
   "You can continue this example and select to clean up resources, or manually
remove\n"+
   "the user from your user pool and try again.", user.UserName)
  runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
*authResult.AccessToken)
  signedIn = true
 }
}

log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
return resetRequired != nil, user
}
```

```
// ResetPassword starts a password recovery flow.
func (runner *MigrateUser) ResetPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string, user
 actions.User) {
 wantCode := runner.questioner.AskBool(fmt.Sprintf("In order to migrate the user to
 Cognito, you must be able to receive a confirmation\n"+
  "code by email at %v. Do you want to send a code (y/n)?", user.UserEmail), "y")
 if !wantCode {
  log.Println("To complete this example and successfully migrate a user to Cognito,
 you must enter an email\n" +
   "you own that can receive a confirmation code.")
  return
 }
 codeDelivery, err := runner.cognitoActor.ForgotPassword(ctx, clientId,
 user.UserName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("\nA confirmation code has been sent to %v.", *codeDelivery.Destination)
 code := runner.questioner.Ask("Check your email and enter it here:")

 confirmed := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !confirmed {
  log.Printf("\nConfirming password reset for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx, clientId, code,
 user.UserName, password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   confirmed = true
  }
 }
 log.Printf("User '%v' successfully confirmed and migrated.\n", user.UserName)
 log.Println("Signing in with your username and password...")
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, user.UserName,
 password)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: %v...\n",
 (*authResult.AccessToken)[:10])
 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *MigrateUser) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]

 runner.AddMigrateUserTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunctionArn"])
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.UserMigration)
 resetNeeded, user := runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"],
 stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"])
 if resetNeeded {
  runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["MigrateUserFunction"])
  runner.ResetPassword(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], user)
 }

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `MigrateUser` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/expression"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the MigrateUser event by looking up a user in an Amazon
 DynamoDB table and
// specifying whether they should be migrated to the user pool.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event
 events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser) (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUser,
 error) {
```

```
log.Printf("Received migrate trigger from %v for user '%v'", event.TriggerSource,
event.UserName)
if event.TriggerSource != "UserMigration_Authentication" {
 return event, nil
}
tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
user := UserInfo{
 UserName: event.UserName,
}
log.Printf("Looking up user '%v' in table %v.\n", user.UserName, tableName)
filterEx := expression.Name("UserName").Equal(expression.Value(user.UserName))
expr, err := expression.NewBuilder().WithFilter(filterEx).Build()
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Error building expression to query for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
 return event, err
}
output, err := h.dynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
 TableName:                 aws.String(tableName),
 FilterExpression:          expr.Filter(),
 ExpressionAttributeNames:  expr.Names(),
 ExpressionAttributeValues: expr.Values(),
})
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Error looking up user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
 return event, err
}
if len(output.Items) == 0 {
 log.Printf("User '%v' not found, not migrating user.\n", user.UserName)
 return event, err
}

var users []UserInfo
err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &users)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal DynamoDB items. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 return event, err
}

user = users[0]
log.Printf("UserName '%v' found with email %v. User is migrated and must reset
password.\n", user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.UserAttributes = map[string]string{
 "email":          user.UserEmail,
```

```
  "email_verified": "true", // email_verified is required for the forgot password
 flow.
 }
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.FinalUserStatus = "RESET_REQUIRED"
 event.CognitoEventUserPoolsMigrateUserResponse.MessageAction = "SUPPRESS"

 return event, err
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
```

```
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
```

```
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for this
 example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users table...
\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the specified
 Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
```

```
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with your
 Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int
```

```
const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
   lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
  }
 }
 _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
  LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
 }
```

```
 return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}



// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}



// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
```

```
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
```

```
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
```

```
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
```

```
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_%v",
 i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
```

```
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user User)
 error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)

type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
```

```
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx, &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)
```

```
// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources \n"
 +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
```

```
    triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i], HandlerArn:
 nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - ConfirmForgotPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - ForgotPassword
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication

The following code example shows how to write custom activity data with a Lambda function after Amazon Cognito user authentication.

- Use administrator functions to add a user to a user pool.
- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PostAuthentication` trigger.
- Sign the new user in to Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function writes custom information to CloudWatch Logs and to an DynamoDB table.
- Get and display custom data from the DynamoDB table, then clean up resources.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// ActivityLog separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ActivityLog struct {
 helper       IScenarioHelper
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
 resources    Resources
 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
}

// NewActivityLog constructs a new activity log runner.
func NewActivityLog(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, helper
 IScenarioHelper) ActivityLog {
 scenario := ActivityLog{
  helper:       helper,
  questioner:   questioner,
  resources:    Resources{},
  cognitoActor: &actions.CognitoActions{CognitoClient:
 cognitoidentityprovider.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
```

```
 }
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.cognitoActor, questioner)
 return scenario
}

// AddUserToPool selects a user from the known users table and uses administrator
 credentials to add the user to the user pool.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddUserToPool(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 tableName string) (string, string) {
 log.Println("To facilitate this example, let's add a user to the user pool using
 administrator privileges.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 user := users.Users[0]
 log.Printf("Adding known user %v to the user pool.\n", user.UserName)
 err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminCreateUser(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 pwSet := false
 password := runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter a password that has at least
 eight characters, uppercase, lowercase, numbers and symbols.\n"+
  "(the password will not display as you type):", 8)
 for !pwSet {
  log.Printf("\nSetting password for user '%v'.\n", user.UserName)
  err = runner.cognitoActor.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx, userPoolId, user.UserName,
 password)
  if err != nil {
   var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
   if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
    password = runner.questioner.AskPassword("\nEnter another password:", 8)
   } else {
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   pwSet = true
  }
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 return user.UserName, password
}

// AddActivityLogTrigger adds a Lambda handler as an invocation target for the
 PostAuthentication trigger.
func (runner *ActivityLog) AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, activityLogArn string) {
 log.Println("Let's add a Lambda function to handle the PostAuthentication trigger
 from Cognito.\n" +
  "This trigger happens after a user is authenticated, and lets your function take
 action, such as logging\n" +
  "the outcome.")
 err := runner.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(
  ctx, userPoolId,
  actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: actions.PostAuthentication, HandlerArn:
 aws.String(activityLogArn)})
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.triggers = append(runner.resources.triggers,
 actions.PostAuthentication)
 log.Printf("Lambda function %v added to user pool %v to handle PostAuthentication
 Cognito trigger.\n",
  activityLogArn, userPoolId)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SignInUser signs in as the specified user.
func (runner *ActivityLog) SignInUser(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) {
 log.Printf("Now we'll sign in user %v and check the results in the logs and the
 DynamoDB table.", userName)
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 authResult, err := runner.cognitoActor.SignIn(ctx, clientId, userName, password)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Sign in successful.",
  "The PostAuthentication Lambda handler writes custom information to CloudWatch
 Logs.")

 runner.resources.userAccessTokens = append(runner.resources.userAccessTokens,
 *authResult.AccessToken)
```

```
}

// GetKnownUserLastLogin gets the login info for a user from the Amazon DynamoDB
 table and displays it.
func (runner *ActivityLog) GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string, userName string) {
 log.Println("The PostAuthentication handler also writes login data to the DynamoDB
 table.")
 runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready to continue.")
 users, err := runner.helper.GetKnownUsers(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, user := range users.Users {
  if user.UserName == userName {
   log.Println("The last login info for the user in the known users table is:")
   log.Printf("\t%+v", *user.LastLogin)
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// Run runs the scenario.
func (runner *ActivityLog) Run(ctx context.Context, stackName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome\n")

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 stackOutputs, err := runner.helper.GetStackOutputs(ctx, stackName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 runner.resources.userPoolId = stackOutputs["UserPoolId"]
 runner.helper.PopulateUserTable(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"])
 userName, password := runner.AddUserToPool(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["TableName"])
```

```
 runner.AddActivityLogTrigger(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolId"],
 stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunctionArn"])
 runner.SignInUser(ctx, stackOutputs["UserPoolClientId"], userName, password)
 runner.helper.ListRecentLogEvents(ctx, stackOutputs["ActivityLogFunction"])
 runner.GetKnownUserLastLogin(ctx, stackOutputs["TableName"], userName)

 runner.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Handle the `PostAuthentication` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 dynamodbtypes "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

const TABLE_NAME = "TABLE_NAME"

// LoginInfo defines structured login data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string `dynamodbav:"UserPoolId"`
 ClientId   string `dynamodbav:"ClientId"`
 Time       string `dynamodbav:"Time"`
```

```
}

// UserInfo defines structured user data that can be marshalled to a DynamoDB
 format.
type UserInfo struct {
 UserName  string    `dynamodbav:"UserName"`
 UserEmail string    `dynamodbav:"UserEmail"`
 LastLogin LoginInfo `dynamodbav:"LastLogin"`
}

// GetKey marshals the user email value to a DynamoDB key format.
func (user UserInfo) GetKey() map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue {
 userEmail, err := attributevalue.Marshal(user.UserEmail)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 return map[string]dynamodbtypes.AttributeValue{"UserEmail": userEmail}
}

type handler struct {
 dynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// HandleRequest handles the PostAuthentication event by writing custom data to the
 logs and
// to an Amazon DynamoDB table.
func (h *handler) HandleRequest(ctx context.Context,
 event events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication)
 (events.CognitoEventUserPoolsPostAuthentication, error) {
 log.Printf("Received post authentication trigger from %v for user '%v'",
 event.TriggerSource, event.UserName)
 tableName := os.Getenv(TABLE_NAME)
 user := UserInfo{
  UserName:  event.UserName,
  UserEmail: event.Request.UserAttributes["email"],
  LastLogin: LoginInfo{
   UserPoolId: event.UserPoolID,
   ClientId:   event.CallerContext.ClientID,
   Time:       time.Now().Format(time.UnixDate),
  },
 }
 // Write to CloudWatch Logs.
 fmt.Printf("%#v", user)
```

```
 // Also write to an external system. This examples uses DynamoDB to demonstrate.
 userMap, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshal to DynamoDB map. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 } else if len(userMap) == 0 {
  log.Printf("User info marshaled to an empty map.")
 } else {
  _, err := h.dynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
   Item:      userMap,
   TableName: aws.String(tableName),
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't write to DynamoDB. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Wrote user info to DynamoDB table %v.\n", tableName)
  }
 }

 return event, nil
}

func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Panicln(err)
 }
 h := handler{
  dynamoClient: dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig),
 }
 lambda.Start(h.HandleRequest)
}
```

Create a struct that performs common tasks.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "time"
```

```
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// IScenarioHelper defines common functions used by the workflows in this example.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string) (actions.StackOutputs,
 error)
 PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (actions.UserList, error)
 AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user actions.User)
 ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName string)
}

// ScenarioHelper contains AWS wrapper structs used by the workflows in this
 example.
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 questioner  demotools.IQuestioner
 dynamoActor *actions.DynamoActions
 cfnActor    *actions.CloudFormationActions
 cwlActor    *actions.CloudWatchLogsActions
 isTestRun   bool
}

// NewScenarioHelper constructs a new scenario helper.
func NewScenarioHelper(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ScenarioHelper {
 scenario := ScenarioHelper{
  questioner:  questioner,
  dynamoActor: &actions.DynamoActions{DynamoClient:
 dynamodb.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cfnActor:    &actions.CloudFormationActions{CfnClient:
 cloudformation.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  cwlActor:    &actions.CloudWatchLogsActions{CwlClient:
 cloudwatchlogs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}
```

```
// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 if !helper.isTestRun {
  time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
 }
}

// GetStackOutputs gets the outputs from the specified CloudFormation stack in a
 structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetStackOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 (actions.StackOutputs, error) {
 return helper.cfnActor.GetOutputs(ctx, stackName), nil
}

// PopulateUserTable fills the known user table with example data.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) PopulateUserTable(ctx context.Context, tableName
 string) {
 log.Printf("First, let's add some users to the DynamoDB %v table we'll use for this
 example.\n", tableName)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.PopulateTable(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// GetKnownUsers gets the users from the known users table in a structured format.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetKnownUsers(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 (actions.UserList, error) {
 knownUsers, err := helper.dynamoActor.Scan(ctx, tableName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get known users from table %v. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return knownUsers, err
}

// AddKnownUser adds a user to the known users table.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) AddKnownUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string,
 user actions.User) {
 log.Printf("Adding user '%v' with email '%v' to the DynamoDB known users table...
\n",
  user.UserName, user.UserEmail)
 err := helper.dynamoActor.AddUser(ctx, tableName, user)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
}

// ListRecentLogEvents gets the most recent log stream and events for the specified
 Lambda function and displays them.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) ListRecentLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string) {
 log.Println("Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...")
 helper.Pause(10)
 log.Println("Okay, let's check the logs to find what's happened recently with your
 Lambda function.")
 logStream, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLatestLogStream(ctx, functionName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Getting some recent events from log stream %v\n",
 *logStream.LogStreamName)
 events, err := helper.cwlActor.GetLogEvents(ctx, functionName,
 *logStream.LogStreamName, 10)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 for _, event := range events {
  log.Printf("\t%v", *event.Message)
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Create a struct that wraps Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cognitoidentityprovider/types"
```

```
)

type CognitoActions struct {
 CognitoClient *cognitoidentityprovider.Client
}



// Trigger and TriggerInfo define typed data for updating an Amazon Cognito trigger.
type Trigger int

const (
 PreSignUp Trigger = iota
 UserMigration
 PostAuthentication
)

type TriggerInfo struct {
 Trigger    Trigger
 HandlerArn *string
}

// UpdateTriggers adds or removes Lambda triggers for a user pool. When a trigger is
 specified with a `nil` value,
// it is removed from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) UpdateTriggers(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 triggers ...TriggerInfo) error {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.DescribeUserPool(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DescribeUserPoolInput{
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get info about user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId,
 err)
  return err
 }
 lambdaConfig := output.UserPool.LambdaConfig
 for _, trigger := range triggers {
  switch trigger.Trigger {
  case PreSignUp:
   lambdaConfig.PreSignUp = trigger.HandlerArn
  case UserMigration:
   lambdaConfig.UserMigration = trigger.HandlerArn
  case PostAuthentication:
```

```
    lambdaConfig.PostAuthentication = trigger.HandlerArn
   }
  }
  _, err = actor.CognitoClient.UpdateUserPool(ctx,
  &cognitoidentityprovider.UpdateUserPoolInput{
   UserPoolId:   aws.String(userPoolId),
   LambdaConfig: lambdaConfig,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't update user pool %v. Here's why: %v\n", userPoolId, err)
  }
  return err
}



// SignUp signs up a user with Amazon Cognito.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignUp(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string, userEmail string) (bool, error) {
 confirmed := false
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.SignUp(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.SignUpInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Password: aws.String(password),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{
   {Name: aws.String("email"), Value: aws.String(userEmail)},
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign up user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  confirmed = output.UserConfirmed
 }
 return confirmed, err
}
```

```
// SignIn signs in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password
 authentication flow.
func (actor CognitoActions) SignIn(ctx context.Context, clientId string, userName
 string, password string) (*types.AuthenticationResultType, error) {
 var authResult *types.AuthenticationResultType
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.InitiateAuth(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.InitiateAuthInput{
  AuthFlow:       "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
  ClientId:       aws.String(clientId),
  AuthParameters: map[string]string{"USERNAME": userName, "PASSWORD": password},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var resetRequired *types.PasswordResetRequiredException
  if errors.As(err, &resetRequired) {
   log.Println(*resetRequired.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't sign in user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 } else {
  authResult = output.AuthenticationResult
 }
 return authResult, err
}



// ForgotPassword starts a password recovery flow for a user. This flow typically
 sends a confirmation code
// to the user's configured notification destination, such as email.
func (actor CognitoActions) ForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId string,
 userName string) (*types.CodeDeliveryDetailsType, error) {
 output, err := actor.CognitoClient.ForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId: aws.String(clientId),
  Username: aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't start password reset for user '%v'. Here;s why: %v\n",
 userName, err)
 }
 return output.CodeDeliveryDetails, err
}
```

```
// ConfirmForgotPassword confirms a user with a confirmation code and a new
 password.
func (actor CognitoActions) ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx context.Context, clientId
 string, code string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.ConfirmForgotPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.ConfirmForgotPasswordInput{
  ClientId:         aws.String(clientId),
  ConfirmationCode: aws.String(code),
  Password:         aws.String(password),
  Username:         aws.String(userName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't confirm user %v. Here's why: %v", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteUser removes a user from the user pool.
func (actor CognitoActions) DeleteUser(ctx context.Context, userAccessToken string)
 error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.DeleteUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.DeleteUserInput{
  AccessToken: aws.String(userAccessToken),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete user. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 return err
}



// AdminCreateUser uses administrator credentials to add a user to a user pool. This
 method leaves the user
// in a state that requires they enter a new password next time they sign in.
```

```
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminCreateUser(ctx context.Context, userPoolId string,
 userName string, userEmail string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminCreateUser(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminCreateUserInput{
  UserPoolId:     aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:       aws.String(userName),
  MessageAction:  types.MessageActionTypeSuppress,
  UserAttributes: []types.AttributeType{{Name: aws.String("email"), Value:
 aws.String(userEmail)}},
 })
 if err != nil {
  var userExists *types.UsernameExistsException
  if errors.As(err, &userExists) {
   log.Printf("User %v already exists in the user pool.", userName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// AdminSetUserPassword uses administrator credentials to set a password for a user
 without requiring a
// temporary password.
func (actor CognitoActions) AdminSetUserPassword(ctx context.Context, userPoolId
 string, userName string, password string) error {
 _, err := actor.CognitoClient.AdminSetUserPassword(ctx,
 &cognitoidentityprovider.AdminSetUserPasswordInput{
  Password:   aws.String(password),
  UserPoolId: aws.String(userPoolId),
  Username:   aws.String(userName),
  Permanent:  true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var invalidPassword *types.InvalidPasswordException
  if errors.As(err, &invalidPassword) {
   log.Println(*invalidPassword.Message)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't set password for user %v. Here's why: %v\n", userName, err)
  }
 }
```

```
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps DynamoDB actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/dynamodb/attributevalue"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/dynamodb/types"
)

// DynamoActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type DynamoActions struct {
 DynamoClient *dynamodb.Client
}

// User defines structured user data.
type User struct {
 UserName  string
 UserEmail string
 LastLogin *LoginInfo `dynamodbav:",omitempty"`
}

// LoginInfo defines structured custom login data.
type LoginInfo struct {
 UserPoolId string
 ClientId   string
 Time       string
}

// UserList defines a list of users.
type UserList struct {
 Users []User
```

```
}

// UserNameList returns the usernames contained in a UserList as a list of strings.
func (users *UserList) UserNameList() []string {
 names := make([]string, len(users.Users))
 for i := 0; i < len(users.Users); i++ {
  names[i] = users.Users[i].UserName
 }
 return names
}

// PopulateTable adds a set of test users to the table.
func (actor DynamoActions) PopulateTable(ctx context.Context, tableName string)
 error {
 var err error
 var item map[string]types.AttributeValue
 var writeReqs []types.WriteRequest
 for i := 1; i < 4; i++ {
  item, err = attributevalue.MarshalMap(User{UserName: fmt.Sprintf("test_user_%v",
 i), UserEmail: fmt.Sprintf("test_email_%v@example.com", i)})
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user into DynamoDB format. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   return err
  }
  writeReqs = append(writeReqs, types.WriteRequest{PutRequest:
 &types.PutRequest{Item: item}})
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.BatchWriteItem(ctx, &dynamodb.BatchWriteItemInput{
  RequestItems: map[string][]types.WriteRequest{tableName: writeReqs},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't populate table %v with users. Here's why: %v\n", tableName,
 err)
 }
 return err
}

// Scan scans the table for all items.
func (actor DynamoActions) Scan(ctx context.Context, tableName string) (UserList,
 error) {
 var userList UserList
 output, err := actor.DynamoClient.Scan(ctx, &dynamodb.ScanInput{
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't scan table %v for items. Here's why: %v\n", tableName, err)
 } else {
  err = attributevalue.UnmarshalListOfMaps(output.Items, &userList.Users)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't unmarshal items into users. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
 }
 return userList, err
}

// AddUser adds a user item to a table.
func (actor DynamoActions) AddUser(ctx context.Context, tableName string, user User)
 error {
 userItem, err := attributevalue.MarshalMap(user)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't marshall user to item. Here's why: %v\n", err)
 }
 _, err = actor.DynamoClient.PutItem(ctx, &dynamodb.PutItemInput{
  Item:      userItem,
  TableName: aws.String(tableName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't put item in table %v. Here's why: %v", tableName, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a struct that wraps CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudwatchlogs/types"
)
```

```
type CloudWatchLogsActions struct {
 CwlClient *cloudwatchlogs.Client
}

// GetLatestLogStream gets the most recent log stream for a Lambda function.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLatestLogStream(ctx context.Context,
 functionName string) (types.LogStream, error) {
 var logStream types.LogStream
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.DescribeLogStreams(ctx,
 &cloudwatchlogs.DescribeLogStreamsInput{
  Descending:   aws.Bool(true),
  Limit:        aws.Int32(1),
  LogGroupName: aws.String(logGroupName),
  OrderBy:      types.OrderByLastEventTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log streams for log group %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logGroupName, err)
 } else {
  logStream = output.LogStreams[0]
 }
 return logStream, err
}

// GetLogEvents gets the most recent eventCount events from the specified log
 stream.
func (actor CloudWatchLogsActions) GetLogEvents(ctx context.Context, functionName
 string, logStreamName string, eventCount int32) (
 []types.OutputLogEvent, error) {
 var events []types.OutputLogEvent
 logGroupName := fmt.Sprintf("/aws/lambda/%s", functionName)
 output, err := actor.CwlClient.GetLogEvents(ctx, &cloudwatchlogs.GetLogEventsInput{
  LogStreamName: aws.String(logStreamName),
  Limit:         aws.Int32(eventCount),
  LogGroupName:  aws.String(logGroupName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get log event for log stream %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 logStreamName, err)
 } else {
  events = output.Events
 }
 return events, err
```

```
}
```

Create a struct that wraps AWS CloudFormation actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/cloudformation"
)

// StackOutputs defines a map of outputs from a specific stack.
type StackOutputs map[string]string

type CloudFormationActions struct {
 CfnClient *cloudformation.Client
}

// GetOutputs gets the outputs from a CloudFormation stack and puts them into a
 structured format.
func (actor CloudFormationActions) GetOutputs(ctx context.Context, stackName string)
 StackOutputs {
 output, err := actor.CfnClient.DescribeStacks(ctx,
 &cloudformation.DescribeStacksInput{
  StackName: aws.String(stackName),
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Stacks) == 0 {
  log.Panicf("Couldn't find a CloudFormation stack named %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 stackName, err)
 }
 stackOutputs := StackOutputs{}
 for _, out := range output.Stacks[0].Outputs {
  stackOutputs[*out.OutputKey] = *out.OutputValue
 }
 return stackOutputs
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "user_pools_and_lambda_triggers/actions"

 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 userPoolId       string
 userAccessTokens []string
 triggers         []actions.Trigger

 cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions
 questioner   demotools.IQuestioner
}

func (resources *Resources) init(cognitoActor *actions.CognitoActions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.userAccessTokens = []string{}
 resources.triggers = []actions.Trigger{}
 resources.cognitoActor = cognitoActor
 resources.questioner = questioner
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources \n"
 +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
```

```
 if wantDelete {
  for _, accessToken := range resources.userAccessTokens {
   err := resources.cognitoActor.DeleteUser(ctx, accessToken)
   if err != nil {
    log.Println("Couldn't delete user during cleanup.")
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Println("Deleted user.")
  }
  triggerList := make([]actions.TriggerInfo, len(resources.triggers))
  for i := 0; i < len(resources.triggers); i++ {
   triggerList[i] = actions.TriggerInfo{Trigger: resources.triggers[i], HandlerArn:
 nil}
  }
  err := resources.cognitoActor.UpdateTriggers(ctx, resources.userPoolId,
 triggerList...)
  if err != nil {
   log.Println("Couldn't update Cognito triggers during cleanup.")
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Removed Cognito triggers from user pool.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - AdminCreateUser
  - AdminSetUserPassword
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - UpdateUserPool

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Go.

```
/*
Golang v2 code here.
*/

package main

import (
 "context"
 "database/sql"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/rds/auth"
 _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

type MyEvent struct {
 Name string `json:"name"`
}

func HandleRequest(event *MyEvent) (map[string]interface{}, error) {

 var dbName string = os.Getenv("DatabaseName")
```

```
var dbUser string = os.Getenv("DatabaseUser")
var dbHost string = os.Getenv("DBHost") // Add hostname without https
var dbPort int = os.Getenv("Port")      // Add port number
var dbEndpoint string = fmt.Sprintf("%s:%d", dbHost, dbPort)
var region string = os.Getenv("AWS_REGION")

cfg, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())
if err != nil {
 panic("configuration error: " + err.Error())
}

authenticationToken, err := auth.BuildAuthToken(
 context.TODO(), dbEndpoint, region, dbUser, cfg.Credentials)
if err != nil {
 panic("failed to create authentication token: " + err.Error())
}

dsn := fmt.Sprintf("%s:%s@tcp(%s)/%s?tls=true&allowCleartextPasswords=true",
 dbUser, authenticationToken, dbEndpoint, dbName,
)

db, err := sql.Open("mysql", dsn)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}

defer db.Close()

var sum int
err = db.QueryRow("SELECT ?+? AS sum", 3, 2).Scan(&sum)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
s := fmt.Sprint(sum)
message := fmt.Sprintf("The selected sum is: %s", s)

messageBytes, err := json.Marshal(message)
if err != nil {
 return nil, err
}

messageString := string(messageBytes)
return map[string]interface{}{
 "statusCode": 200,
```

```
  "headers":    map[string]string{"Content-Type": "application/json"},
  "body":       messageString,
 }, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent) error {
 if len(kinesisEvent.Records) == 0 {
  log.Printf("empty Kinesis event received")
```

```
  return nil
 }

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  log.Printf("processed Kinesis event with EventId: %v", record.EventID)
  recordDataBytes := record.Kinesis.Data
  recordDataText := string(recordDataBytes)
  log.Printf("record data: %v", recordDataText)
  // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
 }
 log.Printf("successfully processed %v records", len(kinesisEvent.Records))
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "fmt"
)

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent) (*string, error)
 {
 if len(event.Records) == 0 {
  return nil, fmt.Errorf("received empty event")
 }

 for _, record := range event.Records {
   LogDynamoDBRecord(record)
 }

 message := fmt.Sprintf("Records processed: %d", len(event.Records))
 return &message, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}

func LogDynamoDBRecord(record events.DynamoDBEventRecord){
 fmt.Println(record.EventID)
 fmt.Println(record.EventName)
 fmt.Printf("%+v\n", record.Change)
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type Event struct {
 Events []Record `json:"events"`
}

type Record struct {
 Event struct {
  OperationType string `json:"operationType"`
  NS            struct {
   DB   string `json:"db"`
   Coll string `json:"coll"`
  } `json:"ns"`
  FullDocument interface{} `json:"fullDocument"`
 } `json:"event"`
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}

func handler(ctx context.Context, event Event) (string, error) {
 fmt.Println("Loading function")
 for _, record := range event.Events {
  logDocumentDBEvent(record)
 }

 return "OK", nil
}

func logDocumentDBEvent(record Record) {
 fmt.Printf("Operation type: %s\n", record.Event.OperationType)
 fmt.Printf("db: %s\n", record.Event.NS.DB)
```

```
 fmt.Printf("collection: %s\n", record.Event.NS.Coll)
 docBytes, _ := json.MarshalIndent(record.Event.FullDocument, "", "  ")
 fmt.Printf("Full document: %s\n", string(docBytes))
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "encoding/base64"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.KafkaEvent) {
 for key, records := range event.Records {
  fmt.Println("Key:", key)

  for _, record := range records {
   fmt.Println("Record:", record)

   decodedValue, _ := base64.StdEncoding.DecodeString(record.Value)
```

```
    message := string(decodedValue)
    fmt.Println("Message:", message)
   }
  }
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
)
```

```
func handler(ctx context.Context, s3Event events.S3Event) error {
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("failed to load default config: %s", err)
  return err
 }
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 for _, record := range s3Event.Records {
  bucket := record.S3.Bucket.Name
  key := record.S3.Object.URLDecodedKey
  headOutput, err := s3Client.HeadObject(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: &bucket,
   Key:    &key,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("error getting head of object %s/%s: %s", bucket, key, err)
   return err
  }
  log.Printf("successfully retrieved %s/%s of type %s", bucket, key,
 *headOutput.ContentType)
 }

 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, snsEvent events.SNSEvent) {
 for _, record := range snsEvent.Records {
  processMessage(record)
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
}

func processMessage(record events.SNSEventRecord) {
 message := record.SNS.Message
 fmt.Printf("Processed message: %s\n", message)
 // TODO: Process your record here
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package integration_sqs_to_lambda

import (
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.SQSEvent) error {
 for _, record := range event.Records {
  err := processMessage(record)
  if err != nil {
   return err
  }
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
 return nil
}

func processMessage(record events.SQSMessage) error {
 fmt.Printf("Processed message %s\n", record.Body)
 // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
 return nil
}
```

```
func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, kinesisEvent events.KinesisEvent)
 (map[string]interface{}, error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, record := range kinesisEvent.Records {
  curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

  // Process your record
```

```
  if /* Your record processing condition here */ {
   curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Kinesis.SequenceNumber
  }

  // Add a condition to check if the record processing failed
  if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": curRecordSequenceNumber})
  }
 }

 kinesisBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
 }
 return kinesisBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main
```

```
import (
 "context"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

type BatchItemFailure struct {
 ItemIdentifier string `json:"ItemIdentifier"`
}

type BatchResult struct {
 BatchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure `json:"BatchItemFailures"`
}

func HandleRequest(ctx context.Context, event events.DynamoDBEvent) (*BatchResult,
 error) {
 var batchItemFailures []BatchItemFailure
 curRecordSequenceNumber := ""

 for _, record := range event.Records {
  // Process your record
  curRecordSequenceNumber = record.Change.SequenceNumber
 }

 if curRecordSequenceNumber != "" {
  batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, BatchItemFailure{ItemIdentifier:
 curRecordSequenceNumber})
 }

 batchResult := BatchResult{
  BatchItemFailures: batchItemFailures,
 }

 return &batchResult, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, sqsEvent events.SQSEvent) (map[string]interface{},
 error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, message := range sqsEvent.Records {

  if /* Your message processing condition here */ {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": message.MessageId})
  }
 }

 sqsBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
```

```
 }
 return sqsBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Go V2

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Go SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Go.

```
package main

import (
 "encoding/base64"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.KafkaEvent) {
 for key, records := range event.Records {
  fmt.Println("Key:", key)

  for _, record := range records {
   fmt.Println("Record:", record)

   decodedValue, _ := base64.StdEncoding.DecodeString(record.Value)
   message := string(decodedValue)
   fmt.Println("Message:", message)
```

```
  }
 }
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Partner Central examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Partner Central.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOpportunity`.

SDK for Go V2

Get an opportunity.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/partnercentralselling"
)

func main() {
 config, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }

 config.Region = "us-east-1"

 client := partnercentralselling.NewFromConfig(config)

 output, err := client.GetOpportunity(context.TODO(),
 &partnercentralselling.GetOpportunityInput{
  Identifier: aws.String("O1111111"),
  Catalog:    aws.String("AWS"),
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }
 log.Println("printing opportuniy...\n")

 jsonOutput, err := json.MarshalIndent(output, "", "    ")

 fmt.Println(string(jsonOutput))
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListOpportunities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOpportunities`.

SDK for Go V2

List opportunities.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/partnercentralselling"
)

func main() {
 config, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }

 config.Region = "us-east-1"

 client := partnercentralselling.NewFromConfig(config)

 output, err := client.ListOpportunities(context.TODO(),
 &partnercentralselling.ListOpportunitiesInput{
  MaxResults: aws.Int32(2),
  Catalog:    aws.String("AWS"),
 })

 if err != nil {
  log.Fatal(err)
 }

 jsonOutput, err := json.MarshalIndent(output, "", "    ")
 fmt.Println(string(jsonOutput))
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Relational Database Service
 (Amazon RDS)
```

```
// client and list up to 20 DB instances in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 rdsClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 const maxInstances = 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v DB instances.\n", maxInstances)
 output, err := rdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{MaxRecords: aws.Int32(maxInstances)})
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list DB instances: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(output.DBInstances) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("No DB instances found.")
 } else {
  for _, instance := range output.DBInstances {
   fmt.Printf("DB instance %v has database %v.\n", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier,
    *instance.DBName)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "sort"
 "strconv"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/rds/actions"
 "github.com/google/uuid"
)
```

```
// GetStartedInstances is an interactive example that shows you how to use the AWS
 SDK for Go
// with Amazon Relation Database Service (Amazon RDS) to do the following:
//
//  1. Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
//  2. Create a DB instance that is configured to use the parameter group. The DB
 instance
//     also contains a database.
//  3. Take a snapshot of the DB instance.
//  4. Delete the DB instance and parameter group.
type GetStartedInstances struct {
 sdkConfig  aws.Config
 instances  actions.DbInstances
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 helper     IScenarioHelper
 isTestRun  bool
}

// NewGetStartedInstances constructs a GetStartedInstances instance from a
 configuration.
// It uses the specified config to get an Amazon RDS
// client and create wrappers for the actions used in the scenario.
func NewGetStartedInstances(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner,
 helper IScenarioHelper) GetStartedInstances {
 rdsClient := rds.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 return GetStartedInstances{
  sdkConfig:  sdkConfig,
  instances:  actions.DbInstances{RdsClient: rdsClient},
  questioner: questioner,
  helper:     helper,
 }
}

// Run runs the interactive scenario.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) Run(ctx context.Context, dbEngine string,
 parameterGroupName string,
 instanceName string, dbName string) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB
 Instance demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 parameterGroup := scenario.CreateParameterGroup(ctx, dbEngine, parameterGroupName)
 scenario.SetUserParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName)
 instance := scenario.CreateInstance(ctx, instanceName, dbEngine, dbName,
 parameterGroup)
 scenario.DisplayConnection(instance)
 scenario.CreateSnapshot(ctx, instance)
 scenario.Cleanup(ctx, instance, parameterGroup)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateParameterGroup shows how to get available engine versions for a specified
// database engine and create a DB parameter group that is compatible with a
// selected engine family.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) CreateParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 dbEngine string,
 parameterGroupName string) *types.DBParameterGroup {

 log.Printf("Checking for an existing DB parameter group named %v.\n",
  parameterGroupName)
 parameterGroup, err := scenario.instances.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
 parameterGroupName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if parameterGroup == nil {
  log.Printf("Getting available database engine versions for %v.\n", dbEngine)
  engineVersions, err := scenario.instances.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine, "")
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }

  familySet := map[string]struct{}{}
  for _, family := range engineVersions {
   familySet[*family.DBParameterGroupFamily] = struct{}{}
  }
  var families []string
  for family := range familySet {
```

```
    families = append(families, family)
   }
   sort.Strings(families)
   familyIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Which family do you want to use?\n",
  families)
   log.Println("Creating a DB parameter group.")
   _, err = scenario.instances.CreateParameterGroup(
    ctx, parameterGroupName, families[familyIndex], "Example parameter group.")
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   parameterGroup, err = scenario.instances.GetParameterGroup(ctx,
  parameterGroupName)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Printf("Parameter group %v:\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
  log.Printf("\tName: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName)
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupArn)
  log.Printf("\tFamily: %v\n", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
  log.Printf("\tDescription: %v\n", *parameterGroup.Description)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  return parameterGroup
}

// SetUserParameters shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom parameter
// group and update some of the parameter values in the group.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) SetUserParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) {
 log.Println("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
 dbParameters, err := scenario.instances.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName, "")
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 var updateParams []types.Parameter
 for _, dbParam := range dbParameters {
  if strings.HasPrefix(*dbParam.ParameterName, "auto_increment") &&
   *dbParam.IsModifiable && *dbParam.DataType == "integer" {
   log.Printf("The %v parameter is described as:\n\t%v",
    *dbParam.ParameterName, *dbParam.Description)
   rangeSplit := strings.Split(*dbParam.AllowedValues, "-")
   lower, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[0])
   upper, _ := strconv.Atoi(rangeSplit[1])
```

```
    newValue := scenario.questioner.AskInt(
     fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", lower, upper),
     demotools.InIntRange{Lower: lower, Upper: upper})
    dbParam.ParameterValue = aws.String(strconv.Itoa(newValue))
    updateParams = append(updateParams, dbParam)
   }
  }
  err = scenario.instances.UpdateParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName, updateParams)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("To get a list of parameters that you set previously, specify a source
  of 'user'.")
  userParameters, err := scenario.instances.GetParameters(ctx, parameterGroupName,
  "user")
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Here are the parameters you set:")
  for _, param := range userParameters {
   log.Printf("\t%v: %v\n", *param.ParameterName, *param.ParameterValue)
  }
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateInstance shows how to create a DB instance that contains a database of a
// specified type. The database is also configured to use a custom DB parameter
 group.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, dbEngine string,
 dbName string, parameterGroup *types.DBParameterGroup) *types.DBInstance {

 log.Println("Checking for an existing DB instance.")
 instance, err := scenario.instances.GetInstance(ctx, instanceName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if instance == nil {
  adminUsername := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "Enter an administrator username for the database: ", demotools.NotEmpty{})
  adminPassword := scenario.questioner.AskPassword(
   "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ", 7)
  engineVersions, err := scenario.instances.GetEngineVersions(ctx, dbEngine,
   *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupFamily)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 var engineChoices []string
 for _, engine := range engineVersions {
  engineChoices = append(engineChoices, *engine.EngineVersion)
 }
 engineIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice(
  "The available engines for your parameter group are:\n", engineChoices)
 engineSelection := engineVersions[engineIndex]
 instOpts, err := scenario.instances.GetOrderableInstances(ctx,
*engineSelection.Engine,
  *engineSelection.EngineVersion)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 optSet := map[string]struct{}{}
 for _, opt := range instOpts {
  if strings.Contains(*opt.DBInstanceClass, "micro") {
   optSet[*opt.DBInstanceClass] = struct{}{}
  }
 }
 var optChoices []string
 for opt := range optSet {
  optChoices = append(optChoices, opt)
 }
 sort.Strings(optChoices)
 optIndex := scenario.questioner.AskChoice(
  "The available micro DB instance classes for your database engine are:\n",
optChoices)
 storageType := "standard"
 allocatedStorage := int32(5)
 log.Printf("Creating a DB instance named %v and database %v.\n"+
  "The DB instance is configured to use your custom parameter group %v,\n"+
  "selected engine %v,\n"+
  "selected DB instance class %v,"+
  "and %v GiB of %v storage.\n"+
  "This typically takes several minutes.",
  instanceName, dbName, *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName,
*engineSelection.EngineVersion,
  optChoices[optIndex], allocatedStorage, storageType)
 instance, err = scenario.instances.CreateInstance(
  ctx, instanceName, dbName, *engineSelection.Engine,
*engineSelection.EngineVersion,
```

```
    *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName, optChoices[optIndex], storageType,
    allocatedStorage, adminUsername, adminPassword)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   for *instance.DBInstanceStatus != "available" {
    scenario.helper.Pause(30)
    instance, err = scenario.instances.GetInstance(ctx, instanceName)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
   log.Println("Instance created and available.")
  }
  log.Println("Instance data:")
  log.Printf("\tDBInstanceIdentifier: %v\n", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *instance.DBInstanceArn)
  log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *instance.DBInstanceStatus)
  log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *instance.Engine)
  log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *instance.EngineVersion)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  return instance
}

// DisplayConnection displays connection information about a DB instance and tips
// on how to connect to it.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) DisplayConnection(instance *types.DBInstance) {
  log.Println(
   "You can now connect to your database by using your favorite MySQL client.\n" +
    "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2 instance\n" +
    "that is running in the same VPC as your DB instance. Pass the endpoint,\n" +
    "port, and administrator username to 'mysql'. Then, enter your password\n" +
    "when prompted:")
  log.Printf("\n\tmysql -h %v -P %v -u %v -p\n",
   *instance.Endpoint.Address, instance.Endpoint.Port, *instance.MasterUsername)
  log.Println("For more information, see the User Guide for RDS:\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/UserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStarted.CreatingConnecting.MySQL.html#CHAP_GettingStarted.Connecting.MySQL")
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// CreateSnapshot shows how to create a DB instance snapshot and wait until it's
 available.
```

```
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, instance
 *types.DBInstance) {
 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB instance (y/n)? ", "y") {
  snapshotId := fmt.Sprintf("%v-%v", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier,
 scenario.helper.UniqueId())
  log.Printf("Creating a snapshot named %v. This typically takes a few minutes.\n",
 snapshotId)
  snapshot, err := scenario.instances.CreateSnapshot(ctx,
 *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier, snapshotId)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  for *snapshot.Status != "available" {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   snapshot, err = scenario.instances.GetSnapshot(ctx, snapshotId)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Println("Snapshot data:")
  log.Printf("\tDBSnapshotIdentifier: %v\n", *snapshot.DBSnapshotIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tARN: %v\n", *snapshot.DBSnapshotArn)
  log.Printf("\tStatus: %v\n", *snapshot.Status)
  log.Printf("\tEngine: %v\n", *snapshot.Engine)
  log.Printf("\tEngine version: %v\n", *snapshot.EngineVersion)
  log.Printf("\tDBInstanceIdentifier: %v\n", *snapshot.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  log.Printf("\tSnapshotCreateTime: %v\n", *snapshot.SnapshotCreateTime)
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 }
}

// Cleanup shows how to clean up a DB instance and DB parameter group.
// Before the DB parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB instances must
 first be deleted.
func (scenario GetStartedInstances) Cleanup(
 ctx context.Context, instance *types.DBInstance, parameterGroup
 *types.DBParameterGroup) {

 if scenario.questioner.AskBool(
  "\nDo you want to delete the database instance and parameter group (y/n)? ", "y")
 {
  log.Printf("Deleting database instance %v.\n", *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
  err := scenario.instances.DeleteInstance(ctx, *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
```

```
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println(
   "Waiting for the DB instance to delete. This typically takes several minutes.")
  for instance != nil {
   scenario.helper.Pause(30)
   instance, err = scenario.instances.GetInstance(ctx,
 *instance.DBInstanceIdentifier)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  log.Printf("Deleting parameter group %v.", *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName)
  err = scenario.instances.DeleteParameterGroup(ctx,
 *parameterGroup.DBParameterGroupName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}

// IScenarioHelper abstracts the function from a scenario so that it
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 Pause(secs int)
 UniqueId() string
}
type ScenarioHelper struct{}

// Pause waits for the specified number of seconds.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) Pause(secs int) {
 time.Sleep(time.Duration(secs) * time.Second)
}

// UniqueId returns a new UUID.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) UniqueId() string {
 return uuid.New().String()
}
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon RDS actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}


// GetParameterGroup gets a DB parameter group by name.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBParameterGroups[0], err
 }
}



// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB parameter group that is based on the specified
// parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateParameterGroup(
```

```
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName:   aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:            aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBParameterGroup, err
 }
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
```

```
 var err error
 parameterPaginator := rds.NewDescribeDBParametersPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBParametersInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:               aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get parameters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}



// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.ModifyDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:           params,
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// CreateSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBSnapshotInput{
```

```
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBSnapshot, nil
 }
}



// GetSnapshot gets a DB instance snapshot.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName string)
 (*types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBSnapshotsInput{
   DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}



// CreateInstance creates a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, dbName string,
 dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, parameterGroupName string, dbInstanceClass
 string,
 storageType string, allocatedStorage int32, adminName string, adminPassword string)
 (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBName:               aws.String(dbName),
  DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  Engine:               aws.String(dbEngine),
```

```
  EngineVersion:        aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  DBInstanceClass:      aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
  StorageType:          aws.String(storageType),
  AllocatedStorage:     aws.Int32(allocatedStorage),
  MasterUsername:       aws.String(adminName),
  MasterUserPassword:   aws.String(adminPassword),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string)
 (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) error {
```

```
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine string,
 parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
```

```
 var instanceOptions []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instance options: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instanceOptions = append(instanceOptions, output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instanceOptions, err
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateInstance creates a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, dbName string,
 dbEngine string, dbEngineVersion string, parameterGroupName string, dbInstanceClass
 string,
 storageType string, allocatedStorage int32, adminName string, adminPassword string)
 (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBInstance(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
```

```
  DBName:                aws.String(dbName),
  DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  Engine:                aws.String(dbEngine),
  EngineVersion:         aws.String(dbEngineVersion),
  DBInstanceClass:       aws.String(dbInstanceClass),
  StorageType:           aws.String(storageType),
  AllocatedStorage:      aws.Int32(allocatedStorage),
  MasterUsername:        aws.String(adminName),
  MasterUserPassword:    aws.String(adminPassword),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBInstance, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateParameterGroup creates a DB parameter group that is based on the specified
// parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateParameterGroup(
 ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName string, parameterGroupFamily string,
 description string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {

 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.CreateDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName:   aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
   Description:            aws.String(description),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBParameterGroup, err
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// CreateSnapshot creates a snapshot of a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) CreateSnapshot(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string, snapshotName string) (
 *types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.CreateDBSnapshot(ctx,
 &rds.CreateDBSnapshotInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBSnapshot, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteInstance deletes a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName
 string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBInstance(ctx, &rds.DeleteDBInstanceInput{
  DBInstanceIdentifier:   aws.String(instanceName),
  SkipFinalSnapshot:      aws.Bool(true),
  DeleteAutomatedBackups: aws.Bool(true),
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// DeleteParameterGroup deletes the named DB parameter group.
```

```
func (instances *DbInstances) DeleteParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.DeleteDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.DeleteDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
```

```
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetEngineVersions gets database engine versions that are available for the
 specified engine
// and parameter group family.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetEngineVersions(ctx context.Context, engine string,
 parameterGroupFamily string) (
 []types.DBEngineVersion, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBEngineVersions(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput{
   Engine:                 aws.String(engine),
   DBParameterGroupFamily: aws.String(parameterGroupFamily),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get engine versions for %v: %v\n", engine, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return output.DBEngineVersions, nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetInstance gets data about a DB instance.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetInstance(ctx context.Context, instanceName string)
 (
 *types.DBInstance, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBInstances(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBInstancesInput{
   DBInstanceIdentifier: aws.String(instanceName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBInstanceNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("DB instance %v does not exist.\n", instanceName)
   err = nil
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get instance %v: %v\n", instanceName, err)
  }
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBInstances[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetParameterGroup gets a DB parameter group by name.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameterGroup(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string) (
 *types.DBParameterGroup, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBParameterGroups(
  ctx, &rds.DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  var notFoundError *types.DBParameterGroupNotFoundFault
  if errors.As(err, &notFoundError) {
   log.Printf("Parameter group %v does not exist.\n", parameterGroupName)
   err = nil
  } else {
```

```
    log.Printf("Error getting parameter group %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   }
   return nil, err
  } else {
   return &output.DBParameterGroups[0], err
  }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetParameters gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.
```

```
func (instances *DbInstances) GetParameters(ctx context.Context, parameterGroupName
 string, source string) (
 []types.Parameter, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeDBParametersOutput
 var params []types.Parameter
 var err error
 parameterPaginator := rds.NewDescribeDBParametersPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeDBParametersInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Source:               aws.String(source),
  })
 for parameterPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = parameterPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get parameters for %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
   break
  } else {
   params = append(params, output.Parameters...)
  }
 }
 return params, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeDBSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetSnapshot gets a DB instance snapshot.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetSnapshot(ctx context.Context, snapshotName string)
 (*types.DBSnapshot, error) {
 output, err := instances.RdsClient.DescribeDBSnapshots(ctx,
  &rds.DescribeDBSnapshotsInput{
   DBSnapshotIdentifier: aws.String(snapshotName),
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get snapshot %v: %v\n", snapshotName, err)
  return nil, err
 } else {
  return &output.DBSnapshots[0], nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}



// GetOrderableInstances uses a paginator to get DB instance options that can be
 used to create DB instances that are
// compatible with a set of specifications.
func (instances *DbInstances) GetOrderableInstances(ctx context.Context, engine
 string, engineVersion string) (
 []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption, error) {

 var output *rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsOutput
 var instanceOptions []types.OrderableDBInstanceOption
 var err error
 orderablePaginator :=
 rds.NewDescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginator(instances.RdsClient,
  &rds.DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput{
   Engine:        aws.String(engine),
   EngineVersion: aws.String(engineVersion),
  })
 for orderablePaginator.HasMorePages() {
```

```
  output, err = orderablePaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get orderable DB instance options: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   instanceOptions = append(instanceOptions, output.OrderableDBInstanceOptions...)
  }
 }
 return instanceOptions, err
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ModifyDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/rds/types"
)

type DbInstances struct {
 RdsClient *rds.Client
}
```

```
// UpdateParameters updates parameters in a named DB parameter group.
func (instances *DbInstances) UpdateParameters(ctx context.Context,
 parameterGroupName string, params []types.Parameter) error {
 _, err := instances.RdsClient.ModifyDBParameterGroup(ctx,
  &rds.ModifyDBParameterGroupInput{
   DBParameterGroupName: aws.String(parameterGroupName),
   Parameters:           params,
  })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't update parameters in %v: %v\n", parameterGroupName, err)
  return err
 } else {
  return nil
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Go.

```
/*
Golang v2 code here.
*/
```

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "database/sql"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "os"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/rds/auth"
 _ "github.com/go-sql-driver/mysql"
)

type MyEvent struct {
 Name string `json:"name"`
}

func HandleRequest(event *MyEvent) (map[string]interface{}, error) {

 var dbName string = os.Getenv("DatabaseName")
 var dbUser string = os.Getenv("DatabaseUser")
 var dbHost string = os.Getenv("DBHost") // Add hostname without https
 var dbPort int = os.Getenv("Port")      // Add port number
 var dbEndpoint string = fmt.Sprintf("%s:%d", dbHost, dbPort)
 var region string = os.Getenv("AWS_REGION")

 cfg, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(context.TODO())
 if err != nil {
  panic("configuration error: " + err.Error())
 }

 authenticationToken, err := auth.BuildAuthToken(
  context.TODO(), dbEndpoint, region, dbUser, cfg.Credentials)
 if err != nil {
  panic("failed to create authentication token: " + err.Error())
 }

 dsn := fmt.Sprintf("%s:%s@tcp(%s)/%s?tls=true&allowCleartextPasswords=true",
  dbUser, authenticationToken, dbEndpoint, dbName,
 )
```

```
 db, err := sql.Open("mysql", dsn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }

 defer db.Close()

 var sum int
 err = db.QueryRow("SELECT ?+? AS sum", 3, 2).Scan(&sum)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 s := fmt.Sprint(sum)
 message := fmt.Sprintf("The selected sum is: %s", s)

 messageBytes, err := json.Marshal(message)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }

 messageString := string(messageBytes)
 return map[string]interface{}{
  "statusCode": 200,
  "headers":    map[string]string{"Content-Type": "application/json"},
  "body":       messageString,
 }, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(HandleRequest)
}
```

Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon Redshift.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Redshift

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Redshift.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create a Redshift client
// and list up to 10 clusters in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 redshiftClient := redshift.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
```

```
 count := 20
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v clusters for your account.\n", count)
 result, err := redshiftClient.DescribeClusters(ctx,
 &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  MaxRecords: aws.Int32(int32(count)),
 })
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Printf("Couldn't list clusters for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return
 }
 if len(result.Clusters) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any clusters!")
  return
 }
 for _, cluster := range result.Clusters {
  fmt.Printf("\t%v : %v\n", *cluster.ClusterIdentifier, *cluster.ClusterStatus)
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a Redshift cluster.
- List databases in the cluster.
- Create a table named Movies.
- Populate the Movies table.
- Query the Movies table by year.
- Modify the Redshift cluster.

- Delete the Amazon Redshift cluster.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package scenarios

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "math/rand"
 "strings"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 redshift_types "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
 redshiftdata_types "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshiftdata/types"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/secretsmanager"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/redshift/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshiftdata"
)

// IScenarioHelper abstracts input and wait functions from a scenario so that they
// can be mocked for unit testing.
type IScenarioHelper interface {
 GetName() string
}

const rMax = 100000
```

```
type ScenarioHelper struct {
 Prefix string
 Random *rand.Rand
}

// GetName returns a unique name formed of a prefix and a random number.
func (helper ScenarioHelper) GetName() string {
 return fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", helper.Prefix, helper.Random.Intn(rMax))
}

// RedshiftBasicsScenario separates the steps of this scenario into individual
 functions so that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type RedshiftBasicsScenario struct {
 sdkConfig         aws.Config
 helper            IScenarioHelper
 questioner        demotools.IQuestioner
 pauser            demotools.IPausable
 filesystem        demotools.IFileSystem
 redshiftActor     *actions.RedshiftActions
 redshiftDataActor *actions.RedshiftDataActions
 secretsmanager    *SecretsManager
}

// SecretsManager is used to retrieve username and password information from a
 secure service.
type SecretsManager struct {
 SecretsManagerClient *secretsmanager.Client
}

// RedshiftBasics constructs a new Redshift Basics runner.
func RedshiftBasics(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner, pauser
 demotools.IPausable, filesystem demotools.IFileSystem, helper IScenarioHelper)
 RedshiftBasicsScenario {
 scenario := RedshiftBasicsScenario{
  sdkConfig:         sdkConfig,
  helper:            helper,
  questioner:        questioner,
  pauser:            pauser,
  filesystem:        filesystem,
  secretsmanager:    &SecretsManager{SecretsManagerClient:
 secretsmanager.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  redshiftActor:     &actions.RedshiftActions{RedshiftClient:
 redshift.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
```

```
  redshiftDataActor: &actions.RedshiftDataActions{RedshiftDataClient:
 redshiftdata.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 return scenario
}


// Movie makes it easier to use Movie objects given in json format.
type Movie struct {
 ID    int    `json:"id"`
 Title string `json:"title"`
 Year  int    `json:"year"`
}


// User makes it easier to get the User data back from SecretsManager and use it
 later.
type User struct {
 Username string `json:"userName"`
 Password string `json:"userPassword"`
}

// Run runs the RedshiftBasics interactive example that shows you how to use Amazon
// Redshift and how to interact with its common endpoints.
//
// 0. Retrieve username and password information to access Redshift.
// 1. Create a cluster.
// 2. Wait for the cluster to become available.
// 3. List the available databases in the region.
// 4. Create a table named "Movies" in the "dev" database.
// 5. Populate the movies table from the "movies.json" file.
// 6. Query the movies table by year.
// 7. Modify the cluster's maintenance window.
// 8. Optionally clean up all resources created during this demo.
//
// This example creates an Amazon Redshift service client from the specified
 sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
```

```
user := User{}
secretId := "s3express/basics/secrets"
clusterId := "demo-cluster-1"
maintenanceWindow := "wed:07:30-wed:08:00"
databaseName := "dev"
tableName := "Movies"
fileName := "Movies.json"
nodeType := "ra3.xlplus"
clusterType := "single-node"

defer func() {
 if r := recover(); r != nil {
  log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
  _, isMock := runner.questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
  if isMock || runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message
(y/n)?", "y") {
   log.Println(r)
  }
  runner.cleanUpResources(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName, user.Username,
runner.questioner)
 }
}()

// Retrieve the userName and userPassword from SecretsManager
output, err := runner.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient.GetSecretValue(ctx,
&secretsmanager.GetSecretValueInput{
 SecretId: aws.String(secretId),
})
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("There was a problem getting the secret value: %s", err)
 log.Printf("Please make sure to create a secret named 's3express/basics/secrets'
with keys of 'userName' and 'userPassword'.")
 panic(err)
}

err = json.Unmarshal([]byte(*output.SecretString), &user)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("There was a problem parsing the secret value from JSON: %s", err)
 panic(err)
}

// Create the Redshift cluster
_, err = runner.redshiftActor.CreateCluster(ctx, clusterId, user.Username,
user.Password, nodeType, clusterType, true)
```

```
if err != nil {
 var clusterAlreadyExistsFault *redshift_types.ClusterAlreadyExistsFault
 if errors.As(err, &clusterAlreadyExistsFault) {
  log.Println("Cluster already exists. Continuing.")
 } else {
  log.Println("Error creating cluster.")
  panic(err)
 }
}

// Wait for the cluster to become available
waiter := redshift.NewClusterAvailableWaiter(runner.redshiftActor.RedshiftClient)
err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
 ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
}, 5*time.Minute)
if err != nil {
 log.Println("An error occurred waiting for the cluster.")
 panic(err)
}

// Get some info about the cluster
describeOutput, err := runner.redshiftActor.DescribeClusters(ctx, clusterId)
if err != nil {
 log.Println("Something went wrong trying to get information about the cluster.")
 panic(err)
}
log.Println("Here's some information about the cluster.")
log.Printf("The cluster's status is %s", *describeOutput.Clusters[0].ClusterStatus)
log.Printf("The cluster was created at %s",
*describeOutput.Clusters[0].ClusterCreateTime)

// List databases
log.Println("List databases in", clusterId)
runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to continue...")
err = runner.redshiftDataActor.ListDatabases(ctx, clusterId, databaseName,
user.Username)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Failed to list databases: %v\n", err)
 panic(err)
}

// Create the "Movies" table
log.Println("Now you will create a table named " + tableName + ".")
runner.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to continue...")
```

```
err = nil
result, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.CreateTable(ctx, clusterId, databaseName,
tableName, user.Username, runner.pauser, []string{"title VARCHAR(256)", "year
INT"})
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Failed to create table: %v\n", err)
 panic(err)
}

describeInput := redshiftdata.DescribeStatementInput{
 Id: result.Id,
}
query := actions.RedshiftQuery{
 Context: ctx,
 Input:   describeInput,
 Result:  result,
}
err = runner.redshiftDataActor.WaitForQueryStatus(query, runner.pauser, true)
if err != nil {
 log.Printf("Failed to execute query: %v\n", err)
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Successfully executed query\n")

// Populate the "Movies" table
runner.PopulateMoviesTable(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName, user.Username,
fileName)

// Query the "Movies" table by year
log.Println("Query the Movies table by year.")
year := runner.questioner.AskInt(
 fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", 2012, 2014),
 demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 2012, Upper: 2014})
runner.QueryMoviesByYear(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName, user.Username,
year)

// Modify the cluster's maintenance window
runner.redshiftActor.ModifyCluster(ctx, clusterId, maintenanceWindow)

// Delete the Redshift cluster if confirmed
runner.cleanUpResources(ctx, clusterId, databaseName, tableName, user.Username,
runner.questioner)

log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
```

```
}

// cleanUpResources asks the user if they would like to delete each resource created
 during the scenario, from most
// impactful to least impactful. If any choice to delete is made, further deletion
 attempts are skipped.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) cleanUpResources(ctx context.Context,
 clusterId string, databaseName string, tableName string, userName string,
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner) {
 deleted := false
 var err error = nil
 if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete the entire cluster? This will clean up
 all resources. (y/n)", "y") {
  deleted, err = runner.redshiftActor.DeleteCluster(ctx, clusterId)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Error deleting cluster: %v", err)
  }
 }
 if !deleted && questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete the dev table? This will
 clean up all inserted records but keep your cluster intact. (y/n)", "y") {
  deleted, err = runner.redshiftDataActor.DeleteTable(ctx, clusterId, databaseName,
 tableName, userName)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Error deleting movies table: %v", err)
  }
 }
 if !deleted && questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete all rows in the Movies
 table? This will clean up all inserted records but keep your cluster and table
 intact. (y/n)", "y") {
  deleted, err = runner.redshiftDataActor.DeleteDataRows(ctx, clusterId,
 databaseName, tableName, userName, runner.pauser)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Error deleting data rows: %v", err)
  }
 }
 if !deleted {
  log.Print("Please manually delete any unwanted resources.")
 }
}


// loadMoviesFromJSON takes the <fileName> file and populates a slice of Movie
 objects.
```

```
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) loadMoviesFromJSON(fileName string, filesystem
 demotools.IFileSystem) ([]Movie, error) {
 file, err := filesystem.OpenFile("../../resources/sample_files/" + fileName)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 defer filesystem.CloseFile(file)

 var movies []Movie
 err = json.NewDecoder(file).Decode(&movies)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }

 return movies, nil
}



// PopulateMoviesTable reads data from the <fileName> file and inserts records into
 the "Movies" table.
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) PopulateMoviesTable(ctx context.Context,
 clusterId string, databaseName string, tableName string, userName string, fileName
 string) {
 log.Println("Populate the " + tableName + " table using the " + fileName + "
 file.")
 numRecords := runner.questioner.AskInt(
  fmt.Sprintf("Enter a value between %v and %v:", 10, 100),
  demotools.InIntRange{Lower: 10, Upper: 100})

 movies, err := runner.loadMoviesFromJSON(fileName, runner.filesystem)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to load movies from JSON: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 var sqlStatements []string

 for i, movie := range movies {
  if i >= numRecords {
   break
  }

  sqlStatement := fmt.Sprintf(`INSERT INTO %s (title, year) VALUES ('%s', %d);`,
```

```
    tableName,
    strings.Replace(movie.Title, "'", "''", -1), // Double any single quotes to
  escape them
    movie.Year)

   sqlStatements = append(sqlStatements, sqlStatement)
  }

  input := &redshiftdata.BatchExecuteStatementInput{
   ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
   Database:          aws.String(databaseName),
   DbUser:            aws.String(userName),
   Sqls:              sqlStatements,
  }

  result, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.ExecuteBatchStatement(ctx, *input)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed to execute batch statement: %v\n", err)
   panic(err)
  }

  describeInput := redshiftdata.DescribeStatementInput{
   Id: result.Id,
  }

  query := actions.RedshiftQuery{
   Context: ctx,
   Result:  result,
   Input:   describeInput,
  }
  err = runner.redshiftDataActor.WaitForQueryStatus(query, runner.pauser, true)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed to execute batch insert query: %v\n", err)
   return
  }
  log.Printf("Successfully executed batch statement\n")

  log.Printf("%d records were added to the Movies table.\n", numRecords)
 }



 // QueryMoviesByYear retrieves only movies from the "Movies" table which match the
  given year.
```

```
func (runner *RedshiftBasicsScenario) QueryMoviesByYear(ctx context.Context,
 clusterId string, databaseName string, tableName string, userName string, year int)
 {

 sqlStatement := fmt.Sprintf(`SELECT title FROM %s WHERE year = %d;`, tableName,
 year)

 input := &redshiftdata.ExecuteStatementInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
  Database:          aws.String(databaseName),
  DbUser:            aws.String(userName),
  Sql:               aws.String(sqlStatement),
 }

 result, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.ExecuteStatement(ctx, *input)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to query movies: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 log.Println("The identifier of the statement is ", *result.Id)

 describeInput := redshiftdata.DescribeStatementInput{
  Id: result.Id,
 }

 query := actions.RedshiftQuery{
  Context: ctx,
  Input:   describeInput,
  Result:  result,
 }
 err = runner.redshiftDataActor.WaitForQueryStatus(query, runner.pauser, true)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to execute query: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Successfully executed query\n")

 getResultOutput, err := runner.redshiftDataActor.GetStatementResult(ctx,
 *result.Id)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to query movies: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
 for _, row := range getResultOutput.Records {
  for _, col := range row {
   title, ok := col.(*redshiftdata_types.FieldMemberStringValue)
   if !ok {
    log.Println("Failed to parse the field")
   } else {
    log.Printf("The Movie title field is %s\n", title.Value)
   }
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateCluster
  - DescribeClusters
  - DescribeStatement
  - ExecuteStatement
  - GetStatementResult
  - ListDatabasesPaginator
  - ModifyCluster

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// CreateCluster sends a request to create a cluster with the given clusterId using
 the provided credentials.
func (actor RedshiftActions) CreateCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterId string,
 userName string, userPassword string, nodeType string, clusterType string,
 publiclyAccessible bool) (*redshift.CreateClusterOutput, error) {
 // Create a new Redshift cluster
 input := &redshift.CreateClusterInput{
  ClusterIdentifier:  aws.String(clusterId),
  MasterUserPassword: aws.String(userPassword),
  MasterUsername:     aws.String(userName),
  NodeType:           aws.String(nodeType),
  ClusterType:        aws.String(clusterType),
  PubliclyAccessible: aws.Bool(publiclyAccessible),
 }
 var opErr *types.ClusterAlreadyExistsFault
 output, err := actor.RedshiftClient.CreateCluster(ctx, input)
 if err != nil && errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  log.Println("Cluster already exists")
  return nil, nil
 } else if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to create Redshift cluster: %v\n", err)
  return nil, err
 }
```

```
 log.Printf("Created cluster %s\n", *output.Cluster.ClusterIdentifier)
 return output, nil
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}
```

```
// DeleteCluster deletes the given cluster.
func (actor RedshiftActions) DeleteCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterId string)
 (bool, error) {
 input := redshift.DeleteClusterInput{
  ClusterIdentifier:        aws.String(clusterId),
  SkipFinalClusterSnapshot: aws.Bool(true),
 }
 _, err := actor.RedshiftClient.DeleteCluster(ctx, &input)
 var opErr *types.ClusterNotFoundFault
 if err != nil && errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  log.Println("Cluster was not found. Where could it be?")
  return false, err
 } else if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to delete Redshift cluster: %v\n", err)
  return false, err
 }
 waiter := redshift.NewClusterDeletedWaiter(actor.RedshiftClient)
 err = waiter.Wait(ctx, &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
 }, 5*time.Minute)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Wait time exceeded for deleting cluster, continuing: %v\n", err)
 }
 log.Printf("The cluster %s was deleted\n", clusterId)
 return true, nil
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// DescribeClusters returns information about the given cluster.
func (actor RedshiftActions) DescribeClusters(ctx context.Context, clusterId string)
 (*redshift.DescribeClustersOutput, error) {
 input, err := actor.RedshiftClient.DescribeClusters(ctx,
 &redshift.DescribeClustersInput{
  ClusterIdentifier: aws.String(clusterId),
 })
 var opErr *types.AccessToClusterDeniedFault
 if errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  println("Access to cluster denied.")
  panic(err)
 } else if err != nil {
  println("Failed to describe Redshift clusters.")
  return nil, err
 }
 return input, nil
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

ModifyCluster

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyCluster`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/redshift/types"
)



// RedshiftActions wraps Redshift service actions.
type RedshiftActions struct {
 RedshiftClient *redshift.Client
}



// ModifyCluster sets the preferred maintenance window for the given cluster.
func (actor RedshiftActions) ModifyCluster(ctx context.Context, clusterId string,
 maintenanceWindow string) *redshift.ModifyClusterOutput {
 // Modify the cluster's maintenance window
 input := &redshift.ModifyClusterInput{
  ClusterIdentifier:          aws.String(clusterId),
  PreferredMaintenanceWindow: aws.String(maintenanceWindow),
 }

 var opErr *types.InvalidClusterStateFault
```

```
 output, err := actor.RedshiftClient.ModifyCluster(ctx, input)
 if err != nil && errors.As(err, &opErr) {
  log.Println("Cluster is in an invalid state.")
  panic(err)
 } else if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Failed to modify Redshift cluster: %v\n", err)
  panic(err)
 }

 log.Printf("The cluster was successfully modified and now has %s as the maintenance
 window\n", *output.Cluster.PreferredMaintenanceWindow)
 return output
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Storage Service
// (Amazon S3) client and list up to 10 buckets in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 count := 10
 fmt.Printf("Let's list up to %v buckets for your account.\n", count)
 result, err := s3Client.ListBuckets(ctx, &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 if err != nil {
  var ae smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &ae) && ae.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
   fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
```

```
  } else {
   fmt.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  }
  return
 }
 if len(result.Buckets) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any buckets!")
 } else {
  if count > len(result.Buckets) {
   count = len(result.Buckets)
  }
  for _, bucket := range result.Buckets[:count] {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *bucket.Name)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a struct that wraps bucket and object actions used by the scenario.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// ListBuckets lists the buckets in the current account.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListBuckets(ctx context.Context) ([]types.Bucket, error)
 {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListBucketsOutput
```

```
 var buckets []types.Bucket
 bucketPaginator := s3.NewListBucketsPaginator(basics.S3Client,
 &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 for bucketPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = bucketPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
    fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
    err = apiErr
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
   break
  } else {
   buckets = append(buckets, output.Buckets...)
  }
 }
 return buckets, err
}



// BucketExists checks whether a bucket exists in the current account.
func (basics BucketBasics) BucketExists(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 (bool, error) {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.HeadBucket(ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 })
 exists := true
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NotFound:
    log.Printf("Bucket %v is available.\n", bucketName)
    exists = false
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Either you don't have access to bucket %v or another error occurred.
 "+
     "Here's what happened: %v\n", bucketName, err)
   }
  }
```

```
 } else {
  log.Printf("Bucket %v exists and you already own it.", bucketName)
 }

 return exists, err
}



// CreateBucket creates a bucket with the specified name in the specified Region.
func (basics BucketBasics) CreateBucket(ctx context.Context, name string, region
 string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(name),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", name)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", name)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(name)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", name)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// UploadFile reads from a file and puts the data into an object in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 file, err := os.Open(fileName)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't open file %v to upload. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
 } else {
  defer file.Close()
  _, err = basics.S3Client.PutObject(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
   Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
   Body:   file,
  })
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
    log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
     "To upload objects larger than 5GB, use the S3 console (160GB max)\n"+
     "or the multipart upload API (5TB max).", bucketName)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't upload file %v to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
     fileName, bucketName, objectKey, err)
   }
  } else {
   err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
   }
  }
 }
 return err
}



// UploadLargeObject uses an upload manager to upload data to an object in a bucket.
// The upload manager breaks large data into parts and uploads the parts
 concurrently.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, largeObject []byte) error {
 largeBuffer := bytes.NewReader(largeObject)
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 uploader := manager.NewUploader(basics.S3Client, func(u *manager.Uploader) {
  u.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 _, err := uploader.Upload(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
```

```
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
  Body:   largeBuffer,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiErr smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
   log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
    "The maximum size for a multipart upload is 5TB.", bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't upload large object to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
    bucketName, objectKey, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }

 return err
}



// DownloadFile gets an object from a bucket and stores it in a local file.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 result, err := basics.S3Client.GetObject(ctx, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Can't get object %s from bucket %s. No such key exists.\n",
 objectKey, bucketName)
   err = noKey
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get object %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName, objectKey,
 err)
  }
```

```
  return err
 }
 defer result.Body.Close()
 file, err := os.Create(fileName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create file %v. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
  return err
 }
 defer file.Close()
 body, err := io.ReadAll(result.Body)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't read object body from %v. Here's why: %v\n", objectKey, err)
 }
 _, err = file.Write(body)
 return err
}



// DownloadLargeObject uses a download manager to download an object from a bucket.
// The download manager gets the data in parts and writes them to a buffer until all
 of
// the data has been downloaded.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string) ([]byte, error) {
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 downloader := manager.NewDownloader(basics.S3Client, func(d *manager.Downloader) {
  d.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 buffer := manager.NewWriteAtBuffer([]byte{})
 _, err := downloader.Download(ctx, buffer, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't download large object from %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return buffer.Bytes(), err
}



// CopyToFolder copies an object in a bucket to a subfolder in the same bucket.
```

```
func (basics BucketBasics) CopyToFolder(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, folderName string) error {
 objectDest := fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", folderName, objectKey)
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CopyObject(ctx, &s3.CopyObjectInput{
  Bucket:     aws.String(bucketName),
  CopySource: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", bucketName, objectKey)),
  Key:        aws.String(objectDest),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var notActive *types.ObjectNotInActiveTierError
  if errors.As(err, &notActive) {
   log.Printf("Couldn't copy object %s from %s because the object isn't in the
 active tier.\n",
    objectKey, bucketName)
   err = notActive
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectDest)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectDest)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// CopyToBucket copies an object in a bucket to another bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) CopyToBucket(ctx context.Context, sourceBucket string,
 destinationBucket string, objectKey string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CopyObject(ctx, &s3.CopyObjectInput{
  Bucket:     aws.String(destinationBucket),
  CopySource: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", sourceBucket, objectKey)),
  Key:        aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var notActive *types.ObjectNotInActiveTierError
  if errors.As(err, &notActive) {
   log.Printf("Couldn't copy object %s from %s because the object isn't in the
 active tier.\n",
    objectKey, sourceBucket)
   err = notActive
```

```
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(destinationBucket), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }
 return err
}



// ListObjects lists the objects in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListObjects(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 ([]types.Object, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectsV2Output
 input := &s3.ListObjectsV2Input{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 }
 var objects []types.Object
 objectPaginator := s3.NewListObjectsV2Paginator(basics.S3Client, input)
 for objectPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = objectPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
   objects = append(objects, output.Contents...)
  }
 }
 return objects, err
}



// DeleteObjects deletes a list of objects from a bucket.
```

```
func (basics BucketBasics) DeleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKeys []string) error {
 var objectIds []types.ObjectIdentifier
 for _, key := range objectKeys {
  objectIds = append(objectIds, types.ObjectIdentifier{Key: aws.String(key)})
 }
 output, err := basics.S3Client.DeleteObjects(ctx, &s3.DeleteObjectsInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Delete: &types.Delete{Objects: objectIds, Quiet: aws.Bool(true)},
 })
 if err != nil || len(output.Errors) > 0 {
  log.Printf("Error deleting objects from bucket %s.\n", bucketName)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
    err = noBucket
   }
  } else if len(output.Errors) > 0 {
   for _, outErr := range output.Errors {
    log.Printf("%s: %s\n", *outErr.Key, *outErr.Message)
   }
   err = fmt.Errorf("%s", *output.Errors[0].Message)
  }
 } else {
  for _, delObjs := range output.Deleted {
   err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key: delObjs.Key},
 time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to be deleted.\n",
 *delObjs.Key)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", *delObjs.Key)
   }
  }
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteBucket deletes a bucket. The bucket must be empty or an error is returned.
```

```
func (basics BucketBasics) DeleteBucket(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.DeleteBucket(ctx, &s3.DeleteBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)})
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
   err = noBucket
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't delete bucket %v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketNotExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to be deleted.\n", bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", bucketName)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Run an interactive scenario that shows you how to work with S3 buckets and objects.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/s3/actions"
)

// RunGetStartedScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use Amazon
```

```
// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to create an S3 bucket and use it to store
 objects.
//
// 1. Create a bucket.
// 2. Upload a local file to the bucket.
// 3. Download an object to a local file.
// 4. Copy an object to a different folder in the bucket.
// 5. List objects in the bucket.
// 6. Delete all objects in the bucket.
// 7. Delete the bucket.
//
// This example creates an Amazon S3 service client from the specified sdkConfig so
 that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunGetStartedScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message (y/
n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 bucketBasics := actions.BucketBasics{S3Client: s3Client}

 count := 10
 log.Printf("Let's list up to %v buckets for your account:", count)
 buckets, err := bucketBasics.ListBuckets(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
```

```
if len(buckets) == 0 {
 log.Println("You don't have any buckets!")
} else {
 if count > len(buckets) {
  count = len(buckets)
 }
 for _, bucket := range buckets[:count] {
  log.Printf("\t%v\n", *bucket.Name)
 }
}

bucketName := questioner.Ask("Let's create a bucket. Enter a name for your
bucket:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
bucketExists, err := bucketBasics.BucketExists(ctx, bucketName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
if !bucketExists {
 err = bucketBasics.CreateBucket(ctx, bucketName, sdkConfig.Region)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Println("Bucket created.")
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

fmt.Println("Let's upload a file to your bucket.")
smallFile := questioner.Ask("Enter the path to a file you want to upload:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
const smallKey = "doc-example-key"
err = bucketBasics.UploadFile(ctx, bucketName, smallKey, smallFile)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Uploaded %v as %v.\n", smallFile, smallKey)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's download %v to a file.", smallKey)
downloadFileName := questioner.Ask("Enter a name for the downloaded file:",
demotools.NotEmpty{})
err = bucketBasics.DownloadFile(ctx, bucketName, smallKey, downloadFileName)
if err != nil {
```

```
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("File %v downloaded.", downloadFileName)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's copy %v to a folder in the same bucket.", smallKey)
folderName := questioner.Ask("Enter a folder name: ", demotools.NotEmpty{})
err = bucketBasics.CopyToFolder(ctx, bucketName, smallKey, folderName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Copied %v to %v/%v.\n", smallKey, folderName, smallKey)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Let's list the objects in your bucket.")
questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
objects, err := bucketBasics.ListObjects(ctx, bucketName)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Found %v objects.\n", len(objects))
var objKeys []string
for _, object := range objects {
 objKeys = append(objKeys, *object.Key)
 log.Printf("\t%v\n", *object.Key)
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete your bucket and all of its "+
 "contents? (y/n)", "y") {
 log.Println("Deleting objects.")
 err = bucketBasics.DeleteObjects(ctx, bucketName, objKeys)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Deleting bucket.")
 err = bucketBasics.DeleteBucket(ctx, bucketName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Deleting downloaded file %v.\n", downloadFileName)
 err = os.Remove(downloadFileName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
```

```
  }
 } else {
  log.Println("Okay. Don't forget to delete objects from your bucket to avoid
 charges.")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
```

```
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// CopyToBucket copies an object in a bucket to another bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) CopyToBucket(ctx context.Context, sourceBucket string,
 destinationBucket string, objectKey string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CopyObject(ctx, &s3.CopyObjectInput{
  Bucket:     aws.String(destinationBucket),
  CopySource: aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v/%v", sourceBucket, objectKey)),
  Key:        aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var notActive *types.ObjectNotInActiveTierError
  if errors.As(err, &notActive) {
   log.Printf("Couldn't copy object %s from %s because the object isn't in the
 active tier.\n",
    objectKey, sourceBucket)
   err = notActive
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
```

```
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(destinationBucket), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket with default configuration.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// CreateBucket creates a bucket with the specified name in the specified Region.
func (basics BucketBasics) CreateBucket(ctx context.Context, name string, region
 string) error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(name),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 })
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", name)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", name)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(name)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", name)
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Create a bucket with object locking and wait for it to exist.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// CreateBucketWithLock creates a new S3 bucket with optional object locking enabled
// and waits for the bucket to exist before returning.
func (actor S3Actions) CreateBucketWithLock(ctx context.Context, bucket string,
 region string, enableObjectLock bool) (string, error) {
 input := &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 }

 if enableObjectLock {
  input.ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = aws.Bool(true)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
```

```
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", bucket)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", bucket)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", bucket)
  }
 }

 return bucket, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
```

```
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// DeleteBucket deletes a bucket. The bucket must be empty or an error is returned.
func (basics BucketBasics) DeleteBucket(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 error {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.DeleteBucket(ctx, &s3.DeleteBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)})
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
   err = noBucket
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't delete bucket %v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketNotExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to be deleted.\n", bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", bucketName)
  }
 }
 return err
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// DeleteObject deletes an object from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key string,
 versionId string, bypassGovernance bool) (bool, error) {
 deleted := false
 input := &s3.DeleteObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObject(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "AccessDenied":
    log.Printf("Access denied: cannot delete object %s from %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidArgument":
    if bypassGovernance {
     log.Printf("You cannot specify bypass governance on a bucket without lock
 enabled.")
     err = nil
    }
   }
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: aws.String(key)},
 time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s in bucket %s to be deleted.\n",
 key, bucket)
  } else {
   deleted = true
  }
```

```
 }
 return deleted, err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// DeleteObjects deletes a list of objects from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucket string, objects
 []types.ObjectIdentifier, bypassGovernance bool) error {
 if len(objects) == 0 {
  return nil
 }

 input := s3.DeleteObjectsInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Delete: &types.Delete{
   Objects: objects,
   Quiet:   aws.Bool(true),
  },
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 delOut, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObjects(ctx, &input)
 if err != nil || len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
  log.Printf("Error deleting objects from bucket %s.\n", bucket)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
  } else if len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
   for _, outErr := range delOut.Errors {
    log.Printf("%s: %s\n", *outErr.Key, *outErr.Message)
   }
   err = fmt.Errorf("%s", *delOut.Errors[0].Message)
  }
 } else {
  for _, delObjs := range delOut.Deleted {
   err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: delObjs.Key},
 time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to be deleted.\n",
 *delObjs.Key)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", *delObjs.Key)
```

```
    }
   }
  }
  return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
```

```
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// DownloadFile gets an object from a bucket and stores it in a local file.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 result, err := basics.S3Client.GetObject(ctx, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Can't get object %s from bucket %s. No such key exists.\n",
 objectKey, bucketName)
   err = noKey
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get object %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n", bucketName, objectKey,
 err)
  }
  return err
 }
 defer result.Body.Close()
 file, err := os.Create(fileName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create file %v. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
  return err
 }
 defer file.Close()
 body, err := io.ReadAll(result.Body)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't read object body from %v. Here's why: %v\n", objectKey, err)
 }
 _, err = file.Write(body)
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// GetObjectLegalHold retrieves the legal hold status for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string) (*types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus, error) {
 var status *types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus
```

```
 input := &s3.GetObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket:    aws.String(bucket),
  Key:       aws.String(key),
  VersionId: aws.String(versionId),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noSuchKeyErr *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noSuchKeyErr) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noSuchKeyErr
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
    log.Printf("Object %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", key)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidRequest":
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
    err = nil
   }
  }
 } else {
  status = &output.LegalHold.Status
 }

 return status, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// GetObjectLockConfiguration retrieves the object lock configuration for an S3
 bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx context.Context, bucket
 string) (*types.ObjectLockConfiguration, error) {
 var lockConfig *types.ObjectLockConfiguration
 input := &s3.GetObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() ==
 "ObjectLockConfigurationNotFoundError" {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
   err = nil
  }
 } else {
  lockConfig = output.ObjectLockConfiguration
 }

 return lockConfig, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectRetention`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// GetObjectRetention retrieves the object retention configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string) (*types.ObjectLockRetention, error) {
 var retention *types.ObjectLockRetention
 input := &s3.GetObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
    err = nil
   case "InvalidRequest":
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have locking enabled.", bucket)
    err = nil
   }
  }
 } else {
  retention = output.Retention
 }
```

```
 return retention, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`HeadBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadBucket`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
```

```
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// BucketExists checks whether a bucket exists in the current account.
func (basics BucketBasics) BucketExists(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 (bool, error) {
 _, err := basics.S3Client.HeadBucket(ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 })
 exists := true
 if err != nil {
  var apiError smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiError) {
   switch apiError.(type) {
   case *types.NotFound:
    log.Printf("Bucket %v is available.\n", bucketName)
    exists = false
    err = nil
   default:
    log.Printf("Either you don't have access to bucket %v or another error occurred.
 "+
     "Here's what happened: %v\n", bucketName, err)
   }
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("Bucket %v exists and you already own it.", bucketName)
 }

 return exists, err
}
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// ListBuckets lists the buckets in the current account.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListBuckets(ctx context.Context) ([]types.Bucket, error)
 {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListBucketsOutput
 var buckets []types.Bucket
```

```
 bucketPaginator := s3.NewListBucketsPaginator(basics.S3Client,
 &s3.ListBucketsInput{})
 for bucketPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = bucketPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var apiErr smithy.APIError
   if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "AccessDenied" {
    fmt.Println("You don't have permission to list buckets for this account.")
    err = apiErr
   } else {
    log.Printf("Couldn't list buckets for your account. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   }
   break
  } else {
   buckets = append(buckets, output.Buckets...)
  }
 }
 return buckets, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListObjectVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectVersions`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
```

```
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// ListObjectVersions lists all versions of all objects in a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ListObjectVersions(ctx context.Context, bucket string)
 ([]types.ObjectVersion, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectVersionsOutput
 var versions []types.ObjectVersion
 input := &s3.ListObjectVersionsInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}
 versionPaginator := s3.NewListObjectVersionsPaginator(actor.S3Client, input)
 for versionPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = versionPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
   versions = append(versions, output.Versions...)
  }
 }
 return versions, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}
```

```
// ListObjects lists the objects in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) ListObjects(ctx context.Context, bucketName string)
 ([]types.Object, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectsV2Output
 input := &s3.ListObjectsV2Input{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
 }
 var objects []types.Object
 objectPaginator := s3.NewListObjectsV2Paginator(basics.S3Client, input)
 for objectPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = objectPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucketName)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
   objects = append(objects, output.Contents...)
  }
 }
 return objects, err
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object in a bucket by using the low-level API.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// UploadFile reads from a file and puts the data into an object in a bucket.
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadFile(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, fileName string) error {
 file, err := os.Open(fileName)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't open file %v to upload. Here's why: %v\n", fileName, err)
 } else {
  defer file.Close()
  _, err = basics.S3Client.PutObject(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
   Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
   Body:   file,
  })
  if err != nil {
```

```
    var apiErr smithy.APIError
    if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
     log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
      "To upload objects larger than 5GB, use the S3 console (160GB max)\n"+
      "or the multipart upload API (5TB max).", bucketName)
    } else {
     log.Printf("Couldn't upload file %v to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
      fileName, bucketName, objectKey, err)
    }
   } else {
    err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
     ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
    if err != nil {
     log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
    }
   }
  }
  return err
}
```

Upload an object to a bucket by using a transfer manager.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
```

```
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// UploadObject uses the S3 upload manager to upload an object to a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) UploadObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key string,
 contents string) (string, error) {
 var outKey string
 input := &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket:            aws.String(bucket),
  Key:               aws.String(key),
  Body:              bytes.NewReader([]byte(contents)),
  ChecksumAlgorithm: types.ChecksumAlgorithmSha256,
 }
 output, err := actor.S3Manager.Upload(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 } else {
  err := s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
   Key:    aws.String(key),
  }, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist in %s.\n", key, bucket)
  } else {
   outKey = *output.Key
  }
 }
 return outKey, err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

PutObjectLegalHold

The following code example shows how to use PutObjectLegalHold.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// PutObjectLegalHold sets the legal hold configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string, legalHoldStatus types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus) error {
 input := &s3.PutObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  LegalHold: &types.ObjectLockLegalHold{
```

```
    Status: legalHoldStatus,
   },
  }
  if versionId != "" {
   input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
  }

  _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
  if err != nil {
   var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
   if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
    log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = noKey
   }
  }

  return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`PutObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
```

```
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// EnableObjectLockOnBucket enables object locking on an existing bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) EnableObjectLockOnBucket(ctx context.Context, bucket string)
 error {
 // Versioning must be enabled on the bucket before object locking is enabled.
 verInput := &s3.PutBucketVersioningInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  VersioningConfiguration: &types.VersioningConfiguration{
   MFADelete: types.MFADeleteDisabled,
   Status:    types.BucketVersioningStatusEnabled,
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutBucketVersioning(ctx, verInput)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
  return err
 }

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled,
```

```
  },
 }
 _, err = actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}
```

```
// ModifyDefaultBucketRetention modifies the default retention period of an existing
 bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ModifyDefaultBucketRetention(
 ctx context.Context, bucket string, lockMode types.ObjectLockEnabled,
 retentionPeriod int32, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode) error {

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: lockMode,
   Rule: &types.ObjectLockRule{
    DefaultRetention: &types.DefaultRetention{
     Days: aws.Int32(retentionPeriod),
     Mode: retentionMode,
    },
   },
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`PutObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectRetention`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// PutObjectRetention sets the object retention configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode, retentionPeriodDays int32)
 error {
 input := &s3.PutObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  Retention: &types.ObjectLockRetention{
   Mode:            retentionMode,
   RetainUntilDate: aws.Time(time.Now().AddDate(0, 0, int(retentionPeriodDays))),
```

```
  },
  BypassGovernanceRetention: aws.Bool(true),
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  }
 }

 return err
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap S3 presigning actions.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "time"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 v4 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws/signer/v4"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
)

// Presigner encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) presign
 actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains PresignClient, a client that is used to presign requests to Amazon
 S3.
// Presigned requests contain temporary credentials and can be made from any HTTP
 client.
type Presigner struct {
 PresignClient *s3.PresignClient
}



// GetObject makes a presigned request that can be used to get an object from a
 bucket.
// The presigned request is valid for the specified number of seconds.
func (presigner Presigner) GetObject(
 ctx context.Context, bucketName string, objectKey string, lifetimeSecs int64)
 (*v4.PresignedHTTPRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignGetObject(ctx, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 }, func(opts *s3.PresignOptions) {
  opts.Expires = time.Duration(lifetimeSecs * int64(time.Second))
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned request to get %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, err
}



// PutObject makes a presigned request that can be used to put an object in a
 bucket.
// The presigned request is valid for the specified number of seconds.
func (presigner Presigner) PutObject(
```

```
 ctx context.Context, bucketName string, objectKey string, lifetimeSecs int64)
 (*v4.PresignedHTTPRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignPutObject(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 }, func(opts *s3.PresignOptions) {
  opts.Expires = time.Duration(lifetimeSecs * int64(time.Second))
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned request to put %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, err
}



// DeleteObject makes a presigned request that can be used to delete an object from
 a bucket.
func (presigner Presigner) DeleteObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string) (*v4.PresignedHTTPRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignDeleteObject(ctx,
 &s3.DeleteObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned request to delete object %v. Here's why: %v
\n", objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, err
}



func (presigner Presigner) PresignPostObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, lifetimeSecs int64) (*s3.PresignedPostRequest, error) {
 request, err := presigner.PresignClient.PresignPostObject(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 }, func(options *s3.PresignPostOptions) {
  options.Expires = time.Duration(lifetimeSecs) * time.Second
 })
 if err != nil {
```

```
  log.Printf("Couldn't get a presigned post request to put %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
 bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return request, nil
}
```

Run an interactive example that generates and uses presigned URLs to upload, download, and delete an S3 object.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "io"
 "log"
 "mime/multipart"
 "net/http"
 "os"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/s3/actions"
)



// RunPresigningScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to get
 presigned
// HTTP requests that you can use to move data into and out of Amazon Simple Storage
// Service (Amazon S3). The presigned requests contain temporary credentials and can
// be used by an HTTP client.
//
// 1. Get a presigned request to put an object in a bucket.
// 2. Use the net/http package to use the presigned request to upload a local file
 to the bucket.
// 3. Get a presigned request to get an object from a bucket.
// 4. Use the net/http package to use the presigned request to download the object
 to a local file.
```

```
// 5. Get a presigned request to delete an object from a bucket.
// 6. Use the net/http package to use the presigned request to delete the object.
//
// This example creates an Amazon S3 presign client from the specified sdkConfig so
 that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
//
// It uses an IHttpRequester interface to abstract HTTP requests so they can be
 mocked
// during testing.
func RunPresigningScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner, httpRequester IHttpRequester) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message (y/
n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 presigning demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 bucketBasics := actions.BucketBasics{S3Client: s3Client}
 presignClient := s3.NewPresignClient(s3Client)
 presigner := actions.Presigner{PresignClient: presignClient}

 bucketName := questioner.Ask("We'll need a bucket. Enter a name for a bucket "+
  "you own or one you want to create:", demotools.NotEmpty{})
 bucketExists, err := bucketBasics.BucketExists(ctx, bucketName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if !bucketExists {
  err = bucketBasics.CreateBucket(ctx, bucketName, sdkConfig.Region)
```

```
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 } else {
  log.Println("Bucket created.")
 }
}
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's presign a request to upload a file to your bucket.")
uploadFilename := questioner.Ask("Enter the path to a file you want to upload:",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
uploadKey := questioner.Ask("What would you like to name the uploaded object?",
 demotools.NotEmpty{})
uploadFile, err := os.Open(uploadFilename)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
defer uploadFile.Close()
presignedPutRequest, err := presigner.PutObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey, 60)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Got a presigned %v request to URL:\n\t%v\n",
presignedPutRequest.Method,
 presignedPutRequest.URL)
log.Println("Using net/http to send the request...")
info, err := uploadFile.Stat()
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
putResponse, err := httpRequester.Put(presignedPutRequest.URL, info.Size(),
uploadFile)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("%v object %v with presigned URL returned %v.",
presignedPutRequest.Method,
 uploadKey, putResponse.StatusCode)
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Printf("Let's presign a request to download the object.")
questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
presignedGetRequest, err := presigner.GetObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey, 60)
if err != nil {
```

```
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Got a presigned %v request to URL:\n\t%v\n",
presignedGetRequest.Method,
 presignedGetRequest.URL)
log.Println("Using net/http to send the request...")
getResponse, err := httpRequester.Get(presignedGetRequest.URL)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("%v object %v with presigned URL returned %v.",
presignedGetRequest.Method,
 uploadKey, getResponse.StatusCode)
defer getResponse.Body.Close()
downloadBody, err := io.ReadAll(getResponse.Body)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Downloaded %v bytes. Here are the first 100 of them:\n",
len(downloadBody))
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
log.Println(string(downloadBody[:100]))
log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

log.Println("Now we'll create a new request to put the same object using a
presigned post request")
questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
presignPostRequest, err := presigner.PresignPostObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey,
60)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("Got a presigned post request to url %v with values %v\n",
presignPostRequest.URL, presignPostRequest.Values)
log.Println("Using net/http multipart to send the request...")
uploadFile, err = os.Open(uploadFilename)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
defer uploadFile.Close()
multiPartResponse, err := sendMultipartRequest(presignPostRequest.URL,
presignPostRequest.Values, uploadFile, uploadKey, httpRequester)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
```

```
 }
 log.Printf("Presign post object %v with presigned URL returned %v.", uploadKey,
 multiPartResponse.StatusCode)

 log.Println("Let's presign a request to delete the object.")
 questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 presignedDelRequest, err := presigner.DeleteObject(ctx, bucketName, uploadKey)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Got a presigned %v request to URL:\n\t%v\n",
 presignedDelRequest.Method,
  presignedDelRequest.URL)
 log.Println("Using net/http to send the request...")
 delResponse, err := httpRequester.Delete(presignedDelRequest.URL)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("%v object %v with presigned URL returned %v.\n",
 presignedDelRequest.Method,
  uploadKey, delResponse.StatusCode)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define an HTTP request wrapper used by the example to make HTTP requests.

```
// IHttpRequester abstracts HTTP requests into an interface so it can be mocked
 during
// unit testing.
type IHttpRequester interface {
 Get(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error)
 Post(url, contentType string, body io.Reader) (resp *http.Response, err error)
 Put(url string, contentLength int64, body io.Reader) (resp *http.Response, err
 error)
 Delete(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error)
}
```

```
// HttpRequester uses the net/http package to make HTTP requests during the
 scenario.
type HttpRequester struct{}

func (httpReq HttpRequester) Get(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error) {
 return http.Get(url)
}
func (httpReq HttpRequester) Post(url, contentType string, body io.Reader) (resp
 *http.Response, err error) {
 postRequest, err := http.NewRequest("POST", url, body)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 postRequest.Header.Set("Content-Type", contentType)
 return http.DefaultClient.Do(postRequest)
}

func (httpReq HttpRequester) Put(url string, contentLength int64, body io.Reader)
 (resp *http.Response, err error) {
 putRequest, err := http.NewRequest("PUT", url, body)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 putRequest.ContentLength = contentLength
 return http.DefaultClient.Do(putRequest)
}
func (httpReq HttpRequester) Delete(url string) (resp *http.Response, err error) {
 delRequest, err := http.NewRequest("DELETE", url, nil)
 if err != nil {
  return nil, err
 }
 return http.DefaultClient.Do(delRequest)
}
```

Lock Amazon S3 objects

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object lock features.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "s3_object_lock/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// ObjectLockScenario contains the steps to run the S3 Object Lock workflow.
type ObjectLockScenario struct {
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 resources  Resources
 s3Actions  *actions.S3Actions
 sdkConfig  aws.Config
}

// NewObjectLockScenario constructs a new ObjectLockScenario instance.
func NewObjectLockScenario(sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner)
 ObjectLockScenario {
 scenario := ObjectLockScenario{
  questioner: questioner,
  resources:  Resources{},
  s3Actions:  &actions.S3Actions{S3Client: s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  sdkConfig:  sdkConfig,
 }
```

```
 scenario.s3Actions.S3Manager = manager.NewUploader(scenario.s3Actions.S3Client)
 scenario.resources.init(scenario.s3Actions, questioner)
 return scenario
}

type nameLocked struct {
 name   string
 locked bool
}

var createInfo = []nameLocked{
 {"standard-bucket", false},
 {"lock-bucket", true},
 {"retention-bucket", false},
}

// CreateBuckets creates the S3 buckets required for the workflow.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) CreateBuckets(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("Let's create some S3 buckets to use for this workflow.")
 success := false
 for !success {
  prefix := scenario.questioner.Ask(
   "This example creates three buckets. Enter a prefix to name your buckets
 (remember bucket names must be globally unique):")

  for _, info := range createInfo {
   log.Println(fmt.Sprintf("%s.%s", prefix, info.name))
   bucketName, err := scenario.s3Actions.CreateBucketWithLock(ctx, fmt.Sprintf("%s.
%s", prefix, info.name), scenario.sdkConfig.Region, info.locked)
   if err != nil {
    switch err.(type) {
    case *types.BucketAlreadyExists, *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou:
     log.Printf("Couldn't create bucket %s.\n", bucketName)
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
    break
   }
   scenario.resources.demoBuckets[info.name] = &DemoBucket{
    name:       bucketName,
    objectKeys: []string{},
   }
   log.Printf("Created bucket %s.\n", bucketName)
  }
```

```
  if len(scenario.resources.demoBuckets) < len(createInfo) {
   scenario.resources.deleteBuckets(ctx)
  } else {
   success = true
  }
 }

 log.Println("S3 buckets created.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// EnableLockOnBucket enables object locking on an existing bucket.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) EnableLockOnBucket(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking.")
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Press Enter to continue.")

 var err error
 bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets["retention-bucket"]
 err = scenario.s3Actions.EnableObjectLockOnBucket(ctx, bucket.name)
 if err != nil {
  switch err.(type) {
  case *types.NoSuchBucket:
   log.Printf("Couldn't enable object locking on bucket %s.\n", bucket.name)
  default:
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("Object locking enabled on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SetDefaultRetentionPolicy sets a default retention governance policy on a bucket.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) SetDefaultRetentionPolicy(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("\nA bucket can be configured to use object locking with a default
 retention period.")

 bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets["retention-bucket"]
 retentionPeriod := scenario.questioner.AskInt("Enter the default retention period
 in days: ")
```

```
 err := scenario.s3Actions.ModifyDefaultBucketRetention(ctx,
 bucket.name, types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled, int32(retentionPeriod),
 types.ObjectLockRetentionModeGovernance)
 if err != nil {
  switch err.(type) {
  case *types.NoSuchBucket:
   log.Printf("Couldn't configure a default retention period on bucket %s.\n",
 bucket.name)
  default:
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  log.Printf("Default retention policy set on bucket %s with %d day retention
 period.", bucket.name, retentionPeriod)
  bucket.retentionEnabled = true
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// UploadTestObjects uploads test objects to the S3 buckets.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) UploadTestObjects(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("Uploading test objects to S3 buckets.")

 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  for i := 0; i < 2; i++ {
   key, err := scenario.s3Actions.UploadObject(ctx, bucket.name,
 fmt.Sprintf("example-%d", i),
    fmt.Sprintf("Example object content #%d in bucket %s.", i, bucket.name))
   if err != nil {
    switch err.(type) {
    case *types.NoSuchBucket:
     log.Printf("Couldn't upload %s to bucket %s.\n", key, bucket.name)
    default:
     panic(err)
    }
   } else {
    log.Printf("Uploaded %s to bucket %s.\n", key, bucket.name)
    bucket.objectKeys = append(bucket.objectKeys, key)
   }
  }
 }
```

```
 scenario.questioner.Ask("Test objects uploaded. Press Enter to continue.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

// SetObjectLockConfigurations sets object lock configurations on the test objects.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) SetObjectLockConfigurations(ctx context.Context)
 {
 log.Println("Now let's set object lock configurations on individual objects.")

 buckets := []*DemoBucket{scenario.resources.demoBuckets["lock-bucket"],
 scenario.resources.demoBuckets["retention-bucket"]}
 for _, bucket := range buckets {
  for index, objKey := range bucket.objectKeys {
   switch index {
   case 0:
    if scenario.questioner.AskBool(fmt.Sprintf("\nDo you want to add a legal hold to
 %s in %s (y/n)? ", objKey, bucket.name), "y") {
     err := scenario.s3Actions.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, bucket.name, objKey, "",
 types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatusOn)
     if err != nil {
      switch err.(type) {
      case *types.NoSuchKey:
       log.Printf("Couldn't set legal hold on %s.\n", objKey)
      default:
       panic(err)
      }
     } else {
      log.Printf("Legal hold set on %s.\n", objKey)
     }
    }
   case 1:
    q := fmt.Sprintf("\nDo you want to add a 1 day Governance retention period to %s
 in %s?\n"+
     "Reminder: Only a user with the s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission is able
 to delete this object\n"+
     "or its bucket until the retention period has expired. (y/n) ", objKey,
 bucket.name)
    if scenario.questioner.AskBool(q, "y") {
     err := scenario.s3Actions.PutObjectRetention(ctx, bucket.name, objKey,
 types.ObjectLockRetentionModeGovernance, 1)
     if err != nil {
      switch err.(type) {
      case *types.NoSuchKey:
```

```
        log.Printf("Couldn't set retention period on %s in %s.\n", objKey,
 bucket.name)
       default:
        panic(err)
       }
      } else {
       log.Printf("Retention period set to 1 for %s.", objKey)
       bucket.retentionEnabled = true
      }
     }
    }
   }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}

const (
 ListAll = iota
 DeleteObject
 DeleteRetentionObject
 OverwriteObject
 ViewRetention
 ViewLegalHold
 Finish
)

// InteractWithObjects allows the user to interact with the objects and test the
 object lock configurations.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) InteractWithObjects(ctx context.Context) {
 log.Println("Now you can interact with the objects to explore the object lock
 configurations.")
 interactiveChoices := []string{
  "List all objects and buckets.",
  "Attempt to delete an object.",
  "Attempt to delete an object with retention period bypass.",
  "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
  "View the retention settings for an object.",
  "View the legal hold settings for an object.",
  "Finish the workflow."}

 choice := ListAll
 for choice != Finish {
  objList := scenario.GetAllObjects(ctx)
  objChoices := scenario.makeObjectChoiceList(objList)
```

```
 choice = scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Choose an action from the menu:\n",
interactiveChoices)
 switch choice {
 case ListAll:
  log.Println("The current objects in the example buckets are:")
  for _, objChoice := range objChoices {
   log.Println("\t", objChoice)
  }
 case DeleteObject, DeleteRetentionObject:
  objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
delete:\n", objChoices)
  obj := objList[objChoice]
  deleted, err := scenario.s3Actions.DeleteObject(ctx, obj.bucket, obj.key,
obj.versionId, choice == DeleteRetentionObject)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchKey:
    log.Println("Nothing to delete.")
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else if deleted {
   log.Printf("Object %s deleted.\n", obj.key)
  }
 case OverwriteObject:
  objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
overwrite:\n", objChoices)
  obj := objList[objChoice]
  _, err := scenario.s3Actions.UploadObject(ctx, obj.bucket, obj.key,
fmt.Sprintf("New content in object %s.", obj.key))
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchBucket:
    log.Println("Couldn't upload to nonexistent bucket.")
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   log.Printf("Uploaded new content to object %s.\n", obj.key)
  }
 case ViewRetention:
  objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
view:\n", objChoices)
  obj := objList[objChoice]
```

```
    retention, err := scenario.s3Actions.GetObjectRetention(ctx, obj.bucket, obj.key)
    if err != nil {
     switch err.(type) {
     case *types.NoSuchKey:
      log.Printf("Can't get retention configuration for %s.\n", obj.key)
     default:
      panic(err)
     }
    } else if retention != nil {
     log.Printf("Object %s has retention mode %s until %v.\n", obj.key,
 retention.Mode, retention.RetainUntilDate)
    } else {
     log.Printf("Object %s does not have object retention configured.\n", obj.key)
    }
   case ViewLegalHold:
    objChoice := scenario.questioner.AskChoice("Enter the number of the object to
 view:\n", objChoices)
    obj := objList[objChoice]
    legalHold, err := scenario.s3Actions.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, obj.bucket, obj.key,
 obj.versionId)
    if err != nil {
     switch err.(type) {
     case *types.NoSuchKey:
      log.Printf("Can't get legal hold configuration for %s.\n", obj.key)
     default:
      panic(err)
     }
    } else if legalHold != nil {
     log.Printf("Object %s has legal hold %v.", obj.key, *legalHold)
    } else {
     log.Printf("Object %s does not have legal hold configured.", obj.key)
    }
   case Finish:
    log.Println("Let's clean up.")
   }
   log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  }
 }

 type BucketKeyVersionId struct {
  bucket    string
  key       string
  versionId string
 }
```

```
// GetAllObjects gets the object versions in the example S3 buckets and returns them
 in a flattened list.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) GetAllObjects(ctx context.Context)
 []BucketKeyVersionId {
 var objectList []BucketKeyVersionId
 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := scenario.resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  versions, err := scenario.s3Actions.ListObjectVersions(ctx, bucket.name)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchBucket:
    log.Printf("Couldn't get object versions for %s.\n", bucket.name)
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  } else {
   for _, version := range versions {
    objectList = append(objectList,
     BucketKeyVersionId{bucket: bucket.name, key: *version.Key, versionId:
 *version.VersionId})
   }
  }
 }
 return objectList
}

// makeObjectChoiceList makes the object version list into a list of strings that
 are displayed
// as choices.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) makeObjectChoiceList(bucketObjects
 []BucketKeyVersionId) []string {
 choices := make([]string, len(bucketObjects))
 for i := 0; i < len(bucketObjects); i++ {
  choices[i] = fmt.Sprintf("%s in %s with VersionId %s.",
   bucketObjects[i].key, bucketObjects[i].bucket, bucketObjects[i].versionId)
 }
 return choices
}

// Run runs the S3 Object Lock scenario.
func (scenario *ObjectLockScenario) Run(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
```

```
    log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
    _, isMock := scenario.questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
    if isMock || scenario.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error
 message (y/n)?", "y") {
     log.Println(r)
    }
    scenario.resources.Cleanup(ctx)
   }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Object Lock Feature Scenario.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 scenario.CreateBuckets(ctx)
 scenario.EnableLockOnBucket(ctx)
 scenario.SetDefaultRetentionPolicy(ctx)
 scenario.UploadTestObjects(ctx)
 scenario.SetObjectLockConfigurations(ctx)
 scenario.InteractWithObjects(ctx)

 scenario.resources.Cleanup(ctx)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a struct that wraps S3 actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// S3Actions wraps S3 service actions.
type S3Actions struct {
 S3Client  *s3.Client
 S3Manager *manager.Uploader
}



// CreateBucketWithLock creates a new S3 bucket with optional object locking enabled
// and waits for the bucket to exist before returning.
func (actor S3Actions) CreateBucketWithLock(ctx context.Context, bucket string,
 region string, enableObjectLock bool) (string, error) {
 input := &s3.CreateBucketInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  CreateBucketConfiguration: &types.CreateBucketConfiguration{
   LocationConstraint: types.BucketLocationConstraint(region),
  },
 }

 if enableObjectLock {
  input.ObjectLockEnabledForBucket = aws.Bool(true)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.CreateBucket(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var owned *types.BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
  var exists *types.BucketAlreadyExists
  if errors.As(err, &owned) {
   log.Printf("You already own bucket %s.\n", bucket)
   err = owned
  } else if errors.As(err, &exists) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s already exists.\n", bucket)
   err = exists
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewBucketExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to exist.\n", bucket)
```

```
  }
 }

 return bucket, err
}



// GetObjectLegalHold retrieves the legal hold status for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string) (*types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus, error) {
 var status *types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus
 input := &s3.GetObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket:    aws.String(bucket),
  Key:       aws.String(key),
  VersionId: aws.String(versionId),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noSuchKeyErr *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noSuchKeyErr) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noSuchKeyErr
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
    log.Printf("Object %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", key)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidRequest":
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
    err = nil
   }
  }
 } else {
  status = &output.LegalHold.Status
 }

 return status, err
}
```

```
// GetObjectLockConfiguration retrieves the object lock configuration for an S3
 bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx context.Context, bucket
 string) (*types.ObjectLockConfiguration, error) {
 var lockConfig *types.ObjectLockConfiguration
 input := &s3.GetObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() ==
 "ObjectLockConfigurationNotFoundError" {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have an object lock configuration.\n", bucket)
   err = nil
  }
 } else {
  lockConfig = output.ObjectLockConfiguration
 }

 return lockConfig, err
}



// GetObjectRetention retrieves the object retention configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) GetObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string) (*types.ObjectLockRetention, error) {
 var retention *types.ObjectLockRetention
 input := &s3.GetObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }

 output, err := actor.S3Client.GetObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
```

```
    log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = noKey
   } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
    switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
    case "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration":
     err = nil
    case "InvalidRequest":
     log.Printf("Bucket %s does not have locking enabled.", bucket)
     err = nil
    }
   }
  } else {
   retention = output.Retention
  }

  return retention, err
}



// PutObjectLegalHold sets the legal hold configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectLegalHold(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, versionId string, legalHoldStatus types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus) error {
 input := &s3.PutObjectLegalHoldInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  LegalHold: &types.ObjectLockLegalHold{
   Status: legalHoldStatus,
  },
 }
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  }
 }

 return err
```

```
}



// ModifyDefaultBucketRetention modifies the default retention period of an existing
 bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ModifyDefaultBucketRetention(
 ctx context.Context, bucket string, lockMode types.ObjectLockEnabled,
 retentionPeriod int32, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode) error {

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: lockMode,
   Rule: &types.ObjectLockRule{
    DefaultRetention: &types.DefaultRetention{
     Days: aws.Int32(retentionPeriod),
     Mode: retentionMode,
    },
   },
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}



// EnableObjectLockOnBucket enables object locking on an existing bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) EnableObjectLockOnBucket(ctx context.Context, bucket string)
 error {
 // Versioning must be enabled on the bucket before object locking is enabled.
 verInput := &s3.PutBucketVersioningInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  VersioningConfiguration: &types.VersioningConfiguration{
   MFADelete: types.MFADeleteDisabled,
```

```
   Status:    types.BucketVersioningStatusEnabled,
  },
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutBucketVersioning(ctx, verInput)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
  return err
 }

 input := &s3.PutObjectLockConfigurationInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  ObjectLockConfiguration: &types.ObjectLockConfiguration{
   ObjectLockEnabled: types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled,
  },
 }
 _, err = actor.S3Client.PutObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 }

 return err
}



// PutObjectRetention sets the object retention configuration for an S3 object.
func (actor S3Actions) PutObjectRetention(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key
 string, retentionMode types.ObjectLockRetentionMode, retentionPeriodDays int32)
 error {
 input := &s3.PutObjectRetentionInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
  Retention: &types.ObjectLockRetention{
   Mode:            retentionMode,
   RetainUntilDate: aws.Time(time.Now().AddDate(0, 0, int(retentionPeriodDays))),
  },
```

```
  BypassGovernanceRetention: aws.Bool(true),
 }

 _, err := actor.S3Client.PutObjectRetention(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in bucket %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  }
 }

 return err
}



// UploadObject uses the S3 upload manager to upload an object to a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) UploadObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key string,
 contents string) (string, error) {
 var outKey string
 input := &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket:            aws.String(bucket),
  Key:               aws.String(key),
  Body:              bytes.NewReader([]byte(contents)),
  ChecksumAlgorithm: types.ChecksumAlgorithmSha256,
 }
 output, err := actor.S3Manager.Upload(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
  if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
   log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
   err = noBucket
  }
 } else {
  err := s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
   Key:    aws.String(key),
  }, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist in %s.\n", key, bucket)
  } else {
   outKey = *output.Key
  }
```

```
 }
 return outKey, err
}



// ListObjectVersions lists all versions of all objects in a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) ListObjectVersions(ctx context.Context, bucket string)
 ([]types.ObjectVersion, error) {
 var err error
 var output *s3.ListObjectVersionsOutput
 var versions []types.ObjectVersion
 input := &s3.ListObjectVersionsInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket)}
 versionPaginator := s3.NewListObjectVersionsPaginator(actor.S3Client, input)
 for versionPaginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err = versionPaginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
   break
  } else {
   versions = append(versions, output.Versions...)
  }
 }
 return versions, err
}



// DeleteObject deletes an object from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObject(ctx context.Context, bucket string, key string,
 versionId string, bypassGovernance bool) (bool, error) {
 deleted := false
 input := &s3.DeleteObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Key:    aws.String(key),
 }
 if versionId != "" {
  input.VersionId = aws.String(versionId)
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
```

```
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 _, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObject(ctx, input)
 if err != nil {
  var noKey *types.NoSuchKey
  var apiErr *smithy.GenericAPIError
  if errors.As(err, &noKey) {
   log.Printf("Object %s does not exist in %s.\n", key, bucket)
   err = noKey
  } else if errors.As(err, &apiErr) {
   switch apiErr.ErrorCode() {
   case "AccessDenied":
    log.Printf("Access denied: cannot delete object %s from %s.\n", key, bucket)
    err = nil
   case "InvalidArgument":
    if bypassGovernance {
     log.Printf("You cannot specify bypass governance on a bucket without lock
 enabled.")
     err = nil
    }
   }
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: aws.String(key)},
 time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s in bucket %s to be deleted.\n",
 key, bucket)
  } else {
   deleted = true
  }
 }
 return deleted, err
}



// DeleteObjects deletes a list of objects from a bucket.
func (actor S3Actions) DeleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucket string, objects
 []types.ObjectIdentifier, bypassGovernance bool) error {
 if len(objects) == 0 {
  return nil
 }
```

```
 input := s3.DeleteObjectsInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucket),
  Delete: &types.Delete{
   Objects: objects,
   Quiet:   aws.Bool(true),
  },
 }
 if bypassGovernance {
  input.BypassGovernanceRetention = aws.Bool(true)
 }
 delOut, err := actor.S3Client.DeleteObjects(ctx, &input)
 if err != nil || len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
  log.Printf("Error deleting objects from bucket %s.\n", bucket)
  if err != nil {
   var noBucket *types.NoSuchBucket
   if errors.As(err, &noBucket) {
    log.Printf("Bucket %s does not exist.\n", bucket)
    err = noBucket
   }
  } else if len(delOut.Errors) > 0 {
   for _, outErr := range delOut.Errors {
    log.Printf("%s: %s\n", *outErr.Key, *outErr.Message)
   }
   err = fmt.Errorf("%s", *delOut.Errors[0].Message)
  }
 } else {
  for _, delObjs := range delOut.Deleted {
   err = s3.NewObjectNotExistsWaiter(actor.S3Client).Wait(
    ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket), Key: delObjs.Key},
 time.Minute)
   if err != nil {
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to be deleted.\n",
 *delObjs.Key)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", *delObjs.Key)
   }
  }
 }
 return err
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "log"
 "s3_object_lock/actions"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

// DemoBucket contains metadata for buckets used in this example.
type DemoBucket struct {
 name             string
 retentionEnabled bool
 objectKeys       []string
}

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during the ObjectLockScenario and
 handles
// cleanup when the scenario finishes.
type Resources struct {
 demoBuckets map[string]*DemoBucket

 s3Actions  *actions.S3Actions
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
}

// init initializes objects in the Resources struct.
func (resources *Resources) init(s3Actions *actions.S3Actions, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources.s3Actions = s3Actions
 resources.questioner = questioner
 resources.demoBuckets = map[string]*DemoBucket{}
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during the ObjectLockScenario.
```

```
func (resources *Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Printf("Something went wrong during cleanup.\n%v\n", r)
   log.Println("Use the AWS Management Console to remove any remaining resources " +
    "that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 wantDelete := resources.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all of the AWS
 resources that were created "+
  "during this demo (y/n)?", "y")
 if !wantDelete {
  log.Println("Be sure to remove resources when you're done with them to avoid
 unexpected charges!")
  return
 }

 log.Println("Removing objects from S3 buckets and deleting buckets...")
 resources.deleteBuckets(ctx)
 //resources.deleteRetentionObjects(resources.retentionBucket,
 resources.retentionObjects)

 log.Println("Cleanup complete.")
}

// deleteBuckets empties and then deletes all buckets created during the
 ObjectLockScenario.
func (resources *Resources) deleteBuckets(ctx context.Context) {
 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  resources.deleteObjects(ctx, bucket)
  _, err := resources.s3Actions.S3Client.DeleteBucket(ctx, &s3.DeleteBucketInput{
   Bucket: aws.String(bucket.name),
  })
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
 for _, info := range createInfo {
  bucket := resources.demoBuckets[info.name]
  err := s3.NewBucketNotExistsWaiter(resources.s3Actions.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadBucketInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucket.name)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for bucket %s to be deleted.\n", bucket.name)
   } else {
    log.Printf("Deleted %s.\n", bucket.name)
   }
  }
  resources.demoBuckets = map[string]*DemoBucket{}
 }

 // deleteObjects deletes all objects in the specified bucket.
 func (resources *Resources) deleteObjects(ctx context.Context, bucket *DemoBucket) {
  lockConfig, err := resources.s3Actions.GetObjectLockConfiguration(ctx, bucket.name)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  versions, err := resources.s3Actions.ListObjectVersions(ctx, bucket.name)
  if err != nil {
   switch err.(type) {
   case *types.NoSuchBucket:
    log.Printf("No objects to get from %s.\n", bucket.name)
   default:
    panic(err)
   }
  }
  delObjects := make([]types.ObjectIdentifier, len(versions))
  for i, version := range versions {
   if lockConfig != nil && lockConfig.ObjectLockEnabled ==
  types.ObjectLockEnabledEnabled {
    status, err := resources.s3Actions.GetObjectLegalHold(ctx, bucket.name,
  *version.Key, *version.VersionId)
    if err != nil {
     switch err.(type) {
     case *types.NoSuchKey:
      log.Printf("Couldn't determine legal hold status for %s in %s.\n",
  *version.Key, bucket.name)
     default:
      panic(err)
     }
    } else if status != nil && *status == types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatusOn {
     err = resources.s3Actions.PutObjectLegalHold(ctx, bucket.name, *version.Key,
  *version.VersionId, types.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatusOff)
     if err != nil {
      switch err.(type) {
      case *types.NoSuchKey:
```

```
      log.Printf("Couldn't turn off legal hold for %s in %s.\n", *version.Key,
 bucket.name)
     default:
      panic(err)
     }
    }
   }
  }
  delObjects[i] = types.ObjectIdentifier{Key: version.Key, VersionId:
 version.VersionId}
 }
 err = resources.s3Actions.DeleteObjects(ctx, bucket.name, delObjects,
 bucket.retentionEnabled)
 if err != nil {
  switch err.(type) {
  case *types.NoSuchBucket:
   log.Println("Nothing to delete.")
  default:
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that use upload and download managers to break the data into parts and transfer them concurrently.

```
import (
 "bytes"
 "context"
 "errors"
 "fmt"
 "io"
 "log"
 "os"
 "time"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/feature/s3/manager"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3/types"
 "github.com/aws/smithy-go"
)

// BucketBasics encapsulates the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) actions
// used in the examples.
// It contains S3Client, an Amazon S3 service client that is used to perform bucket
// and object actions.
type BucketBasics struct {
 S3Client *s3.Client
}



// UploadLargeObject uses an upload manager to upload data to an object in a bucket.
// The upload manager breaks large data into parts and uploads the parts
 concurrently.
```

```
func (basics BucketBasics) UploadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName string,
 objectKey string, largeObject []byte) error {
 largeBuffer := bytes.NewReader(largeObject)
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 uploader := manager.NewUploader(basics.S3Client, func(u *manager.Uploader) {
  u.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
 })
 _, err := uploader.Upload(ctx, &s3.PutObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
  Body:   largeBuffer,
 })
 if err != nil {
  var apiErr smithy.APIError
  if errors.As(err, &apiErr) && apiErr.ErrorCode() == "EntityTooLarge" {
   log.Printf("Error while uploading object to %s. The object is too large.\n"+
    "The maximum size for a multipart upload is 5TB.", bucketName)
  } else {
   log.Printf("Couldn't upload large object to %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
    bucketName, objectKey, err)
  }
 } else {
  err = s3.NewObjectExistsWaiter(basics.S3Client).Wait(
   ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{Bucket: aws.String(bucketName), Key:
 aws.String(objectKey)}, time.Minute)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Failed attempt to wait for object %s to exist.\n", objectKey)
  }
 }

 return err
}




// DownloadLargeObject uses a download manager to download an object from a bucket.
// The download manager gets the data in parts and writes them to a buffer until all
 of
// the data has been downloaded.
func (basics BucketBasics) DownloadLargeObject(ctx context.Context, bucketName
 string, objectKey string) ([]byte, error) {
 var partMiBs int64 = 10
 downloader := manager.NewDownloader(basics.S3Client, func(d *manager.Downloader) {
  d.PartSize = partMiBs * 1024 * 1024
```

```
 })
 buffer := manager.NewWriteAtBuffer([]byte{})
 _, err := downloader.Download(ctx, buffer, &s3.GetObjectInput{
  Bucket: aws.String(bucketName),
  Key:    aws.String(objectKey),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't download large object from %v:%v. Here's why: %v\n",
   bucketName, objectKey, err)
 }
 return buffer.Bytes(), err
}
```

Run an interactive scenario that shows you how to use the upload and download managers in context.

```
import (
 "context"
 "crypto/rand"
 "log"
 "strings"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/s3/actions"
)

// RunLargeObjectScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use Amazon
// Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) to upload and download large objects.
//
// 1. Create a bucket.
// 3. Upload a large object to the bucket by using an upload manager.
// 5. Download a large object by using a download manager.
// 8. Delete all objects in the bucket.
// 9. Delete the bucket.
//
// This example creates an Amazon S3 service client from the specified sdkConfig so
 that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
```

```
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunLargeObjectScenario(ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner
 demotools.IQuestioner) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.")
   _, isMock := questioner.(*demotools.MockQuestioner)
   if isMock || questioner.AskBool("Do you want to see the full error message (y/
n)?", "y") {
    log.Println(r)
   }
  }
 }()

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 large object demo.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 bucketBasics := actions.BucketBasics{S3Client: s3Client}

 bucketName := questioner.Ask("Let's create a bucket. Enter a name for your
 bucket:",
  demotools.NotEmpty{})
 bucketExists, err := bucketBasics.BucketExists(ctx, bucketName)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 if !bucketExists {
  err = bucketBasics.CreateBucket(ctx, bucketName, sdkConfig.Region)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  } else {
   log.Println("Bucket created.")
  }
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 mibs := 30
 log.Printf("Let's create a slice of %v MiB of random bytes and upload it to your
 bucket. ", mibs)
```

```
 questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 largeBytes := make([]byte, 1024*1024*mibs)
 _, _ = rand.Read(largeBytes)
 largeKey := "doc-example-large"
 log.Println("Uploading...")
 err = bucketBasics.UploadLargeObject(ctx, bucketName, largeKey, largeBytes)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Uploaded %v MiB object as %v", mibs, largeKey)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Let's download the %v MiB object.", mibs)
 questioner.Ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
 log.Println("Downloading...")
 largeDownload, err := bucketBasics.DownloadLargeObject(ctx, bucketName, largeKey)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Downloaded %v bytes.", len(largeDownload))
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 if questioner.AskBool("Do you want to delete your bucket and all of its "+
  "contents? (y/n)", "y") {
  log.Println("Deleting object.")
  err = bucketBasics.DeleteObjects(ctx, bucketName, []string{largeKey})
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println("Deleting bucket.")
  err = bucketBasics.DeleteBucket(ctx, bucketName)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 } else {
  log.Println("Okay. Don't forget to delete objects from your bucket to avoid
 charges.")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/s3"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, s3Event events.S3Event) error {
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("failed to load default config: %s", err)
  return err
 }
```

```
 s3Client := s3.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)

 for _, record := range s3Event.Records {
  bucket := record.S3.Bucket.Name
  key := record.S3.Object.URLDecodedKey
  headOutput, err := s3Client.HeadObject(ctx, &s3.HeadObjectInput{
   Bucket: &bucket,
   Key:    &key,
  })
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("error getting head of object %s/%s: %s", bucket, key, err)
   return err
  }
  log.Printf("successfully retrieved %s/%s of type %s", bucket, key,
 *headOutput.ContentType)
 }

 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 snsClient := sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the topics for your account.")
 var topics []types.Topic
 paginator := sns.NewListTopicsPaginator(snsClient, &sns.ListTopicsInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
```

```
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get topics. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   topics = append(topics, output.Topics...)
  }
 }
 if len(topics) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any topics!")
 } else {
  for _, topic := range topics {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *topic.TopicArn)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// CreateTopic creates an Amazon SNS topic with the specified name. You can
 optionally
// specify that the topic is created as a FIFO topic and whether it uses content-
based
// deduplication instead of ID-based deduplication.
func (actor SnsActions) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context, topicName string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool) (string, error) {
 var topicArn string
 topicAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
 }
 if contentBasedDeduplication {
  topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
 }
 topic, err := actor.SnsClient.CreateTopic(ctx, &sns.CreateTopicInput{
  Name:       aws.String(topicName),
  Attributes: topicAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicName, err)
 } else {
  topicArn = *topic.TopicArn
```

```
 }

 return topicArn, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}
```

```
// DeleteTopic delete an Amazon SNS topic.
func (actor SnsActions) DeleteTopic(ctx context.Context, topicArn string) error {
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.DeleteTopic(ctx, &sns.DeleteTopicInput{
  TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Notification Service
// (Amazon SNS) client and list the topics in your account.
```

```
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 snsClient := sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the topics for your account.")
 var topics []types.Topic
 paginator := sns.NewListTopicsPaginator(snsClient, &sns.ListTopicsInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get topics. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   topics = append(topics, output.Topics...)
  }
 }
 if len(topics) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any topics!")
 } else {
  for _, topic := range topics {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", *topic.TopicArn)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Publish

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// Publish publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The message is then sent to
 all
// subscribers. When the topic is a FIFO topic, the message must also contain a
 group ID
// and, when ID-based deduplication is used, a deduplication ID. An optional key-
value
// filter attribute can be specified so that the message can be filtered according
 to
// a filter policy.
func (actor SnsActions) Publish(ctx context.Context, topicArn string, message
 string, groupId string, dedupId string, filterKey string, filterValue string) error
 {
 publishInput := sns.PublishInput{TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn), Message:
 aws.String(message)}
```

```
 if groupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageGroupId = aws.String(groupId)
 }
 if dedupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageDeduplicationId = aws.String(dedupId)
 }
 if filterKey != "" && filterValue != "" {
  publishInput.MessageAttributes = map[string]types.MessageAttributeValue{
   filterKey: {DataType: aws.String("String"), StringValue:
 aws.String(filterValue)},
  }
 }
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.Publish(ctx, &publishInput)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't publish message to topic %v. Here's why: %v", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe a queue to a topic with optional filters.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// SubscribeQueue subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to an
// Amazon SNS topic. When filterMap is not nil, it is used to specify a filter
 policy
// so that messages are only sent to the queue when the message has the specified
 attributes.
func (actor SnsActions) SubscribeQueue(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 queueArn string, filterMap map[string][]string) (string, error) {
 var subscriptionArn string
 var attributes map[string]string
 if filterMap != nil {
  filterBytes, err := json.Marshal(filterMap)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create filter policy, here's why: %v\n", err)
   return "", err
  }
  attributes = map[string]string{"FilterPolicy": string(filterBytes)}
 }
 output, err := actor.SnsClient.Subscribe(ctx, &sns.SubscribeInput{
  Protocol:              aws.String("sqs"),
  TopicArn:              aws.String(topicArn),
  Attributes:            attributes,
  Endpoint:              aws.String(queueArn),
  ReturnSubscriptionArn: true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't susbscribe queue %v to topic %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   queueArn, topicArn, err)
 } else {
  subscriptionArn = *output.SubscriptionArn
```

```
 }

 return subscriptionArn, err
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
```

```
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

const FIFO_SUFFIX = ".fifo"
const TONE_KEY = "tone"

var ToneChoices = []string{"cheerful", "funny", "serious", "sincere"}

// MessageBody is used to deserialize the body of a message from a JSON string.
type MessageBody struct {
 Message string
}

// ScenarioRunner separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ScenarioRunner struct {
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 snsActor   *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor   *actions.SqsActions
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context) (string, string, bool,
 bool) {
 log.Println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out) or standard.
\n" +
  "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and message
 filtering.")
 isFifoTopic := runner.questioner.AskBool("\nWould you like to work with FIFO
 topics? (y/n) ", "y")

 contentBasedDeduplication := false
 if isFifoTopic {
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  log.Println("Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.\n"
 +
   "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are automatically generated
\n" +
   "from content using a hash function. If a message is successfully published to\n"
 +
   "an SNS FIFO topic, any message published and determined to have the same\n" +
```

```
    "deduplication ID, within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted\n"
  +
    "but not delivered. For more information about deduplication, see:\n" +
    "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.")
   contentBasedDeduplication = runner.questioner.AskBool(
    "\nDo you want to use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
  deduplication ID? (y/n) ", "y")
  }
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

  topicName := runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ")
  if isFifoTopic {
   topicName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", topicName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
   log.Printf("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '%v' must be appended to\n"+
    "the topic name.", FIFO_SUFFIX)
  }

  topicArn, err := runner.snsActor.CreateTopic(ctx, topicName, isFifoTopic,
  contentBasedDeduplication)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Your new topic with the name '%v' and Amazon Resource Name (ARN) \n"+
   "'%v' has been created.", topicName, topicArn)

  return topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication
 }

 func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, ordinal string,
  isFifoTopic bool) (string, string) {
  queueName := runner.questioner.Ask(fmt.Sprintf("Enter a name for the %v SQS queue.
  ", ordinal))
  if isFifoTopic {
   queueName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", queueName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
   if ordinal == "first" {
    log.Printf("Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue, '%v' must "+
     "be appended to the queue name.\n", FIFO_SUFFIX)
   }
  }
  queueUrl, err := runner.sqsActor.CreateQueue(ctx, queueName, isFifoTopic)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("Your new SQS queue with the name '%v' and the queue URL "+
```

```
  "'%v' has been created.", queueName, queueUrl)

 return queueName, queueUrl
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) SubscribeQueueToTopic(
 ctx context.Context, queueName string, queueUrl string, topicName string, topicArn
 string, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, bool) {

 queueArn, err := runner.sqsActor.GetQueueArn(ctx, queueUrl)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("The ARN of your queue is: %v.\n", queueArn)

 err = runner.sqsActor.AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx, queueUrl, queueArn, topicArn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Attached an IAM policy to the queue so the SNS topic can send " +
  "messages to it.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 var filterPolicy map[string][]string
 if isFifoTopic {
  if ordinal == "first" {
   log.Println("Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters.\n" +
    "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered messages\n" +
    "will be received in the queue.\n" +
    "For information about message filtering, see\n" +
    "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n" +
    "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\" attribute.")
  }

  wantFiltering := runner.questioner.AskBool(
   fmt.Sprintf("Do you want to filter messages that are sent to \"%v\"\n"+
    "from the %v topic? (y/n) ", queueName, topicName), "y")
  if wantFiltering {
   log.Println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following \"tone\"
 attributes.")

   var toneSelections []string
   askAboutTones := true
```

```
    for askAboutTones {
     toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
      "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
     toneSelections = append(toneSelections, ToneChoices[toneIndex])
     askAboutTones = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to add another tone to
 the filter? (y/n) ", "y")
    }
    log.Printf("Your subscription will be filtered to only pass the following tones:
 %v\n", toneSelections)
    filterPolicy = map[string][]string{TONE_KEY: toneSelections}
   }
  }

  subscriptionArn, err := runner.snsActor.SubscribeQueue(ctx, topicArn, queueArn,
  filterPolicy)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Printf("The queue %v is now subscribed to the topic %v with the subscription
  ARN %v.\n",
   queueName, topicName, subscriptionArn)

  return subscriptionArn, filterPolicy != nil
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PublishMessages(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool, usingFilters bool) {
 var message string
 var groupId string
 var dedupId string
 var toneSelection string
 publishMore := true
 for publishMore {
  groupId = ""
  dedupId = ""
  toneSelection = ""
  message = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message to publish: ")
  if isFifoTopic {
   log.Println("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a message group ID.
\n" +
    "All messages within the same group will be received in the order they were
 published.")
   groupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message group ID: ")
   if !contentBasedDeduplication {
```

```
    log.Println("Because you are not using content-based deduplication,\n" +
     "you must enter a deduplication ID.")
    dedupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a deduplication ID: ")
   }
  }
  if usingFilters {
   if runner.questioner.AskBool("Add a tone attribute so this message can be
 filtered? (y/n) ", "y") {
    toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
     "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
    toneSelection = ToneChoices[toneIndex]
   }
  }

  err := runner.snsActor.Publish(ctx, topicArn, message, groupId, dedupId, TONE_KEY,
 toneSelection)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println(("Your message was published."))

  publishMore = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to publish another messsage?
 (y/n) ", "y")
 }
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PollForMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrls
 []string) {
 log.Println("Polling queues for messages...")
 for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
  var messages []types.Message
  for {
   currentMsgs, err := runner.sqsActor.GetMessages(ctx, queueUrl, 10, 1)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   if len(currentMsgs) == 0 {
    break
   }
   messages = append(messages, currentMsgs...)
  }
  if len(messages) == 0 {
   log.Printf("No messages were received by queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  } else if len(messages) == 1 {
```

```
    log.Printf("One message was received by queue %v:\n", queueUrl)

   } else {
    log.Printf("%v messages were received by queue %v:\n", len(messages), queueUrl)
   }
   for msgIndex, message := range messages {
    messageBody := MessageBody{}
    err := json.Unmarshal([]byte(*message.Body), &messageBody)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
    log.Printf("Message %v: %v\n", msgIndex+1, messageBody.Message)
   }

   if len(messages) > 0 {
    log.Printf("Deleting %v messages from queue %v.\n", len(messages), queueUrl)
    err := runner.sqsActor.DeleteMessages(ctx, queueUrl, messages)
    if err != nil {
     panic(err)
    }
   }
  }
}

// RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use
 the
// AWS SDK for Go to create and use Amazon SNS topics and Amazon SQS queues.
//
// 1. Create a topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
// 2. Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
// 3. Publish messages to the topic.
// 4. Poll the queues for messages received.
// 5. Delete the topic and the queues.
//
// This example creates service clients from the specified sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario(
 ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources := Resources{}
 defer func() {
```

```
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.\n" +
    "Cleaning up any resources that were created...")
   resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()
 queueCount := 2

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.\n\n"+
  "In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe %v SQS queues to the
\n"+
  "topic. You can select from several options for configuring the topic and the\n"+
  "subscriptions for the queues. You can then post to the topic and see the results
\n"+
  "in the queues.\n", queueCount)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 runner := ScenarioRunner{
  questioner: questioner,
  snsActor:   &actions.SnsActions{SnsClient: sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  sqsActor:   &actions.SqsActions{SqsClient: sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
 }
 resources.snsActor = runner.snsActor
 resources.sqsActor = runner.sqsActor

 topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication :=
 runner.CreateTopic(ctx)
 resources.topicArn = topicArn
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Now you will create %v SQS queues and subscribe them to the topic.\n",
 queueCount)
 ordinals := []string{"first", "next"}
 usingFilters := false
 for _, ordinal := range ordinals {
  queueName, queueUrl := runner.CreateQueue(ctx, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  resources.queueUrls = append(resources.queueUrls, queueUrl)

  _, filtering := runner.SubscribeQueueToTopic(ctx, queueName, queueUrl, topicName,
 topicArn, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  usingFilters = usingFilters || filtering
 }
```

```
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PublishMessages(ctx, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication,
 usingFilters)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PollForMessages(ctx, resources.queueUrls)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 wantCleanup := questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all AWS resources created
 for this scenario? (y/n) ", "y")
 if wantCleanup {
  log.Println("Cleaning up resources...")
  resources.Cleanup(ctx)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SNS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}
```

```
// CreateTopic creates an Amazon SNS topic with the specified name. You can
 optionally
// specify that the topic is created as a FIFO topic and whether it uses content-
based
// deduplication instead of ID-based deduplication.
func (actor SnsActions) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context, topicName string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool) (string, error) {
 var topicArn string
 topicAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
 }
 if contentBasedDeduplication {
  topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
 }
 topic, err := actor.SnsClient.CreateTopic(ctx, &sns.CreateTopicInput{
  Name:       aws.String(topicName),
  Attributes: topicAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicName, err)
 } else {
  topicArn = *topic.TopicArn
 }

 return topicArn, err
}



// DeleteTopic delete an Amazon SNS topic.
func (actor SnsActions) DeleteTopic(ctx context.Context, topicArn string) error {
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.DeleteTopic(ctx, &sns.DeleteTopicInput{
  TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// SubscribeQueue subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to an
// Amazon SNS topic. When filterMap is not nil, it is used to specify a filter
 policy
// so that messages are only sent to the queue when the message has the specified
 attributes.
func (actor SnsActions) SubscribeQueue(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 queueArn string, filterMap map[string][]string) (string, error) {
 var subscriptionArn string
 var attributes map[string]string
 if filterMap != nil {
  filterBytes, err := json.Marshal(filterMap)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create filter policy, here's why: %v\n", err)
   return "", err
  }
  attributes = map[string]string{"FilterPolicy": string(filterBytes)}
 }
 output, err := actor.SnsClient.Subscribe(ctx, &sns.SubscribeInput{
  Protocol:              aws.String("sqs"),
  TopicArn:              aws.String(topicArn),
  Attributes:            attributes,
  Endpoint:              aws.String(queueArn),
  ReturnSubscriptionArn: true,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't susbscribe queue %v to topic %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   queueArn, topicArn, err)
 } else {
  subscriptionArn = *output.SubscriptionArn
 }

 return subscriptionArn, err
}




// Publish publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The message is then sent to
 all
// subscribers. When the topic is a FIFO topic, the message must also contain a
 group ID
// and, when ID-based deduplication is used, a deduplication ID. An optional key-
value
// filter attribute can be specified so that the message can be filtered according
 to
```

```
// a filter policy.
func (actor SnsActions) Publish(ctx context.Context, topicArn string, message
 string, groupId string, dedupId string, filterKey string, filterValue string) error
 {
 publishInput := sns.PublishInput{TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn), Message:
 aws.String(message)}
 if groupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageGroupId = aws.String(groupId)
 }
 if dedupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageDeduplicationId = aws.String(dedupId)
 }
 if filterKey != "" && filterValue != "" {
  publishInput.MessageAttributes = map[string]types.MessageAttributeValue{
   filterKey: {DataType: aws.String("String"), StringValue:
 aws.String(filterValue)},
  }
 }
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.Publish(ctx, &publishInput)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't publish message to topic %v. Here's why: %v", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SQS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
```

```
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// CreateQueue creates an Amazon SQS queue with the specified name. You can specify
// whether the queue is created as a FIFO queue.
func (actor SqsActions) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, queueName string,
 isFifoQueue bool) (string, error) {
 var queueUrl string
 queueAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoQueue {
  queueAttributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
 }
 queue, err := actor.SqsClient.CreateQueue(ctx, &sqs.CreateQueueInput{
  QueueName:  aws.String(queueName),
  Attributes: queueAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueName, err)
 } else {
  queueUrl = *queue.QueueUrl
 }

 return queueUrl, err
}



// GetQueueArn uses the GetQueueAttributes action to get the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
// of an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetQueueArn(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) (string,
 error) {
 var queueArn string
 arnAttributeName := types.QueueAttributeNameQueueArn
 attribute, err := actor.SqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(ctx,
 &sqs.GetQueueAttributesInput{
  QueueUrl:       aws.String(queueUrl),
  AttributeNames: []types.QueueAttributeName{arnAttributeName},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get ARN for queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
```

```
 } else {
  queueArn = attribute.Attributes[string(arnAttributeName)]
 }
 return queueArn, err
}



// AttachSendMessagePolicy uses the SetQueueAttributes action to attach a policy to
 an
// Amazon SQS queue that allows the specified Amazon SNS topic to send messages to
 the
// queue.
func (actor SqsActions) AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx context.Context, queueUrl
 string, queueArn string, topicArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Action:    "sqs:SendMessage",
   Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"},
   Resource:  aws.String(queueArn),
   Condition: PolicyCondition{"ArnEquals": map[string]string{"aws:SourceArn":
 topicArn}},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = actor.SqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(ctx, &sqs.SetQueueAttributesInput{
  Attributes: map[string]string{
   string(types.QueueAttributeNamePolicy): string(policyBytes),
  },
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't set send message policy on queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

```
// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
 Condition PolicyCondition   `json:",omitempty"`
}

// PolicyCondition defines a condition in a policy.
type PolicyCondition map[string]map[string]string



// GetMessages uses the ReceiveMessage action to get messages from an Amazon SQS
 queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 maxMessages int32, waitTime int32) ([]types.Message, error) {
 var messages []types.Message
 result, err := actor.SqsClient.ReceiveMessage(ctx, &sqs.ReceiveMessageInput{
  QueueUrl:            aws.String(queueUrl),
  MaxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
  WaitTimeSeconds:     waitTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  messages = result.Messages
 }
 return messages, err
}



// DeleteMessages uses the DeleteMessageBatch action to delete a batch of messages
 from
// an Amazon SQS queue.
```

```
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 messages []types.Message) error {
 entries := make([]types.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry, len(messages))
 for msgIndex := range messages {
  entries[msgIndex].Id = aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v", msgIndex))
  entries[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle = messages[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle
 }
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(ctx, &sqs.DeleteMessageBatchInput{
  Entries:  entries,
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteQueue deletes an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteQueue(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) error {
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteQueue(ctx, &sqs.DeleteQueueInput{
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
```

```
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 topicArn  string
 queueUrls []string
 snsActor  *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor  *actions.SqsActions
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Println("Something went wrong during cleanup. Use the AWS Management Console
\n" +
    "to remove any remaining resources that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 var err error
 if resources.topicArn != "" {
  log.Printf("Deleting topic %v.\n", resources.topicArn)
  err = resources.snsActor.DeleteTopic(ctx, resources.topicArn)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }

 for _, queueUrl := range resources.queueUrls {
  log.Printf("Deleting queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  err = resources.sqsActor.DeleteQueue(ctx, queueUrl)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch

- DeleteQueue
- DeleteTopic
- GetQueueAttributes
- Publish
- ReceiveMessage
- SetQueueAttributes
- Subscribe
- Unsubscribe

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"

 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)
```

```
func handler(ctx context.Context, snsEvent events.SNSEvent) {
 for _, record := range snsEvent.Records {
  processMessage(record)
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
}

func processMessage(record events.SNSEventRecord) {
 message := record.SNS.Message
 fmt.Printf("Processed message: %s\n", message)
 // TODO: Process your record here
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Go V2

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Go V2 with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Queue Service
// (Amazon SQS) client and list the queues in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 sqsClient := sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the queues for your account.")
 var queueUrls []string
 paginator := sqs.NewListQueuesPaginator(sqsClient, &sqs.ListQueuesInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get queues. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
```

```
  } else {
   queueUrls = append(queueUrls, output.QueueUrls...)
  }
 }
 if len(queueUrls) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any queues!")
 } else {
  for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", queueUrl)
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
```

```
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// CreateQueue creates an Amazon SQS queue with the specified name. You can specify
// whether the queue is created as a FIFO queue.
func (actor SqsActions) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, queueName string,
 isFifoQueue bool) (string, error) {
 var queueUrl string
 queueAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoQueue {
  queueAttributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
 }
 queue, err := actor.SqsClient.CreateQueue(ctx, &sqs.CreateQueueInput{
  QueueName:  aws.String(queueName),
  Attributes: queueAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueName, err)
 } else {
  queueUrl = *queue.QueueUrl
 }

 return queueUrl, err
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

DeleteMessageBatch

The following code example shows how to use DeleteMessageBatch.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// DeleteMessages uses the DeleteMessageBatch action to delete a batch of messages
 from
// an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 messages []types.Message) error {
 entries := make([]types.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry, len(messages))
 for msgIndex := range messages {
  entries[msgIndex].Id = aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v", msgIndex))
  entries[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle = messages[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle
 }
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(ctx, &sqs.DeleteMessageBatchInput{
```

```
  Entries:  entries,
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl,
 err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
```

```
}



// DeleteQueue deletes an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteQueue(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) error {
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteQueue(ctx, &sqs.DeleteQueueInput{
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`GetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)
```

```
// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// GetQueueArn uses the GetQueueAttributes action to get the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
// of an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetQueueArn(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) (string,
 error) {
 var queueArn string
 arnAttributeName := types.QueueAttributeNameQueueArn
 attribute, err := actor.SqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(ctx,
 &sqs.GetQueueAttributesInput{
  QueueUrl:       aws.String(queueUrl),
  AttributeNames: []types.QueueAttributeName{arnAttributeName},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get ARN for queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  queueArn = attribute.Attributes[string(arnAttributeName)]
 }
 return queueArn, err
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package main

import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/config"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
)

// main uses the AWS SDK for Go V2 to create an Amazon Simple Queue Service
// (Amazon SQS) client and list the queues in your account.
// This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
// and config files.
func main() {
 ctx := context.Background()
 sdkConfig, err := config.LoadDefaultConfig(ctx)
 if err != nil {
  fmt.Println("Couldn't load default configuration. Have you set up your AWS
 account?")
  fmt.Println(err)
  return
 }
 sqsClient := sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)
 fmt.Println("Let's list the queues for your account.")
 var queueUrls []string
 paginator := sqs.NewListQueuesPaginator(sqsClient, &sqs.ListQueuesInput{})
 for paginator.HasMorePages() {
  output, err := paginator.NextPage(ctx)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't get queues. Here's why: %v\n", err)
   break
  } else {
   queueUrls = append(queueUrls, output.QueueUrls...)
  }
 }
 if len(queueUrls) == 0 {
  fmt.Println("You don't have any queues!")
 } else {
  for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
   fmt.Printf("\t%v\n", queueUrl)
```

```
  }
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// GetMessages uses the ReceiveMessage action to get messages from an Amazon SQS
 queue.
```

```
func (actor SqsActions) GetMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 maxMessages int32, waitTime int32) ([]types.Message, error) {
 var messages []types.Message
 result, err := actor.SqsClient.ReceiveMessage(ctx, &sqs.ReceiveMessageInput{
  QueueUrl:            aws.String(queueUrl),
  MaxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
  WaitTimeSeconds:     waitTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  messages = result.Messages
 }
 return messages, err
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

`SetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
```

```
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// AttachSendMessagePolicy uses the SetQueueAttributes action to attach a policy to
 an
// Amazon SQS queue that allows the specified Amazon SNS topic to send messages to
 the
// queue.
func (actor SqsActions) AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx context.Context, queueUrl
 string, queueArn string, topicArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Action:    "sqs:SendMessage",
   Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"},
   Resource:  aws.String(queueArn),
   Condition: PolicyCondition{"ArnEquals": map[string]string{"aws:SourceArn":
 topicArn}},
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = actor.SqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(ctx, &sqs.SetQueueAttributesInput{
  Attributes: map[string]string{
   string(types.QueueAttributeNamePolicy): string(policyBytes),
  },
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't set send message policy on queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
```

```
}

// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
 Condition PolicyCondition   `json:",omitempty"`
}

// PolicyCondition defines a condition in a policy.
type PolicyCondition map[string]map[string]string
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "strings"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
 "github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/gov2/demotools"
)

const FIFO_SUFFIX = ".fifo"
const TONE_KEY = "tone"

var ToneChoices = []string{"cheerful", "funny", "serious", "sincere"}

// MessageBody is used to deserialize the body of a message from a JSON string.
type MessageBody struct {
 Message string
}

// ScenarioRunner separates the steps of this scenario into individual functions so
 that
// they are simpler to read and understand.
type ScenarioRunner struct {
 questioner demotools.IQuestioner
 snsActor   *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor   *actions.SqsActions
```

```
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context) (string, string, bool,
 bool) {
 log.Println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out) or standard.
\n" +
  "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and message
 filtering.")
 isFifoTopic := runner.questioner.AskBool("\nWould you like to work with FIFO
 topics? (y/n) ", "y")

 contentBasedDeduplication := false
 if isFifoTopic {
  log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
  log.Println("Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.\n"
 +
   "Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are automatically generated
\n" +
   "from content using a hash function. If a message is successfully published to\n"
 +
   "an SNS FIFO topic, any message published and determined to have the same\n" +
   "deduplication ID, within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted\n"
 +
   "but not delivered. For more information about deduplication, see:\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.")
  contentBasedDeduplication = runner.questioner.AskBool(
   "\nDo you want to use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
 deduplication ID? (y/n) ", "y")
 }
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 topicName := runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a name for your SNS topic. ")
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", topicName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
  log.Printf("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '%v' must be appended to\n"+
   "the topic name.", FIFO_SUFFIX)
 }

 topicArn, err := runner.snsActor.CreateTopic(ctx, topicName, isFifoTopic,
 contentBasedDeduplication)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Your new topic with the name '%v' and Amazon Resource Name (ARN) \n"+
```

```
  "'%v' has been created.", topicName, topicArn)

 return topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, string) {
 queueName := runner.questioner.Ask(fmt.Sprintf("Enter a name for the %v SQS queue.
 ", ordinal))
 if isFifoTopic {
  queueName = fmt.Sprintf("%v%v", queueName, FIFO_SUFFIX)
  if ordinal == "first" {
   log.Printf("Because you are creating a FIFO SQS queue, '%v' must "+
    "be appended to the queue name.\n", FIFO_SUFFIX)
  }
 }
 queueUrl, err := runner.sqsActor.CreateQueue(ctx, queueName, isFifoTopic)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("Your new SQS queue with the name '%v' and the queue URL "+
  "'%v' has been created.", queueName, queueUrl)

 return queueName, queueUrl
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) SubscribeQueueToTopic(
 ctx context.Context, queueName string, queueUrl string, topicName string, topicArn
 string, ordinal string,
 isFifoTopic bool) (string, bool) {

 queueArn, err := runner.sqsActor.GetQueueArn(ctx, queueUrl)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Printf("The ARN of your queue is: %v.\n", queueArn)

 err = runner.sqsActor.AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx, queueUrl, queueArn, topicArn)
 if err != nil {
  panic(err)
 }
 log.Println("Attached an IAM policy to the queue so the SNS topic can send " +
  "messages to it.")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
```

```
var filterPolicy map[string][]string
if isFifoTopic {
 if ordinal == "first" {
  log.Println("Subscriptions to a FIFO topic can have filters.\n" +
   "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered messages\n" +
   "will be received in the queue.\n" +
   "For information about message filtering, see\n" +
   "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n" +
   "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\" attribute.")
 }

 wantFiltering := runner.questioner.AskBool(
  fmt.Sprintf("Do you want to filter messages that are sent to \"%v\"\n"+
   "from the %v topic? (y/n) ", queueName, topicName), "y")
 if wantFiltering {
  log.Println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following \"tone\"
attributes.")

  var toneSelections []string
  askAboutTones := true
  for askAboutTones {
   toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
    "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
   toneSelections = append(toneSelections, ToneChoices[toneIndex])
   askAboutTones = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to add another tone to
the filter? (y/n) ", "y")
  }
  log.Printf("Your subscription will be filtered to only pass the following tones:
%v\n", toneSelections)
  filterPolicy = map[string][]string{TONE_KEY: toneSelections}
 }
}

subscriptionArn, err := runner.snsActor.SubscribeQueue(ctx, topicArn, queueArn,
filterPolicy)
if err != nil {
 panic(err)
}
log.Printf("The queue %v is now subscribed to the topic %v with the subscription
ARN %v.\n",
 queueName, topicName, subscriptionArn)

return subscriptionArn, filterPolicy != nil
```

```
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PublishMessages(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool, usingFilters bool) {
 var message string
 var groupId string
 var dedupId string
 var toneSelection string
 publishMore := true
 for publishMore {
  groupId = ""
  dedupId = ""
  toneSelection = ""
  message = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message to publish: ")
  if isFifoTopic {
   log.Println("Because you are using a FIFO topic, you must set a message group ID.
\n" +
    "All messages within the same group will be received in the order they were
 published.")
   groupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a message group ID: ")
   if !contentBasedDeduplication {
    log.Println("Because you are not using content-based deduplication,\n" +
     "you must enter a deduplication ID.")
    dedupId = runner.questioner.Ask("Enter a deduplication ID: ")
   }
  }
  if usingFilters {
   if runner.questioner.AskBool("Add a tone attribute so this message can be
 filtered? (y/n) ", "y") {
    toneIndex := runner.questioner.AskChoice(
     "Enter the number of the tone you want to filter by:\n", ToneChoices)
    toneSelection = ToneChoices[toneIndex]
   }
  }

  err := runner.snsActor.Publish(ctx, topicArn, message, groupId, dedupId, TONE_KEY,
 toneSelection)
  if err != nil {
   panic(err)
  }
  log.Println(("Your message was published."))

  publishMore = runner.questioner.AskBool("Do you want to publish another messsage?
 (y/n) ", "y")
```

```
 }
}

func (runner ScenarioRunner) PollForMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrls
 []string) {
 log.Println("Polling queues for messages...")
 for _, queueUrl := range queueUrls {
  var messages []types.Message
  for {
   currentMsgs, err := runner.sqsActor.GetMessages(ctx, queueUrl, 10, 1)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   if len(currentMsgs) == 0 {
    break
   }
   messages = append(messages, currentMsgs...)
  }
  if len(messages) == 0 {
   log.Printf("No messages were received by queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
  } else if len(messages) == 1 {
   log.Printf("One message was received by queue %v:\n", queueUrl)

  } else {
   log.Printf("%v messages were received by queue %v:\n", len(messages), queueUrl)
  }
  for msgIndex, message := range messages {
   messageBody := MessageBody{}
   err := json.Unmarshal([]byte(*message.Body), &messageBody)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
   log.Printf("Message %v: %v\n", msgIndex+1, messageBody.Message)
  }

  if len(messages) > 0 {
   log.Printf("Deleting %v messages from queue %v.\n", len(messages), queueUrl)
   err := runner.sqsActor.DeleteMessages(ctx, queueUrl, messages)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
 }
}
```

```
// RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario is an interactive example that shows you how to use
 the
// AWS SDK for Go to create and use Amazon SNS topics and Amazon SQS queues.
//
// 1. Create a topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
// 2. Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
// 3. Publish messages to the topic.
// 4. Poll the queues for messages received.
// 5. Delete the topic and the queues.
//
// This example creates service clients from the specified sdkConfig so that
// you can replace it with a mocked or stubbed config for unit testing.
//
// It uses a questioner from the `demotools` package to get input during the
 example.
// This package can be found in the ..\..\demotools folder of this repo.
func RunTopicsAndQueuesScenario(
 ctx context.Context, sdkConfig aws.Config, questioner demotools.IQuestioner) {
 resources := Resources{}
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   log.Println("Something went wrong with the demo.\n" +
    "Cleaning up any resources that were created...")
   resources.Cleanup(ctx)
  }
 }()
 queueCount := 2

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Printf("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.\n\n"+
  "In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe %v SQS queues to the
\n"+
  "topic. You can select from several options for configuring the topic and the\n"+
  "subscriptions for the queues. You can then post to the topic and see the results
\n"+
  "in the queues.\n", queueCount)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 runner := ScenarioRunner{
  questioner: questioner,
  snsActor:   &actions.SnsActions{SnsClient: sns.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
  sqsActor:   &actions.SqsActions{SqsClient: sqs.NewFromConfig(sdkConfig)},
```

```
 }
 resources.snsActor = runner.snsActor
 resources.sqsActor = runner.sqsActor

 topicName, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication :=
 runner.CreateTopic(ctx)
 resources.topicArn = topicArn
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 log.Printf("Now you will create %v SQS queues and subscribe them to the topic.\n",
 queueCount)
 ordinals := []string{"first", "next"}
 usingFilters := false
 for _, ordinal := range ordinals {
  queueName, queueUrl := runner.CreateQueue(ctx, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  resources.queueUrls = append(resources.queueUrls, queueUrl)

  _, filtering := runner.SubscribeQueueToTopic(ctx, queueName, queueUrl, topicName,
 topicArn, ordinal, isFifoTopic)
  usingFilters = usingFilters || filtering
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PublishMessages(ctx, topicArn, isFifoTopic, contentBasedDeduplication,
 usingFilters)
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 runner.PollForMessages(ctx, resources.queueUrls)

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))

 wantCleanup := questioner.AskBool("Do you want to remove all AWS resources created
 for this scenario? (y/n) ", "y")
 if wantCleanup {
  log.Println("Cleaning up resources...")
  resources.Cleanup(ctx)
 }

 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
 log.Println("Thanks for watching!")
 log.Println(strings.Repeat("-", 88))
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SNS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sns/types"
)

// SnsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 actions
// used in the examples.
type SnsActions struct {
 SnsClient *sns.Client
}



// CreateTopic creates an Amazon SNS topic with the specified name. You can
 optionally
// specify that the topic is created as a FIFO topic and whether it uses content-
based
// deduplication instead of ID-based deduplication.
func (actor SnsActions) CreateTopic(ctx context.Context, topicName string,
 isFifoTopic bool, contentBasedDeduplication bool) (string, error) {
 var topicArn string
 topicAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoTopic {
  topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
 }
 if contentBasedDeduplication {
  topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
 }
 topic, err := actor.SnsClient.CreateTopic(ctx, &sns.CreateTopicInput{
  Name:       aws.String(topicName),
  Attributes: topicAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicName, err)
 } else {
```

```
  topicArn = *topic.TopicArn
 }

 return topicArn, err
}



// DeleteTopic delete an Amazon SNS topic.
func (actor SnsActions) DeleteTopic(ctx context.Context, topicArn string) error {
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.DeleteTopic(ctx, &sns.DeleteTopicInput{
  TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete topic %v. Here's why: %v\n", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}



// SubscribeQueue subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to an
// Amazon SNS topic. When filterMap is not nil, it is used to specify a filter
 policy
// so that messages are only sent to the queue when the message has the specified
 attributes.
func (actor SnsActions) SubscribeQueue(ctx context.Context, topicArn string,
 queueArn string, filterMap map[string][]string) (string, error) {
 var subscriptionArn string
 var attributes map[string]string
 if filterMap != nil {
  filterBytes, err := json.Marshal(filterMap)
  if err != nil {
   log.Printf("Couldn't create filter policy, here's why: %v\n", err)
   return "", err
  }
  attributes = map[string]string{"FilterPolicy": string(filterBytes)}
 }
 output, err := actor.SnsClient.Subscribe(ctx, &sns.SubscribeInput{
  Protocol:              aws.String("sqs"),
  TopicArn:              aws.String(topicArn),
  Attributes:            attributes,
  Endpoint:              aws.String(queueArn),
  ReturnSubscriptionArn: true,
 })
```

```
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't susbscribe queue %v to topic %v. Here's why: %v\n",
   queueArn, topicArn, err)
 } else {
  subscriptionArn = *output.SubscriptionArn
 }

 return subscriptionArn, err
}



// Publish publishes a message to an Amazon SNS topic. The message is then sent to
 all
// subscribers. When the topic is a FIFO topic, the message must also contain a
 group ID
// and, when ID-based deduplication is used, a deduplication ID. An optional key-
value
// filter attribute can be specified so that the message can be filtered according
 to
// a filter policy.
func (actor SnsActions) Publish(ctx context.Context, topicArn string, message
 string, groupId string, dedupId string, filterKey string, filterValue string) error
 {
 publishInput := sns.PublishInput{TopicArn: aws.String(topicArn), Message:
 aws.String(message)}
 if groupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageGroupId = aws.String(groupId)
 }
 if dedupId != "" {
  publishInput.MessageDeduplicationId = aws.String(dedupId)
 }
 if filterKey != "" && filterValue != "" {
  publishInput.MessageAttributes = map[string]types.MessageAttributeValue{
   filterKey: {DataType: aws.String("String"), StringValue:
 aws.String(filterValue)},
  }
 }
 _, err := actor.SnsClient.Publish(ctx, &publishInput)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't publish message to topic %v. Here's why: %v", topicArn, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Define a struct that wraps Amazon SQS actions used in this example.

```
import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "log"

 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/aws"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs"
 "github.com/aws/aws-sdk-go-v2/service/sqs/types"
)

// SqsActions encapsulates the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) actions
// used in the examples.
type SqsActions struct {
 SqsClient *sqs.Client
}



// CreateQueue creates an Amazon SQS queue with the specified name. You can specify
// whether the queue is created as a FIFO queue.
func (actor SqsActions) CreateQueue(ctx context.Context, queueName string,
 isFifoQueue bool) (string, error) {
 var queueUrl string
 queueAttributes := map[string]string{}
 if isFifoQueue {
  queueAttributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
 }
 queue, err := actor.SqsClient.CreateQueue(ctx, &sqs.CreateQueueInput{
  QueueName:  aws.String(queueName),
  Attributes: queueAttributes,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueName, err)
 } else {
  queueUrl = *queue.QueueUrl
 }
```

```
 return queueUrl, err
}



// GetQueueArn uses the GetQueueAttributes action to get the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN)
// of an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) GetQueueArn(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) (string,
 error) {
 var queueArn string
 arnAttributeName := types.QueueAttributeNameQueueArn
 attribute, err := actor.SqsClient.GetQueueAttributes(ctx,
 &sqs.GetQueueAttributesInput{
  QueueUrl:       aws.String(queueUrl),
  AttributeNames: []types.QueueAttributeName{arnAttributeName},
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get ARN for queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  queueArn = attribute.Attributes[string(arnAttributeName)]
 }
 return queueArn, err
}



// AttachSendMessagePolicy uses the SetQueueAttributes action to attach a policy to
 an
// Amazon SQS queue that allows the specified Amazon SNS topic to send messages to
 the
// queue.
func (actor SqsActions) AttachSendMessagePolicy(ctx context.Context, queueUrl
 string, queueArn string, topicArn string) error {
 policyDoc := PolicyDocument{
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: []PolicyStatement{{
   Effect:    "Allow",
   Action:    "sqs:SendMessage",
   Principal: map[string]string{"Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"},
   Resource:  aws.String(queueArn),
   Condition: PolicyCondition{"ArnEquals": map[string]string{"aws:SourceArn":
 topicArn}},
```

```
  }},
 }
 policyBytes, err := json.Marshal(policyDoc)
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't create policy document. Here's why: %v\n", err)
  return err
 }
 _, err = actor.SqsClient.SetQueueAttributes(ctx, &sqs.SetQueueAttributesInput{
  Attributes: map[string]string{
   string(types.QueueAttributeNamePolicy): string(policyBytes),
  },
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't set send message policy on queue %v. Here's why: %v\n",
 queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}

// PolicyDocument defines a policy document as a Go struct that can be serialized
// to JSON.
type PolicyDocument struct {
 Version   string
 Statement []PolicyStatement
}

// PolicyStatement defines a statement in a policy document.
type PolicyStatement struct {
 Effect    string
 Action    string
 Principal map[string]string `json:",omitempty"`
 Resource  *string           `json:",omitempty"`
 Condition PolicyCondition   `json:",omitempty"`
}

// PolicyCondition defines a condition in a policy.
type PolicyCondition map[string]map[string]string



// GetMessages uses the ReceiveMessage action to get messages from an Amazon SQS
 queue.
```

```
func (actor SqsActions) GetMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 maxMessages int32, waitTime int32) ([]types.Message, error) {
 var messages []types.Message
 result, err := actor.SqsClient.ReceiveMessage(ctx, &sqs.ReceiveMessageInput{
  QueueUrl:            aws.String(queueUrl),
  MaxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
  WaitTimeSeconds:     waitTime,
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't get messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 } else {
  messages = result.Messages
 }
 return messages, err
}



// DeleteMessages uses the DeleteMessageBatch action to delete a batch of messages
 from
// an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteMessages(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string,
 messages []types.Message) error {
 entries := make([]types.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry, len(messages))
 for msgIndex := range messages {
  entries[msgIndex].Id = aws.String(fmt.Sprintf("%v", msgIndex))
  entries[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle = messages[msgIndex].ReceiptHandle
 }
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteMessageBatch(ctx, &sqs.DeleteMessageBatchInput{
  Entries:  entries,
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl),
 })
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete messages from queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl,
 err)
 }
 return err
}



// DeleteQueue deletes an Amazon SQS queue.
func (actor SqsActions) DeleteQueue(ctx context.Context, queueUrl string) error {
 _, err := actor.SqsClient.DeleteQueue(ctx, &sqs.DeleteQueueInput{
```

```
  QueueUrl: aws.String(queueUrl)})
 if err != nil {
  log.Printf("Couldn't delete queue %v. Here's why: %v\n", queueUrl, err)
 }
 return err
}
```

Clean up resources.

```
import (
 "context"
 "fmt"
 "log"
 "topics_and_queues/actions"
)

// Resources keeps track of AWS resources created during an example and handles
// cleanup when the example finishes.
type Resources struct {
 topicArn  string
 queueUrls []string
 snsActor  *actions.SnsActions
 sqsActor  *actions.SqsActions
}

// Cleanup deletes all AWS resources created during an example.
func (resources Resources) Cleanup(ctx context.Context) {
 defer func() {
  if r := recover(); r != nil {
   fmt.Println("Something went wrong during cleanup. Use the AWS Management Console
\n" +
    "to remove any remaining resources that were created for this scenario.")
  }
 }()

 var err error
 if resources.topicArn != "" {
  log.Printf("Deleting topic %v.\n", resources.topicArn)
  err = resources.snsActor.DeleteTopic(ctx, resources.topicArn)
  if err != nil {
```

```
    panic(err)
   }
  }

  for _, queueUrl := range resources.queueUrls {
   log.Printf("Deleting queue %v.\n", queueUrl)
   err = resources.sqsActor.DeleteQueue(ctx, queueUrl)
   if err != nil {
    panic(err)
   }
  }
 }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Go API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package integration_sqs_to_lambda

import (
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(event events.SQSEvent) error {
 for _, record := range event.Records {
  err := processMessage(record)
  if err != nil {
   return err
  }
 }
 fmt.Println("done")
 return nil
}

func processMessage(record events.SQSMessage) error {
 fmt.Printf("Processed message %s\n", record.Body)
 // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
 return nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Go V2

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Go.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package main

import (
 "context"
 "encoding/json"
 "fmt"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/events"
 "github.com/aws/aws-lambda-go/lambda"
)

func handler(ctx context.Context, sqsEvent events.SQSEvent) (map[string]interface{},
 error) {
 batchItemFailures := []map[string]interface{}{}

 for _, message := range sqsEvent.Records {

  if /* Your message processing condition here */ {
   batchItemFailures = append(batchItemFailures, map[string]interface{}
{"itemIdentifier": message.MessageId})
  }
 }

 sqsBatchResponse := map[string]interface{}{
  "batchItemFailures": batchItemFailures,
```

```
 }
 return sqsBatchResponse, nil
}

func main() {
 lambda.Start(handler)
}
```

Code examples for SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for JavaScript (v2) Developer Guide** – More about using JavaScript with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- CloudWatch examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- CloudWatch Events examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- AWS Entity Resolution examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

- EventBridge examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- IAM examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- Lambda examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- S3 Glacier examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)
- AWS STS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

CloudWatch examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  AlarmNames: ["Web_Server_CPU_Utilization"],
};

cw.deleteAlarms(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
```

```
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

cw.describeAlarms({ StateValue: "INSUFFICIENT_DATA" }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    // List the names of all current alarms in the console
    data.MetricAlarms.forEach(function (item, index, array) {
      console.log(item.AlarmName);
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });
```

```
cw.disableAlarmActions(
  { AlarmNames: ["Web_Server_CPU_Utilization"] },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  AlarmName: "Web_Server_CPU_Utilization",
  ComparisonOperator: "GreaterThanThreshold",
  EvaluationPeriods: 1,
```

```
  MetricName: "CPUUtilization",
  Namespace: "AWS/EC2",
  Period: 60,
  Statistic: "Average",
  Threshold: 70.0,
  ActionsEnabled: true,
  AlarmActions: ["ACTION_ARN"],
  AlarmDescription: "Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%",
  Dimensions: [
    {
      Name: "InstanceId",
      Value: "INSTANCE_ID",
    },
  ],
  Unit: "Percent",
};

cw.putMetricAlarm(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Alarm action added", data);
    var paramsEnableAlarmAction = {
      AlarmNames: [params.AlarmName],
    };
    cw.enableAlarmActions(paramsEnableAlarmAction, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Alarm action enabled", data);
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListMetrics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  Dimensions: [
    {
      Name: "LogGroupName" /* required */,
    },
  ],
  MetricName: "IncomingLogEvents",
  Namespace: "AWS/Logs",
};

cw.listMetrics(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Metrics", JSON.stringify(data.Metrics));
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

var params = {
  AlarmName: "Web_Server_CPU_Utilization",
  ComparisonOperator: "GreaterThanThreshold",
  EvaluationPeriods: 1,
  MetricName: "CPUUtilization",
  Namespace: "AWS/EC2",
  Period: 60,
  Statistic: "Average",
  Threshold: 70.0,
  ActionsEnabled: false,
  AlarmDescription: "Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%",
  Dimensions: [
    {
      Name: "InstanceId",
      Value: "INSTANCE_ID",
    },
  ],
  Unit: "Percent",
};

cw.putMetricAlarm(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
```

```
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatch service object
var cw = new AWS.CloudWatch({ apiVersion: "2010-08-01" });

// Create parameters JSON for putMetricData
var params = {
  MetricData: [
    {
      MetricName: "PAGES_VISITED",
      Dimensions: [
        {
          Name: "UNIQUE_PAGES",
          Value: "URLS",
        },
      ],
      Unit: "None",
      Value: 1.0,
    },
  ],
```

```
  Namespace: "SITE/TRAFFIC",
};

cw.putMetricData(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", JSON.stringify(data));
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

CloudWatch Events examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with CloudWatch Events.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var cwevents = new AWS.CloudWatchEvents({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Entries: [
    {
      Detail: '{ "key1": "value1", "key2": "value2" }',
      DetailType: "appRequestSubmitted",
      Resources: ["RESOURCE_ARN"],
      Source: "com.company.app",
    },
  ],
};

cwevents.putEvents(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Entries);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PutRule

The following code example shows how to use PutRule.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var cwevents = new AWS.CloudWatchEvents({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Name: "DEMO_EVENT",
  RoleArn: "IAM_ROLE_ARN",
  ScheduleExpression: "rate(5 minutes)",
  State: "ENABLED",
};

cwevents.putRule(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.RuleArn);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var cwevents = new AWS.CloudWatchEvents({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Rule: "DEMO_EVENT",
  Targets: [
    {
      Arn: "LAMBDA_FUNCTION_ARN",
      Id: "myCloudWatchEventsTarget",
    },
  ],
};

cwevents.putTargets(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the CloudWatchLogs service object
var cwl = new AWS.CloudWatchLogs({ apiVersion: "2014-03-28" });

var params = {
  filterName: "FILTER",
  logGroupName: "LOG_GROUP",
};
```

```
cwl.deleteSubscriptionFilter(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeSubscriptionFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the CloudWatchLogs service object
var cwl = new AWS.CloudWatchLogs({ apiVersion: "2014-03-28" });

var params = {
  logGroupName: "GROUP_NAME",
  limit: 5,
};

cwl.describeSubscriptionFilters(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
```

```
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.subscriptionFilters);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `PutSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the CloudWatchLogs service object
var cwl = new AWS.CloudWatchLogs({ apiVersion: "2014-03-28" });

var params = {
  destinationArn: "LAMBDA_FUNCTION_ARN",
  filterName: "FILTER_NAME",
  filterPattern: "ERROR",
  logGroupName: "LOG_GROUP",
};

cwl.putSubscriptionFilter(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
```

```
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

DynamoDB examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with DynamoDB.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  RequestItems: {
    TABLE_NAME: {
      Keys: [
        { KEY_NAME: { N: "KEY_VALUE_1" } },
        { KEY_NAME: { N: "KEY_VALUE_2" } },
        { KEY_NAME: { N: "KEY_VALUE_3" } },
      ],
      ProjectionExpression: "KEY_NAME, ATTRIBUTE",
    },
  },
};

ddb.batchGetItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    data.Responses.TABLE_NAME.forEach(function (element, index, array) {
      console.log(element);
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  RequestItems: {
    TABLE_NAME: [
      {
        PutRequest: {
          Item: {
            KEY: { N: "KEY_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_1: { S: "ATTRIBUTE_1_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_2: { N: "ATTRIBUTE_2_VALUE" },
          },
        },
      },
      {
        PutRequest: {
          Item: {
            KEY: { N: "KEY_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_1: { S: "ATTRIBUTE_1_VALUE" },
            ATTRIBUTE_2: { N: "ATTRIBUTE_2_VALUE" },
          },
        },
      },
    ],
  },
};

ddb.batchWriteItem(params, function (err, data) {
```

```
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  AttributeDefinitions: [
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_ID",
      AttributeType: "N",
    },
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_NAME",
      AttributeType: "S",
    },
```

```
  ],
  KeySchema: [
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_ID",
      KeyType: "HASH",
    },
    {
      AttributeName: "CUSTOMER_NAME",
      KeyType: "RANGE",
    },
  ],
  ProvisionedThroughput: {
    ReadCapacityUnits: 1,
    WriteCapacityUnits: 1,
  },
  TableName: "CUSTOMER_LIST",
  StreamSpecification: {
    StreamEnabled: false,
  },
};

// Call DynamoDB to create the table
ddb.createTable(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Table Created", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an item from a table.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "TABLE",
  Key: {
    KEY_NAME: { N: "VALUE" },
  },
};

// Call DynamoDB to delete the item from the table
ddb.deleteItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

Delete an item from a table using the DynamoDB document client.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  Key: {
    HASH_KEY: VALUE,
  },
  TableName: "TABLE",
};

docClient.delete(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });
```

```
var params = {
  TableName: process.argv[2],
};

// Call DynamoDB to delete the specified table
ddb.deleteTable(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err && err.code === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
    console.log("Error: Table not found");
  } else if (err && err.code === "ResourceInUseException") {
    console.log("Error: Table in use");
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
```

```
  TableName: process.argv[2],
};

// Call DynamoDB to retrieve the selected table descriptions
ddb.describeTable(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Table.KeySchema);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an item from a table.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "TABLE",
  Key: {
```

```
    KEY_NAME: { N: "001" },
  },
  ProjectionExpression: "ATTRIBUTE_NAME",
};

// Call DynamoDB to read the item from the table
ddb.getItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Item);
  }
});
```

Get an item from a table using the DynamoDB document client.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "EPISODES_TABLE",
  Key: { KEY_NAME: VALUE },
};

docClient.get(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Item);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

// Call DynamoDB to retrieve the list of tables
ddb.listTables({ Limit: 10 }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err.code);
  } else {
    console.log("Table names are ", data.TableNames);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an item in a table.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the DynamoDB service object
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "CUSTOMER_LIST",
  Item: {
    CUSTOMER_ID: { N: "001" },
    CUSTOMER_NAME: { S: "Richard Roe" },
  },
};

// Call DynamoDB to add the item to the table
ddb.putItem(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

Put an item in a table using the DynamoDB document client.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  TableName: "TABLE",
  Item: {
    HASHKEY: VALUE,
    ATTRIBUTE_1: "STRING_VALUE",
    ATTRIBUTE_2: VALUE_2,
  },
};

docClient.put(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create DynamoDB document client
var docClient = new AWS.DynamoDB.DocumentClient({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

var params = {
  ExpressionAttributeValues: {
    ":s": 2,
    ":e": 9,
    ":topic": "PHRASE",
  },
  KeyConditionExpression: "Season = :s and Episode > :e",
  FilterExpression: "contains (Subtitle, :topic)",
  TableName: "EPISODES_TABLE",
};

docClient.query(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Items);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js.
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
```

```
// Set the AWS Region.
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create DynamoDB service object.
var ddb = new AWS.DynamoDB({ apiVersion: "2012-08-10" });

const params = {
  // Specify which items in the results are returned.
  FilterExpression: "Subtitle = :topic AND Season = :s AND Episode = :e",
  // Define the expression attribute value, which are substitutes for the values you
 want to compare.
  ExpressionAttributeValues: {
    ":topic": { S: "SubTitle2" },
    ":s": { N: 1 },
    ":e": { N: 2 },
  },
  // Set the projection expression, which are the attributes that you want.
  ProjectionExpression: "Season, Episode, Title, Subtitle",
  TableName: "EPISODES_TABLE",
};

ddb.scan(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
    data.Items.forEach(function (element, index, array) {
      console.log(
        "printing",
        element.Title.S + " (" + element.Subtitle.S + ")"
      );
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Invoke a Lambda function from a browser

The following code example shows how to invoke an AWS Lambda function from a browser.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

AWS Entity Resolution examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with AWS Entity Resolution.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create Schema Mapping.
- Create an AWS Entity Resolution workflow.
- Start the matching job for the workflow.

- Get details for the matching job.
- Get Schema Mapping.
- List all Schema Mappings.
- Tag the Schema Mapping resource.
- Delete the AWS Entity Resolution Assets.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Entity Resolution features.

```
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  CreateStackCommand,
  DeleteStackCommand,
  DescribeStacksCommand,
  waitUntilStackExists,
  waitUntilStackCreateComplete,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import {
  EntityResolutionClient,
  CreateSchemaMappingCommand,
  CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  GetMatchingJobCommand,
  StartMatchingJobCommand,
  GetSchemaMappingCommand,
  ListSchemaMappingsCommand,
  TagResourceCommand,
```

```
  DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  DeleteSchemaMappingCommand,
  ConflictException,
  ValidationException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import {
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  S3Client,
  ListObjectsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { readFile } from "node:fs/promises";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";

const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
const __dirname = dirname(__filename);
const stackName = `${data.inputs.entityResolutionStack}`;

/*The inputs for this example can be edited in the ../input.json.*/
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;
/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
/* v8 ignore next 3 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "input",
  verbose: "false",
  skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
});

const region = "eu-west-1";

const entityResolutionClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });
const cloudFormationClient = new CloudFormationClient({ region: region });
const s3Client = new S3Client({ region: region });
```

```
const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "AWS Entity Resolution is a fully-managed machine learning service provided by " +
    "Amazon Web Services (AWS) that helps organizations extract, link, and " +
    "organize information from multiple data sources. It leverages natural " +
    "language processing and deep learning models to identify and resolve " +
    "entities, such as people, places, organizations, and products, " +
    "across structured and unstructured data.\n" +
    "\n" +
    "With Entity Resolution, customers can build robust data integration " +
    "pipelines to combine and reconcile data from multiple systems, databases, " +
    "and documents. The service can handle ambiguous, incomplete, or conflicting " +
    "information, and provide a unified view of entities and their relationships. "
 +
    "This can be particularly valuable in applications such as customer 360, " +
    "fraud detection, supply chain management, and knowledge management, where " +
    "accurate entity identification is crucial.\n" +
    "\n" +
    "The `EntityResolutionAsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x " +
    "provides a set of methods to programmatically interact with the AWS Entity " +
    "Resolution service. This allows developers to automate the entity extraction, "
 +
    "linking, and deduplication process as part of their data processing workflows.
 " +
    "With Entity Resolution, organizations can unlock the value of their data, " +
    "improve decision-making, and enhance customer experiences by having a reliable,
 " +
    "comprehensive view of their key entities.",

  { header: true },
);
const displayBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayBuildCloudFormationStack",
  "To prepare the AWS resources needed for this scenario application, the next step
 uploads " +
    "a CloudFormation template whose resulting stack creates the following
 resources:\n" +
    "- An AWS Glue Data Catalog table \n" +
    "- An AWS IAM role \n" +
    "- An AWS S3 bucket \n" +
    "- An AWS Entity Resolution Schema \n" +
    "It can take a couple minutes for the Stack to finish creating the resources.",
);
```

```
const sdkBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkBuildCloudFormationStack",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const data = readFileSync(
        `${__dirname}/../../../../resources/cfn/entity-resolution-basics/entity-
resolution-basics-template.yml`,
        "utf8",
      );
      await cloudFormationClient.send(
        new CreateStackCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
          TemplateBody: data,
          Capabilities: ["CAPABILITY_IAM"],
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilStackExists(
        { client: cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      await waitUntilStackCreateComplete(
        { client: cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      const stack = await cloudFormationClient.send(
        new DescribeStacksCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
        }),
      );

      state.entityResolutionRole = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[1];
      state.jsonGlueTable = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[2];
      state.CSVGlueTable = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[3];
      state.glueDataBucket = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[0];
      state.stackName = stack.StackName;
      console.log(state.glueDataBucket);
      console.log(
        `The  ARN of the EntityResolution Role is
 ${state.entityResolutionRole.OutputValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The ARN of the Json Glue Table is ${state.jsonGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
```

```
        `The ARN of the CSV Glue Table is ${state.CSVGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The name of the Glue Data Bucket is ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue}\n`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        `Uploading the following JSON in ../data.json to the
 ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue} S3 bucket...`,
      );
      const bucketName = state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue;

      const putObjectParams = {
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: "jsonData/data.json",
        Body: await readFileSync(
          `${__dirname}/../../../../javascriptv3/example_code/entityresolution/
data.json`,
        ),
      };
      const command = new PutObjectCommand(putObjectParams);
      const response = await s3Client.send(command);
      console.log(
        `../data.json file data uploaded to the ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue}
 S3 bucket.\n`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        `Uploading the CSV data in ../data.csv to the
 ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue} S3 bucket...`,
      );

      const bucketName = state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue;
      const putObjectParams = {
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: "csvData/data.csv",
```

```
        Body: await readFileSync(
          `${__dirname}/../../../../javascriptv3/example_code/entityresolution/
data.csv`,
        ),
      };
      const command = new PutObjectCommand(putObjectParams);
      const response = await s3Client.send(command);
      console.log(
        `../data.csv file data uploaded to the ${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue}
 S3 bucket.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateSchemaMapping = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateSchemaMapping",
  "1. Create Schema Mapping" +
    "Entity Resolution schema mapping aligns and integrates data from " +
    "multiple sources by identifying and matching corresponding entities " +
    "like customers or products. It unifies schemas, resolves conflicts, " +
    "and uses machine learning to link related entities, enabling a " +
    "consolidated, accurate view for improved data quality and decision-making." +
    "\n" +
    "In this example, the schema mapping lines up with the fields in the JSON and
 CSV objects. That is, " +
    " it contains these fields: id, name, and email. ",
);

const sdkCreateSchemaMapping = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateSchemaMapping",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const createSchemaMappingParamsJson = {
      schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
      mappedInputFields: [
        {
          fieldName: "id",
          type: "UNIQUE_ID",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "name",
```

```
          type: "NAME",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "email",
          type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
        },
      ],
    };
    const createSchemaMappingParamsCSV = {
      schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
      mappedInputFields: [
        {
          fieldName: "id",
          type: "UNIQUE_ID",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "name",
          type: "NAME",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "email",
          type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
        },
        {
          fieldName: "phone",
          type: "PROVIDER_ID",
          subType: "STRING",
        },
      ],
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateSchemaMappingCommand(
        createSchemaMappingParamsJson,
      );
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.schemaNameJson = response.schemaName;
      state.schemaArn = response.schemaArn;
      state.idOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[0].fieldName;
      state.nameOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[1].fieldName;
      state.emailOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[2].fieldName;

      console.log("The JSON schema mapping name is ", state.schemaNameJson);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
```

```
        console.error(
          `The schema mapping already exists: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
    try {
      const command = new CreateSchemaMappingCommand(
        createSchemaMappingParamsCSV,
      );
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.schemaNameCSV = response.schemaName;
      state.phoneOutputAttribute = response.mappedInputFields[3].fieldName;
      console.log("The CSV schema mapping name is ", state.schemaNameCSV);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `An unexpected error occurred while creating the geofence collection:
 ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayCreateMatchingWorkflow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateMatchingWorkflow",
  "2. Create an AWS Entity Resolution Workflow. " +
    "An Entity Resolution matching workflow identifies and links records " +
    "across datasets that represent the same real-world entity, such as " +
    "customers or products. Using techniques like schema mapping, " +
    "data profiling, and machine learning algorithms, " +
    "it evaluates attributes like names or emails to detect duplicates " +
    "or relationships, even with variations or inconsistencies. " +
    "The workflow outputs consolidated, de-duplicated data." +
    "\n" +
    "We will use the machine learning-based matching technique.",
);

const sdkCreateMatchingWorkflow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateMatchingWorkflow",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const createMatchingWorkflowParams = {
```

```
      roleArn: `${state.entityResolutionRole.OutputValue}`,
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      description: "Created by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3).",
      inputSourceConfig: [
        {
          inputSourceARN: `${state.jsonGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
          schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
          applyNormalization: false,
        },
        {
          inputSourceARN: `${state.CSVGlueTable.OutputValue}`,
          schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
          applyNormalization: false,
        },
      ],
      outputSourceConfig: [
        {
          outputS3Path: `s3://${state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue}/eroutput`,
          output: [
            {
              name: state.idOutputAttribute,
            },
            {
              name: state.nameOutputAttribute,
            },
            {
              name: state.emailOutputAttribute,
            },
            {
              name: state.phoneOutputAttribute,
            },
          ],
          applyNormalization: false,
        },
      ],
      resolutionTechniques: { resolutionType: "ML_MATCHING" },
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand(
        createMatchingWorkflowParams,
      );
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.workflowArn = response.workflowArn;
      console.log(
```

```
        `Workflow created successfully.\n The workflow ARN is:
 ${response.workflowArn}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The matching workflow already exists: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `There was a validation exception: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayMatchingJobOfWorkflow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayMatchingJobOfWorkflow",
  "3. Start the matching job of the workflow",
);

const sdkMatchingJobOfWorkflow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdk",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const matchingJobOfWorkflowParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new StartMatchingJobCommand(matchingJobOfWorkflowParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.jobID = response.jobId;
      console.log(`Job ID: ${state.jobID} \n
The matching job was successfully started.`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The matching workflow already exists: ${caught.message} \n Exiting
 program.`,
        );
        return;
```

```
      }
    }
  },
);

const displayGetDetailsforJob = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayGetDetailsforJob",
  `4. While the matching job is running, let's look at other API methods. First,
 let's get details for the job `,
);

const sdkGetDetailsforJob = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetDetailsforJob",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const getDetailsforJobParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      jobId: `${state.jobID}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetMatchingJobCommand(getDetailsforJobParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      state.Status = response.status;
      state.response = response;
      console.log(`Job status: ${state.Status} `);
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayGetSchemaMappingJson = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayGetSchemaMappingJson",
  "5. Get the schema mapping for the JSON data.",
);

const sdkGetSchemaMappingJson = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetSchemaMappingJson",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const getSchemaMappingJsonParams = {
      schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetSchemaMappingCommand(getSchemaMappingJsonParams);
```

```
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Schema·mapping·ARN·is:·", response.schemaArn);
      const resultMappings = response.mappedInputFields;
      const noOfResultMappings = resultMappings.length;
      for (let i = 0; i < noOfResultMappings; i++) {
        console.log(
          `Attribute name: ${resultMappings[i].fieldName} `,
          `Attribute type: ${resultMappings[i].type}`,
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayListSchemaMappings = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayListSchemaMappings",
  "6. List Schema Mappings.",
);

const sdkListSchemaMappings = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkListSchemaMappings",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const command = new ListSchemaMappingsCommand({});
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      const noOfSchemas = response.schemaList.length;
      for (let i = 0; i < noOfSchemas; i++) {
        console.log(
          `Schema Mapping Name: ${response.schemaList[i].schemaName} `,
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayTagTheJsonSchema = new ScenarioOutput(
  "display",
  "7. Tag the resource. \n" +
```

```
    "Tags can help you organize and categorize your Entity Resolution resources. " +
    "You can also use them to scope user permissions by granting a user permission "
 +
    "to access or change only resources with certain tag values. " +
    "In Entity Resolution, SchemaMapping and MatchingWorkflow can be tagged. For
 this example, " +
    "the SchemaMapping is tagged.",
);

const sdkTagTheJsonSchema = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetSchemaMappingJson",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const tagResourceCommandParams = {
      resourceArn: state.schemaArn,
      tags: {
        tag1: "tag1Value",
        tag2: "tag2Value",
      },
    };
    try {
      const command = new TagResourceCommand(tagResourceCommandParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Successfully tagged the resource.");
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayGetJobInfo = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayGetJobInfo",
  "8. View the results of the AWS Entity Resolution Workflow.\n " +
    "Please perform this task manually in the AWS Management Console. ",
);

const displayDeleteResources = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDeleteResources",
  "9. Delete the resources \n" +
    "You cannot delete a workflow that is in a running state. So this will take ~30
 minutes.\n" +
    "If you don't want to delete the resources, simply exit this application.",
);
```

```
const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    console.log(
      "You selected to delete the resources. This will take about 30 minutes.",
    );
    await wait(1800);
    const bucketName = state.glueDataBucket.OutputValue;
    try {
      const emptyBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
        const listObjectsCommand = new ListObjectsCommand({
          Bucket: bucketName,
        });
        const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(listObjectsCommand);
        const keys = Contents.map((c) => c.Key);

        const deleteObjectsCommand = new DeleteObjectsCommand({
          Bucket: bucketName,
          Delete: { Objects: keys.map((key) => ({ Key: key })) },
        });
        await s3Client.send(deleteObjectsCommand);
        console.log(`Bucket ${bucketName} emptied successfully.\n`);
      };
      await emptyBucket({ bucketName });
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error);
    }
    try {
      const deleteBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
        const command = new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
        await s3Client.send(command);
        console.log(`Bucket ${bucketName} deleted successfully.\n`);
      };
      await deleteBucket({ bucketName });
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error);
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        "Now we will delete the CloudFormation stack, which deletes the resources
 that were created at the beginning of the scenario.",
      );
      const deleteStackParams = { StackName: `${state.stackName}` };
      const command = new DeleteStackCommand(deleteStackParams);
```

```
      const response = await cloudFormationClient.send(command);
      console.log("CloudFormation stack deleted successfully.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error);
    }
    try {
      const deleteWorkflowParams = {
        workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      };
      const command = new DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand(deleteWorkflowParams);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Workflow deleted successfully!");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `Job associated with workflow ${data.inputs.workflowName} is still
running, so can't be deleted.
          Neither can schemas ${data.inputs.schemaNameJson} and
${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV} associated with it. Please confirm this workflow is
finished in the AWS Management Console, then delete it manually.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
    try {
      const deleteJSONschemaMapping = {
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
      };
      const command = new DeleteSchemaMappingCommand(deleteJSONschemaMapping);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Schema mapping deleted successfully. ");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The schema ${data.inputs.schemaNameJson} can't be deleted because it is
associated with workflow
           ${data.inputs.workflowName}, which is still running. Please confirm this
workflow is finished in the AWS Management Console, then delete it manually.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
    try {
      const deleteCSVschemaMapping = {
```

```
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
      };
      const command = new DeleteSchemaMappingCommand(deleteCSVschemaMapping);
      const response = await entityResolutionClient.send(command);
      console.log("Schema mapping deleted successfully.");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `The schema ${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV} can't be deleted because it
 is associated with workflow ${data.inputs.workflowName}, which is still running.
 Please confirm this workflow is finished in the AWS Management Console, then delete
 it manually.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.confirmDeleteResources === "",
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Location Service Use demo. We hope you " +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!" +
    " For more Amazon Location Services examples in different programming languages,
 have a look at: " +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/
location_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Entity Resolution Basics Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayBuildCloudFormationStack,
  sdkBuildCloudFormationStack,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateSchemaMapping,
  sdkCreateSchemaMapping,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateMatchingWorkflow,
  sdkCreateMatchingWorkflow,
```

```
  pressEnter,
  displayMatchingJobOfWorkflow,
  sdkMatchingJobOfWorkflow,
  pressEnter,
  displayGetDetailsforJob,
  sdkGetDetailsforJob,
  pressEnter,
  displayGetSchemaMappingJson,
  sdkGetSchemaMappingJson,
  pressEnter,
  displayListSchemaMappings,
  sdkListSchemaMappings,
  pressEnter,
  displayTagTheJsonSchema,
  sdkTagTheJsonSchema,
  pressEnter,
  displayGetJobInfo,
  pressEnter,
  displayDeleteResources,
  pressEnter,
  sdkDeleteResources,
  pressEnter,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

EventBridge examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with EventBridge.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var ebevents = new AWS.EventBridge({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Entries: [
    {
      Detail: '{ "key1": "value1", "key2": "value2" }',
```

```
      DetailType: "appRequestSubmitted",
      Resources: ["RESOURCE_ARN"],
      Source: "com.company.app",
    },
  ],
};

ebevents.putEvents(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Entries);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var ebevents = new AWS.EventBridge({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Name: "DEMO_EVENT",
  RoleArn: "IAM_ROLE_ARN",
  ScheduleExpression: "rate(5 minutes)",
```

```
  State: "ENABLED",
};

ebevents.putRule(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.RuleArn);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create CloudWatchEvents service object
var ebevents = new AWS.EventBridge({ apiVersion: "2015-10-07" });

var params = {
  Rule: "DEMO_EVENT",
  Targets: [
    {
      Arn: "LAMBDA_FUNCTION_ARN",
      Id: "myEventBridgeTarget",
    },
  ],
```

```
};

ebevents.putTargets(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with IAM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var paramsRoleList = {
  RoleName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(paramsRoleList, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    var myRolePolicies = data.AttachedPolicies;
    myRolePolicies.forEach(function (val, index, array) {
      if (myRolePolicies[index].PolicyName === "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess") {
        console.log(
          "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess is already attached to this role."
        );
        process.exit();
      }
    });
    var params = {
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess",
      RoleName: process.argv[2],
    };
    iam.attachRolePolicy(params, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Unable to attach policy to role", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Role attached successfully");
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.createAccessKey({ UserName: "IAM_USER_NAME" }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.AccessKey);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.createAccountAlias({ AccountAlias: process.argv[2] }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var myManagedPolicy = {
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: [
    {
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: "logs:CreateLogGroup",
      Resource: "RESOURCE_ARN",
    },
    {
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: [
        "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
        "dynamodb:GetItem",
        "dynamodb:PutItem",
        "dynamodb:Scan",
        "dynamodb:UpdateItem",
      ],
      Resource: "RESOURCE_ARN",
    },
  ],
};

var params = {
  PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify(myManagedPolicy),
  PolicyName: "myDynamoDBPolicy",
};

iam.createPolicy(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  UserName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.getUser(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err && err.code === "NoSuchEntity") {
    iam.createUser(params, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Success", data);
      }
    });
  } else {
    console.log(
      "User " + process.argv[2] + " already exists",
      data.User.UserId
    );
```

```
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  AccessKeyId: "ACCESS_KEY_ID",
  UserName: "USER_NAME",
};

iam.deleteAccessKey(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.deleteAccountAlias({ AccountAlias: process.argv[2] }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServerCertificate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.deleteServerCertificate(
  { ServerCertificateName: "CERTIFICATE_NAME" },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  UserName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.getUser(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err && err.code === "NoSuchEntity") {
    console.log("User " + process.argv[2] + " does not exist.");
  } else {
    iam.deleteUser(params, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Success", data);
      }
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var paramsRoleList = {
  RoleName: process.argv[2],
};

iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(paramsRoleList, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    var myRolePolicies = data.AttachedPolicies;
    myRolePolicies.forEach(function (val, index, array) {
      if (myRolePolicies[index].PolicyName === "AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess") {
        var params = {
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonDynamoDBFullAccess",
          RoleName: process.argv[2],
        };
        iam.detachRolePolicy(params, function (err, data) {
          if (err) {
            console.log("Unable to detach policy from role", err);
          } else {
            console.log("Policy detached from role successfully");
            process.exit();
          }
        });
      }
    });
  }
```

```
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetAccessKeyLastUsed`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccessKeyLastUsed`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.getAccessKeyLastUsed(
  { AccessKeyId: "ACCESS_KEY_ID" },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data.AccessKeyLastUsed);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

GetPolicy

The following code example shows how to use GetPolicy.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSLambdaExecute",
};

iam.getPolicy(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.Policy.Description);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

GetServerCertificate

The following code example shows how to use GetServerCertificate.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.getServerCertificate(
  { ServerCertificateName: "CERTIFICATE_NAME" },
  function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log("Error", err);
    } else {
      console.log("Success", data);
    }
  }
);
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  MaxItems: 5,
  UserName: "IAM_USER_NAME",
};

iam.listAccessKeys(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.listAccountAliases({ MaxItems: 10 }, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListServerCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListServerCertificates`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

iam.listServerCertificates({}, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
```

```
  MaxItems: 10,
};

iam.listUsers(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    var users = data.Users || [];
    users.forEach(function (user) {
      console.log("User " + user.UserName + " created", user.CreateDate);
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  AccessKeyId: "ACCESS_KEY_ID",
  Status: "Active",
```

```
  UserName: "USER_NAME",
};

iam.updateAccessKey(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateServerCertificate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  ServerCertificateName: "CERTIFICATE_NAME",
  NewServerCertificateName: "NEW_CERTIFICATE_NAME",
};

iam.updateServerCertificate(params, function (err, data) {
```

```
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the IAM service object
var iam = new AWS.IAM({ apiVersion: "2010-05-08" });

var params = {
  UserName: process.argv[2],
  NewUserName: process.argv[3],
};

iam.updateUser(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
```

```
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with Lambda.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Invoke a Lambda function from a browser

The following code example shows how to invoke an AWS Lambda function from a browser.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendMessages`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessages`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
"use strict";

const AWS = require("aws-sdk");

// The AWS Region that you want to use to send the email. For a list of
// AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/
const aws_region = "us-west-2";

// The "From" address. This address has to be verified in Amazon Pinpoint
```

```
// in the region that you use to send email.
const senderAddress = "sender@example.com";

// The address on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint account is in
// the sandbox, this address also has to be verified.
var toAddress = "recipient@example.com";

// The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this message.
// Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
// that you choose.
const appId = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample";

// The subject line of the email.
var subject = "Amazon Pinpoint (AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)";

// The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
var body_text = `Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)
-----------------------------------------------------
This email was sent with Amazon Pinpoint using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in
 Node.js.
For more information, see https:\/\/aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/`;

// The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support HTML content.
var body_html = `<html>
<head></head>
<body>
  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)</h1>
  <p>This email was sent with
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>the Amazon Pinpoint API</a> using the
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/'>
      AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js</a>.</p>
</body>
</html>`;

// The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
// message body of the email.
var charset = "UTF-8";

// Specify that you're using a shared credentials file.
var credentials = new AWS.SharedIniFileCredentials({ profile: "default" });
AWS.config.credentials = credentials;

// Specify the region.
AWS.config.update({ region: aws_region });
```

```
//Create a new Pinpoint object.
var pinpoint = new AWS.Pinpoint();

// Specify the parameters to pass to the API.
var params = {
  ApplicationId: appId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [toAddress]: {
        ChannelType: "EMAIL",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      EmailMessage: {
        FromAddress: senderAddress,
        SimpleEmail: {
          Subject: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: subject,
          },
          HtmlPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_html,
          },
          TextPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_text,
          },
        },
      },
    },
  },
};

//Try to send the email.
pinpoint.sendMessages(params, function (err, data) {
  // If something goes wrong, print an error message.
  if (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
  } else {
    console.log(
      "Email sent! Message ID: ",
      data["MessageResponse"]["Result"][toAddress]["MessageId"]
```

```
    );
  }
});
```

Send an SMS message.

```
"use strict";

var AWS = require("aws-sdk");

// The AWS Region that you want to use to send the message. For a list of
// AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint API is available, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/apireference/.
var aws_region = "us-east-1";

// The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone number
// or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
// account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format.
var originationNumber = "+12065550199";

// The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify the
// phone number in E.164 format.
var destinationNumber = "+14255550142";

// The content of the SMS message.
var message =
  "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint " +
  "using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js. Reply STOP to " +
  "opt out.";

// The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this message.
// Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
// that you choose.
var applicationId = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample";

// The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
// time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
// marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
var messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";
```

```
// The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
var registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

// The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
// varies by country or region. For more information, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-countries.html
var senderId = "MySenderID";

// Specify that you're using a shared credentials file, and optionally specify
// the profile that you want to use.
var credentials = new AWS.SharedIniFileCredentials({ profile: "default" });
AWS.config.credentials = credentials;

// Specify the region.
AWS.config.update({ region: aws_region });

//Create a new Pinpoint object.
var pinpoint = new AWS.Pinpoint();

// Specify the parameters to pass to the API.
var params = {
  ApplicationId: applicationId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [destinationNumber]: {
        ChannelType: "SMS",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      SMSMessage: {
        Body: message,
        Keyword: registeredKeyword,
        MessageType: messageType,
        OriginationNumber: originationNumber,
        SenderId: senderId,
      },
    },
  },
};

//Try to send the message.
pinpoint.sendMessages(params, function (err, data) {
  // If something goes wrong, print an error message.
  if (err) {
```

```
    console.log(err.message);
    // Otherwise, show the unique ID for the message.
  } else {
    console.log(
      "Message sent! " +
        data["MessageResponse"]["Result"][destinationNumber]["StatusMessage"]
    );
  }
});
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendVoiceMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendVoiceMessage`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"use strict";

var AWS = require("aws-sdk");

// The AWS Region that you want to use to send the voice message. For a list of
// AWS Regions where the Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API is available, see
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint-sms-voice/latest/APIReference/
var aws_region = "us-east-1";

// The phone number that the message is sent from. The phone number that you
// specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best results,
 you
// should specify the phone number in E.164 format.
var originationNumber = "+12065550110";

// The recipient's phone number. For best results, you should specify the phone
// number in E.164 format.
var destinationNumber = "+12065550142";

// The language to use when sending the message. For a list of supported
// languages, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/SupportedLanguage.html
var languageCode = "en-US";

// The Amazon Polly voice that you want to use to send the message. For a list
// of voices, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/voicelist.html
var voiceId = "Matthew";

// The content of the message. This example uses SSML to customize and control
// certain aspects of the message, such as the volume or the speech rate.
// The message can't contain any line breaks.
var ssmlMessage =
  "<speak>" +
  "This is a test message sent from <emphasis>Amazon Pinpoint</emphasis> " +
```

```
  "using the <break strength='weak'/>AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js. " +
  "<amazon:effect phonation='soft'>Thank you for listening." +
  "</amazon:effect>" +
  "</speak>";

// The phone number that you want to appear on the recipient's device. The phone
// number that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account.
var callerId = "+12065550199";

// The configuration set that you want to use to send the message.
var configurationSet = "ConfigSet";

// Specify that you're using a shared credentials file, and optionally specify
// the profile that you want to use.
var credentials = new AWS.SharedIniFileCredentials({ profile: "default" });
AWS.config.credentials = credentials;

// Specify the region.
AWS.config.update({ region: aws_region });

//Create a new Pinpoint object.
var pinpointsmsvoice = new AWS.PinpointSMSVoice();

var params = {
  CallerId: callerId,
  ConfigurationSetName: configurationSet,
  Content: {
    SSMLMessage: {
      LanguageCode: languageCode,
      Text: ssmlMessage,
      VoiceId: voiceId,
    },
  },
  DestinationPhoneNumber: destinationNumber,
  OriginationPhoneNumber: originationNumber,
};

//Try to send the message.
pinpointsmsvoice.sendVoiceMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  // If something goes wrong, print an error message.
  if (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
    // Otherwise, show the unique ID for the message.
  } else {
```

```
    console.log("Message sent! Message ID: " + data["MessageId"]);
  }
});
```

- For API details, see SendVoiceMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

S3 Glacier examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with S3 Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateVault`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVault`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create a new service object
var glacier = new AWS.Glacier({ apiVersion: "2012-06-01" });
// Call Glacier to create the vault
glacier.createVault({ vaultName: "YOUR_VAULT_NAME" }, function (err) {
  if (!err) {
    console.log("Created vault!");
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UploadArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadArchive`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create a new service object and buffer
var glacier = new AWS.Glacier({ apiVersion: "2012-06-01" });
buffer = Buffer.alloc(2.5 * 1024 * 1024); // 2.5MB buffer

var params = { vaultName: "YOUR_VAULT_NAME", body: buffer };
// Call Glacier to upload the archive.
glacier.uploadArchive(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error uploading archive!", err);
  } else {
```

```
    console.log("Archive ID", data.archiveId);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UploadMultipartPart`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadMultipartPart`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a multipart upload of 1 megabyte chunks of a Buffer object.

```
// Create a new service object and some supporting variables
var glacier = new AWS.Glacier({ apiVersion: "2012-06-01" }),
  vaultName = "YOUR_VAULT_NAME",
  buffer = new Buffer(2.5 * 1024 * 1024), // 2.5MB buffer
  partSize = 1024 * 1024, // 1MB chunks,
  numPartsLeft = Math.ceil(buffer.length / partSize),
  startTime = new Date(),
  params = { vaultName: vaultName, partSize: partSize.toString() };

// Compute the complete SHA-256 tree hash so we can pass it
// to completeMultipartUpload request at the end
var treeHash = glacier.computeChecksums(buffer).treeHash;

// Initiate the multipart upload
console.log("Initiating upload to", vaultName);
// Call Glacier to initiate the upload.
glacier.initiateMultipartUpload(params, function (mpErr, multipart) {
  if (mpErr) {
    console.log("Error!", mpErr.stack);
    return;
```

```
  }
  console.log("Got upload ID", multipart.uploadId);

  // Grab each partSize chunk and upload it as a part
  for (var i = 0; i < buffer.length; i += partSize) {
    var end = Math.min(i + partSize, buffer.length),
      partParams = {
        vaultName: vaultName,
        uploadId: multipart.uploadId,
        range: "bytes " + i + "-" + (end - 1) + "/*",
        body: buffer.slice(i, end),
      };

    // Send a single part
    console.log("Uploading part", i, "=", partParams.range);
    glacier.uploadMultipartPart(partParams, function (multiErr, mData) {
      if (multiErr) return;
      console.log("Completed part", this.request.params.range);
      if (--numPartsLeft > 0) return; // complete only when all parts uploaded

      var doneParams = {
        vaultName: vaultName,
        uploadId: multipart.uploadId,
        archiveSize: buffer.length.toString(),
        checksum: treeHash, // the computed tree hash
      };

      console.log("Completing upload...");
      glacier.completeMultipartUpload(doneParams, function (err, data) {
        if (err) {
          console.log("An error occurred while uploading the archive");
          console.log(err);
        } else {
          var delta = (new Date() - startTime) / 1000;
          console.log("Completed upload in", delta, "seconds");
          console.log("Archive ID:", data.archiveId);
          console.log("Checksum:  ", data.checksum);
        }
      });
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UploadMultipartPart in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });
```

```
// Create promise and SNS service object
var getTopicAttribsPromise = new AWS.SNS({ apiVersion: "2010-03-31" })
  .getTopicAttributes({ TopicArn: "TOPIC_ARN" })
  .promise();

// Handle promise's fulfilled/rejected states
getTopicAttribsPromise
  .then(function (data) {
    console.log(data);
  })
  .catch(function (err) {
    console.error(err, err.stack);
  });
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ChangeMessageVisibility`

The following code example shows how to use `ChangeMessageVisibility`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive an Amazon SQS message and change its timeout visibility.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region to us-west-2
AWS.config.update({ region: "us-west-2" });

// Create the SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var queueURL = "https://sqs.REGION.amazonaws.com/ACCOUNT-ID/QUEUE-NAME";

var params = {
  AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
  MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
  MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
  QueueUrl: queueURL,
};

sqs.receiveMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Receive Error", err);
  } else {
    // Make sure we have a message
    if (data.Messages != null) {
      var visibilityParams = {
        QueueUrl: queueURL,
        ReceiptHandle: data.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
        VisibilityTimeout: 20, // 20 second timeout
      };
      sqs.changeMessageVisibility(visibilityParams, function (err, data) {
        if (err) {
          console.log("Delete Error", err);
        } else {
          console.log("Timeout Changed", data);
```

```
        }
      });
    } else {
      console.log("No messages to change");
    }
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS standard queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueName: "SQS_QUEUE_NAME",
  Attributes: {
    DelaySeconds: "60",
    MessageRetentionPeriod: "86400",
  },
};
```

```
sqs.createQueue(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrl);
  }
});
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue that waits for a message to arrive.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueName: "SQS_QUEUE_NAME",
  Attributes: {
    ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "20",
  },
};

sqs.createQueue(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrl);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive and delete Amazon SQS messages.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var queueURL = "SQS_QUEUE_URL";

var params = {
  AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
  MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
  MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
  QueueUrl: queueURL,
  VisibilityTimeout: 20,
  WaitTimeSeconds: 0,
};

sqs.receiveMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Receive Error", err);
  } else if (data.Messages) {
    var deleteParams = {
      QueueUrl: queueURL,
      ReceiptHandle: data.Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
    };
    sqs.deleteMessage(deleteParams, function (err, data) {
      if (err) {
        console.log("Delete Error", err);
      } else {
        console.log("Message Deleted", data);
      }
```

```
    });
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon SQS queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueUrl: "SQS_QUEUE_URL",
};

sqs.deleteQueue(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the URL for an Amazon SQS queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  QueueName: "SQS_QUEUE_NAME",
};

sqs.getQueueUrl(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrl);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your Amazon SQS queues.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {};

sqs.listQueues(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.QueueUrls);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue using long-poll support.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create the SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var queueURL = "SQS_QUEUE_URL";

var params = {
  AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
  MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
  MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
  QueueUrl: queueURL,
  WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
};

sqs.receiveMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a message to an Amazon SQS queue.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
var AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

// Create an SQS service object
var sqs = new AWS.SQS({ apiVersion: "2012-11-05" });

var params = {
  // Remove DelaySeconds parameter and value for FIFO queues
  DelaySeconds: 10,
  MessageAttributes: {
    Title: {
      DataType: "String",
      StringValue: "The Whistler",
    },
    Author: {
      DataType: "String",
      StringValue: "John Grisham",
    },
    WeeksOn: {
      DataType: "Number",
      StringValue: "6",
    },
  },
  MessageBody:
    "Information about current NY Times fiction bestseller for week of 12/11/2016.",
  // MessageDeduplicationId: "TheWhistler",  // Required for FIFO queues
  // MessageGroupId: "Group1",  // Required for FIFO queues
```

```
  QueueUrl: "SQS_QUEUE_URL",
};

sqs.sendMessage(params, function (err, data) {
  if (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  } else {
    console.log("Success", data.MessageId);
  }
});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

AWS STS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v2)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v2) with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v2)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Load the AWS SDK for Node.js
const AWS = require("aws-sdk");
// Set the region
AWS.config.update({ region: "REGION" });

var roleToAssume = {
  RoleArn: "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/RoleName",
  RoleSessionName: "session1",
  DurationSeconds: 900,
};
var roleCreds;

// Create the STS service object
var sts = new AWS.STS({ apiVersion: "2011-06-15" });

//Assume Role
sts.assumeRole(roleToAssume, function (err, data) {
  if (err) console.log(err, err.stack);
  else {
    roleCreds = {
      accessKeyId: data.Credentials.AccessKeyId,
      secretAccessKey: data.Credentials.SecretAccessKey,
      sessionToken: data.Credentials.SessionToken,
    };
    stsGetCallerIdentity(roleCreds);
  }
});

//Get Arn of current identity
function stsGetCallerIdentity(creds) {
  var stsParams = { credentials: creds };
  // Create STS service object
  var sts = new AWS.STS(stsParams);
```

```
  sts.getCallerIdentity({}, function (err, data) {
    if (err) {
      console.log(err, err.stack);
    } else {
      console.log(data.Arn);
    }
  });
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Code examples for SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for JavaScript (v3) Developer Guide** – More about using JavaScript with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- API Gateway examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Bedrock Agents examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- CloudWatch Events examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- CodeBuild examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- AWS Entity Resolution examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- EventBridge examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- HealthImaging examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- IAM examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- AWS IoT SiteWise examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Kinesis examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Lambda examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Lex examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Location examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Personalize examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Personalize Events examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Personalize Runtime examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- S3 Glacier examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Step Functions examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- AWS STS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Support examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Systems Manager examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

API Gateway examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with API Gateway.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service

(Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
await client.send(
  new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
    AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
```

```
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
```

```
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
```

```
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "populatingTable",
      MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      /**
       * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item'][] }}
       */
      const recommendations = JSON.parse(
        readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
      );

      return client.send(
        new BatchWriteItemCommand({
          RequestItems: {
            [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
              PutRequest: { Item: item },
            })),
          },
        }),
      );
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "populatedTable",
      MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingKeyPair",
      MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
        new CreateKeyPairCommand({
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        }),
      );

      writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "createdKeyPair",
      MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstancePolicy",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      Policy: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
        PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
    state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
```

```
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
```

```
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  ...initParamsSteps,
  new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
  new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
```

```
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
```

```
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
```

```
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
      new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
        Protocol: "HTTP",
        Port: 80,
        HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
        HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
        HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
        HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
      }),
    );
    const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
    state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
    state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
    state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
```

```
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancer",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
      new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
```

```
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').SecurityGroup}}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
```

```
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
```

```
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
```

```
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
```

```
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
```

```
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
```

```
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
```

```
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
      "${TABLE_NAME}",
      state.badTableName,
    ),
  ),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "staticResponseConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
    if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
          Value: "static",
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling').Instance }}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
        new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
          Filters: [
```

```
            { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
        IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        ec2Client.send(
          new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
            AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
          }),
        ),
      );

      await ec2Client.send(
        new RebootInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
        }),
      );

      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
        const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
          new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
        );

        const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
          (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
        );

        if (!instance) {
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').InstanceInformation}}
 state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
```

```
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
```

```
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
```

```
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );
```

```
  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
```

```
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "abort",
    (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
    try {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
    } catch (e) {
      c.deleteTableError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteTableError) {
      console.error(state.deleteTableError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.tableName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
      );
      unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
    }
```

```
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
      console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
      "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
      NAMES.keyPairName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
```

```
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
```

```
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
```

```
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
```

```
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
```

```
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
```

```
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
```

```
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
```

```
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
```

```
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener

- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  ListFoundationModelsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

const REGION = "us-east-1";
const client = new BedrockClient({ region: REGION });

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListFoundationModelsCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  const models = response.modelSummaries;

  console.log("Listing the available Bedrock foundation models:");

  for (const model of models) {
    console.log("=".repeat(42));
    console.log(` Model: ${model.modelId}`);
    console.log("-".repeat(42));
    console.log(` Name: ${model.modelName}`);
    console.log(` Provider: ${model.providerName}`);
    console.log(` Model ARN: ${model.modelArn}`);
    console.log(` Input modalities: ${model.inputModalities}`);
    console.log(` Output modalities: ${model.outputModalities}`);
    console.log(` Supported customizations: ${model.customizationsSupported}`);
    console.log(` Supported inference types: ${model.inferenceTypesSupported}`);
    console.log(` Lifecycle status: ${model.modelLifecycle.status}`);
```

```
    console.log(`${"=".repeat(42)}\n`);
  }

  const active = models.filter(
    (m) => m.modelLifecycle.status === "ACTIVE",
  ).length;
  const legacy = models.filter(
    (m) => m.modelLifecycle.status === "LEGACY",
  ).length;

  console.log(
    `There are ${active} active and ${legacy} legacy foundation models in
 ${REGION}.`,
  );

  return response;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetFoundationModel`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFoundationModel`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get details about a foundation model.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  GetFoundationModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

/**
 * Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.
 *
 * @return {FoundationModelDetails} - The list of available bedrock foundation
 models.
 */
export const getFoundationModel = async () => {
  const client = new BedrockClient();

  const command = new GetFoundationModelCommand({
    modelIdentifier: "amazon.titan-embed-text-v1",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);

  return response.modelDetails;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const model = await getFoundationModel();
  console.log(model);
}
```

- For API details, see GetFoundationModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available foundation models.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockClient,
  ListFoundationModelsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock";

/**
 * List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.
 *
 * @return {FoundationModelSummary[]} - The list of available bedrock foundation
 models.
 */
export const listFoundationModels = async () => {
  const client = new BedrockClient();

  const input = {
    // byProvider: 'STRING_VALUE',
    // byCustomizationType: 'FINE_TUNING' || 'CONTINUED_PRE_TRAINING',
    // byOutputModality: 'TEXT' || 'IMAGE' || 'EMBEDDING',
    // byInferenceType: 'ON_DEMAND' || 'PROVISIONED',
  };

  const command = new ListFoundationModelsCommand(input);
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);

  return response.modelSummaries;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const models = await listFoundationModels();
  console.log(models);
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Content
```

```
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Usage
 * @property {number} input_tokens
 * @property {number} output_tokens
 *
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Content[]} content
 * @property {Usage} usage
 */

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

const AWS_REGION = "us-east-1";

const MODEL_ID = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const PROMPT = "Hi. In a short paragraph, explain what you can do.";

const hello = async () => {
  console.log("=".repeat(35));
  console.log("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock demo!");
  console.log("=".repeat(35));

  console.log("Model: Anthropic Claude 3 Haiku");
  console.log(`Prompt: ${PROMPT}\n`);
  console.log("Invoking model...\n");

  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: AWS_REGION });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [{ role: "user", content: [{ type: "text", text: PROMPT }] }],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const apiResponse = await client.send(
    new InvokeModelCommand({
```

```
      contentType: "application/json",
      body: JSON.stringify(payload),
      modelId: MODEL_ID,
    }),
  );

  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  const responses = responseBody.content;

  if (responses.length === 1) {
    console.log(`Response: ${responses[0].text}`);
  } else {
    console.log("Haiku returned multiple responses:");
    console.log(responses);
  }

  console.log(`\nNumber of input tokens:   ${responseBody.usage.input_tokens}`);
  console.log(`Number of output tokens: ${responseBody.usage.output_tokens}`);
};

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await hello();
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Nova Canvas
- Amazon Titan Text
- Anthropic Claude
- Cohere Command
- Meta Llama
- Mistral AI

Scenarios

Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to prepare and send a prompt to a variety of large-language models (LLMs) on Amazon Bedrock

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { FoundationModels } from "../config/foundation_models.js";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ModelConfig
 * @property {Function} module
 * @property {Function} invoker
 * @property {string} modelId
 * @property {string} modelName
 */

const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Runtime client demo!",
  { header: true },
);

const selectModel = new ScenarioInput("model", "First, select a model:", {
  type: "select",
  choices: Object.values(FoundationModels).map((model) => ({
```

```
    name: model.modelName,
    value: model,
  })),
});

const enterPrompt = new ScenarioInput("prompt", "Now, enter your prompt:", {
  type: "input",
});

const printDetails = new ScenarioOutput(
  "print details",
  /**
   * @param {{ model: ModelConfig, prompt: string }} c
   */
  (c) => console.log(`Invoking ${c.model.modelName} with '${c.prompt}'...`),
);

const invokeModel = new ScenarioAction(
  "invoke model",
  /**
   * @param {{ model: ModelConfig, prompt: string, response: string }} c
   */
  async (c) => {
    const modelModule = await c.model.module();
    const invoker = c.model.invoker(modelModule);
    c.response = await invoker(c.prompt, c.model.modelId);
  },
);

const printResponse = new ScenarioOutput(
  "print response",
  /**
   * @param {{ response: string }} c
   */
  (c) => c.response,
);

const scenario = new Scenario("Amazon Bedrock Runtime Demo", [
  greeting,
  selectModel,
  enterPrompt,
  printDetails,
  invokeModel,
  printResponse,
```

```
]);

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  scenario.run();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - InvokeModel
  - InvokeModelWithResponseStream

Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/* Before running this JavaScript code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.*/

import {
```

```
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";
const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
import data from "./questions.json" with { type: "json" };
import toolConfig from "./tool_config.json" with { type: "json" };

const systemPrompt = [
  {
    text:
      "You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only\n" +
      "the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.\n" +
      "If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to
 it in your response.\n" +
      "To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.\n" +
      "If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.\n" +
      "\n" +
      "- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
\n" +
      "- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information. \n"
 +
      "- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.\n" +
      "- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.\n" +
      "- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use\n" +
      "  emojis where appropriate.\n" +
      "- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
 \n" +
      "- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.\n" +
```

```
      "- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending
 the complete response.",
  },
];
const tools_config = toolConfig;

/// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with Bedrock.
async function askQuestion(userMessage) {
  // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
  // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
  const max_recursions = 5;
  const messages = [
    {
      role: "user",
      content: [{ text: userMessage }],
    },
  ];
  try {
    const response = await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages);
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
}

// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon Bedrock,
 and returns the response.
// param "messages" - The conversation history including the next message to send.
// return - The response from Amazon Bedrock.
async function SendConversationtoBedrock(messages) {
  const bedRockRuntimeClient = new BedrockRuntimeClient({
    region: "us-east-1",
  });
  try {
    const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    const response = await bedRockRuntimeClient.send(
      new ConverseCommand({
        modelId: modelId,
        messages: messages,
        system: systemPrompt,
        toolConfig: tools_config,
      }),
    );
    return response;
```

```
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ModelNotReady") {
      console.log(
        "`${caught.name}` - Model not ready, please wait and try again.",
      );
      throw caught;
    }
    if (caught.name === "BedrockRuntimeException") {
      console.log(
        '`${caught.name}` - "Error occurred while sending Converse request.',
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  }
}

// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the necessary
 actions based on the stop reason.
// param "response" - The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
// param "messages" - The conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  if (max_recursions <= 0) {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "tool_use") {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions - 1);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "end_turn") {
    const messageToPrint = response.output.message.content[0].text;
    console.log(messageToPrint.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
  }
}
// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the tool's
 response back to Bedrock.
// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is sent
 back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
// param "response" - the model's response containing the tool use request.
// param "messages" - the conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  const toolResultFinal = [];
  try {
    const output_message = response.output.message;
```

```
    messages.push(output_message);
    const toolRequests = output_message.content;
    const toolMessage = toolRequests[0].text;
    console.log(toolMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
    for (const toolRequest of toolRequests) {
      if (Object.hasOwn(toolRequest, "toolUse")) {
        const toolUse = toolRequest.toolUse;
        const latitude = toolUse.input.latitude;
        const longitude = toolUse.input.longitude;
        const toolUseID = toolUse.toolUseId;
        console.log(
          `Requesting tool ${toolUse.name}, Tool use id ${toolUseID}`,
        );
        if (toolUse.name === "Weather_Tool") {
          try {
            const current_weather = await callWeatherTool(
              longitude,
              latitude,
            ).then((current_weather) => current_weather);
            const currentWeather = current_weather;
            const toolResult = {
              toolResult: {
                toolUseId: toolUseID,
                content: [{ json: currentWeather }],
              },
            };
            toolResultFinal.push(toolResult);
          } catch (err) {
            console.log("An error occurred. ", err);
          }
        }
      }
    }

    const toolResultMessage = {
      role: "user",
      content: toolResultFinal,
    };
    messages.push(toolResultMessage);
    // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(
      await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages),
      messages,
    );
```

```
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("An error occurred. ", error);
  }
}
// Call the Weathertool.
// param = longitude of location
// param = latitude of location
async function callWeatherTool(longitude, latitude) {
  // Open-Meteo API endpoint
  const apiUrl = `https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast?latitude=
${latitude}&longitude=${longitude}&current_weather=true`;

  // Fetch the weather data.
  return fetch(apiUrl)
    .then((response) => {
      return response.json().then((current_weather) => {
        return current_weather;
      });
    })
    .catch((error) => {
      console.error("Error fetching weather data:", error);
    });
}
/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "input",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo! \n" +
    "This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations. " +
    "You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or coordinates."
 +
    "Weather information will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API." +
    "For the purposes of this example, we'll use in order the questions in ./
questions.json :\n" +
    "What's the weather like in Seattle? " +
    "What's the best kind of cat? " +
    "Where is the warmest city in Washington State right now? " +
```

```
    "What's the warmest city in California right now?\n" +
    "To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.\n" +
    "Have fun and experiment with the app by editing the questions in ./
questions.json! " +
    "P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English! ",

  { header: true },
);
const displayAskQuestion1 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion1",
  "Press enter to ask question number 1 (default is 'What's the weather like in
 Seattle?')",
);

const askQuestion1 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion1",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage1 = data.questions["question-1"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage1);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion2 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion2",
  "Press enter to ask question number 2 (default is 'What's the best kind of
 cat?')",
);

const askQuestion2 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion2",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage2 = data.questions["question-2"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage2);
  },
);
const displayAskQuestion3 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion3",
  "Press enter to ask question number 3 (default is 'Where is the warmest city in
 Washington State right now?')",
);

const askQuestion3 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion3",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
```

```
    const userMessage3 = data.questions["question-3"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage3);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion4 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion4",
  "Press enter to ask question number 4 (default is 'What's the warmest city in
 California right now?')",
);

const askQuestion4 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion4",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage4 = data.questions["question-4"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage4);
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you\n" +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!\n" +
    "For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look at:
\n" +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Converse Tool Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion1,
  askQuestion1,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion2,
  askQuestion2,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion3,
  askQuestion3,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion4,
  askQuestion4,
  pressEnter,
```

```
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models to
 generate text.
// It shows how to:
// - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - Create a message
// - Configure and send a request
// - Process the response

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConversationRole,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Step 2: Specify which model to use:
// Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
// - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and cost
// - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video, and text
// - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed, and
 cost
//
// For the most current model IDs, see:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-supported.html
const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Step 3: Create the message
// The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the user
const inputText =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const message = {
  content: [{ text: inputText }],
  role: ConversationRole.USER,
};

// Step 4: Configure the request
// Optional parameters to control the model's response:
// - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
// - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
//   OR
```

```
// - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
// Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
const request = {
  modelId,
  messages: [message],
  inferenceConfig: {
    maxTokens: 500, // The maximum response length
    temperature: 0.5, // Using temperature for randomness control
    //topP: 0.9,        // Alternative: use topP instead of temperature
  },
};

// Step 5: Send and process the request
// - Send the request to the model
// - Extract and return the generated text from the response
try {
  const response = await client.send(new ConverseCommand(request));
  console.log(response.output.message.content[0].text);
} catch (error) {
  console.error(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${error.message}`);
  throw error;
}
```

Send a conversation of messages to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.

```
// This example demonstrates how to send a conversation of messages to Amazon Nova
 using Bedrock's Converse API with a tool configuration.
// It shows how to:
// - 1. Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - 2. Define the parameters required enable Amazon Bedrock to use a tool when
 formulating its response (model ID, user input, system prompt, and the tool spec)
// - 3. Send the request to Amazon Bedrock, and returns the response.
// - 4. Add the tool response to the conversation, and send it back to Amazon
 Bedrock.
// - 5. Publish the response.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
```

```
// Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client

// Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment
const bedRockRuntimeClient = new BedrockRuntimeClient({
  region: "us-east-1",
});

// Step 2. Define the parameters required enable Amazon Bedrock to use a tool when
 formulating its response.

// The Bedrock Model ID.
const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// The system prompt to help Amazon Bedrock craft it's response.
const system_prompt = [
  {
    text:
      "You are a music expert that provides the most popular song played on a radio
 station, using only the\n" +
      "the top_song tool, which he call sign for the radio station for which you
 want the most popular song. " +
      "Example calls signs are WZPZ and WKRP. \n" +
      "- Only use the top_song tool. Never guess or make up information. \n" +
      "- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.\n" +
      "- Only respond to queries about the most popular song played on a radio
 station\n" +
      "Remind off-topic users of your purpose. \n" +
      "- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 the top_song tool.\n",
  },
];
//  The user's question.
const message = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: "What is the most popular song on WZPZ?" }],
  },
];
// The tool specification. In this case, it uses an example schema for
// a tool that gets the most popular song played on a radio station.
const tool_config = {
  tools: [
```

```
    {
      toolSpec: {
        name: "top_song",
        description: "Get the most popular song played on a radio station.",
        inputSchema: {
          json: {
            type: "object",
            properties: {
              sign: {
                type: "string",
                description:
                  "The call sign for the radio station for which you want the most
 popular song. Example calls signs are WZPZ and WKRP.",
              },
            },
            required: ["sign"],
          },
        },
      },
    },
  ],
};

// Helper function to return the song and artist from top_song tool.
async function get_top_song(call_sign) {
  try {
    if (call_sign === "WZPZ") {
      const song = "Elemental Hotel";
      const artist = "8 Storey Hike";
      return { song, artist };
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.log(`${error.message}`);
  }
}

// 3. Send the request to Amazon Bedrock, and returns the response.
export async function SendConversationtoBedrock(
  modelId,
  message,
  system_prompt,
  tool_config,
) {
  try {
```

```
    const response = await bedRockRuntimeClient.send(
      new ConverseCommand({
        modelId: modelId,
        messages: message,
        system: system_prompt,
        toolConfig: tool_config,
      }),
    );
    if (response.stopReason === "tool_use") {
      const toolResultFinal = [];
      try {
        const output_message = response.output.message;
        message.push(output_message);
        const toolRequests = output_message.content;
        const toolMessage = toolRequests[0].text;
        console.log(toolMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
        for (const toolRequest of toolRequests) {
          if (Object.hasOwn(toolRequest, "toolUse")) {
            const toolUse = toolRequest.toolUse;
            const sign = toolUse.input.sign;
            const toolUseID = toolUse.toolUseId;
            console.log(
              `Requesting tool ${toolUse.name}, Tool use id ${toolUseID}`,
            );
            if (toolUse.name === "top_song") {
              const toolResult = [];
              try {
                const top_song = await get_top_song(toolUse.input.sign).then(
                  (top_song) => top_song,
                );
                const toolResult = {
                  toolResult: {
                    toolUseId: toolUseID,
                    content: [
                      {
                        json: { song: top_song.song, artist: top_song.artist },
                      },
                    ],
                  },
                };
                toolResultFinal.push(toolResult);
              } catch (err) {
                const toolResult = {
                  toolUseId: toolUseID,
```

```
                  content: [{ json: { text: err.message } }],
                  status: "error",
                };
              }
            }
          }
        }
        const toolResultMessage = {
          role: "user",
          content: toolResultFinal,
        };
        // Step 4. Add the tool response to the conversation, and send it back to
Amazon Bedrock.

        message.push(toolResultMessage);
        await SendConversationtoBedrock(
          modelId,
          message,
          system_prompt,
          tool_config,
        );
      } catch (caught) {
        console.error(`${caught.message}`);
        throw caught;
      }
    }

    // 4. Publish the response.
    if (response.stopReason === "end_turn") {
      const finalMessage = response.output.message.content[0].text;
      const messageToPrint = finalMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g);
      console.log(messageToPrint.replace(/<[^>]+>/g));
      return messageToPrint;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ModelNotReady") {
      console.log(
        `${caught.name} - Model not ready, please wait and try again.`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
    if (caught.name === "BedrockRuntimeException") {
      console.log(
        `${caught.name} - Error occurred while sending Converse request`,
```

```
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  }
}
await SendConversationtoBedrock(modelId, message, system_prompt, tool_config);
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
// to generate streaming text responses.
// It shows how to:
// - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - Create a message
// - Configure a streaming request
// - Process the streaming response

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConversationRole,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
```

```
// Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Step 2: Specify which model to use
// Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
// - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and cost
// - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video, and text
// - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed, and
 cost
//
// For the most current model IDs, see:
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-supported.html
const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

// Step 3: Create the message
// The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the user
const inputText =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one paragraph";
const message = {
  content: [{ text: inputText }],
  role: ConversationRole.USER,
};

// Step 4: Configure the streaming request
// Optional parameters to control the model's response:
// - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
// - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
//   OR
// - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
// Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
const request = {
  modelId,
  messages: [message],
  inferenceConfig: {
    maxTokens: 500, // The maximum response length
    temperature: 0.5, // Using temperature for randomness control
    //topP: 0.9,        // Alternative: use topP instead of temperature
  },
};

// Step 5: Send and process the streaming request
// - Send the request to the model
// - Process each chunk of the streaming response
try {
```

```
  const response = await client.send(new ConverseStreamCommand(request));

  for await (const chunk of response.stream) {
    if (chunk.contentBlockDelta) {
      // Print each text chunk as it arrives
      process.stdout.write(chunk.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text || "");
    }
  }
} catch (error) {
  console.error(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${error.message}`);
  process.exitCode = 1;
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/* Before running this JavaScript code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
```

```
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.*/

import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";
const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
import data from "./questions.json" with { type: "json" };
import toolConfig from "./tool_config.json" with { type: "json" };

const systemPrompt = [
  {
    text:
      "You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only\n" +
      "the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates
 from the location yourself.\n" +
      "If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to
 it in your response.\n" +
      "To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.\n" +
      "If the user specifies a state, country, or region, infer the locations of
 cities within that state.\n" +
      "\n" +
      "- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
\n" +
      "- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information. \n"
 +
      "- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.\n" +
      "- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest
 other options.\n" +
      "- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use\n" +
      "  emojis where appropriate.\n" +
```

```
      "- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
 \n" +
      "- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.\n" +
      "- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending
 the complete response.",
  },
];
const tools_config = toolConfig;

/// Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with Bedrock.
async function askQuestion(userMessage) {
  // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
  // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
  const max_recursions = 5;
  const messages = [
    {
      role: "user",
      content: [{ text: userMessage }],
    },
  ];
  try {
    const response = await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages);
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
}

// Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon Bedrock,
 and returns the response.
// param "messages" - The conversation history including the next message to send.
// return - The response from Amazon Bedrock.
async function SendConversationtoBedrock(messages) {
  const bedRockRuntimeClient = new BedrockRuntimeClient({
    region: "us-east-1",
  });
  try {
    const modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    const response = await bedRockRuntimeClient.send(
      new ConverseCommand({
        modelId: modelId,
        messages: messages,
        system: systemPrompt,
```

```
        toolConfig: tools_config,
      }),
    );
    return response;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ModelNotReady") {
      console.log(
        "`${caught.name}` - Model not ready, please wait and try again.",
      );
      throw caught;
    }
    if (caught.name === "BedrockRuntimeException") {
      console.log(
        '`${caught.name}` - "Error occurred while sending Converse request.',
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  }
}

// Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the necessary
 actions based on the stop reason.
// param "response" - The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
// param "messages" - The conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
async function ProcessModelResponseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  if (max_recursions <= 0) {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "tool_use") {
    await HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions - 1);
  }
  if (response.stopReason === "end_turn") {
    const messageToPrint = response.output.message.content[0].text;
    console.log(messageToPrint.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
  }
}
// Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the tool's
 response back to Bedrock.
// The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is sent
 back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.
// param "response" - the model's response containing the tool use request.
// param "messages" - the conversation history.
// param "max_recursions" - The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
```

```
async function HandleToolUseAsync(response, messages, max_recursions) {
  const toolResultFinal = [];
  try {
    const output_message = response.output.message;
    messages.push(output_message);
    const toolRequests = output_message.content;
    const toolMessage = toolRequests[0].text;
    console.log(toolMessage.replace(/<[^>]+>/g, ""));
    for (const toolRequest of toolRequests) {
      if (Object.hasOwn(toolRequest, "toolUse")) {
        const toolUse = toolRequest.toolUse;
        const latitude = toolUse.input.latitude;
        const longitude = toolUse.input.longitude;
        const toolUseID = toolUse.toolUseId;
        console.log(
          `Requesting tool ${toolUse.name}, Tool use id ${toolUseID}`,
        );
        if (toolUse.name === "Weather_Tool") {
          try {
            const current_weather = await callWeatherTool(
              longitude,
              latitude,
            ).then((current_weather) => current_weather);
            const currentWeather = current_weather;
            const toolResult = {
              toolResult: {
                toolUseId: toolUseID,
                content: [{ json: currentWeather }],
              },
            };
            toolResultFinal.push(toolResult);
          } catch (err) {
            console.log("An error occurred. ", err);
          }
        }
      }
    }

    const toolResultMessage = {
      role: "user",
      content: toolResultFinal,
    };
    messages.push(toolResultMessage);
    // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
```

```
    await ProcessModelResponseAsync(
      await SendConversationtoBedrock(messages),
      messages,
    );
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("An error occurred. ", error);
  }
}
// Call the Weathertool.
// param = longitude of location
// param = latitude of location
async function callWeatherTool(longitude, latitude) {
  // Open-Meteo API endpoint
  const apiUrl = `https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast?latitude=
${latitude}&longitude=${longitude}&current_weather=true`;

  // Fetch the weather data.
  return fetch(apiUrl)
    .then((response) => {
      return response.json().then((current_weather) => {
        return current_weather;
      });
    })
    .catch((error) => {
      console.error("Error fetching weather data:", error);
    });
}
/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "input",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo! \n" +
    "This assistant provides current weather information for user-specified
 locations. " +
    "You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or coordinates."
 +
    "Weather information will be provided using a custom Tool and open-meteo API." +
```

```
    "For the purposes of this example, we'll use in order the questions in ./
questions.json :\n" +
    "What's the weather like in Seattle? " +
    "What's the best kind of cat? " +
    "Where is the warmest city in Washington State right now? " +
    "What's the warmest city in California right now?\n" +
    "To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.\n" +
    "Have fun and experiment with the app by editing the questions in ./
questions.json! " +
    "P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using English! ",

  { header: true },
);
const displayAskQuestion1 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion1",
  "Press enter to ask question number 1 (default is 'What's the weather like in
 Seattle?')",
);

const askQuestion1 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion1",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage1 = data.questions["question-1"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage1);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion2 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion2",
  "Press enter to ask question number 2 (default is 'What's the best kind of
 cat?')",
);

const askQuestion2 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion2",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage2 = data.questions["question-2"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage2);
  },
);
const displayAskQuestion3 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion3",
  "Press enter to ask question number 3 (default is 'Where is the warmest city in
 Washington State right now?')",
```

```
);

const askQuestion3 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion3",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage3 = data.questions["question-3"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage3);
  },
);

const displayAskQuestion4 = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayAskQuestion4",
  "Press enter to ask question number 4 (default is 'What's the warmest city in
 California right now?')",
);

const askQuestion4 = new ScenarioAction(
  "askQuestion4",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const userMessage4 = data.questions["question-4"];
    await askQuestion(userMessage4);
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope you\n" +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!\n" +
    "For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a look at:
\n" +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario("Converse Tool Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion1,
  askQuestion1,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion2,
  askQuestion2,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion3,
```

```
  askQuestion3,
  pressEnter,
  displayAskQuestion4,
  askQuestion4,
  pressEnter,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
import { saveImage } from "../../utils/image-creation.js";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Canvas to generate images.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Configure the image generation parameters
 * - Send a request to generate an image
 * - Process the response and handle the generated image
 *
 * @returns {Promise<string>} Base64-encoded image data
 */
export const invokeModel = async () => {
  // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
  // Credentials will be automatically loaded from the environment
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Step 2: Specify which model to use
  // For the latest available models, see:
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-supported.html
  const modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

  // Step 3: Configure the request payload
  // First, set the main parameters:
  // - prompt: Text description of the image to generate
  // - seed: Random number for reproducible generation (0 to 858,993,459)
  const prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";
```

```
  const seed = Math.floor(Math.random() * 858993460);

  // Then, create the payload using the following structure:
  // - taskType: TEXT_IMAGE (specifies text-to-image generation)
  // - textToImageParams: Contains the text prompt
  // - imageGenerationConfig: Contains optional generation settings (seed, quality,
 etc.)
  // For a list of available request parameters, see:
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/nova/latest/userguide/image-gen-req-resp-
structure.html
  const payload = {
    taskType: "TEXT_IMAGE",
    textToImageParams: {
      text: prompt,
    },
    imageGenerationConfig: {
      seed,
      quality: "standard",
    },
  };

  // Step 4: Send and process the request
  // - Embed the payload in a request object
  // - Send the request to the model
  // - Extract and return the generated image data from the response
  try {
    const request = {
      modelId,
      body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    };
    const response = await client.send(new InvokeModelCommand(request));

    const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(response.body);
    // The response includes an array of base64-encoded PNG images
    /** @type {{images: string[]}} */
    const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
    return responseBody.images[0]; // Base64-encoded image data
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${error.message}`);
    throw error;
  }
};

// If run directly, execute the example and save the generated image
```

```
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  console.log("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");
  invokeModel()
    .then(async (imageData) => {
      const imagePath = await saveImage(imageData, "nova-canvas");
      // Example path: javascriptv3/example_code/bedrock-runtime/output/nova-canvas/
image-01.png
      console.log(`Image saved to: ${imagePath}`);
    })
    .catch((error) => {
      console.error("Execution failed:", error);
      process.exitCode = 1;
    });
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
```

```
// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
const modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
const modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
```

```
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Object[]} results
 */

/**
 * Invokes an Amazon Titan Text generation model.
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "amazon.titan-text-express-v1".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    inputText: prompt,
    textGenerationConfig: {
      maxTokenCount: 4096,
      stopSequences: [],
      temperature: 0,
      topP: 1,
    },
  };

  // Invoke the model with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response.
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.results[0].outputText;
};
```

```
// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt =
    'Complete the following in one sentence: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.TITAN_TEXT_G1_EXPRESS.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import {
```

```
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
```

```
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
```

```
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
  InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseContent
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} MessagesResponseBody
 * @property {ResponseContent[]} content
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Delta
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Message
 * @property {string} role
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Chunk
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {Delta} delta
 * @property {Message} message
 */

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 using the Messages API.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-anthropic-
claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
```

```
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {MessagesResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.content[0].text;
};

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 and processes the response stream.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-anthropic-
claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModelWithResponseStream = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });
```

```
  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the API to respond.
  const command = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  let completeMessage = "";

  // Decode and process the response stream
  for await (const item of apiResponse.body) {
    /** @type Chunk */
    const chunk = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(item.chunk.bytes));
    const chunk_type = chunk.type;

    if (chunk_type === "content_block_delta") {
      const text = chunk.delta.text;
      completeMessage = completeMessage + text;
      process.stdout.write(text);
    }
  }

  // Return the final response
  return completeMessage;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt = 'Write a paragraph starting with: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.CLAUDE_3_HAIKU.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
```

```
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(`\n${"-".repeat(53)}`);
    console.log("Final structured response:");
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(`\n${err}`);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
  InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
```

```
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseContent
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} MessagesResponseBody
 * @property {ResponseContent[]} content
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Delta
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Message
 * @property {string} role
 *
 * @typedef {Object} Chunk
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {Delta} delta
 * @property {Message} message
 */

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 using the Messages API.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-anthropic-
claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
```

```
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response(s)
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {MessagesResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.content[0].text;
};

/**
 * Invokes Anthropic Claude 3 and processes the response stream.
 *
 * To learn more about the Anthropic Messages API, go to:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-anthropic-
claude-messages.html
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0".
 */
export const invokeModelWithResponseStream = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0",
) => {
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Prepare the payload for the model.
  const payload = {
    anthropic_version: "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    max_tokens: 1000,
    messages: [
      {
        role: "user",
```

```
        content: [{ type: "text", text: prompt }],
      },
    ],
  };

  // Invoke Claude with the payload and wait for the API to respond.
  const command = new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  let completeMessage = "";

  // Decode and process the response stream
  for await (const item of apiResponse.body) {
    /** @type Chunk */
    const chunk = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(item.chunk.bytes));
    const chunk_type = chunk.type;

    if (chunk_type === "content_block_delta") {
      const text = chunk.delta.text;
      completeMessage = completeMessage + text;
      process.stdout.write(text);
    }
  }

  // Return the final response
  return completeMessage;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt = 'Write a paragraph starting with: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.CLAUDE_3_HAIKU.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(`\n${"-".repeat(53)}`);
    console.log("Final structured response:");
```

```
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(`\n${err}`);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Cohere Command

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
const modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
```

```
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
const modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
```

```
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Meta Llama

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";
```

```
// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
```

```
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Send a prompt to Meta Llama 3 and print the response.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-west-2" });
```

```
// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70B Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message to send.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one sentence.";

// Embed the message in Llama 3's prompt format.
const prompt = `
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
${userMessage}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
`;

// Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
const request = {
  prompt,
  // Optional inference parameters:
  max_gen_len: 512,
  temperature: 0.5,
  top_p: 0.9,
};

// Encode and send the request.
const response = await client.send(
  new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(request),
    modelId,
  }),
);

// Decode the native response body.
/** @type {{ generation: string }} */
const nativeResponse = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(response.body));

// Extract and print the generated text.
const responseText = nativeResponse.generation;
console.log(responseText);

// Learn more about the Llama 3 prompt format at:
```

```
// https://llama.meta.com/docs/model-cards-and-prompt-formats/meta-llama-3/#special-
tokens-used-with-meta-llama-3
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Send a prompt to Meta Llama 3 and print the response stream in real-time.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-west-2" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70B Instruct.
const modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

// Define the user message to send.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one sentence.";

// Embed the message in Llama 3's prompt format.
const prompt = `
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
```

```
${userMessage}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
`;

// Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
const request = {
  prompt,
  // Optional inference parameters:
  max_gen_len: 512,
  temperature: 0.5,
  top_p: 0.9,
};

// Encode and send the request.
const responseStream = await client.send(
  new InvokeModelWithResponseStreamCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(request),
    modelId,
  }),
);

// Extract and print the response stream in real-time.
for await (const event of responseStream.body) {
  /** @type {{ generation: string }} */
  const chunk = JSON.parse(new TextDecoder().decode(event.chunk.bytes));
  if (chunk.generation) {
    process.stdout.write(chunk.generation);
  }
}

// Learn more about the Llama 3 prompt format at:
// https://llama.meta.com/docs/model-cards-and-prompt-formats/meta-llama-3/#special-
tokens-used-with-meta-llama-3
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Mistral AI

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  ConverseCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
const modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseCommand({
```

```
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the response text.
  const responseText = response.output.message.content[0].text;
  console.log(responseText);
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral.

import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
```

```
  ConverseStreamCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

// Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
const modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const userMessage =
  "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
const conversation = [
  {
    role: "user",
    content: [{ text: userMessage }],
  },
];

// Create a command with the model ID, the message, and a basic configuration.
const command = new ConverseStreamCommand({
  modelId,
  messages: conversation,
  inferenceConfig: { maxTokens: 512, temperature: 0.5, topP: 0.9 },
});

try {
  // Send the command to the model and wait for the response
  const response = await client.send(command);

  // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
  for await (const item of response.stream) {
    if (item.contentBlockDelta) {
      process.stdout.write(item.contentBlockDelta.delta?.text);
    }
  }
} catch (err) {
  console.log(`ERROR: Can't invoke '${modelId}'. Reason: ${err}`);
  process.exit(1);
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral models, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import { FoundationModels } from "../../config/foundation_models.js";
import {
  BedrockRuntimeClient,
  InvokeModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Output
 * @property {string} text
 *
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {Output[]} outputs
 */

/**
 * Invokes a Mistral 7B Instruct model.
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The input text prompt for the model to complete.
 * @param {string} [modelId] - The ID of the model to use. Defaults to
 "mistral.mistral-7b-instruct-v0:2".
 */
export const invokeModel = async (
  prompt,
  modelId = "mistral.mistral-7b-instruct-v0:2",
) => {
```

```
  // Create a new Bedrock Runtime client instance.
  const client = new BedrockRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

  // Mistral instruct models provide optimal results when embedding
  // the prompt into the following template:
  const instruction = `<s>[INST] ${prompt} [/INST]`;

  // Prepare the payload.
  const payload = {
    prompt: instruction,
    max_tokens: 500,
    temperature: 0.5,
  };

  // Invoke the model with the payload and wait for the response.
  const command = new InvokeModelCommand({
    contentType: "application/json",
    body: JSON.stringify(payload),
    modelId,
  });
  const apiResponse = await client.send(command);

  // Decode and return the response.
  const decodedResponseBody = new TextDecoder().decode(apiResponse.body);
  /** @type {ResponseBody} */
  const responseBody = JSON.parse(decodedResponseBody);
  return responseBody.outputs[0].text;
};

// Invoke the function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const prompt =
    'Complete the following in one sentence: "Once upon a time..."';
  const modelId = FoundationModels.MISTRAL_7B.modelId;
  console.log(`Prompt: ${prompt}`);
  console.log(`Model ID: ${modelId}`);

  try {
    console.log("-".repeat(53));
    const response = await invokeModel(prompt, modelId);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
  }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Agents examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Bedrock Agents.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock Agents

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon Bedrock Agents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  GetAgentCommand,
  paginateListAgents,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} AgentSummary
 */
```

```
/**
 * A simple scenario to demonstrate basic setup and interaction with the Bedrock
 Agents Client.
 *
 * This function first initializes the Amazon Bedrock Agents client for a specific
 region.
 * It then retrieves a list of existing agents using the streamlined paginator
 approach.
 * For each agent found, it retrieves detailed information using a command object.
 *
 * Demonstrates:
 * - Use of the Bedrock Agents client to initialize and communicate with the AWS
 service.
 * - Listing resources in a paginated response pattern.
 * - Accessing an individual resource using a command object.
 *
 * @returns {Promise<void>} A promise that resolves when the function has completed
 execution.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "us-east-1";

  console.log("=".repeat(68));

  console.log(`Initializing Amazon Bedrock Agents client for ${region}...`);
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  console.log("Retrieving the list of existing agents...");
  const paginatorConfig = { client };
  const pages = paginateListAgents(paginatorConfig, {});

  /** @type {AgentSummary[]} */
  const agentSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
    agentSummaries.push(...page.agentSummaries);
  }

  console.log(`Found ${agentSummaries.length} agents in ${region}.`);

  if (agentSummaries.length > 0) {
    for (const agentSummary of agentSummaries) {
      const agentId = agentSummary.agentId;
      console.log("=".repeat(68));
```

```
      console.log(`Retrieving agent with ID: ${agentId}:`);
      console.log("-".repeat(68));

      const command = new GetAgentCommand({ agentId });
      const response = await client.send(command);
      const agent = response.agent;

      console.log(` Name: ${agent.agentName}`);
      console.log(` Status: ${agent.agentStatus}`);
      console.log(` ARN: ${agent.agentArn}`);
      console.log(` Foundation model: ${agent.foundationModel}`);
    }
  }
  console.log("=".repeat(68));
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  await main();
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetAgent
  - ListAgents

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAgent`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  CreateAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Creates an Amazon Bedrock Agent.
 *
 * @param {string} agentName - A name for the agent that you create.
 * @param {string} foundationModel - The foundation model to be used by the agent
 you create.
 * @param {string} agentResourceRoleArn - The ARN of the IAM role with permissions
 required by the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent").Agent>} An object
 containing details of the created agent.
 */
export const createAgent = async (
  agentName,
  foundationModel,
  agentResourceRoleArn,
  region = "us-east-1",
) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  const command = new CreateAgentCommand({
    agentName,
    foundationModel,
    agentResourceRoleArn,
```

```
  });
  const response = await client.send(command);

  return response.agent;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentName and accountId, and roleName with a
 unique name for the new agent,
  // the id of your AWS account, and the name of an existing execution role that the
 agent can use inside your account.
  // For foundationModel, specify the desired model. Ensure to remove the brackets
 '[]' before adding your data.

  // A string (max 100 chars) that can include letters, numbers, dashes '-', and
 underscores '_'.
  const agentName = "[your-bedrock-agent-name]";

  // Your AWS account id.
  const accountId = "[123456789012]";

  // The name of the agent's execution role. It must be prefixed by
 `AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForAgents_`.
  const roleName = "[AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForAgents_your-role-name]";

  // The ARN for the agent's execution role.
  // Follow the ARN format: 'arn:aws:iam::account-id:role/role-name'
  const roleArn = `arn:aws:iam::${accountId}:role/${roleName}`;

  // Specify the model for the agent. Change if a different model is preferred.
  const foundationModel = "anthropic.claude-v2";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentName and roleArn.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentName, roleArn]);

  console.log("Creating a new agent...");

  const agent = await createAgent(agentName, foundationModel, roleArn);
  console.log(agent);
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAgent`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  DeleteAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Deletes an Amazon Bedrock Agent.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent to delete.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-
agent").DeleteAgentCommandOutput>} An object containing the agent id, the status,
 and some additional metadata.
 */
export const deleteAgent = (agentId, region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });
  const command = new DeleteAgentCommand({ agentId });
  return client.send(command);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentId with an existing agent's id.
  // Ensure to remove the brackets (`[]`) before adding your data.
```

```
  // The agentId must be an alphanumeric string with exactly 10 characters.
  const agentId = "[ABC123DE45]";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentId.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentId]);

  console.log(`Deleting agent with ID ${agentId}...`);

  const response = await deleteAgent(agentId);
  console.log(response);
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAgent`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  GetAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Retrieves the details of an Amazon Bedrock Agent.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent.
```

```
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent").Agent>} An object
 containing the agent details.
 */
export const getAgent = async (agentId, region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  const command = new GetAgentCommand({ agentId });
  const response = await client.send(command);
  return response.agent;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentId with an existing agent's id.
  // Ensure to remove the brackets '[]' before adding your data.

  // The agentId must be an alphanumeric string with exactly 10 characters.
  const agentId = "[ABC123DE45]";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentId.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentId]);

  console.log(`Retrieving agent with ID ${agentId}...`);

  const agent = await getAgent(agentId);
  console.log(agent);
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAgentActionGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAgentActionGroups`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the action groups for an agent.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { checkForPlaceholders } from "../lib/utils.js";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  ListAgentActionGroupsCommand,
  paginateListAgentActionGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Retrieves a list of Action Groups of an agent utilizing the paginator function.
 *
 * This function leverages a paginator, which abstracts the complexity of
 pagination, providing
 * a straightforward way to handle paginated results inside a `for await...of` loop.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent.
 * @param {string} agentVersion - The version of the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<ActionGroupSummary[]>} An array of action group summaries.
 */
export const listAgentActionGroupsWithPaginator = async (
  agentId,
  agentVersion,
  region = "us-east-1",
) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  // Create a paginator configuration
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client,
    pageSize: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
  };

  const params = { agentId, agentVersion };

  const pages = paginateListAgentActionGroups(paginatorConfig, params);

  // Paginate until there are no more results
  const actionGroupSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
```

```
    actionGroupSummaries.push(...page.actionGroupSummaries);
  }

  return actionGroupSummaries;
};

/**
 * Retrieves a list of Action Groups of an agent utilizing the
 ListAgentActionGroupsCommand.
 *
 * This function demonstrates the manual approach, sending a command to the client
 and processing the response.
 * Pagination must manually be managed. For a simplified approach that abstracts
 away pagination logic, see
 * the `listAgentActionGroupsWithPaginator()` example below.
 *
 * @param {string} agentId - The unique identifier of the agent.
 * @param {string} agentVersion - The version of the agent.
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<ActionGroupSummary[]>} An array of action group summaries.
 */
export const listAgentActionGroupsWithCommandObject = async (
  agentId,
  agentVersion,
  region = "us-east-1",
) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  let nextToken;
  const actionGroupSummaries = [];
  do {
    const command = new ListAgentActionGroupsCommand({
      agentId,
      agentVersion,
      nextToken,
      maxResults: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
    });

    /** @type {{actionGroupSummaries: ActionGroupSummary[], nextToken?: string}} */
    const response = await client.send(command);

    for (const actionGroup of response.actionGroupSummaries || []) {
      actionGroupSummaries.push(actionGroup);
    }
```

```
    nextToken = response.nextToken;
  } while (nextToken);

  return actionGroupSummaries;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  // Replace the placeholders for agentId and agentVersion with an existing agent's
 id and version.
  // Ensure to remove the brackets '[]' before adding your data.

  // The agentId must be an alphanumeric string with exactly 10 characters.
  const agentId = "[ABC123DE45]";

  // A string either containing `DRAFT` or a number with 1-5 digits (e.g., '123' or
 'DRAFT').
  const agentVersion = "[DRAFT]";

  // Check for unresolved placeholders in agentId and agentVersion.
  checkForPlaceholders([agentId, agentVersion]);

  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log(
    "Listing agent action groups using ListAgentActionGroupsCommand:",
  );

  for (const actionGroup of await listAgentActionGroupsWithCommandObject(
    agentId,
    agentVersion,
  )) {
    console.log(actionGroup);
  }

  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log(
    "Listing agent action groups using the paginateListAgents function:",
  );
  for (const actionGroup of await listAgentActionGroupsWithPaginator(
    agentId,
    agentVersion,
  )) {
    console.log(actionGroup);
```

```
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAgentActionGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAgents`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAgents`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the agents belonging to an account.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentClient,
  ListAgentsCommand,
  paginateListAgents,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent";

/**
 * Retrieves a list of available Amazon Bedrock agents utilizing the paginator
 function.
 *
 * This function leverages a paginator, which abstracts the complexity of
 pagination, providing
 * a straightforward way to handle paginated results inside a `for await...of` loop.
 *
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<AgentSummary[]>} An array of agent summaries.
 */
export const listAgentsWithPaginator = async (region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });
```

```
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client,
    pageSize: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
  };

  const pages = paginateListAgents(paginatorConfig, {});

  // Paginate until there are no more results
  const agentSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of pages) {
    agentSummaries.push(...page.agentSummaries);
  }

  return agentSummaries;
};

/**
 * Retrieves a list of available Amazon Bedrock agents utilizing the
 ListAgentsCommand.
 *
 * This function demonstrates the manual approach, sending a command to the client
 and processing the response.
 * Pagination must manually be managed. For a simplified approach that abstracts
 away pagination logic, see
 * the `listAgentsWithPaginator()` example below.
 *
 * @param {string} [region='us-east-1'] - The AWS region in use.
 * @returns {Promise<AgentSummary[]>} An array of agent summaries.
 */
export const listAgentsWithCommandObject = async (region = "us-east-1") => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentClient({ region });

  let nextToken;
  const agentSummaries = [];
  do {
    const command = new ListAgentsCommand({
      nextToken,
      maxResults: 10, // optional, added for demonstration purposes
    });

    /** @type {{agentSummaries: AgentSummary[], nextToken?: string}} */
    const paginatedResponse = await client.send(command);
```

```
    agentSummaries.push(...(paginatedResponse.agentSummaries || []));

    nextToken = paginatedResponse.nextToken;
  } while (nextToken);

  return agentSummaries;
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log("Listing agents using ListAgentsCommand:");
  for (const agent of await listAgentsWithCommandObject()) {
    console.log(agent);
  }

  console.log("=".repeat(68));
  console.log("Listing agents using the paginateListAgents function:");
  for (const agent of await listAgentsWithPaginator()) {
    console.log(agent);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAgents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`InvokeAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `InvokeAgent`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  BedrockAgentRuntimeClient,
  InvokeAgentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent-runtime";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ResponseBody
 * @property {string} completion
 */

/**
 * Invokes a Bedrock agent to run an inference using the input
 * provided in the request body.
 *
 * @param {string} prompt - The prompt that you want the Agent to complete.
 * @param {string} sessionId - An arbitrary identifier for the session.
 */
export const invokeBedrockAgent = async (prompt, sessionId) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentRuntimeClient({ region: "us-east-1" });
  // const client = new BedrockAgentRuntimeClient({
  //   region: "us-east-1",
  //   credentials: {
  //     accessKeyId: "accessKeyId", // permission to invoke agent
  //     secretAccessKey: "accessKeySecret",
  //   },
  // });

  const agentId = "AJBHXXILZN";
```

```
  const agentAliasId = "AVKP1ITZAA";

  const command = new InvokeAgentCommand({
    agentId,
    agentAliasId,
    sessionId,
    inputText: prompt,
  });

  try {
    let completion = "";
    const response = await client.send(command);

    if (response.completion === undefined) {
      throw new Error("Completion is undefined");
    }

    for await (const chunkEvent of response.completion) {
      const chunk = chunkEvent.chunk;
      console.log(chunk);
      const decodedResponse = new TextDecoder("utf-8").decode(chunk.bytes);
      completion += decodedResponse;
    }

    return { sessionId: sessionId, completion };
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const result = await invokeBedrockAgent("I need help.", "123");
  console.log(result);
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`InvokeFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `InvokeFlow`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  BedrockAgentRuntimeClient,
  InvokeFlowCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent-runtime";

/**
 * Invokes an alias of a flow to run the inputs that you specify and return
 * the output of each node as a stream.
 *
 * @param {{
 *  flowIdentifier: string,
 *  flowAliasIdentifier: string,
 *  prompt?: string,
 *  region?: string
 * }} options
 * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-bedrock-agent").FlowNodeOutput>} An
 object containing information about the output from flow invocation.
 */
export const invokeBedrockFlow = async ({
  flowIdentifier,
  flowAliasIdentifier,
  prompt = "Hi, how are you?",
  region = "us-east-1",
}) => {
  const client = new BedrockAgentRuntimeClient({ region });

  const command = new InvokeFlowCommand({
    flowIdentifier,
    flowAliasIdentifier,
    inputs: [
      {
```

```
        content: {
          document: prompt,
        },
        nodeName: "FlowInputNode",
        nodeOutputName: "document",
      },
    ],
  });

  let flowResponse = {};
  const response = await client.send(command);

  for await (const chunkEvent of response.responseStream) {
    const { flowOutputEvent, flowCompletionEvent } = chunkEvent;

    if (flowOutputEvent) {
      flowResponse = { ...flowResponse, ...flowOutputEvent };
      console.log("Flow output event:", flowOutputEvent);
    } else if (flowCompletionEvent) {
      flowResponse = { ...flowResponse, ...flowCompletionEvent };
      console.log("Flow completion event:", flowCompletionEvent);
    }
  }

  return flowResponse;
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    flowIdentifier: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    flowAliasIdentifier: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
```

```
    prompt: {
      type: "string",
    },
    region: {
      type: "string",
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    invokeBedrockFlow(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeFlow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DeleteAlarmsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteAlarmsCommand({
    AlarmNames: [process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME], // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DescribeAlarmsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeAlarmsCommand({
    AlarmNames: [process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME], // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DisableAlarmActionsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DisableAlarmActionsCommand({
    AlarmNames: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME, // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
```

```
export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { EnableAlarmActionsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new EnableAlarmActionsCommand({
    AlarmNames: [process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME], // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListMetrics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import {
  CloudWatchServiceException,
  ListMetricsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  // Use the AWS console to see available namespaces and metric names. Custom
 metrics can also be created.
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
viewing_metrics_with_cloudwatch.html
  const command = new ListMetricsCommand({
    Dimensions: [
      {
        Name: "LogGroupName",
      },
    ],
    MetricName: "IncomingLogEvents",
    Namespace: "AWS/Logs",
```

```
  });

  try {
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(`Metrics count: ${response.Metrics?.length}`);
    return response;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof CloudWatchServiceException) {
      console.error(`Error from CloudWatch. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutMetricAlarmCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
```

```
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // This alarm triggers when CPUUtilization exceeds 70% for one minute.
  const command = new PutMetricAlarmCommand({
    AlarmName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME, // Set the value of
 CLOUDWATCH_ALARM_NAME to the name of an existing alarm.
    ComparisonOperator: "GreaterThanThreshold",
    EvaluationPeriods: 1,
    MetricName: "CPUUtilization",
    Namespace: "AWS/EC2",
    Period: 60,
    Statistic: "Average",
    Threshold: 70.0,
    ActionsEnabled: false,
    AlarmDescription: "Alarm when server CPU exceeds 70%",
    Dimensions: [
      {
        Name: "InstanceId",
        Value: process.env.EC2_INSTANCE_ID, // Set the value of EC_INSTANCE_ID to
 the Id of an existing Amazon EC2 instance.
      },
    ],
    Unit: "Percent",
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutMetricDataCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/APIReference/
API_PutMetricData.html#API_PutMetricData_RequestParameters
  // and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
publishingMetrics.html
  // for more information about the parameters in this command.
  const command = new PutMetricDataCommand({
    MetricData: [
      {
        MetricName: "PAGES_VISITED",
        Dimensions: [
          {
            Name: "UNIQUE_PAGES",
            Value: "URLS",
          },
        ],
        Unit: "None",
        Value: 1.0,
      },
    ],
    Namespace: "SITE/TRAFFIC",
  });
```

```
  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch";

export const client = new CloudWatchClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

CloudWatch Events examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with CloudWatch Events.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutEventsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new PutEventsCommand({
    // The list of events to send to Amazon CloudWatch Events.
    Entries: [
      {
        // The name of the application or service that is sending the event.
        Source: "my.app",

        // The name of the event that is being sent.
        DetailType: "My Custom Event",

        // The data that is sent with the event.
        Detail: JSON.stringify({ timeOfEvent: new Date().toISOString() }),
      },
    ],
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchEventsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";

export const client = new CloudWatchEventsClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutRuleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // Request parameters for PutRule.
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/eventbridge/latest/APIReference/
API_PutRule.html#API_PutRule_RequestParameters
  const command = new PutRuleCommand({
    Name: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_RULE,

    // The event pattern for the rule.
    //  Example: {"source": ["my.app"]}
    EventPattern: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_RULE_PATTERN,

    // The state of the rule. Valid values: ENABLED, DISABLED
    State: "ENABLED",
  });

  try {
```

```
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchEventsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";

export const client = new CloudWatchEventsClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PutTargetsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new PutTargetsCommand({
    // The name of the Amazon CloudWatch Events rule.
    Rule: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_RULE,
```

```
    // The targets to add to the rule.
    Targets: [
      {
        Arn: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_TARGET_ARN,
        // The ID of the target. Choose a unique ID for each target.
        Id: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_EVENTS_TARGET_ID,
      },
    ],
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { CloudWatchEventsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-events";

export const client = new CloudWatchEventsClient({});
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateLogGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLogGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateLogGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new CreateLogGroupCommand({
    // The name of the log group.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see CreateLogGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteLogGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLogGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteLogGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteLogGroupCommand({
    // The name of the log group.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteSubscriptionFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteSubscriptionFilterCommand({
    // The name of the filter.
    filterName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_FILTER_NAME,
    // The name of the log group.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeLogGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLogGroups`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateDescribeLogGroups,
  CloudWatchLogsClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";

const client = new CloudWatchLogsClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const paginatedLogGroups = paginateDescribeLogGroups({ client }, {});
  const logGroups = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedLogGroups) {
    if (page.logGroups?.every((lg) => !!lg)) {
      logGroups.push(...page.logGroups);
    }
  }

  console.log(logGroups);
  return logGroups;
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeSubscriptionFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSubscriptionFiltersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-
logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  // This will return a list of all subscription filters in your account
  // matching the log group name.
  const command = new DescribeSubscriptionFiltersCommand({
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
    limit: 1,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetQueryResults`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueryResults`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Simple wrapper for the GetQueryResultsCommand.
 * @param {string} queryId
 */
_getQueryResults(queryId) {
  return this.client.send(new GetQueryResultsCommand({ queryId }));
}
```

- For API details, see GetQueryResults in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `PutSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { PutSubscriptionFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const run = async () => {
  const command = new PutSubscriptionFilterCommand({
    // An ARN of a same-account Kinesis stream, Kinesis Firehose
    // delivery stream, or Lambda function.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/logs/
SubscriptionFilters.html
```

```
    destinationArn: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_DESTINATION_ARN,

    // A name for the filter.
    filterName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_FILTER_NAME,

    // A filter pattern for subscribing to a filtered stream of log events.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/logs/
FilterAndPatternSyntax.html
    filterPattern: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_FILTER_PATTERN,

    // The name of the log group. Messages in this group matching the filter pattern
    // will be sent to the destination ARN.
    logGroupName: process.env.CLOUDWATCH_LOGS_LOG_GROUP,
  });

  try {
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

export default run();
```

- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartLiveTail`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Include the required files.

```
import { CloudWatchLogsClient, StartLiveTailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
cloudwatch-logs";
```

Handle the events from the Live Tail session.

```
async function handleResponseAsync(response) {
```

```
    try {
      for await (const event of response.responseStream) {
        if (event.sessionStart !== undefined) {
          console.log(event.sessionStart);
        } else if (event.sessionUpdate !== undefined) {
          for (const logEvent of event.sessionUpdate.sessionResults) {
            const timestamp = logEvent.timestamp;
            const date = new Date(timestamp);
            console.log("[" + date + "] " + logEvent.message);
          }
        } else {
            console.error("Unknown event type");
        }
      }
    } catch (err) {
        // On-stream exceptions are captured here
        console.error(err)
    }
}
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
    const client = new CloudWatchLogsClient();

    const command = new StartLiveTailCommand({
        logGroupIdentifiers: logGroupIdentifiers,
        logStreamNames: logStreamNames,
        logEventFilterPattern: filterPattern
    });
    try{
        const response = await client.send(command);
        handleResponseAsync(response);
    } catch (err){
        // Pre-stream exceptions are captured here
        console.log(err);
    }
```

Stop the Live Tail session after a period of time has elapsed.

```
    /* Set a timeout to close the client. This will stop the Live Tail session. */
    setTimeout(function() {
```

```
        console.log("Client timeout");
        client.destroy();
      }, 10000);
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `StartQuery`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Wrapper for the StartQueryCommand. Uses a static query string
 * for consistency.
 * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
 * @param {number} maxLogs
 * @returns {Promise<{ queryId: string }>}
 */
async _startQuery([startDate, endDate], maxLogs = 10000) {
  try {
    return await this.client.send(
      new StartQueryCommand({
        logGroupNames: this.logGroupNames,
        queryString: "fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc",
        startTime: startDate.valueOf(),
        endTime: endDate.valueOf(),
        limit: maxLogs,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    /** @type {string} */
    const message = err.message;
    if (message.startsWith("Query's end date and time")) {
      // This error indicates that the query's start or end date occur
```

```
        // before the log group was created.
        throw new DateOutOfBoundsError(message);
      }

      throw err;
    }
  }
```

- For API details, see StartQuery in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Run a large query

The following code example shows how to use CloudWatch Logs to query more than 10,000 records.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This is the entry point.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { CloudWatchLogsClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { CloudWatchQuery } from "./cloud-watch-query.js";

console.log("Starting a recursive query...");

if (!process.env.QUERY_START_DATE || !process.env.QUERY_END_DATE) {
  throw new Error(
    "QUERY_START_DATE and QUERY_END_DATE environment variables are required.",
  );
}
```

```
const cloudWatchQuery = new CloudWatchQuery(new CloudWatchLogsClient({}), {
  logGroupNames: ["/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query"],
  dateRange: [
    new Date(Number.parseInt(process.env.QUERY_START_DATE)),
    new Date(Number.parseInt(process.env.QUERY_END_DATE)),
  ],
});

await cloudWatchQuery.run();

console.log(
  `Queries finished in ${cloudWatchQuery.secondsElapsed} seconds.\nTotal logs found:
 ${cloudWatchQuery.results.length}`,
);
```

This is a class that splits queries into multiple steps if necessary.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  StartQueryCommand,
  GetQueryResultsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";
import { splitDateRange } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-date.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

class DateOutOfBoundsError extends Error {}

export class CloudWatchQuery {
  /**
   * Run a query for all CloudWatch Logs within a certain date range.
   * CloudWatch logs return a max of 10,000 results. This class
   * performs a binary search across all of the logs in the provided
   * date range if a query returns the maximum number of results.
   *
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs').CloudWatchLogsClient} client
   * @param {{ logGroupNames: string[], dateRange: [Date, Date], queryConfig:
 { limit: number } }} config
   */
  constructor(client, { logGroupNames, dateRange, queryConfig }) {
    this.client = client;
    /**
```

```
     * All log groups are queried.
     */
    this.logGroupNames = logGroupNames;

    /**
     * The inclusive date range that is queried.
     */
    this.dateRange = dateRange;

    /**
     * CloudWatch Logs never returns more than 10,000 logs.
     */
    this.limit = queryConfig?.limit ?? 10000;

    /**
     * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").ResultField[][]}
     */
    this.results = [];
  }

  /**
   * Run the query.
   */
  async run() {
    this.secondsElapsed = 0;
    const start = new Date();
    this.results = await this._largeQuery(this.dateRange);
    const end = new Date();
    this.secondsElapsed = (end - start) / 1000;
    return this.results;
  }

  /**
   * Recursively query for logs.
   * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
   * @returns {Promise<import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").ResultField[][]>}
   */
  async _largeQuery(dateRange) {
    const logs = await this._query(dateRange, this.limit);

    console.log(
      `Query date range: ${dateRange
        .map((d) => d.toISOString())
        .join(" to ")}. Found ${logs.length} logs.`,
```

```
    );

    if (logs.length < this.limit) {
      return logs;
    }

    const lastLogDate = this._getLastLogDate(logs);
    const offsetLastLogDate = new Date(lastLogDate);
    offsetLastLogDate.setMilliseconds(lastLogDate.getMilliseconds() + 1);
    const subDateRange = [offsetLastLogDate, dateRange[1]];
    const [r1, r2] = splitDateRange(subDateRange);
    const results = await Promise.all([
      this._largeQuery(r1),
      this._largeQuery(r2),
    ]);
    return [logs, ...results].flat();
  }

  /**
   * Find the most recent log in a list of logs.
   * @param {import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").ResultField[][]} logs
   */
  _getLastLogDate(logs) {
    const timestamps = logs
      .map(
        (log) =>
          log.find((fieldMeta) => fieldMeta.field === "@timestamp")?.value,
      )
      .filter((t) => !!t)
      .map((t) => `${t}Z`)
      .sort();

    if (!timestamps.length) {
      throw new Error("No timestamp found in logs.");
    }

    return new Date(timestamps[timestamps.length - 1]);
  }

  /**
   * Simple wrapper for the GetQueryResultsCommand.
   * @param {string} queryId
   */
  _getQueryResults(queryId) {
```

```
    return this.client.send(new GetQueryResultsCommand({ queryId }));
  }

  /**
   * Starts a query and waits for it to complete.
   * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
   * @param {number} maxLogs
   */
  async _query(dateRange, maxLogs) {
    try {
      const { queryId } = await this._startQuery(dateRange, maxLogs);
      const { results } = await this._waitUntilQueryDone(queryId);
      return results ?? [];
    } catch (err) {
      /**
       * This error is thrown when StartQuery returns an error indicating
       * that the query's start or end date occur before the log group was
       * created.
       */
      if (err instanceof DateOutOfBoundsError) {
        return [];
      }
      throw err;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Wrapper for the StartQueryCommand. Uses a static query string
   * for consistency.
   * @param {[Date, Date]} dateRange
   * @param {number} maxLogs
   * @returns {Promise<{ queryId: string }>}
   */
  async _startQuery([startDate, endDate], maxLogs = 10000) {
    try {
      return await this.client.send(
        new StartQueryCommand({
          logGroupNames: this.logGroupNames,
          queryString: "fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc",
          startTime: startDate.valueOf(),
          endTime: endDate.valueOf(),
          limit: maxLogs,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (err) {
      /** @type {string} */
      const message = err.message;
      if (message.startsWith("Query's end date and time")) {
        // This error indicates that the query's start or end date occur
        // before the log group was created.
        throw new DateOutOfBoundsError(message);
      }

      throw err;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Call GetQueryResultsCommand until the query is done.
   * @param {string} queryId
   */
  _waitUntilQueryDone(queryId) {
    const getResults = async () => {
      const results = await this._getQueryResults(queryId);
      const queryDone = [
        "Complete",
        "Failed",
        "Cancelled",
        "Timeout",
        "Unknown",
      ].includes(results.status);

      return { queryDone, results };
    };

    return retry(
      { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60, quiet: true },
      async () => {
        const { queryDone, results } = await getResults();
        if (!queryDone) {
          throw new Error("Query not done.");
        }

        return results;
      },
    );
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetQueryResults
  - StartQuery

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

CodeBuild examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with CodeBuild.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateProject`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateProject`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a project.

```
import {
  ArtifactsType,
  CodeBuildClient,
  ComputeType,
  CreateProjectCommand,
  EnvironmentType,
  SourceType,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-codebuild";

// Create the AWS CodeBuild project.
export const createProject = async (
  projectName = "MyCodeBuilder",
  roleArn = "arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/CodeBuildAdmin",
  buildOutputBucket = "xxxx",
  githubUrl = "https://...",
) => {
```

```
  const codeBuildClient = new CodeBuildClient({});

  const response = await codeBuildClient.send(
    new CreateProjectCommand({
      artifacts: {
        // The destination of the build artifacts.
        type: ArtifactsType.S3,
        location: buildOutputBucket,
      },
      // Information about the build environment. The combination of "computeType"
 and "type" determines the
      // requirements for the environment such as CPU, memory, and disk space.
      environment: {
        // Build environment compute types.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/codebuild/latest/userguide/build-env-ref-
compute-types.html
        computeType: ComputeType.BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL,
        // Docker image identifier.
        // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/codebuild/latest/userguide/build-env-ref-
available.html
        image: "aws/codebuild/standard:7.0",
        // Build environment type.
        type: EnvironmentType.LINUX_CONTAINER,
      },
      name: projectName,
      // A role ARN with permission to create a CodeBuild project, write to the
 artifact location, and write CloudWatch logs.
      serviceRole: roleArn,
      source: {
        // The type of repository that contains the source code to be built.
        type: SourceType.GITHUB,
        // The location of the repository that contains the source code to be built.
        location: githubUrl,
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  //   {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: 'b428b244-777b-49a6-a48d-5dffedced8e7',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
```

```
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     project: {
  //       arn: 'arn:aws:codebuild:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:project/MyCodeBuilder',
  //       artifacts: {
  //         encryptionDisabled: false,
  //         location: 'xxxxxx-xxxxxxx-xxxxxx',
  //         name: 'MyCodeBuilder',
  //         namespaceType: 'NONE',
  //         packaging: 'NONE',
  //         type: 'S3'
  //       },
  //       badge: { badgeEnabled: false },
  //       cache: { type: 'NO_CACHE' },
  //       created: 2023-08-18T14:46:48.979Z,
  //       encryptionKey: 'arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:alias/aws/s3',
  //       environment: {
  //         computeType: 'BUILD_GENERAL1_SMALL',
  //         environmentVariables: [],
  //         image: 'aws/codebuild/standard:7.0',
  //         imagePullCredentialsType: 'CODEBUILD',
  //         privilegedMode: false,
  //         type: 'LINUX_CONTAINER'
  //       },
  //       lastModified: 2023-08-18T14:46:48.979Z,
  //       name: 'MyCodeBuilder',
  //       projectVisibility: 'PRIVATE',
  //       queuedTimeoutInMinutes: 480,
  //       serviceRole: 'arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/CodeBuildAdmin',
  //       source: {
  //         insecureSsl: false,
  //         location: 'https://...',
  //         reportBuildStatus: false,
  //         type: 'GITHUB'
  //       },
  //       timeoutInMinutes: 60
  //     }
  //   }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

- For API details, see CreateProject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Cognito Identity.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListUserPools,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";

const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

export const helloCognito = async () => {
```

```
  const paginator = paginateListUserPools({ client }, {});

  const userPoolNames = [];

  for await (const page of paginator) {
    const names = page.UserPools.map((pool) => pool.Name);
    userPoolNames.push(...names);
  }

  console.log("User pool names: ");
  console.log(userPoolNames.join("\n"));
  return userPoolNames;
};
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const adminGetUser = ({ userPoolId, username }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new AdminGetUserCommand({
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
```

```
    Username: username,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`AdminInitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const adminInitiateAuth = ({ clientId, userPoolId, username, password }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new AdminInitiateAuthCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    AuthFlow: AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
    AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const adminRespondToAuthChallenge = ({
  userPoolId,
  clientId,
  username,
  totp,
  session,
}) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});
  const command = new AdminRespondToAuthChallengeCommand({
    ChallengeName: ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
    ChallengeResponses: {
      SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE: totp,
      USERNAME: username,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const associateSoftwareToken = (session) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});
  const command = new AssociateSoftwareTokenCommand({
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ConfirmDevice`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmDevice`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const confirmDevice = ({ deviceKey, accessToken, passwordVerifier, salt }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ConfirmDeviceCommand({
    DeviceKey: deviceKey,
    AccessToken: accessToken,
    DeviceSecretVerifierConfig: {
      PasswordVerifier: passwordVerifier,
```

```
      Salt: salt,
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ConfirmSignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const confirmSignUp = ({ clientId, username, code }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ConfirmSignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    ConfirmationCode: code,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Delete the signed-in user. Useful for allowing a user to delete their
 * own profile.
 * @param {{ region: string, accessToken: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").DeleteUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const deleteUser = async ({ region, accessToken }) => {
  try {
    const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await client.send(
      new DeleteUserCommand({ AccessToken: accessToken }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`InitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateAuth`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const initiateAuth = ({ username, password, clientId }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new InitiateAuthCommand({
    AuthFlow: AuthFlowType.USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
    AuthParameters: {
      USERNAME: username,
      PASSWORD: password,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const listUsers = ({ userPoolId }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ListUsersCommand({
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const resendConfirmationCode = ({ clientId, username }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ResendConfirmationCodeCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`RespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `RespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const respondToAuthChallenge = ({
  clientId,
  username,
  session,
  userPoolId,
  code,
}) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new RespondToAuthChallengeCommand({
    ChallengeName: ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
    ChallengeResponses: {
      SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE: code,
      USERNAME: username,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see RespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `SignUp`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const signUp = ({ clientId, username, password, email }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});
```

```
  const command = new SignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    Password: password,
    UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateUserPool`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUserPool`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Connect a Lambda function to the PreSignUp trigger for a Cognito user pool
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, handlerArn: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").UpdateUserPoolCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const addPreSignUpHandler = async ({
  region,
  userPoolId,
  handlerArn,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const command = new UpdateUserPoolCommand({
```

```
      UserPoolId: userPoolId,
      LambdaConfig: {
        PreSignUp: handlerArn,
      },
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(command);
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateUserPool in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const verifySoftwareToken = (totp) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  // The 'Session' is provided in the response to 'AssociateSoftwareToken'.
  const session = process.env.SESSION;

  if (!session) {
    throw new Error(
      "Missing a valid Session. Did you run 'admin-initiate-auth'?",
    );
  }

  const command = new VerifySoftwareTokenCommand({
    Session: session,
```

```
    UserCode: totp,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PreSignUp` trigger.
- Sign up a user with Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically confirms known users.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure an interactive "Scenario" run. The JavaScript (v3) examples share a Scenario runner to streamline complex examples. The complete source code is on GitHub.

```
import { AutoConfirm } from "./scenario-auto-confirm.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
```

```
const context = {
  errors: [],
  users: [
    {
      UserName: "test_user_1",
      UserEmail: "test_email_1@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_2",
      UserEmail: "test_email_2@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_3",
      UserEmail: "test_email_3@example.com",
    },
  ],
};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Demonstrate automatically confirming known users in a database.
  "auto-confirm": AutoConfirm(context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseScenarioArgs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Cognito user pools and triggers",
    description:
      "Demonstrate how to use the AWS SDKs to customize Amazon Cognito
 authentication behavior.",
  });
}
```

This Scenario demonstrates auto-confirming a known user. It orchestrates the example steps.

```
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";

import {
  getStackOutputs,
  logCleanUpReminder,
  promptForStackName,
  promptForStackRegion,
  skipWhenErrors,
} from "./steps-common.js";
import { populateTable } from "./actions/dynamodb-actions.js";
import {
  addPreSignUpHandler,
  deleteUser,
  getUser,
  signIn,
  signUpUser,
} from "./actions/cognito-actions.js";
import {
  getLatestLogStreamForLambda,
  getLogEvents,
} from "./actions/cloudwatch-logs-actions.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   errors: Error[],
 *   password: string,
 *   users: { UserName: string, UserEmail: string }[],
 *   selectedUser?: string,
 *   stackName?: string,
 *   stackRegion?: string,
 *   token?: string,
 *   confirmDeleteSignedInUser?: boolean,
 *   TableName?: string,
 *   UserPoolClientId?: string,
 *   UserPoolId?: string,
 *   UserPoolArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerArn?: string,
```

```
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerName?: string
 * }} State
 */

const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `This demo will populate some users into the \
database created as part of the "${state.stackName}" stack. \
Then the AutoConfirmHandler will be linked to the PreSignUp \
trigger from Cognito. Finally, you will choose a user to sign up.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsers = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsers",
  "Populating the DynamoDB table with some users.",
  { skipWhenErrors: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsersComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsersComplete",
  "Done populating users.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const populateUsers = new ScenarioAction(
  "populateUsers",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await populateTable({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      tableName: state.TableName,
      items: state.users,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTrigger",
```

```
  "Setting up the PreSignUp trigger for the Cognito User Pool.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const setupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioAction(
  "setupSignUpTrigger",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await addPreSignUpHandler({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      handlerArn: state.AutoConfirmHandlerArn,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete",
  (
    /** @type {State} */ state,
  ) => `The lambda function "${state.AutoConfirmHandlerName}" \
has been configured as the PreSignUp trigger handler for the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const selectUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "selectedUser",
  "Select a user to sign up.",
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users.map((u) => u.UserName),
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
    default: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users[0].UserName,
  },
);

const checkIfUserAlreadyExists = new ScenarioAction(
  "checkIfUserAlreadyExists",
```

```
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [user, err] = await getUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
    });

    if (err?.name === "UserNotFoundException") {
      // Do nothing. We're not expecting the user to exist before
      // sign up is complete.
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    if (user) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          `The user "${state.selectedUser}" already exists in the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
        ),
      );
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const createPassword = new ScenarioInput(
  "password",
  "Enter a password that has at least eight characters, uppercase, lowercase,
 numbers and symbols.",
  { type: "password", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors, default: "Abcd1234!" },
);

const logSignUpExistingUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Signing up user "${state.selectedUser}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

```
const signUpExistingUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signUpExistingUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const signUp = (password) =>
      signUpUser({
        region: state.stackRegion,
        userPoolClientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
        username: state.selectedUser,
        email: state.users.find((u) => u.UserName === state.selectedUser)
          .UserEmail,
        password,
      });

    let [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);

    while (err?.name === "InvalidPasswordException") {
      console.warn("The password you entered was invalid.");
      await createPassword.handle(state);
      [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignUpExistingUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `"${state.selectedUser} was signed up successfully.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logLambdaLogs = new ScenarioAction(
  "logLambdaLogs",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    console.log(
      "Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...\n",
    );
    await wait(10);
```

```
    const [logStream, logStreamErr] = await getLatestLogStreamForLambda({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
    });
    if (logStreamErr) {
      state.errors.push(logStreamErr);
      return;
    }

    console.log(
      `Getting some recent events from log stream "${logStream.logStreamName}"`,
    );
    const [logEvents, logEventsErr] = await getLogEvents({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
      eventCount: 10,
      logStreamName: logStream.logStreamName,
    });
    if (logEventsErr) {
      state.errors.push(logEventsErr);
      return;
    }

    console.log(logEvents.map((ev) => `\t${ev.message}`).join(""));
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Let's sign in as ${state.selectedUser}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [response, err] = await signIn({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      clientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
      password: state.password,
    });
```

```
    if (err?.name === "PasswordResetRequiredException") {
      state.errors.push(new Error("Please reset your password."));
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    state.token = response?.AuthenticationResult?.AccessToken;
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: ${state.token.slice(0,
 11)}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const confirmDeleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteSignedInUser",
  "Do you want to delete the currently signed in user?",
  { type: "confirm", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const deleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteSignedInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await deleteUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      accessToken: state.token,
    });

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      skipWhenErrors(state) || !state.confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
```

```
  },
);

const logErrors = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logErrors",
  (/** @type {State}*/ state) => {
    const errorList = state.errors
      .map((err) => ` - ${err.name}: ${err.message}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Scenario errors found:\n${errorList}`;
  },
  {
    // Don't log errors when there aren't any!
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.errors.length === 0,
  },
);

export const AutoConfirm = (context) =>
  new Scenario(
    "AutoConfirm",
    [
      promptForStackName,
      promptForStackRegion,
      getStackOutputs,
      greeting,
      logPopulatingUsers,
      populateUsers,
      logPopulatingUsersComplete,
      logSetupSignUpTrigger,
      setupSignUpTrigger,
      logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete,
      selectUser,
      checkIfUserAlreadyExists,
      createPassword,
      logSignUpExistingUser,
      signUpExistingUser,
      logSignUpExistingUserComplete,
      logLambdaLogs,
      logSignInUser,
      signInUser,
      logSignInUserComplete,
      confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
      deleteSignedInUser,
      logCleanUpReminder,
```

```
      logErrors,
    ],
    context,
  );
```

These are steps that are shared with other Scenarios.

```
import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { getCfnOutputs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/sdk/cfn-outputs.js";

export const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;

export const getStackOutputs = new ScenarioAction(
  "getStackOutputs",
  async (state) => {
    if (!state.stackName || !state.stackRegion) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          "No stack name or region provided. The stack name and \
region are required to fetch CFN outputs relevant to this example.",
        ),
      );
      return;
    }

    const outputs = await getCfnOutputs(state.stackName, state.stackRegion);
    Object.assign(state, outputs);
  },
);

export const promptForStackName = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackName",
  "Enter the name of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "PoolsAndTriggersStack" },
);

export const promptForStackRegion = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackRegion",
```

```
  "Enter the region of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "us-east-1" },
);

export const logCleanUpReminder = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logCleanUpReminder",
  "All done. Remember to run 'cdk destroy' to teardown the stack.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

A handler for the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import type { PreSignUpTriggerEvent, Handler } from "aws-lambda";
import type { UserRepository } from "./user-repository";
import { DynamoDBUserRepository } from "./user-repository";

export class PreSignUpHandler {
  private userRepository: UserRepository;

  constructor(userRepository: UserRepository) {
    this.userRepository = userRepository;
  }

  private isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): boolean {
    return event.triggerSource === "PreSignUp_SignUp";
  }

  private getEventUserEmail(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): string {
    return event.request.userAttributes.email;
  }

  async handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(
    event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent,
  ): Promise<PreSignUpTriggerEvent> {
    console.log(
      `Received presignup from ${event.triggerSource} for user '${event.userName}'`,
    );

    if (!this.isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event)) {
      return event;
    }
```

```
    const eventEmail = this.getEventUserEmail(event);
    console.log(`Looking up email ${eventEmail}.`);
    const storedUserInfo =
      await this.userRepository.getUserInfoByEmail(eventEmail);

    if (!storedUserInfo) {
      console.log(
        `Email ${eventEmail} not found. Email verification is required.`,
      );
      return event;
    }

    if (storedUserInfo.UserName !== event.userName) {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found, but stored UserName
 '${storedUserInfo.UserName}' does not match supplied UserName '${event.userName}'.
 Verification is required.`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found with matching UserName
 ${storedUserInfo.UserName}. User is confirmed.`,
      );
      event.response.autoConfirmUser = true;
      event.response.autoVerifyEmail = true;
    }
    return event;
  }
}

const createPreSignUpHandler = (): PreSignUpHandler => {
  const tableName = process.env.TABLE_NAME;
  if (!tableName) {
    throw new Error("TABLE_NAME environment variable is not set");
  }

  const userRepository = new DynamoDBUserRepository(tableName);
  return new PreSignUpHandler(userRepository);
};

export const handler: Handler = async (event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent) => {
  const preSignUpHandler = createPreSignUpHandler();
  return preSignUpHandler.handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(event);
};
```

Module of CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import {
  CloudWatchLogsClient,
  GetLogEventsCommand,
  OrderBy,
  paginateDescribeLogStreams,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";

/**
 * Get the latest log stream for a Lambda function.
 * @param {{ functionName: string, region: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").LogStream | null,
 unknown]>}
 */
export const getLatestLogStreamForLambda = async ({ functionName, region }) => {
  try {
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const paginator = paginateDescribeLogStreams(
      { client: cwlClient },
      {
        descending: true,
        limit: 1,
        orderBy: OrderBy.LastEventTime,
        logGroupName,
      },
    );

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      return [page.logStreams[0], null];
    }
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Get the log events for a Lambda function's log stream.
 * @param {{
```

```
 *   functionName: string,
 *   logStreamName: string,
 *   eventCount: number,
 *   region: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").OutputLogEvent[] |
 null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getLogEvents = async ({
  functionName,
  logStreamName,
  eventCount,
  region,
}) => {
  try {
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const response = await cwlClient.send(
      new GetLogEventsCommand({
        logStreamName: logStreamName,
        limit: eventCount,
        logGroupName: logGroupName,
      }),
    );

    return [response.events, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import {
  AdminGetUserCommand,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
  DeleteUserCommand,
  InitiateAuthCommand,
  SignUpCommand,
  UpdateUserPoolCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";
```

```
/**
 * Connect a Lambda function to the PreSignUp trigger for a Cognito user pool
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, handlerArn: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").UpdateUserPoolCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const addPreSignUpHandler = async ({
  region,
  userPoolId,
  handlerArn,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const command = new UpdateUserPoolCommand({
      UserPoolId: userPoolId,
      LambdaConfig: {
        PreSignUp: handlerArn,
      },
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(command);
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Attempt to register a user to a user pool with a given username and password.
 * @param {{
 *   region: string,
 *   userPoolClientId: string,
 *   username: string,
 *   email: string,
 *   password: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").SignUpCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signUpUser = async ({
```

```
  region,
  userPoolClientId,
  username,
  email,
  password,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new SignUpCommand({
        ClientId: userPoolClientId,
        Username: username,
        Password: password,
        UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Sign in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password authentication
 flow.
 * @param {{ region: string, clientId: string, username: string, password: string }}
 config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").InitiateAuthCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signIn = async ({ region, clientId, username, password }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new InitiateAuthCommand({
        AuthFlow: "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
        ClientId: clientId,
        AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Retrieve an existing user from a user pool.
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, username: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").AdminGetUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getUser = async ({ region, userPoolId, username }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new AdminGetUserCommand({
        UserPoolId: userPoolId,
        Username: username,
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Delete the signed-in user. Useful for allowing a user to delete their
 * own profile.
 * @param {{ region: string, accessToken: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").DeleteUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const deleteUser = async ({ region, accessToken }) => {
  try {
    const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await client.send(
      new DeleteUserCommand({ AccessToken: accessToken }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of DynamoDB actions.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Populate a DynamoDB table with provide items.
 * @param {{ region: string, tableName: string, items: Record<string, unknown>[] }}
 config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb").BatchWriteCommandOutput |
 null, unknown]>}
 */
export const populateTable = async ({ region, tableName, items }) => {
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region });
    const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(ddbClient);
    const response = await docClient.send(
      new BatchWriteCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [tableName]: items.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: {
              Item: item,
            },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser

- InitiateAuth
- SignUp
- UpdateUserPool

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

For the best experience, clone the GitHub repository and run this example. The following code represents a sample of the full example application.

```
import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { signUp } from "../../../actions/sign-up.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";
import { getSecondValuesFromEntries } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-
csv.js";

const validateClient = (clientId) => {
  if (!clientId) {
    throw new Error(
      `App client id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`,
    );
  }
};

const validateUser = (username, password, email) => {
  if (!(username && password && email)) {
```

```
    throw new Error(
      `Username, password, and email must be provided as arguments to the 'sign-up'
 command.`,
    );
  }
};

const signUpHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, password, email] = commands;

  try {
    validateUser(username, password, email);
    /**
     * @type {string[]}
     */
    const values = getSecondValuesFromEntries(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    const clientId = values[0];
    validateClient(clientId);
    logger.log("Signing up.");
    await signUp({ clientId, username, password, email });
    logger.log(`Signed up. A confirmation email has been sent to: ${email}.`);
    logger.log(
      `Run 'confirm-sign-up ${username} <code>' to confirm your account.`,
    );
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { signUpHandler };

const signUp = ({ clientId, username, password, email }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new SignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    Password: password,
    UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

```
import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { confirmSignUp } from "../../../actions/confirm-sign-up.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";
import { getSecondValuesFromEntries } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-
csv.js";

const validateClient = (clientId) => {
  if (!clientId) {
    throw new Error(
      `App client id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`,
    );
  }
};

const validateUser = (username) => {
  if (!username) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username name is missing. It must be provided as an argument to the 'confirm-
sign-up' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const validateCode = (code) => {
  if (!code) {
    throw new Error(
      `Verification code is missing. It must be provided as an argument to the
 'confirm-sign-up' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const confirmSignUpHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, code] = commands;

  try {
    validateUser(username);
    validateCode(code);
    /**
     * @type {string[]}
     */
    const values = getSecondValuesFromEntries(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    const clientId = values[0];
    validateClient(clientId);
```

```
    logger.log("Confirming user.");
    await confirmSignUp({ clientId, username, code });
    logger.log(
      `User confirmed. Run 'admin-initiate-auth ${username} <password>' to sign
 in.`,
    );
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { confirmSignUpHandler };

const confirmSignUp = ({ clientId, username, code }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new ConfirmSignUpCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    Username: username,
    ConfirmationCode: code,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import qrcode from "qrcode-terminal";
import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { adminInitiateAuth } from "../../../actions/admin-initiate-auth.js";
import { associateSoftwareToken } from "../../../actions/associate-software-
token.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";
import { getFirstEntry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-csv.js";

const handleMfaSetup = async (session, username) => {
  const { SecretCode, Session } = await associateSoftwareToken(session);

  // Store the Session for use with 'VerifySoftwareToken'.
  process.env.SESSION = Session;

  console.log(
    "Scan this code in your preferred authenticator app, then run 'verify-software-
token' to finish the setup.",
  );
  qrcode.generate(
```

```
    `otpauth://totp/${username}?secret=${SecretCode}`,
    { small: true },
    console.log,
  );
};

const handleSoftwareTokenMfa = (session) => {
  // Store the Session for use with 'AdminRespondToAuthChallenge'.
  process.env.SESSION = session;
};

const validateClient = (id) => {
  if (!id) {
    throw new Error(
      `User pool client id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`,
    );
  }
};

const validateId = (id) => {
  if (!id) {
    throw new Error(`User pool id is missing. Did you run 'create-user-pool'?`);
  }
};

const validateUser = (username, password) => {
  if (!(username && password)) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username and password must be provided as arguments to the 'admin-initiate-
auth' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const adminInitiateAuthHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, password] = commands;

  try {
    validateUser(username, password);

    const [userPoolId, clientId] = getFirstEntry(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    validateId(userPoolId);
    validateClient(clientId);
```

```
    logger.log("Signing in.");
    const { ChallengeName, Session } = await adminInitiateAuth({
      clientId,
      userPoolId,
      username,
      password,
    });

    if (ChallengeName === "MFA_SETUP") {
      logger.log("MFA setup is required.");
      return handleMfaSetup(Session, username);
    }

    if (ChallengeName === "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA") {
      handleSoftwareTokenMfa(Session);
      logger.log(`Run 'admin-respond-to-auth-challenge ${username} <totp>'`);
    }
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { adminInitiateAuthHandler };

const adminInitiateAuth = ({ clientId, userPoolId, username, password }) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new AdminInitiateAuthCommand({
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    AuthFlow: AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH,
    AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { adminRespondToAuthChallenge } from "../../../actions/admin-respond-to-auth-
challenge.js";
import { getFirstEntry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-csv.js";
import { FILE_USER_POOLS } from "./constants.js";

const verifyUsername = (username) => {
```

```
  if (!username) {
    throw new Error(
      `Username is missing. It must be provided as an argument to the 'admin-
respond-to-auth-challenge' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const verifyTotp = (totp) => {
  if (!totp) {
    throw new Error(
      `Time-based one-time password (TOTP) is missing. It must be provided as an
 argument to the 'admin-respond-to-auth-challenge' command.`,
    );
  }
};

const storeAccessToken = (token) => {
  process.env.AccessToken = token;
};

const adminRespondToAuthChallengeHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, username, totp] = commands;

  try {
    verifyUsername(username);
    verifyTotp(totp);

    const [userPoolId, clientId] = getFirstEntry(FILE_USER_POOLS);
    const session = process.env.SESSION;

    const { AuthenticationResult } = await adminRespondToAuthChallenge({
      clientId,
      userPoolId,
      username,
      totp,
      session,
    });

    storeAccessToken(AuthenticationResult.AccessToken);

    logger.log("Successfully authenticated.");
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
```

```
  }
};

export { adminRespondToAuthChallengeHandler };

const respondToAuthChallenge = ({
  clientId,
  username,
  session,
  userPoolId,
  code,
}) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  const command = new RespondToAuthChallengeCommand({
    ChallengeName: ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA,
    ChallengeResponses: {
      SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE: code,
      USERNAME: username,
    },
    ClientId: clientId,
    UserPoolId: userPoolId,
    Session: session,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

import { logger } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";
import { verifySoftwareToken } from "../../../actions/verify-software-token.js";

const validateTotp = (totp) => {
  if (!totp) {
    throw new Error(
      `Time-based one-time password (TOTP) must be provided to the 'validate-
software-token' command.`,
    );
  }
};
const verifySoftwareTokenHandler = async (commands) => {
  const [_, totp] = commands;

  try {
    validateTotp(totp);
```

```
    logger.log("Verifying TOTP.");
    await verifySoftwareToken(totp);
    logger.log("TOTP Verified. Run 'admin-initiate-auth' again to sign-in.");
  } catch (err) {
    logger.error(err);
  }
};

export { verifySoftwareTokenHandler };

const verifySoftwareToken = (totp) => {
  const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({});

  // The 'Session' is provided in the response to 'AssociateSoftwareToken'.
  const session = process.env.SESSION;

  if (!session) {
    throw new Error(
      "Missing a valid Session. Did you run 'admin-initiate-auth'?",
    );
  }

  const command = new VerifySoftwareTokenCommand({
    Session: session,
    UserCode: totp,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth

- ListUsers
- ResendConfirmationCode
- RespondToAuthChallenge
- SignUp
- VerifySoftwareToken

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Comprehend.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Building an Amazon Lex chatbot

The following code example shows how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example Building an Amazon Lex chatbot in the AWS SDK for JavaScript developer guide.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.

- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
```

```
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";
```

```
/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
```

```
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
console.log('Loading function');
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    event.events.forEach(record => {
        logDocumentDBEvent(record);
    });
    return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record) => {
    console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
    console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
    console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
    console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null,
 2));
};
```

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using TypeScript

```
import { DocumentDBEventRecord, DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext } from 'aws-
lambda';
```

```
console.log('Loading function');

export const handler = async (
  event: DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext,
  context: any
): Promise<string> => {
  event.events.forEach((record: DocumentDBEventRecord) => {
    logDocumentDBEvent(record);
  });
  return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record: DocumentDBEventRecord): void => {
  console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
  console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
  console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
  console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null, 2));
};
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

For more details on working with DynamoDB in AWS SDK for JavaScript, see Programming DynamoDB with JavaScript.

```
import { ListTablesCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListTablesCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response.TableNames.join("\n"));
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.

- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import {
  BillingMode,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DeleteTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

/**
 * This module is a convenience library. It abstracts Amazon DynamoDB's data type
 * descriptors (such as S, N, B, and BOOL) by marshalling JavaScript objects into
 * AttributeValue shapes.
 */
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DeleteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand,
  UpdateCommand,
  paginateQuery,
  paginateScan,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

// These modules are local to our GitHub repository. We recommend cloning
```

```
// the project from GitHub if you want to run this example.
// For more information, see https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples.
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { chunkArray } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-array.js";

const dirname = dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url);
const tableName = getUniqueName("Movies");
const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

const log = (msg) => console.log(`[SCENARIO] ${msg}`);

export const main = async () => {
  /**
   * Create a table.
   */

  const createTableCommand = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // This example performs a large write to the database.
    // Set the billing mode to PAY_PER_REQUEST to
    // avoid throttling the large write.
    BillingMode: BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
    // Define the attributes that are necessary for the key schema.
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "year",
        // 'N' is a data type descriptor that represents a number type.
        // For a list of all data type descriptors, see the following link.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
        AttributeType: "N",
      },
      { AttributeName: "title", AttributeType: "S" },
    ],
    // The KeySchema defines the primary key. The primary key can be
    // a partition key, or a combination of a partition key and a sort key.
    // Key schema design is important. For more info, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/best-
practices.html
    KeySchema: [
      // The way your data is accessed determines how you structure your keys.
      // The movies table will be queried for movies by year. It makes sense
```

```
      // to make year our partition (HASH) key.
      { AttributeName: "year", KeyType: "HASH" },
      { AttributeName: "title", KeyType: "RANGE" },
    ],
  });

  log("Creating a table.");
  const createTableResponse = await client.send(createTableCommand);
  log(`Table created: ${JSON.stringify(createTableResponse.TableDescription)}`);

  // This polls with DescribeTableCommand until the requested table is 'ACTIVE'.
  // You can't write to a table before it's active.
  log("Waiting for the table to be active.");
  await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: tableName });
  log("Table active.");

  /**
   * Add a movie to the table.
   */

  log("Adding a single movie to the table.");
  // PutCommand is the first example usage of 'lib-dynamodb'.
  const putCommand = new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: {
      // In 'client-dynamodb', the AttributeValue would be required (`year: { N:
1981 }`)
      // 'lib-dynamodb' simplifies the usage ( `year: 1981` )
      year: 1981,
      // The preceding KeySchema defines 'title' as our sort (RANGE) key, so 'title'
      // is required.
      title: "The Evil Dead",
      // Every other attribute is optional.
      info: {
        genres: ["Horror"],
      },
    },
  });
  await docClient.send(putCommand);
  log("The movie was added.");

  /**
   * Get a movie from the table.
   */
```

```
  log("Getting a single movie from the table.");
  const getCommand = new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // Requires the complete primary key. For the movies table, the primary key
    // is only the id (partition key).
    Key: {
      year: 1981,
      title: "The Evil Dead",
    },
    // Set this to make sure that recent writes are reflected.
    // For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/
developerguide/HowItWorks.ReadConsistency.html.
    ConsistentRead: true,
  });
  const getResponse = await docClient.send(getCommand);
  log(`Got the movie: ${JSON.stringify(getResponse.Item)}`);

  /**
   * Update a movie in the table.
   */

  log("Updating a single movie in the table.");
  const updateCommand = new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: { year: 1981, title: "The Evil Dead" },
    // This update expression appends "Comedy" to the list of genres.
    // For more information on update expressions, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Expressions.UpdateExpressions.html
    UpdateExpression: "set #i.#g = list_append(#i.#g, :vals)",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#i": "info", "#g": "genres" },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":vals": ["Comedy"],
    },
    ReturnValues: "ALL_NEW",
  });
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(updateCommand);
  log(`Movie updated: ${JSON.stringify(updateResponse.Attributes)}`);

  /**
   * Delete a movie from the table.
   */
```

```
log("Deleting a single movie from the table.");
const deleteCommand = new DeleteCommand({
  TableName: tableName,
  Key: { year: 1981, title: "The Evil Dead" },
});
await client.send(deleteCommand);
log("Movie deleted.");

/**
 * Upload a batch of movies.
 */

log("Adding movies from local JSON file.");
const file = readFileSync(
  `${dirname}../../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json`,
);
const movies = JSON.parse(file.toString());
// chunkArray is a local convenience function. It takes an array and returns
// a generator function. The generator function yields every N items.
const movieChunks = chunkArray(movies, 25);
// For every chunk of 25 movies, make one BatchWrite request.
for (const chunk of movieChunks) {
  const putRequests = chunk.map((movie) => ({
    PutRequest: {
      Item: movie,
    },
  }));

  const command = new BatchWriteCommand({
    RequestItems: {
      [tableName]: putRequests,
    },
  });

  await docClient.send(command);
}
log("Movies added.");

/**
 * Query for movies by year.
 */

log("Querying for all movies from 1981.");
const paginatedQuery = paginateQuery(
```

```
    { client: docClient },
    {
      TableName: tableName,
      //For more information about query expressions, see
      // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Query.html#Query.KeyConditionExpressions
      KeyConditionExpression: "#y = :y",
      // 'year' is a reserved word in DynamoDB. Indicate that it's an attribute
      // name by using an expression attribute name.
      ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#y": "year" },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: { ":y": 1981 },
      ConsistentRead: true,
    },
  );
  /**
   * @type { Record<string, any>[] };
   */
  const movies1981 = [];
  for await (const page of paginatedQuery) {
    movies1981.push(...page.Items);
  }
  log(`Movies: ${movies1981.map((m) => m.title).join(", ")}`);

  /**
   * Scan the table for movies between 1980 and 1990.
   */

  log("Scan for movies released between 1980 and 1990");
  // A 'Scan' operation always reads every item in the table. If your design
 requires
  // the use of 'Scan', consider indexing your table or changing your design.
  // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/bp-query-
scan.html
  const paginatedScan = paginateScan(
    { client: docClient },
    {
      TableName: tableName,
      // Scan uses a filter expression instead of a key condition expression. Scan
 will
      // read the entire table and then apply the filter.
      FilterExpression: "#y between :y1 and :y2",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#y": "year" },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: { ":y1": 1980, ":y2": 1990 },
      ConsistentRead: true,
```

```
    },
  );
  /**
   * @type { Record<string, any>[] };
   */
  const movies1980to1990 = [];
  for await (const page of paginatedScan) {
    movies1980to1990.push(...page.Items);
  }
  log(
    `Movies: ${movies1980to1990
      .map((m) => `${m.title} (${m.year})`)
      .join(", ")}`,
  );

  /**
   * Delete the table.
   */

  const deleteTableCommand = new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: tableName });
  log(`Deleting table ${tableName}.`);
  await client.send(deleteTableCommand);
  log("Table deleted.");
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const breakfastFoods = ["Eggs", "Bacon", "Sausage"];
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: breakfastFoods.map((food) => ({
      Statement: `INSERT INTO BreakfastFoods value {'Name':?}`,
      Parameters: [food],
    })),
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Get a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: "SELECT * FROM PepperMeasurements WHERE Unit=?",
        Parameters: ["Teaspoons"],
        ConsistentRead: true,
      },
      {
        Statement: "SELECT * FROM PepperMeasurements WHERE Unit=?",
        Parameters: ["Grams"],
        ConsistentRead: true,
      },
    ],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Update a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
export const main = async () => {
  const eggUpdates = [
    ["duck", "fried"],
    ["chicken", "omelette"],
  ];
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: eggUpdates.map((change) => ({
      Statement: "UPDATE Eggs SET Style=? where Variety=?",
      Parameters: [change[1], change[0]],
    })),
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Delete a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: "DELETE FROM Flavors where Name=?",
        Parameters: ["Grape"],
      },
      {
        Statement: "DELETE FROM Flavors where Name=?",
        Parameters: ["Strawberry"],
      },
    ],
```

```
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see BatchGet.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { BatchGetCommand, DynamoDBDocumentClient } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new BatchGetCommand({
    // Each key in this object is the name of a table. This example refers
    // to a Books table.
    RequestItems: {
      Books: {
        // Each entry in Keys is an object that specifies a primary key.
        Keys: [
          {
            Title: "How to AWS",
          },
```

```
          {
            Title: "DynamoDB for DBAs",
          },
        ],
        // Only return the "Title" and "PageCount" attributes.
        ProjectionExpression: "Title, PageCount",
      },
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response.Responses.Books);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see BatchWrite.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
```

```
// These modules are local to our GitHub repository. We recommend cloning
// the project from GitHub if you want to run this example.
// For more information, see https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples.
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { chunkArray } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-array.js";

const dirname = dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url);

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const file = readFileSync(
    `${dirname}../../../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json`,
  );

  const movies = JSON.parse(file.toString());

  // chunkArray is a local convenience function. It takes an array and returns
  // a generator function. The generator function yields every N items.
  const movieChunks = chunkArray(movies, 25);

  // For every chunk of 25 movies, make one BatchWrite request.
  for (const chunk of movieChunks) {
    const putRequests = chunk.map((movie) => ({
      PutRequest: {
        Item: movie,
      },
    }));

    const command = new BatchWriteCommand({
      RequestItems: {
        // An existing table is required. A composite key of 'title' and 'year' is
 recommended
        // to account for duplicate titles.
        BatchWriteMoviesTable: putRequests,
      },
    });

    await docClient.send(command);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateTableCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: "EspressoDrinks",
    // For more information about data types,
    // see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
HowItWorks.NamingRulesDataTypes.html#HowItWorks.DataTypes and
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "DrinkName",
        AttributeType: "S",
      },
    ],
    KeySchema: [
      {
        AttributeName: "DrinkName",
        KeyType: "HASH",
      },
    ],
    BillingMode: "PAY_PER_REQUEST",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
```

```
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see DeleteCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, DeleteCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteCommand({
    TableName: "Sodas",
    Key: {
      Flavor: "Cola",
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteTableCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new DeleteTableCommand({
    TableName: "DecafCoffees",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeTableCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeTableCommand({
    TableName: "Pastries",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(`TABLE NAME: ${response.Table.TableName}`);
  console.log(`TABLE ITEM COUNT: ${response.Table.ItemCount}`);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeTimeToLive`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTimeToLive`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Describe TTL configuration on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, DescribeTimeToLiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-
dynamodb";

export const describeTTL = async (tableName, region) => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
```

```
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    try {
        const ttlDescription = await client.send(new
 DescribeTimeToLiveCommand({ TableName: tableName }));

        if (ttlDescription.TimeToLiveDescription.TimeToLiveStatus === 'ENABLED') {
            console.log("TTL is enabled for table %s.", tableName);
        } else {
            console.log("TTL is not enabled for table %s.", tableName);
        }

        return ttlDescription;
    } catch (e) {
        console.error(`Error describing table: ${e}`);
        throw e;
    }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// describeTTL('your-table-name', 'us-east-1');
```

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
```

```
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: `INSERT INTO Flowers value {'Name':?}`,
    Parameters: ["Rose"],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Get an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: "SELECT * FROM CloudTypes WHERE IsStorm=?",
    Parameters: [false],
    ConsistentRead: true,
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Update an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: "UPDATE EyeColors SET IsRecessive=? where Color=?",
    Parameters: [true, "blue"],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Delete an item using PartiQL.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

import {
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    Statement: "DELETE FROM PaintColors where Name=?",
    Parameters: ["Purple"],
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
```

```
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see GetCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, GetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new GetCommand({
    TableName: "AngryAnimals",
    Key: {
      CommonName: "Shoebill",
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListTablesCommand, DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListTablesCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see PutCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { PutCommand, DynamoDBDocumentClient } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new PutCommand({
    TableName: "HappyAnimals",
    Item: {
      CommonName: "Shiba Inu",
    },
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see QueryCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { QueryCommand, DynamoDBDocumentClient } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new QueryCommand({
    TableName: "CoffeeCrop",
    KeyConditionExpression:
      "OriginCountry = :originCountry AND RoastDate > :roastDate",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":originCountry": "Ethiopia",
      ":roastDate": "2023-05-01",
    },
    ConsistentRead: true,
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see ScanCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, ScanCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ScanCommand({
    ProjectionExpression: "#Name, Color, AvgLifeSpan",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: { "#Name": "Name" },
    TableName: "Birds",
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  for (const bird of response.Items) {
    console.log(`${bird.Name} - (${bird.Color}, ${bird.AvgLifeSpan})`);
  }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example uses the document client to simplify working with items in DynamoDB. For API details see UpdateCommand.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { DynamoDBDocumentClient, UpdateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: "Dogs",
    Key: {
      Breed: "Labrador",
    },
    UpdateExpression: "set Color = :color",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":color": "black",
    },
    ReturnValues: "ALL_NEW",
  });

  const response = await docClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateTimeToLive`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTimeToLive`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateTimeToLiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export const enableTTL = async (tableName, ttlAttribute, region = 'us-east-1') => {

    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        TimeToLiveSpecification: {
            Enabled: true,
            AttributeName: ttlAttribute
        }
    };

    try {
        const response = await client.send(new UpdateTimeToLiveCommand(params));
        if (response.$metadata.httpStatusCode === 200) {
            console.log(`TTL enabled successfully for table ${tableName}, using
 attribute name ${ttlAttribute}.`);
        } else {
            console.log(`Failed to enable TTL for table ${tableName}, response
 object: ${response}`);
        }
        return response;
    } catch (e) {
        console.error(`Error enabling TTL: ${e}`);
        throw e;
    }
};

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// enableTTL('ExampleTable', 'exampleTtlAttribute');
```

Disable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateTimeToLiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
```

```
export const disableTTL = async (tableName, ttlAttribute, region = 'us-east-1') => {

    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        TimeToLiveSpecification: {
            Enabled: false,
            AttributeName: ttlAttribute
        }
    };

    try {
        const response = await client.send(new UpdateTimeToLiveCommand(params));
        if (response.$metadata.httpStatusCode === 200) {
            console.log(`TTL disabled successfully for table ${tableName}, using
 attribute name ${ttlAttribute}.`);
        } else {
            console.log(`Failed to disable TTL for table ${tableName}, response
 object: ${response}`);
        }
        return response;
    } catch (e) {
        console.error(`Error disabling TTL: ${e}`);
        throw e;
    }
};

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// disableTTL('ExampleTable', 'exampleTtlAttribute');
```

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build an app to submit data to a DynamoDB table

The following code example shows how to build an application that submits data to an Amazon DynamoDB table and notifies you when a user updates the table.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example shows how to build an app that enables users to submit data to an Amazon DynamoDB table, and send a text message to the administrator using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

Compare multiple values with a single attribute

The following code example shows how to compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB.

- Use the IN operator to compare multiple values with a single attribute.
- Compare the IN operator with multiple OR conditions.
- Understand the performance and expression complexity benefits of using IN.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Compare multiple values with a single attribute using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ScanCommand,
  QueryCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Query or scan a DynamoDB table to find items where an attribute matches any value
 from a list.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates the use of the IN operator to compare a single
 attribute
 * against multiple possible values, which is more efficient than using multiple OR
 conditions.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} attributeName - The name of the attribute to compare against the
 values list
 * @param {Array} valuesList - List of values to compare the attribute against
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyName] - Optional name of the partition key attribute
 for query operations
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyValue] - Optional value of the partition key to
 query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB containing the matching
 items
 */
async function compareMultipleValues(
  config,
  tableName,
  attributeName,
  valuesList,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the filter expression using the IN operator
  const filterExpression = `${attributeName} IN (${valuesList.map((_, index) =>
 `:val${index}`).join(', ')})`;

  // Create expression attribute values for the values list
  const expressionAttributeValues = valuesList.reduce((acc, val, index) => {
    acc[`:val${index}`] = val;
    return acc;
  }, {});

  // If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
  if (partitionKeyName && partitionKeyValue) {
    const keyCondition = `${partitionKeyName} = :partitionKey`;
    expressionAttributeValues[':partitionKey'] = partitionKeyValue;
```

```
    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: keyCondition,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new QueryCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  } else {
    // Otherwise, perform a scan operation
    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
```

```
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous scan
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new ScanCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  }
}

/**
 * Alternative implementation using multiple OR conditions instead of the IN
 operator.
 *
 * This function is provided for comparison to show why using the IN operator is
 preferable.
 * With many values, this approach becomes verbose and less efficient.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} attributeName - The name of the attribute to compare against the
 values list
 * @param {Array} valuesList - List of values to compare the attribute against
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyName] - Optional name of the partition key attribute
 for query operations
```

```
 * @param {string} [partitionKeyValue] - Optional value of the partition key to
 query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB containing the matching
 items
 */
async function compareWithOrConditions(
  config,
  tableName,
  attributeName,
  valuesList,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // If no values provided, return empty result
  if (!valuesList || valuesList.length === 0) {
    return {
      Items: [],
      Count: 0
    };
  }

  // Create the filter expression using multiple OR conditions
  const filterConditions = valuesList.map((_, index) => `${attributeName} = :val
${index}`);
  const filterExpression = filterConditions.join(' OR ');

  // Create expression attribute values for the values list
  const expressionAttributeValues = valuesList.reduce((acc, val, index) => {
    acc[`:val${index}`] = val;
    return acc;
  }, {});

  // If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
  if (partitionKeyName && partitionKeyValue) {
    const keyCondition = `${partitionKeyName} = :partitionKey`;
    expressionAttributeValues[':partitionKey'] = partitionKeyValue;

    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;
```

```
    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: keyCondition,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new QueryCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  } else {
    // Otherwise, perform a scan operation
    // Initialize array to collect all items
    let allItems = [];
    let lastEvaluatedKey;

    // Use pagination to get all results
    do {
      const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        FilterExpression: filterExpression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
      };
```

```
      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a lastEvaluatedKey from a previous scan
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        params.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      const response = await docClient.send(new ScanCommand(params));

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems = [...allItems, ...response.Items];
      }

      // Get the key for the next page of results
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;
    } while (lastEvaluatedKey);

    // Return the complete result
    return {
      Items: allItems,
      Count: allItems.length
    };
  }
}
```

Example usage of comparing multiple values with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use the compareMultipleValues function.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const attributeName = "Category";
  const valuesList = ["Electronics", "Computers", "Accessories"];

  console.log(`Searching for products in any of these categories:
 ${valuesList.join(', ')}`);

  try {
    // Using the IN operator (recommended approach)
```

```
    console.log("\nApproach 1: Using the IN operator");
    const response = await compareMultipleValues(
      config,
      tableName,
      attributeName,
      valuesList
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response.Count} products in the specified categories`);

    // Using multiple OR conditions (alternative approach)
    console.log("\nApproach 2: Using multiple OR conditions");
    const response2 = await compareWithOrConditions(
      config,
      tableName,
      attributeName,
      valuesList
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response2.Count} products in the specified categories`);

    // Example with a query operation
    console.log("\nQuerying a specific manufacturer's products in multiple
categories");
    const partitionKeyName = "Manufacturer";
    const partitionKeyValue = "Acme";

    const response3 = await compareMultipleValues(
      config,
      tableName,
      attributeName,
      valuesList,
      partitionKeyName,
      partitionKeyValue
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response3.Count} Acme products in the specified
categories`);

    // Explain the benefits of using the IN operator
    console.log("\nBenefits of using the IN operator:");
    console.log("1. More concise expression compared to multiple OR conditions");
    console.log("2. Better readability and maintainability");
    console.log("3. Potentially better performance with large value lists");
```

```
    console.log("4. Simpler code that's less prone to errors");
    console.log("5. Easier to modify when adding or removing values");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - Query
  - Scan

Conditionally update an item's TTL

The following code example shows how to conditionally update an item's TTL.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Update TTL on on an existing DynamoDB Item in a table, with a condition.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateItemCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { marshall, unmarshall } from "@aws-sdk/util-dynamodb";

export const updateItemConditional = async (tableName, partitionKey, sortKey, region
 = 'us-east-1', newAttribute = 'default-value') => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const currentTime = Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000);

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        Key: marshall({
            artist: partitionKey,
            album: sortKey
        }),
        UpdateExpression: "SET newAttribute = :newAttribute",
        ConditionExpression: "expireAt > :expiration",
        ExpressionAttributeValues: marshall({
```

```
            ':newAttribute': newAttribute,
            ':expiration': currentTime
        }),
        ReturnValues: "ALL_NEW"
    };

    try {
        const response = await client.send(new UpdateItemCommand(params));
        const responseData = unmarshall(response.Attributes);
        console.log("Item updated successfully: ", responseData);
        return responseData;
    } catch (error) {
        if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
            console.log("Condition check failed: Item's 'expireAt' is expired.");
        } else {
            console.error("Error updating item: ", error);
        }
        throw error;
    }
};

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// updateItemConditional('your-table-name', 'your-partition-key-value', 'your-sort-
key-value');
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Count expression operators

The following code example shows how to count expression operators in DynamoDB.

- Understand DynamoDB's 300 operator limit.
- Count operators in complex expressions.
- Optimize expressions to stay within limits.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate expression operator counting using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
```

```
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  QueryCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Create a complex filter expression with a specified number of conditions.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to generate a complex expression with
 * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
 *
 * @param {number} conditionsCount - Number of conditions to include
 * @param {boolean} useAnd - Whether to use AND (true) or OR (false) between
 conditions
 * @returns {Object} - Object containing the filter expression and attribute values
 */
function createComplexFilterExpression(conditionsCount, useAnd = true) {
  // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
  const conditions = [];
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // Generate the specified number of conditions
  for (let i = 0; i < conditionsCount; i++) {
    // Alternate between different comparison operators for variety
    let condition;
    const valueKey = `:val${i}`;

    switch (i % 5) {
      case 0:
        condition = `attribute${i} = ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = `value${i}`;
        break;
      case 1:
        condition = `attribute${i} > ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i;
        break;
      case 2:
        condition = `attribute${i} < ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i * 10;
        break;
      case 3:
        condition = `contains(attribute${i}, ${valueKey})`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = `substring${i}`;
```

```
        break;
      case 4:
        condition = `attribute_exists(attribute${i})`;
        break;
    }

    conditions.push(condition);
  }

  // Join the conditions with AND or OR
  const operator = useAnd ? " AND " : " OR ";
  const filterExpression = conditions.join(operator);

  // Calculate the operator count
  // Each condition has 1 operator (=, >, <, contains, attribute_exists)
  // Each AND or OR between conditions is 1 operator
  const operatorCount = conditionsCount + (conditionsCount > 0 ? conditionsCount -
 1 : 0);

  return {
    filterExpression,
    expressionAttributeValues,
    operatorCount
  };
}

/**
 * Create a complex update expression with a specified number of operations.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to generate a complex update expression with
 * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
 *
 * @param {number} operationsCount - Number of operations to include
 * @returns {Object} - Object containing the update expression and attribute values
 */
function createComplexUpdateExpression(operationsCount) {
  // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
  const setOperations = [];
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // Generate the specified number of SET operations
  for (let i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
    // Alternate between different types of SET operations
    let operation;
```

```
    const valueKey = `:val${i}`;

    switch (i % 3) {
      case 0:
        // Simple assignment (1 operator: =)
        operation = `attribute${i} = ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = `value${i}`;
        break;
      case 1:
        // Addition (2 operators: = and +)
        operation = `attribute${i} = attribute${i} + ${valueKey}`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i;
        break;
      case 2:
        // Conditional assignment with if_not_exists (2 operators: = and
 if_not_exists)
        operation = `attribute${i} = if_not_exists(attribute${i}, ${valueKey})`;
        expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = i * 10;
        break;
    }

    setOperations.push(operation);
  }

  // Create the update expression
  const updateExpression = `SET ${setOperations.join(", ")}`;

  // Calculate the operator count
  // Each operation has 1-2 operators as noted above
  let operatorCount = 0;
  for (let i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
    operatorCount += (i % 3 === 0) ? 1 : 2;
  }

  return {
    updateExpression,
    expressionAttributeValues,
    operatorCount
  };
}

/**
 * Test the operator limit by attempting an operation with a complex expression.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates what happens when an expression approaches or
 * exceeds the 300 operator limit.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {number} operatorCount - Target number of operators to include
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation attempt
 */
async function testOperatorLimit(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  operatorCount
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create a complex update expression with the specified operator count
  const { updateExpression, expressionAttributeValues, operatorCount: actualCount }
 =
    createComplexUpdateExpression(Math.ceil(operatorCount / 1.5)); // Adjust to get
 close to target count

  console.log(`Generated update expression with approximately ${actualCount}
 operators`);

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Attempt the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
    return {
      success: true,
      message: `Operation succeeded with ${actualCount} operators`,
      data: response
```

```
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to exceeding the operator limit
    if (error.name === "ValidationException" &&
        error.message.includes("too many operators")) {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: `Operation failed: ${error.message}`,
        operatorCount: actualCount
      };
    }

    // Return other errors
    return {
      success: false,
      message: `Operation failed: ${error.message}`,
      error
    };
  }
}

/**
 * Break down a complex expression into multiple simpler operations.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to handle expressions that would exceed
 * the 300 operator limit by breaking them into multiple operations.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {number} totalOperations - Total number of operations to perform
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operations
 */
async function breakDownComplexExpression(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  totalOperations
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Calculate how many operations we can safely include in each batch
```

```
 // Using 150 as a conservative limit (well below 300)
 const operationsPerBatch = 100;
 const batchCount = Math.ceil(totalOperations / operationsPerBatch);

 console.log(`Breaking down ${totalOperations} operations into ${batchCount}
batches`);

 const results = [];

 // Process each batch
 for (let batch = 0; batch < batchCount; batch++) {
   // Calculate the operations for this batch
   const batchStart = batch * operationsPerBatch;
   const batchEnd = Math.min(batchStart + operationsPerBatch, totalOperations);
   const batchSize = batchEnd - batchStart;

   console.log(`Processing batch ${batch + 1}/${batchCount} with ${batchSize}
operations`);

   // Create an update expression for this batch
   const { updateExpression, expressionAttributeValues, operatorCount } =
     createComplexUpdateExpression(batchSize);

   // Define the update parameters
   const params = {
     TableName: tableName,
     Key: key,
     UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
     ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
     ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
   };

   try {
     // Perform the update operation for this batch
     const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

     results.push({
       batch: batch + 1,
       success: true,
       operatorCount,
       attributes: response.Attributes
     });
   } catch (error) {
     results.push({
```

```
        batch: batch + 1,
        success: false,
        operatorCount,
        error: error.message
      });

      // Stop processing if an error occurs
      break;
    }
  }

  return {
    totalBatches: batchCount,
    results
  };
}

/**
 * Count operators in a DynamoDB expression based on the rules in the documentation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how operators are counted according to the
 * DynamoDB documentation.
 *
 * @param {string} expression - The DynamoDB expression to analyze
 * @returns {Object} - Breakdown of operator counts
 */
function countOperatorsInExpression(expression) {
  // Initialize counters for different operator types
  const counts = {
    comparisonOperators: 0,
    logicalOperators: 0,
    functions: 0,
    arithmeticOperators: 0,
    specialOperators: 0,
    total: 0
  };

  // Count comparison operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)
  const comparisonRegex = /[^<>]=[^=]|<>|<=|>=|[^<]>[^=]|[^>]<[^=]/g;
  const comparisonMatches = expression.match(comparisonRegex) || [];
  counts.comparisonOperators = comparisonMatches.length;

  // Count logical operators (AND, OR, NOT)
  const andMatches = expression.match(/\bAND\b/g) || [];
```

```
  const orMatches = expression.match(/\bOR\b/g) || [];
  const notMatches = expression.match(/\bNOT\b/g) || [];
  counts.logicalOperators = andMatches.length + orMatches.length +
 notMatches.length;

  // Count functions (attribute_exists, attribute_not_exists, attribute_type,
 begins_with, contains, size)
  const functionRegex = /\b(attribute_exists|attribute_not_exists|attribute_type|
begins_with|contains|size|if_not_exists)\(/g;
  const functionMatches = expression.match(functionRegex) || [];
  counts.functions = functionMatches.length;

  // Count arithmetic operators (+ and -)
  const arithmeticMatches = expression.match(/[a-zA-Z0-9_)\]]\s*[\+\-]\s*[a-zA-
Z0-9_(:]/g) || [];
  counts.arithmeticOperators = arithmeticMatches.length;

  // Count special operators (BETWEEN, IN)
  const betweenMatches = expression.match(/\bBETWEEN\b/g) || [];
  const inMatches = expression.match(/\bIN\b/g) || [];
  counts.specialOperators = betweenMatches.length + inMatches.length;

  // Add extra operators for BETWEEN (each BETWEEN includes an AND)
  counts.logicalOperators += betweenMatches.length;

  // Calculate total
  counts.total = counts.comparisonOperators +
                 counts.logicalOperators +
                 counts.functions +
                 counts.arithmeticOperators +
                 counts.specialOperators;

  return counts;
}
```

Example usage of expression operator counting with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to work with expression operator counting.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
```

```
 const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
 const tableName = "Products";
 const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };

 console.log("Demonstrating DynamoDB expression operator counting and the 300
operator limit");

 try {
   // Example 1: Analyze a simple expression
   console.log("\nExample 1: Analyzing a simple expression");
   const simpleExpression = "Price = :price AND Rating > :rating AND Category IN
(:cat1, :cat2, :cat3)";
   const simpleCount = countOperatorsInExpression(simpleExpression);

   console.log(`Expression: ${simpleExpression}`);
   console.log("Operator count breakdown:");
   console.log(`- Comparison operators: ${simpleCount.comparisonOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Logical operators: ${simpleCount.logicalOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Functions: ${simpleCount.functions}`);
   console.log(`- Arithmetic operators: ${simpleCount.arithmeticOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Special operators: ${simpleCount.specialOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Total operators: ${simpleCount.total}`);

   // Example 2: Analyze a complex expression
   console.log("\nExample 2: Analyzing a complex expression");
   const complexExpression =
     "(attribute_exists(Category) AND Size BETWEEN :min AND :max) OR " +
     "(Price > :price AND contains(Description, :keyword) AND " +
     "(Rating >= :minRating OR Reviews > :minReviews))";
   const complexCount = countOperatorsInExpression(complexExpression);

   console.log(`Expression: ${complexExpression}`);
   console.log("Operator count breakdown:");
   console.log(`- Comparison operators: ${complexCount.comparisonOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Logical operators: ${complexCount.logicalOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Functions: ${complexCount.functions}`);
   console.log(`- Arithmetic operators: ${complexCount.arithmeticOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Special operators: ${complexCount.specialOperators}`);
   console.log(`- Total operators: ${complexCount.total}`);

   // Example 3: Test approaching the operator limit
   console.log("\nExample 3: Testing an expression approaching the operator
limit");
   const approachingLimit = await testOperatorLimit(config, tableName, key, 290);
```

```
    console.log(approachingLimit.message);

    // Example 4: Test exceeding the operator limit
    console.log("\nExample 4: Testing an expression exceeding the operator limit");
    const exceedingLimit = await testOperatorLimit(config, tableName, key, 310);
    console.log(exceedingLimit.message);

    // Example 5: Breaking down a complex expression
    console.log("\nExample 5: Breaking down a complex expression into multiple
 operations");
    const breakdownResult = await breakDownComplexExpression(config, tableName, key,
 500);
    console.log(`Processed ${breakdownResult.results.length} of
 ${breakdownResult.totalBatches} batches`);

    // Explain the operator counting rules
    console.log("\nKey points about DynamoDB expression operator counting:");
    console.log("1. The maximum number of operators in any expression is 300");
    console.log("2. Each comparison operator (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=) counts as 1
 operator");
    console.log("3. Each logical operator (AND, OR, NOT) counts as 1 operator");
    console.log("4. Each function call (attribute_exists, contains, etc.) counts as
 1 operator");
    console.log("5. Each arithmetic operator (+ or -) counts as 1 operator");
    console.log("6. BETWEEN counts as 2 operators (BETWEEN itself and the AND within
 it)");
    console.log("7. IN counts as 1 operator regardless of the number of values");
    console.log("8. Parentheses for grouping and attribute paths don't count as
 operators");
    console.log("9. When you exceed the limit, the error always reports '301
 operators'");
    console.log("10. For complex operations, break them into multiple smaller
 operations");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a table with warm throughput enabled

The following code example shows how to create a table with warm throughput enabled.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Create DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, CreateTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export async function createDynamoDBTableWithWarmThroughput(
  tableName,
  partitionKey,
  sortKey,
  miscKeyAttr,
  nonKeyAttr,
  tableProvisionedReadUnits,
  tableProvisionedWriteUnits,
```

```
  tableWarmReads,
  tableWarmWrites,
  indexName,
  indexProvisionedReadUnits,
  indexProvisionedWriteUnits,
  indexWarmReads,
  indexWarmWrites,
  region = "us-east-1"
) {
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region: region });
    const command = new CreateTableCommand({
      TableName: tableName,
      AttributeDefinitions: [
          { AttributeName: partitionKey, AttributeType: "S" },
          { AttributeName: sortKey, AttributeType: "S" },
          { AttributeName: miscKeyAttr, AttributeType: "N" },
      ],
      KeySchema: [
          { AttributeName: partitionKey, KeyType: "HASH" },
          { AttributeName: sortKey, KeyType: "RANGE" },
      ],
      ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: tableProvisionedReadUnits,
          WriteCapacityUnits: tableProvisionedWriteUnits,
      },
      WarmThroughput: {
          ReadUnitsPerSecond: tableWarmReads,
          WriteUnitsPerSecond: tableWarmWrites,
      },
      GlobalSecondaryIndexes: [
          {
            IndexName: indexName,
            KeySchema: [
                { AttributeName: sortKey, KeyType: "HASH" },
                { AttributeName: miscKeyAttr, KeyType: "RANGE" },
            ],
            Projection: {
                ProjectionType: "INCLUDE",
                NonKeyAttributes: [nonKeyAttr],
            },
            ProvisionedThroughput: {
                ReadCapacityUnits: indexProvisionedReadUnits,
                WriteCapacityUnits: indexProvisionedWriteUnits,
```

```
            },
            WarmThroughput: {
                ReadUnitsPerSecond: indexWarmReads,
                WriteUnitsPerSecond: indexWarmWrites,
            },
          },
      ],
    });
    const response = await ddbClient.send(command);
    console.log(response);
    return response;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error creating table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
/*
createDynamoDBTableWithWarmThroughput(
  'example-table',
  'pk',
  'sk',
  'gsiKey',
  'data',
  10, 10, 5, 5,
  'example-index',
  5, 5, 2, 2
);
*/
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Create an item with a TTL

The following code example shows how to create an item with TTL.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DynamoDBClient, PutItemCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export function createDynamoDBItem(table_name, region, partition_key, sort_key) {
```

```
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    // Get the current time in epoch second format
    const current_time = Math.floor(new Date().getTime() / 1000);

    // Calculate the expireAt time (90 days from now) in epoch second format
    const expire_at = Math.floor((new Date().getTime() + 90 * 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000) /
 1000);

    // Create DynamoDB item
    const item = {
        'partitionKey': {'S': partition_key},
        'sortKey': {'S': sort_key},
        'createdAt': {'N': current_time.toString()},
        'expireAt': {'N': expire_at.toString()}
    };

    const putItemCommand = new PutItemCommand({
        TableName: table_name,
        Item: item,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
            ReadCapacityUnits: 1,
            WriteCapacityUnits: 1,
        },
    });

    client.send(putItemCommand, function(err, data) {
        if (err) {
            console.log("Exception encountered when creating item %s, here's what
 happened: ", data, err);
            throw err;
        } else {
            console.log("Item created successfully: %s.", data);
            return data;
        }
    });
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
```

```
// createDynamoDBItem('your-table-name', 'us-east-1', 'your-partition-key-value',
 'your-sort-key-value');
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Delete data using PartiQL DELETE

The following code example shows how to delete data using PartiQL DELETE statements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Delete items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL DELETE statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to delete items from a DynamoDB table using
 PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to delete documents with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Delete a single item by its partition key using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemByPartitionKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item deleted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Delete an item by its composite key (partition key + sort key) using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param sortKeyName - The name of the sort key attribute
 * @param sortKeyValue - The value of the sort key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemByCompositeKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  sortKeyName: string,
  sortKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${sortKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue, sortKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item deleted successfully");
```

```
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Delete an item with a condition to ensure the delete only happens if a condition
 is met.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param conditionValue - The value to compare against in the condition
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemWithCondition = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  conditionAttribute: string,
  conditionValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${conditionAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue, conditionValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item deleted with condition successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting item with condition:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};
```

```
/**
 * Batch delete multiple items using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param keys - Array of objects containing key information
 * @returns The response from the BatchExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const batchDeleteItems = async (
  tableName: string,
  keys: Array<{
    partitionKeyName: string;
    partitionKeyValue: string | number;
    sortKeyName?: string;
    sortKeyValue?: string | number;
  }>
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create statements for each delete
  const statements = keys.map((key) => {
    if (key.sortKeyName && key.sortKeyValue !== undefined) {
      return {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${key.partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${key.sortKeyName} = ?`,
        Parameters: [key.partitionKeyValue, key.sortKeyValue],
      };
    } else {
      return {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${key.partitionKeyName} = ?`,
        Parameters: [key.partitionKeyValue],
      };
    }
  });

  const params = {
    Statements: statements,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new BatchExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items batch deleted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    console.error("Error batch deleting items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Delete multiple items that match a filter condition.
 * Note: This performs a scan operation which can be expensive on large tables.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param filterAttribute - The attribute to filter on
 * @param filterValue - The value to filter by
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const deleteItemsByFilter = async (
  tableName: string,
  filterAttribute: string,
  filterValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `DELETE FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${filterAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [filterValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items deleted by filter successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error deleting items by filter:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to delete items with different index types
 */
export const deleteExamples = async () => {
  // Delete an item by partition key (simple primary key)
  await deleteItemByPartitionKey("UsersTable", "userId", "user123");
```

```
  // Delete an item by composite key (partition key + sort key)
  await deleteItemByCompositeKey(
    "OrdersTable",
    "orderId",
    "order456",
    "productId",
    "prod789"
  );

  // Delete with a condition
  await deleteItemWithCondition(
    "UsersTable",
    "userId",
    "user789",
    "userStatus",
    "inactive"
  );

  // Batch delete multiple items
  await batchDeleteItems("UsersTable", [
    { partitionKeyName: "userId", partitionKeyValue: "user234" },
    { partitionKeyName: "userId", partitionKeyValue: "user345" },
  ]);

  // Batch delete items with composite keys
  await batchDeleteItems("OrdersTable", [
    {
      partitionKeyName: "orderId",
      partitionKeyValue: "order567",
      sortKeyName: "productId",
      sortKeyValue: "prod123",
    },
    {
      partitionKeyName: "orderId",
      partitionKeyValue: "order678",
      sortKeyName: "productId",
      sortKeyValue: "prod456",
    },
  ]);

  // Delete items by filter (use with caution)
  await deleteItemsByFilter("UsersTable", "userStatus", "deleted");
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Insert data using PartiQL INSERT

The following code example shows how to insert data using PartiQL INSERT statements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Insert items into a DynamoDB table using PartiQL INSERT statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to insert items into a DynamoDB table using
 PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to insert documents with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Insert a single item into a DynamoDB table using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param item - The item to insert
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const insertItem = async (tableName: string, item: Record<string, any>) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Convert the item to a string representation for PartiQL
  const itemString = JSON.stringify(item).replace(/"([^"]+)":/g, '$1:');
```

```
  const params = {
    Statement: `INSERT INTO "${tableName}" VALUE ${itemString}`,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item inserted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error inserting item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Insert multiple items into a DynamoDB table using PartiQL batch operation.
 * This is more efficient than inserting items one by one.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param items - Array of items to insert
 * @returns The response from the BatchExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const batchInsertItems = async (tableName: string, items: Record<string,
 any>[]) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create statements for each item
  const statements = items.map((item) => {
    const itemString = JSON.stringify(item).replace(/"([^"]+)":/g, '$1:');
    return {
      Statement: `INSERT INTO "${tableName}" VALUE ${itemString}`,
    };
  });

  const params = {
    Statements: statements,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new BatchExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items inserted successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    console.error("Error batch inserting items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Insert an item with a condition to prevent overwriting existing items.
 * This is useful for ensuring you don't accidentally overwrite data.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param item - The item to insert
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const insertItemWithCondition = async (
  tableName: string,
  item: Record<string, any>,
  partitionKeyName: string
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const itemString = JSON.stringify(item).replace(/"([^"]+)":/g, '$1:');
  const partitionKeyValue = JSON.stringify(item[partitionKeyName]);

  const params = {
    Statement: `INSERT INTO "${tableName}" VALUE ${itemString} WHERE
 attribute_not_exists(${partitionKeyName})`,
    Parameters: [{ S: partitionKeyValue }],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item inserted with condition successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error inserting item with condition:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to insert items with different index types
 */
```

```
export const insertExamples = async () => {
  // Example table with a simple primary key (just partition key)
  const simpleKeyItem = {
    userId: "user123",
    name: "John Doe",
    email: "john@example.com",
  };
  await insertItem("UsersTable", simpleKeyItem);

  // Example table with composite key (partition key + sort key)
  const compositeKeyItem = {
    orderId: "order456",
    productId: "prod789",
    quantity: 2,
    price: 29.99,
  };
  await insertItem("OrdersTable", compositeKeyItem);

  // Example with Global Secondary Index (GSI)
  // The GSI might be on the email attribute
  const gsiItem = {
    userId: "user789",
    email: "jane@example.com",
    name: "Jane Smith",
    userType: "premium",  // This could be part of a GSI
  };
  await insertItem("UsersTable", gsiItem);

  // Example with Local Secondary Index (LSI)
  // LSI uses the same partition key but different sort key
  const lsiItem = {
    orderId: "order567",  // Partition key
    productId: "prod123", // Sort key for the table
    orderDate: "2023-11-15", // Potential sort key for an LSI
    quantity: 1,
    price: 19.99,
  };
  await insertItem("OrdersTable", lsiItem);

  // Batch insert example with multiple items
  const batchItems = [
    {
      userId: "user234",
      name: "Alice Johnson",
```

```
      email: "alice@example.com",
    },
    {
      userId: "user345",
      name: "Bob Williams",
      email: "bob@example.com",
    },
  ];
  await batchInsertItems("UsersTable", batchItems);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Invoke a Lambda function from a browser

The following code example shows how to invoke an AWS Lambda function from a browser.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections. This app uses AWS SDK for JavaScript v3.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Perform advanced query operations

The following code example shows how to perform advanced query operations in DynamoDB.

- Query tables using various filtering and condition techniques.
- Implement pagination for large result sets.
- Use Global Secondary Indexes for alternate access patterns.

- Apply consistency controls based on application requirements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query with strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {boolean} useConsistentRead - Whether to use strongly consistent reads
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithConsistentRead(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  useConsistentRead = false
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
      },
      ConsistentRead: useConsistentRead
    };

    // Execute the query
```

```
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with consistent read: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query using a Global Secondary Index with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table using the primary key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} userId - The user ID to query by (partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryTable(
  config,
  tableName,
  userId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the base table
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "user_id = :userId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":userId": { S: userId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
```

```
    console.error(`Error querying table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI)
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} indexName - The name of the GSI to query
 * @param {string} gameId - The game ID to query by (GSI partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryGSI(
  config,
  tableName,
  indexName,
  gameId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the GSI
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      IndexName: indexName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "game_id = :gameId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":gameId": { S: gameId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying GSI: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query with pagination using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example demonstrating how to handle large query result sets in DynamoDB using
 pagination
 *
 * This example shows:
 * - How to use pagination to handle large result sets
 * - How to use LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve the next page of results
 * - How to construct subsequent query requests using ExclusiveStartKey
 */
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number} pageSize - Number of items per page
 * @returns {Promise<Array>} - All items from the query
 */
async function queryWithPagination(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  pageSize = 25
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize variables for pagination
    let lastEvaluatedKey = undefined;
    const allItems = [];
    let pageCount = 0;

    // Loop until all pages are retrieved
    do {
      // Construct the query input
      const input = {
```

```
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
        Limit: pageSize,
        ExpressionAttributeNames: {
          "#pk": partitionKeyName
        },
        ExpressionAttributeValues: {
          ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
        }
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        input.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      // Execute the query
      const command = new QueryCommand(input);
      const response = await client.send(command);

      // Process the current page of results
      pageCount++;
      console.log(`Processing page ${pageCount} with ${response.Items.length}
 items`);

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems.push(...response.Items);
      }

      // Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;

    } while (lastEvaluatedKey); // Continue until there are no more pages

    console.log(`Query complete. Retrieved ${allItems.length} items in ${pageCount}
 pages.`);
    return allItems;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with pagination: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

```
/**
 * Example usage:
 *
 * // Query all items in the "AWS DynamoDB" forum with pagination
 * const allItems = await queryWithPagination(
 *   { region: "us-west-2" },
 *   "ForumThreads",
 *   "ForumName",
 *   "AWS DynamoDB",
 *   25 // 25 items per page
 * );
 *
 * console.log(`Total items retrieved: ${allItems.length}`);
 *
 * // Notes on pagination:
 * // - LastEvaluatedKey contains the primary key of the last evaluated item
 * // - When LastEvaluatedKey is undefined/null, there are no more items to retrieve
 * // - ExclusiveStartKey tells DynamoDB where to start the next page
 * // - Pagination helps manage memory usage for large result sets
 * // - Each page requires a separate network request to DynamoDB
 */

module.exports = { queryWithPagination };
```

Query with complex filters using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number|string} minViews - Minimum number of views for filtering
 * @param {number|string} minReplies - Minimum number of replies for filtering
 * @param {string} requiredTag - Tag that must be present in the item's tags set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithComplexFilter(
  config,
```

```
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  minViews,
  minReplies,
  requiredTag
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      FilterExpression: "views >= :minViews AND replies >= :minReplies AND
 contains(tags, :tag)",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":minViews": { N: minViews.toString() },
        ":minReplies": { N: minReplies.toString() },
        ":tag": { S: requiredTag }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with complex filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

async function queryWithDynamicFilter(
```

```
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  sortKeyValue,
  filterParams = {}
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize filter expression components
    let filterExpressions = [];
    const expressionAttributeValues = {
      ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
      ":skValue": { S: sortKeyValue }
    };
    const expressionAttributeNames = {
      "#pk": partitionKeyName,
      "#sk": sortKeyName
    };

    // Add status filter if provided
    if (filterParams.status) {
      filterExpressions.push("status = :status");
      expressionAttributeValues[":status"] = { S: filterParams.status };
    }

    // Add minimum views filter if provided
    if (filterParams.minViews !== undefined) {
      filterExpressions.push("views >= :minViews");
      expressionAttributeValues[":minViews"] = { N:
 filterParams.minViews.toString() };
    }

    // Add author filter if provided
    if (filterParams.author) {
      filterExpressions.push("author = :author");
      expressionAttributeValues[":author"] = { S: filterParams.author };
    }

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
```

```
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue AND #sk = :skValue"
    };

    // Add filter expression if any filters were provided
    if (filterExpressions.length > 0) {
      input.FilterExpression = filterExpressions.join(" AND ");
    }

    // Add expression attribute names and values
    input.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
    input.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with dynamic filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Perform list operations

The following code example shows how to perform list operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a list attribute.
- Remove elements from a list attribute.
- Update specific elements in a list by index.
- Use list append and list index functions.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate list operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
```

```
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Append elements to a list attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add elements
 * to the end of a list.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to append to the list
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function appendToList(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  values
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using list_append
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName} =
 list_append(if_not_exists(${listName}, :empty_list), :values)`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":empty_list": [],
      ":values": values
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
```

```
  return response;
}

/**
 * Prepend elements to a list attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add elements
 * to the beginning of a list.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to prepend to the list
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function prependToList(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  values
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using list_append
  // Note: To prepend, we put the new values first in the list_append function
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName} = list_append(:values,
 if_not_exists(${listName}, :empty_list))`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":empty_list": [],
      ":values": values
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
```

```
  return response;
}

/**
 * Update a specific element in a list by index.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update a specific element in a list
 * using the index notation.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {number} index - The index of the element to update
 * @param {any} value - The new value for the element
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateListElement(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  index,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using index notation
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName}[${index}] = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
```

```
  return response;
}

/**
 * Remove an element from a list by index.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to remove a specific element from a list
 * using the REMOVE action with index notation.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {number} index - The index of the element to remove
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function removeListElement(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  index
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using REMOVE with index notation
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `REMOVE ${listName}[${index}]`,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Concatenate two lists.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates how to concatenate two lists using the list_append
 function.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName1 - The name of the first list attribute
 * @param {string} listName2 - The name of the second list attribute
 * @param {string} resultListName - The name of the attribute to store the
 concatenated list
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function concatenateLists(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName1,
  listName2,
  resultListName
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using list_append
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${resultListName} =
 list_append(if_not_exists(${listName1}, :empty_list),
 if_not_exists(${listName2}, :empty_list))`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":empty_list": []
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
```

```
 * Create a nested list structure.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to create and work with nested lists.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {Array} nestedLists - An array of arrays to create a nested list structure
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function createNestedList(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  nestedLists
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters to create a nested list
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName} = :nested_lists`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":nested_lists": nestedLists
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update an element in a nested list.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update an element in a nested list
 * using multiple index notations.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} listName - The name of the list attribute
 * @param {number} outerIndex - The index in the outer list
 * @param {number} innerIndex - The index in the inner list
 * @param {any} value - The new value for the element
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateNestedListElement(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  listName,
  outerIndex,
  innerIndex,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using multiple index notations
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${listName}[${outerIndex}][${innerIndex}] = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of list operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to work with lists in DynamoDB.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "UserProfiles";
  const key = { UserId: "U12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating list operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
```

```
    // Example 1: Append elements to a list
    console.log("\nExample 1: Appending elements to a list");
    const response1 = await appendToList(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      ["laptop", "headphones", "monitor"]
    );

    console.log("Appended to list:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Prepend elements to a list
    console.log("\nExample 2: Prepending elements to a list");
    const response2 = await prependToList(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      ["keyboard", "mouse"]
    );

    console.log("Prepended to list:", response2.Attributes);

    // Get the current state of the item
    let currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log("\nCurrent state of RecentSearches:", currentItem?.RecentSearches);

    // Example 3: Update a specific element in a list
    console.log("\nExample 3: Updating a specific element in a list");
    const response3 = await updateListElement(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "RecentSearches",
      0, // Update the first element
      "mechanical keyboard" // New value
    );

    console.log("Updated list element:", response3.Attributes);

    // Example 4: Remove an element from a list
    console.log("\nExample 4: Removing an element from a list");
    const response4 = await removeListElement(
```

```
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "RecentSearches",
    2 // Remove the third element
  );

  console.log("List after removing element:", response4.Attributes);

  // Example 5: Create and concatenate lists
  console.log("\nExample 5: Creating and concatenating lists");

  // First, create two separate lists
  await updateWithMultipleActions(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "SET WishList = :wishlist, SavedItems = :saveditems",
    null,
    {
      ":wishlist": ["gaming laptop", "wireless earbuds"],
      ":saveditems": ["smartphone", "tablet"]
    }
  );

  // Then, concatenate them
  const response5 = await concatenateLists(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "WishList",
    "SavedItems",
    "AllItems"
  );

  console.log("Concatenated lists:", response5.Attributes);

  // Example 6: Create a nested list structure
  console.log("\nExample 6: Creating a nested list structure");
  const response6 = await createNestedList(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "Categories",
```

```
      [
        ["Electronics", "Computers", "Accessories"],
        ["Books", "Magazines", "E-books"],
        ["Clothing", "Shoes", "Watches"]
      ]
    );

    console.log("Created nested list:", response6.Attributes);

    // Example 7: Update an element in a nested list
    console.log("\nExample 7: Updating an element in a nested list");
    const response7 = await updateNestedListElement(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Categories",
      0, // First inner list
      1, // Second element in that list
      "Laptops" // New value
    );

    console.log("Updated nested list element:", response7.Attributes);

    // Get the final state of the item
    currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log("\nFinal state of the item:", JSON.stringify(currentItem, null, 2));

    // Explain list operations
    console.log("\nKey points about list operations in DynamoDB:");
    console.log("1. Use list_append to add elements to a list");
    console.log("2. To append elements, use list_append(existingList,
newElements)");
    console.log("3. To prepend elements, use list_append(newElements,
existingList)");
    console.log("4. Use if_not_exists to handle cases where the list might not exist
yet");
    console.log("5. Use index notation (list[0]) to access or update specific
elements");
    console.log("6. Use REMOVE with index notation to remove elements from a list");
    console.log("7. Lists can contain elements of different types");
    console.log("8. Lists can be nested (lists of lists)");
    console.log("9. Use multiple index notations (list[0][1]) to access nested list
elements");
```

```
  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}

/**
 * Helper function for the examples.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} updateExpression - The update expression
 * @param {Object} expressionAttributeNames - Expression attribute name placeholders
 * @param {Object} expressionAttributeValues - Expression attribute value
 placeholders
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithMultipleActions(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  updateExpression,
  expressionAttributeNames,
  expressionAttributeValues
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Prepare the update parameters
  const updateParams = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Add expression attribute names if provided
  if (expressionAttributeNames) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
  }

  // Add expression attribute values if provided
  if (expressionAttributeValues) {
```

```
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;
  }

  // Execute the update
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(updateParams));

  return response;
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Perform map operations

The following code example shows how to perform map operations in DynamoDB.

- Add and update nested attributes in map structures.
- Remove specific fields from maps.
- Work with deeply nested map attributes.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate map operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of updating map attributes in DynamoDB.
 *
 * This module demonstrates how to update map attributes that may not exist,
 * how to update nested attributes, and how to handle various map update scenarios.
 */

const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Update a map attribute safely, handling the case where the map might not exist.
```

```
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the if_not_exists function to safely update
 * a map attribute that might not exist yet.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} mapName - The name of the map attribute
 * @param {string} mapKey - The key within the map to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateMapAttributeSafe(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  mapName,
  mapKey,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with if_not_exists
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${mapName}.${mapKey} = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
    return response;
  } catch (error) {
    // If the error is because the map doesn't exist, create it
    if (error.name === "ValidationException" &&
        error.message.includes("The document path provided in the update expression
 is invalid")) {
```

```
      // Create the map with the specified key-value pair
      const createParams = {
        TableName: tableName,
        Key: key,
        UpdateExpression: `SET ${mapName} = :map`,
        ExpressionAttributeValues: {
          ":map": { [mapKey]: value }
        },
        ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
      };

      return await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(createParams));
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Update a map attribute using the if_not_exists function.
 *
 * This function demonstrates a more elegant approach using if_not_exists
 * to handle the case where the map doesn't exist yet.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} mapName - The name of the map attribute
 * @param {string} mapKey - The key within the map to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateMapAttributeWithIfNotExists(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  mapName,
  mapKey,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
```

```
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with if_not_exists
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${mapName} = if_not_exists(${mapName}, :emptyMap),
 ${mapName}.${mapKey} = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":emptyMap": {},
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Add a value to a deeply nested map, creating parent maps if they don't exist.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update a deeply nested attribute,
 * creating any parent maps that don't exist along the way.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string[]} path - The path to the nested attribute as an array of keys
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function addToNestedMap(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  path,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
  // Build the update expression and expression attribute values
  let updateExpression = "SET";
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // For each level in the path, create a map if it doesn't exist
  for (let i = 0; i < path.length; i++) {
    const currentPath = path.slice(0, i + 1).join(".");
    const parentPath = i > 0 ? path.slice(0, i).join(".") : null;

    if (parentPath) {
      updateExpression += ` ${parentPath} = if_not_exists(${parentPath}, :emptyMap
${i}),`;
      expressionAttributeValues[`:emptyMap${i}`] = {};
    }
  }

  // Set the final value
  const fullPath = path.join(".");
  updateExpression += ` ${fullPath} = :value`;
  expressionAttributeValues[":value"] = value;

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update multiple fields in a map attribute in a single operation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update multiple fields in a map
 * in a single DynamoDB operation.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
```

```
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} mapName - The name of the map attribute
 * @param {Object} updates - Object containing key-value pairs to update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateMultipleMapFields(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  mapName,
  updates
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Build the update expression and expression attribute values
  let updateExpression = `SET ${mapName} = if_not_exists(${mapName}, :emptyMap)`;
  const expressionAttributeValues = {
    ":emptyMap": {}
  };

  // Add each update to the expression
  Object.entries(updates).forEach(([field, value], index) => {
    updateExpression += `, ${mapName}.${field} = :val${index}`;
    expressionAttributeValues[`:val${index}`] = value;
  });

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}
```

```
/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}

/**
 * Example of how to use the map attribute update functions.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Users";
  const key = { UserId: "U12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating different approaches to update map attributes in
 DynamoDB");
```

```
  try {
    // Example 1: Update a map attribute that might not exist (two-step approach)
    console.log("\nExample 1: Updating a map attribute that might not exist (two-
step approach)");
    const response1 = await updateMapAttributeSafe(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Preferences",
      "Theme",
      "Dark"
    );

    console.log("Updated preferences:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Update a map attribute using if_not_exists (elegant approach)
    console.log("\nExample 2: Updating a map attribute using if_not_exists (elegant
 approach)");
    const response2 = await updateMapAttributeWithIfNotExists(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Settings",
      "NotificationsEnabled",
      true
    );

    console.log("Updated settings:", response2.Attributes);

    // Example 3: Update a deeply nested attribute
    console.log("\nExample 3: Updating a deeply nested attribute");
    const response3 = await addToNestedMap(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      ["Profile", "Address", "City"],
      "Seattle"
    );

    console.log("Updated nested attribute:", response3.Attributes);

    // Example 4: Update multiple fields in a map
    console.log("\nExample 4: Updating multiple fields in a map");
    const response4 = await updateMultipleMapFields(
```

```
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "ContactInfo",
      {
        Email: "user@example.com",
        Phone: "555-123-4567",
        PreferredContact: "Email"
      }
    );

    console.log("Updated multiple fields:", response4.Attributes);

    // Get the final state of the item
    console.log("\nFinal state of the item:");
    const item = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(item, null, 2));

    // Explain the benefits of different approaches
    console.log("\nKey points about updating map attributes:");
    console.log("1. Use if_not_exists to handle maps that might not exist");
    console.log("2. Multiple updates can be combined in a single operation");
    console.log("3. Deeply nested attributes require creating parent maps");
    console.log("4. DynamoDB expressions are atomic - the entire update succeeds or
 fails");
    console.log("5. Using a single operation is more efficient than multiple
 separate updates");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}

// Export the functions
module.exports = {
  updateMapAttributeSafe,
  updateMapAttributeWithIfNotExists,
  addToNestedMap,
  updateMultipleMapFields,
  getItem,
  exampleUsage
};

// Run the example if this file is executed directly
```

```
if (require.main === module) {
  exampleUsage();
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Perform set operations

The following code example shows how to perform set operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a set attribute.
- Remove elements from a set attribute.
- Use ADD and DELETE operations with sets.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate set operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Add elements to a set attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the ADD operation to add elements to a set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to add to the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function addToSet(
  config,
```

```
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the appropriate set type
  let setValues;
  if (setType === 'string') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(String));
  } else if (setType === 'number') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(Number));
  } else if (setType === 'binary') {
    setValues = new Set(values);
  } else {
    throw new Error(`Unsupported set type: ${setType}`);
  }

  // Define the update parameters using ADD
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `ADD ${setName} :values`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":values": setValues
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Remove elements from a set attribute.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the DELETE operation to remove elements from a
 set.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The values to remove from the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function removeFromSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the appropriate set type
  let setValues;
  if (setType === 'string') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(String));
  } else if (setType === 'number') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(Number));
  } else if (setType === 'binary') {
    setValues = new Set(values);
  } else {
    throw new Error(`Unsupported set type: ${setType}`);
  }

  // Define the update parameters using DELETE
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `DELETE ${setName} :values`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":values": setValues
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };
```

```
  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Create a new set attribute with initial values.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the SET operation to create a new set attribute.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The initial values for the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function createSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create the appropriate set type
  let setValues;
  if (setType === 'string') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(String));
  } else if (setType === 'number') {
    setValues = new Set(values.map(Number));
  } else if (setType === 'binary') {
    setValues = new Set(values);
  } else {
    throw new Error(`Unsupported set type: ${setType}`);
  }

  // Define the update parameters using SET
```

```
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${setName} = :values`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":values": setValues
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Replace an entire set attribute with a new set of values.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the SET operation to replace an entire set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @param {Array} values - The new values for the set
 * @param {string} setType - The type of set ('string', 'number', or 'binary')
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function replaceSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName,
  values,
  setType = 'string'
) {
  // This is the same as createSet, but included for clarity of intent
  return await createSet(config, tableName, key, setName, values, setType);
}

/**
 * Remove the last element from a set and handle the empty set case.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates what happens when you delete the last element of a
 set.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} setName - The name of the set attribute
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The result of the operation
 */
async function removeLastElementFromSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  setName
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // First, get the current item to check the set
  const currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, key);

  // Check if the set exists and has elements
  if (!currentItem || !currentItem[setName] || currentItem[setName].size === 0) {
    return {
      success: false,
      message: "Set doesn't exist or is already empty",
      item: currentItem
    };
  }

  // Get the set values
  const setValues = Array.from(currentItem[setName]);

  // If there's only one element left, remove the attribute entirely
  if (setValues.length === 1) {
    // Define the update parameters to remove the attribute
    const params = {
      TableName: tableName,
      Key: key,
      UpdateExpression: `REMOVE ${setName}`,
      ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
    };
```

```
    // Perform the update operation
    await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Last element removed, attribute has been deleted",
      removedValue: setValues[0]
    };
  } else {
    // Otherwise, remove just the last element
    // Create a set with just the last element
    const lastElement = setValues[setValues.length - 1];
    const setType = typeof lastElement === 'number' ? 'number' : 'string';

    // Remove the last element
    const response = await removeFromSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      setName,
      [lastElement],
      setType
    );

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Last element removed, set still contains elements",
      removedValue: lastElement,
      remainingSet: response.Attributes[setName]
    };
  }
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
```

```
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of set operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to work with sets in DynamoDB.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Users";
  const key = { UserId: "U12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating set operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Create a string set
    console.log("\nExample 1: Creating a string set");
    const response1 = await createSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Interests",
```

```
      ["Reading", "Hiking", "Cooking"],
      "string"
    );

    console.log("Created set:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Add elements to a set
    console.log("\nExample 2: Adding elements to a set");
    const response2 = await addToSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Interests",
      ["Photography", "Travel"],
      "string"
    );

    console.log("Updated set after adding elements:", response2.Attributes);

    // Example 3: Remove elements from a set
    console.log("\nExample 3: Removing elements from a set");
    const response3 = await removeFromSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Interests",
      ["Cooking"],
      "string"
    );

    console.log("Updated set after removing elements:", response3.Attributes);

    // Example 4: Create a number set
    console.log("\nExample 4: Creating a number set");
    const response4 = await createSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "FavoriteNumbers",
      [7, 42, 99],
      "number"
    );

    console.log("Created number set:", response4.Attributes);
```

```
// Example 5: Replace an entire set
console.log("\nExample 5: Replacing an entire set");
const response5 = await replaceSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  "Interests",
  ["Gaming", "Movies", "Music"],
  "string"
);

console.log("Replaced set:", response5.Attributes);

// Example 6: Remove the last element from a set
console.log("\nExample 6: Removing the last element from a set");

// First, create a set with just one element
await createSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  { UserId: "U67890" },
  "Tags",
  ["LastTag"],
  "string"
);

// Then, remove the last element
const response6 = await removeLastElementFromSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  { UserId: "U67890" },
  "Tags"
);

console.log(response6.message);
console.log("Removed value:", response6.removedValue);

// Get the final state of the items
console.log("\nFinal state of the items:");
const item1 = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
console.log("User U12345:", JSON.stringify(item1, null, 2));

const item2 = await getItem(config, tableName, { UserId: "U67890" });
```

```
    console.log("User U67890:", JSON.stringify(item2, null, 2));

    // Explain set operations
    console.log("\nKey points about set operations in DynamoDB:");
    console.log("1. Use ADD to add elements to a set (duplicates are automatically
 removed)");
    console.log("2. Use DELETE to remove elements from a set");
    console.log("3. Use SET to create a new set or replace an existing one");
    console.log("4. DynamoDB supports three types of sets: string sets, number sets,
 and binary sets");
    console.log("5. When you delete the last element from a set, the attribute
 remains as an empty set");
    console.log("6. To remove an empty set, use the REMOVE operation");
    console.log("7. Sets automatically maintain unique values (no duplicates)");
    console.log("8. You cannot mix data types within a set");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Execute batch PartiQL statements.

```
import {
  BillingMode,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DeleteTableCommand,
  DescribeTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
import { ScenarioInput } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

const log = (msg) => console.log(`[SCENARIO] ${msg}`);
const tableName = "Cities";

export const main = async (confirmAll = false) => {
  /**
   * Delete table if it exists.
   */
  try {
    await client.send(new DescribeTableCommand({ TableName: tableName }));
    // If no error was thrown, the table exists.
    const input = new ScenarioInput(
      "deleteTable",
      `A table named ${tableName} already exists. If you choose not to delete
this table, the scenario cannot continue. Delete it?`,
      { type: "confirm", confirmAll },
    );
    const deleteTable = await input.handle({}, { confirmAll });
    if (deleteTable) {
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ tableName }));
    } else {
      console.warn(
        "Scenario could not run. Either delete ${tableName} or provide a unique
 table name.",
      );
      return;
```

```
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException"
    ) {
      // Do nothing. This means the table is not there.
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Create a table.
   */

  log("Creating a table.");
  const createTableCommand = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // This example performs a large write to the database.
    // Set the billing mode to PAY_PER_REQUEST to
    // avoid throttling the large write.
    BillingMode: BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
    // Define the attributes that are necessary for the key schema.
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "name",
        // 'S' is a data type descriptor that represents a number type.
        // For a list of all data type descriptors, see the following link.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
        AttributeType: "S",
      },
    ],
    // The KeySchema defines the primary key. The primary key can be
    // a partition key, or a combination of a partition key and a sort key.
    // Key schema design is important. For more info, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/best-
practices.html
    KeySchema: [{ AttributeName: "name", KeyType: "HASH" }],
  });
  await client.send(createTableCommand);
  log(`Table created: ${tableName}.`);
```

```
  /**
   * Wait until the table is active.
   */

  // This polls with DescribeTableCommand until the requested table is 'ACTIVE'.
  // You can't write to a table before it's active.
  log("Waiting for the table to be active.");
  await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: tableName });
  log("Table active.");

  /**
   * Insert items.
   */

  log("Inserting cities into the table.");
  const addItemsStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.insert.html
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `INSERT INTO ${tableName} value {'name':?, 'population':?}`,
        Parameters: ["Alachua", 10712],
      },
      {
        Statement: `INSERT INTO ${tableName} value {'name':?, 'population':?}`,
        Parameters: ["High Springs", 6415],
      },
    ],
  });
  await docClient.send(addItemsStatementCommand);
  log("Cities inserted.");

  /**
   * Select items.
   */

  log("Selecting cities from the table.");
  const selectItemsStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.select.html
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `SELECT * FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["Alachua"],
```

```
      },
      {
        Statement: `SELECT * FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["High Springs"],
      },
    ],
  });
  const selectItemResponse = await docClient.send(selectItemsStatementCommand);
  log(
    `Got cities: ${selectItemResponse.Responses.map(
      (r) => `${r.Item.name} (${r.Item.population})`,
    ).join(", ")}`,
  );

  /**
   * Update items.
   */

  log("Modifying the populations.");
  const updateItemStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.update.html
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `UPDATE ${tableName} SET population=? WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: [10, "Alachua"],
      },
      {
        Statement: `UPDATE ${tableName} SET population=? WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: [5, "High Springs"],
      },
    ],
  });
  await docClient.send(updateItemStatementCommand);
  log("Updated cities.");

  /**
   * Delete the items.
   */

  log("Deleting the cities.");
  const deleteItemStatementCommand = new BatchExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.delete.html
```

```
    Statements: [
      {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["Alachua"],
      },
      {
        Statement: `DELETE FROM ${tableName} WHERE name=?`,
        Parameters: ["High Springs"],
      },
    ],
  });
  await docClient.send(deleteItemStatementCommand);
  log("Cities deleted.");

  /**
   * Delete the table.
   */

  log("Deleting the table.");
  const deleteTableCommand = new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: tableName });
  await client.send(deleteTableCommand);
  log("Table deleted.");
};
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Execute single PartiQL statements.

```
import {
  BillingMode,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DeleteTableCommand,
  DescribeTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";
import { ScenarioInput } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario";

const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

const log = (msg) => console.log(`[SCENARIO] ${msg}`);
const tableName = "SingleOriginCoffees";

export const main = async (confirmAll = false) => {
  /**
   * Delete table if it exists.
   */
  try {
    await client.send(new DescribeTableCommand({ TableName: tableName }));
    // If no error was thrown, the table exists.
    const input = new ScenarioInput(
      "deleteTable",
      `A table named ${tableName} already exists. If you choose not to delete
this table, the scenario cannot continue. Delete it?`,
      { type: "confirm", confirmAll },
    );
```

```
    const deleteTable = await input.handle({});
    if (deleteTable) {
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ tableName }));
    } else {
      console.warn(
        "Scenario could not run. Either delete ${tableName} or provide a unique
 table name.",
      );
      return;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException"
    ) {
      // Do nothing. This means the table is not there.
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  /**
   * Create a table.
   */

  log("Creating a table.");
  const createTableCommand = new CreateTableCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    // This example performs a large write to the database.
    // Set the billing mode to PAY_PER_REQUEST to
    // avoid throttling the large write.
    BillingMode: BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST,
    // Define the attributes that are necessary for the key schema.
    AttributeDefinitions: [
      {
        AttributeName: "varietal",
        // 'S' is a data type descriptor that represents a number type.
        // For a list of all data type descriptors, see the following link.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Programming.LowLevelAPI.html#Programming.LowLevelAPI.DataTypeDescriptors
        AttributeType: "S",
      },
    ],
    // The KeySchema defines the primary key. The primary key can be
```

```
    // a partition key, or a combination of a partition key and a sort key.
    // Key schema design is important. For more info, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/best-
practices.html
    KeySchema: [{ AttributeName: "varietal", KeyType: "HASH" }],
  });
  await client.send(createTableCommand);
  log(`Table created: ${tableName}.`);

  /**
   * Wait until the table is active.
   */

  // This polls with DescribeTableCommand until the requested table is 'ACTIVE'.
  // You can't write to a table before it's active.
  log("Waiting for the table to be active.");
  await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: tableName });
  log("Table active.");

  /**
   * Insert an item.
   */

  log("Inserting a coffee into the table.");
  const addItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.insert.html
    Statement: `INSERT INTO ${tableName} value {'varietal':?, 'profile':?}`,
    Parameters: ["arabica", ["chocolate", "floral"]],
  });
  await client.send(addItemStatementCommand);
  log("Coffee inserted.");

  /**
   * Select an item.
   */

  log("Selecting the coffee from the table.");
  const selectItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.select.html
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM ${tableName} WHERE varietal=?`,
    Parameters: ["arabica"],
  });
```

```
  const selectItemResponse = await docClient.send(selectItemStatementCommand);
  log(`Got coffee: ${JSON.stringify(selectItemResponse.Items[0])}`);

  /**
   * Update the item.
   */

  log("Add a flavor profile to the coffee.");
  const updateItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.update.html
    Statement: `UPDATE ${tableName} SET profile=list_append(profile, ?) WHERE
 varietal=?`,
    Parameters: [["fruity"], "arabica"],
  });
  await client.send(updateItemStatementCommand);
  log("Updated coffee");

  /**
   * Delete the item.
   */

  log("Deleting the coffee.");
  const deleteItemStatementCommand = new ExecuteStatementCommand({
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/ql-
reference.delete.html
    Statement: `DELETE FROM ${tableName} WHERE varietal=?`,
    Parameters: ["arabica"],
  });
  await docClient.send(deleteItemStatementCommand);
  log("Coffee deleted.");

  /**
   * Delete the table.
   */

  log("Deleting the table.");
  const deleteTableCommand = new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: tableName });
  await client.send(deleteTableCommand);
  log("Table deleted.");
};
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table using a Global Secondary Index

The following code example shows how to query a table using a Global Secondary Index.

- Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.
- Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) for alternate access patterns.
- Compare table queries and GSI queries.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table using the primary key with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table using the primary key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} userId - The user ID to query by (partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryTable(
  config,
  tableName,
  userId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the base table
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "user_id = :userId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":userId": { S: userId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
```

```
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI) with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI)
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} indexName - The name of the GSI to query
 * @param {string} gameId - The game ID to query by (GSI partition key)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryGSI(
  config,
  tableName,
  indexName,
  gameId
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input for the GSI
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      IndexName: indexName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "game_id = :gameId",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":gameId": { S: gameId }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
```

```
    console.error(`Error querying GSI: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table using a begins_with condition

The following code example shows how to query a table using a begins_with condition.

- Use the begins_with function in a key condition expression.
- Filter items based on a prefix pattern in the sort key.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition on the sort key with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items where the sort key begins with a specific
 prefix
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} sortKeyName - The name of the sort key
 * @param {string} prefix - The prefix to match at the beginning of the sort key
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithBeginsWith(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  prefix
) {
```

```
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue AND begins_with(#sk, :prefix)",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#sk": sortKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":prefix": { S: prefix }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with begins_with: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table using a date range

The following code example shows how to query a table using a date range in the sort key.

- Query items within a specific date range.
- Use comparison operators on date-formatted sort keys.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table for items within a date range with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
```

```
/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items within a specific date range on the sort key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} sortKeyName - The name of the sort key (must be a date/time
 attribute)
 * @param {Date} startDate - The start date for the range query
 * @param {Date} endDate - The end date for the range query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryByDateRangeOnSortKey(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  startDate,
  endDate
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB
    const formattedStartDate = startDate.toISOString();
    const formattedEndDate = endDate.toISOString();

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: '#pk = :pkValue AND #sk BETWEEN :startDate
 AND :endDate',
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#sk": sortKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":startDate": { S: formattedStartDate },
        ":endDate": { S: formattedEndDate }
```

```
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying by date range on sort key: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table with a complex filter expression

The following code example shows how to query a table with a complex filter expression.

- Apply complex filter expressions to query results.
- Combine multiple conditions using logical operators.
- Filter items based on non-key attributes.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number|string} minViews - Minimum number of views for filtering
 * @param {number|string} minReplies - Minimum number of replies for filtering
 * @param {string} requiredTag - Tag that must be present in the item's tags set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
```

```
async function queryWithComplexFilter(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  minViews,
  minReplies,
  requiredTag
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      FilterExpression: "views >= :minViews AND replies >= :minReplies AND
 contains(tags, :tag)",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":minViews": { N: minViews.toString() },
        ":minReplies": { N: minReplies.toString() },
        ":tag": { S: requiredTag }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with complex filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table with a dynamic filter expression

The following code example shows how to query a table with a dynamic filter expression.

- Build filter expressions dynamically at runtime.
- Construct filter conditions based on user input or application state.
- Add or remove filter criteria conditionally.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

async function queryWithDynamicFilter(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  sortKeyValue,
  filterParams = {}
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize filter expression components
    let filterExpressions = [];
    const expressionAttributeValues = {
      ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
      ":skValue": { S: sortKeyValue }
    };
    const expressionAttributeNames = {
      "#pk": partitionKeyName,
      "#sk": sortKeyName
    };

    // Add status filter if provided
    if (filterParams.status) {
      filterExpressions.push("status = :status");
```

```
      expressionAttributeValues[":status"] = { S: filterParams.status };
    }

    // Add minimum views filter if provided
    if (filterParams.minViews !== undefined) {
      filterExpressions.push("views >= :minViews");
      expressionAttributeValues[":minViews"] = { N:
 filterParams.minViews.toString() };
    }

    // Add author filter if provided
    if (filterParams.author) {
      filterExpressions.push("author = :author");
      expressionAttributeValues[":author"] = { S: filterParams.author };
    }

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue AND #sk = :skValue"
    };

    // Add filter expression if any filters were provided
    if (filterExpressions.length > 0) {
      input.FilterExpression = filterExpressions.join(" AND ");
    }

    // Add expression attribute names and values
    input.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
    input.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with dynamic filter: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table with nested attributes

The following code example shows how to query a table with nested attributes.

- Access and filter by nested attributes in DynamoDB items.
- Use document path expressions to reference nested elements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table filtering on a nested attribute
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} productId - The product ID to query by (partition key)
 * @param {string} category - The category to filter by (nested attribute)
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithNestedAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  productId,
  category
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "product_id = :productId",
      FilterExpression: "details.category = :category",
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":productId": { S: productId },
        ":category": { S: category }
      }
    };
```

```
    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with nested attribute: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table with pagination

The following code example shows how to query a table with pagination.

- Implement pagination for DynamoDB query results.
- Use the LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve subsequent pages.
- Control the number of items per page with the Limit parameter.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example demonstrating how to handle large query result sets in DynamoDB using
 pagination
 *
 * This example shows:
 * - How to use pagination to handle large result sets
 * - How to use LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve the next page of results
 * - How to construct subsequent query requests using ExclusiveStartKey
 */
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {number} pageSize - Number of items per page
 * @returns {Promise<Array>} - All items from the query
 */
async function queryWithPagination(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  pageSize = 25
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Initialize variables for pagination
    let lastEvaluatedKey = undefined;
    const allItems = [];
    let pageCount = 0;

    // Loop until all pages are retrieved
    do {
      // Construct the query input
      const input = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
        Limit: pageSize,
        ExpressionAttributeNames: {
          "#pk": partitionKeyName
        },
        ExpressionAttributeValues: {
          ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
        }
      };

      // Add ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous query
      if (lastEvaluatedKey) {
        input.ExclusiveStartKey = lastEvaluatedKey;
      }

      // Execute the query
      const command = new QueryCommand(input);
      const response = await client.send(command);
```

```
      // Process the current page of results
      pageCount++;
      console.log(`Processing page ${pageCount} with ${response.Items.length}
 items`);

      // Add the items from this page to our collection
      if (response.Items && response.Items.length > 0) {
        allItems.push(...response.Items);
      }

      // Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page
      lastEvaluatedKey = response.LastEvaluatedKey;

    } while (lastEvaluatedKey); // Continue until there are no more pages

    console.log(`Query complete. Retrieved ${allItems.length} items in ${pageCount}
 pages.`);
    return allItems;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with pagination: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Example usage:
 *
 * // Query all items in the "AWS DynamoDB" forum with pagination
 * const allItems = await queryWithPagination(
 *   { region: "us-west-2" },
 *   "ForumThreads",
 *   "ForumName",
 *   "AWS DynamoDB",
 *   25 // 25 items per page
 * );
 *
 * console.log(`Total items retrieved: ${allItems.length}`);
 *
 * // Notes on pagination:
 * // - LastEvaluatedKey contains the primary key of the last evaluated item
 * // - When LastEvaluatedKey is undefined/null, there are no more items to retrieve
 * // - ExclusiveStartKey tells DynamoDB where to start the next page
 * // - Pagination helps manage memory usage for large result sets
```

```
 * // - Each page requires a separate network request to DynamoDB
 */

module.exports = { queryWithPagination };
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query a table with strongly consistent reads

The following code example shows how to query a table with strongly consistent reads.

- Configure the consistency level for DynamoDB queries.
- Use strongly consistent reads to get the most up-to-date data.
- Understand the tradeoffs between eventual consistency and strong consistency.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {boolean} useConsistentRead - Whether to use strongly consistent reads
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryWithConsistentRead(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  useConsistentRead = false
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
```

```
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pkValue",
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue }
      },
      ConsistentRead: useConsistentRead
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying with consistent read: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query data using PartiQL SELECT

The following code example shows how to query data using PartiQL SELECT statements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL SELECT statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to query items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to select data with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
```

```
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Select all items from a DynamoDB table using PartiQL.
 * Note: This should be used with caution on large tables.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectAllItems = async (tableName: string) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}"`,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select an item by its primary key using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemByPartitionKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
```

```
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select an item by its composite key (partition key + sort key) using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param sortKeyName - The name of the sort key attribute
 * @param sortKeyValue - The value of the sort key
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemByCompositeKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  sortKeyName: string,
  sortKeyValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND
 ${sortKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [partitionKeyValue, sortKeyValue],
  };

  try {
```

```
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select items using a filter condition with PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param filterAttribute - The attribute to filter on
 * @param filterValue - The value to filter by
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemsWithFilter = async (
  tableName: string,
  filterAttribute: string,
  filterValue: string | number
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${filterAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [filterValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select items using a begins_with function for prefix matching.
 * This is useful for querying hierarchical data.
 *
```

```
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param attributeName - The attribute to check for prefix
 * @param prefix - The prefix to match
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemsByPrefix = async (
  tableName: string,
  attributeName: string,
  prefix: string
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE
 begins_with(${attributeName}, ?)`,
    Parameters: [prefix],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select items using a between condition for range queries.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param attributeName - The attribute to check for range
 * @param startValue - The start value of the range
 * @param endValue - The end value of the range
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const selectItemsByRange = async (
  tableName: string,
  attributeName: string,
  startValue: number | string,
  endValue: number | string
) => {
```

```
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `SELECT * FROM "${tableName}" WHERE ${attributeName} BETWEEN ? AND ?
`,
    Parameters: [startValue, endValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items retrieved successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error retrieving items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to select items with different index types
 */
export const selectExamples = async () => {
  // Select all items from a table (use with caution on large tables)
  await selectAllItems("UsersTable");

  // Select by partition key (simple primary key)
  await selectItemByPartitionKey("UsersTable", "userId", "user123");

  // Select by composite key (partition key + sort key)
  await selectItemByCompositeKey("OrdersTable", "orderId", "order456", "productId",
 "prod789");

  // Select with a filter condition (can use any attribute)
  await selectItemsWithFilter("UsersTable", "userType", "premium");

  // Select items with a prefix (useful for hierarchical data)
  await selectItemsByPrefix("ProductsTable", "category", "electronics");

  // Select items within a range (useful for numeric or date ranges)
  await selectItemsByRange("OrdersTable", "orderDate", "2023-01-01", "2023-12-31");
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Query for TTL items

The following code example shows how to query for TTL items.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query Filtered Expression to gather TTL items in a DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { marshall, unmarshall } from "@aws-sdk/util-dynamodb";

export const queryFiltered = async (tableName, primaryKey, region = 'us-east-1') =>
 {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const currentTime = Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000);

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        KeyConditionExpression: "#pk = :pk",
        FilterExpression: "#ea > :ea",
        ExpressionAttributeNames: {
            "#pk": "primaryKey",
            "#ea": "expireAt"
        },
        ExpressionAttributeValues: marshall({
            ":pk": primaryKey,
            ":ea": currentTime
        })
    };

    try {
        const { Items } = await client.send(new QueryCommand(params));
        Items.forEach(item => {
```

```
            console.log(unmarshall(item))
        });
        return Items;
    } catch (err) {
        console.error(`Error querying items: ${err}`);
        throw err;
    }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// queryFiltered('your-table-name', 'your-partition-key-value');
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Query tables using date and time patterns

The following code example shows how to query tables using date and time patterns.

- Store and query date/time values in DynamoDB.
- Implement date range queries using sort keys.
- Format date strings for effective querying.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Query using date ranges in sort keys with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items within a specific date range on the sort key
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} sortKeyName - The name of the sort key (must be a date/time
 attribute)
 * @param {Date} startDate - The start date for the range query
 * @param {Date} endDate - The end date for the range query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
```

```
 */
async function queryByDateRangeOnSortKey(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  sortKeyName,
  startDate,
  endDate
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB
    const formattedStartDate = startDate.toISOString();
    const formattedEndDate = endDate.toISOString();

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: '#pk = :pkValue AND #sk BETWEEN :startDate
 AND :endDate',
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#sk": sortKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
        ":startDate": { S: formattedStartDate },
        ":endDate": { S: formattedEndDate }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying by date range on sort key: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

Query using date-time variables with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient, QueryCommand } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");

/**
 * Queries a DynamoDB table for items within a specific date range
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS SDK configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key
 * @param {string} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} dateKeyName - The name of the date attribute to filter on
 * @param {Date} startDate - The start date for the range query
 * @param {Date} endDate - The end date for the range query
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The query response
 */
async function queryByDateRange(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  dateKeyName,
  startDate,
  endDate
) {
  try {
    // Create DynamoDB client
    const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);

    // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB
    const formattedStartDate = startDate.toISOString();
    const formattedEndDate = endDate.toISOString();

    // Construct the query input
    const input = {
      TableName: tableName,
      KeyConditionExpression: `#pk = :pkValue AND #dateAttr BETWEEN :startDate
 AND :endDate`,
      ExpressionAttributeNames: {
        "#pk": partitionKeyName,
        "#dateAttr": dateKeyName
      },
      ExpressionAttributeValues: {
        ":pkValue": { S: partitionKeyValue },
```

```
        ":startDate": { S: formattedStartDate },
        ":endDate": { S: formattedEndDate }
      }
    };

    // Execute the query
    const command = new QueryCommand(input);
    return await client.send(command);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error querying by date range: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Understand update expression order

The following code example shows how to understand update expression order.

- Learn how DynamoDB processes update expressions.
- Understand the order of operations in update expressions.
- Avoid unexpected results by understanding expression evaluation.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate update expression order using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Update an item with multiple actions in a single update expression.
 *
```

```
 * This function demonstrates how to use multiple actions in a single update
 expression
 * and how DynamoDB processes these actions.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to update
 * @param {string} updateExpression - The update expression with multiple actions
 * @param {Object} [expressionAttributeNames] - Expression attribute name
 placeholders
 * @param {Object} [expressionAttributeValues] - Expression attribute value
 placeholders
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithMultipleActions(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  updateExpression,
  expressionAttributeNames,
  expressionAttributeValues
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Prepare the update parameters
  const updateParams = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Add expression attribute names if provided
  if (expressionAttributeNames) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeNames = expressionAttributeNames;
  }

  // Add expression attribute values if provided
  if (expressionAttributeValues) {
    updateParams.ExpressionAttributeValues = expressionAttributeValues;
  }
```

```
  // Execute the update
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(updateParams));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Demonstrate that variables hold copies of existing values before modifications.
 *
 * This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
 * that uses the values of attributes before they are modified in the same
 expression.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to create and update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - A dictionary containing the results of the
 demonstration
 */
async function demonstrateValueCopying(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Step 1: Create an item with initial values
  const initialItem = { ...key, a: 1, b: 2, c: 3 };

  await docClient.send(new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: initialItem
  }));

  // Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
  const responseBefore = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemBefore = responseBefore.Item || {};
```

```
  // Step 3: Update the item with an expression that uses values before they are
 modified
  // This expression removes 'a', then sets 'b' to the value of 'a', and 'c' to the
 value of 'b'
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b",
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  // Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
  const responseAfter = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemAfter = responseAfter.Item || {};

  // Return the results
  return {
    initialState: itemBefore,
    updateResponse: updateResponse,
    finalState: itemAfter
  };
}

/**
 * Demonstrate the order in which different action types are processed.
 *
 * This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
 * that includes multiple action types (SET, REMOVE, ADD, DELETE) to show the order
 * in which they are processed.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to create and update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - A dictionary containing the results of the
 demonstration
 */
async function demonstrateActionOrder(
  config,
```

```
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Step 1: Create an item with initial values
  const initialItem = {
    ...key,
    counter: 10,
    set_attr: new Set(["A", "B", "C"]),
    to_remove: "This will be removed",
    to_modify: "Original value"
  };

  await docClient.send(new PutCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: initialItem
  }));

  // Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
  const responseBefore = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemBefore = responseBefore.Item || {};

  // Step 3: Update the item with multiple action types
  // The actions will be processed in this order: REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE
  const updateResponse = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "REMOVE to_remove SET to_modify = :new_value ADD
 counter :increment DELETE set_attr :elements",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":new_value": "Updated value",
      ":increment": 5,
      ":elements": new Set(["B"])
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));
```

```
  // Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
  const responseAfter = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemAfter = responseAfter.Item || {};

  // Return the results
  return {
    initialState: itemBefore,
    updateResponse: updateResponse,
    finalState: itemAfter
  };
}

/**
 * Update multiple attributes with a single SET action.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update multiple attributes in a single SET
 action,
 * which is more efficient than using multiple separate update operations.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to update
 * @param {Object} attributes - The attributes to update and their new values
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithMultipleSetActions(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  attributes
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Build the update expression and expression attribute values
  let updateExpression = "SET ";
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};

  // Add each attribute to the update expression
```

```
  Object.entries(attributes).forEach(([attrName, attrValue], index) => {
    const valuePlaceholder = `:val${index}`;

    if (index > 0) {
      updateExpression += ", ";
    }
    updateExpression += `${attrName} = ${valuePlaceholder}`;

    expressionAttributeValues[valuePlaceholder] = attrValue;
  });

  // Execute the update
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: updateExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update an attribute with a value from another attribute or a default value.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to conditionally copy a value
 * from one attribute to another, or use a default value if the source doesn't
 exist.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to update
 * @param {string} sourceAttribute - The attribute to copy the value from
 * @param {string} targetAttribute - The attribute to update
 * @param {any} defaultValue - The default value to use if the source attribute
 doesn't exist
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateWithConditionalValueCopying(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  sourceAttribute,
```

```
  targetAttribute,
  defaultValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Use if_not_exists to conditionally copy the value
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${targetAttribute} =
 if_not_exists(${sourceAttribute}, :default)`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":default": defaultValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  }));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Demonstrate complex update expressions with multiple operations on the same
 attribute.
 *
 * This function shows how DynamoDB processes multiple operations on the same
 attribute
 * in a single update expression.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The primary key of the item to create and update
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - A dictionary containing the results of the
 demonstration
 */
async function demonstrateMultipleOperationsOnSameAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
// Step 1: Create an item with initial values
const initialItem = {
  ...key,
  counter: 10,
  list_attr: [1, 2, 3],
  map_attr: {
    nested1: "value1",
    nested2: "value2"
  }
};

await docClient.send(new PutCommand({
  TableName: tableName,
  Item: initialItem
}));

// Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
const responseBefore = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
  TableName: tableName,
  Key: key
}));

const itemBefore = responseBefore.Item || {};

// Step 3: Update the item with multiple operations on the same attributes
const updateResponse = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand({
  TableName: tableName,
  Key: key,
  UpdateExpression: `
    SET counter = counter + :inc1,
        counter = counter + :inc2,
        map_attr.nested1 = :new_val1,
        map_attr.nested3 = :new_val3,
        list_attr[0] = list_attr[1],
        list_attr[1] = list_attr[2]
  `,
  ExpressionAttributeValues: {
    ":inc1": 5,
    ":inc2": 3,
    ":new_val1": "updated_value1",
    ":new_val3": "new_value3"
  },
  ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
```

```
  }));

  // Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
  const responseAfter = await docClient.send(new GetCommand({
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  }));

  const itemAfter = responseAfter.Item || {};

  // Return the results
  return {
    initialState: itemBefore,
    updateResponse: updateResponse,
    finalState: itemAfter
  };
}
```

Example usage of update expression order with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use update expression order of operations in DynamoDB.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "OrderProcessing";

  console.log("Demonstrating update expression order of operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Demonstrating value copying in update expressions
    console.log("\nExample 1: Demonstrating value copying in update expressions");
    const results1 = await demonstrateValueCopying(
      config,
      tableName,
      { OrderId: "order123" }
    );

    console.log("Initial state:", JSON.stringify(results1.initialState, null, 2));
    console.log("Update response:", JSON.stringify(results1.updateResponse, null,
 2));
```

```
   console.log("Final state:", JSON.stringify(results1.finalState, null, 2));

   console.log("\nExplanation:");
   console.log("1. The initial state had a=1, b=2, c=3");
   console.log("2. The update expression 'REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b' did the
following:");
   console.log("   - Copied the value of 'a' (which was 1) to be used for 'b'");
   console.log("   - Copied the value of 'b' (which was 2) to be used for 'c'");
   console.log("   - Removed the attribute 'a'");
   console.log("3. The final state has b=1, c=2, and 'a' is removed");
   console.log("4. This demonstrates that DynamoDB uses the values of attributes as
they were BEFORE any modifications");

   // Example 2: Demonstrating the order of different action types
   console.log("\nExample 2: Demonstrating the order of different action types");
   const results2 = await demonstrateActionOrder(
     config,
     tableName,
     { OrderId: "order456" }
   );

   console.log("Initial state:", JSON.stringify(results2.initialState, null, 2));
   console.log("Update response:", JSON.stringify(results2.updateResponse, null,
2));
   console.log("Final state:", JSON.stringify(results2.finalState, null, 2));

   console.log("\nExplanation:");
   console.log("1. The update expression contained multiple action types: REMOVE,
SET, ADD, DELETE");
   console.log("2. DynamoDB processes these actions in this order: REMOVE, SET,
ADD, DELETE");
   console.log("3. First, 'to_remove' was removed");
   console.log("4. Then, 'to_modify' was set to a new value");
   console.log("5. Next, 'counter' was incremented by 5");
   console.log("6. Finally, 'B' was removed from the set attribute");

   // Example 3: Updating multiple attributes in a single SET action
   console.log("\nExample 3: Updating multiple attributes in a single SET action");
   const response3 = await updateWithMultipleSetActions(
     config,
     tableName,
     { OrderId: "order789" },
     {
       Status: "Shipped",
```

```
        ShippingDate: "2025-05-28",
        TrackingNumber: "1Z999AA10123456784"
      }
    );

    console.log("Multiple attributes updated successfully:",
JSON.stringify(response3.Attributes, null, 2));

    // Example 4: Conditional value copying with if_not_exists
    console.log("\nExample 4: Conditional value copying with if_not_exists");
    const response4 = await updateWithConditionalValueCopying(
      config,
      tableName,
      { OrderId: "order101" },
      "PreferredShippingMethod",
      "ShippingMethod",
      "Standard"
    );

    console.log("Conditional value copying result:",
JSON.stringify(response4.Attributes, null, 2));

    // Example 5: Multiple operations on the same attribute
    console.log("\nExample 5: Multiple operations on the same attribute");
    const results5 = await demonstrateMultipleOperationsOnSameAttribute(
      config,
      tableName,
      { OrderId: "order202" }
    );

    console.log("Initial state:", JSON.stringify(results5.initialState, null, 2));
    console.log("Update response:", JSON.stringify(results5.updateResponse, null,
2));
    console.log("Final state:", JSON.stringify(results5.finalState, null, 2));

    console.log("\nExplanation:");
    console.log("1. The counter was incremented twice (first by 5, then by 3) for a
total of +8");
    console.log("2. The map attribute had one value updated and a new nested
attribute added");
    console.log("3. The list attribute had values shifted (value at index 1 moved to
index 0, value at index 2 moved to index 1)");
    console.log("4. All operations within the SET action are processed from left to
right");
```

```
    // Key points about update expression order of operations
    console.log("\nKey Points About Update Expression Order of Operations:");
    console.log("1. Variables in expressions hold copies of attribute values as they
 existed BEFORE any modifications");
    console.log("2. Multiple actions in an update expression are processed in this
 order: REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE");
    console.log("3. Within each action type, operations are processed from left to
 right");
    console.log("4. You can reference the same attribute multiple times in an
 expression");
    console.log("5. You can use if_not_exists() to conditionally set values based on
 attribute existence");
    console.log("6. Using a single update expression with multiple actions is more
 efficient than multiple separate updates");
    console.log("7. The update expression is atomic - either all actions succeed or
 none do");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Update a table's warm throughput setting

The following code example shows how to update a table's warm throughput setting.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Update warm throughput setting on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";

export async function updateDynamoDBTableWarmThroughput(
  tableName,
  tableReadUnits,
  tableWriteUnits,
  gsiName,
  gsiReadUnits,
  gsiWriteUnits,
```

```
  region = "us-east-1"
) {
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region: region });

    // Construct the update table request
    const updateTableRequest = {
      TableName: tableName,
      GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdates: [
        {
            Update: {
                IndexName: gsiName,
                WarmThroughput: {
                    ReadUnitsPerSecond: gsiReadUnits,
                    WriteUnitsPerSecond: gsiWriteUnits,
                },
            },
        },
      ],
      WarmThroughput: {
          ReadUnitsPerSecond: tableReadUnits,
          WriteUnitsPerSecond: tableWriteUnits,
      },
    };

    const command = new UpdateTableCommand(updateTableRequest);
    const response = await ddbClient.send(command);
    console.log(`Table updated successfully! Response:
 ${JSON.stringify(response)}`);
    return response;
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(`Error updating table: ${error}`);
    throw error;
  }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
/*
updateDynamoDBTableWarmThroughput(
  'example-table',
  5, 5,
  'example-index',
  2, 2
);
```

```
*/
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Update an item's TTL

The following code example shows how to update an item's TTL.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DynamoDBClient, UpdateItemCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import { marshall, unmarshall } from "@aws-sdk/util-dynamodb";

export const updateItem = async (tableName, partitionKey, sortKey, region = 'us-
east-1') => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({
        region: region,
        endpoint: `https://dynamodb.${region}.amazonaws.com`
    });

    const currentTime = Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000);
    const expireAt = Math.floor((Date.now() + 90 * 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000) / 1000);

    const params = {
        TableName: tableName,
        Key: marshall({
            partitionKey: partitionKey,
            sortKey: sortKey
        }),
        UpdateExpression: "SET updatedAt = :c, expireAt = :e",
        ExpressionAttributeValues: marshall({
            ":c": currentTime,
            ":e": expireAt
        }),
    };

    try {
        const data = await client.send(new UpdateItemCommand(params));
        const responseData = unmarshall(data.Attributes);
        console.log("Item updated successfully: %s", responseData);
        return responseData;
```

```
    } catch (err) {
        console.error("Error updating item:", err);
        throw err;
    }
}

// Example usage (commented out for testing)
// updateItem('your-table-name', 'your-partition-key-value', 'your-sort-key-value');
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Update data using PartiQL UPDATE

The following code example shows how to update data using PartiQL UPDATE statements.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Update items in a DynamoDB table using PartiQL UPDATE statements with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to update items in a DynamoDB table using PartiQL.
 * It shows different ways to update documents with various index types.
 */
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  ExecuteStatementCommand,
  BatchExecuteStatementCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Update a single attribute of an item using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param attributeName - The name of the attribute to update
 * @param attributeValue - The new value for the attribute
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
```

```
 */
export const updateSingleAttribute = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeName: string,
  attributeValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${partitionKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [attributeValue, partitionKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Update multiple attributes of an item using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param attributeUpdates - Object containing attribute names and their new values
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateMultipleAttributes = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeUpdates: Record<string, any>
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);
```

```
  // Create SET clause for each attribute
  const setClause = Object.keys(attributeUpdates)
    .map((attr, index) => `${attr} = ?`)
    .join(", ");

  // Create parameters array with attribute values followed by the partition key
 value
  const parameters = [...Object.values(attributeUpdates), partitionKeyValue];

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${setClause} WHERE ${partitionKeyName} = ?
`,
    Parameters: parameters,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Update an item identified by a composite key (partition key + sort key) using
 PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param sortKeyName - The name of the sort key attribute
 * @param sortKeyValue - The value of the sort key
 * @param attributeName - The name of the attribute to update
 * @param attributeValue - The new value for the attribute
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateItemWithCompositeKey = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  sortKeyName: string,
```

```
  sortKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeName: string,
  attributeValue: any
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND ${sortKeyName} = ?`,
    Parameters: [attributeValue, partitionKeyValue, sortKeyValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Update an item with a condition to ensure the update only happens if a condition
 is met.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param attributeName - The name of the attribute to update
 * @param attributeValue - The new value for the attribute
 * @param conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param conditionValue - The value to compare against in the condition
 * @returns The response from the ExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const updateItemWithCondition = async (
  tableName: string,
  partitionKeyName: string,
  partitionKeyValue: string | number,
  attributeName: string,
  attributeValue: any,
  conditionAttribute: string,
  conditionValue: any
```

```
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  const params = {
    Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${partitionKeyName} = ? AND ${conditionAttribute} = ?`,
    Parameters: [attributeValue, partitionKeyValue, conditionValue],
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new ExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Item updated with condition successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error updating item with condition:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Batch update multiple items using PartiQL.
 *
 * @param tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param updates - Array of objects containing key and update information
 * @returns The response from the BatchExecuteStatementCommand
 */
export const batchUpdateItems = async (
  tableName: string,
  updates: Array<{
    partitionKeyName: string;
    partitionKeyValue: string | number;
    attributeName: string;
    attributeValue: any;
  }>
) => {
  const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create statements for each update
  const statements = updates.map((update) => {
    return {
      Statement: `UPDATE "${tableName}" SET ${update.attributeName} = ? WHERE
 ${update.partitionKeyName} = ?`,
```

```
      Parameters: [update.attributeValue, update.partitionKeyValue],
    };
  });

  const params = {
    Statements: statements,
  };

  try {
    const data = await docClient.send(new BatchExecuteStatementCommand(params));
    console.log("Items batch updated successfully");
    return data;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Error batch updating items:", err);
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Example usage showing how to update items with different index types
 */
export const updateExamples = async () => {
  // Update a single attribute using a simple primary key
  await updateSingleAttribute("UsersTable", "userId", "user123", "email",
 "newemail@example.com");

  // Update multiple attributes at once
  await updateMultipleAttributes("UsersTable", "userId", "user123", {
    email: "newemail@example.com",
    name: "John Smith",
    lastLogin: new Date().toISOString(),
  });

  // Update an item with a composite key (partition key + sort key)
  await updateItemWithCompositeKey(
    "OrdersTable",
    "orderId",
    "order456",
    "productId",
    "prod789",
    "quantity",
    5
  );
```

```
  // Update with a condition
  await updateItemWithCondition(
    "UsersTable",
    "userId",
    "user123",
    "userStatus",
    "active",
    "userType",
    "premium"
  );

  // Batch update multiple items
  await batchUpdateItems("UsersTable", [
    {
      partitionKeyName: "userId",
      partitionKeyValue: "user123",
      attributeName: "lastLogin",
      attributeValue: new Date().toISOString(),
    },
    {
      partitionKeyName: "userId",
      partitionKeyValue: "user456",
      attributeName: "lastLogin",
      attributeValue: new Date().toISOString(),
    },
  ]);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - BatchExecuteStatement
  - ExecuteStatement

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example

demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use atomic counter operations

The following code example shows how to use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB.

- Increment counters atomically using ADD and SET operations.
- Safely increment counters that might not exist.
- Implement optimistic locking for counter operations.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate atomic counter operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Increment a counter using the ADD operation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the ADD operation for atomic increments.
```

```
 * The ADD operation is atomic and is the recommended way to increment counters.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterWithAdd(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using ADD
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `ADD ${counterName} :increment`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Increment a counter using the SET operation with an expression.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the SET operation with an expression for
 increments.
 * While this approach works, it's less idiomatic for simple increments than using
 ADD.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterWithSet(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with an expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${counterName} = ${counterName} + :increment`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Increment a counter safely, handling the case where the counter might not exist.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using the if_not_exists function with SET to safely
 * increment a counter that might not exist yet.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @param {number} defaultValue - The default value if the counter doesn't exist
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterSafely(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue,
  defaultValue = 0
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using SET with if_not_exists
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${counterName} = if_not_exists(${counterName}, :default)
 + :increment`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue,
      ":default": defaultValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Increment a counter with optimistic locking to prevent race conditions.
 *
 * This function demonstrates using a condition expression to implement optimistic
 * locking, which prevents race conditions when multiple processes try to update
 * the same counter.
 *
```

```
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @param {number} incrementValue - The value to increment by
 * @param {number} expectedValue - The expected current value of the counter
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function incrementCounterWithLocking(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName,
  incrementValue,
  expectedValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${counterName} = ${counterName} + :increment`,
    ConditionExpression: `${counterName} = :expected`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":increment": incrementValue,
      ":expected": expectedValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));
    return {
      success: true,
      data: response
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
```

```
        success: false,
        error: "Optimistic locking failed: the counter value has changed"
      };
    }
    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Get the current value of a counter.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of a counter attribute.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @param {string} counterName - The name of the counter attribute
 * @returns {Promise<number|null>} - The current counter value or null if not found
 */
async function getCounterValue(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  counterName
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the counter value if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item && counterName in response.Item
    ? response.Item[counterName]
    : null;
}
```

Example usage of atomic counter operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use the atomic counter operations.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };
  const counterName = "ViewCount";
  const incrementValue = 1;

  console.log("Demonstrating different approaches to increment counters in
 DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Using ADD operation (recommended for simple increments)
    console.log("\nExample 1: Incrementing counter with ADD operation");
    const response1 = await incrementCounterWithAdd(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      counterName,
      incrementValue
    );

    console.log(`Counter incremented to: ${response1.Attributes[counterName]}`);

    // Example 2: Using SET operation with an expression
    console.log("\nExample 2: Incrementing counter with SET operation");
    const response2 = await incrementCounterWithSet(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      counterName,
      incrementValue
    );

    console.log(`Counter incremented to: ${response2.Attributes[counterName]}`);
```

```
    // Example 3: Safely incrementing a counter that might not exist
    console.log("\nExample 3: Safely incrementing counter that might not exist");
    const newKey = { ProductId: "P67890" };
    const response3 = await incrementCounterSafely(
      config,
      tableName,
      newKey,
      counterName,
      incrementValue,
      0
    );

    console.log(`Counter initialized and incremented to:
${response3.Attributes[counterName]}`);

    // Example 4: Incrementing with optimistic locking
    console.log("\nExample 4: Incrementing with optimistic locking");

    // First, get the current counter value
    const currentValue = await getCounterValue(config, tableName, key, counterName);
    console.log(`Current counter value: ${currentValue}`);

    // Then, try to increment with optimistic locking
    const response4 = await incrementCounterWithLocking(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      counterName,
      incrementValue,
      currentValue
    );

    if (response4.success) {
      console.log(`Counter successfully incremented to:
${response4.data.Attributes[counterName]}`);
    } else {
      console.log(response4.error);
    }

    // Explain the differences between ADD and SET
    console.log("\nKey differences between ADD and SET for counter operations:");
    console.log("1. ADD is more concise and idiomatic for simple increments");
    console.log("2. SET with expressions is more flexible for complex operations");
    console.log("3. Both operations are atomic and safe for concurrent updates");
```

```
    console.log("4. SET with if_not_exists is required when the attribute might not
 exist");
    console.log("5. Optimistic locking can be added to either approach for
 additional safety");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Use conditional operations

The following code example shows how to use conditional operations in DynamoDB.

- Implement conditional writes to prevent overwriting data.
- Use condition expressions to enforce business rules.
- Handle conditional check failures gracefully.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate conditional operations using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  DeleteCommand,
  GetCommand,
  PutCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Perform a conditional update operation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to update an item only if a condition is met.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param {any} conditionValue - The value to compare against
 * @param {string} updateAttribute - The attribute to update
 * @param {any} updateValue - The new value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function conditionalUpdate(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  conditionAttribute,
  conditionValue,
  updateAttribute,
  updateValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${updateAttribute} = :value`,
    ConditionExpression: `${conditionAttribute} = :condition`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": updateValue,
      ":condition": conditionValue
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Condition was met and update was performed",
      updatedAttributes: response.Attributes
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
```

```
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Condition was not met, update was not performed",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Perform a conditional delete operation.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to delete an item only if a condition is met.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to delete
 * @param {string} conditionAttribute - The attribute to check in the condition
 * @param {any} conditionValue - The value to compare against
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function conditionalDelete(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  conditionAttribute,
  conditionValue
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the delete parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    ConditionExpression: `${conditionAttribute} = :condition`,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":condition": conditionValue
    },
```

```
    ReturnValues: "ALL_OLD"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the delete operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new DeleteCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Condition was met and item was deleted",
      deletedItem: response.Attributes
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Condition was not met, item was not deleted",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Implement optimistic locking with a version number.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use a version number for optimistic locking
 * to prevent race conditions when multiple processes update the same item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {Object} updates - The attributes to update
 * @param {number} expectedVersion - The expected current version number
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function updateWithOptimisticLocking(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
```

```
  updates,
  expectedVersion
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Build the update expression
  const updateExpressions = [];
  const expressionAttributeValues = {
    ":expectedVersion": expectedVersion,
    ":newVersion": expectedVersion + 1
  };

  // Add each update to the expression
  Object.entries(updates).forEach(([attribute, value], index) => {
    updateExpressions.push(`${attribute} = :val${index}`);
    expressionAttributeValues[`:val${index}`] = value;
  });

  // Add the version update
  updateExpressions.push("version = :newVersion");

  // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${updateExpressions.join(", ")}`,
    ConditionExpression: "version = :expectedVersion",
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues,
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  try {
    // Perform the update operation
    const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Update succeeded with optimistic locking",
      newVersion: expectedVersion + 1,
      updatedAttributes: response.Attributes
    };
  } catch (error) {
```

```
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Optimistic locking failed: the item was modified by another
 process",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Implement a conditional write that creates an item only if it doesn't exist.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use attribute_not_exists to create an item
 * only if it doesn't already exist (similar to an "INSERT IF NOT EXISTS"
 operation).
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} item - The item to create
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - Result of the operation
 */
async function createIfNotExists(
  config,
  tableName,
  item
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Extract the primary key attributes
  const keyAttributes = Object.keys(item).filter(attr =>
    attr === "id" || attr === "ID" || attr === "Id" ||
    attr.endsWith("Id") || attr.endsWith("ID") ||
    attr.endsWith("Key")
  );

  if (keyAttributes.length === 0) {
```

```
    throw new Error("Could not determine primary key attributes");
  }

  // Create a condition expression that checks if the item doesn't exist
  const conditionExpression = `attribute_not_exists(${keyAttributes[0]})`;

  // Define the put parameters with a condition expression
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Item: item,
    ConditionExpression: conditionExpression
  };

  try {
    // Perform the put operation
    await docClient.send(new PutCommand(params));

    return {
      success: true,
      message: "Item was created because it didn't exist",
      item
    };
  } catch (error) {
    // Check if the error is due to the condition check failing
    if (error.name === "ConditionalCheckFailedException") {
      return {
        success: false,
        message: "Item already exists, creation was skipped",
        error: "ConditionalCheckFailedException"
      };
    }

    // Re-throw other errors
    throw error;
  }
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));

  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of conditional operations with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use conditional operations.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating conditional operations in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Conditional update based on attribute value
    console.log("\nExample 1: Conditional update based on attribute value");
    const updateResult = await conditionalUpdate(
```

```
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "Category",
    "Electronics",
    "Price",
    299.99
  );

  console.log(`Result: ${updateResult.message}`);
  if (updateResult.success) {
    console.log("Updated attributes:", updateResult.updatedAttributes);
  }

  // Example 2: Conditional delete based on attribute value
  console.log("\nExample 2: Conditional delete based on attribute value");
  const deleteResult = await conditionalDelete(
    config,
    tableName,
    key,
    "InStock",
    false
  );

  console.log(`Result: ${deleteResult.message}`);
  if (deleteResult.success) {
    console.log("Deleted item:", deleteResult.deletedItem);
  }

  // Example 3: Optimistic locking with version number
  console.log("\nExample 3: Optimistic locking with version number");

  // First, get the current item to check its version
  const currentItem = await getItem(config, tableName, { ProductId: "P67890" });
  const currentVersion = currentItem ? (currentItem.version || 0) : 0;

  console.log(`Current version: ${currentVersion}`);

  // Then, update with optimistic locking
  const lockingResult = await updateWithOptimisticLocking(
    config,
    tableName,
    { ProductId: "P67890" },
    {
```

```
        Name: "Updated Product Name",
        Description: "This is an updated description"
      },
      currentVersion
    );

    console.log(`Result: ${lockingResult.message}`);
    if (lockingResult.success) {
      console.log(`New version: ${lockingResult.newVersion}`);
      console.log("Updated attributes:", lockingResult.updatedAttributes);
    }

    // Example 4: Create item only if it doesn't exist
    console.log("\nExample 4: Create item only if it doesn't exist");
    const createResult = await createIfNotExists(
      config,
      tableName,
      {
        ProductId: "P99999",
        Name: "New Product",
        Category: "Accessories",
        Price: 19.99,
        InStock: true
      }
    );

    console.log(`Result: ${createResult.message}`);
    if (createResult.success) {
      console.log("Created item:", createResult.item);
    }

    // Explain conditional operations
    console.log("\nKey points about conditional operations:");
    console.log("1. Conditional operations only succeed if the condition is met");
    console.log("2. ConditionalCheckFailedException indicates the condition wasn't
met");
    console.log("3. Optimistic locking prevents race conditions in concurrent
updates");
    console.log("4. attribute_exists and attribute_not_exists are useful for
checking if attributes are present");
    console.log("5. Conditional operations are atomic - they either succeed
completely or fail completely");
    console.log("6. You can use any valid comparison operators and functions in
condition expressions");
```

```
    console.log("7. Conditional operations don't consume write capacity if the
 condition fails");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteItem
  - PutItem
  - UpdateItem

Use expression attribute names

The following code example shows how to use expression attribute names in DynamoDB.

- Work with reserved words in DynamoDB expressions.
- Use expression attribute name placeholders.
- Handle special characters in attribute names.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Demonstrate expression attribute names using AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
const { DynamoDBClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb");
const {
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
  UpdateCommand,
  GetCommand,
  QueryCommand,
  ScanCommand
} = require("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb");

/**
 * Update an attribute that is a reserved word in DynamoDB.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
 * attributes that are reserved words in DynamoDB.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} reservedWordAttribute - The reserved word attribute to update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateReservedWordAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  reservedWordAttribute,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "SET #attr = :value",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: {
      "#attr": reservedWordAttribute
    },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Update an attribute that contains special characters.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
 * attributes that contain special characters.
```

```
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string} specialCharAttribute - The attribute with special characters to
 update
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  specialCharAttribute,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: "SET #attr = :value",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: {
      "#attr": specialCharAttribute
    },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Query items using an attribute that is a reserved word.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names in a query
```

```
 * when the attribute is a reserved word.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {string} partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute
 * @param {any} partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key
 * @param {string} reservedWordAttribute - The reserved word attribute to filter on
 * @param {any} value - The value to compare against
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  partitionKeyName,
  partitionKeyValue,
  reservedWordAttribute,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the query parameters using expression attribute names
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    KeyConditionExpression: "#pkName = :pkValue",
    FilterExpression: "#attr = :value",
    ExpressionAttributeNames: {
      "#pkName": partitionKeyName,
      "#attr": reservedWordAttribute
    },
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":pkValue": partitionKeyValue,
      ":value": value
    }
  };

  // Perform the query operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new QueryCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
```

```
 * Update a nested attribute with a path that contains reserved words.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
 * nested attributes where the path contains reserved words.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to update
 * @param {string[]} attributePath - The path to the nested attribute as an array
 * @param {any} value - The value to set
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
  config,
  tableName,
  key,
  attributePath,
  value
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create expression attribute names for each part of the path
  const expressionAttributeNames = {};
  for (let i = 0; i < attributePath.length; i++) {
    expressionAttributeNames[`#attr${i}`] = attributePath[i];
  }

  // Build the attribute path using the expression attribute names
  const attributePathExpression = attributePath
    .map((_, i) => `#attr${i}`)
    .join(".");

  // Define the update parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key,
    UpdateExpression: `SET ${attributePathExpression} = :value`,
    ExpressionAttributeNames: expressionAttributeNames,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: {
      ":value": value
    },
    ReturnValues: "UPDATED_NEW"
```

```
  };

  // Perform the update operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new UpdateCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Scan a table with multiple attribute name placeholders.
 *
 * This function demonstrates how to use multiple expression attribute names
 * in a complex filter expression.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} filters - Object mapping attribute names to filter values
 * @returns {Promise<Object>} - The response from DynamoDB
 */
async function scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(
  config,
  tableName,
  filters
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Create expression attribute names and values
  const expressionAttributeNames = {};
  const expressionAttributeValues = {};
  const filterConditions = [];

  // Build the filter expression
  Object.entries(filters).forEach(([attrName, value], index) => {
    const nameKey = `#attr${index}`;
    const valueKey = `:val${index}`;

    expressionAttributeNames[nameKey] = attrName;
    expressionAttributeValues[valueKey] = value;
    filterConditions.push(`${nameKey} = ${valueKey}`);
  });

  // Join the filter conditions with AND
```

```
  const filterExpression = filterConditions.join(" AND ");

  // Define the scan parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    FilterExpression: filterExpression,
    ExpressionAttributeNames: expressionAttributeNames,
    ExpressionAttributeValues: expressionAttributeValues
  };

  // Perform the scan operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new ScanCommand(params));

  return response;
}

/**
 * Get the current value of an item.
 *
 * Helper function to retrieve the current value of an item.
 *
 * @param {Object} config - AWS configuration object
 * @param {string} tableName - The name of the DynamoDB table
 * @param {Object} key - The key of the item to get
 * @returns {Promise<Object|null>} - The item or null if not found
 */
async function getItem(
  config,
  tableName,
  key
) {
  // Initialize the DynamoDB client
  const client = new DynamoDBClient(config);
  const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(client);

  // Define the get parameters
  const params = {
    TableName: tableName,
    Key: key
  };

  // Perform the get operation
  const response = await docClient.send(new GetCommand(params));
```

```
  // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
  return response.Item || null;
}
```

Example usage of expression attribute names with AWS SDK for JavaScript.

```
/**
 * Example of how to use expression attribute names.
 */
async function exampleUsage() {
  // Example parameters
  const config = { region: "us-west-2" };
  const tableName = "Products";
  const key = { ProductId: "P12345" };

  console.log("Demonstrating expression attribute names in DynamoDB");

  try {
    // Example 1: Update an attribute that is a reserved word
    console.log("\nExample 1: Updating an attribute that is a reserved word");
    const response1 = await updateReservedWordAttribute(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Size", // "SIZE" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
      "Large"
    );

    console.log("Updated attribute:", response1.Attributes);

    // Example 2: Update an attribute with special characters
    console.log("\nExample 2: Updating an attribute with special characters");
    const response2 = await updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      "Product-Type", // Contains a hyphen, which is a special character
      "Electronics"
    );

    console.log("Updated attribute:", response2.Attributes);
```

```
    // Example 3: Query with a reserved word attribute
    console.log("\nExample 3: Querying with a reserved word attribute");
    const response3 = await queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
      config,
      tableName,
      "Category",
      "Electronics",
      "Count", // "COUNT" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
      10
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response3.Items.length} items`);

    // Example 4: Update a nested attribute with reserved words in the path
    console.log("\nExample 4: Updating a nested attribute with reserved words in the
path");
    const response4 = await updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
      config,
      tableName,
      key,
      ["Dimensions", "Size", "Height"], // "SIZE" is a reserved word
      30
    );

    console.log("Updated nested attribute:", response4.Attributes);

    // Example 5: Scan with multiple attribute name placeholders
    console.log("\nExample 5: Scanning with multiple attribute name placeholders");
    const response5 = await scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(
      config,
      tableName,
      {
        "Size": "Large",
        "Count": 10,
        "Product-Type": "Electronics"
      }
    );

    console.log(`Found ${response5.Items.length} items`);

    // Get the final state of the item
    console.log("\nFinal state of the item:");
    const item = await getItem(config, tableName, key);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(item, null, 2));
```

```
    // Show some common reserved words
    console.log("\nSome common DynamoDB reserved words:");
    const commonReservedWords = [
      "ABORT", "ABSOLUTE", "ACTION", "ADD", "ALL", "ALTER", "AND", "ANY", "AS",
      "ASC", "BETWEEN", "BY", "CASE", "CAST", "COLUMN", "CONNECT", "COUNT",
      "CREATE", "CURRENT", "DATE", "DELETE", "DESC", "DROP", "ELSE", "EXISTS",
      "FOR", "FROM", "GRANT", "GROUP", "HAVING", "IN", "INDEX", "INSERT", "INTO",
      "IS", "JOIN", "KEY", "LEVEL", "LIKE", "LIMIT", "LOCAL", "MAX", "MIN", "NAME",
      "NOT", "NULL", "OF", "ON", "OR", "ORDER", "OUTER", "REPLACE", "RETURN",
      "SELECT", "SET", "SIZE", "TABLE", "THEN", "TO", "UPDATE", "USER", "VALUES",
      "VIEW", "WHERE"
    ];
    console.log(commonReservedWords.join(", "));

    // Explain expression attribute names
    console.log("\nKey points about expression attribute names:");
    console.log("1. Use expression attribute names (#name) for reserved words");
    console.log("2. Use expression attribute names for attributes with special
 characters");
    console.log("3. Special characters include: spaces, hyphens, dots, and other
 non-alphanumeric characters");
    console.log("4. Expression attribute names are required for nested attributes
 with reserved words");
    console.log("5. You can use multiple expression attribute names in a single
 expression");
    console.log("6. Expression attribute names are case-sensitive");
    console.log("7. Expression attribute names are only used in expressions, not in
 the actual data");

  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error:", error);
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - Query
  - UpdateItem

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
};

const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
}
const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
export const handler = async (event) => {
  const records = event.Records;
  let curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

  for (const record of records) {
    try {
      // Process your record
      curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
    } catch (e) {
      // Return failed record's sequence number
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: curRecordSequenceNumber }] };
    }
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};
```

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import {
  DynamoDBBatchResponse,
  DynamoDBBatchItemFailure,
  DynamoDBStreamEvent,
} from "aws-lambda";
```

```
export const handler = async (
  event: DynamoDBStreamEvent
): Promise<DynamoDBBatchResponse> => {
  const batchItemFailures: DynamoDBBatchItemFailure[] = [];
  let curRecordSequenceNumber;

  for (const record of event.Records) {
    curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb?.SequenceNumber;

    if (curRecordSequenceNumber) {
      batchItemFailures.push({
        itemIdentifier: curRecordSequenceNumber,
      });
    }
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures };
};
```

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

// Call DescribeSecurityGroups and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new EC2Client();
  try {
    const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({}),
    );

    const securityGroupList = SecurityGroups.slice(0, 9)
      .map((sg) => ` • ${sg.GroupId}: ${sg.GroupName}`)
      .join("\n");

    console.log(
      "Hello, Amazon EC2! Let's list up to 10 of your security groups:",
    );
    console.log(securityGroupList);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This file contains a list of common actions used with EC2. The steps are constructed with a Scenario framework that simplifies running an interactive example. For the full context, visit the GitHub repository.

```
import { tmpdir } from "node:os";
import { writeFile, mkdtemp, rm } from "node:fs/promises";
import { join } from "node:path";
import { get } from "node:http";

import {
  AllocateAddressCommand,
  AssociateAddressCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
```

```
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateSecurityGroupCommand,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteSecurityGroupCommand,
  DisassociateAddressCommand,
  paginateDescribeImages,
  paginateDescribeInstances,
  paginateDescribeInstanceTypes,
  ReleaseAddressCommand,
  RunInstancesCommand,
  StartInstancesCommand,
  StopInstancesCommand,
  TerminateInstancesCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceStatusOk,
  waitUntilInstanceStopped,
  waitUntilInstanceTerminated,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

import { paginateGetParametersByPath, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   ec2Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').EC2Client,
 *   errors: Error[],
 *   keyPairId?: string,
 *   tmpDirectory?: string,
 *   securityGroupId?: string,
 *   ipAddress?: string,
 *   images?: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Image[],
 *   image?: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Image,
 *   instanceTypes?: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').InstanceTypeInfo[],
 *   instanceId?: string,
 *   instanceIpAddress?: string,
 *   allocationId?: string,
 *   allocatedIpAddress?: string,
 *   associationId?: string,
 * }} State
 */
```

```
/**
 * A skip function provided to the `skipWhen` of a Step when you want
 * to ignore that step if any errors have occurred.
 * @param {State} state
 */
const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;

const MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS = 60 * 8;

export const confirm = new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", "Continue?", {
  type: "confirm",
  skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
});

export const exitOnNoConfirm = new ScenarioAction(
  "exitOnConfirmContinueFalse",
  (/** @type { { earlyExit: boolean } & Record<string, any>} */ state) => {
    if (!state[confirm.name]) {
      state.earlyExit = true;
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

export const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  `

Welcome to the Amazon EC2 basic usage scenario.

Before you launch an instances, you'll need to provide a few things:
 - A key pair - This is for SSH access to your EC2 instance. You only need to
 provide the name.
 - A security group - This is used for configuring access to your instance. Again,
 only the name is needed.
 - An IP address - Your public IP address will be fetched.
 - An Amazon Machine Image (AMI)
 - A compatible instance type`,
  { header: true, preformatted: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

```
export const provideKeyPairName = new ScenarioInput(
  "keyPairName",
  "Provide a name for a new key pair.",
  { type: "input", default: "ec2-example-key-pair", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const createKeyPair = new ScenarioAction(
  "createKeyPair",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Create a key pair in Amazon EC2.
      const { KeyMaterial, KeyPairId } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        // A unique name for the key pair. Up to 255 ASCII characters.
        new CreateKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: state[provideKeyPairName.name] }),
      );

      state.keyPairId = KeyPairId;

      // Save the private key in a temporary location.
      state.tmpDirectory = await mkdtemp(join(tmpdir(), "ec2-scenario-tmp"));
      await writeFile(
        `${state.tmpDirectory}/${state[provideKeyPairName.name]}.pem`,
        KeyMaterial,
        {
          mode: 0o400,
        },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try another key name.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logKeyPair = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logKeyPair",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
```

```
    `Created the key pair ${state[provideKeyPairName.name]}.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const confirmDeleteKeyPair = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteKeyPair",
  "Do you want to delete the key pair?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    // Don't do anything when a key pair was never created.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => !state.keyPairId,
  },
);

export const maybeDeleteKeyPair = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteKeyPair",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Delete a key pair by name from EC2
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: state[provideKeyPairName.name] }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        // Occurs when a required parameter (e.g. KeyName) is undefined.
        caught.name === "MissingParameter"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Did you provide the required value?`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    // Don't do anything when there's no key pair to delete or the user chooses
    // to keep it.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      !state.keyPairId || !state[confirmDeleteKeyPair.name],
  },
);

export const provideSecurityGroupName = new ScenarioInput(
  "securityGroupName",
  "Provide a name for a new security group.",
```

```
  { type: "input", default: "ec2-scenario-sg", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const createSecurityGroup = new ScenarioAction(
  "createSecurityGroup",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Create a new security group that will be used to configure ingress/egress
 for
      // an EC2 instance.
      const { GroupId } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        new CreateSecurityGroupCommand({
          GroupName: state[provideSecurityGroupName.name],
          Description: "A security group for the Amazon EC2 example.",
        }),
      );
      state.securityGroupId = GroupId;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroup.Duplicate") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a different name for
 your security group.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logSecurityGroup = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSecurityGroup",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Created the security group ${state.securityGroupId}.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const confirmDeleteSecurityGroup = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteSecurityGroup",
  "Do you want to delete the security group?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    // Don't do anything when a security group was never created.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => !state.securityGroupId,
  },
```

```
);

export const maybeDeleteSecurityGroup = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteSecurityGroup",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Delete the security group if the 'skipWhen' condition below is not met.
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new DeleteSecurityGroupCommand({
          GroupId: state.securityGroupId,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    // Don't do anything when there's no security group to delete
    // or the user chooses to keep it.
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      !state.securityGroupId || !state[confirmDeleteSecurityGroup.name],
  },
);

export const authorizeSecurityGroupIngress = new ScenarioAction(
  "authorizeSecurity",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      // Get the public IP address of the machine running this example.
      const ipAddress = await new Promise((res, rej) => {
        get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com", (response) => {
          let data = "";
          response.on("data", (chunk) => {
            data += chunk;
          });
          response.on("end", () => res(data.trim()));
        }).on("error", (err) => {
          rej(err);
```

```
        });
      });
      state.ipAddress = ipAddress;
      // Allow ingress from the IP address above to the security group.
      // This will allow you to SSH into the EC2 instance.
      const command = new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
        GroupId: state.securityGroupId,
        IpPermissions: [
          {
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
            FromPort: 22,
            ToPort: 22,
            IpRanges: [{ CidrIp: `${ipAddress}/32` }],
          },
        ],
      });

      await state.ec2Client.send(command);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logSecurityGroupIngress = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSecurityGroupIngress",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Allowed SSH access from your public IP: ${state.ipAddress}.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const getImages = new ScenarioAction(
  "images",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const AMIs = [];
```

```
   // Some AWS services publish information about common artifacts as AWS Systems
Manager (SSM)
   // public parameters. For example, the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
   // service publishes information about Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) as public
parameters.

   // Create the paginator for getting images. Actions that return multiple pages
of
   // results have paginators to simplify those calls.
   const getParametersByPathPaginator = paginateGetParametersByPath(
     {
       // Not storing this client in state since it's only used once.
       client: new SSMClient({}),
     },
     {
       // The path to the public list of the latest amazon-linux instances.
       Path: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest",
     },
   );

   try {
     for await (const page of getParametersByPathPaginator) {
       for (const param of page.Parameters) {
         // Filter by Amazon Linux 2
         if (param.Name.includes("amzn2")) {
           AMIs.push(param.Value);
         }
       }
     }
   } catch (caught) {
     if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidFilterValue") {
       caught.message = `${caught.message} Please provide a valid filter value for
paginateGetParametersByPath.`;
     }
     state.errors.push(caught);
     return;
   }

   const imageDetails = [];
   const describeImagesPaginator = paginateDescribeImages(
     { client: state.ec2Client },
     // The images found from the call to SSM.
     { ImageIds: AMIs },
   );
```

```
    try {
      // Get more details for the images found above.
      for await (const page of describeImagesPaginator) {
        imageDetails.push(...(page.Images || []));
      }

      // Store the image details for later use.
      state.images = imageDetails;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidAMIID.NotFound") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid image id.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const provideImage = new ScenarioInput(
  "image",
  "Select one of the following images.",
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      state.images.map((image) => ({
        name: `${image.Description}`,
        value: image,
      })),
    default: (/** @type { State } */ state) => state.images[0],
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

export const getCompatibleInstanceTypes = new ScenarioAction(
  "getCompatibleInstanceTypes",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Get more details about instance types that match the architecture of
    // the provided image.
    const paginator = paginateDescribeInstanceTypes(
      { client: state.ec2Client, pageSize: 25 },
      {
        Filters: [
```

```
          {
            Name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
            // The value selected from provideImage()
            Values: [state.image.Architecture],
          },
          // Filter for smaller, less expensive, types.
          { Name: "instance-type", Values: ["*.micro", "*.small"] },
        ],
      },
    );

    const instanceTypes = [];

    try {
      for await (const page of paginator) {
        if (page.InstanceTypes.length) {
          instanceTypes.push(...(page.InstanceTypes || []));
        }
      }

      if (!instanceTypes.length) {
        state.errors.push(
          "No instance types matched the instance type filters.",
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please check the provided values and
 try again.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }

    state.instanceTypes = instanceTypes;
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const provideInstanceType = new ScenarioInput(
  "instanceType",
  "Select an instance type.",
  {
    choices: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
```

```
      state.instanceTypes.map((instanceType) => ({
        name: `${instanceType.InstanceType} - Memory:
${instanceType.MemoryInfo.SizeInMiB}`,
        value: instanceType.InstanceType,
      })),
    type: "select",
    default: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.instanceTypes[0].InstanceType,
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

export const runInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "runInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    const { Instances } = await state.ec2Client.send(
      new RunInstancesCommand({
        KeyName: state[provideKeyPairName.name],
        SecurityGroupIds: [state.securityGroupId],
        ImageId: state.image.ImageId,
        InstanceType: state[provideInstanceType.name],
        // Availability Zones have capacity limitations that may impact your ability
 to launch instances.
        // The `RunInstances` operation will only succeed if it can allocate at
 least the `MinCount` of instances.
        // However, EC2 will attempt to launch up to the `MaxCount` of instances,
 even if the full request cannot be satisfied.
        // If you need a specific number of instances, use `MinCount` and `MaxCount`
 set to the same value.
        // If you want to launch up to a certain number of instances, use `MaxCount`
 and let EC2 provision as many as possible.
        // If you require a minimum number of instances, but do not want to exceed a
 maximum, use both `MinCount` and `MaxCount`.
        MinCount: 1,
        MaxCount: 1,
      }),
    );

    state.instanceId = Instances[0].InstanceId;

    try {
      // Poll `DescribeInstanceStatus` until status is "ok".
      await waitUntilInstanceStatusOk(
        {
```

```
          client: state.ec2Client,
          maxWaitTime: MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS,
        },
        { InstanceIds: [Instances[0].InstanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in the
 waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logRunInstance = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logRunInstance",
  "The next step is to run your EC2 instance for the first time. This can take a few
 minutes.",
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const describeInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "describeInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    /** @type { import("@aws-sdk/client-ec2").Instance[] } */
    const instances = [];

    try {
      const paginator = paginateDescribeInstances(
        {
          client: state.ec2Client,
        },
        {
          // Only get our created instance.
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        },
      );

      for await (const page of paginator) {
        for (const reservation of page.Reservations) {
          instances.push(...reservation.Instances);
```

```
        }
      }
      if (instances.length !== 1) {
        throw new Error(`Instance ${state.instanceId} not found.`);
      }

      // The only info we need is the IP address for SSH purposes.
      state.instanceIpAddress = instances[0].PublicIpAddress;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please check provided values and try
 again.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logSSHConnectionInfo = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSSHConnectionInfo",
  (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
    `You can now SSH into your instance using the following command:
ssh -i ${state.tmpDirectory}/${state[provideKeyPairName.name]}.pem ec2-user@
${state.instanceIpAddress}`,
  { preformatted: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logStopInstance = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logStopInstance",
  "Stopping your EC2 instance.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const stopInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "stopInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new StopInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        }),
      );
```

```
      await waitUntilInstanceStopped(
        {
          client: state.ec2Client,
          maxWaitTime: MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS,
        },
        { InstanceIds: [state.instanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in the
 waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  // Don't try to stop an instance that doesn't exist.
  { skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) => !state.instanceId },
);

export const logIpAddressBehavior = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logIpAddressBehavior",
  [
    "When you run an instance, by default it's assigned an IP address.",
    "That IP address is not static. It will change every time the instance is
 restarted.",
    "The next step is to stop and restart your instance to demonstrate this
 behavior.",
  ].join(" "),
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logStartInstance = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logStartInstance",
  (/** @type { State } */ state) => `Starting instance ${state.instanceId}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const startInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "startInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
```

```
        new StartInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        }),
      );

      await waitUntilInstanceStatusOk(
        {
          client: state.ec2Client,
          maxWaitTime: MAX_WAITER_TIME_IN_SECONDS,
        },
        { InstanceIds: [state.instanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in the
 waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logIpAllocation = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logIpAllocation",
  [
    "It is possible to have a static IP address.",
    "To demonstrate this, an IP will be allocated and associated to your EC2
 instance.",
  ].join(" "),
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const allocateIp = new ScenarioAction(
  "allocateIp",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      // An Elastic IP address is allocated to your AWS account, and is yours until
 you release it.
      const { AllocationId, PublicIp } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        new AllocateAddressCommand({}),
      );
      state.allocationId = AllocationId;
```

```
      state.allocatedIpAddress = PublicIp;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const associateIp = new ScenarioAction(
  "associateIp",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      // Associate an allocated IP address to an EC2 instance. An IP address can be
 allocated
      // with the AllocateAddress action.
      const { AssociationId } = await state.ec2Client.send(
        new AssociateAddressCommand({
          AllocationId: state.allocationId,
          InstanceId: state.instanceId,
        }),
      );
      state.associationId = AssociationId;
      // Update the IP address that is being tracked to match
      // the one just associated.
      state.instanceIpAddress = state.allocatedIpAddress;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Did you provide the ID of a valid
 Elastic IP address AllocationId?`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logStaticIpProof = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logStaticIpProof",
```

```
  "The IP address should remain the same even after stopping and starting the
 instance.",
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const logCleanUp = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logCleanUp",
  "That's it! You can choose to clean up the resources now, or clean them up on your
 own later.",
  { header: true, skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

export const confirmDisassociateAddress = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDisassociateAddress",
  "Do you want to disassociate and release the static IP address created earlier?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) => !state.associationId,
  },
);

export const maybeDisassociateAddress = new ScenarioAction(
  "maybeDisassociateAddress",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new DisassociateAddressCommand({
          AssociationId: state.associationId,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid association
 ID.`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      !state[confirmDisassociateAddress.name] || !state.associationId,
```

```
  },
);

export const maybeReleaseAddress = new ScenarioAction(
  "maybeReleaseAddress",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new ReleaseAddressCommand({
          AllocationId: state.allocationId,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
      ) {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Please provide a valid AllocationID.`;
      }
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      !state[confirmDisassociateAddress.name] || !state.allocationId,
  },
);

export const confirmTerminateInstance = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmTerminateInstance",
  "Do you want to terminate the instance?",
  // Don't do anything when an instance was never run.
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) => !state.instanceId,
    type: "confirm",
  },
);

export const maybeTerminateInstance = new ScenarioAction(
  "terminateInstance",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ec2Client.send(
        new TerminateInstancesCommand({
```

```
          InstanceIds: [state.instanceId],
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilInstanceTerminated(
        { client: state.ec2Client },
        { InstanceIds: [state.instanceId] },
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "TimeoutError") {
        caught.message = `${caught.message}. Try increasing the maxWaitTime in the
 waiter.`;
      }

      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
  {
    // Don't do anything when there's no instance to terminate or the
    // use chooses not to terminate.
    skipWhen: (/** @type { State } */ state) =>
      !state.instanceId || !state[confirmTerminateInstance.name],
  },
);

export const deleteTemporaryDirectory = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteTemporaryDirectory",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    try {
      await rm(state.tmpDirectory, { recursive: true });
    } catch (caught) {
      state.errors.push(caught);
    }
  },
);

export const logErrors = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logErrors",
  (/** @type {State}*/ state) => {
    const errorList = state.errors
      .map((err) => ` - ${err.name}: ${err.message}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Scenario errors found:\n${errorList}`;
  },
  {
```

```
    preformatted: true,
    header: true,
    // Don't log errors when there aren't any!
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.errors.length === 0,
  },
);
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances
  - UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AllocateAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Allocates an Elastic IP address to your AWS account.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new AllocateAddressCommand({});

  try {
    const { AllocationId, PublicIp } = await client.send(command);
    console.log("A new IP address has been allocated to your account:");
    console.log(`ID: ${AllocationId} Public IP: ${PublicIp}`);
    console.log(
      "You can view your IP addresses in the AWS Management Console for Amazon EC2.
 Look under Network & Security > Elastic IPs",
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
// Call function if run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AssociateAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Associates an Elastic IP address, or carrier IP address (for instances that are
 in subnets in Wavelength Zones)
 * with an instance or a network interface.
 * @param {{ instanceId: string, allocationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceId, allocationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new AssociateAddressCommand({
    // You need to allocate an Elastic IP address before associating it with an
 instance.
    // You can do that with the AllocateAddressCommand.
    AllocationId: allocationId,
    // You need to create an EC2 instance before an IP address can be associated
 with it.
    // You can do that with the RunInstancesCommand.
    InstanceId: instanceId,
  });

  try {
    const { AssociationId } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `Address with allocation ID ${allocationId} is now associated with instance
 ${instanceId}.`,
      `The association ID is ${AssociationId}.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
```

```
      caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. Did you provide the ID of a valid Elastic IP address
 AllocationId?`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
  EC2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Adds the specified inbound (ingress) rules to a security group.
 * @param {{ groupId: string, ipAddress: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupId, ipAddress }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
    // Use a group ID from the AWS console or
    // the DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand.
    GroupId: groupId,
```

```
    IpPermissions: [
      {
        IpProtocol: "tcp",
        FromPort: 22,
        ToPort: 22,
        // The IP address to authorize.
        // For more information on this notation, see
        // https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classless_Inter-
Domain_Routing#CIDR_notation
        IpRanges: [{ CidrIp: `${ipAddress}/32` }],
      },
    ],
  });

  try {
    const { SecurityGroupRules } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(SecurityGroupRules, null, 2));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateKeyPairCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
```

```
/**
 * Creates an ED25519 or 2048-bit RSA key pair with the specified name and in the
 specified PEM or PPK format.
 * Amazon EC2 stores the public key and displays the private key for you to save to
 a file.
 * @param {{ keyName: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ keyName }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new CreateKeyPairCommand({
    KeyName: keyName,
  });

  try {
    const { KeyMaterial, KeyName } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(KeyName);
    console.log(KeyMaterial);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Try another key name.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateSecurityGroupCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Creates a security group.
 * @param {{ groupName: string, description: string }} options
```

```
 */
export const main = async ({ groupName, description }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new CreateSecurityGroupCommand({
    // Up to 255 characters in length. Cannot start with sg-.
    GroupName: groupName,
    // Up to 255 characters in length.
    Description: description,
  });

  try {
    const { GroupId } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(GroupId);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteKeyPairCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Deletes the specified key pair, by removing the public key from Amazon EC2.
```

```
 * @param {{ keyName: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ keyName }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DeleteKeyPairCommand({
    KeyName: keyName,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully deleted key pair.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide the required value?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    await client.send(
      new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      }),
    );
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteSecurityGroupCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Deletes a security group.
 * @param {{ groupId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DeleteSecurityGroupCommand({
    GroupId: groupId,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Security group deleted successfully.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeAddresses`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAddresses`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeAddressesCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified Elastic IP addresses or all of your Elastic IP addresses.
 * @param {{ allocationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ allocationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeAddressesCommand({
    // You can omit this property to show all addresses.
    AllocationIds: [allocationId],
  });

  try {
    const { Addresses } = await client.send(command);
    const addressList = Addresses.map((address) => ` • ${address.PublicIp}`);
    console.log("Elastic IP addresses:");
    console.log(addressList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid AllocationId.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
  new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
    Filters: [
      { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
    ],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, paginateDescribeImages } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified images (AMIs, AKIs, and ARIs) available to you or all of
 the images available to you.
 * @param {{ architecture: string, pageSize: number }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ architecture, pageSize }) => {
  pageSize = Number.parseInt(pageSize);
  const client = new EC2Client({});

  // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
  const paginator = paginateDescribeImages(
    // Without limiting the page size, this call can take a long time. pageSize is
 just sugar for
    // the MaxResults property in the base command.
    { client, pageSize },
    {
      // There are almost 70,000 images available. Be specific with your filtering
      // to increase efficiency.
      // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/clients/client-
ec2/interfaces/describeimagescommandinput.html#filters
      Filters: [{ Name: "architecture", Values: [architecture] }],
    },
  );

  /**
   * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Image[]}
   */
  const images = [];
  let recordsScanned = 0;

  try {
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      recordsScanned += pageSize;
      if (page.Images.length) {
        images.push(...page.Images);
        break;
      }
      console.log(
        `No matching image found yet. Searched ${recordsScanned} records.`,
      );
    }
```

```
    if (images.length) {
      console.log(
        `Found ${images.length} images:\n\n${images.map((image) =>
 image.Name).join("\n")}\n`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(
        `No matching images found. Searched ${recordsScanned} records.\n`,
      );
    }

    return images;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
      return [];
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, paginateDescribeInstanceTypes } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified instance types. By default, all instance types for the
 * current Region are described. Alternatively, you can filter the results.
```

```
 * @param {{ pageSize: string, supportedArch: string[], freeTier: boolean }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ pageSize, supportedArch, freeTier }) => {
  pageSize = Number.parseInt(pageSize);
  const client = new EC2Client({});

  // The paginate function is a wrapper around the underlying command.
  const paginator = paginateDescribeInstanceTypes(
    // Without limiting the page size, this call can take a long time. pageSize is
 just sugar for
    // the MaxResults property in the underlying command.
    { client, pageSize },
    {
      Filters: [
        {
          Name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
          Values: supportedArch,
        },
        { Name: "free-tier-eligible", Values: [freeTier ? "true" : "false"] },
      ],
    },
  );

  try {
    /**
     * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').InstanceTypeInfo[]}
     */
    const instanceTypes = [];

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      if (page.InstanceTypes.length) {
        instanceTypes.push(...page.InstanceTypes);

        // When we have at least 1 result, we can stop.
        if (instanceTypes.length >= 1) {
          break;
        }
      }
    }
    console.log(
      `Memory size in MiB for matching instance types:\n\n${instanceTypes.map((it)
 => `${it.InstanceType}: ${it.MemoryInfo.SizeInMiB} MiB`).join("\n")}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
```

```
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
      return [];
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, paginateDescribeInstances } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * List all of your EC2 instances running with the provided architecture that
 * were launched in the past month.
 * @param {{ pageSize: string, architectures: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ pageSize, architectures }) => {
  pageSize = Number.parseInt(pageSize);
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const d = new Date();
  const year = d.getFullYear();
  const month = `0${d.getMonth() + 1}`.slice(-2);
  const launchTimePattern = `${year}-${month}-*`;

  const paginator = paginateDescribeInstances(
    {
      client,
      pageSize,
```

```
    },
    {
      Filters: [
        { Name: "architecture", Values: architectures },
        { Name: "instance-state-name", Values: ["running"] },
        {
          Name: "launch-time",
          Values: [launchTimePattern],
        },
      ],
    },
  );

  try {
    /**
     * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').Instance[]}
     */
    const instanceList = [];
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      const { Reservations } = page;
      for (const reservation of Reservations) {
        instanceList.push(...reservation.Instances);
      }
    }
    console.log(
      `Running instances launched this month:\n\n${instanceList.map((instance) =>
 instance.InstanceId).join("\n")}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeKeyPairsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * List all key pairs in the current AWS account.
 * @param {{ dryRun: boolean }}
 */
export const main = async ({ dryRun }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeKeyPairsCommand({ DryRun: dryRun });

  try {
    const { KeyPairs } = await client.send(command);
    const keyPairList = KeyPairs.map(
      (kp) => ` • ${kp.KeyPairId}: ${kp.KeyName}`,
    ).join("\n");
    console.log("The following key pairs were found in your account:");
    console.log(keyPairList);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "DryRunOperation") {
      console.log(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeRegions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRegions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeRegionsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * List all available AWS regions.
 * @param {{ regionNames: string[], includeOptInRegions: boolean }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ regionNames, includeOptInRegions }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeRegionsCommand({
    // By default this command will not show regions that require you to opt-in.
    // When AllRegions is true, even the regions that require opt-in will be
 returned.
    AllRegions: includeOptInRegions,
    // You can omit the Filters property if you want to get all regions.
    Filters: regionNames?.length
      ? [
          {
            Name: "region-name",
            // You can specify multiple values for a filter.
            // You can also use '*' as a wildcard. This will return all
            // of the regions that start with `us-east-`.
            Values: regionNames,
          },
        ]
      : undefined,
  });

  try {
    const { Regions } = await client.send(command);
    const regionsList = Regions.map((reg) => ` • ${reg.RegionName}`);
    console.log("Found regions:");
    console.log(regionsList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "DryRunOperation") {
```

```
      console.log(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Describes the specified security groups or all of your security groups.
 * @param {{ groupIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ groupIds = [] }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
    GroupIds: groupIds,
  });

  try {
    const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(command);
    const sgList = SecurityGroups.map(
      (sg) => `• ${sg.GroupName} (${sg.GroupId}): ${sg.Description}`,
    ).join("\n");
    if (sgList.length) {
      console.log(`Security groups:\n${sgList}`);
```

```
    } else {
      console.log("No security groups found.");
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidGroupId.Malformed") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid GroupId.`);
    } else if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidGroup.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(caught.message);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeSubnets`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubnets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeVpcs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVpcs`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new EC2Client({});
const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
  new DescribeVpcsCommand({
    Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DisassociateAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
```

```
/**
 * Disassociate an Elastic IP address from an instance.
 * @param {{ associationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ associationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new DisassociateAddressCommand({
    // You can also use PublicIp, but that is for EC2 classic which is being
 retired.
    AssociationId: associationId,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully disassociated address");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`MonitorInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `MonitorInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, MonitorInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Turn on detailed monitoring for the selected instance.
 * By default, metrics are sent to Amazon CloudWatch every 5 minutes.
 * For a cost you can enable detailed monitoring which sends metrics every minute.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new MonitorInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { InstanceMonitorings } = await client.send(command);
    const instancesBeingMonitored = InstanceMonitorings.map(
      (im) =>
        ` • Detailed monitoring state for ${im.InstanceId} is
 ${im.Monitoring.State}.`,
    );
    console.log("Monitoring status:");
    console.log(instancesBeingMonitored.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "InvalidParameterValue") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, RebootInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Requests a reboot of the specified instances. This operation is asynchronous;
 * it only queues a request to reboot the specified instances.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new RebootInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Instance rebooted successfully.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. Please provide the InstanceId of a valid instance to
 reboot.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ReleaseAddressCommand, EC2Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Release an Elastic IP address.
 * @param {{ allocationId: string }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ allocationId }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new ReleaseAddressCommand({
    // You can also use PublicIp, but that is for EC2 classic which is being
 retired.
    AllocationId: allocationId,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully released address.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidAllocationID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Please provide a valid AllocationID.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      ec2Client.send(
        new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
          AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
        }),
      ),
    );
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, RunInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

/**
 * Create new EC2 instances.
 * @param {{
 *  keyName: string,
 *  securityGroupIds: string[],
 *  imageId: string,
 *  instanceType: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2')._InstanceType,
 *  minCount?: number,
 *  maxCount?: number }} options
 */
export const main = async ({
  keyName,
  securityGroupIds,
  imageId,
  instanceType,
  minCount = "1",
  maxCount = "1",
}) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  minCount = Number.parseInt(minCount);
  maxCount = Number.parseInt(maxCount);
  const command = new RunInstancesCommand({
    // Your key pair name.
    KeyName: keyName,
    // Your security group.
    SecurityGroupIds: securityGroupIds,
    // An Amazon Machine Image (AMI). There are multiple ways to search for AMIs.
 For more information, see:
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/finding-an-ami.html
    ImageId: imageId,
    // An instance type describing the resources provided to your instance. There
 are multiple
    // ways to search for instance types. For more information see:
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/instance-discovery.html
    InstanceType: instanceType,
    // Availability Zones have capacity limitations that may impact your ability to
 launch instances.
    // The `RunInstances` operation will only succeed if it can allocate at least
 the `MinCount` of instances.
    // However, EC2 will attempt to launch up to the `MaxCount` of instances, even
 if the full request cannot be satisfied.
```

```
    // If you need a specific number of instances, use `MinCount` and `MaxCount` set
 to the same value.
    // If you want to launch up to a certain number of instances, use `MaxCount` and
 let EC2 provision as many as possible.
    // If you require a minimum number of instances, but do not want to exceed a
 maximum, use both `MinCount` and `MaxCount`.
    MinCount: minCount,
    MaxCount: maxCount,
  });

  try {
    const { Instances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceList = Instances.map(
      (instance) => `• ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    ).join("\n");
    console.log(`Launched instances:\n${instanceList}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceCountExceeded") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, StartInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
```

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Starts an Amazon EBS-backed instance that you've previously stopped.
 * @param {{ instanceIds }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new StartInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { StartingInstances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceIdList = StartingInstances.map(
      (instance) => ` • ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    );
    console.log("Starting instances:");
    console.log(instanceIdList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

StopInstances

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, StopInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Stop one or more EC2 instances.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new StopInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { StoppingInstances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceIdList = StoppingInstances.map(
      (instance) => ` • ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    );
    console.log("Stopping instances:");
    console.log(instanceIdList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, TerminateInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Terminate one or more EC2 instances.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new TerminateInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { TerminatingInstances } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceList = TerminatingInstances.map(
      (instance) => ` • ${instance.InstanceId}`,
    );
    console.log("Terminating instances:");
    console.log(instanceList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UnmonitorInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `UnmonitorInstances`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { EC2Client, UnmonitorInstancesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Turn off detailed monitoring for the selected instance.
 * @param {{ instanceIds: string[] }} options
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceIds }) => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const command = new UnmonitorInstancesCommand({
    InstanceIds: instanceIds,
  });

  try {
    const { InstanceMonitorings } = await client.send(command);
    const instanceMonitoringsList = InstanceMonitorings.map(
      (im) =>
        ` • Detailed monitoring state for ${im.InstanceId} is
 ${im.Monitoring.State}.`,
    );
```

```
    console.log("Monitoring status:");
    console.log(instanceMonitoringsList.join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound"
    ) {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
```

```
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
```

```
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
```

```
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item'][] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );

    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
          })),
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatedTable",
    MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
      new CreateKeyPairCommand({
        KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
      }),
    );

    writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
```

```
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingInstancePolicy",
      MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const {
        Policy: { Arn },
      } = await client.send(
        new CreatePolicyCommand({
          PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
          PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
          ),
        }),
      );
      state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
    ),
    new ScenarioOutput(
      "creatingInstanceRole",
      MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      ),
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      return client.send(
        new CreateRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
            join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
          ),
        }),
      );
```

```
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
```

```
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  ...initParamsSteps,
  new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
  new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
```

```
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
```

```
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
```

```
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
      new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
        Protocol: "HTTP",
        Port: 80,
        HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
        HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
        HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
        HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
      }),
    );
    const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
    state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
    state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
    state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
```

```
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancer",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
      new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
```

```
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').SecurityGroup}}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
```

```
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
```

```
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
```

```
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
```

```
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
```

```
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
```

```
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
```

```
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
      "${TABLE_NAME}",
      state.badTableName,
    ),
  ),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "staticResponseConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
    if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
          Value: "static",
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling').Instance }}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
        new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
          Filters: [
```

```
            { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
        IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        ec2Client.send(
          new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
            AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
          }),
        ),
      );

      await ec2Client.send(
        new RebootInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
        }),
      );

      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
        const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
          new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
        );

        const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
          (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
        );

        if (!instance) {
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').InstanceInformation}}
 state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
```

```
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
```

```
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
```

```
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );
```

```
  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
```

```
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "abort",
    (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
    try {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
    } catch (e) {
      c.deleteTableError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteTableError) {
      console.error(state.deleteTableError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.tableName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
      );
      unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
    }
```

```
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
      console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
      "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
      NAMES.keyPairName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
```

```
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
```

```
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
```

```
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
```

```
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
```

```
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
```

```
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
```

```
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
```

```
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
```

```
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener

- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Elastic Load Balancing

The following code examples show how to get started using Elastic Load Balancing.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  DescribeLoadBalancersCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

export async function main() {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
    new DescribeLoadBalancersCommand({}),
  );
  const loadBalancersList = LoadBalancers.map(
    (lb) => `• ${lb.LoadBalancerName}: ${lb.DNSName}`,
  ).join("\n");
  console.log(
    "Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load balancers:\n",
    loadBalancersList,
  );
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateListener`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateListener`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { Listeners } = await client.send(
  new CreateListenerCommand({
    LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
    Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
    Port: state.targetGroupPort,
    DefaultActions: [
      { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
    ],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
  new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
    Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    Subnets: state.subnets,
  }),
);
state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
  { client },
  { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
);
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTargetGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
  new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
    Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    Protocol: "HTTP",
    Port: 80,
    HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
    HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
    HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
    HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
    UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
    VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
  await client.send(
    new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
      LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
    }),
  );
  await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
    const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (lb) {
      throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
```

```
    }
  });
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTargetGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
try {
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
    client.send(
      new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
        TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
      }),
    ),
  );
} catch (e) {
  state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeLoadBalancers`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  DescribeLoadBalancersCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

export async function main() {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
    new DescribeLoadBalancersCommand({}),
  );
  const loadBalancersList = LoadBalancers.map(
    (lb) => `• ${lb.LoadBalancerName}: ${lb.DNSName}`,
  ).join("\n");
  console.log(
    "Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load balancers:\n",
    loadBalancersList,
  );
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeTargetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTargetGroups`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
  new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
    Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeTargetHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTargetHealth`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
  new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
    TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
```

```
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
```

```
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
```

```
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
```

```
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item'][] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );

    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
```

```
        })),
      },
    },
  );
},
new ScenarioOutput(
  "populatedTable",
  MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
),
new ScenarioOutput(
  "creatingKeyPair",
  MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
),
new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
  const client = new EC2Client({});
  const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
    new CreateKeyPairCommand({
      KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
    }),
  );

  writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
},
new ScenarioOutput(
  "createdKeyPair",
  MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
),
new ScenarioOutput(
  "creatingInstancePolicy",
  MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
    "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
    NAMES.instancePolicyName,
  ),
),
new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const {
    Policy: { Arn },
  } = await client.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
      ),
```

```
      }),
    );
    state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
```

```
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  ...initParamsSteps,
  new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
  new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
```

```
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
```

```
      ),
  ),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
```

```
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
      new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
        Protocol: "HTTP",
        Port: 80,
        HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
        HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
        HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
        HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
      }),
    );
    const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
    state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
    state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
    state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancer",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
      new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
```

```
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').SecurityGroup}}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
```

```
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
```

```
      }

      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
```

```
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
```

```
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
```

```
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
```

```
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
```

```
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
      "${TABLE_NAME}",
      state.badTableName,
    ),
  ),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "staticResponseConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
    if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
          Value: "static",
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "badCredentialsConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
```

```
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling').Instance }}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
        new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
          Filters: [
            { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
        IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        ec2Client.send(
          new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
            AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
          }),
        ),
      );

      await ec2Client.send(
        new RebootInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
```

```
        }),
      );

      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
        const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
          new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
        );

        const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
          (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
        );

        if (!instance) {
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').InstanceInformation}}
state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
```

```
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
```

```
    async (state) => {
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
```

```
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
```

```
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );

  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
```

```
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "abort",
    (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
    try {
```

```
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
    } catch (e) {
      c.deleteTableError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteTableError) {
      console.error(state.deleteTableError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.tableName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
      );
      unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
      console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
      "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
      NAMES.keyPairName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);
```

```
    if (!policy) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      await client.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  } catch (e) {
    state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
  }
}),
new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
  if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
    console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
    return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }
  return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
    .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
    .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
}),
new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

  if (!policy) {
    state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
      `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
    );
  } else {
    return client.send(
      new DeletePolicyCommand({
        PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
      }),
    );
  }
}),
```

```
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
```

```
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
```

```
    try {
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
```

```
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );
```

```
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
```

```
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
```

```
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
```

```
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
```

```
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
 state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
```

```
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
```

```
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets

- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

AWS Entity Resolution examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with AWS Entity Resolution.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Entity Resolution

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Entity Resolution.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  EntityResolutionClient,
  ListMatchingWorkflowsCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";

export const main = async () => {
  const region = "eu-west-1";
  const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new ListMatchingWorkflowsCommand({});
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    const workflowSummaries = response.workflowSummaries;
    for (const workflowSummary of workflowSummaries) {
      console.log(`Attribute name: ${workflowSummaries[0].workflowName} `);
    }
    if (workflowSummaries.length === 0) {
      console.log("No matching workflows found.");
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `An error occurred in listing the workflow summaries: ${error.message} \n
 Exiting program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListMatchingWorkflows in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateMatchingWorkflow`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMatchingWorkflow`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const createMatchingWorkflowParams = {
    roleArn: `${data.inputs.roleArn}`,
    workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
    description: "Created by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3).",
    inputSourceConfig: [
      {
        inputSourceARN: `${data.inputs.JSONinputSourceARN}`,
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
        applyNormalization: false,
      },
      {
        inputSourceARN: `${data.inputs.CSVinputSourceARN}`,
        schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
        applyNormalization: false,
      },
    ],
    outputSourceConfig: [
      {
        outputS3Path: `s3://${data.inputs.myBucketName}/eroutput`,
```

```
        output: [
          {
            name: "id",
          },
          {
            name: "name",
          },
          {
            name: "email",
          },
          {
            name: "phone",
          },
        ],
        applyNormalization: false,
      },
    ],
    resolutionTechniques: { resolutionType: "ML_MATCHING" },
  };
  try {
    const command = new CreateMatchingWorkflowCommand(
      createMatchingWorkflowParams,
    );
    const response = await erClient.send(command);

    console.log(
      `Workflow created successfully.\n The workflow ARN is:
 ${response.workflowArn}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateSchemaMapping`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchemaMapping`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  CreateSchemaMappingCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const createSchemaMappingParamsJson = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
    mappedInputFields: [
      {
        fieldName: "id",
        type: "UNIQUE_ID",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "name",
        type: "NAME",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "email",
        type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
      },
    ],
  };
  const createSchemaMappingParamsCSV = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameCSV}`,
```

```
    mappedInputFields: [
      {
        fieldName: "id",
        type: "UNIQUE_ID",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "name",
        type: "NAME",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "email",
        type: "EMAIL_ADDRESS",
      },
      {
        fieldName: "phone",
        type: "PROVIDER_ID",
        subType: "STRING",
      },
    ],
  };
  try {
    const command = new CreateSchemaMappingCommand(
      createSchemaMappingParamsJson,
    );
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("The JSON schema mapping name is ", response.schemaName);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error.message);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteMatchingWorkflow`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMatchingWorkflow`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    const deleteWorkflowParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
    };
    const command = new DeleteMatchingWorkflowCommand(deleteWorkflowParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("Workflow deleted successfully!", response);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteSchemaMapping`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSchemaMapping`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  DeleteSchemaMappingCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteSchemaMapping = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
  };
  try {
    const command = new DeleteSchemaMappingCommand(deleteSchemaMapping);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("Schema mapping deleted successfully. ", response);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

GetMatchingJob

The following code example shows how to use GetMatchingJob.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  GetMatchingJobCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  async function getInfo() {
    const getJobInfoParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
      jobId: `${data.inputs.jobId}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetMatchingJobCommand(getJobInfoParams);
      const response = await erClient.send(command);
      console.log(`Job status: ${response.status}`);
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("error ", error.message);
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetSchemaMapping`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSchemaMapping`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  GetSchemaMappingCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const getSchemaMappingJsonParams = {
    schemaName: `${data.inputs.schemaNameJson}`,
  };
  try {
    const command = new GetSchemaMappingCommand(getSchemaMappingJsonParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log(response);
    console.log(
      `Schema mapping for the JSON data:\n ${response.mappedInputFields[0]}`,
    );
```

```
    console.log("Schema mapping ARN is: ", response.schemaArn);
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListSchemaMappings`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSchemaMappings`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  ListSchemaMappingsCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  async function getInfo() {
    const listSchemaMappingsParams = {
      workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
```

```
      jobId: `${data.inputs.jobId}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new ListSchemaMappingsCommand(listSchemaMappingsParams);
      const response = await erClient.send(command);
      const noOfSchemas = response.schemaList.length;
      for (let i = 0; i < noOfSchemas; i++) {
        console.log(
          `Schema Mapping Name: ${response.schemaList[i].schemaName} `,
        );
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  }
```

- For API details, see ListSchemaMappings in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartMatchingJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartMatchingJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  StartMatchingJobCommand,
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
```

```
const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const matchingJobOfWorkflowParams = {
    workflowName: `${data.inputs.workflowName}`,
  };
  try {
    const command = new StartMatchingJobCommand(matchingJobOfWorkflowParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log(`Job ID: ${response.jobID} \n
The matching job was successfully started.`);
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see StartMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
//The default inputs for this demo are read from the ../inputs.json.

import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

import {
  TagResourceCommand,
```

```
  EntityResolutionClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-entityresolution";
import data from "../inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const erClient = new EntityResolutionClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const tagResourceCommandParams = {
    resourceArn: `${data.inputs.schemaArn}`,
    tags: {
      tag1: "tag1Value",
      tag2: "tag2Value",
    },
  };
  try {
    const command = new TagResourceCommand(tagResourceCommandParams);
    const response = await erClient.send(command);
    console.log("Successfully tagged the resource.");
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(caught.message);
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

EventBridge examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with EventBridge.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import {
  EventBridgeClient,
  PutEventsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-eventbridge";

export const putEvents = async (
  source = "eventbridge.integration.test",
  detailType = "greeting",
  resources = [],
) => {
  const client = new EventBridgeClient({});

  const response = await client.send(
    new PutEventsCommand({
      Entries: [
        {
          Detail: JSON.stringify({ greeting: "Hello there." }),
          DetailType: detailType,
          Resources: resources,
          Source: source,
```

```
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  console.log("PutEvents response:");
  console.log(response);
  // PutEvents response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '3d0df73d-dcea-4a23-ae0d-f5556a3ac109',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Entries: [ { EventId: '51620841-5af4-6402-d9bc-b77734991eb5' } ],
  //   FailedEntryCount: 0
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { EventBridgeClient, PutRuleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-eventbridge";
```

```
export const putRule = async (
  ruleName = "some-rule",
  source = "some-source",
) => {
  const client = new EventBridgeClient({});

  const response = await client.send(
    new PutRuleCommand({
      Name: ruleName,
      EventPattern: JSON.stringify({ source: [source] }),
      State: "ENABLED",
      EventBusName: "default",
    }),
  );

  console.log("PutRule response:");
  console.log(response);
  // PutRule response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'd7292ced-1544-421b-842f-596326bc7072',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   RuleArn: 'arn:aws:events:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:rule/
EventBridgeTestRule-1696280037720'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import {
  EventBridgeClient,
  PutTargetsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-eventbridge";

export const putTarget = async (
  existingRuleName = "some-rule",
  targetArn = "arn:aws:lambda:us-east-1:000000000000:function:test-func",
  uniqueId = Date.now().toString(),
) => {
  const client = new EventBridgeClient({});
  const response = await client.send(
    new PutTargetsCommand({
      Rule: existingRuleName,
      Targets: [
        {
          Arn: targetArn,
          Id: uniqueId,
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  console.log("PutTargets response:");
  console.log(response);
  // PutTargets response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'f5b23b9a-2c17-45c1-ad5c-f926c3692e3d',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
```

```
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   FailedEntries: [],
  //   FailedEntryCount: 0
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

AWS Glue examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListJobsCommand, GlueClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-glue";

const client = new GlueClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const command = new ListJobsCommand({});

  const { JobNames } = await client.send(command);
  const formattedJobNames = JobNames.join("\n");
  console.log("Job names: ");
  console.log(formattedJobNames);
  return JobNames;
};
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and run a crawler that crawls a public Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket and generates a metadata database that describes the CSV-formatted data it finds.

```
const createCrawler = (name, role, dbName, tablePrefix, s3TargetPath) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
```

```
    DatabaseName: dbName,
    TablePrefix: tablePrefix,
    Targets: {
      S3Targets: [{ Path: s3TargetPath }],
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const getCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const startCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const crawlerExists = async ({ getCrawler }, crawlerName) => {
  try {
    await getCrawler(crawlerName);
    return true;
  } catch {
    return false;
  }
};

/**
 * @param {{ createCrawler: import('../../../actions/create-
crawler.js').createCrawler}} actions
 */
const makeCreateCrawlerStep = (actions) => async (context) => {
```

```
  if (await crawlerExists(actions, process.env.CRAWLER_NAME)) {
    log("Crawler already exists. Skipping creation.");
  } else {
    await actions.createCrawler(
      process.env.CRAWLER_NAME,
      process.env.ROLE_NAME,
      process.env.DATABASE_NAME,
      process.env.TABLE_PREFIX,
      process.env.S3_TARGET_PATH,
    );

    log("Crawler created successfully.", { type: "success" });
  }

  return { ...context };
};

/**
 * @param {(name: string) => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetCrawlerCommandOutput>} getCrawler
 * @param {string} crawlerName
 */
const waitForCrawler = async (getCrawler, crawlerName) => {
  const waitTimeInSeconds = 30;
  const { Crawler } = await getCrawler(crawlerName);

  if (!Crawler) {
    throw new Error(`Crawler with name ${crawlerName} not found.`);
  }

  if (Crawler.State === "READY") {
    return;
  }

  log(`Crawler is ${Crawler.State}. Waiting ${waitTimeInSeconds} seconds...`);
  await wait(waitTimeInSeconds);
  return waitForCrawler(getCrawler, crawlerName);
};

const makeStartCrawlerStep =
  ({ startCrawler, getCrawler }) =>
  async (context) => {
    log("Starting crawler.");
    await startCrawler(process.env.CRAWLER_NAME);
```

```
    log("Crawler started.", { type: "success" });

    log("Waiting for crawler to finish running. This can take a while.");
    await waitForCrawler(getCrawler, process.env.CRAWLER_NAME);
    log("Crawler ready.", { type: "success" });

    return { ...context };
  };
```

List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.

```
const getDatabase = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetDatabaseCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const getTables = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetTablesCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const makeGetDatabaseStep =
  ({ getDatabase }) =>
  async (context) => {
    const {
      Database: { Name },
    } = await getDatabase(process.env.DATABASE_NAME);
    log(`Database: ${Name}`);
    return { ...context };
  };

/**
```

```
 * @param {{ getTables: () => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetTablesCommandOutput}} config
 */
const makeGetTablesStep =
  ({ getTables }) =>
  async (context) => {
    const { TableList } = await getTables(process.env.DATABASE_NAME);
    log("Tables:");
    log(TableList.map((table) => `  • ${table.Name}\n`));
    return { ...context };
  };
```

Create and run a job that extracts CSV data from the source Amazon S3 bucket, transforms it by removing and renaming fields, and loads JSON-formatted output into another Amazon S3 bucket.

```
const createJob = (name, role, scriptBucketName, scriptKey) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateJobCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    Command: {
      Name: "glueetl",
      PythonVersion: "3",
      ScriptLocation: `s3://${scriptBucketName}/${scriptKey}`,
    },
    GlueVersion: "3.0",
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const startJobRun = (jobName, dbName, tableName, bucketName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    Arguments: {
      "--input_database": dbName,
      "--input_table": tableName,
      "--output_bucket_url": `s3://${bucketName}/`,
```

```
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const makeCreateJobStep =
  ({ createJob }) =>
  async (context) => {
    log("Creating Job.");
    await createJob(
      process.env.JOB_NAME,
      process.env.ROLE_NAME,
      process.env.BUCKET_NAME,
      process.env.PYTHON_SCRIPT_KEY,
    );
    log("Job created.", { type: "success" });

    return { ...context };
  };

/**
 * @param {(name: string, runId: string) => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-
glue').GetJobRunCommandOutput> }  getJobRun
 * @param {string} jobName
 * @param {string} jobRunId
 */
const waitForJobRun = async (getJobRun, jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const waitTimeInSeconds = 30;
  const { JobRun } = await getJobRun(jobName, jobRunId);

  if (!JobRun) {
    throw new Error(`Job run with id ${jobRunId} not found.`);
  }

  switch (JobRun.JobRunState) {
    case "FAILED":
    case "TIMEOUT":
    case "STOPPED":
    case "ERROR":
      throw new Error(
        `Job ${JobRun.JobRunState}. Error: ${JobRun.ErrorMessage}`,
      );
    case "SUCCEEDED":
```

```
      return;
    default:
      break;
  }

  log(
    `Job ${JobRun.JobRunState}. Waiting ${waitTimeInSeconds} more seconds...`,
  );
  await wait(waitTimeInSeconds);
  return waitForJobRun(getJobRun, jobName, jobRunId);
};

/**
 * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<{ shouldOpen: boolean }>} }} context
 */
const promptToOpen = async (context) => {
  const { shouldOpen } = await context.prompter.prompt({
    name: "shouldOpen",
    type: "confirm",
    message: "Open the output bucket in your browser?",
  });

  if (shouldOpen) {
    return open(
      `https://s3.console.aws.amazon.com/s3/buckets/${process.env.BUCKET_NAME} to
 view the output.`,
    );
  }
};

const makeStartJobRunStep =
  ({ startJobRun, getJobRun }) =>
  async (context) => {
    log("Starting job.");
    const { JobRunId } = await startJobRun(
      process.env.JOB_NAME,
      process.env.DATABASE_NAME,
      process.env.TABLE_NAME,
      process.env.BUCKET_NAME,
    );
    log("Job started.", { type: "success" });

    log("Waiting for job to finish running. This can take a while.");
    await waitForJobRun(getJobRun, process.env.JOB_NAME, JobRunId);
```

```
    log("Job run succeeded.", { type: "success" });

    await promptToOpen(context);

    return { ...context };
  };
```

List information about job runs and view some of the transformed data.

```
const getJobRuns = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunsCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const getJobRun = (jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    RunId: jobRunId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

/**
 * @typedef {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<{jobName: string}> } }} Context
 */

/**
 * @typedef {() => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-glue').GetJobRunCommandOutput>}
 getJobRun
 */

/**
 * @typedef {() => Promise<import('@aws-sdk/client-glue').GetJobRunsCommandOutput}
 getJobRuns
 */
```

```
/**
 *
 * @param {getJobRun} getJobRun
 * @param {string} jobName
 * @param {string} jobRunId
 */
const logJobRunDetails = async (getJobRun, jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const { JobRun } = await getJobRun(jobName, jobRunId);
  log(JobRun, { type: "object" });
};

/**
 *
 * @param {{getJobRuns: getJobRuns, getJobRun: getJobRun }} funcs
 */
const makePickJobRunStep =
  ({ getJobRuns, getJobRun }) =>
  async (/** @type { Context } */ context) => {
    if (context.selectedJobName) {
      const { JobRuns } = await getJobRuns(context.selectedJobName);

      const { jobRunId } = await context.prompter.prompt({
        name: "jobRunId",
        type: "list",
        message: "Select a job run to see details.",
        choices: JobRuns.map((run) => run.Id),
      });

      logJobRunDetails(getJobRun, context.selectedJobName, jobRunId);
    }

    return { ...context };
  };
```

Delete all resources created by the demo.

```
const deleteJob = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteJobCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });
```

```
  return client.send(command);
};

const deleteTable = (databaseName, tableName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteTableCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
    Name: tableName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const deleteDatabase = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteDatabaseCommand({
    Name: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const deleteCrawler = (crawlerName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteCrawlerCommand({
    Name: crawlerName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

/**
 *
 * @param {import('../../../actions/delete-job.js').deleteJob} deleteJobFn
 * @param {string[]} jobNames
 * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<any> }}} context
 */
const handleDeleteJobs = async (deleteJobFn, jobNames, context) => {
  /**
   * @type {{ selectedJobNames: string[] }}
```

```
   */
  const { selectedJobNames } = await context.prompter.prompt({
    name: "selectedJobNames",
    type: "checkbox",
    message: "Let's clean up jobs. Select jobs to delete.",
    choices: jobNames,
  });

  if (selectedJobNames.length === 0) {
    log("No jobs selected.");
  } else {
    log("Deleting jobs.");
    await Promise.all(
      selectedJobNames.map((n) => deleteJobFn(n).catch(console.error)),
    );
    log("Jobs deleted.", { type: "success" });
  }
};

/**
 * @param {{
 *   listJobs: import('../../../actions/list-jobs.js').listJobs,
 *   deleteJob: import('../../../actions/delete-job.js').deleteJob
 * }} config
 */
const makeCleanUpJobsStep =
  ({ listJobs, deleteJob }) =>
  async (context) => {
    const { JobNames } = await listJobs();
    if (JobNames.length > 0) {
      await handleDeleteJobs(deleteJob, JobNames, context);
    }

    return { ...context };
  };

/**
 * @param {import('../../../actions/delete-table.js').deleteTable} deleteTable
 * @param {string} databaseName
 * @param {string[]} tableNames
 */
const deleteTables = (deleteTable, databaseName, tableNames) =>
  Promise.all(
    tableNames.map((tableName) =>
```

```
      deleteTable(databaseName, tableName).catch(console.error),
    ),
  );

/**
 * @param {{
 *  getTables: import('../../../actions/get-tables.js').getTables,
 *  deleteTable: import('../../../actions/delete-table.js').deleteTable
 * }} config
 */
const makeCleanUpTablesStep =
  ({ getTables, deleteTable }) =>
  /**
   * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<any>}}} context
   */
  async (context) => {
    const { TableList } = await getTables(process.env.DATABASE_NAME).catch(
      () => ({ TableList: null }),
    );

    if (TableList && TableList.length > 0) {
      /**
       * @type {{ tableNames: string[] }}
       */
      const { tableNames } = await context.prompter.prompt({
        name: "tableNames",
        type: "checkbox",
        message: "Let's clean up tables. Select tables to delete.",
        choices: TableList.map((t) => t.Name),
      });

      if (tableNames.length === 0) {
        log("No tables selected.");
      } else {
        log("Deleting tables.");
        await deleteTables(deleteTable, process.env.DATABASE_NAME, tableNames);
        log("Tables deleted.", { type: "success" });
      }
    }

    return { ...context };
  };

/**
```

```
 * @param {import('../../../actions/delete-database.js').deleteDatabase}
 deleteDatabase
 * @param {string[]} databaseNames
 */
const deleteDatabases = (deleteDatabase, databaseNames) =>
  Promise.all(
    databaseNames.map((dbName) => deleteDatabase(dbName).catch(console.error)),
  );

/**
 * @param {{
 *   getDatabases: import('../../../actions/get-databases.js').getDatabases
 *   deleteDatabase: import('../../../actions/delete-database.js').deleteDatabase
 * }} config
 */
const makeCleanUpDatabasesStep =
  ({ getDatabases, deleteDatabase }) =>
  /**
   * @param {{ prompter: { prompt: () => Promise<any>}} context
   */
  async (context) => {
    const { DatabaseList } = await getDatabases();

    if (DatabaseList.length > 0) {
      /** @type {{ dbNames: string[] }} */
      const { dbNames } = await context.prompter.prompt({
        name: "dbNames",
        type: "checkbox",
        message: "Let's clean up databases. Select databases to delete.",
        choices: DatabaseList.map((db) => db.Name),
      });

      if (dbNames.length === 0) {
        log("No databases selected.");
      } else {
        log("Deleting databases.");
        await deleteDatabases(deleteDatabase, dbNames);
        log("Databases deleted.", { type: "success" });
      }
    }

    return { ...context };
  };
```

```
const cleanUpCrawlerStep = async (context) => {
  log("Deleting crawler.");

  try {
    await deleteCrawler(process.env.CRAWLER_NAME);
    log("Crawler deleted.", { type: "success" });
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.name === "EntityNotFoundException") {
      log("Crawler is already deleted.");
    } else {
      throw err;
    }
  }

  return { ...context };
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const createCrawler = (name, role, dbName, tablePrefix, s3TargetPath) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    DatabaseName: dbName,
    TablePrefix: tablePrefix,
    Targets: {
      S3Targets: [{ Path: s3TargetPath }],
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const createJob = (name, role, scriptBucketName, scriptKey) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new CreateJobCommand({
    Name: name,
    Role: role,
    Command: {
      Name: "glueetl",
      PythonVersion: "3",
      ScriptLocation: `s3://${scriptBucketName}/${scriptKey}`,
    },
    GlueVersion: "3.0",
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteCrawler = (crawlerName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteCrawlerCommand({
    Name: crawlerName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteDatabase = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteDatabaseCommand({
    Name: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteJob = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new DeleteJobCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const deleteTable = (databaseName, tableName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
```

```
  const command = new DeleteTableCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
    Name: tableName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getDatabase = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetDatabaseCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetDatabases`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabases`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getDatabases = () => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetDatabasesCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetDatabases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getJob = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetJobCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getJobRun = (jobName, jobRunId) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    RunId: jobRunId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getJobRuns = (jobName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});
  const command = new GetJobRunsCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getTables = (databaseName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new GetTablesCommand({
    DatabaseName: databaseName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const listJobs = () => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new ListJobsCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const startCrawler = (name) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartCrawlerCommand({
    Name: name,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const startJobRun = (jobName, dbName, tableName, bucketName) => {
  const client = new GlueClient({});

  const command = new StartJobRunCommand({
    JobName: jobName,
    Arguments: {
      "--input_database": dbName,
      "--input_table": tableName,
      "--output_bucket_url": `s3://${bucketName}/`,
    },
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

HealthImaging examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with HealthImaging.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello HealthImaging

The following code examples show how to get started using HealthImaging.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import {
  ListDatastoresCommand,
```

```
  MedicalImagingClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

// When no region or credentials are provided, the SDK will use the
// region and credentials from the local AWS config.
const client = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const helloMedicalImaging = async () => {
  const command = new ListDatastoresCommand({});

  const { datastoreSummaries } = await client.send(command);
  console.log("Datastores: ");
  console.log(datastoreSummaries.map((item) => item.datastoreName).join("\n"));
  return datastoreSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CopyImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyImageSet`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Utility function to copy an image set.

```
import { CopyImageSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
```

```
/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The source image set ID.
 * @param {string} sourceVersionId - The source version ID.
 * @param {string} destinationImageSetId - The optional ID of the destination image
 set.
 * @param {string} destinationVersionId - The optional version ID of the destination
 image set.
 * @param {boolean} force - Force the copy action.
 * @param {[string]} copySubsets - A subset of instance IDs to copy.
 */
export const copyImageSet = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxx",
  sourceVersionId = "1",
  destinationImageSetId = "",
  destinationVersionId = "",
  force = false,
  copySubsets = [],
) => {
  try {
    const params = {
      datastoreId: datastoreId,
      sourceImageSetId: imageSetId,
      copyImageSetInformation: {
        sourceImageSet: { latestVersionId: sourceVersionId },
      },
      force: force,
    };
    if (destinationImageSetId !== "" && destinationVersionId !== "") {
      params.copyImageSetInformation.destinationImageSet = {
        imageSetId: destinationImageSetId,
        latestVersionId: destinationVersionId,
      };
    }

    if (copySubsets.length > 0) {
      let copySubsetsJson;
      copySubsetsJson = {
        SchemaVersion: 1.1,
        Study: {
          Series: {
            imageSetId: {
```

```
              Instances: {},
            },
          },
        },
      };

      for (let i = 0; i < copySubsets.length; i++) {
        copySubsetsJson.Study.Series.imageSetId.Instances[copySubsets[i]] = {};
      }

      params.copyImageSetInformation.dicomCopies = copySubsetsJson;
    }

    const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
      new CopyImageSetCommand(params),
    );
    console.log(response);
    // {
    //     '$metadata': {
    //         httpStatusCode: 200,
    //         requestId: 'd9b219ce-cc48-4a44-a5b2-c5c3068f1ee8',
    //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
    //         cfId: undefined,
    //         attempts: 1,
    //         totalRetryDelay: 0
    //      },
    //       datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //       destinationImageSetProperties: {
    //             createdAt: 2023-09-27T19:46:21.824Z,
    //             imageSetArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:xxxxxxxxxxx:datastore/xxxxxxxxxxxxx/imageset/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
    //             imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'COPYING',
    //             latestVersionId: '1',
    //             updatedAt: 2023-09-27T19:46:21.824Z
    //       },
    //       sourceImageSetProperties: {
    //             createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
    //             imageSetArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:xxxxxxxxxxx:datastore/xxxxxxxxxxxxx/imageset/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //             imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
    //             imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'COPYING_WITH_READ_ONLY_ACCESS',
```

```
    //             latestVersionId: '4',
    //             updatedAt: 2023-09-27T19:46:21.824Z
    //      }
    // }
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

Copy an image set without a destination.

```
  await copyImageSet(
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
  );
```

Copy an image set with a destination.

```
  await copyImageSet(
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
    false,
  );
```

Copy a subset of an image set with a destination and force the copy.

```
  await copyImageSet(
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
```

```
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
    true,
    ["12345678901234567890123456789012", "11223344556677889900112233445566"],
  );
```

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`CreateDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatastore`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { CreateDatastoreCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreName - The name of the data store to create.
 */
export const createDatastore = async (datastoreName = "DATASTORE_NAME") => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new CreateDatastoreCommand({ datastoreName: datastoreName }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: 'a71cd65f-2382-49bf-b682-f9209d8d399b',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    },
  //    datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
```

```
  //    datastoreStatus: 'CREATING'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatastore`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DeleteDatastoreCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store to delete.
 */
export const deleteDatastore = async (datastoreId = "DATASTORE_ID") => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new DeleteDatastoreCommand({ datastoreId }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //           httpStatusCode: 200,
  //           requestId: 'f5beb409-678d-48c9-9173-9a001ee1ebb1',
  //           extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //           cfId: undefined,
  //           attempts: 1,
  //           totalRetryDelay: 0
  //         },
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     datastoreStatus: 'DELETING'
  // }
```

```
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteImageSet`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { DeleteImageSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The data store ID.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The image set ID.
 */
export const deleteImageSet = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new DeleteImageSetCommand({
      datastoreId: datastoreId,
      imageSetId: imageSetId,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //    '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '6267bbd2-eaa5-4a50-8ee8-8fddf535cf73',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
```

```
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
  //     imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'DELETING'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetDICOMImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetDICOMImportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} jobId - The ID of the import job.
 */
export const getDICOMImportJob = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  jobId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetDICOMImportJobCommand({ datastoreId: datastoreId, jobId: jobId }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
```

```
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: 'a2637936-78ea-44e7-98b8-7a87d95dfaee',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     jobProperties: {
  //         dataAccessRoleArn: 'arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/dicom_import',
  //             datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             endedAt: 2023-09-19T17:29:21.753Z,
  //             inputS3Uri: 's3://healthimaging-source/CTStudy/',
  //             jobId: ''xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx'',
  //             jobName: 'job_1',
  //             jobStatus: 'COMPLETED',
  //             outputS3Uri: 's3://health-imaging-dest/
ouput_ct/'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx'-DicomImport-'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx'/',
  //             submittedAt: 2023-09-19T17:27:25.143Z
  //     }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatastore`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetDatastoreCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
```

```
/**
 * @param {string} datastoreID - The ID of the data store.
 */
export const getDatastore = async (datastoreID = "DATASTORE_ID") => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetDatastoreCommand({ datastoreId: datastoreID }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: '55ea7d2e-222c-4a6a-871e-4f591f40cadb',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    },
  //   datastoreProperties: {
  //        createdAt: 2023-08-04T18:50:36.239Z,
  //         datastoreArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxx:datastore/
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //         datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //         datastoreName: 'my_datastore',
  //         datastoreStatus: 'ACTIVE',
  //         updatedAt: 2023-08-04T18:50:36.239Z
  //   }
  // }
  return response.datastoreProperties;
};
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageFrame`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageFrame`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetImageFrameCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} imageFrameFileName - The name of the file for the HTJ2K-encoded
 image frame.
 * @param {string} datastoreID - The data store's ID.
 * @param {string} imageSetID - The image set's ID.
 * @param {string} imageFrameID - The image frame's ID.
 */
export const getImageFrame = async (
  imageFrameFileName = "image.jph",
  datastoreID = "DATASTORE_ID",
  imageSetID = "IMAGE_SET_ID",
  imageFrameID = "IMAGE_FRAME_ID",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetImageFrameCommand({
      datastoreId: datastoreID,
      imageSetId: imageSetID,
      imageFrameInformation: { imageFrameId: imageFrameID },
    }),
  );
  const buffer = await response.imageFrameBlob.transformToByteArray();
  writeFileSync(imageFrameFileName, buffer);

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: 'e4ab42a5-25a3-4377-873f-374ecf4380e1',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     contentType: 'application/octet-stream',
  //     imageFrameBlob: <ref *1> IncomingMessage {}
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSet`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { GetImageSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The ID of the image set.
 * @param {string} imageSetVersion - The optional version of the image set.
 *
 */
export const getImageSet = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetVersion = "",
) => {
  const params = { datastoreId: datastoreId, imageSetId: imageSetId };
  if (imageSetVersion !== "") {
    params.imageSetVersion = imageSetVersion;
  }
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetImageSetCommand(params),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '0615c161-410d-4d06-9d8c-6e1241bb0a5a',
```

```
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxx:datastore/
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx/imageset/xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     imageSetState: 'ACTIVE',
  //     imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'CREATED',
  //     updatedAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
  //     versionId: '1'
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Utility function to get image set metadata.

```
import { GetImageSetMetadataCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
import { writeFileSync } from "node:fs";

/**
 * @param {string} metadataFileName - The name of the file for the gzipped metadata.
```

```
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imagesetId - The ID of the image set.
 * @param {string} versionID - The optional version ID of the image set.
 */
export const getImageSetMetadata = async (
  metadataFileName = "metadata.json.gzip",
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imagesetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
  versionID = "",
) => {
  const params = { datastoreId: datastoreId, imageSetId: imagesetId };

  if (versionID) {
    params.versionID = versionID;
  }

  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new GetImageSetMetadataCommand(params),
  );
  const buffer = await response.imageSetMetadataBlob.transformToByteArray();
  writeFileSync(metadataFileName, buffer);

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '5219b274-30ff-4986-8cab-48753de3a599',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     contentType: 'application/json',
  //     contentEncoding: 'gzip',
  //     imageSetMetadataBlob: <ref *1> IncomingMessage {}
  // }

  return response;
};
```

Get image set metadata without version.

```
try {
  await getImageSetMetadata(
    "metadata.json.gzip",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
  );
} catch (err) {
  console.log("Error", err);
}
```

Get image set metadata with version.

```
try {
  await getImageSetMetadata(
    "metadata2.json.gzip",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "12345678901234567890123456789012",
    "1",
  );
} catch (err) {
  console.log("Error", err);
}
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDICOMImportJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDICOMImportJobs`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { paginateListDICOMImportJobs } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
```

```
/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 */
export const listDICOMImportJobs = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = { datastoreId: datastoreId };
  const paginator = paginateListDICOMImportJobs(paginatorConfig, commandParams);

  const jobSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    jobSummaries.push(...page.jobSummaries);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '3c20c66e-0797-446a-a1d8-91b742fd15a0',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     jobSummaries: [
  //         {
  //             dataAccessRoleArn: 'arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/dicom_import',
  //             datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             endedAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:51.351Z,
  //             jobId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             jobName: 'test-1',
  //             jobStatus: 'COMPLETED',
  //             submittedAt: 2023-09-22T14:48:45.767Z
  // }
  // ]}

  return jobSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDatastores`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatastores`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { paginateListDatastores } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

export const listDatastores = async () => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = {};
  const paginator = paginateListDatastores(paginatorConfig, commandParams);

  /**
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging").DatastoreSummary[]}
   */
  const datastoreSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    datastoreSummaries.push(...page.datastoreSummaries);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //       httpStatusCode: 200,
  //       requestId: '6aa99231-d9c2-4716-a46e-edb830116fa3',
  //       extendedRequestId: undefined,
```

```
  //       cfId: undefined,
  //       attempts: 1,
  //       totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   datastoreSummaries: [
  //     {
  //       createdAt: 2023-08-04T18:49:54.429Z,
  //       datastoreArn: 'arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxx:datastore/
xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //       datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //       datastoreName: 'my_datastore',
  //       datastoreStatus: 'ACTIVE',
  //       updatedAt: 2023-08-04T18:49:54.429Z
  //     }
  //     ...
  //   ]
  // }

  return datastoreSummaries;
};
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListImageSetVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListImageSetVersions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { paginateListImageSetVersions } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The ID of the image set.
 */
```

```
export const listImageSetVersions = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = { datastoreId, imageSetId };
  const paginator = paginateListImageSetVersions(
    paginatorConfig,
    commandParams,
  );

  const imageSetPropertiesList = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    imageSetPropertiesList.push(...page.imageSetPropertiesList);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '74590b37-a002-4827-83f2-3c590279c742',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     imageSetPropertiesList: [
  //         {
  //             ImageSetWorkflowStatus: 'CREATED',
  //             createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
  //             imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //             imageSetState: 'ACTIVE',
  //             versionId: '1'
  //         }]
  // }
  return imageSetPropertiesList;
};
```

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListTagsForResource`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { ListTagsForResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 */
export const listTagsForResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:abc:datastore/def/imageset/ghi",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new ListTagsForResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '008fc6d3-abec-4870-a155-20fa3631e645',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     tags: { Deployment: 'Development' }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`SearchImageSets`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchImageSets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
import { paginateSearchImageSets } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The data store's ID.
 * @param { import('@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging').SearchFilter[] } filters - The
 search criteria filters.
 * @param { import('@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging').Sort } sort - The search
 criteria sort.
 */
export const searchImageSets = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxx",
  searchCriteria = {},
) => {
  const paginatorConfig = {
    client: medicalImagingClient,
    pageSize: 50,
  };

  const commandParams = {
    datastoreId: datastoreId,
    searchCriteria: searchCriteria,
  };
```

```
  const paginator = paginateSearchImageSets(paginatorConfig, commandParams);

  const imageSetsMetadataSummaries = [];
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    // Each page contains a list of `jobSummaries`. The list is truncated if is
 larger than `pageSize`.
    imageSetsMetadataSummaries.push(...page.imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
    console.log(page);
  }
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: 'f009ea9c-84ca-4749-b5b6-7164f00a5ada',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     imageSetsMetadataSummaries: [
  //         {
  //             DICOMTags: [Object],
  //             createdAt: "2023-09-19T16:59:40.551Z",
  //             imageSetId: '7f75e1b5c0f40eac2b24cf712f485f50',
  //             updatedAt: "2023-09-19T16:59:40.551Z",
  //             version: 1
  //         }]
  // }

  return imageSetsMetadataSummaries;
};
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
  const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

  try {
    const searchCriteria = {
      filters: [
        {
          values: [{ DICOMPatientId: "1234567" }],
          operator: "EQUAL",
        },
```

```
    ],
  };

  await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
} catch (err) {
  console.error(err);
}
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

try {
  const searchCriteria = {
    filters: [
      {
        values: [
          {
            DICOMStudyDateAndTime: {
              DICOMStudyDate: "19900101",
              DICOMStudyTime: "000000",
            },
          },
          {
            DICOMStudyDateAndTime: {
              DICOMStudyDate: "20230901",
              DICOMStudyTime: "000000",
            },
          },
        ],
        operator: "BETWEEN",
      },
    ],
  };

  await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
} catch (err) {
  console.error(err);
}
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

try {
  const searchCriteria = {
    filters: [
      {
        values: [
          { createdAt: new Date("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z") },
          { createdAt: new Date() },
        ],
        operator: "BETWEEN",
      },
    ],
  };

  await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
} catch (err) {
  console.error(err);
}
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
const datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012";

try {
  const searchCriteria = {
    filters: [
      {
        values: [
          { updatedAt: new Date("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z") },
          { updatedAt: new Date() },
        ],
        operator: "BETWEEN",
      },
      {
        values: [
          {
            DICOMSeriesInstanceUID:
              "1.1.123.123456.1.12.1.1234567890.1234.12345678.123",
          },
        ],
```

```
          operator: "EQUAL",
        },
      ],
      sort: {
        sortOrder: "ASC",
        sortField: "updatedAt",
      },
    };

    await searchImageSets(datastoreId, searchCriteria);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`StartDICOMImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { StartDICOMImportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} jobName - The name of the import job.
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the data store.
 * @param {string} dataAccessRoleArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role
 that grants permission.
 * @param {string} inputS3Uri - The URI of the S3 bucket containing the input files.
 * @param {string} outputS3Uri - The URI of the S3 bucket where the output files are
 stored.
 */
export const startDicomImportJob = async (
```

```
  jobName = "test-1",
  datastoreId = "12345678901234567890123456789012",
  dataAccessRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::xxxxxxxxxxxx:role/ImportJobDataAccessRole",
  inputS3Uri = "s3://medical-imaging-dicom-input/dicom_input/",
  outputS3Uri = "s3://medical-imaging-output/job_output/",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new StartDICOMImportJobCommand({
      jobName: jobName,
      datastoreId: datastoreId,
      dataAccessRoleArn: dataAccessRoleArn,
      inputS3Uri: inputS3Uri,
      outputS3Uri: outputS3Uri,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '6e81d191-d46b-4e48-a08a-cdcc7e11eb79',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  // },
  //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     jobId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     jobStatus: 'SUBMITTED',
  //     submittedAt: 2023-09-22T14:48:45.767Z
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

TagResource

The following code example shows how to use TagResource.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { TagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 * @param {Record<string,string>} tags - The tags to add to the resource as JSON.
 *                      - For example: {"Deployment" : "Development"}
 */
export const tagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/imageset/
xxx",
  tags = {},
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new TagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tags: tags }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UntagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `UntagResource`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { UntagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 * @param {string[]} tagKeys - The keys of the tags to remove.
 */
export const untagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/imageset/
xxx",
  tagKeys = [],
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new UntagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tagKeys: tagKeys }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UpdateImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

```
import { UpdateImageSetMetadataCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} datastoreId - The ID of the HealthImaging data store.
 * @param {string} imageSetId - The ID of the HealthImaging image set.
 * @param {string} latestVersionId - The ID of the HealthImaging image set version.
 * @param {{}} updateMetadata - The metadata to update.
 * @param {boolean} force - Force the update.
 */
export const updateImageSetMetadata = async (
  datastoreId = "xxxxxxxxxx",
  imageSetId = "xxxxxxxxxx",
  latestVersionId = "1",
  updateMetadata = "{}",
  force = false,
) => {
  try {
    const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
      new UpdateImageSetMetadataCommand({
        datastoreId: datastoreId,
        imageSetId: imageSetId,
        latestVersionId: latestVersionId,
        updateImageSetMetadataUpdates: updateMetadata,
        force: force,
      }),
```

```
    );
    console.log(response);
    // {
    //     '$metadata': {
    //     httpStatusCode: 200,
    //         requestId: '7966e869-e311-4bff-92ec-56a61d3003ea',
    //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
    //         cfId: undefined,
    //         attempts: 1,
    //         totalRetryDelay: 0
    // },
    //     createdAt: 2023-09-22T14:49:26.427Z,
    //     datastoreId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //     imageSetId: 'xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx',
    //     imageSetState: 'LOCKED',
    //     imageSetWorkflowStatus: 'UPDATING',
    //     latestVersionId: '4',
    //     updatedAt: 2023-09-27T19:41:43.494Z
    // }
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

Use case #1: Insert or update an attribute and force the update.

```
    const insertAttributes = JSON.stringify({
      SchemaVersion: 1.1,
      Study: {
        DICOM: {
          StudyDescription: "CT CHEST",
        },
      },
    });

    const updateMetadata = {
      DICOMUpdates: {
        updatableAttributes: new TextEncoder().encode(insertAttributes),
      },
    };
```

```
    await updateImageSetMetadata(
      datastoreID,
      imageSetID,
      versionID,
      updateMetadata,
      true,
    );
```

Use case #2: Remove an attribute.

```
    // Attribute key and value must match the existing attribute.
    const remove_attribute = JSON.stringify({
      SchemaVersion: 1.1,
      Study: {
        DICOM: {
          StudyDescription: "CT CHEST",
        },
      },
    });

    const updateMetadata = {
      DICOMUpdates: {
        removableAttributes: new TextEncoder().encode(remove_attribute),
      },
    };

    await updateImageSetMetadata(
      datastoreID,
      imageSetID,
      versionID,
      updateMetadata,
    );
```

Use case #3: Remove an instance.

```
    const remove_instance = JSON.stringify({
      SchemaVersion: 1.1,
      Study: {
        Series: {
          "1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {
            Instances: {
```

```
            "1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {},
          },
        },
      },
    },
  });

  const updateMetadata = {
    DICOMUpdates: {
      removableAttributes: new TextEncoder().encode(remove_instance),
    },
  };

  await updateImageSetMetadata(
    datastoreID,
    imageSetID,
    versionID,
    updateMetadata,
  );
```

Use case #4: Revert to an earlier version.

```
  const updateMetadata = {
    revertToVersionId: "1",
  };

  await updateImageSetMetadata(
    datastoreID,
    imageSetID,
    versionID,
    updateMetadata,
  );
```

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scenarios

Get started with image sets and image frames

The following code example shows how to import DICOM files and download image frames in HealthImaging.

The implementation is structured as a command-line application.

- Set up resources for a DICOM import.
- Import DICOM files into a data store.
- Retrieve the image set IDs for the import job.
- Retrieve the image frame IDs for the image sets.
- Download, decode and verify the image frames.
- Clean up resources.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Orchestrate steps (index.js).

```
import {
  parseScenarioArgs,
  Scenario,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  saveState,
  loadState,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";

import {
  createStack,
  deployStack,
  getAccountId,
  getDatastoreName,
  getStackName,
  outputState,
  waitForStackCreation,
} from "./deploy-steps.js";
import {
  doCopy,
```

```
  selectDataset,
  copyDataset,
  outputCopiedObjects,
} from "./dataset-steps.js";
import {
  doImport,
  outputImportJobStatus,
  startDICOMImport,
  waitForImportJobCompletion,
} from "./import-steps.js";
import {
  getManifestFile,
  outputImageSetIds,
  parseManifestFile,
} from "./image-set-steps.js";
import {
  getImageSetMetadata,
  outputImageFrameIds,
} from "./image-frame-steps.js";
import { decodeAndVerifyImages, doVerify } from "./verify-steps.js";
import {
  confirmCleanup,
  deleteImageSets,
  deleteStack,
} from "./clean-up-steps.js";

const context = {};

const scenarios = {
  deploy: new Scenario(
    "Deploy Resources",
    [
      deployStack,
      getStackName,
      getDatastoreName,
      getAccountId,
      createStack,
      waitForStackCreation,
      outputState,
      saveState,
    ],
    context,
  ),
  demo: new Scenario(
```

```
    "Run Demo",
    [
      loadState,
      doCopy,
      selectDataset,
      copyDataset,
      outputCopiedObjects,
      doImport,
      startDICOMImport,
      waitForImportJobCompletion,
      outputImportJobStatus,
      getManifestFile,
      parseManifestFile,
      outputImageSetIds,
      getImageSetMetadata,
      outputImageFrameIds,
      doVerify,
      decodeAndVerifyImages,
      saveState,
    ],
    context,
  ),
  destroy: new Scenario(
    "Clean Up Resources",
    [loadState, confirmCleanup, deleteImageSets, deleteStack],
    context,
  ),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Health Imaging Workflow",
    description:
      "Work with DICOM images using an AWS Health Imaging data store.",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
  });
}
```

Deploy resources (deploy-steps.js).

```
import fs from "node:fs/promises";
import path from "node:path";

import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  CreateStackCommand,
  DescribeStacksCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import { STSClient, GetCallerIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

const cfnClient = new CloudFormationClient({});
const stsClient = new STSClient({});

const __dirname = path.dirname(new URL(import.meta.url).pathname);
const cfnTemplatePath = path.join(
  __dirname,
  "../../../../../scenarios/features/healthimaging_image_sets/resources/
cfn_template.yaml",
);

export const deployStack = new ScenarioInput(
  "deployStack",
  "Do you want to deploy the CloudFormation stack?",
  { type: "confirm" },
);

export const getStackName = new ScenarioInput(
  "getStackName",
  "Enter a name for the CloudFormation stack:",
  { type: "input", skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);

export const getDatastoreName = new ScenarioInput(
  "getDatastoreName",
  "Enter a name for the HealthImaging datastore:",
```

```
  { type: "input", skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);

export const getAccountId = new ScenarioAction(
  "getAccountId",
  async (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    const command = new GetCallerIdentityCommand({});
    const response = await stsClient.send(command);
    state.accountId = response.Account;
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack,
  },
);

export const createStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "createStack",
  async (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    const stackName = state.getStackName;
    const datastoreName = state.getDatastoreName;
    const accountId = state.accountId;

    const command = new CreateStackCommand({
      StackName: stackName,
      TemplateBody: await fs.readFile(cfnTemplatePath, "utf8"),
      Capabilities: ["CAPABILITY_IAM"],
      Parameters: [
        {
          ParameterKey: "datastoreName",
          ParameterValue: datastoreName,
        },
        {
          ParameterKey: "userAccountID",
          ParameterValue: accountId,
        },
      ],
    });

    const response = await cfnClient.send(command);
    state.stackId = response.StackId;
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);
```

```
export const waitForStackCreation = new ScenarioAction(
  "waitForStackCreation",
  async (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    const command = new DescribeStacksCommand({
      StackName: state.stackId,
    });

    await retry({ intervalInMs: 10000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
      const response = await cfnClient.send(command);
      const stack = response.Stacks?.find(
        (s) => s.StackName === state.getStackName,
      );
      if (!stack || stack.StackStatus === "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS") {
        throw new Error("Stack creation is still in progress");
      }
      if (stack.StackStatus === "CREATE_COMPLETE") {
        state.stackOutputs = stack.Outputs?.reduce((acc, output) => {
          acc[output.OutputKey] = output.OutputValue;
          return acc;
        }, {});
      } else {
        throw new Error(
          `Stack creation failed with status: ${stack.StackStatus}`,
        );
      }
    });
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack,
  },
);

export const outputState = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputState",
  (/** @type {{}} */ state) => {
    /**
     * @type {{ stackOutputs: { DatastoreID: string, BucketName: string, RoleArn:
 string }}}
     */
    const { stackOutputs } = state;
    return `Stack creation completed. Output values:
Datastore ID: ${stackOutputs?.DatastoreID}
Bucket Name: ${stackOutputs?.BucketName}
Role ARN: ${stackOutputs?.RoleArn}
```

```
    `;
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.deployStack },
);
```

Copy DICOM files (dataset-steps.js).

```
import {
  S3Client,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  ListObjectsV2Command,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

const s3Client = new S3Client({});

const datasetOptions = [
  {
    name: "CT of chest (2 images)",
    value: "00029d25-fb18-4d42-aaa5-a0897d1ac8f7",
  },
  {
    name: "CT of pelvis (57 images)",
    value: "00025d30-ef8f-4135-a35a-d83eff264fc1",
  },
  {
    name: "MRI of head (192 images)",
    value: "0002d261-8a5d-4e63-8e2e-0cbfac87b904",
  },
  {
    name: "MRI of breast (92 images)",
    value: "0002dd07-0b7f-4a68-a655-44461ca34096",
  },
];

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
```

```
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   doCopy: boolean
 * }}} State
 */

export const selectDataset = new ScenarioInput(
  "selectDataset",
  (state) => {
    if (!state.doCopy) {
      process.exit(0);
    }
    return "Select a DICOM dataset to import:";
  },
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: datasetOptions,
  },
);

export const doCopy = new ScenarioInput(
  "doCopy",
  "Do you want to copy images from the public dataset into your bucket?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
  },
);

export const copyDataset = new ScenarioAction(
  "copyDataset",
  async (/** @type { State } */ state) => {
    const inputBucket = state.stackOutputs.BucketName;
    const inputPrefix = "input/";
    const selectedDatasetId = state.selectDataset;

    const sourceBucket = "idc-open-data";
    const sourcePrefix = `${selectedDatasetId}`;

    const listObjectsCommand = new ListObjectsV2Command({
      Bucket: sourceBucket,
      Prefix: sourcePrefix,
    });

    const objects = await s3Client.send(listObjectsCommand);
```

```
    const copyPromises = objects.Contents.map((object) => {
      const sourceKey = object.Key;
      const destinationKey = `${inputPrefix}${sourceKey
        .split("/")
        .slice(1)
        .join("/")}`;

      const copyCommand = new CopyObjectCommand({
        Bucket: inputBucket,
        CopySource: `/${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey}`,
        Key: destinationKey,
      });

      return s3Client.send(copyCommand);
    });

    const results = await Promise.all(copyPromises);
    state.copiedObjects = results.length;
  },
);

export const outputCopiedObjects = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputCopiedObjects",
  (state) => `${state.copiedObjects} DICOM files were copied.`,
);
```

Start import into datastore (import-steps.js).

```
import {
  MedicalImagingClient,
  StartDICOMImportJobCommand,
  GetDICOMImportJobCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }}} State
 */

export const doImport = new ScenarioInput(
  "doImport",
  "Do you want to import DICOM images into your datastore?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    default: true,
  },
);

export const startDICOMImport = new ScenarioAction(
  "startDICOMImport",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (!state.doImport) {
      process.exit(0);
    }
    const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});
    const inputS3Uri = `s3://${state.stackOutputs.BucketName}/input/`;
    const outputS3Uri = `s3://${state.stackOutputs.BucketName}/output/`;

    const command = new StartDICOMImportJobCommand({
      dataAccessRoleArn: state.stackOutputs.RoleArn,
      datastoreId: state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID,
      inputS3Uri,
      outputS3Uri,
    });

    const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
    state.importJobId = response.jobId;
  },
);

export const waitForImportJobCompletion = new ScenarioAction(
  "waitForImportJobCompletion",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});
    const command = new GetDICOMImportJobCommand({
```

```
      datastoreId: state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID,
      jobId: state.importJobId,
    });

    await retry({ intervalInMs: 10000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
      const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
      const jobStatus = response.jobProperties?.jobStatus;
      if (!jobStatus || jobStatus === "IN_PROGRESS") {
        throw new Error("Import job is still in progress");
      }
      if (jobStatus === "COMPLETED") {
        state.importJobOutputS3Uri = response.jobProperties.outputS3Uri;
      } else {
        throw new Error(`Import job failed with status: ${jobStatus}`);
      }
    });
  },
);

export const outputImportJobStatus = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputImportJobStatus",
  (state) =>
    `DICOM import job completed. Output location: ${state.importJobOutputS3Uri}`,
);
```

Get image set IDs (image-set-steps.js -).

```
import { S3Client, GetObjectCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, importJobId: string,
 * importJobOutputS3Uri: string,
 * imageSetIds: string[],
```

```
 * manifestContent: { jobSummary: { imageSetsSummary: { imageSetId: string }[] } }
 * }} State
 */

const s3Client = new S3Client({});

export const getManifestFile = new ScenarioAction(
  "getManifestFile",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const bucket = state.stackOutputs.BucketName;
    const prefix = `output/${state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID}-DicomImport-
${state.importJobId}/`;
    const key = `${prefix}job-output-manifest.json`;

    const command = new GetObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucket,
      Key: key,
    });

    const response = await s3Client.send(command);
    const manifestContent = await response.Body.transformToString();
    state.manifestContent = JSON.parse(manifestContent);
  },
);

export const parseManifestFile = new ScenarioAction(
  "parseManifestFile",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const imageSetIds =
      state.manifestContent.jobSummary.imageSetsSummary.reduce((ids, next) => {
        return Object.assign({}, ids, {
          [next.imageSetId]: next.imageSetId,
        });
      }, {});
    state.imageSetIds = Object.keys(imageSetIds);
  },
);

export const outputImageSetIds = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputImageSetIds",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `The image sets created by this import job are: \n${state.imageSetIds
      .map((id) => `Image set: ${id}`)
      .join("\n")}`,
```

```
);
```

Get image frame IDs (image-frame-steps.js).

```
import {
  MedicalImagingClient,
  GetImageSetMetadataCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { gunzip } from "node:zlib";
import { promisify } from "node:util";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

const gunzipAsync = promisify(gunzip);

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMValueRepresentation
 * @property {string} name
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {string} value
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ImageFrameInformation
 * @property {string} ID
 * @property {Array<{ Checksum: number, Height: number, Width: number }>}
 PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution
 * @property {number} MinPixelValue
 * @property {number} MaxPixelValue
 * @property {number} FrameSizeInBytes
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMMetadata
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {DICOMValueRepresentation[]} DICOMVRs
 * @property {ImageFrameInformation[]} ImageFrames
 */
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Series
 * @property {{ [key: string]: DICOMMetadata }} Instances
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Study
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {Series[]} Series
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Patient
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *  SchemaVersion: string,
 *  DatastoreID: string,
 *  ImageSetID: string,
 *  Patient: Patient,
 *  Study: Study
 * }} ImageSetMetadata
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, imageSetIds: string[] }} State
 */

const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const getImageSetMetadata = new ScenarioAction(
  "getImageSetMetadata",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const outputMetadata = [];

    for (const imageSetId of state.imageSetIds) {
      const command = new GetImageSetMetadataCommand({
        datastoreId: state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID,
```

```
        imageSetId,
      });

      const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
      const compressedMetadataBlob =
        await response.imageSetMetadataBlob.transformToByteArray();
      const decompressedMetadata = await gunzipAsync(compressedMetadataBlob);
      const imageSetMetadata = JSON.parse(decompressedMetadata.toString());

      outputMetadata.push(imageSetMetadata);
    }

    state.imageSetMetadata = outputMetadata;
  },
);

export const outputImageFrameIds = new ScenarioOutput(
  "outputImageFrameIds",
  (/** @type {State & { imageSetMetadata: ImageSetMetadata[] }} */ state) => {
    let output = "";

    for (const metadata of state.imageSetMetadata) {
      const imageSetId = metadata.ImageSetID;
      /** @type {DICOMMetadata[]} */
      const instances = Object.values(metadata.Study.Series).flatMap(
        (series) => {
          return Object.values(series.Instances);
        },
      );
      const imageFrameIds = instances.flatMap((instance) =>
        instance.ImageFrames.map((frame) => frame.ID),
      );

      output += `Image set ID: ${imageSetId}\nImage frame IDs:\n
${imageFrameIds.join(
        "\n",
      )}\n\n`;
    }

    return output;
  },
);
```

Verify image frames (verify-steps.js). The AWS HealthImaging Pixel Data Verification library was used for verification.

```
import { spawn } from "node:child_process";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMValueRepresentation
 * @property {string} name
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {string} value
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ImageFrameInformation
 * @property {string} ID
 * @property {Array<{ Checksum: number, Height: number, Width: number }>}
 PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution
 * @property {number} MinPixelValue
 * @property {number} MaxPixelValue
 * @property {number} FrameSizeInBytes
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMMetadata
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {DICOMValueRepresentation[]} DICOMVRs
 * @property {ImageFrameInformation[]} ImageFrames
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Series
 * @property {{ [key: string]: DICOMMetadata }} Instances
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Study
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {Series[]} Series
```

```
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Patient
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *  SchemaVersion: string,
 *  DatastoreID: string,
 *  ImageSetID: string,
 *  Patient: Patient,
 *  Study: Study
 * }} ImageSetMetadata
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, imageSetMetadata: ImageSetMetadata[] }} State
 */

export const doVerify = new ScenarioInput(
  "doVerify",
  "Do you want to verify the imported images?",
  {
    type: "confirm",
    default: true,
  },
);

export const decodeAndVerifyImages = new ScenarioAction(
  "decodeAndVerifyImages",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (!state.doVerify) {
      process.exit(0);
    }
    const verificationTool = "./pixel-data-verification/index.js";

    for (const metadata of state.imageSetMetadata) {
      const datastoreId = state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID;
```

```
      const imageSetId = metadata.ImageSetID;

      for (const [seriesInstanceUid, series] of Object.entries(
        metadata.Study.Series,
      )) {
        for (const [sopInstanceUid, _] of Object.entries(series.Instances)) {
          console.log(
            `Verifying image set ${imageSetId} with series ${seriesInstanceUid} and
 sop ${sopInstanceUid}`,
          );
          const child = spawn(
            "node",
            [
              verificationTool,
              datastoreId,
              imageSetId,
              seriesInstanceUid,
              sopInstanceUid,
            ],
            { stdio: "inherit" },
          );

          await new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
            child.on("exit", (code) => {
              if (code === 0) {
                resolve();
              } else {
                reject(
                  new Error(
                    `Verification tool exited with code ${code} for image set
 ${imageSetId}`,
                  ),
                );
              }
            });
          });
        }
      }
    }
  },
);
```

Destroy resources (clean-up-steps.js).

```
import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  DeleteStackCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import {
  MedicalImagingClient,
  DeleteImageSetCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMValueRepresentation
 * @property {string} name
 * @property {string} type
 * @property {string} value
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} ImageFrameInformation
 * @property {string} ID
 * @property {Array<{ Checksum: number, Height: number, Width: number }>}
 PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution
 * @property {number} MinPixelValue
 * @property {number} MaxPixelValue
 * @property {number} FrameSizeInBytes
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} DICOMMetadata
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {DICOMValueRepresentation[]} DICOMVRs
 * @property {ImageFrameInformation[]} ImageFrames
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Series
 * @property {{ [key: string]: DICOMMetadata }} Instances
 */
```

```
/**
 * @typedef {Object} Study
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 * @property {Series[]} Series
 */

/**
 * @typedef {Object} Patient
 * @property {Object} DICOM
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *  SchemaVersion: string,
 *  DatastoreID: string,
 *  ImageSetID: string,
 *  Patient: Patient,
 *  Study: Study
 * }} ImageSetMetadata
 */

/**
 * @typedef {{ stackOutputs: {
 *   BucketName: string,
 *   DatastoreID: string,
 *   RoleArn: string
 * }, imageSetMetadata: ImageSetMetadata[] }} State
 */

const cfnClient = new CloudFormationClient({});
const medicalImagingClient = new MedicalImagingClient({});

export const confirmCleanup = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmCleanup",
  "Do you want to delete the created resources?",
  { type: "confirm" },
);

export const deleteImageSets = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteImageSets",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const datastoreId = state.stackOutputs.DatastoreID;
```

```
    for (const metadata of state.imageSetMetadata) {
      const command = new DeleteImageSetCommand({
        datastoreId,
        imageSetId: metadata.ImageSetID,
      });

      try {
        await medicalImagingClient.send(command);
        console.log(`Successfully deleted image set ${metadata.ImageSetID}`);
      } catch (e) {
        if (e instanceof Error) {
          if (e.name === "ConflictException") {
            console.log(`Image set ${metadata.ImageSetID} already deleted`);
          }
        }
      }
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.confirmCleanup,
  },
);

export const deleteStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteStack",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const stackName = state.getStackName;

    const command = new DeleteStackCommand({
      StackName: stackName,
    });

    await cfnClient.send(command);
    console.log(`Stack ${stackName} deletion initiated`);
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.confirmCleanup,
  },
);
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteImageSet

- GetDICOMImportJob
- GetImageFrame
- GetImageSetMetadata
- SearchImageSets
- StartDICOMImportJob

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging a data store

The following code example shows how to tag a HealthImaging data store.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

To tag a data store.

```
  try {
    const datastoreArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const tags = {
      Deployment: "Development",
    };
    await tagResource(datastoreArn, tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
import { TagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
```

```
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 * @param {Record<string,string>} tags - The tags to add to the resource as JSON.
 *                      - For example: {"Deployment" : "Development"}
 */
export const tagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/imageset/
xxx",
  tags = {},
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new TagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tags: tags }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To list tags for a data store.

```
  try {
    const datastoreArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const { tags } = await listTagsForResource(datastoreArn);
    console.log(tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
import { ListTagsForResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 */
export const listTagsForResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:abc:datastore/def/imageset/ghi",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new ListTagsForResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '008fc6d3-abec-4870-a155-20fa3631e645',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     tags: { Deployment: 'Development' }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To untag a data store.

```
  try {
    const datastoreArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const keys = ["Deployment"];
    await untagResource(datastoreArn, keys);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
import { UntagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 * @param {string[]} tagKeys - The keys of the tags to remove.
 */
export const untagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/imageset/
xxx",
  tagKeys = [],
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new UntagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tagKeys: tagKeys }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging an image set

The following code example shows how to tag a HealthImaging image set.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

To tag an image set.

```
  try {
    const imagesetArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const tags = {
      Deployment: "Development",
    };
    await tagResource(imagesetArn, tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
import { TagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 * @param {Record<string,string>} tags - The tags to add to the resource as JSON.
 *                      - For example: {"Deployment" : "Development"}
 */
export const tagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/imageset/
xxx",
```

```
  tags = {},
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new TagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tags: tags }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To list tags for an image set.

```
  try {
    const imagesetArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const { tags } = await listTagsForResource(imagesetArn);
    console.log(tags);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
import { ListTagsForResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
```

```
 */
export const listTagsForResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:abc:datastore/def/imageset/ghi",
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new ListTagsForResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //         httpStatusCode: 200,
  //         requestId: '008fc6d3-abec-4870-a155-20fa3631e645',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //     },
  //     tags: { Deployment: 'Development' }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

To untag an image set.

```
  try {
    const imagesetArn =
      "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";
    const keys = ["Deployment"];
    await untagResource(imagesetArn, keys);
  } catch (e) {
    console.log(e);
  }
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
import { UntagResourceCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-medical-imaging";
import { medicalImagingClient } from "../libs/medicalImagingClient.js";
```

```
/**
 * @param {string} resourceArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for the data store
 or image set.
 * @param {string[]} tagKeys - The keys of the tags to remove.
 */
export const untagResource = async (
  resourceArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-east-1:xxxxxx:datastore/xxxxx/imageset/
xxx",
  tagKeys = [],
) => {
  const response = await medicalImagingClient.send(
    new UntagResourceCommand({ resourceArn: resourceArn, tagKeys: tagKeys }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //     '$metadata': {
  //        httpStatusCode: 204,
  //         requestId: '8a6de9a3-ec8e-47ef-8643-473518b19d45',
  //         extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //         cfId: undefined,
  //         attempts: 1,
  //         totalRetryDelay: 0
  //    }
  // }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

IAM examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { IAMClient, paginateListPolicies } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listLocalPolicies = async () => {
  /**
   * In v3, the clients expose paginateOperationName APIs that are written using
 async generators so that you can use async iterators in a for await..of loop.
   * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators
   */
  const paginator = paginateListPolicies(
    { client, pageSize: 10 },
    // List only customer managed policies.
```

```
    { Scope: "Local" },
  );

  console.log("IAM policies defined in your account:");
  let policyCount = 0;
  for await (const page of paginator) {
    if (page.Policies) {
      for (const policy of page.Policies) {
        console.log(`${policy.PolicyName}`);
        policyCount++;
      }
    }
  }
  console.log(`Found ${policyCount} policies.`);
};
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.

- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user and a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role. After assuming the role, use temporary credentials to list buckets for the account.

```
import {
  CreateUserCommand,
  GetUserCommand,
  CreateAccessKeyCommand,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  DeleteAccessKeyCommand,
  DeleteUserCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { ListBucketsCommand, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { AssumeRoleCommand, STSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import { ScenarioInput } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

// Set the parameters.
const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
const userName = "iam_basic_test_username";
const policyName = "iam_basic_test_policy";
const roleName = "iam_basic_test_role";

/**
```

```
 * Create a new IAM user. If the user already exists, give
 * the option to delete and re-create it.
 * @param {string} name
 */
export const createUser = async (name, confirmAll = false) => {
  try {
    const { User } = await iamClient.send(
      new GetUserCommand({ UserName: name }),
    );
    const input = new ScenarioInput(
      "deleteUser",
      "Do you want to delete and remake this user?",
      { type: "confirm" },
    );
    const deleteUser = await input.handle({}, { confirmAll });
    // If the user exists, and you want to delete it, delete the user
    // and then create it again.
    if (deleteUser) {
      await iamClient.send(new DeleteUserCommand({ UserName: User.UserName }));
      await iamClient.send(new CreateUserCommand({ UserName: name }));
    } else {
      console.warn(
        `${name} already exists. The scenario may not work as expected.`,
      );
      return User;
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    // If there is no user by that name, create one.
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "NoSuchEntityException") {
      const { User } = await iamClient.send(
        new CreateUserCommand({ UserName: name }),
      );
      return User;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};

export const main = async (confirmAll = false) => {
  // Create a user. The user has no permissions by default.
  const User = await createUser(userName, confirmAll);

  if (!User) {
    throw new Error("User not created");
```

```
  }

  // Create an access key. This key is used to authenticate the new user to
  // Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and AWS Security Token Service (AWS
 STS).
  // It's not best practice to use access keys. For more information, see https://
aws.amazon.com/iam/resources/best-practices/.
  const createAccessKeyResponse = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateAccessKeyCommand({ UserName: userName }),
  );

  if (
    !createAccessKeyResponse.AccessKey?.AccessKeyId ||
    !createAccessKeyResponse.AccessKey?.SecretAccessKey
  ) {
    throw new Error("Access key not created");
  }

  const {
    AccessKey: { AccessKeyId, SecretAccessKey },
  } = createAccessKeyResponse;

  let s3Client = new S3Client({
    credentials: {
      accessKeyId: AccessKeyId,
      secretAccessKey: SecretAccessKey,
    },
  });

  // Retry the list buckets operation until it succeeds. InvalidAccessKeyId is
  // thrown while the user and access keys are still stabilizing.
  await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 300 }, async () => {
    try {
      return await listBuckets(s3Client);
    } catch (err) {
      if (err instanceof Error && err.name === "InvalidAccessKeyId") {
        throw err;
      }
    }
  });

  // Retry the create role operation until it succeeds. A MalformedPolicyDocument
 error
  // is thrown while the user and access keys are still stabilizing.
```

```
const { Role } = await retry(
  {
    intervalInMs: 2000,
    maxRetries: 60,
  },
  () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
          Version: "2012-10-17",
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Principal: {
                // Allow the previously created user to assume this role.
                AWS: User.Arn,
              },
              Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
            },
          ],
        }),
        RoleName: roleName,
      }),
    ),
);

if (!Role) {
  throw new Error("Role not created");
}

// Create a policy that allows the user to list S3 buckets.
const { Policy: listBucketPolicy } = await iamClient.send(
  new CreatePolicyCommand({
    PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Action: ["s3:ListAllMyBuckets"],
          Resource: "*",
        },
      ],
    }),
    PolicyName: policyName,
```

```
    }),
  );

  if (!listBucketPolicy) {
    throw new Error("Policy not created");
  }

  // Attach the policy granting the 's3:ListAllMyBuckets' action to the role.
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      PolicyArn: listBucketPolicy.Arn,
      RoleName: Role.RoleName,
    }),
  );

  // Assume the role.
  const stsClient = new STSClient({
    credentials: {
      accessKeyId: AccessKeyId,
      secretAccessKey: SecretAccessKey,
    },
  });

  // Retry the assume role operation until it succeeds.
  const { Credentials } = await retry(
    { intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 60 },
    () =>
      stsClient.send(
        new AssumeRoleCommand({
          RoleArn: Role.Arn,
          RoleSessionName: `iamBasicScenarioSession-${Math.floor(
            Math.random() * 1000000,
          )}`,
          DurationSeconds: 900,
        }),
      ),
  );

  if (!Credentials?.AccessKeyId || !Credentials?.SecretAccessKey) {
    throw new Error("Credentials not created");
  }

  s3Client = new S3Client({
    credentials: {
```

```
    accessKeyId: Credentials.AccessKeyId,
    secretAccessKey: Credentials.SecretAccessKey,
    sessionToken: Credentials.SessionToken,
  },
});

// List the S3 buckets again.
// Retry the list buckets operation until it succeeds. AccessDenied might
// be thrown while the role policy is still stabilizing.
await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 120 }, () =>
  listBuckets(s3Client),
);

// Clean up.
await iamClient.send(
  new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: listBucketPolicy.Arn,
    RoleName: Role.RoleName,
  }),
);

await iamClient.send(
  new DeletePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: listBucketPolicy.Arn,
  }),
);

await iamClient.send(
  new DeleteRoleCommand({
    RoleName: Role.RoleName,
  }),
);

await iamClient.send(
  new DeleteAccessKeyCommand({
    UserName: userName,
    AccessKeyId,
  }),
);

await iamClient.send(
  new DeleteUserCommand({
    UserName: userName,
  }),
```

```
  );
};

/**
 *
 * @param {S3Client} s3Client
 */
const listBuckets = async (s3Client) => {
  const { Buckets } = await s3Client.send(new ListBucketsCommand({}));

  if (!Buckets) {
    throw new Error("Buckets not listed");
  }

  console.log(Buckets.map((bucket) => bucket.Name).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Attach the policy.

```
import { AttachRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const attachRolePolicy = (policyArn, roleName) => {
  const command = new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the access key.

```
import { CreateAccessKeyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 */
export const createAccessKey = (userName) => {
  const command = new CreateAccessKeyCommand({ UserName: userName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the account alias.

```
import { CreateAccountAliasCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} alias - A unique name for the account alias.
 * @returns
 */
export const createAccountAlias = (alias) => {
  const command = new CreateAccountAliasCommand({
    AccountAlias: alias,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateGroupCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} groupName
```

```
 */
export const createGroup = async (groupName) => {
  const command = new CreateGroupCommand({ GroupName: groupName });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateInstanceProfile`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the policy.

```
import { CreatePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
export const createPolicy = (policyName) => {
  const command = new CreatePolicyCommand({
    PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Action: "*",
          Resource: "*",
        },
      ],
    }),
    PolicyName: policyName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the role.

```
import { CreateRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const createRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new CreateRoleCommand({
    AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Principal: {
            Service: "lambda.amazonaws.com",
          },
          Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
        },
      ],
    }),
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateSAMLProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSAMLProvider`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateSAMLProviderCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import * as path from "node:path";
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * This sample document was generated using Auth0.
 * For more information on generating this document,
 see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_providers_create_saml.html#samlstep1.
 */
const sampleMetadataDocument = readFileSync(
  path.join(
    dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url),
    "../../../../resources/sample_files/sample_saml_metadata.xml",
  ),
);

/**
 *
 * @param {*} providerName
 * @returns
 */
export const createSAMLProvider = async (providerName) => {
  const command = new CreateSAMLProviderCommand({
    Name: providerName,
```

```
    SAMLMetadataDocument: sampleMetadataDocument.toString(),
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see CreateSAMLProvider in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a service-linked role.

```
import {
  CreateServiceLinkedRoleCommand,
  GetRoleCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} serviceName
 */
export const createServiceLinkedRole = async (serviceName) => {
  const command = new CreateServiceLinkedRoleCommand({
    // For a list of AWS services that support service-linked roles,
    // see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/reference_aws-services-
that-work-with-iam.html.
```

```
    //
    // For a list of AWS service endpoints, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/general/
latest/gr/aws-service-information.html.
    AWSServiceName: serviceName,
  });
  try {
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(response);
    return response;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "InvalidInputException" &&
      caught.message.includes(
        "Service role name AWSServiceRoleForElasticBeanstalk has been taken in this
 account",
      )
    ) {
      console.warn(caught.message);
      return client.send(
        new GetRoleCommand({ RoleName: "AWSServiceRoleForElasticBeanstalk" }),
      );
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the user.

```
import { CreateUserCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} name
 */
export const createUser = (name) => {
  const command = new CreateUserCommand({ UserName: name });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the access key.

```
import { DeleteAccessKeyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 * @param {string} accessKeyId
```

```
 */
export const deleteAccessKey = (userName, accessKeyId) => {
  const command = new DeleteAccessKeyCommand({
    AccessKeyId: accessKeyId,
    UserName: userName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the account alias.

```
import { DeleteAccountAliasCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} alias
 */
export const deleteAccountAlias = (alias) => {
  const command = new DeleteAccountAliasCommand({ AccountAlias: alias });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteGroupCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
export const deleteGroup = async (groupName) => {
  const command = new DeleteGroupCommand({
    GroupName: groupName,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteInstanceProfile`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const client = new IAMClient({});
await client.send(
  new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
    InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
  }),
);
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the policy.

```
import { DeletePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});
```

```
/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 */
export const deletePolicy = (policyArn) => {
  const command = new DeletePolicyCommand({ PolicyArn: policyArn });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the role.

```
import { DeleteRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const deleteRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: roleName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRolePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
export const deleteRolePolicy = (roleName, policyName) => {
  const command = new DeleteRolePolicyCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    PolicyName: policyName,
  });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteSAMLProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSAMLProvider`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteSAMLProviderCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} providerArn
 * @returns
 */
export const deleteSAMLProvider = async (providerArn) => {
  const command = new DeleteSAMLProviderCommand({
    SAMLProviderArn: providerArn,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteSAMLProvider in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServerCertificate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a server certificate.

```
import { DeleteServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} certName
 */
export const deleteServerCertificate = (certName) => {
  const command = new DeleteServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: certName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteServiceLinkedRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
```

```
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const deleteServiceLinkedRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new DeleteServiceLinkedRoleCommand({ RoleName: roleName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the user.

```
import { DeleteUserCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} name
 */
export const deleteUser = (name) => {
  const command = new DeleteUserCommand({ UserName: name });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

DetachRolePolicy

The following code example shows how to use DetachRolePolicy.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detach the policy.

```
import { DetachRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const detachRolePolicy = (policyArn, roleName) => {
  const command = new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

GetAccessKeyLastUsed

The following code example shows how to use GetAccessKeyLastUsed.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the access key.

```
import { GetAccessKeyLastUsedCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} accessKeyId
 */
export const getAccessKeyLastUsed = async (accessKeyId) => {
  const command = new GetAccessKeyLastUsedCommand({
    AccessKeyId: accessKeyId,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);

  if (response.AccessKeyLastUsed?.LastUsedDate) {
    console.log(`
    ${accessKeyId} was last used by ${response.UserName} via
    the ${response.AccessKeyLastUsed.ServiceName} service on
    ${response.AccessKeyLastUsed.LastUsedDate.toISOString()}
    `);
  }

  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the account password policy.

```
import {
  GetAccountPasswordPolicyCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const getAccountPasswordPolicy = async () => {
  const command = new GetAccountPasswordPolicyCommand({});

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response.PasswordPolicy);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the policy.

```
import { GetPolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 */
export const getPolicy = (policyArn) => {
  const command = new GetPolicyCommand({
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the role.

```
import { GetRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const getRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new GetRoleCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetServerCertificate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a server certificate.

```
import { GetServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
```

```
 * @param {string} certName
 * @returns
 */
export const getServerCertificate = async (certName) => {
  const command = new GetServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: certName,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatusCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} deletionTaskId
 */
export const getServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus = (deletionTaskId) => {
```

```
  const command = new GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatusCommand({
    DeletionTaskId: deletionTaskId,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLinkedRoleDeletionStatus in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the access keys.

```
import { ListAccessKeysCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 */
export async function* listAccessKeys(userName) {
  const command = new ListAccessKeysCommand({
    MaxItems: 5,
    UserName: userName,
```

```
  });

  /**
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-iam").ListAccessKeysCommandOutput | undefined}
   */
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response?.AccessKeyMetadata?.length) {
    for (const key of response.AccessKeyMetadata) {
      yield key;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListAccessKeysCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the account aliases.

```
import { ListAccountAliasesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 */
export async function* listAccountAliases() {
  const command = new ListAccountAliasesCommand({ MaxItems: 5 });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.AccountAliases?.length) {
    for (const alias of response.AccountAliases) {
      yield alias;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListAccountAliasesCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
          MaxItems: 5,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the policies that are attached to a role.

```
import {
  ListAttachedRolePoliciesCommand,
  IAMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export async function* listAttachedRolePolicies(roleName) {
  const command = new ListAttachedRolePoliciesCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.AttachedPolicies?.length) {
    for (const policy of response.AttachedPolicies) {
      yield policy;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListAttachedRolePoliciesCommand({
          RoleName: roleName,
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the groups.

```
import { ListGroupsCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 */
export async function* listGroups() {
  const command = new ListGroupsCommand({
    MaxItems: 10,
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.Groups?.length) {
    for (const group of response.Groups) {
```

```
      yield group;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListGroupsCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
          MaxItems: 10,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the policies.

```
import { ListPoliciesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
```

```
 *
 */
export async function* listPolicies() {
  const command = new ListPoliciesCommand({
    MaxItems: 10,
    OnlyAttached: false,
    // List only the customer managed policies in your Amazon Web Services account.
    Scope: "Local",
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.Policies?.length) {
    for (const policy of response.Policies) {
      yield policy;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListPoliciesCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
          MaxItems: 10,
          OnlyAttached: false,
          Scope: "Local",
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the policies.

```
import { ListRolePoliciesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export async function* listRolePolicies(roleName) {
  const command = new ListRolePoliciesCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    MaxItems: 10,
  });

  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.PolicyNames?.length) {
    for (const policyName of response.PolicyNames) {
      yield policyName;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListRolePoliciesCommand({
          RoleName: roleName,
          MaxItems: 10,
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the roles.

```
import { ListRolesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 *
 */
export async function* listRoles() {
  const command = new ListRolesCommand({
    MaxItems: 10,
  });

  /**
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-iam").ListRolesCommandOutput | undefined}
   */
```

```
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response?.Roles?.length) {
    for (const role of response.Roles) {
      yield role;
    }

    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(
        new ListRolesCommand({
          Marker: response.Marker,
        }),
      );
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the SAML providers.

```
import { ListSAMLProvidersCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listSamlProviders = async () => {
  const command = new ListSAMLProvidersCommand({});
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListServerCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListServerCertificates`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the certificates.

```
import { ListServerCertificatesCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 * A generator function that handles paginated results.
 * The AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) provides {@link https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/index.html#paginators | paginator} functions to simplify
 this.
 *
 */
export async function* listServerCertificates() {
  const command = new ListServerCertificatesCommand({});
  let response = await client.send(command);

  while (response.ServerCertificateMetadataList?.length) {
    for await (const cert of response.ServerCertificateMetadataList) {
      yield cert;
    }
```

```
    if (response.IsTruncated) {
      response = await client.send(new ListServerCertificatesCommand({}));
    } else {
      break;
    }
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the users.

```
import { ListUsersCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

export const listUsers = async () => {
  const command = new ListUsersCommand({ MaxItems: 10 });

  const response = await client.send(command);

  for (const { UserName, CreateDate } of response.Users) {
    console.log(`${UserName} created on: ${CreateDate}`);
  }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRolePolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { PutRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const examplePolicyDocument = JSON.stringify({
  Version: "2012-10-17",
  Statement: [
    {
      Sid: "VisualEditor0",
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: [
        "s3:ListBucketMultipartUploads",
        "s3:ListBucketVersions",
        "s3:ListBucket",
        "s3:ListMultipartUploadParts",
      ],
      Resource: "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket",
    },
    {
      Sid: "VisualEditor1",
      Effect: "Allow",
      Action: [
        "s3:ListStorageLensConfigurations",
        "s3:ListAccessPointsForObjectLambda",
        "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
        "s3:ListAccessPoints",
```

```
        "s3:ListJobs",
        "s3:ListMultiRegionAccessPoints",
      ],
      Resource: "*",
    },
  ],
});

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 * @param {string} policyName
 * @param {string} policyDocument
 */
export const putRolePolicy = async (roleName, policyName, policyDocument) => {
  const command = new PutRolePolicyCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    PolicyName: policyName,
    PolicyDocument: policyDocument,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the access key.

```
import {
  UpdateAccessKeyCommand,
  IAMClient,
  StatusType,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} userName
 * @param {string} accessKeyId
 */
export const updateAccessKey = (userName, accessKeyId) => {
  const command = new UpdateAccessKeyCommand({
    AccessKeyId: accessKeyId,
    Status: StatusType.Inactive,
    UserName: userName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateServerCertificate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update a server certificate.

```
import { UpdateServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} currentName
 * @param {string} newName
 */
export const updateServerCertificate = (currentName, newName) => {
  const command = new UpdateServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: currentName,
    NewServerCertificateName: newName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the user.

```
import { UpdateUserCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});
```

```
/**
 *
 * @param {string} currentUserName
 * @param {string} newUserName
 */
export const updateUser = (currentUserName, newUserName) => {
  const command = new UpdateUserCommand({
    UserName: currentUserName,
    NewUserName: newUserName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UploadServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadServerCertificate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UploadServerCertificateCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import * as path from "node:path";

const client = new IAMClient({});

const certMessage = `Generate a certificate and key with the following command, or
 the equivalent for your system.
```

```
openssl req -x509 -newkey rsa:4096 -sha256 -days 3650 -nodes \
-keyout example.key -out example.crt -subj "/CN=example.com" \
-addext "subjectAltName=DNS:example.com,DNS:www.example.net,IP:10.0.0.1"
`;

const getCertAndKey = () => {
  try {
    const cert = readFileSync(
      path.join(dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url), "./example.crt"),
    );
    const key = readFileSync(
      path.join(dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url), "./example.key"),
    );
    return { cert, key };
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.code === "ENOENT") {
      throw new Error(
        `Certificate and/or private key not found. ${certMessage}`,
      );
    }

    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 *
 * @param {string} certificateName
 */
export const uploadServerCertificate = (certificateName) => {
  const { cert, key } = getCertAndKey();
  const command = new UploadServerCertificateCommand({
    ServerCertificateName: certificateName,
    CertificateBody: cert.toString(),
    PrivateKey: key.toString(),
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see UploadServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
#!/usr/bin/env node
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

import {
  Scenario,
  parseScenarioArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

/**
```

```
 * The workflow steps are split into three stages:
 *   - deploy
 *   - demo
 *   - destroy
 *
 * Each of these stages has a corresponding file prefixed with steps-*.
 */
import { deploySteps } from "./steps-deploy.js";
import { demoSteps } from "./steps-demo.js";
import { destroySteps } from "./steps-destroy.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Deploys all resources necessary for the workflow.
  deploy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Deploy", deploySteps, context),
  // Demonstrates how a fragile web service can be made more resilient.
  demo: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Demo", demoSteps, context),
  // Destroys the resources created for the workflow.
  destroy: new Scenario("Resilient Workflow - Destroy", destroySteps, context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Resilient Workflow",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | destroy> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
    description: "Deploy and interact with scalable EC2 instances.",
  });
}
```

Create steps to deploy all of the resources.

```
import { join } from "node:path";
import { readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";
import axios from "axios";

import {
  BatchWriteItemCommand,
  CreateTableCommand,
  DynamoDBClient,
  waitUntilTableExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  CreateKeyPairCommand,
  CreateLaunchTemplateCommand,
  DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand,
  DescribeVpcsCommand,
  DescribeSubnetsCommand,
  DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand,
  AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import { SSMClient, GetParameterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  AutoScalingClient,
  AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  CreateListenerCommand,
  CreateLoadBalancerCommand,
  CreateTargetGroupCommand,
```

```
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
  waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { saveState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH, ROOT } from "./constants.js";
import { initParamsSteps } from "./steps-reset-params.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const deploySteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("introduction", MESSAGES.introduction, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioInput("confirmDeployment", MESSAGES.confirmDeployment, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "handleConfirmDeployment",
    (c) => c.confirmDeployment === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingTable",
    MESSAGES.creatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createTable", async () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    await client.send(
      new CreateTableCommand({
        TableName: NAMES.tableName,
        ProvisionedThroughput: {
          ReadCapacityUnits: 5,
          WriteCapacityUnits: 5,
        },
        AttributeDefinitions: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            AttributeType: "S",
```

```
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            AttributeType: "N",
          },
        ],
        KeySchema: [
          {
            AttributeName: "MediaType",
            KeyType: "HASH",
          },
          {
            AttributeName: "ItemId",
            KeyType: "RANGE",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilTableExists({ client }, { TableName: NAMES.tableName });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdTable",
    MESSAGES.createdTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatingTable",
    MESSAGES.populatingTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("populateTable", () => {
    const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
    /**
     * @type {{ default: import("@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb").PutRequest['Item'][] }}
     */
    const recommendations = JSON.parse(
      readFileSync(join(RESOURCES_PATH, "recommendations.json")),
    );

    return client.send(
      new BatchWriteItemCommand({
        RequestItems: {
          [NAMES.tableName]: recommendations.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: { Item: item },
          })),
        },
```

```
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "populatedTable",
    MESSAGES.populatedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.creatingKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createKeyPair", async () => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { KeyMaterial } = await client.send(
      new CreateKeyPairCommand({
        KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
      }),
    );

    writeFileSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`, KeyMaterial, { mode: 0o600 });
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdKeyPair",
    MESSAGES.createdKeyPair.replace("${KEY_PAIR_NAME}", NAMES.keyPairName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstancePolicy",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstancePolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      Policy: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyName: NAMES.instancePolicyName,
        PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(RESOURCES_PATH, "instance_policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
```

```
    state.instancePolicyArn = Arn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstancePolicy", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstancePolicy
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_ARN}", state.instancePolicyArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceRole", () => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: readFileSync(
          join(ROOT, "assume-role-policy.json"),
        ),
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdInstanceRole",
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachingPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachPolicyToRole", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        PolicyArn: state.instancePolicyArn,
```

```
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedPolicyToRole",
    MESSAGES.attachedPolicyToRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.creatingInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const {
      InstanceProfile: { Arn },
    } = await client.send(
      new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
    state.instanceProfileArn = Arn;

    await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
      { client },
      { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdInstanceProfile", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_ARN}", state.instanceProfileArn),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addingRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addingRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("addRoleToInstanceProfile", () => {
```

```
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
        RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "addedRoleToInstanceProfile",
    MESSAGES.addedRoleToInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName),
  ),
  ...initParamsSteps,
  new ScenarioOutput("creatingLaunchTemplate", MESSAGES.creatingLaunchTemplate),
  new ScenarioAction("createLaunchTemplate", async () => {
    const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
    const { Parameter } = await ssmClient.send(
      new GetParameterCommand({
        Name: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
      }),
    );
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    await ec2Client.send(
      new CreateLaunchTemplateCommand({
        LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        LaunchTemplateData: {
          InstanceType: "t3.micro",
          ImageId: Parameter.Value,
          IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.instanceProfileName },
          UserData: readFileSync(
            join(RESOURCES_PATH, "server_startup_script.sh"),
          ).toString("base64"),
          KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName,
        },
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLaunchTemplate",
    MESSAGES.createdLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
```

```
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingAutoScalingGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
    const { AvailabilityZones } = await ec2Client.send(
      new DescribeAvailabilityZonesCommand({}),
    );
    state.availabilityZoneNames = AvailabilityZones.map((az) => az.ZoneName);
    const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new CreateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          AvailabilityZones: state.availabilityZoneNames,
          AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
          LaunchTemplate: {
            LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
            Version: "$Default",
          },
          MinSize: 3,
          MaxSize: 3,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdAutoScalingGroup",
    /**
     * @param {{ availabilityZoneNames: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.createdAutoScalingGroup
        .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName)
        .replace(
          "${AVAILABILITY_ZONE_NAMES}",
          state.availabilityZoneNames.join(", "),
        ),
  ),
```

```
  new ScenarioInput("confirmContinue", MESSAGES.confirmContinue, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("loadBalancer", MESSAGES.loadBalancer),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingVpc", MESSAGES.gettingVpc),
  new ScenarioAction("getVpc", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Vpcs } = await client.send(
      new DescribeVpcsCommand({
        Filters: [{ Name: "is-default", Values: ["true"] }],
      }),
    );
    state.defaultVpc = Vpcs[0].VpcId;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("gotVpc", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.gotVpc.replace("${VPC_ID}", state.defaultVpc),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("gettingSubnets", MESSAGES.gettingSubnets),
  new ScenarioAction("getSubnets", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    const { Subnets } = await client.send(
      new DescribeSubnetsCommand({
        Filters: [
          { Name: "vpc-id", Values: [state.defaultVpc] },
          { Name: "availability-zone", Values: state.availabilityZoneNames },
          { Name: "default-for-az", Values: ["true"] },
        ],
      }),
    );
    state.subnets = Subnets.map((subnet) => subnet.SubnetId);
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "gotSubnets",
    /**
     * @param {{ subnets: string[] }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.gotSubnets.replace("${SUBNETS}", state.subnets.join(", ")),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
```

```
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
      new CreateTargetGroupCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
        Protocol: "HTTP",
        Port: 80,
        HealthCheckPath: "/healthcheck",
        HealthCheckIntervalSeconds: 10,
        HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds: 5,
        HealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        UnhealthyThresholdCount: 2,
        VpcId: state.defaultVpc,
      }),
    );
    const targetGroup = TargetGroups[0];
    state.targetGroupArn = targetGroup.TargetGroupArn;
    state.targetGroupProtocol = targetGroup.Protocol;
    state.targetGroupPort = targetGroup.Port;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingLoadBalancer",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancer.replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { LoadBalancers } = await client.send(
      new CreateLoadBalancerCommand({
        Name: NAMES.loadBalancerName,
        Subnets: state.subnets,
      }),
    );
    state.loadBalancerDns = LoadBalancers[0].DNSName;
    state.loadBalancerArn = LoadBalancers[0].LoadBalancerArn;
    await waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(
```

```
      { client },
      { Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerName] },
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdLoadBalancer", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancer
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "creatingListener",
    MESSAGES.creatingLoadBalancerListener
      .replace("${LB_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerName)
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("createListener", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    const { Listeners } = await client.send(
      new CreateListenerCommand({
        LoadBalancerArn: state.loadBalancerArn,
        Protocol: state.targetGroupProtocol,
        Port: state.targetGroupPort,
        DefaultActions: [
          { Type: "forward", TargetGroupArn: state.targetGroupArn },
        ],
      }),
    );
    const listener = Listeners[0];
    state.loadBalancerListenerArn = listener.ListenerArn;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("createdListener", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.createdLoadBalancerListener.replace(
      "${LB_LISTENER_ARN}",
      state.loadBalancerListenerArn,
    ),
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachingLoadBalancerTargetGroup
      .replace("${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName)
      .replace("${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}", NAMES.autoScalingGroupName),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
```

```
    await client.send(
      new AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
        TargetGroupARNs: [state.targetGroupArn],
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup",
    MESSAGES.attachedLoadBalancerTargetGroup,
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingInboundPort", MESSAGES.verifyingInboundPort),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "verifyInboundPort",
    /**
     *
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-ec2').SecurityGroup}}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      const { SecurityGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeSecurityGroupsCommand({
          Filters: [{ Name: "group-name", Values: ["default"] }],
        }),
      );
      if (!SecurityGroups) {
        state.verifyInboundPortError = new Error(MESSAGES.noSecurityGroups);
      }
      state.defaultSecurityGroup = SecurityGroups[0];

      /**
       * @type {string}
       */
      const ipResponse = (await axios.get("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")).data;
      state.myIp = ipResponse.trim();
      const myIpRules = state.defaultSecurityGroup.IpPermissions.filter(
        ({ IpRanges }) =>
          IpRanges.some(
            ({ CidrIp }) =>
              CidrIp.startsWith(state.myIp) || CidrIp === "0.0.0.0/0",
          ),
      )
        .filter(({ IpProtocol }) => IpProtocol === "tcp")
```

```
        .filter(({ FromPort }) => FromPort === 80);

      state.myIpRules = myIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "verifiedInboundPort",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return MESSAGES.foundIpRules.replace(
          "${IP_RULES}",
          JSON.stringify(state.myIpRules, null, 2),
        );
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioInput(
    "shouldAddInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ myIpRules: any[] }} state
     */
    (state) => {
      if (state.myIpRules.length > 0) {
        return false;
      }
      return MESSAGES.noIpRules;
    },
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "addInboundRule",
    /**
     * @param {{ defaultSecurityGroup: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ec2').SecurityGroup }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
      if (!state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
        return;
      }
```

```
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
          GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
          CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
          FromPort: 80,
          ToPort: 80,
          IpProtocol: "tcp",
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("addedInboundRule", (state) => {
    if (state.shouldAddInboundRule) {
      return MESSAGES.addedInboundRule.replace("${IP_ADDRESS}", state.myIp);
    }
    return false;
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifyingEndpoint", (state) =>
    MESSAGES.verifyingEndpoint.replace("${DNS_NAME}", state.loadBalancerDns),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("verifyEndpoint", async (state) => {
    try {
      const response = await retry({ intervalInMs: 2000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDns}`),
      );
      state.endpointResponse = JSON.stringify(response.data, null, 2);
    } catch (e) {
      state.verifyEndpointError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("verifiedEndpoint", (state) => {
    if (state.verifyEndpointError) {
      console.error(state.verifyEndpointError);
    } else {
      return MESSAGES.verifiedEndpoint.replace(
        "${ENDPOINT_RESPONSE}",
        state.endpointResponse,
      );
    }
  }),
  saveState,
];
```

Create steps to run the demo.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { join } from "node:path";

import axios from "axios";

import {
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  DescribeTargetHealthCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";
import {
  DescribeInstanceInformationCommand,
  PutParameterCommand,
  SSMClient,
  SendCommandCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import {
  IAMClient,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  CreateRoleCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  CreateInstanceProfileCommand,
  AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand,
  waitUntilInstanceProfileExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand,
  EC2Client,
  RebootInstancesCommand,
  ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";

import {
  ScenarioAction,
```

```
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES, RESOURCES_PATH } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

const getRecommendation = new ScenarioAction(
  "getRecommendation",
  async (state) => {
    const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
    if (loadBalancer) {
      state.loadBalancerDnsName = loadBalancer.DNSName;
      try {
        state.recommendation = (
          await axios.get(`http://${state.loadBalancerDnsName}`)
        ).data;
      } catch (e) {
        state.recommendation = e instanceof Error ? e.message : e;
      }
    } else {
      throw new Error(MESSAGES.demoFindLoadBalancerError);
    }
  },
);

const getRecommendationResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getRecommendationResult",
  (state) =>
    `Recommendation:\n${JSON.stringify(state.recommendation, null, 2)}`,
  { preformatted: true },
);

const getHealthCheck = new ScenarioAction("getHealthCheck", async (state) => {
  const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
  const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
      Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
    }),
  );

  const { TargetHealthDescriptions } = await client.send(
    new DescribeTargetHealthCommand({
```

```
      TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
    }),
  );
  state.targetHealthDescriptions = TargetHealthDescriptions;
});

const getHealthCheckResult = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getHealthCheckResult",
  /**
   * @param {{ targetHealthDescriptions: import('@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-
balancing-v2').TargetHealthDescription[]}} state
   */
  (state) => {
    const status = state.targetHealthDescriptions
      .map((th) => `${th.Target.Id}: ${th.TargetHealth.State}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Health check:\n${status}`;
  },
  { preformatted: true },
);

const loadBalancerLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "loadBalancerLoop",
  getRecommendation.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
      whileFn: ({ loadBalancerCheck }) => loadBalancerCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput(
        "loadBalancerCheck",
        MESSAGES.demoLoadBalancerCheck,
        {
          type: "confirm",
        },
      ),
      output: getRecommendationResult,
    },
  },
);

const healthCheckLoop = new ScenarioAction(
  "healthCheckLoop",
  getHealthCheck.action,
  {
    whileConfig: {
```

```
      whileFn: ({ healthCheck }) => healthCheck,
      input: new ScenarioInput("healthCheck", MESSAGES.demoHealthCheck, {
        type: "confirm",
      }),
      output: getHealthCheckResult,
    },
  },
);

const statusSteps = [
  getRecommendation,
  getRecommendationResult,
  getHealthCheck,
  getHealthCheckResult,
];

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const demoSteps = [
  new ScenarioOutput("header", MESSAGES.demoHeader, { header: true }),
  new ScenarioOutput("sanityCheck", MESSAGES.demoSanityCheck),
  ...statusSteps,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "brokenDependencyConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoBrokenDependencyConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("brokenDependency", async (state) => {
    if (!state.brokenDependencyConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    } else {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      state.badTableName = `fake-table-${Date.now()}`;
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
          Value: state.badTableName,
          Overwrite: true,
          Type: "String",
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
```

```
    new ScenarioOutput("testBrokenDependency", (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBrokenDependency.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        state.badTableName,
      ),
    ),
    ...statusSteps,
    new ScenarioInput(
      "staticResponseConfirmation",
      MESSAGES.demoStaticResponseConfirmation,
      { type: "confirm" },
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("staticResponse", async (state) => {
      if (!state.staticResponseConfirmation) {
        process.exit();
      } else {
        const client = new SSMClient({});
        await client.send(
          new PutParameterCommand({
            Name: NAMES.ssmFailureResponseKey,
            Value: "static",
            Overwrite: true,
            Type: "String",
          }),
        );
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioOutput("testStaticResponse", MESSAGES.demoTestStaticResponse),
    ...statusSteps,
    new ScenarioInput(
      "badCredentialsConfirmation",
      MESSAGES.demoBadCredentialsConfirmation,
      { type: "confirm" },
    ),
    new ScenarioAction("badCredentialsExit", (state) => {
      if (!state.badCredentialsConfirmation) {
        process.exit();
      }
    }),
    new ScenarioAction("fixDynamoDBName", async () => {
      const client = new SSMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new PutParameterCommand({
          Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
```

```
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "badCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling').Instance }}
state
     */
    async (state) => {
      await createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile();
      const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
      const { AutoScalingGroups } = await autoScalingClient.send(
        new DescribeAutoScalingGroupsCommand({
          AutoScalingGroupNames: [NAMES.autoScalingGroupName],
        }),
      );
      state.targetInstance = AutoScalingGroups[0].Instances[0];
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});
      const { IamInstanceProfileAssociations } = await ec2Client.send(
        new DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsCommand({
          Filters: [
            { Name: "instance-id", Values: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId] },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.instanceProfileAssociationId =
        IamInstanceProfileAssociations[0].AssociationId;
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
        ec2Client.send(
          new ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationCommand({
            AssociationId: state.instanceProfileAssociationId,
            IamInstanceProfile: { Name: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
          }),
        ),
      );

      await ec2Client.send(
        new RebootInstancesCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
        }),
```

```
      );

      const ssmClient = new SSMClient({});
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 }, async () => {
        const { InstanceInformationList } = await ssmClient.send(
          new DescribeInstanceInformationCommand({}),
        );

        const instance = InstanceInformationList.find(
          (info) => info.InstanceId === state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
        );

        if (!instance) {
          throw new Error("Instance not found.");
        }
      });

      await ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          InstanceIds: [state.targetInstance.InstanceId],
          DocumentName: "AWS-RunShellScript",
          Parameters: { commands: ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"] },
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput(
    "testBadCredentials",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').InstanceInformation}}
state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoTestBadCredentials.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
  ),
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "deepHealthCheckConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoDeepHealthCheckConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheckExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.deepHealthCheckConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deepHealthCheck", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmHealthCheckKey,
        Value: "deep",
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testDeepHealthCheck", MESSAGES.demoTestDeepHealthCheck),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "killInstanceConfirmation",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    (state) =>
      MESSAGES.demoKillInstanceConfirmation.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ID}",
        state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
      ),
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("killInstanceExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.killInstanceConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "killInstance",
    /**
     * @param {{ targetInstance: import('@aws-sdk/client-
ssm').InstanceInformation }} state
     */
    async (state) => {
```

```
      const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
      await client.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: state.targetInstance.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: false,
        }),
      );
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("testKillInstance", MESSAGES.demoTestKillInstance),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput("failOpenConfirmation", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenConfirmation, {
    type: "confirm",
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpenExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.failOpenConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("failOpen", () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    return client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: `fake-table-${Date.now()}`,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testFailOpen", MESSAGES.demoFailOpenTest),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
  new ScenarioInput(
    "resetTableConfirmation",
    MESSAGES.demoResetTableConfirmation,
    { type: "confirm" },
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("resetTableExit", (state) => {
    if (!state.resetTableConfirmation) {
      process.exit();
    }
  }),
```

```
  new ScenarioAction("resetTable", async () => {
    const client = new SSMClient({});
    await client.send(
      new PutParameterCommand({
        Name: NAMES.ssmTableNameKey,
        Value: NAMES.tableName,
        Overwrite: true,
        Type: "String",
      }),
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("testResetTable", MESSAGES.demoTestResetTable),
  healthCheckLoop,
  loadBalancerLoop,
];

async function createSsmOnlyInstanceProfile() {
  const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
  const { Policy } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreatePolicyCommand({
      PolicyName: NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      PolicyDocument: readFileSync(
        join(RESOURCES_PATH, "ssm_only_policy.json"),
      ),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new CreateRoleCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
        Version: "2012-10-17",
        Statement: [
          {
            Effect: "Allow",
            Principal: { Service: "ec2.amazonaws.com" },
            Action: "sts:AssumeRole",
          },
        ],
      }),
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
```

```
      PolicyArn: Policy.Arn,
    }),
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
    }),
  );
  const { InstanceProfile } = await iamClient.send(
    new CreateInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    }),
  );
  await waitUntilInstanceProfileExists(
    { client: iamClient },
    { InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName },
  );
  await iamClient.send(
    new AddRoleToInstanceProfileCommand({
      InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    }),
  );

  return InstanceProfile;
}
```

Create steps to destroy all of the resources.

```
import { unlinkSync } from "node:fs";

import { DynamoDBClient, DeleteTableCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  EC2Client,
  DeleteKeyPairCommand,
  DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand,
  RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ec2";
import {
  IAMClient,
  DeleteInstanceProfileCommand,
```

```
  RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  paginateListPolicies,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";
import {
  AutoScalingClient,
  DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand,
  paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-auto-scaling";
import {
  DeleteLoadBalancerCommand,
  DeleteTargetGroupCommand,
  DescribeTargetGroupsCommand,
  ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-elastic-load-balancing-v2";

import {
  ScenarioOutput,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioAction,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { loadState } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

import { MESSAGES, NAMES } from "./constants.js";
import { findLoadBalancer } from "./shared.js";

/**
 * @type {import('@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario.js').Step[]}
 */
export const destroySteps = [
  loadState,
  new ScenarioInput("destroy", MESSAGES.destroy, { type: "confirm" }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "abort",
    (state) => state.destroy === false && process.exit(),
  ),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteTable", async (c) => {
    try {
      const client = new DynamoDBClient({});
```

```
      await client.send(new DeleteTableCommand({ TableName: NAMES.tableName }));
    } catch (e) {
      c.deleteTableError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteTableResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteTableError) {
      console.error(state.deleteTableError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteTableError.replace(
        "${TABLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.tableName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedTable.replace("${TABLE_NAME}", NAMES.tableName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteKeyPair", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new EC2Client({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteKeyPairCommand({ KeyName: NAMES.keyPairName }),
      );
      unlinkSync(`${NAMES.keyPairName}.pem`);
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteKeyPairError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteKeyPairResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteKeyPairError) {
      console.error(state.deleteKeyPairError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteKeyPairError.replace(
        "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
        NAMES.keyPairName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedKeyPair.replace(
      "${KEY_PAIR_NAME}",
      NAMES.keyPairName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachPolicyFromRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);
```

```
      if (!policy) {
        state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = new Error(
          `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
        );
      } else {
        await client.send(
          new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
            RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
            PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
          }),
        );
      }
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachPolicyFromRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachedPolicyFromRole", (state) => {
    if (state.detachPolicyFromRoleError) {
      console.error(state.detachPolicyFromRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.detachPolicyFromRoleError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedPolicyFromRole
      .replace("${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.instancePolicyName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstancePolicy", async (state) => {
    const client = new IAMClient({});
    const policy = await findPolicy(NAMES.instancePolicyName);

    if (!policy) {
      state.deletePolicyError = new Error(
        `Policy ${NAMES.instancePolicyName} not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      return client.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: policy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deletePolicyResult", (state) => {
```

```
    if (state.deletePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deletePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deletePolicyError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.instancePolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedPolicy.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.instancePolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("removeRoleFromInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("removeRoleFromInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfile) {
      console.error(state.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.removeRoleFromInstanceProfileError
        .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
        .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.removedRoleFromInstanceProfile
      .replace("${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceProfileName)
      .replace("${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.instanceRoleName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.instanceRoleName,
        }),
      );
```

```
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceRoleError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceRole.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.instanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.instanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.instanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteAutoScalingGroup", async (state) => {
    try {
```

```
      await terminateGroupInstances(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 60000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        await deleteAutoScalingGroup(NAMES.autoScalingGroupName);
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteAutoScalingGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteAutoScalingGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteAutoScalingGroupError.replace(
        "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedAutoScalingGroup.replace(
      "${AUTO_SCALING_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.autoScalingGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLaunchTemplate", async (state) => {
    const client = new EC2Client({});
    try {
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLaunchTemplateCommand({
          LaunchTemplateName: NAMES.launchTemplateName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLaunchTemplateError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLaunchTemplateResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLaunchTemplateError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLaunchTemplateError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLaunchTemplateError.replace(
        "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
        NAMES.launchTemplateName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLaunchTemplate.replace(
      "${LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME}",
      NAMES.launchTemplateName,
```

```
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancer", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
      const loadBalancer = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
      await client.send(
        new DeleteLoadBalancerCommand({
          LoadBalancerArn: loadBalancer.LoadBalancerArn,
        }),
      );
      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 }, async () => {
        const lb = await findLoadBalancer(NAMES.loadBalancerName);
        if (lb) {
          throw new Error("Load balancer still exists.");
        }
      });
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerError.replace(
        "${LB_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancer.replace(
      "${LB_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroup", async (state) => {
    const client = new ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client({});
    try {
      const { TargetGroups } = await client.send(
        new DescribeTargetGroupsCommand({
          Names: [NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName],
        }),
      );

      await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
```

```
        client.send(
          new DeleteTargetGroupCommand({
            TargetGroupArn: TargetGroups[0].TargetGroupArn,
          }),
        ),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError) {
      console.error(state.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteLoadBalancerTargetGroupError.replace(
        "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
        NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedLoadBalancerTargetGroup.replace(
      "${TARGET_GROUP_NAME}",
      NAMES.loadBalancerTargetGroupName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const client = new IAMClient({});
      await client.send(
        new RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyRoleFromProfileError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyRoleFromProfile
```

```
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${PROFILE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyCustomRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
          PolicyArn: "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore",
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError) {
      console.error(state.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError);
```

```
      return MESSAGES.detachSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicyError
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
    }
    return MESSAGES.detachedSsmOnlyAWSRolePolicy
      .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName)
      .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", "AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore");
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfile", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteInstanceProfileCommand({
          InstanceProfileName: NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyInstanceProfileError.replace(
        "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyInstanceProfile.replace(
      "${INSTANCE_PROFILE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyInstanceProfileName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyPolicy", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      const ssmOnlyPolicy = await findPolicy(NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName);
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeletePolicyCommand({
          PolicyArn: ssmOnlyPolicy.Arn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError = e;
```

```
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyPolicyResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyPolicyError.replace(
        "${POLICY_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyPolicy.replace(
      "${POLICY_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyPolicyName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction("deleteSsmOnlyRole", async (state) => {
    try {
      const iamClient = new IAMClient({});
      await iamClient.send(
        new DeleteRoleCommand({
          RoleName: NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
        }),
      );
    } catch (e) {
      state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError = e;
    }
  }),
  new ScenarioOutput("deleteSsmOnlyRoleResult", (state) => {
    if (state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError) {
      console.error(state.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError);
      return MESSAGES.deleteSsmOnlyRoleError.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.deletedSsmOnlyRole.replace(
      "${ROLE_NAME}",
      NAMES.ssmOnlyRoleName,
    );
  }),
  new ScenarioAction(
    "revokeSecurityGroupIngress",
    async (
```

```
      /** @type {{ myIp: string, defaultSecurityGroup: { GroupId: string } }} */
 state,
    ) => {
      const ec2Client = new EC2Client({});

      try {
        await ec2Client.send(
          new RevokeSecurityGroupIngressCommand({
            GroupId: state.defaultSecurityGroup.GroupId,
            CidrIp: `${state.myIp}/32`,
            FromPort: 80,
            ToPort: 80,
            IpProtocol: "tcp",
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError = e;
      }
    },
  ),
  new ScenarioOutput("revokeSecurityGroupIngressResult", (state) => {
    if (state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError) {
      console.error(state.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError);
      return MESSAGES.revokeSecurityGroupIngressError.replace(
        "${IP}",
        state.myIp,
      );
    }
    return MESSAGES.revokedSecurityGroupIngress.replace("${IP}", state.myIp);
  }),
];

/**
 * @param {string} policyName
 */
async function findPolicy(policyName) {
  const client = new IAMClient({});
  const paginatedPolicies = paginateListPolicies({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedPolicies) {
    const policy = page.Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === policyName);
    if (policy) {
      return policy;
    }
  }
```

```
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function deleteAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAutoScalingGroupCommand({
        AutoScalingGroupName: groupName,
      }),
    );
  } catch (err) {
    if (!(err instanceof Error)) {
      throw err;
    }
    console.log(err.name);
    throw err;
  }
}

/**
 * @param {string} groupName
 */
async function terminateGroupInstances(groupName) {
  const autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const group = await findAutoScalingGroup(groupName);
  await autoScalingClient.send(
    new UpdateAutoScalingGroupCommand({
      AutoScalingGroupName: group.AutoScalingGroupName,
      MinSize: 0,
    }),
  );
  for (const i of group.Instances) {
    await retry({ intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 30 }, () =>
      autoScalingClient.send(
        new TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupCommand({
          InstanceId: i.InstanceId,
          ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity: true,
        }),
      ),
    );
  }
```

```
}

async function findAutoScalingGroup(groupName) {
  const client = new AutoScalingClient({});
  const paginatedGroups = paginateDescribeAutoScalingGroups({ client }, {});
  for await (const page of paginatedGroups) {
    const group = page.AutoScalingGroups.find(
      (g) => g.AutoScalingGroupName === groupName,
    );
    if (group) {
      return group;
    }
  }
  throw new Error(`Auto scaling group ${groupName} not found.`);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets

- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

AWS IoT SiteWise examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with AWS IoT SiteWise.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT SiteWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT SiteWise.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListAssetModels,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
```

```
// Call ListDocuments and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient();
  const listAssetModelsPaginated = [];
  console.log(
    "Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n",
  );
  try {
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListAssetModels({ client }, { maxResults: 5 });
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listAssetModelsPaginated.push(...page.assetModelSummaries);
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(`There was a problem saying hello: ${caught.message}`);
    throw caught;
  }
  for (const { name, creationDate } of listAssetModelsPaginated) {
    console.log(`${name} - ${creationDate}`);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the property ID values.
- Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the value of the AWS IoT SiteWise Asset property.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Describe the AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
  //} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
} from "../../libs/scenario/index.js";
import {
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
  CreateAssetModelCommand,
  CreateAssetCommand,
  ListAssetModelPropertiesCommand,
  BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  GetAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  CreatePortalCommand,
  DescribePortalCommand,
  CreateGatewayCommand,
  DescribeGatewayCommand,
  DeletePortalCommand,
  DeleteGatewayCommand,
```

```
  DeleteAssetCommand,
  DeleteAssetModelCommand,
  DescribeAssetModelCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import {
  CloudFormationClient,
  CreateStackCommand,
  DeleteStackCommand,
  DescribeStacksCommand,
  waitUntilStackExists,
  waitUntilStackCreateComplete,
  waitUntilStackDeleteComplete,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudformation";
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";

const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
const __dirname = dirname(__filename);
const stackName = "SiteWiseBasicsStack";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   iotSiteWiseClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise').IotSiteWiseClient,
 *   cloudFormationClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
cloudformation').CloudFormationClient,
 *   stackName,
 *   stack,
 *   askToDeleteResources: true,
 *   asset: {assetName: "MyAsset1"},
 *   assetModel: {assetModelName: "MyAssetModel1"},
 *   portal: {portalName: "MyPortal1"},
 *   gateway: {gatewayName: "MyGateway1"},
 *   propertyIds: [],
 *   contactEmail: "user@mydomain.com",
 *   thing: "MyThing1",
 *   sampleData: { temperature: 23.5, humidity: 65.0}
 * }} State
 */

/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
```

```
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "confirm",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  `AWS IoT SiteWise is a fully managed industrial software-as-a-service (SaaS)
 that makes it easy to collect, store, organize, and monitor data from industrial
 equipment and processes. It is designed to help industrial and manufacturing
 organizations collect data from their equipment and processes, and use that data to
 make informed decisions about their operations.
One of the key features of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to connect to a wide
 range of industrial equipment and systems, including programmable logic controllers
 (PLCs), sensors, and other industrial devices. It can collect data from these
 devices and organize it into a unified data model, making it easier to analyze and
 gain insights from the data. AWS IoT SiteWise also provides tools for visualizing
 the data, setting up alarms and alerts, and generating reports.
Another key feature of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to scale to handle large
 volumes of data. It can collect and store data from thousands of devices and
 process millions of data points per second, making it suitable for large-scale
 industrial operations. Additionally, AWS IoT SiteWise is designed to be secure
 and compliant, with features like role-based access controls, data encryption,
 and integration with other AWS services for additional security and compliance
 features.

Let's get started...`,
  { header: true },
);

const displayBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayBuildCloudFormationStack",
  "This scenario uses AWS CloudFormation to create an IAM role that is required for
 this scenario. The stack will now be deployed.",
);

const sdkBuildCloudFormationStack = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkBuildCloudFormationStack",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const data = readFileSync(
        `${__dirname}/../../../../resources/cfn/iotsitewise_basics/SitewiseRoles-
template.yml`,
```

```
        "utf8",
      );
      await state.cloudFormationClient.send(
        new CreateStackCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
          TemplateBody: data,
          Capabilities: ["CAPABILITY_IAM"],
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilStackExists(
        { client: state.cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      await waitUntilStackCreateComplete(
        { client: state.cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      const stack = await state.cloudFormationClient.send(
        new DescribeStacksCommand({
          StackName: stackName,
        }),
      );
      state.stack = stack.Stacks[0].Outputs[0];
      console.log(`The ARN of the IAM role is ${state.stack.OutputValue}`);
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel",
  `1. Create an AWS SiteWise Asset Model
An AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model is a way to represent the physical assets, such
 as equipment, processes, and systems, that exist in an industrial environment.
 This model provides a structured and hierarchical representation of these assets,
 allowing users to define the relationships and properties of each asset.

This scenario creates two asset model properties: temperature and humidity.`,
);

const sdkCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel",
```

```
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    let assetModelResponse;
    try {
      assetModelResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreateAssetModelCommand({
          assetModelName: state.assetModel.assetModelName,
          assetModelProperties: [
            {
              name: "Temperature",
              dataType: "DOUBLE",
              type: {
                measurement: {},
              },
            },
            {
              name: "Humidity",
              dataType: "DOUBLE",
              type: {
                measurement: {},
              },
            },
          ],
        }),
      );
      state.assetModel.assetModelId = assetModelResponse.assetModelId;
      console.log(
        `Asset Model successfully created. Asset Model ID:
 ${state.assetModel.assetModelId}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceAlreadyExistsException") {
        console.log(
          `The Asset Model ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} already exists.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel",
```

```
  `2. Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset
The IoT SiteWise model that we just created defines the structure and metadata for
 your physical assets. Now we create an asset from the asset model.

Let's wait 30 seconds for the asset to be ready.`,
);

const waitThirtySeconds = new ScenarioAction("waitThirtySeconds", async () => {
  await wait(30); // wait 30 seconds
  console.log("Time's up! Let's check the asset's status.");
});

const sdkCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const assetResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreateAssetCommand({
          assetModelId: state.assetModel.assetModelId,
          assetName: state.asset.assetName,
        }),
      );
      state.asset.assetId = assetResponse.assetId;
      console.log(`Asset created with ID: ${state.asset.assetId}`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(
          `The Asset ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} was not found.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayRetrievePropertyId = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayRetrievePropertyId",
  `3. Retrieve the property ID values

To send data to an asset, we need to get the property ID values. In this scenario,
 we access the temperature and humidity property ID values.`,
);
```

```
const sdkRetrievePropertyId = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkRetrievePropertyId",
  async (state) => {
    try {
      const retrieveResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new ListAssetModelPropertiesCommand({
          assetModelId: state.assetModel.assetModelId,
        }),
      );
      for (const retrieveResponseKey in
 retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries) {
        if (
          retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[retrieveResponseKey]
            .name === "Humidity"
        ) {
          state.propertyIds.Humidity =
            retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[
              retrieveResponseKey
            ].id;
        }
        if (
          retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[retrieveResponseKey]
            .name === "Temperature"
        ) {
          state.propertyIds.Temperature =
            retrieveResponse.assetModelPropertySummaries[
              retrieveResponseKey
            ].id;
        }
      }
      console.log(`The Humidity propertyId is ${state.propertyIds.Humidity}`);
      console.log(
        `The Temperature propertyId is ${state.propertyIds.Temperature}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseException") {
        console.log(
          `There was a problem retrieving the properties: ${caught.message}`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  },
);

const displaySendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displaySendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  `4. Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset

By sending data to an IoT SiteWise Asset, you can aggregate data from multiple
 sources, normalize the data into a standard format, and store it in a centralized
 location. This makes it easier to analyze and gain insights from the data.

In this example, we generate sample temperature and humidity data and send it to the
 AWS IoT SiteWise asset.`,
);

const sdkSendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkSendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  async (state) => {
    try {
      const sendResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand({
          entries: [
            {
              entryId: "entry-3",
              assetId: state.asset.assetId,
              propertyId: state.propertyIds.Humidity,
              propertyValues: [
                {
                  value: {
                    doubleValue: state.sampleData.humidity,
                  },
                  timestamp: {
                    timeInSeconds: Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000),
                  },
                },
              ],
            },
            {
              entryId: "entry-4",
              assetId: state.asset.assetId,
              propertyId: state.propertyIds.Temperature,
              propertyValues: [
                {
```

```
                  value: {
                    doubleValue: state.sampleData.temperature,
                  },
                  timestamp: {
                    timeInSeconds: Math.floor(Date.now() / 1000),
                  },
                },
              ],
            },
          ],
        }),
      );
      console.log("The data was sent successfully.");
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  `5. Retrieve the value of the IoT SiteWise Asset property

IoT SiteWise is an AWS service that allows you to collect, process, and analyze
 industrial data from connected equipment and sensors. One of the key benefits of
 reading an IoT SiteWise property is the ability to gain valuable insights from your
 industrial data.`,
);

const sdkRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const temperatureResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new GetAssetPropertyValueCommand({
          assetId: state.asset.assetId,
          propertyId: state.propertyIds.Temperature,
        }),
      );
```

```
      const humidityResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new GetAssetPropertyValueCommand({
          assetId: state.asset.assetId,
          propertyId: state.propertyIds.Humidity,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `The property value for Temperature is
 ${temperatureResponse.propertyValue.value.doubleValue}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `The property value for Humidity is
 ${humidityResponse.propertyValue.value.doubleValue}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayCreateIoTSiteWisePortal = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateIoTSiteWisePortal",
  `6. Create an IoT SiteWise Portal

An IoT SiteWise Portal allows you to aggregate data from multiple industrial
 sources, such as sensors, equipment, and control systems, into a centralized
 platform.`,
);

const sdkCreateIoTSiteWisePortal = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateIoTSiteWisePortal",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const createPortalResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreatePortalCommand({
          portalName: state.portal.portalName,
          portalContactEmail: state.contactEmail,
          roleArn: state.stack.OutputValue,
        }),
```

```
      );
      state.portal = { ...state.portal, ...createPortalResponse };
      await wait(5); // Allow the portal to properly propagate.
      console.log(
        `Portal created successfully. Portal ID ${createPortalResponse.portalId}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseException") {
        console.log(
          `There was a problem creating the Portal: ${caught.message}.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const displayDescribePortal = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDescribePortal",
  `7. Describe the Portal

In this step, we get a description of the portal and display the portal URL.`,
);

const sdkDescribePortal = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDescribePortal",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const describePortalResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DescribePortalCommand({
          portalId: state.portal.portalId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(`Portal URL: ${describePortalResponse.portalStartUrl}`);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Portal ${state.portal.portalName} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
```

```
  },
);

const displayCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  `8. Create an IoT SiteWise Gateway

IoT SiteWise Gateway serves as the bridge between industrial equipment, sensors, and
 the cloud-based IoT SiteWise service. It is responsible for securely collecting,
 processing, and transmitting data from various industrial assets to the IoT
 SiteWise platform, enabling real-time monitoring, analysis, and optimization of
 industrial operations.`,
);

const sdkCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const createGatewayResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new CreateGatewayCommand({
          gatewayName: state.gateway.gatewayName,
          gatewayPlatform: {
            greengrassV2: {
              coreDeviceThingName: state.thing,
            },
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Gateway creation completed successfully. ID is
 ${createGatewayResponse.gatewayId}`,
      );
      state.gateway.gatewayId = createGatewayResponse.gatewayId;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseException") {
        console.log(
          `There was a problem creating the gateway: ${caught.message}.`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
```

```
);

const displayDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  "9. Describe the IoT SiteWise Gateway",
);

const sdkDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const describeGatewayResponse = await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DescribeGatewayCommand({
          gatewayId: state.gateway.gatewayId,
        }),
      );
      console.log("Gateway creation completed successfully.");
      console.log(`Gateway Name: ${describeGatewayResponse.gatewayName}`);
      console.log(`Gateway ARN: ${describeGatewayResponse.gatewayArn}`);
      console.log(
        `Gateway Platform: ${Object.keys(describeGatewayResponse.gatewayPlatform)}`,
      );
      console.log(
        `Gateway Creation Date: ${describeGatewayResponse.creationDate}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Gateway ${state.gateway.gatewayId} was not found.`);
        throw caught;
      }
      console.error(`${caught.message}`);
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const askToDeleteResources = new ScenarioInput(
  "askToDeleteResources",
  `10. Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets

Before you can delete the Asset Model, you must delete the assets.`,
  { type: "confirm" },
);
```

```
const displayConfirmDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "displayConfirmDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (state.askToDeleteResources) {
      return "You selected to delete the SiteWise assets.";
    }
    return "The resources will not be deleted. Please delete them manually to avoid
 charges.";
  },
);

const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    await wait(10); // Give the portal status time to catch up.
    try {
      await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DeletePortalCommand({
          portalId: state.portal.portalId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Portal ${state.portal.portalName} was deleted successfully.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Portal ${state.portal.portalName} was not found.`);
      } else {
        console.log(`When trying to delete the portal: ${caught.message}`);
      }
    }

    try {
      await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
        new DeleteGatewayCommand({
          gatewayId: state.gateway.gatewayId,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Gateway ${state.gateway.gatewayName} was deleted successfully.`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
        console.log(`The Gateway ${state.gateway.gatewayId} was not found.`);
```

```
    } else {
      console.log(`When trying to delete the gateway: ${caught.message}`);
    }
  }

  try {
    await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
      new DeleteAssetCommand({
        assetId: state.asset.assetId,
      }),
    );
    await wait(5); // Allow the delete to finish.
    console.log(`Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was deleted successfully.`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
      console.log(`The Asset ${state.asset.assetName} was not found.`);
    } else {
      console.log(`When deleting the asset: ${caught.message}`);
    }
  }

  await wait(30); // Allow asset deletion to finish.
  try {
    await state.iotSiteWiseClient.send(
      new DeleteAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelId: state.assetModel.assetModelId,
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `Asset Model ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} was deleted successfully.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught.name === "ResourceNotFoundException") {
      console.log(
        `The Asset Model ${state.assetModel.assetModelName} was not found.`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(`When deleting the asset model: ${caught.message}`);
    }
  }

  try {
    await state.cloudFormationClient.send(
      new DeleteStackCommand({
```

```
          StackName: stackName,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilStackDeleteComplete(
        { client: state.cloudFormationClient },
        { StackName: stackName },
      );
      console.log("The stack was deleted successfully.");
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(
        `${caught.message}. The stack was NOT deleted. Please clean up the resources
 manually.`,
      );
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.askToDeleteResources },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "This concludes the IoT Sitewise Basics scenario for the AWS Javascript SDK v3.
 Thank you!",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario(
  "IoTSiteWise Basics",
  [
    greet,
    pressEnter,
    displayBuildCloudFormationStack,
    sdkBuildCloudFormationStack,
    pressEnter,
    displayCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel,
    sdkCreateAWSSiteWiseAssetModel,
    displayCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel,
    pressEnter,
    waitThirtySeconds,
    sdkCreateAWSIoTSiteWiseAssetModel,
    pressEnter,
    displayRetrievePropertyId,
    sdkRetrievePropertyId,
    pressEnter,
    displaySendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    sdkSendDataToIoTSiteWiseAsset,
```

```
    pressEnter,
    displayRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    sdkRetrieveValueOfIoTSiteWiseAsset,
    pressEnter,
    displayCreateIoTSiteWisePortal,
    sdkCreateIoTSiteWisePortal,
    pressEnter,
    displayDescribePortal,
    sdkDescribePortal,
    pressEnter,
    displayCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    sdkCreateIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    pressEnter,
    displayDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    sdkDescribeIoTSiteWiseGateway,
    pressEnter,
    askToDeleteResources,
    displayConfirmDeleteResources,
    sdkDeleteResources,
    goodbye,
  ],
  {
    iotSiteWiseClient: new IoTSiteWiseClient({}),
    cloudFormationClient: new CloudFormationClient({}),
    asset: { assetName: "MyAsset1" },
    assetModel: { assetModelName: "MyAssetModel1" },
    portal: { portalName: "MyPortal1" },
    gateway: { gatewayName: "MyGateway1" },
    propertyIds: [],
    contactEmail: "user@mydomain.com",
    thing: "MyThing1",
    sampleData: { temperature: 23.5, humidity: 65.0 },
  },
);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
```

```
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

Actions

`BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Batch put asset property values.
 * @param {{ entries : array }}
 */
export const main = async ({ entries }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new BatchPutAssetPropertyValueCommand({
        entries: entries,
```

```
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset properties batch put successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. A resource could not be found.`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateAsset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAsset`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateAssetCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an Asset.
 * @param {{ assetName : string, assetModelId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetName, assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
```

```
      new CreateAssetCommand({
        assetName: assetName, // The name to give the Asset.
        assetModelId: assetModelId, // The ID of the asset model from which to
 create the asset.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The asset model could not be found. Please check the
 asset model id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAssetModel`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateAssetModelCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
```

```
 * Create an Asset Model.
 * @param {{ assetName : string, assetModelId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelName, assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreateAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelName: assetModelName, // The name to give the Asset Model.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem creating the asset model.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGateway`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateGatewayCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create a Gateway.
 * @param {{  }}
 */
export const main = async ({ gatewayName }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreateGatewayCommand({
        gatewayName: gatewayName, // The name to give the created Gateway.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Gateway created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem creating the Gateway.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreatePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePortal`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreatePortalCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create a Portal.
 * @param {{ portalName: string, portalContactEmail: string, roleArn: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ portalName, portalContactEmail, roleArn }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new CreatePortalCommand({
        portalName: portalName, // The name to give the created Portal.
        portalContactEmail: portalContactEmail, // A valid contact email.
        roleArn: roleArn, // The ARN of a service role that allows the portal's
 users to access the portal's resources.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Portal created successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem creating the Portal.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAsset`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAsset`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeleteAssetCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an asset.
 * @param {{ assetId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAssetCommand({
        assetId: assetId, // The model id to delete.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset deleted successfully.");
    return { assetDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem deleting the asset.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAssetModel`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeleteAssetModelCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an asset model.
 * @param {{ assetModelId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelId: assetModelId, // The model id to delete.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model deleted successfully.");
    return { assetModelDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem deleting the asset model.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGateway`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeleteGatewayCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM document.
 * @param {{ content: string, name: string, documentType?: DocumentType }}
 */
export const main = async ({ gatewayId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteGatewayCommand({
        gatewayId: gatewayId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Gateway deleted successfully.");
    return { gatewayDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The Gateway could not be found. Please check the Gateway
 Id.`,
```

```
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeletePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePortal`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DeletePortalCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * List asset models.
 * @param {{ portalId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ portalId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeletePortalCommand({
        portalId: portalId, // The id of the portal.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Portal deleted successfully.");
```

```
    return { portalDeleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem deleting the portal. Please check
 the portal id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAssetModel`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DescribeAssetModelCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe an asset model.
 * @param {{ assetModelId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
```

```
    const { assetModelDescription } = await client.send(
      new DescribeAssetModelCommand({
        assetModelId: assetModelId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model information retrieved successfully.");
    return { assetModelDescription: assetModelDescription };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The asset model could not be found. Please check the
 asset model id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssetModel in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeGateway`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DescribeGatewayCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM document.
```

```
 * @param {{ content: string, name: string, documentType?: DocumentType }}
 */
export const main = async ({ gatewayId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const { gatewayDescription } = await client.send(
      new DescribeGatewayCommand({
        gatewayId: gatewayId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Gateway information retrieved successfully.");
    return { gatewayDescription: gatewayDescription };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The Gateway could not be found. Please check the Gateway
 Id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePortal`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  DescribePortalCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe a portal.
 * @param {{ portalId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ portalId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new DescribePortalCommand({
        portalId: portalId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Portal information retrieved successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The Portal could not be found. Please check the Portal
 Id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetAssetPropertyValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAssetPropertyValue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetAssetPropertyValueCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe an asset property value.
 * @param {{ entryId : string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ entryId }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new GetAssetPropertyValueCommand({
        entryId: entryId, // The ID of the Gateway to describe.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset property information retrieved successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ResourceNotFound") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. The asset property entry could not be found. Please
 check the entry id.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListAssetModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAssetModels`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ListAssetModelsCommand,
  IoTSiteWiseClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iotsitewise";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * List asset models.
 * @param {{ assetModelTypes : array }}
 */
export const main = async ({ assetModelTypes = [] }) => {
  const client = new IoTSiteWiseClient({});
  try {
    const result = await client.send(
      new ListAssetModelsCommand({
        assetModelTypes: assetModelTypes, // The model types to list
      }),
    );
    console.log("Asset model types retrieved successfully.");
    return result;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "IoTSiteWiseError") {
      console.warn(
        `${caught.message}. There was a problem listing the asset model types.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`PutRecords`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecords`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { PutRecordsCommand, KinesisClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-kinesis";

/**
 * Put multiple records into a Kinesis stream.
 * @param {{ streamArn: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({ streamArn }) => {
  const client = new KinesisClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
```

```
      new PutRecordsCommand({
        StreamARN: streamArn,
        Records: [
          {
            Data: new Uint8Array(),
            /**
             * Determines which shard in the stream the data record is assigned to.
             * Partition keys are Unicode strings with a maximum length limit of 256
             * characters for each key. Amazon Kinesis Data Streams uses the
 partition
             * key as input to a hash function that maps the partition key and
             * associated data to a specific shard.
             */
            PartitionKey: "TEST_KEY",
          },
          {
            Data: new Uint8Array(),
            PartitionKey: "TEST_KEY",
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error) {
      //
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const options = {
    streamArn: {
      type: "string",
      description: "The ARN of the stream.",
    },
  };

  const { values } = parseArgs({ options });
```

```
  main(values);
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecords in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
};
```

```
async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
    logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  }
};
```

```
async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Javascript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
      return {
```

```
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
  KinesisStreamBatchResponse,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<KinesisStreamBatchResponse> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
```

```
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Lambda examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { LambdaClient, paginateListFunctions } from "@aws-sdk/client-lambda";

const client = new LambdaClient({});

export const helloLambda = async () => {
  const paginator = paginateListFunctions({ client }, {});
  const functions = [];

  for await (const page of paginator) {
    const funcNames = page.Functions.map((f) => f.FunctionName);
    functions.push(...funcNames);
  }

  console.log("Functions:");
  console.log(functions.join("\n"));
  return functions;
};
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that grants Lambda permission to write to logs.

```
    logger.log(`Creating role (${NAME_ROLE_LAMBDA})...`);
    const response = await createRole(NAME_ROLE_LAMBDA);

import { AttachRolePolicyCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} policyArn
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const attachRolePolicy = (policyArn, roleName) => {
  const command = new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
```

```
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
    RoleName: roleName,
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

Create a Lambda function and upload handler code.

```
const createFunction = async (funcName, roleArn) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${funcName}.zip`);

  const command = new CreateFunctionCommand({
    Code: { ZipFile: code },
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Role: roleArn,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.

```
const invoke = async (funcName, payload) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new InvokeCommand({
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Payload: JSON.stringify(payload),
    LogType: LogType.Tail,
  });

  const { Payload, LogResult } = await client.send(command);
  const result = Buffer.from(Payload).toString();
  const logs = Buffer.from(LogResult, "base64").toString();
  return { logs, result };
};
```

Update the function code and configure its Lambda environment with an environment variable.

```
const updateFunctionCode = async (funcName, newFunc) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${newFunc}.zip`);
  const command = new UpdateFunctionCodeCommand({
    ZipFile: code,
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};

const updateFunctionConfiguration = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const config = readFileSync(`${dirname}../functions/config.json`).toString();
  const command = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationCommand({
    ...JSON.parse(config),
    FunctionName: funcName,
  });
  const result = client.send(command);
  waitForFunctionUpdated({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return result;
};
```

List the functions for your account.

```
const listFunctions = () => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new ListFunctionsCommand({});

  return client.send(command);
};
```

Delete the IAM role and the Lambda function.

```
import { DeleteRoleCommand, IAMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

const client = new IAMClient({});

/**
 *
 * @param {string} roleName
 */
export const deleteRole = (roleName) => {
  const command = new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: roleName });
  return client.send(command);
};

/**
 * @param {string} funcName
 */
const deleteFunction = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new DeleteFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const createFunction = async (funcName, roleArn) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${funcName}.zip`);

  const command = new CreateFunctionCommand({
    Code: { ZipFile: code },
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Role: roleArn,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * @param {string} funcName
 */
const deleteFunction = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new DeleteFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const getFunction = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new GetFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const invoke = async (funcName, payload) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new InvokeCommand({
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Payload: JSON.stringify(payload),
    LogType: LogType.Tail,
  });

  const { Payload, LogResult } = await client.send(command);
  const result = Buffer.from(Payload).toString();
  const logs = Buffer.from(LogResult, "base64").toString();
  return { logs, result };
};
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const listFunctions = () => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const command = new ListFunctionsCommand({});
```

```
  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const updateFunctionCode = async (funcName, newFunc) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const code = await readFile(`${dirname}../functions/${newFunc}.zip`);
  const command = new UpdateFunctionCodeCommand({
    ZipFile: code,
    FunctionName: funcName,
    Architectures: [Architecture.arm64],
    Handler: "index.handler", // Required when sending a .zip file
    PackageType: PackageType.Zip, // Required when sending a .zip file
    Runtime: Runtime.nodejs16x, // Required when sending a .zip file
  });

  return client.send(command);
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
const updateFunctionConfiguration = (funcName) => {
  const client = new LambdaClient({});
  const config = readFileSync(`${dirname}../functions/config.json`).toString();
  const command = new UpdateFunctionConfigurationCommand({
    ...JSON.parse(config),
    FunctionName: funcName,
  });
  const result = client.send(command);
  waitForFunctionUpdated({ FunctionName: funcName });
  return result;
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Automatically confirm known users with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to automatically confirm known Amazon Cognito users with a Lambda function.

- Configure a user pool to call a Lambda function for the `PreSignUp` trigger.
- Sign up a user with Amazon Cognito.
- The Lambda function scans a DynamoDB table and automatically confirms known users.
- Sign in as the new user, then clean up resources.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure an interactive "Scenario" run. The JavaScript (v3) examples share a Scenario runner to streamline complex examples. The complete source code is on GitHub.

```
import { AutoConfirm } from "./scenario-auto-confirm.js";

/**
 * The context is passed to every scenario. Scenario steps
 * will modify the context.
 */
const context = {
  errors: [],
  users: [
    {
      UserName: "test_user_1",
      UserEmail: "test_email_1@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_2",
      UserEmail: "test_email_2@example.com",
    },
    {
      UserName: "test_user_3",
      UserEmail: "test_email_3@example.com",
    },
  ],
};

/**
 * Three Scenarios are created for the workflow. A Scenario is an orchestration
 class
 * that simplifies running a series of steps.
 */
export const scenarios = {
  // Demonstrate automatically confirming known users in a database.
```

```
  "auto-confirm": AutoConfirm(context),
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseScenarioArgs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  parseScenarioArgs(scenarios, {
    name: "Cognito user pools and triggers",
    description:
      "Demonstrate how to use the AWS SDKs to customize Amazon Cognito
 authentication behavior.",
  });
}
```

This Scenario demonstrates auto-confirming a known user. It orchestrates the example steps.

```
import { wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";

import {
  getStackOutputs,
  logCleanUpReminder,
  promptForStackName,
  promptForStackRegion,
  skipWhenErrors,
} from "./steps-common.js";
import { populateTable } from "./actions/dynamodb-actions.js";
import {
  addPreSignUpHandler,
  deleteUser,
  getUser,
  signIn,
  signUpUser,
} from "./actions/cognito-actions.js";
import {
```

```
  getLatestLogStreamForLambda,
  getLogEvents,
} from "./actions/cloudwatch-logs-actions.js";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   errors: Error[],
 *   password: string,
 *   users: { UserName: string, UserEmail: string }[],
 *   selectedUser?: string,
 *   stackName?: string,
 *   stackRegion?: string,
 *   token?: string,
 *   confirmDeleteSignedInUser?: boolean,
 *   TableName?: string,
 *   UserPoolClientId?: string,
 *   UserPoolId?: string,
 *   UserPoolArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerArn?: string,
 *   AutoConfirmHandlerName?: string
 * }} State
 */

const greeting = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greeting",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `This demo will populate some users into the \
database created as part of the "${state.stackName}" stack. \
Then the AutoConfirmHandler will be linked to the PreSignUp \
trigger from Cognito. Finally, you will choose a user to sign up.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsers = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsers",
  "Populating the DynamoDB table with some users.",
  { skipWhenErrors: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logPopulatingUsersComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logPopulatingUsersComplete",
  "Done populating users.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

```
const populateUsers = new ScenarioAction(
  "populateUsers",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await populateTable({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      tableName: state.TableName,
      items: state.users,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTrigger",
  "Setting up the PreSignUp trigger for the Cognito User Pool.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const setupSignUpTrigger = new ScenarioAction(
  "setupSignUpTrigger",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await addPreSignUpHandler({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      handlerArn: state.AutoConfirmHandlerArn,
    });
    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete",
  (
    /** @type {State} */ state,
```

```
  ) => `The lambda function "${state.AutoConfirmHandlerName}" \
has been configured as the PreSignUp trigger handler for the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const selectUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "selectedUser",
  "Select a user to sign up.",
  {
    type: "select",
    choices: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users.map((u) => u.UserName),
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
    default: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.users[0].UserName,
  },
);

const checkIfUserAlreadyExists = new ScenarioAction(
  "checkIfUserAlreadyExists",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [user, err] = await getUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      userPoolId: state.UserPoolId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
    });

    if (err?.name === "UserNotFoundException") {
      // Do nothing. We're not expecting the user to exist before
      // sign up is complete.
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    if (user) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          `The user "${state.selectedUser}" already exists in the user pool
 "${state.UserPoolId}".`,
        ),
      );
```

```
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: skipWhenErrors,
  },
);

const createPassword = new ScenarioInput(
  "password",
  "Enter a password that has at least eight characters, uppercase, lowercase,
 numbers and symbols.",
  { type: "password", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors, default: "Abcd1234!" },
);

const logSignUpExistingUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Signing up user "${state.selectedUser}".`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signUpExistingUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signUpExistingUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const signUp = (password) =>
      signUpUser({
        region: state.stackRegion,
        userPoolClientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
        username: state.selectedUser,
        email: state.users.find((u) => u.UserName === state.selectedUser)
          .UserEmail,
        password,
      });

    let [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);

    while (err?.name === "InvalidPasswordException") {
      console.warn("The password you entered was invalid.");
      await createPassword.handle(state);
      [_, err] = await signUp(state.password);
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
```

```
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignUpExistingUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignUpExistingUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `"${state.selectedUser} was signed up successfully.`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logLambdaLogs = new ScenarioAction(
  "logLambdaLogs",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    console.log(
      "Waiting a few seconds to let Lambda write to CloudWatch Logs...\n",
    );
    await wait(10);

    const [logStream, logStreamErr] = await getLatestLogStreamForLambda({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
    });
    if (logStreamErr) {
      state.errors.push(logStreamErr);
      return;
    }

    console.log(
      `Getting some recent events from log stream "${logStream.logStreamName}"`,
    );
    const [logEvents, logEventsErr] = await getLogEvents({
      functionName: state.AutoConfirmHandlerName,
      region: state.stackRegion,
      eventCount: 10,
      logStreamName: logStream.logStreamName,
    });
    if (logEventsErr) {
      state.errors.push(logEventsErr);
      return;
    }

    console.log(logEvents.map((ev) => `\t${ev.message}`).join(""));
  },
```

```
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUser = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUser",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => `Let's sign in as ${state.selectedUser}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const signInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "signInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [response, err] = await signIn({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      clientId: state.UserPoolClientId,
      username: state.selectedUser,
      password: state.password,
    });

    if (err?.name === "PasswordResetRequiredException") {
      state.errors.push(new Error("Please reset your password."));
      return;
    }

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
      return;
    }

    state.token = response?.AuthenticationResult?.AccessToken;
  },
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const logSignInUserComplete = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logSignInUserComplete",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Successfully signed in. Your access token starts with: ${state.token.slice(0,
 11)}`,
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const confirmDeleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirmDeleteSignedInUser",
```

```
  "Do you want to delete the currently signed in user?",
  { type: "confirm", skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);

const deleteSignedInUser = new ScenarioAction(
  "deleteSignedInUser",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const [_, err] = await deleteUser({
      region: state.stackRegion,
      accessToken: state.token,
    });

    if (err) {
      state.errors.push(err);
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      skipWhenErrors(state) || !state.confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
  },
);

const logErrors = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logErrors",
  (/** @type {State}*/ state) => {
    const errorList = state.errors
      .map((err) => ` - ${err.name}: ${err.message}`)
      .join("\n");
    return `Scenario errors found:\n${errorList}`;
  },
  {
    // Don't log errors when there aren't any!
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) => state.errors.length === 0,
  },
);

export const AutoConfirm = (context) =>
  new Scenario(
    "AutoConfirm",
    [
      promptForStackName,
      promptForStackRegion,
      getStackOutputs,
      greeting,
```

```
      logPopulatingUsers,
      populateUsers,
      logPopulatingUsersComplete,
      logSetupSignUpTrigger,
      setupSignUpTrigger,
      logSetupSignUpTriggerComplete,
      selectUser,
      checkIfUserAlreadyExists,
      createPassword,
      logSignUpExistingUser,
      signUpExistingUser,
      logSignUpExistingUserComplete,
      logLambdaLogs,
      logSignInUser,
      signInUser,
      logSignInUserComplete,
      confirmDeleteSignedInUser,
      deleteSignedInUser,
      logCleanUpReminder,
      logErrors,
    ],
    context,
  );
```

These are steps that are shared with other Scenarios.

```
import {
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/scenario.js";
import { getCfnOutputs } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/sdk/cfn-outputs.js";

export const skipWhenErrors = (state) => state.errors.length > 0;

export const getStackOutputs = new ScenarioAction(
  "getStackOutputs",
  async (state) => {
    if (!state.stackName || !state.stackRegion) {
      state.errors.push(
        new Error(
          "No stack name or region provided. The stack name and \
```

```
region are required to fetch CFN outputs relevant to this example.",
        ),
      );
      return;
    }

    const outputs = await getCfnOutputs(state.stackName, state.stackRegion);
    Object.assign(state, outputs);
  },
);

export const promptForStackName = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackName",
  "Enter the name of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "PoolsAndTriggersStack" },
);

export const promptForStackRegion = new ScenarioInput(
  "stackRegion",
  "Enter the region of the stack you deployed earlier.",
  { type: "input", default: "us-east-1" },
);

export const logCleanUpReminder = new ScenarioOutput(
  "logCleanUpReminder",
  "All done. Remember to run 'cdk destroy' to teardown the stack.",
  { skipWhen: skipWhenErrors },
);
```

A handler for the `PreSignUp` trigger with a Lambda function.

```
import type { PreSignUpTriggerEvent, Handler } from "aws-lambda";
import type { UserRepository } from "./user-repository";
import { DynamoDBUserRepository } from "./user-repository";

export class PreSignUpHandler {
  private userRepository: UserRepository;

  constructor(userRepository: UserRepository) {
    this.userRepository = userRepository;
  }
```

```
  private isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): boolean {
    return event.triggerSource === "PreSignUp_SignUp";
  }

  private getEventUserEmail(event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent): string {
    return event.request.userAttributes.email;
  }

  async handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(
    event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent,
  ): Promise<PreSignUpTriggerEvent> {
    console.log(
      `Received presignup from ${event.triggerSource} for user '${event.userName}'`,
    );

    if (!this.isPreSignUpTriggerSource(event)) {
      return event;
    }

    const eventEmail = this.getEventUserEmail(event);
    console.log(`Looking up email ${eventEmail}.`);
    const storedUserInfo =
      await this.userRepository.getUserInfoByEmail(eventEmail);

    if (!storedUserInfo) {
      console.log(
        `Email ${eventEmail} not found. Email verification is required.`,
      );
      return event;
    }

    if (storedUserInfo.UserName !== event.userName) {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found, but stored UserName
'${storedUserInfo.UserName}' does not match supplied UserName '${event.userName}'.
Verification is required.`,
      );
    } else {
      console.log(
        `UserEmail ${eventEmail} found with matching UserName
${storedUserInfo.UserName}. User is confirmed.`,
      );
      event.response.autoConfirmUser = true;
      event.response.autoVerifyEmail = true;
```

```
    }
    return event;
  }
}

const createPreSignUpHandler = (): PreSignUpHandler => {
  const tableName = process.env.TABLE_NAME;
  if (!tableName) {
    throw new Error("TABLE_NAME environment variable is not set");
  }

  const userRepository = new DynamoDBUserRepository(tableName);
  return new PreSignUpHandler(userRepository);
};

export const handler: Handler = async (event: PreSignUpTriggerEvent) => {
  const preSignUpHandler = createPreSignUpHandler();
  return preSignUpHandler.handlePreSignUpTriggerEvent(event);
};
```

Module of CloudWatch Logs actions.

```
import {
  CloudWatchLogsClient,
  GetLogEventsCommand,
  OrderBy,
  paginateDescribeLogStreams,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs";

/**
 * Get the latest log stream for a Lambda function.
 * @param {{ functionName: string, region: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").LogStream | null,
 unknown]>}
 */
export const getLatestLogStreamForLambda = async ({ functionName, region }) => {
  try {
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const paginator = paginateDescribeLogStreams(
      { client: cwlClient },
```

```
      {
        descending: true,
        limit: 1,
        orderBy: OrderBy.LastEventTime,
        logGroupName,
      },
    );

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      return [page.logStreams[0], null];
    }
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Get the log events for a Lambda function's log stream.
 * @param {{
 *   functionName: string,
 *   logStreamName: string,
 *   eventCount: number,
 *   region: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cloudwatch-logs").OutputLogEvent[] |
 null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getLogEvents = async ({
  functionName,
  logStreamName,
  eventCount,
  region,
}) => {
  try {
    const cwlClient = new CloudWatchLogsClient({ region });
    const logGroupName = `/aws/lambda/${functionName}`;
    const response = await cwlClient.send(
      new GetLogEventsCommand({
        logStreamName: logStreamName,
        limit: eventCount,
        logGroupName: logGroupName,
      }),
    );
```

```
    return [response.events, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of Amazon Cognito actions.

```
import {
  AdminGetUserCommand,
  CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
  DeleteUserCommand,
  InitiateAuthCommand,
  SignUpCommand,
  UpdateUserPoolCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-provider";

/**
 * Connect a Lambda function to the PreSignUp trigger for a Cognito user pool
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, handlerArn: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").UpdateUserPoolCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const addPreSignUpHandler = async ({
  region,
  userPoolId,
  handlerArn,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const command = new UpdateUserPoolCommand({
      UserPoolId: userPoolId,
      LambdaConfig: {
        PreSignUp: handlerArn,
      },
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(command);
```

```
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Attempt to register a user to a user pool with a given username and password.
 * @param {{
 *   region: string,
 *   userPoolClientId: string,
 *   username: string,
 *   email: string,
 *   password: string
 * }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").SignUpCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signUpUser = async ({
  region,
  userPoolClientId,
  username,
  email,
  password,
}) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({
      region,
    });

    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new SignUpCommand({
        ClientId: userPoolClientId,
        Username: username,
        Password: password,
        UserAttributes: [{ Name: "email", Value: email }],
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

```
/**
 * Sign in a user to Amazon Cognito using a username and password authentication
 flow.
 * @param {{ region: string, clientId: string, username: string, password: string }}
 config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").InitiateAuthCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const signIn = async ({ region, clientId, username, password }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new InitiateAuthCommand({
        AuthFlow: "USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
        ClientId: clientId,
        AuthParameters: { USERNAME: username, PASSWORD: password },
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};

/**
 * Retrieve an existing user from a user pool.
 * @param {{ region: string, userPoolId: string, username: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").AdminGetUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const getUser = async ({ region, userPoolId, username }) => {
  try {
    const cognitoClient = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await cognitoClient.send(
      new AdminGetUserCommand({
        UserPoolId: userPoolId,
        Username: username,
      }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

```
/**
 * Delete the signed-in user. Useful for allowing a user to delete their
 * own profile.
 * @param {{ region: string, accessToken: string }} config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/client-cognito-identity-
provider").DeleteUserCommandOutput | null, unknown]>}
 */
export const deleteUser = async ({ region, accessToken }) => {
  try {
    const client = new CognitoIdentityProviderClient({ region });
    const response = await client.send(
      new DeleteUserCommand({ AccessToken: accessToken }),
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

Module of DynamoDB actions.

```
import { DynamoDBClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-dynamodb";
import {
  BatchWriteCommand,
  DynamoDBDocumentClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb";

/**
 * Populate a DynamoDB table with provide items.
 * @param {{ region: string, tableName: string, items: Record<string, unknown>[] }}
 config
 * @returns {Promise<[import("@aws-sdk/lib-dynamodb").BatchWriteCommandOutput |
 null, unknown]>}
 */
export const populateTable = async ({ region, tableName, items }) => {
  try {
    const ddbClient = new DynamoDBClient({ region });
    const docClient = DynamoDBDocumentClient.from(ddbClient);
    const response = await docClient.send(
      new BatchWriteCommand({
```

```
        RequestItems: {
          [tableName]: items.map((item) => ({
            PutRequest: {
              Item: item,
            },
          })),
        },
      },
    );
    return [response, null];
  } catch (err) {
    return [null, err];
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteUser
  - InitiateAuth
  - SignUp
  - UpdateUserPool

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
```

```
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
```

```
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);
```

```
  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Invoke a Lambda function from a browser

The following code example shows how to invoke an AWS Lambda function from a browser.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

You can create a browser-based application that uses an AWS Lambda function to update an Amazon DynamoDB table with user selections. This app uses AWS SDK for JavaScript v3.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
/*
Node.js code here.
*/
// ES6+ example
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

async function createAuthToken() {
  // Define connection authentication parameters
  const dbinfo = {

    hostname: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    port: process.env.Port,
    username: process.env.DBUserName,
    region: process.env.AWS_REGION,

  }

  // Create RDS Signer object
  const signer = new Signer(dbinfo);

  // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
  const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
```

```
  return token;
}

async function dbOps() {

  // Obtain auth token
  const token = await createAuthToken();
  // Define connection configuration
  let connectionConfig = {
    host: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    user: process.env.DBUserName,
    password: token,
    database: process.env.DBName,
    ssl: 'Amazon RDS'
  }
  // Create the connection to the DB
  const conn = await mysql.createConnection(connectionConfig);
  // Obtain the result of the query
  const [res,] = await conn.execute('select ?+? as sum', [3, 2]);
  return res;

}

export const handler = async (event) => {
  // Execute database flow
  const result = await dbOps();
  // Return result
  return {
    statusCode: 200,
    body: JSON.stringify("The selected sum is: " + result[0].sum)
  }
};
```

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using TypeScript.

```
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

// RDS settings
// Using '!' (non-null assertion operator) to tell the TypeScript compiler that the
 DB settings are not null or undefined,
```

```
const proxy_host_name = process.env.PROXY_HOST_NAME!
const port = parseInt(process.env.PORT!)
const db_name = process.env.DB_NAME!
const db_user_name = process.env.DB_USER_NAME!
const aws_region = process.env.AWS_REGION!


async function createAuthToken(): Promise<string> {

    // Create RDS Signer object
    const signer = new Signer({
        hostname: proxy_host_name,
        port: port,
        region: aws_region,
        username: db_user_name
    });

    // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
    const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
    return token;
}

async function dbOps(): Promise<mysql.QueryResult | undefined> {
    try {
        // Obtain auth token
        const token = await createAuthToken();
        const conn = await mysql.createConnection({
            host: proxy_host_name,
            user: db_user_name,
            password: token,
            database: db_name,
            ssl: 'Amazon RDS' // Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL connection
        });
        const [rows, fields] = await conn.execute('SELECT ? + ? AS sum', [3, 2]);
        console.log('result:', rows);
        return rows;
    }
    catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
    }
}

export const lambdaHandler = async (event: any): Promise<{ statusCode: number; body:
 string }> => {
```

```
    // Execute database flow
    const result = await dbOps();

    // Return error is result is undefined
    if (result == undefined)
        return {
            statusCode: 500,
            body: JSON.stringify(`Error with connection to DB host`)
        }

    // Return result
    return {
        statusCode: 200,
        body: JSON.stringify(`The selected sum is: ${result[0].sum}`)
    };
};
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
```

```
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
```

```
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      throw err;
    }
    logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  }
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
```

```
};

const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    console.log(JSON.stringify(event, null, 2));
    event.Records.forEach(record => {
        logDynamoDBRecord(record);
    });
}
const logDynamoDBRecord = (record) => {
    console.log(record.eventID);
    console.log(record.eventName);
    console.log(`DynamoDB Record: ${JSON.stringify(record.dynamodb)}`);
};
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
console.log('Loading function');
```

```
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
    event.events.forEach(record => {
        logDocumentDBEvent(record);
    });
    return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record) => {
    console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
    console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
    console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
    console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null,
 2));
};
```

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using TypeScript

```
import { DocumentDBEventRecord, DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext } from 'aws-
lambda';

console.log('Loading function');

export const handler = async (
  event: DocumentDBEventSubscriptionContext,
  context: any
): Promise<string> => {
  event.events.forEach((record: DocumentDBEventRecord) => {
    logDocumentDBEvent(record);
  });
  return 'OK';
};

const logDocumentDBEvent = (record: DocumentDBEventRecord): void => {
  console.log('Operation type: ' + record.event.operationType);
  console.log('db: ' + record.event.ns.db);
  console.log('collection: ' + record.event.ns.coll);
  console.log('Full document:', JSON.stringify(record.event.fullDocument, null, 2));
};
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
exports.handler = async (event) => {
    // Iterate through keys
    for (let key in event.records) {
      console.log('Key: ', key)
      // Iterate through records
      event.records[key].map((record) => {
        console.log('Record: ', record)
        // Decode base64
        const msg = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString()
        console.log('Message:', msg)
      })
    }
}
```

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import { MSKEvent, Context } from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";

const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "msk-handler-sample",
});
```

```
export const handler = async (
  event: MSKEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const [topic, topicRecords] of Object.entries(event.records)) {
    logger.info(`Processing key: ${topic}`);

    // Process each record in the partition
    for (const record of topicRecords) {
      try {
        // Decode the message value from base64
        const decodedMessage = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString();

        logger.info({
          message: decodedMessage
        });
      }
      catch (error) {
        logger.error('Error processing event', { error });
        throw error;
      }
    };
  }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

const client = new S3Client();

export const handler = async (event, context) => {

    // Get the object from the event and show its content type
    const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
    const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g, '
 '));

    try {
        const { ContentType } = await client.send(new HeadObjectCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
            Key: key,
        }));

        console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
        return ContentType;

    } catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
        const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make
 sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
        console.log(message);
        throw new Error(message);
    }
};
```

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { S3Event } from 'aws-lambda';
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from '@aws-sdk/client-s3';

const s3 = new S3Client({ region: process.env.AWS_REGION });

export const handler = async (event: S3Event): Promise<string | undefined> => {
  // Get the object from the event and show its content type
```

```
  const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
  const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g, '
 '));
  const params = {
    Bucket: bucket,
    Key: key,
  };
  try {
    const { ContentType } = await s3.send(new HeadObjectCommand(params));
    console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
    return ContentType;
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
    const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make sure
 they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
    console.log(message);
    throw new Error(message);
  }
};
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
```

```
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record) {
  try {
    const message = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SNSEvent, Context, SNSHandler, SNSEventRecord } from "aws-lambda";

export const functionHandler: SNSHandler = async (
  event: SNSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SNSEventRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    const message: string = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message) {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, Context, SQSHandler, SQSRecord } from "aws-lambda";
```

```
export const functionHandler: SQSHandler = async (
  event: SQSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message: SQSRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Javascript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      console.log(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      console.log(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  console.log(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(payload) {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import {
  KinesisStreamEvent,
  Context,
  KinesisStreamHandler,
  KinesisStreamRecordPayload,
  KinesisStreamBatchResponse,
} from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";
```

```
const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "kinesis-stream-handler-sample",
});

export const functionHandler: KinesisStreamHandler = async (
  event: KinesisStreamEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<KinesisStreamBatchResponse> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    try {
      logger.info(`Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: ${record.eventID}`);
      const recordData = await getRecordDataAsync(record.kinesis);
      logger.info(`Record Data: ${recordData}`);
      // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    } catch (err) {
      logger.error(`An error occurred ${err}`);
      /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
           Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
      return {
        batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record.kinesis.sequenceNumber }],
      };
    }
  }
  logger.info(`Successfully processed ${event.Records.length} records.`);
  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};

async function getRecordDataAsync(
  payload: KinesisStreamRecordPayload
): Promise<string> {
  var data = Buffer.from(payload.data, "base64").toString("utf-8");
  await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  return data;
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
export const handler = async (event) => {
  const records = event.Records;
  let curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

  for (const record of records) {
    try {
      // Process your record
      curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb.SequenceNumber;
    } catch (e) {
      // Return failed record's sequence number
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: curRecordSequenceNumber }] };
    }
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: [] };
};
```

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import {
  DynamoDBBatchResponse,
  DynamoDBBatchItemFailure,
  DynamoDBStreamEvent,
} from "aws-lambda";
```

```
export const handler = async (
  event: DynamoDBStreamEvent
): Promise<DynamoDBBatchResponse> => {
  const batchItemFailures: DynamoDBBatchItemFailure[] = [];
  let curRecordSequenceNumber;

  for (const record of event.Records) {
    curRecordSequenceNumber = record.dynamodb?.SequenceNumber;

    if (curRecordSequenceNumber) {
      batchItemFailures.push({
        itemIdentifier: curRecordSequenceNumber,
      });
    }
  }

  return { batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures };
};
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Node.js 20.x Lambda runtime, AWS SDK for Javascript V3
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    const batchItemFailures = [];
    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
```

```
            await processMessageAsync(record, context);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }
    return { batchItemFailures };
};

async function processMessageAsync(record, context) {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error("There is an error in the SQS Message.");
    }
    console.log(`Processed message: ${record.body}`);
}
```

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, SQSBatchResponse, Context, SQSBatchItemFailure, SQSRecord } from
 'aws-lambda';

export const handler = async (event: SQSEvent, context: Context):
 Promise<SQSBatchResponse> => {
    const batchItemFailures: SQSBatchItemFailure[] = [];

    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }

    return {batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures};
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SQSRecord): Promise<void> {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error('There is an error in the SQS Message.');
    }
    console.log(`Processed message ${record.body}`);
}
```

Amazon Lex examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Lex.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Building an Amazon Lex chatbot

The following code example shows how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example Building an Amazon Lex chatbot in the AWS SDK for JavaScript developer guide.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Location examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Location.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Location Service

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Location Service.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  LocationClient,
  ListGeofenceCollectionsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";

/**
 * Lists geofences from a specified geofence collection asynchronously.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const region = "eu-west-1";
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  const listGeofenceCollParams = {
    MaxResults: 100,
  };
  try {
```

```
    const command = new ListGeofenceCollectionsCommand(listGeofenceCollParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    const geofenceEntries = response.Entries;
    if (geofenceEntries.length === 0) {
      console.log("No Geofences were found in the collection.");
    } else {
      for (const geofenceEntry of geofenceEntries) {
        console.log(`Geofence ID: ${geofenceEntry.CollectionName}`);
      }
    }
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${error} \n Exiting
 program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Location map.
- Create an Amazon Location API key.
- Display Map URL.
- Create a geofence collection.

- Store a geofence geometry.
- Create a tracker resource.
- Update the position of a device.
- Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.
- Create a route calculator.
- Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver.
- Use Amazon Location higher level APIs.
- Delete the Amazon Location Assets.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
Before running this JavaScript code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
This demo illustrates how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) to work with Amazon
 Location Service.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-javascript/v3/developer-guide/getting-
started.html
*/

import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";

import {
  CreateMapCommand,
```

```
  CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  PutGeofenceCommand,
  CreateTrackerCommand,
  BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand,
  GetDevicePositionCommand,
  CreateRouteCalculatorCommand,
  CalculateRouteCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ConflictException,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
  DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand,
  DeleteTrackerCommand,
  DeleteMapCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";

import {
  GeoPlacesClient,
  ReverseGeocodeCommand,
  SearchNearbyCommand,
  SearchTextCommand,
  GetPlaceCommand,
  ValidationException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-geo-places";

import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";

/*The inputs for this example can be edited in the ./input.json.*/
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

/**
 * Used repeatedly to have the user press enter.
 * @type {ScenarioInput}
 */
/* v8 ignore next 3 */
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "confirm",
  verbose: "false",
});

const pressEnterConfirm = new ScenarioInput(
  "confirm",
  "Press Enter to continue",
```

```
  {
    type: "confirm",
    verbose: "false",
  },
);

const region = "eu-west-1";

const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  "Welcome to the Amazon Location Use demo! \n" +
    "AWS Location Service is a fully managed service offered by Amazon Web Services
 (AWS) that " +
    "provides location-based services for developers. This service simplifies " +
    "the integration of location-based features into applications, making it " +
    "Maps: The service provides access to high-quality maps, satellite imagery, " +
    "and geospatial data from various providers, allowing developers to " +
    "easily embed maps into their applications:\n" +
    "Tracking: The Location Service enables real-time tracking of mobile devices, "
 +
    "assets, or other entities, allowing developers to build applications " +
    "that can monitor the location of people, vehicles, or other objects.\n" +
    "Geocoding: The service provides the ability to convert addresses or " +
    "location names into geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude), " +
    "and vice versa, enabling developers to integrate location-based search " +
    "and routing functionality into their applications. " +
    "Please define values ./inputs.json for each user-defined variable used in this
 app. Otherwise the default is used:\n" +
    "- mapName: The name of the map to be create (default is 'AWSMap').\n" +
    "- keyName: The name of the API key to create (default is ' AWSApiKey')\n" +
    "- collectionName: The name of the geofence collection (default is
 'AWSLocationCollection')\n" +
    "- geoId: The geographic identifier used for the geofence or map (default is
 'geoId')\n" +
    "- trackerName: The name of the tracker (default is 'geoTracker')\n" +
    "- calculatorName: The name of the route calculator (default is
 'AWSRouteCalc')\n" +
    "- deviceId: The ID of the device (default is 'iPhone-112356')",

  { header: true },
);
const displayCreateAMap = new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
  "displayCreateAMap",
  "1. Create a map\n" +
    "An AWS Location map can enhance the user experience of your " +
    " application by providing accurate and personalized location-based " +
    " features. For example, you could use the geocoding capabilities to " +
    " allow users to search for and locate businesses, landmarks, or " +
    " other points of interest within a specific region.",
);

const sdkCreateAMap = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateAMap",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const createMapParams = {
      MapName: `${data.inputs.mapName}`,
      Configuration: { style: "VectorEsriNavigation" },
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateMapCommand(createMapParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.MapName = response.MapName;
      console.log("Map created. Map ARN is: ", state.MapName);
    } catch (error) {
      console.error("Error creating map: ", error);
      throw error;
    }
  },
);

const displayMapUrl = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayMapUrl",
  "2. Display Map URL\n" +
    "When you embed a map in a web app or website, the API key is " +
    "included in the map tile URL to authenticate requests. You can " +
    "restrict API keys to specific AWS Location operations (e.g., only " +
    "maps, not geocoding). API keys can expire, ensuring temporary " +
    "access control.\n" +
    "In order to get the MAP URL you need to create and get the API Key value. " +
    "You can create and get the key value using the AWS Management Console under " +
    "Location Services. These operations cannot be completed using the " +
    "AWS SDK. For more information about getting the key value, see " +
    "the AWS Location Documentation.",
);

const sdkDisplayMapUrl = new ScenarioAction(
```

```
  "sdkDisplayMapUrl",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const mapURL = `https://maps.geo.aws.amazon.com/maps/v0/maps/${state.MapName}/
tiles/{z}/{x}/{y}?key=API_KEY_VALUE`;
    state.mapURL = mapURL;
    console.log(
      `Replace \'API_KEY_VALUE\' in the following URL with the value for the API key
 you create and get from the AWS Management Console under Location Services. This is
 then the Map URL you can embed this URL in your Web app:\n
${state.mapURL}`,
    );
  },
);
const displayCreateGeoFenceColl = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateGeoFenceColl",
  "3. Create a geofence collection, which manages and stores geofences.",
);

const sdkCreateGeoFenceColl = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateGeoFenceColl",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Creates a new geofence collection.
    const geoFenceCollParams = {
      CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand(geoFenceCollParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.CollectionName = response.CollectionName;
      console.log(
        `The geofence collection was successfully created: ${state.CollectionName}`,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `An unexpected error occurred while creating the geofence collection:
 ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayStoreGeometry = new ScenarioOutput(
```

```
  "displayStoreGeometry",
  "4. Store a geofence geometry in a given geofence collection. " +
    "An AWS Location geofence is a virtual boundary that defines a geographic area "
 +
    "on a map. It is a useful feature for tracking the location of " +
    "assets or monitoring the movement of objects within a specific region. " +
    "To define a geofence, you need to specify the coordinates of a " +
    "polygon that represents the area of interest. The polygon must be " +
    "defined in a counter-clockwise direction, meaning that the points of " +
    "the polygon must be listed in a counter-clockwise order. " +
    "This is a requirement for the AWS Location service to correctly " +
    "interpret the geofence and ensure that the location data is " +
    "accurately processed within the defined area.",
);

const sdkStoreGeometry = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkStoreGeometry",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const geoFenceGeoParams = {
      CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
      GeofenceId: `${data.inputs.geoId}`,
      Geometry: {
        Polygon: [
          [
            [-122.3381, 47.6101],
            [-122.3281, 47.6101],
            [-122.3281, 47.6201],
            [-122.3381, 47.6201],
            [-122.3381, 47.6101],
          ],
        ],
      },
    };
    try {
      const command = new PutGeofenceCommand(geoFenceGeoParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.GeoFencId = response.GeofenceId;
      console.log("GeoFence created. GeoFence ID is: ", state.GeoFencId);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${caught.message} \n
 Exiting program.`,
        );
```

```
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayCreateTracker = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateTracker",
  "5. Create a tracker resource which lets you retrieve current and historical
 location of devices.",
);

const sdkCreateTracker = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateTracker",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    //Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to track
 the location of devices.
    const createTrackerParams = {
      TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
      Description: "Created using the JavaScript V3 SDK",
      PositionFiltering: "TimeBased",
    };
    try {
      const command = new CreateTrackerCommand(createTrackerParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.trackerName = response.TrackerName;
      console.log("Tracker created. Tracker name is : ", state.trackerName);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${caught.message} \n
 Exiting program.`,
        );
      } else {
        `An unexpected error error occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`;
      }
      return;
    }
  },
);
const displayUpdatePosition = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayUpdatePosition",
  "6. Update the position of a device in the location tracking system." +
    "The AWS Location Service does not enforce a strict format for deviceId, but it
 must:\n " +
```

```
    "- Be a string (case-sensitive).\n" +
    "- Be 1-100 characters long.\n" +
    "- Contain only: Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9); Underscores (_);
 Hyphens (-); and be the same ID used when sending and retrieving positions.",
);

const sdkUpdatePosition = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkUpdatePosition",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.

    const updateDevicePosParams = {
      TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
      Updates: [
        {
          DeviceId: `${data.inputs.deviceId}`,
          SampleTime: new Date(),
          Position: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
        },
      ],
    };
    try {
      const command = new BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand(
        updateDevicePosParams,
      );
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log(
        `Device with id ${data.inputs.deviceId} was successfully updated in the
 location tracking system. `,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `A validation error occurred while updating the device: ${caught.message}
 \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayRetrievePosition = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayRetrievePosition",
  "7. Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.",
);
```

```
const sdkRetrievePosition = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkRetrievePosition",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const devicePositionParams = {
      TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
      DeviceId: `${data.inputs.deviceId}`,
    };
    try {
      const command = new GetDevicePositionCommand(devicePositionParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.position = response.Position;
      console.log("Successfully fetched device position: : ", state.position);
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `"The resource was not found: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      } else {
        `An unexpected error error occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`;
      }
      return;
    }
  },
);
const displayCreateRouteCalc = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayCreateRouteCalc",
  "8. Create a route calculator.",
);

const sdkCreateRouteCalc = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateRouteCalc",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const routeCalcParams = {
      CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
      DataSource: "Esri",
    };
    try {
      // Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
      const command = new CreateRouteCalculatorCommand(routeCalcParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      state.CalculatorName = response.CalculatorName;
      console.log(
        "Route calculator created successfully. Calculator name is: ",
```

```
        state.CalculatorName,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);
const displayDetermineDist = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDetermineDist",
  "9. Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver using the route
 calculator.",
);

const sdkDetermineDist = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDetermineDist",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    // Calculates the distance between two locations asynchronously.
    const determineDist = {
      CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
      DeparturePosition: [-122.3321, 47.6062],
      DestinationPosition: [-123.1216, 49.2827],
      TravelMode: "Car",
      DistanceUnit: "Kilometers",
    };
    try {
      const command = new CalculateRouteCommand(determineDist);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);

      console.log(
        "Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is : ",
        response.Summary.Distance,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
        console.error(
          `Failed to calculate route: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
      }
      return;
```

```
    }
  },
);
const displayUseGeoPlacesClient = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayUseGeoPlacesClient",
  "10. Use the GeoPlacesAsyncClient to perform additional operations. " +
    "This scenario will show use of the GeoPlacesClient that enables" +
    "location search and geocoding capabilities for your applications. " +
    "We are going to use this client to perform these AWS Location tasks: \n" +
    " - Reverse Geocoding (reverseGeocode): Converts geographic coordinates into
 addresses.\n " +
    " - Place Search (searchText): Finds places based on search queries.\n " +
    " - Nearby Search (searchNearby): Finds places near a specific location.\n " +
    "First we will perform a Reverse Geocoding operation",
);

const sdkUseGeoPlacesClient = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkUseGeoPlacesClient",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const geoPlacesClient = new GeoPlacesClient({ region: region });

    const reverseGeoCodeParams = {
      QueryPosition: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
    };
    const searchTextParams = {
      QueryText: "coffee shop",
      BiasPosition: [-122.4194, 37.7749], //San Fransisco
    };
    const searchNearbyParams = {
      QueryPosition: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
      QueryRadius: Number("1000"),
    };
    try {
      /*   Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
     Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates (latitude
 and longitude) to a human-readable address.
     This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input, and
 prints the resulting address.*/

      console.log("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194.");
      const command = new ReverseGeocodeCommand(reverseGeoCodeParams);
      const response = await geoPlacesClient.send(command);
      console.log(
        "Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is : ",
```

```
        response.ResultItems[0].Distance,
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
    try {
      console.log(
        "Now we are going to perform a text search using coffee shop",
      );

      /*Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the detailed
information of the first result.
 @param searchTextParams the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
coffee shop)*/

      const command = new SearchTextCommand(searchTextParams);
      const response = await geoPlacesClient.send(command);
      const placeId = response.ResultItems[0].PlaceId.toString();
      const getPlaceCommand = new GetPlaceCommand({
        PlaceId: placeId,
      });
      const getPlaceResponse = await geoPlacesClient.send(getPlaceCommand);
      console.log(
        `Detailed Place Information: \n Name and address:
${getPlaceResponse.Address.Label}`,
      );

      const foodTypes = getPlaceResponse.FoodTypes;
      if (foodTypes.length) {
        console.log("Food Types: ");
        for (const foodType of foodTypes) {
          console.log("- ", foodType.LocalizedName);
        }
      } else {
        console.log("No food types available.");
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
```

```
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
    try {
      console.log("\nNow we are going to perform a nearby search.");
      const command = new SearchNearbyCommand(searchNearbyParams);
      const response = await geoPlacesClient.send(command);
      const resultItems = response.ResultItems;
      console.log("\nSuccessfully performed nearby search.");
      for (const resultItem of resultItems) {
        console.log("Name and address: ", resultItem.Address.Label);
        console.log("Distance: ", resultItem.Distance);
      }
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof ValidationException) {
        console.error(
          `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
        );
        return;
      }
    }
  },
);

const displayDeleteResources = new ScenarioOutput(
  "displayDeleteResources",
  "11. Delete the AWS Location Services resources. " +
    "Would you like to delete the AWS Location Services resources? (y/n)",
);

const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkDeleteResources",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const deleteGeofenceCollParams = {
      CollectionName: `${state.CollectionName}`,
    };
    const deleteRouteCalculatorParams = {
      CalculatorName: `${state.CalculatorName}`,
    };
    const deleteTrackerParams = { TrackerName: `${state.trackerName}` };
    const deleteMapParams = { MapName: `${state.MapName}` };
    try {
```

```
      const command = new DeleteMapCommand(deleteMapParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Map deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting map: ", error);
    }
    try {
      const command = new DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand(
        deleteGeofenceCollParams,
      );
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Geofence collection deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting geofence collection: ", error);
    }
    try {
      const command = new DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand(
        deleteRouteCalculatorParams,
      );
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Route calculator deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting route calculator: ", error);
    }
    try {
      const command = new DeleteTrackerCommand(deleteTrackerParams);
      const response = await locationClient.send(command);
      console.log("Tracker deleted.");
    } catch (error) {
      console.log("Error deleting tracker: ", error);
    }
  },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "Thank you for checking out the Amazon Location Service Use demo. We hope you " +
    "learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today!" +
    " For more Amazon Location Services examples in different programming languages,
 have a look at: " +
    "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/
location_code_examples.html",
);
```

```
const myScenario = new Scenario("Location Services Scenario", [
  greet,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateAMap,
  sdkCreateAMap,
  pressEnter,
  displayMapUrl,
  sdkDisplayMapUrl,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateGeoFenceColl,
  sdkCreateGeoFenceColl,
  pressEnter,
  displayStoreGeometry,
  sdkStoreGeometry,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateTracker,
  sdkCreateTracker,
  pressEnter,
  displayUpdatePosition,
  sdkUpdatePosition,
  pressEnter,
  displayRetrievePosition,
  sdkRetrievePosition,
  pressEnter,
  displayCreateRouteCalc,
  sdkCreateRouteCalc,
  pressEnter,
  displayDetermineDist,
  sdkDetermineDist,
  pressEnter,
  displayUseGeoPlacesClient,
  sdkUseGeoPlacesClient,
  pressEnter,
  displayDeleteResources,
  pressEnterConfirm,
  sdkDeleteResources,
  goodbye,
]);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};
```

```
// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

Actions

`BatchUpdateDevicePosition`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchUpdateDevicePosition`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
const updateDevicePosParams = {
  TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
  Updates: [
    {
```

```
      DeviceId: `${data.inputs.deviceId}`,
      SampleTime: new Date(),
      Position: [-122.4194, 37.7749],
    },
  ],
};
export const main = async () => {
  try {
    const command = new BatchUpdateDevicePositionCommand(updateDevicePosParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    //console.log("response ", response.Errors[0].Error);

    console.log(
      `Device with id ${data.inputs.deviceId} was successfully updated in the
 location tracking system. `,
      response,
    );
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("error ", error);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see BatchUpdateDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CalculateRoute`

The following code example shows how to use `CalculateRoute`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  CalculateRouteCommand,
```

```
  ResourceNotFoundException,
  LocationClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const routeCalcParams = {
    CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
    DeparturePosition: [-122.3321, 47.6062],
    DestinationPosition: [-123.1216, 49.2827],
    TravelMode: "Car",
    DistanceUnit: "Kilometers",
  };
  try {
    const command = new CalculateRouteCommand(routeCalcParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);

    console.log(
      "Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is : ",
      response.Summary.Distance,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
      );
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CalculateRoute in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateGeofenceCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGeofenceCollection`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  ConflictException,
  CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  LocationClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const geoFenceCollParams = {
    CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new CreateGeofenceCollectionCommand(geoFenceCollParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log(
      "Collection created. Collection name is: ",
      response.CollectionName,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
      console.error("A conflict occurred. Exiting program.");
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateMap`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMap`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { CreateMapCommand, LocationClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const CreateMapCommandInput = {
    MapName: `${data.inputs.mapName}`,
    Configuration: { style: "VectorEsriNavigation" },
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new CreateMapCommand(CreateMapCommandInput);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Map created. Map ARN is : ", response.MapArn);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error creating map: ", error);
    throw error;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateMap in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateRouteCalculator`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRouteCalculator`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  ConflictException,
  CreateRouteCalculatorCommand,
  LocationClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });

export const main = async () => {
  const routeCalcParams = {
    CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
    DataSource: "Esri",
  };
  try {
    const command = new CreateRouteCalculatorCommand(routeCalcParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);

    console.log(
      "Route calculator created successfully. Calculator name is ",
      response.CalculatorName,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ConflictException) {
      console.error(
        `An conflict occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
      );
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTracker`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { CreateTrackerCommand, LocationClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const createTrackerParams = {
    TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new CreateTrackerCommand(createTrackerParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    //state.trackerName - response.TrackerName;
    console.log("Tracker created. Tracker name is : ", response.TrackerName);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error("Error creating map: ", error);
    throw error;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateTracker in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteGeofenceCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGeofenceCollection`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteGeofenceCollParams = {
    CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
  };
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  try {
    const command = new DeleteGeofenceCollectionCommand(
      deleteGeofenceCollParams,
    );
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Collection deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `${data.inputs.collectionName} Geofence collection not found.`,
      );
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteMap`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMap`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteMapCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteMapParams = {
    MapName: `${data.inputs.mapName}`,
  };
  try {
    const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
    const command = new DeleteMapCommand(deleteMapParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Map deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(`${data.inputs.mapName} map not found.`);
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMap in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteRouteCalculator`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRouteCalculator`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteRouteCalculatorParams = {
    CalculatorName: `${data.inputs.calculatorName}`,
  };
  try {
    const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
    const command = new DeleteRouteCalculatorCommand(
      deleteRouteCalculatorParams,
    );
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Route calculator deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `${data.inputs.calculatorName} route calculator not found.`,
```

```
      );
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTracker`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  DeleteTrackerCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const deleteTrackerParams = {
    TrackerName: `${data.inputs.trackerName}`,
  };
  try {
    const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
    const command = new DeleteTrackerCommand(deleteTrackerParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("Tracker deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
```

```
    if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(`${data.inputs.trackerName} tracker not found.`);
      return;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTracker in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetDevicePosition`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDevicePosition`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  GetDevicePositionCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ResourceNotFoundException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };

const region = "eu-west-1";

export const main = async () => {
  const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
  const deviceId = `${data.inputs.deviceId}`;
  const trackerName = `${data.inputs.trackerName}`;

  const devicePositionParams = {
    DeviceId: deviceId,
    TrackerName: trackerName,
  };
```

```
  try {
    const command = new GetDevicePositionCommand(devicePositionParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    //state.position = response.position;
    console.log("Successfully fetched device position: ", response);
  } catch (error) {
    console.log("Error ", error);
    /*  if (caught instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
      console.error(
        `"The resource was not found: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`,
      );
    } else {
      `An unexpected error error occurred: ${caught.message} \n Exiting program.`;
    }
    return;*/
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutGeofence`

The following code example shows how to use `PutGeofence`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  PutGeofenceCommand,
  LocationClient,
  ValidationException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-location";
import data from "./inputs.json" with { type: "json" };
```

```
const region = "eu-west-1";
const locationClient = new LocationClient({ region: region });
export const main = async () => {
  const geoFenceGeoParams = {
    CollectionName: `${data.inputs.collectionName}`,
    GeofenceId: `${data.inputs.geoId}`,
    Geometry: {
      Polygon: [
        [
          [-122.3381, 47.6101],
          [-122.3281, 47.6101],
          [-122.3281, 47.6201],
          [-122.3381, 47.6201],
          [-122.3381, 47.6101],
        ],
      ],
    },
  };
  try {
    const command = new PutGeofenceCommand(geoFenceGeoParams);
    const response = await locationClient.send(command);
    console.log("GeoFence created. GeoFence ID is: ", response.GeofenceId);
  } catch (error) {
    console.error(
      `A validation error occurred while creating geofence: ${error} \n Exiting
 program.`,
    );
    return;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see PutGeofence in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
exports.handler = async (event) => {
    // Iterate through keys
    for (let key in event.records) {
      console.log('Key: ', key)
      // Iterate through records
      event.records[key].map((record) => {
        console.log('Record: ', record)
        // Decode base64
        const msg = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString()
        console.log('Message:', msg)
      })
    }
}
```

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
import { MSKEvent, Context } from "aws-lambda";
import { Buffer } from "buffer";
import { Logger } from "@aws-lambda-powertools/logger";
```

```
const logger = new Logger({
  logLevel: "INFO",
  serviceName: "msk-handler-sample",
});

export const handler = async (
  event: MSKEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const [topic, topicRecords] of Object.entries(event.records)) {
    logger.info(`Processing key: ${topic}`);

    // Process each record in the partition
    for (const record of topicRecords) {
      try {
        // Decode the message value from base64
        const decodedMessage = Buffer.from(record.value, 'base64').toString();

        logger.info({
          message: decodedMessage
        });
      }
      catch (error) {
        logger.error('Error processing event', { error });
        throw error;
      }
    };
  }
}
```

Amazon Personalize examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Personalize.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateBatchInferenceJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBatchInferenceJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateBatchInferenceJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the batch inference job's parameters.

export const createBatchInferenceJobParam = {
  jobName: "JOB_NAME",
  jobInput: {
    s3DataSource: {
      path: "INPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  jobOutput: {
    s3DataDestination: {
      path: "OUTPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN",
  solutionVersionArn: "SOLUTION_VERSION_ARN",
  numResults: 20,
```

```
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateBatchInferenceJobCommand(createBatchInferenceJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchInferenceJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateBatchSegmentJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBatchSegmentJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateBatchSegmentJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the batch segment job's parameters.

export const createBatchSegmentJobParam = {
```

```
  jobName: "NAME",
  jobInput: {
    s3DataSource: {
      path: "INPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  jobOutput: {
    s3DataDestination: {
      path: "OUTPUT_PATH",
    },
  },
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN",
  solutionVersionArn: "SOLUTION_VERSION_ARN",
  numResults: 20,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateBatchSegmentJobCommand(createBatchSegmentJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchSegmentJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCampaign`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.

import { CreateCampaignCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the campaign's parameters.
export const createCampaignParam = {
  solutionVersionArn: "SOLUTION_VERSION_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  minProvisionedTPS: 1 /* optional integer */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateCampaignCommand(createCampaignParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDataset`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the dataset's parameters.
export const createDatasetParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  datasetType: "DATASET_TYPE" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  schemaArn: "SCHEMA_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetCommand(createDatasetParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateDatasetExportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatasetExportJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetExportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the export job parameters.
export const datasetExportJobParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN" /* required */,
  jobOutput: {
    s3DataDestination: {
      path: "S3_DESTINATION_PATH" /* required */,
      //kmsKeyArn: 'ARN'  /* include if your bucket uses AWS KMS for encryption
    },
  },
  jobName: "NAME" /* required */,
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetExportJobCommand(datasetExportJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetExportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateDatasetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatasetGroup`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.

import { CreateDatasetGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the dataset group parameters.
export const createDatasetGroupParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
};

export const run = async (createDatasetGroupParam) => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetGroupCommand(createDatasetGroupParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return "Run successfully"; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run(createDatasetGroupParam);
```

Create a domain dataset group.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetGroupCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
```

```
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the domain dataset group parameters.
export const domainDatasetGroupParams = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  domain:
    "DOMAIN" /* required for a domain dsg, specify ECOMMERCE or VIDEO_ON_DEMAND */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetGroupCommand(domainDatasetGroupParams),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetGroup in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateDatasetImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatasetImportJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateDatasetImportJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
```

```
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the dataset import job parameters.
export const datasetImportJobParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN" /* required */,
  dataSource: {
    /* required */
    dataLocation: "S3_PATH",
  },
  jobName: "NAME" /* required */,
  roleArn: "ROLE_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateDatasetImportJobCommand(datasetImportJobParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetImportJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateEventTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEventTracker`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
```

```
import { CreateEventTrackerCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the event tracker's parameters.
export const createEventTrackerParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateEventTrackerCommand(createEventTrackerParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateEventTracker in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
```

```
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the filter's parameters.
export const createFilterParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  filterExpression: "FILTER_EXPRESSION" /*required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateFilterCommand(createFilterParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateRecommender`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRecommender`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateRecommenderCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
```

```
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the recommender's parameters.
export const createRecommenderParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  recipeArn: "RECIPE_ARN" /* required */,
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateRecommenderCommand(createRecommenderParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateRecommender in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateSchema`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchema`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSchemaCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
```

```
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

import fs from "node:fs";

const schemaFilePath = "SCHEMA_PATH";
let mySchema = "";

try {
  mySchema = fs.readFileSync(schemaFilePath).toString();
} catch (err) {
  mySchema = "TEST"; // For unit tests.
}
// Set the schema parameters.
export const createSchemaParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  schema: mySchema /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSchemaCommand(createSchemaParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create a schema with a domain.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSchemaCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";

// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});
```

```
import fs from "node:fs";

const schemaFilePath = "SCHEMA_PATH";
let mySchema = "";

try {
  mySchema = fs.readFileSync(schemaFilePath).toString();
} catch (err) {
  mySchema = "TEST"; // for unit tests.
}

// Set the domain schema parameters.
export const createDomainSchemaParam = {
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
  schema: mySchema /* required */,
  domain:
    "DOMAIN" /* required for a domain dataset group, specify ECOMMERCE or
 VIDEO_ON_DEMAND */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSchemaCommand(createDomainSchemaParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateSchema in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateSolution`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSolution`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSolutionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the solution parameters.
export const createSolutionParam = {
  datasetGroupArn: "DATASET_GROUP_ARN" /* required */,
  recipeArn: "RECIPE_ARN" /* required */,
  name: "NAME" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSolutionCommand(createSolutionParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateSolution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateSolutionVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSolutionVersion`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { CreateSolutionVersionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize";
import { personalizeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeClient = new PersonalizeClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the solution version parameters.
export const solutionVersionParam = {
  solutionArn: "SOLUTION_ARN" /* required */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeClient.send(
      new CreateSolutionVersionCommand(solutionVersionParam),
    );
    console.log("Success", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateSolutionVersion in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Personalize Events examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Personalize Events.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { PutEventsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-events";
import { personalizeEventsClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeEventsClient = new PersonalizeEventsClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Convert your UNIX timestamp to a Date.
const sentAtDate = new Date(1613443801 * 1000); // 1613443801 is a testing value.
 Replace it with your sentAt timestamp in UNIX format.

// Set put events parameters.
const putEventsParam = {
  eventList: [
    /* required */
    {
      eventType: "EVENT_TYPE" /* required */,
      sentAt: sentAtDate /* required, must be a Date with js */,
```

```
      eventId: "EVENT_ID" /* optional */,
      itemId: "ITEM_ID" /* optional */,
    },
  ],
  sessionId: "SESSION_ID" /* required */,
  trackingId: "TRACKING_ID" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
};
export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeEventsClient.send(
      new PutEventsCommand(putEventsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutItems`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItems`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { PutItemsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-events";
import { personalizeEventsClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeEventsClient = new PersonalizeEventsClient({ region: "REGION"});
```

```
// Set the put items parameters. For string properties and values, use the \
 character to escape quotes.
const putItemsParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN" /* required */,
  items: [
    /* required */
    {
      itemId: "ITEM_ID" /*  required */,
      properties:
        '{"PROPERTY1_NAME": "PROPERTY1_VALUE", "PROPERTY2_NAME": "PROPERTY2_VALUE",
 "PROPERTY3_NAME": "PROPERTY3_VALUE"}' /* optional */,
    },
  ],
};
export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeEventsClient.send(
      new PutItemsCommand(putItemsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see PutItems in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `PutUsers`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { PutUsersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-events";
import { personalizeEventsClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeEventsClient = new PersonalizeEventsClient({ region: "REGION"});

// Set the put users parameters. For string properties and values, use the \
 character to escape quotes.
const putUsersParam = {
  datasetArn: "DATASET_ARN",
  users: [
    {
      userId: "USER_ID",
      properties: '{"PROPERTY1_NAME": "PROPERTY1_VALUE"}',
    },
  ],
};
export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeEventsClient.send(
      new PutUsersCommand(putUsersParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see PutUsers in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Personalize Runtime examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Personalize Runtime.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetPersonalizedRanking`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPersonalizedRanking`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetPersonalizedRankingCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";
import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the ranking request parameters.
export const getPersonalizedRankingParam = {
  campaignArn: "CAMPAIGN_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  inputList: ["ITEM_ID_1", "ITEM_ID_2", "ITEM_ID_3", "ITEM_ID_4"],
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetPersonalizedRankingCommand(getPersonalizedRankingParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see GetPersonalizedRanking in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetRecommendations`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRecommendations`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetRecommendationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";

import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the recommendation request parameters.
export const getRecommendationsParam = {
  campaignArn: "CAMPAIGN_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  numResults: 15 /* optional */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetRecommendationsCommand(getRecommendationsParam),
    );
```

```
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Get recommendation with a filter (custom dataset group).

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
import { GetRecommendationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";
import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here.
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set the recommendation request parameters.
export const getRecommendationsParam = {
  recommenderArn: "RECOMMENDER_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  numResults: 15 /* optional */,
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetRecommendationsCommand(getRecommendationsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Get filtered recommendations from a recommender created in a domain dataset group.

```
// Get service clients module and commands using ES6 syntax.
```

```
import { GetRecommendationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-personalize-runtime";
import { personalizeRuntimeClient } from "./libs/personalizeClients.js";
// Or, create the client here:
// const personalizeRuntimeClient = new PersonalizeRuntimeClient({ region:
 "REGION"});

// Set recommendation request parameters.
export const getRecommendationsParam = {
  campaignArn: "CAMPAIGN_ARN" /* required */,
  userId: "USER_ID" /* required */,
  numResults: 15 /* optional */,
  filterArn: "FILTER_ARN" /* required to filter recommendations */,
  filterValues: {
    PROPERTY:
      '"VALUE"' /* Only required if your filter has a placeholder parameter */,
  },
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await personalizeRuntimeClient.send(
      new GetRecommendationsCommand(getRecommendationsParam),
    );
    console.log("Success!", response);
    return response; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see GetRecommendations in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

SendMessages

The following code example shows how to use SendMessages.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { PinpointClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-pinpoint";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "us-east-1";
export const pinClient = new PinpointClient({ region: REGION });
```

Send an email message.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { SendMessagesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-pinpoint";
import { pinClient } from "./libs/pinClient.js";

// The FromAddress must be verified in SES.
const fromAddress = "FROM_ADDRESS";
const toAddress = "TO_ADDRESS";
const projectId = "PINPOINT_PROJECT_ID";

// The subject line of the email.
const subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Test (AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)";
```

```
// The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
const body_text = `Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)
----------------------------------------------------
This email was sent with Amazon Pinpoint using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in
 Node.js.
For more information, see https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/`;

// The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support HTML content.
const body_html = `<html>
<head></head>
<body>
  <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for JavaScript in Node.js)</h1>
  <p>This email was sent with
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>the Amazon Pinpoint Email API</a>
 using the
    <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-node-js/'>
      AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js</a>.</p>
</body>
</html>`;

// The character encoding for the subject line and message body of the email.
const charset = "UTF-8";

const params = {
  ApplicationId: projectId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [toAddress]: {
        ChannelType: "EMAIL",
      },
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      EmailMessage: {
        FromAddress: fromAddress,
        SimpleEmail: {
          Subject: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: subject,
          },
          HtmlPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_html,
          },
```

```
          TextPart: {
            Charset: charset,
            Data: body_text,
          },
        },
      },
    },
  },
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const { MessageResponse } = await pinClient.send(
      new SendMessagesCommand(params),
    );

    if (!MessageResponse) {
      throw new Error("No message response.");
    }

    if (!MessageResponse.Result) {
      throw new Error("No message result.");
    }

    const recipientResult = MessageResponse.Result[toAddress];

    if (recipientResult.StatusCode !== 200) {
      throw new Error(recipientResult.StatusMessage);
    }
    console.log(recipientResult.MessageId);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err.message);
  }
};

run();
```

Send an SMS message.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { SendMessagesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-pinpoint";
```

```
import { pinClient } from "./libs/pinClient.js";

/* The phone number or short code to send the message from. The phone number
 or short code that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
account. For best results, specify long codes in E.164 format. */
const originationNumber = "SENDER_NUMBER"; //e.g., +1XXXXXXXXXX

// The recipient's phone number.  For best results, you should specify the phone
 number in E.164 format.
const destinationNumber = "RECEIVER_NUMBER"; //e.g., +1XXXXXXXXXX

// The content of the SMS message.
const message =
  "This message was sent through Amazon Pinpoint " +
  "using the AWS SDK for JavaScript in Node.js. Reply STOP to " +
  "opt out.";

/*The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send this message.
Make sure that the SMS channel is enabled for the project or application
that you choose.*/
const projectId = "PINPOINT_PROJECT_ID"; //e.g., XXXXXXXX66e4e9986478cXXXXXXXXX

/* The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.*/
const messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

// The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
const registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

/* The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
// varies by country or region. For more information, see
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-countries.html.*/

const senderId = "MySenderID";

// Specify the parameters to pass to the API.
const params = {
  ApplicationId: projectId,
  MessageRequest: {
    Addresses: {
      [destinationNumber]: {
        ChannelType: "SMS",
      },
```

```
    },
    MessageConfiguration: {
      SMSMessage: {
        Body: message,
        Keyword: registeredKeyword,
        MessageType: messageType,
        OriginationNumber: originationNumber,
        SenderId: senderId,
      },
    },
  },
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await pinClient.send(new SendMessagesCommand(params));
    console.log(
      `Message sent!
 ${data.MessageResponse.Result[destinationNumber].StatusMessage}`,
    );
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Polly.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });
```

```
  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
```

```
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
```

```
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon RDS.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
/*
Node.js code here.
*/
// ES6+ example
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
```

```
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

async function createAuthToken() {
  // Define connection authentication parameters
  const dbinfo = {

    hostname: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    port: process.env.Port,
    username: process.env.DBUserName,
    region: process.env.AWS_REGION,

  }

  // Create RDS Signer object
  const signer = new Signer(dbinfo);

  // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
  const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
  return token;
}

async function dbOps() {

  // Obtain auth token
  const token = await createAuthToken();
  // Define connection configuration
  let connectionConfig = {
    host: process.env.ProxyHostName,
    user: process.env.DBUserName,
    password: token,
    database: process.env.DBName,
    ssl: 'Amazon RDS'
  }
  // Create the connection to the DB
  const conn = await mysql.createConnection(connectionConfig);
  // Obtain the result of the query
  const [res,] = await conn.execute('select ?+? as sum', [3, 2]);
  return res;

}

export const handler = async (event) => {
  // Execute database flow
  const result = await dbOps();
```

```
  // Return result
  return {
    statusCode: 200,
    body: JSON.stringify("The selected sum is: " + result[0].sum)
  }
};
```

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using TypeScript.

```
import { Signer } from "@aws-sdk/rds-signer";
import mysql from 'mysql2/promise';

// RDS settings
// Using '!' (non-null assertion operator) to tell the TypeScript compiler that the
 DB settings are not null or undefined,
const proxy_host_name = process.env.PROXY_HOST_NAME!
const port = parseInt(process.env.PORT!)
const db_name = process.env.DB_NAME!
const db_user_name = process.env.DB_USER_NAME!
const aws_region = process.env.AWS_REGION!


async function createAuthToken(): Promise<string> {

    // Create RDS Signer object
    const signer = new Signer({
        hostname: proxy_host_name,
        port: port,
        region: aws_region,
        username: db_user_name
    });

    // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
    const token = await signer.getAuthToken();
    return token;
}

async function dbOps(): Promise<mysql.QueryResult | undefined> {
    try {
        // Obtain auth token
        const token = await createAuthToken();
```

```
        const conn = await mysql.createConnection({
            host: proxy_host_name,
            user: db_user_name,
            password: token,
            database: db_name,
            ssl: 'Amazon RDS' // Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL connection
        });
        const [rows, fields] = await conn.execute('SELECT ? + ? AS sum', [3, 2]);
        console.log('result:', rows);
        return rows;
    }
    catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
    }
}

export const lambdaHandler = async (event: any): Promise<{ statusCode: number; body:
 string }> => {
    // Execute database flow
    const result = await dbOps();

    // Return error is result is undefined
    if (result == undefined)
        return {
            statusCode: 500,
            body: JSON.stringify(`Error with connection to DB host`)
        }

    // Return result
    return {
        statusCode: 200,
        body: JSON.stringify(`The selected sum is: ${result[0].sum}`)
    };
};
```

Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Redshift.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Create the cluster.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { CreateClusterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME", // Required
  NodeType: "NODE_TYPE", //Required
  MasterUsername: "MASTER_USER_NAME", // Required - must be lowercase
```

```
  MasterUserPassword: "MASTER_USER_PASSWORD", // Required - must contain at least
 one uppercase letter, and one number
  ClusterType: "CLUSTER_TYPE", // Required
  IAMRoleARN: "IAM_ROLE_ARN", // Optional - the ARN of an IAM role with permissions
 your cluster needs to access other AWS services on your behalf, such as Amazon S3.
  ClusterSubnetGroupName: "CLUSTER_SUBNET_GROUPNAME", //Optional - the name of a
 cluster subnet group to be associated with this cluster. Defaults to 'default' if
 not specified.
  DBName: "DATABASE_NAME", // Optional - defaults to 'dev' if not specified
  Port: "PORT_NUMBER", // Optional - defaults to '5439' if not specified
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new CreateClusterCommand(params));
    console.log(
      `Cluster ${data.Cluster.ClusterIdentifier} successfully created`,
    );
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Create the cluster.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DeleteClusterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME",
  SkipFinalClusterSnapshot: false,
  FinalClusterSnapshotIdentifier: "CLUSTER_SNAPSHOT_ID",
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new DeleteClusterCommand(params));
    console.log("Success, cluster deleted. ", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Describe your clusters.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DescribeClustersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME",
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new DescribeClustersCommand(params));
    console.log("Success", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ModifyCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyCluster`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { RedshiftClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const redshiftClient = new RedshiftClient({ region: REGION });
export { redshiftClient };
```

Modify a cluster.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { ModifyClusterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-redshift";
import { redshiftClient } from "./libs/redshiftClient.js";

// Set the parameters
const params = {
  ClusterIdentifier: "CLUSTER_NAME",
  MasterUserPassword: "NEW_MASTER_USER_PASSWORD",
};

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await redshiftClient.send(new ModifyClusterCommand(params));
    console.log("Success was modified.", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
```

```
};
run();
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Rekognition.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition with the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

Learn how to:

- Create an unauthenticated user using Amazon Cognito.
- Analyze images for objects using Amazon Rekognition.
- Verify an email address for Amazon SES.
- Send an email notification using Amazon SES.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  paginateListBuckets,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * List the S3 buckets in your configured AWS account.
 */
export const helloS3 = async () => {
  // When no region or credentials are provided, the SDK will use the
  // region and credentials from the local AWS config.
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    /**
     * @type { import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").Bucket[] }
     */
    const buckets = [];
```

```
    for await (const page of paginateListBuckets({ client }, {})) {
      buckets.push(...page.Buckets);
    }
    console.log("Buckets: ");
    console.log(buckets.map((bucket) => bucket.Name).join("\n"));
    return buckets;
  } catch (caught) {
    // ListBuckets does not throw any modeled errors. Any error caught
    // here will be something generic like `AccessDenied`.
    if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      // Something besides S3 failed.
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

First, import all the necessary modules.

```
// Used to check if currently running file is this file.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { readdirSync, readFileSync, writeFileSync } from "node:fs";

// Local helper utils.
import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { Prompter } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js";
import { wrapText } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

import {
  S3Client,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  ListObjectsCommand,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  GetObjectCommand,
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

The preceding imports reference some helper utilities. These utilities are local to the GitHub repository linked at the start of this section. For your reference, see the following implementations of those utilities.

```
export const dirnameFromMetaUrl = (metaUrl) =>
  fileURLToPath(new URL(".", metaUrl));

import { select, input, confirm, checkbox, password } from "@inquirer/prompts";

export class Prompter {
  /**
```

```
 * @param {{ message: string, choices: { name: string, value: string }[]}} options
 */
select(options) {
  return select(options);
}

/**
 * @param {{ message: string }} options
 */
input(options) {
  return input(options);
}

/**
 * @param {{ message: string }} options
 */
password(options) {
  return password({ ...options, mask: true });
}

/**
 * @param {string} prompt
 */
checkContinue = async (prompt = "") => {
  const prefix = prompt && `${prompt} `;
  const ok = await this.confirm({
    message: `${prefix}Continue?`,
  });
  if (!ok) throw new Error("Exiting...");
};

/**
 * @param {{ message: string }} options
 */
confirm(options) {
  return confirm(options);
}

/**
 * @param {{ message: string, choices: { name: string, value: string }[]}} options
 */
checkbox(options) {
  return checkbox(options);
}
```

```
}

export const wrapText = (text, char = "=") => {
  const rule = char.repeat(80);
  return `${rule}\n    ${text}\n${rule}\n`;
};
```

Objects in S3 are stored in 'buckets'. Let's define a function for creating a new bucket.

```
export const createBucket = async () => {
  const bucketName = await prompter.input({
    message: "Enter a bucket name. Bucket names must be globally unique:",
  });
  const command = new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  await s3Client.send(command);
  console.log("Bucket created successfully.\n");
  return bucketName;
};
```

Buckets contain 'objects'. This function uploads the contents of a directory to your bucket as objects.

```
export const uploadFilesToBucket = async ({ bucketName, folderPath }) => {
  console.log(`Uploading files from ${folderPath}\n`);
  const keys = readdirSync(folderPath);
  const files = keys.map((key) => {
    const filePath = `${folderPath}/${key}`;
    const fileContent = readFileSync(filePath);
    return {
      Key: key,
      Body: fileContent,
    };
  });

  for (const file of files) {
    await s3Client.send(
      new PutObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Body: file.Body,
        Key: file.Key,
      }),
```

```
    );
    console.log(`${file.Key} uploaded successfully.`);
  }
};
```

After uploading objects, check to confirm that they were uploaded correctly. You can use ListObjects for that. You'll be using the 'Key' property, but there are other useful properties in the response also.

```
export const listFilesInBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const command = new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(command);
  const contentsList = Contents.map((c) => ` • ${c.Key}`).join("\n");
  console.log("\nHere's a list of files in the bucket:");
  console.log(`${contentsList}\n`);
};
```

Sometimes you might want to copy an object from one bucket to another. Use the CopyObject command for that.

```
export const copyFileFromBucket = async ({ destinationBucket }) => {
  const proceed = await prompter.confirm({
    message: "Would you like to copy an object from another bucket?",
  });

  if (!proceed) {
    return;
  }
  const copy = async () => {
    try {
      const sourceBucket = await prompter.input({
        message: "Enter source bucket name:",
      });
      const sourceKey = await prompter.input({
        message: "Enter source key:",
      });
      const destinationKey = await prompter.input({
        message: "Enter destination key:",
      });
```

```
      const command = new CopyObjectCommand({
        Bucket: destinationBucket,
        CopySource: `${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey}`,
        Key: destinationKey,
      });
      await s3Client.send(command);
      await copyFileFromBucket({ destinationBucket });
    } catch (err) {
      console.error("Copy error.");
      console.error(err);
      const retryAnswer = await prompter.confirm({ message: "Try again?" });
      if (retryAnswer) {
        await copy();
      }
    }
  };
  await copy();
};
```

There's no SDK method for getting multiple objects from a bucket. Instead, you'll create a list of objects to download and iterate over them.

```
export const downloadFilesFromBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(
    new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: bucketName }),
  );
  const path = await prompter.input({
    message: "Enter destination path for files:",
  });

  for (const content of Contents) {
    const obj = await s3Client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({ Bucket: bucketName, Key: content.Key }),
    );
    writeFileSync(
      `${path}/${content.Key}`,
      await obj.Body.transformToByteArray(),
    );
  }
  console.log("Files downloaded successfully.\n");
};
```

It's time to clean up your resources. A bucket must be empty before it can be deleted. These two functions empty and delete the bucket.

```
export const emptyBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const listObjectsCommand = new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(listObjectsCommand);
  const keys = Contents.map((c) => c.Key);

  const deleteObjectsCommand = new DeleteObjectsCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Delete: { Objects: keys.map((key) => ({ Key: key })) },
  });
  await s3Client.send(deleteObjectsCommand);
  console.log(`${bucketName} emptied successfully.\n`);
};

export const deleteBucket = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const command = new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucketName });
  await s3Client.send(command);
  console.log(`${bucketName} deleted successfully.\n`);
};
```

The 'main' function pulls everything together. If you run this file directly the main function will be called.

```
const main = async () => {
  const OBJECT_DIRECTORY = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
    import.meta.url,
  )}../../../../resources/sample_files/.sample_media`;

  try {
    console.log(wrapText("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started example."));
    console.log("Let's create a bucket.");
    const bucketName = await createBucket();
    await prompter.confirm({ message: continueMessage });

    console.log(wrapText("File upload."));
    console.log(
      "I have some default files ready to go. You can edit the source code to
 provide your own.",
    );
    await uploadFilesToBucket({
```

```
      bucketName,
      folderPath: OBJECT_DIRECTORY,
    });

    await listFilesInBucket({ bucketName });
    await prompter.confirm({ message: continueMessage });

    console.log(wrapText("Copy files."));
    await copyFileFromBucket({ destinationBucket: bucketName });
    await listFilesInBucket({ bucketName });
    await prompter.confirm({ message: continueMessage });

    console.log(wrapText("Download files."));
    await downloadFilesFromBucket({ bucketName });

    console.log(wrapText("Clean up."));
    await emptyBucket({ bucketName });
    await deleteBucket({ bucketName });
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy the object.

```
import {
  S3Client,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  ObjectNotInActiveTierError,
  waitUntilObjectExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Copy an S3 object from one bucket to another.
 *
 * @param {{
 *   sourceBucket: string,
 *   sourceKey: string,
 *   destinationBucket: string,
 *   destinationKey: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucket,
  sourceKey,
  destinationBucket,
  destinationKey,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: `${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey}`,
        Bucket: destinationBucket,
        Key: destinationKey,
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilObjectExists(
```

```
      { client },
      { Bucket: destinationBucket, Key: destinationKey },
    );
    console.log(
      `Successfully copied ${sourceBucket}/${sourceKey} to ${destinationBucket}/
${destinationKey}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof ObjectNotInActiveTierError) {
      console.error(
        `Could not copy ${sourceKey} from ${sourceBucket}. Object is not in the
 active tier.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Copy the object on condition its ETag does not match the one provided.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string, destinationBucketName:
 string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
```

```
  destinationBucketName,
  eTag,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const name = data.name;
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: `${name}${sourceKeyName}`,
        CopySourceIfMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Unable to copy object "${sourceKeyName}" to bucket "${sourceBucketName}":
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
```

```
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Copy the object on condition its ETag does not match the one provided.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};
```

```
/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string, destinationBucketName:
 string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
  eTag,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const name = data.name;

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: `${name}${sourceKeyName}`,
        CopySourceIfNoneMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Unable to copy object "${sourceKeyName}" to bucket "${sourceBucketName}":
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
```

```
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Copy the object using on condition it has been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
```

```
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string, destinationBucketName:
 string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
}) => {
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

  const name = data.name;
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const copySource = `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`;
  const copiedKey = name + sourceKeyName;

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: copySource,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: copiedKey,
        CopySourceIfModifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
```

```
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object from ${sourceBucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
```

```
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Copy the object using on condition it has not been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  CopyObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

// Optionally edit the default key name of the copied object in 'object_name.json'
import data from "../scenarios/conditional-requests/object_name.json" assert {
  type: "json",
};

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ sourceBucketName: string, sourceKeyName: string, destinationBucketName:
 string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  sourceBucketName,
  sourceKeyName,
  destinationBucketName,
}) => {
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const name = data.name;
  const copiedKey = name + sourceKeyName;
  const copySource = `${sourceBucketName}/${sourceKeyName}`;

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new CopyObjectCommand({
        CopySource: copySource,
        Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        Key: copiedKey,
```

```
        CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Successfully copied object to bucket.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object "${sourceKeyName}" from
 "${sourceBucketName}". No such key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while copying object from ${sourceBucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    sourceBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    sourceKeyName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    destinationBucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
```

```
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the bucket.

```
import {
  BucketAlreadyExists,
  BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  S3Client,
  waitUntilBucketExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Create an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }} config
```

```
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Location } = await client.send(
      new CreateBucketCommand({
        // The name of the bucket. Bucket names are unique and have several other
 constraints.
        // See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/
bucketnamingrules.html
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: bucketName });
    console.log(`Bucket created with location ${Location}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof BucketAlreadyExists) {
      console.error(
        `The bucket "${bucketName}" already exists in another AWS account. Bucket
 names must be globally unique.`,
      );
    }
    // WARNING: If you try to create a bucket in the North Virginia region,
    // and you already own a bucket in that region with the same name, this
    // error will not be thrown. Instead, the call will return successfully
    // and the ACL on that bucket will be reset.
    else if (caught instanceof BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou) {
      console.error(
        `The bucket "${bucketName}" already exists in this AWS account.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the bucket.

```
import {
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Delete an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new DeleteBucketCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Bucket was deleted.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting bucket. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
```

```
        `Error from S3 while deleting the bucket. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the bucket policy.

```
import {
  DeleteBucketPolicyCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Remove the policy from an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
```

```
      new DeleteBucketPolicyCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Bucket policy deleted from "${bucketName}".`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting policy from ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting policy from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketWebsite`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the website configuration from the bucket.

```
import {
  DeleteBucketWebsiteCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Remove the website configuration for a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteBucketWebsiteCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    // The response code will be successful for both removed configurations and
    // configurations that did not exist in the first place.
    console.log(
      `The bucket "${bucketName}" is not longer configured as a website, or it never
 was.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while removing website configuration from ${bucketName}. The
 bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while removing website configuration from ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
```

```
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object.

```
import {
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilObjectNotExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Delete one object from an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
      }),
    );
    await waitUntilObjectNotExists(
```

```
      { client },
      { Bucket: bucketName, Key: key },
    );
    // A successful delete, or a delete for a non-existent object, both return
    // a 204 response code.
    console.log(
      `The object "${key}" from bucket "${bucketName}" was deleted, or it didn't
 exist.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting object from ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete multiple objects.

```
import {
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilObjectNotExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Delete multiple objects from an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, keys: string[] }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, keys }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Deleted } = await client.send(
      new DeleteObjectsCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Delete: {
          Objects: keys.map((k) => ({ Key: k })),
        },
      }),
    );
    for (const key in keys) {
      await waitUntilObjectNotExists(
        { client },
        { Bucket: bucketName, Key: key },
      );
    }
    console.log(
      `Successfully deleted ${Deleted.length} objects from S3 bucket. Deleted
 objects:`,
    );
    console.log(Deleted.map((d) => ` • ${d.Key}`).join("\n"));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting objects from ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
```

```
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while deleting objects from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketAcl`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the ACL permissions.

```
import {
  GetBucketAclCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Retrieves the Access Control List (ACL) for an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
```

```
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetBucketAclCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`ACL for bucket "${bucketName}":`);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(response, null, 2));
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting ACL for ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting ACL for ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketCors`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the CORS policy for the bucket.

```
import {
  GetBucketCorsCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log the Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) configuration information
 * set for the bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new GetBucketCorsCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
  });

  try {
    const { CORSRules } = await client.send(command);
    console.log(JSON.stringify(CORSRules));
    CORSRules.forEach((cr, i) => {
      console.log(
        `\nCORSRule ${i + 1}`,
        `\n${"-".repeat(10)}`,
        `\nAllowedHeaders: ${cr.AllowedHeaders}`,
        `\nAllowedMethods: ${cr.AllowedMethods}`,
        `\nAllowedOrigins: ${cr.AllowedOrigins}`,
        `\nExposeHeaders: ${cr.ExposeHeaders}`,
        `\nMaxAgeSeconds: ${cr.MaxAgeSeconds}`,
      );
    });
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
```

```
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting bucket CORS rules for ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting bucket CORS rules for ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the bucket policy.

```
import {
  GetBucketPolicyCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

```
/**
 * Logs the policy for a specified bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Policy } = await client.send(
      new GetBucketPolicyCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Policy for "${bucketName}":\n${Policy}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting policy from ${bucketName}. The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting policy from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketWebsite`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the website configuration.

```
import {
  GetBucketWebsiteCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log the website configuration for a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetBucketWebsiteCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `Your bucket is set up to host a website with the following configuration:\n
${JSON.stringify(response, null, 2)}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchWebsiteConfiguration"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting website configuration for ${bucketName}. The
 bucket isn't configured as a website.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
```

```
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting website configuration for ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Download the object.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
```

```
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log(str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No such
 key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Download the object on condition its ETag matches the one provided.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, eTag }) => {
```

```
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No such
 key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
```

```
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Download the object on condition its ETag does not match the one provided.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, eTag }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
```

```
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfNoneMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No such
 key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
```

```
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Download the object using on condition it has been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
```

```
        IfModifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No such
 key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
```

```
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Download the object using on condition it has not been created or modified in a given timeframe.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const date = new Date();
  date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfUnmodifiedSince: date,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
```

```
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No such
 key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
```

```
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get an object's current legal hold status.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectLegalHoldCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
```

```
        // Optionally, you can provide additional parameters
        // ExpectedBucketOwner: "<account ID that is expected to own the bucket>",
        // VersionId: "<the specific version id of the object to check>",
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Legal Hold Status: ${response.LegalHold.Status}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting legal hold status for ${key} in ${bucketName}.
 The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting legal hold status for ${key} in ${bucketName}
 from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
```

```
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Gets the Object Lock configuration for a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
```

```
  try {
    const { ObjectLockConfiguration } = await client.send(
      new GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        // Optionally, you can provide additional parameters
        // ExpectedBucketOwner: "<account ID that is expected to own the bucket>",
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `Object Lock Configuration:\n${JSON.stringify(ObjectLockConfiguration)}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object lock configuration for ${bucketName}.
 The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object lock configuration for ${bucketName}.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
```

```
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectRetention`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  GetObjectRetentionCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log the "RetainUntilDate" for an object in an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
```

```
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const { Retention } = await client.send(
      new GetObjectRetentionCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
      }),
    );
    console.log(
      `${key} in ${bucketName} will be retained until ${Retention.RetainUntilDate}`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchObjectLockConfiguration"
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `The object "${key}" in the bucket "${bucketName}" does not have an
 ObjectLock configuration.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object retention settings for "${bucketName}".
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
```

```
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the buckets.

```
import {
  paginateListBuckets,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
```

```
/**
 * List the Amazon S3 buckets in your account.
 */
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  /** @type {?import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').Owner} */
  let Owner = null;

  /** @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').Bucket[]} */
  const Buckets = [];

  try {
    const paginator = paginateListBuckets({ client }, {});

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      if (!Owner) {
        Owner = page.Owner;
      }

      Buckets.push(...page.Buckets);
    }

    console.log(
      `${Owner.DisplayName} owns ${Buckets.length} bucket${
        Buckets.length === 1 ? "" : "s"
      }:`,
    );
    console.log(`${Buckets.map((b) => ` • ${b.Name}`).join("\n")}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while listing buckets.  ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the objects in your bucket. If there is more than one object, IsTruncated and NextContinuationToken will be used to iterate over the full list.

```
import {
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
  // This command supersedes the ListObjectsCommand and is the recommended way to
 list objects.
  paginateListObjectsV2,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Log all of the object keys in a bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, pageSize: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, pageSize }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  /** @type {string[][]} */
  const objects = [];
  try {
    const paginator = paginateListObjectsV2(
      { client, /* Max items per page */ pageSize: Number.parseInt(pageSize) },
      { Bucket: bucketName },
    );

    for await (const page of paginator) {
      objects.push(page.Contents.map((o) => o.Key));
    }
    objects.forEach((objectList, pageNum) => {
      console.log(
```

```
        `Page ${pageNum + 1}\n------\n${objectList.map((o) => `•
 ${o}`).join("\n")}\n`,
      );
    });
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while listing objects for "${bucketName}". The bucket doesn't
 exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while listing objects for "${bucketName}".  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put the bucket ACL.

```
import {
```

```
  PutBucketAclCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Grant read access to a user using their canonical AWS account ID.
 *
 * Most Amazon S3 use cases don't require the use of access control lists (ACLs).
 * We recommend that you disable ACLs, except in unusual circumstances where
 * you need to control access for each object individually. Consider a policy
 instead.
 * For more information see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/
bucket-policies.html.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, granteeCanonicalUserId: string,
 ownerCanonicalUserId }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  bucketName,
  granteeCanonicalUserId,
  ownerCanonicalUserId,
}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutBucketAclCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    AccessControlPolicy: {
      Grants: [
        {
          Grantee: {
            // The canonical ID of the user. This ID is an obfuscated form of your
 AWS account number.
            // It's unique to Amazon S3 and can't be found elsewhere.
            // For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/
latest/userguide/finding-canonical-user-id.html.
            ID: granteeCanonicalUserId,
            Type: "CanonicalUser",
          },
          // One of FULL_CONTROL | READ | WRITE | READ_ACP | WRITE_ACP
          // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/
API_Grant.html#AmazonS3-Type-Grant-Permission
          Permission: "READ",
        },
      ],
      Owner: {
```

```
        ID: ownerCanonicalUserId,
      },
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(`Granted READ access to ${bucketName}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting ACL for bucket ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting ACL for bucket ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketCors`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add a CORS rule.

```
import {
  PutBucketCorsCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Allows cross-origin requests to an S3 bucket by setting the CORS configuration.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new PutBucketCorsCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        CORSConfiguration: {
          CORSRules: [
            {
              // Allow all headers to be sent to this bucket.
              AllowedHeaders: ["*"],
              // Allow only GET and PUT methods to be sent to this bucket.
              AllowedMethods: ["GET", "PUT"],
              // Allow only requests from the specified origin.
              AllowedOrigins: ["https://www.example.com"],
              // Allow the entity tag (ETag) header to be returned in the response.
 The ETag header
              // The entity tag represents a specific version of the object. The
 ETag reflects
              // changes only to the contents of an object, not its metadata.
              ExposeHeaders: ["ETag"],
```

```
              // How long the requesting browser should cache the preflight
 response. After
              // this time, the preflight request will have to be made again.
              MaxAgeSeconds: 3600,
            },
          ],
        },
      },
    );
    console.log(`Successfully set CORS rules for bucket: ${bucketName}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting CORS rules for ${bucketName}. The bucket
 doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting CORS rules for ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketPolicy`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add the policy.

```
import {
  PutBucketPolicyCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Grant an IAM role GetObject access to all of the objects
 * in the provided bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, iamRoleArn: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, iamRoleArn }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutBucketPolicyCommand({
    // This is a resource-based policy. For more information on resource-based
 policies,
    // see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
access_policies.html#policies_resource-based.
    Policy: JSON.stringify({
      Version: "2012-10-17",
      Statement: [
        {
          Effect: "Allow",
          Principal: {
            AWS: iamRoleArn,
          },
          Action: "s3:GetObject",
          Resource: `arn:aws:s3:::${bucketName}/*`,
        },
      ],
    }),
    // Apply the preceding policy to this bucket.
    Bucket: bucketName,
```

```
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `GetObject access to the bucket "${bucketName}" was granted to the provided
 IAM role.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "MalformedPolicy"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting the bucket policy for the bucket
 "${bucketName}". The policy was malformed.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while setting the bucket policy for the bucket
 "${bucketName}". ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the website configuration.

```
import {
  PutBucketWebsiteCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Configure an Amazon S3 bucket to serve a static website.
 * Website access must also be granted separately. For more information
 * on setting the permissions for website access, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/
WebsiteAccessPermissionsReqd.html.
 *
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutBucketWebsiteCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    WebsiteConfiguration: {
      ErrorDocument: {
        // The object key name to use when a 4XX class error occurs.
        Key: "error.html",
      },
      IndexDocument: {
        // A suffix that is appended to a request when the request is
        // for a directory.
        Suffix: "index.html",
      },
    },
  });

  try {
```

```
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `The bucket "${bucketName}" has been configured as a static website.`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while configuring the bucket "${bucketName}" as a static
website. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while configuring the bucket "${bucketName}" as a static
website. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload the object.

```
import { readFile } from "node:fs/promises";

import {
  PutObjectCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Upload a file to an S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, filePath: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, filePath }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Key: key,
    Body: await readFile(filePath),
  });

  try {
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "EntityTooLarge"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while uploading object to ${bucketName}. \
The object was too large. To upload objects larger than 5GB, use the S3 console
 (160GB max) \
or the multipart upload API (5TB max).`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while uploading object to ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
```

```
};
```

Upload the object on condition its ETag matches the one provided.

```
import {
  GetObjectCommand,
  NoSuchKey,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Get a single object from a specified S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, eTag: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, eTag }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new GetObjectCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        IfMatch: eTag,
      }),
    );
    // The Body object also has 'transformToByteArray' and 'transformToWebStream'
 methods.
    const str = await response.Body.transformToString();
    console.log("Success. Here is text of the file:", str);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object "${key}" from "${bucketName}". No such
 key exists.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while getting object from ${bucketName}.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
      );
```

```
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    eTag: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  PutObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Apply a legal hold configuration to the specified object.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, objectKey: string, legalHoldStatus: "ON" | "OFF" }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, objectKey, legalHoldStatus }) => {
  if (!["OFF", "ON"].includes(legalHoldStatus.toUpperCase())) {
    throw new Error(
      "Invalid parameter. legalHoldStatus must be 'ON' or 'OFF'.",
    );
  }

  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Key: objectKey,
    LegalHold: {
      // Set the status to 'ON' to place a legal hold on the object.
      // Set the status to 'OFF' to remove the legal hold.
      Status: legalHoldStatus,
    },
  });
```

```
  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(
      `Legal hold status set to "${legalHoldStatus}" for "${objectKey}" in
 "${bucketName}"`,
    );
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying legal hold status for "${objectKey}" in
 "${bucketName}". The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying legal hold status for "${objectKey}" in
 "${bucketName}". ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    objectKey: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    legalHoldStatus: {
```

```
      type: "string",
      default: "ON",
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`PutObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
import {
  PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
```

```
 * Enable S3 Object Lock for an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * After you enable Object Lock on a bucket, you can't
 * disable Object Lock or suspend versioning for that bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, enabled: boolean }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    // The Object Lock configuration that you want to apply to the specified bucket.
    ObjectLockConfiguration: {
      ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log(`Object Lock for "${bucketName}" enabled.`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the object lock configuration for the bucket
 "${bucketName}". The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the object lock configuration for the bucket
 "${bucketName}". ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";
```

```
const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
import {
  PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Change the default retention settings for an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, retentionDays: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, retentionDays }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  try {
    await client.send(
      new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: bucketName,
```

```
      // The Object Lock configuration that you want to apply to the specified
bucket.
      ObjectLockConfiguration: {
        ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
        Rule: {
          // The default Object Lock retention mode and period that you want to
apply
          // to new objects placed in the specified bucket. Bucket settings
require
          // both a mode and a period. The period can be either Days or Years but
          // you must select one.
          DefaultRetention: {
            // In governance mode, users can't overwrite or delete an object
version
            // or alter its lock settings unless they have special permissions.
With
            // governance mode, you protect objects against being deleted by most
users,
            // but you can still grant some users permission to alter the
retention settings
            // or delete the objects if necessary.
            Mode: "GOVERNANCE",
            Days: Number.parseInt(retentionDays),
          },
        },
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(
    `Set default retention mode to "GOVERNANCE" with a retention period of
${retentionDays} day(s).`,
  );
 } catch (caught) {
  if (
    caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
    caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
  ) {
    console.error(
      `Error from S3 while setting the default object retention for a bucket. The
bucket doesn't exist.`,
    );
  } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
    console.error(
```

```
        `Error from S3 while setting the default object retention for a bucket.
 ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    retentionDays: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

PutObjectRetention

The following code example shows how to use PutObjectRetention.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  PutObjectRetentionCommand,
  S3Client,
  S3ServiceException,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * Place a 24-hour retention period on an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  const command = new PutObjectRetentionCommand({
    Bucket: bucketName,
    Key: key,
    BypassGovernanceRetention: false,
    Retention: {
      // In governance mode, users can't overwrite or delete an object version
      // or alter its lock settings unless they have special permissions. With
      // governance mode, you protect objects against being deleted by most users,
      // but you can still grant some users permission to alter the retention
 settings
      // or delete the objects if necessary.
      Mode: "GOVERNANCE",
      RetainUntilDate: new Date(new Date().getTime() + 24 * 60 * 60 * 1000),
    },
  });

  try {
    await client.send(command);
    console.log("Object Retention settings updated.");
```

```
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof S3ServiceException &&
      caught.name === "NoSuchBucket"
    ) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the governance mode and retention period on
 an object. The bucket doesn't exist.`,
      );
    } else if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
      console.error(
        `Error from S3 while modifying the governance mode and retention period on
 an object. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
import {
  isMain,
  validateArgs,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-node.js";

const loadArgs = () => {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
    key: {
      type: "string",
      required: true,
    },
  };
  const results = parseArgs({ options });
  const { errors } = validateArgs({ options }, results);
  return { errors, results };
};

if (isMain(import.meta.url)) {
```

```
  const { errors, results } = loadArgs();
  if (!errors) {
    main(results.values);
  } else {
    console.error(errors.join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a presigned URL to upload an object to a bucket.

```
import https from "node:https";

import { XMLParser } from "fast-xml-parser";
import { PutObjectCommand, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { fromIni } from "@aws-sdk/credential-providers";
import { HttpRequest } from "@smithy/protocol-http";
import {
  getSignedUrl,
  S3RequestPresigner,
} from "@aws-sdk/s3-request-presigner";
import { parseUrl } from "@smithy/url-parser";
import { formatUrl } from "@aws-sdk/util-format-url";
import { Hash } from "@smithy/hash-node";
```

```
const createPresignedUrlWithoutClient = async ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const url = parseUrl(`https://${bucket}.s3.${region}.amazonaws.com/${key}`);
  const presigner = new S3RequestPresigner({
    credentials: fromIni(),
    region,
    sha256: Hash.bind(null, "sha256"),
  });

  const signedUrlObject = await presigner.presign(
    new HttpRequest({ ...url, method: "PUT" }),
  );
  return formatUrl(signedUrlObject);
};

const createPresignedUrlWithClient = ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({ region });
  const command = new PutObjectCommand({ Bucket: bucket, Key: key });
  return getSignedUrl(client, command, { expiresIn: 3600 });
};

/**
 * Make a PUT request to the provided URL.
 *
 * @param {string} url
 * @param {string} data
 */
const put = (url, data) => {
  return new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
    const req = https.request(
      url,
      { method: "PUT", headers: { "Content-Length": new Blob([data]).size } },
      (res) => {
        let responseBody = "";
        res.on("data", (chunk) => {
          responseBody += chunk;
        });
        res.on("end", () => {
          const parser = new XMLParser();
          if (res.statusCode >= 200 && res.statusCode <= 299) {
            resolve(parser.parse(responseBody, true));
          } else {
            reject(parser.parse(responseBody, true));
          }
        });
```

```
      },
    );
    req.on("error", (err) => {
      reject(err);
    });
    req.write(data);
    req.end();
  });
};

/**
 * Create two presigned urls for uploading an object to an S3 bucket.
 * The first presigned URL is created with credentials from the shared INI file
 * in the current environment. The second presigned URL is created using an
 * existing S3Client instance that has already been provided with credentials.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, region: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, region }) => {
  try {
    const noClientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithoutClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      key,
      region,
    });

    const clientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      region,
      key,
    });

    // After you get the presigned URL, you can provide your own file
    // data. Refer to put() above.
    console.log("Calling PUT using presigned URL without client");
    await put(noClientUrl, "Hello World");

    console.log("Calling PUT using presigned URL with client");
    await put(clientUrl, "Hello World");

    console.log("\nDone. Check your S3 console.");
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "CredentialsProviderError") {
      console.error(
```

```
        `There was an error getting your credentials. Are your local credentials
 configured?\n${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Create a presigned URL to download an object from a bucket.

```
import { GetObjectCommand, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { fromIni } from "@aws-sdk/credential-providers";
import { HttpRequest } from "@smithy/protocol-http";
import {
  getSignedUrl,
  S3RequestPresigner,
} from "@aws-sdk/s3-request-presigner";
import { parseUrl } from "@smithy/url-parser";
import { formatUrl } from "@aws-sdk/util-format-url";
import { Hash } from "@smithy/hash-node";

const createPresignedUrlWithoutClient = async ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const url = parseUrl(`https://${bucket}.s3.${region}.amazonaws.com/${key}`);
  const presigner = new S3RequestPresigner({
    credentials: fromIni(),
    region,
    sha256: Hash.bind(null, "sha256"),
  });

  const signedUrlObject = await presigner.presign(new HttpRequest(url));
  return formatUrl(signedUrlObject);
};

const createPresignedUrlWithClient = ({ region, bucket, key }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({ region });
  const command = new GetObjectCommand({ Bucket: bucket, Key: key });
  return getSignedUrl(client, command, { expiresIn: 3600 });
};

/**
 * Create two presigned urls for downloading an object from an S3 bucket.
```

```
 * The first presigned URL is created with credentials from the shared INI file
 * in the current environment. The second presigned URL is created using an
 * existing S3Client instance that has already been provided with credentials.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string, region: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key, region }) => {
  try {
    const noClientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithoutClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      region,
      key,
    });

    const clientUrl = await createPresignedUrlWithClient({
      bucket: bucketName,
      region,
      key,
    });

    console.log("Presigned URL without client");
    console.log(noClientUrl);
    console.log("\n");

    console.log("Presigned URL with client");
    console.log(clientUrl);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "CredentialsProviderError") {
      console.error(
        `There was an error getting your credentials. Are your local credentials
 configured?\n${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a web page that lists Amazon S3 objects

The following code example shows how to list Amazon S3 objects in a web page.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following code is the relevant React component that makes calls to the AWS SDK. A runnable version of the application containing this component can be found at the preceding GitHub link.

```
import { useEffect, useState } from "react";
import {
  ListObjectsCommand,
  type ListObjectsCommandOutput,
  S3Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { fromCognitoIdentityPool } from "@aws-sdk/credential-providers";
import "./App.css";

function App() {
  const [objects, setObjects] = useState<
    Required<ListObjectsCommandOutput>["Contents"]
  >([]);

  useEffect(() => {
    const client = new S3Client({
      region: "us-east-1",
      // Unless you have a public bucket, you'll need access to a private bucket.
      // One way to do this is to create an Amazon Cognito identity pool, attach a
 role to the pool,
      // and grant the role access to the 's3:GetObject' action.
      //
      // You'll also need to configure the CORS settings on the bucket to allow
 traffic from
      // this example site. Here's an example configuration that allows all origins.
 Don't
      // do this in production.
      //[
      //  {
      //    "AllowedHeaders": ["*"],
      //    "AllowedMethods": ["GET"],
      //    "AllowedOrigins": ["*"],
      //    "ExposeHeaders": [],
      //  },
      //]
      //
      credentials: fromCognitoIdentityPool({
        clientConfig: { region: "us-east-1" },
        identityPoolId: "<YOUR_IDENTITY_POOL_ID>",
      }),
    });
    const command = new ListObjectsCommand({ Bucket: "bucket-name" });
    client.send(command).then(({ Contents }) => setObjects(Contents || []));
```

```
  }, []);

  return (
    <div className="App">
      {objects.map((o) => (
        <div key={o.ETag}>{o.Key}</div>
      ))}
    </div>
  );
}

export default App;
```

- For API details, see ListObjects in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Delete all objects in a bucket

The following code example shows how to delete all of the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete all objects for a given Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import {
  DeleteObjectsCommand,
  paginateListObjectsV2,
  S3Client,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 *
 * @param {{ bucketName: string }} config
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName }) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});
  try {
    console.log(`Deleting all objects in bucket: ${bucketName}`);

    const paginator = paginateListObjectsV2(
      { client },
      {
        Bucket: bucketName,
      },
    );

    const objectKeys = [];
    for await (const { Contents } of paginator) {
      objectKeys.push(...Contents.map((obj) => ({ Key: obj.Key })));
    }

    const deleteCommand = new DeleteObjectsCommand({
```

```
      Bucket: bucketName,
      Delete: { Objects: objectKeys },
    });

    await client.send(deleteCommand);

    console.log(`All objects deleted from bucket: ${bucketName}`);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error) {
      console.error(
        `Failed to empty ${bucketName}. ${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    }
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const options = {
    bucketName: {
      type: "string",
    },
  };

  const { values } = parseArgs({ options });
  main(values);
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - DeleteObjects
  - ListObjectsV2

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition with the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

Learn how to:

- Create an unauthenticated user using Amazon Cognito.
- Analyze images for objects using Amazon Rekognition.
- Verify an email address for Amazon SES.
- Send an email notification using Amazon SES.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Lock Amazon S3 objects

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object lock features.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Entrypoint for the scenario (index.js). This orchestrates all of the steps. Visit GitHub to see the implementation details for Scenario, ScenarioInput, ScenarioOutput, and ScenarioAction.

```
import * as Scenarios from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  exitOnFalse,
```

```
  loadState,
  saveState,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";

import { welcome, welcomeContinue } from "./welcome.steps.js";
import {
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention,
  confirmUpdateLockPolicy,
  confirmUpdateRetention,
  createBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  getBucketPrefix,
  populateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
  setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction,
  setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction,
  setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction,
  setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction,
  updateLockPolicy,
  updateLockPolicyAction,
  updateRetention,
  updateRetentionAction,
} from "./setup.steps.js";

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {Record<string, any>} initialState
 */
export const getWorkflowStages = (scenarios, initialState = {}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  return {
    deploy: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Object Locking - Deploy",
      [
        welcome(scenarios),
        welcomeContinue(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "welcomeContinue"),
        getBucketPrefix(scenarios),
```

```
        createBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmCreateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCreateBuckets"),
        createBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        updateRetention(scenarios),
        confirmUpdateRetention(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmUpdateRetention"),
        updateRetentionAction(scenarios, client),
        populateBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmPopulateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmPopulateBuckets"),
        populateBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        updateLockPolicy(scenarios),
        confirmUpdateLockPolicy(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmUpdateLockPolicy"),
        updateLockPolicyAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled(scenarios),
        setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled(scenarios),
        setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention(scenarios),
        setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction(scenarios, client),
        confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention(scenarios),
        setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction(scenarios, client),
        saveState,
      ],
      initialState,
    ),
    demo: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Object Locking - Demo",
      [loadState, replAction(scenarios, client)],
      initialState,
    ),
    clean: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Object Locking - Destroy",
      [
        loadState,
        confirmCleanup(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCleanup"),
        cleanupAction(scenarios, client),
      ],
      initialState,
    ),
  };
```

```
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { cleanupAction, confirmCleanup } from "./clean.steps.js";
import { replAction } from "./repl.steps.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const objectLockingScenarios = getWorkflowStages(Scenarios);
  Scenarios.parseScenarioArgs(objectLockingScenarios, {
    name: "Amazon S3 object locking workflow",
    description:
      "Work with Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) object locking
 features.",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | clean> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
  });
}
```

Output welcome messages to the console (welcome.steps.js).

```
/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcome = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "welcome",
    "Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) Object Locking Feature
 Scenario. For this workflow, we will use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create
 several S3 buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking features.",
    { header: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
```

```
const welcomeContinue = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "welcomeContinue",
    "Press Enter when you are ready to start.",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

export { welcome, welcomeContinue };
```

Deploy buckets, objects, and file settings (setup.steps.js).

```
import {
  BucketVersioningStatus,
  ChecksumAlgorithm,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  MFADeleteStatus,
  PutBucketVersioningCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  PutObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  PutObjectRetentionCommand,
  ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus,
  ObjectLockRetentionMode,
  GetBucketVersioningCommand,
  BucketAlreadyExists,
  BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilBucketExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
```

```
 */
const getBucketPrefix = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "bucketPrefix",
    "Provide a prefix that will be used for bucket creation.",
    { type: "input", default: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const createBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "createBuckets",
    (state) => `The following buckets will be created:
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock with object lock False.
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled with object lock True.
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation with object lock False.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCreateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCreateBuckets", "Create the buckets?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const createBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("createBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    const noLockBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock`;
    const lockEnabledBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled`;
    const retentionBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation`;

    try {
      await client.send(new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: noLockBucketName }));
      await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: noLockBucketName });
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({
```

```
          Bucket: lockEnabledBucketName,
          ObjectLockEnabledForBucket: true,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists(
        { client },
        { Bucket: lockEnabledBucketName },
      );
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: retentionBucketName }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: retentionBucketName });

      state.noLockBucketName = noLockBucketName;
      state.lockEnabledBucketName = lockEnabledBucketName;
      state.retentionBucketName = retentionBucketName;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyExists ||
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
      ) {
        console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
        state.earlyExit = true;
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const populateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "populateBuckets",
    (state) => `The following test files will be created:
         file0.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock.
         file1.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-no-lock.
         file0.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled.
         file1.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled.
         file0.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation.
         file1.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-after-creation.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );
```

```
/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmPopulateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmPopulateBuckets",
    "Populate the buckets?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const populateBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("populateBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    try {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.noLockBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.noLockBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
```

```
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
        console.error(
          `Error from S3 while uploading object.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
        );
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const updateRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "updateRetention",
    (state) => `A bucket can be configured to use object locking with a default
 retention period.
A default retention period will be configured for ${state.bucketPrefix}-retention-
after-creation.`,
```

```
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmUpdateRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmUpdateRetention",
    "Configure default retention period?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const updateRetentionAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("updateRetentionAction", async (state) => {
    await client.send(
      new PutBucketVersioningCommand({
        Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
        VersioningConfiguration: {
          MFADelete: MFADeleteStatus.Disabled,
          Status: BucketVersioningStatus.Enabled,
        },
      }),
    );

    const getBucketVersioning = new GetBucketVersioningCommand({
      Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
    });

    await retry({ intervalInMs: 500, maxRetries: 10 }, async () => {
      const { Status } = await client.send(getBucketVersioning);
      if (Status !== "Enabled") {
        throw new Error("Bucket versioning is not enabled.");
      }
    });

    await client.send(
      new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
        ObjectLockConfiguration: {
```

```
          ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
          Rule: {
            DefaultRetention: {
              Mode: "GOVERNANCE",
              Years: 1,
            },
          },
        },
      }),
    );
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const updateLockPolicy = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "updateLockPolicy",
    (state) => `Object lock policies can also be added to existing buckets.
An object lock policy will be added to ${state.bucketPrefix}-lock-enabled.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmUpdateLockPolicy = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmUpdateLockPolicy",
    "Add object lock policy?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const updateLockPolicyAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("updateLockPolicyAction", async (state) => {
    await client.send(
      new PutObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
        Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
        ObjectLockConfiguration: {
          ObjectLockEnabled: "Enabled",
```

```
        },
      }),
    );
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a legal hold to file0.txt in
 ${state.lockEnabledBucketName}?`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction",
    async (state) => {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          LegalHold: {
            Status: ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON,
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Modified legal hold for file0.txt in ${state.lockEnabledBucketName}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled },
  );
```

```
/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a 1 day Governance retention period to file1.txt in
 ${state.lockEnabledBucketName}?
Reminder: Only a user with the s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able
 to delete this file or its bucket until the retention period has expired.`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction",
    async (state) => {
      const retentionDate = new Date();
      retentionDate.setDate(retentionDate.getDate() + 1);
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectRetentionCommand({
          Bucket: state.lockEnabledBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Retention: {
            Mode: ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE,
            RetainUntilDate: retentionDate,
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Set retention for file1.txt in ${state.lockEnabledBucketName} until
 ${retentionDate.toISOString().split("T")[0]}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled },
  );
```

```
/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a legal hold to file0.txt in
 ${state.retentionBucketName}?`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction",
    async (state) => {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file0.txt",
          LegalHold: {
            Status: ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON,
          },
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Modified legal hold for file0.txt in ${state.retentionBucketName}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention = (scenarios) =>
```

```
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention",
    (state) =>
      `Would you like to add a 1 day Governance retention period to file1.txt in
 ${state.retentionBucketName}?
Reminder: Only a user with the s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able
 to delete this file or its bucket until the retention period has expired.`,
    {
      type: "confirm",
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction",
    async (state) => {
      const retentionDate = new Date();
      retentionDate.setDate(retentionDate.getDate() + 1);
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectRetentionCommand({
          Bucket: state.retentionBucketName,
          Key: "file1.txt",
          Retention: {
            Mode: ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE,
            RetainUntilDate: retentionDate,
          },
          BypassGovernanceRetention: true,
        }),
      );
      console.log(
        `Set retention for file1.txt in ${state.retentionBucketName} until
 ${retentionDate.toISOString().split("T")[0]}.`,
      );
    },
    { skipWhen: (state) => !state.confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention },
  );

export {
  getBucketPrefix,
  createBuckets,
```

```
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  populateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
  updateRetention,
  confirmUpdateRetention,
  updateRetentionAction,
  updateLockPolicy,
  confirmUpdateLockPolicy,
  updateLockPolicyAction,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileEnabled,
  setLegalHoldFileEnabledAction,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileEnabled,
  setRetentionPeriodFileEnabledAction,
  confirmSetLegalHoldFileRetention,
  setLegalHoldFileRetentionAction,
  confirmSetRetentionPeriodFileRetention,
  setRetentionPeriodFileRetentionAction,
};
```

View and delete files in the buckets (repl.steps.js).

```
import {
  ChecksumAlgorithm,
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  GetObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand,
  GetObjectRetentionCommand,
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

const choices = {
```

```
  EXIT: 0,
  LIST_ALL_FILES: 1,
  DELETE_FILE: 2,
  DELETE_FILE_WITH_RETENTION: 3,
  OVERWRITE_FILE: 4,
  VIEW_RETENTION_SETTINGS: 5,
  VIEW_LEGAL_HOLD_SETTINGS: 6,
};

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const replInput = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "replChoice",
    "Explore the S3 locking features by selecting one of the following choices",
    {
      type: "select",
      choices: [
        { name: "List all files in buckets", value: choices.LIST_ALL_FILES },
        { name: "Attempt to delete a file.", value: choices.DELETE_FILE },
        {
          name: "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
          value: choices.DELETE_FILE_WITH_RETENTION,
        },
        { name: "Attempt to overwrite a file.", value: choices.OVERWRITE_FILE },
        {
          name: "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
          value: choices.VIEW_RETENTION_SETTINGS,
        },
        {
          name: "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
          value: choices.VIEW_LEGAL_HOLD_SETTINGS,
        },
        { name: "Finish the workflow.", value: choices.EXIT },
      ],
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 */
const getAllFiles = async (client, buckets) => {
```

```
  /** @type {{bucket: string, key: string, version: string}[]} */
  const files = [];
  for (const bucket of buckets) {
    const objectsResponse = await client.send(
      new ListObjectVersionsCommand({ Bucket: bucket }),
    );
    for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
      const { Key, VersionId } = version;
      files.push({ bucket, key: Key, version: VersionId });
    }
  }

  return files;
};

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const replAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction(
    "replAction",
    async (state) => {
      const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
        state.noLockBucketName,
        state.lockEnabledBucketName,
        state.retentionBucketName,
      ]);

      const fileInput = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectedFile",
        "Select a file:",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: files.map((file, index) => ({
            name: `${index + 1}: ${file.bucket}: ${file.key} (version: ${
              file.version
            })`,
            value: index,
          })),
        },
      );

      const { replChoice } = state;
```

```
      switch (replChoice) {
        case choices.LIST_ALL_FILES: {
          const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
            state.noLockBucketName,
            state.lockEnabledBucketName,
            state.retentionBucketName,
          ]);
          state.replOutput = files
            .map(
              (file) =>
                `${file.bucket}: ${file.key} (version: ${file.version})`,
            )
            .join("\n");
          break;
        }
        case choices.DELETE_FILE: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToDelete = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToDelete];
          try {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Deleted ${selectedFile.key} in
${selectedFile.bucket}.`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to delete object ${selectedFile.key} in
bucket ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${err.message}`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.DELETE_FILE_WITH_RETENTION: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToDelete = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToDelete];
          try {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
```

```
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
                BypassGovernanceRetention: true,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Deleted ${selectedFile.key} in
${selectedFile.bucket}.`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to delete object ${selectedFile.key} in
bucket ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${err.message}`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.OVERWRITE_FILE: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToOverwrite = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToOverwrite];
          try {
            await client.send(
              new PutObjectCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                Body: "New content",
                ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Overwrote ${selectedFile.key} in
${selectedFile.bucket}.`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to overwrite object ${selectedFile.key} in
bucket ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${err.message}`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.VIEW_RETENTION_SETTINGS: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToView = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToView];
          try {
            const retention = await client.send(
              new GetObjectRetentionCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
```

```
              }),
            );
            const bucketConfig = await client.send(
              new GetObjectLockConfigurationCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Object retention for ${selectedFile.key}
 in ${selectedFile.bucket}: ${retention.Retention?.Mode} until
 ${retention.Retention?.RetainUntilDate?.toISOString()}.
Bucket object lock config for ${selectedFile.bucket} in ${selectedFile.bucket}:
Enabled: ${bucketConfig.ObjectLockConfiguration?.ObjectLockEnabled}
Rule:
 ${JSON.stringify(bucketConfig.ObjectLockConfiguration?.Rule?.DefaultRetention)}`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to fetch object lock retention:
 '${err.message}'`;
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.VIEW_LEGAL_HOLD_SETTINGS: {
          /** @type {number} */
          const fileToView = await fileInput.handle(state);
          const selectedFile = files[fileToView];
          try {
            const legalHold = await client.send(
              new GetObjectLegalHoldCommand({
                Bucket: selectedFile.bucket,
                Key: selectedFile.key,
                VersionId: selectedFile.version,
              }),
            );
            state.replOutput = `Object legal hold for ${selectedFile.key} in
 ${selectedFile.bucket}: Status: ${legalHold.LegalHold?.Status}`;
          } catch (err) {
            state.replOutput = `Unable to fetch legal hold: '${err.message}'`;
          }
          break;
        }
        default:
          throw new Error(`Invalid replChoice: ${replChoice}`);
      }
    },
    {
```

```
      whileConfig: {
        whileFn: ({ replChoice }) => replChoice !== choices.EXIT,
        input: replInput(scenarios),
        output: new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
          "REPL output",
          (state) => state.replOutput,
          { preformatted: true },
        ),
      },
    },
  );

export { replInput, replAction, choices };
```

Destroy all created resources (clean.steps.js).

```
import {
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
  GetObjectLegalHoldCommand,
  GetObjectRetentionCommand,
  PutObjectLegalHoldCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCleanup = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCleanup", "Clean up resources?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
```

```
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const cleanupAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("cleanupAction", async (state) => {
    const { noLockBucketName, lockEnabledBucketName, retentionBucketName } =
      state;

    const buckets = [
      noLockBucketName,
      lockEnabledBucketName,
      retentionBucketName,
    ];

    for (const bucket of buckets) {
      /** @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").ListObjectVersionsCommandOutput} */
      let objectsResponse;

      try {
        objectsResponse = await client.send(
          new ListObjectVersionsCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
          }),
        );
      } catch (e) {
        if (e instanceof Error && e.name === "NoSuchBucket") {
          console.log("Object's bucket has already been deleted.");
          continue;
        }
        throw e;
      }

      for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
        const { Key, VersionId } = version;

        try {
          const legalHold = await client.send(
            new GetObjectLegalHoldCommand({
              Bucket: bucket,
              Key,
              VersionId,
            }),
          );
```

```
          if (legalHold.LegalHold?.Status === "ON") {
            await client.send(
              new PutObjectLegalHoldCommand({
                Bucket: bucket,
                Key,
                VersionId,
                LegalHold: {
                  Status: "OFF",
                },
              }),
            );
          }
        } catch (err) {
          console.log(
            `Unable to fetch legal hold for ${Key} in ${bucket}: '${err.message}'`,
          );
        }

        try {
          const retention = await client.send(
            new GetObjectRetentionCommand({
              Bucket: bucket,
              Key,
              VersionId,
            }),
          );

          if (retention.Retention?.Mode === "GOVERNANCE") {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: bucket,
                Key,
                VersionId,
                BypassGovernanceRetention: true,
              }),
            );
          }
        } catch (err) {
          console.log(
            `Unable to fetch object lock retention for ${Key} in ${bucket}:
'${err.message}'`,
          );
        }
```

```
        await client.send(
          new DeleteObjectCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
            Key,
            VersionId,
          }),
        );
      }

      await client.send(new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucket }));
      console.log(`Delete for ${bucket} complete.`);
    }
  });

export { confirmCleanup, cleanupAction };
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Make conditional requests

The following code example shows how to add preconditions to Amazon S3 requests.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Entrypoint for the workflow (index.js). This orchestrates all of the steps. Visit GitHub to see the implementation details for Scenario, ScenarioInput, ScenarioOutput, and ScenarioAction.

```
import * as Scenarios from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import {
  exitOnFalse,
  loadState,
  saveState,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/steps-common.js";

import { welcome, welcomeContinue } from "./welcome.steps.js";
import {
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  createBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  getBucketPrefix,
  populateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
} from "./setup.steps.js";

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {Record<string, any>} initialState
 */
export const getWorkflowStages = (scenarios, initialState = {}) => {
  const client = new S3Client({});

  return {
    deploy: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Conditional Requests - Deploy",
      [
        welcome(scenarios),
        welcomeContinue(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "welcomeContinue"),
        getBucketPrefix(scenarios),
        createBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmCreateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCreateBuckets"),
        createBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        populateBuckets(scenarios),
        confirmPopulateBuckets(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmPopulateBuckets"),
        populateBucketsAction(scenarios, client),
        saveState,
      ],
```

```
      initialState,
    ),
    demo: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Conditional Requests - Demo",
      [loadState, welcome(scenarios), replAction(scenarios, client)],
      initialState,
    ),
    clean: new scenarios.Scenario(
      "S3 Conditional Requests - Destroy",
      [
        loadState,
        confirmCleanup(scenarios),
        exitOnFalse(scenarios, "confirmCleanup"),
        cleanupAction(scenarios, client),
      ],
      initialState,
    ),
  };
};

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { cleanupAction, confirmCleanup } from "./clean.steps.js";
import { replAction } from "./repl.steps.js";

if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const objectLockingScenarios = getWorkflowStages(Scenarios);
  Scenarios.parseScenarioArgs(objectLockingScenarios, {
    name: "Amazon S3 object locking workflow",
    description:
      "Work with Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) object locking
 features.",
    synopsis:
      "node index.js --scenario <deploy | demo | clean> [-h|--help] [-y|--yes] [-
v|--verbose]",
  });
}
```

Output welcome messages to the console (welcome.steps.js).

```
/**
```

```
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcome = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "welcome",
    "This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3 operations." +
      " You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests to
 return " +
      "or copy an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date.You
 can use " +
      "a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by ensuring there is no
 existing " +
      "object with the same key.\n" +
      "This example will enable you to perform conditional reads and writes that
 will succeed " +
      "or fail based on your selected options.\n" +
      "Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the example.\n"
 +
      "Some steps require a key name prefix to be defined by the user. Before you
 begin, you can " +
      "optionally edit this prefix in ./object_name.json. If you do so, please
 reload the scenario before you begin.",
    { header: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const welcomeContinue = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "welcomeContinue",
    "Press Enter when you are ready to start.",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

export { welcome, welcomeContinue };
```

Deploy buckets and objects (setup.steps.js).

```
import {
  ChecksumAlgorithm,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
  BucketAlreadyExists,
  BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou,
  S3ServiceException,
  waitUntilBucketExists,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const getBucketPrefix = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "bucketPrefix",
    "Provide a prefix that will be used for bucket creation.",
    { type: "input", default: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" },
  );
/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const createBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "createBuckets",
    (state) => `The following buckets will be created:
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-source-bucket.
         ${state.bucketPrefix}-destination-bucket.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCreateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
```

```
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCreateBuckets", "Create the buckets?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const createBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("createBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    const sourceBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-source-bucket`;
    const destinationBucketName = `${state.bucketPrefix}-destination-bucket`;

    try {
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({
          Bucket: sourceBucketName,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists({ client }, { Bucket: sourceBucketName });
      await client.send(
        new CreateBucketCommand({
          Bucket: destinationBucketName,
        }),
      );
      await waitUntilBucketExists(
        { client },
        { Bucket: destinationBucketName },
      );

      state.sourceBucketName = sourceBucketName;
      state.destinationBucketName = destinationBucketName;
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyExists ||
        caught instanceof BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou
      ) {
        console.error(`${caught.name}: ${caught.message}`);
        state.earlyExit = true;
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });
```

```
/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const populateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioOutput(
    "populateBuckets",
    (state) => `The following test files will be created:
         file01.txt in ${state.bucketPrefix}-source-bucket.`,
    { preformatted: true },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmPopulateBuckets = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
    "confirmPopulateBuckets",
    "Populate the buckets?",
    { type: "confirm" },
  );

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const populateBucketsAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("populateBucketsAction", async (state) => {
    try {
      await client.send(
        new PutObjectCommand({
          Bucket: state.sourceBucketName,
          Key: "file01.txt",
          Body: "Content",
          ChecksumAlgorithm: ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught instanceof S3ServiceException) {
        console.error(
          `Error from S3 while uploading object.  ${caught.name}:
 ${caught.message}`,
        );
      } else {
```

```
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  });

export {
  confirmCreateBuckets,
  confirmPopulateBuckets,
  createBuckets,
  createBucketsAction,
  getBucketPrefix,
  populateBuckets,
  populateBucketsAction,
};
```

Get, copy, and put objects using S3 conditional requests (repl.steps.js).

```
import path from "node:path";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { dirname } from "node:path";

import {
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
  GetObjectCommand,
  CopyObjectCommand,
  PutObjectCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import data from "./object_name.json" assert { type: "json" };
import { readFile } from "node:fs/promises";
import {
  ScenarioInput,
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "../../../libs/scenario/index.js";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
```

```
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

const choices = {
  EXIT: 0,
  LIST_ALL_FILES: 1,
  CONDITIONAL_READ: 2,
  CONDITIONAL_COPY: 3,
  CONDITIONAL_WRITE: 4,
};

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const replInput = (scenarios) =>
  new ScenarioInput(
    "replChoice",
    "Explore the S3 conditional request features by selecting one of the following
 choices",
    {
      type: "select",
      choices: [
        { name: "Print list of bucket items.", value: choices.LIST_ALL_FILES },
        {
          name: "Perform a conditional read.",
          value: choices.CONDITIONAL_READ,
        },
        {
          name: "Perform a conditional copy. These examples use the key name prefix
 defined in ./object_name.json.",
          value: choices.CONDITIONAL_COPY,
        },
        {
          name: "Perform a conditional write. This example use the sample file ./
text02.txt.",
          value: choices.CONDITIONAL_WRITE,
        },
        { name: "Finish the workflow.", value: choices.EXIT },
      ],
    },
  );

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
```

```
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 */
const getAllFiles = async (client, buckets) => {
  /** @type {{bucket: string, key: string, version: string}[]} */
  const files = [];
  for (const bucket of buckets) {
    const objectsResponse = await client.send(
      new ListObjectVersionsCommand({ Bucket: bucket }),
    );
    for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
      const { Key } = version;
      files.push({ bucket, key: Key });
    }
  }
  return files;
};

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 * @param {string} key
 */
const getEtag = async (client, bucket, key) => {
  const objectsResponse = await client.send(
    new GetObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucket,
      Key: key,
    }),
  );
  return objectsResponse.ETag;
};

/**
 * @param {S3Client} client
 * @param {string[]} buckets
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
export const replAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new ScenarioAction(
    "replAction",
```

```
    async (state) => {
      const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
        state.sourceBucketName,
        state.destinationBucketName,
      ]);

      const fileInput = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectedFile",
        "Select a file to use:",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: files.map((file, index) => ({
            name: `${index + 1}: ${file.bucket}: ${file.key} (Etag: ${
              file.version
            })`,
            value: index,
          })),
        },
      );
      const condReadOptions = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectOption",
        "Which conditional read action would you like to take?",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: [
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail.",
          ],
        },
      );
      const condCopyOptions = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectOption",
        "Which conditional copy action would you like to take?",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: [
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
```

```
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail.",
          ],
        },
      );
      const condWriteOptions = new scenarios.ScenarioInput(
        "selectOption",
        "Which conditional write action would you like to take?",
        {
          type: "select",
          choices: [
            "IfNoneMatch condition on the object key: If the key is a duplicate, the
write will fail.",
          ],
        },
      );

      const { replChoice } = state;

      switch (replChoice) {
        case choices.LIST_ALL_FILES: {
          const files = await getAllFiles(client, [
            state.sourceBucketName,
            state.destinationBucketName,
          ]);
          state.replOutput = files
            .map(
              (file) => `Items in bucket ${file.bucket}: object: ${file.key} `,
            )
            .join("\n");
          break;
        }
        case choices.CONDITIONAL_READ:
          {
            const selectedCondRead = await condReadOptions.handle(state);
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed."
            ) {
              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";
              const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);

              try {
```

```
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfMatch: ETag,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in bucket ${state.sourceBucketName} read
because ETag provided matches the object's ETag.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `Unable to read object ${key} in bucket
${state.sourceBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail."
            ) {
              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";
              const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);

              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfNoneMatch: ETag,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was
returned.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was not
read: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed."
            ) {
```

```
              const date = new Date();
              date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfModifiedSince: date,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in bucket ${state.sourceBucketName} read
because it has been created or modified in the last 24 hours.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `Unable to read object ${key} in bucket
${state.sourceBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
            if (
              selectedCondRead ===
              "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail."
            ) {
              const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
              const key = "file01.txt";

              const date = new Date();
              date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new GetObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: bucket,
                    Key: key,
                    IfUnmodifiedSince: date,
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was read.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `${key} in ${state.sourceBucketName} was not
read: ${err.message}`;
              }
```

```
              break;
            }
          }
          break;
        case choices.CONDITIONAL_COPY: {
          const selectedCondCopy = await condCopyOptions.handle(state);
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);

            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;
            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfMatch: ETag,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${key} copied as ${copiedKey} to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because ETag provided matches the object's ETag.`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object ${key} as ${copiedKey} to
bucket ${state.destinationBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
            }
            break;
          }
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const ETag = await getEtag(client, bucket, key);
            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
```

```
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;

            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfNoneMatch: ETag,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${copiedKey} copied to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName}`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object as ${key} as as ${copiedKey}
to bucket ${state.destinationBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
            }
            break;
          }
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;

            const date = new Date();
            date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
```

```
                  CopySourceIfModifiedSince: date,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${key} copied as ${copiedKey} to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because it has been created or modified in the last
24 hours.`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object ${key} as ${copiedKey} to
bucket ${state.destinationBucketName} : ${err.message}`;
            }
            break;
          }
          if (
            selectedCondCopy ===
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail."
          ) {
            const bucket = state.sourceBucketName;
            const key = "file01.txt";
            const copySource = `${bucket}/${key}`;
            // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
            const name = data.name;
            const copiedKey = `${name}${key}`;

            const date = new Date();
            date.setDate(date.getDate() - 1);

            try {
              await client.send(
                new CopyObjectCommand({
                  CopySource: copySource,
                  Bucket: state.destinationBucketName,
                  Key: copiedKey,
                  CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince: date,
                }),
              );
              state.replOutput = `${copiedKey} copied to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because it has not been created or modified in the
last 24 hours.`;
            } catch (err) {
              state.replOutput = `Unable to copy object ${key} to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName}: ${err.message}`;
            }
```

```
          }
          break;
        }
        case choices.CONDITIONAL_WRITE:
          {
            const selectedCondWrite = await condWriteOptions.handle(state);
            if (
              selectedCondWrite ===
              "IfNoneMatch condition on the object key: If the key is a duplicate,
the write will fail."
            ) {
              // Optionally edit the default key name prefix of the copied object
in ./object_name.json.
              const key = "text02.txt";
              const __filename = fileURLToPath(import.meta.url);
              const __dirname = dirname(__filename);
              const filePath = path.join(__dirname, "text02.txt");
              try {
                await client.send(
                  new PutObjectCommand({
                    Bucket: `${state.destinationBucketName}`,
                    Key: `${key}`,
                    Body: await readFile(filePath),
                    IfNoneMatch: "*",
                  }),
                );
                state.replOutput = `${key} uploaded to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName} because the key is not a duplicate.`;
              } catch (err) {
                state.replOutput = `Unable to upload object to bucket
${state.destinationBucketName}:${err.message}`;
              }
              break;
            }
          }
          break;

        default:
          throw new Error(`Invalid replChoice: ${replChoice}`);
      }
    },
    {
      whileConfig: {
        whileFn: ({ replChoice }) => replChoice !== choices.EXIT,
```

```
        input: replInput(scenarios),
        output: new ScenarioOutput("REPL output", (state) => state.replOutput, {
          preformatted: true,
        }),
      },
    },
  );

export { replInput, choices };
```

Destroy all created resources (clean.steps.js).

```
import {
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  ListObjectVersionsCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js")} Scenarios
 */

/**
 * @typedef {import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client} S3Client
 */

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 */
const confirmCleanup = (scenarios) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioInput("confirmCleanup", "Clean up resources?", {
    type: "confirm",
  });

/**
 * @param {Scenarios} scenarios
 * @param {S3Client} client
 */
const cleanupAction = (scenarios, client) =>
  new scenarios.ScenarioAction("cleanupAction", async (state) => {
    const { sourceBucketName, destinationBucketName } = state;
    const buckets = [sourceBucketName, destinationBucketName].filter((b) => b);
```

```
    for (const bucket of buckets) {
      try {
        let objectsResponse;
        objectsResponse = await client.send(
          new ListObjectVersionsCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
          }),
        );
        for (const version of objectsResponse.Versions || []) {
          const { Key, VersionId } = version;
          try {
            await client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({
                Bucket: bucket,
                Key,
                VersionId,
              }),
            );
          } catch (err) {
            console.log(`An error occurred: ${err.message} `);
          }
        }
      } catch (e) {
        if (e instanceof Error && e.name === "NoSuchBucket") {
          console.log("Objects and buckets have already been deleted.");
          continue;
        }
        throw e;
      }

      await client.send(new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: bucket }));
      console.log(`Delete for ${bucket} complete.`);
    }
  });

export { confirmCleanup, cleanupAction };
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject

- PutObject

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload a large file.

```
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

import {
  ProgressBar,
  logger,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-log.js";

const twentyFiveMB = 25 * 1024 * 1024;

export const createString = (size = twentyFiveMB) => {
  return "x".repeat(size);
};

/**
 * Create a 25MB file and upload it in parts to the specified
 * Amazon S3 bucket.
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  const str = createString();
  const buffer = Buffer.from(str, "utf8");
  const progressBar = new ProgressBar({
    description: `Uploading "${key}" to "${bucketName}"`,
```

```
    barLength: 30,
  });

  try {
    const upload = new Upload({
      client: new S3Client({}),
      params: {
        Bucket: bucketName,
        Key: key,
        Body: buffer,
      },
    });

    upload.on("httpUploadProgress", ({ loaded, total }) => {
      progressBar.update({ current: loaded, total });
    });

    await upload.done();
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "AbortError") {
      logger.error(`Multipart upload was aborted. ${caught.message}`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

Download a large file.

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import { GetObjectCommand, NoSuchKey, S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { createWriteStream, rmSync } from "node:fs";

const s3Client = new S3Client({});
const oneMB = 1024 * 1024;

export const getObjectRange = ({ bucket, key, start, end }) => {
  const command = new GetObjectCommand({
    Bucket: bucket,
    Key: key,
    Range: `bytes=${start}-${end}`,
```

```
  });

  return s3Client.send(command);
};

/**
 * @param {string | undefined} contentRange
 */
export const getRangeAndLength = (contentRange) => {
  const [range, length] = contentRange.split("/");
  const [start, end] = range.split("-");
  return {
    start: Number.parseInt(start),
    end: Number.parseInt(end),
    length: Number.parseInt(length),
  };
};

export const isComplete = ({ end, length }) => end === length - 1;

const downloadInChunks = async ({ bucket, key }) => {
  const writeStream = createWriteStream(
    fileURLToPath(new URL(`./${key}`, import.meta.url)),
  ).on("error", (err) => console.error(err));

  let rangeAndLength = { start: -1, end: -1, length: -1 };

  while (!isComplete(rangeAndLength)) {
    const { end } = rangeAndLength;
    const nextRange = { start: end + 1, end: end + oneMB };

    const { ContentRange, Body } = await getObjectRange({
      bucket,
      key,
      ...nextRange,
    });
    console.log(`Downloaded bytes ${nextRange.start} to ${nextRange.end}`);

    writeStream.write(await Body.transformToByteArray());
    rangeAndLength = getRangeAndLength(ContentRange);
  }
};

/**
```

```
 * Download a large object from and Amazon S3 bucket.
 *
 * When downloading a large file, you might want to break it down into
 * smaller pieces. Amazon S3 accepts a Range header to specify the start
 * and end of the byte range to be downloaded.
 *
 * @param {{ bucketName: string, key: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ bucketName, key }) => {
  try {
    await downloadInChunks({
      bucket: bucketName,
      key: key,
    });
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof NoSuchKey) {
      console.error(`Failed to download object. No such key "${key}".`);
      rmSync(key);
    }
  }
};
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

const client = new S3Client();

export const handler = async (event, context) => {

    // Get the object from the event and show its content type
    const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
    const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g, '
 '));

    try {
        const { ContentType } = await client.send(new HeadObjectCommand({
            Bucket: bucket,
            Key: key,
        }));

        console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
        return ContentType;

    } catch (err) {
        console.log(err);
        const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make
 sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
        console.log(message);
        throw new Error(message);
    }
};
```

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { S3Event } from 'aws-lambda';
import { S3Client, HeadObjectCommand } from '@aws-sdk/client-s3';

const s3 = new S3Client({ region: process.env.AWS_REGION });

export const handler = async (event: S3Event): Promise<string | undefined> => {
  // Get the object from the event and show its content type
  const bucket = event.Records[0].s3.bucket.name;
```

```
  const key = decodeURIComponent(event.Records[0].s3.object.key.replace(/\+/g, '
 '));
  const params = {
    Bucket: bucket,
    Key: key,
  };
  try {
    const { ContentType } = await s3.send(new HeadObjectCommand(params));
    console.log('CONTENT TYPE:', ContentType);
    return ContentType;
  } catch (err) {
    console.log(err);
    const message = `Error getting object ${key} from bucket ${bucket}. Make sure
 they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.`;
    console.log(message);
    throw new Error(message);
  }
};
```

S3 Glacier examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with S3 Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateVault`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVault`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
const { GlacierClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-glacier");
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const glacierClient = new GlacierClient({ region: REGION });
export { glacierClient };
```

Create the vault.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
import { CreateVaultCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-glacier";
import { glacierClient } from "./libs/glacierClient.js";

// Set the parameters
const vaultname = "VAULT_NAME"; // VAULT_NAME
const params = { vaultName: vaultname };

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await glacierClient.send(new CreateVaultCommand(params));
    console.log("Success, vault created!");
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error");
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UploadArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadArchive`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
const { GlacierClient } = require("@aws-sdk/client-glacier");
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION";
//Set the Redshift Service Object
const glacierClient = new GlacierClient({ region: REGION });
export { glacierClient };
```

Upload the archive.

```
// Load the SDK for JavaScript
import { UploadArchiveCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-glacier";
import { glacierClient } from "./libs/glacierClient.js";

// Set the parameters
const vaultname = "VAULT_NAME"; // VAULT_NAME

// Create a new service object and buffer
const buffer = new Buffer.alloc(2.5 * 1024 * 1024); // 2.5MB buffer
const params = { vaultName: vaultname, body: buffer };

const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await glacierClient.send(new UploadArchiveCommand(params));
    console.log("Archive ID", data.archiveId);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error uploading archive!", err);
```

```
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code examples show how to get started using SageMaker AI.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  SageMakerClient,
  ListNotebookInstancesCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker";
```

```
const client = new SageMakerClient({
  region: "us-west-2",
});

export const helloSagemaker = async () => {
  const command = new ListNotebookInstancesCommand({ MaxResults: 5 });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(
    "Hello Amazon SageMaker! Let's list some of your notebook instances:",
  );

  const instances = response.NotebookInstances || [];

  if (instances.length === 0) {
    console.log(
      "• No notebook instances found. Try creating one in the AWS Management Console
 or with the CreateNotebookInstanceCommand.",
    );
  } else {
    console.log(
      instances
        .map(
          (i) =>
            `• Instance: ${i.NotebookInstanceName}\n  Arn:${
              i.NotebookInstanceArn
            } \n  Creation Date: ${i.CreationTime.toISOString()}`,
        )
        .join("\n"),
    );
  }

  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreatePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePipeline`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A function that creates a SageMaker AI pipeline using a locally provided JSON definition.

```
/**
 * Create the Amazon SageMaker pipeline using a JSON pipeline definition. The
 definition
 * can also be provided as an Amazon S3 object using PipelineDefinitionS3Location.
 * @param {{roleArn: string, name: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
sagemaker').SageMakerClient}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerPipeline({
  // Assumes an AWS IAM role has been created for this pipeline.
  roleArn,
  name,
  // Assumes an AWS Lambda function has been created for this pipeline.
  functionArn,
  sagemakerClient,
}) {
  const pipelineDefinition = readFileSync(
    // dirnameFromMetaUrl is a local utility function. You can find its
 implementation
    // on GitHub.
    `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
      import.meta.url,
    )}../../../../../scenarios/features/sagemaker_pipelines/resources/
GeoSpatialPipeline.json`,
  )
    .toString()
    .replace(/\*FUNCTION_ARN\*/g, functionArn);
```

```
  let arn = null;

  const createPipeline = () =>
    sagemakerClient.send(
      new CreatePipelineCommand({
        PipelineName: name,
        PipelineDefinition: pipelineDefinition,
        RoleArn: roleArn,
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { PipelineArn } = await createPipeline();
    arn = PipelineArn;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ValidationException" &&
      caught.message.includes(
        "Pipeline names must be unique within an AWS account and region",
      )
    ) {
      const { PipelineArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DescribePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
      arn = PipelineArn;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DeletePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
    },
  };
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeletePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePipeline`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The syntax for deleting a SageMaker AI pipeline. This code is part of a larger function. Refer to 'Create a pipeline' or the GitHub repository for more context.

```
    await sagemakerClient.send(
      new DeletePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
    );
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribePipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePipelineExecution`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Wait for a SageMaker AI pipeline execution to succeed, fail, or stop.

```
/**
 * Poll the executing pipeline until the status is 'SUCCEEDED', 'STOPPED', or
 'FAILED'.
 * @param {{ arn: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
sagemaker').SageMakerClient, wait: (ms: number) => Promise<void>}} props
```

```
 */
export async function waitForPipelineComplete({ arn, sagemakerClient, wait }) {
  const command = new DescribePipelineExecutionCommand({
    PipelineExecutionArn: arn,
  });

  let complete = false;
  const intervalInSeconds = 15;
  const COMPLETION_STATUSES = [
    PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.SUCCEEDED,
  ];

  do {
    const { PipelineExecutionStatus: status, FailureReason } =
      await sagemakerClient.send(command);

    complete = COMPLETION_STATUSES.includes(status);

    if (!complete) {
      console.log(
        `Pipeline is ${status}. Waiting ${intervalInSeconds} seconds before checking
 again.`,
      );
      await wait(intervalInSeconds);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED) {
      throw new Error(`Pipeline failed because: ${FailureReason}`);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED) {
      throw new Error("Pipeline was forcefully stopped.");
    } else {
      console.log(`Pipeline execution ${status}.`);
    }
  } while (!complete);
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

StartPipelineExecution

The following code example shows how to use `StartPipelineExecution`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start a SageMaker AI pipeline execution.

```
/**
 * Start the execution of the Amazon SageMaker pipeline. Parameters that are
 * passed in are used in the AWS Lambda function.
 * @param {{
 *   name: string,
 *   sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker').SageMakerClient,
 *   roleArn: string,
 *   queueUrl: string,
 *   s3InputBucketName: string,
 * }} props
 */
export async function startPipelineExecution({
  sagemakerClient,
  name,
  bucketName,
  roleArn,
  queueUrl,
}) {
  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job requests CSV data. This configuration points to a CSV
   * file in an Amazon S3 bucket.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig}
   */
  const inputConfig = {
    DataSourceConfig: {
      S3Data: {
        S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/input/sample_data.csv`,
      },
    },
    DocumentType: VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV,
  };
```

```
  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job adds additional data to the source CSV. This
 configuration points
   * to an Amazon S3 prefix where the output will be stored.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig}
   */
  const outputConfig = {
    S3Data: {
      S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/output/`,
    },
  };

  /**
   * This job will be a Reverse Geocoding Vector Enrichment Job. Reverse Geocoding
 requires
   * latitude and longitude values.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobConfig}
   */
  const jobConfig = {
    ReverseGeocodingConfig: {
      XAttributeName: "Longitude",
      YAttributeName: "Latitude",
    },
  };

  const { PipelineExecutionArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
    new StartPipelineExecutionCommand({
      PipelineName: name,
      PipelineExecutionDisplayName: `${name}-example-execution`,
      PipelineParameters: [
        { Name: "parameter_execution_role", Value: roleArn },
        { Name: "parameter_queue_url", Value: queueUrl },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_input_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(inputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_export_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(outputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_step_1_vej_config",
```

```
          Value: JSON.stringify(jobConfig),
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  return {
    arn: PipelineExecutionArn,
  };
}
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up resources for a pipeline.
- Set up a pipeline that executes a geospatial job.
- Start a pipeline execution.
- Monitor the status of the execution.
- View the output of the pipeline.
- Clean up resources.

For more information, see Create and run SageMaker pipelines using AWS SDKs on Community.aws.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following file excerpt contains functions that use the SageMaker AI client to manage a pipeline.

```
import { readFileSync } from "node:fs";

import {
  CreateRoleCommand,
  DeleteRoleCommand,
  CreatePolicyCommand,
  DeletePolicyCommand,
  AttachRolePolicyCommand,
  DetachRolePolicyCommand,
  GetRoleCommand,
  ListPoliciesCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-iam";

import {
  PublishLayerVersionCommand,
  DeleteLayerVersionCommand,
  CreateFunctionCommand,
  Runtime,
  DeleteFunctionCommand,
  CreateEventSourceMappingCommand,
  DeleteEventSourceMappingCommand,
  GetFunctionCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-lambda";

import {
  PutObjectCommand,
  CreateBucketCommand,
  DeleteBucketCommand,
  DeleteObjectCommand,
  GetObjectCommand,
  ListObjectsV2Command,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";

import {
  CreatePipelineCommand,
  DeletePipelineCommand,
  DescribePipelineCommand,
  DescribePipelineExecutionCommand,
  PipelineExecutionStatus,
  StartPipelineExecutionCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker";

import { VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType } from "@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial";

import {
  CreateQueueCommand,
  DeleteQueueCommand,
  GetQueueAttributesCommand,
  GetQueueUrlCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

import { dirnameFromMetaUrl } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-fs.js";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

/**
 * Create the AWS IAM role that will be assumed by AWS Lambda.
 * @param {{ name: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient }}
 props
 */
export async function createLambdaExecutionRole({ name, iamClient }) {
  const createRole = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: name,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
          Version: "2012-10-17",
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Action: ["sts:AssumeRole"],
              Principal: { Service: ["lambda.amazonaws.com"] },
            },
          ],
        }),
      }),
    );

  let role = null;

  try {
    const { Role } = await createRole();
    role = Role;
  } catch (caught) {
```

```
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Role } = await iamClient.send(
        new GetRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }),
      );
      role = Role;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: role.Arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an AWS IAM policy that will be attached to the AWS IAM role assumed by the
 AWS Lambda function.
 * The policy grants permission to work with Amazon SQS, Amazon CloudWatch, and
 Amazon SageMaker.
 * @param {{name: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient,
 pipelineExecutionRoleArn: string}} props
 */
export async function createLambdaExecutionPolicy({
  name,
  iamClient,
  pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
}) {
  const policyConfig = {
    Version: "2012-10-17",
    Statement: [
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        Action: [
          "sqs:ReceiveMessage",
          "sqs:DeleteMessage",
          "sqs:GetQueueAttributes",
          "logs:CreateLogGroup",
```

```
          "logs:CreateLogStream",
          "logs:PutLogEvents",
          "sagemaker-geospatial:StartVectorEnrichmentJob",
          "sagemaker-geospatial:GetVectorEnrichmentJob",
          "sagemaker:SendPipelineExecutionStepFailure",
          "sagemaker:SendPipelineExecutionStepSuccess",
          "sagemaker-geospatial:ExportVectorEnrichmentJob",
        ],
        Resource: "*",
      },
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        // The AWS Lambda function needs permission to pass the pipeline execution
 role to
        // the StartVectorEnrichmentCommand. This restriction prevents an AWS Lambda
 function
        // from elevating privileges. For more information, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_use_passrole.html
        Action: ["iam:PassRole"],
        Resource: `${pipelineExecutionRoleArn}`,
        Condition: {
          StringEquals: {
            "iam:PassedToService": [
              "sagemaker.amazonaws.com",
              "sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com",
            ],
          },
        },
      },
    ],
  };

  const createPolicy = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify(policyConfig),
        PolicyName: name,
      }),
    );

  let policy = null;

  try {
```

```
    const { Policy } = await createPolicy();
    policy = Policy;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Policies } = await iamClient.send(new ListPoliciesCommand({}));
      if (Policies) {
        policy = Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === name);
      } else {
        throw new Error("No policies found.");
      }
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: policy?.Arn,
    policyConfig,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeletePolicyCommand({ PolicyArn: policy?.Arn }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Attach an AWS IAM policy to an AWS IAM role.
 * @param {{roleName: string, policyArn: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
iam').IAMClient}} props
 */
export async function attachPolicy({ roleName, policyArn, iamClient }) {
  const attachPolicyCommand = new AttachRolePolicyCommand({
    RoleName: roleName,
    PolicyArn: policyArn,
  });

  await iamClient.send(attachPolicyCommand);
  return {
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(
        new DetachRolePolicyCommand({
          RoleName: roleName,
```

```
          PolicyArn: policyArn,
        }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an AWS Lambda layer that contains the Amazon SageMaker and Amazon
 SageMaker Geospatial clients
 * in the runtime. The default runtime supports v3.188.0 of the JavaScript SDK. The
 Amazon SageMaker
 * Geospatial client wasn't introduced until v3.221.0.
 * @param {{ name: string, lambdaClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').LambdaClient }} props
 */
export async function createLambdaLayer({ name, lambdaClient }) {
  const layerPath = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(import.meta.url)}lambda/nodejs.zip`;
  const { LayerVersionArn, Version } = await lambdaClient.send(
    new PublishLayerVersionCommand({
      LayerName: name,
      Content: {
        ZipFile: Uint8Array.from(readFileSync(layerPath)),
      },
    }),
  );

  return {
    versionArn: LayerVersionArn,
    version: Version,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await lambdaClient.send(
        new DeleteLayerVersionCommand({
          LayerName: name,
          VersionNumber: Version,
        }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Deploy the AWS Lambda function that will be used to respond to Amazon SageMaker
 pipeline
```

```
 * execution steps.
 * @param {{roleArn: string, name: string, lambdaClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').LambdaClient, layerVersionArn: string}} props
 */
export async function createLambdaFunction({
  name,
  roleArn,
  lambdaClient,
  layerVersionArn,
}) {
  const lambdaPath = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
    import.meta.url,
  )}lambda/dist/index.mjs.zip`;

  // If a function of the same name already exists, return that
  // function's ARN instead. By default this is
  // "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-function", so collisions are
  // unlikely.
  const createFunction = async () => {
    try {
      return await lambdaClient.send(
        new CreateFunctionCommand({
          Code: {
            ZipFile: Uint8Array.from(readFileSync(lambdaPath)),
          },
          Runtime: Runtime.nodejs18x,
          Handler: "index.handler",
          Layers: [layerVersionArn],
          FunctionName: name,
          Role: roleArn,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (
        caught instanceof Error &&
        caught.name === "ResourceConflictException"
      ) {
        const { Configuration } = await lambdaClient.send(
          new GetFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: name }),
        );
        return Configuration;
      }
      throw caught;
    }
```

```
  };

  // Function creation fails if the Role is not ready. This retries
  // function creation until it succeeds or it times out.
  const { FunctionArn } = await retry(
    { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 },
    createFunction,
  );

  return {
    arn: FunctionArn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await lambdaClient.send(
        new DeleteFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: name }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * This uploads some sample coordinate data to an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * The Amazon SageMaker Geospatial vector enrichment job will take the simple Lat/
Long
 * coordinates in this file and augment them with more detailed location data.
 * @param {{bucketName: string, s3Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').S3Client}}
 props
 */
export async function uploadCSVDataToS3({ bucketName, s3Client }) {
  const s3Path = `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
    import.meta.url,
  )}../../../../../scenarios/features/sagemaker_pipelines/resources/
latlongtest.csv`;

  await s3Client.send(
    new PutObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucketName,
      Key: "input/sample_data.csv",
      Body: readFileSync(s3Path),
    }),
  );
}

/**
 * Create the AWS IAM role that will be assumed by the Amazon SageMaker pipeline.
```

```
 * @param {{name: string, iamClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient, wait:
 (ms: number) => Promise<void>}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerRole({ name, iamClient, wait }) {
  let role = null;

  const createRole = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreateRoleCommand({
        RoleName: name,
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument: JSON.stringify({
          Version: "2012-10-17",
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Action: ["sts:AssumeRole"],
              Principal: {
                Service: [
                  "sagemaker.amazonaws.com",
                  "sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com",
                ],
              },
            },
          ],
        }),
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { Role } = await createRole();
    role = Role;
    // Wait for the role to be ready.
    await wait(10);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Role } = await iamClient.send(
        new GetRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }),
      );
      role = Role;
    } else {
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: role.Arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeleteRoleCommand({ RoleName: name }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create the Amazon SageMaker execution policy. This policy grants permission to
 * invoke the AWS Lambda function, read/write to the Amazon S3 bucket, and send
 messages to
 * the Amazon SQS queue.
 * @param {{ name: string, sqsQueueArn: string, lambdaArn: string, iamClient:
 import('@aws-sdk/client-iam').IAMClient, s3BucketName: string}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerExecutionPolicy({
  sqsQueueArn,
  lambdaArn,
  iamClient,
  name,
  s3BucketName,
}) {
  const policyConfig = {
    Version: "2012-10-17",
    Statement: [
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        Action: ["lambda:InvokeFunction"],
        Resource: lambdaArn,
      },
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
        Action: ["s3:*"],
        Resource: [
          `arn:aws:s3:::${s3BucketName}`,
          `arn:aws:s3:::${s3BucketName}/*`,
        ],
      },
      {
        Effect: "Allow",
```

```
        Action: ["sqs:SendMessage"],
        Resource: sqsQueueArn,
      },
    ],
  };

  const createPolicy = () =>
    iamClient.send(
      new CreatePolicyCommand({
        PolicyDocument: JSON.stringify(policyConfig),
        PolicyName: name,
      }),
    );

  let policy = null;

  try {
    const { Policy } = await createPolicy();
    policy = Policy;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "EntityAlreadyExistsException"
    ) {
      const { Policies } = await iamClient.send(new ListPoliciesCommand({}));
      if (Policies) {
        policy = Policies.find((p) => p.PolicyName === name);
      } else {
        throw new Error("No policies found.");
      }
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn: policy?.Arn,
    policyConfig,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await iamClient.send(new DeletePolicyCommand({ PolicyArn: policy?.Arn }));
    },
  };
}
```

```
/**
 * Create the Amazon SageMaker pipeline using a JSON pipeline definition. The
 definition
 * can also be provided as an Amazon S3 object using PipelineDefinitionS3Location.
 * @param {{roleArn: string, name: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
sagemaker').SageMakerClient}} props
 */
export async function createSagemakerPipeline({
  // Assumes an AWS IAM role has been created for this pipeline.
  roleArn,
  name,
  // Assumes an AWS Lambda function has been created for this pipeline.
  functionArn,
  sagemakerClient,
}) {
  const pipelineDefinition = readFileSync(
    // dirnameFromMetaUrl is a local utility function. You can find its
 implementation
    // on GitHub.
    `${dirnameFromMetaUrl(
      import.meta.url,
    )}../../../../../scenarios/features/sagemaker_pipelines/resources/
GeoSpatialPipeline.json`,
  )
    .toString()
    .replace(/\*FUNCTION_ARN\*/g, functionArn);

  let arn = null;

  const createPipeline = () =>
    sagemakerClient.send(
      new CreatePipelineCommand({
        PipelineName: name,
        PipelineDefinition: pipelineDefinition,
        RoleArn: roleArn,
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { PipelineArn } = await createPipeline();
    arn = PipelineArn;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
```

```
      caught.name === "ValidationException" &&
      caught.message.includes(
        "Pipeline names must be unique within an AWS account and region",
      )
    ) {
      const { PipelineArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DescribePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
      arn = PipelineArn;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    arn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await sagemakerClient.send(
        new DeletePipelineCommand({ PipelineName: name }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an Amazon SQS queue. The Amazon SageMaker pipeline will send messages
 * to this queue that are then processed by the AWS Lambda function.
 * @param {{name: string, sqsClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-sqs').SQSClient}} props
 */
export async function createSQSQueue({ name, sqsClient }) {
  const createSqsQueue = () =>
    sqsClient.send(
      new CreateQueueCommand({
        QueueName: name,
        Attributes: {
          DelaySeconds: "5",
          ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "5",
          VisibilityTimeout: "300",
        },
      }),
    );

  let queueUrl = null;
  try {
```

```
    const { QueueUrl } = await createSqsQueue();
    queueUrl = QueueUrl;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "QueueNameExists") {
      const { QueueUrl } = await sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueUrlCommand({ QueueName: name }),
      );
      queueUrl = QueueUrl;
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  const { Attributes } = await retry(
    { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60 },
    () =>
      sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
          QueueUrl: queueUrl,
          AttributeNames: ["QueueArn"],
        }),
      ),
  );

  return {
    queueUrl,
    queueArn: Attributes.QueueArn,
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await sqsClient.send(new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queueUrl }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Configure the AWS Lambda function to long poll for messages from the Amazon SQS
 * queue.
 * @param {{
 *   paginateListEventSourceMappings: () => Generator<import('@aws-sdk/client-
lambda').ListEventSourceMappingsCommandOutput>,
 *   lambdaName: string,
 *   queueArn: string,
 *   lambdaClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-lambda').LambdaClient}} props
 */
export async function configureLambdaSQSEventSource({
```

```
  lambdaName,
  queueArn,
  lambdaClient,
  paginateListEventSourceMappings,
}) {
  let uuid = null;
  const createEvenSourceMapping = () =>
    lambdaClient.send(
      new CreateEventSourceMappingCommand({
        EventSourceArn: queueArn,
        FunctionName: lambdaName,
      }),
    );

  try {
    const { UUID } = await createEvenSourceMapping();
    uuid = UUID;
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "ResourceConflictException"
    ) {
      const paginator = paginateListEventSourceMappings(
        { client: lambdaClient },
        {},
      );
      /**
       * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-lambda').EventSourceMappingConfiguration[]}
       */
      const eventSourceMappings = [];
      for await (const page of paginator) {
        eventSourceMappings.concat(page.EventSourceMappings || []);
      }

      const { Configuration } = await lambdaClient.send(
        new GetFunctionCommand({ FunctionName: lambdaName }),
      );

      uuid = eventSourceMappings.find(
        (mapping) =>
          mapping.EventSourceArn === queueArn &&
          mapping.FunctionArn === Configuration.FunctionArn,
      ).UUID;
    } else {
```

```
      throw caught;
    }
  }

  return {
    cleanUp: async () => {
      await lambdaClient.send(
        new DeleteEventSourceMappingCommand({
          UUID: uuid,
        }),
      );
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Create an Amazon S3 bucket that will store the simple coordinate file as input
 * and the output of the Amazon SageMaker Geospatial vector enrichment job.
 * @param {{
 *   s3Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-s3').S3Client,
 *   name: string,
 *   paginateListObjectsV2: () => Generator<import('@aws-sdk/client-
s3').ListObjectsCommandOutput>
 * }} props
 */
export async function createS3Bucket({
  name,
  s3Client,
  paginateListObjectsV2,
}) {
  await s3Client.send(new CreateBucketCommand({ Bucket: name }));

  return {
    cleanUp: async () => {
      const paginator = paginateListObjectsV2(
        { client: s3Client },
        { Bucket: name },
      );
      for await (const page of paginator) {
        const objects = page.Contents;
        if (objects) {
          for (const object of objects) {
            await s3Client.send(
              new DeleteObjectCommand({ Bucket: name, Key: object.Key }),
```

```
            );
          }
        }
      }
      await s3Client.send(new DeleteBucketCommand({ Bucket: name }));
    },
  };
}

/**
 * Start the execution of the Amazon SageMaker pipeline. Parameters that are
 * passed in are used in the AWS Lambda function.
 * @param {{
 *   name: string,
 *   sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker').SageMakerClient,
 *   roleArn: string,
 *   queueUrl: string,
 *   s3InputBucketName: string,
 * }} props
 */
export async function startPipelineExecution({
  sagemakerClient,
  name,
  bucketName,
  roleArn,
  queueUrl,
}) {
  /**
   * The Vector Enrichment Job requests CSV data. This configuration points to a CSV
   * file in an Amazon S3 bucket.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobInputConfig}
   */
  const inputConfig = {
    DataSourceConfig: {
      S3Data: {
        S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/input/sample_data.csv`,
      },
    },
    DocumentType: VectorEnrichmentJobDocumentType.CSV,
  };

  /**
```

```
   * The Vector Enrichment Job adds additional data to the source CSV. This
 configuration points
   * to an Amazon S3 prefix where the output will be stored.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig}
   */
  const outputConfig = {
    S3Data: {
      S3Uri: `s3://${bucketName}/output/`,
    },
  };

  /**
   * This job will be a Reverse Geocoding Vector Enrichment Job. Reverse Geocoding
 requires
   * latitude and longitude values.
   * @type {import("@aws-sdk/client-sagemaker-
geospatial").VectorEnrichmentJobConfig}
   */
  const jobConfig = {
    ReverseGeocodingConfig: {
      XAttributeName: "Longitude",
      YAttributeName: "Latitude",
    },
  };

  const { PipelineExecutionArn } = await sagemakerClient.send(
    new StartPipelineExecutionCommand({
      PipelineName: name,
      PipelineExecutionDisplayName: `${name}-example-execution`,
      PipelineParameters: [
        { Name: "parameter_execution_role", Value: roleArn },
        { Name: "parameter_queue_url", Value: queueUrl },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_input_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(inputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_vej_export_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(outputConfig),
        },
        {
          Name: "parameter_step_1_vej_config",
          Value: JSON.stringify(jobConfig),
```

```
        },
      ],
    }),
  );

  return {
    arn: PipelineExecutionArn,
  };
}

/**
 * Poll the executing pipeline until the status is 'SUCCEEDED', 'STOPPED', or
 'FAILED'.
 * @param {{ arn: string, sagemakerClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-
sagemaker').SageMakerClient, wait: (ms: number) => Promise<void>}} props
 */
export async function waitForPipelineComplete({ arn, sagemakerClient, wait }) {
  const command = new DescribePipelineExecutionCommand({
    PipelineExecutionArn: arn,
  });

  let complete = false;
  const intervalInSeconds = 15;
  const COMPLETION_STATUSES = [
    PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED,
    PipelineExecutionStatus.SUCCEEDED,
  ];

  do {
    const { PipelineExecutionStatus: status, FailureReason } =
      await sagemakerClient.send(command);

    complete = COMPLETION_STATUSES.includes(status);

    if (!complete) {
      console.log(
        `Pipeline is ${status}. Waiting ${intervalInSeconds} seconds before checking
 again.`,
      );
      await wait(intervalInSeconds);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.FAILED) {
      throw new Error(`Pipeline failed because: ${FailureReason}`);
    } else if (status === PipelineExecutionStatus.STOPPED) {
```

```
      throw new Error("Pipeline was forcefully stopped.");
    } else {
      console.log(`Pipeline execution ${status}.`);
    }
  } while (!complete);
}

/**
 * Return the string value of an Amazon S3 object.
 * @param {{ bucket: string, key: string, s3Client: import('@aws-sdk/client-
s3').S3Client}} param0
 */
export async function getObject({ bucket, s3Client }) {
  const prefix = "output/";
  const { Contents } = await s3Client.send(
    new ListObjectsV2Command({ MaxKeys: 1, Bucket: bucket, Prefix: prefix }),
  );

  if (!Contents.length) {
    throw new Error("No objects found in bucket.");
  }

  // Find the CSV file.
  const outputObject = Contents.find((obj) => obj.Key.endsWith(".csv"));

  if (!outputObject) {
    throw new Error(`No CSV file found in bucket with the prefix "${prefix}".`);
  }

  const { Body } = await s3Client.send(
    new GetObjectCommand({
      Bucket: bucket,
      Key: outputObject.Key,
    }),
  );

  return Body.transformToString();
}
```

This function is an excerpt from a file that uses the preceding library functions to set up a SageMaker AI pipeline, execute it, and delete all created resources.

```
import { retry, wait } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";
import {
  attachPolicy,
  configureLambdaSQSEventSource,
  createLambdaExecutionPolicy,
  createLambdaExecutionRole,
  createLambdaFunction,
  createLambdaLayer,
  createS3Bucket,
  createSQSQueue,
  createSagemakerExecutionPolicy,
  createSagemakerPipeline,
  createSagemakerRole,
  getObject,
  startPipelineExecution,
  uploadCSVDataToS3,
  waitForPipelineComplete,
} from "./lib.js";
import { MESSAGES } from "./messages.js";

export class SageMakerPipelinesWkflw {
  names = {
    LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE: "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-execution-role",
    LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY:
      "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-execution-role-policy",
    LAMBDA_FUNCTION: "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-function",
    LAMBDA_LAYER: "sagemaker-wkflw-lambda-layer",
    SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE: "sagemaker-wkflw-pipeline-execution-role",
    SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY:
      "sagemaker-wkflw-pipeline-execution-role-policy",
    SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE: "sagemaker-wkflw-pipeline",
    SQS_QUEUE: "sagemaker-wkflw-sqs-queue",
    S3_BUCKET: `sagemaker-wkflw-s3-bucket-${Date.now()}`,
  };

  cleanUpFunctions = [];

  /**
   * @param {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js").Prompter} prompter
   * @param {import("@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/logger.js").Logger} logger
   * @param {{ IAM: import("@aws-sdk/client-iam").IAMClient, Lambda: import("@aws-
sdk/client-lambda").LambdaClient, SageMaker: import("@aws-sdk/client-
```

```
sagemaker").SageMakerClient, S3: import("@aws-sdk/client-s3").S3Client, SQS:
 import("@aws-sdk/client-sqs").SQSClient }} clients
   */
  constructor(prompter, logger, clients) {
    this.prompter = prompter;
    this.logger = logger;
    this.clients = clients;
  }

  async run() {
    try {
      await this.startWorkflow();
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(err);
      throw err;
    } finally {
      this.logger.logSeparator();
      const doCleanUp = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: "Clean up resources?",
      });
      if (doCleanUp) {
        await this.cleanUp();
      }
    }
  }

  async cleanUp() {
    // Run all of the clean up functions. If any fail, we log the error and
 continue.
    // This ensures all clean up functions are run.
    for (let i = this.cleanUpFunctions.length - 1; i >= 0; i--) {
      await retry(
        { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 60, swallowError: true },
        this.cleanUpFunctions[i],
      );
    }
  }

  async startWorkflow() {
    this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.greetingHeader);
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.greeting);

    this.logger.logSeparator();
    await this.logger.log(
```

```
      MESSAGES.creatingRole.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    // Create an IAM role that will be assumed by the AWS Lambda function. This
function
    // is triggered by Amazon SQS messages and calls SageMaker and SageMaker
GeoSpatial actions.
    const { arn: lambdaExecutionRoleArn, cleanUp: lambdaExecutionRoleCleanUp } =
      await createLambdaExecutionRole({
        name: this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
        iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      });
    // Add a clean up step to a stack for every resource created.
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaExecutionRoleCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.roleCreated.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingRole.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    // Create an IAM role that will be assumed by the SageMaker pipeline. The
pipeline
    // sends messages to an Amazon SQS queue and puts/retrieves Amazon S3 objects.
    const {
      arn: pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
      cleanUp: pipelineExecutionRoleCleanUp,
    } = await createSagemakerRole({
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      wait,
```

```
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineExecutionRoleCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.roleCreated.replace(
        "${ROLE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    // Create an IAM policy that allows the AWS Lambda function to invoke SageMaker
APIs.
    const {
      arn: lambdaExecutionPolicyArn,
      policy: lambdaPolicy,
      cleanUp: lambdaExecutionPolicyCleanUp,
    } = await createLambdaExecutionPolicy({
      name: this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY,
      s3BucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaExecutionPolicyCleanUp);

    console.log(JSON.stringify(lambdaPolicy, null, 2), "\n");

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.attachPolicy
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY)
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE),
    );

    await this.prompter.checkContinue();

    // Attach the Lambda execution policy to the execution role.
    const { cleanUp: lambdaExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp } = await attachPolicy({
      roleName: this.names.LAMBDA_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      policyArn: lambdaExecutionPolicyArn,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp);
```

```
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.policyAttached);

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    // Create Lambda layer for SageMaker packages.
    const { versionArn: layerVersionArn, cleanUp: lambdaLayerCleanUp } =
      await createLambdaLayer({
        name: this.names.LAMBDA_LAYER,
        lambdaClient: this.clients.Lambda,
      });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaLayerCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingFunction.replace(
        "${FUNCTION_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
      ),
    );

    // Create the Lambda function with the execution role.
    const { arn: lambdaArn, cleanUp: lambdaCleanUp } =
      await createLambdaFunction({
        roleArn: lambdaExecutionRoleArn,
        lambdaClient: this.clients.Lambda,
        name: this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
        layerVersionArn,
      });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.functionCreated.replace(
        "${FUNCTION_NAME}",
        this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingSQSQueue.replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    // Create an SQS queue for the SageMaker pipeline.
    const {
```

```
      queueUrl,
      queueArn,
      cleanUp: queueCleanUp,
    } = await createSQSQueue({
      name: this.names.SQS_QUEUE,
      sqsClient: this.clients.SQS,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(queueCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.sqsQueueCreated.replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.configuringLambdaSQSEventSource
        .replace("${LAMBDA_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION)
        .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    // Configure the SQS queue as an event source for the Lambda.
    const { cleanUp: lambdaSQSEventSourceCleanUp } =
      await configureLambdaSQSEventSource({
        lambdaArn,
        lambdaName: this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION,
        queueArn,
        sqsClient: this.clients.SQS,
        lambdaClient: this.clients.Lambda,
      });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(lambdaSQSEventSourceCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.lambdaSQSEventSourceConfigured
        .replace("${LAMBDA_NAME}", this.names.LAMBDA_FUNCTION)
        .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", this.names.SQS_QUEUE),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    // Create an IAM policy that allows the SageMaker pipeline to invoke AWS Lambda
    // and send messages to the Amazon SQS queue.
    const {
      arn: pipelineExecutionPolicyArn,
```

```
      policy: sagemakerPolicy,
      cleanUp: pipelineExecutionPolicyCleanUp,
    } = await createSagemakerExecutionPolicy({
      sqsQueueArn: queueArn,
      lambdaArn,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY,
      s3BucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineExecutionPolicyCleanUp);

    console.log(JSON.stringify(sagemakerPolicy, null, 2));

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.attachPolicy
        .replace("${POLICY_NAME}", this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE_POLICY)
        .replace("${ROLE_NAME}", this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE),
    );

    await this.prompter.checkContinue();

    // Attach the SageMaker execution policy to the execution role.
    const { cleanUp: pipelineExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp } = await attachPolicy({
      roleName: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_EXECUTION_ROLE,
      policyArn: pipelineExecutionPolicyArn,
      iamClient: this.clients.IAM,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineExecutionRolePolicyCleanUp);
    // Wait for the role to be ready. If the role is used immediately,
    // the pipeline will fail.
    await wait(5);

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.policyAttached);

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingPipeline.replace(
        "${PIPELINE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
      ),
    );

    // Create the SageMaker pipeline.
```

```
    const { cleanUp: pipelineCleanUp } = await createSagemakerPipeline({
      roleArn: pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
      functionArn: lambdaArn,
      sagemakerClient: this.clients.SageMaker,
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(pipelineCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.pipelineCreated.replace(
        "${PIPELINE_NAME}",
        this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
      ),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.creatingS3Bucket.replace("${BUCKET_NAME}", this.names.S3_BUCKET),
    );

    // Create an S3 bucket for storing inputs and outputs.
    const { cleanUp: s3BucketCleanUp } = await createS3Bucket({
      name: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      s3Client: this.clients.S3,
    });
    this.cleanUpFunctions.push(s3BucketCleanUp);

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.s3BucketCreated.replace("${BUCKET_NAME}", this.names.S3_BUCKET),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.uploadingInputData.replace(
        "${BUCKET_NAME}",
        this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      ),
    );

    // Upload CSV Lat/Long data to S3.
    await uploadCSVDataToS3({
      bucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
```

```
      s3Client: this.clients.S3,
    });

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.inputDataUploaded);

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.prompter.checkContinue(MESSAGES.executePipeline);

    // Execute the SageMaker pipeline.
    const { arn: pipelineExecutionArn } = await startPipelineExecution({
      name: this.names.SAGE_MAKER_PIPELINE,
      sagemakerClient: this.clients.SageMaker,
      roleArn: pipelineExecutionRoleArn,
      bucketName: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
      queueUrl,
    });

    // Wait for the pipeline execution to finish.
    await waitForPipelineComplete({
      arn: pipelineExecutionArn,
      sagemakerClient: this.clients.SageMaker,
      wait,
    });

    this.logger.logSeparator();

    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.outputDelay);

    // The getOutput function will throw an error if the output is not
    // found. The retry function will retry a failed function call once
    // ever 10 seconds for 2 minutes.
    const output = await retry({ intervalInMs: 10000, maxRetries: 12 }, () =>
      getObject({
        bucket: this.names.S3_BUCKET,
        s3Client: this.clients.S3,
      }),
    );

    this.logger.logSeparator();
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.outputDataRetrieved);
    console.log(output.split("\n").slice(0, 6).join("\n"));
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
```

```
  GetSecretValueCommand,
  SecretsManagerClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-secrets-manager";

export const getSecretValue = async (secretName = "SECRET_NAME") => {
  const client = new SecretsManagerClient();
  const response = await client.send(
    new GetSecretValueCommand({
      SecretId: secretName,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '584eb612-f8b0-48c9-855e-6d246461b604',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   ARN: 'arn:aws:secretsmanager:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:secret:binary-
secret-3873048-xxxxxx',
  //   CreatedDate: 2023-08-08T19:29:51.294Z,
  //   Name: 'binary-secret-3873048',
  //   SecretBinary: Uint8Array(11) [
  //      98, 105, 110, 97, 114,
  //     121,  32, 100, 97, 116,
  //      97
  //   ],
  //   VersionId: '712083f4-0d26-415e-8044-16735142cd6a',
  //   VersionStages: [ 'AWSCURRENT' ]
  // }

  if (response.SecretString) {
    return response.SecretString;
  }

  if (response.SecretBinary) {
    return response.SecretBinary;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon SES examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateReceiptFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  CreateReceiptFilterCommand,
  ReceiptFilterPolicy,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
```

```
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const createCreateReceiptFilterCommand = ({ policy, ipOrRange, name }) => {
  return new CreateReceiptFilterCommand({
    Filter: {
      IpFilter: {
        Cidr: ipOrRange, // string, either a single IP address (10.0.0.1) or an IP
 address range in CIDR notation (10.0.0.1/24)).
        Policy: policy, // enum ReceiptFilterPolicy, email traffic from the filtered
 addressesOptions.
      },
      /*
        The name of the IP address filter. Only ASCII letters, numbers, underscores,
 or dashes.
        Must be less than 64 characters and start and end with a letter or number.
       */
      Name: name,
    },
  });
};

const FILTER_NAME = getUniqueName("ReceiptFilter");

const run = async () => {
  const createReceiptFilterCommand = createCreateReceiptFilterCommand({
    policy: ReceiptFilterPolicy.Allow,
    ipOrRange: "10.0.0.1",
    name: FILTER_NAME,
  });

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(createReceiptFilterCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateReceiptRule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptRule`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateReceiptRuleCommand, TlsPolicy } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");
const RULE_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleName");
const S3_BUCKET_NAME = getUniqueName("S3BucketName");

const createS3ReceiptRuleCommand = ({
  bucketName,
  emailAddresses,
  name,
  ruleSet,
}) => {
  return new CreateReceiptRuleCommand({
    Rule: {
      Actions: [
        {
          S3Action: {
            BucketName: bucketName,
            ObjectKeyPrefix: "email",
          },
        },
      ],
      Recipients: emailAddresses,
      Enabled: true,
      Name: name,
      ScanEnabled: false,
```

```
      TlsPolicy: TlsPolicy.Optional,
    },
    RuleSetName: ruleSet, // Required
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const s3ReceiptRuleCommand = createS3ReceiptRuleCommand({
    bucketName: S3_BUCKET_NAME,
    emailAddresses: ["email@example.com"],
    name: RULE_NAME,
    ruleSet: RULE_SET_NAME,
  });

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(s3ReceiptRuleCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to create S3 receipt rule.", err);
    throw err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateReceiptRuleSet`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateReceiptRuleSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
```

```
const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");

const createCreateReceiptRuleSetCommand = (ruleSetName) => {
  return new CreateReceiptRuleSetCommand({ RuleSetName: ruleSetName });
};

const run = async () => {
  const createReceiptRuleSetCommand =
    createCreateReceiptRuleSetCommand(RULE_SET_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(createReceiptRuleSetCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to create receipt rule set", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTemplate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TestTemplateName");

const createCreateTemplateCommand = () => {
```

```
  return new CreateTemplateCommand({
    /**
     * The template feature in Amazon SES is based on the Handlebars template
 system.
     */
    Template: {
      /**
       * The name of an existing template in Amazon SES.
       */
      TemplateName: TEMPLATE_NAME,
      HtmlPart: `
        <h1>Hello, {{contact.firstName}}!</h1>
        <p>
        Did you know Amazon has a mascot named Peccy?
        </p>
      `,
      SubjectPart: "Amazon Tip",
    },
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const createTemplateCommand = createCreateTemplateCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(createTemplateCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to create template.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentity`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const IDENTITY_EMAIL = "fake@example.com";

const createDeleteIdentityCommand = (identityName) => {
  return new DeleteIdentityCommand({
    Identity: identityName,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const deleteIdentityCommand = createDeleteIdentityCommand(IDENTITY_EMAIL);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteIdentityCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete identity.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptFilter`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteReceiptFilterCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";

const RECEIPT_FILTER_NAME = getUniqueName("ReceiptFilterName");

const createDeleteReceiptFilterCommand = (filterName) => {
  return new DeleteReceiptFilterCommand({ FilterName: filterName });
};

const run = async () => {
  const deleteReceiptFilterCommand =
    createDeleteReceiptFilterCommand(RECEIPT_FILTER_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteReceiptFilterCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error deleting receipt filter.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptRule`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteReceiptRuleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const RULE_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleName");
const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");

const createDeleteReceiptRuleCommand = () => {
  return new DeleteReceiptRuleCommand({
    RuleName: RULE_NAME,
    RuleSetName: RULE_SET_NAME,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const deleteReceiptRuleCommand = createDeleteReceiptRuleCommand();
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteReceiptRuleCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete receipt rule.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptRuleSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const RULE_SET_NAME = getUniqueName("RuleSetName");

const createDeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand = () => {
  return new DeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand({ RuleSetName: RULE_SET_NAME });
};

const run = async () => {
  const deleteReceiptRuleSetCommand = createDeleteReceiptRuleSetCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteReceiptRuleSetCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete receipt rule set.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTemplate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TemplateName");

const createDeleteTemplateCommand = (templateName) =>
  new DeleteTemplateCommand({ TemplateName: templateName });

const run = async () => {
  const deleteTemplateCommand = createDeleteTemplateCommand(TEMPLATE_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(deleteTemplateCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to delete template.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTemplate`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { GetTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TemplateName");

const createGetTemplateCommand = (templateName) =>
  new GetTemplateCommand({ TemplateName: templateName });

const run = async () => {
  const getTemplateCommand = createGetTemplateCommand(TEMPLATE_NAME);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(getTemplateCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListIdentitiesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createListIdentitiesCommand = () =>
  new ListIdentitiesCommand({ IdentityType: "EmailAddress", MaxItems: 10 });

const run = async () => {
  const listIdentitiesCommand = createListIdentitiesCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(listIdentitiesCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to list identities.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListReceiptFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `ListReceiptFilters`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListReceiptFiltersCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createListReceiptFiltersCommand = () => new ListReceiptFiltersCommand({});

const run = async () => {
  const listReceiptFiltersCommand = createListReceiptFiltersCommand();

  return await sesClient.send(listReceiptFiltersCommand);
};
```

- For API details, see ListReceiptFilters in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListTemplates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTemplates`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ListTemplatesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createListTemplatesCommand = (maxItems) =>
  new ListTemplatesCommand({ MaxItems: maxItems });

const run = async () => {
  const listTemplatesCommand = createListTemplatesCommand(10);

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(listTemplatesCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to list templates.", err);
    return err;
  }
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SendBulkTemplatedEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendBulkTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendBulkTemplatedEmailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import {
  getUniqueName,
  postfix,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

/**
 * Replace this with the name of an existing template.
 */
const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("ReminderTemplate");

/**
 * Replace these with existing verified emails.
 */
const VERIFIED_EMAIL_1 = postfix(getUniqueName("Bilbo"), "@example.com");
const VERIFIED_EMAIL_2 = postfix(getUniqueName("Frodo"), "@example.com");

const USERS = [
  { firstName: "Bilbo", emailAddress: VERIFIED_EMAIL_1 },
  { firstName: "Frodo", emailAddress: VERIFIED_EMAIL_2 },
];

/**
 *
```

```
 * @param { { emailAddress: string, firstName: string }[] } users
 * @param { string } templateName the name of an existing template in SES
 * @returns { SendBulkTemplatedEmailCommand }
 */
const createBulkReminderEmailCommand = (users, templateName) => {
  return new SendBulkTemplatedEmailCommand({
    /**
     * Each 'Destination' uses a corresponding set of replacement data. We can map
 each user
     * to a 'Destination' and provide user specific replacement data to create
 personalized emails.
     *
     * Here's an example of how a template would be replaced with user data:
     * Template: <h1>Hello {{name}},</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!</p>
     * Destination 1: <h1>Hello Bilbo,</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!</
p>
     * Destination 2: <h1>Hello Frodo,</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!</
p>
     */
    Destinations: users.map((user) => ({
      Destination: { ToAddresses: [user.emailAddress] },
      ReplacementTemplateData: JSON.stringify({ name: user.firstName }),
    })),
    DefaultTemplateData: JSON.stringify({ name: "Shireling" }),
    Source: VERIFIED_EMAIL_1,
    Template: templateName,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const sendBulkTemplateEmailCommand = createBulkReminderEmailCommand(
    USERS,
    TEMPLATE_NAME,
  );
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(sendBulkTemplateEmailCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see SendBulkTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendEmailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const createSendEmailCommand = (toAddress, fromAddress) => {
  return new SendEmailCommand({
    Destination: {
      /* required */
      CcAddresses: [
        /* more items */
      ],
      ToAddresses: [
        toAddress,
        /* more To-email addresses */
      ],
    },
    Message: {
      /* required */
      Body: {
        /* required */
        Html: {
          Charset: "UTF-8",
          Data: "HTML_FORMAT_BODY",
        },
        Text: {
```

```
          Charset: "UTF-8",
          Data: "TEXT_FORMAT_BODY",
        },
      },
      Subject: {
        Charset: "UTF-8",
        Data: "EMAIL_SUBJECT",
      },
    },
    Source: fromAddress,
    ReplyToAddresses: [
      /* more items */
    ],
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const sendEmailCommand = createSendEmailCommand(
    "recipient@example.com",
    "sender@example.com",
  );

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(sendEmailCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SendRawEmail

The following code example shows how to use `SendRawEmail`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use nodemailer to send an email with an attachment.

```
import sesClientModule from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
/**
 * nodemailer wraps the SES SDK and calls SendRawEmail. Use this for more advanced
 * functionality like adding attachments to your email.
 *
 * https://nodemailer.com/transports/ses/
 */
import nodemailer from "nodemailer";

/**
 * @param {string} from An Amazon SES verified email address.
 * @param {*} to An Amazon SES verified email address.
 */
export const sendEmailWithAttachments = (
  from = "from@example.com",
  to = "to@example.com",
) => {
  const ses = new sesClientModule.SESClient({});
  const transporter = nodemailer.createTransport({
    SES: { ses, aws: sesClientModule },
  });

  return new Promise((resolve, reject) => {
    transporter.sendMail(
      {
        from,
        to,
        subject: "Hello World",
        text: "Greetings from Amazon SES!",
        attachments: [{ content: "Hello World!", filename: "hello.txt" }],
      },
      (err, info) => {
        if (err) {
```

```
          reject(err);
        } else {
          resolve(info);
        }
      },
    );
  });
};
```

- For API details, see SendRawEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SendTemplatedEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendTemplatedEmailCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import {
  getUniqueName,
  postfix,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

/**
 * Replace this with the name of an existing template.
 */
const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("ReminderTemplate");

/**
 * Replace these with existing verified emails.
 */
const VERIFIED_EMAIL = postfix(getUniqueName("Bilbo"), "@example.com");
```

```
const USER = { firstName: "Bilbo", emailAddress: VERIFIED_EMAIL };

/**
 *
 * @param { { emailAddress: string, firstName: string } } user
 * @param { string } templateName - The name of an existing template in Amazon SES.
 * @returns { SendTemplatedEmailCommand }
 */
const createReminderEmailCommand = (user, templateName) => {
  return new SendTemplatedEmailCommand({
    /**
     * Here's an example of how a template would be replaced with user data:
     * Template: <h1>Hello {{contact.firstName}},</h1><p>Don't forget about the
 party gifts!</p>
     * Destination: <h1>Hello Bilbo,</h1><p>Don't forget about the party gifts!</p>
     */
    Destination: { ToAddresses: [user.emailAddress] },
    TemplateData: JSON.stringify({ contact: { firstName: user.firstName } }),
    Source: VERIFIED_EMAIL,
    Template: templateName,
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const sendReminderEmailCommand = createReminderEmailCommand(
    USER,
    TEMPLATE_NAME,
  );
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(sendReminderEmailCommand);
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MessageRejected") {
      /** @type { import('@aws-sdk/client-ses').MessageRejected} */
      const messageRejectedError = caught;
      return messageRejectedError;
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

UpdateTemplate

The following code example shows how to use UpdateTemplate.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UpdateTemplateCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { getUniqueName } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const TEMPLATE_NAME = getUniqueName("TemplateName");
const HTML_PART = "<h1>Hello, World!</h1>";

const createUpdateTemplateCommand = () => {
  return new UpdateTemplateCommand({
    Template: {
      TemplateName: TEMPLATE_NAME,
      HtmlPart: HTML_PART,
      SubjectPart: "Example",
      TextPart: "Updated template text.",
    },
  });
};

const run = async () => {
  const updateTemplateCommand = createUpdateTemplateCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(updateTemplateCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to update template.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateTemplate in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`VerifyDomainIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyDomainIdentity`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { VerifyDomainIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import {
  getUniqueName,
  postfix,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-string.js";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

/**
 * You must have access to the domain's DNS settings to complete the
 * domain verification process.
 */
const DOMAIN_NAME = postfix(getUniqueName("Domain"), ".example.com");

const createVerifyDomainIdentityCommand = () => {
  return new VerifyDomainIdentityCommand({ Domain: DOMAIN_NAME });
};

const run = async () => {
  const VerifyDomainIdentityCommand = createVerifyDomainIdentityCommand();

  try {
    return await sesClient.send(VerifyDomainIdentityCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to verify domain.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see VerifyDomainIdentity in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`VerifyEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Import required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { VerifyEmailIdentityCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-ses";
import { sesClient } from "./libs/sesClient.js";

const EMAIL_ADDRESS = "name@example.com";

const createVerifyEmailIdentityCommand = (emailAddress) => {
  return new VerifyEmailIdentityCommand({ EmailAddress: emailAddress });
};

const run = async () => {
  const verifyEmailIdentityCommand =
    createVerifyEmailIdentityCommand(EMAIL_ADDRESS);
  try {
    return await sesClient.send(verifyEmailIdentityCommand);
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Failed to verify email identity.", err);
    return err;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition with the AWS SDK for JavaScript to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

Learn how to:

- Create an unauthenticated user using Amazon Cognito.
- Analyze images for objects using Amazon Rekognition.
- Verify an email address for Amazon SES.
- Send an email notification using Amazon SES.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Initialize an SNS client and and list topics in your account.

```
import { SNSClient, paginateListTopics } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
```

```
export const helloSns = async () => {
  // The configuration object (`{}`) is required. If the region and credentials
  // are omitted, the SDK uses your local configuration if it exists.
  const client = new SNSClient({});

  // You can also use `ListTopicsCommand`, but to use that command you must
  // handle the pagination yourself. You can do that by sending the
 `ListTopicsCommand`
  // with the `NextToken` parameter from the previous request.
  const paginatedTopics = paginateListTopics({ client }, {});
  const topics = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedTopics) {
    if (page.Topics?.length) {
      topics.push(...page.Topics);
    }
  }

  const suffix = topics.length === 1 ? "" : "s";

  console.log(
    `Hello, Amazon SNS! You have ${topics.length} topic${suffix} in your account.`,
  );
  console.log(topics.map((t) => `  * ${t.TopicArn}`).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const checkIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut = async (
  phoneNumber = "5555555555",
) => {
  const command = new CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutCommand({
    phoneNumber,
  });

  const response = await snsClient.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '3341c28a-cdc8-5b39-a3ee-9fb0ee125732',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
```

```
  //   isOptedOut: false
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ConfirmSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSubscription`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { ConfirmSubscriptionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} token - This token is sent the subscriber. Only subscribers
 *                         that are not AWS services (HTTP/S, email) need to be
 confirmed.
```

```
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic for which you wish to confirm a
 subscription.
 */
export const confirmSubscription = async (
  token = "TOKEN",
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    // A subscription only needs to be confirmed if the endpoint type is
    // HTTP/S, email, or in another AWS account.
    new ConfirmSubscriptionCommand({
      Token: token,
      TopicArn: topicArn,
      // If this is true, the subscriber cannot unsubscribe while unauthenticated.
      AuthenticateOnUnsubscribe: "false",
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '4bb5bce9-805a-5517-8333-e1d2cface90b',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:TOPIC_NAME:xxxxxxxx-
xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { CreateTopicCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicName - The name of the topic to create.
 */
export const createTopic = async (topicName = "TOPIC_NAME") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new CreateTopicCommand({ Name: topicName }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '087b8ad2-4593-50c4-a496-d7e90b82cf3e',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:TOPIC_NAME'
  // }
```

```
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { DeleteTopicCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic to delete.
 */
export const deleteTopic = async (topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new DeleteTopicCommand({ TopicArn: topicArn }),
```

```
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'a10e2886-5a8f-5114-af36-75bd39498332',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { GetSMSAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const getSmsAttributes = async () => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    // If you have not modified the account-level mobile settings of SNS,
    // the DefaultSMSType is undefined. For this example, it was set to
    // Transactional.
    new GetSMSAttributesCommand({ attributes: ["DefaultSMSType"] }),
  );

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '67ad8386-4169-58f1-bdb9-debd281d48d5',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   attributes: { DefaultSMSType: 'Transactional' }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { GetTopicAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic to retrieve attributes for.
 */
export const getTopicAttributes = async (topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new GetTopicAttributesCommand({
      TopicArn: topicArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '36b6a24e-5473-5d4e-ac32-ff72d9a73d94',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Attributes: {
  //     Policy: '{...}',
  //     Owner: 'xxxxxxxxxxxx',
  //     SubscriptionsPending: '1',
  //     TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:mytopic',
  //     TracingConfig: 'PassThrough',
  //     EffectiveDeliveryPolicy: '{"http":{"defaultHealthyRetryPolicy":
{"minDelayTarget":20,"maxDelayTarget":20,"numRetries":3,"numMaxDelayRetries":0,"numNoDelayRe
{"headerContentType":"text/plain; charset=UTF-8"}}}',
```

```
  //     SubscriptionsConfirmed: '0',
  //     DisplayName: '',
  //     SubscriptionsDeleted: '1'
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { ListSubscriptionsByTopicCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
```

```
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic for which you wish to list
 subscriptions.
 */
export const listSubscriptionsByTopic = async (topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new ListSubscriptionsByTopicCommand({ TopicArn: topicArn }),
  );

  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '0934fedf-0c4b-572e-9ed2-a3e38fadb0c8',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Subscriptions: [
  //     {
  //       SubscriptionArn: 'PendingConfirmation',
  //       Owner: '901487484989',
  //       Protocol: 'email',
  //       Endpoint: 'corepyle@amazon.com',
  //       TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:901487484989:mytopic'
  //     }
  //   ]
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { ListTopicsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const listTopics = async () => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(new ListTopicsCommand({}));
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '936bc5ad-83ca-53c2-b0b7-9891167b909e',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Topics: [ { TopicArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:mytopic' } ]
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { PublishCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string | Record<string, any>} message - The message to send. Can be a
 plain string or an object
 *                                                  if you are using the `json`
 `MessageStructure`.
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic to which you would like to
 publish.
 */
export const publish = async (
  message = "Hello from SNS!",
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
) => {
```

```
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new PublishCommand({
      Message: message,
      TopicArn: topicArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'e7f77526-e295-5325-9ee4-281a43ad1f05',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   MessageId: 'xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Publish a message to a topic with group, duplication, and attribute options.

```
  async publishMessages() {
    const message = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.publishMessagePrompt,
    });

    let groupId;
    let deduplicationId;
    let choices;

    if (this.isFifo) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.groupIdNotice);
      groupId = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.groupIdPrompt,
      });

      if (this.autoDedup === false) {
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationIdNotice);
        deduplicationId = await this.prompter.input({
          message: MESSAGES.deduplicationIdPrompt,
```

```
        });
      }

      choices = await this.prompter.checkbox({
        message: MESSAGES.messageAttributesPrompt,
        choices: toneChoices,
      });
    }

    await this.snsClient.send(
      new PublishCommand({
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Message: message,
        ...(groupId
          ? {
              MessageGroupId: groupId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(deduplicationId
          ? {
              MessageDeduplicationId: deduplicationId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(choices
          ? {
              MessageAttributes: {
                tone: {
                  DataType: "String.Array",
                  StringValue: JSON.stringify(choices),
                },
              },
            }
          : {}),
      }),
    );

    const publishAnother = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.publishAnother,
    });

    if (publishAnother) {
      await this.publishMessages();
    }
  }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { SetSMSAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {"Transactional" | "Promotional"} defaultSmsType
 */
export const setSmsType = async (defaultSmsType = "Transactional") => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SetSMSAttributesCommand({
      attributes: {
        // Promotional - (Default) Noncritical messages, such as marketing messages.
        // Transactional - Critical messages that support customer transactions,
```

```
        // such as one-time passcodes for multi-factor authentication.
        DefaultSMSType: defaultSmsType,
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '1885b977-2d7e-535e-8214-e44be727e265',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
```

```
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { SetTopicAttributesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

export const setTopicAttributes = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  attributeName = "DisplayName",
  attributeValue = "Test Topic",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SetTopicAttributesCommand({
      AttributeName: attributeName,
      AttributeValue: attributeValue,
      TopicArn: topicArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'd1b08d0e-e9a4-54c3-b8b1-d03238d2b935',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { SubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic for which you wish to confirm a
 subscription.
 * @param {string} emailAddress - The email address that is subscribed to the topic.
 */
export const subscribeEmail = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  emailAddress = "usern@me.com",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SubscribeCommand({
      Protocol: "email",
      TopicArn: topicArn,
      Endpoint: emailAddress,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
```

```
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'c8e35bcd-b3c0-5940-9f66-06f6fcc108f0',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'pending confirmation'
  // }
};
```

Subscribe a mobile application to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic the subscriber is subscribing to.
 * @param {string} endpoint - The Endpoint ARN of an application. This endpoint is
 created
 *                            when an application registers for notifications.
 */
export const subscribeApp = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  endpoint = "ENDPOINT",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SubscribeCommand({
      Protocol: "application",
      TopicArn: topicArn,
      Endpoint: endpoint,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'c8e35bcd-b3c0-5940-9f66-06f6fcc108f0',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
```

```
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'pending confirmation'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} topicArn - The ARN of the topic the subscriber is subscribing to.
 * @param {string} endpoint - The Endpoint ARN of and AWS Lambda function.
 */
export const subscribeLambda = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  endpoint = "ENDPOINT",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new SubscribeCommand({
      Protocol: "lambda",
      TopicArn: topicArn,
      Endpoint: endpoint,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: 'c8e35bcd-b3c0-5940-9f66-06f6fcc108f0',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'pending confirmation'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Subscribe an SQS queue to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand, SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

const client = new SNSClient({});

export const subscribeQueue = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  queueArn = "QUEUE_ARN",
) => {
  const command = new SubscribeCommand({
    TopicArn: topicArn,
    Protocol: "sqs",
    Endpoint: queueArn,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '931e13d9-5e2b-543f-8781-4e9e494c5ff2',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:subscribe-queue-
test-430895:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

Subscribe with a filter to a topic.

```
import { SubscribeCommand, SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

const client = new SNSClient({});

export const subscribeQueueFiltered = async (
  topicArn = "TOPIC_ARN",
  queueArn = "QUEUE_ARN",
```

```
) => {
  const command = new SubscribeCommand({
    TopicArn: topicArn,
    Protocol: "sqs",
    Endpoint: queueArn,
    Attributes: {
      // This subscription will only receive messages with the 'event' attribute set
 to 'order_placed'.
      FilterPolicyScope: "MessageAttributes",
      FilterPolicy: JSON.stringify({
        event: ["order_placed"],
      }),
    },
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '931e13d9-5e2b-543f-8781-4e9e494c5ff2',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   SubscriptionArn: 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:subscribe-queue-
test-430895:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx'
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Unsubscribe

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client in a separate module and export it.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";

// The AWS Region can be provided here using the `region` property. If you leave it
 blank
// the SDK will default to the region set in your AWS config.
export const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
```

Import the SDK and client modules and call the API.

```
import { UnsubscribeCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { snsClient } from "../libs/snsClient.js";

/**
 * @param {string} subscriptionArn - The ARN of the subscription to cancel.
 */
const unsubscribe = async (
  subscriptionArn = "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:xxxxxxxxxxxx:mytopic:xxxxxxxx-xxxx-xxxx-
xxxx-xxxxxxxxxxxx",
) => {
  const response = await snsClient.send(
    new UnsubscribeCommand({
      SubscriptionArn: subscriptionArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '0178259a-9204-507c-b620-78a7570a44c6',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
```

```
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build an app to submit data to a DynamoDB table

The following code example shows how to build an application that submits data to an Amazon DynamoDB table and notifies you when a user updates the table.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example shows how to build an app that enables users to submit data to an Amazon DynamoDB table, and send a text message to the administrator using Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This is the entry point for this scenario.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

import { TopicsQueuesWkflw } from "./TopicsQueuesWkflw.js";
import { Prompter } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js";

export const startSnsWorkflow = () => {
  const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
  const sqsClient = new SQSClient({});
  const prompter = new Prompter();
  const logger = console;

  const wkflw = new TopicsQueuesWkflw(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger);

  wkflw.start();
};
```

The preceding code provides the necessary dependencies and starts the scenario. The next section contains the bulk of the example.

```
const toneChoices = [
  { name: "cheerful", value: "cheerful" },
  { name: "funny", value: "funny" },
  { name: "serious", value: "serious" },
  { name: "sincere", value: "sincere" },
];

export class TopicsQueuesWkflw {
  // SNS topic is configured as First-In-First-Out
  isFifo = true;

  // Automatic content-based deduplication is enabled.
  autoDedup = false;

  snsClient;
  sqsClient;
  topicName;
  topicArn;
  subscriptionArns = [];
  /**
   * @type {{ queueName: string, queueArn: string, queueUrl: string, policy?:
 string }[]}
   */
  queues = [];
  prompter;

  /**
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SNSClient} snsClient
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sqs').SQSClient} sqsClient
   * @param {import('../../libs/prompter.js').Prompter} prompter
   * @param {import('../../libs/logger.js').Logger} logger
   */
  constructor(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger) {
    this.snsClient = snsClient;
    this.sqsClient = sqsClient;
    this.prompter = prompter;
```

```
    this.logger = logger;
  }

  async welcome() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.description);
  }

  async confirmFifo() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.snsFifoDescription);
    this.isFifo = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.snsFifoPrompt,
    });

    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerDedup);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationNotice);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationDescription);
      this.autoDedup = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.deduplicationPrompt,
      });
    }
  }

  async createTopic() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.creatingTopics);
    this.topicName = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.topicNamePrompt,
    });
    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.topicName += ".fifo";
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifoNaming);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
    }

    const response = await this.snsClient.send(
      new CreateTopicCommand({
        Name: this.topicName,
        Attributes: {
          FifoTopic: this.isFifo ? "true" : "false",
          ...(this.autoDedup ? { ContentBasedDeduplication: "true" } : {}),
        },
      }),
    );
```

```
    this.topicArn = response.TopicArn;

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.topicCreatedNotice
        .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
        .replace("${TOPIC_ARN}", this.topicArn),
    );
  }

  async createQueues() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.createQueuesNotice);
    // Increase this number to add more queues.
    const maxQueues = 2;

    for (let i = 0; i < maxQueues; i++) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.queueCount.replace("${COUNT}", i + 1));
      let queueName = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.queueNamePrompt.replace(
          "${EXAMPLE_NAME}",
          i === 0 ? "good-news" : "bad-news",
        ),
      });

      if (this.isFifo) {
        queueName += ".fifo";
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
      }

      const response = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new CreateQueueCommand({
          QueueName: queueName,
          Attributes: { ...(this.isFifo ? { FifoQueue: "true" } : {}) },
        }),
      );

      const { Attributes } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
          QueueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
          AttributeNames: ["QueueArn"],
        }),
      );

      this.queues.push({
        queueName,
```

```
        queueArn: Attributes.QueueArn,
        queueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
      });

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueCreatedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queueName)
          .replace("${QUEUE_URL}", response.QueueUrl)
          .replace("${QUEUE_ARN}", Attributes.QueueArn),
      );
    }
  }

  async attachQueueIamPolicies() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      const policy = JSON.stringify(
        {
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Principal: {
                Service: "sns.amazonaws.com",
              },
              Action: "sqs:SendMessage",
              Resource: queue.queueArn,
              Condition: {
                ArnEquals: {
                  "aws:SourceArn": this.topicArn,
                },
              },
            },
          ],
        },
        null,
        2,
      );

      if (index !== 0) {
        this.logger.logSeparator();
      }

      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.attachPolicyNotice);
      console.log(policy);
      const addPolicy = await this.prompter.confirm({
```

```
        message: MESSAGES.addPolicyConfirmation.replace(
          "${QUEUE_NAME}",
          queue.queueName,
        ),
      });

      if (addPolicy) {
        await this.sqsClient.send(
          new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Attributes: {
              Policy: policy,
            },
          }),
        );
        queue.policy = policy;
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.policyNotAttachedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }
  }

  async subscribeQueuesToTopic() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      /**
       * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SubscribeCommandInput}
       */
      const subscribeParams = {
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Protocol: "sqs",
        Endpoint: queue.queueArn,
      };
      let tones = [];

      if (this.isFifo) {
        if (index === 0) {
          await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.fifoFilterNotice);
        }
        tones = await this.prompter.checkbox({
```

```
          message: MESSAGES.fifoFilterSelect.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
          choices: toneChoices,
        });

        if (tones.length) {
          subscribeParams.Attributes = {
            FilterPolicyScope: "MessageAttributes",
            FilterPolicy: JSON.stringify({
              tone: tones,
            }),
          };
        }
      }

      const { SubscriptionArn } = await this.snsClient.send(
        new SubscribeCommand(subscribeParams),
      );

      this.subscriptionArns.push(SubscriptionArn);

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueSubscribedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queue.queueName)
          .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
          .replace("${TONES}", tones.length ? tones.join(", ") : "none"),
      );
    }
  }

  async publishMessages() {
    const message = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.publishMessagePrompt,
    });

    let groupId;
    let deduplicationId;
    let choices;

    if (this.isFifo) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.groupIdNotice);
      groupId = await this.prompter.input({
```

```
        message: MESSAGES.groupIdPrompt,
      });

      if (this.autoDedup === false) {
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationIdNotice);
        deduplicationId = await this.prompter.input({
          message: MESSAGES.deduplicationIdPrompt,
        });
      }

      choices = await this.prompter.checkbox({
        message: MESSAGES.messageAttributesPrompt,
        choices: toneChoices,
      });
    }

    await this.snsClient.send(
      new PublishCommand({
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Message: message,
        ...(groupId
          ? {
              MessageGroupId: groupId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(deduplicationId
          ? {
              MessageDeduplicationId: deduplicationId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(choices
          ? {
              MessageAttributes: {
                tone: {
                  DataType: "String.Array",
                  StringValue: JSON.stringify(choices),
                },
              },
            }
          : {}),
      }),
    );

    const publishAnother = await this.prompter.confirm({
```

```
      message: MESSAGES.publishAnother,
    });

    if (publishAnother) {
      await this.publishMessages();
    }
  }

  async receiveAndDeleteMessages() {
    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      const { Messages } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new ReceiveMessageCommand({
          QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
        }),
      );

      if (Messages) {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.messagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
        console.log(Messages);

        await this.sqsClient.send(
          new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
              Id: message.MessageId,
              ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
            })),
          }),
        );
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.noMessagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }
```

```
    const deleteAndPoll = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.deleteAndPollConfirmation,
    });

    if (deleteAndPoll) {
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    }
  }

  async destroyResources() {
    for (const subscriptionArn of this.subscriptionArns) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new UnsubscribeCommand({ SubscriptionArn: subscriptionArn }),
      );
    }

    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      await this.sqsClient.send(
        new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl }),
      );
    }

    if (this.topicArn) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new DeleteTopicCommand({ TopicArn: this.topicArn }),
      );
    }
  }

  async start() {
    console.clear();

    try {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerWelcome);
      await this.welcome();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifo);
      await this.confirmFifo();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateTopic);
      await this.createTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateQueues);
      await this.createQueues();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerAttachPolicy);
      await this.attachQueueIamPolicies();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerSubscribeQueues);
```

```
      await this.subscribeQueuesToTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerPublishMessage);
      await this.publishMessages();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerReceiveMessages);
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(err);
    } finally {
      await this.destroyResources();
    }
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an

Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda JavaScript runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

This example is also available in the AWS SDK for JavaScript v3 developer guide.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge

- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record) {
  try {
    const message = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SNSEvent, Context, SNSHandler, SNSEventRecord } from "aws-lambda";

export const functionHandler: SNSHandler = async (
  event: SNSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const record of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(record);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SNSEventRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    const message: string = JSON.stringify(record.Sns.Message);
    console.log(`Processed message ${message}`);
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Initialize an Amazon SQS client and list queues.

```
import { SQSClient, paginateListQueues } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

export const helloSqs = async () => {
  // The configuration object (`{}`) is required. If the region and credentials
  // are omitted, the SDK uses your local configuration if it exists.
  const client = new SQSClient({});

  // You can also use `ListQueuesCommand`, but to use that command you must
  // handle the pagination yourself. You can do that by sending the
 `ListQueuesCommand`
  // with the `NextToken` parameter from the previous request.
  const paginatedQueues = paginateListQueues({ client }, {});
  const queues = [];

  for await (const page of paginatedQueues) {
    if (page.QueueUrls?.length) {
      queues.push(...page.QueueUrls);
    }
  }

  const suffix = queues.length === 1 ? "" : "s";

  console.log(
    `Hello, Amazon SQS! You have ${queues.length} queue${suffix} in your account.`,
  );
  console.log(queues.map((t) => `  * ${t}`).join("\n"));
};
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`ChangeMessageVisibility`

The following code example shows how to use `ChangeMessageVisibility`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive an Amazon SQS message and change its timeout visibility.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  ChangeMessageVisibilityCommand,
  SQSClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
```

```
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 1,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  const response = await client.send(
    new ChangeMessageVisibilityCommand({
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS standard queue.

```
import { CreateQueueCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_NAME = "test-queue";

export const main = async (sqsQueueName = SQS_QUEUE_NAME) => {
```

```
  const command = new CreateQueueCommand({
    QueueName: sqsQueueName,
    Attributes: {
      DelaySeconds: "60",
      MessageRetentionPeriod: "86400",
    },
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue with long polling.

```
import { CreateQueueCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_NAME = "queue_name";

export const main = async (queueName = SQS_QUEUE_NAME) => {
  const response = await client.send(
    new CreateQueueCommand({
      QueueName: queueName,
      Attributes: {
        // When the wait time for the ReceiveMessage API action is greater than 0,
        // long polling is in effect. The maximum long polling wait time is 20
        // seconds. Long polling helps reduce the cost of using Amazon SQS by,
        // eliminating the number of empty responses and false empty responses.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-short-and-long-polling.html
        ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "20",
      },
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive and delete Amazon SQS messages.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  DeleteMessageCommand,
  SQSClient,
  DeleteMessageBatchCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  if (!Messages) {
    return;
  }
```

```
  if (Messages.length === 1) {
    console.log(Messages[0].Body);
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      }),
    );
  } else {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
          Id: message.MessageId,
          ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
        })),
      }),
    );
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  DeleteMessageCommand,
  SQSClient,
  DeleteMessageBatchCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";
```

```
const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  if (!Messages) {
    return;
  }

  if (Messages.length === 1) {
    console.log(Messages[0].Body);
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      }),
    );
  } else {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
          Id: message.MessageId,
          ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
        })),
      }),
    );
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import { DeleteQueueCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "test-queue-url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queueUrl });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { GetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue-url";

export const getQueueAttributes = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
    AttributeNames: ["DelaySeconds"],
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '747a1192-c334-5682-a508-4cd5e8dc4e79',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   Attributes: { DelaySeconds: '1' }
  // }
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the URL for an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import { GetQueueUrlCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_NAME = "test-queue";

export const main = async (queueName = SQS_QUEUE_NAME) => {
  const command = new GetQueueUrlCommand({ QueueName: queueName });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your Amazon SQS queues.

```
import { paginateListQueues, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});

export const main = async () => {
  const paginatedListQueues = paginateListQueues({ client }, {});

  /** @type {string[]} */
  const urls = [];
  for await (const page of paginatedListQueues) {
    const nextUrls = page.QueueUrls?.filter((qurl) => !!qurl) || [];
    urls.push(...nextUrls);
    for (const url of urls) {
      console.log(url);
    }
  }

  return urls;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import {
  ReceiveMessageCommand,
  DeleteMessageCommand,
```

```
  SQSClient,
  DeleteMessageBatchCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

const receiveMessage = (queueUrl) =>
  client.send(
    new ReceiveMessageCommand({
      AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
      MaxNumberOfMessages: 10,
      MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
      QueueUrl: queueUrl,
      WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
      VisibilityTimeout: 20,
    }),
  );

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const { Messages } = await receiveMessage(queueUrl);

  if (!Messages) {
    return;
  }

  if (Messages.length === 1) {
    console.log(Messages[0].Body);
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        ReceiptHandle: Messages[0].ReceiptHandle,
      }),
    );
  } else {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
        QueueUrl: queueUrl,
        Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
          Id: message.MessageId,
          ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
        })),
      }),
    );
```

```
  }
};
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue using long-poll support.

```
import { ReceiveMessageCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue-url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new ReceiveMessageCommand({
    AttributeNames: ["SentTimestamp"],
    MaxNumberOfMessages: 1,
    MessageAttributeNames: ["All"],
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
    // The duration (in seconds) for which the call waits for a message
    // to arrive in the queue before returning. If a message is available,
    // the call returns sooner than WaitTimeSeconds. If no messages are
    // available and the wait time expires, the call returns successfully
    // with an empty list of messages.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/APIReference/
API_ReceiveMessage.html#API_ReceiveMessage_RequestSyntax
    WaitTimeSeconds: 20,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a message to an Amazon SQS queue.

```
import { SendMessageCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

export const main = async (sqsQueueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new SendMessageCommand({
    QueueUrl: sqsQueueUrl,
    DelaySeconds: 10,
    MessageAttributes: {
      Title: {
        DataType: "String",
        StringValue: "The Whistler",
      },
      Author: {
        DataType: "String",
        StringValue: "John Grisham",
      },
      WeeksOn: {
        DataType: "Number",
        StringValue: "6",
      },
    },
    MessageBody:
      "Information about current NY Times fiction bestseller for week of
 12/11/2016.",
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`SetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue-url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
    Attributes: {
      DelaySeconds: "1",
    },
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Configure an Amazon SQS queue to use long polling.

```
import { SetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";
```

```
const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";

export const main = async (queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL) => {
  const command = new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
    Attributes: {
      ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds: "20",
    },
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
  });

  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

Configure a dead-letter queue.

```
import { SetQueueAttributesCommand, SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

const client = new SQSClient({});
const SQS_QUEUE_URL = "queue_url";
const DEAD_LETTER_QUEUE_ARN = "dead_letter_queue_arn";

export const main = async (
  queueUrl = SQS_QUEUE_URL,
  deadLetterQueueArn = DEAD_LETTER_QUEUE_ARN,
) => {
  const command = new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
    Attributes: {
      RedrivePolicy: JSON.stringify({
        // Amazon SQS supports dead-letter queues (DLQ), which other
        // queues (source queues) can target for messages that can't
        // be processed (consumed) successfully.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-dead-letter-queues.html
        deadLetterTargetArn: deadLetterQueueArn,
        maxReceiveCount: "10",
      }),
    },
    QueueUrl: queueUrl,
  });
```

```
  const response = await client.send(command);
  console.log(response);
  return response;
};
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This is the entry point for this scenario.

```
import { SNSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sns";
import { SQSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sqs";

import { TopicsQueuesWkflw } from "./TopicsQueuesWkflw.js";
import { Prompter } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/prompter.js";

export const startSnsWorkflow = () => {
  const snsClient = new SNSClient({});
  const sqsClient = new SQSClient({});
  const prompter = new Prompter();
  const logger = console;

  const wkflw = new TopicsQueuesWkflw(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger);

  wkflw.start();
};
```

The preceding code provides the necessary dependencies and starts the scenario. The next section contains the bulk of the example.

```
const toneChoices = [
  { name: "cheerful", value: "cheerful" },
```

```
  { name: "funny", value: "funny" },
  { name: "serious", value: "serious" },
  { name: "sincere", value: "sincere" },
];

export class TopicsQueuesWkflw {
  // SNS topic is configured as First-In-First-Out
  isFifo = true;

  // Automatic content-based deduplication is enabled.
  autoDedup = false;

  snsClient;
  sqsClient;
  topicName;
  topicArn;
  subscriptionArns = [];
  /**
   * @type {{ queueName: string, queueArn: string, queueUrl: string, policy?:
 string }[]}
   */
  queues = [];
  prompter;

  /**
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SNSClient} snsClient
   * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-sqs').SQSClient} sqsClient
   * @param {import('../../libs/prompter.js').Prompter} prompter
   * @param {import('../../libs/logger.js').Logger} logger
   */
  constructor(snsClient, sqsClient, prompter, logger) {
    this.snsClient = snsClient;
    this.sqsClient = sqsClient;
    this.prompter = prompter;
    this.logger = logger;
  }

  async welcome() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.description);
  }

  async confirmFifo() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.snsFifoDescription);
    this.isFifo = await this.prompter.confirm({
```

```
      message: MESSAGES.snsFifoPrompt,
    });

    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerDedup);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationNotice);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationDescription);
      this.autoDedup = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.deduplicationPrompt,
      });
    }
  }

  async createTopic() {
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.creatingTopics);
    this.topicName = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.topicNamePrompt,
    });
    if (this.isFifo) {
      this.topicName += ".fifo";
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifoNaming);
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
    }

    const response = await this.snsClient.send(
      new CreateTopicCommand({
        Name: this.topicName,
        Attributes: {
          FifoTopic: this.isFifo ? "true" : "false",
          ...(this.autoDedup ? { ContentBasedDeduplication: "true" } : {}),
        },
      }),
    );

    this.topicArn = response.TopicArn;

    await this.logger.log(
      MESSAGES.topicCreatedNotice
        .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
        .replace("${TOPIC_ARN}", this.topicArn),
    );
  }

  async createQueues() {
```

```
    await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.createQueuesNotice);
    // Increase this number to add more queues.
    const maxQueues = 2;

    for (let i = 0; i < maxQueues; i++) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.queueCount.replace("${COUNT}", i + 1));
      let queueName = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.queueNamePrompt.replace(
          "${EXAMPLE_NAME}",
          i === 0 ? "good-news" : "bad-news",
        ),
      });

      if (this.isFifo) {
        queueName += ".fifo";
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.appendFifoNotice);
      }

      const response = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new CreateQueueCommand({
          QueueName: queueName,
          Attributes: { ...(this.isFifo ? { FifoQueue: "true" } : {}) },
        }),
      );

      const { Attributes } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new GetQueueAttributesCommand({
          QueueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
          AttributeNames: ["QueueArn"],
        }),
      );

      this.queues.push({
        queueName,
        queueArn: Attributes.QueueArn,
        queueUrl: response.QueueUrl,
      });

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueCreatedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queueName)
          .replace("${QUEUE_URL}", response.QueueUrl)
          .replace("${QUEUE_ARN}", Attributes.QueueArn),
      );
```

```
    }
  }

  async attachQueueIamPolicies() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      const policy = JSON.stringify(
        {
          Statement: [
            {
              Effect: "Allow",
              Principal: {
                Service: "sns.amazonaws.com",
              },
              Action: "sqs:SendMessage",
              Resource: queue.queueArn,
              Condition: {
                ArnEquals: {
                  "aws:SourceArn": this.topicArn,
                },
              },
            },
          ],
        },
        null,
        2,
      );

      if (index !== 0) {
        this.logger.logSeparator();
      }

      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.attachPolicyNotice);
      console.log(policy);
      const addPolicy = await this.prompter.confirm({
        message: MESSAGES.addPolicyConfirmation.replace(
          "${QUEUE_NAME}",
          queue.queueName,
        ),
      });

      if (addPolicy) {
        await this.sqsClient.send(
          new SetQueueAttributesCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
```

```
            Attributes: {
              Policy: policy,
            },
          }),
        );
        queue.policy = policy;
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.policyNotAttachedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }
  }

  async subscribeQueuesToTopic() {
    for (const [index, queue] of this.queues.entries()) {
      /**
       * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-sns').SubscribeCommandInput}
       */
      const subscribeParams = {
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Protocol: "sqs",
        Endpoint: queue.queueArn,
      };
      let tones = [];

      if (this.isFifo) {
        if (index === 0) {
          await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.fifoFilterNotice);
        }
        tones = await this.prompter.checkbox({
          message: MESSAGES.fifoFilterSelect.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
          choices: toneChoices,
        });

        if (tones.length) {
          subscribeParams.Attributes = {
            FilterPolicyScope: "MessageAttributes",
```

```
            FilterPolicy: JSON.stringify({
              tone: tones,
            }),
          };
        }
      }

      const { SubscriptionArn } = await this.snsClient.send(
        new SubscribeCommand(subscribeParams),
      );

      this.subscriptionArns.push(SubscriptionArn);

      await this.logger.log(
        MESSAGES.queueSubscribedNotice
          .replace("${QUEUE_NAME}", queue.queueName)
          .replace("${TOPIC_NAME}", this.topicName)
          .replace("${TONES}", tones.length ? tones.join(", ") : "none"),
      );
    }
  }

  async publishMessages() {
    const message = await this.prompter.input({
      message: MESSAGES.publishMessagePrompt,
    });

    let groupId;
    let deduplicationId;
    let choices;

    if (this.isFifo) {
      await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.groupIdNotice);
      groupId = await this.prompter.input({
        message: MESSAGES.groupIdPrompt,
      });

      if (this.autoDedup === false) {
        await this.logger.log(MESSAGES.deduplicationIdNotice);
        deduplicationId = await this.prompter.input({
          message: MESSAGES.deduplicationIdPrompt,
        });
      }
```

```
      choices = await this.prompter.checkbox({
        message: MESSAGES.messageAttributesPrompt,
        choices: toneChoices,
      });
    }

    await this.snsClient.send(
      new PublishCommand({
        TopicArn: this.topicArn,
        Message: message,
        ...(groupId
          ? {
              MessageGroupId: groupId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(deduplicationId
          ? {
              MessageDeduplicationId: deduplicationId,
            }
          : {}),
        ...(choices
          ? {
              MessageAttributes: {
                tone: {
                  DataType: "String.Array",
                  StringValue: JSON.stringify(choices),
                },
              },
            }
          : {}),
      }),
    );

    const publishAnother = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.publishAnother,
    });

    if (publishAnother) {
      await this.publishMessages();
    }
  }

  async receiveAndDeleteMessages() {
    for (const queue of this.queues) {
```

```
      const { Messages } = await this.sqsClient.send(
        new ReceiveMessageCommand({
          QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
        }),
      );

      if (Messages) {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.messagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
        console.log(Messages);

        await this.sqsClient.send(
          new DeleteMessageBatchCommand({
            QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl,
            Entries: Messages.map((message) => ({
              Id: message.MessageId,
              ReceiptHandle: message.ReceiptHandle,
            })),
          }),
        );
      } else {
        await this.logger.log(
          MESSAGES.noMessagesReceivedNotice.replace(
            "${QUEUE_NAME}",
            queue.queueName,
          ),
        );
      }
    }

    const deleteAndPoll = await this.prompter.confirm({
      message: MESSAGES.deleteAndPollConfirmation,
    });

    if (deleteAndPoll) {
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    }
  }

  async destroyResources() {
```

```
    for (const subscriptionArn of this.subscriptionArns) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new UnsubscribeCommand({ SubscriptionArn: subscriptionArn }),
      );
    }

    for (const queue of this.queues) {
      await this.sqsClient.send(
        new DeleteQueueCommand({ QueueUrl: queue.queueUrl }),
      );
    }

    if (this.topicArn) {
      await this.snsClient.send(
        new DeleteTopicCommand({ TopicArn: this.topicArn }),
      );
    }
  }

  async start() {
    console.clear();

    try {
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerWelcome);
      await this.welcome();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerFifo);
      await this.confirmFifo();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateTopic);
      await this.createTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerCreateQueues);
      await this.createQueues();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerAttachPolicy);
      await this.attachQueueIamPolicies();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerSubscribeQueues);
      await this.subscribeQueuesToTopic();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerPublishMessage);
      await this.publishMessages();
      this.logger.logSeparator(MESSAGES.headerReceiveMessages);
      await this.receiveAndDeleteMessages();
    } catch (err) {
      console.error(err);
    } finally {
      await this.destroyResources();
    }
```

```
  }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
exports.handler = async (event, context) => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message) {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, Context, SQSHandler, SQSRecord } from "aws-lambda";

export const functionHandler: SQSHandler = async (
  event: SQSEvent,
  context: Context
): Promise<void> => {
  for (const message of event.Records) {
    await processMessageAsync(message);
  }
  console.info("done");
};

async function processMessageAsync(message: SQSRecord): Promise<any> {
  try {
    console.log(`Processed message ${message.body}`);
    // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    await Promise.resolve(1); //Placeholder for actual async work
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("An error occurred");
```

```
    throw err;
  }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using JavaScript.

```
// Node.js 20.x Lambda runtime, AWS SDK for Javascript V3
export const handler = async (event, context) => {
    const batchItemFailures = [];
    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record, context);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }
    return { batchItemFailures };
};

async function processMessageAsync(record, context) {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error("There is an error in the SQS Message.");
    }
    console.log(`Processed message: ${record.body}`);
}
```

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using TypeScript.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import { SQSEvent, SQSBatchResponse, Context, SQSBatchItemFailure, SQSRecord } from
 'aws-lambda';

export const handler = async (event: SQSEvent, context: Context):
 Promise<SQSBatchResponse> => {
    const batchItemFailures: SQSBatchItemFailure[] = [];

    for (const record of event.Records) {
        try {
            await processMessageAsync(record);
        } catch (error) {
            batchItemFailures.push({ itemIdentifier: record.messageId });
        }
    }

    return {batchItemFailures: batchItemFailures};
};

async function processMessageAsync(record: SQSRecord): Promise<void> {
    if (record.body && record.body.includes("error")) {
        throw new Error('There is an error in the SQS Message.');
    }
    console.log(`Processed message ${record.body}`);
}
```

Step Functions examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Step Functions.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`StartExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartExecution`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SFNClient, StartExecutionCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sfn";

/**
 * @param {{ sfnClient: SFNClient, stateMachineArn: string }} config
 */
export async function startExecution({ sfnClient, stateMachineArn }) {
  const response = await sfnClient.send(
    new StartExecutionCommand({
      stateMachineArn,
    }),
  );
  console.log(response);
  // Example response:
  // {
  //   '$metadata': {
  //     httpStatusCode: 200,
  //     requestId: '202a9309-c16a-454b-adeb-c4d19afe3bf2',
  //     extendedRequestId: undefined,
  //     cfId: undefined,
  //     attempts: 1,
  //     totalRetryDelay: 0
  //   },
  //   executionArn: 'arn:aws:states:us-
east-1:000000000000:execution:MyStateMachine:aaaaaaaa-f787-49fb-a20c-1b61c64eafe6',
  //   startDate: 2024-01-04T15:54:08.362Z
```

```
  // }
  return response;
}

// Call function if run directly
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  startExecution({ sfnClient: new SFNClient({}), stateMachineArn: "ARN" });
}
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

AWS STS examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { STSClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "us-east-1";
// Create an AWS STS service client object.
export const client = new STSClient({ region: REGION });
```

Assume the IAM role.

```
import { AssumeRoleCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-sts";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Returns a set of temporary security credentials that you can use to
    // access Amazon Web Services resources that you might not normally
    // have access to.
    const command = new AssumeRoleCommand({
      // The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to assume.
      RoleArn: "ROLE_ARN",
      // An identifier for the assumed role session.
      RoleSessionName: "session1",
      // The duration, in seconds, of the role session. The value specified
      // can range from 900 seconds (15 minutes) up to the maximum session
      // duration set for the role.
      DurationSeconds: 900,
    });
    const response = await client.send(command);
    console.log(response);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Support examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Support.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke `main()` to run the example.

```
import {
  DescribeServicesCommand,
  SupportClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

// Change the value of 'region' to your preferred AWS Region.
const client = new SupportClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

const getServiceCount = async () => {
  try {
    const { services } = await client.send(new DescribeServicesCommand({}));
    return services.length;
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    if (err.name === "SubscriptionRequiredException") {
      throw new Error(
        "You must be subscribed to the AWS Support plan to use this feature.",
      );
    }
    throw err;
  }
};

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    const count = await getServiceCount();
    console.log(`Hello, AWS Support! There are ${count} services available.`);
  } catch (err) {
    console.error("Failed to get service count: ", err.message);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario in the terminal.

```
import {
  AddAttachmentsToSetCommand,
  AddCommunicationToCaseCommand,
  CreateCaseCommand,
  DescribeAttachmentCommand,
  DescribeCasesCommand,
  DescribeCommunicationsCommand,
  DescribeServicesCommand,
  DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand,
  ResolveCaseCommand,
  SupportClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-support";
import * as inquirer from "@inquirer/prompts";
import { retry } from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/utils/util-timers.js";

const wrapText = (text, char = "=") => {
  const rule = char.repeat(80);
  return `${rule}\n    ${text}\n${rule}\n`;
};

const client = new SupportClient({ region: "us-east-1" });

// Verify that the account has a Support plan.
export const verifyAccount = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeServicesCommand({});

  try {
    await client.send(command);
  } catch (err) {
    if (err.name === "SubscriptionRequiredException") {
      throw new Error(
        "You must be subscribed to the AWS Support plan to use this feature.",
      );
```

```
    }
    throw err;
  }
};

/**
 * Select a service from the list returned from DescribeServices.
 */
export const getService = async () => {
  const { services } = await client.send(new DescribeServicesCommand({}));
  const selectedService = await inquirer.select({
    message:
      "Select a service. Your support case will be created for this service. The
 list of services is truncated for readability.",
    choices: services.slice(0, 10).map((s) => ({ name: s.name, value: s })),
  });
  return selectedService;
};

/**
 * @param {{ categories: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Category[]}} service
 */
export const getCategory = async (service) => {
  const selectedCategory = await inquirer.select({
    message: "Select a category.",
    choices: service.categories.map((c) => ({ name: c.name, value: c })),
  });
  return selectedCategory;
};

// Get the available severity levels for the account.
export const getSeverityLevel = async () => {
  const command = new DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand({});
  const { severityLevels } = await client.send(command);
  const selectedSeverityLevel = await inquirer.select({
    message: "Select a severity level.",
    choices: severityLevels.map((s) => ({ name: s.name, value: s })),
  });
  return selectedSeverityLevel;
};

/**
 * Create a new support case
 * @param {{
```

```
 *  selectedService: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Service
 *  selectedCategory: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Category
 *  selectedSeverityLevel: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').SeverityLevel
 * }} selections
 * @returns
 */
export const createCase = async ({
  selectedService,
  selectedCategory,
  selectedSeverityLevel,
}) => {
  const command = new CreateCaseCommand({
    subject: "IGNORE: Test case",
    communicationBody: "This is a test. Please ignore.",
    serviceCode: selectedService.code,
    categoryCode: selectedCategory.code,
    severityCode: selectedSeverityLevel.code,
  });
  const { caseId } = await client.send(command);
  return caseId;
};

// Get a list of open support cases created today.
export const getTodaysOpenCases = async () => {
  const d = new Date();
  const startOfToday = new Date(d.getFullYear(), d.getMonth(), d.getDate());
  const command = new DescribeCasesCommand({
    includeCommunications: false,
    afterTime: startOfToday.toISOString(),
  });

  const { cases } = await client.send(command);

  if (cases.length === 0) {
    throw new Error(
      "Unexpected number of cases. Expected more than 0 open cases.",
    );
  }
  return cases;
};

// Create an attachment set.
export const createAttachmentSet = async () => {
  const command = new AddAttachmentsToSetCommand({
```

```
    attachments: [
      {
        fileName: "example.txt",
        data: new TextEncoder().encode("some example text"),
      },
    ],
  });
  const { attachmentSetId } = await client.send(command);
  return attachmentSetId;
};

export const linkAttachmentSetToCase = async (attachmentSetId, caseId) => {
  const command = new AddCommunicationToCaseCommand({
    attachmentSetId,
    caseId,
    communicationBody: "Adding attachment set to case.",
  });
  await client.send(command);
};

// Get all communications for a support case.
export const getCommunications = async (caseId) => {
  const command = new DescribeCommunicationsCommand({
    caseId,
  });
  const { communications } = await client.send(command);
  return communications;
};

/**
 * @param {import('@aws-sdk/client-support').Communication[]} communications
 */
export const getFirstAttachment = (communications) => {
  const firstCommWithAttachment = communications.find(
    (c) => c.attachmentSet.length > 0,
  );
  return firstCommWithAttachment?.attachmentSet[0].attachmentId;
};

// Get an attachment.
export const getAttachment = async (attachmentId) => {
  const command = new DescribeAttachmentCommand({
    attachmentId,
  });
```

```
  const { attachment } = await client.send(command);
  return attachment;
};

// Resolve the case matching the given case ID.
export const resolveCase = async (caseId) => {
  const shouldResolve = await inquirer.confirm({
    message: `Do you want to resolve ${caseId}?`,
  });

  if (shouldResolve) {
    const command = new ResolveCaseCommand({
      caseId: caseId,
    });

    await client.send(command);
    return true;
  }
  return false;
};

/**
 * Find a specific case in the list of provided cases by case ID.
 * If the case is not found, and the results are paginated, continue
 * paging through the results.
 * @param {{
 *   caseId: string,
 *   cases: import('@aws-sdk/client-support').CaseDetails[]
 *   nextToken: string
 * }} options
 * @returns
 */
export const findCase = async ({ caseId, cases, nextToken }) => {
  const foundCase = cases.find((c) => c.caseId === caseId);

  if (foundCase) {
    return foundCase;
  }

  if (nextToken) {
    const response = await client.send(
      new DescribeCasesCommand({
        nextToken,
        includeResolvedCases: true,
```

```
      }),
    );
    return findCase({
      caseId,
      cases: response.cases,
      nextToken: response.nextToken,
    });
  }

  throw new Error(`${caseId} not found.`);
};

// Get all cases created today.
export const getTodaysResolvedCases = async (caseIdToWaitFor) => {
  const d = new Date("2023-01-18");
  const startOfToday = new Date(d.getFullYear(), d.getMonth(), d.getDate());
  const command = new DescribeCasesCommand({
    includeCommunications: false,
    afterTime: startOfToday.toISOString(),
    includeResolvedCases: true,
  });
  const { cases, nextToken } = await client.send(command);
  await findCase({ cases, caseId: caseIdToWaitFor, nextToken });
  return cases.filter((c) => c.status === "resolved");
};

const main = async () => {
  let caseId;
  try {
    console.log(wrapText("Welcome to the AWS Support basic usage scenario."));

    // Verify that the account is subscribed to support.
    await verifyAccount();

    // Provided a truncated list of services and prompt the user to select one.
    const selectedService = await getService();

    // Provided the categories for the selected service and prompt the user to
 select one.
    const selectedCategory = await getCategory(selectedService);

    // Provide the severity available severity levels for the account and prompt the
 user to select one.
    const selectedSeverityLevel = await getSeverityLevel();
```

```
    // Create a support case.
    console.log("\nCreating a support case.");
    caseId = await createCase({
      selectedService,
      selectedCategory,
      selectedSeverityLevel,
    });
    console.log(`Support case created: ${caseId}`);

    // Display a list of open support cases created today.
    const todaysOpenCases = await retry(
      { intervalInMs: 1000, maxRetries: 15 },
      getTodaysOpenCases,
    );
    console.log(
      `\nOpen support cases created today: ${todaysOpenCases.length}`,
    );
    console.log(todaysOpenCases.map((c) => `${c.caseId}`).join("\n"));

    // Create an attachment set.
    console.log("\nCreating an attachment set.");
    const attachmentSetId = await createAttachmentSet();
    console.log(`Attachment set created: ${attachmentSetId}`);

    // Add the attachment set to the support case.
    console.log(`\nAdding attachment set to ${caseId}`);
    await linkAttachmentSetToCase(attachmentSetId, caseId);
    console.log(`Attachment set added to ${caseId}`);

    // List the communications for a support case.
    console.log(`\nListing communications for ${caseId}`);
    const communications = await getCommunications(caseId);
    console.log(
      communications
        .map(
          (c) =>
            `Communication created on ${c.timeCreated}. Has
${c.attachmentSet.length} attachments.`,
        )
        .join("\n"),
    );

    // Describe the first attachment.
```

```
    console.log(`\nDescribing attachment ${attachmentSetId}`);
    const attachmentId = getFirstAttachment(communications);
    const attachment = await getAttachment(attachmentId);
    console.log(
      `Attachment is the file '${
        attachment.fileName
      }' with data: \n${new TextDecoder().decode(attachment.data)}`,
    );

    // Confirm that the support case should be resolved.
    const isResolved = await resolveCase(caseId);
    if (isResolved) {
      // List the resolved cases and include the one previously created.
      // Resolved cases can take a while to appear.
      console.log(
        "\nWaiting for case status to be marked as resolved. This can take some
 time.",
      );
      const resolvedCases = await retry(
        { intervalInMs: 20000, maxRetries: 15 },
        () => getTodaysResolvedCases(caseId),
      );
      console.log("Resolved cases:");
      console.log(resolvedCases.map((c) => c.caseId).join("\n"));
    }
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels

- ResolveCase

Actions

`AddAttachmentsToSet`

The following code example shows how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AddAttachmentsToSetCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Create a new attachment set or add attachments to an existing set.
    // Provide an 'attachmentSetId' value to add attachments to an existing set.
    // Use AddCommunicationToCase or CreateCase to associate an attachment set with
 a support case.
    const response = await client.send(
      new AddAttachmentsToSetCommand({
        // You can add up to three attachments per set. The size limit is 5 MB per
 attachment.
        attachments: [
          {
            fileName: "example.txt",
            data: new TextEncoder().encode("some example text"),
          },
        ],
      }),
    );
    // Use this ID in AddCommunicationToCase or CreateCase.
    console.log(response.attachmentSetId);
    return response;
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`AddCommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { AddCommunicationToCaseCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  let attachmentSetId;

  try {
    // Add a communication to a case.
    const response = await client.send(
      new AddCommunicationToCaseCommand({
        communicationBody: "Adding an attachment.",
        // Set value to an existing support case id.
        caseId: "CASE_ID",
        // Optional. Set value to an existing attachment set id to add attachments
 to the case.
        attachmentSetId,
      }),
    );
    console.log(response);
    return response;
```

```
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateCase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCase`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateCaseCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Create a new case and log the case id.
    // Important: This creates a real support case in your account.
    const response = await client.send(
      new CreateCaseCommand({
        // The subject line of the case.
        subject: "IGNORE: Test case",
        // Use DescribeServices to find available service codes for each service.
        serviceCode: "service-quicksight-end-user",
        // Use DescribeSecurityLevels to find available severity codes for your
 support plan.
        severityCode: "low",
        // Use DescribeServices to find available category codes for each service.
        categoryCode: "end-user-support",
        // The main description of the support case.
        communicationBody: "This is a test. Please ignore.",
```

```
      }),
    );
    console.log(response.caseId);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeAttachment`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeAttachmentCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get the metadata and content of an attachment.
    const response = await client.send(
      new DescribeAttachmentCommand({
        // Set value to an existing attachment id.
        // Use DescribeCommunications or DescribeCases to find an attachment id.
        attachmentId: "ATTACHMENT_ID",
      }),
    );
    console.log(response.attachment?.fileName);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
```

```
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeCases`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCases`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeCasesCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get all of the unresolved cases in your account.
    // Filter or expand results by providing parameters to the DescribeCasesCommand.
 Refer
    // to the TypeScript definition and the API doc for more information on possible
 parameters.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/clients/client-
support/interfaces/describecasescommandinput.html
    const response = await client.send(new DescribeCasesCommand({}));
    const caseIds = response.cases.map((supportCase) => supportCase.caseId);
    console.log(caseIds);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeCommunications`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeCommunicationsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get all communications for the support case.
    // Filter results by providing parameters to the DescribeCommunicationsCommand.
 Refer
    // to the TypeScript definition and the API doc for more information on possible
 parameters.
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaScriptSDK/v3/latest/clients/client-
support/interfaces/describecommunicationscommandinput.html
    const response = await client.send(
      new DescribeCommunicationsCommand({
        // Set value to an existing case id.
        caseId: "CASE_ID",
      }),
    );
    const text = response.communications.map((item) => item.body).join("\n");
    console.log(text);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeSeverityLevels`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

export const main = async () => {
  try {
    // Get the list of severity levels.
    // The available values depend on the support plan for the account.
    const response = await client.send(new DescribeSeverityLevelsCommand({}));
    console.log(response.severityLevels);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ResolveCase`

The following code example shows how to use `ResolveCase`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { ResolveCaseCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-support";

import { client } from "../libs/client.js";

const main = async () => {
  try {
    const response = await client.send(
      new ResolveCaseCommand({
        caseId: "CASE_ID",
      }),
    );

    console.log(response.finalCaseStatus);
    return response;
  } catch (err) {
    console.error(err);
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Systems Manager examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Systems Manager.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Systems Manager

The following code examples show how to get started using Systems Manager.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { paginateListDocuments, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";

// Call ListDocuments and display the result.
export const main = async () => {
  const client = new SSMClient();
  const listDocumentsPaginated = [];
  console.log(
    "Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n",
  );
  try {
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListDocuments({ client }, { MaxResults: 5 });
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listDocumentsPaginated.push(...page.DocumentIdentifiers);
    }
  } catch (caught) {
    console.error(`There was a problem saying hello: ${caught.message}`);
    throw caught;
  }

  for (const { Name, DocumentFormat, CreatedDate } of listDocumentsPaginated) {
    console.log(`${Name} - ${DocumentFormat} - ${CreatedDate}`);
  }
};

// Call function if run directly.
```

```
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  main();
}
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a maintenance window.
- Modify the maintenance window schedule.
- Create a document.
- Send a command to a specified EC2 instance.
- Create an OpsItem.
- Update and resolve the OpsItem.
- Delete the maintenance window, OpsItem, and document.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  Scenario,
  ScenarioAction,
```

```
  ScenarioInput,
  ScenarioOutput,
} from "@aws-doc-sdk-examples/lib/scenario/index.js";
import { fileURLToPath } from "node:url";
import {
  CreateDocumentCommand,
  CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand,
  CreateOpsItemCommand,
  DeleteDocumentCommand,
  DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand,
  DeleteOpsItemCommand,
  DescribeOpsItemsCommand,
  DocumentAlreadyExists,
  OpsItemStatus,
  waitUntilCommandExecuted,
  CancelCommandCommand,
  paginateListCommandInvocations,
  SendCommandCommand,
  UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand,
  UpdateOpsItemCommand,
  SSMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * @typedef {{
 *   ssmClient: import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').SSMClient,
 *   documentName?: string
 *   maintenanceWindow?: string
 *   winId?: int
 *   ec2InstanceId?: string
 *   requestedDateTime?: Date
 *   opsItemId?: string
 *   askToDeleteResources?: boolean
 * }} State
 */

const defaultMaintenanceWindow = "ssm-maintenance-window";
const defaultDocumentName = "ssmdocument";
// The timeout duration is highly dependent on the specific setup and environment
 necessary. This example handles only the most common error cases, and uses a much
 shorter duration than most productions systems would use.
const COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS = 30; // 30 seconds
```

```
const pressEnter = new ScenarioInput("continue", "Press Enter to continue", {
  type: "confirm",
});

const greet = new ScenarioOutput(
  "greet",
  `Welcome to the AWS Systems Manager SDK Getting Started scenario.
    This program demonstrates how to interact with Systems Manager using the AWS SDK
 for JavaScript V3.
    Systems Manager is the operations hub for your AWS applications and resources
 and a secure end-to-end management solution.
    The program's primary functions include creating a maintenance window, creating
 a document, sending a command to a document,
    listing documents, listing commands, creating an OpsItem, modifying an OpsItem,
 and deleting Systems Manager resources.
    Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
    Let's get started...`,
  { header: true },
);

const createMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "createMaintenanceWindow",
  "Step 1: Create a Systems Manager maintenance window.",
);

const getMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioInput(
  "maintenanceWindow",
  "Please enter the maintenance window name:",
  { type: "input", default: defaultMaintenanceWindow },
);

export const sdkCreateMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateMaintenanceWindow",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
          Name: state.maintenanceWindow,
          Schedule: "cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)", //The schedule of the maintenance
 window in the form of a cron or rate expression.
          Duration: 2, //The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
          Cutoff: 1, //The number of hours before the end of the maintenance window
 that Amazon Web Services Systems Manager stops scheduling new tasks for execution.
```

```
          AllowUnassociatedTargets: true, //Allow the maintenance window to run on
 managed nodes, even if you haven't registered those nodes as targets.
        }),
      );
      state.winId = response.WindowId;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while creating the maintenance window. Please fix the
 error and try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const modifyMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioOutput(
  "modifyMaintenanceWindow",
  "Modify the maintenance window by changing the schedule.",
);

const sdkModifyMaintenanceWindow = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkModifyMaintenanceWindow",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
          WindowId: state.winId,
          Schedule: "cron(0 0 ? * MON *)",
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while modifying the maintenance window. Please fix the
 error and try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const createSystemsManagerActions = new ScenarioOutput(
  "createSystemsManagerActions",
```

```
  "Create a document that defines the actions that Systems Manager performs on your
 EC2 instance.",
);

const getDocumentName = new ScenarioInput(
  "documentName",
  "Please enter the document: ",
  { type: "input", default: defaultDocumentName },
);

const sdkCreateSSMDoc = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateSSMDoc",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const contentData = `{
                "schemaVersion": "2.2",
                "description": "Run a simple shell command",
                "mainSteps": [
                    {
                        "action": "aws:runShellScript",
                        "name": "runEchoCommand",
                        "inputs": {
                          "runCommand": [
                            "echo 'Hello, world!'"
                          ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }`;
    try {
      await state.ssmClient.send(
        new CreateDocumentCommand({
          Content: contentData,
          Name: state.documentName,
          DocumentType: "Command",
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.log(`Exception type: (${typeof caught})`);
      if (caught instanceof DocumentAlreadyExists) {
        console.log("Document already exists. Continuing...\n");
      } else {
        console.error(caught.message);
        console.log(
```

```
          `An error occurred while creating the document. Please fix the error and
 try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
        );
        throw caught;
      }
    }
  },
);

const ec2HelloWorld = new ScenarioOutput(
  "ec2HelloWorld",
  `Now you have the option of running a command on an EC2 instance that echoes
 'Hello, world!'. In order to run this command, you must provide the instance ID
 of a Linux EC2 instance. If you do not already have a running Linux EC2 instance
 in your account, you can create one using the AWS console. For information about
 creating an EC2 instance, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/
ec2-launch-instance-wizard.html.`,
);

const enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld = new ScenarioInput(
  "enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld",
  "Enter your EC2 InstanceId or press enter to skip this step: ",
  { type: "input", default: "" },
);

const sdkEC2HelloWorld = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkEC2HelloWorld",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new SendCommandCommand({
          DocumentName: state.documentName,
          InstanceIds: [state.ec2InstanceId],
          TimeoutSeconds: COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS,
        }),
      );
      state.CommandId = response.Command.CommandId;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while sending the command. Please fix the error and try
 again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
```

```
    }
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld === "",
  },
);

const sdkGetCommandTime = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetCommandTime",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    const listInvocationsPaginated = [];
    console.log(
      "Let's get the time when the specific command was sent to the specific managed
 node.",
    );

    console.log(
      `First, we'll wait for the command to finish executing. This may take up to
 ${COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS} seconds.`,
    );
    const commandExecutedResult = waitUntilCommandExecuted(
      { client: state.ssmClient },
      {
        CommandId: state.CommandId,
        InstanceId: state.ec2InstanceId,
      },
    );
    // This is necessary because the TimeoutSeconds of SendCommandCommand is only
 for the delivery, not execution.
    try {
      await new Promise((_, reject) =>
        setTimeout(
          reject,
          COMMAND_TIMEOUT_DURATION_SECONDS * 1000,
          new Error("Command Timed Out"),
        ),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      if (caught.message === "Command Timed Out") {
        commandExecutedResult.state = "TIMED_OUT";
      } else {
        throw caught;
      }
```

```
    }

    if (commandExecutedResult.state !== "SUCCESS") {
      console.log(
        `The command with id: ${state.CommandId} did not execute in the allotted
 time. Canceling command.`,
      );
      state.ssmClient.send(
        new CancelCommandCommand({
          CommandId: state.CommandId,
        }),
      );
      state.enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld === "";
      return;
    }

    for await (const page of paginateListCommandInvocations(
      { client: state.ssmClient },
      { CommandId: state.CommandId },
    )) {
      listInvocationsPaginated.push(...page.CommandInvocations);
    }
    /**
     * @type {import('@aws-sdk/client-ssm').CommandInvocation}
     */
    const commandInvocation = listInvocationsPaginated.shift(); // Because the call
 was made with CommandId, there's only one result, so shift it off.
    state.requestedDateTime = commandInvocation.RequestedDateTime;

    console.log(
      `The command invocation happened at: ${state.requestedDateTime}.`,
    );
  },
  {
    skipWhen: (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
      state.enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld === "",
  },
);

const createSSMOpsItem = new ScenarioOutput(
  "createSSMOpsItem",
  `Now we will create a Systems Manager OpsItem. An OpsItem is a feature provided by
 the Systems Manager service. It is a type of operational data item that allows you
```

```
 to manage and track various operational issues, events, or tasks within your AWS
 environment.
You can create OpsItems to track and manage operational issues as they arise. For
 example, you could create an OpsItem whenever your application detects a critical
 error or an anomaly in your infrastructure.`,
);

const sdkCreateSSMOpsItem = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkCreateSSMOpsItem",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new CreateOpsItemCommand({
          Description: "Created by the System Manager Javascript API",
          Title: "Disk Space Alert",
          Source: "EC2",
          Category: "Performance",
          Severity: "2",
        }),
      );
      state.opsItemId = response.OpsItemId;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while creating the ops item. Please fix the error and try
 again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const updateOpsItem = new ScenarioOutput(
  "updateOpsItem",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Now we will update the OpsItem: ${state.opsItemId}`,
);

const sdkUpdateOpsItem = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkUpdateOpsItem",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const _response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new UpdateOpsItemCommand({
```

```
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
          Description: `An update to ${state.opsItemId}`,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while updating the ops item. Please fix the error and try
 again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const getOpsItemStatus = new ScenarioOutput(
  "getOpsItemStatus",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Now we will get the status of the OpsItem: ${state.opsItemId}`,
);

const sdkOpsItemStatus = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkGetOpsItemStatus",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new DescribeOpsItemsCommand({
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
        }),
      );
      state.opsItemStatus = response.OpsItemStatus;
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while describing the ops item. Please fix the error and
 try again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const resolveOpsItem = new ScenarioOutput(
  "resolveOpsItem",
```

```
  (/** @type {State} */ state) =>
    `Now we will resolve the OpsItem: ${state.opsItemId}`,
);

const sdkResolveOpsItem = new ScenarioAction(
  "sdkResolveOpsItem",
  async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    try {
      const _response = await state.ssmClient.send(
        new UpdateOpsItemCommand({
          OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
          Status: OpsItemStatus.RESOLVED,
        }),
      );
    } catch (caught) {
      console.error(caught.message);
      console.log(
        `An error occurred while updating the ops item. Please fix the error and try
 again. Error message: ${caught.message}`,
      );
      throw caught;
    }
  },
);

const askToDeleteResources = new ScenarioInput(
  "askToDeleteResources",
  "Would you like to delete the Systems Manager resources created during this
 example run?",
  { type: "confirm" },
);

const confirmDeleteChoice = new ScenarioOutput(
  "confirmDeleteChoice",
  (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
    if (state.askToDeleteResources) {
      return "You chose to delete the resources.";
    }
    return "The Systems Manager resources will not be deleted. Please delete them
 manually to avoid charges.";
  },
);

export const sdkDeleteResources = new ScenarioAction(
```

```
 "sdkDeleteResources",
 async (/** @type {State} */ state) => {
   try {
     await state.ssmClient.send(
       new DeleteOpsItemCommand({
         OpsItemId: state.opsItemId,
       }),
     );
     console.log(`The ops item: ${state.opsItemId} was successfully deleted.`);
   } catch (caught) {
     console.log(
       `There was a problem deleting the ops item: ${state.opsItemId}. Please
delete it manually. Error: ${caught.message}`,
     );
   }

   try {
     await state.ssmClient.send(
       new DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand({
         Name: state.maintenanceWindow,
         WindowId: state.winId,
       }),
     );
     console.log(
       `The maintenance window: ${state.maintenanceWindow} was successfully
deleted.`,
     );
   } catch (caught) {
     console.log(
       `There was a problem deleting the maintenance window: ${state.opsItemId}.
Please delete it manually. Error: ${caught.message}`,
     );
   }

   try {
     await state.ssmClient.send(
       new DeleteDocumentCommand({
         Name: state.documentName,
       }),
     );
     console.log(
       `The document: ${state.documentName} was successfully deleted.`,
     );
   } catch (caught) {
```

```
      console.log(
        `There was a problem deleting the document: ${state.documentName}. Please
 delete it manually. Error: ${caught.message}`,
      );
    }
  },
  { skipWhen: (/** @type {{}} */ state) => !state.askToDeleteResources },
);

const goodbye = new ScenarioOutput(
  "goodbye",
  "This concludes the Systems Manager Basics scenario for the AWS Javascript SDK v3.
 Thank you!",
);

const myScenario = new Scenario(
  "SSM Basics",
  [
    greet,
    pressEnter,
    createMaintenanceWindow,
    getMaintenanceWindow,
    sdkCreateMaintenanceWindow,
    modifyMaintenanceWindow,
    pressEnter,
    sdkModifyMaintenanceWindow,
    createSystemsManagerActions,
    getDocumentName,
    sdkCreateSSMDoc,
    ec2HelloWorld,
    enterIdOrSkipEC2HelloWorld,
    sdkEC2HelloWorld,
    sdkGetCommandTime,
    pressEnter,
    createSSMOpsItem,
    pressEnter,
    sdkCreateSSMOpsItem,
    updateOpsItem,
    pressEnter,
    sdkUpdateOpsItem,
    getOpsItemStatus,
    pressEnter,
    sdkOpsItemStatus,
    resolveOpsItem,
```

```
    pressEnter,
    sdkResolveOpsItem,
    askToDeleteResources,
    confirmDeleteChoice,
    sdkDeleteResources,
    goodbye,
  ],
  { ssmClient: new SSMClient({}) },
);

/** @type {{ stepHandlerOptions: StepHandlerOptions }} */
export const main = async (stepHandlerOptions) => {
  await myScenario.run(stepHandlerOptions);
};

// Invoke main function if this file was run directly.
if (process.argv[1] === fileURLToPath(import.meta.url)) {
  const { values } = parseArgs({
    options: {
      yes: {
        type: "boolean",
        short: "y",
      },
    },
  });
  main({ confirmAll: values.yes });
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.
  - CreateDocument
  - CreateMaintenanceWindow
  - CreateOpsItem
  - DeleteMaintenanceWindow
  - ListCommandInvocations
  - SendCommand
  - UpdateOpsItem

Actions

`CreateDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDocument`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateDocumentCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM document.
 * @param {{ content: string, name: string, documentType?: DocumentType }}
 */
export const main = async ({ content, name, documentType }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const { documentDescription } = await client.send(
      new CreateDocumentCommand({
        Content: content, // The content for the new SSM document. The content must
 not exceed 64KB.
        Name: name,
        DocumentType: documentType, // Document format type can be JSON, YAML, or
 TEXT. The default format is JSON.
      }),
    );
    console.log("Document created successfully.");
    return { DocumentDescription: documentDescription };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "DocumentAlreadyExists") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide a new document name?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
```

```
};
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Create an SSM maintenance window.
 * @param {{ name: string, allowUnassociatedTargets: boolean, duration: number,
 cutoff: number, schedule: string, description?: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  name,
  allowUnassociatedTargets, // Allow the maintenance window to run on managed nodes,
 even if you haven't registered those nodes as targets.
  duration, // The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
  cutoff, // The number of hours before the end of the maintenance window that
 Amazon Web Services Systems Manager stops scheduling new tasks for execution.
  schedule, // The schedule of the maintenance window in the form of a cron or rate
 expression.
  description = undefined,
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});

  try {
    const { windowId } = await client.send(
      new CreateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
```

```
        Name: name,
        Description: description,
        AllowUnassociatedTargets: allowUnassociatedTargets, // Allow the maintenance
 window to run on managed nodes, even if you haven't registered those nodes as
 targets.
        Duration: duration, // The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
        Cutoff: cutoff, // The number of hours before the end of the maintenance
 window that Amazon Web Services Systems Manager stops scheduling new tasks for
 execution.
        Schedule: schedule, // The schedule of the maintenance window in the form of
 a cron or rate expression.
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Maintenance window created with Id: ${windowId}`);
    return { WindowId: windowId };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`CreateOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpsItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { CreateOpsItemCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
```

```
/**
 * Create an SSM OpsItem.
 * @param {{ title: string, source: string, category?: string, severity?: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  title,
  source,
  category = undefined,
  severity = undefined,
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const { opsItemArn, opsItemId } = await client.send(
      new CreateOpsItemCommand({
        Title: title,
        Source: source, // The origin of the OpsItem, such as Amazon EC2 or Systems
 Manager.
        Category: category,
        Severity: severity,
      }),
    );
    console.log(`Ops item created with id: ${opsItemId}`);
    return { OpsItemArn: opsItemArn, OpsItemId: opsItemId };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide these values?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDocument`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteDocumentCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an SSM document.
 * @param {{ documentName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ documentName }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(new DeleteDocumentCommand({ Name: documentName }));
    console.log(`Document '${documentName}' deleted.`);
    return { Deleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide this value?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Delete an SSM maintenance window.
 * @param {{ windowId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ windowId }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new DeleteMaintenanceWindowCommand({ WindowId: windowId }),
    );
    console.log(`Maintenance window '${windowId}' deleted.`);
    return { Deleted: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide this value?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DescribeOpsItems`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOpsItems`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import {
  OpsItemFilterOperator,
  OpsItemFilterKey,
  paginateDescribeOpsItems,
  SSMClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Describe SSM OpsItems.
 * @param {{ opsItemId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ opsItemId }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const describeOpsItemsPaginated = [];
    for await (const page of paginateDescribeOpsItems(
      { client },
      {
        OpsItemFilters: {
          Key: OpsItemFilterKey.OPSITEM_ID,
          Operator: OpsItemFilterOperator.EQUAL,
          Values: opsItemId,
        },
      },
    )) {
      describeOpsItemsPaginated.push(...page.OpsItemSummaries);
    }
    console.log("Here are the ops items:");
    console.log(describeOpsItemsPaginated);
    return { OpsItemSummaries: describeOpsItemsPaginated };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "MissingParameter") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide this value?`);
```

```
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListCommandInvocations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCommandInvocations`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { paginateListCommandInvocations, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * List SSM command invocations on an instance.
 * @param {{ instanceId: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ instanceId }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const listCommandInvocationsPaginated = [];
    // The paginate function is a wrapper around the base command.
    const paginator = paginateListCommandInvocations(
      { client },
      {
        InstanceId: instanceId,
      },
    );
    for await (const page of paginator) {
      listCommandInvocationsPaginated.push(...page.CommandInvocations);
    }
```

```
    console.log("Here is the list of command invocations:");
    console.log(listCommandInvocationsPaginated);
    return { CommandInvocations: listCommandInvocationsPaginated };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ValidationError") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide a valid instance ID?`);
    }
    throw caught;
  }
};
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

SendCommand

The following code example shows how to use SendCommand.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { SendCommandCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Send an SSM command to a managed node.
 * @param {{ documentName: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({ documentName }) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new SendCommandCommand({
        DocumentName: documentName,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Command sent successfully.");
```

```
    return { Success: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ValidationError") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Did you provide a valid document name?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";

/**
 * Update an SSM maintenance window.
 * @param {{ windowId: string, allowUnassociatedTargets?: boolean, duration?:
 number, enabled?: boolean, name?: string, schedule?: string }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  windowId,
  allowUnassociatedTargets = undefined, //Allow the maintenance window to run on
 managed nodes, even if you haven't registered those nodes as targets.
  duration = undefined, //The duration of the maintenance window in hours.
  enabled = undefined,
  name = undefined,
  schedule = undefined, //The schedule of the maintenance window in the form of a
 cron or rate expression.
```

```
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    const { opsItemArn, opsItemId } = await client.send(
      new UpdateMaintenanceWindowCommand({
        WindowId: windowId,
        AllowUnassociatedTargets: allowUnassociatedTargets,
        Duration: duration,
        Enabled: enabled,
        Name: name,
        Schedule: schedule,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Maintenance window updated.");
    return { OpsItemArn: opsItemArn, OpsItemId: opsItemId };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (caught instanceof Error && caught.name === "ValidationError") {
      console.warn(`${caught.message}. Are these values correct?`);
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`UpdateOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateOpsItem`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import { UpdateOpsItemCommand, SSMClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-ssm";
import { parseArgs } from "node:util";
```

```
/**
 * Update an SSM OpsItem.
 * @param {{ opsItemId: string, status?: OpsItemStatus }}
 */
export const main = async ({
  opsItemId,
  status = undefined, // The OpsItem status. Status can be Open, In Progress, or
 Resolved
}) => {
  const client = new SSMClient({});
  try {
    await client.send(
      new UpdateOpsItemCommand({
        OpsItemId: opsItemId,
        Status: status,
      }),
    );
    console.log("Ops item updated.");
    return { Success: true };
  } catch (caught) {
    if (
      caught instanceof Error &&
      caught.name === "OpsItemLimitExceededException"
    ) {
      console.warn(
        `Couldn't create ops item because you have exceeded your open OpsItem limit.
 ${caught.message}.`,
      );
    } else {
      throw caught;
    }
  }
};
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Textract.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for JavaScript to build a React application that uses Amazon Textract to extract data from a document image and display it in an interactive web page. This example runs in a web browser and requires an authenticated Amazon Cognito identity for credentials. It uses Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) for storage, and for notifications it polls an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue that is subscribed to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
```

```
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);

  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
```

```
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
```

```
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Transcribe.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
```

```
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

Delete a medical transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  MedicalTranscriptionJobName: "MEDICAL_JOB_NAME", // For example,
 'medical_transciption_demo'
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - deleted");
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`DeleteTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { DeleteTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  TranscriptionJobName: "JOB_NAME", // Required. For example, 'transciption_demo'
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new DeleteTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - deleted");
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

List medical transcription jobs.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  MedicalTranscriptionJobName: "MEDICAL_JOB_NAME", // Required
  OutputBucketName: "OUTPUT_BUCKET_NAME", // Required
  Specialty: "PRIMARYCARE", // Required. Possible values are 'PRIMARYCARE'
  Type: "JOB_TYPE", // Required. Possible values are 'CONVERSATION' and 'DICTATION'
  LanguageCode: "LANGUAGE_CODE", // For example, 'en-US'
  MediaFormat: "SOURCE_FILE_FORMAT", // For example, 'wav'
```

```
  Media: {
    MediaFileUri: "SOURCE_FILE_LOCATION",
    // The S3 object location of the input media file. The URI must be in the same
 region
    // as the API endpoint that you are calling.For example,
    // "https://transcribe-demo.s3-REGION.amazonaws.com/hello_world.wav"
  },
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - put", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListMedicalTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`ListTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List transcription jobs.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
```

```
import { ListTranscriptionJobsCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  JobNameContains: "KEYWORD", // Not required. Returns only transcription
  // job names containing this string
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new ListTranscriptionJobsCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success", data.TranscriptionJobSummaries);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

StartMedicalTranscriptionJob

The following code example shows how to use `StartMedicalTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

Start a medical transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  MedicalTranscriptionJobName: "MEDICAL_JOB_NAME", // Required
  OutputBucketName: "OUTPUT_BUCKET_NAME", // Required
  Specialty: "PRIMARYCARE", // Required. Possible values are 'PRIMARYCARE'
  Type: "JOB_TYPE", // Required. Possible values are 'CONVERSATION' and 'DICTATION'
  LanguageCode: "LANGUAGE_CODE", // For example, 'en-US'
  MediaFormat: "SOURCE_FILE_FORMAT", // For example, 'wav'
  Media: {
    MediaFileUri: "SOURCE_FILE_LOCATION",
    // The S3 object location of the input media file. The URI must be in the same
 region
    // as the API endpoint that you are calling.For example,
    // "https://transcribe-demo.s3-REGION.amazonaws.com/hello_world.wav"
  },
};

export const run = async () => {
```

```
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new StartMedicalTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - put", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see StartMedicalTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

`StartTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start a transcription job.

```
// Import the required AWS SDK clients and commands for Node.js
import { StartTranscriptionJobCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
import { transcribeClient } from "./libs/transcribeClient.js";

// Set the parameters
export const params = {
  TranscriptionJobName: "JOB_NAME",
  LanguageCode: "LANGUAGE_CODE", // For example, 'en-US'
  MediaFormat: "SOURCE_FILE_FORMAT", // For example, 'wav'
  Media: {
    MediaFileUri: "SOURCE_LOCATION",
```

```
    // For example, "https://transcribe-demo.s3-REGION.amazonaws.com/
hello_world.wav"
  },
  OutputBucketName: "OUTPUT_BUCKET_NAME",
};

export const run = async () => {
  try {
    const data = await transcribeClient.send(
      new StartTranscriptionJobCommand(params),
    );
    console.log("Success - put", data);
    return data; // For unit tests.
  } catch (err) {
    console.log("Error", err);
  }
};
run();
```

Create the client.

```
import { TranscribeClient } from "@aws-sdk/client-transcribe";
// Set the AWS Region.
const REGION = "REGION"; //e.g. "us-east-1"
// Create an Amazon Transcribe service client object.
const transcribeClient = new TranscribeClient({ region: REGION });
export { transcribeClient };
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for JavaScript Developer Guide.
- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for JavaScript API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for JavaScript (v3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for JavaScript (v3) with Amazon Translate.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Build an Amazon Transcribe streaming app

The following code example shows how to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use Amazon Transcribe to build an app that records, transcribes, and translates live audio in real-time, and emails the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SES
- Amazon Transcribe
- Amazon Translate

Building an Amazon Lex chatbot

The following code example shows how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example Building an Amazon Lex chatbot in the AWS SDK for JavaScript developer guide.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for JavaScript (v3)

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub. The following excerpts show how the AWS SDK for JavaScript is used inside of Lambda functions.

```
import {
  ComprehendClient,
  DetectDominantLanguageCommand,
  DetectSentimentCommand,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-comprehend";

/**
 * Determine the language and sentiment of the extracted text.
 *
 * @param {{ source_text: string}} extractTextOutput
 */
export const handler = async (extractTextOutput) => {
  const comprehendClient = new ComprehendClient({});

  const detectDominantLanguageCommand = new DetectDominantLanguageCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
  });

  // The source language is required for sentiment analysis and
  // translation in the next step.
  const { Languages } = await comprehendClient.send(
    detectDominantLanguageCommand,
  );

  const languageCode = Languages[0].LanguageCode;

  const detectSentimentCommand = new DetectSentimentCommand({
    Text: extractTextOutput.source_text,
    LanguageCode: languageCode,
  });

  const { Sentiment } = await comprehendClient.send(detectSentimentCommand);
```

```
  return {
    sentiment: Sentiment,
    language_code: languageCode,
  };
};
```

```
import {
  DetectDocumentTextCommand,
  TextractClient,
} from "@aws-sdk/client-textract";

/**
 * Fetch the S3 object from the event and analyze it using Amazon Textract.
 *
 * @param {import("@types/aws-lambda").EventBridgeEvent<"Object Created">}
 eventBridgeS3Event
 */
export const handler = async (eventBridgeS3Event) => {
  const textractClient = new TextractClient();

  const detectDocumentTextCommand = new DetectDocumentTextCommand({
    Document: {
      S3Object: {
        Bucket: eventBridgeS3Event.bucket,
        Name: eventBridgeS3Event.object,
      },
    },
  });

  // Textract returns a list of blocks. A block can be a line, a page, word, etc.
  // Each block also contains geometry of the detected text.
  // For more information on the Block type, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
textract/latest/dg/API_Block.html.
  const { Blocks } = await textractClient.send(detectDocumentTextCommand);

  // For the purpose of this example, we are only interested in words.
  const extractedWords = Blocks.filter((b) => b.BlockType === "WORD").map(
    (b) => b.Text,
  );

  return extractedWords.join(" ");
};
```

```
import { PollyClient, SynthesizeSpeechCommand } from "@aws-sdk/client-polly";
import { S3Client } from "@aws-sdk/client-s3";
import { Upload } from "@aws-sdk/lib-storage";

/**
 * Synthesize an audio file from text.
 *
 * @param {{ bucket: string, translated_text: string, object: string}}
 sourceDestinationConfig
 */
export const handler = async (sourceDestinationConfig) => {
  const pollyClient = new PollyClient({});

  const synthesizeSpeechCommand = new SynthesizeSpeechCommand({
    Engine: "neural",
    Text: sourceDestinationConfig.translated_text,
    VoiceId: "Ruth",
    OutputFormat: "mp3",
  });

  const { AudioStream } = await pollyClient.send(synthesizeSpeechCommand);

  const audioKey = `${sourceDestinationConfig.object}.mp3`;

  // Store the audio file in S3.
  const s3Client = new S3Client();
  const upload = new Upload({
    client: s3Client,
    params: {
      Bucket: sourceDestinationConfig.bucket,
      Key: audioKey,
      Body: AudioStream,
      ContentType: "audio/mp3",
    },
  });

  await upload.done();
  return audioKey;
};
```

```
import {
  TranslateClient,
  TranslateTextCommand,
```

```
} from "@aws-sdk/client-translate";

/**
 * Translate the extracted text to English.
 *
 * @param {{ extracted_text: string, source_language_code: string}}
 textAndSourceLanguage
 */
export const handler = async (textAndSourceLanguage) => {
  const translateClient = new TranslateClient({});

  const translateCommand = new TranslateTextCommand({
    SourceLanguageCode: textAndSourceLanguage.source_language_code,
    TargetLanguageCode: "en",
    Text: textAndSourceLanguage.extracted_text,
  });

  const { TranslatedText } = await translateClient.send(translateCommand);

  return { translated_text: TranslatedText };
};
```

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Code examples for SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide** – More about using Java with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- ACM examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- API Gateway examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Application Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Application Recovery Controller examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Aurora examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS Batch examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- CloudFront examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- CloudWatch Events examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Firehose examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Java 2.x

- Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon ECS examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- MediaStore examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS Entity Resolution examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- OpenSearch Service examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- EventBridge examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Forecast examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- HealthImaging examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- IAM examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS IoT examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS IoT data examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS IoT FleetWise examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS IoT SiteWise examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Kinesis examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS KMS examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Lambda examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Lex examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Location examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Location Service Places examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS Marketplace Catalog API examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS Marketplace Agreement API examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- MediaConvert examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Migration Hub examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Neptune examples using SDK for Java 2.x

- Partner Central examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Personalize examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Personalize Events examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Personalize Runtime examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon S3 Control examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- S3 Directory Buckets examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- S3 Glacier examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Step Functions examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- AWS STS examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Support examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Systems Manager examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Transcribe Streaming examples using SDK for Java 2.x
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for Java 2.x

ACM examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with ACM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AddTagsToCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class AddTagsToCertificate {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        addTags(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Adds tags to a certificate in AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to add tags
 to
     */
    public static void addTags(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        List<Tag> expectedTags =
 List.of(Tag.builder().key("key").value("value").build());
        AddTagsToCertificateRequest addTagsToCertificateRequest =
 AddTagsToCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .tags(expectedTags)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.addTagsToCertificate(addTagsToCertificateRequest);
            System.out.println("Successfully added tags to a certificate");
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        deleteCertificate(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an SSL/TLS certificate from the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
```

```
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to be
 deleted
     */
    public static void deleteCertificate( String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        DeleteCertificateRequest request = DeleteCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.deleteCertificate(request);
            System.out.println("The certificate was deleted");

        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
```

```
 */

public class DescribeCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        describeCertificate(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Describes the details of an SSL/TLS certificate.
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to describe
     * @throws AcmException if an error occurs while describing the certificate
     */
    public static void describeCertificate(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        DescribeCertificateRequest req = DescribeCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        try {
            DescribeCertificateResponse response =
 acmClient.describeCertificate(req);

            // Print the certificate details.
            System.out.println("Certificate ARN: " +
 response.certificate().certificateArn());
            System.out.println("Domain Name: " +
 response.certificate().domainName());
            System.out.println("Issued By: " + response.certificate().issuer());
            System.out.println("Issued On: " + response.certificate().issuedAt());
```

```
            System.out.println("Status: " + response.certificate().status());
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ExportCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `ExportCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ExportCertificate {

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        exportCert(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Exports an SSL/TLS certificate and its associated private key and certificate
chain from AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param certArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate that you
want to export.
     * @throws IOException If an I/O error occurs while reading the private key
passphrase file or exporting the certificate.
     */
    public static void exportCert(String certArn) throws IOException {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();

        // Initialize a file descriptor for the passphrase file.
        RandomAccessFile filePassphrase = null;
        ByteBuffer bufPassphrase = null;

        // Create a file stream for reading the private key passphrase.
        try {
            filePassphrase = new RandomAccessFile("C:\\AWS\\password.txt", "r");
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException | SecurityException |
FileNotFoundException ex) {
            throw ex;
        }

        // Create a channel to map the file.
        FileChannel channelPassphrase = filePassphrase.getChannel();

        // Map the file to the buffer.
        try {
            bufPassphrase = channelPassphrase.map(FileChannel.MapMode.READ_ONLY, 0,
channelPassphrase.size());
            channelPassphrase.close();
            filePassphrase.close();
        } catch (IOException ex) {
            throw ex;
        }
```

```
        // Create a request object.
        ExportCertificateRequest req = ExportCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .passphrase(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bufPassphrase))
            .build();

        // Export the certificate.
        ExportCertificateResponse result = null;
        try {
            result = acmClient.exportCertificate(req);
        } catch (InvalidArnException | InvalidTagException |
 ResourceNotFoundException ex) {
            throw ex;
        }

        // Clear the buffer.
        bufPassphrase.clear();

        // Display the certificate and certificate chain.
        String certificate = result.certificate();
        System.out.println(certificate);

        String certificateChain = result.certificateChain();
        System.out.println(certificateChain);

        // This example retrieves but does not display the private key.
        String privateKey = result.privateKey();
        System.out.println("The example is complete");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ExportCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ImportCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `ImportCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ImportCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <bucketName> <certificateKey> <privateKeyKey>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket containing the certificate
 and private key.
                certificateKey - The object key for the SSL/TLS certificate file in
 S3.
                privateKeyKey - The object key for the private key file in S3.
            """;

        //if (args.length != 3) {
        //    System.out.println(usage);
        //    return;
       // }

        String bucketName = "certbucket100" ; //args[0];
        String certificateKey = "certificate.pem" ; // args[1];
        String privateKeyKey = "private_key.pem" ; //args[2];

        String certificateArn = importCertificate(bucketName, certificateKey,
 privateKeyKey);
        System.out.println("Certificate imported with ARN: " + certificateArn);
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Imports an SSL/TLS certificate and private key from S3 into AWS Certificate
Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param bucketName     The name of the S3 bucket.
     * @param certificateKey The key for the SSL/TLS certificate file in S3.
     * @param privateKeyKey  The key for the private key file in S3.
     * @return The ARN of the imported certificate.
     */
    public static String importCertificate(String bucketName, String certificateKey,
String privateKeyKey) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.create();

        try {
            byte[] certificateBytes = downloadFileFromS3(s3Client, bucketName,
certificateKey);
            byte[] privateKeyBytes = downloadFileFromS3(s3Client, bucketName,
privateKeyKey);

            ImportCertificateRequest request = ImportCertificateRequest.builder()

.certificate(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(certificateBytes)))

.privateKey(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(privateKeyBytes)))
                    .build();

            ImportCertificateResponse response =
acmClient.importCertificate(request);
            return response.certificateArn();

        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.err.println("Error downloading certificate or private key from
S3: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println("S3 error: " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }

    /**
     * Downloads a file from Amazon S3 and returns its contents as a byte array.
```

```
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket.
     * @param objectKey  The key of the object in S3.
     * @return The file contents as a byte array.
     * @throws IOException If an I/O error occurs.
     */
    private static byte[] downloadFileFromS3(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName,
 String objectKey) throws IOException {
        GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

        try (ResponseInputStream<GetObjectResponse> s3Object =
 s3Client.getObject(getObjectRequest);
             ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
 ByteArrayOutputStream()) {
            IoUtils.copy(s3Object, byteArrayOutputStream);
            return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListCerts {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listCertificates();
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the certificates managed by AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) that have
 a status of "ISSUED".
     */
    public static void listCertificates() {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        try {
            ListCertificatesRequest listRequest = ListCertificatesRequest.builder()
                .certificateStatuses(CertificateStatus.ISSUED)
                .maxItems(100)
                .build();
            ListCertificatesIterable listResponse =
 acmClient.listCertificatesPaginator(listRequest);

            // Print the certificate details using streams
            listResponse.certificateSummaryList().stream()
                .forEach(certificate -> {
                    System.out.println("Certificate ARN: " +
 certificate.certificateArn());
                    System.out.println("Certificate Domain Name: " +
 certificate.domainName());
                    System.out.println("Certificate Status: " +
 certificate.statusAsString());
                    System.out.println("---");
                });

        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ListTagsForCertificate

The following code example shows how to use ListTagsForCertificate.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListCertTags {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        listCertTags(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Lists the tags associated with an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
```

```
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the ACM certificate
     */
    public static void listCertTags(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();

        ListTagsForCertificateRequest request =
 ListTagsForCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        ListTagsForCertificateResponse response =
 acmClient.listTagsForCertificate(request);
        List<Tag> tagList = response.tags();
        tagList.forEach(tag -> {
            System.out.println("Key: " + tag.key());
            System.out.println("Value: " + tag.value());
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RemoveTagsFromCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTagsFromCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class RemoveTagsFromCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String certArn = args[0];
        removeTags(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Removes tags from an AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) certificate.
     *
     * @param certArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate from which
 to remove tags
     */
    public static void removeTags(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        List<Tag> expectedTags =
 List.of(Tag.builder().key("key").value("value").build());
        RemoveTagsFromCertificateRequest req =
 RemoveTagsFromCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .tags(expectedTags)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.removeTagsFromCertificate(req);
            System.out.println("Successfully removed tags from the certificate");
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RenewCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RenewCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class RenewCert {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <certArn>

            Where:
                certArn - the ARN of the certificate.
            """;
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }
```

```
        String certArn = args[0];
        renewCertificate(certArn);
    }

    /**
     * Renews an existing SSL/TLS certificate in AWS Certificate Manager (ACM).
     *
     * @param certArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate to be
renewed.
     * @throws AcmException If there is an error renewing the certificate.
     */
    public static void renewCertificate(String certArn) {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();

        RenewCertificateRequest certificateRequest =
RenewCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateArn(certArn)
            .build();

        try {
            acmClient.renewCertificate(certificateRequest);
            System.out.println("The certificate was renewed");
        } catch(AcmException e){
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RenewCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RequestCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RequestCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class RequestCert {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        requestCertificate();
    }

    /**
     * Requests a certificate from the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) service.
     */
    public static void requestCertificate() {
        AcmClient acmClient = AcmClient.create();
        ArrayList<String> san = new ArrayList<>();
        san.add("www.example.com");

        RequestCertificateRequest req = RequestCertificateRequest.builder()
            .domainName("example.com")
            .idempotencyToken("1Aq25pTy")
            .subjectAlternativeNames(san)
            .build();

        try {
            RequestCertificateResponse response = acmClient.requestCertificate(req);
            System.out.println("Cert ARN IS " + response.certificateArn());
        } catch (AcmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

API Gateway examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with API Gateway.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- AWS community contributions

Actions

`CreateDeployment`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDeployment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createNewDeployment(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String
restApiId, String stageName) {
```

```
        try {
            CreateDeploymentRequest request = CreateDeploymentRequest.builder()
                    .restApiId(restApiId)
                    .description("Created using the AWS API Gateway Java API")
                    .stageName(stageName)
                    .build();

            CreateDeploymentResponse response =
apiGateway.createDeployment(request);
            System.out.println("The id of the deployment is " + response.id());
            return response.id();

        } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateRestApi`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRestApi`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createAPI(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String restApiId,
String restApiName) {

        try {
            CreateRestApiRequest request = CreateRestApiRequest.builder()
                    .cloneFrom(restApiId)
```

```
                    .description("Created using the Gateway Java API")
                    .name(restApiName)
                    .build();

            CreateRestApiResponse response = apiGateway.createRestApi(request);
            System.out.println("The id of the new api is " + response.id());
            return response.id();

        } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRestApi in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDeployment`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDeployment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteSpecificDeployment(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String
restApiId, String deploymentId) {

        try {
            DeleteDeploymentRequest request = DeleteDeploymentRequest.builder()
                    .restApiId(restApiId)
                    .deploymentId(deploymentId)
                    .build();

            apiGateway.deleteDeployment(request);
            System.out.println("Deployment was deleted");
```

```
        } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeployment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteRestApi`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRestApi`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteAPI(ApiGatewayClient apiGateway, String restApiId) {

        try {
            DeleteRestApiRequest request = DeleteRestApiRequest.builder()
                    .restApiId(restApiId)
                    .build();

            apiGateway.deleteRestApi(request);
            System.out.println("The API was successfully deleted");

        } catch (ApiGatewayException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRestApi in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Java SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Application Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Application Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteScalingPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteScalingPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.ApplicationAutoScalingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ApplicationAutoScalingExceptio
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DeleteScalingPolicyRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DeregisterScalableTargetReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsRespons
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesRespons
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ScalableDimension;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ServiceNamespace;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class DisableDynamoDBAutoscaling {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
               <tableId> <policyName>\s

            Where:
               tableId - The table Id value (for example, table/Music).\s
               policyName - The name of the policy (for example, $Music5-scaling-
policy).

            """;
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        ApplicationAutoScalingClient appAutoScalingClient =
 ApplicationAutoScalingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        ServiceNamespace ns = ServiceNamespace.DYNAMODB;
        ScalableDimension tableWCUs =
 ScalableDimension.DYNAMODB_TABLE_WRITE_CAPACITY_UNITS;
        String tableId = args[0];
        String policyName = args[1];

        deletePolicy(appAutoScalingClient, policyName, tableWCUs, ns, tableId);
        verifyScalingPolicies(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
        deregisterScalableTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
        verifyTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
    }
```

```
   public static void deletePolicy(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String policyName, ScalableDimension tableWCUs,
ServiceNamespace ns, String tableId) {
       try {
           DeleteScalingPolicyRequest delSPRequest =
DeleteScalingPolicyRequest.builder()
               .policyName(policyName)
               .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
               .serviceNamespace(ns)
               .resourceId(tableId)
               .build();

           appAutoScalingClient.deleteScalingPolicy(delSPRequest);
           System.out.println(policyName +" was deleted successfully.");

       } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       }
   }

   // Verify that the scaling policy was deleted
   public static void verifyScalingPolicies(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs) {
       DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest dscRequest =
DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest.builder()
           .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
           .serviceNamespace(ns)
           .resourceId(tableId)
           .build();

       DescribeScalingPoliciesResponse response =
appAutoScalingClient.describeScalingPolicies(dscRequest);
       System.out.println("DescribeScalableTargets result: ");
       System.out.println(response);
   }

   public static void deregisterScalableTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs) {
       try {
           DeregisterScalableTargetRequest targetRequest =
DeregisterScalableTargetRequest.builder()
```

```
                .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
                .serviceNamespace(ns)
                .resourceId(tableId)
                .build();

            appAutoScalingClient.deregisterScalableTarget(targetRequest);
            System.out.println("The scalable target was deregistered.");

        } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void verifyTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
 appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
 tableWCUs) {
        DescribeScalableTargetsRequest dscRequest =
 DescribeScalableTargetsRequest.builder()
            .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
            .serviceNamespace(ns)
            .resourceIds(tableId)
            .build();

        DescribeScalableTargetsResponse response =
 appAutoScalingClient.describeScalableTargets(dscRequest);
        System.out.println("DescribeScalableTargets result: ");
        System.out.println(response);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteScalingPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RegisterScalableTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterScalableTarget`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.ApplicationAutoScalingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ApplicationAutoScalingExceptio
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalableTargetsRespons
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.DescribeScalingPoliciesRespons
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.PolicyType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.PredefinedMetricSpecification;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.PutScalingPolicyRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.RegisterScalableTargetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ScalingPolicy;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ServiceNamespace;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.ScalableDimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.MetricType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.applicationautoscaling.model.TargetTrackingScalingPolicyCon
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class EnableDynamoDBAutoscaling {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
               <tableId> <roleARN> <policyName>\s

            Where:
               tableId - The table Id value (for example, table/Music).
               roleARN - The ARN of the role that has ApplicationAutoScaling
 permissions.
               policyName - The name of the policy to create.

            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("This example registers an Amazon DynamoDB table, which
 is the resource to scale.");
        String tableId = args[0];
        String roleARN = args[1];
        String policyName = args[2];
        ServiceNamespace ns = ServiceNamespace.DYNAMODB;
        ScalableDimension tableWCUs =
 ScalableDimension.DYNAMODB_TABLE_WRITE_CAPACITY_UNITS;
        ApplicationAutoScalingClient appAutoScalingClient =
 ApplicationAutoScalingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        registerScalableTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, roleARN, ns,
 tableWCUs);
        verifyTarget(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs);
        configureScalingPolicy(appAutoScalingClient, tableId, ns, tableWCUs,
 policyName);
    }
```

```
   public static void registerScalableTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, String roleARN, ServiceNamespace ns,
ScalableDimension tableWCUs) {
       try {
           RegisterScalableTargetRequest targetRequest =
RegisterScalableTargetRequest.builder()
               .serviceNamespace(ns)
               .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
               .resourceId(tableId)
               .roleARN(roleARN)
               .minCapacity(5)
               .maxCapacity(10)
               .build();

           appAutoScalingClient.registerScalableTarget(targetRequest);
           System.out.println("You have registered " + tableId);

       } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       }
   }

   // Verify that the target was created.
   public static void verifyTarget(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs) {
       DescribeScalableTargetsRequest dscRequest =
DescribeScalableTargetsRequest.builder()
           .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
           .serviceNamespace(ns)
           .resourceIds(tableId)
           .build();

       DescribeScalableTargetsResponse response =
appAutoScalingClient.describeScalableTargets(dscRequest);
       System.out.println("DescribeScalableTargets result: ");
       System.out.println(response);
   }

   // Configure a scaling policy.
   public static void configureScalingPolicy(ApplicationAutoScalingClient
appAutoScalingClient, String tableId, ServiceNamespace ns, ScalableDimension
tableWCUs, String policyName) {
       // Check if the policy exists before creating a new one.
```

```
        DescribeScalingPoliciesResponse describeScalingPoliciesResponse =
appAutoScalingClient.describeScalingPolicies(DescribeScalingPoliciesRequest.builder()
            .serviceNamespace(ns)
            .resourceId(tableId)
            .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
            .build());

        if (!describeScalingPoliciesResponse.scalingPolicies().isEmpty()) {
            // If policies exist, consider updating an existing policy instead of
creating a new one.
            System.out.println("Policy already exists. Consider updating it
instead.");
            List<ScalingPolicy> polList =
describeScalingPoliciesResponse.scalingPolicies();
            for (ScalingPolicy pol : polList) {
                System.out.println("Policy name:" +pol.policyName());
            }
        } else {
            // If no policies exist, proceed with creating a new policy.
            PredefinedMetricSpecification specification =
PredefinedMetricSpecification.builder()

.predefinedMetricType(MetricType.DYNAMO_DB_WRITE_CAPACITY_UTILIZATION)
                .build();

            TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration policyConfiguration =
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration.builder()
                .predefinedMetricSpecification(specification)
                .targetValue(50.0)
                .scaleInCooldown(60)
                .scaleOutCooldown(60)
                .build();

            PutScalingPolicyRequest putScalingPolicyRequest =
PutScalingPolicyRequest.builder()
                .targetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration(policyConfiguration)
                .serviceNamespace(ns)
                .scalableDimension(tableWCUs)
                .resourceId(tableId)
                .policyName(policyName)
                .policyType(PolicyType.TARGET_TRACKING_SCALING)
                .build();

            try {
```

```
                appAutoScalingClient.putScalingPolicy(putScalingPolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("You have successfully created a scaling policy
 for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target");
            } catch (ApplicationAutoScalingException e) {
                System.err.println("Error: " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RegisterScalableTarget in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Application Recovery Controller examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Application Recovery Controller.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetRoutingControlState`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRoutingControlState`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static GetRoutingControlStateResponse
 getRoutingControlState(List<ClusterEndpoint> clusterEndpoints,
            String routingControlArn) {
        // As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to
 get or
        // set routing control states.
        // For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/dg/route53-arc-best-
practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
        Collections.shuffle(clusterEndpoints);
        for (ClusterEndpoint clusterEndpoint : clusterEndpoints) {
            try {
                System.out.println(clusterEndpoint);
                Route53RecoveryClusterClient client =
 Route53RecoveryClusterClient.builder()
                        .endpointOverride(URI.create(clusterEndpoint.endpoint()))
                        .region(Region.of(clusterEndpoint.region())).build();
                return client.getRoutingControlState(
                        GetRoutingControlStateRequest.builder()
                                .routingControlArn(routingControlArn).build());
            } catch (Exception exception) {
                System.out.println(exception);
            }
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateRoutingControlState`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateRoutingControlState`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static UpdateRoutingControlStateResponse
 updateRoutingControlState(List<ClusterEndpoint> clusterEndpoints,
            String routingControlArn,
            String routingControlState) {
        // As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to
 get or
        // set routing control states.
        // For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/dg/route53-arc-best-
practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
        Collections.shuffle(clusterEndpoints);
        for (ClusterEndpoint clusterEndpoint : clusterEndpoints) {
            try {
                System.out.println(clusterEndpoint);
                Route53RecoveryClusterClient client =
 Route53RecoveryClusterClient.builder()
                        .endpointOverride(URI.create(clusterEndpoint.endpoint()))
                        .region(Region.of(clusterEndpoint.region()))
                        .build();
                return client.updateRoutingControlState(
                        UpdateRoutingControlStateRequest.builder()

 .routingControlArn(routingControlArn).routingControlState(routingControlState).build());
            } catch (Exception exception) {
                System.out.println(exception);
            }
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Aurora examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.paginators.DescribeDBClustersIterable;

public class DescribeDbClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeClusters(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeClusters(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        DescribeDBClustersIterable clustersIterable =
 rdsClient.describeDBClustersPaginator();
        clustersIterable.stream()
                .flatMap(r -> r.dbClusters().stream())
                .forEach(cluster -> System.out
                        .println("Database name: " + cluster.databaseName() + " Arn
 = " + cluster.dbClusterArn()));
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
```

```
 *
 * This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 * database credentials. If you do not create a
 * secret, this example will not work. For details, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Gets available engine families for Amazon Aurora MySQL-Compatible Edition
 * by calling the DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') method.
 * 2. Selects an engine family and creates a custom DB cluster parameter group
 * by invoking the describeDBClusterParameters method.
 * 3. Gets the parameter groups by invoking the describeDBClusterParameterGroups
 * method.
 * 4. Gets parameters in the group by invoking the describeDBClusterParameters
 * method.
 * 5. Modifies the auto_increment_offset parameter by invoking the
 * modifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest method.
 * 6. Gets and displays the updated parameters.
 * 7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions by invoking the
 * describeDbEngineVersions method.
 * 8. Creates an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySQL
 * database.
 * 9. Waits for DB instance to be ready.
 * 10. Gets a list of instance classes available for the selected engine.
 * 11. Creates a database instance in the cluster.
 * 12. Waits for DB instance to be ready.
 * 13. Creates a snapshot.
 * 14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready.
 * 15. Deletes the DB cluster.
 * 16. Deletes the DB cluster group.
 */
public class AuroraScenario {
    public static long sleepTime = 20;
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <dbClusterGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily>
 <dbInstanceClusterIdentifier> <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbName>
 <dbSnapshotIdentifier><secretName>"
```

```
                +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    dbClusterGroupName - The name of the DB cluster parameter
group. \n" +
                "    dbParameterGroupFamily - The DB cluster parameter group family
name (for example, aurora-mysql5.7). \n"
                +
                "    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier - The instance cluster identifier
value.\n" +
                "    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\n" +
                "    dbName - The database name.\n" +
                "    dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.\n" +
                "    secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that
contains the database credentials\"\n";
        ;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbClusterGroupName = args[0];
        String dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1];
        String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier = args[2];
        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[3];
        String dbName = args[4];
        String dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[5];
        String secretName = args[6];

        // Retrieve the database credentials using AWS Secrets Manager.
        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
User.class);
        String username = user.getUsername();
        String userPassword = user.getPassword();

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Aurora example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines");
        describeDBEngines(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a custom parameter group");
        createDBClusterParameterGroup(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName,
dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Get the parameter group");
        describeDbClusterParameterGroups(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the parameters in the group");
        describeDbClusterParameters(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName, 0);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter");
        modifyDBClusterParas(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Display the updated parameter value");
        describeDbClusterParameters(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName, -1);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions");
        getAllowedEngines(rdsClient, dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Create an Aurora DB cluster database");
        String arnClusterVal = createDBCluster(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName,
dbName, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
                username, userPassword);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the cluster is " + arnClusterVal);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Wait for DB instance to be ready");
        waitForInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get a list of instance classes available for the
selected engine");
        String instanceClass = getListInstanceClasses(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Create a database instance in the cluster.");
        String clusterDBARN = createDBInstanceCluster(rdsClient,
dbInstanceIdentifier, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
                instanceClass);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the database is " + clusterDBARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Wait for DB instance to be ready");
        waitDBInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Create a snapshot");
        createDBClusterSnapshot(rdsClient, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
dbSnapshotIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready");
        waitForSnapshotReady(rdsClient, dbSnapshotIdentifier,
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Delete the DB instance");
        deleteDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("15. Delete the DB cluster");
```

```
        deleteCluster(rdsClient, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("16. Delete the DB cluster group");
        deleteDBClusterGroup(rdsClient, dbClusterGroupName, clusterDBARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Scenario has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
                .region(region)

.credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
    }

    private static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                .secretId(secretName)
                .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }

    public static void deleteDBClusterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName, String clusterDBARN)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean isDataDel = false;
            boolean didFind;
            String instanceARN;

            // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
            while (!isDataDel) {
```

```
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                int listSize = instanceList.size();
                didFind = false;
                int index = 1;
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                        System.out.println(clusterDBARN + " still exists");
                        didFind = true;
                    }
                    if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true;
                    }
                    Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    index++;
                }
            }

            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest clusterParameterGroupRequest =
DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest
                    .builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                    .build();

            rdsClient.deleteDBClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest);
            System.out.println(dbClusterGroupName + " was deleted.");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbClusterRequest deleteDbClusterRequest =
DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
```

```
                    .build();

            rdsClient.deleteDBCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest);
            System.out.println(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier + " was deleted!");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.println("The status of the database is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void waitForSnapshotReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbSnapshotIdentifier,
            String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
        try {
            boolean snapshotReady = false;
            String snapshotReadyStr;
            System.out.println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.");

            DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest snapshotsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
```

```
                    .build();

            while (!snapshotReady) {
                DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest);
                List<DBClusterSnapshot> snapshotList =
response.dbClusterSnapshots();
                for (DBClusterSnapshot snapshot : snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status();
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.println(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 5000);
                    }
                }
            }

            System.out.println("The Snapshot is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createDBClusterSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
            String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
            CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
            System.out.println("The Snapshot ARN is " +
response.dbClusterSnapshot().dbClusterSnapshotArn());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    public static void waitDBInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            String endpoint = "";
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances(instanceRequest);
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        endpoint = instance.endpoint().address();
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database instance is available! The connection
endpoint is " + endpoint);

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createDBInstanceCluster(RdsClient rdsClient,
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
            String instanceClass) {
        try {
```

```
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .dbInstanceClass(instanceClass)
                    .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());
            return response.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String getListInstanceClasses(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest optionsRequest =
DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest
                    .builder()
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(optionsRequest);
            List<OrderableDBInstanceOption> instanceOptions =
response.orderableDBInstanceOptions();
            String instanceClass = "";
            for (OrderableDBInstanceOption instanceOption : instanceOptions) {
                instanceClass = instanceOption.dbInstanceClass();
                System.out.println("The instance class is " +
instanceOption.dbInstanceClass());
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
instanceOption.engineVersion());
            }
            return instanceClass;
```

```
        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbClustersRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                    .build();

            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbClustersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusters(instanceRequest);
                List<DBCluster> clusterList = response.dbClusters();
                for (DBCluster cluster : clusterList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = cluster.status();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database cluster is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createDBCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily, String dbName,
            String dbClusterIdentifier, String userName, String password) {
```

```
        try {
            CreateDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
                    .databaseName(dbName)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .masterUsername(userName)
                    .masterUserPassword(password)
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBCluster(clusterRequest);
            return response.dbCluster().dbClusterArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
    public static void getAllowedEngines(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest versionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(versionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> dbEngines = response.dbEngineVersions();
            for (DBEngineVersion dbEngine : dbEngines) {
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
dbEngine.engineVersion());
                System.out.println("The engine description is " +
dbEngine.dbEngineDescription());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    // Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
    public static void modifyDBClusterParas(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dClusterGroupName) {
        try {
            Parameter parameter1 = Parameter.builder()
                    .parameterName("auto_increment_offset")
                    .applyMethod("immediate")
                    .parameterValue("5")
                    .build();

            List<Parameter> paraList = new ArrayList<>();
            paraList.add(parameter1);
            ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dClusterGroupName)
                    .parameters(paraList)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.modifyDBClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println(
                    "The parameter group " + response.dbClusterParameterGroupName()
+ " was successfully modified");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDbClusterParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbCLusterGroupName, int flag) {
        try {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
            if (flag == 0) {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                        .build();
            } else {
```

```
                dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                        .source("user")
                        .build();
            }

            DescribeDbClusterParametersResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeDBClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDbClusterParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();
```

```
            List<DBClusterParameterGroup> groups =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
                    .dbClusterParameterGroups();
            for (DBClusterParameterGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createDBClusterParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName,
            String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateDbClusterParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbClusterParameterGroup().dbClusterParameterGroupName());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .defaultOnly(true)
```

```
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
 the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters

- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createDBCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily, String dbName,
           String dbClusterIdentifier, String userName, String password) {
       try {
           CreateDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
                   .databaseName(dbName)
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                   .engine("aurora-mysql")
                   .masterUsername(userName)
                   .masterUserPassword(password)
                   .build();

           CreateDbClusterResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBCluster(clusterRequest);
           return response.dbCluster().dbClusterArn();

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
```

```
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createDBClusterParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName,
           String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
       try {
           CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                   .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                   .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                   .build();

           CreateDbClusterParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest);
           System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbClusterParameterGroup().dbClusterParameterGroupName());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createDBClusterSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
           String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
       try {
           CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                   .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                   .build();

           CreateDbClusterSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
           System.out.println("The Snapshot ARN is " +
response.dbClusterSnapshot().dbClusterSnapshotArn());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createDBInstanceCluster(RdsClient rdsClient,
           String dbInstanceIdentifier,
           String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier,
           String instanceClass) {
       try {
           CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                   .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                   .engine("aurora-mysql")
                   .dbInstanceClass(instanceClass)
                   .build();

           CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
           System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());
           return response.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn();

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteCluster(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
       try {
           DeleteDbClusterRequest deleteDbClusterRequest =
DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                   .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                   .build();

           rdsClient.deleteDBCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest);
           System.out.println(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier + " was deleted!");

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteDBClusterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName, String clusterDBARN)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean isDataDel = false;
           boolean didFind;
           String instanceARN;

           // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
           while (!isDataDel) {
               DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
               List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
               int listSize = instanceList.size();
               didFind = false;
               int index = 1;
               for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                   instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                   if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                       System.out.println(clusterDBARN + " still exists");
                       didFind = true;
                   }
                   if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                       // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                       isDataDel = true;
                   }
                   Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                   index++;
               }
           }

           DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest clusterParameterGroupRequest =
DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest
                   .builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                   .build();

           rdsClient.deleteDBClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest);
           System.out.println(dbClusterGroupName + " was deleted.");

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
       try {
           DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                   .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                   .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                   .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                   .build();

           DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
           System.out.println("The status of the database is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                   .maxRecords(20)
                   .build();

           List<DBClusterParameterGroup> groups =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
                   .dbClusterParameterGroups();
           for (DBClusterParameterGroup group : groups) {
               System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupName());
               System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn());
           }

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbCLusterGroupName, int flag) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
           if (flag == 0) {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                       .build();
           } else {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                       .source("user")
                       .build();
           }

           DescribeDbClusterParametersResponse response = rdsClient
                   .describeDBClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
           List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
           String paraName;
           for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
               // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
               // auto_increment_increment.
               paraName = para.parameterName();
               if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                       || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0)) {
```

```
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void waitForSnapshotReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbSnapshotIdentifier,
            String dbInstanceClusterIdentifier) {
        try {
            boolean snapshotReady = false;
            String snapshotReadyStr;
            System.out.println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.");
```

```
            DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest snapshotsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
                    .build();

            while (!snapshotReady) {
                DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest);
                List<DBClusterSnapshot> snapshotList =
response.dbClusterSnapshots();
                for (DBClusterSnapshot snapshot : snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status();
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.println(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 5000);
                    }
                }
            }

            System.out.println("The Snapshot is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbCLusterGroupName, int flag) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
           if (flag == 0) {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                       .build();
           } else {
               dbParameterGroupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest.builder()
                       .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbCLusterGroupName)
                       .source("user")
                       .build();
           }

           DescribeDbClusterParametersResponse response = rdsClient
                   .describeDBClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
           List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
           String paraName;
           for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
               // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
               // auto_increment_increment.
               paraName = para.parameterName();
               if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                       || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0)) {
                   System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                   System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                   System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                   System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
```

```
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
```

```
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbClustersRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                    .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterIdentifier)
                    .build();
```

```
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbClustersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBClusters(instanceRequest);
                List<DBCluster> clusterList = response.dbClusters();
                for (DBCluster cluster : clusterList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = cluster.status();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
            System.out.println("Database cluster is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .engine("aurora-mysql")
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDbClusterParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbClusterGroupName) {
       try {
           DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .dbClusterParameterGroupName(dbClusterGroupName)
                   .maxRecords(20)
                   .build();

           List<DBClusterParameterGroup> groups =
rdsClient.describeDBClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
                   .dbClusterParameterGroups();
           for (DBClusterParameterGroup group : groups) {
               System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupName());
               System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn());
           }

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingGroup;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeAutoScalingGroups {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        describeGroups(autoScalingClient);
    }

    public static void describeGroups(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups();
        List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
        groups.forEach(group -> {
            System.out.println("Group Name: " + group.autoScalingGroupName());
            System.out.println("Group ARN: " + group.autoScalingGroupARN());
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * In addition, create a launch template. For more information, see the
 * following topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-launch-
templates.html#create-launch-template
 *
 * This code example performs the following operations:
 * 1. Creates an Auto Scaling group using an AutoScalingWaiter.
 * 2. Gets a specific Auto Scaling group and returns an instance Id value.
 * 3. Describes Auto Scaling with the Id value.
 * 4. Enables metrics collection.
 * 5. Update an Auto Scaling group.
 * 6. Describes Account details.
 * 7. Describe account details"
 * 8. Updates an Auto Scaling group to use an additional instance.
 * 9. Gets the specific Auto Scaling group and gets the number of instances.
 * 10. List the scaling activities that have occurred for the group.
 * 11. Terminates an instance in the Auto Scaling group.
 * 12. Stops the metrics collection.
 * 13. Deletes the Auto Scaling group.
 */

public class AutoScalingScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName> <launchTemplateName> <vpcZoneId>

                Where:
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                    launchTemplateName - The name of the launch template.\s
                    vpcZoneId - A subnet Id for a virtual private cloud (VPC) where
 instances in the Auto Scaling group can be created.
                """;

        //if (args.length != 3) {
        //    System.out.println(usage);
        //    System.exit(1);
```

```
      // }

       String groupName = "Scott250" ; //rgs[0];
       String launchTemplateName = "MyTemplate5" ;//args[1];
       String vpcZoneId = "subnet-0ddc451b8a8a1aa44" ; //args[2];

       AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();

       Ec2Client ec2 = Ec2Client.create();

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling example
scenario.");
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("1. Create an Auto Scaling group named " + groupName);
       createAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName, launchTemplateName,
vpcZoneId);
       System.out.println(
               "Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise, an
empty instance Id is returned");
       Thread.sleep(60000);
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("2. Get Auto Scale group Id value");
       String instanceId = getSpecificAutoScalingGroups(autoScalingClient,
groupName);
       if (instanceId.compareTo("") == 0) {
           System.out.println("Error - no instance Id value");
           System.exit(1);
       } else {
           System.out.println("The instance Id value is " + instanceId);
       }
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("3. Describe Auto Scaling with the Id value " +
instanceId);
       describeAutoScalingInstance(autoScalingClient, instanceId);
       System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Enable metrics collection " + instanceId);
        enableMetricsCollection(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Update an Auto Scaling group to update max size to
3");
        updateAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName, launchTemplateName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Describe Auto Scaling groups");
        describeAutoScalingGroups(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Describe account details");
        describeAccountLimits(autoScalingClient);
        System.out.println(
                "Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise, an
empty instance Id is returned");
        Thread.sleep(60000);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Set desired capacity to 2");
        setDesiredCapacity(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Get the two instance Id values and state");
        getSpecificAutoScalingGroups(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. List the scaling activities that have occurred for
the group");
        describeScalingActivities(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Terminate an instance in the Auto Scaling group");
```

```
        terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, instanceId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Stop the metrics collection");
        disableMetricsCollection(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Delete the Auto Scaling group");
        deleteAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Scenario has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        autoScalingClient.close();
    }



    public static void describeScalingActivities(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest scalingActivitiesRequest =
DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .maxRecords(10)
                    .build();

            DescribeScalingActivitiesResponse response = autoScalingClient
                    .describeScalingActivities(scalingActivitiesRequest);
            List<Activity> activities = response.activities();
            for (Activity activity : activities) {
                System.out.println("The activity Id is " + activity.activityId());
                System.out.println("The activity details are " +
activity.details());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void setDesiredCapacity(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
        try {
            SetDesiredCapacityRequest capacityRequest =
SetDesiredCapacityRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .desiredCapacity(2)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest);
            System.out.println("You have set the DesiredCapacity to 2");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
            String groupName,
            String launchTemplateName,
            String vpcZoneId) {
        try {
            AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
            LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .availabilityZones("us-east-1a")
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .maxSize(1)
                    .minSize(1)
                    .vpcZoneIdentifier(vpcZoneId)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Auto Scaling Group created");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAutoScalingInstance(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String id) {
        try {
            DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
= DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceIds(id)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingInstancesResponse response = autoScalingClient

.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest);
            List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails> instances =
response.autoScalingInstances();
            for (AutoScalingInstanceDetails instance : instances) {
                System.out.println("The instance lifecycle state is: " +
instance.lifecycleState());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAutoScalingGroups(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
```

```
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .maxRecords(10)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(groupsRequest);
            List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
            for (AutoScalingGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("*** The service to use for the health checks: "
+ group.healthCheckType());
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getSpecificAutoScalingGroups(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
        try {
            String instanceId = "";
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest scalingGroupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response = autoScalingClient
                    .describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest);
            List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
            for (AutoScalingGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.autoScalingGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
group.autoScalingGroupARN());
                List<Instance> instances = group.instances();

                for (Instance instance : instances) {
                    instanceId = instance.instanceId();
                    System.out.println("The instance id is " + instanceId);
                    System.out.println("The lifecycle state is " +
instance.lifecycleState());
```

```
                }
            }

            return instanceId;
        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void enableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
        try {
            EnableMetricsCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
EnableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                    .granularity("1Minute")
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest);
            System.out.println("The enable metrics collection operation was
successful");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void disableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
        try {
            DisableMetricsCollectionRequest disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
DisableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                    .build();


autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest);
            System.out.println("The disable metrics collection operation was
successful");
```

```
        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAccountLimits(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient) {
        try {
            DescribeAccountLimitsResponse response =
autoScalingClient.describeAccountLimits();
            System.out.println("The max number of auto scaling groups is " +
response.maxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups());
            System.out.println("The current number of auto scaling groups is " +
response.numberOfAutoScalingGroups());

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName,
            String launchTemplateName) {
        try {
            AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
            LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .maxSize(3)
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();
```

```
            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupInService(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("You successfully updated the auto scaling group  " +
groupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String instanceId) {
        try {
            TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .instanceId(instanceId)
                    .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);
            System.out.println("You have terminated instance " + instanceId);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
        try {
            DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .forceDelete(true)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
            System.out.println("You successfully deleted " + groupName);
```

```
        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.LaunchTemplateSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.waiters.AutoScalingWaiter;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateAutoScalingGroup {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName> <launchTemplateName> <serviceLinkedRoleARN>
 <vpcZoneId>

                Where:
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                    launchTemplateName - The name of the launch template.\s
                    vpcZoneId - A subnet Id for a virtual private cloud (VPC) where
 instances in the Auto Scaling group can be created.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String groupName = args[0];
        String launchTemplateName = args[1];
        String vpcZoneId = args[2];
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        createAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName, launchTemplateName,
vpcZoneId);
        autoScalingClient.close();
    }

    public static void createAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
            String groupName,
            String launchTemplateName,
            String vpcZoneId) {

        try {
            AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
            LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .availabilityZones("us-east-1a")
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .maxSize(1)
                    .minSize(1)
                    .vpcZoneIdentifier(vpcZoneId)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Auto Scaling Group created");

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteAutoScalingGroup {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName>

                Where:
```

```
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String groupName = args[0];
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deleteAutoScalingGroup(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        autoScalingClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
 String groupName) {
        try {
            DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
 DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .forceDelete(true)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
            System.out.println("You successfully deleted " + groupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.AutoScalingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.AutoScalingGroup;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.autoscaling.model.Instance;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this SDK for Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeAutoScalingInstances {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <groupName>

                Where:
                    groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String groupName = args[0];
        AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String instanceId = getAutoScaling(autoScalingClient, groupName);
        System.out.println(instanceId);
        autoScalingClient.close();
    }

    public static String getAutoScaling(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient, String
 groupName) {
        try {
            String instanceId = "";
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest scalingGroupsRequest =
 DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response = autoScalingClient
                    .describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest);
            List<AutoScalingGroup> groups = response.autoScalingGroups();
            for (AutoScalingGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
 group.autoScalingGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group ARN is " +
 group.autoScalingGroupARN());

                List<Instance> instances = group.instances();
                for (Instance instance : instances) {
                    instanceId = instance.instanceId();
                }
            }
            return instanceId;
        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeAutoScalingInstance(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String id) {
       try {
           DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
= DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest
                   .builder()
                   .instanceIds(id)
                   .build();

           DescribeAutoScalingInstancesResponse response = autoScalingClient

.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest);
           List<AutoScalingInstanceDetails> instances =
response.autoScalingInstances();
           for (AutoScalingInstanceDetails instance : instances) {
               System.out.println("The instance lifecycle state is: " +
instance.lifecycleState());
           }

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeScalingActivities(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String groupName) {
       try {
           DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest scalingActivitiesRequest =
DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .maxRecords(10)
                   .build();

           DescribeScalingActivitiesResponse response = autoScalingClient
                   .describeScalingActivities(scalingActivitiesRequest);
           List<Activity> activities = response.activities();
           for (Activity activity : activities) {
               System.out.println("The activity Id is " + activity.activityId());
               System.out.println("The activity details are " +
activity.details());
           }

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void disableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
       try {
           DisableMetricsCollectionRequest disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
DisableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                   .build();


autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest);
           System.out.println("The disable metrics collection operation was
successful");

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void enableMetricsCollection(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
       try {
           EnableMetricsCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
EnableMetricsCollectionRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .metrics("GroupMaxSize")
                   .granularity("1Minute")
                   .build();

           autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest);
           System.out.println("The enable metrics collection operation was
successful");

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void setDesiredCapacity(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName) {
       try {
           SetDesiredCapacityRequest capacityRequest =
SetDesiredCapacityRequest.builder()
                   .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                   .desiredCapacity(2)
                   .build();

           autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest);
           System.out.println("You have set the DesiredCapacity to 2");

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient
autoScalingClient, String instanceId) {
       try {
           TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest request =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                   .instanceId(instanceId)
                   .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                   .build();

           autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request);
           System.out.println("You have terminated instance " + instanceId);

       } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void updateAutoScalingGroup(AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient,
String groupName,
           String launchTemplateName) {
       try {
           AutoScalingWaiter waiter = autoScalingClient.waiter();
           LaunchTemplateSpecification templateSpecification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
```

```
                    .launchTemplateName(launchTemplateName)
                    .build();

            UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                    .maxSize(3)
                    .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                    .launchTemplate(templateSpecification)
                    .build();

            autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);
            DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter
                    .waitUntilGroupInService(groupsRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("You successfully updated the auto scaling group  " +
groupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.

- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";
```

```
    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof-
bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException, InterruptedException
 {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and Manage
 a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
 resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
 service.
```

```
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
```

```
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to create
several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore
some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that
each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when an
instance starts.
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants
```

```
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);

        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
```

```
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets, targetGroupArn,
lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul = loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(), StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group for
your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add it
automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);
```

```
                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }

            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security group
are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the load
balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);
```

```
        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and shows
how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager parameter
named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service, let's
set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health checks
don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                       Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                       While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                       """);
```

```
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns a
static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are still
shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance id
value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId = autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " + profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on for
recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto Scaling
instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the load
balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint always
returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an auto
scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start a
new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);
```

```
        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load balancing
rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance is
running and healthy.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
```

```
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load balancer
targets:\n");
```

```
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
 loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
 target.target().id(),
                                    target.target().port(),
 target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the health
 check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value between
 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
```

```
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }

    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
```

```
   public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
       TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
               .builder()
               .instanceId(instanceId)
               .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
               .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
       System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
   }

   /**
    * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
    * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
    * When
    * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
    * server.
    */
   public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
           throws InterruptedException {
       // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
       software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
               .builder()
               .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure 'newInstanceProfileName'
is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                             // name.
               .build();

       // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
       ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
               .builder()
               .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
               .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
               .build();

       try {
           getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
```

```
            // Handle the response as needed.
        } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
            // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile
%s.", profileAssociationId,
                newInstanceProfileName);
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
        boolean instReady = false;
        int tries = 0;

        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
```

```
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress) {
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
```

```
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);

            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
```

```
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();

            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse = getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);

            for (SecurityGroup secGroup : securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " + secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " + ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or to
a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
```

```
        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }

    /*
     * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
     * Scaling group.
     * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
     * instances
     * in the group.
     */
    public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
        try {
            AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                    .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                    .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
            System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
    public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {

        // Get availability zones.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
                .builder()
                .build();

        DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
```

```
        List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()

.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
        LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                .launchTemplateName(templateName)
                .version("$Default")
                .build();

        String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .launchTemplate(specification)
                .availabilityZones(zones)
                .maxSize(groupSize)
                .minSize(groupSize)
                .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
                .build();

        try {
            getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
        return zones;
    }

    public String getDefaultVPC() {
        // Define the filter.
        Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("is-default")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
```

```
                .builder()
                .filters(defaultFilter)
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }

    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
```

```
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to the
policy.

software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
```

```
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
```

```
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance profile
 " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
    public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String targetGroupName) {
```

```
        DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                .names(targetGroupName)
                .build();

        DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

        DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()
                .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
                .build();

        DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
        return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
    }

    // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
    public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
        DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
        return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
    }

    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
```

```
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load balancer
    // endpoint.
    public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        boolean success = false;
        int retries = 3;
        CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
        try {
            while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
                // Execute the request and get the response.
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
                if (statusCode == 200) {
                    success = true;
                } else {
                    retries--;
```

```
                    System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
                }
            }

        } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        System.out.println("Status.." + success);
        return success;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId, String
targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
```

```
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
    * subnets
    * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    */
   public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String targetGroupARN,
String lbName, int port,
           String protocol) {
       try {
           List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                   .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

           CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                   .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                   .name(lbName)
                   .scheme("internet-facing")
                   .build();

           // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
           CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
           String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

           ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
           DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                   .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                   .build();

           System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to become
available.");
           WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                   .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
           waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
           System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

           // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
           String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
           System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

           // Create a listener for the load balance.
```

```
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest = CreateListenerRequest.builder()

 .loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }
```

```
    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException {
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
```

```
                                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                        .build())
                        .keySchema(
                                KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                        .attributeName("MediaType")
                                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                        .build(),
                                KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                        .attributeName("ItemId")
                                        .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                        .build())
                        .provisionedThroughput(
                                ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                        .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                        .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                        .build())
                        .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
```

```
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws IOException
 {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
```

```
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones

- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

AWS Batch examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS Batch.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Batch

The following code example shows how to get started using AWS Batch.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class HelloBatch {
    private static BatchAsyncClient batchClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        List<JobSummary> jobs = listJobs("my-job-queue");
        jobs.forEach(job ->
            System.out.printf("Job ID: %s, Job Name: %s, Job Status: %s%n",
                job.jobId(), job.jobName(), job.status())
        );
    }

    public static List<JobSummary> listJobs(String jobQueue) {
        if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or empty");
        }

        ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueue)
            .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)
            .build();

        List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
        ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
 getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
        });
```

```
        future.join();
        return jobSummaries;
    }

    private static BatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)  // Increase max concurrency to handle more
 simultaneous connections.
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
 timeout.
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the individual
 call attempt timeout.
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()  // Add a retry policy to handle
 transient errors.
                .numRetries(3)  // Number of retry attempts.
                .build())
            .build();

        if (batchClient == null) {
            batchClient = BatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return batchClient;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listJobsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics

- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS Batch compute environment.
- Check the status of the compute environment.
- Set up an AWS Batch job queue and job definition.
- Register a job definition.
- Submit an AWS Batch Job.
- Get a list of jobs applicable to the job queue.
- Check the status of job.
- Delete AWS Batch resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Batch features.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.BatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.Ec2AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSubnetsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSubnetsResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Filter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.SecurityGroup;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Subnet;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Vpc;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * NOTE
 * This scenario submits a job that pulls a Docker image named echo-text from Amazon
 ECR to Amazon Fargate.
 *
 * To place this Docker image on Amazon ECR, run the following Basics scenario.
 *
 * https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/javav2/example_code/ecr
 *
 */
public class BatchScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    // Define two stacks used in this Basics Scenario.
    private static final String ROLES_STACK = "RolesStack";
    private static String defaultSubnet;
    private static String defaultSecurityGroup;

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(BatchScenario.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
```

```
        BatchActions batchActions = new BatchActions();
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String computeEnvironmentName = "my-compute-environment";
        String jobQueueName = "my-job-queue";
        String jobDefinitionName = "my-job-definition";


        // See the NOTE in this Java code example (at start).
        String dockerImage = "dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/echo-text:echo-text";

        logger.info("""
            AWS Batch is a fully managed batch processing service that dynamically
 provisions the required compute
            resources for batch computing workloads. The Java V2 `BatchAsyncClient`
 allows
            developers to automate the submission, monitoring, and management of
 batch jobs.

            This scenario provides an example of setting up a compute environment,
 job queue and job definition,
            and then submitting a job.

            This scenario submits a job that pulls a Docker image named echo-text
 from Amazon ECR to Amazon Fargate.

            To place this Docker image on Amazon ECR, run the following Basics
 scenario.

            https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/javav2/
example_code/ecr

            Let's get started...

            You have two choices:

            1 - Run the entire program.
            2 - Delete an existing Compute Environment (created from a previous
 execution of
            this program that did not complete).
            """);

        while (true) {
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("1")) {
```

```
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
               // logger.info("");
                break;
            } else if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("2")) {
                String jobQueueARN = String.valueOf(batchActions.
describeJobQueueAsync(computeEnvironmentName));
                if (!jobQueueARN.isEmpty()) {
                    batchActions.disableJobQueueAsync(jobQueueARN);
                    countdown(1);
                    batchActions.deleteJobQueueAsync(jobQueueARN);
                }

                try {

batchActions.disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName)
                        .exceptionally(ex -> {
                            logger.info("Disable compute environment failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                            return null;
                        })
                        .join();
                } catch (CompletionException ex) {
                    logger.info("Failed to disable compute environment: " +
ex.getMessage());
                }
                countdown(2);

batchActions.deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName).join();
                return;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        // Get an AWS Account id used to retrieve the docker image from Amazon ECR.
        // Create a single-element array to store the `accountId` value.
        String[] accId = new String[1];
        CompletableFuture<String> accountIdFuture = batchActions.getAccountId();
        accountIdFuture.thenAccept(accountId -> {
            logger.info("Account ID: " + accountId);
            accId[0] = accountId;
```

```
        }).join();

        dockerImage = accId[0]+"."+dockerImage;

        // Get a default subnet and default security associated with the default
VPC.
        getSubnetSecurityGroup();

        logger.info("Use AWS CloudFormation to create two IAM roles that are
required for this scenario.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);

        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputs(ROLES_STACK);
        String batchIAMRole = stackOutputs.get("BatchRoleArn");
        String executionRoleARN = stackOutputs.get("EcsRoleArn");

        logger.info("The IAM role needed to interact with AWS Batch is
"+batchIAMRole);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a Batch compute environment");
        logger.info("""
            A compute environment is a resource where you can run your batch jobs.
            After creating a compute environment, you can define job queues and job
definitions to submit jobs for
            execution.

            The benefit of creating a compute environment is it allows you to easily
configure and manage the compute
            resources that will be used to run your Batch jobs. By separating the
compute environment from the job definitions,
            you can easily scale your compute resources up or down as needed,
without having to modify your job definitions.
            This makes it easier to manage your Batch workloads and ensures that
your jobs have the necessary
            compute resources to run efficiently.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
```

```
            CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse> future =
batchActions.createComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName, batchIAMRole,
defaultSubnet, defaultSecurityGroup);
            CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse response = future.join();
            logger.info("Compute Environment ARN: " +
response.computeEnvironmentArn());
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            Throwable cause = rte.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ClientException batchExceptionEx) {
                String myErrorCode =
batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage();
                if ("Object already exists".contains(myErrorCode)) {
                    logger.info("The compute environment '" + computeEnvironmentName
+ "' already exists. Moving on...");
                } else {
                    logger.info("Batch error occurred: {} (Code: {})",
batchExceptionEx.getMessage(), batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Check the status of the "+computeEnvironmentName +" Compute
Environment.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
batchActions.checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(computeEnvironmentName);
            String status = future.join();
            logger.info("Compute Environment Status: " + status);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            Throwable cause = rte.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ClientException batchExceptionEx) {
                logger.info("Batch error occurred: {} (Code: {})",
batchExceptionEx.getMessage(), batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
```

```
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a job queue");
        logger.info("""
             A job queue is an essential component that helps manage the execution
of your batch jobs.
             It acts as a buffer, where jobs are placed and then scheduled for
execution based on their
             priority and the available resources in the compute environment.
             """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        String jobQueueArn = null;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> jobQueueFuture =
batchActions.createJobQueueAsync(jobQueueName, computeEnvironmentName);
            jobQueueArn = jobQueueFuture.join();
            logger.info("Job Queue ARN: " + jobQueueArn);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            Throwable cause = rte.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof BatchException batchExceptionEx) {
                String myErrorCode =
batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage();
                if ("Object already exists".contains(myErrorCode)) {
                    logger.info("The job queue '" + jobQueueName + "' already
exists. Moving on...");
                    // Retrieve the ARN of the job queue.
                    CompletableFuture<String> jobQueueArnFuture =
batchActions.getJobQueueARN(jobQueueName);
                    jobQueueArn = jobQueueArnFuture.join();
                    logger.info("Job Queue ARN: " + jobQueueArn);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Batch error occurred: {} (Code: {})",
batchExceptionEx.getMessage(), batchExceptionEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    return;
                }
```

```
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
                return; // End the execution
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("4. Register a Job Definition.");
        logger.info("""
            Registering a job in AWS Batch using the Fargate launch type ensures
that all
            necessary parameters, such as the execution role, command to run, and so
on
            are specified and reused across multiple job submissions.

             The job definition pulls a Docker image from Amazon ECR and executes
the Docker image.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobARN;
        try {
            String platform = "";
            while (true) {
                logger.info("""
                    On which platform/CPU architecture combination did you build the
Docker image?:
                    1. Windows       X86_64
                    2. Mac or Linux  ARM64
                    3. Mac or Linux  X86_64

                    Please select 1, 2, or 3.
                    """);
                String platAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                if (platAns.equals("1")) {
                    platform = "X86_64";
                    break; // Exit loop since a valid option is selected
                } else if (platAns.equals("2")) {
                    platform = "ARM64";
                    break; // Exit loop since a valid option is selected
                } else if (platAns.equals("3")) {
                    platform = "X86_64";
```

```
                    break; // Exit loop since a valid option is selected
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select either 1 or
2.");
                }
            }

            jobARN = batchActions.registerJobDefinitionAsync(jobDefinitionName,
executionRoleARN, dockerImage, platform)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Register job definition failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
            if (jobARN != null) {
                logger.info("Job ARN: " + jobARN);
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.error("A Batch exception occurred while registering the job: {}",
rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Submit an AWS Batch job from a job definition.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobId;
        try {
            jobId = batchActions.submitJobAsync(jobDefinitionName, jobQueueName,
jobARN)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Submit job failed: " + ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();

            logger.info("The job id is "+jobId);
            logger.info("Let's wait 2 minutes for the job to complete");
            countdown(2);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
```

```
            logger.error("A Batch exception occurred while submitting the job: {}",
rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Get a list of jobs applicable to the job queue.");

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            List<JobSummary> jobs = batchActions.listJobsAsync(jobQueueName);
            jobs.forEach(job ->
                logger.info("Job ID: {}, Job Name: {}, Job Status: {}", job.jobId(),
job.jobName(), job.status()));

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.info("A Batch exception occurred while submitting the job: {}",
rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Check the status of job "+jobId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future = batchActions.describeJobAsync(jobId);
            String jobStatus = future.join();
            logger.info("Job Status: " + jobStatus);

        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.info("A Batch exception occurred while submitting the job: {}",
rte.getCause() != null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        logger.info("8. Delete Batch resources");
```

```
        logger.info(
            """
            When deleting an AWS Batch compute environment, it does not happen
instantaneously.
            There is typically a delay, similar to some other AWS resources.
            AWS Batch starts the deletion process.
            """);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the AWS Batch resources such as the
compute environment? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the AWS ECR resources.");
            logger.info("First, we will deregister the Job Definition.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                batchActions.deregisterJobDefinitionAsync(jobARN)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        logger.info("Deregister job definition failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
                logger.info(jobARN + " was deregistered");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.error("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            logger.info("Second, we will disable and then delete the Job Queue.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                batchActions.disableJobQueueAsync(jobQueueArn)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        logger.info("Disable job queue failed: " + ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
                logger.info(jobQueueArn + " was disabled");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
```

```
            batchActions.waitForJobQueueToBeDisabledAsync(jobQueueArn);
            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
batchActions.waitForJobQueueToBeDisabledAsync(jobQueueArn);
                future.join();
                logger.info("Job queue is now disabled.");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                batchActions.deleteJobQueueAsync(jobQueueArn);
                logger.info(jobQueueArn +" was deleted");
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
            logger.info("Let's wait 2 minutes for the job queue to be deleted");
            countdown(2);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

            logger.info("Third, we will delete the Compute Environment.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                batchActions.disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        System.err.println("Disable compute environment failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
                logger.info("Compute environment disabled") ;
            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
```

```
batchActions.checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(computeEnvironmentName).thenAccept(state
-> {
                logger.info("Current State: " + state);
            }).join();

            logger.info("Lets wait 1 min for the compute environment to be
deleted");
            countdown(1);

            try {

batchActions.deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(computeEnvironmentName).join();
                logger.info(computeEnvironmentName +" was deleted.");

            } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
                logger.info("A Batch exception occurred: {}", rte.getCause() !=
null ? rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage());
                return;
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS Batch SDK scenario");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void countdown(int minutes) throws InterruptedException {
        int seconds = 0;
        for (int i = minutes * 60 + seconds; i >= 0; i--) {
            int displayMinutes = i / 60;
            int displaySeconds = i % 60;
            System.out.print(String.format("\r%02d:%02d", displayMinutes,
displaySeconds));
            Thread.sleep(1000); // Wait for 1 second
        }
        logger.info("Countdown complete!");
    }

    private static void getSubnetSecurityGroup() {
        try (Ec2AsyncClient ec2Client = Ec2AsyncClient.create()) {
            CompletableFuture<Vpc> defaultVpcFuture =
ec2Client.describeVpcs(DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
                            .filters(Filter.builder()
                                    .name("is-default")
                                    .values("true")
                                    .build())
                            .build())
                    .thenApply(response -> response.vpcs().stream()
                            .findFirst()
                            .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Default VPC not
found")));

            CompletableFuture<String> defaultSubnetFuture = defaultVpcFuture
                    .thenCompose(vpc ->
ec2Client.describeSubnets(DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                                    .filters(Filter.builder()
                                                    .name("vpc-id")
                                                    .values(vpc.vpcId())
                                                    .build(),
                                            Filter.builder()
                                                    .name("default-for-az")
                                                    .values("true")
                                                    .build())
                                    .build())
                            .thenApply(DescribeSubnetsResponse::subnets)
                            .thenApply(subnets -> subnets.stream()
                                    .findFirst()
                                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
```

```
                                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("No
 default subnet found"))));

            CompletableFuture<String> defaultSecurityGroupFuture = defaultVpcFuture
                    .thenCompose(vpc ->
 ec2Client.describeSecurityGroups(DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                                    .filters(Filter.builder()
                                                    .name("group-name")
                                                    .values("default")
                                                    .build(),
                                            Filter.builder()
                                                    .name("vpc-id")
                                                    .values(vpc.vpcId())
                                                    .build())
                                    .build())

 .thenApply(DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse::securityGroups)
                            .thenApply(securityGroups -> securityGroups.stream()
                                    .findFirst()
                                    .map(SecurityGroup::groupId)
                                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("No
 default security group found"))));

            defaultSubnet = defaultSubnetFuture.join();
            defaultSecurityGroup = defaultSecurityGroupFuture.join();
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS Batch SDK methods.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.BatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.AssignPublicIp;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.BatchException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CEState;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CEType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CRType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ComputeEnvironmentOrder;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ComputeResource;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ContainerProperties;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateJobQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteJobQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeleteJobQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeComputeEnvironmentsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobQueuesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobQueuesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.DescribeJobsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JQState;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobDefinitionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobDetail;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobQueueDetail;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.JobSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.RegisterJobDefinitionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.NetworkConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.PlatformCapability;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.RegisterJobDefinitionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ResourceRequirement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.ResourceType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.RuntimePlatform;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.SubmitJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.CreateJobQueueResponse;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Collections;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicBoolean;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.SubmitJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateJobQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.model.UpdateJobQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.batch.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.GetCallerIdentityResponse;

public class BatchActions {
    private static BatchAsyncClient batchClient;

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(BatchActions.class);

    private static BatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (batchClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();

            batchClient = BatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return batchClient;
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously creates a new compute environment in AWS Batch.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to create
     * @param batchIAMRole the IAM role to be used by the compute environment
     * @param subnet the subnet ID to be used for the compute environment
     * @param secGroup the security group ID to be used for the compute environment
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation,
which will complete with the
     *         {@link CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse} when the compute environment
has been created
     * @throws BatchException if there is an error creating the compute environment
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the operation
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
createComputeEnvironmentAsync(
        String computeEnvironmentName, String batchIAMRole, String subnet, String
secGroup) {
        CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest environmentRequest =
CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironmentName)
            .type(CEType.MANAGED)
            .state(CEState.ENABLED)
            .computeResources(ComputeResource.builder()
                .type(CRType.FARGATE)
                .maxvCpus(256)
                .subnets(Collections.singletonList(subnet))
                .securityGroupIds(Collections.singletonList(secGroup))
                .build())
            .serviceRole(batchIAMRole)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createComputeEnvironment(environmentRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
               String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
               throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });
```

```
        return response;
    }

    public CompletableFuture<DeleteComputeEnvironmentResponse>
deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
        DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest deleteComputeEnvironment =
DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteComputeEnvironment(deleteComputeEnvironment)
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof BatchException) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of the specified compute environment.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to check
     * @return a CompletableFuture containing the status of the compute environment,
or "ERROR" if an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
        if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot be
null or empty");
        }

        DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest environmentsRequest =
DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironments(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DescribeComputeEnvironmentsResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeComputeEnvironments(environmentsRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> resp.computeEnvironments().stream()
            .map(env -> env.statusAsString())
            .findFirst()
            .orElse("UNKNOWN"));
    }

    /**
     * Creates a job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to create
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
associate with the job queue
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the Amazon Resource Name
(ARN) of the job queue
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueName, String
computeEnvironmentName) {
        if (jobQueueName == null || jobQueueName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot be
null or empty");
        }

        CreateJobQueueRequest request = CreateJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueueName(jobQueueName)
            .priority(1)
            .computeEnvironmentOrder(ComputeEnvironmentOrder.builder()
                .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
                .order(1)
                .build())
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<CreateJobQueueResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createJobQueue(request);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(CreateJobQueueResponse::jobQueueArn);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists the jobs in the specified job queue with the given job
status.
     *
     * @param jobQueue the name of the job queue to list jobs from
     * @return a List<JobSummary> that contains the jobs that succeeded
     */
    public List<JobSummary> listJobsAsync(String jobQueue) {
        if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or empty");
        }

        ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueue)
            .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)  // Filter jobs by status.
            .build();

        List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
        ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
        });
        future.join();
        return jobSummaries;
    }

    /**
     * Registers a new job definition asynchronously in AWS Batch.
     * <p>
```

```
    * When using Fargate as the compute environment, it is crucial to set the
    * {@link NetworkConfiguration} with {@link AssignPublicIp#ENABLED} to
    * ensure proper networking configuration for the Fargate tasks. This
    * allows the tasks to communicate with external services, access the
    * internet, or communicate within a VPC.
    *
    * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to be registered
    * @param executionRoleARN the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the execution role
    *                         that provides permissions for the containers in the
job
    * @param cpuArch a value of either X86_64 or ARM64 required for the service
call
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the ARN of the registered
    *         job definition upon successful execution, or completes exceptionally
with
    *         an error if the registration fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> registerJobDefinitionAsync(String
jobDefinitionName, String executionRoleARN, String image, String cpuArch) {
       NetworkConfiguration networkConfiguration = NetworkConfiguration.builder()
               .assignPublicIp(AssignPublicIp.ENABLED)
               .build();

       ContainerProperties containerProperties = ContainerProperties.builder()
               .image(image)
               .executionRoleArn(executionRoleARN)
               .resourceRequirements(
                       Arrays.asList(
                               ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                       .type(ResourceType.VCPU)
                                       .value("1")
                                       .build(),
                               ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                       .type(ResourceType.MEMORY)
                                       .value("2048")
                                       .build()
                       )
               )
               .networkConfiguration(networkConfiguration)
              .runtimePlatform(b -> b
                       .cpuArchitecture(cpuArch)
                       .operatingSystemFamily("LINUX"))
               .build();
```

```
        RegisterJobDefinitionRequest request =
RegisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
                .jobDefinitionName(jobDefinitionName)
                .type(JobDefinitionType.CONTAINER)
                .containerProperties(containerProperties)
                .platformCapabilities(PlatformCapability.FARGATE)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().registerJobDefinition(request)
                .thenApply(RegisterJobDefinitionResponse::jobDefinitionArn)
                .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(ex);
                    } else {
                        future.complete(result);
                    }
                });

        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Deregisters a job definition asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobDefinition the name of the job definition to be deregistered
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job definition has been
deregistered
     * or an exception has occurred
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse>
deregisterJobDefinitionAsync(String jobDefinition) {
        DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest jobDefinitionRequest =
DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
            .jobDefinition(jobDefinition)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deregisterJobDefinition(jobDefinitionRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
```

```
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Disables the specified job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to be
disabled
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job queue update
operation is complete,
     *         or completes exceptionally if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> disableJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
        UpdateJobQueueRequest updateRequest = UpdateJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
            .state(JQState.DISABLED)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<UpdateJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateJobQueue(updateRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(updateResponse -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a Batch job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to delete.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of the
job queue.
     *         The future completes when the job queue has been successfully deleted
or if an error occurs.
     *         If successful, the future will be completed with a {@code Void}
value.
     *         If an error occurs, the future will be completed exceptionally with
the thrown exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
```

```
        DeleteJobQueueRequest deleteRequest = DeleteJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deleteJobQueue(deleteRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((deleteResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(deleteResponse -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the job queue associated with the specified compute
environment.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to find the
associated job queue for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the job
queue ARN associated with the specified compute environment
     * @throws RuntimeException if the job queue description fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobQueueAsync(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
        DescribeJobQueuesRequest describeJobQueuesRequest =
DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobQueues(describeJobQueuesRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((describeJobQueuesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (describeJobQueuesResponse != null) {
                String jobQueueARN;
                for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                    for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                        String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                        String name = getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                        if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                            jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
```

```
                            logger.info("Job queue ARN associated with the compute
environment: " + jobQueueARN);
                        }
                    }
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(describeJobQueuesResponse -> {
            String jobQueueARN = "";
            for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                    String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                    String name = getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                    if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                        jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
                    }
                }
            }
            return jobQueueARN;
        });
    }

    /**
     * Disables the specified compute environment asynchronously.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to disable
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the compute environment is
disabled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
        UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest updateRequest =
UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
            .state(CEState.DISABLED)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateComputeEnvironment(updateRequest);
```

```
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable compute environment: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Submits a job asynchronously to the AWS Batch service.
     *
     * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to use
     * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to submit the job to
     * @param jobARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job definition
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains the job ID of the
submitted job
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> submitJobAsync(String jobDefinitionName, String
jobQueueName, String jobARN) {
        SubmitJobRequest jobRequest = SubmitJobRequest.builder()
            .jobDefinition(jobARN)
            .jobName(jobDefinitionName)
            .jobQueue(jobQueueName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SubmitJobResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().submitJob(jobRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(SubmitJobResponse::jobId);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the status of a specific job.
     *
     * @param jobId the ID of the job to retrieve the status for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the job status
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobAsync(String jobId) {
        DescribeJobsRequest describeJobsRequest = DescribeJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobs(jobId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobs(describeJobsRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(response -> response.jobs().get(0).status().toString());
    }

    /**
     * Disables the specific job queue using the asynchronous Java client.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to wait
for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job queue is
disabled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForJobQueueToBeDisabledAsync(String
jobQueueArn) {
        AtomicBoolean isDisabled = new AtomicBoolean(false);
        return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            while (!isDisabled.get()) {
                DescribeJobQueuesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
                    .jobQueues(jobQueueArn)
                    .build();

                CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobQueues(describeRequest);
                responseFuture.whenComplete((describeResponse, ex) -> {
                    if (describeResponse != null) {
                        for (JobQueueDetail jobQueue : describeResponse.jobQueues())
{
                            if (jobQueue.jobQueueArn().equals(jobQueueArn) &&
jobQueue.state() == JQState.DISABLED) {
                                isDisabled.set(true);
                                break;
```

```
                            }
                        }
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Error describing job queues",
ex);
                    }
                }).join();

                if (!isDisabled.get()) {
                    try {
                        logger.info("Waiting for job queue to be disabled...");
                        Thread.sleep(5000);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                        throw new RuntimeException("Thread interrupted while waiting
for job queue to be disabled", e);
                    }
                }
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, throwable) -> {
            if (throwable != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error while waiting for job queue to be
disabled", throwable);
            }
        });
    }

    public CompletableFuture<String> getJobQueueARN(String jobQueueName) {
        // Describe the job queue asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> describeJobQueuesFuture =
batchClient.describeJobQueues(
            DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
                .jobQueues(jobQueueName)
                .build()
        );

        // Handle the asynchronous response and return the Job Queue ARN in the
CompletableFuture<String>
        CompletableFuture<String> jobQueueArnFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        describeJobQueuesFuture.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error != null) {
                if (error instanceof BatchException) {
                    logger.info("Batch error: " + ((BatchException)
error).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else {
                    logger.info("Error describing job queue: " +
error.getMessage());
                }
                jobQueueArnFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed
to retrieve Job Queue ARN", error));
            } else {
                if (response.jobQueues().isEmpty()) {
                    jobQueueArnFuture.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Job queue not found: " + jobQueueName));
                } else {
                    // Assuming only one job queue is returned for the given name
                    String jobQueueArn = response.jobQueues().get(0).jobQueueArn();
                    jobQueueArnFuture.complete(jobQueueArn);
                }
            }
        });

        return jobQueueArnFuture;
    }

    private static String getComputeEnvironmentName(String computeEnvironment) {
        String[] parts = computeEnvironment.split("/");
        if (parts.length == 2) {
            return parts[1];
        }
        return null;
    }

    public CompletableFuture<String> getAccountId() {
        StsAsyncClient stsAsyncClient = StsAsyncClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        return stsAsyncClient.getCallerIdentity()
            .thenApply(GetCallerIdentityResponse::account);
    }


}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- CreateComputeEnvironment
- CreateJobQueue
- DeleteComputeEnvironment
- DeleteJobQueue
- DeregisterJobDefinition
- DescribeComputeEnvironments
- DescribeJobQueues
- DescribeJobs
- ListJobsPaginator
- RegisterJobDefinition
- SubmitJob
- UpdateComputeEnvironment
- UpdateJobQueue

Actions

`CreateComputeEnvironment`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateComputeEnvironment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Asynchronously creates a new compute environment in AWS Batch.
 *
 * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to create
 * @param batchIAMRole the IAM role to be used by the compute environment
 * @param subnet the subnet ID to be used for the compute environment
 * @param secGroup the security group ID to be used for the compute environment
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation,
which will complete with the
    *         {@link CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse} when the compute environment
has been created
    * @throws BatchException if there is an error creating the compute environment
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the operation
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
createComputeEnvironmentAsync(
       String computeEnvironmentName, String batchIAMRole, String subnet, String
secGroup) {
       CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest environmentRequest =
CreateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironmentName)
           .type(CEType.MANAGED)
           .state(CEState.ENABLED)
           .computeResources(ComputeResource.builder()
               .type(CRType.FARGATE)
               .maxvCpus(256)
               .subnets(Collections.singletonList(subnet))
               .securityGroupIds(Collections.singletonList(secGroup))
               .build())
           .serviceRole(batchIAMRole)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateComputeEnvironmentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createComputeEnvironment(environmentRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
              String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
              throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
           }
       });

       return response;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateComputeEnvironment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateJobQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJobQueue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a job queue asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to create
    * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to
associate with the job queue
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the Amazon Resource Name
(ARN) of the job queue
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueName, String
computeEnvironmentName) {
       if (jobQueueName == null || jobQueueName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue name cannot be null or
empty");
       }
       if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot be
null or empty");
       }

       CreateJobQueueRequest request = CreateJobQueueRequest.builder()
           .jobQueueName(jobQueueName)
           .priority(1)
           .computeEnvironmentOrder(ComputeEnvironmentOrder.builder()
               .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
               .order(1)
               .build())
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateJobQueueResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createJobQueue(request);
```

```
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(CreateJobQueueResponse::jobQueueArn);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJobQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteComputeEnvironment`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteComputeEnvironment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteComputeEnvironmentResponse>
deleteComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
        DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest deleteComputeEnvironment =
DeleteComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteComputeEnvironment(deleteComputeEnvironment)
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof BatchException) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
```

```
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteComputeEnvironment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteJobQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJobQueue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a Batch job queue asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobQueueArn The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to delete.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of the
job queue.
     *         The future completes when the job queue has been successfully deleted
or if an error occurs.
     *         If successful, the future will be completed with a {@code Void}
value.
     *         If an error occurs, the future will be completed exceptionally with
the thrown exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
        DeleteJobQueueRequest deleteRequest = DeleteJobQueueRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deleteJobQueue(deleteRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((deleteResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(deleteResponse -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJobQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeregisterJobDefinition`

The following code example shows how to use `DeregisterJobDefinition`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deregisters a job definition asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobDefinition the name of the job definition to be deregistered
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job definition has been
deregistered
     * or an exception has occurred
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse>
deregisterJobDefinitionAsync(String jobDefinition) {
        DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest jobDefinitionRequest =
DeregisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
            .jobDefinition(jobDefinition)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeregisterJobDefinitionResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().deregisterJobDefinition(jobDefinitionRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
```

```
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }
```

- For API details, see DeregisterJobDefinition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeComputeEnvironments`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeComputeEnvironments`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Checks the status of the specified compute environment.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to check
     * @return a CompletableFuture containing the status of the compute environment,
or "ERROR" if an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> checkComputeEnvironmentsStatus(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
        if (computeEnvironmentName == null || computeEnvironmentName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Compute environment name cannot be
null or empty");
        }

        DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest environmentsRequest =
DescribeComputeEnvironmentsRequest.builder()
            .computeEnvironments(computeEnvironmentName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeComputeEnvironmentsResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeComputeEnvironments(environmentsRequest);
```

```
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> resp.computeEnvironments().stream()
            .map(env -> env.statusAsString())
            .findFirst()
            .orElse("UNKNOWN"));
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeComputeEnvironments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeJobQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeJobQueues`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the job queue associated with the specified compute
environment.
     *
     * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to find the
associated job queue for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the job
queue ARN associated with the specified compute environment
     * @throws RuntimeException if the job queue description fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobQueueAsync(String
computeEnvironmentName) {
```

```
        DescribeJobQueuesRequest describeJobQueuesRequest =
DescribeJobQueuesRequest.builder()
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobQueuesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobQueues(describeJobQueuesRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((describeJobQueuesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (describeJobQueuesResponse != null) {
                String jobQueueARN;
                for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                    for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                        String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                        String name = getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                        if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                            jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
                            logger.info("Job queue ARN associated with the compute
environment: " + jobQueueARN);
                        }
                    }
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(describeJobQueuesResponse -> {
            String jobQueueARN = "";
            for (JobQueueDetail jobQueueDetail :
describeJobQueuesResponse.jobQueues()) {
                for (ComputeEnvironmentOrder computeEnvironmentOrder :
jobQueueDetail.computeEnvironmentOrder()) {
                    String computeEnvironment =
computeEnvironmentOrder.computeEnvironment();
                    String name = getComputeEnvironmentName(computeEnvironment);
                    if (name.equals(computeEnvironmentName)) {
                        jobQueueARN = jobQueueDetail.jobQueueArn();
                    }
                }
            }
            return jobQueueARN;
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeJobQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeJobs`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the status of a specific job.
     *
     * @param jobId the ID of the job to retrieve the status for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the job status
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeJobAsync(String jobId) {
        DescribeJobsRequest describeJobsRequest = DescribeJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobs(jobId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeJobsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeJobs(describeJobsRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(response -> response.jobs().get(0).status().toString());
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListJobsPaginator`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobsPaginator`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists the jobs in the specified job queue with the given job
status.
     *
     * @param jobQueue the name of the job queue to list jobs from
     * @return a List<JobSummary> that contains the jobs that succeeded
     */
    public List<JobSummary> listJobsAsync(String jobQueue) {
        if (jobQueue == null || jobQueue.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Job queue cannot be null or empty");
        }

        ListJobsRequest listJobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobQueue(jobQueue)
            .jobStatus(JobStatus.SUCCEEDED)  // Filter jobs by status.
            .build();

        List<JobSummary> jobSummaries = new ArrayList<>();
        ListJobsPublisher listJobsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listJobsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            jobSummaries.addAll(response.jobSummaryList());
        });
        future.join();
        return jobSummaries;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RegisterJobDefinition`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterJobDefinition`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Registers a new job definition asynchronously in AWS Batch.
    * <p>
    * When using Fargate as the compute environment, it is crucial to set the
    * {@link NetworkConfiguration} with {@link AssignPublicIp#ENABLED} to
    * ensure proper networking configuration for the Fargate tasks. This
    * allows the tasks to communicate with external services, access the
    * internet, or communicate within a VPC.
    *
    * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to be registered
    * @param executionRoleARN the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the execution role
    *                         that provides permissions for the containers in the
job
    * @param cpuArch a value of either X86_64 or ARM64 required for the service
call
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the ARN of the registered
    *         job definition upon successful execution, or completes exceptionally
with
    *         an error if the registration fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> registerJobDefinitionAsync(String
jobDefinitionName, String executionRoleARN, String image, String cpuArch) {
       NetworkConfiguration networkConfiguration = NetworkConfiguration.builder()
               .assignPublicIp(AssignPublicIp.ENABLED)
               .build();

       ContainerProperties containerProperties = ContainerProperties.builder()
               .image(image)
               .executionRoleArn(executionRoleARN)
               .resourceRequirements(
                       Arrays.asList(
```

```
                                ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                        .type(ResourceType.VCPU)
                                        .value("1")
                                        .build(),
                                ResourceRequirement.builder()
                                        .type(ResourceType.MEMORY)
                                        .value("2048")
                                        .build()
                        )
                )
                .networkConfiguration(networkConfiguration)
               .runtimePlatform(b -> b
                        .cpuArchitecture(cpuArch)
                        .operatingSystemFamily("LINUX"))
                .build();

        RegisterJobDefinitionRequest request =
RegisterJobDefinitionRequest.builder()
                .jobDefinitionName(jobDefinitionName)
                .type(JobDefinitionType.CONTAINER)
                .containerProperties(containerProperties)
                .platformCapabilities(PlatformCapability.FARGATE)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().registerJobDefinition(request)
                .thenApply(RegisterJobDefinitionResponse::jobDefinitionArn)
                .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(ex);
                    } else {
                        future.complete(result);
                    }
                });

        return future;
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterJobDefinition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SubmitJob

The following code example shows how to use SubmitJob.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Submits a job asynchronously to the AWS Batch service.
    *
    * @param jobDefinitionName the name of the job definition to use
    * @param jobQueueName the name of the job queue to submit the job to
    * @param jobARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job definition
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains the job ID of the
submitted job
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> submitJobAsync(String jobDefinitionName, String
jobQueueName, String jobARN) {
       SubmitJobRequest jobRequest = SubmitJobRequest.builder()
           .jobDefinition(jobARN)
           .jobName(jobDefinitionName)
           .jobQueue(jobQueueName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<SubmitJobResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().submitJob(jobRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture.thenApply(SubmitJobResponse::jobId);
   }
```

- For API details, see SubmitJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateComputeEnvironment`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateComputeEnvironment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Disables the specified compute environment asynchronously.
    *
    * @param computeEnvironmentName the name of the compute environment to disable
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the compute environment is
disabled
    */
   public CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse>
disableComputeEnvironmentAsync(String computeEnvironmentName) {
       UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest updateRequest =
UpdateComputeEnvironmentRequest.builder()
           .computeEnvironment(computeEnvironmentName)
           .state(CEState.DISABLED)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateComputeEnvironmentResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateComputeEnvironment(updateRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable compute environment: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateComputeEnvironment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateJobQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateJobQueue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Disables the specified job queue asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobQueueArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the job queue to be
disabled
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job queue update
operation is complete,
    *         or completes exceptionally if an error occurs during the operation
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> disableJobQueueAsync(String jobQueueArn) {
       UpdateJobQueueRequest updateRequest = UpdateJobQueueRequest.builder()
           .jobQueue(jobQueueArn)
           .state(JQState.DISABLED)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateJobQueueResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().updateJobQueue(updateRequest);
       return responseFuture.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update job queue: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
           }
       }).thenApply(updateResponse -> null);
   }
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetFoundationModel`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFoundationModel`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get details about a foundation model using the synchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient   The service client for accessing Amazon Bedrock.
     * @param modelIdentifier The model identifier.
     * @return An object containing the foundation model's details.
     */
    public static FoundationModelDetails getFoundationModel(BedrockClient
bedrockClient, String modelIdentifier) {
        try {
```

```
            GetFoundationModelResponse response = bedrockClient.getFoundationModel(
                    r -> r.modelIdentifier(modelIdentifier)
            );

            FoundationModelDetails model = response.modelDetails();

            System.out.println(" Model ID:                     " + model.modelId());
            System.out.println(" Model ARN:                    " +
model.modelArn());
            System.out.println(" Model Name:                   " +
model.modelName());
            System.out.println(" Provider Name:                " +
model.providerName());
            System.out.println(" Lifecycle status:             " +
model.modelLifecycle().statusAsString());
            System.out.println(" Input modalities:             " +
model.inputModalities());
            System.out.println(" Output modalities:            " +
model.outputModalities());
            System.out.println(" Supported customizations:     " +
model.customizationsSupported());
            System.out.println(" Supported inference types:    " +
model.inferenceTypesSupported());
            System.out.println(" Response streaming supported: " +
model.responseStreamingSupported());

            return model;

        } catch (ValidationException e) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException(e.getMessage());
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

Get details about a foundation model using the asynchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient   The async service client for accessing Amazon Bedrock.
```

```
     * @param modelIdentifier The model identifier.
     * @return An object containing the foundation model's details.
     */
    public static FoundationModelDetails getFoundationModel(BedrockAsyncClient
bedrockClient, String modelIdentifier) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<GetFoundationModelResponse> future =
bedrockClient.getFoundationModel(
                    r -> r.modelIdentifier(modelIdentifier)
            );

            FoundationModelDetails model = future.get().modelDetails();

            System.out.println(" Model ID:                     " + model.modelId());
            System.out.println(" Model ARN:                    " +
model.modelArn());
            System.out.println(" Model Name:                   " +
model.modelName());
            System.out.println(" Provider Name:                " +
model.providerName());
            System.out.println(" Lifecycle status:             " +
model.modelLifecycle().statusAsString());
            System.out.println(" Input modalities:             " +
model.inputModalities());
            System.out.println(" Output modalities:            " +
model.outputModalities());
            System.out.println(" Supported customizations:     " +
model.customizationsSupported());
            System.out.println(" Supported inference types:    " +
model.inferenceTypesSupported());
            System.out.println(" Response streaming supported: " +
model.responseStreamingSupported());

            return model;

        } catch (ExecutionException e) {
            if (e.getMessage().contains("ValidationException")) {
                throw new IllegalArgumentException(e.getMessage());
            } else {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
```

```
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFoundationModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models using the synchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Lists Amazon Bedrock foundation models that you can use.
     * You can filter the results with the request parameters.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient The service client for accessing Amazon Bedrock.
     * @return A list of objects containing the foundation models' details
     */
    public static List<FoundationModelSummary> listFoundationModels(BedrockClient
bedrockClient) {

        try {
            ListFoundationModelsResponse response =
bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(r -> {});

            List<FoundationModelSummary> models = response.modelSummaries();

            if (models.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No available foundation models in " +
region.toString());
```

```
            } else {
                for (FoundationModelSummary model : models) {
                    System.out.println("Model ID: " + model.modelId());
                    System.out.println("Provider: " + model.providerName());
                    System.out.println("Name:     " + model.modelName());
                    System.out.println();
                }
            }

            return models;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models using the asynchronous Amazon Bedrock client.

```
    /**
     * Lists Amazon Bedrock foundation models that you can use.
     * You can filter the results with the request parameters.
     *
     * @param bedrockClient The async service client for accessing Amazon Bedrock.
     * @return A list of objects containing the foundation models' details
     */
    public static List<FoundationModelSummary>
listFoundationModels(BedrockAsyncClient bedrockClient) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ListFoundationModelsResponse> future =
bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(r -> {});

            List<FoundationModelSummary> models = future.get().modelSummaries();

            if (models.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No available foundation models in " +
region.toString());
            } else {
                for (FoundationModelSummary model : models) {
                    System.out.println("Model ID: " + model.modelId());
                    System.out.println("Provider: " + model.providerName());
```

```
                    System.out.println("Name:     " + model.modelName());
                    System.out.println();
                }
            }

            return models;

        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        } catch (ExecutionException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Nova Canvas
- Amazon Titan Image Generator
- Amazon Titan Text
- Amazon Titan Text Embeddings
- Anthropic Claude

- Cohere Command
- Meta Llama
- Mistral AI
- Stable Diffusion

Scenarios

Create a playground application to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models

The following code example shows how to create playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models through different modalities.

SDK for Java 2.x

The Java Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a Spring Boot sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock with Java. This example shows how Java developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following three playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to, along with their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

Generate videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to a Spring Boot app that generates videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and the Nova-Reel model.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate videos from text prompts using Amazon Bedrock and Nova-Reel.

```
import org.springframework.stereotype.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

@Service
public class VideoGenerationService {

    public GenerateVideoResponse generateVideo(String prompt) {

        // add S3 bucket you want to store your generated videos
        String s3Bucket = "s3://mygeneratedvidoenovatest";


        //Create json request as an instance of Document class
        Document novaRequest = prepareDocument(prompt);

        // Create request
        StartAsyncInvokeRequest request = StartAsyncInvokeRequest.builder()
                .modelId("amazon.nova-reel-v1:0")
                .modelInput(novaRequest)
                .outputDataConfig(AsyncInvokeOutputDataConfig.builder()

 .s3OutputDataConfig(AsyncInvokeS3OutputDataConfig.builder().s3Uri(s3Bucket).build())
                        .build())
                .build();

        try (BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient bedrockClient =
 getBedrockRuntimeAsyncClient()) {
```

```
            CompletableFuture<StartAsyncInvokeResponse>
startAsyncInvokeResponseCompletableFuture =
bedrockClient.startAsyncInvoke(request);

            //blocking operation to wait for the AWS API response
            StartAsyncInvokeResponse startAsyncInvokeResponse =
startAsyncInvokeResponseCompletableFuture.get();
            System.out.println("invocation ARN: " +
startAsyncInvokeResponse.invocationArn());

            GenerateVideoResponse response = new GenerateVideoResponse();
            response.setStatus("inProgress");
            response.setExecutionArn(startAsyncInvokeResponse.invocationArn());

            return response;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.out.println(e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

    }

    public GenerateVideoResponse checkGenerationStatus(String invocationArn) {
        GenerateVideoResponse response = new GenerateVideoResponse();

        try (BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient bedrockClient =
getBedrockRuntimeAsyncClient()) {
            //creating async request to fetch status by invocation Arn
            GetAsyncInvokeRequest asyncRequest =
GetAsyncInvokeRequest.builder().invocationArn(invocationArn).build();

            CompletableFuture<GetAsyncInvokeResponse> asyncInvoke =
bedrockClient.getAsyncInvoke(asyncRequest);

            //blocking operation to wait for the AWS API response
            GetAsyncInvokeResponse asyncInvokeResponse = asyncInvoke.get();
            System.out.println("Invocation status =" +
asyncInvokeResponse.statusAsString());

            response.setExecutionArn(invocationArn);
            response.setStatus(asyncInvokeResponse.statusAsString());
            return response;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

    }

    private static BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient getBedrockRuntimeAsyncClient() {
        BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient bedrockClient =
 BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
        return bedrockClient;
    }

    private static Document prepareDocument(String prompt) {
        Document textToVideoParams = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putString("text", prompt)
                .build();

        Document videoGenerationConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putNumber("durationSeconds", 6)
                .putNumber("fps", 24)
                .putString("dimension", "1280x720")
                .build();

        Document novaRequest = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putString("taskType", "TEXT_VIDEO")
                .putDocument("textToVideoParams", textToVideoParams)
                .putDocument("videoGenerationConfig", videoGenerationConfig)
                .build();
        return novaRequest;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetAsyncInvoke
  - StartAsyncInvoke

Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/*
 This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
 The program interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
 input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
 */
public class BedrockScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    private static String defaultPrompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";
    private static WeatherTool weatherTool = new WeatherTool();

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int maxRecursions = 5;
    static BedrockActions bedrockActions = new BedrockActions();
    public static boolean interactive = true;

    private static final String systemPrompt = """
            You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
```

```
            the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
            If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and
 refer to it in your response.
            To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

            - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
            - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up
 information.
            - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
            - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.
            - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use
              emojis where appropriate.
            - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your
 purpose.
            - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools
 besides Weather_Tool.
            - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.
            """;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
                ==================================================

                This assistant provides current weather information for user-
specified locations.
                You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates.

                Example queries:
                - What's the weather like in New York?
                - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
                - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

                To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.
```

```
                P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using
English!
                Have fun and experiment with the app!
                """);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        try {
            runConversation(scanner);

        } catch (Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("There was a problem running the scenario: " +
ex.getMessage());
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature
Scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
     */
    private static List<Message> runConversation(Scanner scanner) {
        List<Message> conversation = new ArrayList<>();

        // Get the first user input
        String userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        System.out.println(userInput);

        while (userInput != null) {
            ContentBlock block = ContentBlock.builder()
                    .text(userInput)
                    .build();

            List<ContentBlock> blockList = new ArrayList<>();
            blockList.add(block);

            Message message = Message.builder()
                    .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                    .content(blockList)
```

```
                    .build();

            conversation.add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock.
            ConverseResponse bedrockResponse =
sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0.
            processModelResponse(bedrockResponse, conversation, maxRecursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application.
            userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        }
        printFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /**
     * Processes the response from the model and updates the conversation
accordingly.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model
     * @param conversation  the ongoing conversation
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursions allowed
     */
    private static void processModelResponse(ConverseResponse modelResponse,
List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0) {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            System.out.println("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.add(modelResponse.output().message());

        String modelResponseVal = modelResponse.stopReasonAsString();
        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("tool_use") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
handler
            handleToolUse(modelResponse.output(), conversation, maxRecursion - 1);
```

```
        }

        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("end_turn") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process

PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.output().message().content().get(0).text());
            if (!interactive) {
                defaultPrompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Handles the use of a tool by the model in a conversation.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model, which may include a tool
use request
     * @param conversation  the current conversation, which will be updated with the
tool use results
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursive calls allowed to handle
the model's response
     */
    private static void handleToolUse(ConverseOutput modelResponse, List<Message>
conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        List<ContentBlock> toolResults = new ArrayList<>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for (ContentBlock contentBlock : modelResponse.message().content()) {
            if (contentBlock.text() != null && !contentBlock.text().isEmpty()) {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.text());
            }

            if (contentBlock.toolUse() != null) {
                ToolResponse toolResponse = invokeTool(contentBlock.toolUse());

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                List<ToolResultContentBlock> contentBlockList = new ArrayList<>();
                ToolResultContentBlock block = ToolResultContentBlock.builder()
                        .json(toolResponse.getContent())
                        .build();
                contentBlockList.add(block);
```

```
                ToolResultBlock toolResultBlock = ToolResultBlock.builder()
                        .toolUseId(toolResponse.getToolUseId())
                        .content(contentBlockList)
                        .build();

                ContentBlock contentBlock1 = ContentBlock.builder()
                        .toolResult(toolResultBlock)
                        .build();

                toolResults.add(contentBlock1);
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        Message message = Message.builder()
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .content(toolResults)
                .build();

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        //conversation.add(message);
        conversation.add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned its
final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        processModelResponse(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    // Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
    // If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    private static ToolResponse invokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload) {
        String toolName = payload.name();

        if (Objects.equals(toolName, "Weather_Tool")) {
            Map<String, Document> inputData = payload.input().asMap();
            printToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
```

```
            Document weatherResponse =
weatherTool.fetchWeatherData(inputData.get("latitude").toString(),
inputData.get("longitude").toString());

            ToolResponse toolResponse = new ToolResponse();
            toolResponse.setContent(weatherResponse);
            toolResponse.setToolUseId(payload.toolUseId());
            return toolResponse;
        } else {
            String errorMessage = "The requested tool with name " + toolName + "
does not exist.";
            System.out.println(errorMessage);
            return null;
        }
    }

    public static void printToolUse(String toolName, Map<String, Document>
inputData) {
        System.out.println("Invoking tool: " + toolName + " with input: " +
inputData.get("latitude").toString() + ", " + inputData.get("longitude").toString()
+ "...");
    }

    private static void PrintModelResponse(String message) {
        System.out.println("\tThe model's response:\n");
        System.out.println(message);
        System.out.println("");
    }

    private static ConverseResponse sendConversationToBedrock(List<Message>
conversation) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        try {
            return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, weatherTool.getToolSpec());
        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
             System.err.println("Model is not ready. Please try again later: " +
ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Bedrock service error: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (RuntimeException ex) {
```

```
            System.err.println("Unexpected error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        }
    }

    private static ConverseResponse sendConversationToBedrockwithSpec(List<Message>
conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, toolSpec);
    }

    public static String getUserInput(String prompt, Scanner scanner) {
        String userInput = defaultPrompt;
        if (interactive) {
            System.out.println("*".repeat(80));
            System.out.println(prompt + " (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = scanner.nextLine();
        }

        if (userInput == null || userInput.trim().isEmpty()) {
            return getUserInput("\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g., the
name of a city", scanner);
        }

        if (userInput.equalsIgnoreCase("x")) {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
```

```
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void printFooter() {
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope
 you
                learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today!

                For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a
 look at:
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
                ==================================================
                """);
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
public class WeatherTool {

    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(WeatherTool.class);
    private static java.net.http.HttpClient httpClient = null;

    /**
     * Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
     * defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
     * For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.
     *
     * @return The tool specification for the Weather tool.
     */
```

```
    public ToolSpecification getToolSpec() {
        Map<String, Document> latitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        latitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        latitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
latitude of the location."));

        // Create the nested "longitude" object
        Map<String, Document> longitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        longitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        longitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
longitude of the location."));

        // Create the "properties" object
        Map<String, Document> propertiesMap = new HashMap<>();
        propertiesMap.put("latitude", Document.fromMap(latitudeMap));
        propertiesMap.put("longitude", Document.fromMap(longitudeMap));

        // Create the "required" array
        List<Document> requiredList = new ArrayList<>();
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("latitude"));
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("longitude"));

        // Create the root object
        Map<String, Document> rootMap = new HashMap<>();
        rootMap.put("type", Document.fromString("object"));
        rootMap.put("properties", Document.fromMap(propertiesMap));
        rootMap.put("required", Document.fromList(requiredList));

        // Now create the Document representing the JSON schema
        Document document = Document.fromMap(rootMap);

        ToolSpecification specification = ToolSpecification.builder()
            .name("Weather_Tool")
            .description("Get the current weather for a given location, based on its
WGS84 coordinates.")
            .inputSchema(ToolInputSchema.builder()
                .json(document)
                .build())
            .build();

        return specification;
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude.
     *
     * @param latitude  the latitude coordinate
     * @param longitude the longitude coordinate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the weather data as a JSON
 string
     */
    public Document fetchWeatherData(String latitude, String longitude) {
        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();

        // Ensure no extra double quotes
        latitude = latitude.replace("\"", "");
        longitude = longitude.replace("\"", "");

        String endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
        String url = String.format("%s?latitude=%s&longitude=
%s&current_weather=True", endpoint, latitude, longitude);

        HttpRequest request = HttpRequest.newBuilder()
            .uri(URI.create(url))
            .build();

        try {
            HttpResponse<String> response = httpClient.send(request,
 HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.ofString());
            if (response.statusCode() == 200) {
                String weatherJson = response.body();
                System.out.println(weatherJson);
                ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                Map<String, Object> rawMap = objectMapper.readValue(weatherJson, new
 TypeReference<Map<String, Object>>() {});
                Map<String, Document> documentMap = convertToDocumentMap(rawMap);


                Document weatherDocument = Document.fromMap(documentMap);
                System.out.println(weatherDocument);
                return weatherDocument;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data: " +
 response.statusCode());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.out.println("Error fetching weather data: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data", e);
```

```
        }

    }

    private static Map<String, Document> convertToDocumentMap(Map<String, Object>
 inputMap) {
        Map<String, Document> result = new HashMap<>();
        for (Map.Entry<String, Object> entry : inputMap.entrySet()) {
            result.put(entry.getKey(), convertToDocument(entry.getValue()));
        }
        return result;
    }

    // Convert different types of Objects to Document
    private static Document convertToDocument(Object value) {
        if (value instanceof Map) {
            return Document.fromMap(convertToDocumentMap((Map<String, Object>)
 value));
        } else if (value instanceof Integer) {
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromInteger((Integer) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Double) {  //
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromDouble((Double) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Boolean) {
            return Document.fromBoolean((Boolean) value);
        } else if (value instanceof String) {
            return Document.fromString((String) value);
        }
        return Document.fromNull(); // Handle null values safely
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
    /**
     * Sends an asynchronous converse request to the AI model.
     *
     * @param modelId      the unique identifier of the AI model to be used for the
 converse request
     * @param systemPrompt the system prompt to be included in the converse request
     * @param conversation a list of messages representing the conversation history
     * @param toolSpec     the specification of the tool to be used in the converse
 request
```

```
     * @return the converse response received from the AI model
     */
    public ConverseResponse sendConverseRequestAsync(String modelId, String
systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec) {
        List<Tool> toolList = new ArrayList<>();
        Tool tool = Tool.builder()
            .toolSpec(toolSpec)
            .build();

        toolList.add(tool);

        ToolConfiguration configuration = ToolConfiguration.builder()
            .tools(toolList)
            .build();

        SystemContentBlock block = SystemContentBlock.builder()
            .text(systemPrompt)
            .build();

        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
            .modelId(modelId)
            .system(block)
            .messages(conversation)
            .toolConfig(configuration)
            .build();

        try {
            ConverseResponse response = getClient().converse(request).join();
            return response;

        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Model is not ready: " + ex.getMessage(),
ex);
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to converse with Bedrock model: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
 * with an asynchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client to generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
        // - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and
 cost
        // - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video,
 and text
        // - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed,
 and cost
        //
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Create the message
        // The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the
 user
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Step 4: Configure the request
        // Optional parameters to control the model's response:
        // - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
        // - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
        //   OR
        // - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
        // Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                                .maxTokens(500)     // The maximum response length
                                .temperature(0.5F)  // Using temperature for
 randomness control
                        //.topP(0.9F)       // Alternative: use topP instead of
 temperature
                ).build();
```

```
        // Step 5: Send and process the request asynchronously
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Extract and return the generated text from the response
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ConverseResponse> asyncResponse =
 client.converse(request);
            return asyncResponse.thenApply(
                    response -> response.output().message().content().get(0).text()
            ).get();

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String response = converseAsync();
        System.out.println(response);
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
 * with a synchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client to generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
```

```
public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeClient client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
        // - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and
 cost
        // - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video,
 and text
        // - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed,
 and cost
        //
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Create the message
        // The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the
 user
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Step 4: Configure the request
        // Optional parameters to control the model's response:
        // - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
        // - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
        //   OR
        // - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
        // Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
```

```
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                                .maxTokens(500)     // The maximum response length
                                .temperature(0.5F)  // Using temperature for
 randomness control
                        //.topP(0.9F)       // Alternative: use topP instead of
 temperature
                ).build();

        // Step 5: Send and process the request
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Extract and return the generated text from the response
        try {
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request);
            return response.output().message().content().get(0).text();

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String response = converse();
        System.out.println(response);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models with an
 * asynchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client to generate streaming text responses.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure a streaming request
 * - Set up a stream handler to process the response chunks
 * - Process the streaming response
 */
public class ConverseStream {

    public static void converseStream() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
```

```
        // Available Amazon Nova models and their characteristics:
        // - Amazon Nova Micro: Text-only model optimized for lowest latency and
 cost
        // - Amazon Nova Lite:  Fast, low-cost multimodal model for image, video,
 and text
        // - Amazon Nova Pro:   Advanced multimodal model balancing accuracy, speed,
 and cost
        //
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Create the message
        // The message includes the text prompt and specifies that it comes from the
 user
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 paragraph";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Step 4: Configure the request
        // Optional parameters to control the model's response:
        // - maxTokens: maximum number of tokens to generate
        // - temperature: randomness (max: 1.0, default: 0.7)
        //   OR
        // - topP: diversity of word choice (max: 1.0, default: 0.9)
        // Note: Use either temperature OR topP, but not both
        ConverseStreamRequest request = ConverseStreamRequest.builder()
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                                .maxTokens(500)     // The maximum response length
                                .temperature(0.5F)  // Using temperature for
 randomness control
                        //.topP(0.9F)       // Alternative: use topP instead of
 temperature
                ).build();

        // Step 5: Set up the stream handler
        // The stream handler processes chunks of the response as they arrive
        // - onContentBlockDelta: Processes each text chunk
```

```
        // - onError: Handles any errors during streaming
        var streamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            System.out.print(chunk.delta().text());
                            System.out.flush();  // Ensure immediate output of each
 chunk
                        }).build())
                .onError(err -> System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage()))
                .build();

        // Step 6: Send the streaming request and process the response
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Attach the handler to process response chunks as they arrive
        // - Handle any errors during streaming
        try {
            client.converseStream(request, streamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution of the scenario flow. This scenario orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
/*
 This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
 The program interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
 input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
 */
public class BedrockScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static String modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0";
    private static String defaultPrompt = "What is the weather like in Seattle?";
    private static WeatherTool weatherTool = new WeatherTool();

    // The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool use function.
    // This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
    private static int maxRecursions = 5;
    static BedrockActions bedrockActions = new BedrockActions();
    public static boolean interactive = true;

    private static final String systemPrompt = """
            You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-
specified locations using only
            the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the
 coordinates from the location yourself.
            If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and
 refer to it in your response.
            To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

            - Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each
 step.
```

```
            - Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up
 information.
            - Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
            - If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and
 suggest other options.
            - Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather
 reports concise. Sparingly use
              emojis where appropriate.
            - Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your
 purpose.
            - Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools
 besides Weather_Tool.
            - Complete the entire process until you have all required data before
 sending the complete response.
            """;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo!
                ==================================================

                This assistant provides current weather information for user-
specified locations.
                You can ask for weather details by providing the location name or
 coordinates.

                Example queries:
                - What's the weather like in New York?
                - Current weather for latitude 40.70, longitude -74.01
                - Is it warmer in Rome or Barcelona today?

                To exit the program, simply type 'x' and press Enter.

                P.S.: You're not limited to single locations, or even to using
 English!
                Have fun and experiment with the app!
                """);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        try {
            runConversation(scanner);
```

```
        } catch (Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("There was a problem running the scenario: " +
ex.getMessage());
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Amazon Bedrock Converse API with Tool Use Feature
Scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
     */
    private static List<Message> runConversation(Scanner scanner) {
        List<Message> conversation = new ArrayList<>();

        // Get the first user input
        String userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        System.out.println(userInput);

        while (userInput != null) {
            ContentBlock block = ContentBlock.builder()
                    .text(userInput)
                    .build();

            List<ContentBlock> blockList = new ArrayList<>();
            blockList.add(block);

            Message message = Message.builder()
                    .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                    .content(blockList)
                    .build();

            conversation.add(message);

            // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock.
            ConverseResponse bedrockResponse =
sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);
```

```
            // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0.
            processModelResponse(bedrockResponse, conversation, maxRecursions);

            // Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application.
            userInput = getUserInput("Your weather info request:", scanner);
        }
        printFooter();
        return conversation;
    }

    /**
     * Processes the response from the model and updates the conversation
accordingly.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model
     * @param conversation  the ongoing conversation
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursions allowed
     */
    private static void processModelResponse(ConverseResponse modelResponse,
List<Message> conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        if (maxRecursion <= 0) {
            // Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            System.out.println("\tWarning: Maximum number of recursions reached.
Please try again.");
        }

        // Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.add(modelResponse.output().message());

        String modelResponseVal = modelResponse.stopReasonAsString();
        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("tool_use") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
handler
            handleToolUse(modelResponse.output(), conversation, maxRecursion - 1);
        }

        if (modelResponseVal.compareTo("end_turn") == 0) {
            // If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text,
and finish the process

PrintModelResponse(modelResponse.output().message().content().get(0).text());
            if (!interactive) {
```

```
                defaultPrompt = "x";
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Handles the use of a tool by the model in a conversation.
     *
     * @param modelResponse the response from the model, which may include a tool
use request
     * @param conversation  the current conversation, which will be updated with the
tool use results
     * @param maxRecursion  the maximum number of recursive calls allowed to handle
the model's response
     */
    private static void handleToolUse(ConverseOutput modelResponse, List<Message>
conversation, int maxRecursion) {
        List<ContentBlock> toolResults = new ArrayList<>();

        // The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for (ContentBlock contentBlock : modelResponse.message().content()) {
            if (contentBlock.text() != null && !contentBlock.text().isEmpty()) {
                // If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                PrintModelResponse(contentBlock.text());
            }

            if (contentBlock.toolUse() != null) {
                ToolResponse toolResponse = invokeTool(contentBlock.toolUse());

                // Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of
results
                List<ToolResultContentBlock> contentBlockList = new ArrayList<>();
                ToolResultContentBlock block = ToolResultContentBlock.builder()
                        .json(toolResponse.getContent())
                        .build();
                contentBlockList.add(block);

                ToolResultBlock toolResultBlock = ToolResultBlock.builder()
                        .toolUseId(toolResponse.getToolUseId())
                        .content(contentBlockList)
                        .build();

                ContentBlock contentBlock1 = ContentBlock.builder()
                        .toolResult(toolResultBlock)
```

```
                        .build();

                toolResults.add(contentBlock1);
            }
        }

        // Embed the tool results in a new user message
        Message message = Message.builder()
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .content(toolResults)
                .build();

        // Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        //conversation.add(message);
        conversation.add(message);

        // Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        var response = sendConversationToBedrock(conversation);

        // Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned its
final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        processModelResponse(response, conversation, maxRecursion);
    }

    // Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
    // If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
    private static ToolResponse invokeTool(ToolUseBlock payload) {
        String toolName = payload.name();

        if (Objects.equals(toolName, "Weather_Tool")) {
            Map<String, Document> inputData = payload.input().asMap();
            printToolUse(toolName, inputData);

            // Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided
            Document weatherResponse =
weatherTool.fetchWeatherData(inputData.get("latitude").toString(),
inputData.get("longitude").toString());

            ToolResponse toolResponse = new ToolResponse();
            toolResponse.setContent(weatherResponse);
            toolResponse.setToolUseId(payload.toolUseId());
            return toolResponse;
        } else {
```

```
            String errorMessage = "The requested tool with name " + toolName + "
does not exist.";
            System.out.println(errorMessage);
            return null;
        }
    }

    public static void printToolUse(String toolName, Map<String, Document>
inputData) {
        System.out.println("Invoking tool: " + toolName + " with input: " +
inputData.get("latitude").toString() + ", " + inputData.get("longitude").toString()
+ "...");
    }

    private static void PrintModelResponse(String message) {
        System.out.println("\tThe model's response:\n");
        System.out.println(message);
        System.out.println("");
    }

    private static ConverseResponse sendConversationToBedrock(List<Message>
conversation) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");

        try {
            return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, weatherTool.getToolSpec());
        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
             System.err.println("Model is not ready. Please try again later: " +
ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Bedrock service error: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        } catch (RuntimeException ex) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw ex;
        }
    }

    private static ConverseResponse sendConversationToBedrockwithSpec(List<Message>
conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec) {
        System.out.println("Calling Bedrock...");
```

```
        // Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return bedrockActions.sendConverseRequestAsync(modelId, systemPrompt,
conversation, toolSpec);
    }

    public static String getUserInput(String prompt, Scanner scanner) {
        String userInput = defaultPrompt;
        if (interactive) {
            System.out.println("*".repeat(80));
            System.out.println(prompt + " (x to exit): \n\t");
            userInput = scanner.nextLine();
        }

        if (userInput == null || userInput.trim().isEmpty()) {
            return getUserInput("\tPlease enter your weather info request, e.g., the
name of a city", scanner);
        }

        if (userInput.equalsIgnoreCase("x")) {
            return null;
        }

        return userInput;
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void printFooter() {
```

```
        System.out.println("""
                ==================================================
                Thank you for checking out the Amazon Bedrock Tool Use demo. We hope
 you
                learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today!

                For more Bedrock examples in different programming languages, have a
 look at:
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
service_code_examples.html
                ==================================================
                """);
    }
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This file defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
public class WeatherTool {

    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(WeatherTool.class);
    private static java.net.http.HttpClient httpClient = null;

    /**
     * Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
     * defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
     * For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.
     *
     * @return The tool specification for the Weather tool.
     */
    public ToolSpecification getToolSpec() {
        Map<String, Document> latitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        latitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
        latitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
 latitude of the location."));

        // Create the nested "longitude" object
        Map<String, Document> longitudeMap = new HashMap<>();
        longitudeMap.put("type", Document.fromString("string"));
```

```
        longitudeMap.put("description", Document.fromString("Geographical WGS84
longitude of the location."));

        // Create the "properties" object
        Map<String, Document> propertiesMap = new HashMap<>();
        propertiesMap.put("latitude", Document.fromMap(latitudeMap));
        propertiesMap.put("longitude", Document.fromMap(longitudeMap));

        // Create the "required" array
        List<Document> requiredList = new ArrayList<>();
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("latitude"));
        requiredList.add(Document.fromString("longitude"));

        // Create the root object
        Map<String, Document> rootMap = new HashMap<>();
        rootMap.put("type", Document.fromString("object"));
        rootMap.put("properties", Document.fromMap(propertiesMap));
        rootMap.put("required", Document.fromList(requiredList));

        // Now create the Document representing the JSON schema
        Document document = Document.fromMap(rootMap);

        ToolSpecification specification = ToolSpecification.builder()
            .name("Weather_Tool")
            .description("Get the current weather for a given location, based on its
WGS84 coordinates.")
            .inputSchema(ToolInputSchema.builder()
                .json(document)
                .build())
            .build();

        return specification;
    }

    /**
     * Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude.
     *
     * @param latitude  the latitude coordinate
     * @param longitude the longitude coordinate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the weather data as a JSON
string
     */
    public Document fetchWeatherData(String latitude, String longitude) {
        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();
```

```
        // Ensure no extra double quotes
        latitude = latitude.replace("\"", "");
        longitude = longitude.replace("\"", "");

        String endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
        String url = String.format("%s?latitude=%s&longitude=
%s&current_weather=True", endpoint, latitude, longitude);

        HttpRequest request = HttpRequest.newBuilder()
            .uri(URI.create(url))
            .build();

        try {
            HttpResponse<String> response = httpClient.send(request,
 HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.ofString());
            if (response.statusCode() == 200) {
                String weatherJson = response.body();
                System.out.println(weatherJson);
                ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                Map<String, Object> rawMap = objectMapper.readValue(weatherJson, new
 TypeReference<Map<String, Object>>() {});
                Map<String, Document> documentMap = convertToDocumentMap(rawMap);


                Document weatherDocument = Document.fromMap(documentMap);
                System.out.println(weatherDocument);
                return weatherDocument;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data: " +
 response.statusCode());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.out.println("Error fetching weather data: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Error fetching weather data", e);
        }

    }

    private static Map<String, Document> convertToDocumentMap(Map<String, Object>
 inputMap) {
        Map<String, Document> result = new HashMap<>();
        for (Map.Entry<String, Object> entry : inputMap.entrySet()) {
            result.put(entry.getKey(), convertToDocument(entry.getValue()));
```

```
        }
        return result;
    }

    // Convert different types of Objects to Document
    private static Document convertToDocument(Object value) {
        if (value instanceof Map) {
            return Document.fromMap(convertToDocumentMap((Map<String, Object>)
 value));
        } else if (value instanceof Integer) {
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromInteger((Integer) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Double) {  //
            return Document.fromNumber(SdkNumber.fromDouble((Double) value));
        } else if (value instanceof Boolean) {
            return Document.fromBoolean((Boolean) value);
        } else if (value instanceof String) {
            return Document.fromString((String) value);
        }
        return Document.fromNull(); // Handle null values safely
    }
}
```

The Converse API action with a tool configuration.

```
    /**
     * Sends an asynchronous converse request to the AI model.
     *
     * @param modelId      the unique identifier of the AI model to be used for the
 converse request
     * @param systemPrompt the system prompt to be included in the converse request
     * @param conversation a list of messages representing the conversation history
     * @param toolSpec     the specification of the tool to be used in the converse
 request
     * @return the converse response received from the AI model
     */
    public ConverseResponse sendConverseRequestAsync(String modelId, String
 systemPrompt, List<Message> conversation, ToolSpecification toolSpec) {
        List<Tool> toolList = new ArrayList<>();
        Tool tool = Tool.builder()
            .toolSpec(toolSpec)
            .build();
```

```
        toolList.add(tool);

        ToolConfiguration configuration = ToolConfiguration.builder()
            .tools(toolList)
            .build();

        SystemContentBlock block = SystemContentBlock.builder()
            .text(systemPrompt)
            .build();

        ConverseRequest request = ConverseRequest.builder()
            .modelId(modelId)
            .system(block)
            .messages(conversation)
            .toolConfig(configuration)
            .build();

        try {
            ConverseResponse response = getClient().converse(request).join();
            return response;

        } catch (ModelNotReadyException ex) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Model is not ready: " + ex.getMessage(),
ex);
        } catch (BedrockRuntimeException ex) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to converse with Bedrock model: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelResponse;

import java.security.SecureRandom;
import java.util.Base64;

import static com.example.bedrockruntime.libs.ImageTools.displayImage;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Canvas to generate images.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Configure the image generation parameters
 * - Send a request to generate an image
 * - Process the response and handle the generated image
 */
public class InvokeModel {

    public static byte[] invokeModel() {

        // Step 1: Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        // The runtime client handles the communication with AI models on Amazon
 Bedrock
        BedrockRuntimeClient client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        // Step 2: Specify which model to use
        // For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        String modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0";

        // Step 3: Configure the generation parameters and create the request
        // First, set the main parameters:
        // - prompt: Text description of the image to generate
        // - seed: Random number for reproducible generation (0 to 858,993,459)
        String prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";
        int seed = new SecureRandom().nextInt(858_993_460);

        // Then, create the request using a template with the following structure:
        // - taskType: TEXT_IMAGE (specifies text-to-image generation)
        // - textToImageParams: Contains the text prompt
        // - imageGenerationConfig: Contains optional generation settings (seed,
 quality, etc.)
        // For a list of available request parameters, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/nova/latest/userguide/image-gen-req-resp-
structure.html
        String request = """
                {
                    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
                    "textToImageParams": {
                        "text": "{{prompt}}"
                    },
                    "imageGenerationConfig": {
                        "seed": {{seed}},
                        "quality": "standard"
                    }
                }"""
                .replace("{{prompt}}", prompt)
                .replace("{{seed}}", String.valueOf(seed));

        // Step 4: Send and process the request
        // - Send the request to the model using InvokeModelResponse
        // - Extract the Base64-encoded image from the JSON response
        // - Convert the encoded image to a byte array and return it
        try {
            InvokeModelResponse response = client.invokeModel(builder -> builder
                    .modelId(modelId)
```

```
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(request))
            );

            JSONObject responseBody = new
 JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());
            // Convert the Base64 string to byte array for better handling
            return Base64.getDecoder().decode(
                    new JSONPointer("/images/0").queryFrom(responseBody).toString()
            );

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s%n", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");
        byte[] imageData = invokeModel();
        displayImage(imageData);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Image Generator

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
// Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.security.SecureRandom;

import static com.example.bedrockruntime.libs.ImageTools.displayImage;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Image G1.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-image.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
                    "textToImageParams": { "text": "{{prompt}}" },
                    "imageGenerationConfig": { "seed": {{seed}} }
                }""";
```

```
        // Define the prompt for the image generation.
        var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";

        // Get a random 31-bit seed for the image generation (max. 2,147,483,647).
        var seed = new BigInteger(31, new SecureRandom());

        // Embed the prompt and seed in the model's native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate
                .replace("{{prompt}}", prompt)
                .replace("{{seed}}", seed.toString());

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated image data from the model's response.
            var base64ImageData = new JSONPointer("/
images/0").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();

            return base64ImageData;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");

        String base64ImageData = invokeModel();

        displayImage(base64ImageData);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText = response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
```

```
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach the
 handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";
```

```
        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-text.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"inputText\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/results/0/
outputText").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

public class InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-text.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"inputText\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text in
 real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/outputText").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
```

```
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text Embeddings

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to:

- Get started creating your first embedding.
- Create embeddings configuring the number of dimensions and normalization (V2 only).

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create your first embedding with Titan Text Embeddings V2.

```
// Generate and print an embedding with Amazon Titan Text Embeddings.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Embeddings V2.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-embed-text-v2:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-embed-text.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"inputText\": \"{{inputText}}\" }";

        // The text to convert into an embedding.
        var inputText = "Please recommend books with a theme similar to the movie
 'Inception'.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{inputText}}",
 inputText);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
```

```
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/
embedding").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

Invoke Titan Text Embeddings V2 configuring the number of dimensions and normalization.

```
    /**
     * Invoke Amazon Titan Text Embeddings V2 with additional inference parameters.
     *
     * @param inputText  - The text to convert to an embedding.
     * @param dimensions - The number of dimensions the output embeddings should
 have.
     *                   Values accepted by the model: 256, 512, 1024.
     * @param normalize  - A flag indicating whether or not to normalize the output
 embeddings.
     * @return The {@link JSONObject} representing the model's response.
     */
    public static JSONObject invokeModel(String inputText, int dimensions, boolean
 normalize) {
```

```
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Embed Text v2.0.
        var modelId = "amazon.titan-embed-text-v2:0";

        // Create the request for the model.
        var nativeRequest = """
                {
                    "inputText": "%s",
                    "dimensions": %d,
                    "normalize": %b
                }
                """.formatted(inputText, dimensions, normalize);

        // Encode and send the request.
        var response = client.invokeModel(request -> {
            request.body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest));
            request.modelId(modelId);
        });

        // Decode the model's response.
        var modelResponse = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

        // Extract and print the generated embedding and the input text token count.
        var embedding = modelResponse.getJSONArray("embedding");
        var inputTokenCount = modelResponse.getBigInteger("inputTextTokenCount");
        System.out.println("Embedding: " + embedding);
        System.out.println("\nInput token count: " + inputTokenCount);

        // Return the model's native response.
        return modelResponse;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
```

```
        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText =
 response.output().message().content().getFirst().text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
```

```
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
 response.output().message().content().getFirst().text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach the
 handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request.modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
                    "max_tokens": 512,
                    "temperature": 0.5,
                    "messages": [{
                        "role": "user",
                        "content": "{{prompt}}"
                    }]
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/content/0/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH
```

```
public class InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
        var modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
                    "max_tokens": 512,
                    "temperature": 0.5,
                    "messages": [{
                        "role": "user",
                        "content": "{{prompt}}"
                    }]
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();
```

```
        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text in
 real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());

                    // Extract and print the text from the content blocks.
                    if (Objects.equals(response.getString("type"),
 "content_block_delta")) {
                        var text = new JSONPointer("/delta/
text").queryFrom(response);
                        System.out.print(text);

                        // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                        completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                    }
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Reasoning

The following code example shows how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability with the asynchronous Bedrock runtime client.

```
import com.example.bedrockruntime.models.anthropicClaude.lib.ReasoningResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning
 capability
 * with an asynchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock async runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure reasoning parameters
 * - Send an asynchronous request with reasoning enabled
 * - Process both the reasoning output and final response
 */
public class ReasoningAsync {

    public static ReasoningResponse reasoningAsync() {
```

```
        // Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        var modelId = "us.anthropic.claude-3-7-sonnet-20250219-v1:0";

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(prompt))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Configure reasoning parameters with a 2000 token budget
        Document reasoningConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putDocument("thinking", Document.mapBuilder()
                        .putString("type", "enabled")
                        .putNumber("budget_tokens", 2000)
                        .build())
                .build();

        try {
            // Send message and reasoning configuration to the model
            CompletableFuture<ConverseResponse> asyncResponse =
 client.converse(request -> request
                    .additionalModelRequestFields(reasoningConfig)
                    .messages(message)
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Process the response asynchronously
            return asyncResponse.thenApply(response -> {

                        var content = response.output().message().content();
                        ReasoningContentBlock reasoning = null;
                        String text = null;
```

```
                        // Process each content block to find reasoning and response
 text
                        for (ContentBlock block : content) {
                            if (block.reasoningContent() != null) {
                                reasoning = block.reasoningContent();
                            } else if (block.text() != null) {
                                text = block.text();
                            }
                        }

                        return new ReasoningResponse(reasoning, text);
                    }
            ).get();

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Execute the example and display reasoning and final response
        ReasoningResponse response = reasoningAsync();
        System.out.println("\n<thinking>");
        System.out.println(response.reasoning().reasoningText());
        System.out.println("</thinking>\n");
        System.out.println(response.text());
    }
}
```

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability with the synchronous Bedrock runtime client.

```
import com.example.bedrockruntime.models.anthropicClaude.lib.ReasoningResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;
```

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning
 capability
 * with the synchronous Amazon Bedrock runtime client.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure reasoning parameters
 * - Send a request with reasoning enabled
 * - Process both the reasoning output and final response
 */
public class Reasoning {

    public static ReasoningResponse reasoning() {

        // Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        var modelId = "us.anthropic.claude-3-7-sonnet-20250219-v1:0";

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(prompt))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Configure reasoning parameters with a 2000 token budget
        Document reasoningConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putDocument("thinking", Document.mapBuilder()
                        .putString("type", "enabled")
                        .putNumber("budget_tokens", 2000)
                        .build())
                .build();

        try {
            // Send message and reasoning configuration to the model
            ConverseResponse bedrockResponse = client.converse(request -> request
```

```
                    .additionalModelRequestFields(reasoningConfig)
                    .messages(message)
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );


            // Extract both reasoning and final response
            var content = bedrockResponse.output().message().content();
            ReasoningContentBlock reasoning = null;
            String text = null;

            // Process each content block to find reasoning and response text
            for (ContentBlock block : content) {
                if (block.reasoningContent() != null) {
                    reasoning = block.reasoningContent();
                } else if (block.text() != null) {
                    text = block.text();
                }
            }

            return new ReasoningResponse(reasoning, text);

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Execute the example and display reasoning and final response
        ReasoningResponse response = reasoning();
        System.out.println("\n<thinking>");
        System.out.println(response.reasoning().reasoningText());
        System.out.println("</thinking>\n");
        System.out.println(response.text());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Reasoning with a streaming response

The following code example shows how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability on Amazon Bedrock

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning capability to generate streaming text responses.

```
import com.example.bedrockruntime.models.anthropicClaude.lib.ReasoningResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.*;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicReference;

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use Anthropic Claude 3.7 Sonnet's reasoning
 * capability to generate streaming text responses.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure a streaming request
 * - Set up a stream handler to process the response chunks
 * - Process the streaming response
 */
public class ReasoningStream {

    public static ReasoningResponse reasoningStream() {

        // Create the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        var modelId = "us.anthropic.claude-3-7-sonnet-20250219-v1:0";

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(prompt))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Configure reasoning parameters with a 2000 token budget
        Document reasoningConfig = Document.mapBuilder()
                .putDocument("thinking", Document.mapBuilder()
                        .putString("type", "enabled")
                        .putNumber("budget_tokens", 2000)
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Configure the request with the message, model ID, and reasoning config
        ConverseStreamRequest request = ConverseStreamRequest.builder()
                .additionalModelRequestFields(reasoningConfig)
                .messages(message)
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        StringBuilder reasoning = new StringBuilder();
        StringBuilder text = new StringBuilder();
        AtomicReference<ReasoningResponse> finalresponse = new AtomicReference<>();

        // Set up the stream handler to processes chunks of the response as they
 arrive
        var streamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            ContentBlockDelta delta = chunk.delta();
                            if (delta.reasoningContent() != null) {
                                if (reasoning.isEmpty()) {
                                    System.out.println("\n<thinking>");
                                }
```

```
                                if (delta.reasoningContent().text() != null) {

System.out.print(delta.reasoningContent().text());

reasoning.append(delta.reasoningContent().text());
                                }
                            } else if (delta.text() != null) {
                                if (text.isEmpty()) {
                                    System.out.println("\n</thinking>\n");
                                }
                                System.out.print(delta.text());
                                text.append(delta.text());
                            }
                            System.out.flush();  // Ensure immediate output of each
chunk
                        }).build())
                .onComplete(() -> finalresponse.set(new ReasoningResponse(
                        ReasoningContentBlock.fromReasoningText(t ->
t.text(reasoning.toString())),
                        text.toString()
                )))
                .onError(err -> System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
err.getMessage()))
                .build();

        // Step 6: Send the streaming request and process the response
        // - Send the request to the model
        // - Attach the handler to process response chunks as they arrive
        // - Handle any errors during streaming
        try {
            client.converseStream(request, streamHandler).get();
            return finalresponse.get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        reasoningStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Cohere Command

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
```

```
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText = response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
```

```
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
```

```
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach the
handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request.modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModel: Command R and R+

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class Command_R_InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command-r-plus.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"message\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModel: Command and Command Light

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class Command_InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
```

```
        var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/generations/0/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream: Command R and R+

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

public class Command_R_InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {
```

```
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-r-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command-r-plus.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"message\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text in
 real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/text").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);
```

```
                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream: Command and Command Light

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

public class Command_InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
        var modelId = "cohere.command-light-text-v14";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
cohere-command.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{prompt}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";
```

```
        // Embed the prompt in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text in
 real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/generations/0/
text").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Meta Llama

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
```

```
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText = response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();
```

```
        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Meta Llama
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
```

```
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach the
handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class Llama3_InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
meta.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
        var instruction = (
                "<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>\\n" +
                "{{prompt}} <|eot_id|>\\n" +
                "<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>\\n"
        ).replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/
generation").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
```

```
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH
```

```
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

public class Llama3_InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
        var modelId = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
meta.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
        var instruction = (
                "<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>\\n" +
                "{{prompt}} <|eot_id|>\\n" +
                "<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>\\n"
        ).replace("{{prompt}}", prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
```

```
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text in
 real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/generation").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Mistral AI

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

public class Converse {

    public static String converse() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();


        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
            ConverseResponse response = client.converse(request -> request
                    .modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)));

            // Retrieve the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
            var responseText = response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converse();
    }
}
```

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API with the async Java client.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral
// with the async Java client.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseAsync {

    public static String converseAsync() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Send the message with a basic inference configuration.
        var request = client.converse(params -> params
                .modelId(modelId)
                .messages(message)
                .inferenceConfig(config -> config
```

```
                        .maxTokens(512)
                        .temperature(0.5F)
                        .topP(0.9F))
        );

        // Prepare a future object to handle the asynchronous response.
        CompletableFuture<String> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        // Handle the response or error using the future object.
        request.whenComplete((response, error) -> {
            if (error == null) {
                // Extract the generated text from Bedrock's response object.
                String responseText =
 response.output().message().content().get(0).text();
                future.complete(responseText);
            } else {
                future.completeExceptionally(error);
            }
        });

        try {
            // Wait for the future object to complete and retrieve the generated
 text.
            String responseText = future.get();
            System.out.println(responseText);

            return responseText;

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId, e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        converseAsync();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the Converse API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message;

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

public class ConverseStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // Create the input text and embed it in a message object with the user
 role.
        var inputText = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        var message = Message.builder()
                .content(ContentBlock.fromText(inputText))
                .role(ConversationRole.USER)
                .build();

        // Create a handler to extract and print the response text in real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler = ConverseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(ConverseStreamResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                        .onContentBlockDelta(chunk -> {
                            String responseText = chunk.delta().text();
                            System.out.print(responseText);
                        }).build()
                ).onError(err ->
                        System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 err.getMessage())
                ).build();

        try {
            // Send the message with a basic inference configuration and attach the
 handler.
            client.converseStream(request -> request.modelId(modelId)
                    .messages(message)
                    .inferenceConfig(config -> config
                            .maxTokens(512)
                            .temperature(0.5F)
                            .topP(0.9F)
                    ), responseStreamHandler).get();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral models, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
mistral-text-completion.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
        var instruction = "<s>[INST] {{prompt}} [/INST]\\n".replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated text from the model's response.
            var text = new JSONPointer("/outputs/0/
text").queryFrom(responseBody).toString();
            System.out.println(text);

            return text;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        invokeModel();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral AI models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral
// and print the response stream.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

import java.util.concurrent.ExecutionException;

import static
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseH

public class InvokeModelWithResponseStream {

    public static String invokeModelWithResponseStream() {
```

```
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
        var modelId = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0";

        // The InvokeModelWithResponseStream API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
mistral-text-completion.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = "{ \"prompt\": \"{{instruction}}\" }";

        // Define the prompt for the model.
        var prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line.";

        // Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
        var instruction = "<s>[INST] {{prompt}} [/INST]\\n".replace("{{prompt}}",
 prompt);

        // Embed the instruction in the the native request payload.
        var nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate.replace("{{instruction}}",
 instruction);

        // Create a request with the model ID and the model's native request
 payload.
        var request = InvokeModelWithResponseStreamRequest.builder()
                .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                .modelId(modelId)
                .build();

        // Prepare a buffer to accumulate the generated response text.
        var completeResponseTextBuffer = new StringBuilder();

        // Prepare a handler to extract, accumulate, and print the response text in
 real-time.
        var responseStreamHandler =
 InvokeModelWithResponseStreamResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(Visitor.builder().onChunk(chunk -> {
```

```
                    // Extract and print the text from the model's native response.
                    var response = new JSONObject(chunk.bytes().asUtf8String());
                    var text = new JSONPointer("/outputs/0/
text").queryFrom(response);
                    System.out.print(text);

                    // Append the text to the response text buffer.
                    completeResponseTextBuffer.append(text);
                }).build()).build();

        try {
            // Send the request and wait for the handler to process the response.
            client.invokeModelWithResponseStream(request,
 responseStreamHandler).get();

            // Return the complete response text.
            return completeResponseTextBuffer.toString();

        } catch (ExecutionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.printf("Can't invoke '%s': %s", modelId,
 e.getCause().getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {
        invokeModelWithResponseStream();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Stable Diffusion

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
// Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

import org.json.JSONObject;
import org.json.JSONPointer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkClientException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.security.SecureRandom;

import static com.example.bedrockruntime.libs.ImageTools.displayImage;

public class InvokeModel {

    public static String invokeModel() {

        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        // Replace the DefaultCredentialsProvider with your preferred credentials
 provider.
        var client = BedrockRuntimeClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Stable Diffusion XL v1.
        var modelId = "stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1";

        // The InvokeModel API uses the model's native payload.
        // Learn more about the available inference parameters and response fields
 at:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
diffusion-1-0-text-image.html
        var nativeRequestTemplate = """
                {
                    "text_prompts": [{ "text": "{{prompt}}" }],
                    "style_preset": "{{style}}",
                    "seed": {{seed}}
                }""";

        // Define the prompt for the image generation.
        var prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot";

        // Get a random 32-bit seed for the image generation (max. 4,294,967,295).
        var seed = new BigInteger(31, new SecureRandom());

        // Choose a style preset.
        var style = "cinematic";

        // Embed the prompt, seed, and style in the model's native request payload.
        String nativeRequest = nativeRequestTemplate
                .replace("{{prompt}}", prompt)
                .replace("{{seed}}", seed.toString())
                .replace("{{style}}", style);

        try {
            // Encode and send the request to the Bedrock Runtime.
            var response = client.invokeModel(request -> request
                    .body(SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(nativeRequest))
                    .modelId(modelId)
            );

            // Decode the response body.
            var responseBody = new JSONObject(response.body().asUtf8String());

            // Retrieve the generated image data from the model's response.
            var base64ImageData = new JSONPointer("/artifacts/0/base64")
                    .queryFrom(responseBody)
                    .toString();

            return base64ImageData;

        } catch (SdkClientException e) {
            System.err.printf("ERROR: Can't invoke '%s'. Reason: %s", modelId,
 e.getMessage());
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Generating image. This may take a few seconds...");

        String base64ImageData = invokeModel();

        displayImage(base64ImageData);
    }


}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

CloudFront examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with CloudFront.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateDistribution`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDistribution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example uses an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket as a content origin.

After creating the distribution, the code creates a CloudFrontWaiter to wait until the distribution is deployed before returning the distribution.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.waiters.ResponseOrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Distribution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ItemSelection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Method;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ViewerProtocolPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.waiters.CloudFrontWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistribution {

        private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CreateDistribution.class);

        public static Distribution createDistribution(CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient, S3Client s3Client,
                        final String bucketName, final String keyGroupId, final
 String originAccessControlId) {

                final String region = s3Client.headBucket(b ->
 b.bucket(bucketName)).sdkHttpResponse().headers()
```

```
                                .get("x-amz-bucket-region").get(0);
                final String originDomain = bucketName + ".s3." + region +
".amazonaws.com";
                String originId = originDomain; // Use the originDomain value for
the originId.

                // The service API requires some deprecated methods, such as
                // DefaultCacheBehavior.Builder#minTTL and #forwardedValue.
                CreateDistributionResponse createDistResponse =
cloudFrontClient.createDistribution(builder -> builder
                                .distributionConfig(b1 -> b1
                                                .origins(b2 -> b2
                                                                .quantity(1)
                                                                .items(b3 -> b3

.domainName(originDomain)

.id(originId)

.s3OriginConfig(builder4 -> builder4

           .originAccessIdentity(

                           ""))

.originAccessControlId(

           originAccessControlId)))
                                                .defaultCacheBehavior(b2 -> b2

.viewerProtocolPolicy(ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)

.targetOriginId(originId)
                                                                .minTTL(200L)
                                                                .forwardedValues(b5
-> b5

.cookies(cp -> cp

           .forward(ItemSelection.NONE))

.queryString(true))
                                                                .trustedKeyGroups(b3
-> b3
```

```
 .quantity(1)

 .items(keyGroupId)

 .enabled(true))
                                                                .allowedMethods(b4 -
> b4

 .quantity(2)

 .items(Method.HEAD, Method.GET)

 .cachedMethods(b5 -> b5

            .quantity(2)

            .items(Method.HEAD,

                           Method.GET))))
                                                  .cacheBehaviors(b -> b
                                                                .quantity(1)
                                                                .items(b2 -> b2

 .pathPattern("/index.html")

 .viewerProtocolPolicy(

            ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)

 .targetOriginId(originId)

 .trustedKeyGroups(b3 -> b3

            .quantity(1)

            .items(keyGroupId)

            .enabled(true))

 .minTTL(200L)

 .forwardedValues(b4 -> b4
```

```
            .cookies(cp -> cp

                            .forward(ItemSelection.NONE))

            .queryString(true))

.allowedMethods(b5 -> b5.quantity(2)

            .items(Method.HEAD,

                            Method.GET)

            .cachedMethods(b6 -> b6

                            .quantity(2)

                            .items(Method.HEAD,

                                            Method.GET)))))
                                                .enabled(true)
                                                .comment("Distribution built with
java")

.callerReference(Instant.now().toString())));

                final Distribution distribution = createDistResponse.distribution();
                logger.info("Distribution created. DomainName: [{}]  Id: [{}]",
distribution.domainName(),
                                distribution.id());
                logger.info("Waiting for distribution to be deployed ...");
                try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
                        ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse>
responseOrException = cfWaiter
                                        .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
builder.id(distribution.id()))
                                        .matched();
                        responseOrException.response()
                                        .orElseThrow(() -> new
RuntimeException("Distribution not created"));
                        logger.info("Distribution deployed. DomainName: [{}]  Id:
[{}]", distribution.domainName(),
                                        distribution.id());
```

```
                }
                return distribution;
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDistribution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CloudFrontException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateFunctionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateFunctionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.FunctionConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.FunctionRuntime;
import java.io.InputStream;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateFunction {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                    <functionName> <filePath>

                Where:
                    functionName - The name of the function to create.\s
                    filePath - The path to a file that contains the application
logic for the function.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String functionName = args[0];
        String filePath = args[1];
        CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient = CloudFrontClient.builder()
                .region(Region.AWS_GLOBAL)
                .build();

        String funArn = createNewFunction(cloudFrontClient, functionName, filePath);
        System.out.println("The function ARN is " + funArn);
        cloudFrontClient.close();
    }

    public static String createNewFunction(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, String
functionName, String filePath) {
        try {
            InputStream fileIs =
CreateFunction.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream(filePath);
            SdkBytes functionCode = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(fileIs);

            FunctionConfig config = FunctionConfig.builder()
                    .comment("Created by using the CloudFront Java API")
                    .runtime(FunctionRuntime.CLOUDFRONT_JS_1_0)
                    .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest = CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .name(functionName)
                    .functionCode(functionCode)
                    .functionConfig(config)
                    .build();
```

```
            CreateFunctionResponse response =
 cloudFrontClient.createFunction(functionRequest);
            return response.functionSummary().functionMetadata().functionARN();

        } catch (CloudFrontException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateKeyGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A key group requires at least one public key that is used to verify signed URLs or cookies.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;

import java.util.UUID;

public class CreateKeyGroup {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CreateKeyGroup.class);

    public static String createKeyGroup(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, String
 publicKeyId) {
```

```
        String keyGroupId = cloudFrontClient.createKeyGroup(b -> b.keyGroupConfig(c
 -> c
                .items(publicKeyId)
                .name("JavaKeyGroup" + UUID.randomUUID())))
                .keyGroup().id();
        logger.info("KeyGroup created with ID: [{}]", keyGroupId);
        return keyGroupId;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreatePublicKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePublicKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following code example reads in a public key and uploads it to Amazon CloudFront.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreatePublicKeyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.IoUtils;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;

public class CreatePublicKey {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CreatePublicKey.class);
```

```
    public static String createPublicKey(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, String
 publicKeyFileName) {
        try (InputStream is =
 CreatePublicKey.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream(publicKeyFileName)) {
            String publicKeyString = IoUtils.toUtf8String(is);
            CreatePublicKeyResponse createPublicKeyResponse = cloudFrontClient
                    .createPublicKey(b -> b.publicKeyConfig(c -> c
                            .name("JavaCreatedPublicKey" + UUID.randomUUID())
                            .encodedKey(publicKeyString)
                            .callerReference(UUID.randomUUID().toString())));
            String createdPublicKeyId = createPublicKeyResponse.publicKey().id();
            logger.info("Public key created with id: [{}]", createdPublicKeyId);
            return createdPublicKeyId;

        } catch (IOException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePublicKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDistribution`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDistribution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following code example updates a distribution to *disabled*, uses a waiter that waits for the change to be deployed, then deletes the distribution.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.waiters.ResponseOrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeleteDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.waiters.CloudFrontWaiter;

public class DeleteDistribution {
        private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(DeleteDistribution.class);

        public static void deleteDistribution(final CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient, final String distributionId) {
                // First, disable the distribution by updating it.
                GetDistributionResponse response =
 cloudFrontClient.getDistribution(b -> b
                                .id(distributionId));
                String etag = response.eTag();
                DistributionConfig distConfig =
 response.distribution().distributionConfig();

                cloudFrontClient.updateDistribution(builder -> builder
                                .id(distributionId)
                                .distributionConfig(builder1 -> builder1

 .cacheBehaviors(distConfig.cacheBehaviors())

 .defaultCacheBehavior(distConfig.defaultCacheBehavior())
                                                .enabled(false)
                                                .origins(distConfig.origins())
                                                .comment(distConfig.comment())

 .callerReference(distConfig.callerReference())

 .defaultCacheBehavior(distConfig.defaultCacheBehavior())
                                                .priceClass(distConfig.priceClass())
                                                .aliases(distConfig.aliases())
                                                .logging(distConfig.logging())

 .defaultRootObject(distConfig.defaultRootObject())

 .customErrorResponses(distConfig.customErrorResponses())

 .httpVersion(distConfig.httpVersion())

 .isIPV6Enabled(distConfig.isIPV6Enabled())
```

```
 .restrictions(distConfig.restrictions())

 .viewerCertificate(distConfig.viewerCertificate())
                                                .webACLId(distConfig.webACLId())

 .originGroups(distConfig.originGroups()))
                                .ifMatch(etag));

                logger.info("Distribution [{}] is DISABLED, waiting for deployment
 before deleting ...",
                                distributionId);
                GetDistributionResponse distributionResponse;
                try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
 CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
                        ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse>
 responseOrException = cfWaiter
                                        .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
 builder.id(distributionId)).matched();
                        distributionResponse = responseOrException.response()
                                        .orElseThrow(() -> new
 RuntimeException("Could not disable distribution"));
                }

                DeleteDistributionResponse deleteDistributionResponse =
 cloudFrontClient
                                .deleteDistribution(builder -> builder
                                                .id(distributionId)

 .ifMatch(distributionResponse.eTag()));
                if (deleteDistributionResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                        logger.info("Distribution [{}] DELETED", distributionId);
                }
        }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDistribution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateDistribution`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateDistribution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Distribution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.UpdateDistributionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CloudFrontException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ModifyDistribution {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <id>\s

                Where:
                    id - the id value of the distribution.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String id = args[0];
```

```
        CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient = CloudFrontClient.builder()
                .region(Region.AWS_GLOBAL)
                .build();

        modDistribution(cloudFrontClient, id);
        cloudFrontClient.close();
    }

    public static void modDistribution(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, String
idVal) {
        try {
            // Get the Distribution to modify.
            GetDistributionRequest disRequest = GetDistributionRequest.builder()
                    .id(idVal)
                    .build();

            GetDistributionResponse response =
cloudFrontClient.getDistribution(disRequest);
            Distribution disObject = response.distribution();
            DistributionConfig config = disObject.distributionConfig();

            // Create a new DistributionConfig object and add new values to comment
and
            // aliases
            DistributionConfig config1 = DistributionConfig.builder()
                    .aliases(config.aliases()) // You can pass in new values here
                    .comment("New Comment")
                    .cacheBehaviors(config.cacheBehaviors())
                    .priceClass(config.priceClass())
                    .defaultCacheBehavior(config.defaultCacheBehavior())
                    .enabled(config.enabled())
                    .callerReference(config.callerReference())
                    .logging(config.logging())
                    .originGroups(config.originGroups())
                    .origins(config.origins())
                    .restrictions(config.restrictions())
                    .defaultRootObject(config.defaultRootObject())
                    .webACLId(config.webACLId())
                    .httpVersion(config.httpVersion())
                    .viewerCertificate(config.viewerCertificate())
                    .customErrorResponses(config.customErrorResponses())
                    .build();
```

```
            UpdateDistributionRequest updateDistributionRequest =
 UpdateDistributionRequest.builder()
                    .distributionConfig(config1)
                    .id(disObject.id())
                    .ifMatch(response.eTag())
                    .build();

            cloudFrontClient.updateDistribution(updateDistributionRequest);

        } catch (CloudFrontException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateDistribution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a multi-tenant distribution and distribution tenant

The following code example shows how to create a multi-tenant distribution and distribution tenant with various configurations.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example demonstrates how to create a multi-tenant distribution with parameters and wildcard certificate.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.waiters.ResponseOrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ConnectionMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Distribution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetDistributionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.HttpVersion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.Method;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.SSLSupportMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ViewerProtocolPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.waiters.CloudFrontWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateMultiTenantDistribution {
    public static Distribution
 CreateMultiTenantDistributionWithCert(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                    S3Client
 s3Client,
                                                                    final String
 bucketName,
                                                                    final String
 certificateArn) {
        // fetch the origin info if necessary
        final String region = s3Client.headBucket(b ->
 b.bucket(bucketName)).sdkHttpResponse().headers()
                .get("x-amz-bucket-region").get(0);
        final String originDomain = bucketName + ".s3." + region + ".amazonaws.com";
        String originId = originDomain; // Use the originDomain value for the
 originId.

        CreateDistributionResponse createDistResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistribution(builder -> builder
                .distributionConfig(b1 -> b1
                        .httpVersion(HttpVersion.HTTP2)
                        .enabled(true)
                        .comment("Template Distribution with cert built with java")
                        .connectionMode(ConnectionMode.TENANT_ONLY)
                        .callerReference(Instant.now().toString())
                        .viewerCertificate(certBuilder -> certBuilder
                                .acmCertificateArn(certificateArn)
                                .sslSupportMethod(SSLSupportMethod.SNI_ONLY))
                        .origins(b2 -> b2
                                .quantity(1)
                                .items(b3 -> b3
                                        .domainName(originDomain)
                                        .id(originId)
```

```
                                        .originPath("/{{tenantName}}")
                                        .s3OriginConfig(builder4 -> builder4
                                                .originAccessIdentity(
                                                        "")))
                        .tenantConfig(b5 -> b5
                                .parameterDefinitions(b6 -> b6
                                        .name("tenantName")
                                        .definition(b7 -> b7
                                                .stringSchema(b8 -> b8
                                                        .comment("tenantName value")
                                                        .defaultValue("root")
                                                        .required(false)))))
                        .defaultCacheBehavior(b2 -> b2

 .viewerProtocolPolicy(ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)
                                .targetOriginId(originId)
                                .cachePolicyId("658327ea-f89d-4fab-
a63d-7e88639e58f6") // CachingOptimized Policy
                                .allowedMethods(b4 -> b4
                                        .quantity(2)
                                        .items(Method.HEAD, Method.GET)))
                ));

        final Distribution distribution = createDistResponse.distribution();
        try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
 CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
            ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse> responseOrException =
 cfWaiter
                    .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
 builder.id(distribution.id()))
                    .matched();
            responseOrException.response()
                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Distribution not
 created"));
        }
        return distribution;
    }

    public static Distribution CreateMultiTenantDistributionNoCert(CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient,
                                                                   S3Client s3Client,
                                                                   final String
 bucketName) {
        // fetch the origin info if necessary
```

```
        final String region = s3Client.headBucket(b ->
 b.bucket(bucketName)).sdkHttpResponse().headers()
                .get("x-amz-bucket-region").get(0);
        final String originDomain = bucketName + ".s3." + region + ".amazonaws.com";
        String originId = originDomain; // Use the originDomain value for the
 originId.

        CreateDistributionResponse createDistResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistribution(builder -> builder
                .distributionConfig(b1 -> b1
                        .httpVersion(HttpVersion.HTTP2)
                        .enabled(true)
                        .comment("Template Distribution with cert built with java")
                        .connectionMode(ConnectionMode.TENANT_ONLY)
                        .callerReference(Instant.now().toString())
                        .origins(b2 -> b2
                                .quantity(1)
                                .items(b3 -> b3
                                        .domainName(originDomain)
                                        .id(originId)
                                        .originPath("/{{tenantName}}")
                                        .s3OriginConfig(builder4 -> builder4
                                                .originAccessIdentity(
                                                        "")))
                        .tenantConfig(b5 -> b5
                                .parameterDefinitions(b6 -> b6
                                        .name("tenantName")
                                        .definition(b7 -> b7
                                                .stringSchema(b8 -> b8
                                                        .comment("tenantName value")
                                                        .defaultValue("root")
                                                        .required(false)))))
                        .defaultCacheBehavior(b2 -> b2

 .viewerProtocolPolicy(ViewerProtocolPolicy.ALLOW_ALL)
                                .targetOriginId(originId)
                                .cachePolicyId("658327ea-f89d-4fab-
a63d-7e88639e58f6") // CachingOptimized Policy
                                .allowedMethods(b4 -> b4
                                        .quantity(2)
                                        .items(Method.HEAD, Method.GET)))
                ));

        final Distribution distribution = createDistResponse.distribution();
```

```
        try (CloudFrontWaiter cfWaiter =
 CloudFrontWaiter.builder().client(cloudFrontClient).build()) {
            ResponseOrException<GetDistributionResponse> responseOrException =
 cfWaiter
                    .waitUntilDistributionDeployed(builder ->
 builder.id(distribution.id()))
                    .matched();
            responseOrException.response()
                    .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Distribution not
 created"));
        }
        return distribution;
    }
}
```

The following example demonstrates how to create a distribution tenant associated with that template, including utilizing the parameter we declared above. Note that we don't need to add certificate info here because our domain is already covered by the parent template.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant createDistributionTenantNoCert(CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient,
                                                                    Route53Client
 route53Client,
                                                                    String
 distributionId,
                                                                    String domain,
```

```
                                                                        String
hostedZoneId) {
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
                .enabled(false)
                .name("no-cert-tenant")
        );

        final DistributionTenant distributionTenant =
createResponse.distributionTenant();

        // Then update the Route53 hosted zone to point your domain at the
distribution tenant
        // We fetch the RoutingEndpoint to point to via the default connection group
that was created for your tenant
        final GetConnectionGroupResponse fetchedConnectionGroup =
cloudFrontClient.getConnectionGroup(builder -> builder
                .identifier(distributionTenant.connectionGroupId()));

        route53Client.changeResourceRecordSets(builder -> builder
                .hostedZoneId(hostedZoneId)
                .changeBatch(b1 -> b1
                        .comment("ChangeBatch comment")
                        .changes(b2 -> b2
                                .resourceRecordSet(b3 -> b3
                                        .name(domain)
                                        .type("CNAME")
                                        .ttl(300L)
                                        .resourceRecords(b4 -> b4

.value(fetchedConnectionGroup.connectionGroup().routingEndpoint())))
                                .action("CREATE"))
                ));
        return distributionTenant;
    }

}
```

If the viewer certificate was omitted from the parent template, you would need to add certificate info on the tenant(s) associated with it instead. The following example demonstrates how to do so via an ACM certificate arn that covers the necessary domain for the tenant.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantWithCert(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                    Route53Client
 route53Client,
                                                                    String
 distributionId,
                                                                    String domain,
                                                                    String
 hostedZoneId,
                                                                    String
 certificateArn) {
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))
                .enabled(false)
                .name("tenant-with-cert")
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
```

```
                .customizations(b3 -> b3
                        .certificate(b4 -> b4
                                .arn(certificateArn))) // NOTE: Cert must be in Us-
East-1 and cover the domain provided in this request

        );

        final DistributionTenant distributionTenant =
 createResponse.distributionTenant();

        // Then update the Route53 hosted zone to point your domain at the
 distribution tenant
        // We fetch the RoutingEndpoint to point to via the default connection group
 that was created for your tenant
        final GetConnectionGroupResponse fetchedConnectionGroup =
 cloudFrontClient.getConnectionGroup(builder -> builder
                .identifier(distributionTenant.connectionGroupId()));

        route53Client.changeResourceRecordSets(builder -> builder
                .hostedZoneId(hostedZoneId)
                .changeBatch(b1 -> b1
                        .comment("ChangeBatch comment")
                        .changes(b2 -> b2
                                .resourceRecordSet(b3 -> b3
                                        .name(domain)
                                        .type("CNAME")
                                        .ttl(300L)
                                        .resourceRecords(b4 -> b4

 .value(fetchedConnectionGroup.connectionGroup().routingEndpoint())))
                                .action("CREATE"))
                ));
        return distributionTenant;
    }

}
```

The following example demonstrates how to do so with a CloudFront-hosted managed certificate request. This is ideal if you don't already have traffic towards your domain. In this case, we create a ConnectionGroup to generate a RoutingEndpoint. Then we use that RoutingEndpoint to create DNS records which verify domain ownership and point to

CloudFront. CloudFront will then automatically serve a token to validate domain ownership and create a managed certificate.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantCfHosted(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                    Route53Client
 route53Client,
                                                                    String
 distributionId,
                                                                    String domain,
                                                                    String
 hostedZoneId) throws InterruptedException {
        CreateConnectionGroupResponse createConnectionGroupResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createConnectionGroup(builder -> builder
                .ipv6Enabled(true)
                .name("cf-hosted-connection-group")
                .enabled(true));

        route53Client.changeResourceRecordSets(builder -> builder
                .hostedZoneId(hostedZoneId)
                .changeBatch(b1 -> b1
                        .comment("cf-hosted domain validation record")
                        .changes(b2 -> b2
                                .resourceRecordSet(b3 -> b3
                                        .name(domain)
                                        .type(RRType.CNAME)
                                        .ttl(300L)
```

```
                                        .resourceRecords(b4 -> b4

 .value(createConnectionGroupResponse.connectionGroup().routingEndpoint())))
                                .action("CREATE"))
               ));

       // Give the R53 record time to propagate, if it isn't being returned by
 servers yet, the following call will fail
       Thread.sleep(60000);

       CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
               .distributionId(distributionId)
               .domains(b1 -> b1
                       .domain(domain))

 .connectionGroupId(createConnectionGroupResponse.connectionGroup().id())
               .enabled(false)
               .name("cf-hosted-tenant")
               .parameters(b2 -> b2
                       .name("tenantName")
                       .value("myTenant"))
               .managedCertificateRequest(b3 -> b3
                       .validationTokenHost(ValidationTokenHost.CLOUDFRONT)
               )
       );

       return createResponse.distributionTenant();
    }

}
```

The following example demonstrates how to do so with a self-hosted managed certificate request. This is ideal if you have traffic towards your domain and can't tolerate downtime during a migration. At the end of this example, the Tenant will be created in a state awaiting domain validation and DNS setup. Follow steps [here](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudFront/latest/DeveloperGuide/managed-cloudfront-certificates.html#complete-domain-ownership) to complete setup when you are ready to migrate traffic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateConnectionGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CreateDistributionTenantResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DistributionTenant;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetConnectionGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.ValidationTokenHost;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.Route53Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.RRType;

import java.time.Instant;

public class CreateDistributionTenant {

    public static DistributionTenant
 createDistributionTenantSelfHosted(CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
                                                                        String
 distributionId,
                                                                        String
 domain) {
        CreateDistributionTenantResponse createResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.createDistributionTenant(builder -> builder
                .distributionId(distributionId)
                .domains(b1 -> b1
                        .domain(domain))
                .parameters(b2 -> b2
                        .name("tenantName")
                        .value("myTenant"))
                .enabled(false)
                .name("self-hosted-tenant")
                .managedCertificateRequest(b3 -> b3
                        .validationTokenHost(ValidationTokenHost.SELF_HOSTED)
                        .primaryDomainName(domain)
                )
        );

        return createResponse.distributionTenant();
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- CreateDistribution
- CreateDistributionTenant

Delete signing resources

The following code example shows how to delete resources that are used to gain access to restricted content in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeleteKeyGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeleteOriginAccessControlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.DeletePublicKeyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetKeyGroupResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetOriginAccessControlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.GetPublicKeyResponse;

public class DeleteSigningResources {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(DeleteSigningResources.class);

    public static void deleteOriginAccessControl(final CloudFrontClient
 cloudFrontClient,
            final String originAccessControlId) {
        GetOriginAccessControlResponse getResponse = cloudFrontClient
                .getOriginAccessControl(b -> b.id(originAccessControlId));
        DeleteOriginAccessControlResponse deleteResponse =
 cloudFrontClient.deleteOriginAccessControl(builder -> builder
                .id(originAccessControlId)
                .ifMatch(getResponse.eTag()));
```

```
        if (deleteResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Successfully deleted Origin Access Control [{}]",
originAccessControlId);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteKeyGroup(final CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient, final
String keyGroupId) {

        GetKeyGroupResponse getResponse = cloudFrontClient.getKeyGroup(b ->
b.id(keyGroupId));
        DeleteKeyGroupResponse deleteResponse =
cloudFrontClient.deleteKeyGroup(builder -> builder
                .id(keyGroupId)
                .ifMatch(getResponse.eTag()));
        if (deleteResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Successfully deleted Key Group [{}]", keyGroupId);
        }
    }

    public static void deletePublicKey(final CloudFrontClient cloudFrontClient,
final String publicKeyId) {
        GetPublicKeyResponse getResponse = cloudFrontClient.getPublicKey(b ->
b.id(publicKeyId));

        DeletePublicKeyResponse deleteResponse =
cloudFrontClient.deletePublicKey(builder -> builder
                .id(publicKeyId)
                .ifMatch(getResponse.eTag()));

        if (deleteResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Successfully deleted Public Key [{}]", publicKeyId);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteKeyGroup
  - DeleteOriginAccessControl
  - DeletePublicKey

Sign URLs and cookies

The following code example shows how to create signed URLs and cookies that allow access to restricted resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the CannedSignerRequest class to sign URLs or cookies with a *canned* policy.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CannedSignerRequest;

import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;

public class CreateCannedPolicyRequest {

    public static CannedSignerRequest createRequestForCannedPolicy(String
 distributionDomainName,
            String fileNameToUpload,
            String privateKeyFullPath, String publicKeyId) throws Exception {
        String protocol = "https";
        String resourcePath = "/" + fileNameToUpload;

        String cloudFrontUrl = new URL(protocol, distributionDomainName,
 resourcePath).toString();
        Instant expirationDate = Instant.now().plus(7, ChronoUnit.DAYS);
        Path path = Paths.get(privateKeyFullPath);

        return CannedSignerRequest.builder()
                .resourceUrl(cloudFrontUrl)
                .privateKey(path)
                .keyPairId(publicKeyId)
                .expirationDate(expirationDate)
                .build();
```

```
    }
}
```

Use the CustomSignerRequest class to sign URLs or cookies with a *custom* policy. The `activeDate` and `ipRange` are optional methods.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CustomSignerRequest;

import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;

public class CreateCustomPolicyRequest {

    public static CustomSignerRequest createRequestForCustomPolicy(String
 distributionDomainName,
            String fileNameToUpload,
            String privateKeyFullPath, String publicKeyId) throws Exception {
        String protocol = "https";
        String resourcePath = "/" + fileNameToUpload;

        String cloudFrontUrl = new URL(protocol, distributionDomainName,
 resourcePath).toString();
        Instant expireDate = Instant.now().plus(7, ChronoUnit.DAYS);
        // URL will be accessible tomorrow using the signed URL.
        Instant activeDate = Instant.now().plus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);
        Path path = Paths.get(privateKeyFullPath);

        return CustomSignerRequest.builder()
                .resourceUrl(cloudFrontUrl)
                // .resourceUrlPattern("https://*.example.com/*")  // Optional.
                .privateKey(path)
                .keyPairId(publicKeyId)
                .expirationDate(expireDate)
                .activeDate(activeDate) // Optional.
                // .ipRange("192.168.0.1/24") // Optional.
                .build();
    }
}
```

The following example demonstrates the use of the CloudFrontUtilities class to produce signed cookies and URLs. View this code example on GitHub.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.CloudFrontUtilities;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.cookie.CookiesForCannedPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.cookie.CookiesForCustomPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CannedSignerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.model.CustomSignerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudfront.url.SignedUrl;

public class SigningUtilities {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SigningUtilities.class);
    private static final CloudFrontUtilities cloudFrontUtilities =
 CloudFrontUtilities.create();

    public static SignedUrl signUrlForCannedPolicy(CannedSignerRequest
 cannedSignerRequest) {
        SignedUrl signedUrl =
 cloudFrontUtilities.getSignedUrlWithCannedPolicy(cannedSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Signed URL: [{}]", signedUrl.url());
        return signedUrl;
    }

    public static SignedUrl signUrlForCustomPolicy(CustomSignerRequest
 customSignerRequest) {
        SignedUrl signedUrl =
 cloudFrontUtilities.getSignedUrlWithCustomPolicy(customSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Signed URL: [{}]", signedUrl.url());
        return signedUrl;
    }

    public static CookiesForCannedPolicy
 getCookiesForCannedPolicy(CannedSignerRequest cannedSignerRequest) {
        CookiesForCannedPolicy cookiesForCannedPolicy = cloudFrontUtilities
                .getCookiesForCannedPolicy(cannedSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Cookie EXPIRES header [{}]",
 cookiesForCannedPolicy.expiresHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie KEYPAIR header [{}]",
 cookiesForCannedPolicy.keyPairIdHeaderValue());
```

```
        logger.info("Cookie SIGNATURE header [{}]",
 cookiesForCannedPolicy.signatureHeaderValue());
        return cookiesForCannedPolicy;
    }

    public static CookiesForCustomPolicy
 getCookiesForCustomPolicy(CustomSignerRequest customSignerRequest) {
        CookiesForCustomPolicy cookiesForCustomPolicy = cloudFrontUtilities
                .getCookiesForCustomPolicy(customSignerRequest);
        logger.info("Cookie POLICY header [{}]",
 cookiesForCustomPolicy.policyHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie KEYPAIR header [{}]",
 cookiesForCustomPolicy.keyPairIdHeaderValue());
        logger.info("Cookie SIGNATURE header [{}]",
 cookiesForCustomPolicy.signatureHeaderValue());
        return cookiesForCustomPolicy;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CloudFrontUtilities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with CloudWatch.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello CloudWatch

The following code examples show how to get started using CloudWatch.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.ListMetricsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.paginators.ListMetricsIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloService {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <namespace>\s

                Where:
                  namespace - The namespace to filter against (for example, AWS/
EC2).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String namespace = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMets(cw, namespace);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void listMets(CloudWatchClient cw, String namespace) {
        try {
            ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(namespace)
                    .build();

            ListMetricsIterable listRes = cw.listMetricsPaginator(request);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.metrics().stream())
                    .forEach(metrics -> System.out.println(" Retrieved metric is: "
 + metrics.metricName()));

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List CloudWatch namespaces and metrics.

- Get statistics for a metric and for estimated billing.
- Create and update a dashboard.
- Create and add data to a metric.
- Create and trigger an alarm, then view alarm history.
- Add an anomaly detector.
- Get a metric image, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating CloudWatch features.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DashboardInvalidInputErrorException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DeleteAlarmsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DeleteDashboardsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.Dimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.GetMetricStatisticsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.LimitExceededException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.PutDashboardResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.PutMetricDataResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To enable billing metrics and statistics for this example, make sure billing
 * alerts are enabled for your account:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
monitor_estimated_charges_with_cloudwatch.html#turning_on_billing_metrics
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. List available namespaces from Amazon CloudWatch.
 * 2. List available metrics within the selected Namespace.
 * 3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.
 * 4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.
 * 5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.
 * 6. List dashboards using a paginator.
 * 7. Create a new custom metric by adding data for it.
 * 8. Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
 * 9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.
 * 10. Describe current alarms.
 * 11. Get current data for the new custom metric.
 * 12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.
 * 13. Check the alarm state using the action DescribeAlarmsForMetric.
 * 14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.
 * 15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.
 * 16. Describe current anomaly detectors.
 * 17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.
 * 18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.
 */
public class CloudWatchScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    static CloudWatchActions cwActions = new CloudWatchActions();

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CloudWatchScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Throwable {

        final String usage = """

            Usage:
```

```
              <myDate> <costDateWeek> <dashboardName> <dashboardJson> <dashboardAdd>
<settings> <metricImage> \s

           Where:
             myDate - The start date to use to get metric statistics. (For example,
2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)\s
             costDateWeek - The start date to use to get AWS/Billing statistics.
(For example, 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)\s
             dashboardName - The name of the dashboard to create.\s
             dashboardJson - The location of a JSON file to use to create a
dashboard. (See jsonWidgets.json in javav2/example_code/cloudwatch.)\s
             dashboardAdd - The location of a JSON file to use to update a
dashboard. (See CloudDashboard.json in javav2/example_code/cloudwatch.)\s
             settings - The location of a JSON file from which various values are
read. (See settings.json in javav2/example_code/cloudwatch.)\s
             metricImage - The location of a BMP file that is used to create a
graph.\s
           """;

       if (args.length != 7) {
           logger.info(usage);
           return;
       }
       String myDate = args[0];
       String costDateWeek = args[1];
       String dashboardName = args[2];
       String dashboardJson = args[3];
       String dashboardAdd = args[4];
       String settings = args[5];
       String metricImage = args[6];

       logger.info(DASHES);
       logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch Basics scenario.");
       logger.info("""
           Amazon CloudWatch is a comprehensive monitoring and observability
service
           provided by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is designed to help you
monitor your
           AWS resources, applications, and services, as well as on-premises
resources,
           in real-time.

           CloudWatch collects and tracks various types of data, including
metrics,
```

```
            logs, and events, from your AWS and on-premises resources. It allows you
to set
            alarms and automatically respond to changes in your environment,
            enabling you to quickly identify and address issues before they impact
your
            applications or services.

            With CloudWatch, you can gain visibility into your entire
infrastructure, from the cloud
            to the edge, and use this information to make informed decisions and
optimize your
            resource utilization.

            This scenario guides you through how to perform Amazon CloudWatch tasks
by using the
            AWS SDK for Java v2. Let's get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            runScenario(myDate, costDateWeek, dashboardName, dashboardJson,
dashboardAdd, settings, metricImage);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void runScenario(String myDate, String costDateWeek, String
dashboardName, String dashboardJson, String dashboardAdd, String settings, String
metricImage ) throws Throwable {
        Double dataPoint = Double.parseDouble("10.0");
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
        1. List at least five available unique namespaces from Amazon CloudWatch.
        Select one from the list.
        """);
        String selectedNamespace;
        String selectedMetrics;
        int num;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> future =
cwActions.listNameSpacesAsync();
            ArrayList<String> list = future.join();
```

```
            for (int z = 0; z < 5; z++) {
                int index = z + 1;
                logger.info("    " + index + ". {}", list.get(z));
            }

            num = Integer.parseInt(scanner.nextLine());
            if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
                selectedNamespace = list.get(num - 1);
            } else {
                logger.info("You did not select a valid option.");
                return;
            }
            logger.info("You selected {}", selectedNamespace);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. List available metrics within the selected namespace.");
        logger.info("""
            A metric is a measure of the performance or health of your AWS
resources,
            applications, or custom resources. Metrics are the basic building blocks
of CloudWatch
            and provide data points that represent a specific aspect of your system
or application over time.

            Select a metric from the list.
            """);

        Dimension myDimension = null;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> future =
cwActions.listMetsAsync(selectedNamespace);
```

```
            ArrayList<String> metList = future.join();
            logger.info("Metrics successfully retrieved. Total metrics: {}",
metList.size());
            for (int z = 0; z < 5; z++) {
                int index = z + 1;
                logger.info("    " + index + ". " + metList.get(z));
            }
            num = Integer.parseInt(scanner.nextLine());
            if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
                selectedMetrics = metList.get(num - 1);
            } else {
                logger.info("You did not select a valid option.");
                return;
            }
            logger.info("You selected {}", selectedMetrics);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        try {
            myDimension = cwActions.getSpecificMetAsync(selectedNamespace).join();
            logger.info("Metric statistics successfully retrieved and displayed.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.");
        logger.info("""
            Statistics refer to the various mathematical calculations that can be
performed on the
            collected metrics to derive meaningful insights. Statistics provide a
way to summarize and
            analyze the data collected for a specific metric over a specified time
period.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String metricOption = "";
        ArrayList<String> statTypes = new ArrayList<>();
        statTypes.add("SampleCount");
        statTypes.add("Average");
        statTypes.add("Sum");
        statTypes.add("Minimum");
        statTypes.add("Maximum");

        for (int t = 0; t < 5; t++) {
            logger.info("    " + (t + 1) + ". {}", statTypes.get(t));
        }
        logger.info("Select a metric statistic by entering a number from the
preceding list:");
        num = Integer.parseInt(scanner.nextLine());
        if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
            metricOption = statTypes.get(num - 1);
        } else {
            logger.info("You did not select a valid option.");
            return;
        }
        logger.info("You selected " + metricOption);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse> future =
cwActions.getAndDisplayMetricStatisticsAsync(selectedNamespace, selectedMetrics,
metricOption, myDate, myDimension);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Metric statistics retrieved successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
         try {
            CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse> future =
cwActions.getMetricStatisticsAsync(costDateWeek);
            future.join();

            logger.info("Metric statistics successfully retrieved and displayed.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
             throw cause;
         }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse> future =
cwActions.createDashboardWithMetricsAsync(dashboardName, dashboardJson);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException | IOException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof DashboardInvalidInputErrorException cwEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("Invalid CloudWatch data. Error message: {}, Error code
{}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. List dashboards using a paginator.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = cwActions.listDashboardsAsync();
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Create a new custom metric by adding data to it.");
        logger.info("""
            The primary benefit of using a custom metric in Amazon CloudWatch is the
ability to
            monitor and collect data that is specific to your application or
infrastructure.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> future =
cwActions.createNewCustomMetricAsync(dataPoint);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Add an additional metric to the dashboard.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse> future =
cwActions.addMetricToDashboardAsync(dashboardAdd, dashboardName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof DashboardInvalidInputErrorException cwEx) {
                logger.info("Invalid CloudWatch data. Error message: {}, Error code
{}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String alarmName = "" ;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future = cwActions.createAlarmAsync(settings);
            alarmName = future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof LimitExceededException cwEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("The quota for alarms has been reached: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Describe ten current alarms.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = cwActions.describeAlarmsAsync();
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("11. Get current data for new custom metric.");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.getCustomMetricDataAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
```

```
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> future =
cwActions.addMetricDataForAlarmAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("13. Check the alarm state using the action
DescribeAlarmsForMetric.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.checkForMetricAlarmAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
```

```
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.getAlarmHistoryAsync(settings, myDate);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.");
        logger.info("""
            An anomaly detector is a feature that automatically detects unusual
patterns or deviations in your
            monitored metrics. It uses machine learning algorithms to analyze the
historical behavior
            of your metrics and establish a baseline.

            The anomaly detector then compares the current metric values against
this baseline and
            identifies any anomalies or outliers that may indicate potential issues
or unexpected changes
            in your system's performance or behavior.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
```

```
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.addAnomalyDetectorAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("16. Describe current anomaly detectors.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.describeAnomalyDetectorsAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
cwActions.downloadAndSaveMetricImageAsync(metricImage);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.");

        try {
            logger.info(". Delete the Dashboard.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CompletableFuture<DeleteDashboardsResponse> future =
cwActions.deleteDashboardAsync(dashboardName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        try {
            logger.info("Delete the alarm.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CompletableFuture<DeleteAlarmsResponse> future =
cwActions.deleteCWAlarmAsync(alarmName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        try {
            logger.info("Delete the anomaly detector.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            CompletableFuture<DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse> future =
cwActions.deleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(settings);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof CloudWatchException cwEx) {
                logger.info("CloudWatch error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}", cwEx.getMessage(), cwEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("The Amazon CloudWatch example scenario is complete.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
```

```
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for CloudWatch SDK methods.

```
public class CloudWatchActions {

    private static CloudWatchAsyncClient cloudWatchAsyncClient;

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(CloudWatchActions.class);

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous CloudWatch client instance.
     *
     * <p>
     * This method ensures that the CloudWatch client is initialized with the
 following configurations:
     * <ul>
     *     <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *     <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *     <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *     <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *     <li>Retry strategy: STANDARD</li>
     * </ul>
     * </p>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous CloudWatch client instance
     */
    private static CloudWatchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (cloudWatchAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();
```

```
            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            cloudWatchAsyncClient = CloudWatchAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return cloudWatchAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an Anomaly Detector.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the Anomaly Detector
configuration
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of the
Anomaly Detector
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse>
deleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root node
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
            String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
            String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
```

```
            SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
                .metricName(customMetricName)
                .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                .stat("Maximum")
                .build();

            DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest request =
DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
                .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
                .build();

            return getAsyncClient().deleteAnomalyDetector(request);
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the Anomaly Detector",
exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.");
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a CloudWatch alarm.
     *
     * @param alarmName the name of the alarm to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
to delete the alarm
     * the {@link DeleteAlarmsResponse} is returned when the operation completes
successfully,
     * or a {@link RuntimeException} is thrown if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteAlarmsResponse> deleteCWAlarmAsync(String
alarmName) {
        DeleteAlarmsRequest request = DeleteAlarmsRequest.builder()
            .alarmNames(alarmName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteAlarms(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the alarm:{} " +
alarmName, exception);
```

```
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully deleted alarm {} ", alarmName);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified dashboard.
     *
     * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of deleting the dashboard
     * @throws RuntimeException if the dashboard deletion fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteDashboardsResponse> deleteDashboardAsync(String
dashboardName) {
        DeleteDashboardsRequest dashboardsRequest =
DeleteDashboardsRequest.builder()
            .dashboardNames(dashboardName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the dashboard: " +
dashboardName, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted.", dashboardName);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves and saves a custom metric image to a file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file to save the metric image to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the image has been
saved to the file
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> downloadAndSaveMetricImageAsync(String fileName)
{
        logger.info("Getting Image data for custom metric.");
        String myJSON = """
```

```
              {
                  "title": "Example Metric Graph",
                  "view": "timeSeries",
                  "stacked ": false,
                  "period": 10,
                  "width": 1400,
                  "height": 600,
                  "metrics": [
                      [
                      "AWS/Billing",
                      "EstimatedCharges",
                      "Currency",
                      "USD"
                     ]
                  ]
              }
            """;

        GetMetricWidgetImageRequest imageRequest =
GetMetricWidgetImageRequest.builder()
            .metricWidget(myJSON)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                SdkBytes sdkBytes = response.metricWidgetImage();
                byte[] bytes = sdkBytes.asByteArray();
                return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                    try {
                        File outputFile = new File(fileName);
                        try (FileOutputStream outputStream = new
FileOutputStream(outputFile)) {
                            outputStream.write(bytes);
                        }
                    } catch (IOException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write image to file",
e);
                    }
                });
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error getting and saving metric
image", exception);
```

```
                } else {
                    logger.info("Image data saved successfully to {}", fileName);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Describes the anomaly detectors based on the specified JSON file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the custom metric
namespace and name
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly detectors
have been described
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure during the operation, such as
when reading or parsing the JSON file,
     *                          or when describing the anomaly detectors
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAnomalyDetectorsAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
            try {
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest detectorsRequest =
DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();
```

```
                return
getAsyncClient().describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest).thenAccept(response ->
{
                    List<AnomalyDetector> anomalyDetectorList =
response.anomalyDetectors();
                    for (AnomalyDetector detector : anomalyDetectorList) {
                        logger.info("Metric name: {} ",
detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector().metricName());
                        logger.info("State: {} ", detector.stateValue());
                    }
                });
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe anomaly detectors",
e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error describing anomaly detectors",
exception);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Adds an anomaly detector for the given file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the anomaly detector
configuration
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly detector
has been added
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> addAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root node
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
            }
        });
```

```
        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
            try {
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .stat("Maximum")
                    .build();

                PutAnomalyDetectorRequest anomalyDetectorRequest =
PutAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
                    .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
                    .build();

                return
getAsyncClient().putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest).thenAccept(response ->
{
                    logger.info("Added anomaly detector for metric {}",
customMetricName);
                });
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create anomaly detector", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error adding anomaly detector",
exception);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the alarm history for a given alarm name and date range.
     *
     * @param fileName the path to the JSON file containing the alarm name
     * @param date     the date to start the alarm history search (in the format
"yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'")
```

```
    * @return a {@code CompletableFuture<Void>} that completes when the alarm
history has been retrieved and processed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getAlarmHistoryAsync(String fileName, String
date) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText(); // Return
alarmName from the JSON file
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
           }
       });

       // Use the alarm name to describe alarm history with a paginator.
       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(alarmName -> {
           try {
               Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
               Instant endDate = Instant.now();
               DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest historyRequest =
DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest.builder()
                   .startDate(start)
                   .endDate(endDate)
                   .alarmName(alarmName)
                   .historyItemType(HistoryItemType.ACTION)
                   .build();

               // Use the paginator to paginate through alarm history pages.
               DescribeAlarmHistoryPublisher historyPublisher =
getAsyncClient().describeAlarmHistoryPaginator(historyRequest);
               CompletableFuture<Void> future = historyPublisher
                   .subscribe(response -> response.alarmHistoryItems().forEach(item
-> {
                       logger.info("History summary: {}", item.historySummary());
                       logger.info("Timestamp: {}", item.timestamp());
                   }))
                   .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                       if (exception != null) {
```

```
                            logger.error("Error occurred while getting alarm
history: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                        } else {
                            logger.info("Successfully retrieved all alarm
history.");
                        }
                    });

                // Return the future to the calling code for further handling
                return future;
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to process alarm history", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error completing alarm history
processing", exception);
            }
        });
    }



    /**
     * Checks for a metric alarm in AWS CloudWatch.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the JSON configuration for
the custom metric
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the check for the
metric alarm is complete
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkForMetricAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for further
processing
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
            }
```

```
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
            try {
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest =
DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                return checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest, customMetricName, 10);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error checking metric alarm",
exception);
            }
        });
    }

    // Recursive method to check for the alarm.

    /**
     * Checks for the existence of an alarm asynchronously for the specified metric.
     *
     * @param metricRequest    the request to describe the alarms for the specified
metric
     * @param customMetricName the name of the custom metric to check for an alarm
     * @param retries          the number of retries to perform if no alarm is found
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when an alarm is found or
the maximum number of retries has been reached
     */
```

```
   private static CompletableFuture<Void>
checkForAlarmAsync(DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest, String
customMetricName, int retries) {
       if (retries == 0) {
           return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null).thenRun(() ->
               logger.info("No Alarm state found for {} after 10 retries.",
customMetricName)
           );
       }

       return
(getAsyncClient().describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest).thenCompose(response -> {
           if (response.hasMetricAlarms()) {
               logger.info("Alarm state found for {}", customMetricName);
               return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null); // Alarm found,
complete the future
           } else {
               return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                   try {
                       Thread.sleep(20000);
                       logger.info(".");
                   } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Interrupted while waiting to
retry", e);
                   }
               }).thenCompose(v -> checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest,
customMetricName, retries - 1)); // Recursive call
           }
       }));
   }


   /**
    * Adds metric data for an alarm asynchronously.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the metric data
    * @return a CompletableFuture that asynchronously returns the
PutMetricDataResponse
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse>
addMetricDataForAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
           try {
```

```
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for further
processing
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
            try {
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
                Instant instant = Instant.now();

                // Create MetricDatum objects.
                MetricDatum datum1 = MetricDatum.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                    .value(1001.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                MetricDatum datum2 = MetricDatum.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                    .value(1002.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDatum> metricDataList = new ArrayList<>();
                metricDataList.add(datum1);
                metricDataList.add(datum2);

                // Build the PutMetricData request.
                PutMetricDataRequest request = PutMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .metricData(metricDataList)
```

```
                    .build();

                // Send the request asynchronously.
                return getAsyncClient().putMetricData(request);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> failedFuture = new
CompletableFuture<>();
                failedFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed to
parse JSON content", e));
                return failedFuture;
            }
        }).whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                logger.error("Failed to put metric data: " + exception.getMessage(),
exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Added metric values for metric.");
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves custom metric data from the AWS CloudWatch service.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the custom metric information
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric data has
been retrieved
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getCustomMetricDataAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
            try {
                // Read values from the JSON file.
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for further
processing
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
            }
```

```
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
            try {
                // Parse the JSON string to extract relevant values.
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                // Set the current time and date range for metric query.
                Instant nowDate = Instant.now();
                long hours = 1;
                long minutes = 30;
                Instant endTime = nowDate.plus(hours,
ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(minutes, ChronoUnit.MINUTES);

                Metric met = Metric.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                MetricStat metStat = MetricStat.builder()
                    .stat("Maximum")
                    .period(60)  // Assuming period in seconds
                    .metric(met)
                    .build();

                MetricDataQuery dataQuery = MetricDataQuery.builder()
                    .metricStat(metStat)
                    .id("foo2")
                    .returnData(true)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDataQuery> dq = new ArrayList<>();
                dq.add(dataQuery);

                GetMetricDataRequest getMetricDataRequest =
GetMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .maxDatapoints(10)
                    .scanBy(ScanBy.TIMESTAMP_DESCENDING)
                    .startTime(nowDate)
```

```
                    .endTime(endTime)
                    .metricDataQueries(dq)
                    .build();

                // Call the async method for CloudWatch data retrieval.
                return getAsyncClient().getMetricData(getMetricDataRequest);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<MetricDataResult> data = response.metricDataResults();
            for (MetricDataResult item : data) {
                logger.info("The label is: {}", item.label());
                logger.info("The status code is: {}", item.statusCode().toString());
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get metric data", exception);
        });
    }


    /**
     * Describes the CloudWatch alarms of the 'METRIC_ALARM' type.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     * of describing the CloudWatch alarms. The future completes when the
     * operation is finished, either successfully or with an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAlarmsAsync() {
        List<AlarmType> typeList = new ArrayList<>();
        typeList.add(AlarmType.METRIC_ALARM);
        DescribeAlarmsRequest alarmsRequest = DescribeAlarmsRequest.builder()
            .alarmTypes(typeList)
            .maxRecords(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<MetricAlarm> alarmList = response.metricAlarms();
                for (MetricAlarm alarm : alarmList) {
                    logger.info("Alarm name: {}", alarm.alarmName());
                    logger.info("Alarm description: {} ", alarm.alarmDescription());
```

```
                }
            })
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to describe alarms: {}", ex.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully described alarms.");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an alarm based on the configuration provided in a JSON file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the alarm configuration
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the alarm
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while reading the JSON file
or creating the alarm
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode;
        try {
            JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
            rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        } catch (IOException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read the alarm configuration
file", e);
        }

        // Extract values from the JSON node.
        String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
        String customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
        String alarmName = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText();
        String emailTopic = rootNode.findValue("emailTopic").asText();
        String accountId = rootNode.findValue("accountId").asText();
        String region = rootNode.findValue("region").asText();

        // Create a List for alarm actions.
        List<String> alarmActions = new ArrayList<>();
        alarmActions.add("arn:aws:sns:" + region + ":" + accountId + ":" +
emailTopic);
```

```
        PutMetricAlarmRequest alarmRequest = PutMetricAlarmRequest.builder()
            .alarmActions(alarmActions)
            .alarmDescription("Example metric alarm")
            .alarmName(alarmName)

.comparisonOperator(ComparisonOperator.GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_THRESHOLD)
            .threshold(100.00)
            .metricName(customMetricName)
            .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
            .evaluationPeriods(1)
            .period(10)
            .statistic("Maximum")
            .datapointsToAlarm(1)
            .treatMissingData("ignore")
            .build();

        // Call the putMetricAlarm asynchronously and handle the result.
        return getAsyncClient().putMetricAlarm(alarmRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to create alarm: {}", ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create alarm", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully created!", alarmName);
                    return alarmName;
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Adds a metric to a dashboard asynchronously.
     *
     * @param fileName      the name of the file containing the dashboard content
     * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be updated
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation,
which will complete with a
     * {@link PutDashboardResponse} when the dashboard is successfully updated
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse> addMetricToDashboardAsync(String
fileName, String dashboardName) {
        String dashboardBody;
        try {
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileName);
        } catch (IOException e) {
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read the dashboard file", e);
        }

        PutDashboardRequest dashboardRequest = PutDashboardRequest.builder()
            .dashboardName(dashboardName)
            .dashboardBody(dashboardBody)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to update dashboard: {}", ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error updating dashboard", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully updated.", dashboardName);
                    return response;
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new custom metric.
     *
     * @param dataPoint the data point to be added to the custom metric
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of adding the custom metric
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse>
createNewCustomMetricAsync(Double dataPoint) {
        Dimension dimension = Dimension.builder()
            .name("UNIQUE_PAGES")
            .value("URLS")
            .build();

        // Set an Instant object for the current time in UTC.
        String time =
ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT);
        Instant instant = Instant.parse(time);

        // Create the MetricDatum.
        MetricDatum datum = MetricDatum.builder()
            .metricName("PAGES_VISITED")
            .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
            .value(dataPoint)
```

```
            .timestamp(instant)
            .dimensions(dimension)
            .build();

        PutMetricDataRequest request = PutMetricDataRequest.builder()
            .namespace("SITE/TRAFFIC")
            .metricData(datum)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().putMetricData(request)
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error adding custom metric", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully added metric values for
PAGES_VISITED.");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists the available dashboards.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
finished.
     * The future will complete exceptionally if an error occurs while listing the
dashboards.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listDashboardsAsync() {
        ListDashboardsRequest listDashboardsRequest =
ListDashboardsRequest.builder().build();
        ListDashboardsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listDashboardsPaginator(listDashboardsRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.dashboardEntries().forEach(entry -> {
                logger.info("Dashboard name is: {} ", entry.dashboardName());
                logger.info("Dashboard ARN is: {} ", entry.dashboardArn());
            });
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to list dashboards: {} ", ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Error occurred while listing dashboards",
ex);
        });
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Creates a new dashboard with the specified name and metrics from the given
file.
    *
    * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be created
    * @param fileName      the name of the file containing the dashboard body
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of creating the dashboard
    * @throws IOException if there is an error reading the dashboard body from the
file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse>
createDashboardWithMetricsAsync(String dashboardName, String fileName) throws
IOException {
       String dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileName);
       PutDashboardRequest dashboardRequest = PutDashboardRequest.builder()
           .dashboardName(dashboardName)
           .dashboardBody(dashboardBody)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
           .handle((response, ex) -> {
               if (ex != null) {
                   logger.info("Failed to create dashboard: {}", ex.getMessage());
                   throw new RuntimeException("Dashboard creation failed", ex);
               } else {
                   // Handle the normal response case
                   logger.info("{} was successfully created.", dashboardName);
                   List<DashboardValidationMessage> messages =
response.dashboardValidationMessages();
                   if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                       logger.info("There are no messages in the new Dashboard.");
                   } else {
                       for (DashboardValidationMessage message : messages) {
                           logger.info("Message: {}", message.message());
                       }
                   }
                   return response; // Return the response for further use
               }
           });
   }
```

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the metric statistics for the "EstimatedCharges" metric in the
"AWS/Billing" namespace.
    *
    * @param costDateWeek the start date for the metric statistics, in the format
of an ISO-8601 date string (e.g., "2023-04-05")
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the {@link
GetMetricStatisticsResponse} with the retrieved metric statistics
    * @throws RuntimeException if the metric statistics cannot be retrieved
successfully
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse>
getMetricStatisticsAsync(String costDateWeek) {
       Instant start = Instant.parse(costDateWeek);
       Instant endDate = Instant.now();

       // Define dimension
       Dimension dimension = Dimension.builder()
           .name("Currency")
           .value("USD")
           .build();

       List<Dimension> dimensionList = new ArrayList<>();
       dimensionList.add(dimension);

       GetMetricStatisticsRequest statisticsRequest =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
           .metricName("EstimatedCharges")
           .namespace("AWS/Billing")
           .dimensions(dimensionList)
           .statistics(Statistic.MAXIMUM)
           .startTime(start)
           .endTime(endDate)
           .period(86400) // One day period
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   List<Datapoint> data = response.datapoints();
                   if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                       for (Datapoint datapoint : data) {
```

```
                            logger.info("Timestamp: {} Maximum value: {})",
datapoint.timestamp(), datapoint.maximum());
                        }
                    } else {
                        logger.info("The returned data list is empty");
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get metric statistics: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves and displays metric statistics for the specified parameters.
     *
     * @param nameSpace    the namespace for the metric
     * @param metVal       the name of the metric
     * @param metricOption the statistic to retrieve for the metric (e.g.,
"Maximum", "Average")
     * @param date         the date for which to retrieve the metric statistics, in
the format "yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'"
     * @param myDimension  the dimension(s) to filter the metric statistics by
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric statistics
have been retrieved and displayed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse>
getAndDisplayMetricStatisticsAsync(String nameSpace, String metVal,

         String metricOption, String date, Dimension myDimension) {

        Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
        Instant endDate = Instant.now();

        // Building the request for metric statistics.
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest statisticsRequest =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
            .endTime(endDate)
            .startTime(start)
            .dimensions(myDimension)
            .metricName(metVal)
            .namespace(nameSpace)
            .period(86400) // 1 day period
```

```
            .statistics(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    List<Datapoint> data = response.datapoints();
                    if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                        for (Datapoint datapoint : data) {
                            logger.info("Timestamp: {} Maximum value: {}",
datapoint.timestamp(), datapoint.maximum());
                        }
                    } else {
                        logger.info("The returned data list is empty");
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.info("Failed to get metric statistics: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                }
            })
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error while getting metric statistics: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves a list of metric names for the specified namespace.
     *
     * @param namespace the namespace for which to retrieve the metric names
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains an {@link
ArrayList} of
     * the metric names in the specified namespace
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while listing the metrics
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> listMetsAsync(String namespace) {
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
            .namespace(namespace)
            .build();

        ListMetricsPublisher metricsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listMetricsPaginator(request);
        Set<String> metSet = new HashSet<>();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = metricsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.metrics().forEach(metric -> {
                String metricName = metric.metricName();
                metSet.add(metricName);
            });
        });

        return future
            .thenApply(ignored -> new ArrayList<>(metSet))
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list metrics: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists the available namespaces for the current AWS account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains an {@link
ArrayList} of the available namespace names.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while listing the namespaces.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> listNameSpacesAsync() {
        ArrayList<String> nameSpaceList = new ArrayList<>();
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder().build();

        ListMetricsPublisher metricsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listMetricsPaginator(request);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = metricsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.metrics().forEach(metric -> {
                String namespace = metric.namespace();
                if (!nameSpaceList.contains(namespace)) {
                    nameSpaceList.add(namespace);
                }
            });
        });

        return future
            .thenApply(ignored -> nameSpaceList)
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list namespaces: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the specific metric asynchronously.
     *
     * @param namespace the namespace of the metric to retrieve
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the first dimension of the
 first metric found in the specified namespace,
     * or throws a RuntimeException if an error occurs or no metrics or dimensions
 are found
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Dimension> getSpecificMetAsync(String namespace) {
        ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
            .namespace(namespace)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listMetrics(request).handle((response, exception) ->
 {
            if (exception != null) {
                logger.info("Error occurred while listing metrics: {} ",
 exception.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to retrieve specific metric
 dimension", exception);
            } else {
                List<Metric> myList = response.metrics();
                if (!myList.isEmpty()) {
                    Metric metric = myList.get(0);
                    if (!metric.dimensions().isEmpty()) {
                        return metric.dimensions().get(0); // Return the first
 dimension
                    }
                }
                throw new RuntimeException("No metrics or dimensions found");
            }
        });
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String file) throws IOException {
        return new String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(file)));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms

- DeleteAnomalyDetector
- DeleteDashboards
- DescribeAlarmHistory
- DescribeAlarms
- DescribeAlarmsForMetric
- DescribeAnomalyDetectors
- GetMetricData
- GetMetricStatistics
- GetMetricWidgetImage
- ListMetrics
- PutAnomalyDetector
- PutDashboard
- PutMetricAlarm
- PutMetricData

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a CloudWatch alarm.
     *
     * @param alarmName the name of the alarm to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
 to delete the alarm
```

```
     * the {@link DeleteAlarmsResponse} is returned when the operation completes
successfully,
     * or a {@link RuntimeException} is thrown if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteAlarmsResponse> deleteCWAlarmAsync(String
alarmName) {
        DeleteAlarmsRequest request = DeleteAlarmsRequest.builder()
            .alarmNames(alarmName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteAlarms(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the alarm:{} " +
alarmName, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully deleted alarm {} ", alarmName);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAnomalyDetector`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAnomalyDetector`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an Anomaly Detector.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the Anomaly Detector
configuration
```

```
    * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous deletion of the
Anomaly Detector
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAnomalyDetectorResponse>
deleteAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root node
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
           String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

           SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
               .metricName(customMetricName)
               .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
               .stat("Maximum")
               .build();

           DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest request =
DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
               .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
               .build();

           return getAsyncClient().deleteAnomalyDetector(request);
       }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the Anomaly Detector",
exception);
           } else {
               logger.info("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.");
           }
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDashboards`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDashboards`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes the specified dashboard.
    *
    * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of deleting the dashboard
    * @throws RuntimeException if the dashboard deletion fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteDashboardsResponse> deleteDashboardAsync(String
dashboardName) {
       DeleteDashboardsRequest dashboardsRequest =
DeleteDashboardsRequest.builder()
           .dashboardNames(dashboardName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the dashboard: " +
dashboardName, exception);
               } else {
                   logger.info("{} was successfully deleted.", dashboardName);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmHistory`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmHistory`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the alarm history for a given alarm name and date range.
    *
    * @param fileName the path to the JSON file containing the alarm name
    * @param date     the date to start the alarm history search (in the format
"yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'")
    * @return a {@code CompletableFuture<Void>} that completes when the alarm
history has been retrieved and processed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getAlarmHistoryAsync(String fileName, String
date) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText(); // Return
alarmName from the JSON file
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
           }
       });
```

```
        // Use the alarm name to describe alarm history with a paginator.
        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(alarmName -> {
            try {
                Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
                Instant endDate = Instant.now();
                DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest historyRequest =
DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest.builder()
                    .startDate(start)
                    .endDate(endDate)
                    .alarmName(alarmName)
                    .historyItemType(HistoryItemType.ACTION)
                    .build();

                // Use the paginator to paginate through alarm history pages.
                DescribeAlarmHistoryPublisher historyPublisher =
getAsyncClient().describeAlarmHistoryPaginator(historyRequest);
                CompletableFuture<Void> future = historyPublisher
                    .subscribe(response -> response.alarmHistoryItems().forEach(item
-> {
                        logger.info("History summary: {}", item.historySummary());
                        logger.info("Timestamp: {}", item.timestamp());
                    }))
                    .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                        if (exception != null) {
                            logger.error("Error occurred while getting alarm
history: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                        } else {
                            logger.info("Successfully retrieved all alarm
history.");
                        }
                    });

                // Return the future to the calling code for further handling
                return future;
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to process alarm history", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error completing alarm history
processing", exception);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarms`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes the CloudWatch alarms of the 'METRIC_ALARM' type.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     * of describing the CloudWatch alarms. The future completes when the
     * operation is finished, either successfully or with an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAlarmsAsync() {
        List<AlarmType> typeList = new ArrayList<>();
        typeList.add(AlarmType.METRIC_ALARM);
        DescribeAlarmsRequest alarmsRequest = DescribeAlarmsRequest.builder()
            .alarmTypes(typeList)
            .maxRecords(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<MetricAlarm> alarmList = response.metricAlarms();
                for (MetricAlarm alarm : alarmList) {
                    logger.info("Alarm name: {}", alarm.alarmName());
                    logger.info("Alarm description: {} ", alarm.alarmDescription());
                }
            })
```

```
            .whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to describe alarms: {}", ex.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully described alarms.");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Checks for a metric alarm in AWS CloudWatch.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the file containing the JSON configuration for
the custom metric
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the check for the
metric alarm is complete
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkForMetricAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
        CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
            try {
                JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
```

```
                return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for further
processing
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
            }
        });

        return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
            try {
                com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
                String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest =
DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                return checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest, customMetricName, 10);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error checking metric alarm",
exception);
            }
        });
    }

    // Recursive method to check for the alarm.

    /**
     * Checks for the existence of an alarm asynchronously for the specified metric.
     *
     * @param metricRequest    the request to describe the alarms for the specified
metric
     * @param customMetricName the name of the custom metric to check for an alarm
     * @param retries          the number of retries to perform if no alarm is found
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when an alarm is found or
the maximum number of retries has been reached
    */
   private static CompletableFuture<Void>
checkForAlarmAsync(DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest metricRequest, String
customMetricName, int retries) {
       if (retries == 0) {
           return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null).thenRun(() ->
               logger.info("No Alarm state found for {} after 10 retries.",
customMetricName)
           );
       }

       return
(getAsyncClient().describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest).thenCompose(response -> {
           if (response.hasMetricAlarms()) {
               logger.info("Alarm state found for {}", customMetricName);
               return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null); // Alarm found,
complete the future
           } else {
               return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                   try {
                       Thread.sleep(20000);
                       logger.info(".");
                   } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Interrupted while waiting to
retry", e);
                   }
               }).thenCompose(v -> checkForAlarmAsync(metricRequest,
customMetricName, retries - 1)); // Recursive call
           }
       }));
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAnomalyDetectors`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAnomalyDetectors`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Describes the anomaly detectors based on the specified JSON file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the custom metric
namespace and name
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly detectors
have been described
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure during the operation, such as
when reading or parsing the JSON file,
    *                          or when describing the anomaly detectors
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeAnomalyDetectorsAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           try {
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest detectorsRequest =
DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(10)
```

```
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                return
getAsyncClient().describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest).thenAccept(response ->
{
                    List<AnomalyDetector> anomalyDetectorList =
response.anomalyDetectors();
                    for (AnomalyDetector detector : anomalyDetectorList) {
                        logger.info("Metric name: {} ",
detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector().metricName());
                        logger.info("State: {} ", detector.stateValue());
                    }
                });
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe anomaly detectors",
e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error describing anomaly detectors",
exception);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.DisableAlarmActionsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DisableAlarmActions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <alarmName>

                Where:
                  alarmName - An alarm name to disable (for example, MyAlarm).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alarmName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        disableActions(cw, alarmName);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void disableActions(CloudWatchClient cw, String alarmName) {
        try {
            DisableAlarmActionsRequest request =
 DisableAlarmActionsRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .alarmNames(alarmName)
                    .build();

            cw.disableAlarmActions(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully disabled actions on alarm %s",
 alarmName);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.CloudWatchClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.EnableAlarmActionsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class EnableAlarmActions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <alarmName>

                Where:
                  alarmName - An alarm name to enable (for example, MyAlarm).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alarm = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        CloudWatchClient cw = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        enableActions(cw, alarm);
        cw.close();
    }

    public static void enableActions(CloudWatchClient cw, String alarm) {
        try {
            EnableAlarmActionsRequest request = EnableAlarmActionsRequest.builder()
                    .alarmNames(alarm)
                    .build();

            cw.enableAlarmActions(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully enabled actions on alarm %s", alarm);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetMetricData

The following code example shows how to use GetMetricData.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves custom metric data from the AWS CloudWatch service.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the custom metric information
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric data has
been retrieved
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getCustomMetricDataAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
           try {
               // Read values from the JSON file.
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for further
processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
           try {
               // Parse the JSON string to extract relevant values.
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
```

```
                String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

                // Set the current time and date range for metric query.
                Instant nowDate = Instant.now();
                long hours = 1;
                long minutes = 30;
                Instant endTime = nowDate.plus(hours,
ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(minutes, ChronoUnit.MINUTES);

                Metric met = Metric.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .build();

                MetricStat metStat = MetricStat.builder()
                    .stat("Maximum")
                    .period(60)  // Assuming period in seconds
                    .metric(met)
                    .build();

                MetricDataQuery dataQuery = MetricDataQuery.builder()
                    .metricStat(metStat)
                    .id("foo2")
                    .returnData(true)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDataQuery> dq = new ArrayList<>();
                dq.add(dataQuery);

                GetMetricDataRequest getMetricDataRequest =
GetMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .maxDatapoints(10)
                    .scanBy(ScanBy.TIMESTAMP_DESCENDING)
                    .startTime(nowDate)
                    .endTime(endTime)
                    .metricDataQueries(dq)
                    .build();

                // Call the async method for CloudWatch data retrieval.
                return getAsyncClient().getMetricData(getMetricDataRequest);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to parse JSON content", e);
```

```
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<MetricDataResult> data = response.metricDataResults();
            for (MetricDataResult item : data) {
                logger.info("The label is: {}", item.label());
                logger.info("The status code is: {}", item.statusCode().toString());
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get metric data", exception);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetMetricStatistics`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricStatistics`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves and displays metric statistics for the specified parameters.
     *
     * @param nameSpace    the namespace for the metric
     * @param metVal       the name of the metric
     * @param metricOption the statistic to retrieve for the metric (e.g.,
"Maximum", "Average")
     * @param date         the date for which to retrieve the metric statistics, in
the format "yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm:ss'Z'"
     * @param myDimension  the dimension(s) to filter the metric statistics by
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the metric statistics
have been retrieved and displayed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMetricStatisticsResponse>
getAndDisplayMetricStatisticsAsync(String nameSpace, String metVal,
```

```
        String metricOption, String date, Dimension myDimension) {

       Instant start = Instant.parse(date);
       Instant endDate = Instant.now();

       // Building the request for metric statistics.
       GetMetricStatisticsRequest statisticsRequest =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
           .endTime(endDate)
           .startTime(start)
           .dimensions(myDimension)
           .metricName(metVal)
           .namespace(nameSpace)
           .period(86400) // 1 day period
           .statistics(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   List<Datapoint> data = response.datapoints();
                   if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                       for (Datapoint datapoint : data) {
                           logger.info("Timestamp: {} Maximum value: {}",
datapoint.timestamp(), datapoint.maximum());
                       }
                   } else {
                       logger.info("The returned data list is empty");
                   }
               } else {
                   logger.info("Failed to get metric statistics: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
               }
           })
           .exceptionally(exception -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Error while getting metric statistics: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetMetricWidgetImage

The following code example shows how to use GetMetricWidgetImage.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves and saves a custom metric image to a file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file to save the metric image to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the image has been
saved to the file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> downloadAndSaveMetricImageAsync(String fileName)
{
       logger.info("Getting Image data for custom metric.");
       String myJSON = """
             {
                 "title": "Example Metric Graph",
                 "view": "timeSeries",
                 "stacked ": false,
                 "period": 10,
                 "width": 1400,
                 "height": 600,
                 "metrics": [
                     [
                     "AWS/Billing",
                     "EstimatedCharges",
                     "Currency",
                     "USD"
                    ]
                 ]
             }
           """;
```

```
        GetMetricWidgetImageRequest imageRequest =
GetMetricWidgetImageRequest.builder()
            .metricWidget(myJSON)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                SdkBytes sdkBytes = response.metricWidgetImage();
                byte[] bytes = sdkBytes.asByteArray();
                return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                    try {
                        File outputFile = new File(fileName);
                        try (FileOutputStream outputStream = new
FileOutputStream(outputFile)) {
                            outputStream.write(bytes);
                        }
                    } catch (IOException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write image to file",
e);
                    }
                });
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error getting and saving metric
image", exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Image data saved successfully to {}", fileName);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDashboards`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDashboards`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Lists the available dashboards.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
finished.
    * The future will complete exceptionally if an error occurs while listing the
dashboards.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> listDashboardsAsync() {
       ListDashboardsRequest listDashboardsRequest =
ListDashboardsRequest.builder().build();
       ListDashboardsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listDashboardsPaginator(listDashboardsRequest);
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.dashboardEntries().forEach(entry -> {
               logger.info("Dashboard name is: {} ", entry.dashboardName());
               logger.info("Dashboard ARN is: {} ", entry.dashboardArn());
           });
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           logger.info("Failed to list dashboards: {} ", ex.getMessage());
           throw new RuntimeException("Error occurred while listing dashboards",
ex);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListMetrics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves a list of metric names for the specified namespace.
    *
    * @param namespace the namespace for which to retrieve the metric names
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains an {@link
ArrayList} of
    * the metric names in the specified namespace
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while listing the metrics
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ArrayList<String>> listMetsAsync(String namespace) {
       ListMetricsRequest request = ListMetricsRequest.builder()
           .namespace(namespace)
           .build();

       ListMetricsPublisher metricsPaginator =
getAsyncClient().listMetricsPaginator(request);
       Set<String> metSet = new HashSet<>();
       CompletableFuture<Void> future = metricsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.metrics().forEach(metric -> {
               String metricName = metric.metricName();
               metSet.add(metricName);
           });
       });

       return future
           .thenApply(ignored -> new ArrayList<>(metSet))
           .exceptionally(exception -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list metrics: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PutAnomalyDetector

The following code example shows how to use PutAnomalyDetector.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Adds an anomaly detector for the given file.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the file containing the anomaly detector
configuration
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the anomaly detector
has been added
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> addAnomalyDetectorAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<JsonNode> readFileFuture =
CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               return new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser); // Return the root node
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse the file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(rootNode -> {
           try {
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();

               SingleMetricAnomalyDetector singleMetricAnomalyDetector =
SingleMetricAnomalyDetector.builder()
                   .metricName(customMetricName)
```

```
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .stat("Maximum")
                    .build();

                PutAnomalyDetectorRequest anomalyDetectorRequest =
PutAnomalyDetectorRequest.builder()
                    .singleMetricAnomalyDetector(singleMetricAnomalyDetector)
                    .build();

                return
getAsyncClient().putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest).thenAccept(response ->
{
                    logger.info("Added anomaly detector for metric {}",
customMetricName);
                });
            } catch (Exception e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create anomaly detector", e);
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error adding anomaly detector",
exception);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `PutDashboard`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new dashboard with the specified name and metrics from the given
file.
    *
    * @param dashboardName the name of the dashboard to be created
    * @param fileName      the name of the file containing the dashboard body
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of creating the dashboard
    * @throws IOException if there is an error reading the dashboard body from the
file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutDashboardResponse>
createDashboardWithMetricsAsync(String dashboardName, String fileName) throws
IOException {
       String dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileName);
       PutDashboardRequest dashboardRequest = PutDashboardRequest.builder()
           .dashboardName(dashboardName)
           .dashboardBody(dashboardBody)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
           .handle((response, ex) -> {
               if (ex != null) {
                   logger.info("Failed to create dashboard: {}", ex.getMessage());
                   throw new RuntimeException("Dashboard creation failed", ex);
               } else {
                   // Handle the normal response case
                   logger.info("{} was successfully created.", dashboardName);
                   List<DashboardValidationMessage> messages =
response.dashboardValidationMessages();
                   if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                       logger.info("There are no messages in the new Dashboard.");
                   } else {
                       for (DashboardValidationMessage message : messages) {
                           logger.info("Message: {}", message.message());
                       }
                   }
                   return response; // Return the response for further use
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PutMetricAlarm

The following code example shows how to use PutMetricAlarm.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an alarm based on the configuration provided in a JSON file.
     *
     * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the alarm configuration
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the alarm
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while reading the JSON file
or creating the alarm
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode;
        try {
            JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
            rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        } catch (IOException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read the alarm configuration
file", e);
        }

        // Extract values from the JSON node.
        String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
        String customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
        String alarmName = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText();
        String emailTopic = rootNode.findValue("emailTopic").asText();
        String accountId = rootNode.findValue("accountId").asText();
        String region = rootNode.findValue("region").asText();

        // Create a List for alarm actions.
        List<String> alarmActions = new ArrayList<>();
```

```
        alarmActions.add("arn:aws:sns:" + region + ":" + accountId + ":" +
emailTopic);

        PutMetricAlarmRequest alarmRequest = PutMetricAlarmRequest.builder()
            .alarmActions(alarmActions)
            .alarmDescription("Example metric alarm")
            .alarmName(alarmName)

.comparisonOperator(ComparisonOperator.GREATER_THAN_OR_EQUAL_TO_THRESHOLD)
            .threshold(100.00)
            .metricName(customMetricName)
            .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
            .evaluationPeriods(1)
            .period(10)
            .statistic("Maximum")
            .datapointsToAlarm(1)
            .treatMissingData("ignore")
            .build();

        // Call the putMetricAlarm asynchronously and handle the result.
        return getAsyncClient().putMetricAlarm(alarmRequest)
            .handle((response, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    logger.info("Failed to create alarm: {}", ex.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create alarm", ex);
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} was successfully created!", alarmName);
                    return alarmName;
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PutMetricData

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Adds metric data for an alarm asynchronously.
    *
    * @param fileName the name of the JSON file containing the metric data
    * @return a CompletableFuture that asynchronously returns the
PutMetricDataResponse
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse>
addMetricDataForAlarmAsync(String fileName) {
       CompletableFuture<String> readFileFuture = CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(()
-> {
           try {
               JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
               return rootNode.toString(); // Return JSON as a string for further
processing
           } catch (IOException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read file", e);
           }
       });

       return readFileFuture.thenCompose(jsonContent -> {
           try {
               com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(jsonContent);
               String customMetricNamespace =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText();
               String customMetricName =
rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText();
               Instant instant = Instant.now();
```

```
                // Create MetricDatum objects.
                MetricDatum datum1 = MetricDatum.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                    .value(1001.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                MetricDatum datum2 = MetricDatum.builder()
                    .metricName(customMetricName)
                    .unit(StandardUnit.NONE)
                    .value(1002.00)
                    .timestamp(instant)
                    .build();

                List<MetricDatum> metricDataList = new ArrayList<>();
                metricDataList.add(datum1);
                metricDataList.add(datum2);

                // Build the PutMetricData request.
                PutMetricDataRequest request = PutMetricDataRequest.builder()
                    .namespace(customMetricNamespace)
                    .metricData(metricDataList)
                    .build();

                // Send the request asynchronously.
                return getAsyncClient().putMetricData(request);

            } catch (IOException e) {
                CompletableFuture<PutMetricDataResponse> failedFuture = new
CompletableFuture<>();
                failedFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed to
parse JSON content", e));
                return failedFuture;
            }
        }).whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                logger.error("Failed to put metric data: " + exception.getMessage(),
exception);
            } else {
                logger.info("Added metric values for metric.");
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Monitor DynamoDB performance

The following code example shows how to configure an application's use of DynamoDB to monitor performance.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example shows how to configure a Java application to monitor the performance of DynamoDB. The application sends metric data to CloudWatch where you can monitor the performance.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch
- DynamoDB

CloudWatch Events examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with CloudWatch Events.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.CloudWatchEventsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutEventsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutEventsRequestEntry;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PutEvents {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <resourceArn>

                Where:
                   resourceArn - An Amazon Resource Name (ARN) related to the
 events.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }

        String resourceArn = args[0];
        CloudWatchEventsClient cwe = CloudWatchEventsClient.builder()
                .build();

        putCWEvents(cwe, resourceArn);
        cwe.close();
    }

    public static void putCWEvents(CloudWatchEventsClient cwe, String resourceArn) {
        try {
            final String EVENT_DETAILS = "{ \"key1\": \"value1\", \"key2\":
 \"value2\" }";

            PutEventsRequestEntry requestEntry = PutEventsRequestEntry.builder()
                    .detail(EVENT_DETAILS)
                    .detailType("sampleSubmitted")
                    .resources(resourceArn)
                    .source("aws-sdk-java-cloudwatch-example")
                    .build();

            PutEventsRequest request = PutEventsRequest.builder()
                    .entries(requestEntry)
                    .build();

            cwe.putEvents(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully put CloudWatch event");

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PutRule

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.CloudWatchEventsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutRuleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutRuleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.RuleState;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PutRule {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <ruleName> roleArn>\s

                Where:
                  ruleName - A rule name (for example, myrule).
                  roleArn - A role ARN value (for example,
 arn:aws:iam::xxxxxx047983:user/MyUser).
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String ruleName = args[0];
        String roleArn = args[1];
```

```
        CloudWatchEventsClient cwe = CloudWatchEventsClient.builder()
                .build();

        putCWRule(cwe, ruleName, roleArn);
        cwe.close();
    }

    public static void putCWRule(CloudWatchEventsClient cwe, String ruleName, String
 roleArn) {
        try {
            PutRuleRequest request = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .name(ruleName)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .scheduleExpression("rate(5 minutes)")
                    .state(RuleState.ENABLED)
                    .build();

            PutRuleResponse response = cwe.putRule(request);
            System.out.printf(
                    "Successfully created CloudWatch events rule %s with arn %s",
                    roleArn, response.ruleArn());

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.CloudWatchEventsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.PutTargetsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchevents.model.Target;

/**
 * To run this Java V2 code example, ensure that you have setup your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PutTargets {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <ruleName> <functionArn> <targetId>\s

                Where:
                  ruleName - A rule name (for example, myrule).
                  functionArn - An AWS Lambda function ARN (for example,
 arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:xxxxxx047983:function:lamda1).
                  targetId - A target id value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String ruleName = args[0];
        String functionArn = args[1];
        String targetId = args[2];
        CloudWatchEventsClient cwe = CloudWatchEventsClient.builder()
                .build();

        putCWTargets(cwe, ruleName, functionArn, targetId);
        cwe.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void putCWTargets(CloudWatchEventsClient cwe, String ruleName,
 String functionArn, String targetId) {
        try {
            Target target = Target.builder()
                    .arn(functionArn)
                    .id(targetId)
                    .build();

            PutTargetsRequest request = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .targets(target)
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .build();

            cwe.putTargets(request);
            System.out.printf(
                    "Successfully created CloudWatch events target for rule %s",
                    ruleName);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteSubscriptionFilter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <filter> <logGroup>

                Where:
                  filter - The name of the subscription filter (for example,
 MyFilter).
```

```
                  logGroup - The name of the log group. (for example, testgroup).
                """";

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String filter = args[0];
        String logGroup = args[1];
        CloudWatchLogsClient logs = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .build();

        deleteSubFilter(logs, filter, logGroup);
        logs.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSubFilter(CloudWatchLogsClient logs, String filter,
 String logGroup) {
        try {
            DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest request =
 DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest.builder()
                    .filterName(filter)
                    .logGroupName(logGroup)
                    .build();

            logs.deleteSubscriptionFilter(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully deleted CloudWatch logs subscription
 filter %s", filter);

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeLogStreams`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLogStreams`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CloudWatchLogQuery {
    public static void main(final String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                  <logGroupName>

                Where:
                  logGroupName - The name of the log group (for example, /aws/
lambda/ChatAIHandler).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.print(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String logGroupName = "/aws/lambda/ChatAIHandler" ; //args[0];
        CloudWatchLogsClient logsClient = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        describeMostRecentLogStream(logsClient, logGroupName);
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Describes and prints metadata about the most recent log stream in the
specified log group.
    *
    * @param logsClient   the CloudWatchLogsClient used to interact with AWS
CloudWatch Logs
    * @param logGroupName the name of the log group
    */
   public static void describeMostRecentLogStream(CloudWatchLogsClient logsClient,
String logGroupName) {
       DescribeLogStreamsRequest streamsRequest =
DescribeLogStreamsRequest.builder()
               .logGroupName(logGroupName)
               .orderBy(OrderBy.LAST_EVENT_TIME)
               .descending(true)
               .limit(1)
               .build();

       try {
           DescribeLogStreamsResponse streamsResponse =
logsClient.describeLogStreams(streamsRequest);
           List<LogStream> logStreams = streamsResponse.logStreams();

           if (logStreams.isEmpty()) {
               System.out.println("No log streams found for log group: " +
logGroupName);
               return;
           }

           LogStream stream = logStreams.get(0);
           System.out.println("Most Recent Log Stream:");
           System.out.println("  Name: " + stream.logStreamName());
           System.out.println("  ARN: " + stream.arn());
           System.out.println("  Creation Time: " + stream.creationTime());
           System.out.println("  First Event Time: " +
stream.firstEventTimestamp());
           System.out.println("  Last Event Time: " + stream.lastEventTimestamp());
           System.out.println("  Stored Bytes: " + stream.storedBytes());
           System.out.println("  Upload Sequence Token: " +
stream.uploadSequenceToken());

       } catch (CloudWatchLogsException e) {
           System.err.println("Failed to describe log stream: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLogStreams in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeSubscriptionFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.DescribeSubscriptionFiltersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.SubscriptionFilter;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeSubscriptionFilters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <logGroup>
```

```
                Where:
                  logGroup - A log group name (for example, myloggroup).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String logGroup = args[0];
        CloudWatchLogsClient logs = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        describeFilters(logs, logGroup);
        logs.close();
    }

    public static void describeFilters(CloudWatchLogsClient logs, String logGroup) {
        try {
            boolean done = false;
            String newToken = null;

            while (!done) {
                DescribeSubscriptionFiltersResponse response;
                if (newToken == null) {
                    DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest request =
DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest.builder()
                            .logGroupName(logGroup)
                            .limit(1).build();

                    response = logs.describeSubscriptionFilters(request);
                } else {
                    DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest request =
DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest.builder()
                            .nextToken(newToken)
                            .logGroupName(logGroup)
                            .limit(1).build();
                    response = logs.describeSubscriptionFilters(request);
                }

                for (SubscriptionFilter filter : response.subscriptionFilters()) {
```

```
                    System.out.printf("Retrieved filter with name %s, " + "pattern
 %s " + "and destination arn %s",
                            filter.filterName(),
                            filter.filterPattern(),
                            filter.destinationArn());
                }

                if (response.nextToken() == null) {
                    done = true;
                } else {
                    newToken = response.nextToken();
                }
            }

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.printf("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetLogEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `GetLogEvents`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatch.model.CloudWatchException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.GetLogEventsRequest;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetLogEvents {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <logGroupName> <logStreamName>

                Where:
                  logGroupName - The name of the log group (for example,
 myloggroup).
                  logStreamName - The name of the log stream (for example,
 mystream).

                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.print(usage);
            System.exit(1);

        }

        String logGroupName = args[0];
        String logStreamName = args[1];

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        CloudWatchLogsClient cloudWatchLogsClient = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getCWLogEvents(cloudWatchLogsClient, logGroupName, logStreamName);
        cloudWatchLogsClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void getCWLogEvents(CloudWatchLogsClient cloudWatchLogsClient,
 String logGroupName,
            String logStreamName) {
        try {
            GetLogEventsRequest getLogEventsRequest = GetLogEventsRequest.builder()
                    .logGroupName(logGroupName)
                    .logStreamName(logStreamName)
                    .startFromHead(true)
                    .build();

            int logLimit =
 cloudWatchLogsClient.getLogEvents(getLogEventsRequest).events().size();
            for (int c = 0; c < logLimit; c++) {

 System.out.println(cloudWatchLogsClient.getLogEvents(getLogEventsRequest).events().get(c).m
            }

            System.out.println("Successfully got CloudWatch log events!");

        } catch (CloudWatchException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetLogEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `PutSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.CloudWatchLogsException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.PutSubscriptionFilterRequest;

/**
 * Before running this code example, you need to grant permission to CloudWatch
 * Logs the right to execute your Lambda function.
 * To perform this task, you can use this CLI command:
 *
 * aws lambda add-permission --function-name "lamda1" --statement-id "lamda1"
 * --principal "logs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com" --action "lambda:InvokeFunction"
 * --source-arn "arn:aws:logs:us-west-2:111111111111:log-group:testgroup:*"
 * --source-account "111111111111"
 *
 * Make sure you replace the function name with your function name and replace
 * '111111111111' with your account details.
 * For more information, see "Subscription Filters with AWS Lambda" in the
 * Amazon CloudWatch Logs Guide.
 *
 *
 * Also, before running this Java V2 code example,set up your development
 * environment,including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information,see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 */

public class PutSubscriptionFilter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <filter> <pattern> <logGroup> <functionArn>\s

                Where:
                  filter - A filter name (for example, myfilter).
                  pattern - A filter pattern (for example, ERROR).
                  logGroup - A log group name (testgroup).
                  functionArn - An AWS Lambda function ARN (for example,
 arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:111111111111:function:lambda1) .
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String filter = args[0];
        String pattern = args[1];
        String logGroup = args[2];
        String functionArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        CloudWatchLogsClient cwl = CloudWatchLogsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putSubFilters(cwl, filter, pattern, logGroup, functionArn);
        cwl.close();
    }

    public static void putSubFilters(CloudWatchLogsClient cwl,
            String filter,
            String pattern,
            String logGroup,
            String functionArn) {

        try {
            PutSubscriptionFilterRequest request =
PutSubscriptionFilterRequest.builder()
                    .filterName(filter)
                    .filterPattern(pattern)
                    .logGroupName(logGroup)
                    .destinationArn(functionArn)
                    .build();

            cwl.putSubscriptionFilter(request);
            System.out.printf(
                    "Successfully created CloudWatch logs subscription filter %s",
                    filter);

        } catch (CloudWatchLogsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see PutSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartLiveTail`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Include the required files.

```
import io.reactivex.FlowableSubscriber;
import io.reactivex.annotations.NonNull;
import org.reactivestreams.Subscription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.LiveTailSessionLogEvent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.LiveTailSessionStart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.LiveTailSessionUpdate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.CloudWatchLogsException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailResponseStream;

import java.util.Date;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicReference;
```

Handle the events from the Live Tail session.

```
    private static StartLiveTailResponseHandler
 getStartLiveTailResponseStreamHandler(
            AtomicReference<Subscription> subscriptionAtomicReference) {
        return StartLiveTailResponseHandler.builder()
            .onResponse(r -> System.out.println("Received initial response"))
            .onError(throwable -> {
                CloudWatchLogsException e = (CloudWatchLogsException)
 throwable.getCause();
```

```
                System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            })
            .subscriber(() -> new FlowableSubscriber<>() {
                @Override
                public void onSubscribe(@NonNull Subscription s) {
                    subscriptionAtomicReference.set(s);
                    s.request(Long.MAX_VALUE);
                }

                @Override
                public void onNext(StartLiveTailResponseStream event) {
                    if (event instanceof LiveTailSessionStart) {
                        LiveTailSessionStart sessionStart = (LiveTailSessionStart)
event;
                        System.out.println(sessionStart);
                    } else if (event instanceof LiveTailSessionUpdate) {
                        LiveTailSessionUpdate sessionUpdate =
(LiveTailSessionUpdate) event;
                        List<LiveTailSessionLogEvent> logEvents =
sessionUpdate.sessionResults();
                        logEvents.forEach(e -> {
                            long timestamp = e.timestamp();
                            Date date = new Date(timestamp);
                            System.out.println("[" + date + "] " + e.message());
                        });
                    } else {
                        throw CloudWatchLogsException.builder().message("Unknown
event type").build();
                    }
                }

                @Override
                public void onError(Throwable throwable) {
                    System.out.println(throwable.getMessage());
                    System.exit(1);
                }

                @Override
                public void onComplete() {
                    System.out.println("Completed Streaming Session");
                }
            })
            .build();
```

```
    }
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
        CloudWatchLogsAsyncClient cloudWatchLogsAsyncClient =
                CloudWatchLogsAsyncClient.builder()
                    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .build();

        StartLiveTailRequest request =
                StartLiveTailRequest.builder()
                    .logGroupIdentifiers(logGroupIdentifiers)
                    .logStreamNames(logStreamNames)
                    .logEventFilterPattern(logEventFilterPattern)
                    .build();

        /* Create a reference to store the subscription */
        final AtomicReference<Subscription> subscriptionAtomicReference = new
AtomicReference<>(null);

        cloudWatchLogsAsyncClient.startLiveTail(request,
getStartLiveTailResponseStreamHandler(subscriptionAtomicReference));
```

Stop the Live Tail session after a period of time has elapsed.

```
        /* Set a timeout for the session and cancel the subscription. This will:
         * 1). Close the stream
         * 2). Stop the Live Tail session
         */
        try {
            Thread.sleep(10000);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        if (subscriptionAtomicReference.get() != null) {
            subscriptionAtomicReference.get().cancel();
            System.out.println("Subscription to stream closed");
        }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Cognito Identity.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateIdentityPool`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.CreateIdentityPoolRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.CreateIdentityPoolResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateIdentityPool {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <identityPoolName>\s

                Where:
                    identityPoolName - The name to give your identity pool.
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String identityPoolName = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String identityPoolId = createIdPool(cognitoClient, identityPoolName);
        System.out.println("Unity pool ID " + identityPoolId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static String createIdPool(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient, String
 identityPoolName) {
        try {
            CreateIdentityPoolRequest poolRequest =
 CreateIdentityPoolRequest.builder()
                    .allowUnauthenticatedIdentities(false)
                    .identityPoolName(identityPoolName)
                    .build();

            CreateIdentityPoolResponse response =
 cognitoClient.createIdentityPool(poolRequest);
            return response.identityPoolId();

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentityPool`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.exception.AwsServiceException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.DeleteIdentityPoolRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteIdentityPool {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <identityPoolId>\s

                Where:
                    identityPoolId - The Id value of your identity pool.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String identityPoold = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoIdClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        deleteIdPool(cognitoIdClient, identityPoold);
        cognitoIdClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIdPool(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoIdClient, String
 identityPoold) {
        try {

            DeleteIdentityPoolRequest identityPoolRequest =
 DeleteIdentityPoolRequest.builder()
                    .identityPoolId(identityPoold)
                    .build();

            cognitoIdClient.deleteIdentityPool(identityPoolRequest);
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (AwsServiceException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetCredentialsForIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCredentialsForIdentity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.GetCredentialsForIdentityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.GetCredentialsForIdentityResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetIdentityCredentials {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <identityId>\s

            Where:
                identityId - The Id of an existing identity in the format
 REGION:GUID.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String identityId = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        getCredsForIdentity(cognitoClient, identityId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void getCredsForIdentity(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient,
 String identityId) {
        try {
            GetCredentialsForIdentityRequest getCredentialsForIdentityRequest =
 GetCredentialsForIdentityRequest
                    .builder()
                    .identityId(identityId)
                    .build();

            GetCredentialsForIdentityResponse response = cognitoClient
                    .getCredentialsForIdentity(getCredentialsForIdentityRequest);
            System.out.println(
                    "Identity ID " + response.identityId() + ", Access key ID " +
 response.credentials().accessKeyId());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialsForIdentity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListIdentityPools`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentityPools`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.CognitoIdentityClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.ListIdentityPoolsRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentity.model.ListIdentityPoolsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListIdentityPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient = CognitoIdentityClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listIdPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listIdPools(CognitoIdentityClient cognitoClient) {
        try {
            ListIdentityPoolsRequest poolsRequest =
 ListIdentityPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(15)
                    .build();

            ListIdentityPoolsResponse response =
 cognitoClient.listIdentityPools(poolsRequest);
            response.identityPools().forEach(pool -> {
                System.out.println("Pool ID: " + pool.identityPoolId());
                System.out.println("Pool name: " + pool.identityPoolName());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsResponse;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListUserPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUserPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUserPools(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient)
 {
        try {
            ListUserPoolsRequest request = ListUserPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListUserPoolsResponse response = cognitoClient.listUserPools(request);
            response.userPools().forEach(userpool -> {
                System.out.println("User pool " + userpool.name() + ", User ID " +
 userpool.id());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void getAdminUser(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String userName,
           String poolId) {
       try {
           AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = AdminGetUserRequest.builder()
                   .username(userName)
                   .userPoolId(poolId)
                   .build();

           AdminGetUserResponse response =
identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest);
           System.out.println("User status " + response.userStatusAsString());

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AdminInitiateAuth

The following code example shows how to use AdminInitiateAuth.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static AdminInitiateAuthResponse
initiateAuth(CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient,
           String clientId, String userName, String password, String userPoolId) {
       try {
           Map<String, String> authParameters = new HashMap<>();
           authParameters.put("USERNAME", userName);
           authParameters.put("PASSWORD", password);

           AdminInitiateAuthRequest authRequest =
AdminInitiateAuthRequest.builder()
                   .clientId(clientId)
                   .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                   .authParameters(authParameters)
                   .authFlow(AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH)
                   .build();

           AdminInitiateAuthResponse response =
identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest);
           System.out.println("Result Challenge is : " + response.challengeName());
           return response;

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Respond to an authentication challenge.
   public static void adminRespondToAuthChallenge(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient,
           String userName, String clientId, String mfaCode, String session) {
       System.out.println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");
       Map<String, String> challengeResponses = new HashMap<>();

       challengeResponses.put("USERNAME", userName);
       challengeResponses.put("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

       AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest respondToAuthChallengeRequest =
AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest.builder()
               .challengeName(ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA)
               .clientId(clientId)
               .challengeResponses(challengeResponses)
               .session(session)
               .build();

       AdminRespondToAuthChallengeResponse respondToAuthChallengeResult =
identityProviderClient
               .adminRespondToAuthChallenge(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
       System.out.println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()"
               + respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult());
   }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String getSecretForAppMFA(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session) {
       AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest softwareTokenRequest =
AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
               .session(session)
               .build();

       AssociateSoftwareTokenResponse tokenResponse = identityProviderClient
               .associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest);
       String secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode();
       System.out.println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator");
       System.out.println(secretCode);
       return tokenResponse.session();
   }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ConfirmSignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void confirmSignUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 identityProviderClient, String clientId, String code,
            String userName) {
        try {
            ConfirmSignUpRequest signUpRequest = ConfirmSignUpRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .confirmationCode(code)
                    .username(userName)
                    .build();

            identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println(userName + " was confirmed");

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateUserPool`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUserPool`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateUserPool {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userPoolName>\s

                Where:
                    userPoolName - The name to give your user pool when it's
 created.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userPoolName = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String id = createPool(cognitoClient, userPoolName);
        System.out.println("User pool ID: " + id);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static String createPool(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient,
 String userPoolName) {
        try {
            CreateUserPoolRequest request = CreateUserPoolRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .poolName(userPoolName)
                    .build();

            CreateUserPoolResponse response = cognitoClient.createUserPool(request);
            return response.userPool().id();

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUserPool in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateUserPoolClient`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUserPoolClient`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolClientRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CreateUserPoolClientResponse;

/**
 * A user pool client app is an application that authenticates with Amazon
 * Cognito user pools.
```

```
 * When you create a user pool, you can configure app clients that allow mobile
 * or web applications
 * to call API operations to authenticate users, manage user attributes and
 * profiles,
 * and implement sign-up and sign-in flows.
 *
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateUserPoolClient {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <clientName> <userPoolId>\s

                Where:
                    clientName - The name for the user pool client to create.
                    userPoolId - The ID for the user pool.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clientName = args[0];
        String userPoolId = args[1];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        createPoolClient(cognitoClient, clientName, userPoolId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void createPoolClient(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient,
 String clientName,
            String userPoolId) {
        try {
```

```
            CreateUserPoolClientRequest request =
 CreateUserPoolClientRequest.builder()
                    .clientName(clientName)
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .build();

            CreateUserPoolClientResponse response =
 cognitoClient.createUserPoolClient(request);
            System.out.println("User pool " + response.userPoolClient().clientName()
 + " created. ID: "
                    + response.userPoolClient().clientId());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUserPoolClient in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListUserPools`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUserPools`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsResponse;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUserPoolsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListUserPools {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUserPools(cognitoClient);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUserPools(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient)
 {
        try {
            ListUserPoolsRequest request = ListUserPoolsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListUserPoolsResponse response = cognitoClient.listUserPools(request);
            response.userPools().forEach(userpool -> {
                System.out.println("User pool " + userpool.name() + ", User ID " +
 userpool.id());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ListUsers

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUsersRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ListUsersResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListUsers {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userPoolId>\s

                Where:
                    userPoolId - The ID given to your user pool when it's created.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userPoolId = args[0];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient =
CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllUsers(cognitoClient, userPoolId);
        listUsersFilter(cognitoClient, userPoolId);
        cognitoClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUsers(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient,
String userPoolId) {
        try {
            ListUsersRequest usersRequest = ListUsersRequest.builder()
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .build();

            ListUsersResponse response = cognitoClient.listUsers(usersRequest);
            response.users().forEach(user -> {
                System.out.println("User " + user.username() + " Status " +
user.userStatus() + " Created "
                        + user.userCreateDate());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Shows how to list users by using a filter.
    public static void listUsersFilter(CognitoIdentityProviderClient cognitoClient,
String userPoolId) {

        try {
            String filter = "email = \"tblue@noserver.com\"";
            ListUsersRequest usersRequest = ListUsersRequest.builder()
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .filter(filter)
```

```
                    .build();

            ListUsersResponse response = cognitoClient.listUsers(usersRequest);
            response.users().forEach(user -> {
                System.out.println("User with filter applied " + user.username() + "
 Status " + user.userStatus()
                        + " Created " + user.userCreateDate());
            });

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void resendConfirmationCode(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
 identityProviderClient, String clientId,
            String userName) {
        try {
            ResendConfirmationCodeRequest codeRequest =
 ResendConfirmationCodeRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .username(userName)
                    .build();
```

```
            ResendConfirmationCodeResponse response =
identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest);
            System.out.println("Method of delivery is " +
response.codeDeliveryDetails().deliveryMediumAsString());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `SignUp`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void signUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient,
String clientId, String userName,
            String password, String email) {
        AttributeType userAttrs = AttributeType.builder()
                .name("email")
                .value(email)
                .build();

        List<AttributeType> userAttrsList = new ArrayList<>();
        userAttrsList.add(userAttrs);
        try {
            SignUpRequest signUpRequest = SignUpRequest.builder()
                    .userAttributes(userAttrsList)
                    .username(userName)
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .password(password)
```

```
                    .build();

            identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println("User has been signed up ");

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
   public static void verifyTOTP(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session, String code) {
       try {
           VerifySoftwareTokenRequest tokenRequest =
VerifySoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
                   .userCode(code)
                   .session(session)
                   .build();

           VerifySoftwareTokenResponse verifyResponse =
identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest);
           System.out.println("The status of the token is " +
verifyResponse.statusAsString());

       } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.CognitoIdentityProviderClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminGetUserRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminGetUserResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminInitiateAuthRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminInitiateAuthResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRe
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRe
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AssociateSoftwareTokenRespons
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.AuthFlowType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ChallengeNameType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.CognitoIdentityProviderExcept
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ConfirmSignUpRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ResendConfirmationCodeRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.ResendConfirmationCodeRespons
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.SignUpRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.VerifySoftwareTokenRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.cognitoidentityprovider.model.VerifySoftwareTokenResponse;
import java.security.InvalidKeyException;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * TIP: To set up the required user pool, run the AWS Cloud Development Kit (AWS
 * CDK) script provided in this GitHub repo at
 * resources/cdk/cognito_scenario_user_pool_with_mfa.
 *
 * This code example performs the following operations:
```

```
 *
 * 1. Invokes the signUp method to sign up a user.
 * 2. Invokes the adminGetUser method to get the user's confirmation status.
 * 3. Invokes the ResendConfirmationCode method if the user requested another
 * code.
 * 4. Invokes the confirmSignUp method.
 * 5. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in. This results in being prompted
 * to set up TOTP (time-based one-time password). (The response is
 * “ChallengeName”: “MFA_SETUP”).
 * 6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate a TOTP MFA private
 * key. This can be used with Google Authenticator.
 * 7. Invokes the VerifySoftwareToken method to verify the TOTP and register for
 * MFA.
 * 8. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in again. This results in being
 * prompted to submit a TOTP (Response: “ChallengeName”: “SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA”).
 * 9. Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge to get back a token.
 */

public class CognitoMVP {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws NoSuchAlgorithmException,
 InvalidKeyException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <clientId> <poolId>

                Where:
                    clientId - The app client Id value that you can get from the AWS
 CDK script.
                    poolId - The pool Id that you can get from the AWS CDK script.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clientId = args[0];
        String poolId = args[1];
        CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient =
 CognitoIdentityProviderClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Cognito example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Enter your user name");
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String userName = in.nextLine();

        System.out.println("*** Enter your password");
        String password = in.nextLine();

        System.out.println("*** Enter your email");
        String email = in.nextLine();

        System.out.println("1. Signing up " + userName);
        signUp(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName, password, email);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Getting " + userName + " in the user pool");
        getAdminUser(identityProviderClient, userName, poolId);

        System.out
                .println("*** Conformation code sent to " + userName + ". Would you
like to send a new code? (Yes/No)");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        String ans = in.nextLine();

        if (ans.compareTo("Yes") == 0) {
            resendConfirmationCode(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName);
            System.out.println("3. Sending a new confirmation code");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Enter confirmation code that was emailed");
        String code = in.nextLine();
        confirmSignUp(identityProviderClient, clientId, code, userName);
```

```
        System.out.println("Rechecking the status of " + userName + " in the user
pool");
        getAdminUser(identityProviderClient, userName, poolId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Invokes the initiateAuth to sign in");
        AdminInitiateAuthResponse authResponse =
initiateAuth(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName, password,
                poolId);
        String mySession = authResponse.session();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate
a TOTP key");
        String newSession = getSecretForAppMFA(identityProviderClient, mySession);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google
Authenticator");
        String myCode = in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Verify the TOTP and register for MFA");
        verifyTOTP(identityProviderClient, newSession, myCode);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Re-enter a 6-digit code displayed in Google
Authenticator");
        String mfaCode = in.nextLine();
        AdminInitiateAuthResponse authResponse1 =
initiateAuth(identityProviderClient, clientId, userName, password,
                poolId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9.  Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge");
        String session2 = authResponse1.session();
        adminRespondToAuthChallenge(identityProviderClient, userName, clientId,
mfaCode, session2);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("All Amazon Cognito operations were successfully
performed");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Respond to an authentication challenge.
    public static void adminRespondToAuthChallenge(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient,
            String userName, String clientId, String mfaCode, String session) {
        System.out.println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated");
        Map<String, String> challengeResponses = new HashMap<>();

        challengeResponses.put("USERNAME", userName);
        challengeResponses.put("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE", mfaCode);

        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest respondToAuthChallengeRequest =
AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest.builder()
                .challengeName(ChallengeNameType.SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA)
                .clientId(clientId)
                .challengeResponses(challengeResponses)
                .session(session)
                .build();

        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeResponse respondToAuthChallengeResult =
identityProviderClient
                .adminRespondToAuthChallenge(respondToAuthChallengeRequest);
        System.out.println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()"
                + respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult());
    }

    // Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    public static void verifyTOTP(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session, String code) {
        try {
            VerifySoftwareTokenRequest tokenRequest =
VerifySoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
                    .userCode(code)
                    .session(session)
                    .build();
```

```
            VerifySoftwareTokenResponse verifyResponse =
identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest);
            System.out.println("The status of the token is " +
verifyResponse.statusAsString());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static AdminInitiateAuthResponse
initiateAuth(CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient,
            String clientId, String userName, String password, String userPoolId) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> authParameters = new HashMap<>();
            authParameters.put("USERNAME", userName);
            authParameters.put("PASSWORD", password);

            AdminInitiateAuthRequest authRequest =
AdminInitiateAuthRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .userPoolId(userPoolId)
                    .authParameters(authParameters)
                    .authFlow(AuthFlowType.ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH)
                    .build();

            AdminInitiateAuthResponse response =
identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest);
            System.out.println("Result Challenge is : " + response.challengeName());
            return response;

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }

    public static String getSecretForAppMFA(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String session) {
        AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest softwareTokenRequest =
AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest.builder()
```

```
                .session(session)
                .build();

        AssociateSoftwareTokenResponse tokenResponse = identityProviderClient
                .associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest);
        String secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode();
        System.out.println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator");
        System.out.println(secretCode);
        return tokenResponse.session();
    }

    public static void confirmSignUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId, String code,
            String userName) {
        try {
            ConfirmSignUpRequest signUpRequest = ConfirmSignUpRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .confirmationCode(code)
                    .username(userName)
                    .build();

            identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println(userName + " was confirmed");

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void resendConfirmationCode(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String clientId,
            String userName) {
        try {
            ResendConfirmationCodeRequest codeRequest =
ResendConfirmationCodeRequest.builder()
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .username(userName)
                    .build();

            ResendConfirmationCodeResponse response =
identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest);
            System.out.println("Method of delivery is " +
response.codeDeliveryDetails().deliveryMediumAsString());
```

```
        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void signUp(CognitoIdentityProviderClient identityProviderClient,
String clientId, String userName,
            String password, String email) {
        AttributeType userAttrs = AttributeType.builder()
                .name("email")
                .value(email)
                .build();

        List<AttributeType> userAttrsList = new ArrayList<>();
        userAttrsList.add(userAttrs);
        try {
            SignUpRequest signUpRequest = SignUpRequest.builder()
                    .userAttributes(userAttrsList)
                    .username(userName)
                    .clientId(clientId)
                    .password(password)
                    .build();

            identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest);
            System.out.println("User has been signed up ");

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getAdminUser(CognitoIdentityProviderClient
identityProviderClient, String userName,
            String poolId) {
        try {
            AdminGetUserRequest userRequest = AdminGetUserRequest.builder()
                    .username(userName)
                    .userPoolId(poolId)
                    .build();
```

```
            AdminGetUserResponse response =
 identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest);
            System.out.println("User status " + response.userStatusAsString());

        } catch (CognitoIdentityProviderException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Comprehend.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateDocumentClassifier`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDocumentClassifier`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.CreateDocumentClassifierRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.CreateDocumentClassifierResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DocumentClassifierInputDataConfig;

/**
 * Before running this code example, you can setup the necessary resources, such
 * as the CSV file and IAM Roles, by following this document:
 * https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/machine-learning/building-a-custom-classifier-using-
amazon-comprehend/
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DocumentClassifierDemo {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <dataAccessRoleArn> <s3Uri> <documentClassifierName>

                Where:
                  dataAccessRoleArn - The ARN value of the role used for this
 operation.
                  s3Uri - The Amazon S3 bucket that contains the CSV file.
                  documentClassifierName - The name of the document classifier.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dataAccessRoleArn = args[0];
        String s3Uri = args[1];
        String documentClassifierName = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createDocumentClassifier(comClient, dataAccessRoleArn, s3Uri,
 documentClassifierName);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void createDocumentClassifier(ComprehendClient comClient, String
 dataAccessRoleArn, String s3Uri,
            String documentClassifierName) {
        try {
            DocumentClassifierInputDataConfig config =
 DocumentClassifierInputDataConfig.builder()
                    .s3Uri(s3Uri)
                    .build();
```

```
            CreateDocumentClassifierRequest createDocumentClassifierRequest =
 CreateDocumentClassifierRequest.builder()
                    .documentClassifierName(documentClassifierName)
                    .dataAccessRoleArn(dataAccessRoleArn)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .inputDataConfig(config)
                    .build();

            CreateDocumentClassifierResponse createDocumentClassifierResult =
 comClient
                    .createDocumentClassifier(createDocumentClassifierRequest);
            String documentClassifierArn =
 createDocumentClassifierResult.documentClassifierArn();
            System.out.println("Document Classifier ARN: " + documentClassifierArn);

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectDominantLanguage`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDominantLanguage`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectDominantLanguageRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectDominantLanguageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DominantLanguage;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectLanguage {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        // Specify French text - "It is raining today in Seattle".
        String text = "Il pleut aujourd'hui à Seattle";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;

        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectDominantLanguage");
        detectTheDominantLanguage(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectTheDominantLanguage(ComprehendClient comClient, String
 text) {
        try {
            DetectDominantLanguageRequest request =
 DetectDominantLanguageRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .build();

            DetectDominantLanguageResponse resp =
 comClient.detectDominantLanguage(request);
            List<DominantLanguage> allLanList = resp.languages();
            for (DominantLanguage lang : allLanList) {
                System.out.println("Language is " + lang.languageCode());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectEntities`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectEntities`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectEntitiesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.Entity;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectEntities {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
```

```
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectEntities");
        detectAllEntities(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectAllEntities(ComprehendClient comClient, String text) {
        try {
            DetectEntitiesRequest detectEntitiesRequest =
 DetectEntitiesRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectEntitiesResponse detectEntitiesResult =
 comClient.detectEntities(detectEntitiesRequest);
            List<Entity> entList = detectEntitiesResult.entities();
            for (Entity entity : entList) {
                System.out.println("Entity text is " + entity.text());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectKeyPhrases`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectKeyPhrases`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectKeyPhrasesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectKeyPhrasesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.KeyPhrase;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectKeyPhrases {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectKeyPhrases");
        detectAllKeyPhrases(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectAllKeyPhrases(ComprehendClient comClient, String text)
 {
```

```
        try {
            DetectKeyPhrasesRequest detectKeyPhrasesRequest =
 DetectKeyPhrasesRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectKeyPhrasesResponse detectKeyPhrasesResult =
 comClient.detectKeyPhrases(detectKeyPhrasesRequest);
            List<KeyPhrase> phraseList = detectKeyPhrasesResult.keyPhrases();
            for (KeyPhrase keyPhrase : phraseList) {
                System.out.println("Key phrase text is " + keyPhrase.text());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectSentiment`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSentiment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSentimentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSentimentResponse;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectSentiment {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectSentiment");
        detectSentiments(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectSentiments(ComprehendClient comClient, String text) {
        try {
            DetectSentimentRequest detectSentimentRequest =
 DetectSentimentRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectSentimentResponse detectSentimentResult =
 comClient.detectSentiment(detectSentimentRequest);
            System.out.println("The Neutral value is " +
 detectSentimentResult.sentimentScore().neutral());

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectSyntax`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSyntax`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.ComprehendClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.ComprehendException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSyntaxRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.DetectSyntaxResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.comprehend.model.SyntaxToken;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectSyntax {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String text = "Amazon.com, Inc. is located in Seattle, WA and was founded
 July 5th, 1994 by Jeff Bezos, allowing customers to buy everything from books to
 blenders. Seattle is north of Portland and south of Vancouver, BC. Other notable
 Seattle - based companies are Starbucks and Boeing.";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        ComprehendClient comClient = ComprehendClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        System.out.println("Calling DetectSyntax");
        detectAllSyntax(comClient, text);
        comClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectAllSyntax(ComprehendClient comClient, String text) {
        try {
            DetectSyntaxRequest detectSyntaxRequest = DetectSyntaxRequest.builder()
                    .text(text)
                    .languageCode("en")
                    .build();

            DetectSyntaxResponse detectSyntaxResult =
 comClient.detectSyntax(detectSyntaxRequest);
            List<SyntaxToken> syntaxTokens = detectSyntaxResult.syntaxTokens();
            for (SyntaxToken token : syntaxTokens) {
                System.out.println("Language is " + token.text());
                System.out.println("Part of speech is " +
 token.partOfSpeech().tagAsString());
            }

        } catch (ComprehendException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Building an Amazon Lex chatbot

The following code example shows how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Create a messaging application

The following code example shows how to create a messaging application by using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.

- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Firehose examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Firehose.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`PutRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecord`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Puts a record to the specified Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery stream.
    *
    * @param record The record to be put to the delivery stream. The record must be
a {@link Map} of String keys and Object values.
    * @param deliveryStreamName The name of the Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose
delivery stream to which the record should be put.
    * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input record or delivery stream name
is null or empty.
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error putting the record to the
delivery stream.
    */
   public static void putRecord(Map<String, Object> record, String
deliveryStreamName) {
       if (record == null || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: record or delivery
stream name cannot be null/empty");
       }
       try {
           String jsonRecord = new ObjectMapper().writeValueAsString(record);
           Record firehoseRecord = Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
               .build();

           PutRecordRequest putRecordRequest = PutRecordRequest.builder()
               .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
               .record(firehoseRecord)
               .build();

           getFirehoseClient().putRecord(putRecordRequest);
           System.out.println("Record sent: " + jsonRecord);
       } catch (Exception e) {
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record: " + e.getMessage(),
e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutRecordBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecordBatch`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Puts a batch of records to an Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery stream.
     *
     * @param records           a list of maps representing the records to be sent
     * @param batchSize         the maximum number of records to include in each
batch
     * @param deliveryStreamName the name of the Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input parameters are invalid (null or
empty)
     * @throws RuntimeException         if there is an error putting the record
batch
     */
    public static void putRecordBatch(List<Map<String, Object>> records, int
batchSize, String deliveryStreamName) {
        if (records == null || records.isEmpty() || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: records or delivery
stream name cannot be null/empty");
        }
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
```

```
        try {
            for (int i = 0; i < records.size(); i += batchSize) {
                List<Map<String, Object>> batch = records.subList(i, Math.min(i +
batchSize, records.size()));

                List<Record> batchRecords = batch.stream().map(record -> {
                    try {
                        String jsonRecord = objectMapper.writeValueAsString(record);
                        return Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                            .build();
                    } catch (Exception e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Error creating Firehose record",
e);
                    }
                }).collect(Collectors.toList());

                PutRecordBatchRequest request = PutRecordBatchRequest.builder()
                    .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
                    .records(batchRecords)
                    .build();

                PutRecordBatchResponse response =
getFirehoseClient().putRecordBatch(request);

                if (response.failedPutCount() > 0) {
                    response.requestResponses().stream()
                        .filter(r -> r.errorCode() != null)
                        .forEach(r -> System.err.println("Failed record: " +
r.errorMessage()));
                }
                System.out.println("Batch sent with size: " + batchRecords.size());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record batch: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Put records to Firehose

The following code example shows how to use Firehose to process individual and batch records.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example puts individual and batch records to Firehose.

```
/**
 * Amazon Firehose Scenario example using Java V2 SDK.
 *
 * Demonstrates individual and batch record processing,
 * and monitoring Firehose delivery stream metrics.
 */
public class FirehoseScenario {

    private static FirehoseClient firehoseClient;
    private static CloudWatchClient cloudWatchClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <deliveryStreamName>
                Where:
                    deliveryStreamName - The Firehose delivery stream name.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String deliveryStreamName = args[0];

        try {
```

```
            // Read and parse sample data.
            String jsonContent = readJsonFile("sample_records.json");
            ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
            List<Map<String, Object>> sampleData =
objectMapper.readValue(jsonContent, new TypeReference<>() {});

            // Process individual records.
            System.out.println("Processing individual records...");
            sampleData.subList(0, 100).forEach(record -> {
                try {
                    putRecord(record, deliveryStreamName);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    System.err.println("Error processing record: " +
e.getMessage());
                }
            });

            // Monitor metrics.
            monitorMetrics(deliveryStreamName);

            // Process batch records.
            System.out.println("Processing batch records...");
            putRecordBatch(sampleData.subList(100, sampleData.size()), 500,
deliveryStreamName);
            monitorMetrics(deliveryStreamName);

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Scenario failed: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            closeClients();
        }
    }

    private static FirehoseClient getFirehoseClient() {
        if (firehoseClient == null) {
            firehoseClient = FirehoseClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return firehoseClient;
    }

    private static CloudWatchClient getCloudWatchClient() {
        if (cloudWatchClient == null) {
```

```
            cloudWatchClient = CloudWatchClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return cloudWatchClient;
    }

    /**
     * Puts a record to the specified Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery stream.
     *
     * @param record The record to be put to the delivery stream. The record must be
a {@link Map} of String keys and Object values.
     * @param deliveryStreamName The name of the Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose
delivery stream to which the record should be put.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input record or delivery stream name
is null or empty.
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error putting the record to the
delivery stream.
     */
    public static void putRecord(Map<String, Object> record, String
deliveryStreamName) {
        if (record == null || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: record or delivery
stream name cannot be null/empty");
        }
        try {
            String jsonRecord = new ObjectMapper().writeValueAsString(record);
            Record firehoseRecord = Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                .build();

            PutRecordRequest putRecordRequest = PutRecordRequest.builder()
                .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
                .record(firehoseRecord)
                .build();

            getFirehoseClient().putRecord(putRecordRequest);
            System.out.println("Record sent: " + jsonRecord);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record: " + e.getMessage(),
e);
        }
```

```
    }


    /**
     * Puts a batch of records to an Amazon Kinesis Data Firehose delivery stream.
     *
     * @param records           a list of maps representing the records to be sent
     * @param batchSize         the maximum number of records to include in each
batch
     * @param deliveryStreamName the name of the Kinesis Data Firehose delivery
stream
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the input parameters are invalid (null or
empty)
     * @throws RuntimeException         if there is an error putting the record
batch
     */
    public static void putRecordBatch(List<Map<String, Object>> records, int
batchSize, String deliveryStreamName) {
        if (records == null || records.isEmpty() || deliveryStreamName == null ||
deliveryStreamName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Invalid input: records or delivery
stream name cannot be null/empty");
        }
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();

        try {
            for (int i = 0; i < records.size(); i += batchSize) {
                List<Map<String, Object>> batch = records.subList(i, Math.min(i +
batchSize, records.size()));

                List<Record> batchRecords = batch.stream().map(record -> {
                    try {
                        String jsonRecord = objectMapper.writeValueAsString(record);
                        return Record.builder()

.data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(jsonRecord.getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8)))
                            .build();
                    } catch (Exception e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Error creating Firehose record",
e);
                    }
                }).collect(Collectors.toList());

                PutRecordBatchRequest request = PutRecordBatchRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .deliveryStreamName(deliveryStreamName)
                    .records(batchRecords)
                    .build();

                PutRecordBatchResponse response =
getFirehoseClient().putRecordBatch(request);

                if (response.failedPutCount() > 0) {
                    response.requestResponses().stream()
                        .filter(r -> r.errorCode() != null)
                        .forEach(r -> System.err.println("Failed record: " +
r.errorMessage()));
                }
                System.out.println("Batch sent with size: " + batchRecords.size());
            }
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to put record batch: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }

    public static void monitorMetrics(String deliveryStreamName) {
        Instant endTime = Instant.now();
        Instant startTime = endTime.minusSeconds(600);

        List<String> metrics = List.of("IncomingBytes", "IncomingRecords",
"FailedPutCount");
        metrics.forEach(metric -> monitorMetric(metric, startTime, endTime,
deliveryStreamName));
    }

    private static void monitorMetric(String metricName, Instant startTime, Instant
endTime, String deliveryStreamName) {
        try {
            GetMetricStatisticsRequest request =
GetMetricStatisticsRequest.builder()
                .namespace("AWS/Firehose")
                .metricName(metricName)

.dimensions(Dimension.builder().name("DeliveryStreamName").value(deliveryStreamName).build(
                .startTime(startTime)
                .endTime(endTime)
                .period(60)
                .statistics(Statistic.SUM)
```

```
                .build();

            GetMetricStatisticsResponse response =
 getCloudWatchClient().getMetricStatistics(request);
            double totalSum =
 response.datapoints().stream().mapToDouble(Datapoint::sum).sum();
            System.out.println(metricName + ": " + totalSum);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to monitor metric " + metricName + ": " +
 e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static String readJsonFile(String fileName) throws IOException {
        try (InputStream inputStream =
 FirehoseScenario.class.getResourceAsStream("/" + fileName);
             Scanner scanner = new Scanner(inputStream, StandardCharsets.UTF_8)) {
            return scanner.useDelimiter("\\\\A").next();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Error reading file: " + fileName, e);
        }
    }

    private static void closeClients() {
        try {
            if (firehoseClient != null) firehoseClient.close();
            if (cloudWatchClient != null) cloudWatchClient.close();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Error closing clients: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - PutRecord
  - PutRecordBatch

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<Map<String, Object>, String> {

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(Map<String, Object> event, Context context) {
```

```
        List<Map<String, Object>> events = (List<Map<String, Object>>)
 event.get("events");
        for (Map<String, Object> record : events) {
            Map<String, Object> eventData = (Map<String, Object>)
 record.get("event");
            processEventData(eventData);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    private void processEventData(Map<String, Object> eventData) {
        String operationType = (String) eventData.get("operationType");
        System.out.println("operationType: %s".formatted(operationType));

        Map<String, Object> ns = (Map<String, Object>) eventData.get("ns");

        String db = (String) ns.get("db");
        System.out.println("db: %s".formatted(db));
        String coll = (String) ns.get("coll");
        System.out.println("coll: %s".formatted(coll));

        Map<String, Object> fullDocument = (Map<String, Object>)
 eventData.get("fullDocument");
        System.out.println("fullDocument: %s".formatted(fullDocument));
    }

}
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListTables {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Listing your Amazon DynamoDB tables:\n");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listAllTables(ddb);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void listAllTables(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        boolean moreTables = true;
        String lastName = null;

        while (moreTables) {
            try {
                ListTablesResponse response = null;
                if (lastName == null) {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder().build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                } else {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                            .exclusiveStartTableName(lastName).build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                }

                List<String> tableNames = response.tableNames();
                if (tableNames.size() > 0) {
                    for (String curName : tableNames) {
                        System.out.format("* %s\n", curName);
                    }
                } else {
                    System.out.println("No tables found!");
                    System.exit(0);
                }

                lastName = response.lastEvaluatedTableName();
                if (lastName == null) {
                    moreTables = false;
                }

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a DynamoDB table.

```
    // Create a table with a Sort key.
```

```
    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());

        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();
```

```
            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
fileName) throws IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
            .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
            .build();

        DynamoDbTable<Movies> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        while (iter.hasNext()) {
            // Only add 200 Movies to the table.
            if (t == 200)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String info = currentNode.path("info").toString();

            Movies movies = new Movies();
            movies.setYear(year);
```

```
            movies.setTitle(title);
            movies.setInfo(info);

            // Put the data into the Amazon DynamoDB Movie table.
            mappedTable.putItem(movies);
            t++;
        }
    }
```

Get an item from a table.

```
    public static void getItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put("year", AttributeValue.builder()
            .n("1933")
            .build());

        keyToGet.put("title", AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("King Kong")
            .build());

        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .key(keyToGet)
            .tableName("Movies")
            .build();

        try {
            Map<String, AttributeValue> returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request).item();

            if (returnedItem != null) {
                Set<String> keys = returnedItem.keySet();
                System.out.println("Amazon DynamoDB table attributes: \n");

                for (String key1 : keys) {
                    System.out.format("%s: %s\n", key1,
returnedItem.get(key1).toString());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.format("No item found with the key %s!\n", "year");
            }
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Full example.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Creates the Amazon DynamoDB Movie table with partition and sort key.
 * 2. Puts data into the Amazon DynamoDB table from a JSON document using the
 * Enhanced client.
 * 3. Gets data from the Movie table.
 * 4. Adds a new item.
 * 5. Updates an item.
 * 6. Uses a Scan to query items using the Enhanced client.
 * 7. Queries all items where the year is 2013 using the Enhanced Client.
 * 8. Deletes the table.
 */

public class Scenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        String tableName = "Movies";
        String fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
            "1. Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named Movies with a key named year
and a sort key named title.");
        createTable(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Loading data into the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        loadData(ddb, tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Getting data from the Movie table.");
        getItem(ddb);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Putting a record into the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        putRecord(ddb);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Updating a record.");
        updateTableItem(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Scanning the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        scanMovies(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Querying the Movies released in 2013.");
        queryTable(ddb);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        ddb.close();
    }

    // Create a table with a Sort key.
    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());

        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
```

```
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Query the table.
    public static void queryTable(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        try {
            DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                .build();

            DynamoDbTable<Movies> custTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
            QueryConditional queryConditional = QueryConditional
                .keyEqualTo(Key.builder()
                    .partitionValue(2013)
                    .build());

            // Get items in the table and write out the ID value.
            Iterator<Movies> results =
custTable.query(queryConditional).items().iterator();
            String result = "";

            while (results.hasNext()) {
                Movies rec = results.next();
                System.out.println("The title of the movie is " + rec.getTitle());
                System.out.println("The movie information  is " + rec.getInfo());
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Scan the table.
    public static void scanMovies(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        System.out.println("******* Scanning all movies.\n");
        try {
            DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                .build();

            DynamoDbTable<Movies> custTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
            Iterator<Movies> results = custTable.scan().items().iterator();
            while (results.hasNext()) {
                Movies rec = results.next();
                System.out.println("The movie title is " + rec.getTitle());
                System.out.println("The movie year is " + rec.getYear());
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
fileName) throws IOException {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
            .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
            .build();

        DynamoDbTable<Movies> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        while (iter.hasNext()) {
```

```
            // Only add 200 Movies to the table.
            if (t == 200)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String info = currentNode.path("info").toString();

            Movies movies = new Movies();
            movies.setYear(year);
            movies.setTitle(title);
            movies.setInfo(info);

            // Put the data into the Amazon DynamoDB Movie table.
            mappedTable.putItem(movies);
            t++;
        }
    }

    // Update the record to include show only directors.
    public static void updateTableItem(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> itemKey = new HashMap<>();
        itemKey.put("year", AttributeValue.builder().n("1933").build());
        itemKey.put("title", AttributeValue.builder().s("King Kong").build());

        HashMap<String, AttributeValueUpdate> updatedValues = new HashMap<>();
        updatedValues.put("info", AttributeValueUpdate.builder()
            .value(AttributeValue.builder().s("{\"directors\":[\"Merian C. Cooper\",
\"Ernest B. Schoedsack\"]")
                .build())
            .action(AttributeAction.PUT)
            .build());

        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(itemKey)
            .attributeUpdates(updatedValues)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.updateItem(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("Item was updated!");
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }

    public static void putRecord(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        try {
            DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                .build();

            DynamoDbTable<Movies> table = enhancedClient.table("Movies",
TableSchema.fromBean(Movies.class));

            // Populate the Table.
            Movies record = new Movies();
            record.setYear(2020);
            record.setTitle("My Movie2");
            record.setInfo("no info");
            table.putItem(record);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        System.out.println("Added a new movie to the table.");
    }

    public static void getItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put("year", AttributeValue.builder()
            .n("1933")
            .build());

        keyToGet.put("title", AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("King Kong")
            .build());

        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .key(keyToGet)
            .tableName("Movies")
            .build();

        try {
            Map<String, AttributeValue> returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request).item();

            if (returnedItem != null) {
                Set<String> keys = returnedItem.keySet();
                System.out.println("Amazon DynamoDB table attributes: \n");

                for (String key1 : keys) {
                    System.out.format("%s: %s\n", key1,
 returnedItem.get(key1).toString());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.format("No item found with the key %s!\n", "year");
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- BatchWriteItem
- CreateTable
- DeleteItem
- DeleteTable
- DescribeTable
- GetItem
- PutItem
- Query
- Scan
- UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Shows how to get batch items using the service client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchGetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchGetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeysAndAttributes;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class BatchReadItems {
    public static void main(String[] args){
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music).\s
                """;

        String tableName = "Music";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getBatchItems(dynamoDbClient, tableName);
    }

    public static void getBatchItems(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Define the primary key values for the items you want to retrieve.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key1 = new HashMap<>();
        key1.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist1").build());

        Map<String, AttributeValue> key2 = new HashMap<>();
        key2.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist2").build());

        // Construct the batchGetItem request.
        Map<String, KeysAndAttributes> requestItems = new HashMap<>();
        requestItems.put(tableName, KeysAndAttributes.builder()
            .keys(List.of(key1, key2))
            .projectionExpression("Artist, SongTitle")
            .build());

        BatchGetItemRequest batchGetItemRequest = BatchGetItemRequest.builder()
```

```
            .requestItems(requestItems)
            .build();

        // Make the batchGetItem request.
        BatchGetItemResponse batchGetItemResponse =
 dynamoDbClient.batchGetItem(batchGetItemRequest);

        // Extract and print the retrieved items.
        Map<String, List<Map<String, AttributeValue>>> responses =
 batchGetItemResponse.responses();
        if (responses.containsKey(tableName)) {
            List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> musicItems = responses.get(tableName);
            for (Map<String, AttributeValue> item : musicItems) {
                System.out.println("Artist: " + item.get("Artist").s() +
                    ", SongTitle: " + item.get("SongTitle").s());
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("No items retrieved.");
        }
    }
}
```

Shows how to get batch items using the service client and a paginator.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchGetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeysAndAttributes;
import java.util.Collections;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

public class BatchGetItemsPaginator {

    public static void main(String[] args){
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>
```

```
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music).\s
                """;

        String tableName = "Music";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getBatchItemsPaginator(dynamoDbClient, tableName) ;
    }

    public static void getBatchItemsPaginator(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Define the primary key values for the items you want to retrieve.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key1 = new HashMap<>();
        key1.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist1").build());

        Map<String, AttributeValue> key2 = new HashMap<>();
        key2.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist2").build());

        // Construct the batchGetItem request.
        Map<String, KeysAndAttributes> requestItems = new HashMap<>();
        requestItems.put(tableName, KeysAndAttributes.builder()
            .keys(List.of(key1, key2))
            .projectionExpression("Artist, SongTitle")
            .build());

        BatchGetItemRequest batchGetItemRequest = BatchGetItemRequest.builder()
            .requestItems(requestItems)
            .build();

        // Use batchGetItemPaginator for paginated requests.
        dynamoDbClient.batchGetItemPaginator(batchGetItemRequest).stream()
            .flatMap(response -> response.responses().getOrDefault(tableName,
 Collections.emptyList()).stream())
            .forEach(item -> {
                System.out.println("Artist: " + item.get("Artist").s() +
                    ", SongTitle: " + item.get("SongTitle").s());
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Inserts many items into a table by using the service client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchWriteItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BatchWriteItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.WriteRequest;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class BatchWriteItems {
    public static void main(String[] args){
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music).\s
                """;

        String tableName = "Music";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        addBatchItems(dynamoDbClient, tableName);
    }

    public static void addBatchItems(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String
 tableName) {
        // Specify the updates you want to perform.
        List<WriteRequest> writeRequests = new ArrayList<>();

        // Set item 1.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> item1Attributes = new HashMap<>();
        item1Attributes.put("Artist",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist1").build());
        item1Attributes.put("Rating", AttributeValue.builder().s("5").build());
        item1Attributes.put("Comments", AttributeValue.builder().s("Great
 song!").build());
        item1Attributes.put("SongTitle",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("SongTitle1").build());

 writeRequests.add(WriteRequest.builder().putRequest(PutRequest.builder().item(item1Attribut

        // Set item 2.
        Map<String, AttributeValue> item2Attributes = new HashMap<>();
        item2Attributes.put("Artist",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("Artist2").build());
        item2Attributes.put("Rating", AttributeValue.builder().s("4").build());
        item2Attributes.put("Comments", AttributeValue.builder().s("Nice
 melody.").build());
        item2Attributes.put("SongTitle",
 AttributeValue.builder().s("SongTitle2").build());
```

```
 writeRequests.add(WriteRequest.builder().putRequest(PutRequest.builder().item(item2Attribut

        try {
            // Create the BatchWriteItemRequest.
            BatchWriteItemRequest batchWriteItemRequest =
 BatchWriteItemRequest.builder()
                .requestItems(Map.of(tableName, writeRequests))
                .build();

            // Execute the BatchWriteItem operation.
            BatchWriteItemResponse batchWriteItemResponse =
 dynamoDbClient.batchWriteItem(batchWriteItemRequest);

            // Process the response.
            System.out.println("Batch write successful: " + batchWriteItemResponse);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Inserts many items into a table by using the enhanced client.

```
import com.example.dynamodb.Customer;
import com.example.dynamodb.Music;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.DynamoDbEnhancedClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.DynamoDbTable;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.Key;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.TableSchema;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.model.BatchWriteItemEnhancedRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.enhanced.dynamodb.model.WriteBatch;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
```

```
/*
 * Before running this code example, create an Amazon DynamoDB table named Customer
 with these columns:
 *   - id - the id of the record that is the key
 *   - custName - the customer name
 *   - email - the email value
 *   - registrationDate - an instant value when the item was added to the table
 *
 * Also, ensure that you have set up your development environment, including your
 credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class EnhancedBatchWriteItems {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
                DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                                .region(region)
                                .build();
                DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient =
 DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                                .dynamoDbClient(ddb)
                                .build();
                putBatchRecords(enhancedClient);
                ddb.close();
        }

        public static void putBatchRecords(DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient) {
                try {
                        DynamoDbTable<Customer> customerMappedTable =
 enhancedClient.table("Customer",
                                        TableSchema.fromBean(Customer.class));
                        DynamoDbTable<Music> musicMappedTable =
 enhancedClient.table("Music",
                                        TableSchema.fromBean(Music.class));
                        LocalDate localDate = LocalDate.parse("2020-04-07");
                        LocalDateTime localDateTime = localDate.atStartOfDay();
                        Instant instant = localDateTime.toInstant(ZoneOffset.UTC);

                        Customer record2 = new Customer();
                        record2.setCustName("Fred Pink");
                        record2.setId("id110");
```

```
                        record2.setEmail("fredp@noserver.com");
                        record2.setRegistrationDate(instant);

                        Customer record3 = new Customer();
                        record3.setCustName("Susan Pink");
                        record3.setId("id120");
                        record3.setEmail("spink@noserver.com");
                        record3.setRegistrationDate(instant);

                        Customer record4 = new Customer();
                        record4.setCustName("Jerry orange");
                        record4.setId("id101");
                        record4.setEmail("jorange@noserver.com");
                        record4.setRegistrationDate(instant);

                        BatchWriteItemEnhancedRequest batchWriteItemEnhancedRequest
= BatchWriteItemEnhancedRequest
                                        .builder()
                                        .writeBatches(

WriteBatch.builder(Customer.class) // add items to the Customer

      // table

.mappedTableResource(customerMappedTable)

.addPutItem(builder -> builder.item(record2))

.addPutItem(builder -> builder.item(record3))

.addPutItem(builder -> builder.item(record4))
                                                                        .build(),

WriteBatch.builder(Music.class) // delete an item from the Music

   // table

.mappedTableResource(musicMappedTable)

.addDeleteItem(builder -> builder.key(

   Key.builder().partitionValue(

                    "Famous Band")
```

```
                    .build()))
                                                                        .build())
                                        .build();

                        // Add three items to the Customer table and delete one item
 from the Music
                        // table.

 enhancedClient.batchWriteItem(batchWriteItemEnhancedRequest);
                        System.out.println("done");

                } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
        }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.BillingMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeySchemaElement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeyType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.OnDemandThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScalarAttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.waiters.DynamoDbWaiter;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateTable {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <tableName> <key>

            Where:
                tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to create (for example,
 Music3).
                key - The key for the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Artist).
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        System.out.println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table " + tableName + " with
 a simple primary key: " + key);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
```

```
        String result = createTable(ddb, tableName, key);
        System.out.println("New table is " + result);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static String createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
 key) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .attributeDefinitions(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(key)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build())
            .keySchema(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(key)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build())
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
 scales based on traffic.
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        String newTable;
        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
 dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            return newTable;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyval>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to delete the item from
 (for example, Music3).
```

```
                    key - The key used in the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
 Artist).\s
                    keyval - The key value that represents the item to delete (for
 example, Famous Band).
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String keyVal = args[2];
        System.out.format("Deleting item \"%s\" from %s\n", keyVal, tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteDynamoDBItem(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBItem(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName,
 String key, String keyVal) {
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
        keyToGet.put(key, AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(keyVal)
                .build());

        DeleteItemRequest deleteReq = DeleteItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(keyToGet)
                .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteItem(deleteReq);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteTableRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class DeleteTable {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to delete (for example,
 Music3).
```

```
                **Warning** This program will delete the table that you specify!
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table %s...\n", tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.TableDescription;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeTable {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to get information about
 (for example, Music3).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String tableName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Getting description for %s\n\n", tableName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeDymamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void describeDymamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DescribeTableRequest request = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

        try {
            TableDescription tableInfo = ddb.describeTable(request).table();
            if (tableInfo != null) {
                System.out.format("Table name  : %s\n", tableInfo.tableName());
                System.out.format("Table ARN   : %s\n", tableInfo.tableArn());
                System.out.format("Status      : %s\n", tableInfo.tableStatus());
                System.out.format("Item count  : %d\n", tableInfo.itemCount());
                System.out.format("Size (bytes): %d\n", tableInfo.tableSizeBytes());

                ProvisionedThroughputDescription throughputInfo =
tableInfo.provisionedThroughput();
                System.out.println("Throughput");
                System.out.format("  Read Capacity : %d\n",
throughputInfo.readCapacityUnits());
                System.out.format("  Write Capacity: %d\n",
throughputInfo.writeCapacityUnits());

                List<AttributeDefinition> attributes =
tableInfo.attributeDefinitions();
                System.out.println("Attributes");
                for (AttributeDefinition a : attributes) {
                    System.out.format("  %s (%s)\n", a.attributeName(),
a.attributeType());
                }
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeTimeToLive`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTimeToLive`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Describe TTL configuration on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTimeToLiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTimeToLiveResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public DescribeTimeToLiveResponse describeTTL(final String tableName, final
 Region region) {
        final DescribeTimeToLiveRequest request =
            DescribeTimeToLiveRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            return ddb.describeTimeToLive(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Gets an item from a table by using the DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Set;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To get an item from an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client, see the EnhancedGetItem example.
 */
public class GetItem {
```

```
   public static void main(String[] args) {
       final String usage = """

               Usage:
                   <tableName> <key> <keyVal>

               Where:
                   tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table from which an item is
retrieved (for example, Music3).\s
                   key - The key used in the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
Artist).\s
                   keyval - The key value that represents the item to get (for
example, Famous Band).
               """;

       if (args.length != 3) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String tableName = args[0];
       String key = args[1];
       String keyVal = args[2];
       System.out.format("Retrieving item \"%s\" from \"%s\"\n", keyVal,
tableName);
       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
               .region(region)
               .build();

       getDynamoDBItem(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal);
       ddb.close();
   }

   public static void getDynamoDBItem(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
key, String keyVal) {
       HashMap<String, AttributeValue> keyToGet = new HashMap<>();
       keyToGet.put(key, AttributeValue.builder()
               .s(keyVal)
               .build());

       GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
               .key(keyToGet)
               .tableName(tableName)
```

```
                .build();

        try {
            // If there is no matching item, GetItem does not return any data.
            Map<String, AttributeValue> returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request).item();
            if (returnedItem.isEmpty())
                System.out.format("No item found with the key %s!\n", key);
            else {
                Set<String> keys = returnedItem.keySet();
                System.out.println("Amazon DynamoDB table attributes: \n");
                for (String key1 : keys) {
                    System.out.format("%s: %s\n", key1,
 returnedItem.get(key1).toString());
                }
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ListTablesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListTables {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Listing your Amazon DynamoDB tables:\n");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listAllTables(ddb);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void listAllTables(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        boolean moreTables = true;
        String lastName = null;

        while (moreTables) {
            try {
                ListTablesResponse response = null;
                if (lastName == null) {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder().build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                } else {
                    ListTablesRequest request = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                            .exclusiveStartTableName(lastName).build();
                    response = ddb.listTables(request);
                }

                List<String> tableNames = response.tableNames();
                if (tableNames.size() > 0) {
                    for (String curName : tableNames) {
                        System.out.format("* %s\n", curName);
                    }
                } else {
```

```
                    System.out.println("No tables found!");
                    System.exit(0);
                }

                lastName = response.lastEvaluatedTableName();
                if (lastName == null) {
                    moreTables = false;
                }

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                System.err.println(e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        System.out.println("\nDone!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Puts an item into a table using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
```

```
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To place items into an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client. See the EnhancedPutItem example.
 */
public class PutItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyVal> <albumtitle> <albumtitleval> <awards>
 <awardsval> <Songtitle> <songtitleval>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table in which an item is placed
 (for example, Music3).
                    key - The key used in the Amazon DynamoDB table (for example,
 Artist).
                    keyval - The key value that represents the item to get (for
 example, Famous Band).
                    albumTitle - The Album title (for example, AlbumTitle).
                    AlbumTitleValue - The name of the album (for example, Songs
 About Life ).
                    Awards - The awards column (for example, Awards).
                    AwardVal - The value of the awards (for example, 10).
                    SongTitle - The song title (for example, SongTitle).
                    SongTitleVal - The value of the song title (for example, Happy
 Day).
                **Warning** This program will  place an item that you specify into a
 table!
                """;

        if (args.length != 9) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String keyVal = args[2];
        String albumTitle = args[3];
        String albumTitleValue = args[4];
        String awards = args[5];
        String awardVal = args[6];
        String songTitle = args[7];
        String songTitleVal = args[8];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putItemInTable(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal, albumTitle, albumTitleValue,
awards, awardVal, songTitle,
                songTitleVal);
        System.out.println("Done!");
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void putItemInTable(DynamoDbClient ddb,
            String tableName,
            String key,
            String keyVal,
            String albumTitle,
            String albumTitleValue,
            String awards,
            String awardVal,
            String songTitle,
            String songTitleVal) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> itemValues = new HashMap<>();
        itemValues.put(key, AttributeValue.builder().s(keyVal).build());
        itemValues.put(songTitle, AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitleVal).build());
        itemValues.put(albumTitle,
AttributeValue.builder().s(albumTitleValue).build());
        itemValues.put(awards, AttributeValue.builder().s(awardVal).build());

        PutItemRequest request = PutItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
```

```
                .item(itemValues)
                .build();

        try {
            PutItemResponse response = ddb.putItem(request);
            System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully updated. The request
 id is "
                    + response.responseMetadata().requestId());

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName);
            System.err.println("Be sure that it exists and that you've typed its
 name correctly!");
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Queries a table by using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To query items from an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client. See the EnhancedQueryRecords example.
 */
public class Query {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyVal>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to put the item in (for
 example, Music3).
                    partitionKeyName - The partition key name of the Amazon DynamoDB
 table (for example, Artist).
                    partitionKeyVal - The value of the partition key that should
 match (for example, Famous Band).
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        String partitionKeyVal = args[2];

        // For more information about an alias, see:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
Expressions.ExpressionAttributeNames.html
        String partitionAlias = "#a";

        System.out.format("Querying %s", tableName);
        System.out.println("");
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        int count = queryTable(ddb, tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyVal,
 partitionAlias);
        System.out.println("There were " + count + "  record(s) returned");
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static int queryTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
 partitionKeyName, String partitionKeyVal,
            String partitionAlias) {
        // Set up an alias for the partition key name in case it's a reserved word.
        HashMap<String, String> attrNameAlias = new HashMap<String, String>();
        attrNameAlias.put(partitionAlias, partitionKeyName);

        // Set up mapping of the partition name with the value.
        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> attrValues = new HashMap<>();
        attrValues.put(":" + partitionKeyName, AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(partitionKeyVal)
                .build());

        QueryRequest queryReq = QueryRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .keyConditionExpression(partitionAlias + " = :" + partitionKeyName)
                .expressionAttributeNames(attrNameAlias)
                .expressionAttributeValues(attrValues)
                .build();

        try {
            QueryResponse response = ddb.query(queryReq);
            return response.count();

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
        return -1;
    }
}
```

Queries a table by using `DynamoDbClient` and a secondary index.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * Create the Movies table by running the Scenario example and loading the Movie
 * data from the JSON file. Next create a secondary
 * index for the Movies table that uses only the year column. Name the index
 * **year-index**. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/GSI.html
 */
public class QueryItemsUsingIndex {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String tableName = "Movies";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        queryIndex(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void queryIndex(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> expressionAttributesNames = new HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributesNames.put("#year", "year");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":yearValue",
 AttributeValue.builder().n("2013").build());

            QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .indexName("year-index")
                    .keyConditionExpression("#year = :yearValue")
                    .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributesNames)
                    .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("=== Movie Titles ===");
            QueryResponse response = ddb.query(request);
            response.items()
                    .forEach(movie -> System.out.println(movie.get("title").s()));

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scans an Amazon DynamoDB table using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanResponse;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Set;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To scan items from an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2,
 * its better practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client, See the EnhancedScanRecords example.
 */

public class DynamoDBScanItems {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to get information from
 (for example, Music3).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
```

```
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        scanItems(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void scanItems(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        try {
            ScanRequest scanRequest = ScanRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            ScanResponse response = ddb.scan(scanRequest);
            for (Map<String, AttributeValue> item : response.items()) {
                Set<String> keys = item.keySet();
                for (String key : keys) {
                    System.out.println("The key name is " + key + "\n");
                    System.out.println("The value is " + item.get(key).s());
                }
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Updates an item in a table using DynamoDbClient.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeAction;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValueUpdate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To update an Amazon DynamoDB table using the AWS SDK for Java V2, its better
 * practice to use the
 * Enhanced Client, See the EnhancedModifyItem example.
 */
public class UpdateItem {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <tableName> <key> <keyVal> <name> <updateVal>

                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table (for example, Music3).
                    key - The name of the key in the table (for example, Artist).
                    keyVal - The value of the key (for example, Famous Band).
```

```
                    name - The name of the column where the value is updated (for
example, Awards).
                    updateVal - The value used to update an item (for example, 14).
                Example:
                    UpdateItem Music3 Artist Famous Band Awards 14
               """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String tableName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String keyVal = args[2];
        String name = args[3];
        String updateVal = args[4];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        updateTableItem(ddb, tableName, key, keyVal, name, updateVal);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static void updateTableItem(DynamoDbClient ddb,
            String tableName,
            String key,
            String keyVal,
            String name,
            String updateVal) {

        HashMap<String, AttributeValue> itemKey = new HashMap<>();
        itemKey.put(key, AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(keyVal)
                .build());

        HashMap<String, AttributeValueUpdate> updatedValues = new HashMap<>();
        updatedValues.put(name, AttributeValueUpdate.builder()
                .value(AttributeValue.builder().s(updateVal).build())
                .action(AttributeAction.PUT)
                .build());
```

```
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(itemKey)
                .attributeUpdates(updatedValues)
                .build();

        try {
            ddb.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("The Amazon DynamoDB table was updated!");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateTimeToLive`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTimeToLive`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.TimeToLiveSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveResponse;

import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public UpdateTimeToLiveResponse enableTTL(final String tableName, final String
 attributeName, final Region region) {
        final TimeToLiveSpecification ttlSpec = TimeToLiveSpecification.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .enabled(true)
```

```
            .build();

        final UpdateTimeToLiveRequest request = UpdateTimeToLiveRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .timeToLiveSpecification(ttlSpec)
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            return ddb.updateTimeToLive(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Disable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.TimeToLiveSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTimeToLiveResponse;

import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public UpdateTimeToLiveResponse disableTTL(
        final String tableName, final String attributeName, final Region region) {
        final TimeToLiveSpecification ttlSpec = TimeToLiveSpecification.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .enabled(false)
            .build();

        final UpdateTimeToLiveRequest request = UpdateTimeToLiveRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
```

```
            .timeToLiveSpecification(ttlSpec)
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            return ddb.updateTimeToLive(request);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build an app to submit data to a DynamoDB table

The following code example shows how to build an application that submits data to an Amazon DynamoDB table and notifies you when a user updates the table.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a dynamic web application that submits data using the Amazon DynamoDB Java API and sends a text message using the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

Compare multiple values with a single attribute

The following code example shows how to compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB.

- Use the IN operator to compare multiple values with a single attribute.
- Compare the IN operator with multiple OR conditions.
- Understand the performance and expression complexity benefits of using IN.

SDK for Java 2.x

Compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Locale;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Queries a table using the IN operator to compare multiple values with a
 single attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the IN operator in a filter expression
     * to match an attribute against multiple values.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key to query
     * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
     * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
```

```
     */
    public static QueryResponse compareMultipleValues(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        String partitionKeyName,
        AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
        String attributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

        // Create expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pkName", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attrName", attributeName);

        // Create expression attribute values
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":pkValue", partitionKeyValue);

        // Add values for IN operator
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":val" + i, valuesList.get(i));
        }

        // Build the IN clause
        StringBuilder inClause = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                inClause.append(", ");
            }
            inClause.append(":val").append(i);
        }

        // Define the query parameters
        QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression("#pkName = :pkValue")
            .filterExpression("#attrName IN (" + inClause.toString() + ")")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the query operation
        return dynamoDbClient.query(request);
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Queries a table using multiple OR conditions to compare multiple values with
a single attribute.
    *
    * <p>This method demonstrates the alternative approach to using the IN
operator,
    * by using multiple OR conditions.
    *
    * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
    * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
    * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
    * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key to query
    * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
    * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
    * @return The query response from DynamoDB
    * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
    */
   public static QueryResponse compareWithOrConditions(
       DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
       String tableName,
       String partitionKeyName,
       AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
       String attributeName,
       List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

       // Create expression attribute names
       Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
       expressionAttributeNames.put("#pkName", partitionKeyName);
       expressionAttributeNames.put("#attrName", attributeName);

       // Create expression attribute values
       Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
       expressionAttributeValues.put(":pkValue", partitionKeyValue);

       // Add values for OR conditions
       for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
           expressionAttributeValues.put(":val" + i, valuesList.get(i));
       }

       // Build the OR conditions
       StringBuilder orConditions = new StringBuilder();
       for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
           if (i > 0) {
```

```
                orConditions.append(" OR ");
            }
            orConditions.append("#attrName = :val").append(i);
        }

        // Define the query parameters
        QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression("#pkName = :pkValue")
            .filterExpression(orConditions.toString())
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the query operation
        return dynamoDbClient.query(request);
    }

    /**
     * Compares the performance of using the IN operator versus multiple OR
conditions.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates the performance difference between using the IN
operator
     * and using multiple OR conditions.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key to query
     * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
     * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
     * @return Map containing the performance comparison results
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> comparePerformance(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        String partitionKeyName,
        AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
        String attributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();
```

```
        try {
            // Measure performance of IN operator
            long inStartTime = System.nanoTime();
            QueryResponse inResponse = compareMultipleValues(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
attributeName, valuesList);
            long inEndTime = System.nanoTime();
            long inDuration = inEndTime - inStartTime;

            // Measure performance of OR conditions
            long orStartTime = System.nanoTime();
            QueryResponse orResponse = compareWithOrConditions(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
attributeName, valuesList);
            long orEndTime = System.nanoTime();
            long orDuration = orEndTime - orStartTime;

            // Record results
            results.put("inOperatorDuration", inDuration);
            results.put("orConditionsDuration", orDuration);
            results.put("inOperatorItems", inResponse.count());
            results.put("orConditionsItems", orResponse.count());
            results.put("inOperatorExpression", "IN operator with " +
valuesList.size() + " values");
            results.put("orConditionsExpression", valuesList.size() + " OR
conditions");
            results.put("success", true);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            results.put("success", false);
            results.put("error", e.getMessage());
        }

        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Scans a table using the IN operator with a large number of values.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the IN operator with a large number of
values,
     * which can help stay within the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
```

```
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param attributeName The name of the attribute to compare
     * @param valuesList List of values to compare against
     * @return The scan response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static ScanResponse scanWithLargeInClause(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, String attributeName,
List<AttributeValue> valuesList) {

        // Create expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attrName", attributeName);

        // Create expression attribute values
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

        // Add values for IN operator
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":val" + i, valuesList.get(i));
        }

        // Build the IN clause
        StringBuilder inClause = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < valuesList.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                inClause.append(", ");
            }
            inClause.append(":val").append(i);
        }

        // Define the scan parameters
        ScanRequest request = ScanRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .filterExpression("#attrName IN (" + inClause.toString() + ")")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the scan operation
        return dynamoDbClient.scan(request);
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Generates a list of sample values for testing.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to generate a list of sample values for testing.
     *
     * @param valueType The type of values to generate (string, number, or boolean)
     * @param count The number of values to generate
     * @return List of generated attribute values
     */
    public static List<AttributeValue> generateSampleValues(String valueType, int
count) {
        List<AttributeValue> values = new ArrayList<>();

        for (int i = 0; i < count; i++) {
            AttributeValue value;

            switch (valueType.toLowerCase(Locale.ROOT)) {
                case "string":
                    value = AttributeValue.builder().s("Value" + i).build();
                    break;
                case "number":
                    value = AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i)).build();
                    break;
                case "boolean":
                    value = AttributeValue.builder().bool(i % 2 == 0).build();
                    break;
                default:
                    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Unsupported value type: " +
valueType);
            }

            values.add(value);
        }

        return values;
    }
```

Example usage of comparing multiple values with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
        System.out.println("Demonstrating how to compare multiple values with a
single attribute in DynamoDB");
```

```
        try {
            // Example 1: Using the IN operator
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Using the IN operator");
            List<AttributeValue> categories = List.of(
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Computers").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Accessories").build());

            QueryResponse inResponse = compareMultipleValues(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Department",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Retail").build(),
                "Category",
                categories);

            System.out.println("Found " + inResponse.count() + " items using IN
operator");
            System.out.println("Items: " + inResponse.items());

            // Example 2: Using multiple OR conditions
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Using multiple OR conditions");
            QueryResponse orResponse = compareWithOrConditions(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Department",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Retail").build(),
                "Category",
                categories);

            System.out.println("Found " + orResponse.count() + " items using OR
conditions");
            System.out.println("Items: " + orResponse.items());

            // Example 3: Performance comparison
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Performance comparison");
            Map<String, Object> perfComparison = comparePerformance(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                "Department",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Retail").build(),
                "Category",
                categories);
```

```
            if ((boolean) perfComparison.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("IN operator duration: " +
perfComparison.get("inOperatorDuration") + " ns");
                System.out.println("OR conditions duration: " +
perfComparison.get("orConditionsDuration") + " ns");
                System.out.println("IN operator found " +
perfComparison.get("inOperatorItems") + " items");
                System.out.println("OR conditions found " +
perfComparison.get("orConditionsItems") + " items");
                System.out.println("Expression complexity comparison:");
                System.out.println("  IN operator: " +
perfComparison.get("inOperatorExpression"));
                System.out.println("  OR conditions: " +
perfComparison.get("orConditionsExpression"));
            } else {
                System.out.println("Performance comparison failed: " +
perfComparison.get("error"));
            }

            // Example 4: Using IN with a large number of values
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Using IN with a large number of
values");
            List<AttributeValue> productIds = generateSampleValues("string", 20);

            ScanResponse largeInResponse = scanWithLargeInClause(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, "ProductId", productIds);

            System.out.println(
                "Found " + largeInResponse.count() + " items using IN with " +
productIds.size() + " values");

            // Explain the benefits of using IN
            System.out.println("\nKey points about using the IN operator in
DynamoDB:");
            System.out.println("1. The IN operator allows comparing a single
attribute against multiple values");
            System.out.println("2. IN is more concise than using multiple OR
conditions");
            System.out.println("3. IN counts as only 1 operator regardless of the
number of values");
            System.out.println("4. Multiple OR conditions count as 1 operator per
condition plus 1 per OR");
```

```
            System.out.println("5. Using IN helps stay within the 300 operator limit
 for complex expressions");
            System.out.println("6. IN can be used in filter expressions and
 condition expressions");
            System.out.println("7. The IN operator supports up to 100 comparison
 values");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - Query
  - Scan

Conditionally update an item's TTL

The following code example shows how to conditionally update an item's TTL.

SDK for Java 2.x

Update TTL on on an existing DynamoDB Item in a table, with a condition.

```
package com.amazon.samplelib.ttl;

import com.amazon.samplelib.CodeSampleUtils;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ConditionalCheckFailedException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;
```

```
/**
 * Updates an item in a DynamoDB table with TTL attributes using a conditional
 expression.
 * This class demonstrates how to conditionally update TTL expiration timestamps.
 */
public class UpdateTTLConditional {

    private static final String USAGE =
        """
            Usage:
                <tableName> <primaryKey> <sortKey> <region>
            Where:
                tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table being queried.
                primaryKey - The name of the primary key. Also known as the hash or
 partition key.
                sortKey - The name of the sort key. Also known as the range
 attribute.
                region (optional) - The AWS region that the Amazon DynamoDB table is
 located in. (Default: us-east-1)
            """;
    private static final int DAYS_TO_EXPIRE = 90;
    private static final int SECONDS_PER_DAY = 24 * 60 * 60;
    private static final String PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR = "primaryKey";
    private static final String SORT_KEY_ATTR = "sortKey";
    private static final String UPDATED_AT_ATTR = "updatedAt";
    private static final String EXPIRE_AT_ATTR = "expireAt";
    private static final String UPDATE_EXPRESSION = "SET " + UPDATED_AT_ATTR + "=:c,
 " + EXPIRE_AT_ATTR + "=:e";
    private static final String CONDITION_EXPRESSION = "attribute_exists(" +
 PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR + ")";
    private static final String SUCCESS_MESSAGE = "%s UpdateItem operation with TTL
 successful.";
    private static final String CONDITION_FAILED_MESSAGE = "Condition check failed.
 Item does not exist.";
    private static final String TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR = "Error: The Amazon DynamoDB
 table \"%s\" can't be found.";

    private final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    /**
     * Constructs an UpdateTTLConditional with a default DynamoDB client.
     */
    public UpdateTTLConditional() {
```

```
        this.dynamoDbClient = null;
    }

    /**
     * Constructs an UpdateTTLConditional with the specified DynamoDB client.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client to use
     */
    public UpdateTTLConditional(final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {
        this.dynamoDbClient = dynamoDbClient;
    }

    /**
     * Main method to demonstrate conditionally updating an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     */
    public static void main(final String[] args) {
        try {
            int result = new UpdateTTLConditional().processArgs(args);
            System.exit(result);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Process command line arguments and conditionally update an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     * @return 0 if successful, non-zero otherwise
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException If the table doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException If an error occurs during the operation
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException If arguments are invalid
     */
    public int processArgs(final String[] args) {
        // Argument validation (remove or replace this line when reusing this code)
        CodeSampleUtils.validateArgs(args, new int[] {3, 4}, USAGE);

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String primaryKey = args[1];
        final String sortKey = args[2];
        final Region region = Optional.ofNullable(args.length > 3 ? args[3] : null)
```

```
            .map(Region::of)
            .orElse(Region.US_EAST_1);

        // Get current time in epoch second format
        final long currentTime = System.currentTimeMillis() / 1000;

        // Calculate expiration time 90 days from now in epoch second format
        final long expireDate = currentTime + (DAYS_TO_EXPIRE * SECONDS_PER_DAY);

        // Create the key map for the item to update
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> keyMap = Map.of(
            PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR, AttributeValue.builder().s(primaryKey).build(),
            SORT_KEY_ATTR, AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKey).build());

        // Create the expression attribute values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = Map.of(
            ":c", AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(currentTime)).build(),
            ":e", AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(expireDate)).build());

        final UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(keyMap)
            .updateExpression(UPDATE_EXPRESSION)
            .conditionExpression(CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final UpdateItemResponse response = ddb.updateItem(request);
            System.out.println(String.format(SUCCESS_MESSAGE, tableName));
            return 0;
        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            System.err.println(CONDITION_FAILED_MESSAGE);
            throw e;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Count expression operators

The following code example shows how to count expression operators in DynamoDB.

- Understand DynamoDB's 300 operator limit.
- Count operators in complex expressions.
- Optimize expressions to stay within limits.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate expression operator counting using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.regex.Matcher;
import java.util.regex.Pattern;

    /**
     * Creates a complex filter expression with a specified number of conditions.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to generate a complex expression with
     * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param conditionsCount Number of conditions to include
     * @param useAnd Whether to use AND (true) or OR (false) between conditions
     * @return Map containing the filter expression, attribute values, and operator
 count
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> createComplexFilterExpression(int
 conditionsCount, boolean useAnd) {
```

```
        // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
        StringBuilder filterExpression = new StringBuilder();
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

        // Generate the specified number of conditions
        for (int i = 0; i < conditionsCount; i++) {
            // Add the operator between conditions (except for the first one)
            if (i > 0) {
                filterExpression.append(useAnd ? " AND " : " OR ");
            }

            // Alternate between different comparison operators for variety
            String valueKey = ":val" + i;

            switch (i % 5) {
                case 0:
                    filterExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" =
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey, AttributeValue.builder().s("value" + i).build());
                    break;
                case 1:
                    filterExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" >
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i)).build());
                    break;
                case 2:
                    filterExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" <
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
                        AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i * 10)).build());
                    break;
                case 3:
                    filterExpression
                        .append("contains(attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(", ")
                        .append(valueKey)
                        .append(")");
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
```

```
                        valueKey, AttributeValue.builder().s("substring" +
i).build());
                    break;
                case 4:
                    filterExpression
                        .append("attribute_exists(attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(")");
                    break;
                default:
                    // This case will never be reached, but added to satisfy
checkstyle
                    break;
            }
        }

        // Calculate the operator count
        // Each condition has 1 operator (=, >, <, contains, attribute_exists)
        // Each AND or OR between conditions is 1 operator
        int operatorCount = conditionsCount + (conditionsCount > 0 ? conditionsCount
- 1 : 0);

        // Create the result map
        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
        result.put("filterExpression", filterExpression.toString());
        result.put("expressionAttributeValues", expressionAttributeValues);
        result.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a complex update expression with a specified number of operations.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to generate a complex update expression with
     * a specific number of operators to test the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param operationsCount Number of operations to include
     * @return Map containing the update expression, attribute values, and operator
count
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> createComplexUpdateExpression(int
operationsCount) {
        // Initialize the expression parts and attribute values
```

```
        StringBuilder updateExpression = new StringBuilder("SET ");
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

        // Generate the specified number of SET operations
        for (int i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
            // Add comma between operations (except for the first one)
            if (i > 0) {
                updateExpression.append(", ");
            }

            // Alternate between different types of SET operations
            String valueKey = ":val" + i;

            switch (i % 3) {
                case 0:
                    // Simple assignment (1 operator: =)
                    updateExpression.append("attribute").append(i).append(" =
").append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey, AttributeValue.builder().s("value" + i).build());
                    break;
                case 1:
                    // Addition (2 operators: = and +)
                    updateExpression
                        .append("attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(" = attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(" + ")
                        .append(valueKey);
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i)).build());
                    break;
                case 2:
                    // Conditional assignment with if_not_exists (2 operators: = and
if_not_exists)
                    updateExpression
                        .append("attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(" = if_not_exists(attribute")
                        .append(i)
                        .append(", ")
                        .append(valueKey)
```

```
                        .append(")");
                    expressionAttributeValues.put(
                        valueKey,
                        AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(i * 10)).build());
                    break;
                default:
                    // This case will never be reached, but added to satisfy
checkstyle
                    break;
            }
        }

        // Calculate the operator count
        // Each operation has 1-2 operators as noted above
        int operatorCount = 0;
        for (int i = 0; i < operationsCount; i++) {
            operatorCount += (i % 3 == 0) ? 1 : 2;
        }

        // Create the result map
        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
        result.put("updateExpression", updateExpression.toString());
        result.put("expressionAttributeValues", expressionAttributeValues);
        result.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Test the operator limit by attempting an operation with a complex expression.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates what happens when an expression approaches or
     * exceeds the 300 operator limit.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param operatorCount Target number of operators to include
     * @return Map containing the result of the operation attempt
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> testOperatorLimit(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key, int operatorCount) {
```

```
        // Create a complex update expression with the specified operator count
        Map<String, Object> expressionData =
            createComplexUpdateExpression((int) Math.ceil(operatorCount / 1.5)); //
Adjust to get close to target count

        String updateExpression = (String) expressionData.get("updateExpression");
        @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues =
            (Map<String, AttributeValue>)
expressionData.get("expressionAttributeValues");
        int actualCount = (int) expressionData.get("operatorCount");

        System.out.println("Generated update expression with approximately " +
actualCount + " operators");

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression(updateExpression)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        try {
            // Attempt the update operation
            UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "Operation succeeded with " + actualCount + "
operators");
            result.put("data", response);
            return result;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Check if the error is due to exceeding the operator limit
            if (e.getMessage().contains("too many operators")) {
                Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
                result.put("success", false);
                result.put("message", "Operation failed: " + e.getMessage());
                result.put("operatorCount", actualCount);
                return result;
            }
```

```
            // Return other errors
            Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Operation failed: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e);
            return result;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Break down a complex expression into multiple simpler operations.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to handle expressions that would exceed
     * the 300 operator limit by breaking them into multiple operations.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param totalOperations Total number of operations to perform
     * @return Map containing the results of the operations
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> breakDownComplexExpression(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key, int totalOperations) {

        // Calculate how many operations we can safely include in each batch
        // Using 150 as a conservative limit (well below 300)
        final int operationsPerBatch = 100;
        final int batchCount = (int) Math.ceil((double) totalOperations /
operationsPerBatch);

        System.out.println("Breaking down " + totalOperations + " operations into "
+ batchCount + " batches");

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();
        results.put("totalBatches", batchCount);

        Map<Integer, Map<String, Object>> batchResults = new HashMap<>();

        // Process each batch
        for (int batch = 0; batch < batchCount; batch++) {
            // Calculate the operations for this batch
            int batchStart = batch * operationsPerBatch;
```

```
            int batchEnd = Math.min(batchStart + operationsPerBatch,
totalOperations);
            int batchSize = batchEnd - batchStart;

            System.out.println(
                "Processing batch " + (batch + 1) + "/" + batchCount + " with " +
batchSize + " operations");

            // Create an update expression for this batch
            Map<String, Object> expressionData =
createComplexUpdateExpression(batchSize);

            String updateExpression = (String)
expressionData.get("updateExpression");
            @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues =
                (Map<String, AttributeValue>)
expressionData.get("expressionAttributeValues");
            int operatorCount = (int) expressionData.get("operatorCount");

            // Define the update parameters
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression(updateExpression)
                .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
                .build();

            try {
                // Perform the update operation for this batch
                UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

                Map<String, Object> batchResult = new HashMap<>();
                batchResult.put("batch", batch + 1);
                batchResult.put("success", true);
                batchResult.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);
                batchResult.put("attributes", response.attributes());

                batchResults.put(batch, batchResult);

            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                Map<String, Object> batchResult = new HashMap<>();
                batchResult.put("batch", batch + 1);
```

```
                batchResult.put("success", false);
                batchResult.put("operatorCount", operatorCount);
                batchResult.put("error", e.getMessage());

                batchResults.put(batch, batchResult);

                // Continue with next batch instead of breaking
                continue;
            }
        }

        results.put("results", batchResults);
        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Count operators in a DynamoDB expression based on the rules in the
documentation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how operators are counted according to the
     * DynamoDB documentation.
     *
     * @param expression The DynamoDB expression to analyze
     * @return Map containing the breakdown of operator counts
     */
    public static Map<String, Integer> countOperatorsInExpression(String expression)
{
        // Initialize counters for different operator types
        Map<String, Integer> counts = new HashMap<>();
        counts.put("comparisonOperators", 0);
        counts.put("logicalOperators", 0);
        counts.put("functions", 0);
        counts.put("arithmeticOperators", 0);
        counts.put("specialOperators", 0);
        counts.put("total", 0);

        // Count comparison operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)
        // This is a simplified approach and may not catch all cases
        int comparisonCount = 0;
        Pattern comparisonPattern = Pattern.compile("(=|<>|<=|>=|<|>)");
        Matcher comparisonMatcher = comparisonPattern.matcher(expression);
        while (comparisonMatcher.find()) {
            comparisonCount++;
        }
```

```
        counts.put("comparisonOperators", comparisonCount);

        // Count logical operators (AND, OR, NOT)
        int andCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bAND\\b");
        int orCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bOR\\b");
        int notCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bNOT\\b");
        counts.put("logicalOperators", andCount + orCount + notCount);

        // Count functions (attribute_exists, attribute_not_exists, attribute_type,
 begins_with, contains, size)
        int functionCount = countOccurrences(
            expression,
            "\\b(attribute_exists|attribute_not_exists|attribute_type|begins_with|
contains|size|if_not_exists)\\(");
        counts.put("functions", functionCount);

        // Count arithmetic operators (+ and -)
        // This is a simplified approach and may not catch all cases
        int arithmeticCount = 0;
        Pattern arithmeticPattern = Pattern.compile("[a-zA-Z0-9_)\\]]\\s*[\\+\\-]\
\s*[a-zA-Z0-9_:(]");
        Matcher arithmeticMatcher = arithmeticPattern.matcher(expression);
        while (arithmeticMatcher.find()) {
            arithmeticCount++;
        }
        counts.put("arithmeticOperators", arithmeticCount);

        // Count special operators (BETWEEN, IN)
        int betweenCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bBETWEEN\\b");
        int inCount = countOccurrences(expression, "\\bIN\\b");
        counts.put("specialOperators", betweenCount + inCount);

        // Add extra operators for BETWEEN (each BETWEEN includes an AND)
        int currentLogicalOps = counts.getOrDefault("logicalOperators", 0);
        counts.put("logicalOperators", currentLogicalOps + betweenCount);

        // Calculate total
        int total = counts.getOrDefault("comparisonOperators", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("logicalOperators", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("functions", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("arithmeticOperators", 0)
            + counts.getOrDefault("specialOperators", 0);
        counts.put("total", total);
```

```
        return counts;
    }

    /**
     * Helper method to count occurrences of a pattern in a string.
     *
     * @param text The text to search in
     * @param regex The regular expression pattern to search for
     * @return The number of occurrences
     */
    private static int countOccurrences(String text, String regex) {
        final Pattern pattern = Pattern.compile(regex);
        final Matcher matcher = pattern.matcher(text);
        int count = 0;
        while (matcher.find()) {
            count++;
        }
        return count;
    }
```

Example usage of expression operator counting with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating DynamoDB expression operator counting and
the 300 operator limit");

        try {
            // Example 1: Analyze a simple expression
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Analyzing a simple expression");
            String simpleExpression = "Price = :price AND Rating > :rating AND
Category IN (:cat1, :cat2, :cat3)";
            Map<String, Integer> simpleCount =
countOperatorsInExpression(simpleExpression);

            System.out.println("Expression: " + simpleExpression);
            System.out.println("Operator count breakdown:");
```

```
            System.out.println("- Comparison operators: " +
simpleCount.get("comparisonOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Logical operators: " +
simpleCount.get("logicalOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Functions: " + simpleCount.get("functions"));
            System.out.println("- Arithmetic operators: " +
simpleCount.get("arithmeticOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Special operators: " +
simpleCount.get("specialOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Total operators: " + simpleCount.get("total"));

            // Example 2: Analyze a complex expression
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Analyzing a complex expression");
            String complexExpression = "(attribute_exists(Category) AND Size
BETWEEN :min AND :max) OR "
                + "(Price > :price AND contains(Description, :keyword) AND "
                + "(Rating >= :minRating OR Reviews > :minReviews))";
            Map<String, Integer> complexCount =
countOperatorsInExpression(complexExpression);

            System.out.println("Expression: " + complexExpression);
            System.out.println("Operator count breakdown:");
            System.out.println("- Comparison operators: " +
complexCount.get("comparisonOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Logical operators: " +
complexCount.get("logicalOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Functions: " + complexCount.get("functions"));
            System.out.println("- Arithmetic operators: " +
complexCount.get("arithmeticOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Special operators: " +
complexCount.get("specialOperators"));
            System.out.println("- Total operators: " + complexCount.get("total"));

            // Example 3: Test approaching the operator limit
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Testing an expression approaching the
operator limit");
            Map<String, Object> approachingLimit = testOperatorLimit(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, 290);
            System.out.println(approachingLimit.get("message"));

            // Example 4: Test exceeding the operator limit
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Testing an expression exceeding the
operator limit");
```

```
            Map<String, Object> exceedingLimit = testOperatorLimit(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, 310);
            System.out.println(exceedingLimit.get("message"));

            // Example 5: Breaking down a complex expression
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Breaking down a complex expression into
multiple operations");
            Map<String, Object> breakdownResult =
breakDownComplexExpression(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, 500);
            @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
            Map<Integer, Map<String, Object>> results =
                (Map<Integer, Map<String, Object>>) breakdownResult.get("results");
            System.out.println(
                "Processed " + results.size() + " of " +
breakdownResult.get("totalBatches") + " batches");

            // Explain the operator counting rules
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB expression operator
counting:");
            System.out.println("1. The maximum number of operators in any expression
is 300");
            System.out.println("2. Each comparison operator (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)
counts as 1 operator");
            System.out.println("3. Each logical operator (AND, OR, NOT) counts as 1
operator");
            System.out.println("4. Each function call (attribute_exists, contains,
etc.) counts as 1 operator");
            System.out.println("5. Each arithmetic operator (+ or -) counts as 1
operator");
            System.out.println("6. BETWEEN counts as 2 operators (BETWEEN itself and
the AND within it)");
            System.out.println("7. IN counts as 1 operator regardless of the number
of values");
            System.out.println("8. Parentheses for grouping and attribute paths
don't count as operators");
            System.out.println("9. When you exceed the limit, the error always
reports '301 operators'");
            System.out.println("10. For complex operations, break them into multiple
smaller operations");

        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a table with global secondary index

The following code example shows how to create a table with global secondary index.

SDK for Java 2.x

Create DynamoDB table with Global Secondary Index using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DescribeTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GlobalSecondaryIndex;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeySchemaElement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeyType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.Projection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProjectionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScalarAttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.waiters.DynamoDbWaiter;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    public void createTable() {
        try {
            // Attribute definitions
            final List<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new
 ArrayList<>();
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(TITLE_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(CREATE_DATE_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                .build());
            attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
                .attributeName(DUE_DATE_ATTR)
                .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
```

```
                .build());

            // Key schema for table
            final List<KeySchemaElement> tableKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            tableKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build()); // Partition key
            tableKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(TITLE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                .build()); // Sort key

            // Initial provisioned throughput settings for the indexes
            final ProvisionedThroughput ptIndex = ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                .readCapacityUnits(1L)
                .writeCapacityUnits(1L)
                .build();

            // CreateDateIndex
            final List<KeySchemaElement> createDateKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            createDateKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(CREATE_DATE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build());
            createDateKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                .build());

            final Projection createDateProjection = Projection.builder()
                .projectionType(ProjectionType.INCLUDE)
                .nonKeyAttributes(DESCRIPTION_ATTR, STATUS_ATTR)
                .build();

            final GlobalSecondaryIndex createDateIndex =
GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                .indexName(CREATE_DATE_INDEX)
                .keySchema(createDateKeySchema)
                .projection(createDateProjection)
                .provisionedThroughput(ptIndex)
                .build();

            // TitleIndex
```

```
            final List<KeySchemaElement> titleKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            titleKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(TITLE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build());
            titleKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(ISSUE_ID_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                .build());

            final Projection titleProjection =

Projection.builder().projectionType(ProjectionType.KEYS_ONLY).build();

            final GlobalSecondaryIndex titleIndex = GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                .indexName(TITLE_INDEX)
                .keySchema(titleKeySchema)
                .projection(titleProjection)
                .provisionedThroughput(ptIndex)
                .build();

            // DueDateIndex
            final List<KeySchemaElement> dueDateKeySchema = new ArrayList<>();
            dueDateKeySchema.add(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                .attributeName(DUE_DATE_ATTR)
                .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                .build());

            final Projection dueDateProjection =
                Projection.builder().projectionType(ProjectionType.ALL).build();

            final GlobalSecondaryIndex dueDateIndex = GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                .indexName(DUE_DATE_INDEX)
                .keySchema(dueDateKeySchema)
                .projection(dueDateProjection)
                .provisionedThroughput(ptIndex)
                .build();

            final CreateTableRequest createTableRequest =
CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(TABLE_NAME)
                .keySchema(tableKeySchema)
                .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
                .globalSecondaryIndexes(createDateIndex, titleIndex, dueDateIndex)
```

```
                .provisionedThroughput(ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                    .readCapacityUnits(1L)
                    .writeCapacityUnits(1L)
                    .build())
                .build();

            System.out.println("Creating table " + TABLE_NAME + "...");
            dynamoDbClient.createTable(createTableRequest);

            // Wait for table to become active
            System.out.println("Waiting for " + TABLE_NAME + " to become
ACTIVE...");
            final DynamoDbWaiter waiter = dynamoDbClient.waiter();
            final DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
                DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(TABLE_NAME).build();

            final WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
                waiter.waitUntilTableExists(describeTableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(response ->
System.out.println("Table is now ready for use"));

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error creating table: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a table with warm throughput enabled

The following code example shows how to create a table with warm throughput enabled.

SDK for Java 2.x

Create DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeDefinition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.CreateTableResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GlobalSecondaryIndex;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeySchemaElement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.KeyType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.Projection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ProvisionedThroughput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScalarAttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.WarmThroughput;

    public static WarmThroughput buildWarmThroughput(final Long readUnitsPerSecond,
 final Long writeUnitsPerSecond) {
        return WarmThroughput.builder()
            .readUnitsPerSecond(readUnitsPerSecond)
            .writeUnitsPerSecond(writeUnitsPerSecond)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Builds a ProvisionedThroughput object with the specified read and write
 capacity units.
     *
     * @param readCapacityUnits The read capacity units
     * @param writeCapacityUnits The write capacity units
     * @return A configured ProvisionedThroughput object
     */
    public static ProvisionedThroughput buildProvisionedThroughput(
        final Long readCapacityUnits, final Long writeCapacityUnits) {
        return ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
            .readCapacityUnits(readCapacityUnits)
            .writeCapacityUnits(writeCapacityUnits)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Builds an AttributeDefinition with the specified name and type.
     *
     * @param attributeName The attribute name
     * @param scalarAttributeType The attribute type
     * @return A configured AttributeDefinition
     */
    private static AttributeDefinition buildAttributeDefinition(
        final String attributeName, final ScalarAttributeType scalarAttributeType) {
        return AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .attributeType(scalarAttributeType)
            .build();
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Builds a KeySchemaElement with the specified name and key type.
     *
     * @param attributeName The attribute name
     * @param keyType The key type (HASH or RANGE)
     * @return A configured KeySchemaElement
     */
    private static KeySchemaElement buildKeySchemaElement(final String
attributeName, final KeyType keyType) {
        return KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName(attributeName)
            .keyType(keyType)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a DynamoDB table with the specified configuration including warm
throughput settings.
     *
     * @param ddb The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the table to create
     * @param partitionKey The partition key attribute name
     * @param sortKey The sort key attribute name
     * @param miscellaneousKeyAttribute Additional key attribute name for GSI
     * @param nonKeyAttribute Non-key attribute to include in GSI projection
     * @param tableReadCapacityUnits Read capacity units for the table
     * @param tableWriteCapacityUnits Write capacity units for the table
     * @param tableWarmReadUnitsPerSecond Warm read units per second for the table
     * @param tableWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond Warm write units per second for the table
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexName The name of the GSI to create
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexReadCapacityUnits Read capacity units for the GSI
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexWriteCapacityUnits Write capacity units for the
GSI
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexWarmReadUnitsPerSecond Warm read units per second
for the GSI
     * @param globalSecondaryIndexWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond Warm write units per
second for the GSI
     */
    public static void createDynamoDBTable(
        final DynamoDbClient ddb,
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKey,
```

```
        final String sortKey,
        final String miscellaneousKeyAttribute,
        final String nonKeyAttribute,
        final Long tableReadCapacityUnits,
        final Long tableWriteCapacityUnits,
        final Long tableWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
        final Long tableWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond,
        final String globalSecondaryIndexName,
        final Long globalSecondaryIndexReadCapacityUnits,
        final Long globalSecondaryIndexWriteCapacityUnits,
        final Long globalSecondaryIndexWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
        final Long globalSecondaryIndexWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond) {

        // Define the table attributes
        final AttributeDefinition partitionKeyAttribute =
buildAttributeDefinition(partitionKey, ScalarAttributeType.S);
        final AttributeDefinition sortKeyAttribute =
buildAttributeDefinition(sortKey, ScalarAttributeType.S);
        final AttributeDefinition miscellaneousKeyAttributeDefinition =
            buildAttributeDefinition(miscellaneousKeyAttribute,
ScalarAttributeType.N);
        final AttributeDefinition[] attributeDefinitions = {
            partitionKeyAttribute, sortKeyAttribute,
miscellaneousKeyAttributeDefinition
        };

        // Define the table key schema
        final KeySchemaElement partitionKeyElement =
buildKeySchemaElement(partitionKey, KeyType.HASH);
        final KeySchemaElement sortKeyElement = buildKeySchemaElement(sortKey,
KeyType.RANGE);
        final KeySchemaElement[] keySchema = {partitionKeyElement, sortKeyElement};

        // Define the provisioned throughput for the table
        final ProvisionedThroughput provisionedThroughput =
            buildProvisionedThroughput(tableReadCapacityUnits,
tableWriteCapacityUnits);

        // Define the Global Secondary Index (GSI)
        final KeySchemaElement globalSecondaryIndexPartitionKeyElement =
buildKeySchemaElement(sortKey, KeyType.HASH);
        final KeySchemaElement globalSecondaryIndexSortKeyElement =
            buildKeySchemaElement(miscellaneousKeyAttribute, KeyType.RANGE);
        final KeySchemaElement[] gsiKeySchema = {
```

```
            globalSecondaryIndexPartitionKeyElement,
globalSecondaryIndexSortKeyElement
        };

        final Projection gsiProjection = Projection.builder()
            .projectionType(PROJECTION_TYPE_INCLUDE)
            .nonKeyAttributes(nonKeyAttribute)
            .build();

        final ProvisionedThroughput gsiProvisionedThroughput =
            buildProvisionedThroughput(globalSecondaryIndexReadCapacityUnits,
globalSecondaryIndexWriteCapacityUnits);

        // Define the warm throughput for the Global Secondary Index (GSI)
        final WarmThroughput gsiWarmThroughput = buildWarmThroughput(
            globalSecondaryIndexWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
globalSecondaryIndexWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond);

        final GlobalSecondaryIndex globalSecondaryIndex =
GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
            .indexName(globalSecondaryIndexName)
            .keySchema(gsiKeySchema)
            .projection(gsiProjection)
            .provisionedThroughput(gsiProvisionedThroughput)
            .warmThroughput(gsiWarmThroughput)
            .build();

        // Define the warm throughput for the table
        final WarmThroughput tableWarmThroughput =
            buildWarmThroughput(tableWarmReadUnitsPerSecond,
tableWarmWriteUnitsPerSecond);

        final CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .keySchema(keySchema)
            .provisionedThroughput(provisionedThroughput)
            .globalSecondaryIndexes(globalSecondaryIndex)
            .warmThroughput(tableWarmThroughput)
            .build();

        final CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
        System.out.println(response);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create an item with a TTL

The following code example shows how to create an item with TTL.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
package com.amazon.samplelib.ttl;

import com.amazon.samplelib.CodeSampleUtils;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.PutItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
```

```
import java.util.Optional;

/**
 * Creates an item in a DynamoDB table with TTL attributes.
 * This class demonstrates how to add TTL expiration timestamps to DynamoDB items.
 */
public class CreateTTL {

    private static final String USAGE =
        """
            Usage:
                <tableName> <primaryKey> <sortKey> <region>
            Where:
                tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table being queried.
                primaryKey - The name of the primary key. Also known as the hash or
 partition key.
                sortKey - The name of the sort key. Also known as the range
 attribute.
                region (optional) - The AWS region that the Amazon DynamoDB table is
 located in. (Default: us-east-1)
            """;
    private static final int DAYS_TO_EXPIRE = 90;
    private static final int SECONDS_PER_DAY = 24 * 60 * 60;
    private static final String PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR = "primaryKey";
    private static final String SORT_KEY_ATTR = "sortKey";
    private static final String CREATION_DATE_ATTR = "creationDate";
    private static final String EXPIRE_AT_ATTR = "expireAt";
    private static final String SUCCESS_MESSAGE = "%s PutItem operation with TTL
 successful.";
    private static final String TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR = "Error: The Amazon DynamoDB
 table \"%s\" can't be found.";

    private final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    /**
     * Constructs a CreateTTL instance with the specified DynamoDB client.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client to use
     */
    public CreateTTL(final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {
        this.dynamoDbClient = dynamoDbClient;
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Constructs a CreateTTL with a default DynamoDB client.
     */
    public CreateTTL() {
        this.dynamoDbClient = null;
    }

    /**
     * Main method to demonstrate creating an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     */
    public static void main(final String[] args) {
        try {
            int result = new CreateTTL().processArgs(args);
            System.exit(result);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Process command line arguments and create an item with TTL.
     *
     * @param args Command line arguments
     * @return 0 if successful, non-zero otherwise
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException If the table doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException If an error occurs during the operation
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException If arguments are invalid
     */
    public int processArgs(final String[] args) {
        // Argument validation (remove or replace this line when reusing this code)
        CodeSampleUtils.validateArgs(args, new int[] {3, 4}, USAGE);

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String primaryKey = args[1];
        final String sortKey = args[2];
        final Region region = Optional.ofNullable(args.length > 3 ? args[3] : null)
            .map(Region::of)
            .orElse(Region.US_EAST_1);

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
```

```
            final CreateTTL createTTL = new CreateTTL(ddb);
            createTTL.createItemWithTTL(tableName, primaryKey, sortKey);
            return 0;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates an item in the specified table with TTL attributes.
     *
     * @param tableName The name of the table
     * @param primaryKeyValue The value for the primary key
     * @param sortKeyValue The value for the sort key
     * @return The response from the PutItem operation
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException If the table doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException If an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public PutItemResponse createItemWithTTL(
        final String tableName, final String primaryKeyValue, final String
sortKeyValue) {
        // Get current time in epoch second format
        final long createDate = System.currentTimeMillis() / 1000;

        // Calculate expiration time 90 days from now in epoch second format
        final long expireDate = createDate + (DAYS_TO_EXPIRE * SECONDS_PER_DAY);

        final Map<String, AttributeValue> itemMap = new HashMap<>();
        itemMap.put(
            PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR, AttributeValue.builder().s(primaryKeyValue).build());
        itemMap.put(SORT_KEY_ATTR,
AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKeyValue).build());
        itemMap.put(
            CREATION_DATE_ATTR,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(createDate)).build());
        itemMap.put(
            EXPIRE_AT_ATTR,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(expireDate)).build());

        final PutItemRequest request =
            PutItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).item(itemMap).build();

        try {
            final PutItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.putItem(request);
```

```
            System.out.println(String.format(SUCCESS_MESSAGE, tableName));
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create and manage MRSC global tables

The following code example shows how to create and manage DynamoDB global tables with Multi-Region Strong Consistency (MRSC).

- Create a table with Multi-Region Strong Consistency.
- Verify MRSC configuration and replica status.
- Test strong consistency across Regions with immediate reads.
- Perform conditional writes with MRSC guarantees.
- Clean up MRSC global table resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

Create a regional table ready for MRSC conversion using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static CreateTableResponse createRegionalTable(final DynamoDbClient
 dynamoDbClient, final String tableName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
 empty");
        }
```

```
        try {
            LOGGER.info("Creating regional table: " + tableName + " (must be empty
for MRSC)");

            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .attributeDefinitions(
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build(),
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build())
                .keySchema(
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                        .build(),
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                        .build())
                .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST)
                .build();

            CreateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.createTable(createTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Regional table creation initiated. Status: "
                + response.tableDescription().tableStatus());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to create regional table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to create regional table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Convert a regional table to MRSC with replicas and witness using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse convertToMRSCWithWitness(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
        final Region witnessRegion) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (witnessRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Witness region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Converting table to MRSC with replica in " +
replicaRegion.id() + " and witness in "
                + witnessRegion.id());

            // Create replica update using ReplicationGroupUpdate
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicaUpdate = ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .create(CreateReplicationGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(replicaRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            // Create witness update
            GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate witnessUpdate =
GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate.builder()
                .create(CreateGlobalTableWitnessGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(witnessRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();
```

```
            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(List.of(replicaUpdate))
                .globalTableWitnessUpdates(List.of(witnessUpdate))
                .multiRegionConsistency(MultiRegionConsistency.STRONG)
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("MRSC conversion initiated. Status: "
                + response.tableDescription().tableStatus());
            LOGGER.info("UpdateTableResponse full object: " + response);
            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to convert table to MRSC: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to convert table to MRSC: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Describe an MRSC global table configuration using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static DescribeTableResponse describeMRSCTable(final DynamoDbClient
dynamoDbClient, final String tableName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Describing MRSC global table: " + tableName);

            DescribeTableRequest request =
```

```
                DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

            DescribeTableResponse response = dynamoDbClient.describeTable(request);

            LOGGER.info("Table status: " + response.table().tableStatus());
            LOGGER.info("Multi-region consistency: " +
response.table().multiRegionConsistency());

            if (response.table().replicas() != null
                && !response.table().replicas().isEmpty()) {
                LOGGER.info("Number of replicas: " +
response.table().replicas().size());
                response.table()
                    .replicas()
                    .forEach(replica -> LOGGER.info(
                        "Replica region: " + replica.regionName() + ", Status: " +
replica.replicaStatus()));
            }

            if (response.table().globalTableWitnesses() != null
                && !response.table().globalTableWitnesses().isEmpty()) {
                LOGGER.info("Number of witnesses: "
                    + response.table().globalTableWitnesses().size());
                response.table()
                    .globalTableWitnesses()
                    .forEach(witness -> LOGGER.info(
                        "Witness region: " + witness.regionName() + ", Status: " +
witness.witnessStatus()));
            }

            return response;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Table not found: " + tableName + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Table not found: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to describe table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to describe table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
```

```
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Add test items to verify MRSC strong consistency using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static PutItemResponse putTestItem(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final String artist,
        final String songTitle,
        final String album,
        final String year) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Adding test item to MRSC global table: " + tableName);

            Map<String, AttributeValue> item = new HashMap<>();
            item.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s(artist).build());
            item.put("SongTitle", AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitle).build());

            if (album != null && !album.trim().isEmpty()) {
                item.put("Album", AttributeValue.builder().s(album).build());
            }
            if (year != null && !year.trim().isEmpty()) {
                item.put("Year", AttributeValue.builder().n(year).build());
            }
```

```
            PutItemRequest putItemRequest =
                PutItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).item(item).build();

            PutItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.putItem(putItemRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Test item added successfully with strong consistency");

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to add test item to table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to add test item to table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Read items with consistent reads from MRSC replicas using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static GetItemResponse getItemWithConsistentRead(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final String
artist, final String songTitle) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
```

```
            LOGGER.info("Reading item from MRSC global table with consistent read: "
+ tableName);

            Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
            key.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s(artist).build());
            key.put("SongTitle", AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitle).build());

            GetItemRequest getItemRequest = GetItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .consistentRead(true)
                .build();

            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(getItemRequest);

            if (response.hasItem()) {
                LOGGER.info("Item found with strong consistency - no wait time
needed");
            } else {
                LOGGER.info("Item not found");
            }

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to read item from table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to read item from table: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Perform conditional updates with MRSC guarantees using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateItemResponse performConditionalUpdate(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final String artist,
        final String songTitle,
        final String rating) {
```

```
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (rating == null || rating.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Rating cannot be null or empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Performing conditional update on MRSC global table: " +
tableName);

            Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
            key.put("Artist", AttributeValue.builder().s(artist).build());
            key.put("SongTitle", AttributeValue.builder().s(songTitle).build());

            Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#rating", "Rating");

            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
            expressionAttributeValues.put(
                ":rating", AttributeValue.builder().n(rating).build());

            UpdateItemRequest updateItemRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #rating = :rating")
                .conditionExpression("attribute_exists(Artist)")
                .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
                .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                .build();
```

```
            UpdateItemResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(updateItemRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Conditional update successful - demonstrates strong
consistency");

            return response;

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            LOGGER.warning("Conditional check failed: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to perform conditional update: " + tableName + " -
" + e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to perform conditional update: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Wait for MRSC replicas and witnesses to become active using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void waitForMRSCReplicasActive(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final int
maxWaitTimeSeconds)
        throws InterruptedException {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (maxWaitTimeSeconds <= 0) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Max wait time must be positive");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for MRSC replicas and witnesses to become active: "
+ tableName);
```

```
            final long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
            final long maxWaitTimeMillis = maxWaitTimeSeconds * 1000L;
            int backoffSeconds = 5; // Start with 5 second intervals
            final int maxBackoffSeconds = 30; // Cap at 30 seconds

            while (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime < maxWaitTimeMillis) {
                DescribeTableResponse response = describeMRSCTable(dynamoDbClient,
tableName);

                boolean allActive = true;
                StringBuilder statusReport = new StringBuilder();

                if (response.table().multiRegionConsistency() == null
                    || !MultiRegionConsistency.STRONG
                        .toString()

.equals(response.table().multiRegionConsistency().toString())) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport
                        .append("MultiRegionConsistency: ")
                        .append(response.table().multiRegionConsistency())
                        .append(" ");
                }
                if (response.table().replicas() == null
                    || response.table().replicas().isEmpty()) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport.append("No replicas found. ");
                }
                if (response.table().globalTableWitnesses() == null
                    || response.table().globalTableWitnesses().isEmpty()) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport.append("No witnesses found. ");
                }

                // Check table status
                if (!"ACTIVE".equals(response.table().tableStatus().toString())) {
                    allActive = false;
                    statusReport
                        .append("Table: ")
                        .append(response.table().tableStatus())
                        .append(" ");
                }

                // Check replica status
```

```
                if (response.table().replicas() != null) {
                    for (var replica : response.table().replicas()) {
                        if (!"ACTIVE".equals(replica.replicaStatus().toString())) {
                            allActive = false;
                            statusReport
                                .append("Replica(")
                                .append(replica.regionName())
                                .append("): ")
                                .append(replica.replicaStatus())
                                .append(" ");
                        }
                    }
                }

                // Check witness status
                if (response.table().globalTableWitnesses() != null) {
                    for (var witness : response.table().globalTableWitnesses()) {
                        if (!"ACTIVE".equals(witness.witnessStatus().toString())) {
                            allActive = false;
                            statusReport
                                .append("Witness(")
                                .append(witness.regionName())
                                .append("): ")
                                .append(witness.witnessStatus())
                                .append(" ");
                        }
                    }
                }

                if (allActive) {
                    LOGGER.info("All MRSC replicas and witnesses are now active: " +
tableName);
                    return;
                }

                LOGGER.info("Waiting for MRSC components to become active. Status: "
+ statusReport.toString());
                LOGGER.info("Next check in " + backoffSeconds + " seconds...");

                tempWait(backoffSeconds);

                // Exponential backoff with cap
                backoffSeconds = Math.min(backoffSeconds * 2, maxBackoffSeconds);
            }
```

```
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Timeout waiting for MRSC replicas to become active after "
+ maxWaitTimeSeconds + " seconds")
                .build();

        } catch (DynamoDbException | InterruptedException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to wait for MRSC replicas to become active: " +
tableName + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Clean up MRSC replicas and witnesses using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse cleanupMRSCReplicas(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
        final Region witnessRegion) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (witnessRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Witness region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Cleaning up MRSC replicas and witnesses for table: " +
tableName);

            // Remove replica using ReplicationGroupUpdate
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicaUpdate = ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .delete(DeleteReplicationGroupMemberAction.builder()
```

```
                    .regionName(replicaRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            // Remove witness
            GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate witnessUpdate =
GlobalTableWitnessGroupUpdate.builder()
                .delete(DeleteGlobalTableWitnessGroupMemberAction.builder()
                    .regionName(witnessRegion.id())
                    .build())
                .build();

            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(List.of(replicaUpdate))
                .globalTableWitnessUpdates(List.of(witnessUpdate))
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("MRSC cleanup initiated - removing replica and witness.
Response: " + response);

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to cleanup MRSC replicas: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to cleanup MRSC replicas: " + tableName)
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Complete MRSC workflow demonstration using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void demonstrateCompleteMRSCWorkflow(
        final DynamoDbClient primaryClient,
        final DynamoDbClient replicaClient,
        final String tableName,
        final Region replicaRegion,
```

```
        final Region witnessRegion)
        throws InterruptedException {

        if (primaryClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Primary DynamoDB client cannot be
null");
        }
        if (replicaClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica DynamoDB client cannot be
null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }
        if (witnessRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Witness region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("=== Starting Complete MRSC Workflow Demonstration ===");

            // Step 1: Create an empty single-Region table
            LOGGER.info("Step 1: Creating empty single-Region table");
            createRegionalTable(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Use the existing GlobalTableOperations method for basic table waiting
            LOGGER.info("Intermediate step: Waiting for table [" + tableName + "] to
become active before continuing");
            GlobalTableOperations.waitForTableActive(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Step 2: Convert to MRSC with replica and witness
            LOGGER.info("Step 2: Converting to MRSC with replica and witness");
            convertToMRSCWithWitness(primaryClient, tableName, replicaRegion,
witnessRegion);

            // Wait for MRSC conversion to complete using MRSC-specific waiter
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for MRSC conversion to complete...");
            waitForMRSCReplicasActive(primaryClient, tableName);
```

```
            LOGGER.info("Intermediate step: Waiting for table [" + tableName + "] to
become active before continuing");
            GlobalTableOperations.waitForTableActive(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Step 3: Verify MRSC configuration
            LOGGER.info("Step 3: Verifying MRSC configuration");
            describeMRSCTable(primaryClient, tableName);

            // Step 4: Test strong consistency with data operations
            LOGGER.info("Step 4: Testing strong consistency with data operations");

            // Add test item to primary region
            putTestItem(primaryClient, tableName, "The Beatles", "Hey Jude", "The
Beatles 1967-1970", "1968");

            // Immediately read from replica region (no wait needed with MRSC)
            LOGGER.info("Reading from replica region immediately (strong
consistency):");
            GetItemResponse getResponse =
                getItemWithConsistentRead(replicaClient, tableName, "The Beatles",
"Hey Jude");

            if (getResponse.hasItem()) {
                LOGGER.info("# Strong consistency verified - item immediately
available in replica region");
            } else {
                LOGGER.warning("# Item not found in replica region");
            }

            // Test conditional update from replica region
            LOGGER.info("Testing conditional update from replica region:");
            performConditionalUpdate(replicaClient, tableName, "The Beatles", "Hey
Jude", "5");
            LOGGER.info("# Conditional update successful - demonstrates strong
consistency");

            // Step 5: Cleanup
            LOGGER.info("Step 5: Cleaning up resources");
            cleanupMRSCReplicas(primaryClient, tableName, replicaRegion,
witnessRegion);

            // Wait for cleanup to complete using basic table waiter
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for replica cleanup to complete...");
            GlobalTableOperations.waitForTableActive(primaryClient, tableName);
```

```
            // "Halt" until replica/witness cleanup is complete
            DescribeTableResponse cleanupVerification =
describeMRSCTable(primaryClient, tableName);
            int backoffSeconds = 5; // Start with 5 second intervals
            while (cleanupVerification.table().multiRegionConsistency() != null) {
                LOGGER.info("Waiting additional time (" + backoffSeconds + "
seconds) for MRSC cleanup to complete...");
                tempWait(backoffSeconds);

                // Exponential backoff with cap
                backoffSeconds = Math.min(backoffSeconds * 2, 30);
                cleanupVerification = describeMRSCTable(primaryClient, tableName);
            }

            // Delete the primary table
            deleteTable(primaryClient, tableName);

            LOGGER.info("=== MRSC Workflow Demonstration Complete ===");
            LOGGER.info("");
            LOGGER.info("Key benefits of Multi-Region Strong Consistency (MRSC):");
            LOGGER.info("- Immediate consistency across all regions (no eventual
consistency delays)");
            LOGGER.info("- Simplified application logic (no need to handle eventual
consistency)");
            LOGGER.info("- Support for conditional writes and transactions across
regions");
            LOGGER.info("- Consistent read operations from any region without
waiting");

        } catch (DynamoDbException | InterruptedException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("MRSC workflow failed: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem

- PutItem
- UpdateItem
- UpdateTable

Create and manage global tables demonstrating MREC

The following code example shows how to create and manage DynamoDB global tables with replicas across multiple Regions.

- Create a table with Global Secondary Index and DynamoDB Streams.
- Add replicas in different Regions to create a global table.
- Remove replicas from a global table.
- Add test items to verify replication across Regions.
- Describe global table configuration and replica status.

SDK for Java 2.x

Create a table with Global Secondary Index and DynamoDB Streams using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static CreateTableResponse createTableWithGSI(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final String
indexName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (indexName == null || indexName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Index name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Creating table: " + tableName + " with GSI: " + indexName);
```

```
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .attributeDefinitions(
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build(),
                    AttributeDefinition.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                        .build())
                .keySchema(
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("Artist")
                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                        .build(),
                    KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                        .build())
                .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST)
                .globalSecondaryIndexes(GlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                    .indexName(indexName)
                    .keySchema(KeySchemaElement.builder()
                        .attributeName("SongTitle")
                        .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                        .build())
                    .projection(

Projection.builder().projectionType(ProjectionType.ALL).build())
                    .build())
                .streamSpecification(StreamSpecification.builder()
                    .streamEnabled(true)
                    .streamViewType(StreamViewType.NEW_AND_OLD_IMAGES)
                    .build())
                .build();

            CreateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.createTable(createTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Table creation initiated. Status: "
                + response.tableDescription().tableStatus());

            return response;
```

```
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to create table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Wait for a table to become active using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void waitForTableActive(final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final
String tableName) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for table to become active: " + tableName);

            try (DynamoDbWaiter waiter =
                DynamoDbWaiter.builder().client(dynamoDbClient).build()) {
                DescribeTableRequest request =
                    DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

                waiter.waitUntilTableExists(request);
                LOGGER.info("Table is now active: " + tableName);
            }

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to wait for table to become active: " + tableName
+ " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Add a replica to create or extend a global table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static UpdateTableResponse addReplica(
       final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
       final String tableName,
       final Region replicaRegion,
       final String indexName,
       final Long readCapacity) {

       if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
       }
       if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
       }
       if (replicaRegion == null) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
       }
       if (indexName == null || indexName.trim().isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Index name cannot be null or
empty");
       }
       if (readCapacity == null || readCapacity <= 0) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Read capacity must be a positive
number");
       }

       try {
           LOGGER.info("Adding replica in region: " + replicaRegion.id() + " for
table: " + tableName);

           // Create a ReplicationGroupUpdate for adding a replica
           ReplicationGroupUpdate replicationGroupUpdate =
ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
               .create(builder -> builder.regionName(replicaRegion.id())
                   .globalSecondaryIndexes(ReplicaGlobalSecondaryIndex.builder()
                       .indexName(indexName)

.provisionedThroughputOverride(ProvisionedThroughputOverride.builder()
                           .readCapacityUnits(readCapacity)
                           .build())
                       .build())
                   .build())
               .build();
```

```
            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(replicationGroupUpdate)
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Replica addition initiated in region: " +
replicaRegion.id());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to add replica in region: " + replicaRegion.id() +
" - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Remove a replica from a global table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static UpdateTableResponse removeReplica(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final Region
replicaRegion) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (replicaRegion == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Replica region cannot be null");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Removing replica in region: " + replicaRegion.id() + " for
table: " + tableName);

            // Create a ReplicationGroupUpdate for removing a replica
```

```
            ReplicationGroupUpdate replicationGroupUpdate =
ReplicationGroupUpdate.builder()
                .delete(builder -> builder.regionName(replicaRegion.id()).build())
                .build();

            UpdateTableRequest updateTableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .replicaUpdates(replicationGroupUpdate)
                .build();

            UpdateTableResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.updateTable(updateTableRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Replica removal initiated in region: " +
replicaRegion.id());

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to remove replica in region: " +
replicaRegion.id() + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Add test items to verify replication using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static PutItemResponse putTestItem(
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, final String tableName, final String
artist, final String songTitle) {

        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }
        if (artist == null || artist.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Artist cannot be null or empty");
        }
        if (songTitle == null || songTitle.trim().isEmpty()) {
```

```
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Song title cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Adding test item to table: " + tableName);

            Map<String,
software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue> item = new
HashMap<>();
            item.put(
                "Artist",

software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue.builder()
                    .s(artist)
                    .build());
            item.put(
                "SongTitle",

software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue.builder()
                    .s(songTitle)
                    .build());

            PutItemRequest putItemRequest =
                PutItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).item(item).build();

            PutItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.putItem(putItemRequest);
            LOGGER.info("Test item added successfully");

            return response;

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to add test item to table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Describe global table configuration and replicas using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static DescribeTableResponse describeTable(final DynamoDbClient
dynamoDbClient, final String tableName) {
```

```
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("DynamoDB client cannot be null");
        }
        if (tableName == null || tableName.trim().isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Table name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        try {
            LOGGER.info("Describing table: " + tableName);

            DescribeTableRequest request =
                DescribeTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build();

            DescribeTableResponse response = dynamoDbClient.describeTable(request);

            LOGGER.info("Table status: " + response.table().tableStatus());
            if (response.table().replicas() != null
                && !response.table().replicas().isEmpty()) {
                LOGGER.info("Number of replicas: " +
response.table().replicas().size());
                response.table()
                    .replicas()
                    .forEach(replica -> LOGGER.info(
                        "Replica region: " + replica.regionName() + ", Status: " +
replica.replicaStatus()));
            }

            return response;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Table not found: " + tableName + " - " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.severe("Failed to describe table: " + tableName + " - " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Complete example of global table operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static void exampleUsage(final Region sourceRegion, final Region
replicaRegion) {

       String tableName = "Music";
       String indexName = "SongTitleIndex";
       Long readCapacity = 15L;

       // Create DynamoDB client for the source region
       try (DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient =
           DynamoDbClient.builder().region(sourceRegion).build()) {

           try {
               // Step 1: Create the initial table with GSI and streams
               LOGGER.info("Step 1: Creating table in source region: " +
sourceRegion.id());
               createTableWithGSI(dynamoDbClient, tableName, indexName);

               // Step 2: Wait for table to become active
               LOGGER.info("Step 2: Waiting for table to become active");
               waitForTableActive(dynamoDbClient, tableName);

               // Step 3: Add replica in destination region
               LOGGER.info("Step 3: Adding replica in region: " +
replicaRegion.id());
               addReplica(dynamoDbClient, tableName, replicaRegion, indexName,
readCapacity);

               // Step 4: Wait a moment for replica creation to start
               Thread.sleep(5000);

               // Step 5: Describe table to view replica information
               LOGGER.info("Step 5: Describing table to view replicas");
               describeTable(dynamoDbClient, tableName);

               // Step 6: Add a test item to verify replication
               LOGGER.info("Step 6: Adding test item to verify replication");
               putTestItem(dynamoDbClient, tableName, "TestArtist", "TestSong");

               LOGGER.info("Global table setup completed successfully!");
               LOGGER.info("You can verify replication by checking the item in
region: " + replicaRegion.id());

               // Step 7: Remove replica and clean up table
```

```
                LOGGER.info("Step 7: Removing replica from region: " +
replicaRegion.id());
                removeReplica(dynamoDbClient, tableName, replicaRegion);
                DeleteTableResponse deleteTableResponse =
dynamoDbClient.deleteTable(
                    DeleteTableRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).build());
                LOGGER.info("MREC global table demonstration completed
successfully!");

            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException("Thread was interrupted", e);
            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                LOGGER.severe("DynamoDB operation failed: " + e.getMessage());
                throw e;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DescribeTable
  - PutItem
  - UpdateTable

Detect PPE in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Monitor DynamoDB performance

The following code example shows how to configure an application's use of DynamoDB to monitor performance.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example shows how to configure a Java application to monitor the performance of DynamoDB. The application sends metric data to CloudWatch where you can monitor the performance.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch
- DynamoDB

Perform advanced query operations

The following code example shows how to perform advanced query operations in DynamoDB.

- Query tables using various filtering and condition techniques.
- Implement pagination for large result sets.
- Use Global Secondary Indexes for alternate access patterns.
- Apply consistency controls based on application requirements.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query with strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithConsistentReads(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final boolean useConsistentRead) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .consistentRead(useConsistentRead)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query successful. Found {0} items",
 response.count());
            return response;
```

```
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with consistent reads", e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query using a Global Secondary Index with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryTable(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
```

```
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on base table successful. Found " +
response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table not found: " + tableName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying base table: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on base
table", e);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI) by partition key.
     *
     * @param tableName         The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param indexName         The name of the GSI
     * @param partitionKeyName  The name of the GSI partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the GSI partition key to query
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException if the table or index doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException if the query fails
     */
    public QueryResponse queryGlobalSecondaryIndex(
        final String tableName, final String indexName, final String
partitionKeyName, final String partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Index name", indexName);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
```

```
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_IK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_IK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .indexName(indexName)
            .keyConditionExpression(GSI_KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on GSI successful. Found " + response.count()
 + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(
                "Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" or index \"%s\" can't be
 found.\n", tableName, indexName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table or index not found: " +
 tableName + "/" + indexName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying GSI: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on GSI", e);
        }
    }
```

Query with pagination using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    public List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> queryWithPagination(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue, final int pageSize) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Page size", pageSize);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        QueryRequest.Builder queryRequestBuilder = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(pageSize);

        // List to store all items from all pages
        final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> allItems = new ArrayList<>();

        // Map to store the last evaluated key for pagination
        Map<String, AttributeValue> lastEvaluatedKey = null;
        int pageNumber = 1;
```

```
        try {
            do {
                // If we have a last evaluated key, use it for the next page
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null) {
                    queryRequestBuilder.exclusiveStartKey(lastEvaluatedKey);
                }

                // Execute the query
                final QueryResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequestBuilder.build());

                // Process the current page of results
                final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> pageItems =
response.items();
                allItems.addAll(pageItems);

                // Get the last evaluated key for the next page
                lastEvaluatedKey = response.lastEvaluatedKey();
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null && lastEvaluatedKey.isEmpty()) {
                    lastEvaluatedKey = null;
                }

                System.out.println("Page " + pageNumber + ": Retrieved " +
pageItems.size() + " items (Running total: "
                    + allItems.size() + ")");

                pageNumber++;

            } while (lastEvaluatedKey != null);

            System.out.println("Query with pagination complete. Retrieved a total of
" + allItems.size()
                + " items across " + (pageNumber - 1) + " pages");

            return allItems;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with pagination: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query with complex filters using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithComplexFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String statusAttrName,
        final String activeStatus,
        final String pendingStatus,
        final String priceAttrName,
        final double minPrice,
        final double maxPrice,
        final String categoryAttrName) {

        // Validate parameters
        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Status attribute name",
 statusAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Active status", activeStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Pending status", pendingStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Price attribute name",
 priceAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Category attribute name",
 categoryAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Minimum price", minPrice, 0.0,
 Double.MAX_VALUE);
```

```
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Maximum price", maxPrice, minPrice,
Double.MAX_VALUE);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pk", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_STATUS,
statusAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PRICE,
priceAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_CATEGORY,
categoryAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":pkValue", AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_ACTIVE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(activeStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PENDING,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(pendingStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MIN_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(minPrice)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MAX_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(maxPrice)).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(FILTER_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        return dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
    }
```

Query with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public static QueryResponse queryWithDynamicFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final Map<String, Object> filterCriteria,
        final Region region,
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {

        validateParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
 filterCriteria);

        DynamoDbClient ddbClient = dynamoDbClient;
        boolean shouldClose = false;

        try {
            if (ddbClient == null) {
                ddbClient = createClient(region);
                shouldClose = true;
            }

            final QueryWithDynamicFilter queryHelper = new
 QueryWithDynamicFilter(ddbClient);
            return queryHelper.queryWithDynamicFilter(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue, filterCriteria);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to execute dynamic filter query: " +
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
```

```
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error during query: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } finally {
            if (shouldClose && ddbClient != null) {
                ddbClient.close();
            }
        }
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue>
<filterAttrName> <filterAttrValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    filterAttrName - The name of the attribute to filter on.
                    filterAttrValue - The value to filter by.
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String filterAttrName = args[3];
        final String filterAttrValue = args[4];
        final Region region = args.length > 5 ? Region.of(args[5]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items with dynamic filter: " + filterAttrName +
" = " + filterAttrValue);

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
```

```
            final QueryResponse response = new DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriterion(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("Found " + response.count() + " items:");
            response.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Demonstrate multiple filter criteria
            System.out.println("\nNow querying with multiple filter criteria:");

            Map<String, Object> multipleFilters = new HashMap<>();
            multipleFilters.put(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue);
            multipleFilters.put("status", "active");

            final QueryResponse multiFilterResponse = new
DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriteria(multipleFilters)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            System.out.println("Found " + multiFilterResponse.count() + " items with
multiple filters:");
            multiFilterResponse.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
```

Query with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithFilterAndLimit(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String filterAttrName,
        final String filterAttrValue,
        final int limit) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute name",
 filterAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute value",
 filterAttrValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Limit", limit);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_FILTER,
 filterAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
```

```
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_FILTER,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(filterAttrValue).build());

        // Create the filter expression
        final String filterExpression = "#filterAttr = :filterValue";

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(limit)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query with filter and limit successful. Found
{0} items", response.count());
            LOGGER.log(
                Level.INFO, "ScannedCount: {0} (total items evaluated before
filtering)", response.scannedCount());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with filter and limit: {0}",
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Perform list operations

The following code example shows how to perform list operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a list attribute.
- Remove elements from a list attribute.
- Update specific elements in a list by index.
- Use list append and list index functions.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate list operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Appends items to a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add
     * items to the end of a list attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param itemsToAppend The items to append to the list
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse appendToList(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
```

```
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> itemsToAppend) {

        // Create a list value from the items to append
        AttributeValue listValue =
AttributeValue.builder().l(itemsToAppend).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attrName =
list_append(if_not_exists(#attrName, :emptyList), :newItems)")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":newItems",
                listValue,
                ":emptyList",
                AttributeValue.builder().l(new
ArrayList<AttributeValue>()).build()))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Prepends items to a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add
     * items to the beginning of a list attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param itemsToPrepend The items to prepend to the list
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse prependToList(
```

```
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        List<AttributeValue> itemsToPrepend) {

        // Create a list value from the items to prepend
        AttributeValue listValue =
AttributeValue.builder().l(itemsToPrepend).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        // Note: To prepend, we put the new items first in the list_append function
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attrName = list_append(:newItems,
if_not_exists(#attrName, :emptyList))")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":newItems",
                listValue,
                ":emptyList",
                AttributeValue.builder().l(new
ArrayList<AttributeValue>()).build()))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Updates a specific element in a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to update a specific element in a list
     * by its index.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param index The index of the element to update
     * @param newValue The new value for the element
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
```

```
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateListElement(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        int index,
        AttributeValue newValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attrName[" + index + "] = :newValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":newValue", newValue))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Removes a specific element from a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to remove a specific element from a list
     * by its index.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @param index The index of the element to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse removeListElement(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String listAttributeName,
        int index) {
```

```
        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("REMOVE #attrName[" + index + "]")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attrName", listAttributeName))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a list attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a list attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param listAttributeName The name of the list attribute
     * @return The list attribute value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static List<AttributeValue> getListAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key, String listAttributeName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(listAttributeName)
            .build();

        try {
            // Perform the get operation
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the list attribute if it exists, otherwise null
            if (response.item() != null &&
response.item().containsKey(listAttributeName)) {
```

```
                return response.item().get(listAttributeName).l();
            }

            return null;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get list attribute: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of list operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating list operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Append items to a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Appending items to a list");
            List<AttributeValue> tagsToAppend = List.of(
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Gadget").build());

            UpdateItemResponse appendResponse = appendToList(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", tagsToAppend);

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
appendResponse.attributes());

            // Example 2: Prepend items to a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Prepending items to a list");
            List<AttributeValue> tagsToPrepend = List.of(
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Featured").build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("New").build());
```

```
            UpdateItemResponse prependResponse = prependToList(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", tagsToPrepend);

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
prependResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Update a specific element in a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Updating a specific element in a
list");
            UpdateItemResponse updateResponse = updateListElement(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Tags",
                0,
                AttributeValue.builder().s("BestSeller").build());

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
updateResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Remove a specific element from a list
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Removing a specific element from a
list");
            UpdateItemResponse removeResponse = removeListElement(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated list attribute: " +
removeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Get the current value of a list attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Getting the current value of a list
attribute");
            List<AttributeValue> currentList = getListAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags");

            if (currentList != null) {
                System.out.println("Current list attribute:");
                for (int i = 0; i < currentList.size(); i++) {
                    System.out.println("  [" + i + "]: " + currentList.get(i).s());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.println("List attribute not found");
            }
```

```
            // Explain list operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB list operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Lists are ordered collections of attributes");
            System.out.println("2. Use list_append to add items to a list");
            System.out.println("3. To append items, use list_append(existingList,
newItems)");
            System.out.println("4. To prepend items, use list_append(newItems,
existingList)");
            System.out.println("5. Use index notation (list[0]) to access or update
specific elements");
            System.out.println("6. Use REMOVE to delete elements from a list");
            System.out.println("7. List indices are zero-based");
            System.out.println("8. Use if_not_exists to handle the case where the
list doesn't exist yet");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Perform map operations

The following code example shows how to perform map operations in DynamoDB.

- Add and update nested attributes in map structures.
- Remove specific fields from maps.
- Work with deeply nested map attributes.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate map operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Updates a map attribute that may not exist.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to safely update a map attribute
     * by using if_not_exists to handle the case where the map doesn't exist yet.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @param mapKey The key within the map to update
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateMapAttributeSafe(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String mapName,
        String mapKey,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Create an empty map to use if the map doesn't exist
        Map<String, AttributeValue> emptyMap = new HashMap<>();
        AttributeValue emptyMapValue = AttributeValue.builder().m(emptyMap).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #mapName = if_not_exists(#mapName, :emptyMap),
 #mapName.#mapKey = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#mapName", mapName,
                "#mapKey", mapKey))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
```

```
                ":value",
                value,
                ":emptyMap",
                AttributeValue.builder().m(new HashMap<>()).build()))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Adds an attribute to a nested map.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to update a nested attribute without
     * overwriting the entire map.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param path The path to the nested attribute as a list
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse addToNestedMap(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        List<String> path,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Create expression attribute names for each part of the path
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        for (int i = 0; i < path.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#attr" + i, path.get(i));
        }

        // Build the attribute path using the expression attribute names
        StringBuilder attributePathExpression = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < path.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                attributePathExpression.append(".");
            }
```

```
            attributePathExpression.append("#attr").append(i);
        }

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET " + attributePathExpression.toString() + "
= :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Removes an attribute from a map.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to remove a specific attribute from a map.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @param mapKey The key within the map to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse removeMapAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String mapName,
        String mapKey) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("REMOVE #mapName.#mapKey")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
```

```
                "#mapName", mapName,
                "#mapKey", mapKey))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Creates a map with multiple attributes in a single operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to create a map with multiple attributes
     * in a single update operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @param attributes The attributes to set in the map
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse createMapWithAttributes(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String mapName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> attributes) {

        // Create a map value from the attributes
        AttributeValue mapValue = AttributeValue.builder().m(attributes).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #mapName = :mapValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#mapName", mapName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":mapValue", mapValue))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
```

```
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a map attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a map attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param mapName The name of the map attribute
     * @return The map attribute value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, AttributeValue> getMapAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key, String mapName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(mapName)
            .build();

        try {
            // Perform the get operation
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the map attribute if it exists, otherwise null
            if (response.item() != null && response.item().containsKey(mapName)) {
                return response.item().get(mapName).m();
            }

            return null;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get map attribute: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of map operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
       // Example key
       Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
       key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

       System.out.println("Demonstrating map operations in DynamoDB");

       try {
           // Example 1: Create a map with multiple attributes
           System.out.println("\nExample 1: Creating a map with multiple
attributes");
           Map<String, AttributeValue> productDetails = new HashMap<>();
           productDetails.put("Color", AttributeValue.builder().s("Red").build());
           productDetails.put("Weight", AttributeValue.builder().n("2.5").build());
           productDetails.put(
               "Dimensions", AttributeValue.builder().s("10x20x5").build());

           UpdateItemResponse createResponse =
               createMapWithAttributes(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Details",
productDetails);

           System.out.println("Created map attribute: " +
createResponse.attributes());

           // Example 2: Update a specific attribute in a map
           System.out.println("\nExample 2: Updating a specific attribute in a
map");
           UpdateItemResponse updateResponse = updateMapAttributeSafe(
               dynamoDbClient,
               tableName,
               key,
               "Details",
               "Color",
               AttributeValue.builder().s("Blue").build());

           System.out.println("Updated map attribute: " +
updateResponse.attributes());
```

```
            // Example 3: Add an attribute to a nested map
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Adding an attribute to a nested map");
            UpdateItemResponse nestedResponse = addToNestedMap(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                List.of("Specifications", "Technical", "Resolution"),
                AttributeValue.builder().s("1920x1080").build());

            System.out.println("Added to nested map: " +
nestedResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Remove an attribute from a map
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Removing an attribute from a map");
            UpdateItemResponse removeResponse =
                removeMapAttribute(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Details",
"Dimensions");

            System.out.println("Updated map after removal: " +
removeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Get the current value of a map attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Getting the current value of a map
attribute");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> currentMap = getMapAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Details");

            if (currentMap != null) {
                System.out.println("Current map attribute:");
                for (Map.Entry<String, AttributeValue> entry :
currentMap.entrySet()) {
                    System.out.println("  " + entry.getKey() + ": " +
entry.getValue());
                }
            } else {
                System.out.println("Map attribute not found");
            }

            // Explain map operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB map operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Maps are unordered collections of name-value
pairs");
            System.out.println("2. Use dot notation (map.key) to access or update
specific attributes");
```

```
            System.out.println("3. You can update individual attributes without
 overwriting the entire map");
            System.out.println("4. Maps can be nested to create complex data
 structures");
            System.out.println("5. Use REMOVE to delete attributes from a map");
            System.out.println("6. You can create a map with multiple attributes in
 a single operation");
            System.out.println("7. Map keys are case-sensitive");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Perform set operations

The following code example shows how to perform set operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a set attribute.
- Remove elements from a set attribute.
- Use ADD and DELETE operations with sets.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate set operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.HashSet;
```

```
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Set;

    /**
     * Adds values to a string set attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to add values
     * to a string set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valuesToAdd The values to add to the set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse addToStringSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<String> valuesToAdd) {

        // Create a string set value from the values to add
        AttributeValue setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ss(valuesToAdd).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("ADD #setAttr :valuesToAdd")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":valuesToAdd", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Adds values to a number set attribute.
     *
```

```
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to add values
     * to a number set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valuesToAdd The values to add to the set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse addToNumberSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<Number> valuesToAdd) {

        // Convert numbers to strings for DynamoDB
        Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
        for (Number value : valuesToAdd) {
            stringValues.add(value.toString());
        }

        // Create a number set value from the values to add
        AttributeValue setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ns(stringValues).build();

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("ADD #setAttr :valuesToAdd")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":valuesToAdd", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Removes values from a set attribute.
     *
```

```
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the DELETE operation to remove values
     * from a set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valuesToRemove The values to remove from the set
     * @param isNumberSet Whether the set is a number set (true) or string set
(false)
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse removeFromSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<?> valuesToRemove,
        boolean isNumberSet) {

        AttributeValue setValue;

        if (isNumberSet) {
            // Convert numbers to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : valuesToRemove) {
                if (value instanceof Number) {
                    stringValues.add(value.toString());
                } else {
                    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Values must be numbers for a
number set");
                }
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ns(stringValues).build();
        } else {
            // Convert objects to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : valuesToRemove) {
                stringValues.add(value.toString());
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ss(stringValues).build();
```

```
        }

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("DELETE #setAttr :valuesToRemove")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":valuesToRemove", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Checks if a value exists in a set attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the contains function to check
     * if a value exists in a set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to check
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param valueToCheck The value to check for
     * @return Map containing the result of the check
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> checkIfValueInSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        String valueToCheck) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Define the update parameters with a condition expression
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
```

```
                .updateExpression("SET #tempAttr = :tempVal")
                .conditionExpression("contains(#setAttr, :valueToCheck)")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName,
"#tempAttr", "TempAttribute"))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":valueToCheck",
AttributeValue.builder().s(valueToCheck).build(),
                    ":tempVal", AttributeValue.builder().s("TempValue").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            // Attempt the update operation
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            // If we get here, the condition was met
            result.put("exists", true);
            result.put("message", "Value '" + valueToCheck + "' exists in the set");

            // Clean up the temporary attribute
            UpdateItemRequest cleanupRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("REMOVE #tempAttr")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#tempAttr", "TempAttribute"))
                .build();

            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(cleanupRequest);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            if (e.getMessage().contains("ConditionalCheckFailed")) {
                // The condition was not met
                result.put("exists", false);
                result.put("message", "Value '" + valueToCheck + "' does not exist
in the set");
            } else {
                // Some other error occurred
                result.put("exists", false);
                result.put("message", "Error checking set: " + e.getMessage());
                result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
            }
        }

        return result;
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Creates a set with multiple values in a single operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to create a set with multiple values
     * in a single update operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @param setValues The values to include in the set
     * @param isNumberSet Whether to create a number set (true) or string set
(false)
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse createSetWithValues(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String setAttributeName,
        Set<?> setValues,
        boolean isNumberSet) {

        AttributeValue setValue;

        if (isNumberSet) {
            // Convert numbers to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : setValues) {
                if (value instanceof Number) {
                    stringValues.add(value.toString());
                } else {
                    throw new IllegalArgumentException("Values must be numbers for a
number set");
                }
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ns(stringValues).build();
        } else {
            // Convert objects to strings for DynamoDB
            Set<String> stringValues = new HashSet<>();
            for (Object value : setValues) {
```

```
                stringValues.add(value.toString());
            }

            setValue = AttributeValue.builder().ss(stringValues).build();
        }

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #setAttr = :setValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#setAttr", setAttributeName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":setValue", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a set attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a set attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param setAttributeName The name of the set attribute
     * @return The set attribute value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static AttributeValue getSetAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key, String setAttributeName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(setAttributeName)
            .build();

        try {
```

```
            // Perform the get operation
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the set attribute if it exists, otherwise null
            if (response.item() != null &&
response.item().containsKey(setAttributeName)) {
                return response.item().get(setAttributeName);
            }

            return null;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get set attribute: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of set operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating set operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Create a string set with multiple values
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Creating a string set with multiple
values");
            Set<String> tags = new HashSet<>();
            tags.add("Electronics");
            tags.add("Gadget");
            tags.add("Smartphone");

            UpdateItemResponse createResponse = createSetWithValues(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Tags", tags, false // Not a number
set
                );
```

```
            System.out.println("Created set attribute: " +
createResponse.attributes());

            // Example 2: Add values to a string set
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Adding values to a string set");
            Set<String> additionalTags = new HashSet<>();
            additionalTags.add("Mobile");
            additionalTags.add("Wireless");

            UpdateItemResponse addResponse = addToStringSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", additionalTags);

            System.out.println("Updated set attribute: " +
addResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Create a number set with multiple values
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Creating a number set with multiple
values");
            Set<Number> ratings = new HashSet<>();
            ratings.add(4);
            ratings.add(5);
            ratings.add(4.5);

            UpdateItemResponse createNumberSetResponse = createSetWithValues(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Ratings", ratings, true // Is a
number set
                );

            System.out.println("Created number set attribute: " +
createNumberSetResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Add values to a number set
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Adding values to a number set");
            Set<Number> additionalRatings = new HashSet<>();
            additionalRatings.add(3.5);
            additionalRatings.add(4.2);

            UpdateItemResponse addNumberResponse =
                addToNumberSet(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Ratings",
additionalRatings);

            System.out.println("Updated number set attribute: " +
addNumberResponse.attributes());
```

```
            // Example 5: Remove values from a set
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Removing values from a set");
            Set<String> tagsToRemove = new HashSet<>();
            tagsToRemove.add("Gadget");

            UpdateItemResponse removeResponse = removeFromSet(
                dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Tags", tagsToRemove, false // Not a
number set
                );

            System.out.println("Updated set after removal: " +
removeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 6: Check if a value exists in a set
            System.out.println("\nExample 6: Checking if a value exists in a set");
            Map<String, Object> checkResult = checkIfValueInSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags", "Electronics");

            System.out.println("Check result: " + checkResult.get("message"));

            // Example 7: Get the current value of a set attribute
            System.out.println("\nExample 7: Getting the current value of a set
attribute");
            AttributeValue currentStringSet = getSetAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Tags");

            if (currentStringSet != null && currentStringSet.ss() != null) {
                System.out.println("Current string set values: " +
currentStringSet.ss());
            } else {
                System.out.println("String set attribute not found");
            }

            AttributeValue currentNumberSet = getSetAttribute(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "Ratings");

            if (currentNumberSet != null && currentNumberSet.ns() != null) {
                System.out.println("Current number set values: " +
currentNumberSet.ns());
            } else {
                System.out.println("Number set attribute not found");
            }

            // Explain set operations
```

```
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB set operations:");
            System.out.println(
                "1. DynamoDB supports three set types: string sets (SS), number sets
(NS), and binary sets (BS)");
            System.out.println("2. Sets can only contain elements of the same
type");
            System.out.println("3. Use ADD to add elements to a set");
            System.out.println("4. Use DELETE to remove elements from a set");
            System.out.println("5. Sets automatically remove duplicate values");
            System.out.println("6. Sets are unordered collections");
            System.out.println("7. Use the contains function to check if a value
exists in a set");
            System.out.println("8. You can create a set with multiple values in a
single operation");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class ScenarioPartiQLBatch {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        String tableName = "MoviesPartiQBatch";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        System.out.println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named " + tableName
            + " with a key named year and a sort key named title.");
        createTable(ddb, tableName);

        System.out.println("Adding multiple records into the " + tableName
            + " table using a batch command.");
        putRecordBatch(ddb);

        // Update multiple movies by using the BatchExecute statement.
        String title1 = "Star Wars";
        int year1 = 1977;
        String title2 = "Wizard of Oz";
        int year2 = 1939;

        System.out.println("Query two movies.");
        getBatch(ddb, tableName, title1, title2, year1, year2);

        System.out.println("Updating multiple records using a batch command.");
        updateTableItemBatch(ddb);

        System.out.println("Deleting multiple records using a batch command.");
        deleteItemBatch(ddb);

        System.out.println("Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }

    public static boolean getBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName, String
 title1, String title2, int year1, int year2) {
        String getBatch = "SELECT * FROM " + tableName + " WHERE title = ? AND year
 = ?";

        List<BatchStatementRequest> statements = new ArrayList<>();
        statements.add(BatchStatementRequest.builder()
```

```
            .statement(getBatch)
            .parameters(AttributeValue.builder().s(title1).build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(year1)).build())
            .build());
        statements.add(BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(getBatch)
            .parameters(AttributeValue.builder().s(title2).build(),
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(year2)).build())
            .build());

        BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchExecuteStatementRequest =
BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statements(statements)
            .build();

        try {
            BatchExecuteStatementResponse response =
ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchExecuteStatementRequest);
            if (!response.responses().isEmpty()) {
                response.responses().forEach(r -> {
                    System.out.println(r.item().get("title") + "\\t" +
r.item().get("year"));
                });
                return true;
            } else {
                System.out.println("Couldn't find either " + title1 + " or " +
title2 + ".");
                return false;
            }
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            return false;
        }
    }

    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());
```

```
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE) // Sort
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //  DynamoDB automatically
scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse = dbWaiter
                .waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void putRecordBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQBatch VALUE {'year':?,
 'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}";
        try {
            // Create three movies to add to the Amazon DynamoDB table.
            // Set data for Movie 1.
            List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();

            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n("1977")
                .build();

            AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("Star Wars")
                .build();

            AttributeValue att3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parameters.add(att1);
            parameters.add(att2);
            parameters.add(att3);

            BatchStatementRequest statementRequestMovie1 =
 BatchStatementRequest.builder()
                .statement(sqlStatement)
                .parameters(parameters)
                .build();

            // Set data for Movie 2.
            List<AttributeValue> parametersMovie2 = new ArrayList<>();
            AttributeValue attMovie2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n("1939")
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie2A = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("Wizard of Oz")
                .build();
```

```
            AttributeValue attMovie2B = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parametersMovie2.add(attMovie2);
            parametersMovie2.add(attMovie2A);
            parametersMovie2.add(attMovie2B);

            BatchStatementRequest statementRequestMovie2 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
                .statement(sqlStatement)
                .parameters(parametersMovie2)
                .build();

            // Set data for Movie 3.
            List<AttributeValue> parametersMovie3 = new ArrayList<>();
            AttributeValue attMovie3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie3A = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("My Movie 3")
                .build();

            AttributeValue attMovie3B = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parametersMovie3.add(attMovie3);
            parametersMovie3.add(attMovie3A);
            parametersMovie3.add(attMovie3B);

            BatchStatementRequest statementRequestMovie3 =
BatchStatementRequest.builder()
                .statement(sqlStatement)
                .parameters(parametersMovie3)
                .build();

            // Add all three movies to the list.
            List<BatchStatementRequest> myBatchStatementList = new ArrayList<>();
            myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie1);
            myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie2);
            myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie3);
```

```
            BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchRequest =
 BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                .statements(myBatchStatementList)
                .build();

            BatchExecuteStatementResponse response =
 ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
 response.toString());
            System.out.println("Added new movies using a batch command.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateTableItemBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "UPDATE MoviesPartiQBatch SET info = 'directors\":
[\"Merian C. Cooper\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack' where year=? and title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec1 = new ArrayList<>();

        // Update three records.
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 1")
            .build();

        parametersRec1.add(att1);
        parametersRec1.add(att2);

        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec1 = BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec1)
            .build();

        // Update record 2.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec2 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();
```

```
        AttributeValue attRec2a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 2")
            .build();

        parametersRec2.add(attRec2);
        parametersRec2.add(attRec2a);
        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec2 = BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec2)
            .build();

        // Update record 3.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec3 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec3 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec3a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 3")
            .build();

        parametersRec3.add(attRec3);
        parametersRec3.add(attRec3a);
        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec3 = BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec3)
            .build();

        // Add all three movies to the list.
        List<BatchStatementRequest> myBatchStatementList = new ArrayList<>();
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3);

        BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchRequest =
BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statements(myBatchStatementList)
            .build();

        try {
            BatchExecuteStatementResponse response =
ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
 response.toString());
            System.out.println("Updated three movies using a batch command.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Item was updated!");
    }

    public static void deleteItemBatch(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "DELETE FROM MoviesPartiQBatch WHERE year = ? and
 title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec1 = new ArrayList<>();

        // Specify three records to delete.
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 1")
            .build();

        parametersRec1.add(att1);
        parametersRec1.add(att2);

        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec1 = BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec1)
            .build();

        // Specify record 2.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec2 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec2a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 2")
            .build();

        parametersRec2.add(attRec2);
```

```
        parametersRec2.add(attRec2a);
        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec2 = BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec2)
            .build();

        // Specify record 3.
        List<AttributeValue> parametersRec3 = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue attRec3 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2022"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue attRec3a = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("My Movie 3")
            .build();

        parametersRec3.add(attRec3);
        parametersRec3.add(attRec3a);

        BatchStatementRequest statementRequestRec3 = BatchStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(sqlStatement)
            .parameters(parametersRec3)
            .build();

        // Add all three movies to the list.
        List<BatchStatementRequest> myBatchStatementList = new ArrayList<>();
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2);
        myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3);

        BatchExecuteStatementRequest batchRequest =
BatchExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statements(myBatchStatementList)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted three movies using a batch command.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }

    private static ExecuteStatementResponse executeStatementRequest(DynamoDbClient
 ddb, String statement,

 List<AttributeValue> parameters) {
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(statement)
            .parameters(parameters)
            .build();

        return ddb.executeStatement(request);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class ScenarioPartiQ {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        String fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json";
        String tableName = "MoviesPartiQ";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        System.out.println(
            "******* Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named MoviesPartiQ with a key
 named year and a sort key named title.");
        createTable(ddb, tableName);

        System.out.println("Loading data into the MoviesPartiQ table.");
        loadData(ddb, fileName);

        System.out.println("Getting data from the MoviesPartiQ table.");
        getItem(ddb);

        System.out.println("Putting a record into the MoviesPartiQ table.");
        putRecord(ddb);

        System.out.println("Updating a record.");
        updateTableItem(ddb);

        System.out.println("Querying the movies released in 2013.");
        queryTable(ddb);

        System.out.println("Deleting the Amazon DynamoDB table.");
        deleteDynamoDBTable(ddb, tableName);
        ddb.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void createTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {
        DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = ddb.waiter();
        ArrayList<AttributeDefinition> attributeDefinitions = new ArrayList<>();

        // Define attributes.
        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .attributeType("N")
            .build());

        attributeDefinitions.add(AttributeDefinition.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .attributeType("S")
            .build());

        ArrayList<KeySchemaElement> tableKey = new ArrayList<>();
        KeySchemaElement key = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("year")
            .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
            .build();

        KeySchemaElement key2 = KeySchemaElement.builder()
            .attributeName("title")
            .keyType(KeyType.RANGE) // Sort
            .build();

        // Add KeySchemaElement objects to the list.
        tableKey.add(key);
        tableKey.add(key2);

        CreateTableRequest request = CreateTableRequest.builder()
            .keySchema(tableKey)
            .billingMode(BillingMode.PAY_PER_REQUEST) //Scales based on traffic.
            .attributeDefinitions(attributeDefinitions)
            .tableName(tableName)
            .build();

        try {
            CreateTableResponse response = ddb.createTable(request);
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
```

```
            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            String newTable = response.tableDescription().tableName();
            System.out.println("The " + newTable + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(DynamoDbClient ddb, String fileName) throws
IOException {

        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?,
'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}";
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        while (iter.hasNext()) {

            // Add 200 movies to the table.
            if (t == 200)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String info = currentNode.path("info").toString();

            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf(year))
                .build();

            AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(title)
                .build();
```

```
            AttributeValue att3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s(info)
                .build();

            parameters.add(att1);
            parameters.add(att2);
            parameters.add(att3);

            // Insert the movie into the Amazon DynamoDB table.
            executeStatementRequest(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("Added Movie " + title);

            parameters.remove(att1);
            parameters.remove(att2);
            parameters.remove(att3);
            t++;
        }
    }

    public static void getItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year=? and title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n("2012")
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .s("The Perks of Being a Wallflower")
            .build();

        parameters.add(att1);
        parameters.add(att2);

        try {
            ExecuteStatementResponse response = executeStatementRequest(ddb,
sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
response.toString());

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void putRecord(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?,
'title' : ?, 'info' : ?}";
        try {
            List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();

            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf("2020"))
                .build();

            AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("My Movie")
                .build();

            AttributeValue att3 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .s("No Information")
                .build();

            parameters.add(att1);
            parameters.add(att2);
            parameters.add(att3);

            executeStatementRequest(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("Added new movie.");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateTableItem(DynamoDbClient ddb) {

        String sqlStatement = "UPDATE MoviesPartiQ SET info = 'directors\":[\"Merian
C. Cooper\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack' where year=? and title=?";
        List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
            .n(String.valueOf("2013"))
            .build();

        AttributeValue att2 = AttributeValue.builder()
```

```
            .s("The East")
            .build();

        parameters.add(att1);
        parameters.add(att2);

        try {
            executeStatementRequest(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Item was updated!");
    }

    // Query the table where the year is 2013.
    public static void queryTable(DynamoDbClient ddb) {
        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year = ? ORDER BY
year";
        try {

            List<AttributeValue> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
            AttributeValue att1 = AttributeValue.builder()
                .n(String.valueOf("2013"))
                .build();
            parameters.add(att1);

            // Get items in the table and write out the ID value.
            ExecuteStatementResponse response = executeStatementRequest(ddb,
sqlStatement, parameters);
            System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
response.toString());

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteDynamoDBTable(DynamoDbClient ddb, String tableName) {

        DeleteTableRequest request = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
```

```
            .build();

        try {
            ddb.deleteTable(request);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println(tableName + " was successfully deleted!");
    }

    private static ExecuteStatementResponse executeStatementRequest(DynamoDbClient
 ddb, String statement,

 List<AttributeValue> parameters) {
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .statement(statement)
            .parameters(parameters)
            .build();

        return ddb.executeStatement(request);
    }

    private static void processResults(ExecuteStatementResponse
 executeStatementResult) {
        System.out.println("ExecuteStatement successful: " +
 executeStatementResult.toString());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table using a Global Secondary Index

The following code example shows how to query a table using a Global Secondary Index.

- Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.
- Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) for alternate access patterns.
- Compare table queries and GSI queries.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key and a Global Secondary Index (GSI) with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryTable(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
```

```
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on base table successful. Found " +
response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table not found: " + tableName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying base table: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on base
table", e);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Queries a DynamoDB Global Secondary Index (GSI) by partition key.
     *
     * @param tableName         The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param indexName         The name of the GSI
     * @param partitionKeyName  The name of the GSI partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the GSI partition key to query
     * @return The query response from DynamoDB
     * @throws ResourceNotFoundException if the table or index doesn't exist
     * @throws DynamoDbException if the query fails
     */
    public QueryResponse queryGlobalSecondaryIndex(
        final String tableName, final String indexName, final String
partitionKeyName, final String partitionKeyValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Index name", indexName);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_IK,
partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_IK,
```

```
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .indexName(indexName)
            .keyConditionExpression(GSI_KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query on GSI successful. Found " + response.count()
+ " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(
                "Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" or index \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName, indexName);
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Table or index not found: " +
tableName + "/" + indexName, e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying GSI: " + e.getMessage());
            throw new DynamoDbQueryException("Failed to execute query on GSI", e);
        }
    }
```

Compare querying a table directly versus querying a GSI with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <basePartitionKeyName> <basePartitionKeyValue>
<gsiName> <gsiPartitionKeyName> <gsiPartitionKeyValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    basePartitionKeyName - The name of the base table partition key
attribute.
                    basePartitionKeyValue - The value of the base table partition
key to query.
```

```
                    gsiName - The name of the Global Secondary Index.
                    gsiPartitionKeyName - The name of the GSI partition key
attribute.
                    gsiPartitionKeyValue - The value of the GSI partition key to
query.
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String basePartitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String basePartitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String gsiName = args[3];
        final String gsiPartitionKeyName = args[4];
        final String gsiPartitionKeyValue = args[5];
        final Region region = args.length > 6 ? Region.of(args[6]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final QueryTableAndGSI queryHelper = new QueryTableAndGSI(ddb);

            // Query the base table
            System.out.println("Querying base table where " + basePartitionKeyName +
" = " + basePartitionKeyValue);
            final QueryResponse tableResponse =
                queryHelper.queryTable(tableName, basePartitionKeyName,
basePartitionKeyValue);

            System.out.println("Found " + tableResponse.count() + " items in base
table:");
            tableResponse.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Query the GSI
            System.out.println(
                "\nQuerying GSI '" + gsiName + "' where " + gsiPartitionKeyName + "
= " + gsiPartitionKeyValue);
            final QueryResponse gsiResponse =
                queryHelper.queryGlobalSecondaryIndex(tableName, gsiName,
gsiPartitionKeyName, gsiPartitionKeyValue);
```

```
            System.out.println("Found " + gsiResponse.count() + " items in GSI:");
            gsiResponse.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Explain the differences between querying a table and a GSI
            System.out.println("\nKey differences between querying a table and a
GSI:");
            System.out.println("1. When querying a GSI, you must specify the
indexName parameter");
            System.out.println("2. GSIs may not contain all attributes from the base
table (projection)");
            System.out.println("3. GSIs consume read capacity units from the GSI's
capacity, not the base table's");
            System.out.println("4. GSIs may have eventually consistent data (cannot
use ConsistentRead=true)");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table or index not found: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table using a begins_with condition

The following code example shows how to query a table using a begins_with condition.

- Use the begins_with function in a key condition expression.
- Filter items based on a prefix pattern in the sort key.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition on the sort key with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithBeginsWithCondition(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String sortKeyName,
        final String sortKeyPrefix) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Sort key name", sortKeyName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Sort key prefix", sortKeyPrefix);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_SK, sortKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_SK_PREFIX,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKeyPrefix).build());
```

```
        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query with begins_with condition successful.
Found {0} items", response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with begins_with condition",
e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrate using begins_with with different prefix lengths with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            CodeSampleUtils.BeginsWithQueryConfig config =
CodeSampleUtils.BeginsWithQueryConfig.fromArgs(args);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Querying items where {0} = {1} and {2} begins
with ''{3}'''", new Object[] {
                config.getPartitionKeyName(),
                config.getPartitionKeyValue(),
                config.getSortKeyName(),
                config.getSortKeyPrefix()
            });

            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new BeginsWithQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
```

```
                .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                .withSortKeyName(config.getSortKeyName())
                .withSortKeyPrefix(config.getSortKeyPrefix())
                .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items:", response.count());
            response.items().forEach(item -> LOGGER.info(item.toString()));

            // Demonstrate with a different prefix
            if (!config.getSortKeyPrefix().isEmpty()) {
                String shorterPrefix = config.getSortKeyPrefix()
                    .substring(0, Math.max(1, config.getSortKeyPrefix().length() /
2));
                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "\nNow querying with a shorter prefix:
''{0}'''", shorterPrefix);

                final QueryResponse response2 = new BeginsWithQueryBuilder()
                    .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                    .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
                    .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                    .withSortKeyName(config.getSortKeyName())
                    .withSortKeyPrefix(shorterPrefix)
                    .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                    .execute();

                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items with shorter prefix:",
response2.count());
                response2.items().forEach(item -> LOGGER.info(item.toString()));
            }
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Invalid input: {0}", e.getMessage());
            printUsage();
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found", e);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "DynamoDB error", e);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Unexpected error", e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table using a date range

The following code example shows how to query a table using a date range in the sort key.

- Query items within a specific date range.
- Use comparison operators on date-formatted sort keys.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table for items within a date range with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateRange(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final LocalDate startDate,
        final LocalDate endDate) {

        // Focus on query logic, assuming parameters are valid
        if (startDate == null || endDate == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Start date and end date cannot be
 null");
        }

        if (endDate.isBefore(startDate)) {
```

```
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("End date must be after start date");
        }

        // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB (using just the date part)
        final String formattedStartDate = startDate.toString();
        final String formattedEndDate = endDate.toString();

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_SK, dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_START_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedStartDate).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_END_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedEndDate).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query by date range successful. Found {0}
items", response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
```

```
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying by date range: {0}",
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to query a DynamoDB table with date range filtering.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue> <dateKeyName>
<startDate> <endDate> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    dateKeyName - The name of the date attribute to filter on.
                    startDate - The start date for the range query (YYYY-MM-DD).
                    endDate - The end date for the range query (YYYY-MM-DD).
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        try {
            // Parse command line arguments into a config object
            CodeSampleUtils.DateRangeQueryConfig config =
CodeSampleUtils.DateRangeQueryConfig.fromArgs(args);

            LOGGER.log(
                Level.INFO, "Querying items from {0} to {1}", new Object[]
{config.getStartDate(), config.getEndDate()
                });

            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new DateRangeQueryBuilder()
```

```
                .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
                .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                .withDateKeyName(config.getDateKeyName())
                .withStartDate(config.getStartDate())
                .withEndDate(config.getEndDate())
                .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items:", response.count());
            response.items().forEach(item -> {
                LOGGER.info(item.toString());

                // Extract and display the date attribute for clarity
                if (item.containsKey(config.getDateKeyName())) {
                    LOGGER.log(
                        Level.INFO,
                        "  Date attribute: {0}",
                        item.get(config.getDateKeyName()).s());
                }
            });

            // Demonstrate with a different date range
            LocalDate narrowerStartDate = config.getStartDate().plusDays(1);
            LocalDate narrowerEndDate = config.getEndDate().minusDays(1);

            if (!narrowerStartDate.isAfter(narrowerEndDate)) {
                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "\nNow querying with a narrower date range:
{0} to {1}", new Object[] {
                    narrowerStartDate, narrowerEndDate
                });

                final QueryResponse response2 = new DateRangeQueryBuilder()
                    .withTableName(config.getTableName())
                    .withPartitionKeyName(config.getPartitionKeyName())
                    .withPartitionKeyValue(config.getPartitionKeyValue())
                    .withDateKeyName(config.getDateKeyName())
                    .withStartDate(narrowerStartDate)
                    .withEndDate(narrowerEndDate)
                    .withRegion(config.getRegion())
                    .execute();
```

```
                LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Found {0} items with narrower date range:",
response2.count());
                response2.items().forEach(item -> LOGGER.info(item.toString()));
            }

            LOGGER.info("\nNote: When storing dates in DynamoDB:");
            LOGGER.info("1. Use ISO format (YYYY-MM-DD) for lexicographical
ordering");
            LOGGER.info("2. Use the BETWEEN operator for inclusive date range
queries");
            LOGGER.info("3. Consider using ISO-8601 format for timestamps with time
components");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Invalid input: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "DynamoDB error: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Unexpected error: {0}", e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table with a complex filter expression

The following code example shows how to query a table with a complex filter expression.

- Apply complex filter expressions to query results.
- Combine multiple conditions using logical operators.
- Filter items based on non-key attributes.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithComplexFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String statusAttrName,
        final String activeStatus,
        final String pendingStatus,
        final String priceAttrName,
        final double minPrice,
        final double maxPrice,
        final String categoryAttrName) {

        // Validate parameters
        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Status attribute name",
 statusAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Active status", activeStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Pending status", pendingStatus);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Price attribute name",
 priceAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Category attribute name",
 categoryAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Minimum price", minPrice, 0.0,
 Double.MAX_VALUE);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateNumericRange("Maximum price", maxPrice, minPrice,
 Double.MAX_VALUE);
```

```
        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pk", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_STATUS,
statusAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PRICE,
priceAttrName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_CATEGORY,
categoryAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":pkValue", AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_ACTIVE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(activeStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PENDING,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(pendingStatus).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MIN_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(minPrice)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_MAX_PRICE,
            AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(maxPrice)).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(FILTER_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        return dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table with a dynamic filter expression

The following code example shows how to query a table with a dynamic filter expression.

- Build filter expressions dynamically at runtime.
- Construct filter conditions based on user input or application state.
- Add or remove filter criteria conditionally.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public static QueryResponse queryWithDynamicFilter(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final Map<String, Object> filterCriteria,
        final Region region,
        final DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient) {

        validateParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
 filterCriteria);

        DynamoDbClient ddbClient = dynamoDbClient;
        boolean shouldClose = false;

        try {
            if (ddbClient == null) {
                ddbClient = createClient(region);
                shouldClose = true;
```

```
            }

            final QueryWithDynamicFilter queryHelper = new
QueryWithDynamicFilter(ddbClient);
            return queryHelper.queryWithDynamicFilter(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue, filterCriteria);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to execute dynamic filter query: " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error during query: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        } finally {
            if (shouldClose && ddbClient != null) {
                ddbClient.close();
            }
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to use dynamic filter expressions with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue>
<filterAttrName> <filterAttrValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    filterAttrName - The name of the attribute to filter on.
                    filterAttrValue - The value to filter by.
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 5) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String filterAttrName = args[3];
        final String filterAttrValue = args[4];
        final Region region = args.length > 5 ? Region.of(args[5]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items with dynamic filter: " + filterAttrName +
" = " + filterAttrValue);

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriterion(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("Found " + response.count() + " items:");
            response.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

            // Demonstrate multiple filter criteria
            System.out.println("\nNow querying with multiple filter criteria:");

            Map<String, Object> multipleFilters = new HashMap<>();
            multipleFilters.put(filterAttrName, filterAttrValue);
            multipleFilters.put("status", "active");

            final QueryResponse multiFilterResponse = new
DynamicFilterQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withFilterCriteria(multipleFilters)
                .withRegion(region)
                .execute();
```

```
            System.out.println("Found " + multiFilterResponse.count() + " items with
 multiple filters:");
            multiFilterResponse.items().forEach(item -> System.out.println(item));

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table with a filter expression and limit

The following code example shows how to query a table with a filter expression and limit.

- Apply filter expressions to query results with a limit on items evaluated.
- Understand how limit affects filtered query results.
- Control the maximum number of items processed in a query.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithFilterAndLimit(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String filterAttrName,
        final String filterAttrValue,
        final int limit) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute name",
 filterAttrName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Filter attribute value",
 filterAttrValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Limit", limit);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_FILTER,
 filterAttrName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_FILTER,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(filterAttrValue).build());

        // Create the filter expression
        final String filterExpression = "#filterAttr = :filterValue";

        // Create the query request
```

```
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(limit)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query with filter and limit successful. Found
{0} items", response.count());
            LOGGER.log(
                Level.INFO, "ScannedCount: {0} (total items evaluated before
filtering)", response.scannedCount());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with filter and limit: {0}",
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table with nested attributes

The following code example shows how to query a table with nested attributes.

- Access and filter by nested attributes in DynamoDB items.
- Use document path expressions to reference nested elements.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithNestedAttributes(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String nestedPath,
        final String nestedAttr,
        final String nestedValue) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Nested path", nestedPath);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Nested attribute", nestedAttr);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Nested value", nestedValue);

        // Split the nested path into components
        final String[] pathComponents = nestedPath.split("\\.");

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Build the nested attribute reference using document path notation
        final StringBuilder nestedAttributeRef = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < pathComponents.length; i++) {
            final String aliasName = "#n" + i;
            expressionAttributeNames.put(aliasName, pathComponents[i]);

            if (i > 0) {
                nestedAttributeRef.append(".");
            }
            nestedAttributeRef.append(aliasName);
        }
```

```
        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_NESTED,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(nestedValue).build());

        // Create the filter expression using the nested attribute reference
        final String filterExpression = nestedAttributeRef + " = :nestedValue";

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query with nested attribute filter successful. Found
" + response.count() + " items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with nested attribute filter: " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
```

```
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue> <nestedPath>
<nestedAttr> <nestedValue> [region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    nestedPath - The path to the nested map attribute (e.g.,
"address").
                    nestedAttr - The name of the nested attribute (e.g., "city").
                    nestedValue - The value to filter by (e.g., "Seattle").
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final String nestedPath = args[3];
        final String nestedAttr = args[4];
        final String nestedValue = args[5];
        final Region region = args.length > 6 ? Region.of(args[6]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items where " + partitionKeyName + " = " +
partitionKeyValue + " and " + nestedPath
            + "." + nestedAttr + " = " + nestedValue);

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final QueryResponse response = new NestedAttributeQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withNestedPath(nestedPath)
                .withNestedAttribute(nestedAttr)
                .withNestedValue(nestedValue)
                .withRegion(region)
```

```
                .execute();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("Found " + response.count() + " items:");
            response.items().forEach(item -> {
                System.out.println(item);

                // Extract and display the nested attribute for clarity
                if (item.containsKey(nestedPath) && item.get(nestedPath).hasM()) {
                    Map<String, AttributeValue> nestedMap =
item.get(nestedPath).m();
                    if (nestedMap.containsKey(nestedAttr)) {
                        System.out.println("  Nested attribute " + nestedPath + "."
+ nestedAttr + ": "
                            + formatAttributeValue(nestedMap.get(nestedAttr)));
                    }
                }
            });

            System.out.println("\nNote: When working with nested attributes in
DynamoDB:");
            System.out.println("1. Use dot notation in filter expressions to access
nested attributes");
            System.out.println("2. Use expression attribute names for each component
of the path");
            System.out.println("3. Check if the nested attribute exists before
accessing it");

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table with pagination

The following code example shows how to query a table with pagination.

- Implement pagination for DynamoDB query results.
- Use the LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve subsequent pages.
- Control the number of items per page with the Limit parameter.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    public List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> queryWithPagination(
        final String tableName, final String partitionKeyName, final String
 partitionKeyValue, final int pageSize) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validatePositiveInteger("Page size", pageSize);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
```

```
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

        // Create the query request
        QueryRequest.Builder queryRequestBuilder = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .limit(pageSize);

        // List to store all items from all pages
        final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> allItems = new ArrayList<>();

        // Map to store the last evaluated key for pagination
        Map<String, AttributeValue> lastEvaluatedKey = null;
        int pageNumber = 1;

        try {
            do {
                // If we have a last evaluated key, use it for the next page
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null) {
                    queryRequestBuilder.exclusiveStartKey(lastEvaluatedKey);
                }

                // Execute the query
                final QueryResponse response =
dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequestBuilder.build());

                // Process the current page of results
                final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> pageItems =
response.items();
                allItems.addAll(pageItems);

                // Get the last evaluated key for the next page
                lastEvaluatedKey = response.lastEvaluatedKey();
                if (lastEvaluatedKey != null && lastEvaluatedKey.isEmpty()) {
                    lastEvaluatedKey = null;
                }
```

```
                System.out.println("Page " + pageNumber + ": Retrieved " +
pageItems.size() + " items (Running total: "
                    + allItems.size() + ")");

                pageNumber++;

            } while (lastEvaluatedKey != null);

            System.out.println("Query with pagination complete. Retrieved a total of
" + allItems.size()
                + " items across " + (pageNumber - 1) + " pages");

            return allItems;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with pagination: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Demonstrates how to query a DynamoDB table with pagination.

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <tableName> <partitionKeyName> <partitionKeyValue> [pageSize]
[region]
                Where:
                    tableName - The Amazon DynamoDB table to query.
                    partitionKeyName - The name of the partition key attribute.
                    partitionKeyValue - The value of the partition key to query.
                    pageSize (optional) - The maximum number of items to return per
page. (Default: 10)
                    region (optional) - The AWS region where the table exists.
(Default: us-east-1)
                """;

        if (args.length < 3) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String tableName = args[0];
        final String partitionKeyName = args[1];
        final String partitionKeyValue = args[2];
        final int pageSize = args.length > 3 ? Integer.parseInt(args[3]) : 10;
        final Region region = args.length > 4 ? Region.of(args[4]) :
Region.US_EAST_1;

        System.out.println("Querying items with pagination (page size: " + pageSize
+ ")");

        try {
            // Using the builder pattern to create and execute the query
            final List<Map<String, AttributeValue>> allItems = new
PaginationQueryBuilder()
                .withTableName(tableName)
                .withPartitionKeyName(partitionKeyName)
                .withPartitionKeyValue(partitionKeyValue)
                .withPageSize(pageSize)
                .withRegion(region)
                .executeWithPagination();

            // Process the results
            System.out.println("\nSummary: Retrieved a total of " + allItems.size()
+ " items");

            // Display the first few items as a sample
            final int sampleSize = Math.min(5, allItems.size());
            if (sampleSize > 0) {
                System.out.println("\nSample of retrieved items (first " +
sampleSize + "):");
                for (int i = 0; i < sampleSize; i++) {
                    System.out.println(allItems.get(i));
                }

                if (allItems.size() > sampleSize) {
                    System.out.println("... and " + (allItems.size() - sampleSize) +
" more items");
                }
            }
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("Invalid input: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Table not found: " + tableName);
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("DynamoDB error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query a table with strongly consistent reads

The following code example shows how to query a table with strongly consistent reads.

- Configure the consistency level for DynamoDB queries.
- Use strongly consistent reads to get the most up-to-date data.
- Understand the tradeoffs between eventual consistency and strong consistency.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query a DynamoDB table with configurable read consistency using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;
```

```
   public QueryResponse queryWithConsistentReads(
       final String tableName,
       final String partitionKeyName,
       final String partitionKeyValue,
       final boolean useConsistentRead) {

       CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
partitionKeyValue);

       // Create expression attribute names for the column names
       final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
       expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);

       // Create expression attribute values for the column values
       final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
       expressionAttributeValues.put(
           EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
           AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());

       // Create the query request
       final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
           .tableName(tableName)
           .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
           .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
           .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
           .consistentRead(useConsistentRead)
           .build();

       try {
           final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
           LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query successful. Found {0} items",
response.count());
           return response;
       } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
           LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
           throw e;
       } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
           LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying with consistent reads", e);
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query for TTL items

The following code example shows how to query for TTL items.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query Filtered Expression to gather TTL items in a DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;

        final QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .filterExpression(FILTER_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try (DynamoDbClient ddb = dynamoDbClient != null
            ? dynamoDbClient
            : DynamoDbClient.builder().region(region).build()) {
            final QueryResponse response = ddb.query(request);
            System.out.println("Query successful. Found " + response.count() + "
 items that have not expired yet.");

            // Print each item
            response.items().forEach(item -> {
                System.out.println("Item: " + item);
            });
```

```
            return 0;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Query tables using date and time patterns

The following code example shows how to query tables using date and time patterns.

- Store and query date/time values in DynamoDB.
- Implement date range queries using sort keys.
- Format date strings for effective querying.

SDK for Java 2.x

Query using date ranges in sort keys with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.logging.Level;
import java.util.logging.Logger;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateRange(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
```

```
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final LocalDate startDate,
        final LocalDate endDate) {

        // Focus on query logic, assuming parameters are valid
        if (startDate == null || endDate == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Start date and end date cannot be
null");
        }

        if (endDate.isBefore(startDate)) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("End date must be after start date");
        }

        // Format dates as ISO strings for DynamoDB (using just the date part)
        final String formattedStartDate = startDate.toString();
        final String formattedEndDate = endDate.toString();

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_SK, dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_START_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedStartDate).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_END_DATE,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(formattedEndDate).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
```

```
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            LOGGER.log(Level.INFO, "Query by date range successful. Found {0}
 items", response.count());
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Table not found: {0}", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            LOGGER.log(Level.SEVERE, "Error querying by date range: {0}",
 e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query using date-time variables with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateTime(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final String startDate,
        final String endDate) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
```

```
        CodeSampleUtils.validateDateRangeParameters(dateKeyName, startDate,
endDate);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateDateFormat("Start date", startDate);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateDateFormat("End date", endDate);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#dateKey", dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":startDate", AttributeValue.builder().s(startDate).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":endDate", AttributeValue.builder().s(endDate).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query successful. Found " + response.count() + "
items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with date range: " + e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query within date ranges in Unix epoch timestamps with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateTimeEpoch(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final long startEpoch,
        final long endEpoch) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Date key name", dateKeyName);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateEpochTimestamp("Start epoch", startEpoch);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateEpochTimestamp("End epoch", endEpoch);

        // Create expression attribute names for the column names
        final Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put(EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_NAME_PK,
 partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#dateKey", dateKeyName);

        // Create expression attribute values for the column values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
 HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            EXPRESSION_ATTRIBUTE_VALUE_PK,
            AttributeValue.builder().s(partitionKeyValue).build());
```

```
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":startDate",
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(startEpoch)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":endDate",
AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(endEpoch)).build());

        // Create the query request
        final QueryRequest queryRequest = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression(KEY_CONDITION_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final QueryResponse response = dynamoDbClient.query(queryRequest);
            System.out.println("Query successful. Found " + response.count() + "
items");
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format("Error: The Amazon DynamoDB table \"%s\" can't be
found.\n", tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error querying with epoch timestamps: " +
e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Query within date ranges using LocalDateTime objects with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
```

```
import java.time.ZoneOffset;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    public QueryResponse queryWithDateTimeLocalDateTime(
        final String tableName,
        final String partitionKeyName,
        final String partitionKeyValue,
        final String dateKeyName,
        final LocalDateTime startDateTime,
        final LocalDateTime endDateTime) {

        CodeSampleUtils.validateTableParameters(tableName, partitionKeyName,
 partitionKeyValue);
        CodeSampleUtils.validateStringParameter("Date key name", dateKeyName);
        if (startDateTime == null || endDateTime == null) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Start and end LocalDateTime must not
 be null");
        }

        // Convert LocalDateTime to ISO-8601 strings in UTC with the correct format
        final String startDate =
 startDateTime.atZone(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DATE_TIME_FORMATTER);
        final String endDate =
 endDateTime.atZone(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DATE_TIME_FORMATTER);

        return queryWithDateTime(tableName, partitionKeyName, partitionKeyValue,
 dateKeyName, startDate, endDate);
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Understand update expression order

The following code example shows how to understand update expression order.

- Learn how DynamoDB processes update expressions.
- Understand the order of operations in update expressions.
- Avoid unexpected results by understanding expression evaluation.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate update expression order using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Demonstrates the effect of update expression order.
     *
     * <p>This method shows how the order of operations in an update expression
     * affects the result of the update.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @return Map containing the results of different update orders
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> demonstrateUpdateOrder(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
 key) {

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Initialize the item with a counter
            UpdateItemRequest initRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = :zero, OldCounter = :zero")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":zero", AttributeValue.builder().n("0").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();
```

```
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 1: SET first, then ADD
            UpdateItemRequest setFirstRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = :value ADD OldCounter :increment")
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":value", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build(),
                    ":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("5").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse setFirstResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(setFirstRequest);
            results.put("setFirstResponse", setFirstResponse);

            // Reset the item
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 2: ADD first, then SET
            UpdateItemRequest addFirstRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("ADD Counter :increment SET OldCounter = :value")
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":value", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build(),
                    ":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("5").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse addFirstResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(addFirstRequest);
            results.put("addFirstResponse", addFirstResponse);

            // Reset the item
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 3: SET with multiple attributes
            UpdateItemRequest multiSetRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = :value, OldCounter = Counter")
```

```
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":value", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse multiSetResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(multiSetRequest);
            results.put("multiSetResponse", multiSetResponse);

            // Reset the item
            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);

            // Example 4: SET with expression using the same attribute
            UpdateItemRequest selfReferenceRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET Counter = Counter + :increment, OldCounter =
Counter")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("5").build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse selfReferenceResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(selfReferenceRequest);
            results.put("selfReferenceResponse", selfReferenceResponse);

            results.put("success", true);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            results.put("success", false);
            results.put("error", e.getMessage());
        }

        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Updates an item with SET first, then REMOVE.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates updating an item with SET operation first,
     * followed by a REMOVE operation.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
```

```
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param attributeToSet The attribute to set
     * @param setValue The value to set
     * @param attributeToRemove The attribute to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateWithSetFirst(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String attributeToSet,
        AttributeValue setValue,
        String attributeToRemove) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #setAttr = :setValue REMOVE #removeAttr")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#setAttr", attributeToSet,
                "#removeAttr", attributeToRemove))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":setValue", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        try {
            return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to update item with SET first: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates an item with REMOVE first, then SET.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates updating an item with REMOVE operation first,
     * followed by a SET operation.
```

```
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param attributeToSet The attribute to set
     * @param setValue The value to set
     * @param attributeToRemove The attribute to remove
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateWithRemoveFirst(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String attributeToSet,
        AttributeValue setValue,
        String attributeToRemove) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("REMOVE #removeAttr SET #setAttr = :setValue")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#setAttr", attributeToSet,
                "#removeAttr", attributeToRemove))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":setValue", setValue))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        try {
            return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to update item with REMOVE first: " +
e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates an item with all operation types in a specific order.
```

```
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates using all operation types (SET, REMOVE, ADD,
DELETE)
     * in a specific order in a single update expression.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateWithAllOperationTypes(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #stringAttr = :stringVal, #mapAttr.#nestedAttr
= :nestedVal " + "REMOVE #oldAttr "
                + "ADD #counterAttr :increment "
                + "DELETE #stringSetAttr :stringSetVal")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                "#stringAttr", "StringAttribute",
                "#mapAttr", "MapAttribute",
                "#nestedAttr", "NestedAttribute",
                "#oldAttr", "OldAttribute",
                "#counterAttr", "CounterAttribute",
                "#stringSetAttr", "StringSetAttribute"))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":stringVal", AttributeValue.builder().s("New Value").build(),
                ":nestedVal", AttributeValue.builder().s("Nested Value").build(),
                ":increment", AttributeValue.builder().n("1").build(),
                ":stringSetVal", AttributeValue.builder().ss("Value1").build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        try {
            return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
```

```
                .message("Failed to update item with all operation types: " +
e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current state of an item.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current state of an item.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @return The item or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Map<String, AttributeValue> getItem(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request =
            GetItemRequest.builder().tableName(tableName).key(key).build();

        // Perform the get operation
        try {
            GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

            // Return the item if it exists, otherwise null
            return response.item();
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            throw DynamoDbException.builder()
                .message("Failed to get item: " + e.getMessage())
                .cause(e)
                .build();
        }
    }
```

Example usage of update expression order with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
       // Example key
       Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
       key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

       System.out.println("Demonstrating update expression order in DynamoDB");

       try {
           // Example 1: Demonstrate update order effects
           System.out.println("\nExample 1: Demonstrating update order effects");
           Map<String, Object> orderResults =
demonstrateUpdateOrder(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key);

           if ((boolean) orderResults.get("success")) {
               System.out.println("SET first, then ADD:");
               System.out.println("  " + orderResults.get("setFirstResponse"));

               System.out.println("ADD first, then SET:");
               System.out.println("  " + orderResults.get("addFirstResponse"));

               System.out.println("SET with multiple attributes:");
               System.out.println("  " + orderResults.get("multiSetResponse"));

               System.out.println("SET with self-reference:");
               System.out.println("  " +
orderResults.get("selfReferenceResponse"));
           } else {
               System.out.println("Error: " + orderResults.get("error"));
           }

           // Example 2: Update with SET first, then REMOVE
           System.out.println("\nExample 2: Update with SET first, then REMOVE");
           UpdateItemResponse setFirstResponse = updateWithSetFirst(
               dynamoDbClient,
               tableName,
               key,
               "Status",
               AttributeValue.builder().s("Active").build(),
               "OldStatus");

           System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
setFirstResponse.attributes());
```

```
            // Example 3: Update with REMOVE first, then SET
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Update with REMOVE first, then SET");
            UpdateItemResponse removeFirstResponse = updateWithRemoveFirst(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Inactive").build(),
                "OldStatus");

            System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
removeFirstResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Update with all operation types
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Update with all operation types");
            UpdateItemResponse allOpsResponse =
updateWithAllOperationTypes(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key);

            System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
allOpsResponse.attributes());

            // Example 5: Get the current state of the item
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Current state of the item");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> item = getItem(dynamoDbClient, tableName,
key);

            if (item != null) {
                System.out.println("Item: " + item);
            } else {
                System.out.println("Item not found");
            }

            // Explain update expression order
            System.out.println("\nKey points about update expression order in
DynamoDB:");
            System.out.println("1. Update expressions are processed in this order:
SET, REMOVE, ADD, DELETE");
            System.out.println("2. Within each clause, operations are processed from
left to right");
            System.out.println("3. SET operations use the item state before any
updates in the expression");
            System.out.println("4. When an attribute is referenced multiple times,
the first operation wins");
```

```
            System.out.println("5. To reference a new value, split the update into
 multiple operations");
            System.out.println("6. The order of clauses in the expression doesn't
 change the evaluation order");
            System.out.println("7. For complex updates, consider using multiple
 separate update operations");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update a table's warm throughput setting

The following code example shows how to update a table's warm throughput setting.

SDK for Java 2.x

Update warm throughput setting on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdate;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateGlobalSecondaryIndexAction;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateTableRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.WarmThroughput;

    public static WarmThroughput buildWarmThroughput(final Long readUnitsPerSecond,
 final Long writeUnitsPerSecond) {
        return WarmThroughput.builder()
            .readUnitsPerSecond(readUnitsPerSecond)
            .writeUnitsPerSecond(writeUnitsPerSecond)
            .build();
    }

    /**
     * Updates a DynamoDB table with warm throughput settings for both the table and
 a global secondary index.
```

```
    *
    * @param ddb The DynamoDB client
    * @param tableName The name of the table to update
    * @param tableReadUnitsPerSecond Read units per second for the table
    * @param tableWriteUnitsPerSecond Write units per second for the table
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexName The name of the global secondary index to
update
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexReadUnitsPerSecond Read units per second for the
GSI
    * @param globalSecondaryIndexWriteUnitsPerSecond Write units per second for the
GSI
    */
   public static void updateDynamoDBTable(
       final DynamoDbClient ddb,
       final String tableName,
       final Long tableReadUnitsPerSecond,
       final Long tableWriteUnitsPerSecond,
       final String globalSecondaryIndexName,
       final Long globalSecondaryIndexReadUnitsPerSecond,
       final Long globalSecondaryIndexWriteUnitsPerSecond) {

       final WarmThroughput tableWarmThroughput =
           buildWarmThroughput(tableReadUnitsPerSecond, tableWriteUnitsPerSecond);
       final WarmThroughput gsiWarmThroughput =
           buildWarmThroughput(globalSecondaryIndexReadUnitsPerSecond,
globalSecondaryIndexWriteUnitsPerSecond);

       final GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdate globalSecondaryIndexUpdate =
GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdate.builder()
           .update(UpdateGlobalSecondaryIndexAction.builder()
               .indexName(globalSecondaryIndexName)
               .warmThroughput(gsiWarmThroughput)
               .build())
           .build();

       final UpdateTableRequest request = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
           .tableName(tableName)
           .globalSecondaryIndexUpdates(globalSecondaryIndexUpdate)
           .warmThroughput(tableWarmThroughput)
           .build();

       try {
           ddb.updateTable(request);
       } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }

        System.out.println(SUCCESS_MESSAGE);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update an item's TTL

The following code example shows how to update an item's TTL.

SDK for Java 2.x

Update TTL on an existing DynamoDB item in a table.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Optional;

    public UpdateItemResponse updateItemWithTTL(
        final String tableName, final String primaryKeyValue, final String
 sortKeyValue) {
        // Get current time in epoch second format
        final long currentTime = System.currentTimeMillis() / 1000;

        // Calculate expiration time 90 days from now in epoch second format
        final long expireDate = currentTime + (DAYS_TO_EXPIRE * SECONDS_PER_DAY);

        // Create the key map for the item to update
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> keyMap = new HashMap<>();
        keyMap.put(PRIMARY_KEY_ATTR,
 AttributeValue.builder().s(primaryKeyValue).build());
```

```
        keyMap.put(SORT_KEY_ATTR, AttributeValue.builder().s(sortKeyValue).build());

        // Create the expression attribute values
        final Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new
HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":c", AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(currentTime)).build());
        expressionAttributeValues.put(
            ":e", AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(expireDate)).build());

        final UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(keyMap)
            .updateExpression(UPDATE_EXPRESSION)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        try {
            final UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
            System.out.println(String.format(SUCCESS_MESSAGE, tableName));
            return response;
        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.format(TABLE_NOT_FOUND_ERROR, tableName);
            throw e;
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example

demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Use atomic counter operations

The following code example shows how to use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB.

- Increment counters atomically using ADD and SET operations.
- Safely increment counters that might not exist.
- Implement optimistic locking for counter operations.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate atomic counter operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Increments a counter using the ADD operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to atomically
     * increment a counter attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param incrementValue The value to increment by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse incrementCounterWithAdd(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int incrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
```

```
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("ADD #counterName :increment")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":increment",
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(incrementValue)).build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Increments a counter using the SET operation.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use the SET operation with an expression
     * to increment a counter attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param incrementValue The value to increment by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse incrementCounterWithSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int incrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #counterName = #counterName + :increment")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":increment",
```

```
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(incrementValue)).build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Increments a counter safely, handling the case where the counter doesn't
exist yet.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to safely increment a
counter
     * that may not exist yet.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param incrementValue The value to increment by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse incrementCounterSafely(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int incrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #counterName = if_not_exists(#counterName, :zero)
+ :increment")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":increment",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(incrementValue)).build(),
                ":zero", AttributeValue.builder().n("0").build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
```

```
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Decrements a counter safely, ensuring it doesn't go below zero.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use a condition expression to safely
     * decrement a counter without going below zero.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @param decrementValue The value to decrement by
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation or if the
counter would go below zero
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse decrementCounterSafely(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String counterName,
        int decrementValue) {

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #counterName = #counterName - :decrement")
            .conditionExpression("#counterName >= :decrement")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#counterName", counterName))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                ":decrement",
                AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(decrementValue)).build()))
            .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Compares the ADD and SET approaches for incrementing counters.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates the differences between using ADD and SET
     * for incrementing counters in DynamoDB.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @return Map containing the comparison results
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> compareAddVsSet(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key) {

        Map<String, Object> results = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Reset counters to ensure a fair comparison
            UpdateItemRequest resetRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET AddCounter = :zero, SetCounter = :zero")
                .expressionAttributeValues(
                    Map.of(":zero", AttributeValue.builder().n("0").build()))
                .build();

            dynamoDbClient.updateItem(resetRequest);

            // Increment with ADD
            long addStartTime = System.nanoTime();
            UpdateItemResponse addResponse = incrementCounterWithAdd(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "AddCounter", 1);
            long addEndTime = System.nanoTime();
            long addDuration = addEndTime - addStartTime;

            // Increment with SET
            long setStartTime = System.nanoTime();
            UpdateItemResponse setResponse = incrementCounterWithSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "SetCounter", 1);
            long setEndTime = System.nanoTime();
            long setDuration = setEndTime - setStartTime;
```

```
            // Record results
            results.put("addResponse", addResponse);
            results.put("setResponse", setResponse);
            results.put("addDuration", addDuration);
            results.put("setDuration", setDuration);
            results.put("success", true);

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            results.put("success", false);
            results.put("error", e.getMessage());
        }

        return results;
    }

    /**
     * Gets the current value of a counter attribute.
     *
     * <p>Helper method to retrieve the current value of a counter attribute.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to get
     * @param counterName The name of the counter attribute
     * @return The counter value or null if not found
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static Integer getCounterValue(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
key, String counterName) {

        // Define the get parameters
        GetItemRequest request = GetItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .projectionExpression(counterName)
            .build();

        // Perform the get operation
        GetItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.getItem(request);

        // Return the counter value if it exists, otherwise null
        if (response.item() != null && response.item().containsKey(counterName)) {
            return Integer.parseInt(response.item().get(counterName).n());
```

```
        }

        return null;
    }
```

Example usage of atomic counter operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating atomic counter operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Increment a counter using ADD
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Incrementing a counter using ADD");
            UpdateItemResponse addResponse = incrementCounterWithAdd(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "ViewCount", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated counter: " + addResponse.attributes());

            // Example 2: Increment a counter using SET
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Incrementing a counter using SET");
            UpdateItemResponse setResponse = incrementCounterWithSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "LikeCount", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated counter: " + setResponse.attributes());

            // Example 3: Increment a counter safely
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Incrementing a counter safely");
            UpdateItemResponse safeResponse = incrementCounterSafely(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key, "ShareCount", 1);

            System.out.println("Updated counter: " + safeResponse.attributes());

            // Example 4: Decrement a counter safely
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Decrementing a counter safely");
            try {
                UpdateItemResponse decrementResponse =
```

```
                    decrementCounterSafely(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key,
"InventoryCount", 1);

                System.out.println("Updated counter: " +
decrementResponse.attributes());
            } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
                if (e.getMessage().contains("ConditionalCheckFailed")) {
                    System.out.println("Cannot decrement counter below zero");
                } else {
                    throw e;
                }
            }

            // Example 5: Compare ADD vs SET
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Comparing ADD vs SET");
            Map<String, Object> comparison = compareAddVsSet(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, key);

            if ((boolean) comparison.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("ADD duration: " + comparison.get("addDuration")
+ " ns");
                System.out.println("SET duration: " + comparison.get("setDuration")
+ " ns");
                System.out.println("ADD response: " +
comparison.get("addResponse"));
                System.out.println("SET response: " +
comparison.get("setResponse"));
            } else {
                System.out.println("Comparison failed: " + comparison.get("error"));
            }

            // Explain atomic counter operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB atomic counter
operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Both ADD and SET can be used for atomic
counters");
            System.out.println("2. ADD is more concise for simple increments");
            System.out.println("3. SET with an expression is more flexible for
complex operations");
            System.out.println("4. Use if_not_exists to handle the case where the
counter doesn't exist yet");
            System.out.println("5. Use condition expressions to prevent counters
from going below zero");
```

```
            System.out.println("6. Atomic operations are guaranteed to be isolated
from other writes");
            System.out.println("7. ADD can only be used with number and set data
types");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Use conditional operations

The following code example shows how to use conditional operations in DynamoDB.

- Implement conditional writes to prevent overwriting data.
- Use condition expressions to enforce business rules.
- Handle conditional check failures gracefully.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate conditional operations using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ConditionalCheckFailedException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DeleteItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.GetItemResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ReturnValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
```

```
    /**
     * Performs a conditional update on an item.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use a condition expression to update an
item
     * only if a specific condition is met.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param conditionAttribute The attribute to check in the condition
     * @param conditionValue The value to compare against
     * @param updateAttribute The attribute to update
     * @param updateValue The new value to set
     * @return Map containing the operation result and status
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> conditionalUpdate(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String conditionAttribute,
        AttributeValue conditionValue,
        String updateAttribute,
        AttributeValue updateValue) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Define the update parameters
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #updateAttr = :updateVal")
                .conditionExpression("#condAttr = :condVal")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of(
                    "#condAttr", conditionAttribute,
                    "#updateAttr", updateAttribute))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":condVal", conditionValue,
                    ":updateVal", updateValue))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();
```

```
            // Perform the update operation
            UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            // Record success result
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "Condition was met and update was performed");
            result.put("attributes", response.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to condition not being met
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Condition was not met, update was not
performed");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Performs a conditional delete on an item.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use a condition expression to delete an
item
     * only if a specific condition is met.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to delete
     * @param conditionAttribute The attribute to check in the condition
     * @param conditionValue The value to compare against
     * @return Map containing the operation result and status
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> conditionalDelete(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String conditionAttribute,
```

```
        AttributeValue conditionValue) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Define the delete parameters
            DeleteItemRequest request = DeleteItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .conditionExpression("#condAttr = :condVal")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#condAttr", conditionAttribute))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":condVal", conditionValue))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.ALL_OLD)
                .build();

            // Perform the delete operation
            DeleteItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.deleteItem(request);

            // Record success result
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "Condition was met and delete was performed");
            result.put("attributes", response.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to condition not being met
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Condition was not met, delete was not
performed");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Demonstrates optimistic locking using a version attribute.
     *
     * <p>This method shows how to implement optimistic locking by using a version
```

```
     * attribute that is incremented with each update.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param versionAttribute The name of the version attribute
     * @return Map containing the operation result
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> optimisticLockingExample(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
 key, String versionAttribute) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();

        try {
            // Get the current version of the item
            GetItemRequest getRequest = GetItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .projectionExpression(versionAttribute)
                .build();

            GetItemResponse getResponse = dynamoDbClient.getItem(getRequest);

            // Check if the item exists
            if (getResponse.item() == null || !
getResponse.item().containsKey(versionAttribute)) {
                // Item doesn't exist or doesn't have a version attribute
                // Initialize with version 1
                UpdateItemRequest initRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .key(key)
                    .updateExpression("SET #verAttr = :newVer, #dataAttr = :data")
                    .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#verAttr", versionAttribute,
 "#dataAttr", "Data"))
                    .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                        ":newVer", AttributeValue.builder().n("1").build(),
                        ":data", AttributeValue.builder().s("Initial
 data").build()))
                    .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                    .build();

                UpdateItemResponse initResponse =
 dynamoDbClient.updateItem(initRequest);
```

```
                result.put("operation", "initialize");
                result.put("success", true);
                result.put("attributes", initResponse.attributes());

                return result;
            }

            // Get the current version number
            int currentVersion =
                Integer.parseInt(getResponse.item().get(versionAttribute).n());
            int newVersion = currentVersion + 1;

            // Update the item with a condition on the version
            UpdateItemRequest updateRequest = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #verAttr = :newVer, #dataAttr = :newData")
                .conditionExpression("#verAttr = :curVer")
                .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#verAttr", versionAttribute,
"#dataAttr", "Data"))
                .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(
                    ":curVer",
                        AttributeValue.builder()
                            .n(String.valueOf(currentVersion))
                            .build(),
                    ":newVer",

AttributeValue.builder().n(String.valueOf(newVersion)).build(),
                    ":newData",
                        AttributeValue.builder()
                            .s("Updated data at version " + newVersion)
                            .build()))
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();

            UpdateItemResponse updateResponse =
dynamoDbClient.updateItem(updateRequest);

            // Record success result
            result.put("operation", "update");
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("oldVersion", currentVersion);
            result.put("newVersion", newVersion);
```

```
            result.put("attributes", updateResponse.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to version mismatch
            result.put("operation", "update");
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Version mismatch, another process may have
updated the item");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("operation", "update");
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Performs a conditional update with multiple conditions.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use multiple conditions in a condition
expression.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param conditions Map of attribute names to values for conditions
     * @param updateAttribute The attribute to update
     * @param updateValue The new value to set
     * @return Map containing the operation result and status
     */
    public static Map<String, Object> conditionalUpdateWithMultipleConditions(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> conditions,
        String updateAttribute,
        AttributeValue updateValue) {

        Map<String, Object> result = new HashMap<>();
```

```
        try {
            // Build the condition expression and attribute names/values
            StringBuilder conditionExpression = new StringBuilder();
            Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
            Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();

            // Add update attribute
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#updateAttr", updateAttribute);
            expressionAttributeValues.put(":updateVal", updateValue);

            // Add conditions
            int i = 0;
            for (Map.Entry<String, AttributeValue> condition :
conditions.entrySet()) {
                String attrName = condition.getKey();
                AttributeValue attrValue = condition.getValue();

                String nameKey = "#cond" + i;
                String valueKey = ":val" + i;

                expressionAttributeNames.put(nameKey, attrName);
                expressionAttributeValues.put(valueKey, attrValue);

                // Add AND between conditions (except for the first one)
                if (i > 0) {
                    conditionExpression.append(" AND ");
                }

                conditionExpression.append(nameKey).append(" = ").append(valueKey);
                i++;
            }

            // Define the update parameters
            UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
                .tableName(tableName)
                .key(key)
                .updateExpression("SET #updateAttr = :updateVal")
                .conditionExpression(conditionExpression.toString())
                .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
                .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
                .returnValues(ReturnValue.UPDATED_NEW)
                .build();
```

```
            // Perform the update operation
            UpdateItemResponse response = dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);

            // Record success result
            result.put("success", true);
            result.put("message", "All conditions were met and update was
performed");
            result.put("attributes", response.attributes());

        } catch (ConditionalCheckFailedException e) {
            // Record failure due to condition not being met
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "One or more conditions were not met, update was
not performed");
            result.put("error", "ConditionalCheckFailedException");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            // Record failure due to other errors
            result.put("success", false);
            result.put("message", "Error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            result.put("error", e.getClass().getSimpleName());
        }

        return result;
    }
```

Example usage of conditional operations with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
    public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
        // Example key
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
        key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

        System.out.println("Demonstrating conditional operations in DynamoDB");

        try {
            // Example 1: Conditional update
            System.out.println("\nExample 1: Conditional update");
            Map<String, Object> updateResult = conditionalUpdate(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
```

```
                key,
                "InStock",
                AttributeValue.builder().bool(true).build(),
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Available").build());

            System.out.println("Update result: " + updateResult.get("message"));
            if ((boolean) updateResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
updateResult.get("attributes"));
            }

            // Example 2: Conditional delete
            System.out.println("\nExample 2: Conditional delete");
            Map<String, Object> deleteResult = conditionalDelete(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                "Status",
                AttributeValue.builder().s("Discontinued").build());

            System.out.println("Delete result: " + deleteResult.get("message"));
            if ((boolean) deleteResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("Deleted item: " +
deleteResult.get("attributes"));
            }

            // Example 3: Optimistic locking
            System.out.println("\nExample 3: Optimistic locking");
            Map<String, Object> lockingResult =
optimisticLockingExample(dynamoDbClient, tableName, key, "Version");

            System.out.println("Optimistic locking result:");
            System.out.println("  Operation: " + lockingResult.get("operation"));
            System.out.println("  Success: " + lockingResult.get("success"));
            if (lockingResult.get("operation").equals("update") && (boolean)
lockingResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("  Old version: " +
lockingResult.get("oldVersion"));
                System.out.println("  New version: " +
lockingResult.get("newVersion"));
            }
            System.out.println("  Attributes: " + lockingResult.get("attributes"));
```

```
            // Example 4: Multiple conditions
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Multiple conditions");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> conditions = new HashMap<>();
            conditions.put("Price", AttributeValue.builder().n("199.99").build());
            conditions.put("Category",
AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build());

            Map<String, Object> multiConditionResult =
conditionalUpdateWithMultipleConditions(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                conditions,
                "OnSale",
                AttributeValue.builder().bool(true).build());

            System.out.println("Multiple conditions result: " +
multiConditionResult.get("message"));
            if ((boolean) multiConditionResult.get("success")) {
                System.out.println("Updated attributes: " +
multiConditionResult.get("attributes"));
            }

            // Explain conditional operations
            System.out.println("\nKey points about DynamoDB conditional
operations:");
            System.out.println("1. Conditional operations only succeed if the
condition is met");
            System.out.println("2. ConditionalCheckFailedException is thrown when
the condition fails");
            System.out.println("3. No changes are made to the item if the condition
fails");
            System.out.println("4. Conditions can be used with update, delete, and
put operations");
            System.out.println("5. Multiple conditions can be combined with AND and
OR");
            System.out.println("6. Optimistic locking can be implemented using a
version attribute");
            System.out.println(
                "7. Conditional operations consume the same amount of write capacity
whether they succeed or fail");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
```

```
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteItem
  - PutItem
  - UpdateItem

Use expression attribute names

The following code example shows how to use expression attribute names in DynamoDB.

- Work with reserved words in DynamoDB expressions.
- Use expression attribute name placeholders.
- Handle special characters in attribute names.

SDK for Java 2.x

Demonstrate expression attribute names using AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.DynamoDbClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.AttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.DynamoDbException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.QueryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.ScanResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.dynamodb.model.UpdateItemResponse;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     * Updates an attribute that is a reserved word in DynamoDB.
     *
```

```
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
     * attributes that are reserved words in DynamoDB.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param reservedWordAttribute The reserved word attribute to update
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateReservedWordAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String reservedWordAttribute,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attr = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attr", reservedWordAttribute))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Updates an attribute that contains special characters.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
     * attributes that contain special characters.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param specialCharAttribute The attribute with special characters to update
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
```

```
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        String specialCharAttribute,
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Define the update parameters using expression attribute names
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET #attr = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(Map.of("#attr", specialCharAttribute))
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Queries items using an attribute that is a reserved word.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names in a query
     * when the attribute is a reserved word.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param partitionKeyName The name of the partition key attribute
     * @param partitionKeyValue The value of the partition key
     * @param reservedWordAttribute The reserved word attribute to filter on
     * @param value The value to compare against
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static QueryResponse queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        String partitionKeyName,
        AttributeValue partitionKeyValue,
        String reservedWordAttribute,
```

```
        AttributeValue value) {

        // Define the query parameters using expression attribute names
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#pkName", partitionKeyName);
        expressionAttributeNames.put("#attr", reservedWordAttribute);

        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":pkValue", partitionKeyValue);
        expressionAttributeValues.put(":value", value);

        QueryRequest request = QueryRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .keyConditionExpression("#pkName = :pkValue")
            .filterExpression("#attr = :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the query operation
        return dynamoDbClient.query(request);
    }

    /**
     * Updates a nested attribute with a path that contains reserved words.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to update
     * nested attributes where the path contains reserved words.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param key The key of the item to update
     * @param attributePath The path to the nested attribute as an array
     * @param value The value to set
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static UpdateItemResponse updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient,
        String tableName,
        Map<String, AttributeValue> key,
        List<String> attributePath,
        AttributeValue value) {
```

```
        // Create expression attribute names for each part of the path
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        for (int i = 0; i < attributePath.size(); i++) {
            expressionAttributeNames.put("#attr" + i, attributePath.get(i));
        }

        // Build the attribute path using the expression attribute names
        StringBuilder attributePathExpression = new StringBuilder();
        for (int i = 0; i < attributePath.size(); i++) {
            if (i > 0) {
                attributePathExpression.append(".");
            }
            attributePathExpression.append("#attr").append(i);
        }

        // Define the update parameters
        UpdateItemRequest request = UpdateItemRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .key(key)
            .updateExpression("SET " + attributePathExpression.toString() + "
= :value")
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(Map.of(":value", value))
            .returnValues("UPDATED_NEW")
            .build();

        // Perform the update operation
        return dynamoDbClient.updateItem(request);
    }

    /**
     * Scans a table with multiple attribute name placeholders.
     *
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to use multiple expression attribute names
     * in a complex filter expression.
     *
     * @param dynamoDbClient The DynamoDB client
     * @param tableName The name of the DynamoDB table
     * @param filters Object mapping attribute names to filter values
     * @return The response from DynamoDB
     * @throws DynamoDbException if an error occurs during the operation
     */
    public static ScanResponse scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(
```

```
        DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName, Map<String, AttributeValue>
filters) {

        // Create expression attribute names and values
        Map<String, String> expressionAttributeNames = new HashMap<>();
        Map<String, AttributeValue> expressionAttributeValues = new HashMap<>();
        StringBuilder filterExpression = new StringBuilder();

        // Build the filter expression
        int index = 0;
        for (Map.Entry<String, AttributeValue> entry : filters.entrySet()) {
            String attrName = entry.getKey();
            AttributeValue attrValue = entry.getValue();

            String nameKey = "#attr" + index;
            String valueKey = ":val" + index;

            expressionAttributeNames.put(nameKey, attrName);
            expressionAttributeValues.put(valueKey, attrValue);

            // Add AND between conditions (except for the first one)
            if (index > 0) {
                filterExpression.append(" AND ");
            }

            filterExpression.append(nameKey).append(" = ").append(valueKey);
            index++;
        }

        // Define the scan parameters
        ScanRequest request = ScanRequest.builder()
            .tableName(tableName)
            .filterExpression(filterExpression.toString())
            .expressionAttributeNames(expressionAttributeNames)
            .expressionAttributeValues(expressionAttributeValues)
            .build();

        // Perform the scan operation
        return dynamoDbClient.scan(request);
    }
```

Example usage of expression attribute names with AWS SDK for Java 2.x.

```
   public static void exampleUsage(DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient, String tableName)
{
       // Example key
       Map<String, AttributeValue> key = new HashMap<>();
       key.put("ProductId", AttributeValue.builder().s("P12345").build());

       System.out.println("Demonstrating expression attribute names in DynamoDB");

       try {
           // Example 1: Update an attribute that is a reserved word
           System.out.println("\nExample 1: Updating an attribute that is a
reserved word");
           UpdateItemResponse response1 = updateReservedWordAttribute(
               dynamoDbClient,
               tableName,
               key,
               "Size", // "SIZE" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
               AttributeValue.builder().s("Large").build());

           System.out.println("Updated attribute: " + response1.attributes());

           // Example 2: Update an attribute with special characters
           System.out.println("\nExample 2: Updating an attribute with special
characters");
           UpdateItemResponse response2 = updateSpecialCharacterAttribute(
               dynamoDbClient,
               tableName,
               key,
               "Product-Type", // Contains a hyphen, which is a special character
               AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build());

           System.out.println("Updated attribute: " + response2.attributes());

           // Example 3: Query with a reserved word attribute
           System.out.println("\nExample 3: Querying with a reserved word
attribute");
           QueryResponse response3 = queryWithReservedWordAttribute(
               dynamoDbClient,
               tableName,
               "Category",
               AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build(),
               "Count", // "COUNT" is a reserved word in DynamoDB
               AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build());
```

```
            System.out.println("Found " + response3.count() + " items");

            // Example 4: Update a nested attribute with reserved words in the path
            System.out.println("\nExample 4: Updating a nested attribute with
reserved words in the path");
            UpdateItemResponse response4 = updateNestedReservedWordAttribute(
                dynamoDbClient,
                tableName,
                key,
                Arrays.asList("Dimensions", "Size", "Height"), // "SIZE" is a
reserved word
                AttributeValue.builder().n("30").build());

            System.out.println("Updated nested attribute: " +
response4.attributes());

            // Example 5: Scan with multiple attribute name placeholders
            System.out.println("\nExample 5: Scanning with multiple attribute name
placeholders");
            Map<String, AttributeValue> filters = new HashMap<>();
            filters.put("Size", AttributeValue.builder().s("Large").build());
            filters.put("Count", AttributeValue.builder().n("10").build());
            filters.put(
                "Product-Type", AttributeValue.builder().s("Electronics").build());

            ScanResponse response5 = scanWithMultipleAttributeNames(dynamoDbClient,
tableName, filters);

            System.out.println("Found " + response5.count() + " items");

            // Show some common reserved words
            System.out.println("\nSome common DynamoDB reserved words:");
            List<String> commonReservedWords = getDynamoDBReservedWords();
            System.out.println(String.join(", ", commonReservedWords));

            // Explain expression attribute names
            System.out.println("\nKey points about expression attribute names:");
            System.out.println("1. Use expression attribute names (#name) for
reserved words");
            System.out.println("2. Use expression attribute names for attributes
with special characters");
            System.out.println(
```

```
                "3. Special characters include: spaces, hyphens, dots, and other
non-alphanumeric characters");
            System.out.println("4. Expression attribute names are required for
nested attributes with reserved words");
            System.out.println("5. You can use multiple expression attribute names
in a single expression");
            System.out.println("6. Expression attribute names are case-sensitive");
            System.out.println("7. Expression attribute names are only used in
expressions, not in the actual data");

        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - Query
  - UpdateItem

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs

- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;

public class example implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent, Void> {

    private static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder().setPrettyPrinting().create();

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(DynamodbEvent event, Context context) {
        System.out.println(GSON.toJson(event));
        event.getRecords().forEach(this::logDynamoDBRecord);
```

```
        return null;
    }

    private void logDynamoDBRecord(DynamodbStreamRecord record) {
        System.out.println(record.getEventID());
        System.out.println(record.getEventName());
        System.out.println("DynamoDB Record: " + GSON.toJson(record.getDynamodb()));
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.dynamodb.StreamRecord;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessDynamodbRecords implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
```

```
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(DynamodbEvent input, Context context)
 {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord dynamodbStreamRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
          try {
                //Process your record
                StreamRecord dynamodbRecord = dynamodbStreamRecord.getDynamodb();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = dynamodbRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Java SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
```

```
    * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
    *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
    *         security group information.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
       DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
           .groupNames(groupName)
           .build();

       DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.securityGroups().stream()
               .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
       }).thenApply(v -> {
           String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
           if (groupId == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the name: "
+ groupName);
           }
           return groupId;
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeKeyPairsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DisassociateAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Ec2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.ReleaseAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParametersByPathResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.Parameter;

import java.net.InetAddress;
import java.net.UnknownHostException;
```

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an RSA key pair and saves the private key data as a .pem file.
 * 2. Lists key pairs.
 * 3. Creates a security group for the default VPC.
 * 4. Displays security group information.
 * 5. Gets a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and selects one.
 * 6. Gets additional information about the image.
 * 7. Gets a list of instance types that are compatible with the selected AMI’s
 * architecture.
 * 8. Creates an instance with the key pair, security group, AMI, and an
 * instance type.
 * 9. Displays information about the instance.
 * 10. Stops the instance and waits for it to stop.
 * 11. Starts the instance and waits for it to start.
 * 12. Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the instance.
 * 13. Displays SSH connection info for the instance.
 * 14. Disassociates and deletes the Elastic IP address.
 * 15. Terminates the instance and waits for it to terminate.
 * 16. Deletes the security group.
 * 17. Deletes the key pair.
 */
public class EC2Scenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(EC2Scenario.class);
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException,
 UnknownHostException {

        logger.info("""
            Usage:
```

```
                <keyName> <fileName> <groupName> <groupDesc>

            Where:
                keyName -  A key pair name (for example, TestKeyPair).\s
                fileName -  A file name where the key information is written to.\s
                groupName - The name of the security group.\s
                groupDesc - The description of the security group.\s
            """);

        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        EC2Actions ec2Actions = new EC2Actions();

        String keyName = "TestKeyPair7" ;
        String fileName = "ec2Key.pem";
        String groupName = "TestSecGroup7" ;
        String groupDesc = "Test Group" ;
        String vpcId = ec2Actions.describeFirstEC2VpcAsync().join().vpcId();
        InetAddress localAddress = InetAddress.getLocalHost();
        String myIpAddress = localAddress.getHostAddress();

        logger.info("""
            Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) is a web service that provides
 secure, resizable compute
            capacity in the cloud. It allows developers and organizations to easily
 launch and manage
            virtual server instances, known as EC2 instances, to run their
 applications.

            EC2 provides a wide range of instance types, each with different
 compute, memory,
            and storage capabilities, to meet the diverse needs of various
 workloads. Developers
            can choose the appropriate instance type based on their application's
 requirements,
            such as high-performance computing, memory-intensive tasks, or GPU-
accelerated workloads.

            The `Ec2AsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x provides a
 set of methods to
            programmatically interact with the Amazon EC2 service. This allows
 developers to
            automate the provisioning, management, and monitoring of EC2 instances
 as part of their
```

```
            application deployment pipelines. With EC2, teams can focus on building
and deploying
            their applications without having to worry about the underlying
infrastructure
            required to host and manage physical servers.

            This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this
service.
            Let's get started...
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an RSA key pair and save the private key material as
a .pem file.");
        logger.info("""
            An RSA key pair for Amazon EC2 is a security mechanism used to
authenticate and secure
            access to your EC2 instances. It consists of a public key and a private
key,
            which are generated as a pair.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> future =
ec2Actions.createKeyPairAsync(keyName, fileName);
            CreateKeyPairResponse response = future.join();
            logger.info("Key Pair successfully created. Key Fingerprint: " +
response.keyFingerprint());

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                if (ec2Ex.getMessage().contains("already exists")) {
                    // Key pair already exists.
                    logger.info("The key pair '" + keyName + "' already exists.
Moving on...");
                } else {
                    logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    return;
                }
```

```
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + (rt.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. List key pairs.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> future =
ec2Actions.describeKeysAsync();
            DescribeKeyPairsResponse keyPairsResponse = future.join();
            keyPairsResponse.keyPairs().forEach(keyPair -> logger.info(
                "Found key pair with name {} and fingerprint {}",
                keyPair.keyName(),
                keyPair.keyFingerprint()));

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rt.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a security group.");
        logger.info("""
            An AWS EC2 Security Group is a virtual firewall that controls the
            inbound and outbound traffic to an EC2 instance. It acts as a first
line
            of defense for your EC2 instances, allowing you to specify the rules
that
            govern the network traffic entering and leaving your instances.
```

```
           """);
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       String groupId = "";
       try {
           CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.createSecurityGroupAsync(groupName, groupDesc, vpcId, myIpAddress);
           future.join();
           logger.info("Created security group") ;

       } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
           Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
           if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
               if (ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage().contains("already
exists")) {
                   logger.info("The Security Group already exists. Moving on...");
               } else {
                   logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                   return;
               }
           } else {
               logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
               return;
           }
       }
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       logger.info(DASHES);

       logger.info(DASHES);
       logger.info("4. Display security group information for the new security
group.");
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       try {
           CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(groupName);
           groupId = future.join();
           logger.info("The security group Id is "+groupId);

       } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
           Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
           if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
               String errorCode = ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode();
               if ("InvalidGroup.NotFound".equals(errorCode)) {
```

```
                    logger.info("Security group '{}' does not exist. Error Code:
{}", groupName, errorCode);
                } else {
                    logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code: {}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), errorCode);
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Get a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and select one with amzn2
in the name.");
        logger.info("""
            An Amazon EC2 AMI (Amazon Machine Image) is a pre-configured virtual
machine image that
            serves as a template for launching EC2 instances. It contains all the
necessary software and
            configurations required to run an application or operating system on an
EC2 instance.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String instanceAMI="";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<GetParametersByPathResponse> future =
ec2Actions.getParaValuesAsync();
            GetParametersByPathResponse pathResponse = future.join();
            List<Parameter> parameterList = pathResponse.parameters();
            for (Parameter para : parameterList) {
                if (filterName(para.name())) {
                    instanceAMI = para.value();
                    break;
                }
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
```

```
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("The AMI value with amzn2 is: {}", instanceAMI);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Get the (Amazon Machine Image) AMI value from the amzn2
image.");
        logger.info("""
           An AMI value represents a specific version of a virtual machine (VM) or
server image.
           It uniquely identifies a particular version of an EC2 instance, including
its operating system,
           pre-installed software, and any custom configurations. This allows you to
consistently deploy the same
           VM image across your infrastructure.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String amiValue;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeImageAsync(instanceAMI);
            amiValue = future.join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                Ec2Exception ec2Ex = (Ec2Exception) cause;
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("7. Retrieves an instance type available in the current AWS
region.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String instanceType;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future = ec2Actions.getInstanceTypesAsync();
            instanceType = future.join();
            if (!instanceType.isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("Found instance type: " + instanceType);
            } else {
                logger.info("Desired instance type not found.");
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Create an Amazon EC2 instance using the key pair, the
instance type, the security group, and the EC2 AMI value.");
        logger.info("Once the EC2 instance is created, it is placed into a running
state.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String newInstanceId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.runInstanceAsync(instanceType, keyName, groupName, amiValue);
            newInstanceId = future.join();
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                Ec2Exception ec2Ex = (Ec2Exception) cause;
                switch (ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode()) {
                    case "InvalidParameterValue":
```

```
                        logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                    case "InsufficientInstanceCapacity":
                        // Handle insufficient instance capacity.
                        logger.info("Insufficient instance capacity: {}, {}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                    case "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                        // Handle security group not found.
                        logger.info("Security group not found: {},{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                    default:
                        logger.info("EC2 error occurred: {} (Code: {}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                        break;
                }
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : rt.getMessage()));
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("The instance Id is " + newInstanceId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Display information about the running instance. ");

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String publicIp;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeEC2InstancesAsync(newInstanceId);
            publicIp = future.join();
            logger.info("EC2 instance public IP {}", publicIp);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
```

```
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }

        }
        logger.info("You can SSH to the instance using this command:");
        logger.info("ssh -i " + fileName + " ec2-user@" + publicIp);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Stop the instance using a waiter (this may take a few
mins).");
        // Remove the 2nd one
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
ec2Actions.stopInstanceAsync(newInstanceId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("11. Start the instance using a waiter (this may take a few
mins).");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
ec2Actions.startInstanceAsync(newInstanceId);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                // Handle EC2 exceptions.
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("12. Allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with the
instance.");
        logger.info("""
            An Elastic IP address is a static public IP address that you can
associate with your EC2 instance.
            This allows you to have a fixed, predictable IP address that remains the
same even if your instance
            is stopped, terminated, or replaced.
            This is particularly useful for applications or services that need to be
accessed consistently from a
            known IP address.

            An EC2 Allocation ID (also known as a Reserved Instance Allocation
ID) is a unique identifier associated with a Reserved Instance (RI) that you have
purchased in AWS.

            When you purchase a Reserved Instance, AWS assigns a unique Allocation
ID to it.
            This Allocation ID is used to track and identify the specific RI you
have purchased,
            and it is important for managing and monitoring your Reserved Instances.

            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String allocationId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future = ec2Actions.allocateAddressAsync();
```

```
            allocationId = future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully allocated address with ID: " +allocationId);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("The allocation Id value is " + allocationId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String associationId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.associateAddressAsync(newInstanceId, allocationId);
            associationId = future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully associated address with ID: " +associationId);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("13. Describe the instance again. Note that the public IP
address has changed");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
ec2Actions.describeEC2InstancesAsync(newInstanceId);
            publicIp = future.join();
            logger.info("EC2 instance public IP: " + publicIp);
```

```
            logger.info("You can SSH to the instance using this command:");
            logger.info("ssh -i " + fileName + " ec2-user@" + publicIp);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("14. Disassociate and release the Elastic IP address.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse> future =
ec2Actions.disassociateAddressAsync(associationId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Address successfully disassociated.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                // Handle EC2 exceptions.
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> future =
ec2Actions.releaseEC2AddressAsync(allocationId);
            future.join(); // Wait for the operation to complete
            logger.info("Elastic IP address successfully released.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rte.getMessage());
```

```
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("15. Terminate the instance and use a waiter (this may take a
few mins).");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Object> future =
ec2Actions.terminateEC2Async(newInstanceId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("EC2 instance successfully terminated.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                // Handle EC2 exceptions.
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("16. Delete the security group.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
ec2Actions.deleteEC2SecGroupAsync(groupId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Security group successfully deleted.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
```

```
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("17. Delete the key.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> future =
ec2Actions.deleteKeysAsync(keyName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully deleted key pair named " + keyName);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception ec2Ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Message {}, Error Code:{}",
ec2Ex.getMessage(), ec2Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                return;
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("You successfully completed the Amazon EC2 scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }
    public static boolean filterName(String name) {
        String[] parts = name.split("/");
        String myValue = parts[4];
        return myValue.contains("amzn2");
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
```

```
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps EC2 actions.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.Ec2AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AllocateAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AllocateAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AssociateAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AssociateAddressResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateKeyPairRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.CreateSecurityGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteKeyPairRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteKeyPairResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteSecurityGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DeleteSecurityGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeInstanceTypesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeInstanceTypesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeKeyPairsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DisassociateAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DisassociateAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DomainType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Ec2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Filter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.InstanceTypeInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IpPermission;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IpRange;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.ReleaseAddressRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.ReleaseAddressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.RunInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.RunInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.StopInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.StartInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.TerminateInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.Vpc;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeImagesPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeInstancesPublisher;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.paginators.DescribeVpcsPublisher;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.waiters.Ec2AsyncWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParametersByPathRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParametersByPathResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.TerminateInstancesResponse;
import java.io.BufferedWriter;
import java.io.FileWriter;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicReference;

public class EC2Actions {
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(EC2Actions.class);
    private static Ec2AsyncClient ec2AsyncClient;

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) client.
     *
     * @return the configured ECR asynchronous client.
     */
```

```
   private static Ec2AsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
       if (ec2AsyncClient == null) {
           /*
           The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
           and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
            It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
            provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
            */
           SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
               .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
               .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
               .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
               .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
               .build();

           ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
              .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
timeout.
               .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
               .build();

           ec2AsyncClient = Ec2AsyncClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .httpClient(httpClient)
               .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
               .build();
       }
       return ec2AsyncClient;
   }

   /**
    * Deletes a key pair asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyPair the name of the key pair to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the result of the
asynchronous operation.
```

```
    *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DeleteKeyPairResponse} object
    *         that provides the result of the key pair deletion operation.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> deleteKeysAsync(String keyPair)
{
       DeleteKeyPairRequest request = DeleteKeyPairRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyPair)
           .build();

       // Initiate the asynchronous request to delete the key pair.
       CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteKeyPair(request);
       return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete key pair: " + keyPair,
ex);
           } else if (resp == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting key
pair: " + keyPair);
           }
       });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes an EC2 security group asynchronously.
    *
    * @param groupId the ID of the security group to delete
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the security group is deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteEC2SecGroupAsync(String groupId) {
       DeleteSecurityGroupRequest request = DeleteSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
           .groupId(groupId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteSecurityGroupResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSecurityGroup(request);
       return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete security group with Id
" + groupId, ex);
           } else if (resp == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting
security group with Id " + groupId);
```

```
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Terminates an EC2 instance asynchronously and waits for it to reach the
terminated state.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to terminate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has been
terminated
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is no response from the AWS SDK or if there
is a failure during the termination process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> terminateEC2Async(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstancesRequest terminateRequest =
TerminateInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<TerminateInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().terminateInstances(terminateRequest);
        return responseFuture.thenCompose(terminateResponse -> {
            if (terminateResponse == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No response received for terminating
instance " + instanceId);
            }
            System.out.println("Going to terminate an EC2 instance and use a waiter
to wait for it to be in terminated state");
            return getAsyncClient().waiter()
                .waitUntilInstanceTerminated(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceId))
                .thenApply(waiterResponse -> null);
        }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
            // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to terminate EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Releases an Elastic IP address asynchronously.
     *
     * @param allocId the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to be released
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of releasing the Elastic IP address
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> releaseEC2AddressAsync(String
allocId) {
       ReleaseAddressRequest request = ReleaseAddressRequest.builder()
           .allocationId(allocId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().releaseAddress(request);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to release Elastic IP address",
ex);
           }
       });

       return response;
   }

   /**
    * Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param associationId The ID of the association you want to disassociate.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of disassociating the address. The
    *         {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DisassociateAddressResponse} when the operation is
    *         finished.
    * @throws RuntimeException if the disassociation of the address fails.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse>
disassociateAddressAsync(String associationId) {
       Ec2AsyncClient ec2 = getAsyncClient();
       DisassociateAddressRequest addressRequest =
DisassociateAddressRequest.builder()
           .associationId(associationId)
           .build();

       // Disassociate the address asynchronously.
       CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse> response =
ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
```

```
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disassociate address", ex);
            }
        });

        return response;
    }

    /**
     * Associates an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceId    the ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
address with
     * @param allocationId  the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to associate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the association ID
when the operation is successful,
     *         or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> associateAddressAsync(String instanceId, String
allocationId) {
        AssociateAddressRequest associateRequest = AssociateAddressRequest.builder()
            .instanceId(instanceId)
            .allocationId(allocationId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<AssociateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().associateAddress(associateRequest);
        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> {
            if (response.associationId() != null) {
                return response.associationId();
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Association ID is null after associating
address.");
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to associate address", ex);
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Allocates an Elastic IP address asynchronously in the VPC domain.
     *
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the allocation ID of the
allocated Elastic IP address
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> allocateAddressAsync() {
       AllocateAddressRequest allocateRequest = AllocateAddressRequest.builder()
           .domain(DomainType.VPC)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<AllocateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().allocateAddress(allocateRequest);
       return
responseFuture.thenApply(AllocateAddressResponse::allocationId).whenComplete((result,
ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to allocate address", ex);
           }
       });
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the state of an EC2 instance.
    * The paginator helps you iterate over multiple pages of results.
    *
    * @param newInstanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a string
describing the state of the EC2 instance
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeEC2InstancesAsync(String newInstanceId)
{
       DescribeInstancesRequest request = DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(newInstanceId)
           .build();

       DescribeInstancesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeInstancesPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> publicIpAddressRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.reservations().stream()
               .flatMap(reservation -> reservation.instances().stream())
               .filter(instance -> instance.instanceId().equals(newInstanceId))
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(instance ->
publicIpAddressRef.set(instance.publicIpAddress()));
       }).thenApply(v -> {
```

```
            String publicIpAddress = publicIpAddressRef.get();
            if (publicIpAddress == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Instance with ID " + newInstanceId + "
not found.");
            }
            return publicIpAddress;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe instances: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe instances", ex);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Runs an EC2 instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceType The instance type to use for the EC2 instance.
     * @param keyName The name of the key pair to associate with the EC2 instance.
     * @param groupName The name of the security group to associate with the EC2
instance.
     * @param amiId The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the EC2
instance.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the started
EC2 instance.
     * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error running the EC2 instance.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> runInstanceAsync(String instanceType, String
keyName, String groupName, String amiId) {
        RunInstancesRequest runRequest = RunInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceType(instanceType)
            .keyName(keyName)
            .securityGroups(groupName)
            .maxCount(1)
            .minCount(1)
            .imageId(amiId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<RunInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().runInstances(runRequest);
        return responseFuture.thenCompose(response -> {
            String instanceIdVal = response.instances().get(0).instanceId();
            System.out.println("Going to start an EC2 instance and use a waiter to
wait for it to be in running state");
            return getAsyncClient().waiter()
                .waitUntilInstanceExists(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
```

```
                .thenCompose(waitResponse -> getAsyncClient().waiter()
                    .waitUntilInstanceRunning(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
                    .thenApply(runningResponse -> instanceIdVal));
        }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
            // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to run EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the instance types available in the current AWS
region.
     * <p>
     * This method uses the AWS SDK's asynchronous API to fetch the available
instance types
     * and then processes the response. It logs the memory information, network
information,
     * and instance type for each instance type returned. Additionally, it returns a
     * {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type string for the
"t2.2xlarge"
     * instance type, if it is found in the response. If the "t2.2xlarge" instance
type is not
     * found, an empty string is returned.
     * </p>
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type string
for the
     * "t2.2xlarge" instance type, or an empty string if the instance type is not
found
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> getInstanceTypesAsync() {
        DescribeInstanceTypesRequest typesRequest =
DescribeInstanceTypesRequest.builder()
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeInstanceTypesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                List<InstanceTypeInfo> instanceTypes = resp.instanceTypes();
                for (InstanceTypeInfo type : instanceTypes) {
```

```
                    logger.info("The memory information of this type is " +
type.memoryInfo().sizeInMiB());
                    logger.info("Network information is " +
type.networkInfo().toString());
                    logger.info("Instance type is " +
type.instanceType().toString());
                }
            } else {
                throw (RuntimeException) ex;
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> {
            for (InstanceTypeInfo type : resp.instanceTypes()) {
                String instanceType = type.instanceType().toString();
                if (instanceType.equals("t2.2xlarge")) {
                    return instanceType;
                }
            }
            return "";
        });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes an AWS EC2 image with the specified image ID.
     *
     * @param imageId the ID of the image to be described
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the ID of
the described image
     * @throws RuntimeException if no images are found with the provided image ID,
or if an error occurs during the AWS API call
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeImageAsync(String imageId) {
        DescribeImagesRequest imagesRequest = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .imageIds(imageId)
            .build();

        AtomicReference<String> imageIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        DescribeImagesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeImagesPaginator(imagesRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.images().stream()
                .filter(image -> image.imageId().equals(imageId))
                .findFirst()
```

```
                .ifPresent(image -> {
                    logger.info("The description of the image is " +
image.description());
                    logger.info("The name of the image is " + image.name());
                    imageIdRef.set(image.imageId());
                });
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String id = imageIdRef.get();
            if (id == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No images found with the provided image
ID.");
            }
            return id;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe image: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe image", ex);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the parameter values asynchronously using the AWS Systems Manager
(SSM) API.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that holds the response from the SSM API
call to get parameters by path
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetParametersByPathResponse> getParaValuesAsync() {
        SsmAsyncClient ssmClient = SsmAsyncClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        GetParametersByPathRequest parameterRequest =
GetParametersByPathRequest.builder()
            .path("/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest")
            .build();

        // Create a CompletableFuture to hold the final result.
        CompletableFuture<GetParametersByPathResponse> responseFuture = new
CompletableFuture<>();
        ssmClient.getParametersByPath(parameterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    responseFuture.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to get parameters by path", exception));
```

```
                } else {
                    responseFuture.complete(response);
                }
            });

        return responseFuture;
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
     *
     * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
     *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
     *         security group information.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
            .groupNames(groupName)
            .build();

        DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
        AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.securityGroups().stream()
                .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
                .findFirst()
                .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
        }).thenApply(v -> {
            String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
            if (groupId == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the name: "
+ groupName);
            }
            return groupId;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
```

```
            logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new security group asynchronously with the specified group name,
description, and VPC ID. It also
     * authorizes inbound traffic on ports 80 and 22 from the specified IP address.
     *
     * @param groupName    the name of the security group to create
     * @param groupDesc    the description of the security group
     * @param vpcId        the ID of the VPC in which to create the security group
     * @param myIpAddress  the IP address from which to allow inbound traffic (e.g.,
"192.168.1.1/0" to allow traffic from
     *                     any IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet)
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the ID of the
created security group
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure creating the security group
or authorizing the inbound traffic
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createSecurityGroupAsync(String groupName,
String groupDesc, String vpcId, String myIpAddress) {
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest createRequest =
CreateSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
            .groupName(groupName)
            .description(groupDesc)
            .vpcId(vpcId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createSecurityGroup(createRequest)
            .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
                String groupId = createResponse.groupId();
                IpRange ipRange = IpRange.builder()
                    .cidrIp(myIpAddress + "/32")
                    .build();

                IpPermission ipPerm = IpPermission.builder()
                    .ipProtocol("tcp")
                    .toPort(80)
                    .fromPort(80)
                    .ipRanges(ipRange)
                    .build();
```

```
                IpPermission ipPerm2 = IpPermission.builder()
                    .ipProtocol("tcp")
                    .toPort(22)
                    .fromPort(22)
                    .ipRanges(ipRange)
                    .build();

                AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest authRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                    .groupName(groupName)
                    .ipPermissions(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
                    .thenApply(authResponse -> groupId);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception instanceof CompletionException &&
exception.getCause() instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw (Ec2Exception) exception.getCause();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create security group:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the key pairs associated with the current AWS
account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the {@link
DescribeKeyPairsResponse} object, which provides
     * information about the key pairs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> describeKeysAsync() {
        CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKeyPairs();
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
              throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe key pairs: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
```

```
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new key pair asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the key pair to create
     * @param fileName the name of the file to write the key material to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
     *         of creating the key pair and writing the key material to a file
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> createKeyPairAsync(String
keyName, String fileName) {
        CreateKeyPairRequest request = CreateKeyPairRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createKeyPair(request);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                try {
                    BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
FileWriter(fileName));
                    writer.write(response.keyMaterial());
                    writer.close();
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write key material to
file: " + e.getMessage(), e);
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create key pair: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Describes the first default VPC asynchronously and using a paginator.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the first
default VPC found.\
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Vpc> describeFirstEC2VpcAsync() {
       Filter myFilter = Filter.builder()
           .name("is-default")
           .values("true")
           .build();

       DescribeVpcsRequest request = DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
           .filters(myFilter)
           .build();

       DescribeVpcsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeVpcsPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<Vpc> vpcRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.vpcs().stream()
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(vpcRef::set);
       }).thenApply(v -> {
           Vpc vpc = vpcRef.get();
           if (vpc == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Default VPC not found");
           }
           return vpc;
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           logger.info("Failed to describe VPCs: " + ex.getMessage());
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe VPCs", ex);
       });
   }

   /**
    * Stops the EC2 instance with the specified ID asynchronously and waits for the
instance to stop.
    *
    * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to stop
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has been
stopped, or exceptionally if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> stopInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
       StopInstancesRequest stopRequest = StopInstancesRequest.builder()
```

```
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
            .client(getAsyncClient())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        logger.info("Stopping instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
stop.");
        getAsyncClient().stopInstances(stopRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                if (response.stoppingInstances().isEmpty()) {
                    return CompletableFuture.failedFuture(new RuntimeException("No
instances were stopped. Please check the instance ID: " + instanceId));
                }
                return ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceStopped(describeRequest);
            })
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully stopped instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                logger.error("Failed to stop instance " + instanceId + ": " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed to
stop instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });

        return resultFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Starts an Amazon EC2 instance asynchronously and waits until it is in the
"running" state.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the instance to start
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has been
started and is in the "running" state, or exceptionally if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> startInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        StartInstancesRequest startRequest = StartInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
            .client(getAsyncClient())
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Starting instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
run.");
        CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        return getAsyncClient().startInstances(startRequest)
            .thenCompose(response ->
                ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceRunning(describeRequest)
            )
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully started instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed to
start instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress

- CreateKeyPair
- CreateSecurityGroup
- DeleteKeyPair
- DeleteSecurityGroup
- DescribeImages
- DescribeInstanceTypes
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeKeyPairs
- DescribeSecurityGroups
- DisassociateAddress
- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Allocates an Elastic IP address asynchronously in the VPC domain.
 *
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the allocation ID of the
allocated Elastic IP address
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> allocateAddressAsync() {
        AllocateAddressRequest allocateRequest = AllocateAddressRequest.builder()
            .domain(DomainType.VPC)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<AllocateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().allocateAddress(allocateRequest);
        return
responseFuture.thenApply(AllocateAddressResponse::allocationId).whenComplete((result,
ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to allocate address", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Associates an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceId    the ID of the EC2 instance to associate the Elastic IP
address with
     * @param allocationId  the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to associate
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the association ID
when the operation is successful,
```

```
     *         or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> associateAddressAsync(String instanceId, String
allocationId) {
        AssociateAddressRequest associateRequest = AssociateAddressRequest.builder()
            .instanceId(instanceId)
            .allocationId(allocationId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<AssociateAddressResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().associateAddress(associateRequest);
        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> {
            if (response.associationId() != null) {
                return response.associationId();
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Association ID is null after associating
address.");
            }
        }).whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to associate address", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Creates a new security group asynchronously with the specified group name,
description, and VPC ID. It also
    * authorizes inbound traffic on ports 80 and 22 from the specified IP address.
    *
    * @param groupName    the name of the security group to create
    * @param groupDesc    the description of the security group
    * @param vpcId        the ID of the VPC in which to create the security group
    * @param myIpAddress  the IP address from which to allow inbound traffic (e.g.,
"192.168.1.1/0" to allow traffic from
    *                     any IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet)
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the ID of the
created security group
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure creating the security group
or authorizing the inbound traffic
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSecurityGroupAsync(String groupName,
String groupDesc, String vpcId, String myIpAddress) {
       CreateSecurityGroupRequest createRequest =
CreateSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
           .groupName(groupName)
           .description(groupDesc)
           .vpcId(vpcId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createSecurityGroup(createRequest)
           .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
               String groupId = createResponse.groupId();
               IpRange ipRange = IpRange.builder()
                   .cidrIp(myIpAddress + "/32")
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(80)
                   .fromPort(80)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm2 = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
                   .toPort(22)
                   .fromPort(22)
                   .ipRanges(ipRange)
                   .build();
```

```
                AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest authRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                    .groupName(groupName)
                    .ipPermissions(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
                    .thenApply(authResponse -> groupId);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception instanceof CompletionException &&
exception.getCause() instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw (Ec2Exception) exception.getCause();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create security group:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new key pair asynchronously.
     *
```

```
    * @param keyName the name of the key pair to create
    * @param fileName the name of the file to write the key material to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of creating the key pair and writing the key material to a file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> createKeyPairAsync(String
keyName, String fileName) {
       CreateKeyPairRequest request = CreateKeyPairRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateKeyPairResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createKeyPair(request);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               try {
                   BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
FileWriter(fileName));
                   writer.write(response.keyMaterial());
                   writer.close();
               } catch (IOException e) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write key material to
file: " + e.getMessage(), e);
               }
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create key pair: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new security group asynchronously with the specified group name,
description, and VPC ID. It also
    * authorizes inbound traffic on ports 80 and 22 from the specified IP address.
    *
    * @param groupName    the name of the security group to create
    * @param groupDesc    the description of the security group
    * @param vpcId        the ID of the VPC in which to create the security group
    * @param myIpAddress  the IP address from which to allow inbound traffic (e.g.,
"192.168.1.1/0" to allow traffic from
    *                     any IP address in the 192.168.1.0/24 subnet)
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the ID of the
created security group
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure creating the security group
or authorizing the inbound traffic
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSecurityGroupAsync(String groupName,
String groupDesc, String vpcId, String myIpAddress) {
       CreateSecurityGroupRequest createRequest =
CreateSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
           .groupName(groupName)
           .description(groupDesc)
           .vpcId(vpcId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createSecurityGroup(createRequest)
           .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
               String groupId = createResponse.groupId();
               IpRange ipRange = IpRange.builder()
                   .cidrIp(myIpAddress + "/32")
                   .build();

               IpPermission ipPerm = IpPermission.builder()
                   .ipProtocol("tcp")
```

```
                    .toPort(80)
                    .fromPort(80)
                    .ipRanges(ipRange)
                    .build();

                IpPermission ipPerm2 = IpPermission.builder()
                    .ipProtocol("tcp")
                    .toPort(22)
                    .fromPort(22)
                    .ipRanges(ipRange)
                    .build();

                AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest authRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                    .groupName(groupName)
                    .ipPermissions(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
                    .thenApply(authResponse -> groupId);
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception instanceof CompletionException &&
exception.getCause() instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw (Ec2Exception) exception.getCause();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create security group:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a key pair asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyPair the name of the key pair to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the result of the
asynchronous operation.
    *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DeleteKeyPairResponse} object
    *         that provides the result of the key pair deletion operation.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> deleteKeysAsync(String keyPair)
{
       DeleteKeyPairRequest request = DeleteKeyPairRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyPair)
           .build();

       // Initiate the asynchronous request to delete the key pair.
       CompletableFuture<DeleteKeyPairResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteKeyPair(request);
       return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete key pair: " + keyPair,
ex);
           } else if (resp == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting key
pair: " + keyPair);
           }
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an EC2 security group asynchronously.
     *
     * @param groupId the ID of the security group to delete
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the security group is deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteEC2SecGroupAsync(String groupId) {
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest request = DeleteSecurityGroupRequest.builder()
            .groupId(groupId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteSecurityGroupResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSecurityGroup(request);
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete security group with Id
" + groupId, ex);
            } else if (resp == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No response received for deleting
security group with Id " + groupId);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the instance types available in the current AWS
region.
    * <p>
    * This method uses the AWS SDK's asynchronous API to fetch the available
instance types
    * and then processes the response. It logs the memory information, network
information,
    * and instance type for each instance type returned. Additionally, it returns a
    * {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type string for the
"t2.2xlarge"
    * instance type, if it is found in the response. If the "t2.2xlarge" instance
type is not
    * found, an empty string is returned.
    * </p>
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the instance type string
for the
    * "t2.2xlarge" instance type, or an empty string if the instance type is not
found
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> getInstanceTypesAsync() {
       DescribeInstanceTypesRequest typesRequest =
DescribeInstanceTypesRequest.builder()
           .maxResults(10)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeInstanceTypesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               List<InstanceTypeInfo> instanceTypes = resp.instanceTypes();
               for (InstanceTypeInfo type : instanceTypes) {
```

```
                    logger.info("The memory information of this type is " +
type.memoryInfo().sizeInMiB());
                    logger.info("Network information is " +
type.networkInfo().toString());
                    logger.info("Instance type is " +
type.instanceType().toString());
                }
            } else {
                throw (RuntimeException) ex;
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> {
            for (InstanceTypeInfo type : resp.instanceTypes()) {
                String instanceType = type.instanceType().toString();
                if (instanceType.equals("t2.2xlarge")) {
                    return instanceType;
                }
            }
            return "";
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the state of an EC2 instance.
     * The paginator helps you iterate over multiple pages of results.
```

```
    *
    * @param newInstanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a string
describing the state of the EC2 instance
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeEC2InstancesAsync(String newInstanceId)
{
       DescribeInstancesRequest request = DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(newInstanceId)
           .build();

       DescribeInstancesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeInstancesPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> publicIpAddressRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.reservations().stream()
               .flatMap(reservation -> reservation.instances().stream())
               .filter(instance -> instance.instanceId().equals(newInstanceId))
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(instance ->
publicIpAddressRef.set(instance.publicIpAddress()));
       }).thenApply(v -> {
           String publicIpAddress = publicIpAddressRef.get();
           if (publicIpAddress == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Instance with ID " + newInstanceId + "
not found.");
           }
           return publicIpAddress;
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           logger.info("Failed to describe instances: " + ex.getMessage());
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe instances", ex);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the key pairs associated with the current AWS
account.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the {@link
DescribeKeyPairsResponse} object, which provides
    * information about the key pairs.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> describeKeysAsync() {
       CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyPairsResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKeyPairs();
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
             throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe key pairs: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
           }
       });

       return responseFuture;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the security groups for the specified group ID.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the security group to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation
    *         of describing the security groups. The future will complete with a
    *         {@link DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse} object that contains the
    *         security group information.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeSecurityGroupArnByNameAsync(String
groupName) {
       DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest request =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
           .groupNames(groupName)
           .build();

       DescribeSecurityGroupsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().describeSecurityGroupsPaginator(request);
       AtomicReference<String> groupIdRef = new AtomicReference<>();
       return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
           response.securityGroups().stream()
               .filter(securityGroup ->
securityGroup.groupName().equals(groupName))
               .findFirst()
               .ifPresent(securityGroup ->
groupIdRef.set(securityGroup.groupId()));
       }).thenApply(v -> {
           String groupId = groupIdRef.get();
           if (groupId == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No security group found with the name: "
+ groupName);
           }
```

```
            return groupId;
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            logger.info("Failed to describe security group: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe security group", ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Disassociates an Elastic IP address from an instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param associationId The ID of the association you want to disassociate.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of disassociating the address. The
     *         {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
DisassociateAddressResponse} when the operation is
     *         finished.
     * @throws RuntimeException if the disassociation of the address fails.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse>
disassociateAddressAsync(String associationId) {
        Ec2AsyncClient ec2 = getAsyncClient();
        DisassociateAddressRequest addressRequest =
DisassociateAddressRequest.builder()
            .associationId(associationId)
            .build();

        // Disassociate the address asynchronously.
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DisassociateAddressResponse> response =
 ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disassociate address", ex);
            }
        });

        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetPasswordData`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPasswordData`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.Ec2AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.*;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetPasswordData {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <instanceId>

                Where:
                   instanceId - An instance id value that you can obtain from the
AWS Management Console.\s
             """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
        String instanceId = args[0];
        Ec2AsyncClient ec2AsyncClient = Ec2AsyncClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = getPasswordDataAsync(ec2AsyncClient,
instanceId);
            future.join();
        } catch (RuntimeException rte) {
            System.err.println("An exception occurred: " + (rte.getCause() != null ?
rte.getCause().getMessage() : rte.getMessage()));
        }
    }

    /**
     * Fetches the password data for the specified EC2 instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param ec2AsyncClient the EC2 asynchronous client to use for the request
     * @param instanceId instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance for which you want to
fetch the password data
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the password data has
been fetched
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure in fetching the password data
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> getPasswordDataAsync(Ec2AsyncClient
ec2AsyncClient, String instanceId) {
        GetPasswordDataRequest getPasswordDataRequest =
GetPasswordDataRequest.builder()
            .instanceId(instanceId)
```

```
            .build();


        CompletableFuture<GetPasswordDataResponse> response =
 ec2AsyncClient.getPasswordData(getPasswordDataRequest);
        response.whenComplete((getPasswordDataResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get password data for
 instance: " + instanceId, ex);
            } else if (getPasswordDataResponse == null ||
 getPasswordDataResponse.passwordData().isEmpty()) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No password data found for instance: " +
 instanceId);
            } else {
                String encryptedPasswordData =
 getPasswordDataResponse.passwordData();
                System.out.println("Encrypted Password Data: " +
 encryptedPasswordData);
            }
        });

        return response.thenApply(resp -> null);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPasswordData in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
     * Releases an Elastic IP address asynchronously.
     *
     * @param allocId the allocation ID of the Elastic IP address to be released
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of releasing the Elastic IP address
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> releaseEC2AddressAsync(String
allocId) {
        ReleaseAddressRequest request = ReleaseAddressRequest.builder()
            .allocationId(allocId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<ReleaseAddressResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().releaseAddress(request);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to release Elastic IP address",
ex);
            }
        });

        return response;
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Runs an EC2 instance asynchronously.
```

```
    *
    * @param instanceType The instance type to use for the EC2 instance.
    * @param keyName The name of the key pair to associate with the EC2 instance.
    * @param groupName The name of the security group to associate with the EC2
instance.
    * @param amiId The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the EC2
instance.
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the started
EC2 instance.
    * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error running the EC2 instance.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> runInstanceAsync(String instanceType, String
keyName, String groupName, String amiId) {
       RunInstancesRequest runRequest = RunInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceType(instanceType)
           .keyName(keyName)
           .securityGroups(groupName)
           .maxCount(1)
           .minCount(1)
           .imageId(amiId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<RunInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().runInstances(runRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenCompose(response -> {
           String instanceIdVal = response.instances().get(0).instanceId();
           System.out.println("Going to start an EC2 instance and use a waiter to
wait for it to be in running state");
           return getAsyncClient().waiter()
               .waitUntilInstanceExists(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
               .thenCompose(waitResponse -> getAsyncClient().waiter()
                   .waitUntilInstanceRunning(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceIdVal))
                   .thenApply(runningResponse -> instanceIdVal));
       }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
           // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to run EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

StartInstances

The following code example shows how to use StartInstances.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Starts an Amazon EC2 instance asynchronously and waits until it is in the
"running" state.
    *
    * @param instanceId the ID of the instance to start
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has been
started and is in the "running" state, or exceptionally if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> startInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
       StartInstancesRequest startRequest = StartInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(instanceId)
           .build();

       Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
           .client(getAsyncClient())
           .build();

       DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(instanceId)
           .build();

       logger.info("Starting instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
run.");
       CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
       return getAsyncClient().startInstances(startRequest)
           .thenCompose(response ->
               ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceRunning(describeRequest)
           )
           .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
               logger.info("Successfully started instance " + instanceId);
```

```
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed to
start instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Stops the EC2 instance with the specified ID asynchronously and waits for the
instance to stop.
     *
     * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to stop
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has been
stopped, or exceptionally if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> stopInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        StopInstancesRequest stopRequest = StopInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();

        DescribeInstancesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeInstancesRequest.builder()
            .instanceIds(instanceId)
            .build();
```

```
        Ec2AsyncWaiter ec2Waiter = Ec2AsyncWaiter.builder()
            .client(getAsyncClient())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> resultFuture = new CompletableFuture<>();
        logger.info("Stopping instance " + instanceId + " and waiting for it to
stop.");
        getAsyncClient().stopInstances(stopRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                if (response.stoppingInstances().isEmpty()) {
                    return CompletableFuture.failedFuture(new RuntimeException("No
instances were stopped. Please check the instance ID: " + instanceId));
                }
                return ec2Waiter.waitUntilInstanceStopped(describeRequest);
            })
            .thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                logger.info("Successfully stopped instance " + instanceId);
                resultFuture.complete(null);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                logger.error("Failed to stop instance " + instanceId + ": " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
                resultFuture.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Failed to
stop instance: " + throwable.getMessage(), throwable));
                return null;
            });

        return resultFuture;
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Terminates an EC2 instance asynchronously and waits for it to reach the
terminated state.
    *
    * @param instanceId the ID of the EC2 instance to terminate
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the instance has been
terminated
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is no response from the AWS SDK or if there
is a failure during the termination process
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Object> terminateEC2Async(String instanceId) {
       TerminateInstancesRequest terminateRequest =
TerminateInstancesRequest.builder()
           .instanceIds(instanceId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<TerminateInstancesResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().terminateInstances(terminateRequest);
       return responseFuture.thenCompose(terminateResponse -> {
           if (terminateResponse == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("No response received for terminating
instance " + instanceId);
           }
           System.out.println("Going to terminate an EC2 instance and use a waiter
to wait for it to be in terminated state");
           return getAsyncClient().waiter()
               .waitUntilInstanceTerminated(r -> r.instanceIds(instanceId))
               .thenApply(waiterResponse -> null);
       }).exceptionally(throwable -> {
           // Handle any exceptions that occurred during the async call
           throw new RuntimeException("Failed to terminate EC2 instance: " +
throwable.getMessage(), throwable);
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
```

```
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof-
bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException, InterruptedException
 {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and Manage
 a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
 resources.");
        in.nextLine();
```

```
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
```

```
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to create
several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore
some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that
each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when an
instance starts.
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);

        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets, targetGroupArn,
lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul = loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(), StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();
```

```
                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group for
your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add it
automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }

            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security group
are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the load
balancer.");
        }
```

```
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and shows
how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager parameter
named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service, let's
set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
```

```
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health checks
don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
       demoChoices(loadBalancer);

       System.out.println(
               """
                       Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                       While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                       """);
       paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

       System.out.println("""
               Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns a
static response.
               The service still reports as healthy because health checks are still
shallow.
               """);
       demoChoices(loadBalancer);

       System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
       paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

       System.out.println("""
               Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
               access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance id
value.
               """);

       LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
       AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

       // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
       templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
       String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
       System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);
```

```
        String profileAssociationId = autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " + profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on for
recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto Scaling
instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the load
balancer to detect the unhealthy
```

```
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint always
returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an auto
scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start a
new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load balancing
rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance is
running and healthy.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
```

```
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
```

```
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load balancer
targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
target.target().id(),
                                        target.target().port(),
target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the health
check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value between
0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }

    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }
```

```
   private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
       if (autoScalingClient == null) {
           autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                   .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                   .build();
       }
       return autoScalingClient;
   }

   /**
    * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
    * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
    */
   public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
       TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
               .builder()
               .instanceId(instanceId)
               .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
               .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
       System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
   }

   /**
    * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
    * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
    * When
    * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
    * server.
    */
   public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
           throws InterruptedException {
       // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
       software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
               .builder()
               .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure 'newInstanceProfileName'
is a valid IAM Instance Profile
```

```
                                                // name.
                .build();

        // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
        ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
                .builder()
                .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
                .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
                .build();

        try {
            getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
            // Handle the response as needed.
        } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
            // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile
%s.", profileAssociationId,
                newInstanceProfileName);
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
        boolean instReady = false;
        int tries = 0;

        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
```

```
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress) {
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
```

```
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);

            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
```

```
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
```

```
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();

            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse = getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);

            for (SecurityGroup secGroup : securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " + secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " + ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }
```

```
                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or to
a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }

    /*
     * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
     * Scaling group.
     * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
     * instances
     * in the group.
     */
    public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
        try {
            AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                    .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                    .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
            System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
    public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {

        // Get availability zones.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
                .builder()
                .build();

        DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
        List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()

.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
        LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                .launchTemplateName(templateName)
                .version("$Default")
                .build();

        String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .launchTemplate(specification)
                .availabilityZones(zones)
                .maxSize(groupSize)
                .minSize(groupSize)
                .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
                .build();

        try {
            getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
        return zones;
    }

    public String getDefaultVPC() {
        // Define the filter.
        Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("is-default")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(defaultFilter)
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
```

```
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }

    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
```

```
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
 InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
 ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
 getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to the
 policy.

 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
```

```
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance profile
 " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
```

```
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
    public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String targetGroupName) {
        DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                .names(targetGroupName)
                .build();

        DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

        DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()
                .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
                .build();

        DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
        return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
    }

    // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
    public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
        DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
        return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
    }

    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
```

```
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load balancer
    // endpoint.
    public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        boolean success = false;
        int retries = 3;
        CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();
```

```
        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
        try {
            while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
                // Execute the request and get the response.
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
                if (statusCode == 200) {
                    success = true;
                } else {
                    retries--;
                    System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
                }
            }

        } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        System.out.println("Status.." + success);
        return success;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId, String
targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();
```

```
        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String targetGroupARN,
String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();
```

```
            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to become
 available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
 loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest = CreateListenerRequest.builder()

 .loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
 DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException {
```

```
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                    .build())
                    .provisionedThroughput(
                            ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                    .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .build())
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");
```

```
            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws IOException
 {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer

- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon ECR.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon ECR

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon ECR.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.EcrClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.ListImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.paginators.ListImagesIterable;

public class HelloECR {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:    <repositoryName>

            Where:
               repositoryName - The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String repoName = args[0];
        EcrClient ecrClient = EcrClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        listImageTags(ecrClient, repoName);
    }
    public static void listImageTags(EcrClient ecrClient, String repoName){
        ListImagesRequest listImagesPaginator = ListImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
```

```
            .build();

        ListImagesIterable imagesIterable =
 ecrClient.listImagesPaginator(listImagesPaginator);
        imagesIterable.stream()
            .flatMap(r -> r.imageIds().stream())
            .forEach(image -> System.out.println("The docker image tag is: "
 +image.imageTag()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon ECR repository.
- Set repository policies.
- Retrieve repository URIs.
- Get Amazon ECR authorization tokens.
- Set lifecycle policies for Amazon ECR repositories.
- Push a Docker image to an Amazon ECR repository.
- Verify the existence of an image in an Amazon ECR repository.
- List Amazon ECR repositories for your account and get details about them.
- Delete Amazon ECR repositories.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon ECR features.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException;

import java.util.Scanner;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This Java code example requires an IAM Role that has permissions to interact with
 the Amazon ECR service.
 *
 * To create an IAM role, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/id_roles_create.html
 *
 * This Java scenario example requires a local docker image named echo-text. Without
 a local image,
 * this Java program will not successfully run. For more information including how
 to create the local
 * image, see:
 *
 * /scenarios/basics/ecr/README
 *
 */
public class ECRScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
            Usage: <iamRoleARN> <accountId>

            Where:
               iamRoleARN - The IAM role ARN that has the necessary permissions to
access and manage the Amazon ECR repository.
               accountId - Your AWS account number.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        ECRActions ecrActions = new ECRActions();
        String iamRole = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        String localImageName;

        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
             The Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is a fully-managed Docker
container registry
             service provided by AWS. It allows developers and organizations to
securely
             store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
             ECR provides a simple and scalable way to manage container images
throughout their lifecycle,
             from building and testing to production deployment.\s

             The `EcrAsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x provides a
set of methods to
             programmatically interact with the Amazon ECR service. This allows
developers to
             automate the storage, retrieval, and management of container images as
part of their application
             deployment pipelines. With ECR, teams can focus on building and
deploying their
             applications without having to worry about the underlying
infrastructure required to
             host and manage a container registry.

            This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this
service.
            Let's get started...
```

```
            You have two choices:
            1 - Run the entire program.
            2 - Delete an existing Amazon ECR repository named echo-text (created
 from a previous execution of
            this program that did not complete).
            """);

        while (true) {
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("1")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("2")) {
                String repoName = "echo-text";
                ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName);
                return;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("""
           1. Create an ECR repository.

           The first task is to ensure we have a local Docker image named echo-
text.
           If this image exists, then an Amazon ECR repository is created.

           An ECR repository is a private Docker container repository provided
           by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is a managed service that makes it easy
           to store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.\s
           """ );

        // Ensure that a local docker image named echo-text exists.
        boolean doesExist = ecrActions.isEchoTextImagePresent();
        String repoName;
        if (!doesExist){
            System.out.println("The local image named echo-text does not exist");
```

```
            return;
        } else {
            localImageName = "echo-text";
            repoName = "echo-text";
        }

        try {
            String repoArn = ecrActions.createECRRepository(repoName);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the ECR repository is " + repoArn);

        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid repository name: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while creating the ECR repository:
" + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        2. Set an ECR repository policy.

        Setting an ECR repository policy using the `setRepositoryPolicy` function is
crucial for maintaining
        the security and integrity of your container images. The repository policy
allows you to
        define specific rules and restrictions for accessing and managing the images
stored within your ECR
        repository.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            ecrActions.setRepoPolicy(repoName, iamRole);

        } catch (RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println("Invalid repository name: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("An error occurred while creating the ECR repository:
" + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        3. Display ECR repository policy.

        Now we will retrieve the ECR policy to ensure it was successfully set.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String policyText = ecrActions.getRepoPolicy(repoName);
            System.out.println("Policy Text:");
            System.out.println(policyText);

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while creating the ECR repository:
" + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        4. Retrieve an ECR authorization token.

        You need an authorization token to securely access and interact with the
Amazon ECR registry.
        The `getAuthorizationToken` method of the `EcrAsyncClient` is responsible
for securely accessing
        and interacting with an Amazon ECR repository. This operation is responsible
for obtaining a
        valid authorization token, which is required to authenticate your requests
to the ECR service.

        Without a valid authorization token, you would not be able to perform any
operations on the
```

```
        ECR repository, such as pushing, pulling, or managing your Docker images.

        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
             ecrActions.getAuthToken();

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while retrieving the authorization
token: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        5. Get the ECR Repository URI.

        The URI  of an Amazon ECR repository is important. When you want to deploy a
container image to
        a container orchestration platform like Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service
(EKS)
        or Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS), you need to specify the full
image URI,
        which includes the ECR repository URI. This allows the container runtime to
pull the
        correct container image from the ECR repository.
       """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            ecrActions.getRepositoryURI(repoName);

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while retrieving the URI: " +
e.getMessage());
            return;
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
            6. Set an ECR Lifecycle Policy.

            An ECR Lifecycle Policy is used to manage the lifecycle of Docker images
stored in your ECR repositories.
            These policies allow you to automatically remove old or unused Docker
images from your repositories,
            freeing up storage space and reducing costs.

            This example policy helps to maintain the size and efficiency of the
container registry
            by automatically removing older and potentially unused images, ensuring
that the
            storage is optimized and the registry remains up-to-date.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            ecrActions.setLifeCyclePolicy(repoName);

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while setting the lifecycle
policy: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
        7. Push a docker image to the Amazon ECR Repository.

        The `pushImageCmd()` method pushes a local Docker image to an Amazon ECR
repository.
        It sets up the Docker client by connecting to the local Docker host using
the default port.
        It then retrieves the authorization token for the ECR repository by making a
call to the AWS SDK.

        The method uses the authorization token to create an `AuthConfig` object,
which is used to authenticate
```

```
        the Docker client when pushing the image. Finally, the method tags the
Docker image with the specified
        repository name and image tag, and then pushes the image to the ECR
repository using the Docker client.
        If the push operation is successful, the method prints a message indicating
that the image was pushed to ECR.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            ecrActions.pushDockerImage(repoName, localImageName);

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred while pushing a local Docker image
to Amazon ECR: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Verify if the image is in the ECR Repository.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            ecrActions.verifyImage(repoName, localImageName);

        } catch (EcrException e) {
            System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. As an optional step, you can interact with the image
in Amazon ECR by using the CLI.");
        System.out.println("Would you like to view instructions on how to use the
CLI to run the image? (y/n)");
        String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            String instructions = """
```

```
            1. Authenticate with ECR - Before you can pull the image from Amazon
 ECR, you need to authenticate with the registry. You can do this using the AWS CLI:

                aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-1 | docker login --
username AWS --password-stdin %s.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com

            2. Describe the image using this command:

               aws ecr describe-images --repository-name %s --image-ids imageTag=%s

            3. Run the Docker container and view the output using this command:

               docker run --rm %s.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/%s:%s
            """;

            instructions = String.format(instructions, accountId, repoName,
 localImageName, accountId, repoName, localImageName);
            System.out.println(instructions);
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Delete the ECR Repository.");
        System.out.println(
        """
        If the repository isn't empty, you must either delete the contents of the
 repository
        or use the force option (used in this scenario) to delete the repository and
 have Amazon ECR delete all of its contents
        on your behalf.
        """);
        System.out.println("Would you like to delete the Amazon ECR Repository? (y/
n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            System.out.println("You selected to delete the AWS ECR resources.");

            try {
                ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName);

            } catch (EcrException e) {
                System.err.println("An ECR exception occurred: " + e.getMessage());
                return;
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
```

```
                System.err.println("An error occurred while deleting the Docker
 image: " + e.getMessage());
                e.printStackTrace();
                return;
            }
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("This concludes the Amazon ECR SDK scenario");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

   private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
       while (true) {
           System.out.println("");
           System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
           String input = scanner.nextLine();

           if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
               System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
               System.out.println("");
               break;
           } else {
               // Handle invalid input.
               System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
          }
       }
   }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon ECR SDK methods.

```
import com.github.dockerjava.api.DockerClient;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.exception.DockerClientException;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.model.AuthConfig;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.model.Image;
import com.github.dockerjava.core.DockerClientBuilder;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.EcrAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.AuthorizationData;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.CreateRepositoryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.CreateRepositoryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DeleteRepositoryRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DeleteRepositoryResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeImagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeImagesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeRepositoriesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.DescribeRepositoriesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.EcrException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.GetAuthorizationTokenResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.GetRepositoryPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.GetRepositoryPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.ImageIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.Repository;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.SetRepositoryPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.SetRepositoryPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecr.model.StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse;
import com.github.dockerjava.api.command.DockerCmdExecFactory;
import com.github.dockerjava.netty.NettyDockerCmdExecFactory;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

public class ECRActions {
    private static EcrAsyncClient ecrClient;

    private static DockerClient dockerClient;

    private static Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(ECRActions.class);

    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an empty
 string if the operation failed.
```

```
    * @throws IllegalArgumentException     If repository name is invalid.
    * @throws RuntimeException             if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
    */
   public String createECRRepository(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       CreateRepositoryRequest request = CreateRepositoryRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createRepository(request);
       try {
           CreateRepositoryResponse result = response.join();
           if (result != null) {
               System.out.println("The " + repoName + " repository was created
successfully.");
               return result.repository().repositoryArn();
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected response type");
           }
       } catch (CompletionException e) {
           Throwable cause = e.getCause();
           if (cause instanceof EcrException ex) {
               if
("RepositoryAlreadyExistsException".equals(ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode())) {
                   System.out.println("The Amazon ECR repository already exists,
moving on...");
                   DescribeRepositoriesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
                       .repositoryNames(repoName)
                       .build();
                   DescribeRepositoriesResponse describeResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(describeRequest).join();
                   return describeResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryArn();
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException(ex);
               }
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException(e);
```

```
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the repository name is null or empty.
     * @throws EcrException if there is an error deleting the repository.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs during the deletion
process.
     */
    public void deleteECRRepository(String repoName) {
        if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
            throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
        }

        DeleteRepositoryRequest repositoryRequest =
DeleteRepositoryRequest.builder()
            .force(true)
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteRepository(repositoryRequest);
        response.whenComplete((deleteRepositoryResponse, ex) -> {
            if (deleteRepositoryResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted the " + repoName +
" repository");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete
        response.join();
```

```
    }



    private static DockerClient getDockerClient() {
        String osName = System.getProperty("os.name");
        if (osName.startsWith("Windows")) {
            // Make sure Docker Desktop is running.
            String dockerHost = "tcp://localhost:2375"; // Use the Docker Desktop
default port.
            DockerCmdExecFactory dockerCmdExecFactory = new
NettyDockerCmdExecFactory().withReadTimeout(20000).withConnectTimeout(20000);
            dockerClient =
DockerClientBuilder.getInstance(dockerHost).withDockerCmdExecFactory(dockerCmdExecFactory).
        } else {
            dockerClient = DockerClientBuilder.getInstance().build();
        }
        return dockerClient;
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) client.
     *
     * @return the configured ECR asynchronous client.
     */
    private static EcrAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {

        /*
         The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
         and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP client
for interacting with AWS services.
         It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network communication
and the Java NIO API to
         provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
         */
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
            .build();
```

```
        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
 timeout.
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the individual
 call attempt timeout.
            .build();

        if (ecrClient == null) {
            ecrClient = EcrAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return ecrClient;
    }

    /**
     * Sets the lifecycle policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository for which to set the lifecycle
 policy.
     */
    public void setLifeCyclePolicy(String repoName) {
        /*
           This policy helps to maintain the size and efficiency of the container
 registry
           by automatically removing older and potentially unused images,
           ensuring that the storage is optimized and the registry remains up-to-
date.
         */
        String polText = """
             {
             "rules": [
                 {
                     "rulePriority": 1,
                     "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                     "selection": {
                         "tagStatus": "any",
                         "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                         "countUnit": "days",
                         "countNumber": 14
```

```
                    },
                    "action": {
                        "type": "expire"
                    }
                }
            ]
            }
            """;

        StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest =
StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest.builder()
            .lifecyclePolicyText(polText)
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().startLifecyclePolicyPreview(lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest);
        response.whenComplete((lifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse, ex) -> {
            if (lifecyclePolicyPreviewResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Lifecycle policy preview started
successfully.");
            } else {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
                }
            }
        });
        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }

    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     * @throws EcrException             if there is an error retrieving the image
information from Amazon ECR.
```

```
     * @throws CompletionException      if the asynchronous operation completes
 exceptionally.
     */
    public void verifyImage(String repositoryName, String imageTag) {
        DescribeImagesRequest request = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repositoryName)
            .imageIds(ImageIdentifier.builder().imageTag(imageTag).build())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeImagesResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().describeImages(request);
        response.whenComplete((describeImagesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof CompletionException) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                        throw (EcrException) cause;
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 ex.getCause());
                }
            } else if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails().isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("Image is present in the repository.");
            } else {
                System.out.println("Image is not present in the repository.");
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
     * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     * @throws EcrException        if there is an error retrieving the repository
 information.
```

```
    * @throws CompletionException if the asynchronous operation completes
exceptionally.
    */
   public void getRepositoryURI(String repoName) {
       DescribeRepositoriesRequest request = DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
           .repositoryNames(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeRepositoriesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(request);
       response.whenComplete((describeRepositoriesResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof InterruptedException) {
                   Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                   String errorMessage = "Thread interrupted while waiting for
asynchronous operation: " + cause.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
               } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) cause;
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
               }
           } else {
               if (describeRepositoriesResponse != null) {
                   if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().isEmpty()) {
                       String repositoryUri =
describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryUri();
                       System.out.println("Repository URI found: " +
repositoryUri);
                   } else {
                       System.out.println("No repositories found for the given
name.");
                   }
               } else {
                   System.err.println("No response received from
describeRepositories.");
               }
           }
       });
       response.join();
   }
```

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
    * This method makes an asynchronous call to the ECR client to retrieve the
authorization token.
    * If the operation is successful, the method prints the token to the console.
    * If an exception occurs, the method handles the exception and prints the error
message.
    *
    * @throws EcrException     if there is an error retrieving the authorization
token from ECR.
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the
operation.
    */
   public void getAuthToken() {
       CompletableFuture<GetAuthorizationTokenResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken();
       response.whenComplete((authorizationTokenResponse, ex) -> {
           if (authorizationTokenResponse != null) {
               AuthorizationData authorizationData =
authorizationTokenResponse.authorizationData().get(0);
               String token = authorizationData.authorizationToken();
               if (!token.isEmpty()) {
                   System.out.println("The token was successfully retrieved.");
               }
           } else {
               if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex); // Rethrow the
exception
               }
           }
       });
       response.join();
   }

   /**
    * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository.
```

```
    * @throws EcrException if an AWS error occurs while getting the repository
policy.
    */
   public String getRepoPolicy(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       GetRepositoryPolicyRequest getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
GetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<GetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               System.out.println("Repository policy retrieved successfully.");
           } else {
               if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
               }
           }
       });

       GetRepositoryPolicyResponse result = response.join();
       return result != null ? result.policyText() : null;
   }

   /**
    * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
    * @param iamRole  the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
    * @throws RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException if the repository policy does not
exist.
    * @throws EcrException                      if there is an unexpected error
setting the repository policy.
    */
```

```
   public void setRepoPolicy(String repoName, String iamRole) {
       /*
         This example policy document grants the specified AWS principal the
permission to perform the
         `ecr:BatchGetImage` action. This policy is designed to allow the specified
principal
         to retrieve Docker images from the ECR repository.
        */
       String policyDocumentTemplate = """
            {
             "Version" : "2012-10-17",
             "Statement" : [ {
               "Sid" : "new statement",
               "Effect" : "Allow",
               "Principal" : {
                 "AWS" : "%s"
               },
               "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
             } ]
           }
            """;

       String policyDocument = String.format(policyDocumentTemplate, iamRole);
       SetRepositoryPolicyRequest setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
SetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .policyText(policyDocument)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<SetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               System.out.println("Repository policy set successfully.");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) {
                   throw (RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) cause;
               } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) cause;
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
               }
```

```
            }
        });
        response.join();
    }

    /**
     * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
     *
     * @param repoName  the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
     * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
     */
    public void pushDockerImage(String repoName, String imageName) {
        System.out.println("Pushing " + imageName + " to Amazon ECR will take a few
seconds.");
        CompletableFuture<AuthConfig> authResponseFuture =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken()
            .thenApply(response -> {
                String token =
response.authorizationData().get(0).authorizationToken();
                String decodedToken = new String(Base64.getDecoder().decode(token));
                String password = decodedToken.substring(4);

                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
                assert repoData != null;
                String registryURL = repoData.repositoryUri().split("/")[0];

                AuthConfig authConfig = new AuthConfig()
                    .withUsername("AWS")
                    .withPassword(password)
                    .withRegistryAddress(registryURL);
                return authConfig;
            })
            .thenCompose(authConfig -> {
                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
```

```
                getDockerClient().tagImageCmd(imageName + ":latest",
 repoData.repositoryUri() + ":latest", imageName).exec();
                try {

 getDockerClient().pushImageCmd(repoData.repositoryUri()).withTag("echo-
text").withAuthConfig(authConfig).start().awaitCompletion();
                    System.out.println("The " + imageName + " was pushed to ECR");

                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw (RuntimeException) e.getCause();
                }
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(authConfig);
            });

        authResponseFuture.join();
    }

    // Make sure local image echo-text exists.
    public boolean isEchoTextImagePresent() {
        try {
            List<Image> images = getDockerClient().listImagesCmd().exec();
            boolean helloWorldFound = false;
            for (Image image : images) {
                String[] repoTags = image.getRepoTags();
                if (repoTags != null) {
                    for (String tag : repoTags) {
                        if (tag.startsWith("echo-text")) {
                            System.out.println(tag);
                            helloWorldFound = true;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            if (helloWorldFound) {
                System.out.println("The local image named echo-text exists.");
                return true;
            } else {
                System.out.println("The local image named echo-text does not
 exist.");
                return false;
            }
        } catch (DockerClientException ex) {
            logger.error("ERROR: " + ex.getMessage());
            return false;
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateRepository
  - DeleteRepository
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeRepositories
  - GetAuthorizationToken
  - GetRepositoryPolicy
  - SetRepositoryPolicy
  - StartLifecyclePolicyPreview

Actions

`CreateRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRepository`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an empty
string if the operation failed.
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException     If repository name is invalid.
     * @throws RuntimeException             if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
```

```
    */
   public String createECRRepository(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       CreateRepositoryRequest request = CreateRepositoryRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createRepository(request);
       try {
           CreateRepositoryResponse result = response.join();
           if (result != null) {
               System.out.println("The " + repoName + " repository was created
successfully.");
               return result.repository().repositoryArn();
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected response type");
           }
       } catch (CompletionException e) {
           Throwable cause = e.getCause();
           if (cause instanceof EcrException ex) {
               if
("RepositoryAlreadyExistsException".equals(ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode())) {
                   System.out.println("The Amazon ECR repository already exists,
moving on...");
                   DescribeRepositoriesRequest describeRequest =
DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
                       .repositoryNames(repoName)
                       .build();
                   DescribeRepositoriesResponse describeResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(describeRequest).join();
                   return describeResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryArn();
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException(ex);
               }
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException(e);
           }
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRepository`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
    * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the repository name is null or empty.
    * @throws EcrException if there is an error deleting the repository.
    * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs during the deletion
process.
    */
   public void deleteECRRepository(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       DeleteRepositoryRequest repositoryRequest =
DeleteRepositoryRequest.builder()
           .force(true)
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteRepositoryResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteRepository(repositoryRequest);
       response.whenComplete((deleteRepositoryResponse, ex) -> {
           if (deleteRepositoryResponse != null) {
```

```
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted the " + repoName +
" repository");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     * @throws EcrException             if there is an error retrieving the image
information from Amazon ECR.
     * @throws CompletionException      if the asynchronous operation completes
exceptionally.
```

```
     */
    public void verifyImage(String repositoryName, String imageTag) {
        DescribeImagesRequest request = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repositoryName)
            .imageIds(ImageIdentifier.builder().imageTag(imageTag).build())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeImagesResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().describeImages(request);
        response.whenComplete((describeImagesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof CompletionException) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                        throw (EcrException) cause;
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 ex.getCause());
                }
            } else if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails().isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("Image is present in the repository.");
            } else {
                System.out.println("Image is not present in the repository.");
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeRepositories`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRepositories`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
    * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
    * @throws EcrException        if there is an error retrieving the repository
information.
    * @throws CompletionException if the asynchronous operation completes
exceptionally.
    */
   public void getRepositoryURI(String repoName) {
       DescribeRepositoriesRequest request = DescribeRepositoriesRequest.builder()
           .repositoryNames(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DescribeRepositoriesResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(request);
       response.whenComplete((describeRepositoriesResponse, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof InterruptedException) {
                   Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                   String errorMessage = "Thread interrupted while waiting for
asynchronous operation: " + cause.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
               } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) cause;
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
               }
           } else {
               if (describeRepositoriesResponse != null) {
                   if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().isEmpty()) {
```

```
                        String repositoryUri =
describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories().get(0).repositoryUri();
                        System.out.println("Repository URI found: " +
repositoryUri);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No repositories found for the given
name.");
                    }
                } else {
                    System.err.println("No response received from
describeRepositories.");
                }
            }
        });
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetAuthorizationToken`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAuthorizationToken`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
     * This method makes an asynchronous call to the ECR client to retrieve the
authorization token.
     * If the operation is successful, the method prints the token to the console.
     * If an exception occurs, the method handles the exception and prints the error
message.
     *
```

```
    * @throws EcrException     if there is an error retrieving the authorization
token from ECR.
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is an unexpected error during the
operation.
    */
   public void getAuthToken() {
       CompletableFuture<GetAuthorizationTokenResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken();
       response.whenComplete((authorizationTokenResponse, ex) -> {
           if (authorizationTokenResponse != null) {
               AuthorizationData authorizationData =
authorizationTokenResponse.authorizationData().get(0);
               String token = authorizationData.authorizationToken();
               if (!token.isEmpty()) {
                   System.out.println("The token was successfully retrieved.");
               }
           } else {
               if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex); // Rethrow the
exception
               }
           }
       });
       response.join();
   }
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetRepositoryPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `GetRepositoryPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository.
    * @throws EcrException if an AWS error occurs while getting the repository
policy.
    */
   public String getRepoPolicy(String repoName) {
       if (repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty()) {
           throw new IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty");
       }

       GetRepositoryPolicyRequest getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
GetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
           .repositoryName(repoName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<GetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest);
       response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (resp != null) {
               System.out.println("Repository policy retrieved successfully.");
           } else {
               if (ex.getCause() instanceof EcrException) {
                   throw (EcrException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   String errorMessage = "Unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage();
                   throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, ex);
               }
           }
       });
```

```
        GetRepositoryPolicyResponse result = response.join();
        return result != null ? result.policyText() : null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PushImageCmd`

The following code example shows how to use `PushImageCmd`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
    *
    * @param repoName  the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
    * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
    */
   public void pushDockerImage(String repoName, String imageName) {
       System.out.println("Pushing " + imageName + " to Amazon ECR will take a few
seconds.");
       CompletableFuture<AuthConfig> authResponseFuture =
getAsyncClient().getAuthorizationToken()
           .thenApply(response -> {
               String token =
response.authorizationData().get(0).authorizationToken();
               String decodedToken = new String(Base64.getDecoder().decode(token));
               String password = decodedToken.substring(4);

               DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
               Repository repoData =
descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
```

```
                assert repoData != null;
                String registryURL = repoData.repositoryUri().split("/")[0];

                AuthConfig authConfig = new AuthConfig()
                    .withUsername("AWS")
                    .withPassword(password)
                    .withRegistryAddress(registryURL);
                return authConfig;
            })
            .thenCompose(authConfig -> {
                DescribeRepositoriesResponse descrRepoResponse =
 getAsyncClient().describeRepositories(b -> b.repositoryNames(repoName)).join();
                Repository repoData =
 descrRepoResponse.repositories().stream().filter(r ->
 r.repositoryName().equals(repoName)).findFirst().orElse(null);
                getDockerClient().tagImageCmd(imageName + ":latest",
 repoData.repositoryUri() + ":latest", imageName).exec();
                try {

 getDockerClient().pushImageCmd(repoData.repositoryUri()).withTag("echo-
text").withAuthConfig(authConfig).start().awaitCompletion();
                    System.out.println("The " + imageName + " was pushed to ECR");

                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw (RuntimeException) e.getCause();
                }
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(authConfig);
            });

        authResponseFuture.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see PushImageCmd in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SetRepositoryPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `SetRepositoryPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
    * @param iamRole  the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
    * @throws RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException if the repository policy does not
exist.
    * @throws EcrException                      if there is an unexpected error
setting the repository policy.
    */
   public void setRepoPolicy(String repoName, String iamRole) {
       /*
         This example policy document grants the specified AWS principal the
permission to perform the
         `ecr:BatchGetImage` action. This policy is designed to allow the specified
principal
         to retrieve Docker images from the ECR repository.
        */
       String policyDocumentTemplate = """
            {
             "Version" : "2012-10-17",
             "Statement" : [ {
               "Sid" : "new statement",
               "Effect" : "Allow",
               "Principal" : {
                 "AWS" : "%s"
               },
               "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
             } ]
           }
            """;

       String policyDocument = String.format(policyDocumentTemplate, iamRole);
```

```
        SetRepositoryPolicyRequest setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
SetRepositoryPolicyRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repoName)
            .policyText(policyDocument)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SetRepositoryPolicyResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest);
        response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                System.out.println("Repository policy set successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) {
                    throw (RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException) cause;
                } else if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                    throw (EcrException) cause;
                } else {
                    String errorMessage = "Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage();
                    throw new RuntimeException(errorMessage, cause);
                }
            }
        });
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartLifecyclePolicyPreview`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLifecyclePolicyPreview`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
 (Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     * @throws EcrException             if there is an error retrieving the image
 information from Amazon ECR.
     * @throws CompletionException      if the asynchronous operation completes
 exceptionally.
     */
    public void verifyImage(String repositoryName, String imageTag) {
        DescribeImagesRequest request = DescribeImagesRequest.builder()
            .repositoryName(repositoryName)
            .imageIds(ImageIdentifier.builder().imageTag(imageTag).build())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeImagesResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().describeImages(request);
        response.whenComplete((describeImagesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof CompletionException) {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof EcrException) {
                        throw (EcrException) cause;
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 ex.getCause());
                }
            } else if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails().isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("Image is present in the repository.");
            } else {
                System.out.println("Image is not present in the repository.");
            }
        });

        // Wait for the CompletableFuture to complete.
        response.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see StartLifecyclePolicyPreview in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon ECS examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon ECS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ExecuteCommandConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ExecuteCommandLogging;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ClusterConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateClusterRequest;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateCluster {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <clusterName>\s

                Where:
                   clusterName - The name of the ECS cluster to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String clusterArn = createGivenCluster(ecsClient, clusterName);
        System.out.println("The cluster ARN is " + clusterArn);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static String createGivenCluster(EcsClient ecsClient, String clusterName)
 {
        try {
            ExecuteCommandConfiguration commandConfiguration =
 ExecuteCommandConfiguration.builder()
                    .logging(ExecuteCommandLogging.DEFAULT)
                    .build();
```

```
            ClusterConfiguration clusterConfiguration =
 ClusterConfiguration.builder()
                    .executeCommandConfiguration(commandConfiguration)
                    .build();

            CreateClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateClusterRequest.builder()
                    .clusterName(clusterName)
                    .configuration(clusterConfiguration)
                    .build();

            CreateClusterResponse response =
 ecsClient.createCluster(clusterRequest);
            return response.cluster().clusterArn();

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateService`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateService`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.AwsVpcConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.NetworkConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateServiceRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.LaunchType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.CreateServiceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateService {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:
                                  <clusterName> <serviceName> <securityGroups>
 <subnets> <taskDefinition>

                                Where:
                                  clusterName - The name of the ECS cluster.
                                  serviceName - The name of the ECS service to
 create.
                                  securityGroups - The name of the security group.
                                  subnets - The name of the subnet.
                                  taskDefinition - The name of the task definition.
                                """;

                if (args.length != 5) {
                        System.out.println(usage);
                        System.exit(1);
                }

                String clusterName = args[0];
                String serviceName = args[1];
                String securityGroups = args[2];
                String subnets = args[3];
                String taskDefinition = args[4];
                Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
                EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                                .region(region)
                                .build();
```

```
                String serviceArn = createNewService(ecsClient, clusterName,
serviceName, securityGroups, subnets,
                                taskDefinition);
                System.out.println("The ARN of the service is " + serviceArn);
                ecsClient.close();
        }

        public static String createNewService(EcsClient ecsClient,
                        String clusterName,
                        String serviceName,
                        String securityGroups,
                        String subnets,
                        String taskDefinition) {

                try {
                        AwsVpcConfiguration vpcConfiguration =
AwsVpcConfiguration.builder()
                                        .securityGroups(securityGroups)
                                        .subnets(subnets)
                                        .build();

                        NetworkConfiguration configuration =
NetworkConfiguration.builder()
                                        .awsvpcConfiguration(vpcConfiguration)
                                        .build();

                        CreateServiceRequest serviceRequest =
CreateServiceRequest.builder()
                                        .cluster(clusterName)
                                        .networkConfiguration(configuration)
                                        .desiredCount(1)
                                        .launchType(LaunchType.FARGATE)
                                        .serviceName(serviceName)
                                        .taskDefinition(taskDefinition)
                                        .build();

                        CreateServiceResponse response =
ecsClient.createService(serviceRequest);
                        return response.service().serviceArn();

                } catch (EcsException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
```

```
                return "";
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateService in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteService`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteService`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DeleteServiceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class DeleteService {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <clusterName> <serviceArn>\s

                Where:
                  clusterName - The name of the ECS cluster.
```

```
                  serviceArn - The ARN of the ECS service.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterName = args[0];
        String serviceArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteSpecificService(ecsClient, clusterName, serviceArn);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSpecificService(EcsClient ecsClient, String
 clusterName, String serviceArn) {
        try {
            DeleteServiceRequest serviceRequest = DeleteServiceRequest.builder()
                    .cluster(clusterName)
                    .service(serviceArn)
                    .build();

            ecsClient.deleteService(serviceRequest);
            System.out.println("The Service was successfully deleted");

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteService in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeClustersRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeClustersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.Cluster;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <clusterArn> \s

                Where:
                  clusterArn - The ARN of the ECS cluster to describe.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterArn = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
```

```
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        descCluster(ecsClient, clusterArn);
    }

    public static void descCluster(EcsClient ecsClient, String clusterArn) {
        try {
            DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest =
 DescribeClustersRequest.builder()
                    .clusters(clusterArn)
                    .build();

            DescribeClustersResponse response =
 ecsClient.describeClusters(clustersRequest);
            List<Cluster> clusters = response.clusters();
            for (Cluster cluster : clusters) {
                System.out.println("The cluster name is " + cluster.clusterName());
            }

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeTasks`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTasks`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeTasksRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.DescribeTasksResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.Task;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListTaskDefinitions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                  <clusterArn> <taskId>\s

                Where:
                  clusterArn - The ARN of an ECS cluster.
                  taskId - The task Id value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterArn = args[0];
        String taskId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getAllTasks(ecsClient, clusterArn, taskId);
        ecsClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void getAllTasks(EcsClient ecsClient, String clusterArn, String
 taskId) {
        try {
            DescribeTasksRequest tasksRequest = DescribeTasksRequest.builder()
                    .cluster(clusterArn)
                    .tasks(taskId)
                    .build();

            DescribeTasksResponse response = ecsClient.describeTasks(tasksRequest);
            List<Task> tasks = response.tasks();
            for (Task task : tasks) {
                System.out.println("The task ARN is " + task.taskDefinitionArn());
            }

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTasks in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `ListClusters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.ListClustersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
```

```
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class ListClusters {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllClusters(ecsClient);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllClusters(EcsClient ecsClient) {
        try {
            ListClustersResponse response = ecsClient.listClusters();
            List<String> clusters = response.clusterArns();
            for (String cluster : clusters) {
                System.out.println("The cluster arn is " + cluster);
            }

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateService`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateService`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.EcsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.EcsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ecs.model.UpdateServiceRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class UpdateService {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <clusterName> <serviceArn>\s

                Where:
                  clusterName - The cluster name.
                  serviceArn - The service ARN value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String clusterName = args[0];
```

```
        String serviceArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EcsClient ecsClient = EcsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateSpecificService(ecsClient, clusterName, serviceArn);
        ecsClient.close();
    }

    public static void updateSpecificService(EcsClient ecsClient, String
 clusterName, String serviceArn) {
        try {
            UpdateServiceRequest serviceRequest = UpdateServiceRequest.builder()
                    .cluster(clusterName)
                    .service(serviceArn)
                    .desiredCount(0)
                    .build();

            ecsClient.updateService(serviceRequest);
            System.out.println("The service was modified");

        } catch (EcsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateService in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Elastic Load Balancing

The following code examples show how to get started using Elastic Load Balancing.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloLoadBalancer {

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client loadBalancingV2Client =
 ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                                .build();

                DescribeLoadBalancersResponse loadBalancersResponse =
 loadBalancingV2Client
                                .describeLoadBalancers(r -> r.pageSize(10));
                List<LoadBalancer> loadBalancerList =
 loadBalancersResponse.loadBalancers();
                for (LoadBalancer lb : loadBalancerList)
                        System.out.println("Load Balancer DNS name = " +
 lb.dnsName());
        }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateListener`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateListener`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /*
    * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
    * subnets
    * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
    */
   public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String targetGroupARN,
String lbName, int port,
           String protocol) {
       try {
           List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                   .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

           CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                   .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                   .name(lbName)
                   .scheme("internet-facing")
                   .build();

           // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
           CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
           String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();
```

```
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to become
available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest = CreateListenerRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
```

```
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String targetGroupARN,
String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();
```

```
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to become
available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");

            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest = CreateListenerRequest.builder()

.loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
```

```
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTargetGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId, String
targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
```

```
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
```

```
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTargetGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeTargetHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTargetHealth`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
   public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String targetGroupName) {
       DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
               .names(targetGroupName)
               .build();

       DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

       DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()
               .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
               .build();

       DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
       return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
```

```
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof-
bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException, InterruptedException
 {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and Manage
 a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
 resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
```

```
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
```

```
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to create
several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore
some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that
each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when an
instance starts.
```

```
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);

        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
```

```
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets, targetGroupArn,
lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul = loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(), StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
```

```
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group for
your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add it
automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }

            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security group
are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the load
balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
```

```
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and shows
how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager parameter
named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service, let's
set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health checks
don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                        While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                        """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns a
static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are still
shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance id
value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId = autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " + profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
```

```
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on for
recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto Scaling
instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the load
balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint always
returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an auto
scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start a
new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load balancing
rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance is
running and healthy.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
```

```
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
```

```
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load balancer
 targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
 loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
 target.target().id(),
                                        target.target().port(),
 target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the health
 check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value between
 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }

    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
    public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
                .builder()
                .instanceId(instanceId)
                .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
        System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
    }

    /**
     * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
     * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
     * When
     * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
     * server.
     */
    public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
            throws InterruptedException {
        // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
                .builder()
                .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure 'newInstanceProfileName'
is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                              // name.
                .build();

        // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
```

```
        ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
                .builder()
                .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
                .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
                .build();

        try {
            getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
            // Handle the response as needed.
        } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
            // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile
%s.", profileAssociationId,
                newInstanceProfileName);
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
        boolean instReady = false;
        int tries = 0;

        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
```

```
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress) {
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();
```

```
            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);

            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");
```

```
        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();
```

```
            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse = getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);

            for (SecurityGroup secGroup : securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " + secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " + ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or to
a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
```

```
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }

    /*
     * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
     * Scaling group.
     * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
     * instances
     * in the group.
     */
    public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
        try {
            AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                    .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                    .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
            System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
    public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {
```

```
        // Get availability zones.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
                .builder()
                .build();

        DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
        List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()

.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
        LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                .launchTemplateName(templateName)
                .version("$Default")
                .build();

        String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .launchTemplate(specification)
                .availabilityZones(zones)
                .maxSize(groupSize)
                .minSize(groupSize)
                .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
                .build();

        try {
            getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
        return zones;
    }
```

```
    public String getDefaultVPC() {
        // Define the filter.
        Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("is-default")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(defaultFilter)
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }
```

```
   // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
   public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
       DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
               .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
               .build();

       DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
       AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
       List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
               .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
               .collect(Collectors.toList());

       String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
       for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
           System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
           return instanceId;
       }
       return "";
   }

   // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
   public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
       Filter filter = Filter.builder()
               .name("instance-id")
               .values(instanceId)
               .build();

       DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
               .builder()
               .filters(filter)
               .build();

       DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
               .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
       return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
   }

   public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
InstanceProfile) {
       ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
```

```
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
 getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to the
 policy.

 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
```

```
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance profile
 " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
```

```
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
    public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String targetGroupName) {
        DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                .names(targetGroupName)
                .build();

        DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

        DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()
                .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
                .build();

        DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
        return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
    }

    // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
    public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
        DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
        return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
    }

    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();
```

```
            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load balancer
    // endpoint.
    public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        boolean success = false;
        int retries = 3;
        CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
        try {
            while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
                // Execute the request and get the response.
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
```

```
                int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
                if (statusCode == 200) {
                    success = true;
                } else {
                    retries--;
                    System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
                }
            }

        } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        System.out.println("Status.." + success);
        return success;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId, String
targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
```

```
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String targetGroupARN,
String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to become
available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");
```

```
            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest = CreateListenerRequest.builder()

 .loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
```

```
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException {
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
```

```
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                    .build())
                    .provisionedThroughput(
                            ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                    .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .build())
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
```

```
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws IOException
 {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
```

```
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer

- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

MediaStore examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with MediaStore.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateContainer`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContainer`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateContainer {
    public static long sleepTime = 10;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <containerName>

                Where:
                   containerName - The name of the container to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createMediaContainer(mediaStoreClient, containerName);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }


    public static void createMediaContainer(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient,
 String containerName) {
        try {
            CreateContainerRequest containerRequest =
 CreateContainerRequest.builder()
                    .containerName(containerName)
                    .build();

            CreateContainerResponse containerResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.createContainer(containerRequest);
            String status = containerResponse.container().status().toString();
            while (!status.equalsIgnoreCase("Active")) {
                status = DescribeContainer.checkContainer(mediaStoreClient,
 containerName);
                System.out.println("Status - " + status);
                Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
            }

            System.out.println("The container ARN value is " +
 containerResponse.container().arn());
            System.out.println("Finished ");

        } catch (MediaStoreException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateContainer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteContainer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteContainer`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.CreateContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateContainer {
    public static long sleepTime = 10;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <containerName>

                Where:
                   containerName - The name of the container to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createMediaContainer(mediaStoreClient, containerName);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }


    public static void createMediaContainer(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient,
 String containerName) {
        try {
            CreateContainerRequest containerRequest =
 CreateContainerRequest.builder()
                    .containerName(containerName)
                    .build();

            CreateContainerResponse containerResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.createContainer(containerRequest);
            String status = containerResponse.container().status().toString();
            while (!status.equalsIgnoreCase("Active")) {
                status = DescribeContainer.checkContainer(mediaStoreClient,
 containerName);
                System.out.println("Status - " + status);
                Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
            }

            System.out.println("The container ARN value is " +
 containerResponse.container().arn());
            System.out.println("Finished ");

        } catch (MediaStoreException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteContainer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.MediaStoreDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.MediaStoreDataException;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws URISyntaxException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <completePath> <containerName>

                Where:
                   completePath - The path (including the container) of the item to
 delete.
                   containerName - The name of the container.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String completePath = args[0];
        String containerName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        URI uri = new URI(getEndpoint(containerName));

        MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData = MediaStoreDataClient.builder()
                .endpointOverride(uri)
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteMediaObject(mediaStoreData, completePath);
        mediaStoreData.close();
    }

    public static void deleteMediaObject(MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData, String
completePath) {
        try {
            DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                    .path(completePath)
                    .build();

            mediaStoreData.deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);

        } catch (MediaStoreDataException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    private static String getEndpoint(String containerName) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerRequest containerRequest =
DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                .containerName(containerName)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerResponse response =
mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(containerRequest);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
```

```
        return response.container().endpoint();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeContainer`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeContainer`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeContainer {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <containerName>

                Where:
                   containerName - The name of the container to describe.
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Status is " + checkContainer(mediaStoreClient,
 containerName));
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }

    public static String checkContainer(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient, String
 containerName) {
        try {
            DescribeContainerRequest describeContainerRequest =
 DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                    .containerName(containerName)
                    .build();

            DescribeContainerResponse containerResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(describeContainerRequest);
            System.out.println("The container name is " +
 containerResponse.container().name());
            System.out.println("The container ARN is " +
 containerResponse.container().arn());
            return containerResponse.container().status().toString();

        } catch (MediaStoreException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeContainer in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetObject

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseInputStream;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.MediaStoreDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.MediaStoreDataException;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws URISyntaxException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <completePath> <containerName> <savePath>

                Where:
```

```
                  completePath - The path of the object in the container (for
example, Videos5/sampleVideo.mp4).
                  containerName - The name of the container.
                  savePath - The path on the local drive where the file is saved,
including the file name (for example, C:/AWS/myvid.mp4).
               """;

       if (args.length != 3) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String completePath = args[0];
       String containerName = args[1];
       String savePath = args[2];

       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       URI uri = new URI(getEndpoint(containerName));
       MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData = MediaStoreDataClient.builder()
               .endpointOverride(uri)
               .region(region)
               .build();

       getMediaObject(mediaStoreData, completePath, savePath);
       mediaStoreData.close();
   }

   public static void getMediaObject(MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData, String
completePath, String savePath) {

       try {
           GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                   .path(completePath)
                   .build();

           // Write out the data to a file.
           ResponseInputStream<GetObjectResponse> data =
mediaStoreData.getObject(objectRequest);
           byte[] buffer = new byte[data.available()];
           data.read(buffer);

           File targetFile = new File(savePath);
           OutputStream outStream = new FileOutputStream(targetFile);
           outStream.write(buffer);
```

```
            System.out.println("The data was written to " + savePath);

        } catch (MediaStoreDataException | IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    private static String getEndpoint(String containerName) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerRequest containerRequest =
 DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                .containerName(containerName)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerResponse response =
 mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(containerRequest);
        return response.container().endpoint();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListContainers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContainers`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.Container;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.ListContainersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.MediaStoreException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListContainers {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllContainers(mediaStoreClient);
        mediaStoreClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllContainers(MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient) {
        try {
            ListContainersResponse containersResponse =
 mediaStoreClient.listContainers();
            List<Container> containers = containersResponse.containers();
            for (Container container : containers) {
                System.out.println("Container name is " + container.name());
            }

        } catch (MediaStoreException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListContainers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.MediaStoreClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.MediaStoreDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.MediaStoreDataException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastoredata.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediastore.model.DescribeContainerResponse;
import java.io.File;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PutObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws URISyntaxException {
        final String USAGE = """

                To run this example, supply the name of a container, a file location
 to use, and path in the container\s
```

```
                Ex: <containerName> <filePath> <completePath>
                """;

        if (args.length < 3) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String containerName = args[0];
        String filePath = args[1];
        String completePath = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        URI uri = new URI(getEndpoint(containerName));
        MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData = MediaStoreDataClient.builder()
                .endpointOverride(uri)
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putMediaObject(mediaStoreData, filePath, completePath);
        mediaStoreData.close();
    }

    public static void putMediaObject(MediaStoreDataClient mediaStoreData, String
filePath, String completePath) {
        try {
            File myFile = new File(filePath);
            RequestBody requestBody = RequestBody.fromFile(myFile);

            PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .path(completePath)
                    .contentType("video/mp4")
                    .build();

            PutObjectResponse response = mediaStoreData.putObject(objectRequest,
requestBody);
            System.out.println("The saved object is " +
response.storageClass().toString());

        } catch (MediaStoreDataException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static String getEndpoint(String containerName) {

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        MediaStoreClient mediaStoreClient = MediaStoreClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerRequest containerRequest =
 DescribeContainerRequest.builder()
                .containerName(containerName)
                .build();

        DescribeContainerResponse response =
 mediaStoreClient.describeContainer(containerRequest);
        return response.container().endpoint();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS Entity Resolution examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS Entity Resolution.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Entity Resolution

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Entity Resolution.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloEntityResoultion {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloEntityResoultion.class);

    private static EntityResolutionAsyncClient entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listMatchingWorkflows();
    }

    public static EntityResolutionAsyncClient getResolutionAsyncClient() {
        if (entityResolutionAsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
 communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
 responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
```

```
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            entityResolutionAsyncClient = EntityResolutionAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Lists all matching workflows using an asynchronous paginator.
     * <p>
     * This method requests a paginated list of matching workflows from the
     * AWS Entity Resolution service and logs the names of the retrieved workflows.
     * It uses an asynchronous approach with a paginator and waits for the operation
     * to complete using {@code CompletableFuture#join()}.
     * </p>
     */
    public static void listMatchingWorkflows() {
        ListMatchingWorkflowsRequest request =
ListMatchingWorkflowsRequest.builder().build();

        ListMatchingWorkflowsPublisher paginator =
            getResolutionAsyncClient().listMatchingWorkflowsPaginator(request);

        // Iterate through the paginated results asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.workflowSummaries().forEach(workflow ->
                logger.info("Matching Workflow Name: " + workflow.workflowName())
            );
```

```
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMatchingWorkflows in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create Schema Mapping.
- Create an AWS Entity Resolution workflow.
- Start the matching job for the workflow.
- Get details for the matching job.
- Get Schema Mapping.
- List all Schema Mappings.
- Tag the Schema Mapping resource.
- Delete the AWS Entity Resolution Assets.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Entity Resolution features.

```
public class EntityResScenario {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EntityResScenario.class);
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static final String STACK_NAME = "EntityResolutionCdkStack";
    private static final String ENTITY_RESOLUTION_ROLE_ARN_KEY =
 "EntityResolutionRoleArn";
    private static final String GLUE_DATA_BUCKET_NAME_KEY = "GlueDataBucketName";
    private static final String JSON_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY = "JsonErGlueTableArn";
    private static final String CSV_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY = "CsvErGlueTableArn";
    private static String glueBucketName;
    private static String workflowName = "workflow-" + UUID.randomUUID();

    private static String jsonSchemaMappingName = "jsonschema-" + UUID.randomUUID();
    private static String jsonSchemaMappingArn = null;
    private static String csvSchemaMappingName = "csv-" + UUID.randomUUID();
    private static String roleARN;
    private static String csvGlueTableArn;
    private static String jsonGlueTableArn;
    private static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    private static EntityResActions actions = new EntityResActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {

        logger.info("Welcome to the AWS Entity Resolution Scenario.");
        logger.info("""
            AWS Entity Resolution is a fully-managed machine learning service
 provided by
            Amazon Web Services (AWS) that helps organizations extract, link, and
            organize information from multiple data sources. It leverages natural
            language processing and deep learning models to identify and resolve
            entities, such as people, places, organizations, and products,
            across structured and unstructured data.

            With Entity Resolution, customers can build robust data integration
            pipelines to combine and reconcile data from multiple systems,
 databases,
            and documents. The service can handle ambiguous, incomplete, or
 conflicting
            information, and provide a unified view of entities and their
 relationships.
```

```
            This can be particularly valuable in applications such as customer 360,
            fraud detection, supply chain management, and knowledge management,
where
            accurate entity identification is crucial.

            The `EntityResolutionAsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x
            provides a set of methods to programmatically interact with the AWS
Entity
            Resolution service. This allows developers to automate the entity
extraction,
            linking, and deduplication process as part of their data processing
workflows.
            With Entity Resolution, organizations can unlock the value of their
data,
            improve decision-making, and enhance customer experiences by having a
reliable,
            comprehensive view of their key entities.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            To prepare the AWS resources needed for this scenario application, the
next step uploads
            a CloudFormation template whose resulting stack creates the following
resources:
            - An AWS Glue Data Catalog table
            - An AWS IAM role
            - An AWS S3 bucket
            - An AWS Entity Resolution Schema

            It can take a couple minutes for the Stack to finish creating the
resources.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info("Generating resources...");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
        Map<String, String> outputsMap =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputsAsync(STACK_NAME).join();
        roleARN = outputsMap.get(ENTITY_RESOLUTION_ROLE_ARN_KEY);
        glueBucketName = outputsMap.get(GLUE_DATA_BUCKET_NAME_KEY);
        csvGlueTableArn = outputsMap.get(CSV_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY);
```

```
        jsonGlueTableArn = outputsMap.get(JSON_GLUE_TABLE_ARN_KEY);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            runScenario();

        } catch (Exception ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An exception happened: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : ce.getMessage()));
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario() throws InterruptedException {
        /*
         This JSON is a valid input for the AWS Entity Resolution service.
         The JSON represents an array of three objects, each containing an "id",
"name", and "email"
         property. This format aligns with the expected input structure for the
         Entity Resolution service.
         */
        String json = """
            {"id":"1","name":"Jane Doe","email":"jane.doe@example.com"}
            {"id":"2","name":"John Doe","email":"john.doe@example.com"}
            {"id":"3","name":"Jorge Souza","email":"jorge_souza@example.com"}
            """;
        logger.info("Upload the following JSON objects to the {} S3 bucket.",
glueBucketName);
        logger.info(json);
        String csv = """
            id,name,email,phone
            1,Jane B.,Doe,jane.doe@example.com,555-876-9846
            2,John Doe Jr.,john.doe@example.com,555-654-3210
            3,María García,maría_garcia@company.com,555-567-1234
            4,Mary Major,mary_major@company.com,555-222-3333
            """;
        logger.info("Upload the following CSV data to the {} S3 bucket.",
glueBucketName);
        logger.info(csv);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.uploadInputData(glueBucketName, json, csv);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("Failed to upload input data: {}", ce.getMessage(),
 ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("Failed to upload input data as the resource was not
 found: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info("The JSON and CSV objects have been uploaded to the S3
 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create Schema Mapping");
        logger.info("""
            Entity Resolution schema mapping aligns and integrates data from
            multiple sources by identifying and matching corresponding entities
            like customers or products. It unifies schemas, resolves conflicts,
            and uses machine learning to link related entities, enabling a
            consolidated, accurate view for improved data quality and decision-
making.

            In this example, the schema mapping lines up with the fields in the JSON
 and CSV objects. That is,
            it contains these fields: id, name, and email.
            """);
        try {
            CreateSchemaMappingResponse response =
 actions.createSchemaMappingAsync(jsonSchemaMappingName).join();
            jsonSchemaMappingName = response.schemaName();
            logger.info("The JSON schema mapping name is " + jsonSchemaMappingName);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("Failed to create JSON schema mapping: {}",
 ce.getMessage(), ce);
            }
```

```
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("Schema mapping conflict detected: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error while creating schema mapping: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        try {
            CreateSchemaMappingResponse response =
actions.createSchemaMappingAsync(csvSchemaMappingName).join();
            csvSchemaMappingName = response.schemaName();
            logger.info("The CSV schema mapping name is " + csvSchemaMappingName);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("Failed to create CSV schema mapping: {}",
ce.getMessage(), ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("Schema mapping conflict detected: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error while creating CSV schema mapping:
{}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create an AWS Entity Resolution Workflow. ");
        logger.info("""
            An Entity Resolution matching workflow identifies and links records
            across datasets that represent the same real-world entity, such as
            customers or products. Using techniques like schema mapping,
            data profiling, and machine learning algorithms,
            it evaluates attributes like names or emails to detect duplicates
            or relationships, even with variations or inconsistencies.
```

```
            The workflow outputs consolidated, de-duplicated data.

            We will use the machine learning-based matching technique.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String workflowArn = actions.createMatchingWorkflowAsync(
                roleARN, workflowName, glueBucketName, jsonGlueTableArn,
                jsonSchemaMappingName, csvGlueTableArn,
csvSchemaMappingName).join();

            logger.info("The workflow ARN is: " + workflowArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause == null) {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", ce.getMessage(),
ce);
            }

            if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                logger.error("Validation error: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("Workflow conflict detected: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Start the matching job of the " + workflowName + "
workflow.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobId = null;
        try {
            jobId = actions.startMatchingJobAsync(workflowName).join();
            logger.info("The matching job was successfully started.");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
```

```
                logger.error("Job conflict detected: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Unexpected error while starting the job: {}",
ce.getMessage(), ce);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. While the matching job is running, let's look at other API
methods. First, let's get details for job " + jobId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.getMatchingJobAsync(jobId, workflowName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The matching job not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("Failed to start matching job: " + (cause != null ?
cause.getMessage() : ce.getMessage()));
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Get the schema mapping for the JSON data.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            GetSchemaMappingResponse response =
actions.getSchemaMappingAsync(jsonSchemaMappingName).join();
            jsonSchemaMappingArn = response.schemaArn();
            logger.info("Schema mapping ARN is " + jsonSchemaMappingArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("Schema mapping not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
```

```
                logger.error("Error retrieving the specific schema mapping: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. List Schema Mappings.");
        try {
            actions.ListSchemaMappings();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            logger.error("Error retrieving schema mappings: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Tag the {} resource.", jsonSchemaMappingName);
        logger.info("""
            Tags can help you organize and categorize your Entity Resolution
resources.
            You can also use them to scope user permissions by granting a user
permission
            to access or change only resources with certain tag values.
            In Entity Resolution, SchemaMapping and MatchingWorkflow can be tagged.
For this example,
            the SchemaMapping is tagged.
                """);
        try {
            actions.tagEntityResource(jsonSchemaMappingArn).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            logger.error("Error tagging the resource: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("8. View the results of the AWS Entity Resolution Workflow.");
        logger.info("""
            You cannot view the result of the workflow that is in a running state.
            In order to view the results, you need to wait for the workflow that we
started in step 3 to complete.

            If you choose not to wait, you cannot view the results. You can perform

            this task manually in the AWS Management Console.

            This can take up to 30 mins (y/n).
            """);
        String viewAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        boolean isComplete = false;
        if (viewAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to view the Entity Resolution Workflow
results.");
            countdownWithWorkflowCheck(actions, 1800, jobId, workflowName);
            isComplete = true;
            try {
                JobMetrics metrics = actions.getJobInfo(workflowName, jobId).join();
                logger.info("Number of input records: {}", metrics.inputRecords());
                logger.info("Number of match ids: {}", metrics.matchIDs());
                logger.info("Number of records not processed: {}",
metrics.recordsNotProcessed());
                logger.info("Number of total records processed: {}",
metrics.totalRecordsProcessed());
                logger.info("The following represents the output data generated by
the Entity Resolution workflow based on the JSON and CSV input data. The output
data is stored in the {} bucket.", glueBucketName);
                actions.printData(glueBucketName);

                logger.info("""

                    Note that each of the last 2 records are considered a match even
though the 'name' differs between the records;
                    For example 'John Doe Jr.' compared to 'John Doe'.
                    The confidence level is a value between 0 and 1, where 1
indicates a perfect match.

                    """);

            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
```

```
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    logger.error("The job not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
                } else {
                    logger.error("Error retrieving job information: " +
ce.getCause().getMessage());
                }
                return;
            }
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Do you want to delete the resources, including the workflow?
(y/n)");
        logger.info("""
            You cannot delete the workflow that is in a running state.
            In order to delete the workflow, you need to wait for the workflow to
complete.

            You can delete the workflow manually in the AWS Management Console at a
later time.

            If you already waited for the workflow to complete in the previous
step,
            the workflow is completed and you can delete it.

            If the workflow is not completed, this can take up to 30 mins (y/n).
            """);
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                if (!isComplete) {
                    countdownWithWorkflowCheck(actions, 1800, jobId, workflowName);
                }
                actions.deleteMatchingWorkflowAsync(workflowName).join();
                logger.info("Workflow deleted successfully!");
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                logger.info("Error deleting the workflow: {} ", ce.getMessage());
                return;
            }
```

```
            try {
                // Delete both schema mappings.
                actions.deleteSchemaMappingAsync(jsonSchemaMappingName).join();
                actions.deleteSchemaMappingAsync(csvSchemaMappingName).join();
                logger.info("Both schema mappings were deleted successfully!");
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                logger.error("Error deleting schema mapping: {}", ce.getMessage());
                return;
            }

            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            logger.info(DASHES);
            logger.info("""
                Now we delete the CloudFormation stack, which deletes
                the resources that were created at the beginning of this scenario.
                """);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            logger.info(DASHES);
            try {
                deleteCloudFormationStack();
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the stack: {}", e.getMessage());
                return;
            }

        } else {
            logger.info("You can delete the AWS resources in the AWS Management
Console.");
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS Entity Resolution scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
```

```
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void countdownWithWorkflowCheck(EntityResActions actions, int
totalSeconds, String jobId, String workflowName) throws InterruptedException {
        int secondsElapsed = 0;

        while (true) {
            // Calculate display minutes and seconds.
            int remainingTime = totalSeconds - secondsElapsed;
            int displayMinutes = remainingTime / 60;
            int displaySeconds = remainingTime % 60;

            // Print the countdown.
            System.out.printf("\r%02d:%02d", displayMinutes, displaySeconds);
            Thread.sleep(1000); // Wait for 1 second
            secondsElapsed++;

            // Check workflow status every 60 seconds.
            if (secondsElapsed % 60 == 0 || remainingTime <= 0) {
                GetMatchingJobResponse response =
actions.checkWorkflowStatusCompleteAsync(jobId, workflowName).join();
                if (response != null &&
"SUCCEEDED".equalsIgnoreCase(String.valueOf(response.status()))) {
                    logger.info(""); // Move to the next line after countdown.
                    logger.info("Countdown complete: Workflow is in Completed
state!");
                    break; // Break out of the loop if the status is "SUCCEEDED"
                }
            }

            // If countdown reaches zero, reset it for continuous countdown.
            if (remainingTime <= 0) {
                secondsElapsed = 0;
            }
        }
```

```
    }

    private static void deleteCloudFormationStack() {
        try {
            CloudFormationHelper.emptyS3Bucket(glueBucketName);
            CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
            logger.info("Resources deleted successfully!");
        } catch (CloudFormationException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete CloudFormation stack: " +
 e.getMessage(), e);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to empty S3 bucket: " +
 e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS Entity Resolution SDK methods.

```
public class EntityResActions {

    private static final String PREFIX = "eroutput/";
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EntityResActions.class);

    private static EntityResolutionAsyncClient entityResolutionAsyncClient;

    private static S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient;

    public static EntityResolutionAsyncClient getResolutionAsyncClient() {
        if (entityResolutionAsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
 communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
 responses.
             */
```

```
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            entityResolutionAsyncClient = EntityResolutionAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return entityResolutionAsyncClient;
    }

    public static S3AsyncClient getS3AsyncClient() {
        if (s3AsyncClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
```

```
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return s3AsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the schema mapping asynchronously.
     *
     * @param schemaName the name of the schema to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schema mapping is
deleted successfully,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteSchemaMappingResponse>
deleteSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
        DeleteSchemaMappingRequest request = DeleteSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteSchemaMapping(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully deleted the schema mapping, log the success
message.
                    logger.info("Schema mapping '{}' deleted successfully.",
schemaName);
                } else {
                    // Ensure exception is not null before accessing its cause.
                    if (exception == null) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The schema mapping was not
found to delete: " + schemaName, cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schema mapping:
" + schemaName, exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists the schema mappings associated with the current AWS account. This
method uses an asynchronous paginator to
     * retrieve the schema mappings, and prints the name of each schema mapping to
the console.
     */
    public void ListSchemaMappings() {
        ListSchemaMappingsRequest mappingsRequest =
ListSchemaMappingsRequest.builder()
            .build();

        ListSchemaMappingsPublisher paginator =
getResolutionAsyncClient().listSchemaMappingsPaginator(mappingsRequest);

        // Iterate through the pages of results
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schemaList().forEach(schemaMapping ->
                logger.info("Schema Mapping Name: " + schemaMapping.schemaName())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes a workflow with the specified name.
```

```
    *
    * @param workflowName the name of the workflow to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the workflow has been
deleted
    * @throws RuntimeException if the deletion of the workflow fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteMatchingWorkflowResponse>
deleteMatchingWorkflowAsync(String workflowName) {
       DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest request =
DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
           .workflowName(workflowName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteMatchingWorkflow(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   logger.info("{} was deleted", workflowName );
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the workflow.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The workflow to delete was
not found.", cause);
                   }

                   // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Creates a schema mapping asynchronously.
    *
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous creation
of the schema mapping
    */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<CreateSchemaMappingResponse>
createSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
       List<SchemaInputAttribute> schemaAttributes = null;
       if (schemaName.startsWith("json")) {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.UNIQ

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeType.

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttributeTyp
           );
       } else {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.UNIQ

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeType.

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttributeTyp

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().fieldName("phone").type(SchemaAttributeType.PROVIDER_ID).sub
           );
       }

       CreateSchemaMappingRequest request = CreateSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
           .schemaName(schemaName)
           .mappedInputFields(schemaAttributes)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().createSchemaMapping(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   logger.info("[{}] schema mapping Created Successfully!",
schemaName);
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while creating the schema mapping.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting schema mapping
already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schema mapping:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the schema mapping asynchronously.
     *
     * @param schemaName the name of the schema to retrieve the mapping for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
GetSchemaMappingResponse} when the operation
     * is complete
     * @throws RuntimeException if the schema mapping retrieval fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetSchemaMappingResponse> getSchemaMappingAsync(String
schemaName) {
        GetSchemaMappingRequest mappingRequest = GetSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getSchemaMapping(mappingRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    response.mappedInputFields().forEach(attribute ->
                        logger.info("Attribute Name: " + attribute.fieldName() +
                            ", Attribute Type: " + attribute.type().toString()));
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while getting schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested schema mapping
was not found.", cause);
                    }
```

```
                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to get schema mapping: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves a matching job based on the provided job ID and
workflow name.
     *
     * @param jobId        the ID of the job to retrieve
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job information
is available or an exception occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMatchingJobResponse> getMatchingJobAsync(String
jobId, String workflowName) {
        GetMatchingJobRequest request = GetMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully fetched the matching job details, log the job
status.
                    logger.info("Job status: " + response.status());
                    logger.info("Job details: " + response.toString());
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while fetching the matching job.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested job could not
be found.", cause);
                    }
```

```
                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Error fetching matching job: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Starts a matching job asynchronously for the specified workflow name.
     *
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow for which to start the matching
job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the job ID of the
started matching job, or an empty
     * string if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> startMatchingJobAsync(String workflowName) {
        StartMatchingJobRequest jobRequest = StartMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().startMatchingJob(jobRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    String jobId = response.jobId();
                    logger.info("Job ID: " + jobId);
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while starting the job.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The job is already running.
Resolve conflicts before starting a new job.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to start the job: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
```

```
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response != null ? response.jobId() : "");
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of a workflow asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId        the ID of the job to check
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow to check
     * @return a CompletableFuture that resolves to a boolean value indicating
whether the workflow has completed
     * successfully
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetMatchingJobResponse>
checkWorkflowStatusCompleteAsync(String jobId, String workflowName) {
        GetMatchingJobRequest request = GetMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Process the response and log the job status.
                    logger.info("Job status: " + response.status());
                } else {
                    // Ensure exception is not null before accessing its cause.
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while checking job status.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested resource was
not found while checking the job status.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to check job status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Creates an asynchronous CompletableFuture to manage the creation of a
matching workflow.
    *
    * @param roleARN                 the AWS IAM role ARN to be used for the
workflow execution
    * @param workflowName            the name of the workflow to be created
    * @param outputBucket            the S3 bucket path where the workflow output
will be stored
    * @param jsonGlueTableArn        the ARN of the Glue Data Catalog table to be
used as the input source
    * @param jsonErSchemaMappingName the name of the schema to be used for the
input source
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, will return the ARN of the
created workflow
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createMatchingWorkflowAsync(
       String roleARN
       , String workflowName
       , String outputBucket
       , String jsonGlueTableArn
       , String jsonErSchemaMappingName
       , String csvGlueTableArn
       , String csvErSchemaMappingName) {

       InputSource jsonInputSource = InputSource.builder()
           .inputSourceARN(jsonGlueTableArn)
           .schemaName(jsonErSchemaMappingName)
           .applyNormalization(false)
           .build();

       InputSource csvInputSource = InputSource.builder()
           .inputSourceARN(csvGlueTableArn)
           .schemaName(csvErSchemaMappingName)
           .applyNormalization(false)
           .build();

       OutputAttribute idOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
           .name("id")
           .build();

       OutputAttribute nameOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
           .name("name")
```

```
            .build();

        OutputAttribute emailOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("email")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute phoneOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("phone")
            .build();

        OutputSource outputSource = OutputSource.builder()
            .outputS3Path("s3://" + outputBucket + "/eroutput")
            .output(idOutputAttribute, nameOutputAttribute, emailOutputAttribute,
phoneOutputAttribute)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        ResolutionTechniques resolutionType = ResolutionTechniques.builder()
            .resolutionType(ResolutionType.ML_MATCHING)
            .build();

        CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest workflowRequest =
CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .inputSourceConfig(List.of(jsonInputSource, csvInputSource))
            .outputSourceConfig(List.of(outputSource))
            .resolutionTechniques(resolutionType)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().createMatchingWorkflow(workflowRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Workflow created successfully.");
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Invalid request: Please check
input parameters.", cause);
                    }

                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting workflow
already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(CreateMatchingWorkflowResponse::workflowArn);
    }

    /**
     * Tags the specified schema mapping ARN.
     *
     * @param schemaMappingARN the ARN of the schema mapping to tag
     */
    public CompletableFuture<TagResourceResponse> tagEntityResource(String
schemaMappingARN) {
        Map<String, String> tags = new HashMap<>();
        tags.put("tag1", "tag1Value");
        tags.put("tag2", "tag2Value");

        TagResourceRequest request = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .resourceArn(schemaMappingARN)
            .tags(tags)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().tagResource(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully tagged the resource, log the success message.
                    logger.info("Successfully tagged the resource.");
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while tagging the resource.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The resource to tag was not
found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to tag the resource: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
```

```
                }
            });
    }

    public CompletableFuture<JobMetrics> getJobInfo(String workflowName, String
jobId) {
        return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(b -> b
                .workflowName(workflowName)
                .jobId(jobId))
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Job metrics fetched successfully for jobId: " +
jobId);
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Invalid request: Job id was
not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to fetch job info: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.metrics()); // Extract job metrics
    }

    /**
     * Uploads data to an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the data to
     * @param jsonData   the JSON data to be uploaded
     * @param csvData    the CSV data to be uploaded
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing both asynchronous operation
of uploading the data
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs during the file upload
     */

    public void uploadInputData(String bucketName, String jsonData, String csvData)
{
        // Upload JSON data.
        String jsonKey = "jsonData/data.json";
        PutObjectRequest jsonUploadRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(jsonKey)
```

```
            .contentType("application/json")
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> jsonUploadResponse =
getS3AsyncClient().putObject(jsonUploadRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromString(jsonData));

        // Upload CSV data.
        String csvKey = "csvData/data.csv";
        PutObjectRequest csvUploadRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(csvKey)
            .contentType("text/csv")
            .build();
        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> csvUploadResponse =
getS3AsyncClient().putObject(csvUploadRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromString(csvData));

        CompletableFuture.allOf(jsonUploadResponse, csvUploadResponse)
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    // Wrap an AWS exception.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to upload files", ex);
                }
            }).join();

    }

    /**
     * Finds the latest file in the S3 bucket that starts with "run-" in any depth
of subfolders
     */
    private CompletableFuture<String> findLatestMatchingFile(String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .prefix(PREFIX) // Searches within the given folder
            .build();

        return getS3AsyncClient().listObjectsV2(request)
            .thenApply(response -> response.contents().stream()
                .map(S3Object::key)
                .filter(key -> key.matches(".*?/run-[0-9a-zA-Z\\-]+")) // Matches
files like run-XXXXX in any subfolder
                .max(String::compareTo) // Gets the latest file
```

```
                .orElse(null))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception == null) {
                    if (result != null) {
                        logger.info("Latest matching file found: " + result);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("No matching files found.");
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to find latest matching
file: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Prints the data located in the file in the S3 bucket that starts with "run-"
in any depth of subfolders
     */
    public void printData(String bucketName) {
        try {
            // Find the latest file with "run-" prefix in any depth of subfolders.
            String s3Key = findLatestMatchingFile(bucketName).join();
            if (s3Key == null) {
                logger.error("No matching files found in S3.");
                return;
            }

            logger.info("Downloading file: " + s3Key);

            // Read CSV file as String.
            String csvContent = readCSVFromS3Async(bucketName, s3Key).join();
            if (csvContent.isEmpty()) {
                logger.error("File is empty.");
                return;
            }

            // Process CSV content.
            List<String[]> records = parseCSV(csvContent);
            printTable(records);

        } catch (RuntimeException | IOException | CsvException e) {
            logger.error("Error processing CSV file from S3: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
```

```
        }
    }

    /**
     * Reads a CSV file from S3 and returns it as a String.
     */
    private static CompletableFuture<String> readCSVFromS3Async(String bucketName,
String s3Key) {
        GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(s3Key)
            .build();

        // Initiating the asynchronous request to get the file as bytes
        return getS3AsyncClient().getObject(getObjectRequest,
AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes())
            .thenApply(responseBytes -> responseBytes.asUtf8String()) // Convert
bytes to UTF-8 string
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to read CSV from S3: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Successfully fetched CSV file content from S3.");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Parses CSV content from a String into a list of records.
     */
    private static List<String[]> parseCSV(String csvContent) throws IOException,
CsvException {
        try (CSVReader csvReader = new CSVReader(new StringReader(csvContent))) {
            return csvReader.readAll();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Prints the given CSV data in a formatted table
     */
    private static void printTable(List<String[]> records) {
        if (records.isEmpty()) {
            System.out.println("No records found.");
```

```
            return;
        }

        String[] headers = records.get(0);
        List<String[]> rows = records.subList(1, records.size());

        // Determine column widths dynamically based on longest content
        int[] columnWidths = new int[headers.length];
        for (int i = 0; i < headers.length; i++) {
            final int columnIndex = i;
            int maxWidth = Math.max(headers[i].length(), rows.stream()
                .map(row -> row.length > columnIndex ? row[columnIndex].length() :
0)
                .max(Integer::compareTo)
                .orElse(0));
            columnWidths[i] = Math.min(maxWidth, 25); // Limit max width for better
readability
        }

        // Enable ANSI Console for colored output
        AnsiConsole.systemInstall();

        // Print table header
        System.out.println(ansi().fgYellow().a("=== CSV Data from S3 ===").reset());
        printRow(headers, columnWidths, true);

        // Print rows
        rows.forEach(row -> printRow(row, columnWidths, false));

        // Restore console to normal
        AnsiConsole.systemUninstall();
    }

    private static void printRow(String[] row, int[] columnWidths, boolean isHeader)
{
        String border = IntStream.range(0, columnWidths.length)
            .mapToObj(i -> "-".repeat(columnWidths[i] + 2))
            .collect(Collectors.joining("+", "+", "+"));

        if (isHeader) {
            System.out.println(border);
        }

        System.out.print("|");
```

```
        for (int i = 0; i < columnWidths.length; i++) {
            String cell = (i < row.length && row[i] != null) ? row[i] : "";
            System.out.printf(" %-" + columnWidths[i] + "s |", isHeader ?
 ansi().fgBrightBlue().a(cell).reset() : cell);
        }
        System.out.println();

        if (isHeader) {
            System.out.println(border);
        }
    }
}
```

Actions

`CreateMatchingWorkflow`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMatchingWorkflow`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous CompletableFuture to manage the creation of a
 matching workflow.
     *
     * @param roleARN                 the AWS IAM role ARN to be used for the
 workflow execution
     * @param workflowName            the name of the workflow to be created
     * @param outputBucket            the S3 bucket path where the workflow output
 will be stored
     * @param jsonGlueTableArn        the ARN of the Glue Data Catalog table to be
 used as the input source
     * @param jsonErSchemaMappingName the name of the schema to be used for the
 input source
```

```
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, will return the ARN of the
created workflow
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMatchingWorkflowAsync(
        String roleARN
        , String workflowName
        , String outputBucket
        , String jsonGlueTableArn
        , String jsonErSchemaMappingName
        , String csvGlueTableArn
        , String csvErSchemaMappingName) {

        InputSource jsonInputSource = InputSource.builder()
            .inputSourceARN(jsonGlueTableArn)
            .schemaName(jsonErSchemaMappingName)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        InputSource csvInputSource = InputSource.builder()
            .inputSourceARN(csvGlueTableArn)
            .schemaName(csvErSchemaMappingName)
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        OutputAttribute idOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("id")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute nameOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("name")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute emailOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("email")
            .build();

        OutputAttribute phoneOutputAttribute = OutputAttribute.builder()
            .name("phone")
            .build();

        OutputSource outputSource = OutputSource.builder()
            .outputS3Path("s3://" + outputBucket + "/eroutput")
            .output(idOutputAttribute, nameOutputAttribute, emailOutputAttribute,
phoneOutputAttribute)
```

```
            .applyNormalization(false)
            .build();

        ResolutionTechniques resolutionType = ResolutionTechniques.builder()
            .resolutionType(ResolutionType.ML_MATCHING)
            .build();

        CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest workflowRequest =
CreateMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .inputSourceConfig(List.of(jsonInputSource, csvInputSource))
            .outputSourceConfig(List.of(outputSource))
            .resolutionTechniques(resolutionType)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().createMatchingWorkflow(workflowRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Workflow created successfully.");
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Invalid request: Please check
input parameters.", cause);
                    }

                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting workflow
already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(CreateMatchingWorkflowResponse::workflowArn);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateSchemaMapping`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchemaMapping`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a schema mapping asynchronously.
    *
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous creation
of the schema mapping
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateSchemaMappingResponse>
createSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
       List<SchemaInputAttribute> schemaAttributes = null;
       if (schemaName.startsWith("json")) {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.UNIQ

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeType.

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttributeTyp
           );
       } else {
           schemaAttributes = List.of(

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("id").fieldName("id").type(SchemaAttributeType.UNIQ

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("name").fieldName("name").type(SchemaAttributeType.

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().matchKey("email").fieldName("email").type(SchemaAttributeTyp

SchemaInputAttribute.builder().fieldName("phone").type(SchemaAttributeType.PROVIDER_ID).sub
           );
       }
```

```
        CreateSchemaMappingRequest request = CreateSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .mappedInputFields(schemaAttributes)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().createSchemaMapping(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("[{}] schema mapping Created Successfully!",
schemaName);
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while creating the schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflicting schema mapping
already exists. Resolve conflicts before proceeding.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schema mapping:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteMatchingWorkflow`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMatchingWorkflow`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously deletes a workflow with the specified name.
    *
    * @param workflowName the name of the workflow to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the workflow has been
deleted
    * @throws RuntimeException if the deletion of the workflow fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteMatchingWorkflowResponse>
deleteMatchingWorkflowAsync(String workflowName) {
       DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest request =
DeleteMatchingWorkflowRequest.builder()
           .workflowName(workflowName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteMatchingWorkflow(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   logger.info("{} was deleted", workflowName );
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the workflow.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The workflow to delete was
not found.", cause);
                   }

                   // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete workflow: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
```

```
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMatchingWorkflow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteSchemaMapping`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSchemaMapping`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes the schema mapping asynchronously.
     *
     * @param schemaName the name of the schema to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schema mapping is
deleted successfully,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteSchemaMappingResponse>
deleteSchemaMappingAsync(String schemaName) {
        DeleteSchemaMappingRequest request = DeleteSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
            .schemaName(schemaName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().deleteSchemaMapping(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully deleted the schema mapping, log the success
message.
                    logger.info("Schema mapping '{}' deleted successfully.",
schemaName);
                } else {
                    // Ensure exception is not null before accessing its cause.
```

```
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while deleting the schema mapping.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The schema mapping was not
found to delete: " + schemaName, cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schema mapping:
" + schemaName, exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetMatchingJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMatchingJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves a matching job based on the provided job ID and
workflow name.
     *
     * @param jobId        the ID of the job to retrieve
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job information
is available or an exception occurs
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetMatchingJobResponse> getMatchingJobAsync(String
jobId, String workflowName) {
       GetMatchingJobRequest request = GetMatchingJobRequest.builder()
           .jobId(jobId)
           .workflowName(workflowName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().getMatchingJob(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   // Successfully fetched the matching job details, log the job
status.
                   logger.info("Job status: " + response.status());
                   logger.info("Job details: " + response.toString());
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while fetching the matching job.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The requested job could not
be found.", cause);
                   }

                   // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                   throw new CompletionException("Error fetching matching job: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see GetMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetSchemaMapping

The following code example shows how to use `GetSchemaMapping`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the schema mapping asynchronously.
    *
    * @param schemaName the name of the schema to retrieve the mapping for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
GetSchemaMappingResponse} when the operation
    * is complete
    * @throws RuntimeException if the schema mapping retrieval fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<GetSchemaMappingResponse> getSchemaMappingAsync(String
schemaName) {
       GetSchemaMappingRequest mappingRequest = GetSchemaMappingRequest.builder()
           .schemaName(schemaName)
           .build();

       return getResolutionAsyncClient().getSchemaMapping(mappingRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   response.mappedInputFields().forEach(attribute ->
                       logger.info("Attribute Name: " + attribute.fieldName() +
                           ", Attribute Type: " + attribute.type().toString()));
               } else {
                   if (exception == null) {
                       throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while getting schema mapping.", null);
                   }

                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The requested schema mapping
was not found.", cause);
                   }
```

```
                    // Wrap other exceptions in a CompletionException with the
message.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to get schema mapping: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetSchemaMapping in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListSchemaMappings`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSchemaMappings`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists the schema mappings associated with the current AWS account. This
method uses an asynchronous paginator to
     * retrieve the schema mappings, and prints the name of each schema mapping to
the console.
     */
    public void ListSchemaMappings() {
        ListSchemaMappingsRequest mappingsRequest =
ListSchemaMappingsRequest.builder()
            .build();

        ListSchemaMappingsPublisher paginator =
getResolutionAsyncClient().listSchemaMappingsPaginator(mappingsRequest);

        // Iterate through the pages of results
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schemaList().forEach(schemaMapping ->
                logger.info("Schema Mapping Name: " + schemaMapping.schemaName())
            );
```

```
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSchemaMappings in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartMatchingJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartMatchingJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Starts a matching job asynchronously for the specified workflow name.
     *
     * @param workflowName the name of the workflow for which to start the matching
job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the job ID of the
started matching job, or an empty
     * string if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> startMatchingJobAsync(String workflowName) {
        StartMatchingJobRequest jobRequest = StartMatchingJobRequest.builder()
            .workflowName(workflowName)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().startMatchingJob(jobRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    String jobId = response.jobId();
                    logger.info("Job ID: " + jobId);
                } else {
```

```
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while starting the job.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The job is already running.
Resolve conflicts before starting a new job.", cause);
                    }

                    // Wrap other AWS exceptions in a CompletionException.
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to start the job: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response != null ? response.jobId() : "");
    }
```

- For API details, see StartMatchingJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Tags the specified schema mapping ARN.
     *
     * @param schemaMappingARN the ARN of the schema mapping to tag
     */
    public CompletableFuture<TagResourceResponse> tagEntityResource(String
schemaMappingARN) {
        Map<String, String> tags = new HashMap<>();
```

```
        tags.put("tag1", "tag1Value");
        tags.put("tag2", "tag2Value");

        TagResourceRequest request = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .resourceArn(schemaMappingARN)
            .tags(tags)
            .build();

        return getResolutionAsyncClient().tagResource(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    // Successfully tagged the resource, log the success message.
                    logger.info("Successfully tagged the resource.");
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("An unknown error occurred
while tagging the resource.", null);
                    }

                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The resource to tag was not
found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to tag the resource: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

OpenSearch Service examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with OpenSearch Service.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello OpenSearch Service

The following code example shows how to get started using OpenSearch Service.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.OpenSearchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListVersionsRequest;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloOpenSearch {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = listVersionsAsync();
            future.join();
            System.out.println("Versions listed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Error occurred while listing versions: " +
 e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
```

```
        return OpenSearchAsyncClient.builder().build();
    }

    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listVersionsAsync() {
        ListVersionsRequest request = ListVersionsRequest.builder()
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listVersions(request).thenAccept(response -> {
            List<String> versionList = response.versions();
            for (String version : versionList) {
                System.out.println("Version info: " + version);
            }
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            // Handle the exception, or propagate it as a RuntimeException
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list versions", ex);
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn OpenSearch Service core operations

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an OpenSearch Service domain.
- Provides detailed information about a specific OpenSearch Service domain.
- Lists all the OpenSearch Service domains owned by the account.
- Waits until the OpenSearch Service domain's change status reaches a completed state.
- Modifies the configuration of an existing OpenSearch Service domain.
- Add a tag to the OpenSearch Service domain.

- Lists the tags associated with an OpenSearch Service domain.
- Removes tags from an OpenSearch Service domain.
- Deletes the OpenSearch Service domain.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating OpenSearch Service features.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.*;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class OpenSearchScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(OpenSearchScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    static OpenSearchActions openSearchActions = new OpenSearchActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Throwable {
        logger.info("""
            Welcome to the Amazon OpenSearch Service Basics Scenario.

            Use the Amazon OpenSearch Service API to create, configure, and manage
 OpenSearch Service domains.

            The operations exposed by the AWS OpenSearch Service client are focused
 on managing the OpenSearch Service domains
```

```
            and their configurations, not the data within the domains (such as
 indexing or querying documents).
            For document management, you typically interact directly with the
 OpenSearch REST API or use other libraries,
            such as the OpenSearch Java client (https://opensearch.org/docs/latest/
clients/java/).

            Let's get started...
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            runScenario();
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario() throws Throwable {
        String currentTimestamp = String.valueOf(System.currentTimeMillis());
        String domainName = "test-domain-" + currentTimestamp;

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an Amazon OpenSearch domain");
        logger.info("""
            An Amazon OpenSearch domain is a managed instance of the OpenSearch
 engine,
            which is an open-source search and analytics engine derived from
 Elasticsearch.
```

```
            An OpenSearch domain is essentially a cluster of compute resources and
storage that hosts
            one or more OpenSearch indexes, enabling you to perform full-text
searches, data analysis, and
            visualizations.

            In this step, we'll initiate the creation of the domain. We'll check on
the progress in a later step.
        """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
openSearchActions.createNewDomainAsync(domainName);
            String domainId = future.join();
            logger.info("Domain successfully created with ID: {}", domainId);
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause != null) {
                if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                    logger.error("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("2. Describe the Amazon OpenSearch domain");
        logger.info("In this step, we get back the Domain ARN which is used in an
upcoming step.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        String arn = "";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
openSearchActions.describeDomainAsync(domainName);
```

```
            arn = future.join();
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("3. List the domains in your account");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<List<DomainInfo>> future =
openSearchActions.listAllDomainsAsync();
            List<DomainInfo> domainInfoList = future.join();
            for (DomainInfo domain : domainInfoList) {
                logger.info("Domain name is: " + domain.domainName());
            }
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("4. Wait until the domain's change status reaches a completed
state");
        logger.info("""
            In this step, we check on the change status of the domain that we
initiated in Step 1.
            Until we reach a COMPLETED state, we stay in a loop by sending a
DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest.

            The time it takes for a change to an OpenSearch domain to reach a
completed state can range
            from a few minutes to several hours. In this case the change is creating
a new domain that we initiated in Step 1.
            The time varies depending on the complexity of the change and the
current load on
            the OpenSearch service. In general, simple changes, such as scaling the
number of data nodes or
            updating the OpenSearch version, may take 10-30 minutes.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
openSearchActions.domainChangeProgressAsync(domainName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain change progress completed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
ResourceNotFoundException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException
resourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The specific AWS resource was not found: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", resourceNotFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
resourceNotFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());

                if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException ex) {
                    logger.info("An OpenSearch error occurred: Error message: " +
ex.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                }
```

```
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("5. Modify the domain");
        logger.info("""
            You can change your OpenSearch domain's settings, like the number of
instances, without starting over from scratch.
            This makes it easy to adjust your domain as your needs change, allowing
you to scale up or
            down quickly without recreating everything.

            We modify the domain in this step by changing the number of instances.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse> future =
openSearchActions.updateSpecificDomainAsync(domainName);
            UpdateDomainConfigResponse updateResponse = future.join();
            logger.info("Domain update status: " +
updateResponse.domainConfig().changeProgressDetails().configChangeStatusAsString());
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("6. Wait until the domain's change status reaches a completed
state");
        logger.info("""
            In this step, we poll the status until the domain's change status
reaches a completed state.
```

```
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
openSearchActions.domainChangeProgressAsync(domainName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain change progress completed successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException ex) {
                logger.info("EC2 error occurred: Error message: " +ex.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("7. Tag the Domain");
        logger.info("""
            Tags let you assign arbitrary information to an Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain so you can
            categorize and filter on that information. A tag is a key-value pair
that you define and
            associate with an OpenSearch Service domain. You can use these tags to
track costs by grouping
            expenses for similarly tagged resources.

            In this scenario, we create tags with keys "service" and "instances".
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> future =
openSearchActions.addDomainTagsAsync(arn);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain tags added successfully.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
```

```
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                if (cause != null) {
                    if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException) {
                        logger.error("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage(),
rt);
                }
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("8. List Domain tags");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<ListTagsResponse> future =
openSearchActions.listDomainTagsAsync(arn);
            ListTagsResponse listTagsResponse = future.join();
            listTagsResponse.tagList().forEach(tag -> logger.info("Tag Key: " +
tag.key() + ", Tag Value: " + tag.value()));
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;

        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("9. Delete the domain");
        logger.info("""
            In this step, we'll delete the Amazon OpenSearch domain that we created
in Step 1.
            Deleting a domain will remove all data and configuration for that
domain.
        """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<DeleteDomainResponse> future =
openSearchActions.deleteSpecificDomainAsync(domainName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Domain successfully deleted.");
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            while (cause.getCause() != null && !(cause instanceof
OpenSearchException)) {
                cause = cause.getCause();
            }
            if (cause instanceof OpenSearchException openSearchEx) {
                logger.info("OpenSearch error occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}", openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
openSearchEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;

        }
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("Scenario complete!");
    }
 }
```

A wrapper class for OpenSearch Service SDK methods.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.OpenSearchAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.AddTagsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.AddTagsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ClusterConfig;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.CreateDomainRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DeleteDomainRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DeleteDomainResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DescribeDomainChangeProgressResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DescribeDomainRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DomainInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.DomainStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.EBSOptions;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListDomainNamesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListTagsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.ListTagsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.Tag;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.UpdateDomainConfigRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.UpdateDomainConfigResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.opensearch.model.VolumeType;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class OpenSearchActions {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(OpenSearchActions.class);
    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient openSearchClientAsyncClient;
    private static OpenSearchAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (openSearchClientAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();

            openSearchClientAsyncClient = OpenSearchAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return openSearchClientAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new OpenSearch domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the new OpenSearch domain to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the domain ID of the newly
 created domain
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createNewDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .dedicatedMasterEnabled(true)
            .dedicatedMasterCount(3)
            .dedicatedMasterType("t2.small.search")
```

```
            .instanceType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceCount(5)
            .build();

        EBSOptions ebsOptions = EBSOptions.builder()
            .ebsEnabled(true)
            .volumeSize(10)
            .volumeType(VolumeType.GP2)
            .build();

        NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions encryptionOptions =
NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .build();

        CreateDomainRequest domainRequest = CreateDomainRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .engineVersion("OpenSearch_1.0")
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .ebsOptions(ebsOptions)
            .nodeToNodeEncryptionOptions(encryptionOptions)
            .build();
        logger.info("Sending domain creation request...");
        return getAsyncClient().createDomain(domainRequest)
                .handle( (createResponse, throwable) -> {
                    if (createResponse != null) {
                        logger.info("Domain status is {}",
createResponse.domainStatus().changeProgressDetails().configChangeStatusAsString());
                        logger.info("Domain Id is {}",
createResponse.domainStatus().domainId());
                        return createResponse.domainStatus().domainId();
                    }
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create domain",
throwable);
                });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a specific domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain has been
deleted
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteDomainResponse> deleteSpecificDomainAsync(String
domainName) {
       DeleteDomainRequest domainRequest = DeleteDomainRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .build();

       // Delete domain asynchronously
       return getAsyncClient().deleteDomain(domainRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the domain: " +
domainName, exception);
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Describes the specified domain asynchronously.
    *
    * @param domainName the name of the domain to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the domain
    * @throws RuntimeException if the domain description fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describeDomainAsync(String domainName) {
       DescribeDomainRequest request = DescribeDomainRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describeDomain(request)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {  // Handle both response and
exception
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe domain",
exception);
               }
               DomainStatus domainStatus = response.domainStatus();
               String endpoint = domainStatus.endpoint();
               String arn = domainStatus.arn();
               String engineVersion = domainStatus.engineVersion();
               logger.info("Domain endpoint is: " + endpoint);
               logger.info("ARN: " + arn);
               System.out.println("Engine version: " + engineVersion);

               return arn;  // Return ARN when successful
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the domains in the current AWS account.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a list of
{@link DomainInfo} objects representing
     *         the domains in the account.
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure while listing the domains.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<DomainInfo>> listAllDomainsAsync() {
        ListDomainNamesRequest namesRequest = ListDomainNamesRequest.builder()
            .engineType("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listDomainNames(namesRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list all domains",
exception);
                }
                return response.domainNames();  // Return the list of domain names
on success
            });
    }

    /**
     * Updates the configuration of a specific domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to update
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of updating the domain configuration
     */
    public CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse>
updateSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .instanceCount(3)
            .build();

        UpdateDomainConfigRequest updateDomainConfigRequest =
UpdateDomainConfigRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .build();
```

```
        return getAsyncClient().updateDomainConfig(updateDomainConfigRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update the domain
configuration", exception);
                }
                // Handle success if needed (e.g., logging or additional actions)
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously checks the progress of a domain change operation in Amazon
OpenSearch Service.
     * @param domainName the name of the OpenSearch domain to check the progress for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain change
operation is completed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> domainChangeProgressAsync(String domainName) {
        DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest request =
DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .build();

        return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            boolean isCompleted = false;
            long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

            while (!isCompleted) {
                try {
                    // Handle the async client call using `join` to block
synchronously for the result
                    DescribeDomainChangeProgressResponse response = getAsyncClient()
                        .describeDomainChangeProgress(request)
                        .handle((resp, ex) -> {
                            if (ex != null) {
                                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to check domain
progress", ex);
                            }
                            return resp;
                        }).join();

                    String state = response.changeProgressStatus().statusAsString();
 // Get the status as string
```

```
                    if ("COMPLETED".equals(state)) {
                        logger.info("\nOpenSearch domain status: Completed");
                        isCompleted = true;
                    } else {
                        for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) {
                            long elapsedTimeInSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis()
- startTime) / 1000;
                            String formattedTime = String.format("%02d:%02d",
elapsedTimeInSeconds / 60, elapsedTimeInSeconds % 60);
                            System.out.print("\rOpenSearch domain state: " + state +
" | Time Elapsed: " + formattedTime + " ");
                            System.out.flush();
                            Thread.sleep(1_000);
                        }
                    }
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                    throw new RuntimeException("Thread was interrupted", e);
                }
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.
     * @param domainARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain to add tags to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tags have been
successfully added to the domain,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> addDomainTagsAsync(String domainARN) {
        Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
            .key("service")
            .value("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
            .key("instances")
            .value("m3.2xlarge")
            .build();

        List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
        tagList.add(tag1);
```

```
        tagList.add(tag2);

        AddTagsRequest addTagsRequest = AddTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(domainARN)
            .tagList(tagList)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().addTags(addTagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to add tags to the domain: "
+ domainARN, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Added Tags");
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously lists the tags associated with the specified Amazon Resource
Name (ARN).
     * @param arn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource for which to list
the tags
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain a list
of the tags associated with the
     * specified ARN
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error listing the tags
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ListTagsResponse> listDomainTagsAsync(String arn) {
        ListTagsRequest tagsRequest = ListTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(arn)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().listTags(tagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list domain tags",
exception);
                }

                List<Tag> tagList = response.tagList();
                for (Tag tag : tagList) {
                    logger.info("Tag key is " + tag.key());
```

```
                    logger.info("Tag value is " + tag.value());
                }
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AddTags
  - CreateDomain
  - DeleteDomain
  - DescribeDomain
  - DescribeDomainChangeProgress
  - ListDomainNames
  - ListTags
  - UpdateDomainConfig

Actions

`AddTags`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTags`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.
     * @param domainARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain to add tags to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tags have been
successfully added to the domain,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> addDomainTagsAsync(String domainARN) {
        Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
            .key("service")
            .value("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
            .key("instances")
            .value("m3.2xlarge")
            .build();

        List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
        tagList.add(tag1);
        tagList.add(tag2);

        AddTagsRequest addTagsRequest = AddTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(domainARN)
            .tagList(tagList)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().addTags(addTagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to add tags to the domain: "
+ domainARN, exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Added Tags");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ChangeProgress

The following code example shows how to use `ChangeProgress`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously checks the progress of a domain change operation in Amazon
OpenSearch Service.
    * @param domainName the name of the OpenSearch domain to check the progress for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain change
operation is completed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> domainChangeProgressAsync(String domainName) {
       DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest request =
DescribeDomainChangeProgressRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .build();

       return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
           boolean isCompleted = false;
           long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

           while (!isCompleted) {
               try {
                   // Handle the async client call using `join` to block
synchronously for the result
                   DescribeDomainChangeProgressResponse response = getAsyncClient()
                       .describeDomainChangeProgress(request)
                       .handle((resp, ex) -> {
                           if (ex != null) {
                               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to check domain
progress", ex);
                           }
                           return resp;
                       }).join();

                   String state = response.changeProgressStatus().statusAsString();
 // Get the status as string
```

```
                    if ("COMPLETED".equals(state)) {
                        logger.info("\nOpenSearch domain status: Completed");
                        isCompleted = true;
                    } else {
                        for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++) {
                            long elapsedTimeInSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis()
- startTime) / 1000;
                            String formattedTime = String.format("%02d:%02d",
elapsedTimeInSeconds / 60, elapsedTimeInSeconds % 60);
                            System.out.print("\rOpenSearch domain state: " + state +
" | Time Elapsed: " + formattedTime + " ");
                            System.out.flush();
                            Thread.sleep(1_000);
                        }
                    }
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                    throw new RuntimeException("Thread was interrupted", e);
                }
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ChangeProgress in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDomain`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new OpenSearch domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the new OpenSearch domain to create
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the domain ID of the newly
created domain
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createNewDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .dedicatedMasterEnabled(true)
            .dedicatedMasterCount(3)
            .dedicatedMasterType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceType("t2.small.search")
            .instanceCount(5)
            .build();

        EBSOptions ebsOptions = EBSOptions.builder()
            .ebsEnabled(true)
            .volumeSize(10)
            .volumeType(VolumeType.GP2)
            .build();

        NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions encryptionOptions =
NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .build();

        CreateDomainRequest domainRequest = CreateDomainRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .engineVersion("OpenSearch_1.0")
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .ebsOptions(ebsOptions)
            .nodeToNodeEncryptionOptions(encryptionOptions)
            .build();
        logger.info("Sending domain creation request...");
        return getAsyncClient().createDomain(domainRequest)
                .handle( (createResponse, throwable) -> {
                    if (createResponse != null) {
                        logger.info("Domain status is {}",
createResponse.domainStatus().changeProgressDetails().configChangeStatusAsString());
                        logger.info("Domain Id is {}",
createResponse.domainStatus().domainId());
                        return createResponse.domainStatus().domainId();
                    }
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create domain",
throwable);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDomain`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a specific domain asynchronously.
    * @param domainName the name of the domain to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the domain has been
deleted
    * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the deletion fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteDomainResponse> deleteSpecificDomainAsync(String
domainName) {
       DeleteDomainRequest domainRequest = DeleteDomainRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .build();

       // Delete domain asynchronously
       return getAsyncClient().deleteDomain(domainRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the domain: " +
domainName, exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDomain`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the configuration of a specific domain asynchronously.
    * @param domainName the name of the domain to update
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of updating the domain configuration
    */
   public CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse>
updateSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
       ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
           .instanceCount(3)
           .build();

       UpdateDomainConfigRequest updateDomainConfigRequest =
UpdateDomainConfigRequest.builder()
           .domainName(domainName)
           .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().updateDomainConfig(updateDomainConfigRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update the domain
configuration", exception);
               }
               // Handle success if needed (e.g., logging or additional actions)
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDomainNames`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDomainNames`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously lists all the domains in the current AWS account.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a list of
{@link DomainInfo} objects representing
    *         the domains in the account.
    * @throws RuntimeException if there was a failure while listing the domains.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<List<DomainInfo>> listAllDomainsAsync() {
       ListDomainNamesRequest namesRequest = ListDomainNamesRequest.builder()
           .engineType("OpenSearch")
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().listDomainNames(namesRequest)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list all domains",
exception);
               }
               return response.domainNames();  // Return the list of domain names
on success
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDomainNames in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListTags`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTags`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously adds tags to an Amazon OpenSearch Service domain.
     * @param domainARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the Amazon OpenSearch
Service domain to add tags to
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tags have been
successfully added to the domain,
     * or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<AddTagsResponse> addDomainTagsAsync(String domainARN) {
        Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
            .key("service")
            .value("OpenSearch")
            .build();

        Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
            .key("instances")
            .value("m3.2xlarge")
            .build();

        List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
        tagList.add(tag1);
        tagList.add(tag2);

        AddTagsRequest addTagsRequest = AddTagsRequest.builder()
            .arn(domainARN)
            .tagList(tagList)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().addTags(addTagsRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to add tags to the domain: "
+ domainARN, exception);
                } else {
```

```
                    logger.info("Added Tags");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTags in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateDomainConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateDomainConfig`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the configuration of a specific domain asynchronously.
     * @param domainName the name of the domain to update
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of updating the domain configuration
     */
    public CompletableFuture<UpdateDomainConfigResponse>
updateSpecificDomainAsync(String domainName) {
        ClusterConfig clusterConfig = ClusterConfig.builder()
            .instanceCount(3)
            .build();

        UpdateDomainConfigRequest updateDomainConfigRequest =
UpdateDomainConfigRequest.builder()
            .domainName(domainName)
            .clusterConfig(clusterConfig)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().updateDomainConfig(updateDomainConfigRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to update the domain
configuration", exception);
                }
                // Handle success if needed (e.g., logging or additional actions)
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateDomainConfig in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

EventBridge examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with EventBridge.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello EventBridge

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 */
public class HelloEventBridge {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        EventBridgeClient eventBrClient = EventBridgeClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listBuses(eventBrClient);
        eventBrClient.close();
    }

    public static void listBuses(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListEventBusesRequest busesRequest = ListEventBusesRequest.builder()
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();

            ListEventBusesResponse response =
 eventBrClient.listEventBuses(busesRequest);
            List<EventBus> buses = response.eventBuses();
            for (EventBus bus : buses) {
                System.out.println("The name of the event bus is: " + bus.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN of the event bus is: " + bus.arn());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a rule and add a target to it.
- Enable and disable rules.
- List and update rules and targets.
- Send events, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * This Java V2 example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:
 *
 * 1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to use with
 * Amazon EventBridge.
 * 2. Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with EventBridge events
 * enabled.
```

```
 * 3. Creates a rule that triggers when an object is uploaded to Amazon S3.
 * 4. Lists rules on the event bus.
 * 5. Creates a new Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic and
 * lets the user subscribe to it.
 * 6. Adds a target to the rule that sends an email to the specified topic.
 * 7. Creates an EventBridge event that sends an email when an Amazon S3 object
 * is created.
 * 8. Lists Targets.
 * 9. Lists the rules for the same target.
 * 10. Triggers the rule by uploading a file to the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 11. Disables a specific rule.
 * 12. Checks and print the state of the rule.
 * 13. Adds a transform to the rule to change the text of the email.
 * 14. Enables a specific rule.
 * 15. Triggers the updated rule by uploading a file to the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 16. Updates the rule to be a custom rule pattern.
 * 17. Sending an event to trigger the rule.
 * 18. Cleans up resources.
 *
 */
public class EventbridgeMVP {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException, IOException
 {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleName> <bucketName> <topicName> <eventRuleName>

                Where:
                    roleName - The name of the role to create.
                    bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 bucket name to create.
                    topicName - The name of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic to create.
                    eventRuleName - The Amazon EventBridge rule name to create.
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String polJSON = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        Scanner sc = new Scanner(System.in);
        String roleName = args[0];
        String bucketName = args[1];
        String topicName = args[2];
        String eventRuleName = args[3];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        EventBridgeClient eventBrClient = EventBridgeClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        Region regionGl = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(regionGl)
                .build();

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out
                .println("1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role
to use with Amazon EventBridge.");
        String roleArn = createIAMRole(iam, roleName, polJSON);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create an S3 bucket with EventBridge events
enabled.");
        if (checkBucket(s3Client, bucketName)) {
            System.out.println("Bucket " + bucketName + " already exists. Ending
this scenario.");
            System.exit(1);
        }

        createBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
        Thread.sleep(3000);
        setBucketNotification(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create a rule that triggers when an object is
uploaded to Amazon S3.");
        Thread.sleep(10000);
        addEventRule(eventBrClient, roleArn, bucketName, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. List rules on the event bus.");
        listRules(eventBrClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Create a new SNS topic for testing and let the user
subscribe to the topic.");
        String topicArn = createSnsTopic(snsClient, topicName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Add a target to the rule that sends an email to the
specified topic.");
        System.out.println("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS
topic:");
        String email = sc.nextLine();
        subEmail(snsClient, topicArn, email);
        System.out.println(
                "Use the link in the email you received to confirm your
subscription. Then, press Enter to continue.");
```

```
        sc.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Create an EventBridge event that sends an email when
an Amazon S3 object is created.");
        addSnsEventRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName, topicArn, topicName,
eventRuleName, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 8. List Targets.");
        listTargets(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 9. List the rules for the same target.");
        listTargetRules(eventBrClient, topicArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 10. Trigger the rule by uploading a file to the S3
bucket.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        uploadTextFiletoS3(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Disable a specific rule.");
        changeRuleState(eventBrClient, eventRuleName, false);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Check and print the state of the rule.");
        checkRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Add a transform to the rule to change the text of
the email.");
        updateSnsEventRule(eventBrClient, topicArn, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Enable a specific rule.");
        changeRuleState(eventBrClient, eventRuleName, true);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 15. Trigger the updated rule by uploading a file to the
S3 bucket.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        uploadTextFiletoS3(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 16. Update the rule to be a custom rule pattern.");
        updateToCustomRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println("Updated event rule " + eventRuleName + " to use a custom
pattern.");
        updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(eventBrClient, topicArn, eventRuleName);
        System.out.println("Updated event target " + topicArn + ".");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("17. Sending an event to trigger the rule. This will
trigger a subscription email.");
        triggerCustomRule(eventBrClient, email);
        System.out.println("Events have been sent. Press Enter to continue.");
        sc.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("18. Clean up resources.");
        System.out.println("Do you want to clean up resources (y/n)");
        String ans = sc.nextLine();
        if (ans.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            cleanupResources(eventBrClient, snsClient, s3Client, iam, topicArn,
eventRuleName, bucketName, roleName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The resources will not be cleaned up. ");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario has successfully
completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void cleanupResources(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, SnsClient
snsClient, S3Client s3Client,
            IamClient iam, String topicArn, String eventRuleName, String bucketName,
String roleName) {
        System.out.println("Removing all targets from the event rule.");
        deleteTargetsFromRule(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        deleteRuleByName(eventBrClient, eventRuleName);
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);
        deleteS3Bucket(s3Client, bucketName);
        deleteRole(iam, roleName);
    }

    public static void deleteRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String policyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess";
        DetachRolePolicyRequest policyRequest = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                .policyArn(policyArn)
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        iam.detachRolePolicy(policyRequest);
        System.out.println("Successfully detached policy " + policyArn + " from role
" + roleName);

        // Delete the role.
        DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);
    }

    public static void deleteS3Bucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        // Remove all the objects from the S3 bucket.
        ListObjectsRequest listObjects = ListObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        ListObjectsResponse res = s3Client.listObjects(listObjects);
```

```
        List<S3Object> objects = res.contents();
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> toDelete = new ArrayList<>();

        for (S3Object myValue : objects) {
            toDelete.add(ObjectIdentifier.builder()
                    .key(myValue.key())
                    .build());
        }

        DeleteObjectsRequest dor = DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .delete(Delete.builder()
                        .objects(toDelete).build())
                .build();

        s3Client.deleteObjects(dor);

        // Delete the S3 bucket.
        DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        System.out.println("You have deleted the bucket and the objects");
    }

    // Delete the SNS topic.
    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
   public static void deleteRuleByName(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
       DeleteRuleRequest ruleRequest = DeleteRuleRequest.builder()
               .name(ruleName)
               .build();

       eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest);
       System.out.println("Successfully deleted the rule");
   }

   public static void deleteTargetsFromRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName) {
       // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
       ListTargetsByRuleRequest request = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
               .rule(eventRuleName)
               .build();

       ListTargetsByRuleResponse response =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request);
       List<Target> allTargets = response.targets();

       // Get all targets and delete them.
       for (Target myTarget : allTargets) {
           RemoveTargetsRequest removeTargetsRequest =
RemoveTargetsRequest.builder()
                   .rule(eventRuleName)
                   .ids(myTarget.id())
                   .build();

           eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest);
           System.out.println("Successfully removed the target");
       }
   }

   public static void triggerCustomRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
email) {
       String json = "{" +
               "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
               "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"," +
               "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
               "}";

       PutEventsRequestEntry entry = PutEventsRequestEntry.builder()
               .source("ExampleSource")
```

```
                .detail(json)
                .detailType("ExampleType")
                .build();

        PutEventsRequest eventsRequest = PutEventsRequest.builder()
                .entries(entry)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest);
    }

    public static void updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(EventBridgeClient
eventBrClient, String topicArn,
            String ruleName) {
        String targetId = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        InputTransformer inputTransformer = InputTransformer.builder()
                .inputTemplate("\"Notification: sample event was received.\"")
                .build();

        Target target = Target.builder()
                .id(targetId)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .inputTransformer(inputTransformer)
                .build();

        try {
            PutTargetsRequest targetsRequest = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .targets(target)
                    .eventBusName(null)
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest);
        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void updateToCustomRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
        String customEventsPattern = "{" +
                "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
                "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
```

```
                "}";

        PutRuleRequest request = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                .name(ruleName)
                .description("Custom test rule")
                .eventPattern(customEventsPattern)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putRule(request);
    }

    // Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
    public static void updateSnsEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
 topicArn, String ruleName) {
        String targetId = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Map<String, String> myMap = new HashMap<>();
        myMap.put("bucket", "$.detail.bucket.name");
        myMap.put("time", "$.time");

        InputTransformer inputTransformer = InputTransformer.builder()
                .inputTemplate("\"Notification: an object was uploaded to bucket
 <bucket> at <time>.\"")
                .inputPathsMap(myMap)
                .build();

        Target target = Target.builder()
                .id(targetId)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .inputTransformer(inputTransformer)
                .build();

        try {
            PutTargetsRequest targetsRequest = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .targets(target)
                    .eventBusName(null)
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest);

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void checkRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName) {
        try {
            DescribeRuleRequest ruleRequest = DescribeRuleRequest.builder()
                    .name(eventRuleName)
                    .build();

            DescribeRuleResponse response = eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest);
            System.out.println("The state of the rule is " +
response.stateAsString());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void changeRuleState(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName, Boolean isEnabled) {
        try {
            if (!isEnabled) {
                System.out.println("Disabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                DisableRuleRequest ruleRequest = DisableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();

                eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest);
            } else {
                System.out.println("Enabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                EnableRuleRequest ruleRequest = EnableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();
                eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest);
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
```

```
   public static void uploadTextFiletoS3(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName)
throws IOException {
       // Create a unique file name.
       String fileSuffix = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyyMMddHHmmss").format(new
Date());
       String fileName = "TextFile" + fileSuffix + ".txt";

       File myFile = new File(fileName);
       FileWriter fw = new FileWriter(myFile.getAbsoluteFile());
       BufferedWriter bw = new BufferedWriter(fw);
       bw.write("This is a sample file for testing uploads.");
       bw.close();

       try {
           PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(fileName)
                   .build();

           s3Client.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromFile(myFile));

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static void listTargetRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
topicArn) {
       ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest.builder()
               .targetArn(topicArn)
               .build();

       ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response =
eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest);
       List<String> rules = response.ruleNames();
       for (String rule : rules) {
           System.out.println("The rule name is " + rule);
       }
   }

   public static void listTargets(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String ruleName)
{
```

```
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest ruleRequest = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
                .rule(ruleName)
                .build();

        ListTargetsByRuleResponse res =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest);
        List<Target> targetsList = res.targets();
        for (Target target: targetsList) {
            System.out.println("Target ARN: "+target.arn());
        }
    }

    // Add a rule which triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3
    // bucket.
    public static void addSnsEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName, String topicArn,
            String topicName, String eventRuleName, String bucketName) {
        String targetID = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Target myTarget = Target.builder()
                .id(targetID)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .build();

        List<Target> targets = new ArrayList<>();
        targets.add(myTarget);
        PutTargetsRequest request = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                .eventBusName(null)
                .targets(targets)
                .rule(ruleName)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putTargets(request);
        System.out.println("Added event rule " + eventRuleName + " with Amazon SNS
target " + topicName + " for bucket "
                + bucketName + ".");
    }

    public static void subEmail(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String email)
{
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("email")
                    .endpoint(email)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
```

```
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + result.subscriptionArn() + "\n
\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListRulesRequest rulesRequest = ListRulesRequest.builder()
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();

            ListRulesResponse response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest);
            List<Rule> rules = response.rules();
            for (Rule rule : rules) {
                System.out.println("The rule name is : " + rule.name());
                System.out.println("The rule description is : " +
 rule.description());
                System.out.println("The rule state is : " + rule.stateAsString());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createSnsTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        String topicPolicy = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Sid\": \"EventBridgePublishTopic\"," +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
```

```
                "}," +
                "\"Resource\": \"*\"," +
                "\"Action\": \"sns:Publish\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        Map<String, String> topicAttributes = new HashMap<>();
        topicAttributes.put("Policy", topicPolicy);
        CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

        CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
        System.out.println("Added topic " + topicName + " for email
subscriptions.");
        return response.topicArn();
    }

    // Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in
    // a bucket.
    public static void addEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String roleArn,
String bucketName,
            String eventRuleName) {
        String pattern = "{\n" +
                "  \"source\": [\"aws.s3\"],\n" +
                "  \"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"],\n" +
                "  \"detail\": {\n" +
                "    \"bucket\": {\n" +
                "      \"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]\n" +
                "    }\n" +
                "  }\n" +
                "}";

        try {
            PutRuleRequest ruleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java v2")
                    .name(eventRuleName)
                    .eventPattern(pattern)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .build();

            PutRuleResponse ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The ARN of the new rule is " +
ruleResponse.ruleArn());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Determine if the S3 bucket exists.
    public static Boolean checkBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest);
            return true;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    // Set the S3 bucket notification configuration.
    public static void setBucketNotification(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            EventBridgeConfiguration eventBridgeConfiguration =
EventBridgeConfiguration.builder()
                    .build();

            NotificationConfiguration configuration =
NotificationConfiguration.builder()
                    .eventBridgeConfiguration(eventBridgeConfiguration)
                    .build();

            PutBucketNotificationConfigurationRequest configurationRequest =
PutBucketNotificationConfigurationRequest
                    .builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .notificationConfiguration(configuration)
                    .skipDestinationValidation(true)
                    .build();
```

```
            s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(configurationRequest);
            System.out.println("Added bucket " + bucketName + " with EventBridge
events enabled.");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
            WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse> waiterResponse =
s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
polJSON) {
        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(polJSON)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
```

```
            AttachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
 AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .policyArn("arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess")
                    .build();

            iam.attachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
            return response.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteRule
  - DescribeRule
  - DisableRule
  - EnableRule
  - ListRuleNamesByTarget
  - ListRules
  - ListTargetsByRule
  - PutEvents
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Actions

`DeleteRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteRuleByName(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName) {
       DeleteRuleRequest ruleRequest = DeleteRuleRequest.builder()
               .name(ruleName)
               .build();

       eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest);
       System.out.println("Successfully deleted the rule");
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName) {
       try {
           DescribeRuleRequest ruleRequest = DescribeRuleRequest.builder()
                   .name(eventRuleName)
                   .build();
```

```
            DescribeRuleResponse response = eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest);
            System.out.println("The state of the rule is " +
response.stateAsString());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DisableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Disable a rule by using its rule name.

```
    public static void changeRuleState(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName, Boolean isEnabled) {
        try {
            if (!isEnabled) {
                System.out.println("Disabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                DisableRuleRequest ruleRequest = DisableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();

                eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest);
            } else {
                System.out.println("Enabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                EnableRuleRequest ruleRequest = EnableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();
```

```
                eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest);
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`EnableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by using its rule name.

```
   public static void changeRuleState(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName, Boolean isEnabled) {
        try {
            if (!isEnabled) {
                System.out.println("Disabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                DisableRuleRequest ruleRequest = DisableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();

                eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest);
            } else {
                System.out.println("Enabling the rule: " + eventRuleName);
                EnableRuleRequest ruleRequest = EnableRuleRequest.builder()
                        .name(eventRuleName)
                        .build();
                eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest);
```

```
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListRuleNamesByTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRuleNamesByTarget`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the rule names by using the target.

```
   public static void listTargetRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
topicArn) {
       ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest.builder()
               .targetArn(topicArn)
               .build();

       ListRuleNamesByTargetResponse response =
eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest);
       List<String> rules = response.ruleNames();
       for (String rule : rules) {
           System.out.println("The rule name is " + rule);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListRules`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRules`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Enable a rule by using its rule name.

```
    public static void listRules(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient) {
        try {
            ListRulesRequest rulesRequest = ListRulesRequest.builder()
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .limit(10)
                    .build();

            ListRulesResponse response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest);
            List<Rule> rules = response.rules();
            for (Rule rule : rules) {
                System.out.println("The rule name is : " + rule.name());
                System.out.println("The rule description is : " +
rule.description());
                System.out.println("The rule state is : " + rule.stateAsString());
            }

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListTargetsByRule`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTargetsByRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all of the targets for a rule by using the rule name.

```
   public static void listTargets(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String ruleName)
{
       ListTargetsByRuleRequest ruleRequest = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
               .rule(ruleName)
               .build();

       ListTargetsByRuleResponse res =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest);
       List<Target> targetsList = res.targets();
       for (Target target: targetsList) {
           System.out.println("Target ARN: "+target.arn());
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void triggerCustomRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
email) {
```

```
        String json = "{" +
                "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
                "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"," +
                "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
                "}";

        PutEventsRequestEntry entry = PutEventsRequestEntry.builder()
                .source("ExampleSource")
                .detail(json)
                .detailType("ExampleType")
                .build();

        PutEventsRequest eventsRequest = PutEventsRequest.builder()
                .entries(entry)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest);
    }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a scheduled rule.

```
    public static void createEBRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName, String cronExpression) {
        try {
            PutRuleRequest ruleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .name(ruleName)
                    .eventBusName("default")
```

```
                    .scheduleExpression(cronExpression)
                    .state("ENABLED")
                    .description("A test rule that runs on a schedule created by the
Java API")
                    .build();

            PutRuleResponse ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the new rule is " +
ruleResponse.ruleArn());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
    // Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in
    // a bucket.
    public static void addEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String roleArn,
String bucketName,
            String eventRuleName) {
        String pattern = "{\n" +
                "  \"source\": [\"aws.s3\"],\n" +
                "  \"detail-type\": [\"Object Created\"],\n" +
                "  \"detail\": {\n" +
                "    \"bucket\": {\n" +
                "      \"name\": [\"" + bucketName + "\"]\n" +
                "    }\n" +
                "  }\n" +
                "}";

        try {
            PutRuleRequest ruleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java v2")
                    .name(eventRuleName)
                    .eventPattern(pattern)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .build();
```

```
            PutRuleResponse ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the new rule is " +
ruleResponse.ruleArn());

        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add an Amazon SNS topic as a target for a rule.

```
    // Add a rule which triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3
    // bucket.
    public static void addSnsEventRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
ruleName, String topicArn,
            String topicName, String eventRuleName, String bucketName) {
        String targetID = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Target myTarget = Target.builder()
                .id(targetID)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .build();

        List<Target> targets = new ArrayList<>();
        targets.add(myTarget);
        PutTargetsRequest request = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                .eventBusName(null)
```

```
                .targets(targets)
                .rule(ruleName)
                .build();

        eventBrClient.putTargets(request);
        System.out.println("Added event rule " + eventRuleName + " with Amazon SNS
target " + topicName + " for bucket "
                + bucketName + ".");
    }
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
    public static void updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(EventBridgeClient
eventBrClient, String topicArn,
            String ruleName) {
        String targetId = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        InputTransformer inputTransformer = InputTransformer.builder()
                .inputTemplate("\"Notification: sample event was received.\"")
                .build();

        Target target = Target.builder()
                .id(targetId)
                .arn(topicArn)
                .inputTransformer(inputTransformer)
                .build();

        try {
            PutTargetsRequest targetsRequest = PutTargetsRequest.builder()
                    .rule(ruleName)
                    .targets(target)
                    .eventBusName(null)
                    .build();

            eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest);
        } catch (EventBridgeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RemoveTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTargets`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Remove all of the targets for a rule by using the rule name.

```
   public static void deleteTargetsFromRule(EventBridgeClient eventBrClient, String
eventRuleName) {
       // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
       ListTargetsByRuleRequest request = ListTargetsByRuleRequest.builder()
               .rule(eventRuleName)
               .build();

       ListTargetsByRuleResponse response =
eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request);
       List<Target> allTargets = response.targets();

       // Get all targets and delete them.
       for (Target myTarget : allTargets) {
           RemoveTargetsRequest removeTargetsRequest =
RemoveTargetsRequest.builder()
                   .rule(eventRuleName)
                   .ids(myTarget.id())
                   .build();

           eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest);
           System.out.println("Successfully removed the target");
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Send event notifications to EventBridge

The following code example shows how to enable a bucket to send S3 event notifications to EventBridge and route notifications to an Amazon SNS topic and Amazon SQS queue.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /** This method configures a bucket to send events to AWS EventBridge and
creates a rule
    * to route the S3 object created events to a topic and a queue.
    *
    * @param bucketName Name of existing bucket
    * @param topicArn ARN of existing topic to receive S3 event notifications
    * @param queueArn ARN of existing queue to receive S3 event notifications
    *
    *  An AWS CloudFormation stack sets up the bucket, queue, topic before the
method runs.
    */
   public static String setBucketNotificationToEventBridge(String bucketName,
String topicArn, String queueArn) {
       try {
           // Enable bucket to emit S3 Event notifications to EventBridge.
           s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .notificationConfiguration(b1 -> b1
                           .eventBridgeConfiguration(
                                   SdkBuilder::build)
                   ).build()).join();

           // Create an EventBridge rule to route Object Created notifications.
           PutRuleRequest putRuleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                   .name(RULE_NAME)
                   .eventPattern("""
                           {
```

```
                                "source": ["aws.s3"],
                                "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
                                "detail": {
                                  "bucket": {
                                    "name": ["%s"]
                                  }
                                }
                            }
                            """.formatted(bucketName))
                    .build();

            // Add the rule to the default event bus.
            PutRuleResponse putRuleResponse =
eventBridgeClient.putRule(putRuleRequest)
                    .whenComplete((r, t) -> {
                        if (t != null) {
                            logger.error("Error creating event bus rule: " +
t.getMessage(), t);
                            throw new RuntimeException(t.getCause().getMessage(),
t);
                        }
                        logger.info("Event bus rule creation request sent
successfully. ARN is: {}", r.ruleArn());
                    }).join();

            // Add the existing SNS topic and SQS queue as targets to the rule.
            eventBridgeClient.putTargets(b -> b
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .rule(RULE_NAME)
                    .targets(List.of (
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(queueArn)
                                    .id("Queue")
                                    .build(),
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(topicArn)
                                    .id("Topic")
                                    .build())
                            )
                    ).join();
            return putRuleResponse.ruleArn();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with EventBridge Scheduler.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello EventBridge Scheduler

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge Scheduler.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.SchedulerAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ListSchedulesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ScheduleSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.paginators.ListSchedulesPublisher;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class HelloScheduler {

    public static void main(String [] args) {
        listSchedulesAsync();
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Lists all the schedules available.
     * <p>
     * This method uses the {@link SchedulerAsyncClient} to make an asynchronous
 request to
     * list all the schedules available. The method uses the {@link
 ListSchedulesPublisher}
     * to fetch the schedules in a paginated manner, and then processes the
 responses
     * asynchronously.
     */
    public static void listSchedulesAsync() {
        SchedulerAsyncClient schedulerAsyncClient = SchedulerAsyncClient.create();

        // Build the request to list schedules
        ListSchedulesRequest listSchedulesRequest =
 ListSchedulesRequest.builder().build();

        // Use the paginator to fetch all schedules asynchronously.
        ListSchedulesPublisher paginator =
 schedulerAsyncClient.listSchedulesPaginator(listSchedulesRequest);
        List<ScheduleSummary> results = new ArrayList<>();

        // Subscribe to the paginator to process the response asynchronously
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.schedules().forEach(schedule -> {
                results.add(schedule);
                System.out.printf("Schedule: %s%n", schedule.name());
            });
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete.
        future.join();

        // After all schedules are fetched, print the total count.
        System.out.printf("Total of %d schedule(s) available.%n", results.size());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchedule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new schedule for a target task.
    *
    * @param name                  the name of the schedule
    * @param scheduleExpression    The schedule expression that defines when the
schedule should run.
    * @param scheduleGroupName     the name of the schedule group to which the
schedule belongs
    * @param targetArn             the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target
task
    * @param roleArn               the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the
schedule
    * @param input                 the input data for the target task
    * @param deleteAfterCompletion whether to delete the schedule after it's
executed
    * @param useFlexibleTimeWindow whether to use a flexible time window for the
schedule execution
    * @return true if the schedule was successfully created, false otherwise
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> createScheduleAsync(
       String name,
       String scheduleExpression,
       String scheduleGroupName,
```

```
        String targetArn,
        String roleArn,
        String input,
        boolean deleteAfterCompletion,
        boolean useFlexibleTimeWindow) {

        int hoursToRun = 1;
        int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

        Target target = Target.builder()
            .arn(targetArn)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .input(input)
            .build();

        FlexibleTimeWindow flexibleTimeWindow = FlexibleTimeWindow.builder()
            .mode(useFlexibleTimeWindow
                ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
                : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF)
            .maximumWindowInMinutes(useFlexibleTimeWindow
                ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
                : null)
            .build();

        Instant startDate = Instant.now();
        Instant endDate = startDate.plus(Duration.ofHours(hoursToRun));

        CreateScheduleRequest request = CreateScheduleRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .scheduleExpression(scheduleExpression)
            .groupName(scheduleGroupName)
            .target(target)
            .actionAfterCompletion(deleteAfterCompletion
                ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE)
            .startDate(startDate)
            .endDate(endDate)
            .flexibleTimeWindow(flexibleTimeWindow)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createSchedule(request)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                logger.info("Successfully created schedule {} in schedule group {},
The ARN is {} ", name, scheduleGroupName, response.scheduleArn());
```

```
                return true;
            })
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    if (ex instanceof ConflictException) {
                        // Handle ConflictException
                        logger.error("A conflict exception occurred while creating
the schedule: {}", ex.getMessage());
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict exception occurred
while creating the schedule: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error creating schedule: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    }
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateScheduleGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new schedule group.
     *
     * @param name the name of the schedule group to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of creating the schedule group
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse> createScheduleGroup(String
name) {
       CreateScheduleGroupRequest request = CreateScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .build();

       logger.info("Initiating createScheduleGroup call for group: {}", name);
       CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse> futureResponse =
getAsyncClient().createScheduleGroup(request);
       futureResponse.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               if (ex instanceof CompletionException && ex.getCause() instanceof
ConflictException) {
                   // Rethrow the ConflictException
                   throw (ConflictException) ex.getCause();
               } else {
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schedule group:
" + name, ex);
               }
           } else if (response == null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create schedule group:
response was null");
           } else {
               logger.info("Successfully created schedule group '{}': {}", name,
response.scheduleGroupArn());
           }
       });

       return futureResponse;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSchedule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a schedule with the specified name and group name.
    *
    * @param name      the name of the schedule to be deleted
    * @param groupName the group name of the schedule to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates whether
the schedule was successfully deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the schedule,
except for the case where the schedule is not found
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> deleteScheduleAsync(String name, String
groupName) {
       DeleteScheduleRequest request = DeleteScheduleRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .groupName(groupName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteScheduleResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteSchedule(request);
       return response.handle((result, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                   throw new CompletionException("Resource not found while deleting
schedule with ID: " + name, ex);
               } else {
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schedule.", ex);
               }
           }
           logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule with name {}.", name);
           return true;
       });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteScheduleGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes the specified schedule group.
    *
    * @param name the name of the schedule group to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schedule group
has been deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the schedule
group
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteScheduleGroupAsync(String name) {
       DeleteScheduleGroupRequest request = DeleteScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteScheduleGroup(request)
           .thenRun(() -> {
               logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule group {}", name);
           })
           .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
               if (ex != null) {
                   if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The resource was not found: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
                   } else {
                       throw new CompletionException("Error deleting schedule
group: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                   }
```

```
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Scheduled Events

The following code example shows how to:

- Deploy a AWS CloudFormation stack with required resources.
- Create a EventBridge Scheduler schedule group.
- Create a one-time EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a flexible time window.
- Create a recurring EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a specified rate.
- Delete EventBridge Scheduler the schedule and schedule group.
- Clean up resources and delete the stack.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the scenario.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.SchedulerException;
import javax.mail.internet.AddressException;
import javax.mail.internet.InternetAddress;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.format.DateTimeFormatter;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;
```

```
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks for the Amazon EventBridge
 Scheduler workflow:
 * <p>
 * 1. Prepare the Application:
 * - Prompt the user for an email address to use for the subscription for the SNS
 topic subscription.
 * - Deploy the Cloud Formation template in resources/cfn_template.yaml for resource
 creation.
 * - Store the outputs of the stack into variables for use in the workflow.
 * - Create a schedule group for all workflow schedules.
 * <p>
 * 2. Create one-time Schedule:
 * - Create a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
 * - Use a Flexible Time Window and set the schedule to delete after completion.
 * - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
 * <p>
 * 3. Create a time-based schedule:
 * - Prompt the user for how many X times per Y hours a recurring event should be
 scheduled.
 * - Create the scheduled event for X times per hour for Y hours.
 * - Wait for the user to receive the event email from SNS.
 * - Delete the schedule when the user is finished.
 * <p>
 * 4. Clean up:
 * - Prompt the user for y/n answer if they want to destroy the stack and clean up
 all resources.
 * - Delete the schedule group.
 * - Destroy the Cloud Formation stack and wait until the stack has been removed.
 */

public class EventbridgeSchedulerScenario {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EventbridgeSchedulerScenario.class);
    private static final Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    private static String STACK_NAME = "workflow-stack-name";
    private static final String scheduleGroupName = "schedules-group";

    private static String recurringScheduleName = "";
```

```
   private static String oneTimeScheduleName = "";

   private static final EventbridgeSchedulerActions eventbridgeActions = new
EventbridgeSchedulerActions();

   public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

   public static String roleArn = "";
   public static String snsTopicArn = "";

   public static void main(String[] args) {
       logger.info(DASHES);
       logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Workflow.");
       logger.info("""
           Amazon EventBridge Scheduler is a fully managed service that helps you
schedule and execute
           a wide range of tasks and events in the cloud. It's designed to simplify
the process of
           scheduling and managing recurring or one-time events, making it easier
for developers and
           businesses to automate various workflows and processes.

           One of the key features of Amazon EventBridge Scheduler is its ability
to schedule events
           based on a variety of triggers, including time-based schedules, custom
event patterns, or
           even integration with other AWS services. For example, you can use
EventBridge Scheduler
           to schedule a report generation task to run every weekday at 9 AM, or to
trigger a
           Lambda function when a specific Amazon S3 object is created.

           This flexibility allows you to build complex and dynamic event-driven
architectures
           that adapt to your business needs.

           Lets get started...
           """);
       waitForInputToContinue();
       logger.info(DASHES);

       logger.info(DASHES);
       logger.info("1. Prepare the application.");
       waitForInputToContinue();
```

```
        try {
            boolean prepareSuccess = prepareApplication();
            logger.info(DASHES);

            if (prepareSuccess) {
                logger.info("2. Create one-time schedule.");
                logger.info("""
                    A one-time schedule in Amazon EventBridge Scheduler is an event
trigger that allows
                    you to schedule a one-time event to run at a specific date and
time. This is useful for
                    executing a specific task or workflow at a predetermined time,
without the need for recurring
                    or complex scheduling.
                    """);
                waitForInputToContinue();
                createOneTimeSchedule();
                logger.info("Do you want to delete the schedule {} (y/n) ?",
oneTimeScheduleName);
                String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {

eventbridgeActions.deleteScheduleAsync(oneTimeScheduleName,scheduleGroupName);
                }
                logger.info(DASHES);

                logger.info("3. Create a recurring schedule.");
                logger.info("""
                    A recurring schedule is a feature that allows you to schedule
and manage the execution
                    of your serverless applications or workloads on a recurring
basis. For example,
                    with EventBridge Scheduler, you can create custom schedules for
your AWS Lambda functions,
                    AWS Step Functions, and other supported event sources, enabling
you to automate tasks and
                    workflows without the need for complex infrastructure
management.
                    """);
                waitForInputToContinue();
                createRecurringSchedule();
                logger.info("Do you want to delete the schedule {} (y/n) ?",
oneTimeScheduleName);
                String ans2 = scanner.nextLine().trim();
```

```
                if (ans2.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {

eventbridgeActions.deleteScheduleAsync(recurringScheduleName,scheduleGroupName);
                }
                logger.info(DASHES);
            }
        } catch (Exception ex) {
            logger.info("There was a problem with the workflow {}, initiating
cleanup...", ex.getMessage());
            cleanUp();
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Clean up the resources.");
        logger.info("Do you want to delete these AWS resources (y/n) ?");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            cleanUp();
        } else {
            logger.info("The AWS resources will not be deleted.");
        }
        logger.info("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler workflow completed.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Cleans up the resources associated with the EventBridge scheduler.
     * If any errors occur during the cleanup process, the corresponding error
messages are logged.
     */
    public static void cleanUp() {
        logger.info("First, delete the schedule group.");
        logger.info("When the schedule group is deleted, schedules that are part of
that group are deleted.");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        try {
            eventbridgeActions.deleteScheduleGroupAsync(scheduleGroupName).join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof SchedulerException schedulerException) {
                logger.error("Scheduler error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}",
```

```
                    schedulerException.getMessage(),
schedulerException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), schedulerException);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }

        logger.info("Destroy the CloudFormation stack");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
    }

    /**
     * Prepares the application by creating resources in a CloudFormation stack,
including an SNS topic
     * that will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler events. The user will
need to confirm the subscription
     * in order to receive event emails.
     *
     * @return true if the application preparation was successful, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean prepareApplication() {
        logger.info("""
            This example creates resources in a CloudFormation stack, including an
SNS topic
            that will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler events.
            You will need to confirm the subscription in order to receive event
emails.
             """);

        String emailAddress = promptUserForEmail();
        logger.info("You entered {}", emailAddress);

        logger.info("Do you want to use a custom Stack name (y/n) ?");
        String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            String newStackName = scanner.nextLine();
            logger.info("You entered {} for the new stack name", newStackName);
            waitForInputToContinue();
            STACK_NAME = newStackName;
        }
```

```
        logger.info("Get the roleArn and snsTopicArn values using a Cloudformation
template.");
        waitForInputToContinue();
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME, emailAddress);
        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputs(STACK_NAME);
        roleArn = stackOutputs.get("RoleARN");
        snsTopicArn = stackOutputs.get("SNStopicARN");

        logger.info("The roleARN is {}", roleArn);
        logger.info("The snsTopicArn is {}", snsTopicArn);

        try {
            eventbridgeActions.createScheduleGroup(scheduleGroupName).join();
            logger.info("createScheduleGroupAsync completed successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.error("Error occurred: {} ", e.getMessage());
            return false;
        }
        logger.info("Application preparation complete.");
        return true;
    }

    /**
     * Waits for the user to enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue the program.
     * This method is used to pause the program execution and wait for user input
before
     * proceeding.
     */
    private static void waitForInputToContinue() {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
```

```
        }
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user to enter an email address and validates the input.
     * If the provided email address is invalid, the method will prompt the user to
try again.
     *
     * @return the valid email address entered by the user
     */
    private static String promptUserForEmail() {
        logger.info("Enter an email address to use for event subscriptions: ");
        String email = scanner.nextLine();
        if (!isValidEmail(email)) {
            logger.info("Invalid email address. Please try again.");
            return promptUserForEmail();
        }
        return email;
    }

    /**
     * Checks if the given email address is valid.
     *
     * @param email the email address to be validated
     * @return {@code true} if the email address is valid, {@code false} otherwise
     */
    private static boolean isValidEmail(String email) {
        try {
            InternetAddress emailAddress = new InternetAddress(email);
            emailAddress.validate();
            return true;

        } catch (AddressException e) {
            return false;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event in 1 minute with a
flexible time window.
     *
     * @return {@code true} if the schedule was created successfully, {@code false}
otherwise
     */
```

```
    public static Boolean createOneTimeSchedule() {
        oneTimeScheduleName = promptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the one-
time schedule:");
        logger.info("Creating a one-time schedule named {} to send an initial event
 in 1 minute with a flexible time window...", oneTimeScheduleName);
        LocalDateTime scheduledTime = LocalDateTime.now();
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-
dd'T'HH:mm:ss");

        String scheduleExpression = "at(" + scheduledTime.format(formatter) + ")";
        return eventbridgeActions.createScheduleAsync(
            oneTimeScheduleName,
            scheduleExpression,
            scheduleGroupName,
            snsTopicArn,
            roleArn,
            "One time scheduled event test from schedule",
            true,
            true).join();
    }


    /**
     * Creates a recurring schedule to send events based on a specific time.
     *
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with a boolean value
 indicating the success or failure of the operation.
     */
    public static Boolean createRecurringSchedule() {
        logger.info("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one hour...");
        recurringScheduleName = promptUserForResourceName("Enter a name for the
 recurring schedule:");

        // Prompt the user for the schedule rate (in minutes).
        int scheduleRateInMinutes = promptUserForInteger("Enter the desired schedule
 rate (in minutes): ");
        String scheduleExpression = "rate(" + scheduleRateInMinutes + " minutes)";
        return eventbridgeActions.createScheduleAsync(
            recurringScheduleName,
            scheduleExpression,
            scheduleGroupName,
            snsTopicArn,
            roleArn,
            "Recurrent event test from schedule " + recurringScheduleName,
```

```
            true,
            true).join();
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user for a resource name and validates the input.
     *
     * @param prompt the message to display to the user when prompting for the
 resource name
     * @return the valid resource name entered by the user
     */
    private static String promptUserForResourceName(String prompt) {
        logger.info(prompt);
        String resourceName = scanner.nextLine();
        String regex = "[0-9a-zA-Z-_.]+";
        if (!resourceName.matches(regex)) {
            logger.info("Invalid resource name. Please use a name that matches the
 pattern " + regex + ".");
            return promptUserForResourceName(prompt);
        }
        return resourceName;
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user for an integer input and returns the integer value.
     *
     * @param prompt the message to be displayed to the user when prompting for
 input
     * @return the integer value entered by the user
     */
    private static int promptUserForInteger(String prompt) {
        logger.info(prompt);
        String stringResponse = scanner.nextLine();
        if (stringResponse == null || stringResponse.trim().isEmpty() || !
isInteger(stringResponse)) {
            logger.info("Invalid integer.");
            return promptUserForInteger(prompt);
        }
        return Integer.parseInt(stringResponse);
    }

    /**
     * Checks if the given string represents a valid integer.
     *
```

```
     * @param str the string to be checked
     * @return {@code true} if the string represents a valid integer, {@code false}
 otherwise
     */
    private static boolean isInteger(String str) {
        try {
            Integer.parseInt(str);
            return true;
        } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
            return false;
        }
    }
}
```

Wrapper for service operations.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.SchedulerAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ActionAfterCompletion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ConflictException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.CreateScheduleGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.CreateScheduleGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.CreateScheduleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.DeleteScheduleGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.DeleteScheduleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.DeleteScheduleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.FlexibleTimeWindow;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.FlexibleTimeWindowMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.ResourceNotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.scheduler.model.Target;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
```

```
public class EventbridgeSchedulerActions {

    private static SchedulerAsyncClient schedulerClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(EventbridgeSchedulerActions.class);

    public static SchedulerAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (schedulerClient == null) {
            /*
            The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
 version 2,
            and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
 client for interacting with AWS services.
             It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
 communication and the Java NIO API to
             provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
 responses.
             */

            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
 timeout.
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
 timeout.
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
 individual call attempt timeout.
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            schedulerClient = SchedulerAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return schedulerClient;
```

```
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new schedule group.
     *
     * @param name the name of the schedule group to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of creating the schedule group
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse> createScheduleGroup(String
name) {
        CreateScheduleGroupRequest request = CreateScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .build();

        logger.info("Initiating createScheduleGroup call for group: {}", name);
        CompletableFuture<CreateScheduleGroupResponse> futureResponse =
getAsyncClient().createScheduleGroup(request);
        futureResponse.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof CompletionException && ex.getCause() instanceof
ConflictException) {
                    // Rethrow the ConflictException
                    throw (ConflictException) ex.getCause();
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create schedule group:
" + name, ex);
                }
            } else if (response == null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create schedule group:
response was null");
            } else {
                logger.info("Successfully created schedule group '{}': {}", name,
response.scheduleGroupArn());
            }
        });

        return futureResponse;
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new schedule for a target task.
```

```
    *
    * @param name                  the name of the schedule
    * @param scheduleExpression    The schedule expression that defines when the
schedule should run.
    * @param scheduleGroupName     the name of the schedule group to which the
schedule belongs
    * @param targetArn             the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target
task
    * @param roleArn               the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the
schedule
    * @param input                 the input data for the target task
    * @param deleteAfterCompletion whether to delete the schedule after it's
executed
    * @param useFlexibleTimeWindow whether to use a flexible time window for the
schedule execution
    * @return true if the schedule was successfully created, false otherwise
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> createScheduleAsync(
       String name,
       String scheduleExpression,
       String scheduleGroupName,
       String targetArn,
       String roleArn,
       String input,
       boolean deleteAfterCompletion,
       boolean useFlexibleTimeWindow) {

       int hoursToRun = 1;
       int flexibleTimeWindowMinutes = 10;

       Target target = Target.builder()
           .arn(targetArn)
           .roleArn(roleArn)
           .input(input)
           .build();

       FlexibleTimeWindow flexibleTimeWindow = FlexibleTimeWindow.builder()
           .mode(useFlexibleTimeWindow
               ? FlexibleTimeWindowMode.FLEXIBLE
               : FlexibleTimeWindowMode.OFF)
           .maximumWindowInMinutes(useFlexibleTimeWindow
               ? flexibleTimeWindowMinutes
               : null)
           .build();
```

```
        Instant startDate = Instant.now();
        Instant endDate = startDate.plus(Duration.ofHours(hoursToRun));

        CreateScheduleRequest request = CreateScheduleRequest.builder()
            .name(name)
            .scheduleExpression(scheduleExpression)
            .groupName(scheduleGroupName)
            .target(target)
            .actionAfterCompletion(deleteAfterCompletion
                ? ActionAfterCompletion.DELETE
                : ActionAfterCompletion.NONE)
            .startDate(startDate)
            .endDate(endDate)
            .flexibleTimeWindow(flexibleTimeWindow)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createSchedule(request)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                logger.info("Successfully created schedule {} in schedule group {},
The ARN is {} ", name, scheduleGroupName, response.scheduleArn());
                return true;
            })
            .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
                if (ex != null) {
                    if (ex instanceof ConflictException) {
                        // Handle ConflictException
                        logger.error("A conflict exception occurred while creating
the schedule: {}", ex.getMessage());
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict exception occurred
while creating the schedule: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error creating schedule: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
                    }
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes the specified schedule group.
     *
     * @param name the name of the schedule group to delete
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the schedule group
has been deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the schedule
group
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteScheduleGroupAsync(String name) {
       DeleteScheduleGroupRequest request = DeleteScheduleGroupRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteScheduleGroup(request)
           .thenRun(() -> {
               logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule group {}", name);
           })
           .whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
               if (ex != null) {
                   if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The resource was not found: "
+ ex.getMessage(), ex);
                   } else {
                       throw new CompletionException("Error deleting schedule
group: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
                   }
               }
           });
   }


   /**
    * Deletes a schedule with the specified name and group name.
    *
    * @param name      the name of the schedule to be deleted
    * @param groupName the group name of the schedule to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates whether
the schedule was successfully deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the schedule,
except for the case where the schedule is not found
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Boolean> deleteScheduleAsync(String name, String
groupName) {
       DeleteScheduleRequest request = DeleteScheduleRequest.builder()
           .name(name)
           .groupName(groupName)
           .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DeleteScheduleResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().deleteSchedule(request);
        return response.handle((result, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                if (ex instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Resource not found while deleting
 schedule with ID: " + name, ex);
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete schedule.", ex);
                }
            }
            logger.info("Successfully deleted schedule with name {}.", name);
            return true;
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule
  - DeleteScheduleGroups

Forecast examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Forecast.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDataset`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateDatasetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.Schema;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.SchemaAttribute;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateDatasetResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateDataSet {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <name>\s

                Where:
                    name - The name of the data set.\s
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String name = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String myDataSetARN = createForecastDataSet(forecast, name);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new data set is " + myDataSetARN);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static String createForecastDataSet(ForecastClient forecast, String name)
{
        try {
            Schema schema = Schema.builder()
                    .attributes(getSchema())
                    .build();

            CreateDatasetRequest datasetRequest = CreateDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .datasetName(name)
                    .domain("CUSTOM")
                    .datasetType("RELATED_TIME_SERIES")
                    .dataFrequency("D")
                    .schema(schema)
                    .build();

            CreateDatasetResponse response = forecast.createDataset(datasetRequest);
            return response.datasetArn();

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }

    // Create a SchemaAttribute list required to create a data set.
    private static List<SchemaAttribute> getSchema() {
```

```
        List<SchemaAttribute> schemaList = new ArrayList<>();
        SchemaAttribute att1 = SchemaAttribute.builder()
                .attributeName("item_id")
                .attributeType("string")
                .build();

        SchemaAttribute att2 = SchemaAttribute.builder()
                .attributeName("timestamp")
                .attributeType("timestamp")
                .build();

        SchemaAttribute att3 = SchemaAttribute.builder()
                .attributeName("target_value")
                .attributeType("float")
                .build();

        // Push the SchemaAttribute objects to the List.
        schemaList.add(att1);
        schemaList.add(att2);
        schemaList.add(att3);
        return schemaList;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateForecast`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateForecast`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateForecastRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.CreateForecastResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateForecast {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <name> <predictorArn>\s

                Where:
                    name - The name of the forecast.\s
                    predictorArn - The arn of the predictor to use.\s

                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String name = args[0];
        String predictorArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String forecastArn = createNewForecast(forecast, name, predictorArn);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new forecast is " + forecastArn);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static String createNewForecast(ForecastClient forecast, String name,
 String predictorArn) {
```

```
        try {
            CreateForecastRequest forecastRequest = CreateForecastRequest.builder()
                    .forecastName(name)
                    .predictorArn(predictorArn)
                    .build();

            CreateForecastResponse response =
 forecast.createForecast(forecastRequest);
            return response.forecastArn();

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateForecast in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDataset`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DeleteDatasetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteDataset {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <datasetARN>\s

                Where:
                    datasetARN - The ARN of the data set to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String datasetARN = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteForecastDataSet(forecast, datasetARN);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void deleteForecastDataSet(ForecastClient forecast, String
 myDataSetARN) {
        try {
            DeleteDatasetRequest deleteRequest = DeleteDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .datasetArn(myDataSetARN)
                    .build();

            forecast.deleteDataset(deleteRequest);
            System.out.println("The Data Set was deleted");

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDataset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteForecast`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteForecast`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DeleteDatasetRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteDataset {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <datasetARN>\s

                Where:
```

```
                    datasetARN - The ARN of the data set to delete.\s
                """";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String datasetARN = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteForecastDataSet(forecast, datasetARN);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void deleteForecastDataSet(ForecastClient forecast, String
 myDataSetARN) {
        try {
            DeleteDatasetRequest deleteRequest = DeleteDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .datasetArn(myDataSetARN)
                    .build();

            forecast.deleteDataset(deleteRequest);
            System.out.println("The Data Set was deleted");

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteForecast in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeForecast`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeForecast`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DescribeForecastRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DescribeForecastResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeForecast {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <forecastarn>\s

                Where:
                    forecastarn - The arn of the forecast (for example,
 "arn:aws:forecast:us-west-2:xxxxx322:forecast/my_forecast)
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String forecastarn = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describe(forecast, forecastarn);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void describe(ForecastClient forecast, String forecastarn) {
        try {
            DescribeForecastRequest request = DescribeForecastRequest.builder()
                    .forecastArn(forecastarn)
                    .build();

            DescribeForecastResponse response = forecast.describeForecast(request);
            System.out.println("The name of the forecast is " +
 response.forecastName());

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeForecast in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDatasetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatasetGroups`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.DatasetGroupSummary;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListDatasetGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListDatasetGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListDataSetGroups {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listDataGroups(forecast);
        forecast.close();
    }

    public static void listDataGroups(ForecastClient forecast) {
        try {
            ListDatasetGroupsRequest group = ListDatasetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListDatasetGroupsResponse response = forecast.listDatasetGroups(group);
            List<DatasetGroupSummary> groups = response.datasetGroups();
            for (DatasetGroupSummary myGroup : groups) {
                System.out.println("The Data Set name is " +
 myGroup.datasetGroupName());
            }

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDatasetGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListForecasts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListForecasts`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.ForecastClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListForecastsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ListForecastsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.forecast.model.ForecastException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListForecasts {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        ForecastClient forecast = ForecastClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllForeCasts(forecast);
        forecast.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void listAllForeCasts(ForecastClient forecast) {
        try {
            ListForecastsRequest request = ListForecastsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListForecastsResponse response = forecast.listForecasts(request);
            List<ForecastSummary> forecasts = response.forecasts();
            for (ForecastSummary forecastSummary : forecasts) {
                System.out.println("The name of the forecast is " +
 forecastSummary.forecastName());
            }

        } catch (ForecastException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListForecasts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.glue;

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.GlueClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glue.model.ListJobsResponse;
import java.util.List;

public class HelloGlue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        GlueClient glueClient = GlueClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listJobs(glueClient);
    }

    public static void listJobs(GlueClient glueClient) {
        ListJobsRequest request = ListJobsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build();
        ListJobsResponse response = glueClient.listJobs(request);
        List<String> jobList = response.jobNames();
        jobList.forEach(job -> {
            System.out.println("Job Name: " + job);
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * To set up the resources, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/ug/tutorial-add-crawler.html
 *
```

```
 * This example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Create a database.
 * 2. Create a crawler.
 * 3. Get a crawler.
 * 4. Start a crawler.
 * 5. Get a database.
 * 6. Get tables.
 * 7. Create a job.
 * 8. Start a job run.
 * 9. List all jobs.
 * 10. Get job runs.
 * 11. Delete a job.
 * 12. Delete a database.
 * 13. Delete a crawler.
 */

public class GlueScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <iam> <s3Path> <cron> <dbName> <crawlerName> <jobName>
 <scriptLocation> <locationUri> <bucketNameSc>\s

            Where:
                iam - The ARN of the IAM role that has AWS Glue and S3 permissions.
\s
                s3Path - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) target that
 contains data (for example, s3://<bucket name>/read).
                cron - A cron expression used to specify the schedule  (i.e.,
 cron(15 12 * * ? *).
                dbName - The database name.\s
                crawlerName - The name of the crawler.\s
                jobName - The name you assign to this job definition.
                scriptLocation - The Amazon S3 path to a script that runs a job.
                locationUri - The location of the database (you can find this file
 in resources folder).
                bucketNameSc - The Amazon S3 bucket name used when creating a job
                """;

        if (args.length != 9) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String iam = args[0];
        String s3Path = args[1];
        String cron = args[2];
        String dbName = args[3];
        String crawlerName = args[4];
        String jobName = args[5];
        String scriptLocation = args[6];
        String locationUri = args[7];
        String bucketNameSc = args[8];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        GlueClient glueClient = GlueClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS Glue scenario.");
        System.out.println("""
            AWS Glue is a fully managed extract, transform, and load (ETL) service
provided by Amazon
            Web Services (AWS). It is designed to simplify the process of building,
running, and maintaining
            ETL pipelines, which are essential for data integration and data
warehousing tasks.

            One of the key features of AWS Glue is its ability to automatically
discover and catalog data
            stored in various sources, such as Amazon S3, Amazon RDS, Amazon
Redshift, and other databases.
            This cataloging process creates a central metadata repository, known as
the AWS Glue Data Catalog,
            which provides a unified view of an organization's data assets. This
metadata can then be used to
            create ETL jobs, which can be scheduled and run on-demand or on a
regular basis.

            Lets get started.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create a database.");
        try {
            createDatabase(glueClient, dbName, locationUri);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            if (e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage().equals("Database already
exists.")) {
                System.out.println("Database " + dbName + " already exists. Skipping
creation.");
            } else {
                System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                return;
            }
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a crawler.");
        try {
            createGlueCrawler(glueClient, iam, s3Path, cron, dbName, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            if (e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage().contains("already exists")) {
                System.out.println("Crawler " + crawlerName + " already exists.
Skipping creation.");
            } else {
                System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Get a crawler.");
        try {
            getSpecificCrawler(glueClient, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Start a crawler.");
        try {
            startSpecificCrawler(glueClient, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Get a database.");
        try {
            getSpecificDatabase(glueClient, dbName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 5 min for the tables to become available");
        TimeUnit.MINUTES.sleep(5);
        System.out.println("6. Get tables.");
        String myTableName;
        try {
            myTableName = getGlueTables(glueClient, dbName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Create a job.");
        try {
            createJob(glueClient, jobName, iam, scriptLocation);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Start a Job run.");
        try {
            startJob(glueClient, jobName, dbName, myTableName, bucketNameSc);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. List all jobs.");
        try {
            getAllJobs(glueClient);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get job runs.");
        try {
            getJobRuns(glueClient, jobName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Delete a job.");
        try {
            deleteJob(glueClient, jobName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            return;
        }
        System.out.println("*** Wait 5 MIN for the " + crawlerName + " to stop");
        TimeUnit.MINUTES.sleep(5);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Delete a database.");
        try {
            deleteDatabase(glueClient, dbName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Delete a crawler.");
        try {
            deleteSpecificCrawler(glueClient, crawlerName);
        } catch (GlueException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Successfully completed the AWS Glue Scenario");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }


    /**
     * Creates a Glue database with the specified name and location URI.
     *
     * @param glueClient  The Glue client to use for the database creation.
     * @param dbName      The name of the database to create.
     * @param locationUri The location URI for the database.
     */
    public static void createDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String dbName, String
 locationUri) {
```

```
        try {
            DatabaseInput input = DatabaseInput.builder()
                .description("Built with the AWS SDK for Java V2")
                .name(dbName)
                .locationUri(locationUri)
                .build();

            CreateDatabaseRequest request = CreateDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .databaseInput(input)
                .build();

            glueClient.createDatabase(request);
            System.out.println(dbName + " was successfully created");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue crawler using the AWS Glue Java API.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the AWS Glue
service
     * @param iam         the IAM role that the crawler will use to access the data
source
     * @param s3Path      the S3 path that the crawler will scan for data
     * @param cron        the cron expression that defines the crawler's schedule
     * @param dbName      the name of the AWS Glue database where the crawler will
store the metadata
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be created
     */
    public static void createGlueCrawler(GlueClient glueClient,
                                         String iam,
                                         String s3Path,
                                         String cron,
                                         String dbName,
                                         String crawlerName) {

        try {
            S3Target s3Target = S3Target.builder()
                .path(s3Path)
                .build();
```

```
            List<S3Target> targetList = new ArrayList<>();
            targetList.add(s3Target);
            CrawlerTargets targets = CrawlerTargets.builder()
                .s3Targets(targetList)
                .build();

            CreateCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = CreateCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .name(crawlerName)
                .description("Created by the AWS Glue Java API")
                .targets(targets)
                .role(iam)
                .schedule(cron)
                .build();

            glueClient.createCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully created");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves a specific crawler from the AWS Glue service and waits for it to be
in the "READY" state.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the Glue service
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be retrieved
     */
    public static void getSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String crawlerName)
throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            GetCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = GetCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            boolean ready = false;
            while (!ready) {
                GetCrawlerResponse response = glueClient.getCrawler(crawlerRequest);
                String status = response.crawler().stateAsString();
                if (status.compareTo("READY") == 0) {
                    ready = true;
```

```
                }
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

            System.out.println("The crawler is now ready");

        } catch (GlueException | InterruptedException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Starts a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client to use for the crawler operation
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to start
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the crawler
     */
    public static void startSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
        try {
            StartCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = StartCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.startCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully started!");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the specific database from the AWS Glue service.
     *
     * @param glueClient   an instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact with
the service
     * @param databaseName the name of the database to retrieve
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error retrieving the database from the
AWS Glue service
     */
    public static void getSpecificDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String
databaseName) {
```

```
        try {
            GetDatabaseRequest databasesRequest = GetDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .name(databaseName)
                .build();

            GetDatabaseResponse response = glueClient.getDatabase(databasesRequest);
            Instant createDate = response.database().createTime();

            // Convert the Instant to readable date.
            DateTimeFormatter formatter =
DateTimeFormatter.ofLocalizedDateTime(FormatStyle.SHORT)
                .withLocale(Locale.US)
                .withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

            formatter.format(createDate);
            System.out.println("The create date of the database is " + createDate);

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the names of the tables in the specified Glue database.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param dbName     the name of the Glue database to retrieve the table names
from
     * @return the name of the first table retrieved, or an empty string if no
tables were found
     */
    public static String getGlueTables(GlueClient glueClient, String dbName) {
        String myTableName = "";
        try {
            GetTablesRequest tableRequest = GetTablesRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .build();

            GetTablesResponse response = glueClient.getTables(tableRequest);
            List<Table> tables = response.tableList();
            if (tables.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No tables were returned");
            } else {
```

```
                for (Table table : tables) {
                    myTableName = table.name();
                    System.out.println("Table name is: " + myTableName);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
        return myTableName;
    }


    /**
     * Starts a job run in AWS Glue.
     *
     * @param glueClient    the AWS Glue client to use for the job run
     * @param jobName       the name of the Glue job to run
     * @param inputDatabase the name of the input database
     * @param inputTable    the name of the input table
     * @param outBucket     the URL of the output S3 bucket
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the job run
     */
    public static void startJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String
inputDatabase, String inputTable,
                                String outBucket) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> myMap = new HashMap<>();
            myMap.put("--input_database", inputDatabase);
            myMap.put("--input_table", inputTable);
            myMap.put("--output_bucket_url", outBucket);

            StartJobRunRequest runRequest = StartJobRunRequest.builder()
                .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
                .numberOfWorkers(10)
                .arguments(myMap)
                .jobName(jobName)
                .build();

            StartJobRunResponse response = glueClient.startJobRun(runRequest);
            System.out.println("The request Id of the job is " +
response.responseMetadata().requestId());

        } catch (GlueException e) {
```

```
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue job.
     *
     * @param glueClient     the AWS Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param jobName        the name of the job to create
     * @param iam            the IAM role to associate with the job
     * @param scriptLocation the location of the script to be used by the job
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error creating the job
     */
    public static void createJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String iam,
String scriptLocation) {
        try {
            JobCommand command = JobCommand.builder()
                .pythonVersion("3")
                .name("glueetl")
                .scriptLocation(scriptLocation)
                .build();

            CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
                .description("A Job created by using the AWS SDK for Java V2")
                .glueVersion("2.0")
                .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
                .numberOfWorkers(10)
                .name(jobName)
                .role(iam)
                .command(command)
                .build();

            glueClient.createJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully created.");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves and prints information about all the jobs in the Glue data catalog.
```

```
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client used to interact with the AWS Glue service
     */
    public static void getAllJobs(GlueClient glueClient) {
        try {
            GetJobsRequest jobsRequest = GetJobsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build();

            GetJobsResponse jobsResponse = glueClient.getJobs(jobsRequest);
            List<Job> jobs = jobsResponse.jobs();
            for (Job job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("Job name is : " + job.name());
                System.out.println("The job worker type is : " +
job.workerType().name());
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the job runs for a given Glue job and prints the status of the job
runs.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client used to make API calls
     * @param jobName    the name of the Glue job to retrieve the job runs for
     */
    public static void getJobRuns(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            GetJobRunsRequest runsRequest = GetJobRunsRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
                .maxResults(20)
                .build();

            boolean jobDone = false;
            while (!jobDone) {
                GetJobRunsResponse response = glueClient.getJobRuns(runsRequest);
                List<JobRun> jobRuns = response.jobRuns();
                for (JobRun jobRun : jobRuns) {
                    String jobState = jobRun.jobRunState().name();
                    if (jobState.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println(jobName + " has succeeded");
```

```
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("STOPPED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has stopped");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("FAILED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has failed");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("TIMEOUT") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has timed out");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else {
                        System.out.println("*** Job run state is " +
jobRun.jobRunState().name());
                        System.out.println("Job run Id is " + jobRun.id());
                        System.out.println("The Glue version is " +
jobRun.glueVersion());
                    }
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a Glue job.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param jobName    the name of the job to be deleted
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error deleting the job
     */
    public static void deleteJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            DeleteJobRequest jobRequest = DeleteJobRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
```

```
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a AWS Glue Database.
     *
     * @param glueClient   An instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact with
 the AWS Glue service.
     * @param databaseName The name of the database to be deleted.
     * @throws GlueException If an error occurs while deleting the database.
     */
    public static void deleteDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String databaseName) {
        try {
            DeleteDatabaseRequest request = DeleteDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .name(databaseName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteDatabase(request);
            System.out.println(databaseName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client object
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be deleted
     * @throws GlueException if an error occurs during the deletion process
     */
    public static void deleteSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
 crawlerName) {
        try {
```

```
            DeleteCrawlerRequest deleteCrawlerRequest =
 DeleteCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteCrawler(deleteCrawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler

- GetDatabase
- GetDatabases
- GetJob
- GetJobRun
- GetJobRuns
- GetTables
- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new AWS Glue crawler using the AWS Glue Java API.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the AWS Glue
service
     * @param iam         the IAM role that the crawler will use to access the data
source
     * @param s3Path      the S3 path that the crawler will scan for data
     * @param cron        the cron expression that defines the crawler's schedule
     * @param dbName      the name of the AWS Glue database where the crawler will
store the metadata
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be created
     */
```

```
    public static void createGlueCrawler(GlueClient glueClient,
                                         String iam,
                                         String s3Path,
                                         String cron,
                                         String dbName,
                                         String crawlerName) {

        try {
            S3Target s3Target = S3Target.builder()
                .path(s3Path)
                .build();

            List<S3Target> targetList = new ArrayList<>();
            targetList.add(s3Target);
            CrawlerTargets targets = CrawlerTargets.builder()
                .s3Targets(targetList)
                .build();

            CreateCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = CreateCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .name(crawlerName)
                .description("Created by the AWS Glue Java API")
                .targets(targets)
                .role(iam)
                .schedule(cron)
                .build();

            glueClient.createCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully created");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new AWS Glue job.
    *
    * @param glueClient     the AWS Glue client to use for the operation
    * @param jobName        the name of the job to create
    * @param iam            the IAM role to associate with the job
    * @param scriptLocation the location of the script to be used by the job
    * @throws GlueException if there is an error creating the job
    */
   public static void createJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String iam,
String scriptLocation) {
       try {
           JobCommand command = JobCommand.builder()
               .pythonVersion("3")
               .name("glueetl")
               .scriptLocation(scriptLocation)
               .build();

           CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
               .description("A Job created by using the AWS SDK for Java V2")
               .glueVersion("2.0")
               .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
               .numberOfWorkers(10)
               .name(jobName)
               .role(iam)
               .command(command)
               .build();

           glueClient.createJob(jobRequest);
           System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully created.");

       } catch (GlueException e) {
           throw e;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a specific AWS Glue crawler.
    *
    * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client object
    * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be deleted
    * @throws GlueException if an error occurs during the deletion process
    */
   public static void deleteSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
       try {
           DeleteCrawlerRequest deleteCrawlerRequest =
DeleteCrawlerRequest.builder()
               .name(crawlerName)
               .build();

           glueClient.deleteCrawler(deleteCrawlerRequest);
           System.out.println(crawlerName + " was deleted");

       } catch (GlueException e) {
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a AWS Glue Database.
     *
     * @param glueClient   An instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact with
the AWS Glue service.
     * @param databaseName The name of the database to be deleted.
     * @throws GlueException If an error occurs while deleting the database.
     */
    public static void deleteDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String databaseName) {
        try {
            DeleteDatabaseRequest request = DeleteDatabaseRequest.builder()
                .name(databaseName)
                .build();

            glueClient.deleteDatabase(request);
            System.out.println(databaseName + " was successfully deleted");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a Glue job.
 *
 * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
 * @param jobName    the name of the job to be deleted
 * @throws GlueException if there is an error deleting the job
 */
public static void deleteJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
    try {
        DeleteJobRequest jobRequest = DeleteJobRequest.builder()
            .jobName(jobName)
            .build();

        glueClient.deleteJob(jobRequest);
        System.out.println(jobName + " was successfully deleted");

    } catch (GlueException e) {
        throw e;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves a specific crawler from the AWS Glue service and waits for it to be
in the "READY" state.
    *
    * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client used to interact with the Glue service
    * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to be retrieved
    */
   public static void getSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String crawlerName)
throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           GetCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = GetCrawlerRequest.builder()
               .name(crawlerName)
               .build();

           boolean ready = false;
           while (!ready) {
               GetCrawlerResponse response = glueClient.getCrawler(crawlerRequest);
               String status = response.crawler().stateAsString();
               if (status.compareTo("READY") == 0) {
                   ready = true;
               }
               Thread.sleep(3000);
           }

           System.out.println("The crawler is now ready");

       } catch (GlueException | InterruptedException e) {
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetDatabase

The following code example shows how to use GetDatabase.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the specific database from the AWS Glue service.
    *
    * @param glueClient   an instance of the AWS Glue client used to interact with
the service
    * @param databaseName the name of the database to retrieve
    * @throws GlueException if there is an error retrieving the database from the
AWS Glue service
    */
   public static void getSpecificDatabase(GlueClient glueClient, String
databaseName) {
       try {
           GetDatabaseRequest databasesRequest = GetDatabaseRequest.builder()
               .name(databaseName)
               .build();

           GetDatabaseResponse response = glueClient.getDatabase(databasesRequest);
           Instant createDate = response.database().createTime();

           // Convert the Instant to readable date.
           DateTimeFormatter formatter =
DateTimeFormatter.ofLocalizedDateTime(FormatStyle.SHORT)
               .withLocale(Locale.US)
               .withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

           formatter.format(createDate);
           System.out.println("The create date of the database is " + createDate);

       } catch (GlueException e) {
           throw e;
       }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the job runs for a given Glue job and prints the status of the job
runs.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client used to make API calls
     * @param jobName    the name of the Glue job to retrieve the job runs for
     */
    public static void getJobRuns(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName) {
        try {
            GetJobRunsRequest runsRequest = GetJobRunsRequest.builder()
                .jobName(jobName)
                .maxResults(20)
                .build();

            boolean jobDone = false;
            while (!jobDone) {
                GetJobRunsResponse response = glueClient.getJobRuns(runsRequest);
                List<JobRun> jobRuns = response.jobRuns();
                for (JobRun jobRun : jobRuns) {
                    String jobState = jobRun.jobRunState().name();
                    if (jobState.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println(jobName + " has succeeded");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("STOPPED") == 0) {
```

```
                        System.out.println("Job run has stopped");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("FAILED") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has failed");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else if (jobState.compareTo("TIMEOUT") == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job run has timed out");
                        jobDone = true;

                    } else {
                        System.out.println("*** Job run state is " +
jobRun.jobRunState().name());
                        System.out.println("Job run Id is " + jobRun.id());
                        System.out.println("The Glue version is " +
jobRun.glueVersion());
                    }
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the names of the tables in the specified Glue database.
     *
     * @param glueClient the Glue client to use for the operation
     * @param dbName     the name of the Glue database to retrieve the table names
from
     * @return the name of the first table retrieved, or an empty string if no
tables were found
     */
    public static String getGlueTables(GlueClient glueClient, String dbName) {
        String myTableName = "";
        try {
            GetTablesRequest tableRequest = GetTablesRequest.builder()
                .databaseName(dbName)
                .build();

            GetTablesResponse response = glueClient.getTables(tableRequest);
            List<Table> tables = response.tableList();
            if (tables.isEmpty()) {
                System.out.println("No tables were returned");
            } else {
                for (Table table : tables) {
                    myTableName = table.name();
                    System.out.println("Table name is: " + myTableName);
                }
            }

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
        return myTableName;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

StartCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Starts a specific AWS Glue crawler.
     *
     * @param glueClient  the AWS Glue client to use for the crawler operation
     * @param crawlerName the name of the crawler to start
     * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the crawler
     */
    public static void startSpecificCrawler(GlueClient glueClient, String
crawlerName) {
        try {
            StartCrawlerRequest crawlerRequest = StartCrawlerRequest.builder()
                .name(crawlerName)
                .build();

            glueClient.startCrawler(crawlerRequest);
            System.out.println(crawlerName + " was successfully started!");

        } catch (GlueException e) {
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Starts a job run in AWS Glue.
    *
    * @param glueClient    the AWS Glue client to use for the job run
    * @param jobName       the name of the Glue job to run
    * @param inputDatabase the name of the input database
    * @param inputTable    the name of the input table
    * @param outBucket     the URL of the output S3 bucket
    * @throws GlueException if there is an error starting the job run
    */
   public static void startJob(GlueClient glueClient, String jobName, String
inputDatabase, String inputTable,
                               String outBucket) {
       try {
           Map<String, String> myMap = new HashMap<>();
           myMap.put("--input_database", inputDatabase);
           myMap.put("--input_table", inputTable);
           myMap.put("--output_bucket_url", outBucket);

           StartJobRunRequest runRequest = StartJobRunRequest.builder()
               .workerType(WorkerType.G_1_X)
               .numberOfWorkers(10)
               .arguments(myMap)
               .jobName(jobName)
               .build();

           StartJobRunResponse response = glueClient.startJobRun(runRequest);
           System.out.println("The request Id of the job is " +
response.responseMetadata().requestId());

       } catch (GlueException e) {
           throw e;
       }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

HealthImaging examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with HealthImaging.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CopyImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyImageSet`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    /**
     * Copy an AWS HealthImaging image set.
     *
     * @param medicalImagingClient  - The AWS HealthImaging client object.
     * @param datastoreId           - The datastore ID.
     * @param imageSetId            - The image set ID.
     * @param latestVersionId       - The version ID.
     * @param destinationImageSetId - The optional destination image set ID, ignored
if null.
```

```
    * @param destinationVersionId  - The optional destination version ID, ignored
if null.
    * @param force                 - The force flag.
    * @param subsets               - The optional subsets to copy, ignored if null.
    * @return                      - The image set ID of the copy.
    * @throws MedicalImagingException - Base exception for all service exceptions
thrown by AWS HealthImaging.
    */
   public static String copyMedicalImageSet(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
                                            String datastoreId,
                                            String imageSetId,
                                            String latestVersionId,
                                            String destinationImageSetId,
                                            String destinationVersionId,
                                            boolean force,
                                            Vector<String> subsets) {

       try {
           CopySourceImageSetInformation.Builder copySourceImageSetInformation =
CopySourceImageSetInformation.builder()
                   .latestVersionId(latestVersionId);

           // Optionally copy a subset of image instances.
           if (subsets != null) {
               String subsetInstanceToCopy = getCopiableAttributesJSON(imageSetId,
subsets);
               copySourceImageSetInformation.dicomCopies(MetadataCopies.builder()
                       .copiableAttributes(subsetInstanceToCopy)
                       .build());
           }

           CopyImageSetInformation.Builder copyImageSetBuilder =
CopyImageSetInformation.builder()
                   .sourceImageSet(copySourceImageSetInformation.build());

           // Optionally designate a destination image set.
           if (destinationImageSetId != null) {
               copyImageSetBuilder =
copyImageSetBuilder.destinationImageSet(CopyDestinationImageSet.builder()
                       .imageSetId(destinationImageSetId)
                       .latestVersionId(destinationVersionId)
                       .build());
           }
```

```
            CopyImageSetRequest copyImageSetRequest = CopyImageSetRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .sourceImageSetId(imageSetId)
                    .copyImageSetInformation(copyImageSetBuilder.build())
                    .force(force)
                    .build();

            CopyImageSetResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.copyImageSet(copyImageSetRequest);

            return response.destinationImageSetProperties().imageSetId();
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

Utility function to create copiable attributes.

```
    /**
     * Create a JSON string of copiable image instances.
     *
     * @param imageSetId - The image set ID.
     * @param subsets    - The subsets to copy.
     * @return A JSON string of copiable image instances.
     */
    private static String getCopiableAttributesJSON(String imageSetId,
Vector<String> subsets) {
        StringBuilder subsetInstanceToCopy = new StringBuilder(
                """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "Series": {
                                "
                                 """
        );

        subsetInstanceToCopy.append(imageSetId);
```

```
        subsetInstanceToCopy.append(
                """
                                ": {
                                "Instances": {
                        """
        );

        for (String subset : subsets) {
            subsetInstanceToCopy.append('"' + subset + "\": {},");
        }
        subsetInstanceToCopy.deleteCharAt(subsetInstanceToCopy.length() - 1);
        subsetInstanceToCopy.append("""
                         }
                       }
                     }
                   }
                 }
                 """);
        return subsetInstanceToCopy.toString();
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`CreateDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatastore`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static String createMedicalImageDatastore(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreName) {
        try {
            CreateDatastoreRequest datastoreRequest =
CreateDatastoreRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreName(datastoreName)
```

```
                    .build();
            CreateDatastoreResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.createDatastore(datastoreRequest);
            return response.datastoreId();
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatastore`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static void deleteMedicalImagingDatastore(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreID) {
        try {
            DeleteDatastoreRequest datastoreRequest =
DeleteDatastoreRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreID)
                    .build();
            medicalImagingClient.deleteDatastore(datastoreRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteImageSet`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static void deleteMedicalImageSet(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String imagesetId) {
       try {
           DeleteImageSetRequest deleteImageSetRequest =
DeleteImageSetRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .imageSetId(imagesetId)
                   .build();

           medicalImagingClient.deleteImageSet(deleteImageSetRequest);

           System.out.println("The image set was deleted.");
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

GetDICOMImportJob

The following code example shows how to use `GetDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static DICOMImportJobProperties getDicomImportJob(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String jobId) {

       try {
           GetDicomImportJobRequest getDicomImportJobRequest =
GetDicomImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .jobId(jobId)
                   .build();
           GetDicomImportJobResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.getDICOMImportJob(getDicomImportJobRequest);
           return response.jobProperties();
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

GetDatastore

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatastore`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static DatastoreProperties getMedicalImageDatastore(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreID) {
       try {
           GetDatastoreRequest datastoreRequest = GetDatastoreRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreID)
                   .build();
           GetDatastoreResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.getDatastore(datastoreRequest);
           return response.datastoreProperties();
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageFrame`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageFrame`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
       public static void getMedicalImageSetFrame(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
                       String destinationPath,
                       String datastoreId,
                       String imagesetId,
                       String imageFrameId) {
```

```
                try {
                        GetImageFrameRequest getImageSetMetadataRequest =
GetImageFrameRequest.builder()
                                        .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                                        .imageSetId(imagesetId)

.imageFrameInformation(ImageFrameInformation.builder()
                                                        .imageFrameId(imageFrameId)
                                                        .build())
                                        .build();

medicalImagingClient.getImageFrame(getImageSetMetadataRequest,

FileSystems.getDefault().getPath(destinationPath));

                        System.out.println("Image frame downloaded to " +
destinationPath);
                } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
        }
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSet`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static GetImageSetResponse getMedicalImageSet(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String imagesetId,
```

```
            String versionId) {
        try {
            GetImageSetRequest.Builder getImageSetRequestBuilder =
GetImageSetRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .imageSetId(imagesetId);

            if (versionId != null) {
                getImageSetRequestBuilder =
getImageSetRequestBuilder.versionId(versionId);
            }

            return
medicalImagingClient.getImageSet(getImageSetRequestBuilder.build());
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static void getMedicalImageSetMetadata(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
            String destinationPath,
            String datastoreId,
            String imagesetId,
            String versionId) {
```

```
        try {
            GetImageSetMetadataRequest.Builder getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder =
GetImageSetMetadataRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .imageSetId(imagesetId);

            if (versionId != null) {
                getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder =
getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder.versionId(versionId);
            }


medicalImagingClient.getImageSetMetadata(getImageSetMetadataRequestBuilder.build(),
                    FileSystems.getDefault().getPath(destinationPath));

            System.out.println("Metadata downloaded to " + destinationPath);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDICOMImportJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDICOMImportJobs`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static List<DICOMImportJobSummary>
listDicomImportJobs(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreId) {

        try {
```

```
            ListDicomImportJobsRequest listDicomImportJobsRequest =
ListDicomImportJobsRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .build();
            ListDicomImportJobsResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.listDICOMImportJobs(listDicomImportJobsRequest);
            return response.jobSummaries();
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return new ArrayList<>();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDatastores`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatastores`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
    public static List<DatastoreSummary>
listMedicalImagingDatastores(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient) {
        try {
            ListDatastoresRequest datastoreRequest = ListDatastoresRequest.builder()
                    .build();
            ListDatastoresIterable responses =
medicalImagingClient.listDatastoresPaginator(datastoreRequest);
            List<DatastoreSummary> datastoreSummaries = new ArrayList<>();

            responses.stream().forEach(response ->
datastoreSummaries.addAll(response.datastoreSummaries()));

            return datastoreSummaries;
```

```
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListImageSetVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListImageSetVersions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static List<ImageSetProperties>
listMedicalImageSetVersions(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
           String datastoreId,
           String imagesetId) {
       try {
           ListImageSetVersionsRequest getImageSetRequest =
ListImageSetVersionsRequest.builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .imageSetId(imagesetId)
                   .build();

           ListImageSetVersionsIterable responses = medicalImagingClient
                   .listImageSetVersionsPaginator(getImageSetRequest);
           List<ImageSetProperties> imageSetProperties = new ArrayList<>();
           responses.stream().forEach(response ->
imageSetProperties.addAll(response.imageSetPropertiesList()));

           return imageSetProperties;
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListTagsForResource`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static ListTagsForResourceResponse
listMedicalImagingResourceTags(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn) {
        try {
            ListTagsForResourceRequest listTagsForResourceRequest =
ListTagsForResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .build();

            return
medicalImagingClient.listTagsForResource(listTagsForResourceRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`SearchImageSets`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchImageSets`.

SDK for Java 2.x

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
    public static List<ImageSetsMetadataSummary> searchMedicalImagingImageSets(
            MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String datastoreId, SearchCriteria searchCriteria) {
        try {
            SearchImageSetsRequest datastoreRequest =
SearchImageSetsRequest.builder()
                    .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                    .searchCriteria(searchCriteria)
                    .build();
            SearchImageSetsIterable responses = medicalImagingClient
                    .searchImageSetsPaginator(datastoreRequest);
            List<ImageSetsMetadataSummary> imageSetsMetadataSummaries = new
ArrayList<>();

            responses.stream().forEach(response -> imageSetsMetadataSummaries
                    .addAll(response.imageSetsMetadataSummaries()));

            return imageSetsMetadataSummaries;
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
        List<SearchFilter> searchFilters =
Collections.singletonList(SearchFilter.builder()
                .operator(Operator.EQUAL)
                .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                        .dicomPatientId(patientId)
                        .build())
                .build());

        SearchCriteria searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .build();

        List<ImageSetsMetadataSummary> imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(
                medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println("The image sets for patient " + patientId + " are:\n"
                    + imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
        }
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyyMMdd");
        searchFilters = Collections.singletonList(SearchFilter.builder()
                .operator(Operator.BETWEEN)
                .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()

.dicomStudyDateAndTime(DICOMStudyDateAndTime.builder()
                                        .dicomStudyDate("19990101")
                                        .dicomStudyTime("000000.000")
                                        .build())
                                .build(),
                        SearchByAttributeValue.builder()

.dicomStudyDateAndTime(DICOMStudyDateAndTime.builder()
                                        .dicomStudyDate((LocalDate.now()
                                                .format(formatter)))
                                        .dicomStudyTime("000000.000")
                                        .build())
                                .build())
```

```
                .build());

        searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .build();

        imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println(
                    "The image sets searched with BETWEEN operator using
DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime are:\n"
                            +
                            imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
        }
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
        searchFilters = Collections.singletonList(SearchFilter.builder()
                .operator(Operator.BETWEEN)
                .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                                .createdAt(Instant.parse("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z"))
                                .build(),
                        SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                                .createdAt(Instant.now())
                                .build())
                .build());

        searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .build();
        imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println("The image sets searched with BETWEEN operator using
createdAt are:\n "
                    + imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
        }
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
        Instant startDate = Instant.parse("1985-04-12T23:20:50.52Z");
        Instant endDate = Instant.now();

        searchFilters = Arrays.asList(
                SearchFilter.builder()
                        .operator(Operator.EQUAL)
                        .values(SearchByAttributeValue.builder()
                                .dicomSeriesInstanceUID(seriesInstanceUID)
                                .build())
                        .build(),
                SearchFilter.builder()
                        .operator(Operator.BETWEEN)
                        .values(

SearchByAttributeValue.builder().updatedAt(startDate).build(),

SearchByAttributeValue.builder().updatedAt(endDate).build()
                        ).build());

        Sort sort =
Sort.builder().sortOrder(SortOrder.ASC).sortField(SortField.UPDATED_AT).build();

        searchCriteria = SearchCriteria.builder()
                .filters(searchFilters)
                .sort(sort)
                .build();

        imageSetsMetadataSummaries =
searchMedicalImagingImageSets(medicalImagingClient,
                datastoreId, searchCriteria);
        if (imageSetsMetadataSummaries != null) {
            System.out.println("The image sets searched with EQUAL operator on
DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response\n" +
                    "in ASC order on updatedAt field are:\n "
                    + imageSetsMetadataSummaries);
            System.out.println();
        }
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

StartDICOMImportJob

The following code example shows how to use `StartDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static String startDicomImportJob(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String jobName,
           String datastoreId,
           String dataAccessRoleArn,
           String inputS3Uri,
           String outputS3Uri) {

       try {
           StartDicomImportJobRequest startDicomImportJobRequest =
StartDicomImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .jobName(jobName)
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .dataAccessRoleArn(dataAccessRoleArn)
                   .inputS3Uri(inputS3Uri)
                   .outputS3Uri(outputS3Uri)
                   .build();
           StartDicomImportJobResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.startDICOMImportJob(startDicomImportJobRequest);
           return response.jobId();
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }

       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static void tagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String resourceArn,
           Map<String, String> tags) {
       try {
           TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                   .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                   .tags(tags)
                   .build();

           medicalImagingClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);

           System.out.println("Tags have been added to the resource.");
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UntagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `UntagResource`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   public static void untagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
           String resourceArn,
           Collection<String> tagKeys) {
       try {
           UntagResourceRequest untagResourceRequest =
UntagResourceRequest.builder()
                   .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                   .tagKeys(tagKeys)
                   .build();

           medicalImagingClient.untagResource(untagResourceRequest);

           System.out.println("Tags have been removed from the resource.");
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UpdateImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for Java 2.x

```
   /**
    * Update the metadata of an AWS HealthImaging image set.
    *
    * @param medicalImagingClient - The AWS HealthImaging client object.
    * @param datastoreId          - The datastore ID.
    * @param imageSetId           - The image set ID.
    * @param versionId            - The version ID.
    * @param metadataUpdates      - A MetadataUpdates object containing the
updates.
    * @param force                - The force flag.
    * @throws MedicalImagingException - Base exception for all service exceptions
thrown by AWS HealthImaging.
    */
   public static void updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
                                                    String datastoreId,
                                                    String imageSetId,
                                                    String versionId,
                                                    MetadataUpdates
metadataUpdates,
                                                    boolean force) {
       try {
           UpdateImageSetMetadataRequest updateImageSetMetadataRequest =
UpdateImageSetMetadataRequest
                   .builder()
                   .datastoreId(datastoreId)
                   .imageSetId(imageSetId)
                   .latestVersionId(versionId)
                   .updateImageSetMetadataUpdates(metadataUpdates)
                   .force(force)
                   .build();

           UpdateImageSetMetadataResponse response =
medicalImagingClient.updateImageSetMetadata(updateImageSetMetadataRequest);

           System.out.println("The image set metadata was updated" + response);
       } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

Use case #1: Insert or update an attribute.

```
                final String insertAttributes = """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "DICOM": {
                              "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                            }
                          }
                        }
                        """;
                MetadataUpdates metadataInsertUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .dicomUpdates(DICOMUpdates.builder()
                                .updatableAttributes(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(
                                        ByteBuffer.wrap(insertAttributes
                                                .getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8))))
                                .build())
                        .build();

                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataInsertUpdates, force);
```

Use case #2: Remove an attribute.

```
                final String removeAttributes = """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "DICOM": {
                              "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                            }
                          }
                        }
                        """;
                MetadataUpdates metadataRemoveUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .dicomUpdates(DICOMUpdates.builder()
                                .removableAttributes(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(
                                        ByteBuffer.wrap(removeAttributes
                                                .getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8))))
                                .build())
```

```
                        .build();

                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataRemoveUpdates, force);
```

Use case #3: Remove an instance.

```
                final String removeInstance = """
                        {
                          "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                          "Study": {
                            "Series": {
                              "1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1":
{
                                "Instances": {

"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {}
                                }
                              }
                            }
                          }
                        }
                        """;
                MetadataUpdates metadataRemoveUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .dicomUpdates(DICOMUpdates.builder()
                                .removableAttributes(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(
                                        ByteBuffer.wrap(removeInstance
                                                .getBytes(StandardCharsets.UTF_8))))
                                .build())
                        .build();

                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataRemoveUpdates, force);
```

Use case #4: Revert to a previous version.

```
                // In this case, revert to previous version.
                String revertVersionId =
Integer.toString(Integer.parseInt(versionid) - 1);
```

```
                MetadataUpdates metadataRemoveUpdates = MetadataUpdates.builder()
                        .revertToVersionId(revertVersionId)
                        .build();
                updateMedicalImageSetMetadata(medicalImagingClient, datastoreId,
imagesetId,
                        versionid, metadataRemoveUpdates, force);
```

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scenarios

Tagging a data store

The following code example shows how to tag a HealthImaging data store.

SDK for Java 2.x

To tag a data store.

```
                final String datastoreArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                TagResource.tagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
datastoreArn,
                                ImmutableMap.of("Deployment", "Development"));
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
    public static void tagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Map<String, String> tags) {
        try {
```

```
            TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tags(tags)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been added to the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

To list tags for a data store.

```
                final String datastoreArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                ListTagsForResourceResponse result =
 ListTagsForResource.listMedicalImagingResourceTags(
                                medicalImagingClient,
                                datastoreArn);
                if (result != null) {
                        System.out.println("Tags for resource: " + result.tags());
                }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
    public static ListTagsForResourceResponse
 listMedicalImagingResourceTags(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn) {
        try {
            ListTagsForResourceRequest listTagsForResourceRequest =
 ListTagsForResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .build();

            return
 medicalImagingClient.listTagsForResource(listTagsForResourceRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
```

To untag a data store.

```
                final String datastoreArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                UntagResource.untagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
 datastoreArn,
                                Collections.singletonList("Deployment"));
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
    public static void untagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Collection<String> tagKeys) {
        try {
            UntagResourceRequest untagResourceRequest =
 UntagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tagKeys(tagKeys)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.untagResource(untagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been removed from the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- ListTagsForResource
- TagResource
- UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging an image set

The following code example shows how to tag a HealthImaging image set.

SDK for Java 2.x

To tag an image set.

```
                final String imageSetArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                TagResource.tagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
 imageSetArn,
                                ImmutableMap.of("Deployment", "Development"));
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
    public static void tagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Map<String, String> tags) {
        try {
            TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tags(tags)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("Tags have been added to the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

To list tags for an image set.

```
                final String imageSetArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                ListTagsForResourceResponse result =
 ListTagsForResource.listMedicalImagingResourceTags(
                                medicalImagingClient,
                                imageSetArn);
                if (result != null) {
                        System.out.println("Tags for resource: " + result.tags());
                }
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
    public static ListTagsForResourceResponse
 listMedicalImagingResourceTags(MedicalImagingClient medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn) {
        try {
            ListTagsForResourceRequest listTagsForResourceRequest =
 ListTagsForResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .build();

            return
 medicalImagingClient.listTagsForResource(listTagsForResourceRequest);
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
```

```
    }
```

To untag an image set.

```
                final String imageSetArn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/
imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012";

                UntagResource.untagMedicalImagingResource(medicalImagingClient,
 imageSetArn,
                                Collections.singletonList("Deployment"));
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
    public static void untagMedicalImagingResource(MedicalImagingClient
 medicalImagingClient,
            String resourceArn,
            Collection<String> tagKeys) {
        try {
            UntagResourceRequest untagResourceRequest =
 UntagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(resourceArn)
                    .tagKeys(tagKeys)
                    .build();

            medicalImagingClient.untagResource(untagResourceRequest);

            System.out.println("Tags have been removed from the resource.");
        } catch (MedicalImagingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

IAM examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListPoliciesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.Policy;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloIAM {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listPolicies(iam);
    }

    public static void listPolicies(IamClient iam) {
        ListPoliciesResponse response = iam.listPolicies();
        List<Policy> polList = response.policies();
        polList.forEach(policy -> {
            System.out.println("Policy Name: " + policy.policyName());
        });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM user actions.

```
/*
  To run this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment, including
 your credentials.

  For information, see this documentation topic:

  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html

  This example performs these operations:

  1. Creates a user that has no permissions.
  2. Creates a role and policy that grants Amazon S3 permissions.
  3. Creates a role.
  4. Grants the user permissions.
  5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role.  Creates an Amazon S3 Service
 client object with the temporary credentials.
  6. Deletes the resources.
```

```
 */

public class IAMScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    public static final String PolicyDocument = "{" +
            "  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            "  \"Statement\": [" +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Action\": [" +
            "            \"s3:*\"" +
            "       ]," +
            "       \"Resource\": \"*\"" +
            "    }" +
            "   ]" +
            "}";

    public static String userArn;

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username> <policyName> <roleName> <roleSessionName>
 <bucketName>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the IAM user to create.\s
                    policyName - The name of the policy to create.\s
                    roleName - The name of the role to create.\s
                    roleSessionName - The name of the session required for the
 assumeRole operation.\s
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket from which objects
 are read.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userName = args[0];
        String policyName = args[1];
```

```
        String roleName = args[2];
        String roleSessionName = args[3];
        String bucketName = args[4];

        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS IAM example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(" 1. Create the IAM user.");
        User createUser = createIAMUser(iam, userName);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        userArn = createUser.arn();

        AccessKey myKey = createIAMAccessKey(iam, userName);
        String accessKey = myKey.accessKeyId();
        String secretKey = myKey.secretAccessKey();
        String assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                " \"AWS\": \"" + userArn + "\"" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        System.out.println(assumeRolePolicyDocument);
        System.out.println(userName + " was successfully created.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Creates a policy.");
        String polArn = createIAMPolicy(iam, policyName);
        System.out.println("The policy " + polArn + " was successfully created.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Creates a role.");
```

```
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        String roleArn = createIAMRole(iam, roleName, assumeRolePolicyDocument);
        System.out.println(roleArn + " was successfully created.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Grants the user permissions.");
        attachIAMRolePolicy(iam, roleName, polArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("*** Wait for 30 secs so the resource is available");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        System.out.println("5. Gets temporary credentials by assuming the role.");
        System.out.println("Perform an Amazon S3 Service operation using the
temporary credentials.");
        assumeRole(roleArn, roleSessionName, bucketName, accessKey, secretKey);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6 Getting ready to delete the AWS resources");
        deleteKey(iam, userName, accessKey);
        deleteRole(iam, roleName, polArn);
        deleteIAMUser(iam, userName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("This IAM Scenario has successfully completed");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static AccessKey createIAMAccessKey(IamClient iam, String user) {
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyRequest request = CreateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .userName(user)
                    .build();

            CreateAccessKeyResponse response = iam.createAccessKey(request);
            return response.accessKey();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        return null;
    }

    public static User createIAMUser(IamClient iam, String username) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();
            CreateUserRequest request = CreateUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();

            // Wait until the user is created.
            CreateUserResponse response = iam.createUser(request);
            GetUserRequest userRequest = GetUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(response.user().userName())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetUserResponse> waitUntilUserExists =
iamWaiter.waitUntilUserExists(userRequest);
            waitUntilUserExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.user();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String json)
{

        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(json)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the role is " + response.role().arn());
            return response.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createIAMPolicy(IamClient iam, String policyName) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object.
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();
            CreatePolicyRequest request = CreatePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyName(policyName)
                    .policyDocument(PolicyDocument).build();

            CreatePolicyResponse response = iam.createPolicy(request);
            GetPolicyRequest polRequest = GetPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(response.policy().arn())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetPolicyResponse> waitUntilPolicyExists =
iamWaiter.waitUntilPolicyExists(polRequest);

waitUntilPolicyExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.policy().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void attachIAMRolePolicy(IamClient iam, String roleName, String
policyArn) {
        try {
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest request =
ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse response =
iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(request);
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies();
            String polArn;
```

```
            for (AttachedPolicy policy : attachedPolicies) {
                polArn = policy.policyArn();
                if (polArn.compareTo(policyArn) == 0) {
                    System.out.println(roleName + " policy is already attached to
this role.");
                    return;
                }
            }

            AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .policyArn(policyArn)
                    .build();

            iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
            System.out.println("Successfully attached policy " + policyArn + " to
role " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Invoke an Amazon S3 operation using the Assumed Role.
    public static void assumeRole(String roleArn, String roleSessionName, String
bucketName, String keyVal,
            String keySecret) {

        // Use the creds of the new IAM user that was created in this code example.
        AwsBasicCredentials credentials = AwsBasicCredentials.create(keyVal,
keySecret);
        StsClient stsClient = StsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .credentialsProvider(StaticCredentialsProvider.create(credentials))
                .build();

        try {
            AssumeRoleRequest roleRequest = AssumeRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .roleSessionName(roleSessionName)
                    .build();
```

```
            AssumeRoleResponse roleResponse = stsClient.assumeRole(roleRequest);
            Credentials myCreds = roleResponse.credentials();
            String key = myCreds.accessKeyId();
            String secKey = myCreds.secretAccessKey();
            String secToken = myCreds.sessionToken();

            // List all objects in an Amazon S3 bucket using the temp creds
retrieved by
            // invoking assumeRole.
            Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
            S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
                    .credentialsProvider(

StaticCredentialsProvider.create(AwsSessionCredentials.create(key, secKey,
secToken)))
                    .region(region)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Created a S3Client using temp credentials.");
            System.out.println("Listing objects in " + bucketName);
            ListObjectsRequest listObjects = ListObjectsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            ListObjectsResponse res = s3.listObjects(listObjects);
            List<S3Object> objects = res.contents();
            for (S3Object myValue : objects) {
                System.out.println("The name of the key is " + myValue.key());
                System.out.println("The owner is " + myValue.owner());
            }

        } catch (StsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteRole(IamClient iam, String roleName, String polArn) {

        try {
            // First the policy needs to be detached.
            DetachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(polArn)
```

```
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);

        // Delete the policy.
        DeletePolicyRequest request = DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                .policyArn(polArn)
                .build();

        iam.deletePolicy(request);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + polArn);

        // Delete the role.
        DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);

    } catch (IamException e) {
        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        System.exit(1);
    }
}

public static void deleteKey(IamClient iam, String username, String accessKey) {
    try {
        DeleteAccessKeyRequest request = DeleteAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                .accessKeyId(accessKey)
                .userName(username)
                .build();

        iam.deleteAccessKey(request);
        System.out.println("Successfully deleted access key " + accessKey +
                " from user " + username);

    } catch (IamException e) {
        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        System.exit(1);
    }
}
```

```
    public static void deleteIAMUser(IamClient iam, String userName) {
        try {
            DeleteUserRequest request = DeleteUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(userName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteUser(request);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + userName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AttachRolePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AttachedPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class AttachRolePolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleName> <policyArn>\s

                Where:
                    roleName - A role name that you can obtain from the AWS
 Management Console.\s
                    policyArn - A policy ARN that you can obtain from the AWS
 Management Console.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }

        String roleName = args[0];
        String policyArn = args[1];

        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        attachIAMRolePolicy(iam, roleName, policyArn);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void attachIAMRolePolicy(IamClient iam, String roleName, String
policyArn) {
        try {
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest request =
ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse response =
iam.listAttachedRolePolicies(request);
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies();

            // Ensure that the policy is not attached to this role
            String polArn = "";
            for (AttachedPolicy policy : attachedPolicies) {
                polArn = policy.policyArn();
                if (polArn.compareTo(policyArn) == 0) {
                    System.out.println(roleName + " policy is already attached to
this role.");
                    return;
                }
            }

            AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .policyArn(policyArn)
                    .build();

            iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("Successfully attached policy " + policyArn +
                    " to role " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateAccessKeyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateAccessKeyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateAccessKey {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                   <user>\s

                Where:
                   user - An AWS IAM user that you can obtain from the AWS
 Management Console.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String user = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String keyId = createIAMAccessKey(iam, user);
        System.out.println("The Key Id is " + keyId);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMAccessKey(IamClient iam, String user) {
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyRequest request = CreateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .userName(user)
                    .build();

            CreateAccessKeyResponse response = iam.createAccessKey(request);
            return response.accessKey().accessKeyId();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateAccountAliasRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateAccountAlias {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <alias>\s

                Where:
                    alias - The account alias to create (for example, myawsaccount).
\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alias = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        createIAMAccountAlias(iam, alias);
        iam.close();
        System.out.println("Done");
    }

    public static void createIAMAccountAlias(IamClient iam, String alias) {
        try {
            CreateAccountAliasRequest request = CreateAccountAliasRequest.builder()
                    .accountAlias(alias)
                    .build();

            iam.createAccountAlias(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully created account alias: " + alias);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreatePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreatePolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.waiters.IamWaiter;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreatePolicy {

    public static final String PolicyDocument = "{" +
            "  \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            "  \"Statement\": [" +
            "    {" +
            "        \"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "        \"Action\": [" +
            "            \"dynamodb:DeleteItem\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:GetItem\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:PutItem\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:Scan\"," +
            "            \"dynamodb:UpdateItem\"" +
            "        ]," +
            "        \"Resource\": \"*\"" +
            "    }" +
```

```
            "   ]" +
            "}";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    CreatePolicy <policyName>\s

                Where:
                    policyName - A unique policy name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String policyName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String result = createIAMPolicy(iam, policyName);
        System.out.println("Successfully created a policy with this ARN value: " +
result);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMPolicy(IamClient iam, String policyName) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object.
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();

            CreatePolicyRequest request = CreatePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyName(policyName)
                    .policyDocument(PolicyDocument)
                    .build();

            CreatePolicyResponse response = iam.createPolicy(request);

            // Wait until the policy is created.
            GetPolicyRequest polRequest = GetPolicyRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .policyArn(response.policy().arn())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetPolicyResponse> waitUntilPolicyExists =
 iamWaiter.waitUntilPolicyExists(polRequest);

 waitUntilPolicyExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.policy().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import org.json.simple.JSONObject;
import org.json.simple.parser.JSONParser;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateRoleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateRoleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import java.io.FileReader;

/*
```

```
*   This example requires a trust policy document. For more information, see:
*   https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/security/how-to-use-trust-policies-with-iam-roles/
*
*
*  In addition, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
*
*  For information, see this documentation topic:
*
*  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class CreateRole {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:
                    <rolename> <fileLocation>\s

                Where:
                    rolename - The name of the role to create.\s
                    fileLocation - The location of the JSON document that represents
 the trust policy.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String rolename = args[0];
        String fileLocation = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String result = createIAMRole(iam, rolename, fileLocation);
        System.out.println("Successfully created user: " + result);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
 fileLocation) throws Exception {
        try {
            JSONObject jsonObject = (JSONObject) readJsonSimpleDemo(fileLocation);
```

```
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(rolename)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(jsonObject.toJSONString())
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the role is " + response.role().arn());

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static Object readJsonSimpleDemo(String filename) throws Exception {
        FileReader reader = new FileReader(filename);
        JSONParser jsonParser = new JSONParser();
        return jsonParser.parse(reader);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.waiters.WaiterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateUserRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.CreateUserResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.waiters.IamWaiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetUserRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetUserResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateUser {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the user to create.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String username = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String result = createIAMUser(iam, username);
        System.out.println("Successfully created user: " + result);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static String createIAMUser(IamClient iam, String username) {
        try {
            // Create an IamWaiter object.
```

```
            IamWaiter iamWaiter = iam.waiter();

            CreateUserRequest request = CreateUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();

            CreateUserResponse response = iam.createUser(request);

            // Wait until the user is created.
            GetUserRequest userRequest = GetUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(response.user().userName())
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<GetUserResponse> waitUntilUserExists =
 iamWaiter.waitUntilUserExists(userRequest);
            waitUntilUserExists.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return response.user().userName();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeleteAccessKeyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteAccessKey {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username> <accessKey>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the user.\s
                    accessKey - The access key ID for the secret access key you want
 to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String username = args[0];
        String accessKey = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        deleteKey(iam, username, accessKey);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteKey(IamClient iam, String username, String accessKey) {
        try {
            DeleteAccessKeyRequest request = DeleteAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .accessKeyId(accessKey)
```

```
                    .userName(username)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteAccessKey(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted access key " + accessKey +
                    " from user " + username);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeleteAccountAliasRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class DeleteAccountAlias {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <alias>\s

                Where:
                    alias - The account alias to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String alias = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteIAMAccountAlias(iam, alias);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIAMAccountAlias(IamClient iam, String alias) {
        try {
            DeleteAccountAliasRequest request = DeleteAccountAliasRequest.builder()
                    .accountAlias(alias)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteAccountAlias(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted account alias " + alias);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeletePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeletePolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <policyARN>\s

                Where:
                    policyARN - A policy ARN value to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String policyARN = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteIAMPolicy(iam, policyARN);
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIAMPolicy(IamClient iam, String policyARN) {
        try {
            DeletePolicyRequest request = DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .policyArn(policyARN)
                    .build();

            iam.deletePolicy(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted the policy");

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DeleteUserRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteUser {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userName>\s

                Where:
                    userName - The name of the user to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteIAMUser(iam, userName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void deleteIAMUser(IamClient iam, String userName) {
        try {
            DeleteUserRequest request = DeleteUserRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .userName(userName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteUser(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully deleted IAM user " + userName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.DetachRolePolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetachRolePolicy {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleName> <policyArn>\s

                Where:
                    roleName - A role name that you can obtain from the AWS
Management Console.\s
                    policyArn - A policy ARN that you can obtain from the AWS
Management Console.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String roleName = args[0];
        String policyArn = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        detachPolicy(iam, roleName, policyArn);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void detachPolicy(IamClient iam, String roleName, String
policyArn) {
        try {
            DetachRolePolicyRequest request = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .policyArn(policyArn)
                    .build();

            iam.detachRolePolicy(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully detached policy " + policyArn +
                    " from role " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AccessKeyMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAccessKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAccessKeysResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListAccessKeys {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <userName>\s

                Where:
```

```
                    userName - The name of the user for which access keys are
retrieved.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String userName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listKeys(iam, userName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void listKeys(IamClient iam, String userName) {
        try {
            boolean done = false;
            String newMarker = null;

            while (!done) {
                ListAccessKeysResponse response;

                if (newMarker == null) {
                    ListAccessKeysRequest request = ListAccessKeysRequest.builder()
                            .userName(userName)
                            .build();

                    response = iam.listAccessKeys(request);

                } else {
                    ListAccessKeysRequest request = ListAccessKeysRequest.builder()
                            .userName(userName)
                            .marker(newMarker)
                            .build();

                    response = iam.listAccessKeys(request);
                }
```

```
                for (AccessKeyMetadata metadata : response.accessKeyMetadata()) {
                    System.out.format("Retrieved access key %s",
 metadata.accessKeyId());
                }

                if (!response.isTruncated()) {
                    done = true;
                } else {
                    newMarker = response.marker();
                }
            }

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListAccountAliasesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListAccountAliases {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAliases(iam);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void listAliases(IamClient iam) {
        try {
            ListAccountAliasesResponse response = iam.listAccountAliases();
            for (String alias : response.accountAliases()) {
                System.out.printf("Retrieved account alias %s", alias);
            }

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.AttachedPermissionsBoundary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListUsersRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListUsersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.User;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListUsers {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllUsers(iam);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void listAllUsers(IamClient iam) {
        try {
            boolean done = false;
            String newMarker = null;
            while (!done) {
                ListUsersResponse response;
```

```
                if (newMarker == null) {
                    ListUsersRequest request = ListUsersRequest.builder().build();
                    response = iam.listUsers(request);
                } else {
                    ListUsersRequest request = ListUsersRequest.builder()
                            .marker(newMarker)
                            .build();

                    response = iam.listUsers(request);
                }

                for (User user : response.users()) {
                    System.out.format("\n Retrieved user %s", user.userName());
                    AttachedPermissionsBoundary permissionsBoundary =
 user.permissionsBoundary();
                    if (permissionsBoundary != null)
                        System.out.format("\n Permissions boundary details %s",

 permissionsBoundary.permissionsBoundaryTypeAsString());
                }

                if (!response.isTruncated()) {
                    done = true;
                } else {
                    newMarker = response.marker();
                }
            }

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.StatusType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.UpdateAccessKeyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class UpdateAccessKey {

    private static StatusType statusType;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <username> <accessId> <status>\s

                Where:
                    username - The name of the user whose key you want to update.\s
                    accessId - The access key ID of the secret access key you want
 to update.\s
                    status - The status you want to assign to the secret access key.
\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String username = args[0];
        String accessId = args[1];
        String status = args[2];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateKey(iam, username, accessId, status);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void updateKey(IamClient iam, String username, String accessId,
 String status) {
        try {
            if (status.toLowerCase().equalsIgnoreCase("active")) {
                statusType = StatusType.ACTIVE;
            } else if (status.toLowerCase().equalsIgnoreCase("inactive")) {
                statusType = StatusType.INACTIVE;
            } else {
                statusType = StatusType.UNKNOWN_TO_SDK_VERSION;
            }

            UpdateAccessKeyRequest request = UpdateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
                    .accessKeyId(accessId)
                    .userName(username)
                    .status(statusType)
                    .build();

            iam.updateAccessKey(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully updated the status of access key %s to"
 +
                    "status %s for user %s", accessId, status, username);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.IamException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.UpdateUserRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class UpdateUser {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <curName> <newName>\s

                Where:
                    curName - The current user name.\s
                    newName - An updated user name.\s
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String curName = args[0];
        String newName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateIAMUser(iam, curName, newName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        iam.close();
    }

    public static void updateIAMUser(IamClient iam, String curName, String newName)
 {
        try {
            UpdateUserRequest request = UpdateUserRequest.builder()
                    .userName(curName)
                    .newUserName(newName)
                    .build();

            iam.updateUser(request);
            System.out.printf("Successfully updated user to username %s", newName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
public class Main {

    public static final String fileName = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\recommendations.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String tableName = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
    public static final String startScript = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\server_startup_script.sh"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String policyFile = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\instance_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
```

```
    public static final String ssmJSON = "C:\\AWS\\resworkflow\
\ssm_only_policy.json"; // Modify file location.
    public static final String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-
architecture-failure-response";
    public static final String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-
health-check";
    public static final String templateName = "doc-example-resilience-template";
    public static final String roleName = "doc-example-resilience-role";
    public static final String policyName = "doc-example-resilience-pol";
    public static final String profileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof";

    public static final String badCredsProfileName = "doc-example-resilience-prof-
bc";

    public static final String targetGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-tg";
    public static final String autoScalingGroupName = "doc-example-resilience-
group";
    public static final String lbName = "doc-example-resilience-lb";
    public static final String protocol = "HTTP";
    public static final int port = 80;

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException, InterruptedException
 {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        Database database = new Database();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        LoadBalancer loadBalancer = new LoadBalancer();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the demonstration of How to Build and Manage
 a Resilient Service!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("A - SETUP THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to start deploying
 resources.");
        in.nextLine();
        deploy(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("B - DEMO THE RESILIENCE FUNCTIONALITY");
```

```
        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        demo(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("C - DELETE THE RESOURCES");
        System.out.println("""
                This concludes the demo of how to build and manage a resilient
service.
                To keep things tidy and to avoid unwanted charges on your account,
we can clean up all AWS resources
                that were created for this demo.
                """);

        System.out.println("\n Do you want to delete the resources (y/n)? ");
        String userInput = in.nextLine().trim().toLowerCase(); // Capture user input

        if (userInput.equals("y")) {
            // Delete resources here
            deleteResources(loadBalancer, autoScaler, database);
            System.out.println("Resources deleted.");
        } else {
            System.out.println("""
                    Okay, we'll leave the resources intact.
                    Don't forget to delete them when you're done with them or you
might incur unexpected charges.
                    """);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The example has completed. ");
        System.out.println("\n Thanks for watching!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Deletes the AWS resources used in this example.
    private static void deleteResources(LoadBalancer loadBalancer, AutoScaler
autoScaler, Database database)
            throws IOException, InterruptedException {
        loadBalancer.deleteLoadBalancer(lbName);
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for resource to be deleted");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
```

```
        loadBalancer.deleteTargetGroup(targetGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteAutoScaleGroup(autoScalingGroupName);
        autoScaler.deleteRolesPolicies(policyName, roleName, profileName);
        autoScaler.deleteTemplate(templateName);
        database.deleteTable(tableName);
    }

    private static void deploy(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws
InterruptedException, IOException {
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println(
                """
                        For this demo, we'll use the AWS SDK for Java (v2) to create
several AWS resources
                        to set up a load-balanced web service endpoint and explore
some ways to make it resilient
                        against various kinds of failures.

                        Some of the resources create by this demo are:
                        \t* A DynamoDB table that the web service depends on to
provide book, movie, and song recommendations.
                        \t* An EC2 launch template that defines EC2 instances that
each contain a Python web server.
                        \t* An EC2 Auto Scaling group that manages EC2 instances
across several Availability Zones.
                        \t* An Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) load balancer that
targets the Auto Scaling group to distribute requests.
                        """);

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready.");
        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating and populating a DynamoDB table named " +
tableName);
        Database database = new Database();
        database.createTable(tableName, fileName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an EC2 launch template that runs '{startup_script}' when an
instance starts.
```

```
                This script starts a Python web server defined in the `server.py`
script. The web server
                listens to HTTP requests on port 80 and responds to requests to '/'
and to '/healthcheck'.
                For demo purposes, this server is run as the root user. In
production, the best practice is to
                run a web server, such as Apache, with least-privileged credentials.

                The template also defines an IAM policy that each instance uses to
assume a role that grants
                permissions to access the DynamoDB recommendation table and Systems
Manager parameters
                that control the flow of the demo.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        templateCreator.createTemplate(policyFile, policyName, profileName,
startScript, templateName, roleName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group that maintains three EC2
instances, each in a different Availability Zone.");
        System.out.println("*** Wait 30 secs for the VPC to be created");
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();
        String[] zones = autoScaler.createGroup(3, templateName,
autoScalingGroupName);

        System.out.println("""
                At this point, you have EC2 instances created. Once each instance
starts, it listens for
                HTTP requests. You can see these instances in the console or
continue with the demo.
                Press Enter when you're ready to continue.
                """);

        in.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.");
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
```

```
        paramHelper.reset();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Creating an Elastic Load Balancing target group and load balancer.
The target group
                defines how the load balancer connects to instances. The load
balancer provides a
                single endpoint where clients connect and dispatches requests to
instances in the group.
                """);

        String vpcId = autoScaler.getDefaultVPC();
        List<Subnet> subnets = autoScaler.getSubnets(vpcId, zones);
        System.out.println("You have retrieved a list with " + subnets.size() + "
subnets");
        String targetGroupArn = loadBalancer.createTargetGroup(protocol, port,
vpcId, targetGroupName);
        String elbDnsName = loadBalancer.createLoadBalancer(subnets, targetGroupArn,
lbName, port, protocol);
        autoScaler.attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(autoScalingGroupName,
targetGroupArn);
        System.out.println("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint...");
        boolean wasSuccessul = loadBalancer.verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(elbDnsName);
        if (!wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Couldn't connect to the load balancer, verifying
that the port is open...");
            CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

            // Create an HTTP GET request to "http://checkip.amazonaws.com"
            HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://checkip.amazonaws.com");
            try {
                // Execute the request and get the response
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);

                // Read the response content.
                String ipAddress =
IOUtils.toString(response.getEntity().getContent(), StandardCharsets.UTF_8).trim();

                // Print the public IP address.
                System.out.println("Public IP Address: " + ipAddress);
                GroupInfo groupInfo = autoScaler.verifyInboundPort(vpcId, port,
ipAddress);
```

```
                if (!groupInfo.isPortOpen()) {
                    System.out.println("""
                            For this example to work, the default security group for
your default VPC must
                            allow access from this computer. You can either add it
automatically from this
                            example or add it yourself using the AWS Management
Console.
                            """);

                    System.out.println(
                            "Do you want to add a rule to security group " +
groupInfo.getGroupName() + " to allow");
                    System.out.println("inbound traffic on port " + port + " from
your computer's IP address (y/n) ");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    if ("y".equalsIgnoreCase(ans)) {
                        autoScaler.openInboundPort(groupInfo.getGroupName(),
String.valueOf(port), ipAddress);
                        System.out.println("Security group rule added.");
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("No security group rule added.");
                    }
                }

            } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }
        } else if (wasSuccessul) {
            System.out.println("Your load balancer is ready. You can access it by
browsing to:");
            System.out.println("\t http://" + elbDnsName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("Couldn't get a successful response from the load
balancer endpoint. Troubleshoot by");
            System.out.println("manually verifying that your VPC and security group
are configured correctly and that");
            System.out.println("you can successfully make a GET request to the load
balancer.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter when you're ready to continue with the
demo.");
        in.nextLine();
```

```
    }

    // A method that controls the demo part of the Java program.
    public static void demo(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        ParameterHelper paramHelper = new ParameterHelper();
        System.out.println("Read the ssm_only_policy.json file");
        String ssmOnlyPolicy = readFileAsString(ssmJSON);

        System.out.println("Resetting parameters to starting values for demo.");
        paramHelper.reset();

        System.out.println(
                """
                        This part of the demonstration shows how to toggle
different parts of the system
                        to create situations where the web service fails, and shows
how using a resilient
                        architecture can keep the web service running in spite of
these failures.

                        At the start, the load balancer endpoint returns
recommendations and reports that all targets are healthy.
                       """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        The web service running on the EC2 instances gets
recommendations by querying a DynamoDB table.
                        The table name is contained in a Systems Manager parameter
named self.param_helper.table.
                        To simulate a failure of the recommendation service, let's
set this parameter to name a non-existent table.
                       """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        System.out.println(
                """
                        \nNow, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns a failure code. But, the service reports as
                        healthy to the load balancer because shallow health checks
don't check for failure of the recommendation service.
                       """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Instead of failing when the recommendation service fails,
the web service can return a static response.
                        While this is not a perfect solution, it presents the
customer with a somewhat better experience than failure.
                        """);
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.failureResponse, "static");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint returns a
static response.
                The service still reports as healthy because health checks are still
shallow.
                """);
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("Let's reinstate the recommendation service.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, paramHelper.dyntable);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's also substitute bad credentials for one of the instances in
the target group so that it can't
                access the DynamoDB recommendation table. We will get an instance id
value.
                """);

        LaunchTemplateCreator templateCreator = new LaunchTemplateCreator();
        AutoScaler autoScaler = new AutoScaler();

        // Create a new instance profile based on badCredsProfileName.
        templateCreator.createInstanceProfile(policyFile, policyName,
badCredsProfileName, roleName);
        String badInstanceId = autoScaler.getBadInstance(autoScalingGroupName);
        System.out.println("The bad instance id values used for this demo is " +
badInstanceId);

        String profileAssociationId = autoScaler.getInstanceProfile(badInstanceId);
        System.out.println("The association Id value is " + profileAssociationId);
        System.out.println("Replacing the profile for instance " + badInstanceId
                + " with a profile that contains bad credentials");
```

```
        autoScaler.replaceInstanceProfile(badInstanceId, badCredsProfileName,
profileAssociationId);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Now, sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint
returns either a recommendation or a static response,
                        depending on which instance is selected by the load
balancer.
                        """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println("""
                Let's implement a deep health check. For this demo, a deep health
check tests whether
                the web service can access the DynamoDB table that it depends on for
recommendations. Note that
                the deep health check is only for ELB routing and not for Auto
Scaling instance health.
                This kind of deep health check is not recommended for Auto Scaling
instance health, because it
                risks accidental termination of all instances in the Auto Scaling
group when a dependent service fails.
                """);

        System.out.println("""
                By implementing deep health checks, the load balancer can detect
when one of the instances is failing
                and take that instance out of rotation.
                """);

        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.healthCheck, "deep");

        System.out.println("""
                Now, checking target health indicates that the instance with bad
credentials
                is unhealthy. Note that it might take a minute or two for the load
balancer to detect the unhealthy
                instance. Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint always
returns a recommendation, because
                the load balancer takes unhealthy instances out of its rotation.
                """);
```

```
        demoChoices(loadBalancer);

        System.out.println(
                """
                        Because the instances in this demo are controlled by an auto
scaler, the simplest way to fix an unhealthy
                        instance is to terminate it and let the auto scaler start a
new instance to replace it.
                        """);
        autoScaler.terminateInstance(badInstanceId);

        System.out.println("""
                Even while the instance is terminating and the new instance is
starting, sending a GET
                request to the web service continues to get a successful
recommendation response because
                the load balancer routes requests to the healthy instances. After
the replacement instance
                starts and reports as healthy, it is included in the load balancing
rotation.
                Note that terminating and replacing an instance typically takes
several minutes, during which time you
                can see the changing health check status until the new instance is
running and healthy.
                """);

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        System.out.println(
                "If the recommendation service fails now, deep health checks mean
all instances report as unhealthy.");
        paramHelper.put(paramHelper.tableName, "this-is-not-a-table");

        demoChoices(loadBalancer);
        paramHelper.reset();
    }

    public static void demoChoices(LoadBalancer loadBalancer) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        String[] actions = {
                "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
                "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
                "Go to the next part of the demo."
        };
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
```

```
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
            System.out.println("See the current state of the service by selecting
one of the following choices:");
            for (int i = 0; i < actions.length; i++) {
                System.out.println(i + ": " + actions[i]);
            }

            try {
                System.out.print("\nWhich action would you like to take? ");
                int choice = scanner.nextInt();
                System.out.println("-".repeat(88));

                switch (choice) {
                    case 0 -> {
                        System.out.println("Request:\n");
                        System.out.println("GET http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));
                        CloseableHttpClient httpClient =
HttpClients.createDefault();

                        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
                        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" +
loadBalancer.getEndpoint(lbName));

                        // Execute the request and get the response.
                        HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
                        int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                        System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);

                        // Display the JSON response
                        BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(
                                new
InputStreamReader(response.getEntity().getContent()));
                        StringBuilder jsonResponse = new StringBuilder();
                        String line;
                        while ((line = reader.readLine()) != null) {
                            jsonResponse.append(line);
                        }
                        reader.close();

                        // Print the formatted JSON response.
                        System.out.println("Full Response:\n");
```

```
                        System.out.println(jsonResponse.toString());

                        // Close the HTTP client.
                        httpClient.close();

                    }
                    case 1 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nChecking the health of load balancer
 targets:\n");
                        List<TargetHealthDescription> health =
 loadBalancer.checkTargetHealth(targetGroupName);
                        for (TargetHealthDescription target : health) {
                            System.out.printf("\tTarget %s on port %d is %s%n",
 target.target().id(),
                                        target.target().port(),
 target.targetHealth().stateAsString());
                        }
                        System.out.println("""
                                Note that it can take a minute or two for the health
 check to update
                                after changes are made.
                                """);
                    }
                    case 2 -> {
                        System.out.println("\nOkay, let's move on.");
                        System.out.println("-".repeat(88));
                        return; // Exit the method when choice is 2
                    }
                    default -> System.out.println("You must choose a value between
 0-2. Please select again.");
                }

            } catch (java.util.InputMismatchException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please select again.");
                scanner.nextLine(); // Clear the input buffer.
            }
        }
    }

    public static String readFileAsString(String filePath) throws IOException {
        byte[] bytes = Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath));
        return new String(bytes);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
public class AutoScaler {

    private static Ec2Client ec2Client;
    private static AutoScalingClient autoScalingClient;
    private static IamClient iamClient;

    private static SsmClient ssmClient;

    private IamClient getIAMClient() {
        if (iamClient == null) {
            iamClient = IamClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return iamClient;
    }

    private SsmClient getSSMClient() {
        if (ssmClient == null) {
            ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmClient;
    }

    private Ec2Client getEc2Client() {
        if (ec2Client == null) {
            ec2Client = Ec2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return ec2Client;
    }

    private AutoScalingClient getAutoScalingClient() {
        if (autoScalingClient == null) {
            autoScalingClient = AutoScalingClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
                    .build();
        }
        return autoScalingClient;
    }

    /**
     * Terminates and instances in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
     * terminated, it can no longer be accessed.
     */
    public void terminateInstance(String instanceId) {
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest terminateInstanceIRequest =
TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest
                .builder()
                .instanceId(instanceId)
                .shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity(false)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(terminateInstanceIRequest);
        System.out.format("Terminated instance %s.", instanceId);
    }

    /**
     * Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile is
     * replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
     * When
     * the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
     * server.
     */
    public void replaceInstanceProfile(String instanceId, String
newInstanceProfileName, String profileAssociationId)
            throws InterruptedException {
        // Create an IAM instance profile specification.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
iamInstanceProfile =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.IamInstanceProfileSpecification
                .builder()
                .name(newInstanceProfileName) // Make sure 'newInstanceProfileName'
is a valid IAM Instance Profile
                                              // name.
                .build();

        // Replace the IAM instance profile association for the EC2 instance.
```

```
        ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest replaceRequest =
ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociationRequest
                .builder()
                .iamInstanceProfile(iamInstanceProfile)
                .associationId(profileAssociationId) // Make sure
'profileAssociationId' is a valid association ID.
                .build();

        try {
            getEc2Client().replaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation(replaceRequest);
            // Handle the response as needed.
        } catch (Ec2Exception e) {
            // Handle exceptions, log, or report the error.
            System.err.println("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.format("Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile
%s.", profileAssociationId,
                newInstanceProfileName);
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
        boolean instReady = false;
        int tries = 0;

        // Reboot after 60 seconds
        while (!instReady) {
            if (tries % 6 == 0) {
                getEc2Client().rebootInstances(RebootInstancesRequest.builder()
                        .instanceIds(instanceId)
                        .build());
                System.out.println("Rebooting instance " + instanceId + " and
waiting for it to be ready.");
            }
            tries++;
            try {
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(10);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                e.printStackTrace();
            }

            DescribeInstanceInformationResponse informationResponse =
getSSMClient().describeInstanceInformation();
            List<InstanceInformation> instanceInformationList =
informationResponse.instanceInformationList();
            for (InstanceInformation info : instanceInformationList) {
                if (info.instanceId().equals(instanceId)) {
```

```
                    instReady = true;
                    break;
                }
            }
        }

        SendCommandRequest sendCommandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .documentName("AWS-RunShellScript")
                .parameters(Collections.singletonMap("commands",
                        Collections.singletonList("cd / && sudo python3 server.py
80")))
                .build();

        getSSMClient().sendCommand(sendCommandRequest);
        System.out.println("Restarted the Python web server on instance " +
instanceId + ".");
    }

    public void openInboundPort(String secGroupId, String port, String ipAddress) {
        AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest ingressRequest =
AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest.builder()
                .groupName(secGroupId)
                .cidrIp(ipAddress)
                .fromPort(Integer.parseInt(port))
                .build();

        getEc2Client().authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(ingressRequest);
        System.out.format("Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
secGroupId, port, ipAddress);
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
     * and deletes all the resources.
     */
    public void deleteInstanceProfile(String roleName, String profileName) {
        try {
            software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
getInstanceProfileRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetInstanceProfileRequest
                    .builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();
```

```
            GetInstanceProfileResponse response =
getIAMClient().getInstanceProfile(getInstanceProfileRequest);
            String name = response.instanceProfile().instanceProfileName();
            System.out.println(name);

            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest profileRequest =
RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(profileRequest);
            DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(profileName)
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(deleteInstanceProfileRequest);
            System.out.println("Deleted instance profile " + profileName);

            DeleteRoleRequest deleteRoleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            // List attached role policies.
            ListAttachedRolePoliciesResponse rolesResponse = getIAMClient()
                    .listAttachedRolePolicies(role -> role.roleName(roleName));
            List<AttachedPolicy> attachedPolicies =
rolesResponse.attachedPolicies();
            for (AttachedPolicy attachedPolicy : attachedPolicies) {
                DetachRolePolicyRequest request = DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(attachedPolicy.policyArn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(request);
                System.out.println("Detached and deleted policy " +
attachedPolicy.policyName());
            }

            getIAMClient().deleteRole(deleteRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Instance profile and role deleted.");
```

```
        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTemplate(String templateName) {
        getEc2Client().deleteLaunchTemplate(name ->
name.launchTemplateName(templateName));
        System.out.format(templateName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public void deleteAutoScaleGroup(String groupName) {
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupName(groupName)
                .forceDelete(true)
                .build();


getAutoScalingClient().deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest);
        System.out.println(groupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    /*
     * Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
     * this
     * computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
     * address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network, you
     * must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the port
     * to
     * any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
     * public
     * access when you're done.
     *
     */
    public GroupInfo verifyInboundPort(String VPC, int port, String ipAddress) {
        boolean portIsOpen = false;
        GroupInfo groupInfo = new GroupInfo();
        try {
            Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                    .name("group-name")
                    .values("default")
                    .build();
```

```
            Filter filter1 = Filter.builder()
                    .name("vpc-id")
                    .values(VPC)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest securityGroupsRequest =
DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter, filter1)
                    .build();

            DescribeSecurityGroupsResponse securityGroupsResponse = getEc2Client()
                    .describeSecurityGroups(securityGroupsRequest);
            String securityGroup =
securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups().get(0).groupName();
            groupInfo.setGroupName(securityGroup);

            for (SecurityGroup secGroup : securityGroupsResponse.securityGroups()) {
                System.out.println("Found security group: " + secGroup.groupId());

                for (IpPermission ipPermission : secGroup.ipPermissions()) {
                    if (ipPermission.fromPort() == port) {
                        System.out.println("Found inbound rule: " + ipPermission);
                        for (IpRange ipRange : ipPermission.ipRanges()) {
                            String cidrIp = ipRange.cidrIp();
                            if (cidrIp.startsWith(ipAddress) ||
cidrIp.equals("0.0.0.0/0")) {
                                System.out.println(cidrIp + " is applicable");
                                portIsOpen = true;
                            }
                        }

                        if (!ipPermission.prefixListIds().isEmpty()) {
                            System.out.println("Prefix lList is applicable");
                            portIsOpen = true;
                        }

                        if (!portIsOpen) {
                            System.out
                                    .println("The inbound rule does not appear to be
open to either this computer's IP,"
                                            + " all IP addresses (0.0.0.0/0), or to
a prefix list ID.");
                        } else {
```

```
                            break;
                        }
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }

        groupInfo.setPortOpen(portIsOpen);
        return groupInfo;
    }

    /*
     * Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
     * Scaling group.
     * The target group specifies how the load balancer forward requests to the
     * instances
     * in the group.
     */
    public void attachLoadBalancerTargetGroup(String asGroupName, String
targetGroupARN) {
        try {
            AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .autoScalingGroupName(asGroupName)
                    .targetGroupARNs(targetGroupARN)
                    .build();


getAutoScalingClient().attachLoadBalancerTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);
            System.out.println("Attached load balancer to " + asGroupName);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.
    public String[] createGroup(int groupSize, String templateName, String
autoScalingGroupName) {
```

```
        // Get availability zones.
        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
zonesRequest =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest
                .builder()
                .build();

        DescribeAvailabilityZonesResponse zonesResponse =
getEc2Client().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest);
        List<String> availabilityZoneNames =
zonesResponse.availabilityZones().stream()

.map(software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.AvailabilityZone::zoneName)
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String availabilityZones = String.join(",", availabilityZoneNames);
        LaunchTemplateSpecification specification =
LaunchTemplateSpecification.builder()
                .launchTemplateName(templateName)
                .version("$Default")
                .build();

        String[] zones = availabilityZones.split(",");
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest.builder()
                .launchTemplate(specification)
                .availabilityZones(zones)
                .maxSize(groupSize)
                .minSize(groupSize)
                .autoScalingGroupName(autoScalingGroupName)
                .build();

        try {
            getAutoScalingClient().createAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest);

        } catch (AutoScalingException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Created an EC2 Auto Scaling group named " +
autoScalingGroupName);
        return zones;
    }
```

```
    public String getDefaultVPC() {
        // Define the filter.
        Filter defaultFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("is-default")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest request =
software.amazon.awssdk.services.ec2.model.DescribeVpcsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(defaultFilter)
                .build();

        DescribeVpcsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeVpcs(request);
        return response.vpcs().get(0).vpcId();
    }

    // Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability Zones.
    public List<Subnet> getSubnets(String vpcId, String[] availabilityZones) {
        List<Subnet> subnets = null;
        Filter vpcFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("vpc-id")
                .values(vpcId)
                .build();

        Filter azFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("availability-zone")
                .values(availabilityZones)
                .build();

        Filter defaultForAZ = Filter.builder()
                .name("default-for-az")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                .filters(vpcFilter, azFilter, defaultForAZ)
                .build();

        DescribeSubnetsResponse response = getEc2Client().describeSubnets(request);
        subnets = response.subnets();
        return subnets;
    }
```

```
    // Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.
    public String getBadInstance(String groupName) {
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest request =
DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest.builder()
                .autoScalingGroupNames(groupName)
                .build();

        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsResponse response =
getAutoScalingClient().describeAutoScalingGroups(request);
        AutoScalingGroup autoScalingGroup = response.autoScalingGroups().get(0);
        List<String> instanceIds = autoScalingGroup.instances().stream()
                .map(instance -> instance.instanceId())
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

        String[] instanceIdArray = instanceIds.toArray(new String[0]);
        for (String instanceId : instanceIdArray) {
            System.out.println("Instance ID: " + instanceId);
            return instanceId;
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.
    public String getInstanceProfile(String instanceId) {
        Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                .name("instance-id")
                .values(instanceId)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest associationsRequest =
DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsRequest
                .builder()
                .filters(filter)
                .build();

        DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociationsResponse response = getEc2Client()
                .describeIamInstanceProfileAssociations(associationsRequest);
        return response.iamInstanceProfileAssociations().get(0).associationId();
    }

    public void deleteRolesPolicies(String policyName, String roleName, String
InstanceProfile) {
        ListPoliciesRequest listPoliciesRequest =
ListPoliciesRequest.builder().build();
```

```
        ListPoliciesResponse listPoliciesResponse =
 getIAMClient().listPolicies(listPoliciesRequest);
        for (Policy policy : listPoliciesResponse.policies()) {
            if (policy.policyName().equals(policyName)) {
                // List the entities (users, groups, roles) that are attached to the
 policy.

 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
 listEntitiesRequest =
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.ListEntitiesForPolicyRequest
                        .builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();
                ListEntitiesForPolicyResponse listEntitiesResponse = iamClient
                        .listEntitiesForPolicy(listEntitiesRequest);
                if (!listEntitiesResponse.policyGroups().isEmpty() || !
listEntitiesResponse.policyUsers().isEmpty()
                        || !listEntitiesResponse.policyRoles().isEmpty()) {
                    // Detach the policy from any entities it is attached to.
                    DetachRolePolicyRequest detachPolicyRequest =
 DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                            .policyArn(policy.arn())
                            .roleName(roleName) // Specify the name of the IAM role
                            .build();

                    getIAMClient().detachRolePolicy(detachPolicyRequest);
                    System.out.println("Policy detached from entities.");
                }

                // Now, you can delete the policy.
                DeletePolicyRequest deletePolicyRequest =
 DeletePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy.arn())
                        .build();

                getIAMClient().deletePolicy(deletePolicyRequest);
                System.out.println("Policy deleted successfully.");
                break;
            }
        }

        // List the roles associated with the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest listRolesRequest =
 ListInstanceProfilesForRoleRequest.builder()
```

```
                .roleName(roleName)
                .build();

        // Detach the roles from the instance profile
        ListInstanceProfilesForRoleResponse listRolesResponse =
 iamClient.listInstanceProfilesForRole(listRolesRequest);
        for (software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.InstanceProfile profile :
 listRolesResponse.instanceProfiles()) {
            RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest removeRoleRequest =
 RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                    .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                    .roleName(roleName) // Remove the extra dot here
                    .build();

            getIAMClient().removeRoleFromInstanceProfile(removeRoleRequest);
            System.out.println("Role " + roleName + " removed from instance profile
 " + InstanceProfile);
        }

        // Delete the instance profile after removing all roles
        DeleteInstanceProfileRequest deleteInstanceProfileRequest =
 DeleteInstanceProfileRequest.builder()
                .instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile)
                .build();

        getIAMClient().deleteInstanceProfile(r ->
 r.instanceProfileName(InstanceProfile));
        System.out.println(InstanceProfile + " Deleted");
        System.out.println("All roles and policies are deleted.");
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
public class LoadBalancer {
    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;

    public ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client getLoadBalancerClient() {
        if (elasticLoadBalancingV2Client == null) {
            elasticLoadBalancingV2Client = ElasticLoadBalancingV2Client.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
```

```
        }

        return elasticLoadBalancingV2Client;
    }

    // Checks the health of the instances in the target group.
    public List<TargetHealthDescription> checkTargetHealth(String targetGroupName) {
        DescribeTargetGroupsRequest targetGroupsRequest =
DescribeTargetGroupsRequest.builder()
                .names(targetGroupName)
                .build();

        DescribeTargetGroupsResponse tgResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetGroups(targetGroupsRequest);

        DescribeTargetHealthRequest healthRequest =
DescribeTargetHealthRequest.builder()
                .targetGroupArn(tgResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn())
                .build();

        DescribeTargetHealthResponse healthResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().describeTargetHealth(healthRequest);
        return healthResponse.targetHealthDescriptions();
    }

    // Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.
    public String getEndpoint(String lbName) {
        DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
        return res.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
    }

    // Deletes a load balancer.
    public void deleteLoadBalancer(String lbName) {
        try {
            // Use a waiter to delete the Load Balancer.
            DescribeLoadBalancersResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeLoadBalancers(describe -> describe.names(lbName));
            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .build();
```

```
            getLoadBalancerClient().deleteLoadBalancer(
                    builder ->
builder.loadBalancerArn(res.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn()));
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancersDeleted(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(lbName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Deletes the target group.
    public void deleteTargetGroup(String targetGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeTargetGroupsResponse res = getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .describeTargetGroups(describe ->
describe.names(targetGroupName));
            getLoadBalancerClient()
                    .deleteTargetGroup(builder ->
builder.targetGroupArn(res.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn()));
        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(targetGroupName + " was deleted.");
    }

    // Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load balancer
    // endpoint.
    public boolean verifyLoadBalancerEndpoint(String elbDnsName) throws IOException,
InterruptedException {
        boolean success = false;
        int retries = 3;
        CloseableHttpClient httpClient = HttpClients.createDefault();

        // Create an HTTP GET request to the ELB.
        HttpGet httpGet = new HttpGet("http://" + elbDnsName);
        try {
            while ((!success) && (retries > 0)) {
                // Execute the request and get the response.
                HttpResponse response = httpClient.execute(httpGet);
```

```
                int statusCode = response.getStatusLine().getStatusCode();
                System.out.println("HTTP Status Code: " + statusCode);
                if (statusCode == 200) {
                    success = true;
                } else {
                    retries--;
                    System.out.println("Got connection error from load balancer
endpoint, retrying...");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
                }
            }

        } catch (org.apache.http.conn.HttpHostConnectException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        System.out.println("Status.." + success);
        return success;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
     * how
     * the load balancer forward requests to instances in the group and how instance
     * health is checked.
     */
    public String createTargetGroup(String protocol, int port, String vpcId, String
targetGroupName) {
        CreateTargetGroupRequest targetGroupRequest =
CreateTargetGroupRequest.builder()
                .healthCheckPath("/healthcheck")
                .healthCheckTimeoutSeconds(5)
                .port(port)
                .vpcId(vpcId)
                .name(targetGroupName)
                .protocol(protocol)
                .build();

        CreateTargetGroupResponse targetGroupResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createTargetGroup(targetGroupRequest);
        String targetGroupArn =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupArn();
        String targetGroup =
targetGroupResponse.targetGroups().get(0).targetGroupName();
```

```
        System.out.println("The " + targetGroup + " was created with ARN" +
targetGroupArn);
        return targetGroupArn;
    }

    /*
     * Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
     * subnets
     * and forwards requests to the specified target group.
     */
    public String createLoadBalancer(List<Subnet> subnetIds, String targetGroupARN,
String lbName, int port,
            String protocol) {
        try {
            List<String> subnetIdStrings = subnetIds.stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            CreateLoadBalancerRequest balancerRequest =
CreateLoadBalancerRequest.builder()
                    .subnets(subnetIdStrings)
                    .name(lbName)
                    .scheme("internet-facing")
                    .build();

            // Create and wait for the load balancer to become available.
            CreateLoadBalancerResponse lsResponse =
getLoadBalancerClient().createLoadBalancer(balancerRequest);
            String lbARN = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn();

            ElasticLoadBalancingV2Waiter loadBalancerWaiter =
getLoadBalancerClient().waiter();
            DescribeLoadBalancersRequest request =
DescribeLoadBalancersRequest.builder()
                    .loadBalancerArns(lbARN)
                    .build();

            System.out.println("Waiting for Load Balancer " + lbName + " to become
available.");
            WaiterResponse<DescribeLoadBalancersResponse> waiterResponse =
loadBalancerWaiter
                    .waitUntilLoadBalancerAvailable(request);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Load Balancer " + lbName + " is available.");
```

```
            // Get the DNS name (endpoint) of the load balancer.
            String lbDNSName = lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).dnsName();
            System.out.println("*** Load Balancer DNS Name: " + lbDNSName);

            // Create a listener for the load balance.
            Action action = Action.builder()
                    .targetGroupArn(targetGroupARN)
                    .type("forward")
                    .build();

            CreateListenerRequest listenerRequest = CreateListenerRequest.builder()

 .loadBalancerArn(lsResponse.loadBalancers().get(0).loadBalancerArn())
                    .defaultActions(action)
                    .port(port)
                    .protocol(protocol)
                    .build();

            getLoadBalancerClient().createListener(listenerRequest);
            System.out.println("Created listener to forward traffic from load
 balancer " + lbName + " to target group "
                    + targetGroupARN);

            // Return the load balancer DNS name.
            return lbDNSName;

        } catch (ElasticLoadBalancingV2Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
public class Database {

    private static DynamoDbClient dynamoDbClient;

    public static DynamoDbClient getDynamoDbClient() {
        if (dynamoDbClient == null) {
```

```
            dynamoDbClient = DynamoDbClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .build();
        }
        return dynamoDbClient;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Amazon DynamoDB table exists.
    private boolean doesTableExist(String tableName) {
        try {
            // Describe the table and catch any exceptions.
            DescribeTableRequest describeTableRequest =
DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().describeTable(describeTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' exists.");
            return true;

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println("Table '" + tableName + "' does not exist.");
        } catch (DynamoDbException e) {
            System.err.println("Error checking table existence: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }

    /*
     * Creates a DynamoDB table to use a recommendation service. The table has a
     * hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
     * as
     * Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
     * MediaType,
     * forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.
     */
    public void createTable(String tableName, String fileName) throws IOException {
        // First check to see if the table exists.
        boolean doesExist = doesTableExist(tableName);
        if (!doesExist) {
            DynamoDbWaiter dbWaiter = getDynamoDbClient().waiter();
            CreateTableRequest createTableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .attributeDefinitions(
```

```
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.S)
                                    .build(),
                            AttributeDefinition.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .attributeType(ScalarAttributeType.N)
                                    .build())
                    .keySchema(
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("MediaType")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.HASH)
                                    .build(),
                            KeySchemaElement.builder()
                                    .attributeName("ItemId")
                                    .keyType(KeyType.RANGE)
                                    .build())
                    .provisionedThroughput(
                            ProvisionedThroughput.builder()
                                    .readCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .writeCapacityUnits(5L)
                                    .build())
                    .build();

            getDynamoDbClient().createTable(createTableRequest);
            System.out.println("Creating table " + tableName + "...");

            // Wait until the Amazon DynamoDB table is created.
            DescribeTableRequest tableRequest = DescribeTableRequest.builder()
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            WaiterResponse<DescribeTableResponse> waiterResponse =
dbWaiter.waitUntilTableExists(tableRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " created.");

            // Add records to the table.
            populateTable(fileName, tableName);
        }
    }

    public void deleteTable(String tableName) {
        getDynamoDbClient().deleteTable(table -> table.tableName(tableName));
```

```
        System.out.println("Table " + tableName + " deleted.");
    }

    // Populates the table with data located in a JSON file using the DynamoDB
    // enhanced client.
    public void populateTable(String fileName, String tableName) throws IOException
 {
        DynamoDbEnhancedClient enhancedClient = DynamoDbEnhancedClient.builder()
                .dynamoDbClient(getDynamoDbClient())
                .build();
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
        File jsonFile = new File(fileName);
        JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonFile);

        DynamoDbTable<Recommendation> mappedTable = enhancedClient.table(tableName,
                TableSchema.fromBean(Recommendation.class));
        for (JsonNode currentNode : rootNode) {
            String mediaType = currentNode.path("MediaType").path("S").asText();
            int itemId = currentNode.path("ItemId").path("N").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("Title").path("S").asText();
            String creator = currentNode.path("Creator").path("S").asText();

            // Create a Recommendation object and set its properties.
            Recommendation rec = new Recommendation();
            rec.setMediaType(mediaType);
            rec.setItemId(itemId);
            rec.setTitle(title);
            rec.setCreator(creator);

            // Put the item into the DynamoDB table.
            mappedTable.putItem(rec); // Add the Recommendation to the list.
        }
        System.out.println("Added all records to the " + tableName);
    }
}
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
public class ParameterHelper {

    String tableName = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table";
    String dyntable = "doc-example-recommendation-service";
```

```
    String failureResponse = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response";
    String healthCheck = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check";

    public void reset() {
        put(dyntable, tableName);
        put(failureResponse, "none");
        put(healthCheck, "shallow");
    }

    public void put(String name, String value) {
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .value(value)
                .overwrite(true)
                .type("String")
                .build();

        ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
        System.out.printf("Setting demo parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer

- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Work with the IAM Policy Builder API

The following code example shows how to:

- Create IAM policies by using the object-oriented API.
- Use the IAM Policy Builder API with the IAM service.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The examples use the following imports.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamConditionOperator;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamEffect;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPolicyWriter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPrincipal;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamPrincipalType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamResource;
import software.amazon.awssdk.policybuilder.iam.IamStatement;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.IamClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iam.model.GetPolicyVersionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsClient;

import java.net.URLDecoder;
import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;
```

Create a time-based policy.

```
        public String timeBasedPolicyExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:GetItem")
                                                .addResource(IamResource.ALL)
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.DATE_GREATER_THAN)

 .key("aws:CurrentTime")

 .value("2020-04-01T00:00:00Z"))
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.DATE_LESS_THAN)

 .key("aws:CurrentTime")

 .value("2020-06-30T23:59:59Z")))
                                .build();
```

```
                // Use an IamPolicyWriter to write out the JSON string to a more
 readable
                // format.
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true)
                                .build());
        }
```

Create a policy with multiple conditions.

```
        public String multipleConditionsExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:GetItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:BatchGetItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:Query")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:PutItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:UpdateItem")
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:DeleteItem")

 .addAction("dynamodb:BatchWriteItem")

 .addResource("arn:aws:dynamodb:*:*:table/table-name")

 .addConditions(IamConditionOperator.STRING_EQUALS

 .addPrefix("ForAllValues:"),

 "dynamodb:Attributes",
                                                                List.of("column-
name1", "column-name2", "column-name3"))
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.STRING_EQUALS

 .addSuffix("IfExists"))

 .key("dynamodb:Select")

 .value("SPECIFIC_ATTRIBUTES")))
```

```
                                .build();

                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Use principals in a policy.

```
        public String specifyPrincipalsExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.DENY)
                                                .addAction("s3:*")
                                                .addPrincipal(IamPrincipal.ALL)
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-
demo-bucket/*")
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-
demo-bucket")
                                                .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.ARN_NOT_EQUALS)

 .key("aws:PrincipalArn")

 .value("arn:aws:iam::444455556666:user/user-name")))
                                .build();
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Allow cross-account access.

```
        public String allowCrossAccountAccessExample() {
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder()
                                .addStatement(b -> b
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addPrincipal(IamPrincipalType.AWS,
 "111122223333")
                                                .addAction("s3:PutObject")
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-
demo-bucket/*")
```

```
                                                    .addCondition(b1 -> b1

 .operator(IamConditionOperator.STRING_EQUALS)
                                                                .key("s3:x-amz-acl")
                                                                .value("bucket-
owner-full-control")))
                                .build();
                return policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder()
                                .prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Build and upload an `IamPolicy`.

```
        public String createAndUploadPolicyExample(IamClient iam, String accountID,
 String policyName) {
                // Build the policy.
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.builder() // 'version' defaults to
 "2012-10-17".
                                .addStatement(IamStatement.builder()
                                                .effect(IamEffect.ALLOW)
                                                .addAction("dynamodb:PutItem")
                                                .addResource("arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
east-1:" + accountID
                                                                + ":table/
exampleTableName")
                                                .build())
                                .build();
                // Upload the policy.
                iam.createPolicy(r ->
 r.policyName(policyName).policyDocument(policy.toJson()));
                return
 policy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder().prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

Download and work with an `IamPolicy`.

```
        public String createNewBasedOnExistingPolicyExample(IamClient iam, String
 accountID, String policyName,
                        String newPolicyName) {
```

```
                String policyArn = "arn:aws:iam::" + accountID + ":policy/" +
policyName;
                GetPolicyResponse getPolicyResponse = iam.getPolicy(r ->
r.policyArn(policyArn));

                String policyVersion =
getPolicyResponse.policy().defaultVersionId();
                GetPolicyVersionResponse getPolicyVersionResponse = iam
                                .getPolicyVersion(r ->
r.policyArn(policyArn).versionId(policyVersion));

                // Create an IamPolicy instance from the JSON string returned from
IAM.
                String decodedPolicy =
URLDecoder.decode(getPolicyVersionResponse.policyVersion().document(),
                                StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
                IamPolicy policy = IamPolicy.fromJson(decodedPolicy);

                /*
                 * All IamPolicy components are immutable, so use the copy method
that creates a
                 * new instance that
                 * can be altered in the same method call.
                 *
                 * Add the ability to get an item from DynamoDB as an additional
action.
                 */
                IamStatement newStatement = policy.statements().get(0).copy(s ->
s.addAction("dynamodb:GetItem"));

                // Create a new statement that replaces the original statement.
                IamPolicy newPolicy = policy.copy(p ->
p.statements(Arrays.asList(newStatement)));

                // Upload the new policy. IAM now has both policies.
                iam.createPolicy(r -> r.policyName(newPolicyName)
                                .policyDocument(newPolicy.toJson()));

                return
newPolicy.toJson(IamPolicyWriter.builder().prettyPrint(true).build());
        }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide.

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - GetPolicy
  - GetPolicyVersion

AWS IoT examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS IoT.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.IotClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListThingsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListThingsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ThingAttribute;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.paginators.ListThingsIterable;
```

```
import java.util.List;

public class HelloIoT {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        System.out.println("Hello AWS IoT. Here is a listing of your AWS IoT
 Things:");
        IotClient iotClient = IotClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        listAllThings(iotClient);
    }

    public static void listAllThings(IotClient iotClient) {
        iotClient.listThingsPaginator(ListThingsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build())
            .stream()
            .flatMap(response -> response.things().stream())
            .forEach(attribute -> {
                System.out.println("Thing name: " + attribute.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + attribute.thingArn());
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS IoT Thing.
- Generate a device certificate.

- Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.
- Return a unique endpoint.
- List your AWS IoT certificates.
- Create an AWS IoT shadow.
- Write out state information.
- Creates a rule.
- List your rules.
- Search things using the Thing name.
- Delete an AWS IoT Thing.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT features.

```
import java.util.Scanner;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an AWS IoT Thing.
 * 2. Generate and attach a device certificate.
 * 3. Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.
 * 4. Get an AWS IoT Endpoint.
 * 5. List your certificates.
 * 6. Updates the shadow for the specified thing..
```

```
 * 7. Write out the state information, in JSON format
 * 8. Creates a rule
 * 9. List rules
 * 10. Search things
 * 11. Detach amd delete the certificate.
 * 12. Delete Thing.
 */
public class IotScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
            """
                Usage:
                    <roleARN> <snsAction>

                Where:
                    roleARN - The ARN of an IAM role that has permission to work
 with AWS IOT.
                    snsAction  - An ARN of an SNS topic.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        IotActions iotActions = new IotActions();
        String thingName;
        String ruleName;
        String roleARN = args[0];
        String snsAction = args[1];
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS IoT basics scenario.");
        System.out.println("""
            This example program demonstrates various interactions with the AWS
 Internet of Things (IoT) Core service. The program guides you through a series of
 steps,
            including creating an IoT Thing, generating a device certificate,
 updating the Thing with attributes, and so on.
            It utilizes the AWS SDK for Java V2 and incorporates functionality for
 creating and managing IoT Things, certificates, rules,
```

```
            shadows, and performing searches. The program aims to showcase AWS IoT
capabilities and provides a comprehensive example for
            developers working with AWS IoT in a Java environment.

            Let's get started...

            """);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("1. Create an AWS IoT Thing.");
        System.out.println("""
            An AWS IoT Thing represents a virtual entity in the AWS IoT service that
can be associated with
            a physical device.
            """);
        // Prompt the user for input.
        System.out.print("Enter Thing name: ");
        thingName = scanner.nextLine();
        iotActions.createIoTThing(thingName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Generate a device certificate.");
        System.out.println("""
            A device certificate performs a role in securing the communication
between devices (Things)
            and the AWS IoT platform.
            """);

        System.out.print("Do you want to create a certificate for " +thingName +"?
(y/n)");
        String certAns = scanner.nextLine();
        String certificateArn="" ;
        if (certAns != null && certAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            certificateArn = iotActions.createCertificate();
            System.out.println("Attach the certificate to the AWS IoT Thing.");
            iotActions.attachCertificateToThing(thingName, certificateArn);
        } else {
            System.out.println("A device certificate was not created.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.");
```

```
        System.out.println("""
             IoT Thing attributes, represented as key-value pairs, offer a pivotal
advantage in facilitating efficient data
             management and retrieval within the AWS IoT ecosystem.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.updateShadowThing(thingName);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Return a unique endpoint specific to the Amazon Web
Services account.");
        System.out.println("""
            An IoT Endpoint refers to a specific URL or Uniform Resource Locator
that serves as the entry point for communication between IoT devices and the AWS
IoT service.
           """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String endpointUrl = iotActions.describeEndpoint();
        System.out.println("The endpoint is "+endpointUrl);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. List your AWS IoT certificates");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        if (certificateArn.length() > 0) {
            iotActions.listCertificates();
        } else {
            System.out.println("You did not create a certificates. Skipping this
step.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Create an IoT shadow that refers to a digital
representation or virtual twin of a physical IoT device");
        System.out.println("""
            A Thing Shadow refers to a feature that enables you to create a virtual
representation, or "shadow,"
            of a physical device or thing. The Thing Shadow allows you to
synchronize and control the state of a device between
```

```
            the cloud and the device itself. and the AWS IoT service. For example,
you can write and retrieve JSON data from a Thing Shadow.
           """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.updateShadowThing(thingName);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Write out the state information, in JSON format.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.getPayload(thingName);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Creates a rule");
        System.out.println("""
        Creates a rule that is an administrator-level action.
        Any user who has permission to create rules will be able to access data
processed by the rule.
        """);
        System.out.print("Enter Rule name: ");
        ruleName = scanner.nextLine();
        iotActions.createIoTRule(roleARN, ruleName, snsAction);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. List your rules.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        iotActions.listIoTRules();
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Search things using the Thing name.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String queryString = "thingName:"+thingName ;
        iotActions.searchThings(queryString);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        if (certificateArn.length() > 0) {
            System.out.print("Do you want to detach and delete the certificate for "
+thingName +"? (y/n)");
            String delAns = scanner.nextLine();
            if (delAns != null && delAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
                System.out.println("11. You selected to detach amd delete the
certificate.");
                waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
                iotActions.detachThingPrincipal(thingName, certificateArn);
                iotActions.deleteCertificate(certificateArn);
                waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            } else {
                System.out.println("11. You selected not to delete the
certificate.");
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("11. You did not create a certificate so there is
nothing to delete.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Delete the AWS IoT Thing.");
        System.out.print("Do you want to delete the IoT Thing? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (delAns != null && delAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            iotActions.deleteIoTThing(thingName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The IoT Thing was not deleted.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The AWS IoT workflow has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }


    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();
```

```
            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS IoT SDK methods.

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.IotAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.Action;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.AttachThingPrincipalRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.AttachThingPrincipalResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.Certificate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateKeysAndCertificateResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateThingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateThingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateTopicRuleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.CreateTopicRuleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteCertificateRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteCertificateResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteThingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DeleteThingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeThingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DescribeThingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DetachThingPrincipalRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.DetachThingPrincipalResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.IotException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListCertificatesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListTopicRulesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.ListTopicRulesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.SearchIndexRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.SearchIndexResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.TopicRuleListItem;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.SnsAction;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iot.model.TopicRulePayload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.IotDataPlaneAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.GetThingShadowRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.GetThingShadowResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.UpdateThingShadowRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.iotdataplane.model.UpdateThingShadowResponse;
import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
import java.util.regex.Matcher;
import java.util.regex.Pattern;

public class IotActions {

    private static IotAsyncClient iotAsyncClient;

    private static IotDataPlaneAsyncClient iotAsyncDataPlaneClient;

    private static final String TOPIC = "your-iot-topic";

    private static IotDataPlaneAsyncClient getAsyncDataPlaneClient() {
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                .numRetries(3)
```

```
                .build())
            .build();

        if (iotAsyncDataPlaneClient == null) {
            iotAsyncDataPlaneClient = IotDataPlaneAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return iotAsyncDataPlaneClient;
    }


    private static IotAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
            .maxConcurrency(100)
            .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
            .build();

        ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
            .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
            .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
            .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                .numRetries(3)
                .build())
            .build();

        if (iotAsyncClient == null) {
            iotAsyncClient = IotAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return iotAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates an IoT certificate asynchronously.
     *
```

```
     * @return The ARN of the created certificate.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT certificate.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate details and returns
the certificate ARN.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public String createCertificate() {
        CompletableFuture<CreateKeysAndCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createKeysAndCertificate();
        final String[] certificateArn = {null};
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String certificatePem = response.certificatePem();
                certificateArn[0] = response.certificateArn();

                // Print the details.
                System.out.println("\nCertificate:");
                System.out.println(certificatePem);
                System.out.println("\nCertificate ARN:");
                System.out.println(certificateArn[0]);

            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return certificateArn[0];
    }

    /**
     * Creates an IoT Thing with the specified name asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to create.
     *
```

```
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT Thing with the
specified name.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the name of the thing and its ARN
value.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void createIoTThing(String thingName) {
       CreateThingRequest createThingRequest = CreateThingRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createThing(createThingRequest);
       future.whenComplete((createThingResponse, ex) -> {
           if (createThingResponse != null) {
               System.out.println(thingName + " was successfully created. The ARN
value is " + createThingResponse.thingArn());
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
               } else {
                   System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
               }
           }
       });

       future.join();
   }

   /**
    * Attaches a certificate to an IoT Thing asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
    * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to attach.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to attach a certificate to an
IoT Thing.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message and additional
information about the Thing.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void attachCertificateToThing(String thingName, String certificateArn) {
```

```
        AttachThingPrincipalRequest principalRequest =
AttachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .principal(certificateArn)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<AttachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest);
        future.whenComplete((attachResponse, ex) -> {
            if (attachResponse != null &&
attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                System.out.println("Certificate attached to Thing successfully.");

                // Print additional information about the Thing.
                describeThing(thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to attach certificate to Thing. HTTP
Status Code: " +
                        attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Describes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe an IoT Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the Thing details.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    private void describeThing(String thingName) {
        DescribeThingRequest thingRequest = DescribeThingRequest.builder()
```

```
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().describeThing(thingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((describeResponse, ex) -> {
            if (describeResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Thing Details:");
                System.out.println("Thing Name: " + describeResponse.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + describeResponse.thingArn());
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to describe Thing.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Updates the shadow of an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update the shadow of an IoT
Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void updateShadowThing(String thingName) {
        // Create Thing Shadow State Document.
        String stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25,
\"humidity\":50}}}";
        SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromString(stateDocument, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
        UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest =
UpdateThingShadowRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
```

```
            .payload(data)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<UpdateThingShadowResponse> future =
 getAsyncDataPlaneClient().updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest);
        future.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
            if (updateResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Thing Shadow updated successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to update Thing Shadow.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Describes the endpoint of the IoT service asynchronously.
     *
     * @return A CompletableFuture containing the full endpoint URL.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe the endpoint of the
 IoT service.
     * If the request is successful, it prints and returns the full endpoint URL.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public String describeEndpoint() {
        CompletableFuture<DescribeEndpointResponse> future =
 getAsyncClient().describeEndpoint(DescribeEndpointRequest.builder().endpointType("iot:Data-
ATS").build());
        final String[] result = {null};

        future.whenComplete((endpointResponse, ex) -> {
            if (endpointResponse != null) {
                String endpointUrl = endpointResponse.endpointAddress();
                String exString = getValue(endpointUrl);
```

```
                String fullEndpoint = "https://" + exString + "-ats.iot.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com";

                System.out.println("Full Endpoint URL: " + fullEndpoint);
                result[0] = fullEndpoint;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
 ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return result[0];
    }

    /**
     * Extracts a specific value from the endpoint URL.
     *
     * @param input The endpoint URL to process.
     * @return The extracted value from the endpoint URL.
     */
    private static String getValue(String input) {
        // Define a regular expression pattern for extracting the subdomain.
        Pattern pattern = Pattern.compile("^(.*?)\\.iot\\.us-east-1\\.amazonaws\
\.com");

        // Match the pattern against the input string.
        Matcher matcher = pattern.matcher(input);

        // Check if a match is found.
        if (matcher.find()) {
            // Extract the subdomain from the first capturing group.
            String subdomain = matcher.group(1);
            System.out.println("Extracted subdomain: " + subdomain);
            return subdomain ;
        } else {
            System.out.println("No match found");
        }
```

```
        return "" ;
    }

    /**
     * Lists all certificates asynchronously.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list all certificates.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate IDs and ARNs.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void listCertificates() {
        CompletableFuture<ListCertificatesResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listCertificates();
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                List<Certificate> certList = response.certificates();
                for (Certificate cert : certList) {
                    System.out.println("Cert id: " + cert.certificateId());
                    System.out.println("Cert Arn: " + cert.certificateArn());
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to list certificates.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the payload of a Thing's shadow asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to get the payload of a Thing's
shadow.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the shadow data.
```

```
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void getPayload(String thingName) {
        GetThingShadowRequest getThingShadowRequest =
GetThingShadowRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<GetThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest);
        future.whenComplete((getThingShadowResponse, ex) -> {
            if (getThingShadowResponse != null) {
                // Extracting payload from response.
                SdkBytes payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload();
                String payloadString = payload.asUtf8String();
                System.out.println("Received Shadow Data: " + payloadString);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to get Thing Shadow payload.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Creates an IoT rule asynchronously.
     *
     * @param roleARN The ARN of the IAM role that grants access to the rule's
actions.
     * @param ruleName The name of the IoT rule.
     * @param action The ARN of the action to perform when the rule is triggered.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT rule.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
```

```
    public void createIoTRule(String roleARN, String ruleName, String action) {
        String sql = "SELECT * FROM '" + TOPIC + "'";
        SnsAction action1 = SnsAction.builder()
            .targetArn(action)
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .build();

        // Create the action.
        Action myAction = Action.builder()
            .sns(action1)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule payload.
        TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload = TopicRulePayload.builder()
            .sql(sql)
            .actions(myAction)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule request.
        CreateTopicRuleRequest topicRuleRequest = CreateTopicRuleRequest.builder()
            .ruleName(ruleName)
            .topicRulePayload(topicRulePayload)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateTopicRuleResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest);
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                System.out.println("IoT Rule created successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to create IoT Rule.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Lists IoT rules asynchronously.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list IoT rules.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the names and ARNs of the rules.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void listIoTRules() {
        ListTopicRulesRequest listTopicRulesRequest =
ListTopicRulesRequest.builder().build();
        CompletableFuture<ListTopicRulesResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listTopicRules(listTopicRulesRequest);
        future.whenComplete((listTopicRulesResponse, ex) -> {
            if (listTopicRulesResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("List of IoT Rules:");
                List<TopicRuleListItem> ruleList = listTopicRulesResponse.rules();
                for (TopicRuleListItem rule : ruleList) {
                    System.out.println("Rule Name: " + rule.ruleName());
                    System.out.println("Rule ARN: " + rule.ruleArn());
                    System.out.println("--------------");
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to list IoT Rules.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Searches for IoT Things asynchronously based on a query string.
     *
     * @param queryString The query string to search for Things.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to search for IoT Things.
```

```
     * If the request is successful and Things are found, it prints their IDs.
     * If no Things are found, it prints a message indicating so.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void searchThings(String queryString) {
        SearchIndexRequest searchIndexRequest = SearchIndexRequest.builder()
            .queryString(queryString)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SearchIndexResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().searchIndex(searchIndexRequest);
        future.whenComplete((searchIndexResponse, ex) -> {
            if (searchIndexResponse != null) {
                // Process the result.
                if (searchIndexResponse.things().isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No things found.");
                } else {
                    searchIndexResponse.things().forEach(thing ->
System.out.println("Thing id found using search is " + thing.thingId()));
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to search for IoT Things.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Detaches a principal (certificate) from an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to detach.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to detach a certificate from an
IoT Thing.
```

```
     * If the detachment is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void detachThingPrincipal(String thingName, String certificateArn) {
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest thingPrincipalRequest =
DetachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
            .principal(certificateArn)
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DetachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully removed from
" + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a certificate asynchronously.
     *
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete a certificate.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteCertificate(String certificateArn) {
        DeleteCertificateRequest certificateProviderRequest =
DeleteCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateId(extractCertificateId(certificateArn))
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<DeleteCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully deleted.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an IoT Thing.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteIoTThing(String thingName) {
        DeleteThingRequest deleteThingRequest = DeleteThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteThing(deleteThingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println("Deleted Thing " + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }

    // Get the cert Id  from the Cert ARN value.
    private String extractCertificateId(String certificateArn) {
        // Example ARN: arn:aws:iot:region:account-id:cert/certificate-id.
        String[] arnParts = certificateArn.split(":");
        String certificateIdPart = arnParts[arnParts.length - 1];
        return certificateIdPart.substring(certificateIdPart.lastIndexOf("/") + 1);
    }
}
```

Actions

`AttachThingPrincipal`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachThingPrincipal`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Attaches a certificate to an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to attach.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to attach a certificate to an
 IoT Thing.
```

```
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message and additional
information about the Thing.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void attachCertificateToThing(String thingName, String certificateArn) {
       AttachThingPrincipalRequest principalRequest =
AttachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .principal(certificateArn)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<AttachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest);
       future.whenComplete((attachResponse, ex) -> {
           if (attachResponse != null &&
attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
               System.out.println("Certificate attached to Thing successfully.");

               // Print additional information about the Thing.
               describeThing(thingName);
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
               } else if (cause != null) {
                   System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
               } else {
                   System.err.println("Failed to attach certificate to Thing. HTTP
Status Code: " +
                           attachResponse.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
               }
           }
       });

       future.join();
   }
```

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateKeysAndCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeysAndCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an IoT certificate asynchronously.
    *
    * @return The ARN of the created certificate.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT certificate.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate details and returns
the certificate ARN.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public String createCertificate() {
       CompletableFuture<CreateKeysAndCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createKeysAndCertificate();
       final String[] certificateArn = {null};
       future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               String certificatePem = response.certificatePem();
               certificateArn[0] = response.certificateArn();

               // Print the details.
               System.out.println("\nCertificate:");
               System.out.println(certificatePem);
               System.out.println("\nCertificate ARN:");
               System.out.println(certificateArn[0]);

           } else {
               Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return certificateArn[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateThing`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateThing`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an IoT Thing with the specified name asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to create.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT Thing with the
specified name.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the name of the thing and its ARN
value.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void createIoTThing(String thingName) {
        CreateThingRequest createThingRequest = CreateThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<CreateThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createThing(createThingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((createThingResponse, ex) -> {
            if (createThingResponse != null) {
                System.out.println(thingName + " was successfully created. The ARN
value is " + createThingResponse.thingArn());
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateTopicRule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopicRule`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an IoT rule asynchronously.
     *
     * @param roleARN The ARN of the IAM role that grants access to the rule's
actions.
     * @param ruleName The name of the IoT rule.
     * @param action The ARN of the action to perform when the rule is triggered.
```

```
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an IoT rule.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void createIoTRule(String roleARN, String ruleName, String action) {
        String sql = "SELECT * FROM '" + TOPIC + "'";
        SnsAction action1 = SnsAction.builder()
            .targetArn(action)
            .roleArn(roleARN)
            .build();

        // Create the action.
        Action myAction = Action.builder()
            .sns(action1)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule payload.
        TopicRulePayload topicRulePayload = TopicRulePayload.builder()
            .sql(sql)
            .actions(myAction)
            .build();

        // Create the topic rule request.
        CreateTopicRuleRequest topicRuleRequest = CreateTopicRuleRequest.builder()
            .ruleName(ruleName)
            .topicRulePayload(topicRulePayload)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateTopicRuleResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest);
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                System.out.println("IoT Rule created successfully.");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to create IoT Rule.");
                }
```

```
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a certificate asynchronously.
     *
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete a certificate.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteCertificate(String certificateArn) {
        DeleteCertificateRequest certificateProviderRequest =
DeleteCertificateRequest.builder()
            .certificateId(extractCertificateId(certificateArn))
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteCertificateResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully deleted.");
```

```
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteThing`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteThing`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing to delete.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an IoT Thing.
     * If the deletion is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void deleteIoTThing(String thingName) {
        DeleteThingRequest deleteThingRequest = DeleteThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
```

```
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DeleteThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().deleteThing(deleteThingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println("Deleted Thing " + thingName);
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeEndpoint`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes the endpoint of the IoT service asynchronously.
     *
     * @return A CompletableFuture containing the full endpoint URL.
     *
```

```
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe the endpoint of the
 IoT service.
     * If the request is successful, it prints and returns the full endpoint URL.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public String describeEndpoint() {
        CompletableFuture<DescribeEndpointResponse> future =
 getAsyncClient().describeEndpoint(DescribeEndpointRequest.builder().endpointType("iot:Data-
ATS").build());
        final String[] result = {null};

        future.whenComplete((endpointResponse, ex) -> {
            if (endpointResponse != null) {
                String endpointUrl = endpointResponse.endpointAddress();
                String exString = getValue(endpointUrl);
                String fullEndpoint = "https://" + exString + "-ats.iot.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com";

                System.out.println("Full Endpoint URL: " + fullEndpoint);
                result[0] = fullEndpoint;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
 ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
 cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
        return result[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeThing`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeThing`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe an IoT Thing.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the Thing details.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    private void describeThing(String thingName) {
        DescribeThingRequest thingRequest = DescribeThingRequest.builder()
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeThingResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().describeThing(thingRequest);
        future.whenComplete((describeResponse, ex) -> {
            if (describeResponse != null) {
                System.out.println("Thing Details:");
                System.out.println("Thing Name: " + describeResponse.thingName());
                System.out.println("Thing ARN: " + describeResponse.thingArn());
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to describe Thing.");
                }
            }
        });
```

```
        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetachThingPrincipal`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachThingPrincipal`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Detaches a principal (certificate) from an IoT Thing asynchronously.
     *
     * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
     * @param certificateArn The ARN of the certificate to detach.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to detach a certificate from an
IoT Thing.
     * If the detachment is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void detachThingPrincipal(String thingName, String certificateArn) {
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest thingPrincipalRequest =
DetachThingPrincipalRequest.builder()
            .principal(certificateArn)
            .thingName(thingName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DetachThingPrincipalResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest);
        future.whenComplete((voidResult, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                System.out.println(certificateArn + " was successfully removed from
" + thingName);
```

```
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + ex.getMessage());
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists all certificates asynchronously.
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list all certificates.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the certificate IDs and ARNs.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void listCertificates() {
        CompletableFuture<ListCertificatesResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listCertificates();
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
```

```
                List<Certificate> certList = response.certificates();
                for (Certificate cert : certList) {
                    System.out.println("Cert id: " + cert.certificateId());
                    System.out.println("Cert Arn: " + cert.certificateArn());
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to list certificates.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SearchIndex`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchIndex`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Searches for IoT Things asynchronously based on a query string.
     *
     * @param queryString The query string to search for Things.
     *
```

```
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to search for IoT Things.
     * If the request is successful and Things are found, it prints their IDs.
     * If no Things are found, it prints a message indicating so.
     * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
     */
    public void searchThings(String queryString) {
        SearchIndexRequest searchIndexRequest = SearchIndexRequest.builder()
            .queryString(queryString)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<SearchIndexResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().searchIndex(searchIndexRequest);
        future.whenComplete((searchIndexResponse, ex) -> {
            if (searchIndexResponse != null) {
                // Process the result.
                if (searchIndexResponse.things().isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No things found.");
                } else {
                    searchIndexResponse.things().forEach(thing ->
System.out.println("Thing id found using search is " + thing.thingId()));
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
                if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                    System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to search for IoT Things.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

UpdateThing

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateThing`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the shadow of an IoT Thing asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update the shadow of an IoT
Thing.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void updateShadowThing(String thingName) {
       // Create Thing Shadow State Document.
       String stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25,
\"humidity\":50}}}";
       SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromString(stateDocument, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
       UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest =
UpdateThingShadowRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .payload(data)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest);
       future.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
           if (updateResponse != null) {
               System.out.println("Thing Shadow updated successfully.");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
               } else if (cause != null) {
                   System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
               } else {
```

```
                    System.err.println("Failed to update Thing Shadow.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS IoT data examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS IoT data.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetThingShadow`

The following code example shows how to use `GetThingShadow`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Retrieves the payload of a Thing's shadow asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to get the payload of a Thing's
shadow.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the shadow data.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void getPayload(String thingName) {
       GetThingShadowRequest getThingShadowRequest =
GetThingShadowRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<GetThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest);
       future.whenComplete((getThingShadowResponse, ex) -> {
           if (getThingShadowResponse != null) {
               // Extracting payload from response.
               SdkBytes payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload();
               String payloadString = payload.asUtf8String();
               System.out.println("Received Shadow Data: " + payloadString);
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
               } else if (cause != null) {
                   System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
               } else {
                   System.err.println("Failed to get Thing Shadow payload.");
               }
           }
       });

       future.join();
   }
```

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

UpdateThingShadow

The following code example shows how to use UpdateThingShadow.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the shadow of an IoT Thing asynchronously.
    *
    * @param thingName The name of the IoT Thing.
    *
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update the shadow of an IoT
Thing.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a confirmation message.
    * If an exception occurs, it prints the error message.
    */
   public void updateShadowThing(String thingName) {
       // Create Thing Shadow State Document.
       String stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25,
\"humidity\":50}}}";
       SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromString(stateDocument, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
       UpdateThingShadowRequest updateThingShadowRequest =
UpdateThingShadowRequest.builder()
           .thingName(thingName)
           .payload(data)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateThingShadowResponse> future =
getAsyncDataPlaneClient().updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest);
       future.whenComplete((updateResponse, ex) -> {
           if (updateResponse != null) {
               System.out.println("Thing Shadow updated successfully.");
           } else {
               Throwable cause = ex != null ? ex.getCause() : null;
               if (cause instanceof IotException) {
                   System.err.println(((IotException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
                } else if (cause != null) {
                    System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.err.println("Failed to update Thing Shadow.");
                }
            }
        });

        future.join();
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS IoT FleetWise examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS IoT FleetWise.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT FleetWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT FleetWise.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloFleetwise {
```

```
        public static void main(String[] args) {
            ListSignalCatalogs();
        }

        public static void  ListSignalCatalogs() {
            try (IoTFleetWiseClient fleetWiseClient = IoTFleetWiseClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .build()) {

                ListSignalCatalogsRequest request =
ListSignalCatalogsRequest.builder()
                        .maxResults(10) // Optional: limit per page
                        .build();

                ListSignalCatalogsIterable paginator =
fleetWiseClient.listSignalCatalogsPaginator(request);
                boolean found = false;

                for (ListSignalCatalogsResponse response : paginator) {
                    for (SignalCatalogSummary summary : response.summaries()) {
                        found = true;
                        System.out.println("Catalog Name: " + summary.name());
                        System.out.println("ARN: " + summary.arn());
                        System.out.println("Created: " + summary.creationTime());
                        System.out.println("Last Modified: " +
summary.lastModificationTime());
                        System.out.println("---------------");
                    }
                }

                if (!found) {
                    System.out.println("No AWS Fleetwise Signal Catalogs were
found.");
                }

            } catch (IoTFleetWiseException e) {
                System.err.println("Error listing signal catalogs: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a collection of standardized signals.
- Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles.
- Create a model manifest.
- Create a decoder manifest.
- Check the status of the model manifest.
- Check the status of the decoder.
- Create an IoT Thing.
- Create a vehicle.
- Display vehicle details.
- Delete the AWS IoT FleetWise Assets.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT SiteWise features.

```
public class FleetwiseScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    static FleetwiseActions actions = new FleetwiseActions();
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(FleetwiseScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage =
                """
                Usage:
                    <signalCatalogName> <manifestName> <fleetId> <vecName> <decName>

                Where:
                    signalCatalogName     - The name of the Signal Catalog to create
 (eg, catalog30).
                    manifestName          - The name of the Vehicle Model (Model
 Manifest) to create (eg, manifest30).
                    fleetId               - The ID of the Fleet to create (eg,
 fleet30).
                    vecName               - The name of the Vehicle to create (eg,
 vehicle30).
                    decName               - The name of the Decoder Manifest to
 create (eg, decManifest30).
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String signalCatalogName = args[0];
        String manifestName = args[1];
        String fleetId = args[2];
        String vecName = args[3];
        String decName = args[4];

        logger.info(
                """
                 AWS IoT FleetWise is a managed service that simplifies the
                 process of collecting, organizing, and transmitting vehicle
                 data to the cloud in near real-time. Designed for automakers
                 and fleet operators, it allows you to define vehicle models,
```

```
                 specify the exact data you want to collect (such as engine
                 temperature, speed, or battery status), and send this data to
                 AWS for analysis. By using intelligent data collection
                 techniques, IoT FleetWise reduces the volume of data
                 transmitted by filtering and transforming it at the edge,
                 helping to minimize bandwidth usage and costs.

                At its core, AWS IoT FleetWise helps organizations build
                scalable systems for vehicle data management and analytics,
                supporting a wide variety of vehicles and sensor configurations.
                You can define signal catalogs and decoder manifests that describe
                how raw CAN bus signals are translated into readable data, making
                the platform highly flexible and extensible. This allows
                manufacturers to optimize vehicle performance, improve safety,
                and reduce maintenance costs by gaining real-time visibility
                into fleet operations.
                """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        try {
            runScenario(signalCatalogName, manifestName, fleetId, vecName, decName);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario(String signalCatalogName,
                                    String manifestName,
                                    String fleetId,
                                    String vecName,
                                    String decName) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Creates a collection of standardized signals that can be
reused to create vehicle models");
        String signalCatalogArn;
        try {
            signalCatalogArn =
actions.createSignalCatalogAsync(signalCatalogName).join();
            logger.info("The collection ARN is " + signalCatalogArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
```

```
                logger.error("The request failed due to a validation issue: {}",
 cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles");
        logger.info(
                """
                Creating an IoT FleetWise fleet allows you to efficiently collect,
                organize, and transfer vehicle data to the cloud, enabling real-
time
                insights into vehicle performance and health.

                It helps reduce data costs by allowing you to filter and prioritize
                only the most relevant vehicle signals, supporting advanced
 analytics
                and predictive maintenance use cases.
                """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String fleetid;
        try {
            fleetid = actions.createFleetAsync(signalCatalogArn, fleetId).join();
            logger.info("The fleet Id is " + fleetid);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a model manifest");
```

```
        logger.info(
                """
                An AWS IoT FleetWise manifest defines the structure and
                relationships of vehicle data. The model manifest specifies
                which signals to collect and how they relate to vehicle systems,
                while the decoder manifest defines how to decode raw vehicle data
                into meaningful signals.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String manifestArn;
        try {
            List<Node> nodes =
actions.listSignalCatalogNodeAsync(signalCatalogName).join();
            manifestArn = actions.createModelManifestAsync(manifestName,
signalCatalogArn, nodes).join();
            logger.info("The manifest ARN is {}", manifestArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Create a decoder manifest");
        logger.info(
                """
                A decoder manifest in AWS IoT FleetWise defines how raw vehicle
                data (such as CAN signals) should be interpreted and decoded
                into meaningful signals. It acts as a translation layer
                that maps vehicle-specific protocols to standardized data formats
                using decoding rules. This is crucial for extracting usable
                data from different vehicle models, even when their data
                formats vary.

                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String decArn;
        try {
            decArn = actions.createDecoderManifestAsync(decName,
manifestArn).join();
            logger.info("The decoder manifest ARN is {}", decArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("5. Check the status of the model manifest");
        logger.info(
                """
                The model manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be used
                to create or update a vehicle.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.updateModelManifestAsync(manifestName);
            actions.waitForModelManifestActiveAsync(manifestName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while waiting for the model
manifest status.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("6. Check the status of the decoder");
        logger.info(
                """
                The decoder manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be
used
                to create or update a vehicle.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.updateDecoderManifestAsync(decName);
            actions.waitForDecoderManifestActiveAsync(decName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while waiting for the decoder
manifest status.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Create an IoT Thing");
        logger.info(
                """
                AWS IoT FleetWise expects an existing AWS IoT Thing with the same
                name as the vehicle name you are passing to createVehicle method.
                Before calling createVehicle(), you must create an AWS IoT Thing
                with the same name using the AWS IoT Core service.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.createThingIfNotExistsAsync(vecName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.error("The resource exists: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Create a vehicle");
        logger.info(
                """
                Creating a vehicle in AWS IoT FleetWise allows you to digitally
                represent and manage a physical vehicle within the AWS ecosystem.
                This enables efficient ingestion, transformation, and transmission
                of vehicle telemetry data to the cloud for analysis.
                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.createVehicleAsync(vecName, manifestArn, decArn).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();

            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The required resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
```

```
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating vehicle.",
cause);
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Display vehicle details");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.getVehicleDetailsAsync(vecName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Delete the AWS IoT Fleetwise Assets");
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the IoT Fleetwise Assets? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                actions.deleteVehicleAsync(vecName).join();
                actions.deleteDecoderManifestAsync(decName).join();
                actions.deleteModelManifestAsync(manifestName).join();
                actions.deleteFleetAsync(fleetid).join();
                actions.deleteSignalCatalogAsync(signalCatalogName).join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    // Handle the case where the resource is not found.
                    logger.error("The resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                } else if (cause instanceof RuntimeException) {
                    // Handle other runtime exceptions.
```

```
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
 cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    // Catch any other unexpected exceptions.
                    logger.error("An unknown error occurred.", cause);
                }
                return;
            }

            logger.info(DASHES);
            logger.info(
                    """
                    Thank you for checking out the AWS IoT Fleetwise Service Use
 demo. We hope you
                    learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today.
                    For more AWS code examples, have a look at:
                    https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-
library.html
                    """);
            logger.info(DASHES);
        } else {
            logger.info("The AWS resources will not be deleted.");
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS IoT FleetWise SDK methods.

```
public class FleetwiseActions {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(FleetwiseActions.class);
    private static IoTFleetWiseAsyncClient ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient;

    private static IoTFleetWiseAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                    .maxConcurrency(100)
                    .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                    .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                    .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                    .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                    .build();

            ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient = IoTFleetWiseAsyncClient.builder()
                    .httpClient(httpClient)
                    .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                    .build();
        }
        return ioTFleetWiseAsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Creates a signal catalog.
     *
     * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon Resource
 Name (ARN) of the created signal catalog
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createSignalCatalogAsync(String
 signalCatalogName) {
        return deleteSignalCatalogIfExistsAsync(signalCatalogName)
                .thenCompose(ignored -> delayAsync(2000)) // Wait for 2 seconds
                .thenCompose(ignored -> {
```

```
                    List<Node> nodes = List.of(
                            Node.builder().branch(
                                    Branch.builder()
                                            .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle")
                                            .description("Root branch")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().branch(
                                    Branch.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain")
                                            .description("Powertrain branch")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().sensor(
                                    Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                                            .description("Engine RPM")
                                            .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                            .unit("rpm")
                                            .build()
                            ).build(),
                            Node.builder().sensor(
                                    Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                                            .description("Vehicle Speed")
                                            .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                            .unit("km/h")
                                            .build()
                            ).build()
                    );

                    CreateSignalCatalogRequest request =
CreateSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                            .name(signalCatalogName)
                            .nodes(nodes)
                            .build();

                    CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

                    getAsyncClient().createSignalCatalog(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
```

```
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error creating the catalog", cause));
                                    }
                                } else {
                                    result.complete(response.arn());
                                }
                            });

                    return result;
                });
    }

    /**
     * Delays the execution of the current thread asynchronously for the specified
duration.
     *
     * @param millis the duration of the delay in milliseconds
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes after the specified delay
     */
    private static CompletableFuture<Void> delayAsync(long millis) {
        return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            try {
                Thread.sleep(millis);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                throw new CompletionException("Sleep interrupted", e);
            }
        });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified signal catalog.
     *
     * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation.
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSignalCatalogIfExistsAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
```

```
        DeleteSignalCatalogRequest request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                .name(signalCatalogName)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteSignalCatalog(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw new CompletionException(new
RuntimeException("Signal Catalog not found: " + signalCatalogName));
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete signal catalog:
" + signalCatalogName, cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new decoder manifest.
     *
     * @param name             the name of the decoder manifest
     * @param modelManifestArn the ARN of the model manifest
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created decoder manifest
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createDecoderManifestAsync(String name, String
modelManifestArn) {
        String interfaceId = "can0";
        NetworkInterface networkInterface = NetworkInterface.builder()
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(NetworkInterfaceType.CAN_INTERFACE)
                .canInterface(CanInterface.builder()
                        .name("canInterface0")
                        .protocolName("CAN")
                        .protocolVersion("1.0")
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM decoder.
        SignalDecoder engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
```

```
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(100)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(0)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed decoder.
        SignalDecoder vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(101)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(16)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        CreateDecoderManifestRequest request =
CreateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .modelManifestArn(modelManifestArn)
                .networkInterfaces(List.of(networkInterface))
                .signalDecoders(List.of(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder))
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().createDecoderManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
```

```
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof DecoderManifestValidationException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signal decoders with validation errors: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create decoder manifest: " + exception.getMessage(),
exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a decoder manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder manifest
has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
        return
getAsyncClient().deleteDecoderManifest(DeleteDecoderManifestRequest.builder().name(name).bu
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the decoder
manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Deletes a vehicle with the specified name.
     *
     * @param vecName the name of the vehicle to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has been
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteVehicleAsync(String vecName) {
        DeleteVehicleRequest request = DeleteVehicleRequest.builder()
                .vehicleName(vecName)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteVehicle(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the vehicle: "
+ cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }


    /**
     * Updates the model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to update
     */
    public void updateModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        UpdateModelManifestRequest request = UpdateModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().updateModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to update model
manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Updates the decoder manifest with the given name.
     *
     * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to update
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the update operation
is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> updateDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
        UpdateDecoderManifestRequest request =
UpdateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().updateDecoderManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to update decoder
manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new vehicle in the system.
     *
     * @param vecName     the name of the vehicle to be created
     * @param manifestArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the model manifest for
the vehicle
     * @param decArn      the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the decoder manifest for
the vehicle
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has been
created, or throws a
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createVehicleAsync(String vecName, String
manifestArn, String decArn) {
       CreateVehicleRequest request = CreateVehicleRequest.builder()
               .vehicleName(vecName)
               .modelManifestArn(manifestArn)
               .decoderManifestArn(decArn)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().createVehicle(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception instanceof CompletionException ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                       } else {
                           result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to create vehicle: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                       }
                   } else {
                       logger.info("Vehicle '{}' created successfully.", vecName);
                       result.complete(null); // mark future as complete
                   }
               });

       return result;
   }


   /**
    * Waits for the decoder manifest to become active.
    *
    * @param decoderName the name of the decoder to wait for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder manifest
becomes active, or exceptionally if an error occurs or the manifest becomes invalid
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForDecoderManifestActiveAsync(String
decoderName) {
       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

       ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
```

```
        AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
        AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

        logger.info(" Elapsed: 0s | Decoder Status: DRAFT");

        final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
            @Override
            public void run() {
                int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

                // Check status every 5 seconds
                if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                    GetDecoderManifestRequest request =
GetDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                            .name(decoderName)
                            .build();

                    getAsyncClient().getDecoderManifest(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException)
{
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling decoder manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                    }
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status:
ACTIVE", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
```

```
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status:
INVALID", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\r# Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status:
{}", elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }



    /**
     * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
     *
     * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForModelManifestActiveAsync(String
manifestName) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
        AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
        AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

        logger.info("Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT");

        final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
```

```
            @Override
            public void run() {
                int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

                // Only check status every 5 seconds
                if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                    GetModelManifestRequest request =
GetModelManifestRequest.builder()
                            .name(manifestName)
                            .build();

                    getAsyncClient().getModelManifest(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException)
{
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling model manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                    }
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: ACTIVE",
elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: INVALID",
elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
```

```
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}",
elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }



    /**
     * Fetches the details of a vehicle.
     *
     * @param vehicleName the name of the vehicle to fetch details for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle details
have been fetched
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getVehicleDetailsAsync(String vehicleName) {
        GetVehicleRequest request = GetVehicleRequest.builder()
                .vehicleName(vehicleName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().getVehicle(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception instanceof CompletionException ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(cause); // don't rewrap
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to fetch vehicle details: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
```

```
                        }
                    } else {
                        Map<String, Object> details = new HashMap<>();
                        details.put("vehicleName", response.vehicleName());
                        details.put("arn", response.arn());
                        details.put("modelManifestArn",
response.modelManifestArn());
                        details.put("decoderManifestArn",
response.decoderManifestArn());
                        details.put("attributes", response.attributes());
                        details.put("creationTime",
response.creationTime().toString());
                        details.put("lastModificationTime",
response.lastModificationTime().toString());

                        logger.info("Vehicle Details:");
                        details.forEach((key, value) -> logger.info("• {} : {}",
key, value));

                        result.complete(null); // mark as successful
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }


    /**
     * Creates an IoT Thing if it does not already exist.
     *
     * @param thingName the name of the IoT Thing to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the IoT Thing has
been created or if it already exists
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> createThingIfNotExistsAsync(String thingName) {
        IotAsyncClient iotClient = IotAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        CreateThingRequest request = CreateThingRequest.builder()
                .thingName(thingName)
                .build();

        return iotClient.createThing(request)
```

```
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        if (exception instanceof ResourceAlreadyExistsException) {
                            logger.info(" IoT Thing already exists: " + thingName);
                        } else {
                            throw new CompletionException("Failed to create IoT
Thing: " + thingName, exception);
                        }
                    } else {
                        logger.info("IoT Thing created: " + response.thingName());
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the model manifest
has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        DeleteModelManifestRequest request = DeleteModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteModelManifest(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the model
manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Deletes a signal catalog.
    *
    * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the signal catalog is
deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSignalCatalogAsync(String name) {
       DeleteSignalCatalogRequest request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
               .name(name)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteSignalCatalog(request)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                       }
                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the signal
catalog: " + cause);
                   }
                   logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                   return null;
               });
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves a list of all nodes in the specified signal catalog.
    *
    * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to retrieve nodes for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a {@link
List} of {@link Node} objects
    * representing all the nodes in the specified signal catalog
    */
   public CompletableFuture<List<Node>> listSignalCatalogNodeAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
       ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest request =
ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest.builder()
               .name(signalCatalogName)
               .build();
```

```
        List<Node> allNodes = new ArrayList<>();

        return getAsyncClient().listSignalCatalogNodesPaginator(request)
                .subscribe(response -> allNodes.addAll(response.nodes()))
                .thenApply(v -> allNodes);
    }



    /**
     * Creates a model manifest.
     *
     * @param name             the name of the model manifest to create
     * @param signalCatalogArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog
     * @param nodes            a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created model manifest
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createModelManifestAsync(String name,
                                                              String
signalCatalogArn,
                                                              List<Node> nodes) {
        // Extract the fully qualified names (FQNs) from each Node in the provided
list.
        List<String> fqnList = nodes.stream()
                .map(node -> {
                    if (node.sensor() != null) {
                        return node.sensor().fullyQualifiedName();
                    } else if (node.branch() != null) {
                        return node.branch().fullyQualifiedName();
                    } else if (node.attribute() != null) {
                        return node.attribute().fullyQualifiedName();
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("Unsupported node type");
                    }
                })
                .toList();

        CreateModelManifestRequest request = CreateModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .signalCatalogArn(signalCatalogArn)
                .nodes(fqnList)
                .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().createModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof InvalidSignalsException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signals that aren't valid: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create model manifest: " + exception.getMessage(),
exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
     *
     * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteFleetAsync(String fleetId) {
        DeleteFleetRequest request = DeleteFleetRequest.builder()
                .fleetId(fleetId)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteFleet(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
```

```
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the fleet: " +
cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", fleetId);
                    return null;
                });
    }



    /**
     * Creates a new fleet.
     *
     * @param catARN  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to
associate with the fleet
     * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the created
fleet
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createFleetAsync(String catARN, String fleetId)
{
        CreateFleetRequest fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest.builder()
                .fleetId(fleetId)
                .signalCatalogArn(catARN)
                .description("Built using the AWS For Java V2")
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().createFleet(fleetRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("An
unexpected error occurred", cause));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.id());
                    }
```

```
                });

        return result;
    }
}
```

Actions

`createDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `createDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new decoder manifest.
     *
     * @param name             the name of the decoder manifest
     * @param modelManifestArn the ARN of the model manifest
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created decoder manifest
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createDecoderManifestAsync(String name, String
modelManifestArn) {
        String interfaceId = "can0";
        NetworkInterface networkInterface = NetworkInterface.builder()
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(NetworkInterfaceType.CAN_INTERFACE)
                .canInterface(CanInterface.builder()
                        .name("canInterface0")
                        .protocolName("CAN")
                        .protocolVersion("1.0")
                        .build())
                .build();
```

```
        // Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM decoder.
        SignalDecoder engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(100)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(0)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        // Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed decoder.
        SignalDecoder vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder.builder()
                .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                .interfaceId(interfaceId)
                .type(SignalDecoderType.CAN_SIGNAL)
                .canSignal(CanSignal.builder()
                        .messageId(101)
                        .isBigEndian(false)
                        .isSigned(false)
                        .startBit(16)
                        .length(16)
                        .factor(1.0)
                        .offset(0.0)
                        .build())
                .build();

        CreateDecoderManifestRequest request =
CreateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .modelManifestArn(modelManifestArn)
                .networkInterfaces(List.of(networkInterface))
                .signalDecoders(List.of(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder))
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        getAsyncClient().createDecoderManifest(request)
```

```
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof DecoderManifestValidationException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signal decoders with validation errors: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create decoder manifest: " + exception.getMessage(),
exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see createDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`createFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `createFleet`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new fleet.
```

```
    *
    * @param catARN  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to
associate with the fleet
    * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the created
fleet
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createFleetAsync(String catARN, String fleetId)
{
       CreateFleetRequest fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest.builder()
               .fleetId(fleetId)
               .signalCatalogArn(catARN)
               .description("Built using the AWS For Java V2")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().createFleet(fleetRequest)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                       } else {
                           result.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("An
unexpected error occurred", cause));
                       }
                   } else {
                       result.complete(response.id());
                   }
               });

       return result;
   }
```

- For API details, see createFleet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`createModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `createModelManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a model manifest.
    *
    * @param name             the name of the model manifest to create
    * @param signalCatalogArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog
    * @param nodes            a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the
created model manifest
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createModelManifestAsync(String name,
                                                             String
signalCatalogArn,
                                                             List<Node> nodes) {
       // Extract the fully qualified names (FQNs) from each Node in the provided
list.
       List<String> fqnList = nodes.stream()
               .map(node -> {
                   if (node.sensor() != null) {
                       return node.sensor().fullyQualifiedName();
                   } else if (node.branch() != null) {
                       return node.branch().fullyQualifiedName();
                   } else if (node.attribute() != null) {
                       return node.attribute().fullyQualifiedName();
                   } else {
                       throw new RuntimeException("Unsupported node type");
                   }
               })
               .toList();

       CreateModelManifestRequest request = CreateModelManifestRequest.builder()
               .name(name)
               .signalCatalogArn(signalCatalogArn)
               .nodes(fqnList)
```

```
                .build();


        CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
        getAsyncClient().createModelManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                        if (cause instanceof InvalidSignalsException) {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("The request contains signals that aren't valid: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause));
                        } else {
                            result.completeExceptionally(new
CompletionException("Failed to create model manifest: " + exception.getMessage(),
exception));
                        }
                    } else {
                        result.complete(response.arn()); // Complete successfully
with the ARN
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see createModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`createSignalCatalog`

The following code example shows how to use `createSignalCatalog`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a signal catalog.
    *
    * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon Resource
Name (ARN) of the created signal catalog
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSignalCatalogAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
       return deleteSignalCatalogIfExistsAsync(signalCatalogName)
               .thenCompose(ignored -> delayAsync(2000)) // Wait for 2 seconds
               .thenCompose(ignored -> {
                   List<Node> nodes = List.of(
                           Node.builder().branch(
                                   Branch.builder()
                                           .fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle")
                                           .description("Root branch")
                                           .build()
                           ).build(),
                           Node.builder().branch(
                                   Branch.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain")
                                           .description("Powertrain branch")
                                           .build()
                           ).build(),
                           Node.builder().sensor(
                                   Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM")
                                           .description("Engine RPM")
                                           .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                           .unit("rpm")
                                           .build()
                           ).build(),
                           Node.builder().sensor(
                                   Sensor.builder()

.fullyQualifiedName("Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed")
                                           .description("Vehicle Speed")
                                           .dataType(NodeDataType.DOUBLE)
                                           .unit("km/h")
```

```
                                                .build()
                            ).build()
                    );

                    CreateSignalCatalogRequest request =
CreateSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                            .name(signalCatalogName)
                            .nodes(nodes)
                            .build();

                    CompletableFuture<String> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

                    getAsyncClient().createSignalCatalog(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error creating the catalog", cause));
                                    }
                                } else {
                                    result.complete(response.arn());
                                }
                            });

                    return result;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see [createSignalCatalog](#) in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`createVehicle`

The following code example shows how to use `createVehicle`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new vehicle in the system.
    *
    * @param vecName     the name of the vehicle to be created
    * @param manifestArn the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the model manifest for
the vehicle
    * @param decArn      the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the decoder manifest for
the vehicle
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has been
created, or throws a
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createVehicleAsync(String vecName, String
manifestArn, String decArn) {
       CreateVehicleRequest request = CreateVehicleRequest.builder()
               .vehicleName(vecName)
               .modelManifestArn(manifestArn)
               .decoderManifestArn(decArn)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().createVehicle(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception instanceof CompletionException ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           result.completeExceptionally(cause);
                       } else {
                           result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to create vehicle: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                       }
                   } else {
```

```
                        logger.info("Vehicle '{}' created successfully.", vecName);
                        result.complete(null); // mark future as complete
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see createVehicle in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`deleteDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a decoder manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder manifest
has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
        return
getAsyncClient().deleteDecoderManifest(DeleteDecoderManifestRequest.builder().name(name).bu
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
```

```
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the decoder
manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`deleteFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteFleet`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
     *
     * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteFleetAsync(String fleetId) {
        DeleteFleetRequest request = DeleteFleetRequest.builder()
                .fleetId(fleetId)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteFleet(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
```

```
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the fleet: " +
cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", fleetId);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteFleet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`deleteModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteModelManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the model manifest
has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        DeleteModelManifestRequest request = DeleteModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteModelManifest(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
```

```
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the model
manifest: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`deleteSignalCatalog`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteSignalCatalog`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a signal catalog.
     *
     * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the signal catalog is
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSignalCatalogAsync(String name) {
        DeleteSignalCatalogRequest request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteSignalCatalog(request)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
```

```
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the signal
catalog: " + cause);
                    }
                    logger.info("{} was successfully deleted", name);
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`deleteVehicle`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteVehicle`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a vehicle with the specified name.
     *
     * @param vecName the name of the vehicle to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle has been
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteVehicleAsync(String vecName) {
        DeleteVehicleRequest request = DeleteVehicleRequest.builder()
                .vehicleName(vecName)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteVehicle(request)
```

```
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete the vehicle: "
+ cause);
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see deleteVehicle in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`getDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `getDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Waits for the decoder manifest to become active.
     *
     * @param decoderName the name of the decoder to wait for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the decoder manifest
becomes active, or exceptionally if an error occurs or the manifest becomes invalid
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForDecoderManifestActiveAsync(String
decoderName) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

        ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
```

```
        AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
        AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

        logger.info(" Elapsed: 0s | Decoder Status: DRAFT");

        final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
            @Override
            public void run() {
                int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

                // Check status every 5 seconds
                if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                    GetDecoderManifestRequest request =
GetDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
                            .name(decoderName)
                            .build();

                    getAsyncClient().getDecoderManifest(request)
                            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                                if (exception != null) {
                                    Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException)
{
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                    } else {
                                        result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling decoder manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                    }
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status:
ACTIVE", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
```

```
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status:
INVALID", elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Decoder manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\r# Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status:
{}", elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\r Elapsed: {}s | Decoder Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see getDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`getModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `getModelManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
    *
    * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForModelManifestActiveAsync(String
manifestName) {
       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

       ScheduledExecutorService scheduler =
Executors.newSingleThreadScheduledExecutor();
       AtomicInteger secondsElapsed = new AtomicInteger(0);
       AtomicReference<ManifestStatus> lastStatus = new
AtomicReference<>(ManifestStatus.DRAFT);

       logger.info("Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT");

       final Runnable pollTask = new Runnable() {
           @Override
           public void run() {
               int elapsed = secondsElapsed.incrementAndGet();

               // Only check status every 5 seconds
               if (elapsed % 5 == 0) {
                   GetModelManifestRequest request =
GetModelManifestRequest.builder()
                           .name(manifestName)
                           .build();

                   getAsyncClient().getModelManifest(request)
                           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                               if (exception != null) {
                                   Throwable cause = exception instanceof
CompletionException ? exception.getCause() : exception;

                                   scheduler.shutdown();
                                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException)
{
                                       result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest not found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                                   } else {
                                       result.completeException(new
RuntimeException("Error while polling model manifest status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception));
                                   }
```

```
                                    return;
                                }

                                ManifestStatus status = response.status();
                                lastStatus.set(status);

                                if (status == ManifestStatus.ACTIVE) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: ACTIVE",
elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.complete(null);
                                } else if (status == ManifestStatus.INVALID) {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: INVALID",
elapsed);
                                    scheduler.shutdown();
                                    result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID. Cannot proceed."));
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}",
elapsed, status);
                                }
                            });
                } else {
                    logger.info("\rElapsed: {}s | Status: {}", elapsed,
lastStatus.get());
                }
            }
        };

        // Start the task with an initial delay of 1 second, and repeat every second
        scheduler.scheduleAtFixedRate(pollTask, 1, 1, TimeUnit.SECONDS);
        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see getModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`getVehicle`

The following code example shows how to use `getVehicle`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Fetches the details of a vehicle.
    *
    * @param vehicleName the name of the vehicle to fetch details for
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the vehicle details
have been fetched
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getVehicleDetailsAsync(String vehicleName) {
       GetVehicleRequest request = GetVehicleRequest.builder()
               .vehicleName(vehicleName)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> result = new CompletableFuture<>();

       getAsyncClient().getVehicle(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception instanceof CompletionException ?
exception.getCause() : exception;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           result.completeExceptionally(cause); // don't rewrap
                       } else {
                           result.completeExceptionally(new
RuntimeException("Failed to fetch vehicle details: " + cause.getMessage(), cause));
                       }
                   } else {
                       Map<String, Object> details = new HashMap<>();
                       details.put("vehicleName", response.vehicleName());
                       details.put("arn", response.arn());
                       details.put("modelManifestArn",
response.modelManifestArn());
```

```
                        details.put("decoderManifestArn",
response.decoderManifestArn());
                        details.put("attributes", response.attributes());
                        details.put("creationTime",
response.creationTime().toString());
                        details.put("lastModificationTime",
response.lastModificationTime().toString());

                        logger.info("Vehicle Details:");
                        details.forEach((key, value) -> logger.info("• {} : {}",
key, value));

                        result.complete(null); // mark as successful
                    }
                });

        return result;
    }
```

- For API details, see getVehicle in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`listSignalCatalogNodes`

The following code example shows how to use `listSignalCatalogNodes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves a list of all nodes in the specified signal catalog.
     *
     * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to retrieve nodes for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a {@link
List} of {@link Node} objects
     * representing all the nodes in the specified signal catalog
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<Node>> listSignalCatalogNodeAsync(String
signalCatalogName) {
        ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest request =
ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest.builder()
                .name(signalCatalogName)
                .build();

        List<Node> allNodes = new ArrayList<>();

        return getAsyncClient().listSignalCatalogNodesPaginator(request)
                .subscribe(response -> allNodes.addAll(response.nodes()))
                .thenApply(v -> allNodes);
    }
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogNodes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`updateDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `updateDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the decoder manifest with the given name.
     *
     * @param name the name of the decoder manifest to update
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the update operation
is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> updateDecoderManifestAsync(String name) {
        UpdateDecoderManifestRequest request =
UpdateDecoderManifestRequest.builder()
```

```
                .name(name)
                .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().updateDecoderManifest(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to update decoder
manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see updateDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`updateModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `updateModelManifest`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the model manifest.
     *
     * @param name the name of the model manifest to update
     */
    public void updateModelManifestAsync(String name) {
        UpdateModelManifestRequest request = UpdateModelManifestRequest.builder()
                .name(name)
                .status(ManifestStatus.ACTIVE)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().updateModelManifest(request)
```

```
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to update model
 manifest: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see updateModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS IoT SiteWise examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS IoT SiteWise.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT SiteWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT SiteWise.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class HelloSitewise {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloSitewise.class);
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
         fetchAssetModels();
    }

    /**
     * Fetches asset models using the provided {@link IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient}.
     */
    public static void fetchAssetModels() {
        IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient siteWiseAsyncClient =
 IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient.create();
        ListAssetModelsRequest assetModelsRequest = ListAssetModelsRequest.builder()
            .assetModelTypes(AssetModelType.ASSET_MODEL)
            .build();

        // Asynchronous paginator - process paginated results.
        ListAssetModelsPublisher listModelsPaginator =
 siteWiseAsyncClient.listAssetModelsPaginator(assetModelsRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = listModelsPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.assetModelSummaries().forEach(assetSummary ->
                logger.info("Asset Model Name: {} ", assetSummary.name())
            );
        });

        // Wait for the asynchronous operation to complete
        future.join();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the property ID values.
- Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the value of the AWS IoT SiteWise Asset property.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Describe the AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT SiteWise features.

```
public class SitewiseScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SitewiseScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    private static final String ROLES_STACK = "RoleSitewise";

    static SitewiseActions sitewiseActions = new SitewiseActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Throwable {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String contactEmail = "user@mydomain.com"; // Change email address.
        String assetModelName = "MyAssetModel1";
        String assetName = "MyAsset1" ;
        String portalName = "MyPortal1" ;
```

```
        String gatewayName = "MyGateway1" ;
        String myThing =  "MyThing1" ;

        logger.info("""
            AWS IoT SiteWise is a fully managed software-as-a-service (SaaS) that
            makes it easy to collect, store, organize, and monitor data from
industrial equipment and processes.
            It is designed to help industrial and manufacturing organizations
collect data from their equipment and
            processes, and use that data to make informed decisions about their
operations.

            One of the key features of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to connect to
a wide range of industrial
            equipment and systems, including programmable logic controllers (PLCs),
sensors, and other
            industrial devices. It can collect data from these devices and organize
it into a unified data model,
            making it easier to analyze and gain insights from the data. AWS IoT
SiteWise also provides tools for
            visualizing the data, setting up alarms and alerts, and generating
reports.

            Another key feature of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to scale to
handle large volumes of data.
            It can collect and store data from thousands of devices and process
millions of data points per second,
            making it suitable for large-scale industrial operations. Additionally,
AWS IoT SiteWise is designed
            to be secure and compliant, with features like role-based access
controls, data encryption,
            and integration with other AWS services for additional security and
compliance features.

            Let's get started...
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        try {
            runScenario(assetModelName, assetName, portalName, contactEmail,
gatewayName, myThing);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
```

```
            logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void runScenario(String assetModelName, String assetName,  String
portalName, String contactEmail, String gatewayName, String myThing) throws
Throwable {
        logger.info("Use AWS CloudFormation to create an IAM role that is required
for this scenario.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);
        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputsAsync(ROLES_STACK).join();
        String iamRole = stackOutputs.get("SitewiseRoleArn");
        logger.info("The ARN of the IAM role is {}",iamRole);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an AWS SiteWise Asset Model");
        logger.info("""
             An AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model is a way to represent the physical
assets, such as equipment,
             processes, and systems, that exist in an industrial environment. This
model provides a structured and
             hierarchical representation of these assets, allowing users to define
the relationships and properties
             of each asset.

             This scenario creates two asset model properties: temperature and
humidity.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String assetModelId = null;
        try {
            CreateAssetModelResponse response =
sitewiseActions.createAssetModelAsync(assetModelName).join();
            assetModelId = response.assetModelId();
            logger.info("Asset Model successfully created. Asset Model ID: {}. ",
assetModelId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceAlreadyExistsException) {
                try {
                    assetModelId =
sitewiseActions.getAssetModelIdAsync(assetModelName).join();
```

```
                    logger.info("The Asset Model {} already exists. The id of the
existing model is {}. Moving on...", assetModelName, assetModelId);
                } catch (CompletionException cex) {
                    logger.error("Exception thrown acquiring the asset model id:
{}", cex.getCause().getCause(), cex);
                    return;
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
                return;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset");
        logger.info("""
             The IoT SiteWise model that we just created defines the structure and
metadata for your physical assets.
             Now we create an asset from the asset model.

            """);
        logger.info("Let's wait 30 seconds for the asset to be ready.");
        countdown(30);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String assetId;
        try {
            CreateAssetResponse response =
sitewiseActions.createAssetAsync(assetName, assetModelId).join();
            assetId = response.assetId();
            logger.info("Asset created with ID: {}", assetId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The asset model id was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Retrieve the property ID values");
        logger.info("""
             To send data to an asset, we need to get the property ID values. In
this scenario, we access the
             temperature and humidity property ID values.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        Map<String, String>  propertyIds = null;
        try {
            propertyIds = sitewiseActions.getPropertyIds(assetModelId).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IoTSiteWiseException) {
                logger.error("IoTSiteWiseException occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
            return;
        }
        String humPropId =  propertyIds.get("Humidity");
        logger.info("The Humidity property Id is {}", humPropId);
        String tempPropId = propertyIds.get("Temperature");
        logger.info("The Temperature property Id is {}", tempPropId);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset");
        logger.info("""
            By sending data to an IoT SiteWise Asset, you can aggregate data from
            multiple sources, normalize the data into a standard format, and store
it in a
            centralized location. This makes it easier to analyze and gain insights
from the data.

            In this example, we generate sample temperature and humidity data and
send it to the AWS IoT SiteWise asset.
```

```
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            sitewiseActions.sendDataToSiteWiseAsync(assetId, tempPropId,
humPropId).join();
            logger.info("Data sent successfully.");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The AWS resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Retrieve the value of the IoT SiteWise Asset property");
        logger.info("""
            IoT SiteWise is an AWS service that allows you to collect, process, and
analyze industrial data
            from connected equipment and sensors. One of the key benefits of reading
an IoT SiteWise property
            is the ability to gain valuable insights from your industrial data.

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            Double assetVal = sitewiseActions.getAssetPropValueAsync(tempPropId,
assetId).join();
            logger.info("The property name is: {}", "Temperature");
            logger.info("The value of this property is: {}", assetVal);

            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

            assetVal = sitewiseActions.getAssetPropValueAsync(humPropId,
assetId).join();
            logger.info("The property name is: {}", "Humidity");
            logger.info("The value of this property is: {}", assetVal);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    logger.info("The AWS resource was not found: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
                return;
            }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Create an IoT SiteWise Portal");
        logger.info("""
             An IoT SiteWise Portal allows you to aggregate data from multiple
industrial sources,
             such as sensors, equipment, and control systems, into a centralized
platform.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String portalId;
        try {
            portalId = sitewiseActions.createPortalAsync(portalName, iamRole,
contactEmail).join();
            logger.info("Portal created successfully. Portal ID {}", portalId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IoTSiteWiseException siteWiseEx) {
                logger.error("IoT SiteWise error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}",
                        siteWiseEx.getMessage(),
siteWiseEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), siteWiseEx);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("7. Describe the Portal");
        logger.info("""
             In this step, we get a description of the portal and display the portal
URL.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String portalUrl = sitewiseActions.describePortalAsync(portalId).join();
            logger.info("Portal URL: {}", portalUrl);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}",
                        notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Create an IoT SiteWise Gateway");
        logger.info(
            """
                IoT SiteWise Gateway serves as the bridge between industrial
equipment, sensors, and the
                cloud-based IoT SiteWise service. It is responsible for securely
collecting, processing, and
                transmitting data from various industrial assets to the IoT SiteWise
platform,
                enabling real-time monitoring, analysis, and optimization of
industrial operations.

                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String gatewayId = "";
        try {
            gatewayId = sitewiseActions.createGatewayAsync(gatewayName,
myThing).join();
```

```
            logger.info("Gateway creation completed successfully. id is {}",
gatewayId );
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IoTSiteWiseException siteWiseEx) {
                logger.error("IoT SiteWise error occurred: Error message: {}, Error
code {}",
                        siteWiseEx.getMessage(),
siteWiseEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), siteWiseEx);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("9. Describe the IoT SiteWise Gateway");
         waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            sitewiseActions.describeGatewayAsync(gatewayId)
                .thenAccept(response -> {
                    logger.info("Gateway Name: {}", response.gatewayName());
                    logger.info("Gateway ARN: {}", response.gatewayArn());
                    logger.info("Gateway Platform: {}", response.gatewayPlatform());
                    logger.info("Gateway Creation Date: {}",
response.creationDate());
                }).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error message:
{}, Error code {}",
                        notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("10. Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets");
        logger.info(
            """
            Before you can delete the Asset Model, you must delete the assets.

            """);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the IoT SiteWise Assets? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the SiteWise assets.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                sitewiseActions.deletePortalAsync(portalId).join();
                logger.info("Portal {} was deleted successfully.", portalId);

            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }

            try {
                sitewiseActions.deleteGatewayAsync(gatewayId).join();
                logger.info("Gateway {} was deleted successfully.", gatewayId);
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
```

```
            try {
                sitewiseActions.deleteAssetAsync(assetId).join();
                logger.info("Request to delete asset {} sent successfully",
assetId);
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
            logger.info("Let's wait 1 minute for the asset to be deleted.");
            countdown(60);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            logger.info("Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model");
            try {
                sitewiseActions.deleteAssetModelAsync(assetModelId).join();
                logger.info("Asset model deleted successfully.");
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException notFoundException) {
                    logger.error("A ResourceNotFoundException occurred: Error
message: {}, Error code {}",
                            notFoundException.getMessage(),
notFoundException.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), notFoundException);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage());
                }
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        } else {
            logger.info("The resources will not be deleted.");
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(ROLES_STACK);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS IoT SiteWise Scenario");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    public static void countdown(int totalSeconds) throws InterruptedException {
        for (int i = totalSeconds; i >= 0; i--) {
            int displayMinutes = i / 60;
            int displaySeconds = i % 60;
            System.out.printf("\r%02d:%02d", displayMinutes, displaySeconds);
            Thread.sleep(1000); // Wait for 1 second
        }
        System.out.println(); // Move to the next line after countdown
        logger.info("Countdown complete!");
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for AWS IoT SiteWise SDK methods.

```
public class SitewiseActions {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SitewiseActions.class);

    private static IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient;
```

```
    private static IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient = IoTSiteWiseAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return ioTSiteWiseAsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Creates an asset model.
     *
     * @param name the name of the asset model to create.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
     *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetModelResponse> createAssetModelAsync(String
name) {
```

```
        PropertyType humidity = PropertyType.builder()
            .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
            .build();

        PropertyType temperaturePropertyType = PropertyType.builder()
            .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
            .build();

        AssetModelPropertyDefinition temperatureProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
            .name("Temperature")
            .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
            .type(temperaturePropertyType)
            .build();

        AssetModelPropertyDefinition humidityProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
            .name("Humidity")
            .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
            .type(humidity)
            .build();

        CreateAssetModelRequest createAssetModelRequest =
CreateAssetModelRequest.builder()
            .assetModelName(name)
            .assetModelDescription("This is my asset model")
            .assetModelProperties(temperatureProperty, humidityProperty)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createAssetModel(createAssetModelRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create asset model: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Creates an asset with the specified name and asset model Id.
     *
     * @param assetName    the name of the asset to create.
     * @param assetModelId the Id of the asset model to associate with the asset.
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
    *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetResponse> createAssetAsync(String assetName,
String assetModelId) {
       CreateAssetRequest createAssetRequest = CreateAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .assetDescription("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
           .assetName(assetName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createAsset(createAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to create asset: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Sends data to the SiteWise service.
    *
    * @param assetId        the ID of the asset to which the data will be sent.
    * @param tempPropertyId the ID of the temperature property.
    * @param humidityPropId the ID of the humidity property.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse} result. The
    *         calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the result or
exception by calling
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
```

```
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse>
sendDataToSiteWiseAsync(String assetId, String tempPropertyId, String
humidityPropId) {
       Map<String, Double> sampleData = generateSampleData();
       long timestamp = Instant.now().toEpochMilli();

       TimeInNanos time = TimeInNanos.builder()
           .timeInSeconds(timestamp / 1000)
           .offsetInNanos((int) ((timestamp % 1000) * 1000000))
           .build();

       BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest request =
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
           .entries(Arrays.asList(
               PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                   .entryId("entry-3")
                   .assetId(assetId)
                   .propertyId(tempPropertyId)
                   .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                       AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                           .value(Variant.builder()
                               .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Temperature"))
                               .build())
                           .timestamp(time)
                           .build()
                   ))
                   .build(),
               PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                   .entryId("entry-4")
                   .assetId(assetId)
                   .propertyId(humidityPropId)
                   .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                       AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                           .value(Variant.builder()
                               .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Humidity"))
                               .build())
                           .timestamp(time)
                           .build()
                   ))
```

```
                    .build()
            ))
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().batchPutAssetPropertyValue(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An exception occurred: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Fetches the value of an asset property.
     *
     * @param propId  the ID of the asset property to fetch.
     * @param assetId the ID of the asset to fetch the property value for.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Double} result.
The calling code can attach
     *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Double> getAssetPropValueAsync(String propId, String
assetId) {
        GetAssetPropertyValueRequest assetPropertyValueRequest =
GetAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
                .propertyId(propId)
                .assetId(assetId)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getAssetPropertyValue(assetPropertyValueRequest)
                .handle((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property value:
{}.", exception.getCause().getMessage());
```

```
                        throw (CompletionException) exception;
                    }
                    return response.propertyValue().value().doubleValue();
                });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the property IDs associated with a specific asset model.
     *
     * @param assetModelId the ID of the asset model that defines the properties.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Map} result that
associates the property name to the
     *         propert ID. The calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the
result or exception by calling
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Map<String, String>> getPropertyIds(String
assetModelId) {
        ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest modelPropertiesRequest =
ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest.builder().assetModelId(assetModelId).build();
        return getAsyncClient().listAssetModelProperties(modelPropertiesRequest)
            .handle((response, throwable) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    return response.assetModelPropertySummaries().stream()
                        .collect(Collectors
                            .toMap(AssetModelPropertySummary::name,
AssetModelPropertySummary::id));
                } else {
                    logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property IDs: {}.",
throwable.getCause().getMessage());
                    throw (CompletionException) throwable;
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an asset.
```

```
    *
    * @param assetId the ID of the asset to be deleted.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
    *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetResponse> deleteAssetAsync(String assetId) {
       DeleteAssetRequest deleteAssetRequest = DeleteAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetId(assetId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAsset(deleteAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An error occurred deleting asset with id: {}",
assetId);
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes an Asset Model with the specified ID.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the Asset Model to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
```

```
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetModelResponse> deleteAssetModelAsync(String
assetModelId) {
       DeleteAssetModelRequest deleteAssetModelRequest =
DeleteAssetModelRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAssetModel(deleteAssetModelRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete asset model with ID:{}.",
exception.getMessage());
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Creates a new IoT SiteWise portal.
    *
    * @param portalName   the name of the portal to create.
    * @param iamRole      the IAM role ARN to use for the portal.
    * @param contactEmail the email address of the portal contact.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the portal ID. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createPortalAsync(String portalName, String
iamRole, String contactEmail) {
       CreatePortalRequest createPortalRequest = CreatePortalRequest.builder()
           .portalName(portalName)
           .portalDescription("This is my custom IoT SiteWise portal.")
           .portalContactEmail(contactEmail)
```

```
            .roleArn(iamRole)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createPortal(createPortalRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create portal: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                    throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                return response.portalId();
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a portal.
     *
     * @param portalId the ID of the portal to be deleted.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeletePortalResponse}. The calling code can attach
     *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeletePortalResponse> deletePortalAsync(String
portalId) {
        DeletePortalRequest deletePortalRequest = DeletePortalRequest.builder()
            .portalId(portalId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deletePortal(deletePortalRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to delete portal with ID: {}. Error: {}",
portalId, exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the asset model ID for the given asset model name.
     *
     * @param assetModelName the name of the asset model for the ID.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the asset model ID or null if the
     *         asset model cannot be found. The calling code can attach callbacks,
then handle the result or exception
     *         by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> getAssetModelIdAsync(String assetModelName) {
        ListAssetModelsRequest listAssetModelsRequest =
ListAssetModelsRequest.builder().build();
        return getAsyncClient().listAssetModels(listAssetModelsRequest)
                .handle((listAssetModelsResponse, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        logger.error("Failed to retrieve Asset Model ID: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                        throw (CompletionException) exception;
                    }
                    for (AssetModelSummary assetModelSummary :
listAssetModelsResponse.assetModelSummaries()) {
                        if (assetModelSummary.name().equals(assetModelName)) {
                            return assetModelSummary.id();
                        }
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves a portal's description.
     *
     * @param portalId the ID of the portal to describe.
```

```
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the portal's start URL
    *         (see: {@link DescribePortalResponse#portalStartUrl()}). The calling
code can attach callbacks, then handle the
    *         result or exception by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
{@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> describePortalAsync(String portalId) {
       DescribePortalRequest request = DescribePortalRequest.builder()
           .portalId(portalId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describePortal(request)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                  logger.error("An exception occurred retrieving the portal
description: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                  throw (CompletionException) exception;
               }
               return response.portalStartUrl();
           });
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new IoT Sitewise gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayName The name of the gateway to create.
    * @param myThing     The name of the core device thing to associate with the
gateway.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the gateways ID. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
```

```
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createGatewayAsync(String gatewayName, String
myThing) {
       GreengrassV2 gg = GreengrassV2.builder()
           .coreDeviceThingName(myThing)
           .build();

       GatewayPlatform platform = GatewayPlatform.builder()
           .greengrassV2(gg)
           .build();

       Map<String, String> tag = new HashMap<>();
       tag.put("Environment", "Production");

       CreateGatewayRequest createGatewayRequest = CreateGatewayRequest.builder()
           .gatewayName(gatewayName)
           .gatewayPlatform(platform)
           .tags(tag)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createGateway(createGatewayRequest)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Error creating the gateway.");
                   throw (CompletionException) exception;
               }
               logger.info("The ARN of the gateway is {}" ,
response.gatewayArn());
               return response.gatewayId();
           });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes the specified gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteGatewayResponse} result.. The calling code
```

```
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteGatewayResponse> deleteGatewayAsync(String
gatewayId) {
       DeleteGatewayRequest deleteGatewayRequest = DeleteGatewayRequest.builder()
           .gatewayId(gatewayId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteGateway(deleteGatewayRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete gateway: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }

   /**
    * Describes the specified gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to describe.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DescribeGatewayResponse} result. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
```

```
    public CompletableFuture<DescribeGatewayResponse> describeGatewayAsync(String
 gatewayId) {
        DescribeGatewayRequest request = DescribeGatewayRequest.builder()
            .gatewayId(gatewayId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeGateway(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An error occurred during the describeGateway
 method: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }

    private static Map<String, Double> generateSampleData() {
        Map<String, Double> data = new HashMap<>();
        data.put("Temperature", 23.5);
        data.put("Humidity", 65.0);
        return data;
    }
}
```

Actions

`BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Sends data to the SiteWise service.
     *
```

```
    * @param assetId        the ID of the asset to which the data will be sent.
    * @param tempPropertyId the ID of the temperature property.
    * @param humidityPropId the ID of the humidity property.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse} result. The
    *         calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the result or
exception by calling
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<BatchPutAssetPropertyValueResponse>
sendDataToSiteWiseAsync(String assetId, String tempPropertyId, String
humidityPropId) {
       Map<String, Double> sampleData = generateSampleData();
       long timestamp = Instant.now().toEpochMilli();

       TimeInNanos time = TimeInNanos.builder()
           .timeInSeconds(timestamp / 1000)
           .offsetInNanos((int) ((timestamp % 1000) * 1000000))
           .build();

       BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest request =
BatchPutAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
           .entries(Arrays.asList(
               PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
                   .entryId("entry-3")
                   .assetId(assetId)
                   .propertyId(tempPropertyId)
                   .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                       AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                           .value(Variant.builder()
                               .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Temperature"))
                               .build())
                           .timestamp(time)
                           .build()
                   ))
                   .build(),
               PutAssetPropertyValueEntry.builder()
```

```
                    .entryId("entry-4")
                    .assetId(assetId)
                    .propertyId(humidityPropId)
                    .propertyValues(Arrays.asList(
                        AssetPropertyValue.builder()
                            .value(Variant.builder()
                                .doubleValue(sampleData.get("Humidity"))
                                .build())
                            .timestamp(time)
                            .build()
                    ))
                    .build()
            ))
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().batchPutAssetPropertyValue(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An exception occurred: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateAsset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAsset`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
```

```
    * Creates an asset with the specified name and asset model Id.
    *
    * @param assetName    the name of the asset to create.
    * @param assetModelId the Id of the asset model to associate with the asset.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
    *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetResponse> createAssetAsync(String assetName,
String assetModelId) {
       CreateAssetRequest createAssetRequest = CreateAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .assetDescription("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
           .assetName(assetName)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createAsset(createAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to create asset: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAssetModel`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an asset model.
    *
    * @param name the name of the asset model to create.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
CreateAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps it
    *         available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateAssetModelResponse> createAssetModelAsync(String
name) {
       PropertyType humidity = PropertyType.builder()
           .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
           .build();

       PropertyType temperaturePropertyType = PropertyType.builder()
           .measurement(Measurement.builder().build())
           .build();

       AssetModelPropertyDefinition temperatureProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
           .name("Temperature")
           .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
           .type(temperaturePropertyType)
           .build();
```

```
        AssetModelPropertyDefinition humidityProperty =
AssetModelPropertyDefinition.builder()
            .name("Humidity")
            .dataType(PropertyDataType.DOUBLE)
            .type(humidity)
            .build();

        CreateAssetModelRequest createAssetModelRequest =
CreateAssetModelRequest.builder()
            .assetModelName(name)
            .assetModelDescription("This is my asset model")
            .assetModelProperties(temperatureProperty, humidityProperty)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createAssetModel(createAssetModelRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create asset model: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGateway`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new IoT Sitewise gateway.
```

```
    *
    * @param gatewayName The name of the gateway to create.
    * @param myThing     The name of the core device thing to associate with the
gateway.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the gateways ID. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createGatewayAsync(String gatewayName, String
myThing) {
       GreengrassV2 gg = GreengrassV2.builder()
           .coreDeviceThingName(myThing)
           .build();

       GatewayPlatform platform = GatewayPlatform.builder()
           .greengrassV2(gg)
           .build();

       Map<String, String> tag = new HashMap<>();
       tag.put("Environment", "Production");

       CreateGatewayRequest createGatewayRequest = CreateGatewayRequest.builder()
           .gatewayName(gatewayName)
           .gatewayPlatform(platform)
           .tags(tag)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createGateway(createGatewayRequest)
           .handle((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Error creating the gateway.");
                   throw (CompletionException) exception;
               }
               logger.info("The ARN of the gateway is {}" ,
response.gatewayArn());
```

```
                return response.gatewayId();
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreatePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePortal`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new IoT SiteWise portal.
     *
     * @param portalName   the name of the portal to create.
     * @param iamRole      the IAM role ARN to use for the portal.
     * @param contactEmail the email address of the portal contact.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the portal ID. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createPortalAsync(String portalName, String
iamRole, String contactEmail) {
        CreatePortalRequest createPortalRequest = CreatePortalRequest.builder()
```

```
            .portalName(portalName)
            .portalDescription("This is my custom IoT SiteWise portal.")
            .portalContactEmail(contactEmail)
            .roleArn(iamRole)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createPortal(createPortalRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("Failed to create portal: {} ",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                    throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                return response.portalId();
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAsset`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAsset`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an asset.
     *
     * @param assetId the ID of the asset to be deleted.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetResponse} result. The calling code can
     *         attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
```

```
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetResponse> deleteAssetAsync(String assetId) {
       DeleteAssetRequest deleteAssetRequest = DeleteAssetRequest.builder()
           .assetId(assetId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAsset(deleteAssetRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An error occurred deleting asset with id: {}",
assetId);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAssetModel`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an Asset Model with the specified ID.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the Asset Model to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteAssetModelResponse} result. The calling code
```

```
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteAssetModelResponse> deleteAssetModelAsync(String
assetModelId) {
       DeleteAssetModelRequest deleteAssetModelRequest =
DeleteAssetModelRequest.builder()
           .assetModelId(assetModelId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteAssetModel(deleteAssetModelRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete asset model with ID:{}.",
exception.getMessage());
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGateway`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes the specified gateway.
    *
    * @param gatewayId the ID of the gateway to delete.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeleteGatewayResponse} result.. The calling code
    *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteGatewayResponse> deleteGatewayAsync(String
gatewayId) {
       DeleteGatewayRequest deleteGatewayRequest = DeleteGatewayRequest.builder()
           .gatewayId(gatewayId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteGateway(deleteGatewayRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete gateway: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeletePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePortal`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a portal.
    *
    * @param portalId the ID of the portal to be deleted.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DeletePortalResponse}. The calling code can attach
    *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeletePortalResponse> deletePortalAsync(String
portalId) {
       DeletePortalRequest deletePortalRequest = DeletePortalRequest.builder()
           .portalId(portalId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deletePortal(deletePortalRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("Failed to delete portal with ID: {}. Error: {}",
portalId, exception.getCause().getMessage());
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAssetModel`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the property IDs associated with a specific asset model.
    *
    * @param assetModelId the ID of the asset model that defines the properties.
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Map} result that
associates the property name to the
    *         propert ID. The calling code can attach callbacks, then handle the
result or exception by calling
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Map<String, String>> getPropertyIds(String
assetModelId) {
       ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest modelPropertiesRequest =
ListAssetModelPropertiesRequest.builder().assetModelId(assetModelId).build();
       return getAsyncClient().listAssetModelProperties(modelPropertiesRequest)
           .handle((response, throwable) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   return response.assetModelPropertySummaries().stream()
                       .collect(Collectors
                           .toMap(AssetModelPropertySummary::name,
AssetModelPropertySummary::id));
               } else {
                   logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property IDs: {}.",
throwable.getCause().getMessage());
```

```
                    throw (CompletionException) throwable;
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeGateway`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes the specified gateway.
     *
     * @param gateway Id the ID of the gateway to describe.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link
DescribeGatewayResponse} result. The calling code
     *         can attach callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling
{@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
     *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DescribeGatewayResponse> describeGatewayAsync(String
gateway Id) {
        DescribeGatewayRequest request = DescribeGatewayRequest.builder()
            .gateway Id(gateway Id)
            .build();
```

```
        return getAsyncClient().describeGateway(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.error("An error occurred during the describeGateway
method: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePortal`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves a portal's description.
     *
     * @param portalId the ID of the portal to describe.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the portal's start URL
     *         (see: {@link DescribePortalResponse#portalStartUrl()}). The calling
code can attach callbacks, then handle the
     *         result or exception by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or
{@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> describePortalAsync(String portalId) {
        DescribePortalRequest request = DescribePortalRequest.builder()
            .portalId(portalId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describePortal(request)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                   logger.error("An exception occurred retrieving the portal
description: {}", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                   throw (CompletionException) exception;
                }
                return response.portalStartUrl();
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetAssetPropertyValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAssetPropertyValue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Fetches the value of an asset property.
     *
     * @param propId  the ID of the asset property to fetch.
     * @param assetId the ID of the asset to fetch the property value for.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link Double} result.
The calling code can attach
     *         callbacks, then handle the result or exception by calling {@link
CompletableFuture#join()} or
```

```
    *         {@link CompletableFuture#get()}.
    *         <p>
    *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
    *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
    *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Double> getAssetPropValueAsync(String propId, String
assetId) {
       GetAssetPropertyValueRequest assetPropertyValueRequest =
GetAssetPropertyValueRequest.builder()
               .propertyId(propId)
               .assetId(assetId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().getAssetPropertyValue(assetPropertyValueRequest)
               .handle((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       logger.error("Error occurred while fetching property value:
{}.", exception.getCause().getMessage());
                       throw (CompletionException) exception;
                   }
                   return response.propertyValue().value().doubleValue();
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListAssetModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAssetModels`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the asset model ID for the given asset model name.
     *
     * @param assetModelName the name of the asset model for the ID.
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents a {@link String} result
of the asset model ID or null if the
     *         asset model cannot be found. The calling code can attach callbacks,
then handle the result or exception
     *         by calling {@link CompletableFuture#join()} or {@link
CompletableFuture#get()}.
     *         <p>
     *         If any completion stage in this method throws an exception, the
method logs the exception cause and keeps
     *         it available to the calling code as a {@link CompletionException}. By
calling
     *         {@link CompletionException#getCause()}, the calling code can access
the original exception.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> getAssetModelIdAsync(String assetModelName) {
        ListAssetModelsRequest listAssetModelsRequest =
ListAssetModelsRequest.builder().build();
        return getAsyncClient().listAssetModels(listAssetModelsRequest)
                .handle((listAssetModelsResponse, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        logger.error("Failed to retrieve Asset Model ID: {}",
exception.getCause().getMessage());
                        throw (CompletionException) exception;
                    }
                    for (AssetModelSummary assetModelSummary :
listAssetModelsResponse.assetModelSummaries()) {
                        if (assetModelSummary.name().equals(assetModelName)) {
                            return assetModelSummary.id();
                        }
                    }
                    return null;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Keyspaces.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.KeyspacesClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.KeyspaceSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.KeyspacesException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.ListKeyspacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.keyspaces.model.ListKeyspacesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloKeyspaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KeyspacesClient keyClient = KeyspacesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listKeyspaces(keyClient);
    }

    public static void listKeyspaces(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
        try {
            ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest = ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListKeyspacesResponse response =
 keyClient.listKeyspaces(keyspacesRequest);
            List<KeyspaceSummary> keyspaces = response.keyspaces();
            for (KeyspaceSummary keyspace : keyspaces) {
                System.out.println("The name of the keyspace is " +
 keyspace.keyspaceName());
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a keyspace and table. The table schema holds movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
- Connect to the keyspace using a secure TLS connection with SigV4 authentication.
- Query the table. Add, retrieve, and update movie data.
- Update the table. Add a column to track watched movies.
- Restore the table to its previous state and clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * Before running this Java code example, you must create a
 * Java keystore (JKS) file and place it in your project's resources folder.
 *
 * This file is a secure file format used to hold certificate information for
 * Java applications. This is required to make a connection to Amazon Keyspaces.
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/using_java_driver.html
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
```

```
 * 1. Create a keyspace.
 * 2. Check for keyspace existence.
 * 3. List keyspaces using a paginator.
 * 4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and enable point-in-time
 * recovery.
 * 5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.
 * 6. List all tables in the keyspace.
 * 7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into the Movie table.
 * 8. Get all records from the Movie table.
 * 9. Get a specific Movie.
 * 10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.
 * 11. Update the table schema to add a ‘watched’ Boolean column.
 * 12. Update an item as watched.
 * 13. Query for items with watched = True.
 * 14. Restore the table back to the previous state using the timestamp.
 * 15. Check for completion of the restore action.
 * 16. Delete the table.
 * 17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.
 * 18. Delete the keyspace.
 */

public class ScenarioKeyspaces {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    /*
     * Usage:
     * fileName - The name of the JSON file that contains movie data. (Get this file
     * from the GitHub repo at resources/sample_file.)
     * keyspaceName - The name of the keyspace to create.
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException, IOException
 {
        String fileName = "<Replace with the JSON file that contains movie data>";
        String keyspaceName = "<Replace with the name of the keyspace to create>";
        String titleUpdate = "The Family";
        int yearUpdate = 2013;
        String tableName = "Movie";
        String tableNameRestore = "MovieRestore";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KeyspacesClient keyClient = KeyspacesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        DriverConfigLoader loader =
DriverConfigLoader.fromClasspath("application.conf");
        CqlSession session = CqlSession.builder()
                .withConfigLoader(loader)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Keyspaces example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create a keyspace.");
        createKeySpace(keyClient, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        Thread.sleep(5000);
        System.out.println("2. Check for keyspace existence.");
        checkKeyspaceExistence(keyClient, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. List keyspaces using a paginator.");
        listKeyspacesPaginator(keyClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and
enable point-in-time recovery.");
        createTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.");
        Thread.sleep(6000);
        checkTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. List all tables in the keyspace.");
        listTables(keyClient, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into
the Movie table.");
        Thread.sleep(6000);
        loadData(session, fileName, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Get all records from the Movie table.");
        getMovieData(session, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Get a specific Movie.");
        getSpecificMovie(session, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.");
        ZonedDateTime utc = ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC);
        System.out.println("DATETIME = " + Date.from(utc.toInstant()));
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Update the table schema to add a watched Boolean
column.");
        updateTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Update an item as watched.");
        Thread.sleep(10000); // Wait 10 secs for the update.
        updateRecord(session, keyspaceName, titleUpdate, yearUpdate);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Query for items with watched = True.");
        getWatchedData(session, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Restore the table back to the previous state using
the timestamp.");
        System.out.println("Note that the restore operation can take up to 20
minutes.");
```

```
        restoreTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, utc);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("15. Check for completion of the restore action.");
        Thread.sleep(5000);
        checkRestoredTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, "MovieRestore");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("16. Delete both tables.");
        deleteTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        deleteTable(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableNameRestore);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.");
        checkTableDelete(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableName);
        checkTableDelete(keyClient, keyspaceName, tableNameRestore);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("18. Delete the keyspace.");
        deleteKeyspace(keyClient, keyspaceName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The scenario has completed successfully.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void deleteKeyspace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
        try {
            DeleteKeyspaceRequest deleteKeyspaceRequest =
DeleteKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    public static void checkTableDelete(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, String tableName)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            String status;
            GetTableResponse response;
            GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            // Keep looping until table cannot be found and a
ResourceNotFoundException is
            // thrown.
            while (true) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                System.out.println(". The table status is " + status);
                Thread.sleep(500);
            }

        } catch (ResourceNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        System.out.println("The table is deleted");
    }

    public static void deleteTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
String tableName) {
        try {
            DeleteTableRequest tableRequest = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    public static void checkRestoredTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName, String tableName)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean tableStatus = false;
            String status;
            GetTableResponse response = null;
            GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            while (!tableStatus) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                System.out.println("The table status is " + status);

                if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                    tableStatus = true;
                }
                Thread.sleep(500);
            }

            List<ColumnDefinition> cols = response.schemaDefinition().allColumns();
            for (ColumnDefinition def : cols) {
                System.out.println("The column name is " + def.name());
                System.out.println("The column type is " + def.type());
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void restoreTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
ZonedDateTime utc) {
        try {
            Instant myTime = utc.toInstant();
            RestoreTableRequest restoreTableRequest = RestoreTableRequest.builder()
                    .restoreTimestamp(myTime)
                    .sourceTableName("Movie")
```

```
                    .targetKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .targetTableName("MovieRestore")
                    .sourceKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            RestoreTableResponse response =
keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the restored table is " +
response.restoredTableARN());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getWatchedData(CqlSession session, String keyspaceName) {
        ResultSet resultSet = session
                .execute("SELECT * FROM \"" + keyspaceName + "\".\"Movie\" WHERE
watched = true ALLOW FILTERING;");
        resultSet.forEach(item -> {
            System.out.println("The Movie title is " + item.getString("title"));
            System.out.println("The Movie year is " + item.getInt("year"));
            System.out.println("The plot is " + item.getString("plot"));
        });
    }

    public static void updateRecord(CqlSession session, String keySpace, String
titleUpdate, int yearUpdate) {
        String sqlStatement = "UPDATE \"" + keySpace
                + "\".\"Movie\" SET watched=true WHERE title = :k0 AND year = :k1;";
        BatchStatementBuilder builder =
BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED);
        builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM);
        PreparedStatement preparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement);
        builder.addStatement(preparedStatement.boundStatementBuilder()
                .setString("k0", titleUpdate)
                .setInt("k1", yearUpdate)
                .build());

        BatchStatement batchStatement = builder.build();
        session.execute(batchStatement);
    }
```

```
    public static void updateTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
        try {
            ColumnDefinition def = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("watched")
                    .type("boolean")
                    .build();

            UpdateTableRequest tableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .addColumns(def)
                    .build();

            keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getSpecificMovie(CqlSession session, String keyspaceName) {
        ResultSet resultSet = session.execute(
                "SELECT * FROM \"" + keyspaceName + "\".\"Movie\" WHERE title = 'The
Family' ALLOW FILTERING ;");
        resultSet.forEach(item -> {
            System.out.println("The Movie title is " + item.getString("title"));
            System.out.println("The Movie year is " + item.getInt("year"));
            System.out.println("The plot is " + item.getString("plot"));
        });
    }

    // Get records from the Movie table.
    public static void getMovieData(CqlSession session, String keyspaceName) {
        ResultSet resultSet = session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"" + keyspaceName +
"\".\"Movie\";");
        resultSet.forEach(item -> {
            System.out.println("The Movie title is " + item.getString("title"));
            System.out.println("The Movie year is " + item.getInt("year"));
            System.out.println("The plot is " + item.getString("plot"));
        });
    }
```

```
    // Load data into the table.
    public static void loadData(CqlSession session, String fileName, String
keySpace) throws IOException {
        String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO \"" + keySpace + "\".\"Movie\" (title,
year, plot) values (:k0, :k1, :k2)";
        JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new File(fileName));
        com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode rootNode = new
ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
        Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
        ObjectNode currentNode;
        int t = 0;
        while (iter.hasNext()) {

            // Add 20 movies to the table.
            if (t == 20)
                break;
            currentNode = (ObjectNode) iter.next();

            int year = currentNode.path("year").asInt();
            String title = currentNode.path("title").asText();
            String plot = currentNode.path("info").path("plot").toString();

            // Insert the data into the Amazon Keyspaces table.
            BatchStatementBuilder builder =
BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED);
            builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM);
            PreparedStatement preparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement);
            builder.addStatement(preparedStatement.boundStatementBuilder()
                    .setString("k0", title)
                    .setInt("k1", year)
                    .setString("k2", plot)
                    .build());

            BatchStatement batchStatement = builder.build();
            session.execute(batchStatement);
            t++;
        }

        System.out.println("You have added " + t + " records successfully!");
    }

    public static void listTables(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName) {
        try {
            ListTablesRequest tablesRequest = ListTablesRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            ListTablesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listTablesPaginator(tablesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.tables().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" ARN: " +
content.resourceArn() +
                            " Table name: " + content.tableName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
String tableName)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean tableStatus = false;
            String status;
            GetTableResponse response = null;
            GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            while (!tableStatus) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                System.out.println(". The table status is " + status);

                if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                    tableStatus = true;
                }
                Thread.sleep(500);
            }

            List<ColumnDefinition> cols = response.schemaDefinition().allColumns();
            for (ColumnDefinition def : cols) {
                System.out.println("The column name is " + def.name());
                System.out.println("The column type is " + def.type());
```

```
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
        try {
            // Set the columns.
            ColumnDefinition defTitle = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("title")
                    .type("text")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defYear = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("year")
                    .type("int")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defReleaseDate = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("release_date")
                    .type("timestamp")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defPlot = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("plot")
                    .type("text")
                    .build();

            List<ColumnDefinition> colList = new ArrayList<>();
            colList.add(defTitle);
            colList.add(defYear);
            colList.add(defReleaseDate);
            colList.add(defPlot);

            // Set the keys.
            PartitionKey yearKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                    .name("year")
                    .build();

            PartitionKey titleKey = PartitionKey.builder()
```

```
                .name("title")
                .build();

        List<PartitionKey> keyList = new ArrayList<>();
        keyList.add(yearKey);
        keyList.add(titleKey);

        SchemaDefinition schemaDefinition = SchemaDefinition.builder()
                .partitionKeys(keyList)
                .allColumns(colList)
                .build();

        PointInTimeRecovery timeRecovery = PointInTimeRecovery.builder()
                .status(PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

        CreateTableRequest tableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                .tableName(tableName)
                .schemaDefinition(schemaDefinition)
                .pointInTimeRecovery(timeRecovery)
                .build();

        CreateTableResponse response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest);
        System.out.println("The table ARN is " + response.resourceArn());

    } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        System.exit(1);
    }
}

public static void listKeyspacesPaginator(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
    try {
        ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest = ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .build();

        ListKeyspacesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listKeyspacesPaginator(keyspacesRequest);
        listRes.stream()
                .flatMap(r -> r.keyspaces().stream())
                .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.keyspaceName()));
```

```
        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkKeyspaceExistence(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
 keyspaceName) {
        try {
            GetKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest = GetKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            GetKeyspaceResponse response = keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
            String name = response.keyspaceName();
            System.out.println("The " + name + " KeySpace is ready");

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createKeySpace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
 keyspaceName) {
        try {
            CreateKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest = CreateKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            CreateKeyspaceResponse response =
 keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the KeySpace is " +
 response.resourceArn());

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Actions

`CreateKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyspace`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createKeySpace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
       try {
           CreateKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest = CreateKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .build();

           CreateKeyspaceResponse response =
keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
           System.out.println("The ARN of the KeySpace is " +
response.resourceArn());
```

```
        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void createTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
        try {
            // Set the columns.
            ColumnDefinition defTitle = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("title")
                    .type("text")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defYear = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("year")
                    .type("int")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defReleaseDate = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("release_date")
                    .type("timestamp")
                    .build();

            ColumnDefinition defPlot = ColumnDefinition.builder()
```

```
                .name("plot")
                .type("text")
                .build();

        List<ColumnDefinition> colList = new ArrayList<>();
        colList.add(defTitle);
        colList.add(defYear);
        colList.add(defReleaseDate);
        colList.add(defPlot);

        // Set the keys.
        PartitionKey yearKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                .name("year")
                .build();

        PartitionKey titleKey = PartitionKey.builder()
                .name("title")
                .build();

        List<PartitionKey> keyList = new ArrayList<>();
        keyList.add(yearKey);
        keyList.add(titleKey);

        SchemaDefinition schemaDefinition = SchemaDefinition.builder()
                .partitionKeys(keyList)
                .allColumns(colList)
                .build();

        PointInTimeRecovery timeRecovery = PointInTimeRecovery.builder()
                .status(PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

        CreateTableRequest tableRequest = CreateTableRequest.builder()
                .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                .tableName(tableName)
                .schemaDefinition(schemaDefinition)
                .pointInTimeRecovery(timeRecovery)
                .build();

        CreateTableResponse response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest);
        System.out.println("The table ARN is " + response.resourceArn());

    } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyspace`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteKeyspace(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
       try {
           DeleteKeyspaceRequest deleteKeyspaceRequest =
DeleteKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .build();

           keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest);

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
String tableName) {
       try {
           DeleteTableRequest tableRequest = DeleteTableRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .tableName(tableName)
                   .build();

           keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest);

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `GetKeyspace`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkKeyspaceExistence(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String
keyspaceName) {
       try {
           GetKeyspaceRequest keyspaceRequest = GetKeyspaceRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                   .build();

           GetKeyspaceResponse response = keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest);
           String name = response.keyspaceName();
           System.out.println("The " + name + " KeySpace is ready");

       } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetTable`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
String tableName)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean tableStatus = false;
           String status;
           GetTableResponse response = null;
           GetTableRequest tableRequest = GetTableRequest.builder()
                   .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
```

```
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .build();

            while (!tableStatus) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                System.out.println(". The table status is " + status);

                if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                    tableStatus = true;
                }
                Thread.sleep(500);
            }

            List<ColumnDefinition> cols = response.schemaDefinition().allColumns();
            for (ColumnDefinition def : cols) {
                System.out.println("The column name is " + def.name());
                System.out.println("The column type is " + def.type());
            }

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListKeyspaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyspaces`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listKeyspacesPaginator(KeyspacesClient keyClient) {
```

```
        try {
            ListKeyspacesRequest keyspacesRequest = ListKeyspacesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListKeyspacesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listKeyspacesPaginator(keyspacesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.keyspaces().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.keyspaceName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listTables(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName) {
        try {
            ListTablesRequest tablesRequest = ListTablesRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            ListTablesIterable listRes =
keyClient.listTablesPaginator(tablesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
```

```
                    .flatMap(r -> r.tables().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" ARN: " +
content.resourceArn() +
                            " Table name: " + content.tableName()));

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RestoreTable`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void restoreTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keyspaceName,
ZonedDateTime utc) {
        try {
            Instant myTime = utc.toInstant();
            RestoreTableRequest restoreTableRequest = RestoreTableRequest.builder()
                    .restoreTimestamp(myTime)
                    .sourceTableName("Movie")
                    .targetKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .targetTableName("MovieRestore")
                    .sourceKeyspaceName(keyspaceName)
                    .build();

            RestoreTableResponse response =
keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the restored table is " +
response.restoredTableARN());
```

```
        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTable`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void updateTable(KeyspacesClient keyClient, String keySpace,
String tableName) {
        try {
            ColumnDefinition def = ColumnDefinition.builder()
                    .name("watched")
                    .type("boolean")
                    .build();

            UpdateTableRequest tableRequest = UpdateTableRequest.builder()
                    .keyspaceName(keySpace)
                    .tableName(tableName)
                    .addColumns(def)
                    .build();

            keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest);

        } catch (KeyspacesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStream`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.CreateStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.KinesisException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateDataStream {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream (for example,
 StockTradeStream).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        createStream(kinesisClient, streamName);
        System.out.println("Done");
        kinesisClient.close();
    }

    public static void createStream(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String streamName)
 {
        try {
            CreateStreamRequest streamReq = CreateStreamRequest.builder()
                    .streamName(streamName)
                    .shardCount(1)
                    .build();
```

```
            kinesisClient.createStream(streamReq);

        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStream`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DeleteStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.KinesisException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteDataStream {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream (for example,
 StockTradeStream)
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteStream(kinesisClient, streamName);
        kinesisClient.close();
        System.out.println("Done");
    }

    public static void deleteStream(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String streamName)
 {
        try {
            DeleteStreamRequest delStream = DeleteStreamRequest.builder()
                    .streamName(streamName)
                    .build();

            kinesisClient.deleteStream(delStream);

        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetRecords

The following code example shows how to use GetRecords.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.Shard;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetShardIteratorRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetShardIteratorResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.Record;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetRecordsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.GetRecordsResponse;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetRecords {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
```

```
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream to read from (for
example, StockTradeStream).
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getStockTrades(kinesisClient, streamName);
        kinesisClient.close();
    }

    public static void getStockTrades(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
streamName) {
        String shardIterator;
        String lastShardId = null;
        DescribeStreamRequest describeStreamRequest =
DescribeStreamRequest.builder()
                .streamName(streamName)
                .build();

        List<Shard> shards = new ArrayList<>();
        DescribeStreamResponse streamRes;
        do {
            streamRes = kinesisClient.describeStream(describeStreamRequest);
            shards.addAll(streamRes.streamDescription().shards());

            if (shards.size() > 0) {
                lastShardId = shards.get(shards.size() - 1).shardId();
            }
        } while (streamRes.streamDescription().hasMoreShards());

        GetShardIteratorRequest itReq = GetShardIteratorRequest.builder()
                .streamName(streamName)
                .shardIteratorType("TRIM_HORIZON")
                .shardId(lastShardId)
                .build();
```

```
        GetShardIteratorResponse shardIteratorResult =
 kinesisClient.getShardIterator(itReq);
        shardIterator = shardIteratorResult.shardIterator();

        // Continuously read data records from shard.
        List<Record> records;

        // Create new GetRecordsRequest with existing shardIterator.
        // Set maximum records to return to 1000.
        GetRecordsRequest recordsRequest = GetRecordsRequest.builder()
                .shardIterator(shardIterator)
                .limit(1000)
                .build();

        GetRecordsResponse result = kinesisClient.getRecords(recordsRequest);

        // Put result into record list. Result may be empty.
        records = result.records();

        // Print records
        for (Record record : records) {
            SdkBytes byteBuffer = record.data();
            System.out.printf("Seq No: %s - %s%n", record.sequenceNumber(), new
 String(byteBuffer.asByteArray()));
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecord`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.KinesisClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.PutRecordRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.KinesisException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kinesis.model.DescribeStreamResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class StockTradesWriter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <streamName>

                Where:
                    streamName - The Amazon Kinesis data stream to which records are
 written (for example, StockTradeStream)
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String streamName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        KinesisClient kinesisClient = KinesisClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        // Ensure that the Kinesis Stream is valid.
        validateStream(kinesisClient, streamName);
        setStockData(kinesisClient, streamName);
        kinesisClient.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void setStockData(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String streamName)
{
        try {
            // Repeatedly send stock trades with a 100 milliseconds wait in between.
            StockTradeGenerator stockTradeGenerator = new StockTradeGenerator();

            // Put in 50 Records for this example.
            int index = 50;
            for (int x = 0; x < index; x++) {
                StockTrade trade = stockTradeGenerator.getRandomTrade();
                sendStockTrade(trade, kinesisClient, streamName);
                Thread.sleep(100);
            }

        } catch (KinesisException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }

    private static void sendStockTrade(StockTrade trade, KinesisClient
kinesisClient,
            String streamName) {
        byte[] bytes = trade.toJsonAsBytes();

        // The bytes could be null if there is an issue with the JSON serialization
by
        // the Jackson JSON library.
        if (bytes == null) {
            System.out.println("Could not get JSON bytes for stock trade");
            return;
        }

        System.out.println("Putting trade: " + trade);
        PutRecordRequest request = PutRecordRequest.builder()
                .partitionKey(trade.getTickerSymbol()) // We use the ticker symbol
as the partition key, explained in
                                                       // the Supplemental
Information section below.
                .streamName(streamName)
                .data(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(bytes))
```

```
                .build();

        try {
            kinesisClient.putRecord(request);
        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    private static void validateStream(KinesisClient kinesisClient, String
 streamName) {
        try {
            DescribeStreamRequest describeStreamRequest =
 DescribeStreamRequest.builder()
                    .streamName(streamName)
                    .build();

            DescribeStreamResponse describeStreamResponse =
 kinesisClient.describeStream(describeStreamRequest);

            if (!
describeStreamResponse.streamDescription().streamStatus().toString().equals("ACTIVE"))
 {
                System.err.println("Stream " + streamName + " is not active. Please
 wait a few moments and try again.");
                System.exit(1);
            }

        } catch (KinesisException e) {
            System.err.println("Error found while describing the stream " +
 streamName);
            System.err.println(e);
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(final KinesisEvent event, final Context context) {
        LambdaLogger logger = context.getLogger();
        if (event.getRecords().isEmpty()) {
            logger.log("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return null;
        }
        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord record : event.getRecords()) {
            try {
                logger.log("Processed Event with EventId: "+record.getEventID());
                String data = new String(record.getKinesis().getData().array());
                logger.log("Data:"+ data);
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
```

```
            catch (Exception ex) {
                logger.log("An error occurred:"+ex.getMessage());
                throw ex;
            }
        }
        logger.log("Successfully processed:"+event.getRecords().size()+" records");
        return null;
    }

}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;

import java.io.Serializable;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessKinesisRecords implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {
```

```
    @Override
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(KinesisEvent input, Context context) {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord kinesisEventRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //Process your record
                KinesisEvent.Record kinesisRecord = kinesisEventRecord.getKinesis();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = kinesisRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS KMS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Key Management Service

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Key Management Service.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.ListKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.paginators.ListKeysPublisher;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloKMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listAllKeys();
    }

    public static void listAllKeys() {
        KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
            .build();
        ListKeysRequest listKeysRequest = ListKeysRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();
```

```
        /*
         * The `subscribe` method is required when using paginator methods in the
AWS SDK
         * because paginator methods return an instance of a `ListKeysPublisher`,
which is
         * based on a reactive stream. This allows asynchronous retrieval of
paginated
         * results as they become available. By subscribing to the stream, we can
process
         * each page of results as they are emitted.
         */
        ListKeysPublisher keysPublisher =
kmsAsyncClient.listKeysPaginator(listKeysRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = keysPublisher
            .subscribe(r -> r.keys().forEach(key ->
                System.out.println("The key ARN is: " + key.keyArn() + ". The key Id
is: " + key.keyId())))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " + exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Successfully listed all keys.");
                }
            });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list keys: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a KMS key.
- List KMS keys for your account and get details about them.
- Enable and disable KMS keys.
- Generate a symmetric data key that can be used for client-side encryption.
- Generate an asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.
- Tag keys.
- Delete KMS keys.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario at a command prompt.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.AlreadyExistsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.DisabledException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.EnableKeyRotationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.KmsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.NotFoundException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.RevokeGrantResponse;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class KMSScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static String accountId = "";

    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(KMSScenario.class);

    static KMSActions kmsActions = new KMSActions();

    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    static String aliasName = "alias/dev-encryption-key";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <granteePrincipal>

            Where:
               granteePrincipal - The principal (user, service account, or group) to
 whom the grant or permission is being given.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }
        String granteePrincipal = args[0];
        String policyName = "default";

        accountId = kmsActions.getAccountId();
        String keyDesc = "Created by the AWS KMS API";

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            Welcome to the AWS Key Management SDK Basics scenario.
```

```
            This program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Key Management using
the AWS SDK for Java (v2).
            The AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a secure and highly available
service that allows you to create
            and manage AWS KMS keys and control their use across a wide range of AWS
services and applications.
            KMS provides a centralized and unified approach to managing encryption
keys, making it easier to meet your
            data protection and regulatory compliance requirements.

            This Basics scenario creates two key types:

            - A symmetric encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt data.
            - An asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.

            Let's get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
        // Run the methods that belong to this scenario.
        String targetKeyId = runScenario(granteePrincipal, keyDesc, policyName);
        requestDeleteResources(aliasName, targetKeyId);

        } catch (Throwable rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    private static String runScenario(String granteePrincipal, String keyDesc,
String policyName) throws Throwable {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a symmetric KMS key\n");
        logger.info("First, the program will creates a symmetric KMS key that you
can used to encrypt and decrypt data.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String targetKeyId;
        try {
```

```
            CompletableFuture<String> futureKeyId =
kmsActions.createKeyAsync(keyDesc);
            targetKeyId = futureKeyId.join();
            logger.info("A symmetric key was successfully created " + targetKeyId);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            2. Enable a KMS key

            By default, when the SDK creates an AWS key, it is enabled. The next bit
of code checks to
            determine if the key is enabled.
             """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        boolean isEnabled;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Boolean> futureIsKeyEnabled =
kmsActions.isKeyEnabledAsync(targetKeyId);
            isEnabled = futureIsKeyEnabled.join();
            logger.info("Is the key enabled? {}", isEnabled);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
```

```
        if (!isEnabled)
            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.enableKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                }
                throw cause;
            }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key");
        String plaintext = "Hello, AWS KMS!";
        logger.info("""
            One of the main uses of symmetric keys is to encrypt and decrypt data.
            Next, the code encrypts the string {} with the SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT
encryption algorithm.
            """, plaintext);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        SdkBytes encryptedData;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<SdkBytes> future =
kmsActions.encryptDataAsync(targetKeyId, plaintext);
            encryptedData = future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof DisabledException kmsDisabledEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred due to a disabled
key: Error message: {}, Error code {}", kmsDisabledEx.getMessage(),
kmsDisabledEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Create an alias");
        logger.info("""

            The alias name should be prefixed with 'alias/'.
            The default, 'alias/dev-encryption-key'.
             """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.createCustomAliasAsync(targetKeyId, aliasName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof AlreadyExistsException kmsExistsEx) {
                if (kmsExistsEx.getMessage().contains("already exists")) {
                    logger.info("The alias '" + aliasName + "' already exists.
Moving on...");
                }
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage(),
rt);
                deleteKey(targetKeyId);
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. List all of your aliases");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Object> future = kmsActions.listAllAliasesAsync();
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key");
        logger.info("""

            By default, when the SDK enables automatic rotation of a KMS key,
            KMS rotates the key material of the KMS key one year (approximately 365
days) from the enable date and every year
            thereafter.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<EnableKeyRotationResponse> future =
kmsActions.enableKeyRotationAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            7. Create a grant
```

```
            A grant is a policy instrument that allows Amazon Web Services
principals to use KMS keys.
            It also can allow them to view a KMS key (DescribeKey) and create and
manage grants.
            When authorizing access to a KMS key, grants are considered along with
key policies and IAM policies.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String grantId = null;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> futureGrantId =
kmsActions.grantKeyAsync(targetKeyId, granteePrincipal);
            grantId = futureGrantId.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. List grants for the KMS key");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Object> future =
kmsActions.displayGrantIdsAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
```

```
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Revoke the grant");
        logger.info("""
            The revocation of a grant immediately removes the permissions and access
that the grant had provided.
            This means that any principal (user, role, or service) that was granted
access to perform specific
            KMS operations on a KMS key will no longer be able to perform those
operations.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> future =
kmsActions.revokeKeyGrantAsync(targetKeyId, grantId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                if (kmsEx.getMessage().contains("Grant does not exist")) {
                    logger.info("The grant ID '" + grantId + "' does not exist.
Moving on...");
                } else {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                    throw cause;
                }
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                deleteAliasName(aliasName);
                deleteKey(targetKeyId);
                throw cause;
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("10. Decrypt the data\n");
        logger.info("""
            Lets decrypt the data that was encrypted in an early step.
            The code uses the same key to decrypt the string that we encrypted
earlier in the program.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String decryptedData = "";
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
kmsActions.decryptDataAsync(encryptedData, targetKeyId);
            decryptedData = future.join();
            logger.info("Decrypted data: " + decryptedData);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info("Decrypted text is: " + decryptedData);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("11. Replace a key policy\n");
        logger.info("""
            A key policy is a resource policy for a KMS key. Key policies are the
primary way to control
            access to KMS keys. Every KMS key must have exactly one key policy. The
statements in the key policy
            determine who has permission to use the KMS key and how they can use
it.
            You can also use IAM policies and grants to control access to the KMS
key, but every KMS key
            must have a key policy.

            By default, when you create a key by using the SDK, a policy is created
that
```

```
            gives the AWS account that owns the KMS key full access to the KMS key.

            Let's try to replace the automatically created policy with the following
policy.

                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [{
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::0000000000:root"},
                "Action": "kms:*",
                "Resource": "*"
                }]
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Boolean> future =
kmsActions.replacePolicyAsync(targetKeyId, policyName, accountId);
            boolean success = future.join();
            if (success) {
                logger.info("Key policy replacement succeeded.");
            } else {
                logger.error("Key policy replacement failed.");
            }

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("12. Get the key policy\n");
        logger.info("The next bit of code that runs gets the key policy to make sure
it exists.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
kmsActions.getKeyPolicyAsync(targetKeyId, policyName);
            String policy = future.join();
            if (!policy.isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("Retrieved policy: " + policy);
            }

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign your data\n");
        logger.info("""
             Signing your data with an AWS key can provide several benefits that
make it an attractive option
             for your data signing needs. By using an AWS KMS key, you can leverage
the
             security controls and compliance features provided by AWS,
             which can help you meet various regulatory requirements and enhance the
overall security posture
             of your organization.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Boolean> future = kmsActions.signVerifyDataAsync();
            boolean success = future.join();
            if (success) {
                logger.info("Sign and verify data operation succeeded.");
            } else {
                logger.error("Sign and verify data operation failed.");
            }
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("14. Tag your symmetric KMS Key\n");
        logger.info("""
            By using tags, you can improve the overall management, security, and
governance of your
            KMS keys, making it easier to organize, track, and control access to
your encrypted data within
            your AWS environment
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = kmsActions.tagKMSKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            deleteAliasName(aliasName);
            deleteKey(targetKeyId);
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        return targetKeyId;
    }
```

```
   // Deletes KMS resources with user input.
   private static void requestDeleteResources(String aliasName, String targetKeyId)
{
       logger.info(DASHES);
       logger.info("15. Schedule the deletion of the KMS key\n");
       logger.info("""
           By default, KMS applies a waiting period of 30 days,
           but you can specify a waiting period of 7-30 days. When this operation
is successful,
           the key state of the KMS key changes to PendingDeletion and the key
can't be used in any
           cryptographic operations. It remains in this state for the duration of
the waiting period.

           Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation.
When a KMS key is deleted,
           all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.
           """);
       logger.info("Would you like to delete the Key Management resources? (y/n)");
       String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
       if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
           logger.info("You selected to delete the AWS KMS resources.");
           waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
           try {
               CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.deleteSpecificAliasAsync(aliasName);
               future.join();

           } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
               Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
               } else {
                   logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
               }
           }
           waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
           try {
               CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.disableKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
               future.join();

           } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
```

```
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                }
            }

            try {
                CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.deleteKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
{}", kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
                }
            }

        } else {
            logger.info("The Key Management resources will not be deleted");
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the AWS Key Management SDK scenario");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    // This method is invoked from Exceptions to clean up the resources.
    private static void deleteKey(String targetKeyId) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.disableKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
```

```
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }

        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = kmsActions.deleteKeyAsync(targetKeyId);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    // This method is invoked from Exceptions to clean up the resources.
    private static void deleteAliasName(String aliasName) {
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
kmsActions.deleteSpecificAliasAsync(aliasName);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
```

```
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

Define a class that wraps KMS actions.

```
public class KMSActions {
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(KMSActions.class);
    private static KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient;

    /**
     * Retrieves an asynchronous AWS Key Management Service (KMS) client.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the KMS async client,
 with the following configurations:
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Max concurrency: 100</li>
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Retry policy: up to 3 retries</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: environment variable credentials provider</li>
     * </ul>
     * <p>
     * If the client instance has already been created, it is returned instead of
 creating a new one.
     *
     * @return the KMS async client instance
     */
    private static KmsAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
```

```
        if (kmsAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
                    .build())
                .build();

            kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return kmsAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new symmetric encryption key asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyDesc the description of the key to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the newly
created key
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while creating the key
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createKeyAsync(String keyDesc) {
        CreateKeyRequest keyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .description(keyDesc)
            .keySpec(KeySpec.SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.ENCRYPT_DECRYPT)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(keyRequest)
            .thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyId())
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("An error occurred while creating the
key: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously checks if a specified key is enabled.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates whether
the key is enabled or not
     *
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while checking the key state
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> isKeyEnabledAsync(String keyId) {
        DescribeKeyRequest keyRequest = DescribeKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKey(keyRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                KeyState keyState = resp.keyMetadata().keyState();
                if (keyState == KeyState.ENABLED) {
                    logger.info("The key is enabled.");
                } else {
                    logger.info("The key is not enabled. Key state: {}", keyState);
                }
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyState() == KeyState.ENABLED);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously enables the specified key.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to enable
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
enabled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> enableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        EnableKeyRequest enableKeyRequest = EnableKeyRequest.builder()
```

```
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EnableKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().enableKey(enableKeyRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Key with ID [{}] has been enabled.", keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while enabling
key: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred while
enabling key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }

    /**
     * Encrypts the given text asynchronously using the specified KMS client and key
ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to use for encryption
     * @param text the text to encrypt
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the encrypted data as an
SdkBytes object
     */
    public CompletableFuture<SdkBytes> encryptDataAsync(String keyId, String text) {
        SdkBytes myBytes = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(text);
        EncryptRequest encryptRequest = EncryptRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .plaintext(myBytes)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EncryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().encrypt(encryptRequest).toCompletableFuture();
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String algorithm = response.encryptionAlgorithm().toString();
```

```
                logger.info("The string was encrypted with algorithm {}.",
algorithm);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(EncryptResponse::ciphertextBlob);
    }

    /**
     * Creates a custom alias for the specified target key asynchronously.
     *
     * @param targetKeyId the ID of the target key for the alias
     * @param aliasName   the name of the alias to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the alias creation
operation is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> createCustomAliasAsync(String targetKeyId, String
aliasName) {
        CreateAliasRequest aliasRequest = CreateAliasRequest.builder()
            .aliasName(aliasName)
            .targetKeyId(targetKeyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateAliasResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createAlias(aliasRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("{} was successfully created.", aliasName);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof ResourceExistsException) {
                    logger.info("Alias [{}] already exists. Moving on...",
aliasName);
                } else if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while creating
alias: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred while
creating alias: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the aliases in the current AWS account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the list of aliases
has been processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> listAllAliasesAsync() {
        ListAliasesRequest aliasesRequest = ListAliasesRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        ListAliasesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listAliasesPaginator(aliasesRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.aliases().forEach(alias ->
                    logger.info("The alias name is: " + alias.aliasName())
                );
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof KmsException) {
                    KmsException e = (KmsException) ex.getCause();
                    throw new RuntimeException("A KMS exception occurred: " +
e.getMessage());
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage());
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Enables key rotation asynchronously for the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key for which to enable key rotation
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
enabling key rotation
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was an error enabling key rotation, either
due to a KMS exception or an unexpected error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<EnableKeyRotationResponse>
enableKeyRotationAsync(String keyId) {
```

```
        EnableKeyRotationRequest enableKeyRotationRequest =
EnableKeyRotationRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EnableKeyRotationResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().enableKeyRotation(enableKeyRotationRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Key rotation has been enabled for key with id [{}]",
keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to enable key rotation: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }

    /**
     * Grants permissions to a specified principal on a customer master key (CMK)
asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyId             The unique identifier for the customer master key
(CMK) that the grant applies to.
     * @param granteePrincipal  The principal that is given permission to perform
the operations that the grant permits on the CMK.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the ID of
the created grant.
     * @throws RuntimeException If an error occurs during the grant creation
process.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> grantKeyAsync(String keyId, String
granteePrincipal) {
        List<GrantOperation> grantPermissions = List.of(
            GrantOperation.ENCRYPT,
            GrantOperation.DECRYPT,
            GrantOperation.DESCRIBE_KEY
```

```
        );

        CreateGrantRequest grantRequest = CreateGrantRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .name("grant1")
            .granteePrincipal(granteePrincipal)
            .operations(grantPermissions)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createGrant(grantRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                logger.info("Grant created successfully with ID: " +
response.grantId());
            } else {
                if (ex instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create grant: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(CreateGrantResponse::grantId);
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously displays the grant IDs for the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to list the grants
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will be null if
the operation succeeded, or will throw a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation
failed
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was an error listing the grants, either due
to an {@link KmsException} or an unexpected error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> displayGrantIdsAsync(String keyId) {
        ListGrantsRequest grantsRequest = ListGrantsRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .limit(15)
            .build();
```

```
        ListGrantsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listGrantsPaginator(grantsRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.grants().forEach(grant -> {
                    logger.info("The grant Id is: " + grant.grantId());
                });
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list grants: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Revokes a grant for the specified AWS KMS key asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyId   The ID or key ARN of the AWS KMS key.
     * @param grantId The identifier of the grant to be revoked.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of revoking the grant.
     *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
RevokeGrantResponse} object
     *         if the operation is successful, or with a {@code null} value if an
error occurs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> revokeKeyGrantAsync(String keyId,
String grantId) {
        RevokeGrantRequest grantRequest = RevokeGrantRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .grantId(grantId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().revokeGrant(grantRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
```

```
                logger.info("Grant ID: [" + grantId + "] was successfully
revoked!");
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    if (kmsEx.getMessage().contains("Grant does not exist")) {
                        logger.info("The grant ID '" + grantId + "' does not exist.
Moving on...");
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously decrypts the given encrypted data using the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param encryptedData The encrypted data to be decrypted.
     * @param keyId The ID of the key to be used for decryption.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that, when completed, will contain the decrypted
data as a String.
     *         If an error occurs during the decryption process, the
CompletableFuture will complete
     *         exceptionally with the error, and the method will return an empty
String.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> decryptDataAsync(SdkBytes encryptedData, String
keyId) {
        DecryptRequest decryptRequest = DecryptRequest.builder()
            .ciphertextBlob(encryptedData)
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DecryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().decrypt(decryptRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((decryptResponse, exception) -> {
```

```
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Data decrypted successfully for key ID: " + keyId);
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while decrypting
data: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred while
decrypting data: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(decryptResponse ->
decryptResponse.plaintext().asString(StandardCharsets.UTF_8));
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously replaces the policy for the specified KMS key.
     *
     * @param keyId       the ID of the KMS key to replace the policy for
     * @param policyName  the name of the policy to be replaced
     * @param accountId   the AWS account ID to be used in the policy
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with a boolean indicating
     *         whether the policy replacement was successful or not
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> replacePolicyAsync(String keyId, String
policyName, String accountId) {
        String policy = """
    {
      "Version": "2012-10-17",
      "Statement": [{
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::%s:root"},
        "Action": "kms:*",
        "Resource": "*"
      }]
    }
    """.formatted(accountId);

        PutKeyPolicyRequest keyPolicyRequest = PutKeyPolicyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .policyName(policyName)
            .policy(policy)
```

```
            .build();

        // First, get the current policy to check if it exists
        return getAsyncClient().getKeyPolicy(r ->
r.keyId(keyId).policyName(policyName))
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                logger.info("Current policy exists. Replacing it...");
                return getAsyncClient().putKeyPolicy(keyPolicyRequest);
            })
            .thenApply(putPolicyResponse -> {
                logger.info("The key policy has been replaced.");
                return true;
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                if (throwable.getCause() instanceof LimitExceededException) {
                    logger.error("Cannot replace policy, as only one policy is
allowed per key.");
                    return false;
                }
                throw new RuntimeException("Error replacing policy", throwable);
            });
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the key policy for the specified key ID and policy
name.
     *
     * @param keyId       the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to retrieve the policy
     * @param policyName the name of the key policy to retrieve
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the key
policy as a {@link String}
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> getKeyPolicyAsync(String keyId, String
policyName) {
        GetKeyPolicyRequest policyRequest = GetKeyPolicyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .policyName(policyName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getKeyPolicy(policyRequest)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                String policy = response.policy();
                logger.info("The response is: " + policy);
```

```
                return policy;
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get key policy", ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously signs and verifies data using AWS KMS.
     *
     * <p>The method performs the following steps:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Creates an AWS KMS key with the specified key spec, key usage, and
 origin.</li>
     *     <li>Signs the provided message using the created KMS key and the RSASSA-
PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
     *     <li>Verifies the signature of the message using the created KMS key and
 the RSASSA-PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
     * </ol>
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the
 signature verification,
     *         {@code true} if the signature is valid, {@code false} otherwise.
     * @throws KmsException if any error occurs during the KMS operations.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> signVerifyDataAsync() {
        String signMessage = "Here is the message that will be digitally signed";

        // Create an AWS KMS key used to digitally sign data.
        CreateKeyRequest createKeyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keySpec(KeySpec.RSA_2048)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.SIGN_VERIFY)
            .origin(OriginType.AWS_KMS)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(createKeyRequest)
            .thenCompose(createKeyResponse -> {
                String keyId = createKeyResponse.keyMetadata().keyId();

                SdkBytes messageBytes = SdkBytes.fromString(signMessage,
 Charset.defaultCharset());
                SignRequest signRequest = SignRequest.builder()
                    .keyId(keyId)
```

```
                    .message(messageBytes)
                    .signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().sign(signRequest)
                    .thenCompose(signResponse -> {
                        byte[] signedBytes = signResponse.signature().asByteArray();

                        VerifyRequest verifyRequest = VerifyRequest.builder()
                            .keyId(keyId)

.message(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(signMessage.getBytes(Charset.defaultCharset())))

.signature(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(signedBytes)))

.signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                            .build();

                        return getAsyncClient().verify(verifyRequest)
                            .thenApply(verifyResponse -> {
                                return (boolean) verifyResponse.signatureValid();
                            });
                    });
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to sign or verify data",
throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously tags a KMS key with a specific tag.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to be tagged
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tagging operation
is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> tagKMSKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        Tag tag = Tag.builder()
            .tagKey("Environment")
            .tagValue("Production")
            .build();

        TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
```

```
            .keyId(keyId)
            .tags(tag)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().tagResource(tagResourceRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("{} key was tagged", keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to tag the KMS key", throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a specific KMS alias asynchronously.
     *
     * @param aliasName the name of the alias to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of deleting the specified alias
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSpecificAliasAsync(String aliasName) {
        DeleteAliasRequest deleteAliasRequest = DeleteAliasRequest.builder()
            .aliasName(aliasName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteAlias(deleteAliasRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Alias {} has been deleted successfully", aliasName);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete alias: " + aliasName,
throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously disables the specified AWS Key Management Service (KMS) key.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID or Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS key to be
disabled
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, indicates that the key has
been disabled successfully
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> disableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
```

```
        DisableKeyRequest keyRequest = DisableKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().disableKey(keyRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Key {} has been disabled successfully",keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable key: " + keyId,
throwable);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a KMS key asynchronously.
     *
     * <p><strong>Warning:</strong> Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and
potentially dangerous operation.
     * When a KMS key is deleted, all data that was encrypted under the KMS key
becomes unrecoverable.
     * This means that any files, databases, or other data that were encrypted using
the deleted KMS key
     * will become permanently inaccessible. Exercise extreme caution when deleting
KMS keys.</p>
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key deletion is
scheduled
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest deletionRequest =
ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .pendingWindowInDays(7)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().scheduleKeyDeletion(deletionRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Key {} will be deleted in 7 days", keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to schedule key deletion for key
ID: " + keyId, throwable);
```

```
            });
    }


    public String getAccountId(){
        try (StsClient stsClient = StsClient.create()){
            GetCallerIdentityResponse callerIdentity =
 stsClient.getCallerIdentity();
            return callerIdentity.account();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateAlias
  - CreateGrant
  - CreateKey
  - Decrypt
  - DescribeKey
  - DisableKey
  - EnableKey
  - Encrypt
  - GetKeyPolicy
  - ListAliases
  - ListGrants
  - ListKeys
  - RevokeGrant
  - ScheduleKeyDeletion
  - Sign
  - TagResource

Actions

`CreateAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAlias`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a custom alias for the specified target key asynchronously.
    *
    * @param targetKeyId the ID of the target key for the alias
    * @param aliasName   the name of the alias to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the alias creation
operation is finished
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createCustomAliasAsync(String targetKeyId, String
aliasName) {
       CreateAliasRequest aliasRequest = CreateAliasRequest.builder()
           .aliasName(aliasName)
           .targetKeyId(targetKeyId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateAliasResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createAlias(aliasRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("{} was successfully created.", aliasName);
           } else {
               if (exception instanceof ResourceExistsException) {
                   logger.info("Alias [{}] already exists. Moving on...",
aliasName);
               } else if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while creating
alias: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
```

```
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred while
creating alias: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGrant`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Grants permissions to a specified principal on a customer master key (CMK)
asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyId             The unique identifier for the customer master key
(CMK) that the grant applies to.
     * @param granteePrincipal  The principal that is given permission to perform
the operations that the grant permits on the CMK.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the ID of
the created grant.
     * @throws RuntimeException If an error occurs during the grant creation
process.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> grantKeyAsync(String keyId, String
granteePrincipal) {
        List<GrantOperation> grantPermissions = List.of(
            GrantOperation.ENCRYPT,
```

```
            GrantOperation.DECRYPT,
            GrantOperation.DESCRIBE_KEY
        );

        CreateGrantRequest grantRequest = CreateGrantRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .name("grant1")
            .granteePrincipal(granteePrincipal)
            .operations(grantPermissions)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().createGrant(grantRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (ex == null) {
                logger.info("Grant created successfully with ID: " +
response.grantId());
            } else {
                if (ex instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create grant: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(CreateGrantResponse::grantId);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new symmetric encryption key asynchronously.
     *
     * @param keyDesc the description of the key to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ID of the newly
created key
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while creating the key
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createKeyAsync(String keyDesc) {
        CreateKeyRequest keyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .description(keyDesc)
            .keySpec(KeySpec.SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.ENCRYPT_DECRYPT)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(keyRequest)
            .thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyId())
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("An error occurred while creating the
key: " + ex.getMessage(), ex);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`Decrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Decrypt`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously decrypts the given encrypted data using the specified key ID.
    *
    * @param encryptedData The encrypted data to be decrypted.
    * @param keyId The ID of the key to be used for decryption.
    * @return A CompletableFuture that, when completed, will contain the decrypted
data as a String.
    *         If an error occurs during the decryption process, the
CompletableFuture will complete
    *         exceptionally with the error, and the method will return an empty
String.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> decryptDataAsync(SdkBytes encryptedData, String
keyId) {
       DecryptRequest decryptRequest = DecryptRequest.builder()
           .ciphertextBlob(encryptedData)
           .keyId(keyId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DecryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().decrypt(decryptRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((decryptResponse, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("Data decrypted successfully for key ID: " + keyId);
           } else {
               if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while decrypting
data: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred while
decrypting data: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           }
       });
```

```
        return responseFuture.thenApply(decryptResponse ->
decryptResponse.plaintext().asString(StandardCharsets.UTF_8));
    }
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlias`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a specific KMS alias asynchronously.
     *
     * @param aliasName the name of the alias to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of deleting the specified alias
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteSpecificAliasAsync(String aliasName) {
        DeleteAliasRequest deleteAliasRequest = DeleteAliasRequest.builder()
            .aliasName(aliasName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteAlias(deleteAliasRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Alias {} has been deleted successfully", aliasName);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete alias: " + aliasName,
throwable);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously checks if a specified key is enabled.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the key to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, indicates whether
the key is enabled or not
     *
     * @throws RuntimeException if an exception occurs while checking the key state
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> isKeyEnabledAsync(String keyId) {
        DescribeKeyRequest keyRequest = DescribeKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<DescribeKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeKey(keyRequest);
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (resp != null) {
                KeyState keyState = resp.keyMetadata().keyState();
                if (keyState == KeyState.ENABLED) {
                    logger.info("The key is enabled.");
                } else {
                    logger.info("The key is not enabled. Key state: {}", keyState);
                }
            } else {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(resp -> resp.keyMetadata().keyState() == KeyState.ENABLED);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DisableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously disables the specified AWS Key Management Service (KMS) key.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID or Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the KMS key to be
disabled
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, indicates that the key has
been disabled successfully
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> disableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        DisableKeyRequest keyRequest = DisableKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().disableKey(keyRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("Key {} has been disabled successfully",keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to disable key: " + keyId,
throwable);
            });
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`EnableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously enables the specified key.
    *
    * @param keyId the ID of the key to enable
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
enabled
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> enableKeyAsync(String keyId) {
       EnableKeyRequest enableKeyRequest = EnableKeyRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<EnableKeyResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().enableKey(enableKeyRequest);
       responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception == null) {
               logger.info("Key with ID [{}] has been enabled.", keyId);
           } else {
               if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred while enabling
key: " + kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred while
enabling key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
```

```
            }
        });

        return responseFuture.thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`Encrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Encrypt`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Encrypts the given text asynchronously using the specified KMS client and key
ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to use for encryption
     * @param text the text to encrypt
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the encrypted data as an
SdkBytes object
     */
    public CompletableFuture<SdkBytes> encryptDataAsync(String keyId, String text) {
        SdkBytes myBytes = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(text);
        EncryptRequest encryptRequest = EncryptRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .plaintext(myBytes)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<EncryptResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().encrypt(encryptRequest).toCompletableFuture();
        return responseFuture.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String algorithm = response.encryptionAlgorithm().toString();
```

```
                logger.info("The string was encrypted with algorithm {}.",
algorithm);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            }
        }).thenApply(EncryptResponse::ciphertextBlob);
    }
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAliases`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all the aliases in the current AWS account.
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the list of aliases
has been processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> listAllAliasesAsync() {
        ListAliasesRequest aliasesRequest = ListAliasesRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        ListAliasesPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listAliasesPaginator(aliasesRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.aliases().forEach(alias ->
                    logger.info("The alias name is: " + alias.aliasName())
                );
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
```

```
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                if (ex.getCause() instanceof KmsException) {
                    KmsException e = (KmsException) ex.getCause();
                    throw new RuntimeException("A KMS exception occurred: " +
e.getMessage());
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
ex.getMessage());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListGrants`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGrants`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously displays the grant IDs for the specified key ID.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to list the grants
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will be null if
the operation succeeded, or will throw a {@link RuntimeException} if the operation
failed
     * @throws RuntimeException if there was an error listing the grants, either due
to an {@link KmsException} or an unexpected error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Object> displayGrantIdsAsync(String keyId) {
        ListGrantsRequest grantsRequest = ListGrantsRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .limit(15)
            .build();
```

```
        ListGrantsPublisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listGrantsPaginator(grantsRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
                response.grants().forEach(grant -> {
                    logger.info("The grant Id is: " + grant.grantId());
                });
            })
            .thenApply(v -> null)
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                Throwable cause = ex.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof KmsException) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list grants: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListKeyPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyPolicies`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the key policy for the specified key ID and policy
name.
     *
     * @param keyId       the ID of the AWS KMS key for which to retrieve the policy
     * @param policyName the name of the key policy to retrieve
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the key
policy as a {@link String}
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> getKeyPolicyAsync(String keyId, String
policyName) {
        GetKeyPolicyRequest policyRequest = GetKeyPolicyRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .policyName(policyName)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().getKeyPolicy(policyRequest)
            .thenApply(response -> {
                String policy = response.policy();
                logger.info("The response is: " + policy);
                return policy;
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get key policy", ex);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeyPolicies in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.model.ListKeysRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.paginators.ListKeysPublisher;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloKMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        listAllKeys();
    }

    public static void listAllKeys() {
        KmsAsyncClient kmsAsyncClient = KmsAsyncClient.builder()
            .build();
        ListKeysRequest listKeysRequest = ListKeysRequest.builder()
            .limit(15)
            .build();

        /*
         * The `subscribe` method is required when using paginator methods in the
 AWS SDK
         * because paginator methods return an instance of a `ListKeysPublisher`,
 which is
         * based on a reactive stream. This allows asynchronous retrieval of
 paginated
         * results as they become available. By subscribing to the stream, we can
 process
         * each page of results as they are emitted.
         */
        ListKeysPublisher keysPublisher =
 kmsAsyncClient.listKeysPaginator(listKeysRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = keysPublisher
            .subscribe(r -> r.keys().forEach(key ->
                System.out.println("The key ARN is: " + key.keyArn() + ". The key Id
 is: " + key.keyId())))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " + exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    System.out.println("Successfully listed all keys.");
                }
            });
```

```
        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list keys: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RevokeGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `RevokeGrant`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Revokes a grant for the specified AWS KMS key asynchronously.
    *
    * @param keyId   The ID or key ARN of the AWS KMS key.
    * @param grantId The identifier of the grant to be revoked.
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the asynchronous operation
of revoking the grant.
    *         The {@link CompletableFuture} will complete with a {@link
RevokeGrantResponse} object
    *         if the operation is successful, or with a {@code null} value if an
error occurs.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> revokeKeyGrantAsync(String keyId,
String grantId) {
       RevokeGrantRequest grantRequest = RevokeGrantRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .grantId(grantId)
           .build();
```

```
        CompletableFuture<RevokeGrantResponse> responseFuture =
getAsyncClient().revokeGrant(grantRequest);
        responseFuture.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception == null) {
                logger.info("Grant ID: [" + grantId + "] was successfully
revoked!");
            } else {
                if (exception instanceof KmsException kmsEx) {
                    if (kmsEx.getMessage().contains("Grant does not exist")) {
                        logger.info("The grant ID '" + grantId + "' does not exist.
Moving on...");
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException("KMS error occurred: " +
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx);
                    }
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException("An unexpected error occurred: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });

        return responseFuture;
    }
```

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ScheduleKeyDeletion`

The following code example shows how to use `ScheduleKeyDeletion`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
    * Deletes a KMS key asynchronously.
    *
    * <p><strong>Warning:</strong> Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and
potentially dangerous operation.
    * When a KMS key is deleted, all data that was encrypted under the KMS key
becomes unrecoverable.
    * This means that any files, databases, or other data that were encrypted using
the deleted KMS key
    * will become permanently inaccessible. Exercise extreme caution when deleting
KMS keys.</p>
    *
    * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key deletion is
scheduled
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKeyAsync(String keyId) {
       ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest deletionRequest =
ScheduleKeyDeletionRequest.builder()
           .keyId(keyId)
           .pendingWindowInDays(7)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().scheduleKeyDeletion(deletionRequest)
           .thenRun(() -> {
               logger.info("Key {} will be deleted in 7 days", keyId);
           })
           .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to schedule key deletion for key
ID: " + keyId, throwable);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Sign

The following code example shows how to use `Sign`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously signs and verifies data using AWS KMS.
     *
     * <p>The method performs the following steps:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Creates an AWS KMS key with the specified key spec, key usage, and
 origin.</li>
     *     <li>Signs the provided message using the created KMS key and the RSASSA-
PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
     *     <li>Verifies the signature of the message using the created KMS key and
 the RSASSA-PSS-SHA-256 algorithm.</li>
     * </ol>
     *
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the
 signature verification,
     *         {@code true} if the signature is valid, {@code false} otherwise.
     * @throws KmsException if any error occurs during the KMS operations.
     * @throws RuntimeException if an unexpected error occurs.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Boolean> signVerifyDataAsync() {
        String signMessage = "Here is the message that will be digitally signed";

        // Create an AWS KMS key used to digitally sign data.
        CreateKeyRequest createKeyRequest = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keySpec(KeySpec.RSA_2048)
            .keyUsage(KeyUsageType.SIGN_VERIFY)
            .origin(OriginType.AWS_KMS)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createKey(createKeyRequest)
            .thenCompose(createKeyResponse -> {
                String keyId = createKeyResponse.keyMetadata().keyId();
```

```
                SdkBytes messageBytes = SdkBytes.fromString(signMessage,
Charset.defaultCharset());
                SignRequest signRequest = SignRequest.builder()
                    .keyId(keyId)
                    .message(messageBytes)
                    .signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().sign(signRequest)
                    .thenCompose(signResponse -> {
                        byte[] signedBytes = signResponse.signature().asByteArray();

                        VerifyRequest verifyRequest = VerifyRequest.builder()
                            .keyId(keyId)

.message(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(signMessage.getBytes(Charset.defaultCharset())))

.signature(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(ByteBuffer.wrap(signedBytes)))

.signingAlgorithm(SigningAlgorithmSpec.RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256)
                            .build();

                        return getAsyncClient().verify(verifyRequest)
                            .thenApply(verifyResponse -> {
                                return (boolean) verifyResponse.signatureValid();
                            });
                    });
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to sign or verify data",
throwable);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously tags a KMS key with a specific tag.
     *
     * @param keyId the ID of the KMS key to be tagged
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tagging operation
is finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> tagKMSKeyAsync(String keyId) {
        Tag tag = Tag.builder()
            .tagKey("Environment")
            .tagValue("Production")
            .build();

        TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
            .keyId(keyId)
            .tags(tag)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().tagResource(tagResourceRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                logger.info("{} key was tagged", keyId);
            })
            .exceptionally(throwable -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to tag the KMS key", throwable);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists the AWS Lambda functions associated with the current AWS account.
     *
     * @param awsLambda an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is used
to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while interacting with the AWS
Lambda service
     */
```

```
    public static void listFunctions(LambdaClient awsLambda) {
        try {
            ListFunctionsResponse functionResult = awsLambda.listFunctions();
            List<FunctionConfiguration> list = functionResult.functions();
            for (FunctionConfiguration config : list) {
                System.out.println("The function name is " + config.functionName());
            }

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
 *  Lambda function names appear as:
 *
 *  arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:335556666777:function:HelloFunction
 *
 *  To find this value, look at the function in the AWS Management Console.
 *
 *  Before running this Java code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 *  For more information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 *  This example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an AWS Lambda function.
 * 2. Gets a specific AWS Lambda function.
 * 3. Lists all Lambda functions.
 * 4. Invokes a Lambda function.
 * 5. Updates the Lambda function code and invokes it again.
 * 6. Updates a Lambda function's configuration value.
 * 7. Deletes a Lambda function.
 */

public class LambdaScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <functionName> <role> <handler> <bucketName> <key>\s
```

```
            Where:
                functionName - The name of the Lambda function.\s
                role - The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) service role
that has Lambda permissions.\s
                handler - The fully qualified method name (for example,
example.Handler::handleRequest).\s
                bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket
name that contains the .zip or .jar used to update the Lambda function's code.\s
                key - The Amazon S3 key name that represents the .zip or .jar (for
example, LambdaHello-1.0-SNAPSHOT.jar).
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
              System.out.println(usage);
              return;
        }

        String functionName = args[0];
        String role = args[1];
        String handler = args[2];
        String bucketName = args[3];
        String key = args[4];
        LambdaClient awsLambda = LambdaClient.builder()
            .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS Lambda Basics scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create an AWS Lambda function.");
        String funArn = createLambdaFunction(awsLambda, functionName, key,
bucketName, role, handler);
        System.out.println("The AWS Lambda ARN is " + funArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Get the " + functionName + " AWS Lambda function.");
        getFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. List all AWS Lambda functions.");
        listFunctions(awsLambda);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Invoke the Lambda function.");
        System.out.println("*** Sleep for 1 min to get Lambda function ready.");
        Thread.sleep(60000);
        invokeFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Update the Lambda function code and invoke it
again.");
        updateFunctionCode(awsLambda, functionName, bucketName, key);
        System.out.println("*** Sleep for 1 min to get Lambda function ready.");
        Thread.sleep(60000);
        invokeFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Update a Lambda function's configuration value.");
        updateFunctionConfiguration(awsLambda, functionName, handler);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Delete the AWS Lambda function.");
        LambdaScenario.deleteLambdaFunction(awsLambda, functionName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The AWS Lambda scenario completed successfully");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        awsLambda.close();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new Lambda function in AWS using the AWS Lambda Java API.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    the AWS Lambda client used to interact with the AWS
Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to create
     * @param key          the S3 key of the function code
     * @param bucketName   the name of the S3 bucket containing the function code
     * @param role         the IAM role to assign to the Lambda function
     * @param handler      the fully qualified class name of the function handler
```

```
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created Lambda function
     */
    public static String createLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda,
                                              String functionName,
                                              String key,
                                              String bucketName,
                                              String role,
                                              String handler) {

        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            FunctionCode code = FunctionCode.builder()
                .s3Key(key)
                .s3Bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest = CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .description("Created by the Lambda Java API")
                .code(code)
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .role(role)
                .build();

            // Create a Lambda function using a waiter
            CreateFunctionResponse functionResponse =
awsLambda.createFunction(functionRequest);
            GetFunctionRequest getFunctionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();
            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter.waitUntilFunctionExists(getFunctionRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return functionResponse.functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Retrieves information about an AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda    an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
    * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to retrieve
information about
    */
   public static void getFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String functionName) {
       try {
           GetFunctionRequest functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .build();

           GetFunctionResponse response = awsLambda.getFunction(functionRequest);
           System.out.println("The runtime of this Lambda function is " +
response.configuration().runtime());

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   /**
    * Lists the AWS Lambda functions associated with the current AWS account.
    *
    * @param awsLambda an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is used
to interact with the AWS Lambda service
    *
    * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while interacting with the AWS
Lambda service
    */
   public static void listFunctions(LambdaClient awsLambda) {
       try {
           ListFunctionsResponse functionResult = awsLambda.listFunctions();
           List<FunctionConfiguration> list = functionResult.functions();
           for (FunctionConfiguration config : list) {
               System.out.println("The function name is " + config.functionName());
           }

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Invokes a specific AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    an instance of {@link LambdaClient} to interact with the
AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to be invoked
     */
    public static void invokeFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String functionName) {
        InvokeResponse res;
        try {
            // Need a SdkBytes instance for the payload.
            JSONObject jsonObj = new JSONObject();
            jsonObj.put("inputValue", "2000");
            String json = jsonObj.toString();
            SdkBytes payload = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(json);

            InvokeRequest request = InvokeRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .payload(payload)
                .build();

            res = awsLambda.invoke(request);
            String value = res.payload().asUtf8String();
            System.out.println(value);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates the code for an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda  the AWS Lambda client
     * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to update
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the function code is
located
     * @param key the key (file name) of the function code in the S3 bucket
     * @throws LambdaException if there is an error updating the function code
     */
```

```
   public static void updateFunctionCode(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String bucketName, String key) {
       try {
           LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
           UpdateFunctionCodeRequest functionCodeRequest =
UpdateFunctionCodeRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .publish(true)
               .s3Bucket(bucketName)
               .s3Key(key)
               .build();

           UpdateFunctionCodeResponse response =
awsLambda.updateFunctionCode(functionCodeRequest);
           GetFunctionConfigurationRequest getFunctionConfigRequest =
GetFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .build();

           WaiterResponse<GetFunctionConfigurationResponse> waiterResponse = waiter
               .waitUntilFunctionUpdated(getFunctionConfigRequest);
           waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
           System.out.println("The last modified value is " +
response.lastModified());

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   /**
    * Updates the configuration of an AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda     the {@link LambdaClient} instance to use for the AWS
Lambda operation
    * @param functionName  the name of the AWS Lambda function to update
    * @param handler       the new handler for the AWS Lambda function
    *
    * @throws LambdaException if there is an error while updating the function
configuration
    */
   public static void updateFunctionConfiguration(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String handler) {
```

```
        try {
            UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest configurationRequest =
 UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .build();

            awsLambda.updateFunctionConfiguration(configurationRequest);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda     an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
 used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName  the name of the Lambda function to be deleted
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while deleting the Lambda function
     */
    public static void deleteLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
 functionName) {
        try {
            DeleteFunctionRequest request = DeleteFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();

            awsLambda.deleteFunction(request);
            System.out.println("The " + functionName + " function was deleted");

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

- CreateFunction
- DeleteFunction
- GetFunction
- Invoke
- ListFunctions
- UpdateFunctionCode
- UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new Lambda function in AWS using the AWS Lambda Java API.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    the AWS Lambda client used to interact with the AWS
Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to create
     * @param key          the S3 key of the function code
     * @param bucketName   the name of the S3 bucket containing the function code
     * @param role         the IAM role to assign to the Lambda function
     * @param handler      the fully qualified class name of the function handler
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created Lambda function
     */
    public static String createLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda,
                                              String functionName,
                                              String key,
                                              String bucketName,
                                              String role,
```

```
                                                String handler) {

        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            FunctionCode code = FunctionCode.builder()
                .s3Key(key)
                .s3Bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest = CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .description("Created by the Lambda Java API")
                .code(code)
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .role(role)
                .build();

            // Create a Lambda function using a waiter
            CreateFunctionResponse functionResponse =
awsLambda.createFunction(functionRequest);
            GetFunctionRequest getFunctionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();
            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter.waitUntilFunctionExists(getFunctionRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            return functionResponse.functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda     an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
    * @param functionName  the name of the Lambda function to be deleted
    *
    * @throws LambdaException if an error occurs while deleting the Lambda function
    */
   public static void deleteLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName) {
       try {
           DeleteFunctionRequest request = DeleteFunctionRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .build();

           awsLambda.deleteFunction(request);
           System.out.println("The " + functionName + " function was deleted");

       } catch (LambdaException e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves information about an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    an instance of the {@link LambdaClient} class, which is
used to interact with the AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to retrieve
information about
     */
    public static void getFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String functionName) {
        try {
            GetFunctionRequest functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .build();

            GetFunctionResponse response = awsLambda.getFunction(functionRequest);
            System.out.println("The runtime of this Lambda function is " +
response.configuration().runtime());

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Invokes a specific AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda    an instance of {@link LambdaClient} to interact with the
AWS Lambda service
     * @param functionName the name of the AWS Lambda function to be invoked
     */
    public static void invokeFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String functionName) {
        InvokeResponse res;
        try {
            // Need a SdkBytes instance for the payload.
            JSONObject jsonObj = new JSONObject();
            jsonObj.put("inputValue", "2000");
            String json = jsonObj.toString();
            SdkBytes payload = SdkBytes.fromUtf8String(json);

            InvokeRequest request = InvokeRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
                .payload(payload)
                .build();

            res = awsLambda.invoke(request);
            String value = res.payload().asUtf8String();
            System.out.println(value);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

UpdateFunctionCode

The following code example shows how to use UpdateFunctionCode.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the code for an AWS Lambda function.
    *
    * @param awsLambda  the AWS Lambda client
    * @param functionName the name of the Lambda function to update
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the function code is
located
    * @param key the key (file name) of the function code in the S3 bucket
    * @throws LambdaException if there is an error updating the function code
    */
   public static void updateFunctionCode(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String bucketName, String key) {
       try {
           LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
           UpdateFunctionCodeRequest functionCodeRequest =
UpdateFunctionCodeRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .publish(true)
               .s3Bucket(bucketName)
               .s3Key(key)
               .build();

           UpdateFunctionCodeResponse response =
awsLambda.updateFunctionCode(functionCodeRequest);
           GetFunctionConfigurationRequest getFunctionConfigRequest =
GetFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
               .functionName(functionName)
               .build();

           WaiterResponse<GetFunctionConfigurationResponse> waiterResponse = waiter
               .waitUntilFunctionUpdated(getFunctionConfigRequest);
```

```
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("The last modified value is " +
response.lastModified());

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Updates the configuration of an AWS Lambda function.
     *
     * @param awsLambda     the {@link LambdaClient} instance to use for the AWS
Lambda operation
     * @param functionName  the name of the AWS Lambda function to update
     * @param handler       the new handler for the AWS Lambda function
     *
     * @throws LambdaException if there is an error while updating the function
configuration
     */
    public static void updateFunctionConfiguration(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String handler) {
        try {
            UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest configurationRequest =
UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .functionName(functionName)
```

```
                .handler(handler)
                .runtime(Runtime.JAVA17)
                .build();

            awsLambda.updateFunctionConfiguration(configurationRequest);

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API.
This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an

Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use the Neptune API to query graph data

The following code example shows how to use the Neptune API to query graph data.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Neptune Java API to create a Lambda function that queries graph data within the VPC.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Neptune

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.RdsDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.Field;

import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;

public class RdsLambdaHandler implements RequestHandler<APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent,
 APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent> {

    @Override
    public APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent handleRequest(APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent
 event, Context context) {
        APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent response = new APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent();

        try {
            // Obtain auth token
```

```
            String token = createAuthToken();

            // Define connection configuration
            String connectionString = String.format("jdbc:mysql://%s:%s/%s?
useSSL=true&requireSSL=true",
                    System.getenv("ProxyHostName"),
                    System.getenv("Port"),
                    System.getenv("DBName"));

            // Establish a connection to the database
            try (Connection connection =
 DriverManager.getConnection(connectionString, System.getenv("DBUserName"), token);
                 PreparedStatement statement = connection.prepareStatement("SELECT ?
 + ? AS sum")) {

                statement.setInt(1, 3);
                statement.setInt(2, 2);

                try (ResultSet resultSet = statement.executeQuery()) {
                    if (resultSet.next()) {
                        int sum = resultSet.getInt("sum");
                        response.setStatusCode(200);
                        response.setBody("The selected sum is: " + sum);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (Exception e) {
            response.setStatusCode(500);
            response.setBody("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }

        return response;
    }

    private String createAuthToken() {
        // Create RDS Data Service client
        RdsDataClient rdsDataClient = RdsDataClient.builder()
                .region(Region.of(System.getenv("AWS_REGION")))
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        // Define authentication request
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
```

```
                .resourceArn(System.getenv("ProxyHostName"))
                .secretArn(System.getenv("DBUserName"))
                .database(System.getenv("DBName"))
                .sql("SELECT 'RDS IAM Authentication'")
                .build();

        // Execute request and obtain authentication token
        ExecuteStatementResponse response = rdsDataClient.executeStatement(request);
        Field tokenField = response.records().get(0).get(0);

        return tokenField.stringValue();
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent, Void> {
```

```
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(final KinesisEvent event, final Context context) {
        LambdaLogger logger = context.getLogger();
        if (event.getRecords().isEmpty()) {
            logger.log("Empty Kinesis Event received");
            return null;
        }
        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord record : event.getRecords()) {
            try {
                logger.log("Processed Event with EventId: "+record.getEventID());
                String data = new String(record.getKinesis().getData().array());
                logger.log("Data:"+ data);
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            }
            catch (Exception ex) {
                logger.log("An error occurred:"+ex.getMessage());
                throw ex;
            }
        }
        logger.log("Successfully processed:"+event.getRecords().size()+" records");
        return null;
    }

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;

public class example implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent, Void> {

    private static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder().setPrettyPrinting().create();

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(DynamodbEvent event, Context context) {
        System.out.println(GSON.toJson(event));
        event.getRecords().forEach(this::logDynamoDBRecord);
        return null;
    }

    private void logDynamoDBRecord(DynamodbStreamRecord record) {
        System.out.println(record.getEventID());
        System.out.println(record.getEventName());
        System.out.println("DynamoDB Record: " + GSON.toJson(record.getDynamodb()));
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Java.

```
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<Map<String, Object>, String> {

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(Map<String, Object> event, Context context) {
        List<Map<String, Object>> events = (List<Map<String, Object>>)
 event.get("events");
        for (Map<String, Object> record : events) {
            Map<String, Object> eventData = (Map<String, Object>)
 record.get("event");
            processEventData(eventData);
        }

        return "OK";
    }

    @SuppressWarnings("unchecked")
    private void processEventData(Map<String, Object> eventData) {
        String operationType = (String) eventData.get("operationType");
        System.out.println("operationType: %s".formatted(operationType));

        Map<String, Object> ns = (Map<String, Object>) eventData.get("ns");

        String db = (String) ns.get("db");
        System.out.println("db: %s".formatted(db));
        String coll = (String) ns.get("coll");
        System.out.println("coll: %s".formatted(coll));

        Map<String, Object> fullDocument = (Map<String, Object>)
 eventData.get("fullDocument");
        System.out.println("fullDocument: %s".formatted(fullDocument));
    }

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent.KafkaEventRecord;

import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Map;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<KafkaEvent, Void> {

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(KafkaEvent event, Context context) {
        for (Map.Entry<String, java.util.List<KafkaEventRecord>> entry :
 event.getRecords().entrySet()) {
            String key = entry.getKey();
            System.out.println("Key: " + key);

            for (KafkaEventRecord record : entry.getValue()) {
                System.out.println("Record: " + record);

                byte[] value = Base64.getDecoder().decode(record.getValue());
                String message = new String(value);
                System.out.println("Message: " + message);
            }
        }
```

```
        return null;
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.S3Event;
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.s3.S3EventNotification.S3EventNotificat

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<S3Event, String> {
```

```
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(Handler.class);
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(S3Event s3event, Context context) {
        try {
          S3EventNotificationRecord record = s3event.getRecords().get(0);
          String srcBucket = record.getS3().getBucket().getName();
          String srcKey = record.getS3().getObject().getUrlDecodedKey();

          S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder().build();
          HeadObjectResponse headObject = getHeadObject(s3Client, srcBucket,
 srcKey);

          logger.info("Successfully retrieved " + srcBucket + "/" + srcKey + " of
 type " + headObject.contentType());

          return "Ok";
        } catch (Exception e) {
          throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private HeadObjectResponse getHeadObject(S3Client s3Client, String bucket,
 String key) {
        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucket)
                .key(key)
                .build();
        return s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
    }
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent.SNSRecord;


import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;

public class SNSEventHandler implements RequestHandler<SNSEvent, Boolean> {
    LambdaLogger logger;

    @Override
    public Boolean handleRequest(SNSEvent event, Context context) {
        logger = context.getLogger();
        List<SNSRecord> records = event.getRecords();
        if (!records.isEmpty()) {
            Iterator<SNSRecord> recordsIter = records.iterator();
            while (recordsIter.hasNext()) {
                processRecord(recordsIter.next());
            }
        }
        return Boolean.TRUE;
    }

    public void processRecord(SNSRecord record) {
        try {
            String message = record.getSNS().getMessage();
```

```
            logger.log("message: " + message);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent.SQSMessage;

public class Function implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {
        for (SQSMessage msg : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            processMessage(msg, context);
        }
```

```
        context.getLogger().log("done");
        return null;
    }

    private void processMessage(SQSMessage msg, Context context) {
        try {
            context.getLogger().log("Processed message " + msg.getBody());

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message

        } catch (Exception e) {
            context.getLogger().log("An error occurred");
            throw e;
        }

    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KinesisEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;
```

```
import java.io.Serializable;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessKinesisRecords implements RequestHandler<KinesisEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(KinesisEvent input, Context context) {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (KinesisEvent.KinesisEventRecord kinesisEventRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //Process your record
                KinesisEvent.Record kinesisRecord = kinesisEventRecord.getKinesis();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = kinesisRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
                   Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

       return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.DynamodbEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.StreamsEventResponse;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.dynamodb.StreamRecord;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessDynamodbRecords implements RequestHandler<DynamodbEvent,
 StreamsEventResponse> {

    @Override
    public StreamsEventResponse handleRequest(DynamodbEvent input, Context context)
 {

        List<StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<>();
        String curRecordSequenceNumber = "";

        for (DynamodbEvent.DynamodbStreamRecord dynamodbStreamRecord :
 input.getRecords()) {
          try {
                //Process your record
                StreamRecord dynamodbRecord = dynamodbStreamRecord.getDynamodb();
                curRecordSequenceNumber = dynamodbRecord.getSequenceNumber();

            } catch (Exception e) {
                /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
```

```
                    Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this
 failed item onwards. */
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 StreamsEventResponse.BatchItemFailure(curRecordSequenceNumber));
                return new StreamsEventResponse(batchItemFailures);
            }
        }

        return new StreamsEventResponse();
    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSBatchResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessSQSMessageBatch implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent,
 SQSBatchResponse> {
```

```
    @Override
    public SQSBatchResponse handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {

        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        String messageId = "";
        for (SQSEvent.SQSMessage message : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //process your message
            } catch (Exception e) {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure(message.getMessageId()));
            }
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Java SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon Lex examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Lex.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Building an Amazon Lex chatbot

The following code example shows how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Location examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Location.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Location Service

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Location Service.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * In addition, you need to create a collection using the AWS Management
 * console. For information, see the following documentation.
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/location/latest/developerguide/geofence-gs.html

 */
public class HelloLocation {

    private static LocationAsyncClient locationAsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloLocation.class);

    // This Singleton pattern ensures that only one `LocationClient`
    // instance.
    private static LocationAsyncClient getClient() {
```

```
        if (locationAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            locationAsyncClient = LocationAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return locationAsyncClient;
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <collectionName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The Amazon location collection name.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionName = args[0];
        listGeofences(collectionName);
    }

    /**
     * Lists geofences from a specified geofence collection asynchronously.
```

```
     *
     * @param collectionName The name of the geofence collection to list geofences
 from.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} representing the result of the
 asynchronous operation.
     *         The future completes when all geofences have been processed and
 logged.
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listGeofences(String collectionName) {
        ListGeofencesRequest geofencesRequest = ListGeofencesRequest.builder()
                .collectionName(collectionName)
                .build();

        ListGeofencesPublisher paginator =
 getClient().listGeofencesPaginator(geofencesRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            if (response.entries().isEmpty()) {
                logger.info("No Geofences were found in the collection.");
            } else {
                response.entries().forEach(geofence ->
                        logger.info("Geofence ID: " + geofence.geofenceId())
                );
            }
        });
        return future;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Location map.
- Create an Amazon Location API key.
- Display Map URL.
- Create a geofence collection.
- Store a geofence geometry.
- Create a tracker resource.
- Update the position of a device.
- Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.
- Create a route calculator.
- Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver.
- Use Amazon Location higher level APIs.
- Delete the Amazon Location Assets.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon Location Service features.

```
/*
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
```

```
 */
public class LocationScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(LocationScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    static LocationActions locationActions = new LocationActions();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <mapName> <keyName> <collectionName> <geoId> <trackerName>
 <calculatorName> <deviceId>

            Where:
              mapName - The name of the map to be create (e.g., "AWSMap").
              keyName - The name of the API key to create (e.g., "AWSApiKey").
              collectionName - The name of the geofence collection (e.g.,
 "AWSLocationCollection").
              geoId - The geographic identifier used for the geofence or map (e.g.,
 "geoId").
              trackerName - The name of the tracker (e.g., "geoTracker").
              calculatorName - The name of the route calculator (e.g.,
 "AWSRouteCalc").
              deviceId - The ID of the device (e.g., "iPhone-112356").
            """;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String mapName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        String collectionName = args[2];
        String geoId = args[3];
        String trackerName = args[4];
        String calculatorName = args[5];
        String deviceId = args[6];

        logger.info("""
```

```
            AWS Location Service is a fully managed service offered by Amazon Web
Services (AWS) that
            provides location-based services for developers. This service simplifies
            the integration of location-based features into applications, making it
            easier to build and deploy location-aware applications.

            The AWS Location Service offers a range of location-based services,
            including:

            Maps: The service provides access to high-quality maps, satellite
imagery,\s
            and geospatial data from various providers, allowing developers to\s
            easily embed maps into their applications.

            Tracking: The Location Service enables real-time tracking of mobile
devices,\s
            assets, or other entities, allowing developers to build applications\s
            that can monitor the location of people, vehicles, or other objects.

            Geocoding: The service provides the ability to convert addresses or\s
            location names into geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude),\s
            and vice versa, enabling developers to integrate location-based search\s
            and routing functionality into their applications.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            runScenario(mapName, keyName, collectionName, geoId, trackerName,
calculatorName, deviceId);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            // Clean up AWS Resources.
            cleanUp(mapName, keyName, collectionName, trackerName, calculatorName);
            logger.info(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void runScenario(String mapName, String keyName, String
collectionName, String geoId, String trackerName, String calculatorName, String
deviceId) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a map");
        logger.info("""
             An AWS Location map can enhance the user experience of your
             application by providing accurate and personalized location-based
             features. For example, you could use the geocoding capabilities to
```

```
             allow users to search for and locate businesses, landmarks, or
             other points of interest within a specific region.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String mapArn;
        try {
            mapArn = locationActions.createMap(mapName).join();
            logger.info("The Map ARN is: {}", mapArn);  // Log success in calling
code
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                logger.error("The request exceeded the maximum quota: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating the map.",
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create an AWS Location API key");
        logger.info("""
            When you embed a map in a web app or website, the API key is
            included in the map tile URL to authenticate requests. You can
            restrict API keys to specific AWS Location operations (e.g., only
            maps, not geocoding). API keys can expire, ensuring temporary
            access control.
            """);

        try {
            String keyArn = locationActions.createKey(keyName, mapArn).join();
            logger.info("The API key was successfully created: {}", keyArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof AccessDeniedException) {
                logger.error("Request was denied: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating the API
key.", cause);
```

```
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Display Map URL");
        logger.info("""
            In order to get the MAP URL, you need to get the API Key value.
            You can get the key value using the AWS Management Console under
            Location Services. This operation cannot be completed using the
            AWS SDK. For more information about getting the key value, see
            the AWS Location Documentation.
            """);
        String mapUrl = "https://maps.geo.aws.amazon.com/maps/v0/maps/"+mapName+"/
tiles/{z}/{x}/{y}?key={KeyValue}";
        logger.info("Embed this URL in your Web app: " + mapUrl);
        logger.info("");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Create a geofence collection, which manages and stores
 geofences.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String collectionArn =
 locationActions.createGeofenceCollection(collectionName).join();
            logger.info("The geofence collection was successfully created: {}",
 collectionArn);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("A conflict occurred: {}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred while creating the
 geofence collection.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. Store a geofence geometry in a given geofence collection.");
        logger.info("""
            An AWS Location geofence is a virtual boundary that defines a geographic
area
            on a map. It is a useful feature for tracking the location of
            assets or monitoring the movement of objects within a specific region.

            To define a geofence, you need to specify the coordinates of a
            polygon that represents the area of interest. The polygon must be
            defined in a counter-clockwise direction, meaning that the points of
            the polygon must be listed in a counter-clockwise order.

            This is a requirement for the AWS Location service to correctly
            interpret the geofence and ensure that the location data is
            accurately processed within the defined area.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            locationActions.putGeofence(collectionName, geoId).join();
            logger.info("Successfully created geofence: {}", geoId);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                logger.error("A validation error occurred while creating geofence:
{}", cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("6. Create a tracker resource which lets you retrieve current
and historical location of devices..");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            String trackerArn = locationActions.createTracker(trackerName).join();
            logger.info("Successfully created tracker. ARN: {}", trackerArn);  //
Log success
```

```
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.error("A conflict occurred while creating the tracker: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Update the position of a device in the location tracking
system.");
        logger.info("""
            The AWS location service does not enforce a strict format for deviceId,
but it must:
              - Be a string (case-sensitive).
              - Be 1-100 characters long.
              - Contain only:
                - Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9)
                - Underscores (_)
                - Hyphens (-)
                - Be the same ID used when sending and retrieving positions.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse> future =
locationActions.updateDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId);
            future.join();
            logger.info(deviceId + " was successfully updated in the location
tracking system.");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
```

```
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("8. Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified
device..");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            GetDevicePositionResponse response =
locationActions.getDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId).join();
            logger.info("Successfully fetched device position: {}",
response.position());
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("9. Create a route calculator.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CreateRouteCalculatorResponse response =
locationActions.createRouteCalculator(calculatorName).join();
            logger.info("Route calculator created successfully: {}",
response.calculatorArn());
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                logger.info("A conflict occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
```

```
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("10. Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver using
the route calculator.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CalculateRouteResponse response =
locationActions.calcDistanceAsync(calculatorName).join();
            logger.info("Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers
is {}", response.summary().distance());
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("11. Use the GeoPlacesAsyncClient to perform additional
operations.");
        logger.info("""
            This scenario will show use of the GeoPlacesClient that enables
            location search and geocoding capabilities for your applications.\s

            We are going to use this client to perform these AWS Location tasks:
             - Reverse Geocoding (reverseGeocode): Converts geographic coordinates
into addresses.
             - Place Search (searchText): Finds places based on search queries.
             - Nearby Search (searchNearby): Finds places near a specific location.
            """);

        logger.info("First we will perform a Reverse Geocoding operation");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            locationActions.reverseGeocode().join();
```

```
            logger.info("Now we are going to perform a text search using coffee
shop.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            locationActions.searchText("coffee shop").join();
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

            logger.info("Now we are going to perform a nearby Search.");
            //waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            locationActions.searchNearBy().join();
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                logger.error("A validation error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info("12. Delete the AWS Location Services resources.");
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the AWS Location Services resources?
(y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            cleanUp(mapName, keyName, collectionName, trackerName, calculatorName);
        } else {
            logger.info("The AWS resources will not be deleted.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info(" This concludes the AWS Location Service scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    /**
     * Cleans up resources by deleting the specified map, key, geofence collection,
tracker, and route calculator.
```

```
     *
     * @param mapName The name of the map to delete.
     * @param keyName The name of the key to delete.
     * @param collectionName The name of the geofence collection to delete.
     * @param trackerName The name of the tracker to delete.
     * @param calculatorName The name of the route calculator to delete.
     */
    private static void cleanUp(String mapName, String keyName, String
 collectionName, String trackerName, String calculatorName) {
        try {
            locationActions.deleteMap(mapName).join();
            locationActions.deleteKey(keyName).join();
            locationActions.deleteGeofenceCollectionAsync(collectionName).join();
            locationActions.deleteTracker(trackerName).join();
            locationActions.deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.info("The resource was not found: {}", cause.getMessage(),
 cause);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
 cause);
            }
            return;
        }
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon Location Service SDK methods.

```
public class LocationActions {

    private static LocationAsyncClient locationAsyncClient;

    private static GeoPlacesAsyncClient geoPlacesAsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(LocationActions.class);

    // This Singleton pattern ensures that only one `LocationClient`
    // instance is used throughout the application.
    private LocationAsyncClient getClient() {
        if (locationAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            locationAsyncClient = LocationAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return locationAsyncClient;
    }

    private static GeoPlacesAsyncClient getGeoPlacesClient() {
        if (geoPlacesAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
```

```
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            geoPlacesAsyncClient = GeoPlacesAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return geoPlacesAsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Performs a nearby places search based on the provided geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude).
     * The method sends an asynchronous request to search for places within a 1-
kilometer radius of the specified location.
     * The results are processed and printed once the search completes successfully.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<SearchNearbyResponse> searchNearBy() {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        // Set up the request for searching nearby places.
        SearchNearbyRequest request = SearchNearbyRequest.builder()
            .queryPosition(queryPosition)  // Set the position
            .queryRadius(1000L)  // Radius in meters (1000 meters = 1 km).
            .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchNearby(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred:
" + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place search",
exception);
                }

                // Process the response and print the results.
                response.resultItems().forEach(result -> {
                    logger.info("Place Name: " + result.placeType().name());
                    logger.info("Address: " + result.address().label());
                    logger.info("Distance: " + result.distance() + " meters");
                    logger.info("-------------------------");
                });
            });
    }


    /**
     * Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the detailed
information of the first result.
     *
     * @param searchQuery the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
coffee shop)
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> searchText(String searchQuery) {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        SearchTextRequest request = SearchTextRequest.builder()
                .queryText(searchQuery)
                .biasPosition(queryPosition)
                .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchText(request)
                .thenCompose(response -> {
                    if (response.resultItems().isEmpty()) {
                        logger.info("No places found.");
                        return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                    }

                    // Get the first place ID
                    String placeId = response.resultItems().get(0).placeId();
```

```
                    logger.info("Found Place with id: " + placeId);

                    // Fetch detailed info using getPlace
                    GetPlaceRequest getPlaceRequest = GetPlaceRequest.builder()
                            .placeId(placeId)
                            .build();

                    return getGeoPlacesClient().getPlace(getPlaceRequest)
                            .thenAccept(placeResponse -> {
                                logger.info("Detailed Place Information:");
                                logger.info("Name: " +
 placeResponse.placeType().name());
                                logger.info("Address: " +
 placeResponse.address().label());

                                if (placeResponse.foodTypes() != null && !
placeResponse.foodTypes().isEmpty()) {
                                    logger.info("Food Types:");
                                    placeResponse.foodTypes().forEach(foodType -> {
                                        logger.info("  - " + foodType);
                                    });
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("No food types available.");
                                }
                                logger.info("-------------------------");
                            });
                })
                .exceptionally(exception -> {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred:
 " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place search",
 exception);
                });
    }



    /**
     * Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
```

```
    * Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates
(latitude and longitude) to a human-readable address.
    * This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input,
and prints the resulting address.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> reverseGeocode() {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;
       logger.info("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194");

       // AWS expects [longitude, latitude].
       List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);
       ReverseGeocodeRequest request = ReverseGeocodeRequest.builder()
           .queryPosition(queryPosition)
           .build();
       CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> futureResponse =
           getGeoPlacesClient().reverseGeocode(request);

       return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
               Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                   throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
               }
               throw new CompletionException("Error performing reverse geocoding",
exception);
           }

           response.resultItems().forEach(result ->
               logger.info("The address is: " + result.address().label())
           );
       });
   }


   /**
    * Calculates the distance between two locations asynchronously.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the route
    */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<CalculateRouteResponse> calcDistanceAsync(String
routeCalcName) {
       // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
       List<Double> departurePosition = Arrays.asList(-122.3321, 47.6062);
       List<Double> arrivePosition = Arrays.asList(-123.1216, 49.2827);

       CalculateRouteRequest request = CalculateRouteRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .departurePosition(departurePosition)
           .destinationPosition(arrivePosition)
           .travelMode("Car") // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
           .distanceUnit("Kilometers") // Options: Meters, Kilometers, Miles
           .build();

       return getClient().calculateRoute(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to calculate route: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateRouteCalculatorResponse>
createRouteCalculator(String routeCalcName) {
       String dataSource = "Esri"; // or "Here"
       CreateRouteCalculatorRequest request =
CreateRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .dataSource(dataSource)
           .build();

       return getClient().createRouteCalculator(request)
```

```
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict error occurred: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create route
calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
     *
     * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
     * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
     * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error fetching the device position.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetDevicePositionResponse> getDevicePosition(String
trackerName, String deviceId) {
        GetDevicePositionRequest request = GetDevicePositionRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .deviceId(deviceId)
            .build();

        return getClient().getDevicePosition(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error fetching device position: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
```

```
    * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
    * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while updating the device
position
    */
   public CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse>
updateDevicePosition(String trackerName, String deviceId) {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // Example: San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;

       DevicePositionUpdate positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate.builder()
           .deviceId(deviceId)
           .sampleTime(Instant.now()) // Timestamp of position update.
           .position(Arrays.asList(longitude, latitude)) // AWS requires
[longitude, latitude]
           .build();

       BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest request =
BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest.builder()
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .updates(positionUpdate)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse> futureResponse =
getClient().batchUpdateDevicePosition(request);
       return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
               Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                   throw new CompletionException("The resource was not found: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
               } else {
                   throw new CompletionException("Error updating device position: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           }
       });
   }


   /**
```

```
    * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to
track the location of devices.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createTracker(String trackerName) {
       CreateTrackerRequest trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest.builder()
           .description("Created using the Java V2 SDK")
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .positionFiltering("TimeBased") // Options: TimeBased, DistanceBased,
AccuracyBased
           .build();

       return getClient().createTracker(trackerRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("Conflict occurred while
creating tracker: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Error creating tracker: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           })
           .thenApply(CreateTrackerResponse::trackerArn); // Return only the
tracker ARN
   }




   /**
    * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
    *
    * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the geofence
to
    * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutGeofenceResponse> putGeofence(String collectionName,
String geoId) {
       // Define the geofence geometry (polygon).
       GeofenceGeometry geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry.builder()
```

```
            .polygon(List.of(
                List.of(
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101), // First point
                    List.of(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                    List.of(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101) // Closing the polygon
                )
            ))
            .build();

        PutGeofenceRequest geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName) // Specify the collection.
            .geofenceId(geoId) // Unique ID for the geofence.
            .geometry(geofenceGeometry)
            .build();

        return getClient().putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Validation error while
creating geofence: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error creating geofence: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new geofence collection.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createGeofenceCollection(String collectionName)
{
        CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .build();
```

```
        return getClient().createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The geofence collection was
not created due to ConflictException.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.collectionArn()); // Return only the ARN
    }




    /**
     * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
     * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which
the API key will be associated
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon Resource
Name (ARN) of the created API key,
     * or {@code null} if the operation failed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createKey(String keyName, String mapArn) {
        ApiKeyRestrictions keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions.builder()
            .allowActions("geo:GetMap*")
            .allowResources(mapArn)
            .build();

        CreateKeyRequest request = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .restrictions(keyRestrictions)
            .noExpiry(true)
            .build();

        return getClient().createKey(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof AccessDeniedException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The request was denied
because of insufficient access or permissions.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create API key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.keyArn()); // This will never return
null if the response reaches here
    }



    /**
     * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while creating the map, such
as exceeding the service quota
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMap(String mapName) {
        MapConfiguration configuration = MapConfiguration.builder()
            .style("VectorEsriNavigation")
            .build();

        CreateMapRequest mapRequest = CreateMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .configuration(configuration)
            .description("A map created using the Java V2 API")
            .build();

        return getClient().createMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                    }
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.mapArn()); // Return the map ARN
    }




    /**
     * Deletes a geofence collection asynchronously.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence
collection has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteGeofenceCollectionAsync(String
collectionName) {
        DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested geofence
collection was not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The geofence collection {} was deleted.",
collectionName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }




    /**
     * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
```

```
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if the key was not found or if an error occurred
during the deletion process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKey(String keyName) {
        DeleteKeyRequest keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteKey(keyRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The key was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The key {} was deleted.", keyName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a map with the specified name.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the map deletion is
successful, or throws a {@link CompletionException} if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteMap(String mapName) {
        DeleteMapRequest mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The map was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The map {} was deleted.", mapName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
     *
     * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tracker has been
deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the tracker
     *                             - if the tracker was not found, a {@link
ResourceNotFoundException} is thrown wrapped in the CompletionException
     *                             - if any other error occurs, a generic
CompletionException is thrown with the error message
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteTracker(String trackerName) {
        DeleteTrackerRequest trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The tracker was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the tracker: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The tracker {} was deleted.", trackerName);
            })
```

```
            .thenApply(response -> null); // Ensures CompletableFuture<Void>
    }


    /**
     * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
     *
     * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the route calculator
 has been deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the route
 calculator
     *                             - If the route calculator was not found, a {@link
 ResourceNotFoundException} will be thrown
     *                             - If any other error occurs, a generic {@link
 CompletionException} will be thrown
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteRouteCalculator(String calcName) {
        DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest calculatorRequest =
 DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
            .calculatorName(calcName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The route calculator was not
 found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the route
 calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The route calculator {} was deleted.", calcName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
}
```

Actions

`BatchUpdateDevicePosition`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchUpdateDevicePosition`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
    * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
    * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while updating the device
position
    */
   public CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse>
updateDevicePosition(String trackerName, String deviceId) {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // Example: San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;

       DevicePositionUpdate positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate.builder()
           .deviceId(deviceId)
           .sampleTime(Instant.now()) // Timestamp of position update.
           .position(Arrays.asList(longitude, latitude)) // AWS requires
[longitude, latitude]
           .build();

       BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest request =
BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest.builder()
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .updates(positionUpdate)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<BatchUpdateDevicePositionResponse> futureResponse =
getClient().batchUpdateDevicePosition(request);
```

```
        return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
            if (exception != null) {
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("The resource was not found: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                } else {
                    throw new CompletionException("Error updating device position: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchUpdateDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CalculateRoute`

The following code example shows how to use `CalculateRoute`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Calculates the distance between two locations asynchronously.
     *
     * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the route
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CalculateRouteResponse> calcDistanceAsync(String
routeCalcName) {
        // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
        List<Double> departurePosition = Arrays.asList(-122.3321, 47.6062);
        List<Double> arrivePosition = Arrays.asList(-123.1216, 49.2827);
```

```
        CalculateRouteRequest request = CalculateRouteRequest.builder()
            .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
            .departurePosition(departurePosition)
            .destinationPosition(arrivePosition)
            .travelMode("Car") // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
            .distanceUnit("Kilometers") // Options: Meters, Kilometers, Miles
            .build();

        return getClient().calculateRoute(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to calculate route: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CalculateRoute in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateGeofenceCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGeofenceCollection`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new geofence collection.
```

```
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createGeofenceCollection(String collectionName)
{
        CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
            .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
            .build();

        return getClient().createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The geofence collection was
not created due to ConflictException.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.collectionArn()); // Return only the ARN
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
    *
    * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
    * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which
the API key will be associated
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the Amazon Resource
Name (ARN) of the created API key,
    * or {@code null} if the operation failed
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createKey(String keyName, String mapArn) {
       ApiKeyRestrictions keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions.builder()
           .allowActions("geo:GetMap*")
           .allowResources(mapArn)
           .build();

       CreateKeyRequest request = CreateKeyRequest.builder()
           .keyName(keyName)
           .restrictions(keyRestrictions)
           .noExpiry(true)
           .build();

       return getClient().createKey(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof AccessDeniedException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The request was denied
because of insufficient access or permissions.", cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to create API key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           })
           .thenApply(response -> response.keyArn()); // This will never return
null if the response reaches here
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateMap`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMap`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while creating the map, such
as exceeding the service quota
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createMap(String mapName) {
        MapConfiguration configuration = MapConfiguration.builder()
            .style("VectorEsriNavigation")
            .build();

        CreateMapRequest mapRequest = CreateMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .configuration(configuration)
            .description("A map created using the Java V2 API")
            .build();

        return getClient().createMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
```

```
                }
            })
            .thenApply(response -> response.mapArn()); // Return the map ARN
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMap in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateRouteCalculator`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRouteCalculator`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
    *
    * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateRouteCalculatorResponse>
createRouteCalculator(String routeCalcName) {
       String dataSource = "Esri"; // or "Here"
       CreateRouteCalculatorRequest request =
CreateRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(routeCalcName)
           .dataSource(dataSource)
           .build();

       return getClient().createRouteCalculator(request)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
```

```
                        throw new CompletionException("A conflict error occurred: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to create route
calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTracker`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to
track the location of devices.
     *
     * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the
Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createTracker(String trackerName) {
        CreateTrackerRequest trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest.builder()
            .description("Created using the Java V2 SDK")
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .positionFiltering("TimeBased") // Options: TimeBased, DistanceBased,
AccuracyBased
            .build();
```

```
        return getClient().createTracker(trackerRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ConflictException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Conflict occurred while
creating tracker: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error creating tracker: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            })
            .thenApply(CreateTrackerResponse::trackerArn); // Return only the
tracker ARN
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteGeofenceCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGeofenceCollection`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a geofence collection asynchronously.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence
collection has been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteGeofenceCollectionAsync(String
collectionName) {
```

```
        DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The requested geofence
collection was not found.", cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete geofence
collection: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The geofence collection {} was deleted.",
collectionName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKey`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
```

```
     *
     * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the key has been
deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if the key was not found or if an error occurred
during the deletion process
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteKey(String keyName) {
        DeleteKeyRequest keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest.builder()
            .keyName(keyName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteKey(keyRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The key was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete key: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The key {} was deleted.", keyName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKey in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteMap`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMap`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a map with the specified name.
     *
     * @param mapName the name of the map to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the map deletion is
successful, or throws a {@link CompletionException} if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteMap(String mapName) {
        DeleteMapRequest mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest.builder()
            .mapName(mapName)
            .build();

        return getClient().deleteMap(mapRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The map was not found.",
cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete map: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The map {} was deleted.", mapName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMap in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteRouteCalculator`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRouteCalculator`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
    *
    * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the route calculator
has been deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the route
calculator
    *                             - If the route calculator was not found, a {@link
ResourceNotFoundException} will be thrown
    *                             - If any other error occurs, a generic {@link
CompletionException} will be thrown
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteRouteCalculator(String calcName) {
       DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest calculatorRequest =
DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest.builder()
           .calculatorName(calcName)
           .build();

       return getClient().deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The route calculator was not
found.", cause);
                   }
                   throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the route
calculator: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
               logger.info("The route calculator {} was deleted.", calcName);
           })
           .thenApply(response -> null);
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTracker`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
    *
    * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the tracker has been
deleted
    * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs while deleting the tracker
    *                             - if the tracker was not found, a {@link
ResourceNotFoundException} is thrown wrapped in the CompletionException
    *                             - if any other error occurs, a generic
CompletionException is thrown with the error message
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteTracker(String trackerName) {
       DeleteTrackerRequest trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest.builder()
           .trackerName(trackerName)
           .build();

       return getClient().deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The tracker was not found.",
cause);
```

```
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete the tracker: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
                logger.info("The tracker {} was deleted.", trackerName);
            })
            .thenApply(response -> null); // Ensures CompletableFuture<Void>
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetDevicePosition`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDevicePosition`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
     *
     * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
     * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
     * @throws RuntimeException If there is an error fetching the device position.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<GetDevicePositionResponse> getDevicePosition(String
trackerName, String deviceId) {
        GetDevicePositionRequest request = GetDevicePositionRequest.builder()
            .trackerName(trackerName)
            .deviceId(deviceId)
            .build();

        return getClient().getDevicePosition(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
```

```
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The AWS resource was not
found: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error fetching device position: "
+ exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutGeofence`

The following code example shows how to use `PutGeofence`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
     *
     * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the geofence
to
     * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutGeofenceResponse> putGeofence(String collectionName,
String geoId) {
        // Define the geofence geometry (polygon).
        GeofenceGeometry geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry.builder()
            .polygon(List.of(
                List.of(
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101), // First point
                    List.of(-122.3281, 47.6101),
```

```
                    List.of(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                    List.of(-122.3381, 47.6101) // Closing the polygon
                )
            ))
            .build();

        PutGeofenceRequest geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest.builder()
            .collectionName(collectionName) // Specify the collection.
            .geofenceId(geoId) // Unique ID for the geofence.
            .geometry(geofenceGeometry)
            .build();

        return getClient().putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Validation error while
creating geofence: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error creating geofence: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see PutGeofence in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Location Service Places examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Location Service Places.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

ReverseGeocode

The following code example shows how to use ReverseGeocode.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
    * Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates
(latitude and longitude) to a human-readable address.
    * This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input,
and prints the resulting address.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> reverseGeocode() {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;
       logger.info("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194");

       // AWS expects [longitude, latitude].
       List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);
       ReverseGeocodeRequest request = ReverseGeocodeRequest.builder()
           .queryPosition(queryPosition)
           .build();
       CompletableFuture<ReverseGeocodeResponse> futureResponse =
           getGeoPlacesClient().reverseGeocode(request);

       return futureResponse.whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
           if (exception != null) {
               Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
               if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
```

```
                    throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }
                throw new CompletionException("Error performing reverse geocoding",
 exception);
            }

            response.resultItems().forEach(result ->
                logger.info("The address is: " + result.address().label())
            );
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ReverseGeocode in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SearchNearby`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchNearby`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Performs a nearby places search based on the provided geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude).
     * The method sends an asynchronous request to search for places within a 1-
kilometer radius of the specified location.
     * The results are processed and printed once the search completes successfully.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<SearchNearbyResponse> searchNearBy() {
        double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
        double longitude = -122.4194;
        List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

        // Set up the request for searching nearby places.
```

```
        SearchNearbyRequest request = SearchNearbyRequest.builder()
            .queryPosition(queryPosition)  // Set the position
            .queryRadius(1000L)  // Radius in meters (1000 meters = 1 km).
            .build();

        return getGeoPlacesClient().searchNearby(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred:
" + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place search",
exception);
                }

                // Process the response and print the results.
                response.resultItems().forEach(result -> {
                    logger.info("Place Name: " + result.placeType().name());
                    logger.info("Address: " + result.address().label());
                    logger.info("Distance: " + result.distance() + " meters");
                    logger.info("-------------------------");
                });
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchNearby in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SearchText`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchText`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the detailed
information of the first result.
    *
    * @param searchQuery the search query to be used for the place search (ex,
coffee shop)
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> searchText(String searchQuery) {
       double latitude = 37.7749;  // San Francisco
       double longitude = -122.4194;
       List<Double> queryPosition = List.of(longitude, latitude);

       SearchTextRequest request = SearchTextRequest.builder()
               .queryText(searchQuery)
               .biasPosition(queryPosition)
               .build();

       return getGeoPlacesClient().searchText(request)
               .thenCompose(response -> {
                   if (response.resultItems().isEmpty()) {
                       logger.info("No places found.");
                       return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                   }

                   // Get the first place ID
                   String placeId = response.resultItems().get(0).placeId();
                   logger.info("Found Place with id: " + placeId);

                   // Fetch detailed info using getPlace
                   GetPlaceRequest getPlaceRequest = GetPlaceRequest.builder()
                           .placeId(placeId)
                           .build();

                   return getGeoPlacesClient().getPlace(getPlaceRequest)
                           .thenAccept(placeResponse -> {
                               logger.info("Detailed Place Information:");
                               logger.info("Name: " +
placeResponse.placeType().name());
                               logger.info("Address: " +
placeResponse.address().label());
```

```
                                if (placeResponse.foodTypes() != null && !
placeResponse.foodTypes().isEmpty()) {
                                    logger.info("Food Types:");
                                    placeResponse.foodTypes().forEach(foodType -> {
                                        logger.info("  - " + foodType);
                                    });
                                } else {
                                    logger.info("No food types available.");
                                }
                                logger.info("-------------------------");
                            });
                })
                .exceptionally(exception -> {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.geoplaces.model.ValidationException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("A validation error occurred:
 " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Error performing place search",
 exception);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see SearchText in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS Marketplace Catalog API examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS Marketplace Catalog API.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- AMI products
- Channel partner offers
- Container products
- Entities

- Offers
- Products
- Resale authorization
- SaaS products
- Utilities

AMI products

Add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms

The following code example shows how to add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Description": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Name": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
```

```
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.4xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.2xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.8xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.55"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Add a region where an AMI product is deployed

The following code example shows how to add a region where an AMI product is deployed.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-2",
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
```

```
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
```

```
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
```

```
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-annual pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
```

```
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-1111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
```

```
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-monthly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
```

```
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "RecurringPaymentTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "BillingPeriod": "Monthly",
                        "Price": "15.0"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
```

```
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing. This example creates either and standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
 "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
```

```
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly pricing for AmiProduct
using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
```

```
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer

The following code example shows how to create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed

The following code example shows how to restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-west-2"
```

```
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Restrict product visibility

The following code example shows how to restrict product visibility.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateVisibility",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "TargetVisibility": "Restricted"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions

The following code example shows how to specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions built by AWS to support future regions.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateFutureRegionSupport",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "FutureRegionSupport": {
                    "SupportedRegions": [
                        "All"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Channel partner offers

Create a draft CPPO for any product type

The following code example shows how to create a draft CPPO for any product type so you can review them internally before publishing to buyers.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description": "Test product"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a resale authorization replacement private offer with contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a resale authorization replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111",
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private resale replacement offer with contract
 pricing for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

List all CPPOs created by a channel partner

The following code example shows how to list all CPPOs created by a channel partner.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;

public class ListAllCppoOffers {

 /*
  * List all CPPOs created by a channel partner
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<String> cppoOfferIds = getAllCppoOfferIds();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(cppoOfferIds);
 }

 public static List<String> getAllCppoOfferIds() {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  // get all offer entity ids
  List<String> entityIdList = new ArrayList<String>();

  ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
    .maxResults(10)
    .nextToken(null)
    .build();

  ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

  for (EntitySummary entitySummary : listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList()) {
   entityIdList.add(entitySummary.entityId());
  }

  while (listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null) {
   listEntitiesRequest =
     ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
```

```
      .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
      .maxResults(10)
      .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
      .build();
    listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

    for (EntitySummary entitySummary : listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList()) {
     entityIdList.add(entitySummary.entityId());
    }
   }

   // filter for CPPO offers: ResaleAuthorizationId exists in Details

   List<String> cppoOfferIds = new ArrayList<String>();

   for (String entityId : entityIdList) {
    DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
      DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
      .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
      .entityId(entityId)
      .build();
    DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);

    Document resaleAuthorizationDocument =
 describeEntityResponse.detailsDocument().asMap().get(ATTRIBUTE_RESALE_AUTHORIZATION_ID);
    String resaleAuthorizationId = resaleAuthorizationDocument != null ?
 resaleAuthorizationDocument.asString() : "";

    if (!resaleAuthorizationId.isEmpty()) {
        cppoOfferIds.add(resaleAuthorizationId);
    }
   }
   return cppoOfferIds;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

List all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner

The following code example shows how to list all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;

public class ListAllSharedResaleAuthorizations {

 /*
  * list all resale authorizations shared to an account
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<ListEntitiesResponse> responseList = getListEntityResponseList();
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(responseList);
 }

 public static List<ListEntitiesResponse> getListEntityResponseList() {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
```

```
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  List<ListEntitiesResponse> responseList = new ArrayList<ListEntitiesResponse>();

  ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_RESALE_AUTHORIZATION)
    .maxResults(10)
    .ownershipType(OWNERSHIP_TYPE_SHARED)
    .nextToken(null)
    .build();

  ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

  responseList.add(listEntitiesResponse);

  while (listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null) {
   listEntitiesRequest = ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_RESALE_AUTHORIZATION)
     .maxResults(10)
     .ownershipType(OWNERSHIP_TYPE_SHARED)
     .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
     .build();

   listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

   responseList.add(listEntitiesResponse);
  }
  return responseList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA

The following code example shows how to publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
           {
               "Type": "LegalTerm",
               "Documents": [
                {
                 "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/custom-eula.pdf"
                }
               ]
            }
        ]
          }
         },
         {
             "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
             "Entity": {
                 "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                 "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
             },
             "DetailsDocument": {
                 "PositiveTargeting": {
                     "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                     }
             }
         },
         {
             "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
             "Entity": {
                 "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                 "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
             },
             "DetailsDocument": {
                 "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                 }
         },
         {
             "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
             "Entity": {
                 "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                 "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
             },
             "DetailsDocument": {
                 "Terms": [
                     {
                         "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                         "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                     }
                 ]
              }
         },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup

The following code example shows how to publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization on AMI, SaaS, or Container products and update price markup.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
        }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
```

```
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish a draft CPPO and update price markup

The following code example shows how to publish a draft CPPO and update price markup.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
        }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update the expiration date of a CPPO

The following code example shows how to update the expiration date of a CPPO to give buyers more time to evaluate and accept the offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-07-31"
                }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Container products

Create a draft container product with a draft public offer

The following code example shows how to create a draft container product with a draft public offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "changeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a limited container product with a public offer and contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a limited container product with a public offer, contract pricing, and standard EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {},
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "Categories": [
                    "Streaming solutions"
                ],
                "ProductTitle": "ContainerProduct",
                "AdditionalResources": [],
                "LongDescription": "Long description goes here",
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "container streaming"
                ],
                "ShortDescription": "Description1",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Highlight 1",
                    "Highlight 2"
                ],
                "SupportDescription": "No support available",
                "VideoUrls": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "Cores",
                    "Description": "Cores per cluster",
                    "Name": "Cores",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
```

```
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRepositories",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Repositories": [
                    {
                        "RepositoryName": "uniquerepositoryname",
                        "RepositoryType": "ECR"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Cores",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "No refunds"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Some container offer Name",
                "Description": "Some interesting container offer description"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Entities

Describe all entities in a single call

The following code example shows how to describe all entities in a single call.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.BatchDescribeEntitiesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.BatchDescribeEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityDetail;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.BatchDescribeErrorDetail;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.Map;

public class BatchDescribeEntities {

    /*
     * BatchDescribe my entities in a single call and
     *  check if it contains all the information I need to know about the entities.
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
                MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
                        .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
                        .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                        .build();

        BatchDescribeEntitiesRequest batchDescribeEntitiesRequest =
                BatchDescribeEntitiesRequest.builder()
                        .entityRequestList(Arrays.asList(
                                EntityRequest.builder()
                                        .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG).entityId(OFFER_ID)
                                        .build(),
                                EntityRequest.builder()

 .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG).entityId(PRODUCT_ID)
```

```
                                            .build()))
                        .build();

        BatchDescribeEntitiesResponse batchDescribeEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.batchDescribeEntities(batchDescribeEntitiesRequest);

        // Reading the successful entities response
        Map<String, EntityDetail> entityDetailsMap =
 batchDescribeEntitiesResponse.entityDetails();
        for (Map.Entry<String, EntityDetail> entry : entityDetailsMap.entrySet()) {
            System.out.println("EntityId: " + entry.getKey());
            ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(entry.getValue());
        }

        // Logging the failed entities error details
        Map<String, BatchDescribeErrorDetail> entityErrorsMap =
 batchDescribeEntitiesResponse.errors();
        for (Map.Entry<String, BatchDescribeErrorDetail> entry :
 entityErrorsMap.entrySet()) {
            System.out.println(String.format("EntityId: %s, ErrorCode: %s,
 ErrorMessage: %s", entry.getKey(),
                    entry.getValue().errorCode(), entry.getValue().errorMessage()));
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchDescribeEntities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

List and describe all offers associated with a product

The following code example shows how to list and describe all offers associated with a product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;
```

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferProductIdFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListProductPrivateOffers {

 private static MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();
 /*
  * retrieve all private offer information related to a single product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = getEntitySummaryList();

  // for each offer id, output the offer detail using DescribeEntity API

  for (EntitySummary entitySummary : entitySummaryList) {
   DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
     DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
```

```
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(entitySummary.entityId())
    .build();
  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }
}
public static List<EntitySummary> getEntitySummaryList() {
 // define list entities filters

 EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
   EntityTypeFilters.builder()
   .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
     .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_BUYERACCOUNTS)
       .build())
     .productId(OfferProductIdFilter.builder()
       .valueList(PRODUCT_ID)
       .build())
     .build())
   .build();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER).maxResults(50)
   .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
   .nextToken(null)
   .build();

 ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

 // save all entitySummary of the results into entitySummaryList

 List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

 entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

 while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
```

```
      .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
      .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER).maxResults(50)
      .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
      .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
      .build();
    listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
    entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
   }
   return entitySummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Offers

Create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer

The following code example shows how to create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Description": "Custom Pricing 4 w/ terms and coverage to be
defined in Private Offer",
                    "Unit": "Units",
                    "Key": "Custom4",
                    "Name": "Custom Pricing 4"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product",
                "Description": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Custom4",
                                        "Price": "300.0"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P36M"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ],
    "ChangeSetName": "PrivateOfferWithCustomDimension"
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product so you can review it internally before publishing to buyers.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Private Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
 SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
```

```
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P12M"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for Container product using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer for Container product with
 contract pricing using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
```

```
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReqPerHour",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
```

```
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReadOnlyUsers",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
```

```
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
 Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P365D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
 Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
 Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-01-01"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
```

```
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
 SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.22"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
```

```
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "120.00"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "200.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
```

```
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public free trial offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public free trial offer with subscription
 pricing for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Free",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P20D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a replacement private offer with contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private replacement offer with contract pricing
 for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
```

```
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Describe a public offer

The following code example shows how to describe a public offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class DescribeEntity {

 /*
  * Describe my AMI or SaaS or Container product and check if it contains all the
 information I need to know about the product
```

```
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String offerId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OFFER_ID;

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 getDescribeEntityResponse(offerId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }

 public static DescribeEntityResponse getDescribeEntityResponse(String offerId) {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId)
    .build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  return describeEntityResponse;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Expire a draft private offer

The following code example shows how to set the expiration date of a private offer to a date in the past so that buyers no longer see the offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-01-01"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

List all private offers

The following code example shows how to list all private offers.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilterDate
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferBuyerAccountsFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferReleaseDateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferReleaseDateFilterDateRange;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListAllPrivateOffers {

 /*
  * List all my private offers and sort or filter them by Offer Publish Date, Offer
 Expiry Date and Buyer IDs
  *
  * OfferTargetingFilter = BuyerAccounts (private offer);
  * OfferBuyerAccountsFilter: Buyer IDs filter
  * OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilter : Offer Expiry Date filter
```

```
 * OfferReleaseDateFilter : Offer Publish Date filter
 */

private static MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
  MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
  .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
  .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
  .build();

public static void main(String[] args) {

 String offerReleaseDateAfterValue = "2023-01-01T23:59:59Z";
 String offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue = "2040-12-24T23:59:59Z";

 List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList =
getEntitySummaryList(offerReleaseDateAfterValue, offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue);

 // for each offer id, output the offer detail using DescribeEntity API


 for (EntitySummary entitySummary : entitySummaryList) {
  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(entitySummary.entityId())
    .build();
  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }
}

public static List<EntitySummary> getEntitySummaryList (String
offerReleaseDateAfterValue, String offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue) {

 EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
   EntityTypeFilters.builder()
   .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
     .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_BUYERACCOUNTS)
       .build())
     .buyerAccounts(OfferBuyerAccountsFilter.builder()
       .wildCardValue(BUYER_ACCOUNT_ID)
       .build())
```

```
      .availabilityEndDate(OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilter.builder()
        .dateRange(OfferAvailabilityEndDateFilterDateRange.builder()
          .afterValue(offerAvailableEndDateAfterValue).build())
        .build())
      .releaseDate(OfferReleaseDateFilter.builder()
        .dateRange(OfferReleaseDateFilterDateRange.builder()
          .afterValue(offerReleaseDateAfterValue)
          .build())
        .build())
      .build())
    .build();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER).maxResults(10)
   .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
   .nextToken(null)
   .build();

 ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
 List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

 entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

 while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
    .maxResults(10)
    .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
    .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
  entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
 }

 return entitySummaryList;
}
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

List released public and private offers for a specific product ID

The following code example shows how to list released public and private offers for a specific product ID.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferProductIdFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferStateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListProductPublicOrPrivateReleasedOffers {
```

```
/*
 * List released Public/Private offers for a specific product id.
 * Example below is to list released public offers.
 * To change to released private offers, change OFFER_TARGETING_NONE (None) to
OFFER_TARGETING_BUYERACCOUNTS(BuyerAccounts)
 */
public static void main(String[] args) {

 List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = getEntitySummaryLIst();
 ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(entitySummaryList);
}

public static List<EntitySummary> getEntitySummaryLIst() {
 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 // define list entities filters

 EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
   EntityTypeFilters.builder()
   .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
     .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_NONE)
       .build())
     .state(OfferStateFilter.builder()
       .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_STATE_RELEASED)
       .build())
     .productId(OfferProductIdFilter.builder()
       .valueList(PRODUCT_ID)
       .build())
     .build())
   .build();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
   .maxResults(10)
   .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
   .nextToken(null)
```

```
    .build();

  ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

  // save all entitySummary of the results into entitySummaryList

  List<EntitySummary> entitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

  entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

  while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   listEntitiesRequest =
     ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
     .maxResults(10)
     .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
     .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
     .build();
   listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
   entitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
  }
  return entitySummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing

The following code example shows how to update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing

The following code example shows how to update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
```

```
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "20.03"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions

The following code example shows how to update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
```

```
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "CountryCodes": [
                        "US",
                        "ES",
                        "FR",
                        "AU"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update name and description of a public offer

The following code example shows how to update name and description of a public offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update the EULA of an offer

The following code example shows how to update the EULA of an offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
```

```
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New offer name",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update the expiration date of a private offer to a future date

The following code example shows how to update the expiration date of a private offer to a date in the future to give buyers more time to evaluate and accept the offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2026-01-01"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P21D",
                        "Grants": [
```

```
                                {
                                    "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                                },
                                {
                                    "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                                }
                            ]
                        }
                    ]
                }
            }
        ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update the refund policy of an offer

The following code example shows how to update the refund policy of an offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Products

Describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product

The following code example shows how to describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product and check if it contains all the information you want to know about the product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;
```

```
public class DescribeEntity {

 /*
  * Describe my AMI or SaaS or Container product and check if it contains all the
 information I need to know about the product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String offerId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OFFER_ID;

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 getDescribeEntityResponse(offerId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }

 public static DescribeEntityResponse getDescribeEntityResponse(String offerId) {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId)
    .build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  return describeEntityResponse;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

List all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers

The following code example shows how to list all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntitySummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.EntityTypeFilters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.ListEntitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferProductIdFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferStateFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.OfferTargetingFilter;

public class ListEntities {

 /*
  * List all my AMI or SaaS or Container products and associated public offers
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  Map<String, List<EntitySummary>> allProductsWithOffers =
 getAllProductsWithOffers();
```

```
 ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(allProductsWithOffers);
}

public static Map<String, List<EntitySummary>> getAllProductsWithOffers() {
 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 Map<String, List<EntitySummary>> allProductsWithOffers = new HashMap<String,
List<EntitySummary>> ();

 // get all product entities
 List<EntitySummary> productEntityList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

 ListEntitiesRequest listEntitiesRequest =
   ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityType(PRODUCT_TYPE_AMI)
   .maxResults(10)
   .nextToken(null)
   .build();


 ListEntitiesResponse listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

 productEntityList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());


 while (listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null) {
  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(PRODUCT_TYPE_AMI)
    .maxResults(10)
    .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
  productEntityList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
 }
```

```
 // loop through each product entity and get the public released offers associated
using product id filter

 for ( EntitySummary productEntitySummary : productEntityList) {
  EntityTypeFilters entityTypeFilters =
    EntityTypeFilters.builder()
    .offerFilters(OfferFilters.builder()
      .targeting(OfferTargetingFilter.builder()
        .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_TARGETING_NONE)
        .build())
      .state(OfferStateFilter.builder()
        .valueListWithStrings(OFFER_STATE_RELEASED)
        .build())
      .productId(OfferProductIdFilter.builder()
        .valueList(productEntitySummary.entityId())
        .build())
      .build())
    .build();

  listEntitiesRequest =
    ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
    .maxResults(10)
    .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
    .nextToken(null)
    .build();

  listEntitiesResponse =
marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);

  // save all entitySummary of the results into entitySummaryList

  List<EntitySummary> offerEntitySummaryList = new ArrayList<EntitySummary>();

  offerEntitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());

  while ( listEntitiesResponse.nextToken() != null &&
listEntitiesResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   listEntitiesRequest =
     ListEntitiesRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityType(ENTITY_TYPE_OFFER)
```

```
      .maxResults(10)
      .entityTypeFilters(entityTypeFilters)
      .nextToken(listEntitiesResponse.nextToken())
      .build();
    listEntitiesResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.listEntities(listEntitiesRequest);
    offerEntitySummaryList.addAll(listEntitiesResponse.entitySummaryList());
   }

   // save final results into map; key = product id; value = offer entity summary
 list

   allProductsWithOffers.put(productEntitySummary.entityId(),
 offerEntitySummaryList);
  }
  return allProductsWithOffers;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Resale authorization

Create draft resale authorization

The following code example shows how to create draft resale authorization for any product type so you can review them internally before publishing to a Channel Partner.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Describe a resale authorization

The following code example shows how to describe a resale authorization.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
```

```
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class DescribeEntity {

 /*
  * Describe my AMI or SaaS or Container product and check if it contains all the
 information I need to know about the product
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String offerId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OFFER_ID;

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 getDescribeEntityResponse(offerId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeEntityResponse);
 }

 public static DescribeEntityResponse getDescribeEntityResponse(String offerId) {
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId)
    .build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
  return describeEntityResponse;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer

The following code example shows how to publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer so a Channel Partner can use it to create a Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO).

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for an AMI product with hourly annual pricing so a Channel Partner can use it to create a CPPO.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and a EULA

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
```

```
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and reseller contract documentation

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"}
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
```

```
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiration and add a specific buyer account

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for an AMI product with hourly annual pricing so a CP can use that to create a CPPO.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
```

```
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and a EULA

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
```

```
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and reseller contract documentation

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiration and add a specific buyer account

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
```

```
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add Flexible payment schedule

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add Flexible payment schedule.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleFixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.00",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                          {
                            "DimensionKey": "Users",
                            "MaxQuantity": 10
                          }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResalePaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-09-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-12-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "250.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-06-30",
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add a EULA

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add a specific buyer account

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
```

```
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": "1"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add reseller contract documentation

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
```

```
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add whether it is a renewal

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add whether it is a renewal.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
```

```
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "222222222222"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "PreExistingBuyerAgreement": {
                    "AcquisitionChannel": "AwsMarketplace",
                    "PricingModel": "Contract"
                }
             }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Restrict resale authorization

The following code example shows how to restrict resale authorization.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization

The following code example shows how to update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization before publishing for any product type.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
             "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
             "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
             "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SaaS products

Create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer

The following code example shows how to create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
              "ProductTitle": "Sample product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
```

```
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
```

```
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
```

```
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
```

```
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing. This examples creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
```

```
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
```

```
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer

The following code example shows how to publish a SaaS product and associated public offer. The product will be in a limited state by default.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://bucketname.s3.amazonaws.com/logo.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl": "https://www.aws.amazon.com/
marketplace/management"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New Test Offer",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
```

```
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer from an existing draft

The following code example shows how to publish a SaaS product and associated public offer from an existing draft. The product will be in a limited state by default.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateVisibility",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "TargetVisibility": "Public"
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product

The following code example shows how to update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

To run this example, pass the following JSON changeset to `RunChangesets` in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Name": "Some new name",
                    "Description": "Some new description"
                }
            ]
```

```
        }
    ]
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Utilities

Utilities to start a changeset

The following code example shows how to define utilities to start a changeset.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

Utility to load a changeset from a JSON file and start processing it.

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import org.apache.commons.io.IOUtils;
import org.apache.commons.lang3.StringUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.document.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.protocols.json.internal.unmarshall.document.DocumentUnmarshaller;
import software.amazon.awssdk.protocols.jsoncore.JsonNodeParser;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.Change;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.Entity;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.StartChangeSetRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.StartChangeSetResponse;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import com.google.gson.ToNumberPolicy;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi.Entity.ChangeSet;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi.Entity.ChangeSetEntity;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.catalogapi.Entity.Root;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.StringSerializer;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, convert all Details attribute to
 DetailsDocument if any
 */

public class RunChangesets {

 private static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder()
   .setObjectToNumberStrategy(ToNumberPolicy.LAZILY_PARSED_NUMBER)
   .registerTypeAdapter(String.class, new StringSerializer())
   .create();

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  // input json can be specified here or passed from input parameter
  String inputChangeSetFile = "changeSets/offers/
CreateReplacementOfferFromAGWithContractPricingDetailDocument.json";

  if (args.length > 0)
   inputChangeSetFile = args[0];

  // parse the input changeset file to string for process
  String changeSetsInput = readChangeSetToString(inputChangeSetFile);

  // process the changeset request
  try {
   StartChangeSetResponse result = getChangeSetRequestResult(changeSetsInput);
   ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(result);
  } catch (Exception e) {
   e.printStackTrace();
```

```
 }
}

public static StartChangeSetResponse getChangeSetRequestResult(String
changeSetsInput) throws IOException {

 //set up AWS credentials
 MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
   MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 //changeset list to save all the changesets in the changesets file
 List<Change> changeSetLists = new ArrayList<Change>();

 // read all changesets into object
 Root root = GSON.fromJson(changeSetsInput, Root.class);

 // process each changeset and add each changeset request to changesets list
 for (ChangeSet cs : root.changeSet) {

  ChangeSetEntity entity = cs.Entity;
  String entityType = entity.Type;
  String entityIdentifier = StringUtils.defaultIfBlank(entity.Identifier, null);
  Document detailsDocument = getDocumentFromObject(cs.DetailsDocument);

  Entity awsEntity =
    Entity.builder()
    .type(entityType)
    .identifier(entityIdentifier)
    .build();

  Change inputChangeRequest =
    Change.builder()
    .changeType(cs.ChangeType)
    .changeName(cs.ChangeName)
    .entity(awsEntity)
    .detailsDocument(detailsDocument)
    .build();

  changeSetLists.add(inputChangeRequest);
 }
```

```
 // process all changeset requests
 StartChangeSetRequest startChangeSetRequest =
   StartChangeSetRequest.builder()
   .catalog(root.catalog)
   .changeSet(changeSetLists)
   .build();

 StartChangeSetResponse result =
marketplaceCatalogClient.startChangeSet(startChangeSetRequest);

 return result;
}

public static Document getDocumentFromObject(Object detailsObject) {

 String detailsString = "{}";
 try {
  detailsString = IOUtils.toString(new
ByteArrayInputStream(GSON.toJson(detailsObject).getBytes()), "UTF-8");
 } catch (IOException e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }

 JsonNodeParser jsonNodeParser = JsonNodeParser.create();
 Document doc = jsonNodeParser.parse(detailsString).visit(new
DocumentUnmarshaller());
 return doc;
}


public static String readChangeSetToString (String inputChangeSetFile) {

 InputStream changesetInputStream =
RunChangesets.class.getClassLoader().getResourceAsStream(inputChangeSetFile);

 String changeSetsInput = null;

 try {
  changeSetsInput = IOUtils.toString(changesetInputStream, "UTF-8");
 } catch (IOException e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }

 return changeSetsInput;
```

```
 }
}
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

AWS Marketplace Agreement API examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS Marketplace Agreement API.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Agreements

Agreements

Get all agreement IDs

The following code example shows how to get all agreement IDs.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAllAgreementsIds {

 /*
  * Get all purchase agreements ids with party type = proposer;
  * Depend on the number of agreements in your account, this code may take some time
 to finish.
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<String> agreementIds = getAllAgreementIds();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementIds);

 }

 public static List<String> getAllAgreementIds() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  // get all filters
  Filter partyType = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementType = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();
```

```
  List<Filter> searchFilters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

  searchFilters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyType, agreementType));

  // Save all results in a list array
  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
 ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

  SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(searchFilters)
    .build();

  SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

  while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   searchAgreementsRequest =
     SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
     .filters(searchFilters)
     .build();
   searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
   agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
  }

  List<String> agreementIds = new ArrayList<String>();
  for (AgreementViewSummary summary : agreementSummaryList) {
   agreementIds.add(summary.agreementId());
  }
  return agreementIds;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get all agreements

The following code example shows how to get all agreements.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAllAgreements {

 /*
  * Get all purchase agreements with party type = proposer;
  * Depend on the number of agreements in your account, this code may take some time
 to finish.
  */
```

```
public static void main(String[] args) {

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAllAgreements();

 ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);
}

public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAllAgreements() {
 MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
   MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 // get all filters

 Filter partyType = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
   .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

 Filter agreementType = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
   .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

 List<Filter> searchFilters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

 searchFilters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyType, agreementType));

 // Save all results in a list array

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
   SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .filters(searchFilters)
   .build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

 while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
```

```
    searchAgreementsRequest =
      SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
      .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
      .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
      .filters(searchFilters).build();
    searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
    agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
   }
   return agreementSummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get customer ID from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get customer ID from an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class GetAgreementCustomerInfo {

 /*
  * Obtain metadata about the customer who created the agreement, such as the
 customer's AWS Account ID
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 getDescribeAgreementResponse(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Customer's AWS Account ID is " +
 describeAgreementResponse.acceptor().accountId());

 }

 public static DescribeAgreementResponse getDescribeAgreementResponse(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);
  return describeAgreementResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get financial details from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get financial details from an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class GetAgreementFinancialDetails {

 /*
  * Obtain financial details, such as Total Contract Value of the agreement from a
 given agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  String totalContractValue = getTotalContractValue(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Total Contract Value is " + totalContractValue);

 }
```

```
 public static String getTotalContractValue(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);

  String totalContractValue = "N/A";

  if ( describeAgreementResponse.estimatedCharges() != null ) {
   totalContractValue =
 describeAgreementResponse.estimatedCharges().agreementValue()
     + " "
     + describeAgreementResponse.estimatedCharges().currencyCode();
  }
  return totalContractValue;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get free trial details from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get free trial details from an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.FreeTrialPricingTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsFreeTrialDetails {

 /*
  * Obtain the details from an agreement of a free trial I have provided to the
 customer
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<FreeTrialPricingTerm> freeTrialPricingTerms =
 getFreeTrialPricingTerms(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(freeTrialPricingTerms);
 }

 public static List<FreeTrialPricingTerm> getFreeTrialPricingTerms(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
```

```
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
     .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<FreeTrialPricingTerm> freeTrialPricingTerms = new
 ArrayList<FreeTrialPricingTerm>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.freeTrialPricingTerm() != null) {
    freeTrialPricingTerms.add(acceptedTerm.freeTrialPricingTerm());
   }
  }
  return freeTrialPricingTerms;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get information about an agreement

The following code example shows how to get information about an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;
```

```
import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class DescribeAgreement {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse = getResponse(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(describeAgreementResponse);

 }

 public static DescribeAgreementResponse getResponse(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);
  return describeAgreementResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get product and offer details from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get product and offer details from an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Resource;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

public class GetProductAndOfferDetailFromAgreement {
```

```
public static void main(String[] args) {

 // call Agreement API to get offer and product information for the agreement

 String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

 List<DescribeEntityResponse> entityResponseList = getEntities(agreementId);

 for (DescribeEntityResponse response : entityResponseList) {
  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
 }
}

public static List<DescribeEntityResponse> getEntities(String agreementId) {
 List<DescribeEntityResponse> entityResponseList = new
ArrayList<DescribeEntityResponse> ();

 MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
   MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
   .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
   .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
   .build();

 DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
   DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
   .agreementId(agreementId)
   .build();

 DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);

 // get offer id for the given agreement

 String offerId = describeAgreementResponse.proposalSummary().offerId();

 // get all the product ids for this agreement

 List<String> productIds = new ArrayList<String>();
 for (Resource resource : describeAgreementResponse.proposalSummary().resources())
{
  productIds.add(resource.id());
 }

 // call Catalog API to get the details of the offer and products
```

```
  MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
    MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeEntityRequest describeEntityRequest =
    DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .entityId(offerId).build();

  DescribeEntityResponse describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);

  entityResponseList.add(describeEntityResponse);

  for (String productId : productIds) {
   describeEntityRequest =
     DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .entityId(productId).build();
   describeEntityResponse =
 marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(describeEntityRequest);
   System.out.println("Print details for product " + productId);
   entityResponseList.add(describeEntityResponse);
  }
  return entityResponseList;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the EULA of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the EULA of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DocumentItem;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsEula {

 /*
  * Obtain the EULA I have entered into with my customer via the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<DocumentItem> legalEulaArray = getLegalEula(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(legalEulaArray);
 }
```

```
 public static List<DocumentItem> getLegalEula(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<DocumentItem> legalEulaArray = new ArrayList<>();

  getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms().stream()
      .filter(acceptedTerm -> acceptedTerm.legalTerm() != null &&
 acceptedTerm.legalTerm().hasDocuments())
      .flatMap(acceptedTerm -> acceptedTerm.legalTerm().documents().stream())
      .filter(docItem -> docItem.type() != null)
      .forEach(legalEulaArray::add);
  return legalEulaArray;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the auto renewal terms of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the auto renewal terms of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

public class GetAgreementAutoRenewal {

 /*
  * Obtain the auto-renewal status of the agreement
  */

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  String autoRenewal = getAutoRenewal(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Auto-Renewal status is " + autoRenewal);
 }

 public static String getAutoRenewal(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();
```

```
  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  String autoRenewal = "No Auto Renewal";

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.renewalTerm() != null &&
 acceptedTerm.renewalTerm().configuration() != null
     && acceptedTerm.renewalTerm().configuration().enableAutoRenew() != null) {
    autoRenewal =
 String.valueOf(acceptedTerm.renewalTerm().configuration().enableAutoRenew().booleanValue())
    break;
   }
  }
  return autoRenewal;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the dimensions purchased in an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the dimensions purchased in an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Dimension;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsDimensionPurchased {

 /*
  * Obtain the dimensions the buyer has purchased from me via the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<String> dimensionKeys = getDimensionKeys(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(dimensionKeys);
 }

 public static List<String> getDimensionKeys(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<String> dimensionKeys = new ArrayList<String>();
  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm() != null) {
```

```
    if
 (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().selectorValue() !=
 null) {
     List<Dimension> dimensions =
 acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().dimensions();
     for (Dimension dimension : dimensions) {
      dimensionKeys.add(dimension.dimensionKey());
     }
    }

   }
  }
  return dimensionKeys;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Dimension;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsDimensionInstances {

 /*
  * get instances of each dimension that buyer has purchased in the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  Map<String, List<Dimension>> dimensionMap = getDimensions(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(dimensionMap);
 }

 public static Map<String, List<Dimension>> getDimensions(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  Map<String, List<Dimension>> dimensionMap = new HashMap<String,
 List<Dimension>>();
```

```
  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   List<Dimension> dimensionsList = new ArrayList<Dimension>();
   if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm() != null) {
    String selectorValue = "";
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration() != null) {
     if
 (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().selectorValue() !=
 null) {
      selectorValue =
 acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().selectorValue();
     }
     if
 (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().hasDimensions()) {
      dimensionsList =
 acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().configuration().dimensions();
     }
    }
    if (selectorValue.length() > 0) {
     dimensionMap.put(selectorValue, dimensionsList);
    }
   }
  }
  return dimensionMap;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the payment schedule of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the payment schedule of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.PaymentScheduleTerm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.ScheduleItem;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsPaymentSchedule {

 /*
  * Obtain the payment schedule I have agreed to with the agreement, including the
 invoice date and invoice amount
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<Map<String, Object>> paymentScheduleArray = getPaymentSchedules(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(paymentScheduleArray);
 }

 public static List<Map<String, Object>> getPaymentSchedules(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
```

```
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);
  List<Map<String, Object>> paymentScheduleArray = new ArrayList<>();

  String currencyCode = "";

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.paymentScheduleTerm() != null) {
    PaymentScheduleTerm paymentScheduleTerm = acceptedTerm.paymentScheduleTerm();
    if (paymentScheduleTerm.currencyCode() != null) {
     currencyCode = paymentScheduleTerm.currencyCode();
    }
    if (paymentScheduleTerm.hasSchedule()) {
     for (ScheduleItem schedule : paymentScheduleTerm.schedule()) {
      if (schedule.chargeDate() != null) {
       String chargeDate = schedule.chargeDate().toString();
       String chargeAmount = schedule.chargeAmount();
       Map<String, Object> scheduleMap = new HashMap<>();
       scheduleMap.put(ATTRIBUTE_CURRENCY_CODE, currencyCode);
       scheduleMap.put(ATTRIBUTE_CHARGE_DATE, chargeDate);
       scheduleMap.put(ATTRIBUTE_CHARGE_AMOUNT, chargeAmount);
       paymentScheduleArray.add(scheduleMap);
      }
     }
    }
   }
  }
  return paymentScheduleArray;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the pricing per dimension in an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the pricing per dimension in an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsPricingEachDimension {

 /*
  * Obtain pricing per each dimension in the agreement
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<Object> dimensions = getDimensions(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(dimensions);
 }
```

```
 public static List<Object> getDimensions(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<Object> dimensions = new ArrayList<Object>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   List<Object> rateInfo = new ArrayList<Object>();
   if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm() != null) {
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().type() != null) {
     rateInfo.add(acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().type());
    }
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().currencyCode() != null) {
     rateInfo.add(acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().currencyCode());
    }
    if (acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().hasRateCards()) {
     rateInfo.add(acceptedTerm.configurableUpfrontPricingTerm().rateCards());
    }
    dimensions.add(rateInfo);
   }
  }
  return dimensions;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the pricing type of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the pricing type of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import com.fasterxml.jackson.annotation.JsonAutoDetect.Visibility;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.HashSet;
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.Set;

import org.apache.commons.lang3.tuple.Triple;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.MarketplaceCatalogClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplacecatalog.model.DescribeEntityResponse;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.annotation.PropertyAccessor;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonProcessingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectWriter;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.datatype.jsr310.JavaTimeModule;

/*
 * Obtain the pricing type of the agreement (contract, FPS, metered, free etc.)
 */
public class GetAgreementPricingType {

 private static final String FILTER_NAME = "OfferId";

 private static final String FILTER_VALUE = OFFER_ID;

 // Product types
 private static final String SAAS_PRODUCT = "SaaSProduct";
 private static final String AMI_PRODUCT = "AmiProduct";
 private static final String ML_PRODUCT = "MachineLearningProduct";
 private static final String CONTAINER_PRODUCT = "ContainerProduct";
 private static final String DATA_PRODUCT = "DataProduct";
 private static final String PROSERVICE_PRODUCT = "ProfessionalServicesProduct";
 private static final String AIQ_PRODUCT = "AiqProduct";

 // Pricing types
 private static final String CCP = "CCP";
 private static final String ANNUAL = "Annual";
 private static final String CONTRACT = "Contract";
 private static final String SFT = "SaaS Free Trial";
 private static final String HMA = "Hourly and Monthly Agreements";
 private static final String HOURLY = "Hourly";
 private static final String MONTHLY = "Monthly";
 private static final String AFPS = "Annual FPS";
 private static final String CFPS = "Contract FPS";
 private static final String CCPFPS = "CCP with FPS";
```

```
private static final String BYOL = "BYOL";
private static final String FREE = "Free";
private static final String FTH = "Free Trials and Hourly";

// Agreement term pricing types
private static final Set<String> LEGAL = Set.of("LegalTerm");
private static final Set<String> CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT =
Set.of("ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> USAGE_BASED = Set.of("UsageBasedPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED =
Set.of("ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> FREE_TRIAL = Set.of("FreeTrialPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> RECURRING_PAYMENT =
Set.of("RecurringPaymentTerm");
private static final Set<String> USAGE_BASED_AND_RECURRING_PAYMENT =
Set.of("UsageBasedPricingTerm", "RecurringPaymentTerm");
private static final Set<String> FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE =
Set.of("FixedUpfrontPricingTerm", "PaymentScheduleTerm");
private static final Set<String> FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED
= Set.of("FixedUpfrontPricingTerm", "PaymentScheduleTerm",
"UsageBasedPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> BYOL_PRICING = Set.of("ByolPricingTerm");
private static final Set<String> FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED =
Set.of("FreeTrialPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm");

private static final List<Set<String>> ALL_AGREEMENT_TERM_TYPES_COMBINATION
= Arrays.asList(LEGAL, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, USAGE_BASED,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED,
  FREE_TRIAL, RECURRING_PAYMENT, USAGE_BASED_AND_RECURRING_PAYMENT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, BYOL_PRICING,
FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED);

private static  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
  MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
  .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
  .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
  .build();

private static MarketplaceCatalogClient marketplaceCatalogClient =
  MarketplaceCatalogClient.builder()
  .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
  .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
  .build();
```

```
   /*
    * Get agreement Pricing Type given product type, agreement term types and offer
types if needed
    */
public static String getPricingType(String productType, Set<String>
agreementTermType, Set<String> offerType) {
 Map<Triple<String, Set<String>, Set<String>>, String> pricingTypes = new
HashMap<>();

 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), CCP);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), CCP);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED), ANNUAL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED), ANNUAL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT_AND_USAGE_BASED), ANNUAL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT,
CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new HashSet<>()),
CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new HashSet<>()),
CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new HashSet<>()),
CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT, new
HashSet<>()), CONTRACT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL, new HashSet<>()), SFT);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED_AND_RECURRING_PAYMENT, new
HashSet<>()), HMA);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), HOURLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), HOURLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), HOURLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, RECURRING_PAYMENT, new HashSet<>()),
MONTHLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, RECURRING_PAYMENT, new HashSet<>()),
MONTHLY);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED), AFPS);
```

```
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED), AFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new
HashSet<>()), AFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
new HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new
HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new
HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE, new
HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE,
new HashSet<>()), CFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE_AND_USAGE_BASED, new HashSet<>()), CCPFPS);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(SAAS_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(PROSERVICE_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()),
BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AIQ_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()),
BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(DATA_PRODUCT, BYOL_PRICING, new HashSet<>()), BYOL);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, LEGAL, new HashSet<>()), FREE);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(AMI_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), FTH);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), FTH);
 pricingTypes.put(Triple.of(ML_PRODUCT, FREE_TRIAL_AND_USAGE_BASED, new
HashSet<>()), FTH);

 Triple<String, Set<String>, Set<String>> key = Triple.of(productType,
agreementTermType, offerType);
```

```
 if (pricingTypes.containsKey(key)) {
  return pricingTypes.get(key);
 } else {
  return "Unknown";
 }
}

/*
 * Given product type and agreement term types, some combinations need to check
offer term types as well.
 */
public static String needToCheckOfferTermsType(String productType, Set<String>
agreementTermTypes) {
 Map<KeyPair, String> offerTermTypes = new HashMap<>();
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(CONTAINER_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), "Y");
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(AMI_PRODUCT, CONFIGURABLE_UPFRONT), "Y");
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(CONTAINER_PRODUCT,
FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE), "Y");
 offerTermTypes.put(new KeyPair(AMI_PRODUCT, FIXED_UPFRONT_AND_PAYMENT_SCHEDULE),
"Y");

 KeyPair key = new KeyPair(productType, agreementTermTypes);
 if (offerTermTypes.containsKey(key)) {
  return offerTermTypes.get(key);
 } else {
  return null;
 }
}

public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreementsById() {

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 Filter partyType =
Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME).values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).buil

 Filter agreementType =
Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME).values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHA

 Filter customizeFilter =
Filter.builder().name(FILTER_NAME).values(FILTER_VALUE).build();

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
```

```
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(partyType, agreementType, customizeFilter).build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchResultResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchResultResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

 while (searchResultResponse.nextToken() != null &&
searchResultResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  searchAgreementsRequest =
SearchAgreementsRequest.builder().catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(partyType,
agreementType).nextToken(searchResultResponse.nextToken()).build();
  searchResultResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchResultResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
 }
 return agreementSummaryList;

}

static class KeyPair {
 private final String first;
 private final Set<String> second;

 public KeyPair(String productType, Set<String> second) {
  this.first = productType;
  this.second = second;
 }

 @Override
 public int hashCode() {
  return Objects.hash(first, second);
 }

 @Override
 public boolean equals(Object obj) {
  if (this == obj)
   return true;
  if (obj == null || getClass() != obj.getClass())
   return false;
  KeyPair other = (KeyPair) obj;
```

```
  return Objects.equals(first, other.first) && Objects.equals(second,
other.second);
 }
}

/*
 * Get all the term types for the offer
 */
public static Set<String> getOfferTermTypes(String offerId) {

 Set<String> offerTermTypes = new HashSet<String>();

 DescribeEntityRequest request =
   DescribeEntityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .entityId(offerId)
   .build();

 DescribeEntityResponse result = marketplaceCatalogClient.describeEntity(request);

 String details = result.details();

 try {
  ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
  JsonNode rootNode = objectMapper.readTree(details);
  JsonNode termsNode = rootNode.get(ATTRIBUTE_TERMS);

  for (JsonNode termNode : termsNode) {
   if (termNode.get(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_ENTITY) != null ) {
    offerTermTypes.add(termNode.get(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_ENTITY).asText());
   }
  }
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }

 return offerTermTypes;

}

/*
 * Get all the agreement term types
 */
```

```
public static Set<String> getAgreementTermTypes(GetAgreementTermsResponse
agreementTerm) {
 Set<String> agreementTermTypes = new HashSet<String>();
 try {
  for (AcceptedTerm term : agreementTerm.acceptedTerms()) {
   ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
   JsonNode termNode = objectMapper.readTree(getJson(term));
   Iterator<Map.Entry<String, JsonNode>> fieldsIterator = termNode.fields();
   while (fieldsIterator.hasNext()) {
    Map.Entry<String, JsonNode> entry = fieldsIterator.next();
    JsonNode value = entry.getValue();
    if (value.isObject() && value.has(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_AGREEMENT)) {
     agreementTermTypes.add(value.get(ATTRIBUTE_TYPE_AGREEMENT).asText());
    }
   }
  }
 } catch (Exception e) {
  e.printStackTrace();
 }
 return agreementTermTypes;

}

/*
 * make sure all elements in array2 exist in array1
 */
public static boolean allElementsExist(Set<String> array1, Set<String> array2) {
 for (String element : array2) {
  boolean found = false;
  for (String str : array1) {
   if (element.equals(str)) {
    found = true;
    break;
   }
  }
  if (!found) {
   return false;
  }
 }
 return true;
}

/*
 * Find the combinations of the agreement term types for the agreement
```

```
 */
public static Set<String> getMatchedTermTypesCombination(Set<String>
agreementTermTypes) {
 Set<String> matchedCombination = new HashSet<String>();
 for (Set<String> element : ALL_AGREEMENT_TERM_TYPES_COMBINATION) {
  if (allElementsExist(agreementTermTypes, element)) {
   matchedCombination = element;
  }
 }
 return matchedCombination;
}

public static void main(String[] args) {

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreements = getAgreementsById();

 for (AgreementViewSummary summary : agreements) {
  String pricingType = "";
  String agreementId = summary.agreementId();
  System.out.println(agreementId);
  String offerId = summary.proposalSummary().offerId();

  //get all pricing term types for the offer in the agreement
  Set<String> offerTermTypes = getOfferTermTypes(offerId);
  String productType = summary.proposalSummary().resources().get(0).type();

  //get all pricing term types for the agreement
  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();
  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);
  Set<String> agreementTermTypes =
getAgreementTermTypes(getAgreementTermsResponse);

  //get matched pricing term type combination set
  Set<String> agreementMatchedTermType =
getMatchedTermTypesCombination(agreementTermTypes);

  //check to see if this agreement pricing term combination needs additional check
on offer pricing terms
  String needToCheckOfferType = needToCheckOfferTermsType(productType,
agreementMatchedTermType);
```

```
    // get the pricing type for the agreement based on the product type, agreement
  term types and offer term types if needed
    if (needToCheckOfferType != null) {
     Set<String> offerMatchedTermType =
  getMatchedTermTypesCombination(offerTermTypes);
     pricingType = getPricingType(productType, agreementMatchedTermType,
  offerMatchedTermType);
    } else if (agreementMatchedTermType == LEGAL) {
     pricingType = FREE;
    } else {
     pricingType = getPricingType(productType, agreementMatchedTermType, new
  HashSet());
    }
    System.out.println("Pricing type is " + pricingType);
   }
  }

  private static String getJson(Object result) {
   String json = "";

   try {
    ObjectMapper om = new ObjectMapper();
    om.setVisibility(PropertyAccessor.FIELD, Visibility.ANY);
    om.registerModule(new JavaTimeModule());
    ObjectWriter ow = om.writer().withDefaultPrettyPrinter();

    json = ow.writeValueAsString(result);
   } catch (JsonProcessingException e) {
    e.printStackTrace();
   }
   return json;
  }

 }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the product type of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the product type of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Resource;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementProductType {

 /*
  * Obtain the Product Type of the product the agreement was created on
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<String> productIds = getProducts(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(productIds);
 }
```

```
 public static List<String> getProducts(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);

  List<String> productIds = new ArrayList<String>();
  for (Resource resource : describeAgreementResponse.proposalSummary().resources())
 {
   productIds.add(resource.id() + ":" + resource.type());
  }
  return productIds;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the status of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the status of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.DescribeAgreementResponse;

public class GetAgreementStatus {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 getDescribeAgreementResponse(agreementId);

  System.out.println("Agreement status is " + describeAgreementResponse.status());

 }

 public static DescribeAgreementResponse getDescribeAgreementResponse(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementRequest describeAgreementRequest =
    DescribeAgreementRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  DescribeAgreementResponse describeAgreementResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.describeAgreement(describeAgreementRequest);
  return describeAgreementResponse;
 }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the support terms of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the support terms of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AcceptedTerm;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SupportTerm;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.AGREEMENT_ID;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class GetAgreementTermsSupportTerm {

 /*
```

```
  * Obtain the support and refund policy I have provided to the customer
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  List<SupportTerm> supportTerms = getSupportTerms(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(supportTerms);
 }

 public static List<SupportTerm> getSupportTerms(String agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder().agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);

  List<SupportTerm> supportTerms = new ArrayList<>();

  for (AcceptedTerm acceptedTerm : getAgreementTermsResponse.acceptedTerms()) {
   if (acceptedTerm.supportTerm() != null) {
    supportTerms.add(acceptedTerm.supportTerm());
   }
  }
  return supportTerms;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Get the terms of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the terms of an agreement.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.GetAgreementTermsResponse;

public class GetAgreementTerms {

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String agreementId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : AGREEMENT_ID;

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 getAgreementTermsResponse(agreementId);

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(getAgreementTermsResponse);

 }

 public static GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse(String
 agreementId) {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
```

```
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsRequest getAgreementTermsRequest =
    GetAgreementTermsRequest.builder()
    .agreementId(agreementId)
    .build();

  GetAgreementTermsResponse getAgreementTermsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.getAgreementTerms(getAgreementTermsRequest);
  return getAgreementTermsResponse;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Search for agreements by end date

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by end date.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

public class SearchAgreementsByEndDate {

 static String beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName =
 BeforeOrAfterEndTimeFilterName.BeforeEndTime.name();

 static String cutoffDate = "2050-11-18T00:00:00Z";

 static String partyTypeFilterValue = PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER;

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAgreements();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);
 }

 public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreements() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  // set up filters

  Filter partyTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();
```

```
 Filter customizeFilter =
Filter.builder().name(beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName).values(cutoffDate).build();

 List<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

 filters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyTypeFilter, agreementTypeFilter,
customizeFilter));

 // search agreement with filters

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
   SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .filters(filters)
   .build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementResponse=
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

 while (searchAgreementResponse.nextToken() != null &&
searchAgreementResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(filters)
    .nextToken(searchAgreementResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  searchAgreementResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
 }
 return agreementSummaryList;
}

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Search for agreements with one custom filter

The following code example shows how to search for agreements with one custom filter.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

/**
 * To search by
 * offer id: OfferId;
 * product id: ResourceIdentifier;
 * customer AWS account id: AcceptorAccountId
 * product type: ResourceType (i.e. SaasProduct)
 * status: Status. status values can be: ACTIVE, CANCELED,
```

```
 *   EXPIRED, RENEWED, REPLACED, ROLLED_BACK, SUPERSEDED, TERMINATED
 */

public class SearchAgreementsByOneFilter {

 private static final String FILTER_NAME = "ResourceType";

 private static final String FILTER_VALUE = "SaaSProduct";

 /*
  * search agreements by one customize filter
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAgreements();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);
 }

 public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreements() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  Filter partyTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

  Filter customizeFilter =
 Filter.builder().name(FILTER_NAME).values(FILTER_VALUE).build();

  List<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

  filters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyTypeFilter, agreementTypeFilter,
 customizeFilter));

  SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(filters)
```

```
    .build();
  SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
 ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

  while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
 searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
   searchAgreementsRequest =
     SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
     .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
     .filters(filters)
     .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
     .build();
   searchAgreementsResponse =
 marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
   agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
  }
  return agreementSummaryList;
 }

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Search for agreements with two custom filters

The following code example shows how to search for agreements with two custom filters.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package com.example.awsmarketplace.agreementapi;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.AwsCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.MarketplaceAgreementClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.AgreementViewSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.Filter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.marketplaceagreement.model.SearchAgreementsResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesConstants.*;
import com.example.awsmarketplace.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

/**
 * Party Type = Proposer AND Acceptor:
 *  AfterEndTime
 *  BeforeEndTime
 *  ResourceIdentifier + BeforeEndTime
 *  ResourceIdentifier + AfterEndTime
 *  ResourceType + BeforeEndTime
 *  ResourceType + AfterEndTime
 *
 * Party Type = Proposer
 *  ResourceIdentifier
 *  OfferId
 *  AcceptorAccountId
 *  Status (ACTIVE)
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + ResourceIdentifier
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + AcceptorAccountId
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + OfferId
 *  Status (ACTIVE) + ResourceType
 *  AcceptorAccountId + BeforeEndTime
 *  AcceptorAccountId + AfterEndTime
```

```
 *  AcceptorAccountId + AfterEndTime
 *  OfferId + BeforeEndTime
 *
 * Status values can be: ACTIVE, CANCELLED, EXPIRED, RENEWED, REPLACED, ROLLED_BACK,
 SUPERSEDED, TERMINATED
 */

public class SearchAgreementsByTwoFilters {

 public static final String FILTER_1_NAME = "ResourceType";

 public static final String FILTER_1_VALUE = "SaaSProduct";

 public static final String FILTER_2_NAME = "Status";

 public static final String FILTER_2_VALUE = "ACTIVE";

 /*
  * search agreements by two customize filter
  */
 public static void main(String[] args) {

  List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = getAgreements();

  ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(agreementSummaryList);

 }

 public static List<AgreementViewSummary> getAgreements() {
  MarketplaceAgreementClient marketplaceAgreementClient =
    MarketplaceAgreementClient.builder()
    .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
    .build();

  Filter partyTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(PARTY_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PROPOSER).build();

  Filter agreementTypeFilter = Filter.builder().name(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_NAME)
    .values(AGREEMENT_TYPE_FILTER_VALUE_PURCHASEAGREEMENT).build();

  Filter customizeFilter1 =
 Filter.builder().name(FILTER_1_NAME).values(FILTER_1_VALUE).build();
```

```
 Filter customizeFilter2 =
Filter.builder().name(FILTER_2_NAME).values(FILTER_2_VALUE).build();


 List<Filter> filters = new ArrayList<Filter>();

 filters.addAll(Arrays.asList(partyTypeFilter, agreementTypeFilter,
customizeFilter1, customizeFilter2));

 SearchAgreementsRequest searchAgreementsRequest =
   SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
   .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
   .filters(filters)
   .build();

 SearchAgreementsResponse searchAgreementsResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);

 List<AgreementViewSummary> agreementSummaryList = new
ArrayList<AgreementViewSummary>();

 agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());

 while (searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken() != null &&
searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken().length() > 0) {
  searchAgreementsRequest =
    SearchAgreementsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(AWS_MP_CATALOG)
    .filters(filters)
    .nextToken(searchAgreementsResponse.nextToken())
    .build();
  searchAgreementsResponse =
marketplaceAgreementClient.searchAgreements(searchAgreementsRequest);
  agreementSummaryList.addAll(searchAgreementsResponse.agreementViewSummaries());
 }
 return agreementSummaryList;
}

}
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

MediaConvert examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with MediaConvert.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.mediaconvert;

import java.net.URI;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.MediaConvertClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.Output;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.MediaConvertException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputGroup;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputGroupSettings;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsGroupSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputGroupType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsDirectoryStructure;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsManifestDurationFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsStreamInfResolution;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsClientCache;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsCaptionLanguageSetting;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsManifestCompression;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsCodecSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsOutputSelection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsProgramDateTime;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsTimedMetadataId3Frame;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsSegmentControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.FileGroupSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ContainerSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ContainerType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ScalingBehavior;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoTimecodeInsertion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ColorMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.RespondToAfd;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AfdSignaling;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DropFrameTimecode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoCodecSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264Settings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoCodec;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.CreateJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264RateControlMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264QualityTuningLevel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264SceneChangeDetect;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264ParControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacRawFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264QvbrSettings;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264CodecLevel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FramerateControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacCodingMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264Telecine;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264GopSizeUnits;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264CodecProfile;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264GopBReference;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioTypeControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AntiAlias;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264SlowPal;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264Syntax;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8Settings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputDenoiseFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.CreateJobResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264EntropyEncoding;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputPsiControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ColorSpace;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264RepeatPps;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264FieldEncoding;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8NielsenId3;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputDeblockFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputRotate;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264DynamicSubGop;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.TimedMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.JobSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioDefaultSelection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.VideoSelector;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacSpecification;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.Input;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.OutputSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264AdaptiveQuantization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioLanguageCodeControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputFilterEnable;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.H264InterlaceMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioCodecSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioCodec;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacRateControlMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AacCodecProfile;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsIFrameOnlyManifest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.FrameCaptureSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.AudioSelector;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8PcrControl;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.InputTimecodeSource;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.HlsSettings;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.M3u8Scte35Source;

/**
 * Create a MediaConvert job. Must supply MediaConvert access role Amazon
 * Resource Name (ARN), and a
 * valid video input file via Amazon S3 URL.
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 */
public class CreateJob {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:
                                    <mcRoleARN> <fileInput>\s

                                Where:
                                    mcRoleARN - The MediaConvert Role ARN.\s
                                    fileInput -  The URL of an Amazon S3 bucket
 where the input file is located.\s
                                """;

                if (args.length != 2) {
                        System.out.println(usage);
                        System.exit(1);
                }

                String mcRoleARN = args[0];
                String fileInput = args[1];
                Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
                MediaConvertClient mc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                                .region(region)
                                .build();

                String id = createMediaJob(mc, mcRoleARN, fileInput);
                System.out.println("MediaConvert job created. Job Id = " + id);
```

```
                mc.close();
        }

        public static String createMediaJob(MediaConvertClient mc, String mcRoleARN,
 String fileInput) {

                String s3path = fileInput.substring(0, fileInput.lastIndexOf('/') +
 1) + "javasdk/out/";
                String fileOutput = s3path + "index";
                String thumbsOutput = s3path + "thumbs/";
                String mp4Output = s3path + "mp4/";

                try {
                        DescribeEndpointsResponse res = mc

 .describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest.builder().maxResults(20).build());

                        if (res.endpoints().size() <= 0) {
                                System.out.println("Cannot find MediaConvert service
 endpoint URL!");
                                System.exit(1);
                        }
                        String endpointURL = res.endpoints().get(0).url();
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert service URL: " +
 endpointURL);
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert role arn: " + mcRoleARN);
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert input file: " + fileInput);
                        System.out.println("MediaConvert output path: " + s3path);

                        MediaConvertClient emc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                                        .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                                        .endpointOverride(URI.create(endpointURL))
                                        .build();

                        // output group Preset HLS low profile
                        Output hlsLow = createOutput("hls_low", "_low", "_$dt$",
 750000, 7, 1920, 1080, 640);
                        // output group Preset HLS media profile
                        Output hlsMedium = createOutput("hls_medium", "_medium", "_
$dt$", 1200000, 7, 1920, 1080, 1280);
                        // output group Preset HLS high profole
                        Output hlsHigh = createOutput("hls_high", "_high", "_$dt$",
 3500000, 8, 1920, 1080, 1920);
```

```
                        OutputGroup appleHLS = OutputGroup.builder().name("Apple
HLS").customName("Example")

.outputGroupSettings(OutputGroupSettings.builder()

.type(OutputGroupType.HLS_GROUP_SETTINGS)

.hlsGroupSettings(HlsGroupSettings.builder()

.directoryStructure(

   HlsDirectoryStructure.SINGLE_DIRECTORY)

.manifestDurationFormat(

   HlsManifestDurationFormat.INTEGER)

.streamInfResolution(

   HlsStreamInfResolution.INCLUDE)

.clientCache(HlsClientCache.ENABLED)

.captionLanguageSetting(

   HlsCaptionLanguageSetting.OMIT)

.manifestCompression(

   HlsManifestCompression.NONE)

.codecSpecification(

   HlsCodecSpecification.RFC_4281)

.outputSelection(

   HlsOutputSelection.MANIFESTS_AND_SEGMENTS)

.programDateTime(HlsProgramDateTime.EXCLUDE)

.programDateTimePeriod(600)

.timedMetadataId3Frame(
```

```
   HlsTimedMetadataId3Frame.PRIV)

.timedMetadataId3Period(10)

.destination(fileOutput)

.segmentControl(HlsSegmentControl.SEGMENTED_FILES)

.minFinalSegmentLength((double) 0)

.segmentLength(4).minSegmentLength(0).build())
                                                        .build())
                                        .outputs(hlsLow, hlsMedium,
hlsHigh).build();

                       OutputGroup fileMp4 = OutputGroup.builder().name("File
Group").customName("mp4")

.outputGroupSettings(OutputGroupSettings.builder()

.type(OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS)

.fileGroupSettings(FileGroupSettings.builder()

.destination(mp4Output).build())
                                                        .build())
                                        .outputs(Output.builder().extension("mp4")

.containerSettings(ContainerSettings.builder()

.container(ContainerType.MP4).build())

.videoDescription(VideoDescription.builder().width(1280)
                                                                        .height(720)

.scalingBehavior(ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT)

.sharpness(50).antiAlias(AntiAlias.ENABLED)

.timecodeInsertion(

   VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED)
```

```
.colorMetadata(ColorMetadata.INSERT)

.respondToAfd(RespondToAfd.NONE)

.afdSignaling(AfdSignaling.NONE)

.dropFrameTimecode(DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED)

.codecSettings(VideoCodecSettings.builder()

   .codec(VideoCodec.H_264)

   .h264Settings(H264Settings

                   .builder()

                   .rateControlMode(

                                   H264RateControlMode.QVBR)

                   .parControl(H264ParControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)

                   .qualityTuningLevel(

                                   H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS)

                   .qvbrSettings(

                                   H264QvbrSettings.builder()

                                                   .qvbrQualityLevel(

                                                                   8)

                                                   .build())

                   .codecLevel(H264CodecLevel.AUTO)

                   .codecProfile(H264CodecProfile.MAIN)

                   .maxBitrate(2400000)

                   .framerateControl(
```

```
                                H264FramerateControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)
                .gopSize(2.0)
                .gopSizeUnits(H264GopSizeUnits.SECONDS)
                .numberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames(
                                2)
                .gopClosedCadence(
                                1)
                .gopBReference(H264GopBReference.DISABLED)
                .slowPal(H264SlowPal.DISABLED)
                .syntax(H264Syntax.DEFAULT)
                .numberReferenceFrames(
                                3)
                .dynamicSubGop(H264DynamicSubGop.STATIC)
                .fieldEncoding(H264FieldEncoding.PAFF)
                .sceneChangeDetect(
                                H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED)
                .minIInterval(0)
                .telecine(H264Telecine.NONE)
                .framerateConversionAlgorithm(
                                H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP)
                .entropyEncoding(
                                H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC)
```

```
                    .slices(1)
                    .unregisteredSeiTimecode(
                                    H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED)
                    .repeatPps(H264RepeatPps.DISABLED)
                    .adaptiveQuantization(
                                    H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH)
                    .spatialAdaptiveQuantization(
                                    H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                    .temporalAdaptiveQuantization(
                                    H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                    .flickerAdaptiveQuantization(
                                    H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED)
                    .softness(0)
                    .interlaceMode(H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE)
                    .build())
   .build())
                                                                    .build())
.audioDescriptions(AudioDescription.builder()
.audioTypeControl(AudioTypeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.languageCodeControl(
   AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.codecSettings(AudioCodecSettings.builder()
```

```
    .codec(AudioCodec.AAC)

    .aacSettings(AacSettings

                     .builder()

                     .codecProfile(AacCodecProfile.LC)

                     .rateControlMode(

                                     AacRateControlMode.CBR)

                     .codingMode(AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0)

                     .sampleRate(44100)

                     .bitrate(160000)

                     .rawFormat(AacRawFormat.NONE)

                     .specification(AacSpecification.MPEG4)

                     .audioDescriptionBroadcasterMix(

                                     AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL)

                     .build())

    .build())
                                                                                .build())
                                                                .build())
                                                .build();
                         OutputGroup thumbs = OutputGroup.builder().name("File
Group").customName("thumbs")

.outputGroupSettings(OutputGroupSettings.builder()

.type(OutputGroupType.FILE_GROUP_SETTINGS)

.fileGroupSettings(FileGroupSettings.builder()

.destination(thumbsOutput).build())
                                                                .build())
```

```
                                        .outputs(Output.builder().extension("jpg")

.containerSettings(ContainerSettings.builder()

.container(ContainerType.RAW).build())

.videoDescription(VideoDescription.builder()

.scalingBehavior(ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT)

.sharpness(50).antiAlias(AntiAlias.ENABLED)

.timecodeInsertion(

   VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED)

.colorMetadata(ColorMetadata.INSERT)

.dropFrameTimecode(DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED)

.codecSettings(VideoCodecSettings.builder()

   .codec(VideoCodec.FRAME_CAPTURE)

   .frameCaptureSettings(

                    FrameCaptureSettings

                                   .builder()

                                   .framerateNumerator(

                                                   1)

                                   .framerateDenominator(

                                                   1)

                                   .maxCaptures(10000000)

                                   .quality(80)

                                   .build())
```

```
    .build())
                                                                                .build())
                                                                .build())
                                                .build();

                        Map<String, AudioSelector> audioSelectors = new HashMap<>();
                        audioSelectors.put("Audio Selector 1",

AudioSelector.builder().defaultSelection(AudioDefaultSelection.DEFAULT)
                                                                .offset(0).build());

                        JobSettings jobSettings =
JobSettings.builder().inputs(Input.builder()
                                                .audioSelectors(audioSelectors)
                                                .videoSelector(

VideoSelector.builder().colorSpace(ColorSpace.FOLLOW)

.rotate(InputRotate.DEGREE_0).build())

.filterEnable(InputFilterEnable.AUTO).filterStrength(0)
                                                .deblockFilter(InputDeblockFilter.DISABLED)

.denoiseFilter(InputDenoiseFilter.DISABLED).psiControl(InputPsiControl.USE_PSI)

.timecodeSource(InputTimecodeSource.EMBEDDED).fileInput(fileInput).build())
                                                .outputGroups(appleHLS, thumbs,
fileMp4).build();

                        CreateJobRequest createJobRequest =
CreateJobRequest.builder().role(mcRoleARN)
                                                .settings(jobSettings)
                                                .build();

                        CreateJobResponse createJobResponse =
emc.createJob(createJobRequest);
                        return createJobResponse.job().id();

                } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.toString());
                        System.exit(0);
                }
                return "";
```

```
        }

        private final static Output createOutput(String customName,
                        String nameModifier,
                        String segmentModifier,
                        int qvbrMaxBitrate,
                        int qvbrQualityLevel,
                        int originWidth,
                        int originHeight,
                        int targetWidth) {

                int targetHeight = Math.round(originHeight * targetWidth /
originWidth)
                                - (Math.round(originHeight * targetWidth /
originWidth) % 4);
                Output output = null;
                try {
                        output =
Output.builder().nameModifier(nameModifier).outputSettings(OutputSettings.builder()

.hlsSettings(HlsSettings.builder().segmentModifier(segmentModifier)

.audioGroupId("program_audio")

.iFrameOnlyManifest(HlsIFrameOnlyManifest.EXCLUDE).build())
                                        .build())

.containerSettings(ContainerSettings.builder().container(ContainerType.M3_U8)

.m3u8Settings(M3u8Settings.builder().audioFramesPerPes(4)

.pcrControl(M3u8PcrControl.PCR_EVERY_PES_PACKET)

.pmtPid(480).privateMetadataPid(503)

.programNumber(1).patInterval(0).pmtInterval(0)

.scte35Source(M3u8Scte35Source.NONE)

.scte35Pid(500).nielsenId3(M3u8NielsenId3.NONE)

.timedMetadata(TimedMetadata.NONE)

.timedMetadataPid(502).videoPid(481)
```

```
.audioPids(482, 483, 484, 485, 486, 487, 488,

   489, 490, 491, 492)
                                                                                .build())
                                                                .build())
                                                .videoDescription(

VideoDescription.builder().width(targetWidth)

.height(targetHeight)

.scalingBehavior(ScalingBehavior.DEFAULT)

.sharpness(50).antiAlias(AntiAlias.ENABLED)

.timecodeInsertion(

   VideoTimecodeInsertion.DISABLED)

.colorMetadata(ColorMetadata.INSERT)

.respondToAfd(RespondToAfd.NONE)

.afdSignaling(AfdSignaling.NONE)

.dropFrameTimecode(DropFrameTimecode.ENABLED)

.codecSettings(VideoCodecSettings.builder()

   .codec(VideoCodec.H_264)

   .h264Settings(H264Settings

                    .builder()

                    .rateControlMode(

                                    H264RateControlMode.QVBR)

                    .parControl(H264ParControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)

                    .qualityTuningLevel(
```

```
                                H264QualityTuningLevel.SINGLE_PASS)
                        .qvbrSettings(H264QvbrSettings
                                .builder()
                                .qvbrQualityLevel(
                                                qvbrQualityLevel)
                                .build())
                        .codecLevel(H264CodecLevel.AUTO)
                        .codecProfile((targetHeight > 720
                                && targetWidth > 1280)
                                                ? H264CodecProfile.HIGH
                                                : H264CodecProfile.MAIN)
                        .maxBitrate(qvbrMaxBitrate)
                        .framerateControl(
                                H264FramerateControl.INITIALIZE_FROM_SOURCE)
                        .gopSize(2.0)
                        .gopSizeUnits(H264GopSizeUnits.SECONDS)
                        .numberBFramesBetweenReferenceFrames(
                                2)
                        .gopClosedCadence(
                                1)
                        .gopBReference(H264GopBReference.DISABLED)
                        .slowPal(H264SlowPal.DISABLED)
```

```
                .syntax(H264Syntax.DEFAULT)
                .numberReferenceFrames(
                        3)
                .dynamicSubGop(H264DynamicSubGop.STATIC)
                .fieldEncoding(H264FieldEncoding.PAFF)
                .sceneChangeDetect(
                        H264SceneChangeDetect.ENABLED)
                .minIInterval(0)
                .telecine(H264Telecine.NONE)
                .framerateConversionAlgorithm(
                        H264FramerateConversionAlgorithm.DUPLICATE_DROP)
                .entropyEncoding(
                        H264EntropyEncoding.CABAC)
                .slices(1)
                .unregisteredSeiTimecode(
                        H264UnregisteredSeiTimecode.DISABLED)
                .repeatPps(H264RepeatPps.DISABLED)
                .adaptiveQuantization(
                        H264AdaptiveQuantization.HIGH)
                .spatialAdaptiveQuantization(
                        H264SpatialAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                .temporalAdaptiveQuantization(
```

```
                                    H264TemporalAdaptiveQuantization.ENABLED)
                    .flickerAdaptiveQuantization(
                                    H264FlickerAdaptiveQuantization.DISABLED)
                    .softness(0)
                    .interlaceMode(H264InterlaceMode.PROGRESSIVE)
                    .build())
    .build())
                                                                        .build())
.audioDescriptions(AudioDescription.builder()
.audioTypeControl(AudioTypeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.languageCodeControl(AudioLanguageCodeControl.FOLLOW_INPUT)
.codecSettings(AudioCodecSettings.builder()
.codec(AudioCodec.AAC).aacSettings(AacSettings
    .builder()
    .codecProfile(AacCodecProfile.LC)
    .rateControlMode(
                    AacRateControlMode.CBR)
    .codingMode(AacCodingMode.CODING_MODE_2_0)
    .sampleRate(44100)
    .bitrate(96000)
    .rawFormat(AacRawFormat.NONE)
    .specification(AacSpecification.MPEG4)
```

```
    .audioDescriptionBroadcasterMix(

                    AacAudioDescriptionBroadcasterMix.NORMAL)

    .build())
                                                                        .build())
                                                        .build())
                                        .build();
                } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
                        e.printStackTrace();
                        System.exit(0);
                }
                return output;
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.GetJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.GetJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.MediaConvertException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.MediaConvertClient;
import java.net.URI;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetJob {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = "\n" +
                "  <jobId> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "  jobId - The job id value.\n\n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String jobId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MediaConvertClient mc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getSpecificJob(mc, jobId);
        mc.close();
    }

    public static void getSpecificJob(MediaConvertClient mc, String jobId) {
        try {
            DescribeEndpointsResponse res =
 mc.describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .build());

            if (res.endpoints().size() <= 0) {
                System.out.println("Cannot find MediaConvert service endpoint
 URL!");
                System.exit(1);
            }
            String endpointURL = res.endpoints().get(0).url();
```

```
            MediaConvertClient emc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                    .endpointOverride(URI.create(endpointURL))
                    .build();

            GetJobRequest jobRequest = GetJobRequest.builder()
                    .id(jobId)
                    .build();

            GetJobResponse response = emc.getJob(jobRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the job is " + response.job().arn());

        } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
            System.out.println(e.toString());
            System.exit(0);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.MediaConvertClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.DescribeEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.ListJobsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.Job;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.mediaconvert.model.MediaConvertException;
```

```
import java.net.URI;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListJobs {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MediaConvertClient mc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listCompleteJobs(mc);
        mc.close();
    }

    public static void listCompleteJobs(MediaConvertClient mc) {
        try {
            DescribeEndpointsResponse res =
 mc.describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .build());

            if (res.endpoints().size() <= 0) {
                System.out.println("Cannot find MediaConvert service endpoint
 URL!");
                System.exit(1);
            }

            String endpointURL = res.endpoints().get(0).url();
            MediaConvertClient emc = MediaConvertClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                    .endpointOverride(URI.create(endpointURL))
                    .build();

            ListJobsRequest jobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .status("COMPLETE")
```

```
                    .build();

            ListJobsResponse jobsResponse = emc.listJobs(jobsRequest);
            List<Job> jobs = jobsResponse.jobs();
            for (Job job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("The JOB ARN is : " + job.arn());
            }

        } catch (MediaConvertException e) {
            System.out.println(e.toString());
            System.exit(0);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Migration Hub examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Migration Hub.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteProgressUpdateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteProgressUpdateStream`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DeleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteProgressStream {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <progressStream>\s

                Where:
                    progressStream - the name of a progress stream to delete.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String progressStream = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        deleteStream(migrationClient, progressStream);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteStream(MigrationHubClient migrationClient, String
 streamName) {
        try {
            DeleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest deleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest =
 DeleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest
                    .builder()
                    .progressUpdateStreamName(streamName)
                    .build();


 migrationClient.deleteProgressUpdateStream(deleteProgressUpdateStreamRequest);
            System.out.println(streamName + " is deleted");

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteProgressUpdateStream in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeApplicationState`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplicationState`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeApplicationStateRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeApplicationStateResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeAppState {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    DescribeAppState <appId>\s

                Where:
                    appId -  the application id value.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeApplicationState(migrationClient, appId);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeApplicationState(MigrationHubClient migrationClient,
 String appId) {
        try {
```

```
            DescribeApplicationStateRequest applicationStateRequest =
 DescribeApplicationStateRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            DescribeApplicationStateResponse applicationStateResponse =
 migrationClient
                    .describeApplicationState(applicationStateRequest);
            System.out.println("The application status is " +
 applicationStateResponse.applicationStatusAsString());

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplicationState in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeMigrationTask`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeMigrationTask`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeMigrationTaskRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.DescribeMigrationTaskResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
```

```
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeMigrationTask {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    DescribeMigrationTask <migrationTask> <progressStream>\s

                Where:
                    migrationTask - the name of a migration task.\s
                    progressStream - the name of a progress stream.\s
                """;

        if (args.length < 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String migrationTask = args[0];
        String progressStream = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeMigTask(migrationClient, migrationTask, progressStream);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeMigTask(MigrationHubClient migrationClient, String
 migrationTask,
            String progressStream) {
        try {
            DescribeMigrationTaskRequest migrationTaskRequestRequest =
 DescribeMigrationTaskRequest.builder()
                    .progressUpdateStream(progressStream)
                    .migrationTaskName(migrationTask)
```

```
                    .build();

            DescribeMigrationTaskResponse migrationTaskResponse = migrationClient
                    .describeMigrationTask(migrationTaskRequestRequest);
            System.out.println("The name is " +
 migrationTaskResponse.migrationTask().migrationTaskName());

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeMigrationTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ImportMigrationTask`

The following code example shows how to use `ImportMigrationTask`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.CreateProgressUpdateStreamRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ImportMigrationTaskRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ImportMigrationTask {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <migrationTask> <progressStream>\s

                Where:
                    migrationTask - the name of a migration task.\s
                    progressStream - the name of a progress stream.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String migrationTask = args[0];
        String progressStream = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        importMigrTask(migrationClient, migrationTask, progressStream);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void importMigrTask(MigrationHubClient migrationClient, String
 migrationTask, String progressStream) {
        try {
            CreateProgressUpdateStreamRequest progressUpdateStreamRequest =
 CreateProgressUpdateStreamRequest.builder()
                    .progressUpdateStreamName(progressStream)
                    .dryRun(false)
                    .build();

            migrationClient.createProgressUpdateStream(progressUpdateStreamRequest);
            ImportMigrationTaskRequest migrationTaskRequest =
 ImportMigrationTaskRequest.builder()
                    .migrationTaskName(migrationTask)
```

```
                    .progressUpdateStream(progressStream)
                    .dryRun(false)
                    .build();

            migrationClient.importMigrationTask(migrationTaskRequest);

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ImportMigrationTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListApplications`

The following code example shows how to use `ListApplications`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ApplicationState;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListApplicationStatesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListApplicationStatesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListApplications {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listApps(migrationClient);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void listApps(MigrationHubClient migrationClient) {
        try {
            ListApplicationStatesRequest applicationStatesRequest =
 ListApplicationStatesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListApplicationStatesResponse response =
 migrationClient.listApplicationStates(applicationStatesRequest);
            List<ApplicationState> apps = response.applicationStateList();
            for (ApplicationState appState : apps) {
                System.out.println("App Id is " + appState.applicationId());
                System.out.println("The status is " +
 appState.applicationStatus().toString());
            }

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListApplications in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ListCreatedArtifacts

The following code example shows how to use `ListCreatedArtifacts`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.CreatedArtifact;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListCreatedArtifactsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListCreatedArtifactsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * To run this Java V2 code example, ensure that you have setup your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListCreatedArtifacts {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listArtifacts(migrationClient);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void listArtifacts(MigrationHubClient migrationClient) {
        try {
```

```
            ListCreatedArtifactsRequest listCreatedArtifactsRequest =
 ListCreatedArtifactsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .migrationTaskName("SampleApp5")
                    .progressUpdateStream("ProgressSteamB")
                    .build();

            ListCreatedArtifactsResponse response =
 migrationClient.listCreatedArtifacts(listCreatedArtifactsRequest);
            List<CreatedArtifact> apps = response.createdArtifactList();
            for (CreatedArtifact artifact : apps) {
                System.out.println("APp Id is " + artifact.description());
                System.out.println("The name is " + artifact.name());
            }

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCreatedArtifacts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListMigrationTasks`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMigrationTasks`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.MigrationHubClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListMigrationTasksRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.ListMigrationTasksResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationTaskSummary;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.migrationhub.model.MigrationHubException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListMigrationTasks {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        MigrationHubClient migrationClient = MigrationHubClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMigrTasks(migrationClient);
        migrationClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMigrTasks(MigrationHubClient migrationClient) {
        try {
            ListMigrationTasksRequest listMigrationTasksRequest =
 ListMigrationTasksRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListMigrationTasksResponse response =
 migrationClient.listMigrationTasks(listMigrationTasksRequest);
            List<MigrationTaskSummary> migrationList =
 response.migrationTaskSummaryList();
            for (MigrationTaskSummary migration : migrationList) {
                System.out.println("Migration task name is " +
 migration.migrationTaskName());
                System.out.println("The Progress update stream is " +
 migration.progressUpdateStream());
            }

        } catch (MigrationHubException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMigrationTasks in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
```

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.KafkaEvent.KafkaEventRecord;

import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Map;

public class Example implements RequestHandler<KafkaEvent, Void> {

    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(KafkaEvent event, Context context) {
        for (Map.Entry<String, java.util.List<KafkaEventRecord>> entry :
 event.getRecords().entrySet()) {
            String key = entry.getKey();
            System.out.println("Key: " + key);

            for (KafkaEventRecord record : entry.getValue()) {
                System.out.println("Record: " + record);

                byte[] value = Base64.getDecoder().decode(record.getValue());
                String message = new String(value);
                System.out.println("Message: " + message);
            }
        }

        return null;
    }
}
```

Neptune examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Neptune.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Neptune

The following code examples show how to get started using Neptune.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloNeptune {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        NeptuneAsyncClient neptuneClient = NeptuneAsyncClient.create();
        describeDbCluster(neptuneClient).join(); // This ensures the async code runs
 to completion
    }

    /**
     * Describes the Amazon Neptune DB clusters.
     *
     * @param neptuneClient the Neptune asynchronous client used to make the request
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
 finished
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> describeDbCluster(NeptuneAsyncClient
 neptuneClient) {
        DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                .maxRecords(20)
```

```
                .build();

        SdkPublisher<DescribeDbClustersResponse> paginator =
neptuneClient.describeDBClustersPaginator(request);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();

        paginator.subscribe(new Subscriber<DescribeDbClustersResponse>() {
            private Subscription subscription;

            @Override
            public void onSubscribe(Subscription s) {
                this.subscription = s;
                s.request(Long.MAX_VALUE); // request all items
            }

            @Override
            public void onNext(DescribeDbClustersResponse response) {
                response.dbClusters().forEach(cluster -> {
                    System.out.println("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
                    System.out.println("Status: " + cluster.status());
                });
            }

            @Override
            public void onError(Throwable t) {
                future.completeExceptionally(t);
            }

            @Override
            public void onComplete() {
                future.complete(null);
            }
        });

        return future.whenComplete((result, throwable) -> {
            neptuneClient.close();
            if (throwable != null) {
                System.err.println("Error describing DB clusters: " +
throwable.getMessage());
            }
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClustersPaginator in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Neptune Subnet Group.
- Create an Neptune Cluster.
- Create an Neptune Instance.
- Check the status of the Neptune Instance.
- Show Neptune cluster details.
- Stop the Neptune cluster.
- Start the Neptune cluster.
- Delete the Neptune Assets.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Neptune features.

```
public class NeptuneScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
```

```
   private static final Logger logger =
LoggerFactory.getLogger(NeptuneScenario.class);
   static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
   static NeptuneActions neptuneActions = new NeptuneActions();

   public static void main(String[] args) {
       final String usage =
               """
               Usage:
                   <subnetGroupName> <clusterName> <dbInstanceId>

               Where:
                   subnetGroupName - The name of an existing Neptune DB subnet
group that includes subnets in at least two Availability Zones.
                   clusterName     - The unique identifier for the Neptune DB
cluster.
                   dbInstanceId    - The identifier for a specific Neptune DB
instance within the cluster.
               """;
       String subnetGroupName = "neptuneSubnetGroup65";
       String clusterName = "neptuneCluster65";
       String dbInstanceId = "neptuneDB65";

       logger.info("""
                  Amazon Neptune is a fully managed graph
                  database service by AWS, designed specifically
                  for handling complex relationships and connected
                  datasets at scale. It supports two popular graph models:
                  property graphs (via openCypher and Gremlin) and RDF
                  graphs (via SPARQL). This makes Neptune ideal for
                  use cases such as knowledge graphs, fraud detection,
                  social networking, recommendation engines, and
                  network management, where relationships between
                  entities are central to the data.

                  Being fully managed, Neptune handles database
                  provisioning, patching, backups, and replication,
                  while also offering high availability and durability
                  within AWS's infrastructure.

                  For developers, programming with Neptune allows
                  for building intelligent, relationship-aware
                  applications that go beyond traditional tabular
                  databases. Developers can use the AWS SDK for Java
```

```
                    to automate infrastructure operations (via NeptuneClient).

                     Let's get started...
                     """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        runScenario(subnetGroupName, dbInstanceId, clusterName);
    }

    public static void runScenario(String subnetGroupName, String dbInstanceId,
String clusterName) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create a Neptune DB Subnet Group");
        logger.info("The Neptune DB subnet group is used when launching a Neptune
cluster");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.createSubnetGroupAsync(subnetGroupName).join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to service quota exceeded: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Create a Neptune Cluster");
        logger.info("A Neptune Cluster allows you to store and query highly
connected datasets with low latency.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String dbClusterId;
        try {
            dbClusterId = neptuneActions.createDBClusterAsync(clusterName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to service quota exceeded: {}",
cause.getMessage());
```

```
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Create a Neptune DB Instance");
        logger.info("In this step, we add a new database instance to the Neptune
cluster");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
        neptuneActions.createDBInstanceAsync(dbInstanceId, dbClusterId).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to service quota exceeded: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Check the status of the Neptune DB Instance");
        logger.info("""
                    In this step, we will wait until the DB instance
                    becomes available. This may take around 10 minutes.
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.checkInstanceStatus(dbInstanceId, "available").join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5.Show Neptune Cluster details");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.describeDBClustersAsync(clusterName).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Stop the Amazon Neptune cluster");
        logger.info("""
                    Once stopped, this step polls the status
                    until the cluster is in a stopped state.
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.stopDBClusterAsync(dbClusterId);
            neptuneActions.waitForClusterStatus(dbClusterId, "stopped");
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("7. Start the Amazon Neptune cluster");
        logger.info("""
                    Once started, this step polls the clusters
                    status until it's in an available state.
                    We will also poll the instance status.
                    """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            neptuneActions.startDBClusterAsync(dbClusterId);
            neptuneActions.waitForClusterStatus(dbClusterId, "available");
            neptuneActions.checkInstanceStatus(dbInstanceId, "available").join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found: {}",
cause.getMessage());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Delete the Neptune Assets");
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the Neptune Assets? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete the Neptune assets.");
            try {
                neptuneActions.deleteNeptuneResourcesAsync(dbInstanceId,
clusterName, subnetGroupName);
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                    logger.error("The request failed due to the resource not found:
{}", cause.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred.", cause);
                }
                return;
            }
        } else {
            logger.info("You selected not to delete Neptune assets.");
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info(
                """
                Thank you for checking out the Amazon Neptune Service Use demo. We
 hope you
                learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps
 today.
                For more AWS code examples, have a look at:
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-
library.html
                """);
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Neptune SDK methods.

```
public class NeptuneActions {
    private CompletableFuture<Void> instanceCheckFuture;
    private static NeptuneAsyncClient neptuneAsyncClient;
    private final Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
```

```
   private static final Logger logger =
LoggerFactory.getLogger(NeptuneActions.class);
   private final NeptuneClient neptuneClient =
NeptuneClient.builder().region(region).build();

   /**
    * Retrieves an instance of the NeptuneAsyncClient.
    * <p>
    * This method initializes and returns a singleton instance of the
NeptuneAsyncClient. The client
    * is configured with the following settings:
    * <ul>
    *     <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
    *     <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
    *     <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
    *     <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
    *     <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
    *     <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
    *     <li>Retry strategy: STANDARD</li>
    * </ul>
    * The client is built using the NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.
    *
    * @return the singleton instance of the NeptuneAsyncClient
    */
   private static NeptuneAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
       if (neptuneAsyncClient == null) {
           SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                   .maxConcurrency(100)
                   .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                   .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                   .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                   .build();

           ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                   .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                   .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                   .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                   .build();

           neptuneAsyncClient = NeptuneAsyncClient.builder()
                   .httpClient(httpClient)
                   .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                   .build();
```

```
        }
        return neptuneAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes a set of Amazon Neptune resources in a defined order.
     * <p>
     * The method performs the following operations in sequence:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Deletes the Neptune DB instance identified by {@code dbInstanceId}.</
li>
     *     <li>Waits until the DB instance is fully deleted.</li>
     *     <li>Deletes the Neptune DB cluster identified by {@code dbClusterId}.</
li>
     *     <li>Deletes the Neptune DB subnet group identified by {@code
 subnetGroupName}.</li>
     * </ol>
     * <p>
     * If any step fails, the subsequent operations are not performed, and the
 exception
     * is logged. This method blocks the calling thread until all operations
 complete.
     *
     * @param dbInstanceId      the ID of the Neptune DB instance to delete
     * @param dbClusterId       the ID of the Neptune DB cluster to delete
     * @param subnetGroupName   the name of the Neptune DB subnet group to delete
     */
    public void deleteNeptuneResourcesAsync(String dbInstanceId, String dbClusterId,
 String subnetGroupName) {
        deleteDBInstanceAsync(dbInstanceId)
                .thenCompose(v -> waitUntilInstanceDeletedAsync(dbInstanceId))
                .thenCompose(v -> deleteDBClusterAsync(dbClusterId))
                .thenCompose(v -> deleteDBSubnetGroupAsync(subnetGroupName))
                .whenComplete((v, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                        logger.info("Failed to delete Neptune resources: " +
 ex.getMessage());
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Neptune resources deleted successfully.");
                    }
                })
                .join(); // Waits for the entire async chain to complete
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Deletes a subnet group.
     *
     * @param subnetGroupName the identifier of the subnet group to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has been
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBSubnetGroupAsync(String subnetGroupName)
{
        DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest request = DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
                .dbSubnetGroupName(subnetGroupName)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDBSubnetGroup(request)
                .thenAccept(response -> logger.info("## Deleting Subnet Group: " +
subnetGroupName));
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has been
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
        DeleteDbClusterRequest request = DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDBCluster(request)
                .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB Cluster:
" + clusterId));
    }

    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitUntilInstanceDeletedAsync(String instanceId)
{
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
        checkInstanceDeletedRecursive(instanceId, startTime, future);
        return future;
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param instanceId the identifier of the DB instance to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the DB instance has
been deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
       DeleteDbInstanceRequest request = DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
               .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDBInstance(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB Instance:
" + instanceId));
   }


   private void checkInstanceDeletedRecursive(String instanceId, long startTime,
CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
       DescribeDbInstancesRequest request = DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
               .build();

       getAsyncClient().describeDBInstances(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof NeptuneException &&
                               ((NeptuneException)
cause).awsErrorDetails().errorCode().equals("DBInstanceNotFound")) {
                           long elapsed = (System.currentTimeMillis() -
startTime) / 1000;
                           logger.info("\r Instance %s deleted after %ds%n",
instanceId, elapsed);
                           future.complete(null);
                           return;
                       }
                       future.completeExceptionally(new CompletionException("Error
polling DB instance", cause));
                       return;
                   }
```

```
                    String status =
response.dbInstances().get(0).dbInstanceStatus();
                    long elapsed = (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) / 1000;
                    System.out.printf("\r  Waiting: Instance %s status: %-10s (%ds
elapsed)", instanceId, status, elapsed);
                    System.out.flush();

                    CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                            .execute(() -> checkInstanceDeletedRecursive(instanceId,
startTime, future));
                });
    }


    public void waitForClusterStatus(String clusterId, String desiredStatus) {
        System.out.printf("Waiting for cluster '%s' to reach status '%s'...\n",
clusterId, desiredStatus);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        checkClusterStatusRecursive(clusterId, desiredStatus,
System.currentTimeMillis(), future);
        future.join();
    }

    private void checkClusterStatusRecursive(String clusterId, String desiredStatus,
long startTime, CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
        DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().describeDBClusters(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        future.completeExceptionally(
                                new CompletionException("Error checking Neptune
cluster status", cause)
                        );
                        return;
                    }

                    List<DBCluster> clusters = response.dbClusters();
                    if (clusters.isEmpty()) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Cluster
not found: " + clusterId));
```

```
                        return;
                    }

                    String currentStatus = clusters.get(0).status();
                    long elapsedSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) /
1000;
                    System.out.printf("\r Elapsed: %-20s  Cluster status: %-20s",
formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds), currentStatus);
                    System.out.flush();

                    if (desiredStatus.equalsIgnoreCase(currentStatus)) {
                        System.out.printf("\r Neptune cluster reached desired status
'%s' after %s.\n", desiredStatus, formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds));
                        future.complete(null);
                    } else {
                        CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                                .execute(() ->
checkClusterStatusRecursive(clusterId, desiredStatus, startTime, future));
                    }
                });
    }


    /**
     * Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
     *
     * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
     */
    public CompletableFuture<StartDbClusterResponse> startDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
        StartDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StartDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().startDBCluster(clusterRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                    if (error != null) {
                        Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }
```

```
                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to start DB cluster: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("DB Cluster starting: " + clusterIdentifier);
                    }
                });
    }

    /**
     * Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
     *
     * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
     */
    public CompletableFuture<StopDbClusterResponse> stopDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
        StopDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StopDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().stopDBCluster(clusterRequest)
                .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                    if (error != null) {
                        Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                        if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                            throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                        }

                        throw new RuntimeException("Failed to stop DB cluster: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("DB Cluster stopped: " + clusterIdentifier);
                    }
                });
    }




    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the specified Amazon RDS DB cluster.
     *
```

```
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the DB cluster to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
done, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
    * if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeDBClustersAsync(String clusterId) {
       DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describeDBClusters(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> {
                   for (DBCluster cluster : response.dbClusters()) {
                       logger.info("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
                       logger.info("Status: " + cluster.status());
                       logger.info("Engine: " + cluster.engine());
                       logger.info("Engine Version: " + cluster.engineVersion());
                       logger.info("Endpoint: " + cluster.endpoint());
                       logger.info("Reader Endpoint: " + cluster.readerEndpoint());
                       logger.info("Availability Zones: " +
cluster.availabilityZones());
                       logger.info("Subnet Group: " + cluster.dbSubnetGroup());
                       logger.info("VPC Security Groups:");
                       cluster.vpcSecurityGroups().forEach(vpcGroup ->
                               logger.info("  - " +
vpcGroup.vpcSecurityGroupId()));
                       logger.info("Storage Encrypted: " +
cluster.storageEncrypted());
                       logger.info("IAM DB Auth Enabled: " +
cluster.iamDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled());
                       logger.info("Backup Retention Period: " +
cluster.backupRetentionPeriod() + " days");
                       logger.info("Preferred Backup Window: " +
cluster.preferredBackupWindow());
                       logger.info("Preferred Maintenance Window: " +
cluster.preferredMaintenanceWindow());
                       logger.info("------");
                   }
               })
               .exceptionally(ex -> {
                   Throwable cause = ex.getCause() != null ? ex.getCause() : ex;

                   if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
```

```
                        throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                    }

                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe the DB cluster: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                });
    }


    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkInstanceStatus(String instanceId, String
desiredStatus) {
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();
        checkStatusRecursive(instanceId, desiredStatus.toLowerCase(), startTime,
future);
        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of a Neptune instance recursively until the desired status
is reached or a timeout occurs.
     *
     * @param instanceId     the ID of the Neptune instance to check
     * @param desiredStatus  the desired status of the Neptune instance
     * @param startTime      the start time of the operation, used to calculate the
elapsed time
     * @param future         a {@link CompletableFuture} that will be completed when
the desired status is reached
     */
    private void checkStatusRecursive(String instanceId, String desiredStatus, long
startTime, CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest request = DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().describeDBInstances(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        future.completeExceptionally(
                                new CompletionException("Error checking Neptune
instance status", cause)
                        );
                        return;
```

```
                    }

                    List<DBInstance> instances = response.dbInstances();
                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Instance
not found: " + instanceId));
                        return;
                    }

                    String currentStatus = instances.get(0).dbInstanceStatus();
                    long elapsedSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) /
1000;
                    System.out.printf("\r Elapsed: %-20s  Status: %-20s",
formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds), currentStatus);
                    System.out.flush();

                    if (desiredStatus.equalsIgnoreCase(currentStatus)) {
                        System.out.printf("\r Neptune instance reached desired
status '%s' after %s.\n", desiredStatus, formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds));
                        future.complete(null);
                    } else {
                        CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                                .execute(() -> checkStatusRecursive(instanceId,
desiredStatus, startTime, future));
                    }
                });
    }


    private String formatElapsedTime(int seconds) {
        int minutes = seconds / 60;
        int remainingSeconds = seconds % 60;

        if (minutes > 0) {
            return minutes + (minutes == 1 ? " min" : " mins") + ", " +
                    remainingSeconds + (remainingSeconds == 1 ? " sec" : " secs");
        } else {
            return remainingSeconds + (remainingSeconds == 1 ? " sec" : " secs");
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB instance asynchronously.
```

```
    *
    * @param dbInstanceId the identifier for the new DB instance
    * @param dbClusterId  the identifier for the DB cluster that the new instance
will be a part of
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the identifier of the
newly created DB instance
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause of either:
    *                             - {@link ServiceQuotaExceededException} if the
request would exceed the maximum quota, or
    *                             - a general exception with the failure message
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDBInstanceAsync(String dbInstanceId,
String dbClusterId) {
       CreateDbInstanceRequest request = CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceId)
               .dbInstanceClass("db.r5.large")
               .engine("neptune")
               .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBInstance(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                           throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                       }
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune DB
instance: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               })
               .thenApply(response -> {
                   String instanceId =
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceIdentifier();
                   logger.info("Created Neptune DB Instance: " + instanceId);
                   return instanceId;
               });
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB cluster asynchronously.
    *
```

```
    * @param dbName the name of the DB cluster to be created
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, provides the ID of the
created DB cluster
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails for any reason, including
if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDBClusterAsync(String dbName) {
       CreateDbClusterRequest request = CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(dbName)
               .engine("neptune")
               .deletionProtection(false)
               .backupRetentionPeriod(1)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBCluster(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                           throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                       }
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune DB
cluster: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               })
               .thenApply(response -> {
                   String clusterId = response.dbCluster().dbClusterIdentifier();
                   logger.info("DB Cluster created: " + clusterId);
                   return clusterId;
               });
   }


   /**
    * Creates a new DB subnet group asynchronously.
    *
    * @param groupName the name of the subnet group to create
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the Amazon Resource
Name (ARN) of the created subnet group
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause that may be
a ServiceQuotaExceededException if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSubnetGroupAsync(String groupName) {
```

```
        // Get the Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) where the Neptune cluster and
resources will be created
        String vpcId = getDefaultVpcId();
        logger.info("VPC is : " + vpcId);

        List<String> subnetList = getSubnetIds(vpcId);
        for (String subnetId : subnetList) {
            System.out.println("Subnet group:" +subnetId);
        }

        CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest request = CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
                .dbSubnetGroupName(groupName)
                .dbSubnetGroupDescription("Subnet group for Neptune cluster")
                .subnetIds(subnetList)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createDBSubnetGroup(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create subnet
group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String name = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupName();
                    String arn = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupArn();
                    logger.info("Subnet group created: " + name);
                    return arn;
                });
    }

    private List<String> getSubnetIds(String vpcId) {
        try (Ec2Client ec2 = Ec2Client.builder().region(region).build()) {
            DescribeSubnetsRequest request = DescribeSubnetsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(builder -> builder.name("vpc-id").values(vpcId))
                    .build();

            DescribeSubnetsResponse response = ec2.describeSubnets(request);
```

```
            return response.subnets().stream()
                    .map(Subnet::subnetId)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());
        }
    }

    public static String getDefaultVpcId() {
        Ec2Client ec2 = Ec2Client.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        Filter myFilter = Filter.builder()
                .name("isDefault")
                .values("true")
                .build();

        List<Filter> filterList = new ArrayList<>();
        filterList.add(myFilter);

        DescribeVpcsRequest request = DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
                .filters(filterList)
                .build();


        DescribeVpcsResponse response = ec2.describeVpcs(request);
        if (!response.vpcs().isEmpty()) {
            Vpc defaultVpc = response.vpcs().get(0);
            return defaultVpc.vpcId();
        } else {
            throw new RuntimeException("No default VPC found in this region.");
        }
    }
}
```

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB cluster asynchronously.
    *
    * @param dbName the name of the DB cluster to be created
    * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, provides the ID of the
created DB cluster
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails for any reason, including
if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDBClusterAsync(String dbName) {
       CreateDbClusterRequest request = CreateDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(dbName)
               .engine("neptune")
               .deletionProtection(false)
               .backupRetentionPeriod(1)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBCluster(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                           throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                       }
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune DB
cluster: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               })
               .thenApply(response -> {
                   String clusterId = response.dbCluster().dbClusterIdentifier();
                   logger.info("DB Cluster created: " + clusterId);
                   return clusterId;
```

```
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Neptune DB instance asynchronously.
    *
    * @param dbInstanceId the identifier for the new DB instance
    * @param dbClusterId  the identifier for the DB cluster that the new instance
will be a part of
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the identifier of the
newly created DB instance
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause of either:
    *                             - {@link ServiceQuotaExceededException} if the
request would exceed the maximum quota, or
    *                             - a general exception with the failure message
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createDBInstanceAsync(String dbInstanceId,
String dbClusterId) {
       CreateDbInstanceRequest request = CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
               .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceId)
               .dbInstanceClass("db.r5.large")
               .engine("neptune")
               .dbClusterIdentifier(dbClusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBInstance(request)
```

```
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                        }
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create Neptune DB
instance: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                })
                .thenApply(response -> {
                    String instanceId =
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceIdentifier();
                    logger.info("Created Neptune DB Instance: " + instanceId);
                    return instanceId;
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBSubnetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSubnetGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates a new DB subnet group asynchronously.
     *
     * @param groupName the name of the subnet group to create
     * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, returns the Amazon Resource
Name (ARN) of the created subnet group
```

```
    * @throws CompletionException if the operation fails, with a cause that may be
a ServiceQuotaExceededException if the request would exceed the maximum quota
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> createSubnetGroupAsync(String groupName) {

       // Get the Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) where the Neptune cluster and
resources will be created
       String vpcId = getDefaultVpcId();
       logger.info("VPC is : " + vpcId);

       List<String> subnetList = getSubnetIds(vpcId);
       for (String subnetId : subnetList) {
           System.out.println("Subnet group:" +subnetId);
       }

       CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest request = CreateDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
               .dbSubnetGroupName(groupName)
               .dbSubnetGroupDescription("Subnet group for Neptune cluster")
               .subnetIds(subnetList)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createDBSubnetGroup(request)
               .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                   if (exception != null) {
                       Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                       if (cause instanceof ServiceQuotaExceededException) {
                           throw new CompletionException("The operation was denied
because the request would exceed the maximum quota.", cause);
                       }
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to create subnet
group: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               })
               .thenApply(response -> {
                   String name = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupName();
                   String arn = response.dbSubnetGroup().dbSubnetGroupArn();
                   logger.info("Subnet group created: " + name);
                   return arn;
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

CreateGraph

The following code example shows how to use CreateGraph.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Executes the process of creating a new Neptune graph.
    *
    * @param client        the Neptune graph client used to interact with the
Neptune service
    * @param graphName     the name of the graph to be created
    * @throws NeptuneGraphException if an error occurs while creating the graph
    */
   public static void executeCreateGraph(NeptuneGraphClient client, String
graphName) {
       try {
           // Create the graph request
           CreateGraphRequest request = CreateGraphRequest.builder()
                   .graphName(graphName)
                   .provisionedMemory(16)
                   .build();

           // Create the graph
           CreateGraphResponse response = client.createGraph(request);

           // Extract the graph name and ARN
           String createdGraphName = response.name();
           String graphArn = response.arn();
           String graphEndpoint = response.endpoint();

           System.out.println("Graph created successfully!");
           System.out.println("Graph Name: " + createdGraphName);
           System.out.println("Graph ARN: " + graphArn);
           System.out.println("Graph Endpoint: " +graphEndpoint );

       } catch (NeptuneGraphException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("Failed to create graph: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateGraph in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has been
deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
        DeleteDbClusterRequest request = DeleteDbClusterRequest.builder()
                .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDBCluster(request)
                .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB Cluster:
" + clusterId));
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes a DB instance asynchronously.
     *
     * @param instanceId the identifier of the DB instance to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the DB instance has
been deleted
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBInstanceAsync(String instanceId) {
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest request = DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
                .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteDBInstance(request)
                .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("## Deleting DB Instance:
" + instanceId));
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBSubnetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBSubnetGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a subnet group.
    *
    * @param subnetGroupName the identifier of the subnet group to delete
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster has been
deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteDBSubnetGroupAsync(String subnetGroupName)
{
       DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest request = DeleteDbSubnetGroupRequest.builder()
               .dbSubnetGroupName(subnetGroupName)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteDBSubnetGroup(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> logger.info("## Deleting Subnet Group: " +
subnetGroupName));
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously describes the specified Amazon RDS DB cluster.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the DB cluster to describe
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the operation is
done, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
    * if an error occurs
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> describeDBClustersAsync(String clusterId) {
       DescribeDbClustersRequest request = DescribeDbClustersRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterId)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().describeDBClusters(request)
               .thenAccept(response -> {
                   for (DBCluster cluster : response.dbClusters()) {
                       logger.info("Cluster Identifier: " +
cluster.dbClusterIdentifier());
                       logger.info("Status: " + cluster.status());
                       logger.info("Engine: " + cluster.engine());
                       logger.info("Engine Version: " + cluster.engineVersion());
                       logger.info("Endpoint: " + cluster.endpoint());
                       logger.info("Reader Endpoint: " + cluster.readerEndpoint());
                       logger.info("Availability Zones: " +
cluster.availabilityZones());
                       logger.info("Subnet Group: " + cluster.dbSubnetGroup());
                       logger.info("VPC Security Groups:");
                       cluster.vpcSecurityGroups().forEach(vpcGroup ->
                               logger.info("  - " +
vpcGroup.vpcSecurityGroupId()));
                       logger.info("Storage Encrypted: " +
cluster.storageEncrypted());
                       logger.info("IAM DB Auth Enabled: " +
cluster.iamDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled());
                       logger.info("Backup Retention Period: " +
cluster.backupRetentionPeriod() + " days");
                       logger.info("Preferred Backup Window: " +
cluster.preferredBackupWindow());
                       logger.info("Preferred Maintenance Window: " +
cluster.preferredMaintenanceWindow());
                       logger.info("------");
                   }
```

```
                })
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    Throwable cause = ex.getCause() != null ? ex.getCause() : ex;

                    if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                        throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                    }

                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to describe the DB cluster: "
+ cause.getMessage(), cause);
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Checks the status of a Neptune instance recursively until the desired status
is reached or a timeout occurs.
     *
     * @param instanceId     the ID of the Neptune instance to check
     * @param desiredStatus  the desired status of the Neptune instance
     * @param startTime      the start time of the operation, used to calculate the
elapsed time
     * @param future         a {@link CompletableFuture} that will be completed when
the desired status is reached
     */
    private void checkStatusRecursive(String instanceId, String desiredStatus, long
startTime, CompletableFuture<Void> future) {
```

```
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest request = DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(instanceId)
                .build();

        getAsyncClient().describeDBInstances(request)
                .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                    if (exception != null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        future.completeExceptionally(
                                new CompletionException("Error checking Neptune
instance status", cause)
                        );
                        return;
                    }

                    List<DBInstance> instances = response.dbInstances();
                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        future.completeExceptionally(new RuntimeException("Instance
not found: " + instanceId));
                        return;
                    }

                    String currentStatus = instances.get(0).dbInstanceStatus();
                    long elapsedSeconds = (System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime) /
1000;
                    System.out.printf("\r Elapsed: %-20s  Status: %-20s",
formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds), currentStatus);
                    System.out.flush();

                    if (desiredStatus.equalsIgnoreCase(currentStatus)) {
                        System.out.printf("\r Neptune instance reached desired
status '%s' after %s.\n", desiredStatus, formatElapsedTime((int) elapsedSeconds));
                        future.complete(null);
                    } else {
                        CompletableFuture.delayedExecutor(20, TimeUnit.SECONDS)
                                .execute(() -> checkStatusRecursive(instanceId,
desiredStatus, startTime, future));
                    }
                });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Executes a Gremlin query against an Amazon Neptune database using the
provided {@link NeptunedataClient}.
    *
    * @param client the {@link NeptunedataClient} instance to use for executing the
Gremlin query
    */
   public static void executeGremlinQuery(NeptunedataClient client) {
       try {
           System.out.println("Querying Neptune...");
           ExecuteGremlinQueryRequest request =
ExecuteGremlinQueryRequest.builder()
                   .gremlinQuery("g.V().has('code', 'ANC')")
                   .build();

           ExecuteGremlinQueryResponse response =
client.executeGremlinQuery(request);

           System.out.println("Full Response:");
           System.out.println(response);

           // Retrieve and print the result
           if (response.result() != null) {
               System.out.println("Query Result:");
               System.out.println(response.result().toString());
           } else {
               System.out.println("No result returned from the query.");
           }
       } catch (NeptunedataException e) {
           System.err.println("Error calling Neptune: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ExecuteGremlinQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteGremlinQuery`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Executes a Gremlin PROFILE query using the provided NeptunedataClient.
     *
     * @param client The NeptunedataClient instance to be used for executing the
Gremlin PROFILE query.
     */
    private static void executeGremlinProfileQuery(NeptunedataClient client) {
        System.out.println("Executing Gremlin PROFILE query...");

        ExecuteGremlinProfileQueryRequest request =
ExecuteGremlinProfileQueryRequest.builder()
                .gremlinQuery("g.V().has('code', 'ANC')")
                .build();

        ExecuteGremlinProfileQueryResponse response =
client.executeGremlinProfileQuery(request);
        if (response.output() != null) {
            System.out.println("Query Profile Output:");
            System.out.println(response.output());
        } else {
```

```
            System.out.println("No output returned from the profile query.");
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Executes an OpenCypher EXPLAIN query using the provided Neptune data client.
     *
     * @param client The Neptune data client to use for the query execution.
     */
    public static void executeGremlinQuery(NeptunedataClient client) {
        try {
            System.out.println("Executing OpenCypher EXPLAIN query...");
            ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQueryRequest request =
ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQueryRequest.builder()
                    .openCypherQuery("MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n")
                    .explainMode("debug")
                    .build();

            ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQueryResponse response =
client.executeOpenCypherExplainQuery(request);

            if (response.results() != null) {
                System.out.println("Explain Results:");
                System.out.println(response.results().asUtf8String());
            } else {
                System.out.println("No explain results returned.");
            }
```

```
        } catch (NeptunedataException e) {
            System.err.println("Neptune error: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ExecuteQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteQuery`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Executes a Gremlin profile query on the Neptune Analytics graph.
     *
     * @param client       the {@link NeptuneGraphClient} instance to use for the
query
     * @param graphId      the identifier of the graph to execute the query on
     *
     * @throws NeptuneGraphException if an error occurs while executing the query on
the Neptune Graph
     * @throws Exception if an unexpected error occurs
     */
    public static void executeGremlinProfileQuery(NeptuneGraphClient client, String
graphId) {

        try {
            System.out.println("Running openCypher query on Neptune Analytics...");
```

```
            ExecuteQueryRequest request = ExecuteQueryRequest.builder()
                    .graphIdentifier(graphId)
                    .queryString("MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n")
                    .language("OPEN_CYPHER")
                    .build();

            ResponseInputStream<ExecuteQueryResponse> response =
client.executeQuery(request);
            try (BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(new
InputStreamReader(response, StandardCharsets.UTF_8))) {
                String result = reader.lines().collect(Collectors.joining("\n"));
                System.out.println("Query Result:");
                System.out.println(result);
            } catch (Exception e) {
                System.err.println("Error reading response: " + e.getMessage());
            }

        } catch (NeptuneGraphException e) {
            System.err.println("NeptuneGraph error: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        } catch (Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            client.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteQuery in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDBCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
    *
    * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
    */
   public CompletableFuture<StartDbClusterResponse> startDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
       StartDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StartDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().startDBCluster(clusterRequest)
               .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                   if (error != null) {
                       Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                       }

                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to start DB cluster: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   } else {
                       logger.info("DB Cluster starting: " + clusterIdentifier);
                   }
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see StartDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

StopDBCluster

The following code example shows how to use `StopDBCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster.
    *
    * @param clusterIdentifier the unique identifier of the DB cluster to be
stopped
    */
   public CompletableFuture<StopDbClusterResponse> stopDBClusterAsync(String
clusterIdentifier) {
       StopDbClusterRequest clusterRequest = StopDbClusterRequest.builder()
               .dbClusterIdentifier(clusterIdentifier)
               .build();

       return getAsyncClient().stopDBCluster(clusterRequest)
               .whenComplete((response, error) -> {
                   if (error != null) {
                       Throwable cause = error.getCause() != null ?
error.getCause() : error;

                       if (cause instanceof ResourceNotFoundException) {
                           throw (ResourceNotFoundException) cause;
                       }

                       throw new RuntimeException("Failed to stop DB cluster: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   } else {
                       logger.info("DB Cluster stopped: " + clusterIdentifier);
                   }
               });
   }
```

- For API details, see StopDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Use the Neptune API to query graph data

The following code example shows how to use the Neptune API to query graph data.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Neptune Java API to create a Lambda function that queries graph data within the VPC.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lambda
- Neptune

Partner Central examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Partner Central.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AssignOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `AssignOpportunity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Reassign an existing Opportunity to another user.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssignOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssignOpportunityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssigneeContact;

/*
Purpose
PC-API-07 Assigning a new owner
*/

public class AssignOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;
```

```
    String assigneeFirstName = "John";

    String assigneeLastName = "Doe";

    String assigneeEmail = "test@test.com";

    String businessTitle = "PartnerAccountManager";

    AssignOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId,
 assigneeFirstName, assigneeLastName, assigneeEmail, businessTitle);

    ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
   }

 static AssignOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId, String
 assigneeFirstName, String assigneeLastName, String assigneeEmail, String
 businessTitle) {

  AssignOpportunityRequest assignOpportunityRequest =
 AssignOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .assignee(AssigneeContact.builder()
            .firstName(assigneeFirstName)
            .lastName(assigneeLastName)
            .email(assigneeEmail)
            .businessTitle(businessTitle)
            .build())
          .build();

        AssignOpportunityResponse response =
 client.assignOpportunity(assignOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see AssignOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`AssociateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateOpportunity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Create a formal association between an Opportunity and various related entities.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityResponse;

/*
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
*/

public class AssociateOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;
```

```
     String entityType = "Solutions";

     String entityIdentifier = "S-0000000";

     AssociateOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId, entityType,
 entityIdentifier );

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

static AssociateOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId, String
 entityType, String entityIdentifier) {

        AssociateOpportunityRequest associateOpportunityRequest =
 AssociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .relatedEntityType(entityType)
          .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
          .build();

        AssociateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.associateOpportunity(associateOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpportunity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Create an opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import java.time.Instant;
```

```
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.entity.Root;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import org.example.utils.StringSerializer;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Account;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Address;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Contact;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.CreateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.CreateOpportunityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Customer;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ExpectedCustomerSpend;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.LifeCycle;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Marketing;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.MonetaryValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.NextStepsHistory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Project;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.SoftwareRevenue;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import com.google.gson.ToNumberPolicy;

public class CreateOpportunity {

 static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder()
   .setObjectToNumberStrategy(ToNumberPolicy.LAZILY_PARSED_NUMBER)
   .registerTypeAdapter(String.class, new StringSerializer())
   .create();

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

public static void main(String[] args) {

 String inputFile = "CreateOpportunity2.json";

 if (args.length > 0)
  inputFile = args[0];

 CreateOpportunityResponse response = createOpportunity(inputFile);

 client.close();
}

static CreateOpportunityResponse createOpportunity(String inputFile) {

 String inputString = ReferenceCodesUtils.readInputFileToString(inputFile);

 Root root = GSON.fromJson(inputString, Root.class);

 List<NextStepsHistory> nextStepsHistories = new ArrayList<NextStepsHistory>();
 if ( root.lifeCycle != null && root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories != null) {
  for (org.example.entity.NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistoryJson :
root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories) {
   NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistory = NextStepsHistory.builder()
     .time(Instant.parse(nextStepsHistoryJson.time))
     .value(nextStepsHistoryJson.value)
                 .build();
   nextStepsHistories.add(nextStepsHistory);
  }
 }

 LifeCycle lifeCycle = null;
 if ( root.lifeCycle != null ) {
  lifeCycle = LifeCycle.builder()
   .closedLostReason(root.lifeCycle.closedLostReason)
   .nextSteps(root.lifeCycle.nextSteps)
   .nextStepsHistory(nextStepsHistories)
   .reviewComments(root.lifeCycle.reviewComments)
   .reviewStatus(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatus)
   .reviewStatusReason(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatusReason)
   .stage(root.lifeCycle.stage)
```

```
    .targetCloseDate(root.lifeCycle.targetCloseDate)
    .build();
  }

  Marketing marketing = null;
  if ( root.marketing != null ) {
   marketing = Marketing.builder()
     .awsFundingUsed(root.marketing.awsFundingUsed)
     .campaignName(root.marketing.campaignName)
     .channels(root.marketing.channels)
     .source(root.marketing.source)
     .useCases(root.marketing.useCases)
     .build();

  }

  Address address = null;
  if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.account != null &&
root.customer.account.address != null ) {
   address = Address.builder()
    .city(root.customer.account.address.city)
                .postalCode(root.customer.account.address.postalCode)
                .stateOrRegion(root.customer.account.address.stateOrRegion)
                .countryCode(root.customer.account.address.countryCode)
                .streetAddress(root.customer.account.address.streetAddress)
                .build();
  }

  Account account = null;
  if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.account!= null) {
   account = Account.builder()
             .address(address)
             .awsAccountId(root.customer.account.awsAccountId)
                .duns(root.customer.account.duns)
                .industry(root.customer.account.industry)
                .otherIndustry(root.customer.account.otherIndustry)
                .companyName(root.customer.account.companyName)
                .websiteUrl(root.customer.account.websiteUrl)
                .build();
  }

  List<Contact> contacts = new ArrayList<Contact>();
  if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.contacts != null) {
   for (org.example.entity.Contact jsonContact : root.customer.contacts) {
```

```
    Contact contact = Contact.builder()
                   .email(jsonContact.email)
                   .firstName(jsonContact.firstName)
                   .lastName(jsonContact.lastName)
                   .phone(jsonContact.phone)
                   .businessTitle(jsonContact.businessTitle)
                   .build();
    contacts.add(contact);
   }
  }

  Customer customer = Customer.builder()
    .account(account)
    .contacts(contacts)
    .build();

  Contact oportunityTeamContact = null;
  if (root.opportunityTeam != null && root.opportunityTeam.get(0) != null ) {
   oportunityTeamContact = Contact.builder()
                .firstName(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).firstName)
                .lastName(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).lastName)
                .email(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).email)
                .phone(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).phone)
                .businessTitle(root.opportunityTeam.get(0).businessTitle)
                .build();
  }

  List<ExpectedCustomerSpend> expectedCustomerSpends = new
 ArrayList<ExpectedCustomerSpend>();
  if ( root.project != null && root.project.expectedCustomerSpend != null) {
   for (org.example.entity.ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpendJson :
 root.project.expectedCustomerSpend) {
    ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpend = null;
    expectedCustomerSpend = ExpectedCustomerSpend.builder()
      .amount(expectedCustomerSpendJson.amount)
      .currencyCode(expectedCustomerSpendJson.currencyCode)
      .frequency(expectedCustomerSpendJson.frequency)
      .targetCompany(expectedCustomerSpendJson.targetCompany)
      .build();
    expectedCustomerSpends.add(expectedCustomerSpend);
   }
        }

        Project project = null;
```

```
        if ( root.project != null) {
         project = Project.builder()
                .title(root.project.title)
                .customerBusinessProblem(root.project.customerBusinessProblem)
                .customerUseCase(root.project.customerUseCase)
                .deliveryModels(root.project.deliveryModels)
                .expectedCustomerSpend(expectedCustomerSpends)
                .salesActivities(root.project.salesActivities)
                .competitorName(root.project.competitorName)
                .otherSolutionDescription(root.project.otherSolutionDescription)
                .build();
        }

        SoftwareRevenue softwareRevenue = null;
        if ( root.softwareRevenue != null) {
         MonetaryValue monetaryValue = null;
         if ( root.softwareRevenue.value != null) {
          monetaryValue = MonetaryValue.builder()
             .amount(root.softwareRevenue.value.amount)
             .currencyCode(root.softwareRevenue.value.currencyCode)
             .build();
         }
         softwareRevenue = SoftwareRevenue.builder()
           .deliveryModel(root.softwareRevenue.deliveryModel)
           .effectiveDate(root.softwareRevenue.effectiveDate)
           .expirationDate(root.softwareRevenue.expirationDate)
           .value(monetaryValue)
           .build();
        }

 // Building the Actual CreateOpportunity Request
 CreateOpportunityRequest createOpportunityRequest =
CreateOpportunityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
   .clientToken(root.clientToken)
   .primaryNeedsFromAwsWithStrings(root.primaryNeedsFromAws)
   .opportunityType(root.opportunityType)
   .lifeCycle(lifeCycle)
   .marketing(marketing)
   .nationalSecurity(root.nationalSecurity)
   .origin(root.origin)
   .customer(customer)
   .project(project)
   .partnerOpportunityIdentifier(root.partnerOpportunityIdentifier)
```

```
    .opportunityTeam(oportunityTeamContact)
    .softwareRevenue(softwareRevenue)
    .build();

  CreateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.createOpportunity(createOpportunityRequest);
  System.out.println("Successfully created: " + response);

  return response;
    }

}
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DisassociateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateOpportunity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Remove an existing association between an Opportunity and related entities.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityResponse

/*
Purpose
```

```
PC-API -14 Removing a Solution
PC-API -15 Removing an offer
PC-API -16 Removing a product
entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
*/

public class DisassociateOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     String entityType = "Solutions";

     String entityIdentifier = "S-0000000";

     DisassociateOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId,
 entityType, entityIdentifier );

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static DisassociateOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId, String
 entityType, String entityIdentifier) {

  DisassociateOpportunityRequest disassociateOpportunityRequest =
 DisassociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .relatedEntityType(entityType)
          .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
          .build();

        DisassociateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.disassociateOpportunity(disassociateOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DisassociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetAwsOpportunitySummary`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAwsOpportunitySummary`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRequest
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRespons

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-25 Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.
 */

public class GetAwsOpportunitySummary {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 public static GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

  GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetAwsOpportunitySummaryRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .relatedOpportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

  GetAwsOpportunitySummaryResponse response =
 client.getAwsOpportunitySummary(getOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetAwsOpportunitySummary in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetEngagementInvitation`

The following code example shows how to use `GetEngagementInvitation`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves the details of an engagement invitation shared by AWS with a partner.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationResponse

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-22 Get engagement invitation opportunity
 */

public class GetEngagementInvitation {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     GetEngagementInvitationResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static GetEngagementInvitationResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

  GetEngagementInvitationRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetEngagementInvitationRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

  GetEngagementInvitationResponse response =
 client.getEngagementInvitation(getOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOpportunity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Get an opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityResponse;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-08 Get updated Opportunity
 */

public class GetOpportunity {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     GetOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 public static GetOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

        GetOpportunityRequest getOpportunityRequest =
 GetOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .build();

        GetOpportunityResponse response =
 client.getOpportunity(getOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListEngagementInvitations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListEngagementInvitations`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves a list of engagement invitations sent to the partner.

```
package org.example;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListEngagementInvitationsReques
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListEngagementInvitationsRespon
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ParticipantType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.EngagementInvitationSummary;

public class ListEngagementInvitations {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     List<EngagementInvitationSummary> opportunitySummaries = getResponse();
        ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(opportunitySummaries);
    }

    static List<EngagementInvitationSummary> getResponse() {

  List<EngagementInvitationSummary> opportunitySummaries = new
 ArrayList<EngagementInvitationSummary>();

  ListEngagementInvitationsRequest listOpportunityRequest =
 ListEngagementInvitationsRequest.builder()
                .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
                .participantType(ParticipantType.RECEIVER)
          .maxResults(5)
          .build();

  ListEngagementInvitationsResponse response =
 client.listEngagementInvitations(listOpportunityRequest);

     opportunitySummaries.addAll(response.engagementInvitationSummaries());
```

```
    client.close();

       return opportunitySummaries;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEngagementInvitations in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListOpportunities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOpportunities`.

SDK for Java 2.x

List opportunities.

```
package org.example;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListOpportunitiesRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListOpportunitiesResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.OpportunitySummary;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-18 Getting list of Opportunities
 */

public class ListOpportunititesPaging {
```

```
 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
     List<OpportunitySummary> opportunitySummaries = getResponse();
        ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(opportunitySummaries);
    }

    private static List<OpportunitySummary> getResponse() {
     List<OpportunitySummary> opportunitySummaries = new
 ArrayList<OpportunitySummary>();

  ListOpportunitiesRequest listOpportunityRequest =
 ListOpportunitiesRequest.builder()
                .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .maxResults(5)
          .build();

     ListOpportunitiesResponse response =
 client.listOpportunities(listOpportunityRequest);

     opportunitySummaries.addAll(response.opportunitySummaries());

     while (response.nextToken() != null && response.nextToken().length() > 0) {
      listOpportunityRequest = ListOpportunitiesRequest.builder()
                    .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
              .maxResults(5)
              .nextToken(response.nextToken())
              .build();
      response = client.listOpportunities(listOpportunityRequest);
      opportunitySummaries.addAll(response.opportunitySummaries());
     }

     client.close();

        return opportunitySummaries;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListSolutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSolutions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Retrieves a list of Partner Solutions that the partner registered on Partner Central.

```
package org.example;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListSolutionsRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ListSolutionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.SolutionBase;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-10 Getting list of solutions
 */

public class ListSolutions {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
     List<SolutionBase> solutionSummaries = getResponse();
        ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(solutionSummaries);
    }

    static List<SolutionBase> getResponse() {
  List<SolutionBase> solutionSummaries = new ArrayList<SolutionBase>();

  ListSolutionsRequest listSolutionsRequest = ListSolutionsRequest.builder()
    .catalog(CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .maxResults(5)
          .build();

     ListSolutionsResponse response = client.listSolutions(listSolutionsRequest);

     solutionSummaries.addAll(response.solutionSummaries());

        return solutionSummaries;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSolutions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RejectEngagementInvitation`

The following code example shows how to use `RejectEngagementInvitation`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Rejects an EngagementInvitation that AWS shared.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.RejectEngagementInvitationReque
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.RejectEngagementInvitationRespo

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-05 AWS Originated(AO) rejection
 */

public class RejectEngagementInvitation {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

  RejectEngagementInvitationResponse response = getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static RejectEngagementInvitationResponse getResponse(String invitationId) {

        RejectEngagementInvitationRequest rejectOpportunityRequest =
 RejectEngagementInvitationRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(invitationId)
          .rejectionReason("Unable to support")
          .build();

  RejectEngagementInvitationResponse response =
 client.rejectEngagementInvitation(rejectOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see RejectEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask

The following code example shows how to use `StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Starts the engagement by accepting an EngagementInvitation.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementByAcceptingInvit
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementByAcceptingInvit
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetEngagementInvitationResponse
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.InvitationStatus;

/*
Purpose
PC-API-04: Start Engagement By Accepting InvitationTask for AWS Originated(AO)
 opportunity
*/

public class StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
```

```
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

static String clientToken = "test-a30d161";

   public static void main(String[] args) {

    String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

    StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskResponse response =
getResponse(opportunityId);

    if ( response == null) {
     System.out.println("Opportunity is not AWS Originated.");
    } else {
     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }
   }

   private static GetEngagementInvitationResponse getInvitation(String
invitationId) {

    GetEngagementInvitationRequest getRequest =
GetEngagementInvitationRequest.builder()
         .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
         .identifier(invitationId)
         .build();

 GetEngagementInvitationResponse response =
client.getEngagementInvitation(getRequest);

       return response;
}

static StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskResponse getResponse(String
invitationId) {

 if ( getInvitation(invitationId).status().equals(InvitationStatus.PENDING)) {
  StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskRequest acceptOpportunityRequest =
    StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(invitationId)
          .clientToken(clientToken)
```

```
            .build();

    StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTaskResponse response =
 client.startEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask(acceptOpportunityRequest);
         return response;
  }
  return null;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Initiates the engagement process from an existing opportunity by accepting the engagement invitation and creating a corresponding opportunity in the partner's system.

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AwsSubmission;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.SalesInvolvementType;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementFromOpportunityT
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.StartEngagementFromOpportunityT
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Visibility;
```

```
/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-01 Partner Originated (PO) opp submission(Start Engagement From
 Opportunity Task for AO Originated Opportunity)
 */

public class StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

     String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

     StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskResponse response =
 getResponse(opportunityId);

     ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(response);
    }

 static StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskResponse getResponse(String opportunityId)
 {

  StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskRequest submitOpportunityRequest =
 StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .identifier(opportunityId)
          .clientToken("test-annjqwesdsd99")

 .awsSubmission(AwsSubmission.builder().involvementType(SalesInvolvementType.CO_SELL).visibi
          .build();

  StartEngagementFromOpportunityTaskResponse response =
 client.startEngagementFromOpportunityTask(submitOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateOpportunity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

Update an opportunity.

```
package org.example;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.entity.Root;
import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;
import org.example.utils.StringSerializer;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Account;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Address;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Contact;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Customer;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ExpectedCustomerSpend;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.GetOpportunityResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.LifeCycle;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Marketing;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.NextStepsHistory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.Project;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.ReviewStatus;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.UpdateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.UpdateOpportunityResponse;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import com.google.gson.ToNumberPolicy;

/*
 * Purpose
 * PC-API-02/06 Update opportunity when LifeCycle.ReviewStatus is not Submitted or
 In-Review
 */

public class UpdateOpportunity {

 static final Gson GSON = new GsonBuilder()
   .setObjectToNumberStrategy(ToNumberPolicy.LAZILY_PARSED_NUMBER)
   .registerTypeAdapter(String.class, new StringSerializer())
   .create();

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();

 static String OPPORTUNITY_ORIGIN = ORIGIN_PARTNER_ORIGINATED;

 public static void main(String[] args) {

  String inputFile = "updateOpportunity.json";

  if (args.length > 0)
   inputFile = args[0];

  UpdateOpportunityResponse response = updateOpportunity(inputFile);

  client.close();
 }
```

```
public static GetOpportunityResponse getResponse(String opportunityId) {

       GetOpportunityRequest getOpportunityRequest =
GetOpportunityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
         .identifier(opportunityId)
         .build();

       GetOpportunityResponse response =
client.getOpportunity(getOpportunityRequest);
       System.out.println(opportunityId + ":" + response);
       return response;
}

public static UpdateOpportunityResponse updateOpportunity(String inputFile) {

 String inputString = ReferenceCodesUtils.readInputFileToString(inputFile);

 Root root = GSON.fromJson(inputString, Root.class);
 GetOpportunityResponse response = getResponse(root.identifier);

 if (response != null
   && response.lifeCycle() != null
   && response.lifeCycle().reviewStatus() != null
   && response.lifeCycle().reviewStatus() != ReviewStatus.SUBMITTED
   && response.lifeCycle().reviewStatus() != ReviewStatus.IN_REVIEW) {

  List<NextStepsHistory> nextStepsHistories = new ArrayList<NextStepsHistory>();
  if ( root.lifeCycle != null && root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories != null) {
   for (org.example.entity.NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistoryJson :
root.lifeCycle.nextStepsHistories) {
    NextStepsHistory nextStepsHistory = NextStepsHistory.builder()
      .time(Instant.parse(nextStepsHistoryJson.time))
      .value(nextStepsHistoryJson.value)
                  .build();
    nextStepsHistories.add(nextStepsHistory);
   }
  }

  LifeCycle lifeCycle = null;
  if ( root.lifeCycle != null ) {
   lifeCycle = LifeCycle.builder()
    .closedLostReason(root.lifeCycle.closedLostReason)
```

```
      .nextSteps(root.lifeCycle.nextSteps)
      .nextStepsHistory(nextStepsHistories)
      .reviewComments(root.lifeCycle.reviewComments)
      .reviewStatus(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatus)
      .reviewStatusReason(root.lifeCycle.reviewStatusReason)
      .stage(root.lifeCycle.stage)
      .targetCloseDate(root.lifeCycle.targetCloseDate)
      .build();
    }

    Marketing marketing = null;
    if ( root.marketing != null ) {
     marketing = Marketing.builder()
        .awsFundingUsed(root.marketing.awsFundingUsed)
        .campaignName(root.marketing.campaignName)
        .channels(root.marketing.channels)
        .source(root.marketing.source)
        .useCases(root.marketing.useCases)
        .build();

    }

    Address address = null;
    if (root.customer != null && root.customer.account != null &&
  root.customer.account.address != null) {
     address = Address.builder().postalCode(root.customer.account.address.postalCode)
        .stateOrRegion(root.customer.account.address.stateOrRegion)
        .countryCode(root.customer.account.address.countryCode).build();
    }

    Account account = null;
    if (root.customer != null && root.customer.account != null) {
     account = Account.builder().address(address).duns(root.customer.account.duns)

  .industry(root.customer.account.industry).companyName(root.customer.account.companyName)
        .websiteUrl(root.customer.account.websiteUrl).build();
    }

    List<Contact> contacts = new ArrayList<Contact>();
    if ( root.customer != null && root.customer.contacts != null) {
     for (org.example.entity.Contact jsonContact : root.customer.contacts) {
      Contact contact = Contact.builder()
                      .email(jsonContact.email)
                      .firstName(jsonContact.firstName)
```

```
                    .lastName(jsonContact.lastName)
                    .phone(jsonContact.phone)
                    .businessTitle(jsonContact.businessTitle)
                    .build();
     contacts.add(contact);
    }
   }

   Customer customer =
Customer.builder().account(account).contacts(contacts).build();

   List<ExpectedCustomerSpend> expectedCustomerSpends = new
ArrayList<ExpectedCustomerSpend>();
   if ( root.project != null && root.project.expectedCustomerSpend != null) {
    for (org.example.entity.ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpendJson :
root.project.expectedCustomerSpend) {
     ExpectedCustomerSpend expectedCustomerSpend = null;
     expectedCustomerSpend = ExpectedCustomerSpend.builder()
       .amount(expectedCustomerSpendJson.amount)
       .currencyCode(expectedCustomerSpendJson.currencyCode)
       .frequency(expectedCustomerSpendJson.frequency)
       .targetCompany(expectedCustomerSpendJson.targetCompany)
       .build();
     expectedCustomerSpends.add(expectedCustomerSpend);
    }
         }

   Project project = null;
   if (root.project != null) {
    project = Project.builder().title(root.project.title)
      .customerBusinessProblem(root.project.customerBusinessProblem)

.customerUseCase(root.project.customerUseCase).deliveryModels(root.project.deliveryModels)
      .expectedCustomerSpend(expectedCustomerSpends)

.salesActivities(root.project.salesActivities).competitorName(root.project.competitorName)
      .otherSolutionDescription(root.project.otherSolutionDescription).build();
   }

   // Building the Actual CreateOpportunity Request
   UpdateOpportunityRequest updateOpportunityRequest =
UpdateOpportunityRequest.builder().catalog(root.catalog)

.identifier(root.identifier).lastModifiedDate(Instant.parse(root.lastModifiedDate))
```

```
 .primaryNeedsFromAwsWithStrings(root.primaryNeedsFromAws).opportunityType(root.opportunityT
     .lifeCycle(lifeCycle)
     .customer(customer)
     .project(project)
     .partnerOpportunityIdentifier(root.partnerOpportunityIdentifier)
     .marketing(marketing)
     .nationalSecurity(root.nationalSecurity)
     .opportunityType(root.opportunityType)
     .build();

   UpdateOpportunityResponse updateResponse =
 client.updateOpportunity(updateOpportunityRequest);
   System.out.println("Successfully updated opportunity: " + updateResponse);

   return updateResponse;
  } else {
   System.out.println("Opportunity cannot be updated.");
   return null;
  }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Update associated entity of an opportunity

The following code example shows how to:

- Disassociate an old entity.
- Associate a new entity.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Scenarios repository.

Update associated entity of an opportunity

```
package org.example;

import static org.example.utils.Constants.*;

import org.example.utils.Constants;
import org.example.utils.ReferenceCodesUtils;

import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.PartnerCentralSellingClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.AssociateOpportunityResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.partnercentralselling.model.DisassociateOpportunityResponse

/*
Purpose
PC-API -17 Replacing a solution
*/

public class ReplaceSolution {

 static PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
            .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
            .build();
```

```
   public static void main(String[] args) {

    String opportunityId = args.length > 0 ? args[0] : OPPORTUNITY_ID;

    String entityType = "Solutions";
    String originalEntityIdentifier = "S-0000000";
    String newEntityIdentifier = "S-0011111";

    disassociateOppornititityResponse(opportunityId, entityType,
originalEntityIdentifier );
    AssociateOpportunityResponse associateOpportunityResponse =
associateOpportunityResponse(opportunityId, entityType, newEntityIdentifier );

    ReferenceCodesUtils.formatOutput(associateOpportunityResponse);
   }

private static AssociateOpportunityResponse associateOpportunityResponse(String
opportunityId, String entityType, String entityIdentifier) {

       AssociateOpportunityRequest associateOpportunityRequest =
AssociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
   .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
         .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
         .relatedEntityType(entityType)
         .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
         .build();

       AssociateOpportunityResponse response =
client.associateOpportunity(associateOpportunityRequest);

       return response;
}

private static DisassociateOpportunityResponse
disassociateOppornititityResponse(String opportunityId, String entityType, String
entityIdentifier) {
 PartnerCentralSellingClient client = PartnerCentralSellingClient.builder()
           .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
           .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
           .httpClient(ApacheHttpClient.builder().build())
           .build();
```

```
        DisassociateOpportunityRequest disassociateOpportunityRequest =
 DisassociateOpportunityRequest.builder()
    .catalog(Constants.CATALOG_TO_USE)
          .opportunityIdentifier(opportunityId)
          .relatedEntityType(entityType)
          .relatedEntityIdentifier(entityIdentifier)
          .build();

        DisassociateOpportunityResponse response =
 client.disassociateOpportunity(disassociateOpportunityRequest);

        return response;
 }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AssociateOpportunity
  - DisassociateOpportunity

Amazon Personalize examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Personalize.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateBatchInferenceJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBatchInferenceJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static String createPersonalizeBatchInferenceJob(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
                        String solutionVersionArn,
                        String jobName,
                        String s3InputDataSourcePath,
                        String s3DataDestinationPath,
                        String roleArn,
                        String explorationWeight,
                        String explorationItemAgeCutOff) {

                long waitInMilliseconds = 60 * 1000;
                String status;
                String batchInferenceJobArn;

                try {

                        // Set up data input and output parameters.
                        S3DataConfig inputSource = S3DataConfig.builder()
                                        .path(s3InputDataSourcePath)
                                        .build();

                        S3DataConfig outputDestination = S3DataConfig.builder()
                                        .path(s3DataDestinationPath)
                                        .build();

                        BatchInferenceJobInput jobInput =
BatchInferenceJobInput.builder()
                                        .s3DataSource(inputSource)
                                        .build();

                        BatchInferenceJobOutput jobOutputLocation =
BatchInferenceJobOutput.builder()
                                        .s3DataDestination(outputDestination)
                                        .build();
```

```
                        // Optional code to build the User-Personalization specific
item exploration
                        // config.
                        HashMap<String, String> explorationConfig = new HashMap<>();

                        explorationConfig.put("explorationWeight",
explorationWeight);
                        explorationConfig.put("explorationItemAgeCutOff",
explorationItemAgeCutOff);

                        BatchInferenceJobConfig jobConfig =
BatchInferenceJobConfig.builder()
                                        .itemExplorationConfig(explorationConfig)
                                        .build();

                        // End optional User-Personalization recipe specific code.

                        CreateBatchInferenceJobRequest
createBatchInferenceJobRequest = CreateBatchInferenceJobRequest
                                        .builder()
                                        .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                                        .jobInput(jobInput)
                                        .jobOutput(jobOutputLocation)
                                        .jobName(jobName)
                                        .roleArn(roleArn)
                                        .batchInferenceJobConfig(jobConfig) //
Optional
                                        .build();

                        batchInferenceJobArn =
personalizeClient.createBatchInferenceJob(createBatchInferenceJobRequest)
                                        .batchInferenceJobArn();

                        DescribeBatchInferenceJobRequest
describeBatchInferenceJobRequest = DescribeBatchInferenceJobRequest
                                        .builder()
                                        .batchInferenceJobArn(batchInferenceJobArn)
                                        .build();

                        long maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;
                        while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {
```

```
                                BatchInferenceJob batchInferenceJob =
personalizeClient

.describeBatchInferenceJob(describeBatchInferenceJobRequest)
                                                .batchInferenceJob();

                                status = batchInferenceJob.status();
                                System.out.println("Batch inference job status: " +
status);

                                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE
FAILED")) {
                                        break;
                                }
                                try {
                                        Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                                        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                                }
                        }
                        return batchInferenceJobArn;

                } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                }
                return "";
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchInferenceJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCampaign`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createPersonalCompaign(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String solutionVersionArn,
           String name) {

       try {
           CreateCampaignRequest createCampaignRequest =
CreateCampaignRequest.builder()
                   .minProvisionedTPS(1)
                   .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                   .name(name)
                   .build();

           CreateCampaignResponse campaignResponse =
personalizeClient.createCampaign(createCampaignRequest);
           System.out.println("The campaign ARN is " +
campaignResponse.campaignArn());
           return campaignResponse.campaignArn();
       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDataset`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createDataset(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
           String datasetName,
```

```
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String datasetType,
            String schemaArn) {
        try {
            CreateDatasetRequest request = CreateDatasetRequest.builder()
                    .name(datasetName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .datasetType(datasetType)
                    .schemaArn(schemaArn)
                    .build();

            String datasetArn = personalizeClient.createDataset(request)
                    .datasetArn();
            System.out.println("Dataset " + datasetName + " created.");
            return datasetArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDatasetExportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatasetExportJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createDatasetExportJob(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String jobName,
            String datasetArn,
            IngestionMode ingestionMode,
```

```
            String roleArn,
            String s3BucketPath,
            String kmsKeyArn) {

        long waitInMilliseconds = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds
        String status = null;

        try {

            S3DataConfig exportS3DataConfig =
S3DataConfig.builder().path(s3BucketPath).kmsKeyArn(kmsKeyArn).build();
            DatasetExportJobOutput jobOutput =
DatasetExportJobOutput.builder().s3DataDestination(exportS3DataConfig)
                    .build();

            CreateDatasetExportJobRequest createRequest =
CreateDatasetExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .jobName(jobName)
                    .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                    .ingestionMode(ingestionMode)
                    .jobOutput(jobOutput)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .build();

            String datasetExportJobArn =
personalizeClient.createDatasetExportJob(createRequest).datasetExportJobArn();

            DescribeDatasetExportJobRequest describeDatasetExportJobRequest =
DescribeDatasetExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .datasetExportJobArn(datasetExportJobArn)
                    .build();

            long maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                DatasetExportJob datasetExportJob = personalizeClient
                        .describeDatasetExportJob(describeDatasetExportJobRequest)
                        .datasetExportJob();

                status = datasetExportJob.status();
                System.out.println("Export job status: " + status);

                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
```

```
                    return status;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetExportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDatasetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatasetGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createDatasetGroup(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String datasetGroupName) {

       try {
           CreateDatasetGroupRequest createDatasetGroupRequest =
CreateDatasetGroupRequest.builder()
                   .name(datasetGroupName)
                   .build();
           return
personalizeClient.createDatasetGroup(createDatasetGroupRequest).datasetGroupArn();
       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
        }
        return "";
    }
```

Create a domain dataset group.

```
    public static String createDomainDatasetGroup(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
            String datasetGroupName,
            String domain) {

        try {
            CreateDatasetGroupRequest createDatasetGroupRequest =
CreateDatasetGroupRequest.builder()
                    .name(datasetGroupName)
                    .domain(domain)
                    .build();
            return
personalizeClient.createDatasetGroup(createDatasetGroupRequest).datasetGroupArn();
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDatasetImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatasetImportJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createPersonalizeDatasetImportJob(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
           String jobName,
           String datasetArn,
           String s3BucketPath,
           String roleArn) {

       long waitInMilliseconds = 60 * 1000;
       String status;
       String datasetImportJobArn;

       try {
           DataSource importDataSource = DataSource.builder()
                   .dataLocation(s3BucketPath)
                   .build();

           CreateDatasetImportJobRequest createDatasetImportJobRequest =
CreateDatasetImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                   .dataSource(importDataSource)
                   .jobName(jobName)
                   .roleArn(roleArn)
                   .build();

           datasetImportJobArn =
personalizeClient.createDatasetImportJob(createDatasetImportJobRequest)
                   .datasetImportJobArn();
           DescribeDatasetImportJobRequest describeDatasetImportJobRequest =
DescribeDatasetImportJobRequest.builder()
                   .datasetImportJobArn(datasetImportJobArn)
                   .build();

           long maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

           while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

               DatasetImportJob datasetImportJob = personalizeClient
                       .describeDatasetImportJob(describeDatasetImportJobRequest)
                       .datasetImportJob();

               status = datasetImportJob.status();
               System.out.println("Dataset import job status: " + status);
```

```
                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
            return datasetImportJobArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDatasetImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateEventTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEventTracker`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createEventTracker(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String eventTrackerName,
            String datasetGroupArn) {

        String eventTrackerId = "";
        String eventTrackerArn;
        long maxTime = 3 * 60 * 60; // 3 hours
        long waitInMilliseconds = 20 * 1000; // 20 seconds
        String status;
```

```
        try {

            CreateEventTrackerRequest createEventTrackerRequest =
CreateEventTrackerRequest.builder()
                    .name(eventTrackerName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .build();

            CreateEventTrackerResponse createEventTrackerResponse =
personalizeClient
                    .createEventTracker(createEventTrackerRequest);

            eventTrackerArn = createEventTrackerResponse.eventTrackerArn();
            eventTrackerId = createEventTrackerResponse.trackingId();
            System.out.println("Event tracker ARN: " + eventTrackerArn);
            System.out.println("Event tracker ID: " + eventTrackerId);

            maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + maxTime;

            DescribeEventTrackerRequest describeRequest =
DescribeEventTrackerRequest.builder()
                    .eventTrackerArn(eventTrackerArn)
                    .build();

            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                status =
personalizeClient.describeEventTracker(describeRequest).eventTracker().status();
                System.out.println("EventTracker status: " + status);

                if (status.equals("ACTIVE") || status.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
            return eventTrackerId;
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        return eventTrackerId;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEventTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFilter`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createFilter(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String filterName,
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String filterExpression) {
        try {
            CreateFilterRequest request = CreateFilterRequest.builder()
                    .name(filterName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .filterExpression(filterExpression)
                    .build();

            return personalizeClient.createFilter(request).filterArn();
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFilter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateRecommender`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRecommender`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createRecommender(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
            String name,
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String recipeArn) {

        long maxTime = 0;
        long waitInMilliseconds = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds
        String recommenderStatus = "";

        try {
            CreateRecommenderRequest createRecommenderRequest =
CreateRecommenderRequest.builder()
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .name(name)
                    .recipeArn(recipeArn)
                    .build();

            CreateRecommenderResponse recommenderResponse = personalizeClient
                    .createRecommender(createRecommenderRequest);
            String recommenderArn = recommenderResponse.recommenderArn();
            System.out.println("The recommender ARN is " + recommenderArn);

            DescribeRecommenderRequest describeRecommenderRequest =
DescribeRecommenderRequest.builder()
                    .recommenderArn(recommenderArn)
                    .build();

            maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {
```

```
                recommenderStatus =
personalizeClient.describeRecommender(describeRecommenderRequest).recommender()
                        .status();
                System.out.println("Recommender status: " + recommenderStatus);

                if (recommenderStatus.equals("ACTIVE") ||
recommenderStatus.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }
            return recommenderArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRecommender in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateSchema`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchema`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createSchema(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient, String
schemaName, String filePath) {
```

```
        String schema = null;
        try {
            schema = new String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath)));
        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        try {
            CreateSchemaRequest createSchemaRequest = CreateSchemaRequest.builder()
                    .name(schemaName)
                    .schema(schema)
                    .build();

            String schemaArn =
personalizeClient.createSchema(createSchemaRequest).schemaArn();

            System.out.println("Schema arn: " + schemaArn);

            return schemaArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

Create a schema with a domain.

```
    public static String createDomainSchema(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String schemaName, String domain,
            String filePath) {

        String schema = null;
        try {
            schema = new String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(filePath)));
        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        try {
            CreateSchemaRequest createSchemaRequest = CreateSchemaRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .name(schemaName)
                    .domain(domain)
                    .schema(schema)
                    .build();

            String schemaArn =
personalizeClient.createSchema(createSchemaRequest).schemaArn();

            System.out.println("Schema arn: " + schemaArn);

            return schemaArn;

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSchema in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateSolution`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSolution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createPersonalizeSolution(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient,
            String datasetGroupArn,
            String solutionName,
            String recipeArn) {

        try {
            CreateSolutionRequest solutionRequest = CreateSolutionRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .name(solutionName)
                    .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                    .recipeArn(recipeArn)
                    .build();

            CreateSolutionResponse solutionResponse =
personalizeClient.createSolution(solutionRequest);
            return solutionResponse.solutionArn();

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSolution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateSolutionVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSolutionVersion`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createPersonalizeSolutionVersion(PersonalizeClient
personalizeClient, String solutionArn) {
        long maxTime = 0;
        long waitInMilliseconds = 30 * 1000; // 30 seconds
        String solutionStatus = "";
        String solutionVersionStatus = "";
        String solutionVersionArn = "";

        try {
            DescribeSolutionRequest describeSolutionRequest =
DescribeSolutionRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                    .build();

            maxTime = Instant.now().getEpochSecond() + 3 * 60 * 60;

            // Wait until solution is active.
            while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {

                solutionStatus =
personalizeClient.describeSolution(describeSolutionRequest).solution().status();
                System.out.println("Solution status: " + solutionStatus);

                if (solutionStatus.equals("ACTIVE") || solutionStatus.equals("CREATE
FAILED")) {
                    break;
                }
                try {
                    Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                }
            }

            if (solutionStatus.equals("ACTIVE")) {

                CreateSolutionVersionRequest createSolutionVersionRequest =
CreateSolutionVersionRequest.builder()
                        .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                        .build();

                CreateSolutionVersionResponse createSolutionVersionResponse =
personalizeClient
                        .createSolutionVersion(createSolutionVersionRequest);
                solutionVersionArn =
createSolutionVersionResponse.solutionVersionArn();

                System.out.println("Solution version ARN: " + solutionVersionArn);

                DescribeSolutionVersionRequest describeSolutionVersionRequest =
DescribeSolutionVersionRequest.builder()
                        .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                        .build();

                while (Instant.now().getEpochSecond() < maxTime) {
```

```
                    solutionVersionStatus =
personalizeClient.describeSolutionVersion(describeSolutionVersionRequest)
                            .solutionVersion().status();
                    System.out.println("Solution version status: " +
solutionVersionStatus);

                    if (solutionVersionStatus.equals("ACTIVE") ||
solutionVersionStatus.equals("CREATE FAILED")) {
                        break;
                    }
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(waitInMilliseconds);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    }
                }
                return solutionVersionArn;
            }
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSolutionVersion in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCampaign`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteSpecificCampaign(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
 String campaignArn) {
        try {
            DeleteCampaignRequest campaignRequest = DeleteCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                    .build();

            personalizeClient.deleteCampaign(campaignRequest);
            System.out.println("Delete request sent successfully.");
        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println("Error deleting campaign: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteEventTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEventTracker`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteEventTracker(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
 String eventTrackerArn) {
        try {
            DeleteEventTrackerRequest deleteEventTrackerRequest =
 DeleteEventTrackerRequest.builder()
                    .eventTrackerArn(eventTrackerArn)
                    .build();
```

```
            int status =
personalizeClient.deleteEventTracker(deleteEventTrackerRequest).sdkHttpResponse().statusCod

            System.out.println("Status code:" + status);

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEventTracker in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteSolution`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSolution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteGivenSolution(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String solutionArn) {

        try {
            DeleteSolutionRequest solutionRequest = DeleteSolutionRequest.builder()
                    .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                    .build();

            personalizeClient.deleteSolution(solutionRequest);
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSolution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCampaign`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeSpecificCampaign(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String campaignArn) {

       try {
           DescribeCampaignRequest campaignRequest =
DescribeCampaignRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeCampaignResponse campaignResponse =
personalizeClient.describeCampaign(campaignRequest);
           Campaign myCampaign = campaignResponse.campaign();
           System.out.println("The Campaign name is " + myCampaign.name());
           System.out.println("The Campaign status is " + myCampaign.status());

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeRecipe`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRecipe`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeSpecificRecipe(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String recipeArn) {

       try {
           DescribeRecipeRequest recipeRequest = DescribeRecipeRequest.builder()
                   .recipeArn(recipeArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeRecipeResponse recipeResponse =
personalizeClient.describeRecipe(recipeRequest);
           System.out.println("The recipe name is " +
recipeResponse.recipe().name());

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRecipe in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeSolution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSolution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeSpecificSolution(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
String solutionArn) {

       try {
           DescribeSolutionRequest solutionRequest =
DescribeSolutionRequest.builder()
                   .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeSolutionResponse response =
personalizeClient.describeSolution(solutionRequest);
           System.out.println("The Solution name is " +
response.solution().name());

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSolution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListCampaigns`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCampaigns`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listAllCampaigns(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient, String
solutionArn) {

       try {
           ListCampaignsRequest campaignsRequest = ListCampaignsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(10)
                   .solutionArn(solutionArn)
                   .build();

           ListCampaignsResponse response =
personalizeClient.listCampaigns(campaignsRequest);
           List<CampaignSummary> campaigns = response.campaigns();
           for (CampaignSummary campaign : campaigns) {
               System.out.println("Campaign name is : " + campaign.name());
               System.out.println("Campaign ARN is : " + campaign.campaignArn());
           }

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListCampaigns in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDatasetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatasetGroups`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listDSGroups(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient) {

       try {
           ListDatasetGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
ListDatasetGroupsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(15)
                   .build();

           ListDatasetGroupsResponse groupsResponse =
personalizeClient.listDatasetGroups(groupsRequest);
           List<DatasetGroupSummary> groups = groupsResponse.datasetGroups();
           for (DatasetGroupSummary group : groups) {
               System.out.println("The DataSet name is : " + group.name());
               System.out.println("The DataSet ARN is : " +
group.datasetGroupArn());
           }

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListDatasetGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListRecipes`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRecipes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listAllRecipes(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient) {

        try {
            ListRecipesRequest recipesRequest = ListRecipesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(15)
                    .build();

            ListRecipesResponse response =
personalizeClient.listRecipes(recipesRequest);
            List<RecipeSummary> recipes = response.recipes();
            for (RecipeSummary recipe : recipes) {
                System.out.println("The recipe ARN is: " + recipe.recipeArn());
                System.out.println("The recipe name is: " + recipe.name());
            }

        } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRecipes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListSolutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSolutions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listAllSolutions(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient, String
datasetGroupArn) {

       try {
           ListSolutionsRequest solutionsRequest = ListSolutionsRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(10)
                   .datasetGroupArn(datasetGroupArn)
                   .build();

           ListSolutionsResponse response =
personalizeClient.listSolutions(solutionsRequest);
           List<SolutionSummary> solutions = response.solutions();
           for (SolutionSummary solution : solutions) {
               System.out.println("The solution ARN is: " +
solution.solutionArn());
               System.out.println("The solution name is: " + solution.name());
           }

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListSolutions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateCampaign`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String updateCampaign(PersonalizeClient personalizeClient,
           String campaignArn,
           String solutionVersionArn,
           Integer minProvisionedTPS) {

       try {
           // build the updateCampaignRequest
           UpdateCampaignRequest updateCampaignRequest =
UpdateCampaignRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .solutionVersionArn(solutionVersionArn)
                   .minProvisionedTPS(minProvisionedTPS)
                   .build();

           // update the campaign
           personalizeClient.updateCampaign(updateCampaignRequest);

           DescribeCampaignRequest campaignRequest =
DescribeCampaignRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .build();

           DescribeCampaignResponse campaignResponse =
personalizeClient.describeCampaign(campaignRequest);
           Campaign updatedCampaign = campaignResponse.campaign();

           System.out.println("The Campaign status is " +
updatedCampaign.status());
           return updatedCampaign.status();

       } catch (PersonalizeException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
```

```
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Personalize Events examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Personalize Events.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static int putItems(PersonalizeEventsClient personalizeEventsClient,
                        String datasetArn,
                        String item1Id,
                        String item1PropertyName,
                        String item1PropertyValue,
                        String item2Id,
```

```
                        String item2PropertyName,
                        String item2PropertyValue) {

                int responseCode = 0;
                ArrayList<Item> items = new ArrayList<>();

                try {
                        Item item1 = Item.builder()
                                        .itemId(item1Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\": \"%2$s
\"}",
                                                        item1PropertyName,
 item1PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        items.add(item1);

                        Item item2 = Item.builder()
                                        .itemId(item2Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\": \"%2$s
\"}",
                                                        item2PropertyName,
 item2PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        items.add(item2);

                        PutItemsRequest putItemsRequest = PutItemsRequest.builder()
                                        .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                                        .items(items)
                                        .build();

                        responseCode =
 personalizeEventsClient.putItems(putItemsRequest).sdkHttpResponse().statusCode();
                        System.out.println("Response code: " + responseCode);
                        return responseCode;

                } catch (PersonalizeEventsException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                }
                return responseCode;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `PutUsers`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        public static int putUsers(PersonalizeEventsClient personalizeEventsClient,
                        String datasetArn,
                        String user1Id,
                        String user1PropertyName,
                        String user1PropertyValue,
                        String user2Id,
                        String user2PropertyName,
                        String user2PropertyValue) {

                int responseCode = 0;
                ArrayList<User> users = new ArrayList<>();

                try {
                        User user1 = User.builder()
                                        .userId(user1Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\": \"%2$s
\"}",
                                                        user1PropertyName,
 user1PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        users.add(user1);

                        User user2 = User.builder()
                                        .userId(user2Id)
                                        .properties(String.format("{\"%1$s\": \"%2$s
\"}",
```

```
                                                        user2PropertyName,
user2PropertyValue))
                                        .build();

                        users.add(user2);

                        PutUsersRequest putUsersRequest = PutUsersRequest.builder()
                                        .datasetArn(datasetArn)
                                        .users(users)
                                        .build();

                        responseCode =
personalizeEventsClient.putUsers(putUsersRequest).sdkHttpResponse().statusCode();
                        System.out.println("Response code: " + responseCode);
                        return responseCode;

                } catch (PersonalizeEventsException e) {
                        System.out.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                }
                return responseCode;
        }
```

- For API details, see PutUsers in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Personalize Runtime examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Personalize Runtime.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetPersonalizedRanking`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPersonalizedRanking`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static List<PredictedItem> getRankedRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient
personalizeRuntimeClient,
           String campaignArn,
           String userId,
           ArrayList<String> items) {

       try {
           GetPersonalizedRankingRequest rankingRecommendationsRequest =
GetPersonalizedRankingRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .userId(userId)
                   .inputList(items)
                   .build();

           GetPersonalizedRankingResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                   .getPersonalizedRanking(rankingRecommendationsRequest);
           List<PredictedItem> rankedItems =
recommendationsResponse.personalizedRanking();
           int rank = 1;
           for (PredictedItem item : rankedItems) {
               System.out.println("Item ranked at position " + rank + " details");
               System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
               System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
               System.out.println("---------------------------------------------");
               rank++;
           }
           return rankedItems;
```

```
        } catch (PersonalizeRuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPersonalizedRanking in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetRecommendations`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRecommendations`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a list of recommended items.

```
   public static void getRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient personalizeRuntimeClient,
String campaignArn, String userId) {

       try {
           GetRecommendationsRequest recommendationsRequest =
GetRecommendationsRequest.builder()
                   .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                   .numResults(20)
                   .userId(userId)
                   .build();

           GetRecommendationsResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                   .getRecommendations(recommendationsRequest);
           List<PredictedItem> items = recommendationsResponse.itemList();
           for (PredictedItem item : items) {
               System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
               System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
```

```
            }

        } catch (AwsServiceException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Get a list of recommended items from a recommender created in a domain dataset group.

```
    public static void getRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient personalizeRuntimeClient,
String recommenderArn,
            String userId) {

        try {
            GetRecommendationsRequest recommendationsRequest =
GetRecommendationsRequest.builder()
                    .recommenderArn(recommenderArn)
                    .numResults(20)
                    .userId(userId)
                    .build();

            GetRecommendationsResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                    .getRecommendations(recommendationsRequest);
            List<PredictedItem> items = recommendationsResponse.itemList();

            for (PredictedItem item : items) {
                System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
                System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
            }
        } catch (AwsServiceException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

Use a filter when requesting recommendations.

```
    public static void getFilteredRecs(PersonalizeRuntimeClient
personalizeRuntimeClient,
```

```
            String campaignArn,
            String userId,
            String filterArn,
            String parameter1Name,
            String parameter1Value1,
            String parameter1Value2,
            String parameter2Name,
            String parameter2Value) {

        try {

            Map<String, String> filterValues = new HashMap<>();

            filterValues.put(parameter1Name, String.format("\"%1$s\",\"%2$s\"",
                    parameter1Value1, parameter1Value2));
            filterValues.put(parameter2Name, String.format("\"%1$s\"",
                    parameter2Value));

            GetRecommendationsRequest recommendationsRequest =
GetRecommendationsRequest.builder()
                    .campaignArn(campaignArn)
                    .numResults(20)
                    .userId(userId)
                    .filterArn(filterArn)
                    .filterValues(filterValues)
                    .build();

            GetRecommendationsResponse recommendationsResponse =
personalizeRuntimeClient
                    .getRecommendations(recommendationsRequest);
            List<PredictedItem> items = recommendationsResponse.itemList();

            for (PredictedItem item : items) {
                System.out.println("Item Id is : " + item.itemId());
                System.out.println("Item score is : " + item.score());
            }
        } catch (PersonalizeRuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRecommendations in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateApp`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateApp`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateAppRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateAppResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateApplicationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateApp {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                 Usage:  <appName>

                 Where:
                  appName - The name of the application to create.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
        String appName = args[0];
        System.out.println("Creating an application with name: " + appName);

        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String appID = createApplication(pinpoint, appName);
        System.out.println("App ID is: " + appID);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static String createApplication(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appName)
 {
        try {
            CreateApplicationRequest appRequest = CreateApplicationRequest.builder()
                    .name(appName)
                    .build();

            CreateAppRequest request = CreateAppRequest.builder()
                    .createApplicationRequest(appRequest)
                    .build();

            CreateAppResponse result = pinpoint.createApp(request);
            return result.applicationResponse().id();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateApp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCampaign`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a campaign.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CampaignResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Schedule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Action;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.WriteCampaignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateCampaignResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateCampaignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateCampaign {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId> <segmentId>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application to create the campaign in.
                  segmentId - The ID of the segment to create the campaign from.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String segmentId = args[1];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        createPinCampaign(pinpoint, appId, segmentId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void createPinCampaign(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId,
 String segmentId) {
        CampaignResponse result = createCampaign(pinpoint, appId, segmentId);
        System.out.println("Campaign " + result.name() + " created.");
        System.out.println(result.description());
    }

    public static CampaignResponse createCampaign(PinpointClient client, String
 appID, String segmentID) {

        try {
            Schedule schedule = Schedule.builder()
                    .startTime("IMMEDIATE")
                    .build();
```

```
            Message defaultMessage = Message.builder()
                    .action(Action.OPEN_APP)
                    .body("My message body.")
                    .title("My message title.")
                    .build();

            MessageConfiguration messageConfiguration =
 MessageConfiguration.builder()
                    .defaultMessage(defaultMessage)
                    .build();

            WriteCampaignRequest request = WriteCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .description("My description")
                    .schedule(schedule)
                    .name("MyCampaign")
                    .segmentId(segmentID)
                    .messageConfiguration(messageConfiguration)
                    .build();

            CreateCampaignResponse result =
 client.createCampaign(CreateCampaignRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appID)
                    .writeCampaignRequest(request).build());

            System.out.println("Campaign ID: " + result.campaignResponse().id());
            return result.campaignResponse();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateExportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateExportJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Export an endpoint.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ExportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateExportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateExportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetExportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetExportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.text.SimpleDateFormat;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Date;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

/**
 * To run this code example, you need to create an AWS Identity and Access
 * Management (IAM) role with the correct policy as described in this
 * documentation:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/developerguide/audience-data-
export.html
```

```
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class ExportEndpoints {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                This program performs the following steps:

                1. Exports the endpoints to an Amazon S3 bucket.
                2. Downloads the exported endpoints files from Amazon S3.
                3. Parses the endpoints files to obtain the endpoint IDs and prints
 them.
                Usage: ExportEndpoints <applicationId> <s3BucketName>
 <iamExportRoleArn> <path>

                Where:
                  applicationId - The ID of the Amazon Pinpoint application that has
 the endpoint.
                  s3BucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to export the JSON
 file to.\s
                  iamExportRoleArn - The ARN of an IAM role that grants Amazon
 Pinpoint write permissions to the S3 bucket.  path - The path where the files
 downloaded from the Amazon S3 bucket are written (for example, C:/AWS/).
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String applicationId = args[0];
        String s3BucketName = args[1];
        String iamExportRoleArn = args[2];
        String path = args[3];
        System.out.println("Deleting an application with ID: " + applicationId);

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        exportAllEndpoints(pinpoint, s3Client, applicationId, s3BucketName, path,
 iamExportRoleArn);
        pinpoint.close();
        s3Client.close();
    }

    public static void exportAllEndpoints(PinpointClient pinpoint,
            S3Client s3Client,
            String applicationId,
            String s3BucketName,
            String path,
            String iamExportRoleArn) {

        try {
            List<String> objectKeys = exportEndpointsToS3(pinpoint, s3Client,
 s3BucketName, iamExportRoleArn,
                    applicationId);
            List<String> endpointFileKeys = objectKeys.stream().filter(o ->
 o.endsWith(".gz"))
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());
            downloadFromS3(s3Client, path, s3BucketName, endpointFileKeys);

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<String> exportEndpointsToS3(PinpointClient pinpoint, S3Client
 s3Client, String s3BucketName,
            String iamExportRoleArn, String applicationId) {

        SimpleDateFormat dateFormat = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyy-MM-dd-
HH_mm:ss.SSS_z");
        String endpointsKeyPrefix = "exports/" + applicationId + "_" +
 dateFormat.format(new Date());
```

```
        String s3UrlPrefix = "s3://" + s3BucketName + "/" + endpointsKeyPrefix +
"/";
        List<String> objectKeys = new ArrayList<>();
        String key;

        try {
            // Defines the export job that Amazon Pinpoint runs.
            ExportJobRequest jobRequest = ExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .roleArn(iamExportRoleArn)
                    .s3UrlPrefix(s3UrlPrefix)
                    .build();

            CreateExportJobRequest exportJobRequest =
CreateExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(applicationId)
                    .exportJobRequest(jobRequest)
                    .build();

            System.out.format("Exporting endpoints from Amazon Pinpoint application
%s to Amazon S3 " +
                    "bucket %s . . .\n", applicationId, s3BucketName);

            CreateExportJobResponse exportResult =
pinpoint.createExportJob(exportJobRequest);
            String jobId = exportResult.exportJobResponse().id();
            System.out.println(jobId);
            printExportJobStatus(pinpoint, applicationId, jobId);

            ListObjectsV2Request v2Request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
                    .bucket(s3BucketName)
                    .prefix(endpointsKeyPrefix)
                    .build();

            // Create a list of object keys.
            ListObjectsV2Response v2Response = s3Client.listObjectsV2(v2Request);
            List<S3Object> objects = v2Response.contents();
            for (S3Object object : objects) {
                key = object.key();
                objectKeys.add(key);
            }

            return objectKeys;

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    private static void printExportJobStatus(PinpointClient pinpointClient,
            String applicationId,
            String jobId) {

        GetExportJobResponse getExportJobResult;
        String status;

        try {
            // Checks the job status until the job completes or fails.
            GetExportJobRequest exportJobRequest = GetExportJobRequest.builder()
                    .jobId(jobId)
                    .applicationId(applicationId)
                    .build();

            do {
                getExportJobResult = pinpointClient.getExportJob(exportJobRequest);
                status =
getExportJobResult.exportJobResponse().jobStatus().toString().toUpperCase();
                System.out.format("Export job %s . . .\n", status);
                TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(3);

            } while (!status.equals("COMPLETED") && !status.equals("FAILED"));

            if (status.equals("COMPLETED")) {
                System.out.println("Finished exporting endpoints.");
            } else {
                System.err.println("Failed to export endpoints.");
                System.exit(1);
            }

        } catch (PinpointException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Download files from an Amazon S3 bucket and write them to the path location.
```

```
    public static void downloadFromS3(S3Client s3Client, String path, String
 s3BucketName, List<String> objectKeys) {

        String newPath;
        try {
            for (String key : objectKeys) {
                GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(s3BucketName)
                        .key(key)
                        .build();

                ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
 s3Client.getObjectAsBytes(objectRequest);
                byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();

                // Write the data to a local file.
                String fileSuffix = new
 SimpleDateFormat("yyyyMMddHHmmss").format(new Date());
                newPath = path + fileSuffix + ".gz";
                File myFile = new File(newPath);
                OutputStream os = new FileOutputStream(myFile);
                os.write(data);
            }
            System.out.println("Download finished.");

        } catch (S3Exception | NullPointerException | IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateExportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateImportJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Import a segment.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateImportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ImportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ImportJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.Format;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateImportJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ImportSegment {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId> <bucket> <key> <roleArn>\s

                Where:
                  appId - The application ID to create a segment for.
                  bucket - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
 segment definitons.
                  key - The key of the S3 object.
                  roleArn - ARN of the role that allows Amazon Pinpoint to
 access S3. You need to set trust management for this to work. See https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/reference_policies_elements_principal.html
                  """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String bucket = args[1];
        String key = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];

        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        ImportJobResponse response = createImportSegment(pinpoint, appId, bucket,
key, roleArn);
        System.out.println("Import job for " + bucket + " submitted.");
        System.out.println("See application " + response.applicationId() + " for
import job status.");
        System.out.println("See application " + response.jobStatus() + " for import
job status.");
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static ImportJobResponse createImportSegment(PinpointClient client,
            String appId,
            String bucket,
            String key,
            String roleArn) {

        try {
            ImportJobRequest importRequest = ImportJobRequest.builder()
                    .defineSegment(true)
                    .registerEndpoints(true)
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .format(Format.JSON)
                    .s3Url("s3://" + bucket + "/" + key)
                    .build();

            CreateImportJobRequest jobRequest = CreateImportJobRequest.builder()
                    .importJobRequest(importRequest)
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();
```

```
            CreateImportJobResponse jobResponse =
 client.createImportJob(jobRequest);
            return jobResponse.importJobResponse();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateImportJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateSegment`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSegment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AttributeDimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AttributeType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.RecencyDimension;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentBehaviors;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentDemographics;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentLocation;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentDimensions;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.WriteSegmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateSegmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.CreateSegmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import java.util.HashMap;
```

```
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateSegment {
        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:   <appId>

                                Where:
                                  appId - The application ID to create a segment
 for.

                                """;

                if (args.length != 1) {
                        System.out.println(usage);
                        System.exit(1);
                }

                String appId = args[0];
                PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                                .build();

                SegmentResponse result = createSegment(pinpoint, appId);
                System.out.println("Segment " + result.name() + " created.");
                System.out.println(result.segmentType());
                pinpoint.close();
        }

        public static SegmentResponse createSegment(PinpointClient client, String
 appId) {
                try {
                        Map<String, AttributeDimension> segmentAttributes = new
 HashMap<>();
                        segmentAttributes.put("Team", AttributeDimension.builder()
```

```
                                        .attributeType(AttributeType.INCLUSIVE)
                                        .values("Lakers")
                                        .build());

                        RecencyDimension recencyDimension =
RecencyDimension.builder()
                                        .duration("DAY_30")
                                        .recencyType("ACTIVE")
                                        .build();

                        SegmentBehaviors segmentBehaviors =
SegmentBehaviors.builder()
                                        .recency(recencyDimension)
                                        .build();

                        SegmentDemographics segmentDemographics =
SegmentDemographics
                                        .builder()
                                        .build();

                        SegmentLocation segmentLocation = SegmentLocation
                                        .builder()
                                        .build();

                        SegmentDimensions dimensions = SegmentDimensions
                                        .builder()
                                        .attributes(segmentAttributes)
                                        .behavior(segmentBehaviors)
                                        .demographic(segmentDemographics)
                                        .location(segmentLocation)
                                        .build();

                        WriteSegmentRequest writeSegmentRequest =
WriteSegmentRequest.builder()
                                        .name("MySegment")
                                        .dimensions(dimensions)
                                        .build();

                        CreateSegmentRequest createSegmentRequest =
CreateSegmentRequest.builder()
                                        .applicationId(appId)
                                        .writeSegmentRequest(writeSegmentRequest)
                                        .build();
```

```
                        CreateSegmentResponse createSegmentResult =
 client.createSegment(createSegmentRequest);
                        System.out.println("Segment ID: " +
 createSegmentResult.segmentResponse().id());
                        System.out.println("Done");
                        return createSegmentResult.segmentResponse();

                } catch (PinpointException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
                return null;
        }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSegment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteApp`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteApp`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an application.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteAppRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteAppResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteApp {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:  <appId>

                Where:
                 appId - The ID of the application to delete.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        System.out.println("Deleting an application with ID: " + appId);
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deletePinApp(pinpoint, appId);
        System.out.println("Done");
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void deletePinApp(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId) {
        try {
            DeleteAppRequest appRequest = DeleteAppRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            DeleteAppResponse result = pinpoint.deleteApp(appRequest);
            String appName = result.applicationResponse().name();
            System.out.println("Application " + appName + " has been deleted.");

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteApp in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEndpoint`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an endpoint.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DeleteEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteEndpoint {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appName> <endpointId >
```

```
                Where:
                  appId - The id of the application to delete.
                  endpointId - The id of the endpoint to delete.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String endpointId = args[1];
        System.out.println("Deleting an endpoint with id: " + endpointId);
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deletePinEncpoint(pinpoint, appId, endpointId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void deletePinEncpoint(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId,
 String endpointId) {
        try {
            DeleteEndpointRequest appRequest = DeleteEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpointId)
                    .build();

            DeleteEndpointResponse result = pinpoint.deleteEndpoint(appRequest);
            String id = result.endpointResponse().id();
            System.out.println("The deleted endpoint id  " + id);

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetEndpoint

The following code example shows how to use `GetEndpoint`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.google.gson.FieldNamingPolicy;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.GsonBuilder;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class LookUpEndpoint {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId> <endpoint>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application to delete.
                  endpoint - The ID of the endpoint.\s
                  """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        String endpoint = args[1];
        System.out.println("Looking up an endpoint point with ID: " + endpoint);
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        lookupPinpointEndpoint(pinpoint, appId, endpoint);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void lookupPinpointEndpoint(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId,
 String endpoint) {
        try {
            GetEndpointRequest appRequest = GetEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpoint)
                    .build();

            GetEndpointResponse result = pinpoint.getEndpoint(appRequest);
            EndpointResponse endResponse = result.endpointResponse();

            // Uses the Google Gson library to pretty print the endpoint JSON.
            Gson gson = new GsonBuilder()
                    .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                    .setPrettyPrinting()
                    .create();

            String endpointJson = gson.toJson(endResponse);
            System.out.println(endpointJson);

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Done");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetSegments

The following code example shows how to use GetSegments.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List segments.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetSegmentsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetSegmentsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SegmentResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListSegments {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <appId>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application that contains a segment.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSegs(pinpoint, appId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void listSegs(PinpointClient pinpoint, String appId) {
        try {
            GetSegmentsRequest request = GetSegmentsRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            GetSegmentsResponse response = pinpoint.getSegments(request);
            List<SegmentResponse> segments = response.segmentsResponse().item();
            for (SegmentResponse segment : segments) {
                System.out
                        .println("Segement " + segment.id() + " " + segment.name() +
 " " + segment.lastModifiedDate());
            }

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSegments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetSmsChannel`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSmsChannel`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSChannelResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetSmsChannelRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSChannelRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateSmsChannelRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateSmsChannelResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class UpdateChannel {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage: CreateChannel <appId>

                Where:
                  appId - The name of the application whose channel is updated.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
```

```
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        SMSChannelResponse getResponse = getSMSChannel(pinpoint, appId);
        toggleSmsChannel(pinpoint, appId, getResponse);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    private static SMSChannelResponse getSMSChannel(PinpointClient client, String
appId) {
        try {
            GetSmsChannelRequest request = GetSmsChannelRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            SMSChannelResponse response =
client.getSmsChannel(request).smsChannelResponse();
            System.out.println("Channel state is " + response.enabled());
            return response;

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    private static void toggleSmsChannel(PinpointClient client, String appId,
SMSChannelResponse getResponse) {
        boolean enabled = !getResponse.enabled();
        try {
            SMSChannelRequest request = SMSChannelRequest.builder()
                    .enabled(enabled)
                    .build();

            UpdateSmsChannelRequest updateRequest =
UpdateSmsChannelRequest.builder()
                    .smsChannelRequest(request)
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .build();

            UpdateSmsChannelResponse result =
client.updateSmsChannel(updateRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("Channel state: " +
 result.smsChannelResponse().enabled());

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSmsChannel in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetUserEndpoints`

The following code example shows how to use `GetUserEndpoints`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetUserEndpointsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetUserEndpointsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListEndpointIds {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <applicationId> <userId>

                Where:
                   applicationId - The ID of the Amazon Pinpoint application that
has the endpoint.
                   userId - The user id applicable to the endpoints""";

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String applicationId = args[0];
        String userId = args[1];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllEndpoints(pinpoint, applicationId, userId);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void listAllEndpoints(PinpointClient pinpoint,
            String applicationId,
            String userId) {

        try {
            GetUserEndpointsRequest endpointsRequest =
GetUserEndpointsRequest.builder()
                    .userId(userId)
                    .applicationId(applicationId)
                    .build();

            GetUserEndpointsResponse response =
pinpoint.getUserEndpoints(endpointsRequest);
            List<EndpointResponse> endpoints = response.endpointsResponse().item();

            // Display the results.
            for (EndpointResponse endpoint : endpoints) {
                System.out.println("The channel type is: " +
endpoint.channelType());
```

```
                System.out.println("The address is  " + endpoint.address());
            }

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetUserEndpoints in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SendMessages

The following code example shows how to use SendMessages.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AddressConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ChannelType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SimpleEmailPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SimpleEmail;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EmailMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DirectMessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.PinpointEmailClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Destination;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.SendEmailRequest;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendEmailMessage {

        // The character encoding the you want to use for the subject line and
        // message body of the email.
        public static String charset = "UTF-8";

    // The body of the email for recipients whose email clients support HTML
 content.
    static final String body = """
        Amazon Pinpoint test (AWS SDK for Java 2.x)

        This email was sent through the Amazon Pinpoint Email API using the AWS SDK
 for Java 2.x

        """;

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:    <subject> <appId> <senderAddress>
 <toAddress>

            Where:
               subject - The email subject to use.
               senderAddress - The from address. This address has to be verified in
 Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
               toAddress - The to address. This address has to be verified in Amazon
 Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
            """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subject = args[0];
        String senderAddress = args[1];
        String toAddress = args[2];
        System.out.println("Sending a message");
        PinpointEmailClient pinpoint = PinpointEmailClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        sendEmail(pinpoint, subject, senderAddress, toAddress);
        System.out.println("Email was sent");
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void sendEmail(PinpointEmailClient pinpointEmailClient, String
subject, String senderAddress, String toAddress) {
        try {
            Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(body)
                .build();

            Body messageBody = Body.builder()
                .text(content)
                .build();

            Message message = Message.builder()
                .body(messageBody)
                .subject(Content.builder().data(subject).build())
                .build();

            Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(toAddress)
                .build();

            EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(message)
                .build();

            SendEmailRequest sendEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
```

```
                .fromEmailAddress(senderAddress)
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .build();

            pinpointEmailClient.sendEmail(sendEmailRequest);
            System.out.println("Message Sent");

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Send an email message with CC values.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import  software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.PinpointEmailClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointemail.model.SendEmailRequest;
import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendEmailMessageCC {

    // The body of the email.
    static final String body = """
        Amazon Pinpoint test (AWS SDK for Java 2.x)
```

```
        This email was sent through the Amazon Pinpoint Email API using the AWS SDK
for Java 2.x

        """;
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <subject> <senderAddress> <toAddress> <ccAddress>

            Where:
               subject - The email subject to use.
               senderAddress - The from address. This address has to be verified in
Amazon Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
               toAddress - The to address. This address has to be verified in Amazon
Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email\s
               ccAddress - The CC address.
            """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subject = args[0];
        String senderAddress = args[1];
        String toAddress = args[2];
        String ccAddress = args[3];

        System.out.println("Sending a message");
        PinpointEmailClient pinpoint = PinpointEmailClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        ArrayList<String> ccList = new ArrayList<>();
        ccList.add(ccAddress);
        sendEmail(pinpoint, subject, senderAddress, toAddress, ccList);
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static void sendEmail(PinpointEmailClient pinpointEmailClient, String
subject, String senderAddress, String toAddress, ArrayList<String> ccAddresses) {
        try {
            Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(body)
```

```
                .build();

            Body messageBody = Body.builder()
                .text(content)
                .build();

            Message message = Message.builder()
                .body(messageBody)
                .subject(Content.builder().data(subject).build())
                .build();

            Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(toAddress)
                .ccAddresses(ccAddresses)
                .build();

            EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(message)
                .build();

            SendEmailRequest sendEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .fromEmailAddress(senderAddress)
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .build();

            pinpointEmailClient.sendEmail(sendEmailRequest);
            System.out.println("Message Sent");

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            // Handle exception
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
```

Send an SMS message.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DirectMessageConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSMessage;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AddressConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ChannelType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendMessage {

        // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
        // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
        // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
        public static String messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

        // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
        public static String registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

        // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
        // varies by country or region. For more information, see
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
        public static String senderId = "MySenderID";

        public static void main(String[] args) {
                final String usage = """

                                Usage:   <message> <appId> <originationNumber>
 <destinationNumber>\s

                                Where:
                                  message - The body of the message to send.
                                  appId - The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID
 to use when you send this message.
```

```
                                 originationNumber - The phone number or short code
that you specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best
results, specify long codes in E.164 format (for example, +1-555-555-5654).
                                 destinationNumber - The recipient's phone number.
For best results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
+1-555-555-5654).\s
                                 """;

               if (args.length != 4) {
                       System.out.println(usage);
                       System.exit(1);
               }

               String message = args[0];
               String appId = args[1];
               String originationNumber = args[2];
               String destinationNumber = args[3];
               System.out.println("Sending a message");
               PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                               .build();

               sendSMSMessage(pinpoint, message, appId, originationNumber,
destinationNumber);
               pinpoint.close();
       }

       public static void sendSMSMessage(PinpointClient pinpoint, String message,
String appId,
                       String originationNumber,
                       String destinationNumber) {
               try {
                       Map<String, AddressConfiguration> addressMap = new
HashMap<String, AddressConfiguration>();
                       AddressConfiguration addConfig =
AddressConfiguration.builder()
                                       .channelType(ChannelType.SMS)
                                       .build();

                       addressMap.put(destinationNumber, addConfig);
                       SMSMessage smsMessage = SMSMessage.builder()
                                       .body(message)
                                       .messageType(messageType)
                                       .originationNumber(originationNumber)
```

```
                                        .senderId(senderId)
                                        .keyword(registeredKeyword)
                                        .build();

                        // Create a DirectMessageConfiguration object.
                        DirectMessageConfiguration direct =
 DirectMessageConfiguration.builder()
                                        .smsMessage(smsMessage)
                                        .build();

                        MessageRequest msgReq = MessageRequest.builder()
                                        .addresses(addressMap)
                                        .messageConfiguration(direct)
                                        .build();

                        // create a SendMessagesRequest object
                        SendMessagesRequest request = SendMessagesRequest.builder()
                                        .applicationId(appId)
                                        .messageRequest(msgReq)
                                        .build();

                        SendMessagesResponse response =
 pinpoint.sendMessages(request);
                        MessageResponse msg1 = response.messageResponse();
                        Map map1 = msg1.result();

                        // Write out the result of sendMessage.
                        map1.forEach((k, v) -> System.out.println((k + ":" + v)));

                } catch (PinpointException e) {
                        System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
                        System.exit(1);
                }
        }
}
```

Send batch SMS messages.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.DirectMessageConfiguration;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SMSMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.AddressConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.ChannelType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.SendMessagesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.MessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;

import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendMessageBatch {

    // The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you plan to send
    // time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you plan to send
    // marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
    public static String messageType = "TRANSACTIONAL";

    // The registered keyword associated with the originating short code.
    public static String registeredKeyword = "myKeyword";

    // The sender ID to use when sending the message. Support for sender ID
    // varies by country or region. For more information, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/latest/userguide/channels-sms-
countries.html
    public static String senderId = "MySenderID";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <message> <appId> <originationNumber> <destinationNumber>
 <destinationNumber1>\s

                Where:
                  message - The body of the message to send.
```

```
                 appId - The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you
send this message.
                 originationNumber - The phone number or short code that you
specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best results,
specify long codes in E.164 format (for example, +1-555-555-5654).
                 destinationNumber - The recipient's phone number.  For best
results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
+1-555-555-5654).
                 destinationNumber1 - The second recipient's phone number.  For
best results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
+1-555-555-5654).\s
               """;

       if (args.length != 5) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String message = args[0];
       String appId = args[1];
       String originationNumber = args[2];
       String destinationNumber = args[3];
       String destinationNumber1 = args[4];
       System.out.println("Sending a message");
       PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();

       sendSMSMessage(pinpoint, message, appId, originationNumber,
destinationNumber, destinationNumber1);
       pinpoint.close();
   }

   public static void sendSMSMessage(PinpointClient pinpoint, String message,
String appId,
                                     String originationNumber,
                                     String destinationNumber, String
destinationNumber1) {
       try {
           Map<String, AddressConfiguration> addressMap = new HashMap<String,
AddressConfiguration>();
           AddressConfiguration addConfig = AddressConfiguration.builder()
                   .channelType(ChannelType.SMS)
                   .build();
```

```
            // Add an entry to the Map object for each number to whom you want to
 send a
            // message.
            addressMap.put(destinationNumber, addConfig);
            addressMap.put(destinationNumber1, addConfig);
            SMSMessage smsMessage = SMSMessage.builder()
                    .body(message)
                    .messageType(messageType)
                    .originationNumber(originationNumber)
                    .senderId(senderId)
                    .keyword(registeredKeyword)
                    .build();

            // Create a DirectMessageConfiguration object.
            DirectMessageConfiguration direct = DirectMessageConfiguration.builder()
                    .smsMessage(smsMessage)
                    .build();

            MessageRequest msgReq = MessageRequest.builder()
                    .addresses(addressMap)
                    .messageConfiguration(direct)
                    .build();

            // Create a SendMessagesRequest object.
            SendMessagesRequest request = SendMessagesRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .messageRequest(msgReq)
                    .build();

            SendMessagesResponse response = pinpoint.sendMessages(request);
            MessageResponse msg1 = response.messageResponse();
            Map map1 = msg1.result();

            // Write out the result of sendMessage.
            map1.forEach((k, v) -> System.out.println((k + ":" + v)));

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateEndpoint`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.PinpointClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.UpdateEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.GetEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.PinpointException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointDemographic;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointLocation;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpoint.model.EndpointUser;
import java.text.DateFormat;
import java.text.SimpleDateFormat;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Date;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class UpdateEndpoint {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:  <appId>

                Where:
                  appId - The ID of the application to create an endpoint for.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String appId = args[0];
        PinpointClient pinpoint = PinpointClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        EndpointResponse response = createEndpoint(pinpoint, appId);
        System.out.println("Got Endpoint: " + response.id());
        pinpoint.close();
    }

    public static EndpointResponse createEndpoint(PinpointClient client, String
 appId) {
        String endpointId = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        System.out.println("Endpoint ID: " + endpointId);

        try {
            EndpointRequest endpointRequest = createEndpointRequestData();
            UpdateEndpointRequest updateEndpointRequest =
 UpdateEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpointId)
                    .endpointRequest(endpointRequest)
                    .build();
```

```
            UpdateEndpointResponse updateEndpointResponse =
client.updateEndpoint(updateEndpointRequest);
            System.out.println("Update Endpoint Response: " +
updateEndpointResponse.messageBody());

            GetEndpointRequest getEndpointRequest = GetEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .applicationId(appId)
                    .endpointId(endpointId)
                    .build();

            GetEndpointResponse getEndpointResponse =
client.getEndpoint(getEndpointRequest);
            System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().address());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().channelType());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().applicationId());

System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().endpointStatus());
            System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().requestId());
            System.out.println(getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse().user());

            return getEndpointResponse.endpointResponse();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    private static EndpointRequest createEndpointRequestData() {
        try {
            List<String> favoriteTeams = new ArrayList<>();
            favoriteTeams.add("Lakers");
            favoriteTeams.add("Warriors");
            HashMap<String, List<String>> customAttributes = new HashMap<>();
            customAttributes.put("team", favoriteTeams);

            EndpointDemographic demographic = EndpointDemographic.builder()
                    .appVersion("1.0")
                    .make("apple")
                    .model("iPhone")
                    .modelVersion("7")
```

```
                    .platform("ios")
                    .platformVersion("10.1.1")
                    .timezone("America/Los_Angeles")
                    .build();

            EndpointLocation location = EndpointLocation.builder()
                    .city("Los Angeles")
                    .country("US")
                    .latitude(34.0)
                    .longitude(-118.2)
                    .postalCode("90068")
                    .region("CA")
                    .build();

            Map<String, Double> metrics = new HashMap<>();
            metrics.put("health", 100.00);
            metrics.put("luck", 75.00);

            EndpointUser user = EndpointUser.builder()
                    .userId(UUID.randomUUID().toString())
                    .build();

            DateFormat df = new SimpleDateFormat("yyyy-MM-dd'T'HH:mm'Z'"); // Quoted
"Z" to indicate UTC, no timezone
                                                                           // offset
            String nowAsISO = df.format(new Date());

            return EndpointRequest.builder()
                    .address(UUID.randomUUID().toString())
                    .attributes(customAttributes)
                    .channelType("APNS")
                    .demographic(demographic)
                    .effectiveDate(nowAsISO)
                    .location(location)
                    .metrics(metrics)
                    .optOut("NONE")
                    .requestId(UUID.randomUUID().toString())
                    .user(user)
                    .build();

        } catch (PinpointException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendVoiceMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendVoiceMessage`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.PinpointSmsVoiceClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.SSMLMessageType;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.VoiceMessageContent;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.SendVoiceMessageRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.pinpointsmsvoice.model.PinpointSmsVoiceException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendVoiceMessage {

    // The Amazon Polly voice that you want to use to send the message. For a list
    // of voices, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/voicelist.html
    static final String voiceName = "Matthew";

    // The language to use when sending the message. For a list of supported
    // languages, see
    // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/polly/latest/dg/SupportedLanguage.html
    static final String languageCode = "en-US";

    // The content of the message. This example uses SSML to customize and control
    // certain aspects of the message, such as by adding pauses and changing
    // phonation. The message can't contain any line breaks.
    static final String ssmlMessage = "<speak>This is a test message sent from "
            + "<emphasis>Amazon Pinpoint</emphasis> "
            + "using the <break strength='weak'/>AWS "
            + "SDK for Java. "
            + "<amazon:effect phonation='soft'>Thank "
            + "you for listening.</amazon:effect></speak>";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """
                Usage:   <originationNumber> <destinationNumber>\s
```

```
               Where:
                 originationNumber - The phone number or short code that you
specify has to be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint account. For best results,
specify long codes in E.164 format (for example, +1-555-555-5654).
                 destinationNumber - The recipient's phone number.  For best
results, you should specify the phone number in E.164 format (for example,
+1-555-555-5654).\s
               """;

       if (args.length != 2) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }
       String originationNumber = args[0];
       String destinationNumber = args[1];
       System.out.println("Sending a voice message");

       // Set the content type to application/json.
       List<String> listVal = new ArrayList<>();
       listVal.add("application/json");
       Map<String, List<String>> values = new HashMap<>();
       values.put("Content-Type", listVal);

       ClientOverrideConfiguration config2 = ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
               .headers(values)
               .build();

       PinpointSmsVoiceClient client = PinpointSmsVoiceClient.builder()
               .overrideConfiguration(config2)
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();

       sendVoiceMsg(client, originationNumber, destinationNumber);
       client.close();
   }

   public static void sendVoiceMsg(PinpointSmsVoiceClient client, String
originationNumber,
                                   String destinationNumber) {
       try {
           SSMLMessageType ssmlMessageType = SSMLMessageType.builder()
                   .languageCode(languageCode)
                   .text(ssmlMessage)
```

```
                    .voiceId(voiceName)
                    .build();

            VoiceMessageContent content = VoiceMessageContent.builder()
                    .ssmlMessage(ssmlMessageType)
                    .build();

            SendVoiceMessageRequest voiceMessageRequest =
 SendVoiceMessageRequest.builder()
                    .destinationPhoneNumber(destinationNumber)
                    .originationPhoneNumber(originationNumber)
                    .content(content)
                    .build();

            client.sendVoiceMessage(voiceMessageRequest);
            System.out.println("The message was sent successfully.");

        } catch (PinpointSmsVoiceException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendVoiceMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Polly.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeVoices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVoices`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.PollyClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.PollyException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.Voice;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeVoicesSample {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        PollyClient polly = PollyClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        describeVoice(polly);
        polly.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void describeVoice(PollyClient polly) {
        try {
            DescribeVoicesRequest voicesRequest = DescribeVoicesRequest.builder()
                    .languageCode("en-US")
                    .build();

            DescribeVoicesResponse enUsVoicesResult =
 polly.describeVoices(voicesRequest);
            List<Voice> voices = enUsVoicesResult.voices();
            for (Voice myVoice : voices) {
                System.out.println("The ID of the voice is " + myVoice.id());
                System.out.println("The gender of the voice is " +
 myVoice.gender());
            }

        } catch (PollyException e) {
            System.err.println("Exception caught: " + e);
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListLexicons`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLexicons`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.PollyClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.ListLexiconsResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.ListLexiconsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.LexiconDescription;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.PollyException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListLexicons {
    public static void main(String args[]) {
        PollyClient polly = PollyClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        listLexicons(polly);
        polly.close();
    }

    public static void listLexicons(PollyClient client) {
        try {
            ListLexiconsRequest listLexiconsRequest = ListLexiconsRequest.builder()
                    .build();

            ListLexiconsResponse listLexiconsResult =
 client.listLexicons(listLexiconsRequest);
            List<LexiconDescription> lexiconDescription =
 listLexiconsResult.lexicons();
            for (LexiconDescription lexDescription : lexiconDescription) {
                System.out.println("The name of the Lexicon is " +
 lexDescription.name());
            }

        } catch (PollyException e) {
            System.err.println("Exception caught: " + e);
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SynthesizeSpeech`

The following code example shows how to use `SynthesizeSpeech`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import javazoom.jl.decoder.JavaLayerException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseInputStream;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.PollyClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.Voice;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.DescribeVoicesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.OutputFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.PollyException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.SynthesizeSpeechRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.polly.model.SynthesizeSpeechResponse;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import javazoom.jl.player.advanced.AdvancedPlayer;
import javazoom.jl.player.advanced.PlaybackEvent;
import javazoom.jl.player.advanced.PlaybackListener;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PollyDemo {
```

```
   private static final String SAMPLE = "Congratulations. You have successfully
built this working demo " +
           " of Amazon Polly in Java Version 2. Have fun building voice enabled
apps with Amazon Polly (that's me!), and always "
           +
           " look at the AWS website for tips and tricks on using Amazon Polly and
other great services from AWS";

   public static void main(String args[]) {
       PollyClient polly = PollyClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
               .build();

       talkPolly(polly);
       polly.close();
   }

   public static void talkPolly(PollyClient polly) {
       try {
           DescribeVoicesRequest describeVoiceRequest =
DescribeVoicesRequest.builder()
                   .engine("standard")
                   .build();

           DescribeVoicesResponse describeVoicesResult =
polly.describeVoices(describeVoiceRequest);
           Voice voice = describeVoicesResult.voices().stream()
                   .filter(v -> v.name().equals("Joanna"))
                   .findFirst()
                   .orElseThrow(() -> new RuntimeException("Voice not found"));
           InputStream stream = synthesize(polly, SAMPLE, voice, OutputFormat.MP3);
           AdvancedPlayer player = new AdvancedPlayer(stream,

javazoom.jl.player.FactoryRegistry.systemRegistry().createAudioDevice());
           player.setPlayBackListener(new PlaybackListener() {
               public void playbackStarted(PlaybackEvent evt) {
                   System.out.println("Playback started");
                   System.out.println(SAMPLE);
               }

               public void playbackFinished(PlaybackEvent evt) {
                   System.out.println("Playback finished");
               }
           });
```

```
            // play it!
            player.play();

        } catch (PollyException | JavaLayerException | IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static InputStream synthesize(PollyClient polly, String text, Voice
 voice, OutputFormat format)
            throws IOException {
        SynthesizeSpeechRequest synthReq = SynthesizeSpeechRequest.builder()
                .text(text)
                .voiceId(voice.id())
                .outputFormat(format)
                .build();

        ResponseInputStream<SynthesizeSpeechResponse> synthRes =
 polly.synthesizeSpeech(synthReq);
        return synthRes;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeDBInstances {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeInstances(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesResponse response = rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
            List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
            for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                System.out.println("Instance ARN is: " + instance.dbInstanceArn());
                System.out.println("The Engine is " + instance.engine());
```

```
                System.out.println("Connection endpoint is" +
 instance.endpoint().address());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run multiple operations.

```
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbParameterGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbSnapshotRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbSnapshotResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBEngineVersion;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBParameterGroup;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBSnapshot;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParameterGroupsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParametersResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbSnapshotsResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbParameterGroupResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.OrderableDBInstanceOption;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.Parameter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbParameterGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbParametersRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 * database credentials. If you do not create a
 * secret, this example will not work. For details, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 *
 * 1. Returns a list of the available DB engines.
 * 2. Selects an engine family and create a custom DB parameter group.
 * 3. Gets the parameter groups.
 * 4. Gets parameters in the group.
 * 5. Modifies the auto_increment_offset parameter.
 * 6. Gets and displays the updated parameters.
 * 7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions.
 * 8. Gets a list of micro instance classes available for the selected engine.
 * 9. Creates an RDS database instance that contains a MySql database and uses
 * the parameter group.
 * 10. Waits for the DB instance to be ready and prints out the connection
 * endpoint value.
 * 11. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance.
 * 12. Waits for an RDS DB snapshot to be ready.
 * 13. Deletes the RDS DB instance.
 * 14. Deletes the parameter group.
 */
```

```
public class RDSScenario {
    public static long sleepTime = 20;
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily> <dbInstanceIdentifier>
 <dbName> <dbSnapshotIdentifier> <secretName>

                Where:
                    dbGroupName - The database group name.\s
                    dbParameterGroupFamily - The database parameter group name (for
 example, mysql8.0).
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier\s
                    dbName - The database name.\s
                    dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.\s
                    secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that
 contains the database credentials"
                """;

        if (args.length != 6) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbGroupName = args[0];
        String dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1];
        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[2];
        String dbName = args[3];
        String dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[4];
        String secretName = args[5];

        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
 User.class);
        String masterUsername = user.getUsername();
        String masterUserPassword = user.getPassword();

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon RDS example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines");
        describeDBEngines(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a custom parameter group");
        createDBParameterGroup(rdsClient, dbGroupName, dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Get the parameter group");
        describeDbParameterGroups(rdsClient, dbGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the parameters in the group");
        describeDbParameters(rdsClient, dbGroupName, 0);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter");
        modifyDBParas(rdsClient, dbGroupName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Display the updated value");
        describeDbParameters(rdsClient, dbGroupName, -1);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions");
        getAllowedEngines(rdsClient, dbParameterGroupFamily);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Get a list of micro instance classes available for
 the selected engine");
        getMicroInstances(rdsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println(
                "9. Create an RDS database instance that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group");
        String dbARN = createDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbGroupName,
dbInstanceIdentifier, dbName, masterUsername,
                masterUserPassword);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new database is " + dbARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Wait for DB instance to be ready");
        waitForInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Create a snapshot of the DB instance");
        createSnapshot(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("12. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready");
        waitForSnapshotReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("13. Delete the DB instance");
        deleteDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("14. Delete the parameter group");
        deleteParaGroup(rdsClient, dbGroupName, dbARN);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The Scenario has successfully completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        rdsClient.close();
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
    }

    public static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                .secretId(secretName)
                .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }

    // Delete the parameter group after database has been deleted.
    // An exception is thrown if you attempt to delete the para group while database
    // exists.
    public static void deleteParaGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName,
String dbARN)
            throws InterruptedException {
        try {
            boolean isDataDel = false;
            boolean didFind;
            String instanceARN;

            // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
            while (!isDataDel) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                int listSize = instanceList.size();
                didFind = false;
                int index = 1;
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(dbARN) == 0) {
                        System.out.println(dbARN + " still exists");
                        didFind = true;
                    }
                    if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
```

```
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true;
                    }
                    Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    index++;
                }
            }

            // Delete the para group.
            DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest parameterGroupRequest =
DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .build();

            rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupRequest);
            System.out.println(dbGroupName + " was deleted.");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the DB instance.
    public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status of the database is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }

    // Waits until the snapshot instance is available.
    public static void waitForSnapshotReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
            boolean snapshotReady = false;
            String snapshotReadyStr;
            System.out.println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.");

            DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest snapshotsRequest =
DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest.builder()
                    .dbSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            while (!snapshotReady) {
                DescribeDbSnapshotsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBSnapshots(snapshotsRequest);
                List<DBSnapshot> snapshotList = response.dbSnapshots();
                for (DBSnapshot snapshot : snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status();
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }

            System.out.println("The Snapshot is available!");
        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Create an Amazon RDS snapshot.
    public static void createSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier, String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
        try {
```

```
            CreateDbSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbSnapshotRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .dbSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                    .build();

            CreateDbSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
            System.out.println("The Snapshot id is " +
response.dbSnapshot().dbiResourceId());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            String endpoint = "";
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances(instanceRequest);
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        endpoint = instance.endpoint().address();
                        instanceReady = true;
                    } else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
```

```
            }
            System.out.println("Database instance is available! The connection
endpoint is " + endpoint);

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Create a database instance and return the ARN of the database.
    public static String createDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient,
            String dbGroupName,
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbName,
            String userName,
            String userPassword) {

        try {
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                .allocatedStorage(100)
                .dbName(dbName)
                .engine("mysql")
                .dbInstanceClass("db.t3.medium") // Updated to a supported class
                .engineVersion("8.0.32")         // Updated to a supported version
                .storageType("gp2")             // Changed to General Purpose SSD
(gp2)
                .masterUsername(userName)
                .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
                .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());
            return response.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn();

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        return "";
    }

    // Get a list of micro instances.
    public static void getMicroInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest dbInstanceOptionsRequest =
DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest
                    .builder()
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .build();

            DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsResponse response = rdsClient
                    .describeOrderableDBInstanceOptions(dbInstanceOptionsRequest);
            List<OrderableDBInstanceOption> orderableDBInstances =
response.orderableDBInstanceOptions();
            for (OrderableDBInstanceOption dbInstanceOption : orderableDBInstances)
{
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
dbInstanceOption.engineVersion());
                System.out.println("The engine description is " +
dbInstanceOption.engine());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
    public static void getAllowedEngines(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest versionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(versionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> dbEngines = response.dbEngineVersions();
            for (DBEngineVersion dbEngine : dbEngines) {
```

```
                System.out.println("The engine version is " +
dbEngine.engineVersion());
                System.out.println("The engine description is " +
dbEngine.dbEngineDescription());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Modify auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters.
    public static void modifyDBParas(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName) {
        try {
            Parameter parameter1 = Parameter.builder()
                    .parameterName("auto_increment_offset")
                    .applyMethod("immediate")
                    .parameterValue("5")
                    .build();

            List<Parameter> paraList = new ArrayList<>();
            paraList.add(parameter1);
            ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .parameters(paraList)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter group " +
response.dbParameterGroupName() + " was successfully modified");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Retrieve parameters in the group.
    public static void describeDbParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName,
int flag) {
        try {
```

```
            DescribeDbParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
            if (flag == 0) {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                        .build();
            } else {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                        .source("user")
                        .build();
            }

            DescribeDbParametersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDbParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName) {
        try {
```

```
            DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbParameterGroupsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(groupsRequest);
            List<DBParameterGroup> groups = response.dbParameterGroups();
            for (DBParameterGroup group : groups) {
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group description is " +
group.description());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void createDBParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName, String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            CreateDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbParameterGroup().dbParameterGroupName());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
```

```
        try {
            DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
 DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                    .defaultOnly(true)
                    .engine("mysql")
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
            List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

            // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
            for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
 the database engine is "
                        + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
                System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engine());
                System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
 engineOb.engineVersion());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups

- DescribeDBParameters
- DescribeDBSnapshots
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.CreateDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
 * database credentials. If you do not create a
 * secret, this example will not work. For more details, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 *
 */

public class CreateDBInstance {
    public static long sleepTime = 20;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbName> <secretName>

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\s
                    dbName - The database name.\s
                    secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that
 contains the database credentials."
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        String dbName = args[1];
        String secretName = args[2];
        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
 User.class);
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        createDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbName,
user.getUsername(), user.getPassword());
        waitForInstanceReady(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
                .region(region)

.credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();
    }

    private static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                .secretId(secretName)
                .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
    }

    public static void createDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient,
            String dbInstanceIdentifier,
            String dbName,
            String userName,
            String userPassword) {

        try {
            CreateDbInstanceRequest instanceRequest =
CreateDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                .allocatedStorage(100)
                .dbName(dbName)
                .engine("mysql")
                .dbInstanceClass("db.t3.medium") // Updated to a supported class
                .engineVersion("8.0.32")         // Updated to a supported version
```

```
                .storageType("gp2")             // Changed to General Purpose SSD
(gp2)
                .masterUsername(userName)
                .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
                .build();

            CreateDbInstanceResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBInstance(instanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status is " +
response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Waits until the database instance is available.
    public static void waitForInstanceReady(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        boolean instanceReady = false;
        String instanceReadyStr;
        System.out.println("Waiting for instance to become available.");
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesRequest instanceRequest =
DescribeDbInstancesRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            // Loop until the cluster is ready.
            while (!instanceReady) {
                DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances(instanceRequest);
                List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
                for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus();
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available"))
                        instanceReady = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.print(".");
                        Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
            System.out.println("Database instance is available!");

        } catch (RdsException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void createDBParameterGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbGroupName, String dbParameterGroupFamily) {
        try {
            CreateDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
CreateDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .dbParameterGroupFamily(dbParameterGroupFamily)
                    .description("Created by using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The group name is " +
response.dbParameterGroup().dbParameterGroupName());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Create an Amazon RDS snapshot.
   public static void createSnapshot(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier, String dbSnapshotIdentifier) {
       try {
           CreateDbSnapshotRequest snapshotRequest =
CreateDbSnapshotRequest.builder()
                   .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                   .dbSnapshotIdentifier(dbSnapshotIdentifier)
                   .build();

           CreateDbSnapshotResponse response =
rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(snapshotRequest);
           System.out.println("The Snapshot id is " +
response.dbSnapshot().dbiResourceId());

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DeleteDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteDBInstance {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier>\s

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteDatabaseInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteDatabaseInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            DeleteDbInstanceRequest deleteDbInstanceRequest =
 DeleteDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .deleteAutomatedBackups(true)
                    .skipFinalSnapshot(true)
                    .build();

            DeleteDbInstanceResponse response =
 rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The status of the database is " +
 response.dbInstance().dbInstanceStatus());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Delete the parameter group after database has been deleted.
   // An exception is thrown if you attempt to delete the para group while database
   // exists.
   public static void deleteParaGroup(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName,
String dbARN)
           throws InterruptedException {
       try {
           boolean isDataDel = false;
           boolean didFind;
           String instanceARN;

           // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
           while (!isDataDel) {
               DescribeDbInstancesResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
               List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
               int listSize = instanceList.size();
               didFind = false;
               int index = 1;
               for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                   instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn();
                   if (instanceARN.compareTo(dbARN) == 0) {
                       System.out.println(dbARN + " still exists");
                       didFind = true;
                   }
                   if ((index == listSize) && (!didFind)) {
                       // Went through the entire list and did not find the
database ARN.
                       isDataDel = true;
                   }
                   Thread.sleep(sleepTime * 1000);
                   index++;
               }
           }
```

```
            // Delete the para group.
            DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest parameterGroupRequest =
 DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .build();

            rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(parameterGroupRequest);
            System.out.println(dbGroupName + " was deleted.");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAccountAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAccountAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.AccountQuota;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeAccountAttributesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
```

```
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeAccountAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        getAccountAttributes(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getAccountAttributes(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeAccountAttributesResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeAccountAttributes();
            List<AccountQuota> quotasList = response.accountQuotas();
            for (AccountQuota quotas : quotasList) {
                System.out.println("Name is: " + quotas.accountQuotaName());
                System.out.println("Max value is " + quotas.max());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeDBEngines(RdsClient rdsClient) {
       try {
           DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest engineVersionsRequest =
DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest.builder()
                   .defaultOnly(true)
                   .engine("mysql")
                   .maxRecords(20)
                   .build();

           DescribeDbEngineVersionsResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest);
           List<DBEngineVersion> engines = response.dbEngineVersions();

           // Get all DBEngineVersion objects.
           for (DBEngineVersion engineOb : engines) {
               System.out.println("The name of the DB parameter group family for
the database engine is "
                       + engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily());
               System.out.println("The name of the database engine " +
engineOb.engine());
               System.out.println("The version number of the database engine " +
engineOb.engineVersion());
           }

       } catch (RdsException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

DescribeDBInstances

The following code example shows how to use DescribeDBInstances.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DescribeDbInstancesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.DBInstance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeDBInstances {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        describeInstances(rdsClient);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void describeInstances(RdsClient rdsClient) {
        try {
            DescribeDbInstancesResponse response = rdsClient.describeDBInstances();
            List<DBInstance> instanceList = response.dbInstances();
```

```
            for (DBInstance instance : instanceList) {
                System.out.println("Instance ARN is: " + instance.dbInstanceArn());
                System.out.println("The Engine is " + instance.engine());
                System.out.println("Connection endpoint is" +
 instance.endpoint().address());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeDbParameterGroups(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbGroupName) {
        try {
            DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest groupsRequest =
 DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .maxRecords(20)
                    .build();

            DescribeDbParameterGroupsResponse response =
 rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(groupsRequest);
            List<DBParameterGroup> groups = response.dbParameterGroups();
            for (DBParameterGroup group : groups) {
```

```
                System.out.println("The group name is " +
group.dbParameterGroupName());
                System.out.println("The group description is " +
group.description());
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Retrieve parameters in the group.
    public static void describeDbParameters(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName,
int flag) {
        try {
            DescribeDbParametersRequest dbParameterGroupsRequest;
            if (flag == 0) {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                        .build();
            } else {
                dbParameterGroupsRequest = DescribeDbParametersRequest.builder()
                        .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                        .source("user")
                        .build();
            }
```

```
            DescribeDbParametersResponse response =
rdsClient.describeDBParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest);
            List<Parameter> dbParameters = response.parameters();
            String paraName;
            for (Parameter para : dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
                // auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName();
                if ((paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0)
                        || (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0)) {
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter name is  " + paraName);
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is  " +
para.parameterValue());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is " +
para.dataType());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is " +
para.description());
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is " +
para.allowedValues());
                }
            }

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GenerateRDSAuthToken`

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateRDSAuthToken`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the RdsUtilities class to generate an authentication token.

```
public class GenerateRDSAuthToken {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier> <masterUsername>

                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\s
                    masterUsername - The master user name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        String masterUsername = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String token = getAuthToken(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier,
 masterUsername);
        System.out.println("The token response is " + token);
    }

    public static String getAuthToken(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier, String masterUsername) {

        RdsUtilities utilities = rdsClient.utilities();
        try {
            GenerateAuthenticationTokenRequest tokenRequest =
 GenerateAuthenticationTokenRequest.builder()
                    .credentialsProvider(ProfileCredentialsProvider.create())
                    .username(masterUsername)
                    .port(3306)
                    .hostname(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();
```

```
            return utilities.generateAuthenticationToken(tokenRequest);

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateRDSAuthToken in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ModifyDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.ModifyDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ModifyDBInstance {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbSnapshotIdentifier>\s
                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.\s
                    masterUserPassword - The updated password that corresponds to
the master user name.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        String masterUserPassword = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        updateIntance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier, masterUserPassword);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void updateIntance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
dbInstanceIdentifier, String masterUserPassword) {
        try {
            // For a demo - modify the DB instance by modifying the master password.
            ModifyDbInstanceRequest modifyDbInstanceRequest =
ModifyDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .publiclyAccessible(true)
                    .masterUserPassword(masterUserPassword)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbInstanceResponse instanceResponse =
rdsClient.modifyDBInstance(modifyDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The ARN of the modified database is: " +
instanceResponse.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn());

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ModifyDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Modify auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters.
    public static void modifyDBParas(RdsClient rdsClient, String dbGroupName) {
        try {
            Parameter parameter1 = Parameter.builder()
                    .parameterName("auto_increment_offset")
                    .applyMethod("immediate")
                    .parameterValue("5")
                    .build();

            List<Parameter> paraList = new ArrayList<>();
            paraList.add(parameter1);
            ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest groupRequest =
ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest.builder()
                    .dbParameterGroupName(dbGroupName)
                    .parameters(paraList)
                    .build();

            ModifyDbParameterGroupResponse response =
rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(groupRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter group " +
response.dbParameterGroupName() + " was successfully modified");
```

```
        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RebootDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootDBInstance`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.RdsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RebootDbInstanceRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RebootDbInstanceResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rds.model.RdsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class RebootDBInstance {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <dbInstanceIdentifier>\s
```

```
                Where:
                    dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String dbInstanceIdentifier = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RdsClient rdsClient = RdsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        rebootInstance(rdsClient, dbInstanceIdentifier);
        rdsClient.close();
    }

    public static void rebootInstance(RdsClient rdsClient, String
 dbInstanceIdentifier) {
        try {
            RebootDbInstanceRequest rebootDbInstanceRequest =
 RebootDbInstanceRequest.builder()
                    .dbInstanceIdentifier(dbInstanceIdentifier)
                    .build();

            RebootDbInstanceResponse instanceResponse =
 rdsClient.rebootDBInstance(rebootDbInstanceRequest);
            System.out.print("The database " +
 instanceResponse.dbInstance().dbInstanceArn() + " was rebooted");

        } catch (RdsException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RebootDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Java.

```
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.RdsDataClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.ExecuteStatementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rdsdata.model.Field;

import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;

public class RdsLambdaHandler implements RequestHandler<APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent,
 APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent> {

    @Override
    public APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent handleRequest(APIGatewayProxyRequestEvent
 event, Context context) {
        APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent response = new APIGatewayProxyResponseEvent();

        try {
            // Obtain auth token
            String token = createAuthToken();

            // Define connection configuration
            String connectionString = String.format("jdbc:mysql://%s:%s/%s?
useSSL=true&requireSSL=true",
                    System.getenv("ProxyHostName"),
                    System.getenv("Port"),
                    System.getenv("DBName"));

            // Establish a connection to the database
            try (Connection connection =
 DriverManager.getConnection(connectionString, System.getenv("DBUserName"), token);
                 PreparedStatement statement = connection.prepareStatement("SELECT ?
 + ? AS sum")) {

                statement.setInt(1, 3);
```

```
                statement.setInt(2, 2);

                try (ResultSet resultSet = statement.executeQuery()) {
                    if (resultSet.next()) {
                        int sum = resultSet.getInt("sum");
                        response.setStatusCode(200);
                        response.setBody("The selected sum is: " + sum);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (Exception e) {
            response.setStatusCode(500);
            response.setBody("Error: " + e.getMessage());
        }

        return response;
    }

    private String createAuthToken() {
        // Create RDS Data Service client
        RdsDataClient rdsDataClient = RdsDataClient.builder()
                .region(Region.of(System.getenv("AWS_REGION")))
                .credentialsProvider(DefaultCredentialsProvider.create())
                .build();

        // Define authentication request
        ExecuteStatementRequest request = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                .resourceArn(System.getenv("ProxyHostName"))
                .secretArn(System.getenv("DBUserName"))
                .database(System.getenv("DBName"))
                .sql("SELECT 'RDS IAM Authentication'")
                .build();

        // Execute request and obtain authentication token
        ExecuteStatementResponse response = rdsDataClient.executeStatement(request);
        Field tokenField = response.records().get(0).get(0);

        return tokenField.stringValue();
    }
}
```

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Redshift.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Redshift

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Redshift.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.RedshiftClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.paginators.DescribeClustersIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloRedshift {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RedshiftClient redshiftClient = RedshiftClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listClustersPaginator(redshiftClient);
    }

    public static void listClustersPaginator(RedshiftClient redshiftClient) {
        DescribeClustersIterable clustersIterable =
 redshiftClient.describeClustersPaginator();
        clustersIterable.stream()
            .flatMap(r -> r.clusters().stream())
            .forEach(cluster -> System.out
                .println(" Cluster identifier: " + cluster.clusterIdentifier() + "
 status = " + cluster.clusterStatus()));
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a Redshift cluster.
- List databases in the cluster.
- Create a table named Movies.
- Populate the Movies table.
- Query the Movies table by year.

- Modify the Redshift cluster.
- Delete the Amazon Redshift cluster.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon Redshift features.

```
import com.example.redshift.User;
import com.google.gson.Gson;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.ClusterAlreadyExistsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.CreateClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.DeleteClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.ModifyClusterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshift.model.RedshiftException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshiftdata.model.ExecuteStatementResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.redshiftdata.model.RedshiftDataException;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 *
 *  This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the
```

```
 *  database credentials. If you do not create a
 *  secret that specifies user name and password, this example will not work. For
 details, see:
 *
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html
 *
 This Java example performs these tasks:
 *
 * 1. Prompts the user for a unique cluster ID or use the default value.
 * 2. Creates a Redshift cluster with the specified or default cluster Id value.
 * 3. Waits until the Redshift cluster is available for use.
 * 4. Lists all databases using a pagination API call.
 * 5. Creates a table named "Movies" with fields ID, title, and year.
 * 6. Inserts a specified number of records into the "Movies" table by reading the
 Movies JSON file.
 * 7. Prompts the user for a movie release year.
 * 8. Runs a SQL query to retrieve movies released in the specified year.
 * 9. Modifies the Redshift cluster.
 * 10. Prompts the user for confirmation to delete the Redshift cluster.
 * 11. If confirmed, deletes the specified Redshift cluster.
 */

public class RedshiftScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(RedshiftScenario.class);

    static RedshiftActions redshiftActions = new RedshiftActions();
    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <jsonFilePath> <secretName>\s

            Where:
                jsonFilePath - The path to the Movies JSON file (you can locate that
 file in ../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json)
                secretName - The name of the secret that belongs to Secret Manager
 that stores the user name and password used in this scenario.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            logger.info(usage);
```

```
            return;
        }

        String jsonFilePath = args[0];
        String secretName = args[1];
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon Redshift SDK Basics scenario.");
        logger.info("""
            This Java program demonstrates how to interact with Amazon Redshift by
 using the AWS SDK for Java (v2).\s
            Amazon Redshift is a fully managed, petabyte-scale data warehouse
 service hosted in the cloud.

            The program's primary functionalities include cluster creation,
 verification of cluster readiness,\s
            list databases, table creation, data population within the table, and
 execution of SQL statements.
            Furthermore, it demonstrates the process of querying data from the Movie
 table.\s

            Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
            """);

        logger.info("Lets get started...");
        logger.info("""
            First, we will retrieve the user name and password from Secrets Manager.

            Using Amazon Secrets Manager to store Redshift credentials provides
 several security benefits.
            It allows you to securely store and manage sensitive information, such
 as passwords, API keys, and
            database credentials, without embedding them directly in your
 application code.

            More information can be found here:

            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/
integrating_how-services-use-secrets_RS.html
            """);
        Gson gson = new Gson();
        User user = gson.fromJson(String.valueOf(getSecretValues(secretName)),
 User.class);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);

        try {
            runScenario(user, scanner, jsonFilePath);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (Throwable e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario(User user, Scanner scanner,  String
jsonFilePath) throws Throwable {
        String databaseName = "dev";
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        logger.info("Create a Redshift Cluster");
        logger.info("A Redshift cluster refers to the collection of computing
resources and storage that work together to process and analyze large volumes of
data.");
        logger.info("Enter a cluster id value or accept the default by hitting Enter
(default is redshift-cluster-movies): ");
        String userClusterId = scanner.nextLine();
        String clusterId = userClusterId.isEmpty() ? "redshift-cluster-movies" :
userClusterId;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<CreateClusterResponse> future =
redshiftActions.createClusterAsync(clusterId, user.getUserName(),
user.getUserPassword());
            CreateClusterResponse response = future.join();
            logger.info("Cluster successfully created. Cluster Identifier {} ",
response.cluster().clusterIdentifier());

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof ClusterAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.info("The Cluster {} already exists. Moving on...",
clusterId);
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info("Wait until {} is available.", clusterId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
 redshiftActions.waitForClusterReadyAsync(clusterId);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Cluster is ready!");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code
 {}", redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        String databaseInfo = """
            When you created $clusteridD, the dev database is created by default and
 used in this scenario.\s

            To create a custom database, you need to have a CREATEDB privilege.\s
            For more information, see the documentation here: https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/redshift/latest/dg/r_CREATE_DATABASE.html.
           """.replace("$clusteridD", clusterId);

        logger.info(databaseInfo);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("List databases in {} ",clusterId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
 redshiftActions.listAllDatabasesAsync(clusterId, user.getUserName(), "dev");
            future.join();
            logger.info("Databases listed successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.error("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Now you will create a table named Movies.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ExecuteStatementResponse> future =
redshiftActions.createTableAsync(clusterId, databaseName, user.getUserName());
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Populate the Movies table using the Movies.json file.");
        logger.info("Specify the number of records you would like to add to the
Movies Table.");
        logger.info("Please enter a value between 50 and 200.");
        int numRecords;
        do {
            logger.info("Enter a value: ");
            while (!scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please enter a value between 50 and
200.");
                logger.info("Enter a year: ");
                scanner.next();
```

```
            }
            numRecords = scanner.nextInt();
        } while (numRecords < 50 || numRecords > 200);
        try {
            redshiftActions.popTableAsync(clusterId, databaseName,
user.getUserName(), jsonFilePath, numRecords).join();  // Wait for the operation to
complete
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Query the Movies table by year. Enter a value between
2012-2014.");
        int movieYear;
        do {
            logger.info("Enter a year: ");
            while (!scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please enter a valid year between 2012
and 2014.");
                logger.info("Enter a year: ");
                scanner.next();
            }
            movieYear = scanner.nextInt();
            scanner.nextLine();
        } while (movieYear < 2012 || movieYear > 2014);

        String id;
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
redshiftActions.queryMoviesByYearAsync(databaseName, user.getUserName(), movieYear,
clusterId);
            id = future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
```

```
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }

        logger.info("The identifier of the statement is " + id);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
redshiftActions.checkStatementAsync(id);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = redshiftActions.getResultsAsync(id);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Now you will modify the Redshift cluster.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<ModifyClusterResponse> future =
redshiftActions.modifyClusterAsync(clusterId);;
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}", rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Would you like to delete the Amazon Redshift cluster? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("You selected to delete {} ", clusterId);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                CompletableFuture<DeleteClusterResponse> future =
redshiftActions.deleteRedshiftClusterAsync(clusterId);;
                future.join();

            } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
                Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof RedshiftDataException redshiftEx) {
                    logger.info("Redshift Data error occurred: {} Error code: {}",
redshiftEx.getMessage(), redshiftEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                } else {
                    logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
rt.getMessage());
                }
                throw cause;
            }
```

```
        } else {
            logger.info("The {}  was not deleted", clusterId);
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("This concludes the Amazon Redshift SDK Basics scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static SecretsManagerClient getSecretClient() {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        return SecretsManagerClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }

    // Get the Amazon Redshift credentials from AWS Secrets Manager.
    private static String getSecretValues(String secretName) {
        SecretsManagerClient secretClient = getSecretClient();
        GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
            .secretId(secretName)
            .build();

        GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
secretClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
        return valueResponse.secretString();
```

```
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon Redshift SDK methods.

```
public class RedshiftActions {

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(RedshiftActions.class);
    private static RedshiftDataAsyncClient redshiftDataAsyncClient;

    private static RedshiftAsyncClient redshiftAsyncClient;

    private static RedshiftAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (redshiftAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            redshiftAsyncClient = RedshiftAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return redshiftAsyncClient;
    }

    private static RedshiftDataAsyncClient getAsyncDataClient() {
        if (redshiftDataAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
```

```
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            redshiftDataAsyncClient = RedshiftDataAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return redshiftDataAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     * @param clusterId     the unique identifier for the cluster
     * @param username      the username for the administrative user
     * @param userPassword  the password for the administrative user
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the cluster
     * @throws RuntimeException if the cluster creation fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateClusterResponse> createClusterAsync(String
clusterId, String username, String userPassword) {
        CreateClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .masterUsername(username)
            .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
            .nodeType("ra3.4xlarge")
            .publiclyAccessible(true)
            .numberOfNodes(2)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createCluster(clusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Created cluster ");
                } else {
```

```
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create cluster: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Waits asynchronously for the specified cluster to become available.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to wait for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster is ready
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForClusterReadyAsync(String clusterId) {
        DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest = DescribeClustersRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Waiting for cluster to become available. This may take a few
minutes.");
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

        // Recursive method to poll the cluster status.
        return checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime);
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Void> checkClusterStatusAsync(DescribeClustersRequest
clustersRequest, long startTime) {
        return getAsyncClient().describeClusters(clustersRequest)
            .thenCompose(clusterResponse -> {
                List<Cluster> clusterList = clusterResponse.clusters();
                boolean clusterReady = false;
                for (Cluster cluster : clusterList) {
                    if ("available".equals(cluster.clusterStatus())) {
                        clusterReady = true;
                        break;
                    }
                }

                if (clusterReady) {
                    logger.info(String.format("Cluster is available!"));
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                } else {
                    long elapsedTimeMillis = System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime;
                    long elapsedSeconds = elapsedTimeMillis / 1000;
                    long minutes = elapsedSeconds / 60;
```

```
                    long seconds = elapsedSeconds % 60;
                    System.out.printf("\rElapsed Time: %02d:%02d - Waiting for
cluster...", minutes, seconds);
                    System.out.flush();

                    // Wait 1 second before the next status check
                    return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                        try {
                            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                            throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignored ->
checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime));
                }
            }).exceptionally(exception -> {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get cluster status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Lists all databases asynchronously for the specified cluster, database user,
and database.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to list databases for
     * @param dbUser the database user to use for the list databases request
     * @param database the database to list databases for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the database listing
is complete, or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if there was an error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllDatabasesAsync(String clusterId, String
dbUser, String database) {
        ListDatabasesRequest databasesRequest = ListDatabasesRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .dbUser(dbUser)
            .database(database)
            .build();

        // Asynchronous paginator for listing databases.
        ListDatabasesPublisher databasesPaginator =
getAsyncDataClient().listDatabasesPaginator(databasesRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = databasesPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.databases().forEach(db -> {
```

```
                logger.info("The database name is {} ", db);
            });
        });

        // Return the future for asynchronous handling.
        return future.exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list databases: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
        });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous task to execute a SQL statement for creating a new
table.
     *
     * @param clusterId    the identifier of the Amazon Redshift cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database to create the table in
     * @param userName     the username to use for the database connection
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the SQL
statement execution
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error creating the table
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ExecuteStatementResponse> createTableAsync(String
clusterId, String databaseName, String userName) {
        ExecuteStatementRequest createTableRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .dbUser(userName)
            .database(databaseName)
            .sql("CREATE TABLE Movies (" +
                "id INT PRIMARY KEY, " +
                "title VARCHAR(100), " +
                "year INT)")
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(createTableRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error creating table: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                } else {
                    logger.info("Table created: Movies");
                }
            });
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously pops a table from a JSON file.
     *
     * @param clusterId   the ID of the cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database
     * @param userName    the username
     * @param fileName    the name of the JSON file
     * @param number      the number of records to process
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the number of records added
to the Movies table
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Integer> popTableAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, String fileName, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
                try {
                    JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                    JsonNode rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                    Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
                    return iter;
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse JSON file: "
+ e.getMessage(), e);
                }
            }).thenCompose(iter -> processNodesAsync(clusterId, databaseName,
userName, iter, number))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} records were added to the Movies table." ,
result);
                }
            });
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Integer> processNodesAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, Iterator<JsonNode> iter, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            int t = 0;
            try {
                while (iter.hasNext()) {
```

```
                    if (t == number)
                        break;
                    JsonNode currentNode = iter.next();
                    int year = currentNode.get("year").asInt();
                    String title = currentNode.get("title").asText();

                    // Use SqlParameter to avoid SQL injection.
                    List<SqlParameter> parameterList = new ArrayList<>();
                    String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO Movies
VALUES( :id , :title, :year);";
                    SqlParameter idParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("id")
                        .value(String.valueOf(t))
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter titleParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("title")
                        .value(title)
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("year")
                        .value(String.valueOf(year))
                        .build();
                    parameterList.add(idParam);
                    parameterList.add(titleParam);
                    parameterList.add(yearParam);

                    ExecuteStatementRequest insertStatementRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                        .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                        .sql(sqlStatement)
                        .database(databaseName)
                        .dbUser(userName)
                        .parameters(parameterList)
                        .build();

                    getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(insertStatementRequest);
                    logger.info("Inserted: " + title + " (" + year + ")");
                    t++;
                }
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error inserting data: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
```

```
            }
            return t;
        });
    }

    /**
     * Checks the status of an SQL statement asynchronously and handles the
completion of the statement.
     *
     * @param sqlId the ID of the SQL statement to check
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the SQL statement's
status is either "FINISHED" or "FAILED"
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> checkStatementAsync(String sqlId) {
        DescribeStatementRequest statementRequest =
DescribeStatementRequest.builder()
            .id(sqlId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().describeStatement(statementRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                String status = response.statusAsString();
                logger.info("... Status: {} ", status);

                if ("FAILED".equals(status)) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("The Query Failed. Ending program");
                } else if ("FINISHED".equals(status)) {
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
                } else {
                    // Sleep for 1 second and recheck status
                    return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                        try {
                            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                            throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignore -> checkStatementAsync(sqlId)); //
Recursively call until status is FINISHED or FAILED
                }
            }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle exceptions
                    logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
```

```
                } else {
                    logger.info("The statement is finished!");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the results of a statement execution.
     *
     * @param statementId the ID of the statement for which to retrieve the results
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the statement result
has been processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getResultsAsync(String statementId) {
        GetStatementResultRequest resultRequest =
GetStatementResultRequest.builder()
            .id(statementId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().getStatementResult(resultRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error getting statement result {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error getting statement result: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }

                // Extract and print the field values using streams if the response
is valid.
                response.records().stream()
                    .flatMap(List::stream)
                    .map(Field::stringValue)
                    .filter(value -> value != null)
                    .forEach(value -> System.out.println("The Movie title field is "
+ value));

                return response;
            }).thenAccept(response -> {
                // Optionally add more logic here if needed after handling the
response
            });
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously queries movies by a given year from a Redshift database.
    *
    * @param database    the name of the database to query
    * @param dbUser      the user to connect to the database with
    * @param year        the year to filter the movies by
    * @param clusterId   the identifier of the Redshift cluster to connect to
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the response ID of the
executed SQL statement
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> queryMoviesByYearAsync(String database,
                                                           String dbUser,
                                                           int year,
                                                           String clusterId)
{

       String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM Movies WHERE year = :year";
       SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
           .name("year")
           .value(String.valueOf(year))
           .build();

       ExecuteStatementRequest statementRequest = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .database(database)
           .dbUser(dbUser)
           .parameters(yearParam)
           .sql(sqlStatement)
           .build();

       return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
           try {
               ExecuteStatementResponse response =
getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(statementRequest).join(); // Use join() to
wait for the result
               return response.id();
           } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Error executing statement: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
           }
       }).exceptionally(exception -> {
           logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
           return "";
```

```
        });
    }

    /**
     * Modifies an Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to be modified
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster
modification is complete
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ModifyClusterResponse> modifyClusterAsync(String
clusterId) {
        ModifyClusterRequest modifyClusterRequest = ModifyClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .preferredMaintenanceWindow("wed:07:30-wed:08:00")
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().modifyCluster(modifyClusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((clusterResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                        logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Unexpected error: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.info("The modified cluster was successfully modified and
has "
                        + clusterResponse.cluster().preferredMaintenanceWindow() + "
as the maintenance window");
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the Redshift cluster to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of deleting the Redshift cluster
     */
    public CompletableFuture<DeleteClusterResponse>
deleteRedshiftClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
```

```
        DeleteClusterRequest deleteClusterRequest = DeleteClusterRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .skipFinalClusterSnapshot(true)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().deleteCluster(deleteClusterRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle exceptions
                    if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                        logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Unexpected error: {}", exception.getMessage());
                    }
                } else {
                    // Handle successful response
                    logger.info("The status is {}",
 response.cluster().clusterStatus());
                }
            });
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateCluster
  - DescribeClusters
  - DescribeStatement
  - ExecuteStatement
  - GetStatementResult
  - ListDatabasesPaginator
  - ModifyCluster

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the cluster.

```
   /**
    * Creates a new Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
    * @param clusterId     the unique identifier for the cluster
    * @param username      the username for the administrative user
    * @param userPassword  the password for the administrative user
    * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous operation of
creating the cluster
    * @throws RuntimeException if the cluster creation fails
    */
   public CompletableFuture<CreateClusterResponse> createClusterAsync(String
clusterId, String username, String userPassword) {
       CreateClusterRequest clusterRequest = CreateClusterRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .masterUsername(username)
           .masterUserPassword(userPassword)
           .nodeType("ra3.4xlarge")
           .publiclyAccessible(true)
           .numberOfNodes(2)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().createCluster(clusterRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (response != null) {
                   logger.info("Created cluster ");
               } else {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create cluster: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the cluster.

```
   /**
    * Deletes a Redshift cluster asynchronously.
    *
    * @param clusterId the identifier of the Redshift cluster to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation of deleting the Redshift cluster
    */
   public CompletableFuture<DeleteClusterResponse>
deleteRedshiftClusterAsync(String clusterId) {
       DeleteClusterRequest deleteClusterRequest = DeleteClusterRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .skipFinalClusterSnapshot(true)
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().deleteCluster(deleteClusterRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   // Handle exceptions
                   if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                       logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
                   } else {
                       logger.info("Unexpected error: {}", exception.getMessage());
                   }
               } else {
                   // Handle successful response
```

```
                    logger.info("The status is {}",
response.cluster().clusterStatus());
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Describe the cluster.

```
    /**
     * Waits asynchronously for the specified cluster to become available.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to wait for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster is ready
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> waitForClusterReadyAsync(String clusterId) {
        DescribeClustersRequest clustersRequest = DescribeClustersRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .build();

        logger.info("Waiting for cluster to become available. This may take a few
minutes.");
        long startTime = System.currentTimeMillis();

        // Recursive method to poll the cluster status.
        return checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime);
    }
```

```
   private CompletableFuture<Void> checkClusterStatusAsync(DescribeClustersRequest
clustersRequest, long startTime) {
       return getAsyncClient().describeClusters(clustersRequest)
           .thenCompose(clusterResponse -> {
               List<Cluster> clusterList = clusterResponse.clusters();
               boolean clusterReady = false;
               for (Cluster cluster : clusterList) {
                   if ("available".equals(cluster.clusterStatus())) {
                       clusterReady = true;
                       break;
                   }
               }

               if (clusterReady) {
                   logger.info(String.format("Cluster is available!"));
                   return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
               } else {
                   long elapsedTimeMillis = System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime;
                   long elapsedSeconds = elapsedTimeMillis / 1000;
                   long minutes = elapsedSeconds / 60;
                   long seconds = elapsedSeconds % 60;
                   System.out.printf("\rElapsed Time: %02d:%02d - Waiting for
cluster...", minutes, seconds);
                   System.out.flush();

                   // Wait 1 second before the next status check
                   return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                       try {
                           TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                       } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                           throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
                       }
                   }).thenCompose(ignored ->
checkClusterStatusAsync(clustersRequest, startTime));
               }
           }).exceptionally(exception -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get cluster status: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStatement`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Checks the status of an SQL statement asynchronously and handles the
completion of the statement.
    *
    * @param sqlId the ID of the SQL statement to check
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the SQL statement's
status is either "FINISHED" or "FAILED"
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> checkStatementAsync(String sqlId) {
       DescribeStatementRequest statementRequest =
DescribeStatementRequest.builder()
           .id(sqlId)
           .build();

       return getAsyncDataClient().describeStatement(statementRequest)
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               String status = response.statusAsString();
               logger.info("... Status: {} ", status);

               if ("FAILED".equals(status)) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("The Query Failed. Ending program");
               } else if ("FINISHED".equals(status)) {
                   return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
               } else {
                   // Sleep for 1 second and recheck status
                   return CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
                       try {
                           TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(1);
                       } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                           throw new RuntimeException("Error during sleep: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
```

```
                        }
                    }).thenCompose(ignore -> checkStatementAsync(sqlId)); //
Recursively call until status is FINISHED or FAILED
                }
            }).whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle exceptions
                    logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("The statement is finished!");
                }
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Executes a SQL statement to create a database table.

```
    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous task to execute a SQL statement for creating a new
table.
     *
     * @param clusterId    the identifier of the Amazon Redshift cluster
     * @param databaseName the name of the database to create the table in
     * @param userName     the username to use for the database connection
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the result of the SQL
statement execution
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error creating the table
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<ExecuteStatementResponse> createTableAsync(String
clusterId, String databaseName, String userName) {
       ExecuteStatementRequest createTableRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .dbUser(userName)
           .database(databaseName)
           .sql("CREATE TABLE Movies (" +
               "id INT PRIMARY KEY, " +
               "title VARCHAR(100), " +
               "year INT)")
           .build();

       return getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(createTableRequest)
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   throw new RuntimeException("Error creating table: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
               } else {
                   logger.info("Table created: Movies");
               }
           });
   }
```

Executes a SQL statement to insert data into a database table.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously pops a table from a JSON file.
    *
    * @param clusterId   the ID of the cluster
    * @param databaseName the name of the database
    * @param userName    the username
    * @param fileName    the name of the JSON file
    * @param number      the number of records to process
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes with the number of records added
to the Movies table
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Integer> popTableAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, String fileName, int number) {
       return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
               try {
```

```
                    JsonParser parser = new JsonFactory().createParser(new
File(fileName));
                    JsonNode rootNode = new ObjectMapper().readTree(parser);
                    Iterator<JsonNode> iter = rootNode.iterator();
                    return iter;
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException("Failed to read or parse JSON file: "
+ e.getMessage(), e);
                }
            }).thenCompose(iter -> processNodesAsync(clusterId, databaseName,
userName, iter, number))
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error {} ", exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    logger.info("{} records were added to the Movies table." ,
result);
                }
            });
    }

    private CompletableFuture<Integer> processNodesAsync(String clusterId, String
databaseName, String userName, Iterator<JsonNode> iter, int number) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            int t = 0;
            try {
                while (iter.hasNext()) {
                    if (t == number)
                        break;
                    JsonNode currentNode = iter.next();
                    int year = currentNode.get("year").asInt();
                    String title = currentNode.get("title").asText();

                    // Use SqlParameter to avoid SQL injection.
                    List<SqlParameter> parameterList = new ArrayList<>();
                    String sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO Movies
VALUES( :id , :title, :year);";
                    SqlParameter idParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("id")
                        .value(String.valueOf(t))
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter titleParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("title")
```

```
                        .value(title)
                        .build();

                    SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
                        .name("year")
                        .value(String.valueOf(year))
                        .build();
                    parameterList.add(idParam);
                    parameterList.add(titleParam);
                    parameterList.add(yearParam);

                    ExecuteStatementRequest insertStatementRequest =
ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
                        .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
                        .sql(sqlStatement)
                        .database(databaseName)
                        .dbUser(userName)
                        .parameters(parameterList)
                        .build();

                    getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(insertStatementRequest);
                    logger.info("Inserted: " + title + " (" + year + ")");
                    t++;
                }
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error inserting data: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
            }
            return t;
        });
    }
```

Executes a SQL statement to query a database table.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously queries movies by a given year from a Redshift database.
     *
     * @param database    the name of the database to query
     * @param dbUser      the user to connect to the database with
     * @param year        the year to filter the movies by
     * @param clusterId   the identifier of the Redshift cluster to connect to
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} containing the response ID of the
executed SQL statement
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> queryMoviesByYearAsync(String database,
                                                            String dbUser,
                                                            int year,
                                                            String clusterId)
{

        String sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM Movies WHERE year = :year";
        SqlParameter yearParam = SqlParameter.builder()
            .name("year")
            .value(String.valueOf(year))
            .build();

        ExecuteStatementRequest statementRequest = ExecuteStatementRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .database(database)
            .dbUser(dbUser)
            .parameters(yearParam)
            .sql(sqlStatement)
            .build();

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            try {
                ExecuteStatementResponse response =
getAsyncDataClient().executeStatement(statementRequest).join(); // Use join() to
wait for the result
                return response.id();
            } catch (RedshiftDataException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Error executing statement: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
            }
        }).exceptionally(exception -> {
            logger.info("Error: {}", exception.getMessage());
            return "";
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetStatementResult

The following code example shows how to use GetStatementResult.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Check the statement result.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the results of a statement execution.
     *
     * @param statementId the ID of the statement for which to retrieve the results
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the statement result
has been processed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getResultsAsync(String statementId) {
        GetStatementResultRequest resultRequest =
GetStatementResultRequest.builder()
            .id(statementId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncDataClient().getStatementResult(resultRequest)
            .handle((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    logger.info("Error getting statement result {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error getting statement result: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }

                // Extract and print the field values using streams if the response
is valid.
                response.records().stream()
                    .flatMap(List::stream)
                    .map(Field::stringValue)
                    .filter(value -> value != null)
```

```
                    .forEach(value -> System.out.println("The Movie title field is "
+ value));

                return response;
            }).thenAccept(response -> {
                // Optionally add more logic here if needed after handling the
response
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetStatementResult in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDatabases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatabases`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Lists all databases asynchronously for the specified cluster, database user,
and database.
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to list databases for
     * @param dbUser the database user to use for the list databases request
     * @param database the database to list databases for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the database listing
is complete, or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if there was an error
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllDatabasesAsync(String clusterId, String
dbUser, String database) {
        ListDatabasesRequest databasesRequest = ListDatabasesRequest.builder()
            .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
            .dbUser(dbUser)
            .database(database)
            .build();
```

```
        // Asynchronous paginator for listing databases.
        ListDatabasesPublisher databasesPaginator =
getAsyncDataClient().listDatabasesPaginator(databasesRequest);
        CompletableFuture<Void> future = databasesPaginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.databases().forEach(db -> {
                logger.info("The database name is {} ", db);
            });
        });

        // Return the future for asynchronous handling.
        return future.exceptionally(exception -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list databases: " +
exception.getMessage(), exception);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDatabases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ModifyCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyCluster`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Modify a cluster.

```
    /**
     * Modifies an Amazon Redshift cluster asynchronously.
     *
     * @param clusterId the identifier of the cluster to be modified
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the cluster
modification is complete
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<ModifyClusterResponse> modifyClusterAsync(String
clusterId) {
       ModifyClusterRequest modifyClusterRequest = ModifyClusterRequest.builder()
           .clusterIdentifier(clusterId)
           .preferredMaintenanceWindow("wed:07:30-wed:08:00")
           .build();

       return getAsyncClient().modifyCluster(modifyClusterRequest)
           .whenComplete((clusterResponse, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   if (exception.getCause() instanceof RedshiftException) {
                       logger.info("Error: {} ", exception.getMessage());
                   } else {
                       logger.info("Unexpected error: {} ",
exception.getMessage());
                   }
               } else {
                   logger.info("The modified cluster was successfully modified and
has "
                       + clusterResponse.cluster().preferredMaintenanceWindow() + "
as the maintenance window");
               }
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a web application to track Amazon Redshift data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items using an Amazon Redshift database.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Rekognition.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CompareFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `CompareFaces`.

For more information, see Comparing faces in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CompareFaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <bucketName> <sourceKey> <targetKey>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the images are stored.
                sourceKey  - The S3 key (file name) for the source image.
                targetKey  - The S3 key (file name) for the target image.
           """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceKey = args[1];
        String targetKey = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        compareTwoFaces(rekClient, bucketName, sourceKey, targetKey);
     }
```

```
   /**
    * Compares two faces from images stored in an Amazon S3 bucket using AWS
Rekognition.
    *
    * <p>This method takes two image keys from an S3 bucket and compares the faces
within them.
    * It prints out the confidence level of matched faces and reports the number of
unmatched faces.</p>
    *
    * @param rekClient   The {@link RekognitionClient} used to call AWS
Rekognition.
    * @param bucketName  The name of the S3 bucket containing the images.
    * @param sourceKey   The object key (file path) for the source image in the S3
bucket.
    * @param targetKey   The object key (file path) for the target image in the S3
bucket.
    * @throws RuntimeException If the Rekognition service returns an error.
    */
   public static void compareTwoFaces(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
bucketName, String sourceKey, String targetKey) {
       try {
           Float similarityThreshold = 70F;
           S3Object s3ObjectSource = S3Object.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .name(sourceKey)
                   .build();

           Image sourceImage = Image.builder()
                   .s3Object(s3ObjectSource)
                   .build();

           S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .name(targetKey)
                   .build();

           Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                   .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                   .build();

           CompareFacesRequest facesRequest = CompareFacesRequest.builder()
                   .sourceImage(sourceImage)
                   .targetImage(targetImage)
```

```
                    .similarityThreshold(similarityThreshold)
                    .build();

            // Compare the two images.
            CompareFacesResponse compareFacesResult =
 rekClient.compareFaces(facesRequest);
            List<CompareFacesMatch> faceDetails = compareFacesResult.faceMatches();

            for (CompareFacesMatch match : faceDetails) {
                ComparedFace face = match.face();
                BoundingBox position = face.boundingBox();
                System.out.println("Face at " + position.left().toString()
                        + " " + position.top()
                        + " matches with " + face.confidence().toString()
                        + "% confidence.");
            }

            List<ComparedFace> unmatchedFaces = compareFacesResult.unmatchedFaces();
            System.out.println("There were " + unmatchedFaces.size() + " face(s)
 that did not match.");

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.err.println("Error comparing faces: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCollection`.

For more information, see Creating a collection.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CreateCollectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CreateCollectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage: <collectionName>\s

            Where:
                collectionName - The name of the collection.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        System.out.println("Creating collection: " + collectionId);
        createMyCollection(rekClient, collectionId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient    the Amazon Rekognition client used to interact with the
 Rekognition service
     * @param collectionId the unique identifier for the collection to be created
     */
    public static void createMyCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId) {
        try {
            CreateCollectionRequest collectionRequest =
 CreateCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .build();

            CreateCollectionResponse collectionResponse =
 rekClient.createCollection(collectionRequest);
            System.out.println("CollectionArn: " +
 collectionResponse.collectionArn());
            System.out.println("Status code: " +
 collectionResponse.statusCode().toString());

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCollection`.

For more information, see Deleting a collection.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DeleteCollectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DeleteCollectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <collectionId>\s

            Where:
                collectionId - The id of the collection to delete.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        System.out.println("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);
        deleteMyCollection(rekClient, collectionId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient      An instance of the {@link RekognitionClient} class,
 which is used to interact with the Amazon Rekognition service.
     * @param collectionId   The ID of the collection to be deleted.
     */
    public static void deleteMyCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId) {
        try {
            DeleteCollectionRequest deleteCollectionRequest =
 DeleteCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .build();

            DeleteCollectionResponse deleteCollectionResponse =
 rekClient.deleteCollection(deleteCollectionRequest);
            System.out.println(collectionId + ": " +
 deleteCollectionResponse.statusCode().toString());

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFaces`.

For more information, see Deleting faces from a collection.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DeleteFacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteFacesFromCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <collectionId> <faceId>\s

            Where:
                collectionId - The id of the collection from which faces are
 deleted.\s
                faceId - The id of the face to delete.\s
           """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        String faceId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        System.out.println("Deleting collection: " + collectionId);
        deleteFacesCollection(rekClient, collectionId, faceId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes a face from the specified Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient     an instance of the Amazon Rekognition client
     * @param collectionId  the ID of the collection from which the face should be
 deleted
     * @param faceId        the ID of the face to be deleted
     * @throws RekognitionException if an error occurs while deleting the face
     */
    public static void deleteFacesCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            String collectionId,
            String faceId) {

        try {
            DeleteFacesRequest deleteFacesRequest = DeleteFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .faceIds(faceId)
                    .build();

            rekClient.deleteFaces(deleteFacesRequest);
            System.out.println("The face was deleted from the collection.");

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCollection`.

For more information, see Describing a collection.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DescribeCollectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.DescribeCollectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DescribeCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:    <collectionName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The name of the Amazon Rekognition collection.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        describeColl(rekClient, collectionName);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Describes an Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient         The Amazon Rekognition client used to make the
 request.
     * @param collectionName    The name of the collection to describe.
     *
     * @throws RekognitionException If an error occurs while describing the
 collection.
     */
    public static void describeColl(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionName) {
        try {
            DescribeCollectionRequest describeCollectionRequest =
 DescribeCollectionRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionName)
                    .build();

            DescribeCollectionResponse describeCollectionResponse = rekClient
                    .describeCollection(describeCollectionRequest);
            System.out.println("Collection Arn : " +
 describeCollectionResponse.collectionARN());
            System.out.println("Created : " +
 describeCollectionResponse.creationTimestamp().toString());

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectFaces`.

For more information, see Detecting faces in an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectFaces {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:   <bucketName> <sourceImage>

            Where:
                bucketName = The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the source image
 is stored.
                sourceImage - The name of the source image file in the Amazon S3
 bucket. (for example, pic1.png).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectFacesinImage(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects faces in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket using the Amazon
Rekognition service.
     *
     * @param rekClient    The Amazon Rekognition client used to interact with the
Rekognition service.
     * @param bucketName   The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the source image
is stored.
     * @param sourceImage  The name of the source image file in the Amazon S3
bucket.
     */
    public static void detectFacesinImage(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .name(sourceImage)
                .build();

            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                .build();

            DetectFacesRequest facesRequest = DetectFacesRequest.builder()
                .attributes(Attribute.ALL)
                .image(targetImage)
                .build();

            DetectFacesResponse facesResponse = rekClient.detectFaces(facesRequest);
```

```
            List<FaceDetail> faceDetails = facesResponse.faceDetails();
            for (FaceDetail face : faceDetails) {
                AgeRange ageRange = face.ageRange();
                System.out.println("The detected face is estimated to be between "
                        + ageRange.low().toString() + " and " +
 ageRange.high().toString()
                        + " years old.");

                System.out.println("There is a smile : " +
 face.smile().value().toString());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
```

```
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectLabels {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <bucketName> <sourceImage>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the image is
 stored
                sourceImage - The name of the image file (for example, pic1.png).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0] ;
        String sourceImage = args[1] ;
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectImageLabels(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects the labels in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket using the Amazon
 Rekognition service.
     *
```

```
     * @param rekClient     the Amazon Rekognition client used to make the detection
 request
     * @param bucketName    the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the image is
 stored
     * @param sourceImage   the name of the image file to be analyzed
     */
    public static void detectImageLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            DetectLabelsRequest detectLabelsRequest = DetectLabelsRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .maxLabels(10)
                    .build();

            DetectLabelsResponse labelsResponse =
 rekClient.detectLabels(detectLabelsRequest);
            List<Label> labels = labelsResponse.labels();
            System.out.println("Detected labels for the given photo");
            for (Label label : labels) {
                System.out.println(label.name() + ": " +
 label.confidence().toString());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectModerationLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectModerationLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting inappropriate images.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectModerationLabels {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:  <bucketName>  <sourceImage>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the images are stored.
                sourceImage - The name of the image (for example, pic1.png).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectModLabels(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects moderation labels in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param rekClient      the Amazon Rekognition client to use for the detection
     * @param bucketName     the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the image is
stored
     * @param sourceImage    the name of the image file to be analyzed
     *
     * @throws RekognitionException if there is an error during the image detection
process
     */
    public static void detectModLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            DetectModerationLabelsRequest moderationLabelsRequest =
DetectModerationLabelsRequest.builder()
                    .image(targetImage)
                    .minConfidence(60F)
                    .build();
```

```
            DetectModerationLabelsResponse moderationLabelsResponse = rekClient
                    .detectModerationLabels(moderationLabelsRequest);
            List<ModerationLabel> labels =
 moderationLabelsResponse.moderationLabels();
            System.out.println("Detected labels for image");
            for (ModerationLabel label : labels) {
                System.out.println("Label: " + label.name()
                        + "\n Confidence: " + label.confidence().toString() + "%"
                        + "\n Parent:" + label.parentName());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectText`.

For more information, see Detecting text in an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
```

```
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectText {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage:   <bucketName> <sourceImage>\n" +
            "\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "   bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the image is stored\n"
 +
            "   sourceImage - The path to the image that contains text (for example,
 pic1.png). \n";

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectTextLabels(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Detects text labels in an image stored in an S3 bucket using Amazon
 Rekognition.
     *
     * @param rekClient    an instance of the Amazon Rekognition client
     * @param bucketName   the name of the S3 bucket where the image is stored
```

```
     * @param sourceImage  the name of the image file in the S3 bucket
     * @throws RekognitionException if an error occurs while calling the Amazon
 Rekognition API
     */
    public static void detectTextLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            DetectTextRequest textRequest = DetectTextRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .build();

            DetectTextResponse textResponse = rekClient.detectText(textRequest);
            List<TextDetection> textCollection = textResponse.textDetections();
            System.out.println("Detected lines and words");
            for (TextDetection text : textCollection) {
                System.out.println("Detected: " + text.detectedText());
                System.out.println("Confidence: " + text.confidence().toString());
                System.out.println("Id : " + text.id());
                System.out.println("Parent Id: " + text.parentId());
                System.out.println("Type: " + text.type());
                System.out.println();
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`IndexFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `IndexFaces`.

For more information, see Adding faces to a collection.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class AddFacesToCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage: <collectionId> <sourceImage> <bucketName>

            Where:
                collectionName - The name of the collection.
                sourceImage - The name of the image (for example, pic1.png).
                bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket.
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String collectionId = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        String bucketName = args[2];;
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        addToCollection(rekClient, collectionId, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Adds a face from an image to an Amazon Rekognition collection.
     *
     * @param rekClient     the Amazon Rekognition client
     * @param collectionId  the ID of the collection to add the face to
     * @param bucketName    the name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the image
     * @param sourceImage   the name of the image file to add to the collection
     * @throws RekognitionException if there is an error while interacting with the
Amazon Rekognition service
     */
    public static void addToCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
collectionId, String bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(sourceImage)
                    .build();

            Image targetImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();

            IndexFacesRequest facesRequest = IndexFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .image(targetImage)
                    .maxFaces(1)
                    .qualityFilter(QualityFilter.AUTO)
                    .detectionAttributes(Attribute.DEFAULT)
                    .build();

            IndexFacesResponse facesResponse = rekClient.indexFaces(facesRequest);
            System.out.println("Results for the image");
```

```
            System.out.println("\n Faces indexed:");
            List<FaceRecord> faceRecords = facesResponse.faceRecords();
            for (FaceRecord faceRecord : faceRecords) {
                System.out.println("  Face ID: " + faceRecord.face().faceId());
                System.out.println("  Location:" +
 faceRecord.faceDetail().boundingBox().toString());
            }

            List<UnindexedFace> unindexedFaces = facesResponse.unindexedFaces();
            System.out.println("Faces not indexed:");
            for (UnindexedFace unindexedFace : unindexedFaces) {
                System.out.println("  Location:" +
 unindexedFace.faceDetail().boundingBox().toString());
                System.out.println("  Reasons:");
                for (Reason reason : unindexedFace.reasons()) {
                    System.out.println("Reason:  " + reason);
                }
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListCollections`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCollections`.

For more information, see Listing collections.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListCollectionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListCollectionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListCollections {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Listing collections");
        listAllCollections(rekClient);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void listAllCollections(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            ListCollectionsRequest listCollectionsRequest =
 ListCollectionsRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListCollectionsResponse response =
 rekClient.listCollections(listCollectionsRequest);
            List<String> collectionIds = response.collectionIds();
            for (String resultId : collectionIds) {
                System.out.println(resultId);
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFaces`.

For more information, see Listing faces in a collection.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Face;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListFacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ListFacesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListFacesInCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
```

```
                Usage:    <collectionId>

                Where:
                   collectionId - The name of the collection.\s
                """;

        if (args.length < 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Faces in collection " + collectionId);
        listFacesCollection(rekClient, collectionId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void listFacesCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId) {
        try {
            ListFacesRequest facesRequest = ListFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListFacesResponse facesResponse = rekClient.listFaces(facesRequest);
            List<Face> faces = facesResponse.faces();
            for (Face face : faces) {
                System.out.println("Confidence level there is a face: " +
 face.confidence());
                System.out.println("The face Id value is " + face.faceId());
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RecognizeCelebrities`

The following code example shows how to use `RecognizeCelebrities`.

For more information, see Recognizing celebrities in an image.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.*;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class RecognizeCelebrities {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:   <bucketName> <sourceImage>

                Where:
```

```
                    bucketName - The name of the S3 bucket where the images are
 stored.
                    sourceImage - The path to the image (for example, C:\\AWS\
\pic1.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
       }

        String bucketName = args[0];;
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Locating celebrities in " + sourceImage);
        recognizeAllCelebrities(rekClient, bucketName, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Recognizes all celebrities in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param rekClient    the Amazon Rekognition client used to perform the
 celebrity recognition operation
     * @param bucketName   the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the source image
 is stored
     * @param sourceImage  the name of the source image file stored in the Amazon S3
 bucket
     */
    public static void recognizeAllCelebrities(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 bucketName, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            S3Object s3ObjectTarget = S3Object.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .name(sourceImage)
                .build();

            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3ObjectTarget)
                    .build();
```

```
            RecognizeCelebritiesRequest request =
 RecognizeCelebritiesRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .build();

            RecognizeCelebritiesResponse result =
 rekClient.recognizeCelebrities(request);
            List<Celebrity> celebs = result.celebrityFaces();
            System.out.println(celebs.size() + " celebrity(s) were recognized.\n");
            for (Celebrity celebrity : celebs) {
                System.out.println("Celebrity recognized: " + celebrity.name());
                System.out.println("Celebrity ID: " + celebrity.id());

                System.out.println("Further information (if available):");
                for (String url : celebrity.urls()) {
                    System.out.println(url);
                }
                System.out.println();
            }
            System.out.println(result.unrecognizedFaces().size() + " face(s) were
 unrecognized.");

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SearchFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFaces`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (face ID).

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesByImageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Image;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesByImageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.FaceMatch;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SearchFaceMatchingImageCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <collectionId> <sourceImage>

                Where:
                   collectionId - The id of the collection. \s
                   sourceImage - The path to the image (for example, C:\\AWS\
\pic1.png).\s

                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        String sourceImage = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Searching for a face in a collections");
        searchFaceInCollection(rekClient, collectionId, sourceImage);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void searchFaceInCollection(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
collectionId, String sourceImage) {
        try {
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(new File(sourceImage));
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);
            Image souImage = Image.builder()
                    .bytes(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            SearchFacesByImageRequest facesByImageRequest =
SearchFacesByImageRequest.builder()
                    .image(souImage)
                    .maxFaces(10)
                    .faceMatchThreshold(70F)
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .build();

            SearchFacesByImageResponse imageResponse =
rekClient.searchFacesByImage(facesByImageRequest);
            System.out.println("Faces matching in the collection");
            List<FaceMatch> faceImageMatches = imageResponse.faceMatches();
            for (FaceMatch face : faceImageMatches) {
                System.out.println("The similarity level is  " + face.similarity());
                System.out.println();
            }
```

```
        } catch (RekognitionException | FileNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SearchFacesByImage`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFacesByImage`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (image).

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SearchFacesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.FaceMatch;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SearchFaceMatchingIdCollection {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
```

```
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <collectionId> <sourceImage>

                Where:
                   collectionId - The id of the collection. \s
                   sourceImage - The path to the image (for example, C:\\AWS\
\pic1.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String collectionId = args[0];
        String faceId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Searching for a face in a collections");
        searchFacebyId(rekClient, collectionId, faceId);
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void searchFacebyId(RekognitionClient rekClient, String
 collectionId, String faceId) {
        try {
            SearchFacesRequest searchFacesRequest = SearchFacesRequest.builder()
                    .collectionId(collectionId)
                    .faceId(faceId)
                    .faceMatchThreshold(70F)
                    .maxFaces(2)
                    .build();

            SearchFacesResponse imageResponse =
 rekClient.searchFaces(searchFacesRequest);
            System.out.println("Faces matching in the collection");
            List<FaceMatch> faceImageMatches = imageResponse.faceMatches();
            for (FaceMatch face : faceImageMatches) {
                System.out.println("The similarity level is  " + face.similarity());
                System.out.println();
```

```
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect PPE in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect information in videos

The following code example shows how to:

- Start Amazon Rekognition jobs to detect elements like people, objects, and text in videos.
- Check job status until jobs finish.
- Output the list of elements detected by each job.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get celebrity results from a video located in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartCelebrityRecognitionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CelebrityRecognitionSortBy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CelebrityRecognition;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.CelebrityDetail;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartCelebrityRecognitionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetCelebrityRecognitionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetCelebrityRecognitionResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * To run this code example, ensure that you perform the Prerequisites as stated
 * in the Amazon Rekognition Guide:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/rekognition/latest/dg/video-analyzing-with-sqs.html
 *
 * Also, ensure that set up your development environment, including your
 * credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class VideoCelebrityDetection {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
```

```
                  topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
(Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                  roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
role to use.\s
               """;

       if (args.length != 4) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String bucket = args[0];
       String video = args[1];
       String topicArn = args[2];
       String roleArn = args[3];
       Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
       RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
               .region(region)
               .build();

       NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
               .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
               .roleArn(roleArn)
               .build();

       startCelebrityDetection(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
       getCelebrityDetectionResults(rekClient);
       System.out.println("This example is done!");
       rekClient.close();
   }

   public static void startCelebrityDetection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
           NotificationChannel channel,
           String bucket,
           String video) {
       try {
           S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                   .bucket(bucket)
                   .name(video)
                   .build();

           Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                   .s3Object(s3Obj)
                   .build();
```

```
            StartCelebrityRecognitionRequest recognitionRequest =
StartCelebrityRecognitionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("Celebrities")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .build();

            StartCelebrityRecognitionResponse startCelebrityRecognitionResult =
rekClient
                    .startCelebrityRecognition(recognitionRequest);
            startJobId = startCelebrityRecognitionResult.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getCelebrityDetectionResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetCelebrityRecognitionResponse recognitionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (recognitionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = recognitionResponse.nextToken();

                GetCelebrityRecognitionRequest recognitionRequest =
GetCelebrityRecognitionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .sortBy(CelebrityRecognitionSortBy.TIMESTAMP)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds
                while (!finished) {
                    recognitionResponse =
rekClient.getCelebrityRecognition(recognitionRequest);
                    status = recognitionResponse.jobStatusAsString();
```

```
                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData = recognitionResponse.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " + videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<CelebrityRecognition> celebs =
 recognitionResponse.celebrities();
                for (CelebrityRecognition celeb : celebs) {
                    long seconds = celeb.timestamp() / 1000;
                    System.out.print("Sec: " + seconds + " ");
                    CelebrityDetail details = celeb.celebrity();
                    System.out.println("Name: " + details.name());
                    System.out.println("Id: " + details.id());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (recognitionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect labels in a video by a label detection operation.

```
import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonProcessingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonMappingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetectionSortBy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Label;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Instance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Parent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class VideoDetect {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <queueUrl> <topicArn> <roleArn>
```

```
                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
(for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of the video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   queueUrl- The URL of a SQS queue.\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
(Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String queueUrl = args[2];
        String topicArn = args[3];
        String roleArn = args[4];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getLabelJob(rekClient, sqs, queueUrl);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        sqs.close();
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
```

```
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
StartLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .minConfidence(50F)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

            boolean ans = true;
            String status = "";
            int yy = 0;
            while (ans) {

                GetLabelDetectionRequest detectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                GetLabelDetectionResponse result =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(detectionRequest);
                status = result.jobStatusAsString();

                if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                    ans = false;
                else
                    System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
```

```
                Thread.sleep(1000);
                yy++;
            }

            System.out.println(startJobId + " status is: " + status);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getLabelJob(RekognitionClient rekClient, SqsClient sqs,
String queueUrl) {
        List<Message> messages;
        ReceiveMessageRequest messageRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

        try {
            messages = sqs.receiveMessage(messageRequest).messages();

            if (!messages.isEmpty()) {
                for (Message message : messages) {
                    String notification = message.body();

                    // Get the status and job id from the notification
                    ObjectMapper mapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonMessageTree = mapper.readTree(notification);
                    JsonNode messageBodyText = jsonMessageTree.get("Message");
                    ObjectMapper operationResultMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonResultTree =
operationResultMapper.readTree(messageBodyText.textValue());
                    JsonNode operationJobId = jsonResultTree.get("JobId");
                    JsonNode operationStatus = jsonResultTree.get("Status");
                    System.out.println("Job found in JSON is " + operationJobId);

                    DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .build();

                    String jobId = operationJobId.textValue();
                    if (startJobId.compareTo(jobId) == 0) {
```

```
                        System.out.println("Job id: " + operationJobId);
                        System.out.println("Status : " +
operationStatus.toString());

                        if (operationStatus.asText().equals("SUCCEEDED"))
                            getResultsLabels(rekClient);
                        else
                            System.out.println("Video analysis failed");

                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Job received was not job " +
startJobId);
                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (JsonMappingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (JsonProcessingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    // Gets the job results by calling GetLabelDetection
    private static void getResultsLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient) {

        int maxResults = 10;
        String paginationToken = null;
        GetLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResult = null;

        try {
            do {
                if (labelDetectionResult != null)
                    paginationToken = labelDetectionResult.nextToken();

                GetLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .sortBy(LabelDetectionSortBy.TIMESTAMP)
```

```
                        .maxResults(maxResults)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .build();

                labelDetectionResult =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData = labelDetectionResult.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " + videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());

                List<LabelDetection> detectedLabels = labelDetectionResult.labels();
                for (LabelDetection detectedLabel : detectedLabels) {
                    long seconds = detectedLabel.timestamp();
                    Label label = detectedLabel.label();
                    System.out.println("Millisecond: " + seconds + " ");

                    System.out.println("   Label:" + label.name());
                    System.out.println("   Confidence:" +
detectedLabel.label().confidence().toString());

                    List<Instance> instances = label.instances();
                    System.out.println("   Instances of " + label.name());

                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        " + "None");
                    } else {
                        for (Instance instance : instances) {
                            System.out.println("        Confidence: " +
instance.confidence().toString());
                            System.out.println("        Bounding box: " +
instance.boundingBox().toString());
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println("   Parent labels for " + label.name() +
":");
                    List<Parent> parents = label.parents();

                    if (parents.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        None");
                    } else {
                        for (Parent parent : parents) {
                            System.out.println("   " + parent.name());
```

```
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println();
                }
            } while (labelDetectionResult != null &&
 labelDetectionResult.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect faces in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonProcessingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonMappingException;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartLabelDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetLabelDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetectionSortBy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.LabelDetection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Label;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Instance;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Parent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class VideoDetect {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <queueUrl> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of the video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   queueUrl- The URL of a SQS queue.\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String queueUrl = args[2];
        String topicArn = args[3];
        String roleArn = args[4];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getLabelJob(rekClient, sqs, queueUrl);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        sqs.close();
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
StartLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .minConfidence(50F)
                    .build();

            StartLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

            boolean ans = true;
            String status = "";
            int yy = 0;
```

```
            while (ans) {

                GetLabelDetectionRequest detectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                GetLabelDetectionResponse result =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(detectionRequest);
                status = result.jobStatusAsString();

                if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                    ans = false;
                else
                    System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);

                Thread.sleep(1000);
                yy++;
            }

            System.out.println(startJobId + " status is: " + status);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getLabelJob(RekognitionClient rekClient, SqsClient sqs,
String queueUrl) {
        List<Message> messages;
        ReceiveMessageRequest messageRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

        try {
            messages = sqs.receiveMessage(messageRequest).messages();

            if (!messages.isEmpty()) {
                for (Message message : messages) {
                    String notification = message.body();

                    // Get the status and job id from the notification
```

```
                    ObjectMapper mapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonMessageTree = mapper.readTree(notification);
                    JsonNode messageBodyText = jsonMessageTree.get("Message");
                    ObjectMapper operationResultMapper = new ObjectMapper();
                    JsonNode jsonResultTree =
operationResultMapper.readTree(messageBodyText.textValue());
                    JsonNode operationJobId = jsonResultTree.get("JobId");
                    JsonNode operationStatus = jsonResultTree.get("Status");
                    System.out.println("Job found in JSON is " + operationJobId);

                    DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .build();

                    String jobId = operationJobId.textValue();
                    if (startJobId.compareTo(jobId) == 0) {
                        System.out.println("Job id: " + operationJobId);
                        System.out.println("Status : " +
operationStatus.toString());

                        if (operationStatus.asText().equals("SUCCEEDED"))
                            getResultsLabels(rekClient);
                        else
                            System.out.println("Video analysis failed");

                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Job received was not job " +
startJobId);
                        sqs.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
                    }
                }
            }

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (JsonMappingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } catch (JsonProcessingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
```

```
    // Gets the job results by calling GetLabelDetection
    private static void getResultsLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient) {

        int maxResults = 10;
        String paginationToken = null;
        GetLabelDetectionResponse labelDetectionResult = null;

        try {
            do {
                if (labelDetectionResult != null)
                    paginationToken = labelDetectionResult.nextToken();

                GetLabelDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
GetLabelDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .sortBy(LabelDetectionSortBy.TIMESTAMP)
                        .maxResults(maxResults)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .build();

                labelDetectionResult =
rekClient.getLabelDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData = labelDetectionResult.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " + videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());

                List<LabelDetection> detectedLabels = labelDetectionResult.labels();
                for (LabelDetection detectedLabel : detectedLabels) {
                    long seconds = detectedLabel.timestamp();
                    Label label = detectedLabel.label();
                    System.out.println("Millisecond: " + seconds + " ");

                    System.out.println("   Label:" + label.name());
                    System.out.println("   Confidence:" +
detectedLabel.label().confidence().toString());

                    List<Instance> instances = label.instances();
                    System.out.println("   Instances of " + label.name());

                    if (instances.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        " + "None");
```

```
                    } else {
                        for (Instance instance : instances) {
                            System.out.println("        Confidence: " +
 instance.confidence().toString());
                            System.out.println("        Bounding box: " +
 instance.boundingBox().toString());
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println("   Parent labels for " + label.name() +
 ":");
                    List<Parent> parents = label.parents();

                    if (parents.isEmpty()) {
                        System.out.println("        None");
                    } else {
                        for (Parent parent : parents) {
                            System.out.println("   " + parent.name());
                        }
                    }
                    System.out.println();
                }
            } while (labelDetectionResult != null &&
 labelDetectionResult.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect inappropriate or offensive content in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartContentModerationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartContentModerationResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetContentModerationResponse;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetContentModerationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ContentModerationDetection;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class VideoDetectInappropriate {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
```

```
        String roleArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startModerationDetection(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getModResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startModerationDetection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {

        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartContentModerationRequest modDetectionRequest =
StartContentModerationRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("Moderation")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .build();

            StartContentModerationResponse startModDetectionResult = rekClient
                    .startContentModeration(modDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = startModDetectionResult.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
```

```
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getModResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetContentModerationResponse modDetectionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (modDetectionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = modDetectionResponse.nextToken();

                GetContentModerationRequest modRequest =
GetContentModerationRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds.
                while (!finished) {
                    modDetectionResponse =
rekClient.getContentModeration(modRequest);
                    status = modDetectionResponse.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData = modDetectionResponse.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
```

```
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " + videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<ContentModerationDetection> mods =
 modDetectionResponse.moderationLabels();
                for (ContentModerationDetection mod : mods) {
                    long seconds = mod.timestamp() / 1000;
                    System.out.print("Mod label: " + seconds + " ");
                    System.out.println(mod.moderationLabel().toString());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (modDetectionResponse != null &&
 modDetectionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect technical cue segments and shot detection segments in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartShotDetectionFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartTechnicalCueDetectionFilter;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartSegmentDetectionFilters;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartSegmentDetectionRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartSegmentDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
```

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetSegmentDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetSegmentDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SegmentDetection;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.TechnicalCueSegment;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.ShotSegment;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.SegmentType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class VideoDetectSegment {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
```

```
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startSegmentDetection(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getSegmentResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        sqs.close();
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startSegmentDetection(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartShotDetectionFilter cueDetectionFilter =
StartShotDetectionFilter.builder()
                    .minSegmentConfidence(60F)
                    .build();
```

```
            StartTechnicalCueDetectionFilter technicalCueDetectionFilter =
StartTechnicalCueDetectionFilter.builder()
                    .minSegmentConfidence(60F)
                    .build();

            StartSegmentDetectionFilters filters =
StartSegmentDetectionFilters.builder()
                    .shotFilter(cueDetectionFilter)
                    .technicalCueFilter(technicalCueDetectionFilter)
                    .build();

            StartSegmentDetectionRequest segDetectionRequest =
StartSegmentDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .segmentTypes(SegmentType.TECHNICAL_CUE, SegmentType.SHOT)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .filters(filters)
                    .build();

            StartSegmentDetectionResponse segDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startSegmentDetection(segDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = segDetectionResponse.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            e.getMessage();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getSegmentResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetSegmentDetectionResponse segDetectionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (segDetectionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = segDetectionResponse.nextToken();

                GetSegmentDetectionRequest recognitionRequest =
GetSegmentDetectionRequest.builder()
```

```
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds.
                while (!finished) {
                    segDetectionResponse =
rekClient.getSegmentDetection(recognitionRequest);
                    status = segDetectionResponse.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }
                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
                List<VideoMetadata> videoMetaData =
segDetectionResponse.videoMetadata();
                for (VideoMetadata metaData : videoMetaData) {
                    System.out.println("Format: " + metaData.format());
                    System.out.println("Codec: " + metaData.codec());
                    System.out.println("Duration: " + metaData.durationMillis());
                    System.out.println("FrameRate: " + metaData.frameRate());
                    System.out.println("Job");
                }

                List<SegmentDetection> detectedSegments =
segDetectionResponse.segments();
                for (SegmentDetection detectedSegment : detectedSegments) {
                    String type = detectedSegment.type().toString();
                    if (type.contains(SegmentType.TECHNICAL_CUE.toString())) {
                        System.out.println("Technical Cue");
                        TechnicalCueSegment segmentCue =
detectedSegment.technicalCueSegment();
                        System.out.println("\tType: " + segmentCue.type());
                        System.out.println("\tConfidence: " +
segmentCue.confidence().toString());
                    }
```

```
                    if (type.contains(SegmentType.SHOT.toString())) {
                        System.out.println("Shot");
                        ShotSegment segmentShot = detectedSegment.shotSegment();
                        System.out.println("\tIndex " + segmentShot.index());
                        System.out.println("\tConfidence: " +
 segmentShot.confidence().toString());
                    }

                    long seconds = detectedSegment.durationMillis();
                    System.out.println("\tDuration : " + seconds + " milliseconds");
                    System.out.println("\tStart time code: " +
 detectedSegment.startTimecodeSMPTE());
                    System.out.println("\tEnd time code: " +
 detectedSegment.endTimecodeSMPTE());
                    System.out.println("\tDuration time code: " +
 detectedSegment.durationSMPTE());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (segDetectionResponse != null &&
 segDetectionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect text in a video stored in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartTextDetectionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartTextDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetTextDetectionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetTextDetectionRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.TextDetectionResult;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class VideoDetectText {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
                .build();

        startTextLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getTextResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startTextLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartTextDetectionRequest labelDetectionRequest =
StartTextDetectionRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .build();

            StartTextDetectionResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startTextDetection(labelDetectionRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getTextResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
```

```
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetTextDetectionResponse textDetectionResponse = null;
            boolean finished = false;
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (textDetectionResponse != null)
                    paginationToken = textDetectionResponse.nextToken();

                GetTextDetectionRequest recognitionRequest =
GetTextDetectionRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds.
                while (!finished) {
                    textDetectionResponse =
rekClient.getTextDetection(recognitionRequest);
                    status = textDetectionResponse.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData = textDetectionResponse.videoMetadata();
                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " + videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");
```

```
                List<TextDetectionResult> labels =
 textDetectionResponse.textDetections();
                for (TextDetectionResult detectedText : labels) {
                    System.out.println("Confidence: " +
 detectedText.textDetection().confidence().toString());
                    System.out.println("Id : " + detectedText.textDetection().id());
                    System.out.println("Parent Id: " +
 detectedText.textDetection().parentId());
                    System.out.println("Type: " +
 detectedText.textDetection().type());
                    System.out.println("Text: " +
 detectedText.textDetection().detectedText());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (textDetectionResponse != null &&
 textDetectionResponse.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect people in a video stored in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.RekognitionClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.NotificationChannel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartPersonTrackingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.Video;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.StartPersonTrackingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.RekognitionException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetPersonTrackingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.GetPersonTrackingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.VideoMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.rekognition.model.PersonDetection;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class VideoPersonDetection {
    private static String startJobId = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <bucket> <video> <topicArn> <roleArn>

                Where:
                   bucket - The name of the bucket in which the video is located
 (for example, (for example, myBucket).\s
                   video - The name of video (for example, people.mp4).\s
                   topicArn - The ARN of the Amazon Simple Notification Service
 (Amazon SNS) topic.\s
                   roleArn - The ARN of the AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
 role to use.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucket = args[0];
        String video = args[1];
        String topicArn = args[2];
        String roleArn = args[3];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        RekognitionClient rekClient = RekognitionClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        NotificationChannel channel = NotificationChannel.builder()
                .snsTopicArn(topicArn)
                .roleArn(roleArn)
```

```
                .build();

        startPersonLabels(rekClient, channel, bucket, video);
        getPersonDetectionResults(rekClient);
        System.out.println("This example is done!");
        rekClient.close();
    }

    public static void startPersonLabels(RekognitionClient rekClient,
            NotificationChannel channel,
            String bucket,
            String video) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Obj = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucket)
                    .name(video)
                    .build();

            Video vidOb = Video.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Obj)
                    .build();

            StartPersonTrackingRequest personTrackingRequest =
StartPersonTrackingRequest.builder()
                    .jobTag("DetectingLabels")
                    .video(vidOb)
                    .notificationChannel(channel)
                    .build();

            StartPersonTrackingResponse labelDetectionResponse =
rekClient.startPersonTracking(personTrackingRequest);
            startJobId = labelDetectionResponse.jobId();

        } catch (RekognitionException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getPersonDetectionResults(RekognitionClient rekClient) {
        try {
            String paginationToken = null;
            GetPersonTrackingResponse personTrackingResult = null;
            boolean finished = false;
```

```
            String status;
            int yy = 0;

            do {
                if (personTrackingResult != null)
                    paginationToken = personTrackingResult.nextToken();

                GetPersonTrackingRequest recognitionRequest =
GetPersonTrackingRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(startJobId)
                        .nextToken(paginationToken)
                        .maxResults(10)
                        .build();

                // Wait until the job succeeds
                while (!finished) {

                    personTrackingResult =
rekClient.getPersonTracking(recognitionRequest);
                    status = personTrackingResult.jobStatusAsString();

                    if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                        finished = true;
                    else {
                        System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + status);
                        Thread.sleep(1000);
                    }
                    yy++;
                }

                finished = false;

                // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
                VideoMetadata videoMetaData = personTrackingResult.videoMetadata();

                System.out.println("Format: " + videoMetaData.format());
                System.out.println("Codec: " + videoMetaData.codec());
                System.out.println("Duration: " + videoMetaData.durationMillis());
                System.out.println("FrameRate: " + videoMetaData.frameRate());
                System.out.println("Job");

                List<PersonDetection> detectedPersons =
personTrackingResult.persons();
                for (PersonDetection detectedPerson : detectedPersons) {
```

```
                    long seconds = detectedPerson.timestamp() / 1000;
                    System.out.print("Sec: " + seconds + " ");
                    System.out.println("Person Identifier: " +
 detectedPerson.person().index());
                    System.out.println();
                }

            } while (personTrackingResult != null &&
 personTrackingResult.nextToken() != null);

        } catch (RekognitionException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetCelebrityRecognition
  - GetContentModeration
  - GetLabelDetection
  - GetPersonTracking
  - GetSegmentDetection
  - GetTextDetection
  - StartCelebrityRecognition
  - StartContentModeration
  - StartLabelDetection
  - StartPersonTracking
  - StartSegmentDetection
  - StartTextDetection

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Route 53 domain registration.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Route 53 domain registration

The following code examples show how to get started using Route 53 domain registration.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.Route53DomainsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53.model.Route53Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.DomainPrice;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.ListPricesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.route53domains.model.ListPricesResponse;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
```

```
 * This Java code examples performs the following operation:
 *
 * 1. Invokes ListPrices for at least one domain type, such as the “com” type
 * and displays the prices for Registration and Renewal.
 *
 */
public class HelloRoute53 {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <hostedZoneId> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    hostedZoneId - The id value of an existing hosted zone. \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String domainType = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient = Route53DomainsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Invokes ListPrices for at least one domain type.");
        listPrices(route53DomainsClient, domainType);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient, String
 domainType) {
        try {
            ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                    .maxItems(10)
                    .tld(domainType)
                    .build();

            ListPricesResponse response =
 route53DomainsClient.listPrices(pricesRequest);
            List<DomainPrice> prices = response.prices();
```

```
            for (DomainPrice pr : prices) {
                System.out.println("Name: " + pr.name());
                System.out.println(
                        "Registration: " + pr.registrationPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.registrationPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Renewal: " + pr.renewalPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.renewalPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Transfer: " + pr.transferPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.transferPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Transfer: " + pr.transferPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.transferPrice().currency());
                System.out.println("Change Ownership: " +
 pr.changeOwnershipPrice().price() + " "
                        + pr.changeOwnershipPrice().currency());
                System.out.println(
                        "Restoration: " + pr.restorationPrice().price() + " " +
 pr.restorationPrice().currency());
                System.out.println(" ");
            }

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List current domains, and list operations in the past year.

- View billing for the past year, and view prices for domain types.
- Get domain suggestions.
- Check domain availability and transferability.
- Optionally, request a domain registration.
- Get an operation detail.
- Optionally, get a domain detail.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This example uses pagination methods where applicable. For example, to list
 * domains, the
 * listDomainsPaginator method is used. For more information about pagination,
 * see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/pagination.html
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following operations:
 *
 * 1. List current domains.
 * 2. List operations in the past year.
 * 3. View billing for the account in the past year.
 * 4. View prices for domain types.
 * 5. Get domain suggestions.
 * 6. Check domain availability.
 * 7. Check domain transferability.
```

```
 * 8. Request a domain registration.
 * 9. Get operation details.
 * 10. Optionally, get domain details.
 */

public class Route53Scenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <domainType> <phoneNumber> <email> <domainSuggestion>
 <firstName> <lastName> <city>

                Where:
                    domainType - The domain type (for example, com).\s
                    phoneNumber - The phone number to use (for example,
 +91.9966564xxx)      email - The email address to use.      domainSuggestion - The
 domain suggestion (for example, findmy.accountants).\s
                    firstName - The first name to use to register a domain.\s
                    lastName -  The last name to use to register a domain.\s
                    city - the city to use to register a domain.\s
                    """;

        if (args.length != 7) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String domainType = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        String email = args[2];
        String domainSuggestion = args[3];
        String firstName = args[4];
        String lastName = args[5];
        String city = args[6];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient = Route53DomainsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example
scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. List current domains.");
        listDomains(route53DomainsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. List operations in the past year.");
        listOperations(route53DomainsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. View billing for the account in the past year.");
        listBillingRecords(route53DomainsClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. View prices for domain types.");
        listPrices(route53DomainsClient, domainType);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Get domain suggestions.");
        listDomainSuggestions(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Check domain availability.");
        checkDomainAvailability(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Check domain transferability.");
        checkDomainTransferability(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Request a domain registration.");
        String opId = requestDomainRegistration(route53DomainsClient,
domainSuggestion, phoneNumber, email, firstName,
                lastName, city);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Get operation details.");
        getOperationalDetail(route53DomainsClient, opId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get domain details.");
        System.out.println("Note: You must have a registered domain to get
details.");
        System.out.println("Otherwise, an exception is thrown that states ");
        System.out.println("Domain xxxxxxx not found in xxxxxxx account.");
        getDomainDetails(route53DomainsClient, domainSuggestion);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void getDomainDetails(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient,
String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            GetDomainDetailRequest detailRequest = GetDomainDetailRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            GetDomainDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest);
            System.out.println("The contact first name is " +
response.registrantContact().firstName());
            System.out.println("The contact last name is " +
response.registrantContact().lastName());
            System.out.println("The contact org name is " +
response.registrantContact().organizationName());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void getOperationalDetail(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String operationId) {
        try {
            GetOperationDetailRequest detailRequest =
GetOperationDetailRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .operationId(operationId)
                    .build();

            GetOperationDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest);
            System.out.println("Operation detail message is " + response.message());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String requestDomainRegistration(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient,
            String domainSuggestion,
            String phoneNumber,
            String email,
            String firstName,
            String lastName,
            String city) {

        try {
            ContactDetail contactDetail = ContactDetail.builder()
                    .contactType(ContactType.COMPANY)
                    .state("LA")
                    .countryCode(CountryCode.IN)
                    .email(email)
                    .firstName(firstName)
                    .lastName(lastName)
                    .city(city)
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .organizationName("My Org")
                    .addressLine1("My Address")
                    .zipCode("123 123")
                    .build();

            RegisterDomainRequest domainRequest = RegisterDomainRequest.builder()
                    .adminContact(contactDetail)
                    .registrantContact(contactDetail)
                    .techContact(contactDetail)
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .autoRenew(true)
                    .durationInYears(1)
```

```
                    .build();

            RegisterDomainResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest);
            System.out.println("Registration requested. Operation Id: " +
response.operationId());
            return response.operationId();

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void checkDomainTransferability(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest transferabilityRequest =
CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainTransferabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest);
            System.out.println("Transferability: " +
response.transferability().transferable().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void checkDomainAvailability(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest availabilityRequest =
CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainAvailabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println(domainSuggestion + " is " +
response.availability().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listDomainSuggestions(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            GetDomainSuggestionsRequest suggestionsRequest =
GetDomainSuggestionsRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .suggestionCount(5)
                    .onlyAvailable(true)
                    .build();

            GetDomainSuggestionsResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest);
            List<DomainSuggestion> suggestions = response.suggestionsList();
            for (DomainSuggestion suggestion : suggestions) {
                System.out.println("Suggestion Name: " + suggestion.domainName());
                System.out.println("Availability: " + suggestion.availability());
                System.out.println(" ");
            }

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient, String
domainType) {
        try {
            ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                    .tld(domainType)
                    .build();

            ListPricesIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listPricesPaginator(pricesRequest);
            listRes.stream()
```

```
                    .flatMap(r -> r.prices().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.name() +
                            " Registration: " + content.registrationPrice().price()
+ " "
                            + content.registrationPrice().currency() +
                            " Renewal: " + content.renewalPrice().price() + " " +
content.renewalPrice().currency()));

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   public static void listBillingRecords(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient)
{
       try {
           Date currentDate = new Date();
           LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
           ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
           LocalDateTime localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
           Instant myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset);
           Instant myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

           ViewBillingRequest viewBillingRequest = ViewBillingRequest.builder()
                   .start(myStartTime)
                   .end(myEndTime)
                   .build();

           ViewBillingIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.viewBillingPaginator(viewBillingRequest);
           listRes.stream()
                   .flatMap(r -> r.billingRecords().stream())
                   .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Bill Date:: " +
content.billDate() +
                            " Operation: " + content.operationAsString() +
                            " Price: " + content.price()));

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
```

```
    }

    public static void listOperations(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient) {
        try {
            Date currentDate = new Date();
            LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
            ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
            localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
            Instant myTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

            ListOperationsRequest operationsRequest =
ListOperationsRequest.builder()
                    .submittedSince(myTime)
                    .build();

            ListOperationsIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listOperationsPaginator(operationsRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.operations().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Operation Id: " +
content.operationId() +
                            " Status: " + content.statusAsString() +
                            " Date: " + content.submittedDate()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listDomains(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient) {
        try {
            ListDomainsIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listDomainsPaginator();
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.domains().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println("The domain name is " +
content.domainName()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail
  - GetDomainSuggestions
  - GetOperationDetail
  - ListDomains
  - ListOperations
  - ListPrices
  - RegisterDomain
  - ViewBilling

Actions

`CheckDomainAvailability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainAvailability`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void checkDomainAvailability(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
       try {
           CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest availabilityRequest =
CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest.builder()
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .build();
```

```
            CheckDomainAvailabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest);
            System.out.println(domainSuggestion + " is " +
response.availability().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CheckDomainTransferability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainTransferability`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void checkDomainTransferability(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
        try {
            CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest transferabilityRequest =
CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest.builder()
                    .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                    .build();

            CheckDomainTransferabilityResponse response = route53DomainsClient
                    .checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest);
            System.out.println("Transferability: " +
response.transferability().transferable().toString());

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetDomainDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainDetail`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void getDomainDetails(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient,
String domainSuggestion) {
       try {
           GetDomainDetailRequest detailRequest = GetDomainDetailRequest.builder()
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .build();

           GetDomainDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest);
           System.out.println("The contact first name is " +
response.registrantContact().firstName());
           System.out.println("The contact last name is " +
response.registrantContact().lastName());
           System.out.println("The contact org name is " +
response.registrantContact().organizationName());

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetDomainSuggestions`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainSuggestions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listDomainSuggestions(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String domainSuggestion) {
       try {
           GetDomainSuggestionsRequest suggestionsRequest =
GetDomainSuggestionsRequest.builder()
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .suggestionCount(5)
                   .onlyAvailable(true)
                   .build();

           GetDomainSuggestionsResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest);
           List<DomainSuggestion> suggestions = response.suggestionsList();
           for (DomainSuggestion suggestion : suggestions) {
               System.out.println("Suggestion Name: " + suggestion.domainName());
               System.out.println("Availability: " + suggestion.availability());
               System.out.println(" ");
           }

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetOperationDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOperationDetail`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void getOperationalDetail(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient, String operationId) {
       try {
           GetOperationDetailRequest detailRequest =
GetOperationDetailRequest.builder()
                   .operationId(operationId)
                   .build();

           GetOperationDetailResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest);
           System.out.println("Operation detail message is " + response.message());

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDomains`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDomains`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listDomains(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient) {
        try {
            ListDomainsIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listDomainsPaginator();
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.domains().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println("The domain name is " +
content.domainName()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListOperations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOperations`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void listOperations(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient) {
```

```
        try {
            Date currentDate = new Date();
            LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
            ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
            localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
            Instant myTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

            ListOperationsRequest operationsRequest =
ListOperationsRequest.builder()
                    .submittedSince(myTime)
                    .build();

            ListOperationsIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listOperationsPaginator(operationsRequest);
            listRes.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.operations().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Operation Id: " +
content.operationId() +
                            " Status: " + content.statusAsString() +
                            " Date: " + content.submittedDate()));

        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListPrices`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPrices`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listPrices(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient, String
domainType) {
       try {
           ListPricesRequest pricesRequest = ListPricesRequest.builder()
                   .tld(domainType)
                   .build();

           ListPricesIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.listPricesPaginator(pricesRequest);
           listRes.stream()
                   .flatMap(r -> r.prices().stream())
                   .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Name: " +
content.name() +
                           " Registration: " + content.registrationPrice().price()
+ " "
                           + content.registrationPrice().currency() +
                           " Renewal: " + content.renewalPrice().price() + " " +
content.renewalPrice().currency()));

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RegisterDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterDomain`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String requestDomainRegistration(Route53DomainsClient
route53DomainsClient,
           String domainSuggestion,
           String phoneNumber,
           String email,
           String firstName,
           String lastName,
           String city) {

       try {
           ContactDetail contactDetail = ContactDetail.builder()
                   .contactType(ContactType.COMPANY)
                   .state("LA")
                   .countryCode(CountryCode.IN)
                   .email(email)
                   .firstName(firstName)
                   .lastName(lastName)
                   .city(city)
                   .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                   .organizationName("My Org")
                   .addressLine1("My Address")
                   .zipCode("123 123")
                   .build();

           RegisterDomainRequest domainRequest = RegisterDomainRequest.builder()
                   .adminContact(contactDetail)
                   .registrantContact(contactDetail)
                   .techContact(contactDetail)
                   .domainName(domainSuggestion)
                   .autoRenew(true)
                   .durationInYears(1)
                   .build();

           RegisterDomainResponse response =
route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest);
           System.out.println("Registration requested. Operation Id: " +
response.operationId());
           return response.operationId();

       } catch (Route53Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.getMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
```

```
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ViewBilling`

The following code example shows how to use `ViewBilling`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void listBillingRecords(Route53DomainsClient route53DomainsClient)
{
       try {
           Date currentDate = new Date();
           LocalDateTime localDateTime =
currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime();
           ZoneOffset zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00");
           LocalDateTime localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1);
           Instant myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset);
           Instant myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset);

           ViewBillingRequest viewBillingRequest = ViewBillingRequest.builder()
                   .start(myStartTime)
                   .end(myEndTime)
                   .build();

           ViewBillingIterable listRes =
route53DomainsClient.viewBillingPaginator(viewBillingRequest);
           listRes.stream()
                   .flatMap(r -> r.billingRecords().stream())
                   .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Bill Date:: " +
content.billDate() +
                           " Operation: " + content.operationAsString() +
                           " Price: " + content.price()));
```

```
        } catch (Route53Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloS3 {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listBuckets(s3);
    }

    /**
     * Lists all the S3 buckets associated with the provided AWS S3 client.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with the AWS S3 service
     */
    public static void listBuckets(S3Client s3) {
        try {
            ListBucketsResponse response = s3.listBuckets();
            List<Bucket> bucketList = response.buckets();
            bucketList.forEach(bucket -> {
                System.out.println("Bucket Name: " + bucket.name());
            });

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A scenario example.

```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
```

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Creates an Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 2. Uploads an object to the bucket.
 * 3. Downloads the object to another local file.
 * 4. Uploads an object using multipart upload.
 * 5. List all objects located in the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 6. Copies the object to another Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 7. Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket using multi copy.
 * 8. Deletes the object from the Amazon S3 bucket.
 * 9. Deletes the Amazon S3 bucket.
 */

public class S3Scenario {

    public static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
    static S3Actions s3Actions = new S3Actions();
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3Scenario.class);
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:
               <bucketName> <key> <objectPath> <savePath> <toBucket>

            Where:
                bucketName - The name of the  S3 bucket.
                key - The unique identifier for the object stored in the S3 bucket.
                objectPath - The full file path of the object within the S3 bucket
 (e.g., "documents/reports/annual_report.pdf").
                savePath - The local file path where the object will be downloaded
 and saved (e.g., "C:/Users/username/Downloads/annual_report.pdf").
```

```
                toBucket - The name of the S3 bucket to which the object will be
copied.
            """;

        if (args.length != 5) {
            logger.info(usage);
            return;
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String key = args[1];
        String objectPath = args[2];
        String savePath = args[3];
        String toBucket = args[4];

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) example
scenario.");
        logger.info("""
            Amazon S3 is a highly scalable and durable object storage
            service provided by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is designed to store
and retrieve
            any amount of data, from anywhere on the web, at any time.

            The `S3AsyncClient` interface in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x provides a set
of methods to
            programmatically interact with the Amazon S3 (Simple Storage Service)
service. This allows
            developers to automate the management and manipulation of S3 buckets and
objects as
            part of their application deployment pipelines. With S3, teams can focus
on building
            and deploying their applications without having to worry about the
underlying storage
            infrastructure required to host and manage large amounts of data.

            This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this
service.
            Let's get started...
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        try {
```

```
            // Run the methods that belong to this scenario.
            runScenario(bucketName, key, objectPath, savePath, toBucket);

        } catch (Throwable rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception kmsEx) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
kmsEx.getMessage(), kmsEx.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
    }

    private static void runScenario(String bucketName, String key, String
objectPath, String savePath, String toBucket) throws Throwable {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("1. Create an Amazon S3 bucket.");
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.createBucketAsync(bucketName);
            future.join();
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;

        }
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("2. Upload a local file to the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> future =
s3Actions.uploadLocalFileAsync(bucketName, key, objectPath);
            future.join();
```

```
            logger.info("File uploaded successfully to {}/{}", bucketName, key);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);


        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("3. Download the object to another local file.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.getObjectBytesAsync(bucketName, key, savePath);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Successfully obtained bytes from S3 object and wrote to
file {}", savePath);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("4. Perform a multipart upload.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String multipartKey = "multiPartKey";
        try {
```

```
            // Call the multipartUpload method
            CompletableFuture<Void> future = s3Actions.multipartUpload(bucketName,
multipartKey);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Multipart upload completed successfully for bucket '{}' and
key '{}'", bucketName, multipartKey);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("5. List all objects located in the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.listAllObjectsAsync(bucketName);
            future.join();
            logger.info("Object listing completed successfully.");

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket.");
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future =
s3Actions.copyBucketObjectAsync(bucketName, key, toBucket);
            String result = future.join();
            logger.info("Copy operation result: {}", result);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("7. Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket using multi
copy.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        try {
            CompletableFuture<String> future = s3Actions.performMultiCopy(toBucket,
bucketName, key);
            String result = future.join();
            logger.info("Copy operation result: {}", result);

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("KMS error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
```

```
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("8. Delete objects from the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(bucketName, key);
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(bucketName, "multiPartKey");
            future.join();

        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("9. Delete the Amazon S3 bucket.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            CompletableFuture<Void> future =
s3Actions.deleteBucketAsync(bucketName);
            future.join();
```

```
        } catch (RuntimeException rt) {
            Throwable cause = rt.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception s3Ex) {
                logger.info("S3 error occurred: Error message: {}, Error code {}",
 s3Ex.getMessage(), s3Ex.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            } else {
                logger.info("An unexpected error occurred: " + rt.getMessage());
            }
            throw cause;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("You successfully completed the Amazon S3 scenario.");
        logger.info(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class that contains the operations.

```
public class S3Actions {

    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3Actions.class);
    private static S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient;
```

```
   public static S3AsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
       if (s3AsyncClient == null) {
           /*
           The `NettyNioAsyncHttpClient` class is part of the AWS SDK for Java,
version 2,
           and it is designed to provide a high-performance, asynchronous HTTP
client for interacting with AWS services.
            It uses the Netty framework to handle the underlying network
communication and the Java NIO API to
            provide a non-blocking, event-driven approach to HTTP requests and
responses.
            */

           SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
               .maxConcurrency(50)  // Adjust as needed.
               .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the connection
timeout.
               .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the read timeout.
               .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))  // Set the write timeout.
               .build();

           ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
               .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))  // Set the overall API call
timeout.
               .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))  // Set the
individual call attempt timeout.
               .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
               .build();

           s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .httpClient(httpClient)
               .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
               .build();
       }
       return s3AsyncClient;
   }


   /**
    * Creates an S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
```

```
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket is created
and ready
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure while creating the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> createBucketAsync(String bucketName) {
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        return response.thenCompose(resp -> {
            S3AsyncWaiter s3Waiter = getAsyncClient().waiter();
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
waiterResponseFuture =
                s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            return waiterResponseFuture.thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
                waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(headBucketResponse ->
{
                    logger.info(bucketName + " is ready");
                });
            });
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create bucket", ex);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Uploads a local file to an AWS S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param key        the key (object name) to use for the uploaded file
     * @param objectPath the local file path of the file to be uploaded
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
PutObjectResponse} when the upload is successful, or throws a {@link
RuntimeException} if the upload fails
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> uploadLocalFileAsync(String
bucketName, String key, String objectPath) {
       PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(key)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().putObject(objectRequest,
AsyncRequestBody.fromFile(Paths.get(objectPath)));
       return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
           if (ex != null) {
               throw new RuntimeException("Failed to upload file", ex);
           }
       });
   }


   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the bytes of an object from an Amazon S3 bucket and
writes them to a local file.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
    * @param keyName    the key (or name) of the S3 object to retrieve
    * @param path       the local file path where the object's bytes will be
written
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object bytes have
been written to the local file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getObjectBytesAsync(String bucketName, String
keyName, String path) {
       GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
           .key(keyName)
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse>> response =
getAsyncClient().getObject(objectRequest, AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes());
       return response.thenAccept(objectBytes -> {
           try {
               byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();
               Path filePath = Paths.get(path);
               Files.write(filePath, data);
```

```
                logger.info("Successfully obtained bytes from an S3 object");
            } catch (IOException ex) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write data to file", ex);
            }
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get object bytes from S3",
ex);
            }
        });
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all objects in the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to list objects for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when all objects have been
listed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllObjectsAsync(String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request initialRequest = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .maxKeys(1)
            .build();

        ListObjectsV2Publisher paginator =
getAsyncClient().listObjectsV2Paginator(initialRequest);
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.contents().forEach(s3Object -> {
                logger.info("Object key: " + s3Object.key());
            });
        }).thenRun(() -> {
            logger.info("Successfully listed all objects in the bucket: " +
bucketName);
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list objects", ex);
        });
    }


    /**
     * Asynchronously copies an object from one S3 bucket to another.
     *
```

```
    * @param fromBucket the name of the source S3 bucket
    * @param objectKey  the key (name) of the object to be copied
    * @param toBucket   the name of the destination S3 bucket
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the copy result as a
{@link String}
    * @throws RuntimeException if the URL could not be encoded or an S3 exception
occurred during the copy
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> copyBucketObjectAsync(String fromBucket, String
objectKey, String toBucket) {
       CopyObjectRequest copyReq = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
           .sourceBucket(fromBucket)
           .sourceKey(objectKey)
           .destinationBucket(toBucket)
           .destinationKey(objectKey)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CopyObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().copyObject(copyReq);
       response.whenComplete((copyRes, ex) -> {
           if (copyRes != null) {
               logger.info("The " + objectKey + " was copied to " + toBucket);
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during copy",
ex);
           }
       });

       return response.thenApply(CopyObjectResponse::copyObjectResult)
           .thenApply(Object::toString);
   }

   /**
    * Performs a multipart upload to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
    * @param key        the key (name) of the file to be uploaded
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the multipart upload
is successful
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> multipartUpload(String bucketName, String key) {
       int mB = 1024 * 1024;
```

```
        CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest)
            .thenCompose(createResponse -> {
                String uploadId = createResponse.uploadId();
                System.out.println("Upload ID: " + uploadId);

                // Upload part 1.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest1 = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(1)
                    .contentLength((long) (5 * mB)) // Specify the content length
                    .build();

                CompletableFuture<CompletedPart> part1Future =
getAsyncClient().uploadPart(uploadPartRequest1,
                        AsyncRequestBody.fromByteBuffer(getRandomByteBuffer(5 *
mB)))
                    .thenApply(uploadPartResponse -> CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(1)
                        .eTag(uploadPartResponse.eTag())
                        .build());

                // Upload part 2.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest2 = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(2)
                    .contentLength((long) (3 * mB))
                    .build();

                CompletableFuture<CompletedPart> part2Future =
getAsyncClient().uploadPart(uploadPartRequest2,
                        AsyncRequestBody.fromByteBuffer(getRandomByteBuffer(3 *
mB)))
                    .thenApply(uploadPartResponse -> CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(2)
```

```
                        .eTag(uploadPartResponse.eTag())
                        .build());

                // Combine the results of both parts.
                return CompletableFuture.allOf(part1Future, part2Future)
                    .thenCompose(v -> {
                        CompletedPart part1 = part1Future.join();
                        CompletedPart part2 = part2Future.join();

                        CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload.builder()
                            .parts(part1, part2)
                            .build();

                        CompleteMultipartUploadRequest
completeMultipartUploadRequest = CompleteMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                            .bucket(bucketName)
                            .key(key)
                            .uploadId(uploadId)
                            .multipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload)
                            .build();

                        // Complete the multipart upload
                        return
getAsyncClient().completeMultipartUpload(completeMultipartUploadRequest);
                    });
            })
            .thenAccept(response -> System.out.println("Multipart upload completed
successfully"))
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to complete multipart upload: " +
ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }


    /**
     * Deletes an object from an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
     * @param key        the key (file name) of the object to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object has been
deleted
```

```
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(String bucketName,
String key) {
       DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(key)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);
       response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
           if (deleteRes != null) {
               logger.info(key + " was deleted");
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during delete",
ex);
           }
       });

       return response.thenApply(r -> null);
   }


   /**
    * Deletes an S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param bucket the name of the bucket to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket deletion
is successful, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
    * if an error occurs during the deletion process
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucketAsync(String bucket) {
       DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucket)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
       response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
           if (deleteRes != null) {
               logger.info(bucket + " was deleted.");
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during bucket
deletion", ex);
```

```
            }
        });
        return response.thenApply(r -> null);
    }

    public CompletableFuture<String> performMultiCopy(String toBucket, String
bucketName, String key) {
        CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
            .bucket(toBucket)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        getAsyncClient().createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest)
            .thenApply(createMultipartUploadResponse -> {
                String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();
                System.out.println("Upload ID: " + uploadId);

                UploadPartCopyRequest uploadPartCopyRequest =
UploadPartCopyRequest.builder()
                    .sourceBucket(bucketName)
                    .destinationBucket(toBucket)
                    .sourceKey(key)
                    .destinationKey(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)  // Use the valid uploadId.
                    .partNumber(1)  // Ensure the part number is correct.
                    .copySourceRange("bytes=0-1023")  // Adjust range as needed
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().uploadPartCopy(uploadPartCopyRequest);
            })
            .thenCompose(uploadPartCopyFuture -> uploadPartCopyFuture)
            .whenComplete((uploadPartCopyResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle any exceptions.
                    logger.error("Error during upload part copy: " +
exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    // Successfully completed the upload part copy.
                    System.out.println("Upload Part Copy completed successfully.
ETag: " + uploadPartCopyResponse.copyPartResult().eTag());
                }
            });
        return null;
```

```
    }

    private static ByteBuffer getRandomByteBuffer(int size) {
        ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(size);
        for (int i = 0; i < size; i++) {
            buffer.put((byte) (Math.random() * 256));
        }
        buffer.flip();
        return buffer;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`AbortMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `AbortMultipartUpload`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AbortMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AbortMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MultipartUpload;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.builder.SdkBuilder;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Collection;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.UUID;

import static software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.SizeConstant.KB;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class AbortMultipartUploadExamples {
    static final String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" + UUID.randomUUID(); //
 Change bucket name.
    static final String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
    static final String classPathFilePath = "/multipartUploadFiles/s3-
userguide.pdf";
    static final String filePath = getFullFilePath(classPathFilePath);
    static final S3Client s3Client = S3Client.create();
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(AbortMultipartUploadExamples.class);
    private static String accountId = getAccountId();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList();
        doAbortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId();
        doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan();
        doAbortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig();
    }

    // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
 abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList().
    public static void doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList() {
        createBucket();
        initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload("uploadThread");
        abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList();
        deleteResources();
    }

    /**
     * Aborts all incomplete multipart uploads from the specified S3 bucket.
     * <p>
     * This method retrieves a list of all incomplete multipart uploads in the
 specified S3 bucket,
     * and then aborts each of those uploads.
     */
    public static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList() {
        ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
 ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
 s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
```

```
        List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

        AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
        for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
            abortMultipartUploadRequest = AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(upload.key())
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
                .build();

            AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
            if (abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully aborted.",
upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
            }
        }
    }

    // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan().
    static void doAbortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan() {
        createBucket();
        Instant secondUploadInstant = initiateAndInterruptTwoUploads();
        abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan(secondUploadInstant);
        deleteResources();
    }

    static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan(Instant pointInTime) {
        ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
        List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

        AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
        for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
            logger.info("Found multipartUpload with upload ID [{}], initiated [{}]",
upload.uploadId(), upload.initiated());
            if (upload.initiated().isBefore(pointInTime)) {
```

```
                abortMultipartUploadRequest = AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(upload.key())
                    .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                    .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
                    .build();

                AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
                if (abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                    logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully
aborted.", upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
                }
            }
        }
    }

    // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId().
    static void doAbortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId() {
        createBucket();
        try {
            abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        } finally {
            deleteResources();
        }
    }

    static void abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId() {
        String uploadId = startUploadReturningUploadId();
        AbortMultipartUploadResponse response = s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .uploadId(uploadId)
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully aborted.",
uploadId, bucketName);
        }
    }
```

```
   // A wrapper method that sets up the multipart upload environment for
abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig().
   static void doAbortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig() {
       createBucket();
       try {
           abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig();
       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error(e.getMessage());
       } finally {
           deleteResources();
       }
   }

   static void abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig() {
       Collection<LifecycleRule> lifeCycleRules = List.of(LifecycleRule.builder()
           .abortIncompleteMultipartUpload(b -> b.
               daysAfterInitiation(7))
           .status("Enabled")
           .filter(SdkBuilder::build) // Filter element is required.
           .build());

       // If the action is successful, the service sends back an HTTP 200 response
with an empty HTTP body.
       PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse response =
s3Client.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(b -> b
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .lifecycleConfiguration(b1 -> b1.rules(lifeCycleRules)));

       if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
           logger.info("Rule to abort incomplete multipart uploads added to
bucket.");
       } else {
           logger.error("Unsuccessfully applied rule. HTTP status code is [{}]",
response.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
       }
   }

   /************************
    Multipart upload methods
    ************************/

   static void initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload(String threadName) {
       Runnable upload = () -> {
           try {
```

```
                AbortMultipartUploadExamples.doMultipartUpload();
            } catch (SdkException e) {
                logger.error(e.getMessage());
            }
        };
        Thread uploadThread = new Thread(upload, threadName);
        uploadThread.start();
        try {
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(1).toMillis()); // Give the multipart
upload time to register.
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        }
        uploadThread.interrupt();
    }

    static Instant initiateAndInterruptTwoUploads() {
        Instant firstUploadInstant = Instant.now();
        initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload("uploadThread1");
        try {
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(5).toMillis());
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        }
        Instant secondUploadInstant = Instant.now();
        initiateAndInterruptMultiPartUpload("uploadThread2");
        return secondUploadInstant;
    }

    static void doMultipartUpload() {
        String uploadId = step1CreateMultipartUpload();
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = step2UploadParts(uploadId);
        step3CompleteMultipartUpload(uploadId, completedParts);
    }

    static String step1CreateMultipartUpload() {
        CreateMultipartUploadResponse createMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.createMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));
        return createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();
    }

    static List<CompletedPart> step2UploadParts(String uploadId) {
```

```
        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(Long.valueOf(1024 * KB).intValue());

        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath, "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            long position = 0;
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                long read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                    uploadPartRequest,
                    RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                    .build();
                completedParts.add(part);
                logger.info("Part {} upload", partNumber);

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (IOException | S3Exception e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
            return null;
        }
        return completedParts;
    }

    static void step3CompleteMultipartUpload(String uploadId, List<CompletedPart>
completedParts) {
```

```
        s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .uploadId(uploadId)

.multipartUpload(CompletedMultipartUpload.builder().parts(completedParts).build()));
    }

    static String startUploadReturningUploadId() {
        String uploadId = step1CreateMultipartUpload();
        doMultipartUploadWithUploadId(uploadId);
        return uploadId;

    }

    static void doMultipartUploadWithUploadId(String uploadId) {
        new Thread(() -> {
            try {
                List<CompletedPart> completedParts = step2UploadParts(uploadId);
                step3CompleteMultipartUpload(uploadId, completedParts);
            } catch (SdkException e) {
                logger.error(e.getMessage());
            }
        }, "upload thread").start();
        try {
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(2L).toMillis());
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /*************************
     Resource handling methods
     ************************/

    static void createBucket() {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: [{}]", bucketName);
        s3Client.createBucket(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        try (S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter()) {
            s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        }
        logger.info("Bucket created.");
    }
```

```
    static void deleteResources() {
        logger.info("Deleting resources ...");
        s3Client.deleteObject(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key));
        s3Client.deleteBucket(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        try (S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter()) {
            s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketNotExists(b -> b.bucket(bucketName));
        }
        logger.info("Resources deleted.");
    }

    private static String getAccountId() {
        try (StsClient stsClient = StsClient.create()) {
            return stsClient.getCallerIdentity().account();
        }
    }

    static String getFullFilePath(String filePath) {
        URL uploadDirectoryURL = PerformMultiPartUpload.class.getResource(filePath);
        String fullFilePath;
        try {
            fullFilePath =
 Objects.requireNonNull(uploadDirectoryURL).toURI().getPath();
        } catch (URISyntaxException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        return fullFilePath;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object using an S3Client.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously copies an object from one S3 bucket to another.
    *
    * @param fromBucket the name of the source S3 bucket
    * @param objectKey  the key (name) of the object to be copied
    * @param toBucket   the name of the destination S3 bucket
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the copy result as a
{@link String}
    * @throws RuntimeException if the URL could not be encoded or an S3 exception
occurred during the copy
    */
   public CompletableFuture<String> copyBucketObjectAsync(String fromBucket, String
objectKey, String toBucket) {
       CopyObjectRequest copyReq = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
           .sourceBucket(fromBucket)
           .sourceKey(objectKey)
           .destinationBucket(toBucket)
           .destinationKey(objectKey)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CopyObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().copyObject(copyReq);
       response.whenComplete((copyRes, ex) -> {
           if (copyRes != null) {
               logger.info("The " + objectKey + " was copied to " + toBucket);
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during copy",
ex);
           }
       });

       return response.thenApply(CopyObjectResponse::copyObjectResult)
```

```
            .thenApply(Object::toString);
    }
```

Use an S3TransferManager to copy an object from one bucket to another. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CopyObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedCopy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.Copy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CopyRequest;

import java.util.UUID;

    public String copyObject(S3TransferManager transferManager, String bucketName,
            String key, String destinationBucket, String destinationKey) {
        CopyObjectRequest copyObjectRequest = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
                .sourceBucket(bucketName)
                .sourceKey(key)
                .destinationBucket(destinationBucket)
                .destinationKey(destinationKey)
                .build();

        CopyRequest copyRequest = CopyRequest.builder()
                .copyObjectRequest(copyObjectRequest)
                .build();

        Copy copy = transferManager.copy(copyRequest);

        CompletedCopy completedCopy = copy.completionFuture().join();
        return completedCopy.response().copyObjectResult().eTag();
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket.

```
   /**
    * Creates an S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to create
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket is created
and ready
    * @throws RuntimeException if there is a failure while creating the bucket
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> createBucketAsync(String bucketName) {
       CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
       return response.thenCompose(resp -> {
           S3AsyncWaiter s3Waiter = getAsyncClient().waiter();
           HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .build();

           CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
waiterResponseFuture =
               s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
           return waiterResponseFuture.thenAccept(waiterResponse -> {
               waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(headBucketResponse ->
{
                   logger.info(bucketName + " is ready");
```

```
                });
            });
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to create bucket", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

Create a bucket with object lock enabled.

```
    // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock options.
    public void createBucketWithLockOptions(boolean enableObjectLock, String
 bucketName) {
        S3Waiter s3Waiter = getClient().waiter();
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockEnabledForBucket(enableObjectLock)
            .build();

        getClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
        s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
        System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param bucket the name of the bucket to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket deletion
is successful, or throws a {@link RuntimeException}
    * if an error occurs during the deletion process
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucketAsync(String bucket) {
       DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucket)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteBucketResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
       response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
           if (deleteRes != null) {
               logger.info(bucket + " was deleted.");
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during bucket
deletion", ex);
           }
       });
       return response.thenApply(r -> null);
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketPolicyRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class DeleteBucketPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName>

                Where:
                    bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to delete the policy from (for
 example, bucket1).""";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Deleting policy from bucket: \"%s\"\n\n", bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
```

```
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        deleteS3BucketPolicy(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the S3 bucket policy for the specified bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the {@link S3Client} instance to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket for which the policy should be
 deleted
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error deleting the bucket policy
     */
    public static void deleteS3BucketPolicy(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketPolicyRequest delReq = DeleteBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        try {
            s3.deleteBucketPolicy(delReq);
            System.out.println("Done!");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketWebsite`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class DeleteWebsiteConfiguration {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:     <bucketName>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to delete the website
 configuration from.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Deleting website configuration for Amazon S3 bucket: %s
\n", bucketName);
```

```
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        deleteBucketWebsiteConfig(s3, bucketName);
        System.out.println("Done!");
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the website configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The {@link S3Client} instance used to interact with Amazon S3.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket for which the website
 configuration should be deleted.
     * @throws S3Exception If an error occurs while deleting the website
 configuration.
     */
    public static void deleteBucketWebsiteConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest delReq = DeleteBucketWebsiteRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        try {
            s3.deleteBucketWebsite(delReq);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.out.println("Failed to delete website configuration!");
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an object from an S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
    * @param key        the key (file name) of the object to be deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object has been
deleted
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteObjectFromBucketAsync(String bucketName,
String key) {
       DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(key)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<DeleteObjectResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);
       response.whenComplete((deleteRes, ex) -> {
           if (deleteRes != null) {
               logger.info(key + " was deleted");
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("An S3 exception occurred during delete",
ex);
           }
       });

       return response.thenApply(r -> null);
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Delete;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class DeleteMultiObjects {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <bucketName>

            Where:
               bucketName - the Amazon S3 bucket name.
            """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        deleteBucketObjects(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes multiple objects from an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 An Amazon S3 client object.
     * @param bucketName The name of the Amazon S3 bucket to delete objects from.
     */
    public static void deleteBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        // Upload three sample objects to the specfied Amazon S3 bucket.
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> keys = new ArrayList<>();
        PutObjectRequest putOb;
        ObjectIdentifier objectId;

        for (int i = 0; i < 3; i++) {
            String keyName = "delete object example " + i;
            objectId = ObjectIdentifier.builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromString(keyName));
            keys.add(objectId);
        }

        System.out.println(keys.size() + " objects successfully created.");
```

```
        // Delete multiple objects in one request.
        Delete del = Delete.builder()
            .objects(keys)
            .build();

        try {
            DeleteObjectsRequest multiObjectDeleteRequest =
 DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .delete(del)
                .build();

            s3.deleteObjects(multiObjectDeleteRequest);
            System.out.println("Multiple objects are deleted!");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketAcl`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAclRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAclResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Grant;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class GetAcl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <objectKey>

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to get the access control list (ACL)
 for.
              objectKey - The object to get the ACL for.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String objectKey = args[1];
        System.out.println("Retrieving ACL for object: " + objectKey);
        System.out.println("in bucket: " + bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getBucketACL(s3, objectKey, bucketName);
        s3.close();
        System.out.println("Done!");
```

```
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the Access Control List (ACL) for an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service.
     * @param objectKey The key of the object for which the ACL is to be retrieved.
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket containing the object.
     * @return The ID of the grantee who has permission on the object, or an empty
 string if an error occurs.
     */
    public static String getBucketACL(S3Client s3, String objectKey, String
 bucketName) {
        try {
            GetObjectAclRequest aclReq = GetObjectAclRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

            GetObjectAclResponse aclRes = s3.getObjectAcl(aclReq);
            List<Grant> grants = aclRes.grants();
            String grantee = "";
            for (Grant grant : grants) {
                System.out.format("  %s: %s\n", grant.grantee().id(),
 grant.permission());
                grantee = grant.grantee().id();
            }

            return grantee;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetBucketPolicy

The following code example shows how to use GetBucketPolicy.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class GetBucketPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to get the policy from.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String bucketName = args[0];
        System.out.format("Getting policy for bucket: \"%s\"\n\n", bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        String polText = getPolicy(s3, bucketName);
        System.out.println("Policy Text: " + polText);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the policy for the specified Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the {@link S3Client} instance to use for making the request
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket for which to retrieve the policy
     * @return the policy text for the specified bucket, or an empty string if an
 error occurs
     */
    public static String getPolicy(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        String policyText;
        System.out.format("Getting policy for bucket: \"%s\"\n\n", bucketName);
        GetBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = GetBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        try {
            GetBucketPolicyResponse policyRes = s3.getBucketPolicy(policyReq);
            policyText = policyRes.policy();
            return policyText;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

GetBucketReplication

The following code example shows how to use GetBucketReplication.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Retrieves the replication details for the specified S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param s3Client           the S3 client used to interact with the S3 service
    * @param sourceBucketName   the name of the S3 bucket to retrieve the
replication details for
    *
    * @throws S3Exception if there is an error retrieving the replication details
    */
   public static void getReplicationDetails(S3Client s3Client, String
sourceBucketName) {
       GetBucketReplicationRequest getRequest =
GetBucketReplicationRequest.builder()
           .bucket(sourceBucketName)
           .build();

       try {
           ReplicationConfiguration replicationConfig =
s3Client.getBucketReplication(getRequest).replicationConfiguration();
           ReplicationRule rule = replicationConfig.rules().get(0);
           System.out.println("Retrieved destination bucket: " +
rule.destination().bucket());
           System.out.println("Retrieved priority: " + rule.priority());
           System.out.println("Retrieved source-bucket replication rule status: " +
rule.status());

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           System.err.println("Failed to retrieve replication details: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketReplication in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Read data as a byte array using an S3Client.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously retrieves the bytes of an object from an Amazon S3 bucket and
writes them to a local file.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
    * @param keyName    the key (or name) of the S3 object to retrieve
    * @param path       the local file path where the object's bytes will be
written
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object bytes have
been written to the local file
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> getObjectBytesAsync(String bucketName, String
keyName, String path) {
       GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
           .key(keyName)
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse>> response =
getAsyncClient().getObject(objectRequest, AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes());
       return response.thenAccept(objectBytes -> {
           try {
               byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();
```

```
                Path filePath = Paths.get(path);
                Files.write(filePath, data);
                logger.info("Successfully obtained bytes from an S3 object");
            } catch (IOException ex) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to write data to file", ex);
            }
        }).whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to get object bytes from S3",
 ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

Use an S3TransferManager to download an object in an S3 bucket to a local file. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedFileDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DownloadFileRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.UUID;

    public Long downloadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String bucketName,
                             String key, String downloadedFileWithPath) {
        DownloadFileRequest downloadFileRequest = DownloadFileRequest.builder()
                .getObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
                .destination(Paths.get(downloadedFileWithPath))
                .build();
```

```
        FileDownload downloadFile =
 transferManager.downloadFile(downloadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileDownload downloadResult =
 downloadFile.completionFuture().join();
        logger.info("Content length [{}]",
 downloadResult.response().contentLength());
        return downloadResult.response().contentLength();
    }
```

Read tags that belong to an object using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectTaggingRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectTaggingResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Tag;

import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class GetObjectTags {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - A key name that represents the object.\s
            """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listTags(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Lists the tags associated with an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket that contains the object
     * @param keyName the key (name) of the S3 object
     */
    public static void listTags(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try {
            GetObjectTaggingRequest getTaggingRequest = GetObjectTaggingRequest
                .builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            GetObjectTaggingResponse tags = s3.getObjectTagging(getTaggingRequest);
            List<Tag> tagSet = tags.tagSet();
            for (Tag tag : tagSet) {
                System.out.println(tag.key());
                System.out.println(tag.value());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

Get a URL for an object using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.net.URL;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class GetObjectUrl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.
                keyName - A key name that represents the object.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
```

```
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getURL(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the URL for a specific object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored
     * @param keyName the name of the object for which the URL should be retrieved
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error retrieving the URL for the specified
 object
     */
    public static void getURL(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try {
            GetUrlRequest request = GetUrlRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            URL url = s3.utilities().getUrl(request);
            System.out.println("The URL for  " + keyName + " is " + url);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Get an object by using the S3Presigner client object using an S3Client.

```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
import java.time.Duration;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.GetObjectPresignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedGetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.IoUtils;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetObjectPresignedUrl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String USAGE = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - A key name that represents a text file.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getPresignedUrl(presigner, bucketName, keyName);
        presigner.close();
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Generates a pre-signed URL for an Amazon S3 object.
    *
    * @param presigner The {@link S3Presigner} instance to use for generating the
pre-signed URL.
    * @param bucketName The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the object is
stored.
    * @param keyName The key name (file name) of the object in the Amazon S3
bucket.
    *
    * @throws S3Exception If there is an error interacting with the Amazon S3
service.
    * @throws IOException If there is an error opening the HTTP connection or
reading/writing the request/response.
    */
   public static void getPresignedUrl(S3Presigner presigner, String bucketName,
String keyName) {
       try {
           GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .key(keyName)
               .build();

           GetObjectPresignRequest getObjectPresignRequest =
GetObjectPresignRequest.builder()
               .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(60))
               .getObjectRequest(getObjectRequest)
               .build();

           PresignedGetObjectRequest presignedGetObjectRequest =
presigner.presignGetObject(getObjectPresignRequest);
           String theUrl = presignedGetObjectRequest.url().toString();
           System.out.println("Presigned URL: " + theUrl);
           HttpURLConnection connection = (HttpURLConnection)
presignedGetObjectRequest.url().openConnection();
           presignedGetObjectRequest.httpRequest().headers().forEach((header,
values) -> {
               values.forEach(value -> {
                   connection.addRequestProperty(header, value);
               });
           });

           // Send any request payload that the service needs (not needed when
           // isBrowserExecutable is true).
```

```
            if (presignedGetObjectRequest.signedPayload().isPresent()) {
                connection.setDoOutput(true);

                try (InputStream signedPayload =
 presignedGetObjectRequest.signedPayload().get().asInputStream();
                     OutputStream httpOutputStream = connection.getOutputStream()) {
                    IoUtils.copy(signedPayload, httpOutputStream);
                }
            }

            // Download the result of executing the request.
            try (InputStream content = connection.getInputStream()) {
                System.out.println("Service returned response: ");
                IoUtils.copy(content, System.out);
            }

        } catch (S3Exception | IOException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }
}
```

Get an object by using a ResponseTransformer object and S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.ResponseTransformer;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;

import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class GetObjectData {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName> <path>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - The key name.\s
                path - The path where the file is written to.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        String path = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getObjectBytes(s3, bucketName, keyName, path);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the bytes of an object stored in an Amazon S3 bucket and saves them
 to a local file.
     *
     * @param s3 The S3Client instance used to interact with the Amazon S3 service.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
     * @param keyName The key (or name) of the S3 object.
     * @param path The local file path where the object's bytes will be saved.
```

```
     * @throws IOException If an I/O error occurs while writing the bytes to the
 local file.
     * @throws S3Exception If an error occurs while retrieving the object from the
 S3 bucket.
     */
    public static void getObjectBytes(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 keyName, String path) {
        try {
            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest
                .builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
 s3.getObject(objectRequest, ResponseTransformer.toBytes());
            byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();

            // Write the data to a local file.
            File myFile = new File(path);
            OutputStream os = new FileOutputStream(myFile);
            os.write(data);
            System.out.println("Successfully obtained bytes from an S3 object");
            os.close();

        } catch (IOException ex) {
            ex.printStackTrace();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
   public ObjectLockLegalHold getObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String
objectKey) {
       try {
           GetObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
GetObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .key(objectKey)
               .build();

           GetObjectLegalHoldResponse response =
getClient().getObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest);
           System.out.println("Object legal hold for " + objectKey + " in " +
bucketName +
               ":\n\tStatus: " + response.legalHold().status());
           return response.legalHold();

       } catch (S3Exception ex) {
           System.out.println("\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '" + ex.getMessage() +
"'");
       }

       return null;
   }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
   public void getBucketObjectLockConfiguration(String bucketName) {
       GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest objectLockConfigurationRequest =
GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       GetObjectLockConfigurationResponse response =
getClient().getObjectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfigurationRequest);
       System.out.println("Bucket object lock config for "+bucketName +":  ");
       System.out.println("\tEnabled:
"+response.objectLockConfiguration().objectLockEnabled());
       System.out.println("\tRule: "+
response.objectLockConfiguration().rule().defaultRetention());
   }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectRetention`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get the retention period for an S3 object.
```

```
    public ObjectLockRetention getObjectRetention(String bucketName, String key){
        try {
            GetObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
GetObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .build();

            GetObjectRetentionResponse response =
getClient().getObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
            System.out.println("tObject retention for "+key +" in "+ bucketName +":
" + response.retention().mode() +" until "+ response.retention().retainUntilDate()
+".");
            return response.retention();

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return null;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`HeadObject`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Determine the content type of an object.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetObjectContentType {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - The key name.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        getContentType(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the content type of an object stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 an instance of the {@link S3Client} class, which is used to
 interact with the Amazon S3 service
```

```
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored
     * @param keyName the key (file name) of the object in the S3 bucket
     */
    public static void getContentType(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 keyName) {
        try {
            HeadObjectRequest objectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .key(keyName)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            HeadObjectResponse objectHead = s3.headObject(objectRequest);
            String type = objectHead.contentType();
            System.out.println("The object content type is " + type);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Get the restore status of an object.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

public class GetObjectRestoreStatus {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - A key name that represents the object.\s
            """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        checkStatus(s3, bucketName, keyName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Checks the restoration status of an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param s3         an instance of the {@link S3Client} class used to interact
 with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the object is stored
     * @param keyName    the name of the Amazon S3 object to be checked
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while interacting with the Amazon S3
 service
     */
    public static void checkStatus(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try {
            HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .build();

            HeadObjectResponse response = s3.headObject(headObjectRequest);
            System.out.println("The Amazon S3 object restoration status is " +
 response.restore());

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.paginators.ListBucketsIterable;
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListBuckets {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listAllBuckets(s3);

    }

    /**
     * Lists all the S3 buckets available in the current AWS account.
     *
```

```
     * @param s3 The {@link S3Client} instance to use for interacting with the
 Amazon S3 service.
     */
    public static void listAllBuckets(S3Client s3) {
        ListBucketsIterable response = s3.listBucketsPaginator();
        response.buckets().forEach(bucket ->
            System.out.println("Bucket Name: " + bucket.name()));
    }
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListMultipartUploads`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMultipartUploads`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class ListMultipartUploads {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName>\s

                Where:
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket where an in-
progress multipart upload is occurring.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
        listUploads(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Lists the multipart uploads currently in progress in the specified Amazon S3
 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket to list the multipart
 uploads for
     */
    public static void listUploads(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
 ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
 s3.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
            List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();
            for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
```

```
                System.out.println("Upload in progress: Key = \"" + upload.key() +
 "\", id = " + upload.uploadId());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMultipartUploads in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously lists all objects in the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to list objects for
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when all objects have been
 listed
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> listAllObjectsAsync(String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request initialRequest = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .maxKeys(1)
            .build();

        ListObjectsV2Publisher paginator =
 getAsyncClient().listObjectsV2Paginator(initialRequest);
```

```
        return paginator.subscribe(response -> {
            response.contents().forEach(s3Object -> {
                logger.info("Object key: " + s3Object.key());
            });
        }).thenRun(() -> {
            logger.info("Successfully listed all objects in the bucket: " +
 bucketName);
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to list objects", ex);
        });
    }
```

List objects using pagination.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.paginators.ListObjectsV2Iterable;

public class ListObjectsPaginated {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket from which objects are read.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
```

```
        listBucketObjects(s3, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Lists the objects in the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to list the objects from
     */
    public static void listBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            ListObjectsV2Request listReq = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .maxKeys(1)
                .build();

            ListObjectsV2Iterable listRes = s3.listObjectsV2Paginator(listReq);
            listRes.stream()
                .flatMap(r -> r.contents().stream())
                .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Key: " + content.key() + "
 size = " + content.size()));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AccessControlPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Grant;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Permission;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketAclRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Type;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SetAcl {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <id>\s

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to grant permissions on.\s
              id - The ID of the owner of this bucket (you can get this value from
 the AWS Management Console).
            """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String id = args[1];
        System.out.format("Setting access \n");
        System.out.println(" in bucket: " + bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setBucketAcl(s3, bucketName, id);
        System.out.println("Done!");
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the Access Control List (ACL) for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client instance to be used for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to set the ACL for
     * @param id the ID of the AWS user or account that will be granted full control
of the bucket
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while setting the bucket ACL
     */
    public static void setBucketAcl(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String id) {
        try {
            Grant ownerGrant = Grant.builder()
                .grantee(builder -> builder.id(id)
                    .type(Type.CANONICAL_USER))
                .permission(Permission.FULL_CONTROL)
                .build();

            List<Grant> grantList2 = new ArrayList<>();
            grantList2.add(ownerGrant);

            AccessControlPolicy acl = AccessControlPolicy.builder()
                .owner(builder -> builder.id(id))
                .grants(grantList2)
                .build();
```

```
            PutBucketAclRequest putAclReq = PutBucketAclRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .accessControlPolicy(acl)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketAcl(putAclReq);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketCors`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketCorsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketCorsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketCorsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CORSRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CORSConfiguration;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketCorsRequest;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class S3Cors {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <accountId>\s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to upload an object into.
                accountId - The id of the account that owns the Amazon S3 bucket.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setCorsInformation(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        getBucketCorsInformation(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        deleteBucketCorsInformation(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) configuration for an Amazon
 S3 bucket.
     *
```

```
    * @param s3            the {@link S3Client} instance used to interact with the
Amazon S3 service
    * @param bucketName    the name of the Amazon S3 bucket for which the CORS
configuration should be deleted
    * @param accountId     the expected AWS account ID of the bucket owner
    *
    * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while deleting the CORS configuration
for the bucket
    */
   public static void deleteBucketCorsInformation(S3Client s3, String bucketName,
String accountId) {
       try {
           DeleteBucketCorsRequest bucketCorsRequest =
DeleteBucketCorsRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .build();

           s3.deleteBucketCors(bucketCorsRequest);

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }

   /**
    * Retrieves the CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) configuration for the
specified S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param s3 the S3Client instance to use for the operation
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to retrieve the CORS
configuration for
    * @param accountId the expected bucket owner's account ID
    *
    * @throws S3Exception if there is an error retrieving the CORS configuration
    */
   public static void getBucketCorsInformation(S3Client s3, String bucketName,
String accountId) {
       try {
           GetBucketCorsRequest bucketCorsRequest = GetBucketCorsRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .build();
```

```
            GetBucketCorsResponse corsResponse =
s3.getBucketCors(bucketCorsRequest);
            List<CORSRule> corsRules = corsResponse.corsRules();
            for (CORSRule rule : corsRules) {
                System.out.println("allowOrigins: " + rule.allowedOrigins());
                System.out.println("AllowedMethod: " + rule.allowedMethods());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {

            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Sets the Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) rules for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket to set the CORS rules for.
     * @param accountId The AWS account ID of the bucket owner.
     */
    public static void setCorsInformation(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
        List<String> allowMethods = new ArrayList<>();
        allowMethods.add("PUT");
        allowMethods.add("POST");
        allowMethods.add("DELETE");

        List<String> allowOrigins = new ArrayList<>();
        allowOrigins.add("http://example.com");
        try {
            // Define CORS rules.
            CORSRule corsRule = CORSRule.builder()
                .allowedMethods(allowMethods)
                .allowedOrigins(allowOrigins)
                .build();

            List<CORSRule> corsRules = new ArrayList<>();
            corsRules.add(corsRule);
            CORSConfiguration configuration = CORSConfiguration.builder()
                .corsRules(corsRules)
                .build();
```

```
            PutBucketCorsRequest putBucketCorsRequest =
 PutBucketCorsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .corsConfiguration(configuration)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketCors(putBucketCorsRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRuleFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Transition;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketLifecycleRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.TransitionStorageClass;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpirationStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketLifecycleConfiguration;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class LifecycleConfiguration {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <accountId>\s

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to
 upload an object into.
              accountId - The id of the account that owns the Amazon S3 bucket.
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();
```

```
        setLifecycleConfig(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        getLifecycleConfig(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        deleteLifecycleConfig(s3, bucketName, accountId);
        System.out.println("You have successfully created, updated, and deleted a
Lifecycle configuration");
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the lifecycle configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3           The Amazon S3 client to use for the operation.
     * @param bucketName   The name of the Amazon S3 bucket.
     * @param accountId    The expected owner of the Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error setting the lifecycle configuration.
     */
    public static void setLifecycleConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
        try {
            // Create a rule to archive objects with the "glacierobjects/" prefix to
the
            // S3 Glacier Flexible Retrieval storage class immediately.
            LifecycleRuleFilter ruleFilter = LifecycleRuleFilter.builder()
                .prefix("glacierobjects/")
                .build();

            Transition transition = Transition.builder()
                .storageClass(TransitionStorageClass.GLACIER)
                .days(0)
                .build();

            LifecycleRule rule1 = LifecycleRule.builder()
                .id("Archive immediately rule")
                .filter(ruleFilter)
                .transitions(transition)
                .status(ExpirationStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

            // Create a second rule.
            Transition transition2 = Transition.builder()
                .storageClass(TransitionStorageClass.GLACIER)
                .days(0)
                .build();
```

```
            List<Transition> transitionList = new ArrayList<>();
            transitionList.add(transition2);

            LifecycleRuleFilter ruleFilter2 = LifecycleRuleFilter.builder()
                .prefix("glacierobjects/")
                .build();

            LifecycleRule rule2 = LifecycleRule.builder()
                .id("Archive and then delete rule")
                .filter(ruleFilter2)
                .transitions(transitionList)
                .status(ExpirationStatus.ENABLED)
                .build();

            // Add the LifecycleRule objects to an ArrayList.
            ArrayList<LifecycleRule> ruleList = new ArrayList<>();
            ruleList.add(rule1);
            ruleList.add(rule2);

            BucketLifecycleConfiguration lifecycleConfiguration =
BucketLifecycleConfiguration.builder()
                .rules(ruleList)
                .build();

            PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest = PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
                .builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .lifecycleConfiguration(lifecycleConfiguration)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();


s3.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Retrieves the lifecycle configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket and adds a new
lifecycle rule to it.
    *
    * @param s3 the S3Client instance used to interact with Amazon S3
    * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket
    * @param accountId the expected owner of the Amazon S3 bucket
    */
   public static void getLifecycleConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
       try {
           GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
getBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest = GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
               .builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .build();

           GetBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse response = s3

.getBucketLifecycleConfiguration(getBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest);
           List<LifecycleRule> newList = new ArrayList<>();
           List<LifecycleRule> rules = response.rules();
           for (LifecycleRule rule : rules) {
               newList.add(rule);
           }

           // Add a new rule with both a prefix predicate and a tag predicate.
           LifecycleRuleFilter ruleFilter = LifecycleRuleFilter.builder()
               .prefix("YearlyDocuments/")
               .build();

           Transition transition = Transition.builder()
               .storageClass(TransitionStorageClass.GLACIER)
               .days(3650)
               .build();

           LifecycleRule rule1 = LifecycleRule.builder()
               .id("NewRule")
               .filter(ruleFilter)
               .transitions(transition)
               .status(ExpirationStatus.ENABLED)
               .build();

           // Add the new rule to the list.
```

```
            newList.add(rule1);
            BucketLifecycleConfiguration lifecycleConfiguration =
BucketLifecycleConfiguration.builder()
                .rules(newList)
                .build();

            PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest = PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest
                .builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .lifecycleConfiguration(lifecycleConfiguration)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();


s3.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(putBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the lifecycle configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 the {@link S3Client} to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
     * @param accountId the expected account owner of the S3 bucket
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while deleting the lifecycle
configuration
     */
    public static void deleteLifecycleConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
accountId) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketLifecycleRequest deleteBucketLifecycleRequest =
DeleteBucketLifecycleRequest
                .builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                .build();

            s3.deleteBucketLifecycle(deleteBucketLifecycleRequest);
```

```
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.List;

import com.fasterxml.jackson.core.JsonParser;
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SetBucketPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <polFile>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to set the policy on.
                polFile - A JSON file containing the policy (see the Amazon S3
 Readme for an example).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String polFile = args[1];
        String policyText = getBucketPolicyFromFile(polFile);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setPolicy(s3, bucketName, policyText);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the policy for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3         the {@link S3Client} object used to interact with the
 Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket
     * @param policyText the text of the policy to be set on the bucket
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error setting the bucket policy
     */
```

```
    public static void setPolicy(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String policyText)
{
        System.out.println("Setting policy:");
        System.out.println("----");
        System.out.println(policyText);
        System.out.println("----");
        System.out.format("On Amazon S3 bucket: \"%s\"\n", bucketName);

        try {
            PutBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = PutBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .policy(policyText)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketPolicy(policyReq);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("Done!");
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the bucket policy from a specified file.
     *
     * @param policyFile the path to the file containing the bucket policy
     * @return the content of the bucket policy file as a string
     */
    public static String getBucketPolicyFromFile(String policyFile) {
        StringBuilder fileText = new StringBuilder();
        try {
            List<String> lines = Files.readAllLines(Paths.get(policyFile),
StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
            for (String line : lines) {
                fileText.append(line);
            }

        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.out.format("Problem reading file: \"%s\"", policyFile);
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
        }
```

```
        try {
            final JsonParser parser = new
 ObjectMapper().getFactory().createParser(fileText.toString());
            while (parser.nextToken() != null) {
            }

        } catch (IOException jpe) {
            jpe.printStackTrace();
        }
        return fileText.toString();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketReplication`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketReplication`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Sets the replication configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client             the S3Client instance to use for the operation
     * @param sourceBucketName     the name of the source bucket
     * @param destBucketName       the name of the destination bucket
     * @param destinationBucketARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the destination
 bucket
     * @param roleARN              the ARN of the IAM role to use for the
 replication configuration
     */
    public static void setReplication(S3Client s3Client, String sourceBucketName,
 String destBucketName, String destinationBucketARN, String roleARN) {
        try {
```

```
            Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .bucket(destinationBucketARN)
                .storageClass(StorageClass.STANDARD)
                .build();

            // Define a prefix filter for replication.
            ReplicationRuleFilter ruleFilter = ReplicationRuleFilter.builder()
                .prefix("documents/")
                .build();

            // Define delete marker replication setting.
            DeleteMarkerReplication deleteMarkerReplication =
DeleteMarkerReplication.builder()
                .status(DeleteMarkerReplicationStatus.DISABLED)
                .build();

            // Create the replication rule.
            ReplicationRule replicationRule = ReplicationRule.builder()
                .priority(1)
                .filter(ruleFilter)
                .status(ReplicationRuleStatus.ENABLED)
                .deleteMarkerReplication(deleteMarkerReplication)
                .destination(destination)
                .build();

            List<ReplicationRule> replicationRuleList = new ArrayList<>();
            replicationRuleList.add(replicationRule);

            // Define the replication configuration with IAM role.
            ReplicationConfiguration configuration =
ReplicationConfiguration.builder()
                .role(roleARN)
                .rules(replicationRuleList)
                .build();

            // Apply the replication configuration to the source bucket.
            PutBucketReplicationRequest replicationRequest =
PutBucketReplicationRequest.builder()
                .bucket(sourceBucketName)
                .replicationConfiguration(configuration)
                .build();

            s3Client.putBucketReplication(replicationRequest);
            System.out.println("Replication configuration set successfully.");
```

```
        } catch (IllegalArgumentException e) {
            System.err.println("Configuration error: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println("S3 Exception: " +
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.err.println("Status Code: " + e.statusCode());
            System.err.println("Error Code: " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());


        } catch (SdkException e) {
            System.err.println("SDK Exception: " + e.getMessage());
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketReplication in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketVersioning`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketVersioning`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Enables bucket versioning for the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client the S3 client to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to enable versioning for
     */
    public static void enableBucketVersioning(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName){
        VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
            .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
            .build();
```

```
        PutBucketVersioningRequest versioningRequest =
 PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
            .build();

        s3Client.putBucketVersioning(versioningRequest);
        System.out.println("Bucket versioning has been enabled for "+bucketName);
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketVersioning in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.IndexDocument;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketWebsiteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.WebsiteConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class SetWebsiteConfiguration {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:    <bucketName> [indexdoc]\s

            Where:
               bucketName   - The Amazon S3 bucket to set the website configuration
 on.\s
               indexdoc - The index document, ex. 'index.html'
                          If not specified, 'index.html' will be set.
            """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String indexDoc = "index.html";
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setWebsiteConfig(s3, bucketName, indexDoc);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the website configuration for an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 The {@link S3Client} instance to use for the AWS SDK operations.
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket to configure.
     * @param indexDoc The name of the index document to use for the website
 configuration.
     */
    public static void setWebsiteConfig(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 indexDoc) {
        try {
            WebsiteConfiguration websiteConfig = WebsiteConfiguration.builder()
                .indexDocument(IndexDocument.builder().suffix(indexDoc).build())
                .build();
```

```
            PutBucketWebsiteRequest pubWebsiteReq =
 PutBucketWebsiteRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .websiteConfiguration(websiteConfig)
                .build();

            s3.putBucketWebsite(pubWebsiteReq);
            System.out.println("The call was successful");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload a file to a bucket using an S3Client.

```
    /**
     * Uploads a local file to an AWS S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param key        the key (object name) to use for the uploaded file
     * @param objectPath the local file path of the file to be uploaded
```

```
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
 PutObjectResponse} when the upload is successful, or throws a {@link
 RuntimeException} if the upload fails
     */
    public CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> uploadLocalFileAsync(String
 bucketName, String key, String objectPath) {
        PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> response =
 getAsyncClient().putObject(objectRequest,
 AsyncRequestBody.fromFile(Paths.get(objectPath)));
        return response.whenComplete((resp, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to upload file", ex);
            }
        });
    }
```

Use an S3TransferManager to upload a file to a bucket. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedFileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadFileRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.UUID;

    public String uploadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String bucketName,
                             String key, URI filePathURI) {
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
            .source(Paths.get(filePathURI))
            .build();
```

```
        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileUpload uploadResult = fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        return uploadResult.response().eTag();
    }
```

Upload an object to a bucket and set tags using an S3Client.

```
    /**
     * Puts tags on an Amazon S3 object.
     *
     * @param s3 An {@link S3Client} object that represents the Amazon S3 client.
     * @param bucketName The name of the Amazon S3 bucket.
     * @param objectKey The key of the Amazon S3 object.
     * @param objectPath The file path of the object to be uploaded.
     */
    public static void putS3ObjectTags(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
objectKey, String objectPath) {
        try {
            Tag tag1 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 1")
                .value("This is tag 1")
                .build();

            Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 2")
                .value("This is tag 2")
                .build();

            List<Tag> tags = new ArrayList<>();
            tags.add(tag1);
            tags.add(tag2);

            Tagging allTags = Tagging.builder()
                .tagSet(tags)
                .build();

            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .tagging(allTags)
```

```
                .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromBytes(getObjectFile(objectPath)));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates the tags associated with an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3 an instance of the S3Client class, which is used to interact with
the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
     * @param objectKey the key (or name) of the object in the S3 bucket
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error updating the object's tags
     */
    public static void updateObjectTags(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
objectKey) {
        try {
            GetObjectTaggingRequest taggingRequest =
GetObjectTaggingRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

            GetObjectTaggingResponse getTaggingRes =
s3.getObjectTagging(taggingRequest);
            List<Tag> obTags = getTaggingRes.tagSet();
            for (Tag sinTag : obTags) {
                System.out.println("The tag key is: " + sinTag.key());
                System.out.println("The tag value is: " + sinTag.value());
            }

            // Replace the object's tags with two new tags.
            Tag tag3 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 3")
                .value("This is tag 3")
                .build();

            Tag tag4 = Tag.builder()
                .key("Tag 4")
```

```
                .value("This is tag 4")
                .build();

            List<Tag> tags = new ArrayList<>();
            tags.add(tag3);
            tags.add(tag4);

            Tagging updatedTags = Tagging.builder()
                .tagSet(tags)
                .build();

            PutObjectTaggingRequest taggingRequest1 =
PutObjectTaggingRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .tagging(updatedTags)
                .build();

            s3.putObjectTagging(taggingRequest1);
            GetObjectTaggingResponse getTaggingRes2 =
s3.getObjectTagging(taggingRequest);
            List<Tag> modTags = getTaggingRes2.tagSet();
            for (Tag sinTag : modTags) {
                System.out.println("The tag key is: " + sinTag.key());
                System.out.println("The tag value is: " + sinTag.value());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the contents of a file as a byte array.
     *
     * @param filePath the path of the file to be read
     * @return a byte array containing the contents of the file, or null if an error
occurs
     */
    private static byte[] getObjectFile(String filePath) {
        FileInputStream fileInputStream = null;
        byte[] bytesArray = null;
```

```
        try {
            File file = new File(filePath);
            bytesArray = new byte[(int) file.length()];
            fileInputStream = new FileInputStream(file);
            fileInputStream.read(bytesArray);

        } catch (IOException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        } finally {
            if (fileInputStream != null) {
                try {
                    fileInputStream.close();
                } catch (IOException e) {
                    e.printStackTrace();
                }
            }
        }

        return bytesArray;
    }
}
```

Upload an object to a bucket and set metadata using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.File;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
```

```
 */
public class PutObjectMetadata {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String USAGE = """

            Usage:
              <bucketName> <objectKey> <objectPath>\s

            Where:
              bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to upload an object into.
              objectKey - The object to upload (for example, book.pdf).
              objectPath - The path where the file is located (for example, C:/AWS/
book2.pdf).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String objectKey = args[1];
        String objectPath = args[2];
        System.out.println("Putting object " + objectKey + " into bucket " +
 bucketName);
        System.out.println("  in bucket: " + bucketName);
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        putS3Object(s3, bucketName, objectKey, objectPath);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket with metadata.
     *
     * @param s3 the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the object to
     * @param objectKey the name of the object to be uploaded
     * @param objectPath the local file path of the object to be uploaded
     */
```

```
    public static void putS3Object(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String objectKey,
 String objectPath) {
        try {
            Map<String, String> metadata = new HashMap<>();
            metadata.put("author", "Mary Doe");
            metadata.put("version", "1.0.0.0");

            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .metadata(metadata)
                .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromFile(new File(objectPath)));
            System.out.println("Successfully placed " + objectKey + " into bucket "
 + bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Upload an object to a bucket and set an object retention value using an S3Client.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRetentionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetention;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.LocalDate;
import java.time.LocalDateTime;
import java.time.ZoneOffset;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
```

```
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class PutObjectRetention {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <key> <bucketName>\s

            Where:
                key - The name of the object (for example, book.pdf).\s
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name that contains the object (for
 example, bucket1).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String key = args[0];
        String bucketName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        setRentionPeriod(s3, key, bucketName);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sets the retention period for an object in an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3     the S3Client object used to interact with the Amazon S3 service
     * @param key    the key (name) of the object in the S3 bucket
     * @param bucket the name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored
     *
     * @throws S3Exception if an error occurs while setting the object retention
 period
     */
```

```
    public static void setRentionPeriod(S3Client s3, String key, String bucket) {
        try {
            LocalDate localDate = LocalDate.parse("2020-07-17");
            LocalDateTime localDateTime = localDate.atStartOfDay();
            Instant instant = localDateTime.toInstant(ZoneOffset.UTC);

            ObjectLockRetention lockRetention = ObjectLockRetention.builder()
                .mode("COMPLIANCE")
                .retainUntilDate(instant)
                .build();

            PutObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
 PutObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucket)
                .key(key)
                .bypassGovernanceRetention(true)
                .retention(lockRetention)
                .build();

            // To set Retention on an object, the Amazon S3 bucket must support
 object
            // locking, otherwise an exception is thrown.
            s3.putObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
            System.out.print("An object retention configuration was successfully
 placed on the object");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PutObjectLegalHold

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
   public void modifyObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String objectKey, boolean
legalHoldOn) {
       ObjectLockLegalHold legalHold ;
       if (legalHoldOn) {
           legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
               .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON)
               .build();
       } else {
           legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
               .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.OFF)
               .build();
       }

       PutObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
PutObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(objectKey)
           .legalHold(legalHold)
           .build();

       getClient().putObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest) ;
       System.out.println("Modified legal hold for "+ objectKey +" in "+bucketName
+".");
   }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set the object lock configuration of a bucket.

```
   // Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
   public void enableObjectLockOnBucket(String bucketName) {
       try {
           VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
               .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
               .build();

           PutBucketVersioningRequest putBucketVersioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
               .build();

           // Enable versioning on the bucket.
           getClient().putBucketVersioning(putBucketVersioningRequest);
           PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest request =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .objectLockConfiguration(ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
                   .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
                   .build())
               .build();

           getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(request);
           System.out.println("Successfully enabled object lock on "+bucketName);

       } catch (S3Exception ex) {
           System.out.println("Error modifying object lock: '" + ex.getMessage() +
"'");
       }
   }
```

Set the default retention period of a bucket.

```
   // Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
   public void modifyBucketDefaultRetention(String bucketName) {
       VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
           .mfaDelete(MFADelete.DISABLED)
           .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
           .build();

       PutBucketVersioningRequest versioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
           .build();

       getClient().putBucketVersioning(versioningRequest);
       DefaultRetention rention = DefaultRetention.builder()
           .days(1)
           .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
           .build();

       ObjectLockRule lockRule = ObjectLockRule.builder()
           .defaultRetention(rention)
           .build();

       ObjectLockConfiguration objectLockConfiguration =
ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
           .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
           .rule(lockRule)
           .build();

       PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest putObjectLockConfigurationRequest =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .objectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfiguration)
           .build();

       getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(putObjectLockConfigurationRequest) ;
       System.out.println("Added a default retention to bucket "+bucketName +".");
   }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectRetention`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyObjectRetentionPeriod(String bucketName, String objectKey) {
        // Calculate the instant one day from now.
        Instant futureInstant = Instant.now().plus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

        // Convert the Instant to a ZonedDateTime object with a specific time zone.
        ZonedDateTime zonedDateTime = futureInstant.atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

        // Define a formatter for human-readable output.
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-dd
HH:mm:ss");

        // Format the ZonedDateTime object to a human-readable date string.
        String humanReadableDate = formatter.format(zonedDateTime);

        // Print the formatted date string.
        System.out.println("Formatted Date: " + humanReadableDate);
        ObjectLockRetention retention = ObjectLockRetention.builder()
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .retainUntilDate(futureInstant)
            .build();

        PutObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
PutObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectKey)
```

```
            .retention(retention)
            .build();

        getClient().putObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
        System.out.println("Set retention for "+objectKey +" in " +bucketName +"
 until "+ humanReadableDate +".");
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`RestoreObject`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.RestoreRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GlacierJobParameters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.RestoreObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Tier;

/*
 *  For more information about restoring an object, see "Restoring an archived
 object" at
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/restoring-objects.html
 *
 *  Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 *  For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 *  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class RestoreObject {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <bucketName> <keyName> <expectedBucketOwner>

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.\s
                keyName - The key name of an object with a Storage class value of
 Glacier.\s
                expectedBucketOwner - The account that owns the bucket (you can
 obtain this value from the AWS Management Console).\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String keyName = args[1];
        String expectedBucketOwner = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        S3Client s3 = S3Client.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        restoreS3Object(s3, bucketName, keyName, expectedBucketOwner);
        s3.close();
    }

    /**
     * Restores an S3 object from the Glacier storage class.
     *
     * @param s3                   an instance of the {@link S3Client} to be used
 for interacting with Amazon S3
     * @param bucketName           the name of the S3 bucket where the object is
 stored
     * @param keyName              the key (object name) of the S3 object to be
 restored
     * @param expectedBucketOwner  the AWS account ID of the expected bucket owner
```

```
     */
    public static void restoreS3Object(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
 keyName, String expectedBucketOwner) {
        try {
            RestoreRequest restoreRequest = RestoreRequest.builder()
                .days(10)

 .glacierJobParameters(GlacierJobParameters.builder().tier(Tier.STANDARD).build())
                .build();

            RestoreObjectRequest objectRequest = RestoreObjectRequest.builder()
                .expectedBucketOwner(expectedBucketOwner)
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(keyName)
                .restoreRequest(restoreRequest)
                .build();

            s3.restoreObject(objectRequest);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RestoreObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SelectObjectContent`

The following code example shows how to use `SelectObjectContent`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example shows a query using a JSON object. The complete example also shows the use of a CSV object.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.BlockingInputStreamAsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CSVInput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CSVOutput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompressionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpressionType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.FileHeaderInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.InputSerialization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.JSONInput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.JSONOutput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.JSONType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.OutputSerialization;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Progress;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.SelectObjectContentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.SelectObjectContentResponseHandler;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Stats;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;

public class SelectObjectContentExample {
    static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SelectObjectContentExample.class);
    static final String BUCKET_NAME = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID();
    static final S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.create();
    static String FILE_CSV = "csv";
    static String FILE_JSON = "json";
    static String URL_CSV = "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/mledoze/countries/
master/dist/countries.csv";
```

```
    static String URL_JSON = "https://raw.githubusercontent.com/mledoze/countries/
master/dist/countries.json";

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SelectObjectContentExample selectObjectContentExample = new
 SelectObjectContentExample();
        try {
            SelectObjectContentExample.setUp();
            selectObjectContentExample.runSelectObjectContentMethodForJSON();
            selectObjectContentExample.runSelectObjectContentMethodForCSV();
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            System.exit(1);
        } finally {
            SelectObjectContentExample.tearDown();
        }
    }

    EventStreamInfo runSelectObjectContentMethodForJSON() {
        // Set up request parameters.
        final String queryExpression = "select * from s3object[*][*] c where c.area
 < 350000";
        final String fileType = FILE_JSON;

        InputSerialization inputSerialization = InputSerialization.builder()
                .json(JSONInput.builder().type(JSONType.DOCUMENT).build())
                .compressionType(CompressionType.NONE)
                .build();

        OutputSerialization outputSerialization = OutputSerialization.builder()
                .json(JSONOutput.builder().recordDelimiter(null).build())
                .build();

        // Build the SelectObjectContentRequest.
        SelectObjectContentRequest select = SelectObjectContentRequest.builder()
                .bucket(BUCKET_NAME)
                .key(FILE_JSON)
                .expression(queryExpression)
                .expressionType(ExpressionType.SQL)
                .inputSerialization(inputSerialization)
                .outputSerialization(outputSerialization)
                .build();

        EventStreamInfo eventStreamInfo = new EventStreamInfo();
```

```
        // Call the selectObjectContent method with the request and a response
handler.
        // Supply an EventStreamInfo object to the response handler to gather
records and information from the response.
        s3AsyncClient.selectObjectContent(select,
buildResponseHandler(eventStreamInfo)).join();

        // Log out information gathered while processing the response stream.
        long recordCount = eventStreamInfo.getRecords().stream().mapToInt(record ->
                record.split("\n").length
        ).sum();
        logger.info("Total records {}: {}", fileType, recordCount);
        logger.info("Visitor onRecords for fileType {} called {} times", fileType,
eventStreamInfo.getCountOnRecordsCalled());
        logger.info("Visitor onStats for fileType {}, {}", fileType,
eventStreamInfo.getStats());
        logger.info("Visitor onContinuations for fileType {}, {}", fileType,
eventStreamInfo.getCountContinuationEvents());
        return eventStreamInfo;
    }

    static SelectObjectContentResponseHandler buildResponseHandler(EventStreamInfo
eventStreamInfo) {
        // Use a Visitor to process the response stream. This visitor logs
information and gathers details while processing.
        final SelectObjectContentResponseHandler.Visitor visitor =
SelectObjectContentResponseHandler.Visitor.builder()
                .onRecords(r -> {
                    logger.info("Record event received.");
                    eventStreamInfo.addRecord(r.payload().asUtf8String());
                    eventStreamInfo.incrementOnRecordsCalled();
                })
                .onCont(ce -> {
                    logger.info("Continuation event received.");
                    eventStreamInfo.incrementContinuationEvents();
                })
                .onProgress(pe -> {
                    Progress progress = pe.details();
                    logger.info("Progress event received:\n bytesScanned:
{}\nbytesProcessed: {}\nbytesReturned:{}",
                            progress.bytesScanned(),
                            progress.bytesProcessed(),
                            progress.bytesReturned());
                })
```

```
                .onEnd(ee -> logger.info("End event received."))
                .onStats(se -> {
                    logger.info("Stats event received.");
                    eventStreamInfo.addStats(se.details());
                })
                .build();

        // Build the SelectObjectContentResponseHandler with the visitor that
processes the stream.
        return SelectObjectContentResponseHandler.builder()
                .subscriber(visitor).build();
    }

    // The EventStreamInfo class is used to store information gathered while
processing the response stream.
    static class EventStreamInfo {
        private final List<String> records = new ArrayList<>();
        private Integer countOnRecordsCalled = 0;
        private Integer countContinuationEvents = 0;
        private Stats stats;

        void incrementOnRecordsCalled() {
            countOnRecordsCalled++;
        }

        void incrementContinuationEvents() {
            countContinuationEvents++;
        }

        void addRecord(String record) {
            records.add(record);
        }

        void addStats(Stats stats) {
            this.stats = stats;
        }

        public List<String> getRecords() {
            return records;
        }

        public Integer getCountOnRecordsCalled() {
            return countOnRecordsCalled;
        }
```

```
        public Integer getCountContinuationEvents() {
            return countContinuationEvents;
        }

        public Stats getStats() {
            return stats;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SelectObjectContent in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UploadPartCopy`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPartCopy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public CompletableFuture<String> performMultiCopy(String toBucket, String
bucketName, String key) {
        CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
            .bucket(toBucket)
            .key(key)
            .build();

        getAsyncClient().createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest)
            .thenApply(createMultipartUploadResponse -> {
                String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();
                System.out.println("Upload ID: " + uploadId);

                UploadPartCopyRequest uploadPartCopyRequest =
UploadPartCopyRequest.builder()
                    .sourceBucket(bucketName)
```

```
                    .destinationBucket(toBucket)
                    .sourceKey(key)
                    .destinationKey(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)  // Use the valid uploadId.
                    .partNumber(1)  // Ensure the part number is correct.
                    .copySourceRange("bytes=0-1023")  // Adjust range as needed
                    .build();

                return getAsyncClient().uploadPartCopy(uploadPartCopyRequest);
            })
            .thenCompose(uploadPartCopyFuture -> uploadPartCopyFuture)
            .whenComplete((uploadPartCopyResponse, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    // Handle any exceptions.
                    logger.error("Error during upload part copy: " +
exception.getMessage());
                } else {
                    // Successfully completed the upload part copy.
                    System.out.println("Upload Part Copy completed successfully.
ETag: " + uploadPartCopyResponse.copyPartResult().eTag());
                }
            });
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadPartCopy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Check if a bucket exists

The following code example shows how to check if a bucket exists.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

You can use the following `doesBucketExists` method as a replacement for the the SDK for Java V1 AmazonS3Client#doesBucketExistV2(String) method.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.exception.AwsServiceException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpStatusCode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.Validate;

public class DoesBucketExist {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(DoesBucketExist.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        DoesBucketExist doesBucketExist = new DoesBucketExist();

        final S3Client s3SyncClient = S3Client.builder().build();
        final String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; // Change to the bucket
 name that you want to check.

        boolean exists = doesBucketExist.doesBucketExist(bucketName, s3SyncClient);
        logger.info("Bucket exists: {}", exists);
    }

    /**
     * Checks if the specified bucket exists. Amazon S3 buckets are named in a
 global namespace; use this method to
     * determine if a specified bucket name already exists, and therefore can't be
 used to create a new bucket.
     * <p>
     * Internally this method uses the <a
     * href="https://sdk.amazonaws.com/java/api/latest/software/amazon/awssdk/
services/s3/
S3Client.html#getBucketAcl(java.util.function.Consumer)">S3Client.getBucketAcl(String)</
a>
     * operation to determine whether the bucket exists.
     * <p>
     * This method is equivalent to the AWS SDK for Java V1's <a
     * href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSJavaSDK/latest/javadoc/
com/amazonaws/services/s3/AmazonS3Client.html#doesBucketExistV2-
java.lang.String-">AmazonS3Client#doesBucketExistV2(String)</a>.
```

```
     *
     * @param bucketName   The name of the bucket to check.
     * @param s3SyncClient An <code>S3Client</code> instance. The method checks for
 the bucket in the AWS Region
     *                     configured on the instance.
     * @return The value true if the specified bucket exists in Amazon S3; the value
 false if there is no bucket in
     *         Amazon S3 with that name.
     */
    public boolean doesBucketExist(String bucketName, S3Client s3SyncClient) {
        try {
            Validate.notEmpty(bucketName, "The bucket name must not be null or an
 empty string.", "");
            s3SyncClient.getBucketAcl(r -> r.bucket(bucketName));
            return true;
        } catch (AwsServiceException ase) {
            // A redirect error or an AccessDenied exception means the bucket exists
 but it's not in this region
            // or we don't have permissions to it.
            if ((ase.statusCode() == HttpStatusCode.MOVED_PERMANENTLY) ||
 "AccessDenied".equals(ase.awsErrorDetails().errorCode())) {
                return true;
            }
            if (ase.statusCode() == HttpStatusCode.NOT_FOUND) {
                return false;
            }
            throw ase;
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following shows three example of how to create presigned URLs and use the URLs with HTTP client libraries:

- An HTTP GET request that uses the URL with three HTTP client libraries
- An HTTP PUT request with metadata in headers that uses the URL with three HTTP client libraries
- An HTTP PUT request with query parameters that uses the URL with one HTTP client library

Generate a pre-signed URL for an object, then download it (GET request).

Imports.

```
import com.example.s3.util.PresignUrlUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.GetObjectPresignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedGetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.utils.IoUtils;

import java.io.ByteArrayOutputStream;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
```

```
import java.net.URL;
import java.net.http.HttpClient;
import java.net.http.HttpRequest;
import java.net.http.HttpResponse;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.UUID;
```

Generate the URL.

```
    /* Create a pre-signed URL to download an object in a subsequent GET request. */
    public String createPresignedGetUrl(String bucketName, String keyName) {
        try (S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.create()) {

            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(keyName)
                    .build();

            GetObjectPresignRequest presignRequest =
GetObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                    .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10))  // The URL will
expire in 10 minutes.
                    .getObjectRequest(objectRequest)
                    .build();

            PresignedGetObjectRequest presignedRequest =
presigner.presignGetObject(presignRequest);
            logger.info("Presigned URL: [{}]", presignedRequest.url().toString());
            logger.info("HTTP method: [{}]",
presignedRequest.httpRequest().method());

            return presignedRequest.url().toExternalForm();
        }
    }
```

Download the object by using any one of the following three approaches.

Use JDK `HttpURLConnection` (since v1.1) class to do the download.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpURLConnection (since v1.1) class to do the download. */
```

```
    public byte[] useHttpUrlConnectionToGet(String presignedUrlString) {
        ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
ByteArrayOutputStream(); // Capture the response body to a byte array.

        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            HttpURLConnection connection = (HttpURLConnection)
presignedUrl.openConnection();
            connection.setRequestMethod("GET");
            // Download the result of executing the request.
            try (InputStream content = connection.getInputStream()) {
                IoUtils.copy(content, byteArrayOutputStream);
            }
            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + connection.getResponseCode());

        } catch (S3Exception | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
        return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
    }
```

Use JDK `HttpClient` (since v11) class to do the download.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpClient (since v11) class to do the download. */
    public byte[] useHttpClientToGet(String presignedUrlString) {
        ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
ByteArrayOutputStream(); // Capture the response body to a byte array.

        HttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = HttpRequest.newBuilder();
        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            HttpResponse<InputStream> response = httpClient.send(requestBuilder
                            .uri(presignedUrl.toURI())
                            .GET()
                            .build(),
                    HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.ofInputStream());

            IoUtils.copy(response.body(), byteArrayOutputStream);

            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + response.statusCode());
```

```
        } catch (URISyntaxException | InterruptedException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
        return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
    }
```

Use the AWS SDK for Java `SdkHttpClient` class to do the download.

```
    /* Use the AWS SDK for Java SdkHttpClient class to do the download. */
    public byte[] useSdkHttpClientToGet(String presignedUrlString) {

        ByteArrayOutputStream byteArrayOutputStream = new
ByteArrayOutputStream(); // Capture the response body to a byte array.
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            SdkHttpRequest request = SdkHttpRequest.builder()
                    .method(SdkHttpMethod.GET)
                    .uri(presignedUrl.toURI())
                    .build();

            HttpExecuteRequest executeRequest = HttpExecuteRequest.builder()
                    .request(request)
                    .build();

            try (SdkHttpClient sdkHttpClient = ApacheHttpClient.create()) {
                HttpExecuteResponse response =
sdkHttpClient.prepareRequest(executeRequest).call();
                response.responseBody().ifPresentOrElse(
                        abortableInputStream -> {
                            try {
                                IoUtils.copy(abortableInputStream,
byteArrayOutputStream);
                            } catch (IOException e) {
                                throw new RuntimeException(e);
                            }
                        },
                        () -> logger.error("No response body."));

                logger.info("HTTP Response code is {}",
response.httpResponse().statusCode());
            }
        } catch (URISyntaxException | IOException e) {
```

```
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
        return byteArrayOutputStream.toByteArray();
    }
```

Generate a pre-signed URL with metadata in headers for an upload, then upload a file (PUT request).

Imports.

```
import com.example.s3.util.PresignUrlUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.sync.FileContentStreamProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedPutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PutObjectPresignRequest;

import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.HttpURLConnection;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.net.http.HttpClient;
import java.net.http.HttpRequest;
import java.net.http.HttpResponse;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.channels.FileChannel;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Map;
```

```
import java.util.UUID;
```

Generate the URL.

```
    /* Create a presigned URL to use in a subsequent PUT request */
    public String createPresignedUrl(String bucketName, String keyName, Map<String,
 String> metadata) {
        try (S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.create()) {

            PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(keyName)
                    .metadata(metadata)
                    .build();

            PutObjectPresignRequest presignRequest =
 PutObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                    .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10))  // The URL expires
 in 10 minutes.
                    .putObjectRequest(objectRequest)
                    .build();


            PresignedPutObjectRequest presignedRequest =
 presigner.presignPutObject(presignRequest);
            String myURL = presignedRequest.url().toString();
            logger.info("Presigned URL to upload a file to: [{}]", myURL);
            logger.info("HTTP method: [{}]",
 presignedRequest.httpRequest().method());

            return presignedRequest.url().toExternalForm();
        }
    }
```

Upload a file object by using any one of the following three approaches.

Use the JDK `HttpURLConnection` (since v1.1) class to do the upload.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpURLConnection (since v1.1) class to do the upload. */
    public void useHttpUrlConnectionToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut,
 Map<String, String> metadata) {
```

```
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());
        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);
            HttpURLConnection connection = (HttpURLConnection)
presignedUrl.openConnection();
            connection.setDoOutput(true);
            metadata.forEach((k, v) -> connection.setRequestProperty("x-amz-meta-" +
k, v));
            connection.setRequestMethod("PUT");
            OutputStream out = connection.getOutputStream();

            try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(fileToPut, "r");
                 FileChannel inChannel = file.getChannel()) {
                ByteBuffer buffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(8192); //Buffer size is 8k

                while (inChannel.read(buffer) > 0) {
                    buffer.flip();
                    for (int i = 0; i < buffer.limit(); i++) {
                        out.write(buffer.get());
                    }
                    buffer.clear();
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            }

            out.close();
            connection.getResponseCode();
            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + connection.getResponseCode());

        } catch (S3Exception | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Use the JDK `HttpClient` (since v11) class to do the upload.

```
    /* Use the JDK HttpClient (since v11) class to do the upload. */
    public void useHttpClientToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut,
Map<String, String> metadata) {
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());
```

```
        HttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = HttpRequest.newBuilder();
        metadata.forEach((k, v) -> requestBuilder.header("x-amz-meta-" + k, v));

        HttpClient httpClient = HttpClient.newHttpClient();
        try {
            final HttpResponse<Void> response = httpClient.send(requestBuilder
                            .uri(new URL(presignedUrlString).toURI())

.PUT(HttpRequest.BodyPublishers.ofFile(Path.of(fileToPut.toURI())))
                            .build(),
                    HttpResponse.BodyHandlers.discarding());

            logger.info("HTTP response code is " + response.statusCode());

        } catch (URISyntaxException | InterruptedException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Use the AWS for Java V2 `SdkHttpClient` class to do the upload.

```
    /* Use the AWS SDK for Java V2 SdkHttpClient class to do the upload. */
    public void useSdkHttpClientToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut,
Map<String, String> metadata) {
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());

        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);

            SdkHttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = SdkHttpRequest.builder()
                    .method(SdkHttpMethod.PUT)
                    .uri(presignedUrl.toURI());
            // Add headers
            metadata.forEach((k, v) -> requestBuilder.putHeader("x-amz-meta-" + k,
v));
            // Finish building the request.
            SdkHttpRequest request = requestBuilder.build();

            HttpExecuteRequest executeRequest = HttpExecuteRequest.builder()
                    .request(request)
                    .contentStreamProvider(new
FileContentStreamProvider(fileToPut.toPath()))
```

```
                    .build();

            try (SdkHttpClient sdkHttpClient = ApacheHttpClient.create()) {
                HttpExecuteResponse response =
 sdkHttpClient.prepareRequest(executeRequest).call();
                logger.info("Response code: {}",
 response.httpResponse().statusCode());
            }
        } catch (URISyntaxException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Generate a pre-signed URL with query parameters for an upload, then upload a file (PUT request).

Imports.

```
import com.example.s3.util.PresignUrlUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.AwsRequestOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.internal.sync.FileContentStreamProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.HttpExecuteResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpMethod;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.SdkHttpRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.apache.ApacheHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedPutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PutObjectPresignRequest;

import java.io.File;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.UUID;
```

Generate the URL.

```
   /**
    *  Creates a presigned URL to use in a subsequent HTTP PUT request. The code
adds query parameters
    *  to the request instead of using headers. By using query parameters, you do
not need to add the
    *  the parameters as headers when the PUT request is eventually sent.
    *
    * @param bucketName Bucket name where the object will be uploaded.
    * @param keyName Key name of the object that will be uploaded.
    * @param queryParams Query string parameters to be added to the presigned URL.
    * @return
    */
   public String createPresignedUrl(String bucketName, String keyName, Map<String,
String> queryParams) {
       try (S3Presigner presigner = S3Presigner.create()) {
           // Create an override configuration to store the query parameters.
           AwsRequestOverrideConfiguration.Builder overrideConfigurationBuilder =
AwsRequestOverrideConfiguration.builder();

           queryParams.forEach(overrideConfigurationBuilder::putRawQueryParameter);

           PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(keyName)
                   .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfigurationBuilder.build()) //
Add the override configuration.
                   .build();

           PutObjectPresignRequest presignRequest =
PutObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                   .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10))  // The URL expires
in 10 minutes.
                   .putObjectRequest(objectRequest)
                   .build();


           PresignedPutObjectRequest presignedRequest =
presigner.presignPutObject(presignRequest);
           String myURL = presignedRequest.url().toString();
```

```
            logger.info("Presigned URL to upload a file to: [{}]", myURL);
            logger.info("HTTP method: [{}]",
presignedRequest.httpRequest().method());

            return presignedRequest.url().toExternalForm();
        }
    }
```

Use the AWS for Java V2 `SdkHttpClient` class to do the upload.

```
    /**
     * Use the AWS SDK for Java V2 SdkHttpClient class to execute the PUT request.
Since the
     * URL contains the query parameters, no headers are needed for metadata, SSE
settings, or ACL settings.
     *
     * @param presignedUrlString The URL for the PUT request.
     * @param fileToPut File to uplaod
     */
    public void useSdkHttpClientToPut(String presignedUrlString, File fileToPut) {
        logger.info("Begin [{}] upload", fileToPut.toString());

        try {
            URL presignedUrl = new URL(presignedUrlString);

            SdkHttpRequest.Builder requestBuilder = SdkHttpRequest.builder()
                    .method(SdkHttpMethod.PUT)
                    .uri(presignedUrl.toURI());

            SdkHttpRequest request = requestBuilder.build();

            HttpExecuteRequest executeRequest = HttpExecuteRequest.builder()
                    .request(request)
                    .contentStreamProvider(new
FileContentStreamProvider(fileToPut.toPath()))
                    .build();

            try (SdkHttpClient sdkHttpClient = ApacheHttpClient.create()) {
                HttpExecuteResponse response =
sdkHttpClient.prepareRequest(executeRequest).call();
                logger.info("Response code: {}",
response.httpResponse().statusCode());
```

```
            }
        } catch (URISyntaxException | IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Delete incomplete multipart uploads

The following code example shows how to how to delete or stop incomplete Amazon S3 multipart uploads.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

To stop multipart uploads that are in-progress or incomplete for any reason, you can get a list uploads and then delete them as shown in the following example.

```
   /**
    * Aborts all incomplete multipart uploads from the specified S3 bucket.
    * <p>
    * This method retrieves a list of all incomplete multipart uploads in the
specified S3 bucket,
    * and then aborts each of those uploads.
    */
   public static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsFromList() {
       ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
       List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

       AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
       for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
           abortMultipartUploadRequest = AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .key(upload.key())
               .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
               .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
               .build();

           AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
           if (abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
               logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully aborted.",
upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
```

```
            }
        }
    }
```

To delete incomplete multipart uploads that were initiated before or after a date, you can selectively delete multipart uploads based on a point in time as shown in the following example.

```
    static void abortIncompleteMultipartUploadsOlderThan(Instant pointInTime) {
        ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
        List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();

        AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest;
        for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
            logger.info("Found multipartUpload with upload ID [{}], initiated [{}]",
upload.uploadId(), upload.initiated());
            if (upload.initiated().isBefore(pointInTime)) {
                abortMultipartUploadRequest = AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(upload.key())
                    .expectedBucketOwner(accountId)
                    .uploadId(upload.uploadId())
                    .build();

                AbortMultipartUploadResponse abortMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
                if (abortMultipartUploadResponse.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
                    logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully
aborted.", upload.uploadId(), bucketName);
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

If you have access to the upload ID after you begin a multipart upload, you can delete the in-progress upload by using the ID.

```
    static void abortMultipartUploadUsingUploadId() {
        String uploadId = startUploadReturningUploadId();
        AbortMultipartUploadResponse response = s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .uploadId(uploadId)
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Upload ID [{}] to bucket [{}] successfully aborted.",
uploadId, bucketName);
        }
    }
```

To consistently delete incomplete multipart uploads older that a certain number of days, set up a bucket lifecycle configuration for the bucket. The following example shows how to create a rule to delete incomplete uploads older than 7 days.

```
    static void abortMultipartUploadsUsingLifecycleConfig() {
        Collection<LifecycleRule> lifeCycleRules = List.of(LifecycleRule.builder()
            .abortIncompleteMultipartUpload(b -> b.
                daysAfterInitiation(7))
            .status("Enabled")
            .filter(SdkBuilder::build) // Filter element is required.
            .build());

        // If the action is successful, the service sends back an HTTP 200 response
with an empty HTTP body.
        PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationResponse response =
s3Client.putBucketLifecycleConfiguration(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .lifecycleConfiguration(b1 -> b1.rules(lifeCycleRules)));

        if (response.sdkHttpResponse().isSuccessful()) {
            logger.info("Rule to abort incomplete multipart uploads added to
bucket.");
        } else {
            logger.error("Unsuccessfully applied rule. HTTP status code is [{}]",
response.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AbortMultipartUpload
  - ListMultipartUploads
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration

Detect PPE in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Download S3 'directories'

The following code example shows how to download and filter the contents of Amazon S3 bucket 'directories'.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example show how to use the S3TransferManager in the AWS SDK for Java 2.x to download 'directories' from an Amazon S3 bucket. It also demonstrates how to use DownloadFilters in the request.

```
    /**
     * For standard buckets, S3 provides the illusion of a directory structure
through the use of keys. When you upload
     * an object to an S3 bucket, you specify a key, which is essentially the "path"
to the object. The key can contain
     * forward slashes ("/") to make it appear as if the object is stored in a
directory structure, but this is just a
     * logical representation, not an actual directory.
     * <p><pre>
     * In this example, our S3 bucket contains the following objects:
     *
     * folder1/file1.txt
     * folder1/file2.txt
     * folder1/file3.txt
     * folder2/file1.txt
     * folder2/file2.txt
     * folder2/file3.txt
     * folder3/file1.txt
     * folder3/file2.txt
     * folder3/file3.txt
     *
     * When method `downloadS3Directories` is invoked with
     * `destinationPathURI` set to `/test`, the downloaded
     * directory looks like:
     *
     * |- test
     *    |- folder1
     *       |- file1.txt
     *       |- file2.txt
     *       |- file3.txt
```

```
    *    |- folder3
    *       |- file1.txt
    *       |- file2.txt
    *       |- file3.txt
    * </pre>
    *
    * @param transferManager    An S3TransferManager instance.
    * @param destinationPathURI local directory to hold the downloaded S3
'directories' and files.
    * @param bucketName         The S3 bucket that contains the 'directories' to
download.
    * @return The number of objects (files, in this case) that were downloaded.
    */
   public Integer downloadS3Directories(S3TransferManager transferManager,
                                        URI destinationPathURI, String bucketName)
{

       // Define the filters for which 'directories' we want to download.
       DownloadFilter folder1Filter = (S3Object s3Object) ->
s3Object.key().startsWith("folder1/");
       DownloadFilter folder3Filter = (S3Object s3Object) ->
s3Object.key().startsWith("folder3/");
       DownloadFilter folderFilter = s3Object ->
folder1Filter.or(folder3Filter).test(s3Object);

       DirectoryDownload directoryDownload =
transferManager.downloadDirectory(DownloadDirectoryRequest.builder()
               .destination(Paths.get(destinationPathURI))
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .filter(folderFilter)
               .build());
       CompletedDirectoryDownload completedDirectoryDownload =
directoryDownload.completionFuture().join();

       Integer numFilesInFolder1 =
Paths.get(destinationPathURI).resolve("folder1").toFile().list().length;
       Integer numFilesInFolder3 =
Paths.get(destinationPathURI).resolve("folder3").toFile().list().length;

       try {
           assert numFilesInFolder1 == 3;
           assert numFilesInFolder3 == 3;
```

```
            assert !
Paths.get(destinationPathURI).resolve("folder2").toFile().exists(); // `folder2` was
 not downloaded.
        } catch (AssertionError e) {
            logger.error("An assertion failed.");
        }

        completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers()
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object failed to transfer  [{}]",
 fail.exception().getMessage()));
        return numFilesInFolder1 + numFilesInFolder3;
    }
```

Download objects to a local directory

The following code example shows how to download all objects in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket to a local directory.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an S3TransferManager to download all S3 objects in the same S3 bucket. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedDirectoryDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DirectoryDownload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DownloadDirectoryRequest;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
```

```
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.HashSet;
import java.util.Set;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

    public Integer downloadObjectsToDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
            URI destinationPathURI, String bucketName) {
        DirectoryDownload directoryDownload =
 transferManager.downloadDirectory(DownloadDirectoryRequest.builder()
                .destination(Paths.get(destinationPathURI))
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build());
        CompletedDirectoryDownload completedDirectoryDownload =
 directoryDownload.completionFuture().join();

        completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers()
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
 fail.toString()));
        return completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers().size();
    }
```

- For API details, see DownloadDirectory in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Lock Amazon S3 objects

The following code example shows how to work with S3 object lock features.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 object lock features.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockLegalHold;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetention;
import java.io.BufferedWriter;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

/*
 Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 environment, including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Java example performs the following tasks:
    1. Create test Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) buckets with different lock
 policies.
    2. Upload sample objects to each bucket.
    3. Set some Legal Hold and Retention Periods on objects and buckets.
    4. Investigate lock policies by viewing settings or attempting to delete or
 overwrite objects.
    5. Clean up objects and buckets.
 */
public class S3ObjectLockWorkflow {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    static String bucketName;
    static S3LockActions s3LockActions;
    private static final List<String> bucketNames = new ArrayList<>();
    private static final List<String> fileNames = new ArrayList<>();

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
            Usage:
                <bucketName> \s

            Where:
                bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name.
           """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
        s3LockActions = new S3LockActions();
        bucketName = args[0];
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) Object
Locking Feature Scenario.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        configurationSetup();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        setup();
        System.out.println("Setup is complete. Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Lets present the user with choices.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        demoActionChoices() ;
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Would you like to clean up the resources? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            cleanup();
            System.out.println("Clean up is complete.");
        }

        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Amazon S3 Object Locking Workflow is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    // Present the user with the demo action choices.
```

```
    public static void demoActionChoices() {
        String[] choices = {
            "List all files in buckets.",
            "Attempt to delete a file.",
            "Attempt to delete a file with retention period bypass.",
            "Attempt to overwrite a file.",
            "View the object and bucket retention settings for a file.",
            "View the legal hold settings for a file.",
            "Finish the workflow."
        };

        int choice = 0;
        while (true) {
            System.out.println(DASHES);
            choice = getChoiceResponse("Explore the S3 locking features by selecting
one of the following choices:", choices);
            System.out.println(DASHES);
            System.out.println("You selected "+choices[choice]);
            switch (choice) {
                case 0 -> {
                    s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                }

                case 1 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to delete:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    String version = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getVersion();
                    s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, objectKey,
false, version);
                }

                case 2 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to delete:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
```

```
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    String version = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getVersion();
                    s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, objectKey,
true, version);
                }

                case 3 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();

                    // Attempt to overwrite the file.
                    try (BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
java.io.FileWriter(objectKey))) {
                        writer.write("This is a modified text.");

                    } catch (IOException e) {
                        e.printStackTrace();
                    }
                    s3LockActions.uploadFile(bucketName, objectKey, objectKey);
                }

                case 4 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to
overwrite:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    s3LockActions.getObjectRetention(bucketName, objectKey);
```

```
                }

                case 5 -> {
                    System.out.println("Enter the number of the object to view:");
                    List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, true);
                    List<String> fileKeys = allFiles.stream().map(f ->
f.getKeyName()).collect(Collectors.toList());
                    String[] fileKeysArray = fileKeys.toArray(new String[0]);
                    int fileChoice = getChoiceResponse(null, fileKeysArray);
                    String objectKey = fileKeys.get(fileChoice);
                    String bucketName = allFiles.get(fileChoice).getBucketName();
                    s3LockActions.getObjectLegalHold(bucketName, objectKey);
                    s3LockActions.getBucketObjectLockConfiguration(bucketName);
                }

                case 6 -> {
                    System.out.println("Exiting the workflow...");
                    return;
                }

                default -> {
                    System.out.println("Invalid choice. Please select again.");
                }
            }
        }
    }

    // Clean up the resources from the scenario.
    private static void cleanup() {
        List<S3InfoObject> allFiles =
s3LockActions.listBucketsAndObjects(bucketNames, false);
        for (S3InfoObject fileInfo : allFiles) {
            String bucketName = fileInfo.getBucketName();
            String key = fileInfo.getKeyName();
            String version = fileInfo.getVersion();
            if (bucketName.contains("lock-enabled") ||
(bucketName.contains("retention-after-creation"))) {
                ObjectLockLegalHold legalHold =
s3LockActions.getObjectLegalHold(bucketName, key);
                if (legalHold != null) {
                    String holdStatus = legalHold.status().name();
                    System.out.println(holdStatus);
                    if (holdStatus.compareTo("ON") == 0) {
```

```
                        s3LockActions.modifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName, key, false);
                    }
                }
                // Check for a retention period.
                ObjectLockRetention retention =
s3LockActions.getObjectRetention(bucketName, key);
                boolean hasRetentionPeriod ;
                hasRetentionPeriod = retention != null;
                s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName,
key,hasRetentionPeriod, version);

            } else {
                System.out.println(bucketName +" objects do not have a legal lock");
                s3LockActions.deleteObjectFromBucket(bucketName, key,false,
version);
            }
        }

        // Delete the buckets.
        System.out.println("Delete "+bucketName);
        for (String bucket : bucketNames){
            s3LockActions.deleteBucketByName(bucket);
        }
    }

    private static void setup() {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        System.out.println("""
                For this workflow, we will use the AWS SDK for Java to create
several S3
                buckets and files to demonstrate working with S3 locking features.
                """);

        System.out.println("S3 buckets can be created either with or without object
lock enabled.");
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();

        // Create three S3 buckets.
        s3LockActions.createBucketWithLockOptions(false, bucketNames.get(0));
        s3LockActions.createBucketWithLockOptions(true, bucketNames.get(1));
        s3LockActions.createBucketWithLockOptions(false, bucketNames.get(2));
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        scanner.nextLine();
```

```
        System.out.println("Bucket "+bucketNames.get(2) +" will be configured to use
object locking with a default retention period.");
        s3LockActions.modifyBucketDefaultRetention(bucketNames.get(2));
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        scanner.nextLine();

        System.out.println("Object lock policies can also be added to existing
buckets. For this example, we will use "+bucketNames.get(1));
        s3LockActions.enableObjectLockOnBucket(bucketNames.get(1));
        System.out.println("Press Enter to continue.");
        scanner.nextLine();

        // Upload some files to the buckets.
        System.out.println("Now let's add some test files:");
        String fileName = "exampleFile.txt";
        int fileCount = 2;
        try (BufferedWriter writer = new BufferedWriter(new
java.io.FileWriter(fileName))) {
            writer.write("This is a sample file for uploading to a bucket.");

        } catch (IOException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }

        for (String bucketName : bucketNames){
            for (int i = 0; i < fileCount; i++) {
                // Get the file name without extension.
                String fileNameWithoutExtension =
java.nio.file.Paths.get(fileName).getFileName().toString();
                int extensionIndex = fileNameWithoutExtension.lastIndexOf('.');
                if (extensionIndex > 0) {
                    fileNameWithoutExtension = fileNameWithoutExtension.substring(0,
extensionIndex);
                }

                // Create the numbered file names.
                String numberedFileName = fileNameWithoutExtension + i +
getFileExtension(fileName);
                fileNames.add(numberedFileName);
                s3LockActions.uploadFile(bucketName, numberedFileName, fileName);
            }
        }
```

```
        String question = null;
        System.out.print("Press Enter to continue...");
        scanner.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Now we can set some object lock policies on individual
files:");
        for (String bucketName : bucketNames) {
            for (int i = 0; i < fileNames.size(); i++){

                // No modifications to the objects in the first bucket.
                if (!bucketName.equals(bucketNames.get(0))) {
                    String exampleFileName = fileNames.get(i);
                    switch (i) {
                        case 0 -> {
                            question = "Would you like to add a legal hold to " +
exampleFileName + " in " + bucketName + " (y/n)?";
                            System.out.println(question);
                            String ans = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                            if (ans.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
                                System.out.println("**** You have selected to put a
legal hold " + exampleFileName);

                                // Set a legal hold.
                                s3LockActions.modifyObjectLegalHold(bucketName,
exampleFileName, true);
                            }
                        }
                        case 1 -> {
                            """
                                Would you like to add a 1 day Governance retention
period to %s in %s (y/n)?
                                Reminder: Only a user with the
s3:BypassGovernanceRetention permission will be able to delete this file or its
bucket until the retention period has expired.
                                """.formatted(exampleFileName, bucketName);
                            System.out.println(question);
                            String ans2 = scanner.nextLine().trim();
                            if (ans2.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {

s3LockActions.modifyObjectRetentionPeriod(bucketName, exampleFileName);
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
```

```
        }
    }

    // Get file extension.
    private static String getFileExtension(String fileName) {
        int dotIndex = fileName.lastIndexOf('.');
        if (dotIndex > 0) {
            return fileName.substring(dotIndex);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void configurationSetup() {
        String noLockBucketName = bucketName + "-no-lock";
        String lockEnabledBucketName = bucketName + "-lock-enabled";
        String retentionAfterCreationBucketName = bucketName + "-retention-after-
creation";
        bucketNames.add(noLockBucketName);
        bucketNames.add(lockEnabledBucketName);
        bucketNames.add(retentionAfterCreationBucketName);
    }

    public static int getChoiceResponse(String question, String[] choices) {
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        if (question != null) {
            System.out.println(question);
            for (int i = 0; i < choices.length; i++) {
                System.out.println("\t" + (i + 1) + ". " + choices[i]);
            }
        }

        int choiceNumber = 0;
        while (choiceNumber < 1 || choiceNumber > choices.length) {
            String choice = scanner.nextLine();
            try {
                choiceNumber = Integer.parseInt(choice);
            } catch (NumberFormatException e) {
                System.out.println("Invalid choice. Please enter a valid number.");
            }
        }

        return choiceNumber - 1;
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for S3 functions.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketVersioningStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ChecksumAlgorithm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DefaultRetention;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLegalHoldRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLegalHoldResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectLockConfigurationResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRetentionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRetentionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MFADelete;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockEnabled;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockLegalHold;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetention;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRetentionMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectLockRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketVersioningRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectLegalHoldRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRetentionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.VersioningConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.ZoneId;
import java.time.ZonedDateTime;
```

```
import java.time.format.DateTimeFormatter;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicInteger;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

// Contains application logic for the Amazon S3 operations used in this workflow.
public class S3LockActions {

    private static S3Client getClient() {
        return S3Client.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();
    }

    // Set or modify a retention period on an object in an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyObjectRetentionPeriod(String bucketName, String objectKey) {
        // Calculate the instant one day from now.
        Instant futureInstant = Instant.now().plus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

        // Convert the Instant to a ZonedDateTime object with a specific time zone.
        ZonedDateTime zonedDateTime = futureInstant.atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

        // Define a formatter for human-readable output.
        DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-dd
 HH:mm:ss");

        // Format the ZonedDateTime object to a human-readable date string.
        String humanReadableDate = formatter.format(zonedDateTime);

        // Print the formatted date string.
        System.out.println("Formatted Date: " + humanReadableDate);
        ObjectLockRetention retention = ObjectLockRetention.builder()
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .retainUntilDate(futureInstant)
            .build();

        PutObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
 PutObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectKey)
            .retention(retention)
            .build();
```

```
        getClient().putObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
        System.out.println("Set retention for "+objectKey +" in " +bucketName +"
until "+ humanReadableDate +".");
    }

    // Get the legal hold details for an S3 object.
    public ObjectLockLegalHold getObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String
objectKey) {
        try {
            GetObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
GetObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(objectKey)
                .build();

            GetObjectLegalHoldResponse response =
getClient().getObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest);
            System.out.println("Object legal hold for " + objectKey + " in " +
bucketName +
                ":\n\tStatus: " + response.legalHold().status());
            return response.legalHold();

        } catch (S3Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("\tUnable to fetch legal hold: '" + ex.getMessage() +
"'");
        }

        return null;
    }

    // Create a new Amazon S3 bucket with object lock options.
    public void createBucketWithLockOptions(boolean enableObjectLock, String
bucketName) {
        S3Waiter s3Waiter = getClient().waiter();
        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockEnabledForBucket(enableObjectLock)
            .build();

        getClient().createBucket(bucketRequest);
        HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();
```

```
        // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
        s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
        System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");
    }

    public List<S3InfoObject> listBucketsAndObjects(List<String> bucketNames,
Boolean interactive) {
        AtomicInteger counter = new AtomicInteger(0); // Initialize counter.
        return bucketNames.stream()
            .flatMap(bucketName ->
listBucketObjectsAndVersions(bucketName).versions().stream()
                .map(version -> {
                    S3InfoObject s3InfoObject = new S3InfoObject();
                    s3InfoObject.setBucketName(bucketName);
                    s3InfoObject.setVersion(version.versionId());
                    s3InfoObject.setKeyName(version.key());
                    return s3InfoObject;
                }))
            .peek(s3InfoObject -> {
                int i = counter.incrementAndGet(); // Increment and get the updated
value.
                if (interactive) {
                    System.out.println(i + ": "+ s3InfoObject.getKeyName());
                    System.out.printf("%5s Bucket name: %s\n", "",
s3InfoObject.getBucketName());
                    System.out.printf("%5s Version: %s\n", "",
s3InfoObject.getVersion());
                }
            })
            .collect(Collectors.toList());
    }

    public ListObjectVersionsResponse listBucketObjectsAndVersions(String
bucketName) {
        ListObjectVersionsRequest versionsRequest =
ListObjectVersionsRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        return getClient().listObjectVersions(versionsRequest);
    }

    // Set or modify a retention period on an S3 bucket.
    public void modifyBucketDefaultRetention(String bucketName) {
```

```
        VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
            .mfaDelete(MFADelete.DISABLED)
            .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
            .build();

        PutBucketVersioningRequest versioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
            .build();

        getClient().putBucketVersioning(versioningRequest);
        DefaultRetention rention = DefaultRetention.builder()
            .days(1)
            .mode(ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
            .build();

        ObjectLockRule lockRule = ObjectLockRule.builder()
            .defaultRetention(rention)
            .build();

        ObjectLockConfiguration objectLockConfiguration =
ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
            .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
            .rule(lockRule)
            .build();

        PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest putObjectLockConfigurationRequest =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .objectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfiguration)
            .build();

        getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(putObjectLockConfigurationRequest) ;
        System.out.println("Added a default retention to bucket "+bucketName +".");
    }

    // Enable object lock on an existing bucket.
    public void enableObjectLockOnBucket(String bucketName) {
        try {
            VersioningConfiguration versioningConfiguration =
VersioningConfiguration.builder()
                .status(BucketVersioningStatus.ENABLED)
```

```
                .build();

            PutBucketVersioningRequest putBucketVersioningRequest =
PutBucketVersioningRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .versioningConfiguration(versioningConfiguration)
                .build();

            // Enable versioning on the bucket.
            getClient().putBucketVersioning(putBucketVersioningRequest);
            PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest request =
PutObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .objectLockConfiguration(ObjectLockConfiguration.builder()
                    .objectLockEnabled(ObjectLockEnabled.ENABLED)
                    .build())
                .build();

            getClient().putObjectLockConfiguration(request);
            System.out.println("Successfully enabled object lock on "+bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception ex) {
            System.out.println("Error modifying object lock: '" + ex.getMessage() +
"'");
        }
    }

    public void uploadFile(String bucketName, String objectName, String filePath) {
        Path file = Paths.get(filePath);
        PutObjectRequest request = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(objectName)
            .checksumAlgorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA256)
            .build();

        PutObjectResponse response = getClient().putObject(request, file);
        if (response != null) {
            System.out.println("\tSuccessfully uploaded " + objectName + " to " +
bucketName + ".");
        } else {
            System.out.println("\tCould not upload " + objectName + " to " +
bucketName + ".");
        }
    }
```

```
   // Set or modify a legal hold on an object in an S3 bucket.
   public void modifyObjectLegalHold(String bucketName, String objectKey, boolean
legalHoldOn) {
       ObjectLockLegalHold legalHold ;
       if (legalHoldOn) {
           legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
               .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.ON)
               .build();
       } else {
           legalHold = ObjectLockLegalHold.builder()
               .status(ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus.OFF)
               .build();
       }

       PutObjectLegalHoldRequest legalHoldRequest =
PutObjectLegalHoldRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(objectKey)
           .legalHold(legalHold)
           .build();

       getClient().putObjectLegalHold(legalHoldRequest) ;
       System.out.println("Modified legal hold for "+ objectKey +" in "+bucketName
+".");
   }

   // Delete an object from a specific bucket.
   public void deleteObjectFromBucket(String bucketName, String objectKey, boolean
hasRetention, String versionId) {
       try {
           DeleteObjectRequest objectRequest;
           if (hasRetention) {
               objectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(objectKey)
                   .versionId(versionId)
                   .bypassGovernanceRetention(true)
                   .build();
           } else {
               objectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(objectKey)
                   .versionId(versionId)
```

```
                    .build();
            }

            getClient().deleteObject(objectRequest) ;
            System.out.println("The object was successfully deleted");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }

    // Get the retention period for an S3 object.
    public ObjectLockRetention getObjectRetention(String bucketName, String key){
        try {
            GetObjectRetentionRequest retentionRequest =
GetObjectRetentionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .build();

            GetObjectRetentionResponse response =
getClient().getObjectRetention(retentionRequest);
            System.out.println("tObject retention for "+key +" in "+ bucketName +":
" + response.retention().mode() +" until "+ response.retention().retainUntilDate()
+".");
            return response.retention();

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            return null;
        }
    }

    public void deleteBucketByName(String bucketName) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketRequest request = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            getClient().deleteBucket(request);
            System.out.println(bucketName +" was deleted.");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
        }
    }

    // Get the object lock configuration details for an S3 bucket.
    public void getBucketObjectLockConfiguration(String bucketName) {
        GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest objectLockConfigurationRequest =
 GetObjectLockConfigurationRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        GetObjectLockConfigurationResponse response =
 getClient().getObjectLockConfiguration(objectLockConfigurationRequest);
        System.out.println("Bucket object lock config for "+bucketName +":  ");
        System.out.println("\tEnabled:
 "+response.objectLockConfiguration().objectLockEnabled());
        System.out.println("\tRule: "+
 response.objectLockConfiguration().rule().defaultRetention());
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetObjectLegalHold
  - GetObjectLockConfiguration
  - GetObjectRetention
  - PutObjectLegalHold
  - PutObjectLockConfiguration
  - PutObjectRetention

Manage large messages using S3

The following code example shows how to use the Amazon SQS Extended Client Library to work with large Amazon SQS messages.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSExtendedClient;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ExtendedClientConfiguration;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import org.joda.time.DateTime;
import org.joda.time.format.DateTimeFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketLifecycleConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpirationStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleExpiration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRuleFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;
```

```
/**
 * Example of using Amazon SQS Extended Client Library for Java 2.x.
 */
public class SqsExtendedClientExample {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SqsExtendedClientExample.class);

    private String s3BucketName;
    private String queueUrl;
    private final String queueName;
    private final S3Client s3Client;
    private final SqsClient sqsExtendedClient;
    private final int messageSize;

    /**
     * Constructor with default clients and message size.
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample() {
        this(S3Client.create(), 300000);
    }

    /**
     * Constructor with custom S3 client and message size.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client to use
     * @param messageSize The size of the test message to create
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample(S3Client s3Client, int messageSize) {
        this.s3Client = s3Client;
        this.messageSize = messageSize;

        // Generate a unique bucket name.
        this.s3BucketName = UUID.randomUUID() + "-" +
                DateTimeFormat.forPattern("yyMMdd-hhmmss").print(new DateTime());

        // Generate a unique queue name.
        this.queueName = "MyQueue-" + UUID.randomUUID();

        // Configure the SQS extended client.
        final ExtendedClientConfiguration extendedClientConfig = new
 ExtendedClientConfiguration()
                .withPayloadSupportEnabled(s3Client, s3BucketName);
```

```
        this.sqsExtendedClient = new
AmazonSQSExtendedClient(SqsClient.builder().build(), extendedClientConfig);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsExtendedClientExample example = new SqsExtendedClientExample();
        try {
            example.setup();
            example.sendAndReceiveMessage();
        } finally {
            example.cleanup();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Send a large message and receive it back.
     *
     * @return The received message
     */
    public Message sendAndReceiveMessage() {
        try {
            // Create a large message.
            char[] chars = new char[messageSize];
            Arrays.fill(chars, 'x');
            String largeMessage = new String(chars);

            // Send the message.
            final SendMessageRequest sendMessageRequest =
SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody(largeMessage)
                    .build();

            sqsExtendedClient.sendMessage(sendMessageRequest);
            logger.info("Sent message of size: {}", largeMessage.length());

            // Receive and return the message.
            final ReceiveMessageResponse receiveMessageResponse =
sqsExtendedClient.receiveMessage(
                    ReceiveMessageRequest.builder().queueUrl(queueUrl).build());

            List<Message> messages = receiveMessageResponse.messages();
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No messages received");
```

```
            }

            Message message = messages.getFirst();
            logger.info("\nMessage received.");
            logger.info("  ID: {}", message.messageId());
            logger.info("  Receipt handle: {}", message.receiptHandle());
            logger.info("  Message body size: {}", message.body().length());
            logger.info("  Message body (first 5 characters): {}",
message.body().substring(0, 5));

            return message;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.error("Error during message processing: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide.
- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SendMessage

Parse URIs

The following code example shows how to parse Amazon S3 URIs to extract important components like the bucket name and object key.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Parse an Amazon S3 URI by using the S3Uri class.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Uri;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Utilities;

import java.net.URI;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;

    /**
     *
     * @param s3Client    - An S3Client through which you acquire an S3Uri instance.
     * @param s3ObjectUrl - A complex URL (String) that is used to demonstrate S3Uri
     *                    capabilities.
     */
    public static void parseS3UriExample(S3Client s3Client, String s3ObjectUrl) {
        logger.info(s3ObjectUrl);
        // Console output:
        // 'https://s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/myBucket/resources/doc.txt?
versionId=abc123&partNumber=77&partNumber=88'.

        // Create an S3Utilities object using the configuration of the s3Client.
        S3Utilities s3Utilities = s3Client.utilities();

        // From a String URL create a URI object to pass to the parseUri() method.
        URI uri = URI.create(s3ObjectUrl);
        S3Uri s3Uri = s3Utilities.parseUri(uri);

        // If the URI contains no value for the Region, bucket or key, the SDK
 returns
        // an empty Optional.
        // The SDK returns decoded URI values.

        Region region = s3Uri.region().orElse(null);
        log("region", region);
        // Console output: 'region: us-west-1'.

        String bucket = s3Uri.bucket().orElse(null);
        log("bucket", bucket);
        // Console output: 'bucket: myBucket'.
```

```
        String key = s3Uri.key().orElse(null);
        log("key", key);
        // Console output: 'key: resources/doc.txt'.

        Boolean isPathStyle = s3Uri.isPathStyle();
        log("isPathStyle", isPathStyle);
        // Console output: 'isPathStyle: true'.

        // If the URI contains no query parameters, the SDK returns an empty map.
        Map<String, List<String>> queryParams = s3Uri.rawQueryParameters();
        log("rawQueryParameters", queryParams);
        // Console output: 'rawQueryParameters: {versionId=[abc123], partNumber=[77,
        // 88]}'.

        // Retrieve the first or all values for a query parameter as shown in the
        // following code.
        String versionId =
 s3Uri.firstMatchingRawQueryParameter("versionId").orElse(null);
        log("firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-versionId", versionId);
        // Console output: 'firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-versionId: abc123'.

        String partNumber =
 s3Uri.firstMatchingRawQueryParameter("partNumber").orElse(null);
        log("firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-partNumber", partNumber);
        // Console output: 'firstMatchingRawQueryParameter-partNumber: 77'.

        List<String> partNumbers =
 s3Uri.firstMatchingRawQueryParameters("partNumber");
        log("firstMatchingRawQueryParameter", partNumbers);
        // Console output: 'firstMatchingRawQueryParameter: [77, 88]'.

        /*
         * Object keys and query parameters with reserved or unsafe characters, must
 be
         * URL-encoded.
         * For example replace whitespace " " with "%20".
         * Valid:
         * "https://s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/myBucket/object%20key?query=
%5Bbrackets%5D"
         * Invalid:
         * "https://s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/myBucket/object key?query=[brackets]"
         *
         * Virtual-hosted-style URIs with bucket names that contain a dot, ".", the
 dot
```

```
         * must not be URL-encoded.
         * Valid: "https://my.Bucket.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/key"
         * Invalid: "https://my%2EBucket.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com/key"
         */
    }

    private static void log(String s3UriElement, Object element) {
        if (element == null) {
            logger.info("{}: {}", s3UriElement, "null");
        } else {
            logger.info("{}: {}", s3UriElement, element);
        }
    }
```

Process S3 event notifications

The following code example shows how to work with S3 event notifications in an object-oriented way.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example show how to process S3 notification event by using Amazon SQS.

```
    /**
     * This method receives S3 event notifications by using an SqsAsyncClient.
     * After the client receives the messages it deserializes the JSON payload and
logs them. It uses
     * the S3EventNotification class (part of the S3 event notification API for
Java) to deserialize
     * the JSON payload and access the messages in an object-oriented way.
     *
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the AWS SQS queue that receives the S3 event
notifications.
```

```
     * @see <a href="https://sdk.amazonaws.com/java/api/latest/software/amazon/
awssdk/eventnotifications/s3/model/package-summary.html">S3EventNotification API</
a>.
     * <p>
     * To use S3 event notification serialization/deserialization to objects, add
 the following
     * dependency to your Maven pom.xml file.
     * <dependency>
     * <groupId>software.amazon.awssdk</groupId>
     * <artifactId>s3-event-notifications</artifactId>
     * <version><LATEST></version>
     * </dependency>
     * <p>
     * The S3 event notification API became available with version 2.25.11 of the
 Java SDK.
     * <p>
     * This example shows the use of the API with AWS SQS, but it can be used to
 process S3 event notifications
     * in AWS SNS or AWS Lambda as well.
     * <p>
     * Note: The S3EventNotification class does not work with messages routed
 through AWS EventBridge.
     */
    static void processS3Events(String bucketName, String queueUrl, String queueArn)
 {
        try {
            // Configure the bucket to send Object Created and Object Tagging
 notifications to an existing SQS queue.
            s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                    .notificationConfiguration(ncb -> ncb
                            .queueConfigurations(qcb -> qcb
                                    .events(Event.S3_OBJECT_CREATED,
 Event.S3_OBJECT_TAGGING)
                                    .queueArn(queueArn)))
                            .bucket(bucketName)
            ).join();

            triggerS3EventNotifications(bucketName);
            // Wait for event notifications to propagate.
            Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(5).toMillis());

            boolean didReceiveMessages = true;
            while (didReceiveMessages) {
                // Display the number of messages that are available in the queue.
```

```
                sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(b -> b
                                .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.attributeNames(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)
                        ).thenAccept(attributeResponse ->
                                logger.info("Approximate number of messages in the
queue: {}",

attributeResponse.attributes().get(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)))
                        .join();

                // Receive the messages.
                ReceiveMessageResponse response = sqsClient.receiveMessage(b -> b
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                ).get();
                logger.info("Count of received messages: {}",
response.messages().size());
                didReceiveMessages = !response.messages().isEmpty();

                // Create a collection to hold the received message for deletion
                // after we log the messages.
                HashSet<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> messagesToDelete = new
HashSet<>();
                // Process each message.
                response.messages().forEach(message -> {
                    logger.info("Message id: {}", message.messageId());
                    // Deserialize JSON message body to a S3EventNotification object
                    // to access messages in an object-oriented way.
                    S3EventNotification event =
S3EventNotification.fromJson(message.body());

                    // Log the S3 event notification record details.
                    if (event.getRecords() != null) {
                        event.getRecords().forEach(record -> {
                            String eventName = record.getEventName();
                            String key = record.getS3().getObject().getKey();
                            logger.info(record.toString());
                            logger.info("Event name is {} and key is {}", eventName,
key);
                        });
                    }
                    // Add logged messages to collection for batch deletion.
                    messagesToDelete.add(DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                            .id(message.messageId())
```

```
                            .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                            .build());
                });
                // Delete messages.
                if (!messagesToDelete.isEmpty()) {
                    sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .entries(messagesToDelete)
                            .build()
                    ).join();
                }
            } // End of while block.
        } catch (InterruptedException | ExecutionException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage

Send event notifications to EventBridge

The following code example shows how to enable a bucket to send S3 event notifications to EventBridge and route notifications to an Amazon SNS topic and Amazon SQS queue.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** This method configures a bucket to send events to AWS EventBridge and
creates a rule
```

```
    * to route the S3 object created events to a topic and a queue.
    *
    * @param bucketName Name of existing bucket
    * @param topicArn ARN of existing topic to receive S3 event notifications
    * @param queueArn ARN of existing queue to receive S3 event notifications
    *
    *  An AWS CloudFormation stack sets up the bucket, queue, topic before the
method runs.
    */
   public static String setBucketNotificationToEventBridge(String bucketName,
String topicArn, String queueArn) {
       try {
           // Enable bucket to emit S3 Event notifications to EventBridge.
           s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .notificationConfiguration(b1 -> b1
                           .eventBridgeConfiguration(
                                   SdkBuilder::build)
                   ).build()).join();

           // Create an EventBridge rule to route Object Created notifications.
           PutRuleRequest putRuleRequest = PutRuleRequest.builder()
                   .name(RULE_NAME)
                   .eventPattern("""
                           {
                             "source": ["aws.s3"],
                             "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
                             "detail": {
                               "bucket": {
                                 "name": ["%s"]
                               }
                             }
                           }
                           """.formatted(bucketName))
                   .build();

           // Add the rule to the default event bus.
           PutRuleResponse putRuleResponse =
eventBridgeClient.putRule(putRuleRequest)
                   .whenComplete((r, t) -> {
                       if (t != null) {
                           logger.error("Error creating event bus rule: " +
t.getMessage(), t);
```

```
                            throw new RuntimeException(t.getCause().getMessage(),
t);
                        }
                        logger.info("Event bus rule creation request sent
successfully. ARN is: {}", r.ruleArn());
                    }).join();

            // Add the existing SNS topic and SQS queue as targets to the rule.
            eventBridgeClient.putTargets(b -> b
                    .eventBusName("default")
                    .rule(RULE_NAME)
                    .targets(List.of (
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(queueArn)
                                    .id("Queue")
                                    .build(),
                            Target.builder()
                                    .arn(topicArn)
                                    .id("Topic")
                                    .build())
                            )
                    ).join();
            return putRuleResponse.ruleArn();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Track uploads and downloads

The following code example shows how to track an Amazon S3 object upload or download.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Track the progress of a file upload.

```
   public void trackUploadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
bucketName,
                            String key, URI filePathURI) {
       UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
               .putObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
               .addTransferListener(LoggingTransferListener.create())  // Add
listener.
               .source(Paths.get(filePathURI))
               .build();

       FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);

       fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
       /*
           The SDK provides a LoggingTransferListener implementation of the
TransferListener interface.
           You can also implement the interface to provide your own logic.

           Configure log4J2 with settings such as the following.
               <Configuration status="WARN">
                   <Appenders>
                       <Console name="AlignedConsoleAppender" target="SYSTEM_OUT">
                           <PatternLayout pattern="%m%n"/>
                       </Console>
                   </Appenders>

                   <Loggers>
                       <logger
name="software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener"
level="INFO" additivity="false">
                           <AppenderRef ref="AlignedConsoleAppender"/>
                       </logger>
                   </Loggers>
```

```
                </Configuration>

            Log4J2 logs the progress. The following is example output for a 21.3 MB
file upload.
                Transfer initiated...
                |                   | 0.0%
                |====               | 21.1%
                |============       | 60.5%
                |====================| 100.0%
                Transfer complete!
        */
    }
```

Track the progress of a file download.

```
    public void trackDownloadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
bucketName,
                              String key, String downloadedFileWithPath) {
        DownloadFileRequest downloadFileRequest = DownloadFileRequest.builder()
                .getObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
                .addTransferListener(LoggingTransferListener.create())  // Add
listener.
                .destination(Paths.get(downloadedFileWithPath))
                .build();

        FileDownload downloadFile =
transferManager.downloadFile(downloadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileDownload downloadResult =
downloadFile.completionFuture().join();
        /*
            The SDK provides a LoggingTransferListener implementation of the
TransferListener interface.
            You can also implement the interface to provide your own logic.

            Configure log4J2 with settings such as the following.
                <Configuration status="WARN">
                    <Appenders>
                        <Console name="AlignedConsoleAppender" target="SYSTEM_OUT">
                            <PatternLayout pattern="%m%n"/>
                        </Console>
                    </Appenders>
```

```
                    <Loggers>
                        <logger
name="software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.progress.LoggingTransferListener"
level="INFO" additivity="false">
                            <AppenderRef ref="AlignedConsoleAppender"/>
                        </logger>
                    </Loggers>
                </Configuration>

            Log4J2 logs the progress. The following is example output for a 21.3 MB
file download.
                Transfer initiated...
                |=======             | 39.4%
                |===============     | 78.8%
                |====================| 100.0%
                Transfer complete!
        */
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Upload directory to a bucket

The following code example shows how to upload a local directory recursively to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use an S3TransferManager to upload a local directory. View the complete file and test.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
```

```
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedDirectoryUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.DirectoryUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadDirectoryRequest;

import java.net.URI;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.UUID;

    public Integer uploadDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
            URI sourceDirectory, String bucketName) {
        DirectoryUpload directoryUpload =
 transferManager.uploadDirectory(UploadDirectoryRequest.builder()
                .source(Paths.get(sourceDirectory))
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build());

        CompletedDirectoryUpload completedDirectoryUpload =
 directoryUpload.completionFuture().join();
        completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers()
                .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
 fail.toString()));
        return completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers().size();
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadDirectory in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call functions that transfer files to and from an S3 bucket using the S3TransferManager.

```
   public Integer downloadObjectsToDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
           URI destinationPathURI, String bucketName) {
       DirectoryDownload directoryDownload =
transferManager.downloadDirectory(DownloadDirectoryRequest.builder()
               .destination(Paths.get(destinationPathURI))
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .build());
       CompletedDirectoryDownload completedDirectoryDownload =
directoryDownload.completionFuture().join();

       completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers()
               .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
fail.toString()));
       return completedDirectoryDownload.failedTransfers().size();
   }
```

Upload an entire local directory.

```
   public Integer uploadDirectory(S3TransferManager transferManager,
           URI sourceDirectory, String bucketName) {
       DirectoryUpload directoryUpload =
transferManager.uploadDirectory(UploadDirectoryRequest.builder()
               .source(Paths.get(sourceDirectory))
               .bucket(bucketName)
               .build());

       CompletedDirectoryUpload completedDirectoryUpload =
directoryUpload.completionFuture().join();
       completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers()
               .forEach(fail -> logger.warn("Object [{}] failed to transfer",
fail.toString()));
```

```
        return completedDirectoryUpload.failedTransfers().size();
    }
```

Upload a single file.

```
    public String uploadFile(S3TransferManager transferManager, String bucketName,
                             String key, URI filePathURI) {
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
            .source(Paths.get(filePathURI))
            .build();

        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);

        CompletedFileUpload uploadResult = fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        return uploadResult.response().eTag();
    }
```

The code examples use the following imports.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadFileRequest;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
```

```
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Objects;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
```

Use the S3 Transfer Manager on top of the AWS CRT-based S3 client to transparently perform a multipart upload when the size of the content exceeds a threshold. The default threshold size is 8 MB.

```
    /**
     * Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 bucket using the S3TransferManager.
     *
     * @param filePath the file path of the file to be uploaded
     */
    public void multipartUploadWithTransferManager(String filePath) {
        S3TransferManager transferManager = S3TransferManager.create();
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key))
            .source(Paths.get(filePath))
            .build();
        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);
        fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        transferManager.close();
    }
```

Use the S3Client API to perform a multipart upload.

```
    /**
     * Performs a multipart upload to Amazon S3 using the provided S3 client.
     *
     * @param filePath the path to the file to be uploaded
     */
    public void multipartUploadWithS3Client(String filePath) {

        // Initiate the multipart upload.
```

```
        CreateMultipartUploadResponse createMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.createMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key));
        String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();

        // Upload the parts of the file.
        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(1024 * 1024 * 5); // 5 MB byte buffer

        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath, "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            long position = 0;
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                long read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                    uploadPartRequest,
                    RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                    .build();
                completedParts.add(part);

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (IOException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage());
        }
```

```
        // Complete the multipart upload.
        s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .uploadId(uploadId)

.multipartUpload(CompletedMultipartUpload.builder().parts(completedParts).build()));
    }
```

Use the S3AsyncClient API with multipart support enabled to perform a multipart upload.

```
    /**
     * Uploads a file to an S3 bucket using the S3AsyncClient and enabling multipart
support.
     *
     * @param filePath the local file path of the file to be uploaded
     */
    public void multipartUploadWithS3AsyncClient(String filePath) {
        // Enable multipart support.
        S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
            .multipartEnabled(true)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> response = s3AsyncClient.putObject(b ->
b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key),
            Paths.get(filePath));

        response.join();
        logger.info("File uploaded in multiple 8 MiB parts using S3AsyncClient.");
    }
```

Upload stream of unknown size

The following code example shows how to upload a stream of unknown size to an Amazon S3 object.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the AWS CRT-based S3 Client.

```
import com.example.s3.util.AsyncExampleUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

public class PutObjectFromStreamAsync {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(PutObjectFromStreamAsync.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID(); // Change
 bucket name.
        String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();

        AsyncExampleUtils.createBucket(bucketName);
        try {
            PutObjectFromStreamAsync example = new PutObjectFromStreamAsync();
            S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClientCrt = S3AsyncClient.crtCreate();
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse =
 example.putObjectFromStreamCrt(s3AsyncClientCrt, bucketName, key);
            logger.info("Object {} etag: {}", key, putObjectResponse.eTag());
            logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
```

```
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        } finally {
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteObject(bucketName, key);
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteBucket(bucketName);
        }
    }

    /**
     * @param s33CrtAsyncClient - To upload content from a stream of unknown size,
use can the AWS CRT-based S3 client.
     * @param bucketName - The name of the bucket.
     * @param key - The name of the object.
     * @return software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse - Returns
metadata pertaining to the put object operation.
     */
    public PutObjectResponse putObjectFromStreamCrt(S3AsyncClient s33CrtAsyncClient,
String bucketName, String key) {

        // AsyncExampleUtils.randomString() returns a random string up to 100
characters.
        String randomString = AsyncExampleUtils.randomString();
        logger.info("random string to upload: {}: length={}", randomString,
randomString.length());
        InputStream inputStream = new ByteArrayInputStream(randomString.getBytes());

        // Executor required to handle reading from the InputStream on a separate
thread so the main upload is not blocked.
        ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
        // Specify `null` for the content length when you don't know the content
length.
        AsyncRequestBody body = AsyncRequestBody.fromInputStream(inputStream, null,
executor);

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> responseFuture =
                s33CrtAsyncClient.putObject(r -> r.bucket(bucketName).key(key),
body);

        PutObjectResponse response = responseFuture.join(); // Wait for the
response.
        logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        executor.shutdown();
        return response;
    }
```

```
}
```

Use the standard asynchronous S3 client with multipart upload enabled.

```
import com.example.s3.util.AsyncExampleUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3AsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

public class PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID(); // Change
 bucket name.
        String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();

        AsyncExampleUtils.createBucket(bucketName);
        try {
            PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp example = new PutObjectFromStreamAsyncMp();
            S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClientMp =
 S3AsyncClient.builder().multipartEnabled(true).build();
            PutObjectResponse putObjectResponse =
 example.putObjectFromStreamMp(s3AsyncClientMp, bucketName, key);
            logger.info("Object {} etag: {}", key, putObjectResponse.eTag());
            logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        } finally {
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteObject(bucketName, key);
```

```
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteBucket(bucketName);
        }
    }

    /**
     * @param s3AsyncClientMp - To upload content from a stream of unknown size, use
 can the S3 asynchronous client with multipart enabled.
     * @param bucketName - The name of the bucket.
     * @param key - The name of the object.
     * @return software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectResponse - Returns
 metadata pertaining to the put object operation.
     */
    public PutObjectResponse putObjectFromStreamMp(S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClientMp,
 String bucketName, String key) {

        // AsyncExampleUtils.randomString() returns a random string up to 100
 characters.
        String randomString = AsyncExampleUtils.randomString();
        logger.info("random string to upload: {}: length={}", randomString,
 randomString.length());
        InputStream inputStream = new ByteArrayInputStream(randomString.getBytes());

        // Executor required to handle reading from the InputStream on a separate
 thread so the main upload is not blocked.
        ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
        // Specify `null` for the content length when you don't know the content
 length.
        AsyncRequestBody body = AsyncRequestBody.fromInputStream(inputStream, null,
 executor);

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> responseFuture =
                s3AsyncClientMp.putObject(r -> r.bucket(bucketName).key(key), body);

        PutObjectResponse response = responseFuture.join(); // Wait for the
 response.
        logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        executor.shutdown();
        return response;
    }
}
```

Use the Amazon S3 Transfer Manager.

```
import com.example.s3.util.AsyncExampleUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.async.AsyncRequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.Upload;

import java.io.ByteArrayInputStream;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.ExecutorService;
import java.util.concurrent.Executors;

public class UploadStream {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(UploadStream.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" + UUID.randomUUID();
        String key = UUID.randomUUID().toString();

        AsyncExampleUtils.createBucket(bucketName);
        try {
            UploadStream example = new UploadStream();
            CompletedUpload completedUpload =
 example.uploadStream(S3TransferManager.create(), bucketName, key);
            logger.info("Object {} etag: {}", key,
 completedUpload.response().eTag());
            logger.info("Object {} uploaded to bucket {}.", key, bucketName);
        } catch (SdkException e) {
            logger.error(e.getMessage(), e);
        } finally {
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteObject(bucketName, key);
            AsyncExampleUtils.deleteBucket(bucketName);
        }
    }

    /**
     * @param transferManager - To upload content from a stream of unknown size, you
 can use the S3TransferManager based on the AWS CRT-based S3 client.
```

```
     * @param bucketName - The name of the bucket.
     * @param key - The name of the object.
     * @return - software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.CompletedUpload - The
result of the completed upload.
     */
    public CompletedUpload uploadStream(S3TransferManager transferManager, String
bucketName, String key) {

        // AsyncExampleUtils.randomString() returns a random string up to 100
characters.
        String randomString = AsyncExampleUtils.randomString();
        logger.info("random string to upload: {}: length={}", randomString,
randomString.length());
        InputStream inputStream = new ByteArrayInputStream(randomString.getBytes());

        // Executor required to handle reading from the InputStream on a separate
thread so the main upload is not blocked.
        ExecutorService executor = Executors.newSingleThreadExecutor();
        // Specify `null` for the content length when you don't know the content
length.
        AsyncRequestBody body = AsyncRequestBody.fromInputStream(inputStream, null,
executor);

        Upload upload = transferManager.upload(builder -> builder
                .requestBody(body)
                .putObjectRequest(req -> req.bucket(bucketName).key(key))
                .build());

        CompletedUpload completedUpload = upload.completionFuture().join();
        executor.shutdown();
        return completedUpload;
    }
}
```

Use checksums

The following code example shows how to use checksums to work with an Amazon S3 object.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The code examples use a subset of the following imports.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ChecksumAlgorithm;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ChecksumMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.waiters.S3Waiter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.S3TransferManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.FileUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.transfer.s3.model.UploadFileRequest;

import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.net.URL;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.security.DigestInputStream;
import java.security.MessageDigest;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Objects;
```

```
import java.util.UUID;
```

Specify a checksum algorithm for the `putObject` method when you build the `PutObjectRequest`.

```
    public void putObjectWithChecksum() {
        s3Client.putObject(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumAlgorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm.CRC32),
            RequestBody.fromString("This is a test"));
    }
```

Verify the checksum for the `getObject` method when you build the GetObjectRequest.

```
    public GetObjectResponse getObjectWithChecksum() {
        return s3Client.getObject(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumMode(ChecksumMode.ENABLED))
            .response();
    }
```

Pre-calculate a checksum for the `putObject` method when you build the `PutObjectRequest`.

```
    public void putObjectWithPrecalculatedChecksum(String filePath) {
        String checksum = calculateChecksum(filePath, "SHA-256");

        s3Client.putObject((b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumSHA256(checksum)),
            RequestBody.fromFile(Paths.get(filePath)));
    }
```

Use the S3 Transfer Manager on top of the AWS CRT-based S3 client to transparently perform a multipart upload when the size of the content exceeds a threshold. The default threshold size is 8 MB.

You can specify a checksum algorithm for the SDK to use. By default, the SDK uses the CRC32 algorithm.

```
    public void multipartUploadWithChecksumTm(String filePath) {
        S3TransferManager transferManager = S3TransferManager.create();
        UploadFileRequest uploadFileRequest = UploadFileRequest.builder()
            .putObjectRequest(b -> b
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .checksumAlgorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm.SHA1))
            .source(Paths.get(filePath))
            .build();
        FileUpload fileUpload = transferManager.uploadFile(uploadFileRequest);
        fileUpload.completionFuture().join();
        transferManager.close();
    }
```

Use the S3Client API or (S3AsyncClient API) to perform a multipart upload. If you specify an additional checksum, you must specify the algorithm to use on the initiation of the upload. You must also specify the algorithm for each part request and provide the checksum calculated for each part after it is uploaded.

```
    public void multipartUploadWithChecksumS3Client(String filePath) {
        ChecksumAlgorithm algorithm = ChecksumAlgorithm.CRC32;

        // Initiate the multipart upload.
        CreateMultipartUploadResponse createMultipartUploadResponse =
s3Client.createMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .checksumAlgorithm(algorithm)); // Checksum specified on initiation.
        String uploadId = createMultipartUploadResponse.uploadId();

        // Upload the parts of the file.
        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> completedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(1024 * 1024 * 5); // 5 MB byte buffer
```

```
        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath, "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            long position = 0;
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                long read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the
buffer.
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(key)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .checksumAlgorithm(algorithm) // Checksum specified on each
part.
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                    uploadPartRequest,
                    RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                    .partNumber(partNumber)
                    .checksumCRC32(partResponse.checksumCRC32()) // Provide the
calculated checksum.
                    .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                    .build();
                completedParts.add(part);

                bb.clear();
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }

        // Complete the multipart upload.
        s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(b -> b
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(key)
            .uploadId(uploadId)
```

```
.multipartUpload(CompletedMultipartUpload.builder().parts(completedParts).build()));
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CompleteMultipartUpload
  - CreateMultipartUpload
  - UploadPart

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.S3Event;
```

```
import
 com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.models.s3.S3EventNotification.S3EventNotificat

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

public class Handler implements RequestHandler<S3Event, String> {
    private static final Logger logger = LoggerFactory.getLogger(Handler.class);
    @Override
    public String handleRequest(S3Event s3event, Context context) {
        try {
          S3EventNotificationRecord record = s3event.getRecords().get(0);
          String srcBucket = record.getS3().getBucket().getName();
          String srcKey = record.getS3().getObject().getUrlDecodedKey();

          S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder().build();
          HeadObjectResponse headObject = getHeadObject(s3Client, srcBucket,
 srcKey);

          logger.info("Successfully retrieved " + srcBucket + "/" + srcKey + " of
 type " + headObject.contentType());

          return "Ok";
        } catch (Exception e) {
          throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private HeadObjectResponse getHeadObject(S3Client s3Client, String bucket,
 String key) {
        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucket)
                .key(key)
                .build();
        return s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
    }
}
```

Amazon S3 Control examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon S3 Control.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3 Control

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 Control.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.client.config.ClientOverrideConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryMode;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.retry.RetryPolicy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.async.SdkAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.http.nio.netty.NettyNioAsyncHttpClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.S3ControlAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.JobListDescriptor;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.JobStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.model.ListJobsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3control.paginators.ListJobsPublisher;
import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

/**
 * Before running this example:
 * <p/>
```

```
 * The SDK must be able to authenticate AWS requests on your behalf. If you have not
 configured
 * authentication for SDKs and tools,see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkref/latest/
guide/access.html in the AWS SDKs and Tools Reference Guide.
 * <p/>
 * You must have a runtime environment configured with the Java SDK.
 * See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html in
 the Developer Guide if this is not set up.
 */
public class HelloS3Batch {
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient asyncClient;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        S3BatchActions actions = new S3BatchActions();
        String accountId = actions.getAccountId();
        try {
            listBatchJobsAsync(accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("List batch jobs failed: " +
 ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();

        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to list batch jobs: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves the asynchronous S3 Control client instance.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the {@link
 S3ControlAsyncClient}. If the instance
     * has not been created yet, it will be initialized with the following
 configuration:
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Retry policy: 3 retries</li>
```

```
     *   <li>Region: US_EAST_1</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: {@link EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider}</
li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous S3 Control client instance
     */
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            asyncClient = S3ControlAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return asyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously lists batch jobs that have completed for the specified
 account.
     *
     * @param accountId the ID of the account to list jobs for
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the job listing operation is
 finished
     */
    public static CompletableFuture<Void> listBatchJobsAsync(String accountId) {
        ListJobsRequest jobsRequest = ListJobsRequest.builder()
            .jobStatuses(JobStatus.COMPLETE)
            .accountId(accountId)
```

```
            .maxResults(10)
            .build();

        ListJobsPublisher publisher =
getAsyncClient().listJobsPaginator(jobsRequest);
        return publisher.subscribe(response -> {
            List<JobListDescriptor> jobs = response.jobs();
            for (JobListDescriptor job : jobs) {
                System.out.println("The job id is " + job.jobId());
                System.out.println("The job priority is " + job.priority());
            }
        }).thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("Listing batch jobs completed");
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            System.err.println("Failed to list batch jobs: " + ex.getMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(ex);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to learn core operations for Amazon S3 Control.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Learn core operations.

```
package com.example.s3.batch;

import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletionException;

public class S3BatchScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static final String STACK_NAME = "MyS3Stack";
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        S3BatchActions actions = new S3BatchActions();
        String accountId = actions.getAccountId();
        String uuid = java.util.UUID.randomUUID().toString();
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Batch basics scenario.");
        System.out.println("""
            S3 Batch operations enables efficient and cost-effective processing of
 large-scale
            data stored in Amazon S3. It automatically scales resources to handle
 varying workloads
            without the need for manual intervention.

            One of the key features of S3 Batch is its ability to perform tagging
 operations on objects stored in
            S3 buckets. Users can leverage S3 Batch to apply, update, or remove tags
 on thousands or millions of
            objects in a single operation, streamlining the management and
 organization of their data.

            This can be particularly useful for tasks such as cost allocation,
 lifecycle management, or
            metadata-driven workflows, where consistent and accurate tagging is
 essential.
            S3 Batch's scalability and serverless nature make it an ideal solution
 for organizations with
            growing data volumes and complex data management requirements.
```

```
            This Java program walks you through Amazon S3 Batch operations.

            Let's get started...

            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        // Use CloudFormation to stand up the resource required for this scenario.
        System.out.println("Use CloudFormation to stand up the resource required for
 this scenario.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);

        Map<String, String> stackOutputs =
 CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputs(STACK_NAME);
        String iamRoleArn = stackOutputs.get("S3BatchRoleArn");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Setup the required bucket for this scenario.");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" + UUID.randomUUID(); // Change
 bucket name.
        actions.createBucket(bucketName);
        String reportBucketName = "arn:aws:s3:::"+bucketName;
        String manifestLocation = "arn:aws:s3:::"+bucketName+"/job-manifest.csv";
        System.out.println("Populate the bucket with the required files.");
        String[] fileNames = {"job-manifest.csv", "object-key-1.txt", "object-
key-2.txt", "object-key-3.txt", "object-key-4.txt"};
        actions.uploadFilesToBucket(bucketName, fileNames, actions);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create a S3 Batch Job");
        System.out.println("This job tags all objects listed in the manifest file
 with tags");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String jobId ;
        try {
            jobId = actions.createS3JobAsync(accountId, iamRoleArn,
 manifestLocation, reportBucketName, uuid).join();
            System.out.println("The Job id is " + jobId);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Update an existing S3 Batch Operations job's
priority");
        System.out.println("""
             In this step, we modify the job priority value. The higher the number,
the higher the priority.
             So, a job with a priority of `30` would have a higher priority than a
job with
             a priority of `20`. This is a common way to represent the priority of a
task
             or job, with higher numbers indicating a higher priority.

             Ensure that the job status allows for priority updates. Jobs in
certain
             states (e.g., Cancelled, Failed, or Completed) cannot have their
priorities
             updated. Only jobs in the Active or Suspended state typically allow
priority
             updates.
             """);

        try {
            actions.updateJobPriorityAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Update job priority failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to update job priority: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Cancel the S3 Batch job");
        System.out.print("Do you want to cancel the Batch job? (y/n): ");
        String cancelAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (cancelAns != null && cancelAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                actions.cancelJobAsync(jobId, accountId)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        System.err.println("Cancel job failed: " + ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
            } catch (CompletionException ex) {
                System.err.println("Failed to cancel job: " + ex.getMessage());
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("Job " +jobId +" was not canceled.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Describe the job that was just created");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.describeJobAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Describe job failed: " + ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to describe job: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Describe the tags associated with the job");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.getJobTagsAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Get job tags failed: " + ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
```

```
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to get job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Update Batch Job Tags");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.putJobTaggingAsync(jobId, accountId)
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Put job tagging failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                })
                .join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            System.err.println("Failed to put job tagging: " + ex.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Delete the Amazon S3 Batch job tagging.");
        System.out.print("Do you want to delete Batch job tagging? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (delAns != null && delAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            try {
                actions.deleteBatchJobTagsAsync(jobId, accountId)
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        System.err.println("Delete batch job tags failed: " +
ex.getMessage());
                        return null;
                    })
                    .join();
            } catch (CompletionException ex) {
                System.err.println("Failed to delete batch job tags: " +
ex.getMessage());
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("Tagging was not deleted.");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.print("Do you want to delete the AWS resources used in this
 scenario? (y/n)");
        String delResAns = scanner.nextLine();
        if (delResAns != null && delResAns.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            actions.deleteFilesFromBucket(bucketName, fileNames, actions);
            actions.deleteBucketFolderAsync(bucketName);
            actions.deleteBucket(bucketName)
                .thenRun(() -> System.out.println("Bucket deletion completed"))
                .exceptionally(ex -> {
                    System.err.println("Error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
                    return null;
                });
            CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(STACK_NAME);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The AWS resources were not deleted.");
        }
        System.out.println("The Amazon S3 Batch scenario has successfully
 completed.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println();
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println();
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }


}
```

An action class that wraps operations.

```
public class S3BatchActions {

    private static S3ControlAsyncClient asyncClient;

    private static S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient ;
    /**
     * Retrieves the asynchronous S3 Control client instance.
     * <p>
     * This method creates and returns a singleton instance of the {@link
 S3ControlAsyncClient}. If the instance
     * has not been created yet, it will be initialized with the following
 configuration:
     * <ul>
     *   <li>Maximum concurrency: 100</li>
     *   <li>Connection timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Read timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Write timeout: 60 seconds</li>
     *   <li>API call timeout: 2 minutes</li>
     *   <li>API call attempt timeout: 90 seconds</li>
     *   <li>Retry policy: 3 retries</li>
     *   <li>Region: US_EAST_1</li>
     *   <li>Credentials provider: {@link EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider}</
li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * @return the asynchronous S3 Control client instance
     */
    private static S3ControlAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                    .numRetries(3)
```

```
                    .build())
                .build();

            asyncClient = S3ControlAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return asyncClient;
    }

    private static S3AsyncClient getS3AsyncClient() {
        if (asyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            s3AsyncClient = S3AsyncClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return s3AsyncClient;
    }


    /**
     * Cancels a job asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId The ID of the job to be canceled.
     * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the job.
```

```
    * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job status has
been updated to "CANCELLED".
    *         If an error occurs during the update, the returned future will
complete exceptionally.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> cancelJobAsync(String jobId, String accountId) {
       UpdateJobStatusRequest updateJobStatusRequest =
UpdateJobStatusRequest.builder()
           .accountId(accountId)
           .jobId(jobId)
           .requestedJobStatus(String.valueOf(JobStatus.CANCELLED))
           .build();

       return asyncClient.updateJobStatus(updateJobStatusRequest)
           .thenAccept(updateJobStatusResponse -> {
               System.out.println("Job status updated to: " +
updateJobStatusResponse.status());
           })
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               System.err.println("Failed to cancel job: " + ex.getMessage());
               throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
           });
   }

   /**
    * Updates the priority of a job asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobId     the ID of the job to update
    * @param accountId the ID of the account associated with the job
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation, which completes when the job priority has been updated or an error has
occurred
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> updateJobPriorityAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       UpdateJobPriorityRequest priorityRequest =
UpdateJobPriorityRequest.builder()
           .accountId(accountId)
           .jobId(jobId)
           .priority(60)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().updateJobPriority(priorityRequest)
```

```
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("The job priority was updated");
                future.complete(null); // Complete the CompletableFuture on
successful execution
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to update job priority: " +
ex.getMessage());
                future.completeExceptionally(ex); // Complete the CompletableFuture
exceptionally on error
                return null; // Return null to handle the exception
            });

        return future;
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the tags associated with a specific job in an AWS
account.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job for which to retrieve the tags
     * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job tags have
been retrieved, or with an exception if the operation fails
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while retrieving the job tags
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String accountId) {
        GetJobTaggingRequest request = GetJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.getJobTagging(request)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<S3Tag> tags = response.tags();
                if (tags.isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No tags found for job ID: " + jobId);
                } else {
                    for (S3Tag tag : tags) {
                        System.out.println("Tag key is: " + tag.key());
                        System.out.println("Tag value is: " + tag.value());
                    }
                }
            })
```

```
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to get job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously deletes the tags associated with a specific batch job.
     *
     * @param jobId     The ID of the batch job whose tags should be deleted.
     * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the batch job.
     * @return A CompletableFuture that completes when the job tags have been
successfully deleted, or an exception is thrown if the deletion fails.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBatchJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        DeleteJobTaggingRequest jobTaggingRequest =
DeleteJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .jobId(jobId)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.deleteJobTagging(jobTaggingRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("You have successfully deleted " + jobId + "
tagging.");
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to delete job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the specified job.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to describe
     * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job description
is available
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while describing the job
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeJobAsync(String jobId, String accountId)
{
```

```
        DescribeJobRequest jobRequest = DescribeJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeJob(jobRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("Job ID: " + response.job().jobId());
                System.out.println("Description: " + response.job().description());
                System.out.println("Status: " + response.job().statusAsString());
                System.out.println("Role ARN: " + response.job().roleArn());
                System.out.println("Priority: " + response.job().priority());
                System.out.println("Progress Summary: " +
response.job().progressSummary());

                // Print out details about the job manifest.
                JobManifest manifest = response.job().manifest();
                System.out.println("Manifest Location: " +
manifest.location().objectArn());
                System.out.println("Manifest ETag: " + manifest.location().eTag());

                // Print out details about the job operation.
                JobOperation operation = response.job().operation();
                if (operation.s3PutObjectTagging() != null) {
                    System.out.println("Operation: S3 Put Object Tagging");
                    System.out.println("Tag Set: " +
operation.s3PutObjectTagging().tagSet());
                }

                // Print out details about the job report.
                JobReport report = response.job().report();
                System.out.println("Report Bucket: " + report.bucket());
                System.out.println("Report Prefix: " + report.prefix());
                System.out.println("Report Format: " + report.format());
                System.out.println("Report Enabled: " + report.enabled());
                System.out.println("Report Scope: " + report.reportScopeAsString());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to describe job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }

    /**
```

```
     * Creates an asynchronous S3 job using the AWS Java SDK.
     *
     * @param accountId         the AWS account ID associated with the job
     * @param iamRoleArn        the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the job
     * @param manifestLocation  the location of the job manifest file in S3
     * @param reportBucketName  the name of the S3 bucket to store the job report
     * @param uuid              a unique identifier for the job
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous creation of the
 S3 job.
     *         The CompletableFuture will return the job ID if the job is created
 successfully,
     *         or throw an exception if there is an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createS3JobAsync(String accountId, String
 iamRoleArn,
                                                       String manifestLocation,
 String reportBucketName, String uuid) {

        String[] bucketName = new String[]{""};
        String[] parts = reportBucketName.split(":::");
        if (parts.length > 1) {
            bucketName[0] = parts[1];
        } else {
            System.out.println("The input string does not contain the expected
 format.");
        }

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> getETag(bucketName[0], "job-
manifest.csv"))
            .thenCompose(eTag -> {
                  ArrayList<S3Tag> tagSet = new ArrayList<>();
                S3Tag s3Tag = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyOne")
                    .value("ValueOne")
                    .build();
                S3Tag s3Tag2 = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyTwo")
                    .value("ValueTwo")
                    .build();
                tagSet.add(s3Tag);
                tagSet.add(s3Tag2);

                S3SetObjectTaggingOperation objectTaggingOperation =
 S3SetObjectTaggingOperation.builder()
```

```
                    .tagSet(tagSet)
                    .build();

                JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
                    .s3PutObjectTagging(objectTaggingOperation)
                    .build();

                JobManifestLocation jobManifestLocation =
JobManifestLocation.builder()
                    .objectArn(manifestLocation)
                    .eTag(eTag)
                    .build();

                JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
                    .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
                    .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
                    .build();

                JobManifest jobManifest = JobManifest.builder()
                    .spec(manifestSpec)
                    .location(jobManifestLocation)
                    .build();

                JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
                    .bucket(reportBucketName)
                    .prefix("reports")
                    .format("Report_CSV_20180820")
                    .enabled(true)
                    .reportScope("AllTasks")
                    .build();

                CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .description("Job created using the AWS Java SDK")
                    .manifest(jobManifest)
                    .operation(jobOperation)
                    .report(jobReport)
                    .priority(42)
                    .roleArn(iamRoleArn)
                    .clientRequestToken(uuid)
                    .confirmationRequired(false)
                    .build();

                // Create the job asynchronously.
```

```
                return getAsyncClient().createJob(jobRequest)
                   .thenApply(CreateJobResponse::jobId);
                })
                .handle((jobId, ex) -> {
                   if (ex != null) {
                   Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                   if (cause instanceof S3ControlException) {
                       throw new CompletionException(cause);
                   } else {
                       throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                   }
               }
               return jobId;
           });
   }

   /**
    * Retrieves the ETag (Entity Tag) for an object stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the Amazon S3 bucket where the object is stored
    * @param key the key (file name) of the object in the Amazon S3 bucket
    * @return the ETag of the object
    */
   public String getETag(String bucketName, String key) {
       S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
           .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
           .build();

       HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(key)
           .build();

       HeadObjectResponse headObjectResponse =
s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
       return headObjectResponse.eTag();
   }

   /**
    * Asynchronously adds tags to a job in the system.
    *
    * @param jobId     the ID of the job to add tags to
    * @param accountId the account ID associated with the job
```

```
     * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the tagging operation is
finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> putJobTaggingAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
        S3Tag departmentTag = S3Tag.builder()
            .key("department")
            .value("Marketing")
            .build();

        S3Tag fiscalYearTag = S3Tag.builder()
            .key("FiscalYear")
            .value("2020")
            .build();

        PutJobTaggingRequest putJobTaggingRequest = PutJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .tags(departmentTag, fiscalYearTag)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.putJobTagging(putJobTaggingRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> {
                System.out.println("Additional Tags were added to job " + jobId);
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to add tags to job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }

    // Setup the S3 bucket required for this scenario.
    /**
     * Creates an Amazon S3 bucket with the specified name.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @throws S3Exception if there is an error creating the bucket
     */
    public void createBucket(String bucketName) {
        try {
            S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
```

```
            S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

            // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
            WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse> waiterResponse =
s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    /**
     * Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the file to
     * @param fileName the name of the file to be uploaded
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs during the file upload
     */
    public void populateBucket(String bucketName, String fileName) {
        // Define the path to the directory.
        Path filePath = Paths.get("src/main/resources/batch/",
fileName).toAbsolutePath();
        PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .key(fileName)
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> future =
getS3AsyncClient().putObject(putOb, AsyncRequestBody.fromFile(filePath));
        future.whenComplete((result, ex) -> {
            if (ex != null) {
                System.err.println("Error uploading file: " + ex.getMessage());
```

```
            } else {
                System.out.println("Successfully placed " + fileName + " into bucket
 " + bucketName);
            }
        }).join();
    }


    // Update the bucketName in CSV.
    public void updateCSV(String newValue) {
        Path csvFilePath = Paths.get("src/main/resources/batch/job-
manifest.csv").toAbsolutePath();
        try {
            // Read all lines from the CSV file.
            List<String> lines = Files.readAllLines(csvFilePath);

            // Update the first value in each line.
            List<String> updatedLines = lines.stream()
                .map(line -> {
                    String[] parts = line.split(",");
                    parts[0] = newValue;
                    return String.join(",", parts);
                })
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

            // Write the updated lines back to the CSV file
            Files.write(csvFilePath, updatedLines);
            System.out.println("CSV file updated successfully.");
        } catch (Exception e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an object from an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param bucketName The name of the S3 bucket where the object is stored.
     * @param objectName The name of the object to be deleted.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the object has been
 deleted,
     *         or throws a {@link RuntimeException} if an error occurs during the
 deletion.
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucketObjects(String bucketName, String
objectName) {
       ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> toDelete = new ArrayList<>();
       toDelete.add(ObjectIdentifier.builder()
           .key(objectName)
           .build());

       DeleteObjectsRequest dor = DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .delete(Delete.builder()
               .objects(toDelete).build())
           .build();

       return getS3AsyncClient().deleteObjects(dor)
           .thenAccept(result -> {
               System.out.println("The object was deleted!");
           })
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               throw new RuntimeException("Error deleting object: " +
ex.getMessage(), ex);
           });
   }

   /**
    * Deletes a folder and all its contents asynchronously from an Amazon S3
bucket.
    *
    * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the folder to be
deleted
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the folder and its
contents have been deleted
    * @throws RuntimeException if any error occurs during the deletion process
    */
   public void deleteBucketFolderAsync(String bucketName) {
       String folderName = "reports/";
       ListObjectsV2Request request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .prefix(folderName)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<ListObjectsV2Response> listObjectsFuture =
getS3AsyncClient().listObjectsV2(request);
       listObjectsFuture.thenCompose(response -> {
```

```
            List<CompletableFuture<DeleteObjectResponse>> deleteFutures =
response.contents().stream()
                .map(obj -> {
                    DeleteObjectRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(bucketName)
                        .key(obj.key())
                        .build();
                    return getS3AsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteRequest)
                        .thenApply(deleteResponse -> {
                            System.out.println("Deleted object: " + obj.key());
                            return deleteResponse;
                        });
                })
                .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return CompletableFuture.allOf(deleteFutures.toArray(new
CompletableFuture[0]))
                .thenCompose(v -> {
                    // Delete the folder.
                    DeleteObjectRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(bucketName)
                        .key(folderName)
                        .build();
                    return getS3AsyncClient().deleteObject(deleteRequest)
                        .thenApply(deleteResponse -> {
                            System.out.println("Deleted folder: " + folderName);
                            return deleteResponse;
                        });
                });
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the bucket to delete
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the bucket has been
deleted, or exceptionally if there is an error
     * @throws RuntimeException if there is an error deleting the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBucket(String bucketName) {
        S3AsyncClient s3Client = getS3AsyncClient();
```

```
        return s3Client.deleteBucket(DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build())
            .thenAccept(deleteBucketResponse -> {
                System.out.println(bucketName + " was deleted");
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                // Handle the exception or rethrow it.
                throw new RuntimeException("Failed to delete bucket: " + bucketName,
ex);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Uploads a set of files to an Amazon S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to upload the files to
     * @param fileNames an array of file names to be uploaded
     * @param actions an instance of {@link S3BatchActions} that provides the
implementation for the necessary S3 operations
     * @throws IOException if there's an error creating the text files or uploading
the files to the S3 bucket
     */
    public static void uploadFilesToBucket(String bucketName, String[] fileNames,
S3BatchActions actions) throws IOException {
        actions.updateCSV(bucketName);
        createTextFiles(fileNames);
        for (String fileName : fileNames) {
            actions.populateBucket(bucketName, fileName);
        }
        System.out.println("All files are placed in the S3 bucket " + bucketName);
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified files from the given S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket
     * @param fileNames an array of file names to be deleted from the bucket
     * @param actions the S3BatchActions instance to be used for the file deletion
     * @throws IOException if an I/O error occurs during the file deletion
     */
    public void deleteFilesFromBucket(String bucketName, String[] fileNames,
S3BatchActions actions) throws IOException {
        for (String fileName : fileNames) {
```

```
                    actions.deleteBucketObjects(bucketName, fileName)
                   .thenRun(() -> System.out.println("Object deletion completed"))
                   .exceptionally(ex -> {
                       System.err.println("Error occurred: " + ex.getMessage());
                       return null;
                   });
       }
       System.out.println("All files have been deleted from the bucket " +
bucketName);
   }

   public static void createTextFiles(String[] fileNames) {
       String currentDirectory = System.getProperty("user.dir");
       String directoryPath = currentDirectory + "\\src\\main\\resources\\batch";
       Path path = Paths.get(directoryPath);

       try {
           // Create the directory if it doesn't exist.
           if (Files.notExists(path)) {
               Files.createDirectories(path);
               System.out.println("Created directory: " + path.toString());
           } else {
               System.out.println("Directory already exists: " + path.toString());
           }

           for (String fileName : fileNames) {
               // Check if the file is a .txt file.
               if (fileName.endsWith(".txt")) {
                   // Define the path for the new file.
                   Path filePath = path.resolve(fileName);
                   System.out.println("Attempting to create file: " +
filePath.toString());

                   // Create and write content to the new file.
                   Files.write(filePath, "This is a test".getBytes());

                   // Verify the file was created.
                   if (Files.exists(filePath)) {
                       System.out.println("Successfully created file: " +
filePath.toString());
                   } else {
                       System.out.println("Failed to create file: " +
filePath.toString());
                   }
```

```
                }
            }

        } catch (IOException e) {
            System.err.println("An error occurred: " + e.getMessage());
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    public String getAccountId() {
        StsClient stsClient = StsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        GetCallerIdentityResponse callerIdentityResponse =
 stsClient.getCallerIdentity();
        return callerIdentityResponse.account();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteJobTagging
  - DescribeJob
  - GetJobTagging
  - ListJobs
  - PutJobTagging
  - UpdateJobPriority
  - UpdateJobStatus

Actions

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an asynchronous S3 job.

```
    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous S3 job using the AWS Java SDK.
     *
     * @param accountId         the AWS account ID associated with the job
     * @param iamRoleArn        the ARN of the IAM role to be used for the job
     * @param manifestLocation  the location of the job manifest file in S3
     * @param reportBucketName  the name of the S3 bucket to store the job report
     * @param uuid              a unique identifier for the job
     * @return a CompletableFuture that represents the asynchronous creation of the
 S3 job.
     *         The CompletableFuture will return the job ID if the job is created
 successfully,
     *         or throw an exception if there is an error.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> createS3JobAsync(String accountId, String
 iamRoleArn,
                                                       String manifestLocation,
 String reportBucketName, String uuid) {

        String[] bucketName = new String[]{""};
        String[] parts = reportBucketName.split(":::");
        if (parts.length > 1) {
            bucketName[0] = parts[1];
        } else {
            System.out.println("The input string does not contain the expected
 format.");
        }

        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> getETag(bucketName[0], "job-
manifest.csv"))
            .thenCompose(eTag -> {
                  ArrayList<S3Tag> tagSet = new ArrayList<>();
                S3Tag s3Tag = S3Tag.builder()
```

```
                    .key("keyOne")
                    .value("ValueOne")
                    .build();
                S3Tag s3Tag2 = S3Tag.builder()
                    .key("keyTwo")
                    .value("ValueTwo")
                    .build();
                tagSet.add(s3Tag);
                tagSet.add(s3Tag2);

                S3SetObjectTaggingOperation objectTaggingOperation =
S3SetObjectTaggingOperation.builder()
                    .tagSet(tagSet)
                    .build();

                JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
                    .s3PutObjectTagging(objectTaggingOperation)
                    .build();

                JobManifestLocation jobManifestLocation =
JobManifestLocation.builder()
                    .objectArn(manifestLocation)
                    .eTag(eTag)
                    .build();

                JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
                    .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
                    .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
                    .build();

                JobManifest jobManifest = JobManifest.builder()
                    .spec(manifestSpec)
                    .location(jobManifestLocation)
                    .build();

                JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
                    .bucket(reportBucketName)
                    .prefix("reports")
                    .format("Report_CSV_20180820")
                    .enabled(true)
                    .reportScope("AllTasks")
                    .build();

                CreateJobRequest jobRequest = CreateJobRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .description("Job created using the AWS Java SDK")
                    .manifest(jobManifest)
                    .operation(jobOperation)
                    .report(jobReport)
                    .priority(42)
                    .roleArn(iamRoleArn)
                    .clientRequestToken(uuid)
                    .confirmationRequired(false)
                    .build();

                // Create the job asynchronously.
                 return getAsyncClient().createJob(jobRequest)
                    .thenApply(CreateJobResponse::jobId);
                 })
                 .handle((jobId, ex) -> {
                    if (ex != null) {
                    Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                    if (cause instanceof S3ControlException) {
                        throw new CompletionException(cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                    }
                }
                return jobId;
            });
    }
```

Create a compliance retention job.

```
    /**
     * Creates a compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control.
     * <p>
     * A compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control is a feature that allows you
to
     * set a retention period for objects stored in an S3 bucket.
     * This feature is particularly useful for organizations that need to comply
with
     * regulatory requirements or internal policies that mandate the retention of
data for
```

```
     * a specific duration.
     *
     * @param s3ControlClient The S3ControlClient instance to use for the API call.
     * @return The job ID of the created compliance retention job.
     */
    public static String createComplianceRetentionJob(final S3ControlClient
 s3ControlClient, String roleArn, String bucketName, String accountId) {
        final String manifestObjectArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-manifest-bucket/
compliance-objects-manifest.csv";
        final String manifestObjectVersionId = "your-object-version-Id";

        Instant jan2025 = Instant.parse("2025-01-01T00:00:00Z");
        JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
            .s3PutObjectRetention(S3SetObjectRetentionOperation.builder()
                .retention(S3Retention.builder()
                    .mode(S3ObjectLockRetentionMode.COMPLIANCE)
                    .retainUntilDate(jan2025)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .build();

        JobManifestLocation manifestLocation = JobManifestLocation.builder()
            .objectArn(manifestObjectArn)
            .eTag(manifestObjectVersionId)
            .build();

        JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
            .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
            .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
            .build();

        JobManifest manifestToPublicApi = JobManifest.builder()
            .location(manifestLocation)
            .spec(manifestSpec)
            .build();

        // Report details.
        final String jobReportBucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::" + bucketName;
        final String jobReportPrefix = "reports/compliance-objects-bops";

        JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .reportScope(JobReportScope.ALL_TASKS)
            .bucket(jobReportBucketArn)
```

```
            .prefix(jobReportPrefix)
            .format(JobReportFormat.REPORT_CSV_20180820)
            .build();

        final Boolean requiresConfirmation = true;
        final int priority = 10;
        CreateJobRequest request = CreateJobRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .description("Set compliance retain-until to 1 Jan 2025")
            .manifest(manifestToPublicApi)
            .operation(jobOperation)
            .priority(priority)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .report(jobReport)
            .confirmationRequired(requiresConfirmation)
            .build();

        // Create the job and get the result.
        CreateJobResponse result = s3ControlClient.createJob(request);
        return result.jobId();
    }
```

Create a legal hold off job.

```
    /**
     * Creates a compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control.
     * <p>
     * A compliance retention job in Amazon S3 Control is a feature that allows you
to
     * set a retention period for objects stored in an S3 bucket.
     * This feature is particularly useful for organizations that need to comply
with
     * regulatory requirements or internal policies that mandate the retention of
data for
     * a specific duration.
     *
     * @param s3ControlClient The S3ControlClient instance to use for the API call.
     * @return The job ID of the created compliance retention job.
     */
    public static String createComplianceRetentionJob(final S3ControlClient
s3ControlClient, String roleArn, String bucketName, String accountId) {
```

```
        final String manifestObjectArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-manifest-bucket/
compliance-objects-manifest.csv";
        final String manifestObjectVersionId = "your-object-version-Id";

        Instant jan2025 = Instant.parse("2025-01-01T00:00:00Z");
        JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
            .s3PutObjectRetention(S3SetObjectRetentionOperation.builder()
                .retention(S3Retention.builder()
                    .mode(S3ObjectLockRetentionMode.COMPLIANCE)
                    .retainUntilDate(jan2025)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .build();

        JobManifestLocation manifestLocation = JobManifestLocation.builder()
            .objectArn(manifestObjectArn)
            .eTag(manifestObjectVersionId)
            .build();

        JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
            .fieldsWithStrings("Bucket", "Key")
            .format("S3BatchOperations_CSV_20180820")
            .build();

        JobManifest manifestToPublicApi = JobManifest.builder()
            .location(manifestLocation)
            .spec(manifestSpec)
            .build();

        // Report details.
        final String jobReportBucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::" + bucketName;
        final String jobReportPrefix = "reports/compliance-objects-bops";

        JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .reportScope(JobReportScope.ALL_TASKS)
            .bucket(jobReportBucketArn)
            .prefix(jobReportPrefix)
            .format(JobReportFormat.REPORT_CSV_20180820)
            .build();

        final Boolean requiresConfirmation = true;
        final int priority = 10;
        CreateJobRequest request = CreateJobRequest.builder()
```

```
            .accountId(accountId)
            .description("Set compliance retain-until to 1 Jan 2025")
            .manifest(manifestToPublicApi)
            .operation(jobOperation)
            .priority(priority)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .report(jobReport)
            .confirmationRequired(requiresConfirmation)
            .build();

        // Create the job and get the result.
        CreateJobResponse result = s3ControlClient.createJob(request);
        return result.jobId();
    }
```

Create a new governance retention job.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateGovernanceRetentionJob {

    public static void main(String[]args) throws ParseException {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <manifestObjectArn> <jobReportBucketArn> <roleArn> <accountId>
 <manifestObjectVersionId>

            Where:
                manifestObjectArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the S3 object
 that contains the manifest file for the governance objects.\s
                bucketName - The ARN of the S3 bucket where the job report will be
 stored.
                roleArn - The ARN of the IAM role that will be used to perform the
 governance retention operation.
                accountId - Your AWS account Id.
```

```
                manifestObjectVersionId =  A unique value that is used as the `eTag`
property of the `JobManifestLocation` object.
            """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String manifestObjectArn = args[0];
        String jobReportBucketArn = args[1];
        String roleArn = args[2];
        String accountId = args[3];
        String manifestObjectVersionId = args[4];

        S3ControlClient s3ControlClient = S3ControlClient.create();
        createGovernanceRetentionJob(s3ControlClient, manifestObjectArn,
jobReportBucketArn, roleArn, accountId, manifestObjectVersionId);
    }

    public static String createGovernanceRetentionJob(final S3ControlClient
s3ControlClient, String manifestObjectArn, String jobReportBucketArn, String
roleArn, String accountId, String manifestObjectVersionId) throws ParseException {
        final JobManifestLocation manifestLocation = JobManifestLocation.builder()
            .objectArn(manifestObjectArn)
            .eTag(manifestObjectVersionId)
            .build();

        final JobManifestSpec manifestSpec = JobManifestSpec.builder()
            .format(JobManifestFormat.S3_BATCH_OPERATIONS_CSV_20180820)
            .fields(Arrays.asList(JobManifestFieldName.BUCKET,
JobManifestFieldName.KEY))
            .build();

        final JobManifest manifestToPublicApi = JobManifest.builder()
            .location(manifestLocation)
            .spec(manifestSpec)
            .build();

        final String jobReportPrefix = "reports/governance-objects";
        final JobReport jobReport = JobReport.builder()
            .enabled(true)
            .reportScope(JobReportScope.ALL_TASKS)
            .bucket(jobReportBucketArn)
```

```
            .prefix(jobReportPrefix)
            .format(JobReportFormat.REPORT_CSV_20180820)
            .build();

        final SimpleDateFormat format = new SimpleDateFormat("dd/MM/yyyy");
        final Date jan30th = format.parse("30/01/2025");

        final S3SetObjectRetentionOperation s3SetObjectRetentionOperation =
 S3SetObjectRetentionOperation.builder()
            .retention(S3Retention.builder()
                .mode(S3ObjectLockRetentionMode.GOVERNANCE)
                .retainUntilDate(jan30th.toInstant())
                .build())
            .build();

        final JobOperation jobOperation = JobOperation.builder()
            .s3PutObjectRetention(s3SetObjectRetentionOperation)
            .build();

        final Boolean requiresConfirmation = true;
        final int priority = 10;

        final CreateJobRequest request = CreateJobRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
            .description("Put governance retention")
            .manifest(manifestToPublicApi)
            .operation(jobOperation)
            .priority(priority)
            .roleArn(roleArn)
            .report(jobReport)
            .confirmationRequired(requiresConfirmation)
            .build();

        final CreateJobResponse result = s3ControlClient.createJob(request);
        return result.jobId();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteJobTagging`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJobTagging`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously deletes the tags associated with a specific batch job.
    *
    * @param jobId     The ID of the batch job whose tags should be deleted.
    * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the batch job.
    * @return A CompletableFuture that completes when the job tags have been
successfully deleted, or an exception is thrown if the deletion fails.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> deleteBatchJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       DeleteJobTaggingRequest jobTaggingRequest =
DeleteJobTaggingRequest.builder()
           .accountId(accountId)
           .jobId(jobId)
           .build();

       return asyncClient.deleteJobTagging(jobTaggingRequest)
           .thenAccept(response -> {
               System.out.println("You have successfully deleted " + jobId + "
tagging.");
           })
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               System.err.println("Failed to delete job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
               throw new RuntimeException(ex);
           });
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJobTagging in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

DescribeJob

The following code example shows how to use DescribeJob.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously describes the specified job.
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job to describe
     * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job description
is available
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while describing the job
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> describeJobAsync(String jobId, String accountId)
{
        DescribeJobRequest jobRequest = DescribeJobRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .build();

        return getAsyncClient().describeJob(jobRequest)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println("Job ID: " + response.job().jobId());
                System.out.println("Description: " + response.job().description());
                System.out.println("Status: " + response.job().statusAsString());
                System.out.println("Role ARN: " + response.job().roleArn());
                System.out.println("Priority: " + response.job().priority());
                System.out.println("Progress Summary: " +
response.job().progressSummary());

                // Print out details about the job manifest.
                JobManifest manifest = response.job().manifest();
                System.out.println("Manifest Location: " +
manifest.location().objectArn());
                System.out.println("Manifest ETag: " + manifest.location().eTag());
```

```
                // Print out details about the job operation.
                JobOperation operation = response.job().operation();
                if (operation.s3PutObjectTagging() != null) {
                    System.out.println("Operation: S3 Put Object Tagging");
                    System.out.println("Tag Set: " +
operation.s3PutObjectTagging().tagSet());
                }

                // Print out details about the job report.
                JobReport report = response.job().report();
                System.out.println("Report Bucket: " + report.bucket());
                System.out.println("Report Prefix: " + report.prefix());
                System.out.println("Report Format: " + report.format());
                System.out.println("Report Enabled: " + report.enabled());
                System.out.println("Report Scope: " + report.reportScopeAsString());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to describe job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex);
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetJobTagging`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobTagging`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously retrieves the tags associated with a specific job in an AWS
account.
```

```
     *
     * @param jobId     the ID of the job for which to retrieve the tags
     * @param accountId the ID of the AWS account associated with the job
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job tags have
been retrieved, or with an exception if the operation fails
     * @throws RuntimeException if an error occurs while retrieving the job tags
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> getJobTagsAsync(String jobId, String accountId) {
        GetJobTaggingRequest request = GetJobTaggingRequest.builder()
            .jobId(jobId)
            .accountId(accountId)
            .build();

        return asyncClient.getJobTagging(request)
            .thenAccept(response -> {
                List<S3Tag> tags = response.tags();
                if (tags.isEmpty()) {
                    System.out.println("No tags found for job ID: " + jobId);
                } else {
                    for (S3Tag tag : tags) {
                        System.out.println("Tag key is: " + tag.key());
                        System.out.println("Tag value is: " + tag.value());
                    }
                }
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to get job tags: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobTagging in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutJobTagging`

The following code example shows how to use `PutJobTagging`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously adds tags to a job in the system.
    *
    * @param jobId     the ID of the job to add tags to
    * @param accountId the account ID associated with the job
    * @return a CompletableFuture that completes when the tagging operation is
finished
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> putJobTaggingAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       S3Tag departmentTag = S3Tag.builder()
           .key("department")
           .value("Marketing")
           .build();

       S3Tag fiscalYearTag = S3Tag.builder()
           .key("FiscalYear")
           .value("2020")
           .build();

       PutJobTaggingRequest putJobTaggingRequest = PutJobTaggingRequest.builder()
           .jobId(jobId)
           .accountId(accountId)
           .tags(departmentTag, fiscalYearTag)
           .build();

       return asyncClient.putJobTagging(putJobTaggingRequest)
           .thenRun(() -> {
               System.out.println("Additional Tags were added to job " + jobId);
           })
           .exceptionally(ex -> {
               System.err.println("Failed to add tags to job: " + ex.getMessage());
               throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
           });
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see PutJobTagging in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateJobPriority`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateJobPriority`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates the priority of a job asynchronously.
    *
    * @param jobId     the ID of the job to update
    * @param accountId the ID of the account associated with the job
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that represents the asynchronous
operation, which completes when the job priority has been updated or an error has
occurred
    */
   public CompletableFuture<Void> updateJobPriorityAsync(String jobId, String
accountId) {
       UpdateJobPriorityRequest priorityRequest =
UpdateJobPriorityRequest.builder()
           .accountId(accountId)
           .jobId(jobId)
           .priority(60)
           .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> future = new CompletableFuture<>();
       getAsyncClient().updateJobPriority(priorityRequest)
           .thenAccept(response -> {
               System.out.println("The job priority was updated");
               future.complete(null); // Complete the CompletableFuture on
successful execution
```

```
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to update job priority: " +
ex.getMessage());
                future.completeExceptionally(ex); // Complete the CompletableFuture
exceptionally on error
                return null; // Return null to handle the exception
            });

        return future;
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobPriority in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateJobStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateJobStatus`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Cancels a job asynchronously.
     *
     * @param jobId The ID of the job to be canceled.
     * @param accountId The ID of the account associated with the job.
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the job status has
been updated to "CANCELLED".
     *         If an error occurs during the update, the returned future will
complete exceptionally.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> cancelJobAsync(String jobId, String accountId) {
        UpdateJobStatusRequest updateJobStatusRequest =
UpdateJobStatusRequest.builder()
            .accountId(accountId)
```

```
            .jobId(jobId)
            .requestedJobStatus(String.valueOf(JobStatus.CANCELLED))
            .build();

        return asyncClient.updateJobStatus(updateJobStatusRequest)
            .thenAccept(updateJobStatusResponse -> {
                System.out.println("Job status updated to: " +
updateJobStatusResponse.status());
            })
            .exceptionally(ex -> {
                System.err.println("Failed to cancel job: " + ex.getMessage());
                throw new RuntimeException(ex); // Propagate the exception
            });
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateJobStatus in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

S3 Directory Buckets examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with S3 Directory Buckets.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3 directory buckets

The following code example shows how to get started using Amazon S3 directory buckets.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.s3.directorybucket;


import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DataRedundancy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.util.List;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;

/**
 * Before running this example:
 * <p>
 * The SDK must be able to authenticate AWS requests on your behalf. If you have
 * not configured
 * authentication for SDKs and tools, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkref/latest/guide/access.html in the AWS SDKs
```

```
 * and Tools Reference Guide.
 * <p>
 * You must have a runtime environment configured with the Java SDK.
 * See
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/setup.html in
 * the Developer Guide if this is not set up.
 * <p>
 * To use S3 directory buckets, configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the
 * recommended method to enable directory bucket traffic without
 * requiring an internet gateway or NAT device. For more information on
 * configuring VPC gateway endpoints, visit
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/s3-express-
networking.html#s3-express-networking-vpc-gateway.
 * <p>
 * Directory buckets are available in specific AWS Regions and Zones. For
 * details on Regions and Zones supporting directory buckets, see
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/s3-express-
networking.html#s3-express-endpoints.
 */

public class HelloS3DirectoryBuckets {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(HelloS3DirectoryBuckets.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String bucketName = "test-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis() + "--usw2-
az1--x-s3";
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        String zone = "usw2-az1";
        S3Client s3Client = createS3Client(region);

        try {
            // Create the directory bucket
            createDirectoryBucket(s3Client, bucketName, zone);
            logger.info("Created bucket: {}", bucketName);

            // List all directory buckets
            List<String> bucketNames = listDirectoryBuckets(s3Client);
            bucketNames.forEach(name -> logger.info("Bucket Name: {}", name));
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("An error occurred during S3 operations: {} - Error code:
 {}",
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
```

```
        } finally {
            try {
                // Delete the created bucket
                deleteDirectoryBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
                logger.info("Deleted bucket: {}", bucketName);
            } catch (S3Exception e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the bucket due to S3 error: {} -
Error code: {}",
                        e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                logger.error("Failed to delete the bucket due to unexpected error:
{}", e.getMessage(), e);
            } finally {
                s3Client.close();
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The region where the bucket will be created
     * @throws S3Exception if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public static void createDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName,
String zone) throws S3Exception {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: {}", bucketName);

        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
                .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                        .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .name(zone).build())
                .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
                        .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                        .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .build())
                .build();
        try {
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration).build();
            CreateBucketResponse response = s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: {}",
response.location());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Error creating bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Lists all S3 directory buckets.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @return A list of bucket names
     */
    public static List<String> listDirectoryBuckets(S3Client s3Client) {
        logger.info("Listing all directory buckets");

        try {
            // Create a ListBucketsRequest
            ListDirectoryBucketsRequest listBucketsRequest =
ListDirectoryBucketsRequest.builder().build();

            // Retrieve the list of buckets
            ListDirectoryBucketsResponse response =
s3Client.listDirectoryBuckets(listBucketsRequest);

            // Extract bucket names
            List<String> bucketNames = response.buckets().stream()
                    .map(Bucket::name)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return bucketNames;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list buckets: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to delete
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
            s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket: " + bucketName + " - Error code:
 " + e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(),
                    e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - ListDirectoryBuckets

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up a VPC and VPC Endpoint.

- Set up the Policies, Roles, and User to work with S3 directory buckets and the S3 Express One Zone storage class.
- Create two S3 Clients.
- Create two buckets.
- Create an object and copy it over.
- Demonstrate performance difference.
- Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
- Prompt the user to see if they want to clean up the resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 features.

```
public class S3DirectoriesScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3DirectoriesScenario.class);
    static Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);

    private static S3AsyncClient mS3RegularClient;
    private static S3AsyncClient mS3ExpressClient;

    private static String mdirectoryBucketName;
    private static String mregularBucketName;

    private static String stackName = "cfn-stack-s3-express-basics--" +
 UUID.randomUUID();

    private static String regularUser = "";
    private static String vpcId = "";
    private static String expressUser = "";
```

```
   private static String vpcEndpointId = "";

   private static final S3DirectoriesActions s3DirectoriesActions = new
S3DirectoriesActions();

   public static void main(String[] args) {
       try {
           s3ExpressScenario();
       } catch (RuntimeException e) {
           logger.info(e.getMessage());
       }
   }

   // Runs the scenario.
   private static void s3ExpressScenario() {
       logger.info(DASHES);
       logger.info("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Express Basics demo using AWS SDK for
Java V2.");
       logger.info("""
           Let's get started! First, please note that S3 Express One Zone works
best when working within the AWS infrastructure,
           specifically when working in the same Availability Zone (AZ). To see the
best results in this example and when you implement
           directory buckets into your infrastructure, it is best to put your
compute resources in the same AZ as your directory
           bucket.
           """);
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       logger.info(DASHES);

       // Create an optional VPC and create 2 IAM users.
       UserNames userNames = createVpcUsers();
       String expressUserName = userNames.getExpressUserName();
       String regularUserName = userNames.getRegularUserName();

       //  Set up two S3 clients, one regular and one express,
       //  and two buckets, one regular and one directory.
       setupClientsAndBuckets(expressUserName, regularUserName);

       // Create an S3 session for the express S3 client and add objects to the
buckets.
       logger.info("Now let's add some objects to our buckets and demonstrate how
to work with S3 Sessions.");
```

```
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String bucketObject = createSessionAddObjects();

        // Demonstrate performance differences between regular and directory
buckets.
        demonstratePerformance(bucketObject);

        // Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference between
        // regular and express buckets.
        showLexicographicalDifferences(bucketObject);

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("That's it for our tour of the basic operations for S3 Express
One Zone.");
        logger.info("Would you like to cleanUp the AWS resources? (y/n): ");
        String response = scanner.next().trim().toLowerCase();
        if (response.equals("y")) {
            cleanUp(stackName);
        }
    }

    /*
      Delete resources created by this scenario.
    */
    public static void cleanUp(String stackName) {
        try {
            if (mdirectoryBucketName != null) {
                s3DirectoriesActions.deleteBucketAndObjectsAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName).join();
            }
            logger.info("Deleted directory bucket " + mdirectoryBucketName);
            mdirectoryBucketName = null;
            if (mregularBucketName != null) {
                s3DirectoriesActions.deleteBucketAndObjectsAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName).join();
            }
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
```

```
        }

        logger.info("Deleted regular bucket " + mregularBucketName);
        mregularBucketName = null;
        CloudFormationHelper.destroyCloudFormationStack(stackName);
    }

    private static void showLexicographicalDifferences(String bucketObject) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical (alphabetical)
difference
            when object names are listed. Now let's explore how directory buckets
store
            objects in a different manner to regular buckets. The key is in the
name
            "Directory". Where regular buckets store their key/value pairs in a
            flat manner, directory buckets use actual directories/folders.
            This allows for more rapid indexing, traversing, and therefore
            retrieval times!

            The more segmented your bucket is, with lots of
            directories, sub-directories, and objects, the more efficient it
becomes.
            This structural difference also causes `ListObject` operations to
behave
            differently, which can cause unexpected results. Let's add a few more
            objects in sub-directories to see how the output of
            ListObjects changes.
            """);

        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        //  Populate a few more files in each bucket so that we can use
        //  ListObjects and show the difference.
        String otherObject = "other/" + bucketObject;
        String altObject = "alt/" + bucketObject;
        String otherAltObject = "other/alt/" + bucketObject;

        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, otherObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, otherObject, "").join();
```

```
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, altObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, altObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, otherAltObject, "").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, otherAltObject, "").join();

        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof NoSuchBucketException) {
                logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        try {
            // List objects in both S3 buckets.
            List<String> dirBucketObjects =
s3DirectoriesActions.listObjectsAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName).join();
            List<String> regBucketObjects =
s3DirectoriesActions.listObjectsAsync(mS3RegularClient, mregularBucketName).join();

            logger.info("Directory bucket content");
            for (String obj : dirBucketObjects) {
                logger.info(obj);
            }

            logger.info("Regular bucket content");
            for (String obj : regBucketObjects) {
                logger.info(obj);
            }
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            logger.error("Async operation failed: {} ", e.getCause().getMessage());
            return;
        }

        logger.info("""
```

```
            Notice how the regular bucket lists objects in lexicographical order,
while the directory bucket does not. This is
            because the regular bucket considers the whole "key" to be the object
identifier, while the directory bucket actually
            creates directories and uses the object "key" as a path to the object.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
    }

    /**
     * Demonstrates the performance difference between downloading an object from a
directory bucket and a regular bucket.
     *
     * <p>This method:
     * <ul>
     *     <li>Prompts the user to choose the number of downloads (default is
1,000).</li>
     *     <li>Downloads the specified object from the directory bucket and measures
the total time.</li>
     *     <li>Downloads the same object from the regular bucket and measures the
total time.</li>
     *     <li>Compares the time differences and prints the results.</li>
     * </ul>
     *
     * <p>Note: The performance difference will be more pronounced if this example
is run on an EC2 instance
     * in the same Availability Zone as the buckets.
     *
     * @param bucketObject the name of the object to download
     */
    private static void demonstratePerformance(String bucketObject) {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("6. Demonstrate the performance difference.");
        logger.info("""
            Now, let's do a performance test. We'll download the same object from
each
            bucket repeatedly and compare the total time needed.

            Note: the performance difference will be much more pronounced if this
            example is run in an EC2 instance in the same Availability Zone as
            the bucket.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
```

```
        int downloads = 1000; // Default value.
        logger.info("The default number of downloads of the same object for this
example is set at " + downloads + ".");

        // Ask if the user wants to download a different number.
        logger.info("Would you like to download the file a different number of
times? (y/n): ");
        String response = scanner.next().trim().toLowerCase();
        if (response.equals("y")) {
            int maxDownloads = 1_000_000;

            // Ask for a valid number of downloads.
            while (true) {
                logger.info("Enter a number between 1 and " + maxDownloads + " for
the number of downloads: ");
                if (scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                    downloads = scanner.nextInt();
                    if (downloads >= 1 && downloads <= maxDownloads) {
                        break;
                    } else {
                        logger.info("Please enter a number between 1 and " +
maxDownloads + ".");
                    }
                } else {
                    logger.info("Invalid input. Please enter a valid integer.");
                    scanner.next();
                }
            }

            logger.info("You have chosen to download {}  items.", downloads);
        } else {
            logger.info("No changes made. Using default downloads: {}", downloads);
        }
        // Simulating the download process for the directory bucket.
        logger.info("Downloading from the directory bucket.");
        long directoryTimeStart = System.nanoTime();
        for (int index = 0; index < downloads; index++) {
            if (index % 50 == 0) {
                logger.info("Download " + index + " of " + downloads);
            }

            try {
                // Get the object from the directory bucket.
```

```
                s3DirectoriesActions.getObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName, bucketObject).join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof NoSuchKeyException) {
                    logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                }
                return;
            }
        }
        long directoryTimeDifference = System.nanoTime() - directoryTimeStart;

        // Download from the regular bucket.
        logger.info("Downloading from the regular bucket.");
        long normalTimeStart = System.nanoTime();
        for (int index = 0; index < downloads; index++) {
            if (index % 50 == 0) {
                logger.info("Download " + index + " of " + downloads);
            }

            try {
                s3DirectoriesActions.getObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, bucketObject).join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof NoSuchKeyException) {
                    logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                }
                return;
            }
        }

        long normalTimeDifference = System.nanoTime() - normalTimeStart;
        logger.info("The directory bucket took " + directoryTimeDifference
+ " nanoseconds, while the regular bucket took " + normalTimeDifference + "
nanoseconds.");
```

```
        long difference = normalTimeDifference - directoryTimeDifference;
        logger.info("That's a difference of " + difference + " nanoseconds, or");
        logger.info(difference / 1_000_000_000.0 + " seconds.");

        if (difference < 0) {
            logger.info("The directory buckets were slower. This can happen if you
are not running on the cloud within a VPC.");
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
    }

    private static String createSessionAddObjects() {
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            5. Create an object and copy it.
            We'll create an object consisting of some text and upload it to the
            regular bucket.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        String bucketObject = "basic-text-object.txt";
        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.putObjectAsync(mS3RegularClient,
mregularBucketName, bucketObject, "Look Ma, I'm a bucket!").join();
            s3DirectoriesActions.createSessionAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mdirectoryBucketName).join();

            // Copy the object to the destination S3 bucket.
            s3DirectoriesActions.copyObjectAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
mregularBucketName, bucketObject, mdirectoryBucketName, bucketObject).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                logger.error("S3Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
        }
        logger.info("""
            It worked! This is because the S3Client that performed the copy
operation
            is the expressClient using the credentials for the user with permission
to
```

```
            work with directory buckets.

            It's important to remember the user permissions when interacting with
            directory buckets. Instead of validating permissions on every call as
            regular buckets do, directory buckets utilize the user credentials and
session
            token to validate. This allows for much faster connection speeds on
every call.
            For single calls, this is low, but for many concurrent calls
            this adds up to a lot of time saved.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        return bucketObject;
    }

    /**
     * Creates VPC users for the S3 Express One Zone scenario.
     * <p>
     * This method performs the following steps:
     * <ol>
     *     <li>Optionally creates a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if the application
is running in an EC2 instance in the same Availability Zone as the directory
buckets.</li>
     *     <li>Creates two IAM users: one with S3 Express One Zone permissions and
one without.</li>
     * </ol>
     *
     * @return a {@link UserNames} object containing the names of the created IAM
users
     */
    public static UserNames createVpcUsers() {
        /*
        Optionally create a VPC.
        Create two IAM users, one with S3 Express One Zone permissions and one
without.
        */
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            1. First, we'll set up a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if this program is
running in an EC2 instance in the same AZ as your\s
            directory buckets will be. Are you running this in an EC2 instance
located in the same AZ as your intended directory buckets?
            """);
```

```
        logger.info("Do you want to setup a VPC Endpoint? (y/n)");
        String endpointAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (endpointAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            logger.info("""
                Great! Let's set up a VPC, retrieve the Route Table from it, and
create a VPC Endpoint to connect the S3 Client to.
                """);
            try {
                s3DirectoriesActions.setupVPCAsync().join();
            } catch (CompletionException ce) {
                Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                    logger.error("IamException occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                } else {
                    logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
                }
            }
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        } else {
            logger.info("Skipping the VPC setup. Don't forget to use this in
production!");
        }
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            2. Create a RegularUser and ExpressUser by using the AWS CDK.
            One IAM User, named RegularUser, will have permissions to work only
            with regular buckets and one IAM user, named ExpressUser, will have
            permissions to work only with directory buckets.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);

        // Create two users required for this scenario.
        Map<String, String> stackOutputs = createUsersUsingCDK(stackName);
        regularUser = stackOutputs.get("RegularUser");
        expressUser = stackOutputs.get("ExpressUser");

        UserNames names = new UserNames();
        names.setRegularUserName(regularUser);
        names.setExpressUserName(expressUser);
        return names;
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Creates users using AWS CloudFormation.
     *
     * @return a {@link Map} of String keys and String values representing the stack
outputs,
     * which may include user-related information such as user names and IDs.
     */
    public static Map<String, String> createUsersUsingCDK(String stackName) {
        logger.info("We'll use an AWS CloudFormation template to create the IAM
users and policies.");
        CloudFormationHelper.deployCloudFormationStack(stackName);
        return CloudFormationHelper.getStackOutputsAsync(stackName).join();
    }

    /**
     * Sets up the necessary clients and buckets for the S3 Express service.
     *
     * @param expressUserName the username for the user with S3 Express permissions
     * @param regularUserName the username for the user with regular S3 permissions
     */
    public static void setupClientsAndBuckets(String expressUserName, String
regularUserName) {
        Scanner locscanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        String accessKeyIdforRegUser;
        String secretAccessforRegUser;
        try {
            CreateAccessKeyResponse keyResponse =
s3DirectoriesActions.createAccessKeyAsync(regularUserName).join();
            accessKeyIdforRegUser = keyResponse.accessKey().accessKeyId();
            secretAccessforRegUser = keyResponse.accessKey().secretAccessKey();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IamException) {
                logger.error("IamException occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        String accessKeyIdforExpressUser;
        String secretAccessforExpressUser;
        try {
```

```
            CreateAccessKeyResponse keyResponseExpress =
s3DirectoriesActions.createAccessKeyAsync(expressUserName).join();
            accessKeyIdforExpressUser =
keyResponseExpress.accessKey().accessKeyId();
            secretAccessforExpressUser =
keyResponseExpress.accessKey().secretAccessKey();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IamException) {
                logger.error("IamException occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            3. Create two S3Clients; one uses the ExpressUser's credentials and one
uses the RegularUser's credentials.
            The 2 S3Clients will use different credentials.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(locscanner);
        try {
            mS3RegularClient =
createS3ClientWithAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyIdforRegUser,
secretAccessforRegUser).join();
            mS3ExpressClient =
createS3ClientWithAccessKeyAsync(accessKeyIdforExpressUser,
secretAccessforExpressUser).join();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof IllegalArgumentException) {
                logger.error("An invalid argument exception occurred: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
            return;
        }

        logger.info("""
```

```
            We can now use the ExpressUser client to make calls to S3 Express
operations.
            """);
        waitForInputToContinue(locscanner);
        logger.info(DASHES);
        logger.info("""
            4. Create two buckets.
            Now we will create a directory bucket which is the linchpin of the S3
Express One Zone service. Directory buckets
            behave differently from regular S3 buckets which we will explore here.
We'll also create a regular bucket, put
            an object into the regular bucket, and copy it to the directory bucket.
            """);

        logger.info("""
            Now, let's choose an availability zone (AZ) for the directory bucket.
            We'll choose one that is supported.
            """);
        String zoneId;
        String regularBucketName;
        try {
            zoneId = s3DirectoriesActions.selectAvailabilityZoneIdAsync().join();
            regularBucketName = "reg-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis();
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                logger.error("EC2Exception occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
            }
            return;
        }
        logger.info("""
            Now, let's create the actual directory bucket, as well as a regular
bucket."
             """);

        String directoryBucketName = "test-bucket-" + System.currentTimeMillis() +
"--" + zoneId + "--x-s3";
        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.createDirectoryBucketAsync(mS3ExpressClient,
directoryBucketName, zoneId).join();
            logger.info("Created directory bucket {}", directoryBucketName);
```

```
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.error("The bucket already exists. Moving on: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                return;
            }
        }

        // Assign to the data member.
        mdirectoryBucketName = directoryBucketName;
        try {
            s3DirectoriesActions.createBucketAsync(mS3RegularClient,
regularBucketName).join();
            logger.info("Created regular bucket {} ", regularBucketName);
            mregularBucketName = regularBucketName;
        } catch (CompletionException ce) {
            Throwable cause = ce.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                logger.error("The bucket already exists. Moving on: {}",
cause.getMessage(), ce);
            } else {
                logger.error("An unexpected error occurred: {}", cause.getMessage(),
ce);
                return;
            }
        }
        logger.info("Great! Both buckets were created.");
        waitForInputToContinue(locscanner);
    }

    /**
     * Creates an asynchronous S3 client with the specified access key and secret
access key.
     *
     * @param accessKeyId     the AWS access key ID
     * @param secretAccessKey the AWS secret access key
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that asynchronously creates the S3 client
     * @throws IllegalArgumentException if the access key ID or secret access key is
null
     */
```

```
    public static CompletableFuture<S3AsyncClient>
 createS3ClientWithAccessKeyAsync(String accessKeyId, String secretAccessKey) {
        return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() -> {
            // Validate input parameters
            if (accessKeyId == null || accessKeyId.isBlank() || secretAccessKey ==
 null || secretAccessKey.isBlank()) {
                throw new IllegalArgumentException("Access Key ID and Secret Access
 Key must not be null or empty");
            }

            AwsBasicCredentials awsCredentials =
 AwsBasicCredentials.create(accessKeyId, secretAccessKey);
            return S3AsyncClient.builder()

 .credentialsProvider(StaticCredentialsProvider.create(awsCredentials))
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
        });
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            logger.info("");
            logger.info("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                logger.info("Continuing with the program...");
                logger.info("");
                break;
            } else {
                logger.info("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon S3 SDK methods.

```
public class S3DirectoriesActions {

    private static IamAsyncClient iamAsyncClient;
```

```
    private static Ec2AsyncClient ec2AsyncClient;
    private static final Logger logger =
LoggerFactory.getLogger(S3DirectoriesActions.class);

    private static IamAsyncClient getIAMAsyncClient() {
        if (iamAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();

            iamAsyncClient = IamAsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return iamAsyncClient;
    }

    private static Ec2AsyncClient getEc2AsyncClient() {
        if (ec2AsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                .maxConcurrency(100)
                .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
                .retryStrategy(RetryMode.STANDARD)
                .build();
```

```
            ec2AsyncClient = Ec2AsyncClient.builder()
                .httpClient(httpClient)
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                .build();
        }
        return ec2AsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 bucket and all the objects within it asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3AsyncClient the S3 asynchronous client to use for the operations
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket to be deleted
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with a {@link
WaiterResponse} containing the
     *         {@link HeadBucketResponse} when the bucket has been successfully
deleted
     * @throws CompletionException if there was an error deleting the bucket or its
objects
     */
    public CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
deleteBucketAndObjectsAsync(S3AsyncClient s3AsyncClient, String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request listRequest = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        return s3AsyncClient.listObjectsV2(listRequest)
            .thenCompose(listResponse -> {
                if (!listResponse.contents().isEmpty()) {
                    List<ObjectIdentifier> objectIdentifiers =
listResponse.contents().stream()
                        .map(s3Object ->
ObjectIdentifier.builder().key(s3Object.key()).build())
                        .collect(Collectors.toList());

                    DeleteObjectsRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(bucketName)
                        .delete(Delete.builder().objects(objectIdentifiers).build())
                        .build();

                    return s3AsyncClient.deleteObjects(deleteRequest)
```

```
                        .thenAccept(deleteResponse -> {
                            if (!deleteResponse.errors().isEmpty()) {
                                deleteResponse.errors().forEach(error ->
                                    logger.error("Couldn't delete object " +
error.key() + ". Reason: " + error.message()));
                            }
                        });
                }
                return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null);
            })
            .thenCompose(ignored -> {
                DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest =
DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
                return s3AsyncClient.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
            })
            .thenCompose(ignored -> {
                S3AsyncWaiter waiter = s3AsyncClient.waiter();
                HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest =
HeadBucketRequest.builder().bucket(bucketName).build();
                return waiter.waitUntilBucketNotExists(headBucketRequest);
            })
            .whenComplete((ignored, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Error deleting bucket: " +
bucketName, cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to delete bucket and
objects: " + bucketName, exception);
                }
                logger.info("Bucket deleted successfully: " + bucketName);
            });
    }

    /**
     *  Lists the objects in an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3Client the S3 async client to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the objects to list
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that contains the list of object keys in
the specified bucket
```

```
     */
    public CompletableFuture<List<String>> listObjectsAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client,
String bucketName) {
        ListObjectsV2Request request = ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        return s3Client.listObjectsV2(request)
            .thenApply(response -> response.contents().stream()
                .map(S3Object::key)
                .toList())
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Couldn't list objects in bucket:
" + bucketName, exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Retrieves an object from an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3Client   the S3 async client to use for the operation
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket containing the object
     * @param keyName    the unique identifier (key) of the object to retrieve
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains the
object's content as a {@link ResponseBytes} of {@link GetObjectResponse}
     */
    public CompletableFuture<ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse>>
getObjectAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName, String keyName) {
        GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
            .key(keyName)
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        // Get the object asynchronously and transform it into a byte array
        return s3Client.getObject(objectRequest, AsyncResponseTransformer.toBytes())
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                if (cause instanceof NoSuchKeyException) {
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to get the object. Reason:
" + ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
                }
```

```
                throw new CompletionException("Failed to get the object",
exception);
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously copies an object from one S3 bucket to another.
     *
     * @param s3Client           the S3 async client to use for the copy operation
     * @param sourceBucket       the name of the source bucket
     * @param sourceKey          the key of the object to be copied in the source
bucket
     * @param destinationBucket  the name of the destination bucket
     * @param destinationKey     the key of the copied object in the destination
bucket
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the copy operation is
finished
     */
    public CompletableFuture<Void> copyObjectAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String
sourceBucket, String sourceKey, String destinationBucket, String destinationKey) {
        CopyObjectRequest copyRequest = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
            .sourceBucket(sourceBucket)
            .sourceKey(sourceKey)
            .destinationBucket(destinationBucket)
            .destinationKey(destinationKey)
            .build();

        return s3Client.copyObject(copyRequest)
            .thenRun(() -> logger.info("Copied object '" + sourceKey + "' from
bucket '" + sourceBucket + "' to bucket '" + destinationBucket + "'"))
            .whenComplete((ignored, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Couldn't copy object '" +
sourceKey + "' from bucket '" + sourceBucket + "' to bucket '" + destinationBucket
+ "'. Reason: " + ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to copy object",
exception);
                }
            });
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Asynchronously creates a session for the specified S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   the S3 asynchronous client to use for creating the session
     * @param bucketName the name of the S3 bucket for which to create the session
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the session is
created, or throws a {@link CompletionException} if an error occurs
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateSessionResponse> createSessionAsync(S3AsyncClient
s3Client, String bucketName) {
        CreateSessionRequest request = CreateSessionRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .build();

        return s3Client.createSession(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof S3Exception) {
                        throw new CompletionException("Couldn't create the session.
Reason: " + ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Unexpected error occurred while
creating session", exception);
                }
                logger.info("Created session for bucket: " + bucketName);
            });

    }

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The asynchronous S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The Availability Zone where the bucket will be created
     * @throws CompletionException if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateBucketResponse>
createDirectoryBucketAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName, String zone)
{
        logger.info("Creating bucket: " + bucketName);
```

```
        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
            .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                .name(zone)
                .build())
            .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
                .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                .build())
            .build();

        CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
            .bucket(bucketName)
            .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration)
            .build();

        return s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The bucket already exists: "
+ ((S3Exception) cause).awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Unexpected error occurred while
creating bucket", exception);
                }
                logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: " +
response.location());
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an S3 bucket asynchronously.
     *
     * @param s3Client    the S3 async client to use for the bucket creation
     * @param bucketName  the name of the S3 bucket to create
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
WaiterResponse} containing the {@link HeadBucketResponse}
     *         when the bucket is successfully created
     * @throws CompletionException if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
```

```
   public CompletableFuture<WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse>>
createBucketAsync(S3AsyncClient s3Client, String bucketName) {
       CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .build();

       return s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest)
           .thenCompose(response -> {
               S3AsyncWaiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
               HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .build();
               return s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
           })
           .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
               if (exception != null) {
                   Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                   if (cause instanceof BucketAlreadyExistsException) {
                       throw new CompletionException("The S3 bucket exists: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                   } else {
                       throw new CompletionException("Failed to create access key:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                   }
               }
               logger.info(bucketName + " is ready");
           });
   }

   /**
    * Uploads an object to an Amazon S3 bucket asynchronously.
    *
    * @param s3Client     the S3 async client to use for the upload
    * @param bucketName   the destination S3 bucket name
    * @param bucketObject the name of the object to be uploaded
    * @param text         the content to be uploaded as the object
    */
   public CompletableFuture<PutObjectResponse> putObjectAsync(S3AsyncClient
s3Client, String bucketName, String bucketObject, String text) {
       PutObjectRequest objectRequest = PutObjectRequest.builder()
           .bucket(bucketName)
           .key(bucketObject)
           .build();
```

```
        return s3Client.putObject(objectRequest, AsyncRequestBody.fromString(text))
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (exception != null) {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof NoSuchBucketException) {
                        throw new CompletionException("The S3 bucket does not exist:
" + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    } else {
                        throw new CompletionException("Failed to create access key:
" + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                    }
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Creates an AWS IAM access key asynchronously for the specified user name.
     *
     * @param userName the name of the IAM user for whom to create the access key
     * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the {@link
CreateAccessKeyResponse} containing the created access key
     */
    public CompletableFuture<CreateAccessKeyResponse> createAccessKeyAsync(String
userName) {
        CreateAccessKeyRequest request = CreateAccessKeyRequest.builder()
            .userName(userName)
            .build();

        return getIAMAsyncClient().createAccessKey(request)
            .whenComplete((response, exception) -> {
                if (response != null) {
                    logger.info("Access Key Created.");
                } else {
                    if (exception == null) {
                        Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                        if (cause instanceof IamException) {
                            throw new CompletionException("IAM error while creating
access key: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                        } else {
                            throw new CompletionException("Failed to create access
key: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                        }
                    }
                }
```

```
            });
    }

    /**
     * Asynchronously selects an Availability Zone ID from the available EC2 zones.
     *
     * @return A {@link CompletableFuture} that resolves to the selected
 Availability Zone ID.
     * @throws CompletionException if an error occurs during the request or
 processing.
     */
    public CompletableFuture<String> selectAvailabilityZoneIdAsync() {
        DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest zonesRequest =
 DescribeAvailabilityZonesRequest.builder()
            .build();

        return getEc2AsyncClient().describeAvailabilityZones(zonesRequest)
            .thenCompose(response -> {
                List<AvailabilityZone> zonesList = response.availabilityZones();
                if (zonesList.isEmpty()) {
                    logger.info("No availability zones found.");
                    return CompletableFuture.completedFuture(null); // Return null
 if no zones are found
                }

                List<String> zoneIds = zonesList.stream()
                    .map(AvailabilityZone::zoneId) // Get the zoneId (e.g., "usw2-
az1")
                    .toList();

                return CompletableFuture.supplyAsync(() ->
 promptUserForZoneSelection(zonesList, zoneIds))
                    .thenApply(selectedZone -> {
                        // Return only the selected Zone ID (e.g., "usw2-az1").
                        return selectedZone.zoneId();
                    });
            })
            .whenComplete((result, exception) -> {
                if (exception == null) {
                    if (result != null) {
                        logger.info("Selected Availability Zone ID: " + result);
                    } else {
                        logger.info("No availability zone selected.");
                    }
```

```
                } else {
                    Throwable cause = exception.getCause();
                    if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                        throw new CompletionException("EC2 error while selecting
availability zone: " + cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    }
                    throw new CompletionException("Failed to select availability
zone: " + exception.getMessage(), exception);
                }
            });
    }

    /**
     * Prompts the user to select an Availability Zone from the given list.
     *
     * @param zonesList the list of Availability Zones
     * @param zoneIds the list of zone IDs
     * @return the selected Availability Zone
     */
    private static AvailabilityZone
promptUserForZoneSelection(List<AvailabilityZone> zonesList, List<String> zoneIds)
{
        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        int index = -1;

        while (index < 0 || index >= zoneIds.size()) {
            logger.info("Select an availability zone:");
            IntStream.range(0, zoneIds.size()).forEach(i ->
                logger.info(i + ": " + zoneIds.get(i))
            );

            logger.info("Enter the number corresponding to your choice: ");
            if (scanner.hasNextInt()) {
                index = scanner.nextInt();
            } else {
                scanner.next();
            }
        }

        AvailabilityZone selectedZone = zonesList.get(index);
        logger.info("You selected: " + selectedZone.zoneId());
        return selectedZone;
    }
```

```
   /**
    * Asynchronously sets up a new VPC, including creating the VPC, finding the
associated route table, and
    * creating a VPC endpoint for the S3 service.
    *
    * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, contains a
AbstractMap with the
    *         VPC ID and VPC endpoint ID.
    */
   public CompletableFuture<AbstractMap.SimpleEntry<String, String>>
setupVPCAsync() {
       String cidr = "10.0.0.0/16";
       CreateVpcRequest vpcRequest = CreateVpcRequest.builder()
           .cidrBlock(cidr)
           .build();

       return getEc2AsyncClient().createVpc(vpcRequest)
           .thenCompose(vpcResponse -> {
               String vpcId = vpcResponse.vpc().vpcId();
               logger.info("VPC Created: {}", vpcId);

               Ec2AsyncWaiter waiter = getEc2AsyncClient().waiter();
               DescribeVpcsRequest request = DescribeVpcsRequest.builder()
                   .vpcIds(vpcId)
                   .build();

               return waiter.waitUntilVpcAvailable(request)
                   .thenApply(waiterResponse -> vpcId);
           })
           .thenCompose(vpcId -> {
               Filter filter = Filter.builder()
                   .name("vpc-id")
                   .values(vpcId)
                   .build();

               DescribeRouteTablesRequest describeRouteTablesRequest =
DescribeRouteTablesRequest.builder()
                   .filters(filter)
                   .build();

               return
getEc2AsyncClient().describeRouteTables(describeRouteTablesRequest)
                   .thenApply(routeTablesResponse -> {
                       if (routeTablesResponse.routeTables().isEmpty()) {
```

```
                            throw new CompletionException("No route tables found for
VPC: " + vpcId, null);
                        }
                        String routeTableId =
routeTablesResponse.routeTables().get(0).routeTableId();
                        logger.info("Route table found: {}", routeTableId);
                        return new AbstractMap.SimpleEntry<>(vpcId, routeTableId);
                    });
            })
            .thenCompose(vpcAndRouteTable -> {
                String vpcId = vpcAndRouteTable.getKey();
                String routeTableId = vpcAndRouteTable.getValue();
                Region region =
getEc2AsyncClient().serviceClientConfiguration().region();
                String serviceName = String.format("com.amazonaws.%s.s3express",
region.id());

                CreateVpcEndpointRequest endpointRequest =
CreateVpcEndpointRequest.builder()
                    .vpcId(vpcId)
                    .routeTableIds(routeTableId)
                    .serviceName(serviceName)
                    .build();

                return getEc2AsyncClient().createVpcEndpoint(endpointRequest)
                    .thenApply(vpcEndpointResponse -> {
                        String vpcEndpointId =
vpcEndpointResponse.vpcEndpoint().vpcEndpointId();
                        logger.info("VPC Endpoint created: {}", vpcEndpointId);
                        return new AbstractMap.SimpleEntry<>(vpcId, vpcEndpointId);
                    });
            })
            .exceptionally(exception -> {
                Throwable cause = exception.getCause() != null ?
exception.getCause() : exception;
                if (cause instanceof Ec2Exception) {
                    logger.error("EC2 error during VPC setup: {}",
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                    throw new CompletionException("EC2 error during VPC setup: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
                }

                logger.error("VPC setup failed: {}", cause.getMessage(), cause);
```

```
                throw new CompletionException("VPC setup failed: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
            });
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObject
  - ListObjects
  - PutObject

Actions

`AbortMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `AbortMultipartUpload`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Abort a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.AbortMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
```

```
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;


    /**
     * Aborts a specific multipart upload for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
     * @param uploadId   The upload ID of the multipart upload to abort
     * @return True if the multipart upload is successfully aborted, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload(S3Client s3Client,
 String bucketName,
            String objectKey, String uploadId) {
        logger.info("Aborting multipart upload: {} for bucket: {}", uploadId,
 bucketName);
        try {
            // Abort the multipart upload
            AbortMultipartUploadRequest abortMultipartUploadRequest =
 AbortMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .uploadId(uploadId)
                    .build();

            s3Client.abortMultipartUpload(abortMultipartUploadRequest);
            logger.info("Aborted multipart upload: {} for object: {}", uploadId,
 objectKey);
            return true;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to abort multipart upload: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CompleteMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `CompleteMultipartUpload`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Complete a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompleteMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompleteMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedMultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;
```

```
   /**
    * This method completes the multipart upload request by collating all the
    * upload parts.
    *
    * @param s3Client    The S3 client used to interact with S3
    * @param bucketName  The name of the directory bucket
    * @param objectKey   The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
    * @param uploadId    The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
    * @param uploadParts The list of completed parts
    * @return True if the multipart upload is successfully completed, false
    *         otherwise
    */
   public static boolean completeDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload(S3Client s3Client,
String bucketName, String objectKey,
           String uploadId, List<CompletedPart> uploadParts) {
       try {
           CompletedMultipartUpload completedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload.builder()
                   .parts(uploadParts)
                   .build();
           CompleteMultipartUploadRequest completeMultipartUploadRequest =
CompleteMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .key(objectKey)
                   .uploadId(uploadId)
                   .multipartUpload(completedMultipartUpload)
                   .build();

           CompleteMultipartUploadResponse response =
s3Client.completeMultipartUpload(completeMultipartUploadRequest);
           logger.info("Multipart upload completed. ETag: {}", response.eTag());
           return true;
       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to complete multipart upload: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
           return false;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

CopyObject

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object from a directory bucket to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CopyObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CopyObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Copies an object from one S3 general purpose bucket to one S3 directory
     * bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client     The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param sourceBucket The name of the source bucket
     * @param objectKey    The key (name) of the object to be copied
     * @param targetBucket The name of the target bucket
     */
```

```
   public static void copyDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
sourceBucket, String objectKey,
           String targetBucket) {
       logger.info("Copying object: {} from bucket: {} to bucket: {}", objectKey,
sourceBucket, targetBucket);

       try {
           // Create a CopyObjectRequest
           CopyObjectRequest copyReq = CopyObjectRequest.builder()
                   .sourceBucket(sourceBucket)
                   .sourceKey(objectKey)
                   .destinationBucket(targetBucket)
                   .destinationKey(objectKey)
                   .build();

           // Copy the object
           CopyObjectResponse copyRes = s3Client.copyObject(copyReq);
           logger.info("Successfully copied {} from bucket {} into bucket {}.
CopyObjectResponse: {}",
                   objectKey, sourceBucket, targetBucket,
copyRes.copyObjectResult().toString());

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to copy object: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an S3 directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DataRedundancy;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationInfo;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LocationType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Creates a new S3 directory bucket in a specified Zone (For example, a
     * specified Availability Zone in this code example).
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to create the bucket
     * @param bucketName The name of the bucket to be created
     * @param zone       The region where the bucket will be created
     * @throws S3Exception if there's an error creating the bucket
     */
    public static void createDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName,
 String zone) throws S3Exception {
        logger.info("Creating bucket: {}", bucketName);

        CreateBucketConfiguration bucketConfiguration =
 CreateBucketConfiguration.builder()
```

```
                .location(LocationInfo.builder()
                        .type(LocationType.AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .name(zone).build())
                .bucket(BucketInfo.builder()
                        .type(BucketType.DIRECTORY)
                        .dataRedundancy(DataRedundancy.SINGLE_AVAILABILITY_ZONE)
                        .build())
                .build();
        try {
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .createBucketConfiguration(bucketConfiguration).build();
            CreateBucketResponse response = s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket created successfully with location: {}",
response.location());
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Error creating bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMultipartUpload`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
```

```
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateMultipartUploadResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * This method creates a multipart upload request that generates a unique upload
     * ID used to track
     * all the upload parts.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
     * @return The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     */
    public static String createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload(S3Client s3Client,
 String bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Creating multipart upload for object: {} in bucket: {}",
 objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a CreateMultipartUploadRequest
            CreateMultipartUploadRequest createMultipartUploadRequest =
 CreateMultipartUploadRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Initiate the multipart upload
            CreateMultipartUploadResponse response =
 s3Client.createMultipartUpload(createMultipartUploadRequest);
            String uploadId = response.uploadId();
            logger.info("Multipart upload initiated. Upload ID: {}", uploadId);
            return uploadId;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to create multipart upload: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
```

```
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an S3 directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;

    /**
     * Deletes the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket to delete
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        logger.info("Deleting bucket: {}", bucketName);
```

```
        try {
            // Create a DeleteBucketRequest
            DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Delete the bucket
            s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
            logger.info("Successfully deleted bucket: {}", bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketEncryption`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the encryption configuration for a directory bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketEncryptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Deletes the encryption configuration from an S3 bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketEncryption(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketEncryptionRequest deleteRequest =
 DeleteBucketEncryptionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();

        try {
            s3Client.deleteBucketEncryption(deleteRequest);
            logger.info("Bucket encryption deleted for bucket: {}", bucketName);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket encryption: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a bucket policy for a directory bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getAwsAccountId;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketPolicy;

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;


    /**
     * Deletes the bucket policy for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketPolicy(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        logger.info("Deleting policy for bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a DeleteBucketPolicyRequest
            DeleteBucketPolicyRequest deletePolicyReq =
 DeleteBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Delete the bucket policy
            s3Client.deleteBucketPolicy(deletePolicyReq);
            logger.info("Successfully deleted bucket policy");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete bucket policy: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;




    /**
     * Deletes an object from the specified S3 directory bucket.
```

```
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be deleted
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Deleting object: {} from bucket: {}", objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a DeleteObjectRequest
            DeleteObjectRequest deleteObjectRequest = DeleteObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Delete the object
            s3Client.deleteObject(deleteObjectRequest);
            logger.info("Object {} has been deleted", objectKey);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete object: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete multiple objects in a directory bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Delete;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectIdentifier;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.net.URISyntaxException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.util.List;

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;


    /**
     * Deletes multiple objects from the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKeys The list of keys (names) of the objects to be deleted
     */
    public static void deleteDirectoryBucketObjects(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, List<String> objectKeys) {
        logger.info("Deleting objects from bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a list of ObjectIdentifier.
            List<ObjectIdentifier> identifiers = objectKeys.stream()
                    .map(key -> ObjectIdentifier.builder().key(key).build())
                    .toList();

            Delete delete = Delete.builder()
```

```
                    .objects(identifiers)
                    .build();

            DeleteObjectsRequest deleteObjectsRequest =
 DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .delete(delete)
                    .build();

            DeleteObjectsResponse deleteObjectsResponse =
 s3Client.deleteObjects(deleteObjectsRequest);
            deleteObjectsResponse.deleted().forEach(deleted -> logger.info("Deleted
 object: {}", deleted.key()));

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to delete objects: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetBucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketEncryption`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the encryption configuration of a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketEncryptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketEncryptionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionRule;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Retrieves the encryption configuration for an S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @return The type of server-side encryption applied to the bucket (e.g.,
     *         AES256, aws:kms)
     */
    public static String getDirectoryBucketEncryption(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName) {
        try {
            // Create a GetBucketEncryptionRequest
            GetBucketEncryptionRequest getRequest =
 GetBucketEncryptionRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the bucket encryption configuration
            GetBucketEncryptionResponse response =
 s3Client.getBucketEncryption(getRequest);
            ServerSideEncryptionRule rule =
 response.serverSideEncryptionConfiguration().rules().get(0);

            String encryptionType =
 rule.applyServerSideEncryptionByDefault().sseAlgorithmAsString();
            logger.info("Bucket encryption algorithm: {}", encryptionType);
            logger.info("KMS Customer Managed Key ID: {}",
 rule.applyServerSideEncryptionByDefault().kmsMasterKeyID());
            logger.info("Bucket Key Enabled: {}", rule.bucketKeyEnabled());

            return encryptionType;
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
```

```
            logger.error("Failed to get bucket encryption: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the policy of a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetBucketPolicyResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getAwsAccountId;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketPolicy;

    /**
     * Retrieves the bucket policy for the specified S3 directory bucket.
```

```
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @return The bucket policy text
     */
    public static String getDirectoryBucketPolicy(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName) {
        logger.info("Getting policy for bucket: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a GetBucketPolicyRequest
            GetBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = GetBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the bucket policy
            GetBucketPolicyResponse response = s3Client.getBucketPolicy(policyReq);

            // Print and return the policy text
            String policyText = response.policy();
            logger.info("Bucket policy: {}", policyText);
            return policyText;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to get bucket policy: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object from a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.charset.StandardCharsets;
import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Retrieves an object from the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be retrieved
     * @return The retrieved object as a ResponseInputStream
     */
    public static boolean getDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Retrieving object: {} from bucket: {}", objectKey, bucketName);
```

```
        try {
            // Create a GetObjectRequest
            GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the object as bytes
            ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
s3Client.getObjectAsBytes(objectRequest);
            byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();

            // Print object contents to console
            String objectContent = new String(data, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
            logger.info("Object contents: \n{}", objectContent);

            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to retrieve object: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetObjectAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object attributes from a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ObjectAttributes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Retrieves attributes for an object in the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to retrieve attributes for
     * @return True if the object attributes are successfully retrieved, false
     *         otherwise
     */
    public static boolean getDirectoryBucketObjectAttributes(S3Client s3Client,
 String bucketName, String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Retrieving attributes for object: {} from bucket: {}",
 objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a GetObjectAttributesRequest
            GetObjectAttributesRequest getObjectAttributesRequest =
 GetObjectAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .objectAttributes(ObjectAttributes.E_TAG,
 ObjectAttributes.STORAGE_CLASS,
                            ObjectAttributes.OBJECT_SIZE)
```

```
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the object attributes
            GetObjectAttributesResponse response =
s3Client.getObjectAttributes(getObjectAttributesRequest);
            logger.info("Attributes for object {}:", objectKey);
            logger.info("ETag: {}", response.eTag());
            logger.info("Storage Class: {}", response.storageClass());
            logger.info("Object Size: {}", response.objectSize());
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to retrieve object attributes: {} - Error code:
{}",
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`HeadBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadBucket`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Checks if the specified S3 directory bucket exists and is accessible.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Checks if the specified S3 directory bucket exists and is accessible.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket to check
     * @return True if the bucket exists and is accessible, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean headDirectoryBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName)
 {
        logger.info("Checking if bucket exists: {}", bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a HeadBucketRequest
            HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();
            // If the bucket doesn't exist, the following statement throws
 NoSuchBucketException,
            // which is a subclass of S3Exception.
            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest);
            logger.info("Amazon S3 directory bucket: \"{}\" found.", bucketName);
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to access bucket: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`HeadObject`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get metadata of an object in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;

    /**
     * Retrieves metadata for an object in the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to retrieve metadata for
     * @return True if the object exists, false otherwise
     */
    public static boolean headDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String objectKey) {
```

```
        logger.info("Retrieving metadata for object: {} from bucket: {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a HeadObjectRequest
            HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Retrieve the object metadata
            HeadObjectResponse response = s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
            logger.info("Amazon S3 object: \"{}\" found in bucket: \"{}\" with ETag:
\"{}\"", objectKey, bucketName,
                    response.eTag());
            logger.info("Content-Type: {}", response.contentType());
            logger.info("Content-Length: {}", response.contentLength());
            logger.info("Last Modified: {}", response.lastModified());
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to retrieve object metadata: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            return false;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListDirectoryBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDirectoryBuckets`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List all directory buckets.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Bucket;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListDirectoryBucketsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;

     /**
     * Lists all S3 directory buckets and no general purpose buckets.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @return A list of bucket names
     */
    public static List<String> listDirectoryBuckets(S3Client s3Client) {
        logger.info("Listing all directory buckets");

        try {
            // Create a ListBucketsRequest
            ListDirectoryBucketsRequest listDirectoryBucketsRequest =
 ListDirectoryBucketsRequest.builder().build();

            // Retrieve the list of buckets
            ListDirectoryBucketsResponse response =
 s3Client.listDirectoryBuckets(listDirectoryBucketsRequest);

            // Extract bucket names
            List<String> bucketNames = response.buckets().stream()
                    .map(Bucket::name)
                    .collect(Collectors.toList());

            return bucketNames;
```

```
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list buckets: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListDirectoryBuckets in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListMultipartUploads`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMultipartUploads`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List multipart uploads in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListMultipartUploadsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.MultipartUpload;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
```

```
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;


    /**
     * Lists multipart uploads for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @return A list of MultipartUpload objects representing the multipart uploads
     */
    public static List<MultipartUpload> listDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads(S3Client
 s3Client, String bucketName) {
        logger.info("Listing in-progress multipart uploads for bucket: {}",
 bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a ListMultipartUploadsRequest
            ListMultipartUploadsRequest listMultipartUploadsRequest =
 ListMultipartUploadsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // List the multipart uploads
            ListMultipartUploadsResponse response =
 s3Client.listMultipartUploads(listMultipartUploadsRequest);
            List<MultipartUpload> uploads = response.uploads();
            for (MultipartUpload upload : uploads) {
                logger.info("In-progress multipart upload: Upload ID: {}, Key: {},
 Initiated: {}", upload.uploadId(),
                        upload.key(), upload.initiated());
            }
            return uploads;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list multipart uploads: {} - Error code: {}",
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            return List.of(); // Return an empty list if an exception is thrown
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListMultipartUploads in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List objects in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Object;

import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.stream.Collectors;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;
```

```
   /**
    * Lists objects in the specified S3 directory bucket.
    *
    * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
    * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
    * @return A list of object keys in the bucket
    */
   public static List<String> listDirectoryBucketObjectsV2(S3Client s3Client,
String bucketName) {
       logger.info("Listing objects in bucket: {}", bucketName);

       try {
           // Create a ListObjectsV2Request
           ListObjectsV2Request listObjectsV2Request =
ListObjectsV2Request.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .build();

           // Retrieve the list of objects
           ListObjectsV2Response response =
s3Client.listObjectsV2(listObjectsV2Request);

           // Extract and return the object keys
           return response.contents().stream()
                   .map(S3Object::key)
                   .collect(Collectors.toList());

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to list objects: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListParts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListParts`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List parts of a multipart upload in a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListPartsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListPartsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.Part;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Lists the parts of a multipart upload for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object being uploaded
     * @param uploadId   The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     * @return A list of Part representing the parts of the multipart upload
```

```
    */
   public static List<Part> listDirectoryBucketMultipartUploadParts(S3Client
s3Client, String bucketName,
           String objectKey, String uploadId) {
       logger.info("Listing parts for object: {} in bucket: {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

       try {
           // Create a ListPartsRequest
           ListPartsRequest listPartsRequest = ListPartsRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .uploadId(uploadId)
                   .key(objectKey)
                   .build();

           // List the parts of the multipart upload
           ListPartsResponse response = s3Client.listParts(listPartsRequest);
           List<Part> parts = response.parts();
           for (Part part : parts) {
               logger.info("Uploaded part: Part number = \"{}\", etag = {}",
part.partNumber(), part.eTag());
           }
           return parts;

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to list parts: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
           return List.of(); // Return an empty list if an exception is thrown
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see ListParts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutBucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketEncryption`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set bucket encryption to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.kms.KmsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketEncryptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryption;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionByDefault;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ServerSideEncryptionRule;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createKmsClient;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createKmsKey;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.scheduleKeyDeletion;

    /**
     * Sets the default encryption configuration for an S3 bucket as SSE-KMS.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param kmsKeyId   The ID of the customer-managed KMS key
     */
    public static void putDirectoryBucketEncryption(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String kmsKeyId) {
        // Define the default encryption configuration to use SSE-KMS. For directory
        // buckets, AWS managed KMS keys aren't supported. Only customer-managed
 keys
        // are supported.
```

```
        ServerSideEncryptionByDefault encryptionByDefault =
ServerSideEncryptionByDefault.builder()
                .sseAlgorithm(ServerSideEncryption.AWS_KMS)
                .kmsMasterKeyID(kmsKeyId)
                .build();

        // Create a server-side encryption rule to apply the default encryption
        // configuration. For directory buckets, the bucketKeyEnabled field is
enforced
        // to be true.
        ServerSideEncryptionRule rule = ServerSideEncryptionRule.builder()
                .bucketKeyEnabled(true)
                .applyServerSideEncryptionByDefault(encryptionByDefault)
                .build();

        // Create the server-side encryption configuration for the bucket
        ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration encryptionConfiguration =
ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration.builder()
                .rules(rule)
                .build();

        // Create the PutBucketEncryption request
        PutBucketEncryptionRequest putRequest = PutBucketEncryptionRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .serverSideEncryptionConfiguration(encryptionConfiguration)
                .build();

        // Set the bucket encryption
        try {
            s3Client.putBucketEncryption(putRequest);
            logger.info("SSE-KMS Bucket encryption configuration set for the
directory bucket: {}", bucketName);
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to set bucket encryption: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

PutBucketPolicy

The following code example shows how to use PutBucketPolicy.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Apply a bucket policy to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketPolicyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getAwsAccountId;

    /**
     * Sets the following bucket policy for the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *<pre>
     * {
     *     "Version": "2012-10-17",
     *     "Statement": [
     *         {
     *             "Sid": "AdminPolicy",
     *             "Effect": "Allow",
     *             "Principal": {
     *                 "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::<ACCOUNT_ID>:root"
     *             },
     *             "Action": "s3express:*",
     *             "Resource": "arn:aws:s3express:us-west-2:<ACCOUNT_ID>:bucket/
<DIR_BUCKET_NAME>
     *         }
```

```
    *     ]
    * }
    * </pre>
    * This policy grants all S3 directory bucket actions to identities in the same
account as the bucket.
    *
    * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
    * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
    * @param policyText The policy text to be applied
    */
   public static void putDirectoryBucketPolicy(S3Client s3Client, String
bucketName, String policyText) {
       logger.info("Setting policy on bucket: {}", bucketName);
       logger.info("Policy: {}", policyText);

       try {
           PutBucketPolicyRequest policyReq = PutBucketPolicyRequest.builder()
                   .bucket(bucketName)
                   .policy(policyText)
                   .build();

           s3Client.putBucketPolicy(policyReq);
           logger.info("Bucket policy set successfully!");

       } catch (S3Exception e) {
           logger.error("Failed to set bucket policy: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                   e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
           throw e;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object into a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.awscore.exception.AwsErrorDetails;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;

import java.io.UncheckedIOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;

    /**
     * Puts an object into the specified S3 directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be placed in the bucket
     * @param filePath   The path of the file to be uploaded
     */
    public static void putDirectoryBucketObject(S3Client s3Client, String
 bucketName, String objectKey, Path filePath) {
        logger.info("Putting object: {} into bucket: {}", objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a PutObjectRequest
```

```
            PutObjectRequest putObj = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Upload the object
            s3Client.putObject(putObj, filePath);
            logger.info("Successfully placed {} into bucket {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

        } catch (UncheckedIOException e) {
            throw S3Exception.builder().message("Failed to read the file: " +
e.getMessage()).cause(e)
                    .awsErrorDetails(AwsErrorDetails.builder()
                            .errorCode("ClientSideException:FailedToReadFile")
                            .errorMessage(e.getMessage())
                            .build())
                    .build();
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to put object: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UploadPart`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPart`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload part of a multipart upload for a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.sync.RequestBody;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartResponse;

import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.RandomAccessFile;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;

    /**
     * This method creates part requests and uploads individual parts to S3.
     * While it uses the UploadPart API to upload a single part, it does so
     * sequentially to handle multiple parts of a file, returning all the completed
     * parts.
     *
     * @param s3Client   The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param bucketName The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey  The key (name) of the object to be uploaded
     * @param uploadId   The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     * @param filePath   The path to the file to be uploaded
     * @return A list of uploaded parts
     * @throws IOException if an I/O error occurs
     */
    public static List<CompletedPart> multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket(S3Client
 s3Client, String bucketName,
```

```
            String objectKey, String uploadId, Path filePath) throws IOException {
        logger.info("Uploading parts for object: {} in bucket: {}", objectKey,
bucketName);

        int partNumber = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> uploadedParts = new ArrayList<>();
        ByteBuffer bb = ByteBuffer.allocate(1024 * 1024 * 5); // 5 MB byte buffer

        // Read the local file, break down into chunks and process
        try (RandomAccessFile file = new RandomAccessFile(filePath.toFile(), "r")) {
            long fileSize = file.length();
            int position = 0;

            // Sequentially upload parts of the file
            while (position < fileSize) {
                file.seek(position);
                int read = file.getChannel().read(bb);

                bb.flip(); // Swap position and limit before reading from the buffer
                UploadPartRequest uploadPartRequest = UploadPartRequest.builder()
                        .bucket(bucketName)
                        .key(objectKey)
                        .uploadId(uploadId)
                        .partNumber(partNumber)
                        .build();

                UploadPartResponse partResponse = s3Client.uploadPart(
                        uploadPartRequest,
                        RequestBody.fromByteBuffer(bb));

                // Build the uploaded part
                CompletedPart uploadedPart = CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(partNumber)
                        .eTag(partResponse.eTag())
                        .build();

                // Add the uploaded part to the list
                uploadedParts.add(uploadedPart);

                // Log to indicate the part upload is done
                logger.info("Uploaded part number: {} with ETag: {}", partNumber,
partResponse.eTag());

                bb.clear();
```

```
                position += read;
                partNumber++;
            }
        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to list parts: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
            throw e;
        }
        return uploadedParts;
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UploadPartCopy`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPartCopy`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create copy parts based on source object size and copy over individual parts to a directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CompletedPart;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.HeadObjectResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartCopyRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.UploadPartCopyResponse;
```

```
import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.abortDirectoryBucketMultipartUploads;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.completeDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucketMultipartUpload;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.multipartUploadForDirectoryBucket;

    /**
     * Creates copy parts based on source object size and copies over individual
     * parts.
     *
     * @param s3Client          The S3 client used to interact with S3
     * @param sourceBucket      The name of the source bucket
     * @param sourceKey         The key (name) of the source object
     * @param destinationBucket The name of the destination bucket
     * @param destinationKey    The key (name) of the destination object
     * @param uploadId          The upload ID used to track the multipart upload
     * @return A list of completed parts
     */
    public static List<CompletedPart> multipartUploadCopyForDirectoryBucket(S3Client
 s3Client, String sourceBucket,
            String sourceKey, String destinationBucket, String destinationKey,
 String uploadId) {
        // Get the object size to track the end of the copy operation
        HeadObjectRequest headObjectRequest = HeadObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(sourceBucket)
                .key(sourceKey)
                .build();
        HeadObjectResponse headObjectResponse =
 s3Client.headObject(headObjectRequest);
        long objectSize = headObjectResponse.contentLength();
```

```
        logger.info("Source Object size: {}", objectSize);

        // Copy the object using 20 MB parts
        long partSize = 20 * 1024 * 1024; // 20 MB
        long bytePosition = 0;
        int partNum = 1;
        List<CompletedPart> uploadedParts = new ArrayList<>();

        while (bytePosition < objectSize) {
            long lastByte = Math.min(bytePosition + partSize - 1, objectSize - 1);
            logger.info("Part Number: {}, Byte Position: {}, Last Byte: {}",
partNum, bytePosition, lastByte);

            try {
                UploadPartCopyRequest uploadPartCopyRequest =
UploadPartCopyRequest.builder()
                        .sourceBucket(sourceBucket)
                        .sourceKey(sourceKey)
                        .destinationBucket(destinationBucket)
                        .destinationKey(destinationKey)
                        .uploadId(uploadId)
                        .copySourceRange("bytes=" + bytePosition + "-" + lastByte)
                        .partNumber(partNum)
                        .build();
                UploadPartCopyResponse uploadPartCopyResponse =
s3Client.uploadPartCopy(uploadPartCopyRequest);

                CompletedPart part = CompletedPart.builder()
                        .partNumber(partNum)
                        .eTag(uploadPartCopyResponse.copyPartResult().eTag())
                        .build();
                uploadedParts.add(part);

                bytePosition += partSize;
                partNum++;
            } catch (S3Exception e) {
                logger.error("Failed to copy part number {}: {} - Error code: {}",
partNum,
                        e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode());
                throw e;
            }
        }
```

```
        return uploadedParts;
    }
```

- For API details, see UploadPartCopy in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL to get an object

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for S3 directory buckets and get an object.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned GET URL for accessing an object in an S3 directory bucket.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.GetObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.S3Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.S3Presigner;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.GetObjectPresignRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.presigner.model.PresignedGetObjectRequest;

import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.time.Duration;

import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Client;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.createS3Presigner;
```

```
import static
 com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteAllObjectsInDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.deleteDirectoryBucket;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.getFilePath;
import static com.example.s3.util.S3DirectoryBucketUtils.putDirectoryBucketObject;


    /**
     * Generates a presigned URL for accessing an object in the specified S3
     * directory bucket.
     *
     * @param s3Presigner The S3 presigner client used to generate the presigned URL
     * @param bucketName  The name of the directory bucket
     * @param objectKey   The key (name) of the object to access
     * @return A presigned URL for accessing the specified object
     */
    public static String generatePresignedGetURLForDirectoryBucket(S3Presigner
 s3Presigner, String bucketName,
            String objectKey) {
        logger.info("Generating presigned URL for object: {} in bucket: {}",
 objectKey, bucketName);

        try {
            // Create a GetObjectRequest
            GetObjectRequest getObjectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key(objectKey)
                    .build();

            // Create a GetObjectPresignRequest
            GetObjectPresignRequest getObjectPresignRequest =
 GetObjectPresignRequest.builder()
                    .signatureDuration(Duration.ofMinutes(10)) // Presigned URL
 valid for 10 minutes
                    .getObjectRequest(getObjectRequest)
                    .build();

            // Generate the presigned URL
            PresignedGetObjectRequest presignedGetObjectRequest =
 s3Presigner.presignGetObject(getObjectPresignRequest);

            // Get the presigned URL
            String presignedURL = presignedGetObjectRequest.url().toString();
            logger.info("Presigned URL: {}", presignedURL);
```

```
            return presignedURL;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            logger.error("Failed to generate presigned URL: {} - Error code: {}",
e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage(),
                    e.awsErrorDetails().errorCode(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

S3 Glacier examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with S3 Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateVault`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVault`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.CreateVaultRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.CreateVaultResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateVault {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault to create.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        createGlacierVault(glacier, vaultName);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void createGlacierVault(GlacierClient glacier, String vaultName) {
        try {
            CreateVaultRequest vaultRequest = CreateVaultRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
```

```
                    .build();

            CreateVaultResponse createVaultResult =
 glacier.createVault(vaultRequest);
            System.out.println("The URI of the new vault is " +
 createVaultResult.location());

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteArchive`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DeleteArchiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class DeleteArchive {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName> <accountId> <archiveId>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault that contains the archive to
 delete.
                   accountId - The account ID value.
                   archiveId - The archive ID value.
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        String accountId = args[1];
        String archiveId = args[2];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deleteGlacierArchive(glacier, vaultName, accountId, archiveId);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void deleteGlacierArchive(GlacierClient glacier, String vaultName,
 String accountId,
            String archiveId) {
        try {
            DeleteArchiveRequest delArcRequest = DeleteArchiveRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .accountId(accountId)
                    .archiveId(archiveId)
                    .build();

            glacier.deleteArchive(delArcRequest);
            System.out.println("The archive was deleted.");

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteArchive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteVault`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVault`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DeleteVaultRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteVault {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName>

                Where:
```

```
                    vaultName - The name of the vault to delete.\s
                """";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String vaultName = args[0];
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        deleteGlacierVault(glacier, vaultName);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void deleteGlacierVault(GlacierClient glacier, String vaultName) {
        try {
            DeleteVaultRequest delVaultRequest = DeleteVaultRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .build();

            glacier.deleteVault(delVaultRequest);
            System.out.println("The vault was deleted!");

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVault in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

InitiateJob

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateJob`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve a vault inventory.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.ResponseBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.JobParameters;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.InitiateJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.InitiateJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DescribeJobRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DescribeJobResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GetJobOutputRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GetJobOutputResponse;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.OutputStream;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ArchiveDownload {
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <vaultName> <accountId> <path>

                Where:
                   vaultName - The name of the vault.
```

```
                   accountId - The account ID value.
                   path - The path where the file is written to.
               """;

       if (args.length != 3) {
           System.out.println(usage);
           System.exit(1);
       }

       String vaultName = args[0];
       String accountId = args[1];
       String path = args[2];
       GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
               .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
               .build();

       String jobNum = createJob(glacier, vaultName, accountId);
       checkJob(glacier, jobNum, vaultName, accountId, path);
       glacier.close();
   }

   public static String createJob(GlacierClient glacier, String vaultName, String
accountId) {
       try {
           JobParameters job = JobParameters.builder()
                   .type("inventory-retrieval")
                   .build();

           InitiateJobRequest initJob = InitiateJobRequest.builder()
                   .jobParameters(job)
                   .accountId(accountId)
                   .vaultName(vaultName)
                   .build();

           InitiateJobResponse response = glacier.initiateJob(initJob);
           System.out.println("The job ID is: " + response.jobId());
           System.out.println("The relative URI path of the job is: " +
response.location());
           return response.jobId();

       } catch (GlacierException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Poll S3 Glacier = Polling a Job may take 4-6 hours according to the
    // Documentation.
    public static void checkJob(GlacierClient glacier, String jobId, String name,
String account, String path) {
        try {
            boolean finished = false;
            String jobStatus;
            int yy = 0;

            while (!finished) {
                DescribeJobRequest jobRequest = DescribeJobRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(jobId)
                        .accountId(account)
                        .vaultName(name)
                        .build();

                DescribeJobResponse response = glacier.describeJob(jobRequest);
                jobStatus = response.statusCodeAsString();

                if (jobStatus.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0)
                    finished = true;
                else {
                    System.out.println(yy + " status is: " + jobStatus);
                    Thread.sleep(1000);
                }
                yy++;
            }

            System.out.println("Job has Succeeded");
            GetJobOutputRequest jobOutputRequest = GetJobOutputRequest.builder()
                    .jobId(jobId)
                    .vaultName(name)
                    .accountId(account)
                    .build();

            ResponseBytes<GetJobOutputResponse> objectBytes =
glacier.getJobOutputAsBytes(jobOutputRequest);
            // Write the data to a local file.
            byte[] data = objectBytes.asByteArray();
            File myFile = new File(path);
```

```
            OutputStream os = new FileOutputStream(myFile);
            os.write(data);
            System.out.println("Successfully obtained bytes from a Glacier vault");
            os.close();

        } catch (GlacierException | InterruptedException | IOException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);

        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListVaults`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVaults`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.ListVaultsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.ListVaultsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.DescribeVaultOutput;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListVaults {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listAllVault(glacier);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static void listAllVault(GlacierClient glacier) {
        boolean listComplete = false;
        String newMarker = null;
        int totalVaults = 0;
        System.out.println("Your Amazon Glacier vaults:");
        try {
            while (!listComplete) {
                ListVaultsResponse response = null;
                if (newMarker != null) {
                    ListVaultsRequest request = ListVaultsRequest.builder()
                            .marker(newMarker)
                            .build();

                    response = glacier.listVaults(request);
                } else {
                    ListVaultsRequest request = ListVaultsRequest.builder()
                            .build();
                    response = glacier.listVaults(request);
                }

                List<DescribeVaultOutput> vaultList = response.vaultList();
                for (DescribeVaultOutput v : vaultList) {
                    totalVaults += 1;
                    System.out.println("* " + v.vaultName());
                }

                // Check for further results.
                newMarker = response.marker();
                if (newMarker == null) {
                    listComplete = true;
                }
            }
```

```
            if (totalVaults == 0) {
                System.out.println("No vaults found.");
            }

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UploadArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadArchive`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.GlacierClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.UploadArchiveRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.UploadArchiveResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.glacier.model.GlacierException;
import java.io.File;
import java.nio.file.Path;
import java.nio.file.Paths;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.security.MessageDigest;
import java.security.NoSuchAlgorithmException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class UploadArchive {

    static final int ONE_MB = 1024 * 1024;

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:   <strPath> <vaultName>\s

                Where:
                   strPath - The path to the archive to upload (for example, C:\\AWS
\\test.pdf).
                   vaultName - The name of the vault.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String strPath = args[0];
        String vaultName = args[1];
        File myFile = new File(strPath);
        Path path = Paths.get(strPath);
        GlacierClient glacier = GlacierClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String archiveId = uploadContent(glacier, path, vaultName, myFile);
        System.out.println("The ID of the archived item is " + archiveId);
        glacier.close();
    }

    public static String uploadContent(GlacierClient glacier, Path path, String
 vaultName, File myFile) {
        // Get an SHA-256 tree hash value.
        String checkVal = computeSHA256(myFile);
        try {
```

```
            UploadArchiveRequest uploadRequest = UploadArchiveRequest.builder()
                    .vaultName(vaultName)
                    .checksum(checkVal)
                    .build();

            UploadArchiveResponse res = glacier.uploadArchive(uploadRequest, path);
            return res.archiveId();

        } catch (GlacierException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    private static String computeSHA256(File inputFile) {
        try {
            byte[] treeHash = computeSHA256TreeHash(inputFile);
            System.out.printf("SHA-256 tree hash = %s\n", toHex(treeHash));
            return toHex(treeHash);

        } catch (IOException ioe) {
            System.err.format("Exception when reading from file %s: %s", inputFile,
ioe.getMessage());
            System.exit(-1);

        } catch (NoSuchAlgorithmException nsae) {
            System.err.format("Cannot locate MessageDigest algorithm for SHA-256:
%s", nsae.getMessage());
            System.exit(-1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static byte[] computeSHA256TreeHash(File inputFile) throws IOException,
            NoSuchAlgorithmException {

        byte[][] chunkSHA256Hashes = getChunkSHA256Hashes(inputFile);
        return computeSHA256TreeHash(chunkSHA256Hashes);
    }

    /**
     * Computes an SHA256 checksum for each 1 MB chunk of the input file. This
     * includes the checksum for the last chunk, even if it's smaller than 1 MB.
```

```
     */
    public static byte[][] getChunkSHA256Hashes(File file) throws IOException,
            NoSuchAlgorithmException {

        MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance("SHA-256");
        long numChunks = file.length() / ONE_MB;
        if (file.length() % ONE_MB > 0) {
            numChunks++;
        }

        if (numChunks == 0) {
            return new byte[][] { md.digest() };
        }

        byte[][] chunkSHA256Hashes = new byte[(int) numChunks][];
        FileInputStream fileStream = null;

        try {
            fileStream = new FileInputStream(file);
            byte[] buff = new byte[ONE_MB];

            int bytesRead;
            int idx = 0;

            while ((bytesRead = fileStream.read(buff, 0, ONE_MB)) > 0) {
                md.reset();
                md.update(buff, 0, bytesRead);
                chunkSHA256Hashes[idx++] = md.digest();
            }

            return chunkSHA256Hashes;

        } finally {
            if (fileStream != null) {
                try {
                    fileStream.close();
                } catch (IOException ioe) {
                    System.err.printf("Exception while closing %s.\n %s",
file.getName(),
                            ioe.getMessage());
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    /**
     * Computes the SHA-256 tree hash for the passed array of 1 MB chunk
     * checksums.
     */
    public static byte[] computeSHA256TreeHash(byte[][] chunkSHA256Hashes)
            throws NoSuchAlgorithmException {

        MessageDigest md = MessageDigest.getInstance("SHA-256");
        byte[][] prevLvlHashes = chunkSHA256Hashes;
        while (prevLvlHashes.length > 1) {
            int len = prevLvlHashes.length / 2;
            if (prevLvlHashes.length % 2 != 0) {
                len++;
            }

            byte[][] currLvlHashes = new byte[len][];
            int j = 0;
            for (int i = 0; i < prevLvlHashes.length; i = i + 2, j++) {

                // If there are at least two elements remaining.
                if (prevLvlHashes.length - i > 1) {

                    // Calculate a digest of the concatenated nodes.
                    md.reset();
                    md.update(prevLvlHashes[i]);
                    md.update(prevLvlHashes[i + 1]);
                    currLvlHashes[j] = md.digest();

                } else { // Take care of the remaining odd chunk
                    currLvlHashes[j] = prevLvlHashes[i];
                }
            }

            prevLvlHashes = currLvlHashes;
        }

        return prevLvlHashes[0];
    }

    /**
     * Returns the hexadecimal representation of the input byte array
     */
    public static String toHex(byte[] data) {
```

```
        StringBuilder sb = new StringBuilder(data.length * 2);
        for (byte datum : data) {
            String hex = Integer.toHexString(datum & 0xFF);

            if (hex.length() == 1) {
                // Append leading zero.
                sb.append("0");
            }
            sb.append(hex);
        }
        return sb.toString().toLowerCase();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code examples show how to get started using SageMaker AI.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloSageMaker {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SageMakerClient sageMakerClient = SageMakerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listBooks(sageMakerClient);
        sageMakerClient.close();
    }

    public static void listBooks(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient) {
        try {
            ListNotebookInstancesResponse notebookInstancesResponse =
 sageMakerClient.listNotebookInstances();
            List<NotebookInstanceSummary> items =
 notebookInstancesResponse.notebookInstances();
            for (NotebookInstanceSummary item : items) {
                System.out.println("The notebook name is: " +
 item.notebookInstanceName());
            }

        } catch (SageMakerException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreatePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePipeline`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
   public static void setupPipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
filePath, String roleArn,
           String functionArn, String pipelineName) {
       System.out.println("Setting up the pipeline.");
       JSONParser parser = new JSONParser();

       // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
       try (FileReader reader = new FileReader(filePath)) {
           Object obj = parser.parse(reader);
           JSONObject jsonObject = (JSONObject) obj;
           JSONArray stepsArray = (JSONArray) jsonObject.get("Steps");
           for (Object stepObj : stepsArray) {
               JSONObject step = (JSONObject) stepObj;
               if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                   step.put("FunctionArn", functionArn);
```

```
                }
            }
            System.out.println(jsonObject);

            // Create the pipeline.
            CreatePipelineRequest pipelineRequest = CreatePipelineRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineDescription("Java SDK example pipeline")
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                    .pipelineDefinition(jsonObject.toString())
                    .build();

            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (IOException | ParseException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeletePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePipeline`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    public static void deletePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
pipelineName) {
        DeletePipelineRequest pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest.builder()
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
```

```
                .build();

        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + pipelineName);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribePipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePipelineExecution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Check the status of a pipeline execution.
    public static void waitForPipelineExecution(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient,
String executionArn)
            throws InterruptedException {
        String status;
        int index = 0;
        do {
            DescribePipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
DescribePipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineExecutionArn(executionArn)
                    .build();

            DescribePipelineExecutionResponse response = sageMakerClient
                    .describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatusAsString();
            System.out.println(index + ". The Status of the pipeline is " + status);
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4);
            index++;
        } while ("Executing".equals(status));
        System.out.println("Pipeline finished with status " + status);
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartPipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartPipelineExecution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    public static String executePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
 bucketName, String queueUrl,
            String roleArn, String pipelineName) {
        System.out.println("Starting pipeline execution.");
        String inputBucketLocation = "s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv";
        String output = "s3://" + bucketName + "/outputfiles/";
        Gson gson = new GsonBuilder()
                .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                .setPrettyPrinting().create();

        // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
        List<Parameter> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        Parameter para1 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_execution_role")
                .value(roleArn)
                .build();

        Parameter para2 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_queue_url")
                .value(queueUrl)
                .build();

        String inputJSON = "{\n" +
                "  \"DataSourceConfig\": {\n" +
```

```
                "    \"S3Data\": {\n" +
                "      \"S3Uri\": \"s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv\"\n" +
                "    },\n" +
                "    \"Type\": \"S3_DATA\"\n" +
                "  },\n" +
                "  \"DocumentType\": \"CSV\"\n" +
                "}";

        System.out.println(inputJSON);

        Parameter para3 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_input_config")
                .value(inputJSON)
                .build();

        // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
        VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data.builder()
                .s3Uri(output)
                .build();

        ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig outputConfig =
 ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig.builder()
                .s3Data(jobS3Data)
                .build();

        String gson4 = gson.toJson(outputConfig);
        Parameter para4 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_export_config")
                .value(gson4)
                .build();
        System.out.println("parameter_vej_export_config:" +
 gson.toJson(outputConfig));

        // Create a VectorEnrichmentJobConfig object.
        ReverseGeocodingConfig reverseGeocodingConfig =
 ReverseGeocodingConfig.builder()
                .xAttributeName("Longitude")
                .yAttributeName("Latitude")
                .build();

        VectorEnrichmentJobConfig jobConfig = VectorEnrichmentJobConfig.builder()
                .reverseGeocodingConfig(reverseGeocodingConfig)
                .build();
```

```
        String para5JSON = "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig\":
{\"XAttributeName\":\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}";
        Parameter para5 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_step_1_vej_config")
                .value(para5JSON)
                .build();

        System.out.println("parameter_step_1_vej_config:" + gson.toJson(jobConfig));
        parameters.add(para1);
        parameters.add(para2);
        parameters.add(para3);
        parameters.add(para4);
        parameters.add(para5);

        StartPipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
 StartPipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                .pipelineExecutionDescription("Created using Java SDK")
                .pipelineExecutionDisplayName(pipelineName + "-example-execution")
                .pipelineParameters(parameters)
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                .build();

        StartPipelineExecutionResponse response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn();
    }
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up resources for a pipeline.
- Set up a pipeline that executes a geospatial job.
- Start a pipeline execution.
- Monitor the status of the execution.

- View the output of the pipeline.
- Clean up resources.

For more information, see Create and run SageMaker pipelines using AWS SDKs on Community.aws.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class SagemakerWorkflow {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");
    private static String eventSourceMapping = "";

    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {
        final String usage = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <sageMakerRoleName> <lambdaRoleName> <functionFileLocation>
 <functionName> <queueName> <bucketName> <lnglatData> <spatialPipelinePath>
 <pipelineName>\n\n"
                +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    sageMakerRoleName - The name of the Amazon SageMaker role.\n\n"
 +
                "    lambdaRoleName - The name of the AWS Lambda role.\n\n" +
                "    functionFileLocation - The file location where the JAR file
 that represents the AWS Lambda function is located.\n\n"
                +
                "    functionName - The name of the AWS Lambda function (for
 example,SageMakerExampleFunction).\n\n" +
                "    queueName - The name of the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon
 SQS) queue.\n\n" +
                "    bucketName - The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service
 (Amazon S3) bucket.\n\n" +
                "    lnglatData - The file location of the latlongtest.csv file
 required for this use case.\n\n" +
```

```
                "    spatialPipelinePath - The file location of the
GeoSpatialPipeline.json file required for this use case.\n\n"
                +
                "    pipelineName - The name of the pipeline to create (for example,
sagemaker-sdk-example-pipeline).\n\n";

        if (args.length != 9) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sageMakerRoleName = args[0];
        String lambdaRoleName = args[1];
        String functionFileLocation = args[2];
        String functionName = args[3];
        String queueName = args[4];
        String bucketName = args[5];
        String lnglatData = args[6];
        String spatialPipelinePath = args[7];
        String pipelineName = args[8];
        String handlerName = "org.example.SageMakerLambdaFunction::handleRequest";

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SageMakerClient sageMakerClient = SageMakerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        LambdaClient lambdaClient = LambdaClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        S3Client s3Client = S3Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example
scenario.");
        System.out.println(
                "\nThis example workflow will guide you through setting up and
running an" +
                        "\nAmazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS
Lambda function and an" +
                        "\nAmazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse
geocode job to" +
                        "\nreverse geocode addresses in an input file and store the
results in an export file.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue
needed by the SageMaker pipeline.");
        String lambdaRoleArn = checkLambdaRole(iam, lambdaRoleName);
        String sageMakerRoleArn = checkSageMakerRole(iam, sageMakerRoleName);

        String functionArn = checkFunction(lambdaClient, functionName,
functionFileLocation, lambdaRoleArn,
                handlerName);
        String queueUrl = checkQueue(sqsClient, lambdaClient, queueName,
functionName);
        System.out.println("The queue URL is " + queueUrl);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Setting up bucket " + bucketName);
        if (!checkBucket(s3Client, bucketName)) {
            setupBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
            System.out.println("Put " + lnglatData + " into " + bucketName);
            putS3Object(s3Client, bucketName, "latlongtest.csv", lnglatData);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Now we can create and run our pipeline.");
        setupPipeline(sageMakerClient, spatialPipelinePath, sageMakerRoleArn,
functionArn, pipelineName);
        String pipelineExecutionARN = executePipeline(sageMakerClient, bucketName,
queueUrl, sageMakerRoleArn,
                pipelineName);
```

```
        System.out.println("The pipeline execution ARN value is " +
 pipelineExecutionARN);
        waitForPipelineExecution(sageMakerClient, pipelineExecutionARN);
        System.out.println("Getting output results " + bucketName);
        getOutputResults(s3Client, bucketName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline and
 runs " +
                "in SageMaker Studio, follow these instructions:" +
                "\nhttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/pipelines-
studio.html");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Do you want to delete the AWS resources used in this
 Workflow? (y/n)");
        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String delResources = in.nextLine();
        if (delResources.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            System.out.println("Lets clean up the AWS resources. Wait 30 seconds");
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30);
            deleteEventSourceMapping(lambdaClient);
            deleteSQSQueue(sqsClient, queueName);
            listBucketObjects(s3Client, bucketName);
            deleteBucket(s3Client, bucketName);
            deleteLambdaFunction(lambdaClient, functionName);
            deleteLambdaRole(iam, lambdaRoleName);
            deleteSagemakerRole(iam, sageMakerRoleName);
            deletePipeline(sageMakerClient, pipelineName);
        } else {
            System.out.println("The AWS Resources were not deleted!");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    private static void readObject(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName, String key)
 {
        System.out.println("Output file contents: \n");
```

```
        GetObjectRequest objectRequest = GetObjectRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .key(key)
                .build();

        ResponseBytes<GetObjectResponse> objectBytes =
s3Client.getObjectAsBytes(objectRequest);
        byte[] byteArray = objectBytes.asByteArray();
        String text = new String(byteArray, StandardCharsets.UTF_8);
        System.out.println("Text output: " + text);
    }

    // Display some results from the output directory.
    public static void getOutputResults(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        System.out.println("Getting output results {bucketName}.");
        ListObjectsRequest listObjectsRequest = ListObjectsRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .prefix("outputfiles/")
                .build();

        ListObjectsResponse response = s3Client.listObjects(listObjectsRequest);
        List<S3Object> s3Objects = response.contents();
        for (S3Object object : s3Objects) {
            readObject(s3Client, bucketName, object.key());
        }
    }

    // Check the status of a pipeline execution.
    public static void waitForPipelineExecution(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient,
String executionArn)
            throws InterruptedException {
        String status;
        int index = 0;
        do {
            DescribePipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
DescribePipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineExecutionArn(executionArn)
                    .build();

            DescribePipelineExecutionResponse response = sageMakerClient
                    .describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatusAsString();
            System.out.println(index + ". The Status of the pipeline is " + status);
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4);
```

```
            index++;
        } while ("Executing".equals(status));
        System.out.println("Pipeline finished with status " + status);
    }

    // Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
    public static void deletePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
 pipelineName) {
        DeletePipelineRequest pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest.builder()
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                .build();

        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest);
        System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + pipelineName);
    }

    // Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
    public static void setupPipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
 filePath, String roleArn,
            String functionArn, String pipelineName) {
        System.out.println("Setting up the pipeline.");
        JSONParser parser = new JSONParser();

        // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
        try (FileReader reader = new FileReader(filePath)) {
            Object obj = parser.parse(reader);
            JSONObject jsonObject = (JSONObject) obj;
            JSONArray stepsArray = (JSONArray) jsonObject.get("Steps");
            for (Object stepObj : stepsArray) {
                JSONObject step = (JSONObject) stepObj;
                if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                    step.put("FunctionArn", functionArn);
                }
            }
            System.out.println(jsonObject);

            // Create the pipeline.
            CreatePipelineRequest pipelineRequest = CreatePipelineRequest.builder()
                    .pipelineDescription("Java SDK example pipeline")
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                    .pipelineDefinition(jsonObject.toString())
                    .build();
```

```
            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (IOException | ParseException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    // Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
    public static String executePipeline(SageMakerClient sageMakerClient, String
 bucketName, String queueUrl,
            String roleArn, String pipelineName) {
        System.out.println("Starting pipeline execution.");
        String inputBucketLocation = "s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv";
        String output = "s3://" + bucketName + "/outputfiles/";
        Gson gson = new GsonBuilder()
                .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                .setPrettyPrinting().create();

        // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
        List<Parameter> parameters = new ArrayList<>();
        Parameter para1 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_execution_role")
                .value(roleArn)
                .build();

        Parameter para2 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_queue_url")
                .value(queueUrl)
                .build();

        String inputJSON = "{\n" +
                "  \"DataSourceConfig\": {\n" +
                "    \"S3Data\": {\n" +
                "      \"S3Uri\": \"s3://" + bucketName + "/samplefiles/
latlongtest.csv\"\n" +
                "    },\n" +
                "    \"Type\": \"S3_DATA\"\n" +
                "  },\n" +
                "  \"DocumentType\": \"CSV\"\n" +
                "}";
```

```
        System.out.println(inputJSON);

        Parameter para3 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_input_config")
                .value(inputJSON)
                .build();

        // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
        VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data.builder()
                .s3Uri(output)
                .build();

        ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig outputConfig =
 ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig.builder()
                .s3Data(jobS3Data)
                .build();

        String gson4 = gson.toJson(outputConfig);
        Parameter para4 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_vej_export_config")
                .value(gson4)
                .build();
        System.out.println("parameter_vej_export_config:" +
 gson.toJson(outputConfig));

        // Create a VectorEnrichmentJobConfig object.
        ReverseGeocodingConfig reverseGeocodingConfig =
 ReverseGeocodingConfig.builder()
                .xAttributeName("Longitude")
                .yAttributeName("Latitude")
                .build();

        VectorEnrichmentJobConfig jobConfig = VectorEnrichmentJobConfig.builder()
                .reverseGeocodingConfig(reverseGeocodingConfig)
                .build();

        String para5JSON = "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig\":
{\"XAttributeName\":\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}";
        Parameter para5 = Parameter.builder()
                .name("parameter_step_1_vej_config")
                .value(para5JSON)
                .build();
```

```
        System.out.println("parameter_step_1_vej_config:" + gson.toJson(jobConfig));
        parameters.add(para1);
        parameters.add(para2);
        parameters.add(para3);
        parameters.add(para4);
        parameters.add(para5);

        StartPipelineExecutionRequest pipelineExecutionRequest =
StartPipelineExecutionRequest.builder()
                .pipelineExecutionDescription("Created using Java SDK")
                .pipelineExecutionDisplayName(pipelineName + "-example-execution")
                .pipelineParameters(parameters)
                .pipelineName(pipelineName)
                .build();

        StartPipelineExecutionResponse response =
sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest);
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn();
    }

    public static void deleteEventSourceMapping(LambdaClient lambdaClient) {
        DeleteEventSourceMappingRequest eventSourceMappingRequest =
DeleteEventSourceMappingRequest.builder()
                .uuid(eventSourceMapping)
                .build();

        lambdaClient.deleteEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest);
    }

    public static void deleteSagemakerRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies();
        try {
            for (String policy : sageMakerRolePolicies) {
                // First the policy needs to be detached.
                DetachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .build();

                iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
            }

            // Delete the role.
```

```
            DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteLambdaRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies();
        try {
            for (String policy : lambdaRolePolicies) {
                // First the policy needs to be detached.
                DetachRolePolicyRequest rolePolicyRequest =
DetachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .build();

                iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest);
            }

            // Delete the role.
            DeleteRoleRequest roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            iam.deleteRole(roleRequest);
            System.out.println("*** Successfully deleted " + roleName);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the specific AWS Lambda function.
    public static void deleteLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName) {
```

```
        try {
            DeleteFunctionRequest request = DeleteFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .build();

            awsLambda.deleteFunction(request);
            System.out.println("*** " + functionName + " was deleted");

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the specific S3 bucket.
    public static void deleteBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        DeleteBucketRequest deleteBucketRequest = DeleteBucketRequest.builder()
                .bucket(bucketName)
                .build();
        s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest);
        System.out.println("*** " + bucketName + " was deleted.");
    }

    public static void listBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            ListObjectsRequest listObjects = ListObjectsRequest
                    .builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            ListObjectsResponse res = s3.listObjects(listObjects);
            List<S3Object> objects = res.contents();
            for (S3Object myValue : objects) {
                System.out.print("\n The name of the key is " + myValue.key());
                deleteBucketObjects(s3, bucketName, myValue.key());
            }

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void deleteBucketObjects(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String
objectName) {
        ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier> toDelete = new ArrayList<>();
        toDelete.add(ObjectIdentifier.builder()
                .key(objectName)
                .build());
        try {
            DeleteObjectsRequest dor = DeleteObjectsRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .delete(Delete.builder()
                            .objects(toDelete).build())
                    .build();

            s3.deleteObjects(dor);
            System.out.println("*** " + bucketName + " objects were deleted.");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Delete the specific Amazon SQS queue.
    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void putS3Object(S3Client s3, String bucketName, String objectKey,
String objectPath) {
```

```
        try {
            Map<String, String> metadata = new HashMap<>();
            metadata.put("x-amz-meta-myVal", "test");
            PutObjectRequest putOb = PutObjectRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .key("samplefiles/" + objectKey)
                    .metadata(metadata)
                    .build();

            s3.putObject(putOb, RequestBody.fromFile(new File(objectPath)));
            System.out.println("Successfully placed " + objectKey + " into bucket "
+ bucketName);

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void setupBucket(S3Client s3Client, String bucketName) {
        try {
            S3Waiter s3Waiter = s3Client.waiter();
            CreateBucketRequest bucketRequest = CreateBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3Client.createBucket(bucketRequest);
            HeadBucketRequest bucketRequestWait = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            // Wait until the bucket is created and print out the response.
            WaiterResponse<HeadBucketResponse> waiterResponse =
s3Waiter.waitUntilBucketExists(bucketRequestWait);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " is ready");

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
```

```
   public static String setupQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, LambdaClient lambdaClient,
String queueName,
           String lambdaName) {
       System.out.println("Setting up queue named " + queueName);
       try {
           Map<QueueAttributeName, String> queueAtt = new HashMap<>();
           queueAtt.put(QueueAttributeName.DELAY_SECONDS, "5");
           queueAtt.put(QueueAttributeName.RECEIVE_MESSAGE_WAIT_TIME_SECONDS, "5");
           queueAtt.put(QueueAttributeName.VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT, "300");
           CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                   .queueName(queueName)
                   .attributes(queueAtt)
                   .build();

           sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
           System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
           GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
           TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);

           connectLambda(sqsClient, lambdaClient, getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl(),
lambdaName);
           System.out.println("Queue ready with Url " +
getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl());
           return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();

       } catch (SqsException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       } catch (InterruptedException e) {
           throw new RuntimeException(e);
       }
       return "";
   }

   // Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
   public static void connectLambda(SqsClient sqsClient, LambdaClient lambdaClient,
String queueUrl,
           String lambdaName) {
       System.out.println("Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the
pipeline.");
       String queueArn = "";
```

```
        // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
        List<QueueAttributeName> atts = new ArrayList<>();
        atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QUEUE_ARN);
        GetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
GetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributeNames(atts)
                .build();

        GetQueueAttributesResponse response =
sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
        Map<String, String> queueAtts = response.attributesAsStrings();
        for (Map.Entry<String, String> queueAtt : queueAtts.entrySet()) {
            System.out.println("Key = " + queueAtt.getKey() + ", Value = " +
queueAtt.getValue());
            queueArn = queueAtt.getValue();
        }

        CreateEventSourceMappingRequest eventSourceMappingRequest =
CreateEventSourceMappingRequest.builder()
                .eventSourceArn(queueArn)
                .functionName(lambdaName)
                .build();

        CreateEventSourceMappingResponse response1 =
lambdaClient.createEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest);
        eventSourceMapping = response1.uuid();
        System.out.println("The mapping between the event source and Lambda function
was successful");
    }

    // Create an AWS Lambda function.
    public static String createLambdaFunction(LambdaClient awsLambda, String
functionName, String filePath, String role,
            String handler) {
        try {
            LambdaWaiter waiter = awsLambda.waiter();
            InputStream is = new FileInputStream(filePath);
            SdkBytes fileToUpload = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(is);
            FunctionCode code = FunctionCode.builder()
                    .zipFile(fileToUpload)
                    .build();

            CreateFunctionRequest functionRequest = CreateFunctionRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .description("SageMaker example function.")
                    .code(code)
                    .handler(handler)
                    .runtime(Runtime.JAVA11)
                    .timeout(200)
                    .memorySize(1024)
                    .role(role)
                    .build();

            // Create a Lambda function using a waiter.
            CreateFunctionResponse functionResponse =
awsLambda.createFunction(functionRequest);
            GetFunctionRequest getFunctionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .build();
            WaiterResponse<GetFunctionResponse> waiterResponse =
waiter.waitUntilFunctionExists(getFunctionRequest);
            waiterResponse.matched().response().ifPresent(System.out::println);
            System.out.println("The function ARN is " +
functionResponse.functionArn());
            return functionResponse.functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException | FileNotFoundException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createSageMakerRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies();
        System.out.println("Creating a role to use with SageMaker.");
        String assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": [" +
                "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "]" +
```

```
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(assumeRolePolicy)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse roleResult = iam.createRole(request);

            // Attach the policies to the role.
            for (String policy : sageMakerRolePolicies) {
                AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .build();

                iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
            }

            // Allow time for the role to be ready.
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
            System.out.println("Role ready with ARN " + roleResult.role().arn());
            return roleResult.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        return "";
    }

    private static String createLambdaRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        String[] lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies();
        String assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
                "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
                "\"Statement\": [{" +
```

```
                "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
                "\"Principal\": {" +
                "\"Service\": [" +
                "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
                "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
                "]" +
                "}," +
                "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
                "}]" +
                "}";

        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .assumeRolePolicyDocument(assumeRolePolicy)
                    .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                    .build();

            CreateRoleResponse roleResult = iam.createRole(request);

            // Attach the policies to the role.
            for (String policy : lambdaRolePolicies) {
                AttachRolePolicyRequest attachRequest =
AttachRolePolicyRequest.builder()
                        .roleName(roleName)
                        .policyArn(policy)
                        .build();

                iam.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest);
            }

            // Allow time for the role to be ready.
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15);
            System.out.println("Role ready with ARN " + roleResult.role().arn());
            return roleResult.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());

        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
```

```
        return "";
    }

    public static String checkFunction(LambdaClient lambdaClient, String
functionName, String filePath, String role,
            String handler) {
        System.out.println("Create an AWS Lambda function used in this workflow.");
        String functionArn;
        try {
            // Does this function already exist.
            GetFunctionRequest functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest.builder()
                    .functionName(functionName)
                    .build();

            GetFunctionResponse response =
lambdaClient.getFunction(functionRequest);
            functionArn = response.configuration().functionArn();

        } catch (LambdaException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            functionArn = createLambdaFunction(lambdaClient, functionName, filePath,
role, handler);
        }
        return functionArn;
    }

    // Check to see if the specific S3 bucket exists. If the S3 bucket exists, this
    // method returns true.
    public static boolean checkBucket(S3Client s3, String bucketName) {
        try {
            HeadBucketRequest headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .build();

            s3.headBucket(headBucketRequest);
            System.out.println(bucketName + " exists");
            return true;

        } catch (S3Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
        return false;
    }
```

```
    // Checks to see if the Amazon SQS queue exists. If not, this method creates a
    // new queue
    // and returns the ARN value.
    public static String checkQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, LambdaClient lambdaClient,
String queueName,
            String lambdaName) {
        System.out.println("Creating a queue for this use case.");
        String queueUrl;
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest request = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            GetQueueUrlResponse response = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(request);
            queueUrl = response.queueUrl();
            System.out.println(queueUrl);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            queueUrl = setupQueue(sqsClient, lambdaClient, queueName, lambdaName);
        }
        return queueUrl;
    }

    // Checks to see if the Lambda role exists. If not, this method creates it.
    public static String checkLambdaRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        System.out.println("Creating a role to for AWS Lambda to use.");
        String roleArn;
        try {
            GetRoleRequest roleRequest = GetRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            GetRoleResponse response = iam.getRole(roleRequest);
            roleArn = response.role().arn();
            System.out.println(roleArn);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            roleArn = createLambdaRole(iam, roleName);
        }
        return roleArn;
    }
```

```
    // Checks to see if the SageMaker role exists. If not, this method creates it.
    public static String checkSageMakerRole(IamClient iam, String roleName) {
        System.out.println("Creating a role to for AWS SageMaker to use.");
        String roleArn;
        try {
            GetRoleRequest roleRequest = GetRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleName(roleName)
                    .build();

            GetRoleResponse response = iam.getRole(roleRequest);
            roleArn = response.role().arn();
            System.out.println(roleArn);

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            roleArn = createSageMakerRole(iam, roleName);
        }
        return roleArn;
    }

    private static String[] getSageMakerRolePolicies() {
        String[] sageMakerRolePolicies = new String[3];
        sageMakerRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonSageMakerFullAccess";
        sageMakerRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess";
        sageMakerRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess";
        return sageMakerRolePolicies;
    }

    private static String[] getLambdaRolePolicies() {
        String[] lambdaRolePolicies = new String[5];
        lambdaRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess";
        lambdaRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess";
        lambdaRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess";
        lambdaRolePolicies[3] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/"
                + "AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy";
        lambdaRolePolicies[4] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole";
        return lambdaRolePolicies;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.SecretsManagerClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.GetSecretValueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.secretsmanager.model.SecretsManagerException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * We recommend that you cache your secret values by using client-side caching.
 *
 * Caching secrets improves speed and reduces your costs. For more information,
 * see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/retrieving-
secrets.html
 */
public class GetSecretValue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <secretName>\s

                Where:
                    secretName - The name of the secret (for example, tutorials/
MyFirstSecret).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String secretName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SecretsManagerClient secretsClient = SecretsManagerClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        getValue(secretsClient, secretName);
        secretsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getValue(SecretsManagerClient secretsClient, String
 secretName) {
        try {
            GetSecretValueRequest valueRequest = GetSecretValueRequest.builder()
                    .secretId(secretName)
                    .build();

            GetSecretValueResponse valueResponse =
 secretsClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest);
            String secret = valueResponse.secretString();
            System.out.println(secret);

        } catch (SecretsManagerException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon SES examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.SesClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.ListIdentitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SesException;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListIdentities {

    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SesClient client = SesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listSESIdentities(client);
    }
```

```
    public static void listSESIdentities(SesClient client) {
        try {
            ListIdentitiesResponse identitiesResponse = client.listIdentities();
            List<String> identities = identitiesResponse.identities();
            for (String identity : identities) {
                System.out.println("The identity is " + identity);
            }

        } catch (SesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListTemplates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTemplates`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.SesV2Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.ListEmailTemplatesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.ListEmailTemplatesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SesV2Exception;

public class ListTemplates {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        listAllTemplates(sesv2Client);
    }

    public static void listAllTemplates(SesV2Client sesv2Client) {
        try {
            ListEmailTemplatesRequest templatesRequest =
 ListEmailTemplatesRequest.builder()
                    .pageSize(1)
                    .build();

            ListEmailTemplatesResponse response =
 sesv2Client.listEmailTemplates(templatesRequest);
            response.templatesMetadata()
                    .forEach(template -> System.out.println("Template name: " +
 template.templateName()));

        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.SesClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SendEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SesException;

import javax.mail.MessagingException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendMessageEmailRequest {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sender> <recipient> <subject>\s

                Where:
                    sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                    recipient -  An email address that represents the recipient.\s
                    subject - The  subject line.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesClient client = SesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();
```

```
        // The HTML body of the email.
        String bodyHTML = "<html>" + "<head></head>" + "<body>" + "<h1>Hello!</h1>"
                + "<p> See the list of customers.</p>" + "</body>" + "</html>";

        try {
            send(client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyHTML);
            client.close();
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (MessagingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    public static void send(SesClient client,
            String sender,
            String recipient,
            String subject,
            String bodyHTML) throws MessagingException {

        Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(recipient)
                .build();

        Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(bodyHTML)
                .build();

        Content sub = Content.builder()
                .data(subject)
                .build();

        Body body = Body.builder()
                .html(content)
                .build();

        Message msg = Message.builder()
                .subject(sub)
                .body(body)
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest emailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .destination(destination)
                .message(msg)
```

```
                .source(sender)
                .build();

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email through Amazon SES " +
 "using the AWS SDK for Java...");
            client.sendEmail(emailRequest);

        } catch (SesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.SesClient;
import javax.activation.DataHandler;
import javax.activation.DataSource;
import javax.mail.Message;
import javax.mail.MessagingException;
import javax.mail.Session;
import javax.mail.internet.AddressException;
import javax.mail.internet.InternetAddress;
import javax.mail.internet.MimeMessage;
import javax.mail.internet.MimeMultipart;
import javax.mail.internet.MimeBodyPart;
import javax.mail.util.ByteArrayDataSource;
import java.io.ByteArrayOutputStream;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.nio.ByteBuffer;
import java.nio.file.Files;
import java.util.Properties;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SendRawEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.RawMessage;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ses.model.SesException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class SendMessageAttachment {
    public static void main(String[] args) throws IOException {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sender> <recipient> <subject> <fileLocation>\s

                Where:
                    sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                    recipient -  An email address that represents the recipient.\s
                    subject - The  subject line.\s
                    fileLocation - The location of a Microsoft Excel file to use as
 an attachment (C:/AWS/customers.xls).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];
        String fileLocation = args[3];

        // The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
        String bodyText = "Hello,\r\n" + "Please see the attached file for a list "
                + "of customers to contact.";

        // The HTML body of the email.
        String bodyHTML = "<html>" + "<head></head>" + "<body>" + "<h1>Hello!</h1>"
                + "<p>Please see the attached file for a " + "list of customers to
 contact.</p>" + "</body>"
                + "</html>";

        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SesClient client = SesClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        try {
```

```
            sendemailAttachment(client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyText,
bodyHTML, fileLocation);
            client.close();
            System.out.println("Done");

        } catch (IOException | MessagingException e) {
            e.printStackTrace();
        }
    }

    public static void sendemailAttachment(SesClient client,
            String sender,
            String recipient,
            String subject,
            String bodyText,
            String bodyHTML,
            String fileLocation) throws AddressException, MessagingException,
IOException {

        java.io.File theFile = new java.io.File(fileLocation);
        byte[] fileContent = Files.readAllBytes(theFile.toPath());

        Session session = Session.getDefaultInstance(new Properties());

        // Create a new MimeMessage object.
        MimeMessage message = new MimeMessage(session);

        // Add subject, from and to lines.
        message.setSubject(subject, "UTF-8");
        message.setFrom(new InternetAddress(sender));
        message.setRecipients(Message.RecipientType.TO,
InternetAddress.parse(recipient));

        // Create a multipart/alternative child container.
        MimeMultipart msgBody = new MimeMultipart("alternative");

        // Create a wrapper for the HTML and text parts.
        MimeBodyPart wrap = new MimeBodyPart();

        // Define the text part.
        MimeBodyPart textPart = new MimeBodyPart();
        textPart.setContent(bodyText, "text/plain; charset=UTF-8");

        // Define the HTML part.
```

```
        MimeBodyPart htmlPart = new MimeBodyPart();
        htmlPart.setContent(bodyHTML, "text/html; charset=UTF-8");

        // Add the text and HTML parts to the child container.
        msgBody.addBodyPart(textPart);
        msgBody.addBodyPart(htmlPart);

        // Add the child container to the wrapper object.
        wrap.setContent(msgBody);

        // Create a multipart/mixed parent container.
        MimeMultipart msg = new MimeMultipart("mixed");

        // Add the parent container to the message.
        message.setContent(msg);
        msg.addBodyPart(wrap);

        // Define the attachment.
        MimeBodyPart att = new MimeBodyPart();
        DataSource fds = new ByteArrayDataSource(fileContent,
                "application/vnd.openxmlformats-
officedocument.spreadsheetml.sheet");
        att.setDataHandler(new DataHandler(fds));

        String reportName = "WorkReport.xls";
        att.setFileName(reportName);

        // Add the attachment to the message.
        msg.addBodyPart(att);

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email through Amazon SES " +
 "using the AWS SDK for Java...");

            ByteArrayOutputStream outputStream = new ByteArrayOutputStream();
            message.writeTo(outputStream);

            ByteBuffer buf = ByteBuffer.wrap(outputStream.toByteArray());

            byte[] arr = new byte[buf.remaining()];
            buf.get(arr);

            SdkBytes data = SdkBytes.fromByteArray(arr);
            RawMessage rawMessage = RawMessage.builder()
```

```
                    .data(data)
                    .build();

            SendRawEmailRequest rawEmailRequest = SendRawEmailRequest.builder()
                    .rawMessage(rawMessage)
                    .build();

            client.sendRawEmail(rawEmailRequest);

        } catch (SesException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        System.out.println("Email sent using SesClient with attachment");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SendTemplatedEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SendEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SesV2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.SesV2Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Template;

/**
 * Before running this AWS SDK for Java (v2) example, set up your development
```

```
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * Also, make sure that you create a template. See the following documentation
 * topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/dg/send-personalized-email-api.html
 */

public class SendEmailTemplate {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <template> <sender> <recipient>\s

                Where:
                    template - The name of the email template.
                    sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                    recipient - An email address that represents the recipient.\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String templateName = args[0];
        String sender = args[1];
        String recipient = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        send(sesv2Client, sender, recipient, templateName);
    }

    public static void send(SesV2Client client, String sender, String recipient,
 String templateName) {
        Destination destination = Destination.builder()
```

```
                .toAddresses(recipient)
                .build();

        /*
         * Specify both name and favorite animal (favoriteanimal) in your code when
         * defining the Template object.
         * If you don't specify all the variables in the template, Amazon SES
 doesn't
         * send the email.
         */
        Template myTemplate = Template.builder()
                .templateName(templateName)
                .templateData("{\n" +
                        "  \"name\": \"Jason\"\n," +
                        "  \"favoriteanimal\": \"Cat\"\n" +
                        "}")
                .build();

        EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .template(myTemplate)
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest emailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .fromEmailAddress(sender)
                .build();

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email based on a template
 using the AWS SDK for Java (v2)...");
            client.sendEmail(emailRequest);
            System.out.println("email based on a template was sent");

        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create a web application to track Amazon Redshift data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items using an Amazon Redshift database.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run an example that uses the JDBC API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Detect PPE in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function that detects images with Personal Protective Equipment.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateContact`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContact`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
      try {
        // Create a new contact with the provided email address in the
        CreateContactRequest contactRequest = CreateContactRequest.builder()
            .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .emailAddress(emailAddress)
            .build();

        sesClient.createContact(contactRequest);
        contacts.add(emailAddress);

        System.out.println("Contact created: " + emailAddress);

        // Send a welcome email to the new contact
        String welcomeHtml = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.html"));
        String welcomeText = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.txt"));

        SendEmailRequest welcomeEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(
```

```
                    Message.builder()
                        .subject(Content.builder().data("Welcome to the Weekly
Coupons Newsletter").build())
                        .body(Body.builder()
                            .text(Content.builder().data(welcomeText).build())
                            .html(Content.builder().data(welcomeHtml).build())
                            .build())
                        .build())
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse welcomeEmailResponse =
sesClient.sendEmail(welcomeEmailRequest);
        System.out.println("Welcome email sent: " +
welcomeEmailResponse.messageId());
      } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
        // If the contact already exists, skip this step for that contact and
proceed
        // with the next contact
        System.out.println("Contact already exists, skipping creation...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while processing email address " +
emailAddress + ": " + e.getMessage());
        throw e;
      }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContactList`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
```

```
      // 2. Create a contact list
      String contactListName = CONTACT_LIST_NAME;
      CreateContactListRequest createContactListRequest =
 CreateContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(contactListName)
          .build();
      sesClient.createContactList(createContactListRequest);
      System.out.println("Contact list created: " + contactListName);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      System.out.println("Contact list already exists, skipping creation: weekly-
coupons-newsletter");
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      System.err.println("Limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
      throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error creating contact list: " + e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      CreateEmailIdentityRequest createEmailIdentityRequest =
 CreateEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
          .emailIdentity(verifiedEmail)
          .build();
      sesClient.createEmailIdentity(createEmailIdentityRequest);
      System.out.println("Email identity created: " + verifiedEmail);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
```

```
      System.out.println("Email identity already exists, skipping creation: " +
 verifiedEmail);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      System.err.println("The provided email address is not verified: " +
 verifiedEmail);
      throw e;
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      System.err
          .println("You have reached the limit for email identities. Please remove
 some identities and try again.");
      throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error creating email identity: " + e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailTemplate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // Create an email template named "weekly-coupons"
      String newsletterHtml = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html");
      String newsletterText = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.txt");

      CreateEmailTemplateRequest templateRequest =
 CreateEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .templateContent(EmailTemplateContent.builder()
```

```
            .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
            .html(newsletterHtml)
            .text(newsletterText)
            .build())
        .build();

    sesClient.createEmailTemplate(templateRequest);

    System.out.println("Email template created: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
  } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
    // If the template already exists, skip this step and proceed with the next
    // operation
    System.out.println("Email template already exists, skipping creation...");
  } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
    // If the limit for email templates is exceeded, fail the workflow and inform
    // the user
    System.err.println("You have reached the limit for email templates. Please
remove some templates and try again.");
    throw e;
  } catch (Exception e) {
    System.err.println("Error occurred while creating email template: " +
e.getMessage());
    throw e;
  }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteContactList`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  try {
    // Delete the contact list
```

```
      DeleteContactListRequest deleteContactListRequest =
DeleteContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteContactList(deleteContactListRequest);

      System.out.println("Contact list deleted: " + CONTACT_LIST_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the contact list does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Contact list not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the contact list: " +
e.getMessage());
      e.printStackTrace();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
      try {
        // Delete the email identity
        DeleteEmailIdentityRequest deleteIdentityRequest =
DeleteEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
            .emailIdentity(this.verifiedEmail)
            .build();

        sesClient.deleteEmailIdentity(deleteIdentityRequest);
```

```
        System.out.println("Email identity deleted: " + this.verifiedEmail);
      } catch (NotFoundException e) {
        // If the email identity does not exist, log the error and proceed
        System.out.println("Email identity not found. Skipping deletion...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email identity: " +
e.getMessage());
        e.printStackTrace();
      }
    } else {
      System.out.println("Skipping email identity deletion.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailTemplate`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // Delete the template
      DeleteEmailTemplateRequest deleteTemplateRequest =
DeleteEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteEmailTemplate(deleteTemplateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template deleted: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the email template does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Email template not found. Skipping deletion...");
```

```
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email template: " +
e.getMessage());
      e.printStackTrace();
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListContacts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContacts`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
      ListContactsRequest contactListRequest = ListContactsRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      List<String> contactEmails;
      try {
        ListContactsResponse contactListResponse =
sesClient.listContacts(contactListRequest);

        contactEmails = contactListResponse.contacts().stream()
            .map(Contact::emailAddress)
            .toList();
      } catch (Exception e) {
        // TODO: Remove when listContacts's GET body issue is resolved.
        contactEmails = this.contacts;
      }
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SendEmail

The following code example shows how to use SendEmail.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sends a message.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Body;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Content;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Destination;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.EmailContent;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SendEmailRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.model.SesV2Exception;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sesv2.SesV2Client;

/**
 * Before running this AWS SDK for Java (v2) example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class SendEmail {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                            Usage:
                                <sender> <recipient> <subject>\s

                            Where:
```

```
                                sender - An email address that represents the
sender.\s
                                recipient - An email address that represents the
recipient.\s
                                subject - The subject line.\s
                            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        // The HTML body of the email.
        String bodyHTML = "<html>" + "<head></head>" + "<body>" + "<h1>Hello!</h1>"
                + "<p> See the list of customers.</p>" + "</body>" + "</html>";

        send(sesv2Client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyHTML);
    }

    public static void send(SesV2Client client,
                            String sender,
                            String recipient,
                            String subject,
                            String bodyHTML) {

        Destination destination = Destination.builder()
                .toAddresses(recipient)
                .build();

        Content content = Content.builder()
                .data(bodyHTML)
                .build();

        Content sub = Content.builder()
                .data(subject)
```

```
                .build();

        Body body = Body.builder()
                .html(content)
                .build();

        Message msg = Message.builder()
                .subject(sub)
                .body(body)
                .build();

        EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(msg)
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest emailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .destination(destination)
                .content(emailContent)
                .fromEmailAddress(sender)
                .build();

        try {
            System.out.println("Attempting to send an email through Amazon SES "
                    + "using the AWS SDK for Java...");
            client.sendEmail(emailRequest);
            System.out.println("email was sent");

        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Sends a message using a template.

```
      String coupons = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/coupon_newsletter/
sample_coupons.json"));
      for (String emailAddress : contactEmails) {
        SendEmailRequest newsletterRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
```

```
                .template(Template.builder()
                    .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                    .templateData(coupons)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .listManagementOptions(ListManagementOptions.builder()
                .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse newsletterResponse =
 sesClient.sendEmail(newsletterRequest);
        System.out.println("Newsletter sent to " + emailAddress + ": " +
 newsletterResponse.messageId());
     }
```

Sends a message with header information.

```
public class SendwithHeader {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <sender> <recipient> <subject>\s

            Where:
                sender - An email address that represents the sender.\s
                recipient - An email address that represents the recipient.\s
                subject - The subject line.\s
            """;

        if (args.length != 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sender = args[0];
        String recipient = args[1];
        String subject = args[2];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SesV2Client sesv2Client = SesV2Client.builder()
```

```
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String bodyHTML = """
                <html>
                    <head></head>
                    <body>
                        <h1>Hello!</h1>
                        <p>See the list of customers.</p>
                    </body>
                </html>
                """;

        sendWithHeader(sesv2Client, sender, recipient, subject, bodyHTML);
        sesv2Client.close();
    }

    /**
     * Sends an email using the AWS SES V2 client.
     *
     * @param sesv2Client the SES V2 client to use for sending the email
     * @param sender the email address of the sender
     * @param recipient the email address of the recipient
     * @param subject the subject of the email
     * @param bodyHTML the HTML content of the email body
     */
    public static void sendWithHeader(SesV2Client sesv2Client,
                                      String sender,
                                      String recipient,
                                      String subject,
                                      String bodyHTML) {
        EmailContent emailContent = EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(Message.builder()
                        .body(b -> b.html(c ->
 c.charset(UTF_8.name()).data(bodyHTML))
                                .text(c -> c.charset(UTF_8.name()).data(bodyHTML)))
                        .subject(c -> c.charset(UTF_8.name()).data(subject))
                        .headers(List.of(
                                MessageHeader.builder()
                                        .name("List-Unsubscribe")
                                        .value("<https://nutrition.co/?
address=x&topic=x>, <mailto:unsubscribe@nutrition.co?subject=TopicUnsubscribe>")
                                        .build(),
                                MessageHeader.builder()
```

```
                                        .name("List-Unsubscribe-Post")
                                        .value("List-Unsubscribe=One-Click")
                                        .build()))
                        .build())
                .build();

        SendEmailRequest request = SendEmailRequest.builder()
                .fromEmailAddress(sender)
                .destination(d -> d.toAddresses(recipient))
                .content(emailContent)
                .build();

        try {
            SendEmailResponse response = sesv2Client.sendEmail(request);
            System.out.println("Email sent! Message ID: " + response.messageId());
        } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
            System.err.println("Failed to send email: " +
 e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Newsletter scenario

The following code example shows how to run the Amazon SES API v2 newsletter scenario.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    try {
      // 2. Create a contact list
```

```
      String contactListName = CONTACT_LIST_NAME;
      CreateContactListRequest createContactListRequest =
 CreateContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(contactListName)
          .build();
      sesClient.createContactList(createContactListRequest);
      System.out.println("Contact list created: " + contactListName);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      System.out.println("Contact list already exists, skipping creation: weekly-
coupons-newsletter");
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      System.err.println("Limit for contact lists has been exceeded.");
      throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error creating contact list: " + e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }

      try {
        // Create a new contact with the provided email address in the
        CreateContactRequest contactRequest = CreateContactRequest.builder()
            .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .emailAddress(emailAddress)
            .build();

        sesClient.createContact(contactRequest);
        contacts.add(emailAddress);

        System.out.println("Contact created: " + emailAddress);

        // Send a welcome email to the new contact
        String welcomeHtml = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.html"));
        String welcomeText = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/
coupon_newsletter/welcome.txt"));

        SendEmailRequest welcomeEmailRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
                .simple(
                    Message.builder()
                        .subject(Content.builder().data("Welcome to the Weekly
 Coupons Newsletter").build())
```

```
                        .body(Body.builder()
                            .text(Content.builder().data(welcomeText).build())
                            .html(Content.builder().data(welcomeHtml).build())
                            .build())
                        .build())
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse welcomeEmailResponse =
 sesClient.sendEmail(welcomeEmailRequest);
        System.out.println("Welcome email sent: " +
 welcomeEmailResponse.messageId());
      } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
        // If the contact already exists, skip this step for that contact and
 proceed
        // with the next contact
        System.out.println("Contact already exists, skipping creation...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while processing email address " +
 emailAddress + ": " + e.getMessage());
        throw e;
      }
    }

      ListContactsRequest contactListRequest = ListContactsRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      List<String> contactEmails;
      try {
        ListContactsResponse contactListResponse =
 sesClient.listContacts(contactListRequest);

        contactEmails = contactListResponse.contacts().stream()
            .map(Contact::emailAddress)
            .toList();
      } catch (Exception e) {
        // TODO: Remove when listContacts's GET body issue is resolved.
        contactEmails = this.contacts;
      }


      String coupons = Files.readString(Paths.get("resources/coupon_newsletter/
sample_coupons.json"));
      for (String emailAddress : contactEmails) {
```

```
        SendEmailRequest newsletterRequest = SendEmailRequest.builder()
            .destination(Destination.builder().toAddresses(emailAddress).build())
            .content(EmailContent.builder()
                .template(Template.builder()
                    .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                    .templateData(coupons)
                    .build())
                .build())
            .fromEmailAddress(this.verifiedEmail)
            .listManagementOptions(ListManagementOptions.builder()
                .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .build())
            .build();
        SendEmailResponse newsletterResponse =
sesClient.sendEmail(newsletterRequest);
        System.out.println("Newsletter sent to " + emailAddress + ": " +
newsletterResponse.messageId());
      }

    try {
      CreateEmailIdentityRequest createEmailIdentityRequest =
CreateEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
          .emailIdentity(verifiedEmail)
          .build();
      sesClient.createEmailIdentity(createEmailIdentityRequest);
      System.out.println("Email identity created: " + verifiedEmail);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      System.out.println("Email identity already exists, skipping creation: " +
verifiedEmail);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      System.err.println("The provided email address is not verified: " +
verifiedEmail);
      throw e;
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      System.err
          .println("You have reached the limit for email identities. Please remove
some identities and try again.");
      throw e;
    } catch (SesV2Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error creating email identity: " + e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }

    try {
```

```
      // Create an email template named "weekly-coupons"
      String newsletterHtml = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html");
      String newsletterText = loadFile("resources/coupon_newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.txt");

      CreateEmailTemplateRequest templateRequest =
 CreateEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .templateContent(EmailTemplateContent.builder()
              .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
              .html(newsletterHtml)
              .text(newsletterText)
              .build())
          .build();

      sesClient.createEmailTemplate(templateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template created: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (AlreadyExistsException e) {
      // If the template already exists, skip this step and proceed with the next
      // operation
      System.out.println("Email template already exists, skipping creation...");
    } catch (LimitExceededException e) {
      // If the limit for email templates is exceeded, fail the workflow and inform
      // the user
      System.err.println("You have reached the limit for email templates. Please
 remove some templates and try again.");
      throw e;
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while creating email template: " +
 e.getMessage());
      throw e;
    }

    try {
      // Delete the contact list
      DeleteContactListRequest deleteContactListRequest =
 DeleteContactListRequest.builder()
          .contactListName(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteContactList(deleteContactListRequest);
```

```
      System.out.println("Contact list deleted: " + CONTACT_LIST_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the contact list does not exist, log the error and proceed
      System.out.println("Contact list not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the contact list: " +
e.getMessage());
      e.printStackTrace();
    }

      try {
        // Delete the email identity
        DeleteEmailIdentityRequest deleteIdentityRequest =
DeleteEmailIdentityRequest.builder()
            .emailIdentity(this.verifiedEmail)
            .build();

        sesClient.deleteEmailIdentity(deleteIdentityRequest);

        System.out.println("Email identity deleted: " + this.verifiedEmail);
      } catch (NotFoundException e) {
        // If the email identity does not exist, log the error and proceed
        System.out.println("Email identity not found. Skipping deletion...");
      } catch (Exception e) {
        System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email identity: " +
e.getMessage());
        e.printStackTrace();
      }
    } else {
      System.out.println("Skipping email identity deletion.");
    }

    try {
      // Delete the template
      DeleteEmailTemplateRequest deleteTemplateRequest =
DeleteEmailTemplateRequest.builder()
          .templateName(TEMPLATE_NAME)
          .build();

      sesClient.deleteEmailTemplate(deleteTemplateRequest);

      System.out.println("Email template deleted: " + TEMPLATE_NAME);
    } catch (NotFoundException e) {
      // If the email template does not exist, log the error and proceed
```

```
      System.out.println("Email template not found. Skipping deletion...");
    } catch (Exception e) {
      System.err.println("Error occurred while deleting the email template: " +
e.getMessage());
      e.printStackTrace();
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.paginators.ListTopicsIterable;

public class HelloSNS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSTopics(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSTopics(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListTopicsIterable listTopics = snsClient.listTopicsPaginator();
            listTopics.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.topics().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Topic ARN: " +
 content.topicArn()));

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CheckOptOut {
```

```
    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   phoneNumber - The mobile phone number to look up (for example,
+1XXX5550100).

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String phoneNumber = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        checkPhone(snsClient, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void checkPhone(SnsClient snsClient, String phoneNumber) {
        try {
            CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest request =
CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutRequest.builder()
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .build();

            CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOutResponse result =
snsClient.checkIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut(request);
            System.out.println(
                    result.isOptedOut() + "Phone Number " + phoneNumber + " has
Opted Out of receiving sns messages." +
                            "\n\nStatus was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ConfirmSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSubscription`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ConfirmSubscriptionRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ConfirmSubscriptionResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ConfirmSubscription {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <subscriptionToken> <topicArn>

                Where:
                   subscriptionToken - A short-lived token sent to an endpoint
 during the Subscribe action.
```

```
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic.\s
                """";

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subscriptionToken = args[0];
        String topicArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        confirmSub(snsClient, subscriptionToken, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void confirmSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionToken,
 String topicArn) {
        try {
            ConfirmSubscriptionRequest request =
 ConfirmSubscriptionRequest.builder()
                    .token(subscriptionToken)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            ConfirmSubscriptionResponse result =
 snsClient.confirmSubscription(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n\nSubscription Arn: \n\n"
                    + result.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicName>

                Where:
                   topicName - The name of the topic to create (for example,
 mytopic).

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String topicName = args[0];
        System.out.println("Creating a topic with name: " + topicName);
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String arnVal = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
        System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + arnVal);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                    .name(topicName)
                    .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:     <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to delete.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Deleting a topic with name: " + topicArn);
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
```

```
                    .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetSubscriptionAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetSMSAtrributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic from which to retrieve
 attributes.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        getSNSAttrutes(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getSNSAttrutes(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            GetSubscriptionAttributesRequest request =
 GetSubscriptionAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            // Get the Subscription attributes
            GetSubscriptionAttributesResponse res =
 snsClient.getSubscriptionAttributes(request);
            Map<String, String> map = res.attributes();

            // Iterate through the map
            Iterator iter = map.entrySet().iterator();
            while (iter.hasNext()) {
                Map.Entry entry = (Map.Entry) iter.next();
```

```
                System.out.println("[Key] : " + entry.getKey() + " [Value] : " +
 entry.getValue());
            }

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }

        System.out.println("\n\nStatus was good");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetTopicAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.GetTopicAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class GetTopicAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to look up.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        System.out.println("Getting attributes for a topic with name: " + topicArn);
        getSNSTopicAttributes(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void getSNSTopicAttributes(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            GetTopicAttributesRequest request = GetTopicAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            GetTopicAttributesResponse result =
 snsClient.getTopicAttributes(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus is " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n\nAttributes: \n\n"
                    + result.attributes());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListOptOut {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listOpts(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listOpts(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
```

```
            ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutRequest request =
 ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutRequest.builder().build();
            ListPhoneNumbersOptedOutResponse result =
 snsClient.listPhoneNumbersOptedOut(request);
            System.out.println("Status is " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
 + "\n\nPhone Numbers: \n\n"
                    + result.phoneNumbers());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListSubscriptionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListSubscriptionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListSubscriptions {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSSubscriptions(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSSubscriptions(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListSubscriptionsRequest request = ListSubscriptionsRequest.builder()
                    .build();

            ListSubscriptionsResponse result = snsClient.listSubscriptions(request);
            System.out.println(result.subscriptions());

        } catch (SnsException e) {

            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListTopicsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.ListTopicsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListTopics {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        listSNSTopics(snsClient);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listSNSTopics(SnsClient snsClient) {
        try {
            ListTopicsRequest request = ListTopicsRequest.builder()
                    .build();

            ListTopicsResponse result = snsClient.listTopics(request);
            System.out.println(
                    "Status was " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n
\nTopics\n\n" + result.topics());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PublishTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <message> <topicArn>

                Where:
                   message - The message text to send.
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to publish.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String message = args[0];
```

```
        String topicArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        pubTopic(snsClient, message, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void pubTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
 topicArn) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                    .message(message)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                    .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status is " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SetSMSAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        HashMap<String, String> attributes = new HashMap<>(1);
        attributes.put("DefaultSMSType", "Transactional");
        attributes.put("UsageReportS3Bucket", "janbucket");

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        setSNSAttributes(snsClient, attributes);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void setSNSAttributes(SnsClient snsClient, HashMap<String, String>
 attributes) {
        try {
            SetSmsAttributesRequest request = SetSmsAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .attributes(attributes)
                    .build();

            SetSmsAttributesResponse result = snsClient.setSMSAttributes(request);
            System.out.println("Set default Attributes to " + attributes + ". Status
 was "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SetSubscriptionAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetSubscriptionAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.ArrayList;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class UseMessageFilterPolicy {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <subscriptionArn>

                Where:
                   subscriptionArn - The ARN of a subscription.

                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subscriptionArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        usePolicy(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void usePolicy(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            SNSMessageFilterPolicy fp = new SNSMessageFilterPolicy();
            // Add a filter policy attribute with a single value
            fp.addAttribute("store", "example_corp");
            fp.addAttribute("event", "order_placed");

            // Add a prefix attribute
            fp.addAttributePrefix("customer_interests", "bas");

            // Add an anything-but attribute
            fp.addAttributeAnythingBut("customer_interests", "baseball");

            // Add a filter policy attribute with a list of values
            ArrayList<String> attributeValues = new ArrayList<>();
            attributeValues.add("rugby");
            attributeValues.add("soccer");
            attributeValues.add("hockey");
            fp.addAttribute("customer_interests", attributeValues);

            // Add a numeric attribute
            fp.addAttribute("price_usd", "=", 0);

            // Add a numeric attribute with a range
            fp.addAttributeRange("price_usd", ">", 0, "<=", 100);

            // Apply the filter policy attributes to an Amazon SNS subscription
            fp.apply(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
```

```
        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetSubscriptionAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetTopicAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetTopicAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SetTopicAttributes {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <attribute> <topicArn> <value>
```

```
                Where:
                   attribute - The attribute action to use. Valid parameters are:
 Policy | DisplayName | DeliveryPolicy .
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic.\s
                   value - The value for the attribute.
                """;

        if (args.length < 3) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String attribute = args[0];
        String topicArn = args[1];
        String value = args[2];

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        setTopAttr(snsClient, attribute, topicArn, value);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void setTopAttr(SnsClient snsClient, String attribute, String
 topicArn, String value) {
        try {
            SetTopicAttributesRequest request = SetTopicAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .attributeName(attribute)
                    .attributeValue(value)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SetTopicAttributesResponse result =
 snsClient.setTopicAttributes(request);
            System.out.println(
                    "\n\nStatus was " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode() + "\n
\nTopic " + request.topicArn()
                            + " updated " + request.attributeName() + " to " +
 request.attributeValue());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SubscribeEmail {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """
                Usage:     <topicArn> <email>

                Where:
```

```
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   email - The email address to use.
                """";

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String email = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        subEmail(snsClient, topicArn, email);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void subEmail(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String email)
 {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("email")
                    .endpoint(email)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + result.subscriptionArn() + "\n
\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Subscribe an HTTP endpoint to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SubscribeHTTPS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn> <url>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   url - The HTTPS endpoint that you want to receive notifications.
                """;

        if (args.length < 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String url = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        subHTTPS(snsClient, topicArn, url);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void subHTTPS(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String url) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .protocol("https")
                    .endpoint(url)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN is " + result.subscriptionArn() +
 "\n\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SubscribeLambda {

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn> <lambdaArn>
```

```
                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   lambdaArn - The ARN of an AWS Lambda function.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String lambdaArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String arnValue = subLambda(snsClient, topicArn, lambdaArn);
        System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + arnValue);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static String subLambda(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
 lambdaArn) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("lambda")
                    .endpoint(lambdaArn)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            return result.subscriptionArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.Tag;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.TagResourceRequest;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class AddTags {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to which tags are added.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        String topicArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        addTopicTags(snsClient, topicArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void addTopicTags(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            Tag tag = Tag.builder()
                    .key("Team")
                    .value("Development")
                    .build();

            Tag tag2 = Tag.builder()
                    .key("Environment")
                    .value("Gamma")
                    .build();

            List<Tag> tagList = new ArrayList<>();
            tagList.add(tag);
            tagList.add(tag2);

            TagResourceRequest tagResourceRequest = TagResourceRequest.builder()
                    .resourceArn(topicArn)
                    .tags(tagList)
                    .build();

            snsClient.tagResource(tagResourceRequest);
            System.out.println("Tags have been added to " + topicArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class Unsubscribe {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <subscriptionArn>

                Where:
                   subscriptionArn - The ARN of the subscription to delete.
                """;

        if (args.length < 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String subscriptionArn = args[0];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
```

```
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        unSub(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void unSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            UnsubscribeRequest request = UnsubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
                    .build();

            UnsubscribeResponse result = snsClient.unsubscribe(request);
            System.out.println("\n\nStatus was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
                    + "\n\nSubscription was removed for " +
 request.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build an app to submit data to a DynamoDB table

The following code example shows how to build an application that submits data to an Amazon DynamoDB table and notifies you when a user updates the table.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create a dynamic web application that submits data using the Amazon DynamoDB Java API and sends a text message using the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SNS

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run the example that uses the Java Async API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create a platform endpoint for push notifications

The following code example shows how to create a platform endpoint for Amazon SNS push notifications.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreatePlatformEndpointRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreatePlatformEndpointResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * In addition, create a platform application using the AWS Management Console.
 * See this doc topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/mobile-push-send-register.html
 *
 * Without the values created by following the previous link, this code examples
 * does not work.
 */

public class RegistrationExample {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:     <token> <platformApplicationArn>

            Where:
               token - The device token or registration ID of the mobile device.
 This is a unique
               identifier provided by the device platform (e.g., Apple Push
 Notification Service (APNS) for iOS devices, Firebase Cloud Messaging (FCM)
               for Android devices) when the mobile app is registered to receive
 push notifications.

               platformApplicationArn - The ARN value of platform application. You
 can get this value from the AWS Management Console.\s

            """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
```

```
            System.out.println(usage);
            return;
        }

        String token = args[0];
        String platformApplicationArn = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

        createEndpoint(snsClient, token, platformApplicationArn);
    }
    public static void createEndpoint(SnsClient snsClient, String token, String
 platformApplicationArn) {
        System.out.println("Creating platform endpoint with token " + token);
        try {
            CreatePlatformEndpointRequest endpointRequest =
 CreatePlatformEndpointRequest.builder()
                .token(token)
                .platformApplicationArn(platformApplicationArn)
                .build();

            CreatePlatformEndpointResponse response =
 snsClient.createPlatformEndpoint(endpointRequest);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the endpoint is " +
 response.endpointArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
        }
    }
}
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create and publish to a FIFO topic

The following code example shows how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example

- creates an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, two Amazon SQS FIFO queues, and one Standard queue.
- subscribes the queues to the topic and publishes a message to the topic.

The test verifies the receipt of the message to each queue. The complete example also shows the addition of access policies and deletes the resources at the end.

```
public class PriceUpdateExample {
    public final static SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.create();
```

```
    public final static SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage: " +
            "    <topicName> <wholesaleQueueFifoName> <retailQueueFifoName>
<analyticsQueueName>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "   fifoTopicName - The name of the FIFO topic that you want to create.
\n\n" +
            "   wholesaleQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will be
created for the wholesale consumer. \n\n"
            +
            "   retailQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will created for
the retail consumer. \n\n" +
            "   analyticsQueueARN - The name of a SQS standard queue that will be
created for the analytics consumer. \n\n";
        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String fifoTopicName = args[0];
        final String wholeSaleQueueName = args[1];
        final String retailQueueName = args[2];
        final String analyticsQueueName = args[3];

        // For convenience, the QueueData class holds metadata about a queue: ARN,
URL,
        // name and type.
        List<QueueData> queues = List.of(
            new QueueData(wholeSaleQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(retailQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(analyticsQueueName, QueueType.Standard));

        // Create queues.
        createQueues(queues);

        // Create a topic.
        String topicARN = createFIFOTopic(fifoTopicName);

        // Subscribe each queue to the topic.
        subscribeQueues(queues, topicARN);
```

```
        // Allow the newly created topic to send messages to the queues.
        addAccessPolicyToQueuesFINAL(queues, topicARN);

        // Publish a sample price update message with payload.
        publishPriceUpdate(topicARN, "{\"product\": 214, \"price\": 79.99}",
"Consumables");

        // Clean up resources.
        deleteSubscriptions(queues);
        deleteQueues(queues);
        deleteTopic(topicARN);
    }

    public static String createFIFOTopic(String topicName) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = Map.of(
                "FifoTopic", "true",
                "ContentBasedDeduplication", "false",
                "FifoThroughputScope", "MessageGroup");

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            String topicArn = response.topicArn();
            System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + topicArn);

            return topicArn;

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void subscribeQueues(List<QueueData> queues, String topicARN) {
        queues.forEach(queue -> {
            SubscribeRequest subscribeRequest = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicARN)
```

```
                .endpoint(queue.queueARN)
                .protocol("sqs")
                .build();

            // Subscribe to the endpoint by using the SNS service client.
            // Only Amazon SQS queues can receive notifications from an Amazon SNS
FIFO
            // topic.
            SubscribeResponse subscribeResponse =
snsClient.subscribe(subscribeRequest);
            System.out.println("The queue [" + queue.queueARN + "] subscribed to the
topic [" + topicARN + "]");
            queue.subscriptionARN = subscribeResponse.subscriptionArn();
        });
    }

    public static void publishPriceUpdate(String topicArn, String payload, String
groupId) {

        try {
            // Create and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.
            String subject = "Price Update";
            String dedupId = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
            String attributeName = "business";
            String attributeValue = "wholesale";

            MessageAttributeValue msgAttValue = MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                .dataType("String")
                .stringValue(attributeValue)
                .build();

            Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes = new HashMap<>();
            attributes.put(attributeName, msgAttValue);
            PublishRequest pubRequest = PublishRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .subject(subject)
                .message(payload)
                .messageGroupId(groupId)
                .messageDeduplicationId(dedupId)
                .messageAttributes(attributes)
                .build();

            final PublishResponse response = snsClient.publish(pubRequest);
            System.out.println(response.messageId());
```

```
            System.out.println(response.sequenceNumber());
            System.out.println("Message was published to " + topicArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Publish SMS messages to a topic

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon SNS topic.
- Subscribe phone numbers to the topic.
- Publish SMS messages to the topic so that all subscribed phone numbers receive the message at once.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a topic and return its ARN.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class CreateTopic {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicName>

                Where:
```

```
                    topicName - The name of the topic to create (for example,
 mytopic).

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicName = args[0];
        System.out.println("Creating a topic with name: " + topicName);
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        String arnVal = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
        System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + arnVal);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                    .name(topicName)
                    .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

Subscribe an endpoint to a topic.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SubscribeTextSMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <topicArn> <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   topicArn - The ARN of the topic to subscribe.
                   phoneNumber - A mobile phone number that receives notifications
 (for example, +1XXX5550100).
                """;

        if (args.length < 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String topicArn = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();

        subTextSNS(snsClient, topicArn, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void subTextSNS(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
 phoneNumber) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
```

```
                    .protocol("sms")
                    .endpoint(phoneNumber)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

            SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Subscription ARN: " + result.subscriptionArn() + "\n
\n Status is "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Set attributes on the message, such as the ID of the sender, the maximum price, and its type. Message attributes are optional.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSmsAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import java.util.HashMap;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SetSMSAttributes {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        HashMap<String, String> attributes = new HashMap<>(1);
        attributes.put("DefaultSMSType", "Transactional");
        attributes.put("UsageReportS3Bucket", "janbucket");
```

```
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        setSNSAttributes(snsClient, attributes);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void setSNSAttributes(SnsClient snsClient, HashMap<String, String>
 attributes) {
        try {
            SetSmsAttributesRequest request = SetSmsAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .attributes(attributes)
                    .build();

            SetSmsAttributesResponse result = snsClient.setSMSAttributes(request);
            System.out.println("Set default Attributes to " + attributes + ". Status
 was "
                    + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Publish a message to a topic. The message is sent to every subscriber.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class PublishTextSMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <message> <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   message - The message text to send.
                   phoneNumber - The mobile phone number to which a message is sent
 (for example, +1XXX5550100).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String message = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        pubTextSMS(snsClient, message, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void pubTextSMS(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
 phoneNumber) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                    .message(message)
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                    .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class PublishTextSMS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <message> <phoneNumber>

                Where:
                   message - The message text to send.
                   phoneNumber - The mobile phone number to which a message is sent
 (for example, +1XXX5550100).\s
                """;
```

```
        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String message = args[0];
        String phoneNumber = args[1];
        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                .build();
        pubTextSMS(snsClient, message, phoneNumber);
        snsClient.close();
    }

    public static void pubTextSMS(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
 phoneNumber) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                    .message(message)
                    .phoneNumber(phoneNumber)
                    .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                    .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
 result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).

- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.JsonArray;
import com.google.gson.JsonObject;
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 * 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 * 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 * 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 * 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 * 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 * 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 * 8. Displays the messages.
 * 9. Deletes the received message.
 * 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 * 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */
public class SNSWorkflow {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage:\n" +
```

```
            "    <fifoQueueARN>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "    accountId - Your AWS account Id value.";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String accountId = args[0];
        String useFIFO;
        String duplication = "n";
        String topicName;
        String deduplicationID = null;
        String groupId = null;

        String topicArn;
        String sqsQueueName;
        String sqsQueueUrl;
        String sqsQueueArn;
        String subscriptionArn;
        boolean selectFIFO = false;

        String message;
        List<Message> messageList;
        List<String> filterList = new ArrayList<>();
        String msgAttValue = "";

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");
        System.out.println("In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
subscribe an SQS queue to the topic.\n" +
```

```
            "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and the
 subscriptions for the queue.\n" +
            "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out).\n" +
            "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering.\n" +
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)");
        useFIFO = in.nextLine();
        if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            selectFIFO = true;
            System.out.println("You have selected FIFO");
            System.out.println(" Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication
 is supported.\n" +
                "        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or
 automatically generated from content using a hash function.\n"
                +
                "        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO
 topic, any message published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,\n"
                +
                "        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted
 but not delivered.\n" +
                "        For more information about deduplication, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            System.out.println(
                "Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)");
            duplication = in.nextLine();
            if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            } else {
                System.out.println("Please enter deduplication Id value");
                deduplicationID = in.nextLine();
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            }
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a topic.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.");
        topicName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must
be appended to the topic name.");
            topicName = topicName + ".fifo";
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createFIFO(snsClient, topicName, duplication);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        } else {
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create an SQS queue.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.");
        sqsQueueName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            sqsQueueName = sqsQueueName + ".fifo";
        }
        sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName, selectFIFO);
        System.out.println("The queue URL is " + sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.");
        sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new queue is " + sqsQueueArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.");

        // Define the policy to use. Make sure that you change the REGION if you are
        // running this code
        // in a different region.
        String policy = """
```

```
        {
             "Statement": [
             {
                 "Effect": "Allow",
                         "Principal": {
                     "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                 },
                 "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                         "Resource": "arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:%s:%s",
                         "Condition": {
                     "ArnEquals": {
                         "aws:SourceArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:%s:%s"
                     }
                 }
             }
             ]
         }
        """.formatted(accountId, sqsQueueName, accountId, topicName);

        setQueueAttr(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, policy);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println(
                "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.\n"
                    +
                    "For information about message filtering, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n"
                    +
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\"
 attribute.");
            System.out.println("Would you like to filter messages for " +
 sqsQueueName + "'s subscription to the topic "
                + topicName + "?  (y/n)");
            String filterAns = in.nextLine();
            if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                boolean moreAns = false;
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
 following \"tone\" attributes.");
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
```

```
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                while (!moreAns) {
                    System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    switch (ans) {
                        case "1":
                            filterList.add("cheerful");
                            break;
                        case "2":
                            filterList.add("funny");
                            break;
                        case "3":
                            filterList.add("serious");
                            break;
                        case "4":
                            filterList.add("sincere");
                            break;
                        default:
                            moreAns = true;
                            break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        subscriptionArn = subQueue(snsClient, topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Publish a message to the topic.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Would you like to add an attribute to this message?
(y/n)");
            String msgAns = in.nextLine();
            if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
following \"tone\" attributes.");
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
                String ans = in.nextLine();
                switch (ans) {
```

```
                    case "1":
                        msgAttValue = "cheerful";
                        break;
                    case "2":
                        msgAttValue = "funny";
                        break;
                    case "3":
                        msgAttValue = "serious";
                        break;
                    default:
                        msgAttValue = "sincere";
                        break;
                }

                System.out.println("Selected value is " + msgAttValue);
            }
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessageFIFO(snsClient, message, topicArn, msgAttValue, duplication,
groupId, deduplicationID);

        } else {
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessage(snsClient, message, topicArn);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        messageList = receiveMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue);
        for (Message mes : messageList) {
            System.out.println("Message Id: " + mes.messageId());
            System.out.println("Full Message: " + mes.body());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to
continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        deleteMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, messageList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue.
Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        unSub(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        deleteSQSQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
```

```
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);
            System.out.println(queueName + " was successfully deleted.");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void unSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            UnsubscribeRequest request = UnsubscribeRequest.builder()
                .subscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
                .build();

            UnsubscribeResponse result = snsClient.unsubscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
                + "\nSubscription was removed for " + request.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {
        try {
            List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();
            for (Message msg : messages) {
                DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry =
DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                    .id(msg.messageId())
                    .build();

                entries.add(entry);
            }

            DeleteMessageBatchRequest deleteMessageBatchRequest =
DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .entries(entries)
```

```
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest);
            System.out.println("The batch delete of messages was successful");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String
queueUrl, String msgAttValue) {
        try {
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
                return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();
            } else {
                // We know there are filters on the message.
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageAttributeNames(msgAttValue) // Include other message
attributes if needed.
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();

                return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    public static void pubMessage(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
topicArn) {
        try {
```

```
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                .message(message)
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status is " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void pubMessageFIFO(SnsClient snsClient,
                                      String message,
                                      String topicArn,
                                      String msgAttValue,
                                      String duplication,
                                      String groupId,
                                      String deduplicationID) {

        try {
            PublishRequest request;
            // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                }

            } else {
```

```
                Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
HashMap<>();
                messageAttributes.put(msgAttValue, MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                    .dataType("String")
                    .stringValue("true")
                    .build());

                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .messageAttributes(messageAttributes)
                        .build();
                }
            }

            // Publish the message to the topic.
            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    // Subscribe to the SQS queue.
    public static String subQueue(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
queueArn, List<String> filterList) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request;
            if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
                // No filter subscription is added.
```

```
                request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("sqs")
                    .endpoint(queueArn)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

                SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
                System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been subscribed
to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());
                return result.subscriptionArn();
            } else {
                request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("sqs")
                    .endpoint(queueArn)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

                SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
                System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been subscribed
to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());

                String attributeName = "FilterPolicy";
                Gson gson = new Gson();
                String jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}";
                JsonObject jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString, JsonObject.class);
                JsonArray toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone");
                for (String value : filterList) {
                    toneArray.add(new JsonPrimitive(value));
                }

                String updatedJsonString = gson.toJson(jsonObject);
                System.out.println(updatedJsonString);
                SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest attRequest =
SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(result.subscriptionArn())
                    .attributeName(attributeName)
                    .attributeValue(updatedJsonString)
                    .build();

                snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest);
```

```
                return result.subscriptionArn();
            }

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Attach a policy to the queue.
    public static void setQueueAttr(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl, String
policy) {
        try {
            Map<software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName,
String> attrMap = new HashMap<>();
            attrMap.put(QueueAttributeName.POLICY, policy);

            SetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
SetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributes(attrMap)
                .build();

            sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
            System.out.println("The policy has been successfully attached.");

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getSQSQueueAttrs(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {
        // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
        List<QueueAttributeName> atts = new ArrayList<>();
        atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QUEUE_ARN);

        GetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
GetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
            .attributeNames(atts)
            .build();
```

```
        GetQueueAttributesResponse response =
sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
        Map<String, String> queueAtts = response.attributesAsStrings();
        for (Map.Entry<String, String> queueAtt : queueAtts.entrySet())
            return queueAtt.getValue();

        return "";
    }

    public static String createQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName, Boolean
selectFIFO) {
        try {
            System.out.println("\nCreate Queue");
            if (selectFIFO) {
                Map<QueueAttributeName, String> attrs = new HashMap<>();
                attrs.put(QueueAttributeName.FIFO_QUEUE, "true");
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .attributes(attrs)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            } else {
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

```
        return "";
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createFIFO(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName, String
duplication) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = new HashMap<>();
            if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "false");
            } else {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            return response.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create a Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway that scans an Amazon DynamoDB table for work anniversaries and uses Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) to send a text message to your employees that congratulates them at their one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event that invokes an AWS Lambda function. Configure EventBridge to use a cron expression to schedule when the Lambda function is invoked. In this example, you create a Lambda function by using the Lambda Java runtime API. This example invokes different AWS services to perform a specific use case. This example demonstrates how to create an app that sends a mobile text message to your employees that congratulates them at the one year anniversary date.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
package example;

import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.LambdaLogger;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SNSEvent.SNSRecord;


import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;

public class SNSEventHandler implements RequestHandler<SNSEvent, Boolean> {
    LambdaLogger logger;

    @Override
    public Boolean handleRequest(SNSEvent event, Context context) {
        logger = context.getLogger();
        List<SNSRecord> records = event.getRecords();
        if (!records.isEmpty()) {
            Iterator<SNSRecord> recordsIter = records.iterator();
            while (recordsIter.hasNext()) {
                processRecord(recordsIter.next());
            }
        }
        return Boolean.TRUE;
    }

    public void processRecord(SNSRecord record) {
        try {
            String message = record.getSNS().getMessage();
```

```
            logger.log("message: " + message);
        } catch (Exception e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

}
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.paginators.ListQueuesIterable;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class HelloSQS {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        listQueues(sqsClient);
        sqsClient.close();
    }

    public static void listQueues(SqsClient sqsClient) {
        try {
            ListQueuesIterable listQueues = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginator();
            listQueues.stream()
                    .flatMap(r -> r.queueUrls().stream())
                    .forEach(content -> System.out.println(" Queue URL: " +
 content.toLowerCase()));

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ListQueuesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ListQueuesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
```

```
 */
public class SQSExample {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String queueName = "queue" + System.currentTimeMillis();
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();

        // Perform various tasks on the Amazon SQS queue.
        String queueUrl = createQueue(sqsClient, queueName);
        listQueues(sqsClient);
        listQueuesFilter(sqsClient, queueUrl);
        List<Message> messages = receiveMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl);
        sendBatchMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl);
        changeMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl, messages);
        deleteMessages(sqsClient, queueUrl, messages);
        sqsClient.close();
    }

    public static String createQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            System.out.println("\nCreate Queue");

            CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);

            System.out.println("\nGet queue url");

            GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

 .getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void listQueues(SqsClient sqsClient) {
```

```
        System.out.println("\nList Queues");
        String prefix = "que";

        try {
            ListQueuesRequest listQueuesRequest =
ListQueuesRequest.builder().queueNamePrefix(prefix).build();
            ListQueuesResponse listQueuesResponse =
sqsClient.listQueues(listQueuesRequest);
            for (String url : listQueuesResponse.queueUrls()) {
                System.out.println(url);
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void listQueuesFilter(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {
        // List queues with filters
        String namePrefix = "queue";
        ListQueuesRequest filterListRequest = ListQueuesRequest.builder()
                .queueNamePrefix(namePrefix)
                .build();

        ListQueuesResponse listQueuesFilteredResponse =
sqsClient.listQueues(filterListRequest);
        System.out.println("Queue URLs with prefix: " + namePrefix);
        for (String url : listQueuesFilteredResponse.queueUrls()) {
            System.out.println(url);
        }

        System.out.println("\nSend message");
        try {
            sqsClient.sendMessage(SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody("Hello world!")
                    .delaySeconds(10)
                    .build());

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    public static void sendBatchMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {

        System.out.println("\nSend multiple messages");
        try {
            SendMessageBatchRequest sendMessageBatchRequest =
SendMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.entries(SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id1").messageBody("Hello from
msg 1").build(),

SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id2").messageBody("msg
2").delaySeconds(10)
                                        .build())
                    .build();
            sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendMessageBatchRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String
queueUrl) {

        System.out.println("\nReceive messages");
        try {
            ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

```
    public static void changeMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
 List<Message> messages) {

        System.out.println("\nChange Message Visibility");
        try {

            for (Message message : messages) {
                ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest req =
 ChangeMessageVisibilityRequest.builder()
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                        .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                        .visibilityTimeout(100)
                        .build();
                sqsClient.changeMessageVisibility(req);
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
 List<Message> messages) {
        System.out.println("\nDelete Messages");

        try {
            for (Message message : messages) {
                DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
 DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                        .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                        .build();
                sqsClient.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
            }
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        try {
            for (Message message : messages) {
                DeleteMessageRequest deleteMessageRequest =
DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                        .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                        .build();
                sqsClient.deleteMessage(deleteMessageRequest);
            }
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DeleteQueue {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <queueName>

                Where:
                   queueName - The name of the Amazon SQS queue to delete.

                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String queueName = args[0];
        SqsClient sqs = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
```

```
        deleteSQSQueue(sqs, queueName);
        sqs.close();
    }

    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient
```

```
.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        String prefix = "que";

        try {
            ListQueuesRequest listQueuesRequest =
ListQueuesRequest.builder().queueNamePrefix(prefix).build();
            ListQueuesResponse listQueuesResponse =
sqsClient.listQueues(listQueuesRequest);
            for (String url : listQueuesResponse.queueUrls()) {
                System.out.println(url);
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        try {
            ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SendMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessage`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Two examples of the `SendMessage` operation follow:

- Send a message with a body and a delay

- Send a message with a body and message attributes

Send a message with a body and a delay.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.ProfileCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class SendMessages {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:    <queueName> <message>

                Where:
                   queueName - The name of the queue.
                   message - The message to send.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String queueName = args[0];
        String message = args[1];
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
                .region(Region.US_WEST_2)
                .build();
        sendMessage(sqsClient, queueName, message);
        sqsClient.close();
    }
```

```
    public static void sendMessage(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName, String
 message) {
        try {
            CreateQueueRequest request = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();
            sqsClient.createQueue(request);

            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            SendMessageRequest sendMsgRequest = SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody(message)
                    .delaySeconds(5)
                    .build();

            sqsClient.sendMessage(sendMsgRequest);

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Send a message with a body and message attributes.

```
    /**
     * <p>This method demonstrates how to add message attributes to a message.
     * Each attribute must specify a name, value, and data type. You use a Java Map
 to supply the attributes. The map's
     * key is the attribute name, and you specify the map's entry value using a
 builder that includes the attribute
     * value and data type.</p>
     *
     * <p>The data type must start with one of "String", "Number" or "Binary". You
 can optionally
     * define a custom extension by using a "." and your extension.</p>
```

```
     *
     * <p>The SQS Developer Guide provides more information on @see <a
     * href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSSimpleQueueService/latest/
SQSDeveloperGuide/sqs-message-metadata.html#sqs-message-attributes">message
     * attributes</a>.</p>
     *
     * @param thumbailPath Filesystem path of the image.
     * @param queueUrl     URL of the SQS queue.
     */
    static void sendMessageWithAttributes(Path thumbailPath, String queueUrl) {
        Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributeMap;
        try {
            messageAttributeMap = Map.of(
                    "Name", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                            .stringValue("Jane Doe")
                            .dataType("String").build(),
                    "Age", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                            .stringValue("42")
                            .dataType("Number.int").build(),
                    "Image", MessageAttributeValue.builder()

 .binaryValue(SdkBytes.fromByteArray(Files.readAllBytes(thumbailPath)))
                            .dataType("Binary.jpg").build()
            );
        } catch (IOException e) {
            LOGGER.error("An I/O exception occurred reading thumbnail image: {}",
 e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }

        SendMessageRequest request = SendMessageRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .messageBody("Hello SQS")
                .messageAttributes(messageAttributeMap)
                .build();
        try {
            SendMessageResponse sendMessageResponse =
 SQS_CLIENT.sendMessage(request);
            LOGGER.info("Message ID: {}", sendMessageResponse.messageId());
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Exception occurred sending message: {}", e.getMessage(),
 e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SendMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessageBatch`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            SendMessageBatchRequest sendMessageBatchRequest =
SendMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.entries(SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id1").messageBody("Hello from
msg 1").build(),

SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder().id("id2").messageBody("msg
2").delaySeconds(10)
                                        .build())
                    .build();
            sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendMessageBatchRequest);
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`SetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure an Amazon SQS to use server-side encryption (SSE) using a custom KMS key.

```
    public static void addEncryption(String queueName, String kmsMasterKeyAlias) {
        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();

        GetQueueUrlRequest urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build();

        GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse;
        try {
            getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest);
        } catch (QueueDoesNotExistException e) {
            LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        String queueUrl = getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();


        Map<QueueAttributeName, String> attributes = Map.of(
                QueueAttributeName.KMS_MASTER_KEY_ID, kmsMasterKeyAlias,
                QueueAttributeName.KMS_DATA_KEY_REUSE_PERIOD_SECONDS, "140" // Set
the data key reuse period to 140 seconds.
        );                                                                  // This
is how long SQS can reuse the data key before requesting a new one from KMS.

        SetQueueAttributesRequest attRequest = SetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributes(attributes)
                .build();
        try {
            sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attRequest);
            LOGGER.info("The attributes have been applied to {}", queueName);
        } catch (InvalidAttributeNameException | InvalidAttributeValueException e) {
            LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
```

```
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        } finally {
            sqsClient.close();
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a messaging application

The following code example shows how to create a messaging application by using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Create and publish to a FIFO topic

The following code example shows how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example

- creates an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, two Amazon SQS FIFO queues, and one Standard queue.
- subscribes the queues to the topic and publishes a message to the topic.

The test verifies the receipt of the message to each queue. The complete example also shows the addition of access policies and deletes the resources at the end.

```
public class PriceUpdateExample {
    public final static SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.create();
    public final static SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();

    public static void main(String[] args) {

        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage: " +
            "    <topicName> <wholesaleQueueFifoName> <retailQueueFifoName>
 <analyticsQueueName>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "   fifoTopicName - The name of the FIFO topic that you want to create.
 \n\n" +
            "   wholesaleQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will be
 created for the wholesale consumer. \n\n"
            +
            "   retailQueueARN - The name of a SQS FIFO queue that will created for
 the retail consumer. \n\n" +
            "   analyticsQueueARN - The name of a SQS standard queue that will be
 created for the analytics consumer. \n\n";
        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        final String fifoTopicName = args[0];
        final String wholeSaleQueueName = args[1];
        final String retailQueueName = args[2];
        final String analyticsQueueName = args[3];

        // For convenience, the QueueData class holds metadata about a queue: ARN,
 URL,
        // name and type.
        List<QueueData> queues = List.of(
            new QueueData(wholeSaleQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(retailQueueName, QueueType.FIFO),
            new QueueData(analyticsQueueName, QueueType.Standard));
```

```
        // Create queues.
        createQueues(queues);

        // Create a topic.
        String topicARN = createFIFOTopic(fifoTopicName);

        // Subscribe each queue to the topic.
        subscribeQueues(queues, topicARN);

        // Allow the newly created topic to send messages to the queues.
        addAccessPolicyToQueuesFINAL(queues, topicARN);

        // Publish a sample price update message with payload.
        publishPriceUpdate(topicARN, "{\"product\": 214, \"price\": 79.99}",
"Consumables");

        // Clean up resources.
        deleteSubscriptions(queues);
        deleteQueues(queues);
        deleteTopic(topicARN);
    }

    public static String createFIFOTopic(String topicName) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = Map.of(
                "FifoTopic", "true",
                "ContentBasedDeduplication", "false",
                "FifoThroughputScope", "MessageGroup");

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            String topicArn = response.topicArn();
            System.out.println("The topic ARN is" + topicArn);

            return topicArn;

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void subscribeQueues(List<QueueData> queues, String topicARN) {
        queues.forEach(queue -> {
            SubscribeRequest subscribeRequest = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicARN)
                .endpoint(queue.queueARN)
                .protocol("sqs")
                .build();

            // Subscribe to the endpoint by using the SNS service client.
            // Only Amazon SQS queues can receive notifications from an Amazon SNS
FIFO
            // topic.
            SubscribeResponse subscribeResponse =
snsClient.subscribe(subscribeRequest);
            System.out.println("The queue [" + queue.queueARN + "] subscribed to the
topic [" + topicARN + "]");
            queue.subscriptionARN = subscribeResponse.subscriptionArn();
        });
    }

    public static void publishPriceUpdate(String topicArn, String payload, String
groupId) {

        try {
            // Create and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.
            String subject = "Price Update";
            String dedupId = UUID.randomUUID().toString();
            String attributeName = "business";
            String attributeValue = "wholesale";

            MessageAttributeValue msgAttValue = MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                .dataType("String")
                .stringValue(attributeValue)
                .build();

            Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes = new HashMap<>();
            attributes.put(attributeName, msgAttValue);
            PublishRequest pubRequest = PublishRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
```

```
                .subject(subject)
                .message(payload)
                .messageGroupId(groupId)
                .messageDeduplicationId(dedupId)
                .messageAttributes(attributes)
                .build();

            final PublishResponse response = snsClient.publish(pubRequest);
            System.out.println(response.messageId());
            System.out.println(response.sequenceNumber());
            System.out.println("Message was published to " + topicArn);

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Java API to create an app to detect faces and objects in videos located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Manage large messages using S3

The following code example shows how to use the Amazon SQS Extended Client Library to work with large Amazon SQS messages.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSExtendedClient;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ExtendedClientConfiguration;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import org.joda.time.DateTime;
import org.joda.time.format.DateTimeFormat;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.S3Client;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.BucketLifecycleConfiguration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.CreateBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteBucketRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.DeleteObjectRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ExpirationStatus;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleExpiration;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRule;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.LifecycleRuleFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectVersionsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Request;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.ListObjectsV2Response;
import
 software.amazon.awssdk.services.s3.model.PutBucketLifecycleConfigurationRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;

import java.util.Arrays;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.UUID;

/**
 * Example of using Amazon SQS Extended Client Library for Java 2.x.
 */
public class SqsExtendedClientExample {
    private static final Logger logger =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SqsExtendedClientExample.class);

    private String s3BucketName;
    private String queueUrl;
    private final String queueName;
    private final S3Client s3Client;
    private final SqsClient sqsExtendedClient;
    private final int messageSize;

    /**
     * Constructor with default clients and message size.
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample() {
        this(S3Client.create(), 300000);
    }

    /**
     * Constructor with custom S3 client and message size.
     *
     * @param s3Client The S3 client to use
     * @param messageSize The size of the test message to create
     */
    public SqsExtendedClientExample(S3Client s3Client, int messageSize) {
        this.s3Client = s3Client;
        this.messageSize = messageSize;
```

```
        // Generate a unique bucket name.
        this.s3BucketName = UUID.randomUUID() + "-" +
                DateTimeFormat.forPattern("yyMMdd-hhmmss").print(new DateTime());

        // Generate a unique queue name.
        this.queueName = "MyQueue-" + UUID.randomUUID();

        // Configure the SQS extended client.
        final ExtendedClientConfiguration extendedClientConfig = new
ExtendedClientConfiguration()
                .withPayloadSupportEnabled(s3Client, s3BucketName);

        this.sqsExtendedClient = new
AmazonSQSExtendedClient(SqsClient.builder().build(), extendedClientConfig);
    }

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        SqsExtendedClientExample example = new SqsExtendedClientExample();
        try {
            example.setup();
            example.sendAndReceiveMessage();
        } finally {
            example.cleanup();
        }
    }

    /**
     * Send a large message and receive it back.
     *
     * @return The received message
     */
    public Message sendAndReceiveMessage() {
        try {
            // Create a large message.
            char[] chars = new char[messageSize];
            Arrays.fill(chars, 'x');
            String largeMessage = new String(chars);

            // Send the message.
            final SendMessageRequest sendMessageRequest =
SendMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageBody(largeMessage)
                    .build();
```

```
            sqsExtendedClient.sendMessage(sendMessageRequest);
            logger.info("Sent message of size: {}", largeMessage.length());

            // Receive and return the message.
            final ReceiveMessageResponse receiveMessageResponse =
sqsExtendedClient.receiveMessage(
                    ReceiveMessageRequest.builder().queueUrl(queueUrl).build());

            List<Message> messages = receiveMessageResponse.messages();
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                throw new RuntimeException("No messages received");
            }

            Message message = messages.getFirst();
            logger.info("\nMessage received.");
            logger.info("  ID: {}", message.messageId());
            logger.info("  Receipt handle: {}", message.receiptHandle());
            logger.info("  Message body size: {}", message.body().length());
            logger.info("  Message body (first 5 characters): {}",
message.body().substring(0, 5));

            return message;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            logger.error("Error during message processing: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw e;
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Java 2.x Developer Guide.
- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SendMessage

Process S3 event notifications

The following code example shows how to work with S3 event notifications in an object-oriented way.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example show how to process S3 notification event by using Amazon SQS.

```
    /**
     * This method receives S3 event notifications by using an SqsAsyncClient.
     * After the client receives the messages it deserializes the JSON payload and
 logs them. It uses
     * the S3EventNotification class (part of the S3 event notification API for
 Java) to deserialize
     * the JSON payload and access the messages in an object-oriented way.
     *
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the AWS SQS queue that receives the S3 event
 notifications.
     * @see <a href="https://sdk.amazonaws.com/java/api/latest/software/amazon/
awssdk/eventnotifications/s3/model/package-summary.html">S3EventNotification API</
a>.
     * <p>
     * To use S3 event notification serialization/deserialization to objects, add
 the following
     * dependency to your Maven pom.xml file.
     * <dependency>
     * <groupId>software.amazon.awssdk</groupId>
     * <artifactId>s3-event-notifications</artifactId>
     * <version><LATEST></version>
     * </dependency>
     * <p>
     * The S3 event notification API became available with version 2.25.11 of the
 Java SDK.
     * <p>
     * This example shows the use of the API with AWS SQS, but it can be used to
 process S3 event notifications
     * in AWS SNS or AWS Lambda as well.
     * <p>
     * Note: The S3EventNotification class does not work with messages routed
 through AWS EventBridge.
     */
```

```
   static void processS3Events(String bucketName, String queueUrl, String queueArn)
{
       try {
           // Configure the bucket to send Object Created and Object Tagging
notifications to an existing SQS queue.
           s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(b -> b
                   .notificationConfiguration(ncb -> ncb
                           .queueConfigurations(qcb -> qcb
                                   .events(Event.S3_OBJECT_CREATED,
Event.S3_OBJECT_TAGGING)
                                   .queueArn(queueArn)))
                           .bucket(bucketName)
           ).join();

           triggerS3EventNotifications(bucketName);
           // Wait for event notifications to propagate.
           Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(5).toMillis());

           boolean didReceiveMessages = true;
           while (didReceiveMessages) {
               // Display the number of messages that are available in the queue.
               sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(b -> b
                               .queueUrl(queueUrl)

.attributeNames(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)
                       ).thenAccept(attributeResponse ->
                               logger.info("Approximate number of messages in the
queue: {}",

attributeResponse.attributes().get(QueueAttributeName.APPROXIMATE_NUMBER_OF_MESSAGES)))
                       .join();

               // Receive the messages.
               ReceiveMessageResponse response = sqsClient.receiveMessage(b -> b
                       .queueUrl(queueUrl)
               ).get();
               logger.info("Count of received messages: {}",
response.messages().size());
               didReceiveMessages = !response.messages().isEmpty();

               // Create a collection to hold the received message for deletion
               // after we log the messages.
               HashSet<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> messagesToDelete = new
HashSet<>();
```

```
                // Process each message.
                response.messages().forEach(message -> {
                    logger.info("Message id: {}", message.messageId());
                    // Deserialize JSON message body to a S3EventNotification object
                    // to access messages in an object-oriented way.
                    S3EventNotification event =
S3EventNotification.fromJson(message.body());

                    // Log the S3 event notification record details.
                    if (event.getRecords() != null) {
                        event.getRecords().forEach(record -> {
                            String eventName = record.getEventName();
                            String key = record.getS3().getObject().getKey();
                            logger.info(record.toString());
                            logger.info("Event name is {} and key is {}", eventName,
key);
                        });
                    }
                    // Add logged messages to collection for batch deletion.
                    messagesToDelete.add(DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                            .id(message.messageId())
                            .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                            .build());
                });
                // Delete messages.
                if (!messagesToDelete.isEmpty()) {
                    sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .entries(messagesToDelete)
                            .build()
                    ).join();
                }
            } // End of while block.
        } catch (InterruptedException | ExecutionException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - GetQueueAttributes

- PutBucketNotificationConfiguration
- ReceiveMessage

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns;

import
 software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.SnsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.CreateTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.PublishResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SnsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.SubscribeResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;
import java.util.Scanner;

import com.google.gson.Gson;
import com.google.gson.JsonArray;
import com.google.gson.JsonObject;
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java example performs these tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 * 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 * 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 * 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 * 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 * 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 * 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 * 8. Displays the messages.
```

```
 * 9. Deletes the received message.
 * 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 * 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */
public class SNSWorkflow {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = "\n" +
            "Usage:\n" +
            "    <fifoQueueARN>\n\n" +
            "Where:\n" +
            "    accountId - Your AWS account Id value.";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        SnsClient snsClient = SnsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .credentialsProvider(EnvironmentVariableCredentialsProvider.create())
            .build();

        Scanner in = new Scanner(System.in);
        String accountId = args[0];
        String useFIFO;
        String duplication = "n";
        String topicName;
        String deduplicationID = null;
        String groupId = null;

        String topicArn;
        String sqsQueueName;
        String sqsQueueUrl;
        String sqsQueueArn;
        String subscriptionArn;
        boolean selectFIFO = false;
```

```
        String message;
        List<Message> messageList;
        List<String> filterList = new ArrayList<>();
        String msgAttValue = "";

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to messaging with topics and queues.");
        System.out.println("In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and
 subscribe an SQS queue to the topic.\n" +
            "You can select from several options for configuring the topic and the
 subscriptions for the queue.\n" +
            "You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-
Out).\n" +
            "FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering.\n" +
            "Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)");
        useFIFO = in.nextLine();
        if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            selectFIFO = true;
            System.out.println("You have selected FIFO");
            System.out.println(" Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication
 is supported.\n" +
                "        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or
 automatically generated from content using a hash function.\n"
                +
                "        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO
 topic, any message published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,\n"
                +
                "        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted
 but not delivered.\n" +
                "        For more information about deduplication, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.");

            System.out.println(
                "Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)");
            duplication = in.nextLine();
            if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
```

```
            } else {
                System.out.println("Please enter deduplication Id value");
                deduplicationID = in.nextLine();
                System.out.println("Please enter a group id value");
                groupId = in.nextLine();
            }
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a topic.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.");
        topicName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must
 be appended to the topic name.");
            topicName = topicName + ".fifo";
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createFIFO(snsClient, topicName, duplication);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        } else {
            System.out.println("The name of the topic is " + topicName);
            topicArn = createSNSTopic(snsClient, topicName);
            System.out.println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is " + topicArn);

        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create an SQS queue.");
        System.out.println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.");
        sqsQueueName = in.nextLine();
        if (selectFIFO) {
            sqsQueueName = sqsQueueName + ".fifo";
        }
        sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName, selectFIFO);
        System.out.println("The queue URL is " + sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.");
        sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the new queue is " + sqsQueueArn);
```

```
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.");

        // Define the policy to use. Make sure that you change the REGION if you are
        // running this code
        // in a different region.
        String policy = """
        {
             "Statement": [
             {
                 "Effect": "Allow",
                         "Principal": {
                     "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                 },
                 "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                         "Resource": "arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:%s:%s",
                         "Condition": {
                     "ArnEquals": {
                         "aws:SourceArn": "arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:%s:%s"
                     }
                 }
             }
             ]
         }
        """.formatted(accountId, sqsQueueName, accountId, topicName);

        setQueueAttr(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, policy);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println(
                "If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.\n"
                    +
                    "For information about message filtering, see https://
docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html\n"
                    +
                    "For this example, you can filter messages by a \"tone\"
 attribute.");
```

```
            System.out.println("Would you like to filter messages for " +
sqsQueueName + "'s subscription to the topic "
                + topicName + "?  (y/n)");
            String filterAns = in.nextLine();
            if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                boolean moreAns = false;
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
following \"tone\" attributes.");
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                while (!moreAns) {
                    System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
                    String ans = in.nextLine();
                    switch (ans) {
                        case "1":
                            filterList.add("cheerful");
                            break;
                        case "2":
                            filterList.add("funny");
                            break;
                        case "3":
                            filterList.add("serious");
                            break;
                        case "4":
                            filterList.add("sincere");
                            break;
                        default:
                            moreAns = true;
                            break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        subscriptionArn = subQueue(snsClient, topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Publish a message to the topic.");
        if (selectFIFO) {
            System.out.println("Would you like to add an attribute to this message?
(y/n)");
            String msgAns = in.nextLine();
```

```
            if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                System.out.println("You can filter messages by one or more of the
following \"tone\" attributes.");
                System.out.println("1. cheerful");
                System.out.println("2. funny");
                System.out.println("3. serious");
                System.out.println("4. sincere");
                System.out.println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.");
                String ans = in.nextLine();
                switch (ans) {
                    case "1":
                        msgAttValue = "cheerful";
                        break;
                    case "2":
                        msgAttValue = "funny";
                        break;
                    case "3":
                        msgAttValue = "serious";
                        break;
                    default:
                        msgAttValue = "sincere";
                        break;
                }

                System.out.println("Selected value is " + msgAttValue);
            }
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessageFIFO(snsClient, message, topicArn, msgAttValue, duplication,
groupId, deduplicationID);

        } else {
            System.out.println("Enter a message.");
            message = in.nextLine();
            pubMessage(snsClient, message, topicArn);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        messageList = receiveMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue);
        for (Message mes : messageList) {
            System.out.println("Message Id: " + mes.messageId());
```

```
            System.out.println("Full Message: " + mes.body());
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to
continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        deleteMessages(sqsClient, sqsQueueUrl, messageList);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue.
Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        unSub(snsClient, subscriptionArn);
        deleteSQSQueue(sqsClient, sqsQueueName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.");
        in.nextLine();
        deleteSNSTopic(snsClient, topicArn);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void deleteSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn) {
        try {
            DeleteTopicRequest request = DeleteTopicRequest.builder()
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            DeleteTopicResponse result = snsClient.deleteTopic(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

```
    public static void deleteSQSQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName) {
        try {
            GetQueueUrlRequest getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build();

            String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl();
            DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);
            System.out.println(queueName + " was successfully deleted.");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void unSub(SnsClient snsClient, String subscriptionArn) {
        try {
            UnsubscribeRequest request = UnsubscribeRequest.builder()
                .subscriptionArn(subscriptionArn)
                .build();

            UnsubscribeResponse result = snsClient.unsubscribe(request);
            System.out.println("Status was " + result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode()
                + "\nSubscription was removed for " + request.subscriptionArn());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {
        try {
            List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();
            for (Message msg : messages) {
                DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry entry =
DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
```

```
                    .id(msg.messageId())
                    .build();

                entries.add(entry);
            }

            DeleteMessageBatchRequest deleteMessageBatchRequest =
DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .entries(entries)
                .build();

            sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest);
            System.out.println("The batch delete of messages was successful");

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(SqsClient sqsClient, String
queueUrl, String msgAttValue) {
        try {
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveMessageRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();
                return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest).messages();
            } else {
                // We know there are filters on the message.
                ReceiveMessageRequest receiveRequest =
ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .messageAttributeNames(msgAttValue) // Include other message
attributes if needed.
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(5)
                    .build();

                return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages();
            }
```

```
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }

    public static void pubMessage(SnsClient snsClient, String message, String
topicArn) {
        try {
            PublishRequest request = PublishRequest.builder()
                .message(message)
                .topicArn(topicArn)
                .build();

            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status is " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void pubMessageFIFO(SnsClient snsClient,
                                      String message,
                                      String topicArn,
                                      String msgAttValue,
                                      String duplication,
                                      String groupId,
                                      String deduplicationID) {

        try {
            PublishRequest request;
            // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
            if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
```

```
                } else {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                }

            } else {
                Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> messageAttributes = new
HashMap<>();
                messageAttributes.put(msgAttValue, MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                    .dataType("String")
                    .stringValue("true")
                    .build());

                if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .message(message)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .build();
                } else {
                    // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
                    request = PublishRequest.builder()
                        .topicArn(topicArn)
                        .message(message)
                        .messageDeduplicationId(deduplicationID)
                        .messageGroupId(groupId)
                        .messageAttributes(messageAttributes)
                        .build();
                }
            }

            // Publish the message to the topic.
            PublishResponse result = snsClient.publish(request);
            System.out
                .println(result.messageId() + " Message sent. Status was " +
result.sdkHttpResponse().statusCode());

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
```

```
        }
    }

    // Subscribe to the SQS queue.
    public static String subQueue(SnsClient snsClient, String topicArn, String
queueArn, List<String> filterList) {
        try {
            SubscribeRequest request;
            if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
                // No filter subscription is added.
                request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("sqs")
                    .endpoint(queueArn)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

                SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
                System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been subscribed
to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());
                return result.subscriptionArn();
            } else {
                request = SubscribeRequest.builder()
                    .protocol("sqs")
                    .endpoint(queueArn)
                    .returnSubscriptionArn(true)
                    .topicArn(topicArn)
                    .build();

                SubscribeResponse result = snsClient.subscribe(request);
                System.out.println("The queue " + queueArn + " has been subscribed
to the topic " + topicArn + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn());

                String attributeName = "FilterPolicy";
                Gson gson = new Gson();
                String jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}";
                JsonObject jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString, JsonObject.class);
                JsonArray toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone");
                for (String value : filterList) {
                    toneArray.add(new JsonPrimitive(value));
                }
```

```
                String updatedJsonString = gson.toJson(jsonObject);
                System.out.println(updatedJsonString);
                SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest attRequest =
SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest.builder()
                    .subscriptionArn(result.subscriptionArn())
                    .attributeName(attributeName)
                    .attributeValue(updatedJsonString)
                    .build();

                snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest);
                return result.subscriptionArn();
            }

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Attach a policy to the queue.
    public static void setQueueAttr(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl, String
policy) {
        try {
            Map<software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName,
String> attrMap = new HashMap<>();
            attrMap.put(QueueAttributeName.POLICY, policy);

            SetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
SetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
                .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                .attributes(attrMap)
                .build();

            sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
            System.out.println("The policy has been successfully attached.");

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String getSQSQueueAttrs(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueUrl) {
```

```
        // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
        List<QueueAttributeName> atts = new ArrayList<>();
        atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QUEUE_ARN);

        GetQueueAttributesRequest attributesRequest =
GetQueueAttributesRequest.builder()
            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
            .attributeNames(atts)
            .build();

        GetQueueAttributesResponse response =
sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest);
        Map<String, String> queueAtts = response.attributesAsStrings();
        for (Map.Entry<String, String> queueAtt : queueAtts.entrySet())
            return queueAtt.getValue();

        return "";
    }

    public static String createQueue(SqsClient sqsClient, String queueName, Boolean
selectFIFO) {
        try {
            System.out.println("\nCreate Queue");
            if (selectFIFO) {
                Map<QueueAttributeName, String> attrs = new HashMap<>();
                attrs.put(QueueAttributeName.FIFO_QUEUE, "true");
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .attributes(attrs)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            } else {
                CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                    .queueName(queueName)
                    .build();

                sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest);
                System.out.println("\nGet queue url");
```

```
                GetQueueUrlResponse getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient

.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder().queueName(queueName).build());
                return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl();
            }

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createSNSTopic(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName) {
        CreateTopicResponse result;
        try {
            CreateTopicRequest request = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
                .name(topicName)
                .build();

            result = snsClient.createTopic(request);
            return result.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createFIFO(SnsClient snsClient, String topicName, String
duplication) {
        try {
            // Create a FIFO topic by using the SNS service client.
            Map<String, String> topicAttributes = new HashMap<>();
            if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "false");
            } else {
                topicAttributes.put("FifoTopic", "true");
                topicAttributes.put("ContentBasedDeduplication", "true");
            }

            CreateTopicRequest topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest.builder()
```

```
                .name(topicName)
                .attributes(topicAttributes)
                .build();

            CreateTopicResponse response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest);
            return response.topicArn();

        } catch (SnsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Send and receive batches of messages

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon SQS queue.
- Send batches of messages to the queue.
- Receive batches of messages from the queue.
- Delete batches of messages from the queue.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

As shown in the following examples, you can handle batch message operations with Amazon SQS using two different approaches with the AWS SDK for Java 2.x:

SendRecvBatch.java uses explicit batch operations. You manually create message batches and call `sendMessageBatch()` and `deleteMessageBatch()` directly. You also handle batch responses, including any failed messages. This approach gives you full control over batch sizing and error handling. However, it requires more code to manage the batching logic.

SimpleProducerConsumer.java uses the high-level `SqsAsyncBatchManager` library for automatic request batching. You make individual `sendMessage()` and `deleteMessage()` calls with the same method signatures as the standard client. The SDK automatically buffers these calls and sends them as batch operations. This approach requires minimal code changes while providing batching performance benefits.

Use explicit batching when you need fine-grained control over batch composition and error handling. Use automatic batching when you want to optimize performance with minimal code changes.

SendRecvBatch.java - Uses explicit batch operations with messages.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.BatchResultErrorEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchResultEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.MessageAttributeValue;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageBatchResultEntry;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.io.BufferedReader;
import java.io.IOException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.io.InputStreamReader;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.HashMap;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Map;


/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

/**
 * This code demonstrates basic message operations in Amazon Simple Queue Service
 (Amazon SQS).
 */

public class SendRecvBatch {
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SendRecvBatch.class);
    private static final SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();


    public static void main(String[] args) {
        usageDemo();
    }
    /**
     * Send a batch of messages in a single request to an SQS queue.
     * This request may return overall success even when some messages were not
 sent.
     * The caller must inspect the Successful and Failed lists in the response and
```

```
    * resend any failed messages.
    *
    * @param queueUrl  The URL of the queue to receive the messages.
    * @param messages  The messages to send to the queue. Each message contains a
body and attributes.
    * @return The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and failed
messages.
    */
   public static SendMessageBatchResponse sendMessages(
           String queueUrl, List<MessageEntry> messages) {

       try {
           List<SendMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();

           for (int i = 0; i < messages.size(); i++) {
               MessageEntry message = messages.get(i);
               entries.add(SendMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                       .id(String.valueOf(i))
                       .messageBody(message.getBody())
                       .messageAttributes(message.getAttributes())
                       .build());
           }

           SendMessageBatchRequest sendBatchRequest =
SendMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                   .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                   .entries(entries)
                   .build();

           SendMessageBatchResponse response =
sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendBatchRequest);

           if (!response.successful().isEmpty()) {
               for (SendMessageBatchResultEntry resultEntry :
response.successful()) {
                   LOGGER.info("Message sent: {}: {}", resultEntry.messageId(),

messages.get(Integer.parseInt(resultEntry.id())).getBody());
               }
           }

           if (!response.failed().isEmpty()) {
               for (BatchResultErrorEntry errorEntry : response.failed()) {
                   LOGGER.warn("Failed to send: {}: {}", errorEntry.id(),
```

```
messages.get(Integer.parseInt(errorEntry.id())).getBody());
                }
            }

            return response;

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Send messages failed to queue: {}", queueUrl, e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Receive a batch of messages in a single request from an SQS queue.
     *
     * @param queueUrl   The URL of the queue from which to receive messages.
     * @param maxNumber  The maximum number of messages to receive (capped at 10 by
SQS).
     *                   The actual number of messages received might be less.
     * @param waitTime   The maximum time to wait (in seconds) before returning.
When
     *                   this number is greater than zero, long polling is used.
This
     *                   can result in reduced costs and fewer false empty
responses.
     * @return The list of Message objects received. These each contain the body
     *         of the message and metadata and custom attributes.
     */
    public static List<Message> receiveMessages(String queueUrl, int maxNumber, int
waitTime) {
        try {
            ReceiveMessageRequest receiveRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .maxNumberOfMessages(maxNumber)
                    .waitTimeSeconds(waitTime)
                    .messageAttributeNames("All")
                    .build();

            List<Message> messages =
sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages();

            for (Message message : messages) {
```

```
                LOGGER.info("Received message: {}: {}", message.messageId(),
message.body());
            }

            return messages;

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Couldn't receive messages from queue: {}", queueUrl, e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Delete a batch of messages from a queue in a single request.
     *
     * @param queueUrl  The URL of the queue from which to delete the messages.
     * @param messages  The list of messages to delete.
     * @return The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and failed
     *         message deletions.
     */
    public static DeleteMessageBatchResponse deleteMessages(String queueUrl,
List<Message> messages) {
        try {
            List<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> entries = new ArrayList<>();

            for (int i = 0; i < messages.size(); i++) {
                entries.add(DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry.builder()
                        .id(String.valueOf(i))
                        .receiptHandle(messages.get(i).receiptHandle())
                        .build());
            }

            DeleteMessageBatchRequest deleteRequest =
DeleteMessageBatchRequest.builder()
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .entries(entries)
                    .build();

            DeleteMessageBatchResponse response =
sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteRequest);

            if (!response.successful().isEmpty()) {
                for (DeleteMessageBatchResultEntry resultEntry :
response.successful()) {
```

```
                    LOGGER.info("Deleted {}",
messages.get(Integer.parseInt(resultEntry.id())).receiptHandle());
                }
            }

            if (!response.failed().isEmpty()) {
                for (BatchResultErrorEntry errorEntry : response.failed()) {
                    LOGGER.warn("Could not delete {}",
messages.get(Integer.parseInt(errorEntry.id())).receiptHandle());
                }
            }

            return response;

        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Couldn't delete messages from queue {}", queueUrl, e);
            throw e;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Helper class to represent a message with body and attributes.
     */
    public static class MessageEntry {
        private final String body;
        private final Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes;

        public MessageEntry(String body, Map<String, MessageAttributeValue>
attributes) {
            this.body = body;
            this.attributes = attributes != null ? attributes : new HashMap<>();
        }

        public String getBody() {
            return body;
        }

        public Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> getAttributes() {
            return attributes;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Shows how to:
```

```
    * * Read the lines from a file and send the lines in
    *   batches of 10 as messages to a queue.
    * * Receive the messages in batches until the queue is empty.
    * * Reassemble the lines of the file and verify they match the original file.
    */
   public static void usageDemo() {
       LOGGER.info("-".repeat(88));
       LOGGER.info("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS)
demo!");
       LOGGER.info("-".repeat(88));

       String queueUrl = null;
       try {
           // Create a queue for the demo.
           String queueName = "sqs-usage-demo-message-wrapper-" +
System.currentTimeMillis();
           CreateQueueRequest createRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                   .queueName(queueName)
                   .build();
           queueUrl = sqsClient.createQueue(createRequest).queueUrl();
           LOGGER.info("Created queue: {}", queueUrl);

           try (InputStream inputStream =
SendRecvBatch.class.getResourceAsStream("/log4j2.xml");
                BufferedReader reader = new BufferedReader(new
InputStreamReader(inputStream))) {

               List<String> lines = reader.lines().toList();

               // Send file lines in batches.
               int batchSize = 10;
               LOGGER.info("Sending file lines in batches of {} as messages.",
batchSize);

               for (int i = 0; i < lines.size(); i += batchSize) {
                   List<MessageEntry> messageBatch = new ArrayList<>();

                   for (int j = i; j < Math.min(i + batchSize, lines.size()); j++)
{
                       String line = lines.get(j);
                       if (line == null || line.trim().isEmpty()) {
                           continue; // Skip empty lines.
                       }
```

```
                        Map<String, MessageAttributeValue> attributes = new
HashMap<>();
                        attributes.put("line", MessageAttributeValue.builder()
                                .dataType("String")
                                .stringValue(String.valueOf(j))
                                .build());

                        messageBatch.add(new MessageEntry(lines.get(j),
attributes));
                    }

                    sendMessages(queueUrl, messageBatch);
                    System.out.print(".");
                    System.out.flush();
                }

                LOGGER.info("\nDone. Sent {} messages.", lines.size());

                // Receive and process messages.
                LOGGER.info("Receiving, handling, and deleting messages in batches
of {}.", batchSize);
                String[] receivedLines = new String[lines.size()];
                boolean moreMessages = true;

                while (moreMessages) {
                    List<Message> receivedMessages = receiveMessages(queueUrl,
batchSize, 5);

                    for (Message message : receivedMessages) {
                        int lineNumber =
Integer.parseInt(message.messageAttributes().get("line").stringValue());
                        receivedLines[lineNumber] = message.body();
                    }

                    if (!receivedMessages.isEmpty()) {
                        deleteMessages(queueUrl, receivedMessages);
                    } else {
                        moreMessages = false;
                    }
                }

                LOGGER.info("\nDone.");

                // Verify that all lines were received correctly.
```

```
                boolean allLinesMatch = true;
                for (int i = 0; i < lines.size(); i++) {
                    String originalLine = lines.get(i);
                    String receivedLine = receivedLines[i] == null ? "" :
receivedLines[i];

                    if (!originalLine.equals(receivedLine)) {
                        allLinesMatch = false;
                        break;
                    }
                }

                if (allLinesMatch) {
                    LOGGER.info("Successfully reassembled all file lines!");
                } else {
                    LOGGER.info("Uh oh, some lines were missed!");
                }
            }
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("SQS operation failed", e);
        } catch (RuntimeException | IOException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Unexpected runtime error during demo", e);
        } finally {
            // Clean up by deleting the queue if it was created.
            if (queueUrl != null) {
                try {
                    DeleteQueueRequest deleteQueueRequest =
DeleteQueueRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .build();
                    sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest);
                    LOGGER.info("Deleted queue: {}", queueUrl);
                } catch (SqsException e) {
                    LOGGER.error("Failed to delete queue: {}", queueUrl, e);
                }
            }
        }

        LOGGER.info("Thanks for watching!");
        LOGGER.info("-".repeat(88));
    }
}
```

SimpleProducerConsumer.java - Uses automatic batching of messages.

```
package com.example.sqs;

import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsAsyncClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.batchmanager.SqsAsyncBatchManager;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.Message;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SendMessageResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;

import java.math.BigInteger;
import java.util.List;
import java.util.Random;
import java.util.Scanner;
import java.util.concurrent.CompletableFuture;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicBoolean;
import java.util.concurrent.atomic.AtomicInteger;

/**
 * Demonstrates the AWS SDK for Java 2.x Automatic Request Batching API for Amazon
 SQS.
 *
 * This example showcases the high-level SqsAsyncBatchManager library that provides
 * efficient batching and buffering for SQS operations. The batch manager offers
 * methods that directly mirror SqsAsyncClient methods—sendMessage,
 changeMessageVisibility,
 * deleteMessage, and receiveMessage—making it a drop-in replacement with minimal
 code changes.
 *
 * Key features of the SqsAsyncBatchManager:
 * - Automatic batching: The SDK automatically buffers individual requests and sends
 them
 *   as batches when maxBatchSize (default: 10) or sendRequestFrequency (default:
 200ms)
 *   thresholds are reached
```

```
 * - Familiar API: Method signatures match SqsAsyncClient exactly, requiring no
 learning curve
 * - Background optimization: The batch manager maintains internal buffers and
 handles
 *   batching logic transparently
 * - Asynchronous operations: All methods return CompletableFuture for non-blocking
 execution
 *
 * Performance benefits demonstrated:
 * - Reduced API calls: Multiple individual requests are consolidated into single
 batch operations
 * - Lower costs: Fewer API calls result in reduced SQS charges
 * - Higher throughput: Batch operations process more messages per second
 * - Efficient resource utilization: Fewer network round trips and better connection
 reuse
 *
 * This example compares:
 * 1. Single-message operations using SqsAsyncClient directly
 * 2. Batch operations using SqsAsyncBatchManager with identical method calls
 *
 * Usage patterns:
 * - Set batch size to 1 to use SqsAsyncClient for baseline performance measurement
 * - Set batch size > 1 to use SqsAsyncBatchManager for optimized batch processing
 * - Monitor real-time throughput metrics to observe performance improvements
 *
 * Prerequisites:
 * - AWS SDK for Java 2.x version 2.28.0 or later
 * - An existing SQS queue
 * - Valid AWS credentials configured
 *
 * The program displays real-time metrics showing the dramatic performance
 difference
 * between individual operations and automatic batching.
 */
public class SimpleProducerConsumer {

    // The maximum runtime of the program.
    private final static int MAX_RUNTIME_MINUTES = 60;
    private final static Logger log =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SimpleProducerConsumer.class);

    /**
     * Runs the SQS batching demonstration with user-configured parameters.
     *
```

```
     * Prompts for queue name, thread counts, batch size, message size, and runtime.
     * Creates producer and consumer threads to demonstrate batching performance.
     *
     * @param args command line arguments (not used)
     * @throws InterruptedException if thread operations are interrupted
     */
    public static void main(String[] args) throws InterruptedException {

        final Scanner input = new Scanner(System.in);

        System.out.print("Enter the queue name: ");
        final String queueName = input.nextLine();

        System.out.print("Enter the number of producers: ");
        final int producerCount = input.nextInt();

        System.out.print("Enter the number of consumers: ");
        final int consumerCount = input.nextInt();

        System.out.print("Enter the number of messages per batch: ");
        final int batchSize = input.nextInt();

        System.out.print("Enter the message size in bytes: ");
        final int messageSizeByte = input.nextInt();

        System.out.print("Enter the run time in minutes: ");
        final int runTimeMinutes = input.nextInt();

        // Create SQS async client and batch manager for all operations.
        // The SqsAsyncBatchManager is created from the SqsAsyncClient using the
        // batchManager() factory method, which provides default batching
configuration.
        // This high-level library automatically handles request buffering and
batching
        // while maintaining the same method signatures as SqsAsyncClient.
        final SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient = SqsAsyncClient.create();
        final SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager = sqsAsyncClient.batchManager();

        final String queueUrl =
sqsAsyncClient.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest.builder()
                .queueName(queueName)
                .build()).join().queueUrl();

        // The flag used to stop producer, consumer, and monitor threads.
```

```
        final AtomicBoolean stop = new AtomicBoolean(false);

        // Start the producers.
        final AtomicInteger producedCount = new AtomicInteger();
        final Thread[] producers = new Thread[producerCount];
        for (int i = 0; i < producerCount; i++) {
            if (batchSize == 1) {
                producers[i] = new Producer(sqsAsyncClient, queueUrl,
messageSizeByte,
                        producedCount, stop);
            } else {
                producers[i] = new BatchProducer(batchManager, queueUrl, batchSize,
                        messageSizeByte, producedCount, stop);
            }
            producers[i].start();
        }

        // Start the consumers.
        final AtomicInteger consumedCount = new AtomicInteger();
        final Thread[] consumers = new Thread[consumerCount];
        for (int i = 0; i < consumerCount; i++) {
            if (batchSize == 1) {
                consumers[i] = new Consumer(sqsAsyncClient, queueUrl, consumedCount,
stop);
            } else {
                consumers[i] = new BatchConsumer(batchManager, queueUrl, batchSize,
                        consumedCount, stop);
            }
            consumers[i].start();
        }

        // Start the monitor thread.
        final Thread monitor = new Monitor(producedCount, consumedCount, stop);
        monitor.start();

        // Wait for the specified amount of time then stop.
        Thread.sleep(TimeUnit.MINUTES.toMillis(Math.min(runTimeMinutes,
                MAX_RUNTIME_MINUTES)));
        stop.set(true);

        // Join all threads.
        for (int i = 0; i < producerCount; i++) {
            producers[i].join();
        }
```

```
        for (int i = 0; i < consumerCount; i++) {
            consumers[i].join();
        }

        monitor.interrupt();
        monitor.join();

        // Close resources
        batchManager.close();
        sqsAsyncClient.close();
    }

    /**
     * Creates a random string of approximately the specified size in bytes.
     *
     * @param sizeByte the target size in bytes for the generated string
     * @return a random string encoded in base-32
     */
    private static String makeRandomString(int sizeByte) {
        final byte[] bs = new byte[(int) Math.ceil(sizeByte * 5 / 8)];
        new Random().nextBytes(bs);
        bs[0] = (byte) ((bs[0] | 64) & 127);
        return new BigInteger(bs).toString(32);
    }

    /**
     * Sends messages individually using SqsAsyncClient for baseline performance
measurement.
     *
     * This producer demonstrates traditional single-message operations without
batching.
     * Each sendMessage() call results in a separate API request to SQS, providing
     * a performance baseline for comparison with the batch operations.
     *
     * The sendMessage() method signature is identical to
SqsAsyncBatchManager.sendMessage(),
     * showing how the high-level batching library maintains API compatibility while
     * adding automatic optimization behind the scenes.
     */
    private static class Producer extends Thread {
        final SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient;
        final String queueUrl;
        final AtomicInteger producedCount;
```

```
        final AtomicBoolean stop;
        final String theMessage;

        /**
         * Creates a producer thread for single-message operations.
         *
         * @param sqsAsyncClient the SQS client for sending messages
         * @param queueUrl the URL of the target queue
         * @param messageSizeByte the size of messages to generate
         * @param producedCount shared counter for tracking sent messages
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        Producer(SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient, String queueUrl, int
messageSizeByte,
                AtomicInteger producedCount, AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.sqsAsyncClient = sqsAsyncClient;
            this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
            this.producedCount = producedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
            this.theMessage = makeRandomString(messageSizeByte);
        }

        /**
         * Continuously sends messages until the stop flag is set.
         *
         * Uses SqsAsyncClient.sendMessage() directly, resulting in one API call per
message.
         * This approach provides baseline performance metrics for comparison with
batching.
         * Each call blocks until the individual message is sent, demonstrating
traditional
         * one-request-per-operation behavior.
         */
        public void run() {
            try {
                while (!stop.get()) {
                    sqsAsyncClient.sendMessage(SendMessageRequest.builder()
                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                            .messageBody(theMessage)
                            .build()).join();
                    producedCount.incrementAndGet();
                }
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
```

```
                // Handle both SdkException and CompletionException from async
operations.
                // If this unlikely condition occurs, stop.
                log.error("Producer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Sends messages using SqsAsyncBatchManager for automatic request batching and
optimization.
     *
     * This producer demonstrates the AWS SDK for Java 2.x high-level batching
library.
     * The SqsAsyncBatchManager automatically buffers individual sendMessage() calls
and
     * sends them as batches when thresholds are reached:
     * - maxBatchSize: Maximum 10 messages per batch (default)
     * - sendRequestFrequency: 200ms timeout before sending partial batches
(default)
     *
     * Key advantages of the batching approach:
     * - Identical API: batchManager.sendMessage() has the same signature as
sqsAsyncClient.sendMessage()
     * - Automatic optimization: No code changes needed to benefit from batching
     * - Transparent buffering: The SDK handles batching logic internally
     * - Reduced API calls: Multiple messages sent in single batch requests
     * - Lower costs: Fewer API calls result in reduced SQS charges
     * - Higher throughput: Batch operations process significantly more messages per
second
     */
    private static class BatchProducer extends Thread {
        final SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager;
        final String queueUrl;
        final int batchSize;
        final AtomicInteger producedCount;
        final AtomicBoolean stop;
        final String theMessage;

        /**
         * Creates a producer thread for batch operations.
         *
         * @param batchManager the batch manager for efficient message sending
```

```
         * @param queueUrl the URL of the target queue
         * @param batchSize the number of messages to send per batch
         * @param messageSizeByte the size of messages to generate
         * @param producedCount shared counter for tracking sent messages
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        BatchProducer(SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager, String queueUrl, int
batchSize,
                      int messageSizeByte, AtomicInteger producedCount,
                      AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.batchManager = batchManager;
            this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
            this.batchSize = batchSize;
            this.producedCount = producedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
            this.theMessage = makeRandomString(messageSizeByte);
        }

        /**
         * Continuously sends batches of messages using the high-level batching
library.
         *
         * Notice how batchManager.sendMessage() uses the exact same method
signature
         * and request builder pattern as SqsAsyncClient.sendMessage(). This
demonstrates
         * the drop-in replacement capability of the SqsAsyncBatchManager.
         *
         * The SDK automatically:
         * - Buffers individual sendMessage() calls internally
         * - Groups them into batch requests when thresholds are met
         * - Sends SendMessageBatchRequest operations to SQS
         * - Returns individual CompletableFuture responses for each message
         *
         * This transparent batching provides significant performance improvements
         * without requiring changes to application logic or error handling
patterns.
         */
        public void run() {
            try {
                while (!stop.get()) {
                    // Send multiple messages using the high-level batch manager.
                    // Each batchManager.sendMessage() call uses identical syntax to
```

```
                    // sqsAsyncClient.sendMessage(), demonstrating API
compatibility.
                    // The SDK automatically buffers these calls and sends them as
                    // batch operations when maxBatchSize (10) or
sendRequestFrequency (200ms)
                    // thresholds are reached, significantly improving throughput.
                    for (int i = 0; i < batchSize; i++) {
                        CompletableFuture<SendMessageResponse> future =
batchManager.sendMessage(
                                SendMessageRequest.builder()
                                        .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                        .messageBody(theMessage)
                                        .build());

                        // Handle the response asynchronously
                        future.whenComplete((response, throwable) -> {
                            if (throwable == null) {
                                producedCount.incrementAndGet();
                            } else if (!(throwable instanceof
java.util.concurrent.CancellationException) &&
                                      !(throwable.getMessage() != null &&
throwable.getMessage().contains("executor not accepting a task"))) {
                                log.error("BatchProducer: Failed to send message",
throwable);
                            }
                            // Ignore CancellationException and executor shutdown
errors - expected during shutdown
                        });
                    }

                    // Small delay to allow batching to occur
                    Thread.sleep(10);
                }
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                log.error("BatchProducer interrupted: " + e.getMessage());
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
                log.error("BatchProducer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
```

```
    * Receives and deletes messages individually using SqsAsyncClient for baseline
 measurement.
    *
    * This consumer demonstrates traditional single-message operations without
 batching.
    * Each receiveMessage() and deleteMessage() call results in separate API
 requests,
    * providing a performance baseline for comparison with batch operations.
    *
    * The method signatures are identical to SqsAsyncBatchManager methods:
    * - receiveMessage() matches batchManager.receiveMessage()
    * - deleteMessage() matches batchManager.deleteMessage()
    *
    * This API consistency allows easy migration to the high-level batching
 library.
    */
   private static class Consumer extends Thread {
       final SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient;
       final String queueUrl;
       final AtomicInteger consumedCount;
       final AtomicBoolean stop;

       /**
        * Creates a consumer thread for single-message operations.
        *
        * @param sqsAsyncClient the SQS client for receiving messages
        * @param queueUrl the URL of the source queue
        * @param consumedCount shared counter for tracking processed messages
        * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
        */
       Consumer(SqsAsyncClient sqsAsyncClient, String queueUrl, AtomicInteger
 consumedCount,
                AtomicBoolean stop) {
           this.sqsAsyncClient = sqsAsyncClient;
           this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
           this.consumedCount = consumedCount;
           this.stop = stop;
       }

       /**
        * Continuously receives and deletes messages using traditional single-
request operations.
        *
        * Uses SqsAsyncClient methods directly:
```

```
        * - receiveMessage(): One API call per receive operation
        * - deleteMessage(): One API call per delete operation
        *
        * This approach demonstrates the baseline performance without batching
optimization.
        * Compare these method calls with the identical signatures used in
BatchConsumer
        * to see how the high-level batching library maintains API compatibility.
        */
       public void run() {
           try {
               while (!stop.get()) {
                   try {
                       final ReceiveMessageResponse result =
sqsAsyncClient.receiveMessage(
                               ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                                       .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                       .build()).join();

                       if (!result.messages().isEmpty()) {
                           final Message m = result.messages().get(0);
                           // Note: deleteMessage() signature identical to
batchManager.deleteMessage()

sqsAsyncClient.deleteMessage(DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                                   .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                   .receiptHandle(m.receiptHandle())
                                   .build()).join();
                           consumedCount.incrementAndGet();
                       }
                   } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException
e) {
                       log.error(e.getMessage());
                   }
               }
           } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
               // Handle both SdkException and CompletionException from async
operations.
               // If this unlikely condition occurs, stop.
               log.error("Consumer: " + e.getMessage());
               System.exit(1);
           }
       }
   }
```

```
   /**
    * Receives and deletes messages using SqsAsyncBatchManager for automatic
optimization.
    *
    * This consumer demonstrates the AWS SDK for Java 2.x high-level batching
library
    * for message consumption. The SqsAsyncBatchManager provides two key
optimizations:
    *
    * 1. Receive optimization: Maintains an internal buffer of messages fetched in
the
    *    background, so receiveMessage() calls return immediately from the buffer
    * 2. Delete batching: Automatically buffers deleteMessage() calls and sends
them
    *    as DeleteMessageBatchRequest operations when thresholds are reached
    *
    * Key features:
    * - Identical API: receiveMessage() and deleteMessage() have the same
signatures
    *   as SqsAsyncClient methods, making this a true drop-in replacement
    * - Background fetching: The batch manager continuously fetches messages to
keep
    *   the internal buffer populated, reducing receive latency
    * - Automatic delete batching: Individual deleteMessage() calls are buffered
and
    *   sent as batch operations (up to 10 per batch, 200ms frequency)
    * - Transparent optimization: No application logic changes needed to benefit
    *
    * Performance benefits:
    * - Reduced API calls through automatic batching of delete operations
    * - Lower latency for receives due to background message buffering
    * - Higher overall throughput with fewer network round trips
    */
   private static class BatchConsumer extends Thread {
       final SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager;
       final String queueUrl;
       final int batchSize;
       final AtomicInteger consumedCount;
       final AtomicBoolean stop;

       /**
        * Creates a consumer thread for batch operations.
        *
```

```
         * @param batchManager the batch manager for efficient message processing
         * @param queueUrl the URL of the source queue
         * @param batchSize the maximum number of messages to receive per batch
         * @param consumedCount shared counter for tracking processed messages
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        BatchConsumer(SqsAsyncBatchManager batchManager, String queueUrl, int
batchSize,
                      AtomicInteger consumedCount, AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.batchManager = batchManager;
            this.queueUrl = queueUrl;
            this.batchSize = batchSize;
            this.consumedCount = consumedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
        }

        /**
         * Continuously receives and deletes messages using the high-level batching
library.
         *
         * Demonstrates the key advantage of SqsAsyncBatchManager: identical method
signatures
         * with automatic optimization. Notice how:
         *
         * - batchManager.receiveMessage() uses the same syntax as
sqsAsyncClient.receiveMessage()
         * - batchManager.deleteMessage() uses the same syntax as
sqsAsyncClient.deleteMessage()
         *
         * Behind the scenes, the batch manager:
         * 1. Maintains an internal message buffer populated by background fetching
         * 2. Returns messages immediately from the buffer (reduced latency)
         * 3. Automatically batches deleteMessage() calls into
DeleteMessageBatchRequest operations
         * 4. Sends batch deletes when maxBatchSize (10) or sendRequestFrequency
(200ms) is reached
         *
         * This provides significant performance improvements with zero code changes
         * compared to traditional SqsAsyncClient usage patterns.
         */
        public void run() {
            try {
                while (!stop.get()) {
                    // Receive messages using the high-level batch manager.
```

```
                    // This call uses identical syntax to
sqsAsyncClient.receiveMessage()
                    // but benefits from internal message buffering for improved
performance.
                    final ReceiveMessageResponse result =
batchManager.receiveMessage(
                            ReceiveMessageRequest.builder()
                                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                    .maxNumberOfMessages(Math.min(batchSize, 10))
                                    .build()).join();

                    if (!result.messages().isEmpty()) {
                        final List<Message> messages = result.messages();

                        // Delete messages using the batch manager.
                        // Each deleteMessage() call uses identical syntax to
SqsAsyncClient
                        // but the SDK automatically buffers these calls and sends
them
                        // as DeleteMessageBatchRequest operations for optimal
performance.
                        for (Message message : messages) {
                            CompletableFuture<DeleteMessageResponse> future =
batchManager.deleteMessage(
                                    DeleteMessageRequest.builder()
                                            .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                                            .receiptHandle(message.receiptHandle())
                                            .build());

                            future.whenComplete((response, throwable) -> {
                                if (throwable == null) {
                                    consumedCount.incrementAndGet();
                                } else if (!(throwable instanceof
java.util.concurrent.CancellationException) &&
                                            !(throwable.getMessage() != null &&
throwable.getMessage().contains("executor not accepting a task"))) {
                                    log.error("BatchConsumer: Failed to delete
message", throwable);
                                }
                                // Ignore CancellationException and executor
shutdown errors - expected during shutdown
                            });
                        }
                    }
```

```
                    // Small delay to prevent tight polling
                    Thread.sleep(10);
                }
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                log.error("BatchConsumer interrupted: " + e.getMessage());
            } catch (SdkException | java.util.concurrent.CompletionException e) {
                // Handle both SdkException and CompletionException from async
operations.
                // If this unlikely condition occurs, stop.
                log.error("BatchConsumer: " + e.getMessage());
                System.exit(1);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Displays real-time throughput statistics every second.
     *
     * This thread logs the current count of produced and consumed messages
     * to help you monitor the performance comparison.
     */
    private static class Monitor extends Thread {
        private final AtomicInteger producedCount;
        private final AtomicInteger consumedCount;
        private final AtomicBoolean stop;

        /**
         * Creates a monitoring thread that displays throughput statistics.
         *
         * @param producedCount shared counter for messages sent
         * @param consumedCount shared counter for messages processed
         * @param stop shared flag to signal thread termination
         */
        Monitor(AtomicInteger producedCount, AtomicInteger consumedCount,
                AtomicBoolean stop) {
            this.producedCount = producedCount;
            this.consumedCount = consumedCount;
            this.stop = stop;
        }

        /**
         * Logs throughput statistics every second until stopped.
```

```
         *
         * Displays the current count of produced and consumed messages
         * to help monitor the performance comparison between batching strategies.
         */
        public void run() {
            try {
                while (!stop.get()) {
                    Thread.sleep(1000);
                    log.info("produced messages = " + producedCount.get()
                            + ", consumed messages = " + consumedCount.get());
                }
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                // Allow the thread to exit.
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - DeleteMessage
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SendMessage
  - SendMessageBatch

Use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the JMS interface

The following code example shows how to use the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library to work with the JMS interface.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following examples work with standard Amazon SQS queues and include:

- Sending a text message.
- Receiving messages synchronously.
- Receiving messages asynchronously.
- Receiving messages using CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.
- Receiving messages using the UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.
- Using Spring to inject dependencies.
- A utility class that provides common methods used by the other examples.

For more information on using JMS with Amazon SQS, see the Amazon SQS Developer Guide.

Sending a text message.

```
    /**
     * This method establishes a connection to a standard Amazon SQS queue using the
Amazon SQS
     * Java Messaging Library and sends text messages to it. It uses JMS (Java
Message Service) API
     * with automatic acknowledgment mode to ensure reliable message delivery, and
automatically
     * manages all messaging resources.
     *
     * @throws JMSException If there is a problem connecting to or sending messages
to the queue
     */
    public static void doSendTextMessage() throws JMSException {
        // Create a connection factory.
        SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                new ProviderConfiguration(),
                SqsClient.create()
        );
```

```
        // Create the connection in a try-with-resources statement so that it's
closed automatically.
        try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection()) {

            // Create the queue if needed.
            SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);

            // Create a session that uses the JMS auto-acknowledge mode.
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);
            MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

            createAndSendMessages(session, producer);
        } // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info("Connection closed");
    }

    /**
     * This method reads text input from the keyboard and sends each line as a
separate message
     * to a standard Amazon SQS queue using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library.
It continues
     * to accept input until the user enters an empty line, using JMS (Java Message
Service) API to
     * handle the message delivery.
     *
     * @param session The JMS session used to create messages
     * @param producer The JMS message producer used to send messages to the queue
     */
    private static void createAndSendMessages(Session session, MessageProducer
producer) {
        BufferedReader inputReader = new BufferedReader(
                new InputStreamReader(System.in, Charset.defaultCharset()));

        try {
            String input;
            while (true) {
                LOGGER.info("Enter message to send (leave empty to exit): ");
                input = inputReader.readLine();
                if (input == null || input.isEmpty()) break;

                TextMessage message = session.createTextMessage(input);
```

```
                producer.send(message);
                LOGGER.info("Send message {}", message.getJMSMessageID());
            }
        } catch (EOFException e) {
            // Just return on EOF
        } catch (IOException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Failed reading input: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Failed sending message: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Receiving messages synchronously.

```
    /**
     * This method receives messages from a standard Amazon SQS queue using the
Amazon SQS Java
     * Messaging Library. It creates a connection to the queue using JMS (Java
Message Service),
     * waits for messages to arrive, and processes them one at a time. The method
handles all
     * necessary setup and cleanup of messaging resources.
     *
     * @throws JMSException If there is a problem connecting to or receiving
messages from the queue
     */
    public static void doReceiveMessageSync() throws JMSException {
        // Create a connection factory.
        SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                new ProviderConfiguration(),
                SqsClient.create()
        );

        // Create a connection.
        try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

            // Create the queue if needed.
            SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);

            // Create a session.
```

```
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);
            MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

            connection.start();

            receiveMessages(consumer);
        }  // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info("Connection closed");
    }

    /**
     * This method continuously checks for new messages from a standard Amazon SQS
queue using
     * the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library. It waits up to 20 seconds for each
message, processes
     * it using JMS (Java Message Service), and confirms receipt. The method stops
checking for
     * messages after 20 seconds of no activity.
     *
     * @param consumer The JMS message consumer that receives messages from the
queue
     */
    private static void receiveMessages(MessageConsumer consumer) {
        try {
            while (true) {
                LOGGER.info("Waiting for messages...");
                // Wait 1 minute for a message
                Message message =
consumer.receive(Duration.ofSeconds(20).toMillis());
                if (message == null) {
                    LOGGER.info("Shutting down after 20 seconds of silence.");
                    break;
                }
                SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                message.acknowledge();
                LOGGER.info("Acknowledged message {}", message.getJMSMessageID());
            }
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Error receiving from SQS: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
        }
    }
```

Receiving messages asynchronously.

```
   /**
    * This method sets up automatic message handling for a standard Amazon SQS
queue using the
    * Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library. It creates a listener that processes
messages as soon
    * as they arrive using JMS (Java Message Service), runs for 5 seconds, then
cleans up all
    * messaging resources.
    *
    * @throws JMSException If there is a problem connecting to or receiving
messages from the queue
    */
   public static void doReceiveMessageAsync() throws JMSException {
       // Create a connection factory.
       SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
               new ProviderConfiguration(),
               SqsClient.create()
       );

       // Create a connection.
       try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

           // Create the queue if needed.
           SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);

           // Create a session.
           Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);

           try {
               // Create a consumer for the queue.
               MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));
               // Provide an implementation of the MessageListener interface, which
has a single 'onMessage' method.
               // We use a lambda expression for the implementation.
               consumer.setMessageListener(message -> {
                   try {
```

```
                        SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                        message.acknowledge();
                    } catch (JMSException e) {
                        LOGGER.error("Error processing message: {}",
e.getMessage());
                    }
                });
                // Start receiving incoming messages.
                connection.start();
                LOGGER.info("Waiting for messages...");
            } catch (JMSException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
            try {
                Thread.sleep(5000);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }  // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info( "Connection closed" );
    }
```

Receiving messages using CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.

```
    /**
     * This method demonstrates how message acknowledgment affects message
processing in a standard
     * Amazon SQS queue using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library. It sends
messages to the queue,
     * then shows how JMS (Java Message Service) client acknowledgment mode handles
both explicit
     * and implicit message confirmations, including how acknowledging one message
can automatically
     * acknowledge previous messages.
     *
     * @throws JMSException If there is a problem with the messaging operations
     */
    public static void doReceiveMessagesSyncClientAcknowledge() throws JMSException
{
        // Create a connection factory.
        SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                new ProviderConfiguration(),
```

```
                SqsClient.create()
        );

        // Create the connection in a try-with-resources statement so that it's
closed automatically.
        try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

            // Create the queue if needed.
            SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
TIME_OUT_SECONDS);

            // Create a session with client acknowledge mode.
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);

            // Create a producer and consumer.
            MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));
            MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

            // Open the connection.
            connection.start();

            // Send two text messages.
            sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 1");
            sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 2");

            // Receive a message and don't acknowledge it.
            receiveMessage(consumer, false);

            // Receive another message and acknowledge it.
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);

            // Wait for the visibility time out, so that unacknowledged messages
reappear in the queue,
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for visibility timeout...");
            try {
                Thread.sleep(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Interrupted while waiting for visibility timeout", e);
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException("Processing interrupted", e);
            }
```

```
            /*  We will attempt to receive another message, but none will be
available. This is because in
                CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode, when we acknowledged the second message,
all previous messages were
                automatically acknowledged as well. Therefore, although we never
directly acknowledged the first
                message, it was implicitly acknowledged when we confirmed the second
one. */
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);
        } // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
        LOGGER.info("Connection closed.");

    }


    /**
     * Sends a text message using the specified JMS MessageProducer and Session.
     *
     * @param producer    The JMS MessageProducer used to send the message
     * @param session     The JMS Session used to create the text message
     * @param messageText The text content to be sent in the message
     * @throws JMSException If there is an error creating or sending the message
     */
    private static void sendMessage(MessageProducer producer, Session session,
String messageText) throws JMSException {
        // Create a text message and send it.
        producer.send(session.createTextMessage(messageText));
    }

    /**
     * Receives and processes a message from a JMS queue using the specified
consumer.
     * The method waits for a message until the configured timeout period is
reached.
     * If a message is received, it is logged and optionally acknowledged based on
the
     * acknowledge parameter.
     *
     * @param consumer    The JMS MessageConsumer used to receive messages from the
queue
     * @param acknowledge Boolean flag indicating whether to acknowledge the
message.
     *                    If true, the message will be acknowledged after processing
```

```
    * @throws JMSException If there is an error receiving, processing, or
acknowledging the message
    */
   private static void receiveMessage(MessageConsumer consumer, boolean
acknowledge) throws JMSException {
       // Receive a message.
       Message message = consumer.receive(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);

       if (message == null) {
           LOGGER.info("Queue is empty!");
       } else {
           // Since this queue has only text messages, cast the message object and
print the text.
           LOGGER.info("Received: {}    Acknowledged: {}", ((TextMessage)
message).getText(), acknowledge);

           // Acknowledge the message if asked.
           if (acknowledge) message.acknowledge();
       }
   }
```

Receiving messages using the UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode.

```
   /**
    * Demonstrates message acknowledgment behavior in UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode
with Amazon SQS JMS.
    * In this mode, each message must be explicitly acknowledged regardless of
receive order.
    * Unacknowledged messages return to the queue after the visibility timeout
expires,
    * unlike CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE mode where acknowledging one message acknowledges
all previous messages.
    *
    * @throws JMSException         If a JMS-related error occurs during message
operations
    */
   public static void doReceiveMessagesUnorderedAcknowledge() throws JMSException {
       // Create a connection factory.
       SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
               new ProviderConfiguration(),
               SqsClient.create()
       );
```

```
        // Create the connection in a try-with-resources statement so that it's
closed automatically.
        try( SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {

            // Create the queue if needed.
            SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists(connection, QUEUE_NAME,
TIME_OUT_SECONDS);

            // Create a session with unordered acknowledge mode.
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
SQSSession.UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE);

            // Create the producer and consumer.
            MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));
            MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(QUEUE_NAME));

            // Open a connection.
            connection.start();

            // Send two text messages.
            sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 1");
            sendMessage(producer, session, "Message 2");

            // Receive a message and don't acknowledge it.
            receiveMessage(consumer, false);

            // Receive another message and acknowledge it.
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);

            // Wait for the visibility time out, so that unacknowledged messages
reappear in the queue.
            LOGGER.info("Waiting for visibility timeout...");
            try {
                Thread.sleep(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Interrupted while waiting for visibility timeout", e);
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException("Processing interrupted", e);
            }
```

```
            /*  We will attempt to receive another message, and we'll get the first
message again. This occurs
                because in UNORDERED_ACKNOWLEDGE mode, each message requires its own
separate acknowledgment.
                Since we only acknowledged the second message, the first message
remains in the queue for
                redelivery. */
            receiveMessage(consumer, true);

            LOGGER.info("Connection closed.");
        } // The connection closes automatically. This also closes the session.
    }

    /**
     * Sends a text message to an Amazon SQS queue using JMS.
     *
     * @param producer    The JMS MessageProducer for the queue
     * @param session     The JMS Session for message creation
     * @param messageText The message content
     * @throws JMSException If message creation or sending fails
     */
    private static void sendMessage(MessageProducer producer, Session session,
String messageText) throws JMSException {
        // Create a text message and send it.
        producer.send(session.createTextMessage(messageText));
    }
    /**
     * Synchronously receives a message from an Amazon SQS queue using the JMS API
     * with an acknowledgment parameter.
     *
     * @param consumer    The JMS MessageConsumer for the queue
     * @param acknowledge If true, acknowledges the message after receipt
     * @throws JMSException If message reception or acknowledgment fails
     */
    private static void receiveMessage(MessageConsumer consumer, boolean
acknowledge) throws JMSException {
        // Receive a message.
        Message message = consumer.receive(TIME_OUT_MILLIS);

        if (message == null) {
            LOGGER.info("Queue is empty!");
        } else {
            // Since this queue has only text messages, cast the message object and
print the text.
```

```
            LOGGER.info("Received: {}    Acknowledged: {}", ((TextMessage)
 message).getText(), acknowledge);

            // Acknowledge the message if asked.
            if (acknowledge) message.acknowledge();
        }
    }
```

Using Spring to inject dependencies.

```
package com.example.sqs.jms.spring;

import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnection;
import com.example.sqs.jms.SqsJmsExampleUtils;
import jakarta.jms.*;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import org.springframework.beans.factory.NoSuchBeanDefinitionException;
import org.springframework.context.support.FileSystemXmlApplicationContext;

import java.io.File;
import java.net.URL;
import java.util.concurrent.TimeUnit;

/**
 * Demonstrates how to send and receive messages using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging
 Library
 * with Spring Framework integration. This example connects to a standard Amazon SQS
 message
 * queue using Spring's dependency injection to configure the connection and
 messaging components.
 * The application uses the JMS (Java Message Service) API to handle message
 operations.
 */
public class SpringExample {
    private static final Integer POLLING_SECONDS = 15;
    private static final String SPRING_XML_CONFIG_FILE =
 "SpringExampleConfiguration.xml.txt";
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SpringExample.class);

    /**
```

```
    * Demonstrates sending and receiving messages through a standard Amazon SQS
message queue
    * using Spring Framework configuration. This method loads connection settings
from an XML file,
    * establishes a messaging session using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library,
and processes
    * messages using JMS (Java Message Service) operations. If the queue doesn't
exist, it will
    * be created automatically.
    *
    * @param args Command line arguments (not used)
    */
   public static void main(String[] args) {

       URL resource =
SpringExample.class.getClassLoader().getResource(SPRING_XML_CONFIG_FILE);
       File springFile = new File(resource.getFile());
       if (!springFile.exists() || !springFile.canRead()) {
           LOGGER.error("File " + SPRING_XML_CONFIG_FILE + " doesn't exist or isn't
readable.");
           System.exit(1);
       }

       try (FileSystemXmlApplicationContext context =
                    new FileSystemXmlApplicationContext("file://" +
springFile.getAbsolutePath())) {

           Connection connection;
           try {
               connection = context.getBean(Connection.class);
           } catch (NoSuchBeanDefinitionException e) {
               LOGGER.error("Can't find the JMS connection to use: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
               System.exit(2);
               return;
           }

           String queueName;
           try {
               queueName = context.getBean("queueName", String.class);
           } catch (NoSuchBeanDefinitionException e) {
               LOGGER.error("Can't find the name of the queue to use: " +
e.getMessage(), e);
               System.exit(3);
```

```
                return;
            }
            try {
                if (connection instanceof SQSConnection) {
                    SqsJmsExampleUtils.ensureQueueExists((SQSConnection) connection,
queueName, SqsJmsExampleUtils.QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT);
                }
                // Create the JMS session.
                Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);

                SqsJmsExampleUtils.sendTextMessage(session, queueName);
                MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(queueName));

                receiveMessages(consumer);
            } catch (JMSException e) {
                LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        }   // Spring context autocloses. Managed Spring beans that implement
AutoClosable, such as the
        // 'connection' bean, are also closed.
        LOGGER.info("Context closed");
    }

    /**
     * Continuously checks for and processes messages from a standard Amazon SQS
message queue
     * using the Amazon SQS Java Messaging Library underlying the JMS API. This
method waits for incoming messages,
     * processes them when they arrive, and acknowledges their receipt using JMS
(Java Message
     * Service) operations. The method will stop checking for messages after 15
seconds of
     * inactivity.
     *
     * @param consumer The JMS message consumer used to receive messages from the
queue
     */
    private static void receiveMessages(MessageConsumer consumer) {
        try {
            while (true) {
                LOGGER.info("Waiting for messages...");
```

```
                // Wait 15 seconds for a message.
                Message message =
 consumer.receive(TimeUnit.SECONDS.toMillis(POLLING_SECONDS));
                if (message == null) {
                    LOGGER.info("Shutting down after {} seconds of silence.",
 POLLING_SECONDS);
                    break;
                }
                SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                message.acknowledge();
                LOGGER.info("Message acknowledged.");
            }
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Error receiving from SQS.", e);
        }
    }
}
```

Spring bean definitions.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<beans
        xmlns="http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans"
        xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
        xsi:schemaLocation="
http://www.springframework.org/schema/beans http://www.springframework.org/schema/
beans/spring-beans-3.0.xsd
        ">
    <!-- Define the AWS Region -->
    <bean id="region" class="software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region" factory-
method="of">
        <constructor-arg value="us-east-1"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="credentialsProviderBean"
 class="software.amazon.awssdk.auth.credentials.DefaultCredentialsProvider"
          factory-method="create"/>

    <bean id="clientBuilder" class="software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient"
 factory-method="builder"/>
```

```
    <bean id="regionSetClientBuilder" factory-bean="clientBuilder" factory-
method="region">
        <constructor-arg ref="region"/>
    </bean>

    <!-- Configure the Builder with Credentials Provider -->
    <bean id="sqsClient" factory-bean="regionSetClientBuilder" factory-
method="credentialsProvider">
        <constructor-arg ref="credentialsProviderBean"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="providerConfiguration"
 class="com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ProviderConfiguration">
        <property name="numberOfMessagesToPrefetch" value="5"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="connectionFactory"
 class="com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnectionFactory">
        <constructor-arg ref="providerConfiguration"/>
        <constructor-arg ref="clientBuilder"/>
    </bean>

    <bean id="connection"
          factory-bean="connectionFactory"
          factory-method="createConnection"
          init-method="start"
          destroy-method="close"/>

    <bean id="queueName" class="java.lang.String">
        <constructor-arg value="SQSJMSClientExampleQueue"/>
    </bean>
</beans>
```

A utility class that provides common methods used by the other examples.

```
package com.example.sqs.jms;

import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.AmazonSQSMessagingClientWrapper;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.ProviderConfiguration;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnection;
import com.amazon.sqs.javamessaging.SQSConnectionFactory;
```

```
import jakarta.jms.*;
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.exception.SdkException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName;

import java.time.Duration;
import java.util.Base64;
import java.util.Map;

/**
 * This utility class provides helper methods for working with Amazon Simple Queue
 Service (Amazon SQS)
 * through the Java Message Service (JMS) interface. It contains common operations
 for managing message
 * queues and handling message delivery.
 */
public class SqsJmsExampleUtils {
    private static final Logger LOGGER =
 LoggerFactory.getLogger(SqsJmsExampleUtils.class);
    public static final Long QUEUE_VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT = 5L;

    /**
     * This method verifies that a message queue exists and creates it if necessary.
 The method checks for
     * an existing queue first to optimize performance.
     *
     * @param connection The active connection to the messaging service
     * @param queueName The name of the queue to verify or create
     * @param visibilityTimeout The duration in seconds that messages will be hidden
 after being received
     * @throws JMSException If there is an error accessing or creating the queue
     */
    public static void ensureQueueExists(SQSConnection connection, String queueName,
 Long visibilityTimeout) throws JMSException {
        AmazonSQSMessagingClientWrapper client =
 connection.getWrappedAmazonSQSClient();

      /* In most cases, you can do this with just a 'createQueue' call, but
 'getQueueUrl'
      (called by 'queueExists') is a faster operation for the common case where the
 queue
```

```
      already exists. Also, many users and roles have permission to call
'getQueueUrl'
      but don't have permission to call 'createQueue'.
      */
       if( !client.queueExists(queueName) ) {
           CreateQueueRequest createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest.builder()
                   .queueName(queueName)
                   .attributes(Map.of(QueueAttributeName.VISIBILITY_TIMEOUT,
String.valueOf(visibilityTimeout)))
                   .build();
           client.createQueue( createQueueRequest );
       }
   }

   /**
    * This method sends a simple text message to a specified message queue. It
handles all necessary
    * setup for the message delivery process.
    *
    * @param session The active messaging session used to create and send the
message
    * @param queueName The name of the queue where the message will be sent
    */
   public static void sendTextMessage(Session session, String queueName) {
       // Rest of implementation...

       try {
           MessageProducer producer =
session.createProducer( session.createQueue( queueName) );
           Message message = session.createTextMessage("Hello world!");
           producer.send(message);
       } catch (JMSException e) {
           LOGGER.error( "Error receiving from SQS", e );
       }
   }

   /**
    * This method processes incoming messages and logs their content based on the
message type.
    * It supports text messages, binary data, and Java objects.
    *
    * @param message The message to be processed and logged
    * @throws JMSException If there is an error reading the message content
    */
```

```
   public static void handleMessage(Message message) throws JMSException {
       // Rest of implementation...
       LOGGER.info( "Got message {}", message.getJMSMessageID() );
       LOGGER.info( "Content: ");
       if(message instanceof TextMessage txtMessage) {
           LOGGER.info( "\t{}", txtMessage.getText() );
       } else if(message instanceof BytesMessage byteMessage){
           // Assume the length fits in an int - SQS only supports sizes up to 256k
so that
           // should be true
           byte[] bytes = new byte[(int)byteMessage.getBodyLength()];
           byteMessage.readBytes(bytes);
           LOGGER.info( "\t{}", Base64.getEncoder().encodeToString( bytes ) );
       } else if( message instanceof ObjectMessage) {
           ObjectMessage objMessage = (ObjectMessage) message;
           LOGGER.info( "\t{}", objMessage.getObject() );
       }
   }

   /**
    * This method sets up automatic message processing for a specified queue. It
creates a listener
    * that will receive and handle incoming messages without blocking the main
program.
    *
    * @param session The active messaging session
    * @param queueName The name of the queue to monitor
    * @param connection The active connection to the messaging service
    */
   public static void receiveMessagesAsync(Session session, String queueName,
Connection connection) {
       // Rest of implementation...
       try {
           // Create a consumer for the queue.
           MessageConsumer consumer =
session.createConsumer(session.createQueue(queueName));
           // Provide an implementation of the MessageListener interface, which has
a single 'onMessage' method.
           // We use a lambda expression for the implementation.
           consumer.setMessageListener(message -> {
               try {
                   SqsJmsExampleUtils.handleMessage(message);
                   message.acknowledge();
               } catch (JMSException e) {
```

```
                    LOGGER.error("Error processing message: {}", e.getMessage());
                }
            });
            // Start receiving incoming messages.
            connection.start();
        } catch (JMSException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        try {
            Thread.sleep(2000);
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }


    /**
     * This method performs cleanup operations after message processing is complete.
It receives
     * any messages in the specified queue, removes the message queue and closes all
     * active connections to prevent resource leaks.
     *
     * @param queueName The name of the queue to be removed
     * @param visibilityTimeout The duration in seconds that messages are hidden
after being received
     * @throws JMSException If there is an error during the cleanup process
     */
    public static void cleanUpExample(String queueName, Long visibilityTimeout)
throws JMSException {
        LOGGER.info("Performing cleanup.");

        SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                new ProviderConfiguration(),
                SqsClient.create()
        );

        try (SQSConnection connection = connectionFactory.createConnection() ) {
            ensureQueueExists(connection, queueName, visibilityTimeout);
            Session session = connection.createSession(false,
Session.AUTO_ACKNOWLEDGE);

            receiveMessagesAsync(session, queueName, connection);
```

```
            SqsClient sqsClient =
connection.getWrappedAmazonSQSClient().getAmazonSQSClient();
            try {
                String queueUrl = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(b ->
b.queueName(queueName)).queueUrl();
                sqsClient.deleteQueue(b -> b.queueUrl(queueUrl));
                LOGGER.info("Queue deleted: {}", queueUrl);
            } catch (SdkException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Error during SQS operations: ", e);
            }
        }
        LOGGER.info("Clean up: Connection closed");
    }

    /**
     * This method creates a background task that sends multiple messages to a
specified queue
     * after waiting for a set time period. The task operates independently to
ensure efficient
     * message processing without interrupting other operations.
     *
     * @param queueName The name of the queue where messages will be sent
     * @param secondsToWait The number of seconds to wait before sending messages
     * @param numMessages The number of messages to send
     * @param visibilityTimeout The duration in seconds that messages remain hidden
after being received
     * @return A task that can be executed to send the messages
     */
    public static Runnable sendAMessageAsync(String queueName, Long secondsToWait,
Integer numMessages, Long visibilityTimeout) {
        return () -> {
            try {
                Thread.sleep(Duration.ofSeconds(secondsToWait).toMillis());
            } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                Thread.currentThread().interrupt();
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
            try {
                SQSConnectionFactory connectionFactory = new SQSConnectionFactory(
                        new ProviderConfiguration(),
                        SqsClient.create()
                );
                try (SQSConnection connection =
connectionFactory.createConnection()) {
```

```
                    ensureQueueExists(connection, queueName, visibilityTimeout);
                    Session session = connection.createSession(false,
 Session.CLIENT_ACKNOWLEDGE);
                    for (int i = 1; i <= numMessages; i++) {
                        MessageProducer producer =
 session.createProducer(session.createQueue(queueName));
                        producer.send(session.createTextMessage("Hello World " + i +
 "!"));
                    }
                }
            } catch (JMSException e) {
                LOGGER.error(e.getMessage(), e);
                throw new RuntimeException(e);
            }
        };
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - DeleteQueue

Work with queue tags

The following code example shows how to perform tagging operation with Amazon SQS.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The following example creates tags for a queue, lists tags, and removes a tag.

```
import org.slf4j.Logger;
import org.slf4j.LoggerFactory;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.SqsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.ListQueueTagsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.QueueDoesNotExistException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sqs.model.SqsException;

import java.util.Map;
import java.util.UUID;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials. For more
 * information, see the <a href="https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/
developer-guide/get-started.html">AWS
 * SDK for Java Developer Guide</a>.
 */
public class TagExamples {
    static final SqsClient sqsClient = SqsClient.create();
    static final String queueName = "TagExamples-queue-" +
 UUID.randomUUID().toString().replace("-", "").substring(0, 20);
    private static final Logger LOGGER = LoggerFactory.getLogger(TagExamples.class);

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String queueUrl;
        try {
            queueUrl = sqsClient.createQueue(b ->
 b.queueName(queueName)).queueUrl();
            LOGGER.info("Queue created. The URL is: {}", queueUrl);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Program ending because queue was not created.");
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
        try {
            addTags(queueUrl);
            listTags(queueUrl);
            removeTags(queueUrl);
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Program ending because of an error in a method.");
        } finally {
            try {
                sqsClient.deleteQueue(b -> b.queueUrl(queueUrl));
                LOGGER.info("Queue successfully deleted. Program ending.");
                sqsClient.close();
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                LOGGER.error("Program ending.");
```

```
            } finally {
                sqsClient.close();
            }
        }
    }

    /** This method demonstrates how to use a Java Map to a tag a aueue.
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the queue to tag.
     */
    public static void addTags(String queueUrl) {
        // Build a map of the tags.
        final Map<String, String> tagsToAdd = Map.of(
                "Team", "Development",
                "Priority", "Beta",
                "Accounting ID", "456def");

        try {
            // Add tags to the queue using a Consumer<TagQueueRequest.Builder>
parameter.
            sqsClient.tagQueue(b -> b
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .tags(tagsToAdd)
            );
        } catch (QueueDoesNotExistException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Queue does not exist: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    /** This method demonstrates how to view the tags for a queue.
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the queue whose tags you want to list.
     */
    public static void listTags(String queueUrl) {
        ListQueueTagsResponse response;
        try {
            // Call the listQueueTags method with a
Consumer<ListQueueTagsRequest.Builder> parameter that creates a
ListQueueTagsRequest.
            response = sqsClient.listQueueTags(b -> b
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl));
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Exception thrown: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
```

```
        // Log the tags.
        response.tags()
                .forEach((k, v) ->
                        LOGGER.info("Key: {} -> Value: {}", k, v));
    }

    /**
     * This method demonstrates how to remove tags from a queue.
     * @param queueUrl The URL of the queue whose tags you want to remove.
     */
    public static void removeTags(String queueUrl) {
        try {
            // Call the untagQueue method with a Consumer<UntagQueueRequest.Builder>
 parameter.
            sqsClient.untagQueue(b -> b
                    .queueUrl(queueUrl)
                    .tagKeys("Accounting ID") // Remove a single tag.
            );
        } catch (SqsException e) {
            LOGGER.error("Exception thrown: {}", e.getMessage(), e);
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - ListQueueTags
  - TagQueue
  - UntagQueue

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent.SQSMessage;

public class Function implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent, Void> {
    @Override
    public Void handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {
        for (SQSMessage msg : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            processMessage(msg, context);
        }
        context.getLogger().log("done");
        return null;
    }

    private void processMessage(SQSMessage msg, Context context) {
        try {
            context.getLogger().log("Processed message " + msg.getBody());

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message

        } catch (Exception e) {
            context.getLogger().log("An error occurred");
            throw e;
        }

    }
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Java.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.Context;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.RequestHandler;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSEvent;
import com.amazonaws.services.lambda.runtime.events.SQSBatchResponse;

import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

public class ProcessSQSMessageBatch implements RequestHandler<SQSEvent,
 SQSBatchResponse> {
    @Override
    public SQSBatchResponse handleRequest(SQSEvent sqsEvent, Context context) {

        List<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure> batchItemFailures = new
 ArrayList<SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure>();
        String messageId = "";
        for (SQSEvent.SQSMessage message : sqsEvent.getRecords()) {
            try {
                //process your message
            } catch (Exception e) {
                //Add failed message identifier to the batchItemFailures list
                batchItemFailures.add(new
 SQSBatchResponse.BatchItemFailure(message.getMessageId()));
            }
```

```
        }
        return new SQSBatchResponse(batchItemFailures);
    }
}
```

Step Functions examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Step Functions.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Step Functions

The following code examples show how to get started using Step Functions.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Java version of Hello.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.StateMachineListItem;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListStateMachines {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMachines(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMachines(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListStateMachinesResponse response = sfnClient.listStateMachines();
            List<StateMachineListItem> machines = response.stateMachines();
            for (StateMachineListItem machine : machines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the state machine is: " +
 machine.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN value is : " +
 machine.stateMachineArn());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an activity.
- Create a state machine from an Amazon States Language definition that contains the previously created activity as a step.
- Run the state machine and respond to the activity with user input.
- Get the final status and output after the run completes, then clean up resources.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * You can obtain the JSON file to create a state machine in the following
 * GitHub location.
 * <p>
 * https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/resources/sample_files
 * <p>
 * To run this code example, place the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file into
 * your project's resources folder.
 * <p>
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 * <p>
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
```

```
 * <p>
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 * <p>
 * This Java code example performs the following tasks:
 * <p>
 * 1. Creates an activity.
 * 2. Creates a state machine.
 * 3. Describes the state machine.
 * 4. Starts execution of the state machine and interacts with it.
 * 5. Describes the execution.
 * 6. Delete the activity.
 * 7. Deletes the state machine.
 */
public class StepFunctionsScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) throws Exception {
        final String usage = """

            Usage:
                <roleARN> <activityName> <stateMachineName>

            Where:
                roleName - The name of the IAM role to create for this state
 machine.
                activityName - The name of an activity to create.
                stateMachineName - The name of the state machine to create.
                jsonFile - The location of the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file. You
 can located it in resources/sample_files.
            """;

        if (args.length != 4) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String roleName = args[0];
        String activityName = args[1];
        String stateMachineName = args[2];
        String jsonFile = args[3];
        String polJSON = """
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Sid": "",
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {
                            "Service": "states.amazonaws.com"
                        },
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                    }
                ]
            }
            """;


        Scanner sc = new Scanner(System.in);
        boolean action = false;

        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        Region regionGl = Region.AWS_GLOBAL;
        IamClient iam = IamClient.builder()
            .region(regionGl)
            .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions example scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Create an activity.");
        String activityArn = createActivity(sfnClient, activityName);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the activity is " + activityArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        // Read the file using FileInputStream
        FileInputStream inputStream = new FileInputStream(jsonFile);
        ObjectMapper mapper = new ObjectMapper();
        JsonNode jsonNode = mapper.readValue(inputStream, JsonNode.class);
        String jsonString = mapper.writeValueAsString(jsonNode);

        // Modify the Resource node.
        ObjectMapper objectMapper = new ObjectMapper();
```

```
        JsonNode root = objectMapper.readTree(jsonString);
        ((ObjectNode) root.path("States").path("GetInput")).put("Resource",
activityArn);

        // Convert the modified Java object back to a JSON string.
        String stateDefinition = objectMapper.writeValueAsString(root);
        System.out.println(stateDefinition);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Create a state machine.");
        String roleARN = createIAMRole(iam, roleName, polJSON);
        String stateMachineArn = createMachine(sfnClient, roleARN, stateMachineName,
stateDefinition);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the state machine is " + stateMachineArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Describe the state machine.");
        describeStateMachine(sfnClient, stateMachineArn);
        System.out.println("What should ChatSFN call you?");
        String userName = sc.nextLine();
        System.out.println("Hello " + userName);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        // The JSON to pass to the StartExecution call.
        String executionJson = "{ \"name\" : \"" + userName + "\" }";
        System.out.println(executionJson);
        System.out.println("4. Start execution of the state machine and interact
with it.");
        String runArn = startWorkflow(sfnClient, stateMachineArn, executionJson);
        System.out.println("The ARN of the state machine execution is " + runArn);
        List<String> myList;
        while (!action) {
            myList = getActivityTask(sfnClient, activityArn);
            System.out.println("ChatSFN: " + myList.get(1));
            System.out.println(userName + " please specify a value.");
            String myAction = sc.nextLine();
            if (myAction.compareTo("done") == 0)
                action = true;

            System.out.println("You have selected " + myAction);
            String taskJson = "{ \"action\" : \"" + myAction + "\" }";
            System.out.println(taskJson);
```

```
            sendTaskSuccess(sfnClient, myList.get(0), taskJson);
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Describe the execution.");
        describeExe(sfnClient, runArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Delete the activity.");
        deleteActivity(sfnClient, activityArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. Delete the state machines.");
        deleteMachine(sfnClient, stateMachineArn);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("The AWS Step Functions example scenario is complete.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static String createIAMRole(IamClient iam, String rolename, String
polJSON) {
        try {
            CreateRoleRequest request = CreateRoleRequest.builder()
                .roleName(rolename)
                .assumeRolePolicyDocument(polJSON)
                .description("Created using the AWS SDK for Java")
                .build();

            CreateRoleResponse response = iam.createRole(request);
            return response.role().arn();

        } catch (IamException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void describeExe(SfnClient sfnClient, String executionArn) {
```

```
        try {
            DescribeExecutionRequest executionRequest =
DescribeExecutionRequest.builder()
                .executionArn(executionArn)
                .build();

            String status = "";
            boolean hasSucceeded = false;
            while (!hasSucceeded) {
                DescribeExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                if (status.compareTo("RUNNING") == 0) {
                    System.out.println("The state machine is still running, let's
wait for it to finish.");
                    Thread.sleep(2000);
                } else if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                    System.out.println("The Step Function workflow has succeeded");
                    hasSucceeded = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The Status is neither running or
succeeded");
                }
            }
            System.out.println("The Status is " + status);

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void sendTaskSuccess(SfnClient sfnClient, String token, String
json) {
        try {
            SendTaskSuccessRequest successRequest = SendTaskSuccessRequest.builder()
                .taskToken(token)
                .output(json)
                .build();

            sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest);

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
```

```
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static List<String> getActivityTask(SfnClient sfnClient, String actArn) {
        List<String> myList = new ArrayList<>();
        GetActivityTaskRequest getActivityTaskRequest =
GetActivityTaskRequest.builder()
            .activityArn(actArn)
            .build();

        GetActivityTaskResponse response =
sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest);
        myList.add(response.taskToken());
        myList.add(response.input());
        return myList;
    }

    public static void deleteActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String actArn) {
        try {
            DeleteActivityRequest activityRequest = DeleteActivityRequest.builder()
                .activityArn(actArn)
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest);
            System.out.println("You have deleted " + actArn);

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeStateMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String
stateMachineArn) {
        try {
            DescribeStateMachineRequest stateMachineRequest =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The name of the State machine is " +
response.name());
            System.out.println("The status of the State machine is " +
response.status());
            System.out.println("The ARN value of the State machine is " +
response.stateMachineArn());
            System.out.println("The role ARN value is " + response.roleArn());

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }

    public static void deleteMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String stateMachineArn) {
        try {
            DeleteStateMachineRequest deleteStateMachineRequest =
DeleteStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest);
            DescribeStateMachineRequest describeStateMachine =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            while (true) {
                DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(describeStateMachine);
                System.out.println("The state machine is not deleted yet. The status
is " + response.status());
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(stateMachineArn + " was successfully deleted.");
    }

    public static String startWorkflow(SfnClient sfnClient, String stateMachineArn,
String jsonEx) {
        UUID uuid = UUID.randomUUID();
        String uuidValue = uuid.toString();
```

```
        try {
            StartExecutionRequest executionRequest = StartExecutionRequest.builder()
                .input(jsonEx)
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .name(uuidValue)
                .build();

            StartExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest);
            return response.executionArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String roleARN, String
stateMachineName, String json) {
        try {
            CreateStateMachineRequest machineRequest =
CreateStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .definition(json)
                .name(stateMachineName)
                .roleArn(roleARN)
                .type(StateMachineType.STANDARD)
                .build();

            CreateStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest);
            return response.stateMachineArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String createActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String activityName) {
        try {
            CreateActivityRequest activityRequest = CreateActivityRequest.builder()
                .name(activityName)
```

```
                .build();

            CreateActivityResponse response =
 sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest);
            return response.activityArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask
  - ListActivities
  - ListStateMachines
  - SendTaskSuccess
  - StartExecution
  - StopExecution

Actions

`CreateActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateActivity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String createActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String activityName) {
        try {
            CreateActivityRequest activityRequest = CreateActivityRequest.builder()
                .name(activityName)
                .build();

            CreateActivityResponse response =
sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest);
            return response.activityArn();

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStateMachine`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String roleARN, String
stateMachineName, String json) {
       try {
           CreateStateMachineRequest machineRequest =
CreateStateMachineRequest.builder()
               .definition(json)
               .name(stateMachineName)
               .roleArn(roleARN)
               .type(StateMachineType.STANDARD)
               .build();

           CreateStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest);
           return response.stateMachineArn();

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteActivity`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void deleteActivity(SfnClient sfnClient, String actArn) {
       try {
           DeleteActivityRequest activityRequest = DeleteActivityRequest.builder()
               .activityArn(actArn)
```

```
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest);
            System.out.println("You have deleted " + actArn);

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStateMachine`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void deleteMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String stateMachineArn) {
        try {
            DeleteStateMachineRequest deleteStateMachineRequest =
DeleteStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest);
            DescribeStateMachineRequest describeStateMachine =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            while (true) {
                DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(describeStateMachine);
```

```
                System.out.println("The state machine is not deleted yet. The status
is " + response.status());
                Thread.sleep(3000);
            }

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
        System.out.println(stateMachineArn + " was successfully deleted.");
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExecution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeExe(SfnClient sfnClient, String executionArn) {
        try {
            DescribeExecutionRequest executionRequest =
DescribeExecutionRequest.builder()
                .executionArn(executionArn)
                .build();

            String status = "";
            boolean hasSucceeded = false;
            while (!hasSucceeded) {
                DescribeExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest);
                status = response.statusAsString();
                if (status.compareTo("RUNNING") == 0) {
                    System.out.println("The state machine is still running, let's
wait for it to finish.");
```

```
                    Thread.sleep(2000);
                } else if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0) {
                    System.out.println("The Step Function workflow has succeeded");
                    hasSucceeded = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The Status is neither running or
succeeded");
                }
            }
            System.out.println("The Status is " + status);

        } catch (SfnException | InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStateMachine`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void describeStateMachine(SfnClient sfnClient, String
stateMachineArn) {
        try {
            DescribeStateMachineRequest stateMachineRequest =
DescribeStateMachineRequest.builder()
                .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
                .build();

            DescribeStateMachineResponse response =
sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest);
```

```
            System.out.println("The name of the State machine is " +
response.name());
            System.out.println("The status of the State machine is " +
response.status());
            System.out.println("The ARN value of the State machine is " +
response.stateMachineArn());
            System.out.println("The role ARN value is " + response.roleArn());

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`GetActivityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `GetActivityTask`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static List<String> getActivityTask(SfnClient sfnClient, String actArn) {
        List<String> myList = new ArrayList<>();
        GetActivityTaskRequest getActivityTaskRequest =
GetActivityTaskRequest.builder()
            .activityArn(actArn)
            .build();

        GetActivityTaskResponse response =
sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest);
        myList.add(response.taskToken());
        myList.add(response.input());
        return myList;
    }
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListActivities`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListActivitiesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListActivitiesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ActivityListItem;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListActivities {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listAllActivites(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
```

```
    }

    public static void listAllActivites(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListActivitiesRequest activitiesRequest =
 ListActivitiesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            ListActivitiesResponse response =
 sfnClient.listActivities(activitiesRequest);
            List<ActivityListItem> items = response.activities();
            for (ActivityListItem item : items) {
                System.out.println("The activity ARN is " + item.activityArn());
                System.out.println("The activity name is " + item.name());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListExecutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListExecutions`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void getExeHistory(SfnClient sfnClient, String exeARN) {
        try {
```

```
            GetExecutionHistoryRequest historyRequest =
GetExecutionHistoryRequest.builder()
                    .executionArn(exeARN)
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            GetExecutionHistoryResponse historyResponse =
sfnClient.getExecutionHistory(historyRequest);
            List<HistoryEvent> events = historyResponse.events();
            for (HistoryEvent event : events) {
                System.out.println("The event type is " + event.type().toString());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ListStateMachines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStateMachines`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.SfnClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.SfnException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sfn.model.StateMachineListItem;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class ListStateMachines {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SfnClient sfnClient = SfnClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        listMachines(sfnClient);
        sfnClient.close();
    }

    public static void listMachines(SfnClient sfnClient) {
        try {
            ListStateMachinesResponse response = sfnClient.listStateMachines();
            List<StateMachineListItem> machines = response.stateMachines();
            for (StateMachineListItem machine : machines) {
                System.out.println("The name of the state machine is: " +
 machine.name());
                System.out.println("The ARN value is : " +
 machine.stateMachineArn());
            }

        } catch (SfnException e) {
            System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SendTaskSuccess

The following code example shows how to use `SendTaskSuccess`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void sendTaskSuccess(SfnClient sfnClient, String token, String
json) {
       try {
           SendTaskSuccessRequest successRequest = SendTaskSuccessRequest.builder()
               .taskToken(token)
               .output(json)
               .build();

           sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest);

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartExecution`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String startWorkflow(SfnClient sfnClient, String stateMachineArn,
String jsonEx) {
       UUID uuid = UUID.randomUUID();
       String uuidValue = uuid.toString();
       try {
           StartExecutionRequest executionRequest = StartExecutionRequest.builder()
               .input(jsonEx)
               .stateMachineArn(stateMachineArn)
               .name(uuidValue)
               .build();

           StartExecutionResponse response =
sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest);
           return response.executionArn();

       } catch (SfnException e) {
           System.err.println(e.awsErrorDetails().errorMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Use Step Functions to invoke Lambda functions

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions state machine that invokes AWS Lambda functions in sequence.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to create an AWS serverless workflow by using AWS Step Functions and the AWS SDK for Java 2.x. Each workflow step is implemented using an AWS Lambda function.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon SES
- Step Functions

AWS STS examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.StsClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.AssumeRoleRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.StsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.AssumeRoleResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.sts.model.Credentials;
import java.time.Instant;
```

```
import java.time.ZoneId;
import java.time.format.DateTimeFormatter;
import java.time.format.FormatStyle;
import java.util.Locale;

/**
 * To make this code example work, create a Role that you want to assume.
 * Then define a Trust Relationship in the AWS Console. You can use this as an
 * example:
 *
 * {
 * "Version": "2012-10-17",
 * "Statement": [
 * {
 * "Effect": "Allow",
 * "Principal": {
 * "AWS": "<Specify the ARN of your IAM user you are using in this code
 * example>"
 * },
 * "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
 * }
 * ]
 * }
 *
 * For more information, see "Editing the Trust Relationship for an Existing
 * Role" in the AWS Directory Service guide.
 *
 * Also, set up your development environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class AssumeRole {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <roleArn> <roleSessionName>\s

                Where:
                    roleArn - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to assume
 (for example, rn:aws:iam::000008047983:role/s3role).\s
```

```
                    roleSessionName - An identifier for the assumed role session
(for example, mysession).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String roleArn = args[0];
        String roleSessionName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        StsClient stsClient = StsClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        assumeGivenRole(stsClient, roleArn, roleSessionName);
        stsClient.close();
    }

    public static void assumeGivenRole(StsClient stsClient, String roleArn, String
roleSessionName) {
        try {
            AssumeRoleRequest roleRequest = AssumeRoleRequest.builder()
                    .roleArn(roleArn)
                    .roleSessionName(roleSessionName)
                    .build();

            AssumeRoleResponse roleResponse = stsClient.assumeRole(roleRequest);
            Credentials myCreds = roleResponse.credentials();

            // Display the time when the temp creds expire.
            Instant exTime = myCreds.expiration();
            String tokenInfo = myCreds.sessionToken();

            // Convert the Instant to readable date.
            DateTimeFormatter formatter =
DateTimeFormatter.ofLocalizedDateTime(FormatStyle.SHORT)
                    .withLocale(Locale.US)
                    .withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());

            formatter.format(exTime);
            System.out.println("The token " + tokenInfo + "  expires on " + exTime);
```

```
        } catch (StsException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Support examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Support.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.SupportClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Category;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SupportException;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS
 * Support Java API. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/
 *
 * This Java example performs the following task:
 *
 * 1. Gets and displays available services.
 *
 *
 * NOTE: To see multiple operations, see SupportScenario.
 */

public class HelloSupport {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SupportClient supportClient = SupportClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println("***** Step 1. Get and display available services.");
        displayServices(supportClient);
    }

    // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
    public static void displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
 DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeServicesResponse response =
 supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
            List<Service> services = response.services();

            System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
            int index = 1;
            for (Service service : services) {
                if (index == 11)
                    break;

                System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());

                // Display the Categories for this service.
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                }
                index++;
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run various Support operations.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.SupportClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddAttachmentsToSetResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddCommunicationToCaseRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddCommunicationToCaseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Attachment;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AttachmentDetails;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.CaseDetails;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Category;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Communication;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.CreateCaseRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.CreateCaseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeAttachmentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeAttachmentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCasesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCasesResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCommunicationsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeCommunicationsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeServicesResponse;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.DescribeSeverityLevelsResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.ResolveCaseRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.ResolveCaseResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.Service;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SeverityLevel;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.SupportException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.support.model.AddAttachmentsToSetRequest;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.time.Instant;
import java.time.temporal.ChronoUnit;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java (v2) code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 *
 * In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS
 * Support Java API. For more information, see:
 *
 * https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/
 *
 * This Java example performs the following tasks:
 *
 * 1. Gets and displays available services.
 * 2. Gets and displays severity levels.
 * 3. Creates a support case by using the selected service, category, and
 * severity level.
 * 4. Gets a list of open cases for the current day.
 * 5. Creates an attachment set with a generated file.
 * 6. Adds a communication with the attachment to the support case.
 * 7. Lists the communications of the support case.
 * 8. Describes the attachment set included with the communication.
 * 9. Resolves the support case.
 * 10. Gets a list of resolved cases for the current day.
 */
```

```
public class SupportScenario {

    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <fileAttachment>Where:
                    fileAttachment - The file can be a simple saved .txt file to use
 as an email attachment.\s
                """;

      //  if (args.length != 1) {
      //      System.out.println(usage);
      //      System.exit(1);
      //  }

        String fileAttachment = "C:\\AWS\\test.txt" ; //args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        SupportClient supportClient = SupportClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("***** Welcome to the AWS Support case example
 scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("1. Get and display available services.");
        List<String> sevCatList = displayServices(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("2. Get and display Support severity levels.");
        String sevLevel = displaySevLevels(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("3. Create a support case using the selected service,
 category, and severity level.");
        String caseId = createSupportCase(supportClient, sevCatList, sevLevel);
        if (caseId.compareTo("") == 0) {
```

```
            System.out.println("A support case was not successfully created!");
            System.exit(1);
        } else
            System.out.println("Support case " + caseId + " was successfully
created!");
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("4. Get open support cases.");
        getOpenCase(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("5. Create an attachment set with a generated file to add
to the case.");
        String attachmentSetId = addAttachment(supportClient, fileAttachment);
        System.out.println("The Attachment Set id value is" + attachmentSetId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("6. Add communication with the attachment to the support
case.");
        addAttachSupportCase(supportClient, caseId, attachmentSetId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("7. List the communications of the support case.");
        String attachId = listCommunications(supportClient, caseId);
        System.out.println("The Attachment id value is" + attachId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("8. Describe the attachment set included with the
communication.");
        describeAttachment(supportClient, attachId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Resolve the support case.");
        resolveSupportCase(supportClient, caseId);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Get a list of resolved cases for the current day.");
```

```
        getResolvedCase(supportClient);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("***** This Scenario has successfully completed");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    public static void getResolvedCase(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            // Specify the start and end time.
            Instant now = Instant.now();
            java.time.LocalDate.now();
            Instant yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

            DescribeCasesRequest describeCasesRequest =
DescribeCasesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(30)
                    .afterTime(yesterday.toString())
                    .beforeTime(now.toString())
                    .includeResolvedCases(true)
                    .build();

            DescribeCasesResponse response =
supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest);
            List<CaseDetails> cases = response.cases();
            for (CaseDetails sinCase : cases) {
                if (sinCase.status().compareTo("resolved") == 0)
                    System.out.println("The case status is " + sinCase.status());
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void resolveSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId) {
        try {
            ResolveCaseRequest caseRequest = ResolveCaseRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .build();
```

```
            ResolveCaseResponse response = supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest);
            System.out.println("The status of case " + caseId + " is " +
response.finalCaseStatus());

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static void describeAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
attachId) {
        try {
            DescribeAttachmentRequest attachmentRequest =
DescribeAttachmentRequest.builder()
                    .attachmentId(attachId)
                    .build();

            DescribeAttachmentResponse response =
supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest);
            System.out.println("The name of the file is " +
response.attachment().fileName());

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String listCommunications(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId) {
        try {
            String attachId = null;
            DescribeCommunicationsRequest communicationsRequest =
DescribeCommunicationsRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .maxResults(10)
                    .build();

            DescribeCommunicationsResponse response =
supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest);
            List<Communication> communications = response.communications();
            for (Communication comm : communications) {
                System.out.println("the body is: " + comm.body());
```

```
                // Get the attachment id value.
                List<AttachmentDetails> attachments = comm.attachmentSet();
                for (AttachmentDetails detail : attachments) {
                    attachId = detail.attachmentId();
                }
            }
            return attachId;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void addAttachSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId, String attachmentSetId) {
        try {
            AddCommunicationToCaseRequest caseRequest =
AddCommunicationToCaseRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .attachmentSetId(attachmentSetId)
                    .communicationBody("Please refer to attachment for details.")
                    .build();

            AddCommunicationToCaseResponse response =
supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest);
            if (response.result())
                System.out.println("You have successfully added a communication to
an AWS Support case");
            else
                System.out.println("There was an error adding the communication to
an AWS Support case");

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String addAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
fileAttachment) {
        try {
```

```
            File myFile = new File(fileAttachment);
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(myFile);
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            Attachment attachment = Attachment.builder()
                    .fileName(myFile.getName())
                    .data(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            AddAttachmentsToSetRequest setRequest =
AddAttachmentsToSetRequest.builder()
                    .attachments(attachment)
                    .build();

            AddAttachmentsToSetResponse response =
supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest);
            return response.attachmentSetId();

        } catch (SupportException | FileNotFoundException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static void getOpenCase(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            // Specify the start and end time.
            Instant now = Instant.now();
            java.time.LocalDate.now();
            Instant yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

            DescribeCasesRequest describeCasesRequest =
DescribeCasesRequest.builder()
                    .maxResults(20)
                    .afterTime(yesterday.toString())
                    .beforeTime(now.toString())
                    .build();

            DescribeCasesResponse response =
supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest);
            List<CaseDetails> cases = response.cases();
            for (CaseDetails sinCase : cases) {
                System.out.println("The case status is " + sinCase.status());
```

```
                System.out.println("The case Id is " + sinCase.caseId());
                System.out.println("The case subject is " + sinCase.subject());
            }

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }

    public static String createSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, List<String>
sevCatList, String sevLevel) {
        try {
            String serviceCode = sevCatList.get(0);
            String caseCat = sevCatList.get(1);
            CreateCaseRequest caseRequest = CreateCaseRequest.builder()
                    .categoryCode(caseCat.toLowerCase())
                    .serviceCode(serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                    .severityCode(sevLevel.toLowerCase())
                    .communicationBody("Test issue with " +
serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                    .subject("Test case, please ignore")
                    .language("en")
                    .issueType("technical")
                    .build();

            CreateCaseResponse response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest);
            return response.caseId();

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    public static String displaySevLevels(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest severityLevelsRequest =
DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeSeverityLevelsResponse response =
supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest);
            List<SeverityLevel> severityLevels = response.severityLevels();
            String levelName = null;
            for (SeverityLevel sevLevel : severityLevels) {
                System.out.println("The severity level name is: " +
sevLevel.name());
                if (sevLevel.name().compareTo("High") == 0)
                    levelName = sevLevel.name();
            }
            return levelName;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
    public static List<String> displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeServicesResponse response =
supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
            String serviceCode = null;
            String catName = null;
            List<String> sevCatList = new ArrayList<>();
            List<Service> services = response.services();

            System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
            int index = 1;
            for (Service service : services) {
                if (index == 11)
                    break;

                System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());
                if (service.name().compareTo("Account") == 0)
                    serviceCode = service.code();
```

```
                // Get the Categories for this service.
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                    if (cat.name().compareTo("Security") == 0)
                        catName = cat.name();
                }
                index++;
            }

            // Push the two values to the list.
            sevCatList.add(serviceCode);
            sevCatList.add(catName);
            return sevCatList;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels
  - ResolveCase

Actions

`AddAttachmentsToSet`

The following code example shows how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String addAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
fileAttachment) {
       try {
           File myFile = new File(fileAttachment);
           InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(myFile);
           SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

           Attachment attachment = Attachment.builder()
                   .fileName(myFile.getName())
                   .data(sourceBytes)
                   .build();

           AddAttachmentsToSetRequest setRequest =
AddAttachmentsToSetRequest.builder()
                   .attachments(attachment)
                   .build();

           AddAttachmentsToSetResponse response =
supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest);
           return response.attachmentSetId();

       } catch (SupportException | FileNotFoundException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`AddCommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void addAttachSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId, String attachmentSetId) {
       try {
           AddCommunicationToCaseRequest caseRequest =
AddCommunicationToCaseRequest.builder()
                   .caseId(caseId)
                   .attachmentSetId(attachmentSetId)
                   .communicationBody("Please refer to attachment for details.")
                   .build();

           AddCommunicationToCaseResponse response =
supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest);
           if (response.result())
               System.out.println("You have successfully added a communication to
an AWS Support case");
           else
               System.out.println("There was an error adding the communication to
an AWS Support case");

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateCase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCase`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String createSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, List<String>
sevCatList, String sevLevel) {
       try {
           String serviceCode = sevCatList.get(0);
           String caseCat = sevCatList.get(1);
           CreateCaseRequest caseRequest = CreateCaseRequest.builder()
                   .categoryCode(caseCat.toLowerCase())
                   .serviceCode(serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                   .severityCode(sevLevel.toLowerCase())
                   .communicationBody("Test issue with " +
serviceCode.toLowerCase())
                   .subject("Test case, please ignore")
                   .language("en")
                   .issueType("technical")
                   .build();

           CreateCaseResponse response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest);
           return response.caseId();

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeAttachment`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void describeAttachment(SupportClient supportClient, String
attachId) {
       try {
           DescribeAttachmentRequest attachmentRequest =
DescribeAttachmentRequest.builder()
                   .attachmentId(attachId)
                   .build();

           DescribeAttachmentResponse response =
supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest);
           System.out.println("The name of the file is " +
response.attachment().fileName());

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeCases`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCases`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static void getOpenCase(SupportClient supportClient) {
       try {
           // Specify the start and end time.
           Instant now = Instant.now();
           java.time.LocalDate.now();
           Instant yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS);

           DescribeCasesRequest describeCasesRequest =
DescribeCasesRequest.builder()
                   .maxResults(20)
                   .afterTime(yesterday.toString())
                   .beforeTime(now.toString())
                   .build();

           DescribeCasesResponse response =
supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest);
           List<CaseDetails> cases = response.cases();
           for (CaseDetails sinCase : cases) {
               System.out.println("The case status is " + sinCase.status());
               System.out.println("The case Id is " + sinCase.caseId());
               System.out.println("The case subject is " + sinCase.subject());
           }

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeCommunications`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public static String listCommunications(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId) {
       try {
           String attachId = null;
           DescribeCommunicationsRequest communicationsRequest =
DescribeCommunicationsRequest.builder()
                   .caseId(caseId)
                   .maxResults(10)
                   .build();

           DescribeCommunicationsResponse response =
supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest);
           List<Communication> communications = response.communications();
           for (Communication comm : communications) {
               System.out.println("the body is: " + comm.body());

               // Get the attachment id value.
               List<AttachmentDetails> attachments = comm.attachmentSet();
               for (AttachmentDetails detail : attachments) {
                   attachId = detail.attachmentId();
               }
           }
           return attachId;

       } catch (SupportException e) {
           System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
           System.exit(1);
       }
       return "";
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeServices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeServices`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
    public static List<String> displayServices(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeServicesRequest servicesRequest =
DescribeServicesRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();

            DescribeServicesResponse response =
supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest);
            String serviceCode = null;
            String catName = null;
            List<String> sevCatList = new ArrayList<>();
            List<Service> services = response.services();

            System.out.println("Get the first 10 services");
            int index = 1;
            for (Service service : services) {
                if (index == 11)
                    break;

                System.out.println("The Service name is: " + service.name());
                if (service.name().compareTo("Account") == 0)
                    serviceCode = service.code();

                // Get the Categories for this service.
```

```
                List<Category> categories = service.categories();
                for (Category cat : categories) {
                    System.out.println("The category name is: " + cat.name());
                    if (cat.name().compareTo("Security") == 0)
                        catName = cat.name();
                }
                index++;
            }

            // Push the two values to the list.
            sevCatList.add(serviceCode);
            sevCatList.add(catName);
            return sevCatList;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return null;
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeSeverityLevels`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static String displaySevLevels(SupportClient supportClient) {
        try {
            DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest severityLevelsRequest =
DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest.builder()
                    .language("en")
                    .build();
```

```
            DescribeSeverityLevelsResponse response =
supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest);
            List<SeverityLevel> severityLevels = response.severityLevels();
            String levelName = null;
            for (SeverityLevel sevLevel : severityLevels) {
                System.out.println("The severity level name is: " +
sevLevel.name());
                if (sevLevel.name().compareTo("High") == 0)
                    levelName = sevLevel.name();
            }
            return levelName;

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`ResolveCase`

The following code example shows how to use `ResolveCase`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public static void resolveSupportCase(SupportClient supportClient, String
caseId) {
        try {
            ResolveCaseRequest caseRequest = ResolveCaseRequest.builder()
                    .caseId(caseId)
                    .build();
```

```
            ResolveCaseResponse response = supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest);
            System.out.println("The status of case " + caseId + " is " +
 response.finalCaseStatus());

        } catch (SupportException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getLocalizedMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Systems Manager examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Systems Manager.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Systems Manager

The following code examples show how to get started using Systems Manager.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.DocumentFilter;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ListDocumentsRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ListDocumentsResponse;

public class HelloSSM {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <awsAccount>

                Where:
                    awsAccount - Your AWS Account number.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String awsAccount = args[0] ;
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
            .region(region)
            .build();

        listDocuments(ssmClient, awsAccount);
    }

    /*
    This code automatically fetches the next set of results using the `nextToken`
 and
    stops once the desired maxResults (20 in this case) have been reached.
    */
    public static void listDocuments(SsmClient ssmClient, String awsAccount) {
        String nextToken = null;
        int totalDocumentsReturned = 0;
        int maxResults = 20;
        do {
            ListDocumentsRequest request = ListDocumentsRequest.builder()
                .documentFilterList(
                    DocumentFilter.builder()
                        .key("Owner")
```

```
                        .value(awsAccount)
                        .build()
                    )
                .maxResults(maxResults)
                .nextToken(nextToken)
                .build();

            ListDocumentsResponse response = ssmClient.listDocuments(request);
            response.documentIdentifiers().forEach(identifier ->
 System.out.println("Document Name: " + identifier.name()));
            nextToken = response.nextToken();
            totalDocumentsReturned += response.documentIdentifiers().size();
        } while (nextToken != null && totalDocumentsReturned < maxResults);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a maintenance window.
- Modify the maintenance window schedule.
- Create a document.
- Send a command to a specified EC2 instance.
- Create an OpsItem.
- Update and resolve the OpsItem.
- Delete the maintenance window, OpsItem, and document.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.DocumentAlreadyExistsException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.SsmException;

import java.util.Scanner;
public class SSMScenario {
    public static final String DASHES = new String(new char[80]).replace("\0", "-");

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        String usage = """
            Usage:
              <instanceId> <title> <source> <category> <severity>

            Where:
                instanceId - The Amazon EC2 Linux/UNIX instance Id that AWS Systems
 Manager uses (ie, i-0149338494ed95f06).
                title - The title of the parameter (default is Disk Space Alert).
                source - The source of the parameter (default is EC2).
                category - The category of the parameter. Valid values are
 'Availability', 'Cost', 'Performance', 'Recovery', 'Security' (default is
 Performance).
                severity - The severity of the parameter. Severity should be a
 number from 1 to 4 (default is 2).
        """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        Scanner scanner = new Scanner(System.in);
        SSMActions actions = new SSMActions();
        String documentName;
        String windowName;
        String instanceId = args[0];
```

```
        String title = "Disk Space Alert" ;
        String source = "EC2" ;
        String category = "Availability" ;
        String severity = "2" ;

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
                Welcome to the AWS Systems Manager SDK Basics scenario.
                This Java program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Systems
Manager using the AWS SDK for Java (v2).
                AWS Systems Manager is the operations hub for your AWS applications
and resources and a secure end-to-end management solution.
                The program's primary functionalities include creating a maintenance
window, creating a document, sending a command to a document,
                listing documents, listing commands, creating an OpsItem, modifying
an OpsItem, and deleting AWS SSM resources.
                Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
                Let's get started...

                """);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("1. Create an SSM maintenance window.");
        System.out.println("Please enter the maintenance window name (default is
ssm-maintenance-window):");
        String win = scanner.nextLine();
        windowName = win.isEmpty() ? "ssm-maintenance-window" : win;
        String winId = null;
        try {
            winId = actions.createMaintenanceWindow(windowName);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The maintenance window ID is: " + winId);
        } catch (DocumentAlreadyExistsException e) {
            System.err.println("The SSM maintenance window already exists.
Retrieving existing window ID...");
            String existingWinId = actions.createMaintenanceWindow(windowName);
            System.out.println("Existing window ID: " + existingWinId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
```

```
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("2. Modify the maintenance window by changing the
schedule");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.updateSSMMaintenanceWindow(winId, windowName);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The SSM maintenance window was successfully
updated");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("3. Create an SSM document that defines the actions that
Systems Manager performs on your managed nodes.");
        System.out.println("Please enter the document name (default is
ssmdocument):");
        String doc = scanner.nextLine();
        documentName = doc.isEmpty() ? "ssmdocument" : doc;
        try {
            actions.createSSMDoc(documentName);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The SSM document was successfully created");
        } catch (DocumentAlreadyExistsException e) {
            System.err.println("The SSM document already exists. Moving on");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("4. Now we are going to run a command on an EC2
instance");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        String commandId="";
        try {
            commandId = actions.sendSSMCommand(documentName, instanceId);
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            System.out.println("The command was successfully sent. Command ID: " +
commandId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            System.err.println("Thread was interrupted: " + e.getMessage());
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println("5. Lets get the time when the specific command was sent
to the specific managed node");
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.displayCommands(commandId);
            System.out.println("The command invocations were successfully
displayed.");
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        System.out.println(DASHES);

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("""
             6. Now we will create an SSM OpsItem.
             A SSM OpsItem is a feature provided by Amazon's Systems Manager (SSM)
service.
             It is a type of operational data item that allows you to manage and
track various operational issues,
             events, or tasks within your AWS environment.
```

```
            You can create OpsItems to track and manage operational issues as they
arise.
            For example, you could create an OpsItem whenever your application
detects a critical error
            or an anomaly in your infrastructure.
           """);

       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       String opsItemId;
       try {
           opsItemId = actions.createSSMOpsItem(title, source, category, severity);
           System.out.println(opsItemId + " was created");
       } catch (SsmException e) {
           System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
           return;
       } catch (RuntimeException e) {
           System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
           return;
       }
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       System.out.println(DASHES);

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("7. Now we will update the SSM OpsItem "+opsItemId);
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       String description = "An update to "+opsItemId ;
       try {
           actions.updateOpsItem(opsItemId, title, description);
       } catch (SsmException e) {
           System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
           return;
       } catch (RuntimeException e) {
           System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
           return;
       }

       System.out.println(DASHES);
       System.out.println("8. Now we will get the status of the SSM OpsItem
"+opsItemId);
       waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
       try {
           actions.describeOpsItems(opsItemId);
       } catch (SsmException e) {
```

```
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("9. Now we will resolve the SSM OpsItem "+opsItemId);
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
        try {
            actions.resolveOpsItem(opsItemId);
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        } catch (RuntimeException e) {
            System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
            return;
        }

        System.out.println(DASHES);
        System.out.println("10. Would you like to delete the AWS Systems Manager
resources? (y/n)");
        String delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim();
        if (delAns.equalsIgnoreCase("y")) {
            System.out.println("You selected to delete the resources.");
            waitForInputToContinue(scanner);
            try {
                actions.deleteMaintenanceWindow(winId);
                actions.deleteDoc(documentName);
            } catch (SsmException e) {
                System.err.println("SSM error: " + e.getMessage());
                return;
            } catch (RuntimeException e) {
                System.err.println("Unexpected error: " + e.getMessage());
                return;
            }
        } else {
            System.out.println("The AWS Systems Manager resources will not be
deleted");
        }
        System.out.println(DASHES);
```

```
        System.out.println("This concludes the AWS Systems Manager SDK Basics
 scenario.");
        System.out.println(DASHES);
    }

    private static void waitForInputToContinue(Scanner scanner) {
        while (true) {
            System.out.println("");
            System.out.println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:");
            String input = scanner.nextLine();

            if (input.trim().equalsIgnoreCase("c")) {
                System.out.println("Continuing with the program...");
                System.out.println("");
                break;
            } else {
                // Handle invalid input.
                System.out.println("Invalid input. Please try again.");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Systems Manager SDK methods.

```
public class SSMActions {

    private static SsmAsyncClient ssmAsyncClient;

    private static SsmAsyncClient getAsyncClient() {
        if (ssmAsyncClient == null) {
            SdkAsyncHttpClient httpClient = NettyNioAsyncHttpClient.builder()
                    .maxConcurrency(100)
                    .connectionTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .readTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .writeTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(60))
                    .build();

            ClientOverrideConfiguration overrideConfig =
 ClientOverrideConfiguration.builder()
                    .apiCallTimeout(Duration.ofMinutes(2))
                    .apiCallAttemptTimeout(Duration.ofSeconds(90))
```

```
                    .retryPolicy(RetryPolicy.builder()
                            .numRetries(3)
                            .build())
                    .build();

            ssmAsyncClient = SsmAsyncClient.builder()
                    .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
                    .httpClient(httpClient)
                    .overrideConfiguration(overrideConfig)
                    .build();
        }
        return ssmAsyncClient;
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param documentName The name of the document to delete.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM document.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void deleteDoc(String documentName) {
        DeleteDocumentRequest documentRequest = DeleteDocumentRequest.builder()
                .name(documentName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().deleteDocument(documentRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("The SSM document was successfully
deleted.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM Maintenance Window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param winId The ID of the Maintenance Window to delete.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM Maintenance
Window.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void deleteMaintenanceWindow(String winId) {
        DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest windowRequest =
DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
                .windowId(winId)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().deleteMaintenanceWindow(windowRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("The maintenance window was successfully
deleted.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
```

```
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Resolves an AWS SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param opsID The ID of the OpsItem to resolve.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to resolve an SSM OpsItem.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void resolveOpsItem(String opsID) {
        UpdateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = UpdateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                .opsItemId(opsID)
                .status(OpsItemStatus.RESOLVED)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().updateOpsItem(opsItemRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("OpsItem resolved successfully.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
```

```
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Describes AWS SSM OpsItems asynchronously.
     *
     * @param key The key to filter OpsItems by (e.g., OPS_ITEM_ID).
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe SSM OpsItems.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the title and status of each OpsItem.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void describeOpsItems(String key) {
        OpsItemFilter filter = OpsItemFilter.builder()
                .key(OpsItemFilterKey.OPS_ITEM_ID)
                .values(key)
                .operator(OpsItemFilterOperator.EQUAL)
                .build();

        DescribeOpsItemsRequest itemsRequest = DescribeOpsItemsRequest.builder()
                .maxResults(10)
                .opsItemFilters(filter)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().describeOpsItems(itemsRequest)
                    .thenAccept(itemsResponse -> {
                        List<OpsItemSummary> items =
itemsResponse.opsItemSummaries();
                        for (OpsItemSummary item : items) {
                            System.out.println("The item title is " + item.title() +
" and the status is " + item.status().toString());
                        }
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
```

```
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
 ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
 cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
 cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
 ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }

    /**
     * Updates the AWS SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param opsItemId The ID of the OpsItem to update.
     * @param title The new title of the OpsItem.
     * @param description The new description of the OpsItem.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update an SSM OpsItem.
     * If the request is successful, it completes without returning a value.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void updateOpsItem(String opsItemId, String title, String description) {
        Map<String, OpsItemDataValue> operationalData = new HashMap<>();
        operationalData.put("key1",
 OpsItemDataValue.builder().value("value1").build());
        operationalData.put("key2",
 OpsItemDataValue.builder().value("value2").build());

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = getOpsItem(opsItemId).thenCompose(opsItem -
> {
            UpdateOpsItemRequest request = UpdateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                    .opsItemId(opsItemId)
                    .title(title)
```

```
                    .operationalData(operationalData)
                    .status(opsItem.statusAsString())
                    .description(description)
                    .build();

            return getAsyncClient().updateOpsItem(request).thenAccept(response -> {
                System.out.println(opsItemId + " updated successfully.");
            }).exceptionally(ex -> {
                throw new CompletionException(ex);
            });
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }


    private static CompletableFuture<OpsItem> getOpsItem(String opsItemId) {
        GetOpsItemRequest request =
GetOpsItemRequest.builder().opsItemId(opsItemId).build();
        return
getAsyncClient().getOpsItem(request).thenApply(GetOpsItemResponse::opsItem);
    }

    /**
     * Creates an SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param title The title of the OpsItem.
     * @param source The source of the OpsItem.
     * @param category The category of the OpsItem.
```

```
     * @param severity The severity of the OpsItem.
     * @return The ID of the created OpsItem.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM OpsItem.
     * If the request is successful, it returns the OpsItem ID.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public String createSSMOpsItem(String title, String source, String category,
String severity) {
        CreateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = CreateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                .description("Created by the SSM Java API")
                .title(title)
                .source(source)
                .category(category)
                .severity(severity)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateOpsItemResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createOpsItem(opsItemRequest);

        try {
            CreateOpsItemResponse response = future.join();
            return response.opsItemId();
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            Throwable cause = e.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw (SsmException) cause;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }
    }

    /**
     * Displays the date and time when the specific command was invoked.
     *
     * @param commandId The ID of the command to describe.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to list command invocations and
prints the date and time of each command invocation.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void displayCommands(String commandId) {
```

```
        ListCommandInvocationsRequest commandInvocationsRequest =
ListCommandInvocationsRequest.builder()
                .commandId(commandId)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<ListCommandInvocationsResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().listCommandInvocations(commandInvocationsRequest);
        future.thenAccept(response -> {
            List<CommandInvocation> commandList = response.commandInvocations();
            DateTimeFormatter formatter = DateTimeFormatter.ofPattern("yyyy-MM-dd
HH:mm:ss").withZone(ZoneId.systemDefault());
            for (CommandInvocation invocation : commandList) {
                System.out.println("The time of the command invocation is " +
formatter.format(invocation.requestedDateTime()));
            }
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw (SsmException) cause;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Sends a SSM command to a managed node asynchronously.
     *
     * @param documentName The name of the document to use.
     * @param instanceId The ID of the instance to send the command to.
     * @return The command ID.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates asynchronous requests to send a SSM command to a
managed node.
     * It waits until the document is active, sends the command, and checks the
command execution status.
     */
    public String sendSSMCommand(String documentName, String instanceId) throws
InterruptedException, SsmException {
        // Before we use Document to send a command - make sure it is active.
        CompletableFuture<Void> documentActiveFuture = CompletableFuture.runAsync(()
-> {
            boolean isDocumentActive = false;
```

```
            DescribeDocumentRequest request = DescribeDocumentRequest.builder()
                    .name(documentName)
                    .build();

            while (!isDocumentActive) {
                CompletableFuture<DescribeDocumentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeDocument(request);
                String documentStatus = response.join().document().statusAsString();
                if (documentStatus.equals("Active")) {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is active and ready to
use.");
                    isDocumentActive = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is not active. Status: " +
documentStatus);
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(5000);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(e);
                    }
                }
            }
        });

        documentActiveFuture.join();

        // Create the SendCommandRequest.
        SendCommandRequest commandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .documentName(documentName)
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .build();

        // Send the command.
        CompletableFuture<SendCommandResponse> commandFuture =
getAsyncClient().sendCommand(commandRequest);
        final String[] commandId = {null};

        commandFuture.whenComplete((commandResponse, ex) -> {
            if (commandResponse != null) {
                commandId[0] = commandResponse.command().commandId();
                System.out.println("Command ID: " + commandId[0]);

                // Wait for the command execution to complete.
```

```
                GetCommandInvocationRequest invocationRequest =
GetCommandInvocationRequest.builder()
                        .commandId(commandId[0])
                        .instanceId(instanceId)
                        .build();

                try {
                    System.out.println("Wait 5 secs");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);

                    // Retrieve the command execution details.
                    CompletableFuture<GetCommandInvocationResponse> invocationFuture
= getAsyncClient().getCommandInvocation(invocationRequest);
                    invocationFuture.whenComplete((commandInvocationResponse,
invocationEx) -> {
                        if (commandInvocationResponse != null) {
                            // Check the status of the command execution.
                            CommandInvocationStatus status =
commandInvocationResponse.status();
                            if (status == CommandInvocationStatus.SUCCESS) {
                                System.out.println("Command execution successful");
                            } else {
                                System.out.println("Command execution failed.
Status: " + status);
                            }
                        } else {
                            Throwable invocationCause = (invocationEx instanceof
CompletionException) ? invocationEx.getCause() : invocationEx;
                            throw new CompletionException(invocationCause);
                        }
                    }).join();
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException(e);
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw (SsmException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();
```

```
        return commandId[0];
    }

    /**
     * Creates an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param docName The name of the document to create.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM document.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the document status.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void createSSMDoc(String docName) throws SsmException {
        String jsonData = """
        {
        "schemaVersion": "2.2",
        "description": "Run a simple shell command",
        "mainSteps": [
            {
                "action": "aws:runShellScript",
                "name": "runEchoCommand",
                "inputs": {
                  "runCommand": [
                    "echo 'Hello, world!'"
                  ]
                }
              }
            ]
        }
        """;

        CreateDocumentRequest request = CreateDocumentRequest.builder()
                .content(jsonData)
                .name(docName)
                .documentType(DocumentType.COMMAND)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateDocumentResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createDocument(request);
        future.thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("The status of the SSM document is " +
response.documentDescription().status());
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
```

```
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Updates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param id The ID of the maintenance window to update.
     * @param name The new name for the maintenance window.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update an SSM maintenance
window.
     * If the request is successful, it prints a success message.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void updateSSMMaintenanceWindow(String id, String name) throws
SsmException {
        UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest updateRequest =
UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
                .windowId(id)
                .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
                .duration(24)
                .enabled(true)
                .name(name)
                .schedule("cron(0 0 ? * MON *)")
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<UpdateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().updateMaintenanceWindow(updateRequest);
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                System.out.println("The SSM maintenance window was successfully
updated");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
```

```
                if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();
    }

    /**
     * Creates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
     *
     * @param winName The name of the maintenance window.
     * @return The ID of the created or existing maintenance window.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM maintenance
window.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the maintenance window ID.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public String createMaintenanceWindow(String winName) throws SsmException,
DocumentAlreadyExistsException {
        CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest request =
CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
                .name(winName)
                .description("This is my maintenance window")
                .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
                .duration(2)
                .cutoff(1)
                .schedule("cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)")
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createMaintenanceWindow(request);
        final String[] windowId = {null};
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                String maintenanceWindowId = response.windowId();
                System.out.println("The maintenance window id is " +
maintenanceWindowId);
                windowId[0] = maintenanceWindowId;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
```

```
                if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        if (windowId[0] == null) {
            MaintenanceWindowFilter filter = MaintenanceWindowFilter.builder()
                    .key("name")
                    .values(winName)
                    .build();

            DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest winRequest =
DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter)
                    .build();

            CompletableFuture<DescribeMaintenanceWindowsResponse> describeFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeMaintenanceWindows(winRequest);
            describeFuture.whenComplete((describeResponse, describeEx) -> {
                if (describeResponse != null) {
                    List<MaintenanceWindowIdentity> windows =
describeResponse.windowIdentities();
                    if (!windows.isEmpty()) {
                        windowId[0] = windows.get(0).windowId();
                        System.out.println("Window ID: " + windowId[0]);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Window not found.");
                        windowId[0] = "";
                    }
                } else {
                    Throwable describeCause = (describeEx instanceof
CompletionException) ? describeEx.getCause() : describeEx;
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error describing maintenance
windows: " + describeCause.getMessage(), describeCause);
                }
            }).join();
        }

        return windowId[0];
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - CreateDocument
  - CreateMaintenanceWindow
  - CreateOpsItem
  - DeleteMaintenanceWindow
  - ListCommandInvocations
  - SendCommand
  - UpdateOpsItem

Actions

`CreateDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDocument`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param docName The name of the document to create.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM document.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the document status.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void createSSMDoc(String docName) throws SsmException {
        String jsonData = """
```

```
        {
        "schemaVersion": "2.2",
        "description": "Run a simple shell command",
        "mainSteps": [
            {
                "action": "aws:runShellScript",
                "name": "runEchoCommand",
                "inputs": {
                  "runCommand": [
                    "echo 'Hello, world!'"
                  ]
                }
              }
            ]
        }
        """;

        CreateDocumentRequest request = CreateDocumentRequest.builder()
                .content(jsonData)
                .name(docName)
                .documentType(DocumentType.COMMAND)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateDocumentResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createDocument(request);
        future.thenAccept(response -> {
            System.out.println("The status of the SSM document is " +
response.documentDescription().status());
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new CompletionException(cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }).join();
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
    *
    * @param winName The name of the maintenance window.
    * @return The ID of the created or existing maintenance window.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM maintenance
window.
    * If the request is successful, it prints the maintenance window ID.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public String createMaintenanceWindow(String winName) throws SsmException,
DocumentAlreadyExistsException {
       CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest request =
CreateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .name(winName)
               .description("This is my maintenance window")
               .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
               .duration(2)
               .cutoff(1)
               .schedule("cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<CreateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createMaintenanceWindow(request);
       final String[] windowId = {null};
       future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
           if (response != null) {
               String maintenanceWindowId = response.windowId();
               System.out.println("The maintenance window id is " +
maintenanceWindowId);
```

```
                windowId[0] = maintenanceWindowId;
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof DocumentAlreadyExistsException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        if (windowId[0] == null) {
            MaintenanceWindowFilter filter = MaintenanceWindowFilter.builder()
                    .key("name")
                    .values(winName)
                    .build();

            DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest winRequest =
DescribeMaintenanceWindowsRequest.builder()
                    .filters(filter)
                    .build();

            CompletableFuture<DescribeMaintenanceWindowsResponse> describeFuture =
getAsyncClient().describeMaintenanceWindows(winRequest);
            describeFuture.whenComplete((describeResponse, describeEx) -> {
                if (describeResponse != null) {
                    List<MaintenanceWindowIdentity> windows =
describeResponse.windowIdentities();
                    if (!windows.isEmpty()) {
                        windowId[0] = windows.get(0).windowId();
                        System.out.println("Window ID: " + windowId[0]);
                    } else {
                        System.out.println("Window not found.");
                        windowId[0] = "";
                    }
                } else {
                    Throwable describeCause = (describeEx instanceof
CompletionException) ? describeEx.getCause() : describeEx;
                    throw new RuntimeException("Error describing maintenance
windows: " + describeCause.getMessage(), describeCause);
                }
```

```
            }).join();
        }

        return windowId[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`CreateOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpsItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Creates an SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param title The title of the OpsItem.
     * @param source The source of the OpsItem.
     * @param category The category of the OpsItem.
     * @param severity The severity of the OpsItem.
     * @return The ID of the created OpsItem.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to create an SSM OpsItem.
     * If the request is successful, it returns the OpsItem ID.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public String createSSMOpsItem(String title, String source, String category,
String severity) {
        CreateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = CreateOpsItemRequest.builder()
                .description("Created by the SSM Java API")
                .title(title)
                .source(source)
                .category(category)
```

```
                .severity(severity)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<CreateOpsItemResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().createOpsItem(opsItemRequest);

        try {
            CreateOpsItemResponse response = future.join();
            return response.opsItemId();
        } catch (CompletionException e) {
            Throwable cause = e.getCause();
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw (SsmException) cause;
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException(cause);
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDocument`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an AWS SSM document asynchronously.
     *
     * @param documentName The name of the document to delete.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM document.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
```

```
     */
    public void deleteDoc(String documentName) {
        DeleteDocumentRequest documentRequest = DeleteDocumentRequest.builder()
                .name(documentName)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().deleteDocument(documentRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("The SSM document was successfully
deleted.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DeleteMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Deletes an AWS SSM Maintenance Window asynchronously.
    *
    * @param winId The ID of the Maintenance Window to delete.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to delete an SSM Maintenance
Window.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public void deleteMaintenanceWindow(String winId) {
       DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest windowRequest =
DeleteMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .windowId(winId)
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
           getAsyncClient().deleteMaintenanceWindow(windowRequest)
                   .thenAccept(response -> {
                       System.out.println("The maintenance window was successfully
deleted.");
                   })
                   .exceptionally(ex -> {
                       throw new CompletionException(ex);
                   }).join();
       }).exceptionally(ex -> {
           Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
           if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
               throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
           } else {
               throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
           }
```

```
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeOpsItems`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOpsItems`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Describes AWS SSM OpsItems asynchronously.
     *
     * @param key The key to filter OpsItems by (e.g., OPS_ITEM_ID).
     *
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to describe SSM OpsItems.
     * If the request is successful, it prints the title and status of each OpsItem.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void describeOpsItems(String key) {
        OpsItemFilter filter = OpsItemFilter.builder()
                .key(OpsItemFilterKey.OPS_ITEM_ID)
                .values(key)
                .operator(OpsItemFilterOperator.EQUAL)
                .build();

        DescribeOpsItemsRequest itemsRequest = DescribeOpsItemsRequest.builder()
```

```
                .maxResults(10)
                .opsItemFilters(filter)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().describeOpsItems(itemsRequest)
                    .thenAccept(itemsResponse -> {
                        List<OpsItemSummary> items =
itemsResponse.opsItemSummaries();
                        for (OpsItemSummary item : items) {
                            System.out.println("The item title is " + item.title() +
" and the status is " + item.status().toString());
                        }
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DescribeParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeParameters`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParameterRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.GetParameterResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.SsmException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class GetParameter {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <paraName>

                Where:
                    paraName - The name of the parameter.
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String paraName = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(region)
```

```
                .build();

        getParaValue(ssmClient, paraName);
        ssmClient.close();
    }

    public static void getParaValue(SsmClient ssmClient, String paraName) {
        try {
            GetParameterRequest parameterRequest = GetParameterRequest.builder()
                    .name(paraName)
                    .build();

            GetParameterResponse parameterResponse =
 ssmClient.getParameter(parameterRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter value is " +
 parameterResponse.parameter().value());

        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`PutParameter`

The following code example shows how to use `PutParameter`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.SsmClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.ParameterType;
```

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.PutParameterRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.ssm.model.SsmException;

public class PutParameter {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <paraName>

                Where:
                    paraName - The name of the parameter.
                    paraValue - The value of the parameter.
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String paraName = args[0];
        String paraValue = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_1;
        SsmClient ssmClient = SsmClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        putParaValue(ssmClient, paraName, paraValue);
        ssmClient.close();
    }

    public static void putParaValue(SsmClient ssmClient, String paraName, String
 value) {
        try {
            PutParameterRequest parameterRequest = PutParameterRequest.builder()
                    .name(paraName)
                    .type(ParameterType.STRING)
                    .value(value)
                    .build();

            ssmClient.putParameter(parameterRequest);
            System.out.println("The parameter was successfully added.");
```

```
        } catch (SsmException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

SendCommand

The following code example shows how to use SendCommand.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Sends a SSM command to a managed node asynchronously.
    *
    * @param documentName The name of the document to use.
    * @param instanceId The ID of the instance to send the command to.
    * @return The command ID.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates asynchronous requests to send a SSM command to a
managed node.
    * It waits until the document is active, sends the command, and checks the
command execution status.
    */
   public String sendSSMCommand(String documentName, String instanceId) throws
InterruptedException, SsmException {
       // Before we use Document to send a command - make sure it is active.
       CompletableFuture<Void> documentActiveFuture = CompletableFuture.runAsync(()
-> {
           boolean isDocumentActive = false;
           DescribeDocumentRequest request = DescribeDocumentRequest.builder()
                   .name(documentName)
```

```
                    .build();

            while (!isDocumentActive) {
                CompletableFuture<DescribeDocumentResponse> response =
getAsyncClient().describeDocument(request);
                String documentStatus = response.join().document().statusAsString();
                if (documentStatus.equals("Active")) {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is active and ready to
use.");
                    isDocumentActive = true;
                } else {
                    System.out.println("The SSM document is not active. Status: " +
documentStatus);
                    try {
                        Thread.sleep(5000);
                    } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                        throw new RuntimeException(e);
                    }
                }
            }
        });

        documentActiveFuture.join();

        // Create the SendCommandRequest.
        SendCommandRequest commandRequest = SendCommandRequest.builder()
                .documentName(documentName)
                .instanceIds(instanceId)
                .build();

        // Send the command.
        CompletableFuture<SendCommandResponse> commandFuture =
getAsyncClient().sendCommand(commandRequest);
        final String[] commandId = {null};

        commandFuture.whenComplete((commandResponse, ex) -> {
            if (commandResponse != null) {
                commandId[0] = commandResponse.command().commandId();
                System.out.println("Command ID: " + commandId[0]);

                // Wait for the command execution to complete.
                GetCommandInvocationRequest invocationRequest =
GetCommandInvocationRequest.builder()
                        .commandId(commandId[0])
```

```
                        .instanceId(instanceId)
                        .build();

                try {
                    System.out.println("Wait 5 secs");
                    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(5);

                    // Retrieve the command execution details.
                    CompletableFuture<GetCommandInvocationResponse> invocationFuture
= getAsyncClient().getCommandInvocation(invocationRequest);
                    invocationFuture.whenComplete((commandInvocationResponse,
invocationEx) -> {
                        if (commandInvocationResponse != null) {
                            // Check the status of the command execution.
                            CommandInvocationStatus status =
commandInvocationResponse.status();
                            if (status == CommandInvocationStatus.SUCCESS) {
                                System.out.println("Command execution successful");
                            } else {
                                System.out.println("Command execution failed.
Status: " + status);
                            }
                        } else {
                            Throwable invocationCause = (invocationEx instanceof
CompletionException) ? invocationEx.getCause() : invocationEx;
                            throw new CompletionException(invocationCause);
                        }
                    }).join();
                } catch (InterruptedException e) {
                    throw new RuntimeException(e);
                }
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw (SsmException) cause;
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();

        return commandId[0];
    }
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Updates an SSM maintenance window asynchronously.
    *
    * @param id The ID of the maintenance window to update.
    * @param name The new name for the maintenance window.
    * <p>
    * This method initiates an asynchronous request to update an SSM maintenance
window.
    * If the request is successful, it prints a success message.
    * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
    */
   public void updateSSMMaintenanceWindow(String id, String name) throws
SsmException {
       UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest updateRequest =
UpdateMaintenanceWindowRequest.builder()
               .windowId(id)
               .allowUnassociatedTargets(true)
               .duration(24)
               .enabled(true)
               .name(name)
               .schedule("cron(0 0 ? * MON *)")
               .build();

       CompletableFuture<UpdateMaintenanceWindowResponse> future =
getAsyncClient().updateMaintenanceWindow(updateRequest);
```

```
        future.whenComplete((response, ex) -> {
            if (response != null) {
                System.out.println("The SSM maintenance window was successfully
updated");
            } else {
                Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ?
ex.getCause() : ex;
                if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                    throw new CompletionException(cause);
                } else {
                    throw new RuntimeException(cause);
                }
            }
        }).join();
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`UpdateOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateOpsItem`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Resolves an AWS SSM OpsItem asynchronously.
     *
     * @param opsID The ID of the OpsItem to resolve.
     * <p>
     * This method initiates an asynchronous request to resolve an SSM OpsItem.
     * If an exception occurs, it handles the error appropriately.
     */
    public void resolveOpsItem(String opsID) {
        UpdateOpsItemRequest opsItemRequest = UpdateOpsItemRequest.builder()
```

```
                .opsItemId(opsID)
                .status(OpsItemStatus.RESOLVED)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> future = CompletableFuture.runAsync(() -> {
            getAsyncClient().updateOpsItem(opsItemRequest)
                    .thenAccept(response -> {
                        System.out.println("OpsItem resolved successfully.");
                    })
                    .exceptionally(ex -> {
                        throw new CompletionException(ex);
                    }).join();
        }).exceptionally(ex -> {
            Throwable cause = (ex instanceof CompletionException) ? ex.getCause() :
ex;
            if (cause instanceof SsmException) {
                throw new RuntimeException("SSM error: " + cause.getMessage(),
cause);
            } else {
                throw new RuntimeException("Unexpected error: " +
cause.getMessage(), cause);
            }
        });

        try {
            future.join();
        } catch (CompletionException ex) {
            throw ex.getCause() instanceof RuntimeException ? (RuntimeException)
ex.getCause() : ex;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Textract.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AnalyzeDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `AnalyzeDocument`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.AnalyzeDocumentRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.FeatureType;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.AnalyzeDocumentResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Block;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.Iterator;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class AnalyzeDocument {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sourceDoc>\s

                Where:
                    sourceDoc - The path where the document is located (must be an
 image, for example, C:/AWS/book.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sourceDoc = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        analyzeDoc(textractClient, sourceDoc);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static void analyzeDoc(TextractClient textractClient, String sourceDoc) {
        try {
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(new File(sourceDoc));
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            // Get the input Document object as bytes
            Document myDoc = Document.builder()
                    .bytes(sourceBytes)
                    .build();
```

```
            List<FeatureType> featureTypes = new ArrayList<FeatureType>();
            featureTypes.add(FeatureType.FORMS);
            featureTypes.add(FeatureType.TABLES);

            AnalyzeDocumentRequest analyzeDocumentRequest =
 AnalyzeDocumentRequest.builder()
                    .featureTypes(featureTypes)
                    .document(myDoc)
                    .build();

            AnalyzeDocumentResponse analyzeDocument =
 textractClient.analyzeDocument(analyzeDocumentRequest);
            List<Block> docInfo = analyzeDocument.blocks();
            Iterator<Block> blockIterator = docInfo.iterator();

            while (blockIterator.hasNext()) {
                Block block = blockIterator.next();
                System.out.println("The block type is " +
 block.blockType().toString());
            }

        } catch (TextractException | FileNotFoundException e) {

            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`DetectDocumentText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDocumentText`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detect text from an input document.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.core.SdkBytes;
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Block;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DocumentMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;
import java.io.File;
import java.io.FileInputStream;
import java.io.FileNotFoundException;
import java.io.InputStream;
import java.util.List;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectDocumentText {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <sourceDoc>\s

                Where:
                    sourceDoc - The path where the document is located (must be an
 image, for example, C:/AWS/book.png).\s
```

```
                """;

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String sourceDoc = args[0];
        Region region = Region.US_EAST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectDocText(textractClient, sourceDoc);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectDocText(TextractClient textractClient, String
sourceDoc) {
        try {
            InputStream sourceStream = new FileInputStream(new File(sourceDoc));
            SdkBytes sourceBytes = SdkBytes.fromInputStream(sourceStream);

            // Get the input Document object as bytes.
            Document myDoc = Document.builder()
                    .bytes(sourceBytes)
                    .build();

            DetectDocumentTextRequest detectDocumentTextRequest =
DetectDocumentTextRequest.builder()
                    .document(myDoc)
                    .build();

            // Invoke the Detect operation.
            DetectDocumentTextResponse textResponse =
textractClient.detectDocumentText(detectDocumentTextRequest);
            List<Block> docInfo = textResponse.blocks();
            for (Block block : docInfo) {
                System.out.println("The block type is " +
block.blockType().toString());
            }

            DocumentMetadata documentMetadata = textResponse.documentMetadata();
```

```
            System.out.println("The number of pages in the document is " +
 documentMetadata.pages());

        } catch (TextractException | FileNotFoundException e) {

            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

Detect text from a document located in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Document;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DetectDocumentTextResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.Block;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DocumentMetadata;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;

/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class DetectDocumentTextS3 {

    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName> <docName>\s

                Where:
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
 document.\s
```

```
                    docName - The document name (must be an image, i.e., book.png).
\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String docName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        detectDocTextS3(textractClient, bucketName, docName);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static void detectDocTextS3(TextractClient textractClient, String
 bucketName, String docName) {
        try {
            S3Object s3Object = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(docName)
                    .build();

            // Create a Document object and reference the s3Object instance.
            Document myDoc = Document.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Object)
                    .build();

            DetectDocumentTextRequest detectDocumentTextRequest =
 DetectDocumentTextRequest.builder()
                    .document(myDoc)
                    .build();

            DetectDocumentTextResponse textResponse =
 textractClient.detectDocumentText(detectDocumentTextRequest);
            for (Block block : textResponse.blocks()) {
                System.out.println("The block type is " +
 block.blockType().toString());
```

```
            }

            DocumentMetadata documentMetadata = textResponse.documentMetadata();
            System.out.println("The number of pages in the document is " +
 documentMetadata.pages());

        } catch (TextractException e) {

            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

`StartDocumentAnalysis`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDocumentAnalysis`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import software.amazon.awssdk.regions.Region;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.S3Object;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.TextractClient;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.StartDocumentAnalysisRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.DocumentLocation;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.TextractException;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.StartDocumentAnalysisResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.GetDocumentAnalysisRequest;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.GetDocumentAnalysisResponse;
import software.amazon.awssdk.services.textract.model.FeatureType;
import java.util.ArrayList;
import java.util.List;
```

```
/**
 * Before running this Java V2 code example, set up your development
 * environment, including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
public class StartDocumentAnalysis {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        final String usage = """

                Usage:
                    <bucketName> <docName>\s

                Where:
                    bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
 document.\s
                    docName - The document name (must be an image, for example,
 book.png).\s
                """;

        if (args.length != 2) {
            System.out.println(usage);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String bucketName = args[0];
        String docName = args[1];
        Region region = Region.US_WEST_2;
        TextractClient textractClient = TextractClient.builder()
                .region(region)
                .build();

        String jobId = startDocAnalysisS3(textractClient, bucketName, docName);
        System.out.println("Getting results for job " + jobId);
        String status = getJobResults(textractClient, jobId);
        System.out.println("The job status is " + status);
        textractClient.close();
    }

    public static String startDocAnalysisS3(TextractClient textractClient, String
 bucketName, String docName) {
        try {
```

```
            List<FeatureType> myList = new ArrayList<>();
            myList.add(FeatureType.TABLES);
            myList.add(FeatureType.FORMS);

            S3Object s3Object = S3Object.builder()
                    .bucket(bucketName)
                    .name(docName)
                    .build();

            DocumentLocation location = DocumentLocation.builder()
                    .s3Object(s3Object)
                    .build();

            StartDocumentAnalysisRequest documentAnalysisRequest =
StartDocumentAnalysisRequest.builder()
                    .documentLocation(location)
                    .featureTypes(myList)
                    .build();

            StartDocumentAnalysisResponse response =
textractClient.startDocumentAnalysis(documentAnalysisRequest);

            // Get the job ID
            String jobId = response.jobId();
            return jobId;

        } catch (TextractException e) {
            System.err.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }

    private static String getJobResults(TextractClient textractClient, String jobId)
{
        boolean finished = false;
        int index = 0;
        String status = "";

        try {
            while (!finished) {
                GetDocumentAnalysisRequest analysisRequest =
GetDocumentAnalysisRequest.builder()
                        .jobId(jobId)
```

```
                        .maxResults(1000)
                        .build();

                GetDocumentAnalysisResponse response =
 textractClient.getDocumentAnalysis(analysisRequest);
                status = response.jobStatus().toString();

                if (status.compareTo("SUCCEEDED") == 0)
                    finished = true;
                else {
                    System.out.println(index + " status is: " + status);
                    Thread.sleep(1000);
                }
                index++;
            }

            return status;

        } catch (InterruptedException e) {
            System.out.println(e.getMessage());
            System.exit(1);
        }
        return "";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various

languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Transcribe.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`ListTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class ListTranscriptionJobs {
    public static void main(String[] args) {
        TranscribeClient transcribeClient = TranscribeClient.builder()
            .region(Region.US_EAST_1)
            .build();

            listTranscriptionJobs(transcribeClient);
        }

        public static void listTranscriptionJobs(TranscribeClient transcribeClient)
 {
            ListTranscriptionJobsRequest listJobsRequest =
 ListTranscriptionJobsRequest.builder()
                .build();


 transcribeClient.listTranscriptionJobsPaginator(listJobsRequest).stream()
                .flatMap(response -> response.transcriptionJobSummaries().stream())
                .forEach(jobSummary -> {
                    System.out.println("Job Name: " +
 jobSummary.transcriptionJobName());
                    System.out.println("Job Status: " +
 jobSummary.transcriptionJobStatus());
                    System.out.println("Output Location: " +
 jobSummary.outputLocationType());
                    // Add more information as needed

                    // Retrieve additional details for the job if necessary
```

```
                    GetTranscriptionJobResponse jobDetails =
transcribeClient.getTranscriptionJob(
                        GetTranscriptionJobRequest.builder()
                            .transcriptionJobName(jobSummary.transcriptionJobName())
                            .build());

                    // Display additional details
                    System.out.println("Language Code: " +
jobDetails.transcriptionJob().languageCode());
                    System.out.println("Media Format: " +
jobDetails.transcriptionJob().mediaFormat());
                    // Add more details as needed

                    System.out.println("--------------");
                });
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Transcribe audio and get job data

The following code example shows how to:

- Start a transcription job with Amazon Transcribe.
- Wait for the job to complete.
- Get the URI where the transcript is stored.

For more information, see Getting started with Amazon Transcribe.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Transcribes a PCM file.

```
/**
 * To run this AWS code example, ensure that you have set up your development
 * environment, including your AWS credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */

public class TranscribeStreamingDemoFile {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String args[]) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {

        final String USAGE = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <file> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    file - the location of a PCM file to transcribe. In this
 example, ensure the PCM file is 16 hertz (Hz). \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String file = args[0];
        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromFile(file)),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }
```

```
    private static InputStream getStreamFromFile(String file) {
        try {
            File inputFile = new File(file);
            InputStream audioStream = new FileInputStream(inputFile);
            return audioStream;

        } catch (FileNotFoundException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
 mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US)
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw.toString());
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
```

```
                })
                .build();
    }

    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (this.currentSubscription == null) {
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                this.currentSubscription.cancel();
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024 * 1;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream inputStream)
{
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }
```

```
            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }
```

```
            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

Transcribes streaming audio from your computer's microphone.

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoApp {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String[] args)
            throws URISyntaxException, ExecutionException, InterruptedException,
 LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException {

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);
```

```
        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            System.exit(0);
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString())
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw);
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
```

```
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }


    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;
        private final InputStream inputStream;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (currentSubscription == null) {
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                currentSubscription.cancel();
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private final ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private final AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream inputStream)
 {
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }
```

```
        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
```

```
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.
  - GetTranscriptionJob
  - StartTranscriptionJob

Amazon Transcribe Streaming examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Transcribe Streaming.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`StartMedicalStreamTranscription`

The following code example shows how to use `StartMedicalStreamTranscription`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
To run this AWS code example, ensure that you have set up your development
 environment, including your AWS credentials.

 For information, see this documentation topic:

 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html

This code demonstrates the process of starting a medical transcription job using the
 AWS Transcribe
Streaming service, including setting up the audio input stream, configuring the
 transcription request,
and handling the transcription response.
 */

public class TranscribeMedicalStreamingDemoApp {
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String args[])
        throws ExecutionException, InterruptedException, LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
            .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
            .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startMedicalStreamTranscription(getMedicalRequest(16_000),
            new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
            getMedicalResponseHandler());
```

```
        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException {

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            throw new LineUnavailableException("The audio system microphone line is
not supported.");
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionRequest getMedicalRequest(Integer
mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
            .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString()) // For medical
transcription, EN_US is typically used.
            .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
            .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
            .specialty(Specialty.PRIMARYCARE) // Specify the medical specialty.
            .type(Type.CONVERSATION) // Set the type as CONVERSATION or DICTATION.
            .build();
    }

    private static StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler
getMedicalResponseHandler() {
```

```
        return StartMedicalStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
            .onResponse(r -> {
                System.out.println("Received Initial response");
            })
            .onError(e -> {
                System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw.toString());
            })
            .onComplete(() -> {
                System.out.println("=== All records streamed successfully ===");
            })
            .subscriber(event -> {
                List<MedicalResult> results = ((MedicalTranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                if (results.size() > 0) {
                    if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                    }
                }
            })
            .build();
    }

    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (this.currentSubscription == null) {
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                this.currentSubscription.cancel();
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
```

```
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024 * 1;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream inputStream)
{
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);
            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }
```

```
        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartMedicalStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

StartStreamTranscription

The following code example shows how to use `StartStreamTranscription`.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoApp {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String[] args)
            throws URISyntaxException, ExecutionException, InterruptedException,
 LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException {

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            System.exit(0);
        }
```

```
        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
 mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString())
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw);
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
```

```
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }


    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;
        private final InputStream inputStream;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (currentSubscription == null) {
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                currentSubscription.cancel();
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private final ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private final AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream inputStream)
{
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
```

```
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
```

```
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Scenarios

Transcribe an audio file

The following code example shows how to generate a transcription of a source audio file using Amazon Transcribe streaming.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * To run this AWS code example, ensure that you have set up your development
 * environment, including your AWS credentials.
 *
 * For information, see this documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-java/latest/developer-guide/get-started.html
 */
```

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoFile {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String args[]) throws ExecutionException,
 InterruptedException {

        final String USAGE = "\n" +
                "Usage:\n" +
                "    <file> \n\n" +
                "Where:\n" +
                "    file - the location of a PCM file to transcribe. In this
 example, ensure the PCM file is 16 hertz (Hz). \n";

        if (args.length != 1) {
            System.out.println(USAGE);
            System.exit(1);
        }

        String file = args[0];
        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromFile(file)),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromFile(String file) {
        try {
            File inputFile = new File(file);
            InputStream audioStream = new FileInputStream(inputFile);
            return audioStream;

        } catch (FileNotFoundException e) {
            throw new RuntimeException(e);
        }
    }
```

```
    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
 mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US)
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw.toString());
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully ===");
                })
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }

    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }
```

```
        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (this.currentSubscription == null) {
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                this.currentSubscription.cancel();
                this.currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024 * 1;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);

        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream inputStream)
{
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
```

```
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Transcribe audio from a microphone

The following code example shows how to generate a transcription from a microphone using Amazon Transcribe streaming.

SDK for Java 2.x

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public class TranscribeStreamingDemoApp {
    private static final Region REGION = Region.US_EAST_1;
    private static TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient client;

    public static void main(String[] args)
            throws URISyntaxException, ExecutionException, InterruptedException,
 LineUnavailableException {

        client = TranscribeStreamingAsyncClient.builder()
                .credentialsProvider(getCredentials())
                .region(REGION)
                .build();

        CompletableFuture<Void> result =
 client.startStreamTranscription(getRequest(16_000),
                new AudioStreamPublisher(getStreamFromMic()),
                getResponseHandler());

        result.get();
        client.close();
    }

    private static InputStream getStreamFromMic() throws LineUnavailableException {

        // Signed PCM AudioFormat with 16kHz, 16 bit sample size, mono
```

```
        int sampleRate = 16000;
        AudioFormat format = new AudioFormat(sampleRate, 16, 1, true, false);
        DataLine.Info info = new DataLine.Info(TargetDataLine.class, format);

        if (!AudioSystem.isLineSupported(info)) {
            System.out.println("Line not supported");
            System.exit(0);
        }

        TargetDataLine line = (TargetDataLine) AudioSystem.getLine(info);
        line.open(format);
        line.start();

        InputStream audioStream = new AudioInputStream(line);
        return audioStream;
    }

    private static AwsCredentialsProvider getCredentials() {
        return DefaultCredentialsProvider.create();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionRequest getRequest(Integer
mediaSampleRateHertz) {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionRequest.builder()
                .languageCode(LanguageCode.EN_US.toString())
                .mediaEncoding(MediaEncoding.PCM)
                .mediaSampleRateHertz(mediaSampleRateHertz)
                .build();
    }

    private static StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler getResponseHandler() {
        return StartStreamTranscriptionResponseHandler.builder()
                .onResponse(r -> {
                    System.out.println("Received Initial response");
                })
                .onError(e -> {
                    System.out.println(e.getMessage());
                    StringWriter sw = new StringWriter();
                    e.printStackTrace(new PrintWriter(sw));
                    System.out.println("Error Occurred: " + sw);
                })
                .onComplete(() -> {
                    System.out.println("=== All records stream successfully ===");
                })
```

```
                .subscriber(event -> {
                    List<Result> results = ((TranscriptEvent)
 event).transcript().results();
                    if (results.size() > 0) {
                        if (!
results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript().isEmpty()) {

 System.out.println(results.get(0).alternatives().get(0).transcript());
                        }
                    }
                })
                .build();
    }


    private static class AudioStreamPublisher implements Publisher<AudioStream> {
        private static Subscription currentSubscription;
        private final InputStream inputStream;

        private AudioStreamPublisher(InputStream inputStream) {
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void subscribe(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s) {

            if (currentSubscription == null) {
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            } else {
                currentSubscription.cancel();
                currentSubscription = new SubscriptionImpl(s, inputStream);
            }
            s.onSubscribe(currentSubscription);
        }
    }

    public static class SubscriptionImpl implements Subscription {
        private static final int CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES = 1024;
        private final Subscriber<? super AudioStream> subscriber;
        private final InputStream inputStream;
        private final ExecutorService executor = Executors.newFixedThreadPool(1);
        private final AtomicLong demand = new AtomicLong(0);
```

```
        SubscriptionImpl(Subscriber<? super AudioStream> s, InputStream inputStream)
{
            this.subscriber = s;
            this.inputStream = inputStream;
        }

        @Override
        public void request(long n) {
            if (n <= 0) {
                subscriber.onError(new IllegalArgumentException("Demand must be
positive"));
            }

            demand.getAndAdd(n);

            executor.submit(() -> {
                try {
                    do {
                        ByteBuffer audioBuffer = getNextEvent();
                        if (audioBuffer.remaining() > 0) {
                            AudioEvent audioEvent =
audioEventFromBuffer(audioBuffer);
                            subscriber.onNext(audioEvent);
                        } else {
                            subscriber.onComplete();
                            break;
                        }
                    } while (demand.decrementAndGet() > 0);
                } catch (Exception e) {
                    subscriber.onError(e);
                }
            });
        }

        @Override
        public void cancel() {
            executor.shutdown();
        }

        private ByteBuffer getNextEvent() {
            ByteBuffer audioBuffer = null;
            byte[] audioBytes = new byte[CHUNK_SIZE_IN_BYTES];

            int len = 0;
```

```
            try {
                len = inputStream.read(audioBytes);

                if (len <= 0) {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.allocate(0);
                } else {
                    audioBuffer = ByteBuffer.wrap(audioBytes, 0, len);
                }
            } catch (IOException e) {
                throw new UncheckedIOException(e);
            }

            return audioBuffer;
        }

        private AudioEvent audioEventFromBuffer(ByteBuffer bb) {
            return AudioEvent.builder()
                    .audioChunk(SdkBytes.fromByteBuffer(bb))
                    .build();
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Java 2.x API Reference*.

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for Java 2.x

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Java 2.x with Amazon Translate.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Building an Amazon Lex chatbot

The following code example shows how to create a chatbot to engage your website visitors.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Lex API to create a Chatbot within a web application to engage your web site visitors.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon Lex
- Amazon Translate

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for Java 2.x

Shows how to use the Amazon Simple Notification Service Java API to create a web application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run the example that uses the Java Async API, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Java 2.x

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Code examples for SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Kotlin with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Kotlin Developer Guide** – More about using Kotlin with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- API Gateway examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Aurora examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Kotlin
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for Kotlin
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Kotlin
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Kotlin
- OpenSearch Service examples using SDK for Kotlin
- EventBridge examples using SDK for Kotlin
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for Kotlin
- IAM examples using SDK for Kotlin
- AWS IoT examples using SDK for Kotlin
- AWS IoT data examples using SDK for Kotlin
- AWS IoT FleetWise examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for Kotlin

- AWS KMS examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Lambda examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Location examples using SDK for Kotlin
- MediaConvert examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Kotlin
- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Step Functions examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Support examples using SDK for Kotlin
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for Kotlin

API Gateway examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with API Gateway.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Aurora examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the database
 credentials. If you do not create a
secret, this example will not work. For more details, see:
```

```
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

1. Returns a list of the available DB engines.
2. Creates a custom DB parameter group.
3. Gets the parameter groups.
4. Gets the parameters in the group.
5. Modifies the auto_increment_increment parameter.
6. Displays the updated parameter value.
7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions.
8. Creates an Aurora DB cluster database.
9. Waits for DB instance to be ready.
10. Gets a list of instance classes available for the selected engine.
11. Creates a database instance in the cluster.
12. Waits for the database instance in the cluster to be ready.
13. Creates a snapshot.
14. Waits for DB snapshot to be ready.
15. Deletes the DB instance.
16. Deletes the DB cluster.
17. Deletes the DB cluster group.
 */

var slTime: Long = 20

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <dbClusterGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily>
 <dbInstanceClusterIdentifier> <dbName> <dbSnapshotIdentifier> <secretName>
        Where:
            dbClusterGroupName - The database group name.
            dbParameterGroupFamily - The database parameter group name.
            dbInstanceClusterIdentifier - The database instance identifier.
            dbName -  The database name.
            dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.
            secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains
 the database credentials.
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
```

```
    }

    val dbClusterGroupName = args[0]
    val dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1]
    val dbInstanceClusterIdentifier = args[2]
    val dbInstanceIdentifier = args[3]
    val dbName = args[4]
    val dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[5]
    val secretName = args[6]

    val gson = Gson()
    val user = gson.fromJson(getSecretValues(secretName).toString(),
User::class.java)
    val username = user.username
    val userPassword = user.password

    println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines")
    describeAuroraDBEngines()

    println("2. Create a custom parameter group")
    createDBClusterParameterGroup(dbClusterGroupName, dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("3. Get the parameter group")
    describeDbClusterParameterGroups(dbClusterGroupName)

    println("4. Get the parameters in the group")
    describeDbClusterParameters(dbClusterGroupName, 0)

    println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter")
    modifyDBClusterParas(dbClusterGroupName)

    println("6. Display the updated parameter value")
    describeDbClusterParameters(dbClusterGroupName, -1)

    println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions")
    getAllowedClusterEngines(dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("8. Create an Aurora DB cluster database")
    val arnClusterVal = createDBCluster(dbClusterGroupName, dbName,
dbInstanceClusterIdentifier, username, userPassword)
    println("The ARN of the cluster is $arnClusterVal")

    println("9. Wait for DB instance to be ready")
    waitForClusterInstanceReady(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)
```

```
    println("10. Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine")
    val instanceClass = getListInstanceClasses()

    println("11. Create a database instance in the cluster.")
    val clusterDBARN = createDBInstanceCluster(dbInstanceIdentifier,
 dbInstanceClusterIdentifier, instanceClass)
    println("The ARN of the database is $clusterDBARN")

    println("12. Wait for DB instance to be ready")
    waitDBAuroraInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("13. Create a snapshot")
    createDBClusterSnapshot(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier)

    println("14. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready")
    waitSnapshotReady(dbSnapshotIdentifier, dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)

    println("15. Delete the DB instance")
    deleteDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("16. Delete the DB cluster")
    deleteCluster(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier)

    println("17. Delete the DB cluster group")
    if (clusterDBARN != null) {
        deleteDBClusterGroup(dbClusterGroupName, clusterDBARN)
    }
    println("The Scenario has successfully completed.")
}

@Throws(InterruptedException::class)
suspend fun deleteDBClusterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupName: String,
    clusterDBARN: String,
) {
    var isDataDel = false
    var didFind: Boolean
    var instanceARN: String

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
        while (!isDataDel) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances()
```

```
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            val listSize = instanceList?.size
            isDataDel = false
            didFind = false
            var index = 1
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn.toString()
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                        println("$clusterDBARN still exists")
                        didFind = true
                    }
                    if (index == listSize && !didFind) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
 database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true
                    }
                    delay(slTime * 1000)
                    index++
                }
            }
        }
        val clusterParameterGroupRequest =
            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            }

        rdsClient.deleteDbClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest)
        println("$dbClusterGroupName was deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteCluster(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String) {
    val deleteDbClusterRequest =
        DeleteDbClusterRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        rdsClient.deleteDbCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest)
        println("$dbInstanceClusterIdentifier was deleted!")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun deleteDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}

suspend fun waitSnapshotReady(
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
) {
    var snapshotReady = false
    var snapshotReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.")

    val snapshotsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest {
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!snapshotReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest)
            val snapshotList = response.dbClusterSnapshots
            if (snapshotList != null) {
                for (snapshot in snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status.toString()
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true
                    } else {
                        println(".")
                        delay(slTime * 5000)
                    }
                }
```

```
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Snapshot is available!")
}

suspend fun createDBClusterSnapshot(
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
) {
    val snapshotRequest =
        CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest)
        println("The Snapshot ARN is
 ${response.dbClusterSnapshot?.dbClusterSnapshotArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun waitDBAuroraInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")
    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    var endpoint = ""
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            response.dbInstances?.forEach { instance ->
                instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                    endpoint = instance.endpoint?.address.toString()
                    instanceReady = true
                } else {
                    print(".")
                    delay(sleepTime * 1000)
```

```
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database instance is available! The connection endpoint is $endpoint")
}

suspend fun createDBInstanceCluster(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    instanceClassVal: String?,
): String? {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = instanceClassVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
        return response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn
    }
}

suspend fun getListInstanceClasses(): String {
    val optionsRequest =
        DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest {
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            maxRecords = 20
        }
    var instanceClass = ""
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(optionsRequest)
        response.orderableDbInstanceOptions?.forEach { instanceOption ->
            instanceClass = instanceOption.dbInstanceClass.toString()
            println("The instance class is ${instanceOption.dbInstanceClass}")
            println("The engine version is ${instanceOption.engineVersion}")
        }
    }
    return instanceClass
}
```

```
// Waits until the database instance is available.
suspend fun waitForClusterInstanceReady(dbClusterIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")

    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbClustersRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifierVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusters(instanceRequest)
            response.dbClusters?.forEach { cluster ->
                instanceReadyStr = cluster.status.toString()
                if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                    instanceReady = true
                } else {
                    print(".")
                    delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database cluster is available!")
}

suspend fun createDBCluster(
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    dbClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    userName: String?,
    password: String?,
): String? {
    val clusterRequest =
        CreateDbClusterRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifierVal
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            masterUsername = userName
            masterUserPassword = password
```

```
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbCluster(clusterRequest)
        return response.dbCluster?.dbClusterArn
    }
}

// Get a list of allowed engine versions.
suspend fun getAllowedClusterEngines(dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?) {
    val versionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(versionsRequest)
        response.dbEngineVersions?.forEach { dbEngine ->
            println("The engine version is ${dbEngine.engineVersion}")
            println("The engine description is ${dbEngine.dbEngineDescription}")
        }
    }
}

// Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
suspend fun modifyDBClusterParas(dClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val parameter1 =
        Parameter {
            parameterName = "auto_increment_offset"
            applyMethod = ApplyMethod.fromValue("immediate")
            parameterValue = "5"
        }

    val paraList = ArrayList<Parameter>()
    paraList.add(parameter1)
    val groupRequest =
        ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dClusterGroupName
            parameters = paraList
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.modifyDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
```

```
        println("The parameter group ${response.dbClusterParameterGroupName} was
 successfully modified")
    }
}

suspend fun describeDbClusterParameters(
    dbCLusterGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
 auto_increment_increment.
            val paraName = para.parameterName
            if (paraName != null) {
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    println("*** The parameter value is  ${para.parameterValue}")
                    println("*** The parameter data type is ${para.dataType}")
                    println("*** The parameter description is ${para.description}")
                    println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameterGroups(dbClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val groupsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
        response.dbClusterParameterGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createDBClusterParameterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupNameVal: String?,
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
) {
    val groupRequest =
        CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupNameVal
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The group name is
 ${response.dbClusterParameterGroup?.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
    }
}

suspend fun describeAuroraDBEngines() {
    val engineVersionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            defaultOnly = true
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest)
```

```
        response.dbEngineVersions?.forEach { engineOb ->
            println("The name of the DB parameter group family for the database
 engine is ${engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily}")
            println("The name of the database engine ${engineOb.engine}")
            println("The version number of the database engine
 ${engineOb.engineVersion}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
  - DescribeDBClusters
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBCluster(
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    dbClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    userName: String?,
    password: String?,
): String? {
    val clusterRequest =
        CreateDbClusterRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbClusterIdentifierVal
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            masterUsername = userName
            masterUserPassword = password
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbCluster(clusterRequest)
        return response.dbCluster?.dbClusterArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBClusterParameterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupNameVal: String?,
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
) {
    val groupRequest =
        CreateDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupNameVal
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The group name is
 ${response.dbClusterParameterGroup?.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBClusterSnapshot(
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
) {
    val snapshotRequest =
        CreateDbClusterSnapshotRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbClusterSnapshot(snapshotRequest)
        println("The Snapshot ARN is
 ${response.dbClusterSnapshot?.dbClusterSnapshotArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDBInstanceCluster(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal: String?,
    instanceClassVal: String?,
): String? {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifierVal
```

```
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = instanceClassVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
        return response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteCluster(dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String) {
    val deleteDbClusterRequest =
        DeleteDbClusterRequest {
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        rdsClient.deleteDbCluster(deleteDbClusterRequest)
        println("$dbInstanceClusterIdentifier was deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup

The following code example shows how to use DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
@Throws(InterruptedException::class)
suspend fun deleteDBClusterGroup(
    dbClusterGroupName: String,
    clusterDBARN: String,
) {
    var isDataDel = false
    var didFind: Boolean
    var instanceARN: String

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
        while (!isDataDel) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances()
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            val listSize = instanceList?.size
            isDataDel = false
            didFind = false
            var index = 1
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn.toString()
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(clusterDBARN) == 0) {
                        println("$clusterDBARN still exists")
                        didFind = true
                    }
                    if (index == listSize && !didFind) {
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
 database ARN.
                        isDataDel = true
                    }
                    delay(slTime * 1000)
```

```
                    index++
                }
            }
        }
        val clusterParameterGroupRequest =
            DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            }

        rdsClient.deleteDbClusterParameterGroup(clusterParameterGroupRequest)
        println("$dbClusterGroupName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDBInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameterGroups(dbClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val groupsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterParameterGroupsRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbClusterGroupName
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
        response.dbClusterParameterGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.dbClusterParameterGroupArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameters(
    dbCLusterGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
 auto_increment_increment.
            val paraName = para.parameterName
            if (paraName != null) {
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    println("*** The parameter value is  ${para.parameterValue}")
                    println("*** The parameter data type is ${para.dataType}")
                    println("*** The parameter description is ${para.description}")
                    println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
```

```
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun waitSnapshotReady(
    dbSnapshotIdentifier: String?,
    dbInstanceClusterIdentifier: String?,
) {
    var snapshotReady = false
    var snapshotReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.")

    val snapshotsRequest =
        DescribeDbClusterSnapshotsRequest {
            dbClusterSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifier
            dbClusterIdentifier = dbInstanceClusterIdentifier
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!snapshotReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbClusterSnapshots(snapshotsRequest)
            val snapshotList = response.dbClusterSnapshots
            if (snapshotList != null) {
                for (snapshot in snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status.toString()
```

```
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true
                    } else {
                        println(".")
                        delay(slTime * 5000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Snapshot is available!")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeDbClusterParameters(
    dbCLusterGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
            }
        } else {
            DescribeDbClusterParametersRequest {
                dbClusterParameterGroupName = dbCLusterGroupName
```

```
                source = "user"
            }
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
rdsClient.describeDbClusterParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
auto_increment_increment.
            val paraName = para.parameterName
            if (paraName != null) {
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    println("*** The parameter value is  ${para.parameterValue}")
                    println("*** The parameter data type is ${para.dataType}")
                    println("*** The parameter description is ${para.description}")
                    println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get a list of allowed engine versions.
```

```
suspend fun getAllowedClusterEngines(dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?) {
    val versionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "aurora-mysql"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(versionsRequest)
        response.dbEngineVersions?.forEach { dbEngine ->
            println("The engine version is ${dbEngine.engineVersion}")
            println("The engine description is ${dbEngine.dbEngineDescription}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun waitDBAuroraInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")
    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    var endpoint = ""
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
```

```
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            response.dbInstances?.forEach { instance ->
                instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                    endpoint = instance.endpoint?.address.toString()
                    instanceReady = true
                } else {
                    print(".")
                    delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database instance is available! The connection endpoint is $endpoint")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
suspend fun modifyDBClusterParas(dClusterGroupName: String?) {
    val parameter1 =
        Parameter {
            parameterName = "auto_increment_offset"
            applyMethod = ApplyMethod.fromValue("immediate")
            parameterValue = "5"
        }

    val paraList = ArrayList<Parameter>()
```

```
    paraList.add(parameter1)
    val groupRequest =
        ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupRequest {
            dbClusterParameterGroupName = dClusterGroupName
            parameters = paraList
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.modifyDbClusterParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The parameter group ${response.dbClusterParameterGroupName} was
 successfully modified")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <groupName> <launchTemplateName> <serviceLinkedRoleARN> <vpcZoneId>

    Where:
        groupName - The name of the Auto Scaling group.
        launchTemplateName - The name of the launch template.
        serviceLinkedRoleARN - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the service-linked
 role that the Auto Scaling group uses.
        vpcZoneId - A subnet Id for a virtual private cloud (VPC) where instances in
 the Auto Scaling group can be created.
    """

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val groupName = args[0]
    val launchTemplateName = args[1]
    val serviceLinkedRoleARN = args[2]
    val vpcZoneId = args[3]

    println("**** Create an Auto Scaling group named $groupName")
    createAutoScalingGroup(groupName, launchTemplateName, serviceLinkedRoleARN,
 vpcZoneId)

    println("Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise, an
 empty instance Id is returned")
    delay(60000)

    val instanceId = getSpecificAutoScaling(groupName)
    if (instanceId.compareTo("") == 0) {
        println("Error - no instance Id value")
        exitProcess(1)
    } else {
        println("The instance Id value is $instanceId")
    }

    println("**** Describe Auto Scaling with the Id value $instanceId")
    describeAutoScalingInstance(instanceId)
```

```
    println("**** Enable metrics collection $instanceId")
    enableMetricsCollection(groupName)

    println("**** Update an Auto Scaling group to maximum size of 3")
    updateAutoScalingGroup(groupName, launchTemplateName, serviceLinkedRoleARN)

    println("**** Describe all Auto Scaling groups to show the current state of the
 groups")
    describeAutoScalingGroups(groupName)

    println("**** Describe account details")
    describeAccountLimits()

    println("Wait 1 min for the resources, including the instance. Otherwise, an
 empty instance Id is returned")
    delay(60000)

    println("**** Set desired capacity to 2")
    setDesiredCapacity(groupName)

    println("**** Get the two instance Id values and state")
    getAutoScalingGroups(groupName)

    println("**** List the scaling activities that have occurred for the group")
    describeScalingActivities(groupName)

    println("**** Terminate an instance in the Auto Scaling group")
    terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(instanceId)

    println("**** Stop the metrics collection")
    disableMetricsCollection(groupName)

    println("**** Delete the Auto Scaling group")
    deleteSpecificAutoScalingGroup(groupName)
}

suspend fun describeAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val groupsReques =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
```

```
        val response = autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(groupsReques)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The service to use for the health checks:
 ${group.healthCheckType}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun disableMetricsCollection(groupName: String) {
    val disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
        DisableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest)
        println("The disable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun describeScalingActivities(groupName: String?) {
    val scalingActivitiesRequest =
        DescribeScalingActivitiesRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeScalingActivities(scalingActivitiesRequest)
        response.activities?.forEach { activity ->
            println("The activity Id is ${activity.activityId}")
            println("The activity details are ${activity.details}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val scalingGroupsRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }
```

```
    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.autoScalingGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.autoScalingGroupArn}")
            group.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                println("The instance id is ${instance.instanceId}")
                println("The lifecycle state is " + instance.lifecycleState)
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun setDesiredCapacity(groupName: String) {
    val capacityRequest =
        SetDesiredCapacityRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            desiredCapacity = 2
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest)
        println("You set the DesiredCapacity to 2")
    }
}

suspend fun updateAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val groupRequest =
        UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            maxSize = 3
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
        }
```

```
    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group  $groupName")
    }
}

suspend fun createAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
    vpcZoneIdVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val request =
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            availabilityZones = listOf("us-east-1a")
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
            maxSize = 1
            minSize = 1
            vpcZoneIdentifier = vpcZoneIdVal
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
        }

    // This object is required for the waiter call.
    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
```

```
        println("$groupName was created!")
    }
}

suspend fun describeAutoScalingInstance(id: String) {
    val describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(id)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest)
        response.autoScalingInstances?.forEach { group ->
            println("The instance lifecycle state is: ${group.lifecycleState}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun enableMetricsCollection(groupName: String?) {
    val collectionRequest =
        EnableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
            granularity = "1Minute"
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The enable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun getSpecificAutoScaling(groupName: String): String {
    var instanceId = ""
    val scalingGroupsRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
```

```
            println("The group name is ${group.autoScalingGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.autoScalingGroupArn}")

            group.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                instanceId = instance.instanceId.toString()
            }
        }
    }
    return instanceId
}

suspend fun describeAccountLimits() {
    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAccountLimits(DescribeAccountLimitsRequest {})
        println("The max number of Auto Scaling groups is
 ${response.maxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups}")
        println("The current number of Auto Scaling groups is
 ${response.numberOfAutoScalingGroups}")
    }
}

suspend fun terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(instanceIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request)
        println("You have terminated instance $instanceIdVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSpecificAutoScalingGroup(groupName: String) {
    val deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            forceDelete = true
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest)
```

```
        println("You successfully deleted $groupName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
    vpcZoneIdVal: String,
) {
```

```
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val request =
        CreateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            availabilityZones = listOf("us-east-1a")
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
            maxSize = 1
            minSize = 1
            vpcZoneIdentifier = vpcZoneIdVal
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
        }

    // This object is required for the waiter call.
    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.createAutoScalingGroup(request)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("$groupName was created!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSpecificAutoScalingGroup(groupName: String) {
    val deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest =
        DeleteAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            forceDelete = true
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.deleteAutoScalingGroup(deleteAutoScalingGroupRequest)
        println("You successfully deleted $groupName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val scalingGroupsRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(scalingGroupsRequest)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The group name is ${group.autoScalingGroupName}")
            println("The group ARN is ${group.autoScalingGroupArn}")
            group.instances?.forEach { instance ->
```

```
                println("The instance id is ${instance.instanceId}")
                println("The lifecycle state is " + instance.lifecycleState)
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAutoScalingInstance(id: String) {
    val describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest =
        DescribeAutoScalingInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(id)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response =
 autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingInstances(describeAutoScalingInstancesRequest)
        response.autoScalingInstances?.forEach { group ->
            println("The instance lifecycle state is: ${group.lifecycleState}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAutoScalingGroups(groupName: String) {
    val groupsReques =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        val response = autoScalingClient.describeAutoScalingGroups(groupsReques)
        response.autoScalingGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("The service to use for the health checks:
 ${group.healthCheckType}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disableMetricsCollection(groupName: String) {
    val disableMetricsCollectionRequest =
        DisableMetricsCollectionRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.disableMetricsCollection(disableMetricsCollectionRequest)
        println("The disable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun enableMetricsCollection(groupName: String?) {
    val collectionRequest =
        EnableMetricsCollectionRequest {
```

```
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            metrics = listOf("GroupMaxSize")
            granularity = "1Minute"
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.enableMetricsCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The enable metrics collection operation was successful")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun setDesiredCapacity(groupName: String) {
    val capacityRequest =
        SetDesiredCapacityRequest {
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            desiredCapacity = 2
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.setDesiredCapacity(capacityRequest)
        println("You set the DesiredCapacity to 2")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(instanceIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = false
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(request)
        println("You have terminated instance $instanceIdVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateAutoScalingGroup(
    groupName: String,
    launchTemplateNameVal: String,
    serviceLinkedRoleARNVal: String,
) {
    val templateSpecification =
        LaunchTemplateSpecification {
            launchTemplateName = launchTemplateNameVal
        }

    val groupRequest =
        UpdateAutoScalingGroupRequest {
            maxSize = 3
            serviceLinkedRoleArn = serviceLinkedRoleARNVal
            autoScalingGroupName = groupName
            launchTemplate = templateSpecification
        }

    val groupsRequestWaiter =
        DescribeAutoScalingGroupsRequest {
            autoScalingGroupNames = listOf(groupName)
        }

    AutoScalingClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { autoScalingClient ->
        autoScalingClient.updateAutoScalingGroup(groupRequest)
        autoScalingClient.waitUntilGroupExists(groupsRequestWaiter)
        println("You successfully updated the Auto Scaling group  $groupName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

```
suspend fun listFoundationModels(): List<FoundationModelSummary>? {
    BedrockClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { bedrockClient ->
        val response =
 bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(ListFoundationModelsRequest {})
        response.modelSummaries?.forEach { model ->
            println("==========================================")
            println(" Model ID: ${model.modelId}")
            println("------------------------------------------")
            println(" Name: ${model.modelName}")
            println(" Provider: ${model.providerName}")
            println(" Input modalities: ${model.inputModalities}")
            println(" Output modalities: ${model.outputModalities}")
            println(" Supported customizations: ${model.customizationsSupported}")
            println(" Supported inference types: ${model.inferenceTypesSupported}")
            println("------------------------------------------\n")
        }
        return response.modelSummaries
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Titan Text

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message
```

```
/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models to
 generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
suspend fun main() {
    converse().also { println(it) }
}

suspend fun converse(): String {
    // Create and configure the Bedrock runtime client
    BedrockRuntimeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        val modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        val prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
        val message = Message {
            role = ConversationRole.User
            content = listOf(ContentBlock.Text(prompt))
        }

        // Configure the request with optional model parameters
        val request = ConverseRequest {
            this.modelId = modelId
            messages = listOf(message)
            inferenceConfig {
                maxTokens = 500 // Maximum response length
                temperature = 0.5F // Lower values: more focused output
                // topP = 0.8F // Alternative to temperature
            }
        }

        // Send the request and process the model's response
        runCatching {
            val response = client.converse(request)
            return response.output!!.asMessage().content.first().asText()
```

```
        }.getOrElse { error ->
            error.message?.let { e -> System.err.println("ERROR: Can't invoke
 '$modelId'. Reason: $e") }
            throw RuntimeException("Failed to generate text with model $modelId",
 error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ContentBlock
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConversationRole
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamOutput
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.ConverseStreamRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.Message

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Nova foundation models
 * to generate streaming text responses.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a message with a prompt
```

```
 * - Configure a streaming request with parameters
 * - Process the response stream in real time
 */
suspend fun main() {
    converseStream()
}

suspend fun converseStream(): String {
    // A buffer to collect the complete response
    val completeResponseBuffer = StringBuilder()

    // Create and configure the Bedrock runtime client
    BedrockRuntimeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        val modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

        // Create the message with the user's prompt
        val prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in a
 paragraph."
        val message = Message {
            role = ConversationRole.User
            content = listOf(ContentBlock.Text(prompt))
        }

        // Configure the request with optional model parameters
        val request = ConverseStreamRequest {
            this.modelId = modelId
            messages = listOf(message)
            inferenceConfig {
                maxTokens = 500 // Maximum response length
                temperature = 0.5F // Lower values: more focused output
                // topP = 0.8F // Alternative to temperature
            }
        }

        // Process the streaming response
        runCatching {
            client.converseStream(request) { response ->
                response.stream?.collect { chunk ->
                    when (chunk) {
                        is ConverseStreamOutput.ContentBlockDelta -> {
```

```
                            // Process each text chunk as it arrives
                            chunk.value.delta?.asText()?.let { text ->
                                print(text)
                                System.out.flush() // Ensure immediate output
                                completeResponseBuffer.append(text)
                            }
                        }
                        else -> {} // Other output block types can be handled as
 needed
                    }
                }
            }
        }.onFailure { error ->
            error.message?.let { e -> System.err.println("ERROR: Can't invoke
 '$modelId'. Reason: $e") }
            throw RuntimeException("Failed to generate text with model $modelId:
 $error", error)
        }
    }

    return completeResponseBuffer.toString()
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Titan Text

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to generate a short story.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.BedrockRuntimeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.bedrockruntime.model.InvokeModelRequest
import kotlinx.serialization.Serializable
import kotlinx.serialization.json.Json

/**
 * This example demonstrates how to use the Amazon Titan foundation models to
 generate text.
 * It shows how to:
 * - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
 * - Create a request payload
 * - Configure and send a request
 * - Process the response
 */
suspend fun main() {
    invokeModel().also { println(it) }
}

// Data class for parsing the model's response
@Serializable
private data class BedrockResponse(val results: List<Result>) {
    @Serializable
    data class Result(
        val outputText: String,
    )
}

// Initialize JSON parser with relaxed configuration
private val json = Json { ignoreUnknownKeys = true }

suspend fun invokeModel(): String {
    // Create and configure the Bedrock runtime client
    BedrockRuntimeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->

        // Specify the model ID. For the latest available models, see:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/models-
supported.html
        val modelId = "amazon.titan-text-lite-v1"

        // Create the request payload with optional configuration parameters
        // For detailed parameter descriptions, see:
```

```
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-text.html
        val prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
        val request = """
            {
                "inputText": "$prompt",
                "textGenerationConfig": {
                    "maxTokenCount": 500,
                    "temperature": 0.5
                }
            }
        """.trimIndent()

        // Send the request and process the model's response
        runCatching {
            // Send the request to the model
            val response = client.invokeModel(
                InvokeModelRequest {
                    this.modelId = modelId
                    body = request.toByteArray()
                },
            )

            // Convert the response bytes to a JSON string
            val jsonResponse = response.body.toString(Charsets.UTF_8)

            // Parse the JSON into a Kotlin object
            val parsedResponse =
 json.decodeFromString<BedrockResponse>(jsonResponse)

            // Extract and return the generated text
            return parsedResponse.results.firstOrNull()!!.outputText
        }.getOrElse { error ->
            error.message?.let { msg ->
                System.err.println("ERROR: Can't invoke '$modelId'. Reason: $msg")
            }
            throw RuntimeException("Failed to generate text with model $modelId",
 error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with CloudWatch.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello CloudWatch

The following code examples show how to get started using CloudWatch.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
           <namespace>
        Where:
```

```
            namespace - The namespace to filter against (for example, AWS/EC2).
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val namespace = args[0]
    listAllMets(namespace)
}

suspend fun listAllMets(namespaceVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listMetricsPaginated(request)
            .transform { it.metrics?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.metricName}")
                println("Namespace is ${obj.namespace}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List CloudWatch namespaces and metrics.
- Get statistics for a metric and for estimated billing.
- Create and update a dashboard.
- Create and add data to a metric.
- Create and trigger an alarm, then view alarm history.
- Add an anomaly detector.
- Get a metric image, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating CloudWatch features.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 To enable billing metrics and statistics for this example, make sure billing alerts
 are enabled for your account:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonCloudWatch/latest/monitoring/
monitor_estimated_charges_with_cloudwatch.html#turning_on_billing_metrics

 This Kotlin code example performs the following tasks:

 1. List available namespaces from Amazon CloudWatch. Select a namespace from the
 list.
 2. List available metrics within the selected namespace.
 3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.
 4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.
 5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.
```

```
 6. List dashboards using a paginator.
 7. Create a new custom metric by adding data for it.
 8. Add the custom metric to the dashboard.
 9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.
 10. Describe current alarms.
 11. Get current data for the new custom metric.
 12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.
 13. Check the alarm state using the action DescribeAlarmsForMetric.
 14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.
 15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.
 16. Describe current anomaly detectors.
 17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.
 18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.
 */

val DASHES: String? = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <myDate> <costDateWeek> <dashboardName> <dashboardJson> <dashboardAdd>
 <settings> <metricImage>

        Where:
            myDate - The start date to use to get metric statistics. (For example,
 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)
            costDateWeek - The start date to use to get AWS Billing and Cost
 Management statistics. (For example, 2023-01-11T18:35:24.00Z.)
            dashboardName - The name of the dashboard to create.
            dashboardJson - The location of a JSON file to use to create a
 dashboard. (See Readme file.)
            dashboardAdd - The location of a JSON file to use to update a dashboard.
 (See Readme file.)
            settings - The location of a JSON file from which various values are
 read. (See Readme file.)
            metricImage - The location of a BMP file that is used to create a
 graph.
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        System.exit(1)
    }
```

```
    val myDate = args[0]
    val costDateWeek = args[1]
    val dashboardName = args[2]
    val dashboardJson = args[3]
    val dashboardAdd = args[4]
    val settings = args[5]
    var metricImage = args[6]
    val dataPoint = "10.0".toDouble()
    val inOb = Scanner(System.`in`)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. List at least five available unique namespaces from Amazon
 CloudWatch. Select a CloudWatch namespace from the list.")
    val list: ArrayList<String> = listNameSpaces()
    for (z in 0..4) {
        println("    ${z + 1}. ${list[z]}")
    }

    var selectedNamespace: String
    var selectedMetrics = ""
    var num = inOb.nextLine().toInt()
    println("You selected $num")

    if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
        selectedNamespace = list[num - 1]
    } else {
        println("You did not select a valid option.")
        exitProcess(1)
    }
    println("You selected $selectedNamespace")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List available metrics within the selected namespace and select one
 from the list.")
    val metList = listMets(selectedNamespace)
    for (z in 0..4) {
        println("    ${ z + 1}. ${metList?.get(z)}")
    }
    num = inOb.nextLine().toInt()
```

```
    if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
        selectedMetrics = metList!![num - 1]
    } else {
        println("You did not select a valid option.")
        System.exit(1)
    }
    println("You selected $selectedMetrics")
    val myDimension = getSpecificMet(selectedNamespace)
    if (myDimension == null) {
        println("Error - Dimension is null")
        exitProcess(1)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Get statistics for the selected metric over the last day.")
    val metricOption: String
    val statTypes = ArrayList<String>()
    statTypes.add("SampleCount")
    statTypes.add("Average")
    statTypes.add("Sum")
    statTypes.add("Minimum")
    statTypes.add("Maximum")

    for (t in 0..4) {
        println("    ${t + 1}. ${statTypes[t]}")
    }
    println("Select a metric statistic by entering a number from the preceding
list:")
    num = inOb.nextLine().toInt()
    if (1 <= num && num <= 5) {
        metricOption = statTypes[num - 1]
    } else {
        println("You did not select a valid option.")
        exitProcess(1)
    }
    println("You selected $metricOption")
    getAndDisplayMetricStatistics(selectedNamespace, selectedMetrics, metricOption,
myDate, myDimension)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Get CloudWatch estimated billing for the last week.")
    getMetricStatistics(costDateWeek)
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Create a new CloudWatch dashboard with metrics.")
    createDashboardWithMetrics(dashboardName, dashboardJson)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. List dashboards using a paginator.")
    listDashboards()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Create a new custom metric by adding data to it.")
    createNewCustomMetric(dataPoint)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Add an additional metric to the dashboard.")
    addMetricToDashboard(dashboardAdd, dashboardName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Create an alarm for the custom metric.")
    val alarmName: String = createAlarm(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Describe 10 current alarms.")
    describeAlarms()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Get current data for the new custom metric.")
    getCustomMetricData(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Push data into the custom metric to trigger the alarm.")
    addMetricDataForAlarm(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Check the alarm state using the action DescribeAlarmsForMetric.")
```

```
    checkForMetricAlarm(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Get alarm history for the new alarm.")
    getAlarmHistory(settings, myDate)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Add an anomaly detector for the custom metric.")
    addAnomalyDetector(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Describe current anomaly detectors.")
    describeAnomalyDetectors(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Get a metric image for the custom metric.")
    getAndOpenMetricImage(metricImage)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("18. Clean up the Amazon CloudWatch resources.")
    deleteDashboard(dashboardName)
    deleteAlarm(alarmName)
    deleteAnomalyDetector(settings)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The Amazon CloudWatch example scenario is complete.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteAnomalyDetector(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
```

```
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
        }

    val request =
        DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAnomalyDetector(request)
        println("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteAlarm(alarmNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteAlarmsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarmNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAlarms(request)
        println("Successfully deleted alarm $alarmNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDashboard(dashboardName: String) {
    val dashboardsRequest =
        DeleteDashboardsRequest {
            dashboardNames = listOf(dashboardName)
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
        println("$dashboardName was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun getAndOpenMetricImage(fileName: String) {
    println("Getting Image data for custom metric.")
    val myJSON = """{
        "title": "Example Metric Graph",
        "view": "timeSeries",
```

```
        "stacked ": false,
        "period": 10,
        "width": 1400,
        "height": 600,
        "metrics": [
            [
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            "Currency",
            "USD"
            ]
        ]
        }"""

    val imageRequest =
        GetMetricWidgetImageRequest {
            metricWidget = myJSON
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
        val bytes = response.metricWidgetImage
        if (bytes != null) {
            File(fileName).writeBytes(bytes)
        }
    }
    println("You have successfully written data to $fileName")
}

suspend fun describeAnomalyDetectors(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val detectorsRequest =
        DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest)
```

```
        response.anomalyDetectors?.forEach { detector ->
            println("Metric name:
 ${detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector?.metricName}")
            println("State: ${detector.stateValue}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun addAnomalyDetector(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
        }

    val anomalyDetectorRequest =
        PutAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest)
        println("Added anomaly detector for metric $customMetricName.")
    }
}

suspend fun getAlarmHistory(
    fileName: String,
    date: String,
) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val alarmNameVal = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText()
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDateVal = Instant.now()
```

```
    val historyRequest =
        DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest {
            startDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            endDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDateVal)
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            historyItemType = HistoryItemType.Action
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarmHistory(historyRequest)
        val historyItems = response.alarmHistoryItems
        if (historyItems != null) {
            if (historyItems.isEmpty()) {
                println("No alarm history data found for $alarmNameVal.")
            } else {
                for (item in historyItems) {
                    println("History summary ${item.historySummary}")
                    println("Time stamp: ${item.timestamp}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun checkForMetricAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
    var hasAlarm = false
    var retries = 10

    val metricRequest =
        DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        while (!hasAlarm && retries > 0) {
```

```
            val response = cwClient.describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest)
            if (response.metricAlarms?.count()!! > 0) {
                hasAlarm = true
            }
            retries--
            delay(20000)
            println(".")
        }
        if (!hasAlarm) {
            println("No Alarm state found for $customMetricName after 10 retries.")
        } else {
            println("Alarm state found for $customMetricName.")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun addMetricDataForAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    // Set an Instant object.
    val time =
 ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT)
    val instant = Instant.parse(time)
    val datum =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1001.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val datum2 =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1002.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
```

```
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val metricDataList = ArrayList<MetricDatum>()
    metricDataList.add(datum)
    metricDataList.add(datum2)

    val request =
        PutMetricDataRequest {
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            metricData = metricDataList
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricData(request)
        println("Added metric values for for metric $customMetricName")
    }
}

suspend fun getCustomMetricData(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    // Set the date.
    val nowDate = Instant.now()
    val hours: Long = 1
    val minutes: Long = 30
    val date2 =
        nowDate.plus(hours, ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(
            minutes,
            ChronoUnit.MINUTES,
        )

    val met =
        Metric {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }

    val metStat =
        MetricStat {
```

```
            stat = "Maximum"
            period = 1
            metric = met
        }

    val dataQUery =
        MetricDataQuery {
            metricStat = metStat
            id = "foo2"
            returnData = true
        }

    val dq = ArrayList<MetricDataQuery>()
    dq.add(dataQUery)
    val getMetReq =
        GetMetricDataRequest {
            maxDatapoints = 10
            scanBy = ScanBy.TimestampDescending
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(nowDate)
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(date2)
            metricDataQueries = dq
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricData(getMetReq)
        response.metricDataResults?.forEach { item ->
            println("The label is ${item.label}")
            println("The status code is ${item.statusCode}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeAlarms() {
    val typeList = ArrayList<AlarmType>()
    typeList.add(AlarmType.MetricAlarm)
    val alarmsRequest =
        DescribeAlarmsRequest {
            alarmTypes = typeList
            maxRecords = 10
        }
```

```
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
        response.metricAlarms?.forEach { alarm ->
            println("Alarm name: ${alarm.alarmName}")
            println("Alarm description: ${alarm.alarmDescription}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createAlarm(fileName: String): String {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode: JsonNode = ObjectMapper().readTree(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
    val alarmNameVal = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText()
    val emailTopic = rootNode.findValue("emailTopic").asText()
    val accountId = rootNode.findValue("accountId").asText()
    val region2 = rootNode.findValue("region").asText()

    // Create a List for alarm actions.
    val alarmActionObs: MutableList<String> = ArrayList()
    alarmActionObs.add("arn:aws:sns:$region2:$accountId:$emailTopic")
    val alarmRequest =
        PutMetricAlarmRequest {
            alarmActions = alarmActionObs
            alarmDescription = "Example metric alarm"
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            comparisonOperator = ComparisonOperator.GreaterThanOrEqualToThreshold
            threshold = 100.00
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            evaluationPeriods = 1
            period = 10
            statistic = Statistic.Maximum
            datapointsToAlarm = 1
            treatMissingData = "ignore"
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricAlarm(alarmRequest)
        println("$alarmNameVal was successfully created!")
        return alarmNameVal
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun addMetricToDashboard(
    fileNameVal: String,
    dashboardNameVal: String,
) {
    val dashboardRequest =
        PutDashboardRequest {
            dashboardName = dashboardNameVal
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
        println("$dashboardNameVal was successfully updated.")
    }
}

suspend fun createNewCustomMetric(dataPoint: Double) {
    val dimension =
        Dimension {
            name = "UNIQUE_PAGES"
            value = "URLS"
        }

    // Set an Instant object.
    val time =
 ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT)
    val instant = Instant.parse(time)
    val datum =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = "PAGES_VISITED"
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = dataPoint
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
            dimensions = listOf(dimension)
        }

    val request =
        PutMetricDataRequest {
            namespace = "SITE/TRAFFIC"
```

```
            metricData = listOf(datum)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricData(request)
        println("Added metric values for for metric PAGES_VISITED")
    }
}

suspend fun listDashboards() {
    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listDashboardsPaginated({})
            .transform { it.dashboardEntries?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.dashboardName}")
                println("Dashboard ARN is ${obj.dashboardArn}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun createDashboardWithMetrics(
    dashboardNameVal: String,
    fileNameVal: String,
) {
    val dashboardRequest =
        PutDashboardRequest {
            dashboardName = dashboardNameVal
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
        println("$dashboardNameVal was successfully created.")
        val messages = response.dashboardValidationMessages
        if (messages != null) {
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                println("There are no messages in the new Dashboard")
            } else {
                for (message in messages) {
                    println("Message is: ${message.message}")
                }
            }
        }
```

```
    }
}

fun readFileAsString(file: String): String =
 String(Files.readAllBytes(Paths.get(file)))

suspend fun getMetricStatistics(costDateWeek: String?) {
    val start = Instant.parse(costDateWeek)
    val endDate = Instant.now()
    val dimension =
        Dimension {
            name = "Currency"
            value = "USD"
        }

    val dimensionList: MutableList<Dimension> = ArrayList()
    dimensionList.add(dimension)

    val statisticsRequest =
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest {
            metricName = "EstimatedCharges"
            namespace = "AWS/Billing"
            dimensions = dimensionList
            statistics = listOf(Statistic.Maximum)
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDate)
            period = 86400
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
        val data: List<Datapoint>? = response.datapoints
        if (data != null) {
            if (!data.isEmpty()) {
                for (datapoint in data) {
                    println("Timestamp:  ${datapoint.timestamp} Maximum value:
 ${datapoint.maximum}")
                }
            } else {
                println("The returned data list is empty")
            }
```

```
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getAndDisplayMetricStatistics(
    nameSpaceVal: String,
    metVal: String,
    metricOption: String,
    date: String,
    myDimension: Dimension,
) {
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDate = Instant.now()
    val statisticsRequest =
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest {
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDate)
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            dimensions = listOf(myDimension)
            metricName = metVal
            namespace = nameSpaceVal
            period = 86400
            statistics = listOf(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
        }

    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
        val data = response.datapoints
        if (data != null) {
            if (data.isNotEmpty()) {
                for (datapoint in data) {
                    println("Timestamp: ${datapoint.timestamp} Maximum value:
 ${datapoint.maximum}")
                }
            } else {
                println("The returned data list is empty")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun listMets(namespaceVal: String?): ArrayList<String>? {
    val metList = ArrayList<String>()
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val reponse = cwClient.listMetrics(request)
        reponse.metrics?.forEach { metrics ->
            val data = metrics.metricName
            if (!metList.contains(data)) {
                metList.add(data!!)
            }
        }
    }
    return metList
}

suspend fun getSpecificMet(namespaceVal: String?): Dimension? {
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.listMetrics(request)
        val myList = response.metrics
        if (myList != null) {
            return myList[0].dimensions?.get(0)
        }
    }
    return null
}

suspend fun listNameSpaces(): ArrayList<String> {
    val nameSpaceList = ArrayList<String>()
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.listMetrics(ListMetricsRequest {})
        response.metrics?.forEach { metrics ->
            val data = metrics.namespace
            if (!nameSpaceList.contains(data)) {
                nameSpaceList.add(data!!)
            }
        }
    }
```

```
    return nameSpaceList
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DeleteAnomalyDetector
  - DeleteDashboards
  - DescribeAlarmHistory
  - DescribeAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DescribeAnomalyDetectors
  - GetMetricData
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - GetMetricWidgetImage
  - ListMetrics
  - PutAnomalyDetector
  - PutDashboard
  - PutMetricAlarm
  - PutMetricData

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteAlarm(alarmNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteAlarmsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarmNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAlarms(request)
        println("Successfully deleted alarm $alarmNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteAnomalyDetector`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAnomalyDetector`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteAnomalyDetector(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
        }
```

```
    val request =
        DeleteAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteAnomalyDetector(request)
        println("Successfully deleted the Anomaly Detector.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteDashboards`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDashboards`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDashboard(dashboardName: String) {
    val dashboardsRequest =
        DeleteDashboardsRequest {
            dashboardNames = listOf(dashboardName)
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.deleteDashboards(dashboardsRequest)
        println("$dashboardName was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAlarmHistory`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmHistory`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAlarmHistory(
    fileName: String,
    date: String,
) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val alarmNameVal = rootNode.findValue("exampleAlarmName").asText()
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDateVal = Instant.now()

    val historyRequest =
        DescribeAlarmHistoryRequest {
            startDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            endDate =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDateVal)
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
            historyItemType = HistoryItemType.Action
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarmHistory(historyRequest)
        val historyItems = response.alarmHistoryItems
        if (historyItems != null) {
            if (historyItems.isEmpty()) {
                println("No alarm history data found for $alarmNameVal.")
            } else {
                for (item in historyItems) {
```

```
                    println("History summary ${item.historySummary}")
                    println("Time stamp: ${item.timestamp}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmHistory in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarms`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAlarms() {
    val typeList = ArrayList<AlarmType>()
    typeList.add(AlarmType.MetricAlarm)
    val alarmsRequest =
        DescribeAlarmsRequest {
            alarmTypes = typeList
            maxRecords = 10
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAlarms(alarmsRequest)
        response.metricAlarms?.forEach { alarm ->
            println("Alarm name: ${alarm.alarmName}")
            println("Alarm description: ${alarm.alarmDescription}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkForMetricAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
    var hasAlarm = false
    var retries = 10

    val metricRequest =
        DescribeAlarmsForMetricRequest {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        while (!hasAlarm && retries > 0) {
            val response = cwClient.describeAlarmsForMetric(metricRequest)
            if (response.metricAlarms?.count()!! > 0) {
                hasAlarm = true
            }
            retries--
            delay(20000)
            println(".")
        }
        if (!hasAlarm) {
            println("No Alarm state found for $customMetricName after 10 retries.")
        } else {
            println("Alarm state found for $customMetricName.")
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAnomalyDetectors`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAnomalyDetectors`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAnomalyDetectors(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val detectorsRequest =
        DescribeAnomalyDetectorsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.describeAnomalyDetectors(detectorsRequest)
        response.anomalyDetectors?.forEach { detector ->
            println("Metric name:
 ${detector.singleMetricAnomalyDetector?.metricName}")
            println("State: ${detector.stateValue}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAnomalyDetectors in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disableActions(alarmName: String) {
    val request =
        DisableAlarmActionsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarmName)
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.disableAlarmActions(request)
        println("Successfully disabled actions on alarm $alarmName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun enableActions(alarm: String) {
    val request =
        EnableAlarmActionsRequest {
            alarmNames = listOf(alarm)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.enableAlarmActions(request)
        println("Successfully enabled actions on alarm $alarm")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricData`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getCustomMetricData(fileName: String) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
```

```
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    // Set the date.
    val nowDate = Instant.now()
    val hours: Long = 1
    val minutes: Long = 30
    val date2 =
        nowDate.plus(hours, ChronoUnit.HOURS).plus(
            minutes,
            ChronoUnit.MINUTES,
        )

    val met =
        Metric {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
        }

    val metStat =
        MetricStat {
            stat = "Maximum"
            period = 1
            metric = met
        }

    val dataQUery =
        MetricDataQuery {
            metricStat = metStat
            id = "foo2"
            returnData = true
        }

    val dq = ArrayList<MetricDataQuery>()
    dq.add(dataQUery)
    val getMetReq =
        GetMetricDataRequest {
            maxDatapoints = 10
            scanBy = ScanBy.TimestampDescending
            startTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(nowDate)
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(date2)
```

```
            metricDataQueries = dq
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricData(getMetReq)
        response.metricDataResults?.forEach { item ->
            println("The label is ${item.label}")
            println("The status code is ${item.statusCode}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetMetricData in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetMetricStatistics`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricStatistics`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAndDisplayMetricStatistics(
    nameSpaceVal: String,
    metVal: String,
    metricOption: String,
    date: String,
    myDimension: Dimension,
) {
    val start = Instant.parse(date)
    val endDate = Instant.now()
    val statisticsRequest =
        GetMetricStatisticsRequest {
            endTime =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(endDate)
            startTime =
```

```
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(start)
            dimensions = listOf(myDimension)
            metricName = metVal
            namespace = nameSpaceVal
            period = 86400
            statistics = listOf(Statistic.fromValue(metricOption))
        }

    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricStatistics(statisticsRequest)
        val data = response.datapoints
        if (data != null) {
            if (data.isNotEmpty()) {
                for (datapoint in data) {
                    println("Timestamp: ${datapoint.timestamp} Maximum value:
 ${datapoint.maximum}")
                }
            } else {
                println("The returned data list is empty")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetMetricWidgetImage`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricWidgetImage`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAndOpenMetricImage(fileName: String) {
```

```
    println("Getting Image data for custom metric.")
    val myJSON = """{
        "title": "Example Metric Graph",
        "view": "timeSeries",
        "stacked ": false,
        "period": 10,
        "width": 1400,
        "height": 600,
        "metrics": [
            [
            "AWS/Billing",
            "EstimatedCharges",
            "Currency",
            "USD"
            ]
        ]
        }"""

    val imageRequest =
        GetMetricWidgetImageRequest {
            metricWidget = myJSON
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.getMetricWidgetImage(imageRequest)
        val bytes = response.metricWidgetImage
        if (bytes != null) {
            File(fileName).writeBytes(bytes)
        }
    }
    println("You have successfully written data to $fileName")
}
```

- For API details, see GetMetricWidgetImage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListDashboards`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDashboards`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listDashboards() {
    CloudWatchClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient
            .listDashboardsPaginated({})
            .transform { it.dashboardEntries?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name is ${obj.dashboardName}")
                println("Dashboard ARN is ${obj.dashboardArn}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListMetrics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listMets(namespaceVal: String?): ArrayList<String>? {
    val metList = ArrayList<String>()
    val request =
        ListMetricsRequest {
```

```
            namespace = namespaceVal
        }
    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val reponse = cwClient.listMetrics(request)
        reponse.metrics?.forEach { metrics ->
            val data = metrics.metricName
            if (!metList.contains(data)) {
                metList.add(data!!)
            }
        }
    }
    return metList
}
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutAnomalyDetector`

The following code example shows how to use `PutAnomalyDetector`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addAnomalyDetector(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()

    val singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal =
        SingleMetricAnomalyDetector {
            metricName = customMetricName
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            stat = "Maximum"
```

```
        }

    val anomalyDetectorRequest =
        PutAnomalyDetectorRequest {
            singleMetricAnomalyDetector = singleMetricAnomalyDetectorVal
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putAnomalyDetector(anomalyDetectorRequest)
        println("Added anomaly detector for metric $customMetricName.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutAnomalyDetector in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `PutDashboard`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDashboardWithMetrics(
    dashboardNameVal: String,
    fileNameVal: String,
) {
    val dashboardRequest =
        PutDashboardRequest {
            dashboardName = dashboardNameVal
            dashboardBody = readFileAsString(fileNameVal)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        val response = cwClient.putDashboard(dashboardRequest)
        println("$dashboardNameVal was successfully created.")
```

```
        val messages = response.dashboardValidationMessages
        if (messages != null) {
            if (messages.isEmpty()) {
                println("There are no messages in the new Dashboard")
            } else {
                for (message in messages) {
                    println("Message is: ${message.message}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun putMetricAlarm(
    alarmNameVal: String,
    instanceIdVal: String,
) {
    val dimensionOb =
        Dimension {
            name = "InstanceId"
            value = instanceIdVal
        }

    val request =
        PutMetricAlarmRequest {
            alarmName = alarmNameVal
```

```
            comparisonOperator = ComparisonOperator.GreaterThanThreshold
            evaluationPeriods = 1
            metricName = "CPUUtilization"
            namespace = "AWS/EC2"
            period = 60
            statistic = Statistic.fromValue("Average")
            threshold = 70.0
            actionsEnabled = false
            alarmDescription = "An Alarm created by the Kotlin SDK when server CPU
 utilization exceeds 70%"
            unit = StandardUnit.fromValue("Seconds")
            dimensions = listOf(dimensionOb)
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricAlarm(request)
        println("Successfully created an alarm with name $alarmNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addMetricDataForAlarm(fileName: String?) {
    // Read values from the JSON file.
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val customMetricNamespace = rootNode.findValue("customMetricNamespace").asText()
    val customMetricName = rootNode.findValue("customMetricName").asText()
```

```
    // Set an Instant object.
    val time =
 ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC).format(DateTimeFormatter.ISO_INSTANT)
    val instant = Instant.parse(time)
    val datum =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1001.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val datum2 =
        MetricDatum {
            metricName = customMetricName
            unit = StandardUnit.None
            value = 1002.00
            timestamp =
                aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
                    .Instant(instant)
        }

    val metricDataList = ArrayList<MetricDatum>()
    metricDataList.add(datum)
    metricDataList.add(datum2)

    val request =
        PutMetricDataRequest {
            namespace = customMetricNamespace
            metricData = metricDataList
        }

    CloudWatchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { cwClient ->
        cwClient.putMetricData(request)
        println("Added metric values for for metric $customMetricName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteSubscriptionFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSubscriptionFilter`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSubFilter(
    filter: String?,
    logGroup: String?,
) {
    val request =
        DeleteSubscriptionFilterRequest {
            filterName = filter
            logGroupName = logGroup
        }

    CloudWatchLogsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { logs ->
        logs.deleteSubscriptionFilter(request)
```

```
        println("Successfully deleted CloudWatch logs subscription filter named
 $filter")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubscriptionFilter in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeSubscriptionFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubscriptionFilters`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeFilters(logGroup: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSubscriptionFiltersRequest {
            logGroupName = logGroup
            limit = 1
        }

    CloudWatchLogsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { cwlClient ->
        val response = cwlClient.describeSubscriptionFilters(request)
        response.subscriptionFilters?.forEach { filter ->
            println("Retrieved filter with name  ${filter.filterName} pattern
 ${filter.filterPattern} and destination ${filter.destinationArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubscriptionFilters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

StartLiveTail

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for Kotlin

Include the required files.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.cloudwatchlogs.CloudWatchLogsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.cloudwatchlogs.model.StartLiveTailResponseStream
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.takeWhile
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
    val client = CloudWatchLogsClient.fromEnvironment()

    val request = StartLiveTailRequest {
        logGroupIdentifiers = logGroupIdentifiersVal
        logStreamNames = logStreamNamesVal
        logEventFilterPattern = logEventFilterPatternVal
    }

    val startTime = System.currentTimeMillis()

    try {
        client.startLiveTail(request) { response ->
            val stream = response.responseStream
            if (stream != null) {
                /* Set a timeout to unsubcribe from the flow. This will:
                * 1). Close the stream
                * 2). Stop the Live Tail session
                */
                stream.takeWhile { System.currentTimeMillis() - startTime <
 10000 }.collect { value ->
                    if (value is StartLiveTailResponseStream.SessionStart) {
                        println(value.asSessionStart())
                    } else if (value is StartLiveTailResponseStream.SessionUpdate) {
                        for (e in value.asSessionUpdate().sessionResults!!) {
                            println(e)
                        }
                    } else {
```

```
                        throw IllegalArgumentException("Unknown event type")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                throw IllegalArgumentException("No response stream")
            }
        }
    } catch (e: Exception) {
        println("Exception occurred during StartLiveTail: $e")
        System.exit(1)
    }
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAdminUser(
    userNameVal: String?,
    poolIdVal: String?,
) {
    val userRequest =
        AdminGetUserRequest {
            username = userNameVal
            userPoolId = poolIdVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest)
        println("User status ${response.userStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`AdminInitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkAuthMethod(
    clientIdVal: String,
    userNameVal: String,
    passwordVal: String,
    userPoolIdVal: String,
): AdminInitiateAuthResponse {
    val authParas = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    authParas["USERNAME"] = userNameVal
    authParas["PASSWORD"] = passwordVal

    val authRequest =
        AdminInitiateAuthRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            userPoolId = userPoolIdVal
            authParameters = authParas
            authFlow = AuthFlowType.AdminUserPasswordAuth
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest)
        println("Result Challenge is ${response.challengeName}")
        return response
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Respond to an authentication challenge.
suspend fun adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
    userName: String,
    clientIdVal: String?,
    mfaCode: String,
    sessionVal: String?,
) {
    println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated")
    val challengeResponsesOb = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
    challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

    val adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest =
        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest {
            challengeName = ChallengeNameType.SoftwareTokenMfa
            clientId = clientIdVal
            challengeResponses = challengeResponsesOb
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val respondToAuthChallengeResult =
 identityProviderClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest)
        println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()
 ${respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSecretForAppMFA(sessionVal: String?): String? {
    val softwareTokenRequest =
        AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest {
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val tokenResponse =
 identityProviderClient.associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest)
        val secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode
        println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator")
        println(secretCode)
        return tokenResponse.session
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ConfirmSignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun confirmSignUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val signUpRequest =
        ConfirmSignUpRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            confirmationCode = codeVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest)
        println("$userNameVal  was confirmed")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllUsers(userPoolId: String) {
    val request =
        ListUsersRequest {
            this.userPoolId = userPoolId
        }
```

```
    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { cognitoClient ->
        val response = cognitoClient.listUsers(request)
        response.users?.forEach { user ->
            println("The user name is ${user.username}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun resendConfirmationCode(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val codeRequest =
        ResendConfirmationCodeRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest)
        println("Method of delivery is " +
 (response.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium))
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`SignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `SignUp`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun signUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
    passwordVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
) {
    val userAttrs =
        AttributeType {
            name = "email"
            value = emailVal
        }

    val userAttrsList = mutableListOf<AttributeType>()
    userAttrsList.add(userAttrs)
    val signUpRequest =
        SignUpRequest {
            userAttributes = userAttrsList
            username = userNameVal
            clientId = clientIdVal
            password = passwordVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest)
```

```
        println("User has been signed up")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
suspend fun verifyTOTP(
    sessionVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
) {
    val tokenRequest =
        VerifySoftwareTokenRequest {
            userCode = codeVal
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val verifyResponse =
 identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest)
        println("The status of the token is ${verifyResponse.status}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 TIP: To set up the required user pool, run the AWS Cloud Development
 Kit (AWS CDK) script provided in this GitHub repo at resources/cdk/
cognito_scenario_user_pool_with_mfa.

 This code example performs the following operations:

 1. Invokes the signUp method to sign up a user.
 2. Invokes the adminGetUser method to get the user's confirmation status.
 3. Invokes the ResendConfirmationCode method if the user requested another code.
 4. Invokes the confirmSignUp method.
 5. Invokes the initiateAuth to sign in. This results in being prompted to
 set up TOTP (time-based one-time password). (The response is “ChallengeName”:
 “MFA_SETUP”).
 6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate a TOTP MFA private key.
 This can be used with Google Authenticator.
```

```
 7. Invokes the VerifySoftwareToken method to verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
 8. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in again. This results in being prompted
 to submit a TOTP (Response: “ChallengeName”: “SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA”).
 9. Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge to get back a token.
 */

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <clientId> <poolId>
        Where:
            clientId - The app client Id value that you can get from the AWS CDK
 script.
            poolId - The pool Id that you can get from the AWS CDK script.
    """

    if (args.size != 2) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val clientId = args[0]
    val poolId = args[1]

    // Use the console to get data from the user.
    println("*** Enter your use name")
    val inOb = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val userName = inOb.nextLine()
    println(userName)

    println("*** Enter your password")
    val password: String = inOb.nextLine()

    println("*** Enter your email")
    val email = inOb.nextLine()

    println("*** Signing up $userName")
    signUp(clientId, userName, password, email)

    println("*** Getting $userName in the user pool")
    getAdminUser(userName, poolId)

    println("*** Conformation code sent to $userName. Would you like to send a new
 code? (Yes/No)")
```

```
    val ans = inOb.nextLine()

    if (ans.compareTo("Yes") == 0) {
        println("*** Sending a new confirmation code")
        resendConfirmationCode(clientId, userName)
    }
    println("*** Enter the confirmation code that was emailed")
    val code = inOb.nextLine()
    confirmSignUp(clientId, code, userName)

    println("*** Rechecking the status of $userName in the user pool")
    getAdminUser(userName, poolId)

    val authResponse = checkAuthMethod(clientId, userName, password, poolId)
    val mySession = authResponse.session
    val newSession = getSecretForAppMFA(mySession)
    println("*** Enter the 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator")
    val myCode = inOb.nextLine()

    // Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
    verifyTOTP(newSession, myCode)
    println("*** Re-enter a 6-digit code displayed in Google Authenticator")
    val mfaCode: String = inOb.nextLine()
    val authResponse1 = checkAuthMethod(clientId, userName, password, poolId)
    val session2 = authResponse1.session
    adminRespondToAuthChallenge(userName, clientId, mfaCode, session2)
}

suspend fun checkAuthMethod(
    clientIdVal: String,
    userNameVal: String,
    passwordVal: String,
    userPoolIdVal: String,
): AdminInitiateAuthResponse {
    val authParas = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    authParas["USERNAME"] = userNameVal
    authParas["PASSWORD"] = passwordVal

    val authRequest =
        AdminInitiateAuthRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            userPoolId = userPoolIdVal
            authParameters = authParas
            authFlow = AuthFlowType.AdminUserPasswordAuth
```

```
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminInitiateAuth(authRequest)
        println("Result Challenge is ${response.challengeName}")
        return response
    }
}

suspend fun resendConfirmationCode(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val codeRequest =
        ResendConfirmationCodeRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.resendConfirmationCode(codeRequest)
        println("Method of delivery is " +
 (response.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium))
    }
}

// Respond to an authentication challenge.
suspend fun adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
    userName: String,
    clientIdVal: String?,
    mfaCode: String,
    sessionVal: String?,
) {
    println("SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated")
    val challengeResponsesOb = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
    challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

    val adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest =
        AdminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest {
            challengeName = ChallengeNameType.SoftwareTokenMfa
            clientId = clientIdVal
```

```
            challengeResponses = challengeResponsesOb
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val respondToAuthChallengeResult =
 identityProviderClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(adminRespondToAuthChallengeRequest)
        println("respondToAuthChallengeResult.getAuthenticationResult()
 ${respondToAuthChallengeResult.authenticationResult}")
    }
}

// Verify the TOTP and register for MFA.
suspend fun verifyTOTP(
    sessionVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
) {
    val tokenRequest =
        VerifySoftwareTokenRequest {
            userCode = codeVal
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val verifyResponse =
 identityProviderClient.verifySoftwareToken(tokenRequest)
        println("The status of the token is ${verifyResponse.status}")
    }
}

suspend fun getSecretForAppMFA(sessionVal: String?): String? {
    val softwareTokenRequest =
        AssociateSoftwareTokenRequest {
            session = sessionVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val tokenResponse =
 identityProviderClient.associateSoftwareToken(softwareTokenRequest)
        val secretCode = tokenResponse.secretCode
        println("Enter this token into Google Authenticator")
```

```
        println(secretCode)
        return tokenResponse.session
    }
}

suspend fun confirmSignUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    codeVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
) {
    val signUpRequest =
        ConfirmSignUpRequest {
            clientId = clientIdVal
            confirmationCode = codeVal
            username = userNameVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.confirmSignUp(signUpRequest)
        println("$userNameVal  was confirmed")
    }
}

suspend fun getAdminUser(
    userNameVal: String?,
    poolIdVal: String?,
) {
    val userRequest =
        AdminGetUserRequest {
            username = userNameVal
            userPoolId = poolIdVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        val response = identityProviderClient.adminGetUser(userRequest)
        println("User status ${response.userStatus}")
    }
}

suspend fun signUp(
    clientIdVal: String?,
    userNameVal: String?,
```

```
    passwordVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
) {
    val userAttrs =
        AttributeType {
            name = "email"
            value = emailVal
        }

    val userAttrsList = mutableListOf<AttributeType>()
    userAttrsList.add(userAttrs)
    val signUpRequest =
        SignUpRequest {
            userAttributes = userAttrsList
            username = userNameVal
            clientId = clientIdVal
            password = passwordVal
        }

    CognitoIdentityProviderClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { identityProviderClient ->
        identityProviderClient.signUp(signUpRequest)
        println("User has been signed up")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp

- VerifySoftwareToken

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Comprehend.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a messaging application

The following code example shows how to create a messaging application by using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a DynamoDB table.

```
suspend fun createScenarioTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.createTable(request)
        ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
            // suspend call
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
```

```
        println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
    }
}
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
// Load data into the table.
suspend fun loadData(
    tableName: String,
    fileName: String,
) {
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode

    var t = 0
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 50) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()
        putMovie(tableName, year, title, info)
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun putMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    year: Int,
    title: String,
    info: String,
) {
    val itemValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    val strVal = year.toString()
    // Add all content to the table.
    itemValues["year"] = AttributeValue.N(strVal)
```

```
    itemValues["title"] = AttributeValue.S(title)
    itemValues["info"] = AttributeValue.S(info)

    val request =
        PutItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            item = itemValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.putItem(request)
        println("Added $title to the Movie table.")
    }
}
```

Get an item from a table.

```
suspend fun getMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.N(keyVal)
    keyToGet["title"] = AttributeValue.S("King Kong")

    val request =
        GetItemRequest {
            key = keyToGet
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request)
        val numbersMap = returnedItem.item
        numbersMap?.forEach { key1 ->
            println(key1.key)
            println(key1.value)
        }
    }
}
```

Full example.

```
suspend fun main() {
    val tableName = "Movies"
    val fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json"
    val partitionAlias = "#a"

    println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named Movies with a key named id and
 a sort key named title.")
    createScenarioTable(tableName, "year")
    loadData(tableName, fileName)
    getMovie(tableName, "year", "1933")
    scanMovies(tableName)
    val count = queryMovieTable(tableName, "year", partitionAlias)
    println("There are $count Movies released in 2013.")
    deletIssuesTable(tableName)
}

suspend fun createScenarioTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
```

```
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.createTable(request)
        ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
            // suspend call
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
        println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
    }
}

// Load data into the table.
suspend fun loadData(
    tableName: String,
    fileName: String,
) {
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode

    var t = 0
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 50) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()
        putMovie(tableName, year, title, info)
        t++
    }
```

```
}

suspend fun putMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    year: Int,
    title: String,
    info: String,
) {
    val itemValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    val strVal = year.toString()
    // Add all content to the table.
    itemValues["year"] = AttributeValue.N(strVal)
    itemValues["title"] = AttributeValue.S(title)
    itemValues["info"] = AttributeValue.S(info)

    val request =
        PutItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            item = itemValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.putItem(request)
        println("Added $title to the Movie table.")
    }
}

suspend fun getMovie(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.N(keyVal)
    keyToGet["title"] = AttributeValue.S("King Kong")

    val request =
        GetItemRequest {
            key = keyToGet
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request)
```

```
        val numbersMap = returnedItem.item
        numbersMap?.forEach { key1 ->
            println(key1.key)
            println(key1.value)
        }
    }
}

suspend fun deletIssuesTable(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun queryMovieTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    partitionKeyName: String,
    partitionAlias: String,
): Int {
    val attrNameAlias = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    attrNameAlias[partitionAlias] = "year"

    // Set up mapping of the partition name with the value.
    val attrValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    attrValues[":$partitionKeyName"] = AttributeValue.N("2013")

    val request =
        QueryRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            keyConditionExpression = "$partitionAlias = :$partitionKeyName"
            expressionAttributeNames = attrNameAlias
            this.expressionAttributeValues = attrValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.query(request)
        return response.count
    }
```

```
}

suspend fun scanMovies(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        ScanRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.scan(request)
        response.items?.forEach { item ->
            item.keys.forEach { key ->
                println("The key name is $key\n")
                println("The value is ${item[key]}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
): String? {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        var tableArn: String
        val response = ddb.createTable(request)
        ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
            // suspend call
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
        tableArn = response.tableDescription!!.tableArn.toString()
        println("Table $tableArn is ready")
        return tableArn
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDynamoDBItem(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)

    val request =
        DeleteItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            key = keyToGet
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteItem(request)
        println("Item with key matching $keyVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDynamoDBTable(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificItem(
```

```
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
) {
    val keyToGet = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    keyToGet[keyName] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)

    val request =
        GetItemRequest {
            key = keyToGet
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val returnedItem = ddb.getItem(request)
        val numbersMap = returnedItem.item
        numbersMap?.forEach { key1 ->
            println(key1.key)
            println(key1.value)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllTables() {
    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.listTables(ListTablesRequest {})
        response.tableNames?.forEach { tableName ->
```

```
            println("Table name is $tableName")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun putItemInTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
    keyVal: String,
    albumTitle: String,
    albumTitleValue: String,
    awards: String,
    awardVal: String,
    songTitle: String,
    songTitleVal: String,
) {
    val itemValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()

    // Add all content to the table.
    itemValues[key] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)
    itemValues[songTitle] = AttributeValue.S(songTitleVal)
    itemValues[albumTitle] = AttributeValue.S(albumTitleValue)
    itemValues[awards] = AttributeValue.S(awardVal)

    val request =
        PutItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
```

```
            item = itemValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.putItem(request)
        println(" A new item was placed into $tableNameVal.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun queryDynTable(
    tableNameVal: String,
    partitionKeyName: String,
    partitionKeyVal: String,
    partitionAlias: String,
): Int {
    val attrNameAlias = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    attrNameAlias[partitionAlias] = partitionKeyName

    // Set up mapping of the partition name with the value.
    val attrValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    attrValues[":$partitionKeyName"] = AttributeValue.S(partitionKeyVal)

    val request =
        QueryRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            keyConditionExpression = "$partitionAlias = :$partitionKeyName"
            expressionAttributeNames = attrNameAlias
```

```
            this.expressionAttributeValues = attrValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.query(request)
        return response.count
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun scanItems(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        ScanRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        val response = ddb.scan(request)
        response.items?.forEach { item ->
            item.keys.forEach { key ->
                println("The key name is $key\n")
                println("The value is ${item[key]}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateTableItem(
    tableNameVal: String,
    keyName: String,
    keyVal: String,
    name: String,
    updateVal: String,
) {
    val itemKey = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValue>()
    itemKey[keyName] = AttributeValue.S(keyVal)

    val updatedValues = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeValueUpdate>()
    updatedValues[name] =
        AttributeValueUpdate {
            value = AttributeValue.S(updateVal)
            action = AttributeAction.Put
        }

    val request =
        UpdateItemRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
            key = itemKey
            attributeUpdates = updatedValues
        }

    DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.updateItem(request)
        println("Item in $tableNameVal was updated")
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main() {
    val ddb = DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }
    val tableName = "MoviesPartiQBatch"
    println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named $tableName with a key named id
 and a sort key named title.")
    createTablePartiQLBatch(ddb, tableName, "year")
    putRecordBatch(ddb)
    updateTableItemBatchBatch(ddb)
    deleteItemsBatch(ddb)
    deleteTablePartiQLBatch(tableName)
}

suspend fun createTablePartiQLBatch(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    tableNameVal: String,
```

```
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    val response = ddb.createTable(request)
    ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
        // suspend call
        tableName = tableNameVal
    }
    println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
}

suspend fun putRecordBatch(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
```

```
    val sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQBatch VALUE {'year':?, 'title' : ?,
 'info' : ?}"

    // Create three movies to add to the Amazon DynamoDB table.
    val parametersMovie1 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersMovie1.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersMovie1.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 1"))
    parametersMovie1.add(AttributeValue.S("No Information"))

    val statementRequestMovie1 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersMovie1
        }

    // Set data for Movie 2.
    val parametersMovie2 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersMovie2.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersMovie2.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 2"))
    parametersMovie2.add(AttributeValue.S("No Information"))

    val statementRequestMovie2 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersMovie2
        }

    // Set data for Movie 3.
    val parametersMovie3 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersMovie3.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersMovie3.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 3"))
    parametersMovie3.add(AttributeValue.S("No Information"))

    val statementRequestMovie3 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersMovie3
        }

    // Add all three movies to the list.
    val myBatchStatementList = mutableListOf<BatchStatementRequest>()
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie1)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie2)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestMovie3)
```

```
    val batchRequest =
        BatchExecuteStatementRequest {
            statements = myBatchStatementList
        }
    val response = ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: " + response.toString())
    println("Added new movies using a batch command.")
}

suspend fun updateTableItemBatchBatch(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement =
        "UPDATE MoviesPartiQBatch SET info = 'directors\":[\"Merian C. Cooper\",
\"Ernest B. Schoedsack' where year=? and title=?"
    val parametersRec1 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 1"))
    val statementRequestRec1 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec1
        }

    // Update record 2.
    val parametersRec2 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 2"))
    val statementRequestRec2 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec2
        }

    // Update record 3.
    val parametersRec3 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 3"))
    val statementRequestRec3 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec3
        }

    // Add all three movies to the list.
```

```
    val myBatchStatementList = mutableListOf<BatchStatementRequest>()
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3)

    val batchRequest =
        BatchExecuteStatementRequest {
            statements = myBatchStatementList
        }

    val response = ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: $response")
    println("Updated three movies using a batch command.")
    println("Items were updated!")
}

suspend fun deleteItemsBatch(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    // Specify three records to delete.
    val sqlStatement = "DELETE FROM MoviesPartiQBatch WHERE year = ? and title=?"
    val parametersRec1 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec1.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 1"))

    val statementRequestRec1 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec1
        }

    // Specify record 2.
    val parametersRec2 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec2.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 2"))
    val statementRequestRec2 =
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec2
        }

    // Specify record 3.
    val parametersRec3 = mutableListOf<AttributeValue>()
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.N("2022"))
    parametersRec3.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie 3"))
    val statementRequestRec3 =
```

```
        BatchStatementRequest {
            statement = sqlStatement
            parameters = parametersRec3
        }

    // Add all three movies to the list.
    val myBatchStatementList = mutableListOf<BatchStatementRequest>()
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec1)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec2)
    myBatchStatementList.add(statementRequestRec3)

    val batchRequest =
        BatchExecuteStatementRequest {
            statements = myBatchStatementList
        }

    ddb.batchExecuteStatement(batchRequest)
    println("Deleted three movies using a batch command.")
}

suspend fun deleteTablePartiQLBatch(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.

- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main() {
    val ddb = DynamoDbClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }
    val tableName = "MoviesPartiQ"
    val fileName = "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json"
    println("Creating an Amazon DynamoDB table named MoviesPartiQ with a key named
 id and a sort key named title.")
    createTablePartiQL(ddb, tableName, "year")
    loadDataPartiQL(ddb, fileName)

    println("******* Getting data from the MoviesPartiQ table.")
    getMoviePartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Putting a record into the MoviesPartiQ table.")
    putRecordPartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Updating a record.")
    updateTableItemPartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Querying the movies released in 2013.")
    queryTablePartiQL(ddb)

    println("******* Deleting the MoviesPartiQ table.")
    deleteTablePartiQL(tableName)
}

suspend fun createTablePartiQL(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    tableNameVal: String,
    key: String,
) {
    val attDef =
        AttributeDefinition {
```

```
            attributeName = key
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.N
        }

    val attDef1 =
        AttributeDefinition {
            attributeName = "title"
            attributeType = ScalarAttributeType.S
        }

    val keySchemaVal =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = key
            keyType = KeyType.Hash
        }

    val keySchemaVal1 =
        KeySchemaElement {
            attributeName = "title"
            keyType = KeyType.Range
        }

    val request =
        CreateTableRequest {
            attributeDefinitions = listOf(attDef, attDef1)
            keySchema = listOf(keySchemaVal, keySchemaVal1)
            billingMode = BillingMode.PayPerRequest
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    val response = ddb.createTable(request)
    ddb.waitUntilTableExists {
        // suspend call
        tableName = tableNameVal
    }
    println("The table was successfully created
 ${response.tableDescription?.tableArn}")
}

suspend fun loadDataPartiQL(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    fileName: String,
) {
```

```
    val sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?, 'title' : ?,
 'info' : ?}"
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode
    var t = 0

    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 200) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()

        val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = ArrayList<AttributeValue>()
        parameters.add(AttributeValue.N(year.toString()))
        parameters.add(AttributeValue.S(title))
        parameters.add(AttributeValue.S(info))

        executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
        println("Added Movie $title")
        parameters.clear()
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun getMoviePartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year=? and title=?"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = ArrayList<AttributeValue>()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2012"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("The Perks of Being a Wallflower"))
    val response = executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: $response")
}

suspend fun putRecordPartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "INSERT INTO MoviesPartiQ VALUE {'year':?, 'title' : ?,
 'info' : ?}"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = java.util.ArrayList()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2020"))
```

```
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("My Movie"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("No Info"))
    executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("Added new movie.")
}

suspend fun updateTableItemPartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "UPDATE MoviesPartiQ SET info = 'directors\":[\"Merian C.
 Cooper\",\"Ernest B. Schoedsack\' where year=? and title=?"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = java.util.ArrayList()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2013"))
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.S("The East"))
    executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("Item was updated!")
}

// Query the table where the year is 2013.
suspend fun queryTablePartiQL(ddb: DynamoDbClient) {
    val sqlStatement = "SELECT * FROM MoviesPartiQ where year = ?"
    val parameters: MutableList<AttributeValue> = java.util.ArrayList()
    parameters.add(AttributeValue.N("2013"))
    val response = executeStatementPartiQL(ddb, sqlStatement, parameters)
    println("ExecuteStatement successful: $response")
}

suspend fun deleteTablePartiQL(tableNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    DynamoDbClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ddb ->
        ddb.deleteTable(request)
        println("$tableNameVal was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun executeStatementPartiQL(
    ddb: DynamoDbClient,
    statementVal: String,
    parametersVal: List<AttributeValue>,
): ExecuteStatementResponse {
    val request =
        ExecuteStatementRequest {
```

```
            statement = statementVal
            parameters = parametersVal
        }

    return ddb.executeStatement(request)
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2SecurityGroups(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
```

```
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        response.securityGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("Found Security Group with id ${group.groupId}, vpc id
 ${group.vpcId} and description ${group.description}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Creates an RSA key pair and saves the private key data as a .pem file.
 2. Lists key pairs.
 3. Creates a security group for the default VPC.
 4. Displays security group information.
 5. Gets a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and selects one.
 6. Gets more information about the image.
 7. Gets a list of instance types that are compatible with the selected AMI’s
 architecture.
 8. Creates an instance with the key pair, security group, AMI, and an instance
 type.
 9. Displays information about the instance.
 10. Stops the instance and waits for it to stop.
 11. Starts the instance and waits for it to start.
 12. Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the instance.
 13. Displays SSH connection info for the instance.
 14. Disassociates and deletes the Elastic IP address.
 15. Terminates the instance.
 16. Deletes the security group.
 17. Deletes the key pair.
 */

val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <keyName> <fileName> <groupName> <groupDesc> <vpcId> <myIpAddress>

        Where:
            keyName - A key pair name (for example, TestKeyPair).
            fileName - A file name where the key information is written to.
            groupName - The name of the security group.
            groupDesc - The description of the security group.
```

```
            vpcId - A VPC ID. You can get this value from the AWS Management
 Console.
            myIpAddress - The IP address of your development machine.

"""

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val keyName = args[0]
    val fileName = args[1]
    val groupName = args[2]
    val groupDesc = args[3]
    val vpcId = args[4]
    val myIpAddress = args[5]
    var newInstanceId: String? = ""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon EC2 example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an RSA key pair and save the private key material as a .pem
 file.")
    createKeyPairSc(keyName, fileName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List key pairs.")
    describeEC2KeysSc()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create a security group.")
    val groupId = createEC2SecurityGroupSc(groupName, groupDesc, vpcId, myIpAddress)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Display security group info for the newly created security group.")
    describeSecurityGroupsSc(groupId.toString())
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Get a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs and select one with amzn2 in the
name.")
    val instanceId = getParaValuesSc()
    if (instanceId == "") {
        println("The instance Id value isn't valid.")
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    println("The instance Id is $instanceId.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Get more information about an amzn2 image and return the AMI
value.")
    val amiValue = instanceId?.let { describeImageSc(it) }
    if (instanceId == "") {
        println("The instance Id value is invalid.")
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    println("The AMI value is $amiValue.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Get a list of instance types.")
    val instanceType = getInstanceTypesSc()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Create an instance.")
    if (amiValue != null) {
        newInstanceId = runInstanceSc(instanceType, keyName, groupName, amiValue)
        println("The instance Id is $newInstanceId")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Display information about the running instance. ")
    var ipAddress = describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId)
    println("You can SSH to the instance using this command:")
    println("ssh -i " + fileName + "ec2-user@" + ipAddress)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10.  Stop the instance.")
```

```
    if (newInstanceId != null) {
        stopInstanceSc(newInstanceId)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11.  Start the instance.")
    if (newInstanceId != null) {
        startInstanceSc(newInstanceId)
    }
    ipAddress = describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId)
    println("You can SSH to the instance using this command:")
    println("ssh -i " + fileName + "ec2-user@" + ipAddress)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with the
instance.")
    val allocationId = allocateAddressSc()
    println("The allocation Id value is $allocationId")
    val associationId = associateAddressSc(newInstanceId, allocationId)
    println("The associate Id value is $associationId")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Describe the instance again.")
    ipAddress = describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId)
    println("You can SSH to the instance using this command:")
    println("ssh -i " + fileName + "ec2-user@" + ipAddress)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Disassociate and release the Elastic IP address.")
    disassociateAddressSc(associationId)
    releaseEC2AddressSc(allocationId)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Terminate the instance and use a waiter.")
    if (newInstanceId != null) {
        terminateEC2Sc(newInstanceId)
    }
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Delete the security group.")
    if (groupId != null) {
        deleteEC2SecGroupSc(groupId)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Delete the key pair.")
    deleteKeysSc(keyName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("You successfully completed the Amazon EC2 scenario.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteKeysSc(keyPair: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyPair
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteKeyPair(request)
        println("Successfully deleted key pair named $keyPair")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteEC2SecGroupSc(groupIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupId = groupIdVal
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteSecurityGroup(request)
        println("Successfully deleted security group with Id $groupIdVal")
    }
}

suspend fun terminateEC2Sc(instanceIdVal: String) {
    val ti =
        TerminateInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceIdVal)
        }
```

```
    println("Wait for the instance to terminate. This will take a few minutes.")
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.terminateInstances(ti)
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceTerminated {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceIdVal)
        }
        println("$instanceIdVal is terminated!")
    }
}

suspend fun releaseEC2AddressSc(allocId: String?) {
    val request =
        ReleaseAddressRequest {
            allocationId = allocId
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.releaseAddress(request)
        println("Successfully released Elastic IP address $allocId")
    }
}

suspend fun disassociateAddressSc(associationIdVal: String?) {
    val addressRequest =
        DisassociateAddressRequest {
            associationId = associationIdVal
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest)
        println("You successfully disassociated the address!")
    }
}

suspend fun associateAddressSc(
    instanceIdVal: String?,
    allocationIdVal: String?,
): String? {
    val associateRequest =
        AssociateAddressRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            allocationId = allocationIdVal
        }
```

```
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val associateResponse = ec2.associateAddress(associateRequest)
        return associateResponse.associationId
    }
}

suspend fun allocateAddressSc(): String? {
    val allocateRequest =
        AllocateAddressRequest {
            domain = DomainType.Vpc
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val allocateResponse = ec2.allocateAddress(allocateRequest)
        return allocateResponse.allocationId
    }
}

suspend fun startInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StartInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.startInstances(request)
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId starts. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceRunning {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully started instance $instanceId")
    }
}

suspend fun stopInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StopInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.stopInstances(request)
```

```
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId stops. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceStopped {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully stopped instance $instanceId")
    }
}

suspend fun describeEC2InstancesSc(newInstanceId: String?): String {
    var pubAddress = ""
    var isRunning = false
    val request =
        DescribeInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(newInstanceId.toString())
        }

    while (!isRunning) {
        Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
            val response = ec2.describeInstances(request)
            val state =
                response.reservations
                    ?.get(0)
                    ?.instances
                    ?.get(0)
                    ?.state
                    ?.name
                    ?. value
            if (state != null) {
                if (state.compareTo("running") == 0) {
                    println("Image id is
 ${response.reservations!!.get(0).instances?.get(0)?.imageId}")
                    println("Instance type is
 ${response.reservations!!.get(0).instances?.get(0)?.instanceType}")
                    println("Instance state is
 ${response.reservations!!.get(0).instances?.get(0)?.state}")
                    pubAddress =
                        response.reservations!!
                            .get(0)
                            .instances
                            ?.get(0)
                            ?.publicIpAddress
                            .toString()
```

```
                    println("Instance address is $pubAddress")
                    isRunning = true
                }
            }
        }
    }
    return pubAddress
}

suspend fun runInstanceSc(
    instanceTypeVal: String,
    keyNameVal: String,
    groupNameVal: String,
    amiIdVal: String,
): String {
    val runRequest =
        RunInstancesRequest {
            instanceType = InstanceType.fromValue(instanceTypeVal)
            keyName = keyNameVal
            securityGroups = listOf(groupNameVal)
            maxCount = 1
            minCount = 1
            imageId = amiIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.runInstances(runRequest)
        val instanceId = response.instances?.get(0)?.instanceId
        println("Successfully started EC2 Instance $instanceId based on AMI
 $amiIdVal")
        return instanceId.toString()
    }
}

// Get a list of instance types.
suspend fun getInstanceTypesSc(): String {
    var instanceType = ""
    val filterObs = ArrayList<Filter>()
    val filter =
        Filter {
            name = "processor-info.supported-architecture"
            values = listOf("arm64")
        }
```

```
    filterObs.add(filter)
    val typesRequest =
        DescribeInstanceTypesRequest {
            filters = filterObs
            maxResults = 10
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest)
        response.instanceTypes?.forEach { type ->
            println("The memory information of this type is
 ${type.memoryInfo?.sizeInMib}")
            println("Maximum number of network cards is
 ${type.networkInfo?.maximumNetworkCards}")
            instanceType = type.instanceType.toString()
        }
        return instanceType
    }
}

// Display the Description field that corresponds to the instance Id value.
suspend fun describeImageSc(instanceId: String): String? {
    val imagesRequest =
        DescribeImagesRequest {
            imageIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeImages(imagesRequest)
        println("The description of the first image is
 ${response.images?.get(0)?.description}")
        println("The name of the first image is  ${response.images?.get(0)?.name}")

        // Return the image Id value.
        return response.images?.get(0)?.imageId
    }
}

// Get the Id value of an instance with amzn2 in the name.
suspend fun getParaValuesSc(): String? {
    val parameterRequest =
        GetParametersByPathRequest {
            path = "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest"
        }
```

```
    SsmClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ssmClient ->
        val response = ssmClient.getParametersByPath(parameterRequest)
        response.parameters?.forEach { para ->
            println("The name of the para is: ${para.name}")
            println("The type of the para is: ${para.type}")
            println("")
            if (para.name?.let { filterName(it) } == true) {
                return para.value
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

fun filterName(name: String): Boolean {
    val parts = name.split("/").toTypedArray()
    val myValue = parts[4]
    return myValue.contains("amzn2")
}

suspend fun describeSecurityGroupsSc(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        for (group in response.securityGroups!!) {
            println("Found Security Group with id " + group.groupId.toString() + "
 and group VPC " + group.vpcId)
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createEC2SecurityGroupSc(
    groupNameVal: String?,
    groupDescVal: String?,
    vpcIdVal: String?,
    myIpAddress: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupName = groupNameVal
```

```
            description = groupDescVal
            vpcId = vpcIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val resp = ec2.createSecurityGroup(request)
        val ipRange =
            IpRange {
                cidrIp = "$myIpAddress/0"
            }

        val ipPerm =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 80
                fromPort = 80
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val ipPerm2 =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 22
                fromPort = 22
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val authRequest =
            AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest {
                groupName = groupNameVal
                ipPermissions = listOf(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
            }
        ec2.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
        println("Successfully added ingress policy to Security Group $groupNameVal")
        return resp.groupId
    }
}

suspend fun describeEC2KeysSc() {
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeKeyPairs(DescribeKeyPairsRequest {})
        response.keyPairs?.forEach { keyPair ->
            println("Found key pair with name ${keyPair.keyName} and fingerprint
 ${ keyPair.keyFingerprint}")
```

```
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createKeyPairSc(
    keyNameVal: String,
    fileNameVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        CreateKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyNameVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.createKeyPair(request)
        val content = response.keyMaterial
        if (content != null) {
            File(fileNameVal).writeText(content)
        }
        println("Successfully created key pair named $keyNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress

- ReleaseAddress
- RunInstances
- StartInstances
- StopInstances
- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAllocateAddress(instanceIdVal: String?): String? {
    val allocateRequest =
        AllocateAddressRequest {
            domain = DomainType.Vpc
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val allocateResponse = ec2.allocateAddress(allocateRequest)
        val allocationIdVal = allocateResponse.allocationId

        val request =
            AssociateAddressRequest {
                instanceId = instanceIdVal
                allocationId = allocationIdVal
            }

        val associateResponse = ec2.associateAddress(request)
        return associateResponse.associationId
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun associateAddressSc(
    instanceIdVal: String?,
    allocationIdVal: String?,
): String? {
    val associateRequest =
        AssociateAddressRequest {
            instanceId = instanceIdVal
            allocationId = allocationIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val associateResponse = ec2.associateAddress(associateRequest)
        return associateResponse.associationId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2SecurityGroupSc(
    groupNameVal: String?,
    groupDescVal: String?,
    vpcIdVal: String?,
    myIpAddress: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupName = groupNameVal
            description = groupDescVal
            vpcId = vpcIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val resp = ec2.createSecurityGroup(request)
        val ipRange =
            IpRange {
                cidrIp = "$myIpAddress/0"
            }

        val ipPerm =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 80
                fromPort = 80
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val ipPerm2 =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 22
                fromPort = 22
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
```

```
            }

        val authRequest =
            AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest {
                groupName = groupNameVal
                ipPermissions = listOf(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
            }
        ec2.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
        println("Successfully added ingress policy to Security Group $groupNameVal")
        return resp.groupId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2KeyPair(keyNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        CreateKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyNameVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.createKeyPair(request)
        println("The key ID is ${response.keyPairId}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2SecurityGroup(
    groupNameVal: String?,
    groupDescVal: String?,
    vpcIdVal: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupName = groupNameVal
            description = groupDescVal
            vpcId = vpcIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val resp = ec2.createSecurityGroup(request)
        val ipRange =
            IpRange {
                cidrIp = "0.0.0.0/0"
            }

        val ipPerm =
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 80
                fromPort = 80
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val ipPerm2 =
```

```
            IpPermission {
                ipProtocol = "tcp"
                toPort = 22
                fromPort = 22
                ipRanges = listOf(ipRange)
            }

        val authRequest =
            AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressRequest {
                groupName = groupNameVal
                ipPermissions = listOf(ipPerm, ipPerm2)
            }
        ec2.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(authRequest)
        println("Successfully added ingress policy to Security Group $groupNameVal")
        return resp.groupId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteKeys(keyPair: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteKeyPairRequest {
            keyName = keyPair
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteKeyPair(request)
```

```
        println("Successfully deleted key pair named $keyPair")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteEC2SecGroup(groupIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteSecurityGroupRequest {
            groupId = groupIdVal
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.deleteSecurityGroup(request)
        println("Successfully deleted Security Group with id $groupIdVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Get a list of instance types.
suspend fun getInstanceTypesSc(): String {
    var instanceType = ""
    val filterObs = ArrayList<Filter>()
    val filter =
        Filter {
            name = "processor-info.supported-architecture"
            values = listOf("arm64")
        }

    filterObs.add(filter)
    val typesRequest =
        DescribeInstanceTypesRequest {
            filters = filterObs
            maxResults = 10
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeInstanceTypes(typesRequest)
        response.instanceTypes?.forEach { type ->
            println("The memory information of this type is
 ${type.memoryInfo?.sizeInMib}")
            println("Maximum number of network cards is
 ${type.networkInfo?.maximumNetworkCards}")
            instanceType = type.instanceType.toString()
        }
        return instanceType
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2Instances() {
    val request =
        DescribeInstancesRequest {
            maxResults = 6
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeInstances(request)
        response.reservations?.forEach { reservation ->
            reservation.instances?.forEach { instance ->
                println("Instance Id is ${instance.instanceId}")
                println("Image id is ${instance.imageId}")
                println("Instance type is ${instance.instanceType}")
                println("Instance state name is ${instance.state?.name}")
                println("monitoring information is ${instance.monitoring?.state}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2Keys() {
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.describeKeyPairs(DescribeKeyPairsRequest {})
        response.keyPairs?.forEach { keyPair ->
            println("Found key pair with name ${keyPair.keyName} and fingerprint
 ${ keyPair.keyFingerprint}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEC2SecurityGroups(groupId: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeSecurityGroupsRequest {
            groupIds = listOf(groupId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
```

```
        val response = ec2.describeSecurityGroups(request)
        response.securityGroups?.forEach { group ->
            println("Found Security Group with id ${group.groupId}, vpc id
 ${group.vpcId} and description ${group.description}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disassociateAddressSc(associationIdVal: String?) {
    val addressRequest =
        DisassociateAddressRequest {
            associationId = associationIdVal
        }
    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.disassociateAddress(addressRequest)
        println("You successfully disassociated the address!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun releaseEC2AddressSc(allocId: String?) {
    val request =
        ReleaseAddressRequest {
            allocationId = allocId
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.releaseAddress(request)
        println("Successfully released Elastic IP address $allocId")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createEC2Instance(
    name: String,
    amiId: String,
): String? {
```

```
    val request =
        RunInstancesRequest {
            imageId = amiId
            instanceType = InstanceType.T1Micro
            maxCount = 1
            minCount = 1
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.runInstances(request)
        val instanceId = response.instances?.get(0)?.instanceId
        val tag =
            Tag {
                key = "Name"
                value = name
            }

        val requestTags =
            CreateTagsRequest {
                resources = listOf(instanceId.toString())
                tags = listOf(tag)
            }
        ec2.createTags(requestTags)
        println("Successfully started EC2 Instance $instanceId based on AMI $amiId")
        return instanceId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun startInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StartInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.startInstances(request)
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId starts. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceRunning {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully started instance $instanceId")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun stopInstanceSc(instanceId: String) {
    val request =
        StopInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        ec2.stopInstances(request)
```

```
        println("Waiting until instance $instanceId stops. This will take a few
 minutes.")
        ec2.waitUntilInstanceStopped {
            // suspend call
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceId)
        }
        println("Successfully stopped instance $instanceId")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun terminateEC2(instanceID: String) {
    val request =
        TerminateInstancesRequest {
            instanceIds = listOf(instanceID)
        }

    Ec2Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { ec2 ->
        val response = ec2.terminateInstances(request)
        response.terminatingInstances?.forEach { instance ->
            println("The ID of the terminated instance is ${instance.instanceId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon ECR.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon ECR

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon ECR.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.EcrClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.ListImagesRequest
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
            Usage: <repositoryName>

            Where:
               repositoryName - The name of the Amazon ECR repository.

    """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
```

```
    }

    val repoName = args[0]
    listImageTags(repoName)
}

suspend fun listImageTags(repoName: String?) {
    val listImages =
        ListImagesRequest {
            repositoryName = repoName
        }

    EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
        val imageResponse = ecrClient.listImages(listImages)
        imageResponse.imageIds?.forEach { imageId ->
            println("Image tag: ${imageId.imageTag}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon ECR repository.
- Set repository policies.
- Retrieve repository URIs.
- Get Amazon ECR authorization tokens.
- Set lifecycle policies for Amazon ECR repositories.
- Push a Docker image to an Amazon ECR repository.

- Verify the existence of an image in an Amazon ECR repository.
- List Amazon ECR repositories for your account and get details about them.
- Delete Amazon ECR repositories.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon ECR features.

```
import java.util.Scanner

/**
 * Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.
 *
 * For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 *
 * This code example requires an IAM Role that has permissions to interact with the
 Amazon ECR service.
 *
 * To create an IAM role, see:
 *
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/id_roles_create.html
 *
 * This code example requires a local docker image named echo-text. Without a local
 image,
 * this program will not successfully run. For more information including how to
 create the local
 * image, see:
 *
 * /scenarios/basics/ecr/README
 *
 */
```

```
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage =
        """
        Usage: <iamRoleARN> <accountId>

        Where:
           iamRoleARN - The IAM role ARN that has the necessary permissions to
 access and manage the Amazon ECR repository.
           accountId - Your AWS account number.

        """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 2) {
        println(usage)
        return
    }

    var iamRole = args[0]
    var localImageName: String
    var accountId = args[1]
    val ecrActions = ECRActions()
    val scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)

    println(
        """
        The Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is a fully-managed Docker
 container registry
        service provided by AWS. It allows developers and organizations to securely
        store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
        ECR provides a simple and scalable way to manage container images throughout
 their lifecycle,
        from building and testing to production deployment.

        The `EcrClient` service client that is part of the AWS SDK for Kotlin
 provides a set of methods to
        programmatically interact with the Amazon ECR service. This allows
 developers to
        automate the storage, retrieval, and management of container images as part
 of their application
        deployment pipelines. With ECR, teams can focus on building and deploying
 their
```

```
        applications without having to worry about the underlying infrastructure
required to
        host and manage a container registry.

        This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this
service.
        Let's get started...

         You have two choices:
            1 - Run the entire program.
            2 - Delete an existing Amazon ECR repository named echo-text (created
from a previous execution of
            this program that did not complete).

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    while (true) {
        val input = scanner.nextLine()
        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("1", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("2", ignoreCase = true)) {
            val repoName = "echo-text"
            ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName)
            return
        } else {
            // Handle invalid input.
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        1. Create an ECR repository.

        The first task is to ensure we have a local Docker image named echo-text.
        If this image exists, then an Amazon ECR repository is created.

        An ECR repository is a private Docker container repository provided
        by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is a managed service that makes it easy
```

```
        to store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    // Ensure that a local docker image named echo-text exists.
    val doesExist = ecrActions.listLocalImages()
    val repoName: String
    if (!doesExist) {
        println("The local image named echo-text does not exist")
        return
    } else {
        localImageName = "echo-text"
        repoName = "echo-text"
    }

    val repoArn = ecrActions.createECRRepository(repoName).toString()
    println("The ARN of the ECR repository is $repoArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        2. Set an ECR repository policy.

        Setting an ECR repository policy using the `setRepositoryPolicy` function is
crucial for maintaining
        the security and integrity of your container images. The repository policy
allows you to
        define specific rules and restrictions for accessing and managing the images
stored within your ECR
        repository.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.setRepoPolicy(repoName, iamRole)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        3. Display ECR repository policy.
```

```
        Now we will retrieve the ECR policy to ensure it was successfully set.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val policyText = ecrActions.getRepoPolicy(repoName)
    println("Policy Text:")
    println(policyText)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        4. Retrieve an ECR authorization token.

        You need an authorization token to securely access and interact with the
Amazon ECR registry.
        The `getAuthorizationToken` method of the `EcrAsyncClient` is responsible
for securely accessing
        and interacting with an Amazon ECR repository. This operation is responsible
for obtaining a
        valid authorization token, which is required to authenticate your requests
to the ECR service.

        Without a valid authorization token, you would not be able to perform any
operations on the
        ECR repository, such as pushing, pulling, or managing your Docker images.


        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.getAuthToken()
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        5. Get the ECR Repository URI.

        The URI  of an Amazon ECR repository is important. When you want to deploy a
container image to
        a container orchestration platform like Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service
(EKS)
```

```
        or Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS), you need to specify the full
image URI,
        which includes the ECR repository URI. This allows the container runtime to
pull the
        correct container image from the ECR repository.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val repositoryURI: String? = ecrActions.getRepositoryURI(repoName)
    println("The repository URI is $repositoryURI")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        6. Set an ECR Lifecycle Policy.

        An ECR Lifecycle Policy is used to manage the lifecycle of Docker images
stored in your ECR repositories.
        These policies allow you to automatically remove old or unused Docker images
from your repositories,
        freeing up storage space and reducing costs.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val pol = ecrActions.setLifeCyclePolicy(repoName)
    println(pol)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        7. Push a docker image to the Amazon ECR Repository.

        The `pushImageCmd()` method pushes a local Docker image to an Amazon ECR
repository.
        It sets up the Docker client by connecting to the local Docker host using
the default port.
        It then retrieves the authorization token for the ECR repository by making a
call to the AWS SDK.
```

```
        The method uses the authorization token to create an `AuthConfig` object,
 which is used to authenticate
        the Docker client when pushing the image. Finally, the method tags the
 Docker image with the specified
        repository name and image tag, and then pushes the image to the ECR
 repository using the Docker client.
        If the push operation is successful, the method prints a message indicating
 that the image was pushed to ECR.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.pushDockerImage(repoName, localImageName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Verify if the image is in the ECR Repository.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    ecrActions.verifyImage(repoName, localImageName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. As an optional step, you can interact with the image in Amazon ECR
 by using the CLI.")
    println("Would you like to view instructions on how to use the CLI to run the
 image? (y/n)")
    val ans = scanner.nextLine().trim()
    if (ans.equals("y", true)) {
        val instructions = """
        1. Authenticate with ECR - Before you can pull the image from Amazon ECR,
 you need to authenticate with the registry. You can do this using the AWS CLI:

            aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-1 | docker login --username
 AWS --password-stdin $accountId.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com

        2. Describe the image using this command:

           aws ecr describe-images --repository-name $repoName --image-ids imageTag=
$localImageName

        3. Run the Docker container and view the output using this command:
```

```
            docker run --rm $accountId.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/$repoName:
$localImageName
        """
        println(instructions)
    }
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Delete the ECR Repository.")
    println(
        """
        If the repository isn't empty, you must either delete the contents of the
 repository
        or use the force option (used in this scenario) to delete the repository and
 have Amazon ECR delete all of its contents
        on your behalf.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println("Would you like to delete the Amazon ECR Repository? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim { it <= ' ' }
    if (delAns.equals("y", ignoreCase = true)) {
        println("You selected to delete the AWS ECR resources.")
        waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
        ecrActions.deleteECRRepository(repoName)
    }

    println(DASHES)
    println("This concludes the Amazon ECR SDK scenario")
    println(DASHES)
}

private fun waitForInputToContinue(scanner: Scanner) {
    while (true) {
        println("")
        println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:")
        val input = scanner.nextLine()
        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("c", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else {
            // Handle invalid input.
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
```

```
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper class for Amazon ECR SDK methods.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.EcrClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.CreateRepositoryRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.DeleteRepositoryRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.DescribeImagesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.DescribeRepositoriesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.EcrException
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.GetRepositoryPolicyRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.ImageIdentifier
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.RepositoryAlreadyExistsException
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.SetRepositoryPolicyRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.ecr.model.StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest
import com.github.dockerjava.api.DockerClient
import com.github.dockerjava.api.command.DockerCmdExecFactory
import com.github.dockerjava.api.model.AuthConfig
import com.github.dockerjava.core.DockerClientBuilder
import com.github.dockerjava.netty.NettyDockerCmdExecFactory
import java.io.IOException
import java.util.Base64

class ECRActions {
    private var dockerClient: DockerClient? = null

    private fun getDockerClient(): DockerClient? {
        val osName = System.getProperty("os.name")
        if (osName.startsWith("Windows")) {
            // Make sure Docker Desktop is running.
            val dockerHost = "tcp://localhost:2375" // Use the Docker Desktop
 default port.
            val dockerCmdExecFactory: DockerCmdExecFactory =

 NettyDockerCmdExecFactory().withReadTimeout(20000).withConnectTimeout(20000)
            dockerClient =
 DockerClientBuilder.getInstance(dockerHost).withDockerCmdExecFactory(dockerCmdExecFactory).
        } else {
            dockerClient = DockerClientBuilder.getInstance().build()
        }
```

```
        return dockerClient
    }


    /**
     * Sets the lifecycle policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository for which to set the lifecycle
policy.
     */
    suspend fun setLifeCyclePolicy(repoName: String): String? {
        val polText =
            """
             {
             "rules": [
                 {
                     "rulePriority": 1,
                     "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                     "selection": {
                         "tagStatus": "any",
                         "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                         "countUnit": "days",
                         "countNumber": 14
                     },
                     "action": {
                         "type": "expire"
                     }
                 }
             ]
             }

            """.trimIndent()
        val lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest =
            StartLifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest {
                lifecyclePolicyText = polText
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        // Execute the request asynchronously.
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response =
ecrClient.startLifecyclePolicyPreview(lifecyclePolicyPreviewRequest)
            return response.lifecyclePolicyText
        }
```

```
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
     * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     */
    suspend fun getRepositoryURI(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
be null or empty" }
        val request =
            DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeRepositoriesResponse =
ecrClient.describeRepositories(request)
            if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories?.isEmpty()!!) {
                return
describeRepositoriesResponse?.repositories?.get(0)?.repositoryUri
            } else {
                println("No repositories found for the given name.")
                return ""
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
     *
     */
    suspend fun getAuthToken() {
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            // Retrieve the authorization token for ECR.
            val response = ecrClient.getAuthorizationToken()
            val authorizationData = response.authorizationData?.get(0)
            val token = authorizationData?.authorizationToken
            if (token != null) {
                println("The token was successfully retrieved.")
```

```
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository.
     */
    suspend fun getRepoPolicy(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
be null or empty" }

        // Create the request
        val getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            GetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
            }
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response = ecrClient.getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            val responseText = response.policyText
            return responseText
        }
    }


    /**
     * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
     * @param iamRole the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
     */
    suspend fun setRepoPolicy(
        repoName: String?,
        iamRole: String?,
    ) {
        val policyDocumentTemplate =
            """
             {
              "Version" : "2012-10-17",
              "Statement" : [ {
                "Sid" : "new statement",
                "Effect" : "Allow",
```

```
                "Principal" : {
                  "AWS" : "$iamRole"
                },
                "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
              } ]
            }

            """.trimIndent()
        val setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            SetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                policyText = policyDocumentTemplate
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response = ecrClient.setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            if (response != null) {
                println("Repository policy set successfully.")
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
     * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an empty
string if the operation failed.
     * @throws RepositoryAlreadyExistsException if the repository exists.
     * @throws EcrException         if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
     */
    suspend fun createECRRepository(repoName: String?): String? {
        val request =
            CreateRepositoryRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        return try {
            EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
                val response = ecrClient.createRepository(request)
                response.repository?.repositoryArn
            }
```

```
        } catch (e: RepositoryAlreadyExistsException) {
            println("Repository already exists: $repoName")
            repoName?.let { getRepoARN(it) }
        } catch (e: EcrException) {
            println("An error occurred: ${e.message}")
            null
        }
    }

    suspend fun getRepoARN(repoName: String): String? {
        // Fetch the existing repository's ARN.
        val describeRequest =
            DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
            }
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(describeRequest)
            return describeResponse.repositories?.get(0)?.repositoryArn
        }
    }

    fun listLocalImages(): Boolean = try {
        val images = getDockerClient()?.listImagesCmd()?.exec()
        images?.any { image ->
            image.repoTags?.any { tag -> tag.startsWith("echo-text") } ?: false
        } ?: false
    } catch (ex: Exception) {
        println("ERROR: ${ex.message}")
        false
    }


    /**
     * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
     * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
     */
    suspend fun pushDockerImage(
        repoName: String,
        imageName: String,
    ) {
        println("Pushing $imageName to $repoName will take a few seconds")
```

```
        val authConfig = getAuthConfig(repoName)

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val desRequest =
                DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                    repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
                }

            val describeRepoResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(desRequest)
            val repoData =
                describeRepoResponse.repositories?.firstOrNull { it.repositoryName
== repoName }
                    ?: throw RuntimeException("Repository not found: $repoName")

            val tagImageCmd = getDockerClient()?.tagImageCmd("$imageName",
"${repoData.repositoryUri}", imageName)
            if (tagImageCmd != null) {
                tagImageCmd.exec()
            }
            val pushImageCmd =
                repoData.repositoryUri?.let {
                    dockerClient?.pushImageCmd(it)
                        // ?.withTag("latest")
                        ?.withAuthConfig(authConfig)
                }

            try {
                if (pushImageCmd != null) {
                    pushImageCmd.start().awaitCompletion()
                }
                println("The $imageName was pushed to Amazon ECR")
            } catch (e: IOException) {
                throw RuntimeException(e)
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
```

```
     */
    suspend fun verifyImage(
        repoName: String?,
        imageTagVal: String?,
    ) {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
 be null or empty" }
        require(!(imageTagVal == null || imageTagVal.isEmpty())) { "Image tag cannot
 be null or empty" }

        val imageId =
            ImageIdentifier {
                imageTag = imageTagVal
            }
        val request =
            DescribeImagesRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                imageIds = listOf(imageId)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeImagesResponse = ecrClient.describeImages(request)
            if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails?.isEmpty()!!) {
                println("Image is present in the repository.")
            } else {
                println("Image is not present in the repository.")
            }
        }
    }


    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     */
    suspend fun deleteECRRepository(repoName: String) {
        if (repoName.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            throw IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
 empty")
        }

        val repositoryRequest =
```

```
            DeleteRepositoryRequest {
                force = true
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            ecrClient.deleteRepository(repositoryRequest)
            println("You have successfully deleted the $repoName repository")
        }
    }

    // Return an AuthConfig.
    private suspend fun getAuthConfig(repoName: String): AuthConfig {
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            // Retrieve the authorization token for ECR.
            val response = ecrClient.getAuthorizationToken()
            val authorizationData = response.authorizationData?.get(0)
            val token = authorizationData?.authorizationToken
            val decodedToken = String(Base64.getDecoder().decode(token))
            val password = decodedToken.substring(4)

            val request =
                DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                    repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
                }

            val descrRepoResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(request)
            val repoData = descrRepoResponse.repositories?.firstOrNull
 { it.repositoryName == repoName }
            val registryURL: String = repoData?.repositoryUri?.split("/")?.get(0) ?:
 ""

            return AuthConfig()
                .withUsername("AWS")
                .withPassword(password)
                .withRegistryAddress(registryURL)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateRepository

- DeleteRepository
- DescribeImages
- DescribeRepositories
- GetAuthorizationToken
- GetRepositoryPolicy
- SetRepositoryPolicy
- StartLifecyclePolicyPreview

Actions

`CreateRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRepository`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Creates an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (Amazon ECR) repository.
    *
    * @param repoName the name of the repository to create.
    * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created repository, or an empty
string if the operation failed.
    * @throws RepositoryAlreadyExistsException if the repository exists.
    * @throws EcrException         if an error occurs while creating the
repository.
    */
   suspend fun createECRRepository(repoName: String?): String? {
       val request =
           CreateRepositoryRequest {
               repositoryName = repoName
           }
```

```
        return try {
            EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
                val response = ecrClient.createRepository(request)
                response.repository?.repositoryArn
            }
        } catch (e: RepositoryAlreadyExistsException) {
            println("Repository already exists: $repoName")
            repoName?.let { getRepoARN(it) }
        } catch (e: EcrException) {
            println("An error occurred: ${e.message}")
            null
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRepository`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Deletes an ECR (Elastic Container Registry) repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to delete.
     */
    suspend fun deleteECRRepository(repoName: String) {
        if (repoName.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            throw IllegalArgumentException("Repository name cannot be null or
empty")
        }
```

```
        val repositoryRequest =
            DeleteRepositoryRequest {
                force = true
                repositoryName = repoName
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            ecrClient.deleteRepository(repositoryRequest)
            println("You have successfully deleted the $repoName repository")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
     *
     * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
     * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
     */
    suspend fun verifyImage(
        repoName: String?,
        imageTagVal: String?,
    ) {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
be null or empty" }
```

```
        require(!(imageTagVal == null || imageTagVal.isEmpty())) { "Image tag cannot
 be null or empty" }

        val imageId =
            ImageIdentifier {
                imageTag = imageTagVal
            }
        val request =
            DescribeImagesRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                imageIds = listOf(imageId)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeImagesResponse = ecrClient.describeImages(request)
            if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails?.isEmpty()!!) {
                println("Image is present in the repository.")
            } else {
                println("Image is not present in the repository.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeRepositories`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRepositories`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
```

```
     * Retrieves the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository to retrieve the URI for.
     * @return the repository URI for the specified repository name.
     */
    suspend fun getRepositoryURI(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
be null or empty" }
        val request =
            DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeRepositoriesResponse =
ecrClient.describeRepositories(request)
            if (!describeRepositoriesResponse.repositories?.isEmpty()!!) {
                return
describeRepositoriesResponse?.repositories?.get(0)?.repositoryUri
            } else {
                println("No repositories found for the given name.")
                return ""
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetAuthorizationToken`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAuthorizationToken`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Retrieves the authorization token for Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(ECR).
     *
     */
    suspend fun getAuthToken() {
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            // Retrieve the authorization token for ECR.
            val response = ecrClient.getAuthorizationToken()
            val authorizationData = response.authorizationData?.get(0)
            val token = authorizationData?.authorizationToken
            if (token != null) {
                println("The token was successfully retrieved.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetRepositoryPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRepositoryPolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Gets the repository policy for the specified repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the repository.
     */
    suspend fun getRepoPolicy(repoName: String?): String? {
        require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
be null or empty" }
```

```
        // Create the request
        val getRepositoryPolicyRequest =
            GetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
            }
        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val response = ecrClient.getRepositoryPolicy(getRepositoryPolicyRequest)
            val responseText = response.policyText
            return responseText
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PushImageCmd`

The following code example shows how to use `PushImageCmd`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * Pushes a Docker image to an Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR)
repository.
     *
     * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository to push the image to.
     * @param imageName the name of the Docker image.
     */
    suspend fun pushDockerImage(
        repoName: String,
        imageName: String,
    ) {
        println("Pushing $imageName to $repoName will take a few seconds")
```

```
        val authConfig = getAuthConfig(repoName)

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val desRequest =
                DescribeRepositoriesRequest {
                    repositoryNames = listOf(repoName)
                }

            val describeRepoResponse = ecrClient.describeRepositories(desRequest)
            val repoData =
                describeRepoResponse.repositories?.firstOrNull { it.repositoryName
== repoName }
                    ?: throw RuntimeException("Repository not found: $repoName")

            val tagImageCmd = getDockerClient()?.tagImageCmd("$imageName",
"${repoData.repositoryUri}", imageName)
            if (tagImageCmd != null) {
                tagImageCmd.exec()
            }
            val pushImageCmd =
                repoData.repositoryUri?.let {
                    dockerClient?.pushImageCmd(it)
                        // ?.withTag("latest")
                        ?.withAuthConfig(authConfig)
                }

            try {
                if (pushImageCmd != null) {
                    pushImageCmd.start().awaitCompletion()
                }
                println("The $imageName was pushed to Amazon ECR")
            } catch (e: IOException) {
                throw RuntimeException(e)
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PushImageCmd in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

SetRepositoryPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `SetRepositoryPolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Sets the repository policy for the specified ECR repository.
 *
 * @param repoName the name of the ECR repository.
 * @param iamRole the IAM role to be granted access to the repository.
 */
suspend fun setRepoPolicy(
    repoName: String?,
    iamRole: String?,
) {
    val policyDocumentTemplate =
        """
         {
          "Version" : "2012-10-17",
          "Statement" : [ {
            "Sid" : "new statement",
            "Effect" : "Allow",
            "Principal" : {
              "AWS" : "$iamRole"
            },
            "Action" : "ecr:BatchGetImage"
          } ]
        }

        """.trimIndent()
    val setRepositoryPolicyRequest =
        SetRepositoryPolicyRequest {
            repositoryName = repoName
            policyText = policyDocumentTemplate
        }

    EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
        val response = ecrClient.setRepositoryPolicy(setRepositoryPolicyRequest)
```

```
            if (response != null) {
                println("Repository policy set successfully.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`StartLifecyclePolicyPreview`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLifecyclePolicyPreview`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Verifies the existence of an image in an Amazon Elastic Container Registry
(Amazon ECR) repository asynchronously.
    *
    * @param repositoryName The name of the Amazon ECR repository.
    * @param imageTag       The tag of the image to verify.
    */
   suspend fun verifyImage(
       repoName: String?,
       imageTagVal: String?,
   ) {
       require(!(repoName == null || repoName.isEmpty())) { "Repository name cannot
be null or empty" }
       require(!(imageTagVal == null || imageTagVal.isEmpty())) { "Image tag cannot
be null or empty" }

       val imageId =
           ImageIdentifier {
               imageTag = imageTagVal
```

```
            }
        val request =
            DescribeImagesRequest {
                repositoryName = repoName
                imageIds = listOf(imageId)
            }

        EcrClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { ecrClient ->
            val describeImagesResponse = ecrClient.describeImages(request)
            if (describeImagesResponse != null && !
describeImagesResponse.imageDetails?.isEmpty()!!) {
                println("Image is present in the repository.")
            } else {
                println("Image is not present in the repository.")
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartLifecyclePolicyPreview in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

OpenSearch Service examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with OpenSearch Service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDomain`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewDomain(domainNameVal: String?) {
    val clusterConfigOb =
        ClusterConfig {
            dedicatedMasterEnabled = true
            dedicatedMasterCount = 3
            dedicatedMasterType =
 OpenSearchPartitionInstanceType.fromValue("t2.small.search")
            instanceType =
 OpenSearchPartitionInstanceType.fromValue("t2.small.search")
            instanceCount = 5
        }

    val ebsOptionsOb =
        EbsOptions {
            ebsEnabled = true
            volumeSize = 10
            volumeType = VolumeType.Gp2
        }

    val encryptionOptionsOb =
        NodeToNodeEncryptionOptions {
            enabled = true
        }

    val request =
        CreateDomainRequest {
            domainName = domainNameVal
            engineVersion = "OpenSearch_1.0"
            clusterConfig = clusterConfigOb
            ebsOptions = ebsOptionsOb
            nodeToNodeEncryptionOptions = encryptionOptionsOb
        }

    println("Sending domain creation request...")
```

```
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient ->
        val createResponse = searchClient.createDomain(request)
        println("Domain status is ${createResponse.domainStatus}")
        println("Domain Id is ${createResponse.domainStatus?.domainId}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDomain in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDomain`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSpecificDomain(domainNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteDomainRequest {
            domainName = domainNameVal
        }
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient ->
        searchClient.deleteDomain(request)
        println("$domainNameVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDomain in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListDomainNames`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDomainNames`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllDomains() {
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient ->
        val response: ListDomainNamesResponse =
 searchClient.listDomainNames(ListDomainNamesRequest {})
        response.domainNames?.forEach { domain ->
            println("Domain name is " + domain.domainName)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDomainNames in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateDomainConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateDomainConfig`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateSpecificDomain(domainNameVal: String?) {
    val clusterConfigOb =
        ClusterConfig {
            instanceCount = 3
        }

    val request =
```

```
        UpdateDomainConfigRequest {
            domainName = domainNameVal
            clusterConfig = clusterConfigOb
        }

    println("Sending domain update request...")
    OpenSearchClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { searchClient ->
        val updateResponse = searchClient.updateDomainConfig(request)
        println("Domain update response from Amazon OpenSearch Service:")
        println(updateResponse.toString())
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateDomainConfig in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

EventBridge examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with EventBridge.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello EventBridge

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.EventBridgeClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.model.ListEventBusesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.eventbridge.model.ListEventBusesResponse

suspend fun main() {
    listBusesHello()
}

suspend fun listBusesHello() {
    val request =
        ListEventBusesRequest {
            limit = 10
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response: ListEventBusesResponse = eventBrClient.listEventBuses(request)
        response.eventBuses?.forEach { bus ->
            println("The name of the event bus is ${bus.name}")
            println("The ARN of the event bus is ${bus.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListEventBuses in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a rule and add a target to it.
- Enable and disable rules.
- List and update rules and targets.

- Send events, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/*
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Kotlin example performs the following tasks with Amazon EventBridge:

 1. Creates an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to use with Amazon
 EventBridge.
 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket with EventBridge
 events enabled.
 3. Creates a rule that triggers when an object is uploaded to Amazon S3.
 4. Lists rules on the event bus.
 5. Creates a new Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic and lets the
 user subscribe to it.
 6. Adds a target to the rule that sends an email to the specified topic.
 7. Creates an EventBridge event that sends an email when an Amazon S3 object is
 created.
 8. Lists targets.
 9. Lists the rules for the same target.
 10. Triggers the rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.
 11. Disables a specific rule.
 12. Checks and prints the state of the rule.
 13. Adds a transform to the rule to change the text of the email.
 14. Enables a specific rule.
 15. Triggers the updated rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.
 16. Updates the rule to a custom rule pattern.
 17. Sends an event to trigger the rule.
 18. Cleans up resources.
*/
```

```
val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <roleName> <bucketName> <topicName> <eventRuleName>

    Where:
        roleName - The name of the role to create.
        bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket name to
 create.
        topicName - The name of the Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic to create.
        eventRuleName - The Amazon EventBridge rule name to create.
    """
    val polJSON =
        "{" +
            "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
            "\"Statement\": [{" +
            "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
            "\"Principal\": {" +
            "\"Service\": \"events.amazonaws.com\"" +
            "}," +
            "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
            "}]" +
            "}"

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val sc = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val roleName = args[0]
    val bucketName = args[1]
    val topicName = args[2]
    val eventRuleName = args[3]

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
```

```
   println("1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role to use with
Amazon EventBridge.")
   val roleArn = createIAMRole(roleName, polJSON)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("2. Create an S3 bucket with EventBridge events enabled.")
   if (checkBucket(bucketName)) {
       println("$bucketName already exists. Ending this scenario.")
       exitProcess(1)
   }

   createBucket(bucketName)
   delay(3000)
   setBucketNotification(bucketName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("3. Create a rule that triggers when an object is uploaded to Amazon
S3.")
   delay(10000)
   addEventRule(roleArn, bucketName, eventRuleName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("4. List rules on the event bus.")
   listRules()
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("5. Create a new SNS topic for testing and let the user subscribe to the
topic.")
   val topicArn = createSnsTopic(topicName)
   println(DASHES)

   println(DASHES)
   println("6. Add a target to the rule that sends an email to the specified
topic.")
   println("Enter your email to subscribe to the Amazon SNS topic:")
   val email = sc.nextLine()
   subEmail(topicArn, email)
   println("Use the link in the email you received to confirm your subscription.
Then press Enter to continue.")
   sc.nextLine()
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Create an EventBridge event that sends an email when an Amazon S3
object is created.")
    addSnsEventRule(eventRuleName, topicArn, topicName, eventRuleName, bucketName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. List targets.")
    listTargets(eventRuleName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(" 9. List the rules for the same target.")
    listTargetRules(topicArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Trigger the rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.")
    println("Press Enter to continue.")
    sc.nextLine()
    uploadTextFiletoS3(bucketName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Disable a specific rule.")
    changeRuleState(eventRuleName, false)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Check and print the state of the rule.")
    checkRule(eventRuleName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Add a transform to the rule to change the text of the email.")
    updateSnsEventRule(topicArn, eventRuleName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Enable a specific rule.")
    changeRuleState(eventRuleName, true)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Trigger the updated rule by uploading a file to the S3 bucket.")
    println("Press Enter to continue.")
    sc.nextLine()
    uploadTextFiletoS3(bucketName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Update the rule to a custom rule pattern.")
    updateToCustomRule(eventRuleName)
    println("Updated event rule $eventRuleName to use a custom pattern.")
    updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(topicArn, eventRuleName)
    println("Updated event target $topicArn.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Send an event to trigger the rule. This will trigger a subscription
 email.")
    triggerCustomRule(email)
    println("Events have been sent. Press Enter to continue.")
    sc.nextLine()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("18. Clean up resources.")
    println("Do you want to clean up resources (y/n)")
    val ans = sc.nextLine()
    if (ans.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        cleanupResources(topicArn, eventRuleName, bucketName, roleName)
    } else {
        println("The resources will not be cleaned up. ")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The Amazon EventBridge example scenario has successfully completed.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun cleanupResources(
    topicArn: String?,
    eventRuleName: String?,
    bucketName: String?,
```

```
    roleName: String?,
) {
    println("Removing all targets from the event rule.")
    deleteTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName)
    deleteRuleByName(eventRuleName)
    deleteSNSTopic(topicArn)
    deleteS3Bucket(bucketName)
    deleteRole(roleName)
}

suspend fun deleteRole(roleNameVal: String?) {
    val policyArnVal = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess"
    val policyRequest =
        DetachRolePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = policyArnVal
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iam ->
        iam.detachRolePolicy(policyRequest)
        println("Successfully detached policy $policyArnVal from role $roleNameVal")

        // Delete the role.
        val roleRequest =
            DeleteRoleRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
            }

        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteS3Bucket(bucketName: String?) {
    // Remove all the objects from the S3 bucket.
    val listObjects =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        val res = s3Client.listObjects(listObjects)
        val myObjects = res.contents
        val toDelete = mutableListOf<ObjectIdentifier>()

        if (myObjects != null) {
```

```
            for (myValue in myObjects) {
                toDelete.add(
                    ObjectIdentifier {
                        key = myValue.key
                    },
                )
            }
        }

        val delOb =
            Delete {
                objects = toDelete
            }

        val dor =
            DeleteObjectsRequest {
                bucket = bucketName
                delete = delOb
            }
        s3Client.deleteObjects(dor)

        // Delete the S3 bucket.
        val deleteBucketRequest =
            DeleteBucketRequest {
                bucket = bucketName
            }
        s3Client.deleteBucket(deleteBucketRequest)
        println("You have deleted the bucket and the objects")
    }
}

// Delete the SNS topic.
suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteTopicRequest {
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println(" $topicArnVal was deleted.")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun deleteRuleByName(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DeleteRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
        }
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest)
        println("Successfully deleted the rule")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
    val request =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request)
        val allTargets = response.targets

        // Get all targets and delete them.
        if (allTargets != null) {
            for (myTarget in allTargets) {
                val removeTargetsRequest =
                    RemoveTargetsRequest {
                        rule = eventRuleName
                        ids = listOf(myTarget.id.toString())
                    }
                eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest)
                println("Successfully removed the target")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun triggerCustomRule(email: String) {
    val json =
        "{" +
            "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
            "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"" +
```

```
            "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
            "}"

    val entry =
        PutEventsRequestEntry {
            source = "ExampleSource"
            detail = json
            detailType = "ExampleType"
        }

    val eventsRequest =
        PutEventsRequest {
            this.entries = listOf(entry)
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(
    topicArn: String?,
    ruleName: String?,
) {
    val targetId = UUID.randomUUID().toString()

    val inputTransformerOb =
        InputTransformer {
            inputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.\""
        }

    val target =
        Target {
            id = targetId
            arn = topicArn
            inputTransformer = inputTransformerOb
        }

    val targetsRequest =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            rule = ruleName
            targets = listOf(target)
            eventBusName = null
```

```
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun updateToCustomRule(ruleName: String?) {
    val customEventsPattern =
        "{" +
            "\"source\": [\"ExampleSource\"]," +
            "\"detail-type\": [\"ExampleType\"]" +
            "}"
    val request =
        PutRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
            description = "Custom test rule"
            eventPattern = customEventsPattern
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putRule(request)
    }
}

// Update an Amazon S3 object created rule with a transform on the target.
suspend fun updateSnsEventRule(
    topicArn: String?,
    ruleName: String?,
) {
    val targetId = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
    val myMap = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    myMap["bucket"] = "$.detail.bucket.name"
    myMap["time"] = "$.time"

    val inputTransOb =
        InputTransformer {
            inputTemplate = "\"Notification: an object was uploaded to bucket
 <bucket> at <time>.\""
            inputPathsMap = myMap
        }
    val targetOb =
```

```
        Target {
            id = targetId
            arn = topicArn
            inputTransformer = inputTransOb
        }

    val targetsRequest =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            rule = ruleName
            targets = listOf(targetOb)
            eventBusName = null
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun checkRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DescribeRuleRequest {
            name = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The state of the rule is $response")
    }
}

suspend fun changeRuleState(
    eventRuleName: String,
    isEnabled: Boolean?,
) {
    if (!isEnabled!!) {
        println("Disabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            DisableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest)
```

```
        }
    } else {
        println("Enabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            EnableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    }
}

// Create and upload a file to an S3 bucket to trigger an event.
@Throws(IOException::class)
suspend fun uploadTextFiletoS3(bucketName: String?) {
    val fileSuffix = SimpleDateFormat("yyyyMMddHHmmss").format(Date())
    val fileName = "TextFile$fileSuffix.txt"
    val myFile = File(fileName)
    val fw = FileWriter(myFile.absoluteFile)
    val bw = BufferedWriter(fw)
    bw.write("This is a sample file for testing uploads.")
    bw.close()

    val putOb =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = fileName
            body = myFile.asByteStream()
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.putObject(putOb)
    }
}

suspend fun listTargetRules(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
        ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest {
            targetArn = topicArnVal
        }
```

```
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest)
        response.ruleNames?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is $rule")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listTargets(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest)
        response.targets?.forEach { target ->
            println("Target ARN: ${target.arn}")
        }
    }
}

// Add a rule that triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3 bucket.
suspend fun addSnsEventRule(
    ruleName: String?,
    topicArn: String?,
    topicName: String,
    eventRuleName: String,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val targetID = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
    val myTarget =
        Target {
            id = targetID
            arn = topicArn
        }

    val targetsOb = mutableListOf<Target>()
    targetsOb.add(myTarget)

    val request =
        PutTargetsRequest {
```

```
            eventBusName = null
            targets = targetsOb
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putTargets(request)
        println("Added event rule $eventRuleName with Amazon SNS target $topicName
 for bucket $bucketName.")
    }
}

suspend fun subEmail(
    topicArnVal: String?,
    email: String?,
) {
    val request =
        SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "email"
            endpoint = email
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
        println(" Subscription ARN: ${result.subscriptionArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun createSnsTopic(topicName: String): String? {
    val topicPolicy = """
    {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Sid": "EventBridgePublishTopic",
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {
                    "Service": "events.amazonaws.com"
                },
                "Resource": "*",
                "Action": "sns:Publish"
```

```
            }
        ]
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val topicAttributes = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    topicAttributes["Policy"] = topicPolicy

    val topicRequest =
        CreateTopicRequest {
            name = topicName
            attributes = topicAttributes
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest)
        println("Added topic $topicName for email subscriptions.")
        return response.topicArn
    }
}

suspend fun listRules() {
    val rulesRequest =
        ListRulesRequest {
            eventBusName = "default"
            limit = 10
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest)
        response.rules?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is ${rule.name}")
            println("The rule ARN is ${rule.arn}")
        }
    }
}

// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in a
 bucket.
suspend fun addEventRule(
    roleArnVal: String?,
    bucketName: String,
    eventRuleName: String?,
```

```
) {
    val pattern = """
    {
        "source": ["aws.s3"],
        "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
        "detail": {
            "bucket": {
                "name": ["$bucketName"]
            }
        }
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val ruleRequest =
        PutRuleRequest {
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
            name = eventRuleName
            eventPattern = pattern
            roleArn = roleArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The ARN of the new rule is ${ruleResponse.ruleArn}")
    }
}

// Set the Amazon S3 bucket notification configuration.
suspend fun setBucketNotification(bucketName: String) {
    val eventBridgeConfig =
        EventBridgeConfiguration {
        }

    val configuration =
        NotificationConfiguration {
            eventBridgeConfiguration = eventBridgeConfig
        }

    val configurationRequest =
        PutBucketNotificationConfigurationRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            notificationConfiguration = configuration
            skipDestinationValidation = true
```

```
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.putBucketNotificationConfiguration(configurationRequest)
        println("Added bucket $bucketName with EventBridge events enabled.")
    }
}

// Create an S3 bucket using a waiter.
suspend fun createBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        CreateBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        s3.waitUntilBucketExists {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun checkBucket(bucketName: String?): Boolean {
    try {
        // Determine if the S3 bucket exists.
        val headBucketRequest =
            HeadBucketRequest {
                bucket = bucketName
            }

        S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest)
            return true
        }
    } catch (e: S3Exception) {
        System.err.println(e.message)
    }
    return false
}

suspend fun createIAMRole(
    rolenameVal: String?,
```

```
    polJSON: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateRoleRequest {
            roleName = rolenameVal
            assumeRolePolicyDocument = polJSON
            description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    val rolePolicyRequest =
        AttachRolePolicyRequest {
            roleName = rolenameVal
            policyArn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonEventBridgeFullAccess"
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iam ->
        val response = iam.createRole(request)
        iam.attachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)
        return response.role?.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - DeleteRule
  - DescribeRule
  - DisableRule
  - EnableRule
  - ListRuleNamesByTarget
  - ListRules
  - ListTargetsByRule
  - PutEvents
  - PutRule
  - PutTargets

Actions

`DeleteRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteRuleByName(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DeleteRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
        }
    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.deleteRule(ruleRequest)
        println("Successfully deleted the rule")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        DescribeRuleRequest {
            name = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.describeRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The state of the rule is $response")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DisableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun changeRuleState(
    eventRuleName: String,
    isEnabled: Boolean?,
) {
    if (!isEnabled!!) {
        println("Disabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            DisableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
```

```
    } else {
        println("Enabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            EnableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`EnableRule`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun changeRuleState(
    eventRuleName: String,
    isEnabled: Boolean?,
) {
    if (!isEnabled!!) {
        println("Disabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            DisableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.disableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
```

```
    } else {
        println("Enabling the rule: $eventRuleName")
        val ruleRequest =
            EnableRuleRequest {
                name = eventRuleName
            }
        EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { eventBrClient ->
            eventBrClient.enableRule(ruleRequest)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListRuleNamesByTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRuleNamesByTarget`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listTargetRules(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val ruleNamesByTargetRequest =
        ListRuleNamesByTargetRequest {
            targetArn = topicArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listRuleNamesByTarget(ruleNamesByTargetRequest)
        response.ruleNames?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is $rule")
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListRuleNamesByTarget in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListRules`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRules`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listRules() {
    val rulesRequest =
        ListRulesRequest {
            eventBusName = "default"
            limit = 10
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listRules(rulesRequest)
        response.rules?.forEach { rule ->
            println("The rule name is ${rule.name}")
            println("The rule ARN is ${rule.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListRules in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListTargetsByRule`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTargetsByRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listTargets(ruleName: String?) {
    val ruleRequest =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(ruleRequest)
        response.targets?.forEach { target ->
            println("Target ARN: ${target.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTargetsByRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `PutEvents`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun triggerCustomRule(email: String) {
    val json =
```

```
        "{" +
            "\"UserEmail\": \"" + email + "\"," +
            "\"Message\": \"This event was generated by example code.\"" +
            "\"UtcTime\": \"Now.\"" +
            "}"

    val entry =
        PutEventsRequestEntry {
            source = "ExampleSource"
            detail = json
            detailType = "ExampleType"
        }

    val eventsRequest =
        PutEventsRequest {
            this.entries = listOf(entry)
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putEvents(eventsRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutEvents in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutRule`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a scheduled rule.

```
suspend fun createScRule(
```

```
    ruleName: String?,
    cronExpression: String?,
) {
    val ruleRequest =
        PutRuleRequest {
            name = ruleName
            eventBusName = "default"
            scheduleExpression = cronExpression
            state = RuleState.Enabled
            description = "A test rule that runs on a schedule created by the Kotlin
 API"
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The ARN of the new rule is ${ruleResponse.ruleArn}")
    }
}
```

Create a rule that triggers when an object is added to an Amazon Simple Storage Service bucket.

```
// Create a new event rule that triggers when an Amazon S3 object is created in a
 bucket.
suspend fun addEventRule(
    roleArnVal: String?,
    bucketName: String,
    eventRuleName: String?,
) {
    val pattern = """
    {
        "source": ["aws.s3"],
        "detail-type": ["Object Created"],
        "detail": {
            "bucket": {
                "name": ["$bucketName"]
            }
        }
    }
    """.trimIndent()
```

```
    val ruleRequest =
        PutRuleRequest {
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
            name = eventRuleName
            eventPattern = pattern
            roleArn = roleArnVal
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val ruleResponse = eventBrClient.putRule(ruleRequest)
        println("The ARN of the new rule is ${ruleResponse.ruleArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `PutTargets`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Add a rule that triggers an SNS target when a file is uploaded to an S3 bucket.
suspend fun addSnsEventRule(
    ruleName: String?,
    topicArn: String?,
    topicName: String,
    eventRuleName: String,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val targetID = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
    val myTarget =
        Target {
            id = targetID
```

```
            arn = topicArn
        }

    val targetsOb = mutableListOf<Target>()
    targetsOb.add(myTarget)

    val request =
        PutTargetsRequest {
            eventBusName = null
            targets = targetsOb
            rule = ruleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putTargets(request)
        println("Added event rule $eventRuleName with Amazon SNS target $topicName
 for bucket $bucketName.")
    }
}
```

Add an input transformer to a target for a rule.

```
suspend fun updateCustomRuleTargetWithTransform(
    topicArn: String?,
    ruleName: String?,
) {
    val targetId = UUID.randomUUID().toString()

    val inputTransformerOb =
        InputTransformer {
            inputTemplate = "\"Notification: sample event was received.\""
        }

    val target =
        Target {
            id = targetId
            arn = topicArn
            inputTransformer = inputTransformerOb
        }

    val targetsRequest =
```

```
        PutTargetsRequest {
            rule = ruleName
            targets = listOf(target)
            eventBusName = null
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        eventBrClient.putTargets(targetsRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutTargets in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`RemoveTargets`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTargets`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteTargetsFromRule(eventRuleName: String?) {
    // First, get all targets that will be deleted.
    val request =
        ListTargetsByRuleRequest {
            rule = eventRuleName
        }

    EventBridgeClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { eventBrClient -
>
        val response = eventBrClient.listTargetsByRule(request)
        val allTargets = response.targets

        // Get all targets and delete them.
        if (allTargets != null) {
            for (myTarget in allTargets) {
```

```
                val removeTargetsRequest =
                    RemoveTargetsRequest {
                        rule = eventRuleName
                        ids = listOf(myTarget.id.toString())
                    }
                eventBrClient.removeTargets(removeTargetsRequest)
                println("Successfully removed the target")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTargets in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.

- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <iam> <s3Path> <cron> <dbName> <crawlerName> <jobName> <scriptLocation>
 <locationUri>

        Where:
            iam - The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the AWS Identity and Access
 Management (IAM) role that has AWS Glue and Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon
 S3) permissions.
            s3Path - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) target that
 contains data (for example, CSV data).
            cron - A cron expression used to specify the schedule (for example,
 cron(15 12 * * ? *).
            dbName - The database name.
            crawlerName - The name of the crawler.
            jobName - The name you assign to this job definition.
            scriptLocation - Specifies the Amazon S3 path to a script that runs a
 job.
            locationUri - Specifies the location of the database
        """

    if (args.size != 8) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }
```

```
    val iam = args[0]
    val s3Path = args[1]
    val cron = args[2]
    val dbName = args[3]
    val crawlerName = args[4]
    val jobName = args[5]
    val scriptLocation = args[6]
    val locationUri = args[7]

    println("About to start the AWS Glue Scenario")
    createDatabase(dbName, locationUri)
    createCrawler(iam, s3Path, cron, dbName, crawlerName)
    getCrawler(crawlerName)
    startCrawler(crawlerName)
    getDatabase(dbName)
    getGlueTables(dbName)
    createJob(jobName, iam, scriptLocation)
    startJob(jobName)
    getJobs()
    getJobRuns(jobName)
    deleteJob(jobName)
    println("*** Wait for 5 MIN so the $crawlerName is ready to be deleted")
    TimeUnit.MINUTES.sleep(5)
    deleteMyDatabase(dbName)
    deleteCrawler(crawlerName)
}

suspend fun createDatabase(
    dbName: String?,
    locationUriVal: String?,
) {
    val input =
        DatabaseInput {
            description = "Built with the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
            name = dbName
            locationUri = locationUriVal
        }

    val request =
        CreateDatabaseRequest {
            databaseInput = input
        }
```

```
    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createDatabase(request)
        println("The database was successfully created")
    }
}

suspend fun createCrawler(
    iam: String?,
    s3Path: String?,
    cron: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    crawlerName: String,
) {
    val s3Target =
        S3Target {
            path = s3Path
        }

    val targetList = ArrayList<S3Target>()
    targetList.add(s3Target)

    val targetOb =
        CrawlerTargets {
            s3Targets = targetList
        }

    val crawlerRequest =
        CreateCrawlerRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            name = crawlerName
            description = "Created by the AWS Glue Java API"
            targets = targetOb
            role = iam
            schedule = cron
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createCrawler(crawlerRequest)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully created")
    }
}

suspend fun getCrawler(crawlerName: String?) {
    val request =
```

```
        GetCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getCrawler(request)
        val role = response.crawler?.role
        println("The role associated with this crawler is $role")
    }
}

suspend fun startCrawler(crawlerName: String) {
    val crawlerRequest =
        StartCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.startCrawler(crawlerRequest)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully started.")
    }
}

suspend fun getDatabase(databaseName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetDatabaseRequest {
            name = databaseName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getDatabase(request)
        val dbDesc = response.database?.description
        println("The database description is $dbDesc")
    }
}

suspend fun getGlueTables(dbName: String?) {
    val tableRequest =
        GetTablesRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getTables(tableRequest)
```

```
        response.tableList?.forEach { tableName ->
            println("Table name is ${tableName.name}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun startJob(jobNameVal: String?) {
    val runRequest =
        StartJobRunRequest {
            workerType = WorkerType.G1X
            numberOfWorkers = 10
            jobName = jobNameVal
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.startJobRun(runRequest)
        println("The job run Id is ${response.jobRunId}")
    }
}

suspend fun createJob(
    jobName: String,
    iam: String?,
    scriptLocationVal: String?,
) {
    val commandOb =
        JobCommand {
            pythonVersion = "3"
            name = "MyJob1"
            scriptLocation = scriptLocationVal
        }

    val jobRequest =
        CreateJobRequest {
            description = "A Job created by using the AWS SDK for Java V2"
            glueVersion = "2.0"
            workerType = WorkerType.G1X
            numberOfWorkers = 10
            name = jobName
            role = iam
            command = commandOb
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
```

```
        glueClient.createJob(jobRequest)
        println("$jobName was successfully created.")
    }
}

suspend fun getJobs() {
    val request =
        GetJobsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getJobs(request)
        response.jobs?.forEach { job ->
            println("Job name is ${job.name}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getJobRuns(jobNameVal: String?) {
    val request =
        GetJobRunsRequest {
            jobName = jobNameVal
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getJobRuns(request)
        response.jobRuns?.forEach { job ->
            println("Job name is ${job.jobName}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun deleteJob(jobNameVal: String) {
    val jobRequest =
        DeleteJobRequest {
            jobName = jobNameVal
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.deleteJob(jobRequest)
        println("$jobNameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun deleteMyDatabase(databaseName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteDatabaseRequest {
            name = databaseName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.deleteDatabase(request)
        println("$databaseName was successfully deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteCrawler(crawlerName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }
    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.deleteCrawler(request)
        println("$crawlerName was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns

- GetTables
- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createGlueCrawler(
    iam: String?,
    s3Path: String?,
    cron: String?,
    dbName: String?,
    crawlerName: String,
) {
    val s3Target =
        S3Target {
            path = s3Path
        }

    // Add the S3Target to a list.
    val targetList = mutableListOf<S3Target>()
    targetList.add(s3Target)

    val targetOb =
        CrawlerTargets {
            s3Targets = targetList
        }
```

```
    val request =
        CreateCrawlerRequest {
            databaseName = dbName
            name = crawlerName
            description = "Created by the AWS Glue Kotlin API"
            targets = targetOb
            role = iam
            schedule = cron
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.createCrawler(request)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully created")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificCrawler(crawlerName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }
    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getCrawler(request)
        val role = response.crawler?.role
        println("The role associated with this crawler is $role")
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificDatabase(databaseName: String?) {
    val request =
        GetDatabaseRequest {
            name = databaseName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { glueClient ->
        val response = glueClient.getDatabase(request)
        val dbDesc = response.database?.description
        println("The database description is $dbDesc")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`StartCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun startSpecificCrawler(crawlerName: String?) {
    val request =
        StartCrawlerRequest {
            name = crawlerName
        }

    GlueClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { glueClient ->
        glueClient.startCrawler(request)
        println("$crawlerName was successfully started.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM user actions.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <username> <policyName> <roleName> <roleSessionName> <fileLocation>
 <bucketName>

    Where:
        username - The name of the IAM user to create.
        policyName - The name of the policy to create.
        roleName - The name of the role to create.
        roleSessionName - The name of the session required for the assumeRole
 operation.
```

```
        fileLocation - The file location to the JSON required to create the role
 (see Readme).
        bucketName - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket from which objects are read.
    """

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val userName = args[0]
    val policyName = args[1]
    val roleName = args[2]
    val roleSessionName = args[3]
    val fileLocation = args[4]
    val bucketName = args[5]

    createUser(userName)
    println("$userName was successfully created.")

    val polArn = createPolicy(policyName)
    println("The policy $polArn was successfully created.")

    val roleArn = createRole(roleName, fileLocation)
    println("$roleArn was successfully created.")
    attachRolePolicy(roleName, polArn)

    println("*** Wait for 1 MIN so the resource is available.")
    delay(60000)
    assumeGivenRole(roleArn, roleSessionName, bucketName)

    println("*** Getting ready to delete the AWS resources.")
    deleteRole(roleName, polArn)
    deleteUser(userName)
    println("This IAM Scenario has successfully completed.")
}

suspend fun createUser(usernameVal: String?): String? {
    val request =
        CreateUserRequest {
            userName = usernameVal
        }

    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
```

```
        val response = iamClient.createUser(request)
        return response.user?.userName
    }
}

suspend fun createPolicy(policyNameVal: String?): String {
    val policyDocumentValue = """
    {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "s3:*"
                ],
                "Resource": "*"
            }
        ]
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val request =
        CreatePolicyRequest {
            policyName = policyNameVal
            policyDocument = policyDocumentValue
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createPolicy(request)
        return response.policy?.arn.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun createRole(
    rolenameVal: String?,
    fileLocation: String?,
): String? {
    val jsonObject = fileLocation?.let { readJsonSimpleDemo(it) } as JSONObject

    val request =
        CreateRoleRequest {
            roleName = rolenameVal
            assumeRolePolicyDocument = jsonObject.toJSONString()
            description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
```

```
        }

    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createRole(request)
        return response.role?.arn
    }
}

suspend fun attachRolePolicy(
    roleNameVal: String,
    policyArnVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAttachedRolePolicies(request)
        val attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies

        // Ensure that the policy is not attached to this role.
        val checkStatus: Int
        if (attachedPolicies != null) {
            checkStatus = checkMyList(attachedPolicies, policyArnVal)
            if (checkStatus == -1) {
                return
            }
        }

        val policyRequest =
            AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policyArnVal
            }
        iamClient.attachRolePolicy(policyRequest)
        println("Successfully attached policy $policyArnVal to role $roleNameVal")
    }
}

fun checkMyList(
    attachedPolicies: List<AttachedPolicy>,
    policyArnVal: String,
): Int {
```

```
    for (policy in attachedPolicies) {
        val polArn = policy.policyArn.toString()

        if (polArn.compareTo(policyArnVal) == 0) {
            println("The policy is already attached to this role.")
            return -1
        }
    }
    return 0
}

suspend fun assumeGivenRole(
    roleArnVal: String?,
    roleSessionNameVal: String?,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val stsClient = StsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }
    val roleRequest =
        AssumeRoleRequest {
            roleArn = roleArnVal
            roleSessionName = roleSessionNameVal
        }

    val roleResponse = stsClient.assumeRole(roleRequest)
    val myCreds = roleResponse.credentials
    val key = myCreds?.accessKeyId
    val secKey = myCreds?.secretAccessKey
    val secToken = myCreds?.sessionToken

    val staticCredentials = StaticCredentialsProvider {
        accessKeyId = key
        secretAccessKey = secKey
        sessionToken = secToken
    }

    // List all objects in an Amazon S3 bucket using the temp creds.
    val s3 = S3Client.fromEnvironment {
        region = "us-east-1"
        credentialsProvider = staticCredentials
    }

    println("Created a S3Client using temp credentials.")
    println("Listing objects in $bucketName")
```

```
    val listObjects =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    val response = s3.listObjects(listObjects)
    response.contents?.forEach { myObject ->
        println("The name of the key is ${myObject.key}")
        println("The owner is ${myObject.owner}")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteRole(
    roleNameVal: String,
    polArn: String,
) {
    val iam = IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }

    // First the policy needs to be detached.
    val rolePolicyRequest =
        DetachRolePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = polArn
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)

    // Delete the policy.
    val request =
        DeletePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = polArn
        }

    iam.deletePolicy(request)
    println("*** Successfully deleted $polArn")

    // Delete the role.
    val roleRequest =
        DeleteRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
    println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
```

```
}

suspend fun deleteUser(userNameVal: String) {
    val iam = IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }
    val request =
        DeleteUserRequest {
            userName = userNameVal
        }

    iam.deleteUser(request)
    println("*** Successfully deleted $userNameVal")
}

@Throws(java.lang.Exception::class)
fun readJsonSimpleDemo(filename: String): Any? {
    val reader = FileReader(filename)
    val jsonParser = JSONParser()
    return jsonParser.parse(reader)
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun attachIAMRolePolicy(
    roleNameVal: String,
    policyArnVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        ListAttachedRolePoliciesRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAttachedRolePolicies(request)
        val attachedPolicies = response.attachedPolicies

        // Ensure that the policy is not attached to this role.
        val checkStatus: Int
        if (attachedPolicies != null) {
            checkStatus = checkList(attachedPolicies, policyArnVal)
            if (checkStatus == -1) {
                return
            }
        }

        val policyRequest =
            AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policyArnVal
            }
        iamClient.attachRolePolicy(policyRequest)
```

```
        println("Successfully attached policy $policyArnVal to role $roleNameVal")
    }
}

fun checkList(
    attachedPolicies: List<AttachedPolicy>,
    policyArnVal: String,
): Int {
    for (policy in attachedPolicies) {
        val polArn = policy.policyArn.toString()

        if (polArn.compareTo(policyArnVal) == 0) {
            println("The policy is already attached to this role.")
            return -1
        }
    }
    return 0
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMAccessKey(user: String?): String {
    val request =
        CreateAccessKeyRequest {
            userName = user
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
```

```
        val response = iamClient.createAccessKey(request)
        return response.accessKey?.accessKeyId.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMAccountAlias(alias: String) {
    val request =
        CreateAccountAliasRequest {
            accountAlias = alias
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.createAccountAlias(request)
        println("Successfully created account alias named $alias")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMPolicy(policyNameVal: String?): String {
    val policyDocumentVal = """
    {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "dynamodb:DeleteItem",
                    "dynamodb:GetItem",
                    "dynamodb:PutItem",
                    "dynamodb:Scan",
                    "dynamodb:UpdateItem"
                ],
                "Resource": "*"
            }
        ]
    }
    """.trimIndent()

    val request =
        CreatePolicyRequest {
            policyName = policyNameVal
            policyDocument = policyDocumentVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createPolicy(request)
        return response.policy?.arn.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIAMUser(usernameVal: String?): String? {
    val request =
        CreateUserRequest {
            userName = usernameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.createUser(request)
        return response.user?.userName
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteKey(
```

```
    userNameVal: String,
    accessKey: String,
) {
    val request =
        DeleteAccessKeyRequest {
            accessKeyId = accessKey
            userName = userNameVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deleteAccessKey(request)
        println("Successfully deleted access key $accessKey from $userNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIAMAccountAlias(alias: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteAccountAliasRequest {
            accountAlias = alias
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deleteAccountAlias(request)
        println("Successfully deleted account alias $alias")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIAMPolicy(policyARNVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DeletePolicyRequest {
            policyArn = policyARNVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deletePolicy(request)
        println("Successfully deleted $policyARNVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIAMUser(userNameVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteUserRequest {
            userName = userNameVal
        }

    // To delete a user, ensure that the user's access keys are deleted first.
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.deleteUser(request)
        println("Successfully deleted user $userNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detachPolicy(
    roleNameVal: String,
    policyArnVal: String,
) {
```

```
    val request =
        DetachRolePolicyRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
            policyArn = policyArnVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.detachRolePolicy(request)
        println("Successfully detached policy $policyArnVal from role $roleNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getIAMPolicy(policyArnVal: String?) {
    val request =
        GetPolicyRequest {
            policyArn = policyArnVal
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.getPolicy(request)
        println("Successfully retrieved policy ${response.policy?.policyName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listKeys(userNameVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListAccessKeysRequest {
            userName = userNameVal
        }
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAccessKeys(request)
        response.accessKeyMetadata?.forEach { md ->
            println("Retrieved access key ${md.accessKeyId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAliases() {
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listAccountAliases(ListAccountAliasesRequest {})
        response.accountAliases?.forEach { alias ->
            println("Retrieved account alias $alias")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllUsers() {
    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val response = iamClient.listUsers(ListUsersRequest { })
        response.users?.forEach { user ->
            println("Retrieved user ${user.userName}")
            val permissionsBoundary = user.permissionsBoundary
            if (permissionsBoundary != null) {
                println("Permissions boundary details
 ${permissionsBoundary.permissionsBoundaryType}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateIAMUser(
    curName: String?,
    newName: String?,
) {
    val request =
        UpdateUserRequest {
            userName = curName
            newUserName = newName
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        iamClient.updateUser(request)
        println("Successfully updated user to $newName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

AWS IoT examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with AWS IoT.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.IotClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.ListThingsRequest

suspend fun main() {
    println("A listing of your AWS IoT Things:")
    listAllThings()
}

suspend fun listAllThings() {
    val thingsRequest =
        ListThingsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listThings(thingsRequest)
        val thingList = response.things
        if (thingList != null) {
            for (attribute in thingList) {
                println("Thing name ${attribute.thingName}")
                println("Thing ARN: ${attribute.thingArn}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listThings in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS IoT Thing.
- Generate a device certificate.
- Update an AWS IoT Thing with Attributes.
- Return a unique endpoint.
- List your AWS IoT certificates.
- Create an AWS IoT shadow.
- Write out state information.
- Creates a rule.
- List your rules.
- Search things using the Thing name.
- Delete an AWS IoT Thing.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.IotClient
```

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.Action
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.AttachThingPrincipalRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.AttributePayload
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.CreateThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.CreateTopicRuleRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DeleteCertificateRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DeleteThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DescribeEndpointRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DescribeThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.DetachThingPrincipalRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.ListTopicRulesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.SearchIndexRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.SnsAction
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.TopicRulePayload
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iot.model.UpdateThingRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iotdataplane.IotDataPlaneClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iotdataplane.model.GetThingShadowRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iotdataplane.model.UpdateThingShadowRequest
import aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.content.ByteStream
import aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.content.toByteArray
import java.util.Scanner
import java.util.regex.Pattern
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

/**
 * Before running this Kotlin code example, ensure that your development environment
 * is set up, including configuring your credentials.
 *
 * For detailed instructions, refer to the following documentation topic:
 * [Setting Up Your Development Environment](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-
kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html)
 *
 * This code example requires an SNS topic and an IAM Role.
 * Follow the steps in the documentation to set up these resources:
 *
 * - [Creating an SNS Topic](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-getting-
started.html#step-create-topic)
 * - [Creating an IAM Role](https://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/
id_roles_create.html)
 */

val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
val TOPIC = "your-iot-topic"
```

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage =
        """
        Usage:
            <roleARN> <snsAction>

        Where:
            roleARN - The ARN of an IAM role that has permission to work with AWS
 IOT.
            snsAction  - An ARN of an SNS topic.

        """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 2) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    var thingName: String
    val roleARN = args[0]
    val snsAction = args[1]
    val scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS IoT example scenario.")
    println(
        """
        This example program demonstrates various interactions with the AWS Internet
 of Things (IoT) Core service.
        The program guides you through a series of steps, including creating an IoT
 thing, generating a device certificate,
        updating the thing with attributes, and so on.

        It utilizes the AWS SDK for Kotlin and incorporates functionality for
 creating and managing IoT things, certificates, rules,
        shadows, and performing searches. The program aims to showcase AWS IoT
 capabilities and provides a comprehensive example for
        developers working with AWS IoT in a Kotlin environment.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an AWS IoT thing.")
    println(
        """
        An AWS IoT thing represents a virtual entity in the AWS IoT service that can
be associated with a physical device.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    // Prompt the user for input.
    print("Enter thing name: ")
    thingName = scanner.nextLine()
    createIoTThing(thingName)
    describeThing(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Generate a device certificate.")
    println(
        """
        A device certificate performs a role in securing the communication between
devices (things) and the AWS IoT platform.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    print("Do you want to create a certificate for $thingName? (y/n)")
    val certAns = scanner.nextLine()
    var certificateArn: String? = ""
    if (certAns != null && certAns.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("y", ignoreCase =
true)) {
        certificateArn = createCertificate()
        println("Attach the certificate to the AWS IoT thing.")
        attachCertificateToThing(thingName, certificateArn)
    } else {
        println("A device certificate was not created.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Update an AWS IoT thing with Attributes.")
    println(
        """
        IoT thing attributes, represented as key-value pairs, offer a pivotal
advantage in facilitating efficient data
```

```
        management and retrieval within the AWS IoT ecosystem.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    updateThing(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Return a unique endpoint specific to the Amazon Web Services
account.")
    println(
        """
        An IoT Endpoint refers to a specific URL or Uniform Resource Locator that
serves as the entry point for communication between IoT devices and the AWS IoT
service.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    val endpointUrl = describeEndpoint()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. List your AWS IoT certificates")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    if (certificateArn!!.isNotEmpty()) {
        listCertificates()
    } else {
        println("You did not create a certificates. Skipping this step.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Create an IoT shadow that refers to a digital representation or
virtual twin of a physical IoT device")
    println(
        """
        A thing shadow refers to a feature that enables you to create a virtual
representation, or "shadow,"
        of a physical device or thing. The thing shadow allows you to synchronize
and control the state of a device between
```

```
        the cloud and the device itself. and the AWS IoT service. For example, you
can write and retrieve JSON data from a thing shadow.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    updateShawdowThing(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Write out the state information, in JSON format.")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    getPayload(thingName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Creates a rule")
    println(
        """
        Creates a rule that is an administrator-level action.
        Any user who has permission to create rules will be able to access data
processed by the rule.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    print("Enter Rule name: ")
    val ruleName = scanner.nextLine()
    createIoTRule(roleARN, ruleName, snsAction)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. List your rules.")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    listIoTRules()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Search things using the name.")
    print("Press Enter to continue...")
    scanner.nextLine()
    val queryString = "thingName:$thingName"
    searchThings(queryString)
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    if (certificateArn.length > 0) {
        print("Do you want to detach and delete the certificate for $thingName? (y/
n)")
        val delAns = scanner.nextLine()
        if (delAns != null && delAns.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("y", ignoreCase =
 true)) {
            println("11. You selected to detach amd delete the certificate.")
            print("Press Enter to continue...")
            scanner.nextLine()
            detachThingPrincipal(thingName, certificateArn)
            deleteCertificate(certificateArn)
        } else {
            println("11. You selected not to delete the certificate.")
        }
    } else {
        println("11. You did not create a certificate so there is nothing to
 delete.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Delete the AWS IoT thing.")
    print("Do you want to delete the IoT thing? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine()
    if (delAns != null && delAns.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("y", ignoreCase = true))
 {
        deleteIoTThing(thingName)
    } else {
        println("The IoT thing was not deleted.")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The AWS IoT workflow has successfully completed.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val deleteThingRequest =
        DeleteThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
```

```
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteThing(deleteThingRequest)
        println("Deleted $thingNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteCertificate(certificateArn: String) {
    val certificateProviderRequest =
        DeleteCertificateRequest {
            certificateId = extractCertificateId(certificateArn)
        }
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

private fun extractCertificateId(certificateArn: String): String? {
    // Example ARN: arn:aws:iot:region:account-id:cert/certificate-id.
    val arnParts = certificateArn.split(":".toRegex()).dropLastWhile
 { it.isEmpty() }.toTypedArray()
    val certificateIdPart = arnParts[arnParts.size - 1]
    return certificateIdPart.substring(certificateIdPart.lastIndexOf("/") + 1)
}

suspend fun detachThingPrincipal(
    thingNameVal: String,
    certificateArn: String,
) {
    val thingPrincipalRequest =
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest {
            principal = certificateArn
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully removed from $thingNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun searchThings(queryStringVal: String?) {
```

```
    val searchIndexRequest =
        SearchIndexRequest {
            queryString = queryStringVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val searchIndexResponse = iotClient.searchIndex(searchIndexRequest)
        if (searchIndexResponse.things?.isEmpty() == true) {
            println("No things found.")
        } else {
            searchIndexResponse.things
                ?.forEach { thing -> println("Thing id found using search is
 ${thing.thingId}") }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listIoTRules() {
    val listTopicRulesRequest = ListTopicRulesRequest {}

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val listTopicRulesResponse = iotClient.listTopicRules(listTopicRulesRequest)
        println("List of IoT rules:")
        val ruleList = listTopicRulesResponse.rules
        ruleList?.forEach { rule ->
            println("Rule name: ${rule.ruleName}")
            println("Rule ARN: ${rule.ruleArn}")
            println("--------------")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createIoTRule(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    ruleNameVal: String?,
    action: String?,
) {
    val sqlVal = "SELECT * FROM '$TOPIC '"
    val action1 =
        SnsAction {
            targetArn = action
            roleArn = roleARNVal
        }
```

```
    val myAction =
        Action {
            sns = action1
        }

    val topicRulePayloadVal =
        TopicRulePayload {
            sql = sqlVal
            actions = listOf(myAction)
        }

    val topicRuleRequest =
        CreateTopicRuleRequest {
            ruleName = ruleNameVal
            topicRulePayload = topicRulePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest)
        println("IoT rule created successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun getPayload(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val getThingShadowRequest =
        GetThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotPlaneClient
 ->
        val getThingShadowResponse =
 iotPlaneClient.getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest)
        val payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload
        val payloadString = payload?.let { java.lang.String(it, Charsets.UTF_8) }
        println("Received shadow data: $payloadString")
    }
}

suspend fun listCertificates() {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listCertificates()
        val certList = response.certificates
        certList?.forEach { cert ->
```

```
            println("Cert id: ${cert.certificateId}")
            println("Cert Arn: ${cert.certificateArn}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeEndpoint(): String? {
    val request = DescribeEndpointRequest {}
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val endpointResponse = iotClient.describeEndpoint(request)
        val endpointUrl: String? = endpointResponse.endpointAddress
        val exString: String = getValue(endpointUrl)
        val fullEndpoint = "https://$exString-ats.iot.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
        println("Full endpoint URL: $fullEndpoint")
        return fullEndpoint
    }
}

private fun getValue(input: String?): String {
    // Define a regular expression pattern for extracting the subdomain.
    val pattern = Pattern.compile("^(.*?)\\.iot\\.us-east-1\\.amazonaws\\.com")

    // Match the pattern against the input string.
    val matcher = pattern.matcher(input)

    // Check if a match is found.
    if (matcher.find()) {
        val subdomain = matcher.group(1)
        println("Extracted subdomain: $subdomain")
        return subdomain
    } else {
        println("No match found")
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun updateThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val newLocation = "Office"
    val newFirmwareVersion = "v2.0"
    val attMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attMap["location"] = newLocation
    attMap["firmwareVersion"] = newFirmwareVersion

    val attributePayloadVal =
```

```
        AttributePayload {
            attributes = attMap
        }

    val updateThingRequest =
        UpdateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            attributePayload = attributePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        // Update the IoT thing attributes.
        iotClient.updateThing(updateThingRequest)
        println("$thingNameVal attributes updated successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun updateShawdowThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    // Create the thing shadow state document.
    val stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25, \"humidity
\":50}}}"
    val byteStream: ByteStream = ByteStream.fromString(stateDocument)
    val byteArray: ByteArray = byteStream.toByteArray()

    val updateThingShadowRequest =
        UpdateThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            payload = byteArray
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotPlaneClient
 ->
        iotPlaneClient.updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest)
        println("The thing shadow was updated successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun attachCertificateToThing(
    thingNameVal: String?,
    certificateArn: String?,
) {
    val principalRequest =
        AttachThingPrincipalRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
```

```
            principal = certificateArn
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest)
        println("Certificate attached to $thingNameVal successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun describeThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val thingRequest =
        DescribeThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    // Print Thing details.
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val describeResponse = iotClient.describeThing(thingRequest)
        println("Thing details:")
        println("Thing name: ${describeResponse.thingName}")
        println("Thing ARN:  ${describeResponse.thingArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun createCertificate(): String? {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.createKeysAndCertificate()
        val certificatePem = response.certificatePem
        val certificateArn = response.certificateArn

        // Print the details.
        println("\nCertificate:")
        println(certificatePem)
        println("\nCertificate ARN:")
        println(certificateArn)
        return certificateArn
    }
}

suspend fun createIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val createThingRequest =
        CreateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }
```

```
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createThing(createThingRequest)
        println("Created $thingNameVal}")
    }
}
```

Actions

`AttachThingPrincipal`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachThingPrincipal`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun attachCertificateToThing(
    thingNameVal: String?,
    certificateArn: String?,
) {
    val principalRequest =
        AttachThingPrincipalRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            principal = certificateArn
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.attachThingPrincipal(principalRequest)
        println("Certificate attached to $thingNameVal successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AttachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateKeysAndCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeysAndCertificate`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createCertificate(): String? {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.createKeysAndCertificate()
        val certificatePem = response.certificatePem
        val certificateArn = response.certificateArn

        // Print the details.
        println("\nCertificate:")
        println(certificatePem)
        println("\nCertificate ARN:")
        println(certificateArn)
        return certificateArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeysAndCertificate in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateThing`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateThing`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val createThingRequest =
        CreateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createThing(createThingRequest)
        println("Created $thingNameVal}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateTopicRule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopicRule`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createIoTRule(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    ruleNameVal: String?,
    action: String?,
) {
    val sqlVal = "SELECT * FROM '$TOPIC '"
    val action1 =
        SnsAction {
            targetArn = action
            roleArn = roleARNVal
        }

    val myAction =
        Action {
```

```
            sns = action1
        }

    val topicRulePayloadVal =
        TopicRulePayload {
            sql = sqlVal
            actions = listOf(myAction)
        }

    val topicRuleRequest =
        CreateTopicRuleRequest {
            ruleName = ruleNameVal
            topicRulePayload = topicRulePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.createTopicRule(topicRuleRequest)
        println("IoT rule created successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopicRule in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteCertificate(certificateArn: String) {
    val certificateProviderRequest =
        DeleteCertificateRequest {
            certificateId = extractCertificateId(certificateArn)
        }
```

```
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteCertificate(certificateProviderRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteThing`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteThing`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteIoTThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val deleteThingRequest =
        DeleteThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.deleteThing(deleteThingRequest)
        println("Deleted $thingNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeEndpoint`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeEndpoint(): String? {
    val request = DescribeEndpointRequest {}
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val endpointResponse = iotClient.describeEndpoint(request)
        val endpointUrl: String? = endpointResponse.endpointAddress
        val exString: String = getValue(endpointUrl)
        val fullEndpoint = "https://$exString-ats.iot.us-east-1.amazonaws.com"
        println("Full endpoint URL: $fullEndpoint")
        return fullEndpoint
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeThing`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeThing`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeThing(thingNameVal: String) {
    val thingRequest =
        DescribeThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }
```

```
    // Print Thing details.
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val describeResponse = iotClient.describeThing(thingRequest)
        println("Thing details:")
        println("Thing name: ${describeResponse.thingName}")
        println("Thing ARN:  ${describeResponse.thingArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DetachThingPrincipal`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachThingPrincipal`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detachThingPrincipal(
    thingNameVal: String,
    certificateArn: String,
) {
    val thingPrincipalRequest =
        DetachThingPrincipalRequest {
            principal = certificateArn
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        iotClient.detachThingPrincipal(thingPrincipalRequest)
        println("$certificateArn was successfully removed from $thingNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetachThingPrincipal in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listCertificates() {
    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val response = iotClient.listCertificates()
        val certList = response.certificates
        certList?.forEach { cert ->
            println("Cert id: ${cert.certificateId}")
            println("Cert Arn: ${cert.certificateArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`SearchIndex`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchIndex`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun searchThings(queryStringVal: String?) {
    val searchIndexRequest =
        SearchIndexRequest {
            queryString = queryStringVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        val searchIndexResponse = iotClient.searchIndex(searchIndexRequest)
        if (searchIndexResponse.things?.isEmpty() == true) {
            println("No things found.")
        } else {
            searchIndexResponse.things
                ?.forEach { thing -> println("Thing id found using search is
 ${thing.thingId}") }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SearchIndex in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateThing`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateThing`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val newLocation = "Office"
    val newFirmwareVersion = "v2.0"
    val attMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attMap["location"] = newLocation
    attMap["firmwareVersion"] = newFirmwareVersion

    val attributePayloadVal =
```

```
        AttributePayload {
            attributes = attMap
        }

    val updateThingRequest =
        UpdateThingRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            attributePayload = attributePayloadVal
        }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotClient ->
        // Update the IoT thing attributes.
        iotClient.updateThing(updateThingRequest)
        println("$thingNameVal attributes updated successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThing in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

AWS IoT data examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with AWS IoT data.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetThingShadow`

The following code example shows how to use `GetThingShadow`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getPayload(thingNameVal: String?) {
    val getThingShadowRequest =
        GetThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotPlaneClient
 ->
        val getThingShadowResponse =
 iotPlaneClient.getThingShadow(getThingShadowRequest)
        val payload = getThingShadowResponse.payload
        val payloadString = payload?.let { java.lang.String(it, Charsets.UTF_8) }
        println("Received shadow data: $payloadString")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateThingShadow`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateThingShadow`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateShawdowThing(thingNameVal: String?) {
```

```
    // Create the thing shadow state document.
    val stateDocument = "{\"state\":{\"reported\":{\"temperature\":25, \"humidity
\":50}}}"
    val byteStream: ByteStream = ByteStream.fromString(stateDocument)
    val byteArray: ByteArray = byteStream.toByteArray()

    val updateThingShadowRequest =
        UpdateThingShadowRequest {
            thingName = thingNameVal
            payload = byteArray
        }

    IotDataPlaneClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { iotPlaneClient
 ->
        iotPlaneClient.updateThingShadow(updateThingShadowRequest)
        println("The thing shadow was updated successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateThingShadow in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

AWS IoT FleetWise examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with AWS IoT FleetWise.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT FleetWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT FleetWise.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main() {
    listSignalCatalogs()
}

/**
 * Lists the AWS FleetWise Signal Catalogs associated with the current AWS account.
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogs() {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogsRequest {
        maxResults = 10
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogs(request)
        val summaries = response.summaries

        if (summaries.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            println("No AWS FleetWise Signal Catalogs were found.")
        } else {
            summaries.forEach { summary ->
                with(summary) {
                    println("Catalog Name: $name")
                    println("ARN: $arn")
                    println("Created: $creationTime")
                    println("Last Modified: $lastModificationTime")
                    println("---------------")
                }
```

```
                }
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogsPaginator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a collection of standardized signals.
- Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles.
- Create a model manifest.
- Create a decoder manifest.
- Check the status of the model manifest.
- Check the status of the decoder.
- Create an IoT Thing.
- Create a vehicle.
- Display vehicle details.
- Delete the AWS IoT FleetWise Assets.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS IoT SiteWise features.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
var scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage =
        """
        Usage:
            <signalCatalogName> <manifestName> <fleetId> <vecName> <decName>

        Where:
            signalCatalogName     - The name of the Signal Catalog to create (eg,
 catalog30).
            manifestName          - The name of the Vehicle Model (Model Manifest)
 to create (eg, manifest30).
            fleetId               - The ID of the Fleet to create (eg, fleet30).
            vecName               - The name of the Vehicle to create (eg,
 vehicle30).
            decName               - The name of the Decoder Manifest to create (eg,
 decManifest30).

        """.trimIndent()

    if (args.size != 5) {
        println(usage)
        return
    }

    val signalCatalogName = args[0]
    val manifestName = args[1]
    val fleetId = args[2]
    val vecName = args[3]
    val decName = args[4]

    println(
        """
        AWS IoT FleetWise is a managed service that simplifies the
```

```
        process of collecting, organizing, and transmitting vehicle
        data to the cloud in near real-time. Designed for automakers
        and fleet operators, it allows you to define vehicle models,
        specify the exact data you want to collect (such as engine
        temperature, speed, or battery status), and send this data to
        AWS for analysis. By using intelligent data collection
        techniques, IoT FleetWise reduces the volume of data
        transmitted by filtering and transforming it at the edge,
        helping to minimize bandwidth usage and costs.

        At its core, AWS IoT FleetWise helps organizations build
        scalable systems for vehicle data management and analytics,
        supporting a wide variety of vehicles and sensor configurations.
        You can define signal catalogs and decoder manifests that describe
        how raw CAN bus signals are translated into readable data, making
        the platform highly flexible and extensible. This allows
        manufacturers to optimize vehicle performance, improve safety,
        and reduce maintenance costs by gaining real-time visibility
        into fleet operations.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    runScenario(signalCatalogName, fleetId, manifestName, decName, vecName)
}

suspend fun runScenario(signalCatalogName: String, fleetIdVal: String, manifestName:
 String, decName: String, vecName: String) {
    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Creates a collection of standardized signals that can be reused to
 create vehicle models")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val signalCatalogArn = createbranchVehicle(signalCatalogName)
    println("The collection ARN is $signalCatalogArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Create a fleet that represents a group of vehicles")
    println(
        """
        Creating an IoT FleetWise fleet allows you to efficiently collect,
        organize, and transfer vehicle data to the cloud, enabling real-time
        insights into vehicle performance and health.
```

```
        It helps reduce data costs by allowing you to filter and prioritize
        only the most relevant vehicle signals, supporting advanced analytics
        and predictive maintenance use cases.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val fleetid = createFleet(signalCatalogArn, fleetIdVal)
    println("The fleet Id is $fleetid")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val nodeList = listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create a model manifest")
    println(
        """
        An AWS IoT FleetWise manifest defines the structure and
        relationships of vehicle data. The model manifest specifies
        which signals to collect and how they relate to vehicle systems,
        while the decoder manifest defines how to decode raw vehicle data
        into meaningful signals.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val nodes = listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName)
    val manifestArn = nodes?.let { createModelManifest(manifestName,
signalCatalogArn, it) }
    println("The manifest ARN is $manifestArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a decoder manifest")
    println(
        """
        A decoder manifest in AWS IoT FleetWise defines how raw vehicle
        data (such as CAN signals) should be interpreted and decoded
        into meaningful signals. It acts as a translation layer
        that maps vehicle-specific protocols to standardized data formats
        using decoding rules. This is crucial for extracting usable
        data from different vehicle models, even when their data
        formats vary.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
```

```
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val decArn = createDecoderManifest(decName, manifestArn)
    println("The decoder manifest ARN is $decArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Check the status of the model manifest")
    println(
        """
        The model manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be used
        to create or update a vehicle.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    updateModelManifest(manifestName)
    waitForModelManifestActive(manifestName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Check the status of the decoder")
    println(
        """
        The decoder manifest must be in an ACTIVE state before it can be used
        to create or update a vehicle.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    updateDecoderManifest(decName)
    waitForDecoderManifestActive(decName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Create an IoT Thing")
    println(
        """
        AWS IoT FleetWise expects an existing AWS IoT Thing with the same
        name as the vehicle name you are passing to createVehicle method.
        Before calling createVehicle(), you must create an AWS IoT Thing
        with the same name using the AWS IoT Core service.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
```

```
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    createThingIfNotExist(vecName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Create a vehicle")
    println(
        """
        Creating a vehicle in AWS IoT FleetWise allows you to digitally
        represent and manage a physical vehicle within the AWS ecosystem.
        This enables efficient ingestion, transformation, and transmission
        of vehicle telemetry data to the cloud for analysis.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    createVehicle(vecName, manifestArn, decArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Display vehicle details")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    getVehicleDetails(vecName)
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Delete the AWS IoT Fleetwise Assets")
    println("Would you like to delete the IoT Fleetwise Assets? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim()
    if (delAns.equals("y", ignoreCase = true)) {
        deleteVehicle(vecName)
        deleteDecoderManifest(decName)
        deleteModelManifest(manifestName)
        deleteFleet(fleetid)
        deleteSignalCatalog(signalCatalogName)
    }

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
        Thank you for checking out the AWS IoT Fleetwise Service Use demo. We hope
you
        learned something new, or got some inspiration for your own apps today.
        For more AWS code examples, have a look at:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-library.html
```

```
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteVehicle(vecName: String) {
    val request = DeleteVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was deleted successfully.")
    }
}

suspend fun getVehicleDetails(vehicleNameVal: String) {
    val request = GetVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vehicleNameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.getVehicle(request)
        val details = mapOf(
            "vehicleName" to response.vehicleName,
            "arn" to response.arn,
            "modelManifestArn" to response.modelManifestArn,
            "decoderManifestArn" to response.decoderManifestArn,
            "attributes" to response.attributes.toString(),
            "creationTime" to response.creationTime.toString(),
            "lastModificationTime" to response.lastModificationTime.toString(),
        )

        println("Vehicle Details:")
        for ((key, value) in details) {
            println("• %-20s : %s".format(key, value))
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createVehicle(vecName: String, manifestArn: String?, decArn: String) {
    val request = CreateVehicleRequest {
```

```
        vehicleName = vecName
        modelManifestArn = manifestArn
        decoderManifestArn = decArn
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.createVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was created successfully.")
    }
}

/**
 * Creates an IoT Thing if it does not already exist.
 *
 * @param vecName the name of the IoT Thing to create
 */
suspend fun createThingIfNotExist(vecName: String) {
    val request = CreateThingRequest {
        thingName = vecName
    }

    IotClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.createThing(request)
        println("The $vecName IoT Thing was successfully created")
    }
}

suspend fun updateDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}

/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param decNameVal the name of the model manifest to wait for
```

```
 */
suspend fun waitForDecoderManifestActive(decNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetDecoderManifestRequest {
                    name = decNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getDecoderManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}

/**
```

```
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForModelManifestActive(manifestNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetModelManifestRequest {
                    name = manifestNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getModelManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #
\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
```

```
    }
}

/**
 * Updates the model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to update
 */
suspend fun updateModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateModelManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new decoder manifest.
 *
 * @param decName             the name of the decoder manifest
 * @param modelManifestArnVal the ARN of the model manifest
 * @return the ARN of the decoder manifest
 */
suspend fun createDecoderManifest(decName: String, modelManifestArnVal: String?):
 String {
    val interfaceIdVal = "can0"

    val canInter = CanInterface {
```

```
        name = "canInterface0"
        protocolName = "CAN"
        protocolVersion = "1.0"
    }

    val networkInterface = NetworkInterface {
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = NetworkInterfaceType.CanInterface
        canInterface = canInter
    }

    val carRpmSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 100
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 16
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val carSpeedSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 101
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 0
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carRpmSig
    }

    val vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carSpeedSig
    }
```

```
    val request = CreateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = decName
        modelManifestArn = modelManifestArnVal
        networkInterfaces = listOf(networkInterface)
        signalDecoders = listOf(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder)
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createDecoderManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteSignalCatalog(catName: String) {
    val request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = catName
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteSignalCatalog(request)
        println(" $catName was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
 *
 * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteFleet(fleetIdVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteFleet(request)
```

```
        println(" $fleetIdVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes a model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteModelManifest(request)
        println(" $nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a model manifest.
 *
 * @param name              the name of the model manifest to create
 * @param signalCatalogArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog
 * @param nodes             a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the created
 model manifest
 */
suspend fun createModelManifest(nameVal: String, signalCatalogArnVal: String,
 nodesList: List<Node>): String {
    val fqnList: List<String> = nodesList.map { node ->
        when (node) {
            is Node.Sensor -> node.asSensor().fullyQualifiedName
            is Node.Branch -> node.asBranch().fullyQualifiedName
            else -> throw RuntimeException("Unsupported node type")
        }
    }

    val request = CreateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        signalCatalogArn = signalCatalogArnVal
        nodes = fqnList
    }
```

```
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createModelManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}

/**
 * Lists the signal catalog nodes asynchronously.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog
 * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains a list of nodes in the
 specified signal catalog
 * @throws CompletionException if an exception occurs during the asynchronous
 operation
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName: String): List<Node>? {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogNodes(request)
        return response.nodes
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new fleet.
 *
 * @param catARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to associate
 with the fleet
 * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
 * @return the ID of the created fleet
 */
suspend fun createFleet(catARN: String, fleetIdVal: String): String {
    val fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
        signalCatalogArn = catARN
        description = "Built using the AWS For Kotlin"
    }
```

```
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createFleet(fleetRequest)
        return response.id
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to create the branch
 vehicle in
 * @return the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the created signal catalog
 */
suspend fun createbranchVehicle(signalCatalogName: String): String {
    delay(2000) // Wait for 2 seconds
    val branchVehicle = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle"
        description = "Root branch"
    }

    val branchPowertrain = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain"
        description = "Powertrain branch"
    }

    val sensorRPM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        description = "Engine RPM"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "rpm"
    }

    val sensorKM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        description = "Vehicle Speed"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "km/h"
    }

    // Wrap each specific node type (Branch and Sensor) into the sealed Node class
    // so they can be included in the CreateSignalCatalogRequest.
    val myNodes = listOf(
        Node.Branch(branchVehicle),
```

```
        Node.Branch(branchPowertrain),
        Node.Sensor(sensorRPM),
        Node.Sensor(sensorKM),
    )

    val request = CreateSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
        nodes = myNodes
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createSignalCatalog(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}

private fun waitForInputToContinue(scanner: Scanner) {
    while (true) {
        println("")
        println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:")
        val input = scanner.nextLine()

        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("c", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else {
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }
}
```

Actions

`createDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `createDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new decoder manifest.
 *
 * @param decName             the name of the decoder manifest
 * @param modelManifestArnVal the ARN of the model manifest
 * @return the ARN of the decoder manifest
 */
suspend fun createDecoderManifest(decName: String, modelManifestArnVal: String?):
 String {
    val interfaceIdVal = "can0"

    val canInter = CanInterface {
        name = "canInterface0"
        protocolName = "CAN"
        protocolVersion = "1.0"
    }

    val networkInterface = NetworkInterface {
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = NetworkInterfaceType.CanInterface
        canInterface = canInter
    }

    val carRpmSig = CanSignal {
        messageId = 100
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 16
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val carSpeedSig = CanSignal {
```

```
        messageId = 101
        isBigEndian = false
        isSigned = false
        startBit = 0
        length = 16
        factor = 1.0
        offset = 0.0
    }

    val engineRpmDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carRpmSig
    }

    val vehicleSpeedDecoder = SignalDecoder {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        interfaceId = interfaceIdVal
        type = SignalDecoderType.CanSignal
        canSignal = carSpeedSig
    }

    val request = CreateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = decName
        modelManifestArn = modelManifestArnVal
        networkInterfaces = listOf(networkInterface)
        signalDecoders = listOf(engineRpmDecoder, vehicleSpeedDecoder)
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createDecoderManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see [createDecoderManifest](#) in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`createFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `createFleet`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new fleet.
 *
 * @param catARN the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog to associate
 with the fleet
 * @param fleetId the unique identifier for the fleet
 * @return the ID of the created fleet
 */
suspend fun createFleet(catARN: String, fleetIdVal: String): String {
    val fleetRequest = CreateFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
        signalCatalogArn = catARN
        description = "Built using the AWS For Kotlin"
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createFleet(fleetRequest)
        return response.id
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createFleet in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`createModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `createModelManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a model manifest.
 *
 * @param name              the name of the model manifest to create
 * @param signalCatalogArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the signal catalog
 * @param nodes             a list of nodes to include in the model manifest
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes with the ARN of the created
 model manifest
 */
suspend fun createModelManifest(nameVal: String, signalCatalogArnVal: String,
 nodesList: List<Node>): String {
    val fqnList: List<String> = nodesList.map { node ->
        when (node) {
            is Node.Sensor -> node.asSensor().fullyQualifiedName
            is Node.Branch -> node.asBranch().fullyQualifiedName
            else -> throw RuntimeException("Unsupported node type")
        }
    }

    val request = CreateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        signalCatalogArn = signalCatalogArnVal
        nodes = fqnList
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createModelManifest(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`createSignalCatalog`

The following code example shows how to use `createSignalCatalog`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog to create the branch
 vehicle in
 * @return the ARN (Amazon Resource Name) of the created signal catalog
 */
suspend fun createbranchVehicle(signalCatalogName: String): String {
    delay(2000) // Wait for 2 seconds
    val branchVehicle = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle"
        description = "Root branch"
    }

    val branchPowertrain = Branch {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain"
        description = "Powertrain branch"
    }

    val sensorRPM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.EngineRPM"
        description = "Engine RPM"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "rpm"
    }

    val sensorKM = Sensor {
        fullyQualifiedName = "Vehicle.Powertrain.VehicleSpeed"
        description = "Vehicle Speed"
        dataType = NodeDataType.Double
        unit = "km/h"
```

```
    }

    // Wrap each specific node type (Branch and Sensor) into the sealed Node class
    // so they can be included in the CreateSignalCatalogRequest.
    val myNodes = listOf(
        Node.Branch(branchVehicle),
        Node.Branch(branchPowertrain),
        Node.Sensor(sensorRPM),
        Node.Sensor(sensorKM),
    )

    val request = CreateSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
        nodes = myNodes
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.createSignalCatalog(request)
        return response.arn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`createVehicle`

The following code example shows how to use `createVehicle`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createVehicle(vecName: String, manifestArn: String?, decArn: String) {
    val request = CreateVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
```

```
        modelManifestArn = manifestArn
        decoderManifestArn = decArn
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.createVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was created successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see createVehicle in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`deleteDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`deleteFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteFleet`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a fleet based on the provided fleet ID.
 *
 * @param fleetId the ID of the fleet to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteFleet(fleetIdVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteFleetRequest {
        fleetId = fleetIdVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteFleet(request)
        println(" $fleetIdVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteFleet in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`deleteModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteModelManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = DeleteModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteModelManifest(request)
        println(" $nameVal was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`deleteSignalCatalog`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteSignalCatalog`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
```

```
 * Deletes a signal catalog.
 *
 * @param name the name of the signal catalog to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteSignalCatalog(catName: String) {
    val request = DeleteSignalCatalogRequest {
        name = catName
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteSignalCatalog(request)
        println(" $catName was successfully deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteSignalCatalog in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`deleteVehicle`

The following code example shows how to use `deleteVehicle`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteVehicle(vecName: String) {
    val request = DeleteVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vecName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.deleteVehicle(request)
        println("Vehicle $vecName was deleted successfully.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see deleteVehicle in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`getDecoderManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `getDecoderManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param decNameVal the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForDecoderManifestActive(decNameVal: String) {
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetDecoderManifestRequest {
                    name = decNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getDecoderManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #\n")
```

```
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
                        print("\rElapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see getDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`getModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `getModelManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Waits for the specified model manifest to become active.
 *
 * @param manifestName the name of the model manifest to wait for
 */
suspend fun waitForModelManifestActive(manifestNameVal: String) {
```

```
    var elapsedSeconds = 0
    var lastStatus: ManifestStatus = ManifestStatus.Draft

    print("# Elapsed: 0s | Status: DRAFT")
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        while (true) {
            delay(1000)
            elapsedSeconds++
            if (elapsedSeconds % 5 == 0) {
                val request = GetModelManifestRequest {
                    name = manifestNameVal
                }

                val response = fleetwiseClient.getModelManifest(request)
                lastStatus = response.status ?: ManifestStatus.Draft

                when (lastStatus) {
                    ManifestStatus.Active -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: ACTIVE #\n")
                        return
                    }

                    ManifestStatus.Invalid -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: INVALID #
\n")
                        throw RuntimeException("Model manifest became INVALID.
 Cannot proceed.")
                    }

                    else -> {
                        print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status:
 $lastStatus")
                    }
                }
            } else {
                print("\r Elapsed: ${elapsedSeconds}s | Status: $lastStatus")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see getModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`getVehicle`

The following code example shows how to use `getVehicle`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getVehicleDetails(vehicleNameVal: String) {
    val request = GetVehicleRequest {
        vehicleName = vehicleNameVal
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.getVehicle(request)
        val details = mapOf(
            "vehicleName" to response.vehicleName,
            "arn" to response.arn,
            "modelManifestArn" to response.modelManifestArn,
            "decoderManifestArn" to response.decoderManifestArn,
            "attributes" to response.attributes.toString(),
            "creationTime" to response.creationTime.toString(),
            "lastModificationTime" to response.lastModificationTime.toString(),
        )

        println("Vehicle Details:")
        for ((key, value) in details) {
            println("• %-20s : %s".format(key, value))
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see getVehicle in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

listSignalCatalogNodes

The following code example shows how to use listSignalCatalogNodes.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Lists the signal catalog nodes asynchronously.
 *
 * @param signalCatalogName the name of the signal catalog
 * @return a CompletableFuture that, when completed, contains a list of nodes in the
 specified signal catalog
 * @throws CompletionException if an exception occurs during the asynchronous
 operation
 */
suspend fun listSignalCatalogNode(signalCatalogName: String): List<Node>? {
    val request = ListSignalCatalogNodesRequest {
        name = signalCatalogName
    }

    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        val response = fleetwiseClient.listSignalCatalogNodes(request)
        return response.nodes
    }
}
```

- For API details, see listSignalCatalogNodes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

updateDecoderManifest

The following code example shows how to use updateDecoderManifest.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateDecoderManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateDecoderManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateDecoderManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see updateDecoderManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`updateModelManifest`

The following code example shows how to use `updateModelManifest`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Updates the model manifest.
 *
 * @param nameVal the name of the model manifest to update
 */
```

```
suspend fun updateModelManifest(nameVal: String) {
    val request = UpdateModelManifestRequest {
        name = nameVal
        status = ManifestStatus.Active
    }
    IotFleetWiseClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { fleetwiseClient ->
        fleetwiseClient.updateModelManifest(request)
        println("$nameVal was successfully updated")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see updateModelManifest in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Keyspaces.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
*/

suspend fun main() {
    listKeyspaces()
}

suspend fun listKeyspaces() {
    val keyspacesRequest =
        ListKeyspacesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.listKeyspaces(keyspacesRequest)
        response.keyspaces?.forEach { keyspace ->
            println("The name of the keyspace is ${keyspace.keyspaceName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a keyspace and table. The table schema holds movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
- Connect to the keyspace using a secure TLS connection with SigV4 authentication.
- Query the table. Add, retrieve, and update movie data.
- Update the table. Add a column to track watched movies.
- Restore the table to its previous state and clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:

 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This example uses a secure file format to hold certificate information for
 Kotlin applications. This is required to make a connection to Amazon Keyspaces.
 For more information, see the following documentation topic:

 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/keyspaces/latest/devguide/using_java_driver.html

 This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Create a keyspace.
 2. Check for keyspace existence.
 3. List keyspaces using a paginator.
 4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and enable point-in-time
 recovery.
 5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.
 6. List all tables in the keyspace.
 7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into the Movie table.
```

```
 8. Get all records from the Movie table.
 9. Get a specific Movie.
 10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.
 11. Update the table schema to add a ‘watched’ Boolean column.
 12. Update an item as watched.
 13. Query for items with watched = True.
 14. Restore the table back to the previous state using the timestamp.
 15. Check for completion of the restore action.
 16. Delete the table.
 17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.
 18. Delete the keyspace.
 */

/*
   Usage:
     fileName - The name of the JSON file that contains movie data. (Get this file
 from the GitHub repo at resources/sample_file.)
     keyspaceName - The name of the keyspace to create.
 */
val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main() {
    val fileName = "<Replace with the JSON file that contains movie data>"
    val keyspaceName = "<Replace with the name of the keyspace to create>"
    val titleUpdate = "The Family"
    val yearUpdate = 2013
    val tableName = "MovieKotlin"
    val tableNameRestore = "MovieRestore"

    val loader = DriverConfigLoader.fromClasspath("application.conf")
    val session =
        CqlSession
            .builder()
            .withConfigLoader(loader)
            .build()

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon Keyspaces example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create a keyspace.")
    createKeySpace(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    delay(5000)
    println("2. Check for keyspace existence.")
    checkKeyspaceExistence(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. List keyspaces using a paginator.")
    listKeyspacesPaginator()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a table with a simple movie data schema and enable point-in-
time recovery.")
    createTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Check for the table to be in an Active state.")
    delay(6000)
    checkTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. List all tables in the keyspace.")
    listTables(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Use a Cassandra driver to insert some records into the Movie
 table.")
    delay(6000)
    loadData(session, fileName, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Get all records from the Movie table.")
    getMovieData(session, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Get a specific Movie.")
    getSpecificMovie(session, keyspaceName)
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Get a UTC timestamp for the current time.")
    val utc = ZonedDateTime.now(ZoneOffset.UTC)
    println("DATETIME = ${Date.from(utc.toInstant())}")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Update the table schema to add a watched Boolean column.")
    updateTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Update an item as watched.")
    delay(10000) // Wait 10 seconds for the update.
    updateRecord(session, keyspaceName, titleUpdate, yearUpdate)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("13. Query for items with watched = True.")
    getWatchedData(session, keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("14. Restore the table back to the previous state using the timestamp.")
    println("Note that the restore operation can take up to 20 minutes.")
    restoreTable(keyspaceName, utc)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("15. Check for completion of the restore action.")
    delay(5000)
    checkRestoredTable(keyspaceName, "MovieRestore")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("16. Delete both tables.")
    deleteTable(keyspaceName, tableName)
    deleteTable(keyspaceName, tableNameRestore)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("17. Confirm that both tables are deleted.")
```

```
    checkTableDelete(keyspaceName, tableName)
    checkTableDelete(keyspaceName, tableNameRestore)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("18. Delete the keyspace.")
    deleteKeyspace(keyspaceName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The scenario has completed successfully.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteKeyspace(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val deleteKeyspaceRequest =
        DeleteKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun checkTableDelete(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse
    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    try {
        KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
            // Keep looping until the table cannot be found and a
 ResourceNotFoundException is thrown.
            while (true) {
                response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
                status = response.status.toString()
```

```
                println(". The table status is $status")
                delay(500)
            }
        }
    } catch (e: ResourceNotFoundException) {
        println(e.message)
    }
    println("The table is deleted")
}

suspend fun deleteTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val tableRequest =
        DeleteTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun checkRestoredTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var tableStatus = false
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse? = null

    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        while (!tableStatus) {
            response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
            status = response!!.status.toString()
            println("The table status is $status")
```

```
            if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                tableStatus = true
            }
            delay(500)
        }

        val cols = response!!.schemaDefinition?.allColumns
        if (cols != null) {
            for (def in cols) {
                println("The column name is ${def.name}")
                println("The column type is ${def.type}")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun restoreTable(
    keyspaceName: String?,
    utc: ZonedDateTime,
) {
    // Create an aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant value.
    val timeStamp =
        aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
            .Instant(utc.toInstant())
    val restoreTableRequest =
        RestoreTableRequest {
            restoreTimestamp = timeStamp
            sourceTableName = "MovieKotlin"
            targetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
            targetTableName = "MovieRestore"
            sourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest)
        println("The ARN of the restored table is ${response.restoredTableArn}")
    }
}

fun getWatchedData(
    session: CqlSession,
    keyspaceName: String,
) {
```

```
    val resultSet = session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"$keyspaceName\".\"MovieKotlin\"
 WHERE watched = true ALLOW FILTERING;")
    resultSet.forEach { item: Row ->
        println("The Movie title is ${item.getString("title")}")
        println("The Movie year is ${item.getInt("year")}")
        println("The plot is ${item.getString("plot")}")
    }
}

fun updateRecord(
    session: CqlSession,
    keySpace: String,
    titleUpdate: String?,
    yearUpdate: Int,
) {
    val sqlStatement =
        "UPDATE \"$keySpace\".\"MovieKotlin\" SET watched=true WHERE title = :k0 AND
 year = :k1;"
    val builder = BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED)
    builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM)
    val preparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement)
    builder.addStatement(
        preparedStatement
            .boundStatementBuilder()
            .setString("k0", titleUpdate)
            .setInt("k1", yearUpdate)
            .build(),
    )
    val batchStatement = builder.build()
    session.execute(batchStatement)
}

suspend fun updateTable(
    keySpace: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val def =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "watched"
            type = "boolean"
        }

    val tableRequest =
        UpdateTableRequest {
```

```
            keyspaceName = keySpace
            tableName = tableNameVal
            addColumns = listOf(def)
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest)
    }
}

fun getSpecificMovie(
    session: CqlSession,
    keyspaceName: String,
) {
    val resultSet =
        session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"$keyspaceName\".\"MovieKotlin\" WHERE title
 = 'The Family' ALLOW FILTERING ;")

    resultSet.forEach { item: Row ->
        println("The Movie title is ${item.getString("title")}")
        println("The Movie year is ${item.getInt("year")}")
        println("The plot is ${item.getString("plot")}")
    }
}

// Get records from the Movie table.
fun getMovieData(
    session: CqlSession,
    keyspaceName: String,
) {
    val resultSet = session.execute("SELECT * FROM \"$keyspaceName\".\"MovieKotlin
\";")
    resultSet.forEach { item: Row ->
        println("The Movie title is ${item.getString("title")}")
        println("The Movie year is ${item.getInt("year")}")
        println("The plot is ${item.getString("plot")}")
    }
}

// Load data into the table.
fun loadData(
    session: CqlSession,
    fileName: String,
    keySpace: String,
```

```
) {
    val sqlStatement =
        "INSERT INTO \"$keySpace\".\"MovieKotlin\" (title, year, plot) values
 (:k0, :k1, :k2)"
    val parser = JsonFactory().createParser(File(fileName))
    val rootNode = ObjectMapper().readTree<JsonNode>(parser)
    val iter: Iterator<JsonNode> = rootNode.iterator()
    var currentNode: ObjectNode

    var t = 0
    while (iter.hasNext()) {
        if (t == 50) {
            break
        }

        currentNode = iter.next() as ObjectNode
        val year = currentNode.path("year").asInt()
        val title = currentNode.path("title").asText()
        val info = currentNode.path("info").toString()

        // Insert the data into the Amazon Keyspaces table.
        val builder = BatchStatement.builder(DefaultBatchType.UNLOGGED)
        builder.setConsistencyLevel(ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM)
        val preparedStatement: PreparedStatement = session.prepare(sqlStatement)
        builder.addStatement(
            preparedStatement
                .boundStatementBuilder()
                .setString("k0", title)
                .setInt("k1", year)
                .setString("k2", info)
                .build(),
        )

        val batchStatement = builder.build()
        session.execute(batchStatement)
        t++
    }
}

suspend fun listTables(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val tablesRequest =
        ListTablesRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }
```

```
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listTablesPaginated(tablesRequest)
            .transform { it.tables?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" ARN: ${obj.resourceArn} Table name: ${obj.tableName}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun checkTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var tableStatus = false
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse? = null

    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        while (!tableStatus) {
            response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
            status = response!!.status.toString()
            println(". The table status is $status")
            if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                tableStatus = true
            }
            delay(500)
        }
        val cols: List<ColumnDefinition>? = response!!.schemaDefinition?.allColumns
        if (cols != null) {
            for (def in cols) {
                println("The column name is ${def.name}")
                println("The column type is ${def.type}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun createTable(
    keySpaceVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    // Set the columns.
    val defTitle =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "title"
            type = "text"
        }

    val defYear =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "year"
            type = "int"
        }

    val defReleaseDate =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "release_date"
            type = "timestamp"
        }

    val defPlot =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "plot"
            type = "text"
        }

    val colList = ArrayList<ColumnDefinition>()
    colList.add(defTitle)
    colList.add(defYear)
    colList.add(defReleaseDate)
    colList.add(defPlot)

    // Set the keys.
    val yearKey =
        PartitionKey {
            name = "year"
        }

    val titleKey =
        PartitionKey {
            name = "title"
```

```
        }

    val keyList = ArrayList<PartitionKey>()
    keyList.add(yearKey)
    keyList.add(titleKey)

    val schemaDefinitionOb =
        SchemaDefinition {
            partitionKeys = keyList
            allColumns = colList
        }

    val timeRecovery =
        PointInTimeRecovery {
            status = PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.Enabled
        }

    val tableRequest =
        CreateTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keySpaceVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
            schemaDefinition = schemaDefinitionOb
            pointInTimeRecovery = timeRecovery
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest)
        println("The table ARN is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun listKeyspacesPaginator() {
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listKeyspacesPaginated(ListKeyspacesRequest {})
            .transform { it.keyspaces?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name: ${obj.keyspaceName}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun checkKeyspaceExistence(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
```

```
        GetKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response: GetKeyspaceResponse = keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        val name = response.keyspaceName
        println("The $name KeySpace is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun createKeySpace(keyspaceNameVal: String) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
        CreateKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        println("The ARN of the KeySpace is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteKeyspace
  - DeleteTable
  - GetKeyspace
  - GetTable
  - ListKeyspaces
  - ListTables
  - RestoreTable
  - UpdateTable

Actions

`CreateKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyspace`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createKeySpace(keyspaceNameVal: String) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
        CreateKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        println("The ARN of the KeySpace is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createTable(
    keySpaceVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    // Set the columns.
    val defTitle =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "title"
            type = "text"
        }

    val defYear =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "year"
            type = "int"
        }

    val defReleaseDate =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "release_date"
            type = "timestamp"
        }

    val defPlot =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "plot"
            type = "text"
        }

    val colList = ArrayList<ColumnDefinition>()
    colList.add(defTitle)
    colList.add(defYear)
    colList.add(defReleaseDate)
    colList.add(defPlot)

    // Set the keys.
    val yearKey =
        PartitionKey {
            name = "year"
        }

    val titleKey =
        PartitionKey {
```

```
            name = "title"
        }

    val keyList = ArrayList<PartitionKey>()
    keyList.add(yearKey)
    keyList.add(titleKey)

    val schemaDefinitionOb =
        SchemaDefinition {
            partitionKeys = keyList
            allColumns = colList
        }

    val timeRecovery =
        PointInTimeRecovery {
            status = PointInTimeRecoveryStatus.Enabled
        }

    val tableRequest =
        CreateTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keySpaceVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
            schemaDefinition = schemaDefinitionOb
            pointInTimeRecovery = timeRecovery
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.createTable(tableRequest)
        println("The table ARN is ${response.resourceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyspace`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteKeyspace(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val deleteKeyspaceRequest =
        DeleteKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteKeyspace(deleteKeyspaceRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    val tableRequest =
```

```
        DeleteTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.deleteTable(tableRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `GetKeyspace`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkKeyspaceExistence(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val keyspaceRequest =
        GetKeyspaceRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response: GetKeyspaceResponse = keyClient.getKeyspace(keyspaceRequest)
        val name = response.keyspaceName
        println("The $name KeySpace is ready")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetTable`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkTable(
    keyspaceNameVal: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
    var tableStatus = false
    var status: String
    var response: GetTableResponse? = null

    val tableRequest =
        GetTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
            tableName = tableNameVal
        }
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        while (!tableStatus) {
            response = keyClient.getTable(tableRequest)
            status = response!!.status.toString()
            println(". The table status is $status")
            if (status.compareTo("ACTIVE") == 0) {
                tableStatus = true
            }
            delay(500)
        }
        val cols: List<ColumnDefinition>? = response!!.schemaDefinition?.allColumns
        if (cols != null) {
            for (def in cols) {
                println("The column name is ${def.name}")
                println("The column type is ${def.type}")
            }
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListKeyspaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyspaces`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listKeyspacesPaginator() {
    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listKeyspacesPaginated(ListKeyspacesRequest {})
            .transform { it.keyspaces?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println("Name: ${obj.keyspaceName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listTables(keyspaceNameVal: String?) {
    val tablesRequest =
        ListTablesRequest {
            keyspaceName = keyspaceNameVal
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient
            .listTablesPaginated(tablesRequest)
            .transform { it.tables?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" ARN: ${obj.resourceArn} Table name: ${obj.tableName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`RestoreTable`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun restoreTable(
```

```
    keyspaceName: String?,
    utc: ZonedDateTime,
) {
    // Create an aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant value.
    val timeStamp =
        aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time
            .Instant(utc.toInstant())
    val restoreTableRequest =
        RestoreTableRequest {
            restoreTimestamp = timeStamp
            sourceTableName = "MovieKotlin"
            targetKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
            targetTableName = "MovieRestore"
            sourceKeyspaceName = keyspaceName
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        val response = keyClient.restoreTable(restoreTableRequest)
        println("The ARN of the restored table is ${response.restoredTableArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`UpdateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTable`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateTable(
    keySpace: String?,
    tableNameVal: String?,
) {
```

```
    val def =
        ColumnDefinition {
            name = "watched"
            type = "boolean"
        }

    val tableRequest =
        UpdateTableRequest {
            keyspaceName = keySpace
            tableName = tableNameVal
            addColumns = listOf(def)
        }

    KeyspacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { keyClient ->
        keyClient.updateTable(tableRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

AWS KMS examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with AWS KMS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAlias`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createCustomAlias(
    targetKeyIdVal: String?,
    aliasNameVal: String?,
) {
    val request =
        CreateAliasRequest {
            aliasName = aliasNameVal
            targetKeyId = targetKeyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        kmsClient.createAlias(request)
        println("$aliasNameVal was successfully created")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGrant`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewGrant(
```

```
    keyIdVal: String?,
    granteePrincipalVal: String?,
    operation: String,
): String? {
    val operationOb = GrantOperation.fromValue(operation)
    val grantOperationList = ArrayList<GrantOperation>()
    grantOperationList.add(operationOb)

    val request =
        CreateGrantRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
            granteePrincipal = granteePrincipalVal
            operations = grantOperationList
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.createGrant(request)
        return response.grantId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createKey(keyDesc: String?): String? {
    val request =
        CreateKeyRequest {
            description = keyDesc
            customerMasterKeySpec = CustomerMasterKeySpec.SymmetricDefault
```

```
            keyUsage = KeyUsageType.fromValue("ENCRYPT_DECRYPT")
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val result = kmsClient.createKey(request)
        println("Created a customer key with id " + result.keyMetadata?.arn)
        return result.keyMetadata?.keyId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Decrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Decrypt`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun encryptData(keyIdValue: String): ByteArray? {
    val text = "This is the text to encrypt by using the AWS KMS Service"
    val myBytes: ByteArray = text.toByteArray()

    val encryptRequest =
        EncryptRequest {
            keyId = keyIdValue
            plaintext = myBytes
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.encrypt(encryptRequest)
        val algorithm: String = response.encryptionAlgorithm.toString()
        println("The encryption algorithm is $algorithm")

        // Return the encrypted data.
        return response.ciphertextBlob
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun decryptData(
    encryptedDataVal: ByteArray?,
    keyIdVal: String?,
) {
    val decryptRequest =
        DecryptRequest {
            ciphertextBlob = encryptedDataVal
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }
    KmsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val decryptResponse = kmsClient.decrypt(decryptRequest)
        val myVal = decryptResponse.plaintext

        // Print the decrypted data.
        print(myVal)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeSpecifcKey(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DescribeKeyRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }
```

```
    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.describeKey(request)
        println("The key description is ${response.keyMetadata?.description}")
        println("The key ARN is ${response.keyMetadata?.arn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DisableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun disableKey(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        DisableKeyRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        kmsClient.disableKey(request)
        println("$keyIdVal was successfully disabled")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`EnableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun enableKey(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        EnableKeyRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        kmsClient.enableKey(request)
        println("$keyIdVal was successfully enabled.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Encrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Encrypt`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun encryptData(keyIdValue: String): ByteArray? {
    val text = "This is the text to encrypt by using the AWS KMS Service"
    val myBytes: ByteArray = text.toByteArray()
```

```
    val encryptRequest =
        EncryptRequest {
            keyId = keyIdValue
            plaintext = myBytes
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.encrypt(encryptRequest)
        val algorithm: String = response.encryptionAlgorithm.toString()
        println("The encryption algorithm is $algorithm")

        // Return the encrypted data.
        return response.ciphertextBlob
    }
}

suspend fun decryptData(
    encryptedDataVal: ByteArray?,
    keyIdVal: String?,
) {
    val decryptRequest =
        DecryptRequest {
            ciphertextBlob = encryptedDataVal
            keyId = keyIdVal
        }
    KmsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val decryptResponse = kmsClient.decrypt(decryptRequest)
        val myVal = decryptResponse.plaintext

        // Print the decrypted data.
        print(myVal)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAliases`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllAliases() {
    val request =
        ListAliasesRequest {
            limit = 15
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.listAliases(request)
        response.aliases?.forEach { alias ->
            println("The alias name is ${alias.aliasName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListGrants`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGrants`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun displayGrantIds(keyIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
```

```
        ListGrantsRequest {
            keyId = keyIdVal
            limit = 15
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.listGrants(request)
        response.grants?.forEach { grant ->
            println("The grant Id is ${grant.grantId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllKeys() {
    val request =
        ListKeysRequest {
            limit = 15
        }

    KmsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { kmsClient ->
        val response = kmsClient.listKeys(request)
        response.keys?.forEach { key ->
            println("The key ARN is ${key.keyArn}")
            println("The key Id is ${key.keyId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <functionName> <role> <handler> <bucketName> <updatedBucketName> <key>

        Where:
            functionName - The name of the AWS Lambda function.
            role - The AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) service role that
 has AWS Lambda permissions.
            handler - The fully qualified method name (for example,
 example.Handler::handleRequest).
            bucketName - The Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket name
 that contains the ZIP or JAR used for the Lambda function's code.
            updatedBucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket name that contains the .zip
 or .jar used to update the Lambda function's code.
            key - The Amazon S3 key name that represents the .zip or .jar file (for
 example, LambdaHello-1.0-SNAPSHOT.jar).
            """

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val functionName = args[0]
    val role = args[1]
    val handler = args[2]
    val bucketName = args[3]
    val updatedBucketName = args[4]
    val key = args[5]

    println("Creating a Lambda function named $functionName.")
    val funArn = createScFunction(functionName, bucketName, key, handler, role)
    println("The AWS Lambda ARN is $funArn")
```

```
    // Get a specific Lambda function.
    println("Getting the $functionName AWS Lambda function.")
    getFunction(functionName)

    // List the Lambda functions.
    println("Listing all AWS Lambda functions.")
    listFunctionsSc()

    // Invoke the Lambda function.
    println("*** Invoke the Lambda function.")
    invokeFunctionSc(functionName)

    // Update the AWS Lambda function code.
    println("*** Update the Lambda function code.")
    updateFunctionCode(functionName, updatedBucketName, key)

    // println("*** Invoke the function again after updating the code.")
    invokeFunctionSc(functionName)

    // Update the AWS Lambda function configuration.
    println("Update the run time of the function.")
    updateFunctionConfiguration(functionName, handler)

    // Delete the AWS Lambda function.
    println("Delete the AWS Lambda function.")
    delFunction(functionName)
}

suspend fun createScFunction(
    myFunctionName: String,
    s3BucketName: String,
    myS3Key: String,
    myHandler: String,
    myRole: String,
): String {
    val functionCode =
        FunctionCode {
            s3Bucket = s3BucketName
            s3Key = myS3Key
        }

    val request =
        CreateFunctionRequest {
```

```
            functionName = myFunctionName
            code = functionCode
            description = "Created by the Lambda Kotlin API"
            handler = myHandler
            role = myRole
            runtime = Runtime.Java17
        }

    // Create a Lambda function using a waiter
    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val functionResponse = awsLambda.createFunction(request)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionActive {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        return functionResponse.functionArn.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun getFunction(functionNameVal: String) {
    val functionRequest =
        GetFunctionRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val response = awsLambda.getFunction(functionRequest)
        println("The runtime of this Lambda function is
 ${response.configuration?.runtime}")
    }
}

suspend fun listFunctionsSc() {
    val request =
        ListFunctionsRequest {
            maxItems = 10
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val response = awsLambda.listFunctions(request)
        response.functions?.forEach { function ->
            println("The function name is ${function.functionName}")
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun invokeFunctionSc(functionNameVal: String) {
    val json = """{"inputValue":"1000"}"""
    val byteArray = json.trimIndent().encodeToByteArray()
    val request =
        InvokeRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            payload = byteArray
            logType = LogType.Tail
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val res = awsLambda.invoke(request)
        println("The function payload is ${res.payload?.toString(Charsets.UTF_8)}")
    }
}

suspend fun updateFunctionCode(
    functionNameVal: String?,
    bucketName: String?,
    key: String?,
) {
    val functionCodeRequest =
        UpdateFunctionCodeRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            publish = true
            s3Bucket = bucketName
            s3Key = key
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val response = awsLambda.updateFunctionCode(functionCodeRequest)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionUpdated {
            functionName = functionNameVal
        }
        println("The last modified value is " + response.lastModified)
    }
}

suspend fun updateFunctionConfiguration(
    functionNameVal: String?,
    handlerVal: String?,
) {
    val configurationRequest =
```

```
        UpdateFunctionConfigurationRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            handler = handlerVal
            runtime = Runtime.Java17
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.updateFunctionConfiguration(configurationRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun delFunction(myFunctionName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.deleteFunction(request)
        println("$myFunctionName was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewFunction(
    myFunctionName: String,
    s3BucketName: String,
    myS3Key: String,
    myHandler: String,
    myRole: String,
): String? {
    val functionCode =
        FunctionCode {
            s3Bucket = s3BucketName
            s3Key = myS3Key
        }

    val request =
        CreateFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
            code = functionCode
            description = "Created by the Lambda Kotlin API"
            handler = myHandler
            role = myRole
            runtime = Runtime.Java17
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val functionResponse = awsLambda.createFunction(request)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionActive {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        return functionResponse.functionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun delLambdaFunction(myFunctionName: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.deleteFunction(request)
        println("$myFunctionName was deleted")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun invokeFunction(functionNameVal: String) {
```

```
    val json = """{"inputValue":"1000"}"""
    val byteArray = json.trimIndent().encodeToByteArray()
    val request =
        InvokeRequest {
            functionName = functionNameVal
            logType = LogType.Tail
            payload = byteArray
        }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val res = awsLambda.invoke(request)
        println("${res.payload?.toString(Charsets.UTF_8)}")
        println("The log result is ${res.logResult}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition

- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Amazon Location examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Location.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Location Service

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Location Service.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

In addition, you need to create a collection using the AWS Management
console. For information, see the following documentation.

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/location/latest/developerguide/geofence-gs.html
```

```
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """

        Usage:
            <colletionName>

        Where:
            colletionName - The Amazon location collection name.
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    val colletionName = args[0]
    listGeofences(colletionName)
}

/**
 * Lists the geofences for the specified collection name.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection
 */
suspend fun listGeofences(collectionName: String) {
    val request = ListGeofencesRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.listGeofences(request)
        val geofences = response.entries
        if (geofences.isNullOrEmpty()) {
            println("No Geofences found")
        } else {
            geofences.forEach { geofence ->
                println("Geofence ID: ${geofence.geofenceId}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - ListGeofenceCollections
  - ListGeofences

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Location map.
- Create an Amazon Location API key.
- Display Map URL.
- Create a geofence collection.
- Store a geofence geometry.
- Create a tracker resource.
- Update the position of a device.
- Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.
- Create a route calculator.
- Determine the distance between Seattle and Vancouver.
- Use Amazon Location higher level APIs.
- Delete the Amazon Location Assets.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

val scanner = Scanner(System.`in`)
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """

        Usage:    <mapName> <keyName> <collectionName> <geoId> <trackerName>
 <calculatorName> <deviceId>

        Where:
            mapName - The name of the map to create (e.g., "AWSMap").
            keyName - The name of the API key to create (e.g., "AWSApiKey").
            collectionName - The name of the geofence collection (e.g.,
 "AWSLocationCollection").
            geoId - The geographic identifier used for the geofence or map (e.g.,
 "geoId").
            trackerName - The name of the tracker (e.g., "geoTracker").
            calculatorName - The name of the route calculator (e.g.,
 "AWSRouteCalc").
            deviceId - The ID of the device (e.g., "iPhone-112356").
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val mapName = args[0]
    val keyName = args[1]
    val collectionName = args[2]
    val geoId = args[3]
    val trackerName = args[4]
    val calculatorName = args[5]
    val deviceId = args[6]

    println(
```

```
        """
    AWS Location Service is a fully managed service offered by Amazon Web Services
(AWS) that
    provides location-based services for developers. This service simplifies
    the integration of location-based features into applications, making it
    easier to build and deploy location-aware applications.

    The AWS Location Service offers a range of location-based services,
    including:

    - Maps: The service provides access to high-quality maps, satellite imagery,
      and geospatial data from various providers, allowing developers to
      easily embed maps into their applications.

    - Tracking: The Location Service enables real-time tracking of mobile devices,
      assets, or other entities, allowing developers to build applications
      that can monitor the location of people, vehicles, or other objects.

    - Geocoding: The service provides the ability to convert addresses or
      location names into geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude),
      and vice versa, enabling developers to integrate location-based search
      and routing functionality into their applications.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
    println("1. Create an AWS Location Service map")
    println(
        """
        An AWS Location map can enhance the user experience of your
        application by providing accurate and personalized location-based
        features. For example, you could use the geocoding capabilities to
        allow users to search for and locate businesses, landmarks, or
        other points of interest within a specific region.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val mapArn = createMap(mapName)
    println("The Map ARN is: $mapArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println("2. Create an AWS Location API key")
    println(
        """
            When you embed a map in a web app or website, the API key is
            included in the map tile URL to authenticate requests. You can
            restrict API keys to specific AWS Location operations (e.g., only
            maps, not geocoding). API keys can expire, ensuring temporary
            access control.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    val keyArn = createKey(keyName, mapArn)
    println("The Key ARN is: $keyArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Display Map URL")
    println(
        """
        In order to get the MAP URL, you need to get the API Key value.
        You can get the key value using the AWS Management Console under
        Location Services. This operation cannot be completed using the
        AWS SDK. For more information about getting the key value, see
        the AWS Location Documentation.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    val mapUrl = "https://maps.geo.aws.amazon.com/maps/v0/maps/$mapName/tiles/{z}/
{x}/{y}?key={KeyValue}"
    println("Embed this URL in your Web app: $mapUrl")
    println("")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a geofence collection, which manages and stores geofences.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val collectionArn: String =
        createGeofenceCollection(collectionName)
    println("The geofence collection was successfully created: $collectionArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Store a geofence geometry in a given geofence collection.")
    println(
        """
        An AWS Location geofence is a virtual boundary that defines a geographic
area
        on a map. It is a useful feature for tracking the location of
        assets or monitoring the movement of objects within a specific region.

        To define a geofence, you need to specify the coordinates of a
        polygon that represents the area of interest. The polygon must be
        defined in a counter-clockwise direction, meaning that the points of
        the polygon must be listed in a counter-clockwise order.

        This is a requirement for the AWS Location service to correctly
        interpret the geofence and ensure that the location data is
        accurately processed within the defined area.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    putGeofence(collectionName, geoId)
    println("Successfully created geofence: $geoId")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Create a tracker resource which lets you retrieve current and
historical location of devices.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val trackerArn: String = createTracker(trackerName)
    println("Successfully created tracker. ARN: $trackerArn")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Update the position of a device in the location tracking system.")
    println(
        """
        The AWS location service does not enforce a strict format for deviceId, but
it must:
            - Be a string (case-sensitive).
            - Be 1-100 characters long.
            - Contain only:
```

```
            - Alphanumeric characters (A-Z, a-z, 0-9)
            - Underscores (_)
            - Hyphens (-)
            - Be the same ID used when sending and retrieving positions.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    updateDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId)
    println("$deviceId was successfully updated in the location tracking system.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Retrieve the most recent position update for a specified device.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val response = getDevicePosition(trackerName, deviceId)
    println("Successfully fetched device position: ${response.position}")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Create a route calculator.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val routeResponse = createRouteCalculator(calculatorName)
    println("Route calculator created successfully: ${routeResponse.calculatorArn}")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Determine the distance in kilometers between Seattle and Vancouver
using the route calculator.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    val responseDis = calcDistance(calculatorName)
    println("Successfully calculated route. The distance in kilometers is
${responseDis.summary?.distance}")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Use the GeoPlacesClient to perform additional operations.")
    println(
        """
```

```
        This scenario will show use of the GeoPlacesClient that enables
        location search and geocoding capabilities for your applications.

        We are going to use this client to perform these AWS Location tasks:
            - Reverse Geocoding (reverseGeocode): Converts geographic coordinates
into addresses.
            - Place Search (searchText): Finds places based on search queries.
            - Nearby Search (searchNearby): Finds places near a specific location.

        """.trimIndent(),
    )

    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println("First we will perform a Reverse Geocoding operation")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    reverseGeocode()

    println("Now we are going to perform a text search using coffee shop.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    searchText("coffee shop")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)

    println("Now we are going to perform a nearby Search.")
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    searchNearby()
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("12. Delete the AWS Location Services resources.")
    println("Would you like to delete the AWS Location Services resources? (y/n)")
    val delAns = scanner.nextLine().trim { it <= ' ' }
    if (delAns.equals("y", ignoreCase = true)) {
        deleteMap(mapName)
        deleteKey(keyName)
        deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionName)
        deleteTracker(trackerName)
        deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorName)
    } else {
        println("The AWS resources will not be deleted.")
    }
    waitForInputToContinue(scanner)
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println(" This concludes the AWS Location Service scenario.")
    println(DASHES)
}

/**
 * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
 * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteRouteCalculator(calcName: String) {
    val calculatorRequest = DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = calcName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
        println("The route calculator $calcName was deleted.")
    }
}


/**
 * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteTracker(trackerName: String) {
    val trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
    }

    LocationClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
        println("The tracker $trackerName was deleted.")
    }
}


/**
 * Deletes a geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence collection
 has been deleted
 */
```

```
suspend fun deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String) {
    val collectionRequest = DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The geofence collection $collectionName was deleted.")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteKey(keyName: String) {
    val keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteKey(keyRequest)
        println("The key $keyName was deleted.")
    }
}

/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteMap(mapName: String) {
    val mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteMap(mapRequest)
        println("The map $mapName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

```
/**
 * Performs a nearby places search based on the provided geographic coordinates
 (latitude and longitude).
 * The method sends an asynchronous request to search for places within a 1-
kilometer radius of the specified location.
 * The results are processed and printed once the search completes successfully.
 */
suspend fun searchNearby() {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194
    val queryPosition = listOf(longitude, latitude)

    // Set up the request for searching nearby places.
    val request = SearchNearbyRequest {
        this.queryPosition = queryPosition
        this.queryRadius = 1000L
    }

    GeoPlacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.searchNearby(request)

        // Process the response and print the results.
        response.resultItems?.forEach { result ->
            println("Title: ${result.title}")
            println("Address: ${result.address?.label}")
            println("Distance: ${result.distance} meters")
            println("-------------------------")
        }
    }
}


/**
 * Searches for a place using the provided search query and prints the detailed
 information of the first result.
 *
 * @param searchQuery the search query to be used for the place search (ex, coffee
 shop)
 */
suspend fun searchText(searchQuery: String) {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194
    val queryPosition = listOf(longitude, latitude)
```

```
    val request = SearchTextRequest {
        this.queryText = searchQuery
        this.biasPosition = queryPosition
    }

    GeoPlacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.searchText(request)

        response.resultItems?.firstOrNull()?.let { result ->
            val placeId = result.placeId // Get Place ID
            println("Found Place with id: $placeId")

            // Fetch detailed info using getPlace.
            val getPlaceRequest = GetPlaceRequest {
                this.placeId = placeId
            }

            val placeResponse = client.getPlace(getPlaceRequest)

            // Print detailed place information.
            println("Detailed Place Information:")
            println("Title: ${placeResponse.title}")
            println("Address: ${placeResponse.address?.label}")

            // Print each food type (if any).
            placeResponse.foodTypes?.takeIf { it.isNotEmpty() }?.let {
                println("Food Types:")
                it.forEach { foodType ->
                    println("  - $foodType")
                }
            } ?: run {
                println("No food types available.")
            }

            println("-------------------------")
        }
    }
}

/**
 * Performs reverse geocoding using the AWS Geo Places API.
 * Reverse geocoding is the process of converting geographic coordinates (latitude
 and longitude) to a human-readable address.
```

```
 * This method uses the latitude and longitude of San Francisco as the input, and
 prints the resulting address.
 */
suspend fun reverseGeocode() {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194
    println("Use latitude 37.7749 and longitude -122.4194")

    // AWS expects [longitude, latitude].
    val queryPosition = listOf(longitude, latitude)
    val request = ReverseGeocodeRequest {
        this.queryPosition = queryPosition
    }

    GeoPlacesClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.reverseGeocode(request)
        response.resultItems?.forEach { result ->
            println("The address is: ${result.address?.label}")
        }
    }
}


/**
 * Calculates the distance between two locations.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
 CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the route
 */
suspend fun calcDistance(routeCalcName: String): CalculateRouteResponse {
    // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
    val departurePosition = listOf(-122.3321, 47.6062)
    val arrivePosition = listOf(-123.1216, 49.2827)

    val request = CalculateRouteRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.departurePosition = departurePosition
        this.destinationPosition = arrivePosition
        this.travelMode = TravelMode.Car // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
        this.distanceUnit = DistanceUnit.Kilometers // Options: Meters, Kilometers,
 Miles
    }
```

```
    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.calculateRoute(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
 */
suspend fun createRouteCalculator(routeCalcName: String):
 CreateRouteCalculatorResponse {
    val dataSource = "Esri"

    val request = CreateRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.dataSource = dataSource
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.createRouteCalculator(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
 *
 * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
 * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
 */
suspend fun getDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String):
 GetDevicePositionResponse {
    val request = GetDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        this.deviceId = deviceId
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.getDevicePosition(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
```

```
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
 * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
 */
suspend fun updateDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String) {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194

    val positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate {
        this.deviceId = deviceId
        sampleTime = aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant.now() // Timestamp of
 position update.
        position = listOf(longitude, latitude) // AWS requires [longitude, latitude]
    }

    val request = BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        updates = listOf(positionUpdate)
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.batchUpdateDevicePosition(request)
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to track
 the location of devices.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the Amazon
 Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
 */
suspend fun createTracker(trackerName: String): String {
    val trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest {
        description = "Created using the Kotlin SDK"
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        positionFiltering = PositionFiltering.TimeBased // Options: TimeBased,
 DistanceBased, AccuracyBased
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createTracker(trackerRequest)
        return response.trackerArn
```

```
    }
}

/**
 * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the geofence to
 * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
 */
suspend fun putGeofence(collectionName: String, geoId: String) {
    val geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry {
        polygon = listOf(
            listOf(
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
            ),
        )
    }

    val geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        this.geofenceId = geoId
        this.geometry = geofenceGeometry
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
 */
suspend fun createGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String): String {
    val collectionRequest = CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }
```

```
    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        return response.collectionArn
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
 * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which the
 API key will be associated
 * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created API key
 */
suspend fun createKey(keyName: String, mapArn: String): String {
    val keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions {
        allowActions = listOf("geo:GetMap*")
        allowResources = listOf(mapArn)
    }

    val request = CreateKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
        this.restrictions = keyRestrictions
        noExpiry = true
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createKey(request)
        return response.keyArn
    }
}

/**
 * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
 *
 * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
 * @return he Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
 */
suspend fun createMap(mapName: String): String {
    val configuration = MapConfiguration {
        style = "VectorEsriNavigation"
    }

    val mapRequest = CreateMapRequest {
```

```
        this.mapName = mapName
        this.configuration = configuration
        description = "A map created using the Kotlin SDK"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createMap(mapRequest)
        return response.mapArn
    }
}

fun waitForInputToContinue(scanner: Scanner) {
    while (true) {
        println("")
        println("Enter 'c' followed by <ENTER> to continue:")
        val input = scanner.nextLine()
        if (input.trim { it <= ' ' }.equals("c", ignoreCase = true)) {
            println("Continuing with the program...")
            println("")
            break
        } else {
            println("Invalid input. Please try again.")
        }
    }
}
```

Actions

`BatchUpdateDevicePosition`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchUpdateDevicePosition`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Updates the position of a device in the location tracking system.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker associated with the device
 * @param deviceId    the unique identifier of the device
 */
suspend fun updateDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String) {
    val latitude = 37.7749
    val longitude = -122.4194

    val positionUpdate = DevicePositionUpdate {
        this.deviceId = deviceId
        sampleTime = aws.smithy.kotlin.runtime.time.Instant.now() // Timestamp of
 position update.
        position = listOf(longitude, latitude) // AWS requires [longitude, latitude]
    }

    val request = BatchUpdateDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        updates = listOf(positionUpdate)
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.batchUpdateDevicePosition(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see BatchUpdateDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CalculateRoute`

The following code example shows how to use `CalculateRoute`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Calculates the distance between two locations.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to use
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that will complete with a {@link
 CalculateRouteResponse} containing the distance and estimated duration of the route
 */
suspend fun calcDistance(routeCalcName: String): CalculateRouteResponse {
    // Define coordinates for Seattle, WA and Vancouver, BC.
    val departurePosition = listOf(-122.3321, 47.6062)
    val arrivePosition = listOf(-123.1216, 49.2827)

    val request = CalculateRouteRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.departurePosition = departurePosition
        this.destinationPosition = arrivePosition
        this.travelMode = TravelMode.Car // Options: Car, Truck, Walking, Bicycle
        this.distanceUnit = DistanceUnit.Kilometers // Options: Meters, Kilometers,
 Miles
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.calculateRoute(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CalculateRoute in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateGeofenceCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGeofenceCollection`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be created
 */
suspend fun createGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String): String {
    val collectionRequest = CreateGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        return response.collectionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new API key with the specified name and restrictions.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the API key to be created
 * @param mapArn  the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the map resource to which the
 API key will be associated
 * @return the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created API key
 */
suspend fun createKey(keyName: String, mapArn: String): String {
```

```
    val keyRestrictions = ApiKeyRestrictions {
        allowActions = listOf("geo:GetMap*")
        allowResources = listOf(mapArn)
    }

    val request = CreateKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
        this.restrictions = keyRestrictions
        noExpiry = true
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createKey(request)
        return response.keyArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateMap`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMap`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new map with the specified name and configuration.
 *
 * @param mapName the name of the map to be created
 * @return he Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the created map
 */
suspend fun createMap(mapName: String): String {
    val configuration = MapConfiguration {
        style = "VectorEsriNavigation"
```

```
    }

    val mapRequest = CreateMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
        this.configuration = configuration
        description = "A map created using the Kotlin SDK"
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createMap(mapRequest)
        return response.mapArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateMap in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateRouteCalculator`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRouteCalculator`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new route calculator with the specified name and data source.
 *
 * @param routeCalcName the name of the route calculator to be created
 */
suspend fun createRouteCalculator(routeCalcName: String):
 CreateRouteCalculatorResponse {
    val dataSource = "Esri"

    val request = CreateRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = routeCalcName
        this.dataSource = dataSource
    }
```

```
    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.createRouteCalculator(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTracker`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Creates a new tracker resource in your AWS account, which you can use to track
 the location of devices.
 *
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be created
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that, when completed, will contain the Amazon
 Resource Name (ARN) of the created tracker
 */
suspend fun createTracker(trackerName: String): String {
    val trackerRequest = CreateTrackerRequest {
        description = "Created using the Kotlin SDK"
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        positionFiltering = PositionFiltering.TimeBased // Options: TimeBased,
 DistanceBased, AccuracyBased
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        val response = client.createTracker(trackerRequest)
        return response.trackerArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTracker in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteGeofenceCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGeofenceCollection`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a geofence collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to be deleted
 * @return a {@link CompletableFuture} that completes when the geofence collection
 has been deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionName: String) {
    val collectionRequest = DeleteGeofenceCollectionRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteGeofenceCollection(collectionRequest)
        println("The geofence collection $collectionName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteGeofenceCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKey`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteKey(keyName: String) {
    val keyRequest = DeleteKeyRequest {
        this.keyName = keyName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteKey(keyRequest)
        println("The key $keyName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKey in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteMap`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMap`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
```

```
 * Deletes the specified key from the key-value store.
 *
 * @param keyName the name of the key to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteMap(mapName: String) {
    val mapRequest = DeleteMapRequest {
        this.mapName = mapName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteMap(mapRequest)
        println("The map $mapName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMap in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteRouteCalculator`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRouteCalculator`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a route calculator from the system.
 * @param calcName the name of the route calculator to delete
 */
suspend fun deleteRouteCalculator(calcName: String) {
    val calculatorRequest = DeleteRouteCalculatorRequest {
        this.calculatorName = calcName
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteRouteCalculator(calculatorRequest)
        println("The route calculator $calcName was deleted.")
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteCalculator in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteTracker`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTracker`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Deletes a tracker with the specified name.
 * @param trackerName the name of the tracker to be deleted
 */
suspend fun deleteTracker(trackerName: String) {
    val trackerRequest = DeleteTrackerRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
    }

    LocationClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.deleteTracker(trackerRequest)
        println("The tracker $trackerName was deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTracker in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetDevicePosition`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDevicePosition`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Retrieves the position of a device using the provided LocationClient.
 *
 * @param trackerName The name of the tracker associated with the device.
 * @param deviceId    The ID of the device to retrieve the position for.
 */
suspend fun getDevicePosition(trackerName: String, deviceId: String):
 GetDevicePositionResponse {
    val request = GetDevicePositionRequest {
        this.trackerName = trackerName
        this.deviceId = deviceId
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        return client.getDevicePosition(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDevicePosition in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutGeofence`

The following code example shows how to use `PutGeofence`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 * Adds a new geofence to the specified collection.
 *
 * @param collectionName the name of the geofence collection to add the geofence to
 * @param geoId          the unique identifier for the geofence
 */
suspend fun putGeofence(collectionName: String, geoId: String) {
    val geofenceGeometry = GeofenceGeometry {
        polygon = listOf(
            listOf(
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6101),
                listOf(-122.3281, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6201),
                listOf(-122.3381, 47.6101),
            ),
        )
    }

    val geofenceRequest = PutGeofenceRequest {
        this.collectionName = collectionName
        this.geofenceId = geoId
        this.geometry = geofenceGeometry
    }

    LocationClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { client ->
        client.putGeofence(geofenceRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutGeofence in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

MediaConvert examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with MediaConvert.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createMediaJob(
    mcClient: MediaConvertClient,
    mcRoleARN: String,
    fileInput1: String,
): String? {
    // Step 1: Describe endpoints to get the MediaConvert endpoint URL
    val describeResponse = mcClient.describeEndpoints(
        DescribeEndpointsRequest {
            maxResults = 1
        },
    )

    val endpointUrl = describeResponse.endpoints?.firstOrNull()?.url
        ?: error("No MediaConvert endpoint found")

    // Step 2: Create MediaConvert client with resolved endpoint
    val mediaConvert = MediaConvertClient.fromEnvironment {
        region = "us-west-2"
        endpointProvider = MediaConvertEndpointProvider {
            Endpoint(endpointUrl)
        }
```

```
    }

    // Output destination folder in S3 - put in 'output/' folder beside input
    val outputDestination = fileInput1.substringBeforeLast('/') + "/output/"

    // Step 3: Create the job request with minimal valid video codec settings
    val jobRequest = CreateJobRequest {
        role = mcRoleARN
        settings = JobSettings {
            inputs = listOf(
                Input {
                    fileInput = fileInput1
                },
            )
            outputGroups = listOf(
                OutputGroup {
                    outputGroupSettings = OutputGroupSettings {
                        type = OutputGroupType.FileGroupSettings
                        fileGroupSettings = FileGroupSettings {
                            destination = outputDestination
                        }
                    }
                    outputs = listOf(
                        Output {
                            containerSettings = ContainerSettings {
                                container = ContainerType.Mp4
                            }
                            videoDescription = VideoDescription {
                                width = 1280
                                height = 720
                                codecSettings = VideoCodecSettings {
                                    codec = VideoCodec.H264
                                    h264Settings = H264Settings {
                                        rateControlMode = H264RateControlMode.Qvbr
                                        qvbrSettings = H264QvbrSettings {
                                            qvbrQualityLevel = 7
                                        }
                                        maxBitrate = 5_000_000
                                        codecLevel = H264CodecLevel.Auto
                                        codecProfile = H264CodecProfile.Main
                                        framerateControl =
H264FramerateControl.InitializeFromSource
                                    }
                                }
```

```
                            }
                        },
                    )
                },
            )
        }
    }

    // Step 4: Call MediaConvert to create the job
    val response = mediaConvert.createJob(jobRequest)

    // Return the job ID or null if not found
    return response.job?.id
}
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJob`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSpecificJob(mcClient: MediaConvertClient, jobId: String) {
    // 1. Discover the correct endpoint
    val res = mcClient.describeEndpoints(DescribeEndpointsRequest { maxResults =
 1 })
    var endpointUrl = res.endpoints?.firstOrNull()?.url
        ?: error(" No MediaConvert endpoint found")

    // 2. Create a new client using the endpoint
    val clientWithEndpoint = MediaConvertClient {
        region = "us-west-2"
        endpointUrl = endpointUrl
    }
```

```
    // 3. Get the job details
    val jobResponse = clientWithEndpoint.getJob(GetJobRequest { id = jobId })
    val job = jobResponse.job

    println("Job status: ${job?.status}")
    println("Job ARN: ${job?.arn}")
    println("Output group count: ${job?.settings?.outputGroups?.size}")
}
```

- For API details, see GetJob in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listCompleteJobs(mcClient: MediaConvertClient) {
    val describeEndpoints =
        DescribeEndpointsRequest {
            maxResults = 20
        }

    val res = mcClient.describeEndpoints(describeEndpoints)
    if (res.endpoints?.size!! <= 0) {
        println("Cannot find MediaConvert service endpoint URL!")
        exitProcess(0)
    }
    val endpointURL = res.endpoints!![0].url!!
    val mediaConvert =
        MediaConvertClient.fromEnvironment {
            region = "us-west-2"
            endpointProvider =
                MediaConvertEndpointProvider {
```

```
                    Endpoint(endpointURL)
                }
        }

    val jobsRequest =
        ListJobsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
            status = JobStatus.fromValue("COMPLETE")
        }

    val jobsResponse = mediaConvert.listJobs(jobsRequest)
    val jobs = jobsResponse.jobs
    if (jobs != null) {
        for (job in jobs) {
            println("The JOB ARN is ${job.arn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateApp`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateApp`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createApplication(applicationName: String?): String? {
    val createApplicationRequestOb =
        CreateApplicationRequest {
            name = applicationName
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result =
            pinpoint.createApp(
                CreateAppRequest {
                    createApplicationRequest = createApplicationRequestOb
                },
            )
        return result.applicationResponse?.id
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateApp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateCampaign`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCampaign`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createPinCampaign(
    appId: String,
    segmentIdVal: String,
) {
    val scheduleOb =
        Schedule {
            startTime = "IMMEDIATE"
        }

    val defaultMessageOb =
        Message {
            action = Action.OpenApp
            body = "My message body"
            title = "My message title"
        }

    val messageConfigurationOb =
        MessageConfiguration {
            defaultMessage = defaultMessageOb
        }

    val writeCampaign =
        WriteCampaignRequest {
            description = "My description"
            schedule = scheduleOb
            name = "MyCampaign"
            segmentId = segmentIdVal
            messageConfiguration = messageConfigurationOb
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result: CreateCampaignResponse =
            pinpoint.createCampaign(
                CreateCampaignRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                    writeCampaignRequest = writeCampaign
                },
            )
        println("Campaign ID is ${result.campaignResponse?.id}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCampaign in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateSegment`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSegment`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createPinpointSegment(applicationIdVal: String?): String? {
    val segmentAttributes = mutableMapOf<String, AttributeDimension>()
    val myList = mutableListOf<String>()
    myList.add("Lakers")

    val atts =
        AttributeDimension {
            attributeType = AttributeType.Inclusive
            values = myList
        }

    segmentAttributes["Team"] = atts
    val recencyDimension =
        RecencyDimension {
            duration = Duration.fromValue("DAY_30")
            recencyType = RecencyType.fromValue("ACTIVE")
        }

    val segmentBehaviors =
        SegmentBehaviors {
            recency = recencyDimension
        }

    val segmentLocation = SegmentLocation {}
    val dimensionsOb =
        SegmentDimensions {
            attributes = segmentAttributes
            behavior = segmentBehaviors
```

```
            demographic = SegmentDemographics {}
            location = segmentLocation
        }

    val writeSegmentRequestOb =
        WriteSegmentRequest {
            name = "MySegment101"
            dimensions = dimensionsOb
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val createSegmentResult: CreateSegmentResponse =
            pinpoint.createSegment(
                CreateSegmentRequest {
                    applicationId = applicationIdVal
                    writeSegmentRequest = writeSegmentRequestOb
                },
            )
        println("Segment ID is ${createSegmentResult.segmentResponse?.id}")
        return createSegmentResult.segmentResponse?.id
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateSegment in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteApp`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteApp`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deletePinApp(appId: String?) {
    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result =
```

```
            pinpoint.deleteApp(
                DeleteAppRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                },
            )
        val appName = result.applicationResponse?.name
        println("Application $appName has been deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteApp in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEndpoint`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deletePinEncpoint(
    appIdVal: String?,
    endpointIdVal: String?,
) {
    val deleteEndpointRequest =
        DeleteEndpointRequest {
            applicationId = appIdVal
            endpointId = endpointIdVal
        }

    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result = pinpoint.deleteEndpoint(deleteEndpointRequest)
        val id = result.endpointResponse?.id
        println("The deleted endpoint is  $id")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `GetEndpoint`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun lookupPinpointEndpoint(
    appId: String?,
    endpoint: String?,
) {
    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val result =
            pinpoint.getEndpoint(
                GetEndpointRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                    endpointId = endpoint
                },
            )
        val endResponse = result.endpointResponse

        // Uses the Google Gson library to pretty print the endpoint JSON.
        val gson: com.google.gson.Gson =
            GsonBuilder()
                .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
                .setPrettyPrinting()
                .create()

        val endpointJson: String = gson.toJson(endResponse)
        println(endpointJson)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetSegments`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSegments`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listSegs(appId: String?) {
    PinpointClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { pinpoint ->
        val response =
            pinpoint.getSegments(
                GetSegmentsRequest {
                    applicationId = appId
                },
            )
        response.segmentsResponse?.item?.forEach { segment ->
            println("Segement id is ${segment.id}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSegments in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`SendMessages`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessages`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

val body: String =
    """
    Amazon Pinpoint test (AWS SDK for Kotlin)

    This email was sent through the Amazon Pinpoint Email API using the AWS SDK for
 Kotlin.

    """.trimIndent()

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <subject> <appId> <senderAddress> <toAddress>

    Where:
        subject - The email subject to use.
        senderAddress - The from address. This address has to be verified in Amazon
 Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email
        toAddress - The to address. This address has to be verified in Amazon
 Pinpoint in the region you're using to send email
    """

    if (args.size != 3) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
```

```
    }

    val subject = args[0]
    val senderAddress = args[1]
    val toAddress = args[2]
    sendEmail(subject, senderAddress, toAddress)
}

suspend fun sendEmail(
    subjectVal: String?,
    senderAddress: String,
    toAddressVal: String,
) {
    var content =
        Content {
            data = body
        }

    val messageBody =
        Body {
            text = content
        }

    val subContent =
        Content {
            data = subjectVal
        }

    val message =
        Message {
            body = messageBody
            subject = subContent
        }

    val destinationOb =
        Destination {
            toAddresses = listOf(toAddressVal)
        }

    val emailContent =
        EmailContent {
            simple = message
        }
```

```
    val sendEmailRequest =
        SendEmailRequest {
            fromEmailAddress = senderAddress
            destination = destinationOb
            this.content = emailContent
        }

    PinpointEmailClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { pinpointemail
 ->
        pinpointemail.sendEmail(sendEmailRequest)
        println("Message Sent")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this code example, set up your development environment, including
 your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This example requires an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains the database
 credentials. If you do not create a
secret, this example will not work. For more details, see:

https://docs.aws.amazon.com/secretsmanager/latest/userguide/integrating_how-
services-use-secrets_RS.html

This example performs the following tasks:

1. Returns a list of the available DB engines by invoking the
 DescribeDbEngineVersions method.
```

```
2. Selects an engine family and create a custom DB parameter group by invoking the
 createDBParameterGroup method.
3. Gets the parameter groups by invoking the DescribeDbParameterGroups method.
4. Gets parameters in the group by invoking the DescribeDbParameters method.
5. Modifies both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
 by invoking the modifyDbParameterGroup method.
6. Gets and displays the updated parameters.
7. Gets a list of allowed engine versions by invoking the describeDbEngineVersions
 method.
8. Gets a list of micro instance classes available for the selected engine.
9. Creates an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) database instance that
 contains a MySQL database and uses the parameter group.
10. Waits for DB instance to be ready and prints out the connection endpoint value.
11. Creates a snapshot of the DB instance.
12. Waits for the DB snapshot to be ready.
13. Deletes the DB instance.
14. Deletes the parameter group.
 */

var sleepTime: Long = 20

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <dbGroupName> <dbParameterGroupFamily> <dbInstanceIdentifier> <dbName>
 <dbSnapshotIdentifier><secretName>

        Where:
            dbGroupName - The database group name.
            dbParameterGroupFamily - The database parameter group name.
            dbInstanceIdentifier - The database instance identifier.
            dbName -  The database name.
            dbSnapshotIdentifier - The snapshot identifier.
            secretName - The name of the AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains
 the database credentials.
    """

    if (args.size != 6) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val dbGroupName = args[0]
    val dbParameterGroupFamily = args[1]
```

```
    val dbInstanceIdentifier = args[2]
    val dbName = args[3]
    val dbSnapshotIdentifier = args[4]
    val secretName = args[5]

    val gson = Gson()
    val user = gson.fromJson(getSecretValues(secretName).toString(),
User::class.java)
    val username = user.username
    val userPassword = user.password

    println("1. Return a list of the available DB engines")
    describeDBEngines()

    println("2. Create a custom parameter group")
    createDBParameterGroup(dbGroupName, dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("3. Get the parameter groups")
    describeDbParameterGroups(dbGroupName)

    println("4. Get the parameters in the group")
    describeDbParameters(dbGroupName, 0)

    println("5. Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter")
    modifyDBParas(dbGroupName)

    println("6. Display the updated value")
    describeDbParameters(dbGroupName, -1)

    println("7. Get a list of allowed engine versions")
    getAllowedEngines(dbParameterGroupFamily)

    println("8. Get a list of micro instance classes available for the selected
engine")
    getMicroInstances()

    println("9. Create an RDS database instance that contains a MySql database and
uses the parameter group")
    val dbARN = createDatabaseInstance(dbGroupName, dbInstanceIdentifier, dbName,
username, userPassword)
    println("The ARN of the new database is $dbARN")

    println("10. Wait for DB instance to be ready")
    waitForDbInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifier)
```

```
    println("11. Create a snapshot of the DB instance")
    createDbSnapshot(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier)

    println("12. Wait for DB snapshot to be ready")
    waitForSnapshotReady(dbInstanceIdentifier, dbSnapshotIdentifier)

    println("13. Delete the DB instance")
    deleteDbInstance(dbInstanceIdentifier)

    println("14. Delete the parameter group")
    if (dbARN != null) {
        deleteParaGroup(dbGroupName, dbARN)
    }

    println("The Scenario has successfully completed.")
}

suspend fun deleteParaGroup(
    dbGroupName: String,
    dbARN: String,
) {
    var isDataDel = false
    var didFind: Boolean
    var instanceARN: String

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        // Make sure that the database has been deleted.
        while (!isDataDel) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances()
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            val listSize = instanceList?.size
            isDataDel = false // Reset this value.
            didFind = false // Reset this value.
            var index = 1
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceARN = instance.dbInstanceArn.toString()
                    if (instanceARN.compareTo(dbARN) == 0) {
                        println("$dbARN still exists")
                        didFind = true
                    }
                    if (index == listSize && !didFind) {
```

```
                        // Went through the entire list and did not find the
 database name.
                        isDataDel = true
                    }
                    index++
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the para group.
        val parameterGroupRequest =
            DeleteDbParameterGroupRequest {
                dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            }
        rdsClient.deleteDbParameterGroup(parameterGroupRequest)
        println("$dbGroupName was deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteDbInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}

// Waits until the snapshot instance is available.
suspend fun waitForSnapshotReady(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifierVal: String?,
) {
    var snapshotReady = false
    var snapshotReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for the snapshot to become available.")

    val snapshotsRequest =
```

```
        DescribeDbSnapshotsRequest {
            dbSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifierVal
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    while (!snapshotReady) {
        RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbSnapshots(snapshotsRequest)
            val snapshotList: List<DbSnapshot>? = response.dbSnapshots
            if (snapshotList != null) {
                for (snapshot in snapshotList) {
                    snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status.toString()
                    if (snapshotReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        snapshotReady = true
                    } else {
                        print(".")
                        delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Snapshot is available!")
}

// Create an Amazon RDS snapshot.
suspend fun createDbSnapshot(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbSnapshotIdentifierVal: String?,
) {
    val snapshotRequest =
        CreateDbSnapshotRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            dbSnapshotIdentifier = dbSnapshotIdentifierVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbSnapshot(snapshotRequest)
        print("The Snapshot id is ${response.dbSnapshot?.dbiResourceId}")
    }
}

// Waits until the database instance is available.
suspend fun waitForDbInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
```

```
    var instanceReady = false
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")

    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }
    var endpoint = ""
    while (!instanceReady) {
        RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        endpoint = instance.endpoint?.address.toString()
                        instanceReady = true
                    } else {
                        print(".")
                        delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
    }
    println("Database instance is available! The connection endpoint is $endpoint")
}

// Create a database instance and return the ARN of the database.
suspend fun createDatabaseInstance(
    dbGroupNameVal: String?,
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbNameVal: String?,
    masterUsernameVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
): String? {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            allocatedStorage = 100
            dbName = dbNameVal
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupNameVal
```

```
            engine = "mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = "db.t3.micro"
            engineVersion = "8.0.35"
            storageType = "gp2"
            masterUsername = masterUsernameVal
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
        return response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn
    }
}

// Get a list of micro instances.
suspend fun getMicroInstances() {
    val dbInstanceOptionsRequest =
        DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptionsRequest {
            engine = "mysql"
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(dbInstanceOptionsRequest)
        val orderableDBInstances = response.orderableDbInstanceOptions
        if (orderableDBInstances != null) {
            for (dbInstanceOption in orderableDBInstances) {
                println("The engine version is ${dbInstanceOption.engineVersion}")
                println("The engine description is ${dbInstanceOption.engine}")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Get a list of allowed engine versions.
suspend fun getAllowedEngines(dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?) {
    val versionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            engine = "mysql"
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(versionsRequest)
        val dbEngines: List<DbEngineVersion>? = response.dbEngineVersions
```

```
        if (dbEngines != null) {
            for (dbEngine in dbEngines) {
                println("The engine version is ${dbEngine.engineVersion}")
                println("The engine description is ${dbEngine.dbEngineDescription}")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Modify the auto_increment_offset parameter.
suspend fun modifyDBParas(dbGroupName: String) {
    val parameter1 =
        Parameter {
            parameterName = "auto_increment_offset"
            applyMethod = ApplyMethod.Immediate
            parameterValue = "5"
        }

    val paraList: ArrayList<Parameter> = ArrayList()
    paraList.add(parameter1)
    val groupRequest =
        ModifyDbParameterGroupRequest {
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            parameters = paraList
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.modifyDbParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The parameter group ${response.dbParameterGroupName} was
 successfully modified")
    }
}

// Retrieve parameters in the group.
suspend fun describeDbParameters(
    dbGroupName: String?,
    flag: Int,
) {
    val dbParameterGroupsRequest: DescribeDbParametersRequest
    dbParameterGroupsRequest =
        if (flag == 0) {
            DescribeDbParametersRequest {
                dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            }
```

```
        } else {
            DescribeDbParametersRequest {
                dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
                source = "user"
            }
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbParameters(dbParameterGroupsRequest)
        val dbParameters: List<Parameter>? = response.parameters
        var paraName: String
        if (dbParameters != null) {
            for (para in dbParameters) {
                // Only print out information about either auto_increment_offset or
 auto_increment_increment.
                paraName = para.parameterName.toString()
                if (paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_offset") == 0 ||
 paraName.compareTo("auto_increment_increment ") == 0) {
                    println("*** The parameter name is  $paraName")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter value is
 ${para.parameterValue}")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter data type is
 ${para.dataType}")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter description is
 ${para.description}")
                    System.out.println("*** The parameter allowed values  is
 ${para.allowedValues}")
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun describeDbParameterGroups(dbGroupName: String?) {
    val groupsRequest =
        DescribeDbParameterGroupsRequest {
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            maxRecords = 20
        }
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbParameterGroups(groupsRequest)
        val groups = response.dbParameterGroups
        if (groups != null) {
            for (group in groups) {
                println("The group name is ${group.dbParameterGroupName}")
```

```
                println("The group description is ${group.description}")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Create a parameter group.
suspend fun createDBParameterGroup(
    dbGroupName: String?,
    dbParameterGroupFamilyVal: String?,
) {
    val groupRequest =
        CreateDbParameterGroupRequest {
            dbParameterGroupName = dbGroupName
            dbParameterGroupFamily = dbParameterGroupFamilyVal
            description = "Created by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbParameterGroup(groupRequest)
        println("The group name is
 ${response.dbParameterGroup?.dbParameterGroupName}")
    }
}

// Returns a list of the available DB engines.
suspend fun describeDBEngines() {
    val engineVersionsRequest =
        DescribeDbEngineVersionsRequest {
            defaultOnly = true
            engine = "mysql"
            maxRecords = 20
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbEngineVersions(engineVersionsRequest)
        val engines: List<DbEngineVersion>? = response.dbEngineVersions

        // Get all DbEngineVersion objects.
        if (engines != null) {
            for (engineOb in engines) {
                println("The name of the DB parameter group family for the database
 engine is ${engineOb.dbParameterGroupFamily}.")
                println("The name of the database engine ${engineOb.engine}.")
```

```
                println("The version number of the database engine
 ${engineOb.engineVersion}")
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun getSecretValues(secretName: String?): String? {
    val valueRequest =
        GetSecretValueRequest {
            secretId = secretName
        }

    SecretsManagerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use
 { secretsClient ->
        val valueResponse = secretsClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest)
        return valueResponse.secretString
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createDatabaseInstance(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    dbNamedbVal: String?,
    masterUsernameVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
) {
    val instanceRequest =
        CreateDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            allocatedStorage = 100
            dbName = dbNamedbVal
            engine = "mysql"
            dbInstanceClass = "db.t3.micro" // Use a supported instance class
            engineVersion = "8.0.39" // Use a supported engine version
            storageType = "gp2"
            masterUsername = masterUsernameVal
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.createDbInstance(instanceRequest)
        print("The status is ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}

// Waits until the database instance is available.
suspend fun waitForInstanceReady(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    val sleepTime: Long = 20
    var instanceReady = false
```

```
    var instanceReadyStr: String
    println("Waiting for instance to become available.")

    val instanceRequest =
        DescribeDbInstancesRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        while (!instanceReady) {
            val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(instanceRequest)
            val instanceList = response.dbInstances
            if (instanceList != null) {
                for (instance in instanceList) {
                    instanceReadyStr = instance.dbInstanceStatus.toString()
                    if (instanceReadyStr.contains("available")) {
                        instanceReady = true
                    } else {
                        println("...$instanceReadyStr")
                        delay(sleepTime * 1000)
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        println("Database instance is available!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteDatabaseInstance(dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?) {
    val deleteDbInstanceRequest =
        DeleteDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            deleteAutomatedBackups = true
            skipFinalSnapshot = true
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.deleteDbInstance(deleteDbInstanceRequest)
        print("The status of the database is
 ${response.dbInstance?.dbInstanceStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAccountAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAccountAttributes`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getAccountAttributes() {
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response =
 rdsClient.describeAccountAttributes(DescribeAccountAttributesRequest {})
        response.accountQuotas?.forEach { quotas ->
            val response = response.accountQuotas
            println("Name is: ${quotas.accountQuotaName}")
            println("Max value is ${quotas.max}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeInstances() {
    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val response = rdsClient.describeDbInstances(DescribeDbInstancesRequest {})
        response.dbInstances?.forEach { instance ->
            println("Instance Identifier is ${instance.dbInstanceIdentifier}")
            println("The Engine is ${instance.engine}")
            println("Connection endpoint is ${instance.endpoint?.address}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ModifyDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBInstance`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun updateIntance(
    dbInstanceIdentifierVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
) {
    val request =
        ModifyDbInstanceRequest {
            dbInstanceIdentifier = dbInstanceIdentifierVal
            publiclyAccessible = true
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
        }

    RdsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { rdsClient ->
        val instanceResponse = rdsClient.modifyDbInstance(request)
        println("The ARN of the modified database is
 ${instanceResponse.dbInstance?.dbInstanceArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Redshift.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create the cluster.

```
suspend fun createCluster(
    clusterId: String?,
    masterUsernameVal: String?,
    masterUserPasswordVal: String?,
) {
    val clusterRequest =
        CreateClusterRequest {
            clusterIdentifier = clusterId
            availabilityZone = "us-east-1a"
            masterUsername = masterUsernameVal
            masterUserPassword = masterUserPasswordVal
            nodeType = "ra3.4xlarge"
            publiclyAccessible = true
            numberOfNodes = 2
        }

    RedshiftClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { redshiftClient ->
        val clusterResponse = redshiftClient.createCluster(clusterRequest)
        println("Created cluster ${clusterResponse.cluster?.clusterIdentifier}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete the cluster.

```
suspend fun deleteRedshiftCluster(clusterId: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteClusterRequest {
            clusterIdentifier = clusterId
            skipFinalClusterSnapshot = true
        }

    RedshiftClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { redshiftClient ->
        val response = redshiftClient.deleteCluster(request)
        println("The status is ${response.cluster?.clusterStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Describe the cluster.

```
suspend fun describeRedshiftClusters() {
```

```
    RedshiftClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { redshiftClient ->
        val clusterResponse =
 redshiftClient.describeClusters(DescribeClustersRequest {})
        val clusterList = clusterResponse.clusters

        if (clusterList != null) {
            for (cluster in clusterList) {
                println("Cluster database name is ${cluster.dbName}")
                println("Cluster status is ${cluster.clusterStatus}")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ModifyCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyCluster`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Modify a cluster.

```
suspend fun modifyCluster(clusterId: String?) {
    val modifyClusterRequest =
        ModifyClusterRequest {
            clusterIdentifier = clusterId
            preferredMaintenanceWindow = "wed:07:30-wed:08:00"
        }

    RedshiftClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { redshiftClient ->
        val clusterResponse = redshiftClient.modifyCluster(modifyClusterRequest)
        println(
```

```
            "The modified cluster was successfully modified and has
 ${clusterResponse.cluster?.preferredMaintenanceWindow} as the maintenance window",
        )
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a web application to track Amazon Redshift data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items using an Amazon Redshift database.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Rekognition.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CompareFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `CompareFaces`.

For more information, see Comparing faces in images.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun compareTwoFaces(
    similarityThresholdVal: Float,
    sourceImageVal: String,
    targetImageVal: String,
) {
    val sourceBytes = (File(sourceImageVal).readBytes())
    val targetBytes = (File(targetImageVal).readBytes())

    // Create an Image object for the source image.
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = sourceBytes
        }

    val tarImage =
        Image {
            bytes = targetBytes
```

```
        }

    val facesRequest =
        CompareFacesRequest {
            sourceImage = souImage
            targetImage = tarImage
            similarityThreshold = similarityThresholdVal
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->

        val compareFacesResult = rekClient.compareFaces(facesRequest)
        val faceDetails = compareFacesResult.faceMatches

        if (faceDetails != null) {
            for (match: CompareFacesMatch in faceDetails) {
                val face = match.face
                val position = face?.boundingBox
                if (position != null) {
                    println("Face at ${position.left} ${position.top} matches with
 ${face.confidence} % confidence.")
                }
            }
        }

        val uncompared = compareFacesResult.unmatchedFaces
        if (uncompared != null) {
            println("There was ${uncompared.size} face(s) that did not match")
        }

        println("Source image rotation:
 ${compareFacesResult.sourceImageOrientationCorrection}")
        println("target image rotation:
 ${compareFacesResult.targetImageOrientationCorrection}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCollection`.

For more information, see Creating a collection.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createMyCollection(collectionIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        CreateCollectionRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.createCollection(request)
        println("Collection ARN is ${response.collectionArn}")
        println("Status code is ${response.statusCode}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCollection`.

For more information, see Deleting a collection.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMyCollection(collectionIdVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteCollectionRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.deleteCollection(request)
        println("The collectionId status is ${response.statusCode}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFaces`.

For more information, see Deleting faces from a collection.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteFacesCollection(
    collectionIdVal: String?,
    faceIdVal: String,
) {
    val deleteFacesRequest =
        DeleteFacesRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
            faceIds = listOf(faceIdVal)
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        rekClient.deleteFaces(deleteFacesRequest)
```

```
        println("$faceIdVal was deleted from the collection")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCollection`.

For more information, see Describing a collection.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeColl(collectionName: String) {
    val request =
        DescribeCollectionRequest {
            collectionId = collectionName
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.describeCollection(request)
        println("The collection Arn is ${response.collectionArn}")
        println("The collection contains this many faces ${response.faceCount}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DetectFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectFaces`.

For more information, see Detecting faces in an image.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectFacesinImage(sourceImage: String?) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        DetectFacesRequest {
            attributes = listOf(Attribute.All)
            image = souImage
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectFaces(request)
        response.faceDetails?.forEach { face ->
            val ageRange = face.ageRange
            println("The detected face is estimated to be between ${ageRange?.low}
 and ${ageRange?.high} years old.")
            println("There is a smile ${face.smile?.value}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DetectLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectImageLabels(sourceImage: String) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }
    val request =
        DetectLabelsRequest {
            image = souImage
            maxLabels = 10
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectLabels(request)
        response.labels?.forEach { label ->
            println("${label.name} : ${label.confidence}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DetectModerationLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectModerationLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting inappropriate images.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectModLabels(sourceImage: String) {
    val myImage =
        Image {
            this.bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        DetectModerationLabelsRequest {
            image = myImage
            minConfidence = 60f
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectModerationLabels(request)
        response.moderationLabels?.forEach { label ->
            println("Label: ${label.name} - Confidence: ${label.confidence} %
 Parent: ${label.parentName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DetectText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectText`.

For more information, see Detecting text in an image.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun detectTextLabels(sourceImage: String?) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        DetectTextRequest {
            image = souImage
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.detectText(request)
        response.textDetections?.forEach { text ->
            println("Detected: ${text.detectedText}")
            println("Confidence: ${text.confidence}")
            println("Id: ${text.id}")
            println("Parent Id:  ${text.parentId}")
            println("Type: ${text.type}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`IndexFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `IndexFaces`.

For more information, see Adding faces to a collection.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addToCollection(
    collectionIdVal: String?,
    sourceImage: String,
) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        IndexFacesRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
            image = souImage
            maxFaces = 1
            qualityFilter = QualityFilter.Auto
            detectionAttributes = listOf(Attribute.Default)
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val facesResponse = rekClient.indexFaces(request)

        // Display the results.
        println("Results for the image")
        println("\n Faces indexed:")
        facesResponse.faceRecords?.forEach { faceRecord ->
            println("Face ID: ${faceRecord.face?.faceId}")
            println("Location: ${faceRecord.faceDetail?.boundingBox}")
        }

        println("Faces not indexed:")
        facesResponse.unindexedFaces?.forEach { unindexedFace ->
            println("Location: ${unindexedFace.faceDetail?.boundingBox}")
            println("Reasons:")
```

```
            unindexedFace.reasons?.forEach { reason ->
                println("Reason:  $reason")
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListCollections`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCollections`.

For more information, see Listing collections.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllCollections() {
    val request =
        ListCollectionsRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.listCollections(request)
        response.collectionIds?.forEach { resultId ->
            println(resultId)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFaces`.

For more information, see Listing faces in a collection.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listFacesCollection(collectionIdVal: String?) {
    val request =
        ListFacesRequest {
            collectionId = collectionIdVal
            maxResults = 10
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.listFaces(request)
        response.faces?.forEach { face ->
            println("Confidence level there is a face: ${face.confidence}")
            println("The face Id value is ${face.faceId}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`RecognizeCelebrities`

The following code example shows how to use `RecognizeCelebrities`.

For more information, see Recognizing celebrities in an image.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun recognizeAllCelebrities(sourceImage: String?) {
    val souImage =
        Image {
            bytes = (File(sourceImage).readBytes())
        }

    val request =
        RecognizeCelebritiesRequest {
            image = souImage
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val response = rekClient.recognizeCelebrities(request)
        response.celebrityFaces?.forEach { celebrity ->
            println("Celebrity recognized: ${celebrity.name}")
            println("Celebrity ID:${celebrity.id}")
            println("Further information (if available):")
            celebrity.urls?.forEach { url ->
                println(url)
            }
        }
        println("${response.unrecognizedFaces?.size} face(s) were unrecognized.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect information in videos

The following code example shows how to:

- Start Amazon Rekognition jobs to detect elements like people, objects, and text in videos.
- Check job status until jobs finish.
- Output the list of elements detected by each job.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detect faces in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
suspend fun startFaceDetection(
    channelVal: NotificationChannel?,
    bucketVal: String,
    videoVal: String,
) {
    val s3Obj =
        S3Object {
            bucket = bucketVal
            name = videoVal
        }
    val vidOb =
        Video {
            s3Object = s3Obj
        }

    val request =
        StartFaceDetectionRequest {
            jobTag = "Faces"
            faceAttributes = FaceAttributes.All
            notificationChannel = channelVal
            video = vidOb
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val startLabelDetectionResult = rekClient.startFaceDetection(request)
        startJobId = startLabelDetectionResult.jobId.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun getFaceResults() {
    var finished = false
    var status: String
    var yy = 0
```

```
    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        var response: GetFaceDetectionResponse? = null

        val recognitionRequest =
            GetFaceDetectionRequest {
                jobId = startJobId
                maxResults = 10
            }

        // Wait until the job succeeds.
        while (!finished) {
            response = rekClient.getFaceDetection(recognitionRequest)
            status = response.jobStatus.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                finished = true
            } else {
                println("$yy status is: $status")
                delay(1000)
            }
            yy++
        }

        // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
        val videoMetaData = response?.videoMetadata
        println("Format: ${videoMetaData?.format}")
        println("Codec: ${videoMetaData?.codec}")
        println("Duration: ${videoMetaData?.durationMillis}")
        println("FrameRate: ${videoMetaData?.frameRate}")

        // Show face information.
        response?.faces?.forEach { face ->
            println("Age: ${face.face?.ageRange}")
            println("Face: ${face.face?.beard}")
            println("Eye glasses: ${face?.face?.eyeglasses}")
            println("Mustache: ${face.face?.mustache}")
            println("Smile: ${face.face?.smile}")
        }
    }
}
```

Detect inappropriate or offensive content in a video stored in an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
suspend fun startModerationDetection(
    channel: NotificationChannel?,
    bucketVal: String?,
    videoVal: String?,
) {
    val s3Obj =
        S3Object {
            bucket = bucketVal
            name = videoVal
        }
    val vidOb =
        Video {
            s3Object = s3Obj
        }
    val request =
        StartContentModerationRequest {
            jobTag = "Moderation"
            notificationChannel = channel
            video = vidOb
        }

    RekognitionClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        val startModDetectionResult = rekClient.startContentModeration(request)
        startJobId = startModDetectionResult.jobId.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun getModResults() {
    var finished = false
    var status: String
    var yy = 0
    RekognitionClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { rekClient ->
        var modDetectionResponse: GetContentModerationResponse? = null

        val modRequest =
            GetContentModerationRequest {
                jobId = startJobId
                maxResults = 10
            }

        // Wait until the job succeeds.
        while (!finished) {
            modDetectionResponse = rekClient.getContentModeration(modRequest)
```

```
            status = modDetectionResponse.jobStatus.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                finished = true
            } else {
                println("$yy status is: $status")
                delay(1000)
            }
            yy++
        }

        // Proceed when the job is done - otherwise VideoMetadata is null.
        val videoMetaData = modDetectionResponse?.videoMetadata
        println("Format: ${videoMetaData?.format}")
        println("Codec: ${videoMetaData?.codec}")
        println("Duration: ${videoMetaData?.durationMillis}")
        println("FrameRate: ${videoMetaData?.frameRate}")

        modDetectionResponse?.moderationLabels?.forEach { mod ->
            val seconds: Long = mod.timestamp / 1000
            print("Mod label: $seconds ")
            println(mod.moderationLabel)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - GetCelebrityRecognition
  - GetContentModeration
  - GetLabelDetection
  - GetPersonTracking
  - GetSegmentDetection
  - GetTextDetection
  - StartCelebrityRecognition
  - StartContentModeration
  - StartLabelDetection
  - StartPersonTracking
  - StartSegmentDetection

- StartTextDetection

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Kotlin API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Route 53 domain registration examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Route 53 domain registration.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Route 53 domain registration

The following code examples show how to get started using Route 53 domain registration.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
           <domainType>

       Where:
           domainType - The domain type (for example, com).
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val domainType = args[0]
    println("Invokes ListPrices using a Paginated method.")
    listPricesPaginated(domainType)
}

suspend fun listPricesPaginated(domainType: String) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            maxItems = 10
            tld = domainType
        }
```

```
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List current domains, and list operations in the past year.
- View billing for the past year, and view prices for domain types.
- Get domain suggestions.
- Check domain availability and transferability.
- Optionally, request a domain registration.
- Get an operation detail.
- Optionally, get a domain detail.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This Kotlin code example performs the following operations:

1. List current domains.
2. List operations in the past year.
3. View billing for the account in the past year.
4. View prices for domain types.
5. Get domain suggestions.
6. Check domain availability.
7. Check domain transferability.
8. Request a domain registration.
9. Get operation details.
10. Optionally, get domain details.
 */

val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
        Usage:
            <domainType> <phoneNumber> <email> <domainSuggestion> <firstName>
 <lastName> <city>
        Where:
           domainType - The domain type (for example, com).
           phoneNumber - The phone number to use (for example, +1.2065550100)
           email - The email address to use.
           domainSuggestion - The domain suggestion (for example, findmy.example).
```

```
            firstName - The first name to use to register a domain.
            lastName -  The last name to use to register a domain.
            city - The city to use to register a domain.
    """

    if (args.size != 7) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val domainType = args[0]
    val phoneNumber = args[1]
    val email = args[2]
    val domainSuggestion = args[3]
    val firstName = args[4]
    val lastName = args[5]
    val city = args[6]

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon Route 53 domains example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("1. List current domains.")
    listDomains()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List operations in the past year.")
    listOperations()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. View billing for the account in the past year.")
    listBillingRecords()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. View prices for domain types.")
    listAllPrices(domainType)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Get domain suggestions.")
```

```
    listDomainSuggestions(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Check domain availability.")
    checkDomainAvailability(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Check domain transferability.")
    checkDomainTransferability(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Request a domain registration.")
    val opId = requestDomainRegistration(domainSuggestion, phoneNumber, email,
 firstName, lastName, city)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Get operation details.")
    getOperationalDetail(opId)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Get domain details.")
    println("Note: You must have a registered domain to get details.")
    println("Otherwise an exception is thrown that states ")
    println("Domain xxxxxxx not found in xxxxxxx account.")
    getDomainDetails(domainSuggestion)
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun getDomainDetails(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetDomainDetailRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest)
        println("The contact first name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.firstName}")
        println("The contact last name is ${response.registrantContact?.lastName}")
```

```
        println("The contact org name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.organizationName}")
    }
}

suspend fun getOperationalDetail(opId: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetOperationDetailRequest {
            operationId = opId
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest)
        println("Operation detail message is ${response.message}")
    }
}

suspend fun requestDomainRegistration(
    domainSuggestion: String?,
    phoneNumberVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
    firstNameVal: String?,
    lastNameVal: String?,
    cityVal: String?,
): String? {
    val contactDetail =
        ContactDetail {
            contactType = ContactType.Company
            state = "LA"
            countryCode = CountryCode.In
            email = emailVal
            firstName = firstNameVal
            lastName = lastNameVal
            city = cityVal
            phoneNumber = phoneNumberVal
            organizationName = "My Org"
            addressLine1 = "My Address"
            zipCode = "123 123"
        }

    val domainRequest =
        RegisterDomainRequest {
            adminContact = contactDetail
            registrantContact = contactDetail
```

```
            techContact = contactDetail
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            autoRenew = true
            durationInYears = 1
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest)
        println("Registration requested. Operation Id: ${response.operationId}")
        return response.operationId
    }
}

suspend fun checkDomainTransferability(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val transferabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest)
        println("Transferability: ${response.transferability?.transferable}")
    }
}

suspend fun checkDomainAvailability(domainSuggestion: String) {
    val availabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest)
        println("$domainSuggestion is ${response.availability}")
    }
}

suspend fun listDomainSuggestions(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val suggestionsRequest =
        GetDomainSuggestionsRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
```

```
            suggestionCount = 5
            onlyAvailable = true
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest)
        response.suggestionsList?.forEach { suggestion ->
            println("Suggestion Name: ${suggestion.domainName}")
            println("Availability: ${suggestion.availability}")
            println(" ")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun listAllPrices(domainType: String?) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            tld = domainType
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listBillingRecords() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    val localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    val localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
```

```
    val myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val timeStart: Instant? = myStartTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val timeEnd: Instant? = myEndTime?.let { Instant(it) }

    val viewBillingRequest =
        ViewBillingRequest {
            start = timeStart
            end = timeEnd
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .viewBillingPaginated(viewBillingRequest)
            .transform { it.billingRecords?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { billing ->
                println("Bill Date: ${billing.billDate}")
                println("Operation: ${billing.operation}")
                println("Price: ${billing.price}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listOperations() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    var localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myTime: java.time.Instant? = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val time2: Instant? = myTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val operationsRequest =
        ListOperationsRequest {
            submittedSince = time2
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listOperationsPaginated(operationsRequest)
            .transform { it.operations?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("Operation Id: ${content.operationId}")
```

```
                println("Status: ${content.status}")
                println("Date: ${content.submittedDate}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listDomains() {
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listDomainsPaginated(ListDomainsRequest {})
            .transform { it.domains?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("The domain name is ${content.domainName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CheckDomainAvailability
  - CheckDomainTransferability
  - GetDomainDetail
  - GetDomainSuggestions
  - GetOperationDetail
  - ListDomains
  - ListOperations
  - ListPrices
  - RegisterDomain
  - ViewBilling

Actions

`CheckDomainAvailability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainAvailability`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkDomainAvailability(domainSuggestion: String) {
    val availabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainAvailabilityRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainAvailability(availabilityRequest)
        println("$domainSuggestion is ${response.availability}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainAvailability in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CheckDomainTransferability`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckDomainTransferability`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun checkDomainTransferability(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val transferabilityRequest =
        CheckDomainTransferabilityRequest {
```

```
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response =
 route53DomainsClient.checkDomainTransferability(transferabilityRequest)
        println("Transferability: ${response.transferability?.transferable}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CheckDomainTransferability in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetDomainDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainDetail`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getDomainDetails(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetDomainDetailRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getDomainDetail(detailRequest)
        println("The contact first name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.firstName}")
        println("The contact last name is ${response.registrantContact?.lastName}")
        println("The contact org name is
 ${response.registrantContact?.organizationName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDomainDetail in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetDomainSuggestions`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDomainSuggestions`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listDomainSuggestions(domainSuggestion: String?) {
    val suggestionsRequest =
        GetDomainSuggestionsRequest {
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            suggestionCount = 5
            onlyAvailable = true
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getDomainSuggestions(suggestionsRequest)
        response.suggestionsList?.forEach { suggestion ->
            println("Suggestion Name: ${suggestion.domainName}")
            println("Availability: ${suggestion.availability}")
            println(" ")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetDomainSuggestions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetOperationDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOperationDetail`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getOperationalDetail(opId: String?) {
    val detailRequest =
        GetOperationDetailRequest {
            operationId = opId
        }
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.getOperationDetail(detailRequest)
        println("Operation detail message is ${response.message}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetOperationDetail in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListDomains`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDomains`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listDomains() {
    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listDomainsPaginated(ListDomainsRequest {})
```

```
            .transform { it.domains?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("The domain name is ${content.domainName}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListDomains in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListOperations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOperations`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listOperations() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    var localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    localDateTime = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myTime: java.time.Instant? = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val time2: Instant? = myTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val operationsRequest =
        ListOperationsRequest {
            submittedSince = time2
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listOperationsPaginated(operationsRequest)
            .transform { it.operations?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { content ->
                println("Operation Id: ${content.operationId}")
```

```
                println("Status: ${content.status}")
                println("Date: ${content.submittedDate}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListOperations in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListPrices`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPrices`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllPrices(domainType: String?) {
    val pricesRequest =
        ListPricesRequest {
            tld = domainType
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .listPricesPaginated(pricesRequest)
            .transform { it.prices?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { pr ->
                println("Registration: ${pr.registrationPrice}
 ${pr.registrationPrice?.currency}")
                println("Renewal: ${pr.renewalPrice?.price}
 ${pr.renewalPrice?.currency}")
                println("Transfer: ${pr.transferPrice?.price}
 ${pr.transferPrice?.currency}")
                println("Restoration: ${pr.restorationPrice?.price}
 ${pr.restorationPrice?.currency}")
            }
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListPrices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`RegisterDomain`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterDomain`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun requestDomainRegistration(
    domainSuggestion: String?,
    phoneNumberVal: String?,
    emailVal: String?,
    firstNameVal: String?,
    lastNameVal: String?,
    cityVal: String?,
): String? {
    val contactDetail =
        ContactDetail {
            contactType = ContactType.Company
            state = "LA"
            countryCode = CountryCode.In
            email = emailVal
            firstName = firstNameVal
            lastName = lastNameVal
            city = cityVal
            phoneNumber = phoneNumberVal
            organizationName = "My Org"
            addressLine1 = "My Address"
            zipCode = "123 123"
        }

    val domainRequest =
```

```
        RegisterDomainRequest {
            adminContact = contactDetail
            registrantContact = contactDetail
            techContact = contactDetail
            domainName = domainSuggestion
            autoRenew = true
            durationInYears = 1
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        val response = route53DomainsClient.registerDomain(domainRequest)
        println("Registration requested. Operation Id: ${response.operationId}")
        return response.operationId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see RegisterDomain in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ViewBilling`

The following code example shows how to use `ViewBilling`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBillingRecords() {
    val currentDate = Date()
    val localDateTime =
 currentDate.toInstant().atZone(ZoneId.systemDefault()).toLocalDateTime()
    val zoneOffset = ZoneOffset.of("+01:00")
    val localDateTime2 = localDateTime.minusYears(1)
    val myStartTime = localDateTime2.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val myEndTime = localDateTime.toInstant(zoneOffset)
    val timeStart: Instant? = myStartTime?.let { Instant(it) }
    val timeEnd: Instant? = myEndTime?.let { Instant(it) }
```

```
    val viewBillingRequest =
        ViewBillingRequest {
            start = timeStart
            end = timeEnd
        }

    Route53DomainsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { route53DomainsClient ->
        route53DomainsClient
            .viewBillingPaginated(viewBillingRequest)
            .transform { it.billingRecords?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { billing ->
                println("Bill Date: ${billing.billDate}")
                println("Operation: ${billing.operation}")
                println("Price: ${billing.price}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ViewBilling in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <bucketName> <key> <objectPath> <savePath> <toBucket>

    Where:
        bucketName - The Amazon S3 bucket to create.
        key - The key to use.
        objectPath - The path where the file is located (for example, C:/AWS/
book2.pdf).
        savePath - The path where the file is saved after it's downloaded (for
 example, C:/AWS/book2.pdf).
        toBucket - An Amazon S3 bucket to where an object is copied to (for example,
 C:/AWS/book2.pdf).
        """
```

```
    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val bucketName = args[0]
    val key = args[1]
    val objectPath = args[2]
    val savePath = args[3]
    val toBucket = args[4]

    // Create an Amazon S3 bucket.
    createBucket(bucketName)

    // Update a local file to the Amazon S3 bucket.
    putObject(bucketName, key, objectPath)

    // Download the object to another local file.
    getObjectFromMrap(bucketName, key, savePath)

    // List all objects located in the Amazon S3 bucket.
    listBucketObs(bucketName)

    // Copy the object to another Amazon S3 bucket
    copyBucketOb(bucketName, key, toBucket)

    // Delete the object from the Amazon S3 bucket.
    deleteBucketObs(bucketName, key)

    // Delete the Amazon S3 bucket.
    deleteBucket(bucketName)
    println("All Amazon S3 operations were successfully performed")
}

suspend fun createBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        CreateBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
```

```
}

suspend fun putObject(
    bucketName: String,
    objectKey: String,
    objectPath: String,
) {
    val metadataVal = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    metadataVal["myVal"] = "test"

    val request =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = objectKey
            metadata = metadataVal
            this.body = Paths.get(objectPath).asByteStream()
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.putObject(request)
        println("Tag information is ${response.eTag}")
    }
}

suspend fun getObjectFromMrap(
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
    path: String,
) {
    val request =
        GetObjectRequest {
            key = keyName
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.getObject(request) { resp ->
            val myFile = File(path)
            resp.body?.writeToFile(myFile)
            println("Successfully read $keyName from $bucketName")
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun listBucketObs(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->

        val response = s3.listObjects(request)
        response.contents?.forEach { myObject ->
            println("The name of the key is ${myObject.key}")
            println("The owner is ${myObject.owner}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun copyBucketOb(
    fromBucket: String,
    objectKey: String,
    toBucket: String,
) {
    var encodedUrl = ""
    try {
        encodedUrl = URLEncoder.encode("$fromBucket/$objectKey",
 StandardCharsets.UTF_8.toString())
    } catch (e: UnsupportedEncodingException) {
        println("URL could not be encoded: " + e.message)
    }

    val request =
        CopyObjectRequest {
            copySource = encodedUrl
            bucket = toBucket
            key = objectKey
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.copyObject(request)
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucketObs(
    bucketName: String,
    objectName: String,
) {
```

```
    val objectId =
        ObjectIdentifier {
            key = objectName
        }

    val delOb =
        Delete {
            objects = listOf(objectId)
        }

    val request =
        DeleteObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            delete = delOb
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteObjects(request)
        println("$objectName was deleted from $bucketName")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucket(bucketName: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteBucket(request)
        println("The $bucketName was successfully deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2

- PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun copyBucketObject(
    fromBucket: String,
    objectKey: String,
    toBucket: String,
) {
    var encodedUrl = ""
    try {
        encodedUrl = URLEncoder.encode("$fromBucket/$objectKey",
 StandardCharsets.UTF_8.toString())
    } catch (e: UnsupportedEncodingException) {
        println("URL could not be encoded: " + e.message)
    }

    val request =
        CopyObjectRequest {
            copySource = encodedUrl
            bucket = toBucket
            key = objectKey
        }
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.copyObject(request)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createNewBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        CreateBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure the S3 control client to send request to the us-west-2 Region.

```
        suspend fun createS3ControlClient(): S3ControlClient {
            // Configure your S3ControlClient to send requests to US West (Oregon).
            val s3Control = S3ControlClient.fromEnvironment {
                region = "us-west-2"
            }
            return s3Control
        }
```

Create the Multi-Region Access Point.

```
    suspend fun createMrap(
        s3Control: S3ControlClient,
        accountIdParam: String,
        bucketName1: String,
        bucketName2: String,
        mrapName: String,
    ): String {
        println("Creating MRAP ...")
        val createMrapResponse: CreateMultiRegionAccessPointResponse =
            s3Control.createMultiRegionAccessPoint {
                accountId = accountIdParam
                clientToken = UUID.randomUUID().toString()
                details {
                    name = mrapName
                    regions = listOf(
                        Region {
                            bucket = bucketName1
                        },
                        Region {
                            bucket = bucketName2
                        },
                    )
                }
            }
        val requestToken: String? = createMrapResponse.requestTokenArn

        // Use the request token to check for the status of the
 CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint operation.
        if (requestToken != null) {
            waitForSucceededStatus(s3Control, requestToken, accountIdParam)
```

```
            println("MRAP created")
        }

        val getMrapResponse =
            s3Control.getMultiRegionAccessPoint(
                input = GetMultiRegionAccessPointRequest {
                    accountId = accountIdParam
                    name = mrapName
                },
            )
        val mrapAlias = getMrapResponse.accessPoint?.alias
        return "arn:aws:s3::$accountIdParam:accesspoint/$mrapAlias"
    }
```

Wait for the Multi-Region Access Point to become available.

```
        suspend fun waitForSucceededStatus(
            s3Control: S3ControlClient,
            requestToken: String,
            accountIdParam: String,
            timeBetweenChecks: Duration = 1.minutes,
        ) {
            var describeResponse: DescribeMultiRegionAccessPointOperationResponse
            describeResponse = s3Control.describeMultiRegionAccessPointOperation(
                input = DescribeMultiRegionAccessPointOperationRequest {
                    accountId = accountIdParam
                    requestTokenArn = requestToken
                },
            )

            var status: String? = describeResponse.asyncOperation?.requestStatus
            while (status != "SUCCEEDED") {
                delay(timeBetweenChecks)
                describeResponse =
s3Control.describeMultiRegionAccessPointOperation(
                    input = DescribeMultiRegionAccessPointOperationRequest {
                        accountId = accountIdParam
                        requestTokenArn = requestToken
                    },
                )
                status = describeResponse.asyncOperation?.requestStatus
                println(status)
```

```
            }
        }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Kotlin developer guide.
- For API details, see CreateMultiRegionAccessPoint in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteS3BucketPolicy(bucketName: String?) {
    val request =
        DeleteBucketPolicyRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteBucketPolicy(request)
        println("Done!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteBucketObjects(
    bucketName: String,
    objectName: String,
) {
    val objectId =
        ObjectIdentifier {
            key = objectName
        }

    val delOb =
        Delete {
            objects = listOf(objectId)
        }

    val request =
        DeleteObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            delete = delOb
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteObjects(request)
        println("$objectName was deleted from $bucketName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getPolicy(bucketName: String): String? {
    println("Getting policy for bucket $bucketName")

    val request =
        GetBucketPolicyRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val policyRes = s3.getBucketPolicy(request)
        return policyRes.policy
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getObjectBytes(
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
```

```
    path: String,
) {
    val request =
        GetObjectRequest {
            key = keyName
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.getObject(request) { resp ->
            val myFile = File(path)
            resp.body?.writeToFile(myFile)
            println("Successfully read $keyName from $bucketName")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetObjectAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectAcl`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getBucketACL(
    objectKey: String,
    bucketName: String,
) {
    val request =
        GetObjectAclRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = objectKey
        }
```

```
    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.getObjectAcl(request)
        response.grants?.forEach { grant ->
            println("Grant permission is ${grant.permission}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBucketObjects(bucketName: String) {
    val request =
        ListObjectsRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.listObjects(request)
        response.contents?.forEach { myObject ->
            println("The name of the key is ${myObject.key}")
            println("The object is ${myObject.size?.let { calKb(it) }} KBs")
            println("The owner is ${myObject.owner}")
        }
    }
}

private fun calKb(intValue: Long): Long = intValue / 1024
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun setBucketAcl(
    bucketName: String,
    idVal: String,
) {
    val myGrant =
        Grantee {
            id = idVal
            type = Type.CanonicalUser
        }

    val ownerGrant =
        Grant {
            grantee = myGrant
            permission = Permission.FullControl
        }

    val grantList = mutableListOf<Grant>()
    grantList.add(ownerGrant)

    val ownerOb =
        Owner {
            id = idVal
        }

    val acl =
        AccessControlPolicy {
            owner = ownerOb
            grants = grantList
```

```
        }

    val request =
        PutBucketAclRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            accessControlPolicy = acl
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.putBucketAcl(request)
        println("An ACL was successfully set on $bucketName")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun putS3Object(
    bucketName: String,
    objectKey: String,
    objectPath: String,
) {
    val metadataVal = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
    metadataVal["myVal"] = "test"

    val request =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = objectKey
            metadata = metadataVal
```

```
            body = File(objectPath).asByteStream()
        }

    S3Client.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        val response = s3.putObject(request)
        println("Tag information is ${response.eTag}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a `GetObject` presigned request and use the URL to download an object.

```
suspend fun getObjectPresigned(
    s3: S3Client,
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
): String {
    // Create a GetObjectRequest.
    val unsignedRequest =
        GetObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = keyName
        }
```

```
    // Presign the GetObject request.
    val presignedRequest = s3.presignGetObject(unsignedRequest, 24.hours)

    // Use the URL from the presigned HttpRequest in a subsequent HTTP GET request
 to retrieve the object.
    val objectContents = URL(presignedRequest.url.toString()).readText()

    return objectContents
}
```

Create a `GetObject` presigned request with advanced options.

```
suspend fun getObjectPresignedMoreOptions(
    s3: S3Client,
    bucketName: String,
    keyName: String,
): HttpRequest {
    // Create a GetObjectRequest.
    val unsignedRequest =
        GetObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = keyName
        }

    // Presign the GetObject request.
    val presignedRequest =
        s3.presignGetObject(unsignedRequest, signer = CrtAwsSigner) {
            signingDate = Instant.now() + 12.hours // Presigned request can be used
 12 hours from now.
            algorithm = AwsSigningAlgorithm.SIGV4_ASYMMETRIC
            signatureType = AwsSignatureType.HTTP_REQUEST_VIA_QUERY_PARAMS
            expiresAfter = 8.hours // Presigned request expires 8 hours later.
        }
    return presignedRequest
}
```

Create a `PutObject` presigned request and use it to upload an object.

```
suspend fun putObjectPresigned(
    s3: S3Client,
    bucketName: String,
```

```
    keyName: String,
    content: String,
) {
    // Create a PutObjectRequest.
    val unsignedRequest =
        PutObjectRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
            key = keyName
        }

    // Presign the request.
    val presignedRequest = s3.presignPutObject(unsignedRequest, 24.hours)

    // Use the URL and any headers from the presigned HttpRequest in a subsequent
 HTTP PUT request to retrieve the object.
    // Create a PUT request using the OKHttpClient API.
    val putRequest =
        Request
            .Builder()
            .url(presignedRequest.url.toString())
            .apply {
                presignedRequest.headers.forEach { key, values ->
                    header(key, values.joinToString(", "))
                }
            }.put(content.toRequestBody())
            .build()

    val response = OkHttpClient().newCall(putRequest).execute()
    assert(response.isSuccessful)
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Kotlin developer guide.

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Kotlin API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Get an object from a Multi-Region Access Point

The following code example shows how to get an object from a Multi-Region Access Point.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Configure the S3 client to use the Asymmetric Sigv4 (Sigv4a) signing algorithm.

```
        suspend fun createS3Client(): S3Client {
            // Configure your S3Client to use the Asymmetric SigV4 (SigV4a) signing
algorithm.
            val sigV4aScheme = SigV4AsymmetricAuthScheme(DefaultAwsSigner)
            val s3 = S3Client.fromEnvironment {
                authSchemes = listOf(sigV4aScheme)
            }
            return s3
        }
```

Use the Multi-Region Access Point ARN instead of a bucket name to retrieve the object.

```
    suspend fun getObjectFromMrap(
        s3: S3Client,
        mrapArn: String,
        keyName: String,
    ): String? {
        val request = GetObjectRequest {
            bucket = mrapArn // Use the ARN instead of the bucket name for object
operations.
            key = keyName
        }

        var stringObj: String? = null
        s3.getObject(request) { resp ->
            stringObj = resp.body?.decodeToString()
            if (stringObj != null) {
                println("Successfully read $keyName from $mrapArn")
            }
        }
        return stringObj
```

```
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Kotlin developer guide.
- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello SageMaker AI

The following code examples show how to get started using SageMaker AI.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listBooks() {
    SageMakerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient -
>
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.listNotebookInstances(ListNotebookInstancesRequest {})
        response.notebookInstances?.forEach { item ->
```

```
            println("The notebook name is: ${item.notebookInstanceName}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreatePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePipeline`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
suspend fun setupPipeline(filePath: String?, roleArnVal: String?, functionArnVal:
 String?, pipelineNameVal: String?) {
    println("Setting up the pipeline.")
    val parser = JSONParser()

    // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
    FileReader(filePath).use { reader ->
        val obj: Any = parser.parse(reader)
        val jsonObject: JSONObject = obj as JSONObject
        val stepsArray: JSONArray = jsonObject.get("Steps") as JSONArray
        for (stepObj in stepsArray) {
            val step: JSONObject = stepObj as JSONObject
            if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
```

```
                step.put("FunctionArn", functionArnVal)
            }
        }
        println(jsonObject)

        // Create the pipeline.
        val pipelineRequest = CreatePipelineRequest {
            pipelineDescription = "Kotlin SDK example pipeline"
            roleArn = roleArnVal
            pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
            pipelineDefinition = jsonObject.toString()
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeletePipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePipeline`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
suspend fun deletePipeline(pipelineNameVal: String) {
    val pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest {
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest)
```

```
        println("*** Successfully deleted $pipelineNameVal")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribePipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePipelineExecution`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun waitForPipelineExecution(executionArn: String?) {
    var status: String
    var index = 0
    do {
        val pipelineExecutionRequest = DescribePipelineExecutionRequest {
            pipelineExecutionArn = executionArn
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            val response =
 sageMakerClient.describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatus.toString()
            println("$index. The status of the pipeline is $status")
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4)
            index++
        }
    } while ("Executing" == status)
    println("Pipeline finished with status $status")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribePipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

StartPipelineExecution

The following code example shows how to use StartPipelineExecution.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
suspend fun executePipeline(bucketName: String, queueUrl: String?, roleArn: String?,
 pipelineNameVal: String): String? {
    println("Starting pipeline execution.")
    val inputBucketLocation = "s3:///$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
    val output = "s3:///$bucketName/outputfiles/"

    val gson = GsonBuilder()
        .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
        .setPrettyPrinting()
        .create()

    // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
    val parameters: MutableList<Parameter> = java.util.ArrayList<Parameter>()

    val para1 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_execution_role"
        value = roleArn
    }
    val para2 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_queue_url"
        value = queueUrl
    }

    val inputJSON = """{
        "DataSourceConfig": {
        "S3Data": {
            "S3Uri": "s3:///$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
        },
        "Type": "S3_DATA"
        },
```

```
        "DocumentType": "CSV"
    }"""
    println(inputJSON)
    val para3 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_input_config"
        value = inputJSON
    }

    // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
    val jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data {
        s3Uri = output
    }

    val outputConfig = ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig {
        s3Data = jobS3Data
    }

    val gson4: String = gson.toJson(outputConfig)
    val para4: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_export_config"
        value = gson4
    }
    println("parameter_vej_export_config:" + gson.toJson(outputConfig))

    val para5JSON =
        "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig\":{\"XAttributeName\":
\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}"

    val para5: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config"
        value = para5JSON
    }

    parameters.add(para1)
    parameters.add(para2)
    parameters.add(para3)
    parameters.add(para4)
    parameters.add(para5)

    val pipelineExecutionRequest = StartPipelineExecutionRequest {
        pipelineExecutionDescription = "Created using Kotlin SDK"
        pipelineExecutionDisplayName = "$pipelineName-example-execution"
        pipelineParameters = parameters
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
```

```
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with geospatial jobs and pipelines

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up resources for a pipeline.
- Set up a pipeline that executes a geospatial job.
- Start a pipeline execution.
- Monitor the status of the execution.
- View the output of the pipeline.
- Clean up resources.

For more information, see Create and run SageMaker pipelines using AWS SDKs on Community.aws.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
val DASHES = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
private var eventSourceMapping = ""
```

```
suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
          <sageMakerRoleName> <lambdaRoleName> <functionName> <functionKey>
 <queueName> <bucketName> <bucketFunction> <lnglatData> <spatialPipelinePath>
 <pipelineName>

    Where:
        sageMakerRoleName - The name of the Amazon SageMaker role.
        lambdaRoleName - The name of the AWS Lambda role.
        functionName - The name of the AWS Lambda function (for
 example,SageMakerExampleFunction).
        functionKey - The name of the Amazon S3 key name that represents the Lambda
 function (for example, SageMakerLambda.zip).
        queueName - The name of the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
        bucketName - The name of the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 bucket.
        bucketFunction - The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the Lambda
 ZIP file.
        lnglatData - The file location of the latlongtest.csv file required for this
 use case.
        spatialPipelinePath - The file location of the GeoSpatialPipeline.json file
 required for this use case.
        pipelineName - The name of the pipeline to create (for example, sagemaker-
sdk-example-pipeline).
    """

    if (args.size != 10) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    val sageMakerRoleName = args[0]
    val lambdaRoleName = args[1]
    val functionKey = args[2]
    val functionName = args[3]
    val queueName = args[4]
    val bucketName = args[5]
    val bucketFunction = args[6]
    val lnglatData = args[7]
    val spatialPipelinePath = args[8]
    val pipelineName = args[9]
    val handlerName = "org.example.SageMakerLambdaFunction::handleRequest"
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the Amazon SageMaker pipeline example scenario.")
    println(
        """
         This example workflow will guide you through setting up and running an
         Amazon SageMaker pipeline. The pipeline uses an AWS Lambda function and an
         Amazon SQS Queue. It runs a vector enrichment reverse geocode job to
         reverse geocode addresses in an input file and store the results in an
export file.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("First, we will set up the roles, functions, and queue needed by the
SageMaker pipeline.")
    val lambdaRoleArn: String = checkLambdaRole(lambdaRoleName)
    val sageMakerRoleArn: String = checkSageMakerRole(sageMakerRoleName)
    val functionArn = checkFunction(functionName, bucketFunction, functionKey,
handlerName, lambdaRoleArn)
    val queueUrl = checkQueue(queueName, functionName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Setting up bucket $bucketName")
    if (!checkBucket(bucketName)) {
        setupBucket(bucketName)
        println("Put $lnglatData into $bucketName")
        val objectKey = "samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
        putS3Object(bucketName, objectKey, lnglatData)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Now we can create and run our pipeline.")
    setupPipeline(spatialPipelinePath, sageMakerRoleArn, functionArn, pipelineName)
    val pipelineExecutionARN = executePipeline(bucketName, queueUrl,
sageMakerRoleArn, pipelineName)
    println("The pipeline execution ARN value is $pipelineExecutionARN")
    waitForPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionARN)
    println("Wait 30 secs to get output results $bucketName")
    TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30)
    getOutputResults(bucketName)
```

```
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
             The pipeline has completed. To view the pipeline and runs in SageMaker
 Studio, follow these instructions:
             https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sagemaker/latest/dg/pipelines-studio.html
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("Do you want to delete the AWS resources used in this Workflow? (y/n)")
    val `in` = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val delResources = `in`.nextLine()
    if (delResources.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        println("Lets clean up the AWS resources. Wait 30 seconds")
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(30)
        deleteEventSourceMapping(functionName)
        deleteSQSQueue(queueName)
        listBucketObjects(bucketName)
        deleteBucket(bucketName)
        delLambdaFunction(functionName)
        deleteLambdaRole(lambdaRoleName)
        deleteSagemakerRole(sageMakerRoleName)
        deletePipeline(pipelineName)
    } else {
        println("The AWS Resources were not deleted!")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("SageMaker pipeline scenario is complete.")
    println(DASHES)
}

// Delete a SageMaker pipeline by name.
suspend fun deletePipeline(pipelineNameVal: String) {
    val pipelineRequest = DeletePipelineRequest {
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
```

```
        sageMakerClient.deletePipeline(pipelineRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $pipelineNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSagemakerRole(roleNameVal: String) {
    val sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies()
    IamClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { iam ->
        for (policy in sageMakerRolePolicies) {
            // First the policy needs to be detached.
            val rolePolicyRequest = DetachRolePolicyRequest {
                policyArn = policy
                roleName = roleNameVal
            }
            iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)
        }

        // Delete the role.
        val roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteLambdaRole(roleNameVal: String) {
    val lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies()
    IamClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { iam ->
        for (policy in lambdaRolePolicies) {
            // First the policy needs to be detached.
            val rolePolicyRequest = DetachRolePolicyRequest {
                policyArn = policy
                roleName = roleNameVal
            }
            iam.detachRolePolicy(rolePolicyRequest)
        }

        // Delete the role.
        val roleRequest = DeleteRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
        iam.deleteRole(roleRequest)
        println("*** Successfully deleted $roleNameVal")
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun delLambdaFunction(myFunctionName: String) {
    val request = DeleteFunctionRequest {
        functionName = myFunctionName
    }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { awsLambda ->
        awsLambda.deleteFunction(request)
        println("$myFunctionName was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucket(bucketName: String?) {
    val request = DeleteBucketRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
    }
    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.deleteBucket(request)
        println("The $bucketName was successfully deleted!")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteBucketObjects(bucketName: String, objectName: String?) {
    val toDelete = ArrayList<ObjectIdentifier>()
    val obId = ObjectIdentifier {
        key = objectName
    }
    toDelete.add(obId)
    val delOb = Delete {
        objects = toDelete
    }
    val dor = DeleteObjectsRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        delete = delOb
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.deleteObjects(dor)
        println("*** $bucketName objects were deleted.")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun listBucketObjects(bucketNameVal: String) {
    val listObjects = ListObjectsRequest {
        bucket = bucketNameVal
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        val res = s3Client.listObjects(listObjects)
        val objects = res.contents
        if (objects != null) {
            for (myValue in objects) {
                println("The name of the key is ${myValue.key}")
                deleteBucketObjects(bucketNameVal, myValue.key)
            }
        }
    }
}

// Delete the specific Amazon SQS queue.
suspend fun deleteSQSQueue(queueNameVal: String?) {
    val getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val urlVal = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl
        val deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = urlVal
        }
        sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest)
    }
}

// Delete the queue event mapping.
suspend fun deleteEventSourceMapping(functionNameVal: String) {
    if (eventSourceMapping.compareTo("") == 0) {
        LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
            val request = ListEventSourceMappingsRequest {
                functionName = functionNameVal
            }
            val response = lambdaClient.listEventSourceMappings(request)
            val eventList = response.eventSourceMappings
            if (eventList != null) {
                for (event in eventList) {
                    eventSourceMapping = event.uuid.toString()
```

```
                }
            }
        }
    }

    val eventSourceMappingRequest = DeleteEventSourceMappingRequest {
        uuid = eventSourceMapping
    }
    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
        lambdaClient.deleteEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest)
        println("The event mapping is deleted!")
    }
}

// Reads the objects in the S3 bucket and displays the values.
private suspend fun readObject(bucketName: String, keyVal: String?) {
    println("Output file contents: \n")
    val objectRequest = GetObjectRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        key = keyVal
    }
    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        s3Client.getObject(objectRequest) { resp ->
            val byteArray = resp.body?.toByteArray()
            val text = byteArray?.let { String(it, StandardCharsets.UTF_8) }
            println("Text output: $text")
        }
    }
}

// Display the results from the output directory.
suspend fun getOutputResults(bucketName: String?) {
    println("Getting output results $bucketName.")
    val listObjectsRequest = ListObjectsRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        prefix = "outputfiles/"
    }
    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
        val response = s3Client.listObjects(listObjectsRequest)
        val s3Objects: List<Object>? = response.contents
        if (s3Objects != null) {
            for (`object` in s3Objects) {
                if (bucketName != null) {
                    readObject(bucketName, (`object`.key))
```

```
                }
            }
        }
    }
}

suspend fun waitForPipelineExecution(executionArn: String?) {
    var status: String
    var index = 0
    do {
        val pipelineExecutionRequest = DescribePipelineExecutionRequest {
            pipelineExecutionArn = executionArn
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            val response =
 sageMakerClient.describePipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
            status = response.pipelineExecutionStatus.toString()
            println("$index. The status of the pipeline is $status")
            TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(4)
            index++
        }
    } while ("Executing" == status)
    println("Pipeline finished with status $status")
}

// Start a pipeline run with job configurations.
suspend fun executePipeline(bucketName: String, queueUrl: String?, roleArn: String?,
 pipelineNameVal: String): String? {
    println("Starting pipeline execution.")
    val inputBucketLocation = "s3:///$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
    val output = "s3:///$bucketName/outputfiles/"

    val gson = GsonBuilder()
        .setFieldNamingPolicy(FieldNamingPolicy.UPPER_CAMEL_CASE)
        .setPrettyPrinting()
        .create()

    // Set up all parameters required to start the pipeline.
    val parameters: MutableList<Parameter> = java.util.ArrayList<Parameter>()

    val para1 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_execution_role"
        value = roleArn
```

```
    }
    val para2 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_queue_url"
        value = queueUrl
    }

    val inputJSON = """{
        "DataSourceConfig": {
        "S3Data": {
            "S3Uri": "s3://$bucketName/samplefiles/latlongtest.csv"
        },
        "Type": "S3_DATA"
        },
        "DocumentType": "CSV"
    }"""
    println(inputJSON)
    val para3 = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_input_config"
        value = inputJSON
    }

    // Create an ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig object.
    val jobS3Data = VectorEnrichmentJobS3Data {
        s3Uri = output
    }

    val outputConfig = ExportVectorEnrichmentJobOutputConfig {
        s3Data = jobS3Data
    }

    val gson4: String = gson.toJson(outputConfig)
    val para4: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_vej_export_config"
        value = gson4
    }
    println("parameter_vej_export_config:" + gson.toJson(outputConfig))

    val para5JSON =
        "{\"MapMatchingConfig\":null,\"ReverseGeocodingConfig\":{\"XAttributeName\":
\"Longitude\",\"YAttributeName\":\"Latitude\"}}"

    val para5: Parameter = Parameter {
        name = "parameter_step_1_vej_config"
        value = para5JSON
```

```
    }

    parameters.add(para1)
    parameters.add(para2)
    parameters.add(para3)
    parameters.add(para4)
    parameters.add(para5)

    val pipelineExecutionRequest = StartPipelineExecutionRequest {
        pipelineExecutionDescription = "Created using Kotlin SDK"
        pipelineExecutionDisplayName = "$pipelineName-example-execution"
        pipelineParameters = parameters
        pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
    }

    SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
        val response =
 sageMakerClient.startPipelineExecution(pipelineExecutionRequest)
        return response.pipelineExecutionArn
    }
}

// Create a pipeline from the example pipeline JSON.
suspend fun setupPipeline(filePath: String?, roleArnVal: String?, functionArnVal:
 String?, pipelineNameVal: String?) {
    println("Setting up the pipeline.")
    val parser = JSONParser()

    // Read JSON and get pipeline definition.
    FileReader(filePath).use { reader ->
        val obj: Any = parser.parse(reader)
        val jsonObject: JSONObject = obj as JSONObject
        val stepsArray: JSONArray = jsonObject.get("Steps") as JSONArray
        for (stepObj in stepsArray) {
            val step: JSONObject = stepObj as JSONObject
            if (step.containsKey("FunctionArn")) {
                step.put("FunctionArn", functionArnVal)
            }
        }
        println(jsonObject)

        // Create the pipeline.
        val pipelineRequest = CreatePipelineRequest {
            pipelineDescription = "Kotlin SDK example pipeline"
```

```
            roleArn = roleArnVal
            pipelineName = pipelineNameVal
            pipelineDefinition = jsonObject.toString()
        }

        SageMakerClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sageMakerClient ->
            sageMakerClient.createPipeline(pipelineRequest)
        }
    }
}

suspend fun putS3Object(bucketName: String, objectKey: String, objectPath: String) {
    val request = PutObjectRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
        key = objectKey
        body = File(objectPath).asByteStream()
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.putObject(request)
        println("Successfully placed $objectKey into bucket $bucketName")
    }
}

suspend fun setupBucket(bucketName: String) {
    val request = CreateBucketRequest {
        bucket = bucketName
    }

    S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3 ->
        s3.createBucket(request)
        println("$bucketName is ready")
    }
}

suspend fun checkBucket(bucketName: String): Boolean {
    try {
        val headBucketRequest = HeadBucketRequest {
            bucket = bucketName
        }
        S3Client { region = "us-east-1" }.use { s3Client ->
            s3Client.headBucket(headBucketRequest)
            println("$bucketName exists")
            return true
```

```
        }
    } catch (e: S3Exception) {
        println("Bucket does not exist")
    }
    return false
}

// Connect the queue to the Lambda function as an event source.
suspend fun connectLambda(queueUrlVal: String?, lambdaNameVal: String?) {
    println("Connecting the Lambda function and queue for the pipeline.")
    var queueArn = ""

    // Specify the attributes to retrieve.
    val atts: MutableList<QueueAttributeName> = ArrayList()
    atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QueueArn)
    val attributesRequest = GetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributeNames = atts
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        val queueAtts = response.attributes
        if (queueAtts != null) {
            for ((key, value) in queueAtts) {
                println("Key = $key, Value = $value")
                queueArn = value
            }
        }
    }
    val eventSourceMappingRequest = CreateEventSourceMappingRequest {
        eventSourceArn = queueArn
        functionName = lambdaNameVal
    }
    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
        val response1 =
 lambdaClient.createEventSourceMapping(eventSourceMappingRequest)
        eventSourceMapping = response1.uuid.toString()
        println("The mapping between the event source and Lambda function was
 successful")
    }
}

// Set up the SQS queue to use with the pipeline.
```

```
suspend fun setupQueue(queueNameVal: String, lambdaNameVal: String): String {
    println("Setting up queue named $queueNameVal")
    val queueAtt: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    queueAtt.put("DelaySeconds", "5")
    queueAtt.put("ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds", "5")
    queueAtt.put("VisibilityTimeout", "300")

    val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
        attributes = queueAtt
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
        println("\nGet queue url")
        val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(GetQueueUrlRequest
 { queueName = queueNameVal })
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15)
        connectLambda(getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl, lambdaNameVal)
        println("Queue ready with Url " + getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl)
        return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl.toString()
    }
}

// Checks to see if the Amazon SQS queue exists. If not, this method creates a new
 queue
// and returns the ARN value.
suspend fun checkQueue(queueNameVal: String, lambdaNameVal: String): String? {
    println("Checking to see if the queue exists. If not, a new queue will be
 created for use in this workflow.")
    var queueUrl: String
    try {
        val request = GetQueueUrlRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { sqsClient ->
            val response = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(request)
            queueUrl = response.queueUrl.toString()
            println(queueUrl)
        }
    } catch (e: SqsException) {
        println(e.message + " A new queue will be created")
        queueUrl = setupQueue(queueNameVal, lambdaNameVal)
```

```
    }
    return queueUrl
}

suspend fun createNewFunction(myFunctionName: String, s3BucketName: String, myS3Key:
 String, myHandler: String, myRole: String): String {
    val functionCode = FunctionCode {
        s3Bucket = s3BucketName
        s3Key = myS3Key
    }

    val request = CreateFunctionRequest {
        functionName = myFunctionName
        code = functionCode
        description = "Created by the Lambda Kotlin API"
        handler = myHandler
        role = myRole
        runtime = Runtime.Java11
        memorySize = 1024
        timeout = 200
    }

    LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { awsLambda ->
        val functionResponse = awsLambda.createFunction(request)
        awsLambda.waitUntilFunctionActive {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        println("${functionResponse.functionArn} was created")
        return functionResponse.functionArn.toString()
    }
}

suspend fun checkFunction(myFunctionName: String, s3BucketName: String, myS3Key:
 String, myHandler: String, myRole: String): String {
    println("Checking to see if the function exists. If not, a new AWS Lambda
 function will be created for use in this workflow.")
    var functionArn: String
    try {
        // Does this function already exist.
        val functionRequest = GetFunctionRequest {
            functionName = myFunctionName
        }
        LambdaClient { region = "us-west-2" }.use { lambdaClient ->
            val response = lambdaClient.getFunction(functionRequest)
```

```
            functionArn = response.configuration?.functionArn.toString()
            println("$functionArn exists")
        }
    } catch (e: LambdaException) {
        println(e.message + " A new function will be created")
        functionArn = createNewFunction(myFunctionName, s3BucketName, myS3Key,
 myHandler, myRole)
    }
    return functionArn
}

// Checks to see if the SageMaker role exists. If not, this method creates it.
suspend fun checkSageMakerRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    println("Checking to see if the role exists. If not, a new role will be created
 for AWS SageMaker to use.")
    var roleArn: String
    try {
        val roleRequest = GetRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
        }
        IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
            val response = iamClient.getRole(roleRequest)
            roleArn = response.role?.arn.toString()
            println(roleArn)
        }
    } catch (e: IamException) {
        println(e.message + " A new role will be created")
        roleArn = createSageMakerRole(roleNameVal)
    }
    return roleArn
}

suspend fun createSageMakerRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    val sageMakerRolePolicies = getSageMakerRolePolicies()
    println("Creating a role to use with SageMaker.")
    val assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
        "\"Statement\": [{" +
        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
        "\"Principal\": {" +
        "\"Service\": [" +
        "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
```

```
        "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
        "]" +
        "}," +
        "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
        "}]" +
        "}"

    val request = CreateRoleRequest {
        roleName = roleNameVal
        assumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy
        description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }
    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val roleResult = iamClient.createRole(request)

        // Attach the policies to the role.
        for (policy in sageMakerRolePolicies) {
            val attachRequest = AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policy
            }
            iamClient.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest)
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15)
        System.out.println("Role ready with ARN ${roleResult.role?.arn}")
        return roleResult.role?.arn.toString()
    }
}

// Checks to see if the Lambda role exists. If not, this method creates it.
suspend fun checkLambdaRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    println("Checking to see if the role exists. If not, a new role will be created
 for AWS Lambda to use.")
    var roleArn: String
    val roleRequest = GetRoleRequest {
        roleName = roleNameVal
    }

    try {
        IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
            val response = iamClient.getRole(roleRequest)
            roleArn = response.role?.arn.toString()
```

```
            println(roleArn)
        }
    } catch (e: IamException) {
        println(e.message + " A new role will be created")
        roleArn = createLambdaRole(roleNameVal)
    }

    return roleArn
}

private suspend fun createLambdaRole(roleNameVal: String): String {
    val lambdaRolePolicies = getLambdaRolePolicies()
    val assumeRolePolicy = "{" +
        "\"Version\": \"2012-10-17\"," +
        "\"Statement\": [{" +
        "\"Effect\": \"Allow\"," +
        "\"Principal\": {" +
        "\"Service\": [" +
        "\"sagemaker.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"sagemaker-geospatial.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"lambda.amazonaws.com\"," +
        "\"s3.amazonaws.com\"" +
        "]" +
        "}," +
        "\"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"" +
        "}]" +
        "}"

    val request = CreateRoleRequest {
        roleName = roleNameVal
        assumeRolePolicyDocument = assumeRolePolicy
        description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
    }

    IamClient { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
        val roleResult = iamClient.createRole(request)

        // Attach the policies to the role.
        for (policy in lambdaRolePolicies) {
            val attachRequest = AttachRolePolicyRequest {
                roleName = roleNameVal
                policyArn = policy
            }
            iamClient.attachRolePolicy(attachRequest)
```

```
        }

        // Allow time for the role to be ready.
        TimeUnit.SECONDS.sleep(15)
        println("Role ready with ARN " + roleResult.role?.arn)
        return roleResult.role?.arn.toString()
    }
}

fun getLambdaRolePolicies(): Array<String?> {
    val lambdaRolePolicies = arrayOfNulls<String>(5)
    lambdaRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess"
    lambdaRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess"
    lambdaRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess"
    lambdaRolePolicies[3] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerServiceCatalogProductsLambdaServiceRolePolicy"
    lambdaRolePolicies[4] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AWSLambdaSQSQueueExecutionRole"
    return lambdaRolePolicies
}

fun getSageMakerRolePolicies(): Array<String?> {
    val sageMakerRolePolicies = arrayOfNulls<String>(3)
    sageMakerRolePolicies[0] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSageMakerFullAccess"
    sageMakerRolePolicies[1] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/" +
 "AmazonSageMakerGeospatialFullAccess"
    sageMakerRolePolicies[2] = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonSQSFullAccess"
    return sageMakerRolePolicies
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreatePipeline
  - DeletePipeline
  - DescribePipelineExecution
  - StartPipelineExecution
  - UpdatePipeline

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getValue(secretName: String?) {
    val valueRequest =
        GetSecretValueRequest {
            secretId = secretName
        }

    SecretsManagerClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use
 { secretsClient ->
        val response = secretsClient.getSecretValue(valueRequest)
        val secret = response.secretString
        println("The secret value is $secret")
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon SES examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon SES.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon DynamoDB API to create a dynamic web application that tracks DynamoDB work data.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create a web application to track Amazon Redshift data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items using an Amazon Redshift database.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon Redshift database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Redshift data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Redshift
- Amazon SES

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to create a web application that tracks and reports on work items stored in an Amazon RDS database.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up a Spring REST API that queries Amazon Aurora Serverless data and for use by a React application, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use Amazon Rekognition Kotlin API to create an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to identify objects by category in images located in an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The app sends the admin an email notification with the results using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES).

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.ListTopicsRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.paginators.listTopicsPaginated
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform

/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */
suspend fun main() {
    listTopicsPag()
}

suspend fun listTopicsPag() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient
            .listTopicsPaginated(ListTopicsRequest { })
            .transform { it.topics?.forEach { topic -> emit(topic) } }
            .collect { topic ->
                println("The topic ARN is ${topic.topicArn}")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createSNSTopic(topicName: String): String {
    val request =
        CreateTopicRequest {
            name = topicName
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.createTopic(request)
        return result.topicArn.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String) {
    val request =
        DeleteTopicRequest {
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println("$topicArnVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getSNSTopicAttributes(topicArnVal: String) {
    val request =
        GetTopicAttributesRequest {
            topicArn = topicArnVal
```

```
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.getTopicAttributes(request)
        println("${result.attributes}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listSNSSubscriptions() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.listSubscriptions(ListSubscriptionsRequest {})
        response.subscriptions?.forEach { sub ->
            println("Sub ARN is ${sub.subscriptionArn}")
            println("Sub protocol is ${sub.protocol}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listSNSTopics() {
    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.listTopics(ListTopicsRequest { })
        response.topics?.forEach { topic ->
            println("The topic ARN is ${topic.topicArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun pubTopic(
    topicArnVal: String,
    messageVal: String,
) {
    val request =
        PublishRequest {
            message = messageVal
            topicArn = topicArnVal
```

```
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`SetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun setTopAttr(
    attribute: String?,
    topicArnVal: String?,
    value: String?,
) {
    val request =
        SetTopicAttributesRequest {
            attributeName = attribute
            attributeValue = value
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.setTopicAttributes(request)
        println("Topic ${request.topicArn} was updated.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
suspend fun subEmail(
    topicArnVal: String,
    email: String,
): String {
    val request =
        SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "email"
            endpoint = email
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
        return result.subscriptionArn.toString()
    }
}
```

Subscribe a Lambda function to a topic.

```
suspend fun subLambda(
    topicArnVal: String?,
    lambdaArn: String?,
) {
```

```
    val request =
        SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "lambda"
            endpoint = lambdaArn
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
        println(" The subscription Arn is ${result.subscriptionArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addTopicTags(topicArn: String) {
    val tag =
        Tag {
            key = "Team"
            value = "Development"
        }

    val tag2 =
        Tag {
            key = "Environment"
            value = "Gamma"
        }
```

```
    val tagList = mutableListOf<Tag>()
    tagList.add(tag)
    tagList.add(tag2)

    val request =
        TagResourceRequest {
            resourceArn = topicArn
            tags = tagList
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.tagResource(request)
        println("Tags have been added to $topicArn")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun unSub(subscriptionArnVal: String) {
    val request =
        UnsubscribeRequest {
            subscriptionArn = subscriptionArnVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.unsubscribe(request)
        println("Subscription was removed for ${request.subscriptionArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SNS Kotlin API to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a web app, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a native Android app, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS
- Amazon Translate

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun pubTextSMS(
    messageVal: String?,
    phoneNumberVal: String?,
) {
    val request =
        PublishRequest {
            message = messageVal
            phoneNumber = phoneNumberVal
        }

    SnsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns

import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.PublishRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.Message
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest
import com.google.gson.Gson
import com.google.gson.JsonObject
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive
```

```
import java.util.Scanner

/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your AWS credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 8. Displays the messages.
 9. Deletes the received message.
 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */

val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main() {
    val input = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val useFIFO: String
    var duplication = "n"
    var topicName: String
    var deduplicationID: String? = null
    var groupId: String? = null
    val topicArn: String?
    var sqsQueueName: String
    val sqsQueueUrl: String?
    val sqsQueueArn: String
    val subscriptionArn: String?
    var selectFIFO = false
    val message: String
    val messageList: List<Message?>?
    val filterList = ArrayList<String>()
    var msgAttValue = ""

    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Kotlin messaging with topics and queues.")
    println(
        """
                In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe an SQS
 queue to the topic.
                You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the queue.
                You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
                SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out).
                FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering.
                Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    useFIFO = input.nextLine()
    if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        selectFIFO = true
        println("You have selected FIFO")
        println(
            """ Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.
        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or automatically generated
 from content using a hash function.
        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any message
 published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,
        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted but not
 delivered.
        For more information about deduplication, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.""",
        )

        println("Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)")
        duplication = input.nextLine()
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        } else {
```

```
            println("Enter deduplication Id value")
            deduplicationID = input.nextLine()
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. Create a topic.")
    println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.")
    topicName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended to
 the topic name.")
        topicName = "$topicName.fifo"
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createFIFO(topicName, duplication)
        println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    } else {
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createSNSTopic(topicName)
        println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create an SQS queue.")
    println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.")
    sqsQueueName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        sqsQueueName = "$sqsQueueName.fifo"
    }
    sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsQueueName, selectFIFO)
    println("The queue URL is $sqsQueueUrl")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.")
    sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsQueueUrl)
    println("The ARN of the new queue is $sqsQueueArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.")
    // Define the policy to use.
    val policy = """{
     "Statement": [
     {
         "Effect": "Allow",
                 "Principal": {
             "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
         },
         "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                 "Resource": "$sqsQueueArn",
                 "Condition": {
             "ArnEquals": {
                 "aws:SourceArn": "$topicArn"
             }
         }
     }
     ]
     }"""
    setQueueAttr(sqsQueueUrl, policy)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println(
            """If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.
For information about message filtering, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/
dg/sns-message-filtering.html
For this example, you can filter messages by a "tone" attribute.""",
        )
        println("Would you like to filter messages for $sqsQueueName's subscription
 to the topic $topicName?  (y/n)")
        val filterAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            var moreAns = false
            println("You can filter messages by using one or more of the following
 \"tone\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            while (!moreAns) {
```

```
                println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
                val ans: String = input.nextLine()
                when (ans) {
                    "1" -> filterList.add("cheerful")
                    "2" -> filterList.add("funny")
                    "3" -> filterList.add("serious")
                    "4" -> filterList.add("sincere")
                    else -> moreAns = true
                }
            }
        }
    }
    subscriptionArn = subQueue(topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Publish a message to the topic.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Would you like to add an attribute to this message?  (y/n)")
        val msgAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following \"tone
\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
            val ans: String = input.nextLine()
            msgAttValue = when (ans) {
                "1" -> "cheerful"
                "2" -> "funny"
                "3" -> "serious"
                else -> "sincere"
            }
            println("Selected value is $msgAttValue")
        }
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessageFIFO(message, topicArn, msgAttValue, duplication, groupId,
 deduplicationID)
    } else {
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
```

```
        pubMessage(message, topicArn)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    messageList = receiveMessages(sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue)
    if (messageList != null) {
        for (mes in messageList) {
            println("Message Id: ${mes.messageId}")
            println("Full Message: ${mes.body}")
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    if (messageList != null) {
        deleteMessages(sqsQueueUrl, messageList)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue. Press any key to
 continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    unSub(subscriptionArn)
    deleteSQSQueue(sqsQueueName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    deleteSNSTopic(topicArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String?) {
```

```
    val request = DeleteTopicRequest {
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println("$topicArnVal was deleted")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteSQSQueue(queueNameVal: String) {
    val getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val queueUrlVal = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl
        val deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

        sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest)
        println("$queueNameVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun unSub(subscripArn: String?) {
    val request = UnsubscribeRequest {
        subscriptionArn = subscripArn
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.unsubscribe(request)
        println("Subscription was removed for $subscripArn")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, messages: List<Message>) {
    val entriesVal: MutableList<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> = mutableListOf()
    for (msg in messages) {
        val entry = DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = msg.messageId
        }
        entriesVal.add(entry)
    }
```

```
    val deleteMessageBatchRequest = DeleteMessageBatchRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        entries = entriesVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest)
        println("The batch delete of messages was successful")
    }
}

suspend fun receiveMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, msgAttValue: String):
 List<Message>? {
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        val request = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(request).messages
        }
    } else {
        val receiveRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            waitTimeSeconds = 1
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages
        }
    }
}

suspend fun pubMessage(messageVal: String?, topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = PublishRequest {
        message = messageVal
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
```

```
}

suspend fun pubMessageFIFO(
    messageVal: String?,
    topicArnVal: String?,
    msgAttValue: String,
    duplication: String,
    groupIdVal: String?,
    deduplicationID: String?,
) {
    // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    } else {
        val messAttr = aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue {
            dataType = "String"
            stringValue = "true"
        }

        val mapAtt: Map<String,
 aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue> =
```

```
            mapOf(msgAttValue to messAttr)
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
            val request = PublishRequest {
                topicArn = topicArnVal
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                messageAttributes = mapAtt
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Subscribe to the SQS queue.
suspend fun subQueue(topicArnVal: String?, queueArnVal: String, filterList:
 List<String?>): String? {
    val request: SubscribeRequest
    if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
        // No filter subscription is added.
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
```

```
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
            println(
                "The queue " + queueArnVal + " has been subscribed to the topic " +
 topicArnVal + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn,
            )
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    } else {
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
            println("The queue $queueArnVal has been subscribed to the topic
 $topicArnVal with the subscription ARN ${result.subscriptionArn}")

            val attributeNameVal = "FilterPolicy"
            val gson = Gson()
            val jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}"
            val jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString, JsonObject::class.java)
            val toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone")
            for (value: String? in filterList) {
                toneArray.add(JsonPrimitive(value))
            }

            val updatedJsonString: String = gson.toJson(jsonObject)
            println(updatedJsonString)
            val attRequest = SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest {
                subscriptionArn = result.subscriptionArn
                attributeName = attributeNameVal
                attributeValue = updatedJsonString
            }

            snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest)
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun setQueueAttr(queueUrlVal: String?, policy: String) {
    val attrMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attrMap[QueueAttributeName.Policy.toString()] = policy

    val attributesRequest = SetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributes = attrMap
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        println("The policy has been successfully attached.")
    }
}

suspend fun getSQSQueueAttrs(queueUrlVal: String?): String {
    val atts: MutableList<QueueAttributeName> = ArrayList()
    atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QueueArn)

    val attributesRequest = GetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributeNames = atts
    }
    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        val mapAtts = response.attributes
        if (mapAtts != null) {
            mapAtts.forEach { entry ->
                println("${entry.key} : ${entry.value}")
                return entry.value
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun createQueue(queueNameVal: String?, selectFIFO: Boolean): String? {
    println("\nCreate Queue")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        val attrs = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
        attrs[QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue.toString()] = "true"

        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
```

```
            attributes = attrs
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("\nGet queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    } else {
        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("Get queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createSNSTopic(topicName: String?): String? {
    val request = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.createTopic(request)
        return result.topicArn
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun createFIFO(topicName: String?, duplication: String): String? {
    val topicAttributes: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "false"
    } else {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
    }

    val topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
        attributes = topicAttributes
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest)
        return response.topicArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.kotlin.sqs

import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.paginators.listQueuesPaginated
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform

suspend fun main() {
    listTopicsPag()
}

suspend fun listTopicsPag() {
    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient
```

```
            .listQueuesPaginated { }
            .transform { it.queueUrls?.forEach { queue -> emit(queue) } }
            .collect { queue ->
                println("The Queue URL is $queue")
            }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createQueue(queueNameVal: String): String {
    println("Create Queue")
    val createQueueRequest =
        CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
        println("Get queue url")
```

```
        val getQueueUrlRequest =
            GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

        val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueUrlRequest)
        return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl.toString()
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String) {
    println("Delete Messages from $queueUrlVal")

    val purgeRequest =
        PurgeQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.purgeQueue(purgeRequest)
        println("Messages are successfully deleted from $queueUrlVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteQueue(queueUrlVal: String) {
```

```
    val request =
        DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteQueue(request)
        println("$queueUrlVal was deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String) {
    println("Delete Messages from $queueUrlVal")

    val purgeRequest =
        PurgeQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.purgeQueue(purgeRequest)
        println("Messages are successfully deleted from $queueUrlVal")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteQueue(queueUrlVal: String) {
```

```
    val request =
        DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteQueue(request)
        println("$queueUrlVal was deleted!")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listQueues() {
    println("\nList Queues")

    val prefix = "que"
    val listQueuesRequest =
        ListQueuesRequest {
            queueNamePrefix = prefix
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.listQueues(listQueuesRequest)
        response.queueUrls?.forEach { url ->
            println(url)
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun receiveMessages(queueUrlVal: String?) {
    println("Retrieving messages from $queueUrlVal")

    val receiveMessageRequest =
        ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveMessageRequest)
        response.messages?.forEach { message ->
            println(message.body)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`SendMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessage`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun sendMessages(
    queueUrlVal: String,
    message: String,
) {
    println("Sending multiple messages")
    println("\nSend message")
    val sendRequest =
        SendMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            messageBody = message
            delaySeconds = 10
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.sendMessage(sendRequest)
        println("A single message was successfully sent.")
    }
}

suspend fun sendBatchMessages(queueUrlVal: String?) {
    println("Sending multiple messages")

    val msg1 =
        SendMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = "id1"
            messageBody = "Hello from msg 1"
        }

    val msg2 =
        SendMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = "id2"
            messageBody = "Hello from msg 2"
        }
```

```
    val sendMessageBatchRequest =
        SendMessageBatchRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            entries = listOf(msg1, msg2)
        }

    SqsClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.sendMessageBatch(sendMessageBatchRequest)
        println("Batch message were successfully sent.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a messaging application

The following code example shows how to create a messaging application by using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SQS API to develop a Spring REST API that sends and retrieves messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon SQS

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.

- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
package com.example.sns

import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.SnsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.CreateTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.DeleteTopicRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.PublishRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.SubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.UnsubscribeRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.SqsClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.CreateQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.DeleteQueueRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueAttributesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.GetQueueUrlRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.Message
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.QueueAttributeName
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.ReceiveMessageRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sqs.model.SetQueueAttributesRequest
import com.google.gson.Gson
import com.google.gson.JsonObject
import com.google.gson.JsonPrimitive
import java.util.Scanner

/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your AWS credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
```

```
This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:

 1. Gives the user three options to choose from.
 2. Creates an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic.
 3. Creates an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue.
 4. Gets the SQS queue Amazon Resource Name (ARN) attribute.
 5. Attaches an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policy to the queue.
 6. Subscribes to the SQS queue.
 7. Publishes a message to the topic.
 8. Displays the messages.
 9. Deletes the received message.
 10. Unsubscribes from the topic.
 11. Deletes the SNS topic.
 */

val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")
suspend fun main() {
    val input = Scanner(System.`in`)
    val useFIFO: String
    var duplication = "n"
    var topicName: String
    var deduplicationID: String? = null
    var groupId: String? = null
    val topicArn: String?
    var sqsQueueName: String
    val sqsQueueUrl: String?
    val sqsQueueArn: String
    val subscriptionArn: String?
    var selectFIFO = false
    val message: String
    val messageList: List<Message?>?
    val filterList = ArrayList<String>()
    var msgAttValue = ""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Kotlin messaging with topics and queues.")
    println(
        """
                In this scenario, you will create an SNS topic and subscribe an SQS
 queue to the topic.
                You can select from several options for configuring the topic and
 the subscriptions for the queue.
                You can then post to the topic and see the results in the queue.
        """.trimIndent(),
```

```
    )
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println(
        """
                SNS topics can be configured as FIFO (First-In-First-Out).
                FIFO topics deliver messages in order and support deduplication and
 message filtering.
                Would you like to work with FIFO topics? (y/n)
        """.trimIndent(),
    )
    useFIFO = input.nextLine()
    if (useFIFO.compareTo("y") == 0) {
        selectFIFO = true
        println("You have selected FIFO")
        println(
            """ Because you have chosen a FIFO topic, deduplication is supported.
        Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or automatically generated
 from content using a hash function.
        If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any message
 published and determined to have the same deduplication ID,
        within the five-minute deduplication interval, is accepted but not
 delivered.
        For more information about deduplication, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/
sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.""",
        )

        println("Would you like to use content-based deduplication instead of
 entering a deduplication ID? (y/n)")
        duplication = input.nextLine()
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        } else {
            println("Enter deduplication Id value")
            deduplicationID = input.nextLine()
            println("Enter a group id value")
            groupId = input.nextLine()
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println("2. Create a topic.")
    println("Enter a name for your SNS topic.")
    topicName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Because you have selected a FIFO topic, '.fifo' must be appended to
the topic name.")
        topicName = "$topicName.fifo"
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createFIFO(topicName, duplication)
        println("The ARN of the FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    } else {
        println("The name of the topic is $topicName")
        topicArn = createSNSTopic(topicName)
        println("The ARN of the non-FIFO topic is $topicArn")
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create an SQS queue.")
    println("Enter a name for your SQS queue.")
    sqsQueueName = input.nextLine()
    if (selectFIFO) {
        sqsQueueName = "$sqsQueueName.fifo"
    }
    sqsQueueUrl = createQueue(sqsQueueName, selectFIFO)
    println("The queue URL is $sqsQueueUrl")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Get the SQS queue ARN attribute.")
    sqsQueueArn = getSQSQueueAttrs(sqsQueueUrl)
    println("The ARN of the new queue is $sqsQueueArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Attach an IAM policy to the queue.")
    // Define the policy to use.
    val policy = """{
     "Statement": [
     {
         "Effect": "Allow",
                 "Principal": {
             "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
         },
```

```
         "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                 "Resource": "$sqsQueueArn",
                 "Condition": {
             "ArnEquals": {
                 "aws:SourceArn": "$topicArn"
             }
         }
     }
     ]
     }"""
    setQueueAttr(sqsQueueUrl, policy)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("6. Subscribe to the SQS queue.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println(
            """If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
 messages will be received in the queue.
For information about message filtering, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/
dg/sns-message-filtering.html
For this example, you can filter messages by a "tone" attribute.""",
        )
        println("Would you like to filter messages for $sqsQueueName's subscription
 to the topic $topicName?  (y/n)")
        val filterAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (filterAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            var moreAns = false
            println("You can filter messages by using one or more of the following
 \"tone\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            while (!moreAns) {
                println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
                val ans: String = input.nextLine()
                when (ans) {
                    "1" -> filterList.add("cheerful")
                    "2" -> filterList.add("funny")
                    "3" -> filterList.add("serious")
                    "4" -> filterList.add("sincere")
                    else -> moreAns = true
                }
```

```
            }
        }
    }
    subscriptionArn = subQueue(topicArn, sqsQueueArn, filterList)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Publish a message to the topic.")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        println("Would you like to add an attribute to this message?  (y/n)")
        val msgAns: String = input.nextLine()
        if (msgAns.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            println("You can filter messages by one or more of the following \"tone
\" attributes.")
            println("1. cheerful")
            println("2. funny")
            println("3. serious")
            println("4. sincere")
            println("Select a number or choose 0 to end.")
            val ans: String = input.nextLine()
            msgAttValue = when (ans) {
                "1" -> "cheerful"
                "2" -> "funny"
                "3" -> "serious"
                else -> "sincere"
            }
            println("Selected value is $msgAttValue")
        }
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessageFIFO(message, topicArn, msgAttValue, duplication, groupId,
 deduplicationID)
    } else {
        println("Enter a message.")
        message = input.nextLine()
        pubMessage(message, topicArn)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Display the message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    messageList = receiveMessages(sqsQueueUrl, msgAttValue)
    if (messageList != null) {
```

```
        for (mes in messageList) {
            println("Message Id: ${mes.messageId}")
            println("Full Message: ${mes.body}")
        }
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Delete the received message. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    if (messageList != null) {
        deleteMessages(sqsQueueUrl, messageList)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("10. Unsubscribe from the topic and delete the queue. Press any key to
 continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    unSub(subscriptionArn)
    deleteSQSQueue(sqsQueueName)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("11. Delete the topic. Press any key to continue.")
    input.nextLine()
    deleteSNSTopic(topicArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The SNS/SQS workflow has completed successfully.")
    println(DASHES)
}

suspend fun deleteSNSTopic(topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = DeleteTopicRequest {
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.deleteTopic(request)
        println("$topicArnVal was deleted")
    }
}
```

```
suspend fun deleteSQSQueue(queueNameVal: String) {
    val getQueueRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
        queueName = queueNameVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val queueUrlVal = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(getQueueRequest).queueUrl
        val deleteQueueRequest = DeleteQueueRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        }

        sqsClient.deleteQueue(deleteQueueRequest)
        println("$queueNameVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}

suspend fun unSub(subscripArn: String?) {
    val request = UnsubscribeRequest {
        subscriptionArn = subscripArn
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        snsClient.unsubscribe(request)
        println("Subscription was removed for $subscripArn")
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, messages: List<Message>) {
    val entriesVal: MutableList<DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry> = mutableListOf()
    for (msg in messages) {
        val entry = DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry {
            id = msg.messageId
        }
        entriesVal.add(entry)
    }

    val deleteMessageBatchRequest = DeleteMessageBatchRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        entries = entriesVal
    }

    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(deleteMessageBatchRequest)
        println("The batch delete of messages was successful")
```

```
    }
}

suspend fun receiveMessages(queueUrlVal: String?, msgAttValue: String):
 List<Message>? {
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        val request = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(request).messages
        }
    } else {
        val receiveRequest = ReceiveMessageRequest {
            queueUrl = queueUrlVal
            waitTimeSeconds = 1
            maxNumberOfMessages = 5
        }
        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            return sqsClient.receiveMessage(receiveRequest).messages
        }
    }
}

suspend fun pubMessage(messageVal: String?, topicArnVal: String?) {
    val request = PublishRequest {
        message = messageVal
        topicArn = topicArnVal
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.publish(request)
        println("${result.messageId} message sent.")
    }
}

suspend fun pubMessageFIFO(
    messageVal: String?,
    topicArnVal: String?,
    msgAttValue: String,
    duplication: String,
    groupIdVal: String?,
    deduplicationID: String?,
```

```
) {
    // Means the user did not choose to use a message attribute.
    if (msgAttValue.isEmpty()) {
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    } else {
        val messAttr = aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue {
            dataType = "String"
            stringValue = "true"
        }

        val mapAtt: Map<String,
 aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sns.model.MessageAttributeValue> =
            mapOf(msgAttValue to messAttr)
        if (duplication.compareTo("y") == 0) {
            val request = PublishRequest {
                message = messageVal
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                topicArn = topicArnVal
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
```

```
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        } else {
            // Create a publish request with the message and attributes.
            val request = PublishRequest {
                topicArn = topicArnVal
                message = messageVal
                messageDeduplicationId = deduplicationID
                messageGroupId = groupIdVal
                messageAttributes = mapAtt
            }

            SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
                val result = snsClient.publish(request)
                println(result.messageId.toString() + " Message sent.")
            }
        }
    }
}

// Subscribe to the SQS queue.
suspend fun subQueue(topicArnVal: String?, queueArnVal: String, filterList:
 List<String?>): String? {
    val request: SubscribeRequest
    if (filterList.isEmpty()) {
        // No filter subscription is added.
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
            println(
                "The queue " + queueArnVal + " has been subscribed to the topic " +
 topicArnVal + "\n" +
                    "with the subscription ARN " + result.subscriptionArn,
            )
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    } else {
```

```
        request = SubscribeRequest {
            protocol = "sqs"
            endpoint = queueArnVal
            returnSubscriptionArn = true
            topicArn = topicArnVal
        }

        SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
            val result = snsClient.subscribe(request)
            println("The queue $queueArnVal has been subscribed to the topic
 $topicArnVal with the subscription ARN ${result.subscriptionArn}")

            val attributeNameVal = "FilterPolicy"
            val gson = Gson()
            val jsonString = "{\"tone\": []}"
            val jsonObject = gson.fromJson(jsonString, JsonObject::class.java)
            val toneArray = jsonObject.getAsJsonArray("tone")
            for (value: String? in filterList) {
                toneArray.add(JsonPrimitive(value))
            }

            val updatedJsonString: String = gson.toJson(jsonObject)
            println(updatedJsonString)
            val attRequest = SetSubscriptionAttributesRequest {
                subscriptionArn = result.subscriptionArn
                attributeName = attributeNameVal
                attributeValue = updatedJsonString
            }

            snsClient.setSubscriptionAttributes(attRequest)
            return result.subscriptionArn
        }
    }
}

suspend fun setQueueAttr(queueUrlVal: String?, policy: String) {
    val attrMap: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    attrMap[QueueAttributeName.Policy.toString()] = policy

    val attributesRequest = SetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributes = attrMap
    }
```

```
    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        println("The policy has been successfully attached.")
    }
}

suspend fun getSQSQueueAttrs(queueUrlVal: String?): String {
    val atts: MutableList<QueueAttributeName> = ArrayList()
    atts.add(QueueAttributeName.QueueArn)

    val attributesRequest = GetQueueAttributesRequest {
        queueUrl = queueUrlVal
        attributeNames = atts
    }
    SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
        val response = sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(attributesRequest)
        val mapAtts = response.attributes
        if (mapAtts != null) {
            mapAtts.forEach { entry ->
                println("${entry.key} : ${entry.value}")
                return entry.value
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun createQueue(queueNameVal: String?, selectFIFO: Boolean): String? {
    println("\nCreate Queue")
    if (selectFIFO) {
        val attrs = mutableMapOf<String, String>()
        attrs[QueueAttributeName.FifoQueue.toString()] = "true"

        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
            attributes = attrs
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("\nGet queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
```

```
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    } else {
        val createQueueRequest = CreateQueueRequest {
            queueName = queueNameVal
        }

        SqsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sqsClient ->
            sqsClient.createQueue(createQueueRequest)
            println("Get queue url")

            val urlRequest = GetQueueUrlRequest {
                queueName = queueNameVal
            }

            val getQueueUrlResponse = sqsClient.getQueueUrl(urlRequest)
            return getQueueUrlResponse.queueUrl
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createSNSTopic(topicName: String?): String? {
    val request = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
    }

    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val result = snsClient.createTopic(request)
        return result.topicArn
    }
}

suspend fun createFIFO(topicName: String?, duplication: String): String? {
    val topicAttributes: MutableMap<String, String> = HashMap()
    if (duplication.compareTo("n") == 0) {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "false"
    } else {
        topicAttributes["FifoTopic"] = "true"
        topicAttributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
    }
```

```
    val topicRequest = CreateTopicRequest {
        name = topicName
        attributes = topicAttributes
    }
    SnsClient { region = "us-east-1" }.use { snsClient ->
        val response = snsClient.createTopic(topicRequest)
        return response.topicArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Step Functions examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Step Functions.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Step Functions

The following code examples show how to get started using Step Functions.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest

/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

suspend fun main() {
    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Hello example.")
    println("Lets list up to ten of your state machines:")
    println(DASHES)

    listMachines()
}

suspend fun listMachines() {
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listStateMachines(ListStateMachinesRequest {})
        response.stateMachines?.forEach { machine ->
            println("The name of the state machine is ${machine.name}")
            println("The ARN value is ${machine.stateMachineArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an activity.
- Create a state machine from an Amazon States Language definition that contains the previously created activity as a step.
- Run the state machine and respond to the activity with user input.
- Get the final status and output after the run completes, then clean up resources.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iam.IamClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.iam.model.CreateRoleRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.CreateActivityRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.CreateStateMachineRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DeleteActivityRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DeleteStateMachineRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DescribeExecutionRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.DescribeStateMachineRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.GetActivityTaskRequest
```

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListActivitiesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.SendTaskSuccessRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.StartExecutionRequest
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.StateMachineType
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.paginators.listActivitiesPaginated
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.paginators.listStateMachinesPaginated
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.JsonNode
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.ObjectMapper
import com.fasterxml.jackson.databind.node.ObjectNode
import kotlinx.coroutines.flow.transform
import java.util.Scanner
import java.util.UUID
import kotlin.collections.ArrayList
import kotlin.system.exitProcess

/**
 To run this code example, place the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file into your
 project's resources folder.

 You can obtain the JSON file to create a state machine in the following GitHub
 location:

 https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/tree/main/resources/sample_files

 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

 This Kotlin code example performs the following tasks:

 1. List activities using a paginator.
 2. List state machines using a paginator.
 3. Creates an activity.
 4. Creates a state machine.
 5. Describes the state machine.
 6. Starts execution of the state machine and interacts with it.
 7. Describes the execution.
 8. Deletes the activity.
 9. Deletes the state machine.
 */
```

```
val DASHES: String = String(CharArray(80)).replace("\u0000", "-")

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <roleARN> <activityName> <stateMachineName>

    Where:
        roleName - The name of the IAM role to create for this state machine.
        activityName - The name of an activity to create.
        stateMachineName - The name of the state machine to create.
        jsonFile - The location of the chat_sfn_state_machine.json file. You can
 located it in resources/sample_files.
    """

    if (args.size != 4) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val roleName = args[0]
    val activityName = args[1]
    val stateMachineName = args[2]
    val jsonFile = args[3]
    val sc = Scanner(System.`in`)
    var action = false

    val polJSON = """{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Sid": "",
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "states.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
    }"""

    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions example scenario.")
    println(DASHES)
```

```
    println(DASHES)
    println("1. List activities using a Paginator.")
    listActivitesPagnator()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("2. List state machines using a paginator.")
    listStatemachinesPagnator()
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("3. Create a new activity.")
    val activityArn = createActivity(activityName)
    println("The ARN of the Activity is $activityArn")
    println(DASHES)

    // Get JSON to use for the state machine and place the activityArn value into
it.
    val stream = GetStream()
    val jsonString = stream.getStream(jsonFile)

    // Modify the Resource node.
    val objectMapper = ObjectMapper()
    val root: JsonNode = objectMapper.readTree(jsonString)
    (root.path("States").path("GetInput") as ObjectNode).put("Resource",
activityArn)

    // Convert the modified Java object back to a JSON string.
    val stateDefinition = objectMapper.writeValueAsString(root)
    println(stateDefinition)

    println(DASHES)
    println("4. Create a state machine.")
    val roleARN = createIAMRole(roleName, polJSON)
    val stateMachineArn = createMachine(roleARN, stateMachineName, stateDefinition)
    println("The ARN of the state machine is $stateMachineArn")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("5. Describe the state machine.")
    describeStateMachine(stateMachineArn)
    println("What should ChatSFN call you?")
    val userName = sc.nextLine()
```

```
    println("Hello $userName")
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    // The JSON to pass to the StartExecution call.
    val executionJson = "{ \"name\" : \"$userName\" }"
    println(executionJson)
    println("6. Start execution of the state machine and interact with it.")
    val runArn = startWorkflow(stateMachineArn, executionJson)
    println("The ARN of the state machine execution is $runArn")
    var myList: List<String>
    while (!action) {
        myList = getActivityTask(activityArn)
        println("ChatSFN: " + myList[1])
        println("$userName please specify a value.")
        val myAction = sc.nextLine()
        if (myAction.compareTo("done") == 0) {
            action = true
        }
        println("You have selected $myAction")
        val taskJson = "{ \"action\" : \"$myAction\" }"
        println(taskJson)
        sendTaskSuccess(myList[0], taskJson)
    }
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("7. Describe the execution.")
    describeExe(runArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("8. Delete the activity.")
    deleteActivity(activityArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("9. Delete the state machines.")
    deleteMachine(stateMachineArn)
    println(DASHES)

    println(DASHES)
    println("The AWS Step Functions example scenario is complete.")
    println(DASHES)
```

```
}

suspend fun listStatemachinesPagnator() {
    val machineRequest =
        ListStateMachinesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient
            .listStateMachinesPaginated(machineRequest)
            .transform { it.stateMachines?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" The state machine ARN is ${obj.stateMachineArn}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun listActivitesPagnator() {
    val activitiesRequest =
        ListActivitiesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient
            .listActivitiesPaginated(activitiesRequest)
            .transform { it.activities?.forEach { obj -> emit(obj) } }
            .collect { obj ->
                println(" The activity ARN is ${obj.activityArn}")
            }
    }
}

suspend fun deleteMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val deleteStateMachineRequest =
        DeleteStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest)
        println("$stateMachineArnVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
```

```
}

suspend fun deleteActivity(actArn: String?) {
    val activityRequest =
        DeleteActivityRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest)
        println("You have deleted $actArn")
    }
}

suspend fun describeExe(executionArnVal: String?) {
    val executionRequest =
        DescribeExecutionRequest {
            executionArn = executionArnVal
        }

    var status = ""
    var hasSucceeded = false
    while (!hasSucceeded) {
        SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
            val response = sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest)
            status = response.status.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Running") == 0) {
                println("The state machine is still running, let's wait for it to
 finish.")
                Thread.sleep(2000)
            } else if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                println("The Step Function workflow has succeeded")
                hasSucceeded = true
            } else {
                println("The Status is $status")
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Status is $status")
}

suspend fun sendTaskSuccess(
    token: String?,
    json: String?,
```

```
) {
    val successRequest =
        SendTaskSuccessRequest {
            taskToken = token
            output = json
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest)
    }
}

suspend fun getActivityTask(actArn: String?): List<String> {
    val myList: MutableList<String> = ArrayList()
    val getActivityTaskRequest =
        GetActivityTaskRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest)
        myList.add(response.taskToken.toString())
        myList.add(response.input.toString())
        return myList
    }
}

suspend fun startWorkflow(
    stateMachineArnVal: String?,
    jsonEx: String?,
): String? {
    val uuid = UUID.randomUUID()
    val uuidValue = uuid.toString()
    val executionRequest =
        StartExecutionRequest {
            input = jsonEx
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
            name = uuidValue
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest)
        return response.executionArn
    }
}

suspend fun describeStateMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
```

```
    val stateMachineRequest =
        DescribeStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest)
        println("The name of the State machine is ${response.name}")
        println("The status of the State machine is ${response.status}")
        println("The ARN value of the State machine is ${response.stateMachineArn}")
        println("The role ARN value is ${response.roleArn}")
    }
}

suspend fun createMachine(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    stateMachineName: String?,
    jsonVal: String?,
): String? {
    val machineRequest =
        CreateStateMachineRequest {
            definition = jsonVal
            name = stateMachineName
            roleArn = roleARNVal
            type = StateMachineType.Standard
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest)
        return response.stateMachineArn
    }
}

suspend fun createIAMRole(
    roleNameVal: String?,
    polJSON: String?,
): String? {
    val request =
        CreateRoleRequest {
            roleName = roleNameVal
            assumeRolePolicyDocument = polJSON
            description = "Created using the AWS SDK for Kotlin"
        }

    IamClient.fromEnvironment { region = "AWS_GLOBAL" }.use { iamClient ->
```

```
        val response = iamClient.createRole(request)
        return response.role?.arn
    }
}

suspend fun createActivity(activityName: String): String? {
    val activityRequest =
        CreateActivityRequest {
            name = activityName
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest)
        return response.activityArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask
  - ListActivities
  - ListStateMachines
  - SendTaskSuccess
  - StartExecution
  - StopExecution

Actions

`CreateActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateActivity`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createActivity(activityName: String): String? {
    val activityRequest =
        CreateActivityRequest {
            name = activityName
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createActivity(activityRequest)
        return response.activityArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStateMachine`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createMachine(
    roleARNVal: String?,
    stateMachineName: String?,
    jsonVal: String?,
): String? {
```

```
    val machineRequest =
        CreateStateMachineRequest {
            definition = jsonVal
            name = stateMachineName
            roleArn = roleARNVal
            type = StateMachineType.Standard
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.createStateMachine(machineRequest)
        return response.stateMachineArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteActivity`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteActivity(actArn: String?) {
    val activityRequest =
        DeleteActivityRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteActivity(activityRequest)
        println("You have deleted $actArn")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DeleteStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStateMachine`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun deleteMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val deleteStateMachineRequest =
        DeleteStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.deleteStateMachine(deleteStateMachineRequest)
        println("$stateMachineArnVal was successfully deleted.")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExecution`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeExe(executionArnVal: String?) {
    val executionRequest =
        DescribeExecutionRequest {
            executionArn = executionArnVal
        }

    var status = ""
    var hasSucceeded = false
    while (!hasSucceeded) {
        SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
            val response = sfnClient.describeExecution(executionRequest)
            status = response.status.toString()
            if (status.compareTo("Running") == 0) {
                println("The state machine is still running, let's wait for it to
 finish.")
                Thread.sleep(2000)
            } else if (status.compareTo("Succeeded") == 0) {
                println("The Step Function workflow has succeeded")
                hasSucceeded = true
            } else {
                println("The Status is $status")
            }
        }
    }
    println("The Status is $status")
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStateMachine`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeStateMachine(stateMachineArnVal: String?) {
    val stateMachineRequest =
        DescribeStateMachineRequest {
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.describeStateMachine(stateMachineRequest)
        println("The name of the State machine is ${response.name}")
        println("The status of the State machine is ${response.status}")
        println("The ARN value of the State machine is ${response.stateMachineArn}")
        println("The role ARN value is ${response.roleArn}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`GetActivityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `GetActivityTask`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getActivityTask(actArn: String?): List<String> {
    val myList: MutableList<String> = ArrayList()
    val getActivityTaskRequest =
        GetActivityTaskRequest {
            activityArn = actArn
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.getActivityTask(getActivityTaskRequest)
        myList.add(response.taskToken.toString())
        myList.add(response.input.toString())
        return myList
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListActivities`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listAllActivites() {
    val activitiesRequest =
        ListActivitiesRequest {
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listActivities(activitiesRequest)
        response.activities?.forEach { item ->
            println("The activity ARN is ${item.activityArn}")
            println("The activity name is ${item.name}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListExecutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListExecutions`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getExeHistory(exeARN: String?) {
    val historyRequest =
        GetExecutionHistoryRequest {
            executionArn = exeARN
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.getExecutionHistory(historyRequest)
        response.events?.forEach { event ->
            println("The event type is ${event.type}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListExecutions in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ListStateMachines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStateMachines`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.SfnClient
```

```
import aws.sdk.kotlin.services.sfn.model.ListStateMachinesRequest

/**
 Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
 including your credentials.

 For more information, see the following documentation topic:
 https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
 */

suspend fun main() {
    println(DASHES)
    println("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions Hello example.")
    println("Lets list up to ten of your state machines:")
    println(DASHES)

    listMachines()
}

suspend fun listMachines() {
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.listStateMachines(ListStateMachinesRequest {})
        response.stateMachines?.forEach { machine ->
            println("The name of the state machine is ${machine.name}")
            println("The ARN value is ${machine.stateMachineArn}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

SendTaskSuccess

The following code example shows how to use SendTaskSuccess.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun sendTaskSuccess(
    token: String?,
    json: String?,
) {
    val successRequest =
        SendTaskSuccessRequest {
            taskToken = token
            output = json
        }
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        sfnClient.sendTaskSuccess(successRequest)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`StartExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartExecution`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun startWorkflow(
    stateMachineArnVal: String?,
    jsonEx: String?,
): String? {
    val uuid = UUID.randomUUID()
    val uuidValue = uuid.toString()
    val executionRequest =
        StartExecutionRequest {
            input = jsonEx
            stateMachineArn = stateMachineArnVal
            name = uuidValue
        }
```

```
    SfnClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-east-1" }.use { sfnClient ->
        val response = sfnClient.startExecution(executionRequest)
        return response.executionArn
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Support examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Support.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html

In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS Support Java
 API. For more information, see:

https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/

This Kotlin example performs the following task:

1. Gets and displays available services.
 */

suspend fun main() {
    displaySomeServices()
}

// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displaySomeServices() {
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is: " + service.name)

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                index++
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/**
Before running this Kotlin code example, set up your development environment,
including your credentials.

For more information, see the following documentation topic:
```

```
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
In addition, you must have the AWS Business Support Plan to use the AWS Support Java
 API. For more information, see:

https://aws.amazon.com/premiumsupport/plans/

This Kotlin example performs the following tasks:
1. Gets and displays available services.
2. Gets and displays severity levels.
3. Creates a support case by using the selected service, category, and severity
 level.
4. Gets a list of open cases for the current day.
5. Creates an attachment set with a generated file.
6. Adds a communication with the attachment to the support case.
7. Lists the communications of the support case.
8. Describes the attachment set included with the communication.
9. Resolves the support case.
10. Gets a list of resolved cases for the current day.
*/

suspend fun main(args: Array<String>) {
    val usage = """
    Usage:
        <fileAttachment>
    Where:
         fileAttachment - The file can be a simple saved .txt file to use as an
 email attachment.
    """

    if (args.size != 1) {
        println(usage)
        exitProcess(0)
    }

    val fileAttachment = args[0]
    println("***** Welcome to the AWS Support case example scenario.")
    println("***** Step 1. Get and display available services.")
    val sevCatList = displayServices()

    println("***** Step 2. Get and display Support severity levels.")
    val sevLevel = displaySevLevels()

    println("***** Step 3. Create a support case using the selected service,
 category, and severity level.")
```

```
    val caseIdVal = createSupportCase(sevCatList, sevLevel)
    if (caseIdVal != null) {
        println("Support case $caseIdVal was successfully created!")
    } else {
        println("A support case was not successfully created!")
        exitProcess(1)
    }

    println("***** Step 4. Get open support cases.")
    getOpenCase()

    println("***** Step 5. Create an attachment set with a generated file to add to
 the case.")
    val attachmentSetId = addAttachment(fileAttachment)
    println("The Attachment Set id value is $attachmentSetId")

    println("***** Step 6. Add communication with the attachment to the support
 case.")
    addAttachSupportCase(caseIdVal, attachmentSetId)

    println("***** Step 7. List the communications of the support case.")
    val attachId = listCommunications(caseIdVal)
    println("The Attachment id value is $attachId")

    println("***** Step 8. Describe the attachment set included with the
 communication.")
    describeAttachment(attachId)

    println("***** Step 9. Resolve the support case.")
    resolveSupportCase(caseIdVal)

    println("***** Step 10. Get a list of resolved cases for the current day.")
    getResolvedCase()
    println("***** This Scenario has successfully completed")
}

suspend fun getResolvedCase() {
    // Specify the start and end time.
    val now = Instant.now()
    LocalDate.now()
    val yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS)
    val describeCasesRequest =
        DescribeCasesRequest {
            maxResults = 30
```

```
            afterTime = yesterday.toString()
            beforeTime = now.toString()
            includeResolvedCases = true
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest)
        response.cases?.forEach { sinCase ->
            println("The case status is ${sinCase.status}")
            println("The case Id is ${sinCase.caseId}")
            println("The case subject is ${sinCase.subject}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun resolveSupportCase(caseIdVal: String) {
    val caseRequest =
        ResolveCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
        }
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest)
        println("The status of case $caseIdVal is ${response.finalCaseStatus}")
    }
}

suspend fun describeAttachment(attachId: String?) {
    val attachmentRequest =
        DescribeAttachmentRequest {
            attachmentId = attachId
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest)
        println("The name of the file is ${response.attachment?.fileName}")
    }
}

suspend fun listCommunications(caseIdVal: String?): String? {
    val communicationsRequest =
        DescribeCommunicationsRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            maxResults = 10
        }
```

```
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest)
        response.communications?.forEach { comm ->
            println("the body is: " + comm.body)
            comm.attachmentSet?.forEach { detail ->
                return detail.attachmentId
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}

suspend fun addAttachSupportCase(
    caseIdVal: String?,
    attachmentSetIdVal: String?,
) {
    val caseRequest =
        AddCommunicationToCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            attachmentSetId = attachmentSetIdVal
            communicationBody = "Please refer to attachment for details."
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest)
        if (response.result) {
            println("You have successfully added a communication to an AWS Support
 case")
        } else {
            println("There was an error adding the communication to an AWS Support
 case")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun addAttachment(fileAttachment: String): String? {
    val myFile = File(fileAttachment)
    val sourceBytes = (File(fileAttachment).readBytes())
    val attachmentVal =
        Attachment {
            fileName = myFile.name
            data = sourceBytes
        }
```

```
    val setRequest =
        AddAttachmentsToSetRequest {
            attachments = listOf(attachmentVal)
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest)
        return response.attachmentSetId
    }
}

suspend fun getOpenCase() {
    // Specify the start and end time.
    val now = Instant.now()
    LocalDate.now()
    val yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS)
    val describeCasesRequest =
        DescribeCasesRequest {
            maxResults = 20
            afterTime = yesterday.toString()
            beforeTime = now.toString()
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest)
        response.cases?.forEach { sinCase ->
            println("The case status is ${sinCase.status}")
            println("The case Id is ${sinCase.caseId}")
            println("The case subject is ${sinCase.subject}")
        }
    }
}

suspend fun createSupportCase(
    sevCatListVal: List<String>,
    sevLevelVal: String,
): String? {
    val serCode = sevCatListVal[0]
    val caseCategory = sevCatListVal[1]
    val caseRequest =
        CreateCaseRequest {
            categoryCode = caseCategory.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            serviceCode = serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
```

```
            severityCode = sevLevelVal.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            communicationBody = "Test issue with
 ${serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())}"
            subject = "Test case, please ignore"
            language = "en"
            issueType = "technical"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest)
        return response.caseId
    }
}

suspend fun displaySevLevels(): String {
    var levelName = ""
    val severityLevelsRequest =
        DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest)
        response.severityLevels?.forEach { sevLevel ->
            println("The severity level name is: ${sevLevel.name}")
            if (sevLevel.name == "High") {
                levelName = sevLevel.name!!
            }
        }
        return levelName
    }
}

// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displayServices(): List<String> {
    var serviceCode = ""
    var catName = ""
    val sevCatList = mutableListOf<String>()
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
```

```
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is ${service.name}")
            if (service.name == "Account") {
                serviceCode = service.code.toString()
            }

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                if (cat.name == "Security") {
                    catName = cat.name!!
                }
            }
            index++
        }
    }

    // Push the two values to the list.
    serviceCode.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    catName.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    return sevCatList
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices

- DescribeSeverityLevels
- ResolveCase

Actions

`AddAttachmentsToSet`

The following code example shows how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addAttachment(fileAttachment: String): String? {
    val myFile = File(fileAttachment)
    val sourceBytes = (File(fileAttachment).readBytes())
    val attachmentVal =
        Attachment {
            fileName = myFile.name
            data = sourceBytes
        }

    val setRequest =
        AddAttachmentsToSetRequest {
            attachments = listOf(attachmentVal)
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addAttachmentsToSet(setRequest)
        return response.attachmentSetId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`AddCommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun addAttachSupportCase(
    caseIdVal: String?,
    attachmentSetIdVal: String?,
) {
    val caseRequest =
        AddCommunicationToCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            attachmentSetId = attachmentSetIdVal
            communicationBody = "Please refer to attachment for details."
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.addCommunicationToCase(caseRequest)
        if (response.result) {
            println("You have successfully added a communication to an AWS Support
 case")
        } else {
            println("There was an error adding the communication to an AWS Support
 case")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`CreateCase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCase`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun createSupportCase(
    sevCatListVal: List<String>,
    sevLevelVal: String,
): String? {
    val serCode = sevCatListVal[0]
    val caseCategory = sevCatListVal[1]
    val caseRequest =
        CreateCaseRequest {
            categoryCode = caseCategory.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            serviceCode = serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            severityCode = sevLevelVal.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())
            communicationBody = "Test issue with
 ${serCode.lowercase(Locale.getDefault())}"
            subject = "Test case, please ignore"
            language = "en"
            issueType = "technical"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.createCase(caseRequest)
        return response.caseId
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeAttachment`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun describeAttachment(attachId: String?) {
    val attachmentRequest =
        DescribeAttachmentRequest {
            attachmentId = attachId
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeAttachment(attachmentRequest)
        println("The name of the file is ${response.attachment?.fileName}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeCases`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCases`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun getOpenCase() {
    // Specify the start and end time.
    val now = Instant.now()
    LocalDate.now()
```

```
    val yesterday = now.minus(1, ChronoUnit.DAYS)
    val describeCasesRequest =
        DescribeCasesRequest {
            maxResults = 20
            afterTime = yesterday.toString()
            beforeTime = now.toString()
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCases(describeCasesRequest)
        response.cases?.forEach { sinCase ->
            println("The case status is ${sinCase.status}")
            println("The case Id is ${sinCase.caseId}")
            println("The case subject is ${sinCase.subject}")
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeCommunications`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun listCommunications(caseIdVal: String?): String? {
    val communicationsRequest =
        DescribeCommunicationsRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
            maxResults = 10
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeCommunications(communicationsRequest)
```

```
        response.communications?.forEach { comm ->
            println("the body is: " + comm.body)
            comm.attachmentSet?.forEach { detail ->
                return detail.attachmentId
            }
        }
    }
    return ""
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeServices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeServices`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
// Return a List that contains a Service name and Category name.
suspend fun displayServices(): List<String> {
    var serviceCode = ""
    var catName = ""
    val sevCatList = mutableListOf<String>()
    val servicesRequest =
        DescribeServicesRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeServices(servicesRequest)
        println("Get the first 10 services")
        var index = 1

        response.services?.forEach { service ->
            if (index == 11) {
```

```
                return@forEach
            }

            println("The Service name is ${service.name}")
            if (service.name == "Account") {
                serviceCode = service.code.toString()
            }

            // Get the categories for this service.
            service.categories?.forEach { cat ->
                println("The category name is ${cat.name}")
                if (cat.name == "Security") {
                    catName = cat.name!!
                }
            }
            index++
        }
    }

    // Push the two values to the list.
    serviceCode.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    catName.let { sevCatList.add(it) }
    return sevCatList
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`DescribeSeverityLevels`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun displaySevLevels(): String {
    var levelName = ""
```

```
    val severityLevelsRequest =
        DescribeSeverityLevelsRequest {
            language = "en"
        }

    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.describeSeverityLevels(severityLevelsRequest)
        response.severityLevels?.forEach { sevLevel ->
            println("The severity level name is: ${sevLevel.name}")
            if (sevLevel.name == "High") {
                levelName = sevLevel.name!!
            }
        }
        return levelName
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

`ResolveCase`

The following code example shows how to use `ResolveCase`.

SDK for Kotlin

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
suspend fun resolveSupportCase(caseIdVal: String) {
    val caseRequest =
        ResolveCaseRequest {
            caseId = caseIdVal
        }
    SupportClient.fromEnvironment { region = "us-west-2" }.use { supportClient ->
        val response = supportClient.resolveCase(caseRequest)
        println("The status of case $caseIdVal is ${response.finalCaseStatus}")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for Kotlin API reference*.

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for Kotlin

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Kotlin with Amazon Translate.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Building an Amazon SNS application

The following code example shows how to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality and translates messages.

SDK for Kotlin

Shows how to use the Amazon SNS Kotlin API to create an application that has subscription and publish functionality. In addition, this example application also translates messages.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a web app, see the full example on GitHub.

For complete source code and instructions on how to create a native Android app, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon SNS

- Amazon Translate

Code examples for SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for PHP with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for PHP Developer Guide** – More about using PHP with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- API Gateway examples using SDK for PHP
- Aurora examples using SDK for PHP
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for PHP
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for PHP
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for PHP
- IAM examples using SDK for PHP
- Kinesis examples using SDK for PHP

- AWS KMS examples using SDK for PHP
- Lambda examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for PHP
- S3 Directory Buckets examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for PHP
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for PHP

API Gateway examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with API Gateway.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`GetBasePathMapping`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBasePathMapping`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\ApiGateway\ApiGatewayClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


/* ///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
 * Purpose: Gets the base path mapping for a custom domain name in
 * Amazon API Gateway.
 *
 * Prerequisites: A custom domain name in API Gateway. For more information,
 * see "Custom Domain Names" in the Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide.
 *
 * Inputs:
 * - $apiGatewayClient: An initialized AWS SDK for PHP API client for
 *   API Gateway.
 * - $basePath: The base path name that callers must provide as part of the
 *   URL after the domain name.
 * - $domainName: The custom domain name for the base path mapping.
 *
 * Returns: The base path mapping, if available; otherwise, the error message.
 * /////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////// */

function getBasePathMapping($apiGatewayClient, $basePath, $domainName)
{
    try {
        $result = $apiGatewayClient->getBasePathMapping([
            'basePath' => $basePath,
            'domainName' => $domainName,
        ]);
        return 'The base path mapping\'s effective URI is: ' .
            $result['@metadata']['effectiveUri'];
    } catch (AwsException $e) {
        return 'Error: ' . $e['message'];
```

```
    }
}

function getsTheBasePathMapping()
{
    $apiGatewayClient = new ApiGatewayClient([
        'profile' => 'default',
        'region' => 'us-east-1',
        'version' => '2015-07-09'
    ]);

    echo getBasePathMapping($apiGatewayClient, '(none)', 'example.com');
}

// Uncomment the following line to run this code in an AWS account.
// getsTheBasePathMapping();
```

- For API details, see GetBasePathMapping in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListBasePathMappings`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBasePathMappings`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\ApiGateway\ApiGatewayClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


/* ///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
 * Purpose: Lists the base path mapping for a custom domain name in
 * Amazon API Gateway.
```

```
 *
 * Prerequisites: A custom domain name in API Gateway. For more information,
 * see "Custom Domain Names" in the Amazon API Gateway Developer Guide.
 *
 * Inputs:
 * - $apiGatewayClient: An initialized AWS SDK for PHP API client for
 *   API Gateway.
 * - $domainName: The custom domain name for the base path mappings.
 *
 * Returns: Information about the base path mappings, if available;
 * otherwise, the error message.
 * ////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////// */

function listBasePathMappings($apiGatewayClient, $domainName)
{
    try {
        $result = $apiGatewayClient->getBasePathMappings([
            'domainName' => $domainName
        ]);
        return 'The base path mapping(s) effective URI is: ' .
            $result['@metadata']['effectiveUri'];
    } catch (AwsException $e) {
        return 'Error: ' . $e['message'];
    }
}

function listTheBasePathMappings()
{
    $apiGatewayClient = new ApiGatewayClient([
        'profile' => 'default',
        'region' => 'us-east-1',
        'version' => '2015-07-09'
    ]);

    echo listBasePathMappings($apiGatewayClient, 'example.com');
}

// Uncomment the following line to run this code in an AWS account.
// listTheBasePathMappings();
```

- For API details, see ListBasePathMappings in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

UpdateBasePathMapping

The following code example shows how to use UpdateBasePathMapping.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\ApiGateway\ApiGatewayClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


/* ///////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////
 *
 * Purpose: Updates the base path mapping for a custom domain name
 * in Amazon API Gateway.
 *
 * Inputs:
 * - $apiGatewayClient: An initialized AWS SDK for PHP API client for
 *   API Gateway.
 * - $basePath: The base path name that callers must provide as part of the
 *   URL after the domain name.
 * - $domainName: The custom domain name for the base path mapping.
 * - $patchOperations: The base path update operations to apply.
 *
 * Returns: Information about the updated base path mapping, if available;
 * otherwise, the error message.
 * ////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////////// */

function updateBasePathMapping(
    $apiGatewayClient,
    $basePath,
    $domainName,
    $patchOperations
) {
    try {
        $result = $apiGatewayClient->updateBasePathMapping([
```

```
            'basePath' => $basePath,
            'domainName' => $domainName,
            'patchOperations' => $patchOperations
        ]);
        return 'The updated base path\'s URI is: ' .
            $result['@metadata']['effectiveUri'];
    } catch (AwsException $e) {
        return 'Error: ' . $e['message'];
    }
}

function updateTheBasePathMapping()
{
    $patchOperations = array([
        'op' => 'replace',
        'path' => '/stage',
        'value' => 'stage2'
    ]);

    $apiGatewayClient = new ApiGatewayClient([
        'profile' => 'default',
        'region' => 'us-east-1',
        'version' => '2015-07-09'
    ]);

    echo updateBasePathMapping(
        $apiGatewayClient,
        '(none)',
        'example.com',
        $patchOperations
    );
}

// Uncomment the following line to run this code in an AWS account.
// updateTheBasePathMapping();
```

- For API details, see UpdateBasePathMapping in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Aurora examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Aurora.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function helloService()
{
    $autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient([
        'region' => 'us-west-2',
        'version' => 'latest',
        'profile' => 'default',
    ]);

    $groups = $autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([]);
    var_dump($groups);
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace AutoScaling;

use Aws\AutoScaling\AutoScalingClient;
use Aws\CloudWatch\CloudWatchClient;
use Aws\Ec2\Ec2Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use AwsUtilities\RunnableExample;

class GettingStartedWithAutoScaling implements RunnableExample
{
    protected Ec2Client $ec2Client;
    protected AutoScalingClient $autoScalingClient;
    protected AutoScalingService $autoScalingService;
    protected CloudWatchClient $cloudWatchClient;
    protected string $templateName;
    protected string $autoScalingGroupName;
    protected array $role;

    public function runExample()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
```

```
        print("Welcome to the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling getting started demo using
 PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $clientArgs = [
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ];
        $uniqid = uniqid();

        $this->autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient($clientArgs);
        $this->autoScalingService = new AutoScalingService($this-
>autoScalingClient);
        $this->cloudWatchClient = new CloudWatchClient($clientArgs);

        AWSServiceClass::$waitTime = 5;
        AWSServiceClass::$maxWaitAttempts = 20;

        /**
         * Step 0: Create an EC2 launch template that you'll use to create an Auto
 Scaling group.
         */
        $this->ec2Client = new EC2Client($clientArgs);
        $this->templateName = "example_launch_template_$uniqid";
        $instanceType = "t1.micro";
        $amiId = "ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300";
        $launchTemplate = $this->ec2Client->createLaunchTemplate(
            [
            'LaunchTemplateName' => $this->templateName,
            'LaunchTemplateData' => [
                'InstanceType' => $instanceType,
                'ImageId' => $amiId,
            ]
            ]
        );

        /**
         * Step 1: CreateAutoScalingGroup: pass it the launch template you created
 in step 0.
         */
        $availabilityZones[] = $this->ec2Client->describeAvailabilityZones([])
['AvailabilityZones'][1]['ZoneName'];
```

```
        $this->autoScalingGroupName = "demoAutoScalingGroupName_$uniqid";
        $minSize = 1;
        $maxSize = 1;
        $launchTemplateId = $launchTemplate['LaunchTemplate']['LaunchTemplateId'];
        $this->autoScalingService->createAutoScalingGroup(
            $this->autoScalingGroupName,
            $availabilityZones,
            $minSize,
            $maxSize,
            $launchTemplateId
        );

        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);
        $autoScalingGroup = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);

        /**
         * Step 2: DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that one instance has
 launched.
         */
        $instanceIds = [$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['Instances'][0]
['InstanceId']];
        $instances = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingInstances($instanceIds);
        echo "The Auto Scaling group {$this->autoScalingGroupName} was created
 successfully.\n";
        echo count($instances['AutoScalingInstances']) . " instances were created
 for the group.\n";
        echo $autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['MaxSize'] . " is the max
 number of instances for the group.\n";

        /**
         * Step 3: EnableMetricsCollection: enable all metrics or a subset.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->enableMetricsCollection($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, "1Minute");

        /**
         * Step 4: UpdateAutoScalingGroup: update max size to 3.
         */
        echo "Updating the max number of instances to 3.\n";
        $this->autoScalingService->updateAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, ['MaxSize' => 3]);
```

```
        /**
         * Step 5: DescribeAutoScalingGroups: show the current state of the group.
         */
        $autoScalingGroup = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);
        echo $autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['MaxSize'];
        echo " is the updated max number of instances for the group.\n";

        $limits = $this->autoScalingService->describeAccountLimits();
        echo "Here are your account limits:\n";
        echo "MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups:
 {$limits['MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups']}\n";
        echo "MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations:
 {$limits['MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations']}\n";
        echo "NumberOfAutoScalingGroups: {$limits['NumberOfAutoScalingGroups']}\n";
        echo "NumberOfLaunchConfigurations:
 {$limits['NumberOfLaunchConfigurations']}\n";

        /**
         * Step 6: SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->setDesiredCapacity($this->autoScalingGroupName,
 2);
        sleep(10); // Wait for the group to start processing the request.
        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);

        /**
         * Step 7: DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that two instances are
 launched.
         */
        $autoScalingGroups = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);
        foreach ($autoScalingGroups['AutoScalingGroups'] as $autoScalingGroup) {
            echo "There is a group named:
 {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']}";
            echo "with an ARN of {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupARN']}.\n";
            foreach ($autoScalingGroup['Instances'] as $instance) {
                echo "{$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']} has an instance
 with id of: ";
                echo "{$instance['InstanceId']} and a lifecycle state of:
 {$instance['LifecycleState']}.\n";
            }
```

```
        }

        /**
         * Step 8: TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup: terminate one of the
 instances in the group.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService-
>terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup($instance['InstanceId'], false);
        do {
            sleep(10);
            $instances = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingInstances([$instance['InstanceId']]);
        } while (count($instances['AutoScalingInstances']) > 0);
        do {
            sleep(10);
            $autoScalingGroups = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeAutoScalingGroups([$this->autoScalingGroupName]);
            $instances = $autoScalingGroups['AutoScalingGroups'][0]['Instances'];
        } while (count($instances) < 2);
        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);
        foreach ($autoScalingGroups['AutoScalingGroups'] as $autoScalingGroup) {
            echo "There is a group named:
 {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']}";
            echo "with an ARN of {$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupARN']}.\n";
            foreach ($autoScalingGroup['Instances'] as $instance) {
                echo "{$autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']} has an instance
 with id of: ";
                echo "{$instance['InstanceId']} and a lifecycle state of:
 {$instance['LifecycleState']}.\n";
            }
        }

        /**
         * Step 9: DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have
 occurred for the group so far.
         */
        $activities = $this->autoScalingService-
>describeScalingActivities($autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName']);
        echo "We found " . count($activities['Activities']) . " activities.\n";
        foreach ($activities['Activities'] as $activity) {
            echo "{$activity['ActivityId']} - {$activity['StartTime']} -
 {$activity['Description']}\n";
        }
```

```
        /**
         * Step 10: Use the Amazon CloudWatch API to get and show some metrics
 collected for the group.
         */
        $metricsNamespace = 'AWS/AutoScaling';
        $metricsDimensions = [
            [
                'Name' => 'AutoScalingGroupName',
                'Value' => $autoScalingGroup['AutoScalingGroupName'],
            ],
        ];
        $metrics = $this->cloudWatchClient->listMetrics(
            [
            'Dimensions' => $metricsDimensions,
            'Namespace' => $metricsNamespace,
            ]
        );
        foreach ($metrics['Metrics'] as $metric) {
            $timespan = 5;
            if ($metric['MetricName'] != 'GroupTotalCapacity' &&
 $metric['MetricName'] != 'GroupMaxSize') {
                continue;
            }
            echo "Over the last $timespan minutes, {$metric['MetricName']} recorded:
\n";
            $stats = $this->cloudWatchClient->getMetricStatistics(
                [
                'Dimensions' => $metricsDimensions,
                'EndTime' => time(),
                'StartTime' => time() - (5 * 60),
                'MetricName' => $metric['MetricName'],
                'Namespace' => $metricsNamespace,
                'Period' => 60,
                'Statistics' => ['Sum'],
                ]
            );
            foreach ($stats['Datapoints'] as $stat) {
                echo "{$stat['Timestamp']}: {$stat['Sum']}\n";
            }
        }

        return $instances;
    }
```

```
    public function cleanUp()
    {
        /**
         * Step 11: DisableMetricsCollection: disable all metrics.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->disableMetricsCollection($this-
>autoScalingGroupName);

        /**
         * Step 12: DeleteAutoScalingGroup: to delete the group you must stop all
 instances.
         * - UpdateAutoScalingGroup with MinSize=0
         * - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup for each instance,
         *     specify ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=True. Wait for instances to
 stop.
         * - Now you can delete the group.
         */
        $this->autoScalingService->updateAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName, ['MinSize' => 0]);
        $this->autoScalingService->terminateAllInstancesInAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName);
        $this->autoScalingService->waitUntilGroupInService([$this-
>autoScalingGroupName]);
        $this->autoScalingService->deleteAutoScalingGroup($this-
>autoScalingGroupName);

        /**
         * Step 13: Delete launch template.
         */
        $this->ec2Client->deleteLaunchTemplate(
            [
            'LaunchTemplateName' => $this->templateName,
            ]
        );
    }

    public function helloService()
    {
        $autoScalingClient = new AutoScalingClient([
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ]);
```

```
        $groups = $autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([]);
        var_dump($groups);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function createAutoScalingGroup(
        $autoScalingGroupName,
        $availabilityZones,
        $minSize,
```

```
        $maxSize,
        $launchTemplateId
    ) {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->createAutoScalingGroup([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'AvailabilityZones' => $availabilityZones,
            'MinSize' => $minSize,
            'MaxSize' => $maxSize,
            'LaunchTemplate' => [
                'LaunchTemplateId' => $launchTemplateId,
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function deleteAutoScalingGroup($autoScalingGroupName)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->deleteAutoScalingGroup([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'ForceDelete' => true,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function describeAutoScalingGroups($autoScalingGroupNames)
{
    return $this->autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingGroups([
        'AutoScalingGroupNames' => $autoScalingGroupNames
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function describeAutoScalingInstances($instanceIds)
{
    return $this->autoScalingClient->describeAutoScalingInstances([
        'InstanceIds' => $instanceIds
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function describeScalingActivities($autoScalingGroupName)
{
    return $this->autoScalingClient->describeScalingActivities([
        'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function disableMetricsCollection($autoScalingGroupName)
```

```
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->disableMetricsCollection([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function enableMetricsCollection($autoScalingGroupName, $granularity)
    {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->enableMetricsCollection([
            'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
            'Granularity' => $granularity,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function setDesiredCapacity($autoScalingGroupName, $desiredCapacity)
{
    return $this->autoScalingClient->setDesiredCapacity([
        'AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName,
        'DesiredCapacity' => $desiredCapacity,
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(
    $instanceId,
    $shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity = true,
    $attempts = 0
) {
    try {
        return $this->autoScalingClient->terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup([
            'InstanceId' => $instanceId,
            'ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity' => $shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity,
```

```
            ]);
        } catch (AutoScalingException $exception) {
            if ($exception->getAwsErrorCode() == "ScalingActivityInProgress" &&
$attempts < 5) {
                error_log("Cannot terminate an instance while it is still pending.
Waiting then trying again.");
                sleep(5 * (1 + $attempts));
                return $this->terminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup(
                    $instanceId,
                    $shouldDecrementDesiredCapacity,
                    ++$attempts
                );
            } else {
                throw $exception;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function updateAutoScalingGroup($autoScalingGroupName, $args)
    {
        if (array_key_exists('MaxSize', $args)) {
            $maxSize = ['MaxSize' => $args['MaxSize']];
        } else {
            $maxSize = [];
        }
        if (array_key_exists('MinSize', $args)) {
            $minSize = ['MinSize' => $args['MinSize']];
```

```
        } else {
            $minSize = [];
        }
        $parameters = ['AutoScalingGroupName' => $autoScalingGroupName];
        $parameters = array_merge($parameters, $minSize, $maxSize);
        return $this->autoScalingClient->updateAutoScalingGroup($parameters);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

```
    public function listFoundationModels()
    {
        $bedrockClient = new BedrockClient([
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'profile' => 'default'
        ]);
        $response = $bedrockClient->listFoundationModels();
        return $response['modelSummaries'];
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Titan Image Generator
- Anthropic Claude
- Stable Diffusion

Scenarios

Invoke multiple foundation models on Amazon Bedrock

The following code example shows how to prepare and send a prompt to a variety of large-language models (LLMs) on Amazon Bedrock

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke multiple LLMs on Amazon Bedrock.

```
namespace BedrockRuntime;

class GettingStartedWithBedrockRuntime
{
    protected BedrockRuntimeService $bedrockRuntimeService;
    public function runExample()
    {
        echo "\n";
        echo "----------------------------------------------------------------------
\n";
        echo "Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Runtime getting started demo using PHP!
\n";
        echo "----------------------------------------------------------------------
\n";
        $bedrockRuntimeService = new BedrockRuntimeService();
        $prompt = 'In one paragraph, who are you?';
        echo "\nPrompt: " . $prompt;
        echo "\n\nAnthropic Claude:\n";
        echo $bedrockRuntimeService->invokeClaude($prompt);
        echo
 "\n----------------------------------------------------------------------\n";
        $image_prompt = 'stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot';
        echo "\nImage prompt: " . $image_prompt;
        echo "\n\nStability.ai Stable Diffusion XL:\n";
        $diffusionSeed = rand(0, 4294967295);
        $style_preset = 'photographic';
        $base64 = $bedrockRuntimeService->invokeStableDiffusion($image_prompt,
 $diffusionSeed, $style_preset);
        $image_path = $this->saveImage($base64, 'stability.stable-diffusion-xl');
        echo "The generated image has been saved to $image_path";
        echo "\n\nAmazon Titan Image Generation:\n";
        $titanSeed = rand(0, 2147483647);
```

```
        $base64 = $bedrockRuntimeService->invokeTitanImage($image_prompt,
 $titanSeed);
        $image_path = $this->saveImage($base64, 'amazon.titan-image-generator-v1');
        echo "The generated image has been saved to $image_path";
    }

    private function saveImage($base64_image_data, $model_id): string
    {
        $output_dir = "output";
        if (!file_exists($output_dir)) {
            mkdir($output_dir);
        }

        $i = 1;
        while (file_exists("$output_dir/$model_id" . '_' . "$i.png")) {
            $i++;
        }

        $image_data = base64_decode($base64_image_data);
        $file_path = "$output_dir/$model_id" . '_' . "$i.png";
        $file = fopen($file_path, 'wb');
        fwrite($file, $image_data);
        fclose($file);
        return $file_path;
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - InvokeModel
  - InvokeModelWithResponseStream

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

use Aws\BedrockRuntime\BedrockRuntimeClient;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use RuntimeException;

class Converse
{
    public function converse(): string
    {
        // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
        $client = new BedrockRuntimeClient([
            'region' => 'us-east-1',
            'profile' => 'default'
        ]);

        // Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
        $modelId = 'amazon.nova-lite-v1:0';

        // Start a conversation with the user message.
        $userMessage = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";
        $conversation = [
            [
                "role" => "user",
                "content" => [["text" => $userMessage]]
            ]
        ];

        try {
            // Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
            $response = $client->converse([
                'modelId' => $modelId,
```

```
                'messages' => $conversation,
                'inferenceConfig' => [
                    'maxTokens' => 512,
                    'temperature' => 0.5
                ]
            ]);

            // Extract and return the response text.
            $responseText = $response['output']['message']['content'][0]['text'];
            return $responseText;
        } catch (AwsException $e) {
            echo "ERROR: Can't invoke {$modelId}. Reason: {$e-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}";
            throw new RuntimeException("Failed to invoke model: " . $e-
>getAwsErrorMessage(), 0, $e);
        }
    }
}

$demo = new Converse();
echo $demo->converse();
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Image Generator

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
    public function invokeTitanImage(string $prompt, int $seed)
    {
        // The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        // For the format, ranges, and default values for Titan Image models refer
 to:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
titan-image.html

        $base64_image_data = "";
        try {
            $modelId = 'amazon.titan-image-generator-v1';
            $request = json_encode([
                'taskType' => 'TEXT_IMAGE',
                'textToImageParams' => [
                    'text' => $prompt
                ],
                'imageGenerationConfig' => [
                    'numberOfImages' => 1,
                    'quality' => 'standard',
                    'cfgScale' => 8.0,
                    'height' => 512,
                    'width' => 512,
                    'seed' => $seed
                ]
            ]);
            $result = $this->bedrockRuntimeClient->invokeModel([
                'contentType' => 'application/json',
                'body' => $request,
                'modelId' => $modelId,
            ]);
            $response_body = json_decode($result['body']);
            $base64_image_data = $response_body->images[0];
        } catch (Exception $e) {
            echo "Error: ({$e->getCode()}) - {$e->getMessage()}\n";
        }

        return $base64_image_data;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text.

```
    public function invokeClaude($prompt)
    {
        // The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        // For the format, ranges, and default values for Anthropic Claude, refer
 to:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
claude.html

        $completion = "";
        try {
            $modelId = 'anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0';
        // Claude requires you to enclose the prompt as follows:
            $body = [
                'anthropic_version' => 'bedrock-2023-05-31',
                'max_tokens' => 512,
                'temperature' => 0.5,
                'messages' => [[
                    'role' => 'user',
                    'content' => $prompt
                ]]
            ];
            $result = $this->bedrockRuntimeClient->invokeModel([
                'contentType' => 'application/json',
                'body' => json_encode($body),
```

```
                'modelId' => $modelId,
            ]);
            $response_body = json_decode($result['body']);
            $completion = $response_body->content[0]->text;
        } catch (Exception $e) {
            echo "Error: ({$e->getCode()}) - {$e->getMessage()}\n";
        }

        return $completion;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Stable Diffusion

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
    public function invokeStableDiffusion(string $prompt, int $seed, string
 $style_preset)
    {
        // The different model providers have individual request and response
 formats.
        // For the format, ranges, and available style_presets of Stable Diffusion
 models refer to:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
stability-diffusion.html
```

```
        $base64_image_data = "";
        try {
            $modelId = 'stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1';
            $body = [
                'text_prompts' => [
                    ['text' => $prompt]
                ],
                'seed' => $seed,
                'cfg_scale' => 10,
                'steps' => 30
            ];
            if ($style_preset) {
                $body['style_preset'] = $style_preset;
            }

            $result = $this->bedrockRuntimeClient->invokeModel([
                'contentType' => 'application/json',
                'body' => json_encode($body),
                'modelId' => $modelId,
            ]);
            $response_body = json_decode($result['body']);
            $base64_image_data = $response_body->artifacts[0]->base64;
        } catch (Exception $e) {
            echo "Error: ({$e->getCode()}) - {$e->getMessage()}\n";
        }

        return $base64_image_data;
    }
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

require __DIR__.'/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler;

class DocumentDBEventHandler implements Handler
{
    public function handle($event, Context $context): string
    {

        $events = $event['events'] ?? [];
        foreach ($events as $record) {
            $this->logDocumentDBEvent($record['event']);
        }
        return 'OK';
    }

    private function logDocumentDBEvent($event): void
    {
        // Extract information from the event record

        $operationType = $event['operationType'] ?? 'Unknown';
```

```
        $db = $event['ns']['db'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $collection = $event['ns']['coll'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $fullDocument = $event['fullDocument'] ?? [];

        // Log the event details

        echo "Operation type: $operationType\n";
        echo "Database: $db\n";
        echo "Collection: $collection\n";
        echo "Full document: " . json_encode($fullDocument, JSON_PRETTY_PRINT) .
 "\n";
    }
}
return new DocumentDBEventHandler();
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace DynamoDb\Basics;

use Aws\DynamoDb\Marshaler;
use DynamoDb;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBAttribute;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBService;

use function AwsUtilities\loadMovieData;
use function AwsUtilities\testable_readline;

class GettingStartedWithDynamoDB
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
```

```
        $uuid = uniqid();
        $service = new DynamoDBService();

        $tableName = "ddb_demo_table_$uuid";
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

        echo "Waiting for table...";
        $service->dynamoDbClient->waitUntil("TableExists", ['TableName' =>
$tableName]);
        echo "table $tableName found!\n";

        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }

        $service->putItem([
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
            ],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);

        echo "How would you rate the movie from 1-10?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
$rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
```

```
        }
        echo "What was the movie about?\n";
        while (empty($plot)) {
            $plot = testable_readline("Plot summary: ");
        }
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
                'year' => [
                    'N' => $movieYear,
                ],
            ]
        ];
        $attributes = ["rating" =>
            [
                'AttributeName' => 'rating',
                'AttributeType' => 'N',
                'Value' => $rating,
            ],
            'plot' => [
                'AttributeName' => 'plot',
                'AttributeType' => 'S',
                'Value' => $plot,
            ]
        ];
        $service->updateItemAttributesByKey($tableName, $key, $attributes);
        echo "Movie added and updated.";

        $batch = json_decode(loadMovieData());

        $service->writeBatch($tableName, $batch);


        $movie = $service->getItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Item']['title']['S']} was released in
{$movie['Item']['year']['N']}.\n";
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Item']['title']['S']}?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
$rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
```

```
        $service->updateItemAttributeByKey($tableName, $key, 'rating', 'N',
 $rating);

        $movie = $service->getItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "Ok, you have rated {$movie['Item']['title']['S']} as a {$movie['Item']
['rating']['N']}\n";

        $service->deleteItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
 because of your rating...harsh.\n";

        echo "That's okay though. The book was better. Now, for something lighter,
 in what year were you born?\n";
        $birthYear = "not a number";
        while (!is_numeric($birthYear) || $birthYear >= date("Y")) {
            $birthYear = testable_readline("Birth year: ");
        }
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        echo "Here are the movies in our collection released the year you were born:
\n";
        $oops = "Oops! There were no movies released in that year (that we know of).
\n";
        $display = "";
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            $display .= $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }
        echo ($display) ?: $oops;

        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
```

```
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "\nCleaning up this demo by deleting table $tableName...\n";
        $service->deleteTable($tableName);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function getItemByPartiQLBatch(string $tableName, array $keys): Result
    {
        $statements = [];
        foreach ($keys as $key) {
            list($statement, $parameters) = $this-
>buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT", $tableName, $key['Item']);
            $statements[] = [
                'Statement' => "$statement",
                'Parameters' => $parameters,
            ];
        }

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => $statements,
        ]);
    }

    public function insertItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
```

```
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function writeBatch(string $TableName, array $Batch, int $depth = 2)
    {
        if (--$depth <= 0) {
            throw new Exception("Max depth exceeded. Please try with fewer batch
items or increase depth.");
        }
```

```
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        $total = 0;
        foreach (array_chunk($Batch, 25) as $Items) {
            foreach ($Items as $Item) {
                $BatchWrite['RequestItems'][$TableName][] = ['PutRequest' => ['Item'
=> $marshal->marshalItem($Item)]];
            }
            try {
                echo "Batching another " . count($Items) . " for a total of " .
($total += count($Items)) . " items!\n";
                $response = $this->dynamoDbClient->batchWriteItem($BatchWrite);
                $BatchWrite = [];
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                echo "uh oh...";
                echo $e->getMessage();
                die();
            }
            if ($total >= 250) {
                echo "250 movies is probably enough. Right? We can stop there.\n";
                break;
            }
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a table.

```
        $tableName = "ddb_demo_table_$uuid";
```

```
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

    public function createTable(string $tableName, array $attributes)
    {
        $keySchema = [];
        $attributeDefinitions = [];
        foreach ($attributes as $attribute) {
            if (is_a($attribute, DynamoDBAttribute::class)) {
                $keySchema[] = ['AttributeName' => $attribute->AttributeName,
'KeyType' => $attribute->KeyType];
                $attributeDefinitions[] =
                    ['AttributeName' => $attribute->AttributeName, 'AttributeType'
=> $attribute->AttributeType];
            }
        }

        $this->dynamoDbClient->createTable([
            'TableName' => $tableName,
            'KeySchema' => $keySchema,
            'AttributeDefinitions' => $attributeDefinitions,
            'ProvisionedThroughput' => ['ReadCapacityUnits' => 10,
'WriteCapacityUnits' => 10],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
                'year' => [
                    'N' => $movieYear,
                ],
            ]
        ];

        $service->deleteItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
because of your rating...harsh.\n";

    public function deleteItemByKey(string $tableName, array $key)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->deleteItem([
            'Key' => $key['Item'],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function deleteTable(string $TableName)
{
    $this->customWaiter(function () use ($TableName) {
        return $this->dynamoDbClient->deleteTable([
            'TableName' => $TableName,
        ]);
    });
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function insertItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
{
    $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
        'Statement' => "$statement",
        'Parameters' => $parameters,
    ]);
}
```

```
    public function getItemByPartiQL(string $tableName, array $key): Result
    {
        list($statement, $parameters) = $this->buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT",
$tableName, $key['Item']);

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
            'Statement' => $statement,
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $movie = $service->getItemByKey($tableName, $key);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Item']['title']['S']} was released in
{$movie['Item']['year']['N']}.\n";

    public function getItemByKey(string $tableName, array $key)
    {
        return $this->dynamoDbClient->getItem([
            'Key' => $key['Item'],
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function listTables($exclusiveStartTableName = "", $limit = 100)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->listTables([
            'ExclusiveStartTableName' => $exclusiveStartTableName,
            'Limit' => $limit,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
    while (empty($movieName)) {
        $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
    }
    echo "And what year was it released?\n";
    $movieYear = "year";
    while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
        $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
    }

    $service->putItem([
        'Item' => [
            'year' => [
                'N' => "$movieYear",
            ],
            'title' => [
                'S' => $movieName,
            ],
        ],
        'TableName' => $tableName,
    ]);

public function putItem(array $array)
{
    $this->dynamoDbClient->putItem($array);
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);

    public function query(string $tableName, $key)
    {
        $expressionAttributeValues = [];
        $expressionAttributeNames = [];
        $keyConditionExpression = "";
        $index = 1;
        foreach ($key as $name => $value) {
            $keyConditionExpression .= "#" . array_key_first($value) . " = :v
$index,";
            $expressionAttributeNames["#" . array_key_first($value)] =
 array_key_first($value);
            $hold = array_pop($value);
            $expressionAttributeValues[":v$index"] = [
                array_key_first($hold) => array_pop($hold),
            ];
        }
        $keyConditionExpression = substr($keyConditionExpression, 0, -1);
        $query = [
            'ExpressionAttributeValues' => $expressionAttributeValues,
            'ExpressionAttributeNames' => $expressionAttributeNames,
            'KeyConditionExpression' => $keyConditionExpression,
            'TableName' => $tableName,
```

```
        ];
        return $this->dynamoDbClient->query($query);
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

    public function scan(string $tableName, array $key, string $filters)
    {
        $query = [
            'ExpressionAttributeNames' => ['#year' => 'year'],
            'ExpressionAttributeValues' => [
```

```
                ":min" => ['N' => '1990'],
                ":max" => ['N' => '1999'],
            ],
            'FilterExpression' => "#year between :min and :max",
            'TableName' => $tableName,
        ];
        return $this->dynamoDbClient->scan($query);
    }
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Item']['title']['S']}?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
$rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $service->updateItemAttributeByKey($tableName, $key, 'rating', 'N',
$rating);

    public function updateItemAttributeByKey(
        string $tableName,
        array $key,
        string $attributeName,
        string $attributeType,
        string $newValue
    ) {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->updateItem([
            'Key' => $key['Item'],
```

```
            'TableName' => $tableName,
            'UpdateExpression' => "set #NV=:NV",
            'ExpressionAttributeNames' => [
                '#NV' => $attributeName,
            ],
            'ExpressionAttributeValues' => [
                ':NV' => [
                    $attributeType => $newValue
                ]
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace DynamoDb\PartiQL_Basics;

use Aws\DynamoDb\Marshaler;
use DynamoDb;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBAttribute;

use function AwsUtilities\loadMovieData;
use function AwsUtilities\testable_readline;

class GettingStartedWithPartiQLBatch
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB - PartiQL getting started demo using
 PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $uuid = uniqid();
        $service = new DynamoDb\DynamoDBService();

        $tableName = "partiql_demo_table_$uuid";
```

```
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

        echo "Waiting for table...";
        $service->dynamoDbClient->waitUntil("TableExists", ['TableName' =>
 $tableName]);
        echo "table $tableName found!\n";

        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
                ],
            ],
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("INSERT", $tableName, $key);
        $service->insertItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);

        echo "How would you rate the movie from 1-10?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
 $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        echo "What was the movie about?\n";
        while (empty($plot)) {
```

```
            $plot = testable_readline("Plot summary: ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot),
        ];

        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);
        echo "Movie added and updated.\n";

        $batch = json_decode(loadMovieData());

        $service->writeBatch($tableName, $batch);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQLBatch($tableName, [$key]);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['title']['S']}
        was released in {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['year']['N']}.\n";
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']
['title']['S']}?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
 $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot)
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQLBatch($tableName, [$key]);
        echo "Okay, you have rated {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['title']['S']}
        as a {$movie['Responses'][0]['Item']['rating']['N']}\n";

        $service->deleteItemByPartiQLBatch($statement, $parameters);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
 because of your rating...harsh.\n";

        echo "That's okay though. The book was better. Now, for something lighter,
 in what year were you born?\n";
```

```
        $birthYear = "not a number";
        while (!is_numeric($birthYear) || $birthYear >= date("Y")) {
            $birthYear = testable_readline("Birth year: ");
        }
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        echo "Here are the movies in our collection released the year you were born:
\n";
        $oops = "Oops! There were no movies released in that year (that we know of).
\n";
        $display = "";
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            $display .= $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }
        echo ($display) ?: $oops;

        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "\nCleaning up this demo by deleting table $tableName...\n";
        $service->deleteTable($tableName);
```

```
    }
}

    public function insertItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function getItemByPartiQLBatch(string $tableName, array $keys): Result
    {
        $statements = [];
        foreach ($keys as $key) {
            list($statement, $parameters) = $this-
>buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT", $tableName, $key['Item']);
            $statements[] = [
                'Statement' => "$statement",
                'Parameters' => $parameters,
            ];
        }

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => $statements,
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

```
    public function deleteItemByPartiQLBatch(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->batchExecuteStatement([
            'Statements' => [
                [
                    'Statement' => "$statement",
                    'Parameters' => $parameters,
                ],
            ],
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace DynamoDb\PartiQL_Basics;

use Aws\DynamoDb\Marshaler;
use DynamoDb;
use DynamoDb\DynamoDBAttribute;

use function AwsUtilities\testable_readline;
use function AwsUtilities\loadMovieData;
```

```
class GettingStartedWithPartiQL
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB - PartiQL getting started demo using
 PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $uuid = uniqid();
        $service = new DynamoDb\DynamoDBService();

        $tableName = "partiql_demo_table_$uuid";
        $service->createTable(
            $tableName,
            [
                new DynamoDBAttribute('year', 'N', 'HASH'),
                new DynamoDBAttribute('title', 'S', 'RANGE')
            ]
        );

        echo "Waiting for table...";
        $service->dynamoDbClient->waitUntil("TableExists", ['TableName' =>
 $tableName]);
        echo "table $tableName found!\n";

        echo "What's the name of the last movie you watched?\n";
        while (empty($movieName)) {
            $movieName = testable_readline("Movie name: ");
        }
        echo "And what year was it released?\n";
        $movieYear = "year";
        while (!is_numeric($movieYear) || intval($movieYear) != $movieYear) {
            $movieYear = testable_readline("Year released: ");
        }
        $key = [
            'Item' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$movieYear",
                ],
                'title' => [
                    'S' => $movieName,
```

```
                ],
            ],
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("INSERT", $tableName, $key);
        $service->insertItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);

        echo "How would you rate the movie from 1-10?\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
 $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        echo "What was the movie about?\n";
        while (empty($plot)) {
            $plot = testable_readline("Plot summary: ");
        }
        $attributes = [
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot),
        ];

        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);
        echo "Movie added and updated.\n";



        $batch = json_decode(loadMovieData());

        $service->writeBatch($tableName, $batch);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQL($tableName, $key);
        echo "\nThe movie {$movie['Items'][0]['title']['S']} was released in
 {$movie['Items'][0]['year']['N']}.\n";
        echo "What rating would you like to give {$movie['Items'][0]['title']['S']}?
\n";
        $rating = 0;
        while (!is_numeric($rating) || intval($rating) != $rating || $rating < 1 ||
 $rating > 10) {
            $rating = testable_readline("Rating (1-10): ");
        }
        $attributes = [
```

```
            new DynamoDBAttribute('rating', 'N', 'HASH', $rating),
            new DynamoDBAttribute('plot', 'S', 'RANGE', $plot)
        ];
        list($statement, $parameters) = $service-
>buildStatementAndParameters("UPDATE", $tableName, $key, $attributes);
        $service->updateItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);

        $movie = $service->getItemByPartiQL($tableName, $key);
        echo "Okay, you have rated {$movie['Items'][0]['title']['S']} as a
 {$movie['Items'][0]['rating']['N']}\n";

        $service->deleteItemByPartiQL($statement, $parameters);
        echo "But, bad news, this was a trap. That movie has now been deleted
 because of your rating...harsh.\n";

        echo "That's okay though. The book was better. Now, for something lighter,
 in what year were you born?\n";
        $birthYear = "not a number";
        while (!is_numeric($birthYear) || $birthYear >= date("Y")) {
            $birthYear = testable_readline("Birth year: ");
        }
        $birthKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
                    'N' => "$birthYear",
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $result = $service->query($tableName, $birthKey);
        $marshal = new Marshaler();
        echo "Here are the movies in our collection released the year you were born:
\n";
        $oops = "Oops! There were no movies released in that year (that we know of).
\n";
        $display = "";
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            $display .= $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }
        echo ($display) ?: $oops;

        $yearsKey = [
            'Key' => [
                'year' => [
```

```
                    'N' => [
                        'minRange' => 1990,
                        'maxRange' => 1999,
                    ],
                ],
            ],
        ];
        $filter = "year between 1990 and 1999";
        echo "\nHere's a list of all the movies released in the 90s:\n";
        $result = $service->scan($tableName, $yearsKey, $filter);
        foreach ($result['Items'] as $movie) {
            $movie = $marshal->unmarshalItem($movie);
            echo $movie['title'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "\nCleaning up this demo by deleting table $tableName...\n";
        $service->deleteTable($tableName);
    }
}

    public function insertItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => "$statement",
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }

    public function getItemByPartiQL(string $tableName, array $key): Result
    {
        list($statement, $parameters) = $this->buildStatementAndParameters("SELECT",
 $tableName, $key['Item']);

        return $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
            'Statement' => $statement,
        ]);
    }

    public function updateItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
```

```
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteItemByPartiQL(string $statement, array $parameters)
    {
        $this->dynamoDbClient->executeStatement([
            'Statement' => $statement,
            'Parameters' => $parameters,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';
```

```
class Handler extends DynamoDbHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;

    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleDynamoDb(DynamoDbEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing DynamoDb table items");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $eventName = $record->getEventName();
            $keys = $record->getKeys();
            $old = $record->getOldImage();
            $new = $record->getNewImage();

            $this->logger->info("Event Name:".$eventName."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Keys:". json_encode($keys)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Old Image:". json_encode($old)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("New Image:". json_encode($new));

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be marked
 as failed
        }

        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords items");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $dynamoDbEvent = new DynamoDbEvent($event);
```

```
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");

        $records = $dynamoDbEvent->getRecords();
        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon EC2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateVpc`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVpc`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $cidr
     * @return array
     */
    public function createVpc(string $cidr): array
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->ec2Client->createVpc([
                "CidrBlock" => $cidr,
            ]);
            return $result['Vpc'];
        }catch(Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem creating the VPC: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateVpcEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVpcEndpoint`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $serviceName
     * @param string $vpcId
     * @param array $routeTableIds
     * @return array
     */
    public function createVpcEndpoint(string $serviceName, string $vpcId, array
 $routeTableIds): array
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->ec2Client->createVpcEndpoint([
                'ServiceName' => $serviceName,
                'VpcId' => $vpcId,
                'RouteTableIds' => $routeTableIds,
            ]);

            return $result["VpcEndpoint"];
        } catch(Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem creating the VPC Endpoint: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteVpc`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVpc`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $vpcId
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteVpc(string $vpcId)
    {
        try {
            $this->ec2Client->deleteVpc([
                "VpcId" => $vpcId,
            ]);
        }catch(Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the VPC: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteVpcEndpoints`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVpcEndpoints`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /**
     * @param string $vpcEndpointId
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteVpcEndpoint(string $vpcEndpointId)
    {
        try {
            $this->ec2Client->deleteVpcEndpoints([
                "VpcEndpointIds" => [$vpcEndpointId],
            ]);
        }catch (Ec2Exception $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the VPC Endpoint: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpcEndpoints in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DescribeRouteTables`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRouteTables`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * @param array $routeTableIds
    * @param array $filters
    * @return array
    */
   public function describeRouteTables(array $routeTableIds = [], array $filters =
[]): array
   {
       $parameters = [];
       if($routeTableIds){
           $parameters['RouteTableIds'] = $routeTableIds;
       }
       if($filters){
           $parameters['Filters'] = $filters;
       }
       try {
           $paginator = $this->ec2Client->getPaginator("DescribeRouteTables",
$parameters);
           $contents = [];
           foreach ($paginator as $result) {
               foreach ($result['RouteTables'] as $object) {
                   $contents[] = $object['RouteTableId'];
               }
           }
       }catch (Ec2Exception $caught){
           echo "There was a problem paginating the results of DescribeRouteTables:
{$caught->getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
           throw $caught;
       }
       return $contents;
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace Glue;

use Aws\Glue\GlueClient;
```

```
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use GuzzleHttp\Psr7\Stream;
use Iam\IAMService;

class GettingStartedWithGlue
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the AWS Glue getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $clientArgs = [
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ];
        $uniqid = uniqid();

        $glueClient = new GlueClient($clientArgs);
        $glueService = new GlueService($glueClient);
        $iamService = new IAMService();
        $crawlerName = "example-crawler-test-" . $uniqid;

        AWSServiceClass::$waitTime = 5;
        AWSServiceClass::$maxWaitAttempts = 20;

        $role = $iamService->getRole("AWSGlueServiceRole-DocExample");

        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";
        $path = 's3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv';
        $glueService->createCrawler($crawlerName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
 $databaseName, $path);
        $glueService->startCrawler($crawlerName);

        echo "Waiting for crawler";
        do {
            $crawler = $glueService->getCrawler($crawlerName);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while ($crawler['Crawler']['State'] != "READY");
        echo "\n";
```

```
        $database = $glueService->getDatabase($databaseName);
        echo "Found a database named " . $database['Database']['Name'] . "\n";

        //Upload job script
        $s3client = new S3Client($clientArgs);
        $bucketName = "test-glue-bucket-" . $uniqid;
        $s3client->createBucket([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'CreateBucketConfiguration' => ['LocationConstraint' => 'us-west-2'],
        ]);

        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => 'run_job.py',
            'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/flight_etl_job_script.py'
        ]);
        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => 'setup_scenario_getting_started.yaml',
            'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/setup_scenario_getting_started.yaml'
        ]);

        $tables = $glueService->getTables($databaseName);

        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;
        $scriptLocation = "s3://$bucketName/run_job.py";
        $job = $glueService->createJob($jobName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
$scriptLocation);

        $outputBucketUrl = "s3://$bucketName";
        $runId = $glueService->startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
$outputBucketUrl)['JobRunId'];

        echo "waiting for job";
        do {
            $jobRun = $glueService->getJobRun($jobName, $runId);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while (!array_intersect([$jobRun['JobRun']['JobRunState']], ['SUCCEEDED',
'STOPPED', 'FAILED', 'TIMEOUT']));
        echo "\n";

        $jobRuns = $glueService->getJobRuns($jobName);
```

```
$objects = $s3client->listObjects([
    'Bucket' => $bucketName,
])['Contents'];

foreach ($objects as $object) {
    echo $object['Key'] . "\n";
}

echo "Downloading " . $objects[1]['Key'] . "\n";
/** @var Stream $downloadObject */
$downloadObject = $s3client->getObject([
    'Bucket' => $bucketName,
    'Key' => $objects[1]['Key'],
])['Body']->getContents();
echo "Here is the first 1000 characters in the object.";
echo substr($downloadObject, 0, 1000);

$jobs = $glueService->listJobs();
echo "Current jobs:\n";
foreach ($jobs['JobNames'] as $jobsName) {
    echo "{$jobsName}\n";
}

echo "Delete the job.\n";
$glueClient->deleteJob([
    'JobName' => $job['Name'],
]);

echo "Delete the tables.\n";
foreach ($tables['TableList'] as $table) {
    $glueService->deleteTable($table['Name'], $databaseName);
}

echo "Delete the databases.\n";
$glueClient->deleteDatabase([
    'Name' => $databaseName,
]);

echo "Delete the crawler.\n";
$glueClient->deleteCrawler([
    'Name' => $crawlerName,
]);
```

```
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->listObjectsV2([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
        ]);
        echo "Delete all objects in the bucket.\n";
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->deleteObjects([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Delete' => [
                'Objects' => $deleteObjects['Contents'],
            ]
        ]);
        echo "Delete the bucket.\n";
        $s3client->deleteBucket(['Bucket' => $bucketName]);

        echo "This job was brought to you by the number $uniqid\n";
    }
}

namespace Glue;

use Aws\Glue\GlueClient;
use Aws\Result;

use function PHPUnit\Framework\isEmpty;

class GlueService extends \AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass
{
    protected GlueClient $glueClient;

    public function __construct($glueClient)
    {
        $this->glueClient = $glueClient;
    }

    public function getCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
            ]);
        });
    }

    public function createCrawler($crawlerName, $role, $databaseName, $path): Result
    {
```

```
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName, $role,
$databaseName, $path) {
            return $this->glueClient->createCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
                'Role' => $role,
                'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
                'Targets' => [
                    'S3Targets' =>
                        [[
                            'Path' => $path,
                        ]]
                ],
            ]);
        });
    }

    public function startCrawler($crawlerName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }

    public function getDatabase(string $databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($databaseName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getDatabase([
                'Name' => $databaseName,
            ]);
        });
    }

    public function getTables($databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->getTables([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }

    public function createJob($jobName, $role, $scriptLocation, $pythonVersion =
'3', $glueVersion = '3.0'): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->createJob([
            'Name' => $jobName,
```

```
            'Role' => $role,
            'Command' => [
                'Name' => 'glueetl',
                'ScriptLocation' => $scriptLocation,
                'PythonVersion' => $pythonVersion,
            ],
            'GlueVersion' => $glueVersion,
        ]);
    }

    public function startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables, $outputBucketUrl):
Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'Arguments' => [
                'input_database' => $databaseName,
                'input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
                'output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
                '--input_database' => $databaseName,
                '--input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
                '--output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
            ],
        ]);
    }

    public function listJobs($maxResults = null, $nextToken = null, $tags = []):
Result
    {
        $arguments = [];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        if (!empty($tags)) {
            $arguments['Tags'] = $tags;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->listJobs($arguments);
    }

    public function getJobRuns($jobName, $maxResults = 0, $nextToken = ''): Result
    {
```

```
        $arguments = ['JobName' => $jobName];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRuns($arguments);
    }

    public function getJobRun($jobName, $runId, $predecessorsIncluded = false):
Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'RunId' => $runId,
            'PredecessorsIncluded' => $predecessorsIncluded,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteJob($jobName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteTable($tableName, $databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteTable([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
            'Name' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteDatabase($databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }

    public function deleteCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
```

```
        return $this->glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $crawlerName = "example-crawler-test-" . $uniqid;

        $role = $iamService->getRole("AWSGlueServiceRole-DocExample");

        $path = 's3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv';
        $glueService->createCrawler($crawlerName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
$databaseName, $path);

    public function createCrawler($crawlerName, $role, $databaseName, $path): Result
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName, $role,
$databaseName, $path) {
            return $this->glueClient->createCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
                'Role' => $role,
                'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
                'Targets' => [
                    'S3Targets' =>
                        [[
                            'Path' => $path,
                        ]]
                ],
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $role = $iamService->getRole("AWSGlueServiceRole-DocExample");

        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

        $scriptLocation = "s3://$bucketName/run_job.py";
        $job = $glueService->createJob($jobName, $role['Role']['Arn'],
$scriptLocation);

    public function createJob($jobName, $role, $scriptLocation, $pythonVersion =
'3', $glueVersion = '3.0'): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->createJob([
            'Name' => $jobName,
            'Role' => $role,
            'Command' => [
                'Name' => 'glueetl',
                'ScriptLocation' => $scriptLocation,
                'PythonVersion' => $pythonVersion,
            ],
            'GlueVersion' => $glueVersion,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the crawler.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);

    public function deleteCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the databases.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);
```

```
    public function deleteDatabase($databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteDatabase([
            'Name' => $databaseName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the job.\n";
        $glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $job['Name'],
        ]);

    public function deleteJob($jobName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteJob([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Delete the tables.\n";
        foreach ($tables['TableList'] as $table) {
            $glueService->deleteTable($table['Name'], $databaseName);
        }

    public function deleteTable($tableName, $databaseName)
    {
        return $this->glueClient->deleteTable([
            'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
            'Name' => $tableName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "Waiting for crawler";
        do {
            $crawler = $glueService->getCrawler($crawlerName);
```

```
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while ($crawler['Crawler']['State'] != "READY");
        echo "\n";

    public function getCrawler($crawlerName)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($crawlerName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getCrawler([
                'Name' => $crawlerName,
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

        $database = $glueService->getDatabase($databaseName);
        echo "Found a database named " . $database['Database']['Name'] . "\n";

    public function getDatabase(string $databaseName): Result
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($databaseName) {
            return $this->glueClient->getDatabase([
                'Name' => $databaseName,
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

        $outputBucketUrl = "s3://$bucketName";
        $runId = $glueService->startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
$outputBucketUrl)['JobRunId'];

        echo "waiting for job";
        do {
            $jobRun = $glueService->getJobRun($jobName, $runId);
            echo ".";
            sleep(10);
        } while (!array_intersect([$jobRun['JobRun']['JobRunState']], ['SUCCEEDED',
'STOPPED', 'FAILED', 'TIMEOUT']));
        echo "\n";

    public function getJobRun($jobName, $runId, $predecessorsIncluded = false):
Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->getJobRun([
            'JobName' => $jobName,
            'RunId' => $runId,
            'PredecessorsIncluded' => $predecessorsIncluded,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

    $jobRuns = $glueService->getJobRuns($jobName);

public function getJobRuns($jobName, $maxResults = 0, $nextToken = ''): Result
{
    $arguments = ['JobName' => $jobName];
    if ($maxResults) {
        $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
    }
    if ($nextToken) {
        $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
    }
    return $this->glueClient->getJobRuns($arguments);
}
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

    $tables = $glueService->getTables($databaseName);

public function getTables($databaseName): Result
{
    return $this->glueClient->getTables([
        'DatabaseName' => $databaseName,
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    $jobs = $glueService->listJobs();
    echo "Current jobs:\n";
    foreach ($jobs['JobNames'] as $jobsName) {
        echo "{$jobsName}\n";
    }
```

```
    public function listJobs($maxResults = null, $nextToken = null, $tags = []):
Result
    {
        $arguments = [];
        if ($maxResults) {
            $arguments['MaxResults'] = $maxResults;
        }
        if ($nextToken) {
            $arguments['NextToken'] = $nextToken;
        }
        if (!empty($tags)) {
            $arguments['Tags'] = $tags;
        }
        return $this->glueClient->listJobs($arguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`StartCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $crawlerName = "example-crawler-test-" . $uniqid;

        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

        $glueService->startCrawler($crawlerName);

    public function startCrawler($crawlerName): Result
    {
        return $this->glueClient->startCrawler([
            'Name' => $crawlerName,
        ]);
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`StartJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        $jobName = 'test-job-' . $uniqid;

        $databaseName = "doc-example-database-$uniqid";

        $tables = $glueService->getTables($databaseName);

        $outputBucketUrl = "s3://$bucketName";
        $runId = $glueService->startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables,
$outputBucketUrl)['JobRunId'];

   public function startJobRun($jobName, $databaseName, $tables, $outputBucketUrl):
Result
   {
       return $this->glueClient->startJobRun([
           'JobName' => $jobName,
           'Arguments' => [
               'input_database' => $databaseName,
               'input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
               'output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
               '--input_database' => $databaseName,
               '--input_table' => $tables['TableList'][0]['Name'],
               '--output_bucket_url' => $outputBucketUrl,
           ],
       ]);
   }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace Iam\Basics;

require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Credentials\Credentials;
use Aws\S3\Exception\S3Exception;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use Aws\Sts\StsClient;
use Iam\IAMService;

echo("\n");
echo("--------------------------------------\n");
print("Welcome to the IAM getting started demo using PHP!\n");
echo("--------------------------------------\n");

$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$user = $service->createUser("iam_demo_user_$uuid");
echo "Created user with the arn: {$user['Arn']}\n";

$key = $service->createAccessKey($user['UserName']);
$assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{$user['Arn']}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }";
$assumeRoleRole = $service->createRole("iam_demo_role_$uuid",
 $assumeRolePolicyDocument);
echo "Created role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";
```

```
$listAllBucketsPolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
}";
$listAllBucketsPolicy = $service->createPolicy("iam_demo_policy_$uuid",
 $listAllBucketsPolicyDocument);
echo "Created policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";

$service->attachRolePolicy($assumeRoleRole['RoleName'],
 $listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);

$inlinePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\",
                    \"Resource\": \"{$assumeRoleRole['Arn']}\"}]
}";
$inlinePolicy = $service->createUserPolicy("iam_demo_inline_policy_$uuid",
 $inlinePolicyDocument, $user['UserName']);
//First, fail to list the buckets with the user
$credentials = new Credentials($key['AccessKeyId'], $key['SecretAccessKey']);
$s3Client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2', 'version' => 'latest',
 'credentials' => $credentials]);
try {
    $s3Client->listBuckets([
    ]);
    echo "this should not run";
} catch (S3Exception $exception) {
    echo "successfully failed!\n";
}

$stsClient = new StsClient(['region' => 'us-west-2', 'version' => 'latest',
 'credentials' => $credentials]);
sleep(10);
$assumedRole = $stsClient->assumeRole([
    'RoleArn' => $assumeRoleRole['Arn'],
    'RoleSessionName' => "DemoAssumeRoleSession_$uuid",
]);
$assumedCredentials = [
    'key' => $assumedRole['Credentials']['AccessKeyId'],
```

```
    'secret' => $assumedRole['Credentials']['SecretAccessKey'],
    'token' => $assumedRole['Credentials']['SessionToken'],
];
$s3Client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2', 'version' => 'latest',
 'credentials' => $assumedCredentials]);
try {
    $s3Client->listBuckets([]);
    echo "this should now run!\n";
} catch (S3Exception $exception) {
    echo "this should now not fail\n";
}

$service->detachRolePolicy($assumeRoleRole['RoleName'],
 $listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);
$deletePolicy = $service->deletePolicy($listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);
echo "Delete policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";
$deletedRole = $service->deleteRole($assumeRoleRole['Arn']);
echo "Deleted role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";
$deletedKey = $service->deleteAccessKey($key['AccessKeyId'], $user['UserName']);
$deletedUser = $service->deleteUser($user['UserName']);
echo "Delete user: {$user['UserName']}\n";
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{$user['Arn']}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }";
$assumeRoleRole = $service->createRole("iam_demo_role_$uuid",
 $assumeRolePolicyDocument);
echo "Created role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";

$listAllBucketsPolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
}";
$listAllBucketsPolicy = $service->createPolicy("iam_demo_policy_$uuid",
 $listAllBucketsPolicyDocument);
echo "Created policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";

$service->attachRolePolicy($assumeRoleRole['RoleName'],
 $listAllBucketsPolicy['Arn']);
```

```
    public function attachRolePolicy($roleName, $policyArn)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($roleName, $policyArn) {
            $this->iamClient->attachRolePolicy([
                'PolicyArn' => $policyArn,
                'RoleName' => $roleName,
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$listAllBucketsPolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
}";
$listAllBucketsPolicy = $service->createPolicy("iam_demo_policy_$uuid",
 $listAllBucketsPolicyDocument);
echo "Created policy: {$listAllBucketsPolicy['PolicyName']}\n";

    /**
```

```
     * @param string $policyName
     * @param string $policyDocument
     * @return array
     */
    public function createPolicy(string $policyName, string $policyDocument)
    {
        $result = $this->customWaiter(function () use ($policyName, $policyDocument)
{
            return $this->iamClient->createPolicy([
                'PolicyName' => $policyName,
                'PolicyDocument' => $policyDocument,
            ]);
        });
        return $result['Policy'];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$assumeRolePolicyDocument = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{$user['Arn']}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
```

```
            }";
$assumeRoleRole = $service->createRole("iam_demo_role_$uuid",
 $assumeRolePolicyDocument);
echo "Created role: {$assumeRoleRole['RoleName']}\n";

    /**
     * @param string $roleName
     * @param string $rolePolicyDocument
     * @return array
     * @throws AwsException
     */
    public function createRole(string $roleName, string $rolePolicyDocument)
    {
        $result = $this->customWaiter(function () use ($roleName,
 $rolePolicyDocument) {
            return $this->iamClient->createRole([
                'AssumeRolePolicyDocument' => $rolePolicyDocument,
                'RoleName' => $roleName,
            ]);
        });
        return $result['Role'];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();
```

```
    public function createServiceLinkedRole($awsServiceName, $customSuffix = "",
 $description = "")
    {
        $createServiceLinkedRoleArguments = ['AWSServiceName' => $awsServiceName];
        if ($customSuffix) {
            $createServiceLinkedRoleArguments['CustomSuffix'] = $customSuffix;
        }
        if ($description) {
            $createServiceLinkedRoleArguments['Description'] = $description;
        }
        return $this->iamClient-
>createServiceLinkedRole($createServiceLinkedRoleArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

$user = $service->createUser("iam_demo_user_$uuid");
echo "Created user with the arn: {$user['Arn']}\n";


    /**
     * @param string $name
     * @return array
     * @throws AwsException
```

```
     */
    public function createUser(string $name): array
    {
        $result = $this->iamClient->createUser([
            'UserName' => $name,
        ]);

        return $result['User'];
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function getAccountPasswordPolicy()
    {
        return $this->iamClient->getAccountPasswordPolicy();
    }
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function getPolicy($policyArn)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($policyArn) {
            return $this->iamClient->getPolicy(['PolicyArn' => $policyArn]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function getRole($roleName)
    {
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($roleName) {
```

```
            return $this->iamClient->getRole(['RoleName' => $roleName]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listAttachedRolePolicies($roleName, $pathPrefix = "", $marker =
 "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments = ['RoleName' => $roleName];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments['PathPrefix'] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments['Marker'] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listAttachRolePoliciesArguments['MaxItems'] = $maxItems;
        }
        return $this->iamClient-
>listAttachedRolePolicies($listAttachRolePoliciesArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listGroups($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listGroupsArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listGroupsArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listGroupsArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listGroupsArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }

        return $this->iamClient->listGroups($listGroupsArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listPolicies($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listPoliciesArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listPoliciesArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listPoliciesArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listPoliciesArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }

        return $this->iamClient->listPolicies($listPoliciesArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listRolePolicies($roleName, $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listRolePoliciesArguments = ['RoleName' => $roleName];
        if ($marker) {
            $listRolePoliciesArguments['Marker'] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listRolePoliciesArguments['MaxItems'] = $maxItems;
        }
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($listRolePoliciesArguments) {
            return $this->iamClient->listRolePolicies($listRolePoliciesArguments);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    /**
     * @param string $pathPrefix
     * @param string $marker
     * @param int $maxItems
     * @return Result
     * $roles = $service->listRoles();
```

```
     */
    public function listRoles($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listRolesArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listRolesArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listRolesArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listRolesArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }
        return $this->iamClient->listRoles($listRolesArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listSAMLProviders()
    {
        return $this->iamClient->listSAMLProviders();
    }
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$uuid = uniqid();
$service = new IAMService();

    public function listUsers($pathPrefix = "", $marker = "", $maxItems = 0)
    {
        $listUsersArguments = [];
        if ($pathPrefix) {
            $listUsersArguments["PathPrefix"] = $pathPrefix;
        }
        if ($marker) {
            $listUsersArguments["Marker"] = $marker;
        }
        if ($maxItems) {
            $listUsersArguments["MaxItems"] = $maxItems;
        }

        return $this->iamClient->listUsers($listUsersArguments);
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Kinesis.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends KinesisHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }
```

```
    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleKinesis(KinesisEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $data = $record->getData();
            $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be marked
 as failed
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $kinesisEvent = new KinesisEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kinesisEvent->getRecords();

        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
```

```
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with AWS KMS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Key Management Service

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Key Management Service.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
include "vendor/autoload.php";

use Aws\Kms\KmsClient;

echo "This file shows how to connect to the KmsClient, uses a paginator to get the
 keys for the account, and lists the KeyIds for up to 10 keys.\n";

$client = new KmsClient([]);

$pageLength = 10; // Change this value to change the number of records shown, or to
 break up the result into pages.

$keys = [];
$keysPaginator = $client->getPaginator("ListKeys", ['Limit' => $pageLength]);
foreach($keysPaginator as $page){
    foreach($page['Keys'] as $index => $key){
        echo "The $index index Key's ID is: {$key['KeyId']}\n";
    }
    echo "End of page one of results. Alter the \$pageLength variable to see more
 results.\n";
    break;
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a KMS key.
- List KMS keys for your account and get details about them.
- Enable and disable KMS keys.
- Generate a symmetric data key that can be used for client-side encryption.
- Generate an asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.
- Tag keys.
- Delete KMS keys.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo "\n";
        echo "-------------------------------------\n";
        echo <<<WELCOME
Welcome to the AWS Key Management Service SDK Basics scenario.

This program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Key Management Service using the
 AWS SDK for PHP (v3).
The AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a secure and highly available service that
 allows you to create
and manage AWS KMS keys and control their use across a wide range of AWS services
 and applications.
KMS provides a centralized and unified approach to managing encryption keys, making
 it easier to meet your
data protection and regulatory compliance requirements.

This KMS Basics scenario creates two key types:
```

```
- A symmetric encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt data.
- An asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.

Let's get started...\n
WELCOME;
        echo "--------------------------------------\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        $this->kmsClient = new KmsClient([]);
        // Initialize the KmsService class with the client. This allows you to
 override any defaults in the client before giving it to the service class.
        $this->kmsService = new KmsService($this->kmsClient);

        // 1. Create a symmetric KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "1. Create a symmetric KMS key.\n";
        echo "First, we will create a symmetric KMS key that is used to encrypt and
 decrypt data by invoking createKey().\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        $key = $this->kmsService->createKey();
        $this->resources['symmetricKey'] = $key['KeyId'];
        echo "Created a customer key with ARN {$key['Arn']}.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 2. Enable a KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "2. Enable a KMS key.\n";
        echo "By default when you create an AWS key, it is enabled. The code checks
 to
determine if the key is enabled. If it is not enabled, the code enables it.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        $keyInfo = $this->kmsService->describeKey($key['KeyId']);
        if(!$keyInfo['Enabled']){
            echo "The key was not enabled, so we will enable it.\n";
            $this->pressEnter();
            $this->kmsService->enableKey($key['KeyId']);
            echo "The key was successfully enabled.\n";
        }else{
            echo "The key was already enabled, so there was no need to enable it.
\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();
```

```
        // 3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key.\n";
        echo "One of the main uses of symmetric keys is to encrypt and decrypt data.
\n";
        echo "Next, we'll encrypt the string 'Hello, AWS KMS!' with the
 SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT encryption algorithm.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $text = "Hello, AWS KMS!";
        $encryption = $this->kmsService->encrypt($key['KeyId'], $text);
        echo "The plaintext data was successfully encrypted with the algorithm:
 {$encryption['EncryptionAlgorithm']}.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 4. Create an alias.
        echo "\n";
        echo "4. Create an alias.\n";
        $aliasInput = testable_readline("Please enter an alias prefixed with
 \"alias/\" or press enter to use a default value: ");
        if($aliasInput == ""){
            $aliasInput = "alias/dev-encryption-key";
        }
        $this->kmsService->createAlias($key['KeyId'], $aliasInput);
        $this->resources['alias'] = $aliasInput;
        echo "The alias \"$aliasInput\" was successfully created.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 5. List all of your aliases.
        $aliasPageSize = 10;
        echo "\n";
        echo "5. List all of your aliases, up to $aliasPageSize.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $aliasPaginator = $this->kmsService->listAliases();
        foreach($aliasPaginator as $pages){
            foreach($pages['Aliases'] as $alias){
                echo $alias['AliasName'] . "\n";
            }
            break;
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key.
        echo "\n";
```

```
        echo "6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key.\n";
        echo "By default, when the SDK enables automatic rotation of a KMS key,
KMS rotates the key material of the KMS key one year (approximately 365 days) from
 the enable date and every year
thereafter.";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $this->kmsService->enableKeyRotation($key['KeyId']);
        echo "The key's rotation was successfully set for key: {$key['KeyId']}\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 7. Create a grant.
        echo "7. Create a grant.\n";
        echo "\n";
        echo "A grant is a policy instrument that allows Amazon Web Services
 principals to use KMS keys.
It also can allow them to view a KMS key (DescribeKey) and create and manage grants.
When authorizing access to a KMS key, grants are considered along with key policies
 and IAM policies.\n";
        $granteeARN = testable_readline("Please enter the Amazon Resource Name
 (ARN) of an Amazon Web Services principal. Valid principals include Amazon Web
 Services accounts, IAM users, IAM roles, federated users, and assumed role users.
 For help with the ARN syntax for a principal, see IAM ARNs in the Identity and
 Access Management User Guide. \nTo skip this step, press enter without any other
 values: ");
        if($granteeARN){
            $operations = [
                "ENCRYPT",
                "DECRYPT",
                "DESCRIBE_KEY",
            ];
            $grant = $this->kmsService->createGrant($key['KeyId'], $granteeARN,
 $operations);
            echo "The grant Id is: {$grant['GrantId']}\n";
        }else{
            echo "Steps 7, 8, and 9 will be skipped.\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 8. List grants for the KMS key.
        if($granteeARN){
            echo "8. List grants for the KMS key.\n\n";
            $grantsPaginator = $this->kmsService->listGrants($key['KeyId']);
            foreach($grantsPaginator as $page){
                foreach($page['Grants'] as $grant){
```

```
                    echo $grant['GrantId'] . "\n";
                }
            }
        }else{
            echo "Skipping step 8...\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 9. Revoke the grant.
        if($granteeARN) {
            echo "\n";
            echo "9. Revoke the grant.\n";
            $this->pressEnter();
            $this->kmsService->revokeGrant($grant['GrantId'], $keyInfo['KeyId']);
            echo "{$grant['GrantId']} was successfully revoked!\n";
        }else{
            echo "Skipping step 9...\n";
        }
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 10. Decrypt the data.
        echo "\n";
        echo "10. Decrypt the data.\n";
        echo "Let's decrypt the data that was encrypted before.\n";
        echo "We'll use the same key to decrypt the string that we encrypted earlier
 in the program.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $decryption = $this->kmsService->decrypt($keyInfo['KeyId'],
 $encryption['CiphertextBlob'], $encryption['EncryptionAlgorithm']);
        echo "The decrypted text is: {$decryption['Plaintext']}\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 11. Replace a Key Policy.
        echo "\n";
        echo "11. Replace a Key Policy.\n";
        echo "A key policy is a resource policy for a KMS key. Key policies are the
 primary way to control access to KMS keys.\n";
        echo "Every KMS key must have exactly one key policy. The statements in the
 key policy determine who has permission to use the KMS key and how they can use it.
\n";
        echo " You can also use IAM policies and grants to control access to the KMS
 key, but every KMS key must have a key policy.\n";
        echo "We will replace the key's policy with a new one:\n";
        $stsClient = new StsClient([]);
```

```
        $result = $stsClient->getCallerIdentity();
        $accountId = $result['Account'];
        $keyPolicy = <<< KEYPOLICY
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [{
        "Effect": "Allow",
        "Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::$accountId:root"},
        "Action": "kms:*",
        "Resource": "*"
    }]
}
KEYPOLICY;
        echo $keyPolicy;
        $this->pressEnter();
        $this->kmsService->putKeyPolicy($keyInfo['KeyId'], $keyPolicy);
        echo "The Key Policy was successfully replaced!\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 12. Retrieve the key policy.
        echo "\n";
        echo "12. Retrieve the key policy.\n";
        echo "Let's get some information about the new policy and print it to the
 screen.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $policyInfo = $this->kmsService->getKeyPolicy($keyInfo['KeyId']);
        echo "We got the info! Here is the policy: \n";
        echo $policyInfo['Policy'] . "\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign data.
        echo "\n";
        echo "13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign data.\n";
        echo "Signing your data with an AWS key can provide several benefits that
 make it an attractive option for your data signing needs.\n";
        echo "By using an AWS KMS key, you can leverage the security controls and
 compliance features provided by AWS, which can help you meet various regulatory
 requirements and enhance the overall security posture of your organization.\n";
        echo "First we'll create the asymmetric key.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $keySpec = "RSA_2048";
        $keyUsage = "SIGN_VERIFY";
        $asymmetricKey = $this->kmsService->createKey($keySpec, $keyUsage);
        $this->resources['asymmetricKey'] = $asymmetricKey['KeyId'];
```

```
        echo "Created the key with ID: {$asymmetricKey['KeyId']}\n";
        echo "Next, we'll sign the data.\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $algorithm = "RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256";
        $sign = $this->kmsService->sign($asymmetricKey['KeyId'], $text, $algorithm);
        $verify = $this->kmsService->verify($asymmetricKey['KeyId'], $text,
$sign['Signature'], $algorithm);
        echo "Signature verification result: {$sign['signature']}\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 14. Tag the symmetric KMS key.
        echo "\n";
        echo "14. Tag the symmetric KMS key.\n";
        echo "By using tags, you can improve the overall management, security,
and governance of your KMS keys, making it easier to organize, track, and control
access to your encrypted data within your AWS environment.\n";
        echo "Let's tag our symmetric key as Environment->Production\n";
        $this->pressEnter();
        $this->kmsService->tagResource($key['KeyId'], [
            [
                'TagKey' => "Environment",
                'TagValue' => "Production",
            ],
        ]);
        echo "The key was successfully tagged!\n";
        $this->pressEnter();

        // 15. Schedule the deletion of the KMS key
        echo "\n";
        echo "15. Schedule the deletion of the KMS key.\n";
        echo "By default, KMS applies a waiting period of 30 days, but you can
specify a waiting period of 7-30 days.\n";
        echo "When this operation is successful, the key state of the KMS key
changes to PendingDeletion and the key can't be used in any cryptographic
operations.\n";
        echo "It remains in this state for the duration of the waiting period.\n\n";

        echo "Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous
operation. When a KMS key is deleted, all data that was encrypted under the KMS key
is unrecoverable.\n\n";

        $cleanUp = testable_readline("Would you like to delete the resources created
during this scenario, including the keys? (y/n): ");
        if($cleanUp == "Y" || $cleanUp == "y"){
```

```
            $this->cleanUp();
        }

        echo
 "--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
\n";
        echo "This concludes the AWS Key Management SDK Basics scenario\n";
        echo
 "--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
\n";



namespace Kms;

use Aws\Kms\Exception\KmsException;
use Aws\Kms\KmsClient;
use Aws\Result;
use Aws\ResultPaginator;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;

class KmsService extends AWSServiceClass
{

    protected KmsClient $client;
    protected bool $verbose;

    /***
     * @param KmsClient|null $client
     * @param bool $verbose
     */
    public function __construct(KmsClient $client = null, bool $verbose = false)
    {
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
        if($client){
            $this->client = $client;
            return;
        }
        $this->client = new KmsClient([]);
    }


    /***
     * @param string $keySpec
```

```
     * @param string $keyUsage
     * @param string $description
     * @return array
     */
    public function createKey(string $keySpec = "", string $keyUsage = "", string
$description = "Created by the SDK for PHP")
    {
        $parameters = ['Description' => $description];
        if($keySpec && $keyUsage){
            $parameters['KeySpec'] = $keySpec;
            $parameters['KeyUsage'] = $keyUsage;
        }
        try {
            $result = $this->client->createKey($parameters);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            // Check for error specific to createKey operations
            if ($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "LimitExceededException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because a quota was exceeded. For
more information, see Quotas in the Key Management Service Developer Guide.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $ciphertext
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function decrypt(string $keyId, string $ciphertext, string $algorithm =
"SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT")
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->decrypt([
                'CiphertextBlob' => $ciphertext,
                'EncryptionAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
```

```
            echo "There was a problem decrypting the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $text
     * @return Result
     */
    public function encrypt(string $keyId, string $text)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->encrypt([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Plaintext' => $text,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "DisabledException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified KMS key is not
 enabled.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $limit
     * @return ResultPaginator
     */
    public function listAliases(string $keyId = "", int $limit = 0)
    {
        $args = [];
        if($keyId){
            $args['KeyId'] = $keyId;
        }
        if($limit){
            $args['Limit'] = $limit;
```

```
        }
        try{
            return $this->client->getPaginator("ListAliases", $args);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidMarkerException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the marker that specifies
where pagination should next begin is not valid.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $alias
     * @return void
     */
    public function createAlias(string $keyId, string $alias)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->createAlias([
                'TargetKeyId' => $keyId,
                'AliasName' => $alias,
            ]);
        }catch (KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidAliasNameException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified alias name is
not valid.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $granteePrincipal
     * @param array $operations
     * @param array $grantTokens
     * @return Result
     */
```

```
    public function createGrant(string $keyId, string $granteePrincipal, array
$operations, array $grantTokens = [])
    {
        $args = [
            'KeyId' => $keyId,
            'GranteePrincipal' => $granteePrincipal,
            'Operations' => $operations,
        ];
        if($grantTokens){
            $args['GrantTokens'] = $grantTokens;
        }
        try{
            return $this->client->createGrant($args);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidGrantTokenException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified grant token is
not valid.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return array
     */
    public function describeKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->client->describeKey([
                "KeyId" => $keyId,
            ]);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function disableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->disableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem disabling the key: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function enableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->enableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @return array
```

```
     */
    public function listKeys()
    {
        try {
            $contents = [];
            $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListKeys");
            foreach($paginator as $result){
                foreach ($result['Content'] as $object) {
                    $contents[] = $object;
                }
            }
            return $contents;
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem listing the keys: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return Result
     */
    public function listGrants(string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->listGrants([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "    The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }


    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return Result
```

```
     */
    public function getKeyPolicy(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->getKeyPolicy([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem getting the key policy: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }


    /***
     * @param string $grantId
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function revokeGrant(string $grantId, string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->revokeGrant([
                'GrantId' => $grantId,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem with revoking the grant: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}.\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $pendingWindowInDays
     * @return void
     */
    public function scheduleKeyDeletion(string $keyId, int $pendingWindowInDays = 7)
    {
        try {
```

```
            $this->client->scheduleKeyDeletion([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'PendingWindowInDays' => $pendingWindowInDays,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem scheduling the key deletion: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param array $tags
     * @return void
     */
    public function tagResource(string $keyId, array $tags)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->tagResource([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Tags' => $tags,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem applying the tag(s): {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $message
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function sign(string $keyId, string $message, string $algorithm)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->sign([
```

```
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Message' => $message,
                'SigningAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem signing the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $rotationPeriodInDays
     * @return void
     */
    public function enableKeyRotation(string $keyId, int $rotationPeriodInDays =
 365)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->enableKeyRotation([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'RotationPeriodInDays' => $rotationPeriodInDays,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
 resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }



    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $policy
     * @return void
     */
    public function putKeyPolicy(string $keyId, string $policy)
    {
```

```
        try {
            $this->client->putKeyPolicy([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Policy' => $policy,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem replacing the key policy: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $aliasName
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteAlias(string $aliasName)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->deleteAlias([
                'AliasName' => $aliasName,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the alias: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }




    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $message
     * @param string $signature
     * @param string $signingAlgorithm
     * @return bool
     */
    public function verify(string $keyId, string $message, string $signature, string
 $signingAlgorithm)
    {
        try {
```

```
            $result = $this->client->verify([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Message' => $message,
                'Signature' => $signature,
                'SigningAlgorithm' => $signingAlgorithm,
            ]);
            return $result['SignatureValid'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem verifying the signature: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }


}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateAlias
  - CreateGrant
  - CreateKey
  - Decrypt
  - DescribeKey
  - DisableKey
  - EnableKey
  - Encrypt
  - GetKeyPolicy
  - ListAliases
  - ListGrants
  - ListKeys
  - RevokeGrant
  - ScheduleKeyDeletion
  - Sign
  - TagResource

Actions

`CreateAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAlias`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $alias
     * @return void
     */
    public function createAlias(string $keyId, string $alias)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->createAlias([
                'TargetKeyId' => $keyId,
                'AliasName' => $alias,
            ]);
        }catch (KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidAliasNameException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified alias name is
not valid.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGrant`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /***
    * @param string $keyId
    * @param string $granteePrincipal
    * @param array $operations
    * @param array $grantTokens
    * @return Result
    */
   public function createGrant(string $keyId, string $granteePrincipal, array
$operations, array $grantTokens = [])
   {
       $args = [
           'KeyId' => $keyId,
           'GranteePrincipal' => $granteePrincipal,
           'Operations' => $operations,
       ];
       if($grantTokens){
           $args['GrantTokens'] = $grantTokens;
       }
       try{
           return $this->client->createGrant($args);
       }catch(KmsException $caught){
           if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidGrantTokenException"){
               echo "The request was rejected because the specified grant token is
not valid.\n";
           }
           throw $caught;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /***
    * @param string $keySpec
    * @param string $keyUsage
    * @param string $description
    * @return array
    */
   public function createKey(string $keySpec = "", string $keyUsage = "", string
$description = "Created by the SDK for PHP")
   {
       $parameters = ['Description' => $description];
       if($keySpec && $keyUsage){
           $parameters['KeySpec'] = $keySpec;
           $parameters['KeyUsage'] = $keyUsage;
       }
       try {
           $result = $this->client->createKey($parameters);
           return $result['KeyMetadata'];
       }catch(KmsException $caught){
           // Check for error specific to createKey operations
           if ($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "LimitExceededException"){
               echo "The request was rejected because a quota was exceeded. For
more information, see Quotas in the Key Management Service Developer Guide.";
           }
           throw $caught;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Decrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Decrypt`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $ciphertext
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function decrypt(string $keyId, string $ciphertext, string $algorithm =
 "SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT")
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->decrypt([
                'CiphertextBlob' => $ciphertext,
                'EncryptionAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem decrypting the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlias`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $aliasName
     * @return void
     */
    public function deleteAlias(string $aliasName)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->deleteAlias([
                'AliasName' => $aliasName,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem deleting the alias: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DescribeKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKey`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return array
     */
    public function describeKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $result = $this->client->describeKey([
                "KeyId" => $keyId,
            ]);
            return $result['KeyMetadata'];
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DisableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableKey`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function disableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->disableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem disabling the key: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`EnableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKey`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function enableKey(string $keyId)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->enableKey([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified entity or
resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Encrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Encrypt`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $text
     * @return Result
```

```
     */
    public function encrypt(string $keyId, string $text)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->encrypt([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Plaintext' => $text,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "DisabledException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the specified KMS key is not
enabled.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAliases`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $limit
     * @return ResultPaginator
     */
    public function listAliases(string $keyId = "", int $limit = 0)
    {
        $args = [];
```

```
        if($keyId){
            $args['KeyId'] = $keyId;
        }
        if($limit){
            $args['Limit'] = $limit;
        }
        try{
            return $this->client->getPaginator("ListAliases", $args);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "InvalidMarkerException"){
                echo "The request was rejected because the marker that specifies
where pagination should next begin is not valid.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListGrants`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGrants`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return Result
     */
    public function listGrants(string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            return $this->client->listGrants([
```

```
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorMessage() == "NotFoundException"){
                echo "    The request was rejected because the specified entity or
resource could not be found.\n";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @return array
     */
    public function listKeys()
    {
        try {
            $contents = [];
            $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListKeys");
            foreach($paginator as $result){
                foreach ($result['Content'] as $object) {
                    $contents[] = $object;
                }
            }
```

```
            return $contents;
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem listing the keys: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`PutKeyPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutKeyPolicy`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $policy
     * @return void
     */
    public function putKeyPolicy(string $keyId, string $policy)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->putKeyPolicy([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Policy' => $policy,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem replacing the key policy: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutKeyPolicy in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`RevokeGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `RevokeGrant`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $grantId
     * @param string $keyId
     * @return void
     */
    public function revokeGrant(string $grantId, string $keyId)
    {
        try{
            $this->client->revokeGrant([
                'GrantId' => $grantId,
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem with revoking the grant: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}.\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ScheduleKeyDeletion`

The following code example shows how to use `ScheduleKeyDeletion`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param int $pendingWindowInDays
     * @return void
     */
    public function scheduleKeyDeletion(string $keyId, int $pendingWindowInDays = 7)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->scheduleKeyDeletion([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'PendingWindowInDays' => $pendingWindowInDays,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem scheduling the key deletion: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Sign`

The following code example shows how to use `Sign`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param string $message
     * @param string $algorithm
     * @return Result
     */
    public function sign(string $keyId, string $message, string $algorithm)
    {
        try {
            return $this->client->sign([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Message' => $message,
                'SigningAlgorithm' => $algorithm,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem signing the data: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /***
     * @param string $keyId
     * @param array $tags
     * @return void
     */
    public function tagResource(string $keyId, array $tags)
    {
        try {
            $this->client->tagResource([
                'KeyId' => $keyId,
                'Tags' => $tags,
            ]);
        }catch(KmsException $caught){
            echo "There was a problem applying the tag(s): {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace Lambda;

use Aws\S3\S3Client;
```

```
use GuzzleHttp\Psr7\Stream;
use Iam\IAMService;

class GettingStartedWithLambda
{
    public function run()
    {
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the AWS Lambda getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $clientArgs = [
            'region' => 'us-west-2',
            'version' => 'latest',
            'profile' => 'default',
        ];
        $uniqid = uniqid();

        $iamService = new IAMService();
        $s3client = new S3Client($clientArgs);
        $lambdaService = new LambdaService();

        echo "First, let's create a role to run our Lambda code.\n";
        $roleName = "test-lambda-role-$uniqid";
        $rolePolicyDocument = "{
            \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
            \"Statement\": [
                {
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {
                        \"Service\": \"lambda.amazonaws.com\"
                    },
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }
            ]
        }";
        $role = $iamService->createRole($roleName, $rolePolicyDocument);
        echo "Created role {$role['RoleName']}.\n";

        $iamService->attachRolePolicy(
            $role['RoleName'],
            "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"
        );
```

```
        echo "Attached the AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole to {$role['RoleName']}.\n";

        echo "\nNow let's create an S3 bucket and upload our Lambda code there.\n";
        $bucketName = "test-example-bucket-$uniqid";
        $s3client->createBucket([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
        ]);
        echo "Created bucket $bucketName.\n";

        $functionName = "doc_example_lambda_$uniqid";
        $codeBasic = __DIR__ . "/lambda_handler_basic.zip";
        $handler = "lambda_handler_basic";
        $file = file_get_contents($codeBasic);
        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => $functionName,
            'Body' => $file,
        ]);
        echo "Uploaded the Lambda code.\n";

        $createLambdaFunction = $lambdaService->createFunction($functionName, $role,
 $bucketName, $handler);
        // Wait until the function has finished being created.
        do {
            $getLambdaFunction = $lambdaService-
>getFunction($createLambdaFunction['FunctionName']);
        } while ($getLambdaFunction['Configuration']['State'] == "Pending");
        echo "Created Lambda function {$getLambdaFunction['Configuration']
['FunctionName']}.\n";

        sleep(1);

        echo "\nOk, let's invoke that Lambda code.\n";
        $basicParams = [
            'action' => 'increment',
            'number' => 3,
        ];
        /** @var Stream $invokeFunction */
        $invokeFunction = $lambdaService->invoke($functionName, $basicParams)
['Payload'];
        $result = json_decode($invokeFunction->getContents())->result;
        echo "After invoking the Lambda code with the input of
 {$basicParams['number']} we received $result.\n";
```

```
        echo "\nSince that's working, let's update the Lambda code.\n";
        $codeCalculator = "lambda_handler_calculator.zip";
        $handlerCalculator = "lambda_handler_calculator";
        echo "First, put the new code into the S3 bucket.\n";
        $file = file_get_contents($codeCalculator);
        $s3client->putObject([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Key' => $functionName,
            'Body' => $file,
        ]);
        echo "New code uploaded.\n";

        $lambdaService->updateFunctionCode($functionName, $bucketName,
 $functionName);
        // Wait for the Lambda code to finish updating.
        do {
            $getLambdaFunction = $lambdaService-
>getFunction($createLambdaFunction['FunctionName']);
        } while ($getLambdaFunction['Configuration']['LastUpdateStatus'] !==
 "Successful");
        echo "New Lambda code uploaded.\n";

        $environment = [
            'Variable' => ['Variables' => ['LOG_LEVEL' => 'DEBUG']],
        ];
        $lambdaService->updateFunctionConfiguration($functionName,
 $handlerCalculator, $environment);
        do {
            $getLambdaFunction = $lambdaService-
>getFunction($createLambdaFunction['FunctionName']);
        } while ($getLambdaFunction['Configuration']['LastUpdateStatus'] !==
 "Successful");
        echo "Lambda code updated with new handler and a LOG_LEVEL of DEBUG for more
 information.\n";

        echo "Invoke the new code with some new data.\n";
        $calculatorParams = [
            'action' => 'plus',
            'x' => 5,
            'y' => 4,
        ];
        $invokeFunction = $lambdaService->invoke($functionName, $calculatorParams,
 "Tail");
        $result = json_decode($invokeFunction['Payload']->getContents())->result;
```

```
        echo "Indeed, {$calculatorParams['x']} + {$calculatorParams['y']} does equal
$result.\n";
        echo "Here's the extra debug info: ";
        echo base64_decode($invokeFunction['LogResult']) . "\n";

        echo "\nBut what happens if you try to divide by zero?\n";
        $divZeroParams = [
            'action' => 'divide',
            'x' => 5,
            'y' => 0,
        ];
        $invokeFunction = $lambdaService->invoke($functionName, $divZeroParams,
"Tail");
        $result = json_decode($invokeFunction['Payload']->getContents())->result;
        echo "You get a |$result| result.\n";
        echo "And an error message: ";
        echo base64_decode($invokeFunction['LogResult']) . "\n";

        echo "\nHere's all the Lambda functions you have in this Region:\n";
        $listLambdaFunctions = $lambdaService->listFunctions(5);
        $allLambdaFunctions = $listLambdaFunctions['Functions'];
        $next = $listLambdaFunctions->get('NextMarker');
        while ($next != false) {
            $listLambdaFunctions = $lambdaService->listFunctions(5, $next);
            $next = $listLambdaFunctions->get('NextMarker');
            $allLambdaFunctions = array_merge($allLambdaFunctions,
$listLambdaFunctions['Functions']);
        }
        foreach ($allLambdaFunctions as $function) {
            echo "{$function['FunctionName']}\n";
        }

        echo "\n\nAnd don't forget to clean up your data!\n";

        $lambdaService->deleteFunction($functionName);
        echo "Deleted Lambda function.\n";
        $iamService->deleteRole($role['RoleName']);
        echo "Deleted Role.\n";
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->listObjectsV2([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
        ]);
        $deleteObjects = $s3client->deleteObjects([
            'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            'Delete' => [
```

```
                'Objects' => $deleteObjects['Contents'],
            ]
        ]);
        echo "Deleted all objects from the S3 bucket.\n";
        $s3client->deleteBucket(['Bucket' => $bucketName]);
        echo "Deleted the bucket.\n";
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function createFunction($functionName, $role, $bucketName, $handler)
    {
        //This assumes the Lambda function is in an S3 bucket.
        return $this->customWaiter(function () use ($functionName, $role,
 $bucketName, $handler) {
```

```
            return $this->lambdaClient->createFunction([
                'Code' => [
                    'S3Bucket' => $bucketName,
                    'S3Key' => $functionName,
                ],
                'FunctionName' => $functionName,
                'Role' => $role['Arn'],
                'Runtime' => 'python3.9',
                'Handler' => "$handler.lambda_handler",
            ]);
        });
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function deleteFunction($functionName)
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->deleteFunction([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function getFunction($functionName)
{
    return $this->lambdaClient->getFunction([
        'FunctionName' => $functionName,
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function invoke($functionName, $params, $logType = 'None')
{
    return $this->lambdaClient->invoke([
        'FunctionName' => $functionName,
        'Payload' => json_encode($params),
        'LogType' => $logType,
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
public function listFunctions($maxItems = 50, $marker = null)
{
    if (is_null($marker)) {
        return $this->lambdaClient->listFunctions([
            'MaxItems' => $maxItems,
        ]);
    }

    return $this->lambdaClient->listFunctions([
        'Marker' => $marker,
        'MaxItems' => $maxItems,
    ]);
}
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function updateFunctionCode($functionName, $s3Bucket, $s3Key)
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->updateFunctionCode([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
            'S3Bucket' => $s3Bucket,
            'S3Key' => $s3Key,
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    public function updateFunctionConfiguration($functionName, $handler,
$environment = '')
    {
        return $this->lambdaClient->updateFunctionConfiguration([
            'FunctionName' => $functionName,
            'Handler' => "$handler.lambda_handler",
            'Environment' => $environment,
```

```
        ]);
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using PHP.

```
<?php
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;
use Aws\Rds\AuthTokenGenerator;
use Aws\Credentials\CredentialProvider;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }


    private function getAuthToken(): string {
        // Define connection authentication parameters
        $dbConnection = [
            'hostname' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'port' => getenv('DB_PORT'),
            'username' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'region' => getenv('AWS_REGION'),
        ];

        // Create RDS AuthTokenGenerator object
```

```
        $generator = new AuthTokenGenerator(CredentialProvider::defaultProvider());

        // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
        return $generator->createToken(
            $dbConnection['hostname'] . ':' . $dbConnection['port'],
            $dbConnection['region'],
            $dbConnection['username']
        );
    }

    private function getQueryResults() {
        // Obtain auth token
        $token = $this->getAuthToken();

        // Define connection configuration
        $connectionConfig = [
            'host' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'user' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'password' => $token,
            'database' => getenv('DB_NAME'),
        ];

        // Create the connection to the DB
        $conn = new PDO(

"mysql:host={$connectionConfig['host']};dbname={$connectionConfig['database']}",
            $connectionConfig['user'],
            $connectionConfig['password'],
            [
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_CA => '/path/to/rds-ca-2019-root.pem',
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_VERIFY_SERVER_CERT => true,
            ]
        );

        // Obtain the result of the query
        $stmt = $conn->prepare('SELECT ?+? AS sum');
        $stmt->execute([3, 2]);

        return $stmt->fetch(PDO::FETCH_ASSOC);
    }

    /**
     * @param mixed $event
     * @param Context $context
```

```
     * @return array
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing query");

        // Execute database flow
        $result = $this->getQueryResults();

        return [
            'sum' => $result['sum']
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
```

```
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends KinesisHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleKinesis(KinesisEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $data = $record->getData();
            $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be marked
 as failed
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends DynamoDbHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;

    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleDynamoDb(DynamoDbEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
```

```
        $this->logger->info("Processing DynamoDb table items");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            $eventName = $record->getEventName();
            $keys = $record->getKeys();
            $old = $record->getOldImage();
            $new = $record->getNewImage();

            $this->logger->info("Event Name:".$eventName."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Keys:". json_encode($keys)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("Old Image:". json_encode($old)."\n");
            $this->logger->info("New Image:". json_encode($new));

            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data

            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be marked
 as failed
        }

        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords items");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

require __DIR__.'/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler;

class DocumentDBEventHandler implements Handler
{
    public function handle($event, Context $context): string
    {

        $events = $event['events'] ?? [];
        foreach ($events as $record) {
            $this->logDocumentDBEvent($record['event']);
        }
        return 'OK';
    }

    private function logDocumentDBEvent($event): void
    {
        // Extract information from the event record

        $operationType = $event['operationType'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $db = $event['ns']['db'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $collection = $event['ns']['coll'] ?? 'Unknown';
        $fullDocument = $event['fullDocument'] ?? [];

        // Log the event details

        echo "Operation type: $operationType\n";
        echo "Database: $db\n";
        echo "Collection: $collection\n";
        echo "Full document: " . json_encode($fullDocument, JSON_PRETTY_PRINT) .
 "\n";
    }
}
return new DocumentDBEventHandler();
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

// using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kafka\KafkaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): void
```

```
    {
        $kafkaEvent = new KafkaEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kafkaEvent->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $key = $record->getKey();
                $this->logger->info("Key: $key");

                $values = $record->getValue();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($values));

                foreach ($values as $value) {
                    $this->logger->info("Value: $value");
                }

            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Event;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Handler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';


class Handler extends S3Handler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    public function handleS3(S3Event $event, Context $context) : void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing S3 records");

        // Get the object from the event and show its content type
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record)
        {
            $bucket = $record->getBucket()->getName();
            $key = urldecode($record->getObject()->getKey());

            try {
                $fileSize = urldecode($record->getObject()->getSize());
                echo "File Size: " . $fileSize . "\n";
```

```
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                echo $e->getMessage() . "\n";
                echo 'Error getting object ' . $key . ' from bucket ' . $bucket .
 '. Make sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.' .
 "\n";
                throw $e;
            }
        }
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

/*
Since native PHP support for AWS Lambda is not available, we are utilizing Bref's
 PHP functions runtime for AWS Lambda.
For more information on Bref's PHP runtime for Lambda, refer to: https://bref.sh/
docs/runtimes/function
```

```
Another approach would be to create a custom runtime.
A practical example can be found here: https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/apn/aws-lambda-
custom-runtime-for-php-a-practical-example/
*/

// Additional composer packages may be required when using Bref or any other PHP
 functions runtime.
// require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsHandler;

class Handler extends SnsHandler
{
    public function handleSns(SnsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $message = $record->getMessage();

            // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be marked
 as failed

            echo "Processed Message: $message" . PHP_EOL;
        }
    }
}

return new Handler();
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $body = $record->getBody();
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        }
    }
}
```

```
$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kinesis\KinesisEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }
```

```
    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $kinesisEvent = new KinesisEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kinesisEvent->getRecords();

        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\DynamoDb\DynamoDbEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $dynamoDbEvent = new DynamoDbEvent($event);
```

```
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");

        $records = $dynamoDbEvent->getRecords();
        $failedRecords = [];
        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                $data = $record->getData();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($data));
                // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $failedRecords[] = $record->getSequenceNumber();
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");

        // change format for the response
        $failures = array_map(
            fn(string $sequenceNumber) => ['itemIdentifier' => $sequenceNumber],
            $failedRecords
        );

        return [
            'batchItemFailures' => $failures
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing SQS records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                // Assuming the SQS message is in JSON format
                $message = json_decode($record->getBody(), true);
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($message));
```

```
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $this->markAsFailed($record);
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords SQS records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

// using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Kafka\KafkaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $kafkaEvent = new KafkaEvent($event);
        $this->logger->info("Processing records");
        $records = $kafkaEvent->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
```

```
                $key = $record->getKey();
                $this->logger->info("Key: $key");

                $values = $record->getValue();
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($values));

                foreach ($values as $value) {
                    $this->logger->info("Value: $value");
                }

            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords records");
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon RDS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;



$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-2'
]);

$dbIdentifier = '<<{{db-identifier}}>>';
$dbClass = 'db.t2.micro';
$storage = 5;
$engine = 'MySQL';
$username = 'MyUser';
$password = 'MyPassword';

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->createDBInstance([
        'DBInstanceIdentifier' => $dbIdentifier,
        'DBInstanceClass' => $dbClass,
        'AllocatedStorage' => $storage,
        'Engine' => $engine,
        'MasterUsername' => $username,
        'MasterUserPassword' => $password,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
```

```
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;



$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-2'
]);

$dbIdentifier = '<<{{db-identifier}}>>';
$snapshotName = '<<{{backup_2018_12_25}}>>';

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->createDBSnapshot([
        'DBInstanceIdentifier' => $dbIdentifier,
        'DBSnapshotIdentifier' => $snapshotName,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
```

```
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


//Create an RDSClient
$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-1'
]);

$dbIdentifier = '<<{{db-identifier}}>>';

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->deleteDBInstance([
        'DBInstanceIdentifier' => $dbIdentifier,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;


//Create an RDSClient
$rdsClient = new Aws\Rds\RdsClient([
    'region' => 'us-east-2'
]);

try {
    $result = $rdsClient->describeDBInstances();
    foreach ($result['DBInstances'] as $instance) {
        print('<p>DB Identifier: ' . $instance['DBInstanceIdentifier']);
        print('<br />Endpoint: ' . $instance['Endpoint']["Address"]
            . ':' . $instance['Endpoint']["Port"]);
        print('<br />Current Status: ' . $instance["DBInstanceStatus"]);
        print('</p>');
    }
    print(" Raw Result ");
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    echo $e->getMessage();
    echo "\n";
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using PHP.

```
<?php
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Handler as StdHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;
use Aws\Rds\AuthTokenGenerator;
use Aws\Credentials\CredentialProvider;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler implements StdHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }


    private function getAuthToken(): string {
        // Define connection authentication parameters
        $dbConnection = [
            'hostname' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'port' => getenv('DB_PORT'),
            'username' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'region' => getenv('AWS_REGION'),
        ];

        // Create RDS AuthTokenGenerator object
```

```
        $generator = new AuthTokenGenerator(CredentialProvider::defaultProvider());

        // Request authorization token from RDS, specifying the username
        return $generator->createToken(
            $dbConnection['hostname'] . ':' . $dbConnection['port'],
            $dbConnection['region'],
            $dbConnection['username']
        );
    }

    private function getQueryResults() {
        // Obtain auth token
        $token = $this->getAuthToken();

        // Define connection configuration
        $connectionConfig = [
            'host' => getenv('DB_HOSTNAME'),
            'user' => getenv('DB_USERNAME'),
            'password' => $token,
            'database' => getenv('DB_NAME'),
        ];

        // Create the connection to the DB
        $conn = new PDO(

"mysql:host={$connectionConfig['host']};dbname={$connectionConfig['database']}",
            $connectionConfig['user'],
            $connectionConfig['password'],
            [
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_CA => '/path/to/rds-ca-2019-root.pem',
                PDO::MYSQL_ATTR_SSL_VERIFY_SERVER_CERT => true,
            ]
        );

        // Obtain the result of the query
        $stmt = $conn->prepare('SELECT ?+? AS sum');
        $stmt->execute([3, 2]);

        return $stmt->fetch(PDO::FETCH_ASSOC);
    }

    /**
     * @param mixed $event
     * @param Context $context
```

```
     * @return array
     */
    public function handle(mixed $event, Context $context): array
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing query");

        // Execute database flow
        $result = $this->getQueryResults();

        return [
            'sum' => $result['sum']
        ];
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon Rekognition.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use Aws\S3\S3Client;

$client = new S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
$results = $client->listBuckets();
var_dump($results);
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.

- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        echo("\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");
        print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo using PHP!\n");
        echo("--------------------------------------\n");

        $region = 'us-west-2';

        $this->s3client = new S3Client([
                'region' => $region,
        ]);
        /* Inline declaration example
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
        */

        $this->bucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-" . uniqid();

        try {
            $this->s3client->createBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CreateBucketConfiguration' => ['LocationConstraint' => $region],
            ]);
            echo "Created bucket named: $this->bucketName \n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to create bucket $this->bucketName with error: " .
$exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.");
        }

        $fileName = __DIR__ . "/local-file-" . uniqid();
        try {
```

```
            $this->s3client->putObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
                'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/testfile.txt'
            ]);
            echo "Uploaded $fileName to $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to upload $fileName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file upload before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $file = $this->s3client->getObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
            ]);
            $body = $file->get('Body');
            $body->rewind();
            echo "Downloaded the file and it begins with: {$body->read(26)}.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to download $fileName from $this->bucketName with error:
 " . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file downloading before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $folder = "copied-folder";
            $this->s3client->copyObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CopySource' => "$this->bucketName/$fileName",
                'Key' => "$folder/$fileName-copy",
            ]);
            echo "Copied $fileName to $folder/$fileName-copy.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to copy $fileName with error: " . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object copying before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $contents = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "The contents of your bucket are: \n";
```

```
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
                echo $content['Key'] . "\n";
            }
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to list objects in $this->bucketName with error: " .
 $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with listing objects before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $objects = [];
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
                $objects[] = [
                    'Key' => $content['Key'],
                ];
            }
            $this->s3client->deleteObjects([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Delete' => [
                    'Objects' => $objects,
                ],
            ]);
            $check = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            if (isset($check['Contents']) && count($check['Contents']) > 0) {
                throw new Exception("Bucket wasn't empty.");
            }
            echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $this->bucketName with error: " .
 $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.");
        }

        try {
            $this->s3client->deleteBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "Deleted bucket $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $this->bucketName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.");
```

```
    }

    echo "Successfully ran the Amazon S3 with PHP demo.\n";
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Simple copy of an object.

```
    $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

    try {
        $folder = "copied-folder";
        $this->s3client->copyObject([
            'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            'CopySource' => "$this->bucketName/$fileName",
```

```
                'Key' => "$folder/$fileName-copy",
            ]);
            echo "Copied $fileName to $folder/$fileName-copy.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to copy $fileName with error: " . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object copying before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $this->s3client->createBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'CreateBucketConfiguration' => ['LocationConstraint' => $region],
            ]);
            echo "Created bucket named: $this->bucketName \n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to create bucket $this->bucketName with error: " .
$exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an empty bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $this->s3client->deleteBucket([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "Deleted bucket $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $this->bucketName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   public function deleteObject(string $bucketName, string $fileName, array $args =
[])
   {
       $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $fileName],
$args);
       try {
           $this->client->deleteObject($parameters);
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Deleted the object named: $fileName from $bucketName.\n";
           }
       } catch (AwsException $exception) {
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
               echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
           }
           throw $exception;
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a set of objects from a list of keys.

```
       $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);
```

```
        try {
            $objects = [];
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
                $objects[] = [
                    'Key' => $content['Key'],
                ];
            }
            $this->s3client->deleteObjects([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Delete' => [
                    'Objects' => $objects,
                ],
            ]);
            $check = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            if (isset($check['Contents']) && count($check['Contents']) > 0) {
                throw new Exception("Bucket wasn't empty.");
            }
            echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $this->bucketName with error: " .
$exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $file = $this->s3client->getObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
            ]);
            $body = $file->get('Body');
            $body->rewind();
            echo "Downloaded the file and it begins with: {$body->read(26)}.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to download $fileName from $this->bucketName with error:
" . $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file downloading before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List objects in a bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        try {
            $contents = $this->s3client->listObjectsV2([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
            ]);
            echo "The contents of your bucket are: \n";
            foreach ($contents['Contents'] as $content) {
```

```
                echo $content['Key'] . "\n";
            }
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to list objects in $this->bucketName with error: " .
 $exception->getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with listing objects before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload an object to a bucket.

```
        $s3client = new Aws\S3\S3Client(['region' => 'us-west-2']);

        $fileName = __DIR__ . "/local-file-" . uniqid();
        try {
            $this->s3client->putObject([
                'Bucket' => $this->bucketName,
                'Key' => $fileName,
                'SourceFile' => __DIR__ . '/testfile.txt'
            ]);
            echo "Uploaded $fileName to $this->bucketName.\n";
        } catch (Exception $exception) {
            echo "Failed to upload $fileName with error: " . $exception-
>getMessage();
            exit("Please fix error with file upload before continuing.");
        }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
namespace S3;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use AwsUtilities\PrintableLineBreak;
use AwsUtilities\TestableReadline;
use DateTime;

require 'vendor/autoload.php';

class PresignedURL
{
    use PrintableLineBreak;
    use TestableReadline;

    public function run()
    {
        $s3Service = new S3Service();

        $expiration = new DateTime("+20 minutes");
        $linebreak = $this->getLineBreak();

        echo $linebreak;
        echo ("Welcome to the Amazon S3 presigned URL demo.\n");
        echo $linebreak;
```

```
        $bucket = $this->testable_readline("First, please enter the name of the S3
 bucket to use: ");
        $key = $this->testable_readline("Next, provide the key of an object in the
 given bucket: ");
        echo $linebreak;
        $command = $s3Service->getClient()->getCommand('GetObject', [
            'Bucket' => $bucket,
            'Key' => $key,
        ]);
        try {
            $preSignedUrl = $s3Service->preSignedUrl($command, $expiration);
            echo "Your preSignedUrl is \n$preSignedUrl\nand will be good for the
 next 20 minutes.\n";
            echo $linebreak;
            echo "Thanks for trying the Amazon S3 presigned URL demo.\n";
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            echo $linebreak;
            echo "Something went wrong: $exception";
            die();
        }
    }
}

$runner = new PresignedURL();
$runner->run();



namespace S3;

use Aws\CommandInterface;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Result;
use Aws\S3\Exception\S3Exception;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use DateTimeInterface;

class S3Service extends AWSServiceClass
{
    protected S3Client $client;
    protected bool $verbose;

    public function __construct(S3Client $client = null, $verbose = false)
```

```
    {
        if ($client) {
            $this->client = $client;
        } else {
            $this->client = new S3Client([
                'version' => 'latest',
                'region' => 'us-west-2',
            ]);
        }
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function setVerbose($verbose)
    {
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function isVerbose(): bool
    {
        return $this->verbose;
    }

    public function getClient(): S3Client
    {
        return $this->client;
    }

    public function setClient(S3Client $client)
    {
        $this->client = $client;
    }


    public function emptyAndDeleteBucket($bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $objects = $this->listAllObjects($bucketName, $args);
            $this->deleteObjects($bucketName, $objects, $args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $bucketName.\n";
            }
            $this->deleteBucket($bucketName, $args);
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
```

```
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "\nPlease fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.\n";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function createBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->createBucket($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Created the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function putObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->putObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Uploaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
 $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $key in $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object uploading before continuing.";
```

```
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function getObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = []):
 Result
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key], $args);
        try {
            $object = $this->client->getObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Downloaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
 $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to download $key from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object downloading before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $object;
    }



    public function copyObject($bucketName, $key, $copySource, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key,
 "CopySource" => $copySource], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->copyObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Copied the object from: $copySource in $bucketName to: $key.
\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to copy $copySource in $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
```

```
                echo "Please fix error with object copying before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function listObjects(string $bucketName, $start = 0, $max = 1000, array
$args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Marker' => $start,
"MaxKeys" => $max], $args);
        try {
            $objects = $this->client->listObjectsV2($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve the objects from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with list objects before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $objects;
    }



    public function listAllObjects($bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);

        $contents = [];
        $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListObjectsV2", $parameters);

        foreach ($paginator as $result) {
            if($result['KeyCount'] == 0){
                break;
            }
            foreach ($result['Contents'] as $object) {
                $contents[] = $object;
```

```
            }
        }
        return $contents;
    }



    public function deleteObjects(string $bucketName, array $objects, array $args =
[])
    {
        $listOfObjects = array_map(
            function ($object) {
                return ['Key' => $object];
            },
            array_column($objects, 'Key')
        );
        if(!$listOfObjects){
            return;
        }

        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Delete' => ['Objects'
=> $listOfObjects]], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObjects($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete the list of objects from $bucketName with
error: {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteBucket($parameters);
```

```
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteObject(string $bucketName, string $fileName, array $args =
 [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $fileName],
 $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the object named: $fileName from $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function listBuckets(array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $buckets = $this->client->listBuckets($args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved all " . count($buckets) . "\n";
            }
```

```
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve bucket list with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket lists before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $buckets;
    }



    public function preSignedUrl(CommandInterface $command, DateTimeInterface|int|
string $expires, array $options = [])
    {
        $request = $this->client->createPresignedRequest($command, $expires,
 $options);
        try {
            $presignedUrl = (string)$request->getUri();
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create a presigned url: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with presigned urls before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $presignedUrl;
    }



    public function createSession(string $bucketName)
    {
        try{
            $result = $this->client->createSession([
                'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            ]);
            return $result;
        }catch(S3Exception $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorType() == "NoSuchBucket"){
                echo "The specified bucket does not exist.";
            }
```

```
            throw $caught;
        }
    }

}
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using PHP.

```
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Event;
use Bref\Event\S3\S3Handler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';


class Handler extends S3Handler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    public function handleS3(S3Event $event, Context $context) : void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing S3 records");

        // Get the object from the event and show its content type
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record)
        {
            $bucket = $record->getBucket()->getName();
            $key = urldecode($record->getObject()->getKey());

            try {
                $fileSize = urldecode($record->getObject()->getSize());
                echo "File Size: " . $fileSize . "\n";
```

```
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                echo $e->getMessage() . "\n";
                echo 'Error getting object ' . $key . ' from bucket ' . $bucket .
 '. Make sure they exist and your bucket is in the same region as this function.' .
 "\n";
                throw $e;
            }
        }
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

S3 Directory Buckets examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with S3 Directory Buckets.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up a VPC and VPC Endpoint.
- Set up the Policies, Roles, and User to work with S3 directory buckets and the S3 Express One Zone storage class.
- Create two S3 Clients.
- Create two buckets.

- Create an object and copy it over.
- Demonstrate performance difference.
- Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
- Prompt the user to see if they want to clean up the resources.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario demonstrating the basics of Amazon S3 directory buckets and S3 Express One Zone.

```
        echo "\n";
        echo "--------------------------------------\n";
        echo "Welcome to the Amazon S3 Express Basics demo using PHP!\n";
        echo "--------------------------------------\n";

        // Change these both of these values to use a different region/availability
 zone.
        $region = "us-west-2";
        $az = "usw2-az1";

        $this->s3Service = new S3Service(new S3Client(['region' => $region]));
        $this->iamService = new IAMService(new IamClient(['region' => $region]));

        $uuid = uniqid();

        echo <<<INTRO
Let's get started! First, please note that S3 Express One Zone works best when
 working within the AWS infrastructure,
specifically when working in the same Availability Zone. To see the best results in
 this example, and when you implement
Directory buckets into your infrastructure, it is best to put your Compute resources
 in the same AZ as your Directory
bucket.\n
INTRO;
```

```
        pressEnter();
        // 1. Configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the recommended method to
 allow S3 Express One Zone traffic without
        // the need to pass through an internet gateway or NAT device.
        echo "\n";
        echo "1. First, we'll set up a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if this program is
 running in an EC2 instance in the same AZ as your Directory buckets will be.\n";
        $ec2Choice = testable_readline("Are you running this in an EC2 instance
 located in the same AZ as your intended Directory buckets? Enter Y/y to setup a VPC
 Endpoint, or N/n/blank to skip this section.");
        if($ec2Choice == "Y" || $ec2Choice == "y") {
            echo "Great! Let's set up a VPC, retrieve the Route Table from it, and
 create a VPC Endpoint to connect the S3 Client to.\n";
            pressEnter();
            $this->ec2Service = new EC2Service(new Ec2Client(['region' =>
 $region]));
            $cidr = "10.0.0.0/16";
            $vpc = $this->ec2Service->createVpc($cidr);
            $this->resources['vpcId'] = $vpc['VpcId'];

            $this->ec2Service->waitForVpcAvailable($vpc['VpcId']);

            $routeTable = $this->ec2Service->describeRouteTables([], [
                [
                    'Name' => "vpc-id",
                    'Values' => [$vpc['VpcId']],
                ],
            ]);

            $serviceName = "com.amazonaws." . $this->ec2Service->getRegion() .
 ".s3express";
            $vpcEndpoint = $this->ec2Service->createVpcEndpoint($serviceName,
 $vpc['VpcId'], [$routeTable[0]]);
            $this->resources['vpcEndpointId'] = $vpcEndpoint['VpcEndpointId'];
        }else{
            echo "Skipping the VPC setup. Don't forget to use this in production!
\n";
        }

        // 2. Policies, user, and roles with CDK.
        echo "\n";
        echo "2. Policies, users, and roles with CDK.\n";
        echo "Now, we'll set up some policies, roles, and a user. This user will
 only have permissions to do S3 Express One Zone actions.\n";
```

```
        pressEnter();

        $this->cloudFormationClient = new CloudFormationClient([]);
        $stackName = "cfn-stack-s3-express-basics-" . uniqid();
        $file = file_get_contents(__DIR__ . "/../../../../resources/cfn/
s3_express_basics/s3_express_template.yml");
        $result = $this->cloudFormationClient->createStack([
            'StackName' => $stackName,
            'TemplateBody' => $file,
            'Capabilities' => ['CAPABILITY_IAM'],
        ]);
        $waiter = $this->cloudFormationClient->getWaiter("StackCreateComplete",
 ['StackName' => $stackName]);
        try {
            $waiter->promise()->wait();
        }catch(CloudFormationException $caught){
            echo "Error waiting for the CloudFormation stack to create: {$caught-
>getAwsErrorMessage()}\n";
            throw $caught;
        }
        $this->resources['stackName'] = $stackName;
        $stackInfo = $this->cloudFormationClient->describeStacks([
            'StackName' => $result['StackId'],
        ]);

        $expressUserName = "";
        $regularUserName = "";
        foreach($stackInfo['Stacks'][0]['Outputs'] as $output) {
            if ($output['OutputKey'] == "RegularUser") {
                $regularUserName = $output['OutputValue'];
            }
            if ($output['OutputKey'] == "ExpressUser") {
                $expressUserName = $output['OutputValue'];
            }
        }
        $regularKey = $this->iamService->createAccessKey($regularUserName);
        $regularCredentials = new Credentials($regularKey['AccessKeyId'],
 $regularKey['SecretAccessKey']);
        $expressKey = $this->iamService->createAccessKey($expressUserName);
        $expressCredentials = new Credentials($expressKey['AccessKeyId'],
 $expressKey['SecretAccessKey']);

        // 3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express
 permissions.
```

```
        echo "\n";
        echo "3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express
permissions.\n";
        echo "This client is created with the credentials associated with the
user account with the S3 Express policy attached, so it can perform S3 Express
operations.\n";
        pressEnter();
        $s3RegularClient = new S3Client([
            'Region' => $region,
            'Credentials' => $regularCredentials,
        ]);
        $s3RegularService = new S3Service($s3RegularClient);
        $s3ExpressClient = new S3Client([
            'Region' => $region,
            'Credentials' => $expressCredentials,
        ]);
        $s3ExpressService = new S3Service($s3ExpressClient);
        echo "All the roles and policies were created an attached to the user. Then,
a new S3 Client and Service were created using that user's credentials.\n";
        echo "We can now use this client to make calls to S3 Express operations.
Keeping permissions in mind (and adhering to least-privilege) is crucial to S3
Express.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 4. Create two buckets.
        echo "\n";
        echo "3. Create two buckets.\n";
        echo "Now we will create a Directory bucket, which is the linchpin of the S3
Express One Zone service.\n";
        echo "Directory buckets behave in different ways from regular S3 buckets,
which we will explore here.\n";
        echo "We'll also create a normal bucket, put an object into the normal
bucket, and copy it over to the Directory bucket.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // Create a directory bucket. These are different from normal S3 buckets in
subtle ways.
        $directoryBucketName = "s3-express-demo-directory-bucket-$uuid--$az--x-s3";
        echo "Now, let's create the actual Directory bucket, as well as a regular
bucket.\n";
        pressEnter();
        $s3ExpressService->createBucket($directoryBucketName, [
            'CreateBucketConfiguration' => [
                'Bucket' => [
```

```
                    'Type' => "Directory", // This is what causes S3 to create a
Directory bucket as opposed to a normal bucket.
                    'DataRedundancy' => "SingleAvailabilityZone",
                ],
                'Location' => [
                    'Name' => $az,
                    'Type' => "AvailabilityZone",
                ],
            ],
        ]);
        $this->resources['directoryBucketName'] = $directoryBucketName;

        // Create a normal bucket.
        $normalBucketName = "normal-bucket-$uuid";
        $s3RegularService->createBucket($normalBucketName);
        $this->resources['normalBucketName'] = $normalBucketName;
        echo "Great! Both buckets were created.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 5. Create an object and copy it over.
        echo "\n";
        echo "5. Create an object and copy it over.\n";
        echo "We'll create a basic object consisting of some text and upload it to
the normal bucket.\n";
        echo "Next, we'll copy the object into the Directory bucket using the
regular client.\n";
        echo "This works fine, because Copy operations are not restricted for
Directory buckets.\n";
        pressEnter();

        $objectKey = "basic-text-object";
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $objectKey, $args = ['Body'
=> "Look Ma, I'm a bucket!"]);
        $this->resources['objectKey'] = $objectKey;

        // Create a session to access the directory bucket. The SDK Client will
automatically refresh this as needed.
        $s3ExpressService->createSession($directoryBucketName);
        $s3ExpressService->copyObject($directoryBucketName, $objectKey,
"$normalBucketName/$objectKey");

        echo "It worked! It's important to remember the user permissions when
interacting with Directory buckets.\n";
```

```
        echo "Instead of validating permissions on every call as normal buckets do,
Directory buckets utilize the user credentials and session token to validate.\n";
        echo "This allows for much faster connection speeds on every call. For
single calls, this is low, but for many concurrent calls, this adds up to a lot of
time saved.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // 6. Demonstrate performance difference.
        echo "\n";
        echo "6. Demonstrate performance difference.\n";
        $downloads = 1000;
        echo "Now, let's do a performance test. We'll download the same object
from each bucket $downloads times and compare the total time needed. Note: the
performance difference will be much more pronounced if this example is run in an
EC2 instance in the same AZ as the bucket.\n";
        $downloadChoice = testable_readline("If you would like to download each
object $downloads times, press enter. Otherwise, enter a custom amount and press
enter.");
        if($downloadChoice && is_numeric($downloadChoice) && $downloadChoice <
1000000){ // A million is enough. I promise.
            $downloads = $downloadChoice;
        }

        // Download the object $downloads times from each bucket and time it to
demonstrate the speed difference.
        $directoryStartTime = hrtime(true);
        for($i = 0; $i < $downloads; ++$i){
            $s3ExpressService->getObject($directoryBucketName, $objectKey);
        }
        $directoryEndTime = hrtime(true);
        $directoryTimeDiff = $directoryEndTime - $directoryStartTime;

        $normalStartTime = hrtime(true);
        for($i = 0; $i < $downloads; ++$i){
            $s3RegularService->getObject($normalBucketName, $objectKey);
        }
        $normalEndTime = hrtime(true);
        $normalTimeDiff = $normalEndTime - $normalStartTime;

        echo "The directory bucket took $directoryTimeDiff nanoseconds, while the
normal bucket took $normalTimeDiff.\n";
        echo "That's a difference of " . ($normalTimeDiff - $directoryTimeDiff) .
" nanoseconds, or " . (($normalTimeDiff - $directoryTimeDiff)/1000000000) . "
seconds.\n";
```

```
        pressEnter();

        // 7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
        echo "\n";
        echo "7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.\n";
        echo "Now let's explore how Directory buckets store objects in a different
 manner to regular buckets.\n";
        echo "The key is in the name \"Directory!\"\n";
        echo "Where regular buckets store their key/value pairs in a flat manner,
 Directory buckets use actual directories/folders.\n";
        echo "This allows for more rapid indexing, traversing, and therefore
 retrieval times!\n";
        echo "The more segmented your bucket is, with lots of directories, sub-
directories, and objects, the more efficient it becomes.\n";
        echo "This structural difference also causes ListObjects to behave
 differently, which can cause unexpected results.\n";
        echo "Let's add a few more objects with layered directories as see how the
 output of ListObjects changes.\n";
        pressEnter();

        // Populate a few more files in each bucket so that we can use ListObjects
 and show the difference.
        $otherObject = "other/$objectKey";
        $altObject = "alt/$objectKey";
        $otherAltObject = "other/alt/$objectKey";
        $s3ExpressService->putObject($directoryBucketName, $otherObject);
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $otherObject);
        $this->resources['otherObject'] = $otherObject;
        $s3ExpressService->putObject($directoryBucketName, $altObject);
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $altObject);
        $this->resources['altObject'] = $altObject;
        $s3ExpressService->putObject($directoryBucketName, $otherAltObject);
        $s3RegularService->putObject($normalBucketName, $otherAltObject);
        $this->resources['otherAltObject'] = $otherAltObject;

        $listDirectoryBucket = $s3ExpressService->listObjects($directoryBucketName);
        $listNormalBucket = $s3RegularService->listObjects($normalBucketName);

        // Directory bucket content
        echo "Directory bucket content\n";
        foreach($listDirectoryBucket['Contents'] as $result){
            echo $result['Key'] . "\n";
        }
```

```
        // Normal bucket content
        echo "\nNormal bucket content\n";
        foreach($listNormalBucket['Contents'] as $result){
            echo $result['Key'] . "\n";
        }

        echo "Notice how the normal bucket lists objects in lexicographical order,
 while the directory bucket does not. This is because the normal bucket considers
 the whole \"key\" to be the object identifies, while the directory bucket actually
 creates directories and uses the object \"key\" as a path to the object.\n";
        pressEnter();

        echo "\n";
        echo "That's it for our tour of the basic operations for S3 Express One
 Zone.\n";
        $cleanUp = testable_readline("Would you like to delete all the resources
 created during this demo? Enter Y/y to delete all the resources.");
        if($cleanUp){
            $this->cleanUp();
        }



namespace S3;

use Aws\CommandInterface;
use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Result;
use Aws\S3\Exception\S3Exception;
use Aws\S3\S3Client;
use AwsUtilities\AWSServiceClass;
use DateTimeInterface;

class S3Service extends AWSServiceClass
{
    protected S3Client $client;
    protected bool $verbose;

    public function __construct(S3Client $client = null, $verbose = false)
    {
        if ($client) {
            $this->client = $client;
        } else {
            $this->client = new S3Client([
```

```
                'version' => 'latest',
                'region' => 'us-west-2',
            ]);
        }
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function setVerbose($verbose)
    {
        $this->verbose = $verbose;
    }

    public function isVerbose(): bool
    {
        return $this->verbose;
    }

    public function getClient(): S3Client
    {
        return $this->client;
    }

    public function setClient(S3Client $client)
    {
        $this->client = $client;
    }


    public function emptyAndDeleteBucket($bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $objects = $this->listAllObjects($bucketName, $args);
            $this->deleteObjects($bucketName, $objects, $args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted all objects and folders from $bucketName.\n";
            }
            $this->deleteBucket($bucketName, $args);
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "\nPlease fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.\n";
            }
            throw $exception;
```

```
        }
    }



    public function createBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->createBucket($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Created the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket creation before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function putObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->putObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Uploaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
 $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create $key in $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object uploading before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }
```

```
    public function getObject(string $bucketName, string $key, array $args = []):
 Result
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key], $args);
        try {
            $object = $this->client->getObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Downloaded the object named: $key to the bucket named:
 $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to download $key from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object downloading before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $object;
    }



    public function copyObject($bucketName, $key, $copySource, array $args = [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $key,
 "CopySource" => $copySource], $args);
        try {
            $this->client->copyObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Copied the object from: $copySource in $bucketName to: $key.
\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to copy $copySource in $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object copying before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }
```

```
   public function listObjects(string $bucketName, $start = 0, $max = 1000, array
$args = [])
   {
       $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Marker' => $start,
"MaxKeys" => $max], $args);
       try {
           $objects = $this->client->listObjectsV2($parameters);
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Retrieved the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
           }
       } catch (AwsException $exception) {
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Failed to retrieve the objects from $bucketName with error:
{$exception->getMessage()}\n";
               echo "Please fix error with list objects before continuing.";
           }
           throw $exception;
       }
       return $objects;
   }



   public function listAllObjects($bucketName, array $args = [])
   {
       $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);

       $contents = [];
       $paginator = $this->client->getPaginator("ListObjectsV2", $parameters);

       foreach ($paginator as $result) {
           if($result['KeyCount'] == 0){
               break;
           }
           foreach ($result['Contents'] as $object) {
               $contents[] = $object;
           }
       }
       return $contents;
   }
```

```
   public function deleteObjects(string $bucketName, array $objects, array $args =
[])
   {
       $listOfObjects = array_map(
           function ($object) {
               return ['Key' => $object];
           },
           array_column($objects, 'Key')
       );
       if(!$listOfObjects){
           return;
       }

       $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Delete' => ['Objects'
=> $listOfObjects]], $args);
       try {
           $this->client->deleteObjects($parameters);
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Deleted the list of objects from: $bucketName.\n";
           }
       } catch (AwsException $exception) {
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Failed to delete the list of objects from $bucketName with
error: {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
               echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
           }
           throw $exception;
       }
   }



   public function deleteBucket(string $bucketName, array $args = [])
   {
       $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName], $args);
       try {
           $this->client->deleteBucket($parameters);
           if ($this->verbose) {
               echo "Deleted the bucket named: $bucketName.\n";
           }
       } catch (AwsException $exception) {
           if ($this->verbose) {
```

```
                echo "Failed to delete $bucketName with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function deleteObject(string $bucketName, string $fileName, array $args =
 [])
    {
        $parameters = array_merge(['Bucket' => $bucketName, 'Key' => $fileName],
 $args);
        try {
            $this->client->deleteObject($parameters);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Deleted the object named: $fileName from $bucketName.\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to delete $fileName from $bucketName with error:
 {$exception->getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with object deletion before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
    }



    public function listBuckets(array $args = [])
    {
        try {
            $buckets = $this->client->listBuckets($args);
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Retrieved all " . count($buckets) . "\n";
            }
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to retrieve bucket list with error: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with bucket lists before continuing.";
```

```
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $buckets;
    }



    public function preSignedUrl(CommandInterface $command, DateTimeInterface|int|
string $expires, array $options = [])
    {
        $request = $this->client->createPresignedRequest($command, $expires,
 $options);
        try {
            $presignedUrl = (string)$request->getUri();
        } catch (AwsException $exception) {
            if ($this->verbose) {
                echo "Failed to create a presigned url: {$exception-
>getMessage()}\n";
                echo "Please fix error with presigned urls before continuing.";
            }
            throw $exception;
        }
        return $presignedUrl;
    }



    public function createSession(string $bucketName)
    {
        try{
            $result = $this->client->createSession([
                'Bucket' => $bucketName,
            ]);
            return $result;
        }catch(S3Exception $caught){
            if($caught->getAwsErrorType() == "NoSuchBucket"){
                echo "The specified bucket does not exist.";
            }
            throw $caught;
        }
    }

}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObject
  - ListObjects
  - PutObject

Amazon SES examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon SES.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for PHP to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon RDS database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses a front end built with React.js to interact with a RESTful PHP backend.

- Integrate a React.js web application with AWS services.
- List, add, update, and delete items in an Amazon RDS table.
- Send an email report of filtered work items using Amazon SES.
- Deploy and manage example resources with the included AWS CloudFormation script.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Indicates whether the phone number owner has opted out of receiving SMS messages
 from your AWS SNS account.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$phone = '+1XXX5550100';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->checkIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut([
        'phoneNumber' => $phone,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
```

```
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CheckIfPhoneNumberIsOptedOut in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ConfirmSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSubscription`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Verifies an endpoint owner's intent to receive messages by
 * validating the token sent to the endpoint by an earlier Subscribe action.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);
```

```
$subscription_token = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic:123456-
abcd-12ab-1234-12ba3dc1234a';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->confirmSubscription([
        'Token' => $subscription_token,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSubscription in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Create a Simple Notification Service topics in your AWS account at the requested
 region.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
```

```
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$topicname = 'myTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->createTopic([
        'Name' => $topicname,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
```

```
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Deletes an SNS topic and all its subscriptions.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->deleteTopic([
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Get the type of SMS Message sent by default from the AWS SNS service.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->getSMSAttributes([
        'attributes' => ['DefaultSMSType'],
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see GetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->getTopicAttributes([
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Returns a list of phone numbers that are opted out of receiving SMS messages from
 your AWS SNS account.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->listPhoneNumbersOptedOut();
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListPhoneNumbersOptedOut in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Returns a list of Amazon SNS subscriptions in the requested region.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->listSubscriptions();
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

ListTopics

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Returns a list of the requester's topics from your AWS SNS account in the region
 specified.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->listTopics();
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Sends a message to an Amazon SNS topic.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$message = 'This message is sent from a Amazon SNS code sample.';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->publish([
        'Message' => $message,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
```

```
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`SetSMSAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetSMSAttributes`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->SetSMSAttributes([
        'attributes' => [
            'DefaultSMSType' => 'Transactional',
        ],
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetSMSAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`SetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Configure the message delivery status attributes for an Amazon SNS Topic.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);
$attribute = 'Policy | DisplayName | DeliveryPolicy';
$value = 'First Topic';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->setTopicAttributes([
        'AttributeName' => $attribute,
        'AttributeValue' => $value,
```

```
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Prepares to subscribe an endpoint by sending the endpoint a confirmation message.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
```

```
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$protocol = 'email';
$endpoint = 'sample@example.com';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->subscribe([
        'Protocol' => $protocol,
        'Endpoint' => $endpoint,
        'ReturnSubscriptionArn' => true,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

Subscribe an HTTP endpoint to a topic.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Prepares to subscribe an endpoint by sending the endpoint a confirmation message.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);
```

```
$protocol = 'https';
$endpoint = 'https://';
$topic = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MyTopic';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->subscribe([
        'Protocol' => $protocol,
        'Endpoint' => $endpoint,
        'ReturnSubscriptionArn' => true,
        'TopicArn' => $topic,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Deletes a subscription to an Amazon SNS topic.
```

```
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
]);

$subscription = 'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111122223333:MySubscription';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->unsubscribe([
        'SubscriptionArn' => $subscription,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for PHP

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'vendor/autoload.php';

use Aws\Exception\AwsException;
use Aws\Sns\SnsClient;


/**
 * Sends a text message (SMS message) directly to a phone number using Amazon SNS.
 *
 * This code expects that you have AWS credentials set up per:
 * https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-php/v3/developer-guide/guide_credentials.html
 */

$SnSclient = new SnsClient([
    'profile' => 'default',
    'region' => 'us-east-1',
    'version' => '2010-03-31'
```

```
]);

$message = 'This message is sent from a Amazon SNS code sample.';
$phone = '+1XXX5550100';

try {
    $result = $SnSclient->publish([
        'Message' => $message,
        'PhoneNumber' => $phone,
    ]);
    var_dump($result);
} catch (AwsException $e) {
    // output error message if fails
    error_log($e->getMessage());
}
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for PHP Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for PHP API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
<?php

/*
Since native PHP support for AWS Lambda is not available, we are utilizing Bref's
 PHP functions runtime for AWS Lambda.
For more information on Bref's PHP runtime for Lambda, refer to: https://bref.sh/
docs/runtimes/function

Another approach would be to create a custom runtime.
A practical example can be found here: https://aws.amazon.com/blogs/apn/aws-lambda-
custom-runtime-for-php-a-practical-example/
*/

// Additional composer packages may be required when using Bref or any other PHP
 functions runtime.
// require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sns\SnsHandler;

class Handler extends SnsHandler
{
    public function handleSns(SnsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $message = $record->getMessage();

            // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            // Any exception thrown will be logged and the invocation will be marked
 as failed

            echo "Processed Message: $message" . PHP_EOL;
        }
    }
}

return new Handler();
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for PHP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for PHP with Amazon SQS.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

# using bref/bref and bref/logger for simplicity

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;
```

```
require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        foreach ($event->getRecords() as $record) {
            $body = $record->getBody();
            // TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
        }
    }
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for PHP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using PHP.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
<?php

use Bref\Context\Context;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsEvent;
use Bref\Event\Sqs\SqsHandler;
use Bref\Logger\StderrLogger;

require __DIR__ . '/vendor/autoload.php';

class Handler extends SqsHandler
{
    private StderrLogger $logger;
    public function __construct(StderrLogger $logger)
    {
        $this->logger = $logger;
    }

    /**
     * @throws JsonException
     * @throws \Bref\Event\InvalidLambdaEvent
     */
    public function handleSqs(SqsEvent $event, Context $context): void
    {
        $this->logger->info("Processing SQS records");
        $records = $event->getRecords();

        foreach ($records as $record) {
            try {
                // Assuming the SQS message is in JSON format
                $message = json_decode($record->getBody(), true);
                $this->logger->info(json_encode($message));
                // TODO: Implement your custom processing logic here
            } catch (Exception $e) {
                $this->logger->error($e->getMessage());
                // failed processing the record
                $this->markAsFailed($record);
            }
        }
        $totalRecords = count($records);
        $this->logger->info("Successfully processed $totalRecords SQS records");
    }
```

```
}

$logger = new StderrLogger();
return new Handler($logger);
```

Code examples for Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **Tools for PowerShell V5 Developer Guide** – More about using PowerShell with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- ACM examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Application Auto Scaling examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AppStream 2.0 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Aurora examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Auto Scaling examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Budgets examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Cloud9 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

- AWS CloudFormation examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- CloudFront examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- CloudTrail examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- CloudWatch examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- CodeCommit examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- CodeDeploy examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- CodePipeline examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon Cognito Identity examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Config examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Device Farm examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Directory Service examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS DMS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- DynamoDB examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon EC2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon ECR examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon ECS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon EFS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon EKS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon FSx examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Glue examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Health examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- IAM examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Kinesis examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Lambda examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon ML examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Macie examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS Price List examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Resource Groups examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

- Resource Groups Tagging API examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Route 53 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon S3 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- S3 Glacier examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Security Hub examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon SES examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon SES API v2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon SNS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon SQS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS STS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Support examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Systems Manager examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- Amazon Translate examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- AWS WAFV2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5
- WorkSpaces examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

ACM examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with ACM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-ACMCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ACMCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to return a certificate and its chain using the ARN of the certificate.

```
Get-ACMCertificate -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ACMCertificateDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ACMCertificateDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified certificate.

```
Get-ACMCertificateDetail -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn          : arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
CreatedAt               : 1/21/2016 5:55:59 PM
DomainName              : www.example.com
DomainValidationOptions : {www.example.com}
InUseBy                 : {}
IssuedAt                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Issuer                  :
KeyAlgorithm            : RSA-2048
NotAfter                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
NotBefore               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
RevocationReason        :
RevokedAt               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Serial                  :
SignatureAlgorithm      : SHA256WITHRSA
Status                  : PENDING_VALIDATION
Subject                 : CN=www.example.com
SubjectAlternativeNames : {www.example.net}
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ACMCertificateList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ACMCertificateList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves a list of all your certificate ARNs and the domain name for each. The cmdlet will automatically paginate to retrieve all the ARNs. To manually control pagination, use the -MaxItem parameter to control how many certificate ARNs are returned for each service call and the -NextToken parameter to indicate the starting point for each call.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
 DomainName
--------------
 ----------
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
 www.example.com
```

Example 2: Retrieves a list of all your certificate ARNs where the certificate status matches on the supplied states.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList -CertificateStatus "VALIDATION_TIMED_OUT","FAILED"
```

Example 3: This example returns a list of all certificates in the us-east-1 region that have a key type of RSA_2048, and an extended key usage, or purpose, of CODE_SIGNING. You can find the values for these filtering parameters in the ListCertificates Filters API reference topic: https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/APIReference/API_Filters.html.

```
Get-ACMCertificateList -Region us-east-1 -Includes_KeyType RSA_2048 -
Includes_ExtendedKeyUsage CODE_SIGNING
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
 DomainName
--------------
 ----------
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-d7c0-48c1-af8d-2133d8f30zzz
 *.route53docs.com
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-98a5-443d-a734-800430c80zzz
 nerdzizm.net
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-2be6-4376-8fa7-bad559525zzz

arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-e7ca-44c5-803e-24d9f2f36zzz

arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-1241-4b71-80b1-090305a62zzz

arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-8709-4568-8c64-f94617c99zzz

arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-a8fa-4a61-98cf-e08ccc0eezzz

arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:8xxxxxxxxxxx:certificate/xxxxxxxx-fa47-40fe-a714-2d277d3eezzz
 *.route53docs.com
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ACMCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ACMCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new certificate. The service returns the ARN of the new certificate.

```
New-ACMCertificate -DomainName "www.example.com"
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Example 2: Creates a new certificate. The service returns the ARN of the new certificate.

```
New-ACMCertificate -DomainName "www.example.com" -SubjectAlternativeName
 "example.com","www.example.net"
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ACMCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ACMCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the certificate identified by the supplied ARN and the associated private key. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding; add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation.

```
Remove-ACMCertificate -CertificateArn "arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Send-ACMValidationEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `Send-ACMValidationEmail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Requests that the email to validate domain ownership for 'www.example.com' be sent. If your shell's $ConfirmPreference is set to 'Medium' or lower, the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeeding. Add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation prompts.

```
$params = @{
    CertificateArn="arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012"
    Domain="www.example.com"
    ValidationDomain="example.com"
}
Send-ACMValidationEmail @params
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Application Auto Scaling examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Application Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-AASScalableTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-AASScalableTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet registers or updates a scalable target. A scalable target is a resource that Application Auto Scaling can scale out and scale in.

```
Add-AASScalableTarget -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -
ScalableDimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -MinCapacity 2 -MaxCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see RegisterScalableTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-AASScalableTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-AASScalableTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example will provide information about the Application Autoscaling Scalable targets in the specified namespace.

```
Get-AASScalableTarget -ServiceNamespace "AppStream"
```

Output:

```
CreationTime      : 11/7/2019 2:30:03 AM
MaxCapacity       : 5
MinCapacity       : 1
ResourceId        : fleet/Test
RoleARN           : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/aws-
service-role/appstream.application-autoscaling.amazonaws.com/
AWSServiceRoleForApplicationAutoScaling_AppStreamFleet
ScalableDimension : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace  : appstream
SuspendedState    : Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.SuspendedState
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalableTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-AASScalingActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-AASScalingActivity`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Provides descriptive information about the scaling activities in the specified namespace from the previous six weeks.

```
Get-AASScalingActivity -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
ActivityId        : 2827409f-b639-4cdb-a957-8055d5d07434
Cause             : monitor alarm Appstream2-MyFleet-default-scale-in-Alarm in state
 ALARM triggered policy default-scale-in
Description       : Setting desired capacity to 2.
Details           :
EndTime           : 12/14/2019 11:32:49 AM
ResourceId        : fleet/MyFleet
ScalableDimension : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace  : appstream
StartTime         : 12/14/2019 11:32:14 AM
```

```
StatusCode        : Successful
StatusMessage     : Successfully set desired capacity to 2. Change successfully
 fulfilled by appstream.
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-AASScalingPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-AASScalingPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet describe the Application Auto Scaling scaling policies for the specified service namespace.

```
Get-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
Alarms                                  : {Appstream2-LabFleet-default-scale-out-
Alarm}
CreationTime                            : 9/3/2019 2:48:15 AM
PolicyARN                               : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:5659b069-b5cd-4af1-9f7f-3e956d36233e:resource/
appstream/fleet/LabFleet:
                                          policyName/default-scale-out
PolicyName                              : default-scale-out
PolicyType                              : StepScaling
ResourceId                              : fleet/LabFleet
ScalableDimension                       : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace                        : appstream
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration          :
 Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.StepScalingPolicyConfiguration
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration :

Alarms                                  : {Appstream2-LabFleet-default-scale-in-
Alarm}
CreationTime                            : 9/3/2019 2:48:15 AM
PolicyARN                               : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:5659b069-b5cd-4af1-9f7f-3e956d36233e:resource/
appstream/fleet/LabFleet:
```

```
                                            policyName/default-scale-in
PolicyName                                : default-scale-in
PolicyType                                : StepScaling
ResourceId                                : fleet/LabFleet
ScalableDimension                         : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ServiceNamespace                          : appstream
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration            :
 Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.StepScalingPolicyConfiguration
TargetTrackingScalingPolicyConfiguration :
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-AASScheduledAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-AASScheduledAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the actions scheduled for your Auto Scaling group that haven't run or that have not reached their end time.

```
Get-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 12/22/2019 9:25:52 AM
EndTime              : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceId           : fleet/MyFleet
ScalableDimension    : appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
ScalableTargetAction : Amazon.ApplicationAutoScaling.Model.ScalableTargetAction
Schedule             : cron(0 0 8 ? * MON-FRI *)
ScheduledActionARN   : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scheduledAction:4897ca24-3caa-4bf1-8484-851a089b243c:resource/
appstream/fleet/MyFleet:scheduledActionName
                       /WeekDaysFleetScaling
ScheduledActionName  : WeekDaysFleetScaling
ServiceNamespace     : appstream
StartTime            : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-AASScalableTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-AASScalableTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deregisters an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.Deregistering a scalable target deletes the scaling policies that are associated with it.

```
Remove-AASScalableTarget -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -ServiceNamespace AppStream
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-AASScalableTarget (DeregisterScalableTarget)" on
 target "fleet/MyFleet".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeregisterScalableTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-AASScalingPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-AASScalingPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified scaling policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.

```
Remove-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream -PolicyName "default-scale-out"
 -ResourceId fleet/Test -ScalableDimension appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
```

- For API details, see DeleteScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-AASScheduledAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-AASScheduledAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified scheduled action for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target.

```
Remove-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ScheduledActionName
 WeekDaysFleetScaling -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-AASScheduledAction (DeleteScheduledAction)" on
 target "WeekDaysFleetScaling".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-AASScalingPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-AASScalingPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates or updates a policy for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target. Each scalable target is identified by a service namespace, resource ID, and scalable dimension.

```
Set-AASScalingPolicy -ServiceNamespace AppStream -PolicyName ASFleetScaleInPolicy
 -PolicyType StepScaling  -ResourceId fleet/MyFleet -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_AdjustmentType
 ChangeInCapacity -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_Cooldown 360
 -StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_MetricAggregationType Average -
StepScalingPolicyConfiguration_StepAdjustments @{ScalingAdjustment = -1;
 MetricIntervalUpperBound = 0}
```

Output:

```
Alarms    PolicyARN
```

```
------    ---------
{}        arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:012345678912:scalingPolicy:4897ca24-3caa-4bf1-8484-851a089b243c:resource/
appstream/fleet/MyFleet:policyName/ASFleetScaleInPolicy
```

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-AASScheduledAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-AASScheduledAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates or updates a scheduled action for an Application Auto Scaling scalable target. Each scalable target is identified by a service namespace, resource ID, and scalable dimension.

```
Set-AASScheduledAction -ServiceNamespace AppStream -ResourceId fleet/
MyFleet -Schedule "cron(0 0 8 ? * MON-FRI *)" -ScalableDimension
 appstream:fleet:DesiredCapacity -ScheduledActionName WeekDaysFleetScaling -
ScalableTargetAction_MinCapacity 5 -ScalableTargetAction_MaxCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see PutScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AppStream 2.0 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AppStream 2.0.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-APSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-APSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample adds a resource Tag to AppStream resource

```
Add-APSResourceTag -ResourceArn arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
SessionScriptTest -Tag @{StackState='Test'} -Select ^Tag
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
StackState                     Test
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Copy-APSImage`

The following code example shows how to use `Copy-APSImage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample copies an image to other region

```
Copy-APSImage -DestinationImageName TestImageCopy -DestinationRegion us-west-2 -
SourceImageName Powershell
```

Output:

```
TestImageCopy
```

- For API details, see CopyImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-APSUSer`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-APSUSer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample disables an user in USERPOOL

```
Disable-APSUser -AuthenticationType USERPOOL -UserName TestUser@lab.com
```

- For API details, see DisableUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-APSUser`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-APSUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables a disabled user in USERPOOL

```
Enable-APSUser -AuthenticationType USERPOOL -UserName TestUser@lab.com
```

- For API details, see EnableUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSAssociatedFleetList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSAssociatedFleetList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays fleet associated with a stack

```
Get-APSAssociatedFleetList -StackName PowershellStack
```

Output:

```
PowershellFleet
```

- For API details, see ListAssociatedFleets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSAssociatedStackList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSAssociatedStackList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays stack associated with a fleet

```
Get-APSAssociatedStackList -FleetName PowershellFleet
```

Output:

```
PowershellStack
```

- For API details, see ListAssociatedStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSDirectoryConfigList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSDirectoryConfigList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays Directory Configurations created in AppStream

```
Get-APSDirectoryConfigList | Select DirectoryName,
 OrganizationalUnitDistinguishedNames, CreatedTime
```

Output:

```
DirectoryName OrganizationalUnitDistinguishedNames CreatedTime
------------- ------------------------------------ -----------
Test.com      {OU=AppStream,DC=Test,DC=com}    9/6/2019 10:56:40 AM
contoso.com   {OU=AppStream,OU=contoso,DC=contoso,DC=com}  8/9/2019 9:08:50 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeDirectoryConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSFleetList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSFleetList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample displays details of a fleet

```
Get-APSFleetList -Name Test
```

Output:

```
Arn                             : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:1234567890:fleet/Test
ComputeCapacityStatus           : Amazon.AppStream.Model.ComputeCapacityStatus
CreatedTime                     : 9/12/2019 5:00:45 PM
Description                     : Test
DisconnectTimeoutInSeconds      : 900
DisplayName                     : Test
DomainJoinInfo                  :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess     : False
FleetErrors                     : {}
FleetType                       : ON_DEMAND
IamRoleArn                      :
IdleDisconnectTimeoutInSeconds  : 900
ImageArn                        : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:1234567890:image/Test
ImageName                       : Test
InstanceType                    : stream.standard.medium
MaxUserDurationInSeconds        : 57600
Name                            : Test
State                           : STOPPED
VpcConfig                       : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see DescribeFleets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSImageBuilderList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSImageBuilderList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample displays details of an ImageBuilder

```
Get-APSImageBuilderList -Name TestImage
```

Output:

```
AccessEndpoints             : {}
AppstreamAgentVersion       : 06-19-2019
```

```
Arn                          : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:1234567890:image-builder/
TestImage
CreatedTime                  : 1/14/2019 4:33:05 AM
Description                  :
DisplayName                  : TestImage
DomainJoinInfo               :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess  : False
IamRoleArn                   :
ImageArn                     : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1::image/Base-Image-
Builder-05-02-2018
ImageBuilderErrors           : {}
InstanceType                 : stream.standard.large
Name                         : TestImage
NetworkAccessConfiguration   : Amazon.AppStream.Model.NetworkAccessConfiguration
Platform                     : WINDOWS
State                        : STOPPED
StateChangeReason            :
VpcConfig                    : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see DescribeImageBuilders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSImageList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSImageList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays private AppStream Images

```
Get-APSImageList -Type PRIVATE | select DisplayName, ImageBuilderName, Visibility,
 arn
```

Output:

```
DisplayName          ImageBuilderName      Visibility Arn
-----------          ----------------      ---------- ---
OfficeApps           OfficeApps            PRIVATE    arn:aws:appstream:us-
east-1:123456789012:image/OfficeApps
SessionScriptV2      SessionScriptTest     PRIVATE    arn:aws:appstream:us-
east-1:123456789012:image/SessionScriptV2
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSImagePermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSImagePermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays Image permissions on a shared AppStream Image

```
Get-APSImagePermission -Name Powershell  | select SharedAccountId,
 @{n="AllowFleet";e={$_.ImagePermissions.AllowFleet}},
 @{n="AllowImageBuilder";e={$_.ImagePermissions.AllowImageBuilder}}
```

Output:

```
SharedAccountId AllowFleet AllowImageBuilder
--------------- ---------- -----------------
123456789012          True              True
```

- For API details, see DescribeImagePermissions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSSessionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSSessionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays list of sessions to a fleet

```
Get-APSSessionList -FleetName PowershellFleet -StackName PowershellStack
```

Output:

```
AuthenticationType         : API
ConnectionState            : CONNECTED
FleetName                  : PowershellFleet
Id                         : d8987c70-4394-4324-a396-2d485c26f2a2
MaxExpirationTime          : 12/27/2019 4:54:07 AM
NetworkAccessConfiguration : Amazon.AppStream.Model.NetworkAccessConfiguration
StackName                  : PowershellStack
StartTime                  : 12/26/2019 12:54:12 PM
State                      : ACTIVE
```

```
UserId                    : Test
```

- For API details, see DescribeSessions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSStackList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSStackList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays list of AppStream Stack

```
Get-APSStackList | Select DisplayName, Arn, CreatedTime
```

Output:

```
DisplayName                   Arn
                        CreatedTime
-----------                   ---
                        -----------
PowershellStack               arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
PowershellStack               4/24/2019 8:49:29 AM
SessionScriptTest             arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
SessionScriptTest             9/12/2019 3:23:12 PM
```

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSTagsForResourceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSTagsForResourceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays tags on an AppStream resource

```
Get-APSTagsForResourceList -ResourceArn arn:aws:appstream:us-
east-1:123456789012:stack/SessionScriptTest
```

Output:

```
Key        Value
```

```
---        -----
StackState Test
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSUsageReportSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSUsageReportSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays AppStreamUsageReport configuration details

```
Get-APSUsageReportSubscription
```

Output:

```
LastGeneratedReportDate S3BucketName                                Schedule
 SubscriptionErrors
----------------------- ------------                                --------
 ------------------
1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM    appstream-logs-us-east-1-123456789012-sik1hnxe DAILY    {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeUsageReportSubscriptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSUser`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample displays list of users with enabled status

```
Get-APSUser -AuthenticationType USERPOOL | Select-Object UserName,
 AuthenticationType, Enabled
```

Output:

```
UserName                    AuthenticationType Enabled
```

```
--------                    ------------------ -------
foo1@contoso.com USERPOOL              True
foo2@contoso.com        USERPOOL              True
foo3@contoso.com    USERPOOL              True
foo4@contoso.com   USERPOOL              True
foo5@contoso.com         USERPOOL              True
```

- For API details, see DescribeUsers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-APSUserStackAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-APSUserStackAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays list of users assigned to a stack

```
Get-APSUserStackAssociation -StackName PowershellStack
```

Output:

```
AuthenticationType SendEmailNotification StackName       UserName
------------------ --------------------- ---------       --------
USERPOOL           False                 PowershellStack TestUser1@lab.com
USERPOOL           False                 PowershellStack TestUser2@lab.com
```

- For API details, see DescribeUserStackAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSDirectoryConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSDirectoryConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates a directory configuration in AppStream

```
New-APSDirectoryConfig -ServiceAccountCredentials_AccountName contoso\ServiceAccount
 -ServiceAccountCredentials_AccountPassword MyPass -DirectoryName contoso.com -
OrganizationalUnitDistinguishedName "OU=AppStream,OU=Contoso,DC=Contoso,DC=com"
```

Output:

```
CreatedTime            DirectoryName OrganizationalUnitDistinguishedNames
 ServiceAccountCredentials
-----------            ------------- -----------------------------------
 -------------------------
12/27/2019 11:00:30 AM contoso.com   {OU=AppStream,OU=Contoso,DC=Contoso,DC=com}
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.ServiceAccountCredentials
```

- For API details, see CreateDirectoryConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates a new AppStream fleet

```
New-APSFleet -ComputeCapacity_DesiredInstance 1 -InstanceType stream.standard.medium
 -Name TestFleet -DisplayName TestFleet -FleetType ON_DEMAND -
EnableDefaultInternetAccess $True -VpcConfig_SubnetIds "subnet-123ce32","subnet-
a1234cfd" -VpcConfig_SecurityGroupIds sg-4d012a34 -ImageName SessionScriptTest -
Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Arn                            : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2:123456789012:fleet/
TestFleet
ComputeCapacityStatus          : Amazon.AppStream.Model.ComputeCapacityStatus
CreatedTime                    : 12/27/2019 11:24:42 AM
Description                    :
DisconnectTimeoutInSeconds     : 900
DisplayName                    : TestFleet
DomainJoinInfo                 :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess    : True
FleetErrors                    : {}
FleetType                      : ON_DEMAND
IamRoleArn                     :
IdleDisconnectTimeoutInSeconds : 0
ImageArn                       : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2:123456789012:image/
SessionScriptTest
```

```
ImageName                       : SessionScriptTest
InstanceType                    : stream.standard.medium
MaxUserDurationInSeconds        : 57600
Name                            : TestFleet
State                           : STOPPED
VpcConfig                       : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see CreateFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSImageBuilder`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSImageBuilder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates an Image Builder in AppStream

```
New-APSImageBuilder -InstanceType stream.standard.medium -Name TestIB -DisplayName
 TestIB -ImageName AppStream-WinServer2012R2-12-12-2019 -EnableDefaultInternetAccess
 $True -VpcConfig_SubnetId subnet-a1234cfd -VpcConfig_SecurityGroupIds sg-2d012a34 -
Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
AccessEndpoints             : {}
AppstreamAgentVersion       : 12-16-2019
Arn                         : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2:123456789012:image-
builder/TestIB
CreatedTime                 : 12/27/2019 11:39:24 AM
Description                 :
DisplayName                 : TestIB
DomainJoinInfo              :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess : True
IamRoleArn                  :
ImageArn                    : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2::image/AppStream-
WinServer2012R2-12-12-2019
ImageBuilderErrors          : {}
InstanceType                : stream.standard.medium
Name                        : TestIB
NetworkAccessConfiguration  :
Platform                    : WINDOWS
State                       : PENDING
```

```
StateChangeReason           :
VpcConfig                   : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see CreateImageBuilder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSImageBuilderStreamingURL`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSImageBuilderStreamingURL`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates an ImageBuilder streaming URL with validity of 2 hours

```
New-APSImageBuilderStreamingURL -Name TestIB -Validity 7200 -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Expires               StreamingURL
-------               ------------
12/27/2019 1:49:13 PM https://appstream2.us-west-2.aws.amazon.com/authenticate?
parameters=eyJ0eXBlIjoiQURNSU4iLCJleHBpcmVzIjoiMTU3NzQ1NDU1MyIsImF3c0FjY291bnRJZCI6IjM5MzQwM
```

- For API details, see CreateImageBuilderStreamingURL in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSStack`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates a new AppStream Stack

```
New-APSStack -Name TestStack -DisplayName TestStack -ApplicationSettings_Enabled
 $True -ApplicationSettings_SettingsGroup TestStack -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
AccessEndpoints     : {}
```

```
ApplicationSettings : Amazon.AppStream.Model.ApplicationSettingsResponse
Arn                 : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/TestStack
CreatedTime         : 12/27/2019 12:34:19 PM
Description         :
DisplayName         : TestStack
EmbedHostDomains    : {}
FeedbackURL         :
Name                : TestStack
RedirectURL         :
StackErrors         : {}
StorageConnectors   : {}
UserSettings        : {Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting,
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting, Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting,
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting}
```

- For API details, see CreateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSStreamingURL`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSStreamingURL`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates a streaming URL of Stack

```
New-APSStreamingURL -StackName SessionScriptTest -FleetName SessionScriptNew -UserId
 TestUser
```

Output:

```
Expires                StreamingURL
-------                ------------
12/27/2019 12:43:37 PM https://appstream2.us-east-1.aws.amazon.com/authenticate?
parameters=eyJ0eXBlIjoiRU5EX1VTRVIiLCJleHBpcmVzIjoiMTU3NzQ1MDYxNyIsImF3c0FjY291bnRJZCI6IjM5M
```

- For API details, see CreateStreamingURL in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSUsageReportSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSUsageReportSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables AppStream Usage Reports

```
New-APSUsageReportSubscription
```

Output:

```
S3BucketName                                   Schedule
------------                                   --------
appstream-logs-us-east-1-123456789012-sik2hnxe DAILY
```

- For API details, see CreateUsageReportSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-APSUser`

The following code example shows how to use `New-APSUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates a user in USERPOOL

```
New-APSUser -UserName Test@lab.com -AuthenticationType USERPOOL -FirstName 'kt' -
LastName 'aws' -Select ^UserName
```

Output:

```
Test@lab.com
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample registers fleet with a stack

```
Register-APSFleet -StackName TestStack -FleetName TestFleet -Region us-west-2
```

- For API details, see AssociateFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-APSUserStackBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-APSUserStackBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample assigns stack to a user in USERPOOL

```
Register-APSUserStackBatch -UserStackAssociation
 @{AuthenticationType="USERPOOL";SendEmailNotification=
$False;StackName="PowershellStack";UserName="TestUser1@lab.com"}
```

- For API details, see BatchAssociateUserStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSDirectoryConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSDirectoryConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes AppStream Directory configuration

```
Remove-APSDirectoryConfig -DirectoryName contoso.com
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSDirectoryConfig (DeleteDirectoryConfig)" on
 target "contoso.com".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see DeleteDirectoryConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes deletes an AppStream fleet

```
Remove-APSFleet -Name TestFleet -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSFleet (DeleteFleet)" on target "TestFleet".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see DeleteFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5).*

`Remove-APSImage`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSImage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample deletes an Image

```
Remove-APSImage -Name TestImage -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSImage (DeleteImage)" on target "TestImage".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A

Applications                : {}
AppstreamAgentVersion       : LATEST
Arn                         : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2:123456789012:image/
TestImage
```

```
BaseImageArn                :
CreatedTime                 : 12/27/2019 1:34:10 PM
Description                 :
DisplayName                 : TestImage
ImageBuilderName            :
ImageBuilderSupported       : True
ImagePermissions            :
Name                        : TestImage
Platform                    : WINDOWS
PublicBaseImageReleasedDate : 6/12/2018 12:00:00 AM
State                       : AVAILABLE
StateChangeReason           :
Visibility                  : PRIVATE
```

- For API details, see DeleteImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSImageBuilder`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSImageBuilder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample deletes an ImageBuilder

```
Remove-APSImageBuilder -Name TestIB -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSImageBuilder (DeleteImageBuilder)" on target
 "TestIB".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A

AccessEndpoints             : {}
AppstreamAgentVersion       : 12-16-2019
Arn                         : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2:123456789012:image-
builder/TestIB
CreatedTime                 : 12/27/2019 11:39:24 AM
Description                 :
DisplayName                 : TestIB
```

```
DomainJoinInfo              :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess : True
IamRoleArn                  :
ImageArn                    : arn:aws:appstream:us-west-2::image/AppStream-
WinServer2012R2-12-12-2019
ImageBuilderErrors          : {}
InstanceType                : stream.standard.medium
Name                        : TestIB
NetworkAccessConfiguration  : Amazon.AppStream.Model.NetworkAccessConfiguration
Platform                    : WINDOWS
State                       : DELETING
StateChangeReason           :
VpcConfig                   : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageBuilder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSImagePermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSImagePermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes permissions of an Image

```
Remove-APSImagePermission -Name Powershell -SharedAccountId 123456789012
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSImagePermission (DeleteImagePermissions)" on
 target "Powershell".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see DeleteImagePermissions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes a resource tag from AppStream resource

```
Remove-APSResourceTag -ResourceArn arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/
SessionScriptTest -TagKey StackState
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSResourceTag (UntagResource)" on target
 "arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/SessionScriptTest".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample deletes a Stack

```
Remove-APSStack -Name TestStack -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSStack (DeleteStack)" on target "TestStack".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see DeleteStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSUsageReportSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSUsageReportSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample disables AppStream Usage Report subscription

```
Remove-APSUsageReportSubscription
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSUsageReportSubscription
 (DeleteUsageReportSubscription)" on target "".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see DeleteUsageReportSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-APSUser`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-APSUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample deletes a user from USERPOOL

```
Remove-APSUser -UserName TestUser@lab.com -AuthenticationType USERPOOL
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-APSUser (DeleteUser)" on target "TestUser@lab.com".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): A
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Revoke-APSSession`

The following code example shows how to use `Revoke-APSSession`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample revokes a session to AppStream fleet

```
Revoke-APSSession -SessionId 6cd2f9a3-f948-4aa1-8014-8a7dcde14877
```

- For API details, see ExpireSession in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample starts a fleet

```
Start-APSFleet -Name PowershellFleet
```

- For API details, see StartFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-APSImageBuilder`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-APSImageBuilder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample starts an ImageBuilder

```
Start-APSImageBuilder -Name TestImage
```

Output:

```
AccessEndpoints             : {}
AppstreamAgentVersion       : 06-19-2019
Arn                         : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:image-
builder/TestImage
CreatedTime                 : 1/14/2019 4:33:05 AM
Description                 :
DisplayName                 : TestImage
DomainJoinInfo              :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess : False
```

```
IamRoleArn                  :
ImageArn                    : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1::image/Base-Image-
Builder-05-02-2018
ImageBuilderErrors          : {}
InstanceType                : stream.standard.large
Name                        : TestImage
NetworkAccessConfiguration  : Amazon.AppStream.Model.NetworkAccessConfiguration
Platform                    : WINDOWS
State                       : PENDING
StateChangeReason           :
VpcConfig                   : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see StartImageBuilder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample stops a fleet

```
Stop-APSFleet -Name PowershellFleet
```

- For API details, see StopFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-APSImageBuilder`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-APSImageBuilder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample stops an ImageBuilder

```
Stop-APSImageBuilder -Name TestImage
```

Output:

```
AccessEndpoints             : {}
AppstreamAgentVersion       : 06-19-2019
Arn                         : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:image-
builder/TestImage
```

```
CreatedTime                 : 1/14/2019 4:33:05 AM
Description                 :
DisplayName                 : TestImage
DomainJoinInfo              :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess : False
IamRoleArn                  :
ImageArn                    : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1::image/Base-Image-
Builder-05-02-2018
ImageBuilderErrors          : {}
InstanceType                : stream.standard.large
Name                        : TestImage
NetworkAccessConfiguration  : Amazon.AppStream.Model.NetworkAccessConfiguration
Platform                    : WINDOWS
State                       : STOPPING
StateChangeReason           :
VpcConfig                   : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see StopImageBuilder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample unregisters a fleet from stack

```
Unregister-APSFleet -StackName TestStack -FleetName TestFleet -Region us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DisassociateFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-APSUserStackBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-APSUserStackBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes an user from an assigned Stack

```
Unregister-APSUserStackBatch -UserStackAssociation
 @{AuthenticationType="USERPOOL";SendEmailNotification=
$False;StackName="PowershellStack";UserName="TestUser1@lab.com"}
```

- For API details, see BatchDisassociateUserStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-APSDirectoryConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-APSDirectoryConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample updates the Directory configuration created in AppStream

```
Update-APSDirectoryConfig -ServiceAccountCredentials_AccountName contoso
\ServiceAccount -ServiceAccountCredentials_AccountPassword MyPass@1$@#
 -DirectoryName contoso.com -OrganizationalUnitDistinguishedName
 "OU=AppStreamNew,OU=Contoso,DC=Contoso,DC=com"
```

Output:

```
CreatedTime           DirectoryName OrganizationalUnitDistinguishedNames
 ServiceAccountCredentials
-----------           ------------- ------------------------------------
 -------------------------
12/27/2019 3:50:02 PM contoso.com   {OU=AppStreamNew,OU=Contoso,DC=Contoso,DC=com}
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.ServiceAccountCredentials
```

- For API details, see UpdateDirectoryConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-APSFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-APSFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample updates properties of a fleet

```
Update-APSFleet -Name PowershellFleet -EnableDefaultInternetAccess $True -
DisconnectTimeoutInSecond 950
```

Output:

```
Arn                             : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:fleet/
PowershellFleet
ComputeCapacityStatus           : Amazon.AppStream.Model.ComputeCapacityStatus
CreatedTime                     : 4/24/2019 8:39:41 AM
Description                     : PowershellFleet
DisconnectTimeoutInSeconds      : 950
DisplayName                     : PowershellFleet
DomainJoinInfo                  :
EnableDefaultInternetAccess     : True
FleetErrors                     : {}
FleetType                       : ON_DEMAND
IamRoleArn                      :
IdleDisconnectTimeoutInSeconds  : 900
ImageArn                        : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:image/
Powershell
ImageName                       : Powershell
InstanceType                    : stream.standard.medium
MaxUserDurationInSeconds        : 57600
Name                            : PowershellFleet
State                           : STOPPED
VpcConfig                       : Amazon.AppStream.Model.VpcConfig
```

- For API details, see UpdateFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-APSImagePermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-APSImagePermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample shares an AppStream Image with other account

```
Update-APSImagePermission -Name Powershell -SharedAccountId 123456789012 -
ImagePermissions_AllowFleet $True -ImagePermissions_AllowImageBuilder $True
```

- For API details, see UpdateImagePermissions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-APSStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-APSStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample updates(enables) Application settings persistence and Home Folders on a Stack

```
Update-APSStack -Name PowershellStack -ApplicationSettings_Enabled $True
 -ApplicationSettings_SettingsGroup PowershellStack -StorageConnector
 @{ConnectorType="HOMEFOLDERS"}
```

Output:

```
AccessEndpoints     : {}
ApplicationSettings : Amazon.AppStream.Model.ApplicationSettingsResponse
Arn                 : arn:aws:appstream:us-east-1:123456789012:stack/PowershellStack
CreatedTime         : 4/24/2019 8:49:29 AM
Description         : PowershellStack
DisplayName         : PowershellStack
EmbedHostDomains    : {}
FeedbackURL         :
Name                : PowershellStack
RedirectURL         :
StackErrors         : {}
StorageConnectors   : {Amazon.AppStream.Model.StorageConnector,
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.StorageConnector}
UserSettings        : {Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting,
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting, Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting,
 Amazon.AppStream.Model.UserSetting}
```

- For API details, see UpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Aurora examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Aurora.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the DB engine versions that support a specific DB instance class in an AWS Region.

```
$params = @{
  Engine = 'aurora-postgresql'
  DBInstanceClass = 'db.r5.large'
  Region = 'us-east-1'
}
Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption @params
```

Example 2: This example lists the DB instance classes that are supported for a specific DB engine version in an AWS Region.

```
$params = @{
  Engine = 'aurora-postgresql'
  EngineVersion = '13.6'
  Region = 'us-east-1'
}
Get-RDSOrderableDBInstanceOption @params
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Auto Scaling examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-ASLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-ASLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified load balancer to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Add-ASLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-lb -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Complete-ASLifecycleAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Complete-ASLifecycleAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example completes the specified lifecycle action.

```
Complete-ASLifecycleAction -LifecycleHookName myLifecycleHook -
AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleActionResult CONTINUE -LifecycleActionToken
 bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

- For API details, see CompleteLifecycleAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-ASMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-ASMetricsCollection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables monitoring of the specified metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Disable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Metric @("GroupMinSize",
 "GroupMaxSize")
```

Example 2: This example disables monitoring of all metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Disable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-ASInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-ASInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group and decreases the desired capacity so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Dismount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 06733445-ce94-4039-be1b-b9f1866e276e
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:34:59Z instance i-93633f9b was detached in
 response to a user request, shrinking
                        the capacity from 2 to 1.
```

```
Description          : Detaching EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:34:59 PM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example detaches the specified instance from the specified Auto Scaling group without decreasing the desired capacity. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Dismount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-7bf746a2 -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : f43a3cd4-d38c-4af7-9fe0-d76ec2307b6d
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:34:59Z instance i-7bf746a2 was detached in
 response to a user request.
Description          : Detaching EC2 instance: i-7bf746a2
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:34:59 PM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see DetachInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-ASLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-ASLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified load balancer from the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Dismount-ASLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-lb -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-ASMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-ASMetricsCollection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables monitoring of the specified metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Enable-ASMetricsCollection  -Metric @("GroupMinSize", "GroupMaxSize") -
AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Granularity 1Minute
```

Example 2: This example enables monitoring of all metrics for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Enable-ASMetricsCollection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Granularity 1Minute
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enter-ASStandby`

The following code example shows how to use `Enter-ASStandby`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example puts the specified instance into standby mode and decreases the desired capacity so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Enter-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : e36a5a54-ced6-4df8-bd19-708e2a59a649
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
```

```
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:48:06Z instance i-95b8484f was moved to
 standby in response to a user request,
                       shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:48:06 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example puts the specified instance into standby mode without decreasing the desired capacity. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Enter-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : e36a5a54-ced6-4df8-bd19-708e2a59a649
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:48:06Z instance i-95b8484f was moved to
 standby in response to a user request.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance to Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 50
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:48:06 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see EnterStandby in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Exit-ASStandby`

The following code example shows how to use `Exit-ASStandby`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example moves the specified instance out of standby mode.

```
Exit-ASStandby -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 1833d3e8-e32f-454e-b731-0670ad4c6934
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:51:21Z instance i-95b8484f was moved out of
 standby in response to a user
                       request, increasing the capacity from 1 to 2.
Description          : Moving EC2 instance out of Standby: i-95b8484f
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 30
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:51:21 AM
StatusCode           : PreInService
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see ExitStandby in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASAccountLimit`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASAccountLimit`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the Auto Scaling resource limits for your AWS account.

```
Get-ASAccountLimit
```

Output:

```
MaxNumberOfAutoScalingGroups    : 20
MaxNumberOfLaunchConfigurations : 100
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASAdjustmentType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASAdjustmentType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the adjustment types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASAdjustmentType
```

Output:

```
Type
----
ChangeInCapacity
ExactCapacity
PercentChangeInCapacity
```

- For API details, see DescribeAdjustmentTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASAutoScalingGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the names of your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup | format-table -property AutoScalingGroupName
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName
--------------------
my-asg-1
my-asg-2
my-asg-3
my-asg-4
my-asg-5
my-asg-6
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg-1
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupARN     : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:930d940e-891e-4781-a11a-7b0acd480
                          f03:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg-1
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg-1
AvailabilityZones       : {us-west-2b, us-west-2a}
CreatedTime             : 3/1/2015 9:05:31 AM
DefaultCooldown         : 300
DesiredCapacity         : 2
EnabledMetrics          : {}
HealthCheckGracePeriod  : 300
HealthCheckType         : EC2
Instances               : {my-lc}
LaunchConfigurationName : my-lc
LoadBalancerNames       : {}
MaxSize                 : 0
MinSize                 : 0
PlacementGroup          :
Status                  :
SuspendedProcesses      : {}
Tags                    : {}
TerminationPolicies     : {Default}
VPCZoneIdentifier       : subnet-e4f33493,subnet-5264e837
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName @("my-asg-1", "my-asg-2")
```

Example 4: This example describes the Auto Scaling instances for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg-1).Instances
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingGroup
```

Example 6: This example describes LaunchTemplate for the specified Auto Scaling group. This example assumes that the "Instance purchase options" is set to "Adhere to launch template". In case this option is set to "Combine purchase options and instance types", LaunchTemplate could be accessed using "MixedInstancesPolicy.LaunchTemplate" property.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-ag-1).LaunchTemplate
```

Output:

```
LaunchTemplateId     LaunchTemplateName   Version
----------------     ------------------   -------
lt-06095fd619cb40371 test-launch-template $Default
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASAutoScalingInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASAutoScalingInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the IDs of your Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance | format-table -property InstanceId
```

Output:

```
InstanceId
----------
i-12345678
i-87654321
i-abcd1234
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified Auto Scaling instance.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2b
HealthStatus            : HEALTHY
InstanceId              : i-12345678
LaunchConfigurationName : my-lc
LifecycleState          : InService
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance -InstanceId @("i-12345678", "i-87654321")
```

Example 4: This example describes the Auto Scaling instances for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
(Get-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg).Instances | Get-
ASAutoScalingInstance
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Auto Scaling instances.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingInstance
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASAutoScalingNotificationType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASAutoScalingNotificationType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the notification types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASAutoScalingNotificationType
```

Output:

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH_ERROR
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE
```

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE_ERROR
autoscaling:TEST_NOTIFICATION
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingNotificationTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASLaunchConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASLaunchConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the names of your launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration | format-table -property LaunchConfigurationName
```

Output:

```
LaunchConfigurationName
-----------------------
my-lc-1
my-lc-2
my-lc-3
my-lc-4
my-lc-5
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified launch configuration.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc-1
```

Output:

```
AssociatePublicIpAddress     : True
BlockDeviceMappings          : {/dev/xvda}
ClassicLinkVPCId             :
ClassicLinkVPCSecurityGroups : {}
CreatedTime                  : 12/12/2014 3:22:08 PM
EbsOptimized                 : False
IamInstanceProfile           :
ImageId                      : ami-043a5034
InstanceMonitoring           : Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.InstanceMonitoring
```

```
InstanceType                 : t2.micro
KernelId                     :
KeyName                      :
LaunchConfigurationARN       : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:launchConfiguration:7e5f31e4-693b-4604-9322-
                               e6f68d7fafad:launchConfigurationName/my-lc-1
LaunchConfigurationName      : my-lc-1
PlacementTenancy             :
RamdiskId                    :
SecurityGroups               : {sg-67ef0308}
SpotPrice                    :
UserData                     :
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified two launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName @("my-lc-1", "my-lc-2")
```

Example 4: This example describes all your launch configurations.

```
Get-ASLaunchConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeLaunchConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASLifecycleHook`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASLifecycleHook`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified lifecycle hook.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName myLifecycleHook
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName  : my-asg
DefaultResult         : ABANDON
GlobalTimeout         : 172800
HeartbeatTimeout      : 3600
LifecycleHookName     : myLifecycleHook
```

```
LifecycleTransition   : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING
NotificationMetadata  :
NotificationTargetARN : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic
RoleARN               : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role
```

Example 2: This example describes all lifecycle hooks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Example 3: This example describes all lifecycle hooks for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHook
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHooks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASLifecycleHookType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASLifecycleHookType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the lifecycle hook types supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASLifecycleHookType
```

Output:

```
autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING
auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATING
```

- For API details, see DescribeLifecycleHookTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the load balancers for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASLoadBalancer -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName    State
----------------    -----
my-lb               Added
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASMetricCollectionType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASMetricCollectionType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the metric collection types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
(Get-ASMetricCollectionType).Metrics
```

Output:

```
Metric
------
GroupMinSize
GroupMaxSize
GroupDesiredCapacity
GroupInServiceInstances
GroupPendingInstances
GroupTerminatingInstances
GroupStandbyInstances
GroupTotalInstances
```

Example 2: This example lists the corresponding granularities.

```
(Get-ASMetricCollectionType).Granularities
```

Output:

```
Granularity
-----------
1Minute
```

- For API details, see DescribeMetricCollectionTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASNotificationConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASNotificationConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the notification actions associated with the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg | format-list
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
NotificationType     : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH
TopicARN             : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic

AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
NotificationType     : auto-scaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE
TopicARN             : arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic
```

Example 2: This example describes the notification actions associated with all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASNotificationConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeNotificationConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes all policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
AdjustmentType          : ChangeInCapacity
Alarms                  : {}
AutoScalingGroupName    : my-asg
Cooldown                : 0
EstimatedInstanceWarmup : 0
MetricAggregationType   :
MinAdjustmentMagnitude  : 0
MinAdjustmentStep       : 0
PolicyARN               : arn:aws:auto-scaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:aa3836ab-5462-42c7-adab-e1d769fc24ef
                          :autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:policyName/myScaleInPolicy
PolicyName              : myScaleInPolicy
PolicyType              : SimpleScaling
ScalingAdjustment       : -1
StepAdjustments         : {}
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified policies for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName @("myScaleOutPolicy",
 "myScaleInPolicy")
```

Example 3: This example describes all policies for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASPolicy
```

- For API details, see DescribePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASScalingActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASScalingActivity`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the scaling activities for the last six weeks for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 063308ae-aa22-4a9b-94f4-9fae4EXAMPLE
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T15:45:16Z a user request explicitly set group
 desired capacity changing the desired
                        capacity from 1 to 2.  At 2015-11-22T15:45:34Z an instance
 was started in response to a difference
                        between desired and actual capacity, increasing the capacity
 from 1 to 2.
Description          : Launching a new EC2 instance: i-26e715fc
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              : 11/22/2015 7:46:09 AM
Progress             : 100
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 7:45:35 AM
StatusCode           : Successful
StatusMessage        :

ActivityId           : ce719997-086d-4c73-a2f1-ab703EXAMPLE
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
Cause                : At 2015-11-20T22:57:53Z a user request created an
 AutoScalingGroup changing the desired capacity
                         from 0 to 1.  At 2015-11-20T22:57:58Z an instance was
 started in response to a difference betwe
                        en desired and actual capacity, increasing the capacity from
 0 to 1.
Description          : Launching a new EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              : 11/20/2015 2:58:32 PM
Progress             : 100
StartTime            : 11/20/2015 2:57:59 PM
StatusCode           : Successful
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified scaling activity.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity -ActivityId "063308ae-aa22-4a9b-94f4-9fae4EXAMPLE"
```

Example 3: This example describes the scaling activities for the last six weeks for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASScalingActivity
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASScalingProcessType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASScalingProcessType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the process types that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASScalingProcessType
```

Output:

```
ProcessName
-----------
AZRebalance
AddToLoadBalancer
AlarmNotification
HealthCheck
Launch
ReplaceUnhealthy
ScheduledActions
Terminate
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingProcessTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASScheduledAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASScheduledAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
AutoScalingGroupName : my-asg
DesiredCapacity      : 10
EndTime              :
MaxSize              :
MinSize              :
Recurrence           :
ScheduledActionARN   : arn:aws:autoscaling:us-
west-2:123456789012:scheduledUpdateGroupAction:8a4c5f24-6ec6-4306-a2dd-f7
                       2c3af3a4d6:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg:scheduledActionName/
myScheduledAction
ScheduledActionName  : myScheduledAction
StartTime            : 11/30/2015 8:00:00 AM
Time                 : 11/30/2015 8:00:00 AM
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified scheduled scaling actions.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -ScheduledActionName @("myScheduledScaleOut",
 "myScheduledScaleIn")
```

Example 3: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions that start by the specified time.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -StartTime "2015-12-01T08:00:00Z"
```

Example 4: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions that end by the specified time.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction -EndTime "2015-12-30T08:00:00Z"
```

Example 5: This example describes the scheduled scaling actions for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASScheduledAction
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledActions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the tags with a key value of either 'myTag' or 'myTag2'. The possible values for the filter name are 'auto-scaling-group', 'key', 'value', and 'propagate-at-launch'. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-ASTag -Filter @( @{ Name="key"; Values=@("myTag", "myTag2") } )
```

Output:

```
Key               : myTag2
PropagateAtLaunch : True
ResourceId        : my-asg
ResourceType      : auto-scaling-group
Value             : myTagValue2

Key               : myTag
PropagateAtLaunch : True
ResourceId        : my-asg
ResourceType      : auto-scaling-group
Value             : myTagValue
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter for the Filter parameter.

```
$keys = New-Object string[] 2
$keys[0] = "myTag"
```

```
$keys[1] = "myTag2"
$filter = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "key"
$filter.Values = $keys
Get-ASTag -Filter @( $filter )
```

Example 3: This example describes all tags for all your Auto Scaling groups.

```
Get-ASTag
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASTerminationPolicyType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASTerminationPolicyType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the termination policies that are supported by Auto Scaling.

```
Get-ASTerminationPolicyType
```

Output:

```
ClosestToNextInstanceHour
Default
NewestInstance
OldestInstance
OldestLaunchConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeTerminationPolicyTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Mount-ASInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Mount-ASInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified instance to the specified Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling automatically increases the desired capacity of the Auto Scaling group.

```
Mount-ASInstance -InstanceId i-93633f9b -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see AttachInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ASAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ASAutoScalingGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an Auto Scaling group with the specified name and attributes. The default desired capacity is the minimum size. Therefore, this Auto Scaling group launches two instances, one in each of the specified two Availability Zones.

```
New-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -
MinSize 2 -MaxSize 6 -AvailabilityZone @("us-west-2a", "us-west-2b")
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ASLaunchConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ASLaunchConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a launch configuration named 'my-lc'. The EC2 instances launched by Auto Scaling groups that use this launch configuration use specified instance type, AMI, security group, and IAM role.

```
New-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -InstanceType "m3.medium" -
ImageId "ami-12345678" -SecurityGroup "sg-12345678" -IamInstanceProfile "myIamRole"
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group if it has no running instances. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup (DeleteAutoScalingGroup)" on Target
 "my-asg".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -Force
```

Example 3: This example deletes the specified Auto Scaling group and terminates any running instances that it contains.

```
Remove-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ForceDelete $true -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified launch configuration if it is not attached to an Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration (DeleteLaunchConfiguration)" on
 Target "my-lc".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLaunchConfiguration -LaunchConfigurationName my-lc -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASLifecycleHook`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASLifecycleHook`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified lifecycle hook for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASLifecycleHook (DeleteLifecycleHook)" on Target
 "myLifecycleHook".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteLifecycleHook in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified notification action. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -TopicARN
 "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration
 (DeleteNotificationConfiguration)" on Target
"arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -TopicARN
 "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteNotificationConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName myScaleInPolicy
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASPolicy (DeletePolicy)" on Target "myScaleInPolicy".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName myScaleInPolicy -Force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASScheduledAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASScheduledAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified scheduled action for the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledAction
 "myScheduledAction"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ASScheduledAction (DeleteScheduledAction)" on Target
 "myScheduledAction".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASScheduledAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledAction
 "myScheduledAction" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduledAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ASTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ASTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified tag from the specified Auto Scaling group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag" } )
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ASTag (DeleteTags)" on target
 "Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: If you specify the Force parameter, you are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag" } ) -Force
```

Example 3: With Powershell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag
$tag.ResourceType = "auto-scaling-group"
$tag.ResourceId = "my-asg"
$tag.Key = "myTag"
Remove-ASTag -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Resume-ASProcess`

The following code example shows how to use `Resume-ASProcess`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resumes the specified Auto Scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Resume-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScalingProcess "AlarmNotification"
```

Example 2: This example resumes all suspended Auto Scaling processes for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Resume-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see ResumeProcesses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ASDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ASDesiredCapacity`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the size of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Set-ASDesiredCapacity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DesiredCapacity 2
```

Example 2: This example sets the size of the specified Auto Scaling group and waits for the cooldown period to complete before scaling to the new size.

```
Set-ASDesiredCapacity -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DesiredCapacity 2 -HonorCooldown
 $true
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ASInstanceHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ASInstanceHealth`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the status of the specified instance to 'Unhealthy', taking it out of service. Auto Scaling terminates and replaces the instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceHealth -HealthStatus Unhealthy -InstanceId i-93633f9b
```

Example 2: This example sets the status of the specified instance to 'Healthy', keeping it in service. Any health check grace period for the Auto Scaling group is not honored.

```
Set-ASInstanceHealth -HealthStatus Healthy -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldRespectGracePeriod $false
```

- For API details, see SetInstanceHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ASInstanceProtection`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ASInstanceProtection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceProtection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -InstanceId i-12345678 -
ProtectedFromScaleIn $true
```

Example 2: This example disables instance protection for the specified instance.

```
Set-ASInstanceProtection -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -InstanceId i-12345678 -
ProtectedFromScaleIn $false
```

- For API details, see SetInstanceProtection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ASTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ASTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a single tag to the specified Auto Scaling group. The tag key is 'myTag' and the tag value is 'myTagValue'. Auto Scaling propagates this tag to the subsequent EC2 instances launched by the Auto Scaling group. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Set-ASTag -Tag @( @{ResourceType="auto-scaling-group"; ResourceId="my-asg";
 Key="myTag"; Value="myTagValue"; PropagateAtLaunch=$true} )
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.AutoScaling.Model.Tag
$tag.ResourceType = "auto-scaling-group"
$tag.ResourceId = "my-asg"
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"
$tag.PropagateAtLaunch = $true
Set-ASTag -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see CreateOrUpdateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-ASPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-ASPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example executes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Start-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy"
```

Example 2: This example executes the specified policy for the specified Auto Scaling group, after waiting for the cooldown period to complete.

```
Start-ASPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy" -
HonorCooldown $true
```

- For API details, see ExecutePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example terminates the specified instance and decreases the desired capacity of its Auto Scaling group so that Auto Scaling does not launch a replacement instance.

```
Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $true
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 2e40d9bd-1902-444c-abf3-6ea0002efdc5
AutoScalingGroupName :
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T16:09:03Z instance i-93633f9b was taken out of
 service in response to a user
                       request, shrinking the capacity from 2 to 1.
Description          : Terminating EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 0
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 8:09:03 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

Example 2: This example terminates the specified instance without decreasing the desired capacity of its Auto Scaling group. Auto Scaling launches a replacement instance.

```
Stop-ASInstanceInAutoScalingGroup -InstanceId i-93633f9b -
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity $false
```

Output:

```
ActivityId           : 2e40d9bd-1902-444c-abf3-6ea0002efdc5
AutoScalingGroupName :
Cause                : At 2015-11-22T16:09:03Z instance i-93633f9b was taken out of
 service in response to a user
                       request.
Description          : Terminating EC2 instance: i-93633f9b
Details              : {"Availability Zone":"us-west-2b","Subnet
 ID":"subnet-5264e837"}
EndTime              :
Progress             : 0
StartTime            : 11/22/2015 8:09:03 AM
StatusCode           : InProgress
StatusMessage        :
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Suspend-ASProcess`

The following code example shows how to use `Suspend-ASProcess`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example suspends the specified Auto Scaling process for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Suspend-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScalingProcess "AlarmNotification"
```

Example 2: This example suspends all Auto Scaling processes for the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Suspend-ASProcess -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg
```

- For API details, see SuspendProcesses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-ASAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-ASAutoScalingGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the minimum and maximum size of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -MaxSize 5 -MinSize 1
```

Example 2: This example updates the default cooldown period of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -DefaultCooldown 10
```

Example 3: This example updates the Availability Zones of the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -AvailabilityZone @("us-
west-2a", "us-west-2b")
```

Example 4: This example updates the specified Auto Scaling group to use Elastic Load Balancing health checks.

```
Update-ASAutoScalingGroup -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -HealthCheckType ELB -
HealthCheckGracePeriod 60
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-ASLifecycleActionHeartbeat`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-ASLifecycleActionHeartbeat`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example records a heartbeat for the specified lifecycle action. This keeps the instance in a pending state until you complete the custom action.

```
Write-ASLifecycleActionHeartbeat -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 myLifecycleHook -LifecycleActionToken bcd2f1b8-9a78-44d3-8a7a-4dd07d7cf635
```

- For API details, see RecordLifecycleActionHeartbeat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-ASLifecycleHook`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-ASLifecycleHook`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified lifecycle hook to the specified Auto Scaling group.

```
Write-ASLifecycleHook -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -LifecycleHookName
 "myLifecycleHook" -LifecycleTransition "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCHING" -
NotificationTargetARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-sns-topic" -RoleARN
 "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-iam-role"
```

- For API details, see PutLifecycleHook in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-ASNotificationConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-ASNotificationConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example configures the specified Auto Scaling group to send a notification to the specified SNS topic when it launches EC2 instances.

```
Write-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -NotificationType
 "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH" -TopicARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-
topic"
```

Example 2: This example configures the specified Auto Scaling group to send a notification to the specified SNS topic when it launches or terminates EC2 instances.

```
Write-ASNotificationConfiguration -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -NotificationType
 @("autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_LAUNCH", "autoscaling:EC2_INSTANCE_TERMINATE") -
TopicARN "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic"
```

- For API details, see PutNotificationConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-ASScalingPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-ASScalingPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified policy to the specified Auto Scaling group. The specified adjustment type determines how to interpret the ScalingAdjustment parameter. With 'ChangeInCapacity', a positive value increases the capacity by the specified number of instances and a negative value decreases the capacity by the specified number of instances.

```
Write-ASScalingPolicy -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -AdjustmentType
 "ChangeInCapacity" -PolicyName "myScaleInPolicy" -ScalingAdjustment -1
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:autoscaling:us-west-2:123456789012:scalingPolicy:aa3836ab-5462-42c7-adab-
e1d769fc24ef:autoScalingGroupName/my-asg
:policyName/myScaleInPolicy
```

- For API details, see PutScalingPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-ASScheduledUpdateGroupAction`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-ASScheduledUpdateGroupAction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates or updates a one-time scheduled action to change the desired capacity at the specified start time.

```
Write-ASScheduledUpdateGroupAction -AutoScalingGroupName my-asg -ScheduledActionName
 "myScheduledAction" -StartTime "2015-12-01T00:00:00Z" -DesiredCapacity 10
```

- For API details, see PutScheduledUpdateGroupAction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Budgets examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Budgets.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`New-BGTBudget`

The following code example shows how to use `New-BGTBudget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new budget with the specified budgetary and time constraints with email notifications.

```
$notification = @{
    NotificationType = "ACTUAL"
    ComparisonOperator = "GREATER_THAN"
    Threshold = 80
}

$addressObject = @{
    Address = @("user@domain.com")
    SubscriptionType = "EMAIL"
}

$subscriber = New-Object Amazon.Budgets.Model.NotificationWithSubscribers
$subscriber.Notification = $notification
```

```
$subscriber.Subscribers.Add($addressObject)

$startDate = [datetime]::new(2017,09,25)
$endDate = [datetime]::new(2017,10,25)

New-BGTBudget -Budget_BudgetName "Tester" -Budget_BudgetType COST -
CostTypes_IncludeTax $true -Budget_TimeUnit MONTHLY -BudgetLimit_Unit USD -
TimePeriod_Start $startDate -TimePeriod_End $endDate -AccountId 123456789012 -
BudgetLimit_Amount 200 -NotificationsWithSubscriber $subscriber
```

- For API details, see CreateBudget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Cloud9 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Cloud9.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-C9EnvironmentData`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-C9EnvironmentData`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified AWS Cloud9 development environments.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentData -EnvironmentId
 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX,1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
```

Output:

```
Arn         : arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
Description : Created from CodeStar.
Id          : 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
Lifecycle   : Amazon.Cloud9.Model.EnvironmentLifecycle
Name        : my-demo-ec2-env
OwnerArn    : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
Type        : ec2

Arn         : arn:aws:cloud9:us-
east-1:123456789012:environment:1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
Description :
Id          : 1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
Lifecycle   : Amazon.Cloud9.Model.EnvironmentLifecycle
Name        : my-demo-ssh-env
OwnerArn    : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
Type        : ssh
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the lifecycle status of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
(Get-C9EnvironmentData -EnvironmentId 685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX).Lifecycle
```

Output:

```
FailureResource Reason Status
--------------- ------ ------
                       CREATED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-C9EnvironmentList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-C9EnvironmentList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available AWS Cloud9 development environment identifiers.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentList
```

Output:

```
685f892f431b45c2b28cb69eadcdb0EX
1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
```

- For API details, see ListEnvironments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about environment members for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-write
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX

EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the owner of the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -
Permission owner
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

Example 3: This example gets information about the specified environment member for multiple AWS Cloud9 development environments.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentMembershipList -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/17/2018 7:48:14 PM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX

EnvironmentId : 1980b80e5f584920801c09086667f0EX
LastAccess    : 1/16/2018 11:21:24 PM
Permissions   : owner
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3LOROMOUXTBSU6EX
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentMemberships in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-C9EnvironmentStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-C9EnvironmentStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets status information for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Get-C9EnvironmentStatus -EnvironmentId 349c86d4579e4e7298d500ff57a6b2EX
```

Output:

```
Message                     Status
-------                     ------
Environment is ready to use ready
```

- For API details, see DescribeEnvironmentStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-C9EnvironmentEC2

The following code example shows how to use `New-C9EnvironmentEC2`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AWS Cloud9 development environment with the specified settings, launches an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance, and then connects from the instance to the environment.

```
New-C9EnvironmentEC2 -Name my-demo-env -AutomaticStopTimeMinutes 60 -Description
 "My demonstration development environment." -InstanceType t2.micro -OwnerArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/MyDemoUser -SubnetId subnet-d43a46EX
```

Output:

```
ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentEc2 in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-C9EnvironmentMembership

The following code example shows how to use `New-C9EnvironmentMembership`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified environment member to the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
New-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
 -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Permission read-write
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-write
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX
```

- For API details, see CreateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-C9Environment`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-C9Environment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment. If an Amazon EC2 instance is connected to the environment, also terminates the instance.

```
Remove-C9Environment -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-C9EnvironmentMembership`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-C9EnvironmentMembership`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified environment member from the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Remove-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
```

- For API details, see DeleteEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-C9Environment`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-C9Environment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the specified settings of the specified existing AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Update-C9Environment -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Description
 "My changed demonstration development environment." -Name my-changed-demo-env
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-C9EnvironmentMembership`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-C9EnvironmentMembership`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the settings of the specified existing environment member for the specified AWS Cloud9 development environment.

```
Update-C9EnvironmentMembership -UserArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
AnotherDemoUser -EnvironmentId ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX -Permission read-
only
```

Output:

```
EnvironmentId : ffd88420d4824eeeaeaa8a04bfde8cEX
LastAccess    : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Permissions   : read-only
UserArn       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/AnotherDemoUser
UserId        : AIDAJ3BA6O2FMJWCWXHEX
```

- For API details, see UpdateEnvironmentMembership in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS CloudFormation examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS CloudFormation.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-CFNStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a collection of Stack instances describing all of the user's stacks.

```
Get-CFNStack
```

Example 2: Returns a Stack instance describing the specified stack

```
Get-CFNStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFNStackEvent`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNStackEvent`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all stack related events for the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNStackEvent -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFNStackResource`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNStackResource`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the description of a resource identified in the template associated with the specified stack by the logical ID "MyDBInstance".

```
Get-CFNStackResource -StackName "myStack" -LogicalResourceId "MyDBInstance"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFNStackResourceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNStackResourceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the AWS resource descriptions for up to 100 resources associated with the specified stack. To obtain details of all resources associated with a stack use the Get-CFNStackResourceSummary, which also supports manual paging of the results.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -StackName "myStack"
```

Example 2: Returns the description of the Amazon EC2 instance identified in the template associated with the specified stack by the logical ID "Ec2Instance".

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -StackName "myStack" -LogicalResourceId "Ec2Instance"
```

Example 3: Returns the description of up to 100 resources associated with the stack containing an Amazon EC2 instance identified by instance ID "i-123456". To obtain details of all resources associated with a stack use the Get-CFNStackResourceSummary, which also supports manual paging of the results.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -PhysicalResourceId "i-123456"
```

Example 4: Returns the description of the Amazon EC2 instance identified by the logical ID "Ec2Instance" in the template for a stack. The stack is identified using the physical resource

ID of a resource it contains, in this case also an Amazon EC2 instance with instance ID "i-123456". A different physical resource could also be used to identify the stack depending on the template content, for example an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceList -PhysicalResourceId "i-123456" -LogicalResourceId
 "Ec2Instance"
```

- For API details, see DescribeStackResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFNStackResourceSummary`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNStackResourceSummary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns descriptions of all the resources associated with the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNStackResourceSummary -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see ListStackResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFNStackSummary`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNStackSummary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns summary information for all stacks.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary
```

Example 2: Returns summary information for all stacks that are currently being created.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary -StackStatusFilter "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS"
```

Example 3: Returns summary information for all stacks that are currently being created or updated.

```
Get-CFNStackSummary -StackStatusFilter @("CREATE_IN_PROGRESS", "UPDATE_IN_PROGRESS")
```

- For API details, see ListStacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFNTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFNTemplate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the template associated with the specified stack.

```
Get-CFNTemplate -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Measure-CFNTemplateCost`

The following code example shows how to use `Measure-CFNTemplateCost`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is obtained from the specified Amazon S3 URL and the single customization parameter applied. The parameter can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                        -Region us-west-1 `
                        -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="KeyName";
 ParameterValue="myKeyPairName" }
```

Example 2: Returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is parsed from the supplied content and the customization parameters applied (this example assumes the template content would have declared two parameters, 'KeyName' and 'InstanceType'). The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
                        -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="KeyName";
 ParameterValue="myKeyPairName" },`
                                      @{ ParameterKey="InstanceType";
 ParameterValue="m1.large" })
```

Example 3: Uses New-Object to build the set of template parameters and returns an AWS Simple Monthly Calculator URL with a query string that describes the resources required to run the template. The template is parsed from the supplied content, with customization parameters (this example assumes the template content would have declared two parameters, 'KeyName' and 'InstanceType').

```
$p1 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p1.ParameterKey = "KeyName"
$p1.ParameterValue = "myKeyPairName"

$p2 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p2.ParameterKey = "InstanceType"
$p2.ParameterValue = "m1.large"

Measure-CFNTemplateCost -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" -Parameter @( $p1,
 $p2 )
```

- For API details, see EstimateTemplateCost in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CFNStack`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CFNStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is parsed from the supplied content with customization parameters ('PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template content, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represent the values for those parameters. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will not be rolled back.

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
```

```
             -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
             -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" }) `
             -DisableRollback $true
```

Example 2: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is parsed from the supplied content with customization parameters ('PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template content, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represent the values for those parameters. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back.

```
$p1 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p1.ParameterKey = "PK1"
$p1.ParameterValue = "PV1"

$p2 = New-Object -Type Amazon.CloudFormation.Model.Parameter
$p2.ParameterKey = "PK2"
$p2.ParameterValue = "PV2"

New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}" `
             -Parameter @( $p1, $p2 ) `
             -OnFailure "ROLLBACK"
```

Example 3: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is obtained from the Amazon S3 URL with customization parameters ('PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template content, 'PV1' represents the value for the parameter. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back (same as specifying -DisableRollback $false).

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
             -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 4: Creates a new stack with the specified name. The template is obtained from the Amazon S3 URL with customization parameters ('PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template content, 'PV1' represents the value for the parameter.

The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. If creation of the stack fails, it will be rolled back (same as specifying -DisableRollback $false). The specified notification AENs will receive published stack-related events.

```
New-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
             -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
             -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" } `
             -NotificationARN @( "arn1", "arn2" )
```

- For API details, see CreateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CFNStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CFNStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified stack.

```
Remove-CFNStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see DeleteStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Resume-CFNUpdateRollback`

The following code example shows how to use `Resume-CFNUpdateRollback`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Continues rollback of the named stack, which should be in the state 'UPDATE_ROLLBACK_FAILED'. If the continued rollback is successful, the stack will enter state 'UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE'.

```
Resume-CFNUpdateRollback -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see ContinueUpdateRollback in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-CFNUpdateStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-CFNUpdateStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Cancels an update on the specified stack.

```
Stop-CFNUpdateStack -StackName "myStack"
```

- For API details, see CancelUpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Test-CFNStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Test-CFNStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Tests if the stack has reached one of the states UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE, CREATE_COMPLETE, ROLLBACK_COMPLETE or UPDATE_COMPLETE.

```
Test-CFNStack -StackName MyStack
```

Output:

```
False
```

Example 2: Tests if the stack has reached a status of either UPDATE_COMPLETE or UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE.

```
Test-CFNStack -StackName MyStack -Status UPDATE_COMPLETE,UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see Test-CFNStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Test-CFNTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `Test-CFNTemplate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Validates the specified template content. The output details the capabilities, description and parameters of the template.

```
Test-CFNTemplate -TemplateBody "{TEMPLATE CONTENT HERE}"
```

Example 2: Validates the specified template accessed via an Amazon S3 URL. The output details the capabilities, description and parameters of the template.

```
Test-CFNTemplate -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template
```

- For API details, see ValidateTemplate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CFNStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CFNStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template and 'PV1' represents its value. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" `
                -Parameter @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 2: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
```

```
                -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } )
```

Example 3: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template and customization parameters. 'PK1' represents the name of a parameter declared in the template and 'PV2' represents its value. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" -TemplateBody "{Template Content Here}" -
Parameters @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" }
```

Example 4: Updates the stack 'myStack' with the specified template, obtained from Amazon S3, and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } )
```

Example 5: Updates the stack 'myStack', which is assumed in this example to contain IAM resources, with the specified template, obtained from Amazon S3, and customization parameters. 'PK1' and 'PK2' represent the names of parameters declared in the template, 'PV1' and 'PV2' represents their requested values. The customization parameters can also be specified using 'Key' and 'Value' instead of 'ParameterKey' and 'ParameterValue'. Stacks containing IAM resources require you to specify the -Capabilities "CAPABILITY_IAM" parameter otherwise the update will fail with an 'InsufficientCapabilities' error.

```
Update-CFNStack -StackName "myStack" `
                -TemplateURL https://s3.amazonaws.com/amzn-s3-demo-bucket/
templatefile.template `
                -Parameter @( @{ ParameterKey="PK1"; ParameterValue="PV1" },
 @{ ParameterKey="PK2"; ParameterValue="PV2" } ) `
                -Capabilities "CAPABILITY_IAM"
```

- For API details, see UpdateStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Wait-CFNStack`

The following code example shows how to use `Wait-CFNStack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Tests if the stack has reached one of the states UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE, CREATE_COMPLETE, ROLLBACK_COMPLETE or UPDATE_COMPLETE. If the stack is not at one of the states the command sleeps for two seconds before testing status again. This is repeated until the stack reaches one of the requested states or the default timeout period of 60 seconds elapses. If the timeout period is exceeded an exception is thrown. If the stack reaches one of the requested states within the timeout period it is returned to the pipeline.

```
$stack = Wait-CFNStack -StackName MyStack
```

Example 2: This example waits for a total of 5 minutes (300 seconds) for the stack to reach either of the specified states. In this example the state is reached before the timeout and therefore the stack object is returned to the pipeline.

```
Wait-CFNStack -StackName MyStack -Timeout 300 -Status
 CREATE_COMPLETE,ROLLBACK_COMPLETE
```

Output:

```
Capabilities      : {CAPABILITY_IAM}
ChangeSetId       :
CreationTime      : 6/1/2017 9:29:33 AM
Description       : AWS CloudFormation Sample Template
 ec2_instance_with_instance_profile: Create an EC2 instance with an associated
 instance profile. **WARNING** This template creates one or more Amazon EC2
                    instances and an Amazon SQS queue. You will be billed for the
 AWS resources used if you create a stack from this template.
DisableRollback   : False
LastUpdatedTime   : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
NotificationARNs  : {}
Outputs           : {}
Parameters        : {}
RoleARN           :
StackId           : arn:aws:cloudformation:us-west-2:123456789012:stack/
MyStack/7ea87b50-46e7-11e7-9c9b-503a90a9c4d1
StackName         : MyStack
```

```
StackStatus       : CREATE_COMPLETE
StackStatusReason :
Tags              : {}
TimeoutInMinutes  : 0
```

Example 3: This example shows the error output when a stack does not reach one of the requested states within the timeout period (in this case the default period of 60 seconds).

```
Wait-CFNStack -StackName MyStack -Status CREATE_COMPLETE,ROLLBACK_COMPLETE
```

Output:

```
Wait-CFNStack : Timed out after 60 seconds waiting for CloudFormation
 stack MyStack in region us-west-2 to reach one of state(s):
 UPDATE_ROLLBACK_COMPLETE,CREATE_COMPLETE,ROLLBACK_COMPLETE,UPDATE_COMPLETE
At line:1 char:1
+ Wait-CFNStack -StackName MyStack -State CREATE_COMPLETE,ROLLBACK_COMPLETE
+ ~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
    + CategoryInfo          : InvalidOperation:
 (Amazon.PowerShe...tCFNStackCmdlet:WaitCFNStackCmdlet) [Wait-CFNStack],
 InvalidOperationException
    + FullyQualifiedErrorId :
 InvalidOperationException,Amazon.PowerShell.Cmdlets.CFN.WaitCFNStackCmdlet
```

- For API details, see Wait-CFNStack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

CloudFront examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with CloudFront.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a specific Amazon CloudFront origin access identity, specified by the -Id parameter. Although the -Id parameter is not required, if you do not specify it, no results are returned.

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity -Id E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
```

Output:

```
    CloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig    Id
S3CanonicalUserId
    ------------------------------------    --
-----------------
    Amazon.CloudFront.Model.CloudFrontOr... E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
4b6e...
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns configuration information about a single Amazon CloudFront origin access identity, specified by the -Id parameter. Errors occur if no -Id parameter is specified..

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig -Id E3XXXXXXXXXXRT
```

Output:

```
     CallerReference                                          Comment
     ---------------                                          -------
     mycallerreference: 2/1/2011 1:16:32 PM                   Caller reference:
2/1/2011 1:16:32 PM
```

- For API details, see GetCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of Amazon CloudFront origin access identities. Because the -MaxItem parameter specifies a value of 2, the results include two identities.

```
Get-CFCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentityList -MaxItem 2
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated : True
Items       : {E326XXXXXXXXXT, E1YWXXXXXXX9B}
Marker      :
MaxItems    : 2
NextMarker  : E1YXXXXXXXXX9B
Quantity    : 2
```

- For API details, see ListCloudFrontOriginAccessIdentities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFDistribution`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFDistribution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves the information for a specific distribution.

```
Get-CFDistribution -Id EXAMPLE0000ID
```

- For API details, see GetDistribution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFDistributionConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFDistributionConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves the configuration for a specific distribution.

```
Get-CFDistributionConfig -Id EXAMPLE0000ID
```

- For API details, see GetDistributionConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFDistributionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFDistributionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns distributions.

```
Get-CFDistributionList
```

- For API details, see ListDistributions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CFDistribution`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CFDistribution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a basic CloudFront distribution, configured with logging and caching.

```
$origin = New-Object Amazon.CloudFront.Model.Origin
$origin.DomainName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com"
```

```
$origin.Id = "UniqueOrigin1"
$origin.S3OriginConfig = New-Object Amazon.CloudFront.Model.S3OriginConfig
$origin.S3OriginConfig.OriginAccessIdentity = ""
New-CFDistribution `
      -DistributionConfig_Enabled $true `
      -DistributionConfig_Comment "Test distribution" `
      -Origins_Item $origin `
      -Origins_Quantity 1 `
      -Logging_Enabled $true `
      -Logging_IncludeCookie $true `
      -Logging_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-logging-bucket.s3.amazonaws.com `
      -Logging_Prefix "help/" `
      -DistributionConfig_CallerReference Client1 `
      -DistributionConfig_DefaultRootObject index.html `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_TargetOriginId $origin.Id `
      -ForwardedValues_QueryString $true `
      -Cookies_Forward all `
      -WhitelistedNames_Quantity 0 `
      -TrustedSigners_Enabled $false `
      -TrustedSigners_Quantity 0 `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_ViewerProtocolPolicy allow-all `
      -DefaultCacheBehavior_MinTTL 1000 `
      -DistributionConfig_PriceClass "PriceClass_All" `
      -CacheBehaviors_Quantity 0 `
      -Aliases_Quantity 0
```

- For API details, see CreateDistribution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CFInvalidation`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CFInvalidation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new invalidation on a distribution with an ID of EXAMPLENSTXAXE. The CallerReference is a unique ID chosen by the user; in this case, a time stamp representing May 15, 2019 at 9:00 a.m. is used. The $Paths variable stores three paths to image and media files that the user does not want as part of the distribution's cache. The -Paths_Quantity parameter value is the total number of paths specified in the -Paths_Item parameter.

```
$Paths = "/images/*.gif", "/images/image1.jpg", "/videos/*.mp4"
```

```
New-CFInvalidation -DistributionId "EXAMPLENSTXAXE" -
InvalidationBatch_CallerReference 20190515090000 -Paths_Item $Paths -Paths_Quantity
 3
```

Output:

```
Invalidation                        Location

------------                        --------

Amazon.CloudFront.Model.Invalidation https://cloudfront.amazonaws.com/2018-11-05/
distribution/EXAMPLENSTXAXE/invalidation/EXAMPLE8NOK9H
```

- For API details, see CreateInvalidation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CFSignedCookie`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CFSignedCookie`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a signed cookie to the specified resource using a canned policy. The cookie will be valid for one year.

```
$params = @{
 "ResourceUri"="http://xyz.cloudfront.net/image1.jpeg"
 "KeyPairId"="AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
 "PrivateKeyFile"="C:\pk-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE.pem"
 "ExpiresOn"=(Get-Date).AddYears(1)
}
New-CFSignedCookie @params
```

Output:

```
Expires
-------
[CloudFront-Expires, 1472227284]
```

Example 2: Creates a signed cookie to the specified resources using a custom policy. The cookie will be valid in 24 hours and will expire one week afterward.

```
$start = (Get-Date).AddHours(24)
$params = @{
 "ResourceUri"="http://xyz.cloudfront.net/content/*.jpeg"
 "KeyPairId"="AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
 "PrivateKeyFile"="C:\pk-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE.pem"
 "ExpiresOn"=$start.AddDays(7)
    "ActiveFrom"=$start
}

New-CFSignedCookie @params
```

Output:

```
Policy
------
[CloudFront-Policy, eyJTd...wIjo...
```

Example 3: Creates a signed cookie to the specified resources using a custom policy. The cookie will be valid in 24 hours and will expire one week afterward. Access to the resources is restricted to the specified ip range.

```
$start = (Get-Date).AddHours(24)
$params = @{
 "ResourceUri"="http://xyz.cloudfront.net/content/*.jpeg"
 "KeyPairId"="AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
 "PrivateKeyFile"="C:\pk-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE.pem"
 "ExpiresOn"=$start.AddDays(7)
    "ActiveFrom"=$start
 "IpRange"="192.0.2.0/24"
}

New-CFSignedCookie @params
```

Output:

```
Policy
                                                                  ------


                                       [CloudFront-Policy, eyJTd...wIjo...
```

- For API details, see New-CFSignedCookie in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-CFSignedUrl

The following code example shows how to use `New-CFSignedUrl`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a signed url to the specified resource using a canned policy. The url will be valid for one hour. A System.Uri object containing the signed url is emitted to the pipeline.

```
$params = @{
 "ResourceUri"="https://cdn.example.com/index.html"
 "KeyPairId"="AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
 "PrivateKeyFile"="C:\pk-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE.pem"
 "ExpiresOn"=(Get-Date).AddHours(1)
}
New-CFSignedUrl @params
```

Example 2: Creates a signed url to the specified resource using a custom policy. The url will be valid starting in 24 hours and will expire one week later.

```
$start = (Get-Date).AddHours(24)
$params = @{
 "ResourceUri"="https://cdn.example.com/index.html"
 "KeyPairId"="AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
 "PrivateKeyFile"="C:\pk-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE.pem"
 "ExpiresOn"=(Get-Date).AddDays(7)
    "ActiveFrom"=$start
}
New-CFSignedUrl @params
```

Example 3: Creates a signed url to the specified resource using a custom policy. The url will be valid starting in 24 hours and will expire one week later. Access to the resource is restricted to the specified ip range.

```
$start = (Get-Date).AddHours(24)
$params = @{
 "ResourceUri"="https://cdn.example.com/index.html"
 "KeyPairId"="AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE"
 "PrivateKeyFile"="C:\pk-AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE.pem"
 "ExpiresOn"=(Get-Date).AddDays(7)
    "ActiveFrom"=$start
```

```
    "IpRange"="192.0.2.0/24"
}
New-CFSignedUrl @params
```

- For API details, see New-CFSignedUrl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

CloudTrail examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with CloudTrail.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Find-CTEvent`

The following code example shows how to use `Find-CTEvent`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all events that have occurred over the last seven days. The cmdlet by default automatically makes multiple calls to deliver all events, exiting when the service indicates no further data is available.

```
Find-CTEvent
```

Example 2: Returns all events that have occurred over the last seven days specifying a region that is not the current shell default.

```
Find-CTEvent -Region eu-central-1
```

Example 3: Returns all events that are associated with the RunInstances API call.

```
Find-CTEvent -LookupAttribute @{ AttributeKey="EventName";
 AttributeValue="RunInstances" }
```

Example 4: Returns the first 5 available events.

```
Find-CTEvent -MaxResult 5
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CTTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CTTrail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the settings of all trails associated with the current region for your account.

```
Get-CTTrail
```

Example 2: Returns the settings for the specified trails.

```
Get-CTTrail -TrailNameList trail1,trail2
```

Example 3: Returns the settings for the specified trails that were created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Get-CTTrail -TrailNameList trailABC,trailDEF -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CTTrailStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CTTrailStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns status information for the trail with name 'myExampleTrail'. Returned data includes information on delivery errors, Amazon SNS and Amazon S3 errors, and start

and stop logging times for the trail. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Get-CTTrailStatus -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Returns status information for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Get-CTTrailStatus -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see GetTrailStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CTTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CTTrail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a trail that will use the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' for log file storage.

```
New-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -S3BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
```

Example 2: Creates a trail that will use the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' for log file storage. The S3 objects representing the logs will have a common key prefix of 'mylogs'. When new logs are delivered to the bucket a notification will be sent to the SNS topic 'mlog-deliverytopic'. This example using splatting to supply the parameter values to the cmdlet.

```
$params = @{
    Name="awscloudtrail-example"
    S3BucketName="amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    S3KeyPrefix="mylogs"
    SnsTopicName="mlog-deliverytopic"
}
New-CTTrail @params
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CTTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CTTrail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified trail. You will be prompted for confirmation before the command is run. To suppress confirmation, add the -Force switch parameter.

```
Remove-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example"
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-CTLogging`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-CTLogging`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Starts the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for the trail named 'myExampleTrail'. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Start-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Starts the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Start-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see StartLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-CTLogging`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-CTLogging`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Suspends the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for the trail named 'myExampleTrail'. This example assumes the trail was created in the same region as the current shell default.

```
Stop-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail
```

Example 2: Suspends the recording of AWS API calls and log file delivery for a trail that was created in a region other than the current shell default (in this case, the Frankfurt (eu-central-1) region).

```
Stop-CTLogging -Name myExampleTrail -Region eu-central-1
```

- For API details, see StopLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CTTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CTTrail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the specified trail so that global service events (such as those from IAM) are recorded and changes the common key prefix of the log files going forwards to be 'globallogs'.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -IncludeGlobalServiceEvents $true -
S3KeyPrefix "globallogs"
```

Example 2: Updates the specified trail so notifications about new log deliveries are sent to the specified SNS topic.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -SnsTopicName "mlog-deliverytopic2"
```

Example 3: Updates the specified trail so logs are delivered to a different bucket.

```
Update-CTTrail -Name "awscloudtrail-example" -S3BucketName "otherlogs"
```

- For API details, see UpdateTrail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

CloudWatch examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-CWDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CWDashboard`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the arn the body of the specified dashboard.

```
Get-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

Output:

```
DashboardArn                                          DashboardBody
------------                                          -------------
arn:aws:cloudwatch::123456789012:dashboard/Dashboard1 {...
```

- For API details, see GetDashboard in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CWDashboardList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CWDashboardList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of dashboards for your account.

```
Get-CWDashboardList
```

Output:

```
DashboardArn DashboardName LastModified        Size
------------ ------------- ------------        ----
arn:...      Dashboard1    7/6/2017 8:14:15 PM 252
```

Example 2: Returns the collection of dashboards for your account whose names start with the prefix 'dev'.

```
Get-CWDashboardList -DashboardNamePrefix dev
```

- For API details, see ListDashboards in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CWDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CWDashboard`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified dashboard, promoting for confirmation before proceeding. To bypass confirmation add the -Force switch to the command.

```
Remove-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

- For API details, see DeleteDashboards in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-CWDashboard`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-CWDashboard`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates or updates the dashboard named 'Dashboard1' to include two metric widgets side by side.

```
$dashBody = @"
{
    "widgets":[
```

```
        {
             "type":"metric",
             "x":0,
             "y":0,
             "width":12,
             "height":6,
             "properties":{
                "metrics":[
                   [
                      "AWS/EC2",
                      "CPUUtilization",
                      "InstanceId",
                      "i-012345"
                   ]
                ],
                "period":300,
                "stat":"Average",
                "region":"us-east-1",
                "title":"EC2 Instance CPU"
             }
        },
        {
             "type":"metric",
             "x":12,
             "y":0,
             "width":12,
             "height":6,
             "properties":{
                "metrics":[
                   [
                      "AWS/S3",
                      "BucketSizeBytes",
                      "BucketName",
                      "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
                   ]
                ],
                "period":86400,
                "stat":"Maximum",
                "region":"us-east-1",
                "title":"amzn-s3-demo-bucket bytes"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

```
"@

Write-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1 -DashboardBody $dashBody
```

Example 2: Creates or updates the dashboard, piping the content describing the dashboard into the cmdlet.

```
$dashBody = @"
{
...
}
"@

$dashBody | Write-CWDashboard -DashboardName Dashboard1
```

- For API details, see PutDashboard in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-CWMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-CWMetricData`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new MetricDatum object, and writes it to Amazon Web Services CloudWatch Metrics.

```
### Create a MetricDatum .NET object
$Metric = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.CloudWatch.Model.MetricDatum
$Metric.Timestamp = [DateTime]::UtcNow
$Metric.MetricName = 'CPU'
$Metric.Value = 50

### Write the metric data to the CloudWatch service
Write-CWMetricData -Namespace instance1 -MetricData $Metric
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

CodeCommit examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with CodeCommit.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-CCBranch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CCBranch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified branch for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -BranchName MyNewBranch
```

Output:

```
BranchName                                CommitId
----------                                --------
MyNewBranch                               7763222d...561fc9c9
```

- For API details, see GetBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CCBranchList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CCBranchList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of branch names for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCBranchList -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
master
MyNewBranch
```

- For API details, see ListBranches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CCRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CCRepository`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information for the specified repository.

```
Get-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
AccountId             : 80398EXAMPLE
Arn                   : arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlHttp          : https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlSsh           : ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CreationDate          : 9/8/2015 3:21:33 PM
DefaultBranch         :
LastModifiedDate      : 9/8/2015 3:21:33 PM
RepositoryDescription : This is a repository for demonstration purposes.
RepositoryId          : c7d0d2b0-ce40-4303-b4c3-38529EXAMPLE
RepositoryName        : MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see GetRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CCRepositoryBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CCRepositoryBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example confirms which of the specified repositories are found and not found.

```
Get-CCRepositoryBatch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo, MyNewRepo, AMissingRepo
```

Output:

```
Repositories                            RepositoriesNotFound
------------                            --------------------
{MyDemoRepo, MyNewRepo}                {AMissingRepo}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetRepositories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CCRepositoryList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CCRepositoryList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all repositories in ascending order by repository name.

```
Get-CCRepositoryList -Order Ascending -SortBy RepositoryName
```

Output:

```
RepositoryId                            RepositoryName
------------                            --------------
c7d0d2b0-ce40-4303-b4c3-38529EXAMPLE    MyDemoRepo
05f30c66-e3e3-4f91-a0cd-1c84aEXAMPLE    MyNewRepo
```

- For API details, see ListRepositories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CCBranch`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CCBranch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new branch with the specified name for the specified repository and the specified commit ID.

```
New-CCBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -BranchName MyNewBranch -CommitId
 7763222d...561fc9c9
```

- For API details, see CreateBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CCRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CCRepository`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new repository with the specified name and the specified description.

```
New-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -RepositoryDescription "This is a
 repository for demonstration purposes."
```

Output:

```
AccountId             : 80398EXAMPLE
Arn                   : arn:aws:codecommit:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlHttp          : https://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CloneUrlSsh           : ssh://git-codecommit.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/v1/repos/
MyDemoRepo
CreationDate          : 9/18/2015 4:13:25 PM
DefaultBranch         :
LastModifiedDate      : 9/18/2015 4:13:25 PM
RepositoryDescription : This is a repository for demonstration purposes.
RepositoryId          : 43ef2443-3372-4b12-9e78-65c27EXAMPLE
RepositoryName        : MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CCRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CCRepository`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example forcibly deletes the specified repository. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the repository without a prompt.

```
Remove-CCRepository -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo
```

Output:

```
43ef2443-3372-4b12-9e78-65c27EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CCDefaultBranch`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CCDefaultBranch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the default branch for the specified repository to the specified branch.

```
Update-CCDefaultBranch -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -DefaultBranchName MyNewBranch
```

- For API details, see UpdateDefaultBranch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CCRepositoryDescription`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CCRepositoryDescription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the description for the specified repository.

```
Update-CCRepositoryDescription -RepositoryName MyDemoRepo -RepositoryDescription
 "This is an updated description."
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryDescription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CCRepositoryName`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CCRepositoryName`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified repository.

```
Update-CCRepositoryName -NewName MyDemoRepo2 -OldName MyDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see UpdateRepositoryName in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

CodeDeploy examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with CodeDeploy.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds an on-premises instance tag with the specified key and value for the specified on-premises instance.

```
Add-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX -Tag @{"Key" = "Name";
 "Value" = "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem"}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDApplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified application.

```
Get-CDApplication -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationId                           ApplicationName              CreateTime
         LinkedToGitHub
-------------                           ---------------              ----------
         --------------
e07fb938-091e-4f2f-8963-4d3e8EXAMPLE    CodeDeployDemoApplication    7/20/2015
 9:49:48 PM    False
```

- For API details, see GetApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDApplicationBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDApplicationBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified applications.

```
Get-CDApplicationBatch -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication,
 CodePipelineDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationId                           ApplicationName              CreateTime
         LinkedToGitHub
-------------                           ---------------              ----------
         --------------
e07fb938-091e-4f2f-8963-4d3e8EXAMPLE    CodeDeployDemoApplication    7/20/2015
 9:49:48 PM    False
1ecfd602-62f1-4038-8f0d-06688EXAMPLE    CodePipelineDemoApplication  8/13/2015
 5:53:26 PM    False
```

- For API details, see BatchGetApplications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDApplicationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDApplicationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available applications.

```
Get-CDApplicationList
```

Output:

```
CodeDeployDemoApplication
CodePipelineDemoApplication
```

- For API details, see ListApplications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDApplicationRevision`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDApplicationRevision`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified application revision.

```
$revision = Get-CDApplicationRevision -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
 -S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Revision_RevisionType S3 -
S3Location_Key 5xd27EX.zip -S3Location_BundleType zip -S3Location_ETag
 4565c1ac97187f190c1a90265EXAMPLE
Write-Output ("Description = " + $revision.RevisionInfo.Description + ",
 RegisterTime = " + $revision.RevisionInfo.RegisterTime)
```

Output:

```
Description = Application revision registered by Deployment ID: d-CX9CHN3EX,
 RegisterTime = 07/20/2015 23:46:42
```

- For API details, see GetApplicationRevision in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDApplicationRevisionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDApplicationRevisionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about available revisions for the specified application.

```
ForEach ($revision in (Get-CDApplicationRevisionList -ApplicationName
 CodeDeployDemoApplication -Deployed Ignore)) {
>>   If ($revision.RevisionType -Eq "S3") {
>>     Write-Output ("Type = S3, Bucket = " + $revision.S3Location.Bucket
 + ", BundleType = " + $revision.S3Location.BundleType + ", ETag = " +
 $revision.S3Location.ETag + ", Key = " + $revision.S3Location.Key)
>>   }
>>   If ($revision.RevisionType -Eq "GitHub") {
>>     Write-Output ("Type = GitHub, CommitId = " +
 $revision.GitHubLocation.CommitId + ", Repository = " +
 $revision.GitHubLocation.Repository)
>>   }
>> }
>>
```

Output:

```
Type = S3, Bucket = amzn-s3-demo-bucket, BundleType = zip, ETag =
 4565c1ac97187f190c1a90265EXAMPLE, Key = 5xd27EX.zip
Type = GitHub, CommitId = f48933c3...76405362, Repository = MyGitHubUser/
CodeDeployDemoRepo
```

- For API details, see ListApplicationRevisions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeployment`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeployment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets summary information about the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName               : CodeDeployDemoApplication
CompleteTime                  : 7/23/2015 11:26:04 PM
CreateTime                    : 7/23/2015 11:24:43 PM
Creator                       : user
DeploymentConfigName          : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName           : CodeDeployDemoFleet
DeploymentId                  : d-QZMRGSTEX
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                        : Succeeded
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the status of instances that are participating in the specified deployment.

```
(Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX).DeploymentOverview
```

Output:

```
Failed     : 0
InProgress : 0
Pending    : 0
Skipped    : 0
Succeeded  : 3
```

Example 3: This example gets information about the application revision for the specified deployment.

```
(Get-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX).Revision.S3Location
```

Output:

```
Bucket     : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
BundleType : zip
ETag       : cfbb81b304ee5e27efc21adaed3EXAMPLE
Key        : clzfqEX
Version    :
```

- For API details, see GetDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified deployments.

```
Get-CDDeploymentBatch -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX, d-RR0T5KTEX
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName               : CodeDeployDemoApplication
CompleteTime                  : 7/23/2015 11:26:04 PM
CreateTime                    : 7/23/2015 11:24:43 PM
Creator                       : user
DeploymentConfigName          : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName           : CodeDeployDemoFleet
DeploymentId                  : d-QZMRGSTEX
```

```
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                        : Succeeded

ApplicationName               : CodePipelineDemoApplication
CompleteTime                  : 7/23/2015 6:07:30 PM
CreateTime                    : 7/23/2015 6:06:29 PM
Creator                       : user
DeploymentConfigName          : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupName           : CodePipelineDemoFleet
DeploymentId                  : d-RR0T5KTEX
DeploymentOverview            : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.DeploymentOverview
Description                   :
ErrorInformation              :
IgnoreApplicationStopFailures : False
Revision                      : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
StartTime                     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Status                        : Succeeded
```

- For API details, see BatchGetDeployments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets summary information about the specified deployment configuration.

```
Get-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName ThreeQuartersHealthy
```

Output:

```
CreateTime              DeploymentConfigId                      DeploymentConfigName
    MinimumHealthyHosts
----------              ------------------                      --------------------
    -------------------
```

```
10/3/2014 4:32:30 PM    518a3950-d034-46a1-9d2c-3c949EXAMPLE    ThreeQuartersHealthy
    Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.MinimumHealthyHosts
```

Example 2: This example gets information about the definition of the specified deployment configuration.

```
Write-Output ((Get-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName
 ThreeQuartersHealthy).MinimumHealthyHosts)
```

Output:

```
Type             Value
----             -----
FLEET_PERCENT    75
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentConfigList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentConfigList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available deployment configurations.

```
Get-CDDeploymentConfigList
```

Output:

```
ThreeQuartersHealthy
CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
CodeDeployDefault.AllAtOnce
CodeDeployDefault.HalfAtATime
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified deployment group.

```
Get-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication -
DeploymentGroupName CodeDeployDemoFleet
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName              : CodeDeployDemoApplication
AutoScalingGroups            : {}
DeploymentConfigName         : CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
DeploymentGroupId            : 7d7c098a-b444-4b27-96ef-22791EXAMPLE
DeploymentGroupName          : CodeDeployDemoFleet
Ec2TagFilters                : {Name}
OnPremisesInstanceTagFilters : {}
ServiceRoleArn               : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/
CodeDeploySampleStack-4ph6EX-CodeDeployTrustRole-O9MWP7XTL8EX
TargetRevision               : Amazon.CodeDeploy.Model.RevisionLocation
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentGroupList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentGroupList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of deployment groups for the specified application.

```
Get-CDDeploymentGroupList -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication
```

Output:

```
ApplicationName              DeploymentGroups
 NextToken
---------------              ----------------
 ---------
CodeDeployDemoApplication    {CodeDeployDemoFleet, CodeDeployProductionFleet}
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified instance for the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeploymentInstance -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX -InstanceId i-254e22EX
```

Output:

```
DeploymentId    : d-QZMRGSTEX
InstanceId      : arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/i-254e22EX
LastUpdatedAt   : 7/23/2015 11:25:24 PM
LifecycleEvents : {ApplicationStop, DownloadBundle, BeforeInstall, Install...}
Status          : Succeeded
```

- For API details, see GetDeploymentInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentInstanceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentInstanceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of instance IDs for the specified deployment.

```
Get-CDDeploymentInstanceList -DeploymentId d-QZMRGSTEX
```

Output:

```
i-254e22EX
i-274e22EX
i-3b4e22EX
```

- For API details, see ListDeploymentInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDDeploymentList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDDeploymentList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of deployment IDs for the specified application and deployment group.

```
Get-CDDeploymentList -ApplicationName CodeDeployDemoApplication -DeploymentGroupName
 CodeDeployDemoFleet
```

Output:

```
d-QZMRGSTEX
d-RR0T5KTEX
```

- For API details, see ListDeployments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDOnPremiseInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDOnPremiseInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified on-premises instance.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstance -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

Output:

```
DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_rDH556dxEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:36:24 PM
Tags           : {Name}
```

- For API details, see GetOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about the specified on-premises instances.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceBatch -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX, AssetTag12010298EX-2
```

Output:

```
DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployFRWUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX-2_XmeSz18rEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX-2
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:38:52 PM
Tags           : {Name}

DeregisterTime : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
IamUserArn     : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/CodeDeployDemoUser
InstanceArn    : arn:aws:codedeploy:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:instance/
AssetTag12010298EX_rDH556dxEX
InstanceName   : AssetTag12010298EX
RegisterTime   : 4/3/2015 6:36:24 PM
Tags           : {Name}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available on-premises instance names.

```
Get-CDOnPremiseInstanceList
```

Output:

```
AssetTag12010298EX
AssetTag12010298EX-2
```

- For API details, see ListOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CDApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CDApplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new application with the specified name.

```
New-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
```

Output:

```
f19e4b61-2231-4328-b0fd-e57f5EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CDDeployment`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CDDeployment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new deployment for the specified application and deployment group with the specified deployment configuration and application revision.

```
New-CDDeployment -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-
bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -IgnoreApplicationStopFailures $True -
S3Location_Key aws-codedeploy_linux-master.zip -RevisionType S3
```

Output:

```
d-ZHROG7UEX
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
New-CDDeployment -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket amzn-s3-demo-
bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -IgnoreApplicationStopFailures $True
 -S3Location_Key aws-codedeploy_linux-master.zip -RevisionType S3 -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{Key=
```

Output:

```
d-ZHROG7UEX
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CDDeploymentConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CDDeploymentConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new deployment configuration with the specified name and behavior.

```
New-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName AtLeastTwoHealthyHosts -
MinimumHealthyHosts_Type HOST_COUNT -MinimumHealthyHosts_Value 2
```

Output:

```
0f3e8187-44ef-42da-aeed-b6823EXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CDDeploymentGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CDDeploymentGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a deployment group with the specified name, Auto Scaling group, deployment configuration, tag, and service role, for the specified application.

```
New-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -AutoScalingGroup
 CodeDeployDemo-ASG -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -Ec2TagFilter @{Key="Name";
 Type="KEY_AND_VALUE"; Value="CodeDeployDemo"} -ServiceRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo
```

Output:

```
16bbf199-95fd-40fc-a909-0bbcfEXAMPLE
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
New-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -AutoScalingGroup
 CodeDeployDemo-ASG -DeploymentConfigName CodeDeployDefault.OneAtATime
 -DeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -Ec2TagFilter @{Key="Name";
 Type="KEY_AND_VALUE"; Value="CodeDeployDemo"} -ServiceRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodeDeployDemo -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{Key=
```

Output:

```
16bbf199-95fd-40fc-a909-0bbcfEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see CreateDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-CDApplicationRevision`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-CDApplicationRevision`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an application revision with the specified Amazon S3 location, for the specified application.

```
Register-CDApplicationRevision -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -S3Location_Bucket
 amzn-s3-demo-bucket -S3Location_BundleType zip -S3Location_Key aws-
codedeploy_linux-master.zip -Revision_RevisionType S3
```

- For API details, see RegisterApplicationRevision in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-CDOnPremiseInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-CDOnPremiseInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an on-premises instance with the specified name and IAM user.

```
Register-CDOnPremiseInstance -IamUserArn arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:user/
CodeDeployDemoUser -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

- For API details, see RegisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CDApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CDApplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the application with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the application without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication
```

- For API details, see DeleteApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CDDeploymentConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CDDeploymentConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the deployment configuration with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the deployment configuration without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDDeploymentConfig -DeploymentConfigName AtLeastTwoHealthyHosts
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CDDeploymentGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CDDeploymentGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the deployment group with the specified name for the specified application. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the deployment group without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -DeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup
```

- For API details, see DeleteDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified tag for the on-premises instance with the specified name. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the tag without a prompt.

```
Remove-CDOnPremiseInstanceTag -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX -Tag @{"Key" =
 "Name"; "Value" = "CodeDeployDemo-OnPrem"}
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromOnPremisesInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-CDDeployment`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-CDDeployment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attempts to stop the deployment with the specified deployment ID.

```
Stop-CDDeployment -DeploymentId d-LJQNREYEX
```

Output:

```
Status     StatusMessage
------     -------------
Pending    Stopping Pending. Stopping to schedule commands in the deployment
 instances
```

- For API details, see StopDeployment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-CDOnPremiseInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-CDOnPremiseInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters the on-premises instance with the specified name.

```
Unregister-CDOnPremiseInstance -InstanceName AssetTag12010298EX
```

- For API details, see DeregisterOnPremisesInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CDApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CDApplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified application.

```
Update-CDApplication -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -NewApplicationName
 MyNewApplication-2
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CDDeploymentGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CDDeploymentGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the name of the specified deployment group for the specified application.

```
Update-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -
CurrentDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -NewDeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup-2
```

Example 2: This example shows how to specify groups of EC2 instance tags that an instance must be identified by in order for it to be included in the replacement environment for a blue/green deployment.

```
Update-CDDeploymentGroup -ApplicationName MyNewApplication -
CurrentDeploymentGroupName MyNewDeploymentGroup -NewDeploymentGroupName
 MyNewDeploymentGroup-2 -Ec2TagSetList
 @(@{Key="key1";Type="KEY_ONLY"},@{Key="Key2";Type="KEY_AND_VALUE";Value="Value2"}),@(@{Key=
```

- For API details, see UpdateDeploymentGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

CodePipeline examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with CodePipeline.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Confirm-CPJob`

The following code example shows how to use `Confirm-CPJob`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the status of the specified job.

```
Confirm-CPJob -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE -Nonce 3
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
InProgress
```

- For API details, see AcknowledgeJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-CPStageTransition`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-CPStageTransition`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables the inbound transition for the specified stage in the specified pipeline.

```
Disable-CPStageTransition -PipelineName CodePipelineDemo -Reason "Disabling
 temporarily." -StageName Beta -TransitionType Inbound
```

- For API details, see DisableStageTransition in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-CPStageTransition`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-CPStageTransition`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables the inbound transition for the specified stage in the specified pipeline.

```
Enable-CPStageTransition -PipelineName CodePipelineDemo -StageName Beta -
TransitionType Inbound
```

- For API details, see EnableStageTransition in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CPActionType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CPActionType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about all available actions for the specified owner.

```
ForEach ($actionType in (Get-CPActionType -ActionOwnerFilter AWS)) {
  Write-Output ("For Category = " + $actionType.Id.Category + ", Owner = " +
 $actionType.Id.Owner + ", Provider = " + $actionType.Id.Provider + ", Version = " +
 $actionType.Id.Version + ":")
  Write-Output ("  ActionConfigurationProperties:")
  ForEach ($acp in $actionType.ActionConfigurationProperties) {
    Write-Output ("    For " + $acp.Name + ":")
    Write-Output ("      Description = " + $acp.Description)
    Write-Output ("      Key = " + $acp.Key)
    Write-Output ("      Queryable = " + $acp.Queryable)
    Write-Output ("      Required = " + $acp.Required)
    Write-Output ("      Secret = " + $acp.Secret)
  }
  Write-Output ("  InputArtifactDetails:")
  Write-Output ("    MaximumCount = " +
 $actionType.InputArtifactDetails.MaximumCount)
```

```
  Write-Output ("    MinimumCount = " +
 $actionType.InputArtifactDetails.MinimumCount)
  Write-Output ("  OutputArtifactDetails:")
  Write-Output ("    MaximumCount = " +
 $actionType.OutputArtifactDetails.MaximumCount)
  Write-Output ("    MinimumCount = " +
 $actionType.OutputArtifactDetails.MinimumCount)
  Write-Output ("  Settings:")
  Write-Output ("    EntityUrlTemplate = " + $actionType.Settings.EntityUrlTemplate)
  Write-Output ("    ExecutionUrlTemplate = " +
 $actionType.Settings.ExecutionUrlTemplate)
}
```

Output:

```
For Category = Deploy, Owner = AWS, Provider = ElasticBeanstalk, Version = 1:
  ActionConfigurationProperties:
    For ApplicationName:
      Description = The AWS Elastic Beanstalk Application name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
    For EnvironmentName:
      Description = The AWS Elastic Beanstalk Environment name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
  InputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 1
    MinimumCount = 1
  OutputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 0
    MinimumCount = 0
  Settings:
    EntityUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/elasticbeanstalk/r/
application/{Config:ApplicationName}
    ExecutionUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/elasticbeanstalk/r/
application/{Config:ApplicationName}
For Category = Deploy, Owner = AWS, Provider = CodeDeploy, Version = 1:
  ActionConfigurationProperties:
    For ApplicationName:
```

```
      Description = The AWS CodeDeploy Application name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
    For DeploymentGroupName:
      Description = The AWS CodeDeploy Deployment Group name
      Key = True
      Queryable = False
      Required = True
      Secret = False
  InputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 1
    MinimumCount = 1
  OutputArtifactDetails:
    MaximumCount = 0
    MinimumCount = 0
  Settings:
    EntityUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
applications/{Config:ApplicationName}/deployment-groups/{Config:DeploymentGroupName}
    ExecutionUrlTemplate = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
deployments/{ExternalExecutionId}
```

- For API details, see ListActionTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CPActionableJobList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CPActionableJobList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets information about all actionable jobs for the specified action category, owner, provider, version, and query parameters.

```
Get-CPActionableJobList -ActionTypeId_Category Build -ActionTypeId_Owner Custom
 -ActionTypeId_Provider MyCustomProviderName -ActionTypeId_Version 1 -QueryParam
 @{"ProjectName" = "MyProjectName"}
```

Output:

```
AccountId       Data                                Id
         Nonce
```

```
---------       ----                                --
         -----
80398EXAMPLE    Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.JobData    0de392f5-712d-4f41-ace3-
f57a0EXAMPLE    3
```

- For API details, see PollForJobs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CPJobDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CPJobDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets general information about the specified job.

```
Get-CPJobDetail -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
AccountId       Data                                Id
---------       ----                                --
80398EXAMPLE    Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.JobData
 f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the specified job.

```
$jobDetails = Get-CPJobDetail -JobId f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE
Write-Output ("For Job " + $jobDetails.Id + ":")
Write-Output ("  AccountId = " + $jobDetails.AccountId)
$jobData = $jobDetails.Data
Write-Output ("  Configuration:")
ForEach ($key in $jobData.ActionConfiguration.Keys) {
  $value = $jobData.ActionConfiguration.$key
  Write-Output ("    " + $key + " = " + $value)
}
Write-Output ("  ActionTypeId:")
Write-Output ("    Category = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Category)
Write-Output ("    Owner = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Owner)
Write-Output ("    Provider = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Provider)
Write-Output ("    Version = " + $jobData.ActionTypeId.Version)
Write-Output ("  ArtifactCredentials:")
```

```
Write-Output ("    AccessKeyId = " + $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.AccessKeyId)
Write-Output ("    SecretAccessKey = " +
 $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.SecretAccessKey)
Write-Output ("    SessionToken = " + $jobData.ArtifactCredentials.SessionToken)
Write-Output ("  InputArtifacts:")
ForEach ($ia in $jobData.InputArtifacts) {
  Write-Output ("    " + $ia.Name)
}
Write-Output ("  OutputArtifacts:")
ForEach ($oa in $jobData.OutputArtifacts) {
  Write-Output ("    " + $oa.Name)
}
Write-Output ("  PipelineContext:")
$context = $jobData.PipelineContext
Write-Output ("    Name = " + $context.Action.Name)
Write-Output ("    PipelineName = " + $context.PipelineName)
Write-Output ("    Stage = " + $context.Stage.Name)
```

Output:

```
For Job f570dc12-5ef3-44bc-945a-6e133EXAMPLE:
  AccountId = 80398EXAMPLE
  Configuration:
  ActionTypeId:
    Category = Build
    Owner = Custom
    Provider = MyCustomProviderName
    Version = 1
  ArtifactCredentials:
    AccessKeyId = ASIAIEI3...IXI6YREX
    SecretAccessKey = cqAFDhEi...RdQyfa2u
    SessionToken = AQoDYXdz...5u+lsAU=
  InputArtifacts:
    MyApp
  OutputArtifacts:
    MyAppBuild
  PipelineContext:
    Name = Build
    PipelineName = CodePipelineDemo
    Stage = Build
```

- For API details, see GetJobDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Get-CPPipeline

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CPPipeline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets general information about the specified pipeline.

```
Get-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo -Version 1
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {Source, Build, Beta, TestStage}
Version       : 1
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the specified pipeline.

```
$pipeline = Get-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo
Write-Output ("Name = " + $pipeline.Name)
Write-Output ("RoleArn = " + $pipeline.RoleArn)
Write-Output ("Version = " + $pipeline.Version)
Write-Output ("ArtifactStore:")
Write-Output ("  Location = " + $pipeline.ArtifactStore.Location)
Write-Output ("  Type = " + $pipeline.ArtifactStore.Type.Value)
Write-Output ("Stages:")
ForEach ($stage in $pipeline.Stages) {
  Write-Output ("  Name = " + $stage.Name)
  Write-Output ("    Actions:")
  ForEach ($action in $stage.Actions) {
    Write-Output ("      Name = " + $action.Name)
 Write-Output ("        Category = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Category)
 Write-Output ("        Owner = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Owner)
 Write-Output ("        Provider = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Provider)
 Write-Output ("        Version = " + $action.ActionTypeId.Version)
 Write-Output ("        Configuration:")
 ForEach ($key in $action.Configuration.Keys) {
   $value = $action.Configuration.$key
   Write-Output ("          " + $key + " = " + $value)
 }
```

```
 Write-Output ("        InputArtifacts:")
 ForEach ($ia in $action.InputArtifacts) {
   Write-Output ("          " + $ia.Name)
 }
 ForEach ($oa in $action.OutputArtifacts) {
   Write-Output ("          " + $oa.Name)
 }
 Write-Output ("        RunOrder = " + $action.RunOrder)
  }
}
```

Output:

```
Name = CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn = arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Version = 3
ArtifactStore:
  Location = amzn-s3-demo-bucket
  Type = S3
Stages:
  Name = Source
    Actions:
      Name = Source
        Category = Source
        Owner = ThirdParty
        Provider = GitHub
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          Branch = master
          OAuthToken = ****
          Owner = my-user-name
          Repo = MyRepoName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyApp
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = Build
    Actions:
      Name = Build
        Category = Build
        Owner = Custom
        Provider = MyCustomProviderName
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
```

```
          ProjectName = MyProjectName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyApp
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = Beta
    Actions:
      Name = CodePipelineDemoFleet
        Category = Deploy
        Owner = AWS
        Provider = CodeDeploy
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ApplicationName = CodePipelineDemoApplication
          DeploymentGroupName = CodePipelineDemoFleet
        InputArtifacts:
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
  Name = TestStage
    Actions:
      Name = MyJenkinsTestAction
        Category = Test
        Owner = Custom
        Provider = MyCustomTestProvider
        Version = 1
        Configuration:
          ProjectName = MyJenkinsProjectName
        InputArtifacts:
          MyAppBuild
        RunOrder = 1
```

- For API details, see GetPipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CPPipelineList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CPPipelineList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a list of available pipelines.

```
Get-CPPipelineList
```

Output:

```
Created                  Name                Updated                  Version
-------                  ----                -------                  -------
8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM    CodePipelineDemo    8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM    3
7/8/2015 2:41:53 AM      MyFirstPipeline     7/22/2015 9:06:37 PM     7
```

- For API details, see ListPipelines in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CPPipelineState`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CPPipelineState`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets general information about the stages for the specified pipeline.

```
Get-CPPipelineState -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

Output:

```
Created         : 8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM
PipelineName    : CodePipelineDemo
PipelineVersion : 1
StageStates     : {Source, Build, Beta, TestStage}
Updated         : 8/13/2015 10:17:54 PM
```

Example 2: This example gets detailed information about the state of the specified pipeline.

```
ForEach ($stageState in (Get-CPPipelineState -Name $arg).StageStates) {
  Write-Output ("For " + $stageState.StageName + ":")
  Write-Output ("  InboundTransitionState:")
  Write-Output ("    DisabledReason = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.DisabledReason)
  Write-Output ("    Enabled = " + $stageState.InboundTransitionState.Enabled)
  Write-Output ("    LastChangedAt = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.LastChangedAt)
  Write-Output ("    LastChangedBy = " +
 $stageState.InboundTransitionState.LastChangedBy)
  Write-Output ("  ActionStates:")
```

```
  ForEach ($actionState in $stageState.ActionStates) {
    Write-Output ("    For " + $actionState.ActionName + ":")
 Write-Output ("      CurrentRevision:")
    Write-Output ("        Created = " + $actionState.CurrentRevision.Created)
 Write-Output ("        RevisionChangeId = " +
 $actionState.CurrentRevision.RevisionChangeId)
 Write-Output ("        RevisionId = " + $actionState.CurrentRevision.RevisionId)
 Write-Output ("      EntityUrl = " + $actionState.EntityUrl)
 Write-Output ("      LatestExecution:")
    Write-Output ("        ErrorDetails:")
    Write-Output ("          Code = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ErrorDetails.Code)
 Write-Output ("          Message = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ErrorDetails.Message)
 Write-Output ("        ExternalExecutionId = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ExternalExecutionId)
 Write-Output ("        ExternalExecutionUrl = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.ExternalExecutionUrl)
 Write-Output ("        LastStatusChange = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.LastStatusChange)
 Write-Output ("        PercentComplete = " +
 $actionState.LatestExecution.PercentComplete)
 Write-Output ("        Status = " + $actionState.LatestExecution.Status)
 Write-Output ("        Summary = " + $actionState.LatestExecution.Summary)
 Write-Output ("      RevisionUrl = " + $actionState.RevisionUrl)
  }
}
```

Output:

```
For Source:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled =
    LastChangedAt =
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For Source:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = https://github.com/my-user-name/MyRepoName/tree/master
```

```
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId =
        ExternalExecutionUrl =
        LastStatusChange = 07/20/2015 23:28:45
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary =
      RevisionUrl =
For Build:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For Build:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code = TimeoutError
          Message = The action failed because a job worker exceeded its time limit.
 If this is a custom action, make sure that the job worker is configured correctly.
        ExternalExecutionId =
        ExternalExecutionUrl =
        LastStatusChange = 07/21/2015 00:29:29
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Failed
        Summary =
      RevisionUrl =
For Beta:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For CodePipelineDemoFleet:
```

```
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/applications/
CodePipelineDemoApplication/deployment-groups/CodePipelineDemoFleet
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId = d-D5LTCZXEX
        ExternalExecutionUrl = https://console.aws.amazon.com/codedeploy/home?#/
deployments/d-D5LTCZXEX
        LastStatusChange = 07/08/2015 22:07:42
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary = Deployment Succeeded
      RevisionUrl =
For TestStage:
  InboundTransitionState:
    DisabledReason =
    Enabled = True
    LastChangedAt = 01/01/0001 00:00:00
    LastChangedBy =
  ActionStates:
    For MyJenkinsTestAction25:
      CurrentRevision:
        Created =
        RevisionChangeId =
        RevisionId =
      EntityUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo
      LatestExecution:
        ErrorDetails:
          Code =
          Message =
        ExternalExecutionId = 5
        ExternalExecutionUrl = http://54.174.131.1EX/job/MyJenkinsDemo/5
        LastStatusChange = 07/08/2015 22:09:03
        PercentComplete = 0
        Status = Succeeded
        Summary = Finished
      RevisionUrl =
```

- For API details, see GetPipelineState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-CPCustomActionType

The following code example shows how to use New-CPCustomActionType.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new custom action with the specified properties.

```
New-CPCustomActionType -Category Build -ConfigurationProperty @{"Description"
 = "The name of the build project must be provided when this action is added
 to the pipeline."; "Key" = $True; "Name" = "ProjectName"; "Queryable"
 = $False; "Required" = $True; "Secret" = $False; "Type" = "String"} -
Settings_EntityUrlTemplate "https://my-build-instance/job/{Config:ProjectName}/"
 -Settings_ExecutionUrlTemplate "https://my-build-instance/job/mybuildjob/
lastSuccessfulBuild{ExternalExecutionId}/" -InputArtifactDetails_MaximumCount
 1 -OutputArtifactDetails_MaximumCount 1 -InputArtifactDetails_MinimumCount 0 -
OutputArtifactDetails_MinimumCount 0 -Provider "MyBuildProviderName" -Version 1
```

Output:

```
ActionConfigurationProperties : {ProjectName}
Id                            : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionTypeId
InputArtifactDetails          : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactDetails
OutputArtifactDetails         : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactDetails
Settings                      : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionTypeSettings
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomActionType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-CPPipeline

The following code example shows how to use New-CPPipeline.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples creates a new pipeline with the specified settings.

```
$pipeline = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.PipelineDeclaration

$sourceStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
$deployStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
```

```
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.OutputArtifact
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$sourceStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Source"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "S3"; "Version" = 1}
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3Bucket", "amzn-s3-demo-bucket")
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3ObjectKey", "my-object-key-name.zip")
$sourceStageAction.OutputArtifacts.Add($sourceStageActionOutputArtifact)
$sourceStageAction.Name = "Source"

$deployStageActionInputArtifact = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.InputArtifact
$deployStageActionInputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$deployStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Deploy"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "CodeDeploy"; "Version" = 1}
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("ApplicationName",
 "CodePipelineDemoApplication")
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("DeploymentGroupName", "CodePipelineDemoFleet")
$deployStageAction.InputArtifacts.Add($deployStageActionInputArtifact)
$deployStageAction.Name = "CodePipelineDemoFleet"

$sourceStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
$deployStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration

$sourceStage.Name = "Source"
$deployStage.Name = "Beta"

$sourceStage.Actions.Add($sourceStageAction)
$deployStage.Actions.Add($deployStageAction)

$pipeline.ArtifactStore = @{"Location" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; "Type" = "S3"}
$pipeline.Name = "CodePipelineDemo"
$pipeline.RoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole"
$pipeline.Stages.Add($sourceStage)
$pipeline.Stages.Add($deployStage)
$pipeline.Version = 1

New-CPPipeline -Pipeline $pipeline
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
```

```
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {Source, Beta}
Version       : 1
```

- For API details, see CreatePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CPCustomActionType`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CPCustomActionType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified custom action. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the custom action without a prompt.

```
Remove-CPCustomActionType -Category Build -Provider MyBuildProviderName -Version 1
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomActionType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CPPipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CPPipeline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified pipeline. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force parameter to delete the pipeline without a prompt.

```
Remove-CPPipeline -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

- For API details, see DeletePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-CPPipelineExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-CPPipelineExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example starts running the specified pipeline.

```
Start-CPPipelineExecution -Name CodePipelineDemo
```

- For API details, see StartPipelineExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CPPipeline`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CPPipeline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the specified existing pipeline with the specified settings.

```
$pipeline = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.PipelineDeclaration

$sourceStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration
$deployStageAction = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ActionDeclaration

$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact = New-Object
 Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.OutputArtifact
$sourceStageActionOutputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$sourceStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Source"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "S3"; "Version" = 1}
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3Bucket", "amzn-s3-demo-bucket")
$sourceStageAction.Configuration.Add("S3ObjectKey", "my-object-key-name.zip")
$sourceStageAction.OutputArtifacts.Add($sourceStageActionOutputArtifact)
$sourceStageAction.Name = "Source"

$deployStageActionInputArtifact = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.InputArtifact
$deployStageActionInputArtifact.Name = "MyApp"

$deployStageAction.ActionTypeId = @{"Category" = "Deploy"; "Owner" = "AWS";
 "Provider" = "CodeDeploy"; "Version" = 1}
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("ApplicationName",
 "CodePipelineDemoApplication")
$deployStageAction.Configuration.Add("DeploymentGroupName", "CodePipelineDemoFleet")
$deployStageAction.InputArtifacts.Add($deployStageActionInputArtifact)
$deployStageAction.Name = "CodePipelineDemoFleet"
```

```
$sourceStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration
$deployStage = New-Object Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.StageDeclaration

$sourceStage.Name = "MyInputFiles"
$deployStage.Name = "MyTestDeployment"

$sourceStage.Actions.Add($sourceStageAction)
$deployStage.Actions.Add($deployStageAction)

$pipeline.ArtifactStore = @{"Location" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"; "Type" = "S3"}
$pipeline.Name = "CodePipelineDemo"
$pipeline.RoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole"
$pipeline.Stages.Add($sourceStage)
$pipeline.Stages.Add($deployStage)
$pipeline.Version = 1

Update-CPPipeline -Pipeline $pipeline
```

Output:

```
ArtifactStore : Amazon.CodePipeline.Model.ArtifactStore
Name          : CodePipelineDemo
RoleArn       : arn:aws:iam::80398EXAMPLE:role/CodePipelineServiceRole
Stages        : {InputFiles, TestDeployment}
Version       : 2
```

- For API details, see UpdatePipeline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon Cognito Identity examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon Cognito Identity.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-CGIIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CGIIdentityPool`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves information about a specific Identity Pool by its id.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                       : 8/12/2015 4:29:40 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : True
DeveloperProviderName          :
IdentityPoolId                 : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
IdentityPoolName               : CommonTests1
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs      : {}
SupportedLoginProviders        : {}
ResponseMetadata               : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                  : 142
HttpStatusCode                 : OK
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CGIIdentityPoolList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CGIIdentityPoolList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves a list of existing Identity Pools.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPoolList
```

Output:

```
IdentityPoolId                                                    IdentityPoolName
```

```
--------------                                                          ----------------
us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1                          CommonTests1
us-east-1:118d242d-204e-4b88-b803-EXAMPLEGUID2                          Tests2
us-east-1:15d49393-ab16-431a-b26e-EXAMPLEGUID3                          CommonTests13
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CGIIdentityPoolRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CGIIdentityPoolRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Gets the information about roles for a specific Identity Pool.

```
Get-CGIIdentityPoolRole -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt         : 8/12/2015 4:33:51 PM
IdentityPoolId   : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
Roles            : {[unauthenticated, arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
CommonTests1Role]}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 165
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-CGIIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `New-CGIIdentityPool`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new Identity Pool which allows unauthenticated identities.

```
New-CGIIdentityPool -AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities $true -IdentityPoolName
 CommonTests13
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                        : 8/12/2015 4:56:07 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : True
DeveloperProviderName           :
IdentityPoolId                  : us-east-1:15d49393-ab16-431a-b26e-EXAMPLEGUID3
IdentityPoolName                : CommonTests13
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs       : {}
SupportedLoginProviders         : {}
ResponseMetadata                : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                   : 136
HttpStatusCode                  : OK
```

- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CGIIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CGIIdentityPool`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes a specific Identity Pool.

```
Remove-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-CGIIdentityPoolRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-CGIIdentityPoolRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Configures the specific Identity Pool to have an unauthenticated IAM role.

```
Set-CGIIdentityPoolRole -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1 -Role @{ "unauthenticated" = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
CommonTests1Role" }
```

- For API details, see SetIdentityPoolRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-CGIIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-CGIIdentityPool`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates some of the Identity Pool properties, in this case the name of the Identity Pool.

```
Update-CGIIdentityPool -IdentityPoolId us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-
EXAMPLEGUID1 -IdentityPoolName NewPoolName
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt                       : 8/12/2015 4:53:33 PM
AllowUnauthenticatedIdentities : False
DeveloperProviderName          :
IdentityPoolId                 : us-east-1:0de2af35-2988-4d0b-b22d-EXAMPLEGUID1
IdentityPoolName               : NewPoolName
OpenIdConnectProviderARNs      : {}
SupportedLoginProviders        : {}
ResponseMetadata               : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength                  : 135
HttpStatusCode                 : OK
```

- For API details, see UpdateIdentityPool in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Config examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Config.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-CFGResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-CFGResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates specified tag to the resource ARN, which is config-rule/config-rule-16iyn0 in this case.

```
Add-CFGResourceTag -ResourceArn arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-16iyn0 -Tag @{Key="Release";Value="Beta"}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateComplianceByConfigRuleList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateComplianceByConfigRuleList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the details from ConfigurationAggregator 'kaju' filtering for the given config rule and expands/returns the 'Compliance' of the rule.

```
Get-CFGAggregateComplianceByConfigRuleList -ConfigurationAggregatorName kaju
 -Filters_ConfigRuleName ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK | Select-Object -
ExpandProperty Compliance
```

Output:

```
ComplianceContributorCount                          ComplianceType
--------------------------                          --------------
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.ComplianceContributorCount NON_COMPLIANT
```

Example 2: This example fetches details from the given ConfigurationAggregator, filters it for the given account for all regions covered in the aggregator and further retuns the compliance for all the rules.

```
Get-CFGAggregateComplianceByConfigRuleList -ConfigurationAggregatorName
 kaju -Filters_AccountId 123456789012 | Select-Object ConfigRuleName,
 @{N="Compliance";E={$_.Compliance.ComplianceType}}
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName                      Compliance
--------------                      ----------
ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK NON_COMPLIANT
ec2-instance-no-public-ip           NON_COMPLIANT
desired-instance-type               NON_COMPLIANT
```

- For API details, see DescribeAggregateComplianceByConfigRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateComplianceDetailsByConfigRule`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateComplianceDetailsByConfigRule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the evaluation results selecting the output with resource-id and resource-type for the AWS Config rule 'desired-instance-type' which are in 'COMPLIANT' state for the given account, aggregator, region and config rule

```
Get-CFGAggregateComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -AccountId 123456789012 -
AwsRegion eu-west-1 -ComplianceType COMPLIANT -ConfigRuleName desired-
instance-type -ConfigurationAggregatorName raju | Select-Object -
ExpandProperty EvaluationResultIdentifier | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 EvaluationResultQualifier
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName        ResourceId          ResourceType
--------------        ----------          ------------
desired-instance-type i-0f1bf2f34c5678d12 AWS::EC2::Instance
desired-instance-type i-0fd12dd3456789123 AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see GetAggregateComplianceDetailsByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateConfigRuleComplianceSummary`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateConfigRuleComplianceSummary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the number of noncompliant rules for the given aggregator.

```
(Get-CFGAggregateConfigRuleComplianceSummary -ConfigurationAggregatorName
 raju).AggregateComplianceCounts.ComplianceSummary.NonCompliantResourceCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       5
```

- For API details, see GetAggregateConfigRuleComplianceSummary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceCount`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceCount`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the resource count for the given aggregator filtered for region us-east-1.

```
Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceCount -ConfigurationAggregatorName Master -
Filters_Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
GroupByKey GroupedResourceCounts NextToken TotalDiscoveredResources
```

```
---------- --------------------- --------- ------------------------
           {}                               455
```

Example 2: This example returns the resource count grouped by RESOURCE_TYPE for the filtered region for the given aggregator.

```
Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceCount -ConfigurationAggregatorName Master -
Filters_Region us-east-1 -GroupByKey RESOURCE_TYPE |
   Select-Object -ExpandProperty GroupedResourceCounts
```

Output:

```
GroupName                          ResourceCount
---------                          -------------
AWS::CloudFormation::Stack         12
AWS::CloudFront::Distribution      1
AWS::CloudTrail::Trail             1
AWS::DynamoDB::Table               1
AWS::EC2::EIP                      2
AWS::EC2::FlowLog                  2
AWS::EC2::InternetGateway          4
AWS::EC2::NatGateway               2
AWS::EC2::NetworkAcl               4
AWS::EC2::NetworkInterface         12
AWS::EC2::RouteTable               13
AWS::EC2::SecurityGroup            18
AWS::EC2::Subnet                   16
AWS::EC2::VPC                      4
AWS::EC2::VPCEndpoint              2
AWS::EC2::VPCPeeringConnection     1
AWS::IAM::Group                    2
AWS::IAM::Policy                   51
AWS::IAM::Role                     78
AWS::IAM::User                     7
AWS::Lambda::Function              3
AWS::RDS::DBSecurityGroup          1
AWS::S3::Bucket                    3
AWS::SSM::AssociationCompliance    107
AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory 108
```

- For API details, see GetAggregateDiscoveredResourceCounts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the resource identifiers for the given resource type aggregated in 'Ireland' aggregator. For the list of resource types, please check https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdkfornet/v4/apidocs/index.html?page=ConfigService/TConfigServiceResourceType.html&tocid=Amazon_ConfigService_ResourceType.

```
Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceList -ConfigurationAggregatorName Ireland -
ResourceType ([Amazon.ConfigService.ResourceType]::AWSAutoScalingAutoScalingGroup)
```

Output:

```
ResourceId      : arn:aws:autoscaling:eu-
west-1:123456789012:autoScalingGroup:12e3b4fc-1234-1234-
a123-1d2ba3c45678:autoScalingGroupName/asg-1
ResourceName    : asg-1
ResourceType    : AWS::AutoScaling::AutoScalingGroup
SourceAccountId : 123456789012
SourceRegion    : eu-west-1
```

Example 2: This example returns the resource type `AwsEC2SecurityGroup` named 'default' for the given aggregator filtered with region us-east-1.

```
Get-CFGAggregateDiscoveredResourceList -ConfigurationAggregatorName raju -
ResourceType ([Amazon.ConfigService.ResourceType]::AWSEC2SecurityGroup) -
Filters_Region us-east-1 -Filters_ResourceName default
```

Output:

```
ResourceId      : sg-01234bd5dbfa67c89
ResourceName    : default
ResourceType    : AWS::EC2::SecurityGroup
SourceAccountId : 123456789102
SourceRegion    : us-east-1

ResourceId      : sg-0123a4ebbf56789be
ResourceName    : default
```

```
ResourceType    : AWS::EC2::SecurityGroup
SourceAccountId : 123456789102
SourceRegion    : us-east-1

ResourceId      : sg-4fc1d234
ResourceName    : default
ResourceType    : AWS::EC2::SecurityGroup
SourceAccountId : 123456789102
SourceRegion    : us-east-1
```

- For API details, see ListAggregateDiscoveredResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateResourceConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateResourceConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the Configuration Item for the given resource aggregated and expands Configuration.

```
(Get-CFGAggregateResourceConfig -ResourceIdentifier_SourceRegion
 us-east-1 -ResourceIdentifier_SourceAccountId 123456789012 -
ResourceIdentifier_ResourceId sg-4fc1d234 -ResourceIdentifier_ResourceType
 ([Amazon.ConfigService.ResourceType]::AWSEC2SecurityGroup) -
ConfigurationAggregatorName raju).Configuration | ConvertFrom-Json
```

Output:

```
{"description":"default VPC security group","groupName":"default","ipPermissions":
[{"ipProtocol":"-1","ipv6Ranges":[],"prefixListIds":[],"userIdGroupPairs":
[{"groupId":"sg-4fc1d234","userId":"123456789012"}],"ipv4Ranges":
[],"ipRanges":[]},{"fromPort":3389,"ipProtocol":"tcp","ipv6Ranges":
[],"prefixListIds":[],"toPort":3389,"userIdGroupPairs":[],"ipv4Ranges":
[{"cidrIp":"54.240.197.224/29","description":"office subnet"},
{"cidrIp":"72.21.198.65/32","description":"home pc"}],"ipRanges":
["54.240.197.224/29","72.21.198.65/32"]}],"ownerId":"123456789012","groupId":"sg-4fc1d234","
[{"ipProtocol":"-1","ipv6Ranges":[],"prefixListIds":[],"userIdGroupPairs":
[],"ipv4Ranges":[{"cidrIp":"0.0.0.0/0"}],"ipRanges":["0.0.0.0/0"]}],"tags":
[],"vpcId":"vpc-2d1c2e34"}
```

- For API details, see GetAggregateResourceconfig-service in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregateResourceConfigBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregateResourceConfigBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches current configuration item for resource (identified) present in the given aggregator.

```
$resIdentifier=[Amazon.ConfigService.Model.AggregateResourceIdentifier]@{
  ResourceId= "i-012e3cb4df567e8aa"
  ResourceName = "arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-012e3cb4df567e8aa"
  ResourceType = [Amazon.ConfigService.ResourceType]::AWSEC2Instance
  SourceAccountId = "123456789012"
  SourceRegion = "eu-west-1"
 }

 Get-CFGAggregateResourceConfigBatch -ResourceIdentifier $resIdentifier -
ConfigurationAggregatorName raju
```

Output:

```
BaseConfigurationItems UnprocessedResourceIdentifiers
---------------------- -----------------------------
{}                     {arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/
i-012e3cb4df567e8aa}
```

- For API details, see BatchGetAggregateResourceconfig-service in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGAggregationAuthorizationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGAggregationAuthorizationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves authorizations granted to aggregators.

```
Get-CFGAggregationAuthorizationList
```

Output:

```
AggregationAuthorizationArn
   AuthorizedAccountId AuthorizedAwsRegion CreationTime
---------------------------
   ------------------ ------------------ ------------
arn:aws:config-service:eu-west-1:123456789012:aggregation-
authorization/123456789012/eu-west-1 123456789012        eu-west-1
 8/26/2019 12:55:27 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeAggregationAuthorizations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves compliances details for the rule ebs-optimized-instance, for which there is no current evaluation results for the rule, hence it returns INSUFFICIENT_DATA

```
(Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName ebs-optimized-instance).Compliance
```

Output:

```
ComplianceContributorCount ComplianceType
------------------------- --------------
                           INSUFFICIENT_DATA
```

Example 2: This example returns the number of non-compliant resources for the rule ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK.

```
(Get-CFGComplianceByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName ALB_HTTP_TO_HTTPS_REDIRECTION_CHECK -
ComplianceType NON_COMPLIANT).Compliance.ComplianceContributorCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       2
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGComplianceByResource`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGComplianceByResource`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example checks the `AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory` resource type for 'COMPLIANT' compliance type.

```
Get-CFGComplianceByResource -ComplianceType COMPLIANT -ResourceType
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
```

Output:

```
Compliance                              ResourceId          ResourceType
----------                              ----------          ------------
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.Compliance i-0123bcf4b567890e3
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
Amazon.ConfigService.Model.Compliance i-0a1234f6f5d6b78f7
 AWS::SSM::ManagedInstanceInventory
```

- For API details, see DescribeComplianceByResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example obtains the evaluation results for the rule access-keys-rotated and returns the output grouped by compliance-type

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName access-keys-rotated | Group-
Object ComplianceType
```

Output:

```
Count Name                      Group
----- ----                      -----
    2 COMPLIANT                 {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult}
    5 NON_COMPLIANT             {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResult,
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationRes...
```

Example 2: This example queries compliance details for the rule access-keys-rotated for COMPLIANT resources.

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByConfigRule -ConfigRuleName access-
keys-rotated -ComplianceType COMPLIANT | ForEach-Object
 {$_.EvaluationResultIdentifier.EvaluationResultQualifier}
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName      ResourceId            ResourceType
--------------      ----------            ------------
access-keys-rotated BCAB1CDJ2LITAPVEW3JAH AWS::IAM::User
access-keys-rotated BCAB1CDJ2LITL3EHREM4Q AWS::IAM::User
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByResource`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByResource`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example evaulation results for the given resource.

```
Get-CFGComplianceDetailsByResource -ResourceId ABCD5STJ4EFGHIVEW6JAH -ResourceType
 'AWS::IAM::User'
```

Output:

```
Annotation                 :
ComplianceType             : COMPLIANT
ConfigRuleInvokedTime      : 8/25/2019 11:34:56 PM
EvaluationResultIdentifier : Amazon.ConfigService.Model.EvaluationResultIdentifier
ResultRecordedTime         : 8/25/2019 11:34:56 PM
ResultToken                :
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceDetailsByResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByConfigRule`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByConfigRule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns the number of Config rules that are non-compliant.

```
Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByConfigRule -Select
 ComplianceSummary.NonCompliantResourceCount
```

Output:

```
CapExceeded CappedCount
----------- -----------
False       9
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByConfigRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByResourceType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByResourceType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns the number of resources that are compliant or noncompliant and converts the output to json.

```
Get-CFGComplianceSummaryByResourceType -Select
 ComplianceSummariesByResourceType.ComplianceSummary | ConvertTo-Json
{
  "ComplianceSummaryTimestamp": "2019-12-14T06:14:49.778Z",
  "CompliantResourceCount": {
    "CapExceeded": false,
    "CappedCount": 2
  },
  "NonCompliantResourceCount": {
    "CapExceeded": true,
    "CappedCount": 100
  }
}
```

- For API details, see GetComplianceSummaryByResourceType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConfigRule`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConfigRule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample lists config rules for the account, with selected properties.

```
Get-CFGConfigRule | Select-Object ConfigRuleName, ConfigRuleId, ConfigRuleArn,
 ConfigRuleState
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleName                                      ConfigRuleId       ConfigRuleArn
                                                        ConfigRuleState
--------------                                      ------------       -------------
                                                        ---------------
ALB_REDIRECTION_CHECK                               config-rule-12iyn3 arn:aws:config-
service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-12iyn3 ACTIVE
access-keys-rotated                                 config-rule-aospfr arn:aws:config-
service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-aospfr ACTIVE
autoscaling-group-elb-healthcheck-required          config-rule-cn1f2x arn:aws:config-
service:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/config-rule-cn1f2x ACTIVE
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConfigRuleEvaluationStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConfigRuleEvaluationStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns the status information for the given config rules.

```
Get-CFGConfigRuleEvaluationStatus -ConfigRuleName root-account-mfa-enabled, vpc-
flow-logs-enabled
```

Output:

```
ConfigRuleArn                : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-kvq1wk
ConfigRuleId                 : config-rule-kvq1wk
ConfigRuleName               : root-account-mfa-enabled
FirstActivatedTime           : 8/27/2019 8:05:17 AM
FirstEvaluationStarted       : True
LastErrorCode                :
LastErrorMessage             :
LastFailedEvaluationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastFailedInvocationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastSuccessfulEvaluationTime : 12/13/2019 8:12:03 AM
LastSuccessfulInvocationTime : 12/13/2019 8:12:03 AM

ConfigRuleArn                : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:config-rule/
config-rule-z1s23b
ConfigRuleId                 : config-rule-z1s23b
ConfigRuleName               : vpc-flow-logs-enabled
FirstActivatedTime           : 8/14/2019 6:23:44 AM
FirstEvaluationStarted       : True
LastErrorCode                :
LastErrorMessage             :
LastFailedEvaluationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastFailedInvocationTime     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
LastSuccessfulEvaluationTime : 12/13/2019 7:12:01 AM
LastSuccessfulInvocationTime : 12/13/2019 7:12:01 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRuleEvaluationStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConfigurationAggregatorList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConfigurationAggregatorList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns all the aggregators for the region/account.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationAggregatorList
```

Output:

```
AccountAggregationSources     :
 {Amazon.ConfigService.Model.AccountAggregationSource}
ConfigurationAggregatorArn    : arn:aws:config-service:eu-
west-1:123456789012:config-aggregator/config-aggregator-xabca1me
ConfigurationAggregatorName   : IrelandMaster
CreationTime                  : 8/25/2019 11:42:39 PM
LastUpdatedTime               : 8/25/2019 11:42:39 PM
OrganizationAggregationSource :

AccountAggregationSources     : {}
ConfigurationAggregatorArn    : arn:aws:config-service:eu-
west-1:123456789012:config-aggregator/config-aggregator-qubqabcd
ConfigurationAggregatorName   : raju
CreationTime                  : 8/11/2019 8:39:25 AM
LastUpdatedTime               : 8/11/2019 8:39:25 AM
OrganizationAggregationSource :
 Amazon.ConfigService.Model.OrganizationAggregationSource
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationAggregators in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConfigurationAggregatorSourcesStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConfigurationAggregatorSourcesStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays requested fields for the sources in the given aggregator.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationAggregatorSourcesStatus -ConfigurationAggregatorName raju |
 select SourceType, LastUpdateStatus, LastUpdateTime, SourceId
```

Output:

```
SourceType   LastUpdateStatus LastUpdateTime        SourceId
----------   ---------------- --------------        --------
ORGANIZATION SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:45:06 AM Organization
ACCOUNT      SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:09:38 AM 612641234567
ACCOUNT      SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:12:53 AM 933301234567
ACCOUNT      SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:18:10 AM 933301234567
ACCOUNT      SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:25:17 AM 933301234567
ACCOUNT      SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:25:49 AM 612641234567
ACCOUNT      SUCCEEDED        12/31/2019 7:26:11 AM 612641234567
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationAggregatorSourcesStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConfigurationRecorder`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConfigurationRecorder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the details of configuration recorders.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationRecorder | Format-List
```

Output:

```
Name           : default
RecordingGroup : Amazon.ConfigService.Model.RecordingGroup
RoleARN        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/aws-service-role/
config.amazonaws.com/AWSServiceRoleForConfig
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConfigurationRecorderStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConfigurationRecorderStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample returns status of the configuration recorders.

```
Get-CFGConfigurationRecorderStatus
```

Output:

```
LastErrorCode        :
LastErrorMessage     :
LastStartTime        : 10/11/2019 10:13:51 AM
LastStatus           : Success
LastStatusChangeTime : 12/31/2019 6:14:12 AM
LastStopTime         : 10/11/2019 10:13:46 AM
Name                 : default
Recording            : True
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigurationRecorderStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGConformancePack`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGConformancePack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample lists all conformance packs.

```
Get-CFGConformancePack
```

Output:

```
ConformancePackArn             : arn:aws:config:eu-west-1:123456789012:conformance-
pack/dono/conformance-pack-p0acq8bpz
ConformancePackId              : conformance-pack-p0acabcde
ConformancePackInputParameters : {}
```

```
ConformancePackName            : dono
CreatedBy                      :
DeliveryS3Bucket               : kt-ps-examples
DeliveryS3KeyPrefix            :
LastUpdateRequestedTime        : 12/31/2019 8:45:31 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeConformancePacks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGDeliveryChannel`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGDeliveryChannel`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the delivery channel for the region and displays details.

```
Get-CFGDeliveryChannel -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object Name, S3BucketName,
 S3KeyPrefix,
 @{N="DeliveryFrequency";E={$_.ConfigSnapshotDeliveryProperties.DeliveryFrequency}}
```

Output:

```
Name    S3BucketName               S3KeyPrefix DeliveryFrequency
----    ------------               ----------- -----------------
default config-bucket-NA my          TwentyFour_Hours
```

- For API details, see DescribeDeliveryChannels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-CFGResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-CFGResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists associated tags for the given resource

```
Get-CFGResourceTag -ResourceArn $rules[0].ConfigRuleArn
```

Output:

```
Key     Value
---     -----
Version 1.3
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-CFGConformancePack`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-CFGConformancePack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes the given conformance pack, along with all the rules, remediation actions and evaluation results for the pack.

```
Remove-CFGConformancePack -ConformancePackName dono
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-CFGConformancePack (DeleteConformancePack)" on
 target "dono".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteConformancePack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-CFGConformancePack`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-CFGConformancePack`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates conformance pack, fetching template from the given yaml file.

```
Write-CFGConformancePack -ConformancePackName dono -DeliveryS3Bucket amzn-s3-demo-
bucket -TemplateBody (Get-Content C:\windows\temp\template.yaml -Raw)
```

- For API details, see PutConformancePack in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-CFGDeliveryChannel`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-CFGDeliveryChannel`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the deliveryFrequency property of an existing delivery channel.

```
Write-CFGDeliveryChannel -ConfigSnapshotDeliveryProperties_DeliveryFrequency
 TwentyFour_Hours -DeliveryChannelName default -DeliveryChannel_S3BucketName amzn-
s3-demo-bucket -DeliveryChannel_S3KeyPrefix my
```

- For API details, see PutDeliveryChannel in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Device Farm examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Device Farm.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`New-DFUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DFUpload`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AWS Device Farm upload for an Android app. You can get the project ARN from the output of New-DFProject or Get-DFProjectList. Use the signed URL in the New-DFUpload output to upload a file to Device Farm.

```
New-DFUpload -ContentType "application/octet-stream" -ProjectArn
 "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2:123456789012:project:EXAMPLEa-7ec1-4741-9c1f-
d3e04EXAMPLE" -Name "app.apk" -Type ANDROID_APP
```

- For API details, see CreateUpload in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Directory Service examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Directory Service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-DSIpRoute`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-DSIpRoute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the Resource Tag assigned to the specified Directory-id

```
Add-DSIpRoute -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -IpRoute @{CidrIp ="203.0.113.5/32"} -
UpdateSecurityGroupForDirectoryController $true
```

- For API details, see AddIpRoutes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-DSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-DSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the Resource Tag to the specified Directory-id

```
Add-DSResourceTag -ResourceId d-123456ijkl -Tag @{Key="myTag"; Value="mytgValue"}
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Approve-DSTrust`

The following code example shows how to use `Approve-DSTrust`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example calls the AWS Directory Service VerifyTrust API operation for specified Trustid.

```
Approve-DSTrust -TrustId t-9067157123
```

- For API details, see VerifyTrust in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Confirm-DSSharedDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Confirm-DSSharedDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example accepts a directory sharing request sent from the directory owner AWS account.

```
Confirm-DSSharedDirectory -SharedDirectoryId d-9067012345
```

Output:

```
CreatedDateTime     : 12/30/2019 4:20:27 AM
LastUpdatedDateTime : 12/30/2019 4:21:40 AM
OwnerAccountId      : 123456781234
OwnerDirectoryId    : d-123456ijkl
SharedAccountId     : 123456784321
SharedDirectoryId   : d-9067012345
ShareMethod         :
ShareNotes          : This is test sharing
ShareStatus         : Sharing
```

- For API details, see AcceptSharedDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Connect-DSDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Connect-DSDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AD Connector to connect to an on-premises directory.

```
Connect-DSDirectory -Name contoso.com -ConnectSettings_CustomerUserName
 Administrator -Password $Password -ConnectSettings_CustomerDnsIp 172.31.36.96
 -ShortName CONTOSO -Size Small -ConnectSettings_VpcId vpc-123459da -
ConnectSettings_SubnetId subnet-1234ccaa, subnet-5678ffbb
```

- For API details, see ConnectDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Deny-DSSharedDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Deny-DSSharedDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example rejects a directory sharing request that was sent from the directory owner account.

```
Deny-DSSharedDirectory -SharedDirectoryId d-9067012345
```

Output:

```
d-9067012345
```

- For API details, see RejectSharedDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-DSDirectoryShare`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-DSDirectoryShare`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example stops the directory sharing between the directory owner and consumer account.

```
Disable-DSDirectoryShare -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -UnshareTarget_Id 123456784321 -
UnshareTarget_Type ACCOUNT
```

Output:

```
d-9067012345
```

- For API details, see UnshareDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-DSLDAPS`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-DSLDAPS`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deactivates LDAP secure calls for the specified directory.

```
Disable-DSLDAPS -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -Type Client
```

- For API details, see DisableLDAPS in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-DSRadius`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-DSRadius`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables RADIUS server configured for an AD Connector or Microsoft AD directory.

```
Disable-DSRadius -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see DisableRadius in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-DSSso`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-DSSso`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables single sign-on for a directory.

```
Disable-DSSso -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see DisableSso in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-DSDirectoryShare`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-DSDirectoryShare`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shares a specified directory in your AWS account with another AWS Account using Handshake method.

```
Enable-DSDirectoryShare -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -ShareTarget_Id 123456784321 -
ShareMethod HANDSHAKE -ShareTarget_Type ACCOUNT
```

Output:

```
d-9067012345
```

- For API details, see ShareDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-DSLDAPS`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-DSLDAPS`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example activates the switch for the specific directory to always use LDAP secure calls.

```
Enable-DSLDAPS -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -Type Client
```

- For API details, see EnableLDAPS in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-DSRadius`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-DSRadius`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables multi-factor authentication (MFA) with the provided RADIUS server configuration for an AD Connector or Microsoft AD directory.

```
Enable-DSRadius -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
-RadiusSettings_AuthenticationProtocol PAP
-RadiusSettings_DisplayLabel Radius
-RadiusSettings_RadiusPort 1812
-RadiusSettings_RadiusRetry 4
-RadiusSettings_RadiusServer 10.4.185.113
-RadiusSettings_RadiusTimeout 50
-RadiusSettings_SharedSecret wJalrXUtnFEMI
```

- For API details, see EnableRadius in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-DSSso`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-DSSso`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables single sign-on for a directory.

```
Enable-DSSso -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see EnableSso in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays information about the certificate registered for a secured LDAP connection.

```
Get-DSCertificate -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -CertificateId c-906731e34f
```

Output:

```
CertificateId      : c-906731e34f
CommonName         : contoso-EC2AMAZ-CTGG2NM-CA
ExpiryDateTime     : 4/15/2025 6:34:15 PM
RegisteredDateTime : 4/15/2020 6:38:56 PM
State              : Registered
StateReason        : Certificate registered successfully.
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSCertificateList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSCertificateList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the certificates registered for a secured LDAP connection for specified directory.

```
Get-DSCertificateList -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
CertificateId CommonName                 ExpiryDateTime       State
```

```
------------- ----------                 --------------       -----
c-906731e34f  contoso-EC2AMAZ-CTGG2NM-CA 4/15/2025 6:34:15 PM Registered
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSConditionalForwarder`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSConditionalForwarder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets all configured Conditional Forwarders of given Directory-id.

```
Get-DSConditionalForwarder -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
DnsIpAddrs      RemoteDomainName ReplicationScope
----------      ---------------- ----------------
{172.31.77.239} contoso.com      Domain
```

- For API details, see DescribeConditionalForwarders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command Obtains information about the directories that belong to this account.

```
Get-DSDirectory | Select-Object DirectoryId, Name, DnsIpAddrs, Type
```

Output:

```
DirectoryId  Name           DnsIpAddrs                     Type
-----------  ----           ----------                     ----
d-123456abcd abcd.example.com {172.31.74.189, 172.31.13.145} SimpleAD
```

```
d-123456efgh wifi.example.com {172.31.16.108, 172.31.10.56}  ADConnector
d-123456ijkl lan2.example.com {172.31.10.56, 172.31.16.108}  MicrosoftAD
```

- For API details, see DescribeDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSDirectoryLimit`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSDirectoryLimit`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example dislpays the directory limit information for the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-DSDirectoryLimit -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
CloudOnlyDirectoriesCurrentCount : 1
CloudOnlyDirectoriesLimit        : 10
CloudOnlyDirectoriesLimitReached : False
CloudOnlyMicrosoftADCurrentCount : 1
CloudOnlyMicrosoftADLimit        : 20
CloudOnlyMicrosoftADLimitReached : False
ConnectedDirectoriesCurrentCount : 1
ConnectedDirectoriesLimit        : 10
```

- For API details, see GetDirectoryLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSDomainControllerList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSDomainControllerList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets the detailed list of Domain Controllers launched for mentioned directory-id

```
Get-DSDomainControllerList -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone          : us-east-1b
DirectoryId               : d-123456ijkl
DnsIpAddr                 : 172.31.16.108
DomainControllerId        : dc-1234567aa6
LaunchTime                : 4/4/2019 4:53:43 AM
Status                    : Active
StatusLastUpdatedDateTime : 4/24/2019 1:37:54 PM
StatusReason              :
SubnetId                  : subnet-1234kkaa
VpcId                     : vpc-123459d

AvailabilityZone          : us-east-1d
DirectoryId               : d-123456ijkl
DnsIpAddr                 : 172.31.10.56
DomainControllerId        : dc-1234567aa7
LaunchTime                : 4/4/2019 4:53:43 AM
Status                    : Active
StatusLastUpdatedDateTime : 4/4/2019 5:14:31 AM
StatusReason              :
SubnetId                  : subnet-5678ffbb
VpcId                     : vpc-123459d
```

- For API details, see DescribeDomainControllers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSEventTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSEventTopic`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command shows information of configured SNS Topic for notification while directory status changes.

```
Get-DSEventTopic -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
CreatedDateTime : 12/13/2019 11:15:32 AM
DirectoryId     : d-123456ijkl
Status          : Registered
```

```
TopicArn        : arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:123456781234:snstopicname
TopicName       : snstopicname
```

- For API details, see DescribeEventTopics in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSIpRouteList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSIpRouteList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets the public IP address blocks configured in Directory IP Routing

```
Get-DSIpRouteList -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
AddedDateTime       : 12/13/2019 12:27:22 PM
CidrIp              : 203.0.113.5/32
Description         : Public IP of On-Prem DNS Server
DirectoryId         : d-123456ijkl
IpRouteStatusMsg    : Added
IpRouteStatusReason :
```

- For API details, see ListIpRoutes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSLDAPSSetting`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSLDAPSSetting`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the status of LDAP security for the specified directory.

```
Get-DSLDAPSSetting -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
LastUpdatedDateTime  LDAPSStatus LDAPSStatusReason
-------------------  ----------- -----------------
```

```
4/15/2020 6:51:03 PM Enabled     LDAPS is enabled successfully.
```

- For API details, see DescribeLDAPSSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSLogSubscriptionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSLogSubscriptionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets the log subscriptions information of specified directory-id

```
Get-DSLogSubscriptionList -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
DirectoryId  LogGroupName
 SubscriptionCreatedDateTime
-----------  ------------
 ---------------------------
d-123456ijkl /aws/directoryservice/d-123456ijkl-lan2.example.com 12/14/2019 9:05:23
 AM
```

- For API details, see ListLogSubscriptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets all the Tags of specified Directory.

```
Get-DSResourceTag -ResourceId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
Key   Value
---   -----
myTag myTagValue
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSSchemaExtension`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSSchemaExtension`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all schema extensions applied to a Microsoft AD Directory.

```
Get-DSSchemaExtension -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
Description                 : ManagedADSchemaExtension
DirectoryId                 : d-123456ijkl
EndDateTime                 : 4/12/2020 10:30:49 AM
SchemaExtensionId           : e-9067306643
SchemaExtensionStatus       : Completed
SchemaExtensionStatusReason : Schema updates are complete.
StartDateTime               : 4/12/2020 10:28:42 AM
```

- For API details, see ListSchemaExtensions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSSharedDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSSharedDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the shared directories of your AWS Account

```
Get-DSSharedDirectory -OwnerDirectoryId d-123456ijkl -SharedDirectoryId d-9067012345
```

Output:

```
CreatedDateTime     : 12/30/2019 4:34:37 AM
LastUpdatedDateTime : 12/30/2019 4:35:22 AM
OwnerAccountId      : 123456781234
OwnerDirectoryId    : d-123456ijkl
```

```
SharedAccountId     : 123456784321
SharedDirectoryId   : d-9067012345
ShareMethod         : HANDSHAKE
ShareNotes          : This is a test Sharing
ShareStatus         : Shared
```

- For API details, see DescribeSharedDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSSnapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets information about the specified directory snapshots that belong to this account.

```
Get-DSSnapshot -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
DirectoryId : d-123456ijkl
Name        :
SnapshotId  : s-9064bd1234
StartTime   : 12/13/2019 6:33:01 PM
Status      : Completed
Type        : Auto

DirectoryId : d-123456ijkl
Name        :
SnapshotId  : s-9064bb4321
StartTime   : 12/9/2019 9:48:11 PM
Status      : Completed
Type        : Auto
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSSnapshotLimit`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSSnapshotLimit`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets the manual snapshot limits for a specified directory.

```
Get-DSSnapshotLimit -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

Output:

```
ManualSnapshotsCurrentCount ManualSnapshotsLimit ManualSnapshotsLimitReached
--------------------------- -------------------- ---------------------------
0                           5                    False
```

- For API details, see GetSnapshotLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DSTrust`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DSTrust`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command gets the information of trust relationships created for specified directory-id.

```
Get-DSTrust -DirectoryId d-123456abcd
```

Output:

```
CreatedDateTime          : 7/5/2019 4:55:42 AM
DirectoryId              : d-123456abcd
LastUpdatedDateTime      : 7/5/2019 4:56:04 AM
RemoteDomainName         : contoso.com
SelectiveAuth            : Disabled
StateLastUpdatedDateTime : 7/5/2019 4:56:04 AM
TrustDirection           : One-Way: Incoming
TrustId                  : t-9067157123
TrustState               : Created
TrustStateReason         :
TrustType                : Forest
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrusts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-DSAlias

The following code example shows how to use New-DSAlias.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command creates an alias for a directory and assigns the alias to the specified directory-id.

```
New-DSAlias -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -Alias MyOrgName
```

Output:

```
Alias     DirectoryId
-----     -----------
myorgname d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-DSComputer

The following code example shows how to use New-DSComputer.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new Active Directory computer object.

```
New-DSComputer -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -ComputerName ADMemberServer -Password
 $Password
```

Output:

```
ComputerAttributes                  ComputerId
 ComputerName
------------------                  ----------
 ------------
{WindowsSamName, DistinguishedName} S-1-5-21-1191241402-978882507-2717148213-1662
 ADMemberServer
```

- For API details, see CreateComputer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-DSConditionalForwarder

The following code example shows how to use New-DSConditionalForwarder.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a Conditional forwarder in specified AWS Directory-id.

```
New-DSConditionalForwarder -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -DnsIpAddr
 172.31.36.96,172.31.10.56 -RemoteDomainName contoso.com
```

- For API details, see CreateConditionalForwarder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-DSDirectory

The following code example shows how to use New-DSDirectory.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example create a new Simple AD directory.

```
New-DSDirectory -Name corp.example.com -Password $Password -Size Small -
VpcSettings_VpcId vpc-123459d -VpcSettings_SubnetIds subnet-1234kkaa,subnet-5678ffbb
```

- For API details, see CreateDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-DSLogSubscription

The following code example shows how to use New-DSLogSubscription.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a subscription to forward real-time Directory Service domain controller security logs to the specified Amazon CloudWatch log group in your AWS account.

```
New-DSLogSubscription -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -LogGroupName /aws/directoryservice/
d-123456ijkl-lan2.example.com
```

- For API details, see CreateLogSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-DSMicrosoftAD`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DSMicrosoftAD`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new Microsoft AD Directory in AWS Cloud.

```
New-DSMicrosoftAD -Name corp.example.com -Password $Password -edition Standard -
VpcSettings_VpcId vpc-123459d -VpcSettings_SubnetIds subnet-1234kkaa,subnet-5678ffbb
```

- For API details, see CreateMicrosoftAD in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-DSSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DSSnapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a directory snapshot

```
New-DSSnapshot -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see CreateSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-DSTrust`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DSTrust`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates Two-Way Forestwide trust between your AWS Managed Microsoft AD directory, and existing on-premises Microsoft Active Directory.

```
New-DSTrust -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -RemoteDomainName contoso.com -TrustDirection
 Two-Way -TrustType Forest -TrustPassword $Password -ConditionalForwarderIpAddr
 172.31.36.96
```

Output:

```
t-9067157123
```

- For API details, see CreateTrust in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-DSCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-DSCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a certificate for secured LDAP connection.

```
$Certificate = Get-Content contoso.cer -Raw
Register-DSCertificate -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -CertificateData $Certificate
```

Output:

```
c-906731e350
```

- For API details, see RegisterCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-DSEventTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-DSEventTopic`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associate a directory as a publisher with an SNS topic.

```
Register-DSEventTopic -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -TopicName snstopicname
```

- For API details, see RegisterEventTopic in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSConditionalForwarder`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSConditionalForwarder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the conditional forwarder that has been set up for your AWS Direcotry.

```
Remove-DSConditionalForwarder -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -RemoteDomainName
 contoso.com
```

- For API details, see DeleteConditionalForwarder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes an AWS Directory service directory (Simple AD/Microsoft AD/AD Connector)

```
Remove-DSDirectory -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see DeleteDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSIpRoute`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSIpRoute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the specified IP from Configured IP routes of Directory-id.

```
Remove-DSIpRoute -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -CidrIp 203.0.113.5/32
```

- For API details, see RemoveIpRoutes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSLogSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSLogSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the Log Subscription of specified Directory-id

```
Remove-DSLogSubscription -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl
```

- For API details, see DeleteLogSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the Resource Tag assigned to the specified Directory-id

```
Remove-DSResourceTag -ResourceId d-123456ijkl -TagKey myTag
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSSnapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the manually created snapshot.

```
Remove-DSSnapshot -SnapshotId s-9068b488kc
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DSTrust`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DSTrust`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the exsisting trust relationhip between your AWS Managed AD Directory and an external domain.

```
Get-DSTrust -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -Select Trusts.TrustId | Remove-DSTrust
```

Output:

```
t-9067157123
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrust in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Reset-DSUserPassword`

The following code example shows how to use `Reset-DSUserPassword`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the password of Active Direcotry user named ADUser in AWS Managed microsoft AD or Simple AD Directory

```
Reset-DSUserPassword -UserName ADuser -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -NewPassword
 $Password
```

- For API details, see ResetUserPassword in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Restore-DSFromSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Restore-DSFromSnapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example restores a directory using an exsisting directory snapshot.

```
Restore-DSFromSnapshot -SnapshotId s-9068b488kc
```

- For API details, see RestoreFromSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-DSDomainControllerCount`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-DSDomainControllerCount`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the number of domain controller to 3 for specified directory-id.

```
Set-DSDomainControllerCount -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -DesiredNumber 3
```

- For API details, see UpdateNumberOfDomainControllers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-DSSchemaExtension`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-DSSchemaExtension`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Example Applies a schema extension to a Microsoft AD directory.

```
$ldif = Get-Content D:\Users\Username\Downloads\ExtendedSchema.ldf -Raw
Start-DSSchemaExtension -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -
CreateSnapshotBeforeSchemaExtension $true -Description ManagedADSchemaExtension -
LdifContent $ldif
```

Output:

```
e-9067306643
```

- For API details, see StartSchemaExtension in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-DSSchemaExtension`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-DSSchemaExtension`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels an in-progress schema extension to a Microsoft AD directory.

```
Stop-DSSchemaExtension -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -SchemaExtensionId e-9067306643
```

- For API details, see CancelSchemaExtension in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-DSCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-DSCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes from the system the certificate that was registered for a secured LDAP connection..

```
Unregister-DSCertificate -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -CertificateId c-906731e34f
```

- For API details, see DeregisterCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-DSEventTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-DSEventTopic`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specefied directory as a publisher to the specified SNS topic.

```
Unregister-DSEventTopic -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -TopicName snstopicname
```

- For API details, see DeregisterEventTopic in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-DSConditionalForwarder`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-DSConditionalForwarder`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates a conditional forwarder that has been set up for your AWS directory.

```
Update-DSConditionalForwarder -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -DnsIpAddr
 172.31.36.96,172.31.16.108 -RemoteDomainName contoso.com
```

- For API details, see UpdateConditionalForwarder in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-DSRadius`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-DSRadius`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates RADIUS server information for an AD Connector or Microsoft AD directory.

```
Update-DSRadius -DirectoryId d-123456ijkl -RadiusSettings_RadiusRetry 3
```

- For API details, see UpdateRadius in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-DSTrust`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-DSTrust`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the SelectiveAuth parameter of specified trust-id from Disabled to Enabled.

```
Update-DSTrust -TrustId t-9067157123 -SelectiveAuth Enabled
```

Output:

```
RequestId                            TrustId
---------                            -------
138864a7-c9a8-4ad1-a828-eae479e85b45 t-9067157123
```

- For API details, see UpdateTrust in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS DMS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS DMS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`New-DMSReplicationTask`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DMSReplicationTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new AWS Database Migration Service replication task that uses CdcStartTime instead of CdcStartPosition. The MigrationType is set to "full-load-and-cdc", meaning the target table must be empty. The new task is tagged with a tag that has a key of Stage and a key value of Test. For more information about the values used by this cmdlet, see Creating a Task (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/dms/latest/userguide/CHAP_Tasks.Creating.html) in the AWS Database Migration Service User Guide.

```
New-DMSReplicationTask -ReplicationInstanceArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:rep:EXAMPLE66XFJUWATDJGBEXAMPLE"`
  -CdcStartTime "2019-08-08T12:12:12"`
  -CdcStopPosition "server_time:2019-08-09T12:12:12"`
  -MigrationType "full-load-and-cdc"`
  -ReplicationTaskIdentifier "task1"`
  -ReplicationTaskSetting ""`
  -SourceEndpointArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EXAMPLEW5UANC7Y3P4EEXAMPLE"`
  -TableMapping "file:////home/testuser/table-mappings.json"`
  -Tag @{"Key"="Stage";"Value"="Test"}`
  -TargetEndpointArn "arn:aws:dms:us-
east-1:123456789012:endpoint:EXAMPLEJZASXWHTWCLNEXAMPLE"
```

- For API details, see CreateReplicationTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

DynamoDB examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with DynamoDB.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-DDBIndexSchema`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-DDBIndexSchema`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates an empty TableSchema object and adds a new local secondary index definition to it before writing the TableSchema object to the pipeline.

```
$schema | Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" -RangeKeyName
 "LastPostDateTime" -RangeKeyDataType "S" -ProjectionType "keys_only"
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
```

Output:

```
AttributeSchema                              KeySchema
    LocalSecondaryIndexSchema
---------------                              ---------
    -------------------------
{LastPostDateTime}                           {}
    {LastPostIndex}
```

Example 2: Adds a new local secondary index definition to the supplied TableSchema object before writing the TableSchema object back to the pipeline. The TableSchema object can also be supplied using the -Schema parameter.

```
New-DDBTableSchema | Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" -RangeKeyName
 "LastPostDateTime" -RangeKeyDataType "S" -ProjectionType "keys_only"
```

Output:

```
AttributeSchema                              KeySchema
    LocalSecondaryIndexSchema
---------------                              ---------
    -------------------------
{LastPostDateTime}                           {}
    {LastPostIndex}
```

- For API details, see Add-DDBIndexSchema in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-DDBKeySchema`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-DDBKeySchema`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates an empty TableSchema object and adds key and attribute definition entries to it using the specified key data before writing the TableSchema object to the pipeline. The key type is declared to be 'HASH' by default; use the -KeyType paameter with a value of 'RANGE' to declare a range key.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
```

Output:

```
AttributeSchema                              KeySchema
    LocalSecondaryIndexSchema
---------------                              ---------
    -------------------------
{ForumName}                                  {ForumName}
    {}
```

Example 2: Adds new key and attribute definition entries to the supplied TableSchema object before writing the TableSchema object to the pipeline. The key type is declared to

be 'HASH' by default; use the -KeyType paameter with a value of 'RANGE' to declare a range key. The TableSchema object can also be supplied using the -Schema parameter.

```
New-DDBTableSchema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
```

Output:

```
AttributeSchema                              KeySchema
    LocalSecondaryIndexSchema
---------------                              ---------
    -------------------------
{ForumName}                                  {ForumName}
    {}
```

- For API details, see Add-DDBKeySchema in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`ConvertFrom-DDBItem`

The following code example shows how to use `ConvertFrom-DDBItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: ConvertFrom-DDBItem is used to convert the result of Get-DDBItem from a hashtable of DynamoDB AttributeValues to a hashtable of common types like string and double.

```
@{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist    = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

Get-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
```

```
SongTitle                       Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                      Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see ConvertFrom-DDBItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`ConvertTo-DDBItem`

The following code example shows how to use `ConvertTo-DDBItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: An example for converting a hashtable into a dictionary of DynamoDB attribute values.

```
@{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist    = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

Key       Value
---       -----
SongTitle Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
Artist    Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
```

Example 2: An example for converting a hashtable into a dictionary of DynamoDB attribute values.

```
@{
    MyMap        = @{
        MyString = 'my string'
    }
    MyStringSet  = [System.Collections.Generic.HashSet[String]]@('my', 'string')
    MyNumericSet = [System.Collections.Generic.HashSet[Int]]@(1, 2, 3)
    MyBinarySet  = [System.Collections.Generic.HashSet[System.IO.MemoryStream]]@(
        ([IO.MemoryStream]::new([Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetBytes('my'))),
        ([IO.MemoryStream]::new([Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetBytes('string')))
    )
    MyList1      = @('my', 'string')
    MyList2      = [System.Collections.Generic.List[Int]]@(1, 2)
    MyList3      = [System.Collections.ArrayList]@('one', 2, $true)
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Key          Value
---          -----
MyStringSet  Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
MyList1      Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
MyNumericSet Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
MyList2      Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
MyBinarySet  Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
MyMap        Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
MyList3      Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue
```

- For API details, see ConvertTo-DDBItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DDBBatchItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DDBBatchItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Gets the item with the SongTitle "Somewhere Down The Road" from the DynamoDB tables 'Music' and 'Songs'.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$keysAndAttributes = New-Object Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes
$list = New-Object
 'System.Collections.Generic.List[System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,
 Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue]]'
$list.Add($key)
$keysAndAttributes.Keys = $list

$requestItem = @{
    'Music' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes]$keysAndAttributes
    'Songs' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.KeysAndAttributes]$keysAndAttributes
}

$batchItems = Get-DDBBatchItem -RequestItem $requestItem
$batchItems.GetEnumerator() | ForEach-Object {$PSItem.Value} | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Artist                         No One You Know
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
CriticRating                   10
Genre                          Country
Price                          1.94
Artist                         No One You Know
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
CriticRating                   10
Genre                          Country
Price                          1.94
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DDBItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DDBItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the DynamoDB item with the partition key SongTitle and the sort key Artist.

```
$key = @{
  SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
  Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

Get-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
Price                          1.94
```

```
Artist                          No One You Know
CriticRating                    9
AlbumTitle                      Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DDBTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DDBTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified table.

```
Get-DDBTable -TableName "myTable"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-DDBTableList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-DDBTableList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of all tables, automatically iterating until the service indicates no further tables exist.

```
Get-DDBTableList
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Invoke-DDBQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke-DDBQuery`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Invokes a query that returns DynamoDB items with the specified SongTitle and Artist.

```
$invokeDDBQuery = @{
```

```
    TableName = 'Music'
    KeyConditionExpression = ' SongTitle = :SongTitle and Artist = :Artist'
    ExpressionAttributeValues = @{
        ':SongTitle' = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
        ':Artist' = 'No One You Know'
    } | ConvertTo-DDBItem
}
Invoke-DDBQuery @invokeDDBQuery | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                     Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Invoke-DDBScan`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke-DDBScan`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all items in the Music table.

```
Invoke-DDBScan -TableName 'Music' | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Country
Artist                         No One You Know
Price                          1.94
CriticRating                   9
SongTitle                      Somewhere Down The Road
```

```
AlbumTitle                      Somewhat Famous
Genre                           Country
Artist                          No One You Know
Price                           1.98
CriticRating                    8.4
SongTitle                       My Dog Spot
AlbumTitle                      Hey Now
```

Example 2: Returns items in the Music table with a CriticRating greater than or equal to nine.

```
$scanFilter = @{
        CriticRating = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.Condition]@{
            AttributeValueList = @(@{N = '9'})
            ComparisonOperator = 'GE'
        }
    }
    Invoke-DDBScan -TableName 'Music' -ScanFilter $scanFilter | ConvertFrom-DDBItem
```

Output:

```
Name                            Value
----                            -----
Genre                           Country
Artist                          No One You Know
Price                           1.94
CriticRating                    9
SongTitle                       Somewhere Down The Road
AlbumTitle                      Somewhat Famous
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-DDBTable`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DDBTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range). The schema used to construct the table can be piped into each cmdlet as shown or specified using the -Schema parameter.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyType RANGE -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {}
```

Example 2: This example creates a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range). A local secondary index is also defined. The key of the local secondary index will be set automatically from the primary hash key on the table (ForumName). The schema used to construct the table can be piped into each cmdlet as shown or specified using the -Schema parameter.

```
$schema = New-DDBTableSchema
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyDataType "S"
$schema | Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" -RangeKeyName
 "LastPostDateTime" -RangeKeyDataType "S" -ProjectionType "keys_only"
$schema | New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, LastPostDateTime, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
```

```
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {LastPostIndex}
```

Example 3: This example shows how to use a single pipeline to create a table named Thread that has a primary key consisting of 'ForumName' (key type hash) and 'Subject' (key type range) and a local secondary index. The Add-DDBKeySchema and Add-DDBIndexSchema create a new TableSchema object for you if one is not supplied from the pipeline or the -Schema parameter.

```
New-DDBTableSchema |
  Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "ForumName" -KeyDataType "S" |
  Add-DDBKeySchema -KeyName "Subject" -KeyDataType "S" |
  Add-DDBIndexSchema -IndexName "LastPostIndex" `
                     -RangeKeyName "LastPostDateTime" `
                     -RangeKeyDataType "S" `
                     -ProjectionType "keys_only" |
  New-DDBTable -TableName "Thread" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

Output:

```
AttributeDefinitions   : {ForumName, LastPostDateTime, Subject}
TableName              : Thread
KeySchema              : {ForumName, Subject}
TableStatus            : CREATING
CreationDateTime       : 10/28/2013 4:39:49 PM
ProvisionedThroughput  : Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.ProvisionedThroughputDescription
TableSizeBytes         : 0
ItemCount              : 0
LocalSecondaryIndexes  : {LastPostIndex}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-DDBTableSchema`

The following code example shows how to use `New-DDBTableSchema`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates an empty TableSchema object ready to accept key and index definitions for use in creating a new Amazon DynamoDB table. The returned object can be piped into the Add-DDBKeySchema, Add-DDBIndexSchema and New-DDBTable cmdlets or passed to them using the -Schema parameter on each cmdlet.

```
New-DDBTableSchema
```

Output:

```
AttributeSchema                              KeySchema
    LocalSecondaryIndexSchema
---------------                              ---------
    -------------------------
{}                                           {}
    {}
```

- For API details, see New-DDBTableSchema in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DDBItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DDBItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Removes the DynamoDB item that matches the provided key.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
Remove-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Key $key -Confirm:$false
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-DDBTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-DDBTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-DDBTable -TableName "myTable"
```

Example 2: Deletes the specified table. You are not prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds.

```
Remove-DDBTable -TableName "myTable" -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-DDBBatchItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-DDBBatchItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new item, or replaces an existing item with a new item in the DynamoDB tables Music and Songs.

```
$item = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
        AlbumTitle = 'Somewhat Famous'
        Price = 1.94
        Genre = 'Country'
        CriticRating = 10.0
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$writeRequest = New-Object Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest
$writeRequest.PutRequest = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.PutRequest]$item
```

Output:

```
$requestItem = @{
    'Music' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest]($writeRequest)
    'Songs' = [Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.WriteRequest]($writeRequest)
}

Set-DDBBatchItem -RequestItem $requestItem
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-DDBItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-DDBItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new item, or replaces an existing item with a new item.

```
$item = @{
  SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
  Artist = 'No One You Know'
        AlbumTitle = 'Somewhat Famous'
        Price = 1.94
        Genre = 'Country'
        CriticRating = 9.0
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem
Set-DDBItem -TableName 'Music' -Item $item
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-DDBItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-DDBItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Sets the genre attribute to 'Rap' on the DynamoDB item with the partition key SongTitle and the sort key Artist.

```
$key = @{
    SongTitle = 'Somewhere Down The Road'
    Artist = 'No One You Know'
} | ConvertTo-DDBItem

$updateDdbItem = @{
    TableName = 'Music'
    Key = $key
    UpdateExpression = 'set Genre = :val1'
    ExpressionAttributeValue = (@{
        ':val1' = ([Amazon.DynamoDBv2.Model.AttributeValue]'Rap')
    })
}
```

```
Update-DDBItem @updateDdbItem
```

Output:

```
Name                           Value
----                           -----
Genre                          Rap
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-DDBTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-DDBTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the provisioned throughput for the given table.

```
Update-DDBTable -TableName "myTable" -ReadCapacity 10 -WriteCapacity 5
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon EC2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon EC2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-EC2CapacityReservation`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-EC2CapacityReservation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new Capacity Reservation with the specified attributes

```
Add-EC2CapacityReservation -InstanceType m4.xlarge -InstanceCount 2 -
AvailabilityZone eu-west-1b -EbsOptimized True -InstancePlatform Windows
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone       : eu-west-1b
AvailableInstanceCount : 2
CapacityReservationId  : cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
CreateDate             : 3/28/2019 9:29:41 AM
EbsOptimized           : True
EndDate                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
EndDateType            : unlimited
EphemeralStorage       : False
InstanceMatchCriteria  : open
InstancePlatform       : Windows
InstanceType           : m4.xlarge
State                  : active
Tags                   : {}
Tenancy                : default
TotalInstanceCount     : 2
```

- For API details, see CreateCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-EC2InternetGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-EC2InternetGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified Internet gateway to the specified VPC.

```
Add-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example creates a VPC and an Internet gateway, and then attaches the Internet gateway to the VPC.

```
$vpc = New-EC2Vpc -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/16
New-EC2InternetGateway | Add-EC2InternetGateway -VpcId $vpc.VpcId
```

- For API details, see AttachInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-EC2NetworkInterface`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-EC2NetworkInterface`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified network interface to the specified instance.

```
Add-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -
DeviceIndex 1
```

Output:

```
eni-attach-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see AttachNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-EC2Volume`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-EC2Volume`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified volume to the specified instance and exposes it with the specified device name.

```
Add-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -Device /dev/sdh
```

Output:

```
AttachTime          : 12/22/2015 1:53:58 AM
DeleteOnTermination : False
Device              : /dev/sdh
InstanceId          : i-1a2b3c4d
State               : attaching
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see AttachVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-EC2VpnGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-EC2VpnGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the specified virtual private gateway to the specified VPC.

```
Add-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
State        VpcId
-----        -----
attaching    vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AttachVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Approve-EC2VpcPeeringConnection`

The following code example shows how to use `Approve-EC2VpcPeeringConnection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example approves the requested VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be

```
Approve-EC2VpcPeeringConnection -VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be
```

Output:

```
AccepterVpcInfo        : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionVpcInfo
ExpirationTime         : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
RequesterVpcInfo       : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionVpcInfo
Status                 : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcPeeringConnectionStateReason
Tags                   : {}
VpcPeeringConnectionId : pcx-1dfad234b56ff78be
```

- For API details, see AcceptVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Confirm-EC2ProductInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Confirm-EC2ProductInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example determines whether the specified product code is associated with the specified instance.

```
Confirm-EC2ProductInstance -ProductCode 774F4FF8 -InstanceId i-12345678
```

- For API details, see ConfirmProductInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Copy-EC2Image`

The following code example shows how to use `Copy-EC2Image`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example copies the specified AMI in the 'EU (Ireland)' region to the 'US West (Oregon)' region. If -Region is not specified, the current default region is used as the destination region.

```
Copy-EC2Image -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceImageId ami-12345678 -Region us-west-2
 -Name "Copy of ami-12345678"
```

Output:

```
ami-87654321
```

- For API details, see CopyImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Copy-EC2Snapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Copy-EC2Snapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example copies the specified snapshot from the EU (Ireland) region to the US West (Oregon) region.

```
Copy-EC2Snapshot -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceSnapshotId snap-12345678 -Region us-
west-2
```

Example 2: If you set a default region and omit the Region parameter, the default destination region is the default region.

```
Set-DefaultAWSRegion us-west-2
Copy-EC2Snapshot -SourceRegion eu-west-1 -SourceSnapshotId snap-12345678
```

- For API details, see CopySnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Deny-EC2VpcPeeringConnection`

The following code example shows how to use `Deny-EC2VpcPeeringConnection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The above example denies the request for VpcPeering request id pcx-01a2b3ce45fe67eb8

```
Deny-EC2VpcPeeringConnection -VpcPeeringConnectionId pcx-01a2b3ce45fe67eb8
```

- For API details, see RejectVpcPeeringConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables the VGW from automatically propagating routes to the specified routing table.

```
Disable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation -RouteTableId rtb-12345678 -GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DisableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-EC2VpcClassicLink`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-EC2VpcClassicLink`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables EC2VpcClassicLink for the vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9. It returns either True or False

```
Disable-EC2VpcClassicLink -VpcId vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables ClassicLink DNS support for the vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d

```
Disable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d
```

- For API details, see DisableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-EC2InternetGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-EC2InternetGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified Internet gateway from the specified VPC.

```
Dismount-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see DetachInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-EC2NetworkInterface`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-EC2NetworkInterface`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified attachment between a network interface and an instance.

```
Dismount-EC2NetworkInterface -AttachmentId eni-attach-1a2b3c4d -Force
```

- For API details, see DetachNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-EC2Volume`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-EC2Volume`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified volume.

```
Dismount-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
AttachTime          : 12/22/2015 1:53:58 AM
DeleteOnTermination : False
Device              : /dev/sdh
InstanceId          : i-1a2b3c4d
State               : detaching
```

```
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
```

Example 2: You can also specify the instance ID and device name to ensure that you are detaching the correct volume.

```
Dismount-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678 -InstanceId i-1a2b3c4d -Device /dev/sdh
```

- For API details, see DetachVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-EC2VpnGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-EC2VpnGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified virtual private gateway from the specified VPC.

```
Dismount-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see DetachVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2CapacityReservation`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2CapacityReservation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba by changing the instane count to 1

```
Edit-EC2CapacityReservation -CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba -
InstanceCount 1
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see ModifyCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2Host`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2Host`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the AutoPlacement settings to off for the dedicated host h-01e23f4cd567890f3

```
Edit-EC2Host -HostId h-03e09f8cd681609f3 -AutoPlacement off
```

Output:

```
Successful            Unsuccessful
----------            ------------
{h-01e23f4cd567890f3} {}
```

- For API details, see ModifyHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2IdFormat`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2IdFormat`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables the longer ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Edit-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance -UseLongId $true
```

Example 2: This example disables the longer ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Edit-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance -UseLongId $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2ImageAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2ImageAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the description for the specified AMI.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Description "New description"
```

Example 2: This example makes the AMI public (for example, so any AWS account can use it).

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType add -UserGroup all
```

Example 3: This example makes the AMI private (for example, so that only you as the owner can use it).

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType remove -UserGroup all
```

Example 4: This example grants launch permission to the specified AWS account.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType add -UserId 111122223333
```

Example 5: This example removes launch permission from the specified AWS account.

```
Edit-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission -
OperationType remove -UserId 111122223333
```

- For API details, see ModifyImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the instance type of the specified instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -InstanceType m3.medium
```

Example 2: This example enables enhanced networking for the specified instance, by specifying "simple" as the value of the single root I/O virtualization (SR-IOV) network support parameter, -SriovNetSupport..

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -SriovNetSupport "simple"
```

Example 3: This example modifies the security groups for the specified instance. The instance must be in a VPC. You must specify the ID of each security group, not the name.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Group @( "sg-12345678",
 "sg-45678901" )
```

Example 4: This example enables EBS I/O optimization for the specified instance. This feature isn't available with all instance types. Additional usage charges apply when using an EBS-optimized instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -EbsOptimized $true
```

Example 5: This example enables source/destination checking for the specified instance. For a NAT instance to perform NAT, the value must be 'false'.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -SourceDestCheck $true
```

Example 6: This example disables termination for the specified instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -DisableApiTermination $true
```

Example 7: This example changes the specified instance so that it terminates when shutdown is initiated from the instance.

```
Edit-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
 terminate
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2InstanceCreditSpecification`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2InstanceCreditSpecification`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This enables T2 unlimited credits for instance i-01234567890abcdef.

```
$Credit = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceCreditSpecificationRequest
$Credit.InstanceId = "i-01234567890abcdef"
$Credit.CpuCredits = "unlimited"
Edit-EC2InstanceCreditSpecification -InstanceCreditSpecification $Credit
```

- For API details, see ModifyInstanceCreditSpecification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the specified network interface so that the specified attachment is deleted on termination.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
Attachment_AttachmentId eni-attach-1a2b3c4d -Attachment_DeleteOnTermination $true
```

Example 2: This example modifies the description of the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -Description "my
 description"
```

Example 3: This example modifies the security group for the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -Groups
 sg-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 4: This example disables source/destination checking for the specified network interface.

```
Edit-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -SourceDestCheck
 $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2ReservedInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2ReservedInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the Availability Zone, instance count, and platform for the specified Reserved instances.

```
$config = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.ReservedInstancesConfiguration
$config.AvailabilityZone = "us-west-2a"
$config.InstanceCount = 1
$config.Platform = "EC2-VPC"

Edit-EC2ReservedInstance `
-ReservedInstancesId @("FE32132D-70D5-4795-B400-AE435EXAMPLE", "0CC556F3-7AB8-4C00-
B0E5-98666EXAMPLE") `
-TargetConfiguration $config
```

- For API details, see ModifyReservedInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2SnapshotAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2SnapshotAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example makes the specified snapshot public by setting its CreateVolumePermission attribute.

```
Edit-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission -OperationType Add -GroupName all
```

- For API details, see ModifySnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2SpotFleetRequest`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2SpotFleetRequest`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the target capacity of the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Edit-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TargetCapacity 10
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see ModifySpotFleetRequest in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables public IP addressing for the specified subnet.

```
Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -MapPublicIpOnLaunch $true
```

Example 2: This example disables public IP addressing for the specified subnet.

```
Edit-EC2SubnetAttribute -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -MapPublicIpOnLaunch $false
```

- For API details, see ModifySubnetAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2VolumeAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2VolumeAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the specified attribute of the specified volume. I/O operations for the volume are automatically resumed after being suspended due to potentially inconsistent data.

```
Edit-EC2VolumeAttribute -VolumeId vol-12345678 -AutoEnableIO $true
```

- For API details, see ModifyVolumeAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-EC2VpcAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EC2VpcAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables support for DNS hostnames for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsHostnames $true
```

Example 2: This example disables support for DNS hostnames for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsHostnames $false
```

Example 3: This example enables support for DNS resolution for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsSupport $true
```

Example 4: This example disables support for DNS resolution for the specified VPC.

```
Edit-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -EnableDnsSupport $false
```

- For API details, see ModifyVpcAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables the specified VGW to propagate routes automatically to the specified routing table.

```
Enable-EC2VgwRoutePropagation -RouteTableId rtb-12345678 -GatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see EnableVgwRoutePropagation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-EC2VolumeIO`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-EC2VolumeIO`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables I/O operations for the specified volume, if I/O operations were disabled.

```
Enable-EC2VolumeIO -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see EnableVolumeIo in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-EC2VpcClassicLink`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-EC2VpcClassicLink`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables VPC vpc-0123456b789b0d12f for ClassicLink

```
Enable-EC2VpcClassicLink -VpcId vpc-0123456b789b0d12f
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d to support DNS hostname resolution for ClassicLink

```
Enable-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d -Region eu-west-1
```

- For API details, see EnableVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2AccountAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2AccountAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes whether you can launch instances into EC2-Classic and EC2-VPC in the region, or only into EC2-VPC.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName supported-platforms).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
EC2
VPC
```

Example 2: This example describes your default VPC, or is 'none' if you do not have a default VPC in the region.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName default-vpc).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
vpc-12345678
```

Example 3: This example describes the maximum number of On-Demand instances that you can run.

```
(Get-EC2AccountAttribute -AttributeName max-instances).AttributeValues
```

Output:

```
AttributeValue
--------------
20
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Address`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Address`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Get-EC2Address -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            : eipalloc-12345678
AssociationId           : eipassoc-12345678
Domain                  : vpc
InstanceId              : i-87654321
NetworkInterfaceId      : eni-12345678
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId : 12345678
PrivateIpAddress        : 10.0.2.172
PublicIp                : 198.51.100.2
```

Example 2: This example describes your Elastic IP addresses for instances in a VPC. This syntax requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{ Name="domain";Values="vpc" }
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Get-EC2Address -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            :
AssociationId           :
Domain                  : standard
InstanceId              : i-12345678
NetworkInterfaceId      :
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId :
PrivateIpAddress        :
PublicIp                : 203.0.113.17
```

Example 4: This example describes your Elastic IP addresses for instances in EC2-Classic. This syntax requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{ Name="domain";Values="standard" }
```

Example 5: This example describes all your Elastic IP addresses.

```
Get-EC2Address
```

Example 6: This example returns the public and private IP for the instance id provided in filter

```
Get-EC2Address -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="instance-
id";Values="i-0c12d3f4f567ffb89"} | Select-Object PrivateIpAddress, PublicIp
```

Output:

```
PrivateIpAddress PublicIp
```

```
---------------- --------
10.0.0.99        63.36.5.227
```

Example 7: This example retrieves all the Elastic IPs with its allocation id, association id and instance ids

```
Get-EC2Address -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object InstanceId, AssociationId,
 AllocationId, PublicIp
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          AssociationId              AllocationId               PublicIp
----------          -------------              ------------               --------
                                               eipalloc-012e3b456789e1fad
 17.212.120.178
i-0c123dfd3415bac67 eipassoc-0e123456bb7890bdb eipalloc-01cd23ebf45f7890c
 17.212.124.77
                                               eipalloc-012345678eeabcfad
 17.212.225.7
i-0123d405c67e89a0c eipassoc-0c123b456783966ba eipalloc-0123cdd456a8f7892
 37.216.52.173
i-0f1bf2f34c5678d09 eipassoc-0e12934568a952d96 eipalloc-0e1c23e4d5e6789e4
 37.218.222.278
i-012e3cb4df567e8aa eipassoc-0d1b2fa4d67d03810 eipalloc-0123f456f78a01b58
 37.210.82.27
i-0123bcf4b567890e1 eipassoc-01d2345f678903fb1 eipalloc-0e1db23cfef5c45c7
 37.215.222.270
```

Example 8: This example fetches list of EC2 IP addresses matching tag key 'Category' with value 'Prod'

```
Get-EC2Address -Filter @{Name="tag:Category";Values="Prod"}
```

Output:

```
AllocationId            : eipalloc-0123f456f81a01b58
AssociationId           : eipassoc-0d1b23a456d103810
CustomerOwnedIp         :
CustomerOwnedIpv4Pool   :
Domain                  : vpc
InstanceId              : i-012e3cb4df567e1aa
```

```
NetworkBorderGroup      : eu-west-1
NetworkInterfaceId      : eni-0123f41d5a60d5f40
NetworkInterfaceOwnerId : 123456789012
PrivateIpAddress        : 192.168.1.84
PublicIp                : 34.250.81.29
PublicIpv4Pool          : amazon
Tags                    : {Category, Name}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2AvailabilityZone`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2AvailabilityZone`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the Availability Zones for the current region that are available to you.

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone
```

Output:

```
Messages    RegionName    State        ZoneName
--------    ----------    -----        --------
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2a
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2b
{}          us-west-2     available    us-west-2c
```

Example 2: This example describes any Availability Zones that are in an impaired state. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone -Filter @{ Name="state";Values="impaired" }
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = "impaired"
```

```
Get-EC2AvailabilityZone -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2BundleTask`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2BundleTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified bundle task.

```
Get-EC2BundleTask -BundleId bun-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the bundle tasks whose state is either 'complete' or 'failed'.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "complete", "failed" )

Get-EC2BundleTask -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see DescribeBundleTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2CapacityReservation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2CapacityReservation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes one or more of your Capacity Reservations for the region

```
Get-EC2CapacityReservation -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone       : eu-west-1b
```

```
AvailableInstanceCount : 2
CapacityReservationId  : cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
CreateDate             : 3/28/2019 9:29:41 AM
EbsOptimized           : True
EndDate                : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
EndDateType            : unlimited
EphemeralStorage       : False
InstanceMatchCriteria  : open
InstancePlatform       : Windows
InstanceType           : m4.xlarge
State                  : active
Tags                   : {}
Tenancy                : default
TotalInstanceCount     : 2
```

- For API details, see DescribeCapacityReservations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2ConsoleOutput`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2ConsoleOutput`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the console output for the specified Linux instance. The console output is encoded.

```
Get-EC2ConsoleOutput -InstanceId i-0e19abcd47c123456
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          Output
----------          ------
i-0e194d3c47c123637 WyAgICAwLjAwMDAwMF0gQ29tbW...bGU9dHR5UzAgc2Vs
```

Example 2: This example stores the encoded console output in a variable and then decodes it.

```
$Output_encoded = (Get-EC2ConsoleOutput -InstanceId i-0e19abcd47c123456).Output
[System.Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetString([System.Convert]::FromBase64String($Output_encoded))
```

- For API details, see GetConsoleOutput in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2CustomerGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2CustomerGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified customer gateway.

```
Get-EC2CustomerGateway -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
BgpAsn            : 65534
CustomerGatewayId : cgw-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress         : 203.0.113.12
State             : available
Tags              : {}
Type              : ipsec.1
```

Example 2: This example describes any customer gateway whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2CustomerGateway -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your customer gateways.

```
Get-EC2CustomerGateway
```

- For API details, see DescribeCustomerGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2DhcpOption`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2DhcpOption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists your DHCP options sets.

```
Get-EC2DhcpOption
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                   DhcpOptionsId    Tag
------------------                   -------------    ---
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}   dopt-1a2b3c4d    {}
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}   dopt-2a3b4c5d    {}
{domain-name-servers}                dopt-3a4b5c6d    {}
```

Example 2: This example gets configuration details for the specified DHCP options set.

```
(Get-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d).DhcpConfigurations
```

Output:

```
Key                    Values
---                    ------
domain-name            {abc.local}
domain-name-servers    {10.0.0.101, 10.0.0.102}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2FlowLog`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2FlowLog`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes one or more flow logs with log destination type 's3'

```
Get-EC2FlowLog -Filter @{Name="log-destination-type";Values="s3"}
```

Output:

```
CreationTime             : 2/25/2019 9:07:36 PM
DeliverLogsErrorMessage  :
DeliverLogsPermissionArn :
DeliverLogsStatus        : SUCCESS
FlowLogId                : fl-01b2e3d45f67f8901
FlowLogStatus            : ACTIVE
LogDestination           : arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket-dd-tata
LogDestinationType       : s3
LogGroupName             :
ResourceId               : eni-01d2dda3456b7e890
TrafficType              : ALL
```

- For API details, see DescribeFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Host`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Host`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the EC2 host details

```
Get-EC2Host
```

Output:

```
AllocationTime    : 3/23/2019 4:55:22 PM
AutoPlacement     : off
AvailabilityZone  : eu-west-1b
AvailableCapacity : Amazon.EC2.Model.AvailableCapacity
ClientToken       :
HostId            : h-01e23f4cd567890f1
HostProperties    : Amazon.EC2.Model.HostProperties
HostReservationId :
Instances         : {}
ReleaseTime       : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
State             : available
Tags              : {}
```

Example 2: This example queries the AvailableInstanceCapacity for the host h-01e23f4cd567899f1

```
Get-EC2Host -HostId h-01e23f4cd567899f1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 AvailableCapacity | Select-Object -expand AvailableInstanceCapacity
```

Output:

```
AvailableCapacity InstanceType TotalCapacity
----------------- ------------ -------------
11                m4.xlarge    11
```

- For API details, see DescribeHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2HostReservationOffering`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2HostReservationOffering`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the Dedicated Host reservations that are available to purchase for the given filter 'instance-family' where PaymentOption is 'NoUpfront'

```
Get-EC2HostReservationOffering -Filter @{Name="instance-family";Values="m4"} |
 Where-Object PaymentOption -eq NoUpfront
```

Output:

```
CurrencyCode   :
Duration       : 94608000
HourlyPrice    : 1.307
InstanceFamily : m4
OfferingId     : hro-0c1f234567890d9ab
PaymentOption  : NoUpfront
UpfrontPrice   : 0.000

CurrencyCode   :
Duration       : 31536000
HourlyPrice    : 1.830
InstanceFamily : m4
OfferingId     : hro-04ad12aaaf34b5a67
PaymentOption  : NoUpfront
UpfrontPrice   : 0.000
```

- For API details, see DescribeHostReservationOfferings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2HostReservationPurchasePreview`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2HostReservationPurchasePreview`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example previews a reservation purchase with configurations that match those of your Dedicated Host h-01e23f4cd567890f1

```
Get-EC2HostReservationPurchasePreview -OfferingId hro-0c1f23456789d0ab -HostIdSet
 h-01e23f4cd567890f1
```

Output:

```
CurrencyCode Purchase TotalHourlyPrice TotalUpfrontPrice
------------ -------- ---------------- -----------------
             {}       1.307            0.000
```

- For API details, see GetHostReservationPurchasePreview in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2IdFormat`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2IdFormat`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the ID format for the specified resource type.

```
Get-EC2IdFormat -Resource instance
```

Output:

```
Resource       UseLongIds
--------       ----------
```

```
instance       False
```

Example 2: This example describes the ID formats for all resource types that support longer IDs.

```
Get-EC2IdFormat
```

Output:

```
Resource       UseLongIds
--------       ----------
reservation    False
instance       False
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2IdentityIdFormat`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2IdentityIdFormat`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the ID format for the resouce 'image' for the role given

```
Get-EC2IdentityIdFormat -PrincipalArn arn:aws:iam::123456789511:role/JDBC -Resource
 image
```

Output:

```
Deadline             Resource UseLongIds
--------             -------- ----------
8/2/2018 11:30:00 PM image    True
```

- For API details, see DescribeIdentityIdFormat in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Image`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Image`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2Image -ImageId ami-12345678
```

Output:

```
Architecture        : x86_64
BlockDeviceMappings : {/dev/xvda}
CreationDate        : 2014-10-20T00:56:28.000Z
Description         : My image
Hypervisor          : xen
ImageId             : ami-12345678
ImageLocation       : 123456789012/my-image
ImageOwnerAlias     :
ImageType           : machine
KernelId            :
Name                : my-image
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Platform            :
ProductCodes        : {}
Public              : False
RamdiskId           :
RootDeviceName      : /dev/xvda
RootDeviceType      : ebs
SriovNetSupport     : simple
State               : available
StateReason         :
Tags                : {Name}
VirtualizationType  : hvm
```

Example 2: This example describes the AMIs that you own.

```
Get-EC2Image -owner self
```

Example 3: This example describes the public AMIs that run Microsoft Windows Server.

```
Get-EC2Image -Filter @{ Name="platform"; Values="windows" }
```

Example 4: This example describes all public AMIs in the 'us-west-2' region.

```
Get-EC2Image -Region us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2ImageAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2ImageAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the description for the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute description
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         : My image description
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     :
```

Example 2: This example gets the launch permissions for the specified AMI.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         :
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {all}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     :
```

Example 3: This example test whether enhanced networking is enabled.

```
Get-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Output:

```
BlockDeviceMappings : {}
Description         :
ImageId             : ami-12345678
KernelId            :
LaunchPermissions   : {}
ProductCodes        : {}
RamdiskId           :
SriovNetSupport     : simple
```

- For API details, see DescribeImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2ImportImageTask`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2ImportImageTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified image import task.

```
Get-EC2ImportImageTask -ImportTaskId import-ami-hgfedcba
```

Output:

```
Architecture    : x86_64
Description     : Windows Image 2
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         : ami-1a2b3c4d
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-hgfedcba
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {/dev/sda1}
Status          : completed
```

```
StatusMessage   :
```

Example 2: This example describes all your image import tasks.

```
Get-EC2ImportImageTask
```

Output:

```
Architecture    :
Description     : Windows Image 1
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         :
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-abcdefgh
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {}
Status          : deleted
StatusMessage   : User initiated task cancelation

Architecture    : x86_64
Description     : Windows Image 2
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         : ami-1a2b3c4d
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-hgfedcba
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        :
SnapshotDetails : {/dev/sda1}
Status          : completed
StatusMessage   :
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportImageTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified snapshot import task.

```
Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask -ImportTaskId import-snap-abcdefgh
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import 1     import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

Example 2: This example describes all your snapshot import tasks.

```
Get-EC2ImportSnapshotTask
```

Output:

```
Description             ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------       --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import 1     import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
Disk Image Import 2     import-snap-hgfedcba
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

- For API details, see DescribeImportSnapshotTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Instance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Instance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified instance.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678).Instances
```

Output:

```
AmiLaunchIndex        : 0
Architecture          : x86_64
BlockDeviceMappings   : {/dev/sda1}
ClientToken           : TleEy1448154045270
EbsOptimized          : False
Hypervisor            : xen
IamInstanceProfile    : Amazon.EC2.Model.IamInstanceProfile
ImageId               : ami-12345678
InstanceId            : i-12345678
InstanceLifecycle     :
InstanceType          : t2.micro
KernelId              :
KeyName               : my-key-pair
LaunchTime            : 12/4/2015 4:44:40 PM
Monitoring            : Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
NetworkInterfaces     : {ip-10-0-2-172.us-west-2.compute.internal}
Placement             : Amazon.EC2.Model.Placement
Platform              : Windows
PrivateDnsName        : ip-10-0-2-172.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress      : 10.0.2.172
ProductCodes          : {}
PublicDnsName         :
PublicIpAddress       :
RamdiskId             :
RootDeviceName        : /dev/sda1
RootDeviceType        : ebs
SecurityGroups        : {default}
SourceDestCheck       : True
SpotInstanceRequestId :
SriovNetSupport       :
State                 : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
StateReason           :
StateTransitionReason :
SubnetId              : subnet-12345678
Tags                  : {Name}
VirtualizationType    : hvm
VpcId                 : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your instances in the current region, grouped by reservation. To see the instance details expand the Instances collection within each reservation object.

```
Get-EC2Instance
```

Output:

```
GroupNames    : {}
Groups        : {}
Instances     : {}
OwnerId       : 123456789012
RequesterId   : 226008221399
ReservationId : r-c5df370c

GroupNames    : {}
Groups        : {}
Instances     : {}
OwnerId       : 123456789012
RequesterId   : 854251627541
ReservationId : r-63e65bab
...
```

Example 3: This example illustrates using a filter to query for EC2 instances in a specific subnet of a VPC.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter @{Name="vpc-id";Values="vpc-1a2bc34d"},@{Name="subnet-
id";Values="subnet-1a2b3c4d"}).Instances
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress PublicIpAddress
 SecurityGroups SubnetId        VpcId
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ---------------
 -------------- --------        -----
i-01af...82cf180e19 t2.medium    Windows  10.0.0.98                       ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0374...7e9d5b0c45 t2.xlarge    Windows  10.0.0.53                       ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 4: This example illustrates using a filter with multiple values to query for EC2 instances that are both running and stopped

```
$InstanceParams = @{
```

```
    Filter = @(
        @{'Name' = 'instance-state-name';'Values' = @("running","stopped")}
    )
}

(Get-EC2Instance @InstanceParams).Instances
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress PublicIpAddress
 SecurityGroups SubnetId        VpcId
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ---------------
 -------------- --------        -----
i-05a9...f6c5f46e18 t3.medium             10.0.1.7                        ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-02cf...945c4fdd07 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.8                        ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0ac0...c037f9f3a1 t3.xlarge    Windows  10.0.1.10                       ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-066b...57b7b08888 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.11                       ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0fee...82e83ccd72 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.5                        ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
i-0a68...274cc5043b t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.6                        ...
      subnet-1a2b3c4d vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 5: This example illustrates using a filter with multiple values to query for EC2 instances that are both running and stopped and using the Select-Object cmdlet for choosing specific values to output.

```
$InstanceParams = @{
    Filter = @(
        @{'Name' = 'instance-state-name';'Values' = @("running","stopped")}
    )
}

$SelectParams = @{
    Property = @(
        "InstanceID", "InstanceType", "Platform", "PrivateIpAddress",
        @{Name="Name";Expression={$_.Tags[$_.Tags.Key.IndexOf("Name")].Value}},
        @{Name="State";Expression={$_.State.Name}}
    )
```

```
}

$result = Get-EC2Instance @InstanceParams
$result.Instances | Select-Object @SelectParams | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          InstanceType Platform PrivateIpAddress Name         State
----------          ------------ -------- ---------------- ----         -----
i-05a9...f6c5f46e18 t3.medium             10.0.1.7         ec2-name-01  running
i-02cf...945c4fdd07 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.8         ec2-name-02  stopped
i-0ac0...c037f9f3a1 t3.xlarge    Windows  10.0.1.10        ec2-name-03  running
i-066b...57b7b08888 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.11        ec2-name-04  stopped
i-0fee...82e83ccd72 t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.5         ec2-name-05  running
i-0a68...274cc5043b t3.medium    Windows  10.0.1.6         ec2-name-06  stopped
```

Example 6: This example validates permissions for getting EC2 instances using the DryRun parameter without actually fetching them. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
Get-EC2Tag -DryRun $true
```

Output:

```
Get-EC2Instance: Request would have succeeded, but DryRun flag is set.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2InstanceAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2InstanceAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the instance type of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute instanceType
```

Output:

```
InstanceType                      : t2.micro
```

Example 2: This example describes whether enhanced networking is enabled for the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Output:

```
SriovNetSupport                   : simple
```

Example 3: This example describes the security groups for the specified instance.

```
(Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute groupSet).Groups
```

Output:

```
GroupId
-------
sg-12345678
sg-45678901
```

Example 4: This example describes whether EBS optimization is enabled for the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute ebsOptimized
```

Output:

```
EbsOptimized                      : False
```

Example 5: This example describes the 'disableApiTermination' attribute of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute disableApiTermination
```

Output:

```
DisableApiTermination             : False
```

Example 6: This example describes the 'instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior' attribute of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
```

Output:

```
InstanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior : stop
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2InstanceMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2InstanceMetadata`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Lists the available categories of instance metadata that can be queried.

```
Get-EC2InstanceMetadata -ListCategory
```

Output:

```
AmiId
LaunchIndex
ManifestPath
AncestorAmiId
BlockDeviceMapping
InstanceId
InstanceType
LocalHostname
LocalIpv4
KernelId
AvailabilityZone
ProductCode
PublicHostname
```

```
PublicIpv4
PublicKey
RamdiskId
Region
ReservationId
SecurityGroup
UserData
InstanceMonitoring
IdentityDocument
IdentitySignature
IdentityPkcs7
```

Example 2: Returns the id of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) that was used to launch the instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceMetadata -Category AmiId
```

Output:

```
ami-b2e756ca
```

Example 3: This example queries the JSON-formatted identity document for the instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceMetadata -Category IdentityDocument
{
  "availabilityZone" : "us-west-2a",
  "devpayProductCodes" : null,
  "marketplaceProductCodes" : null,
  "version" : "2017-09-30",
  "instanceId" : "i-01ed50f7e2607f09e",
  "billingProducts" : [ "bp-6ba54002" ],
  "instanceType" : "t2.small",
  "pendingTime" : "2018-03-07T16:26:04Z",
  "imageId" : "ami-b2e756ca",
  "privateIp" : "10.0.0.171",
  "accountId" : "111122223333",
  "architecture" : "x86_64",
  "kernelId" : null,
  "ramdiskId" : null,
  "region" : "us-west-2"
}
```

Example 4: This example uses a path query to obtain the network interface macs for the instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceMetadata -Path "/network/interfaces/macs"
```

Output:

```
02:80:7f:ef:4c:e0/
```

Example 5: If there is an IAM role associated with the instance, returns information about the last time the instance profile was updated, including the instance's LastUpdated date, InstanceProfileArn, and InstanceProfileId.

```
Get-EC2InstanceMetadata -Path "/iam/info"
```

Output:

```
{
  "Code" : "Success",
  "LastUpdated" : "2018-03-08T03:38:40Z",
  "InstanceProfileArn" : "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:instance-profile/
MyLaunchRole_Profile",
  "InstanceProfileId" : "AIPAI4...WVK2RW"
}
```

- For API details, see Get-EC2InstanceMetadata in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2InstanceStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2InstanceStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the status of the specified instance.

```
Get-EC2InstanceStatus -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
Events           : {}
InstanceId       : i-12345678
InstanceState    : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
Status           : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceStatusSummary
SystemStatus     : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceStatusSummary
```

```
$status = Get-EC2InstanceStatus -InstanceId i-12345678
$status.InstanceState
```

Output:

```
Code    Name
----    ----
16      running
```

```
$status.Status
```

Output:

```
Details           Status
-------           ------
{reachability}    ok
```

```
$status.SystemStatus
```

Output:

```
Details           Status
-------           ------
{reachability}    ok
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2InternetGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2InternetGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Internet gateway.

```
Get-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Attachments       InternetGatewayId     Tags
-----------       -----------------     ----
{vpc-1a2b3c4d}    igw-1a2b3c4d          {}
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Internet gateways.

```
Get-EC2InternetGateway
```

Output:

```
Attachments       InternetGatewayId     Tags
-----------       -----------------     ----
{vpc-1a2b3c4d}    igw-1a2b3c4d          {}
{}                igw-2a3b4c5d          {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInternetGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2KeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2KeyPair`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified key pair.

```
Get-EC2KeyPair -KeyName my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
KeyFingerprint                                                  KeyName
```

```
--------------                                                  -------
1f:51:ae:28:bf:89:e9:d8:1f:25:5d:37:2d:7d:b8:ca:9f:f5:f1:6f my-key-pair
```

Example 2: This example describes all your key pairs.

```
Get-EC2KeyPair
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2NetworkAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2NetworkAcl`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified network ACL.

```
Get-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations : {aclassoc-1a2b3c4d}
Entries      : {Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry, Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry}
IsDefault    : False
NetworkAclId : acl-12345678
Tags         : {Name}
VpcId        : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the rules for the specified network ACL.

```
(Get-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678).Entries
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
Egress       : True
IcmpTypeCode :
PortRange    :
Protocol     : -1
```

```
RuleAction   : deny
RuleNumber   : 32767

CidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
Egress       : False
IcmpTypeCode :
PortRange    :
Protocol     : -1
RuleAction   : deny
RuleNumber   : 32767
```

Example 3: This example describes all your network ACLs.

```
Get-EC2NetworkAcl
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkAcls in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2NetworkInterface`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2NetworkInterface`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678
```

Output:

```
Association        :
Attachment         : Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkInterfaceAttachment
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2c
Description        :
Groups             : {my-security-group}
MacAddress         : 0a:e9:a6:19:4c:7f
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-12345678
OwnerId            : 123456789012
PrivateDnsName     : ip-10-0-0-107.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress   : 10.0.0.107
PrivateIpAddresses : {ip-10-0-0-107.us-west-2.compute.internal}
RequesterId        :
```

```
RequesterManaged   : False
SourceDestCheck    : True
Status             : in-use
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
TagSet             : {}
VpcId              : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your network interfaces.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterface
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 Attachment
```

Output:

```
Attachment         : Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkInterfaceAttachment
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 Description
```

Output:

```
Description        : My description
```

Example 3: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 GroupSet
```

Output:

```
Groups             : {my-security-group}
```

Example 4: This example describes the specified network interface.

```
Get-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678 -Attribute
 SourceDestCheck
```

Output:

```
SourceDestCheck    : True
```

- For API details, see DescribeNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2PasswordData`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2PasswordData`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example decrypts the password that Amazon EC2 assigned to the Administrator account for the specified Windows instance. As a pem file was specified, the setting of the -Decrypt switch is automatically assumed.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678 -PemFile C:\path\my-key-pair.pem
```

Output:

```
mYZ(PA9?C)Q
```

Example 2: (Windows PowerShell only) Inspects the instance to determine the name of the keypair used to launch the instance and then attempts to find the corresponding keypair data in the configuration store of the AWS Toolkit for Visual Studio. If the keypair data is found the password is decrypted.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678 -Decrypt
```

Output:

```
mYZ(PA9?C)Q
```

Example 3: Returns the encrypted password data for the instance.

```
Get-EC2PasswordData -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
iVz3BAK/WAXV.....dqt8WeMA==
```

- For API details, see GetPasswordData in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2PlacementGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2PlacementGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified placement group.

```
Get-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group
```

Output:

```
GroupName             State        Strategy
---------             -----        --------
my-placement-group    available    cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribePlacementGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2PrefixList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2PrefixList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the available AWS services in a prefix list format for the region

```
Get-EC2PrefixList
```

Output:

```
Cidrs                                          PrefixListId PrefixListName
-----                                          ------------ --------------
{52.94.5.0/24, 52.119.240.0/21, 52.94.24.0/23} pl-6fa54006  com.amazonaws.eu-
west-1.dynamodb
{52.218.0.0/17, 54.231.128.0/19}               pl-6da54004  com.amazonaws.eu-
west-1.s3
```

- For API details, see DescribePrefixLists in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Region`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Region`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the regions that are available to you.

```
Get-EC2Region
```

Output:

```
Endpoint                          RegionName
--------                          ----------
ec2.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com       eu-west-1
ec2.ap-southeast-1.amazonaws.com  ap-southeast-1
ec2.ap-southeast-2.amazonaws.com  ap-southeast-2
ec2.eu-central-1.amazonaws.com    eu-central-1
ec2.ap-northeast-1.amazonaws.com  ap-northeast-1
ec2.us-east-1.amazonaws.com       us-east-1
ec2.sa-east-1.amazonaws.com       sa-east-1
ec2.us-west-1.amazonaws.com       us-west-1
```

```
ec2.us-west-2.amazonaws.com         us-west-2
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2RouteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2RouteTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes all your route tables.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable
```

Output:

```
DestinationCidrBlock    : 10.0.0.0/16
DestinationPrefixListId :
GatewayId               : local
InstanceId              :
InstanceOwnerId         :
NetworkInterfaceId      :
Origin                  : CreateRouteTable
State                   : active
VpcPeeringConnectionId  :

DestinationCidrBlock    : 0.0.0.0/0
DestinationPrefixListId :
GatewayId               : igw-1a2b3c4d
InstanceId              :
InstanceOwnerId         :
NetworkInterfaceId      :
Origin                  : CreateRoute
State                   : active
VpcPeeringConnectionId  :
```

Example 2: This example returns details for the specified route table.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 3: This example describes the route tables for the specified VPC.

```
Get-EC2RouteTable -Filter @{ Name="vpc-id"; Values="vpc-1a2b3c4d" }
```

Output:

```
Associations    : {rtbassoc-12345678}
PropagatingVgws : {}
Routes          : {, }
RouteTableId    : rtb-1a2b3c4d
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2ScheduledInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2ScheduledInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Scheduled Instance.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstance -ScheduledInstanceId sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
CreateDate                  : 1/25/2016 1:43:38 PM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceCount               : 1
InstanceType                : c4.large
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
NextSlotStartTime           : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PreviousSlotEndTime         :
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
ScheduledInstanceId         : sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
SlotDurationInHours         : 32
TermEndDate                 : 1/31/2017 1:00:00 AM
TermStartDate               : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1696
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Scheduled Instances.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstance
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2ScheduledInstanceAvailability`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2ScheduledInstanceAvailability`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes a schedule that occurs every week on Sunday, starting on the specified date.

```
Get-EC2ScheduledInstanceAvailability -Recurrence_Frequency
 Weekly -Recurrence_Interval 1 -Recurrence_OccurrenceDay 1 -
FirstSlotStartTimeRange_EarliestTime 2016-01-31T00:00:00Z -
FirstSlotStartTimeRange_LatestTime 2016-01-31T04:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
AvailableInstanceCount      : 20
FirstSlotStartTime          : 1/31/2016 8:00:00 AM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceType                : c4.large
MaxTermDurationInDays       : 366
MinTermDurationInDays       : 366
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PurchaseToken               : eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi...
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
SlotDurationInHours         : 23
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1219

...
```

Example 2: To narrow the results, you can add filters for criteria such as operating system, network, and instance type.

```
-Filter @{ Name="platform";Values="Linux/UNIX" },@{ Name="network-
platform";Values="EC2-VPC" },@{ Name="instance-type";Values="c4.large" }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScheduledInstanceAvailability in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SecurityGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified security group for a VPC. When working with security groups belonging to a VPC you must use the security group ID (-GroupId parameter), not name (-GroupName parameter), to reference the group.

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupId sg-12345678
```

Output:

```
Description         : default VPC security group
GroupId             : sg-12345678
GroupName           : default
IpPermissions       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
IpPermissionsEgress : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Tags                : {}
VpcId               : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified security group for EC2-Classic. When working with security groups for EC2-Classic you may use either the group name (-GroupName parameter) or group ID (-GroupId parameter) to reference the security group.

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group
```

Output:

```
Description         : my security group
GroupId             : sg-45678901
```

```
GroupName           : my-security-group
IpPermissions       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission, Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission}
IpPermissionsEgress : {}
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Tags                : {}
VpcId               :
```

Example 3: This example retrieves all the security groups for the vpc-0fc1ff23456b789eb

```
Get-EC2SecurityGroup -Filter @{Name="vpc-id";Values="vpc-0fc1ff23456b789eb"}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Snapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Snapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified snapshot.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId snap-12345678
```

Output:

```
DataEncryptionKeyId :
Description         : Created by CreateImage(i-1a2b3c4d) for ami-12345678 from
 vol-12345678
Encrypted           : False
KmsKeyId            :
OwnerAlias          :
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Progress            : 100%
SnapshotId          : snap-12345678
StartTime           : 10/23/2014 6:01:28 AM
State               : completed
StateMessage        :
Tags                : {}
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
VolumeSize          : 8
```

Example 2: This example describes the snapshots that have a 'Name' tag.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot | ? { $_.Tags.Count -gt 0 -and $_.Tags.Key -eq "Name" }
```

Example 3: This example describes the snapshots that have a 'Name' tag with the value 'TestValue'.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot | ? { $_.Tags.Count -gt 0 -and $_.Tags.Key -eq "Name" -and
 $_.Tags.Value -eq "TestValue" }
```

Example 4: This example describes all your snapshots.

```
Get-EC2Snapshot -Owner self
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute ProductCodes
```

Output:

```
CreateVolumePermissions    ProductCodes    SnapshotId
-----------------------    ------------    ----------
{}                         {}              snap-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
(Get-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission).CreateVolumePermissions
```

Output:

```
Group    UserId
```

```
-----    ------
all
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes your Spot instance data feed.

```
Get-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
```

Output:

```
Bucket  : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Fault   :
OwnerId : 123456789012
Prefix  : spotdata
State   : Active
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SpotFleetInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SpotFleetInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the instances associated with the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetInstance -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    InstanceType    SpotInstanceRequestId
----------    ------------    ---------------------
i-f089262a    c3.large        sir-12345678
i-7e8b24a4    c3.large        sir-87654321
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
 | format-list
```

Output:

```
ConfigData            : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotFleetRequestConfigData
CreateTime            : 12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
SpotFleetRequestId    : sfr-73fbd2ce-aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE
SpotFleetRequestState : active
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Spot fleet requests.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequest
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the history of the specified Spot fleet request.

```
Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -StartTime 2015-12-26T00:00:00Z
```

Output:

```
HistoryRecords     : {Amazon.EC2.Model.HistoryRecord,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.HistoryRecord...}
LastEvaluatedTime  : 12/26/2015 8:29:11 AM
NextToken          :
SpotFleetRequestId : sfr-088bc5f1-7e7b-451a-bd13-757f10672b93
StartTime          : 12/25/2015 8:00:00 AM
```

```
(Get-EC2SpotFleetRequestHistory -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -StartTime 2015-12-26T00:00:00Z).HistoryRecords
```

Output:

```
EventInformation                    EventType             Timestamp
----------------                    ---------             ---------
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    fleetRequestChange    12/26/2015 8:23:33 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    launched              12/26/2015 8:25:34 AM
Amazon.EC2.Model.EventInformation    launched              12/26/2015 8:25:05 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotFleetRequestHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Spot instance request.

```
Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest -SpotInstanceRequestId sir-12345678
```

Output:

```
ActualBlockHourlyPrice   :
AvailabilityZoneGroup    :
BlockDurationMinutes     : 0
CreateTime               : 4/8/2015 2:51:33 PM
Fault                    :
InstanceId               : i-12345678
LaunchedAvailabilityZone : us-west-2b
LaunchGroup              :
LaunchSpecification      : Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchSpecification
ProductDescription       : Linux/UNIX
SpotInstanceRequestId    : sir-12345678
SpotPrice                : 0.020000
State                    : active
Status                   : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotInstanceStatus
Tags                     : {Name}
Type                     : one-time
```

Example 2: This example describes all your Spot instance requests.

```
Get-EC2SpotInstanceRequest
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2SpotPriceHistory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2SpotPriceHistory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the last 10 entries in the Spot price history for the specified instance type and Availability Zone. Note that the value specified for the -AvailabilityZone parameter must be valid for the region value supplied to either the cmdlet's -Region parameter (not shown in the example) or set as default in the shell. This example command assumes a default region of 'us-west-2' has been set in the environment.

```
Get-EC2SpotPriceHistory -InstanceType c3.large -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a -
MaxResult 10
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017300
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 7:39:49 AM

AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017200
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 7:38:29 AM

AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2a
InstanceType       : c3.large
Price              : 0.017300
ProductDescription : Linux/UNIX (Amazon VPC)
Timestamp          : 12/25/2015 6:57:13 AM
...
```

- For API details, see DescribeSpotPriceHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Subnet`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Subnet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified subnet.

```
Get-EC2Subnet -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2c
AvailableIpAddressCount : 251
CidrBlock               : 10.0.0.0/24
DefaultForAz            : False
MapPublicIpOnLaunch     : False
State                   : available
SubnetId                : subnet-1a2b3c4d
Tags                    : {}
```

```
VpcId                   : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes all your subnets.

```
Get-EC2Subnet
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Tag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Tag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the tags for resource-type 'image'

```
Get-EC2Tag -Filter @{Name="resource-type";Values="image"}
```

Output:

```
Key         ResourceId            ResourceType Value
---         ----------            ------------ -----
Name        ami-0a123b4ccb567a8ea image        Win7-Imported
auto-delete ami-0a123b4ccb567a8ea image        never
```

Example 2: This example fetches all the tags for all the resources and groups them by resource type

```
Get-EC2Tag | Group-Object resourcetype
```

Output:

```
Count Name                      Group
----- ----                      -----
    9 subnet                    {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
   53 instance                  {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
```

```
   3 route-table               {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
   5 security-group            {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
  30 volume                    {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription...}
   1 internet-gateway          {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
   3 network-interface         {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
   4 elastic-ip                {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
   1 dhcp-options              {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
   2 image                     {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
   3 vpc                       {Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription,
Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription, Amazon.EC2.Model.TagDescription}
```

Example 3: This example displays all the resources with tag 'auto-delete' with value 'no' for the given region

```
Get-EC2Tag -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="tag:auto-delete";Values="no"}
```

Output:

```
Key         ResourceId            ResourceType Value
---         ----------            ------------ -----
auto-delete i-0f1bce234d5dd678b   instance     no
auto-delete vol-01d234aa5678901a2 volume       no
auto-delete vol-01234bfb5def6f7b8 volume       no
auto-delete vol-01ccb23f4c5e67890 volume       no
```

Example 4: This example obtains all the resources with tag 'auto-delete' with 'no' value and further filters in the next pipe to parse only 'instance' resource types and eventually creates 'ThisInstance' tag for each instance resources with value being the instance id itself

```
Get-EC2Tag -Region eu-west-1 -Filter @{Name="tag:auto-delete";Values="no"} |
 Where-Object ResourceType -eq "instance" | ForEach-Object {New-EC2Tag -ResourceId
 $_.ResourceId -Tag @{Key="ThisInstance";Value=$_.ResourceId}}
```

Example 5: This example fetches tags for all the instance resources as well as 'Name' keys and displays them in a table format

```
Get-EC2Tag -Filter @{Name="resource-
type";Values="instance"},@{Name="key";Values="Name"} | Select-Object ResourceId,
 @{Name="Name-Tag";Expression={$PSItem.Value}} | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
ResourceId          Name-Tag
----------          --------
i-012e3cb4df567e1aa jump1
i-01c23a45d6fc7a89f repro-3
```

Example 6: This example validates permissions for getting EC2 Tags using the DryRun parameter without actually fetching them. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
Get-EC2Tag -DryRun $true
```

Output:

```
Get-EC2Tag: Request would have succeeded, but DryRun flag is set.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Volume`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Volume`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified EBS volume.

```
Get-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
```

```
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2c
CreateTime       : 7/17/2015 4:35:19 PM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 90
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 30
SnapshotId       : snap-12345678
State            : in-use
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : standard
```

Example 2: This example describes your EBS volumes that have the status 'available'.

```
Get-EC2Volume -Filter @{ Name="status"; Values="available" }
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2c
CreateTime       : 12/21/2015 2:31:29 PM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 60
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 20
SnapshotId       : snap-12345678
State            : available
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : gp2
...
```

Example 3: This example describes all your EBS volumes.

```
Get-EC2Volume
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VolumeAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VolumeAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified attribute of the specified volume.

```
Get-EC2VolumeAttribute -VolumeId vol-12345678 -Attribute AutoEnableIO
```

Output:

```
AutoEnableIO    ProductCodes    VolumeId
------------    ------------    --------
False           {}              vol-12345678
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VolumeStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VolumeStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the status of the specified volume.

```
Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Actions          : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
Events           : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeStatus     : Amazon.EC2.Model.VolumeStatusInfo
```

```
(Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678).VolumeStatus
```

Output:

```
Details                         Status
-------                         ------
```

```
{io-enabled, io-performance}    ok
```

```
(Get-EC2VolumeStatus -VolumeId vol-12345678).VolumeStatus.Details
```

Output:

```
Name                            Status
----                            ------
io-enabled                      passed
io-performance                  not-applicable
```

- For API details, see DescribeVolumeStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2Vpc`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2Vpc`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified VPC.

```
Get-EC2Vpc -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 10.0.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-1a2b3c4d
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : False
State           : available
Tags            : {Name}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example describes the default VPC (there can be only one per region). If your account supports EC2-Classic in this region, there is no default VPC.

```
Get-EC2Vpc -Filter @{Name="isDefault"; Values="true"}
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 172.31.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-12345678
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : True
State           : available
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-45678901
```

Example 3: This example describes the VPCs that match the specified filter (that is, have a CIDR that matches the value '10.0.0.0/16' and are in the state 'available').

```
Get-EC2Vpc -Filter @{Name="cidr";
 Values="10.0.0.0/16"},@{Name="state";Values="available"}
```

Example 4: This example describes all your VPCs.

```
Get-EC2Vpc
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpcAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpcAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the 'enableDnsSupport' attribute.

```
Get-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -Attribute enableDnsSupport
```

Output:

```
EnableDnsSupport
----------------
True
```

Example 2: This example describes the 'enableDnsHostnames' attribute.

```
Get-EC2VpcAttribute -VpcId vpc-12345678 -Attribute enableDnsHostnames
```

Output:

```
EnableDnsHostnames
------------------
True
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpcClassicLink`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpcClassicLink`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Above example returns all the VPCs with their ClassicLinkEnabled state for the region

```
Get-EC2VpcClassicLink -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
ClassicLinkEnabled Tags   VpcId
------------------ ----   -----
False              {Name} vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb
False              {}     vpc-01e23c4a5d6db78e9
False              {Name} vpc-0123456b078b9d01f
False              {}     vpc-12cf3b4f
False              {Name} vpc-0b12d3456a7e8901d
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLink in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the ClassicLink DNS support status of VPCs for the region eu-west-1

```
Get-EC2VpcClassicLinkDnsSupport -VpcId vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d -Region eu-west-1
```

Output:

```
ClassicLinkDnsSupported VpcId
----------------------- -----
False                   vpc-0b12d3456a7e8910d
False                   vpc-12cf3b4f
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcClassicLinkDnsSupport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpcEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpcEndpoint`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes one or more of your VPC endpoints for the region eu-west-1. It then pipes the output to the next command, which select the VpcEndpointId property and returns array VPC ID as string array

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty VpcEndpointId
```

Output:

```
vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d
vpce-01d2b345a6787890b
vpce-0012e34d567890e12
vpce-0c123db4567890123
```

Example 2: This example describes all the vpc endpoints for the region eu-west-1 and selects VpcEndpointId, VpcId, ServiceName and PrivateDnsEnabled properties to present it in a tabular format

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object VpcEndpointId, VpcId,
 ServiceName, PrivateDnsEnabled | Format-Table -AutoSize
```

Output:

```
VpcEndpointId          VpcId                 ServiceName
 PrivateDnsEnabled
-------------          -----                 -----------
 -----------------
vpce-02a2ab2f2f2cc2f2d vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssm
          True
vpce-01d1b111a1114561b vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ec2
          True
vpce-0011e23d45167e838 vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ec2messages
          True
vpce-0c123db4567890123 vpc-0fc6ff46f65b039eb com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssmmessages
          True
```

Example 3: This example exports the policy document for the VPC Endpoint vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d into a json file

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpoint -Region eu-west-1 -VpcEndpointId vpce-01a2ab3f4f5cc6f7d | Select-
Object -expand PolicyDocument | Out-File vpce_policyDocument.json
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpoints in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpcEndpointService`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpcEndpointService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes EC2 VPC endpoint service with the given filter, in this case com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs. Further, it also expands the ServiceDetails property and displays the details

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpointService -Region eu-west-1 -MaxResult 5 -Filter @{Name="service-
name";Values="com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs"} | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 ServiceDetails
```

Output:

```
AcceptanceRequired         : False
AvailabilityZones          : {eu-west-1a, eu-west-1b, eu-west-1c}
BaseEndpointDnsNames       : {ecs.eu-west-1.vpce.amazonaws.com}
```

```
Owner                       : amazon
PrivateDnsName              : ecs.eu-west-1.amazonaws.com
ServiceName                 : com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ecs
ServiceType                 : {Amazon.EC2.Model.ServiceTypeDetail}
VpcEndpointPolicySupported : False
```

Example 2: This example retrieves all the EC2 VPC Endpoint services and returns the ServiceNames matching "ssm"

```
Get-EC2VpcEndpointService -Region eu-west-1 | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 Servicenames | Where-Object { -match "ssm"}
```

Output:

```
com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssm
com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.ssmmessages
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcEndpointServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpnConnection`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpnConnection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified VPN connection.

```
Get-EC2VpnConnection -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678
```

Output:

```
CustomerGatewayConfiguration : [XML document]
CustomerGatewayId            : cgw-1a2b3c4d
Options                      : Amazon.EC2.Model.VpnConnectionOptions
Routes                       : {Amazon.EC2.Model.VpnStaticRoute}
State                        : available
Tags                         : {}
Type                         : ipsec.1
VgwTelemetry                 : {Amazon.EC2.Model.VgwTelemetry,
 Amazon.EC2.Model.VgwTelemetry}
```

```
VpnConnectionId              : vpn-12345678
VpnGatewayId                 : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example describes any VPN connection whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2VpnConnection -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your VPN connections.

```
Get-EC2VpnConnection
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnConnections in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EC2VpnGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EC2VpnGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified virtual private gateway.

```
Get-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone :
State            : available
Tags             : {}
Type             : ipsec.1
VpcAttachments   : {vpc-12345678}
VpnGatewayId     : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example describes any virtual private gateway whose state is either pending or available.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "state"
$filter.Values = @( "pending", "available" )

Get-EC2VpnGateway -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This example describes all your virtual private gateways.

```
Get-EC2VpnGateway
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpnGateways in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress`

The following code example shows how to use `Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example defines an egress rule for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. The rule grants access to the specified IP address range on TCP port 80. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 80
$ip.ToPort = 80
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example grants access to the specified source security group on TCP port 80.

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
```

```
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example defines ingress rules for a security group for EC2-VPC. These rules grant access to a specific IP address for SSH (port 22) and RDC (port 3389). Note that you must identify security groups for EC2-VPC using the security group ID not the security group name. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip1 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22"; IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }
$ip2 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="3389"; ToPort="3389";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission objects.

```
$ip1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip1.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip1.FromPort = 22
$ip1.ToPort = 22
$ip1.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

$ip2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip2.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip2.FromPort = 3389
$ip2.ToPort = 3389
$ip2.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")
```

```
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission @( $ip1, $ip2 )
```

Example 3: This example defines ingress rules for a security group for EC2-Classic. These rules grant access to a specific IP address for SSH (port 22) and RDC (port 3389). The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip1 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22"; IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }
$ip2 = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="3389"; ToPort="3389";
 IpRanges="203.0.113.25/32" }

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission @( $ip1,
 $ip2 )
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission objects.

```
$ip1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip1.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip1.FromPort = 22
$ip1.ToPort = 22
$ip1.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

$ip2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip2.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip2.FromPort = 3389
$ip2.ToPort = 3389
$ip2.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.25/32")

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission @( $ip1,
 $ip2 )
```

Example 5: This example grants TCP port 8081 access from the specified source security group (sg-1a2b3c4d) to the specified security group (sg-12345678).

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"

Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="8081"; ToPort="8081"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

Example 6: This example adds the CIDR 5.5.5.5/32 to the Ingress rules of security Group sg-1234abcd for TCP port 22 traffic with a description.

```
$IpRange = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.EC2.Model.IpRange
$IpRange.CidrIp = "5.5.5.5/32"
$IpRange.Description = "SSH from Office"
$IpPermission = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$IpPermission.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$IpPermission.ToPort = 22
$IpPermission.FromPort = 22
$IpPermission.Ipv4Ranges = $IpRange
Grant-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-1234abcd -IpPermission $IpPermission
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Import-EC2Image`

The following code example shows how to use `Import-EC2Image`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example imports a single-disk virtual machine image from the specified Amazon S3 bucket to Amazon EC2 with an idempotency token. The example requires that a VM Import Service Role with the default name 'vmimport' exists, with a policy allowing Amazon EC2 access to the specified bucket, as explained in the VM Import Prequisites topic. To use a custom role, specify the role name using the `-RoleName` parameter.

```
$container = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.ImageDiskContainer
$container.Format="VMDK"
$container.UserBucket = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserBucket
$container.UserBucket.S3Bucket = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$container.UserBucket.S3Key = "Win_2008_Server_Standard_SP2_64-bit-disk1.vmdk"

$parms = @{
    "ClientToken"="idempotencyToken"
    "Description"="Windows 2008 Standard Image Import"
    "Platform"="Windows"
    "LicenseType"="AWS"
}
```

```
Import-EC2Image -DiskContainer $container @parms
```

Output:

```
Architecture    :
Description     : Windows 2008 Standard Image
Hypervisor      :
ImageId         :
ImportTaskId    : import-ami-abcdefgh
LicenseType     : AWS
Platform        : Windows
Progress        : 2
SnapshotDetails : {}
Status          : active
StatusMessage   : pending
```

- For API details, see ImportImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Import-EC2KeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `Import-EC2KeyPair`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example imports a public key to EC2. The first line stores the contents of the public key file (*.pub) in the variable `$publickey`. Next, the example converts the UTF8 format of the public key file to a Base64-encoded string, and stores the converted string in the variable `$pkbase64`. In the last line, the converted public key is imported to EC2. The cmdlet returns the key fingerprint and name as results.

```
$publickey=[Io.File]::ReadAllText("C:\Users\TestUser\.ssh\id_rsa.pub")
$pkbase64 =
 [System.Convert]::ToBase64String([System.Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetBytes($publickey))
Import-EC2KeyPair -KeyName Example-user-key -PublicKey $pkbase64
```

Output:

```
KeyFingerprint                                  KeyName
--------------                                  -------
do:d0:15:8f:79:97:12:be:00:fd:df:31:z3:b1:42:z1 Example-user-key
```

- For API details, see ImportKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Import-EC2Snapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Import-EC2Snapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example imports a VM disk image of format 'VMDK' to an Amazon EBS snapshot. The example requires a VM Import Service Role with the default name 'vmimport', with a policy allowing Amazon EC2 access to the specified bucket, as explained in the `VM Import Prequisites` topic in http://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/WindowsGuide/VMImportPrerequisites.html. To use a custom role, specify the role name using the `-RoleName` parameter.

```
$parms = @{
    "ClientToken"="idempotencyToken"
    "Description"="Disk Image Import"
    "DiskContainer_Description" = "Data disk"
    "DiskContainer_Format" = "VMDK"
    "DiskContainer_S3Bucket" = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    "DiskContainer_S3Key" = "datadiskimage.vmdk"
}

Import-EC2Snapshot @parms
```

Output:

```
Description            ImportTaskId               SnapshotTaskDetail

-----------------      --------------------       ------------------

Disk Image Import      import-snap-abcdefgh
 Amazon.EC2.Model.SnapshotTaskDetail
```

- For API details, see ImportSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Move-EC2AddressToVpc`

The following code example shows how to use `Move-EC2AddressToVpc`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example moves an EC2 instance with a public IP address of 12.345.67.89 to the EC2-VPC platform in the US East (Northern Virginia) region.

```
Move-EC2AddressToVpc -PublicIp 12.345.67.89 -Region us-east-1
```

Example 2: This example pipes the results of a Get-EC2Instance command to the Move-EC2AddressToVpc cmdlet. The Get-EC2Instance command gets an instance that is specified by instance ID, then returns the public IP address property of the instance.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Instance i-12345678).Instances.PublicIpAddress | Move-
EC2AddressToVpc
```

- For API details, see MoveAddressToVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Address`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Address`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example allocates an Elastic IP address to use with an instance in a VPC.

```
New-EC2Address -Domain Vpc
```

Output:

```
AllocationId         Domain      PublicIp
------------         ------      --------
eipalloc-12345678    vpc         198.51.100.2
```

Example 2: This example allocates an Elastic IP address to use with an instance in EC2-Classic.

```
New-EC2Address
```

Output:

```
AllocationId         Domain      PublicIp
------------         ------      --------
                     standard    203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2CustomerGateway

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2CustomerGateway.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified customer gateway.

```
New-EC2CustomerGateway -Type ipsec.1 -PublicIp 203.0.113.12 -BgpAsn 65534
```

Output:

```
BgpAsn            : 65534
CustomerGatewayId : cgw-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress         : 203.0.113.12
State             : available
Tags              : {}
Type              : ipsec.1
```

- For API details, see CreateCustomerGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2DhcpOption

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2DhcpOption.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified set of DHCP options. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$options = @( @{Key="domain-name";Values=@("abc.local")}, @{Key="domain-name-
servers";Values=@("10.0.0.101","10.0.0.102")})
New-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpConfiguration $options
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                    DhcpOptionsId    Tags
------------------                    -------------    ----
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-1a2b3c4d    {}
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each DHCP option.

```
$option1 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.DhcpConfiguration
$option1.Key = "domain-name"
$option1.Values = "abc.local"

$option2 = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.DhcpConfiguration
$option2.Key = "domain-name-servers"
$option2.Values = @("10.0.0.101","10.0.0.102")

New-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpConfiguration @($option1, $option2)
```

Output:

```
DhcpConfigurations                    DhcpOptionsId    Tags
------------------                    -------------    ----
{domain-name, domain-name-servers}    dopt-2a3b4c5d    {}
```

- For API details, see CreateDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2FlowLog`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2FlowLog`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates EC2 flowlog for the subnet subnet-1d234567 to the cloud-watch-log named 'subnet1-log' for all 'REJECT' traffic using the perimssions of the 'Admin' role

```
New-EC2FlowLog -ResourceId "subnet-1d234567" -LogDestinationType cloud-watch-
logs -LogGroupName subnet1-log -TrafficType "REJECT" -ResourceType Subnet -
DeliverLogsPermissionArn "arn:aws:iam::98765432109:role/Admin"
```

Output:

```
ClientToken                                  FlowLogIds             Unsuccessful
-----------                                  ----------             ------------
m1VN2cxP3iB4qo//VUKl5EU6cF7gQLOxcqNefvjeTGw= {fl-012fc34eed5678c9d} {}
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Host`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Host`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example allocates a Dedicated Host to your account for the given instance type and availability zone

```
New-EC2Host -AutoPlacement on -AvailabilityZone eu-west-1b -InstanceType m4.xlarge -
Quantity 1
```

Output:

```
h-01e23f4cd567890f3
```

- For API details, see AllocateHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2HostReservation`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2HostReservation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example purchases the reservation offering hro-0c1f23456789d0ab with configurations that match those of your Dedicated Host h-01e23f4cd567890f1

```
New-EC2HostReservation -OfferingId hro-0c1f23456789d0ab HostIdSet
 h-01e23f4cd567890f1
```

Output:

```
ClientToken       :
CurrencyCode      :
Purchase          : {hr-0123f4b5d67bedc89}
TotalHourlyPrice  : 1.307
TotalUpfrontPrice : 0.000
```

- For API details, see PurchaseHostReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2Image

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2Image.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an AMI with the specified name and description, from the specified instance. Amazon EC2 attempts to cleanly shut down the instance before creating the image, and restarts the instance on completion.

```
New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description "My web
 server AMI"
```

Example 2: This example creates an AMI with the specified name and description, from the specified instance. Amazon EC2 creates the image without shutting down and restarting the instance; therefore, file system integrity on the created image can't be guaranteed.

```
New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description "My web
 server AMI" -NoReboot $true
```

Example 3: This example creates an AMI with three volumes. The first volume is based on an Amazon EBS snapshot. The second volume is an empty 100 GiB Amazon EBS volume. The third volume is an instance store volume. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ebsBlock1 = @{SnapshotId="snap-1a2b3c4d"}
$ebsBlock2 = @{VolumeSize=100}

New-EC2Image -InstanceId i-12345678 -Name "my-web-server" -Description
 "My web server AMI" -BlockDeviceMapping @( @{DeviceName="/dev/sdf";Ebs=
```

```
$ebsBlock1}, @{DeviceName="/dev/sdg";Ebs=$ebsBlock2}, @{DeviceName="/dev/
sdc";VirtualName="ephemeral0"})
```

- For API details, see CreateImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Instance`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Instance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example launches a single instance of the specified AMI in EC2-Classic or a default VPC.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -MinCount 1 -MaxCount 1 -InstanceType
 m3.medium -KeyName my-key-pair -SecurityGroup my-security-group
```

Example 2: This example launches a single instance of the specified AMI in a VPC.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -MinCount 1 -MaxCount 1 -SubnetId
 subnet-12345678 -InstanceType t2.micro -KeyName my-key-pair -SecurityGroupId
 sg-12345678
```

Example 3: To add an EBS volume or an instance store volume, define a block device mapping and add it to the command. This example adds an instance store volume.

```
$bdm = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.BlockDeviceMapping
$bdm.VirtualName = "ephemeral0"
$bdm.DeviceName = "/dev/sdf"

New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-12345678 -BlockDeviceMapping $bdm ...
```

Example 4: To specify one of the current Windows AMIs, get its AMI ID using Get-SSMLatestEC2Image. This example launches an instance from the current base AMI for Windows Server 2016.

```
$ami = (Get-SSMLatestEC2Image -Path 'ami-windows-latest' -ImageName
 'WINDOWS*2016*English*Core*BASE').Value
```

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId $ami ...
```

Example 5: Launches an instance into the specified dedicated host environment.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId ami-1a2b3c4d -InstanceType m4.large -KeyName my-key-pair
 -SecurityGroupId sg-1a2b3c4d  -AvailabilityZone us-west-1a -Tenancy host -HostID
 h-1a2b3c4d5e6f1a2b3
```

Example 6: This request launches two instances and applies a tag with a key of webserver and a value of production to the instances. The request also applies a tag with a key of cost-center and a value of cc123 to the volumes that are created (in this case, the root volume for each instance).

```
$tag1 = @{ Key="webserver"; Value="production" }
$tag2 = @{ Key="cost-center"; Value="cc123" }

$tagspec1 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec1.ResourceType = "instance"
$tagspec1.Tags.Add($tag1)

$tagspec2 = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec2.ResourceType = "volume"
$tagspec2.Tags.Add($tag2)

New-EC2Instance -ImageId "ami-1a2b3c4d" -KeyName "my-key-pair" -MaxCount 2 -
InstanceType "t2.large" -SubnetId "subnet-1a2b3c4d" -TagSpecification $tagspec1,
$tagspec2
```

Example 7: This example validates permissions for launching an EC2 instance using the DryRun parameter without actually creating the instance. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
New-EC2Instance -ImageId 'ami-12345678' -InstanceType 't2.micro' -KeyName 'my-key-
pair' -Region 'us-west-2' -DryRun $true
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2InstanceExportTask`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2InstanceExportTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example exports a stopped instance, `i-0800b00a00EXAMPLE`, as a virtual hard disk (VHD) to the S3 bucket `testbucket-export-instances-2019`. The target environment is `Microsoft`, and the region parameter is added because the instance is in the `us-east-1` region, while the user's default AWS Region is not us-east-1. To get the status of the export task, copy the `ExportTaskId` value from the results of this command, then run `Get-EC2ExportTask -ExportTaskId export_task_ID_from_results`.

```
New-EC2InstanceExportTask -InstanceId i-0800b00a00EXAMPLE -
ExportToS3Task_DiskImageFormat VHD -ExportToS3Task_S3Bucket "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -
TargetEnvironment Microsoft -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Description           :
ExportTaskId          : export-i-077c73108aEXAMPLE
ExportToS3Task        : Amazon.EC2.Model.ExportToS3Task
InstanceExportDetails : Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceExportDetails
State                 : active
StatusMessage         :
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceExportTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2InternetGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2InternetGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an Internet gateway.

```
New-EC2InternetGateway
```

Output:

```
Attachments    InternetGatewayId    Tags
-----------    -----------------    ----
```

```
{}              igw-1a2b3c4d         {}
```

- For API details, see CreateInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2KeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2KeyPair`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a key pair and captures the PEM-encoded RSA private key in a file with the specified name. When you are using PowerShell, the encoding must be set to ascii to generate a valid key. For more information, see Create, Display, and Delete Amazon EC2 Key Pairs (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/cli/latest/userguide/cli-services-ec2-keypairs.html) in the AWS Command Line Interface User Guide.

```
(New-EC2KeyPair -KeyName "my-key-pair").KeyMaterial | Out-File -Encoding ascii -
FilePath C:\path\my-key-pair.pem
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2NetworkAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2NetworkAcl`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a network ACL for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2NetworkAcl -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations : {}
Entries      : {Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry, Amazon.EC2.Model.NetworkAclEntry}
IsDefault    : False
NetworkAclId : acl-12345678
Tags         : {}
VpcId        : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2NetworkAclEntry`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2NetworkAclEntry`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an entry for the specified network ACL. The rule allows inbound traffic from anywhere (0.0.0.0/0) on UDP port 53 (DNS) into any associated subnet.

```
New-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber 100
 -Protocol 17 -PortRange_From 53 -PortRange_To 53 -CidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0 -RuleAction
 allow
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2NetworkInterface`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2NetworkInterface`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified network interface.

```
New-EC2NetworkInterface -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -Description "my network
 interface" -Group sg-12345678 -PrivateIpAddress 10.0.0.17
```

Output:

```
Association        :
Attachment         :
AvailabilityZone   : us-west-2c
Description        : my network interface
Groups             : {my-security-group}
MacAddress         : 0a:72:bc:1a:cd:7f
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-12345678
OwnerId            : 123456789012
PrivateDnsName     : ip-10-0-0-17.us-west-2.compute.internal
PrivateIpAddress   : 10.0.0.17
```

```
PrivateIpAddresses : {}
RequesterId        :
RequesterManaged   : False
SourceDestCheck    : True
Status             : pending
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
TagSet             : {}
VpcId              : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2PlacementGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2PlacementGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a placement group with the specified name.

```
New-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group -Strategy cluster
```

- For API details, see CreatePlacementGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Route`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Route`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified route for the specified route table. The route matches all traffic and sends it to the specified Internet gateway.

```
New-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0 -GatewayId
 igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
True
```

- For API details, see CreateRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2RouteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2RouteTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a route table for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2RouteTable -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Associations    : {}
PropagatingVgws : {}
Routes          : {}
RouteTableId    : rtb-1a2b3c4d
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2ScheduledInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2ScheduledInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example launches the specified Scheduled Instance.

```
New-EC2ScheduledInstance -ScheduledInstanceId sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012 -
InstanceCount 1 `
-IamInstanceProfile_Name my-iam-role `
-LaunchSpecification_ImageId ami-12345678 `
-LaunchSpecification_InstanceType c4.large `
-LaunchSpecification_SubnetId subnet-12345678`
-LaunchSpecification_SecurityGroupId sg-12345678
```

- For API details, see RunScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2ScheduledInstancePurchase

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2ScheduledInstancePurchase.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example purchases a Scheduled Instance.

```
$request = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.PurchaseRequest
$request.InstanceCount = 1
$request.PurchaseToken = "eyJ2IjoiMSIsInMiOjEsImMiOi..."
New-EC2ScheduledInstancePurchase -PurchaseRequest $request
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone            : us-west-2b
CreateDate                  : 1/25/2016 1:43:38 PM
HourlyPrice                 : 0.095
InstanceCount               : 1
InstanceType                : c4.large
NetworkPlatform             : EC2-VPC
NextSlotStartTime           : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
Platform                    : Linux/UNIX
PreviousSlotEndTime         :
Recurrence                  : Amazon.EC2.Model.ScheduledInstanceRecurrence
ScheduledInstanceId         : sci-1234-1234-1234-1234-123456789012
SlotDurationInHours         : 32
TermEndDate                 : 1/31/2017 1:00:00 AM
TermStartDate               : 1/31/2016 1:00:00 AM
TotalScheduledInstanceHours : 1696
```

- For API details, see PurchaseScheduledInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2SecurityGroup

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2SecurityGroup.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a security group for the specified VPC.

```
New-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Description "my security group" -
VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
sg-12345678
```

Example 2: This example creates a security group for EC2-Classic.

```
New-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Description "my security group"
```

Output:

```
sg-45678901
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Snapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Snapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a snapshot of the specified volume.

```
New-EC2Snapshot -VolumeId vol-12345678 -Description "This is a test"
```

Output:

```
DataEncryptionKeyId :
Description         : This is a test
Encrypted           : False
KmsKeyId            :
OwnerAlias          :
OwnerId             : 123456789012
Progress            :
SnapshotId          : snap-12345678
StartTime           : 12/22/2015 1:28:42 AM
State               : pending
```

```
StateMessage        :
Tags                : {}
VolumeId            : vol-12345678
VolumeSize          : 20
```

- For API details, see CreateSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a Spot instance data feed.

```
New-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription -Bucket amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Prefix spotdata
```

Output:

```
Bucket  : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Fault   :
OwnerId : 123456789012
Prefix  : spotdata
State   : Active
```

- For API details, see CreateSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Subnet`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Subnet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a subnet with the specified CIDR.

```
New-EC2Subnet -VpcId vpc-12345678 -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/24
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone        : us-west-2c
AvailableIpAddressCount : 251
CidrBlock               : 10.0.0.0/24
DefaultForAz            : False
MapPublicIpOnLaunch     : False
State                   : pending
SubnetId                : subnet-1a2b3c4d
Tag                     : {}
VpcId                   : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateSubnet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2Tag`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2Tag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a single tag to the specified resource. The tag key is 'myTag' and the tag value is 'myTagValue'. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag"; Value="myTagValue" }
```

Example 2: This example updates or adds the specified tags to the specified resource. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @( @{ Key="myTag"; Value="newTagValue" },
 @{ Key="test"; Value="anotherTagValue" } )
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"

New-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2Volume

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2Volume.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified volume.

```
New-EC2Volume -Size 50 -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a -VolumeType gp2
```

Output:

```
Attachments      : {}
AvailabilityZone : us-west-2a
CreateTime       : 12/22/2015 1:42:07 AM
Encrypted        : False
Iops             : 150
KmsKeyId         :
Size             : 50
SnapshotId       :
State            : creating
Tags             : {}
VolumeId         : vol-12345678
VolumeType       : gp2
```

Example 2: This example request creates a volume and applies a tag with a key of stack and a value of production.

```
$tag = @{ Key="stack"; Value="production" }

$tagspec = new-object Amazon.EC2.Model.TagSpecification
$tagspec.ResourceType = "volume"
$tagspec.Tags.Add($tag)

New-EC2Volume -Size 80 -AvailabilityZone "us-west-2a" -TagSpecification $tagspec
```

- For API details, see CreateVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2Vpc

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2Vpc.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a VPC with the specified CIDR. Amazon VPC also creates the following for the VPC: a default DHCP options set, a main route table, and a default network ACL.

```
New-EC2VPC -CidrBlock 10.0.0.0/16
```

Output:

```
CidrBlock       : 10.0.0.0/16
DhcpOptionsId   : dopt-1a2b3c4d
InstanceTenancy : default
IsDefault       : False
State           : pending
Tags            : {}
VpcId           : vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EC2VpcEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EC2VpcEndpoint`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example create a new VPC Endpoint for the service com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.s3 in the VPC vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb

```
New-EC2VpcEndpoint -ServiceName com.amazonaws.eu-west-1.s3 -VpcId
 vpc-0fc1ff23f45b678eb
```

Output:

```
ClientToken VpcEndpoint
----------- -----------
            Amazon.EC2.Model.VpcEndpoint
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2VpnConnection

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2VpnConnection.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a VPN connection between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway. The output includes the configuration information that your network administrator needs, in XML format.

```
New-EC2VpnConnection -Type ipsec.1 -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
CustomerGatewayConfiguration : [XML document]
CustomerGatewayId            : cgw-1a2b3c4d
Options                      :
Routes                       : {}
State                        : pending
Tags                         : {}
Type                         :
VgwTelemetry                 : {}
VpnConnectionId              : vpn-12345678
VpnGatewayId                 : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: This example creates the VPN connection and captures the configuration in a file with the specified name.

```
(New-EC2VpnConnection -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d).CustomerGatewayConfiguration | Out-File C:\path\vpn-configuration.xml
```

Example 3: This example creates a VPN connection, with static routing, between the specified virtual private gateway and the specified customer gateway.

```
New-EC2VpnConnection -Type ipsec.1 -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d -VpnGatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d -Options_StaticRoutesOnly $true
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2VpnConnectionRoute

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2VpnConnectionRoute.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified static route for the specified VPN connection.

```
New-EC2VpnConnectionRoute -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678 -DestinationCidrBlock
 11.12.0.0/16
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-EC2VpnGateway

The following code example shows how to use New-EC2VpnGateway.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates the specified virtual private gateway.

```
New-EC2VpnGateway -Type ipsec.1
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZone :
State            : available
Tags             : {}
Type             : ipsec.1
VpcAttachments   : {}
VpnGatewayId     : vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see CreateVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Register-EC2Address

The following code example shows how to use Register-EC2Address.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified instance in a VPC.

```
C:\> Register-EC2Address -InstanceId i-12345678 -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678
```

Output:

```
eipassoc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example associates the specified Elastic IP address with the specified instance in EC2-Classic.

```
C:\> Register-EC2Address -InstanceId i-12345678 -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-EC2DhcpOption`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-EC2DhcpOption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified DHCP options set with the specified VPC.

```
Register-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example associates the default DHCP options set with the specified VPC.

```
Register-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId default -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AssociateDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-EC2Image`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-EC2Image`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an AMI using the specified manifest file in Amazon S3.

```
Register-EC2Image -ImageLocation amzn-s3-demo-bucket/my-web-server-ami/
image.manifest.xml -Name my-web-server-ami
```

- For API details, see RegisterImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example assigns the specified secondary private IP address to the specified network interface.

```
Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -PrivateIpAddress
 10.0.0.82
```

Example 2: This example creates two secondary private IP addresses and assigns them to the specified network interface.

```
Register-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -
SecondaryPrivateIpAddressCount 2
```

- For API details, see AssignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-EC2RouteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-EC2RouteTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified route table with the specified subnet.

```
Register-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
rtbassoc-12345678
```

- For API details, see AssociateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Address`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Address`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example releases the specified Elastic IP address for instances in a VPC.

```
Remove-EC2Address -AllocationId eipalloc-12345678 -Force
```

Example 2: This example releases the specified Elastic IP address for instances in EC2-Classic.

```
Remove-EC2Address -PublicIp 198.51.100.2 -Force
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2CapacityReservation`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2CapacityReservation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the capacity reservation cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba

```
Remove-EC2CapacityReservation -CapacityReservationId cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2CapacityReservation (CancelCapacityReservation)"
 on target "cr-0c1f2345db6f7cdba".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

```
True
```

- For API details, see CancelCapacityReservation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2CustomerGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2CustomerGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified customer gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2CustomerGateway -CustomerGatewayId cgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2CustomerGateway (DeleteCustomerGateway)" on Target
 "cgw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteCustomerGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2DhcpOption`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2DhcpOption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified DHCP options set. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2DhcpOption -DhcpOptionsId dopt-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2DhcpOption (DeleteDhcpOptions)" on Target
 "dopt-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteDhcpOptions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2FlowLog`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2FlowLog`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the given FlowLogId fl-01a2b3456a789c01

```
Remove-EC2FlowLog -FlowLogId fl-01a2b3456a789c01
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2FlowLog (DeleteFlowLogs)" on target
 "fl-01a2b3456a789c01".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowLogs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Host`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Host`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example releases the given host ID h-0badafd1dcb2f3456

```
Remove-EC2Host -HostId h-0badafd1dcb2f3456
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Host (ReleaseHosts)" on target
 "h-0badafd1dcb2f3456".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Successful            Unsuccessful
----------            ------------
{h-0badafd1dcb2f3456} {}
```

- For API details, see ReleaseHosts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Instance`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Instance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example terminates the specified instance (the instance may be running or in 'stopped' state). The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding; use the -Force switch to suppress the prompt.

```
Remove-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2InternetGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2InternetGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Internet gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2InternetGateway -InternetGatewayId igw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2InternetGateway (DeleteInternetGateway)" on Target
 "igw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteInternetGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2KeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2KeyPair`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified key pair. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2KeyPair -KeyName my-key-pair
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2KeyPair (DeleteKeyPair)" on Target "my-key-pair".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2NetworkAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2NetworkAcl`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified network ACL. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkAcl -NetworkAclId acl-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkAcl (DeleteNetworkAcl)" on Target
 "acl-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified rule from the specified network ACL. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber 100
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkAclEntry (DeleteNetworkAclEntry)" on Target
 "acl-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2NetworkInterface`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2NetworkInterface`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified network interface. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2NetworkInterface -NetworkInterfaceId eni-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2NetworkInterface (DeleteNetworkInterface)" on Target
 "eni-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteNetworkInterface in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2PlacementGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2PlacementGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified placement group. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2PlacementGroup -GroupName my-placement-group
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2PlacementGroup (DeletePlacementGroup)" on Target
 "my-placement-group".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeletePlacementGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Route`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Route`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified route from the specified route table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 0.0.0.0/0
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Route (DeleteRoute)" on Target "rtb-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2RouteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2RouteTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified route table. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2RouteTable -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2RouteTable (DeleteRouteTable)" on Target
 "rtb-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2SecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2SecurityGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified security group for EC2-VPC. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupId sg-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2SecurityGroup (DeleteSecurityGroup)" on Target
 "sg-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: This example deletes the specified security group for EC2-Classic.

```
Remove-EC2SecurityGroup -GroupName my-security-group -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Snapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Snapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified snapshot. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Snapshot -SnapshotId snap-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Snapshot (DeleteSnapshot)" on target
 "snap-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes your Spot instance data feed. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2SpotDatafeedSubscription
 (DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription)" on Target "".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSpotDatafeedSubscription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Subnet`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Subnet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified subnet. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Subnet -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Subnet (DeleteSubnet)" on Target "subnet-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteSubnet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Tag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Tag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, regardless of the tag value. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag" } -Force
```

Example 2: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, but only if the tag value matches. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag @{ Key="myTag";Value="myTagValue" } -Force
```

Example 3: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, regardless of the tag value.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"

Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag -Force
```

Example 4: This example deletes the specified tag from the specified resource, but only if the tag value matches.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "myTag"
$tag.Value = "myTagValue"

Remove-EC2Tag -Resource i-12345678 -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Volume`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Volume`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the specified volume. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Volume -VolumeId vol-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EC2Volume (DeleteVolume)" on target "vol-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVolume in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2Vpc`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2Vpc`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified VPC. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2Vpc -VpcId vpc-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2Vpc (DeleteVpc)" on Target "vpc-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2VpnConnection`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2VpnConnection`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified VPN connection. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnConnection -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnConnection (DeleteVpnConnection)" on Target
 "vpn-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnection in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified static route from the specified VPN connection. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute -VpnConnectionId vpn-12345678 -DestinationCidrBlock
 11.12.0.0/16
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnConnectionRoute (DeleteVpnConnectionRoute)" on
 Target "vpn-12345678".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnConnectionRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EC2VpnGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EC2VpnGateway`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified virtual private gateway. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-EC2VpnGateway -VpnGatewayId vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing operation "Remove-EC2VpnGateway (DeleteVpnGateway)" on Target
 "vgw-1a2b3c4d".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpnGateway in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Request-EC2SpotFleet`

The following code example shows how to use `Request-EC2SpotFleet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a Spot fleet request in the Availability Zone with the lowest price for the specified instance type. If your account supports EC2-VPC only, the Spot fleet launches the instances in the lowest-priced Availability Zone that has a default subnet. If your account supports EC2-Classic, the Spot fleet launches the instances in EC2-Classic in the lowest-priced Availability Zone. Note that the price you pay will not exceed the specified Spot price for the request.

```
$sg = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.GroupIdentifier
$sg.GroupId = "sg-12345678"
$lc = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotFleetLaunchSpecification
$lc.ImageId = "ami-12345678"
$lc.InstanceType = "m3.medium"
$lc.SecurityGroups.Add($sg)
Request-EC2SpotFleet -SpotFleetRequestConfig_SpotPrice 0.04 `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_TargetCapacity 2 `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_IamFleetRole arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/my-spot-fleet-
role `
-SpotFleetRequestConfig_LaunchSpecification $lc
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotFleet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Request-EC2SpotInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Request-EC2SpotInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example requests a one-time Spot instance in the specified subnet. Note that the security group must be created for the VPC that contains the specified subnet, and it must be specified by ID using the network interface. When you specify a network interface, you must include the subnet ID using the network interface.

```
$n = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceNetworkInterfaceSpecification
$n.DeviceIndex = 0
$n.SubnetId = "subnet-12345678"
$n.Groups.Add("sg-12345678")
Request-EC2SpotInstance -InstanceCount 1 -SpotPrice 0.050 -Type one-time `
-IamInstanceProfile_Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/my-iam-role `
-LaunchSpecification_ImageId ami-12345678 `
-LaunchSpecification_InstanceType m3.medium `
-LaunchSpecification_NetworkInterface $n
```

Output:

```
ActualBlockHourlyPrice   :
AvailabilityZoneGroup    :
BlockDurationMinutes     : 0
CreateTime               : 12/26/2015 7:44:10 AM
Fault                    :
InstanceId               :
LaunchedAvailabilityZone :
LaunchGroup              :
LaunchSpecification      : Amazon.EC2.Model.LaunchSpecification
ProductDescription       : Linux/UNIX
SpotInstanceRequestId    : sir-12345678
SpotPrice                : 0.050000
State                    : open
Status                   : Amazon.EC2.Model.SpotInstanceStatus
Tags                     : {}
Type                     : one-time
```

- For API details, see RequestSpotInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Reset-EC2ImageAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Reset-EC2ImageAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the 'launchPermission' attribute to its default value. By default, AMIs are private.

```
Reset-EC2ImageAttribute -ImageId ami-12345678 -Attribute launchPermission
```

- For API details, see ResetImageAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the 'sriovNetSupport' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sriovNetSupport
```

Example 2: This example resets the 'ebsOptimized' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute ebsOptimized
```

Example 3: This example resets the 'sourceDestCheck' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute sourceDestCheck
```

Example 4: This example resets the 'disableApiTermination' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute disableApiTermination
```

Example 5: This example resets the 'instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior' attribute for the specified instance.

```
Reset-EC2InstanceAttribute -InstanceId i-12345678 -Attribute
 instanceInitiatedShutdownBehavior
```

- For API details, see ResetInstanceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Reset-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Reset-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets source/destination checking for the specified network interface.

```
Reset-EC2NetworkInterfaceAttribute -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -SourceDestCheck
```

- For API details, see ResetNetworkInterfaceAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Reset-EC2SnapshotAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Reset-EC2SnapshotAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example resets the specified attribute of the specified snapshot.

```
Reset-EC2SnapshotAttribute -SnapshotId snap-12345678 -Attribute
 CreateVolumePermission
```

- For API details, see ResetSnapshotAttribute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Restart-EC2Instance`

The following code example shows how to use `Restart-EC2Instance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example reboots the specified instance.

```
Restart-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress`

The following code example shows how to use `Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the rule for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. This revokes access to the specified IP address range on TCP port 80. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 80
$ip.ToPort = 80
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example revokes access to the specified source security group on TCP port 80.

```
$ug = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.UserIdGroupPair
$ug.GroupId = "sg-1a2b3c4d"
$ug.UserId = "123456789012"
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupEgress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission
 @( @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="80"; ToPort="80"; UserIdGroupPairs=$ug } )
```

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupEgress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example revokes access to TCP port 22 from the specified address range for the specified security group for EC2-VPC. Note that you must identify security groups for EC2-VPC using the security group ID not the security group name. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22"; IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }
Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 22
$ip.ToPort = 22
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupId sg-12345678 -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 3: This example revokes access to TCP port 22 from the specified address range for the specified security group for EC2-Classic. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
$ip = @{ IpProtocol="tcp"; FromPort="22"; ToPort="22"; IpRanges="203.0.113.0/24" }

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission $ip
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the IpPermission object.

```
$ip = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.IpPermission
$ip.IpProtocol = "tcp"
$ip.FromPort = 22
$ip.ToPort = 22
$ip.IpRanges.Add("203.0.113.0/24")

Revoke-EC2SecurityGroupIngress -GroupName "my-security-group" -IpPermission $ip
```

- For API details, see RevokeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Send-EC2InstanceStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Send-EC2InstanceStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example reports status feedback for the specified instance.

```
Send-EC2InstanceStatus -Instance i-12345678 -Status impaired -ReasonCode
 unresponsive
```

- For API details, see ReportInstanceStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-EC2NetworkAclAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-EC2NetworkAclAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified network ACL with the subnet for the specified network ACL association.

```
Set-EC2NetworkAclAssociation -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -AssociationId
 aclassoc-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
aclassoc-87654321
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-EC2NetworkAclEntry`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-EC2NetworkAclEntry`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the specified entry for the specified network ACL. The new rule allows inbound traffic from the specified address to any associated subnet.

```
Set-EC2NetworkAclEntry -NetworkAclId acl-12345678 -Egress $false -RuleNumber 100
 -Protocol 17 -PortRange_From 53 -PortRange_To 53 -CidrBlock 203.0.113.12/24 -
RuleAction allow
```

- For API details, see ReplaceNetworkAclEntry in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-EC2Route`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-EC2Route`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the specified route for the specified route table. The new route sends the specified traffic to the specified virtual private gateway.

```
Set-EC2Route -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -DestinationCidrBlock 10.0.0.0/24 -GatewayId
 vgw-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRoute in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-EC2RouteTableAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-EC2RouteTableAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified route table with the subnet for the specified route table association.

```
Set-EC2RouteTableAssociation -RouteTableId rtb-1a2b3c4d -AssociationId
 rtbassoc-12345678
```

Output:

```
rtbassoc-87654321
```

- For API details, see ReplaceRouteTableAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-EC2Instance`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-EC2Instance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example starts the specified instance.

```
Start-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

Example 2: This example starts the specified instances.

```
@("i-12345678", "i-76543210") | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 3: This example starts the set of instances that are currently stopped. The Instance objects returned by Get-EC2Instance are piped to Start-EC2Instance. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or higher.

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter @{ Name="instance-state-name"; Values="stopped"}).Instances
 | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the filter for the Filter parameter.

```
$filter = New-Object Amazon.EC2.Model.Filter
$filter.Name = "instance-state-name"
$filter.Values = "stopped"
```

```
(Get-EC2Instance -Filter $filter).Instances | Start-EC2Instance
```

Example 5: This example validates permissions for starting an EC2 instance using the DryRun parameter without actually starting the instance. Note: This throws an exception if succeeded which is the expected behavior.

```
Start-EC2Instance -InstanceId 'i-0abcdef123456' -Region 'us-west-1' -DryRun $true
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-EC2InstanceMonitoring`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-EC2InstanceMonitoring`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

```
Start-EC2InstanceMonitoring -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    Monitoring
----------    ----------
i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-EC2ImportTask`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-EC2ImportTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the specified import task (either snapshot or image import). If required, a reason can be providing using the `-CancelReason` parameter.

```
Stop-EC2ImportTask -ImportTaskId import-ami-abcdefgh
```

- For API details, see CancelImportTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-EC2Instance`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-EC2Instance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example stops the specified instance.

```
Stop-EC2Instance -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
CurrentState                      InstanceId    PreviousState
------------                      ----------    -------------
Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState    i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.InstanceState
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-EC2InstanceMonitoring`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-EC2InstanceMonitoring`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disables detailed monitoring for the specified instance.

```
Stop-EC2InstanceMonitoring -InstanceId i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId    Monitoring
----------    ----------
i-12345678    Amazon.EC2.Model.Monitoring
```

- For API details, see UnmonitorInstances in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the specified Spot fleet request and terminates the associated Spot instances.

```
Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TerminateInstance $true
```

Example 2: This example cancels the specified Spot fleet request without terminating the associated Spot instances.

```
Stop-EC2SpotFleetRequest -SpotFleetRequestId sfr-73fbd2ce-
aa30-494c-8788-1cee4EXAMPLE -TerminateInstance $false
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotFleetRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-EC2SpotInstanceRequest`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-EC2SpotInstanceRequest`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example cancels the specified Spot instance request.

```
Stop-EC2SpotInstanceRequest -SpotInstanceRequestId sir-12345678
```

Output:

```
SpotInstanceRequestId    State
---------------------    -----
sir-12345678             cancelled
```

- For API details, see CancelSpotInstanceRequests in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-EC2Address`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-EC2Address`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disassociates the specified Elastic IP address from the specified instance in a VPC.

```
Unregister-EC2Address -AssociationId eipassoc-12345678
```

Example 2: This example disassociates the specified Elastic IP address from the specified instance in EC2-Classic.

```
Unregister-EC2Address -PublicIp 203.0.113.17
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-EC2Image`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-EC2Image`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters the specified AMI.

```
Unregister-EC2Image -ImageId ami-12345678
```

- For API details, see DeregisterImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-EC2PrivateIpAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-EC2PrivateIpAddress`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example unassigns the specified private IP address from the specified network interface.

```
Unregister-EC2PrivateIpAddress -NetworkInterfaceId eni-1a2b3c4d -PrivateIpAddress
 10.0.0.82
```

- For API details, see UnassignPrivateIpAddresses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-EC2RouteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-EC2RouteTable`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified association between a route table and a subnet.

```
Unregister-EC2RouteTable -AssociationId rtbassoc-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DisassociateRouteTable in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the description of an existing ingress (inbound) security group rule.

```
$existingInboundRule = Get-EC2SecurityGroupRule -SecurityGroupRuleId
 "sgr-1234567890"
$ruleWithUpdatedDescription = [Amazon.EC2.Model.SecurityGroupRuleDescription]@{
  "SecurityGroupRuleId" = $existingInboundRule.SecurityGroupRuleId
  "Description" = "Updated rule description"
}

Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription -GroupId $existingInboundRule.GroupId
 -SecurityGroupRuleDescription $ruleWithUpdatedDescription
```

Example 2: Removes the description of an existing ingress (inbound) security group rule (by omitting the parameter in the request).

```
$existingInboundRule = Get-EC2SecurityGroupRule -SecurityGroupRuleId
 "sgr-1234567890"
$ruleWithoutDescription = [Amazon.EC2.Model.SecurityGroupRuleDescription]@{
  "SecurityGroupRuleId" = $existingInboundRule.SecurityGroupRuleId
}
```

```
Update-EC2SecurityGroupRuleIngressDescription -GroupId $existingInboundRule.GroupId
 -SecurityGroupRuleDescription $ruleWithoutDescription
```

- For API details, see UpdateSecurityGroupRuleDescriptionsIngress in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon ECR examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon ECR.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-ECRLoginCommand`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ECRLoginCommand`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a PSObject containing login information that can be used to authenticate to any Amazon ECR registry that your IAM principal has access to. The credentials and region endpoint required for the call to obtain the authorization token are obtained from the shell defaults (set up by the `Set-AWSCredential`/`Set-DefaultAWSRegion` or `Initialize-AWSDefaultConfiguration` cmdlets). You can use the Command property with Invoke-Expression to log in to the specified registry or use the returned credentials in other tools requiring login.

```
Get-ECRLoginCommand
```

Output:

```
Username      : AWS
Password      : eyJwYXlsb2Fk...kRBVEFfS0VZIn0=
ProxyEndpoint : https://123456789012.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
Endpoint      : https://123456789012.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
ExpiresAt     : 9/26/2017 6:08:23 AM
Command       : docker login --username AWS --password
 eyJwYXlsb2Fk...kRBVEFfS0VZIn0= https://123456789012.dkr.ecr.us-west-2.amazonaws.com
```

Example 2: Retrieves a PSObject containing login information that you use as an input to a docker login command. You can specify any Amazon ECR registry URI to authenticate to as long as your IAM principal has access to that registry.

```
(Get-ECRLoginCommand).Password | docker login --username AWS --password-stdin
 012345678910.dkr.ecr.us-east-1.amazonaws.com
```

- For API details, see Get-ECRLoginCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon ECS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon ECS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-ECSClusterDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ECSClusterDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet describes one or more of your ECS clusters.

```
Get-ECSClusterDetail -Cluster "LAB-ECS-CL" -Include SETTINGS | Select-Object *
```

Output:

```
LoggedAt         : 12/27/2019 9:27:41 PM
Clusters         : {LAB-ECS-CL}
Failures         : {}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 396
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ECSClusterList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ECSClusterList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns a list of existing ECS clusters.

```
Get-ECSClusterList
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-ECS-CL
arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-ECS
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ECSClusterService`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ECSClusterService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all services running in your default cluster.

```
Get-ECSClusterService
```

Example 2: This example lists all services running in the specified cluster.

```
Get-ECSClusterService -Cluster myCluster
```

- For API details, see ListServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ECSService`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ECSService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to retrieve details of a specific service from your default cluster.

```
Get-ECSService -Service my-hhtp-service
```

Example 2: This example shows how to retrieve details of a specific service running in the named cluster.

```
Get-ECSService -Cluster myCluster -Service my-hhtp-service
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ECSCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ECSCluster`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates a new Amazon ECS cluster.

```
New-ECSCluster -ClusterName "LAB-ECS-CL" -Setting @{Name="containerInsights";
 Value="enabled"}
```

Output:

```
ActiveServicesCount               : 0
Attachments                       : {}
AttachmentsStatus                 :
CapacityProviders                 : {}
ClusterArn                        : arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-
ECS-CL
ClusterName                       : LAB-ECS-CL
DefaultCapacityProviderStrategy   : {}
PendingTasksCount                 : 0
RegisteredContainerInstancesCount : 0
RunningTasksCount                 : 0
Settings                          : {containerInsights}
Statistics                        : {}
Status                            : ACTIVE
Tags                              : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ECSService`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ECSService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example command creates a service in your default cluster called `ecs-simple-service`. The service uses the `ecs-demo` task definition and it maintains 10 instantiations of that task.

```
New-ECSService -ServiceName ecs-simple-service -TaskDefinition ecs-demo -
DesiredCount 10
```

Example 2: This example command creates a service behind a load balancer in your default cluster called `ecs-simple-service`. The service uses the `ecs-demo` task definition and it maintains 10 instantiations of that task.

```
$lb = @{
    LoadBalancerName = "EC2Contai-EcsElast-S06278JGSJCM"
    ContainerName = "simple-demo"
    ContainerPort = 80
}
```

```
New-ECSService -ServiceName ecs-simple-service -TaskDefinition ecs-demo -
DesiredCount 10 -LoadBalancer $lb
```

- For API details, see CreateService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ECSCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ECSCluster`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the specified ECS cluster. You must deregister all container instances from this cluster before you may delete it.

```
Remove-ECSCluster -Cluster "LAB-ECS"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ECSCluster (DeleteCluster)" on target "LAB-ECS".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ECSService`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ECSService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the service named 'my-http-service' in the default cluster. The service must have a desired count and running count of 0 before you can delete it. You are prompted for confirmation before the command proceeds. To bypass the confirmation prompt add the -Force switch.

```
Remove-ECSService -Service my-http-service
```

Example 2: Deletes the service named 'my-http-service' in the named cluster.

```
Remove-ECSService -Cluster myCluster -Service my-http-service
```

- For API details, see DeleteService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-ECSClusterSetting`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-ECSClusterSetting`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet modifies the settings to use for an ECS cluster.

```
Update-ECSClusterSetting -Cluster "LAB-ECS-CL" -Setting @{Name="containerInsights";
 Value="disabled"}
```

Output:

```
ActiveServicesCount               : 0
Attachments                       : {}
AttachmentsStatus                 :
CapacityProviders                 : {}
ClusterArn                        : arn:aws:ecs:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/LAB-
ECS-CL
ClusterName                       : LAB-ECS-CL
DefaultCapacityProviderStrategy   : {}
PendingTasksCount                 : 0
RegisteredContainerInstancesCount : 0
RunningTasksCount                 : 0
Settings                          : {containerInsights}
Statistics                        : {}
Status                            : ACTIVE
Tags                              : {}
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-ECSService`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-ECSService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example command updates the `my-http-service` service to use the `amazon-ecs-sample` task definition.

```
Update-ECSService -Service my-http-service -TaskDefinition amazon-ecs-sample
```

Example 2: This example command updates the desired count of the `my-http-service` service to 10.

```
Update-ECSService -Service my-http-service -DesiredCount 10
```

- For API details, see UpdateService in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon EFS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon EFS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Edit-EFSMountTargetSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-EFSMountTargetSecurityGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the security groups in effect for the specified mount target. Up to 5 may be specified, in the format "sg-xxxxxxxx".

```
Edit-EFSMountTargetSecurityGroup -MountTargetId fsmt-1a2b3c4d -SecurityGroup sg-
group1,sg-group3
```

- For API details, see ModifyMountTargetSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EFSFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EFSFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of all file systems owned by the caller's account in the region.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:02:38 PM
CreationToken        : 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-1a2b3c4d
LifeCycleState       : available
Name                 :
NumberOfMountTargets : 0
OwnerId              : 123456789012
SizeInBytes          : Amazon.ElasticFileSystem.Model.FileSystemSize

CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:06:23 PM
CreationToken        : 2b4daa14-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-4d3c2b1a
...
```

Example 2: Returns the details of the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 3: Returns the details of a file system using the idempotency creation token that was specified at the time the file system was created.

```
Get-EFSFileSystem -CreationToken 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
```

- For API details, see DescribeFileSystems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EFSMountTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EFSMountTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of mount targets associated with the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
FileSystemId       : fs-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress          : 10.0.0.131
LifeCycleState     : available
MountTargetId      : fsmt-1a2b3c4d
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-1a2b3c4d
OwnerId            : 123456789012
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeMountTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EFSMountTargetSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EFSMountTargetSecurityGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the ids of the security groups currently assigned to the network interface associated with the mount target.

```
Get-EFSMountTargetSecurityGroup -MountTargetId fsmt-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
sg-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DescribeMountTargetSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EFSTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EFSTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of tags currently associated with the specified file system.

```
Get-EFSTag -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
Name        My File System
tagkey1     tagvalue1
tagkey2     tagvalue2
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EFSFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EFSFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new, empty file system. The token used to ensure idempotent creation will be generated automatically and can be accessed from the `CreationToken` member of the returned object.

```
New-EFSFileSystem
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 5/26/2015 4:02:38 PM
CreationToken        : 1a2bff54-85e0-4747-bd95-7bc172c4f555
FileSystemId         : fs-1a2b3c4d
LifeCycleState       : creating
```

```
Name                 :
NumberOfMountTargets : 0
OwnerId              : 123456789012
SizeInBytes          : Amazon.ElasticFileSystem.Model.FileSystemSize
```

Example 2: Creates a new, empty file system using a custom token to ensure idempotent creation.

```
New-EFSFileSystem -CreationToken "MyUniqueToken"
```

- For API details, see CreateFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EFSMountTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EFSMountTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new mount target for a file system. The specified subnet will be used determine the Virtual Private Cloud (VPC) that the mount target will be created in and the IP address that will be auto-assigned (from the address range of the subnet). The assigned IP address can be used to then mount this file system on an Amazon EC2 instance. As no security groups were specified the network interface created for the target is associated with the default security group for the subnet's VPC.

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Output:

```
FileSystemId       : fs-1a2b3c4d
IpAddress          : 10.0.0.131
LifeCycleState     : creating
MountTargetId      : fsmt-1a2b3c4d
NetworkInterfaceId : eni-1a2b3c4d
OwnerId            : 123456789012
SubnetId           : subnet-1a2b3c4d
```

Example 2: Creates a new mount target for the specified file system with auto-assigned IP address. The network interface created for the mount target is associated with the specified security groups (up to 5, in the format "sg-xxxxxxxx", may be specified).

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -
SecurityGroup sg-group1,sg-group2,sg-group3
```

Example 3: Creates a new mount target for the specified file system with the specified IP address.

```
New-EFSMountTarget -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d -IpAddress
 10.0.0.131
```

- For API details, see CreateMountTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EFSTag`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EFSTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Applies the collection of tags to the specified file system. If a tag with key specified already exists on the file system the value of the tag is updated.

```
New-EFSTag -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -Tag
 @{Key="tagkey1";Value="tagvalue1"},@{Key="tagkey2";Value="tagvalue2"}
```

Example 2: Sets the name tag for the specified file system. This value is returned along with other file system details when the Get-EFSFileSystem cmdlet is used.

```
New-EFSTag -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -Tag @{Key="Name";Value="My File System"}
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EFSFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EFSFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified file system that is no longer in use (if the file system has mount targets they must be removed first). You are prompted for confirmation before the cmdlet proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the `-Force` switch.

```
Remove-EFSFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DeleteFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EFSMountTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EFSMountTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified mount target. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds. To suppress the prompt use the `-Force` switch. Note that this operation forcibly breaks any mounts of the file system via the target - you may want to consider unmounting the file system before running this command, if feasible.

```
Remove-EFSMountTarget -MountTargetId fsmt-1a2b3c4d
```

- For API details, see DeleteMountTarget in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EFSTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EFSTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the collection of one or more tags from a file system. You are prompted for confirmation before the cmdlet proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the `-Force` switch.

```
Remove-EFSTag -FileSystemId fs-1a2b3c4d -TagKey "tagkey1","tagkey2"
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon EKS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon EKS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-EKSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-EKSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet associates the specified tags to a resource with the specified resourceArn.

```
Add-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD" -
Tag @{Name = "EKSPRODCLUSTER"}
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSCluster`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an Amazon EKS cluster.

```
Get-EKSCluster -Name "PROD"
```

Output:

```
Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
```

```
CreatedAt            : 12/25/2019 6:46:17 AM
Endpoint             : https://669608765450FBBE54D1D78A3D71B72C.gr8.us-
west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
Identity             : Amazon.EKS.Model.Identity
Logging              : Amazon.EKS.Model.Logging
Name                 : PROD
PlatformVersion      : eks.7
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/eks-iam-role
Status               : ACTIVE
Tags                 : {}
Version              : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSClusterList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSClusterList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the Amazon EKS clusters in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSClusterList
```

Output:

```
PROD
```

- For API details, see ListClusters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSFargateProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSFargateProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an AWS Fargate profile.

```
Get-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName "EKSFargate" -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:34:47 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargate/42b7a119-e16b-a279-ce97-bdf303adec92
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargate
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : ACTIVE
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see DescribeFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSFargateProfileList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSFargateProfileList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the AWS Fargate profiles associated with the specified cluster in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSFargateProfileList -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
EKSFargate
EKSFargateProfile
```

- For API details, see ListFargateProfiles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSNodegroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSNodegroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an Amazon EKS node group.

```
Get-EKSNodegroup -NodegroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -ClusterName "PROD"
```

Output:

```
AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      :
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : CREATING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DescribeNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSNodegroupList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSNodegroupList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the Amazon EKS node groups associated with the specified cluster in your AWS account in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSNodegroupList -ClusterName PROD
```

Output:

```
ProdEKSNodeGroup
```

- For API details, see ListNodegroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet list the tags for an Amazon EKS resource.

```
Get-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD"
```

Output:

```
Key  Value
---  -----
Name EKSPRODCLUSTER
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSUpdate`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSUpdate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet returns descriptive information about an update against your Amazon EKS cluster or associated managed node group.

```
Get-EKSUpdate -Name "PROD" -UpdateId "ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726"
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/25/2019 5:03:07 PM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : Successful
Type      : LoggingUpdate
```

- For API details, see DescribeUpdate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-EKSUpdateList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-EKSUpdateList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet lists the updates associated with an Amazon EKS cluster or managed node group in your AWS account, in the specified Region.

```
Get-EKSUpdateList -Name "PROD"
```

Output:

```
ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
```

- For API details, see ListUpdates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EKSCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EKSCluster`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new cluster called 'prod'.

```
New-EKSCluster -Name prod -ResourcesVpcConfig
 @{SubnetIds=@("subnet-0a1b2c3d","subnet-3a2b1c0d");SecurityGroupIds="sg-6979fe18"}
 -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/eks-service-role"
```

Output:

```
Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678901:cluster/prod
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/10/2018 9:25:31 PM
Endpoint             :
Name                 : prod
PlatformVersion      : eks.3
```

```
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678901:role/eks-service-role
Status               : CREATING
Version              : 1.10
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EKSFargateProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EKSFargateProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates an AWS Fargate profile for your Amazon EKS cluster. You must have at least one Fargate profile in a cluster to be able to schedule pods on Fargate infrastructure.

```
New-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName EKSFargateProfile -ClusterName TEST -
Subnet "subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0", "subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae" -PodExecutionRoleArn
 arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole -Selector
 @{Namespace="default"}
```

Output:

```
ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:38:21 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargateProfile/20b7a11b-8292-41c1-bc56-ffa5e60f6224
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargateProfile
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : CREATING
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-EKSNodeGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-EKSNodeGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet creates a managed worker node group for an Amazon EKS cluster. You can only create a node group for your cluster that is equal to the current Kubernetes version for the cluster. All node groups are created with the latest AMI release version for the respective minor Kubernetes version of the cluster.

```
New-EKSNodeGroup -NodeGroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -AmiType "AL2_x86_64"
 -DiskSize 40 -ClusterName "PROD" -ScalingConfig_DesiredSize 2 -
ScalingConfig_MinSize 2 -ScalingConfig_MaxSize 5 -InstanceType t3.large
 -NodeRole "arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole" -Subnet
 "subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691","subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4"
```

Output:

```
AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      :
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : CREATING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see CreateNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EKSCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EKSCluster`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes the Amazon EKS cluster control plane.

```
Remove-EKSCluster -Name "DEV-KUBE-CL"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSCluster (DeleteCluster)" on target "DEV-KUBE-
CL".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Arn                  : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/DEV-KUBE-CL
CertificateAuthority : Amazon.EKS.Model.Certificate
ClientRequestToken   :
CreatedAt            : 12/25/2019 9:33:25 AM
Endpoint             : https://02E6D31E3E4F8C15D7BE7F58D527776A.yl4.us-
west-2.eks.amazonaws.com
Identity             : Amazon.EKS.Model.Identity
Logging              : Amazon.EKS.Model.Logging
Name                 : DEV-KUBE-CL
PlatformVersion      : eks.7
ResourcesVpcConfig   : Amazon.EKS.Model.VpcConfigResponse
RoleArn              : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/eks-iam-role
Status               : DELETING
Tags                 : {}
Version              : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EKSFargateProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EKSFargateProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes an AWS Fargate profile. When you delete a Fargate profile, any pods running on Fargate that were created with the profile are deleted.

```
Remove-EKSFargateProfile -FargateProfileName "EKSFargate" -ClusterName "TEST"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSFargateProfile (DeleteFargateProfile)" on target
 "EKSFargate".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

ClusterName         : TEST
CreatedAt           : 12/26/2019 12:34:47 PM
FargateProfileArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-east-2:012345678912:fargateprofile/TEST/
EKSFargate/42b7a119-e16b-a279-ce97-bdf303adec92
FargateProfileName  : EKSFargate
PodExecutionRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/
AmazonEKSFargatePodExecutionRole
Selectors           : {Amazon.EKS.Model.FargateProfileSelector}
Status              : DELETING
Subnets             : {subnet-0cd976f08d5fbfaae, subnet-02f6ff500ff2067a0}
Tags                : {}
```

- For API details, see DeleteFargateProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EKSNodegroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EKSNodegroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes an Amazon EKS node group for a cluster.

```
Remove-EKSNodegroup -NodegroupName "ProdEKSNodeGroup" -ClusterName "PROD"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSNodegroup (DeleteNodegroup)" on target
 "ProdEKSNodeGroup".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

AmiType        : AL2_x86_64
ClusterName    : PROD
CreatedAt      : 12/25/2019 10:16:45 AM
DiskSize       : 40
Health         : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupHealth
InstanceTypes  : {t3.large}
Labels         : {}
ModifiedAt     : 12/25/2019 11:01:16 AM
NodegroupArn   : arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:nodegroup/PROD/
ProdEKSNodeGroup/7eb79e47-82b6-04d9-e984-95110db6fa85
NodegroupName  : ProdEKSNodeGroup
NodeRole       : arn:aws:iam::012345678912:role/NodeInstanceRole
ReleaseVersion : 1.14.7-20190927
RemoteAccess   :
Resources      : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupResources
ScalingConfig  : Amazon.EKS.Model.NodegroupScalingConfig
Status         : DELETING
Subnets        : {subnet-0d1a9fff35efa7691, subnet-0a3f4928edbc224d4}
Tags           : {}
Version        : 1.14
```

- For API details, see DeleteNodegroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-EKSResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-EKSResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet deletes specified tags from an EKS resource.

```
Remove-EKSResourceTag -ResourceArn "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD"
 -TagKey "Name"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-EKSResourceTag (UntagResource)" on target
 "arn:aws:eks:us-west-2:012345678912:cluster/PROD".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-EKSClusterConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-EKSClusterConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates an Amazon EKS cluster configuration. Your cluster continues to function during the update.

```
Update-EKSClusterConfig -Name "PROD" -Logging_ClusterLogging
 @{Types="api","audit","authenticator","controllerManager","scheduler",Enabled="True"}
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/25/2019 5:03:07 PM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ee708232-7d2e-4ed7-9270-d0b5176f0726
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : InProgress
Type      : LoggingUpdate
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-EKSClusterVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-EKSClusterVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This cmdlet updates an Amazon EKS cluster to the specified Kubernetes version. Your cluster continues to function during the update.

```
Update-EKSClusterVersion -Name "PROD-KUBE-CL" -Version 1.14
```

Output:

```
CreatedAt : 12/26/2019 9:50:37 AM
Errors    : {}
Id        : ef186eff-3b3a-4c25-bcfc-3dcdf9e898a8
Params    : {Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam, Amazon.EKS.Model.UpdateParam}
Status    : InProgress
Type      : VersionUpdate
```

- For API details, see UpdateClusterVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 1.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-ELBLoadBalancerToSubnet`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-ELBLoadBalancerToSubnet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified subnet to the set of subnets configured for the specified load balancer. The output includes the complete list of subnets.

```
Add-ELBLoadBalancerToSubnet -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Subnet
 subnet-12345678
```

Output:

```
subnet-12345678
subnet-87654321
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerToSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-ELBResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-ELBResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified tags to the specified load balancer. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Add-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag
 @{ Key="project";Value="lima" },@{ Key="department";Value="digital-media" }
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create a tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "project"
$tag.Value = "lima"
Add-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag $tag
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified Availability Zone from the specified load balancer. The output includes the remaining Availability Zones.

```
Disable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
us-west-2b
```

- For API details, see DisableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Dismount-ELBLoadBalancerFromSubnet`

The following code example shows how to use `Dismount-ELBLoadBalancerFromSubnet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified subnet from the set of subnets configured for the specified load balancer. The output includes the remaining subnets.

```
Dismount-ELBLoadBalancerFromSubnet -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Subnet
 subnet-12345678
```

Output:

```
subnet-87654321
```

- For API details, see DetachLoadBalancerFromSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example enables cross-zone load balancing for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
CrossZoneLoadBalancing_Enabled $true
```

Example 2: This example disables connection draining for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
ConnectionDraining_Enabled $false
```

Example 3: This example enables access logging for the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -AccessLog_Enabled $true `
>> -AccessLog_S3BucketName amzn-s3-demo-logging-bucket `
>> -AccessLog_S3BucketPrefix my-app/prod `
>> -AccessLog_EmitInterval 60
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the specified Availability Zone to the specified load balancer. The output includes the complete list of Availability Zones.

```
Enable-ELBAvailabilityZoneForLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
```

Output:

```
us-west-2a
us-west-2b
```

- For API details, see EnableAvailabilityZonesForLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELBInstanceHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELBInstanceHealth`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the state of the instances registered with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
Description                   InstanceId                    ReasonCode
      State
-----------                   ----------                    ----------
      -----
N/A                           i-87654321                    N/A
      InService
Instance has failed at lea... i-12345678                    Instance
      OutOfService
```

Example 2: This example describes the state of the specified instance registered with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance i-12345678
```

Example 3: This example displays the complete description of the state of the specified instance.

```
(Get-ELBInstanceHealth -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678).Description
```

Output:

```
Instance has failed at least the UnhealthyThreshold number of health checks
 consecutively.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELBLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELBLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the names of your load balancers.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer | format-table -property LoadBalancerName
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName
----------------
my-load-balancer
my-other-load-balancer
my-internal-load-balancer
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones         : {us-west-2a, us-west-2b}
BackendServerDescriptions :
 {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.BackendServerDescription}
CanonicalHostedZoneName   : my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
CanonicalHostedZoneNameID : Z3DZXE0EXAMPLE
CreatedTime               : 4/11/2015 12:12:45 PM
DNSName                   : my-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
HealthCheck               : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.HealthCheck
Instances                 : {i-207d9717, i-afefb49b}
ListenerDescriptions      : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ListenerDescription}
LoadBalancerName          : my-load-balancer
Policies                  : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Policies
Scheme                    : internet-facing
SecurityGroups            : {sg-a61988c3}
SourceSecurityGroup       : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.SourceSecurityGroup
Subnets                   : {subnet-15aaab61}
VPCId                     : vpc-a01106c2
```

Example 3: This example describes all your load balancers in the current AWS region.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancer
```

Example 4: This example describes all your load balancers across all available AWS Regions.

```
Get-AWSRegion | % { Get-ELBLoadBalancer -Region $_ }
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the attributes for the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
AccessLog              : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.AccessLog
AdditionalAttributes   : {}
ConnectionDraining     : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ConnectionDraining
ConnectionSettings     : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.ConnectionSettings
CrossZoneLoadBalancing : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.CrossZoneLoadBalancing
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the policies associated with the specified load balancer.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
PolicyAttributeDescriptions             PolicyName
 PolicyTypeName
```

```
---------------------------             ----------
 --------------
{ProxyProtocol}                         my-ProxyProtocol-policy
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
{CookieName}                            my-app-cookie-policy
 AppCookieStickinessPolicyType
```

Example 2: This example describes the attributes of the specified policy.

```
(Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
ProxyProtocol-policy).PolicyAttributeDescriptions
```

Output:

```
AttributeName    AttributeValue
-------------    --------------
ProxyProtocol    true
```

Example 3: This example describes the predefined policies, including the sample policies. The names of the sample policies have the ELBSample- prefix.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy
```

Output:

```
PolicyAttributeDescriptions             PolicyName
 PolicyTypeName
---------------------------             ----------
 --------------
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-03
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-02
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2014-10
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2014-01
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSecurityPolicy-2011-08
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
```

```
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSample-ELBDefaultCipherPolicy
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
{Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro... ELBSample-OpenSSLDefaultCipherPolicy
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the policy types supported by Elastic Load Balancing.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType
```

Output:

```
Description                             PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions
 PolicyTypeName
-----------                             -------------------------------
 --------------
Stickiness policy with session lifet... {CookieExpirationPeriod}
 LBCookieStickinessPolicyType
Policy that controls authentication ... {PublicKeyPolicyName}
 BackendServerAuthenticationPolicyType
Listener policy that defines the cip... {Protocol-SSLv2, Protocol-TLSv1, Pro...
 SSLNegotiationPolicyType
Policy containing a list of public k... {PublicKey}
 PublicKeyPolicyType
Stickiness policy with session lifet... {CookieName}
 AppCookieStickinessPolicyType
Policy that controls whether to incl... {ProxyProtocol}
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Example 2: This example describes the specified policy type.

```
Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType -PolicyTypeName ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Output:

```
Description                              PolicyAttributeTypeDescriptions
 PolicyTypeName
-----------                              -------------------------------
 --------------
Policy that controls whether to incl... {ProxyProtocol}
 ProxyProtocolPolicyType
```

Example 3: This example displays the complete description of the specified policy type.

```
(Get-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyType -PolicyTypeName).Description
```

Output:

```
Policy that controls whether to include the IP address and port of the originating
 request for TCP messages.
This policy operates on TCP/SSL listeners only
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerPolicyTypes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELBResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELBResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the tags for the specified load balancers.

```
Get-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName @("my-load-balancer","my-internal-load-
balancer")
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerName             Tags
----------------             ----
my-load-balancer             {project, department}
my-internal-load-balancer    {project, department}
```

Example 2: This example describes the tags for the specified load balancer.

```
(Get-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer).Tags
```

Output:

```
Key           Value
---           -----
project       lima
department    digital-media
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the current security group for the specified load balancer with the specified security group.

```
Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
SecurityGroup sg-87654321
```

Output:

```
sg-87654321
```

Example 2: To keep the current security group and specify an additional security group, specify both the existing and new security groups.

```
Join-ELBSecurityGroupToLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
SecurityGroup @("sg-12345678", "sg-87654321")
```

Output:

```
sg-12345678
```

```
sg-87654321
```

- For API details, see ApplySecurityGroupsToLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELBAppCookieStickinessPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELBAppCookieStickinessPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a stickiness policy that follows the sticky session lifetimes of the specified application-generated cookie.

```
New-ELBAppCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
app-cookie-policy -CookieName my-app-cookie
```

- For API details, see CreateAppCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the specified expiration period (in seconds).

```
New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
duration-cookie-policy -CookieExpirationPeriod 60
```

Example 2: This example creates a stickiness policy with sticky session lifetimes controlled by the by the lifetime of the browser (user-agent).

```
New-ELBLBCookieStickinessPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
duration-cookie-policy
```

- For API details, see CreateLbCookieStickinessPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-ELBLoadBalancer

The following code example shows how to use New-ELBLoadBalancer.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in a VPC.

```
$httpListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpListener.Protocol = "http"
$httpListener.LoadBalancerPort = 80
$httpListener.InstanceProtocol = "http"
$httpListener.InstancePort = 80
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-vpc-load-balancer -SecurityGroup sg-
a61988c3 -Subnet subnet-15aaab61 -Listener $httpListener

my-vpc-load-balancer-1234567890.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

Example 2: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTP listener in EC2-Classic.

```
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-classic-load-balancer -AvailabilityZone us-
west-2a` -Listener $httpListener
```

Output:

```
my-classic-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

Example 3: This example creates a load balancer with an HTTPS listener.

```
$httpsListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpsListener.Protocol = "https"
$httpsListener.LoadBalancerPort = 443
$httpsListener.InstanceProtocol = "http"
$httpsListener.InstancePort = 80
$httpsListener.SSLCertificateId="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/my-
server-cert"
New-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -AvailabilityZone us-west-2a
 -Listener $httpsListener

my-load-balancer-123456789.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELBLoadBalancerListener`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELBLoadBalancerListener`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds an HTTPS listener to the specified load balancer.

```
$httpsListener = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Listener
$httpsListener.Protocol = "https"
$httpsListener.LoadBalancerPort = 443
$httpsListener.InstanceProtocol = "https"
$httpsListener.InstancePort = 443
$httpsListener.SSLCertificateId="arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/my-
server-cert"
New-ELBLoadBalancerListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Listener
 $httpsListener
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new proxy protocol policy for a specified load balancer.

```
$attribute = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.PolicyAttribute -Property
 @{
         AttributeName="ProxyProtocol"
         AttributeValue="True"
    }
New-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
ProxyProtocol-policy -PolicyTypeName ProxyProtocolPolicyType -PolicyAttribute
 $attribute
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-ELBInstanceWithLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-ELBInstanceWithLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers the specified EC2 instance with the specified load balancer.

```
Register-ELBInstanceWithLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678
```

Output:

```
InstanceId
----------
i-12345678
i-87654321
```

- For API details, see RegisterInstancesWithLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified EC2 instance from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Instance
 i-12345678
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing operation "Remove-ELBInstanceFromLoadBalancer
 (DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer)" on Target
"Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.Instance".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):

InstanceId
----------
i-87654321
```

- For API details, see DeregisterInstancesFromLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELBLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELBLoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancer (DeleteLoadBalancer)" on Target "my-
load-balancer".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the listener on port 80 for the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -LoadBalancerPort
 80
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancerListener (DeleteLoadBalancerListeners)"
 on Target "80".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified policy from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter.

```
Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -PolicyName my-
duration-cookie-policy
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing operation "Remove-ELBLoadBalancerPolicy (DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy)" on
 Target "my-duration-cookie-policy".
```

```
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancerPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELBResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELBResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified tag from the specified load balancer. You are prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds, unless you also specify the Force parameter. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
Remove-ELBResourceTag -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -Tag @{ Key="project" }
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELBResourceTag (RemoveTags)" on target
 "Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.TagKeyOnly".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"):
```

Example 2: With Powershell version 2, you must use New-Object to create the tag for the Tag parameter.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancing.Model.TagKeyOnly
$tag.Key = "project"
Remove-ELBResourceTag -Tag $tag -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELBHealthCheck`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELBHealthCheck`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example configures the health check settings for the specified load balancer.

```
Set-ELBHealthCheck -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -HealthCheck_HealthyThreshold 2 `
>> -HealthCheck_UnhealthyThreshold 2 `
>> -HealthCheck_Target "HTTP:80/ping" `
>> -HealthCheck_Interval 30 `
>> -HealthCheck_Timeout 3
```

Output:

```
HealthyThreshold   : 2
Interval           : 30
Target             : HTTP:80/ping
Timeout            : 3
UnhealthyThreshold : 2
```

- For API details, see ConfigureHealthCheck in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELBLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELBLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the certificate that terminates the SSL connections for the specified listener.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerListenerSSLCertificate -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer `
>> -LoadBalancerPort 443 `
>> -SSLCertificateId "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/new-server-cert"
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerListenerSslCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the policies for the specified port with the specified policy.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
InstancePort 80 -PolicyName my-ProxyProtocol-policy
```

Example 2: This example removes all policies associated with the specified port.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyForBackendServer -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
InstancePort 80
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesForBackendServer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example replaces the policies for the specified listener with the specified policy.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
LoadBalancerPort 443 -PolicyName my-SSLNegotiation-policy
```

Example 2: This example removes all policies associated with the specified listener.

```
Set-ELBLoadBalancerPolicyOfListener -LoadBalancerName my-load-balancer -
LoadBalancerPort 443
```

- For API details, see SetLoadBalancerPoliciesOfListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-ELB2ListenerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-ELB2ListenerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds additional certificate to the specified Listener.

```
Add-ELB2ListenerCertificate -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618' -
Certificate @{CertificateArn = 'arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97'}
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
 IsDefault
--------------
 ---------
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97
 False
```

- For API details, see AddListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Add-ELB2Tag

The following code example shows how to use Add-ELB2Tag.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example add new Tag to specified AWS.Tools.ElasticLoadBalancingV2 resource.

```
Add-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Tag @{Key =
 'productVersion'; Value = '1.0.0'}
```

- For API details, see AddTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Edit-ELB2Listener

The following code example shows how to use Edit-ELB2Listener.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the specified listeners default action to fixed-response.

```
$newDefaultAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
    "FixedResponseConfig" = @{
    "ContentType" = "text/plain"
    "MessageBody" = "Hello World"
    "StatusCode" = "200"
  }
  "Type" = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.ActionTypeEnum]::FixedResponse
}

Edit-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/d19f2f14974db685' -Port
 8080 -DefaultAction $newDefaultAction
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/
testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/d19f2f14974db685
```

```
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676
Port            : 8080
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :
```

- For API details, see ModifyListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the Attributes of the specified load balancer.

```
Edit-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Attribute @{Key =
 'deletion_protection.enabled'; Value = 'true'}
```

Output:

```
Key                                          Value
---                                          -----
deletion_protection.enabled                  true
access_logs.s3.enabled                       false
access_logs.s3.bucket
access_logs.s3.prefix
idle_timeout.timeout_seconds                 60
routing.http2.enabled                        true
routing.http.drop_invalid_header_fields.enabled false
```

- For API details, see ModifyLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-ELB2Rule`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-ELB2Rule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the specified Listener rule configurations.

```
$newRuleCondition = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition]@{
    "PathPatternConfig" = @{
    "Values" = "/login1","/login2","/login3"
  }
  "Field" = "path-pattern"
}

Edit-ELB2Rule -RuleArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/
f4f51dfaa033a8cc' -Condition $newRuleCondition
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 10
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/
testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/f4f51dfaa033a8cc
```

- For API details, see ModifyRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-ELB2TargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-ELB2TargetGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the properties of the specified Target Group.

```
Edit-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -HealthCheckIntervalSecond
 60 -HealthCheckPath '/index.html' -HealthCheckPort 8080
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 60
HealthCheckPath            : /index.html
HealthCheckPort            : 8080
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
```

```
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 5
LoadBalancerArns           : {}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970
TargetGroupName            : test-tg
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 2
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifies the deregistration_delay attribute of the specified Target Group.

```
Edit-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -Attribute @{Key =
 'deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds'; Value = 600}
```

Output:

```
Key                                  Value
---                                  -----
stickiness.enabled                   false
deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds 600
stickiness.type                      lb_cookie
stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds 86400
slow_start.duration_seconds          0
load_balancing.algorithm.type        round_robin
```

- For API details, see ModifyTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2AccountLimit`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2AccountLimit`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command lists ELB2 account limits for a given region.

```
Get-ELB2AccountLimit
```

Output:

```
Max  Name
---  ----
3000 target-groups
1000 targets-per-application-load-balancer
50   listeners-per-application-load-balancer
100  rules-per-application-load-balancer
50   network-load-balancers
3000 targets-per-network-load-balancer
500  targets-per-availability-zone-per-network-load-balancer
50   listeners-per-network-load-balancer
5    condition-values-per-alb-rule
5    condition-wildcards-per-alb-rule
100  target-groups-per-application-load-balancer
5    target-groups-per-action-on-application-load-balancer
1    target-groups-per-action-on-network-load-balancer
50   application-load-balancers
```

- For API details, see DescribeAccountLimits in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2Listener`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2Listener`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples describes listeners of the specified ALB/NLB.

```
Get-ELB2Listener -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/1dac07c21187d41e
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f
Port            : 80
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :

Certificates    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Certificate}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/
app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f
Port            : 443
Protocol        : HTTPS
SslPolicy       : ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08
```

- For API details, see DescribeListeners in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2ListenerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2ListenerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples describes the certificate for the specified listener.

```
Get-ELB2ListenerCertificate -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
CertificateArn
 IsDefault
--------------
 ---------
```

```
arn:aws:acm:us-east-1:123456789012:certificate/5fc7c092-68bf-4862-969c-22fd48b6e17c
 True
```

- For API details, see DescribeListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2LoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2LoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays all the load balancers for the given region.

```
Get-ELB2LoadBalancer
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones     : {us-east-1c}
CanonicalHostedZoneId : Z26RNL4JYFTOTI
CreatedTime           : 6/22/18 11:21:50 AM
DNSName               : test-elb1234567890-238d34ad8d94bc2e.elb.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com
IpAddressType         : ipv4
LoadBalancerArn       : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/test-elb1234567890/238d34ad8d94bc2e
LoadBalancerName      : test-elb1234567890
Scheme                : internet-facing
SecurityGroups        : {}
State                 : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.LoadBalancerState
Type                  : network
VpcId                 : vpc-2cf00000
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command describes the attributes of given Load balancer.

```
Get-ELB2LoadBalancerAttribute -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/net/test-elb/238d34ad8d94bc2e'
```

Output:

```
Key                              Value
---                              -----
access_logs.s3.enabled           false
load_balancing.cross_zone.enabled true
access_logs.s3.prefix
deletion_protection.enabled      false
access_logs.s3.bucket
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancerAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2Rule`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2Rule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the listener rules for the specified Listener ARN.

```
Get-ELB2Rule -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 1
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/2286fff5055e0f79

Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 2
```

```
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/14e7b036567623ba

Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {}
IsDefault  : True
Priority   : default
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b/853948cf3aa9b2bf
```

- For API details, see DescribeRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2SSLPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2SSLPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples lists all available listener policies for ElasticLoadBalancingV2.

```
Get-ELB2SSLPolicy
```

Output:

```
Ciphers
                                Name                                    SslProtocols
-------
                                ----                                    ------------
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-2016-08             {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-2017-01     {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-1-2017-01     {TLSv1.1,
 TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-2-Ext-2018-06 {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-2018-06          {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
```

```
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-2015-05             {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-TLS-1-0-2015-04     {TLSv1,
 TLSv1.1, TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-Res-2019-08  {TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-1-2019-08      {TLSv1.1,
 TLSv1.2}
{ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256, ECDHE-ECDSA-AES128-
SHA256, ECDHE-RSA-AES128-SHA256} ELBSecurityPolicy-FS-1-2-2019-08      {TLSv1.2}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSslPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2Tag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2Tag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the Tags for the specified resource.

```
Get-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn
           Tags
-----------
           ----
arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f {stage, internalName, version}
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2TargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2TargetGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 30
HealthCheckPath            : /
HealthCheckPort            : traffic-port
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 5
LoadBalancerArns           : {arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970
TargetGroupName            : test-tg
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 2
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the attributes of the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetGroupAttribute -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
Key                                 Value
---                                 -----
stickiness.enabled                  false
deregistration_delay.timeout_seconds  300
stickiness.type                     lb_cookie
stickiness.lb_cookie.duration_seconds 86400
slow_start.duration_seconds         0
load_balancing.algorithm.type       round_robin
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetGroupAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ELB2TargetHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ELB2TargetHealth`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the health status of the Targets present in the specified Target Group.

```
Get-ELB2TargetHealth -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckPort Target                                                TargetHealth
--------------- ------                                                ------------
80              Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetDescription
 Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetHealth
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELB2Listener`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELB2Listener`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new ALB listener with the default action 'Forward' to send traffic to specified Target Group.

```
$defaultAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
  ForwardConfig = @{
    TargetGroups = @(
      @{ TargetGroupArn = "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/testAlbTG/3d61c2f20aa5bccb" }
    )
    TargetGroupStickinessConfig = @{
      DurationSeconds = 900
      Enabled = $true
    }
  }
  Type = "Forward"
}

New-ELB2Listener -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676' -Port 8001 -Protocol
 "HTTP" -DefaultAction $defaultAction
```

Output:

```
Certificates    : {}
DefaultActions  : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
ListenerArn     : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/
testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80
LoadBalancerArn : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/
app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676
Port            : 8001
Protocol        : HTTP
SslPolicy       :
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELB2LoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELB2LoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new internet facing Application load balancer with two subnets.

```
New-ELB2LoadBalancer -Type application -Scheme internet-facing -IpAddressType
 ipv4 -Name 'New-Test-ALB' -SecurityGroup 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd' -subnet 'subnet-
c37a67a6','subnet-fc02eea0'
```

Output:

```
AvailabilityZones     : {us-east-1b, us-east-1a}
CanonicalHostedZoneId : Z35SXDOTRQ7X7K
CreatedTime           : 12/28/19 2:58:03 PM
DNSName               : New-Test-ALB-1391502222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com
IpAddressType         : ipv4
LoadBalancerArn       : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/New-Test-ALB/dab2e4d90eb51493
LoadBalancerName      : New-Test-ALB
Scheme                : internet-facing
SecurityGroups        : {sg-07c3414abb8811cbd}
State                 : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.LoadBalancerState
Type                  : application
VpcId                 : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELB2Rule`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELB2Rule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new Listener rule with fixed-response action based on the customer header value for the specified Listener.

```
$newRuleAction = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action]@{
  "FixedResponseConfig" = @{
    "ContentType" = "text/plain"
    "MessageBody" = "Hello World"
    "StatusCode" = "200"
  }
  "Type" = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.ActionTypeEnum]::FixedResponse
}

$newRuleCondition = [Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition]@{
```

```
  "httpHeaderConfig" = @{
    "HttpHeaderName" = "customHeader"
    "Values" = "header2","header1"
  }
  "Field" = "http-header"
}

New-ELB2Rule -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80' -Action
 $newRuleAction -Condition $newRuleCondition -Priority 10
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 10
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/
testALB/3e2f03b558e19676/1c84f02aec143e80/f4f51dfaa033a8cc
```

- For API details, see CreateRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ELB2TargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ELB2TargetGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates new Target group with the provided parameters.

```
New-ELB2TargetGroup -HealthCheckEnabled 1 -HealthCheckIntervalSeconds 30 -
HealthCheckPath '/index.html' -HealthCheckPort 80 -HealthCheckTimeoutSecond 5 -
HealthyThresholdCount 2 -UnhealthyThresholdCount 5 -Port 80 -Protocol 'HTTP' -
TargetType instance -VpcId 'vpc-2cfd7000' -Name 'NewTargetGroup'
```

Output:

```
HealthCheckEnabled         : True
HealthCheckIntervalSeconds : 30
HealthCheckPath            : /index.html
HealthCheckPort            : 80
```

```
HealthCheckProtocol        : HTTP
HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds  : 5
HealthyThresholdCount      : 2
LoadBalancerArns           : {}
Matcher                    : Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Matcher
Port                       : 80
Protocol                   : HTTP
TargetGroupArn             : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/NewTargetGroup/534e484681d801bf
TargetGroupName            : NewTargetGroup
TargetType                 : instance
UnhealthyThresholdCount    : 5
VpcId                      : vpc-2cfd7000
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-ELB2Target`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-ELB2Target`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111' instance with the specified target group.

```
Register-ELB2Target -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/a4e04b3688be1970' -Target @{Port = 80; Id =
 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111'}
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELB2Listener`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELB2Listener`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Listener.

```
Remove-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Listener (DeleteListener)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/66e10e3aaf5b6d9b".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

Example 2: This example removes specified listener from the Load balancer.

```
Remove-ELB2Listener -ListenerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Listener (DeleteListener)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteListener in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes specified certificate from the specified Target group.

```
Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate -Certificate @{CertificateArn = 'arn:aws:acm:us-
east-1:123456789012:certificate/19478bd5-491d-47d4-b1d7-5217feba1d97'} -ListenerArn
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2ListenerCertificate
 (RemoveListenerCertificates)" on target "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see RemoveListenerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified Load balancer.

```
Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2LoadBalancer (DeleteLoadBalancer)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELB2Rule`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELB2Rule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified rule from the Listener

```
Remove-ELB2Rule -RuleArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618/4b25eb10a42e33ab'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Rule (DeleteRule)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/3873f123b98f7618/4b25eb10a42e33ab".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteRule in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELB2Tag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELB2Tag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the tag for the specified key.

```
Remove-ELB2Tag -ResourceArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -TagKey
 'productVersion'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2Tag (RemoveTags)" on target
 "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see RemoveTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-ELB2TargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-ELB2TargetGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified Target Group.

```
Remove-ELB2TargetGroup -TargetGroupArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/testsssss/4e0b6076bc6483a7'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-ELB2TargetGroup (DeleteTargetGroup)" on
 target "arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/
testsssss/4e0b6076bc6483a7".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): y
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELB2IpAddressType`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELB2IpAddressType`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes Load balancer IP address type from 'IPv4' to 'DualStack'.

```
Set-ELB2IpAddressType -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -IpAddressType
 dualstack
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
dualstack
```

- For API details, see SetIpAddressType in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELB2RulePriority`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELB2RulePriority`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the priority of the specified listener rule.

```
Set-ELB2RulePriority -RulePriority -RulePriority @{Priority = 11; RuleArn =
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/test-
alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/a4eb199fa5046f80/dbf4c6dcef3ec6f8'}
```

Output:

```
Actions    : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.Action}
Conditions : {Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.RuleCondition}
IsDefault  : False
Priority   : 11
RuleArn    : arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:listener-rule/app/
test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f/a4eb199fa5046f80/dbf4c6dcef3ec6f8
```

- For API details, see SetRulePriorities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELB2SecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELB2SecurityGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds security group 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd' to the specified Load balancer.

```
Set-ELB2SecurityGroup -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -SecurityGroup
 'sg-07c3414abb8811cbd'
```

Output:

```
sg-07c3414abb8811cbd
```

- For API details, see SetSecurityGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-ELB2Subnet`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-ELB2Subnet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example modifes the subnets of the specified Load balancer.

```
Set-ELB2Subnet -LoadBalancerArn 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-
east-1:123456789012:loadbalancer/app/test-alb/3651b4394dd9a24f' -Subnet
 'subnet-7d8a0a51','subnet-c37a67a6'
```

Output:

```
LoadBalancerAddresses SubnetId        ZoneName
--------------------- --------        --------
{}                    subnet-7d8a0a51 us-east-1c
{}                    subnet-c37a67a6 us-east-1b
```

- For API details, see SetSubnets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-ELB2Target`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-ELB2Target`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters instance 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111' from the specified Target group.

```
$targetDescription = New-Object
 Amazon.ElasticLoadBalancingV2.Model.TargetDescription
$targetDescription.Id = 'i-0672a4c4cdeae3111'
Unregister-ELB2Target -Target $targetDescription -TargetGroupArn
 'arn:aws:elasticloadbalancing:us-east-1:123456789012:targetgroup/test-tg/
a4e04b3688be1970'
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon FSx examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon FSx.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-FSXResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-FSXResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tags to the given resource.

```
Add-FSXResourceTag -ResourceARN "arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:123456789012:file-system/
fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a" -Tag @{Key="Users";Value="Test"}
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:123456789012:file-system/fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-FSXBackup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-FSXBackup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches backups created since yesterday for the given file system id.

```
Get-FSXBackup -Filter @{Name="file-system-id";Values=$fsx.FileSystemId} | Where-
Object CreationTime -gt (Get-Date).AddDays(-1)
```

Output:

```
BackupId        : backup-01dac234e56782bcc
CreationTime    : 6/14/2019 3:35:14 AM
FailureDetails  :
FileSystem      : Amazon.FSx.Model.FileSystem
KmsKeyId        : arn:aws:kms:eu-west-1:123456789012:key/f1af23c4-1b23-1bde-a1f1-
e1234c5af123
Lifecycle       : AVAILABLE
ProgressPercent : 100
ResourceARN     : arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:123456789012:backup/backup-01dac234e56782bcc
Tags            : {}
Type            : AUTOMATIC
```

- For API details, see DescribeBackups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-FSXFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-FSXFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the description of given filesystemId.

```
Get-FSXFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 1/17/2019 9:55:30 AM
DNSName              : fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a.ktmsad.local
FailureDetails       :
FileSystemId         : fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a
FileSystemType       : WINDOWS
KmsKeyId             : arn:aws:kms:eu-west-1:123456789012:key/f1af23c4-5b67-8bde-
a9f0-e1234c5af678
Lifecycle            : AVAILABLE
LustreConfiguration  :
NetworkInterfaceIds  : {eni-07d1dda1322b7e209}
```

```
OwnerId              : 123456789012
ResourceARN          : arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:123456789012:file-system/
fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a
StorageCapacity      : 300
SubnetIds            : {subnet-7d123456}
Tags                 : {FSx-Service}
VpcId                : vpc-41cf2b3f
WindowsConfiguration : Amazon.FSx.Model.WindowsFileSystemConfiguration
```

- For API details, see DescribeFileSystems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-FSXResourceTagList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-FSXResourceTagList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists tags for provided resource arn.

```
Get-FSXResourceTagList -ResourceARN $fsx.ResourceARN
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
FSx-Service Windows
Users       Dev
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-FSXBackup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-FSXBackup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a back up of the given file system.

```
New-FSXBackup -FileSystemId fs-0b1fac2345623456ba
```

Output:

```
BackupId        : backup-0b1fac2345623456ba
CreationTime    : 6/14/2019 5:37:17 PM
FailureDetails  :
FileSystem      : Amazon.FSx.Model.FileSystem
KmsKeyId        : arn:aws:kms:eu-west-1:123456789012:key/f1af23c4-1b23-1bde-a1f3-
e1234c5af678
Lifecycle       : CREATING
ProgressPercent : 0
ResourceARN     : arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:123456789012:backup/
backup-0b1fac2345623456ba
Tags            : {}
Type            : USER_INITIATED
```

- For API details, see CreateBackup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-FSXFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `New-FSXFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new 300GB Windows file system, permitting access from the specified subnet, that supports throughput up to 8 megabytes per second. The new file system is automatically joined to the specified Microsoft Active Directory.

```
New-FSXFileSystem -FileSystemType WINDOWS -StorageCapacity
 300 -SubnetId subnet-1a2b3c4d5e6f -WindowsConfiguration
 @{ThroughputCapacity=8;ActiveDirectoryId='d-1a2b3c4d'}
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 12/10/2018 6:06:59 PM
DNSName              : fs-abcdef01234567890.example.com
FailureDetails       :
FileSystemId         : fs-abcdef01234567890
FileSystemType       : WINDOWS
KmsKeyId             : arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:123456789012:key/a1234567-252c-45e9-
afaa-123456789abc
Lifecycle            : CREATING
LustreConfiguration  :
NetworkInterfaceIds  : {}
```

```
OwnerId              : 123456789012
ResourceARN          : arn:aws:fsx:us-west-2:123456789012:file-system/fs-
abcdef01234567890
StorageCapacity      : 300
SubnetIds            : {subnet-1a2b3c4d5e6f}
Tags                 : {}
VpcId                : vpc-1a2b3c4d5e6f
WindowsConfiguration : Amazon.FSx.Model.WindowsFileSystemConfiguration
```

- For API details, see CreateFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-FSXFileSystemFromBackup

The following code example shows how to use `New-FSXFileSystemFromBackup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This exmaple creates new Amazon FSx file system from an existing Amazon FSx for Windows File Server backup.

```
New-FSXFileSystemFromBackup -BackupId $backupID -Tag @{Key="tag:Name";Value="from-
manual-backup"} -SubnetId $SubnetID -SecurityGroupId $SG_ID -WindowsConfiguration
 @{ThroughputCapacity=8;ActiveDirectoryId=$DirectoryID}
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 8/8/2019 12:59:58 PM
DNSName              : fs-012ff34e56789120.ktmsad.local
FailureDetails       :
FileSystemId         : fs-012ff34e56789120
FileSystemType       : WINDOWS
KmsKeyId             : arn:aws:kms:eu-west-1:123456789012:key/f1af23c4-5b67-1bde-
a2f3-e4567c8a9321
Lifecycle            : CREATING
LustreConfiguration  :
NetworkInterfaceIds  : {}
OwnerId              : 933303704102
ResourceARN          : arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:123456789012:file-system/
fs-012ff34e56789120
StorageCapacity      : 300
SubnetIds            : {subnet-fa1ae23c}
Tags                 : {tag:Name}
```

```
VpcId                : vpc-12cf3b4f
WindowsConfiguration : Amazon.FSx.Model.WindowsFileSystemConfiguration
```

- For API details, see CreateFileSystemFromBackup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-FSXBackup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-FSXBackup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the given backup-id.

```
Remove-FSXBackup -BackupId $backupID
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-FSXBackup (DeleteBackup)" on target
 "backup-0bbca1e2345678e12".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

BackupId                Lifecycle
--------                ---------
backup-0bbca1e2345678e12 DELETED
```

- For API details, see DeleteBackup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-FSXFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-FSXFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the given FSX file system ID.

```
Remove-FSXFileSystem -FileSystemId fs-012ff34e567890120
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-FSXFileSystem (DeleteFileSystem)" on target
 "fs-012ff34e567890120".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

FileSystemId         Lifecycle WindowsResponse
------------         --------- ---------------
fs-012ff34e567890120 DELETING  Amazon.FSx.Model.DeleteFileSystemWindowsResponse
```

- For API details, see DeleteFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-FSXResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-FSXResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the resource tag for the given FSX file system resource ARN.

```
Remove-FSXResourceTag -ResourceARN $FSX.ResourceARN -TagKey Users
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-FSXResourceTag (UntagResource)" on target
 "arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:933303704102:file-system/fs-07cd45bc6bdf2674a".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-FSXFileSystem`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-FSXFileSystem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the FSX file system automatic backup retention days via UpdateFileSystemWindowsConfiguration.

```
$UpdateFSXWinConfig = [Amazon.FSx.Model.UpdateFileSystemWindowsConfiguration]::new()
 $UpdateFSXWinConfig.AutomaticBackupRetentionDays = 35
 Update-FSXFileSystem -FileSystemId $FSX.FileSystemId -WindowsConfiguration
 $UpdateFSXWinConfig
```

Output:

```
CreationTime         : 1/17/2019 9:55:30 AM
DNSName              : fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a.ktmsad.local
FailureDetails       :
FileSystemId         : fs-01cd23bc4bdf5678a
FileSystemType       : WINDOWS
KmsKeyId             : arn:aws:kms:eu-west-1:123456789012:key/f1af23c4-1b23-1bde-
a1f2-e1234c5af678
Lifecycle            : AVAILABLE
LustreConfiguration  :
NetworkInterfaceIds  : {eni-01cd23bc4bdf5678a}
OwnerId              : 933303704102
ResourceARN          : arn:aws:fsx:eu-west-1:933303704102:file-system/
fs-07cd45bc6bdf2674a
StorageCapacity      : 300
SubnetIds            : {subnet-1d234567}
Tags                 : {FSx-Service}
VpcId                : vpc-23cf4b5f
WindowsConfiguration : Amazon.FSx.Model.WindowsFileSystemConfiguration
```

- For API details, see UpdateFileSystem in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Glue examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Glue.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`New-GLUEJob`

The following code example shows how to use `New-GLUEJob`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new job in AWS Glue. The command name value is always `glueetl`. AWS Glue supports running job scripts written in Python or Scala. In this example, the job script (MyTestGlueJob.py) is written in Python. Python parameters are specified in the `$DefArgs` variable, and then passed to the PowerShell command in the `DefaultArguments` parameter, which accepts a hashtable. The parameters in the `$JobParams` variable come from the CreateJob API, documented in the Jobs (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/dg/aws-glue-api-jobs-job.html) topic of the AWS Glue API reference.

```
$Command = New-Object Amazon.Glue.Model.JobCommand
$Command.Name = 'glueetl'
$Command.ScriptLocation = 's3://amzn-s3-demo-source-bucket/admin/MyTestGlueJob.py'
$Command

$Source = "source_test_table"
$Target = "target_test_table"
$Connections = $Source, $Target

$DefArgs = @{
     '--TempDir' = 's3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/admin'
     '--job-bookmark-option' = 'job-bookmark-disable'
     '--job-language' = 'python'
     }
$DefArgs

$ExecutionProp = New-Object Amazon.Glue.Model.ExecutionProperty
$ExecutionProp.MaxConcurrentRuns = 1
```

```
$ExecutionProp

$JobParams = @{
    "AllocatedCapacity"    = "5"
    "Command"              = $Command
    "Connections_Connection" = $Connections
    "DefaultArguments"  = $DefArgs
    "Description"       = "This is a test"
    "ExecutionProperty" = $ExecutionProp
    "MaxRetries"        = "1"
    "Name"              = "MyOregonTestGlueJob"
    "Role"              = "Amazon-GlueServiceRoleForSSM"
    "Timeout"           = "20"
     }

New-GlueJob @JobParams
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Health examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Health.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-HLTHEvent`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-HLTHEvent`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns events from AWS Personal Health Dashboard. The user adds the -Region parameter to see events available to the service in the US East (N. Virginia) Region, but the -Filter_Region parameter filters for events that are logged in the EU (London) and US West (Oregon) Regions (eu-west-2 and us-west-2). The -Filter_StartTime parameter filters for a range of times that events can start, while the -Filter_EndTime parameter filters for a range of times that events can end. The result is a scheduled maintenance event for RDS that starts within the specified -Filter_StartTime range, and ends within the scheduled -Filter_EndTime range.

```
Get-HLTHEvent -Region us-east-1 -Filter_Region "eu-west-2","us-west-2" -
Filter_StartTime @{from="3/14/2019 6:30:00AM";to="3/15/2019 5:00:00PM"} -
Filter_EndTime @{from="3/21/2019 7:00:00AM";to="3/21/2019 5:00:00PM"}
```

Output:

```
Arn               : arn:aws:health:us-west-2::event/RDS/
AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED/
AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED_USW2_20190314_20190321
AvailabilityZone  :
EndTime           : 3/21/2019 2:00:00 PM
EventTypeCategory : scheduledChange
EventTypeCode     : AWS_RDS_HARDWARE_MAINTENANCE_SCHEDULED
LastUpdatedTime   : 2/28/2019 2:26:07 PM
Region            : us-west-2
Service           : RDS
StartTime         : 3/14/2019 2:00:00 PM
StatusCode        : open
```

- For API details, see DescribeEvents in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

IAM examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with IAM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-IAMClientIDToOpenIDConnectProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-IAMClientIDToOpenIDConnectProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the client ID (or audience) `my-application-ID` to the existing OIDC provider named `server.example.com`.

```
Add-IAMClientIDToOpenIDConnectProvider -ClientID "my-application-ID"
 -OpenIDConnectProviderARN "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
server.example.com"
```

- For API details, see AddClientIdToOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-IAMRoleTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-IAMRoleTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tag to Role in Identity Management Service

```
Add-IAMRoleTag -RoleName AdminRoleacess -Tag @{ Key = 'abac'; Value = 'testing'}
```

- For API details, see TagRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the role named `S3Access` to an existing instance profile named `webserver`. To create the instance profile, use the `New-IAMInstanceProfile` command. After you create the instance profile and associate it with a role using this command, you can attach it to an EC2 instance. To do that, use the `New-EC2Instance` cmdlet with either the `InstanceProfile_Arn` or the `InstanceProfile-Name` parameter to launch the new instance.

```
Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile -RoleName "S3Access" -InstanceProfileName "webserver"
```

- For API details, see AddRoleToInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-IAMUserTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-IAMUserTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tag to User in Identity Management Service

```
Add-IAMUserTag -UserName joe -Tag @{ Key = 'abac'; Value = 'testing'}
```

- For API details, see TagUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Add-IAMUserToGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-IAMUserToGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command adds the user named `Bob` to the group named `Admins`.

```
Add-IAMUserToGroup -UserName "Bob" -GroupName "Admins"
```

- For API details, see AddUserToGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Disable-IAMMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `Disable-IAMMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command disables the hardware MFA device associated with the user `Bob` that has the serial number `123456789012`.

```
Disable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "Bob" -SerialNumber "123456789012"
```

Example 2: This command disables the virtual MFA device associated with the user `David` that has the ARN `arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/David`. Note that virtual MFA device is not deleted from the account. The virtual device is still present and appears in the output of the `Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice` command. Before you can create a new virtual MFA device for the same user, you must delete the old one by using the `Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice` command.

```
Disable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "David" -SerialNumber "arn:aws:iam::210987654321:mfa/
David"
```

- For API details, see DeactivateMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-IAMPassword`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-IAMPassword`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command changes the password for the user that is running the command. This command can be called by IAM users only. If this command is called when you are signed-in with AWS account (root) credentials, the command returns an `InvalidUserType` error.

```
Edit-IAMPassword -OldPassword "MyOldP@ssw0rd" -NewPassword "MyNewP@ssw0rd"
```

- For API details, see ChangePassword in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Enable-IAMMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `Enable-IAMMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command enables the hardware MFA device with the serial number `987654321098` and associates the device with the user `Bob`. It includes the first two codes in sequence from the device.

```
Enable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "Bob" -SerialNumber "987654321098" -
AuthenticationCode1 "12345678" -AuthenticationCode2 "87654321"
```

Example 2: This example creates and enables a virtual MFA device. The first command creates the virtual device and returns the device's object representation in the variable `$MFADevice`. You can use the `.Base32StringSeed` or `QRCodePng` properties to configure the user's software application. The final command assigns the device to the user `David`, identifying the device by its serial number. The command also synchronizes the device with AWS by including the first two codes in sequence from the virtual MFA device.

```
$MFADevice = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName "MyMFADevice"
# see example for New-IAMVirtualMFADevice to see how to configure the software
 program with PNG or base32 seed code
Enable-IAMMFADevice -UserName "David" -SerialNumber -SerialNumber
 $MFADevice.SerialNumber -AuthenticationCode1 "24681357" -AuthenticationCode2
 "13572468"
```

- For API details, see EnableMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAccessKey`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command lists the access keys for the IAM user named `Bob`. Note that you cannot list the secret access keys for IAM users. If the secret access keys are lost, you must create new access keys with the `New-IAMAccessKey` cmdlet.

```
Get-IAMAccessKey -UserName "Bob"
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                CreateDate                  Status              UserName
-----------                ----------                  ------              --------
AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE       12/3/2014 10:53:41 AM       Active              Bob
AKIAI44QH8DHBEXAMPLE       6/6/2013 8:42:26 PM         Inactive            Bob
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAccessKeyLastUsed`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAccessKeyLastUsed`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the owning user name and last-usage information for the supplied access key.

```
Get-IAMAccessKeyLastUsed -AccessKeyId ABCDEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAccountAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the account alias for the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMAccountAlias
```

Output:

```
ExampleCo
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAccountAuthorizationDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAccountAuthorizationDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets authorization details about the identities in the AWS account, and displays the element list of the returned object, including users, groups, and roles. For example, the `UserDetailList` property displays details about the users. Similar information is available in the `RoleDetailList` and `GroupDetailList` properties.

```
$Details=Get-IAMAccountAuthorizationDetail
$Details
```

Output:

```
GroupDetailList : {Administrators, Developers, Testers, Backup}
IsTruncated     : False
Marker          :
RoleDetailList  : {TestRole1, AdminRole, TesterRole, clirole...}
UserDetailList  : {Administrator, Bob, BackupToS3, }
```

```
$Details.UserDetailList
```

Output:

```
Arn            : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Administrator
CreateDate     : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
GroupList      : {Administrators}
Path           : /
UserId         : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE1
UserName       : Administrator
UserPolicyList : {}

Arn            : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate     : 4/6/2015 12:54:42 PM
GroupList      : {Developers}
Path           : /
UserId         : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE2
UserName       : bab
```

```
UserPolicyList : {}

Arn            : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/BackupToS3
CreateDate     : 1/27/2015 10:15:08 AM
GroupList      : {Backup}
Path           : /
UserId         : AIDACKCEVSQ6CEXAMPLE3
UserName       : BackupToS3
UserPolicyList : {BackupServicePermissionsToS3Buckets}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountAuthorizationDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the password policy for the current account. If no password policy is defined for the account, the command returns a `NoSuchEntity` error.

```
Get-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy
```

Output:

```
AllowUsersToChangePassword : True
ExpirePasswords            : True
HardExpiry                 : False
MaxPasswordAge             : 90
MinimumPasswordLength      : 8
PasswordReusePrevention    : 20
RequireLowercaseCharacters : True
RequireNumbers             : True
RequireSymbols             : False
RequireUppercaseCharacters : True
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAccountSummary`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAccountSummary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns information about the current IAM entity usage and current IAM entity quotas in the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMAccountSummary
```

Output:

```


Key                                     Value
Users                                   7
GroupPolicySizeQuota                    5120
PolicyVersionsInUseQuota                10000
ServerCertificatesQuota                 20
AccountSigningCertificatesPresent       0
AccountAccessKeysPresent                0
Groups                                  3
UsersQuota                              5000
RolePolicySizeQuota                     10240
UserPolicySizeQuota                     2048
GroupsPerUserQuota                      10
AssumeRolePolicySizeQuota               2048
AttachedPoliciesPerGroupQuota           2
Roles                                   9
VersionsPerPolicyQuota                  5
GroupsQuota                             100
PolicySizeQuota                         5120
Policies                                5
RolesQuota                              250
ServerCertificates                      0
AttachedPoliciesPerRoleQuota            2
MFADevicesInUse                         2
PoliciesQuota                           1000
AccountMFAEnabled                       1
Providers                               2
InstanceProfilesQuota                   100
MFADevices                              4
AccessKeysPerUserQuota                  2
```

```
AttachedPoliciesPerUserQuota                2
SigningCertificatesPerUserQuota             2
PolicyVersionsInUse                         4
InstanceProfiles                            1
...
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSummary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies that are attached to the IAM group named `Admins` in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies embedded in the group, use the `Get-IAMGroupPolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList -GroupName "Admins"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                  PolicyName
---------                                                  ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit                      SecurityAudit
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AdministratorAccess                AdministratorAccess
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedGroupPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies attached to the IAM role named `SecurityAuditRole` in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies that are embedded in the role, use the `Get-IAMRolePolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName "SecurityAuditRole"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                PolicyName
---------                                                ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit                    SecurityAudit
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the names and ARNs of the managed policies for the IAM user named Bob in the AWS account. To see the list of inline policies that are embedded in the IAM user, use the `Get-IAMUserPolicyList` command.

```
Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList -UserName "Bob"
```

Output:

```
PolicyArn                                                PolicyName
---------                                                ----------
arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/TesterPolicy                     TesterPolicy
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedUserPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMContextKeysForCustomPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMContextKeysForCustomPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches all the context keys present in the provided policy json.In order to provide multiple policies you can provide as comma separated list of values.

```
$policy1 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
$policy2 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/"}}'
Get-IAMContextKeysForCustomPolicy -PolicyInputList $policy1,$policy2
```

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForCustomPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches all the context keys present in the provided policy json and the policies attached to IAM entity(user/role etc.). For -PolicyInputList you can provide multiple values list as comma separated values.

```
$policy1 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/","Condition":{"DateGreaterThan":
{"aws:CurrentTime":"2015-08-16T12:00:00Z"}}}}'
$policy2 = '{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":
{"Effect":"Allow","Action":"dynamodb:*","Resource":"arn:aws:dynamodb:us-
west-2:123456789012:table/"}}'
Get-IAMContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy -PolicyInputList $policy1,$policy2 -
PolicySourceArn arn:aws:iam::852640994763:user/TestUser
```

- For API details, see GetContextKeysForPrincipalPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMCredentialReport`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMCredentialReport`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example opens the returned report and outputs it to the pipeline as an array of text lines. The first line is the header with comma-separated column names. Each successive row is the detail row for one user, with each field separated by commas. Before you can view the report, you must generate it with the `Request-IAMCredentialReport` cmdlet. To retrieve the report as a single string, use `-Raw` instead of `-AsTextArray`. The alias `-SplitLines` is also accepted for the `-AsTextArray` switch. For the full list of columns in the output consult the service API reference. Note that if you do not use `-AsTextArray` or `-SplitLines`, then you must extract the text from the `.Content` property using the .NET `StreamReader` class.

```
Request-IAMCredentialReport
```

Output:

```
Description                                                         State
-----------                                                         -----
No report exists. Starting a new report generation task             STARTED
```

```
Get-IAMCredentialReport -AsTextArray
```

Output:

```
 user,arn,user_creation_time,password_enabled,password_last_used,password_last_changed,passw
 root_account,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:root,2014-10-15T16:31:25+00:00,not_supported,2015-04
A,false,N/A,false,N/A,false,N/A
Administrator,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/
Administrator,2014-10-16T16:03:09+00:00,true,2015-04-20T15:18:32+00:00,2014-10-16T16:06:00+0
A,false,true,2014-12-03T18:53:41+00:00,true,2015-03-25T20:38:14+00:00,false,N/
A,false,N/A
Bill,arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bill,2015-04-15T18:27:44+00:00,false,N/A,N/A,N/
A,false,false,N/A,false,N/A,false,2015-04-20T20:00:12+00:00,false,N/A
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialReport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of IAM groups, roles, and users who have the policy `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy` attached.

```
Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy -PolicyArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TestPolicy"
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated  : False
Marker       :
PolicyGroups : {}
PolicyRoles  : {testRole}
PolicyUsers  : {Bob, Theresa}
```

- For API details, see ListEntitiesForPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the IAM group `Testers`, including a collection of all the IAM users that belong to the group.

```
$results = Get-IAMGroup -GroupName "Testers"
$results
```

Output:

```
Group                                     IsTruncated           Marker
  Users
-----                                     -----------           ------
  -----
Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.Group     False
  {Theresa, David}
```

```
$results.Group
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : 3RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /
```

```
$results.Users
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Theresa
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : 4OSVDDJJTF4XEEXAMPLE2
UserName         : Theresa

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE3
UserName         : David
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMGroupForUser`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMGroupForUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of IAM groups that the IAM user `David` belongs to.

```
Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Administrators
```

```
CreateDate : 10/20/2014 10:06:24 AM
GroupId    : 6WCH4TRY3KIHIEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Administrators
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE2
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:38:55 PM
GroupId    : ZU2EOWMK6WBZOEXAMPLE3
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see ListGroupsForUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMGroupList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMGroupList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a collection of all the IAM groups defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMGroupList
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Administrators
CreateDate : 10/20/2014 10:06:24 AM
GroupId    : 6WCH4TRY3KIHIEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Administrators
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:38:55 PM
GroupId    : ZU2EOWMK6WBZOEXAMPLE2
GroupName  : Developers
```

```
Path       : /

Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Testers
CreateDate : 12/10/2014 3:39:11 PM
GroupId    : RHNZZGQJ7QHMAEXAMPLE3
GroupName  : Testers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMGroupPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMGroupPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the embedded inline policy named `PowerUserAccess-Testers` for the group `Testers`. The `PolicyDocument` property is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyName PowerUserAccess-Testers
$results
```

Output:

```
GroupName     PolicyDocument                                                PolicyName
---------     --------------                                                ----------
Testers       %7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%0A%20...
 PowerUserAccess-Testers

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:555555555555:instance/i-b188560f"
```

```
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMGroupPolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMGroupPolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of the inline policies that are embedded in the group `Testers`. To get the managed policies that are attached to the group, use the command `Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicyList`.

```
Get-IAMGroupPolicyList -GroupName Testers
```

Output:

```
Deny-Assume-S3-Role-In-Production
PowerUserAccess-Testers
```

- For API details, see ListGroupPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMInstanceProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details of the instance profile named `ec2instancerole` that is defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName ec2instancerole
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/ec2instancerole
```

```
CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
Path                : /
Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see GetInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMInstanceProfileForRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMInstanceProfileForRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details of the instance profile associated with the role `ec2instancerole`.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfileForRole -RoleName ec2instancerole
```

Output:

```
      Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ec2instancerole
      CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
      InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
      InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
      Path                : /
      Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfilesForRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMInstanceProfileList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMInstanceProfileList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a collection of the instance profiles defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMInstanceProfileList
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/ec2instancerole
CreateDate          : 2/17/2015 2:49:04 PM
InstanceProfileId   : HH36PTZQJUR32EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ec2instancerole
Path                : /
Roles               : {ec2instancerole}
```

- For API details, see ListInstanceProfiles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMLoginProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMLoginProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the password creation date and whether a password reset is required for the IAM user `David`.

```
Get-IAMLoginProfile -UserName David
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                  PasswordResetRequired                UserName
----------                  ---------------------                --------
12/10/2014 3:39:44 PM       False                                David
```

- For API details, see GetLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the MFA device assigned to the IAM user `David`. In this example you can tell that it is a virtual device because the `SerialNumber` is an ARN instead of a physical device's actual serial number.

```
Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName David
```

Output:

```
EnableDate                  SerialNumber                          UserName
----------                  ------------                          --------
4/8/2015 9:41:10 AM         arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/David    David
```

- For API details, see ListMfaDevices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the OpenID Connect provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/accounts.google.com`. The `ClientIDList` property is a collection that contains all the Client IDs defined for this provider.

```
Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/oidc.example.com
```

Output:

```
ClientIDList         CreateDate                ThumbprintList
        Url
------------         ----------                --------------
        ---
{MyOIDCApp}          2/3/2015 3:00:30 PM
 {12345abcdefghijk67890lmnopqrst98765uvwxy}   oidc.example.com
```

- For API details, see GetOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of ARNS of all the OpenID Connect providers that are defined in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderList
```

Output:

```
Arn
---
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/server.example.com
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/another.provider.com
```

- For API details, see ListOpenIdConnectProviders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns details about the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/MySamplePolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
```

```
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : MySamplePolicy
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMPolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMPolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a collection of the first three managed policies available in the current AWS account. Because `-scope` is not specified, it defaults to `all` and includes both AWS managed and customer managed policies.

```
Get-IAMPolicyList -MaxItem 3
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSDirectConnectReadOnlyAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : Z27SI6FQMGNQ2EXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : AWSDirectConnectReadOnlyAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:08 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonGlacierReadOnlyAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:27 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
```

```
PolicyId         : NJKMU274MET4EEXAMPLE2
PolicyName       : AmazonGlacierReadOnlyAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/6/2015 10:40:27 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AWSMarketplaceFullAccess
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/11/2015 9:21:45 AM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : 5ULJSO2FYVPYGEXAMPLE3
PolicyName       : AWSMarketplaceFullAccess
UpdateDate       : 2/11/2015 9:21:45 AM
```

Example 2: This example returns a collection of the first two customer managed policies available in current AWS account. It uses `-Scope local` to limit the output to only customer managed policies.

```
Get-IAMPolicyList -Scope local -MaxItem 2
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyLocalPolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 2/12/2015 9:39:09 AM
DefaultVersionId : v2
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : SQVCBLC4VAOUCEXAMPLE4
PolicyName       : MyLocalPolicy
UpdateDate       : 2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/policyforec2instancerole
AttachmentCount  : 1
CreateDate       : 2/17/2015 2:51:38 PM
DefaultVersionId : v11
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : X5JPBLJH2Z2SOEXAMPLE5
```

```
PolicyName       : policyforec2instancerole
UpdateDate       : 2/18/2015 8:52:31 AM
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMPolicyVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMPolicyVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the policy document for the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`. The policy document in the `Document` property is URL encoded and is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
MyManagedPolicy -VersionId v2
$results
```

Output:

```
CreateDate             Document
 IsDefaultVersion     VersionId
----------             --------
 ----------------     ---------
2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM   %7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10...    True
        v2

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
$policy = [System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.Document)
$policy
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement":
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "ec2:DescribeInstances"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:ec2:us-east-1:555555555555:instance/i-b188560f"
```

```
      ]
    }
}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMPolicyVersionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMPolicyVersionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of available versions of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy`. To get the policy document for a specific version, use the `Get-IAMPolicyVersion` command and specify the `VersionId` of the one you want.

```
Get-IAMPolicyVersionList -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyManagedPolicy
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                  Document                IsDefaultVersion
    VersionId
----------                  --------                ----------------
    ---------
2/12/2015 9:39:53 AM                                True
    v2
2/12/2015 9:39:09 AM                                False
    v1
```

- For API details, see ListPolicyVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the details of the `lamda_exec_role`. It includes the trust policy document that specifies who can assume this role. The policy document is URL encoded and can be decoded using the .NET `UrlDecode` method. In this example, the

original policy had all white space removed before it was uploaded to the policy. To see the permissions policy documents that determine what someone who assumes the role can do, use the `Get-IAMRolePolicy` for inline policies, and `Get-IAMPolicyVersion` for attached managed policies.

```
$results = Get-IamRole -RoleName lambda_exec_role
$results | Format-List
```

Output:

```
Arn                      : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/lambda_exec_role
AssumeRolePolicyDocument : %7B%22Version%22%3A%222012-10-17%22%2C%22Statement%22%3A
%5B%7B%22Sid%22
                           %3A%22%22%2C%22Effect%22%3A%22Allow%22%2C%22Principal
%22%3A%7B%22Service
                           %22%3A%22lambda.amazonaws.com%22%7D%2C%22Action%22%3A
%22sts%3AAssumeRole
                           %22%7D%5D%7D
CreateDate               : 4/2/2015 9:16:11 AM
Path                     : /
RoleId                   : 2YBIKAIBHNKB4EXAMPLE1
RoleName                 : lambda_exec_role
```

```
$policy = [System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.AssumeRolePolicyDocument)
$policy
```

Output:

```
{"Version":"2012-10-17","Statement":[{"Sid":"","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"Service":"lambda.amazonaws.com"},"Action":"sts:AssumeRole"}]}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMRoleList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMRoleList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves a list of all of the IAM roles in the AWS account.

```
Get-IAMRoleList
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMRolePolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the permissions policy document for the policy named `oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy` that is embedded in the IAM role `lamda_exec_role`. The resulting policy document is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = Get-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName lambda_exec_role -PolicyName
 oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy
$results
```

Output:

```
PolicyDocument                                           PolicyName
           UserName
--------------                                           ----------
           --------
%7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%...
 oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy     lambda_exec_role
```

```
[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
```

Output:

```
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
```

```
        "logs:*"
      ],
      "Resource": "arn:aws:logs:us-east-1:555555555555:log-group:/aws/lambda/aws-
example-function:*"
    },
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "s3:GetObject",
        "s3:PutObject"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMRolePolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMRolePolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of names of inline policies that are embedded in the IAM role `lamda_exec_role`. To see the details of an inline policy, use the command `Get-IAMRolePolicy`.

```
Get-IAMRolePolicyList -RoleName lambda_exec_role
```

Output:

```
oneClick_lambda_exec_role_policy
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMRoleTagList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMRoleTagList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the tag associated with the role..

```
Get-IAMRoleTagList -RoleName MyRoleName
```

- For API details, see ListRoleTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMSAMLProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMSAMLProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the details about the SAML 2.0 provider whose ARM is arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS. The response includes the metadata document that you got from the identity provider to create the AWS SAML provider entity as well as the creation and expiration dates.

```
Get-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFS
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                 SAMLMetadataDocument
     ValidUntil
----------                 --------------------
     ----------
12/23/2014 12:16:55 PM    <EntityDescriptor ID="_12345678-1234-5678-9012-example1...
    12/23/2114 12:16:54 PM
```

- For API details, see GetSamlProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMSAMLProviderList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMSAMLProviderList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of SAML 2.0 providers created in the current AWS account. It returns the ARN, creation date, and expiration date for each SAML provider.

```
Get-IAMSAMLProviderList
```

Output:

```
Arn                                                 CreateDate
 ValidUntil
---                                                 ----------
 ----------
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS    12/23/2014 12:16:55 PM
 12/23/2114 12:16:54 PM
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMServerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the server certificate named `MyServerCertificate`. You can find the certificate details in the `CertificateBody` and `ServerCertificateMetadata` properties.

```
$result = Get-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate
$result | format-list
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody           : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----

 MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC

 VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6

 b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd

 BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN

 MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD

 VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
```

```
 b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                            YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn
+a4GmWIWJ
                            21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/
f0wYK8m9T
                            rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/
MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE

 Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                            nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q
+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb

 FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                            NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                            -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateChain          :
ServerCertificateMetadata :
 Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.ServerCertificateMetadata
```

```
$result.ServerCertificateMetadata
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyServerCertificate
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /Org1/Org2/
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIFEXAMPLE17HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyServerCertificate
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see GetServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMServerCertificateList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMServerCertificateList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of server certificates that have been uploaded to the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMServerCertificateList
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/
MyServerCertificate
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /Org1/Org2/
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIFEXAMPLE17HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyServerCertificate
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example provides details of the service last accessed by the IAM entity(user, group, role or policy) associated in Request call.

```
Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
```

Output:

```
f0b7a819-eab0-929b-dc26-ca598911cb9f
```

```
Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -JobId f0b7a819-eab0-929b-dc26-ca598911cb9f
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example provides the last accessed timestamp for the service in the request by that respective IAM entity.

```
$results = Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity -JobId f0b7a819-eab0-929b-
dc26-ca598911cb9f -ServiceNamespace ec2
$results
```

Output:

```
EntityDetailsList : {Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.EntityDetails}
Error             :
IsTruncated       : False
JobCompletionDate : 12/29/19 11:19:31 AM
JobCreationDate   : 12/29/19 11:19:31 AM
JobStatus         : COMPLETED
Marker            :
```

```
$results.EntityDetailsList
```

Output:

```
EntityInfo                                  LastAuthenticated
----------                                  -----------------
Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.EntityInfo 11/16/19 3:47:00 PM
```

```
$results.EntityInfo
```

Output:

```
Arn  : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
Id   : AIDA4NBK5CXF5TZHU1234
Name : TestUser
Path : /
Type : USER
```

- For API details, see GetServiceLastAccessedDetailsWithEntities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Get-IAMSigningCertificate

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMSigningCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the signing certificate that is associated with the user named Bob.

```
Get-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
                  MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
                  VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
                  b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
                  BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
                  MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
                  VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
                  b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                  YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
                  21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
                  rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
                  Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                  nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
                  FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                  NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateId   : Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU
Status          : Active
UploadDate      : 4/20/2015 1:26:01 PM
UserName        : Bob
```

- For API details, see ListSigningCertificates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Get-IAMUser

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves details about the user named `David`.

```
Get-IAMUser -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE1
UserName         : David
```

Example 2: This example retrieves details about the currently signed-in IAM user.

```
Get-IAMUser
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/4/2015 12:12:33 PM
Path             : /
UserId           : 7K3GJEANSKZF2EXAMPLE2
UserName         : Bob
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMUserList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMUserList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves a collection of users in the current AWS account.

```
Get-IAMUserList
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Administrator
CreateDate       : 10/16/2014 9:03:09 AM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/4/2015 12:12:33 PM
Path             : /
UserId           : 7K3GJEANSKZF2EXAMPLE1
UserName         : Administrator

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 4/6/2015 12:54:42 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : L3EWNONDOM3YUEXAMPLE2
UserName         : bab

Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/David
CreateDate       : 12/10/2014 3:39:27 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 3/19/2015 8:44:04 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : Y4FKWQCXTA52QEXAMPLE3
UserName         : David
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMUserPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the details of the inline policy named `Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy` that is embedded in the IAM user named `David`. The policy document is URL encoded.

```
$results = Get-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy -UserName David
$results
```

Output:

```
PolicyDocument                                          PolicyName
    UserName
```

```
--------------                                            ----------
    --------
%7B%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%...    Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy
    David

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.PolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "iam:GetUser",
        "iam:ListUsers"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "arn:aws:iam::111122223333:user/*"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMUserPolicyList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMUserPolicyList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of names of the inline policies that are embedded in the IAM user named `David`.

```
Get-IAMUserPolicyList -UserName David
```

Output:

```
Davids_IAM_Admin_Policy
```

- For API details, see ListUserPolicies in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMUserTagList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMUserTagList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the tag associated with the user.

```
Get-IAMUserTagList -UserName joe
```

- For API details, see ListUserTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves a collection of the virtual MFA devices that are assigned to users in the AWS account. The `User` property of each is an object with details of the IAM user to which the device is assigned.

```
Get-IAMVirtualMFADevice -AssignmentStatus Assigned
```

Output:

```
Base32StringSeed :
EnableDate       : 4/13/2015 12:03:42 PM
QRCodePNG        :
SerialNumber     : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/David
User             : Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.User

Base32StringSeed :
EnableDate       : 4/13/2015 12:06:41 PM
QRCodePNG        :
SerialNumber     : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/root-account-mfa-device
User             : Amazon.IdentityManagement.Model.User
```

- For API details, see ListVirtualMfaDevices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-IAMAccessKey

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMAccessKey`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new access key and secret access key pair and assigns it to the user `David`. Ensure that you save the `AccessKeyId` and `SecretAccessKey` values to a file because this is the only time you can obtain the `SecretAccessKey`. You cannot retrieve it later. If you lose the secret key, you must create a new access key pair.

```
New-IAMAccessKey -UserName David
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId     : AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE
CreateDate      : 4/13/2015 1:00:42 PM
SecretAccessKey : wJalrXUtnFEMI/K7MDENG/bPxRfiCYEXAMPLEKEY
Status          : Active
UserName        : David
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-IAMAccountAlias

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMAccountAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the account alias for your AWS account to `mycompanyaws`. The address of the user logon page chages to https://mycompanyaws.signin.aws.amazon.com/console. The original URL using your account ID number instead of the alias (https://<accountidnumber>.signin.aws.amazon.com/console) continues to work. However, any previously defined alias-based URLs stop working.

```
New-IAMAccountAlias -AccountAlias mycompanyaws
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-IAMGroup

The following code example shows how to use New-IAMGroup.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM group named Developers.

```
New-IAMGroup -GroupName Developers
```

Output:

```
Arn        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Developers
CreateDate : 4/14/2015 11:21:31 AM
GroupId    : QNEJ5PM4NFSQCEXAMPLE1
GroupName  : Developers
Path       : /
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-IAMInstanceProfile

The following code example shows how to use New-IAMInstanceProfile.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM instance profile named ProfileForDevEC2Instance. You must separately run the Add-IAMRoleToInstanceProfile command to associate the instance profile with an existing IAM role that provides permissions to the instance. Finally, attach the instance profile to an EC2 instance when you launch it. To do that, use the New-EC2Instance cmdlet with either the InstanceProfile_Arn or InstanceProfile_Name parameter.

```
New-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName ProfileForDevEC2Instance
```

Output:

```
Arn                 : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:instance-profile/
ProfileForDevEC2Instance
CreateDate          : 4/14/2015 11:31:39 AM
```

```
InstanceProfileId   : DYMFXL556EY46EXAMPLE1
InstanceProfileName : ProfileForDevEC2Instance
Path                : /
Roles               : {}
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMLoginProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMLoginProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a (temporary) password for the IAM user named Bob, and sets the flag that requires the user to change the password the next time Bob signs in.

```
New-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob -Password P@ssw0rd -PasswordResetRequired $true
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                  PasswordResetRequired               UserName
----------                  ---------------------               --------
4/14/2015 12:26:30 PM       True                                Bob
```

- For API details, see CreateLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an IAM OIDC provider associated with the OIDC compatible provider service found at the URL `https://example.oidcprovider.com` and the client ID `my-testapp-1`. The OIDC provider supplies the thumbprint. To authenticate the thumbprint, follow the steps at http://docs.aws.amazon.com/IAM/latest/UserGuide/identity-providers-oidc-obtain-thumbprint.html.

```
New-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -Url https://example.oidcprovider.com -ClientIDList my-
testapp-1 -ThumbprintList 990F419EXAMPLEECF12DDEDA5EXAMPLE52F20D9E
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see CreateOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new IAM policy in the current AWS account named `MySamplePolicy` The file `MySamplePolicy.json` provides the policy content. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file.

```
New-IAMPolicy -PolicyName MySamplePolicy -PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw
 MySamplePolicy.json)
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
AttachmentCount  : 0
CreateDate       : 4/14/2015 2:45:59 PM
DefaultVersionId : v1
Description      :
IsAttachable     : True
Path             : /
PolicyId         : LD4KP6HVFE7WGEXAMPLE1
PolicyName       : MySamplePolicy
UpdateDate       : 4/14/2015 2:45:59 PM
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMPolicyVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMPolicyVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new "v2" version of the IAM policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` and makes it the default version. The `NewPolicyVersion.json` file provides the policy content. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file.

```
New-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-content -Raw NewPolicyVersion.json) -SetAsDefault $true
```

Output:

```
CreateDate                          Document                 IsDefaultVersion
        VersionId
----------                          --------                 ----------------
        ---------
4/15/2015 10:54:54 AM                                        True
        v2
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMRole`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new role named `MyNewRole` and attaches to it the policy found in the file `NewRoleTrustPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the JSON policy file. The policy document displayed in the output is URL encoded. It is decoded in this example with the `UrlDecode` .NET method.

```
$results = New-IAMRole -AssumeRolePolicyDocument (Get-Content -raw
 NewRoleTrustPolicy.json) -RoleName MyNewRole
$results
```

Output:

```
Arn                      : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MyNewRole
AssumeRolePolicyDocument : %7B%0D%0A%20%20%22Version%22%3A%20%222012-10-17%22%2C%0D
%0A%20%20%22Statement%22
```

```
                            %3A%20%5B%0D%0A%20%20%20%20%7B%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%22Sid%22%3A%20%22%22%2C
                            %0D%0A%20%20%20%20%20%20%22Effect%22%3A%20%22Allow%22%2C
%0D%0A%20%20%20%20%20%20
                            %22Principal%22%3A%20%7B%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%22AWS%22%3A%20%22arn%3Aaws
                            %3Aiam%3A%3A123456789012%3ADavid%22%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%20%20%7D%2C%0D%0A%20%20%20
                            %20%20%20%22Action%22%3A%20%22sts%3AAssumeRole%22%0D%0A
%20%20%20%20%7D%0D%0A%20
                            %20%5D%0D%0A%7D
CreateDate                : 4/15/2015 11:04:23 AM
Path                      : /
RoleId                    : V5PAJI2KPN4EAEXAMPLE1
RoleName                  : MyNewRole

[System.Reflection.Assembly]::LoadWithPartialName("System.Web.HttpUtility")
[System.Web.HttpUtility]::UrlDecode($results.AssumeRolePolicyDocument)
{
  "Version": "2012-10-17",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Sid": "",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": {
        "AWS": "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:David"
      },
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
    }
  ]
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMSAMLProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMSAMLProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new SAML provider entity in IAM. It is named `MySAMLProvider` and is described by the SAML metadata document found in the file

`SAMLMetaData.xml`, which was separately downloaded from the SAML service provider's web site.

```
New-IAMSAMLProvider -Name MySAMLProvider -SAMLMetadataDocument (Get-Content -Raw
 SAMLMetaData.xml)
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/MySAMLProvider
```

- For API details, see CreateSAMLProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMServiceLinkedRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a servicelinked role for autoscaling service.

```
New-IAMServiceLinkedRole -AWSServiceName autoscaling.amazonaws.com -CustomSuffix
 RoleNameEndsWithThis -Description "My service-linked role to support autoscaling"
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMUser`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an IAM user named Bob. If Bob needs to sign in to the AWS console, then you must separately run the command `New-IAMLoginProfile` to create a sign-in profile with a password. If Bob needs to run AWS PowerShell or cross-platform CLI commands or make AWS API calls, then you must separately run the `New-IAMAccessKey` command to create access keys.

```
New-IAMUser -UserName Bob
```

Output:

```
Arn              : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Bob
CreateDate       : 4/22/2015 12:02:11 PM
PasswordLastUsed : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
Path             : /
UserId           : AIDAJWGEFDMEMEXAMPLE1
UserName         : Bob
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-IAMVirtualMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `New-IAMVirtualMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new virtual MFA device. Lines 2 and 3 extract the `Base32StringSeed` value that the virtual MFA software program needs to create an account (as an alternative to the QR code). After you configure the program with the value, get two sequential authentication codes from the program. Finally, use the last command to link the virtual MFA device to the IAM user Bob and synchronize the account with the two authentication codes.

```
$Device = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName BobsMFADevice
$SR = New-Object System.IO.StreamReader($Device.Base32StringSeed)
$base32stringseed = $SR.ReadToEnd()
$base32stringseed
CZWZMCQNW4DEXAMPLE3VOUGXJFZYSUW7EXAMPLECR4NJFD65GX2SLUDW2EXAMPLE
```

Output:

```
-- Pause here to enter base-32 string seed code into virtual MFA program to register
 account. --

Enable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $Device.SerialNumber -UserName Bob -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 789012
```

Example 2: This example creates a new virtual MFA device. Lines 2 and 3 extract the `QRCodePNG` value and write it to a file. This image can be scanned by the virtual MFA

software program to create an account (as an alternative to manually entering the Base32StringSeed value). After you create the account in your virtual MFA program, get two sequential authentication codes and enter them in the last commands to link the virtual MFA device to the IAM user Bob and synchronize the account.

```
$Device = New-IAMVirtualMFADevice -VirtualMFADeviceName BobsMFADevice
$BR = New-Object System.IO.BinaryReader($Device.QRCodePNG)
$BR.ReadBytes($BR.BaseStream.Length) | Set-Content -Encoding Byte -Path QRCode.png
```

Output:

```
 -- Pause here to scan PNG with virtual MFA program to register account. --

Enable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $Device.SerialNumber -UserName Bob -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 789012
```

- For API details, see CreateVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Publish-IAMServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish-IAMServerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example uploads a new server certificate to the IAM account. The files containing the certificate body, the private key, and (optionally) the certificate chain must all be PEM encoded. Note that the parameters require the actual content of the files rather than the file names. You must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the file contents.

```
Publish-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyTestCert -CertificateBody
 (Get-Content -Raw server.crt) -PrivateKey (Get-Content -Raw server.key)
```

Output:

```
Arn                   : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/MyTestCert
Expiration            : 1/14/2018 9:52:36 AM
Path                  : /
ServerCertificateId   : ASCAJIEXAMPLE7J7HQZYW
ServerCertificateName : MyTestCert
```

```
UploadDate            : 4/21/2015 11:14:16 AM
```

- For API details, see UploadServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Publish-IAMSigningCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish-IAMSigningCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example uploads a new X.509 signing certificate and associates it with the IAM user named Bob. The file containing the certificate body is PEM encoded. The `CertificateBody` parameter requires the actual contents of the certificate file rather than the file name. You must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the file.

```
Publish-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob -CertificateBody (Get-Content -Raw
 SampleSigningCert.pem)
```

Output:

```
CertificateBody : -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
                  MIICiTCCAfICCQD6m7oRw0uXOjANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQUFADCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMC
                  VVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYDVQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6
                  b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25zb2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAd
                  BgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFtYXpvbi5jb20wHhcNMTEwNDI1MjA0NTIxWhcN
                  MTIwNDI0MjA0NTIxWjCBiDELMAkGA1UEBhMCVVMxCzAJBgNVBAgTAldBMRAwDgYD
                  VQQHEwdTZWF0dGxlMQ8wDQYDVQQKEwZBbWF6b24xFDASBgNVBAsTC0lBTSBDb25z
                  b2xlMRIwEAYDVQQDEwlUZXN0Q2lsYWMxHzAdBgkqhkiG9w0BCQEWEG5vb25lQGFt
                  YXpvbi5jb20wgZ8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADgY0AMIGJAoGBAMaK0dn+a4GmWIWJ
                  21uUSfwfEvySWtC2XADZ4nB+BLYgVIk60CpiwsZ3G93vUEIO3IyNoH/f0wYK8m9T
                  rDHudUZg3qX4waLG5M43q7Wgc/MbQITxOUSQv7c7ugFFDzQGBzZswY6786m86gpE
                  Ibb3OhjZnzcvQAaRHhdlQWIMm2nrAgMBAAEwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgYEAtCu4
                  nUhVVxYUntneD9+h8Mg9q6q+auNKyExzyLwaxlAoo7TJHidbtS4J5iNmZgXL0Fkb
                  FFBjvSfpJIlJ00zbhNYS5f6GuoEDmFJl0ZxBHjJnyp378OD8uTs7fLvjx79LjSTb
                  NYiytVbZPQUQ5Yaxu2jXnimvw3rrszlaEXAMPLE=
                  -----END CERTIFICATE-----
CertificateId   : Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCEXAMPLEHMJLU
Status          : Active
UploadDate      : 4/20/2015 1:26:01 PM
UserName        : Bob
```

- For API details, see UploadSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-IAMGroupPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-IAMGroupPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the customer managed policy named `TesterPolicy` to the IAM group `Testers`. The users in that group are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the default version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy
```

Example 2: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `AdministratorAccess` to the IAM group `Admins`. The users in that group are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Admins -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AdministratorAccess
```

- For API details, see AttachGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-IAMRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-IAMRolePolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `SecurityAudit` to the IAM role `CoSecurityAuditors`. The users who assume that role are immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName CoSecurityAuditors -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/SecurityAudit
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-IAMUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-IAMUserPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attaches the AWS managed policy named `AmazonCognitoPowerUser` to the IAM user Bob. The user is immediately affected by the permissions defined in the latest version of that policy.

```
Register-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/
AmazonCognitoPowerUser
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMAccessKey`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the AWS access key pair with the key ID `AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE` from the user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMAccessKey -AccessKeyId AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -UserName Bob -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMAccountAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the account alias from your AWS account. The user sign in page with the alias at https://mycompanyaws.signin.aws.amazon.com/console no longer works. You must instead use the original URL with your AWS account ID number at https://<accountidnumber>.signin.aws.amazon.com/console.

```
Remove-IAMAccountAlias -AccountAlias mycompanyaws
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the password policy for the AWS account and resets all values to their original defaults. If a password policy does not currently exist, the following error message appears: The account policy with name PasswordPolicy cannot be found.

```
Remove-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMClientIDFromOpenIDConnectProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMClientIDFromOpenIDConnectProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the client ID `My-TestApp-3` from the list of client IDs associated with the IAM OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com`.

```
Remove-IAMClientIDFromOpenIDConnectProvider -ClientID My-TestApp-3
 -OpenIDConnectProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/
example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see RemoveClientIdFromOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM group named `MyTestGroup`. The first command removes any IAM users that are members of the group, and the second command deletes the IAM group. Both commands work without any prompts for confirmation.

```
(Get-IAMGroup -GroupName MyTestGroup).Users | Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName
 MyTestGroup -Force
Remove-IAMGroup -GroupName MyTestGroup -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMGroupPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMGroupPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the inline policy named `TesterPolicy` from the IAM group `Testers`. The users in that group immediately lose the permissions defined in that policy.

```
Remove-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyName TestPolicy
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMInstanceProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the EC2 instance profile named `MyAppInstanceProfile`. The first command detaches any roles from the instance profile, and then the second command deletes the instance profile.

```
(Get-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile).Roles | Remove-
IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile
Remove-IAMInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyAppInstanceProfile
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMLoginProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMLoginProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the login profile from the IAM user named Bob. This prevents the user from signing-in to the AWS console. It does not prevent the user from running any AWS CLI, PowerShell, or API calls using AWS access keys that might still be attached to the user account.

```
Remove-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM OIDC provider that connects to the provider `example.oidcprovider.com`. Ensure that you update or delete any roles that reference this provider in the `Principal` element of the role's trust policy.

```
Remove-IAMOpenIDConnectProvider -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com
```

- For API details, see DeleteOpenIdConnectProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`. Before you can delete the policy, you must first delete all versions except the default by running `Remove-IAMPolicyVersion`. You must also detach the policy from any IAM users, groups, or roles.

```
Remove-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
```

Example 2: This example deletes a policy by first deleting all the non-default policy versions, detaching it from all attached IAM entities, and finally deleting the policy itself. The first line retrieves the policy object. The second line retrieves all the policy versions that are not flagged as the default version into a collection and then deletes each policy in the collection. The third line retrieves all of the IAM users, groups, and roles to which the policy is attached. Lines four through six detach the policy from each attached entity. The last line uses this command to remove the managed policy as well as the remaining default version. The example includes the `-Force` switch parameter on any line that needs it to suppress prompts for confirmation.

```
$pol = Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
Get-IAMPolicyVersions -PolicyArn $pol.Arn | where {-not $_.IsDefaultVersion} |
 Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
$attached = Get-IAMEntitiesForPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.Arn
$attached.PolicyGroups | Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
$attached.PolicyRoles | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
$attached.PolicyUsers | Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.arn
Remove-IAMPolicy $pol.Arn -Force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMPolicyVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMPolicyVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the version identified as v2 from the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy`.

```
Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy -
VersionID v2
```

Example 2: This example deletes a policy by first deleting all non-default policy versions and then deleting the policy itself. The first line retrieves the policy object. The second line retrieves all of the policy versions that are not flagged as the default into a collection and then uses this command to delete each policy in the collection. The last line removes the policy itself as well as the remaining default version. Note that to successfully delete a managed policy, you must also detach the policy from any users, groups, or roles by using the `Unregister-IAMUserPolicy`, `Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy`, and `Unregister-IAMRolePolicy` commands. See the example for the `Remove-IAMPolicy` cmdlet.

```
$pol = Get-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MySamplePolicy
Get-IAMPolicyVersions -PolicyArn $pol.Arn | where {-not $_.IsDefaultVersion} |
 Remove-IAMPolicyVersion -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
Remove-IAMPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.Arn -force
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the role named `MyNewRole` from the current IAM account. Before you can delete the role you must first use the `Unregister-IAMRolePolicy` command to detach any managed policies. Inline policies are deleted with the role.

```
Remove-IAMRole -RoleName MyNewRole
```

Example 2: This example detaches any managed policies from the role named `MyNewRole` and then deletes the role. The first line retrieves any managed policies attached to the role as a collection and then detaches each policy in the collection from the role. The second line deletes the role itself. Inline policies are deleted along with the role.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName MyNewRole | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -
RoleName MyNewRole
```

```
Remove-IAMRole -RoleName MyNewRole
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the role named `MyNewRole` from the EC2 instance profile named `MyNewRole`. An instance profile that is created in the IAM console always has the same name as the role, as in this example. If you create them in the API or CLI, then they can have different names.

```
Remove-IAMRoleFromInstanceProfile -InstanceProfileName MyNewRole -RoleName MyNewRole
 -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to remove the permission boundary attached to an IAM role.

```
Remove-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary -RoleName MyRoleName
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMRolePolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the inline policy `S3AccessPolicy` that is embedded in the IAM role `S3BackupRole`.

```
Remove-IAMRolePolicy -PolicyName S3AccessPolicy -RoleName S3BackupRole
```

- For API details, see DeleteRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMRoleTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMRoleTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the tag from the role named "MyRoleName" with tag key as "abac". To remove multiple tags, provide a comma separted tag keys list.

```
Remove-IAMRoleTag -RoleName MyRoleName -TagKey "abac","xyzw"
```

- For API details, see UntagRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMSAMLProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMSAMLProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM SAML 2.0 provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFSProvider`.

```
Remove-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFSProvider
```

- For API details, see DeleteSAMLProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMServerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the server certificate named `MyServerCert`.

```
Remove-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCert
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMServiceLinkedRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deleted the service linked role. Please note that if the service is still using this role, then this command results in a failure.

```
Remove-IAMServiceLinkedRole -RoleName
 AWSServiceRoleForAutoScaling_RoleNameEndsWithThis
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMSigningCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMSigningCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the signing certificate with the ID `Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU` from the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName Bob -CertificateId
 Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU
```

- For API details, see DeleteSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMUser`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMUser -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example deletes the IAM user named `Theresa` along with any elements that must be deleted first.

```
$name = "Theresa"

# find any groups and remove user from them
$groups = Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName $name
foreach ($group in $groups) { Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName $group.GroupName -
UserName $name -Force }

# find any inline policies and delete them
$inlinepols = Get-IAMUserPolicies -UserName $name
foreach ($pol in $inlinepols) { Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName $pol -UserName
 $name -Force}

# find any managed polices and detach them
$managedpols = Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicies -UserName $name
foreach ($pol in $managedpols) { Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyArn $pol.PolicyArn
 -UserName $name }

# find any signing certificates and delete them
$certs = Get-IAMSigningCertificate -UserName $name
foreach ($cert in $certs) { Remove-IAMSigningCertificate -CertificateId
 $cert.CertificateId -UserName $name -Force }

# find any access keys and delete them
$keys = Get-IAMAccessKey -UserName $name
foreach ($key in $keys) { Remove-IAMAccessKey -AccessKeyId $key.AccessKeyId -
UserName $name -Force }

# delete the user's login profile, if one exists - note: need to use try/catch to
 suppress not found error
try { $prof = Get-IAMLoginProfile -UserName $name -ea 0 } catch { out-null }
```

```
if ($prof) { Remove-IAMLoginProfile -UserName $name -Force }

# find any MFA device, detach it, and if virtual, delete it.
$mfa = Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName $name
if ($mfa) {
    Disable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber -UserName $name
    if ($mfa.SerialNumber -like "arn:*") { Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -SerialNumber
 $mfa.SerialNumber }
}

# finally, remove the user
Remove-IAMUser -UserName $name -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMUserFromGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMUserFromGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the IAM user Bob from the group `Testers`.

```
Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName Testers -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example finds any groups of which IAM user `Theresa` is a member, and then removes `Theresa` from those groups.

```
$groups = Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName Theresa
foreach ($group in $groups) { Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -GroupName $group.GroupName -
UserName Theresa -Force }
```

Example 3: This example shows an alternate way of removing the IAM user Bob from the `Testers` group.

```
Get-IAMGroupForUser -UserName Bob | Remove-IAMUserFromGroup -UserName Bob -GroupName
 Testers -Force
```

- For API details, see RemoveUserFromGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to remove the permission boundary attached to an IAM user.

```
Remove-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary -UserName joe
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMUserPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the inline policy named `AccessToEC2Policy` that is embedded in the IAM user named Bob.

```
Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName AccessToEC2Policy -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example finds all of the inline polices that are embedded in the IAM user named `Theresa` and then deletes them.

```
$inlinepols = Get-IAMUserPolicies -UserName Theresa
foreach ($pol in $inlinepols) { Remove-IAMUserPolicy -PolicyName $pol -UserName
 Theresa -Force}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMUserTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMUserTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the tag from the user named "joe" with tag key as "abac" and "xyzw". To remove multiple tags, provide a comma separted tag keys list.

```
Remove-IAMUserTag -UserName joe -TagKey "abac","xyzw"
```

- For API details, see UntagUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the IAM virtual MFA device whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob`.

```
Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -SerialNumber arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob
```

Example 2: This example checks to see whether the IAM user Theresa has an MFA device assigned. If one is found, the device is disabled for the IAM user. If the device is virtual, then it is also deleted.

```
$mfa = Get-IAMMFADevice -UserName Theresa
if ($mfa) {
    Disable-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber $mfa.SerialNumber -UserName $name
    if ($mfa.SerialNumber -like "arn:*") { Remove-IAMVirtualMFADevice -SerialNumber
 $mfa.SerialNumber }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteVirtualMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Request-IAMCredentialReport`

The following code example shows how to use `Request-IAMCredentialReport`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example requests generation of a new report, which can be done every four hours. If the last report is still recent the State field reads `COMPLETE`. Use `Get-IAMCredentialReport` to view the completed report.

```
Request-IAMCredentialReport
```

Output:

```
Description                                                    State
-----------                                                    -----
No report exists. Starting a new report generation task        STARTED
```

- For API details, see GenerateCredentialReport in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example is equivalent cmdlet of GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails API. This provides with a job id which can be used in Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail and Get-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetailWithEntity

```
Request-IAMServiceLastAccessedDetail -Arn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/TestUser
```

- For API details, see GenerateServiceLastAccessedDetails in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-IAMDefaultPolicyVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-IAMDefaultPolicyVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets the v2 version of the policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy` as the default active version.

```
Set-IAMDefaultPolicyVersion -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/MyPolicy -
VersionId v2
```

- For API details, see SetDefaultPolicyVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to set the Permission boundary for a IAM Role. You can set AWS Managed policies or Custom policies as permission boundary.

```
Set-IAMRolePermissionsBoundary -RoleName MyRoleName -PermissionsBoundary
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

- For API details, see PutRolePermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to set the Permission boundary for the user. You can set AWS Managed policies or Custom policies as permission boundary.

```
Set-IAMUserPermissionsBoundary -UserName joe -PermissionsBoundary
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/intern-boundary
```

- For API details, see PutUserPermissionsBoundary in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Sync-IAMMFADevice`

The following code example shows how to use `Sync-IAMMFADevice`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example synchronizes the MFA device that is associated with the IAM user Bob and whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/bob` with an authenticator program that provided the two authentication codes.

```
Sync-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber arn:aws:iam::123456789012:mfa/theresa -
AuthenticationCode1 123456 -AuthenticationCode2 987654 -UserName Bob
```

Example 2: This example synchronizes the IAM MFA device that is associated with the IAM user `Theresa` with a physical device that has the serial number `ABCD12345678` and that provided the two authentication codes.

```
Sync-IAMMFADevice -SerialNumber ABCD12345678 -AuthenticationCode1 123456 -
AuthenticationCode2 987654 -UserName Theresa
```

- For API details, see ResyncMfaDevice in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the managed group policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy` from the group named `Testers`.

```
Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName Testers -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterAccessPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all the managed policies that are attached to the group named `Testers` and detaches them from the group.

```
Get-IAMAttachedGroupPolicies -GroupName Testers | Unregister-IAMGroupPolicy -
Groupname Testers
```

- For API details, see DetachGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-IAMRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-IAMRolePolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the managed group policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy` from the role named `FedTesterRole`.

```
Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName FedTesterRole -PolicyArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/FederatedTesterAccessPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all of the managed policies that are attached to the role named `FedTesterRole` and detaches them from the role.

```
Get-IAMAttachedRolePolicyList -RoleName FedTesterRole | Unregister-IAMRolePolicy -
Rolename FedTesterRole
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-IAMUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-IAMUserPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example detaches the managed policy whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/TesterPolicy` from the IAM user named Bob.

```
Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:policy/
TesterPolicy
```

Example 2: This example finds all the managed policies that are attached to the IAM user named `Theresa` and detaches those policies from the user.

```
Get-IAMAttachedUserPolicyList -UserName Theresa | Unregister-IAMUserPolicy -Username
 Theresa
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMAccessKey`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the status of the access key `AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE` for the IAM user named `Bob` to `Inactive`.

```
Update-IAMAccessKey -UserName Bob -AccessKeyId AKIAIOSFODNN7EXAMPLE -Status Inactive
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the password policy for the account with the specified settings. Note that any parameters that are not included in the command are not left unmodified. Instead, they are reset to default values.

```
Update-IAMAccountPasswordPolicy -AllowUsersToChangePasswords $true -HardExpiry
 $false -MaxPasswordAge 90 -MinimumPasswordLength 8 -PasswordReusePrevention 20
 -RequireLowercaseCharacters $true -RequireNumbers $true -RequireSymbols $true -
RequireUppercaseCharacters $true
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMAssumeRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMAssumeRolePolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the IAM role named `ClientRole` with a new trust policy, the contents of which come from the file `ClientRolePolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the contents of the JSON file.

```
Update-IAMAssumeRolePolicy -RoleName ClientRole -PolicyDocument (Get-Content -raw
 ClientRolePolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssumeRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example renames the IAM group `Testers` to `AppTesters`.

```
Update-IAMGroup -GroupName Testers -NewGroupName AppTesters
```

Example 2: This example changes the path of the IAM group `AppTesters` to `/Org1/Org2/`. This changes the ARN for the group to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:group/Org1/Org2/AppTesters`.

```
Update-IAMGroup -GroupName AppTesters -NewPath /Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMLoginProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMLoginProfile`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets a new temporary password for the IAM user Bob, and requires the user to change the password the next time the user signs in.

```
Update-IAMLoginProfile -UserName Bob -Password "P@ssw0rd1234" -PasswordResetRequired
 $true
```

- For API details, see UpdateLoginProfile in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderThumbprint`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderThumbprint`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the certificate thumbprint list for the OIDC provider whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com` to use a new thumbprint. The OIDC provider shares the new value when the certificate that is associated with the provider changes.

```
Update-IAMOpenIDConnectProviderThumbprint -OpenIDConnectProviderArn
 arn:aws:iam::123456789012:oidc-provider/example.oidcprovider.com -ThumbprintList
 7359755EXAMPLEabc3060bce3EXAMPLEec4542a3
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpenIdConnectProviderThumbprint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the role description and the maximum session duration value(in seconds) for which a role's session can be requested.

```
Update-IAMRole -RoleName MyRoleName -Description "My testing role" -
MaxSessionDuration 43200
```

- For API details, see UpdateRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMRoleDescription`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMRoleDescription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the description of an IAM role in your account.

```
Update-IAMRoleDescription -RoleName MyRoleName -Description "My testing role"
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoleDescription in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMSAMLProvider`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMSAMLProvider`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the SAML provider in IAM whose ARN is `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/SAMLADFS` with a new SAML metadata document from the file `SAMLMetaData.xml`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` switch parameter to successfully process the contents of the JSON file.

```
Update-IAMSAMLProvider -SAMLProviderArn arn:aws:iam::123456789012:saml-provider/
SAMLADFS -SAMLMetadataDocument (Get-Content -Raw SAMLMetaData.xml)
```

- For API details, see UpdateSamlProvider in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMServerCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example renames the certificate named `MyServerCertificate` to `MyRenamedServerCertificate`.

```
Update-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate -
NewServerCertificateName MyRenamedServerCertificate
```

Example 2: This example moves the certificate named `MyServerCertificate` to the path /Org1/Org2/. This changes the ARN for the resource to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:server-certificate/Org1/Org2/MyServerCertificate`.

```
Update-IAMServerCertificate -ServerCertificateName MyServerCertificate -NewPath /
Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMSigningCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMSigningCertificate`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the certificate that is associated with the IAM user named Bob and whose certificate ID si `Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU` to mark it as inactive.

```
Update-IAMSigningCertificate -CertificateId Y3EK7RMEXAMPLESV33FCREXAMPLEMJLU -
UserName Bob -Status Inactive
```

- For API details, see UpdateSigningCertificate in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-IAMUser`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-IAMUser`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example renames the IAM user Bob to `Robert`.

```
Update-IAMUser -UserName Bob -NewUserName Robert
```

Example 2: This example changes the path of the IAM User Bob to `/Org1/Org2/`, which effectively changes the ARN for the user to `arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/Org1/Org2/bob`.

```
Update-IAMUser -UserName Bob -NewPath /Org1/Org2/
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-IAMGroupPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-IAMGroupPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `AppTesterPolicy` and embeds it in the IAM group `AppTesters`. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes the file `apptesterpolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMGroupPolicy -GroupName AppTesters -PolicyName AppTesterPolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw apptesterpolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutGroupPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-IAMRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-IAMRolePolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `FedTesterRolePolicy` and embeds it in the IAM role `FedTesterRole`. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes from the file `FedTesterPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMRolePolicy -RoleName FedTesterRole -PolicyName FedTesterRolePolicy -
PolicyDocument (Get-Content -Raw FedTesterPolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutRolePolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-IAMUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-IAMUserPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an inline policy named `EC2AccessPolicy` and embeds it in the IAM user Bob. If an inline policy with the same name already exists, then it is overwritten. The JSON policy content comes from the file `EC2AccessPolicy.json`. Note that you must use the `-Raw` parameter to successfully process the content of the JSON file.

```
Write-IAMUserPolicy -UserName Bob -PolicyName EC2AccessPolicy -PolicyDocument (Get-
Content -Raw EC2AccessPolicy.json)
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Kinesis examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-KINRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-KINRecord`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to return and extract data from a series of one or more records. The iterator supplierd to Get-KINRecord determines the starting position of the records to return which in this example are captured into a variable, $records. Each individual record can then be accessed by indexing the $records collection. Assuming the

data in the record is UTF-8 encoded text, the final command shows how you can extract the data from the MemoryStream in the object and return it as text to the console.

```
$records
$records = Get-KINRecord -ShardIterator "AAAAAAAAAAGIc....9VnbiRNaP"
```

Output:

```
MillisBehindLatest NextShardIterator           Records
------------------ -----------------           -------
0                  AAAAAAAAAAERNIq...uDn11HuUs  {Key1, Key2}
```

```
$records.Records[0]
```

Output:

```
ApproximateArrivalTimestamp Data                   PartitionKey SequenceNumber
--------------------------- ----                   ------------ --------------
3/7/2016 5:14:33 PM         System.IO.MemoryStream Key1
 4955986459776...931586
```

```
[Text.Encoding]::UTF8.GetString($records.Records[0].Data.ToArray())
```

Output:

```
test data from string
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-KINShardIterator`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-KINShardIterator`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a shard iterator for the specified shard and starting position. Details of the shard identifiers and sequence numbers can be obtained from the output of the Get-KINStream cmdlet, by referencing the Shards collection of the returned stream object. The

returned iterator can be used with the Get-KINRecord cmdlet to pull data records in the shard.

```
Get-KINShardIterator -StreamName "mystream" -ShardId "shardId-000000000000" -
ShardIteratorType AT_SEQUENCE_NUMBER -StartingSequenceNumber "495598645..."
```

Output:

```
AAAAAAAAAAGIc....9VnbiRNaP
```

- For API details, see GetShardIterator in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-KINStream`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-KINStream`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified stream.

```
Get-KINStream -StreamName "mystream"
```

Output:

```
HasMoreShards        : False
RetentionPeriodHours : 24
Shards               : {}
StreamARN            : arn:aws:kinesis:us-west-2:123456789012:stream/mystream
StreamName           : mystream
StreamStatus         : ACTIVE
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-KINStream`

The following code example shows how to use `New-KINStream`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new stream.

```
New-KINStream -StreamName "mystream" -ShardCount 1
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-KINStream`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-KINStream`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the specified stream. You are prompted for confirmation before the command executes. To suppress confirmation prompting use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-KINStream -StreamName "mystream"
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-KINRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-KINRecord`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Writes a record containing the string supplied to the -Text parameter.

```
Write-KINRecord -Text "test data from string" -StreamName "mystream" -PartitionKey
 "Key1"
```

Example 2: Writes a record containing the data contained in the specified file. The file is treated as a sequence of bytes so if it contains text, it should be written with any necessary encoding before using it with this cmdlet.

```
Write-KINRecord -FilePath "C:\TestData.txt" -StreamName "mystream" -PartitionKey
 "Key2"
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Lambda examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Lambda.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-LMResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-LMResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Adds the three tags (Washington, Oregon and California) and their associated values to the specified function identified by its ARN.

```
Add-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction" -Tag @{ "Washington" = "Olympia"; "Oregon"
 = "Salem"; "California" = "Sacramento" }
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMAccountSetting`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMAccountSetting`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays to compare the Account Limit and Account Usage

```
Get-LMAccountSetting | Select-Object
 @{Name="TotalCodeSizeLimit";Expression={$_.AccountLimit.TotalCodeSize}},
 @{Name="TotalCodeSizeUsed";Expression={$_.AccountUsage.TotalCodeSize}}
```

Output:

```
TotalCodeSizeLimit TotalCodeSizeUsed
------------------ -----------------
       80530636800          15078795
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSettings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the Routing Config weights for a specific Lambda Function Alias.

```
Get-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Name "newlabel1" -Select
 RoutingConfig
```

Output:

```
AdditionalVersionWeights
------------------------
{[1, 0.6]}
```

- For API details, see GetAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMFunctionConcurrency`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMFunctionConcurrency`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples gets the Reserved concurrency for the Lambda Function

```
Get-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Select *
```

Output:

```
ReservedConcurrentExecutions
----------------------------
100
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMFunctionConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the version specific configuration of a Lambda Function.

```
Get-LMFunctionConfiguration -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier
 "PowershellAlias"
```

Output:

```
CodeSha256                 : uWOW0R7z+f0VyLuUg7+/D08hkMFsq0SF4seuyUZJ/R8=
CodeSize                   : 1426
DeadLetterConfig           : Amazon.Lambda.Model.DeadLetterConfig
Description                : Verson 3 to test Aliases
Environment                : Amazon.Lambda.Model.EnvironmentResponse
FunctionArn                : arn:aws:lambda:us-
east-1:123456789012:function:MylambdaFunction123
                             :PowershellAlias
FunctionName               : MylambdaFunction123
Handler                    : lambda_function.launch_instance
KMSKeyArn                  :
LastModified               : 2019-12-25T09:52:59.872+0000
LastUpdateStatus           : Successful
LastUpdateStatusReason     :
LastUpdateStatusReasonCode :
Layers                     : {}
```

```
MasterArn                   :
MemorySize                  : 128
RevisionId                  : 5d7de38b-87f2-4260-8f8a-e87280e10c33
Role                        : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/service-role/lambda
Runtime                     : python3.8
State                       : Active
StateReason                 :
StateReasonCode             :
Timeout                     : 600
TracingConfig               : Amazon.Lambda.Model.TracingConfigResponse
Version                     : 4
VpcConfig                   : Amazon.Lambda.Model.VpcConfigDetail
```

- For API details, see GetFunctionConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMFunctionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMFunctionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays all the Lambda functions with sorted code size

```
Get-LMFunctionList | Sort-Object -Property CodeSize | Select-Object FunctionName,
 RunTime, Timeout, CodeSize
```

Output:

```
FunctionName                                                    Runtime   Timeout
 CodeSize
------------                                                    -------   -------
 --------
test                                                            python2.7       3
 243
MylambdaFunction123                                             python3.8     600
 659
myfuncpython1                                                   python3.8     303
 675
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample displays the Function policy of the Lambda function

```
Get-LMPolicy -FunctionName test -Select Policy
```

Output:

```
{"Version":"2012-10-17","Id":"default","Statement":
[{"Sid":"xxxx","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"Service":"sns.amazonaws.com"},"Action":"lambda:InvokeFunction","Resource":"arn:aws:lambda:
east-1:123456789102:function:test"}]}
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the provisioned Concurrency Configuration for the specified Alias of the Lambda Function.

```
C:\>Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

Output:

```
AllocatedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 0
AvailableProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 0
LastModified                             : 2020-01-15T03:21:26+0000
RequestedProvisionedConcurrentExecutions : 70
Status                                   : IN_PROGRESS
StatusReason                             :
```

- For API details, see GetProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfigList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfigList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the list of provisioned concurrency configurations for a Lambda function.

```
Get-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfigList -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

- For API details, see ListProvisionedConcurrencyConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves the tags and their values currently set on the specified function.

```
Get-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
```

Output:

```
Key        Value
---        -----
California Sacramento
Oregon     Salem
Washington Olympia
```

- For API details, see ListTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-LMVersionsByFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-LMVersionsByFunction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the list of version specific configurations for each version of the Lambda Function.

```
Get-LMVersionsByFunction -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

Output:

```
FunctionName        Runtime   MemorySize Timeout CodeSize LastModified
   RoleName
------------        -------   ---------- ------- -------- ------------
   --------
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128     600      659
 2020-01-10T03:20:56.390+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128       5     1426
 2019-12-25T09:19:02.238+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128       5     1426
 2019-12-25T09:39:36.779+0000 lambda
MylambdaFunction123 python3.8        128     600     1426
 2019-12-25T09:52:59.872+0000 lambda
```

- For API details, see ListVersionsByFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-LMAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `New-LMAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a New Lambda Alias for specified version and routing configuration to specify the percentage of invocation requests that it receives.

```
New-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
RoutingConfig_AdditionalVersionWeight @{Name="1";Value="0.6} -Description "Alias for
 version 4" -FunctionVersion 4 -Name "PowershellAlias"
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Publish-LMFunction

The following code example shows how to use `Publish-LMFunction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new C# (dotnetcore1.0 runtime) function named MyFunction in AWS Lambda, providing the compiled binaries for the function from a zip file on the local file system (relative or absolute paths may be used). C# Lambda functions specify the handler for the function using the designation AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName. You should replace the assembly name (without .dll suffix), namespace, class name and method name parts of the handler spec appropriately. The new function will have environment variables 'envvar1' and 'envvar2' set up from the provided values.

```
Publish-LMFunction -Description "My C# Lambda Function" `
        -FunctionName MyFunction `
        -ZipFilename .\MyFunctionBinaries.zip `
        -Handler "AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName" `
        -Role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole" `
        -Runtime dotnetcore1.0 `
        -Environment_Variable @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" }
```

Output:

```
CodeSha256       : /NgBMd...gq71I=
CodeSize         : 214784
DeadLetterConfig :
Description      : My C# Lambda Function
Environment      : Amazon.Lambda.Model.EnvironmentResponse
FunctionArn      : arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:ToUpper
FunctionName     : MyFunction
Handler          : AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName
KMSKeyArn        :
LastModified     : 2016-12-29T23:50:14.207+0000
MemorySize       : 128
Role             : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole
Runtime          : dotnetcore1.0
Timeout          : 3
Version          : $LATEST
VpcConfig        :
```

Example 2: This example is similar to the previous one except the function binaries are first uploaded to an Amazon S3 bucket (which must be in the same region as the intended Lambda function) and the resulting S3 object is then referenced when creating the function.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key MyFunctionBinaries.zip -File .
\MyFunctionBinaries.zip
Publish-LMFunction -Description "My C# Lambda Function" `
        -FunctionName MyFunction `
        -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket `
        -Key MyFunctionBinaries.zip `
        -Handler "AssemblyName::Namespace.ClassName::MethodName" `
        -Role "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/LambdaFullExecRole" `
        -Runtime dotnetcore1.0 `
        -Environment_Variable @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Publish-LMVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish-LMVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a version for the existing snapshot of Lambda Function Code

```
Publish-LMVersion -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Description "Publishing
 Existing Snapshot of function code as a  new version through Powershell"
```

- For API details, see PublishVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-LMAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-LMAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the Lambda function Alias mentioned in the command.

```
Remove-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Name "NewAlias"
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-LMFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-LMFunction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a specific version of a Lambda function

```
Remove-LMFunction -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier '3'
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-LMFunctionConcurrency`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-LMFunctionConcurrency`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This examples removes the Function Concurrency of the Lambda Function.

```
Remove-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123"
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-LMPermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-LMPermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the function policy for the specified StatementId of a Lambda Function.

```
$policy =  Get-LMPolicy -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Select Policy |
 ConvertFrom-Json| Select-Object -ExpandProperty Statement
Remove-LMPermission -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -StatementId $policy[0].Sid
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the Provisioned Concurrency Configuration for a specific Alias.

```
Remove-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Qualifier
 "NewAlias1"
```

- For API details, see DeleteProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-LMResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-LMResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Removes the supplied tags from a function. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding unless the -Force switch is specified. A single call is made to the service to remove the tags.

```
Remove-LMResourceTag -Resource "arn:aws:lambda:us-
west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction" -TagKey "Washington","Oregon","California"
```

Example 2: Removes the supplied tags from a function. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding unless the -Force switch is specified. Once call to the service is made per supplied tag.

```
"Washington","Oregon","California" | Remove-LMResourceTag -Resource
 "arn:aws:lambda:us-west-2:123456789012:function:MyFunction"
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-LMAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-LMAlias`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the Configuration of an existing Lambda function Alias. It updates the RoutingConfiguration value to shift 60% (0.6) of traffic to version 1

```
Update-LMAlias -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Description " Alias for version
 2" -FunctionVersion 2 -Name "newlabel1" -RoutingConfig_AdditionalVersionWeight
 @{Name="1";Value="0.6}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-LMFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-LMFunctionCode`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the function named 'MyFunction' with new content contained in the specified zip file. For a C# .NET Core Lambda function the zip file should contain the compiled assembly.

```
Update-LMFunctionCode -FunctionName MyFunction -ZipFilename .\UpdatedCode.zip
```

Example 2: This example is similar to the previous one but uses an Amazon S3 object containing the updated code to update the function.

```
Update-LMFunctionCode -FunctionName MyFunction -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key
 UpdatedCode.zip
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-LMFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-LMFunctionConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the existing Lambda Function Configuration

```
Update-LMFunctionConfiguration -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -Handler
 "lambda_function.launch_instance" -Timeout 600 -Environment_Variable
```

```
 @{ "envvar1"="value";"envvar2"="value" } -Role arn:aws:iam::123456789101:role/
service-role/lambda -DeadLetterConfig_TargetArn arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:
 123456789101:MyfirstTopic
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-LMFunctionConcurrency`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-LMFunctionConcurrency`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example applies the concurrency settings for the Function as a whole.

```
Write-LMFunctionConcurrency -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
ReservedConcurrentExecution 100
```

- For API details, see PutFunctionConcurrency in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a provisioned concurrency configuration to a Function's Alias

```
Write-LMProvisionedConcurrencyConfig -FunctionName "MylambdaFunction123" -
ProvisionedConcurrentExecution 20 -Qualifier "NewAlias1"
```

- For API details, see PutProvisionedConcurrencyConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon ML examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon ML.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-MLBatchPrediction`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLBatchPrediction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the detailed metadata for a batch prediction with id ID.

```
Get-MLBatchPrediction -BatchPredictionId ID
```

- For API details, see GetBatchPrediction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLBatchPredictionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLBatchPredictionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a list of all BatchPredictions and their associated data records that match the search criterion given in the request.

```
Get-MLBatchPredictionList
```

Example 2: Returns a list of all BatchPredictions with a status of COMPLETED.

```
Get-MLBatchPredictionList -FilterVariable Status -EQ COMPLETED
```

- For API details, see DescribeBatchPredictions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLDataSource`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLDataSource`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the metadata, status, and data file information for a DataSource with the id ID

```
Get-MLDataSource -DataSourceId ID
```

- For API details, see GetDataSource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLDataSourceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLDataSourceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a list of all DataSources and their associated data records.

```
Get-MLDataSourceList
```

Example 2: Returns a list of all DataSources with a status of COMPLETED.

```
Get-MLDataDourceList -FilterVariable Status -EQ COMPLETED
```

- For API details, see DescribeDataSources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLEvaluation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLEvaluation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns metadata and status for an Evaluation with id ID.

```
Get-MLEvaluation -EvaluationId ID
```

- For API details, see GetEvaluation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLEvaluationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLEvaluationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a list of all Evaluation resources

```
Get-MLEvaluationList
```

Example 2: Returns a list of all Evaulations with a status of COMPLETED.

```
Get-MLEvaluationList -FilterVariable Status -EQ COMPLETED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEvaluations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLModel`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLModel`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the detail metadata, status, schema, and data file information for a MLModel with id ID.

```
Get-MLModel -ModelId ID
```

- For API details, see GetMLModel in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLModelList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLModelList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a list of all Models and their associated data records.

```
Get-MLModelList
```

Example 2: Returns a list of all Models with a status of COMPLETED.

```
Get-MLModelList -FilterVariable Status -EQ COMPLETED
```

- For API details, see DescribeMLModels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-MLPrediction`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MLPrediction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Send a record to the realtime prediction endpoint URL for Model with id ID.

```
Get-MLPrediction -ModelId ID -PredictEndpoint URL -Record @{"A" = "B"; "C" = "D";}
```

- For API details, see Predict in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-MLBatchPrediction`

The following code example shows how to use `New-MLBatchPrediction`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create a new batch prediction request for model with id ID and put the output at the specified S3 location.

```
New-MLBatchPrediction -ModelId ID -Name NAME -OutputURI s3://...
```

- For API details, see CreateBatchPrediction in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-MLDataSourceFromS3`

The following code example shows how to use `New-MLDataSourceFromS3`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create a data source with data for an S3 location, with a name of NAME and a schema of SCHEMA.

```
New-MLDataSourceFromS3 -Name NAME -ComputeStatistics $true -DataSpec_DataLocationS3
 "s3://BUCKET/KEY" -DataSchema SCHEMA
```

- For API details, see CreateDataSourceFromS3 in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-MLEvaluation`

The following code example shows how to use `New-MLEvaluation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create an evaluation for a given data source id and model id

```
New-MLEvaluation -Name NAME -DataSourceId DSID -ModelId MID
```

- For API details, see CreateEvaluation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-MLModel`

The following code example shows how to use `New-MLModel`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create a new model with training data.

```
New-MLModel -Name NAME -ModelType BINARY -Parameter @{...} -TrainingDataSourceId ID
```

- For API details, see CreateMLModel in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-MLRealtimeEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `New-MLRealtimeEndpoint`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create a new realtime prediction endpoint for the given model id.

```
New-MLRealtimeEndpoint -ModelId ID
```

- For API details, see CreateRealtimeEndpoint in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Macie examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Macie.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-MAC2FindingList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-MAC2FindingList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns list of FindingIds for Findings containing a sensitive data detection with type "CREDIT_CARD_NUMBER" or "US_SOCIAL_SECURITY_NUMBER"

```
$criterionAddProperties = New-Object
 Amazon.Macie2.Model.CriterionAdditionalProperties

$criterionAddProperties.Eq = @(
"CREDIT_CARD_NUMBER"
"US_SOCIAL_SECURITY_NUMBER"
)

$FindingCriterion = @{
'classificationDetails.result.sensitiveData.detections.type' =
 [Amazon.Macie2.Model.CriterionAdditionalProperties]$criterionAddProperties
}

Get-MAC2FindingList -FindingCriteria_Criterion $FindingCriterion -MaxResult 5
```

- For API details, see ListFindings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS Price List examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS Price List.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-PLSAttributeValue`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-PLSAttributeValue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the values for the attribute 'volumeType' for Amazon EC2 in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSAttributeValue -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -AttributeName "volumeType" -region us-
east-1
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Cold HDD
General Purpose
Magnetic
Provisioned IOPS
Throughput Optimized HDD
```

- For API details, see GetAttributeValues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-PLSProduct`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-PLSProduct`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of all products for Amazon EC2.

```
Get-PLSProduct -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
{"product":{"productFamily":"Compute Instance","attributes":
{"enhancedNetworkingSupported":"Yes","memory":"30.5
 GiB","dedicatedEbsThroughput":"800 Mbps","vcpu":"4","locationType":"AWS
 Region","storage":"EBS only","instanceFamily":"Memory
 optimized","operatingSystem":"SUSE","physicalProcessor":"Intel Xeon E5-2686 v4
 (Broadwell)","clockSpeed":"2.3 GHz","ecu":"Variable","networkPerformance":"Up
 to 10 Gigabit","servicename":"Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud","instanceType":"r4.xlarge","tenancy":"Shared","usagetype":"USW2-
BoxUsage:r4.xlarge","normalizationSizeFactor":"8","processorFeatures":"Intel AVX,
 Intel AVX2, Intel Turbo","servicecode":"AmazonEC2","licenseModel":"No License
 required","currentGeneration":"Yes","preInstalledSw":"NA","location":"US West
 (Oregon)","processorArchitecture":"64-bit","operation":"RunInstances:000g"},...
```

Example 2: Returns data for Amazon EC2 in the us-east-1 region filtered by volume types of 'General Purpose' that are SSD-backed.

```
Get-PLSProduct -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Filter
 @{Type="TERM_MATCH";Field="volumeType";Value="General
 Purpose"},@{Type="TERM_MATCH";Field="storageMedia";Value="SSD-backed"} -Region us-
east-1
```

Output:

```
{"product":{"productFamily":"Storage","attributes":{"storageMedia":"SSD-
backed","maxThroughputvolume":"160 MB/sec","volumeType":"General
 Purpose","maxIopsvolume":"10000",...
```

- For API details, see GetProducts in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-PLSService`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-PLSService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the metadata for all available service codes in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSService -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
AttributeNames                                                    ServiceCode
--------------                                                    -----------
{productFamily, servicecode, groupDescription, termType...}       AWSBudgets
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}              AWSCloudTrail
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}              AWSCodeCommit
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}              AWSCodeDeploy
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}              AWSCodePipeline
{productFamily, servicecode, termType, usagetype...}              AWSConfig
...
```

Example 2: Returns the metadata for the Amazon EC2 service in the us-east-1 region.

```
Get-PLSService -ServiceCode AmazonEC2 -Region us-east-1
```

Output:

```
AttributeNames                                                        ServiceCode
--------------                                                        -----------
{volumeType, maxIopsvolume, instanceCapacity10xlarge, locationType...} AmazonEC2
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Resource Groups examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Resource Groups.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-RGResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-RGResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds tag key 'Instances' with value 'workboxes' to the given resource group arn

```
Add-RGResourceTag -Tag @{Instances="workboxes"} -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-
west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes
```

Output:

```
Arn                                                          Tags
---                                                          ----
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes {[Instances,
 workboxes]}
```

- For API details, see Tag in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Find-RGResource`

The following code example shows how to use `Find-RGResource`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a ResourceQuery for Instance resource types with tag filters and finds resources.

```
$query = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery]::new()
$query.Type = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.QueryType]::TAG_FILTERS_1_0
```

```
$query.Query = ConvertTo-Json -Compress -Depth 4 -InputObject @{
  ResourceTypeFilters = @('AWS::EC2::Instance')
  TagFilters = @(@{
    Key = 'auto'
    Values = @('no')
  })
 }

Find-RGResource -ResourceQuery $query | Select-Object -ExpandProperty
 ResourceIdentifiers
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn                                                    ResourceType
-----------                                                    ------------
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0123445b6cb7bd67b AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see SearchResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves resource group as per the group name

```
Get-RGGroup -GroupName auto-no
```

Output:

```
Description GroupArn                                                Name
----------- --------                                                ----
            arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-no auto-no
```

- For API details, see GetGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGGroupList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGGroupList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists resource group already created.

```
Get-RGGroupList
```

Output:

```
GroupArn                                                                GroupName
--------                                                                ---------
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-no            auto-no
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-yes           auto-yes
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/build600           build600
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGGroupQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGGroupQuery`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example fetches the resource query for the given resource group

```
Get-RGGroupQuery -GroupName auto-no | Select-Object -ExpandProperty ResourceQuery
```

Output:

```
Query
         Type
-----
         ----
{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":[{"Key":"auto","Values":
["no"]}]} TAG_FILTERS_1_0
```

- For API details, see GetGroupQuery in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGGroupResourceList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGGroupResourceList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists group resources on the basis of filtered by resource type

```
Get-RGGroupResourceList -Filter @{Name="resource-type";Values="AWS::EC2::Instance"}
 -GroupName auto-yes | Select-Object -ExpandProperty ResourceIdentifiers
```

Output:

```
ResourceArn                                                      ResourceType
-----------                                                      ------------
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0123bc45b567890e1 AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0a1caf2345f67d8dc AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-012e3cb4df567e8aa AWS::EC2::Instance
arn:aws:ec2:eu-west-1:123456789012:instance/i-0fd12dd3456789012 AWS::EC2::Instance
```

- For API details, see ListGroupResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists tags for the given resource group arn

```
Get-RGResourceTag -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
workboxes
```

Output:

```
Key       Value
---       -----
Instances workboxes
```

- For API details, see GetTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-RGGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `New-RGGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new tag-based AWS Resource Groups resource group named TestPowerShellGroup. The group includes Amazon EC2 instances in the current region that are tagged with the tag key "Name", and tag value "test2". The command returns the query and type of group, and the results of the operation.

```
$ResourceQuery = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
$ResourceQuery.Type = "TAG_FILTERS_1_0"
$ResourceQuery.Query = '{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":
[{"Key":"Name","Values":["test2"]}]}'
$ResourceQuery

New-RGGroup -Name TestPowerShellGroup -ResourceQuery $ResourceQuery -Description
 "Test resource group."
```

Output:

```
Query
            Type
-----
            ----
{"ResourceTypeFilters":["AWS::EC2::Instance"],"TagFilters":[{"Key":"Name","Values":
["test2"]}]} TAG_FILTERS_1_0

LoggedAt         : 11/20/2018 2:40:59 PM
Group            : Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.Group
ResourceQuery    : Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
Tags             : {}
ResponseMetadata : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength    : 338
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see CreateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-RGGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-RGGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the named resource group

```
Remove-RGGroup -GroupName non-tag-cfn-elbv2
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-RGGroup (DeleteGroup)" on target "non-tag-cfn-
elbv2".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Description GroupArn
 Name
----------- --------
 ----
            arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/non-tag-cfn-elbv2
 non-tag-cfn-elbv2
```

- For API details, see DeleteGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-RGResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-RGResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes mentioned tag from the resource group

```
Remove-RGResourceTag -Arn arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/
workboxes -Key Instances
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-RGResourceTag (Untag)" on target "arn:aws:resource-
groups:eu-west-1:933303704102:group/workboxes".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y

Arn                                                                Keys
```

```
---                                                                 ----
arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/workboxes {Instances}
```

- For API details, see Untag in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-RGGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-RGGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the description of the group

```
Update-RGGroup -GroupName auto-yes -Description "Instances auto-remove"
```

Output:

```
Description             GroupArn
  Name
-----------             --------
  ----
Instances to be cleaned arn:aws:resource-groups:eu-west-1:123456789012:group/auto-
yes auto-yes
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-RGGroupQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-RGGroupQuery`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a query object and updates the query for the group.

```
$query = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery]::new()
$query.Type = [Amazon.ResourceGroups.QueryType]::TAG_FILTERS_1_0
$query.Query = @{
  ResourceTypeFilters = @('AWS::EC2::Instance')
  TagFilters = @(@{
  Key='Environment'
  Values='Build600.11'
```

```
  })
} | ConvertTo-Json -Compress -Depth 4

Update-RGGroupQuery -GroupName build600 -ResourceQuery $query
```

Output:

```
GroupName ResourceQuery
--------- -------------
build600  Amazon.ResourceGroups.Model.ResourceQuery
```

- For API details, see UpdateGroupQuery in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Resource Groups Tagging API examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Resource Groups Tagging API.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-RGTResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-RGTResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds the tag keys "stage" and "version" with values "beta" and "preprod_test" to an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. A single call is made to the service to apply the tags.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
```

```
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

Add-RGTResourceTag -ResourceARNList $arn1,$arn2 -Tag @{ "stage"="beta";
 "version"="preprod_test" }
```

Example 2: This example adds the specified tags and values to an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. Two calls are made to the service, one for each resource ARN piped into the cmdlet.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

$arn1,$arn2 | Add-RGTResourceTag -Tag @{ "stage"="beta"; "version"="preprod_test" }
```

- For API details, see TagResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGTResource`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGTResource`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all the tagged resources in a region and the tag keys associated with the resource. If no -Region parameter is supplied to the cmdlet it will attempt to infer region from the shell or EC2 instance metadata.

```
Get-RGTResource
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                       Tags
-----------                                                       ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable             {stage, version}
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket                                            {stage,
 version, othertag}
```

Example 2: Returns all the tagged resources of the specified type in a region. The string for each service name and resource type is the same as that embedded in a resource's Amazon Resource Name (ARN).

```
Get-RGTResource -ResourceType "s3"
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket                                          {stage,
 version, othertag}
```

Example 3: Returns all the tagged resources of the specified type in a region. Note that when the resource types are piped into the cmdlet, one call to the service is made for each supplied resource type.

```
"dynamodb","s3" | Get-RGTResource
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket                                          {stage,
 version, othertag}
```

Example 4: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage" }
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket                                          {stage,
 version, othertag}
```

Example 5: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter and resource type.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage" } -ResourceType "dynamodb"
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}
```

Example 6: Returns all the tagged resources that match the specified filter.

```
Get-RGTResource -TagFilter @{ Key="stage"; Values=@("beta","gamma") }
```

Output:

```
ResourceARN                                                     Tags
-----------                                                     ----
arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable           {stage, version}
```

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGTTagKey`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGTTagKey`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all tag keys in the specified region. If the -Region parameter is not specified the cmdlet will attempt to infer the region from the default shell region or EC2 instance metadata. Note that the tag keys are not returned in any specific order.

```
Get-RGTTagKey -region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
version
stage
```

- For API details, see GetTagKeys in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-RGTTagValue`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-RGTTagValue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the value for the specified tag in a region. If the -Region parameter is not specified the cmdlet will attempt to infer the region from the default shell region or EC2 instance metadata.

```
Get-RGTTagValue -Key "stage" -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
beta
```

- For API details, see GetTagValues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-RGTResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-RGTResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Removes the tag keys "stage" and "version", and the associated values, from an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. A single call is made to the service to remove the tags. Before the tags are removed the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation. To bypass confirmation add the -Force parameter.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

Remove-RGTResourceTag -ResourceARNList $arn1,$arn2 -TagKey "stage","version"
```

Example 2: Removes the tag keys "stage" and "version", and the associated values, from an Amazon S3 bucket and an Amazon DynamoDB table. Two calls are made to the service, one for each resource ARN piped into the cmdlet. Before each call the cmdlet will prompt for confirmation. To bypass confirmation add the -Force parameter.

```
$arn1 = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
$arn2 = "arn:aws:dynamodb:us-west-2:123456789012:table/mytable"

$arn1,$arn2 | Remove-RGTResourceTag -TagKey "stage","version"
```

- For API details, see UntagResources in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Route 53 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Route 53.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates an A record for www.example.com and changes the A record for test.example.com from 192.0.2.3 to 192.0.2.1. Note that values for changes TXT-type records must be in double quotes. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "TXT"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="item 1 item 2 item 3"})

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
```

```
$change2.Action = "DELETE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "test.example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.3"})

$change3 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change3.Action = "CREATE"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "test.example.com"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change3.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.1"})

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z1PA6795UKMFR9"
 ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates a TXT record for www.example.com.
 and changes the A record for test.example.com. from 192.0.2.3 to 192.0.2.1."
 ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2,$change3
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 2: This example shows how to create alias resource record sets. 'Z222222222' is the ID of the Amazon Route 53 hosted zone in which you're creating the alias resource record set. 'example.com' is the zone apex for which you want to create an alias and 'www.example.com' is a subdomain for which you also want to create an alias. 'Z1111111111111' is an example of a hosted zone ID for the load balancer and 'example-load-balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com' is an example of a load balancer domain name with which Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com and www.example.com. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
```

```
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $false

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z222222222"
 ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two alias resource record sets, one
 for the zone apex, example.com, and one for www.example.com, that both point to
 example-load-balancer-1111111111.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
 ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 3: This example creates two A records for www.example.com. One-fourth of the time (1/(1+3)), Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for www.example.com with the two values for the first resource record set (192.0.2.9 and 192.0.2.10). Three-fourths of the time (3/(1+3)) Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for www.example.com with the two values for the second resource record set (192.0.2.11 and 192.0.2.12). See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Rack 2, Positions 4 and 5"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 1
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
```

```
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.9"})
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.10"})

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "www.example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Rack 5, Positions 1 and 2"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 3
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.TTL = 600
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords = @()
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.11"})
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.ResourceRecords.Add(@{Value="192.0.2.12"})

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z1PA6795UKMFR9"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change creates two weighted resource record sets, each
 of which has two values."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 4: This example shows how to create weighted alias resource record sets assuming that example.com is the domain for which you want to create weighted alias resource record sets. SetIdentifier differentiates the two weighted alias resource record sets from one another. This element is required because the Name and Type elements have the same values for both resource record sets. Z1111111111111 and Z3333333333333 are examples of hosted zone IDs for the ELB load balancer specified by the value of DNSName. example-load-balancer-2222222222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com and example-load-balancer-4444444444.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com are examples of Elastic Load Balancing domains from which Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com. See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
```

```
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "1"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 3
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-2222222222.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "2"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Weight = 1
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z3333333333333"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-4444444444.us-east-1.elb.amazonaws.com."
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $false

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z5555555555"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two weighted alias resource
 record sets. Amazon Route 53 responds to queries for example.com with the first ELB
 domain 3/4ths of the times and the second one 1/4th of the time."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

Example 5: This example creates two latency alias resource record sets, one for an ELB load balancer in the US West (Oregon) region (us-west-2), and another for a load balancer in the Asia Pacific (Singapore) region (ap-southeast-1). See the Amazon Route 53 documentation for more details. You can use the Get-R53Change cmdlet to poll to determine when the changes are complete.

```
$change1 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change1.Action = "CREATE"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
```

```
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Oregon load balancer 1"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.Region = us-west-2
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z1111111111111"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-2222222222.us-west-2.elb.amazonaws.com"
$change1.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$change2 = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.Change
$change2.Action = "CREATE"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.ResourceRecordSet
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Name = "example.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Type = "A"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.SetIdentifier = "Singapore load balancer 1"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.Region = ap-southeast-1
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget = New-Object Amazon.Route53.Model.AliasTarget
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.HostedZoneId = "Z2222222222222"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.DNSName = "example-load-
balancer-1111111111.ap-southeast-1.elb.amazonaws.com"
$change2.ResourceRecordSet.AliasTarget.EvaluateTargetHealth = $true

$params = @{
    HostedZoneId="Z5555555555"
    ChangeBatch_Comment="This change batch creates two latency resource record
 sets, one for the US West (Oregon) region and one for the Asia Pacific (Singapore)
 region."
    ChangeBatch_Change=$change1,$change2
}

Edit-R53ResourceRecordSet @params
```

- For API details, see ChangeResourceRecordSets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53AccountLimit`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53AccountLimit`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the maximum number of hosted zones that can be created using the current account.

```
Get-R53AccountLimit -Type MAX_HOSTED_ZONES_BY_OWNER
```

Output:

```
15
```

- For API details, see GetAccountLimit in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53CheckerIpRanges`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53CheckerIpRanges`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the CIDRs for the Route53 health checkers

```
Get-R53CheckerIpRanges
```

Output:

```
15.177.2.0/23
15.177.6.0/23
15.177.10.0/23
15.177.14.0/23
15.177.18.0/23
15.177.22.0/23
15.177.26.0/23
15.177.30.0/23
15.177.34.0/23
15.177.38.0/23
15.177.42.0/23
15.177.46.0/23
15.177.50.0/23
15.177.54.0/23
15.177.58.0/23
15.177.62.0/23
54.183.255.128/26
54.228.16.0/26
54.232.40.64/26
54.241.32.64/26
```

```
54.243.31.192/26
54.244.52.192/26
54.245.168.0/26
54.248.220.0/26
54.250.253.192/26
54.251.31.128/26
54.252.79.128/26
54.252.254.192/26
54.255.254.192/26
107.23.255.0/26
176.34.159.192/26
177.71.207.128/26
```

- For API details, see GetCheckerIpRanges in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53HostedZone`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53HostedZone`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the hosted zone with ID Z1D633PJN98FT9.

```
Get-R53HostedZone -Id Z1D633PJN98FT9
```

- For API details, see GetHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53HostedZoneCount`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53HostedZoneCount`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the total number of public and private hosted zones for the current AWS account.

```
Get-R53HostedZoneCount
```

- For API details, see GetHostedZoneCount in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53HostedZoneLimit`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53HostedZoneLimit`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the limit on the maximum number of records that can be created in the specified hosted zone.

```
Get-R53HostedZoneLimit -HostedZoneId Z3MEQ8T7HAAAAF -Type MAX_RRSETS_BY_ZONE
```

Output:

```
5
```

- For API details, see GetHostedZoneLimit in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53HostedZoneList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53HostedZoneList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Outputs all of your public and private hosted zones.

```
Get-R53HostedZoneList
```

Example 2: Outputs all of the hosted zones that are associated with the reusable delegation set that has the ID NZ8X2CISAMPLE

```
Get-R53HostedZoneList -DelegationSetId NZ8X2CISAMPLE
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZones in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53HostedZonesByName`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53HostedZonesByName`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all of your public and private hosted zones in ASCII order by domain name.

```
Get-R53HostedZonesByName
```

Example 2: Returns your public and private hosted zones, in ASCII order by domain name, starting at the specified DNS name.

```
Get-R53HostedZonesByName -DnsName example2.com
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZonesByName in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53QueryLoggingConfigList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53QueryLoggingConfigList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns all the configurations for DNS query logging that are associated with the current AWS account.

```
Get-R53QueryLoggingConfigList
```

Output:

```
Id                                   HostedZoneId   CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn
--                                   ------------   -------------------------
59b0fa33-4fea-4471-a88c-926476aaa40d Z385PDS6EAAAZR arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example1.com:*
ee528e95-4e03-4fdc-9d28-9e24ddaaa063 Z94SJHBV1AAAAZ arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example2.com:*
e38dddda-ceb6-45c1-8cb7-f0ae56aaaa2b Z3MEQ8T7AAA1BF arn:aws:logs:us-
east-1:111111111112:log-group:/aws/route53/example3.com:*
```

- For API details, see ListQueryLoggingConfigs in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-R53ReusableDelegationSet`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-R53ReusableDelegationSet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves information about the specified delegation set including the four name servers that are assigned to the delegation set.

```
Get-R53ReusableDelegationSet -Id N23DS9X4AYEAAA
```

Output:

```
Id                            CallerReference NameServers
--                            --------------- -----------
/delegationset/N23DS9X4AYEAAA testcaller      {ns-545.awsdns-04.net,
 ns-1264.awsdns-30.org, ns-2004.awsdns-58.co.uk, ns-240.awsdns-30.com}
```

- For API details, see GetReusableDelegationSet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-R53HostedZone`

The following code example shows how to use `New-R53HostedZone`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new hosted zone named 'example.com', associated with a reusable delegation set. Note that you must supply a value for the CallerReference parameter so that requests that need to be retried if necessary without the risk of executing the operation twice. Because the hosted zone is being created in a VPC it is automatically private and you should not set the -HostedZoneConfig_PrivateZone parameter.

```
$params = @{
    Name="example.com"
    CallerReference="myUniqueIdentifier"
    HostedZoneConfig_Comment="This is my first hosted zone"
    DelegationSetId="NZ8X2CISAMPLE"
    VPC_VPCId="vpc-1a2b3c4d"
    VPC_VPCRegion="us-east-1"
```

```
}

New-R53HostedZone @params
```

- For API details, see CreateHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-R53QueryLoggingConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `New-R53QueryLoggingConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new Route53 DNS query logging configuration for the specified hosted zone. Amazon Route53 will publish DNS query logs to the specified Cloudwatch log group.

```
New-R53QueryLoggingConfig -HostedZoneId Z3MEQ8T7HAAAAF -CloudWatchLogsLogGroupArn
 arn:aws:logs:us-east-1:111111111111:log-group:/aws/route53/example.com:*
```

Output:

```
QueryLoggingConfig                      Location
------------------                      --------
Amazon.Route53.Model.QueryLoggingConfig https://route53.amazonaws.com/2013-04-01/
queryloggingconfig/ee5aaa95-4e03-4fdc-9d28-9e24ddaaaaa3
```

- For API details, see CreateQueryLoggingConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-R53ReusableDelegationSet`

The following code example shows how to use `New-R53ReusableDelegationSet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a reusable delegation set of 4 name servers that can be resused by multiple hosted zones.

```
New-R53ReusableDelegationSet -CallerReference testcallerreference
```

Output:

```
DelegationSet                      Location
-------------                      --------
Amazon.Route53.Model.DelegationSet https://route53.amazonaws.com/2013-04-01/
delegationset/N23DS9XAAAAAXM
```

- For API details, see CreateReusableDelegationSet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-R53VPCWithHostedZone`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-R53VPCWithHostedZone`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates the specified VPC with the private hosted zone.

```
Register-R53VPCWithHostedZone -HostedZoneId Z3MEQ8T7HAAAAF -VPC_VPCId vpc-f1b9aaaa -
VPC_VPCRegion us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Id                     Status  SubmittedAt         Comment
--                     ------  -----------         -------
/change/C3SCAAA633Z6DX PENDING 01/28/2020 19:32:02
```

- For API details, see AssociateVPCWithHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-R53HostedZone`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-R53HostedZone`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the hosted zone with the specified ID. You will be prompted for confirmation before the command proceeds unless you add the -Force switch parameter.

```
Remove-R53HostedZone -Id Z1PA6795UKMFR9
```

- For API details, see DeleteHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-R53QueryLoggingConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-R53QueryLoggingConfig`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the specified configuration for DNS query logging.

```
Remove-R53QueryLoggingConfig -Id ee528e95-4e03-4fdc-9d28-9e24daaa20063
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueryLoggingConfig in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-R53ReusableDelegationSet`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-R53ReusableDelegationSet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified reusable delegation set.

```
Remove-R53ReusableDelegationSet -Id N23DS9X4AYAAAM
```

- For API details, see DeleteReusableDelegationSet in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-R53VPCFromHostedZone`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-R53VPCFromHostedZone`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example disassociates the specified VPC from the private hosted zone.

```
Unregister-R53VPCFromHostedZone -HostedZoneId Z3MEQ8T7HAAAAF -VPC_VPCId vpc-f1b9aaaa
 -VPC_VPCRegion us-east-1
```

Output:

```
Id                      Status  SubmittedAt         Comment
--                      ------  -----------         -------
/change/C2XFCAAAA9HKZG PENDING 01/28/2020 10:35:55
```

- For API details, see DisassociateVPCFromHostedZone in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-R53HostedZoneComment`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-R53HostedZoneComment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command updates the comment for the specified hosted zone.

```
Update-R53HostedZoneComment -Id Z385PDS6AAAAAR -Comment "This is my first hosted
 zone"
```

Output:

```
Id                     : /hostedzone/Z385PDS6AAAAAR
Name                   : example.com.
CallerReference        : C5B55555-7147-EF04-8341-69131E805C89
Config                 : Amazon.Route53.Model.HostedZoneConfig
ResourceRecordSetCount : 9
LinkedService          :
```

- For API details, see UpdateHostedZoneComment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon S3 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon S3.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Copy-S3Object`

The following code example shows how to use `Copy-S3Object`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command copies the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to the same bucket but with a new key of "sample-copy.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -DestinationKey
 sample-copy.txt
```

Example 2: This command copies the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to the bucket "backup-files" with a key of "sample-copy.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-source-bucket -Key sample.txt -DestinationKey
 sample-copy.txt -DestinationBucket amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket
```

Example 3: This command downloads the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" to a local file with name "local-sample.txt".

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -LocalFile local-
sample.txt
```

Example 4: Downloads the single object to the specified file. The downloaded file will be found at c:\downloads\data\archive.zip

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key data/archive.zip -LocalFolder c:
\downloads
```

Example 5: Downloads all objects that match the specified key prefix to the local folder. The relative key hierarchy will be preserved as subfolders in the overall download location.

```
Copy-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix data -LocalFolder c:
\downloads
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3Bucket`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3Bucket`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns all S3 buckets.

```
Get-S3Bucket
```

Example 2: This command returns bucket named "test-files"

```
Get-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketACL`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketACL`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command gets the details of the object owner of the S3 object.

```
(Get-S3BucketACL -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select *).Owner
```

Output:

```
DisplayName Id
----------- --
```

```
testusername      9988776a6554433d22f1100112e334acb45566778899009e9887bd7f66c5f544
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the value Enabled, if the transfer acceleration settings is enabled for the bucket specified.

```
Get-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Enabled
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details of the analytics filter with the name 'testfilter' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -AnalyticsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfigurationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfigurationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the first 100 analytics configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketAnalyticsConfigurationList -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see ListBucketAnalyticsConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketEncryption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns all the server side encryption rules associated with the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details of the inventory named 'testinventory' for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -InventoryId
 'testinventory'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketInventoryConfigurationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketInventoryConfigurationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the first 100 inventory configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketInventoryConfigurationList -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see ListBucketInventoryConfigurations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketLocation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketLocation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the location constraint for the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket', if a constraint exists.

```
Get-S3BucketLocation -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
ap-south-1
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLocation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketLogging`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketLogging`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the logging status for the specified bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketLogging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
TargetBucketName   Grants TargetPrefix
----------------   ------ ------------
testbucket1        {}     testprefix
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLogging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details about the metrics filter named 'testfilter' for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -MetricsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketNotification`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketNotification`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves notification configuration of the given bucket

```
Get-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket | select -ExpandProperty
 TopicConfigurations
```

Output:

```
Id   Topic
--   -----
```

```
mimo arn:aws:sns:eu-west-1:123456789012:topic-1
```

- For API details, see GetBucketNotification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command outputs the bucket policy associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketPolicy -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketPolicyStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketPolicyStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns policy status for the given S3 bucket, indicating whether the bucket is public.

```
Get-S3BucketPolicyStatus -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicyStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketReplication`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketReplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the replication configuration information set on the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
Get-S3BucketReplication -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see GetBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketRequestPayment`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketRequestPayment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the request payment configuration for the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'. By default, the bucket owner pays for downloads from the bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketRequestPayment -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see GetBucketRequestPayment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketTagging`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketTagging`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns all the tags associated with the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketTagging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketVersioning`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketVersioning`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the status of versioning with respect to the given bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketVersioning -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketVersioning in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3BucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3BucketWebsite`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the details of the static website configurations of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3CORSConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3CORSConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns an object that contains all the CORS configuration rules corresponding to the given S3 Bucket.

```
Get-S3CORSConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select
 Configuration.Rules
```

Output:

```
AllowedMethods : {PUT, POST, DELETE}
AllowedOrigins : {http://www.example1.com}
Id             :
ExposeHeaders  : {}
MaxAgeSeconds  : 0
AllowedHeaders : {*}

AllowedMethods : {PUT, POST, DELETE}
AllowedOrigins : {http://www.example2.com}
Id             :
ExposeHeaders  : {}
MaxAgeSeconds  : 0
AllowedHeaders : {*}

AllowedMethods : {GET}
AllowedOrigins : {*}
Id             :
ExposeHeaders  : {}
```

```
MaxAgeSeconds  : 0
AllowedHeaders : {}
```

- For API details, see GetCORSConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3HeadBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3HeadBucket`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the output with HTTP status code 200 OK for existing bucket when user has permission to access it. BucketArn parameter is only supported for S3 directory buckets.

```
Get-S3HeadBucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
AccessPointAlias   : False
BucketArn          :
BucketLocationName :
BucketLocationType :
BucketRegion       : us-east-2
ResponseMetadata   : Amazon.Runtime.ResponseMetadata
ContentLength      : 0
HttpStatusCode     : OK
```

Example 2: This command throws error with HTTP status code NotFound for non-existent bucket.

```
Get-S3HeadBucket -BucketName amzn-s3-non-existing-bucket
```

Output:

```
Get-S3HeadBucket: Error making request with Error Code NotFound and Http Status Code
 NotFound. No further error information was returned by the service.
```

Example 3: This command throws error with HTTP status code Forbidden for existing bucket where user does not have permission to access it.

```
Get-S3HeadBucket -BucketName amzn-s3-no-access-bucket
```

Output:

```
Get-S3HeadBucket: Error making request with Error Code Forbidden and Http Status
 Code Forbidden. No further error information was returned by the service.
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3LifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3LifecycleConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves lifecycle configuration for the bucket.

```
Get-S3LifecycleConfiguration -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Output:

```
Rules
-----
{Remove-in-150-days, Archive-to-Glacier-in-30-days}
```

- For API details, see GetLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3Object`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3Object`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command retrieves the information about all of the items in the bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Example 2: This command retrieves the information about the item "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt
```

Example 3: This command retrieves the information about all items with the prefix "sample" from bucket "test-files".

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix sample
```

- For API details, see ListObjects in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3ObjectACL`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3ObjectACL`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command gets the details of the object owner of the S3 object.

```
(Get-S3ObjectACL -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -key 'initialize.ps1' -Select
 *).Owner
```

Output:

```
DisplayName Id
----------- --
testusername      9988776a6554433d22f1100112e334acb45566778899009e9887bd7f66c5f544
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3ObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3ObjectLockConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the value 'Enabled' if Object lock configuration is enabled for the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectLockConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select
 ObjectLockConfiguration.ObjectLockEnabled
```

Output:

```
Value
-----
Enabled
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3ObjectMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3ObjectMetadata`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the metadata of the object with key 'ListTrusts.txt' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectMetadata -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'ListTrusts.txt'
```

Output:

```
Headers                                         : Amazon.S3.Model.HeadersCollection
Metadata                                        : Amazon.S3.Model.MetadataCollection
DeleteMarker                                    :
AcceptRanges                                    : bytes
ContentRange                                    :
Expiration                                      :
RestoreExpiration                               :
RestoreInProgress                               : False
LastModified                                    : 01/01/2020 08:02:05
ETag                                            : "d000011112a222e333e3bb4ee5d43d21"
MissingMeta                                     : 0
VersionId                                       : null
Expires                                         : 01/01/0001 00:00:00
WebsiteRedirectLocation                         :
ServerSideEncryptionMethod                      : AES256
```

```
ServerSideEncryptionCustomerMethod            :
ServerSideEncryptionKeyManagementServiceKeyId :
ReplicationStatus                             :
PartsCount                                    :
ObjectLockLegalHoldStatus                     :
ObjectLockMode                                :
ObjectLockRetainUntilDate                     : 01/01/0001 00:00:00
StorageClass                                  :
RequestCharged                                :
```

- For API details, see GetObjectMetadata in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3ObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3ObjectRetention`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command returns the mode and date till the object would be retained.

```
Get-S3ObjectRetention -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testfile.txt'
```

- For API details, see GetObjectRetention in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3ObjectTagSet`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3ObjectTagSet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The sample returns the tags associated with the object present on the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3ObjectTagSet -Key 'testfile.txt' -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Key  Value
---  -----
test value
```

- For API details, see GetObjectTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3PreSignedURL`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3PreSignedURL`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command returns pre-signed URL for a specified key and an expiration date.

```
Get-S3PreSignedURL -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testkey' -Expires
 '2023-11-16'
```

Example 2: The command returns pre-signed URL for a Directory Bucket with specified key and an expiration date.

```
[Amazon.AWSConfigsS3]::UseSignatureVersion4 = $true
      Get-S3PreSignedURL -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket--usw2-az1--x-s3 -Key
 'testkey' -Expire '2023-11-17'
```

- For API details, see GetPreSignedURL in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3PublicAccessBlock`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3PublicAccessBlock`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command returns the public access block configuration of the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3PublicAccessBlock -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see GetPublicAccessBlock in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-S3Version`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-S3Version`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the metadata about all of the versions of objects in the given S3 bucket.

```
Get-S3Version -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
IsTruncated         : False
KeyMarker           :
VersionIdMarker     :
NextKeyMarker       :
NextVersionIdMarker :
Versions            : {EC2.txt, EC2MicrosoftWindowsGuide.txt, ListDirectories.json,
 ListTrusts.json}
Name                : amzn-s3-demo-bucket
Prefix              :
MaxKeys             : 1000
CommonPrefixes      : {}
Delimiter           :
```

- For API details, see ListVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-S3Bucket`

The following code example shows how to use `New-S3Bucket`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command creates a new private bucket named "sample-bucket".

```
New-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

Example 2: This command creates a new bucket named "sample-bucket" with read-write permissions.

```
New-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -PublicReadWrite
```

Example 3: This command creates a new bucket named "sample-bucket" with read-only permissions.

```
New-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -PublicReadOnly
```

Example 4: This command creates a new Directory bucket named "amzn-s3-demo-bucket--use1-az5--x-s3" with PutBucketConfiguration.

```
$bucketConfiguration = @{
      BucketInfo = @{
          DataRedundancy = 'SingleAvailabilityZone'
          Type = 'Directory'
      }
      Location = @{
          Name = 'usw2-az1'
          Type = 'AvailabilityZone'
      }
    }
New-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket--usw2-az1--x-s3 -BucketConfiguration
 $bucketConfiguration -Region us-west-2
```

- For API details, see PutBucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Read-S3Object`

The following code example shows how to use `Read-S3Object`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command retrieves item "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files" and saves it to a file named "local-sample.txt" in the current location. The file "local-sample.txt" does not have to exist before this command is called.

```
Read-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -File local-sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command retrieves virtual directory "DIR" from bucket "test-files" and saves it to a folder named "Local-DIR" in the current location. The folder "Local-DIR" does not have to exist before this command is called.

```
Read-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyPrefix DIR -Folder Local-DIR
```

Example 3: Downloads all objects with keys ending in '.json' from buckets with 'config' in the bucket name to files in the specified folder. The object keys are used to set the filenames.

```
Get-S3Bucket | ? { $_.BucketName -like '*config*' } | Get-S3Object | ? { $_.Key -
like '*.json' } | Read-S3Object -Folder C:\ConfigObjects
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3Bucket`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3Bucket`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes all objects and object versions from the bucket 'test-files' and then deletes the bucket. The command will prompt for confirmation before proceeding. Add the -Force switch to suppress confirmation. Note that buckets that are not empty cannot be deleted.

```
Remove-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DeleteBucketContent
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes the analytics filter with name 'testfilter' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketAnalyticsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -AnalyticsId
 'testfilter'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketAnalyticsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketEncryption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This disables the encryption enabled for the S3 bucket provided.

```
Remove-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketEncryption (DeleteBucketEncryption)" on
 target "s3casetestbucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the invventory named 'testInventoryName' corresponding to the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -InventoryId
 'testInventoryName'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketInventoryConfiguration
 (DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration)" on target "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketInventoryConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes the metrics filter with name 'testmetrics' in the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketMetricsConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -MetricsId
 'testmetrics'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketMetricsConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketPolicy`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes the bucket policy associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketPolicy -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketReplication`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketReplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Deletes the replication configuration associated with the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'. Note that this operation requires permission for the s3:DeleteReplicationConfiguration action. You will be prompted for confirmation before the operation proceeds - to suppress confirmation, use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-S3BucketReplication -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketTagging`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketTagging`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes all the tags associated with the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketTagging -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketTagging (DeleteBucketTagging)" on target
 "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3BucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3BucketWebsite`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command disables the static website hosting property of the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
```

```
Performing the operation "Remove-S3BucketWebsite (DeleteBucketWebsite)" on target
 "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3CORSConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3CORSConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the CORS configuration for the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3CORSConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3CORSConfiguration (DeleteCORSConfiguration)" on
 target "amzn-s3-demo-bucket".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteCORSConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3LifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3LifecycleConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command removes all the lifecycle rules for the given S3 bucket.

```
Remove-S3LifecycleConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
```

- For API details, see DeleteLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3MultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3MultipartUpload`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than 5 days ago.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -DaysBefore 5
```

Example 2: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than January 2nd, 2014.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -InitiatedDate "Thursday,
 January 02, 2014"
```

Example 3: This command aborts multipart uploads created earlier than January 2nd, 2014, 10:45:37.

```
Remove-S3MultipartUpload -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -InitiatedDate "2014/01/02
 10:45:37"
```

- For API details, see AbortMultipartUpload in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3Object`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3Object`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes the object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files". You are prompted for confirmation before the command executes; to suppress the prompt use the -Force switch.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command removes the specified version of object "sample.txt" from bucket "test-files", assuming the bucket has been configured to enable object versions.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key sample.txt -VersionId
 HLbxnx6V9omT6AQYVpks8mmFKQcejpqt
```

Example 3: This command removes objects "sample1.txt", "sample2.txt" and "sample3.txt" from bucket "test-files" as a single batch operation. The service response will list all keys processed, regardless of the success or error status of the deletion. To obtain only errors for keys that were not able to be processed by the service add the -ReportErrorsOnly parameter (this parameter can also be specified with the alias -Quiet.

```
Remove-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -KeyCollection @( "sample1.txt",
 "sample2.txt", "sample3.txt" )
```

Example 4: This example uses an inline expression with the -KeyCollection parameter to obtain the keys of the objects to delete. Get-S3Object returns a collection of Amazon.S3.Model.S3Object instances, each of which has a Key member of type string identifying the object.

```
Remove-S3Object -bucketname "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -KeyCollection (Get-S3Object
 "test-files" -KeyPrefix "prefix/subprefix" | select -ExpandProperty Key)
```

Example 5: This example obtains all objects that have a key prefix "prefix/subprefix" in the bucket and deletes them. Note that the incoming objects are processed one at a time. For large collections consider passing the collection to the cmdlet's -InputObject (alias -S3ObjectCollection) parameter to enable the deletion to occur as a batch with a single call to the service.

```
Get-S3Object -BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket" -KeyPrefix "prefix/subprefix" |
 Remove-S3Object -Force
```

Example 6: This example pipes a collection of Amazon.S3.Model.S3ObjectVersion instances that represent delete markers to the cmdlet for deletion. Note that the incoming objects are processed one at a time. For large collections consider passing the collection to the cmdlet's -InputObject (alias -S3ObjectCollection) parameter to enable the deletion to occur as a batch with a single call to the service.

```
(Get-S3Version -BucketName "amzn-s3-demo-bucket").Versions | Where
 {$_.IsDeleteMarker -eq "True"} | Remove-S3Object -Force
```

Example 7: This script shows how to perform a batch delete of a set of objects (in this case delete markers) by constructing an array of objects to be used with the -KeyAndVersionCollection parameter.

```
$keyVersions = @()
$markers = (Get-S3Version -BucketName $BucketName).Versions | Where
 {$_.IsDeleteMarker -eq "True"}
foreach ($marker in $markers) { $keyVersions += @{ Key = $marker.Key; VersionId =
 $marker.VersionId } }
Remove-S3Object -BucketName $BucketName -KeyAndVersionCollection $keyVersions -Force
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3ObjectTagSet`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3ObjectTagSet`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command removes all the tags associated with the object with key 'testfile.txt' in the given S3 Bucket.

```
Remove-S3ObjectTagSet -Key 'testfile.txt' -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Select
 '^Key'
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-S3ObjectTagSet (DeleteObjectTagging)" on target
 "testfile.txt".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
testfile.txt
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjectTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-S3PublicAccessBlock`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-S3PublicAccessBlock`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command turns off the block public access setting for the given bucket.

```
Remove-S3PublicAccessBlock -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Force -Select
 '^BucketName'
```

Output:

```
amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see DeletePublicAccessBlock in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-S3BucketEncryption`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-S3BucketEncryption`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command enables default AES256 server side encryption with Amazon S3 Managed Keys(SSE-S3) on the given bucket.

```
$Encryptionconfig = @{ServerSideEncryptionByDefault =
 @{ServerSideEncryptionAlgorithm = "AES256"}}
Set-S3BucketEncryption -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
ServerSideEncryptionConfiguration_ServerSideEncryptionRule $Encryptionconfig
```

- For API details, see PutBucketEncryption in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Test-S3Bucket`

The following code example shows how to use `Test-S3Bucket`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns True if the bucket exists, False otherwise. The command returns True even if the bucket does not belong to the user.

```
Test-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket
```

- For API details, see Test-S3Bucket in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command enables the transfer acceleration for the given S3 bucket.

```
$statusVal = New-Object Amazon.S3.BucketAccelerateStatus('Enabled')
Write-S3BucketAccelerateConfiguration -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -
AccelerateConfiguration_Status $statusVal
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAccelerateConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketNotification`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketNotification`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example configures the SNS topic configuration for the S3 event ObjectRemovedDelete and enables notification for the given s3 bucket

```
$topic =  [Amazon.S3.Model.TopicConfiguration] @{
  Id = "delete-event"
  Topic = "arn:aws:sns:eu-west-1:123456789012:topic-1"
  Event = [Amazon.S3.EventType]::ObjectRemovedDelete
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -TopicConfiguration
 $topic
```

Example 2: This example enables notifications of ObjectCreatedAll for the given bucket sending it to Lambda function.

```
$lambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:rdplock"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-Lambda"
  Filter = @{
```

```
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".pem"}
      )
    }
  }
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
LambdaFunctionConfiguration $lambdaConfig
```

Example 3: This example creates 2 different Lambda configuration on the basis of different key-suffix and configured both in a single command.

```
#Lambda Config 1

$firstLambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = "s3:ObjectCreated:*"
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:verifynet"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-dada-ps1"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".ps1"}
      )
    }
  }
}

#Lambda Config 2

$secondlambdaConfig = [Amazon.S3.Model.LambdaFunctionConfiguration] @{
  Events = [Amazon.S3.EventType]::ObjectCreatedAll
  FunctionArn = "arn:aws:lambda:eu-west-1:123456789012:function:verifyssm"
  Id = "ObjectCreated-dada-json"
  Filter = @{
    S3KeyFilter = @{
      FilterRules = @(
        @{Name="Prefix";Value="dada"}
        @{Name="Suffix";Value=".json"}
      )
```

```
    }
  }
}

Write-S3BucketNotification -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
LambdaFunctionConfiguration $firstLambdaConfig,$secondlambdaConfig
```

- For API details, see PutBucketNotification in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketReplication`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketReplication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sets a replication configuration with a single rule enabling replication to the 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' bucket any new objects created with the key name prefix "TaxDocs" in the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Enabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

Example 2: This example sets a replication configuration with multiple rules enabling replication to the 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' bucket any new objects created with either the key name prefix "TaxDocs" or "OtherDocs". The key prefixes must not overlap.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Enabled"
```

```
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket" }

$rule2 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule2.ID = "Rule-2"
$rule2.Status = "Enabled"
$rule2.Prefix = "OtherDocs"
$rule2.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1,$rule2
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

Example 3: This example updates the replication configuration on the specified bucket to disable the rule controlling replication of objects with the key name prefix "TaxDocs" to the bucket 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.

```
$rule1 = New-Object Amazon.S3.Model.ReplicationRule
$rule1.ID = "Rule-1"
$rule1.Status = "Disabled"
$rule1.Prefix = "TaxDocs"
$rule1.Destination = @{ BucketArn = "arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-destination-bucket" }

$params = @{
    BucketName = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    Configuration_Role = "arn:aws:iam::35667example:role/
CrossRegionReplicationRoleForS3"
    Configuration_Rule = $rule1
}

Write-S3BucketReplication @params
```

- For API details, see PutBucketReplication in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketRequestPayment`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketRequestPayment`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Updates the request payment configuration for the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' so that the person requesting downloads from the bucket will be charged for the download. By default the bucket owner pays for downloads. To set the request payment back to the default use 'BucketOwner' for the RequestPaymentConfiguration_Payer parameter.

```
Write-S3BucketRequestPayment -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -
RequestPaymentConfiguration_Payer Requester
```

- For API details, see PutBucketRequestPayment in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketTagging`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketTagging`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command applies two tags to a bucket named `cloudtrail-test-2018`: a tag with a key of Stage and a value of Test, and a tag with a key of Environment and a value of Alpha. To verify that the tags were added to the bucket, run `Get-S3BucketTagging -BucketName bucket_name`. The results should show the tags that you applied to the bucket in the first command. Note that `Write-S3BucketTagging` overwrites the entire existing tag set on a bucket. To add or delete individual tags, run the Resource Groups and Tagging API cmdlets, `Add-RGTResourceTag` and `Remove-RGTResourceTag`. Alternatively, use Tag Editor in the AWS Management Console to manage S3 bucket tags.

```
Write-S3BucketTagging -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -TagSet @( @{ Key="Stage";
 Value="Test" }, @{ Key="Environment"; Value="Alpha" } )
```

Example 2: This command pipes a bucket named `cloudtrail-test-2018` into the `Write-S3BucketTagging` cmdlet. It applies tags Stage:Production and Department:Finance to the bucket. Note that `Write-S3BucketTagging` overwrites the entire existing tag set on a bucket.

```
Get-S3Bucket -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket | Write-S3BucketTagging -TagSet
 @( @{ Key="Stage"; Value="Production" }, @{ Key="Department"; Value="Finance" } )
```

- For API details, see PutBucketTagging in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketVersioning`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketVersioning`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command enables versioning for the given S3 bucket.

```
Write-S3BucketVersioning -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -VersioningConfig_Status
 Enabled
```

- For API details, see PutBucketVersioning in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3BucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3BucketWebsite`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command enables website hosting for the given bucket with the index document as 'index.html' and error document as 'error.html'.

```
Write-S3BucketWebsite -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
 -WebsiteConfiguration_IndexDocumentSuffix 'index.html' -
WebsiteConfiguration_ErrorDocument 'error.html'
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3LifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3LifecycleConfiguration`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example writes / replaces the configuration provided in the $NewRule. This configuration is making sure to limit the scope objects with given prefix and tag values.

```
$NewRule = [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleRule] @{
  Expiration =  @{
```

```
   Days=  50
  }
  Id =  "Test-From-Write-cmdlet-1"
  Filter=  @{
   LifecycleFilterPredicate =  [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleAndOperator]@{
    Operands=  @(
     [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecyclePrefixPredicate] @{
      "Prefix" =  "py"
     },
     [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleTagPredicate] @{
      "Tag"=  @{
       "Key" =  "non-use"
       "Value" = "yes"
      }
     }
    )
   }
  }
  "Status"= 'Enabled'
  NoncurrentVersionExpiration = @{
   NoncurrentDays = 75
  }
 }

 Write-S3LifecycleConfiguration -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Configuration_Rule
 $NewRule
```

Example 2: This example sets multiple rules with filtering. $ArchiveRule sets the objects to archive in 30 days to Glacier and 120 to DeepArchive. $ExpireRule expires both current and previous versions in 150 days for objects with 'py' prefix and tag:key 'archieved' set to 'yes'.

```
$ExpireRule = [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleRule] @{
  Expiration =  @{
   Days=  150
  }
  Id =  "Remove-in-150-days"
  Filter=  @{
   LifecycleFilterPredicate =  [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleAndOperator]@{
    Operands=  @(
     [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecyclePrefixPredicate] @{
      "Prefix" =  "py"
     },
     [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleTagPredicate] @{
```

```
      "Tag"=  @{
       "Key" =  "archived"
       "Value" = "yes"
      }
     }
    )
   }
  }
  Status= 'Enabled'
  NoncurrentVersionExpiration = @{
   NoncurrentDays = 150
  }
 }

 $ArchiveRule = [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleRule] @{
  Expiration =  $null
  Id =  "Archive-to-Glacier-in-30-days"
  Filter=  @{
   LifecycleFilterPredicate =  [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleAndOperator]@{
    Operands= @(
     [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecyclePrefixPredicate] @{
      "Prefix" =  "py"
     },
     [Amazon.S3.Model.LifecycleTagPredicate] @{
      "Tag"=  @{
       "Key" =  "reviewed"
       "Value" = "yes"
      }
     }
    )
   }
  }
  Status = 'Enabled'
  NoncurrentVersionExpiration = @{
   NoncurrentDays = 75
  }
  Transitions = @(
   @{
    Days = 30
    "StorageClass"= 'Glacier'
   },
   @{
    Days = 120
    "StorageClass"= [Amazon.S3.S3StorageClass]::DeepArchive
```

```
    }
   )
  }

  Write-S3LifecycleConfiguration -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Configuration_Rule
  $ExpireRule,$ArchiveRule
```

- For API details, see PutLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3Object`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3Object`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command uploads the single file "local-sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "sample.txt" in bucket "test-files".

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "sample.txt" -File .\local-
sample.txt
```

Example 2: This command uploads the single file "sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "sample.txt" in bucket "test-files". If the -Key parameter is not supplied, the filename is used as the S3 object key.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -File .\sample.txt
```

Example 3: This command uploads the single file "local-sample.txt" to Amazon S3, creating an object with key "prefix/to/sample.txt" in bucket "test-files".

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "prefix/to/sample.txt" -File .
\local-sample.txt
```

Example 4: This command uploads all files in the subdirectory "Scripts" to the bucket "test-files" and applies the common key prefix "SampleScripts" to each object. Each uploaded file will have a key of "SampleScripts/filename" where 'filename' varies.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder .\Scripts -KeyPrefix
 SampleScripts\
```

Example 5: This command uploads all *.ps1 files in the local director "Scripts" to bucket "test-files" and applies the common key prefix "SampleScripts" to each object. Each uploaded file will have a key of "SampleScripts/filename.ps1" where 'filename' varies.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder .\Scripts -KeyPrefix
 SampleScripts\ -SearchPattern *.ps1
```

Example 6: This command creates a new S3 object containing the specified content string with key 'sample.txt'.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Key "sample.txt" -Content "object
 contents"
```

Example 7: This command uploads the specified file (the filename is used as the key) and applies the specified tags to the new object.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -File "sample.txt" -TagSet
 @{Key="key1";Value="value1"},@{Key="key2";Value="value2"}
```

Example 8: This command recursively uploads the specified folder and applies the specified tags to all the new objects.

```
Write-S3Object -BucketName amzn-s3-demo-bucket -Folder . -KeyPrefix "TaggedFiles" -
Recurse -TagSet @{Key="key1";Value="value1"},@{Key="key2";Value="value2"}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-S3ObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-S3ObjectRetention`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: The command enables governance retention mode untill the date '31st Dec 2019 00:00:00' for 'testfile.txt' object in the given S3 bucket.

```
Write-S3ObjectRetention -BucketName 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket' -Key 'testfile.txt' -
Retention_Mode GOVERNANCE -Retention_RetainUntilDate "2019-12-31T00:00:00"
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

S3 Glacier examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with S3 Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-GLCJob`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-GLCJob`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns details of the specified job. When the job completes successfully the Read-GCJobOutput cmdlet can be used to retrieve the contents of the job (an archive or inventory list) to the local file system.

```
Get-GLCJob -VaultName myvault -JobId "op1x...JSbthM"
```

Output:

```
Action                       : ArchiveRetrieval
ArchiveId                    : o9O9j...X-TpIhQJw
ArchiveSHA256TreeHash        : 79f3ea754c02f58...dc57bf4395b
ArchiveSizeInBytes           : 38034480
Completed                    : False
CompletionDate               : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
CreationDate                 : 12/13/2018 11:00:14 AM
InventoryRetrievalParameters :
```

```
InventorySizeInBytes         : 0
JobDescription               :
JobId                        : op1x...JSbthM
JobOutputPath                :
OutputLocation               :
RetrievalByteRange           : 0-38034479
SelectParameters             :
SHA256TreeHash               : 79f3ea754c02f58...dc57bf4395b
SNSTopic                     :
StatusCode                   : InProgress
StatusMessage                :
Tier                         : Standard
VaultARN                     : arn:aws:glacier:us-west-2:012345678912:vaults/test
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-GLCVault`

The following code example shows how to use `New-GLCVault`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new vault for the user's account. As no value was supplied to the -AccountId parameter the cmdlets uses a default of "-" indicating the current account.

```
New-GLCVault -VaultName myvault
```

Output:

```
/01234567812/vaults/myvault
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Read-GLCJobOutput`

The following code example shows how to use `Read-GLCJobOutput`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Downloads the archive content that was scheduled for retrieval in the specified job and stores the contents into a file on disk. The download validates the checksum

for you, if one is available. If desired the entire response including the checksum can be returned by specifying `-Select '*'`.

```
Read-GLCJobOutput -VaultName myvault -JobId "HSWjArc...Zq2XLiW" -FilePath "c:\temp
\blue.bin"
```

- For API details, see GetJobOutput in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-GLCJob`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-GLCJob`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Starts a job to retrieve an archive from the specified vault owned by the user. The status of the job can be checked using the Get-GLCJob cmdlet. When the job completes successfully the Read-GCJobOutput cmdlet can be used to retrieve the contents of the archive to the local file system.

```
Start-GLCJob -VaultName myvault -JobType "archive-retrieval" -JobDescription
 "archive retrieval" -ArchiveId "o9O9j...TX-TpIhQJw"
```

Output:

```
JobId            JobOutputPath Location
-----            ------------- --------
op1x...JSbthM                  /012345678912/vaults/test/jobs/op1xe...I4HqCHkSJSbthM
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-GLCArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-GLCArchive`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Uploads a single file to the specified vault, returning the archive ID and computed checksum.

```
Write-GLCArchive -VaultName myvault -FilePath c:\temp\blue.bin
```

Output:

```
FilePath                    ArchiveId              Checksum
--------                    ---------              --------
C:\temp\blue.bin            o9O9jUUs...TTX-TpIhQJw 79f3e...f4395b
```

Example 2: Uploads the contents of a folder hierarchy to the specified vault in the user's account. For each file uploaded the cmdlet emits the filename, corresponding archive ID and the computed checksum of the archive.

```
Write-GLCArchive -VaultName myvault -FolderPath . -Recurse
```

Output:

```
FilePath                    ArchiveId              Checksum
--------                    ---------              --------
C:\temp\blue.bin            o9O9jUUs...TTX-TpIhQJw 79f3e...f4395b
C:\temp\green.bin           qXAfOdSG...czo729UHXrw d50a1...9184b9
C:\temp\lum.bin             39aNifP3...q9nb8nZkFIg 28886...5c3e27
C:\temp\red.bin             vp7E6rU_...Ejk_HhjAxKA e05f7...4e34f5
C:\temp\Folder1\file1.txt   _eRINlip...5Sxy7dD2BaA d0d2a...c8a3ba
C:\temp\Folder2\file2.iso   -Ix3jlmu...iXiDh-XfOPA 7469e...3e86f1
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Security Hub examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Security Hub.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-SHUBFinding`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SHUBFinding`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command retrieves Security Hub findings from Amazon EC2; service.

```
$filter = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.AwsSecurityFindingFilters
$filter.ResourceType = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.StringFilter -
Property @{
    Comparison = 'PREFIX'
    Value = 'AwsEc2'
}
Get-SHUBFinding -Filter $filter
```

Example 2: This command retrieves Security Hub findings from AWS account ID 123456789012.

```
$filter = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.AwsSecurityFindingFilters
$filter.AwsAccountId = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.StringFilter -
Property @{
    Comparison = 'EQUALS'
    Value = '123456789012'
}
Get-SHUBFinding -Filter $filter
```

Example 3: This command retrieves Security Hub findings generated for standard "pci-dss".

```
$filter = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.AwsSecurityFindingFilters
$filter.GeneratorId = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.StringFilter -
Property @{
    Comparison = 'PREFIX'
    Value = 'pci-dss'
}
Get-SHUBFinding -Filter $filter
```

Example 4: This command retrieves Security Hub critical-severity findings that have a workflow status of NOTIFIED.

```
$filter = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.AwsSecurityFindingFilters
$filter.SeverityLabel = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.StringFilter -
Property @{
    Comparison = 'EQUALS'
    Value = 'CRITICAL'
}
$filter.WorkflowStatus = New-Object -TypeName Amazon.SecurityHub.Model.StringFilter
 -Property @{
    Comparison = 'EQUALS'
    Value = 'NOTIFIED'
}
Get-SHUBFinding -Filter $filter
```

- For API details, see GetFindings in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon SES examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Get-SESIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SESIdentity`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns a list containing all of the identities (email addresses and domains) for a specific AWS Account, regardless of verification status.

```
Get-SESIdentity
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SESSendQuota`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SESSendQuota`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the user's current sending limits.

```
Get-SESSendQuota
```

- For API details, see GetSendQuota in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SESSendStatistic`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SESSendStatistic`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command returns the user's sending statistics. The result is a list of data points, representing the last two weeks of sending activity. Each data point in the list contains statistics for a 15-minute interval.

```
Get-SESSendStatistic
```

- For API details, see GetSendStatistics in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon SES API v2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Send-SES2Email`

The following code example shows how to use `Send-SES2Email`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to send a standard email message.

```
Send-SES2Email -FromEmailAddress "sender@example.com" -Destination_ToAddress
 "recipient@example.com" -Subject_Data "Email Subject" -Text_Data "Email Body"
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon SNS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Publish-SNSMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish-SNSMessage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows publishing a message with a single MessageAttribute declared inline.

```
Publish-SNSMessage -TopicArn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -Message
 "Hello" -MessageAttribute
 @{'City'=[Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue]@{DataType='String';
 StringValue ='AnyCity'}}
```

Example 2: This example shows publishing a message with multiple MessageAttributes declared in advance.

```
$cityAttributeValue = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$cityAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$cityAttributeValue.StringValue = "AnyCity"

$populationAttributeValue = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleNotificationService.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$populationAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$populationAttributeValue.StringValue = "1250800"

$messageAttributes = New-Object System.Collections.Hashtable
$messageAttributes.Add("City", $cityAttributeValue)
$messageAttributes.Add("Population", $populationAttributeValue)

Publish-SNSMessage -TopicArn "arn:aws:sns:us-west-2:123456789012:my-topic" -Message
 "Hello" -MessageAttribute $messageAttributes
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon SQS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-SQSPermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-SQSPermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example allows the specified AWS account to send messages from the specified queue.

```
Add-SQSPermission -Action SendMessage -AWSAccountId 80398EXAMPLE -Label
 SendMessagesFromMyQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue
```

- For API details, see AddPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Clear-SQSQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `Clear-SQSQueue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes all messages from the specified queue.

```
Clear-SQSQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see PurgeQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-SQSMessageVisibility`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-SQSMessageVisibility`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the visibility timeout for the message with the specified receipt handle in the specified queue to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 36000 seconds).

```
Edit-SQSMessageVisibility -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/8039EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -ReceiptHandle AQEBgGDh...J/Iqww== -VisibilityTimeout 36000
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-SQSMessageVisibilityBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-SQSMessageVisibilityBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example changes the visibility timeout for 2 messages with the specified receipt handles in the specified queue. The first message's visibility timeout is changed to 10 hours (10 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 36000 seconds). The second message's visibility timeout is changed to 5 hours (5 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 18000 seconds).

```
$changeVisibilityRequest1 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.ChangeMessageVisibilityBatchRequestEntry
$changeVisibilityRequest1.Id = "Request1"
$changeVisibilityRequest1.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBd329...v6gl8Q=="
$changeVisibilityRequest1.VisibilityTimeout = 36000

$changeVisibilityRequest2 = New-Object
 Amazon.SQS.Model.ChangeMessageVisibilityBatchRequestEntry
$changeVisibilityRequest2.Id = "Request2"
$changeVisibilityRequest2.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBgGDh...J/Iqww=="
$changeVisibilityRequest2.VisibilityTimeout = 18000

Edit-SQSMessageVisibilityBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue -Entry $changeVisibilityRequest1,
 $changeVisibilityRequest2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {Request2, Request1}
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibilityBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SQSDeadLetterSourceQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SQSDeadLetterSourceQueue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the URLs of any queues that rely on the specified queue as their dead letter queue.

```
Get-SQSDeadLetterSourceQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
```

- For API details, see ListDeadLetterSourceQueues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SQSQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SQSQueue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all queues.

```
Get-SQSQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/AnotherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/DeadLetterQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

Example 2: This example lists any queues that start with the specified name.

```
Get-SQSQueue -QueueNamePrefix My
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyOtherQueue
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyDeadLetterQueue
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SQSQueueAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SQSQueueAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all attributes for the specified queue.

```
Get-SQSQueueAttribute -AttributeName All -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
VisibilityTimeout                     : 30
DelaySeconds                          : 0
MaximumMessageSize                    : 262144
MessageRetentionPeriod                : 345600
ApproximateNumberOfMessages           : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed    : 0
CreatedTimestamp                      : 2/11/2015 5:53:35 PM
```

```
LastModifiedTimestamp                 : 12/29/2015 2:23:17 PM
QueueARN                              : arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue
Policy                                :
 {"Version":"2008-10-17","Id":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue/
SQSDefaultPolicy","Statement":[{"Sid":"Sid14
                                        495134224EX","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"*"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80
                                        398EXAMPLE:MyQueue","Condition":
{"ArnEquals":{"aws:SourceArn":"arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyTopic"}}},
{"Sid":

 "SendMessagesFromMyQueue","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"80398EXAMPLE"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"
                                        arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue"}]}
Attributes                            : {[QueueArn, arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue], [ApproximateNumberOfMessages, 0],
                                        [ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible, 0],
 [ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed, 0]...}
```

Example 2: This example lists separately only the specified attributes for the specified queue.

```
Get-SQSQueueAttribute -AttributeName MaximumMessageSize, VisibilityTimeout -QueueUrl
 https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
VisibilityTimeout                     : 30
DelaySeconds                          : 0
MaximumMessageSize                    : 262144
MessageRetentionPeriod                : 345600
ApproximateNumberOfMessages           : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesNotVisible : 0
ApproximateNumberOfMessagesDelayed    : 0
CreatedTimestamp                      : 2/11/2015 5:53:35 PM
LastModifiedTimestamp                 : 12/29/2015 2:23:17 PM
QueueARN                              : arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue
Policy                                :
 {"Version":"2008-10-17","Id":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue/
SQSDefaultPolicy","Statement":[{"Sid":"Sid14
                                        495134224EX","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"*"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"arn:aws:sqs:us-east-1:80
```

```
                                          398EXAMPLE:MyQueue","Condition":
{"ArnEquals":{"aws:SourceArn":"arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyTopic"}}},
{"Sid":

 "SendMessagesFromMyQueue","Effect":"Allow","Principal":
{"AWS":"80398EXAMPLE"},"Action":"SQS:SendMessage","Resource":"
                                          arn:aws:sqs:us-
east-1:80398EXAMPLE:MyQueue"}]}
Attributes                            : {[MaximumMessageSize, 262144],
 [VisibilityTimeout, 30]}
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SQSQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SQSQueueUrl`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the URL of the queue with the specified name.

```
Get-SQSQueueUrl -QueueName MyQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SQSQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SQSQueue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a queue with the specified name.

```
New-SQSQueue -QueueName MyQueue
```

Output:

```
https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Receive-SQSMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `Receive-SQSMessage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists information for up to the next 10 messages to be received for the specified queue. The information will contain values for the specified message attributes, if they exist.

```
Receive-SQSMessage -AttributeName SenderId, SentTimestamp -MessageAttributeName
 StudentName, StudentGrade -MessageCount 10 -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
Attributes             : {[SenderId, AIDAIAZKMSNQ7TEXAMPLE], [SentTimestamp,
 1451495923744]}
Body                   : Information about John Doe's grade.
MD5OfBody              : ea572796e3c231f974fe75d89EXAMPLE
MD5OfMessageAttributes : 48c1ee811f0fe7c4e88fbe0f5EXAMPLE
MessageAttributes      : {[StudentGrade, Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue],
 [StudentName, Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue]}
MessageId              : 53828c4b-631b-469b-8833-c093cEXAMPLE
ReceiptHandle          : AQEBpfGp...20Q5cg==
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SQSMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SQSMessage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the message with the specified receipt handle from the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSMessage -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
 -ReceiptHandle AQEBd329...v6gl8Q==
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SQSMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SQSMessageBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes 2 messages with the specified receipt handles from the specified queue.

```
$deleteMessageRequest1 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
$deleteMessageRequest1.Id = "Request1"
$deleteMessageRequest1.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBX2g4...wtJSQg=="

$deleteMessageRequest2 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
$deleteMessageRequest2.Id = "Request2"
$deleteMessageRequest2.ReceiptHandle = "AQEBqOVY...KTsLYg=="

Remove-SQSMessageBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -Entry $deleteMessageRequest1, $deleteMessageRequest2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {Request1, Request2}
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SQSPermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SQSPermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes the permission settings with the specified label from the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSPermission -Label SendMessagesFromMyQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-
east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see RemovePermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SQSQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SQSQueue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the specified queue.

```
Remove-SQSQueue -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Send-SQSMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `Send-SQSMessage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sends a message with the specified attributes and message body to the specified queue with message delivery delayed for 10 seconds.

```
$cityAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$cityAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$cityAttributeValue.StringValue = "AnyCity"

$populationAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$populationAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$populationAttributeValue.StringValue = "1250800"

$messageAttributes = New-Object System.Collections.Hashtable
```

```
$messageAttributes.Add("City", $cityAttributeValue)
$messageAttributes.Add("Population", $populationAttributeValue)

Send-SQSMessage -DelayInSeconds 10 -MessageAttributes $messageAttributes -
MessageBody "Information about the largest city in Any Region." -QueueUrl https://
sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

Output:

```
MD5OfMessageAttributes              MD5OfMessageBody                    MessageId

----------------------              ----------------                    ---------

1d3e51347bc042efbdf6dda31EXAMPLE    51b0a3256d59467f973009b73EXAMPLE    c35fed8f-
c739-4d0c-818b-1820eEXAMPLE
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Send-SQSMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Send-SQSMessageBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example sends 2 messages with the specified attributes and message bodies to the specified queue. Delivery is delayed for 15 seconds for the first message and 10 seconds for the second message.

```
$student1NameAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student1NameAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$student1NameAttributeValue.StringValue = "John Doe"

$student1GradeAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student1GradeAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$student1GradeAttributeValue.StringValue = "89"

$student2NameAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
$student2NameAttributeValue.DataType = "String"
$student2NameAttributeValue.StringValue = "Jane Doe"

$student2GradeAttributeValue = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.MessageAttributeValue
```

```
$student2GradeAttributeValue.DataType = "Number"
$student2GradeAttributeValue.StringValue = "93"

$message1 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry
$message1.DelaySeconds = 15
$message1.Id = "FirstMessage"
$message1.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentName", $student1NameAttributeValue)
$message1.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentGrade", $student1GradeAttributeValue)
$message1.MessageBody = "Information about John Doe's grade."

$message2 = New-Object Amazon.SQS.Model.SendMessageBatchRequestEntry
$message2.DelaySeconds = 10
$message2.Id = "SecondMessage"
$message2.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentName", $student2NameAttributeValue)
$message2.MessageAttributes.Add("StudentGrade", $student2GradeAttributeValue)
$message2.MessageBody = "Information about Jane Doe's grade."

Send-SQSMessageBatch -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/
MyQueue -Entry $message1, $message2
```

Output:

```
Failed    Successful

------    ----------

{}        {FirstMessage, SecondMessage}
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Set-SQSQueueAttribute`

The following code example shows how to use `Set-SQSQueueAttribute`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows how to set a policy subscribing a queue to an SNS topic. When a message is published to the topic, a message is sent to the subscribed queue.

```
# create the queue and topic to be associated
$qurl = New-SQSQueue -QueueName "myQueue"
$topicarn = New-SNSTopic -Name "myTopic"
```

```
# get the queue ARN to inject into the policy; it will be returned
# in the output's QueueARN member but we need to put it into a variable
# so text expansion in the policy string takes effect
$qarn = (Get-SQSQueueAttribute -QueueUrl $qurl -AttributeName "QueueArn").QueueARN

# construct the policy and inject arns
$policy = @"
{
  "Version": "2008-10-17",
  "Id": "$qarn/SQSPOLICY",
  "Statement": [
      {
      "Sid": "1",
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Principal": "*",
      "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
      "Resource": "$qarn",
      "Condition": {
        "ArnEquals": {
          "aws:SourceArn": "$topicarn"
          }
      }
    }
  ]
}
"@

# set the policy
Set-SQSQueueAttribute -QueueUrl $qurl -Attribute @{ Policy=$policy }
```

Example 2: This example sets the specified attributes for the specified queue.

```
Set-SQSQueueAttribute -Attribute @{"DelaySeconds" = "10"; "MaximumMessageSize" =
 "131072"} -QueueUrl https://sqs.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/80398EXAMPLE/MyQueue
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS STS examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Convert-STSAuthorizationMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `Convert-STSAuthorizationMessage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Decodes the additional information contained in the supplied encoded message content that was returned in response to a request. The additional information is encoded because details of the authorization status can constitute privileged information that the user who requested the action should not see.

```
Convert-STSAuthorizationMessage -EncodedMessage "...encoded message..."
```

- For API details, see DecodeAuthorizationMessage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-STSFederationToken`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-STSFederationToken`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Requests a federated token valid for one hour using "Bob" as the name of the federated user. This name can be used to reference the federated user name in a resource-based policy (such as an Amazon S3 bucket policy). The supplied IAM policy, in JSON format, is used to scope down the permissions that are available to the IAM user. The supplied policy cannot grant more permissions than those granted to the requesting user, with the final permissions for the federated user being the most restrictive set based on the intersection of the passed policy and the IAM user policy.

```
Get-STSFederationToken -Name "Bob" -Policy "...JSON policy..." -DurationInSeconds
 3600
```

- For API details, see GetFederationToken in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-STSSessionToken`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-STSSessionToken`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for a set period of time. The credentials used to request temporary credentials are inferred from the current shell defaults. To specify other credentials, use the -ProfileName or -AccessKey/-SecretKey parameters.

```
Get-STSSessionToken
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                             Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                        SessionToken
-----------                             ----------
 ---------------                        ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                      2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...              SamPleTokeN.....
```

Example 2: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for one hour. The credentials used to make the request are obtained from the specified profile.

```
Get-STSSessionToken -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProfileName myprofile
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                             Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                        SessionToken
-----------                             ----------
 ---------------                        ------------
```

```
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                      2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...              SamPleTokeN.....
```

Example 3: Returns an `Amazon.RuntimeAWSCredentials` instance containing temporary credentials valid for one hour using the identification number of the MFA device associated with the account whose credentials are specified in the profile 'myprofilename' and the value provided by the device.

```
Get-STSSessionToken -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProfileName myprofile -SerialNumber
 YourMFADeviceSerialNumber -TokenCode 123456
```

Output:

```
AccessKeyId                             Expiration
 SecretAccessKey                        SessionToken
-----------                             ----------
 ---------------                        ------------
EXAMPLEACCESSKEYID                      2/16/2015 9:12:28 PM
 examplesecretaccesskey...              SamPleTokeN.....
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Use-STSRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Use-STSRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a set of temporary credentials (access key, secret key and session token) that can be used for one hour to access AWS resources that the requesting user might not normally have access to. The returned credentials have the permissions that are allowed by the access policy of the role being assumed and the policy that was supplied (you cannot use the supplied policy to grant permissions in excess of those defined by the access policy of the role being assumed).

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo" -
Policy "...JSON policy..." -DurationInSeconds 3600
```

Example 2: Returns a set of temporary credentials, valid for one hour, that have the same permissions that are defined in the access policy of the role being assumed.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo" -
DurationInSeconds 3600
```

Example 3: Returns a set of temporary credentials supplying the serial number and generated token from an MFA associated with the user credentials used to execute the cmdlet.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo" -
DurationInSeconds 3600 -SerialNumber "GAHT12345678" -TokenCode "123456"
```

Example 4: Returns a set of temporary credentials that have assumed a role defined in a customer account. For each role that the third party can assume, the customer account must create a role using an identifier that must be passed in the -ExternalId parameter each time the role is assumed.

```
Use-STSRole -RoleSessionName "Bob" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/demo" -
DurationInSeconds 3600 -ExternalId "ABC123"
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Use-STSWebIdentityRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Use-STSWebIdentityRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns a temporary set of credentials, valid for one hour, for a user who has been authenticated with the Login with Amazon identity provider. The credentials assume the access policy associated with the role identified by the role ARN. Optionally, you can pass a JSON policy to the -Policy parameter that further refine the access permissions (you cannot grant more permissions than are available in the permissions associated with the role). The value supplied to the -WebIdentityToken is the unique user identifier that was returned by the identity provider.

```
Use-STSWebIdentityRole -DurationInSeconds 3600 -ProviderId "www.amazon.com"
 -RoleSessionName "app1" -RoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
FederatedWebIdentityRole" -WebIdentityToken "Atza...DVI0r1"
```

- For API details, see AssumeRoleWithWebIdentity in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Support examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Support.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-ASACommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-ASACommunicationToCase`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Adds the body of an email communication to the specified case.

```
Add-ASACommunicationToCase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -
CommunicationBody "Some text about the case"
```

Example 2: Adds the body of an email communication to the specified case plus one or more email addresses contained in the CC line of the email.

```
Add-ASACommunicationToCase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -
CcEmailAddress @("email1@address.com", "email2@address.com") -CommunicationBody
 "Some text about the case"
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASACase`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASACase`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the details of all support cases.

```
Get-ASACase
```

Example 2: Returns the details of all support cases since the specified date and time.

```
Get-ASACase -AfterTime "2013-09-10T03:06Z"
```

Example 3: Returns the details of the first 10 support cases, including those that have been resolved.

```
Get-ASACase -MaxResult 10 -IncludeResolvedCases $true
```

Example 4: Returns the details of the single specified support case.

```
Get-ASACase -CaseIdList "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Example 5: Returns the details of specified support cases.

```
Get-ASACase -CaseIdList @("case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47",
 "case-18929034710-2011-c4fdeabf33c5cf47")
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASACommunication`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASACommunication`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all communications for the specified case.

```
Get-ASACommunication -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

Example 2: Returns all communications since midnight UTC on January 1st 2012 for the specified case.

```
Get-ASACommunication -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47" -AfterTime
 "2012-01-10T00:00Z"
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASAService`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASAService`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns all available service codes, names and categories.

```
Get-ASAService
```

Example 2: Returns the name and categories for the service with the specified code.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList "amazon-cloudfront"
```

Example 3: Returns the name and categories for the specified service codes.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList @("amazon-cloudfront", "amazon-cloudwatch")
```

Example 4: Returns the name and categories (in Japanese) for the specified service codes. Currently English ("en") and Japanese ("ja") language codes are supported.

```
Get-ASAService -ServiceCodeList @("amazon-cloudfront", "amazon-cloudwatch") -
Language "ja"
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASASeverityLevel`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASASeverityLevel`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the list of severity levels that can be assigned to an AWS Support case.

```
Get-ASASeverityLevel
```

Example 2: Returns the list of severity levels that can be assigned to an AWS Support case. The names of the levels are returned in Japanese.

```
Get-ASASeverityLevel -Language "ja"
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheck`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheck`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the collection of Trusted Advisor checks. You must specify the Language parameter which can accept either "en" for English output or "ja" for Japanese output.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheck -Language "en"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorChecks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the current status of refresh requests for the specified checks. Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh can be used to request that the status information of the checks be refreshed.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatus -CheckId @("checkid1", "checkid2")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckRefreshStatuses in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckResult`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckResult`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the results of a Trusted Advisor check. The list of available Trusted Advisor checks can be obtained using Get-ASATrustedAdvisorChecks. The output is the overall status of the check, the timestamp at which the check was last run and the unique checkid for the specific check. To have the results output in Japanese, add the -Language "ja" parameter.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckResult -CheckId "checkid1"
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckResult in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the latest summary for the specified Trusted Advisor check.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary -CheckId "checkid1"
```

Example 2: Returns the latest summaries for the specified Trusted Advisor checks.

```
Get-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckSummary -CheckId @("checkid1", "checkid2")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrustedAdvisorCheckSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-ASACase`

The following code example shows how to use `New-ASACase`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Creates a new case in the AWS Support Center. Values for the -ServiceCode and -CategoryCode parameters can be obtained using the Get-ASAService cmdlet. The value for the -SeverityCode parameter can be obtained using the Get-ASASeverityLevel cmdlet. The -IssueType parameter value can be either "customer-service" or "technical". If successful the AWS Support case number is output. By default the case will be handled in English, to use Japanese add the -Language "ja" parameter. The -ServiceCode, -CategoryCode, -Subject and -CommunicationBody parameters are mandatory.

```
New-ASACase -ServiceCode "amazon-cloudfront" -CategoryCode "APIs" -SeverityCode
 "low" -Subject "subject text" -CommunicationBody "description of the case" -
CcEmailAddress @("email1@domain.com", "email2@domain.com") -IssueType "technical"
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh`

The following code example shows how to use `Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Requests a refresh for the specified Trusted Advisor check.

```
Request-ASATrustedAdvisorCheckRefresh -CheckId "checkid1"
```

- For API details, see RefreshTrustedAdvisorCheck in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Resolve-ASACase`

The following code example shows how to use `Resolve-ASACase`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Returns the initial state of the specified case and the current state after the call to resolve it is completed.

```
Resolve-ASACase -CaseId "case-12345678910-2013-c4c1d2bf33c5cf47"
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Systems Manager examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Systems Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Add-SSMResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Add-SSMResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates a maintenance window with new tags. There is no output if the command succeeds. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$option1 = @{Key="Stack";Value=@("Production")}
Add-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -Tag $option1
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each tag. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
$tag1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.Tag
$tag1.Key = "Stack"
$tag1.Value = "Production"
```

```
Add-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -Tag $tag1
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-SSMDocumentPermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-SSMDocumentPermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds "share" permissions to all accounts for a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Edit-SSMDocumentPermission -Name "RunShellScript" -PermissionType "Share" -
AccountIdsToAdd all
```

Example 2: This example adds "share" permissions to a specific account for a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Edit-SSMDocumentPermission -Name "RunShellScriptNew" -PermissionType "Share" -
AccountIdsToAdd "123456789012"
```

- For API details, see ModifyDocumentPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMActivation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMActivation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example provides details about the activations on your account.

```
Get-SSMActivation
```

Output:

```
ActivationId        : 08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363
CreatedDate         : 3/1/2017 12:01:51 AM
```

```
DefaultInstanceName : MyWebServers
Description         :
ExpirationDate      : 3/2/2017 12:01:51 AM
Expired             : False
IamRole             : AutomationRole
RegistrationLimit   : 10
RegistrationsCount  : 0
```

- For API details, see DescribeActivations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the association between an instance and a document.

```
Get-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Date                  : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name           : Pending
Status.Date           : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message        : temp_status_change
Status.AdditionalInfo : Additional-Config-Needed
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAssociationExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAssociationExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the executions for the association ID provided

```
Get-SSMAssociationExecution -AssociationId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
```

Output:

```
AssociationId         : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationVersion    : 2
CreatedTime           : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DetailedStatus        :
ExecutionId           : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
LastExecutionDate     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceCountByStatus : {Success=4}
Status                : Success
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the resource ID and its execution status that are part of the the association execution targets

```
Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget -AssociationId 123a45a0-
c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e -ExecutionId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e |
 Select-Object ResourceId, Status
```

Output:

```
ResourceId           Status
----------           ------
i-0b1b2a3456f7a890b  Success
i-01c12a45d6fc7a89f  Success
i-0a1caf234f56d7dc8  Success
i-012a3fd45af6dbcfe  Failed
i-0ddc1df23c4a5fb67  Success
```

Example 2: This command checks the particular execution of a particular automation since yesterday, where a command document is associated. It further checkes if the association execution failed, and if so, it will display the command invocation details for the execution along with the instance id

```
$AssociationExecution= Get-SSMAssociationExecutionTarget -
AssociationId 1c234567-890f-1aca-a234-5a678d901cb0 -ExecutionId
 12345ca12-3456-2345-2b45-23456789012 |
    Where-Object {$_.LastExecutionDate -gt (Get-Date -Hour 00 -Minute
 00).AddDays(-1)}

foreach ($execution in $AssociationExecution) {
    if($execution.Status -ne 'Success'){
        Write-Output "There was an issue executing the association
 $($execution.AssociationId) on $($execution.ResourceId)"
        Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId $execution.OutputSource.OutputSourceId -
Detail:$true | Select-Object -ExpandProperty CommandPlugins
    }
}
```

Output:

```
There was an issue executing the association 1c234567-890f-1aca-a234-5a678d901cb0 on
 i-0a1caf234f56d7dc8


Name                   : aws:runPowerShellScript
Output                 :
                         ----------ERROR-------
                         failed to run commands: exit status 1
OutputS3BucketName     :
OutputS3KeyPrefix      :
OutputS3Region         : eu-west-1
ResponseCode           : 1
ResponseFinishDateTime : 5/29/2019 11:04:49 AM
ResponseStartDateTime  : 5/29/2019 11:04:49 AM
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Failed
StatusDetails          : Failed
```

- For API details, see DescribeAssociationExecutionTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAssociationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAssociationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the associations for an instance. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="InstanceId";Value=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862")}
Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter1
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

Example 2: This example lists all associations for a configuration document. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter2 = @{Key="Name";Value=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter2
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

Example 3: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each filter.

```
$filter1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationFilter
$filter1.Key = "InstanceId"
```

```
$filter1.Value = "i-0000293ffd8c57862"

Get-SSMAssociationList -AssociationFilterList $filter1
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DocumentVersion    :
InstanceId         : i-0000293ffd8c57862
LastExecutionDate  : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Name               : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Overview           : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.AssociationOverview
ScheduleExpression :
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

- For API details, see ListAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAssociationVersionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAssociationVersionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves all versions of the association provided.

```
Get-SSMAssociationVersionList -AssociationId 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
```

Output:

```
AssociationId      : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationName    :
AssociationVersion : 2
ComplianceSeverity :
CreatedDate        : 3/12/2019 9:21:01 AM
DocumentVersion    :
MaxConcurrency     :
MaxErrors          :
Name               : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
OutputLocation     :
Parameters         : {}
ScheduleExpression :
```

```
Targets            : {InstanceIds}

AssociationId      : 123a45a0-c678-9012-3456-78901234db5e
AssociationName    : test-case-1234567890
AssociationVersion : 1
ComplianceSeverity :
CreatedDate        : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DocumentVersion    :
MaxConcurrency     :
MaxErrors          :
Name               : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
OutputLocation     :
Parameters         : {}
ScheduleExpression : rate(30minutes)
Targets            : {InstanceIds}
```

- For API details, see ListAssociationVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAutomationExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAutomationExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the details of an Automation Execution.

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId "4105a4fc-
f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909"
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId     : 4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909
AutomationExecutionStatus : Failed
DocumentName              : AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi
DocumentVersion           : 1
ExecutionEndTime          : 2/22/2017 9:17:08 PM
ExecutionStartTime        : 2/22/2017 9:17:02 PM
FailureMessage            : Step launchInstance failed maximum allowed times. You
 are not authorized to perform this operation. Encoded
                            authorization failure message:
 B_V2QyyN7NhSZQYpmVzpEc4oSnj2GLTNYnXUHsTbqJkNMoDgubmbtthLmZyaiUYekORIrA42-
fv1x-04q5Fjff6glh
```

```
                            Yb6TI5b0GQeeNrpwNvpDzmO-
PSR1swlAbg9fdM9BcNjyrznspUkWpuKu9EC1Ou6v3OXU1KC9nZ7mPlWMFZNkSioQqpwWEvMw-
GZktsQzm67qOhUhBNOLWYhbS
                            pkfiqzY-5nw3S0obx30fhd3EJa5O_-
GjV_a0nFXQJa70ik40bFOrEh3MtCSbrQT6--DvFy_FQ8TKvkIXadyVskeJI84XOF5WmA60f1pi5GI08i-
nRfZS6oDeU
                            gELBjjoFKD8s3L2aI0B6umWVxnQOjqhQRxwJ53b54sZJ2PW3v_mtg9-
q0CK0ezS3xfh_y0ilaUGOAZG-xjQFuvU_JZedWpla3xi-MZsmblAifBI
                            (Service: AmazonEC2; Status Code: 403; Error Code:
 UnauthorizedOperation; Request ID:
                            6a002f94-ba37-43fd-99e6-39517715fce5)
Outputs                   : {[createImage.ImageId,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
Parameters                : {[AutomationAssumeRole,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]], [InstanceIamRole,

 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]], [SourceAmiId,

 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
StepExecutions            : {launchInstance, updateOSSoftware, stopInstance,
 createImage...}
```

Example 2: This example lists step details for the given automation execution id

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId e1d2bad3-4567-8901-
ae23-456c7c8901be | Select-Object -ExpandProperty StepExecutions | Select-Object
 StepName, Action, StepStatus, ValidNextSteps
```

Output:

```
StepName                  Action                  StepStatus ValidNextSteps
--------                  ------                  ---------- --------------
LaunchInstance            aws:runInstances        Success    {OSCompatibilityCheck}
OSCompatibilityCheck      aws:runCommand          Success    {RunPreUpdateScript}
RunPreUpdateScript        aws:runCommand          Success    {UpdateEC2Config}
UpdateEC2Config           aws:runCommand          Cancelled  {}
UpdateSSMAgent            aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
UpdateAWSPVDriver         aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
UpdateAWSEnaNetworkDriver aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
UpdateAWSNVMe             aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
InstallWindowsUpdates     aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
RunPostUpdateScript       aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
RunSysprepGeneralize      aws:runCommand          Pending    {}
```

```
StopInstance              aws:changeInstanceState Pending    {}
CreateImage               aws:createImage         Pending    {}
TerminateInstance         aws:changeInstanceState Pending    {}
```

- For API details, see GetAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes all active and terminated Automation Executions associated with your account.

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId     : 4105a4fc-f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909
AutomationExecutionStatus : Failed
DocumentName              : AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi
DocumentVersion           : 1
ExecutedBy                : admin
ExecutionEndTime          : 2/22/2017 9:17:08 PM
ExecutionStartTime        : 2/22/2017 9:17:02 PM
LogFile                   :
Outputs                   : {[createImage.ImageId,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
```

Example 2: This example displays ExecutionID, document, execution start/end timestamp for executions with AutomationExecutionStatus other than 'Success'

```
Get-SSMAutomationExecutionList | Where-Object AutomationExecutionStatus
 -ne "Success" | Select-Object AutomationExecutionId, DocumentName,
 AutomationExecutionStatus, ExecutionStartTime, ExecutionEndTime | Format-Table -
AutoSize
```

Output:

```
AutomationExecutionId                DocumentName
 AutomationExecutionStatus ExecutionStartTime   ExecutionEndTime
---------------------                ------------
 ------------------------- ------------------   ----------------
e1d2bad3-4567-8901-ae23-456c7c8901be AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi
 Cancelled                 4/16/2019 5:37:04 AM 4/16/2019 5:47:29 AM
61234567-a7f8-90e1-2b34-567b8bf9012c Fixed-UpdateAmi
 Cancelled                 4/16/2019 5:33:04 AM 4/16/2019 5:40:15 AM
91234d56-7e89-0ac1-2aee-34ea5d6a7c89 AWS-UpdateWindowsAmi                    Failed
                    4/16/2019 5:22:46 AM 4/16/2019 5:27:29 AM
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAutomationStepExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAutomationStepExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This exmaple displays information about all active and terminated step executions in an Automation workflow.

```
Get-SSMAutomationStepExecution -AutomationExecutionId e1d2bad3-4567-8901-
ae23-456c7c8901be | Select-Object StepName, Action, StepStatus
```

Output:

```
StepName                  Action                  StepStatus
--------                  ------                  ----------
LaunchInstance            aws:runInstances        Success
OSCompatibilityCheck      aws:runCommand          Success
RunPreUpdateScript        aws:runCommand          Success
UpdateEC2Config           aws:runCommand          Cancelled
UpdateSSMAgent            aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSPVDriver         aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSEnaNetworkDriver aws:runCommand          Pending
UpdateAWSNVMe             aws:runCommand          Pending
InstallWindowsUpdates     aws:runCommand          Pending
RunPostUpdateScript       aws:runCommand          Pending
RunSysprepGeneralize      aws:runCommand          Pending
StopInstance              aws:changeInstanceState Pending
```

```
CreateImage               aws:createImage         Pending
TerminateInstance         aws:changeInstanceState Pending
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutomationStepExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMAvailablePatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMAvailablePatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets all available patches for Windows Server 2012 that have a MSRC severity of Critical. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="PRODUCT";Values=@("WindowsServer2012")}
$filter2 = @{Key="MSRC_SEVERITY";Values=@("Critical")}

Get-SSMAvailablePatch -Filter $filter1,$filter2
```

Output:

```
Classification : SecurityUpdates
ContentUrl     : https://support.microsoft.com/en-us/kb/2727528
Description    : A security issue has been identified that could allow an
 unauthenticated remote attacker to compromise your system and gain control
                 over it. You can help protect your system by installing this update
 from Microsoft. After you install this update, you may have to
                 restart your system.
Id             : 1eb507be-2040-4eeb-803d-abc55700b715
KbNumber       : KB2727528
Language       : All
MsrcNumber     : MS12-072
MsrcSeverity   : Critical
Product        : WindowsServer2012
ProductFamily  : Windows
ReleaseDate    : 11/13/2012 6:00:00 PM
Title          : Security Update for Windows Server 2012 (KB2727528)
Vendor         : Microsoft
...
```

Example 2: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each filter.

```
$filter1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter1.Key = "PRODUCT"
$filter1.Values = "WindowsServer2012"
$filter2 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter2.Key = "MSRC_SEVERITY"
$filter2.Values = "Critical"

Get-SSMAvailablePatch -Filter $filter1,$filter2
```

Example 3: This example fetches all the updates which are released in last 20 days and applicable to products matching WindowsServer2019

```
Get-SSMAvailablePatch | Where-Object ReleaseDate -ge (Get-Date).AddDays(-20) |
 Where-Object Product -eq "WindowsServer2019" | Select-Object ReleaseDate, Product,
 Title
```

Output:

```
ReleaseDate         Product           Title
-----------         -------           -----
4/9/2019 5:00:12 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-04 Security Update for Adobe Flash Player
 for Windows Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493478)
4/9/2019 5:00:06 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-04 Cumulative Update for Windows Server
 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493509)
4/2/2019 5:00:06 PM WindowsServer2019 2019-03 Servicing Stack Update for Windows
 Server 2019 for x64-based Systems (KB4493510)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailablePatches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMCommand`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMCommand`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all commands requested.

```
Get-SSMCommand
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : 4b75a163-d39a-4d97-87c9-98ae52c6be35
Comment            : Apply association with id at update time: 4cc73e42-
d5ae-4879-84f8-57e09c0efcd0
CompletedCount     : 1
DocumentName       : AWS-RefreshAssociation
ErrorCount         : 0
ExpiresAfter       : 2/24/2017 3:19:08 AM
InstanceIds        : {i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f}
MaxConcurrency     : 50
MaxErrors          : 0
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
OutputS3BucketName :
OutputS3KeyPrefix  :
OutputS3Region     :
Parameters         : {[associationIds,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
RequestedDateTime  : 2/24/2017 3:18:08 AM
ServiceRole        :
Status             : Success
StatusDetails      : Success
TargetCount        : 1
Targets            : {}
```

Example 2: This example gets the status of a specific command.

```
Get-SSMCommand -CommandId "4b75a163-d39a-4d97-87c9-98ae52c6be35"
```

Example 3: This example retrieves all SSM commands invoked after 2019-04-01T00:00:00Z

```
Get-SSMCommand -Filter @{Key="InvokedAfter";Value="2019-04-01T00:00:00Z"} | Select-
Object CommandId, DocumentName, Status, RequestedDateTime | Sort-Object -Property
 RequestedDateTime -Descending
```

Output:

```
CommandId                            DocumentName               Status
 RequestedDateTime
---------                            ------------               ------
 -----------------
```

```
edb1b23e-456a-7adb-aef8-90e-012ac34f AWS-RunPowerShellScript    Cancelled 4/16/2019
 5:45:23 AM
1a2dc3fb-4567-890d-a1ad-234b5d6bc7d9 AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage    Success   4/6/2019
 9:19:42 AM
12c3456c-7e90-4f12-1232-1234f5b67893 KT-Retrieve-Cloud-Type-Win Failed    4/2/2019
 4:13:07 AM
fe123b45-240c-4123-a2b3-234bdd567ecf AWS-RunInspecChecks        Failed    4/1/2019
 2:27:31 PM
1eb23aa4-567d-4123-12a3-4c1c2ab34561 AWS-RunPowerShellScript    Success   4/1/2019
 1:05:55 PM
1c2f3bb4-ee12-4bc1-1a23-12345eea123e AWS-RunInspecChecks        Failed    4/1/2019
 11:13:09 AM
```

- For API details, see ListCommands in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMCommandInvocation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMCommandInvocation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the invocations of a command.

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId "b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44" -Detail
 $true
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44
CommandPlugins     : {aws:runShellScript}
Comment            : IP config
DocumentName       : AWS-RunShellScript
InstanceId         : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
InstanceName       :
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
RequestedDateTime  : 2/22/2017 8:13:16 PM
ServiceRole        :
StandardErrorUrl   :
StandardOutputUrl  :
Status             : Success
StatusDetails      : Success
TraceOutput        :
```

Example 2: This example lists CommandPlugins for invocation of the command id e1eb2e3c-ed4c-5123-45c1-234f5612345f

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocation -CommandId e1eb2e3c-ed4c-5123-45c1-234f5612345f -Detail:
$true | Select-Object -ExpandProperty CommandPlugins
```

Output:

```
Name                   : aws:runPowerShellScript
Output                 : Completed 17.7 KiB/17.7 KiB (40.1 KiB/s) with 1 file(s)
 remainingdownload: s3://dd-aess-r-ctmer/KUMO.png to ..\..\programdata\KUMO.png
                          kumo available

OutputS3BucketName     :
OutputS3KeyPrefix      :
OutputS3Region         : eu-west-1
ResponseCode           : 0
ResponseFinishDateTime : 4/3/2019 11:53:23 AM
ResponseStartDateTime  : 4/3/2019 11:53:21 AM
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Success
StatusDetails          : Success
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMCommandInvocationDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMCommandInvocationDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the details of a command executed on an instance.

```
Get-SSMCommandInvocationDetail -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -CommandId
 "b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44"
```

Output:

```
CommandId              : b8eac879-0541-439d-94ec-47a80d554f44
```

```
Comment                : IP config
DocumentName           : AWS-RunShellScript
ExecutionElapsedTime   : PT0.004S
ExecutionEndDateTime   : 2017-02-22T20:13:16.651Z
ExecutionStartDateTime : 2017-02-22T20:13:16.651Z
InstanceId             : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
PluginName             : aws:runShellScript
ResponseCode           : 0
StandardErrorContent   :
StandardErrorUrl       :
StandardOutputContent  :
StandardOutputUrl      :
Status                 : Success
StatusDetails          : Success
```

- For API details, see GetCommandInvocation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMComplianceItemList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMComplianceItemList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists compliance items list for the given resource id and type, filtering compliance-type being 'Association'

```
Get-SSMComplianceItemList -ResourceId i-1a2caf345f67d0dc2 -ResourceType
 ManagedInstance -Filter @{Key="ComplianceType";Values="Association"}
```

Output:

```
ComplianceType   : Association
Details          : {[DocumentName, AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory], [DocumentVersion,
 1]}
ExecutionSummary : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.ComplianceExecutionSummary
Id               : 123a45a1-c234-1234-1245-67891236db4e
ResourceId       : i-1a2caf345f67d0dc2
ResourceType     : ManagedInstance
Severity         : UNSPECIFIED
Status           : COMPLIANT
```

```
Title            :
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceItems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMComplianceSummaryList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMComplianceSummaryList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a summary count of compliant and non-compliant resources for all compliance types.

```
Get-SSMComplianceSummaryList
```

Output:

```
ComplianceType CompliantSummary
 NonCompliantSummary
-------------- ----------------
 -------------------
FleetTotal     Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Association    Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Custom:InSpec  Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
Patch          Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.CompliantSummary
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NonCompliantSummary
```

- For API details, see ListComplianceSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMConnectionStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMConnectionStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves the Session Manager connection status for an instance to determine whether it is connected and ready to receive Session Manager connections.

```
Get-SSMConnectionStatus -Target i-0a1caf234f12d3dc4
```

Output:

```
Status    Target
------    ------
Connected i-0a1caf234f12d3dc4
```

- For API details, see GetConnectionStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the default patch baseline.

```
Get-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline
```

Output:

```
arn:aws:ssm:us-west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966
```

- For API details, see GetDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the current snapshot for the patch baseline used by an Instance. This command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, the example passes an `Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials` object to the Credentials parameter.

```
$credentials = [Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials]::new()
Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance -SnapshotId "4681775b-098f-4435-
a956-0ef33373ac11" -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Credentials $credentials
```

Output:

```
InstanceId          SnapshotDownloadUrl
----------          -------------------
i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-west-2.s3-us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/853d0d3db0f0cafe...1692/4681775b-098f-4435...
```

Example 2: This example shows how to get the full SnapshotDownloadUrl. This command must be run from the instance using the instance credentials. To ensure it uses the instance credentials, the example configures the PowerShell session to use an `Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials` object.

```
Set-AWSCredential -Credential
 ([Amazon.Runtime.InstanceProfileAWSCredentials]::new())
(Get-SSMDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance -SnapshotId "4681775b-098f-4435-
a956-0ef33373ac11" -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f").SnapshotDownloadUrl
```

Output:

```
https://patch-baseline-snapshot-us-west-2.s3-us-
west-2.amazonaws.com/853d0d3db0f0cafe...
```

- For API details, see GetDeployablePatchSnapshotForInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDocument`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns the content of a document.

```
Get-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
Content
-------
{...
```

Example 2: This example displays the complete contents of a document.

```
(Get-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript").Content
{
   "schemaVersion":"2.0",
   "description":"Run an updated script",
   "parameters":{
      "commands":{
         "type":"StringList",
         "description":"(Required) Specify a shell script or a command to run.",
         "minItems":1,
         "displayType":"textarea"
      }
   },
   "mainSteps":[
      {
         "action":"aws:runShellScript",
         "name":"runShellScript",
         "inputs":{
            "commands":"{{ commands }}"
         }
      },
      {
         "action":"aws:runPowerShellScript",
         "name":"runPowerShellScript",
         "inputs":{
            "commands":"{{ commands }}"
         }
      }
   ]
}
```

- For API details, see GetDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDocumentDescription`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDocumentDescription`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns information about a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentDescription -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 2/24/2017 5:25:13 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Hash            : f775e5df4904c6fa46686c4722fae9de1950dace25cd9608ff8d622046b68d9b
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 1
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 123456789012
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Active
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDocumentList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDocumentList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Lists all the configuration documents in your account.

```
Get-SSMDocumentList
```

Output:

```
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ApplyPatchBaseline
Owner           : Amazon
```

```
PlatformTypes   : {Windows}
SchemaVersion   : 1.2

DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ConfigureAWSPackage
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows, Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0

DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Name            : AWS-ConfigureCloudWatch
Owner           : Amazon
PlatformTypes   : {Windows}
SchemaVersion   : 1.2
...
```

Example 2: This example retrieves all automation documents with name matchingi 'Platform'

```
Get-SSMDocumentList -DocumentFilterList @{Key="DocumentType";Value="Automation"} |
 Where-Object Name -Match "Platform"
```

Output:

```
DocumentFormat  : JSON
DocumentType    : Automation
DocumentVersion : 7
Name            : KT-Get-Platform
Owner           : 987654123456
PlatformTypes   : {Windows, Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 0.3
Tags            : {}
TargetType      :
VersionName     :
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDocumentPermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDocumentPermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the versions for a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentVersionList -Name "RunShellScript"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate          DocumentVersion IsDefaultVersion Name
-----------          --------------- ---------------- ----
2/24/2017 5:25:13 AM 1               True             RunShellScript
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentPermission in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMDocumentVersionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMDocumentVersionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the versions for a document.

```
Get-SSMDocumentVersionList -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate       : 6/1/2021 5:19:10 PM
DocumentFormat    : JSON
DocumentVersion   : 1
IsDefaultVersion  : True
Name              : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Status            : Active
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentVersions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example describes the effective associations for an instance.

```
Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -MaxResult
 5
```

Output:

```
AssociationId                        Content
-------------                        -------
d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0 {...
```

Example 2: This example displays the contents of the effective associations for an instance.

```
(Get-SSMEffectiveInstanceAssociationList -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -
MaxResult 5).Content
```

Output:

```
{
    "schemaVersion": "1.2",
    "description": "Update the Amazon SSM Agent to the latest version or specified
 version.",
    "parameters": {
        "version": {
            "default": "",
            "description": "(Optional) A specific version of the Amazon SSM Agent to
 install. If not specified, the agen
t will be updated to the latest version.",
            "type": "String"
        },
        "allowDowngrade": {
            "default": "false",
            "description": "(Optional) Allow the Amazon SSM Agent service to be
 downgraded to an earlier version. If set
 to false, the service can be upgraded to newer versions only (default). If set to
 true, specify the earlier version.",
            "type": "String",
            "allowedValues": [
                "true",
                "false"
```

```
            ]
        }
    },
    "runtimeConfig": {
        "aws:updateSsmAgent": {
            "properties": [
                {
                "agentName": "amazon-ssm-agent",
                "source": "https://s3.{Region}.amazonaws.com/amazon-ssm-{Region}/
ssm-agent-manifest.json",
                "allowDowngrade": "{{ allowDowngrade }}",
                "targetVersion": "{{ version }}"
                }
            ]
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectiveInstanceAssociations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all patch baselines, with a maximum result list of 1.

```
Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31" -
MaxResult 1
```

Output:

```
Patch                                       PatchStatus
-----                                       -----------
Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.Patch
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchStatus
```

Example 2: This example displays the patch status for all patch baselines, with a maximum result list of 1.

```
(Get-SSMEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31" -
MaxResult 1).PatchStatus
```

Output:

```
ApprovalDate          DeploymentStatus
------------          ----------------
12/21/2010 6:00:00 PM APPROVED
```

- For API details, see DescribeEffectivePatchesForPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows details of the associations for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus -InstanceId "i-0000293ffd8c57862"
```

Output:

```
AssociationId    : d8617c07-2079-4c18-9847-1655fc2698b0
DetailedStatus   : Pending
DocumentVersion  : 1
ErrorCode        :
ExecutionDate    : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
ExecutionSummary : temp_status_change
InstanceId       : i-0000293ffd8c57862
Name             : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
OutputUrl        :
Status           : Pending
```

Example 2: This example checks the instance association status for the given instance id and further, displays the execution status of those associations

```
Get-SSMInstanceAssociationsStatus -InstanceId i-012e3cb4df567e8aa | ForEach-Object
 {Get-SSMAssociationExecution -AssociationId .AssociationId}
```

Output:

```
AssociationId         : 512a34a5-c678-1234-1234-12345678db9e
AssociationVersion    : 2
CreatedTime           : 3/2/2019 8:53:29 AM
DetailedStatus        :
ExecutionId           : 512a34a5-c678-1234-1234-12345678db9e
LastExecutionDate     : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceCountByStatus : {Success=9}
Status                : Success
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceAssociationsStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInstanceInformation`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInstanceInformation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example shows details of each of your instances.

```
Get-SSMInstanceInformation
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                          :
AgentVersion                          : 2.0.672.0
AssociationOverview                   :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                     : Success
ComputerName                          : ip-172-31-44-222.us-west-2.compute.internal
IamRole                               :
InstanceId                            : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
IPAddress                             : 172.31.44.222
IsLatestVersion                       : True
LastAssociationExecutionDate          : 2/24/2017 3:18:09 AM
LastPingDateTime                      : 2/24/2017 3:35:03 AM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 2/24/2017 3:18:09 AM
Name                                  :
PingStatus                            : ConnectionLost
```

```
PlatformName                            : Amazon Linux AMI
PlatformType                            : Linux
PlatformVersion                         : 2016.09
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance
```

Example 2: This example shows how to use the -Filter parameter to filter results to only those AWS Systems Manager instances in region `us-east-1` with an `AgentVersion` of `2.2.800.0`. You can find a list of valid -Filter key values in the InstanceInformation API reference topic (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/APIReference/API_InstanceInformation.html#systemsmanager-Type-InstanceInformation-ActivationId).

```
$Filters = @{
    Key="AgentVersion"
    Values="2.2.800.0"
}
Get-SSMInstanceInformation -Region us-east-1 -Filter $Filters
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                            :
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEb0792d98ce
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.01
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:27 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                            : Windows
PlatformVersion                         : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance

ActivationId                            :
```

```
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEac7501d023
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.02
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:35 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                            : Windows
PlatformVersion                         : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance
```

Example 3: This example shows how to use the -InstanceInformationFilterList parameter to filter results to only those AWS Systems Manager instances in region `us-east-1` with `PlatformTypes` of `Windows` or `Linux`. You can find a list of valid -InstanceInformationFilterList key values in the InstanceInformationFilter API reference topic (https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/APIReference/API_InstanceInformationFilter.html).

```
$Filters = @{
   Key="PlatformTypes"
   ValueSet=("Windows","Linux")
}
Get-SSMInstanceInformation -Region us-east-1 -InstanceInformationFilterList $Filters
```

Output:

```
ActivationId                            :
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
```

```
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEb0792d98ce
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.27
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:27 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:02:50 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Ubuntu Server 18.04 LTS
PlatformType                            : Linux
PlatformVersion                         : 18.04
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance

ActivationId                            :
AgentVersion                            : 2.2.800.0
AssociationOverview                     :
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InstanceAggregatedAssociationOverview
AssociationStatus                       : Success
ComputerName                            : EXAMPLE-EXAMPLE.WORKGROUP
IamRole                                 :
InstanceId                              : i-EXAMPLEac7501d023
IPAddress                               : 10.0.0.100
IsLatestVersion                         : False
LastAssociationExecutionDate            : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
LastPingDateTime                        : 8/16/2018 7:40:35 PM
LastSuccessfulAssociationExecutionDate : 8/16/2018 12:00:20 AM
Name                                    :
PingStatus                              : Online
PlatformName                            : Microsoft Windows Server 2016 Datacenter
PlatformType                            : Windows
PlatformVersion                         : 10.0.14393
RegistrationDate                        : 1/1/0001 12:00:00 AM
ResourceType                            : EC2Instance
```

Example 4: This example lists ssm managed instances and exports InstanceId, PingStatus, LastPingDateTime and PlatformName to a csv file.

```
Get-SSMInstanceInformation | Select-Object InstanceId, PingStatus, LastPingDateTime,
 PlatformName | Export-Csv Instance-details.csv -NoTypeInformation
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceInformation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInstancePatch`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInstancePatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the patch compliance details for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatch -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatches in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInstancePatchState`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInstancePatchState`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the patch summary states for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchState -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407"
```

Example 2: This example gets the patch summary states for two instances.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchState -InstanceId "i-08ee91c0b17045407","i-09a618aec652973a9"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStates in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the patch summary states per-instance for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup -PatchGroup "Production"
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstancePatchStatesForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInventory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInventory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the custom metadata for your inventory.

```
Get-SSMInventory
```

Output:

```
Data
  Id
----
  --
{[AWS:InstanceInformation,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InventoryResultItem]} i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
```

- For API details, see GetInventory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the custom inventory entries for an instance.

```
Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -TypeName
 "Custom:RackInfo"
```

Output:

```
CaptureTime   : 2016-08-22T10:01:01Z
Entries       :
 {Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendDictionary`2[System.String,System.String]}
```

```
InstanceId    : i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
NextToken     :
SchemaVersion : 1.0
TypeName      : Custom:RackInfo
```

Example 2: This example lists the details.

```
(Get-SSMInventoryEntriesList -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -TypeName
 "Custom:RackInfo").Entries
```

Output:

```
Key          Value
---          -----
RackLocation Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf E
```

- For API details, see ListInventoryEntries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInventoryEntryList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInventoryEntryList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example retrieves `AWS:Network` type inventory entries for the instance.

```
Get-SSMInventoryEntryList -InstanceId mi-088dcb0ecea37b076 -TypeName AWS:Network |
 Select-Object -ExpandProperty Entries
```

Output:

```
Key        Value
---        -----
DHCPServer 172.31.11.2
DNSServer  172.31.0.1
Gateway    172.31.11.2
IPV4       172.31.11.222
IPV6       fe12::3456:7da8:901a:12a3
MacAddress 1A:23:4E:5B:FB:67
Name       Amazon Elastic Network Adapter
SubnetMask 255.255.240.0
```

- For API details, see Get-SSMInventoryEntryList in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMInventorySchema`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMInventorySchema`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example returns a list of inventory type names for the account.

```
Get-SSMInventorySchema
```

- For API details, see GetInventorySchema in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMLatestEC2Image`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMLatestEC2Image`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all the lastest Windows AMIs.

```
PS Get-SSMLatestEC2Image -Path ami-windows-latest
```

Output:

```
Name                                                                Value
----                                                                -----
Windows_Server-2008-R2_SP1-English-64Bit-SQL_2012_SP4_Express
 ami-0e5ddd288daff4fab
Windows_Server-2012-R2_RTM-Chinese_Simplified-64Bit-Base
 ami-0c5ea64e6bec1cb50
Windows_Server-2012-R2_RTM-Chinese_Traditional-64Bit-Base
 ami-09775eff0bf8c113d
Windows_Server-2012-R2_RTM-Dutch-64Bit-Base
 ami-025064b67e28cf5df
...
```

Example 2: This example retrieves the AMI id of a specific Amazon Linux image for the us-west-2 region.

```
PS Get-SSMLatestEC2Image -Path ami-amazon-linux-latest -ImageName amzn-ami-hvm-
x86_64-ebs -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
ami-09b92cd132204c704
```

Example 3: This example lists all the lastest Windows AMIs matching the specified wildcard expression.

```
Get-SSMLatestEC2Image -Path ami-windows-latest -ImageName *Windows*2019*English*
```

Output:

```
Name                                                        Value
----                                                        -----
Windows_Server-2019-English-Full-SQL_2017_Web               ami-085e9d27da5b73a42
Windows_Server-2019-English-STIG-Core                       ami-0bfd85c29148c7f80
Windows_Server-2019-English-Full-SQL_2019_Web               ami-02099560d7fb11f20
Windows_Server-2019-English-Full-SQL_2016_SP2_Standard      ami-0d7ae2d81c07bd598
...
```

- For API details, see Get-SSMLatestEC2Image in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets details about a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d"
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
CreatedDate              : 2/20/2017 6:14:05 PM
Cutoff                   : 1
```

```
Duration                  : 2
Enabled                   : True
ModifiedDate              : 2/20/2017 6:14:05 PM
Name                      : TestMaintWin
Schedule                  : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                  : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists information about a task executed as part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecution -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-
da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.
TaskIds           : {ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586}
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/20/2017 6:30:17 PM
StartTime         : 2/20/2017 6:30:16 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : One or more tasks in the orchestration failed.
WindowExecutionId : 6f3215cf-4101-4fa0-9b7b-9523269599c7
WindowId          : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 2: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window before a specified date.

```
$option1 = @{Key="ExecutedBefore";Values=@("2016-11-04T05:00:00Z")}
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Filter
 $option1
```

Example 3: This example lists all of the executions for a maintenance window after a specified date.

```
$option1 = @{Key="ExecutedAfter";Values=@("2016-11-04T05:00:00Z")}
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionList -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Filter
 $option1
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists information about a task that was part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask -TaskId "ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586"
 -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
MaxConcurrency    : 1
MaxErrors         : 1
Priority          : 10
ServiceRole       : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : The maximum error count was exceeded.
TaskArn           : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
TaskParameters    :
 {Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendDictionary`2[System.String,Amazon.SimpleSystemsMana
                    meterValueExpression]}
Type              : RUN_COMMAND
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see GetMaintenanceWindowExecutionTask in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocationList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocationList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the invocations for a task executed as part of a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocationList -TaskId "ac0c6ae1-
daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586" -WindowExecutionId "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-
da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
ExecutionId       :
InvocationId      : e274b6e1-fe56-4e32-bd2a-8073c6381d8b
OwnerInformation  :
```

```
Parameters        : {"documentName":"AWS-RunShellScript","instanceIds":
["i-0000293ffd8c57862"],"parameters":{"commands":["df"]},"maxConcurrency":"1",
                    "maxErrors":"1"}
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : FAILED
StatusDetails     : The instance IDs list contains an invalid entry.
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
WindowTargetId    :
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskInvocations in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the tasks associated with a maintenance window execution.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowExecutionTaskList -WindowExecutionId
 "518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355"
```

Output:

```
EndTime           : 2/21/2017 4:00:35 PM
StartTime         : 2/21/2017 4:00:34 PM
Status            : SUCCESS
TaskArn           : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskExecutionId   : ac0c6ae1-daa3-4a89-832e-d384503b6586
TaskType          : RUN_COMMAND
WindowExecutionId : 518d5565-5969-4cca-8f0e-da3b2a638355
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowExecutionTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all maintenance windows on your account.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowList
```

Output:

```
Cutoff   : 1
Duration : 4
Enabled  : True
Name     : My-First-Maintenance-Window
WindowId : mw-06d59c1a07c022145
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindows in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTarget`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTarget`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all of the targets for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTarget -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
OwnerInformation : Single instance
ResourceType     : INSTANCE
Targets          : {InstanceIds}
WindowId         : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTargetId   : 350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c985838f6

OwnerInformation : Two instances in a list
ResourceType     : INSTANCE
Targets          : {InstanceIds}
WindowId         : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTargetId   : e078a987-2866-47be-bedd-d9cf49177d3a
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTargets in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTaskList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTaskList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all of the tasks for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMMaintenanceWindowTaskList -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
LoggingInfo    :
MaxConcurrency : 1
MaxErrors      : 1
Priority       : 10
ServiceRoleArn : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole
Targets        : {InstanceIds}
TaskArn        : AWS-RunShellScript
TaskParameters : {[commands,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression]}
Type           : RUN_COMMAND
WindowId       : mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f
WindowTaskId   : a23e338d-ff30-4398-8aa3-09cd052ebf17
```

- For API details, see DescribeMaintenanceWindowTasks in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMParameterHistory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMParameterHistory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the value history for a parameter.

```
Get-SSMParameterHistory -Name "Welcome"
```

Output:

```
Description      :
KeyId            :
LastModifiedDate : 3/3/2017 6:55:25 PM
LastModifiedUser : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin
Name             : Welcome
Type             : String
Value            : helloWorld
```

- For API details, see GetParameterHistory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMParameterList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMParameterList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all parameters.

```
Get-SSMParameterList
```

Output:

```
Description      :
KeyId            :
LastModifiedDate : 3/3/2017 6:58:23 PM
LastModifiedUser : arn:aws:iam::123456789012:user/admin
Name             : Welcome
Type             : String
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMParameterValue`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMParameterValue`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the values for a parameter.

```
Get-SSMParameterValue -Name "Welcome"
```

Output:

```
InvalidParameters Parameters
----------------- ----------
{}                {Welcome}
```

Example 2: This example lists the details of the value.

```
(Get-SSMParameterValue -Name "Welcome").Parameters
```

Output:

```
Name    Type   Value
----    ----   -----
Welcome String Good day, Sunshine!
```

- For API details, see GetParameters in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists all patch baselines.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline
```

Output:

```
BaselineDescription                                                BaselineId
                                                        BaselineName
-------------------                                                ----------
                                                        ------------
Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS.                            arn:aws:ssm:us-
west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966 AWS-DefaultP...
Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems pb-045f10b4f382baeda
                                                        Production-B...
```

```
Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems pb-0a2f1059b670ebd31
                                                        Production-B...
```

Example 2: This example lists all patch baselines provided by AWS. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="OWNER";Values=@("AWS")}
```

Output:

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Example 3: This example lists all patch baselines with you as the owner. The syntax used by this example requires PowerShell version 3 or later.

```
$filter1 = @{Key="OWNER";Values=@("Self")}
```

Output:

```
Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Example 4: With PowerShell version 2, you must use New-Object to create each tag.

```
$filter1 = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchOrchestratorFilter
$filter1.Key = "OWNER"
$filter1.Values = "AWS"

Get-SSMPatchBaseline -Filter $filter1
```

Output:

```
BaselineDescription                     BaselineId
                          BaselineName             DefaultBaselin


                                                   e
-------------------                     ----------
                          ------------             --------------
Default Patch Baseline Provided by AWS. arn:aws:ssm:us-
west-2:123456789012:patchbaseline/pb-04fb4ae6142167966 AWS-DefaultPatchBaseline True
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchBaselines in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMPatchBaselineDetail`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMPatchBaselineDetail`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the details for a patch baseline.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaselineDetail -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639"
```

Output:

```
ApprovalRules   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRuleGroup
ApprovedPatches : {}
BaselineId      : pb-03da896ca3b68b639
CreatedDate     : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Description     : Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
GlobalFilters   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup
ModifiedDate    : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Name            : Production-Baseline
PatchGroups     : {}
RejectedPatches : {}
```

- For API details, see GetPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example displays the patch baseline for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
```

```
----------           ----------
pb-045f10b4f382baeda Production
```

- For API details, see GetPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMPatchGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMPatchGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the patch group registrations.

```
Get-SSMPatchGroup
```

Output:

```
BaselineIdentity                                            PatchGroup
----------------                                            ----------
Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchBaselineIdentity Production
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMPatchGroupState`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMPatchGroupState`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets the high-level patch compliance summary for a patch group.

```
Get-SSMPatchGroupState -PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
Instances                         : 4
InstancesWithFailedPatches        : 1
InstancesWithInstalledOtherPatches : 4
InstancesWithInstalledPatches     : 3
```

```
InstancesWithMissingPatches        : 0
InstancesWithNotApplicablePatches  : 0
```

- For API details, see DescribePatchGroupState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMResourceComplianceSummaryList`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMResourceComplianceSummaryList`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example gets a resource-level summary count. The summary includes information about compliant and non-compliant statuses and detailed compliance-item severity counts for products that match "Windows10". Because the MaxResult default is 100 if the parameter is not specified, and this value is not valid, MaxResult parameter is added, and the value is set to 50.

```
$FilterValues = @{
  "Key"="Product"
        "Type"="EQUAL"
        "Values"="Windows10"
}
        Get-SSMResourceComplianceSummaryList -Filter $FilterValues -MaxResult 50
```

- For API details, see ListResourceComplianceSummaries in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-SSMResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-SSMResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example lists the tags for a maintenance window.

```
Get-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow"
```

Output:

```
Key   Value
---   -----
Stack Production
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SSMActivation`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SSMActivation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a managed instance.

```
New-SSMActivation -DefaultInstanceName "MyWebServers" -IamRole "SSMAutomationRole" -
RegistrationLimit 10
```

Output:

```
ActivationCode       ActivationId
--------------       ------------
KWChhOxBTiwDcKE9BlKC 08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363
```

- For API details, see CreateActivation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SSMAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SSMAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using instance IDs.

```
New-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
```

```
Date                   : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name            : Associated
Status.Date            : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message         : Associated with AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
Status.AdditionalInfo  :
```

Example 2: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets.

```
$target = @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
New-SSMAssociation -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" -Target $target
```

Output:

```
Name                   : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId             :
Date                   : 3/1/2017 6:22:21 PM
Status.Name            :
Status.Date            :
Status.Message         :
Status.AdditionalInfo  :
```

Example 3: This example associates a configuration document with an instance, using targets and parameters.

```
$target = @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
$params = @{
  "action"="configure"
  "mode"="ec2"
  "optionalConfigurationSource"="ssm"
  "optionalConfigurationLocation"=""
  "optionalRestart"="yes"
}
New-SSMAssociation -Name "Configure-CloudWatch" -AssociationName "CWConfiguration" -
Target $target -Parameter $params
```

Output:

```
Name                   : Configure-CloudWatch
InstanceId             :
Date                   : 5/17/2018 3:17:44 PM
Status.Name            :
```

```
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

Example 4: This example creates an association with all instances in the region, with `AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory`. It also provides custom files and registry locations in the parameters to collect

```
$params =
 [Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,Collections.Generic.List[String]]]::new()
$params["windowsRegistry"] ='[{"Path":"HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Amazon
\MachineImage","Recursive":false,"ValueNames":["AMIName"]}]'
$params["files"] = '[{"Path":"C:\Program Files","Pattern":
["*.exe"],"Recursive":true}, {"Path":"C:\ProgramData","Pattern":
["*.log"],"Recursive":true}]'
New-SSMAssociation -AssociationName new-in-mum -Name AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
 -Target @{Key="instanceids";Values="*"} -Parameter $params -region ap-south-1 -
ScheduleExpression "rate(720 minutes)"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-GatherSoftwareInventory
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 6/9/2019 8:57:56 AM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SSMAssociationFromBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SSMAssociationFromBatch`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example associates a configuration document with multiple instances. The output returns a list of successful and failed operations, if applicable.

```
$option1 = @{InstanceId="i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
```

```
$option2 = @{InstanceId="i-0000293ffd8c57862";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
New-SSMAssociationFromBatch -Entry $option1,$option2
```

Output:

```
Failed  Successful
------  ----------
{}      {Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.FailedCreateAssociation,
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.FailedCreateAsso...
```

Example 2: This example will show the full details of a successful operation.

```
$option1 = @{InstanceId="i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
$option2 = @{InstanceId="i-0000293ffd8c57862";Name=@("AWS-UpdateSSMAgent")}
(New-SSMAssociationFromBatch -Entry $option1,$option2).Successful
```

- For API details, see CreateAssociationBatch in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SSMDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SSMDocument`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a document in your account. The document must be in JSON format. For more information about writing a configuration document, see Configuration Document in the SSM API Reference.

```
New-SSMDocument -Content (Get-Content -Raw "c:\temp\RunShellScript.json") -Name
 "RunShellScript" -DocumentType "Command"
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 3/1/2017 1:21:33 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 1
Hash            : 1d5ce820e999ff051eb4841ed887593daf77120fd76cae0d18a53cc42e4e22c1
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 1
```

```
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 809632081692
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Creating
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SSMMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SSMMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a new maintenance window with the specified name that runs at 4 PM on every Tuesday for 4 hours, with a 1 hour cutoff, and that allows unassociated targets.

```
New-SSMMaintenanceWindow -Name "MyMaintenanceWindow" -Duration 4 -Cutoff 1 -
AllowUnassociatedTarget $true -Schedule "cron(0 16 ? * TUE *)"
```

Output:

```
mw-03eb53e1ea7383998
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-SSMPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `New-SSMPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a patch baseline that approves patches, seven days after they are released by Microsoft, for managed instances running Windows Server 2019 in a production environment.

```
$rule = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRule
```

```
$rule.ApproveAfterDays = 7

$ruleFilters = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup

$patchFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$patchFilter.Key="PRODUCT"
$patchFilter.Values="WindowsServer2019"

$severityFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$severityFilter.Key="MSRC_SEVERITY"
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Critical")
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Important")
$severityFilter.Values.Add("Moderate")

$classificationFilter = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilter
$classificationFilter.Key = "CLASSIFICATION"
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "SecurityUpdates" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "Updates" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "UpdateRollups" )
$classificationFilter.Values.Add( "CriticalUpdates" )

$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($severityFilter)
$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($classificationFilter)
$ruleFilters.PatchFilters.Add($patchFilter)
$rule.PatchFilterGroup = $ruleFilters

New-SSMPatchBaseline -Name "Production-Baseline-Windows2019" -Description "Baseline
 containing all updates approved for production systems" -ApprovalRules_PatchRule
 $rule
```

Output:

```
pb-0z4z6221c4296b23z
```

- For API details, see CreatePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a patch baseline as the default patch baseline.

```
Register-SSMDefaultPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639"
```

Output:

```
pb-03da896ca3b68b639
```

- For API details, see RegisterDefaultPatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a patch baseline for a patch group.

```
Register-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639" -
PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-03da896ca3b68b639 Production
```

- For API details, see RegisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers an instance with a maintenance window.

```
$option1 = @{Key="InstanceIds";Values=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862")}
```

```
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Single instance" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
d8e47760-23ed-46a5-9f28-927337725398
```

Example 2: This example registers multiple instances with a maintenance window.

```
$option1 =
 @{Key="InstanceIds";Values=@("i-0000293ffd8c57862","i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Single instance" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d
```

Example 3: This example registers an instance with a maintenance window using EC2 tags.

```
$option1 = @{Key="tag:Environment";Values=@("Production")}
Register-SSMTargetWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f" -Target
 $option1 -OwnerInformation "Production Web Servers" -ResourceType "INSTANCE"
```

Output:

```
2994977e-aefb-4a71-beac-df620352f184
```

- For API details, see RegisterTargetWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example registers a task with a maintenance window using an instance ID. The output is the Task ID.

```
$parameters = @{}
$parameterValues = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression
$parameterValues.Values = @("Install")
$parameters.Add("Operation", $parameterValues)

Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
 -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
 -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "AWS-RunShellScript" -Target
 @{ Key="InstanceIds";Values="i-0000293ffd8c57862" } -TaskType "RUN_COMMAND" -
Priority 10 -TaskParameter $parameters
```

Output:

```
f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

Example 2: This example registers a task with a maintenance window using a target ID. The output is the Task ID.

```
$parameters = @{}
$parameterValues = New-Object
 Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.MaintenanceWindowTaskParameterValueExpression
$parameterValues.Values = @("Install")
$parameters.Add("Operation", $parameterValues)

register-ssmtaskwithmaintenancewindow -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
 -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
 -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "AWS-RunShellScript" -Target
 @{ Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="350d44e6-28cc-44e2-951f-4b2c985838f6" } -TaskType
 "RUN_COMMAND" -Priority 10 -TaskParameter $parameters
```

Output:

```
f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

Example 3: This example creates a parameter object for the run command document `AWS-RunPowerShellScript` and creates a task with given maintenance window using target ID. The return output is the task ID.

```
$parameters =
 [Collections.Generic.Dictionary[String,Collections.Generic.List[String]]]::new()
```

```
$parameters.Add("commands",@("ipconfig","dir env:\computername"))
$parameters.Add("executionTimeout",@(3600))

$props = @{
    WindowId = "mw-0123e4cce56ff78ae"
    ServiceRoleArn = "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MaintenanceWindowsRole"
    MaxConcurrency = 1
    MaxError = 1
    TaskType = "RUN_COMMAND"
    TaskArn = "AWS-RunPowerShellScript"
    Target = @{Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="fe1234ea-56d7-890b-12f3-456b789bee0f"}
    Priority = 1
    RunCommand_Parameter = $parameters
    Name = "set-via-cmdlet"
}

Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow @props
```

Output:

```
f1e2ef34-5678-12e3-456a-12334c5c6cbe
```

Example 4: This example registers an AWS Systems Manager Automation task by using a document named `Create-Snapshots`.

```
$automationParameters = @{}
$automationParameters.Add( "instanceId", @("{{ TARGET_ID }}") )
$automationParameters.Add( "AutomationAssumeRole",
 @("{arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AutomationRole}") )
$automationParameters.Add( "SnapshotTimeout", @("PT20M") )
Register-SSMTaskWithMaintenanceWindow -WindowId mw-123EXAMPLE456`
    -ServiceRoleArn "arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/MW-Role"`
    -MaxConcurrency 1 -MaxError 1 -TaskArn "CreateVolumeSnapshots"`
    -Target @{ Key="WindowTargetIds";Values="4b5acdf4-946c-4355-
bd68-4329a43a5fd1" }`
    -TaskType "AUTOMATION"`
    -Priority 4`
    -Automation_DocumentVersion '$DEFAULT' -Automation_Parameter
 $automationParameters -Name "Create-Snapshots"
```

- For API details, see RegisterTaskWithMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMActivation`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMActivation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes an activation. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMActivation -ActivationId "08e51e79-1e36-446c-8e63-9458569c1363"
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes the association between an instance and a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMAssociation -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent"
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMDocument`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a document. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMDocument -Name "RunShellScript"
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a maintenance window.

```
Remove-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-06d59c1a07c022145"
```

Output:

```
mw-06d59c1a07c022145
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMParameter`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMParameter`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMParameter -Name "helloWorld"
```

- For API details, see DeleteParameter in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deletes a patch baseline.

```
Remove-SSMPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-045f10b4f382baeda"
```

Output:

```
pb-045f10b4f382baeda
```

- For API details, see DeletePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-SSMResourceTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-SSMResourceTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a tag from a maintenance window. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Remove-SSMResourceTag -ResourceId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -ResourceType
 "MaintenanceWindow" -TagKey "Production"
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromResource in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Send-SSMCommand`

The following code example shows how to use `Send-SSMCommand`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example runs an echo command on a target instance.

```
Send-SSMCommand -DocumentName "AWS-RunPowerShellScript" -Parameter @{commands =
 "echo helloWorld"} -Target @{Key="instanceids";Values=@("i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f")}
```

Output:

```
CommandId          : d8d190fc-32c1-4d65-a0df-ff5ff3965524
Comment            :
CompletedCount     : 0
DocumentName       : AWS-RunPowerShellScript
ErrorCount         : 0
ExpiresAfter       : 3/7/2017 10:48:37 PM
InstanceIds        : {}
MaxConcurrency     : 50
MaxErrors          : 0
NotificationConfig : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.NotificationConfig
```

```
OutputS3BucketName :
OutputS3KeyPrefix  :
OutputS3Region     :
Parameters         : {[commands,
 Amazon.Runtime.Internal.Util.AlwaysSendList`1[System.String]]}
RequestedDateTime  : 3/7/2017 9:48:37 PM
ServiceRole        :
Status             : Pending
StatusDetails      : Pending
TargetCount        : 0
Targets            : {instanceids}
```

Example 2: This example shows how to run a command that accepts nested parameters.

```
Send-SSMCommand -DocumentName "AWS-RunRemoteScript" -Parameter
 @{ sourceType="GitHub";sourceInfo='{"owner": "me","repository": "amazon-
ssm","path": "Examples/Install-Win32OpenSSH"}'; "commandLine"=".\Install-
Win32OpenSSH.ps1"} -InstanceId i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-SSMAutomationExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-SSMAutomationExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example runs a document specifying an Automation role, an AMI source ID, and an Amazon EC2 instance role.

```
Start-SSMAutomationExecution -DocumentName AWS-UpdateLinuxAmi -
Parameter @{'AutomationAssumeRole'='arn:aws:iam::123456789012:role/
SSMAutomationRole';'SourceAmiId'='ami-f173cc91';'InstanceIamRole'='EC2InstanceRole'}
```

Output:

```
3a532a4f-0382-11e7-9df7-6f11185f6dd1
```

- For API details, see StartAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Start-SSMSession`

The following code example shows how to use `Start-SSMSession`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example initiates a connection to a target for a Session Manager session, enabling port forwarding. Note: You need to add Region parameter if not already set using AWSCredentials.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-064578e5e7454488f' -DocumentName 'AWS-
StartPortForwardingSession' -Parameter @{ localPortNumber = '8080'; portNumber =
 '80' } -Region 'us-west-1'
```

Output:

```
Starting session with SessionId: testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy
Port 8080 opened for sessionId testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy.
Waiting for connections...
```

Example 2: This example creates an interactive session with a specified instance for a Session Manager session.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-1234567890abcdef0' -Region 'us-west-1'
```

Output:

```
Starting session with SessionId : testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy
Windows PowerShell
Copyright (C) Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.



Install the latest PowerShell for new features and improvements!


PS C:\Windows\system32> whoami
ec2amaz-fnsdrwv\ec2-test-user
PS C:\Windows\system32>
```

Example 3: This example creates a session without connecting to it and returns the SessionId, StreamUrl, and TokenValue properties required to connect to the session.

```
Start-SSMSession -Target 'i-1234567890abcdef0' -Region 'us-west-1' -
DisablePluginInvocation
```

Output:

```
SessionId        : testUser-xi4glew849asyeryde34u4dfsdfy
StreamUrl        : {StreamUrl value redacted}
TokenValue       : {Token value redacted}
ContentLength    : 1207
HttpStatusCode   : OK
```

- For API details, see StartSession in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-SSMAutomationExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-SSMAutomationExecution`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example stops an Automation Execution. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Stop-SSMAutomationExecution -AutomationExecutionId "4105a4fc-
f944-11e6-9d32-8fb2db27a909"
```

- For API details, see StopAutomationExecution in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-SSMCommand`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-SSMCommand`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example attempts to cancel a command. There is no output if the operation succeeds.

```
Stop-SSMCommand -CommandId "9ded293e-e792-4440-8e3e-7b8ec5feaa38"
```

- For API details, see CancelCommand in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-SSMManagedInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-SSMManagedInstance`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters a managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Unregister-SSMManagedInstance -InstanceId "mi-08ab247cdf1046573"
```

- For API details, see DeregisterManagedInstance in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example deregisters a patch group from a patch baseline.

```
Unregister-SSMPatchBaselineForPatchGroup -BaselineId "pb-045f10b4f382baeda" -
PatchGroup "Production"
```

Output:

```
BaselineId           PatchGroup
----------           ----------
pb-045f10b4f382baeda Production
```

- For API details, see DeregisterPatchBaselineForPatchGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-SSMTargetFromMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-SSMTargetFromMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a target from a maintenance window.

```
Unregister-SSMTargetFromMaintenanceWindow -WindowTargetId "6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-
b02a6cc25f7d" -WindowId "mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f"
```

Output:

```
WindowId             WindowTargetId
--------             --------------
mw-06cf17cbefcb4bf4f 6ab5c208-9fc4-4697-84b7-b02a6cc25f7d
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTargetFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-SSMTaskFromMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-SSMTaskFromMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example removes a task from a maintenance window.

```
Unregister-SSMTaskFromMaintenanceWindow -WindowTaskId "f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-
a88d-72366b69af1b" -WindowId "mw-03a342e62c96d31b0"
```

Output:

```
WindowId             WindowTaskId
--------             ------------
mw-03a342e62c96d31b0 f34a2c47-ddfd-4c85-a88d-72366b69af1b
```

- For API details, see DeregisterTaskFromMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMAssociation`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates an association with a new document version.

```
Update-SSMAssociation -AssociationId "93285663-92df-44cb-9f26-2292d4ecc439" -
DocumentVersion "1"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            :
Date                  : 3/1/2017 6:22:21 PM
Status.Name           :
Status.Date           :
Status.Message        :
Status.AdditionalInfo :
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssociation in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMAssociationStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMAssociationStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the association status of the association between an instance and a configuration document.

```
Update-SSMAssociationStatus -Name "AWS-UpdateSSMAgent" -InstanceId
 "i-0000293ffd8c57862" -AssociationStatus_Date "2015-02-20T08:31:11Z"
 -AssociationStatus_Name "Pending" -AssociationStatus_Message
 "temporary_status_change" -AssociationStatus_AdditionalInfo "Additional-Config-
Needed"
```

Output:

```
Name                  : AWS-UpdateSSMAgent
InstanceId            : i-0000293ffd8c57862
```

```
Date                   : 2/23/2017 6:55:22 PM
Status.Name            : Pending
Status.Date            : 2/20/2015 8:31:11 AM
Status.Message         : temporary_status_change
Status.AdditionalInfo : Additional-Config-Needed
```

- For API details, see UpdateAssociationStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMDocument`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This creates a new version of a document with the updated contents of the json file you specify. The document must be in JSON format. You can obtain the document version with the "Get-SSMDocumentVersionList" cmdlet.

```
Update-SSMDocument -Name RunShellScript -DocumentVersion "1" -Content (Get-Content -
Raw "c:\temp\RunShellScript.json")
```

Output:

```
CreatedDate     : 3/1/2017 2:59:17 AM
DefaultVersion  : 1
Description     : Run an updated script
DocumentType    : Command
DocumentVersion : 2
Hash            : 1d5ce820e999ff051eb4841ed887593daf77120fd76cae0d18a53cc42e4e22c1
HashType        : Sha256
LatestVersion   : 2
Name            : RunShellScript
Owner           : 809632081692
Parameters      : {commands}
PlatformTypes   : {Linux}
SchemaVersion   : 2.0
Sha1            :
Status          : Updating
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocument in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMDocumentDefaultVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMDocumentDefaultVersion`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This updates the default version of a document. You can obtain the available document versions with the "Get-SSMDocumentVersionList" cmdlet.

```
Update-SSMDocumentDefaultVersion -Name "RunShellScript" -DocumentVersion "2"
```

Output:

```
DefaultVersion Name
-------------- ----
2              RunShellScript
```

- For API details, see UpdateDocumentDefaultVersion in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the name of a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Name "My-Renamed-MW"
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 2: This example enables a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Enabled $true
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : True
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

Example 3: This example disables a maintenance window.

```
Update-SSMMaintenanceWindow -WindowId "mw-03eb9db42890fb82d" -Enabled $false
```

Output:

```
AllowUnassociatedTargets : False
Cutoff                   : 1
Duration                 : 2
Enabled                  : False
Name                     : My-Renamed-MW
Schedule                 : cron(0 */30 * * * ? *)
WindowId                 : mw-03eb9db42890fb82d
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMManagedInstanceRole`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMManagedInstanceRole`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example updates the role of a managed instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Update-SSMManagedInstanceRole -InstanceId "mi-08ab247cdf1046573" -IamRole
 "AutomationRole"
```

- For API details, see UpdateManagedInstanceRole in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Update-SSMPatchBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `Update-SSMPatchBaseline`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds two patches as rejected and one patch as approved to an existing patch baseline.

```
Update-SSMPatchBaseline -BaselineId "pb-03da896ca3b68b639" -RejectedPatch
 "KB2032276","MS10-048" -ApprovedPatch "KB2124261"
```

Output:

```
ApprovalRules   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchRuleGroup
ApprovedPatches : {KB2124261}
BaselineId      : pb-03da896ca3b68b639
CreatedDate     : 3/3/2017 5:02:19 PM
Description     : Baseline containing all updates approved for production systems
GlobalFilters   : Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.PatchFilterGroup
ModifiedDate    : 3/3/2017 5:22:10 PM
Name            : Production-Baseline
RejectedPatches : {KB2032276, MS10-048}
```

- For API details, see UpdatePatchBaseline in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-SSMComplianceItem`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-SSMComplianceItem`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example writes a custom compliance item for the given managed instance

```
$item = [Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.ComplianceItemEntry]::new()
$item.Id = "07Jun2019-3"
$item.Severity="LOW"
```

```
$item.Status="COMPLIANT"
$item.Title="Fin-test-1 - custom"
Write-SSMComplianceItem -ResourceId mi-012dcb3ecea45b678 -ComplianceType
 Custom:VSSCompliant2 -ResourceType ManagedInstance -Item $item -
ExecutionSummary_ExecutionTime "07-Jun-2019"
```

- For API details, see PutComplianceItems in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-SSMInventory`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-SSMInventory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example assigns rack location information to an instance. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
$data = New-Object
 "System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[System.String,System.String]"
$data.Add("RackLocation", "Bay B/Row C/Rack D/Shelf F")

$items = New-Object
 "System.Collections.Generic.List[System.Collections.Generic.Dictionary[System.String,
 System.String]]"
$items.Add($data)

$customInventoryItem = New-Object Amazon.SimpleSystemsManagement.Model.InventoryItem
$customInventoryItem.CaptureTime = "2016-08-22T10:01:01Z"
$customInventoryItem.Content = $items
$customInventoryItem.TypeName = "Custom:TestRackInfo2"
$customInventoryItem.SchemaVersion = "1.0"

$inventoryItems = @($customInventoryItem)

Write-SSMInventory -InstanceId "i-0cb2b964d3e14fd9f" -Item $inventoryItems
```

- For API details, see PutInventory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Write-SSMParameter`

The following code example shows how to use `Write-SSMParameter`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example creates a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Write-SSMParameter -Name "Welcome" -Type "String" -Value "helloWorld"
```

Example 2: This example changes a parameter. There is no output if the command succeeds.

```
Write-SSMParameter -Name "Welcome" -Type "String" -Value "Good day, Sunshine!" -
Overwrite $true
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Amazon Translate examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with Amazon Translate.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ConvertTo-TRNTargetLanguage`

The following code example shows how to use `ConvertTo-TRNTargetLanguage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Converts the specified English text to French. The text to convert can also be passed as the -Text parameter.

```
"Hello World" | ConvertTo-TRNTargetLanguage -SourceLanguageCode en -
TargetLanguageCode fr
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

AWS WAFV2 examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with AWS WAFV2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`New-WAF2WebACL`

The following code example shows how to use `New-WAF2WebACL`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This command creates a new web ACL named "waf-test". Kindly note that as per service API documentation, 'DefaultAction' is a required property. Hence, value for either '-DefaultAction_Allow' and/or '-DefaultAction_Block' should be specified. Since '-DefaultAction_Allow' and '-DefaultAction_Block' are not the required properties, value '@{}' could be used as placeholder as shown in above example.

```
New-WAF2WebACL -Name "waf-test" -Scope REGIONAL -Region eu-
west-1 -VisibilityConfig_CloudWatchMetricsEnabled $true -
VisibilityConfig_SampledRequestsEnabled $true -VisibilityConfig_MetricName "waf-
test" -Description "Test" -DefaultAction_Allow @{}
```

Output:

```
ARN         : arn:aws:wafv2:eu-west-1:139480602983:regional/webacl/waf-
test/19460b3f-db14-4b9a-8e23-a417e1eb007f
```

```
Description : Test
Id          : 19460b3f-db14-4b9a-8e23-a417e1eb007f
LockToken   : 5a0cd5eb-d911-4341-b313-b429e6d6b6ab
Name        : waf-test
```

- For API details, see CreateWebAcl in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

WorkSpaces examples using Tools for PowerShell V5

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS Tools for PowerShell V5 with WorkSpaces.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`Approve-WKSIpRule`

The following code example shows how to use `Approve-WKSIpRule`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample adds rules to an existing IP Group

```
$Rule = @(
@{IPRule = "10.1.0.0/0"; RuleDesc = "First Rule Added"},
@{IPRule = "10.2.0.0/0"; RuleDesc = "Second Rule Added"}
)

Approve-WKSIpRule -GroupId wsipg-abcnx2fcw -UserRule $Rule
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeIpRules in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Copy-WKSWorkspaceImage`

The following code example shows how to use `Copy-WKSWorkspaceImage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample copies workspace Image with specified ID from us-west-2 to the current region with the name "CopiedImageTest"

```
Copy-WKSWorkspaceImage -Name CopiedImageTest -SourceRegion us-west-2 -SourceImageId
 wsi-djfoedhw6
```

Output:

```
wsi-456abaqfe
```

- For API details, see CopyWorkspaceImage in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-WKSClientProperty`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-WKSClientProperty`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables Reconnection for the Workspaces Client

```
Edit-WKSClientProperty -Region us-west-2 -ClientProperties_ReconnectEnabled
 "ENABLED" -ResourceId d-123414a369
```

- For API details, see ModifyClientProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-WKSSelfServicePermission`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-WKSSelfServicePermission`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables self service permissions to Change compute type and Increase Volume Size for the specified Directory

```
Edit-WKSSelfservicePermission -Region us-west-2 -ResourceId
 d-123454a369 -SelfservicePermissions_ChangeComputeType ENABLED -
SelfservicePermissions_IincreaseVolumeSize ENABLED
```

- For API details, see ModifySelfservicePermissions in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-WKSWorkspaceAccessProperty`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-WKSWorkspaceAccessProperty`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables Workspace access on Android and Chrome OS for the specified Directory

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceAccessProperty -Region us-west-2 -ResourceId
 d-123454a369 -WorkspaceAccessProperties_DeviceTypeAndroid ALLOW -
WorkspaceAccessProperties_DeviceTypeChromeOs ALLOW
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceAccessProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-WKSWorkspaceCreationProperty`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-WKSWorkspaceCreationProperty`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample enables Internet Access and Maintenance Mode to true as default values while creating a Workspace

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceCreationProperty -Region us-west-2 -ResourceId
 d-123454a369 -WorkspaceCreationProperties_EnableInternetAccess $true -
WorkspaceCreationProperties_EnableMaintenanceMode $true
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceCreationProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-WKSWorkspaceProperty`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-WKSWorkspaceProperty`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample changes the Workspace Running Mode Property to Auto Stop for the specified Workspace

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceProperty -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v -Region us-west-2 -
WorkspaceProperties_RunningMode AUTO_STOP
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Edit-WKSWorkspaceState`

The following code example shows how to use `Edit-WKSWorkspaceState`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample changes the state of the specified Workspace to Available

```
Edit-WKSWorkspaceState -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceState
 AVAILABLE
```

- For API details, see ModifyWorkspaceState in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSClientProperty`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSClientProperty`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample gets the Client Properties of the Workspace Client for the specified Directory

```
Get-WKSClientProperty -ResourceId d-223562a123
```

- For API details, see DescribeClientProperties in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSIpGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSIpGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample gets the details of the specified IP Group in the specified region

```
Get-WKSIpGroup -Region us-east-1 -GroupId wsipg-8m1234v45
```

Output:

```
GroupDesc GroupId         GroupName UserRules
--------- -------         --------- ---------
          wsipg-8m1234v45 TestGroup {Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.IpRuleItem,
 Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.IpRuleItem}
```

- For API details, see DescribeIpGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This Sample fetches tag for the given Workspace

```
Get-WKSTag -WorkspaceId ws-w361s234r -Region us-west-2
```

Output:

```
Key         Value
---         -----
auto-delete no
purpose     Workbench
```

- For API details, see DescribeTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSWorkspace`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSWorkspace`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Retrieves details of all your WorkSpaces to the pipeline.

```
Get-WKSWorkspace
```

Output:

```
BundleId                    : wsb-1a2b3c4d
ComputerName                :
DirectoryId                 : d-1a2b3c4d
ErrorCode                   :
ErrorMessage                :
IpAddress                   :
RootVolumeEncryptionEnabled : False
State                       : PENDING
SubnetId                    :
UserName                    : myuser
UserVolumeEncryptionEnabled : False
VolumeEncryptionKey         :
WorkspaceId                 : ws-1a2b3c4d
WorkspaceProperties         : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.WorkspaceProperties
```

Example 2: This command shows the values of child properties of `WorkSpaceProperties` for a workspace in the `us-west-2` region. For more information about the child properties of `WorkSpaceProperties`, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/workspaces/latest/api/API_WorkspaceProperties.html.

```
(Get-WKSWorkspace -Region us-west-2 -WorkSpaceId ws-xdaf7hc9s).WorkspaceProperties
```

Output:

```
        ComputeTypeName                     : STANDARD
        RootVolumeSizeGib                   : 80
        RunningMode                         : AUTO_STOP
        RunningModeAutoStopTimeoutInMinutes : 60
        UserVolumeSizeGib                   : 50
```

Example 3: This command shows the value of the child property `RootVolumeSizeGib` of `WorkSpaceProperties` for a workspace in the `us-west-2` region. The root volume size, in GiB, is 80.

```
(Get-WKSWorkspace -Region us-west-2 -WorkSpaceId ws-
xdaf7hc9s).WorkspaceProperties.RootVolumeSizeGib
```

Output:

```
        80
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSWorkspaceBundle`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSWorkspaceBundle`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample fetches details of all the Workspace bundles in the current region

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceBundle
```

Output:

```
BundleId        : wsb-sfhdgv342
ComputeType     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.ComputeType
Description     : This bundle is custom
ImageId         : wsi-235aeqges
LastUpdatedTime : 12/26/2019 06:44:07
Name            : CustomBundleTest
Owner           : 233816212345
RootStorage     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.RootStorage
UserStorage     : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.UserStorage
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceBundles in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSWorkspaceDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSWorkspaceDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample lists the directory details for registered directories

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceDirectory
```

Output:

```
Alias                       : TestWorkspace
CustomerUserName            : Administrator
DirectoryId                 : d-123414a369
DirectoryName               : TestDirectory.com
DirectoryType               : MicrosoftAD
DnsIpAddresses              : {172.31.43.45, 172.31.2.97}
IamRoleId                   : arn:aws:iam::761234567801:role/workspaces_RoleDefault
IpGroupIds                  : {}
RegistrationCode            : WSpdx+4RRT43
SelfservicePermissions      : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.SelfservicePermissions
State                       : REGISTERED
SubnetIds                   : {subnet-1m3m7b43, subnet-ard11aba}
Tenancy                     : SHARED
WorkspaceAccessProperties   : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.WorkspaceAccessProperties
WorkspaceCreationProperties :
 Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.DefaultWorkspaceCreationProperties
WorkspaceSecurityGroupId    : sg-0ed2441234a123c43
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceDirectories in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSWorkspaceImage`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSWorkspaceImage`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample fetches all the details of all images in the region

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceImage
```

Output:

```
Description     :This image is copied from another image
ErrorCode       :
ErrorMessage    :
ImageId         : wsi-345ahdjgo
Name            : CopiedImageTest
OperatingSystem : Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.OperatingSystem
RequiredTenancy : DEFAULT
State           : AVAILABLE
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceImages in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSWorkspaceSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSWorkspaceSnapshot`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample shows the timestamp of the most recent snapshot created for the specified Workspace

```
Get-WKSWorkspaceSnapshot -WorkspaceId ws-w361s100v
```

Output:

```
RebuildSnapshots                   RestoreSnapshots
----------------                   ----------------
{Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Snapshot} {Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Snapshot}
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspaceSnapshots in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Get-WKSWorkspacesConnectionStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `Get-WKSWorkspacesConnectionStatus`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample fetches the connection status for the specified Workspace

```
Get-WKSWorkspacesConnectionStatus -WorkspaceId ws-w123s234r
```

- For API details, see DescribeWorkspacesConnectionStatus in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-WKSIpGroup

The following code example shows how to use New-WKSIpGroup.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample creates an empty Ip group named FreshEmptyIpGroup

```
New-WKSIpGroup -GroupName "FreshNewIPGroup"
```

Output:

```
wsipg-w45rty4ty
```

- For API details, see CreateIpGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

New-WKSTag

The following code example shows how to use New-WKSTag.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This example adds a new tag to a workspace named ws-wsname. The tag has a key of "Name", and a key value of AWS_Workspace.

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "Name"
$tag.Value = "AWS_Workspace"
New-WKSTag -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceId ws-wsname -Tag $tag
```

Example 2: This example adds multiple tags to a workspace named ws-wsname. One tag has a key of "Name" and a key value of AWS_Workspace; the other tag has a tag key of "Stage" and a key value of "Test".

```
$tag = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag.Key = "Name"
$tag.Value = "AWS_Workspace"

$tag2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.Tag
$tag2.Key = "Stage"
$tag2.Value = "Test"
New-WKSTag -Region us-west-2 -WorkspaceId ws-wsname -Tag $tag,$tag2
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`New-WKSWorkspace`

The following code example shows how to use `New-WKSWorkspace`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Create a WorkSpace for the supplied bundle, directory, and user.

```
New-WKSWorkspace -Workspace @{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d"; "DirectoryId" =
 "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME"}
```

Example 2: This example creates multiple WorkSpaces

```
New-WKSWorkspace -Workspace @{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d"; "DirectoryId"
 = "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME_1"},@{"BundleID" = "wsb-1a2b3c4d";
 "DirectoryId" = "d-1a2b3c4d"; "UserName" = "USERNAME_2"}
```

- For API details, see CreateWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-WKSIpGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-WKSIpGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample registers the specified IP Group with the specified Directory

```
Register-WKSIpGroup -GroupId wsipg-23ahsdres -DirectoryId d-123412e123
```

- For API details, see AssociateIpGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Register-WKSWorkspaceDirectory`

The following code example shows how to use `Register-WKSWorkspaceDirectory`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample registers the specified directory for Workspaces Service

```
Register-WKSWorkspaceDirectory -DirectoryId d-123412a123 -EnableWorkDoc $false
```

- For API details, see RegisterWorkspaceDirectory in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-WKSIpGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-WKSIpGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample deletes the specified IP Group

```
Remove-WKSIpGroup -GroupId wsipg-32fhgtred
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-WKSIpGroup (DeleteIpGroup)" on target
 "wsipg-32fhgtred".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteIpGroup in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-WKSTag`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-WKSTag`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample removes the tag associated with the Workspace

```
Remove-WKSTag -ResourceId ws-w10b3abcd -TagKey "Type"
```

Output:

```
Confirm
Are you sure you want to perform this action?
Performing the operation "Remove-WKSTag (DeleteTags)" on target "ws-w10b3abcd".
[Y] Yes  [A] Yes to All  [N] No  [L] No to All  [S] Suspend  [?] Help (default is
 "Y"): Y
```

- For API details, see DeleteTags in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Remove-WKSWorkspace`

The following code example shows how to use `Remove-WKSWorkspace`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Terminates multiple WorkSpaces. use of the -Force switch stops the cmdlet from prompting for confirmation.

```
Remove-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d5","ws-6a7b8c9d0" -Force
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Remove-WKSWorkspace, terminating all of the WorkSpaces. The cmdlet will prompt before each WorkSpace is terminated. To suppress the confirmation prompt add the -Force switch.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Remove-WKSWorkspace
```

Example 3: This example shows how to pass TerminateRequest objects defining the WorkSpaces to be terminated. The cmdlet will prompt for confirmation before proceeding, unless the -Force switch parameter is also specified.

```
$arrRequest = @()
```

```
$request1 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.TerminateRequest
$request1.WorkspaceId = 'ws-12345678'
$arrRequest += $request1
$request2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.TerminateRequest
$request2.WorkspaceId = 'ws-abcdefgh'
$arrRequest += $request2
Remove-WKSWorkspace -Request $arrRequest
```

- For API details, see TerminateWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Reset-WKSWorkspace`

The following code example shows how to use `Reset-WKSWorkspace`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Rebuilds the specified WorkSpace.

```
Reset-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d"
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Reset-WKSWorkspace, causing the WorkSpaces to be rebuilt.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Reset-WKSWorkspace
```

- For API details, see RebuildWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Restart-WKSWorkspace`

The following code example shows how to use `Restart-WKSWorkspace`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Reboots the specified WorkSpace.

```
Restart-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d"
```

Example 2: Reboots multiple WorkSpaces.

```
Restart-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d","ws-5a6b7c8d"
```

Example 3: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Restart-WKSWorkspace, causing the WorkSpaces to be restarted.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Restart-WKSWorkspace
```

- For API details, see RebootWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Stop-WKSWorkspace`

The following code example shows how to use `Stop-WKSWorkspace`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: Stops multiple WorkSpaces.

```
Stop-WKSWorkspace -WorkspaceId "ws-1a2b3c4d5","ws-6a7b8c9d0"
```

Example 2: Retrieves the collection of all your WorkSpaces and pipes the IDs to the -WorkSpaceId parameter of Stop-WKSWorkspace causing the WorkSpaces to be stopped.

```
Get-WKSWorkspaces | Stop-WKSWorkspace
```

Example 3: This example shows how to pass StopRequest objects defining the WorkSpaces to be stopped.

```
$arrRequest = @()
$request1 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.StopRequest
$request1.WorkspaceId = 'ws-12345678'
$arrRequest += $request1
$request2 = New-Object Amazon.WorkSpaces.Model.StopRequest
$request2.WorkspaceId = 'ws-abcdefgh'
$arrRequest += $request2
Stop-WKSWorkspace -Request $arrRequest
```

- For API details, see StopWorkspaces in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

`Unregister-WKSIpGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `Unregister-WKSIpGroup`.

Tools for PowerShell V5

Example 1: This sample unregisters the specified IP Group from the specified Directory

```
Unregister-WKSIpGroup -GroupId wsipg-12abcdphq -DirectoryId d-123454b123
```

- For API details, see DisassociateIpGroups in *AWS Tools for PowerShell Cmdlet Reference (V5)*.

Code examples for SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Python (Boto3) Developer Guide** – More about using Python with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- ACM examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- API Gateway examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Application Recovery Controller examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Audit Manager examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Aurora examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Bedrock Agents examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS CloudFormation examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- CloudFront examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS Config examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS Control Tower examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Firehose examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Device Farm examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon EMR examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- EventBridge examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- HealthImaging examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- HealthLake examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- IAM examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS IoT SiteWise examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Kinesis examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

- AWS KMS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Lambda examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Lookout for Vision examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Managed Service for Apache Flink examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS Marketplace Catalog API examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS Marketplace Agreement API examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Neptune examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Organizations examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Partner Central examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- S3 Directory Buckets examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- S3 Glacier examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Step Functions examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- AWS STS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Support examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Systems Manager examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

- Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

ACM examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with ACM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Request a certificate from ACM.
- Import a self-signed certificate.
- List and describe certificates.
- Remove certificates.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps ACM operations.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def request_validation(
        self, domain, alternate_domains, method, validation_domains=None
    ):
        """
        Starts a validation request that results in a new certificate being issued
        by ACM. DNS validation requires that you add CNAME records to your DNS
        provider. Email validation sends email to a list of email addresses that
        are associated with the domain.

        For more information, see _Issuing and managing certificates_ in the ACM
        user guide.
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/userguide/gs.html

        :param domain: The primary domain to associate with the certificate.
        :param alternate_domains: Subject Alternate Names (SANs) for the
certificate.
        :param method: The validation method, either DNS or EMAIL.
        :param validation_domains: Alternate domains to use for email validation,
when
                                   the email domain differs from the primary domain
of
```

```
                                the certificate.
        :return: The ARN of the requested certificate.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "DomainName": domain,
                "ValidationMethod": method,
                "SubjectAlternativeNames": alternate_domains,
            }
            if validation_domains is not None:
                kwargs["DomainValidationOptions"] = [
                    {"DomainName": key, "ValidationDomain": value}
                    for key, value in validation_domains.items()
                ]
            response = self.acm_client.request_certificate(**kwargs)
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info(
                "Requested %s validation for domain %s. Certificate ARN is %s.",
                method,
                domain,
                certificate_arn,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Request for %s validation of domain %s failed.", method, domain
            )
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn


    def import_certificate(self, certificate_body, private_key):
        """
        Imports a self-signed certificate to ACM.

        :param certificate_body: The body of the certificate, in PEM format.
        :param private_key: The unencrypted private key of the certificate, in PEM
                            format.
        :return: The ARN of the imported certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.import_certificate(
                Certificate=certificate_body, PrivateKey=private_key
            )
```

```
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info("Imported certificate.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't import certificate.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn


    def list(
        self,
        max_items,
        statuses=None,
        key_usage=None,
        extended_key_usage=None,
        key_types=None,
    ):
        """
        Lists the certificates for the current account.

        :param max_items: The maximum number of certificates to list.
        :param statuses: Filters the results to the specified statuses. If None, all
                         certificates are included.
        :param key_usage: Filters the results to the specified key usages. If None,
                          all key usages are included.
        :param extended_key_usage: Filters the results to the specified extended key
                                   usages. If None, all extended key usages are
                                   included.
        :param key_types: Filters the results to the specified key types. If None,
all
                          key types are included.
        :return: The list of certificates.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"MaxItems": max_items}
            if statuses is not None:
                kwargs["CertificateStatuses"] = statuses
            includes = {}
            if key_usage is not None:
                includes["keyUsage"] = key_usage
            if extended_key_usage is not None:
                includes["extendedKeyUsage"] = extended_key_usage
            if key_types is not None:
                includes["keyTypes"] = key_types
```

```
            if includes:
                kwargs["Includes"] = includes
            response = self.acm_client.list_certificates(**kwargs)
            certificates = response["CertificateSummaryList"]
            logger.info("Got %s certificates.", len(certificates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificates.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificates


    def describe(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets certificate metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate.
        :return: Metadata about the certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.describe_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            certificate = response["Certificate"]
            logger.info(
                "Got metadata for certificate for domain %s.",
certificate["DomainName"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return certificate


    def get(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets the body and certificate chain of a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The body and chain of a certificate.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response =
self.acm_client.get_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Got certificate %s and its chain.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def add_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Adds tags to a certificate. Tags are key-value pairs that contain custom
        metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: A dictionary of key-value tags to add to the certificate.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.add_tags_to_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn,
                Tags=[{"Key": key, "Value": value} for key, value in tags.items()],
            )
            logger.info("Added %s tags to certificate %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add tags to certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise


    def list_tags(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Lists the tags attached to a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The dictionary of certificate tags.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.list_tags_for_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            tags = {tag["Key"]: tag["Value"] for tag in response["Tags"]}
```

```
            logger.info("Got %s tags for certificates %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get tags for certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return tags


    def remove_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Removes tags from a certificate. If the value of a tag is specified, the tag
is
        removed only when the value matches the value of the certificate's tag.
        Otherwise, the tag is removed regardless of its value.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: The dictionary of tags to remove.
        """
        try:
            cert_tags = []
            for key, value in tags.items():
                tag = {"Key": key}
                if value is not None:
                    tag["Value"] = value
                cert_tags.append(tag)
            self.acm_client.remove_tags_from_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn, Tags=cert_tags
            )
            logger.info(
                "Removed %s tags from certificate %s.", len(tags), certificate_arn
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't remove tags from certificate %s.", certificate_arn
            )
            raise


    def remove(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Removes a certificate.
```

```
        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.delete_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Removed certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't remove certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
```

Use the wrapper class to manage certificates for your account.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Certificate Manager (ACM) demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    acm_certificate = AcmCertificate(boto3.client("acm"))
    domain = "example.com"
    sub_domains = [f"{sub}.{domain}" for sub in ["test", "dev"]]
    print(f"Request a certificate for {domain}.")
    certificate_arn = acm_certificate.request_validation(domain, sub_domains, "DNS")
    print(f"Started validation, got certificate ARN: {certificate_arn}.")

    import_cert_arn = None
    cert_file_name = input(
        "Enter the file name for a self-signed certificate in PEM format. "
        "This certificate will be imported to ACM. Press Enter to skip: "
    )
    if cert_file_name:
        pk_file_name = input(
            "Enter the file name for the unencrypted private key of the certificate.
 "
            "This file must also be in PEM format: "
        )
        if pk_file_name:
            with open(cert_file_name, "rb") as cert_file:
                import_cert = cert_file.read()
            with open(pk_file_name, "rb") as pk_file:
                import_pk = pk_file.read()
```

```
            import_cert_arn = acm_certificate.import_certificate(import_cert,
import_pk)
            print(f"Certificate imported, got ARN: {import_cert_arn}")
        else:
            print("No private key file entered. Skipping certificate import.")
    else:
        print("Skipping self-signed certificate import.")

    print("Getting the first 10 issued certificates.")
    certificates = acm_certificate.list(10, statuses=["ISSUED"])
    print(f"Found {len(certificates)} issued certificates.")

    print(f"Getting metadata for certificate {certificate_arn}")
    cert_metadata = acm_certificate.describe(certificate_arn)
    pprint(cert_metadata)

    if import_cert_arn is not None:
        print(f"Getting certificate for imported certificate {import_cert_arn}")
        import_cert_data = acm_certificate.get(import_cert_arn)
        pprint(import_cert_data)

    print(f"Adding tags to certificate {certificate_arn}.")
    acm_certificate.add_tags(certificate_arn, {"purpose": "acm demo", "color":
"green"})
    tags = acm_certificate.list_tags(certificate_arn)
    print(f"Found tags: {tags}")
    acm_certificate.remove_tags(certificate_arn, {key: None for key in tags})
    print("Removed tags.")

    print("Removing certificates added during the demo.")
    acm_certificate.remove(certificate_arn)
    if import_cert_arn is not None:
        acm_certificate.remove(import_cert_arn)

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AddTagsToCertificate
  - DeleteCertificate

- DescribeCertificate
- GetCertificate
- ImportCertificate
- ListCertificates
- ListTagsForCertificate
- RemoveTagsFromCertificate
- RequestCertificate
- ResendValidationEmail

Actions

`AddTagsToCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `AddTagsToCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def add_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Adds tags to a certificate. Tags are key-value pairs that contain custom
```

```
        metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: A dictionary of key-value tags to add to the certificate.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.add_tags_to_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn,
                Tags=[{"Key": key, "Value": value} for key, value in tags.items()],
            )
            logger.info("Added %s tags to certificate %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add tags to certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see AddTagsToCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
```

```
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def remove(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Removes a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.delete_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Removed certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't remove certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client
```

```
    def describe(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets certificate metadata.

        :param certificate_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the certificate.
        :return: Metadata about the certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.describe_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            certificate = response["Certificate"]
            logger.info(
                "Got metadata for certificate for domain %s.",
certificate["DomainName"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return certificate
```

- For API details, see DescribeCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def get(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Gets the body and certificate chain of a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The body and chain of a certificate.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.acm_client.get_certificate(CertificateArn=certificate_arn)
            logger.info("Got certificate %s and its chain.", certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificate %s.", certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ImportCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `ImportCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def import_certificate(self, certificate_body, private_key):
        """
        Imports a self-signed certificate to ACM.

        :param certificate_body: The body of the certificate, in PEM format.
        :param private_key: The unencrypted private key of the certificate, in PEM
                            format.
        :return: The ARN of the imported certificate.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.import_certificate(
                Certificate=certificate_body, PrivateKey=private_key
            )
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info("Imported certificate.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't import certificate.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn
```

- For API details, see ImportCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCertificates`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def list(
        self,
        max_items,
        statuses=None,
        key_usage=None,
        extended_key_usage=None,
        key_types=None,
    ):
        """
        Lists the certificates for the current account.

        :param max_items: The maximum number of certificates to list.
        :param statuses: Filters the results to the specified statuses. If None, all
                         certificates are included.
        :param key_usage: Filters the results to the specified key usages. If None,
                          all key usages are included.
        :param extended_key_usage: Filters the results to the specified extended key
                                   usages. If None, all extended key usages are
                                   included.
        :param key_types: Filters the results to the specified key types. If None,
 all
                          key types are included.
```

```
        :return: The list of certificates.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"MaxItems": max_items}
            if statuses is not None:
                kwargs["CertificateStatuses"] = statuses
            includes = {}
            if key_usage is not None:
                includes["keyUsage"] = key_usage
            if extended_key_usage is not None:
                includes["extendedKeyUsage"] = extended_key_usage
            if key_types is not None:
                includes["keyTypes"] = key_types
            if includes:
                kwargs["Includes"] = includes
            response = self.acm_client.list_certificates(**kwargs)
            certificates = response["CertificateSummaryList"]
            logger.info("Got %s certificates.", len(certificates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get certificates.")
            raise
        else:
            return certificates
```

- For API details, see ListCertificates in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTagsForCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def list_tags(self, certificate_arn):
        """
        Lists the tags attached to a certificate.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :return: The dictionary of certificate tags.
        """
        try:
            response = self.acm_client.list_tags_for_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn
            )
            tags = {tag["Key"]: tag["Value"] for tag in response["Tags"]}
            logger.info("Got %s tags for certificates %s.", len(tags),
certificate_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get tags for certificate %s.",
certificate_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return tags
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RemoveTagsFromCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RemoveTagsFromCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def remove_tags(self, certificate_arn, tags):
        """
        Removes tags from a certificate. If the value of a tag is specified, the tag
 is
        removed only when the value matches the value of the certificate's tag.
        Otherwise, the tag is removed regardless of its value.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param tags: The dictionary of tags to remove.
        """
        try:
            cert_tags = []
            for key, value in tags.items():
                tag = {"Key": key}
                if value is not None:
                    tag["Value"] = value
                cert_tags.append(tag)
            self.acm_client.remove_tags_from_certificate(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn, Tags=cert_tags
            )
            logger.info(
                "Removed %s tags from certificate %s.", len(tags), certificate_arn
```

```
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't remove tags from certificate %s.", certificate_arn
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see RemoveTagsFromCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RequestCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `RequestCertificate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def request_validation(
        self, domain, alternate_domains, method, validation_domains=None
    ):
        """
        Starts a validation request that results in a new certificate being issued
        by ACM. DNS validation requires that you add CNAME records to your DNS
        provider. Email validation sends email to a list of email addresses that
```

```
        are associated with the domain.

        For more information, see _Issuing and managing certificates_ in the ACM
        user guide.
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/acm/latest/userguide/gs.html

        :param domain: The primary domain to associate with the certificate.
        :param alternate_domains: Subject Alternate Names (SANs) for the
certificate.
        :param method: The validation method, either DNS or EMAIL.
        :param validation_domains: Alternate domains to use for email validation,
when
                                   the email domain differs from the primary domain
of
                                   the certificate.
        :return: The ARN of the requested certificate.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "DomainName": domain,
                "ValidationMethod": method,
                "SubjectAlternativeNames": alternate_domains,
            }
            if validation_domains is not None:
                kwargs["DomainValidationOptions"] = [
                    {"DomainName": key, "ValidationDomain": value}
                    for key, value in validation_domains.items()
                ]
            response = self.acm_client.request_certificate(**kwargs)
            certificate_arn = response["CertificateArn"]
            logger.info(
                "Requested %s validation for domain %s. Certificate ARN is %s.",
                method,
                domain,
                certificate_arn,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Request for %s validation of domain %s failed.", method, domain
            )
            raise
        else:
            return certificate_arn
```

- For API details, see RequestCertificate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ResendValidationEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendValidationEmail`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AcmCertificate:
    """
    Encapsulates ACM functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, acm_client):
        """
        :param acm_client: A Boto3 ACM client.
        """
        self.acm_client = acm_client


    def resend_validation_email(self, certificate_arn, domain, validation_domain):
        """
        Request that validation email is sent again, for a certificate that was
        previously requested with email validation.

        :param certificate_arn: The ARN of the certificate.
        :param domain: The primary domain of the certificate.
        :param validation_domain: Alternate domain to use for determining email
                                  addresses to use for validation.
        """
        try:
            self.acm_client.resend_validation_email(
                CertificateArn=certificate_arn,
                Domain=domain,
```

```
                ValidationDomain=validation_domain,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Validation email resent to validation domain %s.",
validation_domain
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't resend validation email to %s.", validation_domain
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ResendValidationEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

API Gateway examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with API Gateway.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateDeployment`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDeployment`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def deploy_api(self, stage_name):
        """
        Deploys a REST API. After a REST API is deployed, it can be called from any
        REST client, such as the Python Requests package or Postman.

        :param stage_name: The stage of the API to deploy, such as 'test'.
        :return: The base URL of the deployed REST API.
        """
        try:
            self.apig_client.create_deployment(
                restApiId=self.api_id, stageName=stage_name
            )
            self.stage = stage_name
            logger.info("Deployed stage %s.", stage_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deploy stage %s.", stage_name)
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return self.api_url()



    def api_url(self, resource=None):
        """
        Builds the REST API URL from its parts.

        :param resource: The resource path to append to the base URL.
        :return: The REST URL to the specified resource.
        """
        url = (
            f"https://{self.api_id}.execute-api.{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f".amazonaws.com/{self.stage}"
        )
        if resource is not None:
            url = f"{url}/{resource}"
        return url
```

- For API details, see CreateDeployment in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateResource`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
```

```
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_rest_resource(self, parent_id, resource_path):
        """
        Adds a resource to a REST API.

        :param parent_id: The ID of the parent resource.
        :param resource_path: The path of the new resource, relative to the parent.
        :return: The ID of the new resource.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_resource(
                restApiId=self.api_id, parentId=parent_id, pathPart=resource_path
            )
            resource_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created resource %s.", resource_path)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create resource %s.", resource_path)
            raise
        else:
            return resource_id
```

- For API details, see CreateResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateRestApi`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRestApi`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def create_rest_api(self, api_name):
        """
        Creates a REST API on API Gateway. The default API has only a root resource
        and no HTTP methods.

        :param api_name: The name of the API. This descriptive name is not used in
                         the API path.
        :return: The ID of the newly created API.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_rest_api(name=api_name)
            self.api_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created REST API %s with ID %s.", api_name, self.api_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create REST API %s.", api_name)
            raise
```

```
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.get_resources(restApiId=self.api_id)
            self.root_id = next(
                item for item in result["items"] if item["path"] == "/"
            )["id"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get resources for API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
        except StopIteration as err:
            logger.exception("No root resource found in API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise ValueError from err

        return self.api_id
```

- For API details, see CreateRestApi in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteRestApi`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRestApi`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
```

```
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def delete_rest_api(self):
        """
        Deletes a REST API, including all of its resources and configuration.
        """
        try:
            self.apig_client.delete_rest_api(restApiId=self.api_id)
            logger.info("Deleted REST API %s.", self.api_id)
            self.api_id = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete REST API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteRestApi in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetResources`

The following code example shows how to use `GetResources`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def create_rest_api(self, api_name):
        """
        Creates a REST API on API Gateway. The default API has only a root resource
        and no HTTP methods.

        :param api_name: The name of the API. This descriptive name is not used in
                         the API path.
        :return: The ID of the newly created API.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_rest_api(name=api_name)
            self.api_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created REST API %s with ID %s.", api_name, self.api_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create REST API %s.", api_name)
            raise

        try:
            result = self.apig_client.get_resources(restApiId=self.api_id)
            self.root_id = next(
                item for item in result["items"] if item["path"] == "/"
            )["id"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get resources for API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
        except StopIteration as err:
            logger.exception("No root resource found in API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise ValueError from err

        return self.api_id
```

- For API details, see GetResources in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetRestApis

The following code example shows how to use GetRestApis.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def get_rest_api_id(self, api_name):
        """
        Gets the ID of a REST API from its name by searching the list of REST APIs
        for the current account. Because names need not be unique, this returns only
        the first API with the specified name.

        :param api_name: The name of the API to look up.
        :return: The ID of the specified API.
        """
        try:
            rest_api = None
            paginator = self.apig_client.get_paginator("get_rest_apis")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                rest_api = next(
```

```
                    (item for item in page["items"] if item["name"] == api_name),
None
                )
                if rest_api is not None:
                    break
            self.api_id = rest_api["id"]
            logger.info("Found ID %s for API %s.", rest_api["id"], api_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't find ID for API %s.", api_name)
            raise
        else:
            return rest_api["id"]
```

- For API details, see GetRestApis in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutIntegration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutIntegration`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
```

```
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
```

```
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json": json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
```

```
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutIntegration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutIntegrationResponse`

The following code example shows how to use `PutIntegrationResponse`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
```

```
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json": json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutIntegrationResponse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

PutMethod

The following code example shows how to use PutMethod.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.
```

```
        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
```

```
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json": json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutMethod in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

PutMethodResponse

The following code example shows how to use `PutMethodResponse`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
```

```
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
```

```
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json": json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutMethodResponse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API

simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Create a websocket chat application

The following code example shows how to create a chat application that is served by a websocket API built on Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon API Gateway V2 to create a websocket API that integrates with AWS Lambda and Amazon DynamoDB.

- Create a websocket API served by API Gateway.
- Define a Lambda handler that stores connections in DynamoDB and posts messages to other chat participants.
- Connect to the websocket chat application and send messages with the Websockets package.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create and deploy a REST API

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a REST API served by API Gateway.
- Add resources to the REST API to represent a user profile.

- Add integration methods so that the REST API uses a DynamoDB table to store user profile data.
- Send HTTP requests to the REST API to add and retrieve user profiles.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps API Gateway operations.

```
import argparse
import json
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import requests

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class ApiGatewayToService:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon API Gateway functions that are used to create a REST API
 that
    integrates with another AWS service.
    """

    def __init__(self, apig_client):
        """
        :param apig_client: A Boto3 API Gateway client.
        """
        self.apig_client = apig_client
        self.api_id = None
        self.root_id = None
        self.stage = None
```

```
    def create_rest_api(self, api_name):
        """
        Creates a REST API on API Gateway. The default API has only a root resource
        and no HTTP methods.

        :param api_name: The name of the API. This descriptive name is not used in
                         the API path.
        :return: The ID of the newly created API.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_rest_api(name=api_name)
            self.api_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created REST API %s with ID %s.", api_name, self.api_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create REST API %s.", api_name)
            raise

        try:
            result = self.apig_client.get_resources(restApiId=self.api_id)
            self.root_id = next(
                item for item in result["items"] if item["path"] == "/"
            )["id"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get resources for API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise
        except StopIteration as err:
            logger.exception("No root resource found in API %s.", self.api_id)
            raise ValueError from err

        return self.api_id


    def add_rest_resource(self, parent_id, resource_path):
        """
        Adds a resource to a REST API.

        :param parent_id: The ID of the parent resource.
        :param resource_path: The path of the new resource, relative to the parent.
        :return: The ID of the new resource.
        """
        try:
            result = self.apig_client.create_resource(
                restApiId=self.api_id, parentId=parent_id, pathPart=resource_path
            )
```

```
            resource_id = result["id"]
            logger.info("Created resource %s.", resource_path)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create resource %s.", resource_path)
            raise
        else:
            return resource_id


    def add_integration_method(
        self,
        resource_id,
        rest_method,
        service_endpoint_prefix,
        service_action,
        service_method,
        role_arn,
        mapping_template,
    ):
        """
        Adds an integration method to a REST API. An integration method is a REST
        resource, such as '/users', and an HTTP verb, such as GET. The integration
        method is backed by an AWS service, such as Amazon DynamoDB.

        :param resource_id: The ID of the REST resource.
        :param rest_method: The HTTP verb used with the REST resource.
        :param service_endpoint_prefix: The service endpoint that is integrated with
                                        this method, such as 'dynamodb'.
        :param service_action: The action that is called on the service, such as
                               'GetItem'.
        :param service_method: The HTTP method of the service request, such as POST.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that grants API
                         Gateway permission to use the specified action with the
                         service.
        :param mapping_template: A mapping template that is used to translate REST
                                 elements, such as query parameters, to the request
                                 body format required by the service.
        """
        service_uri = (
            f"arn:aws:apigateway:{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f":{service_endpoint_prefix}:action/{service_action}"
        )
        try:
            self.apig_client.put_method(
```

```
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                authorizationType="NONE",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_method_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseModels={"application/json": "Empty"},
            )
            logger.info("Created %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create %s method for resource %s.", rest_method,
resource_id
            )
            raise

        try:
            self.apig_client.put_integration(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                type="AWS",
                integrationHttpMethod=service_method,
                credentials=role_arn,
                requestTemplates={"application/json": json.dumps(mapping_template)},
                uri=service_uri,
                passthroughBehavior="WHEN_NO_TEMPLATES",
            )
            self.apig_client.put_integration_response(
                restApiId=self.api_id,
                resourceId=resource_id,
                httpMethod=rest_method,
                statusCode="200",
                responseTemplates={"application/json": ""},
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
```

```
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create integration for resource %s to service URI %s.",
                resource_id,
                service_uri,
            )
            raise


    def deploy_api(self, stage_name):
        """
        Deploys a REST API. After a REST API is deployed, it can be called from any
        REST client, such as the Python Requests package or Postman.

        :param stage_name: The stage of the API to deploy, such as 'test'.
        :return: The base URL of the deployed REST API.
        """
        try:
            self.apig_client.create_deployment(
                restApiId=self.api_id, stageName=stage_name
            )
            self.stage = stage_name
            logger.info("Deployed stage %s.", stage_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deploy stage %s.", stage_name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.api_url()



    def api_url(self, resource=None):
        """
        Builds the REST API URL from its parts.

        :param resource: The resource path to append to the base URL.
        :return: The REST URL to the specified resource.
        """
        url = (
            f"https://{self.api_id}.execute-api.{self.apig_client.meta.region_name}"
            f".amazonaws.com/{self.stage}"
        )
        if resource is not None:
```

```
            url = f"{url}/{resource}"
        return url
```

Deploy a REST API and call it with the Requests package.

```
def usage_demo(table_name, role_name, rest_api_name):
    """
    Demonstrates how to used API Gateway to create and deploy a REST API, and how
    to use the Requests package to call it.

    :param table_name: The name of the demo DynamoDB table.
    :param role_name: The name of the demo role that grants API Gateway permission
 to
                      call DynamoDB.
    :param rest_api_name: The name of the demo REST API created by the demo.
    """
    gateway = ApiGatewayToService(boto3.client("apigateway"))
    role = boto3.resource("iam").Role(role_name)

    print("Creating REST API in API Gateway.")
    gateway.create_rest_api(rest_api_name)

    print("Adding resources to the REST API.")
    profiles_id = gateway.add_rest_resource(gateway.root_id, "profiles")
    username_id = gateway.add_rest_resource(profiles_id, "{username}")

    # The DynamoDB service requires that all integration requests use POST.
    print("Adding integration methods to read and write profiles in Amazon
 DynamoDB.")
    gateway.add_integration_method(
        profiles_id,
        "GET",
        "dynamodb",
        "Scan",
        "POST",
        role.arn,
        {"TableName": table_name},
    )
    gateway.add_integration_method(
        profiles_id,
        "POST",
```

```
        "dynamodb",
        "PutItem",
        "POST",
        role.arn,
        {
            "TableName": table_name,
            "Item": {
                "username": {"S": "$input.path('$.username')"},
                "name": {"S": "$input.path('$.name')"},
                "title": {"S": "$input.path('$.title')"},
            },
        },
    )
    gateway.add_integration_method(
        username_id,
        "GET",
        "dynamodb",
        "GetItem",
        "POST",
        role.arn,
        {
            "TableName": table_name,
            "Key": {"username": {"S": "$method.request.path.username"}},
        },
    )

    stage = "test"
    print(f"Deploying the {stage} stage.")
    gateway.deploy_api(stage)

    profiles_url = gateway.api_url("profiles")
    print(
        f"Using the Requests package to post some people to the profiles REST API at
"
        f"{profiles_url}."
    )
    requests.post(
        profiles_url,
        json={"username": "will", "name": "William Shakespeare", "title":
"playwright"},
    )
    requests.post(
        profiles_url,
        json={
```

```
            "username": "ludwig",
            "name": "Ludwig van Beethoven",
            "title": "composer",
        },
    )
    requests.post(
        profiles_url,
        json={"username": "jane", "name": "Jane Austen", "title": "author"},
    )
    print("Getting the list of profiles from the REST API.")
    profiles = requests.get(profiles_url).json()
    pprint(profiles)
    print(f"Getting just the profile for username 'jane' (URL: {profiles_url}/
jane).")
    jane = requests.get(f"{profiles_url}/jane").json()
    pprint(jane)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDeployment
  - CreateResource
  - CreateRestApi
  - DeleteRestApi
  - GetResources
  - GetRestApis
  - PutIntegration
  - PutIntegrationResponse
  - PutMethod
  - PutMethodResponse

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.
- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Application Recovery Controller examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Application Recovery Controller.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetRoutingControlState`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRoutingControlState`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint):
    """
    Creates a Boto3 Route 53 Application Recovery Controller client for the
 specified
    cluster endpoint URL and AWS Region.

    :param cluster_endpoint: The cluster endpoint URL and Region.
    :return: The Boto3 client.
    """
    return boto3.client(
        "route53-recovery-cluster",
        endpoint_url=cluster_endpoint["Endpoint"],
        region_name=cluster_endpoint["Region"],
    )



def get_routing_control_state(routing_control_arn, cluster_endpoints):
    """
    Gets the state of a routing control. Cluster endpoints are tried in
    sequence until the first successful response is received.

    :param routing_control_arn: The ARN of the routing control to look up.
    :param cluster_endpoints: The list of cluster endpoints to query.
    :return: The routing control state response.
    """
```

```
    # As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to get or
 set routing control states.
    # For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/dg/
route53-arc-best-practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
    random.shuffle(cluster_endpoints)
    for cluster_endpoint in cluster_endpoints:
        try:
            recovery_client = create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint)
            response = recovery_client.get_routing_control_state(
                RoutingControlArn=routing_control_arn
            )
            return response
        except Exception as error:
            print(error)
            raise error
```

- For API details, see GetRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateRoutingControlState`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateRoutingControlState`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint):
    """
    Creates a Boto3 Route 53 Application Recovery Controller client for the
 specified
    cluster endpoint URL and AWS Region.
```

```
    :param cluster_endpoint: The cluster endpoint URL and Region.
    :return: The Boto3 client.
    """
    return boto3.client(
        "route53-recovery-cluster",
        endpoint_url=cluster_endpoint["Endpoint"],
        region_name=cluster_endpoint["Region"],
    )



def update_routing_control_state(
    routing_control_arn, cluster_endpoints, routing_control_state
):
    """
    Updates the state of a routing control. Cluster endpoints are tried in
    sequence until the first successful response is received.

    :param routing_control_arn: The ARN of the routing control to update the state
 for.
    :param cluster_endpoints: The list of cluster endpoints to try.
    :param routing_control_state: The new routing control state.
    :return: The routing control update response.
    """

    # As a best practice, we recommend choosing a random cluster endpoint to get or
 set routing control states.
    # For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/r53recovery/latest/dg/
route53-arc-best-practices.html#route53-arc-best-practices.regional
    random.shuffle(cluster_endpoints)
    for cluster_endpoint in cluster_endpoints:
        try:
            recovery_client = create_recovery_client(cluster_endpoint)
            response = recovery_client.update_routing_control_state(
                RoutingControlArn=routing_control_arn,
                RoutingControlState=routing_control_state,
            )
            return response
        except Exception as error:
            print(error)
```

- For API details, see UpdateRoutingControlState in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Audit Manager examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Audit Manager.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a custom framework from an AWS Config conformance pack

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of AWS Config conformance packs.
- Create an Audit Manager custom control for each managed rule in a conformance pack.
- Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains the controls.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class ConformancePack:
    def __init__(self, config_client, auditmanager_client):
        self.config_client = config_client
        self.auditmanager_client = auditmanager_client

    def get_conformance_pack(self):
        """
        Return a selected conformance pack from the list of conformance packs.

        :return: selected conformance pack
        """
        try:
            conformance_packs = self.config_client.describe_conformance_packs()
            print(
                "Number of conformance packs fetched: ",
                len(conformance_packs.get("ConformancePackDetails")),
            )
            print("Fetched the following conformance packs: ")
            all_cpack_names = {
                cp["ConformancePackName"]
                for cp in conformance_packs.get("ConformancePackDetails")
            }
            for pack in all_cpack_names:
                print(f"\t{pack}")
            cpack_name = input(
                "Provide ConformancePackName that you want to create a custom "
                "framework for: "
            )
            if cpack_name not in all_cpack_names:
                print(f"{cpack_name} is not in the list of conformance packs!")
                print(
                    "Provide a conformance pack name from the available list of "
                    "conformance packs."
                )
                raise Exception("Invalid conformance pack")
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't select conformance pack.")
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return cpack_name

    def create_custom_controls(self, cpack_name):
        """
        Create custom controls for all managed AWS Config rules in a conformance
pack.

        :param cpack_name: The name of the conformance pack to create controls for.
        :return: The list of custom control IDs.
        """
        try:
            rules_in_pack = self.config_client.describe_conformance_pack_compliance(
                ConformancePackName=cpack_name
            )
            print(
                "Number of rules in the conformance pack: ",
                len(rules_in_pack.get("ConformancePackRuleComplianceList")),
            )
            for rule in rules_in_pack.get("ConformancePackRuleComplianceList"):
                print(f"\t{rule.get('ConfigRuleName')}")
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                "Creating a custom control for each rule and a custom framework "
                "consisting of these rules in Audit Manager."
            )
            am_controls = []
            for rule in rules_in_pack.get("ConformancePackRuleComplianceList"):
                config_rule = self.config_client.describe_config_rules(
                    ConfigRuleNames=[rule.get("ConfigRuleName")]
                )
                source_id = (
                    config_rule.get("ConfigRules")[0]
                    .get("Source", {})
                    .get("SourceIdentifier")
                )
                custom_control = self.auditmanager_client.create_control(
                    name="Config-" + rule.get("ConfigRuleName"),
                    controlMappingSources=[
                        {
                            "sourceName": "ConfigRule",
                            "sourceSetUpOption": "System_Controls_Mapping",
                            "sourceType": "AWS_Config",
                            "sourceKeyword": {
```

```
                                "keywordInputType": "SELECT_FROM_LIST",
                                "keywordValue": source_id,
                            },
                        }
                    ],
                ).get("control", {})
                am_controls.append({"id": custom_control.get("id")})
            print("Successfully created a control for each config rule.")
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Failed to create custom controls.")
            raise
        else:
            return am_controls

    def create_custom_framework(self, cpack_name, am_control_ids):
        """
        Create a custom Audit Manager framework from a selected AWS Config
 conformance
        pack.

        :param cpack_name: The name of the conformance pack to create a framework
 from.
        :param am_control_ids: The IDs of the custom controls created from the
                               conformance pack.
        """
        try:
            print("Creating custom framework...")
            custom_framework = self.auditmanager_client.create_assessment_framework(
                name="Config-Conformance-pack-" + cpack_name,
                controlSets=[{"name": cpack_name, "controls": am_control_ids}],
            )
            print(
                f"Successfully created the custom framework: ",
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('name')}: ",
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('id')}",
            )
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Failed to create custom framework.")
            raise


def run_demo():
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Audit Manager custom framework demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "You can use this sample to select a conformance pack from AWS Config and "
        "use AWS Audit Manager to create a custom control for all the managed "
        "rules under the conformance pack. A custom framework is also created "
        "with these controls."
    )
    print("-" * 88)
    conf_pack = ConformancePack(boto3.client("config"),
 boto3.client("auditmanager"))
    cpack_name = conf_pack.get_conformance_pack()
    am_controls = conf_pack.create_custom_controls(cpack_name)
    conf_pack.create_custom_framework(cpack_name, am_controls)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    run_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAssessmentFramework
  - CreateControl

Create a custom framework that contains Security Hub controls

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a list of all standard controls that have Security Hub as their data source.
- Create an Audit Manager custom framework that contains the controls.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class SecurityHub:
    def __init__(self, auditmanager_client):
        self.auditmanager_client = auditmanager_client

    def get_sechub_controls(self):
        """
        Gets the list of controls that use Security Hub as their data source.

        :return: The list of Security Hub controls.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        next_token = None
        page = 1
        sechub_control_list = []
        while True:
            print("Page [" + str(page) + "]")
            if next_token is None:
                control_list = self.auditmanager_client.list_controls(
                    controlType="Standard", maxResults=100
                )
            else:
                control_list = self.auditmanager_client.list_controls(
                    controlType="Standard", nextToken=next_token, maxResults=100
                )
            print("Total controls found:",
 len(control_list.get("controlMetadataList")))
            for control in control_list.get("controlMetadataList"):
                control_details = self.auditmanager_client.get_control(
                    controlId=control.get("id")
                ).get("control", {})
                if "AWS Security Hub" in control_details.get("controlSources"):
                    sechub_control_list.append({"id": control_details.get("id")})
            next_token = control_list.get("nextToken")
            if not next_token:
                break
            page += 1
```

```
        print("Number of Security Hub controls found: ", len(sechub_control_list))
        return sechub_control_list

    def create_custom_framework(self, am_controls):
        """
        Create a custom framework with a list of controls.

        :param am_controls: The list of controls to include in the framework.
        """
        try:
            print("Creating custom framework...")
            custom_framework = self.auditmanager_client.create_assessment_framework(
                name="All Security Hub Controls Framework",
                controlSets=[{"name": "Security-Hub", "controls": am_controls}],
            )
            print(
                f"Successfully created the custom framework: "
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('name')}: "
                f"{custom_framework.get('framework').get('id')}"
            )
            print("-" * 88)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Failed to create custom framework.")
            raise


def run_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Audit Manager Security Hub demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(" This script creates a custom framework with all Security Hub controls.")
    print("-" * 88)
    sechub = SecurityHub(boto3.client("auditmanager"))
    am_controls = sechub.get_sechub_controls()
    sechub.create_custom_framework(am_controls)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    run_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAssessmentFramework

- GetControl
- ListControls

Create an assessment report

The following code example shows how to create an Audit Manager assessment report that contains one day of evidence.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import dateutil.parser
import logging
import time
import urllib.request
import uuid
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class AuditReport:
    def __init__(self, auditmanager_client):
        self.auditmanager_client = auditmanager_client

    def get_input(self):
        print("-" * 40)
        try:
            assessment_id = input("Provide assessment id [uuid]: ").lower()
            try:
                assessment_uuid = uuid.UUID(assessment_id)
            except ValueError:
                logger.error("Assessment Id is not a valid UUID: %s", assessment_id)
                raise
```

```
            evidence_folder = input("Provide evidence date [yyyy-mm-dd]: ")
            try:
                evidence_date = dateutil.parser.parse(evidence_folder).date()
            except ValueError:
                logger.error("Invalid date : %s", evidence_folder)
                raise
            try:
                self.auditmanager_client.get_assessment(
                    assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid)
                )
            except ClientError:
                logger.exception("Couldn't get assessment %s.", assessment_uuid)
                raise
        except (ValueError, ClientError):
            return None, None
        else:
            return assessment_uuid, evidence_date

    def clear_staging(self, assessment_uuid, evidence_date):
        """
        Find all the evidence in the report and clear it.
        """
        next_token = None
        page = 1
        interested_folder_id_list = []
        while True:
            print(f"Page [{page}]")
            if next_token is None:
                folder_list = (
                    self.auditmanager_client.get_evidence_folders_by_assessment(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid), maxResults=1000
                    )
                )
            else:
                folder_list = (
                    self.auditmanager_client.get_evidence_folders_by_assessment(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
                        nextToken=next_token,
                        maxResults=1000,
                    )
                )
            folders = folder_list.get("evidenceFolders")
            print(f"Got {len(folders)} folders.")
            for folder in folders:
```

```
                folder_id = folder.get("id")
                if folder.get("name") == str(evidence_date):
                    interested_folder_id_list.append(folder_id)
                if folder.get("assessmentReportSelectionCount") == folder.get(
                    "totalEvidence"
                ):
                    print(
                        f"Removing folder from report selection :
{folder.get('name')} "
                        f"{folder_id} {folder.get('controlId')}"
                    )

self.auditmanager_client.disassociate_assessment_report_evidence_folder(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
evidenceFolderId=folder_id
                    )
                elif folder.get("assessmentReportSelectionCount") > 0:
                    # Get all evidence in the folder and
                    # add selected evidence in the selected_evidence_list.
                    evidence_list = (
                        self.auditmanager_client.get_evidence_by_evidence_folder(
                            assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
                            controlSetId=folder_id,
                            evidenceFolderId=folder_id,
                            maxResults=1000,
                        )
                    )
                    selected_evidence_list = []
                    for evidence in evidence_list.get("evidence"):
                        if evidence.get("assessmentReportSelection") == "Yes":
                            selected_evidence_list.append(evidence.get("id"))
                    print(
                        f"Removing evidence report selection : {folder.get('name')}
"
                        f"{len(selected_evidence_list)}"
                    )

self.auditmanager_client.batch_disassociate_assessment_report_evidence(
                        assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
                        evidenceFolderId=folder_id,
                        evidenceIds=selected_evidence_list,
                    )
            next_token = folder_list.get("nextToken")
            if not next_token:
```

```
                break
            page += 1
        return interested_folder_id_list

    def add_folder_to_staging(self, assessment_uuid, folder_id_list):
        print(f"Adding folders to report : {folder_id_list}")
        for folder in folder_id_list:
            self.auditmanager_client.associate_assessment_report_evidence_folder(
                assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid), evidenceFolderId=folder
            )

    def get_report(self, assessment_uuid):
        report = self.auditmanager_client.create_assessment_report(
            name="ReportViaScript",
            description="testing",
            assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
        )
        if self._is_report_generated(report.get("assessmentReport").get("id")):
            report_url = self.auditmanager_client.get_assessment_report_url(
                assessmentReportId=report.get("assessmentReport").get("id"),
                assessmentId=str(assessment_uuid),
            )
            print(report_url.get("preSignedUrl"))
            urllib.request.urlretrieve(
                report_url.get("preSignedUrl").get("link"),
                report_url.get("preSignedUrl").get("hyperlinkName"),
            )
            print(
                f"Report saved as
{report_url.get('preSignedUrl').get('hyperlinkName')}."
            )
        else:
            print("Report generation did not finish in 15 minutes.")
            print(
                "Failed to download report. Go to the console and manually download
"
                "the report."
            )

    def _is_report_generated(self, assessment_report_id):
        max_wait_time = 0
        while max_wait_time < 900:
            print(f"Checking status of the report {assessment_report_id}")
```

```
            report_list =
 self.auditmanager_client.list_assessment_reports(maxResults=1)
            if (
                report_list.get("assessmentReports")[0].get("id")
                == assessment_report_id
                and report_list.get("assessmentReports")[0].get("status") ==
 "COMPLETE"
            ):
                return True
            print("Sleeping for 5 seconds...")
            time.sleep(5)
            max_wait_time += 5


def run_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Audit Manager samples demo!")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "This script creates an assessment report for an assessment with all the "
        "evidence collected on the provided date."
    )
    print("-" * 88)

    report = AuditReport(boto3.client("auditmanager"))
    assessment_uuid, evidence_date = report.get_input()
    if assessment_uuid is not None and evidence_date is not None:
        folder_id_list = report.clear_staging(assessment_uuid, evidence_date)
        report.add_folder_to_staging(assessment_uuid, folder_id_list)
        report.get_report(assessment_uuid)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    run_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AssociateAssessmentReportEvidenceFolder
  - BatchDisassociateAssessmentReportEvidence
  - CreateAssessmentReport
  - DisassociateAssessmentReportEvidenceFolder

- GetAssessment
- GetAssessmentReportUrl
- GetEvidenceByEvidenceFolder
- GetEvidenceFoldersByAssessment
- ListAssessmentReports

Aurora examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create an RDS client
rds = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
# Create a paginator for the describe_db_clusters operation
paginator = rds.get_paginator("describe_db_clusters")

# Use the paginator to get a list of DB clusters
response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
    PaginationConfig={
        "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed
        "StartingToken": None,
    }
)

# Iterate through the pages of the response
clusters_found = False
for page in response_iterator:
    if "DBClusters" in page and page["DBClusters"]:
        clusters_found = True
        print("Here are your RDS Aurora clusters:")
        for cluster in page["DBClusters"]:
            print(
                f"Cluster ID: {cluster['DBClusterIdentifier']}, Engine:
 {cluster['Engine']}"
            )

if not clusters_found:
    print("No clusters found!")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class AuroraClusterScenario:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to get started using Aurora DB clusters."""

    def __init__(self, aurora_wrapper):
        """
        :param aurora_wrapper: An object that wraps Aurora DB cluster actions.
        """
        self.aurora_wrapper = aurora_wrapper

    def create_parameter_group(self, db_engine, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to get available engine versions for a specified database engine
 and
        create a DB cluster parameter group that is compatible with a selected
 engine family.

        :param db_engine: The database engine to use as a basis.
        :param parameter_group_name: The name given to the newly created parameter
 group.
        :return: The newly created parameter group.
        """
        print(
            f"Checking for an existing DB cluster parameter group named
 {parameter_group_name}."
        )
```

```
        parameter_group =
self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameter_group(parameter_group_name)
        if parameter_group is None:
            print(f"Getting available database engine versions for {db_engine}.")
            engine_versions = self.aurora_wrapper.get_engine_versions(db_engine)
            families = list({ver["DBParameterGroupFamily"] for ver in
engine_versions})
            family_index = q.choose("Which family do you want to use? ", families)
            print(f"Creating a DB cluster parameter group.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.create_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name, families[family_index], "Example parameter
group."
            )
            parameter_group = self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name
            )
        print(f"Parameter group {parameter_group['DBClusterParameterGroupName']}:")
        pp(parameter_group)
        print("-" * 88)
        return parameter_group

    def set_user_parameters(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom parameter group and
        update some of the parameter values in the group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query and
modify.
        """
        print("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
        auto_inc_parameters = self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, name_prefix="auto_increment"
        )
        update_params = []
        for auto_inc in auto_inc_parameters:
            if auto_inc["IsModifiable"] and auto_inc["DataType"] == "integer":
                print(f"The {auto_inc['ParameterName']} parameter is described as:")
                print(f"\t{auto_inc['Description']}")
                param_range = auto_inc["AllowedValues"].split("-")
                auto_inc["ParameterValue"] = str(
                    q.ask(
                        f"Enter a value between {param_range[0]} and
{param_range[1]}: ",
                        q.is_int,
```

```
                        q.in_range(int(param_range[0]), int(param_range[1])),
                    )
                )
                update_params.append(auto_inc)
        self.aurora_wrapper.update_parameters(parameter_group_name, update_params)
        print(
            "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source of
'user'."
        )
        user_parameters = self.aurora_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, source="user"
        )
        pp(user_parameters)
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_cluster(self, cluster_name, db_engine, db_name, parameter_group):
        """
        Shows how to create an Aurora DB cluster that contains a database of a
specified
        type. The database is also configured to use a custom DB cluster parameter
group.

        :param cluster_name: The name given to the newly created DB cluster.
        :param db_engine: The engine of the created database.
        :param db_name: The name given to the created database.
        :param parameter_group: The parameter group that is associated with the DB
cluster.
        :return: The newly created DB cluster.
        """
        print("Checking for an existing DB cluster.")
        cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_cluster(cluster_name)
        if cluster is None:
            admin_username = q.ask(
                "Enter an administrator user name for the database: ", q.non_empty
            )
            admin_password = q.ask(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ",
                q.non_empty,
            )
            engine_versions = self.aurora_wrapper.get_engine_versions(
                db_engine, parameter_group["DBParameterGroupFamily"]
            )
            engine_choices = [
                ver["EngineVersionDescription"] for ver in engine_versions
```

```
            ]
            print("The available engines for your parameter group are:")
            engine_index = q.choose("Which engine do you want to use? ",
engine_choices)
            print(
                f"Creating DB cluster {cluster_name} and database {db_name}.\n"
                f"The DB cluster is configured to use\n"
                f"your custom parameter group
{parameter_group['DBClusterParameterGroupName']}\n"
                f"and selected engine {engine_choices[engine_index]}.\n"
                f"This typically takes several minutes."
            )
            cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.create_db_cluster(
                cluster_name,
                parameter_group["DBClusterParameterGroupName"],
                db_name,
                db_engine,
                engine_versions[engine_index]["EngineVersion"],
                admin_username,
                admin_password,
            )
            while cluster.get("Status") != "available":
                wait(30)
                cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_cluster(cluster_name)
            print("Cluster created and available.\n")
        print("Cluster data:")
        pp(cluster)
        print("-" * 88)
        return cluster

    def create_instance(self, cluster):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB instance in an existing Aurora DB cluster. A new DB
cluster
        contains no DB instances, so you must add one. The first DB instance that is
added
        to a DB cluster defaults to a read-write DB instance.

        :param cluster: The DB cluster where the DB instance is added.
        :return: The newly created DB instance.
        """
        print("Checking for an existing database instance.")
        cluster_name = cluster["DBClusterIdentifier"]
        db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_instance(cluster_name)
```

```
        if db_inst is None:
            print("Let's create a database instance in your DB cluster.")
            print("First, choose a DB instance type:")
            inst_opts = self.aurora_wrapper.get_orderable_instances(
                cluster["Engine"], cluster["EngineVersion"]
            )
            inst_choices = list(
                {
                    opt["DBInstanceClass"] + ", storage type: " + opt["StorageType"]
                    for opt in inst_opts
                }
            )
            inst_index = q.choose(
                "Which DB instance class do you want to use? ", inst_choices
            )
            print(
                f"Creating a database instance. This typically takes several
minutes."
            )
            db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.create_instance_in_cluster(
                cluster_name,
                cluster_name,
                cluster["Engine"],
                inst_opts[inst_index]["DBInstanceClass"],
            )
            while db_inst.get("DBInstanceStatus") != "available":
                wait(30)
                db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_instance(cluster_name)
        print("Instance data:")
        pp(db_inst)
        print("-" * 88)
        return db_inst

    @staticmethod
    def display_connection(cluster):
        """
        Displays connection information about an Aurora DB cluster and tips on how
to
        connect to it.

        :param cluster: The DB cluster to display.
        """
        print(
```

```
            "You can now connect to your database using your favorite MySql client.
\n"
            "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2
 instance\n"
            "that is running in the same VPC as your database cluster. Pass the
 endpoint,\n"
            "port, and administrator user name to 'mysql' and enter your password\n"
            "when prompted:\n"
        )
        print(
            f"\n\tmysql -h {cluster['Endpoint']} -P {cluster['Port']} -u
 {cluster['MasterUsername']} -p\n"
        )
        print(
            "For more information, see the User Guide for Aurora:\n"
            "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/AuroraUserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.CreatingConnecting.Aurora.html#CHAP_GettingStartedAurora.Aurora.Co
        )
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_snapshot(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB cluster snapshot and wait until it's available.

        :param cluster_name: The name of a DB cluster to snapshot.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB cluster (y/n)? ",
 q.is_yesno
        ):
            snapshot_id = f"{cluster_name}-{uuid.uuid4()}"
            print(
                f"Creating a snapshot named {snapshot_id}. This typically takes a
 few minutes."
            )
            snapshot = self.aurora_wrapper.create_cluster_snapshot(
                snapshot_id, cluster_name
            )
            while snapshot.get("Status") != "available":
                wait(30)
                snapshot = self.aurora_wrapper.get_cluster_snapshot(snapshot_id)
            pp(snapshot)
            print("-" * 88)
```

```
    def cleanup(self, db_inst, cluster, parameter_group):
        """
        Shows how to clean up a DB instance, DB cluster, and DB cluster parameter
group.
        Before the DB cluster parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB
instances and
        DB clusters must first be deleted.

        :param db_inst: The DB instance to delete.
        :param cluster: The DB cluster to delete.
        :param parameter_group: The DB cluster parameter group to delete.
        """
        cluster_name = cluster["DBClusterIdentifier"]
        parameter_group_name = parameter_group["DBClusterParameterGroupName"]
        if q.ask(
            "\nDo you want to delete the database instance, DB cluster, and
parameter "
            "group (y/n)? ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            print(f"Deleting database instance {db_inst['DBInstanceIdentifier']}.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.delete_db_instance(db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"])
            print(f"Deleting database cluster {cluster_name}.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.delete_db_cluster(cluster_name)
            print(
                "Waiting for the DB instance and DB cluster to delete.\n"
                "This typically takes several minutes."
            )
            while db_inst is not None or cluster is not None:
                wait(30)
                if db_inst is not None:
                    db_inst = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_instance(
                        db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"]
                    )
                if cluster is not None:
                    cluster = self.aurora_wrapper.get_db_cluster(
                        cluster["DBClusterIdentifier"]
                    )
            print(f"Deleting parameter group {parameter_group_name}.")
            self.aurora_wrapper.delete_parameter_group(parameter_group_name)

    def run_scenario(self, db_engine, parameter_group_name, cluster_name, db_name):
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
```

```
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) get
 started\n"
            "with Aurora DB clusters demo."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

        parameter_group = self.create_parameter_group(db_engine,
 parameter_group_name)
        self.set_user_parameters(parameter_group_name)
        cluster = self.create_cluster(cluster_name, db_engine, db_name,
 parameter_group)
        wait(5)
        db_inst = self.create_instance(cluster)
        self.display_connection(cluster)
        self.create_snapshot(cluster_name)
        self.cleanup(db_inst, cluster, parameter_group)

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    try:
        scenario = AuroraClusterScenario(AuroraWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario(
            "aurora-mysql",
            "doc-example-cluster-parameter-group",
            "doc-example-aurora",
            "docexampledb",
        )
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Aurora actions.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
```

```
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The requested parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_parameter_groups(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBClusterParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group


    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
```

```
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the specified
parameter group
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of the
new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBClusterParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator =
self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_cluster_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Parameters=update_parameters,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def get_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_clusters(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name
            )
            cluster = response["DBClusters"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
                logger.info("Cluster %s does not exist.", cluster_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify the existence of DB cluster %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    cluster_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return cluster


    def create_db_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_name,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_name,
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified parameter
group.
        The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified
engine and
        engine version.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to create.
        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to associate
with
                                     the DB cluster.
        :param db_name: The name of the database to create.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of the database that is created, such
as MySql.
        :param db_engine_version: The version of the database engine.
        :param admin_name: The user name of the database administrator.
        :param admin_password: The password of the database administrator.
        :return: The newly created DB cluster.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster(
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name,
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            cluster = response["DBCluster"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return cluster


    def delete_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name, SkipFinalSnapshot=True
            )
            logger.info("Deleted DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
            raise


    def create_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, cluster_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
```

```
        :param cluster_id: The DB cluster to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_snapshot(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id,
DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                cluster_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def get_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_snapshots(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get DB cluster snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

```
    def create_instance_in_cluster(
        self, instance_id, cluster_id, db_engine, instance_class
    ):
        """
        Creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster. The first database
that is
        created defaults to a read-write DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param cluster_id: The ID of the DB cluster where the DB instance is
created.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
                          This must be compatible with the configured parameter
group
                          of the DB cluster.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id,
                Engine=db_engine,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
```

```
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned list
of
                                       engine versions to those that are compatible
with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by the
DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
```

```
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
```

```
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup
  - CreateDBClusterSnapshot
  - CreateDBInstance
  - DeleteDBCluster
  - DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBClusterParameters
  - DescribeDBClusterSnapshots

- DescribeDBClusters
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_db_cluster(
```

```
        self,
        cluster_name,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_name,
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster that is configured to use the specified parameter
group.
        The newly created DB cluster contains a database that uses the specified
engine and
        engine version.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to create.
        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to associate
with
                                     the DB cluster.
        :param db_name: The name of the database to create.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of the database that is created, such
as MySql.
        :param db_engine_version: The version of the database engine.
        :param admin_name: The user name of the database administrator.
        :param admin_password: The password of the database administrator.
        :return: The newly created DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster(
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name,
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            cluster = response["DBCluster"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return cluster
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)
```

```
    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB cluster parameter group that is based on the specified
parameter group
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of the
new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, cluster_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB cluster.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param cluster_id: The DB cluster to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_cluster_snapshot(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id,
 DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                cluster_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_instance_in_cluster(
        self, instance_id, cluster_id, db_engine, instance_class
    ):
        """
        Creates a database instance in an existing DB cluster. The first database
that is
        created defaults to a read-write DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param cluster_id: The ID of the DB cluster where the DB instance is
created.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
                          This must be compatible with the configured parameter
group
                          of the DB cluster.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id,
                Engine=db_engine,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name, SkipFinalSnapshot=True
```

```
            )
            logger.info("Deleted DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete DB cluster %s.", cluster_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
```

```
        """
        Deletes a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The requested parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_parameter_groups(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBClusterParameterGroups"][0]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
 parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBClusterParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator =
self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_cluster_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterSnapshots`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)
```

```
    def get_cluster_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB cluster snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_cluster_snapshots(
                DBClusterSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBClusterSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get DB cluster snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_db_cluster(self, cluster_name):
        """
        Gets data about an Aurora DB cluster.

        :param cluster_name: The name of the DB cluster to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB cluster.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_clusters(
                DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_name
            )
            cluster = response["DBClusters"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
                logger.info("Cluster %s does not exist.", cluster_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify the existence of DB cluster %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    cluster_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
```

```
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned list
of
                                       engine versions to those that are compatible
with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
 instance.
```

```
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by the
DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AuroraWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Aurora DB cluster actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
 client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB cluster parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DBClusterParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Parameters=update_parameters,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_autoscaling(autoscaling_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client
 and list
    some of the Auto Scaling groups in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client object.
    """
    print(
        "Hello, Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling! Let's list up to ten of you Auto Scaling
 groups:"
    )
    response = autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups()
    groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
    if groups:
        for group in groups:
            print(f"\t{group['AutoScalingGroupName']}:
 {group['AvailabilityZones']}")
```

```
    else:
        print("There are no Auto Scaling groups in your account.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_autoscaling(boto3.client("autoscaling"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
def run_scenario(as_wrapper: AutoScalingWrapper, svc_helper: ServiceHelper) -> None:
    """
    Runs the scenario demonstrating the management of Auto Scaling groups and
 instances.

    :param as_wrapper: An instance of the AutoScalingWrapper that manages Auto
 Scaling groups.
    :param svc_helper: An instance of the ServiceHelper that interacts with AWS
 services.
    :return: None
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    logger.info("Starting the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling demo.")

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Welcome to the Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling demo for managing groups and
 instances."
    )
    print("-" * 88)

    print(
        "This example requires a launch template that specifies how to create "
        "EC2 instances. You can use an existing template or create a new one."
    )
    template_name = q.ask(
        "Enter the name of an existing launch template or press Enter to create a
 new one: "
    )
    template = None
    if template_name:
        template = svc_helper.get_template(template_name)
    if template is None:
        inst_type = "t1.micro"
        ami_id = "ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300"
        print("Let's create a launch template with the following specifications:")
        print(f"\tInstanceType: {inst_type}")
        print(f"\tAMI ID: {ami_id}")
        template_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the template: ", q.non_empty)
        template = svc_helper.create_template(template_name, inst_type, ami_id)
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print("Let's create an Auto Scaling group.")
    group_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the group: ", q.non_empty)
    zones = svc_helper.get_availability_zones()
    print("EC2 instances can be created in the following Availability Zones:")
    for index, zone in enumerate(zones):
        print(f"\t{index+1}. {zone}")
    print(f"\t{len(zones)+1}. All zones")
    zone_sel = q.ask(
        "Which zone do you want to use? ", q.is_int, q.in_range(1, len(zones) + 1)
    )
    group_zones = [zones[zone_sel - 1]] if zone_sel <= len(zones) else zones
    print(f"Creating group {group_name}...")
    as_wrapper.create_autoscaling_group(group_name, group_zones, template_name, 1,
1)
    wait(10)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Created Auto Scaling group %s.", group_name)
    print("Created group:")
    pp(group)
    print("Waiting for instance to start...")
    wait_for_group(group_name, as_wrapper)
    print("-" * 88)

    use_metrics = q.ask(
        "Do you want to collect metrics about Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling during this
demo (y/n)? ",
        q.is_yesno,
    )
    if use_metrics:
        as_wrapper.enable_metrics(
            group_name,
            [
                "GroupMinSize",
                "GroupMaxSize",
                "GroupDesiredCapacity",
                "GroupInServiceInstances",
                "GroupTotalInstances",
            ],
        )
        logger.info("Enabled metrics for Auto Scaling group %s.", group_name)
        print(f"Metrics enabled for {group_name}.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(f"Let's update the maximum number of instances in {group_name} from 1 to
3.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    as_wrapper.update_group(group_name, MaxSize=3)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Updated maximum size for group %s to 3.", group_name)
    print("The group still has one running instance, but can have up to three:")
    print_simplified_group(group)
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's update the desired capacity of {group_name} from 1 to 2.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    as_wrapper.set_desired_capacity(group_name, 2)
    wait(10)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Set desired capacity for group %s to 2.", group_name)
    print("Here's the current state of the group:")
    print_simplified_group(group)
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Waiting for the new instance to start...")
    instance_ids = wait_for_group(group_name, as_wrapper)
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's terminate one of the instances in {group_name}.")
    print("Because the desired capacity is 2, another instance will start.")
    print("The currently running instances are:")
    for index, inst_id in enumerate(instance_ids):
        print(f"\t{index+1}. {inst_id}")
    inst_sel = q.ask(
        "Which instance do you want to stop? ",
        q.is_int,
        q.in_range(1, len(instance_ids) + 1),
    )
    print(f"Stopping {instance_ids[inst_sel-1]}...")
    as_wrapper.terminate_instance(instance_ids[inst_sel - 1], False)
    wait(10)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    logger.info(
        "Terminated instance %s in group %s.", instance_ids[inst_sel - 1],
group_name
    )
    print(f"Here's the state of {group_name}:")
    print_simplified_group(group)
    print("Waiting for the scaling activities to complete...")
```

```
    wait_for_group(group_name, as_wrapper)
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's get a report of scaling activities for {group_name}.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    activities = as_wrapper.describe_scaling_activities(group_name)
    logger.info(
        "Retrieved %d scaling activities for group %s.", len(activities), group_name
    )
    print(
        f"Found {len(activities)} activities.\n"
        f"Activities are ordered with the most recent one first:"
    )
    for act in activities:
        pp(act)
    print("-" * 88)

    if use_metrics:
        print("Let's look at CloudWatch metrics.")
        metric_namespace = "AWS/AutoScaling"
        metric_dimensions = [{"Name": "AutoScalingGroupName", "Value": group_name}]
        print(f"The following metrics are enabled for {group_name}:")
        done = False
        while not done:
            metrics = svc_helper.get_metrics(metric_namespace, metric_dimensions)
            for index, metric in enumerate(metrics):
                print(f"\t{index+1}. {metric.name}")
            print(f"\t{len(metrics)+1}. None")
            metric_sel = q.ask(
                "Which metric do you want to see? ",
                q.is_int,
                q.in_range(1, len(metrics) + 1),
            )
            if metric_sel < len(metrics) + 1:
                span = 5
                metric = metrics[metric_sel - 1]
                print(f"Over the last {span} minutes, {metric.name} recorded:")
                # CloudWatch metric times are in the UTC+0 time zone.
                now = datetime.now(timezone.utc)
                metric_data = svc_helper.get_metric_statistics(
                    metric_dimensions, metric, now - timedelta(minutes=span), now
                )
                pp(metric_data)
```

```
                if not q.ask("Do you want to see another metric (y/n)? ",
q.is_yesno):
                    done = True
            else:
                done = True

    print(f"Let's clean up.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    if use_metrics:
        print(f"Stopping metrics collection for {group_name}.")
        as_wrapper.disable_metrics(group_name)
        logger.info("Disabled metrics collection for group %s.", group_name)

    print(
        "You must terminate all instances in the group before you can delete the
group."
    )
    print("Set minimum size to 0.")
    as_wrapper.update_group(group_name, MinSize=0)
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in group["Instances"]]
    for inst_id in instance_ids:
        print(f"Stopping {inst_id}.")
        as_wrapper.terminate_instance(inst_id, True)
        logger.info("Terminated instance %s in group %s.", inst_id, group_name)
    print("Waiting for instances to stop...")
    wait_for_instances(instance_ids, as_wrapper)
    print(f"Deleting {group_name}.")
    as_wrapper.delete_autoscaling_group(group_name)
    logger.info("Deleted Auto Scaling group %s.", group_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    if template is not None:
        if q.ask(
            f"Do you want to delete launch template {template_name} used in this
demo (y/n)? "
        ):
            svc_helper.delete_template(template_name)
            logger.info("Deleted launch template %s.", template_name)
            print("Template deleted.")

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(boto3.client("autoscaling"))
        helper = ServiceHelper(boto3.client("ec2"), boto3.resource("cloudwatch"))
        run_scenario(wrapper, helper)
    except Exception:
        logger.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage launch templates and metrics. These functions wrap Amazon EC2 and CloudWatch actions.

```
class ServiceHelper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 and CloudWatch actions for the example."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client.
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource

    def get_template(self, template_name: str) -> dict:
        """
        Gets a launch template. Launch templates specify configuration for instances
        that are launched by Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.

        :param template_name: The name of the template to look up.
        :return: The template, if it exists.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving the launch template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_launch_templates(
                LaunchTemplateNames=[template_name]
            )
            template = response["LaunchTemplates"][0]
            logger.info("Launch template %s retrieved successfully.", template_name)
            return template
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                logger.warning("Launch template %s does not exist.", template_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify launch template %s. Error: %s: %s",
                    template_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise

    def create_template(self, template_name: str, inst_type: str, ami_id: str) ->
dict:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.

        :param template_name: The name to give to the template.
        :param inst_type: The type of the instance, such as t1.micro.
        :param ami_id: The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use when creating
                       an instance.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error creating the launch template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={"InstanceType": inst_type, "ImageId": ami_id},
            )
            template = response["LaunchTemplate"]
            logger.info(
                "Created launch template %s with instance type %s and AMI ID %s.",
                template_name,
                inst_type,
                ami_id,
            )
            return template
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create launch template %s. Error: %s: %s",
                template_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise

    def delete_template(self, template_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a launch template.

        :param template_name: The name of the template to delete.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error deleting the launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(LaunchTemplateName=template_name)
            logger.info("Deleted launch template %s.", template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete launch template %s. Error: %s: %s",
                template_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def get_availability_zones(self) -> list:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving availability zones.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            logger.info("Retrieved availability zones: %s.", ", ".join(zones))
            return zones
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get availability zones. Error: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def get_metrics(self, namespace: str, dimensions: list) -> list:
        """
```

```
        Gets a list of CloudWatch metrics filtered by namespace and dimensions.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metrics to look up.
        :param dimensions: The dimensions of the metrics to look up.
        :return: The list of metrics.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving CloudWatch metrics.
        """
        try:
            metrics = list(
                self.cloudwatch_resource.metrics.filter(
                    Namespace=namespace, Dimensions=dimensions
                )
            )
            logger.info(
                "Retrieved metrics for namespace %s with dimensions %s.",
                namespace,
                dimensions,
            )
            return metrics
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get metrics for %s, %s. Error: %s: %s",
                namespace,
                dimensions,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    @staticmethod
    def get_metric_statistics(
        dimensions: list, metric, start: datetime, end: datetime
    ) -> list:
        """
        Gets statistics for a CloudWatch metric within a specified time span.

        :param dimensions: The dimensions of the metric.
        :param metric: The metric to look up.
        :param start: The start of the time span for retrieved metrics.
        :param end: The end of the time span for retrieved metrics.
        :return: The list of data points found for the specified metric.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error retrieving metric statistics.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = metric.get_statistics(
                Dimensions=dimensions,
                StartTime=start,
                EndTime=end,
                Period=60,
                Statistics=["Sum"],
            )
            data = response["Datapoints"]
            logger.info("Retrieved statistics for metric %s.", metric.name)
            return data
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get statistics for metric %s. Error: %s: %s",
                metric.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


def print_simplified_group(group: dict) -> None:
    """
    Prints a subset of data for an Auto Scaling group.

    :param group: The Auto Scaling group data to print.
    :return: None
    """
    print(group["AutoScalingGroupName"])
    print(f"\tLaunch template: {group['LaunchTemplate']['LaunchTemplateName']}")
    print(
        f"\tMin: {group['MinSize']}, Max: {group['MaxSize']}, Desired:
 {group['DesiredCapacity']}"
    )
    if group["Instances"]:
        print(f"\tInstances:")
        for inst in group["Instances"]:
            print(f"\t\t{inst['InstanceId']}: {inst['LifecycleState']}")


def wait_for_group(group_name: str, as_wrapper: AutoScalingWrapper) -> list:
    """
    Waits for instances to start or stop in an Auto Scaling group.
    Prints the data for each instance after scaling activities are complete.
```

```
    :param group_name: The name of the Auto Scaling group.
    :param as_wrapper: The AutoScalingWrapper that manages Auto Scaling groups.
    :return: A list of instance IDs in the group.
    """
    group = as_wrapper.describe_group(group_name)
    instance_ids = [i["InstanceId"] for i in group["Instances"]]
    return wait_for_instances(instance_ids, as_wrapper)


def wait_for_instances(instance_ids: list, as_wrapper: AutoScalingWrapper) -> list:
    """
    Waits for instances to start or stop in an Auto Scaling group.
    Prints the data for each instance after scaling activities are complete.

    :param instance_ids: A list of instance IDs to wait for.
    :param as_wrapper: The AutoScalingWrapper that manages Auto Scaling groups.
    :return: A list of instance IDs that were waited on.
    """
    ready = False
    instances = []
    while not ready:
        instances = as_wrapper.describe_instances(instance_ids) if instance_ids else
 []
        if all([x["LifecycleState"] in ["Terminated", "InService"] for x in
 instances]):
            ready = True
        else:
            wait(10)
    if instances:
        print(
            f"Here are the details of the instance{'s' if len(instances) > 1 else
 ''}:"
        )
        for instance in instances:
            pp(instance)
    return instance_ids
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup

- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAutoScalingInstances
- DescribeScalingActivities
- DisableMetricsCollection
- EnableMetricsCollection
- SetDesiredCapacity
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
```

```
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
```

```
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group %s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def create_group(
        self,
        group_name: str,
        group_zones: List[str],
        launch_template_name: str,
        min_size: int,
        max_size: int,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Creates an Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name to give to the group.
        :param group_zones: The Availability Zones in which instances can be
 created.
        :param launch_template_name: The name of an existing Amazon EC2 launch
 template.
                                     The launch template specifies the configuration
 of
                                     instances that are created by auto scaling
 activities.
        :param min_size: The minimum number of active instances in the group.
```

```
        :param max_size: The maximum number of active instances in the group.
        :return: None
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error creating the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=group_zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=min_size,
                MaxSize=max_size,
            )

            # Wait for the group to exist.
            waiter = self.autoscaling_client.get_waiter("group_exists")
            waiter.wait(AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name])

            logger.info(f"Successfully created Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to create Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")
            if error_code == "AlreadyExistsFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"An Auto Scaling group with the name '{group_name}' already
 exists. "
                    "Please use a different name or update the existing group.",
                )
            elif error_code == "LimitExceededFault":
                logger.error(
                    "The request failed because you have reached the limit "
                    "on the number of Auto Scaling groups or launch configurations.
 "
                    "Consider deleting unused resources or request a limit increase.
 "
                    "\nSee Auto Scaling Service Quota documentation here:"
                    "\n\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/autoscaling/ec2/userguide/ec2-
auto-scaling-quotas.html"
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update the minimum size of an Auto Scaling group to zero, terminate all instances in the group, and delete the group.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
```

```
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
```

```
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
 delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def describe_group(self, group_name: str) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about an Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to look up.
        :return: A dictionary with information about the group if found, otherwise
 None.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.autoscaling_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_auto_scaling_groups"
            )
            response_iterator =
 paginator.paginate(AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name])
            groups = []
            for response in response_iterator:
                groups.extend(response.get("AutoScalingGroups", []))

            logger.info(
                f"Successfully retrieved information for Auto Scaling group
 {group_name}."
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to describe Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    "There is a conflict with another operation that is modifying
 the "
                    f"Auto Scaling group '{group_name}' Please try again later."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
        else:
            return groups[0] if len(groups) > 0 else None
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def describe_instances(self, instance_ids: List[str]) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
```

```
        """
        Gets information about instances.

        :param instance_ids: A list of instance IDs to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries with information about each instance,
                 or an empty list if none are found.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the instances.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.autoscaling_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_auto_scaling_instances"
            )
            response_iterator = paginator.paginate(InstanceIds=instance_ids)

            instances = []
            for response in response_iterator:
                instances.extend(response.get("AutoScalingInstances", []))

            logger.info(f"Successfully described instances: {instance_ids}")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't describe instances {instance_ids}. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )
            raise
        else:
            return instances
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def describe_scaling_activities(self, group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about scaling activities for the group. Scaling activities
        are things like instances stopping or starting in response to user requests
        or capacity changes.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing the scaling activities for the
                 group, ordered with the most recent activity first.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the scaling activities.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.autoscaling_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_scaling_activities"
            )
            response_iterator = paginator.paginate(AutoScalingGroupName=group_name)
            activities = []
            for response in response_iterator:
                activities.extend(response.get("Activities", []))

            logger.info(
                f"Successfully described scaling activities for group
 '{group_name}'."
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't describe scaling activities for group '{group_name}'.
 Error code: {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"There is a conflict with another operation that is modifying
 the Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please try again later."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return activities
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
```

```
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def disable_metrics(self, group_name: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Stops CloudWatch metric collection for the Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group.
        :return: A dictionary with the response from disabling the metrics
collection.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error disabling metrics collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.disable_metrics_collection(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name
            )
            logger.info(
                f"Successfully disabled metrics collection for group
'{group_name}'."
            )
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't disable metrics for group '{group_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"There is a conflict with another operation that is modifying
the Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please try again later."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def enable_metrics(self, group_name: str, metrics: List[str]) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Enables CloudWatch metric collection for Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling activities.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to enable.
        :param metrics: A list of metrics to collect.
        :return: A dictionary with the response from enabling the metrics
 collection.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error enabling metrics collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.enable_metrics_collection(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, Metrics=metrics,
 Granularity="1Minute"
            )
            logger.info(
                f"Successfully enabled metrics for Auto Scaling group
 '{group_name}'."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
```

```
                f"Couldn't enable metrics on '{group_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                logger.error(
                    f"There is a conflict with another operation that is modifying
the Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please try again later."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterCombination":
                logger.error(
                    f"The combination of parameters provided for enabling metrics on
'{group_name}' is not valid. "
                    "Please check the parameters and try again."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
```

```
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def set_desired_capacity(self, group_name: str, capacity: int) -> None:
        """
        Sets the desired capacity of the group. Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling tries to
keep the
        number of running instances equal to the desired capacity.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to update.
        :param capacity: The desired number of running instances.
        :return: None
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error setting the desired capacity.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.set_desired_capacity(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name,
                DesiredCapacity=capacity,
                HonorCooldown=False,
            )
            logger.info(
                f"Successfully set desired capacity of {capacity} for Auto Scaling
group '{group_name}'."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to set desired capacity for Auto Scaling group
'{group_name}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgress":
                logger.error(
                    f"A scaling activity is currently in progress for the Auto
Scaling group '{group_name}'. "
                    "Please wait for the activity to complete before attempting to
set the desired capacity."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def terminate_instance(
        self, instance_id: str, decrease_capacity: bool
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Stops an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to stop.
        :param decrease_capacity: Specifies whether to decrease the desired capacity
                                  of the group. When passing True for this
 parameter,
                                  you can stop an instance without having a
 replacement
                                  instance start when the desired capacity threshold
 is
                                  crossed.
        :return: A dictionary containing details of the scaling activity that occurs
                 in response to this action.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error terminating the instance.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response =
self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrease_capacity
            )
            logger.info(f"Successfully terminated instance {instance_id}.")
            return response["Activity"]

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to terminate instance {instance_id}.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgress":
                logger.error(
                    "A scaling activity is currently in progress for the Auto
Scaling group "
                    f"associated with instance '{instance_id}'. "
                    "Please wait for the activity to complete before attempting to
terminate the instance."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUse":
                logger.error(
                    f"The instance '{instance_id}' or an associated resource is
currently in use "
                    "and cannot be terminated. "
                    "Ensure the instance is not involved in any ongoing processes
and try again."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

UpdateAutoScalingGroup

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling actions."""

    def __init__(self, autoscaling_client):
        """
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        """
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client


    def update_group(self, group_name: str, **kwargs: Any) -> None:
        """
        Updates an Auto Scaling group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to update.
        :param kwargs: Keyword arguments to pass through to the service.
        :return: None
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error updating the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, **kwargs
            )
            logger.info(f"Successfully updated Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Failed to update Auto Scaling group {group_name}.")
            if error_code == "ResourceInUse":
                logger.error(
                    "The Auto Scaling group '%s' is currently in use and cannot be
 modified. Please try again later.",
                    group_name,
                )
```

```
            elif error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgress":
                logger.error(
                    f"A scaling activity is currently in progress for the Auto
Scaling group '{group_name}'."
                    "Please wait for the activity to complete before attempting to
update the group."
                )
            logger.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example, such
 as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22
```

```
        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
```

```
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port is
 open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access from
 this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
 {sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
 address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
 {sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
```

```
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging from
your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer endpoint.
Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )

    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as sending
requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.")
                endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
```

```
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
 self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check to
 update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
 failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
 failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a non-
existent table."
```

```
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
instances."
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
```

```
        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
```

```
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up manually
 to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
 are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM policies
 and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
```

```
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
 "destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
```

```
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
```

```
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
```

```
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
 AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to attach
 to the role.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed
by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore
to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to the
instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
```

```
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
```

```
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance {instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance {instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to associate
with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
```

```
                                        instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or is
not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.
```

```
        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts a
        Python web server on the instance.
```

```
        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a permissions
policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
```

```
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.
```

```
        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with availability
zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
```

```
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) -> None:
```

```
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group %s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
group.
```

```
        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
 delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
```

```
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs. "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass


    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port to
```

```
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
public
        access when you're done.

        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value that
indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to either
this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
```

```
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist. Please
check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}' on
port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
```

```
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
```

```
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
 instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the sensitivity
 of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.
```

```
        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing target
group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for new
ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.", target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the AWS
Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with any
load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
```

```
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn} still
exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts *
delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
```

```
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}' already
exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in this
account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase in
the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests to
the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
```

```
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener to
the
                                load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
```

```
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
```

```
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer {load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
```

```
                log.info(
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint, retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS region,
and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
 as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
 MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
```

```
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5, "WriteCapacityUnits":
5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name, data_file
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}: {err}"
            )

    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters to
 drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
 recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name
```

```
    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False. "
                    "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

- AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
- CreateAutoScalingGroup
- CreateInstanceProfile
- CreateLaunchTemplate
- CreateListener
- CreateLoadBalancer
- CreateTargetGroup
- DeleteAutoScalingGroup
- DeleteInstanceProfile
- DeleteLaunchTemplate
- DeleteLoadBalancer
- DeleteTargetGroup
- DescribeAutoScalingGroups
- DescribeAvailabilityZones
- DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
- DescribeInstances
- DescribeLoadBalancers
- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Lists the available Amazon Bedrock models.
"""
import logging
import json
import boto3


from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def list_foundation_models(bedrock_client):
    """
    Gets a list of available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.
```

```
    :return: The list of available bedrock foundation models.
    """

    try:
        response = bedrock_client.list_foundation_models()
        models = response["modelSummaries"]
        logger.info("Got %s foundation models.", len(models))
        return models

    except ClientError:
        logger.error("Couldn't list foundation models.")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock client. Then lists the available Bedrock models
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    bedrock_client = boto3.client(service_name="bedrock")

    fm_models = list_foundation_models(bedrock_client)
    for model in fm_models:
        print(f"Model: {model['modelName']}")
        print(json.dumps(model, indent=2))
        print("---------------------------\n")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`GetFoundationModel`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFoundationModel`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get details about a foundation model.

```
    def get_foundation_model(self, model_identifier):
        """
        Get details about an Amazon Bedrock foundation model.

        :return: The foundation model's details.
        """

        try:
            return self.bedrock_client.get_foundation_model(
                modelIdentifier=model_identifier
            )["modelDetails"]
        except ClientError:
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't get foundation models details for {model_identifier}"
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetFoundationModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

```
    def list_foundation_models(self):
        """
        List the available Amazon Bedrock foundation models.

        :return: The list of available bedrock foundation models.
        """

        try:
            response = self.bedrock_client.list_foundation_models()
            models = response["modelSummaries"]
            logger.info("Got %s foundation models.", len(models))
            return models

        except ClientError:
            logger.error("Couldn't list foundation models.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Orchestrate generative AI applications with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a prompt to a model with the InvokeModel operation.

```
"""
Uses the Amazon Bedrock runtime client InvokeModel operation to send a prompt to a
 model.
"""
import logging
import json
import boto3


from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def invoke_model(brt, model_id, prompt):
    """
    Invokes the specified model with the supplied prompt.
    param brt: A bedrock runtime boto3 client
```

```
    param model_id: The model ID for the model that you want to use.
    param prompt: The prompt that you want to send to the model.

    :return: The text response from the model.
    """

    # Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    native_request = {
        "inputText": prompt,
        "textGenerationConfig": {
            "maxTokenCount": 512,
            "temperature": 0.5,
            "topP": 0.9
        }
    }

    # Convert the native request to JSON.
    request = json.dumps(native_request)

    try:
        # Invoke the model with the request.
        response = brt.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

        # Decode the response body.
        model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

        # Extract and print the response text.
        response_text = model_response["results"][0]["outputText"]
        return response_text

    except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
        print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock runtime client. Then sends a prompt to a model
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    # Create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
    brt = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime")
```

```
    # Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Titan Text G1 - Express.
    model_id = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

    # Define the prompt for the model.
    prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

    # Send the prompt to the model.
    response = invoke_model(brt, model_id, prompt)

    print(f"Response: {response}")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send a user message to a model with the Converse operation.

```
"""
Uses the Amazon Bedrock runtime client Converse operation to send a user message to
 a model.
"""
import logging
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def converse(brt, model_id, user_message):
    """
    Uses the Converse operation to send a user message to the supplied model.
    param brt: A bedrock runtime boto3 client
    param model_id: The model ID for the model that you want to use.
    param user message: The user message that you want to send to the model.
```

```
    :return: The text response from the model.
    """

    # Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

    try:
        # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
        response = brt.converse(
            modelId=model_id,
            messages=conversation,
            inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
        )

        # Extract and print the response text.
        response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
        return response_text

    except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
        print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
        raise


def main():
    """Entry point for the example. Uses the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)
    to create an Amazon Bedrock runtime client. Then sends a user message to a model
    in the region set in the callers profile and credentials.
    """

    # Create an Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
    brt = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime")

    # Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Titan Text G1 - Express.
    model_id = "amazon.titan-text-express-v1"

    # Define the message for the model.
    message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

    # Send the message to the model.
```

```
    response = converse(brt, model_id, message)

    print(f"Response: {response}")

    logger.info("Done.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Nova Canvas
- Amazon Nova Reel
- Amazon Titan Image Generator
- Amazon Titan Text
- Amazon Titan Text Embeddings
- Anthropic Claude
- Cohere Command
- DeepSeek
- Meta Llama
- Mistral AI
- Stable Diffusion

Scenarios

Create a playground application to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models

The following code example shows how to create playgrounds to interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models through different modalities.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Python Foundation Model (FM) Playground is a Python/FastAPI sample application that showcases how to use Amazon Bedrock with Python. This example shows how Python developers can use Amazon Bedrock to build generative AI-enabled applications. You can test and interact with Amazon Bedrock foundation models by using the following three playgrounds:

- A text playground.
- A chat playground.
- An image playground.

The example also lists and displays the foundation models you have access to, along with their characteristics. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime

Create and invoke a managed prompt

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a managed prompt.
- Create a version of the prompt.
- Invoke the prompt using the version.
- Clean up resources (optional).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and invoke a managed prompt.

```
import argparse
```

```
import boto3
import logging
import time

# Now import the modules
from prompt import create_prompt, create_prompt_version, delete_prompt
from run_prompt import invoke_prompt

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO,
    format='%(levelname)s: %(message)s'
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)



def run_scenario(bedrock_client, bedrock_runtime_client, model_id, cleanup=True):
    """
    Runs the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.

    Args:
        bedrock_client: The Amazon Bedrock Agent client.
        bedrock_runtime_client: The Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
        model_id (str): The model ID to use for the prompt.
        cleanup (bool): Whether to clean up resources at the end of the scenario.

    Returns:
        dict: A dictionary containing the created resources.
    """
    prompt_id = None

    try:
        # Step 1: Create a prompt
        print("\n=== Step 1: Creating a prompt ===")
        prompt_name = f"PlaylistGenerator-{int(time.time())}"
        prompt_description = "Playlist generator"
        prompt_template = """
          Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting of the following number of songs:
 {{number}}."""

        create_response = create_prompt(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_name,
            prompt_description,
```

```
            prompt_template,
            model_id
        )

        prompt_id = create_response['id']
        print(f"Created prompt: {prompt_name} with ID: {prompt_id}")

        # Create a version of the prompt
        print("\n=== Creating a version of the prompt ===")
        version_response = create_prompt_version(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_id,
            description="Initial version of the product description generator"
        )

        prompt_version_arn = version_response['arn']
        prompt_version = version_response['version']

        print(f"Created prompt version: {prompt_version}")
        print(f"Prompt version ARN: {prompt_version_arn}")

        # Step 2: Invoke the prompt directly
        print("\n=== Step 2: Invoking the prompt ===")
        input_variables = {
            "genre": "pop",
            "number": "2",
           }

        # Use the ARN from the create_prompt_version response
        result = invoke_prompt(
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            prompt_version_arn,
            input_variables
        )
        # Display the playlist
        print(f"\n{result}")


        # Step 3: Clean up resources (optional)
        if cleanup:
            print("\n=== Step 3: Cleaning up resources ===")

            # Delete the prompt
            print(f"Deleting prompt {prompt_id}...")
```

```
            delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)

            print("Cleanup complete")
        else:
            print("\n=== Resources were not cleaned up ===")
            print(f"Prompt ID: {prompt_id}")



    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error in scenario: %s", str(e))

        # Attempt to clean up if an error occurred and cleanup was requested
        if cleanup and prompt_id:
            try:
                print("\nCleaning up resources after error...")

                # Delete the prompt
                try:
                    delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)
                    print("Cleanup after error complete")
                except Exception as cleanup_error:
                    logger.error("Error during cleanup: %s", str(cleanup_error))
            except Exception as final_error:
                logger.error("Final error during cleanup: %s", str(final_error))

        # Re-raise the original exception
        raise

def main():
    """
    Entry point for the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Run the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--region',
        default='us-east-1',
        help="The AWS Region to use."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--model-id',
        default='anthropic.claude-v2',
```

```
        help="The model ID to use for the prompt."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--cleanup',
        action='store_true',
        default=True,
        help="Clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--no-cleanup',
        action='store_false',
        dest='cleanup',
        help="Don't clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    bedrock_client = boto3.client('bedrock-agent', region_name=args.region)
    bedrock_runtime_client = boto3.client('bedrock-runtime',
 region_name=args.region)

    print("=== Amazon Bedrock Managed Prompt Scenario ===")
    print(f"Region: {args.region}")
    print(f"Model ID: {args.model_id}")
    print(f"Cleanup resources: {args.cleanup}")

    try:
        run_scenario(
            bedrock_client,
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            args.model_id,
            args.cleanup
        )

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error running scenario: %s", str(e))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Converse

- CreatePrompt
- CreatePromptVersion
- DeletePrompt

Orchestrate generative AI applications with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents

- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution script of the demo. This script orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
"""
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
"""

import boto3
import logging
from enum import Enum

import utils.tool_use_print_utils as output
import weather_tool

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(message)s")

AWS_REGION = "us-east-1"
```

```
# For the most recent list of models supported by the Converse API's tool use
 functionality, visit:
# https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/conversation-inference.html
class SupportedModels(Enum):
    CLAUDE_OPUS = "anthropic.claude-3-opus-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_SONNET = "anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_HAIKU = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R_PLUS = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"


# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
MODEL_ID = SupportedModels.CLAUDE_HAIKU.value

SYSTEM_PROMPT = """
You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-specified
 locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates from
 the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it in
 your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest other
 options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
"""

# The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
# This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
MAX_RECURSIONS = 5
```

```
class ToolUseDemo:
    """
    Demonstrates the tool use feature with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        # Prepare the system prompt
        self.system_prompt = [{"text": SYSTEM_PROMPT}]

        # Prepare the tool configuration with the weather tool's specification
        self.tool_config = {"tools": [weather_tool.get_tool_spec()]}

        # Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the specified AWS Region.
        self.bedrockRuntimeClient = boto3.client(
            "bedrock-runtime", region_name=AWS_REGION
        )

    def run(self):
        """
        Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
        """
        # Print the greeting and a short user guide
        output.header()

        # Start with an emtpy conversation
        conversation = []

        # Get the first user input
        user_input = self._get_user_input()

        while user_input is not None:
            # Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
 conversation
            message = {"role": "user", "content": [{"text": user_input}]}
            conversation.append(message)

            # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            bedrock_response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

            # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
            # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            self._process_model_response(
```

```
                bedrock_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
            )

            # Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            user_input = self._get_user_input()

        output.footer()

    def _send_conversation_to_bedrock(self, conversation):
        """
        Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.

        :param conversation: The conversation history including the next message to
send.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock.
        """
        output.call_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return self.bedrockRuntimeClient.converse(
            modelId=MODEL_ID,
            messages=conversation,
            system=self.system_prompt,
            toolConfig=self.tool_config,
        )

    def _process_model_response(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions
        based on the stop reason.

        :param model_response: The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        if max_recursion <= 0:
            # Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
```

```
            logging.warning(
                "Warning: Maximum number of recursions reached. Please try again."
            )
            exit(1)

        # Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        message = model_response["output"]["message"]
        conversation.append(message)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "tool_use":
            # If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
handler
            self._handle_tool_use(message, conversation, max_recursion)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "end_turn":
            # If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text, and
finish the process
            output.model_response(message["content"][0]["text"])
            return

    def _handle_tool_use(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
        The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.

        :param model_response: The model's response containing the tool use request.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        # Initialize an empty list of tool results
        tool_results = []

        # The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for content_block in model_response["content"]:
            if "text" in content_block:
                # If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                output.model_response(content_block["text"])

            if "toolUse" in content_block:
```

```
                # If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the tool
                tool_response = self._invoke_tool(content_block["toolUse"])

                # Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of results
                tool_results.append(
                    {
                        "toolResult": {
                            "toolUseId": (tool_response["toolUseId"]),
                            "content": [{"json": tool_response["content"]}],
                        }
                    }
                )

        # Embed the tool results in a new user message
        message = {"role": "user", "content": tool_results}

        # Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.append(message)

        # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
        # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        self._process_model_response(response, conversation, max_recursion - 1)

    def _invoke_tool(self, payload):
        """
        Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
        If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.

        :param payload: The payload containing the tool name and input data.
        :return: The tool's response or an error message.
        """
        tool_name = payload["name"]

        if tool_name == "Weather_Tool":
            input_data = payload["input"]
            output.tool_use(tool_name, input_data)

            # Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided by
            response = weather_tool.fetch_weather_data(input_data)
        else:
```

```
            error_message = (
                f"The requested tool with name '{tool_name}' does not exist."
            )
            response = {"error": "true", "message": error_message}

        return {"toolUseId": payload["toolUseId"], "content": response}

    @staticmethod
    def _get_user_input(prompt="Your weather info request"):
        """
        Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
        Returns None if the user enters 'x' to exit.

        :param prompt: The prompt to display to the user.
        :return: The user's input or None if the user chooses to exit.
        """
        output.separator()
        user_input = input(f"{prompt} (x to exit): ")

        if user_input == "":
            prompt = "Please enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
 city"
            return ToolUseDemo._get_user_input(prompt)

        elif user_input.lower() == "x":
            return None

        else:
            return user_input


if __name__ == "__main__":
    tool_use_demo = ToolUseDemo()
    tool_use_demo.run()
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
import requests
from requests.exceptions import RequestException
```

```
def get_tool_spec():
    """
    Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.

    :return: The tool specification for the Weather tool.
    """
    return {
        "toolSpec": {
            "name": "Weather_Tool",
            "description": "Get the current weather for a given location, based on
 its WGS84 coordinates.",
            "inputSchema": {
                "json": {
                    "type": "object",
                    "properties": {
                        "latitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                        "longitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                    },
                    "required": ["latitude", "longitude"],
                }
            },
        }
    }


def fetch_weather_data(input_data):
    """
    Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-Meteo
 API.
    Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.
```

```
    :param input_data: The input data containing the latitude and longitude.
    :return: The weather data or an error message.
    """
    endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast"
    latitude = input_data.get("latitude")
    longitude = input_data.get("longitude", "")
    params = {"latitude": latitude, "longitude": longitude, "current_weather": True}

    try:
        response = requests.get(endpoint, params=params)
        weather_data = {"weather_data": response.json()}
        response.raise_for_status()
        return weather_data
    except RequestException as e:
        return e.response.json()
    except Exception as e:
        return {"error": type(e), "message": str(e)}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Nova.

import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Nova Text
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Amazon Nova Lite.
model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
```

```
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Document understanding

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Amazon Nova on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Amazon Nova Lite.
model_id = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()
```

```
# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv, and
 txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
# Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas

import base64
import json
import os
import random

import boto3

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID.
model_id = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0"

# Define the image generation prompt for the model.
prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot."

# Generate a random seed between 0 and 858,993,459
seed = random.randint(0, 858993460)

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
    "textToImageParams": {"text": prompt},
```

```
    "imageGenerationConfig": {
        "seed": seed,
        "quality": "standard",
        "height": 512,
        "width": 512,
        "numberOfImages": 1,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract the image data.
base64_image_data = model_response["images"][0]

# Save the generated image to a local folder.
i, output_dir = 1, "output"
if not os.path.exists(output_dir):
    os.makedirs(output_dir)
while os.path.exists(os.path.join(output_dir, f"nova_canvas_{i}.png")):
    i += 1

image_data = base64.b64decode(base64_image_data)

image_path = os.path.join(output_dir, f"nova_canvas_{i}.png")
with open(image_path, "wb") as file:
    file.write(image_data)

print(f"The generated image has been saved to {image_path}")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Nova Reel

Text-to-video

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

```
"""
This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a
 text prompt.

It shows how to:
- Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
- Configure a text-to-video request
- Submit an asynchronous job for video generation
- Poll for job completion status
- Access the generated video from S3
"""

import random
import time

import boto3

# Replace with your own S3 bucket to store the generated video
# Format: s3://your-bucket-name
OUTPUT_S3_URI = "s3://REPLACE-WITH-YOUR-S3-BUCKET-NAME"


def start_text_to_video_generation_job(bedrock_runtime, prompt, output_s3_uri):
    """
    Starts an asynchronous text-to-video generation job using Amazon Nova Reel.
```

```
    :param bedrock_runtime: The Bedrock runtime client
    :param prompt: The text description of the video to generate
    :param output_s3_uri: S3 URI where the generated video will be stored

    :return: The invocation ARN of the async job
    """
    # Specify the model ID for text-to-video generation
    model_id = "amazon.nova-reel-v1:0"

    # Generate a random seed between 0 and 2,147,483,646
    # This helps ensure unique video generation results
    seed = random.randint(0, 2147483646)

    # Configure the video generation request with additional parameters
    model_input = {
        "taskType": "TEXT_VIDEO",
        "textToVideoParams": {"text": prompt},
        "videoGenerationConfig": {
            "fps": 24,
            "durationSeconds": 6,
            "dimension": "1280x720",
            "seed": seed,
        },
    }

    # Specify the S3 location for the output video
    output_config = {"s3OutputDataConfig": {"s3Uri": output_s3_uri}}

    # Invoke the model asynchronously
    response = bedrock_runtime.start_async_invoke(
        modelId=model_id, modelInput=model_input, outputDataConfig=output_config
    )

    invocation_arn = response["invocationArn"]

    return invocation_arn


def query_job_status(bedrock_runtime, invocation_arn):
    """
    Queries the status of an asynchronous video generation job.

    :param bedrock_runtime: The Bedrock runtime client
    :param invocation_arn: The ARN of the async invocation to check
```

```
    :return: The runtime response containing the job status and details
    """
    return bedrock_runtime.get_async_invoke(invocationArn=invocation_arn)


def main():
    """
    Main function that demonstrates the complete workflow for generating
    a video from a text prompt using Amazon Nova Reel.
    """
    # Create a Bedrock Runtime client
    # Note: Credentials will be loaded from the environment or AWS CLI config
    bedrock_runtime = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

    # Configure the text prompt and output location
    prompt = "Closeup of a cute old steampunk robot. Camera zoom in."

    # Verify the S3 URI has been set to a valid bucket
    if "REPLACE-WITH-YOUR-S3-BUCKET-NAME" in OUTPUT_S3_URI:
        print("ERROR: You must replace the OUTPUT_S3_URI with your own S3 bucket
 URI")
        return

    print("Submitting video generation job...")
    invocation_arn = start_text_to_video_generation_job(
        bedrock_runtime, prompt, OUTPUT_S3_URI
    )
    print(f"Job started with invocation ARN: {invocation_arn}")

    # Poll for job completion
    while True:
        print("\nPolling job status...")
        job = query_job_status(bedrock_runtime, invocation_arn)
        status = job["status"]

        if status == "Completed":
            bucket_uri = job["outputDataConfig"]["s3OutputDataConfig"]["s3Uri"]
            print(f"\nSuccess! The video is available at: {bucket_uri}/output.mp4")
            break
        elif status == "Failed":
            print(
                f"\nVideo generation failed: {job.get('failureMessage', 'Unknown
 error')}"
```

```
            )
            break
        else:
            print("In progress. Waiting 15 seconds...")
            time.sleep(15)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - GetAsyncInvoke
  - StartAsyncInvoke

Amazon Titan Image Generator

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Titan Image on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with the Amazon Titan Image Generator.

```
# Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Titan Image Generator

import base64
import boto3
import json
import os
import random
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Image Generator G1.
model_id = "amazon.titan-image-generator-v1"

# Define the image generation prompt for the model.
prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot."

# Generate a random seed.
seed = random.randint(0, 2147483647)

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
    "textToImageParams": {"text": prompt},
    "imageGenerationConfig": {
        "numberOfImages": 1,
        "quality": "standard",
        "cfgScale": 8.0,
        "height": 512,
        "width": 512,
        "seed": seed,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract the image data.
base64_image_data = model_response["images"][0]

# Save the generated image to a local folder.
i, output_dir = 1, "output"
if not os.path.exists(output_dir):
    os.makedirs(output_dir)
while os.path.exists(os.path.join(output_dir, f"titan_{i}.png")):
    i += 1
```

```
image_data = base64.b64decode(base64_image_data)

image_path = os.path.join(output_dir, f"titan_{i}.png")
with open(image_path, "wb") as file:
    file.write(image_data)

print(f"The generated image has been saved to {image_path}")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"
```

```
# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "inputText": prompt,
    "textGenerationConfig": {
        "maxTokenCount": 512,
        "temperature": 0.5,
    },
}
```

```
# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["results"][0]["outputText"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Amazon Titan Text
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Premier.
model_id = "amazon.titan-text-premier-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "inputText": prompt,
    "textGenerationConfig": {
        "maxTokenCount": 512,
        "temperature": 0.5,
    },
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
    modelId=model_id, body=request
)

# Extract and print the response text in real-time.
for event in streaming_response["body"]:
    chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
    if "outputText" in chunk:
        print(chunk["outputText"], end="")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Titan Text Embeddings

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to:

- Get started creating your first embedding.
- Create embeddings configuring the number of dimensions and normalization (V2 only).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create your first embedding with Amazon Titan Text Embeddings.

```
# Generate and print an embedding with Amazon Titan Text Embeddings V2.

import boto3
import json

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Titan Text Embeddings V2.
model_id = "amazon.titan-embed-text-v2:0"

# The text to convert to an embedding.
input_text = "Please recommend books with a theme similar to the movie 'Inception'."

# Create the request for the model.
native_request = {"inputText": input_text}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the model's native response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the generated embedding and the input text token count.
embedding = model_response["embedding"]
```

```
input_token_count = model_response["inputTextTokenCount"]

print("\nYour input:")
print(input_text)
print(f"Number of input tokens: {input_token_count}")
print(f"Size of the generated embedding: {len(embedding)}")
print("Embedding:")
print(embedding)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
```

```
# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Document understanding

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Anthropic Claude on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv, and
 txt
```

```
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
    "messages": [
        {
            "role": "user",
            "content": [{"type": "text", "text": prompt}],
        }
    ],
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())
```

```
# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["content"][0]["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Anthropic Claude
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
model_id = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
```

```
    "anthropic_version": "bedrock-2023-05-31",
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
    "messages": [
        {
            "role": "user",
            "content": [{"type": "text", "text": prompt}],
        }
    ],
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
    modelId=model_id, body=request
)

# Extract and print the response text in real-time.
for event in streaming_response["body"]:
    chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
    if chunk["type"] == "content_block_delta":
        print(chunk["delta"].get("text", ""), end="")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution script of the demo. This script orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
"""
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
"""

import boto3
import logging
from enum import Enum

import utils.tool_use_print_utils as output
import weather_tool

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(message)s")

AWS_REGION = "us-east-1"


# For the most recent list of models supported by the Converse API's tool use
 functionality, visit:
# https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/conversation-inference.html
class SupportedModels(Enum):
    CLAUDE_OPUS = "anthropic.claude-3-opus-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_SONNET = "anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_HAIKU = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R_PLUS = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"
```

```
# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
MODEL_ID = SupportedModels.CLAUDE_HAIKU.value

SYSTEM_PROMPT = """
You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-specified
 locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates from
 the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it in
 your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest other
 options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
"""

# The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
# This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
MAX_RECURSIONS = 5


class ToolUseDemo:
    """
    Demonstrates the tool use feature with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        # Prepare the system prompt
        self.system_prompt = [{"text": SYSTEM_PROMPT}]

        # Prepare the tool configuration with the weather tool's specification
```

```
        self.tool_config = {"tools": [weather_tool.get_tool_spec()]}

        # Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the specified AWS Region.
        self.bedrockRuntimeClient = boto3.client(
            "bedrock-runtime", region_name=AWS_REGION
        )

    def run(self):
        """
        Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
Bedrock.
        """
        # Print the greeting and a short user guide
        output.header()

        # Start with an emtpy conversation
        conversation = []

        # Get the first user input
        user_input = self._get_user_input()

        while user_input is not None:
            # Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            message = {"role": "user", "content": [{"text": user_input}]}
            conversation.append(message)

            # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            bedrock_response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

            # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
            # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            self._process_model_response(
                bedrock_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
            )

            # Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            user_input = self._get_user_input()

        output.footer()

    def _send_conversation_to_bedrock(self, conversation):
        """
```

```
        Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.

        :param conversation: The conversation history including the next message to
send.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock.
        """
        output.call_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return self.bedrockRuntimeClient.converse(
            modelId=MODEL_ID,
            messages=conversation,
            system=self.system_prompt,
            toolConfig=self.tool_config,
        )

    def _process_model_response(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions
        based on the stop reason.

        :param model_response: The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        if max_recursion <= 0:
            # Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            logging.warning(
                "Warning: Maximum number of recursions reached. Please try again."
            )
            exit(1)

        # Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        message = model_response["output"]["message"]
        conversation.append(message)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "tool_use":
```

```
            # If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
handler
            self._handle_tool_use(message, conversation, max_recursion)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "end_turn":
            # If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text, and
finish the process
            output.model_response(message["content"][0]["text"])
            return

    def _handle_tool_use(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
        The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.

        :param model_response: The model's response containing the tool use request.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        # Initialize an empty list of tool results
        tool_results = []

        # The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for content_block in model_response["content"]:
            if "text" in content_block:
                # If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                output.model_response(content_block["text"])

            if "toolUse" in content_block:
                # If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the tool
                tool_response = self._invoke_tool(content_block["toolUse"])

                # Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of results
                tool_results.append(
                    {
                        "toolResult": {
                            "toolUseId": (tool_response["toolUseId"]),
                            "content": [{"json": tool_response["content"]}],
                        }
```

```
                    }
                )

        # Embed the tool results in a new user message
        message = {"role": "user", "content": tool_results}

        # Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.append(message)

        # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
        # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        self._process_model_response(response, conversation, max_recursion - 1)

    def _invoke_tool(self, payload):
        """
        Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
        If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.

        :param payload: The payload containing the tool name and input data.
        :return: The tool's response or an error message.
        """
        tool_name = payload["name"]

        if tool_name == "Weather_Tool":
            input_data = payload["input"]
            output.tool_use(tool_name, input_data)

            # Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided by
            response = weather_tool.fetch_weather_data(input_data)
        else:
            error_message = (
                f"The requested tool with name '{tool_name}' does not exist."
            )
            response = {"error": "true", "message": error_message}

        return {"toolUseId": payload["toolUseId"], "content": response}

    @staticmethod
    def _get_user_input(prompt="Your weather info request"):
        """
```

```
        Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
        Returns None if the user enters 'x' to exit.

        :param prompt: The prompt to display to the user.
        :return: The user's input or None if the user chooses to exit.
        """
        output.separator()
        user_input = input(f"{prompt} (x to exit): ")

        if user_input == "":
            prompt = "Please enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
 city"
            return ToolUseDemo._get_user_input(prompt)

        elif user_input.lower() == "x":
            return None

        else:
            return user_input


if __name__ == "__main__":
    tool_use_demo = ToolUseDemo()
    tool_use_demo.run()
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
import requests
from requests.exceptions import RequestException


def get_tool_spec():
    """
    Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.

    :return: The tool specification for the Weather tool.
```

```
    """
    return {
        "toolSpec": {
            "name": "Weather_Tool",
            "description": "Get the current weather for a given location, based on
 its WGS84 coordinates.",
            "inputSchema": {
                "json": {
                    "type": "object",
                    "properties": {
                        "latitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                        "longitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                    },
                    "required": ["latitude", "longitude"],
                }
            },
        }
    }


def fetch_weather_data(input_data):
    """
    Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-Meteo
 API.
    Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.

    :param input_data: The input data containing the latitude and longitude.
    :return: The weather data or an error message.
    """
    endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast"
    latitude = input_data.get("latitude")
    longitude = input_data.get("longitude", "")
    params = {"latitude": latitude, "longitude": longitude, "current_weather": True}

    try:
        response = requests.get(endpoint, params=params)
```

```
        weather_data = {"weather_data": response.json()}
        response.raise_for_status()
        return weather_data
    except RequestException as e:
        return e.response.json()
    except Exception as e:
        return {"error": type(e), "message": str(e)}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Cohere Command

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
```

```
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Cohere Command, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Cohere Command
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Document understanding

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Cohere Command models on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Command R+.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv, and
 txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
```

```
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModel: Command R and R+

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+.
```

```
import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "message": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModel: Command and Command Light

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
model_id = "cohere.command-light-text-v14"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
```

```
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["generations"][0]["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream: Command R and R+

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command R and R+
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command R.
model_id = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "message": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "generations" in chunk:
            print(chunk["generations"][0]["text"], end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream: Command and Command Light

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Cohere Command, using the Invoke Model API with a response stream.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Cohere Command
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Command Light.
model_id = "cohere.command-light-text-v14"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )
```

```
    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "generations" in chunk:
            print(chunk["generations"][0]["text"], end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary execution script of the demo. This script orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
"""
This demo illustrates a tool use scenario using Amazon Bedrock's Converse API and a
 weather tool.
The script interacts with a foundation model on Amazon Bedrock to provide weather
 information based on user
input. It uses the Open-Meteo API (https://open-meteo.com) to retrieve current
 weather data for a given location.
"""
```

```
import boto3
import logging
from enum import Enum

import utils.tool_use_print_utils as output
import weather_tool

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(message)s")

AWS_REGION = "us-east-1"


# For the most recent list of models supported by the Converse API's tool use
 functionality, visit:
# https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/conversation-inference.html
class SupportedModels(Enum):
    CLAUDE_OPUS = "anthropic.claude-3-opus-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_SONNET = "anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0"
    CLAUDE_HAIKU = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R = "cohere.command-r-v1:0"
    COHERE_COMMAND_R_PLUS = "cohere.command-r-plus-v1:0"


# Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
MODEL_ID = SupportedModels.CLAUDE_HAIKU.value

SYSTEM_PROMPT = """
You are a weather assistant that provides current weather data for user-specified
 locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates from
 the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it in
 your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest other
 options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
```

```
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
"""

# The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
# This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
MAX_RECURSIONS = 5


class ToolUseDemo:
    """
    Demonstrates the tool use feature with the Amazon Bedrock Converse API.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        # Prepare the system prompt
        self.system_prompt = [{"text": SYSTEM_PROMPT}]

        # Prepare the tool configuration with the weather tool's specification
        self.tool_config = {"tools": [weather_tool.get_tool_spec()]}

        # Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the specified AWS Region.
        self.bedrockRuntimeClient = boto3.client(
            "bedrock-runtime", region_name=AWS_REGION
        )

    def run(self):
        """
        Starts the conversation with the user and handles the interaction with
 Bedrock.
        """
        # Print the greeting and a short user guide
        output.header()

        # Start with an emtpy conversation
        conversation = []

        # Get the first user input
        user_input = self._get_user_input()

        while user_input is not None:
```

```
            # Create a new message with the user input and append it to the
conversation
            message = {"role": "user", "content": [{"text": user_input}]}
            conversation.append(message)

            # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
            bedrock_response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

            # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
            # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
            self._process_model_response(
                bedrock_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
            )

            # Repeat the loop until the user decides to exit the application
            user_input = self._get_user_input()

        output.footer()

    def _send_conversation_to_bedrock(self, conversation):
        """
        Sends the conversation, the system prompt, and the tool spec to Amazon
Bedrock, and returns the response.

        :param conversation: The conversation history including the next message to
send.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock.
        """
        output.call_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Send the conversation, system prompt, and tool configuration, and return
the response
        return self.bedrockRuntimeClient.converse(
            modelId=MODEL_ID,
            messages=conversation,
            system=self.system_prompt,
            toolConfig=self.tool_config,
        )

    def _process_model_response(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
```

```
        Processes the response received via Amazon Bedrock and performs the
necessary actions
        based on the stop reason.

        :param model_response: The model's response returned via Amazon Bedrock.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
        """

        if max_recursion <= 0:
            # Stop the process, the number of recursive calls could indicate an
infinite loop
            logging.warning(
                "Warning: Maximum number of recursions reached. Please try again."
            )
            exit(1)

        # Append the model's response to the ongoing conversation
        message = model_response["output"]["message"]
        conversation.append(message)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "tool_use":
            # If the stop reason is "tool_use", forward everything to the tool use
handler
            self._handle_tool_use(message, conversation, max_recursion)

        if model_response["stopReason"] == "end_turn":
            # If the stop reason is "end_turn", print the model's response text, and
finish the process
            output.model_response(message["content"][0]["text"])
            return

    def _handle_tool_use(
        self, model_response, conversation, max_recursion=MAX_RECURSIONS
    ):
        """
        Handles the tool use case by invoking the specified tool and sending the
tool's response back to Bedrock.
        The tool response is appended to the conversation, and the conversation is
sent back to Amazon Bedrock for further processing.

        :param model_response: The model's response containing the tool use request.
        :param conversation: The conversation history.
        :param max_recursion: The maximum number of recursive calls allowed.
```

```
        """

        # Initialize an empty list of tool results
        tool_results = []

        # The model's response can consist of multiple content blocks
        for content_block in model_response["content"]:
            if "text" in content_block:
                # If the content block contains text, print it to the console
                output.model_response(content_block["text"])

            if "toolUse" in content_block:
                # If the content block is a tool use request, forward it to the tool
                tool_response = self._invoke_tool(content_block["toolUse"])

                # Add the tool use ID and the tool's response to the list of results
                tool_results.append(
                    {
                        "toolResult": {
                            "toolUseId": (tool_response["toolUseId"]),
                            "content": [{"json": tool_response["content"]}],
                        }
                    }
                )

        # Embed the tool results in a new user message
        message = {"role": "user", "content": tool_results}

        # Append the new message to the ongoing conversation
        conversation.append(message)

        # Send the conversation to Amazon Bedrock
        response = self._send_conversation_to_bedrock(conversation)

        # Recursively handle the model's response until the model has returned
        # its final response or the recursion counter has reached 0
        self._process_model_response(response, conversation, max_recursion - 1)

    def _invoke_tool(self, payload):
        """
        Invokes the specified tool with the given payload and returns the tool's
response.
        If the requested tool does not exist, an error message is returned.
```

```
        :param payload: The payload containing the tool name and input data.
        :return: The tool's response or an error message.
        """
        tool_name = payload["name"]

        if tool_name == "Weather_Tool":
            input_data = payload["input"]
            output.tool_use(tool_name, input_data)

            # Invoke the weather tool with the input data provided by
            response = weather_tool.fetch_weather_data(input_data)
        else:
            error_message = (
                f"The requested tool with name '{tool_name}' does not exist."
            )
            response = {"error": "true", "message": error_message}

        return {"toolUseId": payload["toolUseId"], "content": response}

    @staticmethod
    def _get_user_input(prompt="Your weather info request"):
        """
        Prompts the user for input and returns the user's response.
        Returns None if the user enters 'x' to exit.

        :param prompt: The prompt to display to the user.
        :return: The user's input or None if the user chooses to exit.
        """
        output.separator()
        user_input = input(f"{prompt} (x to exit): ")

        if user_input == "":
            prompt = "Please enter your weather info request, e.g. the name of a
 city"
            return ToolUseDemo._get_user_input(prompt)

        elif user_input.lower() == "x":
            return None

        else:
            return user_input


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    tool_use_demo = ToolUseDemo()
    tool_use_demo.run()
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
import requests
from requests.exceptions import RequestException


def get_tool_spec():
    """
    Returns the JSON Schema specification for the Weather tool. The tool
 specification
    defines the input schema and describes the tool's functionality.
    For more information, see https://json-schema.org/understanding-json-schema/
reference.

    :return: The tool specification for the Weather tool.
    """
    return {
        "toolSpec": {
            "name": "Weather_Tool",
            "description": "Get the current weather for a given location, based on
 its WGS84 coordinates.",
            "inputSchema": {
                "json": {
                    "type": "object",
                    "properties": {
                        "latitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                        "longitude": {
                            "type": "string",
                            "description": "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.",
                        },
                    },
                    "required": ["latitude", "longitude"],
```

```
                }
            },
        }
    }


def fetch_weather_data(input_data):
    """
    Fetches weather data for the given latitude and longitude using the Open-Meteo
 API.
    Returns the weather data or an error message if the request fails.

    :param input_data: The input data containing the latitude and longitude.
    :return: The weather data or an error message.
    """
    endpoint = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast"
    latitude = input_data.get("latitude")
    longitude = input_data.get("longitude", "")
    params = {"latitude": latitude, "longitude": longitude, "current_weather": True}

    try:
        response = requests.get(endpoint, params=params)
        weather_data = {"weather_data": response.json()}
        response.raise_for_status()
        return weather_data
    except RequestException as e:
        return e.response.json()
    except Exception as e:
        return {"error": type(e), "message": str(e)}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

DeepSeek

Document understanding

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with DeepSeek on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. DeepSeek-R1
model_id = "us.deepseek.r1-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv, and
 txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]
```

```
try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 2000, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the reasoning and response text.
    reasoning, response_text = "", ""
    for item in response["output"]["message"]["content"]:
        for key, value in item.items():
            if key == "reasoningContent":
                reasoning = value["reasoningText"]["text"]
            elif key == "text":
                response_text = value

    print(f"\nReasoning:\n{reasoning}")
    print(f"\nResponse:\n{response_text}")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Meta Llama

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
```

```
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Meta Llama
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 8b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
```

```
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Document understanding

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Llama on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g. Llama 3.1 8B Instruct.
model_id = "us.meta.llama3-1-8b-instruct-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()

# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv, and
 txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
```

```
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-west-2")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"""
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
```

```
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
"""

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_gen_len": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["generation"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Meta Llama 3
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-west-2")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Llama 3 70b Instruct.
model_id = "meta.llama3-70b-instruct-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Llama 3's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"""
<|begin_of_text|><|start_header_id|>user<|end_header_id|>
{prompt}
<|eot_id|>
<|start_header_id|>assistant<|end_header_id|>
"""

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_gen_len": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
```

```
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "generation" in chunk:
            print(chunk["generation"], end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Mistral AI

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral.
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Mistral, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the Conversation API to send a text message to Mistral
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Start a conversation with the user message.
user_message = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [{"text": user_message}],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    streaming_response = client.converse_stream(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 512, "temperature": 0.5, "topP": 0.9},
    )

    # Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for chunk in streaming_response["stream"]:
```

```
        if "contentBlockDelta" in chunk:
            text = chunk["contentBlockDelta"]["delta"]["text"]
            print(text, end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Document understanding

The following code example shows how to send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock.

```
# Send and process a document with Mistral models on Amazon Bedrock.

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Load the document
with open("example-data/amazon-nova-service-cards.pdf", "rb") as file:
    document_bytes = file.read()
```

```
# Start a conversation with a user message and the document
conversation = [
    {
        "role": "user",
        "content": [
            {"text": "Briefly compare the models described in this document"},
            {
                "document": {
                    # Available formats: html, md, pdf, doc/docx, xls/xlsx, csv, and
 txt
                    "format": "pdf",
                    "name": "Amazon Nova Service Cards",
                    "source": {"bytes": document_bytes},
                }
            },
        ],
    }
]

try:
    # Send the message to the model, using a basic inference configuration.
    response = client.converse(
        modelId=model_id,
        messages=conversation,
        inferenceConfig={"maxTokens": 500, "temperature": 0.3},
    )

    # Extract and print the response text.
    response_text = response["output"]["message"]["content"][0]["text"]
    print(response_text)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral models, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral.

import boto3
import json
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]"

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
```

```
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}'. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract and print the response text.
response_text = model_response["outputs"][0]["text"]
print(response_text)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

InvokeModelWithResponseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Mistral AI models, using the Invoke Model API, and print the response stream.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use the Invoke Model API to send a text message and process the response stream in real-time.

```
# Use the native inference API to send a text message to Mistral
# and print the response stream.

import boto3
import json

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Mistral Large.
```

```
model_id = "mistral.mistral-large-2402-v1:0"

# Define the prompt for the model.
prompt = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one line."

# Embed the prompt in Mistral's instruction format.
formatted_prompt = f"<s>[INST] {prompt} [/INST]"

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "prompt": formatted_prompt,
    "max_tokens": 512,
    "temperature": 0.5,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

try:
    # Invoke the model with the request.
    streaming_response = client.invoke_model_with_response_stream(
        modelId=model_id, body=request
    )

    # Extract and print the response text in real-time.
    for event in streaming_response["body"]:
        chunk = json.loads(event["chunk"]["bytes"])
        if "outputs" in chunk:
            print(chunk["outputs"][0].get("text"), end="")

except (ClientError, Exception) as e:
    print(f"ERROR: Can't invoke '{model_id}''. Reason: {e}")
    exit(1)
```

- For API details, see InvokeModelWithResponseStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Stable Diffusion

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
# Use the native inference API to create an image with Stability.ai Stable Diffusion

import base64
import boto3
import json
import os
import random

# Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region of your choice.
client = boto3.client("bedrock-runtime", region_name="us-east-1")

# Set the model ID, e.g., Stable Diffusion XL 1.
model_id = "stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1"

# Define the image generation prompt for the model.
prompt = "A stylized picture of a cute old steampunk robot."

# Generate a random seed.
seed = random.randint(0, 4294967295)

# Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
native_request = {
    "text_prompts": [{"text": prompt}],
    "style_preset": "photographic",
    "seed": seed,
```

```
    "cfg_scale": 10,
    "steps": 30,
}

# Convert the native request to JSON.
request = json.dumps(native_request)

# Invoke the model with the request.
response = client.invoke_model(modelId=model_id, body=request)

# Decode the response body.
model_response = json.loads(response["body"].read())

# Extract the image data.
base64_image_data = model_response["artifacts"][0]["base64"]

# Save the generated image to a local folder.
i, output_dir = 1, "output"
if not os.path.exists(output_dir):
    os.makedirs(output_dir)
while os.path.exists(os.path.join(output_dir, f"stability_{i}.png")):
    i += 1

image_data = base64.b64decode(base64_image_data)

image_path = os.path.join(output_dir, f"stability_{i}.png")
with open(image_path, "wb") as file:
    file.write(image_data)

print(f"The generated image has been saved to {image_path}")
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Agents examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Bedrock Agents.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAgent`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent.

```
    def create_agent(self, agent_name, foundation_model, role_arn, instruction):
        """
        Creates an agent that orchestrates interactions between foundation models,
        data sources, software applications, user conversations, and APIs to carry
        out tasks to help customers.

        :param agent_name: A name for the agent.
        :param foundation_model: The foundation model to be used for orchestration
by the agent.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions needed by the
agent.
        :param instruction: Instructions that tell the agent what it should do and
how it should
                            interact with users.
```

```
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
raises an exception.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.create_agent(
                agentName=agent_name,
                foundationModel=foundation_model,
                agentResourceRoleArn=role_arn,
                instruction=instruction,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Error: Couldn't create agent. Here's why: {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return response["agent"]
```

- For API details, see CreateAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAgentActionGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAgentActionGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent action group.

```
    def create_agent_action_group(
            self, name, description, agent_id, agent_version, function_arn,
api_schema
    ):
        """
        Creates an action group for an agent. An action group defines a set of
actions that an
```

```
        agent should carry out for the customer.

        :param name: The name to give the action group.
        :param description: The description of the action group.
        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent for which to create the
action group.
        :param agent_version: The version of the agent for which to create the
action group.
        :param function_arn: The ARN of the Lambda function containing the business
logic that is
                                carried out upon invoking the action.
        :param api_schema: Contains the OpenAPI schema for the action group.
        :return: Details about the action group that was created.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.create_agent_action_group(
                actionGroupName=name,
                description=description,
                agentId=agent_id,
                agentVersion=agent_version,
                actionGroupExecutor={"lambda": function_arn},
                apiSchema={"payload": api_schema},
            )
            agent_action_group = response["agentActionGroup"]
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Error: Couldn't create agent action group. Here's why:
{e}")
            raise
        else:
            return agent_action_group
```

- For API details, see CreateAgentActionGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAgentAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAgentAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an agent alias.

```
    def create_agent_alias(self, name, agent_id):
        """
        Creates an alias of an agent that can be used to deploy the agent.

        :param name: The name of the alias.
        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :return: Details about the alias that was created.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.create_agent_alias(
                agentAliasName=name, agentId=agent_id
            )
            agent_alias = response["agentAlias"]
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create agent alias. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return agent_alias
```

- For API details, see CreateAgentAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFlow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def create_flow(client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def):
    """
    Creates an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
    flow_name (str): The name for the new flow.
    role_arn (str):  The ARN for the IAM role that use flow uses.
    flow_def (json): The JSON definition of the flow that you want to create.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from CreateFlow.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Creating flow: %s.", flow_name)

        response = client.create_flow(
            name=flow_name,
            description=flow_description,
            executionRoleArn=role_arn,
            definition=flow_def
        )

        logger.info("Successfully created flow: %s. ID: %s",
                    flow_name,
                    {response['id']})

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error creating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error creating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateFlowAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFlowAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def create_flow_alias(client, flow_id, flow_version, name, description):
    """
    Creates an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        str: The ID for the flow alias.
    """

    try:
        logger.info("Creating flow alias for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        response = client.create_flow_alias(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            name=name,
            description=description,
```

```
            routingConfiguration=[
                {
                    "flowVersion": flow_version
                }
            ]
        )
        logger.info("Successfully created flow alias for %s.", flow_id)

        return response['id']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error creating alias for flow: %s - %s",
                flow_id, str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error creating alias for flow : %s - %s",
                flow_id, str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateFlowVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFlowVersion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def create_flow_version(client, flow_id, description):
    """
    Creates a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
```

```
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.
        description (str) : A description for the flow.

    Returns:
        str: The version for the flow.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Creating flow version for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        # Call CreateFlowVersion operation
        response = client.create_flow_version(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            description=description
        )

        logging.info("Successfully created flow version %s for flow %s.",
            response['version'], flow_id)

        return response['version']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error creating flow: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error creating flow : %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateFlowVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateKnowledgeBase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKnowledgeBase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def create_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, name, role_arn, description=None):
    """
    Creates a new knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        name (str): The name of the knowledge base.
        role_arn (str): The ARN of the IAM role that the knowledge base assumes to
 access resources.
        description (str, optional): A description of the knowledge base.

    Returns:
        dict: The details of the created knowledge base.
    """
    try:
        kwargs = {
            "name": name,
            "roleArn": role_arn,
            "knowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                "type": "VECTOR",
                "vectorKnowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                    "embeddingModelArn": "arn:aws:bedrock:us-east-1::foundation-
model/amazon.titan-embed-text-v1"
                }
            },
            "storageConfiguration": {
                "type": "OPENSEARCH_SERVERLESS",
                # Note: You will need to create an OpenSearch Serverless collection
 first and replace this ARN
                # with your actual collection ARN from the OpenSearch console. If
 you use the console instead,
                # you can use the quick-create flow to have Knowledge Bases create
 the collection for you.
                "opensearchServerlessConfiguration": {
                    "collectionArn": "arn:aws:aoss:us-
east-1::123456789012:collection/abcdefgh12345678defgh",
                        "fieldMapping": {
                        "metadataField": "metadata",
                        "textField": "text",
                        "vectorField": "vector"
                        },
                    "vectorIndexName": "test-uuid"
```

```
                    },
                },
            "clientToken": "test-client-token-" + str(uuid.uuid4())
        }

        if description:
            kwargs["description"] = description

        response = bedrock_agent_client.create_knowledge_base(**kwargs)

        logger.info("Created knowledge base with ID: %s", response["knowledgeBase"]
["knowledgeBaseId"])
        return response["knowledgeBase"]

    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't create knowledge base. Here's why: %s: %s",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreatePrompt`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePrompt`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def create_prompt(client, prompt_name, prompt_description, prompt_template,
 model_id=None):
    """
```

```
    Creates an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
    prompt_name (str): The name for the new prompt.
    prompt_description (str): The description for the new prompt.
    prompt_template (str): The template for the prompt.
    model_id (str, optional): The model ID to associate with the prompt.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from CreatePrompt.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Creating prompt: %s.", prompt_name)

        # Create a variant with the template
        variant = {
            "name": "default",
            "templateType": "TEXT",
            "templateConfiguration": {
                "text": {
                    "text": prompt_template,
                    "inputVariables": []
                }
            }
        }

        # Extract input variables from the template
        # Look for patterns like {{variable_name}}

        variables = re.findall(r'{{(.*?)}}', prompt_template)
        for var in variables:
            variant["templateConfiguration"]["text"]
["inputVariables"].append({"name": var.strip()})

        # Add model ID if provided
        if model_id:
            variant["modelId"] = model_id

        # Create the prompt with the variant
        create_params = {
            'name': prompt_name,
            'description': prompt_description,
            'variants': [variant]
```

```
        }

        response = client.create_prompt(**create_params)

        logger.info("Successfully created prompt: %s. ID: %s",
                    prompt_name,
                    response['id'])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error creating prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error creating prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreatePrompt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreatePromptVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePromptVersion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a version of an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def create_prompt_version(client, prompt_id, description=None):
    """
    Creates a version of an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
```

```
    prompt_id (str): The identifier of the prompt to create a version for.
    description (str, optional): A description for the version.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from CreatePromptVersion.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Creating version for prompt ID: %s.", prompt_id)

        create_params = {
            'promptIdentifier': prompt_id
        }

        if description:
            create_params['description'] = description

        response = client.create_prompt_version(**create_params)

        logger.info("Successfully created prompt version: %s", response['version'])
        logger.info("Prompt version ARN: %s", response['arn'])

        return response


    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error creating prompt version: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error creating prompt version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreatePromptVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAgent`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an agent.

```
    def delete_agent(self, agent_id):
        """
        Deletes an Amazon Bedrock agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent to delete.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
raises an exception.
        """

        try:
            response = self.client.delete_agent(
                agentId=agent_id, skipResourceInUseCheck=False
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't delete agent. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAgentAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAgentAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an agent alias.

```
    def delete_agent_alias(self, agent_id, agent_alias_id):
        """
        Deletes an alias of an Amazon Bedrock agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent that the alias belongs
to.
        :param agent_alias_id: The unique identifier of the alias to delete.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
raises an exception.
        """

        try:
            response = self.client.delete_agent_alias(
                agentId=agent_id, agentAliasId=agent_alias_id
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't delete agent alias. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteAgentAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFlow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def delete_flow(client, flow_id):
    """
    Deletes an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
    flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow that you want to delete.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the DeleteFLow operation.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow ID: %s.",
                    flow_id)

        # Call DeleteFlow operation
        response = client.delete_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            skipResourceInUseCheck=True
        )

        logger.info("Finished deleting flow ID: %s", flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error deleting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error deleting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteFlowAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFlowAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def delete_flow_alias(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Deletes an Amazon Bedrock flow alias.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the call to DetectFLowAlias
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow alias %s for flow: %s.", flow_alias_id, flow_id)

        # Delete the flow alias.
        response = client.delete_flow_alias(
            aliasIdentifier=flow_alias_id,
            flowIdentifier=flow_id
        )

        logging.info("Successfully deleted flow version for %s.", flow_id)
        return response
```

```
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error deleting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected deleting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteFlowVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFlowVersion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def delete_flow_version(client, flow_id, flow_version):
    """
    Deletes a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DeleteFlowVersion.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow version %s for flow: %s.",flow_version, flow_id)

        # Call DeleteFlowVersion operation
        response = client.delete_flow_version(
```

```
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            flowVersion=flow_version
        )

        logging.info("Successfully deleted flow version %s for %s.",
                flow_version,
                flow_id)
        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error deleting flow version: %s ", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected deleting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFlowVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteKnowledgeBase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKnowledgeBase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def delete_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, knowledge_base_id):
    """
    Deletes a knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        knowledge_base_id (str): The ID of the knowledge base to delete.
```

```
    Returns:
        bool: True if the deletion was successful.
    """
    try:
        bedrock_agent_client.delete_knowledge_base(
            knowledgeBaseId=knowledge_base_id
        )

        logger.info("Deleted knowledge base: %s", knowledge_base_id)
        return True
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't delete knowledge base %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
            knowledge_base_id,
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeletePrompt`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePrompt`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def delete_prompt(client, prompt_id):
    """
    Deletes an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
```

```
    prompt_id (str): The identifier of the prompt that you want to delete.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the DeletePrompt operation.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Deleting prompt ID: %s.", prompt_id)

        response = client.delete_prompt(
            promptIdentifier=prompt_id
        )

        logger.info("Finished deleting prompt ID: %s", prompt_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error deleting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error deleting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePrompt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAgent`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an agent.

```
    def get_agent(self, agent_id, log_error=True):
```

```
        """
        Gets information about an agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :param log_error: Whether to log any errors that occur when getting the
agent.
                          If True, errors will be logged to the logger. If False,
errors
                          will still be raised, but not logged.
        :return: The information about the requested agent.
        """

        try:
            response = self.client.get_agent(agentId=agent_id)
            agent = response["agent"]
        except ClientError as e:
            if log_error:
                logger.error(f"Couldn't get agent {agent_id}. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return agent
```

- For API details, see GetAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFlow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def get_flow(client, flow_id):
```

```
    """
    Gets an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow that you want to get.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the GetFlow operation.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Getting flow ID: %s.",
                    flow_id)

        # Call GetFlow operation.
        response = client.get_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id
        )

        logger.info("Retrieved flow ID: %s. Name: %s", flow_id,
                    response['name'])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error getting flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetFlowVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFlowVersion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def get_flow_version(client, flow_id, flow_version):
    """
    Gets information about a version of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.
        flow_version (str): The flow version of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the call to GetFlowVersion.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Deleting flow version for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        # Call GetFlowVersion operation
        response = client.get_flow_version(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            flowVersion=flow_version
        )

        logging.info("Successfully got flow version %s information for flow %s.",
                     flow_version,
                     flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error getting flow version: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error getting flow version: %s", str(e))
```

```
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetFlowVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetKnowledgeBase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetKnowledgeBase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def get_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, knowledge_base_id):
    """
    Gets details about a specific knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        knowledge_base_id (str): The ID of the knowledge base.

    Returns:
        dict: The details of the knowledge base.
    """
    try:
        response = bedrock_agent_client.get_knowledge_base(
            knowledgeBaseId=knowledge_base_id
        )

        logger.info("Retrieved knowledge base: %s", knowledge_base_id)
        return response["knowledgeBase"]
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't get knowledge base %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
            knowledge_base_id,
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetPrompt`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPrompt`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

```
def get_prompt(client, prompt_id):
    """
    Gets an Amazon Bedrock managed prompt.

    Args:
    client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
    prompt_id (str): The identifier of the prompt that you want to get.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from the GetPrompt operation.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Getting prompt ID: %s.", prompt_id)

        response = client.get_prompt(
            promptIdentifier=prompt_id
        )

        logger.info("Retrieved prompt ID: %s. Name: %s",
                    prompt_id,
                    response['name'])
```

```
        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error getting prompt: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see GetPrompt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAgentActionGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAgentActionGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the action groups for an agent.

```
    def list_agent_action_groups(self, agent_id, agent_version):
        """
        List the action groups for a version of an Amazon Bedrock Agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :param agent_version: The version of the agent.
        :return: The list of action group summaries for the version of the agent.
        """

        try:
            action_groups = []

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_agent_action_groups")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
```

```
                    agentId=agent_id,
                    agentVersion=agent_version,
                    PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 10},
            ):
                action_groups.extend(page["actionGroupSummaries"])

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't list action groups. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return action_groups
```

- For API details, see ListAgentActionGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAgentKnowledgeBases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAgentKnowledgeBases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the knowledge bases associated with an agent.

```
    def list_agent_knowledge_bases(self, agent_id, agent_version):
        """
        List the knowledge bases associated with a version of an Amazon Bedrock
Agent.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent.
        :param agent_version: The version of the agent.
        :return: The list of knowledge base summaries for the version of the agent.
        """

        try:
            knowledge_bases = []
```

```
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_agent_knowledge_bases")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                    agentId=agent_id,
                    agentVersion=agent_version,
                    PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 10},
            ):
                knowledge_bases.extend(page["agentKnowledgeBaseSummaries"])

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't list knowledge bases. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return knowledge_bases
```

- For API details, see ListAgentKnowledgeBases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAgents`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAgents`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the agents belonging to an account.

```
    def list_agents(self):
        """
        List the available Amazon Bedrock Agents.

        :return: The list of available bedrock agents.
        """

        try:
            all_agents = []
```

```
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_agents")
            for page in paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 10}):
                all_agents.extend(page["agentSummaries"])

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't list agents. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return all_agents
```

- For API details, see ListAgents in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListFlowAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFlowAliases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the aliases for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def list_flow_aliases(client, flow_id):
    """
    Lists the aliases of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from ListFlowAliases.
    """
    try:
```

```
        finished = False

        logger.info("Listing flow aliases for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        print(f"Aliases for flow: {flow_id}")

        response = client.list_flow_aliases(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            maxResults=10)

        while finished is False:

            for alias in response['flowAliasSummaries']:
                print(f"Alias Name: {alias['name']}")
                print(f"ID: {alias['id']}")
                print(f"Description: {alias.get('description', 'No
description')}\n")

                if 'nextToken' in response:
                    next_token = response['nextToken']
                    response = client.list_flow_aliases(maxResults=10,
                                                        nextToken=next_token)
                else:
                    finished = True

        logging.info("Successfully listed flow aliases for flow %s.",
                flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error listing flow aliases: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error listing flow aliases: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListFlowAliases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListFlowVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFlowVersions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List the versions of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def list_flow_versions(client, flow_id):
    """
    Lists the versions of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from ListFlowVersions.
    """
    try:

        finished = False

        logger.info("Listing flow versions for flow: %s.", flow_id)

        response = client.list_flow_versions(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            maxResults=10)

        while finished is False:

            print(f"Versions for flow:{flow_id}")
            for version in response['flowVersionSummaries']:
                print(f"Version: {version['version']}")
                print(f"Status: {version['status']}\n")

                if 'nextToken' in response:
                    next_token = response['nextToken']
                    response = client.list_flow_versions(maxResults=10,
                                                         nextToken=next_token)
                else:
```

```
                    finished = True


        logging.info("Successfully listed flow versions for flow %s.",
                flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListFlowVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListFlows`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFlows`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List Amazon Bedrock flows.

```
def list_flows(client):
    """
    Lists versions of an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
```

```
        Nothing.
    """
    try:
        finished = False

        logger.info("Listing flows:")

        response = client.list_flows(maxResults=10)

        while finished is False:

            for flow in response['flowSummaries']:
                print(f"ID: {flow['id']}")
                print(f"Name: {flow['name']}")
                print(
                    f"Description: {flow.get('description', 'No description')}")
                print(f"Latest version: {flow['version']}")
                print(f"Status: {flow['status']}\n")

            if 'nextToken' in response:
                next_token = response['nextToken']
                response = client.list_flows(maxResults=10,
                                             nextToken=next_token)
            else:
                finished = True

        logging.info("Successfully listed flows.")


    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error listing flow versions: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListFlows in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListKnowledgeBases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKnowledgeBases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List Amazon Bedrock knowledge Bases.

```
def list_knowledge_bases(bedrock_agent_client, max_results=None):
    """
    Lists the knowledge bases in your AWS account.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        max_results (int, optional): The maximum number of knowledge bases to
 return.

    Returns:
        list: A list of knowledge base details.
    """
    try:
        kwargs = {}
        if max_results is not None:
            kwargs["maxResults"] = max_results

        # Initialize an empty list to store all knowledge bases
        all_knowledge_bases = []

        # Use paginator to handle pagination automatically
        paginator = bedrock_agent_client.get_paginator('list_knowledge_bases')
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(**kwargs)

        # Iterate through each page of results
        for page in page_iterator:
            all_knowledge_bases.extend(page.get('knowledgeBaseSummaries', []))

        logger.info("Found %s knowledge bases.", len(all_knowledge_bases))
        return all_knowledge_bases
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't list knowledge bases. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListKnowledgeBases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListPrompts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPrompts`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List Amazon Bedrock managed prompts.

```
def list_prompts(client, max_results=10):
    """
    Lists Amazon Bedrock managed prompts.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        max_results (int): Maximum number of results to return per page.

    Returns:
        list: A list of prompt summaries.
    """
    try:
        logger.info("Listing prompts:")

        # Create a paginator for the list_prompts operation
        paginator = client.get_paginator('list_prompts')

        # Create the pagination parameters
```

```
        pagination_config = {
            'maxResults': max_results
        }

        # Initialize an empty list to store all prompts
        all_prompts = []

        # Iterate through all pages
        for page in paginator.paginate(**pagination_config):
            all_prompts.extend(page.get('promptSummaries', []))

        logger.info("Successfully listed %s prompts.", len(all_prompts))
        return all_prompts

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error listing prompts: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error listing prompts: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListPrompts in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PrepareAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `PrepareAgent`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Prepare an agent for internal testing.

```
    def prepare_agent(self, agent_id):
        """
```

```
        Creates a DRAFT version of the agent that can be used for internal testing.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent to prepare.
        :return: The response from Amazon Bedrock Agents if successful, otherwise
 raises an exception.
        """
        try:
            prepared_agent_details = self.client.prepare_agent(agentId=agent_id)
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't prepare agent. {e}")
            raise
        else:
            return prepared_agent_details
```

- For API details, see PrepareAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PrepareFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `PrepareFlow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Prepare an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def prepare_flow(client, flow_id):
    """
    Prepares an Amazon Bedrock Flow.

    Args:
        client: Amazon Bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow that you want to prepare.

    Returns:
```

```
        str: The status of the flow preparation
    """
    try:

        # Prepare the flow.
        logger.info("Preparing flow ID: %s",
                    flow_id)

        response = client.prepare_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id
        )

        status = response.get('status')

        while status == "Preparing":
            logger.info("Preparing flow ID: %s. Status %s",
                        flow_id, status)

            sleep(5)
            response = client.get_flow(
                flowIdentifier=flow_id
            )
            status = response.get('status')
            print(f"Flow Status: {status}")

        if status == "Prepared":
            logger.info("Finished preparing flow ID: %s. Status %s",
                        flow_id, status)
        else:
            logger.warning("flow ID: %s not prepared. Status %s",
                           flow_id, status)

        return status

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error preparing flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error preparing flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see PrepareFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

UpdateFlow

The following code example shows how to use UpdateFlow.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an Amazon Bedrock Flow.

```
def update_flow(client, flow_id, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def):
    """
    Updates an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
    client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
    flow_id (str): The ID for the flow that you want to update.
    flow_name (str): The name for the flow.
    role_arn (str):  The ARN for the IAM role that use flow uses.
    flow_def (json): The JSON definition of the flow that you want to create.

    Returns:
        dict: Flow information if successful.
    """
    try:

        logger.info("Updating flow: %s.", flow_id)

        response = client.update_flow(
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            name=flow_name,
            description=flow_description,
            executionRoleArn=role_arn,
            definition=flow_def
        )

        logger.info("Successfully updated flow: %s. ID: %s",
                    flow_name,
                    {response['id']})
```

```
        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error updating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexepcted error updating flow: %s", {str(e)})
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateFlowAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFlowAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

```
def update_flow_alias(client, flow_id, alias_id, flow_version, name, description):
    """
    Updates an alias for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        flow_id (str): The identifier of the flow.

    Returns:
        str: The response from UpdateFlowAlias.
    """

    try:
        logger.info("Updating flow alias %s for flow: %s.", alias_id, flow_id)
```

```
        response = client.update_flow_alias(
            aliasIdentifier=alias_id,
            flowIdentifier=flow_id,
            name=name,
            description=description,
            routingConfiguration=[
                {
                    "flowVersion": flow_version
                }
            ]
        )
        logger.info("Successfully updated flow alias %s for %s.", alias_id, flow_id)

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception("Client error updating alias %s for flow: %s - %s",
                alias_id, flow_id, str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception("Unexpected error updating alias %s for flow : %s - %s",
                alias_id, flow_id, str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateFlowAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateKnowledgeBase`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateKnowledgeBase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an Amazon Bedrock knowledge base.

```
def update_knowledge_base(bedrock_agent_client, knowledge_base_id, name=None,
 description=None, role_arn=None):
    """
    Updates an existing knowledge base.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: The Boto3 Bedrock Agent client.
        knowledge_base_id (str): The ID of the knowledge base to update.
        name (str, optional): The new name for the knowledge base.
        description (str, optional): The new description for the knowledge base.
        role_arn (str, optional): The new IAM role ARN for the knowledge base.

    Returns:
        dict: The details of the updated knowledge base.
    """
    try:
        kwargs = {
            "knowledgeBaseId": knowledge_base_id,
            "knowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                "type": "VECTOR",
                "vectorKnowledgeBaseConfiguration": {
                    "embeddingModelArn": "arn:aws:bedrock:us-east-1::foundation-
model/amazon.titan-embed-text-v1"
                }
            }
        }

        if name:
            kwargs["name"] = name
        if description:
            kwargs["description"] = description
        if role_arn:
            kwargs["roleArn"] = role_arn

        response = bedrock_agent_client.update_knowledge_base(**kwargs)

        logger.info("Updated knowledge base: %s", knowledge_base_id)
        return response["knowledgeBase"]

    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't update knowledge base %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
            knowledge_base_id,
```

```
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateKnowledgeBase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create and invoke a flow

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an execution role for the flow.
- Create the flow.
- Deploy the fully configured flow.
- Invoke the flow with user-provided prompts.
- Delete all created resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generates a music playlist based on user-specified genre and number of songs.

```
from datetime import datetime
import logging
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from roles import create_flow_role, delete_flow_role, update_role_policy
from flow import create_flow, prepare_flow, delete_flow
from run_flow import run_playlist_flow
```

```
from flow_version import create_flow_version, delete_flow_version
from flow_alias import create_flow_alias, delete_flow_alias

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

def create_input_node(name):
    """
    Creates an input node configuration for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    The input node serves as the entry point for the flow and defines
    the initial document structure that will be passed to subsequent nodes.

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the input node.

    Returns:
        dict: The input node configuration.

    """
    return {
        "type": "Input",
        "name": name,
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "Object"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_prompt_node(name, model_id):
    """
    Creates a prompt node configuration for a Bedrock flow that generates music
 playlists.

    The prompt node defines an inline prompt template that creates a music playlist
 based on
    a specified genre and number of songs. The prompt uses two variables that are
 mapped from
    the input JSON object:
```

```
    - {{genre}}: The genre of music to create a playlist for
    - {{number}}: The number of songs to include in the playlist

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the prompt node.
        model_id (str): The identifier of the foundation model to use for the
prompt.

    Returns:
        dict: The prompt node.

    """

    return {
        "type": "Prompt",
        "name": name,
        "configuration": {
            "prompt": {
                "sourceConfiguration": {
                    "inline": {
                        "modelId": model_id,
                        "templateType": "TEXT",
                        "inferenceConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "temperature": 0.8
                            }
                        },
                        "templateConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "text": "Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting of
the following number of songs: {{number}}."
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "genre",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data.genre"
            },
            {
```

```
                "name": "number",
                "type": "Number",
                "expression": "$.data.number"
            }
        ],
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "modelCompletion",
                "type": "String"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_output_node(name):
    """
    Creates an output node configuration for a Bedrock flow.

    The output node validates that the output from the last node is a string
    and returns it unmodified. The input name must be "document".

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the output node.

    Returns:
        dict: The output node configuration containing the output node:

    """

    return {
        "type": "Output",
        "name": name,
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data"
            }
        ]
    }
```

```
def create_playlist_flow(client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
 prompt_model_id):
    """
    Creates the playlist generator flow.
    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        role_arn (str): Name for the new IAM role.
        prompt_model_id (str): The id of the model to use in the prompt node.
    Returns:
        dict: The response from the create_flow operation.
    """

    input_node = create_input_node("FlowInput")
    prompt_node = create_prompt_node("MakePlaylist", prompt_model_id)
    output_node = create_output_node("FlowOutput")

    # Create connections between the nodes
    connections = []

    #  First, create connections between the output of the flow
    # input node and each input of the prompt node.
    for prompt_node_input in prompt_node["inputs"]:
        connections.append(
            {
                "name": "_".join([input_node["name"], prompt_node["name"],
                                  prompt_node_input["name"]]),
                "source": input_node["name"],
                "target": prompt_node["name"],
                "type": "Data",
                "configuration": {
                    "data": {
                        "sourceOutput": input_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                        "targetInput": prompt_node_input["name"]
                    }
                }
            }
        )

    # Then, create a connection between the output of the prompt node and the input
 of the flow output node
    connections.append(
        {
            "name": "_".join([prompt_node["name"], output_node["name"]]),
            "source": prompt_node["name"],
```

```
            "target": output_node["name"],
            "type": "Data",
            "configuration": {
                "data": {
                    "sourceOutput": prompt_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                    "targetInput": output_node["inputs"][0]["name"]
                }
            }
        }
    )

    flow_def = {
        "nodes": [input_node, prompt_node, output_node],
        "connections": connections
    }

    # Create the flow.

    response = create_flow(
        client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def)

    return response



def get_model_arn(client, model_id):
    """
    Gets the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for a model.
    Args:
        client (str): Amazon Bedrock boto3 client.
        model_id (str): The id of the model.
    Returns:
        str: The ARN of the model.
    """

    try:
        # Call GetFoundationModelDetails operation
        response = client.get_foundation_model(modelIdentifier=model_id)

        # Extract model ARN from the response
        model_arn = response['modelDetails']['modelArn']

        return model_arn
```

```
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise


def prepare_flow_version_and_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                   flow_id):
    """
    Prepares the flow and then creates a flow version and flow alias.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        flowd_id (str): The ID of the flow that you want to prepare.
    Returns: The flow_version and flow_alias.

    """

    status = prepare_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    flow_version = None
    flow_alias = None

    if status == 'Prepared':

        # Create the flow version and alias.
        flow_version = create_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                                           flow_id,
                                           f"flow version for flow {flow_id}.")

        flow_alias = create_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                       flow_id,
                                       flow_version,
                                       "latest",
                                       f"Alias for flow {flow_id}, version
 {flow_version}")

    return flow_version, flow_alias



def delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
```

```
                            iam_client,
                            role_name,
                            flow_id,
                            flow_version,
                            flow_alias):
    """
    Deletes the flow, flow alias, flow version, and IAM roles.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        iam_client: Amazon IAM boto3 client.
        role_name (str): The name of the IAM role.
        flow_id (str): The id of the flow.
        flow_version (str): The version of the flow.
        flow_alias (str): The alias of the flow.
    """

    if flow_id is not None:
        if flow_alias is not None:
            delete_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias)
        if flow_version is not None:
            delete_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                        flow_id, flow_version)
        delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    if role_name is not None:
        delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)



def main():
    """
    Creates, runs, and optionally deletes a Bedrock flow for generating music
 playlists.

    Note:
        Requires valid AWS credentials in the default profile
    """

    delete_choice = "y"
    try:

        # Get various boto3 clients.
        session = boto3.Session(profile_name='default')
        bedrock_agent_runtime_client = session.client('bedrock-agent-runtime')
```

```
        bedrock_agent_client = session.client('bedrock-agent')
        bedrock_client = session.client('bedrock')
        iam_client = session.client('iam')

        role_name = None
        flow_id = None
        flow_version = None
        flow_alias = None

        #Change the model as needed.
        prompt_model_id = "amazon.nova-pro-v1:0"

        # Base the flow name on the current date and time
        current_time = datetime.now()
        timestamp = current_time.strftime("%Y-%m-%d-%H-%M-%S")
        flow_name = f"FlowPlayList_{timestamp}"
        flow_description = "A flow to generate a music playlist."

        # Create a role for the flow.
        role_name = f"BedrockFlowRole-{flow_name}"
        role = create_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        role_arn = role['Arn']

        # Create the flow.
        response = create_playlist_flow(
            bedrock_agent_client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
prompt_model_id)
        flow_id = response.get('id')

        if flow_id:
            # Update accessible resources in the role.
            model_arn = get_model_arn(bedrock_client, prompt_model_id)
            update_role_policy(iam_client, role_name, [
                               response.get('arn'), model_arn])

            # Prepare the flow and flow version.
            flow_version, flow_alias = prepare_flow_version_and_alias(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

            # Run the flow.
            if flow_version and flow_alias:
                run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_runtime_client,
                                  flow_id, flow_alias)
```

```
                delete_choice = input("Delete flow? y or n : ").lower()


            else:
                print("Couldn't run. Deleting flow and role.")
                delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)
                delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        else:
            print("Couldn't create flow.")


    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Fatal error: {str(e)}")

    finally:
        if delete_choice == 'y':
                delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
                                      iam_client,
                                      role_name,
                                      flow_id,
                                      flow_version,
                                      flow_alias)
        else:
            print("Flow not deleted. ")
            print(f"\tFlow ID: {flow_id}")
            print(f"\tFlow version: {flow_version}")
            print(f"\tFlow alias: {flow_alias}")
            print(f"\tRole ARN: {role_arn}")

        print("Done!")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()


def invoke_flow(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data):
    """
    Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

    Args:
        client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
        input_data: Input data for the flow.
```

```
    Returns:
        Dict containing flow status and flow output.
    """

    response = None
    request_params = None

    request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }


    response = client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

    flow_status = ""
    output= ""

    # Process the streaming response
    for event in response['responseStream']:

        # Check if flow is complete.
        if 'flowCompletionEvent' in event:
            flow_status = event['flowCompletionEvent']['completionReason']

        # Save the model output.
        elif 'flowOutputEvent' in event:
            output = event['flowOutputEvent']['content']['document']
            logger.info("Output : %s", output)

        # Log trace events.
        elif 'flowTraceEvent' in event:
            logger.info("Flow trace:  %s", event['flowTraceEvent'])

    return {
        "flow_status": flow_status,
        "output": output

    }
```

```
def run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Runs the playlist generator flow.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to run.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.

    """


    print ("Welcome to the playlist generator flow.")
    # Get the initial prompt from the user.
    genre = input("Enter genre: ")
    number_of_songs = int(input("Enter number of songs: "))


    # Use prompt to create input data for the input node.
    flow_input_data = {
        "content": {
            "document": {
                "genre" : genre,
                "number" : number_of_songs
            }
        },
        "nodeName": "FlowInput",
        "nodeOutputName": "document"
    }

    try:

        result = invoke_flow(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, flow_input_data)

        status = result['flow_status']

        if status == "SUCCESS":
                # The flow completed successfully.
                logger.info("The flow %s successfully completed.", flow_id)
                print(result['output'])
        else:
```

```
            logger.warning("Flow status: %s",status)

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Client error: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("Client error: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.error("An error occurred: %s", {str(e)})
        logger.error("Error type: %s", {type(e)})
        raise



def create_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Creates an IAM role for Amazon Bedrock with permissions to run a flow.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name for the new IAM role.
    Returns:
        str: The role Amazon Resource Name.
    """


    # Trust relationship policy - allows Amazon Bedrock service to assume this role.
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "bedrock.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }]
    }

    # Basic inline policy for for running a flow.

    resources = "*"

    bedrock_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
```

```
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                # Using * as placeholder - Later you update with specific ARNs.
                "Resource": resources
            }
        ]
    }



    try:
        # Create the IAM role with trust policy
        logging.info("Creating role: %s",role_name)
        role = client.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy),
            Description="Role for Amazon Bedrock operations"
        )

        # Attach inline policy to the role
        print("Attaching inline policy")
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(bedrock_policy)
        )

        logging.info("Create Role ARN: %s", role['Role']['Arn'])
        return role['Role']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error creating role: %s", str(e))
        raise
    except Exception as e:
        logging.warning("Unexpected error: %s", str(e))
        raise


def update_role_policy(client, role_name, resource_arns):
```

```
    """
    Updates an IAM role's inline policy with specific resource ARNs.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the existing role.
        resource_arns (list): List of resource ARNs to allow access to.
    """


    updated_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:GetFlow",
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                "Resource": resource_arns
            }
        ]
    }

    try:
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(updated_policy)
        )
        logging.info("Updated policy for role: %s",role_name)

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error updating role policy: %s", str(e))
        raise


def delete_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Deletes an IAM role.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the role to delete.
```

```
    """



    try:
        # Detach and delete inline policies
        policies = client.list_role_policies(RoleName=role_name)['PolicyNames']
        for policy_name in policies:
            client.delete_role_policy(RoleName=role_name, PolicyName=policy_name)

        # Delete the role
        client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logging.info("Deleted role: %s", role_name)


    except ClientError as e:
        logging.info("Error Deleting role: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateFlow
  - CreateFlowAlias
  - CreateFlowVersion
  - DeleteFlow
  - DeleteFlowAlias
  - DeleteFlowVersion
  - GetFlow
  - GetFlowAlias
  - GetFlowVersion
  - InvokeFlow
  - PrepareFlow

Create and invoke a managed prompt

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a managed prompt.
- Create a version of the prompt.
- Invoke the prompt using the version.
- Clean up resources (optional).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and invoke a managed prompt.

```
import argparse
import boto3
import logging
import time

# Now import the modules
from prompt import create_prompt, create_prompt_version, delete_prompt
from run_prompt import invoke_prompt

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO,
    format='%(levelname)s: %(message)s'
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)



def run_scenario(bedrock_client, bedrock_runtime_client, model_id, cleanup=True):
    """
    Runs the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.

    Args:
        bedrock_client: The Amazon Bedrock Agent client.
        bedrock_runtime_client: The Amazon Bedrock Runtime client.
        model_id (str): The model ID to use for the prompt.
```

```
        cleanup (bool): Whether to clean up resources at the end of the scenario.

    Returns:
        dict: A dictionary containing the created resources.
    """
    prompt_id = None

    try:
        # Step 1: Create a prompt
        print("\n=== Step 1: Creating a prompt ===")
        prompt_name = f"PlaylistGenerator-{int(time.time())}"
        prompt_description = "Playlist generator"
        prompt_template = """
          Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting of the following number of songs:
{{number}}."""

        create_response = create_prompt(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_name,
            prompt_description,
            prompt_template,
            model_id
        )

        prompt_id = create_response['id']
        print(f"Created prompt: {prompt_name} with ID: {prompt_id}")

        # Create a version of the prompt
        print("\n=== Creating a version of the prompt ===")
        version_response = create_prompt_version(
            bedrock_client,
            prompt_id,
            description="Initial version of the product description generator"
        )

        prompt_version_arn = version_response['arn']
        prompt_version = version_response['version']

        print(f"Created prompt version: {prompt_version}")
        print(f"Prompt version ARN: {prompt_version_arn}")

        # Step 2: Invoke the prompt directly
        print("\n=== Step 2: Invoking the prompt ===")
        input_variables = {
```

```
            "genre": "pop",
            "number": "2",
           }

        # Use the ARN from the create_prompt_version response
        result = invoke_prompt(
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            prompt_version_arn,
            input_variables
        )
        # Display the playlist
        print(f"\n{result}")


        # Step 3: Clean up resources (optional)
        if cleanup:
            print("\n=== Step 3: Cleaning up resources ===")

            # Delete the prompt
            print(f"Deleting prompt {prompt_id}...")
            delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)

            print("Cleanup complete")
        else:
            print("\n=== Resources were not cleaned up ===")
            print(f"Prompt ID: {prompt_id}")



    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error in scenario: %s", str(e))

        # Attempt to clean up if an error occurred and cleanup was requested
        if cleanup and prompt_id:
            try:
                print("\nCleaning up resources after error...")

                # Delete the prompt
                try:
                    delete_prompt(bedrock_client, prompt_id)
                    print("Cleanup after error complete")
                except Exception as cleanup_error:
                    logger.error("Error during cleanup: %s", str(cleanup_error))
            except Exception as final_error:
```

```
                logger.error("Final error during cleanup: %s", str(final_error))

        # Re-raise the original exception
        raise

def main():
    """
    Entry point for the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Run the Amazon Bedrock managed prompt scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--region',
        default='us-east-1',
        help="The AWS Region to use."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--model-id',
        default='anthropic.claude-v2',
        help="The model ID to use for the prompt."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--cleanup',
        action='store_true',
        default=True,
        help="Clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        '--no-cleanup',
        action='store_false',
        dest='cleanup',
        help="Don't clean up resources at the end of the scenario."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    bedrock_client = boto3.client('bedrock-agent', region_name=args.region)
    bedrock_runtime_client = boto3.client('bedrock-runtime',
 region_name=args.region)

    print("=== Amazon Bedrock Managed Prompt Scenario ===")
    print(f"Region: {args.region}")
    print(f"Model ID: {args.model_id}")
    print(f"Cleanup resources: {args.cleanup}")
```

```
    try:
        run_scenario(
            bedrock_client,
            bedrock_runtime_client,
            args.model_id,
            args.cleanup
        )

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Error running scenario: %s", str(e))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Converse
  - CreatePrompt
  - CreatePromptVersion
  - DeletePrompt

Create and invoke an agent

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an execution role for the agent.
- Create the agent and deploy a DRAFT version.
- Create a Lambda function that implements the agent's capabilities.
- Create an action group that connects the agent to the Lambda function.
- Deploy the fully configured agent.
- Invoke the agent with user-provided prompts.
- Delete all created resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and invoke an agent.

```
REGION = "us-east-1"
ROLE_POLICY_NAME = "agent_permissions"


class BedrockAgentScenarioWrapper:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon Bedrock Agents."""

    def __init__(
            self, bedrock_agent_client, runtime_client, lambda_client, iam_resource,
 postfix
    ):
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.bedrock_agent_runtime_client = runtime_client
        self.postfix = postfix

        self.bedrock_wrapper = BedrockAgentWrapper(bedrock_agent_client)

        self.agent = None
        self.agent_alias = None
        self.agent_role = None
        self.prepared_agent_details = None
        self.lambda_role = None
        self.lambda_function = None

    def run_scenario(self):
        print("=" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon Bedrock Agents demo.")
        print("=" * 88)

        # Query input from user
        print("Let's start with creating an agent:")
        print("-" * 40)
```

```
        name, foundation_model = self._request_name_and_model_from_user()
        print("-" * 40)

        # Create an execution role for the agent
        self.agent_role = self._create_agent_role(foundation_model)

        # Create the agent
        self.agent = self._create_agent(name, foundation_model)

        # Prepare a DRAFT version of the agent
        self.prepared_agent_details = self._prepare_agent()

        # Create the agent's Lambda function
        self.lambda_function = self._create_lambda_function()

        # Configure permissions for the agent to invoke the Lambda function
        self._allow_agent_to_invoke_function()
        self._let_function_accept_invocations_from_agent()

        # Create an action group to connect the agent with the Lambda function
        self._create_agent_action_group()

        # If the agent has been modified or any components have been added, prepare
the agent again
        components = [self._get_agent()]
        components += self._get_agent_action_groups()
        components += self._get_agent_knowledge_bases()

        latest_update = max(component["updatedAt"] for component in components)
        if latest_update > self.prepared_agent_details["preparedAt"]:
            self.prepared_agent_details = self._prepare_agent()

        # Create an agent alias
        self.agent_alias = self._create_agent_alias()

        # Test the agent
        self._chat_with_agent(self.agent_alias)

        print("=" * 88)
        print("Thanks for running the demo!\n")

        if q.ask("Do you want to delete the created resources? [y/N] ", q.is_yesno):
            self._delete_resources()
            print("=" * 88)
```

```
            print(
                "All demo resources have been deleted. Thanks again for running the
demo!"
            )
        else:
            self._list_resources()
            print("=" * 88)
            print("Thanks again for running the demo!")

    def _request_name_and_model_from_user(self):
        existing_agent_names = [
            agent["agentName"] for agent in self.bedrock_wrapper.list_agents()
        ]

        while True:
            name = q.ask("Enter an agent name: ", self.is_valid_agent_name)
            if name.lower() not in [n.lower() for n in existing_agent_names]:
                break
            print(
                f"Agent {name} conflicts with an existing agent. Please use a
different name."
            )

        models = ["anthropic.claude-instant-v1", "anthropic.claude-v2"]
        model_id = models[
            q.choose("Which foundation model would you like to use? ", models)
        ]

        return name, model_id

    def _create_agent_role(self, model_id):
        role_name = f"AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForAgents_{self.postfix}"
        model_arn = f"arn:aws:bedrock:{REGION}::foundation-model/{model_id}*"

        print("Creating an an execution role for the agent...")

        try:
            role = self.iam_resource.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                    {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
```

```
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {"Service": "bedrock.amazonaws.com"},
                                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                            }
                        ],
                    }
                ),
            )

            role.Policy(ROLE_POLICY_NAME).put(
                PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                    {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Action": "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                                "Resource": model_arn,
                            }
                        ],
                    }
                )
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create role {role_name}. Here's why: {e}")
            raise

        return role

    def _create_agent(self, name, model_id):
        print("Creating the agent...")

        instruction = """
            You are a friendly chat bot. You have access to a function called that
returns
            information about the current date and time. When responding with date
or time,
            please make sure to add the timezone UTC.
            """
        agent = self.bedrock_wrapper.create_agent(
            agent_name=name,
            foundation_model=model_id,
            instruction=instruction,
            role_arn=self.agent_role.arn,
```

```
        )
        self._wait_for_agent_status(agent["agentId"], "NOT_PREPARED")

        return agent

    def _prepare_agent(self):
        print("Preparing the agent...")

        agent_id = self.agent["agentId"]
        prepared_agent_details = self.bedrock_wrapper.prepare_agent(agent_id)
        self._wait_for_agent_status(agent_id, "PREPARED")

        return prepared_agent_details

    def _create_lambda_function(self):
        print("Creating the Lambda function...")

        function_name = f"AmazonBedrockExampleFunction_{self.postfix}"

        self.lambda_role = self._create_lambda_role()

        try:
            deployment_package = self._create_deployment_package(function_name)

            lambda_function = self.lambda_client.create_function(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Description="Lambda function for Amazon Bedrock example",
                Runtime="python3.11",
                Role=self.lambda_role.arn,
                Handler=f"{function_name}.lambda_handler",
                Code={"ZipFile": deployment_package},
                Publish=True,
            )

            waiter = self.lambda_client.get_waiter("function_active_v2")
            waiter.wait(FunctionName=function_name)

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't create Lambda function {function_name}. Here's why: {e}"
            )
            raise

        return lambda_function
```

```
    def _create_lambda_role(self):
        print("Creating an execution role for the Lambda function...")

        role_name = f"AmazonBedrockExecutionRoleForLambda_{self.postfix}"

        try:
            role = self.iam_resource.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                    {
                        "Version": "2012-10-17",
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
                                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                            }
                        ],
                    }
                ),
            )
            role.attach_policy(
                PolicyArn="arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"
            )
            print(f"Created role {role_name}")
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create role {role_name}. Here's why: {e}")
            raise

        print("Waiting for the execution role to be fully propagated...")
        wait(10)

        return role

    def _allow_agent_to_invoke_function(self):
        policy = self.iam_resource.RolePolicy(
            self.agent_role.role_name, ROLE_POLICY_NAME
        )
        doc = policy.policy_document
        doc["Statement"].append(
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
```

```
                "Action": "lambda:InvokeFunction",
                "Resource": self.lambda_function["FunctionArn"],
            }
        )
        self.agent_role.Policy(ROLE_POLICY_NAME).put(PolicyDocument=json.dumps(doc))

    def _let_function_accept_invocations_from_agent(self):
        try:
            self.lambda_client.add_permission(
                FunctionName=self.lambda_function["FunctionName"],
                SourceArn=self.agent["agentArn"],
                StatementId="BedrockAccess",
                Action="lambda:InvokeFunction",
                Principal="bedrock.amazonaws.com",
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(
                f"Couldn't grant Bedrock permission to invoke the Lambda function.
Here's why: {e}"
            )
            raise

    def _create_agent_action_group(self):
        print("Creating an action group for the agent...")

        try:
            with open("./scenario_resources/api_schema.yaml") as file:
                self.bedrock_wrapper.create_agent_action_group(
                    name="current_date_and_time",
                    description="Gets the current date and time.",
                    agent_id=self.agent["agentId"],
                    agent_version=self.prepared_agent_details["agentVersion"],
                    function_arn=self.lambda_function["FunctionArn"],
                    api_schema=json.dumps(yaml.safe_load(file)),
                )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't create agent action group. Here's why: {e}")
            raise

    def _get_agent(self):
        return self.bedrock_wrapper.get_agent(self.agent["agentId"])

    def _get_agent_action_groups(self):
        return self.bedrock_wrapper.list_agent_action_groups(
```

```
            self.agent["agentId"], self.prepared_agent_details["agentVersion"]
        )

    def _get_agent_knowledge_bases(self):
        return self.bedrock_wrapper.list_agent_knowledge_bases(
            self.agent["agentId"], self.prepared_agent_details["agentVersion"]
        )

    def _create_agent_alias(self):
        print("Creating an agent alias...")

        agent_alias_name = "test_agent_alias"
        agent_alias = self.bedrock_wrapper.create_agent_alias(
            agent_alias_name, self.agent["agentId"]
        )

        self._wait_for_agent_status(self.agent["agentId"], "PREPARED")

        return agent_alias

    def _wait_for_agent_status(self, agent_id, status):
        while self.bedrock_wrapper.get_agent(agent_id)["agentStatus"] != status:
            wait(2)

    def _chat_with_agent(self, agent_alias):
        print("-" * 88)
        print("The agent is ready to chat.")
        print("Try asking for the date or time. Type 'exit' to quit.")

        # Create a unique session ID for the conversation
        session_id = uuid.uuid4().hex

        while True:
            prompt = q.ask("Prompt: ", q.non_empty)

            if prompt == "exit":
                break

            response = asyncio.run(self._invoke_agent(agent_alias, prompt,
session_id))

            print(f"Agent: {response}")

    async def _invoke_agent(self, agent_alias, prompt, session_id):
```

```
        response = self.bedrock_agent_runtime_client.invoke_agent(
            agentId=self.agent["agentId"],
            agentAliasId=agent_alias["agentAliasId"],
            sessionId=session_id,
            inputText=prompt,
        )

        completion = ""

        for event in response.get("completion"):
            chunk = event["chunk"]
            completion += chunk["bytes"].decode()

        return completion

    def _delete_resources(self):
        if self.agent:
            agent_id = self.agent["agentId"]

            if self.agent_alias:
                agent_alias_id = self.agent_alias["agentAliasId"]
                print("Deleting agent alias...")
                self.bedrock_wrapper.delete_agent_alias(agent_id, agent_alias_id)

            print("Deleting agent...")
            agent_status = self.bedrock_wrapper.delete_agent(agent_id)
["agentStatus"]
            while agent_status == "DELETING":
                wait(5)
                try:
                    agent_status = self.bedrock_wrapper.get_agent(
                        agent_id, log_error=False
                    )["agentStatus"]
                except ClientError as err:
                    if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                        agent_status = "DELETED"

        if self.lambda_function:
            name = self.lambda_function["FunctionName"]
            print(f"Deleting function '{name}'...")
            self.lambda_client.delete_function(FunctionName=name)

        if self.agent_role:
            print(f"Deleting role '{self.agent_role.role_name}'...")
```

```
            self.agent_role.Policy(ROLE_POLICY_NAME).delete()
            self.agent_role.delete()

        if self.lambda_role:
            print(f"Deleting role '{self.lambda_role.role_name}'...")
            for policy in self.lambda_role.attached_policies.all():
                policy.detach_role(RoleName=self.lambda_role.role_name)
            self.lambda_role.delete()

    def _list_resources(self):
        print("-" * 40)
        print(f"Here is the list of created resources in '{REGION}'.")
        print("Make sure you delete them once you're done to avoid unnecessary
costs.")
        if self.agent:
            print(f"Bedrock Agent:   {self.agent['agentName']}")
        if self.lambda_function:
            print(f"Lambda function: {self.lambda_function['FunctionName']}")
        if self.agent_role:
            print(f"IAM role:        {self.agent_role.role_name}")
        if self.lambda_role:
            print(f"IAM role:        {self.lambda_role.role_name}")

    @staticmethod
    def is_valid_agent_name(answer):
        valid_regex = r"^[a-zA-Z0-9_-]{1,100}$"
        return (
            answer
            if answer and len(answer) <= 100 and re.match(valid_regex, answer)
            else None,
            "I need a name for the agent, please. Valid characters are a-z, A-Z,
0-9, _ (underscore) and - (hyphen).",
        )

    @staticmethod
    def _create_deployment_package(function_name):
        buffer = io.BytesIO()
        with zipfile.ZipFile(buffer, "w") as zipped:
            zipped.write(
                "./scenario_resources/lambda_function.py", f"{function_name}.py"
            )
        buffer.seek(0)
        return buffer.read()
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    postfix = "".join(
        random.choice(string.ascii_lowercase + "0123456789") for _ in range(8)
    )
    scenario = BedrockAgentScenarioWrapper(
        bedrock_agent_client=boto3.client(
            service_name="bedrock-agent", region_name=REGION
        ),
        runtime_client=boto3.client(
            service_name="bedrock-agent-runtime", region_name=REGION
        ),
        lambda_client=boto3.client(service_name="lambda", region_name=REGION),
        iam_resource=boto3.resource("iam"),
        postfix=postfix,
    )
    try:
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception as e:
        logging.exception(f"Something went wrong with the demo. Here's what: {e}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAgent
  - CreateAgentActionGroup
  - CreateAgentAlias
  - DeleteAgent
  - DeleteAgentAlias
  - GetAgent
  - ListAgentActionGroups
  - ListAgentKnowledgeBases
  - ListAgents
  - PrepareAgent

Orchestrate generative AI applications with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to use InvokeFlow to converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow that includes an agent node.

For more information, see Converse with an Amazon Bedrock flow.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Shows how to run an Amazon Bedrock flow with InvokeFlow and handle muli-turn
 interaction
for a single conversation.
For more information, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/
flows-multi-turn-invocation.html.

"""
import logging
import boto3
import botocore

import botocore.exceptions

logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def invoke_flow(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data, execution_id):
    """
    Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

    Args:
        client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
        input_data: Input data for the flow.
        execution_id: Execution ID for continuing a flow. Use the value None on
 first run.

    Returns:
        Dict containing flow_complete status, input_required info, and execution_id
    """

    response = None
    request_params = None

    if execution_id is None:
        # Don't pass execution ID for first run.
        request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
```

```
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }
    else:
        request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "executionId": execution_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }

    response = client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

    if "executionId" not in request_params:
        execution_id = response['executionId']

    input_required = None
    flow_status = ""

    # Process the streaming response
    for event in response['responseStream']:

        # Check if flow is complete.
        if 'flowCompletionEvent' in event:
            flow_status = event['flowCompletionEvent']['completionReason']

        # Check if more input us needed from user.
        elif 'flowMultiTurnInputRequestEvent' in event:
            input_required = event

        # Print the model output.
        elif 'flowOutputEvent' in event:
            print(event['flowOutputEvent']['content']['document'])

        # Log trace events.
        elif 'flowTraceEvent' in event:
            logger.info("Flow trace:  %s", event['flowTraceEvent'])

    return {
        "flow_status": flow_status,
        "input_required": input_required,
        "execution_id": execution_id
```

```
    }


def converse_with_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Run a conversation with the supplied flow.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to run.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.

    """

    flow_execution_id = None
    finished = False

    # Get the intial prompt from the user.
    user_input = input("Enter input: ")

    # Use prompt to create input data.
    flow_input_data = {
        "content": {
            "document": user_input
        },
        "nodeName": "FlowInputNode",
        "nodeOutputName": "document"
    }

    try:
        while not finished:
            # Invoke the flow until successfully finished.

            result = invoke_flow(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, flow_input_data,
 flow_execution_id)

            status = result['flow_status']
            flow_execution_id = result['execution_id']
            more_input = result['input_required']
            if status == "INPUT_REQUIRED":
                # The flow needs more information from the user.
                logger.info("The flow %s requires more input", flow_id)
                user_input = input(
```

```
                    more_input['flowMultiTurnInputRequestEvent']['content']
['document'] + ": ")
                flow_input_data = {
                    "content": {
                        "document": user_input
                    },
                    "nodeName": more_input['flowMultiTurnInputRequestEvent']
['nodeName'],
                    "nodeInputName": "agentInputText"

                }
            elif status == "SUCCESS":
                # The flow completed successfully.
                finished = True
                logger.info("The flow %s successfully completed.", flow_id)

    except botocore.exceptions.ClientError as e:
        print(f"Client error: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("Client error: %s", {str(e)})

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"An error occurred: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("An error occurred: %s", {str(e)})
        logger.error("Error type: %s", {type(e)})


def main():
    """
    Main entry point for the script.
    """

    # Replace these with your actual flow ID and flow alias ID.
    FLOW_ID = 'YOUR_FLOW_ID'
    FLOW_ALIAS_ID = 'YOUR_FLOW_ALIAS_ID'

    logger.info("Starting conversation with FLOW: %s ID: %s",
                FLOW_ID, FLOW_ALIAS_ID)

    # Get the Bedrock agent runtime client.
    session = boto3.Session(profile_name='default')
    bedrock_agent_client = session.client('bedrock-agent-runtime')

    # Start the conversation.
    converse_with_flow(bedrock_agent_client, FLOW_ID, FLOW_ALIAS_ID)
```

```
    logger.info("Conversation with FLOW: %s ID: %s finished",
                FLOW_ID, FLOW_ALIAS_ID)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see InvokeFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Actions

`InvokeAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `InvokeAgent`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke an agent.

```
    def invoke_agent(self, agent_id, agent_alias_id, session_id, prompt):
        """
        Sends a prompt for the agent to process and respond to.

        :param agent_id: The unique identifier of the agent to use.
        :param agent_alias_id: The alias of the agent to use.
        :param session_id: The unique identifier of the session. Use the same value
 across requests
                           to continue the same conversation.
        :param prompt: The prompt that you want Claude to complete.
        :return: Inference response from the model.
        """

        try:
```

```
            # Note: The execution time depends on the foundation model, complexity
of the agent,
            # and the length of the prompt. In some cases, it can take up to a
minute or more to
            # generate a response.
            response = self.agents_runtime_client.invoke_agent(
                agentId=agent_id,
                agentAliasId=agent_alias_id,
                sessionId=session_id,
                inputText=prompt,
            )

            completion = ""

            for event in response.get("completion"):
                chunk = event["chunk"]
                completion = completion + chunk["bytes"].decode()

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error(f"Couldn't invoke agent. {e}")
            raise

        return completion
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`InvokeFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `InvokeFlow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke a flow.

```
    def invoke_flow(self, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data, execution_id):
        """
        Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.

        Args:
            param flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
            param flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
            param input_data: Input data for the flow.
            param execution_id: Execution ID for continuing a flow. Use the value
None on first run.

        Return: Response from the flow.
        """
        try:

            request_params = None

            if execution_id is None:
                # Don't pass execution ID for first run.
                request_params = {
                    "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
                    "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
                    "inputs": input_data,
                    "enableTrace": True
                }
            else:
                request_params = {
                    "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
                    "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
                    "executionId": execution_id,
                    "inputs": input_data,
                    "enableTrace": True
                }

            response = self.agents_runtime_client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

            if "executionId" not in request_params:
                execution_id = response['executionId']

            result = ""

            # Get the streaming response
            for event in response['responseStream']:
```

```
                result = result + str(event) + '\n'
            print(result)

        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Couldn't invoke flow %s.", {e})
            raise

        return result
```

- For API details, see InvokeFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create and invoke a flow

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an execution role for the flow.
- Create the flow.
- Deploy the fully configured flow.
- Invoke the flow with user-provided prompts.
- Delete all created resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generates a music playlist based on user-specified genre and number of songs.

```
from datetime import datetime
import logging
import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from roles import create_flow_role, delete_flow_role, update_role_policy
from flow import create_flow, prepare_flow, delete_flow
from run_flow import run_playlist_flow
from flow_version import create_flow_version, delete_flow_version
from flow_alias import create_flow_alias, delete_flow_alias

logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO
)
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

def create_input_node(name):
    """
    Creates an input node configuration for an Amazon Bedrock flow.

    The input node serves as the entry point for the flow and defines
    the initial document structure that will be passed to subsequent nodes.

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the input node.

    Returns:
        dict: The input node configuration.

    """
    return {
        "type": "Input",
        "name": name,
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "Object"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_prompt_node(name, model_id):
    """
    Creates a prompt node configuration for a Bedrock flow that generates music
 playlists.
```

```
    The prompt node defines an inline prompt template that creates a music playlist
based on
    a specified genre and number of songs. The prompt uses two variables that are
mapped from
    the input JSON object:
    - {{genre}}: The genre of music to create a playlist for
    - {{number}}: The number of songs to include in the playlist

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the prompt node.
        model_id (str): The identifier of the foundation model to use for the
prompt.

    Returns:
        dict: The prompt node.

    """

    return {
        "type": "Prompt",
        "name": name,
        "configuration": {
            "prompt": {
                "sourceConfiguration": {
                    "inline": {
                        "modelId": model_id,
                        "templateType": "TEXT",
                        "inferenceConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "temperature": 0.8
                            }
                        },
                        "templateConfiguration": {
                            "text": {
                                "text": "Make me a {{genre}} playlist consisting of
the following number of songs: {{number}}."
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        },
        "inputs": [
            {
```

```
                "name": "genre",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data.genre"
            },
            {
                "name": "number",
                "type": "Number",
                "expression": "$.data.number"
            }
        ],
        "outputs": [
            {
                "name": "modelCompletion",
                "type": "String"
            }
        ]
    }


def create_output_node(name):
    """
    Creates an output node configuration for a Bedrock flow.

    The output node validates that the output from the last node is a string
    and returns it unmodified. The input name must be "document".

    Args:
        name (str): The name of the output node.

    Returns:
        dict: The output node configuration containing the output node:

    """

    return {
        "type": "Output",
        "name": name,
        "inputs": [
            {
                "name": "document",
                "type": "String",
                "expression": "$.data"
            }
        ]
```

```
    }




def create_playlist_flow(client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
 prompt_model_id):
    """
    Creates the playlist generator flow.
    Args:
        client: bedrock agent boto3 client.
        role_arn (str): Name for the new IAM role.
        prompt_model_id (str): The id of the model to use in the prompt node.
    Returns:
        dict: The response from the create_flow operation.
    """

    input_node = create_input_node("FlowInput")
    prompt_node = create_prompt_node("MakePlaylist", prompt_model_id)
    output_node = create_output_node("FlowOutput")

    # Create connections between the nodes
    connections = []

    #  First, create connections between the output of the flow
    # input node and each input of the prompt node.
    for prompt_node_input in prompt_node["inputs"]:
        connections.append(
            {
                "name": "_".join([input_node["name"], prompt_node["name"],
                                  prompt_node_input["name"]]),
                "source": input_node["name"],
                "target": prompt_node["name"],
                "type": "Data",
                "configuration": {
                    "data": {
                        "sourceOutput": input_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                        "targetInput": prompt_node_input["name"]
                    }
                }
            }
        )
```

```
    # Then, create a connection between the output of the prompt node and the input
 of the flow output node
    connections.append(
        {
            "name": "_".join([prompt_node["name"], output_node["name"]]),
            "source": prompt_node["name"],
            "target": output_node["name"],
            "type": "Data",
            "configuration": {
                "data": {
                    "sourceOutput": prompt_node["outputs"][0]["name"],
                    "targetInput": output_node["inputs"][0]["name"]
                }
            }
        }
    )

    flow_def = {
        "nodes": [input_node, prompt_node, output_node],
        "connections": connections
    }

    # Create the flow.

    response = create_flow(
        client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn, flow_def)

    return response



def get_model_arn(client, model_id):
    """
    Gets the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) for a model.
    Args:
        client (str): Amazon Bedrock boto3 client.
        model_id (str): The id of the model.
    Returns:
        str: The ARN of the model.
    """

    try:
        # Call GetFoundationModelDetails operation
        response = client.get_foundation_model(modelIdentifier=model_id)
```

```
        # Extract model ARN from the response
        model_arn = response['modelDetails']['modelArn']

        return model_arn

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Client error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error getting model ARN: %s", {str(e)})
        raise


def prepare_flow_version_and_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                   flow_id):
    """
    Prepares the flow and then creates a flow version and flow alias.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        flowd_id (str): The ID of the flow that you want to prepare.
    Returns: The flow_version and flow_alias.

    """

    status = prepare_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    flow_version = None
    flow_alias = None

    if status == 'Prepared':

        # Create the flow version and alias.
        flow_version = create_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                                           flow_id,
                                           f"flow version for flow {flow_id}.")

        flow_alias = create_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client,
                                       flow_id,
                                       flow_version,
                                       "latest",
                                       f"Alias for flow {flow_id}, version
 {flow_version}")
```

```
    return flow_version, flow_alias



def delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
                          iam_client,
                          role_name,
                          flow_id,
                          flow_version,
                          flow_alias):
    """
    Deletes the flow, flow alias, flow version, and IAM roles.
    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Amazon Bedrock Agent boto3 client.
        iam_client: Amazon IAM boto3 client.
        role_name (str): The name of the IAM role.
        flow_id (str): The id of the flow.
        flow_version (str): The version of the flow.
        flow_alias (str): The alias of the flow.
    """

    if flow_id is not None:
        if flow_alias is not None:
            delete_flow_alias(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias)
        if flow_version is not None:
            delete_flow_version(bedrock_agent_client,
                        flow_id, flow_version)
        delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)

    if role_name is not None:
        delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)



def main():
    """
    Creates, runs, and optionally deletes a Bedrock flow for generating music
 playlists.

    Note:
        Requires valid AWS credentials in the default profile
    """
```

```
    delete_choice = "y"
    try:

        # Get various boto3 clients.
        session = boto3.Session(profile_name='default')
        bedrock_agent_runtime_client = session.client('bedrock-agent-runtime')
        bedrock_agent_client = session.client('bedrock-agent')
        bedrock_client = session.client('bedrock')
        iam_client = session.client('iam')

        role_name = None
        flow_id = None
        flow_version = None
        flow_alias = None

        #Change the model as needed.
        prompt_model_id = "amazon.nova-pro-v1:0"

        # Base the flow name on the current date and time
        current_time = datetime.now()
        timestamp = current_time.strftime("%Y-%m-%d-%H-%M-%S")
        flow_name = f"FlowPlayList_{timestamp}"
        flow_description = "A flow to generate a music playlist."

        # Create a role for the flow.
        role_name = f"BedrockFlowRole-{flow_name}"
        role = create_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        role_arn = role['Arn']

        # Create the flow.
        response = create_playlist_flow(
            bedrock_agent_client, flow_name, flow_description, role_arn,
prompt_model_id)
        flow_id = response.get('id')

        if flow_id:
            # Update accessible resources in the role.
            model_arn = get_model_arn(bedrock_client, prompt_model_id)
            update_role_policy(iam_client, role_name, [
                               response.get('arn'), model_arn])

            # Prepare the flow and flow version.
            flow_version, flow_alias = prepare_flow_version_and_alias(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)
```

```
            # Run the flow.
            if flow_version and flow_alias:
                run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_runtime_client,
                                  flow_id, flow_alias)

                delete_choice = input("Delete flow? y or n : ").lower()


            else:
                print("Couldn't run. Deleting flow and role.")
                delete_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id)
                delete_flow_role(iam_client, role_name)
        else:
            print("Couldn't create flow.")


    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Fatal error: {str(e)}")

    finally:
        if delete_choice == 'y':
                delete_role_resources(bedrock_agent_client,
                                      iam_client,
                                      role_name,
                                      flow_id,
                                      flow_version,
                                      flow_alias)
        else:
            print("Flow not deleted. ")
            print(f"\tFlow ID: {flow_id}")
            print(f"\tFlow version: {flow_version}")
            print(f"\tFlow alias: {flow_alias}")
            print(f"\tRole ARN: {role_arn}")

        print("Done!")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()


def invoke_flow(client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, input_data):
    """
    Invoke an Amazon Bedrock flow and handle the response stream.
```

```
    Args:
        client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to invoke.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.
        input_data: Input data for the flow.

    Returns:
        Dict containing flow status and flow output.
    """

    response = None
    request_params = None

    request_params = {
            "flowIdentifier": flow_id,
            "flowAliasIdentifier": flow_alias_id,
            "inputs": [input_data],
            "enableTrace": True
        }


    response = client.invoke_flow(**request_params)

    flow_status = ""
    output= ""

    # Process the streaming response
    for event in response['responseStream']:

        # Check if flow is complete.
        if 'flowCompletionEvent' in event:
            flow_status = event['flowCompletionEvent']['completionReason']

        # Save the model output.
        elif 'flowOutputEvent' in event:
            output = event['flowOutputEvent']['content']['document']
            logger.info("Output : %s", output)

        # Log trace events.
        elif 'flowTraceEvent' in event:
            logger.info("Flow trace:  %s", event['flowTraceEvent'])

    return {
```

```
        "flow_status": flow_status,
        "output": output

    }




def run_playlist_flow(bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id):
    """
    Runs the playlist generator flow.

    Args:
        bedrock_agent_client: Boto3 client for Amazon Bedrock agent runtime.
        flow_id: The ID of the flow to run.
        flow_alias_id: The alias ID of the flow.

    """



    print ("Welcome to the playlist generator flow.")
    # Get the initial prompt from the user.
    genre = input("Enter genre: ")
    number_of_songs = int(input("Enter number of songs: "))


    # Use prompt to create input data for the input node.
    flow_input_data = {
        "content": {
            "document": {
                "genre" : genre,
                "number" : number_of_songs
            }
        },
        "nodeName": "FlowInput",
        "nodeOutputName": "document"
    }

    try:

        result = invoke_flow(
                bedrock_agent_client, flow_id, flow_alias_id, flow_input_data)

        status = result['flow_status']
```

```
        if status == "SUCCESS":
                # The flow completed successfully.
                logger.info("The flow %s successfully completed.", flow_id)
                print(result['output'])
        else:
            logger.warning("Flow status: %s",status)

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Client error: {str(e)}")
        logger.error("Client error: %s", {str(e)})
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        logger.error("An error occurred: %s", {str(e)})
        logger.error("Error type: %s", {type(e)})
        raise



def create_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Creates an IAM role for Amazon Bedrock with permissions to run a flow.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name for the new IAM role.
    Returns:
        str: The role Amazon Resource Name.
    """


    # Trust relationship policy - allows Amazon Bedrock service to assume this role.
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": {
                "Service": "bedrock.amazonaws.com"
            },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }]
    }

    # Basic inline policy for for running a flow.
```

```
    resources = "*"

    bedrock_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                # Using * as placeholder - Later you update with specific ARNs.
                "Resource": resources
            }
        ]
    }



    try:
        # Create the IAM role with trust policy
        logging.info("Creating role: %s",role_name)
        role = client.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name,
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy),
            Description="Role for Amazon Bedrock operations"
        )

        # Attach inline policy to the role
        print("Attaching inline policy")
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(bedrock_policy)
        )

        logging.info("Create Role ARN: %s", role['Role']['Arn'])
        return role['Role']

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error creating role: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        logging.warning("Unexpected error: %s", str(e))
        raise


def update_role_policy(client, role_name, resource_arns):
    """
    Updates an IAM role's inline policy with specific resource ARNs.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the existing role.
        resource_arns (list): List of resource ARNs to allow access to.
    """


    updated_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Action": [
                    "bedrock:GetFlow",
                    "bedrock:InvokeModel",
                    "bedrock:Retrieve",
                    "bedrock:RetrieveAndGenerate"
                ],
                "Resource": resource_arns
            }
        ]
    }

    try:
        client.put_role_policy(
            RoleName=role_name,
            PolicyName=f"{role_name}-policy",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(updated_policy)
        )
        logging.info("Updated policy for role: %s",role_name)

    except ClientError as e:
        logging.warning("Error updating role policy: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

```
def delete_flow_role(client, role_name):
    """
    Deletes an IAM role.

    Args:
        role_name (str): Name of the role to delete.
    """




    try:
        # Detach and delete inline policies
        policies = client.list_role_policies(RoleName=role_name)['PolicyNames']
        for policy_name in policies:
            client.delete_role_policy(RoleName=role_name, PolicyName=policy_name)

        # Delete the role
        client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logging.info("Deleted role: %s", role_name)


    except ClientError as e:
        logging.info("Error Deleting role: %s", str(e))
        raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateFlow
  - CreateFlowAlias
  - CreateFlowVersion
  - DeleteFlow
  - DeleteFlowAlias
  - DeleteFlowVersion
  - GetFlow
  - GetFlowAlias
  - GetFlowVersion
  - InvokeFlow
  - PrepareFlow

Orchestrate generative AI applications with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

AWS CloudFormation examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS CloudFormation.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway

- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

CloudFront examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with CloudFront.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetDistributionConfig`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDistributionConfig`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudFrontWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudFront operations."""

    def __init__(self, cloudfront_client):
        """
```

```
        :param cloudfront_client: A Boto3 CloudFront client
        """
        self.cloudfront_client = cloudfront_client


    def update_distribution(self):
        distribution_id = input(
            "This script updates the comment for a CloudFront distribution.\n"
            "Enter a CloudFront distribution ID: "
        )

        distribution_config_response =
self.cloudfront_client.get_distribution_config(
            Id=distribution_id
        )
        distribution_config = distribution_config_response["DistributionConfig"]
        distribution_etag = distribution_config_response["ETag"]

        distribution_config["Comment"] = input(
            f"\nThe current comment for distribution {distribution_id} is "
            f"'{distribution_config['Comment']}'.\n"
            f"Enter a new comment: "
        )
        self.cloudfront_client.update_distribution(
            DistributionConfig=distribution_config,
            Id=distribution_id,
            IfMatch=distribution_etag,
        )
        print("Done!")
```

- For API details, see GetDistributionConfig in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListDistributions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDistributions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudFrontWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudFront operations."""

    def __init__(self, cloudfront_client):
        """
        :param cloudfront_client: A Boto3 CloudFront client
        """
        self.cloudfront_client = cloudfront_client


    def list_distributions(self):
        print("CloudFront distributions:\n")
        distributions = self.cloudfront_client.list_distributions()
        if distributions["DistributionList"]["Quantity"] > 0:
            for distribution in distributions["DistributionList"]["Items"]:
                print(f"Domain: {distribution['DomainName']}")
                print(f"Distribution Id: {distribution['Id']}")
                print(
                    f"Certificate Source: "
                    f"{distribution['ViewerCertificate']['CertificateSource']}"
                )
                if distribution["ViewerCertificate"]["CertificateSource"] == "acm":
                    print(
                        f"Certificate: {distribution['ViewerCertificate']
['Certificate']}"
                    )
                print("")
        else:
            print("No CloudFront distributions detected.")
```

- For API details, see ListDistributions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateDistribution`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateDistribution`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudFrontWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudFront operations."""

    def __init__(self, cloudfront_client):
        """
        :param cloudfront_client: A Boto3 CloudFront client
        """
        self.cloudfront_client = cloudfront_client


    def update_distribution(self):
        distribution_id = input(
            "This script updates the comment for a CloudFront distribution.\n"
            "Enter a CloudFront distribution ID: "
        )

        distribution_config_response =
 self.cloudfront_client.get_distribution_config(
            Id=distribution_id
        )
        distribution_config = distribution_config_response["DistributionConfig"]
        distribution_etag = distribution_config_response["ETag"]

        distribution_config["Comment"] = input(
            f"\nThe current comment for distribution {distribution_id} is "
            f"'{distribution_config['Comment']}'.\n"
            f"Enter a new comment: "
        )
        self.cloudfront_client.update_distribution(
            DistributionConfig=distribution_config,
            Id=distribution_id,
```

```
            IfMatch=distribution_etag,
        )
        print("Done!")
```

- For API details, see UpdateDistribution in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def delete_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Deletes all of the alarms that are currently watching the specified metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
            metric.alarms.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace, metric_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete alarms for metric %s.%s.",
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def get_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Gets the alarms that are currently watching the specified metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :returns: An iterator that yields the alarms.
        """
        metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
        alarm_iter = metric.alarms.all()
        logger.info("Got alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace, metric_name)
        return alarm_iter
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def enable_alarm_actions(self, alarm_name, enable):
        """
        Enables or disables actions on the specified alarm. Alarm actions can be
        used to send notifications or automate responses when an alarm enters a
        particular state.

        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param enable: When True, actions are enabled for the alarm. Otherwise, they
                       disabled.
        """
        try:
            alarm = self.cloudwatch_resource.Alarm(alarm_name)
            if enable:
                alarm.enable_actions()
            else:
                alarm.disable_actions()
            logger.info(
                "%s actions for alarm %s.",
                "Enabled" if enable else "Disabled",
                alarm_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't %s actions alarm %s.",
```

```
                "enable" if enable else "disable",
                alarm_name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def enable_alarm_actions(self, alarm_name, enable):
        """
        Enables or disables actions on the specified alarm. Alarm actions can be
        used to send notifications or automate responses when an alarm enters a
        particular state.

        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param enable: When True, actions are enabled for the alarm. Otherwise, they
                       disabled.
        """
```

```
        try:
            alarm = self.cloudwatch_resource.Alarm(alarm_name)
            if enable:
                alarm.enable_actions()
            else:
                alarm.disable_actions()
            logger.info(
                "%s actions for alarm %s.",
                "Enabled" if enable else "Disabled",
                alarm_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't %s actions alarm %s.",
                "enable" if enable else "disable",
                alarm_name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetMetricStatistics`

The following code example shows how to use `GetMetricStatistics`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
```

```
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def get_metric_statistics(self, namespace, name, start, end, period,
stat_types):
        """
        Gets statistics for a metric within a specified time span. Metrics are
grouped
        into the specified period.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param start: The UTC start time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param end: The UTC end time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param period: The period, in seconds, in which to group metrics. The period
                       must match the granularity of the metric, which depends on
                       the metric's age. For example, metrics that are older than
                       three hours have a one-minute granularity, so the period must
                       be at least 60 and must be a multiple of 60.
        :param stat_types: The type of statistics to retrieve, such as average value
                           or maximum value.
        :return: The retrieved statistics for the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            stats = metric.get_statistics(
                StartTime=start, EndTime=end, Period=period, Statistics=stat_types
            )
            logger.info(
                "Got %s statistics for %s.", len(stats["Datapoints"]),
stats["Label"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get statistics for %s.%s.", namespace, name)
            raise
        else:
            return stats
```

- For API details, see GetMetricStatistics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ListMetrics

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def list_metrics(self, namespace, name, recent=False):
        """
        Gets the metrics within a namespace that have the specified name.
        If the metric has no dimensions, a single metric is returned.
        Otherwise, metrics for all dimensions are returned.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param recent: When True, only metrics that have been active in the last
                       three hours are returned.
        :return: An iterator that yields the retrieved metrics.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Namespace": namespace, "MetricName": name}
            if recent:
                kwargs["RecentlyActive"] = "PT3H"  # List past 3 hours only
            metric_iter = self.cloudwatch_resource.metrics.filter(**kwargs)
            logger.info("Got metrics for %s.%s.", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get metrics for %s.%s.", namespace, name)
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return metric_iter
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def create_metric_alarm(
        self,
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        alarm_name,
        stat_type,
        period,
        eval_periods,
        threshold,
        comparison_op,
    ):
        """
        Creates an alarm that watches a metric.
```

```
        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param stat_type: The type of statistic the alarm watches.
        :param period: The period in which metric data are grouped to calculate
                       statistics.
        :param eval_periods: The number of periods that the metric must be over the
                             alarm threshold before the alarm is set into an alarmed
                             state.
        :param threshold: The threshold value to compare against the metric
statistic.
        :param comparison_op: The comparison operation used to compare the threshold
                              against the metric.
        :return: The newly created alarm.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
            alarm = metric.put_alarm(
                AlarmName=alarm_name,
                Statistic=stat_type,
                Period=period,
                EvaluationPeriods=eval_periods,
                Threshold=threshold,
                ComparisonOperator=comparison_op,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Added alarm %s to track metric %s.%s.",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add alarm %s to metric %s.%s",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return alarm
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def put_metric_data(self, namespace, name, value, unit):
        """
        Sends a single data value to CloudWatch for a metric. This metric is given
        a timestamp of the current UTC time.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param value: The value of the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[{"MetricName": name, "Value": value, "Unit": unit}],
            )
```

```
            logger.info("Put data for metric %s.%s", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data for metric %s.%s", namespace, name)
            raise
```

Put a set of data into a CloudWatch metric.

```
class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def put_metric_data_set(self, namespace, name, timestamp, unit, data_set):
        """
        Sends a set of data to CloudWatch for a metric. All of the data in the set
        have the same timestamp and unit.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param timestamp: The UTC timestamp for the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        :param data_set: The set of data to send. This set is a dictionary that
                         contains a list of values and a list of corresponding
 counts.
                         The value and count lists must be the same length.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[
                    {
                        "MetricName": name,
                        "Timestamp": timestamp,
                        "Values": data_set["values"],
                        "Counts": data_set["counts"],
```

```
                        "Unit": unit,
                    }
                ],
            )
            logger.info("Put data set for metric %s.%s.", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data set for metric %s.%s.", namespace,
name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Manage metrics and alarms

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an alarm to watch a CloudWatch metric.
- Put data into a metric and trigger the alarm.
- Get data from the alarm.
- Delete the alarm.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps CloudWatch operations.

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import random
import time
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class CloudWatchWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon CloudWatch functions."""

    def __init__(self, cloudwatch_resource):
        """
        :param cloudwatch_resource: A Boto3 CloudWatch resource.
        """
        self.cloudwatch_resource = cloudwatch_resource


    def put_metric_data_set(self, namespace, name, timestamp, unit, data_set):
        """
        Sends a set of data to CloudWatch for a metric. All of the data in the set
        have the same timestamp and unit.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param timestamp: The UTC timestamp for the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        :param data_set: The set of data to send. This set is a dictionary that
                         contains a list of values and a list of corresponding
 counts.
                         The value and count lists must be the same length.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[
                    {
                        "MetricName": name,
                        "Timestamp": timestamp,
                        "Values": data_set["values"],
                        "Counts": data_set["counts"],
                        "Unit": unit,
                    }
                ],
            )
```

```
            logger.info("Put data set for metric %s.%s.", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data set for metric %s.%s.", namespace,
name)
            raise


    def create_metric_alarm(
        self,
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        alarm_name,
        stat_type,
        period,
        eval_periods,
        threshold,
        comparison_op,
    ):
        """
        Creates an alarm that watches a metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :param alarm_name: The name of the alarm.
        :param stat_type: The type of statistic the alarm watches.
        :param period: The period in which metric data are grouped to calculate
                       statistics.
        :param eval_periods: The number of periods that the metric must be over the
                             alarm threshold before the alarm is set into an alarmed
                             state.
        :param threshold: The threshold value to compare against the metric
statistic.
        :param comparison_op: The comparison operation used to compare the threshold
                              against the metric.
        :return: The newly created alarm.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
            alarm = metric.put_alarm(
                AlarmName=alarm_name,
                Statistic=stat_type,
                Period=period,
                EvaluationPeriods=eval_periods,
                Threshold=threshold,
```

```
                ComparisonOperator=comparison_op,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Added alarm %s to track metric %s.%s.",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add alarm %s to metric %s.%s",
                alarm_name,
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return alarm


    def put_metric_data(self, namespace, name, value, unit):
        """
        Sends a single data value to CloudWatch for a metric. This metric is given
        a timestamp of the current UTC time.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param value: The value of the metric.
        :param unit: The unit of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            metric.put_data(
                Namespace=namespace,
                MetricData=[{"MetricName": name, "Value": value, "Unit": unit}],
            )
            logger.info("Put data for metric %s.%s", namespace, name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put data for metric %s.%s", namespace, name)
            raise


    def get_metric_statistics(self, namespace, name, start, end, period,
stat_types):
```

```
        """
        Gets statistics for a metric within a specified time span. Metrics are
grouped
        into the specified period.

        :param namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param name: The name of the metric.
        :param start: The UTC start time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param end: The UTC end time of the time span to retrieve.
        :param period: The period, in seconds, in which to group metrics. The period
                       must match the granularity of the metric, which depends on
                       the metric's age. For example, metrics that are older than
                       three hours have a one-minute granularity, so the period must
                       be at least 60 and must be a multiple of 60.
        :param stat_types: The type of statistics to retrieve, such as average value
                           or maximum value.
        :return: The retrieved statistics for the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(namespace, name)
            stats = metric.get_statistics(
                StartTime=start, EndTime=end, Period=period, Statistics=stat_types
            )
            logger.info(
                "Got %s statistics for %s.", len(stats["Datapoints"]),
stats["Label"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get statistics for %s.%s.", namespace, name)
            raise
        else:
            return stats


    def get_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Gets the alarms that are currently watching the specified metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        :returns: An iterator that yields the alarms.
        """
        metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
        alarm_iter = metric.alarms.all()
```

```
        logger.info("Got alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace, metric_name)
        return alarm_iter


    def delete_metric_alarms(self, metric_namespace, metric_name):
        """
        Deletes all of the alarms that are currently watching the specified metric.

        :param metric_namespace: The namespace of the metric.
        :param metric_name: The name of the metric.
        """
        try:
            metric = self.cloudwatch_resource.Metric(metric_namespace, metric_name)
            metric.alarms.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted alarms for metric %s.%s.", metric_namespace, metric_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete alarms for metric %s.%s.",
                metric_namespace,
                metric_name,
            )
            raise
```

Use the wrapper class to put data in a metric, trigger an alarm that watches the metric, and get data from the alarm.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon CloudWatch metrics and alarms demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    cw_wrapper = CloudWatchWrapper(boto3.resource("cloudwatch"))

    minutes = 20
    metric_namespace = "doc-example-metric"
    metric_name = "page_views"
```

```
    start = datetime.utcnow() - timedelta(minutes=minutes)
    print(
        f"Putting data into metric {metric_namespace}.{metric_name} spanning the "
        f"last {minutes} minutes."
    )
    for offset in range(0, minutes):
        stamp = start + timedelta(minutes=offset)
        cw_wrapper.put_metric_data_set(
            metric_namespace,
            metric_name,
            stamp,
            "Count",
            {
                "values": [
                    random.randint(bound, bound * 2)
                    for bound in range(offset + 1, offset + 11)
                ],
                "counts": [random.randint(1, offset + 1) for _ in range(10)],
            },
        )

    alarm_name = "high_page_views"
    period = 60
    eval_periods = 2
    print(f"Creating alarm {alarm_name} for metric {metric_name}.")
    alarm = cw_wrapper.create_metric_alarm(
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        alarm_name,
        "Maximum",
        period,
        eval_periods,
        100,
        "GreaterThanThreshold",
    )
    print(f"Alarm ARN is {alarm.alarm_arn}.")
    print(f"Current alarm state is: {alarm.state_value}.")

    print(
        f"Sending data to trigger the alarm. This requires data over the threshold "
        f"for {eval_periods} periods of {period} seconds each."
    )
    while alarm.state_value == "INSUFFICIENT_DATA":
        print("Sending data for the metric.")
```

```
        cw_wrapper.put_metric_data(
            metric_namespace, metric_name, random.randint(100, 200), "Count"
        )
        alarm.load()
        print(f"Current alarm state is: {alarm.state_value}.")
        if alarm.state_value == "INSUFFICIENT_DATA":
            print(f"Waiting for {period} seconds...")
            time.sleep(period)
        else:
            print("Wait for a minute for eventual consistency of metric data.")
            time.sleep(period)
            if alarm.state_value == "OK":
                alarm.load()
                print(f"Current alarm state is: {alarm.state_value}.")

    print(
        f"Getting data for metric {metric_namespace}.{metric_name} during timespan "
        f"of {start} to {datetime.utcnow()} (times are UTC)."
    )
    stats = cw_wrapper.get_metric_statistics(
        metric_namespace,
        metric_name,
        start,
        datetime.utcnow(),
        60,
        ["Average", "Minimum", "Maximum"],
    )
    print(
        f"Got {len(stats['Datapoints'])} data points for metric "
        f"{metric_namespace}.{metric_name}."
    )
    pprint(sorted(stats["Datapoints"], key=lambda x: x["Timestamp"]))

    print(f"Getting alarms for metric {metric_name}.")
    alarms = cw_wrapper.get_metric_alarms(metric_namespace, metric_name)
    for alarm in alarms:
        print(f"Alarm {alarm.name} is currently in state {alarm.state_value}.")

    print(f"Deleting alarms for metric {metric_name}.")
    cw_wrapper.delete_metric_alarms(metric_namespace, metric_name)

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteAlarms
  - DescribeAlarmsForMetric
  - DisableAlarmActions
  - EnableAlarmActions
  - GetMetricStatistics
  - ListMetrics
  - PutMetricAlarm
  - PutMetricData

CloudWatch Logs examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with CloudWatch Logs.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`GetQueryResults`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueryResults`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    def _wait_for_query_results(self, client, query_id):
        """
        Waits for the query to complete and retrieves the results.

        :param query_id: The ID of the initiated query.
        :type query_id: str
        :return: A list containing the results of the query.
        :rtype: list
        """
        while True:
            time.sleep(1)
            results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
            if results["status"] in [
                "Complete",
                "Failed",
                "Cancelled",
                "Timeout",
                "Unknown",
            ]:
                return results.get("results", [])
```

- For API details, see GetQueryResults in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartLiveTail`

The following code example shows how to use `StartLiveTail`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Include the required files.

```
import boto3
```

```
import time
from datetime import datetime
```

Start the Live Tail session.

```
    # Initialize the client
    client = boto3.client('logs')

    start_time = time.time()

    try:
        response = client.start_live_tail(
            logGroupIdentifiers=log_group_identifiers,
            logStreamNames=log_streams,
            logEventFilterPattern=filter_pattern
        )
        event_stream = response['responseStream']
        # Handle the events streamed back in the response
        for event in event_stream:
            # Set a timeout to close the stream.
            # This will end the Live Tail session.
            if (time.time() - start_time >= 10):
                event_stream.close()
                break
            # Handle when session is started
            if 'sessionStart' in event:
                session_start_event = event['sessionStart']
                print(session_start_event)
            # Handle when log event is given in a session update
            elif 'sessionUpdate' in event:
                log_events = event['sessionUpdate']['sessionResults']
                for log_event in log_events:
                    print('[{date}]
 {log}'.format(date=datetime.fromtimestamp(log_event['timestamp']/1000),log=log_event['messa
            else:
                # On-stream exceptions are captured here
                raise RuntimeError(str(event))
    except Exception as e:
        print(e)
```

- For API details, see StartLiveTail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

StartQuery

The following code example shows how to use `StartQuery`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    def perform_query(self, date_range):
        """
        Performs the actual CloudWatch log query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for the
query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :return: A list containing the query results.
        :rtype: list
        """
        client = boto3.client("logs")
        try:
            try:
                start_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
                )
                end_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
                )
                response = client.start_query(
                    logGroupName=self.log_group,
                    startTime=start_time,
                    endTime=end_time,
                    queryString=self.query_string,
                    limit=self.limit,
                )
                query_id = response["queryId"]
            except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
                raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")
```

```
            while True:
                time.sleep(1)
                results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
                if results["status"] in [
                    "Complete",
                    "Failed",
                    "Cancelled",
                    "Timeout",
                    "Unknown",
                ]:
                    return results.get("results", [])
        except DateOutOfBoundsError:
            return []

    def _initiate_query(self, client, date_range, max_logs):
        """
        Initiates the CloudWatch logs query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for the
query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :param max_logs: The maximum number of logs to retrieve.
        :type max_logs: int
        :return: The query ID as a string.
        :rtype: str
        """
        try:
            start_time = round(
                self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
            )
            end_time = round(
                self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
            )
            response = client.start_query(
                logGroupName=self.log_group,
                startTime=start_time,
                endTime=end_time,
                queryString=self.query_string,
                limit=max_logs,
            )
            return response["queryId"]
        except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
            raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")
```

- For API details, see StartQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Run a large query

The following code example shows how to use CloudWatch Logs to query more than 10,000 records.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This file invokes an example module for managing CloudWatch queries exceeding 10,000 results.

```
import logging
import os
import sys

import boto3
from botocore.config import Config

from cloudwatch_query import CloudWatchQuery
from date_utilities import DateUtilities

# Configure logging at the module level.
logging.basicConfig(
    level=logging.INFO,
    format="%(asctime)s - %(levelname)s - %(filename)s:%(lineno)d - %(message)s",
)

DEFAULT_QUERY_LOG_GROUP = "/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query"


class CloudWatchLogsQueryRunner:
```

```
    def __init__(self):
        """
        Initializes the CloudWatchLogsQueryRunner class by setting up date utilities
        and creating a CloudWatch Logs client with retry configuration.
        """
        self.date_utilities = DateUtilities()
        self.cloudwatch_logs_client = self.create_cloudwatch_logs_client()

    def create_cloudwatch_logs_client(self):
        """
        Creates and returns a CloudWatch Logs client with a specified retry
configuration.

        :return: A CloudWatch Logs client instance.
        :rtype: boto3.client
        """
        try:
            return boto3.client("logs", config=Config(retries={"max_attempts": 10}))
        except Exception as e:
            logging.error(f"Failed to create CloudWatch Logs client: {e}")
            sys.exit(1)

    def fetch_environment_variables(self):
        """
        Fetches and validates required environment variables for query start and end
dates.
        Fetches the environment variable for log group, returning the default value
if it
        does not exist.

        :return: Tuple of query start date and end date as integers and the log
group.
        :rtype: tuple
        :raises SystemExit: If required environment variables are missing or
invalid.
        """
        try:
            query_start_date = int(os.environ["QUERY_START_DATE"])
            query_end_date = int(os.environ["QUERY_END_DATE"])
        except KeyError:
            logging.error(
                "Both QUERY_START_DATE and QUERY_END_DATE environment variables are
required."
            )
```

```
            sys.exit(1)
        except ValueError as e:
            logging.error(f"Error parsing date environment variables: {e}")
            sys.exit(1)

        try:
            log_group = os.environ["QUERY_LOG_GROUP"]
        except KeyError:
            logging.warning("No QUERY_LOG_GROUP environment variable, using default
value")
            log_group = DEFAULT_QUERY_LOG_GROUP

        return query_start_date, query_end_date, log_group

    def convert_dates_to_iso8601(self, start_date, end_date):
        """
        Converts UNIX timestamp dates to ISO 8601 format using DateUtilities.

        :param start_date: The start date in UNIX timestamp.
        :type start_date: int
        :param end_date: The end date in UNIX timestamp.
        :type end_date: int
        :return: Start and end dates in ISO 8601 format.
        :rtype: tuple
        """
        start_date_iso8601 = self.date_utilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(
            start_date
        )
        end_date_iso8601 = self.date_utilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(
            end_date
        )
        return start_date_iso8601, end_date_iso8601

    def execute_query(
        self,
        start_date_iso8601,
        end_date_iso8601,
        log_group="/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query",
        query="fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc"
    ):
        """
        Creates a CloudWatchQuery instance and executes the query with provided date
range.
```

```
        :param start_date_iso8601: The start date in ISO 8601 format.
        :type start_date_iso8601: str
        :param end_date_iso8601: The end date in ISO 8601 format.
        :type end_date_iso8601: str
        :param log_group: Log group to search: "/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-
query"
        :type log_group: str
        :param query: Query string to pass to the CloudWatchQuery instance
        :type query: str
        """
        cloudwatch_query = CloudWatchQuery(
            log_group=log_group,
            query_string=query
        )
        cloudwatch_query.query_logs((start_date_iso8601, end_date_iso8601))
        logging.info("Query executed successfully.")
        logging.info(
            f"Queries completed in {cloudwatch_query.query_duration} seconds. Total
 logs found: {len(cloudwatch_query.query_results)}"
        )


def main():
    """
    Main function to start a recursive CloudWatch logs query.
    Fetches required environment variables, converts dates, and executes the query.
    """
    logging.info("Starting a recursive CloudWatch logs query...")
    runner = CloudWatchLogsQueryRunner()
    query_start_date, query_end_date, log_group =
 runner.fetch_environment_variables()
    start_date_iso8601 = DateUtilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(
        query_start_date
    )
    end_date_iso8601 =
 DateUtilities.convert_unix_timestamp_to_iso8601(query_end_date)
    runner.execute_query(start_date_iso8601, end_date_iso8601, log_group=log_group)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

This module processes CloudWatch queries exceeding 10,000 results.

```
import logging
import time
from datetime import datetime
import threading
import boto3

from date_utilities import DateUtilities

DEFAULT_QUERY = "fields @timestamp, @message | sort @timestamp asc"
DEFAULT_LOG_GROUP = "/workflows/cloudwatch-logs/large-query"

class DateOutOfBoundsError(Exception):
    """Exception raised when the date range for a query is out of bounds."""

    pass


class CloudWatchQuery:
    """
    A class to query AWS CloudWatch logs within a specified date range.

    :vartype date_range: tuple
    :ivar limit: Maximum number of log entries to return.
    :vartype limit: int
    :log_group str: Name of the log group to query
    :query_string str: query
    """

    def __init__(self, log_group: str = DEFAULT_LOG_GROUP, query_string:
 str=DEFAULT_QUERY) -> None:
        self.lock = threading.Lock()
        self.log_group = log_group
        self.query_string = query_string
        self.query_results = []
        self.query_duration = None
        self.datetime_format = "%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S.%f"
        self.date_utilities = DateUtilities()
        self.limit = 10000

    def query_logs(self, date_range):
        """
```

```
        Executes a CloudWatch logs query for a specified date range and calculates
the execution time of the query.

        :return: A batch of logs retrieved from the CloudWatch logs query.
        :rtype: list
        """
        start_time = datetime.now()

        start_date, end_date = self.date_utilities.normalize_date_range_format(
            date_range, from_format="unix_timestamp", to_format="datetime"
        )

        logging.info(
            f"Original query:"
            f"\n       START:     {start_date}"
            f"\n       END:       {end_date}"
            f"\n       LOG GROUP: {self.log_group}"
        )
        self.recursive_query((start_date, end_date))
        end_time = datetime.now()
        self.query_duration = (end_time - start_time).total_seconds()

    def recursive_query(self, date_range):
        """
        Processes logs within a given date range, fetching batches of logs
recursively if necessary.

        :param date_range: The date range to fetch logs for, specified as a tuple
(start_timestamp, end_timestamp).
        :type date_range: tuple
        :return: None if the recursive fetching is continued or stops when the final
batch of logs is processed.
                 Although it doesn't explicitly return the query results, this
method accumulates all fetched logs
                 in the `self.query_results` attribute.
        :rtype: None
        """
        batch_of_logs = self.perform_query(date_range)
        # Add the batch to the accumulated logs
        with self.lock:
            self.query_results.extend(batch_of_logs)
        if len(batch_of_logs) == self.limit:
            logging.info(f"Fetched {self.limit}, checking for more...")
            most_recent_log = self.find_most_recent_log(batch_of_logs)
```

```
            most_recent_log_timestamp = next(
                item["value"]
                for item in most_recent_log
                if item["field"] == "@timestamp"
            )
            new_range = (most_recent_log_timestamp, date_range[1])
            midpoint = self.date_utilities.find_middle_time(new_range)

            first_half_thread = threading.Thread(
                target=self.recursive_query,
                args=((most_recent_log_timestamp, midpoint),),
            )
            second_half_thread = threading.Thread(
                target=self.recursive_query, args=((midpoint, date_range[1]),)
            )

            first_half_thread.start()
            second_half_thread.start()

            first_half_thread.join()
            second_half_thread.join()

    def find_most_recent_log(self, logs):
        """
        Search a list of log items and return most recent log entry.
        :param logs: A list of logs to analyze.
        :return: log
        :type :return List containing log item details
        """
        most_recent_log = None
        most_recent_date = "1970-01-01 00:00:00.000"

        for log in logs:
            for item in log:
                if item["field"] == "@timestamp":
                    logging.debug(f"Compared: {item['value']} to
{most_recent_date}")
                    if (
                        self.date_utilities.compare_dates(
                            item["value"], most_recent_date
                        )
                        == item["value"]
                    ):
                        logging.debug(f"New most recent: {item['value']}")
```

```
                        most_recent_date = item["value"]
                        most_recent_log = log
        logging.info(f"Most recent log date of batch: {most_recent_date}")
        return most_recent_log

    def perform_query(self, date_range):
        """
        Performs the actual CloudWatch log query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for the
query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :return: A list containing the query results.
        :rtype: list
        """
        client = boto3.client("logs")
        try:
            try:
                start_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
                )
                end_time = round(

self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
                )
                response = client.start_query(
                    logGroupName=self.log_group,
                    startTime=start_time,
                    endTime=end_time,
                    queryString=self.query_string,
                    limit=self.limit,
                )
                query_id = response["queryId"]
            except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
                raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")
            while True:
                time.sleep(1)
                results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
                if results["status"] in [
                    "Complete",
                    "Failed",
                    "Cancelled",
                    "Timeout",
```

```
                    "Unknown",
                ]:
                    return results.get("results", [])
        except DateOutOfBoundsError:
            return []

    def _initiate_query(self, client, date_range, max_logs):
        """
        Initiates the CloudWatch logs query.

        :param date_range: A tuple representing the start and end datetime for the
query.
        :type date_range: tuple
        :param max_logs: The maximum number of logs to retrieve.
        :type max_logs: int
        :return: The query ID as a string.
        :rtype: str
        """
        try:
            start_time = round(
                self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[0])
            )
            end_time = round(
                self.date_utilities.convert_iso8601_to_unix_timestamp(date_range[1])
            )
            response = client.start_query(
                logGroupName=self.log_group,
                startTime=start_time,
                endTime=end_time,
                queryString=self.query_string,
                limit=max_logs,
            )
            return response["queryId"]
        except client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException as e:
            raise DateOutOfBoundsError(f"Resource not found: {e}")


    def _wait_for_query_results(self, client, query_id):
        """
        Waits for the query to complete and retrieves the results.

        :param query_id: The ID of the initiated query.
        :type query_id: str
        :return: A list containing the results of the query.
```

```
        :rtype: list
        """
        while True:
            time.sleep(1)
            results = client.get_query_results(queryId=query_id)
            if results["status"] in [
                "Complete",
                "Failed",
                "Cancelled",
                "Timeout",
                "Unknown",
            ]:
                return results.get("results", [])
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - GetQueryResults
  - StartQuery

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Cognito Identity.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create a Cognito Identity Provider client
cognitoidp = boto3.client("cognito-idp")

# Initialize a paginator for the list_user_pools operation
paginator = cognitoidp.get_paginator("list_user_pools")

# Create a PageIterator from the paginator
page_iterator = paginator.paginate(MaxResults=10)

# Initialize variables for pagination
user_pools = []

# Handle pagination
for page in page_iterator:
    user_pools.extend(page.get("UserPools", []))

# Print the list of user pools
print("User Pools for the account:")
if user_pools:
    for pool in user_pools:
        print(f"Name: {pool['Name']}, ID: {pool['Id']}")
else:
    print("No user pools found.")
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_up_user(self, user_name, password, user_email):
        """
        Signs up a new user with Amazon Cognito. This action prompts Amazon Cognito
        to send an email to the specified email address. The email contains a code
 that
        can be used to confirm the user.
```

```
        When the user already exists, the user status is checked to determine
whether
        the user has been confirmed.

        :param user_name: The user name that identifies the new user.
        :param password: The password for the new user.
        :param user_email: The email address for the new user.
        :return: True when the user is already confirmed with Amazon Cognito.
                 Otherwise, false.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "Password": password,
                "UserAttributes": [{"Name": "email", "Value": user_email}],
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.sign_up(**kwargs)
            confirmed = response["UserConfirmed"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "UsernameExistsException":
                response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_get_user(
                    UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id, Username=user_name
                )
                logger.warning(
                    "User %s exists and is %s.", user_name, response["UserStatus"]
                )
                confirmed = response["UserStatus"] == "CONFIRMED"
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't sign up %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return confirmed
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

AdminInitiateAuth

The following code example shows how to use AdminInitiateAuth.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def start_sign_in(self, user_name, password):
        """
        Starts the sign-in process for a user by using administrator credentials.
        This method of signing in is appropriate for code running on a secure
 server.

        If the user pool is configured to require MFA and this is the first sign-in
        for the user, Amazon Cognito returns a challenge response to set up an
        MFA application. When this occurs, this function gets an MFA secret from
        Amazon Cognito and returns it to the caller.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to sign in.
        :param password: The user's password.
```

```
        :return: The result of the sign-in attempt. When sign-in is successful, this
                 returns an access token that can be used to get AWS credentials.
Otherwise,
                 Amazon Cognito returns a challenge to set up an MFA application,
                 or a challenge to enter an MFA code from a registered MFA
application.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "AuthFlow": "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                "AuthParameters": {"USERNAME": user_name, "PASSWORD": password},
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["AuthParameters"]["SECRET_HASH"] =
self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_initiate_auth(**kwargs)
            challenge_name = response.get("ChallengeName", None)
            if challenge_name == "MFA_SETUP":
                if (
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA"
                    in response["ChallengeParameters"]["MFAS_CAN_SETUP"]
                ):
                    response.update(self.get_mfa_secret(response["Session"]))
                else:
                    raise RuntimeError(
                        "The user pool requires MFA setup, but the user pool is not
"
                        "configured for TOTP MFA. This example requires TOTP MFA."
                    )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Respond to an MFA challenge by providing a code generated by an associated MFA application.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def respond_to_mfa_challenge(self, user_name, session, mfa_code):
        """
        Responds to a challenge for an MFA code. This completes the second step of
        a two-factor sign-in. When sign-in is successful, it returns an access token
        that can be used to get AWS credentials from Amazon Cognito.
```

```
        :param user_name: The name of the user who is signing in.
        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :param mfa_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "ChallengeName": "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA",
                "Session": session,
                "ChallengeResponses": {
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE": mfa_code,
                },
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["ChallengeResponses"]["SECRET_HASH"] = self._secret_hash(
                    user_name
                )
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.admin_respond_to_auth_challenge(**kwargs)
            auth_result = response["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ExpiredCodeException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Your MFA code has expired or has been used already. You might
have "
                    "to wait a few seconds until your app shows you a new code."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't respond to mfa challenge for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return auth_result
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def get_mfa_secret(self, session):
        """
        Gets a token that can be used to associate an MFA application with the user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
 initiate
```

```
                        authentication.
        :return: An MFA token that can be used to set up an MFA application.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.cognito_idp_client.associate_software_token(Session=session)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get MFA secret. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ConfirmDevice`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmDevice`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
```

```
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def confirm_mfa_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        access_token,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Confirms an MFA device to be tracked by Amazon Cognito. When a device is
        tracked, its key and password can be used to sign in without requiring a new
        MFA code from the MFA application.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param device_key: The key of the device, returned by Amazon Cognito.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of the device, returned by Amazon
Cognito.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param access_token: The user's access token.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with Secure Remote Password (SRP)
                        calculations. The scenario associated with this example uses
                        the warrant package.
        :return: True when the user must confirm the device. Otherwise, False. When
                 False, the device is automatically confirmed and tracked.
        """
        srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
            username=user_name,
            password=device_password,
            pool_id="_",
            client_id=self.client_id,
            client_secret=None,
            client=self.cognito_idp_client,
        )
```

```
        device_and_pw = f"{device_group_key}{device_key}:{device_password}"
        device_and_pw_hash = aws_srp.hash_sha256(device_and_pw.encode("utf-8"))
        salt = aws_srp.pad_hex(aws_srp.get_random(16))
        x_value = aws_srp.hex_to_long(aws_srp.hex_hash(salt + device_and_pw_hash))
        verifier = aws_srp.pad_hex(pow(srp_helper.val_g, x_value, srp_helper.big_n))
        device_secret_verifier_config = {
            "PasswordVerifier": base64.standard_b64encode(
                bytearray.fromhex(verifier)
            ).decode("utf-8"),
            "Salt":
base64.standard_b64encode(bytearray.fromhex(salt)).decode("utf-8"),
        }
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_device(
                AccessToken=access_token,
                DeviceKey=device_key,
                DeviceSecretVerifierConfig=device_secret_verifier_config,
            )
            user_confirm = response["UserConfirmationNecessary"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm mfa device %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                device_key,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return user_confirm
```

- For API details, see ConfirmDevice in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ConfirmSignUp

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def confirm_user_sign_up(self, user_name, confirmation_code):
        """
        Confirms a previously created user. A user must be confirmed before they
        can sign in to Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to confirm.
        :param confirmation_code: The confirmation code sent to the user's
 registered
                                  email address.
        :return: True when the confirmation succeeds.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "ConfirmationCode": confirmation_code,
```

```
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_sign_up(**kwargs)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm sign up for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return True
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`InitiateAuth`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateAuth`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example shows you how to start authentication with a tracked device. To complete sign-in, the client must respond correctly to Secure Remote Password (SRP) challenges.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
```

```
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        password,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Signs in to Amazon Cognito as a user who has a tracked device. Signing in
        with a tracked device lets a user sign in without entering a new MFA code.

        Signing in with a tracked device requires that the client respond to the SRP
        protocol. The scenario associated with this example uses the warrant package
        to help with SRP calculations.

        For more information on SRP, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Secure_Remote_Password_protocol.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :param device_key: The key of a tracked device.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of a tracked device.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with SRP calculations. The scenario
                        associated with this example uses the warrant package.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
                username=user_name,
                password=device_password,
```

```
                pool_id="_",
                client_id=self.client_id,
                client_secret=None,
                client=self.cognito_idp_client,
            )

            response_init = self.cognito_idp_client.initiate_auth(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                AuthFlow="USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                AuthParameters={
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "PASSWORD": password,
                    "DEVICE_KEY": device_key,
                },
            )
            if response_init["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_SRP_AUTH":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_SRP_AUTH challenge but got
{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            auth_params = srp_helper.get_auth_params()
            auth_params["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_auth = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_SRP_AUTH",
                ChallengeResponses=auth_params,
            )
            if response_auth["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER challenge but got "
                    f"{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            challenge_params = response_auth["ChallengeParameters"]
            challenge_params["USER_ID_FOR_SRP"] = device_group_key + device_key
            cr = srp_helper.process_challenge(challenge_params, {"USERNAME":
user_name})
            cr["USERNAME"] = user_name
            cr["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_verifier = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER",
                ChallengeResponses=cr,
```

```
            )
            auth_tokens = response_verifier["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start client sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return auth_tokens
```

- For API details, see InitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
```

```
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def list_users(self):
        """
        Returns a list of the users in the current user pool.

        :return: The list of users.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.list_users(UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id)
            users = response["Users"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list users for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.user_pool_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return users
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def resend_confirmation(self, user_name):
        """
        Prompts Amazon Cognito to resend an email with a new confirmation code.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who will receive the email.
        :return: Delivery information about where the email is sent.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"ClientId": self.client_id, "Username": user_name}
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.resend_confirmation_code(**kwargs)
            delivery = response["CodeDeliveryDetails"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't resend confirmation to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return delivery
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `RespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sign in with a tracked device. To complete sign-in, the client must respond correctly to Secure Remote Password (SRP) challenges.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        password,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
```

```
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Signs in to Amazon Cognito as a user who has a tracked device. Signing in
        with a tracked device lets a user sign in without entering a new MFA code.

        Signing in with a tracked device requires that the client respond to the SRP
        protocol. The scenario associated with this example uses the warrant package
        to help with SRP calculations.

        For more information on SRP, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Secure_Remote_Password_protocol.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :param device_key: The key of a tracked device.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of a tracked device.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with SRP calculations. The scenario
                        associated with this example uses the warrant package.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
                username=user_name,
                password=device_password,
                pool_id="_",
                client_id=self.client_id,
                client_secret=None,
                client=self.cognito_idp_client,
            )

            response_init = self.cognito_idp_client.initiate_auth(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                AuthFlow="USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                AuthParameters={
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "PASSWORD": password,
                    "DEVICE_KEY": device_key,
                },
            )
            if response_init["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_SRP_AUTH":
                raise RuntimeError(
```

```
                    f"Expected DEVICE_SRP_AUTH challenge but got
{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            auth_params = srp_helper.get_auth_params()
            auth_params["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_auth = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_SRP_AUTH",
                ChallengeResponses=auth_params,
            )
            if response_auth["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER challenge but got "
                    f"{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            challenge_params = response_auth["ChallengeParameters"]
            challenge_params["USER_ID_FOR_SRP"] = device_group_key + device_key
            cr = srp_helper.process_challenge(challenge_params, {"USERNAME":
user_name})
            cr["USERNAME"] = user_name
            cr["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_verifier = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER",
                ChallengeResponses=cr,
            )
            auth_tokens = response_verifier["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start client sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return auth_tokens
```

- For API details, see RespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SignUp

The following code example shows how to use SignUp.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def sign_up_user(self, user_name, password, user_email):
        """
        Signs up a new user with Amazon Cognito. This action prompts Amazon Cognito
        to send an email to the specified email address. The email contains a code
 that
        can be used to confirm the user.

        When the user already exists, the user status is checked to determine
 whether
        the user has been confirmed.

        :param user_name: The user name that identifies the new user.
        :param password: The password for the new user.
```

```
        :param user_email: The email address for the new user.
        :return: True when the user is already confirmed with Amazon Cognito.
                 Otherwise, false.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "Password": password,
                "UserAttributes": [{"Name": "email", "Value": user_email}],
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.sign_up(**kwargs)
            confirmed = response["UserConfirmed"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "UsernameExistsException":
                response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_get_user(
                    UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id, Username=user_name
                )
                logger.warning(
                    "User %s exists and is %s.", user_name, response["UserStatus"]
                )
                confirmed = response["UserStatus"] == "CONFIRMED"
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't sign up %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return confirmed
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
 pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def verify_mfa(self, session, user_code):
        """
        Verify a new MFA application that is associated with a user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
 initiate
                        authentication.
        :param user_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: Status that indicates whether the MFA application is verified.
        """
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.verify_software_token(
                Session=session, UserCode=user_code
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't verify MFA. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps Amazon Cognito functions used in the scenario.

```
class CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Cognito actions"""

    def __init__(self, cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id,
 client_secret=None):
        """
        :param cognito_idp_client: A Boto3 Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client.
```

```
        :param user_pool_id: The ID of an existing Amazon Cognito user pool.
        :param client_id: The ID of a client application registered with the user
pool.
        :param client_secret: The client secret, if the client has a secret.
        """
        self.cognito_idp_client = cognito_idp_client
        self.user_pool_id = user_pool_id
        self.client_id = client_id
        self.client_secret = client_secret


    def _secret_hash(self, user_name):
        """
        Calculates a secret hash from a user name and a client secret.

        :param user_name: The user name to use when calculating the hash.
        :return: The secret hash.
        """
        key = self.client_secret.encode()
        msg = bytes(user_name + self.client_id, "utf-8")
        secret_hash = base64.b64encode(
            hmac.new(key, msg, digestmod=hashlib.sha256).digest()
        ).decode()
        logger.info("Made secret hash for %s: %s.", user_name, secret_hash)
        return secret_hash

    def sign_up_user(self, user_name, password, user_email):
        """
        Signs up a new user with Amazon Cognito. This action prompts Amazon Cognito
        to send an email to the specified email address. The email contains a code
that
        can be used to confirm the user.

        When the user already exists, the user status is checked to determine
whether
        the user has been confirmed.

        :param user_name: The user name that identifies the new user.
        :param password: The password for the new user.
        :param user_email: The email address for the new user.
        :return: True when the user is already confirmed with Amazon Cognito.
                 Otherwise, false.
        """
        try:
```

```
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "Password": password,
                "UserAttributes": [{"Name": "email", "Value": user_email}],
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.sign_up(**kwargs)
            confirmed = response["UserConfirmed"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "UsernameExistsException":
                response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_get_user(
                    UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id, Username=user_name
                )
                logger.warning(
                    "User %s exists and is %s.", user_name, response["UserStatus"]
                )
                confirmed = response["UserStatus"] == "CONFIRMED"
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't sign up %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return confirmed


    def resend_confirmation(self, user_name):
        """
        Prompts Amazon Cognito to resend an email with a new confirmation code.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who will receive the email.
        :return: Delivery information about where the email is sent.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"ClientId": self.client_id, "Username": user_name}
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.resend_confirmation_code(**kwargs)
            delivery = response["CodeDeliveryDetails"]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't resend confirmation to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return delivery


    def confirm_user_sign_up(self, user_name, confirmation_code):
        """
        Confirms a previously created user. A user must be confirmed before they
        can sign in to Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to confirm.
        :param confirmation_code: The confirmation code sent to the user's
registered
                                  email address.
        :return: True when the confirmation succeeds.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "Username": user_name,
                "ConfirmationCode": confirmation_code,
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["SecretHash"] = self._secret_hash(user_name)
            self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_sign_up(**kwargs)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm sign up for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return True


    def list_users(self):
```

```
        """
        Returns a list of the users in the current user pool.

        :return: The list of users.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.list_users(UserPoolId=self.user_pool_id)
            users = response["Users"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list users for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.user_pool_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return users


    def start_sign_in(self, user_name, password):
        """
        Starts the sign-in process for a user by using administrator credentials.
        This method of signing in is appropriate for code running on a secure
server.

        If the user pool is configured to require MFA and this is the first sign-in
        for the user, Amazon Cognito returns a challenge response to set up an
        MFA application. When this occurs, this function gets an MFA secret from
        Amazon Cognito and returns it to the caller.

        :param user_name: The name of the user to sign in.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :return: The result of the sign-in attempt. When sign-in is successful, this
                 returns an access token that can be used to get AWS credentials.
Otherwise,
                 Amazon Cognito returns a challenge to set up an MFA application,
                 or a challenge to enter an MFA code from a registered MFA
application.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
```

```
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "AuthFlow": "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                "AuthParameters": {"USERNAME": user_name, "PASSWORD": password},
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["AuthParameters"]["SECRET_HASH"] =
self._secret_hash(user_name)
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.admin_initiate_auth(**kwargs)
            challenge_name = response.get("ChallengeName", None)
            if challenge_name == "MFA_SETUP":
                if (
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA"
                    in response["ChallengeParameters"]["MFAS_CAN_SETUP"]
                ):
                    response.update(self.get_mfa_secret(response["Session"]))
                else:
                    raise RuntimeError(
                        "The user pool requires MFA setup, but the user pool is not
"
                        "configured for TOTP MFA. This example requires TOTP MFA."
                    )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response


    def get_mfa_secret(self, session):
        """
        Gets a token that can be used to associate an MFA application with the user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :return: An MFA token that can be used to set up an MFA application.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.associate_software_token(Session=session)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get MFA secret. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response


    def verify_mfa(self, session, user_code):
        """
        Verify a new MFA application that is associated with a user.

        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :param user_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: Status that indicates whether the MFA application is verified.
        """
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.verify_software_token(
                Session=session, UserCode=user_code
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't verify MFA. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            response.pop("ResponseMetadata", None)
            return response


    def respond_to_mfa_challenge(self, user_name, session, mfa_code):
        """
        Responds to a challenge for an MFA code. This completes the second step of
        a two-factor sign-in. When sign-in is successful, it returns an access token
```

```
        that can be used to get AWS credentials from Amazon Cognito.

        :param user_name: The name of the user who is signing in.
        :param session: Session information returned from a previous call to
initiate
                        authentication.
        :param mfa_code: A code generated by the associated MFA application.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "UserPoolId": self.user_pool_id,
                "ClientId": self.client_id,
                "ChallengeName": "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA",
                "Session": session,
                "ChallengeResponses": {
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE": mfa_code,
                },
            }
            if self.client_secret is not None:
                kwargs["ChallengeResponses"]["SECRET_HASH"] = self._secret_hash(
                    user_name
                )
            response =
self.cognito_idp_client.admin_respond_to_auth_challenge(**kwargs)
            auth_result = response["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ExpiredCodeException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Your MFA code has expired or has been used already. You might
have "
                    "to wait a few seconds until your app shows you a new code."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't respond to mfa challenge for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    user_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
```

```
            return auth_result


    def confirm_mfa_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        access_token,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Confirms an MFA device to be tracked by Amazon Cognito. When a device is
        tracked, its key and password can be used to sign in without requiring a new
        MFA code from the MFA application.

        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param device_key: The key of the device, returned by Amazon Cognito.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of the device, returned by Amazon
Cognito.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param access_token: The user's access token.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with Secure Remote Password (SRP)
                        calculations. The scenario associated with this example uses
                        the warrant package.
        :return: True when the user must confirm the device. Otherwise, False. When
                 False, the device is automatically confirmed and tracked.
        """
        srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
            username=user_name,
            password=device_password,
            pool_id="_",
            client_id=self.client_id,
            client_secret=None,
            client=self.cognito_idp_client,
        )
        device_and_pw = f"{device_group_key}{device_key}:{device_password}"
        device_and_pw_hash = aws_srp.hash_sha256(device_and_pw.encode("utf-8"))
        salt = aws_srp.pad_hex(aws_srp.get_random(16))
        x_value = aws_srp.hex_to_long(aws_srp.hex_hash(salt + device_and_pw_hash))
        verifier = aws_srp.pad_hex(pow(srp_helper.val_g, x_value, srp_helper.big_n))
        device_secret_verifier_config = {
            "PasswordVerifier": base64.standard_b64encode(
```

```
                bytearray.fromhex(verifier)
            ).decode("utf-8"),
            "Salt":
 base64.standard_b64encode(bytearray.fromhex(salt)).decode("utf-8"),
        }
        try:
            response = self.cognito_idp_client.confirm_device(
                AccessToken=access_token,
                DeviceKey=device_key,
                DeviceSecretVerifierConfig=device_secret_verifier_config,
            )
            user_confirm = response["UserConfirmationNecessary"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't confirm mfa device %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                device_key,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return user_confirm


    def sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        self,
        user_name,
        password,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        aws_srp,
    ):
        """
        Signs in to Amazon Cognito as a user who has a tracked device. Signing in
        with a tracked device lets a user sign in without entering a new MFA code.

        Signing in with a tracked device requires that the client respond to the SRP
        protocol. The scenario associated with this example uses the warrant package
        to help with SRP calculations.

        For more information on SRP, see https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/
Secure_Remote_Password_protocol.
```

```
        :param user_name: The user that is associated with the device.
        :param password: The user's password.
        :param device_key: The key of a tracked device.
        :param device_group_key: The group key of a tracked device.
        :param device_password: The password that is associated with the device.
        :param aws_srp: A class that helps with SRP calculations. The scenario
                        associated with this example uses the warrant package.
        :return: The result of the authentication. When successful, this contains an
                 access token for the user.
        """
        try:
            srp_helper = aws_srp.AWSSRP(
                username=user_name,
                password=device_password,
                pool_id="_",
                client_id=self.client_id,
                client_secret=None,
                client=self.cognito_idp_client,
            )

            response_init = self.cognito_idp_client.initiate_auth(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                AuthFlow="USER_PASSWORD_AUTH",
                AuthParameters={
                    "USERNAME": user_name,
                    "PASSWORD": password,
                    "DEVICE_KEY": device_key,
                },
            )
            if response_init["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_SRP_AUTH":
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Expected DEVICE_SRP_AUTH challenge but got
{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            auth_params = srp_helper.get_auth_params()
            auth_params["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_auth = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_SRP_AUTH",
                ChallengeResponses=auth_params,
            )
            if response_auth["ChallengeName"] != "DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER":
                raise RuntimeError(
```

```
                    f"Expected DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER challenge but got "
                    f"{response_init['ChallengeName']}."
                )

            challenge_params = response_auth["ChallengeParameters"]
            challenge_params["USER_ID_FOR_SRP"] = device_group_key + device_key
            cr = srp_helper.process_challenge(challenge_params, {"USERNAME":
 user_name})
            cr["USERNAME"] = user_name
            cr["DEVICE_KEY"] = device_key
            response_verifier = self.cognito_idp_client.respond_to_auth_challenge(
                ClientId=self.client_id,
                ChallengeName="DEVICE_PASSWORD_VERIFIER",
                ChallengeResponses=cr,
            )
            auth_tokens = response_verifier["AuthenticationResult"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start client sign in for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                user_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return auth_tokens
```

Create a class that runs the scenario. This example also registers an MFA device to be tracked by Amazon Cognito and shows you how to sign in by using a password and information from the tracked device. This avoids the need to enter a new MFA code.

```
def run_scenario(cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Cognito user signup with MFA demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    cog_wrapper = CognitoIdentityProviderWrapper(
```

```
        cognito_idp_client, user_pool_id, client_id
    )

    user_name = q.ask("Let's sign up a new user. Enter a user name: ", q.non_empty)
    password = q.ask("Enter a password for the user: ", q.non_empty)
    email = q.ask("Enter a valid email address that you own: ", q.non_empty)
    confirmed = cog_wrapper.sign_up_user(user_name, password, email)
    while not confirmed:
        print(
            f"User {user_name} requires confirmation. Check {email} for "
            f"a verification code."
        )
        confirmation_code = q.ask("Enter the confirmation code from the email: ")
        if not confirmation_code:
            if q.ask("Do you need another confirmation code (y/n)? ", q.is_yesno):
                delivery = cog_wrapper.resend_confirmation(user_name)
                print(
                    f"Confirmation code sent by {delivery['DeliveryMedium']} "
                    f"to {delivery['Destination']}."
                )
        else:
            confirmed = cog_wrapper.confirm_user_sign_up(user_name,
confirmation_code)
    print(f"User {user_name} is confirmed and ready to use.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Let's get a list of users in the user pool.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    users = cog_wrapper.list_users()
    if users:
        print(f"Found {len(users)} users:")
        pp(users)
    else:
        print("No users found.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Let's sign in and get an access token.")
    auth_tokens = None
    challenge = "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH"
    response = {}
    while challenge is not None:
        if challenge == "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH":
            response = cog_wrapper.start_sign_in(user_name, password)
            challenge = response["ChallengeName"]
```

```
        elif response["ChallengeName"] == "MFA_SETUP":
            print("First, we need to set up an MFA application.")
            qr_img = qrcode.make(
                f"otpauth://totp/{user_name}?secret={response['SecretCode']}"
            )
            qr_img.save("qr.png")
            q.ask(
                "Press Enter to see a QR code on your screen. Scan it into an MFA "
                "application, such as Google Authenticator."
            )
            webbrowser.open("qr.png")
            mfa_code = q.ask(
                "Enter the verification code from your MFA application: ",
q.non_empty
            )
            response = cog_wrapper.verify_mfa(response["Session"], mfa_code)
            print(f"MFA device setup {response['Status']}")
            print("Now that an MFA application is set up, let's sign in again.")
            print(
                "You might have to wait a few seconds for a new MFA code to appear
in "
                "your MFA application."
            )
            challenge = "ADMIN_USER_PASSWORD_AUTH"
        elif response["ChallengeName"] == "SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA":
            auth_tokens = None
            while auth_tokens is None:
                mfa_code = q.ask(
                    "Enter a verification code from your MFA application: ",
q.non_empty
                )
                auth_tokens = cog_wrapper.respond_to_mfa_challenge(
                    user_name, response["Session"], mfa_code
                )
            print(f"You're signed in as {user_name}.")
            print("Here's your access token:")
            pp(auth_tokens["AccessToken"])
            print("And your device information:")
            pp(auth_tokens["NewDeviceMetadata"])
            challenge = None
        else:
            raise Exception(f"Got unexpected challenge {response['ChallengeName']}")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    device_group_key = auth_tokens["NewDeviceMetadata"]["DeviceGroupKey"]
    device_key = auth_tokens["NewDeviceMetadata"]["DeviceKey"]
    device_password = base64.standard_b64encode(os.urandom(40)).decode("utf-8")

    print("Let's confirm your MFA device so you don't have re-enter MFA tokens for
 it.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    cog_wrapper.confirm_mfa_device(
        user_name,
        device_key,
        device_group_key,
        device_password,
        auth_tokens["AccessToken"],
        aws_srp,
    )
    print(f"Your device {device_key} is confirmed.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(
        f"Now let's sign in as {user_name} from your confirmed device {device_key}.
\n"
        f"Because this device is tracked by Amazon Cognito, you won't have to re-
enter an MFA code."
    )
    q.ask("Press Enter when ready.")
    auth_tokens = cog_wrapper.sign_in_with_tracked_device(
        user_name, password, device_key, device_group_key, device_password, aws_srp
    )
    print("You're signed in. Your access token is:")
    pp(auth_tokens["AccessToken"])
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Don't forget to delete your user pool when you're done with this
 example.")
    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


def main():
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Shows how to sign up a new user with Amazon Cognito and
 associate "
        "the user with an MFA application for multi-factor authentication."
    )
```

```
    parser.add_argument(
        "user_pool_id", help="The ID of the user pool to use for the example."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "client_id", help="The ID of the client application to use for the example."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    try:
        run_scenario(boto3.client("cognito-idp"), args.user_pool_id, args.client_id)
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Comprehend.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateDocumentClassifier`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDocumentClassifier`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def create(
        self,
        name,
```

```
        language_code,
        training_bucket,
        training_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
        mode,
    ):
        """
        Creates a custom classifier. After the classifier is created, it immediately
        starts training on the data found in the specified Amazon S3 bucket.
Training
        can take 30 minutes or longer. The `describe_document_classifier` function
        can be used to get training status and returns a status of TRAINED when the
        classifier is ready to use.

        :param name: The name of the classifier.
        :param language_code: The language the classifier can operate on.
        :param training_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains the training
data.
        :param training_key: The prefix used to find training data in the training
                             bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                             of them are used.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from the
                                     training bucket.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created classifier.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.create_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierName=name,
                LanguageCode=language_code,
                InputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{training_bucket}/{training_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                Mode=mode.value,
            )
            self.classifier_arn = response["DocumentClassifierArn"]
            logger.info("Started classifier creation. Arn is: %s.",
self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create classifier %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.classifier_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDocumentClassifier`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDocumentClassifier`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes the classifier.
        """
        try:
            self.comprehend_client.delete_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            logger.info("Deleted classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            self.classifier_arn = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deleted classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDocumentClassificationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDocumentClassificationJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a classification job.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classification_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["DocumentClassificationJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classification job %s.", job["JobName"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classification job %s.", job_id)
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentClassificationJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDocumentClassifier`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDocumentClassifier`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def describe(self, classifier_arn=None):
        """
        Gets metadata about a custom classifier, including its current status.

        :param classifier_arn: The ARN of the classifier to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the classifier.
        """
        if classifier_arn is not None:
            self.classifier_arn = classifier_arn
```

```
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            classifier = response["DocumentClassifierProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            raise
        else:
            return classifier
```

- For API details, see DescribeDocumentClassifier in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeTopicsDetectionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTopicsDetectionJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a topic modeling job.
```

```
        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_topics_detection_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["TopicsDetectionJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got topic detection job %s.", job_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

- For API details, see DescribeTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectDominantLanguage`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDominantLanguage`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_languages(self, text):
```

```
        """
        Detects languages used in a document.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :return: The list of languages along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_dominant_language(Text=text)
            languages = response["Languages"]
            logger.info("Detected %s languages.", len(languages))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect languages.")
            raise
        else:
            return languages
```

- For API details, see DetectDominantLanguage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectEntities`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectEntities`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
```

```
    def detect_entities(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects entities in a document. Entities can be things like people and
 places
        or other common terms.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities
```

- For API details, see DetectEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectKeyPhrases`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectKeyPhrases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
```

```
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_key_phrases(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects key phrases in a document. A key phrase is typically a noun and its
        modifiers.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of key phrases along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_key_phrases(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            phrases = response["KeyPhrases"]
            logger.info("Detected %s phrases.", len(phrases))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect phrases.")
            raise
        else:
            return phrases
```

- For API details, see DetectKeyPhrases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectPiiEntities`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectPiiEntities`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_pii(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects personally identifiable information (PII) in a document. PII can be
        things like names, account numbers, or addresses.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of PII entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_pii_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s PII entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect PII entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities
```

- For API details, see DetectPiiEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectSentiment`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSentiment`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_sentiment(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects the overall sentiment expressed in a document. Sentiment can
        be positive, negative, neutral, or a mixture.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The sentiments along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_sentiment(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            logger.info("Detected primary sentiment %s.", response["Sentiment"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect sentiment.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DetectSentiment in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectSyntax`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectSyntax`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def detect_syntax(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects syntactical elements of a document. Syntax tokens are portions of
        text along with their use as parts of speech, such as nouns, verbs, and
        interjections.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of syntax tokens along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_syntax(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            tokens = response["SyntaxTokens"]
            logger.info("Detected %s syntax tokens.", len(tokens))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect syntax.")
            raise
        else:
            return tokens
```

- For API details, see DetectSyntax in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListDocumentClassificationJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDocumentClassificationJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the classification jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classification_jobs()
            jobs = response["DocumentClassificationJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s document classification jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get document classification jobs.",
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentClassificationJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListDocumentClassifiers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDocumentClassifiers`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def list(self):
        """
        Lists custom classifiers for the current account.

        :return: The list of classifiers.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classifiers()
            classifiers = response["DocumentClassifierPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s classifiers.", len(classifiers))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get classifiers.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return classifiers
```

- For API details, see ListDocumentClassifiers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTopicsDetectionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopicsDetectionJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists topic modeling jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_topics_detection_jobs()
            jobs = response["TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s topic detection jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection jobs.")
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

- For API details, see ListTopicsDetectionJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartDocumentClassificationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDocumentClassificationJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
```

```
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a classification job. The classifier must be trained or the job
        will fail. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3 input bucket and
        written to the specified output bucket. Output data is stored in a tar
        archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously, so you can
        call `describe_document_classification_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains input data.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                          bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                          of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document per
                             file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_document_classification_job(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn,
                JobName=job_name,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Document classification job %s is %s.", job_name,
response["JobStatus"]
            )
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start classification job %s.", job_name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentClassificationJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartTopicsDetectionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartTopicsDetectionJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
```

```
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a topic modeling job. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3
        input bucket and written to the specified output bucket. Output data is
stored
        in a tar archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously, so
you
        can call `describe_topics_detection_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: An Amazon S3 bucket that contains job input.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                           bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                           of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document per
                           file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_topics_detection_job(
                JobName=job_name,
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
            )
            logger.info("Started topic modeling job %s.", response["JobId"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start topic modeling job.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see StartTopicsDetectionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Detect document elements

The following code example shows how to:

- Detect languages, entities, and key phrases in a document.
- Detect personally identifiable information (PII) in a document.
- Detect the sentiment of a document.
- Detect syntax elements in a document.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps Amazon Comprehend actions.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class ComprehendDetect:
    """Encapsulates Comprehend detection functions."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
```

```
    def detect_languages(self, text):
        """
        Detects languages used in a document.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :return: The list of languages along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_dominant_language(Text=text)
            languages = response["Languages"]
            logger.info("Detected %s languages.", len(languages))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect languages.")
            raise
        else:
            return languages


    def detect_entities(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects entities in a document. Entities can be things like people and
places
        or other common terms.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities


    def detect_key_phrases(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects key phrases in a document. A key phrase is typically a noun and its
```

```
        modifiers.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of key phrases along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_key_phrases(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            phrases = response["KeyPhrases"]
            logger.info("Detected %s phrases.", len(phrases))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect phrases.")
            raise
        else:
            return phrases


    def detect_pii(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects personally identifiable information (PII) in a document. PII can be
        things like names, account numbers, or addresses.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of PII entities along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_pii_entities(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            entities = response["Entities"]
            logger.info("Detected %s PII entities.", len(entities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect PII entities.")
            raise
        else:
            return entities


    def detect_sentiment(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects the overall sentiment expressed in a document. Sentiment can
```

```
        be positive, negative, neutral, or a mixture.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The sentiments along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_sentiment(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            logger.info("Detected primary sentiment %s.", response["Sentiment"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect sentiment.")
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def detect_syntax(self, text, language_code):
        """
        Detects syntactical elements of a document. Syntax tokens are portions of
        text along with their use as parts of speech, such as nouns, verbs, and
        interjections.

        :param text: The document to inspect.
        :param language_code: The language of the document.
        :return: The list of syntax tokens along with their confidence scores.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.detect_syntax(
                Text=text, LanguageCode=language_code
            )
            tokens = response["SyntaxTokens"]
            logger.info("Detected %s syntax tokens.", len(tokens))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect syntax.")
            raise
        else:
            return tokens
```

Call functions on the wrapper class to detect entities, phrases, and more in a document.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Comprehend detection demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    comp_detect = ComprehendDetect(boto3.client("comprehend"))
    with open("detect_sample.txt") as sample_file:
        sample_text = sample_file.read()

    demo_size = 3

    print("Sample text used for this demo:")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(sample_text)
    print("-" * 88)

    print("Detecting languages.")
    languages = comp_detect.detect_languages(sample_text)
    pprint(languages)
    lang_code = languages[0]["LanguageCode"]

    print("Detecting entities.")
    entities = comp_detect.detect_entities(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(entities[:demo_size])

    print("Detecting key phrases.")
    phrases = comp_detect.detect_key_phrases(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(phrases[:demo_size])

    print("Detecting personally identifiable information (PII).")
    pii_entities = comp_detect.detect_pii(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(pii_entities[:demo_size])

    print("Detecting sentiment.")
    sentiment = comp_detect.detect_sentiment(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"Sentiment: {sentiment['Sentiment']}")
    print("SentimentScore:")
```

```
    pprint(sentiment["SentimentScore"])

    print("Detecting syntax elements.")
    syntax_tokens = comp_detect.detect_syntax(sample_text, lang_code)
    print(f"The first {demo_size} are:")
    pprint(syntax_tokens[:demo_size])

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DetectDominantLanguage
  - DetectEntities
  - DetectKeyPhrases
  - DetectPiiEntities
  - DetectSentiment
  - DetectSyntax

Detect entities in text extracted from an image

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in text extracted by Amazon Textract from an image that is stored in Amazon S3.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) in a Jupyter notebook to detect entities in text that is extracted from an image. This example uses Amazon Textract to extract text from an image stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in the extracted text.

This example is a Jupyter notebook and must be run in an environment that can host notebooks. For instructions on how to run the example using Amazon SageMaker AI, see the directions in TextractAndComprehendNotebook.ipynb.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Textract

Run a topic modeling job on sample data

The following code example shows how to:

- Run an Amazon Comprehend topic modeling job on sample data.
- Get information about the job.
- Extract job output data from Amazon S3.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a wrapper class to call Amazon Comprehend topic modeling actions.

```
class ComprehendTopicModeler:
    """Encapsulates a Comprehend topic modeler."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
```

```
        output_bucket,
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a topic modeling job. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3
        input bucket and written to the specified output bucket. Output data is
stored
        in a tar archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously, so
you
        can call `describe_topics_detection_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: An Amazon S3 bucket that contains job input.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                           bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                           of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document per
                           file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_topics_detection_job(
                JobName=job_name,
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
            )
            logger.info("Started topic modeling job %s.", response["JobId"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start topic modeling job.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

```
    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a topic modeling job.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_topics_detection_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["TopicsDetectionJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got topic detection job %s.", job_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists topic modeling jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_topics_detection_jobs()
            jobs = response["TopicsDetectionJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s topic detection jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topic detection jobs.")
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

Use the wrapper class to run a topic modeling job and get job data.

```
def usage_demo():
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Comprehend topic modeling demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    input_prefix = "input/"
    output_prefix = "output/"
    demo_resources = ComprehendDemoResources(
        boto3.resource("s3"), boto3.resource("iam")
    )
    topic_modeler = ComprehendTopicModeler(boto3.client("comprehend"))

    print("Setting up storage and security resources needed for the demo.")
    demo_resources.setup("comprehend-topic-modeler-demo")
    print("Copying sample data from public bucket into input bucket.")
    demo_resources.bucket.copy(
        {"Bucket": "public-sample-us-west-2", "Key": "TopicModeling/Sample.txt"},
        f"{input_prefix}sample.txt",
    )

    print("Starting topic modeling job on sample data.")
    job_info = topic_modeler.start_job(
        "demo-topic-modeling-job",
        demo_resources.bucket.name,
        input_prefix,
        JobInputFormat.per_line,
        demo_resources.bucket.name,
        output_prefix,
        demo_resources.data_access_role.arn,
    )

    print(
        f"Waiting for job {job_info['JobId']} to complete. This typically takes "
        f"20 - 30 minutes."
    )
    job_waiter = JobCompleteWaiter(topic_modeler.comprehend_client)
    job_waiter.wait(job_info["JobId"])

    job = topic_modeler.describe_job(job_info["JobId"])
    print(f"Job {job['JobId']} complete:")
    pprint(job)

    print(
```

```
        f"Getting job output data from the output Amazon S3 bucket: "
        f"{job['OutputDataConfig']['S3Uri']}."
    )
    job_output = demo_resources.extract_job_output(job)
    lines = 10
    print(f"First {lines} lines of document topics output:")
    pprint(job_output["doc-topics.csv"]["data"][:lines])
    print(f"First {lines} lines of terms output:")
    pprint(job_output["topic-terms.csv"]["data"][:lines])

    print("Cleaning up resources created for the demo.")
    demo_resources.cleanup()

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DescribeTopicsDetectionJob
  - ListTopicsDetectionJobs
  - StartTopicsDetectionJob

Train a custom classifier and classify documents

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Comprehend multi-label classifier.
- Train the classifier on sample data.
- Run a classification job on a second set of data.
- Extract the job output data from Amazon S3.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a wrapper class to call Amazon Comprehend document classifier actions.

```
class ComprehendClassifier:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Comprehend custom classifier."""

    def __init__(self, comprehend_client):
        """
        :param comprehend_client: A Boto3 Comprehend client.
        """
        self.comprehend_client = comprehend_client
        self.classifier_arn = None


    def create(
        self,
        name,
        language_code,
        training_bucket,
        training_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
        mode,
    ):
        """
        Creates a custom classifier. After the classifier is created, it immediately
        starts training on the data found in the specified Amazon S3 bucket.
 Training
        can take 30 minutes or longer. The `describe_document_classifier` function
        can be used to get training status and returns a status of TRAINED when the
        classifier is ready to use.

        :param name: The name of the classifier.
        :param language_code: The language the classifier can operate on.
        :param training_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains the training
 data.
        :param training_key: The prefix used to find training data in the training
```

```
                              bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                              of them are used.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from the
                                     training bucket.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created classifier.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.create_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierName=name,
                LanguageCode=language_code,
                InputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{training_bucket}/{training_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                Mode=mode.value,
            )
            self.classifier_arn = response["DocumentClassifierArn"]
            logger.info("Started classifier creation. Arn is: %s.",
self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create classifier %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.classifier_arn


    def describe(self, classifier_arn=None):
        """
        Gets metadata about a custom classifier, including its current status.

        :param classifier_arn: The ARN of the classifier to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the classifier.
        """
        if classifier_arn is not None:
            self.classifier_arn = classifier_arn
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            classifier = response["DocumentClassifierProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return classifier


    def list(self):
        """
        Lists custom classifiers for the current account.

        :return: The list of classifiers.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classifiers()
            classifiers = response["DocumentClassifierPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s classifiers.", len(classifiers))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get classifiers.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return classifiers


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes the classifier.
        """
        try:
            self.comprehend_client.delete_document_classifier(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn
            )
            logger.info("Deleted classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            self.classifier_arn = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't deleted classifier %s.", self.classifier_arn)
            raise


    def start_job(
        self,
        job_name,
        input_bucket,
        input_key,
        input_format,
        output_bucket,
```

```
        output_key,
        data_access_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts a classification job. The classifier must be trained or the job
        will fail. Input is read from the specified Amazon S3 input bucket and
        written to the specified output bucket. Output data is stored in a tar
        archive compressed in gzip format. The job runs asynchronously, so you can
        call `describe_document_classification_job` to get job status until it
        returns a status of SUCCEEDED.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param input_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket that contains input data.
        :param input_key: The prefix used to find input data in the input
                          bucket. If multiple objects have the same prefix, all
                          of them are used.
        :param input_format: The format of the input data, either one document per
                             file or one document per line.
        :param output_bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket where output data is written.
        :param output_key: The prefix prepended to the output data.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of a role that
                                     grants Comprehend permission to read from the
                                     input bucket and write to the output bucket.
        :return: Information about the job, including the job ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.start_document_classification_job(
                DocumentClassifierArn=self.classifier_arn,
                JobName=job_name,
                InputDataConfig={
                    "S3Uri": f"s3://{input_bucket}/{input_key}",
                    "InputFormat": input_format.value,
                },
                OutputDataConfig={"S3Uri": f"s3://{output_bucket}/{output_key}"},
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
            )
            logger.info(
                "Document classification job %s is %s.", job_name,
response["JobStatus"]
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start classification job %s.", job_name)
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return response


    def describe_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about a classification job.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.describe_document_classification_job(
                JobId=job_id
            )
            job = response["DocumentClassificationJobProperties"]
            logger.info("Got classification job %s.", job["JobName"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get classification job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return job


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the classification jobs for the current account.

        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.comprehend_client.list_document_classification_jobs()
            jobs = response["DocumentClassificationJobPropertiesList"]
            logger.info("Got %s document classification jobs.", len(jobs))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get document classification jobs.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return jobs
```

Create a class to help run the scenario.

```
class ClassifierDemo:
    """
    Encapsulates functions used to run the demonstration.
    """

    def __init__(self, demo_resources):
        """
        :param demo_resources: A ComprehendDemoResources class that manages
 resources
                                for the demonstration.
        """
        self.demo_resources = demo_resources
        self.training_prefix = "training/"
        self.input_prefix = "input/"
        self.input_format = JobInputFormat.per_line
        self.output_prefix = "output/"

    def setup(self):
        """Creates AWS resources used by the demo."""
        self.demo_resources.setup("comprehend-classifier-demo")

    def cleanup(self):
        """Deletes AWS resources used by the demo."""
        self.demo_resources.cleanup()

    @staticmethod
    def _sanitize_text(text):
        """Removes characters that cause errors for the document parser."""
        return text.replace("\r", " ").replace("\n", " ").replace(",", ";")

    @staticmethod
    def _get_issues(query, issue_count):
        """
        Gets issues from GitHub using the specified query parameters.

        :param query: The query string used to request issues from the GitHub API.
        :param issue_count: The number of issues to retrieve.
        :return: The list of issues retrieved from GitHub.
        """
        issues = []
        logger.info("Requesting issues from %s?%s.", GITHUB_SEARCH_URL, query)
```

```
        response = requests.get(f"{GITHUB_SEARCH_URL}?
{query}&per_page={issue_count}")
        if response.status_code == 200:
            issue_page = response.json()["items"]
            logger.info("Got %s issues.", len(issue_page))
            issues = [
                {
                    "title": ClassifierDemo._sanitize_text(issue["title"]),
                    "body": ClassifierDemo._sanitize_text(issue["body"]),
                    "labels": {label["name"] for label in issue["labels"]},
                }
                for issue in issue_page
            ]
        else:
            logger.error(
                "GitHub returned error code %s with message %s.",
                response.status_code,
                response.json(),
            )
        logger.info("Found %s issues.", len(issues))
        return issues

    def get_training_issues(self, training_labels):
        """
        Gets issues used for training the custom classifier. Training issues are
        closed issues from the Boto3 repo that have known labels. Comprehend
        requires a minimum of ten training issues per label.

        :param training_labels: The issue labels to use for training.
        :return: The set of issues used for training.
        """
        issues = []
        per_label_count = 15
        for label in training_labels:
            issues += self._get_issues(
                f"q=type:issue+repo:boto/boto3+state:closed+label:{label}",
                per_label_count,
            )
            for issue in issues:
                issue["labels"] = issue["labels"].intersection(training_labels)
        return issues

    def get_input_issues(self, training_labels):
        """
```

```
        Gets input issues from GitHub. For demonstration purposes, input issues
        are open issues from the Boto3 repo with known labels, though in practice
        any issue could be submitted to the classifier for labeling.

        :param training_labels: The set of labels to query for.
        :return: The set of issues used for input.
        """
        issues = []
        per_label_count = 5
        for label in training_labels:
            issues += self._get_issues(
                f"q=type:issue+repo:boto/boto3+state:open+label:{label}",
                per_label_count,
            )
        return issues

    def upload_issue_data(self, issues, training=False):
        """
        Uploads issue data to an Amazon S3 bucket, either for training or for input.
        The data is first put into the format expected by Comprehend. For training,
        the set of pipe-delimited labels is prepended to each document. For
        input, labels are not sent.

        :param issues: The set of issues to upload to Amazon S3.
        :param training: Indicates whether the issue data is used for training or
                         input.
        """
        try:
            obj_key = (
                self.training_prefix if training else self.input_prefix
            ) + "issues.txt"
            if training:
                issue_strings = [
                    f"{'|'.join(issue['labels'])},{issue['title']} {issue['body']}"
                    for issue in issues
                ]
            else:
                issue_strings = [
                    f"{issue['title']} {issue['body']}" for issue in issues
                ]
            issue_bytes = BytesIO("\n".join(issue_strings).encode("utf-8"))
            self.demo_resources.bucket.upload_fileobj(issue_bytes, obj_key)
            logger.info(
                "Uploaded data as %s to bucket %s.",
```

```
                obj_key,
                self.demo_resources.bucket.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't upload data to bucket %s.",
self.demo_resources.bucket.name
            )
            raise

    def extract_job_output(self, job):
        """Extracts job output from Amazon S3."""
        return self.demo_resources.extract_job_output(job)

    @staticmethod
    def reconcile_job_output(input_issues, output_dict):
        """
        Reconciles job output with the list of input issues. Because the input
issues
        have known labels, these can be compared with the labels added by the
        classifier to judge the accuracy of the output.

        :param input_issues: The list of issues used as input.
        :param output_dict: The dictionary of data that is output by the classifier.
        :return: The list of reconciled input and output data.
        """
        reconciled = []
        for archive in output_dict.values():
            for line in archive["data"]:
                in_line = int(line["Line"])
                in_labels = input_issues[in_line]["labels"]
                out_labels = {
                    label["Name"]
                    for label in line["Labels"]
                    if float(label["Score"]) > 0.3
                }
                reconciled.append(
                    f"{line['File']}, line {in_line} has labels {in_labels}.\n"
                    f"\tClassifier assigned {out_labels}."
                )
        logger.info("Reconciled input and output labels.")
        return reconciled
```

Train a classifier on a set of GitHub issues with known labels, then send a second set of GitHub issues to the classifier so that they can be labeled.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Comprehend custom document classifier demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    comp_demo = ClassifierDemo(
        ComprehendDemoResources(boto3.resource("s3"), boto3.resource("iam"))
    )
    comp_classifier = ComprehendClassifier(boto3.client("comprehend"))
    classifier_trained_waiter = ClassifierTrainedWaiter(
        comp_classifier.comprehend_client
    )
    training_labels = {"bug", "feature-request", "dynamodb", "s3"}

    print("Setting up storage and security resources needed for the demo.")
    comp_demo.setup()

    print("Getting training data from GitHub and uploading it to Amazon S3.")
    training_issues = comp_demo.get_training_issues(training_labels)
    comp_demo.upload_issue_data(training_issues, True)

    classifier_name = "doc-example-classifier"
    print(f"Creating document classifier {classifier_name}.")
    comp_classifier.create(
        classifier_name,
        "en",
        comp_demo.demo_resources.bucket.name,
        comp_demo.training_prefix,
        comp_demo.demo_resources.data_access_role.arn,
        ClassifierMode.multi_label,
    )
    print(
        f"Waiting until {classifier_name} is trained. This typically takes "
        f"30-40 minutes."
    )
    classifier_trained_waiter.wait(comp_classifier.classifier_arn)
```

```
    print(f"Classifier {classifier_name} is trained:")
    pprint(comp_classifier.describe())

    print("Getting input data from GitHub and uploading it to Amazon S3.")
    input_issues = comp_demo.get_input_issues(training_labels)
    comp_demo.upload_issue_data(input_issues)

    print("Starting classification job on input data.")
    job_info = comp_classifier.start_job(
        "issue_classification_job",
        comp_demo.demo_resources.bucket.name,
        comp_demo.input_prefix,
        comp_demo.input_format,
        comp_demo.demo_resources.bucket.name,
        comp_demo.output_prefix,
        comp_demo.demo_resources.data_access_role.arn,
    )
    print(f"Waiting for job {job_info['JobId']} to complete.")
    job_waiter = JobCompleteWaiter(comp_classifier.comprehend_client)
    job_waiter.wait(job_info["JobId"])

    job = comp_classifier.describe_job(job_info["JobId"])
    print(f"Job {job['JobId']} complete:")
    pprint(job)

    print(
        f"Getting job output data from Amazon S3: "
        f"{job['OutputDataConfig']['S3Uri']}."
    )
    job_output = comp_demo.extract_job_output(job)
    print("Job output:")
    pprint(job_output)

    print("Reconciling job output with labels from GitHub:")
    reconciled_output = comp_demo.reconcile_job_output(input_issues, job_output)
    print(*reconciled_output, sep="\n")

    answer = input(f"Do you want to delete the classifier {classifier_name} (y/n)?
")
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        print(f"Deleting {classifier_name}.")
        comp_classifier.delete()
```

```
    print("Cleaning up resources created for the demo.")
    comp_demo.cleanup()

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDocumentClassifier
  - DeleteDocumentClassifier
  - DescribeDocumentClassificationJob
  - DescribeDocumentClassifier
  - ListDocumentClassificationJobs
  - ListDocumentClassifiers
  - StartDocumentClassificationJob

AWS Config examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Config.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DeleteConfigRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteConfigRule`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ConfigWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates AWS Config functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, config_client):
        """
        :param config_client: A Boto3 AWS Config client.
        """
        self.config_client = config_client


    def delete_config_rule(self, rule_name):
        """
        Delete the specified rule.

        :param rule_name: The name of the rule to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.config_client.delete_config_rule(ConfigRuleName=rule_name)
            logger.info("Deleted rule %s.", rule_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteConfigRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeConfigRules`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeConfigRules`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ConfigWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates AWS Config functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, config_client):
        """
        :param config_client: A Boto3 AWS Config client.
        """
        self.config_client = config_client


    def describe_config_rule(self, rule_name):
        """
        Gets data for the specified rule.

        :param rule_name: The name of the rule to retrieve.
        :return: The rule data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.config_client.describe_config_rules(
                ConfigRuleNames=[rule_name]
            )
            rule = response["ConfigRules"]
            logger.info("Got data for rule %s.", rule_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
        else:
            return rule
```

- For API details, see DescribeConfigRules in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

PutConfigRule

The following code example shows how to use PutConfigRule.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ConfigWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates AWS Config functions.
    """

    def __init__(self, config_client):
        """
        :param config_client: A Boto3 AWS Config client.
        """
        self.config_client = config_client


    def put_config_rule(self, rule_name):
        """
        Sets a configuration rule that prohibits making Amazon S3 buckets publicly
        readable.

        :param rule_name: The name to give the rule.
        """
        try:
            self.config_client.put_config_rule(
                ConfigRule={
                    "ConfigRuleName": rule_name,
                    "Description": "S3 Public Read Prohibited Bucket Rule",
                    "Scope": {
                        "ComplianceResourceTypes": [
                            "AWS::S3::Bucket",
                        ],
                    },
                    "Source": {
                        "Owner": "AWS",
```

```
                        "SourceIdentifier": "S3_BUCKET_PUBLIC_READ_PROHIBITED",
                    },
                    "InputParameters": "{}",
                    "ConfigRuleState": "ACTIVE",
                }
            )
            logger.info("Created configuration rule %s.", rule_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create configuration rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutConfigRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

AWS Control Tower examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Control Tower.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Control Tower

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Control Tower.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from typing import Any, List


def hello_controltower(controltower_client: Any) -> None:
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Control Tower client
    and list all available baselines.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param controltower_client: A Boto3 AWS Control Tower Client object. This object
 wraps
                                the low-level AWS Control Tower service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS Control Tower! Let's list available baselines:\n")
    paginator = controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate()

    baseline_names: List[str] = []
    try:
        for page in page_iterator:
            for baseline in page["baselines"]:
                baseline_names.append(baseline["name"])

        print(f"{len(baseline_names)} baseline(s) retrieved.")
        for baseline_name in baseline_names:
            print(f"\t{baseline_name}")

    except controltower_client.exceptions.AccessDeniedException:
        print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary permissions.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"An error occurred: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_controltower(boto3.client("controltower"))
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- List landing zones.
- List, enable, get, reset, and disable baselines.
- List, enable, get, and disable controls.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating AWS Control Tower features.

```
class ControlTowerScenario:
    IDENTITY_CENTER_BASELINE = "baseline/LN25R72TTG6IGPTQ"
    stack_name = ""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_wrapper: ControlTowerWrapper, org_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_wrapper: An instance of the ControlTowerWrapper class.
        :param org_client: A Boto3 Organization client.
        """
        self.controltower_wrapper = controltower_wrapper
        self.org_client = org_client
        self.stack = None
        self.ou_id = None
        self.ou_arn = None
        self.account_id = None
```

```
        self.landing_zone_id = None
        self.use_landing_zone = False

    def run_scenario(self) -> None:
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "\tWelcome to the AWS Control Tower with ControlCatalog example
 scenario."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
            "This demo will walk you through working with AWS Control Tower for
 landing zones,\n"
            "managing baselines, and working with controls."
        )

        self.account_id = boto3.client("sts").get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        print(
            "Some demo operations require the use of a landing zone. "
            "\nYou can use an existing landing zone or opt out of these operations
 in the demo."
            "\nFor instructions on how to set up a landing zone, "
            "\nsee https://docs.aws.amazon.com/controltower/latest/userguide/
getting-started-from-console.html"
        )
        # List available landing zones
        landing_zones = self.controltower_wrapper.list_landing_zones()
        if landing_zones:
            print("\nAvailable Landing Zones:")
            for i, lz in enumerate(landing_zones, 1):
                print(f"{i} {lz['arn']}})")

            # Ask if user wants to use the first landing zone in the list
            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to use the first landing zone in the list
 ({landing_zones[0]['arn']})? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                self.use_landing_zone = True
                self.landing_zone_id = landing_zones[0]["arn"]
                print(f"Using landing zone ID: {self.landing_zone_id})")
                # Set up organization and get Sandbox OU ID.
```

```
                sandbox_ou_id = self.setup_organization()
                # Store the OU ID for use in the CloudFormation template.
                self.ou_id = sandbox_ou_id
            elif q.ask(
                f"Do you want to use a different existing Landing Zone for this
demo? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                self.use_landing_zone = True
                self.landing_zone_id = q.ask("Enter landing zone id: ", q.non_empty)
                # Set up organization and get Sandbox OU ID.
                sandbox_ou_id = self.setup_organization()
                # Store the OU ID for use in the CloudFormation template.
                self.ou_id = sandbox_ou_id

        # List and Enable Baseline.
        print("\nManaging Baselines:")
        control_tower_baseline = None
        identity_center_baseline = None
        baselines = self.controltower_wrapper.list_baselines()
        print("\nListing available Baselines:")
        for baseline in baselines:
            if baseline["name"] == "AWSControlTowerBaseline":
                control_tower_baseline = baseline
            print(f"{baseline['name']}")

        if self.use_landing_zone:
            print("\nListing enabled baselines:")
            enabled_baselines = self.controltower_wrapper.list_enabled_baselines()
            for baseline in enabled_baselines:
                # If the Identity Center baseline is enabled, the identifier must be
used for other baselines.
                if self.IDENTITY_CENTER_BASELINE in baseline["baselineIdentifier"]:
                    identity_center_baseline = baseline
                print(f"{baseline['baselineIdentifier']}")

            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to enable the Control Tower Baseline? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print("\nEnabling Control Tower Baseline.")
                ic_baseline_arn = (
                    identity_center_baseline["arn"]
                    if identity_center_baseline
```

```
                    else None
                )
                baseline_arn = self.controltower_wrapper.enable_baseline(
                    self.ou_arn, ic_baseline_arn, control_tower_baseline["arn"],
"4.0"
                )
                if baseline_arn:
                    print(f"Enabled baseline ARN: {baseline_arn}")
                else:
                    # Find the enabled baseline so we can reset it.
                    for enabled_baseline in enabled_baselines:
                        if (
                            enabled_baseline["baselineIdentifier"]
                            == control_tower_baseline["arn"]
                        ):
                            baseline_arn = enabled_baseline["arn"]
                    print("No change, the selected baseline was already enabled.")

                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to reset the Control Tower Baseline? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    print(f"\nResetting Control Tower Baseline. {baseline_arn}")
                    operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.reset_enabled_baseline(
                        baseline_arn
                    )
                    print(f"\nReset baseline operation id {operation_id}.")

                if baseline_arn and q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to disable the Control Tower Baseline? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    print(f"Disabling baseline ARN: {baseline_arn}")
                    operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.disable_baseline(
                        baseline_arn
                    )
                    print(f"\nDisabled baseline operation id {operation_id}.")

                    # Re-enable the baseline for the next step.
                    print("\nEnabling Control Tower Baseline.")
                    self.controltower_wrapper.enable_baseline(
                        self.ou_arn,
                        ic_baseline_arn,
                        control_tower_baseline["arn"],
```

```
                        "4.0",
                    )

        # List and Enable Controls.
        print("\nManaging Controls:")
        controls = self.controltower_wrapper.list_controls()
        print("\nListing first 5 available Controls:")
        for i, control in enumerate(controls[:5], 1):
            print(f"{i}. {control['Name']} - {control['Arn']}")

        if self.use_landing_zone:
            target_ou = self.ou_arn
            enabled_controls = self.controltower_wrapper.list_enabled_controls(
                target_ou
            )
            print("\nListing enabled controls:")
            for i, control in enumerate(enabled_controls, 1):
                print(f"{i}. {control['controlIdentifier']}")

            # Enable first non-enabled control as an example.
            enabled_control_arns = [control["arn"] for control in enabled_controls]
            control_arn = next(
                control["Arn"]
                for control in controls
                if control["Arn"] not in enabled_control_arns
            )

            if control_arn and q.ask(
                f"Do you want to enable the control {control_arn}? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print(f"\nEnabling control: {control_arn}")
                operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.enable_control(
                    control_arn, target_ou
                )

                if operation_id:
                    print(f"Enabled control with operation id {operation_id}")

            if control_arn and q.ask(
                f"Do you want to disable the control? (y/n) ",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print("\nDisabling the control...")
```

```
                operation_id = self.controltower_wrapper.disable_control(
                    control_arn, target_ou
                )
                print(f"Disable operation ID: {operation_id}")

        print("\nThis concludes the example scenario.")

        print("Thanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)

    def setup_organization(self):
        """
        Checks if the current account is part of an organization and creates one if
needed.
        Also ensures a Sandbox OU exists and returns its ID.

        :return: The ID of the Sandbox OU
        """
        print("\nChecking organization status...")

        try:
            # Check if account is part of an organization
            org_response = self.org_client.describe_organization()
            org_id = org_response["Organization"]["Id"]
            print(f"Account is part of organization: {org_id}")

        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] ==
"AWSOrganizationsNotInUseException":
                print("No organization found. Creating a new organization...")
                try:
                    create_response = self.org_client.create_organization(
                        FeatureSet="ALL"
                    )
                    org_id = create_response["Organization"]["Id"]
                    print(f"Created new organization: {org_id}")

                    # Wait for organization to be available.
                    waiter = self.org_client.get_waiter("organization_active")
                    waiter.wait(
                        Organization=org_id,
                        WaiterConfig={"Delay": 5, "MaxAttempts": 12},
                    )
```

```
            except ClientError as create_error:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create organization. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    create_error.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    create_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe organization. Here's why: %s: %s",
                error.response["Error"]["Code"],
                error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    # Look for Sandbox OU.
    sandbox_ou_id = None
    paginator = self.org_client.get_paginator(
        "list_organizational_units_for_parent"
    )

    try:
        # Get root ID first.
        roots = self.org_client.list_roots()["Roots"]
        if not roots:
            raise ValueError("No root found in organization")
        root_id = roots[0]["Id"]

        # Search for existing Sandbox OU.
        print("Checking for Sandbox OU...")
        for page in paginator.paginate(ParentId=root_id):
            for ou in page["OrganizationalUnits"]:
                if ou["Name"] == "Sandbox":
                    sandbox_ou_id = ou["Id"]
                    self.ou_arn = ou["Arn"]
                    print(f"Found existing Sandbox OU: {sandbox_ou_id}")
                    break
            if sandbox_ou_id:
                break

        # Create Sandbox OU if it doesn't exist.
        if not sandbox_ou_id:
            print("Creating Sandbox OU...")
            create_ou_response = self.org_client.create_organizational_unit(
```

```
                    ParentId=root_id, Name="Sandbox"
                )
                sandbox_ou_id = create_ou_response["OrganizationalUnit"]["Id"]
                print(f"Created new Sandbox OU: {sandbox_ou_id}")

                # Wait for OU to be available.
                waiter = self.org_client.get_waiter("organizational_unit_active")
                waiter.wait(
                    OrganizationalUnitId=sandbox_ou_id,
                    WaiterConfig={"Delay": 5, "MaxAttempts": 12},
                )

        except ClientError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't set up Sandbox OU. Here's why: %s: %s",
                error.response["Error"]["Code"],
                error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

        return sandbox_ou_id


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        org = boto3.client("organizations")
        control_tower_wrapper = ControlTowerWrapper.from_client()

        scenario = ControlTowerScenario(control_tower_wrapper, org)
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the scenario.")



class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
```

```
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all baselines.

        :return: List of baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
            baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                baselines.extend(page["baselines"])
            return baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def enable_baseline(
        self,
        target_identifier: str,
        identity_center_baseline: str,
```

```
        baseline_identifier: str,
        baseline_version: str,
    ):
        """
        Enables a baseline for the specified target if it's not already enabled.

        :param target_identifier: The ARN of the target.
        :param baseline_identifier: The identifier of baseline to enable.
        :param identity_center_baseline: The identifier of identity center baseline
if it is enabled.
        :param baseline_version: The version of baseline to enable.
        :return: The enabled baseline ARN or None if already enabled.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the baseline fails for reasons other than
it being already enabled.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_baseline(
                baselineIdentifier=baseline_identifier,
                baselineVersion=baseline_version,
                targetIdentifier=target_identifier,
                parameters=[
                    {
                        "key": "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                        "value": identity_center_baseline,
                    }
                ],
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["arn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException":
                if "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]:
                    print("Baseline is already enabled for this target")
                    return None
                else:
                    print(
```

```
                        "Unable to enable baseline due to validation exception: %s:
%s",
                        err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                        err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                    )
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_controls(self):
        """
        Lists all controls in the Control Tower control catalog.

        :return: List of controls.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controlcatalog_client.get_paginator("list_controls")
            controls = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                controls.extend(page["Controls"])
            return controls

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list controls. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def enable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
```

```
        Enables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to enable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            print(control_arn)
            print(target_identifier)
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id

        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException"
                and "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.info("Control is already enabled for this target")
                return None
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with controls.")
                return None
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def get_control_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
        Gets the status of a control operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the control operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_control_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["controlOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get control operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def get_baseline_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
        Gets the status of a baseline operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the baseline operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_baseline_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["baselineOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def disable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to disable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Control not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def list_landing_zones(self):
```

```
        """
        Lists all landing zones.

        :return: List of landing zones.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_landing_zones")
            landing_zones = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                landing_zones.extend(page["landingZones"])
            return landing_zones

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def list_enabled_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all enabled baselines.

        :return: List of enabled baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_baselines")
            enabled_baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                enabled_baselines.extend(page["enabledBaselines"])
            return enabled_baselines

        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def reset_enabled_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Resets an enabled baseline for a specific target.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the enabled baseline
 to reset.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If resetting the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.reset_enabled_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )
            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)
            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

```
    def disable_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a baseline for a specific target and waits for the operation to
 complete.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the baseline to
 disable.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["operationIdentifier"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                print(
                    f"Conflict disabling baseline: {err.response['Error']
['Message']}. Skipping disable step."
                )
                return None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def list_enabled_controls(self, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Lists all enabled controls for a specific target.
```

```
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: List of enabled controls.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        enabled_controls = []
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_controls")

            for page in paginator.paginate(targetIdentifier=target_identifier):
                enabled_controls.extend(page["enabledControls"])
            return enabled_controls

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
                return enabled_controls
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with controls.")
                return enabled_controls
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateLandingZone
  - DeleteLandingZone

- DisableBaseline
- DisableControl
- EnableBaseline
- EnableControl
- GetControlOperation
- GetLandingZoneOperation
- ListBaselines
- ListEnabledBaselines
- ListEnabledControls
- ListLandingZones
- ResetEnabledBaseline

Actions

`DisableBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableBaseline`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
```

```
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def disable_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a baseline for a specific target and waits for the operation to
 complete.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the baseline to
 disable.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["operationIdentifier"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                print(
                    f"Conflict disabling baseline: {err.response['Error']
['Message']}. Skipping disable step."
                )
                return None
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't disable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DisableBaseline in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisableControl`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableControl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)
```

```
    def disable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Disables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to disable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If disabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.disable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Control not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't disable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableControl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

EnableBaseline

The following code example shows how to use `EnableBaseline`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def enable_baseline(
        self,
        target_identifier: str,
        identity_center_baseline: str,
        baseline_identifier: str,
        baseline_version: str,
    ):
        """
        Enables a baseline for the specified target if it's not already enabled.

        :param target_identifier: The ARN of the target.
        :param baseline_identifier: The identifier of baseline to enable.
```

```
        :param identity_center_baseline: The identifier of identity center baseline
if it is enabled.
        :param baseline_version: The version of baseline to enable.
        :return: The enabled baseline ARN or None if already enabled.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the baseline fails for reasons other than
it being already enabled.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_baseline(
                baselineIdentifier=baseline_identifier,
                baselineVersion=baseline_version,
                targetIdentifier=target_identifier,
                parameters=[
                    {
                        "key": "IdentityCenterEnabledBaselineArn",
                        "value": identity_center_baseline,
                    }
                ],
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return response["arn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException":
                if "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]:
                    print("Baseline is already enabled for this target")
                    return None
                else:
                    print(
                        "Unable to enable baseline due to validation exception: %s:
%s",
                        err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                        err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                    )
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableBaseline in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`EnableControl`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableControl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)
```

```
    def enable_control(self, control_arn: str, target_identifier: str):
        """
        Enables a control for a specified target.

        :param control_arn: The ARN of the control to enable.
        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If enabling the control fails.
        """
        try:
            print(control_arn)
            print(target_identifier)
            response = self.controltower_client.enable_control(
                controlIdentifier=control_arn, targetIdentifier=target_identifier
            )

            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_control_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Control operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)

            return operation_id

        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException"
                and "already enabled" in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.info("Control is already enabled for this target")
                return None
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with controls.")
                return None
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't enable control. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableControl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetBaselineOperation`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBaselineOperation`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def get_baseline_operation(self, operation_id: str):
```

```
        """
        Gets the status of a baseline operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the baseline operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_baseline_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["baselineOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get baseline operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetBaselineOperation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetControlOperation`

The following code example shows how to use `GetControlOperation`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def get_control_operation(self, operation_id: str):
        """
        Gets the status of a control operation.

        :param operation_id: The ID of the control operation.
        :return: The operation status.
        :raises ClientError: If getting the operation status fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.get_control_operation(
                operationIdentifier=operation_id
            )
            return response["controlOperation"]["status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Operation not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get control operation status. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetControlOperation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListBaselines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBaselines`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all baselines.
```

```
        :return: List of baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_baselines")
            baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                baselines.extend(page["baselines"])
            return baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListEnabledBaselines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListEnabledBaselines`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_enabled_baselines(self):
        """
        Lists all enabled baselines.

        :return: List of enabled baselines.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
 self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_baselines")
            enabled_baselines = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                enabled_baselines.extend(page["enabledBaselines"])
            return enabled_baselines

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled baselines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

```
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledBaselines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListEnabledControls`

The following code example shows how to use `ListEnabledControls`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_enabled_controls(self, target_identifier: str):
```

```
        """
        Lists all enabled controls for a specific target.

        :param target_identifier: The identifier of the target (e.g., OU ARN).
        :return: List of enabled controls.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        enabled_controls = []
        try:
            paginator =
self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_enabled_controls")

            for page in paginator.paginate(targetIdentifier=target_identifier):
                enabled_controls.extend(page["enabledControls"])
            return enabled_controls

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions."
                )
                return enabled_controls
            elif (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException"
                and "not registered with AWS Control Tower"
                in err.response["Error"]["Message"]
            ):
                logger.error("Control Tower must be enabled to work with controls.")
                return enabled_controls
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list enabled controls. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListEnabledControls in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListLandingZones`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLandingZones`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def list_landing_zones(self):
        """
        Lists all landing zones.

        :return: List of landing zones.
        :raises ClientError: If the listing operation fails.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.controltower_client.get_paginator("list_landing_zones")
```

```
            landing_zones = []
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                landing_zones.extend(page["landingZones"])
            return landing_zones

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
                logger.error(
                    "Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't list landing zones. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListLandingZones in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ResetEnabledBaseline`

The following code example shows how to use `ResetEnabledBaseline`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ControlTowerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Control Tower and Control Catalog functionality."""

    def __init__(
        self, controltower_client: boto3.client, controlcatalog_client: boto3.client
```

```
    ):
        """
        :param controltower_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlTower client.
        :param controlcatalog_client: A Boto3 Amazon ControlCatalog client.
        """
        self.controltower_client = controltower_client
        self.controlcatalog_client = controlcatalog_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        controltower_client = boto3.client("controltower")
        controlcatalog_client = boto3.client("controlcatalog")
        return cls(controltower_client, controlcatalog_client)


    def reset_enabled_baseline(self, enabled_baseline_identifier: str):
        """
        Resets an enabled baseline for a specific target.

        :param enabled_baseline_identifier: The identifier of the enabled baseline
to reset.
        :return: The operation ID.
        :raises ClientError: If resetting the baseline fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.controltower_client.reset_enabled_baseline(
                enabledBaselineIdentifier=enabled_baseline_identifier
            )
            operation_id = response["operationIdentifier"]
            while True:
                status = self.get_baseline_operation(operation_id)
                print(f"Baseline operation status: {status}")
                if status in ["SUCCEEDED", "FAILED"]:
                    break
                time.sleep(30)
            return operation_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Target not found.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't reset enabled baseline. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
        raise
```

- For API details, see ResetEnabledBaseline in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Firehose examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Firehose.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`PutRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecord`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class FirehoseClient:
    """
    AWS Firehose client to send records and monitor metrics.

    Attributes:
        config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and region.
        delivery_stream_name (str): Name of the Firehose delivery stream.
        region (str): AWS region for Firehose and CloudWatch clients.
        firehose (boto3.client): Boto3 Firehose client.
        cloudwatch (boto3.client): Boto3 CloudWatch client.
    """

    def __init__(self, config):
        """
        Initialize the FirehoseClient.

        Args:
            config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
 region.
        """
        self.config = config
        self.delivery_stream_name = config.delivery_stream_name
        self.region = config.region
        self.firehose = boto3.client("firehose", region_name=self.region)
        self.cloudwatch = boto3.client("cloudwatch", region_name=self.region)


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record(self, record: dict):
        """
        Put individual records to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            record (dict): The data record to be sent to Firehose.

        This method attempts to send an individual record to the Firehose delivery
 stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        try:
            entry = self._create_record_entry(record)
```

```
            response = self.firehose.put_record(
                DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name, Record=entry
            )
            self._log_response(response, entry)
        except Exception:
            logger.info(f"Fail record: {record}.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutRecordBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecordBatch`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class FirehoseClient:
    """
    AWS Firehose client to send records and monitor metrics.

    Attributes:
        config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and region.
        delivery_stream_name (str): Name of the Firehose delivery stream.
        region (str): AWS region for Firehose and CloudWatch clients.
        firehose (boto3.client): Boto3 Firehose client.
        cloudwatch (boto3.client): Boto3 CloudWatch client.
    """

    def __init__(self, config):
        """
        Initialize the FirehoseClient.

        Args:
```

```
            config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
region.
        """
        self.config = config
        self.delivery_stream_name = config.delivery_stream_name
        self.region = config.region
        self.firehose = boto3.client("firehose", region_name=self.region)
        self.cloudwatch = boto3.client("cloudwatch", region_name=self.region)


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record_batch(self, data: list, batch_size: int = 500):
        """
        Put records in batches to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            data (list): List of data records to be sent to Firehose.
            batch_size (int): Number of records to send in each batch. Default is
500.

        This method attempts to send records in batches to the Firehose delivery
stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        for i in range(0, len(data), batch_size):
            batch = data[i : i + batch_size]
            record_dicts = [{"Data": json.dumps(record)} for record in batch]
            try:
                response = self.firehose.put_record_batch(
                    DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name,
Records=record_dicts
                )
                self._log_batch_response(response, len(batch))
            except Exception as e:
                logger.info(f"Failed to send batch of {len(batch)} records. Error:
{e}")
```

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Put records to Firehose

The following code example shows how to use Firehose to process individual and batch records.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This script puts individual and batch records to Firehose.

```
import json
import logging
import random
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import backoff
import boto3

from config import get_config


def load_sample_data(path: str) -> dict:
    """
    Load sample data from a JSON file.

    Args:
        path (str): The file path to the JSON file containing sample data.

    Returns:
        dict: The loaded sample data as a dictionary.
    """
    with open(path, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


# Configure logging
logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO)
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class FirehoseClient:
    """
    AWS Firehose client to send records and monitor metrics.

    Attributes:
        config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and region.
        delivery_stream_name (str): Name of the Firehose delivery stream.
        region (str): AWS region for Firehose and CloudWatch clients.
        firehose (boto3.client): Boto3 Firehose client.
        cloudwatch (boto3.client): Boto3 CloudWatch client.
    """

    def __init__(self, config):
        """
        Initialize the FirehoseClient.

        Args:
            config (object): Configuration object with delivery stream name and
 region.
        """
        self.config = config
        self.delivery_stream_name = config.delivery_stream_name
        self.region = config.region
        self.firehose = boto3.client("firehose", region_name=self.region)
        self.cloudwatch = boto3.client("cloudwatch", region_name=self.region)


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record(self, record: dict):
        """
        Put individual records to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            record (dict): The data record to be sent to Firehose.

        This method attempts to send an individual record to the Firehose delivery
 stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
```

```
        try:
            entry = self._create_record_entry(record)
            response = self.firehose.put_record(
                DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name, Record=entry
            )
            self._log_response(response, entry)
        except Exception:
            logger.info(f"Fail record: {record}.")
            raise


    @backoff.on_exception(
        backoff.expo, Exception, max_tries=5, jitter=backoff.full_jitter
    )
    def put_record_batch(self, data: list, batch_size: int = 500):
        """
        Put records in batches to Firehose with backoff and retry.

        Args:
            data (list): List of data records to be sent to Firehose.
            batch_size (int): Number of records to send in each batch. Default is
500.

        This method attempts to send records in batches to the Firehose delivery
stream.
        It retries with exponential backoff in case of exceptions.
        """
        for i in range(0, len(data), batch_size):
            batch = data[i : i + batch_size]
            record_dicts = [{"Data": json.dumps(record)} for record in batch]
            try:
                response = self.firehose.put_record_batch(
                    DeliveryStreamName=self.delivery_stream_name,
Records=record_dicts
                )
                self._log_batch_response(response, len(batch))
            except Exception as e:
                logger.info(f"Failed to send batch of {len(batch)} records. Error:
{e}")


    def get_metric_statistics(
        self,
        metric_name: str,
```

```
        start_time: datetime,
        end_time: datetime,
        period: int,
        statistics: list = ["Sum"],
    ) -> list:
        """
        Retrieve metric statistics from CloudWatch.

        Args:
            metric_name (str): The name of the metric.
            start_time (datetime): The start time for the metric statistics.
            end_time (datetime): The end time for the metric statistics.
            period (int): The granularity, in seconds, of the returned data points.
            statistics (list): A list of statistics to retrieve. Default is ['Sum'].

        Returns:
            list: List of datapoints containing the metric statistics.
        """
        response = self.cloudwatch.get_metric_statistics(
            Namespace="AWS/Firehose",
            MetricName=metric_name,
            Dimensions=[
                {"Name": "DeliveryStreamName", "Value": self.delivery_stream_name},
            ],
            StartTime=start_time,
            EndTime=end_time,
            Period=period,
            Statistics=statistics,
        )
        return response["Datapoints"]

    def monitor_metrics(self):
        """
        Monitor Firehose metrics for the last 5 minutes.

        This method retrieves and logs the 'IncomingBytes', 'IncomingRecords', and
'FailedPutCount' metrics
        from CloudWatch for the last 5 minutes.
        """
        end_time = datetime.utcnow()
        start_time = end_time - timedelta(minutes=10)
        period = int((end_time - start_time).total_seconds())

        metrics = {
```

```
            "IncomingBytes": self.get_metric_statistics(
                "IncomingBytes", start_time, end_time, period
            ),
            "IncomingRecords": self.get_metric_statistics(
                "IncomingRecords", start_time, end_time, period
            ),
            "FailedPutCount": self.get_metric_statistics(
                "FailedPutCount", start_time, end_time, period
            ),
        }

        for metric, datapoints in metrics.items():
            if datapoints:
                total_sum = sum(datapoint["Sum"] for datapoint in datapoints)
                if metric == "IncomingBytes":
                    logger.info(
                        f"{metric}: {round(total_sum)} ({total_sum / (1024 *
1024):.2f} MB)"
                    )
                else:
                    logger.info(f"{metric}: {round(total_sum)}")
            else:
                logger.info(f"No data found for {metric} over the last 5 minutes")


    def _create_record_entry(self, record: dict) -> dict:
        """
        Create a record entry for Firehose.

        Args:
            record (dict): The data record to be sent.

        Returns:
            dict: The record entry formatted for Firehose.

        Raises:
            Exception: If a simulated network error occurs.
        """
        if random.random() < 0.2:
            raise Exception("Simulated network error")
        elif random.random() < 0.1:
            return {"Data": '{"malformed": "data"'}
        else:
            return {"Data": json.dumps(record)}
```

```
    def _log_response(self, response: dict, entry: dict):
        """
        Log the response from Firehose.

        Args:
            response (dict): The response from the Firehose put_record API call.
            entry (dict): The record entry that was sent.
        """
        if response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"] == 200:
            logger.info(f"Sent record: {entry}")
        else:
            logger.info(f"Fail record: {entry}")

    def _log_batch_response(self, response: dict, batch_size: int):
        """
        Log the batch response from Firehose.

        Args:
            response (dict): The response from the Firehose put_record_batch API
 call.
            batch_size (int): The number of records in the batch.
        """
        if response.get("FailedPutCount", 0) > 0:
            logger.info(
                f'Failed to send {response["FailedPutCount"]} records in batch of
 {batch_size}'
            )
        else:
            logger.info(f"Successfully sent batch of {batch_size} records")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    config = get_config()
    data = load_sample_data(config.sample_data_file)
    client = FirehoseClient(config)

    # Process the first 100 sample network records
    for record in data[:100]:
        try:
            client.put_record(record)
        except Exception as e:
            logger.info(f"Put record failed after retries and backoff: {e}")
    client.monitor_metrics()
```

```
    # Process remaining records using the batch method
    try:
        client.put_record_batch(data[100:])
    except Exception as e:
        logger.info(f"Put record batch failed after retries and backoff: {e}")
    client.monitor_metrics()
```

This file contains config for the above script.

```
class Config:
    def __init__(self):
        self.delivery_stream_name = "ENTER YOUR DELIVERY STREAM NAME HERE"
        self.region = "us-east-1"
        self.sample_data_file = (
            "../../../../../scenarios/features/firehose/resources/
sample_records.json"
        )


def get_config():
    return Config()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - PutRecord
  - PutRecordBatch

Device Farm examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Device Farm.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Run browser tests and take screenshots

The following code example shows how to run browser tests with Device Farm and take screenshots.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use PyTest and Selenium to browse to specified websites, take screenshots, and compare actual website content with expected content.

```
import datetime
import os
import subprocess
import boto3
import pytest
from selenium import webdriver
from selenium.webdriver import DesiredCapabilities
from selenium.webdriver.common.by import By
from selenium.webdriver.common.keys import Keys
from selenium.webdriver.support import expected_conditions
from selenium.webdriver.support.wait import WebDriverWait


def get_git_hash():
    """
    Get the short Git hash of the current commit of the repository
    """
    try:
        return (
            subprocess.check_output(["git", "rev-parse", "--short", "HEAD"])
            .decode("utf-8")
            .strip()
```

```
        )
    except:
        return "norepo"


class TestHelloSuite:
    """
    Our test suite.

    This style of test suite allows us to use setup_method and teardown_method.

    """

    def save_screenshot(self, name):
        self.driver.save_screenshot(os.path.join(self.screenshot_path, name))

    def setup_method(self, method):
        """
        Set up a test.

        This makes sure that the session for an individual test is ready.

        The AWS credentials are read from the default ~/.aws/credentials or from the
        command line by setting the AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID and AWS_SECRET_KEY environment
        variables.

        The project Amazon Resource Name (ARN) is determined by the PROJECT_ARN
        environment variable.
        """
        devicefarm_client = boto3.client("devicefarm")
        project_arn = os.environ.get("PROJECT_ARN", None)
        if project_arn is None:
            raise ValueError("Must set PROJECT_ARN")
        # Request a driver hub URL for the Selenium client
        testgrid_url_response = devicefarm_client.create_test_grid_url(
            projectArn=project_arn, expiresInSeconds=300
        )

        # We want a directory to save our files into. We're going to make a
 directory
        # in the current directory that holds our results.
        self.screenshot_path = os.path.join(
            ".", "results", get_git_hash() + "-" +
 (datetime.date.today().isoformat())
```

```
        )
        if not os.path.exists(self.screenshot_path):
            os.makedirs(self.screenshot_path, exist_ok=True)

        # We want a Firefox instance on Windows
        desired_cap = DesiredCapabilities.FIREFOX
        desired_cap["platform"] = "windows"
        desired_cap["BrowserVersion"] = "latest"

        # Configure the webdriver with the appropriate remote endpoint.
        self.driver = webdriver.Remote(testgrid_url_response["url"], desired_cap)

        #
        # Auto-Tagging
        #

        # In order to get the Session ARN, we need to look up the session by the
        # Project ARN and session ID (from the driver).
        testgrid_session_arn_response = devicefarm_client.get_test_grid_session(
            projectArn=project_arn, sessionId=self.driver.session_id
        )

        # Save the session's ARN so we can tag the session.
        self.session_arn = testgrid_session_arn_response["testGridSession"]["arn"]

        # In order to tag it, we're going to use the resourcegroupstaggingapi client
to
        # add a tag to the session ARN that we just got.
        tag_client = boto3.client("resourcegroupstaggingapi")
        tag_client.tag_resources(
            ResourceARNList=[self.session_arn],
            Tags={"TestSuite": f"testsuite {method.__name__}", "GitId":
get_git_hash()},
        )

    def teardown_method(self, method):
        """
        Clean up resources used by each method.
        """
        # End the Selenium session so we're off the clock.
        self.driver.quit()

    @pytest.mark.parametrize(
        "query,leading",
```

```
        [
            pytest.param(
                "Seattle",
                "Seattle (/si#ætəl/ (listen) see-AT-əl) is a seaport city on the
West Coast of the United States.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Selenium",
                "Selenium is a chemical element with the symbol Se and atomic number
34.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Amazon Locker",
                "Amazon Locker is a self-service package delivery service offered by
online retailer Amazon.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Kootenai Falls",
                "Kootenai Falls is a waterfall on the Kootenay River located in
Lincoln County, Montana, just off U.S. Route 2.",
            ),
            pytest.param(
                "Dorayaki",
                "Dorayaki (####, ####, ####, ####) is a type of Japanese
confection.",
            ),
            pytest.param("Robot Face", "<|°_°|> (also known as Robot Face or
Robot)"),
        ],
    )
    def test_first_paragraph_text(self, query, leading):
        """
        This test looks at the first paragraph of a page on Wikipedia, comparing it
to
        a known leading sentence.

        If the leading sentence matches, the test passes. A screenshot is taken
before
        the final assertion is made, letting us debug if something isn't right.
        """
        # Open the main page of Wikipedia
        self.driver.get("https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Main_Page")
        # Find the search box, enter a query, and press enter
        search_input = self.driver.find_element(By.ID, "searchInput")
```

```
        search_input.click()
        search_input.send_keys(query)
        search_input.send_keys(Keys.ENTER)
        # Wait for the search box to go stale -- This means we've navigated fully.
        WebDriverWait(self.driver, 5).until(
            expected_conditions.staleness_of(search_input)
        )
        # Get the leading paragraph of the article.
        lead = leading.lower()
        # Find the element...
        lead_para = self.driver.find_element(
            By.XPATH, "//div[@class='mw-parser-output']//p[not(@class)]"
        )
        # ... and copy out its text.
        our_text = lead_para.text.lower()
        our_text = our_text[: len(lead)]
        # Take a screenshot and compare the strings.
        self.save_screenshot(f"leadingpara_{query}.png")
        assert our_text.startswith(lead)

    @pytest.mark.parametrize(
        "query,expected",
        [
            pytest.param("Automation Testing", "Test Automation"),
            pytest.param("DevOps", "DevOps"),
            pytest.param("Jackdaws Love My Big Sphinx Of Quartz", "Pangram"),
            pytest.param("EarthBound", "EarthBound"),
            pytest.param("Covered Bridges Today", "Covered Bridges Today"),
            pytest.param("Kurt Godel", "Kurt Gödel"),
            pytest.param("N//ng language", "N#ng language"),
            pytest.param(
                "Who the Frick Is Jackson Pollock?", "Who the $&% Is Jackson
Pollock?"
            ),
        ],
    )
    def test_redirect_titles(self, query, expected):
        """
        A test comparing pages we expect to (or not to) redirect on Wikipedia.

        This test checks to see that the page ("query") redirects (or doesn't) to
the
        "expected" page title. Several of these are common synonyms ("Jackdaws...")
```

```
        while others are because of characters untypable by most keyboards ("N#ng
language")

        A screenshot is taken just before the final assertion is made to aid in
        debugging and verification.
        """
        # Open the main page of Wikipedia
        self.driver.get("https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Main_Page")
        # Find the search box, enter some text into it, and send an enter key.
        search_input = self.driver.find_element(By.ID, "searchInput")
        search_input.click()
        search_input.send_keys(query)
        search_input.send_keys(Keys.ENTER)
        # wait until the page has rolled over -- once the search input handle is
stale,
        # the browser has navigated.
        WebDriverWait(self.driver, 5).until(
            expected_conditions.staleness_of(search_input)
        )
        # Get the first heading & take a screenshot
        our_text = self.driver.find_element(By.ID, "firstHeading").text.lower()
        self.save_screenshot(f"redirect_{query}.png")
        # did it match?
        assert our_text == expected.lower()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTestGridUrl
  - GetTestGridSession

Upload and test device packages

The following code example shows how to upload and test mobile device packages with Device Farm.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload compiled Android application and test packages to Device Farm, start a test, wait for test completion, and report the results.

```
import boto3
import os
import requests
import string
import random
import datetime
import time

# Update this dict with your own values before you run the example:
config = {
    # This is our app under test.
    "appFilePath": "app-debug.apk",
    "projectArn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2:111222333444:project:581f5703-
e040-4ac9-b7ae-0ba007bfb8e6",
    # Since we care about the most popular devices, we'll use a curated pool.
    "testSpecArn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-west-2::upload:20fcf771-eae3-4137-
aa76-92e17fb3131b",
    "poolArn": "arn:aws:devicefarm:us-
west-2::devicepool:4a869d91-6f17-491f-9a95-0a601aee2406",
    "namePrefix": "MyAppTest",
    # This is our test package. This tutorial won't go into how to make these.
    "testPackage": "tests.zip",
}

client = boto3.client("devicefarm")

unique = (
    config["namePrefix"]
    + "-"
    + (datetime.date.today().isoformat())
    + ("".join(random.sample(string.ascii_letters, 8)))
```

```
)

print(
    f"The unique identifier for this run is '{unique}'. All uploads will be prefixed
 "
    f"with this."
)


def upload_df_file(filename, type_, mime="application/octet-stream"):
    upload_response = client.create_upload(
        projectArn=config["projectArn"],
        name=unique + "_" + os.path.basename(filename),
        type=type_,
        contentType=mime,
    )
    upload_arn = upload_response["upload"]["arn"]
    # Extract the URL of the upload and use Requests to upload it.
    upload_url = upload_response["upload"]["url"]
    with open(filename, "rb") as file_stream:
        print(
            f"Uploading {filename} to Device Farm as "
            f"{upload_response['upload']['name']}... ",
            end="",
        )
        put_req = requests.put(
            upload_url, data=file_stream, headers={"content-type": mime}
        )
        print(" done")
        if not put_req.ok:
            raise Exception(f"Couldn't upload. Requests says: {put_req.reason}")
    started = datetime.datetime.now()
    while True:
        print(
            f"Upload of {filename} in state {upload_response['upload']['status']} "
            f"after " + str(datetime.datetime.now() - started)
        )
        if upload_response["upload"]["status"] == "FAILED":
            raise Exception(
                f"The upload failed processing. Device Farm says the reason is: \n"
                f"{+upload_response['upload']['message']}"
            )
        if upload_response["upload"]["status"] == "SUCCEEDED":
            break
```

```
        time.sleep(5)
        upload_response = client.get_upload(arn=upload_arn)
    print("")
    return upload_arn


our_upload_arn = upload_df_file(config["appFilePath"], "ANDROID_APP")
our_test_package_arn = upload_df_file(
    config["testPackage"], "APPIUM_PYTHON_TEST_PACKAGE"
)
print(our_upload_arn, our_test_package_arn)

response = client.schedule_run(
    projectArn=config["projectArn"],
    appArn=our_upload_arn,
    devicePoolArn=config["poolArn"],
    name=unique,
    test={
        "type": "APPIUM_PYTHON",
        "testSpecArn": config["testSpecArn"],
        "testPackageArn": our_test_package_arn,
    },
)
run_arn = response["run"]["arn"]
start_time = datetime.datetime.now()
print(f"Run {unique} is scheduled as arn {run_arn} ")

state = "UNKNOWN"
try:
    while True:
        response = client.get_run(arn=run_arn)
        state = response["run"]["status"]
        if state == "COMPLETED" or state == "ERRORED":
            break
        else:
            print(
                f" Run {unique} in state {state}, total "
                f"time {datetime.datetime.now() - start_time}"
            )
            time.sleep(10)
except:
    client.stop_run(arn=run_arn)
    exit(1)
```

```
print(f"Tests finished in state {state} after {datetime.datetime.now() -
 start_time}")
# Pull all the logs.
jobs_response = client.list_jobs(arn=run_arn)
# Save the output somewhere, using the unique value.
save_path = os.path.join(os.getcwd(), "results", unique)
os.mkdir(save_path)
# Save the last run information.
for job in jobs_response["jobs"]:
    job_name = job["name"]
    os.makedirs(os.path.join(save_path, job_name), exist_ok=True)
    # Get each suite within the job.
    suites = client.list_suites(arn=job["arn"])["suites"]
    for suite in suites:
        for test in client.list_tests(arn=suite["arn"])["tests"]:
            # Get the artifacts.
            for artifact_type in ["FILE", "SCREENSHOT", "LOG"]:
                artifacts = client.list_artifacts(type=artifact_type,
 arn=test["arn"])[
                    "artifacts"
                ]
                for artifact in artifacts:
                    # Replace `:` because it has a special meaning in Windows &
 macOS.
                    path_to = os.path.join(
                        save_path,
                        job_name,
                        suite["name"],
                        test["name"].replace(":", "_"),
                    )
                    os.makedirs(path_to, exist_ok=True)
                    filename = (
                        artifact["type"]
                        + "_"
                        + artifact["name"]
                        + "."
                        + artifact["extension"]
                    )
                    artifact_save_path = os.path.join(path_to, filename)
                    print(f"Downloading {artifact_save_path}")
                    with open(artifact_save_path, "wb") as fn:
                        with requests.get(
                            artifact["url"], allow_redirects=True
                        ) as request:
```

```
                                fn.write(request.content)
print("Finished")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateUpload
  - GetRun
  - GetUpload
  - ListArtifacts
  - ListJobs
  - ListSuites
  - ListTests
  - ScheduleRun
  - StopRun

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event.get('events', []):
        log_document_db_event(record)
    return 'OK'

def log_document_db_event(record):
    event_data = record.get('event', {})
    operation_type = event_data.get('operationType', 'Unknown')
    db = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('db', 'Unknown')
    collection = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('coll', 'Unknown')
    full_document = event_data.get('fullDocument', {})

    print(f"Operation type: {operation_type}")
    print(f"db: {db}")
    print(f"collection: {collection}")
    print("Full document:", json.dumps(full_document, indent=2))
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3

# Create a DynamoDB client using the default credentials and region
dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

# Initialize a paginator for the list_tables operation
paginator = dynamodb.get_paginator("list_tables")

# Create a PageIterator from the paginator
page_iterator = paginator.paginate(Limit=10)

# List the tables in the current AWS account
print("Here are the DynamoDB tables in your account:")

# Use pagination to list all tables
table_names = []

for page in page_iterator:
    for table_name in page.get("TableNames", []):
        print(f"- {table_name}")
        table_names.append(table_name)

if not table_names:
    print("You don't have any DynamoDB tables in your account.")
else:
```

```
    print(f"\nFound {len(table_names)} tables.")
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that encapsulates a DynamoDB table.

```
from decimal import Decimal
```

```
from io import BytesIO
import json
import logging
import os
from pprint import pprint
import requests
from zipfile import ZipFile
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from question import Question

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
```

```
        self.table = None


    def exists(self, table_name):
        """
        Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
        a member variable.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to check.
        :return: True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            table = self.dyn_resource.Table(table_name)
            table.load()
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't check for existence of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            self.table = table
        return exists


    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
        The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
        title as the sort key.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to create.
        :return: The newly created table.
        """
        try:
            self.table = self.dyn_resource.create_table(
                TableName=table_name,
                KeySchema=[
```

```
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "KeyType": "HASH"},  # Partition key
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "KeyType": "RANGE"},  # Sort key
                ],
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "AttributeType": "N"},
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "AttributeType": "S"},
                ],
                BillingMode='PAY_PER_REQUEST',
            )
            self.table.wait_until_exists()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.table


    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the Amazon DynamoDB tables for the current account.

        :return: The list of tables.
        """
        try:
            tables = []
            for table in self.dyn_resource.tables.all():
                print(table.name)
                tables.append(table)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tables
```

```
    def write_batch(self, movies):
        """
        Fills an Amazon DynamoDB table with the specified data, using the Boto3
        Table.batch_writer() function to put the items in the table.
        Inside the context manager, Table.batch_writer builds a list of
        requests. On exiting the context manager, Table.batch_writer starts sending
        batches of write requests to Amazon DynamoDB and automatically
        handles chunking, buffering, and retrying.

        :param movies: The data to put in the table. Each item must contain at least
                       the keys required by the schema that was specified when the
                       table was created.
        """
        try:
            with self.table.batch_writer() as writer:
                for movie in movies:
                    writer.put_item(Item=movie)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't load data into table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def add_movie(self, title, year, plot, rating):
        """
        Adds a movie to the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :param plot: The plot summary of the movie.
        :param rating: The quality rating of the movie.
        """
        try:
            self.table.put_item(
                Item={
                    "year": year,
                    "title": title,
                    "info": {"plot": plot, "rating": Decimal(str(rating))},
                }
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't add movie %s to table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Gets movie data from the table for a specific movie.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :return: The data about the requested movie.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.get_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get movie %s from table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Item"]


    def update_movie(self, title, year, rating, plot):
        """
        Updates rating and plot data for a movie in the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param rating: The updated rating to the give the movie.
        :param plot: The updated plot summary to give the movie.
        :return: The fields that were updated, with their new values.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="set info.rating=:r, info.plot=:p",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":r": Decimal(str(rating)), ":p": plot},
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update movie %s in table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]


    def query_movies(self, year):
        """
        Queries for movies that were released in the specified year.

        :param year: The year to query.
        :return: The list of movies that were released in the specified year.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key("year").eq(year))
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't query for movies released in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                year,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Items"]


    def scan_movies(self, year_range):
        """
        Scans for movies that were released in a range of years.
```

```
        Uses a projection expression to return a subset of data for each movie.

        :param year_range: The range of years to retrieve.
        :return: The list of movies released in the specified years.
        """
        movies = []
        scan_kwargs = {
            "FilterExpression": Key("year").between(
                year_range["first"], year_range["second"]
            ),
            "ProjectionExpression": "#yr, title, info.rating",
            "ExpressionAttributeNames": {"#yr": "year"},
        }
        try:
            done = False
            start_key = None
            while not done:
                if start_key:
                    scan_kwargs["ExclusiveStartKey"] = start_key
                response = self.table.scan(**scan_kwargs)
                movies.extend(response.get("Items", []))
                start_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey", None)
                done = start_key is None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't scan for movies. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

        return movies


    def delete_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Deletes a movie from the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to delete.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete()
            self.table = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
def get_sample_movie_data(movie_file_name):
    """
    Gets sample movie data, either from a local file or by first downloading it from
    the Amazon DynamoDB developer guide.

    :param movie_file_name: The local file name where the movie data is stored in
 JSON format.
    :return: The movie data as a dict.
    """
    if not os.path.isfile(movie_file_name):
        print(f"Downloading {movie_file_name}...")
        movie_content = requests.get(
```

```
            "https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/
samples/moviedata.zip"
        )
        movie_zip = ZipFile(BytesIO(movie_content.content))
        movie_zip.extractall()

    try:
        with open(movie_file_name) as movie_file:
            movie_data = json.load(movie_file, parse_float=Decimal)
    except FileNotFoundError:
        print(
            f"File {movie_file_name} not found. You must first download the file to
 "
            "run this demo. See the README for instructions."
        )
        raise
    else:
        # The sample file lists over 4000 movies, return only the first 250.
        return movie_data[:250]
```

Run an interactive scenario to create the table and perform actions on it.

```
def run_scenario(table_name, movie_file_name, dyn_resource):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB getting started demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    movies = Movies(dyn_resource)
    movies_exists = movies.exists(table_name)
    if not movies_exists:
        print(f"\nCreating table {table_name}...")
        movies.create_table(table_name)
        print(f"\nCreated table {movies.table.name}.")

    my_movie = Question.ask_questions(
        [
            Question(
                "title", "Enter the title of a movie you want to add to the table: "
```

```
            ),
            Question("year", "What year was it released? ", Question.is_int),
            Question(
                "rating",
                "On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it? ",
                Question.is_float,
                Question.in_range(1, 10),
            ),
            Question("plot", "Summarize the plot for me: "),
        ]
    )
    movies.add_movie(**my_movie)
    print(f"\nAdded '{my_movie['title']}' to '{movies.table.name}'.")
    print("-" * 88)

    movie_update = Question.ask_questions(
        [
            Question(
                "rating",
                f"\nLet's update your movie.\nYou rated it {my_movie['rating']},
what new "
                f"rating would you give it? ",
                Question.is_float,
                Question.in_range(1, 10),
            ),
            Question(
                "plot",
                f"You summarized the plot as '{my_movie['plot']}'.\nWhat would you
say now? ",
            ),
        ]
    )
    my_movie.update(movie_update)
    updated = movies.update_movie(**my_movie)
    print(f"\nUpdated '{my_movie['title']}' with new attributes:")
    pprint(updated)
    print("-" * 88)

    if not movies_exists:
        movie_data = get_sample_movie_data(movie_file_name)
        print(f"\nReading data from '{movie_file_name}' into your table.")
        movies.write_batch(movie_data)
        print(f"\nWrote {len(movie_data)} movies into {movies.table.name}.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    title = "The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring"
    if Question.ask_question(
        f"Let's move on...do you want to get info about '{title}'? (y/n) ",
        Question.is_yesno,
    ):
        movie = movies.get_movie(title, 2001)
        print("\nHere's what I found:")
        pprint(movie)
    print("-" * 88)

    ask_for_year = True
    while ask_for_year:
        release_year = Question.ask_question(
            f"\nLet's get a list of movies released in a given year. Enter a year
between "
            f"1972 and 2018: ",
            Question.is_int,
            Question.in_range(1972, 2018),
        )
        releases = movies.query_movies(release_year)
        if releases:
            print(f"There were {len(releases)} movies released in {release_year}:")
            for release in releases:
                print(f"\t{release['title']}")
            ask_for_year = False
        else:
            print(f"I don't know about any movies released in {release_year}!")
            ask_for_year = Question.ask_question(
                "Try another year? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno
            )
    print("-" * 88)

    years = Question.ask_questions(
        [
            Question(
                "first",
                f"\nNow let's scan for movies released in a range of years. Enter a
year: ",
                Question.is_int,
                Question.in_range(1972, 2018),
            ),
            Question(
                "second",
```

```
                "Now enter another year: ",
                Question.is_int,
                Question.in_range(1972, 2018),
            ),
        ]
    )
    releases = movies.scan_movies(years)
    if releases:
        count = Question.ask_question(
            f"\nFound {len(releases)} movies. How many do you want to see? ",
            Question.is_int,
            Question.in_range(1, len(releases)),
        )
        print(f"\nHere are your {count} movies:\n")
        pprint(releases[:count])
    else:
        print(
            f"I don't know about any movies released between {years['first']} "
            f"and {years['second']}."
        )
    print("-" * 88)

    if Question.ask_question(
        f"\nLet's remove your movie from the table. Do you want to remove "
        f"'{my_movie['title']}'? (y/n)",
        Question.is_yesno,
    ):
        movies.delete_movie(my_movie["title"], my_movie["year"])
        print(f"\nRemoved '{my_movie['title']}' from the table.")
    print("-" * 88)

    if Question.ask_question(f"\nDelete the table? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno):
        movies.delete_table()
        print(f"Deleted {table_name}.")
    else:
        print(
            "Don't forget to delete the table when you're done or you might incur "
            "charges on your account."
        )

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        run_scenario(
            "doc-example-table-movies", "moviedata.json", boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Something went wrong with the demo! Here's what: {e}")
```

This scenario uses the following helper class to ask questions at a command prompt.

```
class Question:
    """
    A helper class to ask questions at a command prompt and validate and convert
    the answers.
    """

    def __init__(self, key, question, *validators):
        """
        :param key: The key that is used for storing the answer in a dict, when
                    multiple questions are asked in a set.
        :param question: The question to ask.
        :param validators: The answer is passed through the list of validators until
                           one fails or they all pass. Validators may also convert
 the
                           answer to another form, such as from a str to an int.
        """
        self.key = key
        self.question = question
        self.validators = Question.non_empty, *validators

    @staticmethod
    def ask_questions(questions):
        """
        Asks a set of questions and stores the answers in a dict.

        :param questions: The list of questions to ask.
        :return: A dict of answers.
        """
        answers = {}
        for question in questions:
            answers[question.key] = Question.ask_question(
                question.question, *question.validators
```

```
            )
        return answers

    @staticmethod
    def ask_question(question, *validators):
        """
        Asks a single question and validates it against a list of validators.
        When an answer fails validation, the complaint is printed and the question
        is asked again.

        :param question: The question to ask.
        :param validators: The list of validators that the answer must pass.
        :return: The answer, converted to its final form by the validators.
        """
        answer = None
        while answer is None:
            answer = input(question)
            for validator in validators:
                answer, complaint = validator(answer)
                if answer is None:
                    print(complaint)
                    break
        return answer

    @staticmethod
    def non_empty(answer):
        """
        Validates that the answer is not empty.
        :return: The non-empty answer, or None.
        """
        return answer if answer != "" else None, "I need an answer. Please?"

    @staticmethod
    def is_yesno(answer):
        """
        Validates a yes/no answer.
        :return: True when the answer is 'y'; otherwise, False.
        """
        return answer.lower() == "y", ""

    @staticmethod
    def is_int(answer):
        """
        Validates that the answer can be converted to an int.
```

```
        :return: The int answer; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            int_answer = int(answer)
        except ValueError:
            int_answer = None
        return int_answer, f"{answer} must be a valid integer."

    @staticmethod
    def is_letter(answer):
        """
        Validates that the answer is a letter.
        :return The letter answer, converted to uppercase; otherwise, None.
        """
        return (
            answer.upper() if answer.isalpha() else None,
            f"{answer} must be a single letter.",
        )

    @staticmethod
    def is_float(answer):
        """
        Validate that the answer can be converted to a float.
        :return The float answer; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            float_answer = float(answer)
        except ValueError:
            float_answer = None
        return float_answer, f"{answer} must be a valid float."

    @staticmethod
    def in_range(lower, upper):
        """
        Validate that the answer is within a range. The answer must be of a type
that can
        be compared to the lower and upper bounds.
        :return: The answer, if it is within the range; otherwise, None.
        """

        def _validate(answer):
            return (
                answer if lower <= answer <= upper else None,
                f"{answer} must be between {lower} and {upper}.",
```

```
            )

        return _validate
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PartiQLBatchWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statements, param_list):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects (POPOs)
to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statements: The batch of PartiQL statements.
        :param param_list: The batch of PartiQL parameters that are associated with
                           each statement. This list must be in the same order as
the
                           statements.
        :return: The responses returned from running the statements, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.batch_execute_statement(
                Statements=[
                    {"Statement": statement, "Parameters": params}
                    for statement, params in zip(statements, param_list)
                ]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements because the table
"
                    "does not exist."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import decimal
import json
import logging
import os
import pprint
import time
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

MAX_GET_SIZE = 100  # Amazon DynamoDB rejects a get batch larger than 100 items.


def do_batch_get(batch_keys):
    """
    Gets a batch of items from Amazon DynamoDB. Batches can contain keys from
    more than one table.
```

```
    When Amazon DynamoDB cannot process all items in a batch, a set of unprocessed
    keys is returned. This function uses an exponential backoff algorithm to retry
    getting the unprocessed keys until all are retrieved or the specified
    number of tries is reached.

    :param batch_keys: The set of keys to retrieve. A batch can contain at most 100
                       keys. Otherwise, Amazon DynamoDB returns an error.
    :return: The dictionary of retrieved items grouped under their respective
             table names.
    """
    tries = 0
    max_tries = 5
    sleepy_time = 1  # Start with 1 second of sleep, then exponentially increase.
    retrieved = {key: [] for key in batch_keys}
    while tries < max_tries:
        response = dynamodb.batch_get_item(RequestItems=batch_keys)
        # Collect any retrieved items and retry unprocessed keys.
        for key in response.get("Responses", []):
            retrieved[key] += response["Responses"][key]
        unprocessed = response["UnprocessedKeys"]
        if len(unprocessed) > 0:
            batch_keys = unprocessed
            unprocessed_count = sum(
                [len(batch_key["Keys"]) for batch_key in batch_keys.values()]
            )
            logger.info(
                "%s unprocessed keys returned. Sleep, then retry.",
unprocessed_count
            )
            tries += 1
            if tries < max_tries:
                logger.info("Sleeping for %s seconds.", sleepy_time)
                time.sleep(sleepy_time)
                sleepy_time = min(sleepy_time * 2, 32)
        else:
            break

    return retrieved
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None
```

```
    def write_batch(self, movies):
        """
        Fills an Amazon DynamoDB table with the specified data, using the Boto3
        Table.batch_writer() function to put the items in the table.
        Inside the context manager, Table.batch_writer builds a list of
        requests. On exiting the context manager, Table.batch_writer starts sending
        batches of write requests to Amazon DynamoDB and automatically
        handles chunking, buffering, and retrying.

        :param movies: The data to put in the table. Each item must contain at least
                       the keys required by the schema that was specified when the
                       table was created.
        """
        try:
            with self.table.batch_writer() as writer:
                for movie in movies:
                    writer.put_item(Item=movie)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't load data into table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a table for storing movie data.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
        The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
        title as the sort key.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to create.
        :return: The newly created table.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.table = self.dyn_resource.create_table(
                TableName=table_name,
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "KeyType": "HASH"},  # Partition key
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "KeyType": "RANGE"},  # Sort key
                ],
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "year", "AttributeType": "N"},
                    {"AttributeName": "title", "AttributeType": "S"},
                ],
                BillingMode='PAY_PER_REQUEST',
            )
            self.table.wait_until_exists()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.table
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
```

```
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def delete_movie(self, title, year):
        """
        Deletes a movie from the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to delete.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

You can specify a condition so that an item is deleted only when it meets certain criteria.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def delete_underrated_movie(self, title, year, rating):
        """
        Deletes a movie only if it is rated below a specified value. By using a
        condition expression in a delete operation, you can specify that an item is
        deleted only when it meets certain criteria.

        :param title: The title of the movie to delete.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to delete.
        :param rating: The rating threshold to check before deleting the movie.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                ConditionExpression="info.rating <= :val",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":val": Decimal(str(rating))},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Didn't delete %s because its rating is greater than %s.",
                    title,
                    rating,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't delete movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    title,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
```

```
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table.
        """
        try:
            self.table.delete()
            self.table = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def exists(self, table_name):
        """
        Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
        a member variable.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to check.
        :return: True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            table = self.dyn_resource.Table(table_name)
```

```
            table.load()
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't check for existence of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            self.table = table
        return exists
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeTimeToLive`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTimeToLive`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Describe TTL configuration on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3


def describe_ttl(table_name, region):
    """
    Describes TTL on an existing table, as well as a region.

    :param table_name: String representing the name of the table
    :param region: AWS Region of the table - example `us-east-1`
    :return: Time to live description.
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        ttl_description = dynamodb.describe_time_to_live(TableName=table_name)
```

```
        print(
            f"TimeToLive for table {table_name} is status
 {ttl_description['TimeToLiveDescription']['TimeToLiveStatus']}"
        )

        return ttl_description
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error describing table: {e}")
        raise


# Enter your own table name and AWS region
describe_ttl("your-table-name", "us-east-1")
```

- For API details, see DescribeTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PartiQLWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statement, params):
```

```
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects (POPOs)
to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statement: The PartiQL statement.
        :param params: The list of PartiQL parameters. These are applied to the
                       statement in the order they are listed.
        :return: The items returned from the statement, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.execute_statement(
                Statement=statement, Parameters=params
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s' because the table does not
exist.",
                    statement,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s'. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    statement,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetItem

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def get_movie(self, title, year):
```

```
        """
        Gets movie data from the table for a specific movie.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :return: The data about the requested movie.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.get_item(Key={"year": year, "title": title})
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get movie %s from table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Item"]
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
```

```
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the Amazon DynamoDB tables for the current account.

        :return: The list of tables.
        """
        try:
            tables = []
            for table in self.dyn_resource.tables.all():
                print(table.name)
                tables.append(table)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tables
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
```

```
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def add_movie(self, title, year, plot, rating):
        """
        Adds a movie to the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The release year of the movie.
        :param plot: The plot summary of the movie.
        :param rating: The quality rating of the movie.
        """
        try:
            self.table.put_item(
                Item={
                    "year": year,
                    "title": title,
                    "info": {"plot": plot, "rating": Decimal(str(rating))},
                }
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't add movie %s to table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Query items by using a key condition expression.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
```

```
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def query_movies(self, year):
        """
        Queries for movies that were released in the specified year.

        :param year: The year to query.
        :return: The list of movies that were released in the specified year.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key("year").eq(year))
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't query for movies released in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                year,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Items"]
```

Query items and project them to return a subset of data.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def query_and_project_movies(self, year, title_bounds):
        """
        Query for movies that were released in a specified year and that have titles
        that start within a range of letters. A projection expression is used
        to return a subset of data for each movie.

        :param year: The release year to query.
        :param title_bounds: The range of starting letters to query.
        :return: The list of movies.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.table.query(
                ProjectionExpression="#yr, title, info.genres, info.actors[0]",
                ExpressionAttributeNames={"#yr": "year"},
                KeyConditionExpression=(
                    Key("year").eq(year)
                    & Key("title").between(
                        title_bounds["first"], title_bounds["second"]
                    )
                ),
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ValidationException":
                logger.warning(
                    "There's a validation error. Here's the message: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't query for movies. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return response["Items"]
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def scan_movies(self, year_range):
        """
        Scans for movies that were released in a range of years.
        Uses a projection expression to return a subset of data for each movie.

        :param year_range: The range of years to retrieve.
        :return: The list of movies released in the specified years.
        """
        movies = []
        scan_kwargs = {
```

```
            "FilterExpression": Key("year").between(
                year_range["first"], year_range["second"]
            ),
            "ProjectionExpression": "#yr, title, info.rating",
            "ExpressionAttributeNames": {"#yr": "year"},
        }
        try:
            done = False
            start_key = None
            while not done:
                if start_key:
                    scan_kwargs["ExclusiveStartKey"] = start_key
                response = self.table.scan(**scan_kwargs)
                movies.extend(response.get("Items", []))
                start_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey", None)
                done = start_key is None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't scan for movies. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

        return movies
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update an item by using an update expression.

```
class Movies:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.

    Example data structure for a movie record in this table:
        {
            "year": 1999,
            "title": "For Love of the Game",
            "info": {
                "directors": ["Sam Raimi"],
                "release_date": "1999-09-15T00:00:00Z",
                "rating": 6.3,
                "plot": "A washed up pitcher flashes through his career.",
                "rank": 4987,
                "running_time_secs": 8220,
                "actors": [
                    "Kevin Costner",
                    "Kelly Preston",
                    "John C. Reilly"
                ]
            }
        }
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource
        # The table variable is set during the scenario in the call to
        # 'exists' if the table exists. Otherwise, it is set by 'create_table'.
        self.table = None


    def update_movie(self, title, year, rating, plot):
        """
        Updates rating and plot data for a movie in the table.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param rating: The updated rating to the give the movie.
        :param plot: The updated plot summary to give the movie.
        :return: The fields that were updated, with their new values.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="set info.rating=:r, info.plot=:p",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":r": Decimal(str(rating)), ":p": plot},
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update movie %s in table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]
```

Update an item by using an update expression that includes an arithmetic operation.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def update_rating(self, title, year, rating_change):
        """
        Updates the quality rating of a movie in the table by using an arithmetic
        operation in the update expression. By specifying an arithmetic operation,
        you can adjust a value in a single request, rather than first getting its
        value and then setting its new value.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param rating_change: The amount to add to the current rating for the movie.
        :return: The updated rating.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
```

```
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="set info.rating = info.rating + :val",
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":val": Decimal(str(rating_change))},
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update movie %s in table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                self.table.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]
```

Update an item only when it meets certain conditions.

```
class UpdateQueryWrapper:
    def __init__(self, table):
        self.table = table


    def remove_actors(self, title, year, actor_threshold):
        """
        Removes an actor from a movie, but only when the number of actors is greater
        than a specified threshold. If the movie does not list more than the
 threshold,
        no actors are removed.

        :param title: The title of the movie to update.
        :param year: The release year of the movie to update.
        :param actor_threshold: The threshold of actors to check.
        :return: The movie data after the update.
        """
        try:
            response = self.table.update_item(
                Key={"year": year, "title": title},
                UpdateExpression="remove info.actors[0]",
                ConditionExpression="size(info.actors) > :num",
```

```
                ExpressionAttributeValues={":num": actor_threshold},
                ReturnValues="ALL_NEW",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
                logger.warning(
                    "Didn't update %s because it has fewer than %s actors.",
                    title,
                    actor_threshold + 1,
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't update movie %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    title,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Attributes"]
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateTimeToLive`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTimeToLive`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import boto3


def enable_ttl(table_name, ttl_attribute_name):
    """
    Enables TTL on DynamoDB table for a given attribute name
        on success, returns a status code of 200
        on error, throws an exception

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
```

```
    :param ttl_attribute_name: The name of the TTL attribute being provided to the
 table.
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

        # Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table
        response = dynamodb.update_time_to_live(
            TableName=table_name,
            TimeToLiveSpecification={"Enabled": True, "AttributeName":
 ttl_attribute_name},
        )

        # In the returned response, check for a successful status code.
        if response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"] == 200:
            print("TTL has been enabled successfully.")
        else:
            print(
                f"Failed to enable TTL, status code {response['ResponseMetadata']
['HTTPStatusCode']}"
            )
        return response
    except Exception as ex:
        print("Couldn't enable TTL in table %s. Here's why: %s" % (table_name, ex))
        raise


# your values
enable_ttl("your-table-name", "expireAt")
```

Disable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table.

```
import boto3


def disable_ttl(table_name, ttl_attribute_name):
    """
    Disables TTL on DynamoDB table for a given attribute name
        on success, returns a status code of 200
        on error, throws an exception

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table being modified
```

```
    :param ttl_attribute_name: The name of the TTL attribute being provided to the
 table.
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.client("dynamodb")

        # Enable TTL on an existing DynamoDB table
        response = dynamodb.update_time_to_live(
            TableName=table_name,
            TimeToLiveSpecification={"Enabled": False, "AttributeName":
 ttl_attribute_name},
        )

        # In the returned response, check for a successful status code.
        if response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"] == 200:
            print("TTL has been disabled successfully.")
        else:
            print(
                f"Failed to disable TTL, status code {response['ResponseMetadata']
['HTTPStatusCode']}"
            )
    except Exception as ex:
        print("Couldn't disable TTL in table %s. Here's why: %s" % (table_name, ex))
        raise


# your values
disable_ttl("your-table-name", "expireAt")
```

- For API details, see UpdateTimeToLive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Accelerate reads with DAX

The following code example shows how to:

- Create and write data to a table with both the DAX and SDK clients.
- Get, query, and scan the table with both clients and compare their performance.

For more information, see Developing with the DynamoDB Accelerator Client.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a table with either the DAX or Boto3 client.

```
import boto3


def create_dax_table(dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Creates a DynamoDB table.

    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The newly created table.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table_name = "TryDaxTable"
    params = {
        "TableName": table_name,
        "KeySchema": [
            {"AttributeName": "partition_key", "KeyType": "HASH"},
            {"AttributeName": "sort_key", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
        ],
        "AttributeDefinitions": [
            {"AttributeName": "partition_key", "AttributeType": "N"},
            {"AttributeName": "sort_key", "AttributeType": "N"},
        ],
        "BillingMode": "PAY_PER_REQUEST",
    }
    table = dyn_resource.create_table(**params)
    print(f"Creating {table_name}...")
    table.wait_until_exists()
    return table


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    dax_table = create_dax_table()
    print(f"Created table.")
```

Write test data to the table.

```
import boto3


def write_data_to_dax_table(key_count, item_size, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Writes test data to the demonstration table.

    :param key_count: The number of partition and sort keys to use to populate the
                      table. The total number of items is key_count * key_count.
    :param item_size: The size of non-key data for each test item.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    some_data = "X" * item_size

    for partition_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
        for sort_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
            table.put_item(
                Item={
                    "partition_key": partition_key,
                    "sort_key": sort_key,
                    "some_data": some_data,
                }
            )
            print(f"Put item ({partition_key}, {sort_key}) succeeded.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    write_key_count = 10
    write_item_size = 1000
    print(
        f"Writing {write_key_count*write_key_count} items to the table. "
        f"Each item is {write_item_size} characters."
    )
```

```
    write_data_to_dax_table(write_key_count, write_item_size)
```

Get items for a number of iterations for both the DAX client and the Boto3 client and report the time spent for each.

```
import argparse
import sys
import time
import amazondax
import boto3


def get_item_test(key_count, iterations, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Gets items from the table a specified number of times. The time before the
    first iteration and the time after the last iteration are both captured
    and reported.

    :param key_count: The number of items to get from the table in each iteration.
    :param iterations: The number of iterations to run.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The start and end times of the test.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    start = time.perf_counter()
    for _ in range(iterations):
        for partition_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
            for sort_key in range(1, key_count + 1):
                table.get_item(
                    Key={"partition_key": partition_key, "sort_key": sort_key}
                )
                print(".", end="")
                sys.stdout.flush()
    print()
    end = time.perf_counter()
    return start, end


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    # pylint: disable=not-context-manager
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "endpoint_url",
        nargs="?",
        help="When specified, the DAX cluster endpoint. Otherwise, DAX is not
 used.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    test_key_count = 10
    test_iterations = 50
    if args.endpoint_url:
        print(
            f"Getting each item from the table {test_iterations} times, "
            f"using the DAX client."
        )
        # Use a with statement so the DAX client closes the cluster after
 completion.
        with amazondax.AmazonDaxClient.resource(endpoint_url=args.endpoint_url) as
 dax:
            test_start, test_end = get_item_test(
                test_key_count, test_iterations, dyn_resource=dax
            )
    else:
        print(
            f"Getting each item from the table {test_iterations} times, "
            f"using the Boto3 client."
        )
        test_start, test_end = get_item_test(test_key_count, test_iterations)
    print(
        f"Total time: {test_end - test_start:.4f} sec. Average time: "
        f"{(test_end - test_start)/ test_iterations}."
    )
```

Query the table for a number of iterations for both the DAX client and the Boto3 client and report the time spent for each.

```
import argparse
import time
import sys
import amazondax
```

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_test(partition_key, sort_keys, iterations, dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Queries the table a specified number of times. The time before the
    first iteration and the time after the last iteration are both captured
    and reported.

    :param partition_key: The partition key value to use in the query. The query
                          returns items that have partition keys equal to this
 value.
    :param sort_keys: The range of sort key values for the query. The query returns
                      items that have sort key values between these two values.
    :param iterations: The number of iterations to run.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The start and end times of the test.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    key_condition_expression = Key("partition_key").eq(partition_key) & Key(
        "sort_key"
    ).between(*sort_keys)

    start = time.perf_counter()
    for _ in range(iterations):
        table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition_expression)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print()
    end = time.perf_counter()
    return start, end


if __name__ == "__main__":
    # pylint: disable=not-context-manager
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "endpoint_url",
        nargs="?",
```

```
        help="When specified, the DAX cluster endpoint. Otherwise, DAX is not
 used.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    test_partition_key = 5
    test_sort_keys = (2, 9)
    test_iterations = 100
    if args.endpoint_url:
        print(f"Querying the table {test_iterations} times, using the DAX client.")
        # Use a with statement so the DAX client closes the cluster after
 completion.
        with amazondax.AmazonDaxClient.resource(endpoint_url=args.endpoint_url) as
 dax:
            test_start, test_end = query_test(
                test_partition_key, test_sort_keys, test_iterations,
 dyn_resource=dax
            )
    else:
        print(f"Querying the table {test_iterations} times, using the Boto3
 client.")
        test_start, test_end = query_test(
            test_partition_key, test_sort_keys, test_iterations
        )

    print(
        f"Total time: {test_end - test_start:.4f} sec. Average time: "
        f"{(test_end - test_start)/test_iterations}."
    )
```

Scan the table for a number of iterations for both the DAX client and the Boto3 client and report the time spent for each.

```
import argparse
import time
import sys
import amazondax
import boto3


def scan_test(iterations, dyn_resource=None):
    """
```

```
    Scans the table a specified number of times. The time before the
    first iteration and the time after the last iteration are both captured
    and reported.

    :param iterations: The number of iterations to run.
    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    :return: The start and end times of the test.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    start = time.perf_counter()
    for _ in range(iterations):
        table.scan()
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print()
    end = time.perf_counter()
    return start, end


if __name__ == "__main__":
    # pylint: disable=not-context-manager
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "endpoint_url",
        nargs="?",
        help="When specified, the DAX cluster endpoint. Otherwise, DAX is not
 used.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    test_iterations = 100
    if args.endpoint_url:
        print(f"Scanning the table {test_iterations} times, using the DAX client.")
        # Use a with statement so the DAX client closes the cluster after
 completion.
        with amazondax.AmazonDaxClient.resource(endpoint_url=args.endpoint_url) as
 dax:
            test_start, test_end = scan_test(test_iterations, dyn_resource=dax)
    else:
        print(f"Scanning the table {test_iterations} times, using the Boto3
 client.")
```

```
        test_start, test_end = scan_test(test_iterations)
    print(
        f"Total time: {test_end - test_start:.4f} sec. Average time: "
        f"{(test_end - test_start)/test_iterations}."
    )
```

Delete the table.

```
import boto3


def delete_dax_table(dyn_resource=None):
    """
    Deletes the demonstration table.

    :param dyn_resource: Either a Boto3 or DAX resource.
    """
    if dyn_resource is None:
        dyn_resource = boto3.resource("dynamodb")

    table = dyn_resource.Table("TryDaxTable")
    table.delete()

    print(f"Deleting {table.name}...")
    table.wait_until_not_exists()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    delete_dax_table()
    print("Table deleted!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan

Compare multiple values with a single attribute

The following code example shows how to compare multiple values with a single attribute in DynamoDB.

- Use the IN operator to compare multiple values with a single attribute.
- Compare the IN operator with multiple OR conditions.
- Understand the performance and expression complexity benefits of using IN.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Compare multiple values with a single attribute using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key
from typing import Any, Dict, List, Optional


def compare_multiple_values(
    table_name: str,
    attribute_name: str,
    values_list: List[Any],
    partition_key_name: Optional[str] = None,
    partition_key_value: Optional[str] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query or scan a DynamoDB table to find items where an attribute matches any
 value from a list.

    This function demonstrates the use of the IN operator to compare a single
 attribute
    against multiple possible values, which is more efficient than using multiple OR
 conditions.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to compare against the
 values list.
        values_list (List[Any]): List of values to compare the attribute against.
        partition_key_name (Optional[str]): The name of the partition key attribute
 for query operations.
```

```
        partition_key_value (Optional[str]): The value of the partition key to
 query.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the matching items.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Create the filter expression using the is_in method
    filter_expression = Attr(attribute_name).is_in(values_list)

    # If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
    if partition_key_name and partition_key_value:
        key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
        response = table.query(
            KeyConditionExpression=key_condition, FilterExpression=filter_expression
        )
    else:
        # Otherwise, perform a scan operation
        response = table.scan(FilterExpression=filter_expression)

    # Handle pagination if there are more results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    while "LastEvaluatedKey" in response:
        if partition_key_name and partition_key_value:
            response = table.query(
                KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
                ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"],
            )
        else:
            response = table.scan(
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
 ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"]
            )
        items.extend(response.get("Items", []))

    # Return the complete result
    return {"Items": items, "Count": len(items)}


def compare_with_or_conditions(
```

```
    table_name: str,
    attribute_name: str,
    values_list: List[Any],
    partition_key_name: Optional[str] = None,
    partition_key_value: Optional[str] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Alternative implementation using multiple OR conditions instead of the IN
 operator.

    This function is provided for comparison to show why using the IN operator is
 preferable.
    With many values, this approach becomes verbose and less efficient.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to compare against the
 values list.
        values_list (List[Any]): List of values to compare the attribute against.
        partition_key_name (Optional[str]): The name of the partition key attribute
 for query operations.
        partition_key_value (Optional[str]): The value of the partition key to
 query.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the matching items.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Create a filter expression with multiple OR conditions
    filter_expression = None
    for value in values_list:
        condition = Attr(attribute_name).eq(value)
        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression | condition

    # If partition key is provided, perform a query operation
    if partition_key_name and partition_key_value and filter_expression:
        key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
        response = table.query(
```

```
            KeyConditionExpression=key_condition, FilterExpression=filter_expression
        )
    elif filter_expression:
        # Otherwise, perform a scan operation
        response = table.scan(FilterExpression=filter_expression)
    else:
        # Return empty response if no values provided
        return {"Items": [], "Count": 0}

    # Handle pagination if there are more results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    while "LastEvaluatedKey" in response:
        if partition_key_name and partition_key_value:
            response = table.query(
                KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
                ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"],
            )
        else:
            response = table.scan(
                FilterExpression=filter_expression,
 ExclusiveStartKey=response["LastEvaluatedKey"]
            )
        items.extend(response.get("Items", []))

    # Return the complete result
    return {"Items": items, "Count": len(items)}
```

Example usage of comparing multiple values with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the compare_multiple_values function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    attribute_name = "Category"
    values_list = ["Electronics", "Computers", "Accessories"]

    print(f"Searching for products in any of these categories: {values_list}")

    # Using the IN operator (recommended approach)
```

```
    print("\nApproach 1: Using the IN operator")
    response = compare_multiple_values(
        table_name=table_name, attribute_name=attribute_name,
values_list=values_list
    )

    print(f"Found {response['Count']} products in the specified categories")

    # Using multiple OR conditions (alternative approach)
    print("\nApproach 2: Using multiple OR conditions")
    response2 = compare_with_or_conditions(
        table_name=table_name, attribute_name=attribute_name,
values_list=values_list
    )

    print(f"Found {response2['Count']} products in the specified categories")

    # Example with a query operation
    print("\nQuerying a specific manufacturer's products in multiple categories")
    partition_key_name = "Manufacturer"
    partition_key_value = "Acme"

    response3 = compare_multiple_values(
        table_name=table_name,
        attribute_name=attribute_name,
        values_list=values_list,
        partition_key_name=partition_key_name,
        partition_key_value=partition_key_value,
    )

    print(f"Found {response3['Count']} Acme products in the specified categories")

    # Explain the benefits of using the IN operator
    print("\nBenefits of using the IN operator:")
    print("1. More concise expression compared to multiple OR conditions")
    print("2. Better readability and maintainability")
    print("3. Potentially better performance with large value lists")
    print("4. Simpler code that's less prone to errors")
    print("5. Easier to modify when adding or removing values")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

- Query
- Scan

Conditionally update an item's TTL

The following code example shows how to conditionally update an item's TTL.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Update TTL on on an existing DynamoDB Item in a table, with a condition.

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def update_dynamodb_item_ttl(table_name, region, primary_key, sort_key,
 ttl_attribute):
    """
    Updates an existing record in a DynamoDB table with a new or updated TTL
 attribute.

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
    :param region: AWS Region of the table - example `us-east-1`
    :param primary_key: one attribute known as the partition key.
    :param sort_key: Also known as a range attribute.
    :param ttl_attribute: name of the TTL attribute in the target DynamoDB table
    :return:
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Generate updated TTL in epoch second format
        updated_expiration_time = int((datetime.now() +
 timedelta(days=90)).timestamp())

        # Define the update expression for adding/updating a new attribute
        update_expression = "SET newAttribute = :val1"

        # Define the condition expression for checking if 'expireAt' is not expired
```

```
        condition_expression = "expireAt > :val2"

        # Define the expression attribute values
        expression_attribute_values = {":val1": ttl_attribute, ":val2":
 updated_expiration_time}

        response = table.update_item(
            Key={"primaryKey": primary_key, "sortKey": sort_key},
            UpdateExpression=update_expression,
            ConditionExpression=condition_expression,
            ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        )

        print("Item updated successfully.")
        return response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPStatusCode"]  # Ideally a 200 OK
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            print("Condition check failed: Item's 'expireAt' is expired.")
        else:
            print(f"Error updating item: {e}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating item: {e}")


# replace with your values
update_dynamodb_item_ttl(
    "your-table-name",
    "us-east-1",
    "your-partition-key-value",
    "your-sort-key-value",
    "your-ttl-attribute-value",
)
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Count expression operators

The following code example shows how to count expression operators in DynamoDB.

- Understand DynamoDB's 300 operator limit.
- Count operators in complex expressions.

- Optimize expressions to stay within limits.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate expression operator counting using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, List, Optional, Tuple



def create_complex_filter_expression(
    attribute_name: str, values: List[Any], use_or: bool = True
) -> Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]:
    """
    Create a complex filter expression with multiple conditions.

    This function demonstrates how to build a complex filter expression
    and count the number of operators used.

    Args:
        attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to filter on.
        values (List[Any]): List of values to compare against.
        use_or (bool, optional): Whether to use OR between conditions. Defaults to
 True.

    Returns:
        Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]: A tuple containing:
            - The filter expression string
            - Expression attribute values
            - Expression attribute names
            - The number of operators used
    """
    if not values:
        return "", {}, {}, 0

    # Initialize expression components
    filter_expression = ""
    expression_attribute_values = {}
    expression_attribute_names = {"#attr": attribute_name}
    operator_count = 0
```

```
    # Build the filter expression
    for i, value in enumerate(values):
        value_placeholder = f":val{i}"
        expression_attribute_values[value_placeholder] = value

        if i > 0:
            # Add OR or AND operator between conditions
            filter_expression += " OR " if use_or else " AND "
            operator_count += 1  # Count the OR/AND operator

        # Add the condition
        filter_expression += f"#attr = {value_placeholder}"
        operator_count += 1  # Count the = operator

    return (
        filter_expression,
        expression_attribute_values,
        expression_attribute_names,
        operator_count,
    )


def create_nested_filter_expression(
    depth: int, conditions_per_level: int
) -> Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]:
    """
    Create a deeply nested filter expression with multiple conditions.

    This function demonstrates how to build a complex nested filter expression
    and count the number of operators used.

    Args:
        depth (int): The depth of nesting.
        conditions_per_level (int): Number of conditions at each level.

    Returns:
        Tuple[str, Dict[str, Any], Dict[str, str], int]: A tuple containing:
            - The filter expression string
            - Expression attribute values
            - Expression attribute names
            - The number of operators used
    """
    if depth <= 0 or conditions_per_level <= 0:
        return "", {}, {}, 0
```

```
    # Initialize expression components
    expression_attribute_values = {}
    expression_attribute_names = {}
    operator_count = 0

    def build_nested_expression(current_depth: int, prefix: str) -> str:
        nonlocal operator_count

        if current_depth <= 0:
            return ""

        # Build conditions at this level
        conditions = []
        for i in range(conditions_per_level):
            attr_name = f"attr{prefix}_{i}"
            attr_placeholder = f"#attr{prefix}_{i}"
            val_placeholder = f":val{prefix}_{i}"

            expression_attribute_names[attr_placeholder] = attr_name
            expression_attribute_values[val_placeholder] = i

            conditions.append(f"{attr_placeholder} = {val_placeholder}")
            operator_count += 1  # Count the = operator

        # Join conditions with AND
        level_expression = " AND ".join(conditions)
        operator_count += max(0, len(conditions) - 1)  # Count the AND operators

        # If not at the deepest level, add nested expressions
        if current_depth > 1:
            nested_expr = build_nested_expression(current_depth - 1,
f"{prefix}_{current_depth}")
            if nested_expr:
                level_expression = f"({level_expression}) OR ({nested_expr})"
                operator_count += 1  # Count the OR operator

        return level_expression

    # Build the expression starting from the top level
    filter_expression = build_nested_expression(depth, "1")

    return (
        filter_expression,
```

```
        expression_attribute_values,
        expression_attribute_names,
        operator_count,
    )


def count_operators_in_update_expression(update_expression: str) -> int:
    """
    Count the number of operators in an update expression.

    This function demonstrates how to count operators in an update expression
    based on DynamoDB's rules.

    Args:
        update_expression (str): The update expression to analyze.

    Returns:
        int: The number of operators in the expression.
    """
    operator_count = 0

    # Count SET operations
    if "SET" in update_expression:
        set_section = (
            update_expression.split("SET")[1].split("REMOVE")[0].split("ADD")
[0].split("DELETE")[0]
        )

        # Count assignment operators (=)
        operator_count += set_section.count("=")

        # Count arithmetic operators (+, -)
        operator_count += set_section.count("+")
        operator_count += set_section.count("-")

        # Count list_append function calls (each counts as 1 operator)
        operator_count += set_section.lower().count("list_append")

        # Count if_not_exists function calls (each counts as 1 operator)
        operator_count += set_section.lower().count("if_not_exists")

    # Count REMOVE operations (no additional operators)

    # Count ADD operations (each ADD counts as 1 operator)
```

```
    if "ADD" in update_expression:
        add_section = (
            update_expression.split("ADD")[1].split("DELETE")[0].split("SET")
[0].split("REMOVE")[0]
        )
        operator_count += add_section.count(",") + 1

    # Count DELETE operations (each DELETE counts as 1 operator)
    if "DELETE" in update_expression:
        delete_section = (
            update_expression.split("DELETE")[1].split("SET")[0].split("ADD")
[0].split("REMOVE")[0]
        )
        operator_count += delete_section.count(",") + 1

    return operator_count


def count_operators_in_condition_expression(condition_expression: str) -> int:
    """
    Count the number of operators in a condition expression.

    This function demonstrates how to count operators in a condition expression
    based on DynamoDB's rules.

    Args:
        condition_expression (str): The condition expression to analyze.

    Returns:
        int: The number of operators in the expression.
    """
    operator_count = 0

    # Count comparison operators
    comparison_operators = ["=", "<>", "<", "<=", ">", ">="]
    for op in comparison_operators:
        operator_count += condition_expression.count(op)

    # Count logical operators
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count(" AND ")
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count(" OR ")
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count("NOT ")

    # Count BETWEEN operator (counts as 2: BETWEEN + AND)
```

```
    between_count = condition_expression.upper().count(" BETWEEN ")
    operator_count += between_count * 2

    # Count IN operator (counts as 1 regardless of number of values)
    operator_count += condition_expression.upper().count(" IN ")

    # Count functions (each counts as 1 operator)
    functions = [
        "attribute_exists",
        "attribute_not_exists",
        "attribute_type",
        "begins_with",
        "contains",
        "size",
    ]
    for func in functions:
        operator_count += condition_expression.lower().count(func)

    return operator_count


# Note: This function is for demonstration purposes only and should be called from
 example_usage()
# It's not meant to be used directly as a test function
def _test_expression_limit(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], operator_count: int, attribute_name: str =
 "TestAttribute"
) -> Tuple[bool, Optional[str]]:
    """
    Test if an expression with a specific number of operators exceeds the limit.

    This function demonstrates how to test the 300 operator limit by creating
    an expression with a specified number of operators.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        operator_count (int): The number of operators to include in the expression.
        attribute_name (str, optional): The name of the attribute to update.
 Defaults to "TestAttribute".

    Returns:
        Tuple[bool, Optional[str]]: A tuple containing:
            - A boolean indicating if the operation succeeded
```

```
        - The error message if it failed, None otherwise
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Create an update expression with the specified number of operators
    update_expression = f"SET #{attribute_name} = :val0"
    expression_attribute_names = {f"#{attribute_name}": attribute_name}
    expression_attribute_values = {":val0": 0}

    # Add additional SET operations to reach the desired operator count
    # Each assignment adds 1 operator
    for i in range(1, operator_count):
        attr_name = f"{attribute_name}{i}"
        attr_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
        val_placeholder = f":val{i}"

        update_expression += f", {attr_placeholder} = {val_placeholder}"
        expression_attribute_names[attr_placeholder] = attr_name
        expression_attribute_values[val_placeholder] = i

    try:
        # Attempt the update operation
        table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression=update_expression,
            ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
            ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        )
        return True, None
    except ClientError as e:
        error_message = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if "expression contains too many operators" in error_message.lower():
            return False, error_message
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

Example usage of expression operator counting with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the expression operator counting functions."""

    print("Example 1: Creating a complex filter expression with multiple
 conditions")
    attribute_name = "Status"
    values = ["Active", "Pending", "Processing", "Shipped", "Delivered"]

    filter_expr, expr_attr_vals, expr_attr_names, op_count =
 create_complex_filter_expression(
        attribute_name=attribute_name, values=values, use_or=True
    )

    print(f"Filter Expression: {filter_expr}")
    print(f"Expression Attribute Values: {expr_attr_vals}")
    print(f"Expression Attribute Names: {expr_attr_names}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {op_count}")

    print("\nExample 2: Creating a nested filter expression")
    nested_expr, nested_vals, nested_names, nested_count =
 create_nested_filter_expression(
        depth=3, conditions_per_level=2
    )

    print(f"Nested Filter Expression: {nested_expr}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {nested_count}")

    print("\nExample 3: Counting operators in an update expression")
    update_expression = "SET #name = :name, #age = :age + :increment, #address.#city
 = :city, #status = if_not_exists(#status, :default_status) REMOVE #old_field ADD
 #counter :value DELETE #set_attr :set_val"
    update_op_count = count_operators_in_update_expression(update_expression)

    print(f"Update Expression: {update_expression}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {update_op_count}")

    print("\nExample 4: Counting operators in a condition expression")
    condition_expression = "(#status = :active OR #status = :pending) AND #price
 BETWEEN :min_price AND :max_price AND attribute_exists(#category) AND NOT (#stock
 <= :min_stock)"
    condition_op_count =
 count_operators_in_condition_expression(condition_expression)
```

```
    print(f"Condition Expression: {condition_expression}")
    print(f"Operator Count: {condition_op_count}")

    print("\nExample 5: Testing the 300 operator limit")

    # This is just for demonstration - in a real application, you would use your
actual table
    # Note: This function is renamed to _test_expression_limit to avoid pytest
trying to run it
    print("In a real application, you would test with _test_expression_limit
function")
    print("Expression with 250 operators would be under the limit")
    print("Expression with 350 operators would exceed the 300 operator limit")

    print("\nOperator Counting Rules in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Comparison Operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=): 1 operator each")
    print("2. Logical Operators (AND, OR, NOT): 1 operator each")
    print("3. BETWEEN: 2 operators (BETWEEN + AND)")
    print("4. IN: 1 operator (regardless of number of values)")
    print("5. Functions (attribute_exists, begins_with, etc.): 1 operator each")
    print("6. Arithmetic Operators (+, -): 1 operator each")
    print("7. SET assignments (=): 1 operator each")
    print("8. ADD and DELETE operations: 1 operator each")

    print("\nStrategies for Working Within the 300 Operator Limit:")
    print("1. Break operations into multiple requests")
    print("2. Use DynamoDB Transactions for complex operations")
    print("3. Optimize data model to reduce query complexity")
    print("4. Use application-side filtering for less critical filters")
    print("5. Consider using IN operator instead of multiple OR conditions")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create a messenger application

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).

- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Create a table with warm throughput enabled

The following code example shows how to create a table with warm throughput enabled.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create DynamoDB table with warm throughput setting using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from boto3 import client
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def create_dynamodb_table_warm_throughput(
    table_name,
    partition_key,
    sort_key,
    misc_key_attr,
    non_key_attr,
    table_provisioned_read_units,
    table_provisioned_write_units,
    table_warm_reads,
    table_warm_writes,
    gsi_name,
    gsi_provisioned_read_units,
    gsi_provisioned_write_units,
    gsi_warm_reads,
    gsi_warm_writes,
```

```
    region_name="us-east-1",
):
    """
    Creates a DynamoDB table with a warm throughput setting configured.

    :param table_name: The name of the table to be created.
    :param partition_key: The partition key for the table being created.
    :param sort_key: The sort key for the table being created.
    :param misc_key_attr: A miscellaneous key attribute for the table being created.
    :param non_key_attr: A non-key attribute for the table being created.
    :param table_provisioned_read_units: The newly created table's provisioned read
 capacity units.
    :param table_provisioned_write_units: The newly created table's provisioned
 write capacity units.
    :param table_warm_reads: The read units per second setting for the table's warm
 throughput.
    :param table_warm_writes: The write units per second setting for the table's
 warm throughput.
    :param gsi_name: The name of the Global Secondary Index (GSI) to be created on
 the table.
    :param gsi_provisioned_read_units: The configured Global Secondary Index (GSI)
 provisioned read capacity units.
    :param gsi_provisioned_write_units: The configured Global Secondary Index (GSI)
 provisioned write capacity units.
    :param gsi_warm_reads: The read units per second setting for the Global
 Secondary Index (GSI)'s warm throughput.
    :param gsi_warm_writes: The write units per second setting for the Global
 Secondary Index (GSI)'s warm throughput.
    :param region_name: The AWS Region name to target. defaults to us-east-1
    """
    try:
        ddb = client("dynamodb", region_name=region_name)

        # Define the table attributes
        attribute_definitions = [
            {"AttributeName": partition_key, "AttributeType": "S"},
            {"AttributeName": sort_key, "AttributeType": "S"},
            {"AttributeName": misc_key_attr, "AttributeType": "N"},
        ]

        # Define the table key schema
        key_schema = [
            {"AttributeName": partition_key, "KeyType": "HASH"},
            {"AttributeName": sort_key, "KeyType": "RANGE"},
```

```
        ]

        # Define the provisioned throughput for the table
        provisioned_throughput = {
            "ReadCapacityUnits": table_provisioned_read_units,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": table_provisioned_write_units,
        }

        # Define the global secondary index
        gsi_key_schema = [
            {"AttributeName": sort_key, "KeyType": "HASH"},
            {"AttributeName": misc_key_attr, "KeyType": "RANGE"},
        ]
        gsi_projection = {"ProjectionType": "INCLUDE", "NonKeyAttributes":
[non_key_attr]}
        gsi_provisioned_throughput = {
            "ReadCapacityUnits": gsi_provisioned_read_units,
            "WriteCapacityUnits": gsi_provisioned_write_units,
        }
        gsi_warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": gsi_warm_reads,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": gsi_warm_writes,
        }
        global_secondary_indexes = [
            {
                "IndexName": gsi_name,
                "KeySchema": gsi_key_schema,
                "Projection": gsi_projection,
                "ProvisionedThroughput": gsi_provisioned_throughput,
                "WarmThroughput": gsi_warm_throughput,
            }
        ]

        # Define the warm throughput for the table
        warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": table_warm_reads,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": table_warm_writes,
        }

        # Create the DynamoDB client and create the table
        response = ddb.create_table(
            TableName=table_name,
            AttributeDefinitions=attribute_definitions,
            KeySchema=key_schema,
```

```
            ProvisionedThroughput=provisioned_throughput,
            GlobalSecondaryIndexes=global_secondary_indexes,
            WarmThroughput=warm_throughput,
        )

        print(response)
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error creating table: {e}")
        raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in Amazon DynamoDB and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in a DynamoDB table.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example in the AWS Code Examples Repository on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create a websocket chat application

The following code example shows how to create a chat application that is served by a websocket API built on Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon API Gateway V2 to create a websocket API that integrates with AWS Lambda and Amazon DynamoDB.

- Create a websocket API served by API Gateway.
- Define a Lambda handler that stores connections in DynamoDB and posts messages to other chat participants.
- Connect to the websocket chat application and send messages with the Websockets package.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create an item with a TTL

The following code example shows how to create an item with TTL.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3


def create_dynamodb_item(table_name, region, primary_key, sort_key):
    """
    Creates a DynamoDB item with an attached expiry attribute.

    :param table_name: Table name for the boto3 resource to target when creating an
 item
    :param region: string representing the AWS region. Example: `us-east-1`
```

```
    :param primary_key: one attribute known as the partition key.
    :param sort_key: Also known as a range attribute.
    :return: Void (nothing)
    """
    try:
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Get the current time in epoch second format
        current_time = int(datetime.now().timestamp())

        # Calculate the expiration time (90 days from now) in epoch second format
        expiration_time = int((datetime.now() + timedelta(days=90)).timestamp())

        item = {
            "primaryKey": primary_key,
            "sortKey": sort_key,
            "creationDate": current_time,
            "expireAt": expiration_time,
        }
        response = table.put_item(Item=item)

        print("Item created successfully.")
        return response
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating item: {e}")
        raise e


# Use your own values
create_dynamodb_item(
    "your-table-name", "us-west-2", "your-partition-key-value", "your-sort-key-
value"
)
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform advanced query operations

The following code example shows how to perform advanced query operations in DynamoDB.

- Query tables using various filtering and condition techniques.

- Implement pagination for large result sets.
- Use Global Secondary Indexes for alternate access patterns.
- Apply consistency controls based on application requirements.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query with strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import time

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_consistent_read(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    sort_key_name=None,
    sort_key_value=None,
    consistent_read=True,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with the option for strongly consistent reads.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str, optional): The name of the sort key attribute.
        sort_key_value (str, optional): The value of the sort key to query.
        consistent_read (bool, optional): Whether to use strongly consistent reads.
 Defaults to True.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
```

```
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    if sort_key_name and sort_key_value:
        key_condition = key_condition & Key(sort_key_name).eq(sort_key_value)

    # Perform the query with the consistent read option
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 ConsistentRead=consistent_read)

    return response
```

Query using a Global Secondary Index with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_table(table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the table's primary key
    response =
 table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value))

    return response
```

```
def query_gsi(table_name, index_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) on a DynamoDB table.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        index_name (str): The name of the Global Secondary Index.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the GSI's partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the GSI's partition key to query.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the GSI
    response = table.query(
        IndexName=index_name,
 KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
    )

    return response
```

Query with pagination using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_pagination(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25,
 max_pages=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
```

```
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page. Defaults
to 25.
        max_pages (int, optional): The maximum number of pages to retrieve. If None,
retrieves all pages.

    Returns:
        list: All items retrieved from the query across all pages.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_count = 0
    all_items = []

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Check if we've reached the maximum number of pages
        if max_pages is not None and page_count >= max_pages:
            break

        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Process the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        all_items.extend(items)
```

```
        # Update pagination tracking
        page_count += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if not last_evaluated_key:
            break

    return all_items


def query_with_pagination_generator(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using a generator to handle large result
 sets.
    This approach is memory-efficient as it yields one page at a time.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page. Defaults
 to 25.

    Yields:
        tuple: A tuple containing (items, page_number, last_page) where:
            - items is a list of items for the current page
            - page_number is the current page number (starting from 1)
            - last_page is a boolean indicating if this is the last page
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_number = 0

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
```

```
        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
 Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
 query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Get the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        page_number += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # Determine if this is the last page
        is_last_page = last_evaluated_key is None

        # Yield the current page of results
        yield (items, page_number, is_last_page)

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if is_last_page:
            break
```

Query with complex filters using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_complex_filter(
    table_name,
```

```
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    min_rating=None,
    status_list=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        status_list (list, optional): List of status values to include.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize the filter expression and expression attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the filter expression based on provided parameters
    if min_rating is not None:
        filter_expression = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if status_list and len(status_list) > 0:
        status_condition = None
        for i, status in enumerate(status_list):
            status_value_name = f":status{i}"
            expression_attribute_values[status_value_name] = status

            if status_condition is None:
                status_condition = Attr("status").eq(status)
```

```
            else:
                status_condition = status_condition | Attr("status").eq(status)

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = status_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & status_condition

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response


def query_with_complex_filter_and_or(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    category=None,
    min_rating=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AND and OR
 operators.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
```

```
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        category (str, optional): Category value for filtering.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build a complex filter expression with AND and OR operators
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the category condition
    if category:
        filter_expression = Attr("category").eq(category)
        expression_attribute_values[":category"] = category

    # Build the rating and price condition (rating >= min_rating OR price <=
max_price)
    rating_price_condition = None

    if min_rating is not None:
        rating_price_condition = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if rating_price_condition is None:
            rating_price_condition = price_condition
        else:
            rating_price_condition = rating_price_condition | price_condition

    # Combine the conditions
    if rating_price_condition:
```

```
        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = rating_price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & rating_price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Query with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_dynamic_filter(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_conditions=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_conditions (dict, optional): A dictionary of filter conditions where
            keys are attribute names and values are dictionaries with 'operator' and
 'value'.
            Example: {'rating': {'operator': '>=', 'value': 4}, 'status':
 {'operator': '=', 'value': 'active'}}

    Returns:
```

```
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize variables for the filter expression and attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {":pk_val": partition_key_value}

    # Dynamically build the filter expression if filter conditions are provided
    if filter_conditions:
        for attr_name, condition in filter_conditions.items():
            operator = condition.get("operator")
            value = condition.get("value")
            attr_value_name = f":{attr_name}"
            expression_attribute_values[attr_value_name] = value

            # Create the appropriate filter expression based on the operator
            current_condition = None
            if operator == "=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).eq(value)
            elif operator == "!=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).ne(value)
            elif operator == ">":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gt(value)
            elif operator == ">=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gte(value)
            elif operator == "<":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lt(value)
            elif operator == "<=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lte(value)
            elif operator == "contains":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).contains(value)
            elif operator == "begins_with":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).begins_with(value)

            # Combine with existing filter expression using AND
            if current_condition:
                if filter_expression is None:
                    filter_expression = current_condition
```

```
                else:
                    filter_expression = filter_expression & current_condition

    # Perform the query with the dynamically built filter expression
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression

    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Query with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_filter_and_limit(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    filter_attribute=None,
    filter_value=None,
    limit=10,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit the number of results.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_attribute (str, optional): The attribute name to filter on.
        filter_value (any, optional): The value to compare against in the filter.
        limit (int, optional): The maximum number of items to evaluate. Defaults to
 10.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
```

```
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition, "Limit": limit}

    # Add the filter expression if filter attributes are provided
    if filter_attribute and filter_value is not None:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = Attr(filter_attribute).gt(filter_value)
        query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = {":filter_value": filter_value}

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform list operations

The following code example shows how to perform list operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a list attribute.
- Remove elements from a list attribute.
- Update specific elements in a list by index.
- Use list append and list index functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate list operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
import json
from typing import Any, Dict, List, Optional, Union
```

```
def create_list_attribute(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, list_values: List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Create a new list attribute or replace an existing one.

    This function demonstrates how to create a new list attribute or replace
    an existing list with new values.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        list_values (List[Any]): The values to set in the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the SET operation to create or replace the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = :list_values",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":list_values": list_values},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def append_to_list(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, values_to_append:
 List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Append values to the end of a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add elements
```

```
    to the end of a list attribute.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        values_to_append (List[Any]): The values to append to the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use list_append to add values to the end of the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = list_append({list_name}, :values)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values": values_to_append},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def prepend_to_list(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, values_to_prepend:
 List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Prepend values to the beginning of a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the list_append function to add elements
    to the beginning of a list attribute.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        values_to_prepend (List[Any]): The values to prepend to the list.

    Returns:
```

```
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use list_append with reversed order to add values to the beginning of the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = list_append(:values, {list_name})",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values": values_to_prepend},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def update_list_element(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, index: int, new_value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a specific element in a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to update a specific element in a list attribute
    using the index notation.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        index (int): The zero-based index of the element to update.
        new_value (Any): The new value for the element.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the index notation to update a specific element
    response = table.update_item(
```

```
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name}[{index}] = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": new_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def remove_list_element(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, index: int
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Remove a specific element from a list attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to remove a specific element from a list
 attribute
    using the REMOVE action with index notation.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        index (int): The zero-based index of the element to remove.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the REMOVE action with index notation to remove a specific element
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key, UpdateExpression=f"REMOVE {list_name}[{index}]",
 ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW"
    )

    return response


def update_nested_list_element(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], path: str, new_value: Any
```

```
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an element in a nested list structure.

    This function demonstrates how to update an element in a nested list structure
    using expression attribute names for the path components.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        path (str): The path to the nested element (e.g., "parent[0].child[1]").
        new_value (Any): The new value for the element.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Define a type for path parts
    path_part = Dict[str, Union[str, int]]
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Parse the path to extract attribute names and indices
    path_parts: List[path_part] = []
    current_part = ""
    in_bracket = False

    for char in path:
        if char == "[":
            if current_part:
                path_parts.append({"type": "attribute", "value": current_part})
                current_part = ""
            in_bracket = True
        elif char == "]":
            if current_part:
                # Fix for mypy: Use a properly typed dictionary with Union type
                path_parts.append({"type": "index", "value": int(current_part)})
                current_part = ""
            in_bracket = False
        elif char == "." and not in_bracket:
            if current_part:
                path_parts.append({"type": "attribute", "value": current_part})
                current_part = ""
```

```
        else:
            current_part += char

    if current_part:
        path_parts.append({"type": "attribute", "value": current_part})

    # Build the update expression and attribute names
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {}

    # Build the path expression
    path_expression = ""
    for i, part in enumerate(path_parts):
        if part["type"] == "attribute":
            name_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
            expression_attribute_names[name_placeholder] = part["value"]

            if path_expression:
                path_expression += "."
            path_expression += name_placeholder
        elif part["type"] == "index":
            path_expression += f"[{part['value']}]"

    # Complete the update expression
    update_expression += f"{path_expression} = :value"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": new_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def create_list_if_not_exists(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], list_name: str, default_values: List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Create a list attribute if it doesn't exist.
```

```
    This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to create a list attribute
    with default values if it doesn't already exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        default_values (List[Any]): The default values for the list.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use if_not_exists to create the list if it doesn't exist
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} = if_not_exists({list_name}, :default)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":default": default_values},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def append_to_list_safely(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    list_name: str,
    values_to_append: List[Any],
    default_values: Optional[List[Any]] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Append values to a list, creating it if it doesn't exist.

    This function demonstrates how to safely append values to a list attribute,
    creating the list with default values if it doesn't exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
```

```
        list_name (str): The name of the list attribute.
        values_to_append (List[Any]): The values to append to the list.
        default_values (Optional[List[Any]]): The default values if the list doesn't
exist.
            If not provided, values_to_append will be used as the default.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # If default_values is not provided, use values_to_append
    if default_values is None:
        default_values = values_to_append

    # Use if_not_exists with list_append to safely append to the list
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {list_name} =
list_append(if_not_exists({list_name}, :default), :values)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":default": default_values if default_values else [],
            ":values": values_to_append,
        },
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

Example usage of list operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use list operations in DynamoDB."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "UserData"
    key = {"UserId": "user123"}
```

```
    print("Example 1: Creating a list attribute")
    try:
        response = create_list_attribute(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            list_values=["Reading", "Hiking", "Photography"],
        )
        print(
            f"List attribute created successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating list attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Appending values to a list")
    try:
        response = append_to_list(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            values_to_append=["Cooking", "Gardening"],
        )
        print(
            f"Values appended to list successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error appending to list: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Prepending values to a list")
    try:
        response = prepend_to_list(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            values_to_prepend=["Travel", "Music"],
        )
        print(
            f"Values prepended to list successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error prepending to list: {e}")
```

```
    print("\nExample 4: Updating a specific list element")
    try:
        response = update_list_element(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            list_name="Interests",
            index=2,
            new_value="Mountain Hiking",
        )
        print(
            f"List element updated successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating list element: {e}")

    print("\nExample 5: Removing a list element")
    try:
        response = remove_list_element(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, list_name="Interests", index=0
        )
        print(
            f"List element removed successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error removing list element: {e}")

    print("\nExample 6: Working with nested lists")
    try:
        # First, create an item with a nested structure
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        table.update_item(
            Key={"UserId": "user456"},
            UpdateExpression="SET #skills = :skills",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={"#skills": "Skills"},
            ExpressionAttributeValues={
                ":skills": [
                    {"Category": "Programming", "Languages": ["Python", "Java",
"JavaScript"]},
```

```
                    {"Category": "Database", "Systems": ["DynamoDB", "MongoDB",
"PostgreSQL"]},
                ]
            },
        )

        # Now update a nested element
        response = update_nested_list_element(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user456"},
            path="Skills[0].Languages[1]",
            new_value="TypeScript",
        )
        print(
            f"Nested list element updated successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error working with nested lists: {e}")

    print("\nExample 7: Creating a list if it doesn't exist")
    try:
        response = create_list_if_not_exists(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user789"},
            list_name="Preferences",
            default_values=["Default1", "Default2", "Default3"],
        )
        print(
            f"List created with default values:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating list with default values: {e}")

    print("\nExample 8: Safely appending to a list")
    try:
        response = append_to_list_safely(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user789"},
            list_name="Notifications",
            values_to_append=["New message received"],
            default_values=[],
        )
```

```
        print(f"Safely appended to list: {json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}),
default=str)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error safely appending to list: {e}")

    print("\nKey Points About Working with Lists in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Lists are ordered collections of elements that can be of different
types")
    print("2. Use the SET operation with direct assignment to create or replace a
list")
    print("3. Use list_append() to add elements to a list without replacing the
entire list")
    print("4. To append to the end: list_append(list_name, :values)")
    print("5. To prepend to the beginning: list_append(:values, list_name)")
    print("6. Use index notation list_name[index] to access or update specific
elements")
    print("7. Use the REMOVE action with index notation to remove specific
elements")
    print("8. Lists can contain nested structures like maps and other lists")
    print("9. Use if_not_exists() to create a list with default values if it doesn't
exist")
    print("10. List indices are zero-based (the first element is at index 0)")
    print("11. Attempting to access an index beyond the list bounds will result in
an error")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform map operations

The following code example shows how to perform map operations in DynamoDB.

- Add and update nested attributes in map structures.
- Remove specific fields from maps.
- Work with deeply nested map attributes.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate map operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
"""
Example of updating map attributes in DynamoDB.

This module demonstrates how to update map attributes in DynamoDB, including
handling cases where the map attribute might not exist yet.
"""


import boto3
from typing import Any, Dict, Optional



def update_map_attribute_safe(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], map_name: str, map_key: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a specific key in a map attribute, creating the map if it doesn't exist.

    This function demonstrates how to safely update a key within a map attribute,
    even if the map doesn't exist yet in the item.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        map_name (str): The name of the map attribute.
        map_key (str): The key within the map to update.
        value (Any): The value to set for the map key.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use SET with attribute_not_exists to safely update the map
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #map.#key = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#map": map_name, "#key": map_key},
```

```
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def add_to_nested_map(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], path: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Add or update a value in a deeply nested map structure.

    This function demonstrates how to update a value at a specific path in a
    nested map structure, creating any intermediate maps as needed.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        path (str): The path to the nested attribute (e.g.,
 "user.preferences.theme").
        value (Any): The value to set at the specified path.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Split the path into components
    path_parts = path.split(".")

    # Build the update expression and attribute names
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {}

    # Build the path expression
    path_expression = ""
    for i, part in enumerate(path_parts):
        name_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
        expression_attribute_names[name_placeholder] = part
```

```
        if i == 0:
            path_expression = name_placeholder
        else:
            path_expression += f".{name_placeholder}"

    # Complete the update expression
    update_expression += f"{path_expression} = :value"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def update_map_with_if_not_exists(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    map_name: str,
    map_key: str,
    value: Any,
    default_map: Optional[Dict[str, Any]] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a key in a map, creating the map with default values if it doesn't exist.

    This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to initialize a map with
    default values if it doesn't exist yet, and then update a specific key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        map_name (str): The name of the map attribute.
        map_key (str): The key within the map to update.
        value (Any): The value to set for the map key.
        default_map (Optional[Dict[str, Any]]): Default map values if the map
 doesn't exist.

    Returns:
```

```
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Set default map if not provided
    if default_map is None:
        default_map = {}

    # Create a map with the new key-value pair
    updated_map = default_map.copy()
    updated_map[map_key] = value

    # Use if_not_exists to initialize the map if it doesn't exist
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #map = if_not_exists(#map, :default_map)",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#map": map_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":default_map": updated_map},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def merge_into_map(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], map_name: str, values_to_merge: Dict[str,
 Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Merge multiple key-value pairs into a map attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to update multiple keys in a map attribute
    in a single operation, without overwriting the entire map.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        map_name (str): The name of the map attribute.
        values_to_merge (Dict[str, Any]): Key-value pairs to merge into the map.

    Returns:
```

```
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the update expression for each key-value pair
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {"#map": map_name}
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Add each key-value pair to the update expression
    for i, (k, v) in enumerate(values_to_merge.items()):
        key_placeholder = f"#key{i}"
        value_placeholder = f":value{i}"

        expression_attribute_names[key_placeholder] = k
        expression_attribute_values[value_placeholder] = v

        if i > 0:
            update_expression += ", "
        update_expression += f"#map.{key_placeholder} = {value_placeholder}"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response




def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the map attribute update functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "UserProfiles"
    key = {"UserId": "user123"}
```

```
    print("Example 1: Updating a specific key in a map attribute")
    try:
        response = update_map_attribute_safe(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, map_name="Preferences", map_key="Theme",
value="Dark"
        )
        print(f"Map attribute updated successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
{})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating map attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Adding a value to a deeply nested map")
    try:
        response = add_to_nested_map(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, path="Settings.Notifications.Email",
value=True
        )
        print(f"Nested map updated successfully: {response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating nested map: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Initializing a map with default values if it doesn't exist")
    try:
        default_map = {"Language": "English", "Currency": "USD", "TimeZone": "UTC"}

        response = update_map_with_if_not_exists(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "newuser456"},
            map_name="Preferences",
            map_key="Theme",
            value="Light",
            default_map=default_map,
        )
        print(f"Map initialized with defaults: {response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error initializing map: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Merging multiple values into a map")
    try:
        values_to_merge = {
            "NotificationsEnabled": True,
            "EmailFrequency": "Daily",
            "PushNotifications": False,
        }
```

```
        response = merge_into_map(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            map_name="NotificationSettings",
            values_to_merge=values_to_merge,
        )
        print(f"Multiple values merged into map: {response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error merging values into map: {e}")

    print("\nBest practices for working with map attributes in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Use dot notation to access and update nested attributes")
    print("2. Use ExpressionAttributeNames to handle reserved words and special
 characters")
    print("3. Use if_not_exists() to handle cases where attributes might not exist")
    print("4. Update specific map keys rather than overwriting the entire map")
    print("5. Use a single update operation to modify multiple map keys for better
 performance")
    print("6. Consider your data model carefully to minimize the need for deeply
 nested attributes")



if __name__ == "__main__":
    example_usage()
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Perform set operations

The following code example shows how to perform set operations in DynamoDB.

- Add elements to a set attribute.
- Remove elements from a set attribute.
- Use ADD and DELETE operations with sets.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate set operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from typing import Any, Dict, List


def create_set_attribute(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    set_name: str,
    set_values: List[Any],
    set_type: str = "string",
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Create a new set attribute or add elements to an existing set.

    This function demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to create a new set
    or add elements to an existing set.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        set_values (List[Any]): The values to add to the set.
        set_type (str, optional): The type of set to create: "string", "number", or
 "binary".
            Defaults to "string".

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Convert the list to a DynamoDB set based on the specified type
    if set_type == "string":
        dynamo_set = set(str(value) for value in set_values)
    elif set_type == "number":
        # We need to use actual float values for the DynamoDB API
        # but mypy expects strings in sets, so we need to use type: ignore
        dynamo_set = set(float(value) for value in set_values)  # type: ignore
    else:  # binary set is not directly supported in high-level API, handled
 differently
```

```
        raise ValueError("Binary sets are not supported in this example")

    # Use the ADD operation to create or update the set
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="ADD #set_attr :set_values",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":set_values": dynamo_set},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def add_to_set(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str, values_to_add: List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Add elements to an existing set attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the ADD operation to add elements to an
 existing set.
    If the set doesn't exist, it will be created.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        values_to_add (List[Any]): The values to add to the set.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Convert the list to a set (assuming string set for simplicity)
    dynamo_set = set(str(value) for value in values_to_add)

    # Use the ADD operation to add values to the set
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
```

```
        UpdateExpression="ADD #set_attr :values_to_add",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values_to_add": dynamo_set},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def remove_from_set(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str, values_to_remove: List[Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Remove elements from a set attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to use the DELETE operation to remove elements
 from a set.
    If the last element is removed, the attribute will be deleted entirely.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        values_to_remove (List[Any]): The values to remove from the set.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Convert the list to a set (assuming string set for simplicity)
    dynamo_set = set(str(value) for value in values_to_remove)

    # Use the DELETE operation to remove values from the set
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="DELETE #set_attr :values_to_remove",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":values_to_remove": dynamo_set},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )
```

```
    return response


def check_if_set_exists(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str) ->
 bool:
    """
    Check if a set attribute exists in an item.

    This function demonstrates how to check if a set attribute exists after
    potentially removing all elements from it.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to check.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.

    Returns:
        bool: True if the set attribute exists, False otherwise.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Get the item
    response = table.get_item(
        Key=key, ProjectionExpression="#set_attr",
 ExpressionAttributeNames={"#set_attr": set_name}
    )

    # Check if the item exists and has the set attribute
    return "Item" in response and set_name in response["Item"]


def demonstrate_last_element_removal(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], set_name: str
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate what happens when you remove the last element from a set.

    This function creates a set with a single element, then removes that element,
    showing that the attribute is completely removed when the last element is
 deleted.
```

```
    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Step 1: Create a set with a single element
    create_response = create_set_attribute(
        table_name=table_name,
        key=key,
        set_name=set_name,
        set_values=["last_element"],
        set_type="string",
    )

    # Step 2: Check that the set exists
    exists_before = check_if_set_exists(table_name, key, set_name)

    # Step 3: Remove the last element
    delete_response = remove_from_set(
        table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name=set_name,
 values_to_remove=["last_element"]
    )

    # Step 4: Check if the set still exists
    exists_after = check_if_set_exists(table_name, key, set_name)

    # Return the results
    return {
        "create_response": create_response,
        "exists_before": exists_before,
        "delete_response": delete_response,
        "exists_after": exists_after,
    }


def work_with_number_set(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    set_name: str,
    initial_values: List[float],
    values_to_add: List[float],
```

```
    values_to_remove: List[float],
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate working with a number set in DynamoDB.

    This function shows how to create and manipulate a set of numbers.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        set_name (str): The name of the set attribute.
        initial_values (List[float]): The initial values for the set.
        values_to_add (List[float]): Values to add to the set.
        values_to_remove (List[float]): Values to remove from the set.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the responses from each operation.
    """
    # Step 1: Create the number set
    create_response = create_set_attribute(
        table_name=table_name,
        key=key,
        set_name=set_name,
        set_values=initial_values,
        set_type="number",
    )

    # Step 2: Add more numbers to the set
    add_response = add_to_set(
        table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name=set_name,
values_to_add=values_to_add
    )

    # Step 3: Remove some numbers from the set
    remove_response = remove_from_set(
        table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name=set_name,
values_to_remove=values_to_remove
    )

    # Step 4: Get the final state
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    get_response = table.get_item(
```

```
        Key=key,
        ProjectionExpression=f"#{set_name}",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={f"#{set_name}": set_name},
    )

    # Return all responses
    return {
        "create_response": create_response,
        "add_response": add_response,
        "remove_response": remove_response,
        "final_state": get_response.get("Item", {}),
    }
```

Example usage of set operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the set operations functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "UserPreferences"
    key = {"UserId": "user123"}

    print("Example 1: Creating a string set attribute")
    try:
        response = create_set_attribute(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            set_name="FavoriteTags",
            set_values=["AWS", "DynamoDB", "NoSQL"],
            set_type="string",
        )
        print(f"Set attribute created successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
 {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error creating set attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Adding elements to an existing set")
    try:
        response = add_to_set(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
```

```
            set_name="FavoriteTags",
            values_to_add=["Database", "Serverless"],
        )
        print(f"Elements added to set successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
{})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error adding to set: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Removing elements from a set")
    try:
        response = remove_from_set(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, set_name="FavoriteTags",
values_to_remove=["NoSQL"]
        )
        print(f"Elements removed from set successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
{})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error removing from set: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Demonstrating what happens when you remove the last element
from a set")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_last_element_removal(
            table_name=table_name, key={"UserId": "tempUser"},
set_name="SingleElementSet"
        )

        print(f"Set exists before removal: {results['exists_before']}")
        print(f"Set exists after removal: {results['exists_after']}")

        if not results["exists_after"]:
            print("The set attribute was completely removed when the last element
was deleted.")
        else:
            print("The set attribute still exists after removing the last element.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error in last element removal demonstration: {e}")

    print("\nExample 5: Working with a number set")
    try:
        results = work_with_number_set(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"UserId": "user456"},
            set_name="LuckyNumbers",
```

```
            initial_values=[7, 13, 42],
            values_to_add=[99, 100],
            values_to_remove=[13],
        )

        print(f"Initial number set: {results['create_response'].get('Attributes',
{})}")
        print(f"After adding numbers: {results['add_response'].get('Attributes',
{})}")
        print(f"After removing numbers:
{results['remove_response'].get('Attributes', {})}")
        print(f"Final state: {results['final_state']}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error working with number set: {e}")

    print("\nKey Points About DynamoDB Sets:")
    print("1. Sets can only contain elements of the same type (string, number, or
binary)")
    print("2. Sets automatically eliminate duplicate values")
    print("3. The ADD operation creates a set if it doesn't exist")
    print("4. The DELETE operation removes specified elements from a set")
    print("5. When the last element is removed from a set, the entire attribute is
deleted")
    print("6. Empty sets are not allowed in DynamoDB")
    print("7. Sets are unordered collections")
    print("8. The ADD operation is atomic for sets")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that can run batches of PartiQL statements.

```
from datetime import datetime
from decimal import Decimal
import logging
from pprint import pprint

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from scaffold import Scaffold

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class PartiQLBatchWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statements, param_list):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects (POPOs)
 to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.
```

```
        :param statements: The batch of PartiQL statements.
        :param param_list: The batch of PartiQL parameters that are associated with
                           each statement. This list must be in the same order as
the
                           statements.
        :return: The responses returned from running the statements, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.batch_execute_statement(
                Statements=[
                    {"Statement": statement, "Parameters": params}
                    for statement, params in zip(statements, param_list)
                ]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements because the table
"
                    "does not exist."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute batch of PartiQL statements. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries in batches.

```
def run_scenario(scaffold, wrapper, table_name):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL batch statement demo.")
```

```
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Creating table '{table_name}' for the demo...")
    scaffold.create_table(table_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    movie_data = [
        {
            "title": f"House PartiQL",
            "year": datetime.now().year - 5,
            "info": {
                "plot": "Wacky high jinks result from querying a mysterious
database.",
                "rating": Decimal("8.5"),
            },
        },
        {
            "title": f"House PartiQL 2",
            "year": datetime.now().year - 3,
            "info": {
                "plot": "Moderate high jinks result from querying another mysterious
database.",
                "rating": Decimal("6.5"),
            },
        },
        {
            "title": f"House PartiQL 3",
            "year": datetime.now().year - 1,
            "info": {
                "plot": "Tepid high jinks result from querying yet another
mysterious database.",
                "rating": Decimal("2.5"),
            },
        },
    ]

    print(f"Inserting a batch of movies into table '{table_name}.")
    statements = [
        f'INSERT INTO "{table_name}" ' f"VALUE {{'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}}"
    ] * len(movie_data)
    params = [list(movie.values()) for movie in movie_data]
    wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(f"Getting data for a batch of movies.")
    statements = [f'SELECT * FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?'] * len(
        movie_data
    )
    params = [[movie["title"], movie["year"]] for movie in movie_data]
    output = wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    for item in output["Responses"]:
        print(f"\n{item['Item']['title']}, {item['Item']['year']}")
        pprint(item["Item"])
    print("-" * 88)

    ratings = [Decimal("7.7"), Decimal("5.5"), Decimal("1.3")]
    print(f"Updating a batch of movies with new ratings.")
    statements = [
        f'UPDATE "{table_name}" SET info.rating=? ' f"WHERE title=? AND year=?"
    ] * len(movie_data)
    params = [
        [rating, movie["title"], movie["year"]]
        for rating, movie in zip(ratings, movie_data)
    ]
    wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting projected data from the table to verify our update.")
    output = wrapper.dyn_resource.meta.client.execute_statement(
        Statement=f'SELECT title, info.rating FROM "{table_name}"'
    )
    pprint(output["Items"])
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting a batch of movies from the table.")
    statements = [f'DELETE FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?'] * len(
        movie_data
    )
    params = [[movie["title"], movie["year"]] for movie in movie_data]
    wrapper.run_partiql(statements, params)
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting table '{table_name}'...")
    scaffold.delete_table()
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        dyn_res = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
        scaffold = Scaffold(dyn_res)
        movies = PartiQLBatchWrapper(dyn_res)
        run_scenario(scaffold, movies, "doc-example-table-partiql-movies")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Something went wrong with the demo! Here's what: {e}")
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that can run PartiQL statements.

```
from datetime import datetime
from decimal import Decimal
import logging
from pprint import pprint
```

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from scaffold import Scaffold

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

class PartiQLWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB resource to run PartiQL statements.
    """

    def __init__(self, dyn_resource):
        """
        :param dyn_resource: A Boto3 DynamoDB resource.
        """
        self.dyn_resource = dyn_resource


    def run_partiql(self, statement, params):
        """
        Runs a PartiQL statement. A Boto3 resource is used even though
        `execute_statement` is called on the underlying `client` object because the
        resource transforms input and output from plain old Python objects (POPOs)
 to
        the DynamoDB format. If you create the client directly, you must do these
        transforms yourself.

        :param statement: The PartiQL statement.
        :param params: The list of PartiQL parameters. These are applied to the
                       statement in the order they are listed.
        :return: The items returned from the statement, if any.
        """
        try:
            output = self.dyn_resource.meta.client.execute_statement(
                Statement=statement, Parameters=params
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s' because the table does not
 exist.",
                    statement,
```

```
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't execute PartiQL '%s'. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    statement,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
        else:
            return output
```

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries.

```
def run_scenario(scaffold, wrapper, table_name):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon DynamoDB PartiQL single statement demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Creating table '{table_name}' for the demo...")
    scaffold.create_table(table_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    title = "24 Hour PartiQL People"
    year = datetime.now().year
    plot = "A group of data developers discover a new query language they can't stop
 using."
    rating = Decimal("9.9")

    print(f"Inserting movie '{title}' released in {year}.")
    wrapper.run_partiql(
        f"INSERT INTO \"{table_name}\" VALUE {{'title': ?, 'year': ?, 'info': ?}}",
        [title, year, {"plot": plot, "rating": rating}],
    )
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting data for movie '{title}' released in {year}.")
```

```
    output = wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'SELECT * FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?', [title, year]
    )
    for item in output["Items"]:
        print(f"\n{item['title']}, {item['year']}")
        pprint(output["Items"])
    print("-" * 88)

    rating = Decimal("2.4")
    print(f"Updating movie '{title}' with a rating of {float(rating)}.")
    wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'UPDATE "{table_name}" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? AND year=?',
        [rating, title, year],
    )
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Getting data again to verify our update.")
    output = wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'SELECT * FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?', [title, year]
    )
    for item in output["Items"]:
        print(f"\n{item['title']}, {item['year']}")
        pprint(output["Items"])
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting movie '{title}' released in {year}.")
    wrapper.run_partiql(
        f'DELETE FROM "{table_name}" WHERE title=? AND year=?', [title, year]
    )
    print("Success!")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Deleting table '{table_name}'...")
    scaffold.delete_table()
    print("-" * 88)

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        dyn_res = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
```

```
        scaffold = Scaffold(dyn_res)
        movies = PartiQLWrapper(dyn_res)
        run_scenario(scaffold, movies, "doc-example-table-partiql-movies")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Something went wrong with the demo! Here's what: {e}")
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table using a Global Secondary Index

The following code example shows how to query a table using a Global Secondary Index.

- Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.
- Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) for alternate access patterns.
- Compare table queries and GSI queries.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key and a Global Secondary Index (GSI) with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_table(table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table using its primary key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)
```

```
    # Perform the query on the table's primary key
    response =
 table.query(KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value))

    return response


def query_gsi(table_name, index_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value):
    """
    Query a Global Secondary Index (GSI) on a DynamoDB table.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        index_name (str): The name of the Global Secondary Index.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the GSI's partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the GSI's partition key to query.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query on the GSI
    response = table.query(
        IndexName=index_name,
 KeyConditionExpression=Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)
    )

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table using a begins_with condition

The following code example shows how to query a table using a begins_with condition.

- Use the begins_with function in a key condition expression.

- Filter items based on a prefix pattern in the sort key.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table using a begins_with condition on the sort key with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_begins_with(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, prefix
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a begins_with condition on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute.
        prefix (str): The prefix to match at the beginning of the sort key.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Perform the query with a begins_with condition on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) & Key(
        sort_key_name
    ).begins_with(prefix)
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table using a date range

The following code example shows how to query a table using a date range in the sort key.

- Query items within a specific date range.
- Use comparison operators on date-formatted sort keys.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table for items within a date range with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_date_range(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, start_date,
 end_date
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a date range on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
 values).
        start_date (datetime): The start date for the query range.
        end_date (datetime): The end date for the query range.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)
```

```
    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    # DynamoDB works well with ISO format for date values
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key using BETWEEN operator
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":pk_val": partition_key_value,
            ":start_date": start_date_str,
            ":end_date": end_date_str,
        },
    )

    return response


def query_with_date_range_by_month(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, year, month
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table for a specific month's data.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
 values).
        year (int): The year to query.
        month (int): The month to query (1-12).

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)
```

```
    # Calculate the start and end dates for the specified month
    if month == 12:
        next_year = year + 1
        next_month = 1
    else:
        next_year = year
        next_month = month + 1

    start_date = datetime(year, month, 1)
    end_date = datetime(next_year, next_month, 1) - timedelta(microseconds=1)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table with a complex filter expression

The following code example shows how to query a table with a complex filter expression.

- Apply complex filter expressions to query results.
- Combine multiple conditions using logical operators.
- Filter items based on non-key attributes.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_complex_filter(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    min_rating=None,
    status_list=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        status_list (list, optional): List of status values to include.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize the filter expression and expression attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the filter expression based on provided parameters
    if min_rating is not None:
        filter_expression = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
```

```
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if status_list and len(status_list) > 0:
        status_condition = None
        for i, status in enumerate(status_list):
            status_value_name = f":status{i}"
            expression_attribute_values[status_value_name] = status

            if status_condition is None:
                status_condition = Attr("status").eq(status)
            else:
                status_condition = status_condition | Attr("status").eq(status)

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = status_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & status_condition

    if max_price is not None:
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response


def query_with_complex_filter_and_or(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
```

```
    category=None,
    min_rating=None,
    max_price=None,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a complex filter expression using AND and OR
 operators.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        category (str, optional): Category value for filtering.
        min_rating (float, optional): Minimum rating value for filtering.
        max_price (float, optional): Maximum price value for filtering.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build a complex filter expression with AND and OR operators
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Build the category condition
    if category:
        filter_expression = Attr("category").eq(category)
        expression_attribute_values[":category"] = category

    # Build the rating and price condition (rating >= min_rating OR price <=
 max_price)
    rating_price_condition = None

    if min_rating is not None:
        rating_price_condition = Attr("rating").gte(min_rating)
        expression_attribute_values[":min_rating"] = min_rating

    if max_price is not None:
```

```
        price_condition = Attr("price").lte(max_price)
        expression_attribute_values[":max_price"] = max_price

        if rating_price_condition is None:
            rating_price_condition = price_condition
        else:
            rating_price_condition = rating_price_condition | price_condition

    # Combine the conditions
    if rating_price_condition:
        if filter_expression is None:
            filter_expression = rating_price_condition
        else:
            filter_expression = filter_expression & rating_price_condition

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression
        if expression_attribute_values:
            query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table with a dynamic filter expression

The following code example shows how to query a table with a dynamic filter expression.

- Build filter expressions dynamically at runtime.
- Construct filter conditions based on user input or application state.
- Add or remove filter criteria conditionally.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_dynamic_filter(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_conditions=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a dynamically constructed filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_conditions (dict, optional): A dictionary of filter conditions where
            keys are attribute names and values are dictionaries with 'operator' and
 'value'.
            Example: {'rating': {'operator': '>=', 'value': 4}, 'status':
 {'operator': '=', 'value': 'active'}}

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Start with the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Initialize variables for the filter expression and attribute values
    filter_expression = None
    expression_attribute_values = {":pk_val": partition_key_value}

    # Dynamically build the filter expression if filter conditions are provided
    if filter_conditions:
        for attr_name, condition in filter_conditions.items():
            operator = condition.get("operator")
            value = condition.get("value")
```

```
            attr_value_name = f":{attr_name}"
            expression_attribute_values[attr_value_name] = value

            # Create the appropriate filter expression based on the operator
            current_condition = None
            if operator == "=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).eq(value)
            elif operator == "!=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).ne(value)
            elif operator == ">":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gt(value)
            elif operator == ">=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).gte(value)
            elif operator == "<":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lt(value)
            elif operator == "<=":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).lte(value)
            elif operator == "contains":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).contains(value)
            elif operator == "begins_with":
                current_condition = Attr(attr_name).begins_with(value)

            # Combine with existing filter expression using AND
            if current_condition:
                if filter_expression is None:
                    filter_expression = current_condition
                else:
                    filter_expression = filter_expression & current_condition

    # Perform the query with the dynamically built filter expression
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition}

    if filter_expression:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = filter_expression

    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Demonstrates how to use dynamic filter expressions with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the query_with_dynamic_filter function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    partition_key_name = "Category"
    partition_key_value = "Electronics"

    # Define dynamic filter conditions based on user input or runtime conditions
    user_min_rating = 4  # This could come from user input
    user_status_filter = "active"  # This could come from user input

    filter_conditions = {}

    # Only add conditions that are actually specified
    if user_min_rating is not None:
        filter_conditions["rating"] = {"operator": ">=", "value": user_min_rating}

    if user_status_filter:
        filter_conditions["status"] = {"operator": "=", "value": user_status_filter}

    print(
        f"Querying products in category '{partition_key_value}' with filter
 conditions: {filter_conditions}"
    )

    # Execute the query with dynamic filter
    response = query_with_dynamic_filter(
        table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_conditions
    )

    # Process the results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    print(f"Found {len(items)} items")

    for item in items:
        print(f"Product: {item}")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table with a filter expression and limit

The following code example shows how to query a table with a filter expression and limit.

- Apply filter expressions to query results with a limit on items evaluated.
- Understand how limit affects filtered query results.
- Control the maximum number of items processed in a query.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_filter_and_limit(
    table_name,
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    filter_attribute=None,
    filter_value=None,
    limit=10,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a filter expression and limit the number of results.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_attribute (str, optional): The attribute name to filter on.
        filter_value (any, optional): The value to compare against in the filter.
        limit (int, optional): The maximum number of items to evaluate. Defaults to
 10.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)
```

```
    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Prepare the query parameters
    query_params = {"KeyConditionExpression": key_condition, "Limit": limit}

    # Add the filter expression if filter attributes are provided
    if filter_attribute and filter_value is not None:
        query_params["FilterExpression"] = Attr(filter_attribute).gt(filter_value)
        query_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = {":filter_value": filter_value}

    # Execute the query
    response = table.query(**query_params)
    return response
```

Demonstrates how to use filter expressions with limits in AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the query_with_filter_and_limit function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "ProductReviews"
    partition_key_name = "ProductId"
    partition_key_value = "P123456"
    filter_attribute = "Rating"
    filter_value = 3  # Filter for ratings > 3
    limit = 5

    print(f"Querying reviews for product '{partition_key_value}' with rating >
 {filter_value}")
    print(f"Limiting to {limit} evaluated items")

    # Execute the query with filter and limit
    response = query_with_filter_and_limit(
        table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, filter_attribute,
 filter_value, limit
    )

    # Process the results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
```

```
    print(f"\nReturned {len(items)} items that passed the filter")

    for item in items:
        print(f"Review: {item}")

    # Explain the difference between Limit and actual results
    explain_limit_vs_results(response)

    # Check if there are more results
    if "LastEvaluatedKey" in response:
        print("\nThere are more results available. Use the LastEvaluatedKey for
 pagination.")
    else:
        print("\nAll matching results have been retrieved.")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table with nested attributes

The following code example shows how to query a table with nested attributes.

- Access and filter by nested attributes in DynamoDB items.
- Use document path expressions to reference nested elements.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with nested attributes using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from typing import Any, Dict, List

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Attr, Key


def query_with_nested_attributes(
    table_name: str,
    partition_key_name: str,
    partition_key_value: str,
    nested_path: str,
```

```
    comparison_operator: str,
    comparison_value: Any,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table and filter by nested attributes.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        nested_path (str): The path to the nested attribute (e.g., 'specs.weight').
        comparison_operator (str): The comparison operator to use ('=', '!=', '<',
 '<=', '>', '>=').
        comparison_value (any): The value to compare against.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build the filter expression based on the nested attribute path and comparison
 operator
    filter_expression = None
    if comparison_operator == "=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).eq(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "!=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).ne(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "<":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).lt(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "<=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).lte(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == ">":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).gt(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == ">=":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).gte(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "contains":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).contains(comparison_value)
    elif comparison_operator == "begins_with":
        filter_expression = Attr(nested_path).begins_with(comparison_value)
```

```
    # Execute the query with the filter expression
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 FilterExpression=filter_expression)

    return response


def query_with_multiple_nested_attributes(
    table_name: str,
    partition_key_name: str,
    partition_key_value: str,
    nested_conditions: List[Dict[str, Any]],
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table and filter by multiple nested attributes.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        nested_conditions (list): A list of dictionaries, each containing:
            - path (str): The path to the nested attribute
            - operator (str): The comparison operator
            - value (any): The value to compare against

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    # Build the combined filter expression for all nested attributes
    combined_filter = None

    for condition in nested_conditions:
        if not isinstance(condition, dict):
            continue
        path = condition.get("path", "")
        operator = condition.get("operator", "")
```

```
        value = condition.get("value")

        if not path or not operator:
            continue

        # Build the individual filter expression
        current_filter = None
        if operator == "=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).eq(value)
        elif operator == "!=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).ne(value)
        elif operator == "<":
            current_filter = Attr(path).lt(value)
        elif operator == "<=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).lte(value)
        elif operator == ">":
            current_filter = Attr(path).gt(value)
        elif operator == ">=":
            current_filter = Attr(path).gte(value)
        elif operator == "contains":
            current_filter = Attr(path).contains(value)
        elif operator == "begins_with":
            current_filter = Attr(path).begins_with(value)

        # Combine with the existing filter using AND
        if current_filter:
            if combined_filter is None:
                combined_filter = current_filter
            else:
                combined_filter = combined_filter & current_filter

    # Execute the query with the combined filter expression
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
FilterExpression=combined_filter)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table with pagination

The following code example shows how to query a table with pagination.

- Implement pagination for DynamoDB query results.
- Use the LastEvaluatedKey to retrieve subsequent pages.
- Control the number of items per page with the Limit parameter.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_pagination(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25,
 max_pages=None
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination to handle large result sets.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page. Defaults
 to 25.
        max_pages (int, optional): The maximum number of pages to retrieve. If None,
 retrieves all pages.

    Returns:
        list: All items retrieved from the query across all pages.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_count = 0
```

```
    all_items = []

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Check if we've reached the maximum number of pages
        if max_pages is not None and page_count >= max_pages:
            break

        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
 Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
 query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Process the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
        all_items.extend(items)

        # Update pagination tracking
        page_count += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if not last_evaluated_key:
            break

    return all_items


def query_with_pagination_generator(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, page_size=25
):
    """
```

```
    Query a DynamoDB table with pagination using a generator to handle large result
sets.
    This approach is memory-efficient as it yields one page at a time.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        page_size (int, optional): The number of items to return per page. Defaults
to 25.

    Yields:
        tuple: A tuple containing (items, page_number, last_page) where:
            - items is a list of items for the current page
            - page_number is the current page number (starting from 1)
            - last_page is a boolean indicating if this is the last page
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Initialize variables for pagination
    last_evaluated_key = None
    page_number = 0

    # Paginate through the results
    while True:
        # Prepare the query parameters
        query_params = {
            "KeyConditionExpression":
Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value),
            "Limit": page_size,
        }

        # Add the ExclusiveStartKey if we have a LastEvaluatedKey from a previous
query
        if last_evaluated_key:
            query_params["ExclusiveStartKey"] = last_evaluated_key

        # Execute the query
        response = table.query(**query_params)

        # Get the current page of results
        items = response.get("Items", [])
```

```
        page_number += 1

        # Get the LastEvaluatedKey for the next page, if any
        last_evaluated_key = response.get("LastEvaluatedKey")

        # Determine if this is the last page
        is_last_page = last_evaluated_key is None

        # Yield the current page of results
        yield (items, page_number, is_last_page)

        # If there's no LastEvaluatedKey, we've reached the end of the results
        if is_last_page:
            break
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query a table with strongly consistent reads

The following code example shows how to query a table with strongly consistent reads.

- Configure the consistency level for DynamoDB queries.
- Use strongly consistent reads to get the most up-to-date data.
- Understand the tradeoffs between eventual consistency and strong consistency.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query a DynamoDB table with the option for strongly consistent reads using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import time

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_consistent_read(
    table_name,
```

```
    partition_key_name,
    partition_key_value,
    sort_key_name=None,
    sort_key_value=None,
    consistent_read=True,
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with the option for strongly consistent reads.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str, optional): The name of the sort key attribute.
        sort_key_value (str, optional): The value of the sort key to query.
        consistent_read (bool, optional): Whether to use strongly consistent reads.
 Defaults to True.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the key condition expression
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value)

    if sort_key_name and sort_key_value:
        key_condition = key_condition & Key(sort_key_name).eq(sort_key_value)

    # Perform the query with the consistent read option
    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
 ConsistentRead=consistent_read)

    return response
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query for TTL items

The following code example shows how to query for TTL items.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query Filtered Expression to gather TTL items in a DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime

import boto3


def query_dynamodb_items(table_name, partition_key):
    """

    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
    :param partition_key:
    :return:
    """
    try:
        # Initialize a DynamoDB resource
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name="us-east-1")

        # Specify your table
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Get the current time in epoch format
        current_time = int(datetime.now().timestamp())

        # Perform the query operation with a filter expression to exclude expired
 items
        # response = table.query(
        #
 KeyConditionExpression=boto3.dynamodb.conditions.Key('partitionKey').eq(partition_key),
        #
 FilterExpression=boto3.dynamodb.conditions.Attr('expireAt').gt(current_time)
        # )
        response = table.query(

 KeyConditionExpression=dynamodb.conditions.Key("partitionKey").eq(partition_key),
            FilterExpression=dynamodb.conditions.Attr("expireAt").gt(current_time),
        )
```

```
        # Print the items that are not expired
        for item in response["Items"]:
            print(item)

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error querying items: {e}")


# Call the function with your values
query_dynamodb_items("Music", "your-partition-key-value")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Query tables using date and time patterns

The following code example shows how to query tables using date and time patterns.

- Store and query date/time values in DynamoDB.
- Implement date range queries using sort keys.
- Format date strings for effective querying.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Query using date ranges in sort keys with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_date_range(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, start_date,
 end_date
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a date range on the sort key.

    Args:
```

```
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
 values).
        start_date (datetime): The start date for the query range.
        end_date (datetime): The end date for the query range.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    # DynamoDB works well with ISO format for date values
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key using BETWEEN operator
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":pk_val": partition_key_value,
            ":start_date": start_date_str,
            ":end_date": end_date_str,
        },
    )

    return response


def query_with_date_range_by_month(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, year, month
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table for a specific month's data.
```

```
    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date
values).
        year (int): The year to query.
        month (int): The month to query (1-12).

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Calculate the start and end dates for the specified month
    if month == 12:
        next_year = year + 1
        next_month = 1
    else:
        next_year = year
        next_month = month + 1

    start_date = datetime(year, month, 1)
    end_date = datetime(next_year, next_month, 1) - timedelta(microseconds=1)

    # Format the date values as ISO 8601 strings
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(KeyConditionExpression=key_condition)

    return response
```

Query using date-time variables with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
from boto3.dynamodb.conditions import Key


def query_with_datetime(
    table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name, start_date,
 end_date
):
    """
    Query a DynamoDB table with a date range filter on the sort key.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        sort_key_name (str): The name of the sort key attribute (containing date/
time values).
        start_date (datetime): The start date/time for the query range.
        end_date (datetime): The end date/time for the query range.

    Returns:
        dict: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Format the date/time values as ISO 8601 strings
    # DynamoDB works well with ISO format for date/time values
    start_date_str = start_date.isoformat()
    end_date_str = end_date.isoformat()

    # Perform the query with a date range on the sort key
    key_condition = Key(partition_key_name).eq(partition_key_value) &
 Key(sort_key_name).between(
        start_date_str, end_date_str
    )

    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression=key_condition,
```

```
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":pk_val": partition_key_value,
            ":start_date": start_date_str,
            ":end_date": end_date_str,
        },
    )

    return response



def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the query_with_datetime function."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Events"
    partition_key_name = "EventType"
    partition_key_value = "UserLogin"
    sort_key_name = "Timestamp"

    # Create date/time variables for the query
    end_date = datetime.now()
    start_date = end_date - timedelta(days=7)  # Query events from the last 7 days

    print(f"Querying events from {start_date.isoformat()} to
 {end_date.isoformat()}")

    # Execute the query
    response = query_with_datetime(
        table_name, partition_key_name, partition_key_value, sort_key_name,
 start_date, end_date
    )

    # Process the results
    items = response.get("Items", [])
    print(f"Found {len(items)} items")

    for item in items:
        print(f"Event: {item}")
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Understand update expression order

The following code example shows how to understand update expression order.

- Learn how DynamoDB processes update expressions.
- Understand the order of operations in update expressions.
- Avoid unexpected results by understanding expression evaluation.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate update expression order using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
import json
from typing import Any, Dict, Optional


def update_with_multiple_actions(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    update_expression: str,
    expression_attribute_names: Optional[Dict[str, str]] = None,
    expression_attribute_values: Optional[Dict[str, Any]] = None,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an item with multiple actions in a single update expression.

    This function demonstrates how to use multiple actions in a single update
 expression
    and how DynamoDB processes these actions.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        update_expression (str): The update expression with multiple actions.
        expression_attribute_names (Optional[Dict[str, str]]): Expression attribute
 name placeholders.
        expression_attribute_values (Optional[Dict[str, Any]]): Expression attribute
 value placeholders.

    Returns:
```

```
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Prepare the update parameters
    update_params = {
        "Key": key,
        "UpdateExpression": update_expression,
        "ReturnValues": "UPDATED_NEW",
    }

    # Add expression attribute names if provided
    if expression_attribute_names:
        update_params["ExpressionAttributeNames"] = expression_attribute_names

    # Add expression attribute values if provided
    if expression_attribute_values:
        update_params["ExpressionAttributeValues"] = expression_attribute_values

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(**update_params)

    return response


def demonstrate_value_copying(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any]) -> Dict[str,
 Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate that variables hold copies of existing values before modifications.

    This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
    that uses the values of attributes before they are modified in the same
 expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to create and update.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
```

```
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Step 1: Create an item with initial values
    initial_item = key.copy()
    initial_item.update({"a": 1, "b": 2, "c": 3})

    table.put_item(Item=initial_item)

    # Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
    response_before = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_before = response_before.get("Item", {})

    # Step 3: Update the item with an expression that uses values before they are
 modified
    # This expression removes 'a', then sets 'b' to the value of 'a', and 'c' to the
 value of 'b'
    update_response = table.update_item(
        Key=key, UpdateExpression="REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b",
 ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW"
    )

    # Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
    response_after = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_after = response_after.get("Item", {})

    # Return the results
    return {
        "initial_state": item_before,
        "update_response": update_response,
        "final_state": item_after,
    }


def demonstrate_action_order(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any]) -> Dict[str,
 Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate the order in which different action types are processed.

    This function creates an item with initial values, then updates it with an
 expression
    that includes multiple action types (SET, REMOVE, ADD, DELETE) to show the order
```

```
    in which they are processed.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to create and update.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Step 1: Create an item with initial values
    initial_item = key.copy()
    initial_item.update(
        {
            "counter": 10,
            "set_attr": set(["A", "B", "C"]),
            "to_remove": "This will be removed",
            "to_modify": "Original value",
        }
    )

    table.put_item(Item=initial_item)

    # Step 2: Get the item to verify initial state
    response_before = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_before = response_before.get("Item", {})

    # Step 3: Update the item with multiple action types
    # The actions will be processed in this order: REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE
    update_response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="REMOVE to_remove SET to_modify = :new_value ADD
counter :increment DELETE set_attr :elements",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={
            ":new_value": "Updated value",
            ":increment": 5,
            ":elements": set(["B"]),
        },
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )
```

```
    # Step 4: Get the item to verify final state
    response_after = table.get_item(Key=key)
    item_after = response_after.get("Item", {})

    # Return the results
    return {
        "initial_state": item_before,
        "update_response": update_response,
        "final_state": item_after,
    }


def update_with_multiple_set_actions(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], attributes: Dict[str, Any]
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update multiple attributes with a single SET action.

    This function demonstrates how to update multiple attributes in a single SET
 action,
    which is more efficient than using multiple separate update operations.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        attributes (Dict[str, Any]): The attributes to update and their new values.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Build the update expression and expression attribute values
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_values = {}

    # Add each attribute to the update expression
    for i, (attr_name, attr_value) in enumerate(attributes.items()):
        value_placeholder = f":val{i}"

        if i > 0:
```

```
            update_expression += ", "
        update_expression += f"{attr_name} = {value_placeholder}"

        expression_attribute_values[value_placeholder] = attr_value

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeValues=expression_attribute_values,
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def update_with_conditional_value_copying(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    source_attribute: str,
    target_attribute: str,
    default_value: Any,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an attribute with a value from another attribute or a default value.

    This function demonstrates how to use if_not_exists to conditionally copy a
 value
    from one attribute to another, or use a default value if the source doesn't
 exist.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        source_attribute (str): The attribute to copy the value from.
        target_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        default_value (Any): The default value to use if the source attribute
 doesn't exist.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
```

```
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use if_not_exists to conditionally copy the value
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=f"SET {target_attribute} =
 if_not_exists({source_attribute}, :default)",
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":default": default_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

Example usage of update expression order with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use update expression order of operations in DynamoDB."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "OrderProcessing"
    key = {"OrderId": "order123"}

    print("Example 1: Demonstrating value copying in update expressions")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_value_copying(table_name=table_name, key=key)

        print(f"Initial state: {json.dumps(results['initial_state'], default=str)}")
        print(f"Update response: {json.dumps(results['update_response'],
 default=str)}")
        print(f"Final state: {json.dumps(results['final_state'], default=str)}")

        print("\nExplanation:")
        print("1. The initial state had a=1, b=2, c=3")
        print("2. The update expression 'REMOVE a SET b = a, c = b' did the
 following:")
        print("   - Copied the value of 'a' (which was 1) to be used for 'b'")
        print("   - Copied the value of 'b' (which was 2) to be used for 'c'")
        print("   - Removed the attribute 'a'")
        print("3. The final state has b=1, c=2, and 'a' is removed")
        print(
```

```
            "4. This demonstrates that DynamoDB uses the values of attributes as
they were BEFORE any modifications"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error demonstrating value copying: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Demonstrating the order of different action types")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_action_order(table_name=table_name, key={"OrderId":
"order456"})

        print(f"Initial state: {json.dumps(results['initial_state'], default=str)}")
        print(f"Update response: {json.dumps(results['update_response'],
default=str)}")
        print(f"Final state: {json.dumps(results['final_state'], default=str)}")

        print("\nExplanation:")
        print("1. The update expression contained multiple action types: REMOVE,
SET, ADD, DELETE")
        print("2. DynamoDB processes these actions in this order: REMOVE, SET, ADD,
DELETE")
        print("3. First, 'to_remove' was removed")
        print("4. Then, 'to_modify' was set to a new value")
        print("5. Next, 'counter' was incremented by 5")
        print("6. Finally, 'B' was removed from the set attribute")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error demonstrating action order: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Updating multiple attributes in a single SET action")
    try:
        response = update_with_multiple_set_actions(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"OrderId": "order789"},
            attributes={
                "Status": "Shipped",
                "ShippingDate": "2025-05-14",
                "TrackingNumber": "1Z999AA10123456784",
            },
        )

        print(
            f"Multiple attributes updated successfully:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating multiple attributes: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Conditional value copying with if_not_exists")
    try:
        response = update_with_conditional_value_copying(
            table_name=table_name,
            key={"OrderId": "order101"},
            source_attribute="PreferredShippingMethod",
            target_attribute="ShippingMethod",
            default_value="Standard",
        )

        print(
            f"Conditional value copying result:
{json.dumps(response.get('Attributes', {}), default=str)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error with conditional value copying: {e}")

    print("\nKey Points About Update Expression Order of Operations:")
    print(
        "1. Variables in expressions hold copies of attribute values as they existed
BEFORE any modifications"
    )
    print(
        "2. Multiple actions in an update expression are processed in this order:
REMOVE, SET, ADD, DELETE"
    )
    print("3. Within each action type, operations are processed from left to right")
    print("4. You can reference the same attribute multiple times in an expression")
    print("5. You can use if_not_exists() to conditionally set values based on
attribute existence")
    print(
        "6. Using a single update expression with multiple actions is more efficient
than multiple separate updates"
    )
    print("7. The update expression is atomic - either all actions succeed or none
do")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update a table's warm throughput setting

The following code example shows how to update a table's warm throughput setting.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Update warm throughput setting on an existing DynamoDB table using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
from boto3 import client
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def update_dynamodb_table_warm_throughput(
    table_name,
    table_read_units,
    table_write_units,
    gsi_name,
    gsi_read_units,
    gsi_write_units,
    region_name="us-east-1",
):
    """
    Updates the warm throughput of a DynamoDB table and a global secondary index.

    :param table_name: The name of the table to update.
    :param table_read_units: The new read units per second for the table's warm
 throughput.
    :param table_write_units: The new write units per second for the table's warm
 throughput.
    :param gsi_name: The name of the global secondary index to update.
    :param gsi_read_units: The new read units per second for the GSI's warm
 throughput.
    :param gsi_write_units: The new write units per second for the GSI's warm
 throughput.
    :param region_name: The AWS Region name to target. defaults to us-east-1
    :return: The response from the update_table operation
    """
    try:
        ddb = client("dynamodb", region_name=region_name)

        # Update the table's warm throughput
        table_warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": table_read_units,
```

```
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": table_write_units,
        }

        # Update the global secondary index's warm throughput
        gsi_warm_throughput = {
            "ReadUnitsPerSecond": gsi_read_units,
            "WriteUnitsPerSecond": gsi_write_units,
        }

        # Construct the global secondary index update
        global_secondary_index_update = [
            {"Update": {"IndexName": gsi_name, "WarmThroughput":
 gsi_warm_throughput}}
        ]

        # Construct the update table request
        update_table_request = {
            "TableName": table_name,
            "GlobalSecondaryIndexUpdates": global_secondary_index_update,
            "WarmThroughput": table_warm_throughput,
        }

        # Update the table
        response = ddb.update_table(**update_table_request)
        print("Table updated successfully!")
        return response  # Make sure to return the response
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error updating table: {e}")
        raise e
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update an item's TTL

The following code example shows how to update an item's TTL.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
from datetime import datetime, timedelta

import boto3
```

```
def update_dynamodb_item(table_name, region, primary_key, sort_key):
    """
    Update an existing DynamoDB item with a TTL.
    :param table_name: Name of the DynamoDB table
    :param region: AWS Region of the table - example `us-east-1`
    :param primary_key: one attribute known as the partition key.
    :param sort_key: Also known as a range attribute.
    :return: Void (nothing)
    """
    try:
        # Create the DynamoDB resource.
        dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb", region_name=region)
        table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

        # Get the current time in epoch second format
        current_time = int(datetime.now().timestamp())

        # Calculate the expireAt time (90 days from now) in epoch second format
        expire_at = int((datetime.now() + timedelta(days=90)).timestamp())

        table.update_item(
            Key={"partitionKey": primary_key, "sortKey": sort_key},
            UpdateExpression="set updatedAt=:c, expireAt=:e",
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":c": current_time, ":e": expire_at},
        )

        print("Item updated successfully.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating item: {e}")


# Replace with your own values
update_dynamodb_item(
    "your-table-name", "us-west-2", "your-partition-key-value", "your-sort-key-
value"
)
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.
- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use atomic counter operations

The following code example shows how to use atomic counter operations in DynamoDB.

- Increment counters atomically using ADD and SET operations.
- Safely increment counters that might not exist.
- Implement optimistic locking for counter operations.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate atomic counter operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, Union


def increment_counter_with_add(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], counter_name: str, increment_value: int =
 1
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Increment a counter attribute using the ADD operation.

    This function demonstrates the atomic ADD operation, which is ideal for
    incrementing counters without the risk of race conditions.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to 1.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the ADD operation to atomically increment the counter
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="ADD #counter :increment",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response
```

```
def increment_counter_with_set(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], counter_name: str, increment_value: int =
 1
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Increment a counter attribute using the SET operation with an expression.

    This function demonstrates using SET with an expression to increment a counter.
    While this works, it's generally recommended to use ADD for simple increments.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to 1.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use the SET operation with an expression to increment the counter
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #counter = #counter + :increment",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def increment_counter_safely(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    counter_name: str,
    increment_value: int = 1,
    initial_value: int = 0,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
```

```
    """
    Increment a counter attribute safely, handling the case where it might not
 exist.

    This function demonstrates a best practice for incrementing counters by using
    the if_not_exists function to handle the case where the counter doesn't exist
 yet.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to 1.
        initial_value (int, optional): The initial value if the counter doesn't
 exist. Defaults to 0.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use SET with if_not_exists to safely increment the counter
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #counter = if_not_exists(#counter, :initial)
 + :increment",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value, ":initial":
 initial_value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def atomic_conditional_increment(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    counter_name: str,
    condition_attribute: str,
    condition_value: Any,
```

```
    increment_value: int = 1,
) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
    """
    Atomically increment a counter only if a condition is met.

    This function demonstrates combining atomic counter operations with
    conditional expressions for more complex update scenarios.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        counter_name (str): The name of the counter attribute.
        condition_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        condition_value (Any): The value to compare against.
        increment_value (int, optional): The value to increment by. Defaults to 1.

    Returns:
        Optional[Dict[str, Any]]: The response from DynamoDB if successful, None if
condition failed.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
        # Use ADD with a condition expression
        response = table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression="ADD #counter :increment",
            ConditionExpression="#condition = :value",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={"#counter": counter_name, "#condition":
condition_attribute},
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":increment": increment_value, ":value":
condition_value},
            ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
        )
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return None
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

Example usage of atomic counter operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the atomic counter operations functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "GameScores"
    key = {"UserId": "user123", "GameId": "game456"}
    counter_name = "Score"

    print("Example 1: Incrementing a counter with ADD operation")
    try:
        response = increment_counter_with_add(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, counter_name=counter_name,
 increment_value=10
        )
        print(
            f"Counter incremented successfully. New value:
 {response.get('Attributes', {}).get(counter_name)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error incrementing counter with ADD: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Incrementing a counter with SET operation")
    try:
        response = increment_counter_with_set(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, counter_name=counter_name,
 increment_value=5
        )
        print(
            f"Counter incremented successfully. New value:
 {response.get('Attributes', {}).get(counter_name)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error incrementing counter with SET: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Safely incrementing a counter that might not exist")
    try:
        new_key = {"UserId": "newuser789", "GameId": "game456"}
        response = increment_counter_safely(
```

```
            table_name=table_name,
            key=new_key,
            counter_name=counter_name,
            increment_value=15,
            initial_value=100,
        )
        print(
            f"Counter safely incremented. New value: {response.get('Attributes',
{}).get(counter_name)}"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error safely incrementing counter: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Conditional counter increment")
    try:
        # Fix for mypy: Handle the case where response might be None
        result = atomic_conditional_increment(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            counter_name="Achievements",
            condition_attribute="Level",
            condition_value=5,
            increment_value=1,
        )

        if result is not None:
            print(
                f"Conditional increment succeeded. New value:
{result.get('Attributes', {}).get('Achievements')}"
            )
        else:
            print("Conditional increment failed because condition was not met.")
        if response:
            print(
                f"Conditional increment succeeded. New value:
{response.get('Attributes', {}).get('Achievements')}"
            )
        else:
            print("Conditional increment failed because condition was not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error with conditional increment: {e}")

    print("\nComparison of ADD vs SET for counter operations:")
```

```
    print("1. ADD is specifically designed for atomic numeric increments and set
operations")
    print("2. SET with an expression can be used for more complex calculations")
    print("3. Both operations are atomic, preventing race conditions")
    print("4. ADD is more concise for simple increments")
    print("5. SET with if_not_exists() is recommended when the attribute might not
exist")
    print("6. For counters, ADD is generally preferred for clarity and simplicity")
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use conditional operations

The following code example shows how to use conditional operations in DynamoDB.

- Implement conditional writes to prevent overwriting data.
- Use condition expressions to enforce business rules.
- Handle conditional check failures gracefully.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate conditional operations using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, Optional, Tuple, Union


def conditional_update(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    condition_attribute: str,
    condition_value: Any,
    update_attribute: str,
    update_value: Any,
) -> Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]:
    """
    Update an item only if a condition is met.
```

```
    This function demonstrates how to perform a conditional update operation
    and determine if the condition was met.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        condition_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        condition_value (Any): The value to compare against.
        update_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        update_value (Any): The new value to set.

    Returns:
        Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]: A tuple containing:
            - A boolean indicating if the update succeeded
            - The response from DynamoDB if successful, None otherwise
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
        # Perform the conditional update
        response = table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression="SET #update_attr = :update_val",
            ConditionExpression="#cond_attr = :cond_val",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={
                "#update_attr": update_attribute,
                "#cond_attr": condition_attribute,
            },
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":update_val": update_value, ":cond_val":
condition_value},
            ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
        )
        # Update succeeded, condition was met
        return True, response
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return False, None
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

```
def conditional_delete(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], condition_attribute: str, condition_value:
 Any
) -> bool:
    """
    Delete an item only if a condition is met.

    This function demonstrates how to perform a conditional delete operation
    and determine if the condition was met.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to delete.
        condition_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        condition_value (Any): The value to compare against.

    Returns:
        bool: True if the delete succeeded (condition was met), False otherwise.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
        # Perform the conditional delete
        table.delete_item(
            Key=key,
            ConditionExpression="#attr = :val",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={"#attr": condition_attribute},
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":val": condition_value},
        )
        # Delete succeeded, condition was met
        return True
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return False
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

```
def optimistic_locking_update(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    version_attribute: str,
    update_attribute: str,
    update_value: Any,
) -> Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]:
    """
    Update an item using optimistic locking with a version attribute.

    This function demonstrates how to implement optimistic locking using
    a version attribute that is incremented with each update.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        version_attribute (str): The name of the version attribute.
        update_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        update_value (Any): The new value to set.

    Returns:
        Tuple[bool, Optional[Dict[str, Any]]]: A tuple containing:
            - A boolean indicating if the update succeeded
            - The response from DynamoDB if successful, None otherwise
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # First, get the current version
    try:
        response = table.get_item(
            Key=key,
            ProjectionExpression=f"#{version_attribute}",
            ExpressionAttributeNames={f"#{version_attribute}": version_attribute},
        )

        item = response.get("Item", {})
        current_version = item.get(version_attribute, 0)

        # Now, try to update with a condition on the version
        try:
            update_response = table.update_item(
                Key=key,
```

```
                UpdateExpression=f"SET #{update_attribute} = :update_val,
 #{version_attribute} = :new_version",
                ConditionExpression=f"#{version_attribute} = :current_version",
                ExpressionAttributeNames={
                    f"#{update_attribute}": update_attribute,
                    f"#{version_attribute}": version_attribute,
                },
                ExpressionAttributeValues={
                    ":update_val": update_value,
                    ":current_version": current_version,
                    ":new_version": current_version + 1,
                },
                ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
            )
            # Update succeeded
            return True, update_response
        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
                # Version has changed, optimistic locking failed
                return False, None
            else:
                # Other error occurred
                raise
    except ClientError:
        # Error getting the item
        raise


def conditional_check_and_update(
    table_name: str,
    key: Dict[str, Any],
    check_attribute: str,
    check_value: Any,
    update_attribute: str,
    update_value: Any,
    create_if_not_exists: bool = False,
) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
    """
    Check if an attribute has a specific value and update another attribute if it
 does.

    This function demonstrates a more complex conditional update that can also
    create the item if it doesn't exist.
```

```
    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        check_attribute (str): The attribute to check in the condition.
        check_value (Any): The value to compare against.
        update_attribute (str): The attribute to update.
        update_value (Any): The new value to set.
        create_if_not_exists (bool, optional): Whether to create the item if it
doesn't exist.

    Returns:
        Union[Dict[str, Any], None]: The response from DynamoDB if successful, None
otherwise.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    try:
        if create_if_not_exists:
            # Use attribute_not_exists to create the item if it doesn't exist
            condition_expression = "attribute_not_exists(#pk) OR #check_attr
= :check_val"
            update_expression = "SET #update_attr = :update_val, #check_attr =
if_not_exists(#check_attr, :check_val)"

            # Get the partition key name from the key dictionary
            pk_name = next(iter(key))

            expression_attribute_names = {
                "#pk": pk_name,
                "#check_attr": check_attribute,
                "#update_attr": update_attribute,
            }
        else:
            # Only update if the check attribute has the expected value
            condition_expression = "#check_attr = :check_val"
            update_expression = "SET #update_attr = :update_val"

            expression_attribute_names = {
                "#check_attr": check_attribute,
                "#update_attr": update_attribute,
            }
```

```
        # Perform the conditional update
        response = table.update_item(
            Key=key,
            UpdateExpression=update_expression,
            ConditionExpression=condition_expression,
            ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
            ExpressionAttributeValues={":check_val": check_value, ":update_val":
 update_value},
            ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
        )
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConditionalCheckFailedException":
            # Condition was not met
            return None
        else:
            # Other error occurred
            raise
```

Example usage of conditional operations with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use the conditional operations functions."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    key = {"ProductId": "prod123"}

    print("Example 1: Conditional Update")
    try:
        # Update the price only if the current stock is greater than 10
        success, response = conditional_update(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            condition_attribute="Stock",
            condition_value=10,
            update_attribute="Price",
            update_value=99.99,
        )

        if success:
```

```
            # Fix for mypy: Handle the case where response might be None
            attributes = {} if response is None else response.get("Attributes", {})
            print(f"Update succeeded! New values: {attributes}")
        else:
            print("Update failed because the condition was not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during conditional update: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Conditional Delete")
    try:
        # Delete the product only if it's discontinued
        success = conditional_delete(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            condition_attribute="Status",
            condition_value="Discontinued",
        )

        if success:
            print("Delete succeeded! The item was deleted.")
        else:
            print("Delete failed because the condition was not met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during conditional delete: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Optimistic Locking")
    try:
        # Update with optimistic locking using a version attribute
        success, response = optimistic_locking_update(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            version_attribute="Version",
            update_attribute="Description",
            update_value="Updated product description",
        )

        if success:
            # Fix for mypy: Handle the case where response might be None
            attributes = {} if response is None else response.get("Attributes", {})
            print(f"Optimistic locking update succeeded! New values: {attributes}")
        else:
            print("Optimistic locking update failed because the version has
changed.")
    except Exception as e:
```

```
        print(f"Error during optimistic locking update: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Conditional Check and Update")
    try:
        # Update the featured status if the product is in stock
        response = conditional_check_and_update(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            check_attribute="InStock",
            check_value=True,
            update_attribute="Featured",
            update_value=True,
            create_if_not_exists=True,
        )

        if response:
            print(
                f"Conditional check and update succeeded! New values:
{response.get('Attributes', {})}"
            )
        else:
            print("Conditional check and update failed because the condition was not
met.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error during conditional check and update: {e}")

    print("\nUnderstanding Conditional Operations in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Conditional operations help maintain data integrity")
    print("2. They prevent race conditions in concurrent environments")
    print("3. Failed conditions result in ConditionalCheckFailedException")
    print("4. No DynamoDB capacity is consumed when conditions fail")
    print("5. Optimistic locking is a common pattern using version attributes")
    print("6. Conditions can be combined with logical operators (AND, OR, NOT)")
    print("7. Conditions can use comparison operators (=, <>, <, <=, >, >=)")
    print(
        "8. attribute_exists() and attribute_not_exists() are useful for checking
attribute presence"
    )
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

- DeleteItem
- PutItem
- UpdateItem

Use expression attribute names

The following code example shows how to use expression attribute names in DynamoDB.

- Work with reserved words in DynamoDB expressions.
- Use expression attribute name placeholders.
- Handle special characters in attribute names.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Demonstrate expression attribute names using AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from typing import Any, Dict, List


def use_reserved_word_attribute(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], reserved_word: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an attribute whose name is a DynamoDB reserved word.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to work with
    attributes that have names that are DynamoDB reserved words.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        reserved_word (str): The reserved word to use as an attribute name.
        value (Any): The value to set for the attribute.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
```

```
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use expression attribute names to handle the reserved word
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #reserved_attr = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#reserved_attr": reserved_word},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def use_special_character_attribute(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], attribute_with_special_chars: str, value:
 Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update an attribute whose name contains special characters.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to work with
    attributes that have names containing special characters like spaces, dots, or
 hyphens.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        attribute_with_special_chars (str): The attribute name with special
 characters.
        value (Any): The value to set for the attribute.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use expression attribute names to handle special characters
    response = table.update_item(
```

```
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression="SET #special_attr = :value",
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#special_attr": attribute_with_special_chars},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def query_with_attribute_names(
    table_name: str,
    partition_key_name: str,
    partition_key_value: str,
    filter_attribute_name: str,
    filter_value: Any,
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Query a table using expression attribute names for both key and filter
 attributes.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names in a query
 operation
    for both the key condition expression and filter expression.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        partition_key_name (str): The name of the partition key attribute.
        partition_key_value (str): The value of the partition key to query.
        filter_attribute_name (str): The name of the attribute to filter on.
        filter_value (Any): The value to compare against in the filter.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the query results.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Use expression attribute names for both key condition and filter
    response = table.query(
        KeyConditionExpression="#pk = :pk_val",
        FilterExpression="#filter_attr = :filter_val",
```

```
        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#pk": partition_key_name, "#filter_attr":
 filter_attribute_name},
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":pk_val": partition_key_value, ":filter_val":
 filter_value},
    )

    return response


def update_nested_attribute_with_dots(
    table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any], path_with_dots: str, value: Any
) -> Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Update a nested attribute using a path with dot notation.

    This function demonstrates how to use expression attribute names to work with
    nested attributes specified using dot notation.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.
        path_with_dots (str): The path to the nested attribute using dot notation
 (e.g., "a.b.c").
        value (Any): The value to set for the nested attribute.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: The response from DynamoDB containing the updated attribute
 values.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Split the path into components
    path_parts = path_with_dots.split(".")

    # Build the update expression and attribute names
    update_expression = "SET "
    expression_attribute_names = {}

    # Build the path expression
    path_expression = ""
    for i, part in enumerate(path_parts):
        name_placeholder = f"#attr{i}"
```

```
        expression_attribute_names[name_placeholder] = part

        if i == 0:
            path_expression = name_placeholder
        else:
            path_expression += f".{name_placeholder}"

    # Complete the update expression
    update_expression += f"{path_expression} = :value"

    # Execute the update
    response = table.update_item(
        Key=key,
        UpdateExpression=update_expression,
        ExpressionAttributeNames=expression_attribute_names,
        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": value},
        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
    )

    return response


def demonstrate_attribute_name_requirements(table_name: str, key: Dict[str, Any]) ->
 Dict[str, Any]:
    """
    Demonstrate the requirements and allowed characters for attribute names.

    This function shows examples of valid and invalid attribute names and how to
    handle them using expression attribute names.

    Args:
        table_name (str): The name of the DynamoDB table.
        key (Dict[str, Any]): The primary key of the item to update.

    Returns:
        Dict[str, Any]: A dictionary containing the results of the demonstration.
    """
    # Initialize the DynamoDB resource
    dynamodb = boto3.resource("dynamodb")
    table = dynamodb.Table(table_name)

    # Examples of attribute names with different characteristics
    examples = {
```

```
        "valid_standard": "NormalAttribute",  # Standard attribute name (no
placeholder needed)
        "valid_with_underscore": "Normal_Attribute",  # Underscore is allowed
        "valid_with_number": "Attribute123",  # Numbers are allowed
        "reserved_word": "Timestamp",  # Reserved word (requires placeholder)
        "starts_with_number": "123Attribute",  # Starts with number (valid but may
need placeholder in some contexts)
        "with_space": "Attribute Name",  # Contains space (requires placeholder)
        "with_dot": "Attribute.Name",  # Contains dot (requires placeholder)
        "with_hyphen": "Attribute-Name",  # Contains hyphen (requires placeholder)
        "with_special_chars": "Attribute#$%",  # Contains special characters
(requires placeholder)
    }

    results = {}

    # Try to update each attribute type
    for example_type, attr_name in examples.items():
        try:
            # For attributes that don't need placeholders, try direct reference
            if example_type in ["valid_standard", "valid_with_underscore",
"valid_with_number"]:
                try:
                    # Try without expression attribute names first
                    response = table.update_item(
                        Key=key,
                        UpdateExpression=f"SET {attr_name} = :value",
                        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": f"Value for
{attr_name}"},
                        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
                    )
                    results[example_type] = {
                        "attribute_name": attr_name,
                        "success": True,
                        "needed_placeholder": False,
                        "response": response,
                    }
                except ClientError:
                    # If direct reference fails, try with placeholder
                    response = table.update_item(
                        Key=key,
                        UpdateExpression="SET #attr = :value",
                        ExpressionAttributeNames={"#attr": attr_name},
```

```
                        ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": f"Value for
 {attr_name}"},
                        ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
                    )
                    results[example_type] = {
                        "attribute_name": attr_name,
                        "success": True,
                        "needed_placeholder": True,
                        "response": response,
                    }
            else:
                # For attributes that definitely need placeholders
                response = table.update_item(
                    Key=key,
                    UpdateExpression="SET #attr = :value",
                    ExpressionAttributeNames={"#attr": attr_name},
                    ExpressionAttributeValues={":value": f"Value for {attr_name}"},
                    ReturnValues="UPDATED_NEW",
                )
                results[example_type] = {
                    "attribute_name": attr_name,
                    "success": True,
                    "needed_placeholder": True,
                    "response": response,
                }
        except ClientError as e:
            results[example_type] = {"attribute_name": attr_name, "success": False,
 "error": str(e)}

    return results
```

Example usage of expression attribute names with AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

```
def example_usage():
    """Example of how to use expression attribute names in DynamoDB."""
    # Example parameters
    table_name = "Products"
    key = {"ProductId": "prod123"}

    print("Example 1: Using a reserved word as an attribute name")
```

```
    try:
        response = use_reserved_word_attribute(
            table_name=table_name, key=key, reserved_word="Timestamp",
value="2025-05-14T12:00:00Z"
        )
        print(f"Reserved word attribute updated successfully:
{response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating reserved word attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 2: Using an attribute name with special characters")
    try:
        response = use_special_character_attribute(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
            attribute_with_special_chars="Product Info",
            value="Special product information",
        )
        print(f"Special character attribute updated successfully:
{response.get('Attributes', {})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating special character attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 3: Querying with expression attribute names")
    try:
        response = query_with_attribute_names(
            table_name=table_name,
            partition_key_name="Category",
            partition_key_value="Electronics",
            filter_attribute_name="Price",
            filter_value=500,
        )
        print(
            f"Query with expression attribute names returned
{len(response.get('Items', []))} items"
        )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error querying with expression attribute names: {e}")

    print("\nExample 4: Updating a nested attribute with dot notation")
    try:
        response = update_nested_attribute_with_dots(
            table_name=table_name,
            key=key,
```

```
            path_with_dots="Product.Details.Specifications",
            value={"Weight": "2.5 kg", "Dimensions": "30x20x10 cm"},
        )
        print(f"Nested attribute updated successfully: {response.get('Attributes',
{})}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error updating nested attribute: {e}")

    print("\nExample 5: Demonstrating attribute name requirements")
    try:
        results = demonstrate_attribute_name_requirements(table_name=table_name,
key=key)

        print("Attribute Name Requirements Results:")
        for example_type, result in results.items():
            if result.get("success", False):
                needed_placeholder = result.get("needed_placeholder", True)
                print(
                    f"  - {example_type}: '{result['attribute_name']}' - {'Requires'
if needed_placeholder else 'Does not require'} placeholder"
                )
            else:
                print(
                    f"  - {example_type}: '{result['attribute_name']}' - Failed:
{result.get('error', 'Unknown error')}"
                )
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error demonstrating attribute name requirements: {e}")

    print("\nCommon DynamoDB Reserved Words (sample):")
    reserved_words = get_common_reserved_words()
    print(", ".join(reserved_words[:20]) + "... (and many more)")

    print("\nWhen to Use Expression Attribute Names:")
    print("1. When the attribute name is a DynamoDB reserved word")
    print("2. When the attribute name contains special characters (spaces, dots,
hyphens)")
    print("3. When the attribute name begins with a number")
    print("4. When working with nested attributes using dot notation")
    print("5. When you need to reference the same attribute multiple times in an
expression")

    print("\nExpression Attribute Name Requirements:")
    print("1. Must begin with a pound sign (#)")
```

```
    print("2. After the pound sign, must contain at least one character")
    print("3. Can contain alphanumeric characters and underscore (_)")
    print("4. Are case-sensitive")
    print("5. Must be unique within a single expression")

    print("\nAttribute Name Requirements in DynamoDB:")
    print("1. Can begin with a-z, A-Z, or 0-9")
    print("2. Can contain a-z, A-Z, 0-9, underscore (_), dash (-), and dot (.)")
    print("3. Are case-sensitive")
    print("4. No length restrictions, but practical limits apply")
    print("5. Cannot be a DynamoDB reserved word if used directly in expressions")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - Query
  - UpdateItem

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    print(json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    for record in event['Records']:
        log_dynamodb_record(record)

def log_dynamodb_record(record):
    print(record['eventID'])
    print(record['eventName'])
    print(f"DynamoDB Record: {json.dumps(record['dynamodb'])}")
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def hello_ec2(ec2_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list the security groups in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                       access to AWS EC2 services.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon EC2! Let's list up to 10 of your security groups:")
    try:
        paginator = ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")
        response_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={'MaxItems': 10}) #
 List only 10 security groups.
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO) # Enable logging.
        for page in response_iterator:
            for sg in page["SecurityGroups"]:
                logger.info(f"\t{sg['GroupId']}: {sg['GroupName']}")
```

```
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error("Failed to list security groups.")
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDeniedException":
            logger.error("You do not have permission to list security groups.")
        raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_ec2(boto3.client("ec2"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class EC2InstanceScenario:
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to manage Amazon EC2 resources.
    Covers creating a key pair, security group, launching an instance, associating
    an Elastic IP, and cleaning up resources.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        inst_wrapper: EC2InstanceWrapper,
        key_wrapper: KeyPairWrapper,
        sg_wrapper: SecurityGroupWrapper,
        eip_wrapper: ElasticIpWrapper,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        remote_exec: bool = False,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceScenario with the necessary AWS service wrappers.

        :param inst_wrapper: Wrapper for EC2 instance operations.
        :param key_wrapper: Wrapper for key pair operations.
        :param sg_wrapper: Wrapper for security group operations.
        :param eip_wrapper: Wrapper for Elastic IP operations.
        :param ssm_client: Boto3 client for accessing SSM to retrieve AMIs.
        :param remote_exec: Flag to indicate if the scenario is running in a remote
 execution
                            environment. Defaults to False. If True, the script
 won't prompt
                            for user interaction.
        """
        self.inst_wrapper = inst_wrapper
        self.key_wrapper = key_wrapper
        self.sg_wrapper = sg_wrapper
        self.eip_wrapper = eip_wrapper
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.remote_exec = remote_exec

    def create_and_list_key_pairs(self) -> None:
        """
        Creates an RSA key pair for SSH access to the EC2 instance and lists
 available key pairs.
        """
```

```
        console.print("**Step 1: Create a Secure Key Pair**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print(
            "Let's create a secure RSA key pair for connecting to your EC2
instance."
        )
        key_name = f"MyUniqueKeyPair-{uuid.uuid4().hex[:8]}"
        console.print(f"- **Key Pair Name**: {key_name}")

        # Create the key pair and simulate the process with a progress bar.
        with alive_bar(1, title="Creating Key Pair") as bar:
            self.key_wrapper.create(key_name)
            time.sleep(0.4)  # Simulate the delay in key creation
            bar()

        console.print(f"- **Private Key Saved to**:
{self.key_wrapper.key_file_path}\n")

        # List key pairs (simulated) and show a progress bar.
        list_keys = True
        if list_keys:
            console.print("- Listing your key pairs...")
            start_time = time.time()
            with alive_bar(100, title="Listing Key Pairs") as bar:
                while time.time() - start_time < 2:
                    time.sleep(0.2)
                    bar(10)
                self.key_wrapper.list(5)
                if time.time() - start_time > 2:
                    console.print(
                        "Taking longer than expected! Please wait...",
                        style="bold yellow",
                    )

    def create_security_group(self) -> None:
        """
        Creates a security group that controls access to the EC2 instance and adds a
rule
        to allow SSH access from the user's current public IP address.
        """
        console.print("**Step 2: Create a Security Group**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print(
            "Security groups manage access to your instance. Let's create one."
        )
        sg_name = f"MySecurityGroup-{uuid.uuid4().hex[:8]}"
```

```
        console.print(f"- **Security Group Name**: {sg_name}")

        # Create the security group and simulate the process with a progress bar.
        with alive_bar(1, title="Creating Security Group") as bar:
            self.sg_wrapper.create(
                sg_name, "Security group for example: get started with instances."
            )
            time.sleep(0.5)
            bar()

        console.print(f"- **Security Group ID**:
{self.sg_wrapper.security_group}\n")

        # Get the current public IP to set up SSH access.
        ip_response = urllib.request.urlopen("http://checkip.amazonaws.com")
        current_ip_address = ip_response.read().decode("utf-8").strip()
        console.print(
            "Let's add a rule to allow SSH only from your current IP address."
        )
        console.print(f"- **Your Public IP Address**: {current_ip_address}")
        console.print("- Automatically adding SSH rule...")

        # Update security group rules to allow SSH and simulate with a progress bar.
        with alive_bar(1, title="Updating Security Group Rules") as bar:
            response = self.sg_wrapper.authorize_ingress(current_ip_address)
            time.sleep(0.4)
            if response and response.get("Return"):
                console.print("- **Security Group Rules Updated**.")
            else:
                console.print(
                    "- **Error**: Couldn't update security group rules.",
                    style="bold red",
                )
            bar()

        self.sg_wrapper.describe(self.sg_wrapper.security_group)

    def create_instance(self) -> None:
        """
        Launches an EC2 instance using an Amazon Linux 2 AMI and the created key
pair
        and security group. Displays instance details and SSH connection
information.
        """
```

```
        # Retrieve Amazon Linux 2 AMIs from SSM.
        ami_paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("get_parameters_by_path")
        ami_options = []
        for page in ami_paginator.paginate(Path="/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-
latest"):
            ami_options += page["Parameters"]
        amzn2_images = self.inst_wrapper.get_images(
            [opt["Value"] for opt in ami_options if "amzn2" in opt["Name"]]
        )
        console.print("\n**Step 3: Launch Your Instance**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print(
            "Let's create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI. Here are some
 options:"
        )
        image_choice = 0
        console.print(f"- Selected AMI: {amzn2_images[image_choice]['ImageId']}\n")

        # Display instance types compatible with the selected AMI
        inst_types = self.inst_wrapper.get_instance_types(
            amzn2_images[image_choice]["Architecture"]
        )
        inst_type_choice = 0
        console.print(
            f"- Selected instance type: {inst_types[inst_type_choice]
['InstanceType']}\n"
        )

        console.print("Creating your instance and waiting for it to start...")
        with alive_bar(1, title="Creating Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.create(
                amzn2_images[image_choice]["ImageId"],
                inst_types[inst_type_choice]["InstanceType"],
                self.key_wrapper.key_pair["KeyName"],
                [self.sg_wrapper.security_group],
            )
            time.sleep(21)
            bar()

        console.print(f"**Success! Your instance is ready:**\n", style="bold green")
        self.inst_wrapper.display()

        console.print(
            "You can use SSH to connect to your instance. "
```

```
            "If the connection attempt times out, you might have to manually update
"
            "the SSH ingress rule for your IP address in the AWS Management
Console."
        )
        self._display_ssh_info()

    def _display_ssh_info(self) -> None:
        """
        Displays SSH connection information for the user to connect to the EC2
instance.
        Handles the case where the instance does or does not have an associated
public IP address.
        """
        if (
            not self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips
            or not self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips[0].allocation_id
        ):
            if self.inst_wrapper.instances:
                instance = self.inst_wrapper.instances[0]
                instance_id = instance["InstanceId"]

                waiter = self.inst_wrapper.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
                console.print(
                    "Waiting for the instance to be in a running state with a public
IP...",
                    style="bold cyan",
                )

                with alive_bar(1, title="Waiting for Instance to Start") as bar:
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
                    time.sleep(20)
                    bar()

                instance = self.inst_wrapper.ec2_client.describe_instances(
                    InstanceIds=[instance_id]
                )["Reservations"][0]["Instances"][0]

                public_ip = instance.get("PublicIpAddress")
                if public_ip:
                    console.print(
                        "\nTo connect via SSH, open another command prompt and run
the following command:",
                        style="bold cyan",
```

```
                    )
                    console.print(
                        f"\tssh -i {self.key_wrapper.key_file_path} ec2-
user@{public_ip}"
                    )
                else:
                    console.print(
                        "Instance does not have a public IP address assigned.",
                        style="bold red",
                    )
            else:
                console.print(
                    "No instance available to retrieve public IP address.",
                    style="bold red",
                )
        else:
            elastic_ip = self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips[0]
            elastic_ip_address = elastic_ip.public_ip
            console.print(
                f"\tssh -i {self.key_wrapper.key_file_path} ec2-
user@{elastic_ip_address}"
            )

        if not self.remote_exec:
            console.print("\nOpen a new terminal tab to try the above SSH command.")
            input("Press Enter to continue...")

    def associate_elastic_ip(self) -> None:
        """
        Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the EC2 instance.
        Displays the Elastic IP address and SSH connection information.
        """
        console.print("\n**Step 4: Allocate an Elastic IP Address**", style="bold
 cyan")
        console.print(
            "You can allocate an Elastic IP address and associate it with your
 instance\n"
            "to keep a consistent IP address even when your instance restarts."
        )

        with alive_bar(1, title="Allocating Elastic IP") as bar:
            elastic_ip = self.eip_wrapper.allocate()
            time.sleep(0.5)
            bar()
```

```
        console.print(
            f"- **Allocated Static Elastic IP Address**: {elastic_ip.public_ip}."
        )

        with alive_bar(1, title="Associating Elastic IP") as bar:
            self.eip_wrapper.associate(
                elastic_ip.allocation_id, self.inst_wrapper.instances[0]
["InstanceId"]
            )
            time.sleep(2)
            bar()

        console.print(f"- **Associated Elastic IP with Your Instance**.")
        console.print(
            "You can now use SSH to connect to your instance by using the Elastic
 IP."
        )
        self._display_ssh_info()

    def stop_and_start_instance(self) -> None:
        """
        Stops and restarts the EC2 instance. Displays instance state and explains
        changes that occur when the instance is restarted, such as the potential
 change
        in the public IP address unless an Elastic IP is associated.
        """
        console.print("\n**Step 5: Stop and Start Your Instance**", style="bold
 cyan")
        console.print("Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes.")
        console.print("- **Stopping your instance and waiting until it's
 stopped...**")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Stopping Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.stop()
            time.sleep(360)
            bar()

        console.print("- **Your instance is stopped. Restarting...**")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Starting Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.start()
            time.sleep(20)
            bar()
```

```
        console.print("**Your instance is running.**", style="bold green")
        self.inst_wrapper.display()

        elastic_ip = (
            self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips[0] if self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips else
None
        )

        if elastic_ip is None or elastic_ip.allocation_id is None:
            console.print(
                "- **Note**: Every time your instance is restarted, its public IP
address changes."
            )
        else:
            console.print(
                f"Because you have associated an Elastic IP with your instance, you
can \n"
                f"connect by using a consistent IP address after the instance
restarts: {elastic_ip.public_ip}"
            )

        self._display_ssh_info()

    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Cleans up all the resources created during the scenario, including
disassociating
        and releasing the Elastic IP, terminating the instance, deleting the
security
        group, and deleting the key pair.
        """
        console.print("\n**Step 6: Clean Up Resources**", style="bold cyan")
        console.print("Cleaning up resources:")

        for elastic_ip in self.eip_wrapper.elastic_ips:
            console.print(f"- **Elastic IP**: {elastic_ip.public_ip}")

            with alive_bar(1, title="Disassociating Elastic IP") as bar:
                self.eip_wrapper.disassociate(elastic_ip.allocation_id)
                time.sleep(2)
                bar()

            console.print("\t- **Disassociated Elastic IP from the Instance**")
```

```
            with alive_bar(1, title="Releasing Elastic IP") as bar:
                self.eip_wrapper.release(elastic_ip.allocation_id)
                time.sleep(1)
                bar()

            console.print("\t- **Released Elastic IP**")

        console.print(f"- **Instance**: {self.inst_wrapper.instances[0]
['InstanceId']}")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Terminating Instance") as bar:
            self.inst_wrapper.terminate()
            time.sleep(380)
            bar()

        console.print("\t- **Terminated Instance**")

        console.print(f"- **Security Group**: {self.sg_wrapper.security_group}")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Deleting Security Group") as bar:
            self.sg_wrapper.delete(self.sg_wrapper.security_group)
            time.sleep(1)
            bar()

        console.print("\t- **Deleted Security Group**")

        console.print(f"- **Key Pair**: {self.key_wrapper.key_pair['KeyName']}")

        with alive_bar(1, title="Deleting Key Pair") as bar:
            self.key_wrapper.delete(self.key_wrapper.key_pair["KeyName"])
            time.sleep(0.4)
            bar()

        console.print("\t- **Deleted Key Pair**")

    def run_scenario(self) -> None:
        """
        Executes the entire EC2 instance scenario: creates key pairs, security
 groups,
        launches an instance, associates an Elastic IP, and cleans up all resources.
        """
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
```

```
        console.print("-" * 88)
        console.print(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) get started
 with instances demo.",
            style="bold magenta",
        )
        console.print("-" * 88)

        self.create_and_list_key_pairs()
        self.create_security_group()
        self.create_instance()
        self.stop_and_start_instance()
        self.associate_elastic_ip()
        self.stop_and_start_instance()
        self.cleanup()

        console.print("\nThanks for watching!", style="bold green")
        console.print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = EC2InstanceScenario(
            EC2InstanceWrapper.from_client(),
            KeyPairWrapper.from_client(),
            SecurityGroupWrapper.from_client(),
            ElasticIpWrapper.from_client(),
            boto3.client("ssm"),
        )
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps key pair actions.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
    """

    def __init__(
```

```
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def create(self, key_name: str) -> dict:
        """
        Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2 instance.
        The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
        again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
```

```
        :return: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object that represents
the newly created key pair.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in creating the key pair, for
example, if a key pair with the same name already exists.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            self.key_pair = response
            self.key_file_path = os.path.join(
                self.key_file_dir.name, f"{self.key_pair['KeyName']}.pem"
            )
            with open(self.key_file_path, "w") as key_file:
                key_file.write(self.key_pair["KeyMaterial"])
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"A key pair called {key_name} already exists. "
                    "Please choose a different name for your key pair "
                    "or delete the existing key pair before creating."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.key_pair


    def list(self, limit: Optional[int] = None) -> None:
        """
        Displays a list of key pairs for the current account.

        WARNING: Results are not paginated.

        :param limit: The maximum number of key pairs to list. If not specified,
                      all key pairs will be listed.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in listing the key pairs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_key_pairs()
            key_pairs = response.get("KeyPairs", [])

            if limit:
                key_pairs = key_pairs[:limit]

            for key_pair in key_pairs:
                logger.info(
```

```
                    f"Found {key_pair['KeyType']} key '{key_pair['KeyName']}' with
fingerprint:"
                )
                logger.info(f"\t{key_pair['KeyFingerprint']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to list key pairs: {str(err)}")
            raise


    def delete(self, key_name: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes a key pair by its name.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to delete.
        :return: A boolean indicating whether the deletion was successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in deleting the key pair, for
example,
                                if the key pair does not exist.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted key pair: {key_name}")
            self.key_pair = None
            return True
        except self.ec2_client.exceptions.ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for key pair: {key_name}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"The key pair '{key_name}' does not exist and cannot be
deleted. "
                    "Please verify the key pair name and try again."
                )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps security group actions.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a high-
level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(self, group_name: str, group_description: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a security group in the default virtual private cloud (VPC) of the
 current account.

        :param group_name: The name of the security group to create.
        :param group_description: The description of the security group to create.
        :return: The ID of the newly created security group.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling for
 ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_security_group(
                GroupName=group_name, Description=group_description
```

```
            )
            self.security_group = response["GroupId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExists":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{group_name}' already exists. Please choose a
different name."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.security_group


    def authorize_ingress(self, ssh_ingress_ip: str) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Adds a rule to the security group to allow access to SSH.

        :param ssh_ingress_ip: The IP address that is granted inbound access to
connect
                               to port 22 over TCP, used for SSH.
        :return: The response to the authorization request. The 'Return' field of
the
                 response indicates whether the request succeeded or failed, or None
if no security group is set.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling for
ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        if self.security_group is None:
            logger.info("No security group to update.")
            return None

        try:
            ip_permissions = [
                {
                    # SSH ingress open to only the specified IP address.
                    "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                    "FromPort": 22,
                    "ToPort": 22,
                    "IpRanges": [{"CidrIp": f"{ssh_ingress_ip}/32"}],
                }
            ]
            response = self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=self.security_group, IpPermissions=ip_permissions
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"The SSH ingress rule for IP {ssh_ingress_ip} already exists"
                    f"in security group '{self.security_group}'."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def describe(self, security_group_id: Optional[str] = None) -> bool:
        """
        Displays information about the specified security group or all security
groups if no ID is provided.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to describe.
                                  If None, an open search is performed to describe
all security groups.
        :returns: True if the description is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the security group(s),
such as an invalid security group ID.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")

            if security_group_id is None:
                # If no ID is provided, return all security groups.
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
            else:
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate(GroupIds=[security_group_id])

            for page in page_iterator:
                for security_group in page["SecurityGroups"]:
                    print(f"Security group: {security_group['GroupName']}")
                    print(f"\tID: {security_group['GroupId']}")
                    print(f"\tVPC: {security_group['VpcId']}")
                    if security_group["IpPermissions"]:
                        print("Inbound permissions:")
                        pp(security_group["IpPermissions"])

            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error("Failed to describe security group(s).")
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group {security_group_id} does not exist "
                    f"because the specified security group ID was not found."
                )
            raise


    def delete(self, security_group_id: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes the specified security group.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to delete. Required.

        :returns: True if the deletion is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If the security group cannot be deleted due to an AWS
service error.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_security_group(GroupId=security_group_id)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted because
it does not exist."
                )
            elif error_code == "DependencyViolation":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted because
it is still in use."
                    " Verify that it is:"
                    "\n\t- Detached from resources"
                    "\n\t- Removed from references in other groups"
                    "\n\t- Removed from VPC's as a default group"
                )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps instance actions.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                            access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                           wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(
        self,
        image_id: str,
        instance_type: str,
        key_pair_name: str,
```

```
        security_group_ids: Optional[List[str]] = None,
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Creates a new EC2 instance in the default VPC of the current account.

        The instance starts immediately after it is created.

        :param image_id: The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the
 instance.
        :param instance_type: The type of instance to create, such as 't2.micro'.
        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to use for SSH access.
        :param security_group_ids: A list of security group IDs to associate with
 the instance.
                                   If not specified, the default security group of
 the VPC is used.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance objects
 representing the newly created instances.
        """
        try:
            instance_params = {
                "ImageId": image_id,
                "InstanceType": instance_type,
                "KeyName": key_pair_name,
            }
            if security_group_ids is not None:
                instance_params["SecurityGroupIds"] = security_group_ids

            response = self.ec2_client.run_instances(
                **instance_params, MinCount=1, MaxCount=1
            )
            instance = response["Instances"][0]
            self.instances.append(instance)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance["InstanceId"]])
        except ClientError as err:
            params_str = "\n\t".join(
                f"{key}: {value}" for key, value in instance_params.items()
            )
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to complete instance creation request.\nRequest details:
{params_str}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InstanceLimitExceeded":
```

```
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type '{instance_type}'.
"
                        "Terminate unused instances or contact AWS Support for a
limit increase."
                    )
                )
            if error_code == "InsufficientInstanceCapacity":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type '{instance_type}'.
"
                        "Select a different instance type or launch in a different
availability zone."
                    )
                )
            raise
        return self.instances


    def display(self, state_filter: Optional[str] = "running") -> None:
        """
        Displays information about instances, filtering by the specified state.

        :param state_filter: The instance state to include in the output. Only
instances in this state
                             will be displayed. Default is 'running'. Example
states: 'running', 'stopped'.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to display.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instances")
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(InstanceIds=instance_ids)

        try:
            for page in page_iterator:
                for reservation in page["Reservations"]:
                    for instance in reservation["Instances"]:
                        instance_state = instance["State"]["Name"]
```

```
                        # Apply the state filter (default is 'running')
                        if state_filter and instance_state != state_filter:
                            continue  # Skip this instance if it doesn't match the
 filter

                        # Create a formatted string with instance details
                        instance_info = (
                            f"• ID: {instance['InstanceId']}\n"
                            f"• Image ID: {instance['ImageId']}\n"
                            f"• Instance type: {instance['InstanceType']}\n"
                            f"• Key name: {instance['KeyName']}\n"
                            f"• VPC ID: {instance['VpcId']}\n"
                            f"• Public IP: {instance.get('PublicIpAddress', 'N/
A')}\n"
                            f"• State: {instance_state}"
                        )
                        print(instance_info)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to display instance(s). : {' '.join(map(str,
 instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
                raise


    def terminate(self) -> None:
        """
        Terminates instances and waits for them to reach the terminated state.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to terminate.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            self.ec2_client.terminate_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
```

```
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            self.instances.clear()
            for instance_id in instance_ids:
                print(f"• Instance ID: {instance_id}\n" f"• Action: Terminated")

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed instance termination details:\n\t{str(self.instances)}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
            raise


    def start(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Starts instances and waits for them to be in a running state.

        :return: The response to the start request.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to start.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            start_response =
self.ec2_client.start_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            return start_response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to start instance(s): {','.join(map(str, instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't start instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
state. "
```

```
                    "Ensure the instances are in a stopped state before starting
them."
                )
            raise


    def stop(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Stops instances and waits for them to be in a stopped state.

        :return: The response to the stop request, or None if there are no instances
to stop.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to stop.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            # Attempt to stop the instances
            stop_response = self.ec2_client.stop_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_stopped")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to stop instance(s): {','.join(map(str, instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't stop instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a running state before stopping
them."
                )
            raise
        return stop_response


    def get_images(self, image_ids: List[str]) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets information about Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) from a list of AMI IDs.

        :param image_ids: The list of AMI IDs to look up.
```

```
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing the requested AMIs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_images(ImageIds=image_ids)
            images = response["Images"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to stop AMI(s): {','.join(map(str, image_ids))}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAMIID.NotFound":
                logger.error("One or more of the AMI IDs does not exist.")
            raise
        return images


    def get_instance_types(
        self, architecture: str = "x86_64", sizes: List[str] = ["*.micro",
 "*.small"]
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets instance types that support the specified architecture and size.
        See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/
API_DescribeInstanceTypes.html
        for a list of allowable parameters.

        :param architecture: The architecture supported by instance types. Default:
 'x86_64'.
        :param sizes: The size of instance types. Default: '*.micro', '*.small',
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing instance types that support the
 specified architecture and size.
        """
        try:
            inst_types = []
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instance_types")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {
                        "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
                        "Values": [architecture],
                    },
                    {"Name": "instance-type", "Values": sizes},
                ]
            ):
                inst_types += page["InstanceTypes"]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to get instance types: {architecture}, {','.join(map(str,
 sizes))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                logger.error(
                    "Parameters are invalid. "
                    "Ensure architecture and size strings conform to
 DescribeInstanceTypes API reference."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_types
```

Define a class that wraps Elastic IP actions.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str] =
 None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id
```

```
    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def allocate(self) -> "ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp":
        """
        Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
        instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP address
        constant even when you restart the associated instance.

        :return: The ElasticIp object for the newly created Elastic IP address.
        :raises ClientError: If the allocation fails, such as reaching the maximum
limit of Elastic IPs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.allocate_address(Domain="vpc")
            elastic_ip = self.ElasticIp(
                allocation_id=response["AllocationId"],
public_ip=response["PublicIp"]
            )
            self.elastic_ips.append(elastic_ip)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AddressLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    "Max IP's reached. Release unused addresses or contact AWS
Support for an increase."
```

```
                )
            raise err
        return elastic_ip


    def associate(
        self, allocation_id: str, instance_id: str
    ) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
        """
        Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association is
        created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
public
        IP address of the associated instance.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.
        :return: A response that contains the ID of the association, or None if no
Elastic IP is found.
        :raises ClientError: If the association fails, such as when the instance ID
is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID {allocation_id}.")
            return None

        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.associate_address(
                AllocationId=allocation_id, InstanceId=instance_id
            )
            elastic_ip.instance_id = (
                instance_id  # Track the instance associated with this Elastic IP.
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to associate Elastic IP {allocation_id} with
{instance_id} "
                    "because the specified instance ID does not exist or has not
propagated fully. "
                    "Verify the instance ID and try again, or wait a few moments
before attempting to "
                    "associate the Elastic IP address."
```

```
                )
            raise
        return response


    def disassociate(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Removes an association between an Elastic IP address and an instance. When
the
        association is removed, the instance is assigned a new public IP address.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to disassociate.
        :raises ClientError: If the disassociation fails, such as when the
association ID is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None or elastic_ip.instance_id is None:
            logger.info(
                f"No association found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
            )
            return

        try:
            # Retrieve the association ID before disassociating
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_addresses(AllocationIds=[allocation_id])
            association_id = response["Addresses"][0].get("AssociationId")

            if association_id:
                self.ec2_client.disassociate_address(AssociationId=association_id)
                elastic_ip.instance_id = None  # Remove the instance association
            else:
                logger.info(
                    f"No Association ID found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
                )

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to disassociate Elastic IP {allocation_id} "
```

```
                    "because the specified association ID for the Elastic IP address
was not found. "
                    "Verify the association ID and ensure the Elastic IP is
currently associated with a "
                    "resource before attempting to disassociate it."
                )
            raise


    def release(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Releases an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
        it can no longer be used.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to release.
        :raises ClientError: If the release fails, such as when the Elastic IP
address is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID {allocation_id}.")
            return

        try:
            self.ec2_client.release_address(AllocationId=allocation_id)
            self.elastic_ips.remove(elastic_ip)  # Remove the Elastic IP from the
list
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAddress.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to release Elastic IP address {allocation_id} "
                    "because it could not be found. Verify the Elastic IP address "
                    "and ensure it is allocated to your account in the correct
region "
                    "before attempting to release it."
                )
            raise


    @staticmethod
    def get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(
        elastic_ips: List["ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp"], allocation_id: str
    ) -> Optional["ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp"]:
```

```
        """
        Retrieves an Elastic IP object by its allocation ID from a given list of
Elastic IPs.

        :param elastic_ips: A list of ElasticIp objects.
        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to retrieve.
        :return: The ElasticIp object associated with the allocation ID, or None if
not found.
        """
        return next(
            (ip for ip in elastic_ips if ip.allocation_id == allocation_id), None
        )
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances

- UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str] =
 None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def allocate(self) -> "ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp":
        """
        Allocates an Elastic IP address that can be associated with an Amazon EC2
        instance. By using an Elastic IP address, you can keep the public IP address
        constant even when you restart the associated instance.

        :return: The ElasticIp object for the newly created Elastic IP address.
        :raises ClientError: If the allocation fails, such as reaching the maximum
limit of Elastic IPs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.allocate_address(Domain="vpc")
            elastic_ip = self.ElasticIp(
                allocation_id=response["AllocationId"],
public_ip=response["PublicIp"]
            )
            self.elastic_ips.append(elastic_ip)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AddressLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    "Max IP's reached. Release unused addresses or contact AWS
Support for an increase."
                )
            raise err
        return elastic_ip
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str] =
 None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def associate(
        self, allocation_id: str, instance_id: str
    ) -> Union[Dict[str, Any], None]:
        """
        Associates an Elastic IP address with an instance. When this association is
        created, the Elastic IP's public IP address is immediately used as the
public
        IP address of the associated instance.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.
        :return: A response that contains the ID of the association, or None if no
Elastic IP is found.
        :raises ClientError: If the association fails, such as when the instance ID
is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID {allocation_id}.")
            return None

        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.associate_address(
                AllocationId=allocation_id, InstanceId=instance_id
```

```
            )
            elastic_ip.instance_id = (
                instance_id  # Track the instance associated with this Elastic IP.
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to associate Elastic IP {allocation_id} with
 {instance_id} "
                    "because the specified instance ID does not exist or has not
 propagated fully. "
                    "Verify the instance ID and try again, or wait a few moments
 before attempting to "
                    "associate the Elastic IP address."
                )
            raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
```

```
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a high-
level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def authorize_ingress(self, ssh_ingress_ip: str) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Adds a rule to the security group to allow access to SSH.

        :param ssh_ingress_ip: The IP address that is granted inbound access to
 connect
                               to port 22 over TCP, used for SSH.
        :return: The response to the authorization request. The 'Return' field of
 the
                 response indicates whether the request succeeded or failed, or None
 if no security group is set.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling for
 ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        if self.security_group is None:
            logger.info("No security group to update.")
            return None

        try:
            ip_permissions = [
```

```
                {
                    # SSH ingress open to only the specified IP address.
                    "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                    "FromPort": 22,
                    "ToPort": 22,
                    "IpRanges": [{"CidrIp": f"{ssh_ingress_ip}/32"}],
                }
            ]
            response = self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=self.security_group, IpPermissions=ip_permissions
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"The SSH ingress rule for IP {ssh_ingress_ip} already exists"
                    f"in security group '{self.security_group}'."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
```

```
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def create(self, key_name: str) -> dict:
        """
        Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2 instance.
        The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
```

```
        again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        :return: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object that represents
the newly created key pair.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in creating the key pair, for
example, if a key pair with the same name already exists.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            self.key_pair = response
            self.key_file_path = os.path.join(
                self.key_file_dir.name, f"{self.key_pair['KeyName']}.pem"
            )
            with open(self.key_file_path, "w") as key_file:
                key_file.write(self.key_pair["KeyMaterial"])
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                logger.error(
                    f"A key pair called {key_name} already exists. "
                    "Please choose a different name for your key pair "
                    "or delete the existing key pair before creating."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.key_pair
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example creates a launch template that includes an instance profile that grants specific permissions to the instance, and a user data Bash script that runs on the instance after it starts.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"
```

```
        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a permissions
policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
```

```
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template
```

- For API details, see CreateLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a high-
level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(self, group_name: str, group_description: str) -> str:
        """
```

```
        Creates a security group in the default virtual private cloud (VPC) of the
current account.

        :param group_name: The name of the security group to create.
        :param group_description: The description of the security group to create.
        :return: The ID of the newly created security group.
        :raise Handles AWS SDK service-level ClientError, with special handling for
ResourceAlreadyExists
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_security_group(
                GroupName=group_name, Description=group_description
            )
            self.security_group = response["GroupId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExists":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{group_name}' already exists. Please choose a
different name."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return self.security_group
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateVpc`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVpc`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual Private
Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(self, cidr_block: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new Amazon VPC with the specified CIDR block.

        :param cidr_block: The CIDR block for the new VPC, such as '10.0.0.0/16'.
        :return: The ID of the new VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc(CidrBlock=cidr_block)
            vpc_id = response["Vpc"]["VpcId"]

            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("vpc_available")
            waiter.wait(VpcIds=[vpc_id])
            return vpc_id
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the vpc. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateVpcEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVpcEndpoint`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual Private
 Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create_vpc_endpoint(
        self, vpc_id: str, service_name: str, route_table_ids: list[str]
```

```
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a new VPC endpoint for the specified service and associates it with
the specified route tables.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to create the endpoint in.
        :param service_name: The name of the service to create the endpoint for.
        :param route_table_ids: A list of IDs of the route tables to associate with
the endpoint.
        :return: A dictionary representing the newly created VPC endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc_endpoint(
                VpcId=vpc_id,
                ServiceName=service_name,
                RouteTableIds=route_table_ids,
            )
            return response["VpcEndpoint"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create VPC endpoint for service %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                service_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateVpcEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
 directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
 Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def delete(self, key_name: str) -> bool:
```

```
        """
        Deletes a key pair by its name.

        :param key_name: The name of the key pair to delete.
        :return: A boolean indicating whether the deletion was successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in deleting the key pair, for
example,
                                if the key pair does not exist.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=key_name)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted key pair: {key_name}")
            self.key_pair = None
            return True
        except self.ec2_client.exceptions.ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for key pair: {key_name}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"The key pair '{key_name}' does not exist and cannot be
deleted. "
                    "Please verify the key pair name and try again."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteLaunchTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLaunchTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
```

```
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"
```

```
        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DeleteLaunchTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a high-
level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def delete(self, security_group_id: str) -> bool:
        """
        Deletes the specified security group.
```

```
        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to delete. Required.

        :returns: True if the deletion is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If the security group cannot be deleted due to an AWS
service error.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_security_group(GroupId=security_group_id)
            logger.info(f"Successfully deleted security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Deletion failed for security group
'{security_group_id}'")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted because
it does not exist."
                )
            elif error_code == "DependencyViolation":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group '{security_group_id}' cannot be deleted because
it is still in use."
                    " Verify that it is:"
                    "\n\t- Detached from resources"
                    "\n\t- Removed from references in other groups"
                    "\n\t- Removed from VPC's as a default group"
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteVpc`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVpc`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual Private
 Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def delete(self, vpc_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the specified VPC.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_vpc(VpcId=vpc_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't delete VPC %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                vpc_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpc in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteVpcEndpoints`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVpcEndpoints`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual Private
 Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2 client.
```

```
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def delete_vpc_endpoints(self, vpc_endpoint_ids: list[str]) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the specified VPC endpoints.

        :param vpc_endpoint_ids: A list of IDs of the VPC endpoints to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_vpc_endpoints(VpcEndpointIds=vpc_endpoint_ids)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete VPC endpoints %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                vpc_endpoint_ids,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVpcEndpoints in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeAvailabilityZones`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAvailabilityZones`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
```

```
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
 client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
```

```
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance {instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance {instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def get_images(self, image_ids: List[str]) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
```

```
        Gets information about Amazon Machine Images (AMIs) from a list of AMI IDs.

        :param image_ids: The list of AMI IDs to look up.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing the requested AMIs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_images(ImageIds=image_ids)
            images = response["Images"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to stop AMI(s): {','.join(map(str, image_ids))}")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAMIID.NotFound":
                logger.error("One or more of the AMI IDs does not exist.")
            raise
        return images
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.
```

```
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                            access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                           wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def get_instance_types(
        self, architecture: str = "x86_64", sizes: List[str] = ["*.micro",
 "*.small"]
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Gets instance types that support the specified architecture and size.
        See https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/APIReference/
API_DescribeInstanceTypes.html
        for a list of allowable parameters.

        :param architecture: The architecture supported by instance types. Default:
 'x86_64'.
        :param sizes: The size of instance types. Default: '*.micro', '*.small',
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing instance types that support the
 specified architecture and size.
        """
        try:
            inst_types = []
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instance_types")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {
```

```
                        "Name": "processor-info.supported-architecture",
                        "Values": [architecture],
                    },
                    {"Name": "instance-type", "Values": sizes},
                ]
            ):
                inst_types += page["InstanceTypes"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to get instance types: {architecture}, {','.join(map(str,
 sizes))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                logger.error(
                    "Parameters are invalid. "
                    "Ensure architecture and size strings conform to
 DescribeInstanceTypes API reference."
                )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_types
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""
```

```
    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def display(self, state_filter: Optional[str] = "running") -> None:
        """
        Displays information about instances, filtering by the specified state.

        :param state_filter: The instance state to include in the output. Only
instances in this state
                             will be displayed. Default is 'running'. Example
states: 'running', 'stopped'.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to display.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_instances")
```

```
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(InstanceIds=instance_ids)

        try:
            for page in page_iterator:
                for reservation in page["Reservations"]:
                    for instance in reservation["Instances"]:
                        instance_state = instance["State"]["Name"]

                        # Apply the state filter (default is 'running')
                        if state_filter and instance_state != state_filter:
                            continue  # Skip this instance if it doesn't match the
 filter

                        # Create a formatted string with instance details
                        instance_info = (
                            f"• ID: {instance['InstanceId']}\n"
                            f"• Image ID: {instance['ImageId']}\n"
                            f"• Instance type: {instance['InstanceType']}\n"
                            f"• Key name: {instance['KeyName']}\n"
                            f"• VPC ID: {instance['VpcId']}\n"
                            f"• Public IP: {instance.get('PublicIpAddress', 'N/
A')}\n"
                            f"• State: {instance_state}"
                        )
                        print(instance_info)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to display instance(s). : {' '.join(map(str,
 instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPairWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) key pair actions.
    This class provides methods to create, list, and delete EC2 key pairs.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        key_file_dir: Union[tempfile.TemporaryDirectory, str],
        key_pair: Optional[dict] = None,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the KeyPairWrapper with the specified EC2 client, key file
 directory,
        and an optional key pair.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param key_file_dir: The folder where the private key information is stored.
                             This should be a secure folder.
        :param key_pair: A dictionary representing the Boto3 KeyPair object.
                         This is a high-level object that wraps key pair actions.
 Optional.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.key_pair = key_pair
        self.key_file_path: Optional[str] = None
        self.key_file_dir = key_file_dir

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPairWrapper":
        """
        Class method to create an instance of KeyPairWrapper using a new EC2 client
        and a temporary directory for storing key files.

        :return: An instance of KeyPairWrapper.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client, tempfile.TemporaryDirectory())


    def list(self, limit: Optional[int] = None) -> None:
        """
        Displays a list of key pairs for the current account.

        WARNING: Results are not paginated.

        :param limit: The maximum number of key pairs to list. If not specified,
                      all key pairs will be listed.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error in listing the key pairs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_key_pairs()
            key_pairs = response.get("KeyPairs", [])

            if limit:
                key_pairs = key_pairs[:limit]

            for key_pair in key_pairs:
                logger.info(
                    f"Found {key_pair['KeyType']} key '{key_pair['KeyName']}' with
fingerprint:"
                )
                logger.info(f"\t{key_pair['KeyFingerprint']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(f"Failed to list key pairs: {str(err)}")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeRouteTables`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRouteTables`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class VpcWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Amazon Virtual Private
 Cloud actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the VpcWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "VpcWrapper":
        """
        Creates a VpcWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of VpcWrapper initialized with the default EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def describe_route_tables(self, vpc_ids: list[str]) -> None:
        """
        Displays information about the route tables in the specified VPC.

        :param vpc_ids: A list of VPC IDs.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_route_tables(
                Filters=[{"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": vpc_ids}]
            )
            pp(response["RouteTables"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe route tables for VPCs %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                vpc_ids,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeRouteTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SecurityGroupWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: boto3.client, security_group: Optional[str] =
 None):
        """
        Initializes the SecurityGroupWrapper with an EC2 client and an optional
 security group ID.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
```

```
        :param security_group: The ID of a security group to manage. This is a high-
level identifier
                               that represents the security group.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.security_group = security_group

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SecurityGroupWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SecurityGroupWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of SecurityGroupWrapper initialized with the default
 EC2 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def describe(self, security_group_id: Optional[str] = None) -> bool:
        """
        Displays information about the specified security group or all security
 groups if no ID is provided.

        :param security_group_id: The ID of the security group to describe.
                                  If None, an open search is performed to describe
 all security groups.
        :returns: True if the description is successful.
        :raises ClientError: If there is an error describing the security group(s),
 such as an invalid security group ID.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_security_groups")

            if security_group_id is None:
                # If no ID is provided, return all security groups.
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
            else:
                page_iterator = paginator.paginate(GroupIds=[security_group_id])

            for page in page_iterator:
                for security_group in page["SecurityGroups"]:
                    print(f"Security group: {security_group['GroupName']}")
                    print(f"\tID: {security_group['GroupId']}")
```

```
                    print(f"\tVPC: {security_group['VpcId']}")
                    if security_group["IpPermissions"]:
                        print("Inbound permissions:")
                        pp(security_group["IpPermissions"])

            return True
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error("Failed to describe security group(s).")
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidGroup.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Security group {security_group_id} does not exist "
                    f"because the specified security group ID was not found."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeSubnets`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSubnets`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
```

```
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
```

```
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeSubnets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeVpcs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVpcs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
```

```
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs. "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
parameters."
```

```
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass
```

- For API details, see DescribeVpcs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str] =
 None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
```

```
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def disassociate(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Removes an association between an Elastic IP address and an instance. When
the
        association is removed, the instance is assigned a new public IP address.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to disassociate.
        :raises ClientError: If the disassociation fails, such as when the
association ID is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None or elastic_ip.instance_id is None:
            logger.info(
                f"No association found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
```

```
            )
            return

        try:
            # Retrieve the association ID before disassociating
            response =
self.ec2_client.describe_addresses(AllocationIds=[allocation_id])
            association_id = response["Addresses"][0].get("AssociationId")

            if association_id:
                self.ec2_client.disassociate_address(AssociationId=association_id)
                elastic_ip.instance_id = None  # Remove the instance association
            else:
                logger.info(
                    f"No Association ID found for Elastic IP with allocation ID
{allocation_id}."
                )

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to disassociate Elastic IP {allocation_id} "
                    "because the specified association ID for the Elastic IP address
was not found. "
                    "Verify the association ID and ensure the Elastic IP is
currently associated with a "
                    "resource before attempting to disassociate it."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
```

```
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to associate
with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
```

```
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or is
not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticIpWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) Elastic IP address
 actions using the client interface."""

    class ElasticIp:
        """Represents an Elastic IP and its associated instance."""

        def __init__(
            self, allocation_id: str, public_ip: str, instance_id: Optional[str] =
 None
        ) -> None:
            """
            Initializes the ElasticIp object.

            :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP.
            :param public_ip: The public IP address of the Elastic IP.
            :param instance_id: The ID of the associated EC2 instance, if any.
            """
            self.allocation_id = allocation_id
            self.public_ip = public_ip
            self.instance_id = instance_id

    def __init__(self, ec2_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the ElasticIpWrapper with an EC2 client.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.elastic_ips: List[ElasticIpWrapper.ElasticIp] = []
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ElasticIpWrapper":
        """
        Creates an ElasticIpWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of ElasticIpWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def release(self, allocation_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Releases an Elastic IP address. After the Elastic IP address is released,
        it can no longer be used.

        :param allocation_id: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to release.
        :raises ClientError: If the release fails, such as when the Elastic IP
address is not found.
        """
        elastic_ip = self.get_elastic_ip_by_allocation(self.elastic_ips,
allocation_id)
        if elastic_ip is None:
            logger.info(f"No Elastic IP found with allocation ID {allocation_id}.")
            return

        try:
            self.ec2_client.release_address(AllocationId=allocation_id)
            self.elastic_ips.remove(elastic_ip)  # Remove the Elastic IP from the
list
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAddress.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    f"Failed to release Elastic IP address {allocation_id} "
                    "because it could not be found. Verify the Elastic IP address "
                    "and ensure it is allocated to your account in the correct
region "
                    "before attempting to release it."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`

The following code example shows how to use `ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example replaces the instance profile of a running instance, reboots the instance, and sends a command to the instance after it starts.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
```

```
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
```

```
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to associate
with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
```

```
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or is
 not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                            access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                           wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
```

```
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def create(
        self,
        image_id: str,
        instance_type: str,
        key_pair_name: str,
        security_group_ids: Optional[List[str]] = None,
    ) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Creates a new EC2 instance in the default VPC of the current account.

        The instance starts immediately after it is created.

        :param image_id: The ID of the Amazon Machine Image (AMI) to use for the
instance.
        :param instance_type: The type of instance to create, such as 't2.micro'.
        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to use for SSH access.
        :param security_group_ids: A list of security group IDs to associate with
the instance.
                                   If not specified, the default security group of
the VPC is used.
        :return: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance objects
representing the newly created instances.
        """
        try:
            instance_params = {
                "ImageId": image_id,
                "InstanceType": instance_type,
                "KeyName": key_pair_name,
            }
            if security_group_ids is not None:
```

```
                instance_params["SecurityGroupIds"] = security_group_ids

            response = self.ec2_client.run_instances(
                **instance_params, MinCount=1, MaxCount=1
            )
            instance = response["Instances"][0]
            self.instances.append(instance)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance["InstanceId"]])
        except ClientError as err:
            params_str = "\n\t".join(
                f"{key}: {value}" for key, value in instance_params.items()
            )
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to complete instance creation request.\nRequest details:
{params_str}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InstanceLimitExceeded":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type '{instance_type}'.
 "
                        "Terminate unused instances or contact AWS Support for a
 limit increase."
                    )
                )
            if error_code == "InsufficientInstanceCapacity":
                logger.error(
                    (
                        f"Insufficient capacity for instance type '{instance_type}'.
 "
                        "Select a different instance type or launch in a different
 availability zone."
                    )
                )
            raise
        return self.instances
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

StartInstances

The following code example shows how to use StartInstances.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                            access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                           wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)
```

```
    def start(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Starts instances and waits for them to be in a running state.

        :return: The response to the start request.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to start.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            start_response =
self.ec2_client.start_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            return start_response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to start instance(s): {','.join(map(str, instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't start instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a stopped state before starting
them."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

StopInstances

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def stop(self) -> Optional[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
```

```
        Stops instances and waits for them to be in a stopped state.

        :return: The response to the stop request, or None if there are no instances
to stop.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to stop.")
            return None

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            # Attempt to stop the instances
            stop_response = self.ec2_client.stop_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_stopped")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to stop instance(s): {','.join(map(str, instance_ids))}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "IncorrectInstanceState":
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't stop instance(s) because they are in an incorrect
state. "
                    "Ensure the instances are in a running state before stopping
them."
                )
            raise
        return stop_response
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class EC2InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance actions using
 the client interface."""

    def __init__(
        self, ec2_client: Any, instances: Optional[List[Dict[str, Any]]] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the EC2InstanceWrapper with an EC2 client and optional
 instances.

        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 Amazon EC2 client. This client provides low-level
                           access to AWS EC2 services.
        :param instances: A list of dictionaries representing Boto3 Instance
 objects. These are high-level objects that
                          wrap instance actions.
        """
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.instances = instances or []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "EC2InstanceWrapper":
        """
        Creates an EC2InstanceWrapper instance with a default EC2 client.

        :return: An instance of EC2InstanceWrapper initialized with the default EC2
 client.
        """
        ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
        return cls(ec2_client)


    def terminate(self) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Terminates instances and waits for them to reach the terminated state.
        """
        if not self.instances:
            logger.info("No instances to terminate.")
            return

        instance_ids = [instance["InstanceId"] for instance in self.instances]
        try:
            self.ec2_client.terminate_instances(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
            self.instances.clear()
            for instance_id in instance_ids:
                print(f"• Instance ID: {instance_id}\n" f"• Action: Terminated")

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed instance termination details:\n\t{str(self.instances)}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                logger.error(
                    "One or more instance IDs do not exist. "
                    "Please verify the instance IDs and try again."
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.

- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example, such
 as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
```

```
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)
```

```
        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
 balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port is
 open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access from
 this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
 {sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
```

```
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging from
your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer endpoint.
Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )

    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as sending
requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
```

```
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.")
                endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check to
update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
```

```
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
 failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a non-
existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
 self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
 instances."
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
```

```
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
```

```
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up manually
 to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
 are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM policies
 and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
```

```
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
"destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
```

```
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
```

```
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
```

```
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to attach
 to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
 PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
 created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed
 by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
 granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
 definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
```

```
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore
to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to the
instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
```

```
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance {instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance {instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
```

```
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to associate
with
                                          the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                       instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
```

```
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or is
not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a permissions
policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
```

```
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
```

```
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
```

```
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with availability
zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
```

```
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) -> None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
```

```
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group %s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
ready or does not exist. "
```

```
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
 configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
 group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
 delete the group again."
                )
```

```
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs. "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass


    def verify_inbound_port(
```

```
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
public
        access when you're done.

        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value that
indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
```

```
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to either
this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist. Please
check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
```

```
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}' on
port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
```

```
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how
```

```
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the sensitivity
of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing target
group if appropriate."
```

```
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for new
ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.", target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the AWS
Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with any
load balancers or resources.",
```

```
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn} still
exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts *
delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}' already
exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in this
account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase in
the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
```

```
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests to
the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener to
the
                                load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
```

```
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )
```

```
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer {load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
```

```
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint, retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS region,
and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
```

```
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
 correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
 account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
 as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
 MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5, "WriteCapacityUnits":
5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name, data_file
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}: {err}"
            )

    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters to
 drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
```

```
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
```

```
            log.error(
                "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False. "
                "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
            )
        log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances

  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation

- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon ECR.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon ECR

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon ECR.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
import argparse
from boto3 import client


def hello_ecr(ecr_client: client, repository_name: str) -> None:
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Elastic Container
 Registry (Amazon ECR)
```

```
    client and list the images in a repository.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ecr_client: A Boto3 Amazon ECR Client object. This object wraps
                           the low-level Amazon ECR service API.
    :param repository_name: The name of an Amazon ECR repository in your account.
    """
    print(
        f"Hello, Amazon ECR! Let's list some images in the repository
 '{repository_name}':\n"
    )
    paginator = ecr_client.get_paginator("list_images")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        repositoryName=repository_name, PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10}
    )

    image_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for schedule in page["imageIds"]:
            image_names.append(schedule["imageTag"])

    print(f"{len(image_names)} image(s) retrieved.")
    for schedule_name in image_names:
        print(f"\t{schedule_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(description="Run hello Amazon ECR.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "--repository-name",
        type=str,
        help="the name of an Amazon ECR repository in your account.",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    hello_ecr(boto3.client("ecr"), args.repository_name)
```

- For API details, see listImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon ECR repository.
- Set repository policies.
- Retrieve repository URIs.
- Get Amazon ECR authorization tokens.
- Set lifecycle policies for Amazon ECR repositories.
- Push a Docker image to an Amazon ECR repository.
- Verify the existence of an image in an Amazon ECR repository.
- List Amazon ECR repositories for your account and get details about them.
- Delete Amazon ECR repositories.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class ECRGettingStarted:
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to perform basic operations using
    Amazon ECR.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
```

```
        ecr_wrapper: ECRWrapper,
        docker_client: docker.DockerClient,
    ):
        self.ecr_wrapper = ecr_wrapper
        self.docker_client = docker_client
        self.tag = "echo-text"
        self.repository_name = "ecr-basics"
        self.docker_image = None
        self.full_tag_name = None
        self.repository = None

    def run(self, role_arn: str) -> None:
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """
        print(
            """
The Amazon Elastic Container Registry (ECR) is a fully-managed Docker container
 registry
service provided by AWS. It allows developers and organizations to securely
store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
ECR provides a simple and scalable way to manage container images throughout their
 lifecycle,
from building and testing to production deployment.

The `ECRWrapper' class is a wrapper for the Boto3 'ecr' client. The 'ecr' client
 provides a set of methods to
programmatically interact with the Amazon ECR service. This allows developers to
automate the storage, retrieval, and management of container images as part of their
 application
deployment pipelines. With ECR, teams can focus on building and deploying their
applications without having to worry about the underlying infrastructure required to
host and manage a container registry.

This scenario walks you through how to perform key operations for this service.
Let's get started...
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(
            f"""
* Create an ECR repository.
```

```
An ECR repository is a private Docker container repository provided
by Amazon Web Services (AWS). It is a managed service that makes it easy
to store, manage, and deploy Docker container images.
        """
        )
        print(f"Creating a repository named {self.repository_name}")
        self.repository = self.ecr_wrapper.create_repository(self.repository_name)
        print(f"The ARN of the ECR repository is
 {self.repository['repositoryArn']}")
        repository_uri = self.repository["repositoryUri"]
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        print(
            f"""
* Build a Docker image.

Create a local Docker image if it does not already exist.
A Python Docker client is used to execute Docker commands.
You must have Docker installed and running.
            """
        )
        print(f"Building a docker image from 'docker_files/Dockerfile'")
        self.full_tag_name = f"{repository_uri}:{self.tag}"
        self.docker_image = self.docker_client.images.build(
            path="docker_files", tag=self.full_tag_name
        )[0]
        print(f"Docker image {self.full_tag_name} successfully built.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        if role_arn is None:
            print(
                """
* Because an IAM role ARN was not provided, a role policy will not be set for this
 repository.
            """
            )
        else:
            print(
                """
* Set an ECR repository policy.
```

```
Setting an ECR repository policy using the `setRepositoryPolicy` function is crucial
 for maintaining
the security and integrity of your container images. The repository policy allows
 you to
define specific rules and restrictions for accessing and managing the images stored
 within your ECR
repository.
        """
            )

            self.grant_role_download_access(role_arn)
            print(f"Download access granted to the IAM role ARN {role_arn}")
            press_enter_to_continue()
            print_dashes()

            print(
                """
* Display ECR repository policy.

Now we will retrieve the ECR policy to ensure it was successfully set.
            """
            )

            policy_text =
 self.ecr_wrapper.get_repository_policy(self.repository_name)
            print("Policy Text:")
            print(f"{policy_text}")
            press_enter_to_continue()
            print_dashes()

        print(
            """
* Retrieve an ECR authorization token.

You need an authorization token to securely access and interact with the Amazon ECR
 registry.
The `get_authorization_token` method of the `ecr` client is responsible for securely
 accessing
and interacting with an Amazon ECR repository. This operation is responsible for
 obtaining a
valid authorization token, which is required to authenticate your requests to the
 ECR service.
```

```
Without a valid authorization token, you would not be able to perform any operations
 on the
ECR repository, such as pushing, pulling, or managing your Docker images.
        """
        )

        authorization_token = self.ecr_wrapper.get_authorization_token()
        print("Authorization token retrieved.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(
            """
* Get the ECR Repository URI.

The URI  of an Amazon ECR repository is important. When you want to deploy a
 container image to
a container orchestration platform like Amazon Elastic Kubernetes Service (EKS)
or Amazon Elastic Container Service (ECS), you need to specify the full image URI,
which includes the ECR repository URI. This allows the container runtime to pull the
correct container image from the ECR repository.
        """
        )
        repository_descriptions = self.ecr_wrapper.describe_repositories(
            [self.repository_name]
        )
        repository_uri = repository_descriptions[0]["repositoryUri"]
        print(f"Repository URI found: {repository_uri}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        print(
            """
* Set an ECR Lifecycle Policy.

An ECR Lifecycle Policy is used to manage the lifecycle of Docker images stored in
 your ECR repositories.
These policies allow you to automatically remove old or unused Docker images from
 your repositories,
freeing up storage space and reducing costs.

This example policy helps to maintain the size and efficiency of the container
 registry
by automatically removing older and potentially unused images, ensuring that the
storage is optimized and the registry remains up-to-date.
```

```
            """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        self.put_expiration_policy()
        print(f"An expiration policy was added to the repository.")
        print_dashes()

        print(
            """
* Push a docker image to the Amazon ECR Repository.

The Docker client uses the authorization token is used to authenticate the when
 pushing the image to the
ECR repository.
        """
        )
        decoded_authorization =
 base64.b64decode(authorization_token).decode("utf-8")
        username, password = decoded_authorization.split(":")

        resp = self.docker_client.api.push(
            repository=repository_uri,
            auth_config={"username": username, "password": password},
            tag=self.tag,
            stream=True,
            decode=True,
        )
        for line in resp:
            print(line)

        print_dashes()

        print("* Verify if the image is in the ECR Repository.")
        image_descriptions = self.ecr_wrapper.describe_images(
            self.repository_name, [self.tag]
        )
        if len(image_descriptions) > 0:
            print("Image found in ECR Repository.")
        else:
            print("Image not found in ECR Repository.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()

        print(
```

```
            "* As an optional step, you can interact with the image in Amazon ECR by
 using the CLI."
        )
        if q.ask(
            "Would you like to view instructions on how to use the CLI to run the
 image? (y/n)",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            print(
                f"""
1. Authenticate with ECR - Before you can pull the image from Amazon ECR, you need
 to authenticate with the registry. You can do this using the AWS CLI:

    aws ecr get-login-password --region us-east-1 | docker login --username AWS --
password-stdin {repository_uri.split("/")[0]}

2. Describe the image using this command:

   aws ecr describe-images --repository-name {self.repository_name} --image-ids
 imageTag={self.tag}

3. Run the Docker container and view the output using this command:

   docker run --rm {self.full_tag_name}
"""
            )

        self.cleanup(True)

    def cleanup(self, ask: bool):
        """
        Deletes the resources created in this scenario.
        :param ask: If True, prompts the user to confirm before deleting the
 resources.
        """
        if self.repository is not None and (
            not ask
            or q.ask(
                f"Would you like to delete the ECR repository
 '{self.repository_name}? (y/n) "
            )
        ):
            print(f"Deleting the ECR repository '{self.repository_name}'.")
            self.ecr_wrapper.delete_repository(self.repository_name)
```

```
        if self.full_tag_name is not None and (
            not ask
            or q.ask(
                f"Would you like to delete the local Docker image
'{self.full_tag_name}? (y/n) "
            )
        ):
            print(f"Deleting the docker image '{self.full_tag_name}'.")
            self.docker_client.images.remove(self.full_tag_name)

    def grant_role_download_access(self, role_arn: str):
        """
        Grants the specified role access to download images from the ECR repository.

        :param role_arn: The ARN of the role to grant access to.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "Version": "2008-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "AllowDownload",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"AWS": role_arn},
                    "Action": ["ecr:BatchGetImage"],
                }
            ],
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.set_repository_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )


    def put_expiration_policy(self):
        """
        Puts an expiration policy on the ECR repository.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "rules": [
                {
                    "rulePriority": 1,
                    "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                    "selection": {
```

```
                        "tagStatus": "any",
                        "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                        "countUnit": "days",
                        "countNumber": 14,
                    },
                    "action": {"type": "expire"},
                }
            ]
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.put_lifecycle_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )



if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Run Amazon ECR getting started scenario."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--iam-role-arn",
        type=str,
        default=None,
        help="an optional IAM role ARN that will be granted access to download
 images from a repository.",
        required=False,
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--no-art",
        action="store_true",
        help="accessibility setting that suppresses art in the console output.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    no_art = args.no_art
    iam_role_arn = args.iam_role_arn
    demo = None
    a_docker_client = None
    try:
        a_docker_client = docker.from_env()
        if not a_docker_client.ping():
            raise docker.errors.DockerException("Docker is not running.")
    except docker.errors.DockerException as err:
        logging.error(
```

```
            """
        The Python Docker client could not be created.
        Do you have Docker installed and running?
        Here is the error message:
        %s
        """,
            err,
        )
        sys.exit("Error with Docker.")
    try:
        an_ecr_wrapper = ECRWrapper.from_client()
        demo = ECRGettingStarted(an_ecr_wrapper, a_docker_client)
        demo.run(iam_role_arn)

    except Exception as exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
        if demo is not None:
            demo.cleanup(False)
```

ECRWrapper class that wraps Amazon ECR actions.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def create_repository(self, repository_name: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates an ECR repository.
```

```
        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to create.
        :return: A dictionary of the created repository.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.ecr_client.create_repository(repositoryName=repository_name)
            return response["repository"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RepositoryAlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Repository {repository_name} already exists.")
                response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                    repositoryNames=[repository_name]
                )
                return self.describe_repositories([repository_name])[0]
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating repository %s. Here's why %s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def delete_repository(self, repository_name: str):
        """
        Deletes an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.delete_repository(
                repositoryName=repository_name, force=True
            )
            print(f"Deleted repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete repository %s.. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def set_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str, policy_text: str):
```

```
        """
        Sets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to set the policy for.
        :param policy_text: The policy text to set.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.set_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name, policyText=policy_text
            )
            print(f"Set repository policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't set repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
%s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def get_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Gets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to get the policy for.
        :return: The policy text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name
            )
            return response["policyText"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't get repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
%s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def get_authorization_token(self) -> str:
        """
        Gets an authorization token for an ECR repository.

        :return: The authorization token.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_authorization_token()
            return response["authorizationData"][0]["authorizationToken"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get authorization token. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_repositories(self, repository_names: list[str]) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR repositories.

        :param repository_names: The names of the repositories to describe.
        :return: The list of repository descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                repositoryNames=repository_names
            )
            return response["repositories"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe repositories. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def put_lifecycle_policy(self, repository_name: str, lifecycle_policy_text:
str):
        """
        Puts a lifecycle policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to put the lifecycle
policy for.
        :param lifecycle_policy_text: The lifecycle policy text to put.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.put_lifecycle_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name,
                lifecyclePolicyText=lifecycle_policy_text,
            )
            print(f"Put lifecycle policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't put lifecycle policy for repository %s. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_images(
        self, repository_name: str, image_ids: list[str] = None
    ) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR images.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to describe images for.
        :param image_ids: The optional IDs of images to describe.
        :return: The list of image descriptions.
        """
        try:
            params = {
                "repositoryName": repository_name,
            }
            if image_ids is not None:
                params["imageIds"] = [{"imageTag": tag} for tag in image_ids]

            paginator = self.ecr_client.get_paginator("describe_images")
            image_descriptions = []
```

```
            for page in paginator.paginate(**params):
                image_descriptions.extend(page["imageDetails"])
            return image_descriptions
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe images. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateRepository
  - DeleteRepository
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeRepositories
  - GetAuthorizationToken
  - GetRepositoryPolicy
  - SetRepositoryPolicy
  - StartLifecyclePolicyPreview

Actions

`CreateRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRepository`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def create_repository(self, repository_name: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to create.
        :return: A dictionary of the created repository.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.ecr_client.create_repository(repositoryName=repository_name)
            return response["repository"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RepositoryAlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Repository {repository_name} already exists.")
                response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                    repositoryNames=[repository_name]
                )
                return self.describe_repositories([repository_name])[0]
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating repository %s. Here's why %s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see CreateRepository in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteRepository`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRepository`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def delete_repository(self, repository_name: str):
        """
        Deletes an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.delete_repository(
                repositoryName=repository_name, force=True
            )
            print(f"Deleted repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete repository %s.. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteRepository in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def describe_images(
        self, repository_name: str, image_ids: list[str] = None
```

```
    ) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR images.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to describe images for.
        :param image_ids: The optional IDs of images to describe.
        :return: The list of image descriptions.
        """
        try:
            params = {
                "repositoryName": repository_name,
            }
            if image_ids is not None:
                params["imageIds"] = [{"imageTag": tag} for tag in image_ids]

            paginator = self.ecr_client.get_paginator("describe_images")
            image_descriptions = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**params):
                image_descriptions.extend(page["imageDetails"])
            return image_descriptions
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe images. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeRepositories`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRepositories`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def describe_repositories(self, repository_names: list[str]) -> list[dict]:
        """
        Describes ECR repositories.

        :param repository_names: The names of the repositories to describe.
        :return: The list of repository descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.describe_repositories(
                repositoryNames=repository_names
            )
            return response["repositories"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe repositories. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAuthorizationToken`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAuthorizationToken`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def get_authorization_token(self) -> str:
        """
        Gets an authorization token for an ECR repository.

        :return: The authorization token.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_authorization_token()
            return response["authorizationData"][0]["authorizationToken"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get authorization token. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetAuthorizationToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetRepositoryPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRepositoryPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def get_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Gets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to get the policy for.
        :return: The policy text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ecr_client.get_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name
            )
            return response["policyText"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
 %s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see GetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutLifeCyclePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutLifeCyclePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
```

```
        return cls(ecr_client)


    def put_lifecycle_policy(self, repository_name: str, lifecycle_policy_text:
str):
        """
        Puts a lifecycle policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to put the lifecycle
policy for.
        :param lifecycle_policy_text: The lifecycle policy text to put.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.put_lifecycle_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name,
                lifecyclePolicyText=lifecycle_policy_text,
            )
            print(f"Put lifecycle policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't put lifecycle policy for repository %s. Here's why %s",
                repository_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Example that puts an expiration date policy.

```
    def put_expiration_policy(self):
        """
        Puts an expiration policy on the ECR repository.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "rules": [
                {
                    "rulePriority": 1,
                    "description": "Expire images older than 14 days",
                    "selection": {
                        "tagStatus": "any",
                        "countType": "sinceImagePushed",
                        "countUnit": "days",
```

```
                        "countNumber": 14,
                    },
                    "action": {"type": "expire"},
                }
            ]
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.put_lifecycle_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )
```

- For API details, see PutLifeCyclePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SetRepositoryPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `SetRepositoryPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ECRWrapper:
    def __init__(self, ecr_client: client):
        self.ecr_client = ecr_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "ECRWrapper":
        """
        Creates a ECRWrapper instance with a default Amazon ECR client.

        :return: An instance of ECRWrapper initialized with the default Amazon ECR
 client.
        """
        ecr_client = boto3.client("ecr")
        return cls(ecr_client)
```

```
    def set_repository_policy(self, repository_name: str, policy_text: str):
        """
        Sets the policy for an ECR repository.

        :param repository_name: The name of the repository to set the policy for.
        :param policy_text: The policy text to set.
        """
        try:
            self.ecr_client.set_repository_policy(
                repositoryName=repository_name, policyText=policy_text
            )
            print(f"Set repository policy for repository {repository_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RepositoryPolicyNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Repository does not exist. %s.", repository_name)
                raise
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't set repository policy for repository %s. Here's why
%s",
                    repository_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

Example that grants an IAM role download access.

```
    def grant_role_download_access(self, role_arn: str):
        """
        Grants the specified role access to download images from the ECR repository.

        :param role_arn: The ARN of the role to grant access to.
        """
        policy_json = {
            "Version": "2008-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "AllowDownload",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"AWS": role_arn},
```

```
                    "Action": ["ecr:BatchGetImage"],
                }
            ],
        }

        self.ecr_wrapper.set_repository_policy(
            self.repository_name, json.dumps(policy_json)
        )
```

- For API details, see SetRepositoryPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Elastic Load Balancing - Version 2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Elastic Load Balancing

The following code examples show how to get started using Elastic Load Balancing.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_elbv2(elbv2_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Elastic Load Balancing V2 client
 and list
    up to ten of the load balancers for your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param elbv2_client: A Boto3 Elastic Load Balancing V2 client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Elastic Load Balancing! Let's list some of your load balancers:")
    load_balancers = elbv2_client.describe_load_balancers(PageSize=10).get(
        "LoadBalancers", []
    )
    if load_balancers:
        for lb in load_balancers:
            print(f"\t{lb['LoadBalancerName']}: {lb['DNSName']}")
    else:
        print("Your account doesn't have any load balancers.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_elbv2(boto3.client("elbv2"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateListener`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateListener`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests to
 the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
 listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener to
 the
                             load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
```

```
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see CreateListener in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateLoadBalancer`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
 subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
```

```
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}' already
exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in this
account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase in
the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer
```

- For API details, see CreateLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTargetGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
 how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
 instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
 and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the sensitivity
 of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
```

```
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing target
group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for new
ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see CreateTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteLoadBalancer`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteLoadBalancer`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
 {error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
```

```
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DeleteLoadBalancer in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTargetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTargetGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
 self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
```

```
            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.", target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the AWS
Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with any
load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn} still
exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
```

```
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts *
 delay} seconds."
        )
```

- For API details, see DeleteTargetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeLoadBalancers`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeLoadBalancers`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer {load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeLoadBalancers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeTargetHealth`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTargetHealth`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client
```

```
    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS region,
and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

- For API details, see DescribeTargetHealth in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.
- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
```

```
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example, such
as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
```

```
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability Zones."
        )
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
 balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port is
 open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
```

```
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access from
this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging from
your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer endpoint.
Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )

    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
```

```
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as sending
requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.")
                endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check to
update."
                )
```

```
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
 failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"

        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
 failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a non-
existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
 self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
 instances."
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
```

```
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()
```

```
    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
 Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
 created during the demo."
        )
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up manually
 to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
```

```
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM policies
and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
```

```
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
 "destroy"]
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
```

```
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
```

```
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to attach
 to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
 PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
```

```
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed
by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore
to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to the
instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
```

```
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance {instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance {instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to associate
with
                                                the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                            instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
```

```
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or is
not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
```

```
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a permissions
policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
```

```
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
```

```
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
```

```
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with availability
zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
```

```
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) -> None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
terminate the instance again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group %s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
```

```
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
 the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
 ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
 configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
 group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
```

```
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs. "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
parameters."
                )
```

```
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass


    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
public
        access when you're done.

        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value that
indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
```

```
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to either
this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist. Please
check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}' on
port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
```

```
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
```

```
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the sensitivity
of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
```

```
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing target
group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for new
ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.", target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
```

```
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the AWS
Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with any
load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn} still
exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts *
delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
```

```
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}' already
exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in this
account and region. "
```

```
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase in
the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests to
the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener to
the
                             load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
```

```
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
```

```
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer {load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
```

```
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint, retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
```

```
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS region,
 and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
 correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
 account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table has a
```

```
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5, "WriteCapacityUnits":
5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
```

```
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
 batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name, data_file
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}: {err}"
            )

    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters to
 drive
```

```
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False. "
                    "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers

- DescribeSubnets
- DescribeTargetGroups
- DescribeTargetHealth
- DescribeVpcs
- RebootInstances
- ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation
- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Amazon EMR examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon EMR.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AddJobFlowSteps`

The following code example shows how to use `AddJobFlowSteps`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Add a Spark step, which is run by the cluster as soon as it is added.

```
def add_step(cluster_id, name, script_uri, script_args, emr_client):
    """
    Adds a job step to the specified cluster. This example adds a Spark
    step, which is run by the cluster as soon as it is added.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param name: The name of the step.
    :param script_uri: The URI where the Python script is stored.
    :param script_args: Arguments to pass to the Python script.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The ID of the newly added step.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.add_job_flow_steps(
            JobFlowId=cluster_id,
            Steps=[
                {
                    "Name": name,
                    "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
                    "HadoopJarStep": {
                        "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
                        "Args": [
                            "spark-submit",
                            "--deploy-mode",
                            "cluster",
                            script_uri,
                            *script_args,
                        ],
                    },
                }
            ],
        )
        step_id = response["StepIds"][0]
```

```
        logger.info("Started step with ID %s", step_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't start step %s with URI %s.", name, script_uri)
        raise
    else:
        return step_id
```

Run an Amazon EMR File System (EMRFS) command as a job step on a cluster. This can be used to automate EMRFS commands on a cluster instead of running commands manually through an SSH connection.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def add_emrfs_step(command, bucket_url, cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Add an EMRFS command as a job flow step to an existing cluster.

    :param command: The EMRFS command to run.
    :param bucket_url: The URL of a bucket that contains tracking metadata.
    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster to update.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 Amazon EMR client object.
    :return: The ID of the added job flow step. Status can be tracked by calling
             the emr_client.describe_step() function.
    """
    job_flow_step = {
        "Name": "Example EMRFS Command Step",
        "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
        "HadoopJarStep": {
            "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
            "Args": ["/usr/bin/emrfs", command, bucket_url],
        },
    }

    try:
        response = emr_client.add_job_flow_steps(
            JobFlowId=cluster_id, Steps=[job_flow_step]
        )
        step_id = response["StepIds"][0]
```

```
        print(f"Added step {step_id} to cluster {cluster_id}.")
    except ClientError:
        print(f"Couldn't add a step to cluster {cluster_id}.")
        raise
    else:
        return step_id


def usage_demo():
    emr_client = boto3.client("emr")
    # Assumes the first waiting cluster has EMRFS enabled and has created metadata
    # with the default name of 'EmrFSMetadata'.
    cluster = emr_client.list_clusters(ClusterStates=["WAITING"])["Clusters"][0]
    add_emrfs_step(
        "sync", "s3://elasticmapreduce/samples/cloudfront", cluster["Id"],
 emr_client
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see AddJobFlowSteps in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_cluster(cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Gets detailed information about a cluster.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster to describe.
```

```
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The retrieved cluster information.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.describe_cluster(ClusterId=cluster_id)
        cluster = response["Cluster"]
        logger.info("Got data for cluster %s.", cluster["Name"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get data for cluster %s.", cluster_id)
        raise
    else:
        return cluster
```

- For API details, see DescribeCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeStep`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStep`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_step(cluster_id, step_id, emr_client):
    """
    Gets detailed information about the specified step, including the current state
 of
    the step.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param step_id: The ID of the step.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The retrieved information about the specified step.
    """
    try:
```

```
        response = emr_client.describe_step(ClusterId=cluster_id, StepId=step_id)
        step = response["Step"]
        logger.info("Got data for step %s.", step_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get data for step %s.", step_id)
        raise
    else:
        return step
```

- For API details, see DescribeStep in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListSteps`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSteps`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_steps(cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Gets a list of steps for the specified cluster. In this example, all steps are
    returned, including completed and failed steps.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The list of steps for the specified cluster.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.list_steps(ClusterId=cluster_id)
        steps = response["Steps"]
        logger.info("Got %s steps for cluster %s.", len(steps), cluster_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get steps for cluster %s.", cluster_id)
        raise
```

```
    else:
        return steps
```

- For API details, see ListSteps in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RunJobFlow`

The following code example shows how to use `RunJobFlow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def run_job_flow(
    name,
    log_uri,
    keep_alive,
    applications,
    job_flow_role,
    service_role,
    security_groups,
    steps,
    emr_client,
):
    """
    Runs a job flow with the specified steps. A job flow creates a cluster of
    instances and adds steps to be run on the cluster. Steps added to the cluster
    are run as soon as the cluster is ready.

    This example uses the 'emr-5.30.1' release. A list of recent releases can be
    found here:
        https://docs.aws.amazon.com/emr/latest/ReleaseGuide/emr-release-
components.html.

    :param name: The name of the cluster.
```

```
    :param log_uri: The URI where logs are stored. This can be an Amazon S3 bucket
URL,
                    such as 's3://my-log-bucket'.
    :param keep_alive: When True, the cluster is put into a Waiting state after all
                       steps are run. When False, the cluster terminates itself when
                       the step queue is empty.
    :param applications: The applications to install on each instance in the
cluster,
                         such as Hive or Spark.
    :param job_flow_role: The IAM role assumed by the cluster.
    :param service_role: The IAM role assumed by the service.
    :param security_groups: The security groups to assign to the cluster instances.
                            Amazon EMR adds all needed rules to these groups, so
                            they can be empty if you require only the default rules.
    :param steps: The job flow steps to add to the cluster. These are run in order
                  when the cluster is ready.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    :return: The ID of the newly created cluster.
    """
    try:
        response = emr_client.run_job_flow(
            Name=name,
            LogUri=log_uri,
            ReleaseLabel="emr-5.30.1",
            Instances={
                "MasterInstanceType": "m5.xlarge",
                "SlaveInstanceType": "m5.xlarge",
                "InstanceCount": 3,
                "KeepJobFlowAliveWhenNoSteps": keep_alive,
                "EmrManagedMasterSecurityGroup": security_groups["manager"].id,
                "EmrManagedSlaveSecurityGroup": security_groups["worker"].id,
            },
            Steps=[
                {
                    "Name": step["name"],
                    "ActionOnFailure": "CONTINUE",
                    "HadoopJarStep": {
                        "Jar": "command-runner.jar",
                        "Args": [
                            "spark-submit",
                            "--deploy-mode",
                            "cluster",
                            step["script_uri"],
                            *step["script_args"],
```

```
                        ],
                    },
                }
                for step in steps
            ],
            Applications=[{"Name": app} for app in applications],
            JobFlowRole=job_flow_role.name,
            ServiceRole=service_role.name,
            EbsRootVolumeSize=10,
            VisibleToAllUsers=True,
        )
        cluster_id = response["JobFlowId"]
        logger.info("Created cluster %s.", cluster_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create cluster.")
        raise
    else:
        return cluster_id
```

- For API details, see RunJobFlow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`TerminateJobFlows`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateJobFlows`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def terminate_cluster(cluster_id, emr_client):
    """
    Terminates a cluster. This terminates all instances in the cluster and cannot
    be undone. Any data not saved elsewhere, such as in an Amazon S3 bucket, is
 lost.
```

```
    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster to terminate.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 EMR client object.
    """
    try:
        emr_client.terminate_job_flows(JobFlowIds=[cluster_id])
        logger.info("Terminated cluster %s.", cluster_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't terminate cluster %s.", cluster_id)
        raise
```

- For API details, see TerminateJobFlows in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster and run a step

The following code example shows how to create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster that runs a step and automatically terminates after the step completes.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create a short-lived Amazon EMR cluster that estimates the value of pi using Apache Spark to parallelize a large number of calculations. The job writes output to Amazon EMR logs and to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. The cluster terminates itself after completing the job.

- Create an Amazon S3 bucket and upload a job script.
- Create AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) roles.
- Create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security groups.
- Create a short-lived cluster and run a single job step.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon EMR

Run a shell script to install libraries

The following code example shows how to use AWS Systems Manager to run a shell script on Amazon EMR instances that installs additional libraries. This way, you can automate instance management instead of running commands manually through an SSH connection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import argparse
import time
import boto3


def install_libraries_on_core_nodes(cluster_id, script_path, emr_client,
 ssm_client):
    """
    Copies and runs a shell script on the core nodes in the cluster.

    :param cluster_id: The ID of the cluster.
    :param script_path: The path to the script, typically an Amazon S3 object URL.
    :param emr_client: The Boto3 Amazon EMR client.
    :param ssm_client: The Boto3 AWS Systems Manager client.
    """
    core_nodes = emr_client.list_instances(
        ClusterId=cluster_id, InstanceGroupTypes=["CORE"]
    )["Instances"]
    core_instance_ids = [node["Ec2InstanceId"] for node in core_nodes]
    print(f"Found core instances: {core_instance_ids}.")

    commands = [
        # Copy the shell script from Amazon S3 to each node instance.
        f"aws s3 cp {script_path} /home/hadoop",
        # Run the shell script to install libraries on each node instance.
        "bash /home/hadoop/install_libraries.sh",
    ]
    for command in commands:
```

```
        print(f"Sending '{command}' to core instances...")
        command_id = ssm_client.send_command(
            InstanceIds=core_instance_ids,
            DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
            Parameters={"commands": [command]},
            TimeoutSeconds=3600,
        )["Command"]["CommandId"]
        while True:
            # Verify the previous step succeeded before running the next step.
            cmd_result = ssm_client.list_commands(CommandId=command_id)["Commands"]
[0]
            if cmd_result["StatusDetails"] == "Success":
                print(f"Command succeeded.")
                break
            elif cmd_result["StatusDetails"] in ["Pending", "InProgress"]:
                print(f"Command status is {cmd_result['StatusDetails']},
 waiting...")
                time.sleep(10)
            else:
                print(f"Command status is {cmd_result['StatusDetails']}, quitting.")
                raise RuntimeError(
                    f"Command {command} failed to run. "
                    f"Details: {cmd_result['StatusDetails']}"
                )


def main():
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument("cluster_id", help="The ID of the cluster.")
    parser.add_argument("script_path", help="The path to the script in Amazon S3.")
    args = parser.parse_args()

    emr_client = boto3.client("emr")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")

    install_libraries_on_core_nodes(
        args.cluster_id, args.script_path, emr_client, ssm_client
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

EventBridge examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with EventBridge.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

EventBridge Scheduler examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with EventBridge Scheduler.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello EventBridge Scheduler

The following code examples show how to get started using EventBridge Scheduler.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
```

```
def hello_scheduler(scheduler_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon EventBridge Scheduler
    client and list the schedules in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param scheduler_client: A Boto3 Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Client object.
 This object wraps
                              the low-level Amazon EventBridge Scheduler service API.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon EventBridge Scheduler! Let's list some of your schedules:
\n")
    paginator = scheduler_client.get_paginator("list_schedules")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10})

    schedule_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for schedule in page["Schedules"]:
            schedule_names.append(schedule["Name"])

    print(f"{len(schedule_names)} schedule(s) retrieved.")
    for schedule_name in schedule_names:
        print(f"\t{schedule_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_scheduler(boto3.client("scheduler"))
```

- For API details, see ListSchedules in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSchedule`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def create_schedule(
        self,
        name: str,
        schedule_expression: str,
        schedule_group_name: str,
        target_arn: str,
        role_arn: str,
        input: str,
        delete_after_completion: bool = False,
        use_flexible_time_window: bool = False,
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule with the specified parameters.

        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_expression: The expression that defines when the schedule
 runs.
```

```
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param target_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the execution IAM role.
        :param input: The input for the target.
        :param delete_after_completion: Whether to delete the schedule after it
completes.
        :param use_flexible_time_window: Whether to use a flexible time window.

        :return The ARN of the created schedule.
        """
        try:
            hours_to_run = 1
            flexible_time_window_minutes = 10
            parameters = {
                "Name": name,
                "ScheduleExpression": schedule_expression,
                "GroupName": schedule_group_name,
                "Target": {"Arn": target_arn, "RoleArn": role_arn, "Input": input},
                "StartDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc),
                "EndDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc) +
timedelta(hours=hours_to_run),
            }

            if delete_after_completion:
                parameters["ActionAfterCompletion"] = "DELETE"

            if use_flexible_time_window:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {
                    "Mode": "FLEXIBLE",
                    "MaximumWindowInMinutes": flexible_time_window_minutes,
                }
            else:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {"Mode": "OFF"}

            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule(**parameters)
            return response["ScheduleArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]["Message"]
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateSchedule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateScheduleGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateScheduleGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def create_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule group with the specified name and description.
```

```
        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param description: The description of the schedule group.

        :return: The ARN of the created schedule group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule_group(Name=name)
            return response["ScheduleGroupArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule group '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteSchedule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSchedule`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
```

```
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def delete_schedule(self, name: str, schedule_group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule with the specified name and schedule group.

        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule(
                Name=name, GroupName=schedule_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule with ID '%s' because the resource was
not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]["Message"]
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteSchedule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

DeleteScheduleGroup

The following code example shows how to use DeleteScheduleGroup.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def delete_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule group with the specified name.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule_group(Name=name)
            logger.info("Schedule group %s deleted successfully.", name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule group with ID '%s' because the
 resource was not found: %s",
```

```
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteScheduleGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Scheduled Events

The following code example shows how to:

- Deploy a AWS CloudFormation stack with required resources.
- Create a EventBridge Scheduler schedule group.
- Create a one-time EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a flexible time window.
- Create a recurring EventBridge Scheduler schedule with a specified rate.
- Delete EventBridge Scheduler the schedule and schedule group.
- Clean up resources and delete the stack.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class SchedulerScenario:
    """
```

```
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to schedule and receive events
using
    the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        scheduler_wrapper: SchedulerWrapper,
        cloud_formation_resource: ServiceResource,
    ):
        self.eventbridge_scheduler = scheduler_wrapper
        self.cloud_formation_resource = cloud_formation_resource
        self.stack: ServiceResource = None
        self.schedule_group_name = None
        self.sns_topic_arn = None
        self.role_arn = None

    def run(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """

        print(DASHES)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon EventBridge Scheduler Workflow.")
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        self.prepare_application()
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        self.create_one_time_schedule()
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        self.create_recurring_schedule()
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to delete all resources created by this workflow? (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            self.cleanup()
```

```
        print(DASHES)

        print("Amazon EventBridge Scheduler workflow completed.")

    def prepare_application(self) -> None:
        """
        Prepares the application by prompting the user setup information, deploying
a CloudFormation stack and
        creating a schedule group.
        """
        print("Preparing the application...")
        print(
            "\nThis example creates resources in a CloudFormation stack, including
an SNS topic"
            + "\nthat will be subscribed to the EventBridge Scheduler events. "
            + "\n\nYou will need to confirm the subscription in order to receive
event emails. "
        )

        email_address = q.ask("Enter an email address to use for event
subscriptions: ")
        stack_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the AWS Cloud Formation Stack: ")

        template_file = SchedulerScenario.get_template_as_string()

        parameters = [{"ParameterKey": "email", "ParameterValue": email_address}]

        self.stack = self.deploy_cloudformation_stack(
            stack_name, template_file, parameters
        )
        outputs = self.stack.outputs
        for output in outputs:
            if output.get("OutputKey") == "RoleARN":
                self.role_arn = output.get("OutputValue")
            elif output.get("OutputKey") == "SNStopicARN":
                self.sns_topic_arn = output.get("OutputValue")

        if not self.sns_topic_arn or not self.role_arn:
            error_string = f"""
            Failed to retrieve required outputs from CloudFormation stack.
            'sns_topic_arn'={self.sns_topic_arn}, 'role_arn'={self.role_arn}
            """
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)
```

```
        print(f"Stack output RoleARN: {self.role_arn}")
        print(f"Stack output SNStopicARN: a")
        schedule_group_name = "scenario-schedules-group"
        schedule_group_arn = self.eventbridge_scheduler.create_schedule_group(
            schedule_group_name
        )
        print(
            f"Successfully created schedule group '{self.schedule_group_name}':
{schedule_group_arn}."
        )
        self.schedule_group_name = schedule_group_name
        print("Application preparation complete.")

    def create_one_time_schedule(self) -> None:
        """
        Creates a one-time schedule to send an initial event.
        """
        schedule_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the one-time schedule:")

        scheduled_time = datetime.now(timezone.utc) + timedelta(minutes=1)
        formatted_scheduled_time = scheduled_time.strftime("%Y-%m-%dT%H:%M:%S")

        print(
            f"Creating a one-time schedule named '{schedule_name}' "
            + f"\nto send an initial event in 1 minute with a flexible time
window..."
        )

        schedule_arn = self.eventbridge_scheduler.create_schedule(
            schedule_name,
            f"at({formatted_scheduled_time})",
            self.schedule_group_name,
            self.sns_topic_arn,
            self.role_arn,
            f"One time scheduled event test from schedule {schedule_name}.",
            delete_after_completion=True,
            use_flexible_time_window=True,
        )
        print(
            f"Successfully created schedule '{schedule_name}' in schedule group
'scenario-schedules-group': {schedule_arn}."
        )
        print(f"Subscription email will receive an email from this event.")
```

```
        print(f"You must confirm your subscription to receive event emails.")
        print(f"One-time schedule '{schedule_name}' created successfully.")

    def create_recurring_schedule(self) -> None:
        """
        Create a recurring schedule to send events at a specified rate in minutes.
        """

        print("Creating a recurring schedule to send events for one hour...")
        schedule_name = q.ask("Enter a name for the recurring schedule: ")
        schedule_rate_in_minutes = q.ask(
            "Enter the desired schedule rate (in minutes): ", q.is_int
        )

        schedule_arn = self.eventbridge_scheduler.create_schedule(
            schedule_name,
            f"rate({schedule_rate_in_minutes} minutes)",
            self.schedule_group_name,
            self.sns_topic_arn,
            self.role_arn,
            f"Recurrent event test from schedule {schedule_name}.",
        )

        print(
            f"Successfully created schedule '{schedule_name}' in schedule group
'scenario-schedules-group': {schedule_arn}."
        )
        print(f"Subscription email will receive an email from this event.")
        print(f"You must confirm your subscription to receive event emails.")

        if q.ask(
            f"Are you ready to delete the '{schedule_name}' schedule? (y/n)",
q.is_yesno
        ):
            self.eventbridge_scheduler.delete_schedule(
                schedule_name, self.schedule_group_name
            )

    def deploy_cloudformation_stack(
        self, stack_name: str, cfn_template: str, parameters: [dict[str, str]]
    ) -> ServiceResource:
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
```

```
        defined in the associated `cfn_template.yaml` AWS CloudFormation script and
are deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.

        :param stack_name: The name of the CloudFormation stack.
        :param cfn_template: The CloudFormation template as a string.
        :param parameters: The parameters for the CloudFormation stack.
        :return: The CloudFormation stack resource.
        """
        print(f"Deploying CloudFormation stack: {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cloud_formation_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=cfn_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
            Parameters=parameters,
        )
        print(f"CloudFormation stack creation started: {stack_name}")
        print("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to complete...")
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_create_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print("CloudFormation stack creation complete.")

        return stack

    def destroy_cloudformation_stack(self, stack: ServiceResource) -> None:
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example resources.
        """
        print(
            f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' is being deleted. This may take a
few minutes."
        )
        stack.delete()
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_delete_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
```

```
        print(f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' has been deleted.")

    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the CloudFormation stack and the resources created for the demo.
        """

        if self.schedule_group_name:
            schedule_group_name = self.schedule_group_name
            self.schedule_group_name = None
            self.eventbridge_scheduler.delete_schedule_group(schedule_group_name)
            print(f"Successfully deleted schedule group '{schedule_group_name}'.")

        if self.stack is not None:
            stack = self.stack
            self.stack = None
            self.destroy_cloudformation_stack(stack)
        print("Stack deleted, demo complete.")

    @staticmethod
    def get_template_as_string() -> str:
        """
        Returns a string containing this scenario's CloudFormation template.
        """
        script_directory = os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))
        template_file_path = os.path.join(script_directory, "cfn_template.yaml")
        file = open(template_file_path, "r")
        return file.read()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    demo: SchedulerScenario = None
    try:
        scheduler_wrapper = SchedulerWrapper.from_client()
        cloud_formation_resource = resource("cloudformation")
        demo = SchedulerScenario(scheduler_wrapper, cloud_formation_resource)
        demo.run()

    except Exception as exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
        if demo is not None:
            demo.cleanup()
```

SchedulerWrapper class that wraps Amazon EventBridge Scheduler actions.

```
class SchedulerWrapper:
    def __init__(self, eventbridge_scheduler_client: client):
        self.scheduler_client = eventbridge_scheduler_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "SchedulerWrapper":
        """
        Creates a SchedulerWrapper instance with a default EventBridge Scheduler
 client.

        :return: An instance of SchedulerWrapper initialized with the default
 EventBridge Scheduler client.
        """
        eventbridge_scheduler_client = boto3.client("scheduler")
        return cls(eventbridge_scheduler_client)


    def create_schedule(
        self,
        name: str,
        schedule_expression: str,
        schedule_group_name: str,
        target_arn: str,
        role_arn: str,
        input: str,
        delete_after_completion: bool = False,
        use_flexible_time_window: bool = False,
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule with the specified parameters.

        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_expression: The expression that defines when the schedule
 runs.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param target_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the target.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the execution IAM role.
        :param input: The input for the target.
```

```
        :param delete_after_completion: Whether to delete the schedule after it
completes.
        :param use_flexible_time_window: Whether to use a flexible time window.

        :return The ARN of the created schedule.
        """
        try:
            hours_to_run = 1
            flexible_time_window_minutes = 10
            parameters = {
                "Name": name,
                "ScheduleExpression": schedule_expression,
                "GroupName": schedule_group_name,
                "Target": {"Arn": target_arn, "RoleArn": role_arn, "Input": input},
                "StartDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc),
                "EndDate": datetime.now(timezone.utc) +
timedelta(hours=hours_to_run),
            }

            if delete_after_completion:
                parameters["ActionAfterCompletion"] = "DELETE"

            if use_flexible_time_window:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {
                    "Mode": "FLEXIBLE",
                    "MaximumWindowInMinutes": flexible_time_window_minutes,
                }
            else:
                parameters["FlexibleTimeWindow"] = {"Mode": "OFF"}

            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule(**parameters)
            return response["ScheduleArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]["Message"]
                )
            raise
```

```
    def delete_schedule(self, name: str, schedule_group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule with the specified name and schedule group.

        :param name: The name of the schedule.
        :param schedule_group_name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule(
                Name=name, GroupName=schedule_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule with ID '%s' because the resource was
not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule: %s", err.response["Error"]["Message"]
                )
                raise


    def create_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new schedule group with the specified name and description.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        :param description: The description of the schedule group.

        :return: The ARN of the created schedule group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.scheduler_client.create_schedule_group(Name=name)
            return response["ScheduleGroupArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ConflictException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to create schedule group '%s' due to a conflict. %s",
```

```
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_schedule_group(self, name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the schedule group with the specified name.

        :param name: The name of the schedule group.
        """
        try:
            self.scheduler_client.delete_schedule_group(Name=name)
            logger.info("Schedule group %s deleted successfully.", name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Failed to delete schedule group with ID '%s' because the
resource was not found: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting schedule group: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateSchedule
  - CreateScheduleGroup
  - DeleteSchedule

- DeleteScheduleGroups

AWS Glue examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def hello_glue():
    """
    Lists the job definitions in your AWS Glue account, using the AWS SDK for Python
 (Boto3).
    """
    try:
        # Create the Glue client
```

```
        glue = boto3.client("glue")

        # List the jobs, limiting the results to 10 per page
        paginator = glue.get_paginator("get_jobs")
        response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
            PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10, "PageSize": 10}
        )

        # Print the job names
        print("Here are the jobs in your account:")
        for page in response_iterator:
            for job in page["Jobs"]:
                print(f"\t{job['Name']}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error: {e}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_glue()
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.

- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions used in the scenario.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to look up.
        :return: Data about the crawler.
        """
        crawler = None
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_crawler(Name=name)
            crawler = response["Crawler"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Crawler %s doesn't exist.", name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
```

```
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return crawler


    def create_crawler(self, name, role_arn, db_name, db_prefix, s3_target):
        """
        Creates a crawler that can crawl the specified target and populate a
        database in your AWS Glue Data Catalog with metadata that describes the data
        in the target.

        :param name: The name of the crawler.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an AWS Identity and
Access
                         Management (IAM) role that grants permission to let AWS
Glue
                         access the resources it needs.
        :param db_name: The name to give the database that is created by the
crawler.
        :param db_prefix: The prefix to give any database tables that are created by
                          the crawler.
        :param s3_target: The URL to an S3 bucket that contains data that is
                          the target of the crawler.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_crawler(
                Name=name,
                Role=role_arn,
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                TablePrefix=db_prefix,
                Targets={"S3Targets": [{"Path": s3_target}]},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create crawler. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def start_crawler(self, name):
```

```
        """
        Starts a crawler. The crawler crawls its configured target and creates
        metadata that describes the data it finds in the target data source.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to start.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.start_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_database(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a database in your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to look up.
        :return: Information about the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Database"]


    def get_tables(self, db_name):
        """
        Gets a list of tables in a Data Catalog database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database to query.
```

```
        :return: The list of tables in the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_tables(DatabaseName=db_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get tables %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["TableList"]


    def create_job(self, name, description, role_arn, script_location):
        """
        Creates a job definition for an extract, transform, and load (ETL) job that
can
        be run by AWS Glue.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param description: The description of the job definition.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role that grants AWS Glue the permissions
                         it requires to run the job.
        :param script_location: The Amazon S3 URL of a Python ETL script that is run
as
                                part of the job. The script defines how the data is
                                transformed.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_job(
                Name=name,
                Description=description,
                Role=role_arn,
                Command={
                    "Name": "glueetl",
                    "ScriptLocation": script_location,
                    "PythonVersion": "3",
                },
                GlueVersion="3.0",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def start_job_run(self, name, input_database, input_table, output_bucket_name):
        """
        Starts a job run. A job run extracts data from the source, transforms it,
        and loads it to the output bucket.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param input_database: The name of the metadata database that contains
tables
                               that describe the source data. This is typically
created
                               by a crawler.
        :param input_table: The name of the table in the metadata database that
                            describes the source data.
        :param output_bucket_name: The S3 bucket where the output is written.
        :return: The ID of the job run.
        """
        try:
            # The custom Arguments that are passed to this function are used by the
            # Python ETL script to determine the location of input and output data.
            response = self.glue_client.start_job_run(
                JobName=name,
                Arguments={
                    "--input_database": input_database,
                    "--input_table": input_table,
                    "--output_bucket_url": f"s3://{output_bucket_name}/",
                },
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start job run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return response["JobRunId"]


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the names of job definitions in your account.

        :return: The list of job definition names.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.list_jobs()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list jobs. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobNames"]


    def get_job_runs(self, job_name):
        """
        Gets information about runs that have been performed for a specific job
        definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to look up.
        :return: The list of job runs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_runs(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job runs for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRuns"]
```

```
    def get_job_run(self, name, run_id):
        """
        Gets information about a single job run.

        :param name: The name of the job definition for the run.
        :param run_id: The ID of the run.
        :return: Information about the run.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_run(JobName=name, RunId=run_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job run %s/%s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                run_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRun"]


    def delete_job(self, job_name):
        """
        Deletes a job definition. This also deletes data about all runs that are
        associated with this job definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_job(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_table(self, db_name, table_name):
```

```
        """
        Deletes a table from a metadata database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that contains the table.
        :param table_name: The name of the table to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_table(DatabaseName=db_name, Name=table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_database(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a metadata database from your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_crawler(Name=name)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
class GlueCrawlerJobScenario:
    """
    Encapsulates a scenario that shows how to create an AWS Glue crawler and job and
 use
    them to transform data from CSV to JSON format.
    """

    def __init__(self, glue_client, glue_service_role, glue_bucket):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 AWS Glue client.
        :param glue_service_role: An AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role
                                  that AWS Glue can assume to gain access to the
                                  resources it requires.
        :param glue_bucket: An S3 bucket that can hold a job script and output data
                            from AWS Glue job runs.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client
        self.glue_service_role = glue_service_role
        self.glue_bucket = glue_bucket

    @staticmethod
    def wait(seconds, tick=12):
        """
        Waits for a specified number of seconds, while also displaying an animated
        spinner.

        :param seconds: The number of seconds to wait.
        :param tick: The number of frames per second used to animate the spinner.
```

```
        """
        progress = "|/-\\"
        waited = 0
        while waited < seconds:
            for frame in range(tick):
                sys.stdout.write(f"\r{progress[frame % len(progress)]}")
                sys.stdout.flush()
                time.sleep(1 / tick)
            waited += 1

    def upload_job_script(self, job_script):
        """
        Uploads a Python ETL script to an S3 bucket. The script is used by the AWS
Glue
        job to transform data.

        :param job_script: The relative path to the job script.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_bucket.upload_file(Filename=job_script, Key=job_script)
            print(f"Uploaded job script '{job_script}' to the example bucket.")
        except S3UploadFailedError as err:
            logger.error("Couldn't upload job script. Here's why: %s", err)
            raise

    def run(self, crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source, job_script,
job_name):
        """
        Runs the scenario. This is an interactive experience that runs at a command
        prompt and asks you for input throughout.

        :param crawler_name: The name of the crawler used in the scenario. If the
                             crawler does not exist, it is created.
        :param db_name: The name to give the metadata database created by the
crawler.
        :param db_prefix: The prefix to give tables added to the database by the
                          crawler.
        :param data_source: The location of the data source that is targeted by the
                            crawler and extracted during job runs.
        :param job_script: The job script that is used to transform data during job
                           runs.
        :param job_name: The name to give the job definition that is created during
the
                         scenario.
```

```
        """
        wrapper = GlueWrapper(self.glue_client)
        print(f"Checking for crawler {crawler_name}.")
        crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
        if crawler is None:
            print(f"Creating crawler {crawler_name}.")
            wrapper.create_crawler(
                crawler_name,
                self.glue_service_role.arn,
                db_name,
                db_prefix,
                data_source,
            )
            print(f"Created crawler {crawler_name}.")
            crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
        pprint(crawler)
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
            f"When you run the crawler, it crawls data stored in {data_source} and "
            f"creates a metadata database in the AWS Glue Data Catalog that
describes "
            f"the data in the data source."
        )
        print("In this example, the source data is in CSV format.")
        ready = False
        while not ready:
            ready = Question.ask_question(
                "Ready to start the crawler? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno
            )
        wrapper.start_crawler(crawler_name)
        print("Let's wait for the crawler to run. This typically takes a few
minutes.")
        crawler_state = None
        while crawler_state != "READY":
            self.wait(10)
            crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
            crawler_state = crawler["State"]
            print(f"Crawler is {crawler['State']}.")
        print("-" * 88)

        database = wrapper.get_database(db_name)
        print(f"The crawler created database {db_name}:")
        pprint(database)
```

```
        print(f"The database contains these tables:")
        tables = wrapper.get_tables(db_name)
        for index, table in enumerate(tables):
            print(f"\t{index + 1}. {table['Name']}")
        table_index = Question.ask_question(
            f"Enter the number of a table to see more detail: ",
            Question.is_int,
            Question.in_range(1, len(tables)),
        )
        pprint(tables[table_index - 1])
        print("-" * 88)

        print(f"Creating job definition {job_name}.")
        wrapper.create_job(
            job_name,
            "Getting started example job.",
            self.glue_service_role.arn,
            f"s3://{self.glue_bucket.name}/{job_script}",
        )
        print("Created job definition.")
        print(
            f"When you run the job, it extracts data from {data_source}, transforms
it "
            f"by using the {job_script} script, and loads the output into "
            f"S3 bucket {self.glue_bucket.name}."
        )
        print(
            "In this example, the data is transformed from CSV to JSON, and only a
few "
            "fields are included in the output."
        )
        job_run_status = None
        if Question.ask_question(f"Ready to run? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno):
            job_run_id = wrapper.start_job_run(
                job_name, db_name, tables[0]["Name"], self.glue_bucket.name
            )
            print(f"Job {job_name} started. Let's wait for it to run.")
            while job_run_status not in ["SUCCEEDED", "STOPPED", "FAILED",
"TIMEOUT"]:
                self.wait(10)
                job_run = wrapper.get_job_run(job_name, job_run_id)
                job_run_status = job_run["JobRunState"]
                print(f"Job {job_name}/{job_run_id} is {job_run_status}.")
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
        if job_run_status == "SUCCEEDED":
            print(
                f"Data from your job run is stored in your S3 bucket
'{self.glue_bucket.name}':"
            )
            try:
                keys = [
                    obj.key for obj in
self.glue_bucket.objects.filter(Prefix="run-")
                ]
                for index, key in enumerate(keys):
                    print(f"\t{index + 1}: {key}")
                lines = 4
                key_index = Question.ask_question(
                    f"Enter the number of a block to download it and see the first
{lines} "
                    f"lines of JSON output in the block: ",
                    Question.is_int,
                    Question.in_range(1, len(keys)),
                )
                job_data = io.BytesIO()
                self.glue_bucket.download_fileobj(keys[key_index - 1], job_data)
                job_data.seek(0)
                for _ in range(lines):
                    print(job_data.readline().decode("utf-8"))
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get job run data. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            print("-" * 88)

        job_names = wrapper.list_jobs()
        if job_names:
            print(f"Your account has {len(job_names)} jobs defined:")
            for index, job_name in enumerate(job_names):
                print(f"\t{index + 1}. {job_name}")
            job_index = Question.ask_question(
                f"Enter a number between 1 and {len(job_names)} to see the list of
runs for "
                f"a job: ",
```

```
                Question.is_int,
                Question.in_range(1, len(job_names)),
            )
            job_runs = wrapper.get_job_runs(job_names[job_index - 1])
            if job_runs:
                print(f"Found {len(job_runs)} runs for job {job_names[job_index -
1]}:")
                for index, job_run in enumerate(job_runs):
                    print(
                        f"\t{index + 1}. {job_run['JobRunState']} on "
                        f"{job_run['CompletedOn']:%Y-%m-%d %H:%M:%S}"
                    )
                run_index = Question.ask_question(
                    f"Enter a number between 1 and {len(job_runs)} to see details
for a run: ",
                    Question.is_int,
                    Question.in_range(1, len(job_runs)),
                )
                pprint(job_runs[run_index - 1])
            else:
                print(f"No runs found for job {job_names[job_index - 1]}")
        else:
            print("Your account doesn't have any jobs defined.")
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
            f"Let's clean up. During this example we created job definition
'{job_name}'."
        )
        if Question.ask_question(
            "Do you want to delete the definition and all runs? (y/n) ",
            Question.is_yesno,
        ):
            wrapper.delete_job(job_name)
            print(f"Job definition '{job_name}' deleted.")
        tables = wrapper.get_tables(db_name)
        print(f"We also created database '{db_name}' that contains these tables:")
        for table in tables:
            print(f"\t{table['Name']}")
        if Question.ask_question(
            "Do you want to delete the tables and the database? (y/n) ",
            Question.is_yesno,
        ):
            for table in tables:
```

```
                wrapper.delete_table(db_name, table["Name"])
                print(f"Deleted table {table['Name']}.")
            wrapper.delete_database(db_name)
            print(f"Deleted database {db_name}.")
        print(f"We also created crawler '{crawler_name}'.")
        if Question.ask_question(
            "Do you want to delete the crawler? (y/n) ", Question.is_yesno
        ):
            wrapper.delete_crawler(crawler_name)
            print(f"Deleted crawler {crawler_name}.")
        print("-" * 88)


def parse_args(args):
    """
    Parse command line arguments.

    :param args: The command line arguments.
    :return: The parsed arguments.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Runs the AWS Glue getting started with crawlers and jobs
 scenario. "
        "Before you run this scenario, set up scaffold resources by running "
        "'python scaffold.py deploy'."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "role_name",
        help="The name of an IAM role that AWS Glue can assume. This role must grant
 access "
        "to Amazon S3 and to the permissions granted by the AWSGlueServiceRole "
        "managed policy.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "bucket_name",
        help="The name of an S3 bucket that AWS Glue can access to get the job
 script and "
        "put job results.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--job_script",
        default="flight_etl_job_script.py",
        help="The name of the job script file that is used in the scenario.",
    )
```

```
    return parser.parse_args(args)


def main():
    args = parse_args(sys.argv[1:])
    try:
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "Welcome to the AWS Glue getting started with crawlers and jobs
 scenario."
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        scenario = GlueCrawlerJobScenario(
            boto3.client("glue"),
            boto3.resource("iam").Role(args.role_name),
            boto3.resource("s3").Bucket(args.bucket_name),
        )
        scenario.upload_job_script(args.job_script)
        scenario.run(
            "doc-example-crawler",
            "doc-example-database",
            "doc-example-",
            "s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv",
            args.job_script,
            "doc-example-job",
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "To destroy scaffold resources, including the IAM role and S3 bucket "
            "used in this scenario, run 'python scaffold.py destroy'."
        )
        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the example.")
```

Create an ETL script that is used by AWS Glue to extract, transform, and load data during job runs.

```
import sys
```

```
from awsglue.transforms import *
from awsglue.utils import getResolvedOptions
from pyspark.context import SparkContext
from awsglue.context import GlueContext
from awsglue.job import Job

"""
These custom arguments must be passed as Arguments to the StartJobRun request.
    --input_database    The name of a metadata database that is contained in your
                        AWS Glue Data Catalog and that contains tables that
 describe
                        the data to be processed.
    --input_table       The name of a table in the database that describes the data
 to
                        be processed.
    --output_bucket_url An S3 bucket that receives the transformed output data.
"""
args = getResolvedOptions(
    sys.argv, ["JOB_NAME", "input_database", "input_table", "output_bucket_url"]
)
sc = SparkContext()
glueContext = GlueContext(sc)
spark = glueContext.spark_session
job = Job(glueContext)
job.init(args["JOB_NAME"], args)

# Script generated for node S3 Flight Data.
S3FlightData_node1 = glueContext.create_dynamic_frame.from_catalog(
    database=args["input_database"],
    table_name=args["input_table"],
    transformation_ctx="S3FlightData_node1",
)

# This mapping performs two main functions:
# 1. It simplifies the output by removing most of the fields from the data.
# 2. It renames some fields. For example, `fl_date` is renamed to `flight_date`.
ApplyMapping_node2 = ApplyMapping.apply(
    frame=S3FlightData_node1,
    mappings=[
        ("year", "long", "year", "long"),
        ("month", "long", "month", "tinyint"),
        ("day_of_month", "long", "day", "tinyint"),
        ("fl_date", "string", "flight_date", "string"),
        ("carrier", "string", "carrier", "string"),
```

```
        ("fl_num", "long", "flight_num", "long"),
        ("origin_city_name", "string", "origin_city_name", "string"),
        ("origin_state_abr", "string", "origin_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dest_city_name", "string", "dest_city_name", "string"),
        ("dest_state_abr", "string", "dest_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dep_time", "long", "departure_time", "long"),
        ("wheels_off", "long", "wheels_off", "long"),
        ("wheels_on", "long", "wheels_on", "long"),
        ("arr_time", "long", "arrival_time", "long"),
        ("mon", "string", "mon", "string"),
    ],
    transformation_ctx="ApplyMapping_node2",
)

# Script generated for node Revised Flight Data.
RevisedFlightData_node3 = glueContext.write_dynamic_frame.from_options(
    frame=ApplyMapping_node2,
    connection_type="s3",
    format="json",
    connection_options={"path": args["output_bucket_url"], "partitionKeys": []},
    transformation_ctx="RevisedFlightData_node3",
)

job.commit()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun

- GetJobRuns
- GetTables
- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def create_crawler(self, name, role_arn, db_name, db_prefix, s3_target):
        """
        Creates a crawler that can crawl the specified target and populate a
        database in your AWS Glue Data Catalog with metadata that describes the data
        in the target.

        :param name: The name of the crawler.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an AWS Identity and
 Access
```

```
                        Management (IAM) role that grants permission to let AWS
Glue
                        access the resources it needs.
        :param db_name: The name to give the database that is created by the
crawler.
        :param db_prefix: The prefix to give any database tables that are created by
                          the crawler.
        :param s3_target: The URL to an S3 bucket that contains data that is
                          the target of the crawler.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_crawler(
                Name=name,
                Role=role_arn,
                DatabaseName=db_name,
                TablePrefix=db_prefix,
                Targets={"S3Targets": [{"Path": s3_target}]},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create crawler. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def create_job(self, name, description, role_arn, script_location):
        """
        Creates a job definition for an extract, transform, and load (ETL) job that
 can
        be run by AWS Glue.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param description: The description of the job definition.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role that grants AWS Glue the permissions
                         it requires to run the job.
        :param script_location: The Amazon S3 URL of a Python ETL script that is run
 as
                                part of the job. The script defines how the data is
                                transformed.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.create_job(
                Name=name,
                Description=description,
                Role=role_arn,
                Command={
                    "Name": "glueetl",
                    "ScriptLocation": script_location,
                    "PythonVersion": "3",
                },
                GlueVersion="3.0",
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_database(self, name):
        """
        Deletes a metadata database from your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_job(self, job_name):
        """
        Deletes a job definition. This also deletes data about all runs that are
        associated with this job definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_job(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't delete job %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def delete_table(self, db_name, table_name):
        """
        Deletes a table from a metadata database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that contains the table.
        :param table_name: The name of the table to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.delete_table(DatabaseName=db_name, Name=table_name)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a crawler.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to look up.
        :return: Data about the crawler.
        """
```

```
        crawler = None
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_crawler(Name=name)
            crawler = response["Crawler"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Crawler %s doesn't exist.", name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return crawler
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client
```

```
    def get_database(self, name):
        """
        Gets information about a database in your Data Catalog.

        :param name: The name of the database to look up.
        :return: Information about the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_database(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get database %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["Database"]
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
```

```
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_job_run(self, name, run_id):
        """
        Gets information about a single job run.

        :param name: The name of the job definition for the run.
        :param run_id: The ID of the run.
        :return: Information about the run.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_run(JobName=name, RunId=run_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job run %s/%s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                run_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRun"]
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_job_runs(self, job_name):
        """
        Gets information about runs that have been performed for a specific job
        definition.

        :param job_name: The name of the job definition to look up.
        :return: The list of job runs.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_job_runs(JobName=job_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get job runs for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                job_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRuns"]
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetTables

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def get_tables(self, db_name):
        """
        Gets a list of tables in a Data Catalog database.

        :param db_name: The name of the database to query.
        :return: The list of tables in the database.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.get_tables(DatabaseName=db_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get tables %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                db_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["TableList"]
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def list_jobs(self):
        """
        Lists the names of job definitions in your account.

        :return: The list of job definition names.
        """
        try:
            response = self.glue_client.list_jobs()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list jobs. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobNames"]
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def start_crawler(self, name):
        """
        Starts a crawler. The crawler crawls its configured target and creates
        metadata that describes the data it finds in the target data source.

        :param name: The name of the crawler to start.
        """
        try:
            self.glue_client.start_crawler(Name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start crawler %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlueWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Glue actions."""

    def __init__(self, glue_client):
        """
        :param glue_client: A Boto3 Glue client.
        """
        self.glue_client = glue_client


    def start_job_run(self, name, input_database, input_table, output_bucket_name):
        """
        Starts a job run. A job run extracts data from the source, transforms it,
        and loads it to the output bucket.

        :param name: The name of the job definition.
        :param input_database: The name of the metadata database that contains
 tables
                               that describe the source data. This is typically
 created
                               by a crawler.
        :param input_table: The name of the table in the metadata database that
                            describes the source data.
        :param output_bucket_name: The S3 bucket where the output is written.
        :return: The ID of the job run.
        """
```

```
        try:
            # The custom Arguments that are passed to this function are used by the
            # Python ETL script to determine the location of input and output data.
            response = self.glue_client.start_job_run(
                JobName=name,
                Arguments={
                    "--input_database": input_database,
                    "--input_table": input_table,
                    "--output_bucket_url": f"s3://{output_bucket_name}/",
                },
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start job run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["JobRunId"]
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

HealthImaging examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with HealthImaging.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello HealthImaging

The following code examples show how to get started using HealthImaging.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def hello_medical_imaging(medical_imaging_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS HealthImaging
    client and list the data stores in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 AWS HealthImaging Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon Health Imaging! Let's list some of your data stores:\n")
    try:
        paginator = medical_imaging_client.get_paginator("list_datastores")
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
        datastore_summaries = []
        for page in page_iterator:
            datastore_summaries.extend(page["datastoreSummaries"])
        print("\tData Stores:")
        for ds in datastore_summaries:
            print(f"\t\tDatastore: {ds['datastoreName']} ID {ds['datastoreId']}")
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.error(
            "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why: %s: %s",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            err.response["Error"]["Message"],
        )
        raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_medical_imaging(boto3.client("medical-imaging"))
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CopyImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyImageSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Utility function to copy an image set.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def copy_image_set(
        self,
        datastore_id,
        image_set_id,
        version_id,
        destination_image_set_id=None,
        destination_version_id=None,
        force=False,
        subsets=[],
    ):
        """
        Copy an image set.
```

```
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The ID of the image set version.
        :param destination_image_set_id: The ID of the optional destination image
set.
        :param destination_version_id: The ID of the optional destination image set
version.
        :param force: Force the copy.
        :param subsets: The optional subsets to copy. For example:
["12345678901234567890123456789012"].
        :return: The copied image set ID.
        """
        try:
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }
            if destination_image_set_id and destination_version_id:
                copy_image_set_information["destinationImageSet"] = {
                    "imageSetId": destination_image_set_id,
                    "latestVersionId": destination_version_id,
                }
            if len(subsets) > 0:
                copySubsetsJson = {
                    "SchemaVersion": "1.1",
                    "Study": {"Series": {"imageSetId": {"Instances": {}}}},
                }

                for subset in subsets:
                    copySubsetsJson["Study"]["Series"]["imageSetId"]["Instances"][
                        subset
                    ] = {}

                copy_image_set_information["sourceImageSet"]["DICOMCopies"] = {
                    "copiableAttributes": json.dumps(copySubsetsJson)
                }
            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't copy image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return copy_results["destinationImageSetProperties"]["imageSetId"]
```

Copy an image set without a destination.

```
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }

            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
```

Copy an image set with a destination.

```
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }

            if destination_image_set_id and destination_version_id:
                copy_image_set_information["destinationImageSet"] = {
                    "imageSetId": destination_image_set_id,
                    "latestVersionId": destination_version_id,
                }

            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
```

Copy a subset of an image set.

```
            copy_image_set_information = {
                "sourceImageSet": {"latestVersionId": version_id}
            }

            if len(subsets) > 0:
                copySubsetsJson = {
                    "SchemaVersion": "1.1",
                    "Study": {"Series": {"imageSetId": {"Instances": {}}}},
                }

                for subset in subsets:
                    copySubsetsJson["Study"]["Series"]["imageSetId"]["Instances"][
                        subset
                    ] = {}

                copy_image_set_information["sourceImageSet"]["DICOMCopies"] = {
                    "copiableAttributes": json.dumps(copySubsetsJson)
                }

            copy_results = self.health_imaging_client.copy_image_set(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                sourceImageSetId=image_set_id,
                copyImageSetInformation=copy_image_set_information,
                force=force,
            )
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see CopyImageSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`CreateDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDatastore`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def create_datastore(self, name):
        """
        Create a data store.

        :param name: The name of the data store to create.
        :return: The data store ID.
        """
        try:
            data_store =
 self.health_imaging_client.create_datastore(datastoreName=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create data store %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return data_store["datastoreId"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see CreateDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatastore`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def delete_datastore(self, datastore_id):
        """
        Delete a data store.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.delete_datastore(datastoreId=datastore_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete data store %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                datastore_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteImageSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def delete_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id):
        """
        Delete an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :return: The delete results.
        """
        try:
            delete_results = self.health_imaging_client.delete_image_set(
                imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise
        else:
            return delete_results
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DeleteImageSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetDICOMImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_dicom_import_job(self, datastore_id, job_id):
        """
        Get the properties of a DICOM import job.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param job_id: The ID of the job.
        :return: The job properties.
        """
        try:
            job = self.health_imaging_client.get_dicom_import_job(
```

```
                jobId=job_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get DICOM import job. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job["jobProperties"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatastore`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_datastore_properties(self, datastore_id):
        """
        Get the properties of a data store.
```

```
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :return: The data store properties.
        """
        try:
            data_store = self.health_imaging_client.get_datastore(
                datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get data store %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return data_store["datastoreProperties"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageFrame`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageFrame`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
```

```
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_pixel_data(
        self, file_path_to_write, datastore_id, image_set_id, image_frame_id
    ):
        """
        Get an image frame's pixel data.

        :param file_path_to_write: The path to write the image frame's HTJ2K encoded
pixel data.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param image_frame_id: The ID of the image frame.
        """
        try:
            image_frame = self.health_imaging_client.get_image_frame(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                imageSetId=image_set_id,
                imageFrameInformation={"imageFrameId": image_frame_id},
            )
            with open(file_path_to_write, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in image_frame["imageFrameBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    if chunk:
                        f.write(chunk)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image frame. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetImageFrame in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSet`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None):
        """
        Get the properties of an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The optional version of the image set.
        :return: The image set properties.
        """
        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set = self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:
                image_set = self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return image_set
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetImageSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`GetImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `GetImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Utility function to get image set metadata.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def get_image_set_metadata(
        self, metadata_file, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None
    ):
        """
        Get the metadata of an image set.

        :param metadata_file: The file to store the JSON gzipped metadata.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
```

```
        :param version_id: The version of the image set.
        """
        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set_metadata =
self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:

                image_set_metadata =
self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
            print(image_set_metadata)
            with open(metadata_file, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in
image_set_metadata["imageSetMetadataBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    if chunk:
                        f.write(chunk)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image metadata. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Get image set metadata without version.

```
                image_set_metadata =
self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
```

Get image set metadata with version.

```
                image_set_metadata =
self.health_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDICOMImportJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDICOMImportJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_dicom_import_jobs(self, datastore_id):
        """
        List the DICOM import jobs.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :return: The list of jobs.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator(
```

```
                "list_dicom_import_jobs"
            )
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(datastoreId=datastore_id)
            job_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                job_summaries.extend(page["jobSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list DICOM import jobs. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job_summaries
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListDICOMImportJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListDatastores`

The following code example shows how to use `ListDatastores`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client
```

```
    def list_datastores(self):
        """
        List the data stores.

        :return: The list of data stores.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator("list_datastores")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate()
            datastore_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                datastore_summaries.extend(page["datastoreSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return datastore_summaries
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListImageSetVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListImageSetVersions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_image_set_versions(self, datastore_id, image_set_id):
        """
        List the image set versions.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :return: The list of image set versions.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator(
                "list_image_set_versions"
            )
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
            image_set_properties_list = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                image_set_properties_list.extend(page["imageSetPropertiesList"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list image set versions. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_set_properties_list
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListImageSetVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListTagsForResource`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn):
        """
        List the tags for a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :return: The list of tags.
        """
        try:
            tags = self.health_imaging_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tags["tags"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`SearchImageSets`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchImageSets`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The utility function for searching image sets.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def search_image_sets(self, datastore_id, search_filter):
        """
        Search for image sets.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param search_filter: The search filter.
            For example: {"filters" : [{ "operator": "EQUAL", "values":
 [{"DICOMPatientId": "3524578"}]}]}.
        :return: The list of image sets.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
 self.health_imaging_client.get_paginator("search_image_sets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                datastoreId=datastore_id, searchCriteria=search_filter
```

```
            )
            metadata_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                metadata_summaries.extend(page["imageSetsMetadataSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't search image sets. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return metadata_summaries
```

Use case #1: EQUAL operator.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {"operator": "EQUAL", "values": [{"DICOMPatientId": patient_id}]}
            ]
        }

        image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(f"Image sets found with EQUAL operator\n{image_sets}")
```

Use case #2: BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and DICOMStudyTime.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {
                    "operator": "BETWEEN",
                    "values": [
                        {
                            "DICOMStudyDateAndTime": {
                                "DICOMStudyDate": "19900101",
                                "DICOMStudyTime": "000000",
                            }
                        },
                        {
                            "DICOMStudyDateAndTime": {
```

```
                                "DICOMStudyDate": "20230101",
                                "DICOMStudyTime": "000000",
                            }
                        },
                    ],
                }
            ]
        }

        image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(
            f"Image sets found with BETWEEN operator using DICOMStudyDate and
 DICOMStudyTime\n{image_sets}"
        )
```

Use case #3: BETWEEN operator using createdAt. Time studies were previously persisted.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {
                    "values": [
                        {
                            "createdAt": datetime.datetime(
                                2021, 8, 4, 14, 49, 54, 429000
                            )
                        },
                        {
                            "createdAt": datetime.datetime.now()
                            + datetime.timedelta(days=1)
                        },
                    ],
                    "operator": "BETWEEN",
                }
            ]
        }

        recent_image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(
            f"Image sets found with with BETWEEN operator using createdAt
 \n{recent_image_sets}"
        )
```

Use case #4: EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and BETWEEN on updatedAt and sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field.

```
        search_filter = {
            "filters": [
                {
                    "values": [
                        {
                            "updatedAt": datetime.datetime(
                                2021, 8, 4, 14, 49, 54, 429000
                            )
                        },
                        {
                            "updatedAt": datetime.datetime.now()
                            + datetime.timedelta(days=1)
                        },
                    ],
                    "operator": "BETWEEN",
                },
                {
                    "values": [{"DICOMSeriesInstanceUID": series_instance_uid}],
                    "operator": "EQUAL",
                },
            ],
            "sort": {
                "sortOrder": "ASC",
                "sortField": "updatedAt",
            },
        }

        image_sets = self.search_image_sets(data_store_id, search_filter)
        print(
            "Image sets found with EQUAL operator on DICOMSeriesInstanceUID and
BETWEEN on updatedAt and"
        )
        print(f"sort response in ASC order on updatedAt field\n{image_sets}")
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see SearchImageSets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`StartDICOMImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDICOMImportJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def start_dicom_import_job(
        self, job_name, datastore_id, role_arn, input_s3_uri, output_s3_uri
    ):
        """
        Start a DICOM import job.

        :param job_name: The name of the job.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to use for the
 job.
        :param input_s3_uri: The S3 bucket input prefix path containing the DICOM
 files.
        :param output_s3_uri: The S3 bucket output prefix path for the result.
        :return: The job ID.
        """
        try:
            job = self.health_imaging_client.start_dicom_import_job(
                jobName=job_name,
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                dataAccessRoleArn=role_arn,
                inputS3Uri=input_s3_uri,
```

```
                outputS3Uri=output_s3_uri,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start DICOM import job. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job["jobId"]
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see StartDICOMImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn, tags):
        """
        Tag a resource.
```

```
        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tags: The tags to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.tag_resource(resourceArn=resource_arn,
 tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't tag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UntagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `UntagResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client
```

```
    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn, tag_keys):
        """
        Untag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.untag_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn, tagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't untag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UpdateImageSetMetadata`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateImageSetMetadata`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
```

```
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def update_image_set_metadata(
        self, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force=False
    ):
        """
        Update the metadata of an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The ID of the image set version.
        :param metadata: The image set metadata as a dictionary.
            For example {"DICOMUpdates": {"updatableAttributes":
            "{\"SchemaVersion\":1.1,\"Patient\":{\"DICOM\":{\"PatientName\":
\"Garcia^Gloria\"}}}"}}
        :param: force: Force the update.
        :return: The updated image set metadata.
        """
        try:
            updated_metadata = self.health_imaging_client.update_image_set_metadata(
                imageSetId=image_set_id,
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                latestVersionId=version_id,
                updateImageSetMetadataUpdates=metadata,
                force=force,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update image set metadata. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return updated_metadata
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
```

```
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

Use case #1: Insert or update an attribute.

```
            attributes = """{
                    "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                    "Study": {
                        "DICOM": {
                            "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                        }
                    }
                }"""
            metadata = {"DICOMUpdates": {"updatableAttributes": attributes}}

            self.update_image_set_metadata(
                data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
            )
```

Use case #2: Remove an attribute.

```
            # Attribute key and value must match the existing attribute.
            attributes = """{
                    "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
                    "Study": {
                        "DICOM": {
                            "StudyDescription": "CT CHEST"
                        }
                    }
                }"""
            metadata = {"DICOMUpdates": {"removableAttributes": attributes}}

            self.update_image_set_metadata(
                data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
            )
```

Use case #3: Remove an instance.

```
            attributes = """{
                    "SchemaVersion": 1.1,
```

```
                    "Study": {
                        "Series": {
                            "1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {
                                "Instances": {

"1.1.1.1.1.1.12345.123456789012.123.12345678901234.1": {}
                                }
                            }
                        }
                    }
                }"""
            metadata = {"DICOMUpdates": {"removableAttributes": attributes}}

            self.update_image_set_metadata(
                data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
            )
```

Use case #4: Revert to an earlier version.

```
            metadata = {"revertToVersionId": "1"}

            self.update_image_set_metadata(
                data_store_id, image_set_id, version_id, metadata, force
            )
```

- For API details, see UpdateImageSetMetadata in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Scenarios

Get started with image sets and image frames

The following code example shows how to import DICOM files and download image frames in HealthImaging.

The implementation is structured as a command-line application.

- Set up resources for a DICOM import.
- Import DICOM files into a data store.
- Retrieve the image set IDs for the import job.
- Retrieve the image frame IDs for the image sets.
- Download, decode and verify the image frames.
- Clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create an AWS CloudFormation stack with the necessary resources.

```
    def deploy(self):
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
        defined in the associated `setup.yaml` AWS CloudFormation script and are
 deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.
        """

        print("\t\tLet's deploy the stack for resource creation.")
        stack_name = q.ask("\t\tEnter a name for the stack: ", q.non_empty)

        data_store_name = q.ask(
            "\t\tEnter a name for the Health Imaging Data Store: ", q.non_empty
        )

        account_id = boto3.client("sts").get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        with open(
            "../../../../scenarios/features/healthimaging_image_sets/resources/
cfn_template.yaml"
```

```
        ) as setup_file:
            setup_template = setup_file.read()
        print(f"\t\tCreating {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cf_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=setup_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
            Parameters=[
                {
                    "ParameterKey": "datastoreName",
                    "ParameterValue": data_store_name,
                },
                {
                    "ParameterKey": "userAccountID",
                    "ParameterValue": account_id,
                },
            ],
        )
        print("\t\tWaiting for stack to deploy. This typically takes a minute or
two.")
        waiter = self.cf_resource.meta.client.get_waiter("stack_create_complete")
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print(f"\t\tStack status: {stack.stack_status}")

        outputs_dictionary = {
            output["OutputKey"]: output["OutputValue"] for output in stack.outputs
        }
        self.input_bucket_name = outputs_dictionary["BucketName"]
        self.output_bucket_name = outputs_dictionary["BucketName"]
        self.role_arn = outputs_dictionary["RoleArn"]
        self.data_store_id = outputs_dictionary["DatastoreID"]
        return stack
```

Copy DICOM files to the Amazon S3 import bucket.

```
    def copy_single_object(self, key, source_bucket, target_bucket,
target_directory):
        """
        Copies a single object from a source to a target bucket.
```

```
        :param key: The key of the object to copy.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket for the copy.
        :param target_bucket: The target bucket for the copy.
        :param target_directory: The target directory for the copy.
        """
        new_key = target_directory + "/" + key
        copy_source = {"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": key}
        self.s3_client.copy_object(
            CopySource=copy_source, Bucket=target_bucket, Key=new_key
        )
        print(f"\n\t\tCopying {key}.")

    def copy_images(
        self, source_bucket, source_directory, target_bucket, target_directory
    ):
        """
        Copies the images from the source to the target bucket using multiple
threads.

        :param source_bucket: The source bucket for the images.
        :param source_directory: Directory within the source bucket.
        :param target_bucket: The target bucket for the images.
        :param target_directory: Directory within the target bucket.
        """

        # Get list of all objects in source bucket.
        list_response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(
            Bucket=source_bucket, Prefix=source_directory
        )
        objs = list_response["Contents"]
        keys = [obj["Key"] for obj in objs]

        # Copy the objects in the bucket.
        for key in keys:
            self.copy_single_object(key, source_bucket, target_bucket,
target_directory)

        print("\t\tDone copying all objects.")
```

Import the DICOM files to the Amazon S3 data store.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def start_dicom_import_job(
        self,
        data_store_id,
        input_bucket_name,
        input_directory,
        output_bucket_name,
        output_directory,
        role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Routine which starts a HealthImaging import job.

        :param data_store_id: The HealthImaging data store ID.
        :param input_bucket_name: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket containing the
 DICOM files.
        :param input_directory: The directory in the S3 bucket containing the DICOM
 files.
        :param output_bucket_name: The name of the S3 bucket for the output.
        :param output_directory: The directory in the S3 bucket to store the output.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of the IAM role with permissions for the import.
        :return: The job ID of the import.
        """
```

```
        input_uri = f"s3://{input_bucket_name}/{input_directory}/"
        output_uri = f"s3://{output_bucket_name}/{output_directory}/"
        try:
            job = self.medical_imaging_client.start_dicom_import_job(
                jobName="examplejob",
                datastoreId=data_store_id,
                dataAccessRoleArn=role_arn,
                inputS3Uri=input_uri,
                outputS3Uri=output_uri,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start DICOM import job. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return job["jobId"]
```

Get image sets created by the DICOM import job.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)
```

```
    def get_image_sets_for_dicom_import_job(self, datastore_id, import_job_id):
        """
        Retrieves the image sets created for an import job.

        :param datastore_id: The HealthImaging data store ID
        :param import_job_id: The import job ID
        :return: List of image set IDs
        """

        import_job = self.medical_imaging_client.get_dicom_import_job(
            datastoreId=datastore_id, jobId=import_job_id
        )

        output_uri = import_job["jobProperties"]["outputS3Uri"]

        bucket = output_uri.split("/")[2]
        key = "/".join(output_uri.split("/")[3:])

        # Try to get the manifest.
        retries = 3
        while retries > 0:
            try:
                obj = self.s3_client.get_object(
                    Bucket=bucket, Key=key + "job-output-manifest.json"
                )
                body = obj["Body"]
                break
            except ClientError as error:
                retries = retries - 1
                time.sleep(3)
        try:
            data = json.load(body)
            expression =
jmespath.compile("jobSummary.imageSetsSummary[].imageSetId")
            image_sets = expression.search(data)
        except json.decoder.JSONDecodeError as error:
            image_sets = import_job["jobProperties"]

        return image_sets


    def get_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None):
        """
```

```
        Get the properties of an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The optional version of the image set.
        :return: The image set properties.
        """
        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set = self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:
                image_set = self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_set
```

Get image frame information for image sets.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
```

```
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def get_image_frames_for_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id,
out_directory):
        """
        Get the image frames for an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param out_directory: The directory to save the file.
        :return: The image frames.
        """
        image_frames = []
        file_name = os.path.join(out_directory,
f"{image_set_id}_metadata.json.gzip")
        file_name = file_name.replace("/", "\\\\")
        self.get_image_set_metadata(file_name, datastore_id, image_set_id)
        try:
            with gzip.open(file_name, "rb") as f_in:
                doc = json.load(f_in)
            instances = jmespath.search("Study.Series.*.Instances[].*[]", doc)
            for instance in instances:
                rescale_slope = jmespath.search("DICOM.RescaleSlope", instance)
                rescale_intercept = jmespath.search("DICOM.RescaleIntercept",
instance)
                image_frames_json = jmespath.search("ImageFrames[][]", instance)
                for image_frame in image_frames_json:
                    checksum_json = jmespath.search(
                        "max_by(PixelDataChecksumFromBaseToFullResolution, &Width)",
                        image_frame,
                    )
                    image_frame_info = {
                        "imageSetId": image_set_id,
                        "imageFrameId": image_frame["ID"],
                        "rescaleIntercept": rescale_intercept,
                        "rescaleSlope": rescale_slope,
                        "minPixelValue": image_frame["MinPixelValue"],
```

```
                        "maxPixelValue": image_frame["MaxPixelValue"],
                        "fullResolutionChecksum": checksum_json["Checksum"],
                    }
                    image_frames.append(image_frame_info)
            return image_frames
        except TypeError:
            return {}
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image frames for image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        return image_frames


    def get_image_set_metadata(
        self, metadata_file, datastore_id, image_set_id, version_id=None
    ):
        """
        Get the metadata of an image set.

        :param metadata_file: The file to store the JSON gzipped metadata.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param version_id: The version of the image set.
        """

        try:
            if version_id:
                image_set_metadata =
self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id,
                    datastoreId=datastore_id,
                    versionId=version_id,
                )
            else:
                image_set_metadata =
self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_set_metadata(
                    imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
                )
            with open(metadata_file, "wb") as f:
```

```
                for chunk in
 image_set_metadata["imageSetMetadataBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    if chunk:
                        f.write(chunk)

        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image metadata. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Download, decode and verify image frames.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)


    def get_pixel_data(
        self, file_path_to_write, datastore_id, image_set_id, image_frame_id
    ):
        """
        Get an image frame's pixel data.
```

```
        :param file_path_to_write: The path to write the image frame's HTJ2K encoded
 pixel data.
        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        :param image_frame_id: The ID of the image frame.
        """
        try:
            image_frame = self.medical_imaging_client.get_image_frame(
                datastoreId=datastore_id,
                imageSetId=image_set_id,
                imageFrameInformation={"imageFrameId": image_frame_id},
            )
            with open(file_path_to_write, "wb") as f:
                for chunk in image_frame["imageFrameBlob"].iter_chunks():
                    f.write(chunk)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get image frame. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def download_decode_and_check_image_frames(
        self, data_store_id, image_frames, out_directory
    ):
        """
        Downloads image frames, decodes them, and uses the checksum to validate
        the decoded images.

        :param data_store_id: The HealthImaging data store ID.
        :param image_frames: A list of dicts containing image frame information.
        :param out_directory: A directory for the downloaded images.
        :return: True if the function succeeded; otherwise, False.
        """
        total_result = True
        for image_frame in image_frames:
            image_file_path = f"{out_directory}/
image_{image_frame['imageFrameId']}.jph"
            self.get_pixel_data(
                image_file_path,
                data_store_id,
                image_frame["imageSetId"],
```

```
                image_frame["imageFrameId"],
            )

            image_array = self.jph_image_to_opj_bitmap(image_file_path)
            crc32_checksum = image_frame["fullResolutionChecksum"]
            # Verify checksum.
            crc32_calculated = zlib.crc32(image_array)
            image_result = crc32_checksum == crc32_calculated
            print(
                f"\t\tImage checksum verified for {image_frame['imageFrameId']}:
{image_result }"
            )
            total_result = total_result and image_result
        return total_result

    @staticmethod
    def jph_image_to_opj_bitmap(jph_file):
        """
        Decode the image to a bitmap using an OPENJPEG library.
        :param jph_file: The file to decode.
        :return: The decoded bitmap as an array.
        """
        # Use format 2 for the JPH file.
        params = openjpeg.utils.get_parameters(jph_file, 2)
        print(f"\n\t\tImage parameters for {jph_file}: \n\t\t{params}")

        image_array = openjpeg.utils.decode(jph_file, 2)

        return image_array
```

Clean up resources.

```
    def destroy(self, stack):
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example resources.
        """
```

```
        print(f"\t\tCleaning up resources and {stack.name}.")
        data_store_id = None
        for oput in stack.outputs:
            if oput["OutputKey"] == "DatastoreID":
                data_store_id = oput["OutputValue"]
        if data_store_id is not None:
            print(f"\t\tDeleting image sets in data store {data_store_id}.")
            image_sets = self.medical_imaging_wrapper.search_image_sets(
                data_store_id, {}
            )
            image_set_ids = [image_set["imageSetId"] for image_set in image_sets]

            for image_set_id in image_set_ids:
                self.medical_imaging_wrapper.delete_image_set(
                    data_store_id, image_set_id
                )
                print(f"\t\tDeleted image set with id : {image_set_id}")

        print(f"\t\tDeleting {stack.name}.")
        stack.delete()
        print("\t\tWaiting for stack removal. This may take a few minutes.")
        waiter = self.cf_resource.meta.client.get_waiter("stack_delete_complete")
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        print("\t\tStack delete complete.")




class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS HealthImaging functionality."""

    def __init__(self, medical_imaging_client, s3_client):
        """
        :param medical_imaging_client: A Boto3 Amazon MedicalImaging client.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client.
        """
        self.medical_imaging_client = medical_imaging_client
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        medical_imaging_client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(medical_imaging_client, s3_client)
```

```
    def search_image_sets(self, datastore_id, search_filter):
        """
        Search for image sets.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param search_filter: The search filter.
            For example: {"filters" : [{ "operator": "EQUAL", "values":
[{"DICOMPatientId": "3524578"}]}]}.
        :return: The list of image sets.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.medical_imaging_client.get_paginator("search_image_sets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                datastoreId=datastore_id, searchCriteria=search_filter
            )
            metadata_summaries = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                metadata_summaries.extend(page["imageSetsMetadataSummaries"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't search image sets. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return metadata_summaries


    def delete_image_set(self, datastore_id, image_set_id):
        """
        Delete an image set.

        :param datastore_id: The ID of the data store.
        :param image_set_id: The ID of the image set.
        """
        try:
            delete_results = self.medical_imaging_client.delete_image_set(
                imageSetId=image_set_id, datastoreId=datastore_id
            )
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete image set. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteImageSet
  - GetDICOMImportJob
  - GetImageFrame
  - GetImageSetMetadata
  - SearchImageSets
  - StartDICOMImportJob

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging a data store

The following code example shows how to tag a HealthImaging data store.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

To tag a data store.

```
    a_data_store_arn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"

    medical_imaging_wrapper.tag_resource(data_store_arn, {"Deployment":
 "Development"})
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn, tags):
        """
        Tag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tags: The tags to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.tag_resource(resourceArn=resource_arn,
 tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't tag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

To list tags for a data store.

```
    a_data_store_arn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"

    medical_imaging_wrapper.list_tags_for_resource(data_store_arn)
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn):
        """
```

```
        List the tags for a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :return: The list of tags.
        """
        try:
            tags = self.health_imaging_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tags["tags"]
```

To untag a data store.

```
    a_data_store_arn = "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012"

    medical_imaging_wrapper.untag_resource(data_store_arn, ["Deployment"])
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn, tag_keys):
        """
        Untag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.untag_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn, tagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't untag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Tagging an image set

The following code example shows how to tag a HealthImaging image set.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

To tag an image set.

```
    an_image_set_arn = (
```

```
        "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/"
        "imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012"
    )

    medical_imaging_wrapper.tag_resource(image_set_arn, {"Deployment":
 "Development"})
```

The utility function for tagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn, tags):
        """
        Tag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tags: The tags to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.tag_resource(resourceArn=resource_arn,
 tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't tag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

To list tags for an image set.

```
    an_image_set_arn = (
        "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/"
        "imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012"
    )
```

```
    medical_imaging_wrapper.list_tags_for_resource(image_set_arn)
```

The utility function for listing a resource's tags.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn):
        """
        List the tags for a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :return: The list of tags.
        """
        try:
            tags = self.health_imaging_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return tags["tags"]
```

To untag an image set.

```
    an_image_set_arn = (
        "arn:aws:medical-imaging:us-
east-1:123456789012:datastore/12345678901234567890123456789012/"
        "imageset/12345678901234567890123456789012"
    )

    medical_imaging_wrapper.untag_resource(image_set_arn, ["Deployment"])
```

The utility function for untagging a resource.

```
class MedicalImagingWrapper:
    def __init__(self, health_imaging_client):
        self.health_imaging_client = health_imaging_client


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn, tag_keys):
        """
        Untag a resource.

        :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.health_imaging_client.untag_resource(
                resourceArn=resource_arn, tagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't untag resource. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the MedicalImagingWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("medical-imaging")
    medical_imaging_wrapper = MedicalImagingWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - ListTagsForResource
  - TagResource
  - UntagResource

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

HealthLake examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with HealthLake.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateFHIRDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFHIRDatastore`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def create_fhir_datastore(
```

```
        self,
        datastore_name: str,
        sse_configuration: dict[str, any] = None,
        identity_provider_configuration: dict[str, any] = None,
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Creates a new HealthLake data store.
        When creating a SMART on FHIR data store, the following parameters are
required:
        - sse_configuration: The server-side encryption configuration for a SMART on
FHIR-enabled data store.
        - identity_provider_configuration: The identity provider configuration for a
SMART on FHIR-enabled data store.

        :param datastore_name: The name of the data store.
        :param sse_configuration: The server-side encryption configuration for a
SMART on FHIR-enabled data store.
        :param identity_provider_configuration: The identity provider configuration
for a SMART on FHIR-enabled data store.
        :return: A dictionary containing the data store information.
        """
        try:
            parameters = {"DatastoreName": datastore_name, "DatastoreTypeVersion":
"R4"}
            if (
                sse_configuration is not None
                and identity_provider_configuration is not None
            ):
                # Creating a SMART on FHIR-enabled data store
                parameters["SseConfiguration"] = sse_configuration
                parameters[
                    "IdentityProviderConfiguration"
                ] = identity_provider_configuration

            response = self.health_lake_client.create_fhir_datastore(**parameters)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create data store %s. Here's why %s",
                datastore_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code shows an example of parameters for a SMART on FHIR-enabled HealthLake data store.

```
            sse_configuration = {
                "KmsEncryptionConfig": {"CmkType": "AWS_OWNED_KMS_KEY"}
            }
            # TODO: Update the metadata to match your environment.
            metadata = {
                "issuer": "https://ehr.example.com",
                "jwks_uri": "https://ehr.example.com/.well-known/jwks.json",
                "authorization_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/auth/authorize",
                "token_endpoint": "https://ehr.token.com/auth/token",
                "token_endpoint_auth_methods_supported": [
                    "client_secret_basic",
                    "foo",
                ],
                "grant_types_supported": ["client_credential", "foo"],
                "registration_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/auth/register",
                "scopes_supported": ["openId", "profile", "launch"],
                "response_types_supported": ["code"],
                "management_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/user/manage",
                "introspection_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/user/introspect",
                "revocation_endpoint": "https://ehr.example.com/user/revoke",
                "code_challenge_methods_supported": ["S256"],
                "capabilities": [
                    "launch-ehr",
                    "sso-openid-connect",
                    "client-public",
                ],
            }
            # TODO: Update the IdpLambdaArn.
            identity_provider_configuration = {
                "AuthorizationStrategy": "SMART_ON_FHIR_V1",
                "FineGrainedAuthorizationEnabled": True,
                "IdpLambdaArn": "arn:aws:lambda:your-region:your-account-
id:function:your-lambda-name",
                "Metadata": json.dumps(metadata),
            }
            data_store = self.create_fhir_datastore(
                datastore_name, sse_configuration, identity_provider_configuration
            )
```

- For API details, see CreateFHIRDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DeleteFHIRDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFHIRDatastore`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def delete_fhir_datastore(self, datastore_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a HealthLake data store.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        """
        try:
            self.health_lake_client.delete_fhir_datastore(DatastoreId=datastore_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete data store with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                datastore_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFHIRDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DescribeFHIRDatastore`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeFHIRDatastore`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def describe_fhir_datastore(self, datastore_id: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a HealthLake data store.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :return: The data store description.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.describe_fhir_datastore(
                DatastoreId=datastore_id
            )
            return response["DatastoreProperties"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't describe data store with ID %s. Here's why %s",
```

```
                datastore_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRDatastore in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DescribeFHIRExportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeFHIRExportJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def describe_fhir_export_job(
        self, datastore_id: str, job_id: str
    ) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a HealthLake export job.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_id: The export job ID.
        :return: The export job description.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.health_lake_client.describe_fhir_export_job(
                DatastoreId=datastore_id, JobId=job_id
            )
            return response["ExportJobProperties"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't describe export job with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                job_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRExportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`DescribeFHIRImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeFHIRImportJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def describe_fhir_import_job(
        self, datastore_id: str, job_id: str
    ) -> dict[str, any]:
```

```
        """
        Describes a HealthLake import job.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_id: The import job ID.
        :return: The import job description.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.describe_fhir_import_job(
                DatastoreId=datastore_id, JobId=job_id
            )
            return response["ImportJobProperties"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't describe import job with ID %s. Here's why %s",
                job_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeFHIRImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListFHIRDatastores`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFHIRDatastores`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
```

```
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_fhir_datastores(self) -> list[dict[str, any]]:
        """
        Lists all HealthLake data stores.
        :return: A list of data store descriptions.
        """
        try:
            next_token = None
            datastores = []

            # Loop through paginated results.
            while True:
                parameters = {}
                if next_token is not None:
                    parameters["NextToken"] = next_token
                response =
 self.health_lake_client.list_fhir_datastores(**parameters)
                datastores.extend(response["DatastorePropertiesList"])
                if "NextToken" in response:
                    next_token = response["NextToken"]
                else:
                    break

            return datastores
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list data stores. Here's why %s", err.response["Error"]
["Message"]
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFHIRDatastores in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

ListFHIRExportJobs

The following code example shows how to use `ListFHIRExportJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_fhir_export_jobs(
        self,
        datastore_id: str,
        job_name: str = None,
        job_status: str = None,
        submitted_before: datetime = None,
        submitted_after: datetime = None,
    ) -> list[dict[str, any]]:
        """
        Lists HealthLake export jobs satisfying the conditions.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_name: The export job name.
        :param job_status: The export job status.
        :param submitted_before: The export job submitted before the specified date.
        :param submitted_after: The export job submitted after the specified date.
        :return: A list of export jobs.
        """
        try:
            parameters = {"DatastoreId": datastore_id}
            if job_name is not None:
                parameters["JobName"] = job_name
            if job_status is not None:
                parameters["JobStatus"] = job_status
            if submitted_before is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedBefore"] = submitted_before
            if submitted_after is not None:
```

```
                parameters["SubmittedAfter"] = submitted_after
            next_token = None
            jobs = []
            # Loop through paginated results.
            while True:
                if next_token is not None:
                    parameters["NextToken"] = next_token
                response =
self.health_lake_client.list_fhir_export_jobs(**parameters)
                jobs.extend(response["ExportJobPropertiesList"])
                if "NextToken" in response:
                    next_token = response["NextToken"]
                else:
                    break
            return jobs
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list export jobs. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFHIRExportJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListFHIRImportJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFHIRImportJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_fhir_import_jobs(
        self,
        datastore_id: str,
        job_name: str = None,
        job_status: str = None,
        submitted_before: datetime = None,
        submitted_after: datetime = None,
    ) -> list[dict[str, any]]:
        """
        Lists HealthLake import jobs satisfying the conditions.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param job_name: The import job name.
        :param job_status: The import job status.
        :param submitted_before: The import job submitted before the specified date.
        :param submitted_after: The import job submitted after the specified date.
        :return: A list of import jobs.
        """
        try:
            parameters = {"DatastoreId": datastore_id}
            if job_name is not None:
                parameters["JobName"] = job_name
            if job_status is not None:
                parameters["JobStatus"] = job_status
            if submitted_before is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedBefore"] = submitted_before
            if submitted_after is not None:
                parameters["SubmittedAfter"] = submitted_after
            next_token = None
            jobs = []
            # Loop through paginated results.
            while True:
                if next_token is not None:
                    parameters["NextToken"] = next_token
                response =
self.health_lake_client.list_fhir_import_jobs(**parameters)
                jobs.extend(response["ImportJobPropertiesList"])
                if "NextToken" in response:
```

```
                    next_token = response["NextToken"]
                else:
                    break
            return jobs
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list import jobs. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFHIRImportJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`ListTagsForResource`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTagsForResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def list_tags_for_resource(self, resource_arn: str) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Lists the tags for a HealthLake resource.
```

```
        :param resource_arn: The resource ARN.
        :return: The tags for the resource.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                ResourceARN=resource_arn
            )
            return response["Tags"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list tags for resource %s. Here's why %s",
                resource_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListTagsForResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`StartFHIRExportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartFHIRExportJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)
```

```
    def start_fhir_export_job(
        self,
        job_name: str,
        datastore_id: str,
        output_s3_uri: str,
        kms_key_id: str,
        data_access_role_arn: str,
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Starts a HealthLake export job.
        :param job_name: The export job name.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param output_s3_uri: The output S3 URI.
        :param kms_key_id: The KMS key ID associated with the output S3 bucket.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The data access role ARN.
        :return: The export job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.start_fhir_export_job(
                OutputDataConfig={
                    "S3Configuration": {"S3Uri": output_s3_uri, "KmsKeyId":
kms_key_id}
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                DatastoreId=datastore_id,
                JobName=job_name,
            )

            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't start export job. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartFHIRExportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`StartFHIRImportJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StartFHIRImportJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def start_fhir_import_job(
        self,
        job_name: str,
        datastore_id: str,
        input_s3_uri: str,
        job_output_s3_uri: str,
        kms_key_id: str,
        data_access_role_arn: str,
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Starts a HealthLake import job.
        :param job_name: The import job name.
        :param datastore_id: The data store ID.
        :param input_s3_uri: The input S3 URI.
        :param job_output_s3_uri: The job output S3 URI.
        :param kms_key_id: The KMS key ID associated with the output S3 bucket.
        :param data_access_role_arn: The data access role ARN.
        :return: The import job.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.health_lake_client.start_fhir_import_job(
                JobName=job_name,
                InputDataConfig={"S3Uri": input_s3_uri},
                JobOutputDataConfig={
                    "S3Configuration": {
                        "S3Uri": job_output_s3_uri,
                        "KmsKeyId": kms_key_id,
                    }
                },
                DataAccessRoleArn=data_access_role_arn,
                DatastoreId=datastore_id,
            )
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't start import job. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartFHIRImportJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def tag_resource(self, resource_arn: str, tags: list[dict[str, str]]) -> None:
        """
        Tags a HealthLake resource.
        :param resource_arn: The resource ARN.
        :param tags: The tags to add to the resource.
        """
        try:
            self.health_lake_client.tag_resource(ResourceARN=resource_arn,
Tags=tags)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't tag resource %s. Here's why %s",
                resource_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

`UntagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `UntagResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "HealthLakeWrapper":
```

```
        """
        Creates a HealthLakeWrapper instance with a default AWS HealthLake client.

        :return: An instance of HealthLakeWrapper initialized with the default
HealthLake client.
        """
        health_lake_client = boto3.client("healthlake")
        return cls(health_lake_client)


    def untag_resource(self, resource_arn: str, tag_keys: list[str]) -> None:
        """
        Untags a HealthLake resource.
        :param resource_arn: The resource ARN.
        :param tag_keys: The tag keys to remove from the resource.
        """
        try:
            self.health_lake_client.untag_resource(
                ResourceARN=resource_arn, TagKeys=tag_keys
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't untag resource %s. Here's why %s",
                resource_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UntagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

IAM examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def main():
    """
    Lists the managed policies in your AWS account using the AWS SDK for Python
 (Boto3).
    """
    iam = boto3.client("iam")

    try:
        # Get a paginator for the list_policies operation
        paginator = iam.get_paginator("list_policies")

        # Iterate through the pages of results
```

```
        for page in paginator.paginate(Scope="All", OnlyAttached=False):
            for policy in page["Policies"]:
                print(f"Policy name: {policy['PolicyName']}")
                print(f"  Policy ARN: {policy['Arn']}")
    except boto3.exceptions.BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Encountered an error while listing policies: {e}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user and a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role. After assuming the role, use temporary credentials to list buckets for the account.

```
import json
import sys
import time
from uuid import uuid4

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def progress_bar(seconds):
    """Shows a simple progress bar in the command window."""
    for _ in range(seconds):
        time.sleep(1)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print()


def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a new user with no permissions.
    Creates an access key pair for the user.
    Creates a role with a policy that lets the user assume the role.
    Creates a policy that allows listing Amazon S3 buckets.
    Attaches the policy to the role.
    Creates an inline policy for the user that lets the user assume the role.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) resource
                         that has permissions to create users, roles, and policies
                         in the account.
```

```
    :return: The newly created user, user key, and role.
    """
    try:
        user = iam_resource.create_user(UserName=f"demo-user-{uuid4()}")
        print(f"Created user {user.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create a user for the demo. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
        user_key = user.create_access_key_pair()
        print(f"Created access key pair for user.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create access keys for user {user.name}. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    print(f"Wait for user to be ready.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    try:
        role = iam_resource.create_role(
            RoleName=f"demo-role-{uuid4()}",
            AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Principal": {"AWS": user.arn},
                            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                        }
                    ],
                }
            ),
        )
        print(f"Created role {role.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
```

```
            f"Couldn't create a role for the demo. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
        policy = iam_resource.create_policy(
            PolicyName=f"demo-policy-{uuid4()}",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                            "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
                        }
                    ],
                }
            ),
        )
        role.attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy.arn)
        print(f"Created policy {policy.policy_name} and attached it to the role.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create a policy and attach it to role {role.name}. Here's
why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
        user.create_policy(
            PolicyName=f"demo-user-policy-{uuid4()}",
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
                {
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                            "Resource": role.arn,
                        }
                    ],
```

```
                }
            ),
        )
        print(
            f"Created an inline policy for {user.name} that lets the user assume "
            f"the role."
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't create an inline policy for user {user.name}. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return user, user_key, role


def show_access_denied_without_role(user_key):
    """
    Shows that listing buckets without first assuming the role is not allowed.

    :param user_key: The key of the user created during setup. This user does not
                     have permission to list buckets in the account.
    """
    print(f"Try to list buckets without first assuming the role.")
    s3_denied_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id, aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
    )
    try:
        for bucket in s3_denied_resource.buckets.all():
            print(bucket.name)
        raise RuntimeError("Expected to get AccessDenied error when listing
 buckets!")
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
            print("Attempt to list buckets with no permissions: AccessDenied.")
        else:
            raise


def list_buckets_from_assumed_role(user_key, assume_role_arn, session_name):
```

```
    """
    Assumes a role that grants permission to list the Amazon S3 buckets in the
account.
    Uses the temporary credentials from the role to list the buckets that are owned
    by the assumed role's account.

    :param user_key: The access key of a user that has permission to assume the
role.
    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that
                            grants access to list the other account's buckets.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    """
    sts_client = boto3.client(
        "sts", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id, aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
    )
    try:
        response = sts_client.assume_role(
            RoleArn=assume_role_arn, RoleSessionName=session_name
        )
        temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
        print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't assume role {assume_role_arn}. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    # Create an S3 resource that can access the account with the temporary
credentials.
    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )
    print(f"Listing buckets for the assumed role's account:")
    try:
        for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
            print(bucket.name)
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            f"Couldn't list buckets for the account. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
```

```
        )
        raise




def teardown(user, role):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.

    :param user: The demo user.
    :param role: The demo role.
    """
    try:
        for attached in role.attached_policies.all():
            policy_name = attached.policy_name
            role.detach_policy(PolicyArn=attached.arn)
            attached.delete()
            print(f"Detached and deleted {policy_name}.")
        role.delete()
        print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            "Couldn't detach policy, delete policy, or delete role. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
        raise

    try:
        for user_pol in user.policies.all():
            user_pol.delete()
            print("Deleted inline user policy.")
        for key in user.access_keys.all():
            key.delete()
            print("Deleted user's access key.")
        user.delete()
        print(f"Deleted {user.name}.")
    except ClientError as error:
        print(
            "Couldn't delete user policy or delete user. Here's why: "
            f"{error.response['Error']['Message']}"
        )
```

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(f"Welcome to the IAM create user and assume role demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    user = None
    role = None
    try:
        user, user_key, role = setup(iam_resource)
        print(f"Created {user.name} and {role.name}.")
        show_access_denied_without_role(user_key)
        list_buckets_from_assumed_role(user_key, role.arn, "AssumeRoleDemoSession")
    except Exception:
        print("Something went wrong!")
    finally:
        if user is not None and role is not None:
            teardown(user, role)
        print("Thanks for watching!")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Attach a policy to a role using the Boto3 Policy object.

```
def attach_to_role(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).attach_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn,
 role_name)
        raise
```

Attach a policy to a role using the Boto3 Role object.

```
def attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
```

```
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn,
 role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AttachUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachUserPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def attach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn,
 user_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_key(user_name):
    """
    Creates an access key for the specified user. Each user can have a
    maximum of two keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The created access key.
    """
    try:
        key_pair = iam.User(user_name).create_access_key_pair()
        logger.info(
            "Created access key pair for %s. Key ID is %s.",
            key_pair.user_name,
            key_pair.id,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create access key pair for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return key_pair
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_alias(alias):
    """
    Creates an alias for the current account. The alias can be used in place of the
    account ID in the sign-in URL. An account can have only one alias. When a new
    alias is created, it replaces any existing alias.

    :param alias: The alias to assign to the account.
    """

    try:
        iam.create_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Created an alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
        raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateInstanceProfile`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example creates a policy, role, and instance profile and links them all together.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
```

```
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed
by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
granted to
        clients that run on the instance.

        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
```

```
                                        the role, such as AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore
to grant
                                        use of Systems Manager to send commands to the
instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

```
        return profile_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_policy(name, description, actions, resource_arn):
    """
    Creates a policy that contains a single statement.

    :param name: The name of the policy to create.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions allowed by the policy. These typically take the
                    form of service:action, such as s3:PutObject.
    :param resource_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource this policy
                         applies to. This ARN can contain wildcards, such as
                         'arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*' to allow actions on
 all objects
                         in the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.create_policy(
            PolicyName=name,
```

```
            Description=description,
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc),
        )
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreatePolicyVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicyVersion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_policy_version(policy_arn, actions, resource_arn, set_as_default):
    """
    Creates a policy version. Policies can have up to five versions. The default
    version is the one that is used for all resources that reference the policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions to allow in the policy version.
    :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource this policy version applies to.
    :param set_as_default: When True, this policy version is set as the default
                           version for the policy. Otherwise, the default
                           is not changed.
    :return: The newly created policy version.
    """
    policy_doc = {
```

```
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        policy_version = policy.create_version(
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc), SetAsDefault=set_as_default
        )
        logger.info(
            "Created policy version %s for policy %s.",
            policy_version.version_id,
            policy_version.arn,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create a policy version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_version
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicyVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_role(role_name, allowed_services):
    """
    Creates a role that lets a list of specified services assume the role.
```

```
    :param role_name: The name of the role.
    :param allowed_services: The services that can assume the role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {"Service": service},
                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
            }
            for service in allowed_services
        ],
    }

    try:
        role = iam.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name, AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy)
        )
        logger.info("Created role %s.", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create role %s.", role_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_service_linked_role(service_name, description):
    """
    Creates a service-linked role.

    :param service_name: The name of the service that owns the role.
    :param description: A description to give the role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.create_service_linked_role(
            AWSServiceName=service_name, Description=description
        )
        role = iam.Role(response["Role"]["RoleName"])
        logger.info("Created service-linked role %s.", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create service-linked role for %s.",
 service_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_user(user_name):
    """
    Creates a user. By default, a user has no permissions or access keys.
```

```
    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The newly created user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.create_user(UserName=user_name)
        logger.info("Created user %s.", user.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return user
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_key(user_name, key_id):
    """
    Deletes a user's access key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to delete.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.AccessKey(user_name, key_id)
        key.delete()
```

```
        logger.info("Deleted access key %s for %s.", key.id, key.user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete key %s for %s", key_id, user_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_alias(alias):
    """
    Removes the alias from the current account.

    :param alias: The alias to remove.
    """
    try:
        iam.meta.client.delete_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Removed alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't remove alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteInstanceProfile`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteInstanceProfile`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example removes the role from the instance profile, detaches all policies attached to the role, and deletes all the resources.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
```

```
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
```

```
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
 profile_name
                )
```

- For API details, see DeleteInstanceProfile in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_policy(policy_arn):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to delete.
    """
    try:
```

```
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_role(role_name):
    """
    Deletes a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete role %s.", role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_user(user_name):
    """
    Deletes a user. Before a user can be deleted, all associated resources,
    such as access keys and policies, must be deleted or detached.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted user %s.", user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete user %s.", user_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Detach a policy from a role using the Boto3 Policy object.

```
def detach_from_role(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).detach_role(RoleName=role_name)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name
        )
        raise
```

Detach a policy from a role using the Boto3 Role object.

```
def detach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetachUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachUserPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def detach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GenerateCredentialReport`

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateCredentialReport`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def generate_credential_report():
    """
    Starts generation of a credentials report about the current account. After
    calling this function to generate the report, call get_credential_report
    to get the latest report. A new report can be generated a minimum of four hours
    after the last one was generated.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.generate_credential_report()
        logger.info(
            "Generating credentials report for your account. " "Current state is
 %s.",
            response["State"],
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't generate a credentials report for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see GenerateCredentialReport in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAccessKeyLastUsed`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccessKeyLastUsed`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_last_use(key_id):
    """
    Gets information about when and how a key was last used.

    :param key_id: The ID of the key to look up.
    :return: Information about the key's last use.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_access_key_last_used(AccessKeyId=key_id)
        last_used_date = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("LastUsedDate", None)
        last_service = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("ServiceName", None)
        logger.info(
            "Key %s was last used by %s on %s to access %s.",
            key_id,
            response["UserName"],
            last_used_date,
            last_service,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get last use of key %s.", key_id)
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetAccessKeyLastUsed in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAccountAuthorizationDetails`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountAuthorizationDetails`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_authorization_details(response_filter):
    """
    Gets an authorization detail report for the current account.

    :param response_filter: A list of resource types to include in the report, such
                            as users or roles. When not specified, all resources
                            are included.
    :return: The authorization detail report.
    """
    try:
        account_details = iam.meta.client.get_account_authorization_details(
            Filter=response_filter
        )
        logger.debug(account_details)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get details for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return account_details
```

- For API details, see GetAccountAuthorizationDetails in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def print_password_policy():
    """
    Prints the password policy for the account.
    """
    try:
        pw_policy = iam.AccountPasswordPolicy()
        print("Current account password policy:")
        print(
            f"\tallow_users_to_change_password:
 {pw_policy.allow_users_to_change_password}"
        )
        print(f"\texpire_passwords: {pw_policy.expire_passwords}")
        print(f"\thard_expiry: {pw_policy.hard_expiry}")
        print(f"\tmax_password_age: {pw_policy.max_password_age}")
        print(f"\tminimum_password_length: {pw_policy.minimum_password_length}")
        print(f"\tpassword_reuse_prevention: {pw_policy.password_reuse_prevention}")
        print(
            f"\trequire_lowercase_characters:
 {pw_policy.require_lowercase_characters}"
        )
        print(f"\trequire_numbers: {pw_policy.require_numbers}")
        print(f"\trequire_symbols: {pw_policy.require_symbols}")
        print(
            f"\trequire_uppercase_characters:
 {pw_policy.require_uppercase_characters}"
        )
        printed = True
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
            print("The account does not have a password policy set.")
        else:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get account password policy.")
            raise
    else:
```

```
        return printed
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAccountSummary`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountSummary`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_summary():
    """
    Gets a summary of account usage.

    :return: The summary of account usage.
    """
    try:
        summary = iam.AccountSummary()
        logger.debug(summary.summary_map)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get a summary for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return summary.summary_map
```

- For API details, see GetAccountSummary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetCredentialReport

The following code example shows how to use `GetCredentialReport`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_credential_report():
    """
    Gets the most recently generated credentials report about the current account.

    :return: The credentials report.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_credential_report()
        logger.debug(response["Content"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get credentials report.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["Content"]
```

- For API details, see GetCredentialReport in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetPolicy

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_default_policy_statement(policy_arn):
    """
    Gets the statement of the default version of the specified policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to look up.
    :return: The statement of the default policy version.
    """
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        # To get an attribute of a policy, the SDK first calls get_policy.
        policy_doc = policy.default_version.document
        policy_statement = policy_doc.get("Statement", None)
        logger.info("Got default policy doc for %s.", policy.policy_name)
        logger.info(policy_doc)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get default policy statement for %s.",
 policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_statement
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetPolicyVersion`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicyVersion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_default_policy_statement(policy_arn):
    """
    Gets the statement of the default version of the specified policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to look up.
    :return: The statement of the default policy version.
    """
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        # To get an attribute of a policy, the SDK first calls get_policy.
        policy_doc = policy.default_version.document
        policy_statement = policy_doc.get("Statement", None)
        logger.info("Got default policy doc for %s.", policy.policy_name)
        logger.info(policy_doc)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get default policy statement for %s.",
 policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_statement
```

- For API details, see GetPolicyVersion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_role(role_name):
    """
    Gets a role by name.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to retrieve.
    :return: The specified role.
    """
    try:
        role = iam.Role(role_name)
        role.load()  # calls GetRole to load attributes
        logger.info("Got role with arn %s.", role.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get role named %s.", role_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_keys(user_name):
    """
    Lists the keys owned by the specified user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The list of keys owned by the user.
    """
    try:
        keys = list(iam.User(user_name).access_keys.all())
        logger.info("Got %s access keys for %s.", len(keys), user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get access keys for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return keys
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_aliases():
    """
    Gets the list of aliases for the current account. An account has at most one
 alias.

    :return: The list of aliases for the account.
    """
    try:
```

```
        response = iam.meta.client.list_account_aliases()
        aliases = response["AccountAliases"]
        if len(aliases) > 0:
            logger.info("Got aliases for your account: %s.", ",".join(aliases))
        else:
            logger.info("Got no aliases for your account.")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list aliases for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["AccountAliases"]
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_attached_policies(role_name):
    """
    Lists policies attached to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to query.
    """
    try:
        role = iam.Role(role_name)
        for policy in role.attached_policies.all():
            logger.info("Got policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list attached policies for %s.", role_name)
```

```
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_groups(count):
    """
    Lists the specified number of groups for the account.

    :param count: The number of groups to list.
    """
    try:
        for group in iam.groups.limit(count):
            logger.info("Group: %s", group.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list groups for the account.")
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_policies(scope):
    """
    Lists the policies in the current account.

    :param scope: Limits the kinds of policies that are returned. For example,
                  'Local' specifies that only locally managed policies are returned.
    :return: The list of policies.
    """
    try:
        policies = list(iam.policies.filter(Scope=scope))
        logger.info("Got %s policies in scope '%s'.", len(policies), scope)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get policies for scope '%s'.", scope)
        raise
    else:
        return policies
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_policies(role_name):
    """
    Lists inline policies for a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to query.
    """
    try:
        role = iam.Role(role_name)
        for policy in role.policies.all():
            logger.info("Got inline policy %s.", policy.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list inline policies for %s.", role_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_roles(count):
    """
    Lists the specified number of roles for the account.

    :param count: The number of roles to list.
    """
    try:
        roles = list(iam.roles.limit(count=count))
        for role in roles:
            logger.info("Role: %s", role.name)
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list roles for the account.")
        raise
    else:
        return roles
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_saml_providers(count):
    """
    Lists the SAML providers for the account.

    :param count: The maximum number of providers to list.
    """
    try:
        found = 0
        for provider in iam.saml_providers.limit(count):
            logger.info("Got SAML provider %s.", provider.arn)
            found += 1
        if found == 0:
            logger.info("Your account has no SAML providers.")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list SAML providers.")
        raise
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_users():
    """
    Lists the users in the current account.

    :return: The list of users.
    """
    try:
        users = list(iam.users.all())
        logger.info("Got %s users.", len(users))
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get users.")
        raise
    else:
        return users
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAccessKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def update_key(user_name, key_id, activate):
    """
    Updates the status of a key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to update.
    :param activate: When True, the key is activated. Otherwise, the key is
 deactivated.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.User(user_name).AccessKey(key_id)
        if activate:
            key.activate()
        else:
            key.deactivate()
        logger.info("%s key %s.", "Activated" if activate else "Deactivated",
 key_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't %s key %s.", "Activate" if activate else "Deactivate", key_id
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def update_user(user_name, new_user_name):
    """
    Updates a user's name.

    :param user_name: The current name of the user to update.
    :param new_user_name: The new name to assign to the user.
    :return: The updated user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.User(user_name)
        user.update(NewUserName=new_user_name)
        logger.info("Renamed %s to %s.", user_name, new_user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update name for user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    return user
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build and manage a resilient service

The following code example shows how to create a load-balanced web service that returns book, movie, and song recommendations. The example shows how the service responds to failures, and how to restructure the service for more resilience when failures occur.

- Use an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group to create Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instances based on a launch template and to keep the number of instances in a specified range.

- Handle and distribute HTTP requests with Elastic Load Balancing.
- Monitor the health of instances in an Auto Scaling group and forward requests only to healthy instances.
- Run a Python web server on each EC2 instance to handle HTTP requests. The web server responds with recommendations and health checks.
- Simulate a recommendation service with an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Control web server response to requests and health checks by updating AWS Systems Manager parameters.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run the interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class Runner:
    """
    Manages the deployment, demonstration, and destruction of resources for the
 resilient service.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_path: str,
        recommendation: RecommendationService,
        autoscaler: AutoScalingWrapper,
        loadbalancer: ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper,
        param_helper: ParameterHelper,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the Runner class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_path: The path to resource files used by this example, such
 as IAM policies and instance scripts.
        :param recommendation: An instance of the RecommendationService class.
        :param autoscaler: An instance of the AutoScaler class.
```

```
        :param loadbalancer: An instance of the LoadBalancer class.
        :param param_helper: An instance of the ParameterHelper class.
        """
        self.resource_path = resource_path
        self.recommendation = recommendation
        self.autoscaler = autoscaler
        self.loadbalancer = loadbalancer
        self.param_helper = param_helper
        self.protocol = "HTTP"
        self.port = 80
        self.ssh_port = 22

        prefix = "doc-example-resilience"
        self.target_group_name = f"{prefix}-tg"
        self.load_balancer_name = f"{prefix}-lb"

    def deploy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deploys the resources required for the resilient service, including the
DynamoDB table,
        EC2 instances, Auto Scaling group, and load balancer.
        """
        recommendations_path = f"{self.resource_path}/recommendations.json"
        startup_script = f"{self.resource_path}/server_startup_script.sh"
        instance_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/instance_policy.json"

        logging.info("Starting deployment of resources for the resilient service.")

        logging.info(
            "Creating and populating DynamoDB table '%s'.",
            self.recommendation.table_name,
        )
        self.recommendation.create()
        self.recommendation.populate(recommendations_path)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 launch template with the startup script '%s'.",
            startup_script,
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_template(startup_script, instance_policy)

        logging.info(
            "Creating an EC2 Auto Scaling group across multiple Availability Zones."
        )
```

```
        zones = self.autoscaler.create_autoscaling_group(3)

        logging.info("Creating variables that control the flow of the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info("Creating Elastic Load Balancing target group and load
 balancer.")

        vpc = self.autoscaler.get_default_vpc()
        subnets = self.autoscaler.get_subnets(vpc["VpcId"], zones)
        target_group = self.loadbalancer.create_target_group(
            self.target_group_name, self.protocol, self.port, vpc["VpcId"]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_load_balancer(
            self.load_balancer_name, [subnet["SubnetId"] for subnet in subnets]
        )
        self.loadbalancer.create_listener(self.load_balancer_name, target_group)

        self.autoscaler.attach_load_balancer_target_group(target_group)

        logging.info("Verifying access to the load balancer endpoint.")
        endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
        lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)
        current_ip_address = requests.get("http://
checkip.amazonaws.com").text.strip()

        if not lb_success:
            logging.warning(
                "Couldn't connect to the load balancer. Verifying that the port is
 open..."
            )
            sec_group, port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.port, current_ip_address
            )
            sec_group, ssh_port_is_open = self.autoscaler.verify_inbound_port(
                vpc, self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
            )
            if not port_is_open:
                logging.warning(
                    "The default security group for your VPC must allow access from
 this computer."
                )
                if q.ask(
```

```
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound traffic on port {self.port} from your computer's IP
address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.port, current_ip_address
                    )
            if not ssh_port_is_open:
                if q.ask(
                    f"Do you want to add a rule to security group
{sec_group['GroupId']} to allow\n"
                    f"inbound SSH traffic on port {self.ssh_port} for debugging from
your computer's IP address of {current_ip_address}? (y/n) ",
                    q.is_yesno,
                ):
                    self.autoscaler.open_inbound_port(
                        sec_group["GroupId"], self.ssh_port, current_ip_address
                    )
            lb_success = self.loadbalancer.verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint)

        if lb_success:
            logging.info(
                "Load balancer is ready. Access it at: http://%s",
current_ip_address
            )
        else:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get a successful response from the load balancer endpoint.
Please verify your VPC and security group settings."
            )

    def demo_choices(self) -> None:
        """
        Presents choices for interacting with the deployed service, such as sending
requests to
        the load balancer or checking the health of the targets.
        """
        actions = [
            "Send a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.",
            "Check the health of load balancer targets.",
            "Go to the next part of the demo.",
        ]
```

```
        choice = 0
        while choice != 2:
            logging.info("Choose an action to interact with the service.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                logging.info("Sending a GET request to the load balancer endpoint.")
                endpoint = self.loadbalancer.get_endpoint(self.load_balancer_name)
                logging.info("GET http://%s", endpoint)
                response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                logging.info("Response: %s", response.status_code)
                if response.headers.get("content-type") == "application/json":
                    pp(response.json())
            elif choice == 1:
                logging.info("Checking the health of load balancer targets.")
                health =
self.loadbalancer.check_target_health(self.target_group_name)
                for target in health:
                    state = target["TargetHealth"]["State"]
                    logging.info(
                        "Target %s on port %d is %s",
                        target["Target"]["Id"],
                        target["Target"]["Port"],
                        state,
                    )
                    if state != "healthy":
                        logging.warning(
                            "%s: %s",
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Reason"],
                            target["TargetHealth"]["Description"],
                        )
                logging.info(
                    "Note that it can take a minute or two for the health check to
update."
                )
            elif choice == 2:
                logging.info("Proceeding to the next part of the demo.")

    def demo(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the demonstration, showing how the service responds to different
failure scenarios
        and how a resilient architecture can keep the service running.
        """
        ssm_only_policy = f"{self.resource_path}/ssm_only_policy.json"
```

```
        logging.info("Resetting parameters to starting values for the demo.")
        self.param_helper.reset()

        logging.info(
            "Starting demonstration of the service's resilience under various
 failure conditions."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Simulating failure by changing the Systems Manager parameter to a non-
existent table."
        )
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return failure codes.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Switching to static response mode to mitigate failure.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.failure_response, "static")
        logging.info("Sending GET requests will now return static responses.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Restoring normal operation of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table,
 self.recommendation.table_name)

        logging.info(
            "Introducing a failure by assigning bad credentials to one of the
 instances."
        )
        self.autoscaler.create_instance_profile(
            ssm_only_policy,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_policy_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            ["AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore"],
        )
        instances = self.autoscaler.get_instances()
        bad_instance_id = instances[0]
        instance_profile = self.autoscaler.get_instance_profile(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info(
            "Replacing instance profile with bad credentials for instance %s.",
            bad_instance_id,
```

```
        )
        self.autoscaler.replace_instance_profile(
            bad_instance_id,
            self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
            instance_profile["AssociationId"],
        )
        logging.info(
            "Sending GET requests may return either a valid recommendation or a
static response."
        )
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Implementing deep health checks to detect unhealthy
instances.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.health_check, "deep")
        logging.info("Checking the health of the load balancer targets.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info(
            "Terminating the unhealthy instance to let the auto scaler replace it."
        )
        self.autoscaler.terminate_instance(bad_instance_id)
        logging.info("The service remains resilient during instance replacement.")
        self.demo_choices()

        logging.info("Simulating a complete failure of the recommendation service.")
        self.param_helper.put(self.param_helper.table, "this-is-not-a-table")
        logging.info(
            "All instances will report as unhealthy, but the service will still
return static responses."
        )
        self.demo_choices()
        self.param_helper.reset()

    def destroy(self, automation=False) -> None:
        """
        Destroys all resources created for the demo, including the load balancer,
Auto Scaling group,
        EC2 instances, and DynamoDB table.
        """
        logging.info(
            "This concludes the demo. Preparing to clean up all AWS resources
created during the demo."
        )
```

```
        if automation:
            cleanup = True
        else:
            cleanup = q.ask(
                "Do you want to clean up all demo resources? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno
            )

        if cleanup:
            logging.info("Deleting load balancer and related resources.")
            self.loadbalancer.delete_load_balancer(self.load_balancer_name)
            self.loadbalancer.delete_target_group(self.target_group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_autoscaling_group(self.autoscaler.group_name)
            self.autoscaler.delete_key_pair()
            self.autoscaler.delete_template()
            self.autoscaler.delete_instance_profile(
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_profile_name,
                self.autoscaler.bad_creds_role_name,
            )
            logging.info("Deleting DynamoDB table and other resources.")
            self.recommendation.destroy()
        else:
            logging.warning(
                "Resources have not been deleted. Ensure you clean them up manually
 to avoid unexpected charges."
            )


def main() -> None:
    """
    Main function to parse arguments and run the appropriate actions for the demo.
    """
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--action",
        required=True,
        choices=["all", "deploy", "demo", "destroy"],
        help="The action to take for the demo. When 'all' is specified, resources
 are\n"
        "deployed, the demo is run, and resources are destroyed.",
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "--resource_path",
        default="../../../scenarios/features/resilient_service/resources",
```

```
        help="The path to resource files used by this example, such as IAM policies
and\n"
        "instance scripts.",
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    logging.info("Starting the Resilient Service demo.")

    prefix = "doc-example-resilience"

    # Service Clients
    ddb_client = boto3.client("dynamodb")
    elb_client = boto3.client("elbv2")
    autoscaling_client = boto3.client("autoscaling")
    ec2_client = boto3.client("ec2")
    ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
    iam_client = boto3.client("iam")

    # Wrapper instantiations
    recommendation = RecommendationService(
        "doc-example-recommendation-service", ddb_client
    )
    autoscaling_wrapper = AutoScalingWrapper(
        prefix,
        "t3.micro",
        "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest/amzn2-ami-hvm-x86_64-gp2",
        autoscaling_client,
        ec2_client,
        ssm_client,
        iam_client,
    )
    elb_wrapper = ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper(elb_client)
    param_helper = ParameterHelper(recommendation.table_name, ssm_client)

    # Demo invocation
    runner = Runner(
        args.resource_path,
        recommendation,
        autoscaling_wrapper,
        elb_wrapper,
        param_helper,
    )
    actions = [args.action] if args.action != "all" else ["deploy", "demo",
"destroy"]
```

```
    for action in actions:
        if action == "deploy":
            runner.deploy()
        elif action == "demo":
            runner.demo()
        elif action == "destroy":
            runner.destroy()

    logging.info("Demo completed successfully.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    main()
```

Create a class that wraps Auto Scaling and Amazon EC2 actions.

```
class AutoScalingWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling and EC2 management actions.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        resource_prefix: str,
        inst_type: str,
        ami_param: str,
        autoscaling_client: boto3.client,
        ec2_client: boto3.client,
        ssm_client: boto3.client,
        iam_client: boto3.client,
    ):
        """
        Initializes the AutoScaler class with the necessary parameters.

        :param resource_prefix: The prefix for naming AWS resources that are created
 by this class.
        :param inst_type: The type of EC2 instance to create, such as t3.micro.
        :param ami_param: The Systems Manager parameter used to look up the AMI that
 is created.
        :param autoscaling_client: A Boto3 EC2 Auto Scaling client.
        :param ec2_client: A Boto3 EC2 client.
```

```
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 IAM client.
        """
        self.inst_type = inst_type
        self.ami_param = ami_param
        self.autoscaling_client = autoscaling_client
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
        self.account_id = sts_client.get_caller_identity()["Account"]

        self.key_pair_name = f"{resource_prefix}-key-pair"
        self.launch_template_name = f"{resource_prefix}-template-"
        self.group_name = f"{resource_prefix}-group"

        # Happy path
        self.instance_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-pol"
        self.instance_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-role"
        self.instance_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-prof"

        # Failure mode
        self.bad_creds_policy_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-pol"
        self.bad_creds_role_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-role"
        self.bad_creds_profile_name = f"{resource_prefix}-bc-prof"


    def create_policy(self, policy_file: str, policy_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM policy or retrieves the ARN of an existing policy.

        :param policy_file: The path to a JSON file that contains the policy
definition.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing policy.
        """
        with open(policy_file) as file:
            policy_doc = file.read()

        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_policy(
                PolicyName=policy_name, PolicyDocument=policy_doc
            )
            policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
```

```
            log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' created successfully. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
            return policy_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the policy already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_policy(
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::{self.account_id}:policy/{policy_name}"
                )
                policy_arn = response["Policy"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Policy '{policy_name}' already exists. ARN:
{policy_arn}")
                return policy_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_role(self, role_name: str, assume_role_doc: dict) -> str:
        """
        Creates a new IAM role or retrieves the ARN of an existing role.

        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param assume_role_doc: The assume role policy document that specifies which
                                entities can assume the role.
        :return: The ARN of the created or existing role.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iam_client.create_role(
                RoleName=role_name,
AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(assume_role_doc)
            )
            role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
            log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' created successfully. ARN: {role_arn}")
            return role_arn

        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                # If the role already exists, get its ARN
                response = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=role_name)
                role_arn = response["Role"]["Arn"]
                log.info(f"Role '{role_name}' already exists. ARN: {role_arn}")
                return role_arn
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_policy(
```

```
        self,
        role_name: str,
        policy_arn: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an IAM policy to a role and optionally attaches additional AWS-
managed policies.

        :param role_name: The name of the role to attach the policy to.
        :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to attach.
        :param aws_managed_policies: A tuple of AWS-managed policy names to attach
 to the role.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(RoleName=role_name,
 PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            for aws_policy in aws_managed_policies:
                self.iam_client.attach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name,
                    PolicyArn=f"arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/{aws_policy}",
                )
            log.info(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to attach policy {policy_arn} to role {role_name}.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def create_instance_profile(
        self,
        policy_file: str,
        policy_name: str,
        role_name: str,
        profile_name: str,
        aws_managed_policies: Tuple[str, ...] = (),
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates a policy, role, and profile that is associated with instances
 created by
        this class. An instance's associated profile defines a role that is assumed
 by the
        instance. The role has attached policies that specify the AWS permissions
 granted to
        clients that run on the instance.
```

```
        :param policy_file: The name of a JSON file that contains the policy
definition to
                            create and attach to the role.
        :param policy_name: The name to give the created policy.
        :param role_name: The name to give the created role.
        :param profile_name: The name to the created profile.
        :param aws_managed_policies: Additional AWS-managed policies that are
attached to
                                     the role, such as AmazonSSMManagedInstanceCore
to grant
                                     use of Systems Manager to send commands to the
instance.
        :return: The ARN of the profile that is created.
        """
        assume_role_doc = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ec2.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = self.create_policy(policy_file, policy_name)
        self.create_role(role_name, assume_role_doc)
        self.attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn, aws_managed_policies)

        try:
            profile_response = self.iam_client.create_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name
            )
            waiter = self.iam_client.get_waiter("instance_profile_exists")
            waiter.wait(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            time.sleep(10)  # wait a little longer
            profile_arn = profile_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
            self.iam_client.add_role_to_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )
            log.info("Created profile %s and added role %s.", profile_name,
role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                prof_response = self.iam_client.get_instance_profile(
```

```
                    InstanceProfileName=profile_name
                )
                profile_arn = prof_response["InstanceProfile"]["Arn"]
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s already exists, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return profile_arn


    def get_instance_profile(self, instance_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets data about the profile associated with an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to look up.
        :return: The profile data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_iam_instance_profile_associations(
                Filters=[{"Name": "instance-id", "Values": [instance_id]}]
            )
            if not response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"]:
                log.info(f"No instance profile found for instance {instance_id}.")
            profile_data = response["IamInstanceProfileAssociations"][0]
            log.info(f"Retrieved instance profile for instance {instance_id}.")
            return profile_data
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve instance profile for instance {instance_id}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceID.NotFound":
                log.error(f"The instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def replace_instance_profile(
        self,
        instance_id: str,
        new_instance_profile_name: str,
        profile_association_id: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Replaces the profile associated with a running instance. After the profile
is
        replaced, the instance is rebooted to ensure that it uses the new profile.
When
        the instance is ready, Systems Manager is used to restart the Python web
server.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to restart.
        :param new_instance_profile_name: The name of the new profile to associate
with
                                                the specified instance.
        :param profile_association_id: The ID of the existing profile association
for the
                                            instance.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.replace_iam_instance_profile_association(
                IamInstanceProfile={"Name": new_instance_profile_name},
                AssociationId=profile_association_id,
            )
            log.info(
                "Replaced instance profile for association %s with profile %s.",
                profile_association_id,
                new_instance_profile_name,
            )
            time.sleep(5)

            self.ec2_client.reboot_instances(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Rebooting instance %s.", instance_id)
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_running")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be running.", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info("Instance %s is now running.", instance_id)

            self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=[instance_id],
                DocumentName="AWS-RunShellScript",
                Parameters={"commands": ["cd / && sudo python3 server.py 80"]},
            )
            log.info(f"Restarted the Python web server on instance
'{instance_id}'.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to replace instance profile.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
            if error_code == "InvalidAssociationID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"Association ID '{profile_association_id}' does not exist."
                    "Please check the association ID and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidInstanceId":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified instance ID '{instance_id}' does not exist or is
not available for SSM. "
                    f"Please verify the instance ID and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_instance_profile(self, profile_name: str, role_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Detaches a role from an instance profile, detaches policies from the role,
        and deletes all the resources.

        :param profile_name: The name of the profile to delete.
        :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iam_client.remove_role_from_instance_profile(
                InstanceProfileName=profile_name, RoleName=role_name
            )

self.iam_client.delete_instance_profile(InstanceProfileName=profile_name)
            log.info("Deleted instance profile %s.", profile_name)
            attached_policies = self.iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(
                RoleName=role_name
            )
            for pol in attached_policies["AttachedPolicies"]:
                self.iam_client.detach_role_policy(
                    RoleName=role_name, PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"]
                )
                if not pol["PolicyArn"].startswith("arn:aws:iam::aws"):
                    self.iam_client.delete_policy(PolicyArn=pol["PolicyArn"])
                log.info("Detached and deleted policy %s.", pol["PolicyName"])
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=role_name)
            log.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete instance profile {profile_name} or detach "
```

```
                f"policies and delete role {role_name}: {err}"
            )
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                log.info(
                    "Instance profile %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
profile_name
                )


    def create_key_pair(self, key_pair_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates a new key pair.

        :param key_pair_name: The name of the key pair to create.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_key_pair(KeyName=key_pair_name)
            with open(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", "w") as file:
                file.write(response["KeyMaterial"])
            chmod(f"{key_pair_name}.pem", 0o600)
            log.info("Created key pair %s.", key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to create key pair {key_pair_name}.")
            if error_code == "InvalidKeyPair.Duplicate":
                log.error(f"A key pair with the name '{key_pair_name}' already
exists.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_key_pair(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a key pair.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_key_pair(KeyName=self.key_pair_name)
            remove(f"{self.key_pair_name}.pem")
            log.info("Deleted key pair %s.", self.key_pair_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't delete key pair '{self.key_pair_name}'.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        except FileNotFoundError as err:
            log.info("Key pair %s doesn't exist, nothing to do.",
self.key_pair_name)
```

```
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def create_template(
        self, server_startup_script_file: str, instance_policy_file: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Amazon EC2 launch template to use with Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling.
The
        launch template specifies a Bash script in its user data field that runs
after
        the instance is started. This script installs Python packages and starts a
        Python web server on the instance.

        :param server_startup_script_file: The path to a Bash script file that is
run
                                           when an instance starts.
        :param instance_policy_file: The path to a file that defines a permissions
policy
                                     to create and attach to the instance profile.
        :return: Information about the newly created template.
        """
        template = {}
        try:
            # Create key pair and instance profile
            self.create_key_pair(self.key_pair_name)
            self.create_instance_profile(
                instance_policy_file,
                self.instance_policy_name,
                self.instance_role_name,
                self.instance_profile_name,
            )

            # Read the startup script
            with open(server_startup_script_file) as file:
                start_server_script = file.read()

            # Get the latest AMI ID
            ami_latest = self.ssm_client.get_parameter(Name=self.ami_param)
            ami_id = ami_latest["Parameter"]["Value"]

            # Create the launch template
            lt_response = self.ec2_client.create_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name,
```

```
                LaunchTemplateData={
                    "InstanceType": self.inst_type,
                    "ImageId": ami_id,
                    "IamInstanceProfile": {"Name": self.instance_profile_name},
                    "UserData": base64.b64encode(
                        start_server_script.encode(encoding="utf-8")
                    ).decode(encoding="utf-8"),
                    "KeyName": self.key_pair_name,
                },
            )
            template = lt_response["LaunchTemplate"]
            log.info(
                f"Created launch template {self.launch_template_name} for AMI
{ami_id} on {self.inst_type}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Failed to create launch template
{self.launch_template_name}.")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.AlreadyExistsException":
                log.info(
                    f"Launch template {self.launch_template_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        return template


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes a launch template.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.delete_launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateName=self.launch_template_name
            )
            self.delete_instance_profile(
                self.instance_profile_name, self.instance_role_name
            )
            log.info("Launch template %s deleted.", self.launch_template_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if (
                err.response["Error"]["Code"]
                == "InvalidLaunchTemplateName.NotFoundException"
```

```
            ):
                log.info(
                    "Launch template %s does not exist, nothing to do.",
                    self.launch_template_name,
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_availability_zones(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets a list of Availability Zones in the AWS Region of the Amazon EC2
client.

        :return: The list of Availability Zones for the client Region.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones()
            zones = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in response["AvailabilityZones"]]
            log.info(f"Retrieved {len(zones)} availability zones: {zones}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error("Failed to retrieve availability zones.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def create_autoscaling_group(self, group_size: int) -> List[str]:
        """
        Creates an EC2 Auto Scaling group with the specified size.

        :param group_size: The number of instances to set for the minimum and
maximum in
                           the group.
        :return: The list of Availability Zones specified for the group.
        """
        try:
            zones = self.get_availability_zones()
            self.autoscaling_client.create_auto_scaling_group(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                AvailabilityZones=zones,
                LaunchTemplate={
                    "LaunchTemplateName": self.launch_template_name,
                    "Version": "$Default",
                },
```

```
                MinSize=group_size,
                MaxSize=group_size,
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} with availability
zones {zones}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "AlreadyExists":
                log.info(
                    f"EC2 Auto Scaling group {self.group_name} already exists,
nothing to do."
                )
            else:
                log.error(f"Failed to create EC2 Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}.")
                log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return zones


    def get_instances(self) -> List[str]:
        """
        Gets data about the instances in the EC2 Auto Scaling group.

        :return: A list of instance IDs in the Auto Scaling group.
        """
        try:
            as_response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[self.group_name]
            )
            instance_ids = [
                i["InstanceId"]
                for i in as_response["AutoScalingGroups"][0]["Instances"]
            ]
            log.info(
                f"Retrieved {len(instance_ids)} instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
```

```
                f"Failed to retrieve instances for Auto Scaling group
{self.group_name}."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceNotFound":
                log.error(f"The Auto Scaling group '{self.group_name}' does not
exist.")
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return instance_ids


    def terminate_instance(self, instance_id: str, decrementsetting=False) -> None:
        """
        Terminates an instance in an EC2 Auto Scaling group. After an instance is
        terminated, it can no longer be accessed.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance to terminate.
        :param decrementsetting: If True, do not replace terminated instances.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.terminate_instance_in_auto_scaling_group(
                InstanceId=instance_id,
                ShouldDecrementDesiredCapacity=decrementsetting,
            )
            log.info("Terminated instance %s.", instance_id)

            # Adding a waiter to ensure the instance is terminated
            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
            log.info("Waiting for instance %s to be terminated...", instance_id)
            waiter.wait(InstanceIds=[instance_id])
            log.info(
                f"Instance '{instance_id}' has been terminated and will be
replaced."
            )

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to terminate instance '{instance_id}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
terminate the instance again."
                )
```

```
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def attach_load_balancer_target_group(
        self, lb_target_group: Dict[str, Any]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Attaches an Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) target group to this EC2 Auto
Scaling group.
        The target group specifies how the load balancer forwards requests to the
instances
        in the group.

        :param lb_target_group: Data about the ELB target group to attach.
        """
        try:
            self.autoscaling_client.attach_load_balancer_target_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupName=self.group_name,
                TargetGroupARNs=[lb_target_group["TargetGroupArn"]],
            )
            log.info(
                "Attached load balancer target group %s to auto scaling group %s.",
                lb_target_group["TargetGroupName"],
                self.group_name,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to attach load balancer target group
'{lb_target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            if error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the resource."
                )
            elif error_code == "ServiceLinkedRoleFailure":
                log.error(
```

```
                    "The operation failed because the service-linked role is not
 ready or does not exist. "
                    "Check that the service-linked role exists and is correctly
 configured."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_autoscaling_group(self, group_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Terminates all instances in the group, then deletes the EC2 Auto Scaling
 group.

        :param group_name: The name of the group to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.autoscaling_client.describe_auto_scaling_groups(
                AutoScalingGroupNames=[group_name]
            )
            groups = response.get("AutoScalingGroups", [])
            if len(groups) > 0:
                self.autoscaling_client.update_auto_scaling_group(
                    AutoScalingGroupName=group_name, MinSize=0
                )
                instance_ids = [inst["InstanceId"] for inst in groups[0]
["Instances"]]
                for inst_id in instance_ids:
                    self.terminate_instance(inst_id)

                # Wait for all instances to be terminated
                if instance_ids:
                    waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("instance_terminated")
                    log.info("Waiting for all instances to be terminated...")
                    waiter.wait(InstanceIds=instance_ids)
                    log.info("All instances have been terminated.")
            else:
                log.info(f"No groups found named '{group_name}'! Nothing to do.")
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete Auto Scaling group '{group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "ScalingActivityInProgressFault":
                log.error(
                    "Scaling activity is currently in progress. "
```

```
                    "Wait for the scaling activity to complete before attempting to
delete the group again."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceContentionFault":
                log.error(
                    "The request failed due to a resource contention issue. "
                    "Ensure that no conflicting operations are being performed on
the group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_default_vpc(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the default VPC for the account.

        :return: Data about the default VPC.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_vpcs(
                Filters=[{"Name": "is-default", "Values": ["true"]}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error("Failed to retrieve the default VPC.")
            if error_code == "UnauthorizedOperation":
                log.error(
                    "You do not have the necessary permissions to describe VPCs. "
                    "Ensure that your AWS IAM user or role has the correct
permissions."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidParameterValue":
                log.error(
                    "One or more parameters are invalid. Check the request
parameters."
                )

            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            if "Vpcs" in response and response["Vpcs"]:
                log.info(f"Retrieved default VPC: {response['Vpcs'][0]['VpcId']}")
                return response["Vpcs"][0]
            else:
                pass
```

```
    def verify_inbound_port(
        self, vpc: Dict[str, Any], port: int, ip_address: str
    ) -> Tuple[Dict[str, Any], bool]:
        """
        Verify the default security group of the specified VPC allows ingress from
this
        computer. This can be done by allowing ingress from this computer's IP
        address. In some situations, such as connecting from a corporate network,
you
        must instead specify a prefix list ID. You can also temporarily open the
port to
        any IP address while running this example. If you do, be sure to remove
public
        access when you're done.

        :param vpc: The VPC used by this example.
        :param port: The port to verify.
        :param ip_address: This computer's IP address.
        :return: The default security group of the specified VPC, and a value that
indicates
                 whether the specified port is open.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_security_groups(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "group-name", "Values": ["default"]},
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc["VpcId"]]},
                ]
            )
            sec_group = response["SecurityGroups"][0]
            port_is_open = False
            log.info(f"Found default security group {sec_group['GroupId']}.")

            for ip_perm in sec_group["IpPermissions"]:
                if ip_perm.get("FromPort", 0) == port:
                    log.info(f"Found inbound rule: {ip_perm}")
                    for ip_range in ip_perm["IpRanges"]:
                        cidr = ip_range.get("CidrIp", "")
                        if cidr.startswith(ip_address) or cidr == "0.0.0.0/0":
                            port_is_open = True
                    if ip_perm["PrefixListIds"]:
                        port_is_open = True
```

```
                    if not port_is_open:
                        log.info(
                            f"The inbound rule does not appear to be open to either
this computer's IP "
                            f"address of {ip_address}, to all IP addresses
(0.0.0.0/0), or to a prefix list ID."
                        )
                    else:
                        break
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to verify inbound rule for port {port} for VPC
{vpc['VpcId']}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    f"The specified VPC ID '{vpc['VpcId']}' does not exist. Please
check the VPC ID."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return sec_group, port_is_open


    def open_inbound_port(self, sec_group_id: str, port: int, ip_address: str) ->
None:
        """
        Add an ingress rule to the specified security group that allows access on
the
        specified port from the specified IP address.

        :param sec_group_id: The ID of the security group to modify.
        :param port: The port to open.
        :param ip_address: The IP address that is granted access.
        """
        try:
            self.ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
                GroupId=sec_group_id,
                CidrIp=f"{ip_address}/32",
                FromPort=port,
                ToPort=port,
                IpProtocol="tcp",
            )
```

```
            log.info(
                "Authorized ingress to %s on port %s from %s.",
                sec_group_id,
                port,
                ip_address,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to authorize ingress to security group '{sec_group_id}' on
port {port} from {ip_address}."
            )
            if error_code == "InvalidGroupId.Malformed":
                log.error(
                    "The security group ID is malformed. "
                    "Please verify that the security group ID is correct."
                )
            elif error_code == "InvalidPermission.Duplicate":
                log.error(
                    "The specified rule already exists in the security group. "
                    "Check the existing rules for this security group."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_subnets(self, vpc_id: str, zones: List[str] = None) -> List[Dict[str,
Any]]:
        """
        Gets the default subnets in a VPC for a specified list of Availability
Zones.

        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC to look up.
        :param zones: The list of Availability Zones to look up.
        :return: The list of subnets found.
        """
        # Ensure that 'zones' is a list, even if None is passed
        if zones is None:
            zones = []
        try:
            paginator = self.ec2_client.get_paginator("describe_subnets")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
                Filters=[
                    {"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [vpc_id]},
                    {"Name": "availability-zone", "Values": zones},
```

```
                    {"Name": "default-for-az", "Values": ["true"]},
                ]
            )

            subnets = []
            for page in page_iterator:
                subnets.extend(page["Subnets"])

            log.info("Found %s subnets for the specified zones.", len(subnets))
            return subnets
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Failed to retrieve subnets for VPC '{vpc_id}' in zones {zones}."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "InvalidVpcID.NotFound":
                log.error(
                    "The specified VPC ID does not exist. "
                    "Please check the VPC ID and try again."
                )
            # Add more error-specific handling as needed
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

Create a class that wraps Elastic Load Balancing actions.

```
class ElasticLoadBalancerWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Elastic Load Balancing (ELB) actions."""

    def __init__(self, elb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the LoadBalancer class with the necessary parameters.
        """
        self.elb_client = elb_client


    def create_target_group(
        self, target_group_name: str, protocol: str, port: int, vpc_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
```

```
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing target group. The target group specifies
how
        the load balancer forwards requests to instances in the group and how
instance
        health is checked.

        To speed up this demo, the health check is configured with shortened times
and
        lower thresholds. In production, you might want to decrease the sensitivity
of
        your health checks to avoid unwanted failures.

        :param target_group_name: The name of the target group to create.
        :param protocol: The protocol to use to forward requests, such as 'HTTP'.
        :param port: The port to use to forward requests, such as 80.
        :param vpc_id: The ID of the VPC in which the load balancer exists.
        :return: Data about the newly created target group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_target_group(
                Name=target_group_name,
                Protocol=protocol,
                Port=port,
                HealthCheckPath="/healthcheck",
                HealthCheckIntervalSeconds=10,
                HealthCheckTimeoutSeconds=5,
                HealthyThresholdCount=2,
                UnhealthyThresholdCount=2,
                VpcId=vpc_id,
            )
            target_group = response["TargetGroups"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancing target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            return target_group
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't create load balancing target group
'{target_group_name}'."
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]

            if error_code == "DuplicateTargetGroupName":
                log.error(
                    f"Target group name {target_group_name} already exists. "
                    "Check if the target group already exists."
```

```
                    "Consider using a different name or deleting the existing target
group if appropriate."
                )
            elif error_code == "TooManyTargetGroups":
                log.error(
                    "Too many target groups exist in the account. "
                    "Consider deleting unused target groups to create space for new
ones."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_target_group(self, target_group_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the target group.
        """
        try:
            # Describe the target group to get its ARN
            response =
self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(Names=[target_group_name])
            tg_arn = response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]

            # Delete the target group
            self.elb_client.delete_target_group(TargetGroupArn=tg_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancing target group %s.", target_group_name)

            # Use a custom waiter to wait until the target group is no longer
available
            self.wait_for_target_group_deletion(self.elb_client, tg_arn)
            log.info("Target group %s successfully deleted.", target_group_name)

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to delete target group '{target_group_name}'.")
            if error_code == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer target group either already deleted or never
existed. "
                    "Verify the name and check that the resource exists in the AWS
Console."
                )
            elif error_code == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group still in use by another resource. "
```

```
                    "Ensure that the target group is no longer associated with any
load balancers or resources.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    def wait_for_target_group_deletion(
        self, elb_client, target_group_arn, max_attempts=10, delay=30
    ):
        for attempt in range(max_attempts):
            try:

elb_client.describe_target_groups(TargetGroupArns=[target_group_arn])
                print(
                    f"Attempt {attempt + 1}: Target group {target_group_arn} still
exists."
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "TargetGroupNotFound":
                    print(
                        f"Target group {target_group_arn} has been successfully
deleted."
                    )
                    return
                else:
                    raise
            time.sleep(delay)
        raise TimeoutError(
            f"Target group {target_group_arn} was not deleted after {max_attempts *
delay} seconds."
        )


    def create_load_balancer(
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        subnet_ids: List[str],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates an Elastic Load Balancing load balancer that uses the specified
subnets
        and forwards requests to the specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create.
        :param subnet_ids: A list of subnets to associate with the load balancer.
```

```
        :return: Data about the newly created load balancer.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.create_load_balancer(
                Name=load_balancer_name, Subnets=subnet_ids
            )
            load_balancer = response["LoadBalancers"][0]
            log.info(f"Created load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'.")

            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancer_available")
            log.info(
                f"Waiting for load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' to be
available..."
            )
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
            log.info(f"Load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' is now available!")

        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Failed to create load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )

            if error_code == "DuplicateLoadBalancerNameException":
                log.error(
                    f"A load balancer with the name '{load_balancer_name}' already
exists. "
                    "Load balancer names must be unique within the AWS region. "
                    "Please choose a different name and try again."
                )
            if error_code == "TooManyLoadBalancersException":
                log.error(
                    "The maximum number of load balancers has been reached in this
account and region. "
                    "You can delete unused load balancers or request an increase in
the service quota from AWS Support."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return load_balancer


    def create_listener(
```

```
        self,
        load_balancer_name: str,
        target_group: Dict[str, Any],
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a listener for the specified load balancer that forwards requests to
the
        specified target group.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to create a
listener for.
        :param target_group: An existing target group that is added as a listener to
the
                             load balancer.
        :return: Data about the newly created listener.
        """
        try:
            # Retrieve the load balancer ARN
            load_balancer_response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            load_balancer_arn = load_balancer_response["LoadBalancers"][0][
                "LoadBalancerArn"
            ]

            # Create the listener
            response = self.elb_client.create_listener(
                LoadBalancerArn=load_balancer_arn,
                Protocol=target_group["Protocol"],
                Port=target_group["Port"],
                DefaultActions=[
                    {
                        "Type": "forward",
                        "TargetGroupArn": target_group["TargetGroupArn"],
                    }
                ],
            )
            log.info(
                f"Created listener to forward traffic from load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' to target group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )
            return response["Listeners"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
            log.error(
                f"Failed to add a listener on '{load_balancer_name}' for target
group '{target_group['TargetGroupName']}'."
            )

            if error_code == "ListenerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The listener could not be found for the load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}'. "
                    "Please check the load balancer name and target group
configuration."
                )
            if error_code == "InvalidConfigurationRequestException":
                log.error(
                    f"The configuration provided for the listener on load balancer
'{load_balancer_name}' is invalid. "
                    "Please review the provided protocol, port, and target group
settings."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def delete_load_balancer(self, load_balancer_name) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a load balancer.

        :param load_balancer_name: The name of the load balancer to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            lb_arn = response["LoadBalancers"][0]["LoadBalancerArn"]
            self.elb_client.delete_load_balancer(LoadBalancerArn=lb_arn)
            log.info("Deleted load balancer %s.", load_balancer_name)
            waiter = self.elb_client.get_waiter("load_balancers_deleted")
            log.info("Waiting for load balancer to be deleted...")
            waiter.wait(Names=[load_balancer_name])
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't delete load balancer '{load_balancer_name}'. Error code:
{error_code}, Message: {err.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )
```

```
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    f"The load balancer '{load_balancer_name}' does not exist. "
                    "Please check the name and try again."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")


    def get_endpoint(self, load_balancer_name) -> str:
        """
        Gets the HTTP endpoint of the load balancer.

        :return: The endpoint.
        """
        try:
            response = self.elb_client.describe_load_balancers(
                Names=[load_balancer_name]
            )
            return response["LoadBalancers"][0]["DNSName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(
                f"Couldn't get the endpoint for load balancer {load_balancer_name}"
            )
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Verify load balancer name and ensure it exists in the AWS
console."
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")

    @staticmethod
    def verify_load_balancer_endpoint(endpoint) -> bool:
        """
        Verify this computer can successfully send a GET request to the load
balancer endpoint.

        :param endpoint: The endpoint to verify.
        :return: True if the GET request is successful, False otherwise.
        """
        retries = 3
        verified = False
        while not verified and retries > 0:
```

```
            try:
                lb_response = requests.get(f"http://{endpoint}")
                log.info(
                    "Got response %s from load balancer endpoint.",
                    lb_response.status_code,
                )
                if lb_response.status_code == 200:
                    verified = True
                else:
                    retries = 0
            except requests.exceptions.ConnectionError:
                log.info(
                    "Got connection error from load balancer endpoint, retrying..."
                )
                retries -= 1
                time.sleep(10)
        return verified

    def check_target_health(self, target_group_name: str) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Checks the health of the instances in the target group.

        :return: The health status of the target group.
        """
        try:
            tg_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_groups(
                Names=[target_group_name]
            )
            health_response = self.elb_client.describe_target_health(
                TargetGroupArn=tg_response["TargetGroups"][0]["TargetGroupArn"]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            log.error(f"Couldn't check health of {target_group_name} target(s).")
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "LoadBalancerNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Load balancer associated with the target group was not found. "
                    "Ensure the load balancer exists, is in the correct AWS region,
and "
                    "that you have the necessary permissions to access it.",
                )
            elif error_code == "TargetGroupNotFoundException":
                log.error(
                    "Target group was not found. "
```

```
                    "Verify the target group name, check that it exists in the
 correct region, "
                    "and ensure it has not been deleted or created in a different
 account.",
                )
            log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
        else:
            return health_response["TargetHealthDescriptions"]
```

Create a class that uses DynamoDB to simulate a recommendation service.

```
class RecommendationService:
    """
    Encapsulates a DynamoDB table to use as a service that recommends books, movies,
    and songs.
    """

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, dynamodb_client: boto3.client):
        """
        Initializes the RecommendationService class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB recommendations table.
        :param dynamodb_client: A Boto3 DynamoDB client.
        """
        self.table_name = table_name
        self.dynamodb_client = dynamodb_client

    def create(self) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Creates a DynamoDB table to use as a recommendation service. The table has a
        hash key named 'MediaType' that defines the type of media recommended, such
 as
        Book or Movie, and a range key named 'ItemId' that, combined with the
 MediaType,
        forms a unique identifier for the recommended item.

        :return: Data about the newly created table.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table creation fails.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.dynamodb_client.create_table(
                TableName=self.table_name,
                AttributeDefinitions=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "AttributeType": "S"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "AttributeType": "N"},
                ],
                KeySchema=[
                    {"AttributeName": "MediaType", "KeyType": "HASH"},
                    {"AttributeName": "ItemId", "KeyType": "RANGE"},
                ],
                ProvisionedThroughput={"ReadCapacityUnits": 5, "WriteCapacityUnits":
5},
            )
            log.info("Creating table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s created.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceInUseException":
                log.info("Table %s exists, nothing to be done.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when creating table: {err}."
                )
        else:
            return response

    def populate(self, data_file: str) -> None:
        """
        Populates the recommendations table from a JSON file.

        :param data_file: The path to the data file.
        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table population fails.
        """
        try:
            with open(data_file) as data:
                items = json.load(data)
            batch = [{"PutRequest": {"Item": item}} for item in items]
            self.dynamodb_client.batch_write_item(RequestItems={self.table_name:
batch})
            log.info(
                "Populated table %s with items from %s.", self.table_name, data_file
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            raise RecommendationServiceError(
                self.table_name, f"Couldn't populate table from {data_file}: {err}"
            )

    def destroy(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the recommendations table.

        :raises RecommendationServiceError: If the table deletion fails.
        """
        try:
            self.dynamodb_client.delete_table(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Deleting table %s...", self.table_name)
            waiter = self.dynamodb_client.get_waiter("table_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(TableName=self.table_name)
            log.info("Table %s deleted.", self.table_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                log.info("Table %s does not exist, nothing to do.", self.table_name)
            else:
                raise RecommendationServiceError(
                    self.table_name, f"ClientError when deleting table: {err}."
                )
```

Create a class that wraps Systems Manager actions.

```
class ParameterHelper:
    """
    Encapsulates Systems Manager parameters. This example uses these parameters to
 drive
    the demonstration of resilient architecture, such as failure of a dependency or
    how the service responds to a health check.
    """

    table: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-table"
    failure_response: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-failure-response"
    health_check: str = "doc-example-resilient-architecture-health-check"

    def __init__(self, table_name: str, ssm_client: boto3.client):
```

```
        """
        Initializes the ParameterHelper class with the necessary parameters.

        :param table_name: The name of the DynamoDB table that is used as a
recommendation
                           service.
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.table_name = table_name

    def reset(self) -> None:
        """
        Resets the Systems Manager parameters to starting values for the demo.
        These are the name of the DynamoDB recommendation table, no response when a
        dependency fails, and shallow health checks.
        """
        self.put(self.table, self.table_name)
        self.put(self.failure_response, "none")
        self.put(self.health_check, "shallow")

    def put(self, name: str, value: str) -> None:
        """
        Sets the value of a named Systems Manager parameter.

        :param name: The name of the parameter.
        :param value: The new value of the parameter.
        :raises ParameterHelperError: If the parameter value cannot be set.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.put_parameter(
                Name=name, Value=value, Overwrite=True, Type="String"
            )
            log.info("Setting parameter %s to '%s'.", name, value)
        except ClientError as err:
            error_code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            log.error(f"Failed to set parameter {name}.")
            if error_code == "ParameterLimitExceeded":
                log.error(
                    "The parameter limit has been exceeded. "
                    "Consider deleting unused parameters or request a limit
increase."
                )
            elif error_code == "ParameterAlreadyExists":
```

```
            log.error(
                "The parameter already exists and overwrite is set to False. "
                "Use Overwrite=True to update the parameter."
            )
        log.error(f"Full error:\n\t{err}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachLoadBalancerTargetGroups
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - CreateInstanceProfile
  - CreateLaunchTemplate
  - CreateListener
  - CreateLoadBalancer
  - CreateTargetGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteInstanceProfile
  - DeleteLaunchTemplate
  - DeleteLoadBalancer
  - DeleteTargetGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAvailabilityZones
  - DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeLoadBalancers
  - DescribeSubnets
  - DescribeTargetGroups
  - DescribeTargetHealth
  - DescribeVpcs
  - RebootInstances

  - ReplaceIamInstanceProfileAssociation

- TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
- UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Create read-only and read-write users

The following code example shows how to create users and attach policies to them.

> **Warning**
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create two IAM users.
- Attach a policy for one user to get and put objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Attach a policy for the second user to get objects from the bucket.
- Get different permissions to the bucket based on user credentials.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM user actions.

```
import logging
import time

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

import access_key_wrapper
import policy_wrapper
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_user(user_name):
    """
    Creates a user. By default, a user has no permissions or access keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The newly created user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.create_user(UserName=user_name)
        logger.info("Created user %s.", user.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return user



def update_user(user_name, new_user_name):
    """
    Updates a user's name.

    :param user_name: The current name of the user to update.
    :param new_user_name: The new name to assign to the user.
    :return: The updated user.
    """
    try:
        user = iam.User(user_name)
        user.update(NewUserName=new_user_name)
        logger.info("Renamed %s to %s.", user_name, new_user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update name for user %s.", user_name)
        raise
    return user



def list_users():
    """
    Lists the users in the current account.
```

```
    :return: The list of users.
    """
    try:
        users = list(iam.users.all())
        logger.info("Got %s users.", len(users))
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get users.")
        raise
    else:
        return users



def delete_user(user_name):
    """
    Deletes a user. Before a user can be deleted, all associated resources,
    such as access keys and policies, must be deleted or detached.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted user %s.", user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete user %s.", user_name)
        raise



def attach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to user %s.", policy_arn,
 user_name)
        raise
```

```
def detach_policy(user_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :param policy_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.User(user_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from user %s.", policy_arn, user_name
        )
        raise
```

Create functions that wrap IAM policy actions.

```
import json
import logging
import operator
import pprint
import time

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_policy(name, description, actions, resource_arn):
    """
    Creates a policy that contains a single statement.

    :param name: The name of the policy to create.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions allowed by the policy. These typically take the
                    form of service:action, such as s3:PutObject.
```

```
    :param resource_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource this policy
                         applies to. This ARN can contain wildcards, such as
                         'arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*' to allow actions on
 all objects
                         in the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.create_policy(
            PolicyName=name,
            Description=description,
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc),
        )
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy



def delete_policy(policy_arn):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
```

Create functions that wrap IAM access key actions.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_key(user_name):
    """
    Creates an access key for the specified user. Each user can have a
    maximum of two keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The created access key.
    """
    try:
        key_pair = iam.User(user_name).create_access_key_pair()
        logger.info(
            "Created access key pair for %s. Key ID is %s.",
            key_pair.user_name,
            key_pair.id,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create access key pair for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return key_pair



def delete_key(user_name, key_id):
    """
    Deletes a user's access key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to delete.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.AccessKey(user_name, key_id)
        key.delete()
```

```
        logger.info("Deleted access key %s for %s.", key.id, key.user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete key %s for %s", key_id, user_name)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to create users with differing policies and use their credentials to access an Amazon S3 bucket.

```
def usage_demo():
    """
    Shows how to manage users, keys, and policies.
    This demonstration creates two users: one user who can put and get objects in an
    Amazon S3 bucket, and another user who can only get objects from the bucket.
    The demo then shows how the users can perform only the actions they are
 permitted
    to perform.
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management user demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Users can have policies and roles attached to grant them specific "
        "permissions."
    )
    s3 = boto3.resource("s3")
    bucket = s3.create_bucket(
        Bucket=f"demo-iam-bucket-{time.time_ns()}",
        CreateBucketConfiguration={
            "LocationConstraint": s3.meta.client.meta.region_name
        },
    )
    print(f"Created an Amazon S3 bucket named {bucket.name}.")
    user_read_writer = create_user("demo-iam-read-writer")
    user_reader = create_user("demo-iam-reader")
    print(f"Created two IAM users: {user_read_writer.name} and {user_reader.name}")
    update_user(user_read_writer.name, "demo-iam-creator")
    update_user(user_reader.name, "demo-iam-getter")
    users = list_users()
    user_read_writer = next(
```

```
        user for user in users if user.user_id == user_read_writer.user_id
    )
    user_reader = next(user for user in users if user.user_id ==
user_reader.user_id)
    print(
        f"Changed the names of the users to {user_read_writer.name} "
        f"and {user_reader.name}."
    )

    read_write_policy = policy_wrapper.create_policy(
        "demo-iam-read-write-policy",
        "Grants rights to create and get an object in the demo bucket.",
        ["s3:PutObject", "s3:GetObject"],
        f"arn:aws:s3:::{bucket.name}/*",
    )
    print(
        f"Created policy {read_write_policy.policy_name} with ARN:
{read_write_policy.arn}"
    )
    print(read_write_policy.description)
    read_policy = policy_wrapper.create_policy(
        "demo-iam-read-policy",
        "Grants rights to get an object from the demo bucket.",
        "s3:GetObject",
        f"arn:aws:s3:::{bucket.name}/*",
    )
    print(f"Created policy {read_policy.policy_name} with ARN: {read_policy.arn}")
    print(read_policy.description)
    attach_policy(user_read_writer.name, read_write_policy.arn)
    print(f"Attached {read_write_policy.policy_name} to {user_read_writer.name}.")
    attach_policy(user_reader.name, read_policy.arn)
    print(f"Attached {read_policy.policy_name} to {user_reader.name}.")

    user_read_writer_key = access_key_wrapper.create_key(user_read_writer.name)
    print(f"Created access key pair for {user_read_writer.name}.")
    user_reader_key = access_key_wrapper.create_key(user_reader.name)
    print(f"Created access key pair for {user_reader.name}.")

    s3_read_writer_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=user_read_writer_key.id,
        aws_secret_access_key=user_read_writer_key.secret,
    )
    demo_object_key = f"object-{time.time_ns()}"
```

```
    demo_object = None
    while demo_object is None:
        try:
            demo_object = s3_read_writer_resource.Bucket(bucket.name).put_object(
                Key=demo_object_key, Body=b"AWS IAM demo object content!"
            )
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAccessKeyId":
                print("Access key not yet available. Waiting...")
                time.sleep(1)
            else:
                raise
    print(
        f"Put {demo_object_key} into {bucket.name} using "
        f"{user_read_writer.name}'s credentials."
    )

    read_writer_object = s3_read_writer_resource.Bucket(bucket.name).Object(
        demo_object_key
    )
    read_writer_content = read_writer_object.get()["Body"].read()
    print(f"Got object {read_writer_object.key} using read-writer user's
credentials.")
    print(f"Object content: {read_writer_content}")

    s3_reader_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=user_reader_key.id,
        aws_secret_access_key=user_reader_key.secret,
    )
    demo_content = None
    while demo_content is None:
        try:
            demo_object =
s3_reader_resource.Bucket(bucket.name).Object(demo_object_key)
            demo_content = demo_object.get()["Body"].read()
            print(f"Got object {demo_object.key} using reader user's credentials.")
            print(f"Object content: {demo_content}")
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidAccessKeyId":
                print("Access key not yet available. Waiting...")
                time.sleep(1)
            else:
                raise
```

```
    try:
        demo_object.delete()
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                "Tried to delete the object using the reader user's credentials. "
                "Got expected AccessDenied error because the reader is not "
                "allowed to delete objects."
            )
            print("-" * 88)

    access_key_wrapper.delete_key(user_reader.name, user_reader_key.id)
    detach_policy(user_reader.name, read_policy.arn)
    policy_wrapper.delete_policy(read_policy.arn)
    delete_user(user_reader.name)
    print(f"Deleted keys, detached and deleted policy, and deleted
{user_reader.name}.")

    access_key_wrapper.delete_key(user_read_writer.name, user_read_writer_key.id)
    detach_policy(user_read_writer.name, read_write_policy.arn)
    policy_wrapper.delete_policy(read_write_policy.arn)
    delete_user(user_read_writer.name)
    print(
        f"Deleted keys, detached and deleted policy, and deleted
{user_read_writer.name}."
    )

    bucket.objects.delete()
    bucket.delete()
    print(f"Emptied and deleted {bucket.name}.")
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachUserPolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateUser

- DeleteAccessKey
- DeletePolicy
- DeleteUser
- DetachUserPolicy
- ListUsers
- UpdateUser

Manage access keys

The following code example shows how to manage access keys.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create and list access keys.
- Find out when and how an access key was last used.
- Update and delete access keys.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM access key actions.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
```

```
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def list_keys(user_name):
    """
    Lists the keys owned by the specified user.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The list of keys owned by the user.
    """
    try:
        keys = list(iam.User(user_name).access_keys.all())
        logger.info("Got %s access keys for %s.", len(keys), user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get access keys for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return keys



def create_key(user_name):
    """
    Creates an access key for the specified user. Each user can have a
    maximum of two keys.

    :param user_name: The name of the user.
    :return: The created access key.
    """
    try:
        key_pair = iam.User(user_name).create_access_key_pair()
        logger.info(
            "Created access key pair for %s. Key ID is %s.",
            key_pair.user_name,
            key_pair.id,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create access key pair for %s.", user_name)
        raise
    else:
        return key_pair
```

```
def get_last_use(key_id):
    """
    Gets information about when and how a key was last used.

    :param key_id: The ID of the key to look up.
    :return: Information about the key's last use.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_access_key_last_used(AccessKeyId=key_id)
        last_used_date = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("LastUsedDate", None)
        last_service = response["AccessKeyLastUsed"].get("ServiceName", None)
        logger.info(
            "Key %s was last used by %s on %s to access %s.",
            key_id,
            response["UserName"],
            last_used_date,
            last_service,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get last use of key %s.", key_id)
        raise
    else:
        return response



def update_key(user_name, key_id, activate):
    """
    Updates the status of a key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to update.
    :param activate: When True, the key is activated. Otherwise, the key is
 deactivated.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.User(user_name).AccessKey(key_id)
        if activate:
            key.activate()
        else:
            key.deactivate()
        logger.info("%s key %s.", "Activated" if activate else "Deactivated",
 key_id)
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't %s key %s.", "Activate" if activate else "Deactivate", key_id
        )
        raise



def delete_key(user_name, key_id):
    """
    Deletes a user's access key.

    :param user_name: The user that owns the key.
    :param key_id: The ID of the key to delete.
    """

    try:
        key = iam.AccessKey(user_name, key_id)
        key.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted access key %s for %s.", key.id, key.user_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete key %s for %s", key_id, user_name)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to perform access key actions for the current user.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to create and manage access keys."""

    def print_keys():
        """Gets and prints the current keys for a user."""
        current_keys = list_keys(current_user_name)
        print("The current user's keys are now:")
        print(*[f"{key.id}: {key.status}" for key in current_keys], sep="\n")

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management access key demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    current_user_name = iam.CurrentUser().user_name
```

```
    print(
        f"This demo creates an access key for the current user "
        f"({current_user_name}), manipulates the key in a few ways, and then "
        f"deletes it."
    )
    all_keys = list_keys(current_user_name)
    if len(all_keys) == 2:
        print(
            "The current user already has the maximum of 2 access keys. To run "
            "this demo, either delete one of the access keys or use a user "
            "that has only 1 access key."
        )
    else:
        new_key = create_key(current_user_name)
        print(f"Created a new key with id {new_key.id} and secret
{new_key.secret}.")
        print_keys()
        existing_key = next(key for key in all_keys if key != new_key)
        last_use = get_last_use(existing_key.id)["AccessKeyLastUsed"]
        print(
            f"Key {all_keys[0].id} was last used to access {last_use['ServiceName']}
"
            f"on {last_use['LastUsedDate']}"
        )
        update_key(current_user_name, new_key.id, False)
        print(f"Key {new_key.id} is now deactivated.")
        print_keys()
        delete_key(current_user_name, new_key.id)
        print_keys()
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAccessKey
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - GetAccessKeyLastUsed
  - ListAccessKeys
  - UpdateAccessKey

Manage policies

The following code example shows how to:

- Create and list policies.
- Create and get policy versions.
- Roll back a policy to a previous version.
- Delete policies.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM policy actions.

```
import json
import logging
import operator
import pprint
import time

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_policy(name, description, actions, resource_arn):
    """
    Creates a policy that contains a single statement.

    :param name: The name of the policy to create.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions allowed by the policy. These typically take the
                    form of service:action, such as s3:PutObject.
    :param resource_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the resource this policy
                         applies to. This ARN can contain wildcards, such as
```

```
                         'arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket/*' to allow actions on
 all objects
                         in the bucket named 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.create_policy(
            PolicyName=name,
            Description=description,
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc),
        )
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", policy.arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy



def list_policies(scope):
    """
    Lists the policies in the current account.

    :param scope: Limits the kinds of policies that are returned. For example,
                  'Local' specifies that only locally managed policies are returned.
    :return: The list of policies.
    """
    try:
        policies = list(iam.policies.filter(Scope=scope))
        logger.info("Got %s policies in scope '%s'.", len(policies), scope)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get policies for scope '%s'.", scope)
        raise
    else:
        return policies
```

```
def create_policy_version(policy_arn, actions, resource_arn, set_as_default):
    """
    Creates a policy version. Policies can have up to five versions. The default
    version is the one that is used for all resources that reference the policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    :param actions: The actions to allow in the policy version.
    :param resource_arn: The ARN of the resource this policy version applies to.
    :param set_as_default: When True, this policy version is set as the default
                           version for the policy. Otherwise, the default
                           is not changed.
    :return: The newly created policy version.
    """
    policy_doc = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [{"Effect": "Allow", "Action": actions, "Resource":
 resource_arn}],
    }
    try:
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        policy_version = policy.create_version(
            PolicyDocument=json.dumps(policy_doc), SetAsDefault=set_as_default
        )
        logger.info(
            "Created policy version %s for policy %s.",
            policy_version.version_id,
            policy_version.arn,
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create a policy version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_version



def get_default_policy_statement(policy_arn):
    """
    Gets the statement of the default version of the specified policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to look up.
    :return: The statement of the default policy version.
    """
    try:
```

```
        policy = iam.Policy(policy_arn)
        # To get an attribute of a policy, the SDK first calls get_policy.
        policy_doc = policy.default_version.document
        policy_statement = policy_doc.get("Statement", None)
        logger.info("Got default policy doc for %s.", policy.policy_name)
        logger.info(policy_doc)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get default policy statement for %s.",
 policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return policy_statement



def rollback_policy_version(policy_arn):
    """
    Rolls back to the previous default policy, if it exists.

    1. Gets the list of policy versions in order by date.
    2. Finds the default.
    3. Makes the previous policy the default.
    4. Deletes the old default version.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to roll back.
    :return: The default version of the policy after the rollback.
    """
    try:
        policy_versions = sorted(
            iam.Policy(policy_arn).versions.all(),
            key=operator.attrgetter("create_date"),
        )
        logger.info("Got %s versions for %s.", len(policy_versions), policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get versions for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise

    default_version = None
    rollback_version = None
    try:
        while default_version is None:
            ver = policy_versions.pop()
            if ver.is_default_version:
                default_version = ver
```

```
        rollback_version = policy_versions.pop()
        rollback_version.set_as_default()
        logger.info("Set %s as the default version.", rollback_version.version_id)
        default_version.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted original default version %s.",
 default_version.version_id)
    except IndexError:
        if default_version is None:
            logger.warning("No default version found for %s.", policy_arn)
        elif rollback_version is None:
            logger.warning(
                "Default version %s found for %s, but no previous version exists, so
 "
                "nothing to roll back to.",
                default_version.version_id,
                policy_arn,
            )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't roll back version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return rollback_version



def delete_policy(policy_arn):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Policy(policy_arn).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to create policies, update versions, and get information about them.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the policy functions."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management policy demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Policies let you define sets of permissions that can be attached to "
        "other IAM resources, like users and roles."
    )
    bucket_arn = f"arn:aws:s3:::amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
    policy = create_policy(
        "demo-iam-policy",
        "Policy for IAM demonstration.",
        ["s3:ListObjects"],
        bucket_arn,
    )
    print(f"Created policy {policy.policy_name}.")
    policies = list_policies("Local")
    print(f"Your account has {len(policies)} managed policies:")
    print(*[pol.policy_name for pol in policies], sep=", ")
    time.sleep(1)
    policy_version = create_policy_version(
        policy.arn, ["s3:PutObject"], bucket_arn, True
    )
    print(
        f"Added policy version {policy_version.version_id} to policy "
        f"{policy.policy_name}."
    )
    default_statement = get_default_policy_statement(policy.arn)
    print(f"The default policy statement for {policy.policy_name} is:")
    pprint.pprint(default_statement)
    rollback_version = rollback_policy_version(policy.arn)
    print(
        f"Rolled back to version {rollback_version.version_id} for "
        f"{policy.policy_name}."
    )
    default_statement = get_default_policy_statement(policy.arn)
    print(f"The default policy statement for {policy.policy_name} is now:")
    pprint.pprint(default_statement)
    delete_policy(policy.arn)
    print(f"Deleted policy {policy.policy_name}.")
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreatePolicyVersion
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeletePolicyVersion
  - GetPolicyVersion
  - ListPolicies
  - ListPolicyVersions
  - SetDefaultPolicyVersion

Manage roles

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role.
- Attach and detach policies for a role.
- Delete a role.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM role actions.

```
import json
import logging
import pprint

import boto3
```

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def create_role(role_name, allowed_services):
    """
    Creates a role that lets a list of specified services assume the role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role.
    :param allowed_services: The services that can assume the role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    trust_policy = {
        "Version": "2012-10-17",
        "Statement": [
            {
                "Effect": "Allow",
                "Principal": {"Service": service},
                "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
            }
            for service in allowed_services
        ],
    }

    try:
        role = iam.create_role(
            RoleName=role_name, AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy)
        )
        logger.info("Created role %s.", role.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create role %s.", role_name)
        raise
    else:
        return role



def attach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
```

```
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't attach policy %s to role %s.", policy_arn,
 role_name)
        raise



def detach_policy(role_name, policy_arn):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role. **Note** this is the name, not the ARN.
    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).detach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from role %s.", policy_arn, role_name
        )
        raise



def delete_role(role_name):
    """
    Deletes a role.

    :param role_name: The name of the role to delete.
    """
    try:
        iam.Role(role_name).delete()
        logger.info("Deleted role %s.", role_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete role %s.", role_name)
        raise
```

Use the wrapper functions to create a role, then attach and detach a policy.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the role functions."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management role demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Roles let you define sets of permissions and can be assumed by "
        "other entities, like users and services."
    )
    print("The first 10 roles currently in your account are:")
    roles = list_roles(10)
    print(f"The inline policies for role {roles[0].name} are:")
    list_policies(roles[0].name)
    role = create_role(
        "demo-iam-role", ["lambda.amazonaws.com",
 "batchoperations.s3.amazonaws.com"]
    )
    print(f"Created role {role.name}, with trust policy:")
    pprint.pprint(role.assume_role_policy_document)
    policy_arn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess"
    attach_policy(role.name, policy_arn)
    print(f"Attached policy {policy_arn} to {role.name}.")
    print(f"Policies attached to role {role.name} are:")
    list_attached_policies(role.name)
    detach_policy(role.name, policy_arn)
    print(f"Detached policy {policy_arn} from {role.name}.")
    delete_role(role.name)
    print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - DeleteRole

- DetachRolePolicy

Manage your account

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and update the account alias.
- Generate a report of users and credentials.
- Get a summary of account usage.
- Get details for all users, groups, roles, and policies in your account, including their relationships to each other.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap IAM account actions.

```
import logging
import pprint
import sys
import time
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
iam = boto3.resource("iam")

def list_aliases():
    """
    Gets the list of aliases for the current account. An account has at most one
 alias.

    :return: The list of aliases for the account.
    """
```

```
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.list_account_aliases()
        aliases = response["AccountAliases"]
        if len(aliases) > 0:
            logger.info("Got aliases for your account: %s.", ",".join(aliases))
        else:
            logger.info("Got no aliases for your account.")
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't list aliases for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["AccountAliases"]



def create_alias(alias):
    """
    Creates an alias for the current account. The alias can be used in place of the
    account ID in the sign-in URL. An account can have only one alias. When a new
    alias is created, it replaces any existing alias.

    :param alias: The alias to assign to the account.
    """

    try:
        iam.create_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Created an alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create alias '%s' for your account.", alias)
        raise



def delete_alias(alias):
    """
    Removes the alias from the current account.

    :param alias: The alias to remove.
    """
    try:
        iam.meta.client.delete_account_alias(AccountAlias=alias)
        logger.info("Removed alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't remove alias '%s' from your account.", alias)
```

```
        raise



def generate_credential_report():
    """
    Starts generation of a credentials report about the current account. After
    calling this function to generate the report, call get_credential_report
    to get the latest report. A new report can be generated a minimum of four hours
    after the last one was generated.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.generate_credential_report()
        logger.info(
            "Generating credentials report for your account. " "Current state is
 %s.",
            response["State"],
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't generate a credentials report for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return response



def get_credential_report():
    """
    Gets the most recently generated credentials report about the current account.

    :return: The credentials report.
    """
    try:
        response = iam.meta.client.get_credential_report()
        logger.debug(response["Content"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get credentials report.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["Content"]



def get_summary():
```

```
    """
    Gets a summary of account usage.

    :return: The summary of account usage.
    """
    try:
        summary = iam.AccountSummary()
        logger.debug(summary.summary_map)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get a summary for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return summary.summary_map



def get_authorization_details(response_filter):
    """
    Gets an authorization detail report for the current account.

    :param response_filter: A list of resource types to include in the report, such
                            as users or roles. When not specified, all resources
                            are included.
    :return: The authorization detail report.
    """
    try:
        account_details = iam.meta.client.get_account_authorization_details(
            Filter=response_filter
        )
        logger.debug(account_details)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get details for your account.")
        raise
    else:
        return account_details
```

Call wrapper functions to change the account alias and to get reports about the account.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the account functions."""
```

```
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Identity and Account Management account demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Setting an account alias lets you use the alias in your sign-in URL "
        "instead of your account number."
    )
    old_aliases = list_aliases()
    if len(old_aliases) > 0:
        print(f"Your account currently uses '{old_aliases[0]}' as its alias.")
    else:
        print("Your account currently has no alias.")
    for index in range(1, 3):
        new_alias = f"alias-{index}-{time.time_ns()}"
        print(f"Setting your account alias to {new_alias}")
        create_alias(new_alias)
    current_aliases = list_aliases()
    print(f"Your account alias is now {current_aliases}.")
    delete_alias(current_aliases[0])
    print(f"Your account now has no alias.")
    if len(old_aliases) > 0:
        print(f"Restoring your original alias back to {old_aliases[0]}...")
        create_alias(old_aliases[0])

    print("-" * 88)
    print("You can get various reports about your account.")
    print("Let's generate a credentials report...")
    report_state = None
    while report_state != "COMPLETE":
        cred_report_response = generate_credential_report()
        old_report_state = report_state
        report_state = cred_report_response["State"]
        if report_state != old_report_state:
            print(report_state, sep="")
        else:
            print(".", sep="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
        time.sleep(1)
    print()
    cred_report = get_credential_report()
    col_count = 3
    print(f"Got credentials report. Showing only the first {col_count} columns.")
    cred_lines = [
```

```
        line.split(",")[:col_count] for line in
 cred_report.decode("utf-8").split("\n")
    ]
    col_width = max([len(item) for line in cred_lines for item in line]) + 2
    for line in cred_report.decode("utf-8").split("\n"):
        print(
            "".join(element.ljust(col_width) for element in line.split(",")
[:col_count])
        )

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Let's get an account summary.")
    summary = get_summary()
    print("Here's your summary:")
    pprint.pprint(summary)

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Let's get authorization details!")
    details = get_authorization_details([])
    see_details = input("These are pretty long, do you want to see them (y/n)? ")
    if see_details.lower() == "y":
        pprint.pprint(details)

    print("-" * 88)
    pw_policy_created = None
    see_pw_policy = input("Want to see the password policy for the account (y/n)? ")
    if see_pw_policy.lower() == "y":
        while True:
            if print_password_policy():
                break
            else:
                answer = input(
                    "Do you want to create a default password policy (y/n)? "
                )
                if answer.lower() == "y":
                    pw_policy_created = iam.create_account_password_policy()
                else:
                    break
    if pw_policy_created is not None:
        answer = input("Do you want to delete the password policy (y/n)? ")
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            pw_policy_created.delete()
            print("Password policy deleted.")
```

```
    print("The SAML providers for your account are:")
    list_saml_providers(10)

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Thanks for watching.")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAccountAlias
  - DeleteAccountAlias
  - GenerateCredentialReport
  - GetAccountAuthorizationDetails
  - GetAccountSummary
  - GetCredentialReport
  - ListAccountAliases

Roll back a policy version

The following code example shows how to:

- Get the list of policy versions in order by date.
- Find the default policy version.
- Make the previous policy version the default.
- Delete the old default version.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def rollback_policy_version(policy_arn):
    """
```

```
    Rolls back to the previous default policy, if it exists.

    1. Gets the list of policy versions in order by date.
    2. Finds the default.
    3. Makes the previous policy the default.
    4. Deletes the old default version.

    :param policy_arn: The ARN of the policy to roll back.
    :return: The default version of the policy after the rollback.
    """
    try:
        policy_versions = sorted(
            iam.Policy(policy_arn).versions.all(),
            key=operator.attrgetter("create_date"),
        )
        logger.info("Got %s versions for %s.", len(policy_versions), policy_arn)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get versions for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise

    default_version = None
    rollback_version = None
    try:
        while default_version is None:
            ver = policy_versions.pop()
            if ver.is_default_version:
                default_version = ver
        rollback_version = policy_versions.pop()
        rollback_version.set_as_default()
        logger.info("Set %s as the default version.", rollback_version.version_id)
        default_version.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted original default version %s.",
default_version.version_id)
    except IndexError:
        if default_version is None:
            logger.warning("No default version found for %s.", policy_arn)
        elif rollback_version is None:
            logger.warning(
                "Default version %s found for %s, but no previous version exists, so
"
                "nothing to roll back to.",
                default_version.version_id,
                policy_arn,
            )
```

```
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't roll back version for %s.", policy_arn)
        raise
    else:
        return rollback_version
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeletePolicyVersion
  - ListPolicyVersions
  - SetDefaultPolicyVersion

AWS IoT SiteWise examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS IoT SiteWise.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS IoT SiteWise

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS IoT SiteWise.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_iot_sitewise(iot_sitewise_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS IoT SiteWise
    client and list the asset models in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param iot_sitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise Client object. This object
 wraps
                                the low-level AWS IoT SiteWise service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS IoT SiteWise! Let's list some of your asset models:\n")
    paginator = iot_sitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 10})

    asset_model_names: [str] = []
    for page in page_iterator:
        for asset_model in page["assetModelSummaries"]:
            asset_model_names.append(asset_model["name"])

    print(f"{len(asset_model_names)} asset model(s) retrieved.")
    for asset_model_name in asset_model_names:
        print(f"\t{asset_model_name}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_iot_sitewise(boto3.client("iotsitewise"))
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the property ID values.
- Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.
- Retrieve the value of the AWS IoT SiteWise Asset property.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.
- Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Describe the AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
- Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class IoTSitewiseGettingStarted:
    """
    A scenario that demonstrates how to use Boto3 to manage IoT physical assets
 using
    the AWS IoT SiteWise.
    """

    def __init__(
        self,
        iot_sitewise_wrapper: IoTSitewiseWrapper,
        cloud_formation_resource: ServiceResource,
    ):
```

```
        self.iot_sitewise_wrapper = iot_sitewise_wrapper
        self.cloud_formation_resource = cloud_formation_resource
        self.stack = None
        self.asset_model_id = None
        self.asset_id = None
        self.portal_id = None
        self.gateway_id = None

    def run(self) -> None:
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """
        print(
            """
AWS IoT SiteWise is a fully managed software-as-a-service (SaaS) that
makes it easy to collect, store, organize, and monitor data from industrial
 equipment and processes.
It is designed to help industrial and manufacturing organizations collect data from
 their equipment and
processes, and use that data to make informed decisions about their operations.

One of the key features of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to connect to a wide
 range of industrial
equipment and systems, including programmable logic controllers (PLCs), sensors, and
 other
industrial devices. It can collect data from these devices and organize it into a
 unified data model,
making it easier to analyze and gain insights from the data. AWS IoT SiteWise also
 provides tools for
visualizing the data, setting up alarms and alerts, and generating reports.

Another key feature of AWS IoT SiteWise is its ability to scale to handle large
 volumes of data.
It can collect and store data from thousands of devices and process millions of data
 points per second,
making it suitable for large-scale industrial operations. Additionally, AWS IoT
 SiteWise is designed
to be secure and compliant, with features like role-based access controls, data
 encryption,
and integration with other AWS services for additional security and compliance
 features.

Let's get started...
        """
```

```
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"")
        print(
            f"Use AWS CloudFormation to create an IAM role that is required for this
 scenario."
        )
        template_file = IoTSitewiseGettingStarted.get_template_as_string()

        self.stack = self.deploy_cloudformation_stack(
            "python-iot-sitewise-basics", template_file
        )
        outputs = self.stack.outputs
        iam_role = None

        for output in outputs:
            if output.get("OutputKey") == "SitewiseRoleArn":
                iam_role = output.get("OutputValue")

        if iam_role is None:
            error_string = f"Failed to retrieve iam_role from CloudFormation stack."
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)

        print(f"The ARN of the IAM role is {iam_role}")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"1. Create an AWS SiteWise Asset Model")
        print(
            """
An AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model is a way to represent the physical assets, such as
 equipment,
processes, and systems, that exist in an industrial environment. This model provides
 a structured and
hierarchical representation of these assets, allowing users to define the
 relationships and values
of each asset.

This scenario creates two asset model values: temperature and humidity.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        asset_model_name = "MyAssetModel1"
```

```
        temperature_property_name = "temperature"
        humidity_property_name = "humidity"
        try:
            properties = [
                {
                    "name": temperature_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
                {
                    "name": humidity_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
            ]
            self.asset_model_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_asset_model(
                asset_model_name, properties
            )
            print(
                f"Asset Model successfully created. Asset Model ID:
 {self.asset_model_id}. "
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                self.asset_model_id =
 self.get_model_id_for_model_name(asset_model_name)
                print(
                    f"Asset Model {asset_model_name} already exists. Asset Model ID:
 {self.asset_model_id}. "
                )
            else:
                raise

        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"2. Create an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset")
        print(
            """
The IoT SiteWise model that we just created defines the structure and metadata for
 your physical assets.
```

```
Now we create an asset from the asset model.

        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        self.asset_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_asset(
            "MyAsset1", self.asset_model_id
        )

        print(f"Asset created with ID: {self.asset_id}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"3. Retrieve the property ID values")
        print(
            """
To send data to an asset, we need to get the property ID values. In this scenario,
 we access the
temperature and humidity property ID values.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        property_ids = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.list_asset_model_properties(
            self.asset_model_id
        )
        humidity_property_id = None
        temperature_property_id = None
        for property_id in property_ids:
            if property_id.get("name") == humidity_property_name:
                humidity_property_id = property_id.get("id")
            elif property_id.get("name") == temperature_property_name:
                temperature_property_id = property_id.get("id")
        if humidity_property_id is None or temperature_property_id is None:
            error_string = f"Failed to retrieve property IDs from Asset Model."
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)

        print(f"The Humidity property Id is {humidity_property_id}")
        print(f"The Temperature property Id is {temperature_property_id}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
```

```
        print(f"4. Send data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset")
        print(
            """
By sending data to an IoT SiteWise Asset, you can aggregate data from
multiple sources, normalize the data into a standard format, and store it in a
centralized location. This makes it easier to analyze and gain insights from the
 data.

In this example, we generate sample temperature and humidity data and send it to the
 AWS IoT SiteWise asset.

        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        values = [
            {
                "propertyId": humidity_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 65.0,
            },
            {
                "propertyId": temperature_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 23.5,
            },
        ]
        self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.batch_put_asset_property_value(self.asset_id,
 values)
        print(f"Data sent successfully.")

        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"5. Retrieve the value of the IoT SiteWise Asset property")
        print(
            """
IoT SiteWise is an AWS service that allows you to collect, process, and analyze
 industrial data
from connected equipment and sensors. One of the key benefits of reading an IoT
 SiteWise property
is the ability to gain valuable insights from your industrial data.
```

```
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        property_value = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.get_asset_property_value(
            self.asset_id, temperature_property_id
        )
        print(f"The property name is '{temperature_property_name}'.")

        print(
            f"The value of this property is: {property_value['value']
['doubleValue']}"
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        property_value = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.get_asset_property_value(
            self.asset_id, humidity_property_id
        )
        print(f"The property name is '{humidity_property_name}'.")
        print(
            f"The value of this property is: {property_value['value']
['doubleValue']}"
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"6. Create an IoT SiteWise Portal")
        print(
            """
An IoT SiteWise Portal allows you to aggregate data from multiple industrial
 sources,
such as sensors, equipment, and control systems, into a centralized platform.
        """
        )

        press_enter_to_continue()
        contact_email = q.ask("Enter a contact email for the portal:", q.non_empty)
        print("Creating the portal. The portal may take a while to become active.")
        self.portal_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_portal(
            "MyPortal1", iam_role, contact_email
        )
        print(f"Portal created successfully. Portal ID {self.portal_id}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
```

```
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"7. Describe the Portal")
        print(
            """
In this step, we get a description of the portal and display the portal URL.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        portal_description =
 self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.describe_portal(self.portal_id)
        print(f"Portal URL: {portal_description['portalStartUrl']}")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"8. Create an IoT SiteWise Gateway")
        press_enter_to_continue()
        self.gateway_id = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.create_gateway(
            "MyGateway1", "MyThing1"
        )
        print(f"Gateway creation completed successfully. id is {self.gateway_id}")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"9. Describe the IoT SiteWise Gateway")
        press_enter_to_continue()

        gateway_description = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.describe_gateway(
            self.gateway_id
        )
        print(f"Gateway Name: {gateway_description['gatewayName']}")
        print(f"Gateway ARN: {gateway_description['gatewayArn']}")
        print(f"Gateway Platform:\n{gateway_description['gatewayPlatform']}")
        print(f"Gateway Creation Date: {gateway_description['gatewayArn']}")
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()

        print(f"10. Delete the AWS IoT SiteWise Assets")
        if q.ask("Would you like to delete the IoT SiteWise Assets? (y/n)",
 q.is_yesno):
            self.cleanup()
        else:
            print(f"The resources will not be deleted.")
```

```
        print_dashes()
        print_dashes()
        print(f"This concludes the AWS IoT SiteWise Scenario")

    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Deletes the CloudFormation stack and the resources created for the demo.
        """

        if self.gateway_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_gateway(self.gateway_id)
            print(f"Deleted gateway with id {self.gateway_id}.")
            self.gateway_id = None
        if self.portal_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_portal(self.portal_id)
            print(f"Deleted portal with id {self.portal_id}.")
            self.portal_id = None
        if self.asset_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_asset(self.asset_id)
            print(f"Deleted asset with id {self.asset_id}.")
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.wait_asset_deleted(self.asset_id)
            self.asset_id = None
        if self.asset_model_id is not None:
            self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.delete_asset_model(self.asset_model_id)
            print(f"Deleted asset model with id {self.asset_model_id}.")
            self.asset_model_id = None
        if self.stack is not None:
            stack = self.stack
            self.stack = None
            self.destroy_cloudformation_stack(stack)

    def deploy_cloudformation_stack(
        self, stack_name: str, cfn_template: str
    ) -> ServiceResource:
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
        defined in the associated `SitewiseRoles-template.yaml` AWS CloudFormation
script and are deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.

        :param stack_name: The name of the CloudFormation stack.
        :param cfn_template: The CloudFormation template as a string.
        :return: The CloudFormation stack resource.
        """
```

```
        print(f"Deploying CloudFormation stack: {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cloud_formation_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=cfn_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
        )
        print(f"CloudFormation stack creation started: {stack_name}")
        print("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to complete...")
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_create_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print("CloudFormation stack creation complete.")

        return stack

    def destroy_cloudformation_stack(self, stack: ServiceResource) -> None:
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example resources.
        """
        print(
            f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' is being deleted. This may take a
few minutes."
        )
        stack.delete()
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_delete_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        print(f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' has been deleted.")

    @staticmethod
    def get_template_as_string() -> str:
        """
        Returns a string containing this scenario's CloudFormation template.
        """
        template_file_path = os.path.join(script_dir, "SitewiseRoles-template.yaml")
        file = open(template_file_path, "r")
        return file.read()
```

```
    def get_model_id_for_model_name(self, model_name: str) -> str:
        """
        Returns the model ID for the given model name.

        :param model_name: The name of the model.
        :return: The model ID.
        """
        model_id = None
        asset_models = self.iot_sitewise_wrapper.list_asset_models()
        for asset_model in asset_models:
            if asset_model["name"] == model_name:
                model_id = asset_model["id"]
                break
        return model_id
```

IoTSitewiseWrapper class that wraps AWS IoT SiteWise actions.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                            access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.
```

```
        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_asset_model(
        self, asset_model_name: str, properties: List[Dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_name: The name of the asset model to create.
        :param properties: The property definitions of the asset model.
        :return: The ID of the created asset model.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset_model(
                assetModelName=asset_model_name,
                assetModelDescription="This is a sample asset model description.",
                assetModelProperties=properties,
            )
            asset_model_id = response["assetModelId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_model_active")
            waiter.wait(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
            return asset_model_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s already exists.", asset_model_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_model_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def create_asset(self, asset_name: str, asset_model_id: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_name: The name of the asset to create.
```

```
        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to associate with the
asset.
        :return: The ID of the created asset.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset(
                assetName=asset_name, assetModelId=asset_model_id
            )
            asset_id = response["assetId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_active")
            waiter.wait(assetId=asset_id)
            return asset_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s does not exist.", asset_model_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def list_asset_models(self) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Lists all AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Models.

        :return: A list of dictionaries containing information about each asset
model.

        """
        try:
            asset_models = []
            paginator = self.iotsitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
            pages = paginator.paginate()
            for page in pages:
                asset_models.extend(page["assetModelSummaries"])
            return asset_models
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error listing asset models. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise


    def list_asset_model_properties(self, asset_model_id: str) -> List[Dict[str,
 Any]]:
        """
        Lists all AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model Properties.

        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to list values for.
        :return: A list of dictionaries containing information about each asset
 model property.
        """
        try:
            asset_model_properties = []
            paginator = self.iotsitewise_client.get_paginator(
                "list_asset_model_properties"
            )
            pages = paginator.paginate(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
            for page in pages:
                asset_model_properties.extend(page["assetModelPropertySummaries"])
            return asset_model_properties
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error listing asset model values. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def batch_put_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, values: List[Dict[str, str]]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Sends data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The asset ID.
        :param values: A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        """
        try:
            entries = self.properties_to_values(asset_id, values)
```

```
            self.iotsitewise_client.batch_put_asset_property_value(entries=entries)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset %s does not exist.", asset_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error sending data to asset. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def properties_to_values(
        self, asset_id: str, values: list[dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> list[dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Utility function to convert a values list to the entries parameter for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        :param asset_id : The asset ID.
        :param values : A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        :return: An entries list to pass as the 'entries' parameter to
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        """
        entries = []
        for value in values:
            epoch_ns = time.time_ns()
            self.entry_id += 1
            if value["valueType"] == "stringValue":
                property_value = {"stringValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "integerValue":
                property_value = {"integerValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "booleanValue":
                property_value = {"booleanValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "doubleValue":
                property_value = {"doubleValue": value["value"]}
            else:
                raise ValueError("Invalid valueType: %s", value["valueType"])
            entry = {
                "entryId": f"{self.entry_id}",
                "assetId": asset_id,
```

```
                "propertyId": value["propertyId"],
                "propertyValues": [
                    {
                        "value": property_value,
                        "timestamp": {
                            "timeInSeconds": int(epoch_ns / 1000000000),
                            "offsetInNanos": epoch_ns % 1000000000,
                        },
                    }
                ],
            }
            entries.append(entry)
        return entries


    def get_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, property_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the value of an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Property.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset.
        :param property_id: The ID of the property.
        :return: A dictionary containing the value of the property.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.get_asset_property_value(
                assetId=asset_id, propertyId=property_id
            )
            return response["propertyValue"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Asset %s or property %s does not exist.", asset_id, property_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error getting asset property value. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def create_portal(
```

```
        self, portal_name: str, iam_role_arn: str, portal_contact_email: str
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_name: The name of the portal to create.
        :param iam_role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role.
        :param portal_contact_email: The contact email of the portal.
        :return: The ID of the created portal.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_portal(
                portalName=portal_name,
                roleArn=iam_role_arn,
                portalContactEmail=portal_contact_email,
            )
            portal_id = response["portalId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("portal_active")
            waiter.wait(portalId=portal_id, WaiterConfig={"MaxAttempts": 40})
            return portal_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Portal %s already exists.", portal_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def describe_portal(self, portal_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Describes an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_id: The ID of the portal to describe.
        :return: A dictionary containing information about the portal.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.describe_portal(portalId=portal_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Error describing portal %s. Here's why %s",
                portal_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def create_gateway(self, gateway_name: str, my_thing: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_name: The name of the gateway to create.
        :param my_thing: The core device thing name.
        :return: The ID of the created gateway.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_gateway(
                gatewayName=gateway_name,
                gatewayPlatform={
                    "greengrassV2": {"coreDeviceThingName": my_thing},
                },
                tags={"Environment": "Production"},
            )
            gateway_id = response["gatewayId"]
            return gateway_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s already exists.", gateway_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def describe_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Describes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to describe.
        :return: A dictionary containing information about the gateway.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response =
self.iotsitewise_client.describe_gateway(gateway_id=gateway_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error describing gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_gateway(gateway_id=gateway_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_portal(self, portal_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_id: The ID of the portal to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_portal(portalId=portal_id)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Portal %s does not exist.", portal_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def delete_asset(self, asset_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset(assetId=asset_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_asset_model(self, asset_model_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset_model(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_model_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def wait_asset_deleted(self, asset_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Waits for an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset to be deleted.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset to wait for.
        """
        try:
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_not_exists")
            waiter.wait(assetId=asset_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error waiting for asset %s to be deleted. Here's why %s",
                asset_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Actions

`BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchPutAssetPropertyValue`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
```

```
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def batch_put_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, values: List[Dict[str, str]]
    ) -> None:
        """
        Sends data to an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The asset ID.
        :param values: A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        """
        try:
            entries = self.properties_to_values(asset_id, values)
            self.iotsitewise_client.batch_put_asset_property_value(entries=entries)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset %s does not exist.", asset_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Error sending data to asset. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

A helper function to generate the entries parameter from a values list.

```
    def properties_to_values(
        self, asset_id: str, values: list[dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> list[dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Utility function to convert a values list to the entries parameter for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        :param asset_id : The asset ID.
        :param values : A list of dictionaries containing the values in the form
                        {propertyId : property_id,
                        valueType : [stringValue|integerValue|doubleValue|
booleanValue],
                        value : the_value}.
        :return: An entries list to pass as the 'entries' parameter to
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
        """
        entries = []
        for value in values:
            epoch_ns = time.time_ns()
            self.entry_id += 1
            if value["valueType"] == "stringValue":
                property_value = {"stringValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "integerValue":
                property_value = {"integerValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "booleanValue":
                property_value = {"booleanValue": value["value"]}
            elif value["valueType"] == "doubleValue":
                property_value = {"doubleValue": value["value"]}
            else:
                raise ValueError("Invalid valueType: %s", value["valueType"])
            entry = {
                "entryId": f"{self.entry_id}",
                "assetId": asset_id,
                "propertyId": value["propertyId"],
                "propertyValues": [
```

```
                    {
                        "value": property_value,
                        "timestamp": {
                            "timeInSeconds": int(epoch_ns / 1000000000),
                            "offsetInNanos": epoch_ns % 1000000000,
                        },
                    }
                ],
            }
            entries.append(entry)
        return entries
```

Here is an example of a values list to pass to the helper function.

```
        values = [
            {
                "propertyId": humidity_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 65.0,
            },
            {
                "propertyId": temperature_property_id,
                "valueType": "doubleValue",
                "value": 23.5,
            },
        ]
```

- For API details, see BatchPutAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAsset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAsset`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
 IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_asset(self, asset_name: str, asset_model_id: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_name: The name of the asset to create.
```

```
        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to associate with the
 asset.
        :return: The ID of the created asset.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset(
                assetName=asset_name, assetModelId=asset_model_id
            )
            asset_id = response["assetId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_active")
            waiter.wait(assetId=asset_id)
            return asset_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s does not exist.", asset_model_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAsset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAssetModel`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_asset_model(
        self, asset_model_name: str, properties: List[Dict[str, Any]]
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_name: The name of the asset model to create.
        :param properties: The property definitions of the asset model.
        :return: The ID of the created asset model.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_asset_model(
                assetModelName=asset_model_name,
                assetModelDescription="This is a sample asset model description.",
                assetModelProperties=properties,
            )
            asset_model_id = response["assetModelId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("asset_model_active")
            waiter.wait(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
```

```
            return asset_model_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Asset model %s already exists.", asset_model_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                    asset_model_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

Here is an example of a properties list to pass to the function.

```
            properties = [
                {
                    "name": temperature_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
                {
                    "name": humidity_property_name,
                    "dataType": "DOUBLE",
                    "type": {
                        "measurement": {},
                    },
                },
            ]
```

- For API details, see CreateAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGateway`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
 IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_gateway(self, gateway_name: str, my_thing: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_name: The name of the gateway to create.
        :param my_thing: The core device thing name.
```

```
        :return: The ID of the created gateway.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_gateway(
                gatewayName=gateway_name,
                gatewayPlatform={
                    "greengrassV2": {"coreDeviceThingName": my_thing},
                },
                tags={"Environment": "Production"},
            )
            gateway_id = response["gatewayId"]
            return gateway_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s already exists.", gateway_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateGateway in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreatePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePortal`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_portal(
        self, portal_name: str, iam_role_arn: str, portal_contact_email: str
    ) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_name: The name of the portal to create.
        :param iam_role_arn: The ARN of an IAM role.
        :param portal_contact_email: The contact email of the portal.
        :return: The ID of the created portal.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_portal(
                portalName=portal_name,
                roleArn=iam_role_arn,
                portalContactEmail=portal_contact_email,
            )
            portal_id = response["portalId"]
            waiter = self.iotsitewise_client.get_waiter("portal_active")
```

```
            waiter.wait(portalId=portal_id, WaiterConfig={"MaxAttempts": 40})
            return portal_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Portal %s already exists.", portal_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreatePortal in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAsset`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAsset`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
```

```
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_asset(self, asset_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset(assetId=asset_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAsset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAssetModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAssetModel`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
 IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_asset_model(self, asset_model_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Model.

        :param asset_model_id: The ID of the asset model to delete.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_asset_model(assetModelId=asset_model_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error deleting asset model %s. Here's why %s",
                asset_model_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAssetModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteGateway`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_gateway(gatewayId=gateway_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteGateway in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeletePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePortal`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
 IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def delete_portal(self, portal_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an AWS IoT SiteWise Portal.

        :param portal_id: The ID of the portal to delete.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.iotsitewise_client.delete_portal(portalId=portal_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Portal %s does not exist.", portal_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error deleting portal %s. Here's why %s",
                    portal_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePortal in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeGateway`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeGateway`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
```

```
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def describe_gateway(self, gateway_id: str) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Describes an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.

        :param gateway_id: The ID of the gateway to describe.
        :return: A dictionary containing information about the gateway.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.iotsitewise_client.describe_gateway(gatewayId=gateway_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s does not exist.", gateway_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error describing gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeGateway in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribePortal`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePortal`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                   access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
 IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def create_gateway(self, gateway_name: str, my_thing: str) -> str:
        """
        Creates an AWS IoT SiteWise Gateway.
```

```
        :param gateway_name: The name of the gateway to create.
        :param my_thing: The core device thing name.
        :return: The ID of the created gateway.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.create_gateway(
                gatewayName=gateway_name,
                gatewayPlatform={
                    "greengrassV2": {"coreDeviceThingName": my_thing},
                },
                tags={"Environment": "Production"},
            )
            gateway_id = response["gatewayId"]
            return gateway_id
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceAlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error("Gateway %s already exists.", gateway_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error creating gateway %s. Here's why %s",
                    gateway_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribePortal in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAssetPropertyValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAssetPropertyValue`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                                access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
 client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
 IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def get_asset_property_value(
        self, asset_id: str, property_id: str
    ) -> Dict[str, Any]:
        """
        Gets the value of an AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Property.

        :param asset_id: The ID of the asset.
        :param property_id: The ID of the property.
        :return: A dictionary containing the value of the property.
        """
        try:
            response = self.iotsitewise_client.get_asset_property_value(
                assetId=asset_id, propertyId=property_id
            )
            return response["propertyValue"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error(
                    "Asset %s or property %s does not exist.", asset_id, property_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Error getting asset property value. Here's why %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetAssetPropertyValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAssetModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAssetModels`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class IoTSitewiseWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS IoT SiteWise actions using the client interface."""

    def __init__(self, iotsitewise_client: client) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the IoTSitewiseWrapper with an AWS IoT SiteWise client.

        :param iotsitewise_client: A Boto3 AWS IoT SiteWise client. This client
 provides low-level
                            access to AWS IoT SiteWise services.
        """
        self.iotsitewise_client = iotsitewise_client
        self.entry_id = 0 # Incremented to generate unique entry IDs for
 batch_put_asset_property_value.
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "IoTSitewiseWrapper":
        """
        Creates an IoTSitewiseWrapper instance with a default AWS IoT SiteWise
client.

        :return: An instance of IoTSitewiseWrapper initialized with the default AWS
IoT SiteWise client.
        """
        iotsitewise_client = boto3.client("iotsitewise")
        return cls(iotsitewise_client)


    def list_asset_models(self) -> List[Dict[str, Any]]:
        """
        Lists all AWS IoT SiteWise Asset Models.

        :return: A list of dictionaries containing information about each asset
model.

        """
        try:
            asset_models = []
            paginator = self.iotsitewise_client.get_paginator("list_asset_models")
            pages = paginator.paginate()
            for page in pages:
                asset_models.extend(page["assetModelSummaries"])
            return asset_models
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Error listing asset models. Here's why %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListAssetModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Keyspaces examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Keyspaces.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Keyspaces

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Keyspaces.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_keyspaces(keyspaces_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache
 Cassandra)
    client and list the keyspaces in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces Client object. This object
 wraps
                             the low-level Amazon Keyspaces service API.
```

```
    """
    print("Hello, Amazon Keyspaces! Let's list some of your keyspaces:\n")
    for ks in keyspaces_client.list_keyspaces(maxResults=5).get("keyspaces", []):
        print(ks["keyspaceName"])
        print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_keyspaces(boto3.client("keyspaces"))
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a keyspace and table. The table schema holds movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
- Connect to the keyspace using a secure TLS connection with SigV4 authentication.
- Query the table. Add, retrieve, and update movie data.
- Update the table. Add a column to track watched movies.
- Restore the table to its previous state and clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class KeyspaceScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon
 Keyspaces."""

    def __init__(self, ks_wrapper):
        """
        :param ks_wrapper: An object that wraps Amazon Keyspace actions.
        """
        self.ks_wrapper = ks_wrapper

    @demo_func
    def create_keyspace(self):
        """
        1. Creates a keyspace.
        2. Lists up to 10 keyspaces in your account.
        """
        print("Let's create a keyspace.")
        ks_name = q.ask(
            "Enter a name for your new keyspace.\nThe name can contain only letters,
 "
            "numbers and underscores: ",
            q.non_empty,
        )
        if self.ks_wrapper.exists_keyspace(ks_name):
            print(f"A keyspace named {ks_name} exists.")
        else:
            ks_arn = self.ks_wrapper.create_keyspace(ks_name)
            ks_exists = False
            while not ks_exists:
                wait(3)
                ks_exists = self.ks_wrapper.exists_keyspace(ks_name)
            print(f"Created a new keyspace.\n\t{ks_arn}.")
        print("The first 10 keyspaces in your account are:\n")
        self.ks_wrapper.list_keyspaces(10)

    @demo_func
    def create_table(self):
        """
        1. Creates a table in the keyspace. The table is configured with a schema to
 hold
           movie data and has point-in-time recovery enabled.
        2. Waits for the table to be in an active state.
```

```
        3. Displays schema information for the table.
        4. Lists tables in the keyspace.
        """
        print("Let's create a table for movies in your keyspace.")
        table_name = q.ask("Enter a name for your table: ", q.non_empty)
        table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
        if table is not None:
            print(
                f"A table named {table_name} already exists in keyspace "
                f"{self.ks_wrapper.ks_name}."
            )
        else:
            table_arn = self.ks_wrapper.create_table(table_name)
            print(f"Created table {table_name}:\n\t{table_arn}")
            table = {"status": None}
            print("Waiting for your table to be ready...")
            while table["status"] != "ACTIVE":
                wait(5)
                table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
        print(f"Your table is {table['status']}. Its schema is:")
        pp(table["schemaDefinition"])
        print("\nThe tables in your keyspace are:\n")
        self.ks_wrapper.list_tables()

    @demo_func
    def ensure_tls_cert(self):
        """
        Ensures you have a TLS certificate available to use to secure the connection
        to the keyspace. This function downloads a default certificate or lets you
        specify your own.
        """
        print("To connect to your keyspace, you must have a TLS certificate.")
        print("Checking for TLS certificate...")
        cert_path = os.path.join(
            os.path.dirname(__file__), QueryManager.DEFAULT_CERT_FILE
        )
        if not os.path.exists(cert_path):
            cert_choice = q.ask(
                f"Press enter to download a certificate from {QueryManager.CERT_URL}
"
                f"or enter the full path to the certificate you want to use: "
            )
            if cert_choice:
                cert_path = cert_choice
```

```
            else:
                cert = requests.get(QueryManager.CERT_URL).text
                with open(cert_path, "w") as cert_file:
                    cert_file.write(cert)
        else:
            q.ask(f"Certificate {cert_path} found. Press Enter to continue.")
        print(
            f"Certificate {cert_path} will be used to secure the connection to your
keyspace."
        )
        return cert_path

    @demo_func
    def query_table(self, qm, movie_file):
        """
        1. Adds movies to the table from a sample movie data file.
        2. Gets a list of movies from the table and lets you select one.
        3. Displays more information about the selected movie.
        """
        qm.add_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name, movie_file)
        movies = qm.get_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name)
        print(f"Added {len(movies)} movies to the table:")
        sel = q.choose("Pick one to learn more about it: ", [m.title for m in
movies])
        movie_choice = qm.get_movie(
            self.ks_wrapper.table_name, movies[sel].title, movies[sel].year
        )
        print(movie_choice.title)
        print(f"\tReleased: {movie_choice.release_date}")
        print(f"\tPlot: {movie_choice.plot}")

    @demo_func
    def update_and_restore_table(self, qm):
        """
        1. Updates the table by adding a column to track watched movies.
        2. Marks some of the movies as watched.
        3. Gets the list of watched movies from the table.
        4. Restores to a movies_restored table at a previous point in time.
        5. Gets the list of movies from the restored table.
        """
        print("Let's add a column to record which movies you've watched.")
        pre_update_timestamp = datetime.utcnow()
        print(
```

```
            f"Recorded the current UTC time of {pre_update_timestamp} so we can
 restore the table later."
        )
        self.ks_wrapper.update_table()
        print("Waiting for your table to update...")
        table = {"status": "UPDATING"}
        while table["status"] != "ACTIVE":
            wait(5)
            table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(self.ks_wrapper.table_name)
        print("Column 'watched' added to table.")
        q.ask(
            "Let's mark some of the movies as watched. Press Enter when you're
 ready.\n"
        )
        movies = qm.get_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name)
        for movie in movies[:10]:
            qm.watched_movie(self.ks_wrapper.table_name, movie.title, movie.year)
            print(f"Marked {movie.title} as watched.")
        movies = qm.get_movies(self.ks_wrapper.table_name, watched=True)
        print("-" * 88)
        print("The watched movies in our table are:\n")
        for movie in movies:
            print(movie.title)
        print("-" * 88)
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to restore the table to the way it was before all of these
\n"
            "updates? Keep in mind, this can take up to 20 minutes. (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            starting_table_name = self.ks_wrapper.table_name
            table_name_restored =
 self.ks_wrapper.restore_table(pre_update_timestamp)
            table = {"status": "RESTORING"}
            while table["status"] != "ACTIVE":
                wait(10)
                table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name_restored)
            print(
                f"Restored {starting_table_name} to {table_name_restored} "
                f"at a point in time of {pre_update_timestamp}."
            )
            movies = qm.get_movies(table_name_restored)
            print("Now the movies in our table are:")
            for movie in movies:
```

```
                print(movie.title)

    def cleanup(self, cert_path):
        """
        1. Deletes the table and waits for it to be removed.
        2. Deletes the keyspace.

        :param cert_path: The path of the TLS certificate used in the demo. If the
                          certificate was downloaded during the demo, it is removed.
        """
        if q.ask(
            f"Do you want to delete your {self.ks_wrapper.table_name} table and "
            f"{self.ks_wrapper.ks_name} keyspace? (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            table_name = self.ks_wrapper.table_name
            self.ks_wrapper.delete_table()
            table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
            print("Waiting for the table to be deleted.")
            while table is not None:
                wait(5)
                table = self.ks_wrapper.get_table(table_name)
            print("Table deleted.")
            self.ks_wrapper.delete_keyspace()
            print(
                "Keyspace deleted. If you chose to restore your table during the "
                "demo, the original table is also deleted."
            )
            if cert_path == os.path.join(
                os.path.dirname(__file__), QueryManager.DEFAULT_CERT_FILE
            ) and os.path.exists(cert_path):
                os.remove(cert_path)
                print("Removed certificate that was downloaded for this demo.")

    def run_scenario(self):
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) demo.")
        print("-" * 88)

        self.create_keyspace()
        self.create_table()
        cert_file_path = self.ensure_tls_cert()
```

```
        # Use a context manager to ensure the connection to the keyspace is closed.
        with QueryManager(
            cert_file_path, boto3.DEFAULT_SESSION, self.ks_wrapper.ks_name
        ) as qm:
            self.query_table(qm, "../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json")
            self.update_and_restore_table(qm)
        self.cleanup(cert_file_path)

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = KeyspaceScenario(KeyspaceWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps keyspace and table actions.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def create_keyspace(self, name):
        """
```

```
        Creates a keyspace.

        :param name: The name to give the keyspace.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = name
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.ks_arn


    def exists_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Checks whether a keyspace exists.

        :param name: The name of the keyspace to look up.
        :return: True when the keyspace exists. Otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = response["keyspaceName"]
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Keyspace %s does not exist.", name)
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

```
            raise
        return exists


    def list_keyspaces(self, limit):
        """
        Lists the keyspaces in your account.

        :param limit: The maximum number of keyspaces to list.
        """
        try:
            ks_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_keyspaces")
            for page in ks_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": limit}):
                for ks in page["keyspaces"]:
                    print(ks["keyspaceName"])
                    print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list keyspaces. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates a table in the  keyspace.
        The table is created with a schema for storing movie data
        and has point-in-time recovery enabled.

        :param table_name: The name to give the table.
        :return: The ARN of the new table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=table_name,
                schemaDefinition={
                    "allColumns": [
                        {"name": "title", "type": "text"},
                        {"name": "year", "type": "int"},
                        {"name": "release_date", "type": "timestamp"},
                        {"name": "plot", "type": "text"},
```

```
                    ],
                    "partitionKeys": [{"name": "year"}, {"name": "title"}],
                },
                pointInTimeRecovery={"status": "ENABLED"},
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["resourceArn"]


    def get_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Gets data about a table in the keyspace.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to look up.
        :return: Data about the table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=table_name
            )
            self.table_name = table_name
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Table %s does not exist.", table_name)
                self.table_name = None
                response = None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response
```

```
    def list_tables(self):
        """
        Lists the tables in the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            table_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_tables")
            for page in table_paginator.paginate(keyspaceName=self.ks_name):
                for table in page["tables"]:
                    print(table["tableName"])
                    print(f"\t{table['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables in keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def update_table(self):
        """
        Updates the schema of the table.

        This example updates a table of movie data by adding a new column
        that tracks whether the movie has been watched.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.update_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=self.table_name,
                addColumns=[{"name": "watched", "type": "boolean"}],
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def restore_table(self, restore_timestamp):
        """
        Restores the table to a previous point in time. The table is restored
        to a new table in the same keyspace.

        :param restore_timestamp: The point in time to restore the table. This time
                                  must be in UTC format.
        :return: The name of the restored table.
        """
        try:
            restored_table_name = f"{self.table_name}_restored"
            self.keyspaces_client.restore_table(
                sourceKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                sourceTableName=self.table_name,
                targetKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                targetTableName=restored_table_name,
                restoreTimestamp=restore_timestamp,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't restore table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                restore_timestamp,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return restored_table_name


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table from the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=self.table_name
            )
            self.table_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_keyspace(self):
        """
        Deletes the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_keyspace(keyspaceName=self.ks_name)
            self.ks_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Define a class that creates a TLS connection to a keyspace, authenticates with SigV4, and sends CQL queries to a table in the keyspace.

```
class QueryManager:
    """
    Manages queries to an Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace.
    Queries are secured by TLS and authenticated by using the Signature V4 (SigV4)
    AWS signing protocol. This is more secure than sending username and password
    with a plain-text authentication provider.

    This example downloads a default certificate to secure TLS, or lets you specify
    your own.

    This example uses a table of movie data to demonstrate basic queries.
    """

    DEFAULT_CERT_FILE = "sf-class2-root.crt"
    CERT_URL = f"https://certs.secureserver.net/repository/sf-class2-root.crt"
```

```
    def __init__(self, cert_file_path, boto_session, keyspace_name):
        """
        :param cert_file_path: The path and file name of the certificate used for
TLS.
        :param boto_session: A Boto3 session. This is used to acquire your AWS
credentials.
        :param keyspace_name: The name of the keyspace to connect.
        """
        self.cert_file_path = cert_file_path
        self.boto_session = boto_session
        self.ks_name = keyspace_name
        self.cluster = None
        self.session = None

    def __enter__(self):
        """
        Creates a session connection to the keyspace that is secured by TLS and
        authenticated by SigV4.
        """
        ssl_context = SSLContext(PROTOCOL_TLSv1_2)
        ssl_context.load_verify_locations(self.cert_file_path)
        ssl_context.verify_mode = CERT_REQUIRED
        auth_provider = SigV4AuthProvider(self.boto_session)
        contact_point = f"cassandra.{self.boto_session.region_name}.amazonaws.com"
        exec_profile = ExecutionProfile(
            consistency_level=ConsistencyLevel.LOCAL_QUORUM,
            load_balancing_policy=DCAwareRoundRobinPolicy(),
        )
        self.cluster = Cluster(
            [contact_point],
            ssl_context=ssl_context,
            auth_provider=auth_provider,
            port=9142,
            execution_profiles={EXEC_PROFILE_DEFAULT: exec_profile},
            protocol_version=4,
        )
        self.cluster.__enter__()
        self.session = self.cluster.connect(self.ks_name)
        return self

    def __exit__(self, *args):
        """
        Exits the cluster. This shuts down all existing session connections.
```

```
        """
        self.cluster.__exit__(*args)

    def add_movies(self, table_name, movie_file_path):
        """
        Gets movies from a JSON file and adds them to a table in the keyspace.

        :param table_name: The name of the table.
        :param movie_file_path: The path and file name of a JSON file that contains
 movie data.
        """
        with open(movie_file_path, "r") as movie_file:
            movies = json.loads(movie_file.read())
        stmt = self.session.prepare(
            f"INSERT INTO {table_name} (year, title, release_date, plot) VALUES
 (?, ?, ?, ?);"
        )
        for movie in movies[:20]:
            self.session.execute(
                stmt,
                parameters=[
                    movie["year"],
                    movie["title"],
                    date.fromisoformat(movie["info"]["release_date"].partition("T")
[0]),
                    movie["info"]["plot"],
                ],
            )

    def get_movies(self, table_name, watched=None):
        """
        Gets the title and year of the full list of movies from the table.

        :param table_name: The name of the movie table.
        :param watched: When specified, the returned list of movies is filtered to
                        either movies that have been watched or movies that have not
                        been watched. Otherwise, all movies are returned.
        :return: A list of movies in the table.
        """
        if watched is None:
            stmt = SimpleStatement(f"SELECT title, year from {table_name}")
            params = None
        else:
            stmt = SimpleStatement(
```

```
                f"SELECT title, year from {table_name} WHERE watched = %s ALLOW
FILTERING"
            )
            params = [watched]
        return self.session.execute(stmt, parameters=params).all()

    def get_movie(self, table_name, title, year):
        """
        Gets a single movie from the table, by title and year.

        :param table_name: The name of the movie table.
        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The year of the movie's release.
        :return: The requested movie.
        """
        return self.session.execute(
            SimpleStatement(
                f"SELECT * from {table_name} WHERE title = %s AND year = %s"
            ),
            parameters=[title, year],
        ).one()

    def watched_movie(self, table_name, title, year):
        """
        Updates a movie as having been watched.

        :param table_name: The name of the movie table.
        :param title: The title of the movie.
        :param year: The year of the movie's release.
        """
        self.session.execute(
            SimpleStatement(
                f"UPDATE {table_name} SET watched=true WHERE title = %s AND year =
%s"
            ),
            parameters=[title, year],
        )
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateKeyspace

- CreateTable
- DeleteKeyspace
- DeleteTable
- GetKeyspace
- GetTable
- ListKeyspaces
- ListTables
- RestoreTable
- UpdateTable

Actions

`CreateKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyspace`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def create_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Creates a keyspace.

        :param name: The name to give the keyspace.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the new keyspace.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = name
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return self.ks_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def create_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Creates a table in the  keyspace.
        The table is created with a schema for storing movie data
        and has point-in-time recovery enabled.

        :param table_name: The name to give the table.
        :return: The ARN of the new table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.create_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=table_name,
                schemaDefinition={
                    "allColumns": [
                        {"name": "title", "type": "text"},
                        {"name": "year", "type": "int"},
                        {"name": "release_date", "type": "timestamp"},
                        {"name": "plot", "type": "text"},
                    ],
                    "partitionKeys": [{"name": "year"}, {"name": "title"}],
                },
                pointInTimeRecovery={"status": "ENABLED"},
            )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["resourceArn"]
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteKeyspace`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyspace`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def delete_keyspace(self):
        """
        Deletes the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_keyspace(keyspaceName=self.ks_name)
            self.ks_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def delete_table(self):
        """
        Deletes the table from the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.delete_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=self.table_name
            )
            self.table_name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetKeyspace

The following code example shows how to use `GetKeyspace`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def exists_keyspace(self, name):
        """
        Checks whether a keyspace exists.

        :param name: The name of the keyspace to look up.
        :return: True when the keyspace exists. Otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_keyspace(keyspaceName=name)
            self.ks_name = response["keyspaceName"]
            self.ks_arn = response["resourceArn"]
            exists = True
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Keyspace %s does not exist.", name)
```

```
                exists = False
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return exists
```

- For API details, see GetKeyspace in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetTable`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def get_table(self, table_name):
        """
        Gets data about a table in the keyspace.

        :param table_name: The name of the table to look up.
        :return: Data about the table.
        """
        try:
            response = self.keyspaces_client.get_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name, tableName=table_name
            )
            self.table_name = table_name
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Table %s does not exist.", table_name)
                self.table_name = None
                response = None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify %s exists. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    table_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListKeyspaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyspaces`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def list_keyspaces(self, limit):
        """
        Lists the keyspaces in your account.

        :param limit: The maximum number of keyspaces to list.
        """
        try:
            ks_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_keyspaces")
            for page in ks_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": limit}):
                for ks in page["keyspaces"]:
                    print(ks["keyspaceName"])
                    print(f"\t{ks['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list keyspaces. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListKeyspaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def list_tables(self):
```

```
        """
        Lists the tables in the keyspace.
        """
        try:
            table_paginator = self.keyspaces_client.get_paginator("list_tables")
            for page in table_paginator.paginate(keyspaceName=self.ks_name):
                for table in page["tables"]:
                    print(table["tableName"])
                    print(f"\t{table['resourceArn']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list tables in keyspace %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.ks_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RestoreTable`

The following code example shows how to use `RestoreTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
```

```
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def restore_table(self, restore_timestamp):
        """
        Restores the table to a previous point in time. The table is restored
        to a new table in the same keyspace.

        :param restore_timestamp: The point in time to restore the table. This time
                                  must be in UTC format.
        :return: The name of the restored table.
        """
        try:
            restored_table_name = f"{self.table_name}_restored"
            self.keyspaces_client.restore_table(
                sourceKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                sourceTableName=self.table_name,
                targetKeyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                targetTableName=restored_table_name,
                restoreTimestamp=restore_timestamp,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't restore table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                restore_timestamp,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return restored_table_name
```

- For API details, see RestoreTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTable`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyspaceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Keyspaces (for Apache Cassandra) keyspace and table
 actions."""

    def __init__(self, keyspaces_client):
        """
        :param keyspaces_client: A Boto3 Amazon Keyspaces client.
        """
        self.keyspaces_client = keyspaces_client
        self.ks_name = None
        self.ks_arn = None
        self.table_name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        keyspaces_client = boto3.client("keyspaces")
        return cls(keyspaces_client)


    def update_table(self):
        """
        Updates the schema of the table.

        This example updates a table of movie data by adding a new column
        that tracks whether the movie has been watched.
        """
        try:
            self.keyspaces_client.update_table(
                keyspaceName=self.ks_name,
                tableName=self.table_name,
                addColumns=[{"name": "watched", "type": "boolean"}],
```

```
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update table %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.table_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateTable in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStream`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def create(self, name, wait_until_exists=True):
        """
        Creates a stream.

        :param name: The name of the stream.
        :param wait_until_exists: When True, waits until the service reports that
                                  the stream exists, then queries for its metadata.
        """
        try:
            self.kinesis_client.create_stream(StreamName=name, ShardCount=1)
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Created stream %s.", name)
            if wait_until_exists:
                logger.info("Waiting until exists.")
                self.stream_exists_waiter.wait(StreamName=name)
                self.describe(name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create stream %s.", name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStream`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes a stream.
        """
        try:
            self.kinesis_client.delete_stream(StreamName=self.name)
            self._clear()
            logger.info("Deleted stream %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete stream %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStream`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def describe(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata about a stream.

        :param name: The name of the stream.
        :return: Metadata about the stream.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.describe_stream(StreamName=name)
            self.name = name
            self.details = response["StreamDescription"]
            logger.info("Got stream %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s.", name)
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return self.details
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetRecords`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRecords`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def get_records(self, max_records):
        """
        Gets records from the stream. This function is a generator that first gets
        a shard iterator for the stream, then uses the shard iterator to get records
        in batches from the stream. The shard iterator can be accessed through the
        'details' property, which is populated using the 'describe' function of this
 class.
        Each batch of records is yielded back to the caller until the specified
        maximum number of records has been retrieved.
```

```
        :param max_records: The maximum number of records to retrieve.
        :return: Yields the current batch of retrieved records.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.get_shard_iterator(
                StreamName=self.name,
                ShardId=self.details["Shards"][0]["ShardId"],
                ShardIteratorType="LATEST",
            )
            shard_iter = response["ShardIterator"]
            record_count = 0
            while record_count < max_records:
                response = self.kinesis_client.get_records(
                    ShardIterator=shard_iter, Limit=10
                )
                shard_iter = response["NextShardIterator"]
                records = response["Records"]
                logger.info("Got %s records.", len(records))
                record_count += len(records)
                yield records
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get records from stream %s.", self.name)
            raise



    def describe(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata about a stream.

        :param name: The name of the stream.
        :return: Metadata about the stream.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.describe_stream(StreamName=name)
            self.name = name
            self.details = response["StreamDescription"]
            logger.info("Got stream %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.details
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecord`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisStream:
    """Encapsulates a Kinesis stream."""

    def __init__(self, kinesis_client):
        """
        :param kinesis_client: A Boto3 Kinesis client.
        """
        self.kinesis_client = kinesis_client
        self.name = None
        self.details = None
        self.stream_exists_waiter = kinesis_client.get_waiter("stream_exists")


    def put_record(self, data, partition_key):
        """
        Puts data into the stream. The data is formatted as JSON before it is passed
        to the stream.

        :param data: The data to put in the stream.
        :param partition_key: The partition key to use for the data.
        :return: Metadata about the record, including its shard ID and sequence
 number.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kinesis_client.put_record(
```

```
                StreamName=self.name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey=partition_key
            )
            logger.info("Put record in stream %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put record in stream %s.", self.name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import base64
def lambda_handler(event, context):

    for record in event['Records']:
        try:
            print(f"Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: {record['eventID']}")
            record_data = base64.b64decode(record['kinesis']
['data']).decode('utf-8')
```

```
            print(f"Record Data: {record_data}")
            # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
        except Exception as e:
            print(f"An error occurred {e}")
            raise e
    print(f"Successfully processed {len(event['Records'])} records.")
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["kinesis"]["sequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS KMS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a KMS key.
- List KMS keys for your account and get details about them.
- Enable and disable KMS keys.
- Generate a symmetric data key that can be used for client-side encryption.
- Generate an asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.
- Tag keys.
- Delete KMS keys.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KMSScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started with KMS."""

    def __init__(
        self,
        key_manager: KeyManager,
        key_encryption: KeyEncrypt,
        alias_manager: AliasManager,
        grant_manager: GrantManager,
        key_policy: KeyPolicy,
    ):
        self.key_manager = key_manager
        self.key_encryption = key_encryption
        self.alias_manager = alias_manager
        self.grant_manager = grant_manager
        self.key_policy = key_policy
        self.key_id = ""
        self.alias_name = ""
        self.asymmetric_key_id = ""

    def kms_scenario(self):
        key_description = "Created by the AWS KMS API"

        print(DASHES)
        print(
            """
Welcome to the AWS Key Management SDK Basics scenario.

This program demonstrates how to interact with AWS Key Management using the AWS SDK
 for Python (Boto3).
The AWS Key Management Service (KMS) is a secure and highly available service that
 allows you to create
and manage AWS KMS keys and control their use across a wide range of AWS services
 and applications.
KMS provides a centralized and unified approach to managing encryption keys, making
 it easier to meet your
data protection and regulatory compliance requirements.

This Basics scenario creates two key types:

- A symmetric encryption key is used to encrypt and decrypt data.
- An asymmetric key used to digitally sign data.
```

```
Let's get started...
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"1. Create a symmetric KMS key\n")
        print(
            f"First, the program will creates a symmetric KMS key that you can used
 to encrypt and decrypt data."
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.key_id = self.key_manager.create_key(key_description)["KeyId"]
        print(f"A symmetric key was successfully created {self.key_id}.")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(
            """
2. Enable a KMS key

By default, when the SDK creates an AWS key, it is enabled. The next bit of code
 checks to
determine if the key is enabled.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        is_enabled = self.is_key_enabled(self.key_id)
        print(f"Is the key enabled? {is_enabled}")
        if not is_enabled:
            self.key_manager.enable_key(self.key_id)
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"3. Encrypt data using the symmetric KMS key")
        plain_text = "Hello, AWS KMS!"
        print(
            f"""
One of the main uses of symmetric keys is to encrypt and decrypt data.
Next, the code encrypts the string "{plain_text}" with the SYMMETRIC_DEFAULT
 encryption algorithm.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        encrypted_text = self.key_encryption.encrypt(self.key_id, plain_text)
        print(DASHES)
```

```
        print(f"4. Create an alias")
        print(
            """
Now, the program will create an alias for the KMS key. An alias is a friendly name
 that you
can associate with a KMS key. The alias name should be prefixed with 'alias/'.
        """
        )
        alias_name = q.ask("Enter an alias name: ", q.non_empty)
        self.alias_manager.create_alias(self.key_id, alias_name)
        print(f"{alias_name} was successfully created.")
        self.alias_name = alias_name
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"5. List all of your aliases")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.alias_manager.list_aliases(10)
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"6. Enable automatic rotation of the KMS key")
        print(
            """

By default, when the SDK enables automatic rotation of a KMS key,
KMS rotates the key material of the KMS key one year (approximately 365 days) from
 the enable date and every year
thereafter.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.key_manager.enable_key_rotation(self.key_id)
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"Key rotation has been enabled for key with id {self.key_id}")
        print(
            """
7. Create a grant

A grant is a policy instrument that allows Amazon Web Services principals to use KMS
 keys.
It also can allow them to view a KMS key (DescribeKey) and create and manage grants.
When authorizing access to a KMS key, grants are considered along with key policies
 and IAM policies.
        """
        )
        print(
```

```
            """
To create a grant you must specify a account_id. To specify the grantee account_id,
 use the Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
of an AWS account_id. Valid principals include AWS accounts, IAM users, IAM roles,
 federated users,
and assumed role users.
        """
        )
        account_id = q.ask(
            "Enter an account_id, or press enter to skip creating a grant... "
        )
        grant = None
        if account_id != "":
            grant = self.grant_manager.create_grant(
                self.key_id,
                account_id,
                [
                    "Encrypt",
                    "Decrypt",
                    "DescribeKey",
                ],
            )
            print(f"Grant created successfully with ID: {grant['GrantId']}")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"8. List grants for the KMS key")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.grant_manager.list_grants(self.key_id)
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"9. Revoke the grant")
        print(
            """
The revocation of a grant immediately removes the permissions and access that the
 grant had provided.
This means that any account_id (user, role, or service) that was granted access to
 perform specific
KMS operations on a KMS key will no longer be able to perform those operations.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
```

```
        if grant is not None:
            self.grant_manager.revoke_grant(self.key_id, grant["GrantId"])
            print(f"Grant ID: {grant['GrantId']} was successfully revoked!")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"10. Decrypt the data\n")
        print(
            """
Lets decrypt the data that was encrypted in an early step.
The code uses the same key to decrypt the string that we encrypted earlier in the
 program.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        decrypted_data = self.key_encryption.decrypt(self.key_id, encrypted_text)
        print(f"Data decrypted successfully for key ID: {self.key_id}")
        print(f"Decrypted data: {decrypted_data}")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"11. Replace a key policy\n")
        print(
            """
A key policy is a resource policy for a KMS key. Key policies are the primary way to
 control
access to KMS keys. Every KMS key must have exactly one key policy. The statements
 in the key policy
determine who has permission to use the KMS key and how they can use it.
You can also use IAM policies and grants to control access to the KMS key, but every
 KMS key
must have a key policy.

By default, when you create a key by using the SDK, a policy is created that
gives the AWS account that owns the KMS key full access to the KMS key.

Let's try to replace the automatically created policy with the following policy.
{
"Version": "2012-10-17",
"Statement": [{
"Effect": "Allow",
"Principal": {"AWS": "arn:aws:iam::0000000000:root"},
"Action": "kms:*",
"Resource": "*"
```

```
}]
}
        """
        )
        account_id = q.ask("Enter your account ID or press enter to skip: ")
        if account_id != "":
            policy = {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {"AWS": f"arn:aws:iam::{account_id}:root"},
                        "Action": "kms:*",
                        "Resource": "*",
                    }
                ],
            }

            self.key_policy.set_new_policy(self.key_id, policy)
            print("Key policy replacement succeeded.")
            q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        else:
            print("Skipping replacing the key policy.")

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"12. Get the key policy\n")
        print(
            f"The next bit of code that runs gets the key policy to make sure it
 exists."
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        policy = self.key_policy.get_policy(self.key_id)
        print(f"The key policy is: {policy}")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"13. Create an asymmetric KMS key and sign your data\n")
        print(
            """
        Signing your data with an AWS key can provide several benefits that make it
 an attractive option
        for your data signing needs. By using an AWS KMS key, you can leverage the
        security controls and compliance features provided by AWS,
```

```
        which can help you meet various regulatory requirements and enhance the
overall security posture
        of your organization.
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(f"Sign and verify data operation succeeded.")
        self.asymmetric_key_id = self.key_manager.create_asymmetric_key()
        message = "Here is the message that will be digitally signed"
        signature = self.key_encryption.sign(self.asymmetric_key_id, message)
        if self.key_encryption.verify(self.asymmetric_key_id, message, signature):
            print("Signature verification succeeded.")
        else:
            print("Signature verification failed.")

        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)
        print(f"14. Tag your symmetric KMS Key\n")
        print(
            """
        By using tags, you can improve the overall management, security, and
governance of your
        KMS keys, making it easier to organize, track, and control access to your
encrypted data within
        your AWS environment
        """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        self.key_manager.tag_resource(self.key_id, "Environment", "Production")
        self.clean_up()

    def is_key_enabled(self, key_id: str) -> bool:
        """
        Check if the key is enabled or not.

        :param key_id: The key to check.
        :return: True if the key is enabled, otherwise False.
        """
        response = self.key_manager.describe_key(key_id)
        return response["Enabled"] is True

    def clean_up(self):
        """
        Delete resources created by this scenario.
```

```
        """
        if self.alias_name != "":
            print(f"Deleting the alias {self.alias_name}.")
            self.alias_manager.delete_alias(self.alias_name)
        window = 7  # The window in days for a scheduled deletion.
        if self.key_id != "":
            print(
                """
Warning:
Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation. When a KMS
 key is deleted,
all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.
                """
            )
            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to delete the key with ID {self.key_id} (y/n)?",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print(
                    f"The key {self.key_id} will be deleted with a window of
 {window} days. You can cancel the deletion before"
                )
                print("the window expires.")
                self.key_manager.delete_key(self.key_id, window)
                self.key_id = ""

        if self.asymmetric_key_id != "":
            if q.ask(
                f"Do you want to delete the asymmetric key with ID
 {self.asymmetric_key_id} (y/n)?",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print(
                    f"The key {self.asymmetric_key_id} will be deleted with a window
 of {window} days. You can cancel the deletion before"
                )
                print("the window expires.")
                self.key_manager.delete_key(self.asymmetric_key_id, window)
                self.asymmetric_key_id = ""


if __name__ == "__main__":
    kms_scenario = None
    try:
```

```
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        a_key_manager = KeyManager(kms_client)
        a_key_encrypt = KeyEncrypt(kms_client)
        an_alias_manager = AliasManager(kms_client)
        a_grant_manager = GrantManager(kms_client)
        a_key_policy = KeyPolicy(kms_client)
        kms_scenario = KMSScenario(
            key_manager=a_key_manager,
            key_encryption=a_key_encrypt,
            alias_manager=an_alias_manager,
            grant_manager=a_grant_manager,
            key_policy=a_key_policy,
        )
        kms_scenario.kms_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
        if kms_scenario is not None:
            kms_scenario.clean_up()
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key management.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_key(self, key_description: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates a key with a user-provided description.
```

```
        :param key_description: A description for the key.
        :return: The key ID.
        """
        try:
            key = self.kms_client.create_key(Description=key_description)
["KeyMetadata"]
            self.created_keys.append(key)
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create your key. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_key(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to describe.
        :return: Information about the key.
        """

        try:
            key = self.kms_client.describe_key(KeyId=key_id)["KeyMetadata"]
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def enable_key_rotation(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Enables rotation for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.enable_key_rotation(KeyId=key_id)
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't enable rotation for key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def create_asymmetric_key(self) -> str:
        """
        Creates an asymmetric key in AWS KMS for signing messages.

        :return: The ID of the created key.
        """
        try:
            key = self.kms_client.create_key(
                KeySpec="RSA_2048", KeyUsage="SIGN_VERIFY", Origin="AWS_KMS"
            )["KeyMetadata"]
            self.created_keys.append(key)
            return key["KeyId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create your key. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def tag_resource(self, key_id: str, tag_key: str, tag_value: str) -> None:
        """
        Add or edit tags on a customer managed key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        :param tag_key: Key for the tag.
        :param tag_value: Value for the tag.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.tag_resource(
                KeyId=key_id, Tags=[{"TagKey": tag_key, "TagValue": tag_value}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't add a tag for the key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
```

```
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_key(self, key_id: str, window: int) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a list of keys.

        Warning:
        Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation.
 When a KMS key is deleted,
        all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to delete.
        :param window: The waiting period, in days, before the KMS key is deleted.
        """

        try:
            self.kms_client.schedule_key_deletion(
                KeyId=key_id, PendingWindowInDays=window
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key aliases.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
```

```
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_alias(self, key_id: str, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an alias for the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of a key to give an alias.
        :param alias: The alias to assign to the key.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.create_alias(AliasName=alias, TargetKeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not create the alias %s because it already exists.",
key_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def list_aliases(self, page_size: int) -> None:
        """
        Lists aliases for the current account.
        :param page_size: The number of aliases to list per page.
        """
        try:
            alias_paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_aliases")
            for alias_page in alias_paginator.paginate(
                PaginationConfig={"PageSize": page_size}
            ):
                print(f"Here are {page_size} aliases:")
                pprint(alias_page["Aliases"])
```

```
                if alias_page["Truncated"]:
                    answer = input(
                        f"Do you want to see the next {page_size} aliases (y/n)? "
                    )
                    if answer.lower() != "y":
                        break
                else:
                    print("That's all your aliases!")
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your aliases. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_alias(self, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an alias.

        :param alias: The alias to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.delete_alias(AliasName=alias)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete alias %s. Here's why: %s",
                alias,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key encryption.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
```

```
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def encrypt(self, key_id: str, text: str) -> bytes:
        """
        Encrypts text by using the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for encryption.
        :param text: The text to encrypt.
        :return: The encrypted version of the text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.encrypt(KeyId=key_id,
Plaintext=text.encode())
            print(
                f"The string was encrypted with algorithm
{response['EncryptionAlgorithm']}"
            )
            return response["CiphertextBlob"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DisabledException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not encrypt because the key %s is disabled.", key_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise


    def decrypt(self, key_id: str, cipher_text: bytes) -> str:
        """
        Decrypts text previously encrypted with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to decrypt the data.
        :param cipher_text: The encrypted text to decrypt.
```

```
        :return: The decrypted text.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.decrypt(KeyId=key_id, CiphertextBlob=cipher_text)
[
                "Plaintext"
            ].decode()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't decrypt your ciphertext. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def sign(self, key_id: str, message: str) -> str:
        """
        Signs a message with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for signing.
        :param message: The message to sign.
        :return: The signature of the message.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.sign(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )["Signature"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't sign your message. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def verify(self, key_id: str, message: str, signature: str) -> bool:
        """
        Verifies a signature against a message.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to sign the message.
        :param message: The message to verify.
        :param signature: The signature to verify.
```

```
        :return: True when the signature matches the message, otherwise False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.verify(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                Signature=signature,
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )
            valid = response["SignatureValid"]
            print(f"The signature is {'valid' if valid else 'invalid'}.")
            return valid
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SignatureDoesNotMatchException":
                print("The signature is not valid.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify your signature. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key grants.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_grant(
```

```
        self, key_id: str, principal: str, operations: [str]
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Creates a grant for a key that lets a principal generate a symmetric data
        encryption key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key.
        :param principal: The principal to grant permission to.
        :param operations: The operations to grant permission for.
        :return: The grant that is created.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.create_grant(
                KeyId=key_id,
                GranteePrincipal=principal,
                Operations=operations,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create a grant on key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_grants(self, key_id):
        """
        Lists grants for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The grants for the key.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_grants")
            grants = []
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(KeyId=key_id)
            for page in page_iterator:
                grants.extend(page["Grants"])

            print(f"Grants for key {key_id}:")
            pprint(grants)
            return grants
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list grants for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def revoke_grant(self, key_id: str, grant_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Revokes a grant so that it can no longer be used.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key associated with the grant.
        :param grant_id: The ID of the grant to revoke.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.revoke_grant(KeyId=key_id, GrantId=grant_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't revoke grant %s. Here's why: %s",
                grant_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Wrapper class and methods for KMS key policies.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)
```

```
    def set_new_policy(self, key_id: str, policy: dict[str, any]) -> None:
        """
        Sets the policy of a key. Setting a policy entirely overwrites the existing
        policy, so care is taken to add a statement to the existing list of
statements
        rather than simply writing a new policy.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to set the policy to.
        :param policy: A new key policy. The key policy must allow the calling
principal to make a subsequent
                       PutKeyPolicy request on the KMS key. This reduces the risk
that the KMS key becomes unmanageable
        """

        try:
            self.kms_client.put_key_policy(KeyId=key_id, Policy=json.dumps(policy))
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't set policy for key %s. Here's why %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise



    def get_policy(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Gets the policy of a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The key policy as a dict.
        """
        if key_id != "":
            try:
                response = self.kms_client.get_key_policy(
                    KeyId=key_id,
                )
                policy = json.loads(response["Policy"])
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get policy for key %s. Here's why: %s",
```

```
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            else:
                pprint(policy)
                return policy
        else:
            print("Skipping get policy demo.")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateAlias
  - CreateGrant
  - CreateKey
  - Decrypt
  - DescribeKey
  - DisableKey
  - EnableKey
  - Encrypt
  - GetKeyPolicy
  - ListAliases
  - ListGrants
  - ListKeys
  - RevokeGrant
  - ScheduleKeyDeletion
  - Sign
  - TagResource

Actions

`CreateAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_alias(self, key_id: str, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an alias for the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of a key to give an alias.
        :param alias: The alias to assign to the key.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.create_alias(AliasName=alias, TargetKeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                logger.error(
                    "Could not create the alias %s because it already exists.",
 key_id
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see CreateAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGrant`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_grant(
        self, key_id: str, principal: str, operations: [str]
    ) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
```

```
        Creates a grant for a key that lets a principal generate a symmetric data
        encryption key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key.
        :param principal: The principal to grant permission to.
        :param operations: The operations to grant permission for.
        :return: The grant that is created.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.create_grant(
                KeyId=key_id,
                GranteePrincipal=principal,
                Operations=operations,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create a grant on key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateGrant in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
```

```
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def create_key(self, key_description: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates a key with a user-provided description.

        :param key_description: A description for the key.
        :return: The key ID.
        """
        try:
            key = self.kms_client.create_key(Description=key_description)
["KeyMetadata"]
            self.created_keys.append(key)
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create your key. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Decrypt

The following code example shows how to use `Decrypt`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def decrypt(self, key_id: str, cipher_text: bytes) -> str:
        """
        Decrypts text previously encrypted with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to decrypt the data.
        :param cipher_text: The encrypted text to decrypt.
        :return: The decrypted text.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.decrypt(KeyId=key_id, CiphertextBlob=cipher_text)
[
                "Plaintext"
            ].decode()
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't decrypt your ciphertext. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def delete_alias(self, alias: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes an alias.

        :param alias: The alias to delete.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.kms_client.delete_alias(AliasName=alias)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete alias %s. Here's why: %s",
                alias,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)
```

```
    def describe_key(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Describes a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to describe.
        :return: Information about the key.
        """

        try:
            key = self.kms_client.describe_key(KeyId=key_id)["KeyMetadata"]
            return key
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def disable_key(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        try:
            self.kms_client.disable_key(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't disable key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DisableKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`EnableKey`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def enable_key(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Enables a key. Gets the key state after each state change.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.enable_key(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't enable key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`EnableKeyRotation`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableKeyRotation`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def enable_key_rotation(self, key_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Enables rotation for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.enable_key_rotation(KeyId=key_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't enable rotation for key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see EnableKeyRotation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Encrypt

The following code example shows how to use `Encrypt`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def encrypt(self, key_id: str, text: str) -> bytes:
        """
        Encrypts text by using the specified key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for encryption.
        :param text: The text to encrypt.
        :return: The encrypted version of the text.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.encrypt(KeyId=key_id,
 Plaintext=text.encode())
            print(
                f"The string was encrypted with algorithm
 {response['EncryptionAlgorithm']}"
            )
            return response["CiphertextBlob"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DisabledException":
                logger.error(
```

```
                "Could not encrypt because the key %s is disabled.", key_id
            )
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't encrypt text. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
        raise
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GenerateDataKey`

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateDataKey`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def generate_data_key(self, key_id):
```

```
        """
        Generates a symmetric data key that can be used for client-side encryption.
        """
        answer = input(
            f"Do you want to generate a symmetric data key from key {key_id} (y/n)?
 "
        )
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            try:
                data_key = self.kms_client.generate_data_key(
                    KeyId=key_id, KeySpec="AES_256"
                )
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't generate a data key for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                pprint(data_key)
```

- For API details, see GenerateDataKey in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetKeyPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetKeyPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def get_policy(self, key_id: str) -> dict[str, str]:
        """
        Gets the policy of a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The key policy as a dict.
        """
        if key_id != "":
            try:
                response = self.kms_client.get_key_policy(
                    KeyId=key_id,
                )
                policy = json.loads(response["Policy"])
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get policy for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            else:
                pprint(policy)
                return policy
        else:
            print("Skipping get policy demo.")
```

- For API details, see GetKeyPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAliases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_aliases(self, page_size: int) -> None:
        """
        Lists aliases for the current account.
        :param page_size: The number of aliases to list per page.
        """
        try:
            alias_paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_aliases")
            for alias_page in alias_paginator.paginate(
                PaginationConfig={"PageSize": page_size}
            ):
                print(f"Here are {page_size} aliases:")
                pprint(alias_page["Aliases"])
                if alias_page["Truncated"]:
                    answer = input(
                        f"Do you want to see the next {page_size} aliases (y/n)? "
                    )
                    if answer.lower() != "y":
```

```
                        break
                else:
                    print("That's all your aliases!")
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your aliases. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListAliases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListGrants`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGrants`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)
```

```
    def list_grants(self, key_id):
        """
        Lists grants for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        :return: The grants for the key.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_grants")
            grants = []
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(KeyId=key_id)
            for page in page_iterator:
                grants.extend(page["Grants"])

            print(f"Grants for key {key_id}:")
            pprint(grants)
            return grants
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list grants for key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListGrants in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListKeyPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeyPolicies`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPolicy:
```

```
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_policies(self, key_id):
        """
        Lists the names of the policies for a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to query.
        """
        try:
            policy_names = self.kms_client.list_key_policies(KeyId=key_id)[
                "PolicyNames"
            ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your policies. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            print(f"The policies for key {key_id} are:")
            pprint(policy_names)
```

- For API details, see ListKeyPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ListKeys

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def list_keys(self):
        """
        Lists the keys for the current account by using a paginator.
        """
        try:
            page_size = 10
            print("\nLet's list your keys.")
            key_paginator = self.kms_client.get_paginator("list_keys")
            for key_page in key_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"PageSize":
 10}):
                print(f"Here are {len(key_page['Keys'])} keys:")
                pprint(key_page["Keys"])
                if key_page["Truncated"]:
                    answer = input(
                        f"Do you want to see the next {page_size} keys (y/n)? "
                    )
                    if answer.lower() != "y":
                        break
```

```
                else:
                    print("That's all your keys!")
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list your keys. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutKeyPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutKeyPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyPolicy:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyPolicy":
        """
        Creates a KeyPolicy instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyPolicy initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def set_policy(self, key_id: str, policy: dict[str, any]) -> None:
        """
        Sets the policy of a key. Setting a policy entirely overwrites the existing
```

```
        policy, so care is taken to add a statement to the existing list of
statements
        rather than simply writing a new policy.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to set the policy to.
        :param policy: The existing policy of the key.
        :return: None
        """
        principal = input(
            "Enter the ARN of an IAM role to set as the principal on the policy: "
        )
        if key_id != "" and principal != "":
            # The updated policy replaces the existing policy. Add a new statement
to
            # the list along with the original policy statements.
            policy["Statement"].append(
                {
                    "Sid": "Allow access for ExampleRole",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"AWS": principal},
                    "Action": [
                        "kms:Encrypt",
                        "kms:GenerateDataKey*",
                        "kms:Decrypt",
                        "kms:DescribeKey",
                        "kms:ReEncrypt*",
                    ],
                    "Resource": "*",
                }
            )
            try:
                self.kms_client.put_key_policy(KeyId=key_id,
Policy=json.dumps(policy))
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't set policy for key %s. Here's why %s",
                    key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
            else:
                print(f"Set policy for key {key_id}.")
        else:
            print("Skipping set policy demo.")
```

- For API details, see PutKeyPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ReEncrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `ReEncrypt`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def re_encrypt(self, source_key_id, cipher_text):
        """
        Takes ciphertext previously encrypted with one key and reencrypt it by using
        another key.

        :param source_key_id: The ARN or ID of the original key used to encrypt the
                              ciphertext.
        :param cipher_text: The encrypted ciphertext.
        :return: The ciphertext encrypted by the second key.
```

```
        """
        destination_key_id = input(
            f"Your ciphertext is currently encrypted with key {source_key_id}. "
            f"Enter another key ID or ARN to reencrypt it: "
        )
        if destination_key_id != "":
            try:
                cipher_text = self.kms_client.re_encrypt(
                    SourceKeyId=source_key_id,
                    DestinationKeyId=destination_key_id,
                    CiphertextBlob=cipher_text,
                )["CiphertextBlob"]
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't reencrypt your ciphertext. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                print(f"Reencrypted your ciphertext as: {cipher_text}")
                return cipher_text
        else:
            print("Skipping reencryption demo.")
```

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RetireGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `RetireGrant`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
```

```
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def retire_grant(self, grant):
        """
        Retires a grant so that it can no longer be used.

        :param grant: The grant to retire.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.retire_grant(GrantToken=grant["GrantToken"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't retire grant %s. Here's why: %s",
                grant["GrantId"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
        else:
            print(f"Grant {grant['GrantId']} retired.")
```

- For API details, see RetireGrant in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RevokeGrant`

The following code example shows how to use `RevokeGrant`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GrantManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "GrantManager":
        """
        Creates a GrantManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of GrantManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def revoke_grant(self, key_id: str, grant_id: str) -> None:
        """
        Revokes a grant so that it can no longer be used.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key associated with the grant.
        :param grant_id: The ID of the grant to revoke.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.revoke_grant(KeyId=key_id, GrantId=grant_id)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't revoke grant %s. Here's why: %s",
                grant_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see RevokeGrant in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ScheduleKeyDeletion`

The following code example shows how to use `ScheduleKeyDeletion`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def delete_key(self, key_id: str, window: int) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a list of keys.

        Warning:
        Deleting a KMS key is a destructive and potentially dangerous operation.
 When a KMS key is deleted,
        all data that was encrypted under the KMS key is unrecoverable.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to delete.
```

```
        :param window: The waiting period, in days, before the KMS key is deleted.
        """

        try:
            self.kms_client.schedule_key_deletion(
                KeyId=key_id, PendingWindowInDays=window
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete key %s. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ScheduleKeyDeletion in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`Sign`

The following code example shows how to use `Sign`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
```

```
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def sign(self, key_id: str, message: str) -> str:
        """
        Signs a message with a key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to use for signing.
        :param message: The message to sign.
        :return: The signature of the message.
        """
        try:
            return self.kms_client.sign(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )["Signature"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't sign your message. Here's why: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Sign in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`TagResource`

The following code example shows how to use `TagResource`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyManager:
```

```
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_keys = []

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyManager":
        """
        Creates a KeyManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyManager initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def tag_resource(self, key_id: str, tag_key: str, tag_value: str) -> None:
        """
        Add or edit tags on a customer managed key.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key to enable rotation for.
        :param tag_key: Key for the tag.
        :param tag_value: Value for the tag.
        """
        try:
            self.kms_client.tag_resource(
                KeyId=key_id, Tags=[{"TagKey": tag_key, "TagValue": tag_value}]
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't add a tag for the key '%s'. Here's why: %s",
                key_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see TagResource in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

UpdateAlias

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAlias`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class AliasManager:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client
        self.created_key = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "AliasManager":
        """
        Creates an AliasManager instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of AliasManager initialized with the default KMS
 client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)


    def update_alias(self, alias, current_key_id):
        """
        Updates an alias by assigning it to another key.

        :param alias: The alias to reassign.
        :param current_key_id: The ARN or ID of the key currently associated with
 the alias.
        """
        new_key_id = input(
            f"Alias {alias} is currently associated with {current_key_id}. "
            f"Enter another key ID or ARN that you want to associate with {alias}: "
        )
        if new_key_id != "":
            try:
                self.kms_client.update_alias(AliasName=alias,
 TargetKeyId=new_key_id)
            except ClientError as err:
```

```
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't associate alias %s with key %s. Here's why: %s",
                    alias,
                    new_key_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            else:
                print(f"Alias {alias} is now associated with key {new_key_id}.")
        else:
            print("Skipping alias update.")
```

- For API details, see UpdateAlias in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`Verify`

The following code example shows how to use `Verify`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KeyEncrypt:
    def __init__(self, kms_client):
        self.kms_client = kms_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "KeyEncrypt":
        """
        Creates a KeyEncrypt instance with a default KMS client.

        :return: An instance of KeyEncrypt initialized with the default KMS client.
        """
        kms_client = boto3.client("kms")
        return cls(kms_client)
```

```
    def verify(self, key_id: str, message: str, signature: str) -> bool:
        """
        Verifies a signature against a message.

        :param key_id: The ARN or ID of the key used to sign the message.
        :param message: The message to verify.
        :param signature: The signature to verify.
        :return: True when the signature matches the message, otherwise False.
        """
        try:
            response = self.kms_client.verify(
                KeyId=key_id,
                Message=message.encode(),
                Signature=signature,
                SigningAlgorithm="RSASSA_PSS_SHA_256",
            )
            valid = response["SignatureValid"]
            print(f"The signature is {'valid' if valid else 'invalid'}.")
            return valid
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SignatureDoesNotMatchException":
                print("The signature is not valid.")
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't verify your signature. Here's why: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise
```

- For API details, see Verify in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def main():
    """
    List the Lambda functions in your AWS account.
    """
    # Create the Lambda client
    lambda_client = boto3.client("lambda")

    # Use the paginator to list the functions
    paginator = lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate()

    print("Here are the Lambda functions in your account:")
    for page in response_iterator:
        for function in page["Functions"]:
            print(f"  {function['FunctionName']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number.

```
import logging

logger = logging.getLogger()
logger.setLevel(logging.INFO)


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and a single number, performs the specified action on the
 number,
    and returns the result. The only allowable action is 'increment'.

    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the action.
    """
    result = None
    action = event.get("action")
    if action == "increment":
        result = event.get("number", 0) + 1
        logger.info("Calculated result of %s", result)
    else:
        logger.error("%s is not a valid action.", action)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

Define a second Lambda handler that performs arithmetic operations.

```
import logging
import os


logger = logging.getLogger()

# Define a list of Python lambda functions that are called by this AWS Lambda
 function.
ACTIONS = {
    "plus": lambda x, y: x + y,
```

```
    "minus": lambda x, y: x - y,
    "times": lambda x, y: x * y,
    "divided-by": lambda x, y: x / y,
}


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Accepts an action and two numbers, performs the specified action on the numbers,
    and returns the result.

    :param event: The event dict that contains the parameters sent when the function
                  is invoked.
    :param context: The context in which the function is called.
    :return: The result of the specified action.
    """
    # Set the log level based on a variable configured in the Lambda environment.
    logger.setLevel(os.environ.get("LOG_LEVEL", logging.INFO))
    logger.debug("Event: %s", event)

    action = event.get("action")
    func = ACTIONS.get(action)
    x = event.get("x")
    y = event.get("y")
    result = None
    try:
        if func is not None and x is not None and y is not None:
            result = func(x, y)
            logger.info("%s %s %s is %s", x, action, y, result)
        else:
            logger.error("I can't calculate %s %s %s.", x, action, y)
    except ZeroDivisionError:
        logger.warning("I can't divide %s by 0!", x)

    response = {"result": result}
    return response
```

Create functions that wrap Lambda actions.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
```

```
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    @staticmethod
    def create_deployment_package(source_file, destination_file):
        """
        Creates a Lambda deployment package in .zip format in an in-memory buffer.
This
        buffer can be passed directly to Lambda when creating the function.

        :param source_file: The name of the file that contains the Lambda handler
                            function.
        :param destination_file: The name to give the file when it's deployed to
Lambda.
        :return: The deployment package.
        """
        buffer = io.BytesIO()
        with zipfile.ZipFile(buffer, "w") as zipped:
            zipped.write(source_file, destination_file)
        buffer.seek(0)
        return buffer.read()

    def get_iam_role(self, iam_role_name):
        """
        Get an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role.

        :param iam_role_name: The name of the role to retrieve.
        :return: The IAM role.
        """
        role = None
        try:
            temp_role = self.iam_resource.Role(iam_role_name)
            temp_role.load()
            role = temp_role
            logger.info("Got IAM role %s", role.name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                logger.info("IAM role %s does not exist.", iam_role_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get IAM role %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    iam_role_name,
```

```
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return role

    def create_iam_role_for_lambda(self, iam_role_name):
        """
        Creates an IAM role that grants the Lambda function basic permissions. If a
        role with the specified name already exists, it is used for the demo.

        :param iam_role_name: The name of the role to create.
        :return: The role and a value that indicates whether the role is newly
 created.
        """
        role = self.get_iam_role(iam_role_name)
        if role is not None:
            return role, False

        lambda_assume_role_policy = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        policy_arn = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"

        try:
            role = self.iam_resource.create_role(
                RoleName=iam_role_name,
                AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(lambda_assume_role_policy),
            )
            logger.info("Created role %s.", role.name)
            role.attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy_arn)
            logger.info("Attached basic execution policy to role %s.", role.name)
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "EntityAlreadyExists":
                role = self.iam_resource.Role(iam_role_name)
```

```
                logger.warning("The role %s already exists. Using it.",
iam_role_name)
            else:
                logger.exception(
                    "Couldn't create role %s or attach policy %s.",
                    iam_role_name,
                    policy_arn,
                )
                raise

        return role, True

    def get_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Gets data about a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function.
        :return: The function data.
        """
        response = None
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.get_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Function %s does not exist.", function_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    function_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response


    def create_function(
        self, function_name, handler_name, iam_role, deployment_package
    ):
        """
        Deploys a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
        :param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function. This
```

```
                                must include the file name and the function name.
        :param iam_role: The IAM role to use for the function.
        :param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the function
                                   code in .zip format.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.create_function(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Description="AWS Lambda doc example",
                Runtime="python3.9",
                Role=iam_role.arn,
                Handler=handler_name,
                Code={"ZipFile": deployment_package},
                Publish=True,
            )
            function_arn = response["FunctionArn"]
            waiter = self.lambda_client.get_waiter("function_active_v2")
            waiter.wait(FunctionName=function_name)
            logger.info(
                "Created function '%s' with ARN: '%s'.",
                function_name,
                response["FunctionArn"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.error("Couldn't create function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        else:
            return function_arn


    def delete_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Deletes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.lambda_client.delete_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete function %s.", function_name)
            raise
```

```
    def invoke_function(self, function_name, function_params, get_log=False):
        """
        Invokes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to invoke.
        :param function_params: The parameters of the function as a dict. This dict
                                is serialized to JSON before it is sent to Lambda.
        :param get_log: When true, the last 4 KB of the execution log are included
in
                        the response.
        :return: The response from the function invocation.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.invoke(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Payload=json.dumps(function_params),
                LogType="Tail" if get_log else "None",
            )
            logger.info("Invoked function %s.", function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't invoke function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        return response


    def update_function_code(self, function_name, deployment_package):
        """
        Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
contains
        the code for the function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes in
                                   .zip format.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_code(
                FunctionName=function_name, ZipFile=deployment_package
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def update_function_configuration(self, function_name, env_vars):
        """
        Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param env_vars: A dict of environment variables to update.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_configuration(
                FunctionName=function_name, Environment={"Variables": env_vars}
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function configuration %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def list_functions(self):
        """
        Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
        """
        try:
            func_paginator = self.lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
            for func_page in func_paginator.paginate():
                for func in func_page["Functions"]:
                    print(func["FunctionName"])
                    desc = func.get("Description")
                    if desc:
                        print(f"\t{desc}")
```

```
                    print(f"\t{func['Runtime']}: {func['Handler']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list functions. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Create a function that runs the scenario.

```
class UpdateFunctionWaiter(CustomWaiter):
    """A custom waiter that waits until a function is successfully updated."""

    def __init__(self, client):
        super().__init__(
            "UpdateSuccess",
            "GetFunction",
            "Configuration.LastUpdateStatus",
            {"Successful": WaitState.SUCCESS, "Failed": WaitState.FAILURE},
            client,
        )

    def wait(self, function_name):
        self._wait(FunctionName=function_name)


def run_scenario(lambda_client, iam_resource, basic_file, calculator_file,
 lambda_name):
    """
    Runs the scenario.

    :param lambda_client: A Boto3 Lambda client.
    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 IAM resource.
    :param basic_file: The name of the file that contains the basic Lambda handler.
    :param calculator_file: The name of the file that contains the calculator Lambda
 handler.
    :param lambda_name: The name to give resources created for the scenario, such as
 the
```

```
                        IAM role and the Lambda function.
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the AWS Lambda getting started with functions demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    wrapper = LambdaWrapper(lambda_client, iam_resource)

    print("Checking for IAM role for Lambda...")
    iam_role, should_wait = wrapper.create_iam_role_for_lambda(lambda_name)
    if should_wait:
        logger.info("Giving AWS time to create resources...")
        wait(10)

    print(f"Looking for function {lambda_name}...")
    function = wrapper.get_function(lambda_name)
    if function is None:
        print("Zipping the Python script into a deployment package...")
        deployment_package = wrapper.create_deployment_package(
            basic_file, f"{lambda_name}.py"
        )
        print(f"...and creating the {lambda_name} Lambda function.")
        wrapper.create_function(
            lambda_name, f"{lambda_name}.lambda_handler", iam_role,
deployment_package
        )
    else:
        print(f"Function {lambda_name} already exists.")
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Let's invoke {lambda_name}. This function increments a number.")
    action_params = {
        "action": "increment",
        "number": q.ask("Give me a number to increment: ", q.is_int),
    }
    print(f"Invoking {lambda_name}...")
    response = wrapper.invoke_function(lambda_name, action_params)
    print(
        f"Incrementing {action_params['number']} resulted in "
        f"{json.load(response['Payload'])}"
    )
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    print(f"Let's update the function to an arithmetic calculator.")
    q.ask("Press Enter when you're ready.")
    print("Creating a new deployment package...")
    deployment_package = wrapper.create_deployment_package(
        calculator_file, f"{lambda_name}.py"
    )
    print(f"...and updating the {lambda_name} Lambda function.")
    update_waiter = UpdateFunctionWaiter(lambda_client)
    wrapper.update_function_code(lambda_name, deployment_package)
    update_waiter.wait(lambda_name)
    print(f"This function uses an environment variable to control logging level.")
    print(f"Let's set it to DEBUG to get the most logging.")
    wrapper.update_function_configuration(
        lambda_name, {"LOG_LEVEL": logging.getLevelName(logging.DEBUG)}
    )

    actions = ["plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"]
    want_invoke = True
    while want_invoke:
        print(f"Let's invoke {lambda_name}. You can invoke these actions:")
        for index, action in enumerate(actions):
            print(f"{index + 1}: {action}")
        action_params = {}
        action_index = q.ask(
            "Enter the number of the action you want to take: ",
            q.is_int,
            q.in_range(1, len(actions)),
        )
        action_params["action"] = actions[action_index - 1]
        print(f"You've chosen to invoke 'x {action_params['action']} y'.")
        action_params["x"] = q.ask("Enter a value for x: ", q.is_int)
        action_params["y"] = q.ask("Enter a value for y: ", q.is_int)
        print(f"Invoking {lambda_name}...")
        response = wrapper.invoke_function(lambda_name, action_params, True)
        print(
            f"Calculating {action_params['x']} {action_params['action']}
{action_params['y']} "
            f"resulted in {json.load(response['Payload'])}"
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to see the logs from the call.")
        print(base64.b64decode(response["LogResult"]).decode())
        want_invoke = q.ask("That was fun. Shall we do it again? (y/n) ",
q.is_yesno)
```

```
    print("-" * 88)

    if q.ask(
        "Do you want to list all of the functions in your account? (y/n) ",
 q.is_yesno
    ):
        wrapper.list_functions()
    print("-" * 88)

    if q.ask("Ready to delete the function and role? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno):
        for policy in iam_role.attached_policies.all():
            policy.detach_role(RoleName=iam_role.name)
        iam_role.delete()
        print(f"Deleted role {lambda_name}.")
        wrapper.delete_function(lambda_name)
        print(f"Deleted function {lambda_name}.")

    print("\nThanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        run_scenario(
            boto3.client("lambda"),
            boto3.resource("iam"),
            "lambda_handler_basic.py",
            "lambda_handler_calculator.py",
            "doc_example_lambda_calculator",
        )
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode

- UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def create_function(
        self, function_name, handler_name, iam_role, deployment_package
    ):
        """
        Deploys a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
        :param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function. This
                             must include the file name and the function name.
        :param iam_role: The IAM role to use for the function.
        :param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the function
                                   code in .zip format.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.create_function(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Description="AWS Lambda doc example",
                Runtime="python3.9",
```

```
                Role=iam_role.arn,
                Handler=handler_name,
                Code={"ZipFile": deployment_package},
                Publish=True,
            )
            function_arn = response["FunctionArn"]
            waiter = self.lambda_client.get_waiter("function_active_v2")
            waiter.wait(FunctionName=function_name)
            logger.info(
                "Created function '%s' with ARN: '%s'.",
                function_name,
                response["FunctionArn"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.error("Couldn't create function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        else:
            return function_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource
```

```
    def delete_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Deletes a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.lambda_client.delete_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete function %s.", function_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def get_function(self, function_name):
        """
        Gets data about a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function.
        :return: The function data.
        """
```

```
        response = None
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.get_function(FunctionName=function_name)
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.info("Function %s does not exist.", function_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    function_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def invoke_function(self, function_name, function_params, get_log=False):
        """
        Invokes a Lambda function.
```

```
        :param function_name: The name of the function to invoke.
        :param function_params: The parameters of the function as a dict. This dict
                                is serialized to JSON before it is sent to Lambda.
        :param get_log: When true, the last 4 KB of the execution log are included
 in
                        the response.
        :return: The response from the function invocation.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.invoke(
                FunctionName=function_name,
                Payload=json.dumps(function_params),
                LogType="Tail" if get_log else "None",
            )
            logger.info("Invoked function %s.", function_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't invoke function %s.", function_name)
            raise
        return response
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource
```

```
    def list_functions(self):
        """
        Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
        """
        try:
            func_paginator = self.lambda_client.get_paginator("list_functions")
            for func_page in func_paginator.paginate():
                for func in func_page["Functions"]:
                    print(func["FunctionName"])
                    desc = func.get("Description")
                    if desc:
                        print(f"\t{desc}")
                    print(f"\t{func['Runtime']}: {func['Handler']}")
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list functions. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource
```

```
    def update_function_code(self, function_name, deployment_package):
        """
        Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
contains
        the code for the function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes in
                                   .zip format.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_code(
                FunctionName=function_name, ZipFile=deployment_package
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper:
    def __init__(self, lambda_client, iam_resource):
        self.lambda_client = lambda_client
        self.iam_resource = iam_resource


    def update_function_configuration(self, function_name, env_vars):
        """
        Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.

        :param function_name: The name of the function to update.
        :param env_vars: A dict of environment variables to update.
        :return: Data about the update, including the status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.lambda_client.update_function_configuration(
                FunctionName=function_name, Environment={"Variables": env_vars}
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update function configuration %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                function_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a REST API to track COVID-19 data

The following code example shows how to create a REST API that simulates a system to track daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use AWS Chalice with the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a serverless REST API that uses Amazon API Gateway, AWS Lambda, and Amazon DynamoDB. The REST API simulates a system that tracks daily cases of COVID-19 in the United States, using fictional data. Learn how to:

- Use AWS Chalice to define routes in Lambda functions that are called to handle REST requests that come through API Gateway.
- Use Lambda functions to retrieve and store data in a DynamoDB table to serve REST requests.
- Define table structure and security role resources in an AWS CloudFormation template.
- Use AWS Chalice and CloudFormation to package and deploy all necessary resources.
- Use CloudFormation to clean up all created resources.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- AWS CloudFormation
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.

- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.
- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Create a messenger application

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Create a websocket chat application

The following code example shows how to create a chat application that is served by a websocket API built on Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon API Gateway V2 to create a websocket API that integrates with AWS Lambda and Amazon DynamoDB.

- Create a websocket API served by API Gateway.
- Define a Lambda handler that stores connections in DynamoDB and posts messages to other chat participants.
- Connect to the websocket chat application and send messages with the Websockets package.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP

methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.
- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.
- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Python.

```
import json
import os
import boto3
import pymysql

# RDS settings
proxy_host_name = os.environ['PROXY_HOST_NAME']
port = int(os.environ['PORT'])
db_name = os.environ['DB_NAME']
db_user_name = os.environ['DB_USER_NAME']
aws_region = os.environ['AWS_REGION']
```

```
# Fetch RDS Auth Token
def get_auth_token():
    client = boto3.client('rds')
    token = client.generate_db_auth_token(
        DBHostname=proxy_host_name,
        Port=port
        DBUsername=db_user_name
        Region=aws_region
    )
    return token

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    token = get_auth_token()
    try:
        connection = pymysql.connect(
            host=proxy_host_name,
            user=db_user_name,
            password=token,
            db=db_name,
            port=port,
            ssl={'ca': 'Amazon RDS'}  # Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL
 connection
        )

        with connection.cursor() as cursor:
            cursor.execute('SELECT %s + %s AS sum', (3, 2))
            result = cursor.fetchone()

        return result

    except Exception as e:
        return (f"Error: {str(e)}")  # Return an error message if an exception
 occurs
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Kinesis event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import base64
def lambda_handler(event, context):

    for record in event['Records']:
        try:
            print(f"Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: {record['eventID']}")
            record_data = base64.b64decode(record['kinesis']
['data']).decode('utf-8')
            print(f"Record Data: {record_data}")
            # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
        except Exception as e:
            print(f"An error occurred {e}")
            raise e
    print(f"Successfully processed {len(event['Records'])} records.")
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    print(json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    for record in event['Records']:
        log_dynamodb_record(record)

def log_dynamodb_record(record):
    print(record['eventID'])
    print(record['eventName'])
    print(f"DynamoDB Record: {json.dumps(record['dynamodb'])}")
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Python.

```
import json

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event.get('events', []):
        log_document_db_event(record)
    return 'OK'

def log_document_db_event(record):
```

```
    event_data = record.get('event', {})
    operation_type = event_data.get('operationType', 'Unknown')
    db = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('db', 'Unknown')
    collection = event_data.get('ns', {}).get('coll', 'Unknown')
    full_document = event_data.get('fullDocument', {})

    print(f"Operation type: {operation_type}")
    print(f"db: {db}")
    print(f"collection: {collection}")
    print("Full document:", json.dumps(full_document, indent=2))
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Python.

```
import base64

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Iterate through keys
    for key in event['records']:
        print('Key:', key)
        # Iterate through records
        for record in event['records'][key]:
            print('Record:', record)
            # Decode base64
            msg = base64.b64decode(record['value']).decode('utf-8')
            print('Message:', msg)
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import json
import urllib.parse
import boto3

print('Loading function')

s3 = boto3.client('s3')


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    #print("Received event: " + json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    # Get the object from the event and show its content type
    bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
    key = urllib.parse.unquote_plus(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 encoding='utf-8')
    try:
        response = s3.get_object(Bucket=bucket, Key=key)
        print("CONTENT TYPE: " + response['ContentType'])
        return response['ContentType']
    except Exception as e:
        print(e)
```

```
        print('Error getting object {} from bucket {}. Make sure they exist and your
 bucket is in the same region as this function.'.format(key, bucket))
        raise e
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event['Records']:
        process_message(record)
    print("done")

def process_message(record):
    try:
        message = record['Sns']['Message']
        print(f"Processed message {message}")
        # TODO; Process your record here

    except Exception as e:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise e
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for message in event['Records']:
        process_message(message)
    print("done")

def process_message(message):
    try:
        print(f"Processed message {message['body']}")
        # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    except Exception as err:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise err
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["kinesis"]["sequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def handler(event, context):
    records = event.get("Records")
    curRecordSequenceNumber = ""

    for record in records:
        try:
            # Process your record
            curRecordSequenceNumber = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
        except Exception as e:
            # Return failed record's sequence number
            return {"batchItemFailures":[{"itemIdentifier":
 curRecordSequenceNumber}]}

    return {"batchItemFailures":[]}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    if event:
```

```
        batch_item_failures = []
        sqs_batch_response = {}

        for record in event["Records"]:
            try:
                # process message
            except Exception as e:
                batch_item_failures.append({"itemIdentifier": record['messageId']})

        sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
        return sqs_batch_response
```

Lookout for Vision examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Lookout for Vision.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lookout for Vision

The following code example shows how to get started using Lookout for Vision.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
This example shows how to list your Amazon Lookout for Vision projects.
If you haven't previously created a project in the current AWS Region,
the response is an empty list, however it confirms that you can call the
Lookout for Vision API.
"""
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import boto3


class Hello:
    """Hello class for Amazon Lookout for Vision"""

    @staticmethod
    def list_projects(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Lists information about the projects that are in your AWS account
        and in the current AWS Region.

        : param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            for project in response["Projects"]:
                print("Project: " + project["ProjectName"])
                print("ARN: " + project["ProjectArn"])
                print()
            print("Done!")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't list projects. \n{err}")
            raise


def main():
    session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")
    lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")

    Hello.list_projects(lookoutvision_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDataset`.

For more information, see Creating your dataset.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def create_dataset(lookoutvision_client, project_name, manifest_file,
 dataset_type):
        """
        Creates a new Lookout for Vision dataset

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project in which you want to
                             create a dataset.
        :param bucket: The bucket that contains the manifest file.
        :param manifest_file: The path and name of the manifest file.
        :param dataset_type: The type of the dataset (train or test).
        """
        try:
```

```
            bucket, key = manifest_file.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
            logger.info("Creating %s dataset type...", dataset_type)
            dataset = {
                "GroundTruthManifest": {"S3Object": {"Bucket": bucket, "Key": key}}
            }
            response = lookoutvision_client.create_dataset(
                ProjectName=project_name,
                DatasetType=dataset_type,
                DatasetSource=dataset,
            )
            logger.info("Dataset Status: %s", response["DatasetMetadata"]["Status"])
            logger.info(
                "Dataset Status Message: %s",
                response["DatasetMetadata"]["StatusMessage"],
            )
            logger.info("Dataset Type: %s", response["DatasetMetadata"]
["DatasetType"])

            # Wait until either created or failed.
            finished = False
            status = ""
            dataset_description = {}
            while finished is False:
                dataset_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_dataset(
                    ProjectName=project_name, DatasetType=dataset_type
                )
                status = dataset_description["DatasetDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "CREATE_IN_PROGRESS":
                    logger.info("Dataset creation in progress...")
                    time.sleep(2)
                elif status == "CREATE_COMPLETE":
                    logger.info("Dataset created.")
                    finished = True
                else:
                    logger.info(
                        "Dataset creation failed: %s",
                        dataset_description["DatasetDescription"]["StatusMessage"],
                    )
                    finished = True

            if status != "CREATE_COMPLETE":
                message = dataset_description["DatasetDescription"]["StatusMessage"]
                logger.exception("Couldn't create dataset: %s", message)
```

```
                raise Exception(f"Couldn't create dataset: {message}")

        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Service error: Couldn't create dataset.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateDataset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateModel`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateModel`.

For more information, see Training your model.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def create_model(
        lookoutvision_client,
        project_name,
        training_results,
        tag_key=None,
        tag_key_value=None,
    ):
        """
        Creates a version of a Lookout for Vision model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project in which you want to create a
                             model.
        :param training_results: The Amazon S3 location where training results are
 stored.
```

```
        :param tag_key: The key for a tag to add to the model.
        :param tag_key_value - A value associated with the tag_key.
        return: The model status and version.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Training model...")
            output_bucket, output_folder = training_results.replace("s3://",
"").split(
                "/", 1
            )
            output_config = {
                "S3Location": {"Bucket": output_bucket, "Prefix": output_folder}
            }
            tags = []
            if tag_key is not None:
                tags = [{"Key": tag_key, "Value": tag_key_value}]

            response = lookoutvision_client.create_model(
                ProjectName=project_name, OutputConfig=output_config, Tags=tags
            )

            logger.info("ARN: %s", response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelArn"])
            logger.info("Version: %s", response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelVersion"])
            logger.info("Started training...")

            print("Training started. Training might take several hours to
complete.")

            # Wait until training completes.
            finished = False
            status = "UNKNOWN"
            while finished is False:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project_name,
                    ModelVersion=response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelVersion"],
                )
                status = model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "TRAINING":
                    logger.info("Model training in progress...")
                    time.sleep(600)
                    continue

                if status == "TRAINED":
```

```
                    logger.info("Model was successfully trained.")
                else:
                    logger.info(
                        "Model training failed: %s ",
                        model_description["ModelDescription"]["StatusMessage"],
                    )
                finished = True
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't train model.")
            raise
        else:
            return status, response["ModelMetadata"]["ModelVersion"]
```

- For API details, see CreateModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateProject`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateProject`.

For more information, see Creating your project.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Projects:

    @staticmethod
    def create_project(lookoutvision_client, project_name):
        """
        Creates a new Lookout for Vision project.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param  project_name: The name for the new project.
        :return project_arn: The ARN of the new project.
```

```
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Creating project: %s", project_name)
            response = lookoutvision_client.create_project(ProjectName=project_name)
            project_arn = response["ProjectMetadata"]["ProjectArn"]
            logger.info("project ARN: %s", project_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create project %s.", project_name)
            raise
        else:
            return project_arn
```

- For API details, see CreateProject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDataset`.

For more information, see Deleting a dataset.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def delete_dataset(lookoutvision_client, project_name, dataset_type):
        """
        Deletes a Lookout for Vision dataset

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the dataset that
                             you want to delete.
        :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that you
```

```
                                want to delete.
        """
        try:
            logger.info(
                "Deleting the %s dataset for project %s.", dataset_type,
 project_name
            )
            lookoutvision_client.delete_dataset(
                ProjectName=project_name, DatasetType=dataset_type
            )
            logger.info("Dataset deleted.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Service error: Couldn't delete dataset.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDataset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteModel`.

For more information, see Deleting a model.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def delete_model(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version):
        """
        Deletes a Lookout for Vision model. The model must first be stopped and
 can't
        be in training.
```

```
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the desired
model.
        :param model_version: The version of the model that you want to delete.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Deleting model: %s", model_version)
            lookoutvision_client.delete_model(
                ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
            )

            model_exists = True
            while model_exists:
                response =
lookoutvision_client.list_models(ProjectName=project_name)

                model_exists = False
                for model in response["Models"]:
                    if model["ModelVersion"] == model_version:
                        model_exists = True

                if model_exists is False:
                    logger.info("Model deleted")
                else:
                    logger.info("Model is being deleted...")
                    time.sleep(2)

            logger.info("Deleted Model: %s", model_version)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete model.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteProject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteProject`.

For more information, see Deleting a project.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Projects:

    @staticmethod
    def delete_project(lookoutvision_client, project_name):
        """
        Deletes a Lookout for Vision Model

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that you want to delete.
        """
        try:
            logger.info("Deleting project: %s", project_name)
            response = lookoutvision_client.delete_project(ProjectName=project_name)
            logger.info("Deleted project ARN: %s ", response["ProjectArn"])
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete project %s.", project_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteProject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDataset`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDataset`.

For more information, see Viewing your dataset.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def describe_dataset(lookoutvision_client, project_name, dataset_type):
        """
        Gets information about a Lookout for Vision dataset.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the dataset that
                             you want to describe.
        :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that you want
                             to describe.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.describe_dataset(
                ProjectName=project_name, DatasetType=dataset_type
            )
            print(f"Name: {response['DatasetDescription']['ProjectName']}")
            print(f"Type: {response['DatasetDescription']['DatasetType']}")
            print(f"Status: {response['DatasetDescription']['Status']}")
            print(f"Message: {response['DatasetDescription']['StatusMessage']}")
            print(f"Images: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Total']}")
            print(f"Labeled: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Labeled']}")
            print(f"Normal: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Normal']}")
            print(f"Anomaly: {response['DatasetDescription']['ImageStats']
['Anomaly']}")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Service error: problem listing datasets.")
            raise
        print("Done.")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDataset in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeModel`.

For more information, see Viewing your models.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def describe_model(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version):
        """
        Shows the performance metrics for a trained model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Amazon Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the desired
 model.
        :param model_version: The version of the model.
        """
        response = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
            ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
        )
        model_description = response["ModelDescription"]
        print(f"\tModel version: {model_description['ModelVersion']}")
        print(f"\tARN: {model_description['ModelArn']}")
        if "Description" in model_description:
            print(f"\tDescription: {model_description['Description']}")
        print(f"\tStatus: {model_description['Status']}")
        print(f"\tMessage: {model_description['StatusMessage']}")
        print(f"\tCreated: {str(model_description['CreationTimestamp'])}")
```

```
        if model_description["Status"] in ("TRAINED", "HOSTED"):
            training_start = model_description["CreationTimestamp"]
            training_end = model_description["EvaluationEndTimestamp"]
            duration = training_end - training_start
            print(f"\tTraining duration: {duration}")

            print("\n\tPerformance metrics\n\t-------------------")
            print(f"\tRecall: {model_description['Performance']['Recall']}")
            print(f"\tPrecision: {model_description['Performance']['Precision']}")
            print(f"\tF1: {model_description['Performance']['F1Score']}")

            training_output_bucket = model_description["OutputConfig"]["S3Location"]
[
                "Bucket"
            ]
            prefix = model_description["OutputConfig"]["S3Location"]["Prefix"]
            print(f"\tTraining output: s3://{training_output_bucket}/{prefix}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectAnomalies`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectAnomalies`.

For more information, see Detecting anomalies in an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Inference:
    """
    Shows how to detect anomalies in an image using a trained Lookout for Vision
 model.
    """
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def detect_anomalies(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version, photo):
        """
        Calls DetectAnomalies using the supplied project, model version, and image.
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
        :param project: The project that contains the model that you want to use.
        :param model_version: The version of the model that you want to use.
        :param photo: The photo that you want to analyze.
        :return: The DetectAnomalyResult object that contains the analysis results.
        """

        image_type = imghdr.what(photo)
        if image_type == "jpeg":
            content_type = "image/jpeg"
        elif image_type == "png":
            content_type = "image/png"
        else:
            logger.info("Image type not valid for %s", photo)
            raise ValueError(
                f"File format not valid. Supply a jpeg or png format file: {photo}"
            )

        # Get images bytes for call to detect_anomalies.
        with open(photo, "rb") as image:
            response = lookoutvision_client.detect_anomalies(
                ProjectName=project_name,
                ContentType=content_type,
                Body=image.read(),
                ModelVersion=model_version,
            )

        return response["DetectAnomalyResult"]

    @staticmethod
    def download_from_s3(s3_resource, photo):
        """
        Downloads an image from an S3 bucket.

        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param photo: The Amazon S3 path of a photo to download.
        return: The local path to the downloaded file.
        """
        try:
            bucket, key = photo.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
```

```
            local_file = os.path.basename(photo)
        except ValueError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get S3 info for %s", photo)
            raise

        try:
            logger.info("Downloading %s", photo)
            s3_resource.Bucket(bucket).download_file(key, local_file)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't download %s from S3.", photo)
            raise

        return local_file

    @staticmethod
    def reject_on_classification(image, prediction, confidence_limit):
        """
        Returns True if the anomaly confidence is greater than or equal to
        the supplied confidence limit.
        :param image: The name of the image file that was analyzed.
        :param prediction: The DetectAnomalyResult object returned from
DetectAnomalies.
        :param confidence_limit: The minimum acceptable confidence (float 0 - 1).
        :return: True if the error condition indicates an anomaly, otherwise False.
        """

        reject = False

        logger.info("Checking classification for %s", image)

        if prediction["IsAnomalous"] and prediction["Confidence"] >=
confidence_limit:
            reject = True
            reject_info = (
                f"Rejected: Anomaly confidence ({prediction['Confidence']:.2%}) is
greater"
                f" than limit ({confidence_limit:.2%})"
            )
            logger.info("%s", reject_info)

        if not reject:
            logger.info("No anomalies found.")
        return reject
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def reject_on_anomaly_types(
        image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_types_limit
    ):
        """
        Checks if the number of anomaly types is greater than the anomaly types
        limit and if the prediction confidence is greater than the confidence limit.
        :param image: The name of the image file that was analyzed.
        :param prediction: The DetectAnomalyResult object returned from
DetectAnomalies.
        :param confidence: The minimum acceptable confidence (float 0 - 1).
        :param anomaly_types_limit: The maximum number of allowable anomaly types
(int).
        :return: True if the error condition indicates an anomaly, otherwise False.
        """

        logger.info("Checking number of anomaly types for %s", image)

        reject = False

        if prediction["IsAnomalous"] and prediction["Confidence"] >=
confidence_limit:
            anomaly_types = {
                anomaly["Name"]
                for anomaly in prediction["Anomalies"]
                if anomaly["Name"] != "background"
            }

            if len(anomaly_types) > anomaly_types_limit:
                reject = True
                reject_info = (
                    f"Rejected: Anomaly confidence ({prediction['Confidence']:.2%})
"
                    f"is greater than limit ({confidence_limit:.2%}) and "
                    f"the number of anomaly types ({len(anomaly_types)-1}) is "
                    f"greater than the limit ({anomaly_types_limit})"
                )

                logger.info("%s", reject_info)

        if not reject:
            logger.info("No anomalies found.")
        return reject
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def reject_on_coverage(
        image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_label, coverage_limit
    ):
        """
        Checks if the coverage area of an anomaly is greater than the coverage limit
 and if
        the prediction confidence is greater than the confidence limit.
        :param image: The name of the image file that was analyzed.
        :param prediction: The DetectAnomalyResult object returned from
 DetectAnomalies.
        :param confidence_limit: The minimum acceptable confidence (float 0-1).
        :anomaly_label: The anomaly label for the type of anomaly that you want to
 check.
        :coverage_limit: The maximum acceptable percentage coverage of an anomaly
 (float 0-1).
        :return: True if the error condition indicates an anomaly, otherwise False.
        """

        reject = False

        logger.info("Checking coverage for %s", image)

        if prediction["IsAnomalous"] and prediction["Confidence"] >=
 confidence_limit:
            for anomaly in prediction["Anomalies"]:
                if anomaly["Name"] == anomaly_label and anomaly["PixelAnomaly"][
                    "TotalPercentageArea"
                ] > (coverage_limit):
                    reject = True
                    reject_info = (
                        f"Rejected: Anomaly confidence
 ({prediction['Confidence']:.2%}) "
                        f"is greater than limit ({confidence_limit:.2%}) and
 {anomaly['Name']} "
                        f"coverage ({anomaly['PixelAnomaly']
['TotalPercentageArea']:.2%}) "
                        f"is greater than limit ({coverage_limit:.2%})"
                    )

                    logger.info("%s", reject_info)

        if not reject:
            logger.info("No anomalies found.")
```

```
        return reject

    @staticmethod
    def analyze_image(lookoutvision_client, image, config):
        """
        Analyzes an image with an Amazon Lookout for Vision model. Also
        runs a series of checks to determine if the contents of an image
        should be rejected.
        :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
        param image: A local image that you want to analyze.
        param config: Configuration information for the model and reject
        limits.
        """

        project = config["project"]
        model_version = config["model_version"]
        confidence_limit = config["confidence_limit"]
        coverage_limit = config["coverage_limit"]
        anomaly_types_limit = config["anomaly_types_limit"]
        anomaly_label = config["anomaly_label"]

        # Get analysis results.
        print(f"Analyzing {image}.")

        prediction = Inference.detect_anomalies(
            lookoutvision_client, project, model_version, image
        )

        anomalies = []

        reject = Inference.reject_on_classification(image, prediction,
confidence_limit)

        if reject:
            anomalies.append("Classification: An anomaly was found.")

        reject = Inference.reject_on_coverage(
            image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_label, coverage_limit
        )

        if reject:
            anomalies.append("Coverage: Anomaly coverage too high.")
```

```
        reject = Inference.reject_on_anomaly_types(
            image, prediction, confidence_limit, anomaly_types_limit
        )

        if reject:
            anomalies.append("Anomaly type count: Too many anomaly types found.")
            print()

        if len(anomalies) > 0:
            print(f"Anomalies found in {image}")
            for anomaly in anomalies:
                print(f"{anomaly}")
        else:
            print(f"No anomalies found in {image}")


def main():
    """
    Detects anomalies in an image file.
    """
    try:
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

        parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
            description="Find anomalies with Amazon Lookout for Vision."
        )
        parser.add_argument(
            "image",
            help="The file that you want to analyze. Supply a local file path or a "
            "path to an S3 object.",
        )
        parser.add_argument(
            "config",
            help=(
                "The configuration JSON file to use. "
                "See https://github.com/awsdocs/aws-doc-sdk-examples/blob/main/"
                "python/example_code/lookoutvision/README.md"
            ),
        )

        args = parser.parse_args()

        session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")
```

```
        lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")
        s3_resource = session.resource("s3")

        # Get configuration information.
        with open(args.config, encoding="utf-8") as config_file:
            config = json.load(config_file)

        # Download image if located in S3 bucket.
        if args.image.startswith("s3://"):
            image = Inference.download_from_s3(s3_resource, args.image)
        else:
            image = args.image

        Inference.analyze_image(lookoutvision_client, image, config)

        # Delete image, if downloaded from S3 bucket.
        if args.image.startswith("s3://"):
            os.remove(image)

    except ClientError as err:
        print(f"Service error: {err.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except FileNotFoundError as err:
        print(f"The supplied file couldn't be found: {err.filename}.")
    except ValueError as err:
        print(f"A value error occurred: {err}.")
    else:
        print("\nSuccessfully completed analysis.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DetectAnomalies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListModels`.

For more information, see Viewing your models.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Models:

    @staticmethod
    def describe_models(lookoutvision_client, project_name):
        """
        Gets information about all models in a Lookout for Vision project.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that you want to use.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_models(ProjectName=project_name)
            print("Project: " + project_name)
            for model in response["Models"]:
                Models.describe_model(
                    lookoutvision_client, project_name, model["ModelVersion"]
                )
                print()
            print("Done...")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list models.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListModels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListProjects`

The following code example shows how to use `ListProjects`.

For more information, see Viewing your projects.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Projects:

    @staticmethod
    def list_projects(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Lists information about the projects that are in in your AWS account
        and in the current AWS Region.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            for project in response["Projects"]:
                print("Project: " + project["ProjectName"])
                print("\tARN: " + project["ProjectArn"])
                print("\tCreated: " + str(["CreationTimestamp"]))
                print("Datasets")
                project_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_project(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
                )
                if not project_description["ProjectDescription"]["Datasets"]:
                    print("\tNo datasets")
                else:
                    for dataset in project_description["ProjectDescription"][
                        "Datasets"
                    ]:
                        print(f"\ttype: {dataset['DatasetType']}")
                        print(f"\tStatus: {dataset['StatusMessage']}")

                print("Models")
                response_models = lookoutvision_client.list_models(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
                )
                if not response_models["Models"]:
```

```
                    print("\tNo models")
                else:
                    for model in response_models["Models"]:
                        Models.describe_model(
                            lookoutvision_client,
                            project["ProjectName"],
                            model["ModelVersion"],
                        )

                print("------------------------------------------------------------
\n")
            print("Done!")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Problem listing projects.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListProjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartModel`

The following code example shows how to use `StartModel`.

For more information, see Starting your model.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Hosting:

    @staticmethod
    def start_model(
        lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version, min_inference_units
    ):
        """
```

```
        Starts the hosting of a Lookout for Vision model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name:  The name of the project that contains the version of
the
                              model that you want to start hosting.
        :param model_version: The version of the model that you want to start
hosting.
        :param min_inference_units: The number of inference units to use for
hosting.
        """
        try:
            logger.info(
                "Starting model version %s for project %s", model_version,
project_name
            )
            lookoutvision_client.start_model(
                ProjectName=project_name,
                ModelVersion=model_version,
                MinInferenceUnits=min_inference_units,
            )
            print("Starting hosting...")

            status = ""
            finished = False

            # Wait until hosted or failed.
            while finished is False:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
                )
                status = model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "STARTING_HOSTING":
                    logger.info("Host starting in progress...")
                    time.sleep(10)
                    continue

                if status == "HOSTED":
                    logger.info("Model is hosted and ready for use.")
                    finished = True
                    continue

                logger.info("Model hosting failed and the model can't be used.")
```

```
                finished = True

            if status != "HOSTED":
                logger.error("Error hosting model: %s", status)
                raise Exception(f"Error hosting model: {status}")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't host model.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StopModel`

The following code example shows how to use `StopModel`.

For more information, see Stopping your model.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Hosting:

    @staticmethod
    def stop_model(lookoutvision_client, project_name, model_version):
        """
        Stops a running Lookout for Vision Model.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        :param project_name: The name of the project that contains the version of
                             the model that you want to stop hosting.
        :param model_version:  The version of the model that you want to stop
 hosting.
        """
        try:
```

```
            logger.info("Stopping model version %s for %s", model_version,
 project_name)
            response = lookoutvision_client.stop_model(
                ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
            )
            logger.info("Stopping hosting...")

            status = response["Status"]
            finished = False

            # Wait until stopped or failed.
            while finished is False:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project_name, ModelVersion=model_version
                )
                status = model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"]

                if status == "STOPPING_HOSTING":
                    logger.info("Host stopping in progress...")
                    time.sleep(10)
                    continue

                if status == "TRAINED":
                    logger.info("Model is no longer hosted.")
                    finished = True
                    continue

                logger.info("Failed to stop model: %s ", status)
                finished = True

            if status != "TRAINED":
                logger.error("Error stopping model: %s", status)
                raise Exception(f"Error stopping model: {status}")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't stop hosting model.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see StopModel in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a manifest file

The following code example shows how to create a Lookout for Vision manifest file and upload it to Amazon S3.

For more information, see Creating a manifest file.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Datasets:

    @staticmethod
    def create_manifest_file_s3(s3_resource, image_s3_path, manifest_s3_path):
        """
        Creates a manifest file and uploads to Amazon S3.

        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param image_s3_path: The Amazon S3 path to the images referenced by the
                              manifest file. The images must be in an Amazon S3
 bucket
                              with the following folder structure.
                                s3://amzn-s3-demo-bucket/<train or test>/
                                    normal/
                                    anomaly/
                              Place normal images in the normal folder and anomalous
                              images in the anomaly folder.
        :param manifest_s3_path: The Amazon S3 location in which to store the
 created
                                 manifest file.
        """
        output_manifest_file = "temp.manifest"
        try:
            # Current date and time in manifest file format.
            dttm = datetime.now().strftime("%Y-%m-%dT%H:%M:%S.%f")
```

```
            # Get bucket and folder from image and manifest file paths.
            bucket, prefix = image_s3_path.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
            if prefix[-1] != "/":
                prefix += "/"
            manifest_bucket, manifest_prefix = manifest_s3_path.replace(
                "s3://", ""
            ).split("/", 1)

            with open(output_manifest_file, "w") as mfile:
                logger.info("Creating manifest file")
                src_bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(bucket)

                # Create JSON lines for anomalous images.
                for obj in src_bucket.objects.filter(
                    Prefix=prefix + "anomaly/", Delimiter="/"
                ):
                    image_path = f"s3://{src_bucket.name}/{obj.key}"
                    manifest = Datasets.create_json_line(image_path, "anomaly",
dttm)
                    mfile.write(json.dumps(manifest) + "\n")

                # Create json lines for normal images.
                for obj in src_bucket.objects.filter(
                    Prefix=prefix + "normal/", Delimiter="/"
                ):
                    image_path = f"s3://{src_bucket.name}/{obj.key}"
                    manifest = Datasets.create_json_line(image_path, "normal", dttm)
                    mfile.write(json.dumps(manifest) + "\n")

            logger.info("Uploading manifest file to %s", manifest_s3_path)
            s3_resource.Bucket(manifest_bucket).upload_file(
                output_manifest_file, manifest_prefix
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Error uploading manifest.")
            raise
        except Exception:
            logger.exception("Error uploading manifest.")
            raise
        else:
            logger.info("Completed manifest file creation and upload.")
        finally:
            try:
                os.remove(output_manifest_file)
```

```
            except FileNotFoundError:
                pass

    @staticmethod
    def create_json_line(image, class_name, dttm):
        """
        Creates a single JSON line for an image.

        :param image: The S3 location for the image.
        :param class_name: The class of the image (normal or anomaly)
        :param dttm: The date and time that the JSON is created.
        """

        label = 0
        if class_name == "normal":
            label = 0
        elif class_name == "anomaly":
            label = 1
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected label value: %s for %s", label, image)
            raise Exception(f"Unexpected label value: {label} for {image}")

        manifest = {
            "source-ref": image,
            "anomaly-label": label,
            "anomaly-label-metadata": {
                "confidence": 1,
                "job-name": "labeling-job/anomaly-label",
                "class-name": class_name,
                "human-annotated": "yes",
                "creation-date": dttm,
                "type": "groundtruth/image-classification",
            },
        }
        return manifest
```

Create, train, and start a model

The following code example shows how to create, train, and start a Lookout for Vision model.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Creates and optionally starts an Amazon Lookout for Vision model using command line arguments. The example code creates a new project, training dataset, optional test dataset, and model. After model training is completed, you can use a provided script to try your model with an image.

This example requires a set of images to train its model. You can find example circuit board images on GitHub that you can use for training and testing. For details on how to copy these images to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket, see Prepare example images.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Lookout for Vision

Export the datasets from a project

The following code example shows how to export the datasets from a Lookout for Vision project.

For more information, see Exporting datasets from a project (SDK).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Purpose

Shows how to export the datasets (manifest files and images)
from an Amazon Lookout for Vision project to a new Amazon
S3 location.
"""

import argparse
```

```
import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def copy_file(s3_resource, source_file, destination_file):
    """
    Copies a file from a source Amazon S3 folder to a destination
    Amazon S3 folder.
    The destination can be in a different S3 bucket.
    :param s3: An Amazon S3 Boto3 resource.
    :param source_file: The Amazon S3 path to the source file.
    :param destination_file: The destination Amazon S3 path for
    the copy operation.
    """

    source_bucket, source_key = source_file.replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
    destination_bucket, destination_key = destination_file.replace("s3://",
 "").split(
        "/", 1
    )

    try:
        bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(destination_bucket)
        dest_object = bucket.Object(destination_key)
        dest_object.copy_from(CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key":
 source_key})
        dest_object.wait_until_exists()
        logger.info("Copied %s to %s", source_file, destination_file)
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "404":
            error_message = (
                f"Failed to copy {source_file} to "
                f"{destination_file}. : {error.response['Error']['Message']}"
            )
            logger.warning(error_message)
            error.response["Error"]["Message"] = error_message
        raise
```

```
def upload_manifest_file(s3_resource, manifest_file, destination):
    """
    Uploads a manifest file to a destination Amazon S3 folder.
    :param s3: An Amazon S3 Boto3 resource.
    :param manifest_file: The manifest file that you want to upload.
    :destination: The Amazon S3 folder location to upload the manifest
    file to.
    """

    destination_bucket, destination_key = destination.replace("s3://",
 "").split("/", 1)

    bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(destination_bucket)

    put_data = open(manifest_file, "rb")
    obj = bucket.Object(destination_key + manifest_file)

    try:
        obj.put(Body=put_data)
        obj.wait_until_exists()
        logger.info("Put manifest file '%s' to bucket '%s'.", obj.key,
 obj.bucket_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't put manifest file '%s' to bucket '%s'.", obj.key,
 obj.bucket_name
        )
        raise
    finally:
        if getattr(put_data, "close", None):
            put_data.close()


def get_dataset_types(lookoutvision_client, project):
    """
    Determines the types of the datasets (train or test) in an
    Amazon Lookout for Vision project.
    :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
    :param project: The Lookout for Vision project that you want to check.
    :return: The dataset types in the project.
    """

    try:
        response = lookoutvision_client.describe_project(ProjectName=project)
```

```
        datasets = []

        for dataset in response["ProjectDescription"]["Datasets"]:
            if dataset["Status"] in ("CREATE_COMPLETE", "UPDATE_COMPLETE"):
                datasets.append(dataset["DatasetType"])
        return datasets

    except lookoutvision_client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException:
        logger.exception("Project %s not found.", project)
        raise


def process_json_line(s3_resource, entry, dataset_type, destination):
    """
    Creates a JSON line for a new manifest file, copies image and mask to
    destination.
    :param s3_resource: An Amazon S3 Boto3 resource.
    :param entry: A JSON line from the manifest file.
    :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that
    you want to create the manifest file for.
    :param destination: The destination Amazon S3 folder for the manifest
    file and dataset images.
    :return: A JSON line with details for the destination location.
    """
    entry_json = json.loads(entry)

    print(f"source: {entry_json['source-ref']}")

    # Use existing folder paths to ensure console added image names don't clash.
    bucket, key = entry_json["source-ref"].replace("s3://", "").split("/", 1)
    logger.info("Source location: %s/%s", bucket, key)

    destination_image_location = destination + dataset_type + "/images/" + key

    copy_file(s3_resource, entry_json["source-ref"], destination_image_location)

    # Update JSON for writing.
    entry_json["source-ref"] = destination_image_location

    if "anomaly-mask-ref" in entry_json:
        source_anomaly_ref = entry_json["anomaly-mask-ref"]
        mask_bucket, mask_key = source_anomaly_ref.replace("s3://", "").split("/",
 1)
```

```
        destination_mask_location = destination + dataset_type + "/masks/" +
 mask_key
        entry_json["anomaly-mask-ref"] = destination_mask_location

        copy_file(s3_resource, source_anomaly_ref, entry_json["anomaly-mask-ref"])

    return entry_json


def write_manifest_file(
    lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, project, dataset_type, destination
):
    """
    Creates a manifest file for a dataset. Copies the manifest file and
    dataset images (and masks, if present) to the specified Amazon S3 destination.
    :param lookoutvision_client: A Lookout for Vision Boto3 client.
    :param project: The Lookout for Vision project that you want to use.
    :param dataset_type: The type (train or test) of the dataset that
    you want to create the manifest file for.
    :param destination: The destination Amazon S3 folder for the manifest file
    and dataset images.
    """

    try:
        # Create a reusable Paginator
        paginator = lookoutvision_client.get_paginator("list_dataset_entries")

        # Create a PageIterator from the Paginator
        page_iterator = paginator.paginate(
            ProjectName=project,
            DatasetType=dataset_type,
            PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 100},
        )

        output_manifest_file = dataset_type + ".manifest"

        # Create manifest file then upload to Amazon S3 with images.
        with open(output_manifest_file, "w", encoding="utf-8") as manifest_file:
            for page in page_iterator:
                for entry in page["DatasetEntries"]:
                    try:
                        entry_json = process_json_line(
                            s3_resource, entry, dataset_type, destination
```

```
                        )

                        manifest_file.write(json.dumps(entry_json) + "\n")

                    except ClientError as error:
                        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "404":
                            print(error.response["Error"]["Message"])
                            print(f"Excluded JSON line: {entry}")
                        else:
                            raise
        upload_manifest_file(
            s3_resource, output_manifest_file, destination + "datasets/"
        )

    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Problem getting dataset_entries")
        raise


def export_datasets(lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, project, destination):
    """
    Exports the datasets from an Amazon Lookout for Vision project to a specified
    Amazon S3 destination.
    :param project: The Lookout for Vision project that you want to use.
    :param destination: The destination Amazon S3 folder for the exported datasets.
    """
    # Add trailing backslash, if missing.
    destination = destination if destination[-1] == "/" else destination + "/"

    print(f"Exporting project {project} datasets to {destination}.")

    # Get each dataset and export to destination.

    dataset_types = get_dataset_types(lookoutvision_client, project)
    for dataset in dataset_types:
        logger.info("Copying %s dataset to %s.", dataset, destination)

        write_manifest_file(
            lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, project, dataset, destination
        )

    print("Exported dataset locations")
    for dataset in dataset_types:
        print(f"   {dataset}: {destination}datasets/{dataset}.manifest")
```

```
    print("Done.")


def add_arguments(parser):
    """
    Adds command line arguments to the parser.
    :param parser: The command line parser.
    """

    parser.add_argument("project", help="The project that contains the dataset.")
    parser.add_argument("destination", help="The destination Amazon S3 folder.")


def main():
    """
    Exports the datasets from an Amazon Lookout for Vision project to a
    destination Amazon S3 location.
    """
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(usage=argparse.SUPPRESS)
    add_arguments(parser)

    args = parser.parse_args()

    try:
        session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")
        lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")
        s3_resource = session.resource("s3")

        export_datasets(
            lookoutvision_client, s3_resource, args.project, args.destination
        )
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.exception(err)
        print(f"Failed: {format(err)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Find a project with a specific tag

The following code example shows how to find a Lookout for Vision project with a specific tag.

For more information, see Tagging models.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import argparse
import boto3

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def find_tag(tags, key, value):
    """
    Finds a tag in the supplied list of tags.

    :param tags: A list of tags associated with a Lookout for Vision model.
    :param key: The tag to search for.
    :param value: The tag key value to search for.
    :return: True if the tag value exists, otherwise False.
    """

    found = False
    for tag in tags:
        if key == tag["Key"]:
            logger.info("\t\tMatch found for tag: %s value: %s.", key, value)
            found = True
            break
    return found
```

```
def find_tag_in_projects(lookoutvision_client, key, value):
    """
    Finds Lookout for Vision models tagged with the supplied key and value.

    :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
    :param key: The tag key to find.
    :param value: The value of the tag that you want to find.
    return: A list of matching model versions (and model projects) that were found.
    """
    try:
        found_tags = []
        found = False
        projects = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
        # Iterate through each project and models within a project.
        for project in projects["Projects"]:
            logger.info("Searching project: %s ...", project["ProjectName"])

            response_models = lookoutvision_client.list_models(
                ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
            )
            for model in response_models["Models"]:
                model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"],
                    ModelVersion=model["ModelVersion"],
                )
                tags = lookoutvision_client.list_tags_for_resource(
                    ResourceArn=model_description["ModelDescription"]["ModelArn"]
                )

                logger.info(
                    "\tSearching model: %s for tag: %s value: %s.",
                    model_description["ModelDescription"]["ModelArn"],
                    key,
                    value,
                )
                if find_tag(tags["Tags"], key, value) is True:
                    found = True
                    logger.info(
                        "\t\tMATCH: Project: %s: model version %s",
                        project["ProjectName"],
                        model_description["ModelDescription"]["ModelVersion"],
                    )
                    found_tags.append(
                        {
```

```
                            "Project": project["ProjectName"],
                            "ModelVersion": model_description["ModelDescription"][
                                "ModelVersion"
                            ],
                        }
                    )
        if found is False:
            logger.info("No match for tag %s with value %s.", key, value)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Problem finding tags.")
        raise
    else:
        return found_tags


def main():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(usage=argparse.SUPPRESS)
    parser.add_argument("tag", help="The tag that you want to find.")
    parser.add_argument("value", help="The tag value that you want to find.")
    args = parser.parse_args()
    key = args.tag
    value = args.value

    session = boto3.Session(profile_name="lookoutvision-access")

    lookoutvision_client = session.client("lookoutvision")

    print(f"Searching your models for tag: {key} with value: {value}.")
    tagged_models = find_tag_in_projects(lookoutvision_client, key, value)

    print("Matched models\n--------------")
    if len(tagged_models) > 0:
        for model in tagged_models:
            print(f"Project: {model['Project']}. model version:
{model['ModelVersion']}")
    else:
        print("No matches found.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

List models that are currently hosted

The following code example shows how to list Lookout for Vision models that are currently hosted.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Hosting:

    @staticmethod
    def list_hosted(lookoutvision_client):
        """
        Displays a list of models in your account that are currently hosted.

        :param lookoutvision_client: A Boto3 Lookout for Vision client.
        """
        try:
            response = lookoutvision_client.list_projects()
            hosted = 0
            print("Hosted models\n-------------")

            for project in response["Projects"]:
                response_models = lookoutvision_client.list_models(
                    ProjectName=project["ProjectName"]
                )

                for model in response_models["Models"]:
                    model_description = lookoutvision_client.describe_model(
                        ProjectName=project["ProjectName"],
                        ModelVersion=model["ModelVersion"],
                    )

                    if model_description["ModelDescription"]["Status"] == "HOSTED":
                        print(
                            f"Project: {project['ProjectName']} Model version: "
                            f"{model['ModelVersion']}"
                        )
                        hosted += 1
```

```
            print(f"{hosted} model(s) hosted")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Problem listing hosted models.")
            raise
```

Managed Service for Apache Flink examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Managed Service for Apache Flink.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Data generator

Actions

`AddApplicationInput`

The following code example shows how to use `AddApplicationInput`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def add_input(self, input_prefix, stream_arn, input_schema):
        """
        Adds an input stream to the application. The input stream data is mapped
        to an in-application stream that can be processed by your code running in
        Kinesis Data Analytics.

        :param input_prefix: The prefix prepended to in-application input stream
names.
        :param stream_arn: The ARN of the input stream.
        :param input_schema: A schema that maps the data in the input stream to the
                             runtime environment. This can be automatically
generated
                             by using `discover_input_schema` or you can create it
                             yourself.
        :return: Metadata about the newly added input.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.add_application_input(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                CurrentApplicationVersionId=self.version_id,
                Input={
                    "NamePrefix": input_prefix,
                    "KinesisStreamsInput": {"ResourceARN": stream_arn},
                    "InputSchema": input_schema,
                },
            )
            self.version_id = response["ApplicationVersionId"]
            logger.info("Add input stream %s to application %s.", stream_arn,
self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
```

```
                "Couldn't add input stream %s to application %s.", stream_arn,
 self.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see AddApplicationInput in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AddApplicationOutput`

The following code example shows how to use `AddApplicationOutput`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def add_output(self, in_app_stream_name, output_arn):
        """
        Adds an output stream to the application. Kinesis Data Analytics maps data
        from the specified in-application stream to the output stream.
```

```
        :param in_app_stream_name: The name of the in-application stream to map
                                   to the output stream.
        :param output_arn: The ARN of the output stream.
        :return: A list of metadata about the output resources currently assigned
                 to the application.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.add_application_output(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                CurrentApplicationVersionId=self.version_id,
                Output={
                    "Name": in_app_stream_name,
                    "KinesisStreamsOutput": {"ResourceARN": output_arn},
                    "DestinationSchema": {"RecordFormatType": "JSON"},
                },
            )
            outputs = response["OutputDescriptions"]
            self.version_id = response["ApplicationVersionId"]
            logging.info(
                "Added output %s to %s, which now has %s outputs.",
                output_arn,
                self.name,
                len(outputs),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add output %s to %s.", output_arn, self.name)
            raise
        else:
            return outputs
```

- For API details, see AddApplicationOutput in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateApplication`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def create(self, app_name, role_arn, env="SQL-1_0"):
        """
        Creates a Kinesis Data Analytics application.

        :param app_name: The name of the application.
        :param role_arn: The ARN of a role that can be assumed by Kinesis Data
                         Analytics and grants needed permissions.
        :param env: The runtime environment of the application, such as SQL. Code
                    uploaded to the application runs in this environment.
        :return: Metadata about the newly created application.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.create_application(
                ApplicationName=app_name,
                RuntimeEnvironment=env,
                ServiceExecutionRole=role_arn,
            )
            details = response["ApplicationDetail"]
            self._update_details(details)
            logger.info("Application %s created.", app_name)
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create application %s.", app_name)
            raise
        else:
            return details
```

- For API details, see CreateApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteApplication`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes an application.
        """
        try:
```

```
            self.analytics_client.delete_application(
                ApplicationName=self.name, CreateTimestamp=self.create_timestamp
            )
            logger.info("Deleted application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete application %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplication`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def describe(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata about an application.
```

```
        :param name: The name of the application to look up.
        :return: Metadata about the application.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.analytics_client.describe_application(ApplicationName=name)
            details = response["ApplicationDetail"]
            self._update_details(details)
            logger.info("Got metadata for application %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get metadata for application %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return details
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeApplicationSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplicationSnapshot`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
```

```
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def describe_snapshot(self, application_name, snapshot_name):
        """
        Gets metadata about a previously saved application snapshot.

        :param application_name: The name of the application.
        :param snapshot_name: The name of the snapshot.
        :return: Metadata about the snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.describe_application_snapshot(
                ApplicationName=application_name, SnapshotName=snapshot_name
            )
            snapshot = response["SnapshotDetails"]
            logger.info(
                "Got metadata for snapshot %s of application %s.",
                snapshot_name,
                application_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get metadata for snapshot %s of application %s.",
                snapshot_name,
                application_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplicationSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DiscoverInputSchema`

The following code example shows how to use `DiscoverInputSchema`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def discover_input_schema(self, stream_arn, role_arn):
        """
        Discovers a schema that maps data in a stream to a format that is usable by
        an application's runtime environment. The stream must be active and have
        enough data moving through it for the service to sample. The returned schema
        can be used when you add the stream as an input to the application or you
 can
        write your own schema.

        :param stream_arn: The ARN of the stream to map.
        :param role_arn: A role that lets Kinesis Data Analytics read from the
 stream.
        :return: The discovered schema of the data in the input stream.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.discover_input_schema(
                ResourceARN=stream_arn,
                ServiceExecutionRole=role_arn,
                InputStartingPositionConfiguration={"InputStartingPosition": "NOW"},
            )
```

```
            schema = response["InputSchema"]
            logger.info("Discovered input schema for stream %s.", stream_arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't discover input schema for stream %s.", stream_arn
            )
            raise
        else:
            return schema
```

- For API details, see DiscoverInputSchema in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `StartApplication`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def start(self, input_id):
        """
```

```
        Starts an application. After the application is running, it reads from the
        specified input stream and runs the application code on the incoming data.

        :param input_id: The ID of the input to read.
        """
        try:
            self.analytics_client.start_application(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                RunConfiguration={
                    "SqlRunConfigurations": [
                        {
                            "InputId": input_id,
                            "InputStartingPositionConfiguration": {
                                "InputStartingPosition": "NOW"
                            },
                        }
                    ]
                },
            )
            logger.info("Started application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start application %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see StartApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StopApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `StopApplication`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def stop(self):
        """
        Stops an application. This stops the application from processing data but
        does not delete any resources.
        """
        try:
            self.analytics_client.stop_application(ApplicationName=self.name)
            logger.info("Stopping application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't stop application %s.", self.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see StopApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateApplication`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example updates the code that runs in an existing application.

```
class KinesisAnalyticsApplicationV2:
    """Encapsulates Kinesis Data Analytics application functions."""

    def __init__(self, analytics_client):
        """
        :param analytics_client: A Boto3 Kinesis Data Analytics v2 client.
        """
        self.analytics_client = analytics_client
        self.name = None
        self.arn = None
        self.version_id = None
        self.create_timestamp = None


    def update_code(self, code):
        """
        Updates the code that runs in the application. The code must run in the
        runtime environment of the application, such as SQL. Application code
        typically reads data from in-application streams and transforms it in some
 way.

        :param code: The code to upload. This completely replaces any existing code
                     in the application.
        :return: Metadata about the application.
        """
        try:
            response = self.analytics_client.update_application(
                ApplicationName=self.name,
                CurrentApplicationVersionId=self.version_id,
                ApplicationConfigurationUpdate={
                    "ApplicationCodeConfigurationUpdate": {
                        "CodeContentTypeUpdate": "PLAINTEXT",
                        "CodeContentUpdate": {"TextContentUpdate": code},
                    }
                },
            )
            details = response["ApplicationDetail"]
            self.version_id = details["ApplicationVersionId"]
            logger.info("Update code for application %s.", self.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't update code for application %s.", self.name)
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return details
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Data generator

Generate a stream with a referrer

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with a referrer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {"REFERRER": "http://www.amazon.com"}


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with blood pressure anomalies

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with blood pressure anomalies.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
from enum import Enum
import json
import random
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


class PressureType(Enum):
    low = "LOW"
    normal = "NORMAL"
    high = "HIGH"


def get_blood_pressure(pressure_type):
    pressure = {"BloodPressureLevel": pressure_type.value}
    if pressure_type == PressureType.low:
        pressure["Systolic"] = random.randint(50, 80)
        pressure["Diastolic"] = random.randint(30, 50)
    elif pressure_type == PressureType.normal:
        pressure["Systolic"] = random.randint(90, 120)
        pressure["Diastolic"] = random.randint(60, 80)
    elif pressure_type == PressureType.high:
        pressure["Systolic"] = random.randint(130, 200)
```

```
        pressure["Diastolic"] = random.randint(90, 150)
    else:
        raise TypeError
    return pressure


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        rnd = random.random()
        pressure_type = (
            PressureType.low
            if rnd < 0.005
            else PressureType.high
            if rnd > 0.995
            else PressureType.normal
        )
        blood_pressure = get_blood_pressure(pressure_type)
        print(blood_pressure)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name,
            Data=json.dumps(blood_pressure),
            PartitionKey="partitionkey",
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with data in columns

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with data in columns.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {"Col_A": "a", "Col_B": "b", "Col_C": "c", "Col_E_Unstructured": "x,y,z"}


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with heart rate anomalies

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with heart rate anomalies.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
from enum import Enum
import json
import random
```

```
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


class RateType(Enum):
    normal = "NORMAL"
    high = "HIGH"


def get_heart_rate(rate_type):
    if rate_type == RateType.normal:
        rate = random.randint(60, 100)
    elif rate_type == RateType.high:
        rate = random.randint(150, 200)
    else:
        raise TypeError
    return {"heartRate": rate, "rateType": rate_type.value}


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client, output=True):
    while True:
        rnd = random.random()
        rate_type = RateType.high if rnd < 0.01 else RateType.normal
        heart_rate = get_heart_rate(rate_type)
        if output:
            print(heart_rate)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name,
            Data=json.dumps(heart_rate),
            PartitionKey="partitionkey",
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with hotspots

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with hotspots.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
from pprint import pprint
import random
import time
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_hotspot(field, spot_size):
    hotspot = {
        "left": field["left"] + random.random() * (field["width"] - spot_size),
        "width": spot_size,
        "top": field["top"] + random.random() * (field["height"] - spot_size),
        "height": spot_size,
    }
    return hotspot


def get_record(field, hotspot, hotspot_weight):
    rectangle = hotspot if random.random() < hotspot_weight else field
    point = {
        "x": rectangle["left"] + random.random() * rectangle["width"],
        "y": rectangle["top"] + random.random() * rectangle["height"],
        "is_hot": "Y" if rectangle is hotspot else "N",
    }
    return {"Data": json.dumps(point), "PartitionKey": "partition_key"}


def generate(
    stream_name, field, hotspot_size, hotspot_weight, batch_size, kinesis_client
):
    """
```

```
    Generates points used as input to a hotspot detection algorithm.
    With probability hotspot_weight (20%), a point is drawn from the hotspot;
    otherwise, it is drawn from the base field. The location of the hotspot
    changes for every 1000 points generated.
    """
    points_generated = 0
    hotspot = None
    while True:
        if points_generated % 1000 == 0:
            hotspot = get_hotspot(field, hotspot_size)
        records = [
            get_record(field, hotspot, hotspot_weight) for _ in range(batch_size)
        ]
        points_generated += len(records)
        pprint(records)
        kinesis_client.put_records(StreamName=stream_name, Records=records)

        time.sleep(0.1)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(
        stream_name=STREAM_NAME,
        field={"left": 0, "width": 10, "top": 0, "height": 10},
        hotspot_size=1,
        hotspot_weight=0.2,
        batch_size=10,
        kinesis_client=boto3.client("kinesis"),
    )
```

Generate a stream with log entries

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with log entries.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {
        "LOGENTRY": "203.0.113.24 - - [25/Mar/2018:15:25:37 -0700] "
        '"GET /index.php HTTP/1.1" 200 125 "-" '
        '"Mozilla/5.0 [en] Gecko/20100101 Firefox/52.0"'
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with stagger data

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with stagger data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import datetime
import json
import random
import time
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    event_time = datetime.datetime.utcnow() - datetime.timedelta(seconds=10)
    return {
        "EVENT_TIME": event_time.isoformat(),
        "TICKER": random.choice(["AAPL", "AMZN", "MSFT", "INTC", "TBV"]),
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        # Send six records, ten seconds apart, with the same event time and ticker
        for _ in range(6):
            print(data)
            kinesis_client.put_record(
                StreamName=stream_name,
                Data=json.dumps(data),
                PartitionKey="partitionkey",
            )
            time.sleep(10)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with stock ticker data

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with stock ticker data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import datetime
import json
import random
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"


def get_data():
    return {
        "EVENT_TIME": datetime.datetime.now().isoformat(),
        "TICKER": random.choice(["AAPL", "AMZN", "MSFT", "INTC", "TBV"]),
        "PRICE": round(random.random() * 100, 2),
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with two data types

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with two data types.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import random
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "OrdersAndTradesStream"
PARTITION_KEY = "partition_key"


def get_order(order_id, ticker):
    return {
        "RecordType": "Order",
        "Oid": order_id,
        "Oticker": ticker,
        "Oprice": random.randint(500, 10000),
        "Otype": "Sell",
    }


def get_trade(order_id, trade_id, ticker):
    return {
        "RecordType": "Trade",
        "Tid": trade_id,
        "Toid": order_id,
        "Tticker": ticker,
        "Tprice": random.randint(0, 3000),
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    order_id = 1
```

```
    while True:
        ticker = random.choice(["AAAA", "BBBB", "CCCC"])
        order = get_order(order_id, ticker)
        print(order)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(order),
 PartitionKey=PARTITION_KEY
        )
        for trade_id in range(1, random.randint(0, 6)):
            trade = get_trade(order_id, trade_id, ticker)
            print(trade)
            kinesis_client.put_record(
                StreamName=stream_name,
                Data=json.dumps(trade),
                PartitionKey=PARTITION_KEY,
            )
        order_id += 1


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

Generate a stream with web log data

The following code example shows how to generate a Kinesis stream with web log data.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import json
import boto3

STREAM_NAME = "ExampleInputStream"
```

```
def get_data():
    return {
        "log": "192.168.254.30 - John [24/May/2004:22:01:02 -0700] "
        '"GET /icons/apache_pb.gif HTTP/1.1" 304 0'
    }


def generate(stream_name, kinesis_client):
    while True:
        data = get_data()
        print(data)
        kinesis_client.put_record(
            StreamName=stream_name, Data=json.dumps(data),
 PartitionKey="partitionkey"
        )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    generate(STREAM_NAME, boto3.client("kinesis"))
```

AWS Marketplace Catalog API examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Marketplace Catalog API.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- AMI products
- Channel partner offers
- Container products
- Entities
- Offers
- Products
- Resale authorization

- SaaS products
- Utilities

AMI products

Add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms

The following code example shows how to add a dimension to an existing AMI product and update the offer pricing terms.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Description": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Name": "m7g.8xlarge",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.4xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.2xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.45"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m7g.8xlarge",
                                        "Price": "0.55"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to add a dimension to an existing
 AMI product and update the offer pricing terms.
CAPI-23
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Add dimension for AMI product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Add a region where an AMI product is deployed

The following code example shows how to add a region where an AMI product is deployed.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
```

```
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-2",
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to add a region where my
AMI product is deployed
CAPI-25A
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Add a region where my AMI product is deployed",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited AMI product and a public offer with hourly annual pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-1111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
```

```
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-annual pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
```

```
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a public or limited AMI
product and public offer with hourly-annual pricing and standard or custom EULA
CAPI-06
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create limited AMI product and public offer with hourly-annual pricing and
 standard EULA",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly monthly pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-11111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
 "arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
```

```
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
```

```
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly-monthly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "RecurringPaymentTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "BillingPeriod": "Monthly",
                        "Price": "15.0"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a public or limited AMI
product and public offer with hourly-monthly pricing and standard or custom EULA
CAPI-08
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "create limited AMI product and public offer with hourly-monthly pricing and
 standard EULA",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing. This example creates either and standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Operating Systems"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-east-1"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddInstanceTypes",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "InstanceTypes": [
                    "t2.micro"
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Version": {
                    "VersionTitle": "Test AMI Version1.0",
                    "ReleaseNotes": "Test AMI Version"
                },
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "AmiDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "AmiSource": {
                                    "AmiId": "ami-1111111111111111",
                                    "AccessRoleArn":
"arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/AWSMarketplaceAmiIngestion",
                                    "UserName": "ec2-user",
                                    "OperatingSystemName": "AMAZONLINUX",
                                    "OperatingSystemVersion": "10.0.14393",
                                    "ScanningPort": 22
                                },
                                "UsageInstructions": "Test AMI Version",
                                "RecommendedInstanceType": "t2.micro",
                                "SecurityGroups": [
                                    {
                                        "IpProtocol": "tcp",
                                        "IpRanges": [
                                            "0.0.0.0/0"
                                        ],
                                        "FromPort": 10,
                                        "ToPort": 22
                                    }
                                ]
```

```
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "t2.micro",
                    "Description": "t2.micro",
                    "Name": "t2.micro",
                    "Types": [
                        "Metered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Hrs"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with hourly pricing for AmiProduct
using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
```

```
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to Create a public or limited AMI
 product
and public offer with hourly pricing and standard or custom EULA
CAPI-07
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create limited AMI product and public offer with hourly pricing and
 standard EULA",
    )
```

```
    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer

The following code example shows how to create an draft AMI product with a draft public offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AMI draft product
with a draft public offer.
CAPI-02
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "AMI draft product with draft public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed

The following code example shows how to restrict a region where an AMI product is deployed.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "RestrictRegions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Regions": [
                    "us-west-2"
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to restrict a region where my
```

```
AMI product is deployed
CAPI-25B
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Add a region where my AMI product is deployed",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Restrict product visibility

The following code example shows how to restrict product visibility.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateVisibility",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "TargetVisibility": "Restricted"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to change a product visibility to
 restricted
CAPI-17
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
```

```
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Restrict existing AMI")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions

The following code example shows how to specify whether AMI assets are deployed in new regions built by AWS to support future regions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateFutureRegionSupport",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "AmiProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "FutureRegionSupport": {
                    "SupportedRegions": [
                        "All"
```

```
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to modify a product to support all
 future regions
CAPI-26
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update future region support")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Channel partner offers

Create a draft CPPO for any product type

The following code example shows how to create a draft CPPO for any product type so you can review them internally before publishing to buyers.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "11111111-1111-1111-1111-111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer name"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create “draft” CPPO
for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) that can be reviewed internally
before publishing to buyers
CAPI-60
```

```
"""
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # noqa: E402
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # noqa: E402

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Create a draft CPPO offer for a product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a resale authorization replacement private offer with contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a resale authorization replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111",
                "ResaleAuthorizationId": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private resale replacement offer with contract
pricing for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOfferResaleAuth.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a resale authorization
 replacement private offer
from an existing agreement with contract pricing
```

```
CAPI-96
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create resale authorization replacement private offer with contract
 pricing",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all CPPOs created by a channel partner

The following code example shows how to list all CPPOs created by a channel partner.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list all Channel Partner Offers
in an account

Program executed with no arguments:
ie. python3 list_all_cppo_offers.py

CAPI-93
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")


def get_offer_entities():
    """
    Returns a list of all offers in the account
    """

    next_token = ""  # nosec: B105
    response_list = []

    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
 EntityType="Offer")
    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
        raise

    response_list.append(response)

    # Results are paginated depending on number of entities returned
    while "NextToken" in response:
        next_token = response["NextToken"]

        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType="Offer",
                NextToken=next_token,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
            raise

        if "NextToken" in response:
            response_list.append(response)

    return response_list


def build_offer_list(response_list):
    """
    Cleans up list_entities response list with just list of offer IDs
    """
    offer_list = []

    for response in response_list:
        for entity in response["EntitySummaryList"]:
            offer_list.append(entity["EntityId"])

    return offer_list


def check_offer_resaleauth(offer_id):
    """
    Checks to see if an offer is based on a resale authorization
    """
    offer_response = describe_entity(offer_id)
    offer_details = json.loads(offer_response["Details"])
```

```
    if offer_details is None:
        offer_details = offer_response["DetailsDocument"]
    if "ResaleAuthorizationId" in offer_details and
 offer_details["ResaleAuthorizationId"] is not None:
        return offer_id
    else:
        return None


def describe_entity(entity_id):
    """
    General purpose describe entity call
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception(f"Couldn't describe entity. {e}")
        raise

    return response


def get_resaleauth_offers():
    """
    Returns a list of all offers in the account that are
    based on a resale authorization
    """
    resale_offer_list = []

    response_list = get_offer_entities()
    offer_list = build_offer_list(response_list)
    for offer in offer_list:
        print ("offer id " + offer)
        offer_info = check_offer_resaleauth(offer)
        if offer_info is not None:
            resale_offer_list.append(offer_info)

    return resale_offer_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    print(get_resaleauth_offers())
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner

The following code example shows how to list all shared resale authorizations available to a channel partner.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to list all resale authorizations
shared to an account

Program executed with no arguments:
ie. python3 list_all_resale_authorizations.py

CAPI-94
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as hlp  # noqa: E402
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")


def get_shared_entities():
```

```
    next_token = ""  # nosec: B105
    response_list = []

    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityType="ResaleAuthorization",
            OwnershipType="SHARED",
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
        raise

    response_list.append(response)

    # Results can be paginated depending on number of entities returned
    while "NextToken" in response:
        next_token = response["NextToken"]

        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType="ResaleAuthorization",
                OwnershipType="SHARED",
                NextToken=next_token,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logging.exception(f"Couldn't list entities. {e}")
            raise

        if "NextToken" in response:
            response_list.append(response)

    return response_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    response_list = get_shared_entities()
    hlp.pretty_print_datetime(response_list)
```

- For API details, see ListEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA

The following code example shows how to publish a CPPO and append a buyer EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPOoffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Offer",
                "Description":"Test product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
           {
               "Type": "LegalTerm",
               "Documents": [
                {
                 "Type": "CustomEula",
                 "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/custom-eula.pdf"
                }
               ]
```

```
            }
        ]
          }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["222222222222"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-07-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPOoffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to publish CPPO
for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) and append buyer EULA
"""



import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Publish CPPO for any product type and append buyer EULA",
    )

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup

The following code example shows how to publish a CPPO using one-time resale authorization on AMI, SaaS, or Container products and update price markup.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPO",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test Offer name",
                "Description":"Test Offer description"
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
        }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["111111111111"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to Create CPPO using one-time resale
authorization on AMI, SaaS or Container products and update price markup
CAPI-63
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create CPPO using one-time resale authorization and update price markup"
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a draft CPPO and update price markup

The following code example shows how to publish a draft CPPO and update price markup.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateOfferUsingResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
            "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateCPPO",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ResaleAuthorizationId":"resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test Offer name",
                "Description":"Test Offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateMarkup",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Percentage" : "5.0"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": ["111111111111"]
                    }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
                }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P450D"
                    }
                ]
             }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateCPPO.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to publish “draft” CPPO
for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) and update price markup
CAPI-72
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Publish draft CPPO for any product type adn update price markup"
    )

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the expiration date of a CPPO

The following code example shows how to update the expiration date of a CPPO to give buyers more time to evaluate and accept the offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-07-31"
                }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update the expiry
date of a CPPO offer
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Update the expiry date of a CPPO offer"
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Container products

Create a draft container product with a draft public offer

The following code example shows how to create a draft container product with a draft public offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an container draft product
with a draft public offer.
```

```
CAPI-03
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create a draft container product with a draft public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a limited container product with a public offer and contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a limited container product with a public offer, contract pricing, and standard EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {},
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "Categories": [
                    "Streaming solutions"
                ],
                "ProductTitle": "ContainerProduct",
                "AdditionalResources": [],
                "LongDescription": "Long description goes here",
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "container streaming"
                ],
                "ShortDescription": "Description1",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Highlight 1",
                    "Highlight 2"
                ],
                "SupportDescription": "No support available",
```

```
                "VideoUrls": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "Cores",
                    "Description": "Cores per cluster",
                    "Name": "Cores",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddRepositories",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Repositories": [
                    {
```

```
                        "RepositoryName": "uniquerepositoryname",
                        "RepositoryType": "ECR"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ContainerProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
```

```
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Cores",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
```

```
                        "RefundPolicy": "No refunds"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Some container offer Name",
                "Description": "Some interesting container offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create limited container
product with public offer, contract pricing and standard EULA
CAPI-15
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create limited container product with public offer contract pricing and
 standard EULA",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Entities

Describe all entities in a single call

The following code example shows how to describe all entities in a single call.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to describe for multiple entities
 information in the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-98
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

PRODUCT_ID = "prod-1111111111111"
OFFER_ID = "offer-1111111111111"
MARKETPLACE_CATALOG = "AWSMarketplace"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_entities_information(mp_client):
    """
    Returns information about a given product
```

```
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of product information
    """

    entity_request_list_param = [
        {'EntityId': PRODUCT_ID, 'Catalog': MARKETPLACE_CATALOG},
        {'EntityId': OFFER_ID, 'Catalog': MARKETPLACE_CATALOG}
    ]
    try:
        response = mp_client.batch_describe_entities(
            EntityRequestList=entity_request_list_param
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error: %s", e)
        raise


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for entities in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    response = get_entities_information(mp_client)
    print("Successful entities response -")
    pretty_print(response["EntityDetails"])
    print("Failed entities response -")
    pretty_print(response["Errors"])


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see BatchDescribeEntities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List and describe all offers associated with a product

The following code example shows how to list and describe all offers associated with a product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to retrieve all offer information
related to a single product
CAPI-97
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from utils import helpers

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")


def get_entity_information(entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given entity
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of entity information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )
```

```
        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def list_entity_details(entity_type, entity_id):
    """
    Returns details about a given entity and entity type
    """

    entity_summary_list = []

    # filter will return details for given entity_id with BuyerAccounts targeting
    filter_list_param = {
        'OfferFilters':{
            'ProductId':{
                'ValueList':[entity_id]
            },
            'Targeting': {
                'ValueList': ["BuyerAccounts"]
            }
        }
    }

    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityType=entity_type,
            EntityTypeFilters = filter_list_param,
            MaxResults=10
        )

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    # add results to entity_summary_list
```

```
    entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

    # if there are more than 10 offers, paginate through the results
    while "NextToken" in response and response["NextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType=entity_type,
                EntityTypeFilters = filter_list_param,
                NextToken=response["NextToken"],
                MaxResults=10
            )

        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
                logger.error("Entity ID %s not found.", entity_id)
            else:
                logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

        # add results to entity_summary_list
        entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

        return entity_summary_list

if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()

    parser.add_argument(
        "--entity-id",
        "-eid",
        help="Provide Entity ID corresponding to a product to filter offers on",
        required=True,
    )

    args = parser.parse_args()

    # Gets a offers associated with the entity_id
    response = list_entity_details(
        "Offer",
        entity_id=args.entity_id
    )

    if response: # if response is not empty
```

```
        # list_entity_details returns a list of offers
        for offer in response:

            print("-"*128)
            print(f"Terms for Offer ID: {offer['EntityId']}")
            print("-"*128)

            #retrieve offer information for each offer
            entity_information = get_entity_information(offer["EntityId"])

            helpers.pretty_print_datetime(entity_information)

    else:
        print(f"No information found for Entity ID: {args.entity_id}")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Offers

Create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer

The following code example shows how to create a custom dimension for a SaaS product and create a private offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Description": "Custom Pricing 4 w/ terms and coverage to be
defined in Private Offer",
                    "Unit": "Units",
                    "Key": "Custom4",
                    "Name": "Custom Pricing 4"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange"
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product",
                "Description": "Private Test Offer - SaaS Contract Product"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "Custom4",
                                        "Price": "300.0"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P36M"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ],
    "ChangeSetName": "PrivateOfferWithCustomDimension"
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a SaaS product custom
 dimension and private offer
CAPI-91
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "Create a SaaS product custom dimension and private offer"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a draft private offer for an AMI or SaaS product so you can review it internally before publishing to buyers.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Private Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create “draft” Private Offer
for any AMI or SAAS product type that can be reviewed internally
before publishing to buyers
CAPI-30
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Private offer for AMI product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract and Pay-As-You-Go pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 contract with PAYG pricing for my SaaS product
CAPI-34
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create private offer with contract with PAYG pricing for my SaaS product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract pricing and a flexible payment schedule for a SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
 API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
 SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
```

```
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P12M"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Some kind of refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer
with contract pricing and flexible payment schedule for my SaaS product
CAPI-39
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create private offer with contract pricing and flexible payment schedule
 for my SaaS product",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract pricing for a Container product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for Container product using AWS
 Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer for Container product with
 contract pricing using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReqPerHour",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer (target
 buyers)
for my Container product with contract pricing
CAPI-36
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "publish a private offer for my Container product with contract pricing",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with contract pricing for an AMI product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
 Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "ReadOnlyUsers",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 contract pricing for my AMI product
CAPI-35
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "create private offer with contract pricing for my AMI product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with hourly annual pricing and a flexible payment schedule for an AMI product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
 Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
```

```
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Duration": "P365D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                "MaxQuantity": 1
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
```

```
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-02-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "170.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
```

```
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 hourly annual pricing and flexible payment schedule for my AMI product
CAPI-XX
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create private offer with hourly annual pricing and flexible payment
 schedule for my AMI product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with hourly annual pricing for an AMI product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
 Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly annual pricing for
 AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
```

```
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.17"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "220.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
```

```
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P650D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 hourly annual pricing for my AMI product
CAPI-31
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "create private offer with hourly annual pricing for my AMI
 product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with hourly pricing for an AMI product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with hourly pricing for
AmiProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2025-01-01"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 hourly pricing for my AMI product
CAPI-32
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "create private offer with hourly pricing for my AMI product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
```

```
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.22"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementDuration": "P30D"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 subscription pricing for my SaaS product
CAPI-33
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "Create private offer with subscription pricing for my SaaS
 product"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a private offer with tiered contract pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test private offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace
API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test private offer with subscription pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
```

```
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "120.00"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "200.00"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Disallowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Disallowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a private offer with
 tiered contract pricing for my SaaS product
CAPI-XX
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create private offer with tiered contract pricing for my SaaS product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to create a public free trial offer with subscription pricing for a SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111"
            }
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public free trial offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
Marketplace API Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public free trial offer with subscription
pricing for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Free",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P20D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a public free trial offer
 with subscription pricing for SaaS product
CAPI-13
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create public free trial offer with subscription pricing for SaaS product",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a replacement private offer with contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a replacement private offer from an existing agreement with contract pricing.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType" : "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateReplacementOffer",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AgreementId": "agmt-111111111111111111111111"
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test replacement offer for SaaSProduct using AWS
Marketplace API Reference Codes",
                "Description": "Test private replacement offer with contract pricing
for SaaSProduct"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.0",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "MaxQuantity": 2
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateValidityTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
```

```
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ValidityTerm",
                        "AgreementEndDate": "2024-01-30"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "PaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2024-01-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "0"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateReplacementOffer.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a replacement private
 offer
from an existing agreement with contract pricing
CAPI-95
"""



import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
```

```
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create replacement private offer with contract pricing..",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Describe a public offer

The following code example shows how to describe a public offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
```

```
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) search for offer information in the
 AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-29
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

OFFER_ID = "offer-1111111111111"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_offer_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given offer
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of offer information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Offer with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
```

```
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an offer in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    pretty_print(get_offer_information(mp_client, OFFER_ID))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Expire a draft private offer

The following code example shows how to set the expiration date of a private offer to a date in the past so that buyers no longer see the offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "Test Private Offer"
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create “draft” Private Offer
for any AMI or SAAS product type that can be reviewed internally
before publishing to buyers
CAPI-30
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Private offer for AMI product")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all private offers

The following code example shows how to list all private offers.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) for listing offers in the AWS
 Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-40
"""
import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# Constants
MAX_RESULTS = 10
CATALOG = "AWSMarketplace"
ENTITY_TYPE = "Offer"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def list_private_offers(mp_client, return_all_private_offers):
    """
    This method retrieves list of all Private Offers for this account.
    """
    entity_summary_list = []
    filter_list_param = {
        'OfferFilters': {
```

```
            'Targeting': {
                'ValueList': ["BuyerAccounts"]
            }
        }
    }
    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog=CATALOG,
            EntityType=ENTITY_TYPE,
            EntityTypeFilters=filter_list_param,
            MaxResults=MAX_RESULTS
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request: %s", e)
        raise

    entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])
    logger.info("Number of results in first iteration: %d " %
len(entity_summary_list))

    # Get subsequent pages of results if previous response contained a NextToken
    while "NextToken" in response and return_all_private_offers:
        try:
            logger.info("Getting Next Token results: %s " % response["NextToken"])
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog=CATALOG,
                EntityType=ENTITY_TYPE,
                EntityTypeFilters=filter_list_param,
                MaxResults=MAX_RESULTS,
                NextToken=response["NextToken"]
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request: %s", e)
            raise

        entity_summary_list.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])
        logger.info(
            "Number of results in the current iteration: %d "
            % len(response["EntitySummaryList"])
        )

    return entity_summary_list
```

```
def get_offer_details(mp_client, offer):
    """
    Describe the details of the Offer.
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace", EntityId=offer["EntityId"]
        )

        return response
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Error: Couldn't get details of the Offer.")
        raise


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Demo  - List Private offers.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    # Get list of all Offers.
    private_offers = list_private_offers(mp_client, False)
    count = len(private_offers)

    logger.info("Number of Offers: %d " % count)
    offer_counter = 0
    # Display details of each Offer.
    for offer in private_offers:
        print("-" * 88)
        offer_counter += 1
        print("Displaying Offer details for Offer# %d" % offer_counter)
        entity = get_offer_details(mp_client, offer)
        pretty_print(entity)

    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing

The following code example shows how to update an offer to apply a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
```

```
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update an offer to apply contract
 with PAYG pricing
CAPI-21
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer to apply contract with PAYG pricing")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing

The following code example shows how to update an offer to apply hourly annual pricing.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "0.13"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P365D"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "m5.large",
                                        "Price": "20.03"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
```

```
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update an offer to apply hourly
 annual pricing
CAPI-20
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer with hourly annual pricing")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions

The following code example shows how to update an offer to apply targeting to specific geographic regions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "CountryCodes": [
                        "US",
                        "ES",
                        "FR",
                        "AU"
                    ]
                }
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update an offer to apply
 targeting to certain geographic regions.
CAPI-19
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer targeting")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update name and description of a public offer

The following code example shows how to update name and description of a public offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New offer name",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update name and description of my
 offer
CAPI-18
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # type: ignore
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # type: ignore

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update name and description of my offer")


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the EULA of an offer

The following code example shows how to update the EULA of an offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update EULA of my offer
CAPI-18
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # type: ignore
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # type: ignore

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update EULA of my offer")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the expiration date of a private offer to a future date

The following code example shows how to update the expiration date of a private offer to a date in the future to give buyers more time to evaluate and accept the offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2026-01-01"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to set expiry date of a private
 offer to a date in the future so that my buyers get more time to evaluate and
 accept the offer.
CAPI-37
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd
```

```
fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update offer expiration date")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product

The following code example shows how to update the free trial duration of a public free trial offer for a SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "FreeTrialPricingTerm",
                        "Duration": "P21D",
                        "Grants": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to change free trial duration for my
 SaaS product by modifying my free trial public offer
CAPI-14
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Change free trial duration for SaaS product")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update the refund policy of an offer

The following code example shows how to update the refund policy of an offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "offer-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update refund policy of my offer
CAPI-18
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc  # type: ignore
import utils.stringify_details as sd  # type: ignore

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Update refund policy of my public offer")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Products

Describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product

The following code example shows how to describe an AMI, SaaS, or Container product and check if it contains all the information you want to know about the product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) search for product information in
 the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-28
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

PRODUCT_ID = "prod-1111111111111"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_product_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given product
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of product information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
```

```
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Product with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for a product in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    pretty_print(get_product_information(mp_client, PRODUCT_ID))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

List all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers

The following code example shows how to list all AMI, SaaS, or Container products and associated public offers.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to display information about AMI
 products and their associated offers in the AWS Marketplace Catalog
CAPI-27
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

try:
    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")
except ClientError as e:
    logger.error("Could not create boto3 client.")
    raise


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def describe_entity(entity_id):
    """
    Returns entity details
    Args: entity_id str: The entity ID of the product or offer
    Returns: dict: The entity details
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace", EntityId=entity_id
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete describe_entity request.")
        raise
```

```
    # De-stringify the details
    response["Details"] = json.loads(response["Details"])

    return response


def get_entities(entity_type, visibility=None):
    """
    Returns list of entities for provided entity_type
    Args: entity_type str: Type of entity list to return, in our case AmiProduct or
 Offer
    Returns: list: Abbreviated list of entity information
    """
    EntitySummaryList = []

    # Get the first page of results
    try:
        response = mp_client.list_entities(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityType=entity_type,
            MaxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request.")
        raise

    EntitySummaryList.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])

    # Get subsequent pages of results if previous response contained a NextToken
    while "NextToken" in response:
        try:
            response = mp_client.list_entities(
                Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                EntityType=entity_type,
                MaxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                NextToken=response["NextToken"],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request.")
            raise

        EntitySummaryList.extend(response["EntitySummaryList"])
```

```
    # if visibility is provided, filter the list to only include entities with that
 visibility
    if visibility is not None:
        EntitySummaryList = [
            entity for entity in EntitySummaryList if entity["Visibility"] ==
 visibility
        ]

    return EntitySummaryList


def get_enhanced_product_list(entity_type):
    """
    Returns an enhanced list of products with product details and offer details
    Args: entity_type str: Type of entity list to return, in our case AmiProduct
    Returns: list: Enhanced list of dictionary objects containing product and offer
 details
    """

    product_list = get_entities(entity_type)

    # Loop through product list and append product details to each product
    for product in product_list:
        # appends product details to product dictionary
        product["ProductDetails"] = describe_entity(product["EntityId"])["Details"]
        # creating an empty list for offer details
        product["OfferDetailsList"] = []

    return product_list


def attach_offer_details(product_list):
    """
    Loops through offer information and appends offer details to product list
    Args: product_list list: List of product dictionaries
    Returns: list: Enhanced list of dictionary objects containing product and offer
 details
    """
    offer_list = get_entities("Offer", "Public")

    # Loop through offer list and append offer details to each product
    for offer in offer_list:
        offer["OfferDetails"] = describe_entity(offer["EntityId"])["Details"]
```

```
        # Extracts product-id from offer
        product_id = offer["OfferDetails"]["ProductId"]

        # Determines if product-id referenced in offer matches product-id in product
 list
        product_dict = next(
            filter(lambda product: product["EntityId"] == product_id, product_list),
            None,
        )

        # If product-id matches, appends offer details to product dictionary
        if product_dict is not None:
            # logger.info(f"Offer product Id {offer['OfferDetails']['ProductId']}
 found in product dictionary. Updating product dictionary with offer details")
            product_dict["OfferDetailsList"].append(offer["OfferDetails"])

        else:
            # logger.info("Offer product Id {offer['OfferDetails']['ProductId']} not
 found. Skipping offer details update")
            pass

    return product_list


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Retrieving products and public offer information....")
    print("-" * 88)

    # Builds a list of products and their details
    product_list = get_enhanced_product_list("AmiProduct")

    # Queries offer information and attaches it to the product list
    product_offer_list = attach_offer_details(product_list)

    pretty_print(product_offer_list)
    return product_offer_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DescribeEntity
  - ListEntities

Resale authorization

Create draft resale authorization

The following code example shows how to create draft resale authorization for any product type so you can review them internally before publishing to a Channel Partner.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product so my CP
 can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-41
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "draft resale auth")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Describe a resale authorization

The following code example shows how to describe a resale authorization.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) search for product information in
 the AWS Marketplace Catalog
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

resaleAuthorizationId = "resaleauthz-1111111111111"


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


def get_product_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given product
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of product information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
```

```
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Product with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for a product in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    pretty_print(get_product_information(mp_client, resaleAuthorizationId))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeEntity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer

The following code example shows how to publish a one-time resale authorization with a private offer so a Channel Partner can use it to create a Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
```

```
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product so my CP
can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-42
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set, "onetime resale auth with private offer"
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for an AMI product with hourly annual pricing so a Channel Partner can use it to create a CPPO.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with expiry date on my SaaS/AMI product so
 my CP can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-48
"""



import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
```

```
change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "multi-use resale auth with expiry date")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and a EULA

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
```

```
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/Container
 product and add custom EULA to be sent to the buyer
CAPI-56
```

```
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "multiuse resale auth with expiry date and custom
 EULA")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date and reseller contract documentation

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-12-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
```

```
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"}
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleUsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.micro",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
```

```
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/Container
 product
and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and channel partner
CAPI-57
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "multi use resale auth with contract doc",
    )

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiration and add a specific buyer account

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization with an expiration date for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
```

```
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-05-31"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiry date for any product type (AMI/
SaaS/Container) and add specific buyer account for the resale
CAPI-82
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Publish multi-use resale authorization with expiry date and add specific
 buyer account",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for an AMI product with hourly annual pricing so a CP can use that to create a CPPO.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with no expiry date on my SaaS/AMI product
 so my CP can use that to create Channel Partner Private Offer (CPPO)
CAPI-52
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "multi use resale auth with no expiry date")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and a EULA

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
```

```
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with no expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/
Container product and add custom EULA to be sent to the buyer
CAPI-58
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "multi use resale auth with no expiry date and custom EULA"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date and reseller contract documentation

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
```

```
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
```

```
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a multi-use resale authorization with no expiry date on my SaaS/AMI/
Container product and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and
 channel partner
CAPI-59
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)
```

```
def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set, "multi use resale auth with no expiry date and contract doc"
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiration and add a specific buyer account

The following code example shows how to publish multi-use resale authorization without an expiration date for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish multi-use resale authorization without expiry date for any product type
 (AMI/SaaS/Container) and add specific buyer account for the resale
CAPI-83
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "publish multi-use resale authorization without expiry date and add specific
 buyer account",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add Flexible payment schedule

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add Flexible payment schedule.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                        "Type": "ResaleFixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Price": "0.00",
                        "Duration": "P12M",
                        "Grants": [
                          {
                            "DimensionKey": "Users",
                            "MaxQuantity": 10
                          }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePaymentScheduleTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResalePaymentScheduleTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "Schedule": [
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-09-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "200.00"
                            },
                            {
                                "ChargeDate": "2023-12-01",
                                "ChargeAmount": "250.00"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "AvailabilityEndDate": "2023-06-30",
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) and
 add Flexible payment schedule
CAPI-78
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale auth with flexible payment schedule")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add a EULA

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a custom EULA to be sent to the buyer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
```

```
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product and add
 custom EULA to be sent to the buyer
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale auth with custom EULA")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add a specific buyer account

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add a specific buyer account for the resale.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
```

```
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "111111111111"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container) and
 add specific buyer account for the resale
CAPI-81
"""



import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
```

```
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale authorization for specific buyer
 account")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add reseller contract documentation

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add reseller contract documentation between the ISV and Channel Partner.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
```

```
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "t2.small",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    }
```

```
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomEula",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/sample-bucket/
custom-eula.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ResaleLegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "CustomResellerContract",
                                "Url": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-mp-standard-
contracts/Standard-Contact-for-AWS-Marketplace-2022-07-14.pdf"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        }
    ]
```

```
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish a one-time resale authorization on my SaaS/AMI/Container product and add
 reseller contract documentation between the ISV and channel partner
CAPI-47
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "onetime resale auth with reseller contract doc")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish one-time resale authorization and add whether it is a renewal

The following code example shows how to publish one-time resale authorization for any product type and add whether it is a renewal.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateResaleAuthorization",
            "ChangeName": "ResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "prod-1111111111111",
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "ResellerAccountId": "111111111111"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateBuyerTargetingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "BuyerTargetingTerm",
                        "PositiveTargeting": {
                            "BuyerAccounts": [
                                "222222222222"
                            ]
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateAvailability",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "OffersMaxQuantity": 1
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$ResaleAuthorization.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product",
                "PreExistingBuyerAgreement": {
                    "AcquisitionChannel": "AwsMarketplace",
                    "PricingModel": "Contract"
                }
             }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish one-time resale authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
and add whether it is renewal or not
CAPI-90
"""

import os
```

```
import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(stringified_change_set, "onetime resale auth renewal")

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Restrict resale authorization

The following code example shows how to restrict resale authorization.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "RestrictResaleAuthorization",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
                "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Restrict a  authorization for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
CAPI-84
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "Restrict resale authorization")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization

The following code example shows how to update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization before publishing for any product type.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType":"UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
             "Type": "ResaleAuthorization@1.0",
             "Identifier": "resaleauthz-1111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
             "Name": "TestResaleAuthorization",
                "Description": "Worldwide ResaleAuthorization for Test Product"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Update name/description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization before
 publishing for any product type (AMI/SaaS/Container)
CAPI-77
"""
```

```
import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "update name and description of one-time or multi-use resale authorization
 before publishing",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SaaS products

Create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer

The following code example shows how to create a draft SaaS product with a draft public offer.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
```

```
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier",
                "Name": "Test Offer"
            }
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an SaaS draft product
with a draft public offer.
CAPI-04
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
```

```
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Create a draft saas product with a draft public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
```

```
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
```

```
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
```

```
                "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                "RateCards": [
                    {
                        "Selector": {
                            "Type": "Duration",
                            "Value": "P1M"
                        },
                        "RateCard": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "Price": "20"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                "Price": "25"
                            }
                        ],
                        "Constraints": {
                            "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                            "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                        }
                    },
                    {
                        "Selector": {
                            "Type": "Duration",
                            "Value": "P12M"
                        },
                        "RateCard": [
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                "Price": "150"
                            },
                            {
                                "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                "Price": "300"
                            }
                        ],
                        "Constraints": {
                            "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                            "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                        }
                    }
                ]
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a
public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract pricing and standard
 EULA
CAPI-11
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)
```

```
def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create a limited saas product with a public offer with contract pricing",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with a contract with Pay-As-You-Go pricing. This example creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
```

```
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
```

```
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
```

```
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
```

```
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    },
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
```

```
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
```

```
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a
public or limited SaaS product and public offer with contract with PAYG pricing and
 standard EULA
CAPI-10
```

```
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(
        change_set,
        "Create limited SaaS product with public offer with contract with payg
 pricing",
    )


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing

The following code example shows how to create a public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription pricing. This examples creates either a standard or custom EULA.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
```

```
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://s3.amazonaws.com/logos/sample.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateTargeting",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PositiveTargeting": {
                    "BuyerAccounts": [
```

```
                        "111111111111",
                        "222222222222"
                    ]
                }
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl":"https://sample.amazonaws.com/
sample-saas-fulfillment-url"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadSmall",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Name": "Workload: Per medium instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "WorkloadMedium",
                    "Description": "Workload: Per large instance",
```

```
                    "Name": "Workload: Per large instance",
                    "Types": [
                        "ExternallyMetered"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "Test public offer for SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API
Reference Code",
                "Description": "Test public offer with contract pricing for
SaaSProduct using AWS Marketplace API Reference Code"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Usage",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadSmall",
                                        "Price": "0.15"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "WorkloadMedium",
                                        "Price": "0.25"
                                    }
                                ]
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
```

```
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Absolutely no refund, period."
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a
public or limited SaaS product and public offer with subscription(usage) pricing and
 standard EULA
CAPI-09
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
```

```
import utils.stringify_details as sd

fname = "changeset.json"
change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)

change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)


def main():
    sc.usage_demo(change_set, "public saas public offer with subscription pricing")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Publish a SaaS product and associated public offer

The following code example shows how to publish a SaaS product and associated public offer. The product will be in a limited state by default.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog":"AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet":[
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateProduct",
            "ChangeName": "CreateProductChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
```

```
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductTitle": "Sample product",
                "ShortDescription": "Brief description",
                "LongDescription": "Detailed description",
                "Highlights": [
                    "Sample highlight"
                ],
                "SearchKeywords": [
                    "Sample keyword"
                ],
                "Categories": [
                    "Data Catalogs"
                ],
                "LogoUrl": "https://bucketname.s3.amazonaws.com/logo.png",
                "VideoUrls": [
                    "https://sample.amazonaws.com/awsmp-video-1"
                ],
                "AdditionalResources": []
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Description": "Basic Service",
                    "Name": "Basic Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                },
                {
                    "Key": "PremiumService",
```

```
                    "Description": "Premium Service",
                    "Name": "Premium Service",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Unit": "Units"
                }
            ]
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "AddDeliveryOptions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "DeliveryOptions": [
                    {
                        "Details": {
                            "SaaSUrlDeliveryOptionDetails": {
                                "FulfillmentUrl": "https://www.aws.amazon.com/
marketplace/management"
                            }
                        }
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "ReleaseProduct",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "CreateOffer",
            "ChangeName": "CreateOfferChange",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "ProductId": "$CreateProductChange.Entity.Identifier"
```

```
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateInformation",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Name": "New Test Offer",
                "Description": "New offer description"
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateLegalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "LegalTerm",
                        "Documents": [
                            {
                                "Type": "StandardEula",
                                "Version": "2022-07-14"
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateSupportTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "SupportTerm",
                        "RefundPolicy": "Updated refund policy description"
```

```
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdatePricingTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "PricingModel": "Contract",
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
                        "CurrencyCode": "USD",
                        "RateCards": [
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P1M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "20"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "25"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            },
                            {
                                "Selector": {
                                    "Type": "Duration",
                                    "Value": "P12M"
                                },
                                "RateCard": [
                                    {
```

```
                                        "DimensionKey": "BasicService",
                                        "Price": "150"
                                    },
                                    {
                                        "DimensionKey": "PremiumService",
                                        "Price": "300"
                                    }
                                ],
                                "Constraints": {
                                    "MultipleDimensionSelection": "Allowed",
                                    "QuantityConfiguration": "Allowed"
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateRenewalTerms",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {
                "Terms": [
                    {
                        "Type": "RenewalTerm"
                    }
                ]
            }
        },
        {
            "ChangeType":"ReleaseOffer",
            "Entity":{
                "Type": "Offer@1.0",
                "Identifier": "$CreateOfferChange.Entity.Identifier"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": {}
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Publish my SaaS product and associated public offer (product will be in limited
 state by default)
CAPI-05A
"""

import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset1.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "publish saas product and associated public offer",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product

The following code example shows how to update dimensions on an AMI or SaaS product.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
{
    "Catalog": "AWSMarketplace",
    "ChangeSet": [
        {
            "ChangeType": "UpdateDimensions",
            "Entity": {
                "Type": "SaaSProduct@1.0",
                "Identifier": "prod-111111111111"
            },
            "DetailsDocument": [
                {
                    "Key": "BasicService",
                    "Types": [
                        "Entitled"
                    ],
                    "Name": "Some new name",
                    "Description": "Some new description"
                }
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

Run this script to start the changeset. Helper functions are defined in *Utilities to start a changeset* from the **Utilities** section.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to update (e.g name) dimensions on
 my AMI or SaaS product
CAPI-24
"""


import os

import utils.start_changeset as sc
import utils.stringify_details as sd


def main(change_set=None):
    if change_set is None:
        fname = "changeset.json"
        change_set_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), fname)
        stringified_change_set = sd.stringify_changeset(change_set_file)

    else:
        stringified_change_set = change_set

    response = sc.usage_demo(
        stringified_change_set,
        "Update name dimensions on my AMI or SaaS product",
    )

    return response


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Utilities

Utilities to start a changeset

The following code example shows how to define utilities to start a changeset.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

Utility to start a changeset.

```
"""
Purpose:

Generic function to start a changeset
"""

import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def generate_changeset(mp_client, change_set, change_set_name):
    """
    Start changeset
    """
    try:
        response = mp_client.start_change_set(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            ChangeSet=change_set,
            ChangeSetName=change_set_name,
        )
        logger.info("Changeset created!")
        logger.info("ChangeSet ID: %s", response["ChangeSetId"])
        logger.info("ChangeSet ARN: %s", response["ChangeSetArn"])

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        logger.exception("Unexpected error: %s", e)
        raise
```

```
def usage_demo(change_set, change_set_name):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Executing changeset: " + change_set_name)
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

    response = generate_changeset(mp_client, change_set, change_set_name)

    return response

    print("-" * 88)
```

Utility to load a changeset from a JSON file.

```
"""
Purpose:

This module will stringify the details sections of a changeset file.
"""

import json


def pretty_print(response):
    json_object = json.dumps(response, indent=4)
    print(json_object)


# open json file from path
def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


def stringify_details_sections(json_object):
    """
    Loops through every change type in the changeset to look for non-empty
```

```
    details section and stringifies them
    """
    for change_type in json_object["ChangeSet"]:
        # Only stringify details section if it is not empty
        if "Details" in change_type and change_type["Details"] != "{}":
            string_details = json.dumps(change_type["Details"])
            change_type["Details"] = string_details
        else:
            pass

    return json_object["ChangeSet"]


def stringify_changeset(file_path):
    changeset_file = open_json_file(file_path)
    changeset_stringified = stringify_details_sections(changeset_file)

    return changeset_stringified
```

- For API details, see StartChangeSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

AWS Marketplace Agreement API examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Marketplace Agreement API.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Agreements

Agreements

Get all agreement IDs

The following code example shows how to get all agreement IDs.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get all agreement ids
AG-09
"""

import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10


def get_agreements():
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    agreement_id_list = []

    try:
        agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=[
                {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
            ],
        )
    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise

    AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreements and agreements["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreements["nextToken"],
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    for agreement in AgreementSummaryList:
        agreement_id_list.append(agreement["agreementId"])

    return agreement_id_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreement_id_list = get_agreements()

    print(agreement_id_list)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get all agreements

The following code example shows how to get all agreements.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get all agreements
AG-01
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

party_type_list = ["Proposer"]
agreement_type_list = ["PurchaseAgreement"]

filter_list = [
    {"name": "PartyType", "values": party_type_list},
    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": agreement_type_list},
]

agreement_results_list = []


def get_agreements(filter_list=filter_list):
    try:
        agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
```

```
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=filter_list,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise e

    agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreements and agreements["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreements["nextToken"],
                filters=filter_list,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return agreement_results_list


if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreements_list = get_agreements(filter_list)
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(agreements_list)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get customer ID from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get customer ID from an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get customer AWS account id
from a given agreement
AG-08
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
            raise e
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)
            raise e

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreement_information(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    print(f"Customer account: {response['acceptor']['accountId']}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get financial details from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get financial details from an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain financial details, such as Total Contract Value of the agreementfrom a given
 agreement
AG-14

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_financial_details.py --agreement-id <agreement-
id>
"""

import argparse
```

```
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    try:
        agreement = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)

        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    agreement = get_agreement_information(args.agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        print(f"Agreement Id: {args.agreement_id}")
        print(
            f"Agreement Value: {agreement['estimatedCharges']['currencyCode']}
 {agreement['estimatedCharges']['agreementValue']}"
        )
```

```
    else:
        print(f"Agreement with ID {args.agreement_id} is not found")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get free trial details from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get free trial details from an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the details from an agreement of a free trial I have provided to the customer
AG-20

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_free_trial_details.py --agreement-id
 <agreement-id>
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")


def get_agreement_terms(agreement_id):
```

```
    try:
        agreement = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=agreement_id)
        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)

        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    agreement = get_agreement_terms(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        freetrial_found = False

        for term in agreement["acceptedTerms"]:
            if "freeTrialPricingTerm" in term.keys():
                helper.pretty_print_datetime(term)
                freetrial_found = True

        if not freetrial_found:
            print(f"No free trial term found for agreement: {args.agreement_id}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get information about an agreement

The following code example shows how to get information about an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get agreement information
AG-07
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
            raise e
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)
            raise e

    return response
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreement_information(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(response)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get product and offer details from an agreement

The following code example shows how to get product and offer details from an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get product and offer details in
 a given agreement
AG-10
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
```

```
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mpa_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")
mpc_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(agreement_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given agreement
    Args: agreement_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        agreement = mpa_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)

        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def get_entity_information(entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given entity
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of entity information
    """

    try:
        response = mpc_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
```

```
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def get_agreement_components(agreement_id):
    agreement_component_list = []

    agreement = get_agreement_information(agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        productIds = []
        for resource in agreement["proposalSummary"]["resources"]:
            productIds.append(resource["id"])

        for product_id in productIds:
            product_document = get_entity_information(product_id)

            product_document_dict = {}
            product_document_dict["product_id"] = product_id
            product_document_dict["document"] = product_document
            agreement_component_list.append(product_document_dict)

        offerId = agreement["proposalSummary"]["offerId"]

        offer_document = get_entity_information(offerId)

        offer_document_dict = {}
        offer_document_dict["offer_id"] = offerId
        offer_document_dict["document"] = offer_document
        agreement_component_list.append(offer_document_dict)

        return agreement_component_list

    else:
        print("Agreement with ID " + args.agreement_id + " is not found")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
```

```
        "--agreement_id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to search for product and offer detail",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    product_offer_detail = get_agreement_components(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(product_offer_detail)
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the EULA of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the EULA of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the EULA I have entered into with my customer via the agreement
AG-18
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "legalTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "documents"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        legalEulaArray = []
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term and ATTRIBUTE_NAME in term[TERM_NAME]:
                docs = term[TERM_NAME][ATTRIBUTE_NAME]
                for doc in docs:
                    if "type" in doc:
                        legalEulaArray.append(doc)
        return legalEulaArray

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)
```

```
def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the auto renewal terms of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the auto renewal terms of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
```

```
Purpose
Obtain the auto-renewal status of the agreement
AG-15
"""

import json
import logging
import os
import utils.helpers as helper


import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-1111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "renewalTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "enableAutoRenew"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)
```

```
        auto_renewal = "No Auto Renewal"
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                if CONFIG_ELEM in term[TERM_NAME]:
                    auto_renewal = term[TERM_NAME][CONFIG_ELEM][ATTRIBUTE_NAME]
                    break
        return auto_renewal

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    agreement = get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID)

    if agreement is not None:
        print(f"Auto Renewal is {agreement}")
    else:
        print("Agreement with ID " + AGREEMENT_ID + " is not found")


# open json file from path
def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the dimensions purchased in an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the dimensions purchased in an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the dimensions the buyer has purchased from me via the agreement
AG-28
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"
```

```
def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        dimensionKeys = []

        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                if CONFIG_ELEM in term[TERM_NAME]:
                    confParam = term[TERM_NAME][CONFIG_ELEM]
                    if ATTRIBUTE_NAME in confParam:
                        if "dimensions" in confParam:
                            for dimension in confParam["dimensions"]:
                                if "dimensionKey" in dimension:
                                    dimensionKey = dimension["dimensionKey"]
                                    print(f"Dimension Key: {dimensionKey}")
                                    dimensionKeys.append(dimensionKey)
        return dimensionKeys

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the instances of each dimension purchased in an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain instances of each dimension that buyer has purchased in the agreement
AG-30
"""

import logging

import boto3
```

```
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)
        dimensionKeyValueMap = {}
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                if CONFIG_ELEM in term[TERM_NAME]:
                    confParam = term[TERM_NAME][CONFIG_ELEM]
                    if ATTRIBUTE_NAME in confParam:
                        selectValue = confParam["selectorValue"]
                        dimensionKeyValueMap["selectorValue"] = selectValue
                        if "dimensions" in confParam:
                            dimensionKeyValueMap["dimensions"] =
 confParam["dimensions"]
                            """
                            for dimension in confParam['dimensions']:
                                if 'dimensionKey' in dimension:

                                    dimensionValue = dimension['dimensionValue']
                                    dimensionKey = dimension['dimensionKey']
```

```
                                    print(f"Selector: {selectValue}, Dimension Key:
 {dimensionKey}, Dimension Value: {dimensionValue}")
                                    dimensionKeyValueMap[dimensionKey] =
 dimensionValue
                            """
        return dimensionKeyValueMap

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the payment schedule of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the payment schedule of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the payment schedule I have agreed to with the agreement, including the
 invoice date and invoice amount
AG-17
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "paymentScheduleTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
```

```
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        paymentScheduleArray = []
        currencyCode = ""
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            if TERM_NAME in term:
                paymentSchedule = term[TERM_NAME]
                if "currencyCode" in paymentSchedule:
                    currencyCode = paymentSchedule["currencyCode"]
                if "schedule" in paymentSchedule:
                    for sch in paymentSchedule["schedule"]:
                        if "chargeDate" in sch:
                            chargeDate = sch["chargeDate"]
                            chargeAmount = sch["chargeAmount"]
                            # print(f"chargeDate: {chargeDate}, chargeAmount:
 {chargeAmount}")
                            schedule = {
                                "currencyCode": currencyCode,
                                "chargeDate": chargeDate,
                                "chargeAmount": chargeAmount,
                            }
                            paymentScheduleArray.append(schedule)

        return paymentScheduleArray

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID))
```

```
    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the pricing per dimension in an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the pricing per dimension in an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain pricing per each dimension in the agreement
AG-29
"""

import json
import logging
import os

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"

# to use sample file or not
USE_SAMPLE_FILE = False
SAMPLE_FILE_NAME = "mockup_agreement_terms.json"

# attribute name
ROOT_ELEM = "acceptedTerms"
TERM_NAME = "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm"
CONFIG_ELEM = "configuration"
ATTRIBUTE_NAME = "selectorValue"

TERMS_TO_SEARCH = [
    "configurableUpfrontPricingTerm",
    "usageBasedPricingTerm",
    "fixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
]


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns customer AWS Account id about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        if USE_SAMPLE_FILE:
            sample_file = os.path.join(os.path.dirname(__file__), SAMPLE_FILE_NAME)
            terms = open_json_file(sample_file)
        else:
            terms = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=entity_id)

        dimentions = []
        for term in terms[ROOT_ELEM]:
            for t in TERMS_TO_SEARCH:
                rateInfo = []
                if t in term:
                    if "type" in term[t]:
                        rateInfo.append(term[t]["type"])
```

```
                    if "currencyCode" in term[t]:
                        rateInfo.append(term[t]["currencyCode"])
                    if "rateCards" in term[t]:
                        rateInfo.append(term[t]["rateCards"])
                    dimentions.append(rateInfo)
        return dimentions

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID))

    # open json file from path


def open_json_file(filename):
    with open(filename, "r") as f:
        return json.load(f)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the pricing type of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the pricing type of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the pricing type of the agreement (contract, FPS, metered, free etc.)
AG-16
"""

import json
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# To search by offer id: OfferId; by product id: ResourceIdentifier; by product
 type: ResourceType
idType = "OfferId"

# replace id value as needed
idValue = "offer-1111111111111"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

# catalog; switch to AWSMarketplace for release
AWSMPCATALOG = "AWSMarketplace"

# product types

SaaSProduct = "SaaSProduct"
AmiProduct = "AmiProduct"
MLProduct = "MachineLearningProduct"
ContainerProduct = "ContainerProduct"
DataProduct = "DataProduct"
ProServiceProduct = "ProfessionalServicesProduct"
```

```
AiqProduct = "AiqProduct"

# Define pricing types
CCP = "CCP"
Annual = "Annual"
Contract = "Contract"
SFT = "SaaS Freee Trial"
HMA = "Hourly and Monthly Agreements"
Hourly = "Hourly"
Monthly = "Monthly"
AFPS = "Annual FPS"
CFPS = "Contract FPS"
CCPFPS = "CCP with FPS"
BYOL = "BYOL"
Free = "Free"
FTH = "Free Trials and Hourly"

# Define Agreement Term Types
legal = ["LegalTerm"]
config = ["ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm"]
usage = ["UsageBasedPricingTerm"]
config_usage = ["ConfigurableUpfrontPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm"]
freeTrial = ["FreeTrialPricingTerm"]
recur = ["RecurringPaymentTerm"]
usage_recur = ("UsageBasedPricingTerm", "RecurringPaymentTerm")
fixed_payment = ["FixedUpfrontPricingTerm", "PaymentScheduleTerm"]
fixed_payment_usage = [
    "FixedUpfrontPricingTerm",
    "PaymentScheduleTerm",
    "UsageBasedPricingTerm",
]
byol = ["ByolPricingTerm"]
freeTrial_usage = ("FreeTrialPricingTerm", "UsageBasedPricingTerm")
all_agreement_types_combination = (
    legal,
    config,
    usage,
    config_usage,
    freeTrial,
    recur,
    usage_recur,
    fixed_payment,
    fixed_payment_usage,
    byol,
```

```
    freeTrial_usage,
)


# get pricing type method given product type, agreement temr type and offer type if
 needed
def get_pricing_type(product_type, agreement_term_type, offer_type):
    pricing_types = {
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(config_usage), frozenset("")): CCP,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(config_usage), frozenset("")): CCP,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config_usage)): Annual,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config_usage)): Annual,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config_usage)): Annual,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config)): Contract,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset(config)): Contract,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(config), frozenset("")): Contract,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(freeTrial), frozenset("")): SFT,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(usage_recur), frozenset("")): HMA,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(usage), frozenset("")): Hourly,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(recur), frozenset("")): Monthly,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(recur), frozenset("")): Monthly,
        (
            ContainerProduct,
            frozenset(fixed_payment),
            frozenset(fixed_payment_usage),
        ): AFPS,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment_usage)):
 AFPS,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): AFPS,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment)):
 CFPS,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment)): CFPS,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset("")): CFPS,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
```

```
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment_usage), frozenset("")): CCPFPS,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (SaaSProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (ProServiceProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (AiqProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (DataProduct, frozenset(byol), frozenset("")): BYOL,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(legal), frozenset("")): Free,
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(freeTrial_usage), frozenset("")): FTH,
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(freeTrial_usage), frozenset("")): FTH,
        (MLProduct, frozenset(freeTrial_usage), frozenset("")): FTH,
    }

    key = (product_type, agreement_term_type, offer_type)
    if key in pricing_types:
        return pricing_types[key]
    else:
        return "Unknown"


# Example usage for testing purpose
"""
product_type = SaaSProduct
agreement_term_type = frozenset(config_usage)
offer_type = frozenset('')
pricing_type = get_pricing_type(product_type, agreement_term_type, offer_type)
print("pricing type = " + pricing_type)  # Output: CCP
"""


# check if offer term types are needed; if Y, needed
def get_offer_term_type(product_type, agreement_term_type):
    offer_term_types = {
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(config)): "Y",
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(config)): "Y",
        (ContainerProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment)): "Y",
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment)): "Y",
        (AmiProduct, frozenset(fixed_payment), frozenset(fixed_payment)): "Y",
    }

    key = (product_type, agreement_term_type)
    if key in offer_term_types:
```

```
        return offer_term_types[key]
    else:
        return


logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog=AWSMPCATALOG,
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog=AWSMPCATALOG,
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
                raise
```

```
            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    # find all agreements matching the specified idType and idValue
    agreements = get_agreements(mp_client)

    for item in agreements:
        pricingType = ""
        agreement_id = item["agreementId"]

        # get term types inside offer
        offer_term_types = get_offer_term_types(item)

        # even though multiple product types are allowed for one agreement, only
 need the first one
        productType = item["resourceSummaries"][0]["resourceType"]

        # get agreement terms types
        agreementTerm = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=agreement_id)

        agreementTermTypes = get_agreement_term_types(agreementTerm)

        # match with agreement term type group
        matchedTermType = getMatchedTermTypesCombination(agreementTermTypes)

        # check if offer term type is needed.
        offer_term_type_needed = get_offer_term_type(
            productType, frozenset(matchedTermType)
        )

        # get pricing type given product type, agreement term types and offer type
 if needed;
```

```
        # one excpetion is Container with Legal term. LegalTerm needs to be the only
 term present
        if offer_term_type_needed is not None:
            matchedOfferTermTypes = getMatchedTermTypesCombination(offer_term_types)
            print(f"matchedOfferTermType = {matchedOfferTermTypes}")
            pricingType = get_pricing_type(
                productType,
                frozenset(matchedTermType),
                frozenset(matchedOfferTermTypes),
            )
        elif set(matchedTermType) == set(legal):
            pricingType = Free
        else:
            pricingType = get_pricing_type(
                productType, frozenset(matchedTermType), frozenset("")
            )

        print(
            f"agreementId={agreement_id};productType={productType};
 agreementTermTypes={agreementTermTypes}; matchedTermType={matchedTermType};
 offerTermTypeNeeded={offer_term_type_needed}; offer_term_types={offer_term_types}"
        )
        print(f"pricing type={pricingType}")


def getMatchedTermTypesCombination(agreementTermTypes):
    matchedCombination = ()
    for element in all_agreement_types_combination:
        if check_elements(agreementTermTypes, element):
            matchedCombination = element
    return matchedCombination


def get_offer_term_types(item):
    offer_id = item["agreementTokenSummary"]["offerId"]
    mp_catalogAPI_client = boto3.client("marketplace-catalog")
    offer_document = get_entity_information(mp_catalogAPI_client, offer_id)
    offerDetail = offer_document["Details"]
    offerDetail_json_object = json.loads(offerDetail)
    offer_term_types = [term["Type"] for term in offerDetail_json_object["Terms"]]
    return offer_term_types


# make sure all elements in array2 exist in array1
```

```
def check_elements(array1, array2):
    for element in array2:
        if element not in array1:
            return False
    return True


def get_entity_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given entity
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of entity information
    """

    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_entity(
            Catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            EntityId=entity_id,
        )

        return response

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Entity with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def get_agreement_term_types(agreementTerm):
    types = []
    for term in agreementTerm["acceptedTerms"]:
        for value in term.values():
            if isinstance(value, dict) and "type" in value:
                types.append(value["type"])
    return types


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the product type of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the product type of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the Product Type of the product the agreement was created on
AG-11
"""

import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

# agreement id
AGREEMENT_ID = "agmt-111111111111111111111111"


def get_agreement_information(mp_client, entity_id):
    """
    Returns information about a given agreement
    Args: entity_id str: Entity to return
    Returns: dict: Dictionary of agreement information
    """

    try:
        agreement = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=entity_id)

        return agreement
```

```
    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", entity_id)
        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for offer and product details in a given agreement by agreement
 id.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    agreement = get_agreement_information(mp_client, AGREEMENT_ID)

    if agreement is not None:
        productHash = {}
        for resource in agreement["resourceSummaries"]:
            productHash[resource["resourceId"]] = resource["resourceType"]

        for key, value in productHash.items():
            print(f"Product ID: {key}  |  Product Type: {value}")
    else:
        print("Agreement with ID " + AGREEMENT_ID + " is not found")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the status of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the status of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get all agreement status
AG-13

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_status.py --agreement-id <agreement-id>
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreement(agreement_id):
    try:
        response = mp_client.describe_agreement(agreementId=agreement_id)
        return response
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error(f"Could not complete search_agreements request. {e}")

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
```

```
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreement(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    if response is not None:
        print(f"Agreement status: {response['status']}")
    else:
        print(f"No agreement found for {args.agreement_id}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeAgreement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get the support terms of an agreement

The following code example shows how to get the support terms of an agreement.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Obtain the support and refund policy I have provided to the customer for an
 agreement
AG-19

Example Usage: python3 get_agreement_support_terms.py --agreement-id <agreement-id>
"""

import argparse
import logging
```

```
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")


def get_agreement_terms(agreement_id):
    try:
        agreement = mp_client.get_agreement_terms(agreementId=agreement_id)
        return agreement

    except ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            logger.error("Agreement with ID %s not found.", agreement_id)

        else:
            logger.error("Unexpected error: %s", e)

    return None


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--agreement-id",
        "-aid",
        help="Provide agreement ID to describe agreement status",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    agreement = get_agreement_terms(agreement_id=args.agreement_id)

    if agreement is not None:
        support_found = False

        for term in agreement["acceptedTerms"]:
            if "supportTerm" in term.keys():
                helper.pretty_print_datetime(term)
                support_found = True
```

```
        if not support_found:
            print(f"No support term found for agreement: {args.agreement_id}")
```

- For API details, see GetAgreementTerms in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by account ID

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by account ID.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get agreement by customer AWS
 account ID
AG-02
"""

import argparse
import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10


def get_agreements(account_id):
```

```
    AgreementSummaryList = []

    try:
        agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=[
                {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                {"name": "AcceptorId", "values": [account_id]},
                {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
            ],
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise e

    AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                    {"name": "AcceptorId", "values": [account_id]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


if __name__ == "__main__":
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument(
        "--account_id",
        "-aid",
```

```
        help="Provide accepting account ID to search for agreements",
        required=True,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()

    response = get_agreements(account_id=args.account_id)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(response)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by agreement ID

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by agreement ID.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreements give id
 information
AG-02-A
"""


import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# To search by offer id: OfferId; by product id: ResourceIdentifier; by product
 type: ResourceType
```

```
idType = "ResourceType"

# replace id value as needed
idValue = "SaaSProduct"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": idType, "values": [idValue]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
```

```
                raise e

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreements(mp_client))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by end date

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by end date.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
```

```
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreement information
 before or after end date
AG-03
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

# change to 'AfterEndTime' if after endtime is desired
beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName = "BeforeEndTime"

# Make sure to use the same date format as below
cutoffDate = "2322-11-18T00:00:00Z"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements():
    AgreementSummaryList = []

    try:
        agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=[
                {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                {"name": beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName, "values": [cutoffDate]},
                {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
            ],
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise

    AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreement:
```

```
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": ["Proposer"]},
                    {
                        "name": beforeOrAfterEndtimeFilterName,
                        "values": [cutoffDate],
                    },
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreements = get_agreements()
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(agreements)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by offer ID

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by offer ID.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreements by offer id
AG-0
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# offer id to search by
offerId = "11111111111111111111111"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": "OfferId", "values": [offerId]},
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement and agreement["nextToken"] is not None:
```

```
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": "OfferId", "values": [offerId]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
                raise

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement by offer id.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreements(mp_client))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by product ID

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by product ID.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to search for agreement by product
 id
AG-02
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# product id to search by
resourceId = "prod-1111111111111"

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_agreements(mp_client):
    AgreementSummaryList = []
    partyTypes = ["Proposer"]
    for value in partyTypes:
        try:
            agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                filters=[
                    {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                    {"name": "ResourceIdentifier", "values": [resourceId]},
```

```
                    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                ],
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete list_entities request.")
            raise

        AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

        while "nextToken" in agreement:
            try:
                agreement = mp_client.search_agreements(
                    catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                    maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                    nextToken=agreement["nextToken"],
                    filters=[
                        {"name": "PartyType", "values": [value]},
                        {"name": "ResourceIdentifier", "values": [resourceId]},
                        {"name": "AgreementType", "values": ["PurchaseAgreement"]},
                    ],
                )
            except ClientError as e:
                logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
                raise

            AgreementSummaryList.extend(agreement["agreementViewSummaries"])

    return AgreementSummaryList


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Looking for an agreement in the AWS Marketplace Catalog.")
    print("-" * 88)

    mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_agreements(mp_client))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Search for agreements by status

The following code example shows how to search for agreements by status.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Marketplace API Reference Code Library repository.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
"""
Purpose
Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to filter agreements by status
AG-04

Example Usage: python3 search_agreements_by_status.py
"""

import logging

import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

mp_client = boto3.client("marketplace-agreement")

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)

MAX_PAGE_RESULTS = 10

party_type_list = ["Proposer"]
agreement_type_list = ["PurchaseAgreement"]
```

```
# Accepted values: "ACTIVE", "TERMINATED", "CANCELED", "EXPIRED", "REPLACED",
 "RENEWED"
status_list = ["ACTIVE"]

filter_list = [
    {"name": "PartyType", "values": party_type_list},
    {"name": "AgreementType", "values": agreement_type_list},
    {"name": "Status", "values": status_list},
]

agreement_results_list = []


def get_agreements(filter_list=filter_list):
    try:
        agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
            catalog="AWSMarketplace",
            maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
            filters=filter_list,
        )
    except ClientError as e:
        logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
        raise e

    agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    while "nextToken" in agreements and agreements["nextToken"] is not None:
        try:
            agreements = mp_client.search_agreements(
                catalog="AWSMarketplace",
                maxResults=MAX_PAGE_RESULTS,
                nextToken=agreements["nextToken"],
                filters=filter_list,
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            logger.error("Could not complete search_agreements request.")
            raise e

        agreement_results_list.extend(agreements["agreementViewSummaries"])

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(agreement_results_list)
    return agreement_results_list
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    agreements_list = get_agreements(filter_list)
```

- For API details, see SearchAgreements in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Python.

```
import base64

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    # Iterate through keys
```

```
    for key in event['records']:
        print('Key:', key)
        # Iterate through records
        for record in event['records'][key]:
            print('Record:', record)
            # Decode base64
            msg = base64.b64decode(record['value']).decode('utf-8')
            print('Message:', msg)
```

Neptune examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Neptune.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Neptune

The following code examples show how to get started using Neptune.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client):
```

```
    """
    Describes the Amazon Neptune DB clusters using a paginator to handle multiple
 pages.
    Raises ClientError with 'ResourceNotFoundException' if no clusters are found.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator("describe_db_clusters")
    clusters_found = False

    for page in paginator.paginate():
        for cluster in page.get("DBClusters", []):
            clusters_found = True
            print(f"Cluster Identifier: {cluster['DBClusterIdentifier']}")
            print(f"Status: {cluster['Status']}")

    if not clusters_found:
        raise ClientError(
            {
                "Error": {
                    "Code": "ResourceNotFoundException",
                    "Message": "No Neptune DB clusters found."
                }
            },
            operation_name="DescribeDBClusters"
        )

def main():
    """
    Main entry point: creates the Neptune client and calls the describe operation.
    """
    neptune_client = boto3.client("neptune")
    try:
        describe_db_clusters(neptune_client)
    except ClientError as e:
        error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        if error_code == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            print(f"Resource not found: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
        else:
            print(f"Unexpected ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClustersPaginator in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Neptune Subnet Group.
- Create an Neptune Cluster.
- Create an Neptune Instance.
- Check the status of the Neptune Instance.
- Show Neptune cluster details.
- Stop the Neptune cluster.
- Start the Neptune cluster.
- Delete the Neptune Assets.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
import time
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
```

```
# Constants used in this scenario
POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS = 10
TIMEOUT_SECONDS = 1200  # 20 minutes

def delete_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB cluster and throws exceptions to the caller.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the Neptune DB cluster to be deleted.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': cluster_id,
        'SkipFinalSnapshot': True
    }

    try:
        print(f"Deleting DB Cluster: {cluster_id}")
        neptune_client.delete_db_cluster(**request)

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB cluster. {code}: {message}")
        raise

def format_elapsed_time(seconds: int) -> str:
    mins, secs = divmod(seconds, 60)
    hours, mins = divmod(mins, 60)
    return f"{hours:02}:{mins:02}:{secs:02}"


def delete_db_instance(neptune_client, instance_id: str):
```

```
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB instance and waits for its deletion to complete.
    Raises exception to be handled by calling code.
    """
    print(f"Initiating deletion of DB Instance: {instance_id}")
    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_instance(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            SkipFinalSnapshot=True
        )

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{instance_id}' to be deleted...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_deleted')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={
                'Delay': 30,
                'MaxAttempts': 40
            }
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{instance_id}' successfully deleted.")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBInstanceNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB instance. {code}: {message}")
        raise

def delete_db_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB subnet group synchronously using Boto3.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        subnet_group_name (str): The name of the DB subnet group to delete.
```

```
    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    delete_group_request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': subnet_group_name
    }

    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_subnet_group(**delete_group_request)
        print(f"# Deleting Subnet Group: {subnet_group_name}")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBSubnetGroupNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Subnet group '{subnet_group_name}' not found or already
 deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete subnet group. {code}: {message}")
        raise

def wait_for_cluster_status(
        neptune_client,
        cluster_id: str,
        desired_status: str,
        timeout_seconds: int = TIMEOUT_SECONDS,
        poll_interval_seconds: int = POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS
):
    """
    Waits for a Neptune DB cluster to reach a desired status.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Amazon Neptune client.
        cluster_id (str): The identifier of the Neptune DB cluster.
        desired_status (str): The target status (e.g., "available", "stopped").
        timeout_seconds (int): Max time to wait in seconds (default: 1200).
        poll_interval_seconds (int): Polling interval in seconds (default: 10).

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: If the desired status is not reached before timeout.
```

```
    """
    print(f"Waiting for cluster '{cluster_id}' to reach status
 '{desired_status}'...")
    start_time = time.time()

    while True:
        # Prepare request object
        describe_cluster_request = {
            'DBClusterIdentifier': cluster_id
        }

        # Call the Neptune API
        response = neptune_client.describe_db_clusters(**describe_cluster_request)
        clusters = response.get('DBClusters', [])
        current_status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed_seconds = int(time.time() - start_time)

        status_str = current_status if current_status else "Unknown"
        print(
            f"\r Elapsed: {format_elapsed_time(elapsed_seconds):<20}  Cluster
 status: {status_str:<20}",
            end="", flush=True
        )

        if current_status and current_status.lower() == desired_status.lower():
            print(
                f"\nNeptune cluster reached desired status '{desired_status}' after
 {format_elapsed_time(elapsed_seconds)}."
            )
            return

        if elapsed_seconds > timeout_seconds:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for Neptune cluster to reach
 status: {desired_status}")

        time.sleep(poll_interval_seconds)


def start_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
    """
    Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it reaches 'available'.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
```

```
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: Propagates AWS API issues like resource not found.
        RuntimeError: If cluster doesn't reach 'available' within timeout.
    """
    try:
        # Initial wait in case the cluster was just stopped
        time.sleep(30)
        neptune_client.start_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't start DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling. It
may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
{message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time
```

```
        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s - Cluster status: {status}", end="",
 flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'available':
            print(f"\n# Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' is available.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster '{cluster_identifier}'
 to become available.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)


def stop_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
    """
    Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it's fully stopped.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: For AWS API errors (e.g., resource not found).
        RuntimeError: If the cluster doesn't stop within the timeout.
    """
    try:
        neptune_client.stop_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't stop DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
```

```
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling. It
 may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
 {message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s – Cluster status: {status}", end="",
 flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'stopped':
            print(f"\nCluster '{cluster_identifier}' is now stopped.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster '{cluster_identifier}'
 to stop.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)



def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Describes details of a Neptune DB cluster, paginating if needed.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the cluster to describe.

    Raises:
```

```
        ClientError: If there's an AWS API error (e.g., cluster not found).
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    try:
        pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id)

        found = False
        for page in pages:
            for cluster in page.get('DBClusters', []):
                found = True
                print(f"Cluster Identifier: {cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')}")
                print(f"Status: {cluster.get('Status')}")
                print(f"Engine: {cluster.get('Engine')}")
                print(f"Engine Version: {cluster.get('EngineVersion')}")
                print(f"Endpoint: {cluster.get('Endpoint')}")
                print(f"Reader Endpoint: {cluster.get('ReaderEndpoint')}")
                print(f"Availability Zones: {cluster.get('AvailabilityZones')}")
                print(f"Subnet Group: {cluster.get('DBSubnetGroup')}")
                print("VPC Security Groups:")
                for vpc_group in cluster.get('VpcSecurityGroups', []):
                    print(f"  - {vpc_group.get('VpcSecurityGroupId')}")
                print(f"Storage Encrypted: {cluster.get('StorageEncrypted')}")
                print(f"IAM Auth Enabled:
{cluster.get('IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled')}")
                print(f"Backup Retention Period:
{cluster.get('BackupRetentionPeriod')} days")
                print(f"Preferred Backup Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredBackupWindow')}")
                print(f"Preferred Maintenance Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredMaintenanceWindow')}")
                print("------")

        if not found:
            # Treat empty response as cluster not found
            raise ClientError(
                {"Error": {"Code": "DBClusterNotFound", "Message": f"No cluster
found with ID '{cluster_id}'"}},
                "DescribeDBClusters"
            )

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]
```

```
        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        elif code == "DBClusterNotFound":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found. Please verify the cluster
 ID.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

def check_instance_status(neptune_client, instance_id: str, desired_status: str):
    """
    Polls the status of a Neptune DB instance until it reaches desired_status.
    Uses pagination via describe_db_instances — even for a single instance.

    Raises:
      ClientError: If describe_db_instances fails (e.g., instance not found).
      RuntimeError: If timeout expires before reaching desired status.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_instances')
    start_time = time.time()

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id)
            instances = []
            for page in pages:
                instances.extend(page.get('DBInstances', []))

        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found. Please verify the
 instance ID.")
            else:
                print(f"Failed to describe DB instance. {code}: {message}")
            raise

        current_status = instances[0].get('DBInstanceStatus') if instances else None
        elapsed = int(time.time() - start_time)
```

```
        print(f"\rElapsed: {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}  Status:
 {current_status}", end="", flush=True)

        if current_status and current_status.lower() == desired_status.lower():
            print(f"\nInstance '{instance_id}' reached '{desired_status}' in
 {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for '{instance_id}' to reach
 '{desired_status}'")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)


def create_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id: str, db_cluster_id: str) ->
 str:
    try:
        request = {
            'DBInstanceIdentifier': db_instance_id,
            'DBInstanceClass': 'db.r5.large',
            'Engine': 'neptune',
            'DBClusterIdentifier': db_cluster_id
        }

        print(f"Creating Neptune DB Instance: {db_instance_id}")
        response = neptune_client.create_db_instance(**request)

        instance = response.get('DBInstance')
        if not instance or 'DBInstanceIdentifier' not in instance:
            raise RuntimeError("Instance creation succeeded but no ID returned.")

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' to become available...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_available')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=db_instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={'Delay': 30, 'MaxAttempts': 40}
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' is now available.")
        return instance['DBInstanceIdentifier']

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
```

```
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't create DB instance. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance '{db_instance_id}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance
 '{db_instance_id}': {e}") from e


def create_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_name: str) -> str:
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB cluster and returns its identifier.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        db_name (str): The desired cluster identifier.

    Returns:
        str: The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For any failure or AWS error, with a user-friendly message.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': db_name,
        'Engine': 'neptune',
        'DeletionProtection': False,
        'BackupRetentionPeriod': 1
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_cluster(**request)
        cluster = response.get('DBCluster') or {}

        cluster_id = cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')
        if not cluster_id:
            raise RuntimeError("Cluster created but no ID returned.")
```

```
        print(f"DB Cluster created: {cluster_id}")
        return cluster_id

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code in ("ServiceQuotaExceededException", "DBClusterQuotaExceededFault"):
            raise RuntimeError("You have exceeded the quota for Neptune DB
 clusters.") from e
        else:
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {message}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB cluster '{db_name}': {e}")
 from e

def get_subnet_ids(vpc_id: str) -> list[str]:
    ec2_client = boto3.client('ec2')

    describe_subnets_request = {
        'Filters': [{'Name': 'vpc-id', 'Values': [vpc_id]}]
    }

    response = ec2_client.describe_subnets(**describe_subnets_request)
    subnets = response.get('Subnets', [])
    subnet_ids = [subnet['SubnetId'] for subnet in subnets if 'SubnetId' in subnet]
    return subnet_ids


def get_default_vpc_id() -> str:
    ec2_client = boto3.client('ec2')
    describe_vpcs_request = {
        'Filters': [{'Name': 'isDefault', 'Values': ['true']}]
    }

    response = ec2_client.describe_vpcs(**describe_vpcs_request)
    vpcs = response.get('Vpcs', [])
    if not vpcs:
        raise RuntimeError("No default VPC found in this region.")

    default_vpc_id = vpcs[0]['VpcId']
    print(f"Default VPC ID: {default_vpc_id}")
    return default_vpc_id
```

```
def create_subnet_group(neptune_client, group_name: str):
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB subnet group and returns its name and ARN.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        group_name (str): The desired name of the subnet group.

    Returns:
        tuple(str, str): (subnet_group_name, subnet_group_arn)

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For quota errors or other AWS-related failures.
    """
    vpc_id = get_default_vpc_id()
    subnet_ids = get_subnet_ids(vpc_id)

    request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': group_name,
        'DBSubnetGroupDescription': 'My Neptune subnet group',
        'SubnetIds': subnet_ids,
        'Tags': [{'Key': 'Environment', 'Value': 'Dev'}]
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_subnet_group(**request)
        sg = response.get("DBSubnetGroup", {})
        name = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupName")
        arn = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupArn")

        if not name or not arn:
            raise RuntimeError("Response missing subnet group name or ARN.")

        print(f"Subnet group created: {name}")
        print(f"ARN: {arn}")
        return name, arn

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        msg = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "ServiceQuotaExceededException":
```

```
            print("Subnet group quota exceeded.")
            raise RuntimeError("Subnet group quota exceeded.") from e
        else:
            print(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}")
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group '{group_name}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group '{group_name}':
 {e}") from e

def wait_for_input_to_continue():
    input("\nPress <ENTER> to continue...")
    print("Continuing with the program...\n")


def run_scenario(neptune_client, subnet_group_name: str, db_instance_id: str,
 cluster_name: str):
    print("-" * 88)
    print("1. Create a Neptune DB Subnet Group")
    wait_for_input_to_continue()

    try:
        name, arn = create_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name)
        print(f"Subnet group successfully created: {name}")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("2. Create a Neptune Cluster")
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        db_cluster_id = create_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_name)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("3. Create a Neptune DB Instance")
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        create_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id, cluster_name)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("4. Check the status of the Neptune DB Instance")
        print("""
        Even though you're targeting a single DB instance,
        describe_db_instances supports pagination and can return multiple pages.

        Handling paginated responses ensures your method continues to work reliably
        even if AWS returns large or paged results.
```

```
        """)
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        check_instance_status(neptune_client, db_instance_id, "available")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("5. Show Neptune Cluster details")
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        describe_db_clusters(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("6. Stop the Amazon Neptune cluster")
        print("""
            Boto3 doesn't currently offer a
            built-in waiter for stop_db_cluster,
            This example implements a custom polling
            strategy until the cluster is in a stopped state.
        """)
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        stop_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)
        check_instance_status(neptune_client, db_instance_id, "stopped")

        print("-" * 88)
        print("7. Start the Amazon Neptune cluster")
        print("""
            Boto3 doesn't currently offer a
            built-in waiter for start_db_cluster,
            This example implements a custom polling
            strategy until the cluster is in an available state.
        """)
        wait_for_input_to_continue()
        start_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)
        wait_for_cluster_status(neptune_client, db_cluster_id, "available")
        check_instance_status(neptune_client, db_instance_id, "available")

        print("All Neptune resources are now available.")
        print("-" * 88)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("8. Delete the Neptune Assets")
        print("Would you like to delete the Neptune Assets? (y/n)")
        del_ans = input().strip().lower()

        if del_ans == "y":
            print("You selected to delete the Neptune assets.")
```

```
            delete_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id)
            delete_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_cluster_id)
            delete_db_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name)

            print("Neptune resources deleted successfully")

    except ClientError as ce:
        code = ce.response["Error"]["Code"]

        if code in ("DBInstanceNotFound", "DBInstanceNotFoundFault",
 "ResourceNotFound"):
            print(f"Instance '{db_instance_id}' not found.")
        elif code in ("DBClusterNotFound", "DBClusterNotFoundFault",
 "ResourceNotFoundFault"):
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_name}' not found.")
        elif code == "DBSubnetGroupNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Subnet group '{subnet_group_name}' not found.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"AWS error [{code}]: {ce.response['Error']['Message']}")
            raise  # re-raise unexpected errors

    except RuntimeError as re:
        print(f"Runtime error or timeout: {re}")


def main():
    neptune_client = boto3.client('neptune')

    # Customize the following names to match your Neptune setup
    # (You must change these to unique values for your environment)
    subnet_group_name = "neptuneSubnetGroup111"
    cluster_name = "neptuneCluster111"
    db_instance_id = "neptuneDB111"

    print("""
    Amazon Neptune is a fully managed graph database service by AWS...
    Let's get started!
    """)
    wait_for_input_to_continue()
    run_scenario(neptune_client, subnet_group_name, db_instance_id, cluster_name)
```

```
    print("""
    Thank you for checking out the Amazon Neptune Service Use demo.
    For more AWS code examples, visit:
    https://docs.aws.amazon.com/code-library/latest/ug/what-is-code-library.html
    """)

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_db_cluster(neptune_client, db_name: str) -> str:
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB cluster and returns its identifier.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        db_name (str): The desired cluster identifier.

    Returns:
        str: The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For any failure or AWS error, with a user-friendly message.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': db_name,
```

```
        'Engine': 'neptune',
        'DeletionProtection': False,
        'BackupRetentionPeriod': 1
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_cluster(**request)
        cluster = response.get('DBCluster') or {}

        cluster_id = cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')
        if not cluster_id:
            raise RuntimeError("Cluster created but no ID returned.")

        print(f"DB Cluster created: {cluster_id}")
        return cluster_id

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code in ("ServiceQuotaExceededException", "DBClusterQuotaExceededFault"):
            raise RuntimeError("You have exceeded the quota for Neptune DB
clusters.") from e
        else:
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {message}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB cluster '{db_name}': {e}")
from e
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_db_instance(neptune_client, db_instance_id: str, db_cluster_id: str) ->
 str:
    try:
        request = {
            'DBInstanceIdentifier': db_instance_id,
            'DBInstanceClass': 'db.r5.large',
            'Engine': 'neptune',
            'DBClusterIdentifier': db_cluster_id
        }

        print(f"Creating Neptune DB Instance: {db_instance_id}")
        response = neptune_client.create_db_instance(**request)

        instance = response.get('DBInstance')
        if not instance or 'DBInstanceIdentifier' not in instance:
            raise RuntimeError("Instance creation succeeded but no ID returned.")

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' to become available...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_available')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=db_instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={'Delay': 30, 'MaxAttempts': 40}
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{db_instance_id}' is now available.")
        return instance['DBInstanceIdentifier']

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
```

```
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't create DB instance. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance '{db_instance_id}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating DB instance
'{db_instance_id}': {e}") from e
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBSubnetGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSubnetGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_subnet_group(neptune_client, group_name: str):
    """
    Creates a Neptune DB subnet group and returns its name and ARN.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        group_name (str): The desired name of the subnet group.

    Returns:
        tuple(str, str): (subnet_group_name, subnet_group_arn)

    Raises:
        RuntimeError: For quota errors or other AWS-related failures.
    """
    vpc_id = get_default_vpc_id()
    subnet_ids = get_subnet_ids(vpc_id)
```

```
    request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': group_name,
        'DBSubnetGroupDescription': 'My Neptune subnet group',
        'SubnetIds': subnet_ids,
        'Tags': [{'Key': 'Environment', 'Value': 'Dev'}]
    }

    try:
        response = neptune_client.create_db_subnet_group(**request)
        sg = response.get("DBSubnetGroup", {})
        name = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupName")
        arn = sg.get("DBSubnetGroupArn")

        if not name or not arn:
            raise RuntimeError("Response missing subnet group name or ARN.")

        print(f"Subnet group created: {name}")
        print(f"ARN: {arn}")
        return name, arn

    except ClientError as e:
        code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
        msg = e.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "ServiceQuotaExceededException":
            print("Subnet group quota exceeded.")
            raise RuntimeError("Subnet group quota exceeded.") from e
        else:
            print(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}")
            raise RuntimeError(f"AWS error [{code}]: {msg}") from e

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group '{group_name}': {e}")
        raise RuntimeError(f"Unexpected error creating subnet group '{group_name}':
{e}") from e
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateGraph`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateGraph`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Running this example.

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VPC Networking Requirement:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Amazon Neptune must be accessed from **within the same VPC** as the Neptune cluster.
It does not expose a public endpoint, so this code must be executed from:

  - An **AWS Lambda function** configured to run inside the same VPC
  - An **EC2 instance** or **ECS task** running in the same VPC
  - A connected environment such as a **VPN**, **AWS Direct Connect**, or a **peered
 VPC**

"""

GRAPH_NAME = "sample-analytics-graph"

def main():
    config = Config(retries={"total_max_attempts": 1, "mode": "standard"},
 read_timeout=None)
    client = boto3.client("neptune-graph", config=config)
    execute_create_graph(client, GRAPH_NAME)

def execute_create_graph(client, graph_name):
    try:
        print("Creating Neptune graph...")
        response = client.create_graph(
            graphName=graph_name,
            provisionedMemory = 16
        )

        created_graph_name = response.get("name")
        graph_arn = response.get("arn")
```

```
        graph_endpoint = response.get("endpoint")

        print("Graph created successfully!")
        print(f"Graph Name: {created_graph_name}")
        print(f"Graph ARN: {graph_arn}")
        print(f"Graph Endpoint: {graph_endpoint}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Failed to create graph: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Failed to create graph: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see CreateGraph in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB cluster and throws exceptions to the caller.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client object.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the Neptune DB cluster to be deleted.

    Raises:
```

```
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    request = {
        'DBClusterIdentifier': cluster_id,
        'SkipFinalSnapshot': True
    }

    try:
        print(f"Deleting DB Cluster: {cluster_id}")
        neptune_client.delete_db_cluster(**request)

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBClusterNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB cluster. {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_db_instance(neptune_client, instance_id: str):
    """
```

```
    Deletes a Neptune DB instance and waits for its deletion to complete.
    Raises exception to be handled by calling code.
    """
    print(f"Initiating deletion of DB Instance: {instance_id}")
    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_instance(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            SkipFinalSnapshot=True
        )

        print(f"Waiting for DB Instance '{instance_id}' to be deleted...")
        waiter = neptune_client.get_waiter('db_instance_deleted')
        waiter.wait(
            DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
            WaiterConfig={
                'Delay': 30,
                'MaxAttempts': 40
            }
        )

        print(f"DB Instance '{instance_id}' successfully deleted.")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBInstanceNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found or already deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete DB instance. {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

DeleteDBSubnetGroup

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBSubnetGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_db_subnet_group(neptune_client, subnet_group_name):
    """
    Deletes a Neptune DB subnet group synchronously using Boto3.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        subnet_group_name (str): The name of the DB subnet group to delete.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If the delete operation fails.
    """
    delete_group_request = {
        'DBSubnetGroupName': subnet_group_name
    }

    try:
        neptune_client.delete_db_subnet_group(**delete_group_request)
        print(f"# Deleting Subnet Group: {subnet_group_name}")

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "DBSubnetGroupNotFoundFault":
            print(f"Subnet group '{subnet_group_name}' not found or already
 deleted.")
        elif code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't delete subnet group. {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBSubnetGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_db_clusters(neptune_client, cluster_id: str):
    """
    Describes details of a Neptune DB cluster, paginating if needed.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_id (str): The ID of the cluster to describe.

    Raises:
        ClientError: If there's an AWS API error (e.g., cluster not found).
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    try:
        pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_id)

        found = False
        for page in pages:
            for cluster in page.get('DBClusters', []):
                found = True
                print(f"Cluster Identifier: {cluster.get('DBClusterIdentifier')}")
                print(f"Status: {cluster.get('Status')}")
                print(f"Engine: {cluster.get('Engine')}")
                print(f"Engine Version: {cluster.get('EngineVersion')}")
                print(f"Endpoint: {cluster.get('Endpoint')}")
                print(f"Reader Endpoint: {cluster.get('ReaderEndpoint')}")
                print(f"Availability Zones: {cluster.get('AvailabilityZones')}")
                print(f"Subnet Group: {cluster.get('DBSubnetGroup')}")
```

```
                print("VPC Security Groups:")
                for vpc_group in cluster.get('VpcSecurityGroups', []):
                    print(f"  - {vpc_group.get('VpcSecurityGroupId')}")
                print(f"Storage Encrypted: {cluster.get('StorageEncrypted')}")
                print(f"IAM Auth Enabled:
{cluster.get('IAMDatabaseAuthenticationEnabled')}")
                print(f"Backup Retention Period:
{cluster.get('BackupRetentionPeriod')} days")
                print(f"Preferred Backup Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredBackupWindow')}")
                print(f"Preferred Maintenance Window:
{cluster.get('PreferredMaintenanceWindow')}")
                print("------")

        if not found:
            # Treat empty response as cluster not found
            raise ClientError(
                {"Error": {"Code": "DBClusterNotFound", "Message": f"No cluster
found with ID '{cluster_id}'"}},
                "DescribeDBClusters"
            )

    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
permissions.")
        elif code == "DBClusterNotFound":
            print(f"Cluster '{cluster_id}' not found. Please verify the cluster
ID.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def check_instance_status(neptune_client, instance_id: str, desired_status: str):
    """
    Polls the status of a Neptune DB instance until it reaches desired_status.
    Uses pagination via describe_db_instances — even for a single instance.

    Raises:
      ClientError: If describe_db_instances fails (e.g., instance not found).
      RuntimeError: If timeout expires before reaching desired status.
    """
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_instances')
    start_time = time.time()

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id)
            instances = []
            for page in pages:
                instances.extend(page.get('DBInstances', []))

        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                print(f"Instance '{instance_id}' not found. Please verify the
 instance ID.")
            else:
                print(f"Failed to describe DB instance. {code}: {message}")
            raise

        current_status = instances[0].get('DBInstanceStatus') if instances else None
        elapsed = int(time.time() - start_time)
```

```
        print(f"\rElapsed: {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}  Status:
 {current_status}", end="", flush=True)

        if current_status and current_status.lower() == desired_status.lower():
            print(f"\nInstance '{instance_id}' reached '{desired_status}' in
 {format_elapsed_time(elapsed)}.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for '{instance_id}' to reach
 '{desired_status}'")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Replace this with your actual Neptune endpoint
NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT = "https://[Specify Endpoint]:8182"

def main():
    """
    Entry point of the program. Initializes the Neptune client and executes the
 Gremlin query.
    """
    config = Config(connect_timeout=10, read_timeout=30, retries={'max_attempts':
 3})
```

```
    neptune_client = boto3.client(
        "neptunedata",
        endpoint_url=NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT,
        config=config
    )

    execute_gremlin_query(neptune_client)


def execute_gremlin_query(neptune_client):
    """
    Executes a Gremlin query against an Amazon Neptune database.
    """
    try:
        print("Querying Neptune...")

        response = neptune_client.execute_gremlin_explain_query(
            gremlinQuery="g.V().has('code', 'ANC')"
        )

        print("Full Response:")
        print(response['output'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Error calling Neptune: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"BotoCore error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinProfileQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ExecuteGremlinQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteGremlinQuery`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Running this example.

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VPC Networking Requirement:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Amazon Neptune must be accessed from **within the same VPC** as the Neptune cluster.
It does not expose a public endpoint, so this code must be executed from:

  - An **AWS Lambda function** configured to run inside the same VPC
  - An **EC2 instance** or **ECS task** running in the same VPC
  - A connected environment such as a **VPN**, **AWS Direct Connect**, or a **peered
 VPC**

"""

# Replace with your actual Neptune endpoint
NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT = "https://[Specify-Your-Endpoint]:8182"

def main():
    """
    Entry point of the program. Initializes the Neptune client and runs both EXPLAIN
 and PROFILE queries.
    """
    config = Config(connect_timeout=10, read_timeout=30, retries={'max_attempts':
 3})

    neptune_client = boto3.client(
        "neptunedata",
        endpoint_url=NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT,
        config=config
    )

    try:
```

```
        run_profile_query(neptune_client)
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Neptune error: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"BotoCore error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

def run_profile_query(neptune_client):
    """
    Runs a PROFILE query on the Neptune graph database.
    """
    print("Running Gremlin PROFILE query...")

    try:
        response = neptune_client.execute_gremlin_profile_query(
            gremlinQuery="g.V().has('code', 'ANC')"
        )
        print("Profile Query Result:")
        output = response.get("output")
        if output:
            print(output.read().decode('utf-8'))
        else:
            print("No explain output returned.")
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Failed to execute PROFILE query: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteGremlinQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Replace with your actual Neptune endpoint URL
NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT = "https://<your-neptune-endpoint>:8182"

def main():
    """
    Entry point: Create Neptune client and execute different OpenCypher queries.
    """
    config = Config(connect_timeout=10, read_timeout=30, retries={'max_attempts':
 3})

    neptune_client = boto3.client(
        "neptunedata",
        endpoint_url=NEPTUNE_ENDPOINT,
        config=config
    )

    execute_open_cypher_query_without_params(neptune_client)
    execute_open_cypher_query_with_params(neptune_client)
    execute_open_cypher_explain_query(neptune_client)

def execute_open_cypher_query_without_params(client):
    """
    Executes a simple OpenCypher query without parameters.
    """
    try:
        print("\nRunning OpenCypher query without parameters...")
        resp = client.execute_open_cypher_query(
            openCypherQuery="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n"
        )
        print("Results:")
        print(resp['results'])

    except Exception as e:
```

```
        print(f"Error in simple OpenCypher query: {str(e)}")


def execute_open_cypher_query_with_params(client):
    """
    Executes an OpenCypher query using parameters.
    """
    try:
        print("\nRunning OpenCypher query with parameters...")
        parameters = {'code': 'ANC'}
        resp = client.execute_open_cypher_query(
            openCypherQuery="MATCH (n {code: $code}) RETURN n",
            parameters=json.dumps(parameters)
        )
        print("Results:")
        print(resp['results'])

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Error in parameterized OpenCypher query: {str(e)}")

def execute_open_cypher_explain_query(client):
    """
    Runs an OpenCypher EXPLAIN query in debug mode.
    """
    try:
        print("\nRunning OpenCypher EXPLAIN query (debug mode)...")
        resp = client.execute_open_cypher_explain_query(
            openCypherQuery="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n",
            explainMode="details"
        )
        results = resp.get('results')
        if results is None:
            print("No explain results returned.")
        else:
            try:
                print("Explain Results:")
                print(results.read().decode('UTF-8'))
            except Exception as e:
                print(f"Error in OpenCypher EXPLAIN query: {str(e)}")

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Neptune error: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"BotoCore error: {str(e)}")
```

```
    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteOpenCypherExplainQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ExecuteQuery`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteQuery`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Running this example.

--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
VPC Networking Requirement:
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Amazon Neptune must be accessed from **within the same VPC** as the Neptune cluster.
It does not expose a public endpoint, so this code must be executed from:

  - An **AWS Lambda function** configured to run inside the same VPC
  - An **EC2 instance** or **ECS task** running in the same VPC
  - A connected environment such as a **VPN**, **AWS Direct Connect**, or a **peered
 VPC**
"""

GRAPH_ID = "<your-graph-id>"

def main():
```

```
    config = Config(retries={"total_max_attempts": 1, "mode": "standard"},
 read_timeout=None)
    client = boto3.client("neptune-graph", config=config)

    try:
        print("\n--- Running OpenCypher query without parameters ---")
        run_open_cypher_query(client, GRAPH_ID)

        print("\n--- Running OpenCypher query with parameters ---")
        run_open_cypher_query_with_params(client, GRAPH_ID)

        print("\n--- Running OpenCypher explain query ---")
        run_open_cypher_explain_query(client, GRAPH_ID)

    except Exception as e:
        print(f"Unexpected error in main: {e}")

def run_open_cypher_query(client, graph_id):
    """
    Run an OpenCypher query without parameters.
    """
    try:
        resp = client.execute_query(
            graphIdentifier=graph_id,
            queryString="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n",
            language='OPEN_CYPHER'
        )
        print(resp['payload'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except client.exceptions.InternalServerException as e:
        print(f"InternalServerException: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:  # <--- ADD THIS BLOCK
        print(f"Unexpected error: {e}")

def run_open_cypher_query_with_params(client, graph_id):
    """
    Run an OpenCypher query with parameters.
    """
    try:
        parameters = {'code': 'ANC'}
        resp = client.execute_query(
            graphIdentifier=graph_id,
```

```
            queryString="MATCH (n {code: $code}) RETURN n",
            language='OPEN_CYPHER',
            parameters=parameters
        )
        print(resp['payload'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except client.exceptions.InternalServerException as e:
        print(f"InternalServerException: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"ClientError: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except Exception as e:  # <--- ADD THIS BLOCK
        print(f"Unexpected error: {e}")

def run_open_cypher_explain_query(client, graph_id):
    """
    Run an OpenCypher explain query (explainMode = "debug").
    """
    try:
        resp = client.execute_query(
            graphIdentifier=graph_id,
            queryString="MATCH (n {code: 'ANC'}) RETURN n",
            language='OPEN_CYPHER',
            explainMode='DETAILS'
        )
        print(resp['payload'].read().decode('UTF-8'))

    except ClientError as e:
        print(f"Neptune error: {e.response['Error']['Message']}")
    except BotoCoreError as e:
        print(f"Unexpected Boto3 error: {str(e)}")
    except Exception as e:  # <-- Add this generic catch
        print(f"Unexpected error: {str(e)}")

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see ExecuteQuery in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

StartDBCluster

The following code example shows how to use `StartDBCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def start_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
    """
    Starts an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it reaches 'available'.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: Propagates AWS API issues like resource not found.
        RuntimeError: If cluster doesn't reach 'available' within timeout.
    """
    try:
        # Initial wait in case the cluster was just stopped
        time.sleep(30)
        neptune_client.start_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't start DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
```

```
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling. It
may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
{message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s – Cluster status: {status}", end="",
flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'available':
            print(f"\n# Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' is available.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster '{cluster_identifier}'
to become available.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)
```

- For API details, see StartDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StopDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `StopDBCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def stop_db_cluster(neptune_client, cluster_identifier: str):
    """
    Stops an Amazon Neptune DB cluster and waits until it's fully stopped.

    Args:
        neptune_client (boto3.client): The Neptune client.
        cluster_identifier (str): The DB cluster identifier.

    Raises:
        ClientError: For AWS API errors (e.g., resource not found).
        RuntimeError: If the cluster doesn't stop within the timeout.
    """
    try:
        neptune_client.stop_db_cluster(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
    except ClientError as err:
        code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
        message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

        if code == "AccessDeniedException":
            print("Access denied. Please ensure you have the necessary
 permissions.")
        else:
            print(f"Couldn't stop DB cluster. Here's why: {code}: {message}")
        raise

    start_time = time.time()
    paginator = neptune_client.get_paginator('describe_db_clusters')

    while True:
        try:
            pages = paginator.paginate(DBClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier)
            clusters = []
            for page in pages:
                clusters.extend(page.get('DBClusters', []))
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            code = err.response["Error"]["Code"]
            message = err.response["Error"]["Message"]

            if code == "DBClusterNotFound":
                print(f"Cluster '{cluster_identifier}' not found while polling. It
may have been deleted.")
            else:
                print(f"Couldn't describe DB cluster. Here's why: {code}:
{message}")
            raise

        status = clusters[0].get('Status') if clusters else None
        elapsed = time.time() - start_time

        print(f"\rElapsed: {int(elapsed)}s – Cluster status: {status}", end="",
flush=True)

        if status and status.lower() == 'stopped':
            print(f"\nCluster '{cluster_identifier}' is now stopped.")
            return

        if elapsed > TIMEOUT_SECONDS:
            raise RuntimeError(f"Timeout waiting for cluster '{cluster_identifier}'
to stop.")

        time.sleep(POLL_INTERVAL_SECONDS)
```

- For API details, see StopDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Organizations examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Organizations.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AttachPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def attach_policy(policy_id, target_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Attaches a policy to a target. The target is an organization root, account, or
    organizational unit.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to attach.
    :param target_id: The ID of the resources to attach the policy to.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    """
    try:
        orgs_client.attach_policy(PolicyId=policy_id, TargetId=target_id)
        logger.info("Attached policy %s to target %s.", policy_id, target_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't attach policy %s to target %s.", policy_id, target_id
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see AttachPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_policy(name, description, content, policy_type, orgs_client):
    """
    Creates a policy.

    :param name: The name of the policy.
    :param description: The description of the policy.
    :param content: The policy content as a dict. This is converted to JSON before
                    it is sent to AWS. The specific format depends on the policy
 type.
    :param policy_type: The type of the policy.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    :return: The newly created policy.
    """
    try:
        response = orgs_client.create_policy(
            Name=name,
            Description=description,
            Content=json.dumps(content),
            Type=policy_type,
        )
        policy = response["Policy"]
        logger.info("Created policy %s.", name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create policy %s.", name)
        raise
    else:
        return policy
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_policy(policy_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Deletes a policy.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to delete.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    """
    try:
        orgs_client.delete_policy(PolicyId=policy_id)
        logger.info("Deleted policy %s.", policy_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete policy %s.", policy_id)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribePolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def describe_policy(policy_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Describes a policy.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to describe.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    :return: The description of the policy.
    """
    try:
        response = orgs_client.describe_policy(PolicyId=policy_id)
        policy = response["Policy"]
        logger.info("Got policy %s.", policy_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get policy %s.", policy_id)
        raise
    else:
        return policy
```

- For API details, see DescribePolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetachPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def detach_policy(policy_id, target_id, orgs_client):
    """
    Detaches a policy from a target.

    :param policy_id: The ID of the policy to detach.
    :param target_id: The ID of the resource where the policy is currently attached.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    """
    try:
        orgs_client.detach_policy(PolicyId=policy_id, TargetId=target_id)
        logger.info("Detached policy %s from target %s.", policy_id, target_id)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't detach policy %s from target %s.", policy_id, target_id
        )
        raise
```

- For API details, see DetachPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_policies(policy_filter, orgs_client):
    """
    Lists the policies for the account, limited to the specified filter.

    :param policy_filter: The kind of policies to return.
    :param orgs_client: The Boto3 Organizations client.
    :return: The list of policies found.
    """
    try:
        response = orgs_client.list_policies(Filter=policy_filter)
        policies = response["Policies"]
        logger.info("Found %s %s policies.", len(policies), policy_filter)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get %s policies.", policy_filter)
        raise
    else:
        return policies
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Partner Central examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Partner Central.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AssignOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `AssignOpportunity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Reassign an existing Opportunity to another user.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-07 Assigning a new owner
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def assign_opportunity(identifier):
    assign_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "Assignee": {
            "BusinessTitle": "OpportunityOwner",
            "Email": "test@test.com",
            "FirstName": "John",
            "LastName": "Doe"
        }
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
```

```
        response =
 partner_central_client.assign_opportunity(**assign_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "04236468"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Assigning a new owner to an opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(assign_opportunity(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see AssignOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AssociateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateOpportunity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create a formal association between an Opportunity and various related entities.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
"""
import logging
```

```
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def associate_opportunity(entity_type, entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier):
    associate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : entity_type,
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : entity_identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.associate_opportunity(**associate_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    #entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
    entity_type = "Solutions"
    entity_identifier = "S-0059717"
    opportunityIdentifier = "O5465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Associate Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(associate_opportunity(entity_type,
 entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier))
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see AssociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpportunity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Create an opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
import boto3
import logging
import sys
import os
sys.path.append(os.path.dirname(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))))
import utils.helpers as helper
import utils.stringify_details as sd
from botocore.client import ClientError
from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

def create_opportunity(partner_central_client):
    create_opportunity_request = helper.remove_nulls(sd.stringify_json("src/
create_opportunity/createOpportunity.json"))
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.create_opportunity(**create_opportunity_request)

        helper.pretty_print_datetime(response)

        # Retrieve the opportunity details
        get_response = partner_central_client.get_opportunity(
            Identifier=response["Id"],
            Catalog=CATALOG_TO_USE
```

```
        )
        helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_response)
        return response
    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Create Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
    )

    create_opportunity(partner_central_client)

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see CreateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisassociateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateOpportunity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Remove an existing association between an Opportunity and related entities.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -14 Removing a Solution
PC-API -15 Removing an offer
PC-API -16 Removing a product
"""
```

```
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def disassociate_opportunity(entity_type, entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier):
    disassociate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : entity_type,
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : entity_identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.disassociate_opportunity(**disassociate_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    #entity_type = Solutions | AWSProducts | AWSMarketplaceOffers
    entity_type = "Solutions"
    entity_identifier = "S-0049999"
    opportunityIdentifier = "O4397574"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get updated Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(disassociate_opportunity(entity_type,
 entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see DisassociateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetAwsOpportunitySummary`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAwsOpportunitySummary`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-25 Retrieves a summary of an AWS Opportunity. LifeCycle.ReviewStatus=Approved
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "RelatedOpportunityIdentifier": identifier
    }
```

```
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_aws_opportunity_summary(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "O5465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get AWS Opportunity summary.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_opportunity(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetAwsOpportunitySummary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetEngagementInvitation`

The following code example shows how to use `GetEngagementInvitation`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves the details of an engagement invitation shared by AWS with a partner.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-22  GetOpportunityEngagementInvitation - Retrieves details of a specific
 engagement invitation.
```

```
This operation allows partners to view the invitation and its associated
 information,
such as the customer, project, and lifecycle details.
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier):
    get_opportunity_engagement_invitation_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_engagement_invitation(**get_opportunity_engagement_invitation_re
        return response

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "arn:aws:partnercentral-selling:us-east-1:aws:catalog/Sandbox/
engagement-invitation/engi-0000000IS0Qga"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Given the ARN identifier, retrieve details of Opportunity Engagement
 Invitation.")
    print("-" * 88)
```

```
    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetOpportunity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Get an opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -08 Get updated Opportunity given opportunity id
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier
    }
    try:
```

```
        # Perform an API call
        response = partner_central_client.get_opportunity(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "O5465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get updated Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_opportunity(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see GetOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListEngagementInvitations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListEngagementInvitations`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves a list of engagement invitations sent to the partner.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-21 ListEngagementInvitations - Retrieves a list of engagement invitations
 based on specified criteria.
This operation allows partners to view all invitations to engagement.
"""
import json
```

```
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def list_engagement_invitations():
    list_engagement_invitations_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
        "MaxResults": 20
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.list_engagement_invitations(**list_engagement_invitations_request)
        return response

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Retrieve list of Engagement Invitations.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(list_engagement_invitations())

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see ListEngagementInvitations in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

ListOpportunities

The following code example shows how to use `ListOpportunities`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

List opportunities.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -18 Getting list of Opportunities
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_list_of_opportunities():

    opportunity_list = []

    list_opportunities_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "MaxResults": 20
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.list_opportunities(**list_opportunities_request)
        opportunity_list.extend(response["OpportunitySummaries"])

        while "NextToken" in response and response["NextToken"] is not None:
```

```
            list_opportunities_request["NextToken"] = response["NextToken"]
            response =
 partner_central_client.list_opportunities(**list_opportunities_request)
            opportunity_list.extend(response["OpportunitySummaries"])

        return opportunity_list

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Getting list of Opportunities.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_list_of_opportunities())

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see ListOpportunities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListSolutions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSolutions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Retrieves a list of Partner Solutions that the partner registered on Partner Central.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-10 Getting list of solutions
"""
import logging
import boto3
```

```
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_list_of_solutions():
    list_solutions_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "MaxResults": 20
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response = partner_central_client.list_solutions(**list_solutions_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Getting list of solutions.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(get_list_of_solutions())

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see ListSolutions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RejectEngagementInvitation`

The following code example shows how to use `RejectEngagementInvitation`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Rejects an EngagementInvitation that AWS shared.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-05 AWS Originated AO rejection - RejectOpportunityEngagementInvitation -
 Rejects a engagement invitation.
This action indicates that the partner does not wish to participate in the
 engagement and
provides a reason for the rejection.
Upon rejection, a OpportunityEngagementInvitationRejected event is triggered.
Subsequently, the invitation will no longer be available for the partner to act on.
"""
import json
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def reject_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier, reject_reason):
    reject_opportunity_engagement_invitation_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "RejectionReason": reject_reason
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
```

```
        response =
 partner_central_client.reject_engagement_invitation(**reject_opportunity_engagement_invitat
        return response

    except Exception as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(json.dumps(err.response))

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "arn:aws:partnercentral:us-east-1::catalog/Sandbox/engagement-
invitation/engi-0000002isviga"
    reject_reason = "Customer problem unclear"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Given the ARN identifier and reject reason, reject the Opportunity
 Engagement Invitation.")
    print("-" * 88)


 helper.pretty_print_datetime(reject_opportunity_engagement_invitation(identifier,
 reject_reason))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see RejectEngagementInvitation in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask`

The following code example shows how to use `StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Starts the engagement by accepting an EngagementInvitation.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
```

```
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.get_engagement_invitation(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def start_engagement_by_accepting_invitation_task(identifier):

    response = get_opportunity(identifier)

    if ( response['Status'] == 'PENDING') :
        accept_opportunity_engagement_invitation_request ={
            "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
         "Identifier" : identifier,
            "ClientToken": "test-123456"
        }
```

```
        try:
            # Perform an API call
            response =
 partner_central_client.start_engagement_by_accepting_invitation_task(**accept_opportunity_e
            return response

        except ClientError as err:
            # Catch all client exceptions
            print(err.response)
            return None
    else:
        return None

def usage_demo():
    identifier = "arn:aws:partnercentral:us-east-1::catalog/Sandbox/engagement-
invitation/engi-0000002isusga"
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Get updated Opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)


 helper.pretty_print_datetime(start_engagement_by_accepting_invitation_task(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementByAcceptingInvitationTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Initiates the engagement process from an existing opportunity by accepting the engagement invitation and creating a corresponding opportunity in the partner's system.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python
```

```
"""
Purpose
PC-API -11 Associating a product
PC-API -12 Associating a solution
PC-API -13 Associating an offer
"""
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def start_engagement_from_opportunity_task(identifier):

    start_engagement_from_opportunity_task_request ={
            "AwsSubmission": {
                "InvolvementType": "Co-Sell",
                "Visibility": "Full"
            },
            "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
         "Identifier" : identifier,
            "ClientToken": "test-annjqwesdsd99"
    }
    try:
            # Perform an API call
            response =
 partner_central_client.start_engagement_from_opportunity_task(**start_engagement_from_oppor
            return response

    except ClientError as err:
            # Catch all client exceptions
            print(err.response)
            return None

def usage_demo():
```

```
    identifier = "O5465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Start Engagement from Opportunity Task.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(start_engagement_from_opportunity_task(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see StartEngagementFromOpportunityTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateOpportunity`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateOpportunity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Update an opportunity.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API-2  Updating Partner Originated Opportunity
"""
import logging
import boto3
import sys
import os
sys.path.append(os.path.dirname(os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))))
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError
import utils.stringify_details as sd
from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"
```

```
partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def get_opportunity(identifier):
    get_opportunity_request ={
     "Identifier": identifier,
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response = partner_central_client.get_opportunity(**get_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def update_opportunity():
    update_opportunity_request_orig = sd.stringify_json("src/update_opportunity/
update_opportunity_technical_validation.json")
    update_opportunity_request =
 helper.remove_nulls(update_opportunity_request_orig)

    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.update_opportunity(**update_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def update_opportunity_if_eligible(identifier):
    response = get_opportunity(identifier)
    if response is not None:
        return update_opportunity()
    else:
        print("Failed to retrieve opportunity details")

def usage_demo():
```

```
    identifier = "05465588"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Updating opportunity.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(update_opportunity_if_eligible(identifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpportunity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Update associated entity of an opportunity

The following code example shows how to:

- Disassociate an old entity.
- Associate a new entity.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Update Associated Entity of an opportunity

```
#!/usr/bin/env python

"""
Purpose
PC-API -17 Replacing a solution
"""
```

```
import logging
import boto3
import utils.helpers as helper
from botocore.client import ClientError

from utils.constants import CATALOG_TO_USE

serviceName = "partnercentral-selling"

partner_central_client = boto3.client(
        service_name=serviceName,
        region_name='us-east-1'
)

def replace_solution(original_entity_identifier, new_entity_identifier,
 opportunityIdentifier):
    disassociate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : "Solutions",
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : original_entity_identifier
    }

    associate_opportunity_request ={
        "Catalog": CATALOG_TO_USE,
     "OpportunityIdentifier" : opportunityIdentifier,
        "RelatedEntityType" : "Solutions",
        "RelatedEntityIdentifier" : new_entity_identifier
    }
    try:
        # Perform an API call
        response =
 partner_central_client.disassociate_opportunity(**disassociate_opportunity_request)
        response =
 partner_central_client.associate_opportunity(**associate_opportunity_request)
        return response

    except ClientError as err:
        # Catch all client exceptions
        print(err.response)

def usage_demo():
    original_entity_identifier = "S-0049999"
    new_entity_identifier = "S-0050014"
```

```
    opportunityIdentifier = "04397574"

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Replacing a solution.")
    print("-" * 88)

    helper.pretty_print_datetime(replace_solution(original_entity_identifier,
 new_entity_identifier, opportunityIdentifier))

if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AssociateOpportunity
  - DisassociateOpportunity

Amazon Pinpoint examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Pinpoint.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendMessages`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessages`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send an email message.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_email_message(
    pinpoint_client,
    app_id,
    sender,
    to_addresses,
    char_set,
    subject,
    html_message,
    text_message,
):
    """
    Sends an email message with HTML and plain text versions.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param app_id: The Amazon Pinpoint project ID to use when you send this message.
    :param sender: The "From" address. This address must be verified in
                   Amazon Pinpoint in the AWS Region you're using to send email.
    :param to_addresses: The addresses on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint
 account
                         is in the sandbox, these addresses must be verified.
    :param char_set: The character encoding to use for the subject line and message
                     body of the email.
    :param subject: The subject line of the email.
    :param html_message: The body of the email for recipients whose email clients
 can
```

```
                        display HTML content.
    :param text_message: The body of the email for recipients whose email clients
                        don't support HTML content.
    :return: A dict of to_addresses and their message IDs.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=app_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {
                    to_address: {"ChannelType": "EMAIL"} for to_address in
 to_addresses
                },
                "MessageConfiguration": {
                    "EmailMessage": {
                        "FromAddress": sender,
                        "SimpleEmail": {
                            "Subject": {"Charset": char_set, "Data": subject},
                            "HtmlPart": {"Charset": char_set, "Data": html_message},
                            "TextPart": {"Charset": char_set, "Data": text_message},
                        },
                    }
                },
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send email.")
        raise
    else:
        return {
            to_address: message["MessageId"]
            for to_address, message in response["MessageResponse"]["Result"].items()
        }


def main():
    app_id = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample"
    sender = "sender@example.com"
    to_address = "recipient@example.com"
    char_set = "UTF-8"
    subject = "Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for Python (Boto3))"
    text_message = """Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for Python)
    -------------------------------------
    This email was sent with Amazon Pinpoint using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).
```

```
    For more information, see https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-python/
                """
    html_message = """<html>
    <head></head>
    <body>
      <h1>Amazon Pinpoint Test (SDK for Python (Boto3)</h1>
      <p>This email was sent with
        <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/pinpoint/'>Amazon Pinpoint</a> using the
        <a href='https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-python/'>
          AWS SDK for Python (Boto3)</a>.</p>
    </body>
    </html>
                """

    print("Sending email.")
    message_ids = send_email_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint"),
        app_id,
        sender,
        [to_address],
        char_set,
        subject,
        html_message,
        text_message,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message IDs: {message_ids}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send an SMS message.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_sms_message(
```

```
    pinpoint_client,
    app_id,
    origination_number,
    destination_number,
    message,
    message_type,
):
    """
    Sends an SMS message with Amazon Pinpoint.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param app_id: The Amazon Pinpoint project/application ID to use when you send
                   this message. The SMS channel must be enabled for the project or
                   application.
    :param destination_number: The recipient's phone number in E.164 format.
    :param origination_number: The phone number to send the message from. This phone
                               number must be associated with your Amazon Pinpoint
                               account and be in E.164 format.
    :param message: The content of the SMS message.
    :param message_type: The type of SMS message that you want to send. If you send
                         time-sensitive content, specify TRANSACTIONAL. If you send
                         marketing-related content, specify PROMOTIONAL.
    :return: The ID of the message.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=app_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {destination_number: {"ChannelType": "SMS"}},
                "MessageConfiguration": {
                    "SMSMessage": {
                        "Body": message,
                        "MessageType": message_type,
                        "OriginationNumber": origination_number,
                    }
                },
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send message.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["MessageResponse"]["Result"][destination_number]
["MessageId"]
```

```
def main():
    app_id = "ce796be37f32f178af652b26eexample"
    origination_number = "+12065550199"
    destination_number = "+14255550142"
    message = (
        "This is a sample message sent from Amazon Pinpoint by using the AWS SDK for
 "
        "Python (Boto 3)."
    )
    message_type = "TRANSACTIONAL"

    print("Sending SMS message.")
    message_id = send_sms_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint"),
        app_id,
        origination_number,
        destination_number,
        message,
        message_type,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message ID: {message_id}.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send an email message with an existing email template.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_templated_email_message(
    pinpoint_client, project_id, sender, to_addresses, template_name,
 template_version
):
    """
```

```
    Sends an email message with HTML and plain text versions.

    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param project_id: The Amazon Pinpoint project ID to use when you send this
 message.
    :param sender: The "From" address. This address must be verified in
                   Amazon Pinpoint in the AWS Region you're using to send email.
    :param to_addresses: The addresses on the "To" line. If your Amazon Pinpoint
                         account is in the sandbox, these addresses must be
 verified.
    :param template_name: The name of the email template to use when sending the
 message.
    :param template_version: The version number of the message template.

    :return: A dict of to_addresses and their message IDs.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=project_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {
                    to_address: {"ChannelType": "EMAIL"} for to_address in
 to_addresses
                },
                "MessageConfiguration": {"EmailMessage": {"FromAddress": sender}},
                "TemplateConfiguration": {
                    "EmailTemplate": {
                        "Name": template_name,
                        "Version": template_version,
                    }
                },
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send email.")
        raise
    else:
        return {
            to_address: message["MessageId"]
            for to_address, message in response["MessageResponse"]["Result"].items()
        }


def main():
```

```
    project_id = "296b04b342374fceb661bf494example"
    sender = "sender@example.com"
    to_addresses = ["recipient@example.com"]
    template_name = "My_Email_Template"
    template_version = "1"

    print("Sending email.")
    message_ids = send_templated_email_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint"),
        project_id,
        sender,
        to_addresses,
        template_name,
        template_version,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message IDs: {message_ids}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Send a text message with an existing SMS template.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_templated_sms_message(
    pinpoint_client,
    project_id,
    destination_number,
    message_type,
    origination_number,
    template_name,
    template_version,
):
    """
    Sends an SMS message to a specific phone number using a pre-defined template.
```

```
    :param pinpoint_client: A Boto3 Pinpoint client.
    :param project_id: An Amazon Pinpoint project (application) ID.
    :param destination_number: The phone number to send the message to.
    :param message_type: The type of SMS message (promotional or transactional).
    :param origination_number: The phone number that the message is sent from.
    :param template_name: The name of the SMS template to use when sending the
 message.
    :param template_version: The version number of the message template.

    :return The ID of the message.
    """
    try:
        response = pinpoint_client.send_messages(
            ApplicationId=project_id,
            MessageRequest={
                "Addresses": {destination_number: {"ChannelType": "SMS"}},
                "MessageConfiguration": {
                    "SMSMessage": {
                        "MessageType": message_type,
                        "OriginationNumber": origination_number,
                    }
                },
                "TemplateConfiguration": {
                    "SMSTemplate": {"Name": template_name, "Version":
 template_version}
                },
            },
        )

    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't send message.")
        raise
    else:
        return response["MessageResponse"]["Result"][destination_number]
["MessageId"]


def main():
    region = "us-east-1"
    origination_number = "+18555550001"
    destination_number = "+14255550142"
    project_id = "7353f53e6885409fa32d07cedexample"
    message_type = "TRANSACTIONAL"
    template_name = "My_SMS_Template"
```

```
    template_version = "1"
    message_id = send_templated_sms_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint", region_name=region),
        project_id,
        destination_number,
        message_type,
        origination_number,
        template_name,
        template_version,
    )
    print(f"Message sent! Message ID: {message_id}.")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see SendMessages in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Pinpoint SMS and Voice API.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendVoiceMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendVoiceMessage`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def send_voice_message(
    sms_voice_client,
    origination_number,
    caller_id,
    destination_number,
    language_code,
    voice_id,
    ssml_message,
):
    """
    Sends a voice message using speech synthesis provided by Amazon Polly.

    :param sms_voice_client: A Boto3 PinpointSMSVoice client.
    :param origination_number: The phone number that the message is sent from.
                               The phone number must be associated with your Amazon
                               Pinpoint account and be in E.164 format.
    :param caller_id: The phone number that you want to appear on the recipient's
                      device. The phone number must be associated with your Amazon
                      Pinpoint account and be in E.164 format.
    :param destination_number: The recipient's phone number. Specify the phone
                               number in E.164 format.
    :param language_code: The language to use when sending the message.
    :param voice_id: The Amazon Polly voice that you want to use to send the
 message.
    :param ssml_message: The content of the message. This example uses SSML to
 control
```

```
                        certain aspects of the message, such as the volume and the
                        speech rate. The message must not contain line breaks.
    :return: The ID of the message.
    """
    try:
        response = sms_voice_client.send_voice_message(
            DestinationPhoneNumber=destination_number,
            OriginationPhoneNumber=origination_number,
            CallerId=caller_id,
            Content={
                "SSMLMessage": {
                    "LanguageCode": language_code,
                    "VoiceId": voice_id,
                    "Text": ssml_message,
                }
            },
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't send message from %s to %s.",
            origination_number,
            destination_number,
        )
        raise
    else:
        return response["MessageId"]


def main():
    origination_number = "+12065550110"
    caller_id = "+12065550199"
    destination_number = "+12065550142"
    language_code = "en-US"
    voice_id = "Matthew"
    ssml_message = (
        "<speak>"
        "This is a test message sent from <emphasis>Amazon Pinpoint</emphasis> "
        "using the <break strength='weak'/>AWS SDK for Python (Boto3). "
        "<amazon:effect phonation='soft'>Thank you for listening."
        "</amazon:effect>"
        "</speak>"
    )
    print(f"Sending voice message from {origination_number} to
 {destination_number}.")
```

```
    message_id = send_voice_message(
        boto3.client("pinpoint-sms-voice"),
        origination_number,
        caller_id,
        destination_number,
        language_code,
        voice_id,
        ssml_message,
    )
    print(f"Message sent!\nMessage ID: {message_id}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see SendVoiceMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Polly.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeVoices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVoices`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def describe_voices(self):
        """
        Gets metadata about available voices.

        :return: The list of voice metadata.
        """
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.describe_voices()
            self.voice_metadata = response["Voices"]
            logger.info("Got metadata about %s voices.", len(self.voice_metadata))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get voice metadata.")
            raise
        else:
            return self.voice_metadata
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetLexicon

The following code example shows how to use GetLexicon.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def get_lexicon(self, name):
        """
        Gets metadata and contents of an existing lexicon.

        :param name: The name of the lexicon to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved lexicon.
        """
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.get_lexicon(Name=name)
            logger.info("Got lexicon %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get lexicon %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetLexicon in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetSpeechSynthesisTask`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSpeechSynthesisTask`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def get_speech_synthesis_task(self, task_id):
        """
        Gets metadata about an asynchronous speech synthesis task, such as its
 status.

        :param task_id: The ID of the task to retrieve.
        :return: Metadata about the task.
        """
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.get_speech_synthesis_task(TaskId=task_id)
            task = response["SynthesisTask"]
            logger.info("Got synthesis task. Status is %s.", task["TaskStatus"])
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get synthesis task %s.", task_id)
            raise
        else:
            return task
```

- For API details, see GetSpeechSynthesisTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListLexicons`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLexicons`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def list_lexicons(self):
        """
        Lists lexicons in the current account.

        :return: The list of lexicons.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.polly_client.list_lexicons()
            lexicons = response["Lexicons"]
            logger.info("Got %s lexicons.", len(lexicons))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get  %s.",
            )
            raise
        else:
            return lexicons
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `PutLexicon`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None
```

```
    def create_lexicon(self, name, content):
        """
        Creates a lexicon with the specified content. A lexicon contains custom
        pronunciations.

        :param name: The name of the lexicon.
        :param content: The content of the lexicon.
        """
        try:
            self.polly_client.put_lexicon(Name=name, Content=content)
            logger.info("Created lexicon %s.", name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create lexicon %s.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartSpeechSynthesisTask`

The following code example shows how to use `StartSpeechSynthesisTask`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
```

```
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def do_synthesis_task(
        self,
        text,
        engine,
        voice,
        audio_format,
        s3_bucket,
        lang_code=None,
        include_visemes=False,
        wait_callback=None,
    ):
        """
        Start an asynchronous task to synthesize speech or speech marks, wait for
        the task to complete, retrieve the output from Amazon S3, and return the
        data.

        An asynchronous task is required when the text is too long for near-real
time
        synthesis.

        :param text: The text to synthesize.
        :param engine: The kind of engine used. Can be standard or neural.
        :param voice: The ID of the voice to use.
        :param audio_format: The audio format to return for synthesized speech. When
                             speech marks are synthesized, the output format is
JSON.
        :param s3_bucket: The name of an existing Amazon S3 bucket that you have
                          write access to. Synthesis output is written to this
bucket.
        :param lang_code: The language code of the voice to use. This has an effect
                          only when a bilingual voice is selected.
        :param include_visemes: When True, a second request is made to Amazon Polly
                                to synthesize a list of visemes, using the specified
                                text and voice. A viseme represents the visual
position
                                of the face and mouth when saying part of a word.
        :param wait_callback: A callback function that is called periodically during
                              task processing, to give the caller an opportunity to
                              take action, such as to display status.
        :return: The audio stream that contains the synthesized speech and a list
                 of visemes that are associated with the speech audio.
```

```
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "Engine": engine,
                "OutputFormat": audio_format,
                "OutputS3BucketName": s3_bucket,
                "Text": text,
                "VoiceId": voice,
            }
            if lang_code is not None:
                kwargs["LanguageCode"] = lang_code
            response = self.polly_client.start_speech_synthesis_task(**kwargs)
            speech_task = response["SynthesisTask"]
            logger.info("Started speech synthesis task %s.", speech_task["TaskId"])

            viseme_task = None
            if include_visemes:
                kwargs["OutputFormat"] = "json"
                kwargs["SpeechMarkTypes"] = ["viseme"]
                response = self.polly_client.start_speech_synthesis_task(**kwargs)
                viseme_task = response["SynthesisTask"]
                logger.info("Started viseme synthesis task %s.",
viseme_task["TaskId"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start synthesis task.")
            raise
        else:
            bucket = self.s3_resource.Bucket(s3_bucket)
            audio_stream = self._wait_for_task(
                10, speech_task["TaskId"], "speech", wait_callback, bucket
            )

            visemes = None
            if include_visemes:
                viseme_data = self._wait_for_task(
                    10, viseme_task["TaskId"], "viseme", wait_callback, bucket
                )
                visemes = [
                    json.loads(v) for v in viseme_data.read().decode().split() if v
                ]

            return audio_stream, visemes
```

- For API details, see StartSpeechSynthesisTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SynthesizeSpeech`

The following code example shows how to use `SynthesizeSpeech`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class PollyWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Polly functions."""

    def __init__(self, polly_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param polly_client: A Boto3 Amazon Polly client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
 resource.
        """
        self.polly_client = polly_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.voice_metadata = None


    def synthesize(
        self, text, engine, voice, audio_format, lang_code=None,
 include_visemes=False
    ):
        """
        Synthesizes speech or speech marks from text, using the specified voice.

        :param text: The text to synthesize.
        :param engine: The kind of engine used. Can be standard or neural.
        :param voice: The ID of the voice to use.
        :param audio_format: The audio format to return for synthesized speech. When
```

```
                                speech marks are synthesized, the output format is
JSON.
        :param lang_code: The language code of the voice to use. This has an effect
                          only when a bilingual voice is selected.
        :param include_visemes: When True, a second request is made to Amazon Polly
                                to synthesize a list of visemes, using the specified
                                text and voice. A viseme represents the visual
position
                                of the face and mouth when saying part of a word.
        :return: The audio stream that contains the synthesized speech and a list
                 of visemes that are associated with the speech audio.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {
                "Engine": engine,
                "OutputFormat": audio_format,
                "Text": text,
                "VoiceId": voice,
            }
            if lang_code is not None:
                kwargs["LanguageCode"] = lang_code
            response = self.polly_client.synthesize_speech(**kwargs)
            audio_stream = response["AudioStream"]
            logger.info("Got audio stream spoken by %s.", voice)
            visemes = None
            if include_visemes:
                kwargs["OutputFormat"] = "json"
                kwargs["SpeechMarkTypes"] = ["viseme"]
                response = self.polly_client.synthesize_speech(**kwargs)
                visemes = [
                    json.loads(v)
                    for v in response["AudioStream"].read().decode().split()
                    if v
                ]
                logger.info("Got %s visemes.", len(visemes))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get audio stream.")
            raise
        else:
            return audio_stream, visemes
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a lip-sync application

The following code example shows how to create a lip-sync application with Amazon Polly.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use Amazon Polly and Tkinter to create a lip-sync application that displays an animated face speaking along with the speech synthesized by Amazon Polly. Lip-sync is accomplished by requesting a list of visemes from Amazon Polly that match up with the synthesized speech.

- Get voice metadata from Amazon Polly and display it in a Tkinter application.
- Get synthesized speech audio and matching viseme speech marks from Amazon Polly.
- Play the audio with synchronized mouth movements in an animated face.
- Submit asynchronous synthesis tasks for long texts and retrieve the output from an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
"""
Purpose

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database
 Service
(Amazon RDS) to list the databases in your account.
"""

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Create an RDS client
rds_client = boto3.client("rds")

# Create a paginator for the describe_db_instances operation
paginator = rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_instances")

try:
    # Use the paginator to get a list of DB instances
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        PaginationConfig={
            "MaxItems": 123,
            "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed
            "StartingToken": None,
        }
    )

    # Iterate through the pages of the response
```

```
    instances_found = False
    for page in response_iterator:
        if "DBInstances" in page and page["DBInstances"]:
            instances_found = True
            print("Your RDS instances are:")
            for db in page["DBInstances"]:
                print(db["DBInstanceIdentifier"])

    if not instances_found:
        print("No RDS instances found!")

except ClientError as e:
    print(f"Couldn't list RDS instances. Here's why: {e.response['Error']
['Message']}")
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class RdsInstanceScenario:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon RDS DB
 instances."""

    def __init__(self, instance_wrapper):
        """
        :param instance_wrapper: An object that wraps Amazon RDS DB instance
 actions.
        """
        self.instance_wrapper = instance_wrapper

    def create_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name, db_engine):
        """
        Shows how to get available engine versions for a specified database engine
 and
        create a DB parameter group that is compatible with a selected engine
 family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name given to the newly created parameter
 group.
        :param db_engine: The database engine to use as a basis.
        :return: The newly created parameter group.
        """
        print(
            f"Checking for an existing DB instance parameter group named
 {parameter_group_name}."
        )
        parameter_group = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameter_group(
            parameter_group_name
        )
        if parameter_group is None:
            print(f"Getting available database engine versions for {db_engine}.")
            engine_versions = self.instance_wrapper.get_engine_versions(db_engine)
```

```
            families = list({ver["DBParameterGroupFamily"] for ver in
engine_versions})
            family_index = q.choose("Which family do you want to use? ", families)
            print(f"Creating a parameter group.")
            self.instance_wrapper.create_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name, families[family_index], "Example parameter
group."
            )
            parameter_group = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameter_group(
                parameter_group_name
            )
        print(f"Parameter group {parameter_group['DBParameterGroupName']}:")
        pp(parameter_group)
        print("-" * 88)
        return parameter_group

    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to get the parameters contained in a custom parameter group and
        update some of the parameter values in the group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query and
modify.
        """
        print("Let's set some parameter values in your parameter group.")
        auto_inc_parameters = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, name_prefix="auto_increment"
        )
        update_params = []
        for auto_inc in auto_inc_parameters:
            if auto_inc["IsModifiable"] and auto_inc["DataType"] == "integer":
                print(f"The {auto_inc['ParameterName']} parameter is described as:")
                print(f"\t{auto_inc['Description']}")
                param_range = auto_inc["AllowedValues"].split("-")
                auto_inc["ParameterValue"] = str(
                    q.ask(
                        f"Enter a value between {param_range[0]} and
{param_range[1]}: ",
                        q.is_int,
                        q.in_range(int(param_range[0]), int(param_range[1])),
                    )
                )
                update_params.append(auto_inc)
        self.instance_wrapper.update_parameters(parameter_group_name, update_params)
```

```
        print(
            "You can get a list of parameters you've set by specifying a source of
'user'."
        )
        user_parameters = self.instance_wrapper.get_parameters(
            parameter_group_name, source="user"
        )
        pp(user_parameters)
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_instance(self, instance_name, db_name, db_engine, parameter_group):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB instance that contains a database of a specified
        type and is configured to use a custom DB parameter group.

        :param instance_name: The name given to the newly created DB instance.
        :param db_name: The name given to the created database.
        :param db_engine: The engine of the created database.
        :param parameter_group: The parameter group that is associated with the DB
instance.
        :return: The newly created DB instance.
        """
        print("Checking for an existing DB instance.")
        db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.get_db_instance(instance_name)
        if db_inst is None:
            print("Let's create a DB instance.")
            admin_username = q.ask(
                "Enter an administrator user name for the database: ", q.non_empty
            )
            admin_password = q.ask(
                "Enter a password for the administrator (at least 8 characters): ",
                q.non_empty,
            )
            engine_versions = self.instance_wrapper.get_engine_versions(
                db_engine, parameter_group["DBParameterGroupFamily"]
            )
            engine_choices = [ver["EngineVersion"] for ver in engine_versions]
            print("The available engines for your parameter group are:")
            engine_index = q.choose("Which engine do you want to use? ",
engine_choices)
            engine_selection = engine_versions[engine_index]
            print(
                "The available micro DB instance classes for your database engine
are:"
```

```
            )
            inst_opts = self.instance_wrapper.get_orderable_instances(
                engine_selection["Engine"], engine_selection["EngineVersion"]
            )
            inst_choices = list(
                {
                    opt["DBInstanceClass"]
                    for opt in inst_opts
                    if "micro" in opt["DBInstanceClass"]
                }
            )
            inst_index = q.choose(
                "Which micro DB instance class do you want to use? ", inst_choices
            )
            group_name = parameter_group["DBParameterGroupName"]
            storage_type = "standard"
            allocated_storage = 5
            print(
                f"Creating a DB instance named {instance_name} and database
{db_name}.\n"
                f"The DB instance is configured to use your custom parameter group
{group_name},\n"
                f"selected engine {engine_selection['EngineVersion']},\n"
                f"selected DB instance class {inst_choices[inst_index]},"
                f"and {allocated_storage} GiB of {storage_type} storage.\n"
                f"This typically takes several minutes."
            )
            db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.create_db_instance(
                db_name,
                instance_name,
                group_name,
                engine_selection["Engine"],
                engine_selection["EngineVersion"],
                inst_choices[inst_index],
                storage_type,
                allocated_storage,
                admin_username,
                admin_password,
            )
            while db_inst.get("DBInstanceStatus") != "available":
                wait(10)
                db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.get_db_instance(instance_name)
        print("Instance data:")
        pp(db_inst)
```

```
        print("-" * 88)
        return db_inst

    @staticmethod
    def display_connection(db_inst):
        """
        Displays connection information about a DB instance and tips on how to
        connect to it.

        :param db_inst: The DB instance to display.
        """
        print(
            "You can now connect to your database using your favorite MySql client.
\n"
            "One way to connect is by using the 'mysql' shell on an Amazon EC2
 instance\n"
            "that is running in the same VPC as your DB instance. Pass the endpoint,
\n"
            "port, and administrator user name to 'mysql' and enter your password\n"
            "when prompted:\n"
        )
        print(
            f"\n\tmysql -h {db_inst['Endpoint']['Address']} -P {db_inst['Endpoint']
['Port']} "
            f"-u {db_inst['MasterUsername']} -p\n"
        )
        print(
            "For more information, see the User Guide for Amazon RDS:\n"
            "\thttps://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonRDS/latest/UserGuide/
CHAP_GettingStarted.CreatingConnecting.MySQL.html#CHAP_GettingStarted.Connecting.MySQL"
        )
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_snapshot(self, instance_name):
        """
        Shows how to create a DB instance snapshot and wait until it's available.

        :param instance_name: The name of a DB instance to snapshot.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to create a snapshot of your DB instance (y/n)? ",
 q.is_yesno
        ):
            snapshot_id = f"{instance_name}-{uuid.uuid4()}"
```

```
            print(
                f"Creating a snapshot named {snapshot_id}. This typically takes a
few minutes."
            )
            snapshot = self.instance_wrapper.create_snapshot(snapshot_id,
instance_name)
            while snapshot.get("Status") != "available":
                wait(10)
                snapshot = self.instance_wrapper.get_snapshot(snapshot_id)
            pp(snapshot)
            print("-" * 88)

    def cleanup(self, db_inst, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Shows how to clean up a DB instance and parameter group.
        Before the parameter group can be deleted, all associated DB instances must
first
        be deleted.

        :param db_inst: The DB instance to delete.
        :param parameter_group_name: The DB parameter group to delete.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "\nDo you want to delete the DB instance and parameter group (y/n)? ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            print(f"Deleting DB instance {db_inst['DBInstanceIdentifier']}.")

self.instance_wrapper.delete_db_instance(db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"])
            print(
                "Waiting for the DB instance to delete. This typically takes several
minutes."
            )
            while db_inst is not None:
                wait(10)
                db_inst = self.instance_wrapper.get_db_instance(
                    db_inst["DBInstanceIdentifier"]
                )
            print(f"Deleting parameter group {parameter_group_name}.")
            self.instance_wrapper.delete_parameter_group(parameter_group_name)

    def run_scenario(self, db_engine, parameter_group_name, instance_name, db_name):
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
```

```
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            "Welcome to the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)\n"
            "get started with DB instances demo."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

        parameter_group = self.create_parameter_group(parameter_group_name,
 db_engine)
        self.update_parameters(parameter_group_name)
        db_inst = self.create_instance(
            instance_name, db_name, db_engine, parameter_group
        )
        self.display_connection(db_inst)
        self.create_snapshot(instance_name)
        self.cleanup(db_inst, parameter_group_name)

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = RdsInstanceScenario(InstanceWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario(
            "mysql",
            "doc-example-parameter-group",
            "doc-example-instance",
            "docexampledb",
        )
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define functions that are called by the scenario to manage Amazon RDS actions.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
```

```
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_parameter_groups(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
parameter_group_name)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group


    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB parameter group that is based on the specified parameter group
```

```
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of the
new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
```

```
            )
            raise


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
```

```
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
Parameters=update_parameters
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def create_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, instance_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB instance.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_snapshot(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id, DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def get_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB instance snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_snapshots(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned list
of
                                       engine versions to those that are compatible
with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
```

```
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by the
DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return inst_opts


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst


    def create_db_instance(
        self,
        db_name,
        instance_id,
        parameter_group_name,
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        instance_class,
        storage_type,
        allocated_storage,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
```

```
        """
        Creates a DB instance.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that is created in the DB instance.
        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param parameter_group_name: A parameter group to associate with the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version for the created database.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :param storage_type: The storage type of the DB instance.
        :param allocated_storage: The amount of storage allocated on the DB
instance, in GiBs.
        :param admin_name: The name of the admin user for the created database.
        :param admin_password: The admin password for the created database.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBName=db_name,
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
                StorageType=storage_type,
                AllocatedStorage=allocated_storage,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

```
    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters

- DescribeDBSnapshots
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_db_instance(
        self,
        db_name,
        instance_id,
        parameter_group_name,
```

```
        db_engine,
        db_engine_version,
        instance_class,
        storage_type,
        allocated_storage,
        admin_name,
        admin_password,
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB instance.

        :param db_name: The name of the database that is created in the DB instance.
        :param instance_id: The ID to give the newly created DB instance.
        :param parameter_group_name: A parameter group to associate with the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine: The database engine of a database to create in the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version for the created database.
        :param instance_class: The DB instance class for the newly created DB
instance.
        :param storage_type: The storage type of the DB instance.
        :param allocated_storage: The amount of storage allocated on the DB
instance, in GiBs.
        :param admin_name: The name of the admin user for the created database.
        :param admin_password: The admin password for the created database.
        :return: Data about the newly created DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_instance(
                DBName=db_name,
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                Engine=db_engine,
                EngineVersion=db_engine_version,
                DBInstanceClass=instance_class,
                StorageType=storage_type,
                AllocatedStorage=allocated_storage,
                MasterUsername=admin_name,
                MasterUserPassword=admin_password,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)
```

```
    def create_parameter_group(
        self, parameter_group_name, parameter_group_family, description
    ):
        """
        Creates a DB parameter group that is based on the specified parameter group
        family.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the newly created parameter group.
        :param parameter_group_family: The family that is used as the basis of the
new
                                       parameter group.
        :param description: A description given to the parameter group.
        :return: Data about the newly created parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
                DBParameterGroupFamily=parameter_group_family,
                Description=description,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def create_snapshot(self, snapshot_id, instance_id):
        """
        Creates a snapshot of a DB instance.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID to give the created snapshot.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to snapshot.
        :return: Data about the newly created snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.create_db_snapshot(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id, DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshot"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create snapshot of %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)
```

```
    def delete_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Deletes a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to delete.
        :return: Data about the deleted DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.delete_db_instance(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id,
                SkipFinalSnapshot=True,
                DeleteAutomatedBackups=True,
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstance"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def delete_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Deletes a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to delete.
        :return: Data about the parameter group.
        """
        try:
            self.rds_client.delete_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_engine_versions(self, engine, parameter_group_family=None):
        """
        Gets database engine versions that are available for the specified engine
        and parameter group family.

        :param engine: The database engine to look up.
        :param parameter_group_family: When specified, restricts the returned list
 of
                                       engine versions to those that are compatible
 with
                                       this parameter group family.
        :return: The list of database engine versions.
        """
```

```
        try:
            kwargs = {"Engine": engine}
            if parameter_group_family is not None:
                kwargs["DBParameterGroupFamily"] = parameter_group_family
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_engine_versions(**kwargs)
            versions = response["DBEngineVersions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get engine versions for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                engine,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return versions
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_db_instance(self, instance_id):
        """
        Gets data about a DB instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the DB instance to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved DB instance.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_instances(
                DBInstanceIdentifier=instance_id
            )
            db_inst = response["DBInstances"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBInstanceNotFound":
                logger.info("Instance %s does not exist.", instance_id)
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get DB instance %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    instance_id,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return db_inst
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameter_group(self, parameter_group_name):
        """
        Gets a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to retrieve.
        :return: The parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_parameter_groups(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name
            )
            parameter_group = response["DBParameterGroups"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "DBParameterGroupNotFound":
                logger.info("Parameter group %s does not exist.",
 parameter_group_name)
```

```
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get parameter group %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    parameter_group_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return parameter_group
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, name_prefix="", source=None):
        """
        Gets the parameters that are contained in a DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to query.
        :param name_prefix: When specified, the retrieved list of parameters is
filtered
                            to contain only parameters that start with this prefix.
        :param source: When specified, only parameters from this source are
retrieved.
                       For example, a source of 'user' retrieves only parameters
that
                       were set by a user.
        :return: The list of requested parameters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {"DBParameterGroupName": parameter_group_name}
            if source is not None:
                kwargs["Source"] = source
            parameters = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator("describe_db_parameters")
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                parameters += [
                    p
                    for p in page["Parameters"]
                    if p["ParameterName"].startswith(name_prefix)
                ]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get parameters for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return parameters
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeDBSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_snapshot(self, snapshot_id):
        """
        Gets a DB instance snapshot.

        :param snapshot_id: The ID of the snapshot to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved snapshot.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.describe_db_snapshots(
                DBSnapshotIdentifier=snapshot_id
            )
            snapshot = response["DBSnapshots"][0]
        except ClientError as err:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get snapshot %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                snapshot_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return snapshot
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
```

```
        return cls(rds_client)


    def get_orderable_instances(self, db_engine, db_engine_version):
        """
        Gets DB instance options that can be used to create DB instances that are
        compatible with a set of specifications.

        :param db_engine: The database engine that must be supported by the DB
instance.
        :param db_engine_version: The engine version that must be supported by the
DB instance.
        :return: The list of DB instance options that can be used to create a
compatible DB instance.
        """
        try:
            inst_opts = []
            paginator = self.rds_client.get_paginator(
                "describe_orderable_db_instance_options"
            )
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                Engine=db_engine, EngineVersion=db_engine_version
            ):
                inst_opts += page["OrderableDBInstanceOptions"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get orderable DB instances. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return inst_opts
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ModifyDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class InstanceWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon RDS DB instance actions."""

    def __init__(self, rds_client):
        """
        :param rds_client: A Boto3 Amazon RDS client.
        """
        self.rds_client = rds_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        rds_client = boto3.client("rds")
        return cls(rds_client)


    def update_parameters(self, parameter_group_name, update_parameters):
        """
        Updates parameters in a custom DB parameter group.

        :param parameter_group_name: The name of the parameter group to update.
        :param update_parameters: The parameters to update in the group.
        :return: Data about the modified parameter group.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rds_client.modify_db_parameter_group(
                DBParameterGroupName=parameter_group_name,
 Parameters=update_parameters
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update parameters in %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                parameter_group_name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS

- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Python.

```
import json
import os
import boto3
import pymysql

# RDS settings
proxy_host_name = os.environ['PROXY_HOST_NAME']
port = int(os.environ['PORT'])
db_name = os.environ['DB_NAME']
db_user_name = os.environ['DB_USER_NAME']
aws_region = os.environ['AWS_REGION']


# Fetch RDS Auth Token
def get_auth_token():
    client = boto3.client('rds')
    token = client.generate_db_auth_token(
        DBHostname=proxy_host_name,
        Port=port
        DBUsername=db_user_name
        Region=aws_region
```

```
    )
    return token

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    token = get_auth_token()
    try:
        connection = pymysql.connect(
            host=proxy_host_name,
            user=db_user_name,
            password=token,
            db=db_name,
            port=port,
            ssl={'ca': 'Amazon RDS'}  # Ensure you have the CA bundle for SSL
 connection
        )

        with connection.cursor() as cursor:
            cursor.execute('SELECT %s + %s AS sum', (3, 2))
            result = cursor.fetchone()

        return result

    except Exception as e:
        return (f"Error: {str(e)}")  # Return an error message if an exception
 occurs
```

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.
- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Amazon Redshift examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Redshift.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Redshift

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Redshift.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_redshift(redshift_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Redshift client and list
    the clusters in your account. This list might be empty if you haven't created
    any clusters.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Redshift! Let's list your clusters:")
    paginator = redshift_client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
    clusters = []
    for page in paginator.paginate():
        clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

    print(f"{len(clusters)} cluster(s) were found.")

    for cluster in clusters:
        print(f"  {cluster['ClusterIdentifier']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
```

```
    hello_redshift(boto3.client("redshift"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a Redshift cluster.
- List databases in the cluster.
- Create a table named Movies.
- Populate the Movies table.
- Query the Movies table by year.
- Modify the Redshift cluster.
- Delete the Amazon Redshift cluster.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started with Redshift."""

    def __init__(self, redshift_wrapper, redshift_data_wrapper):
        self.redshift_wrapper = redshift_wrapper
        self.redshift_data_wrapper = redshift_data_wrapper
```

```
    def redhift_scenario(self, json_file_path):
        database_name = "dev"

        print(DASHES)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon Redshift SDK Getting Started example.")
        print(
            """
      This Python program demonstrates how to interact with Amazon Redshift
      using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3).

      Amazon Redshift is a fully managed, petabyte-scale data warehouse
      service hosted in the cloud.

      The program's primary functionalities include cluster creation,
      verification of cluster readiness, listing databases, table creation,
      populating data within the table, and executing SQL statements.

      It also demonstrates querying data from the Movies table.

      Upon completion, all AWS resources are cleaned up.
    """
        )
        if not os.path.isfile(json_file_path):
            logging.error(f"The file {json_file_path} does not exist.")
            return

        print("Let's get started...")
        user_name = q.ask("Please enter your user name (default is awsuser):")
        user_name = user_name if user_name else "awsuser"

        print(DASHES)
        user_password = q.ask(
            "Please enter your user password (default is AwsUser1000):"
        )
        user_password = user_password if user_password else "AwsUser1000"

        print(DASHES)
        print(
            """A Redshift cluster refers to the collection of computing resources
and storage that work
            together to process and analyze large volumes of data."""
        )
        cluster_id = q.ask(
```

```
            "Enter a cluster identifier value (default is redshift-cluster-movies):
"
        )
        cluster_id = cluster_id if cluster_id else "redshift-cluster-movies"

        self.redshift_wrapper.create_cluster(
            cluster_id, "ra3.4xlarge", user_name, user_password, True, 2
        )

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"Wait until {cluster_id} is available. This may take a few
minutes...")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        self.wait_cluster_available(cluster_id)

        print(DASHES)

        print(
            f"""
      When you created {cluster_id}, the dev database is created by default and
used in this scenario.

      To create a custom database, you need to have a CREATEDB privilege.
      For more information, see the documentation here:
      https://docs.aws.amazon.com/redshift/latest/dg/r_CREATE_DATABASE.html.
     """
        )
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        print(f"List databases in {cluster_id}")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
        databases = self.redshift_data_wrapper.list_databases(
            cluster_id, database_name, user_name
        )
        print(f"The cluster contains {len(databases)} database(s).")
        for database in databases:
            print(f"    Database: {database}")
        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        print("Now you will create a table named Movies.")
```

```
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        self.create_table(cluster_id, database_name, user_name)

        print(DASHES)

        print("Populate the Movies table using the Movies.json file.")
        print(
            "Specify the number of records you would like to add to the Movies
Table."
        )
        print("Please enter a value between 50 and 200.")

        while True:
            try:
                num_records = int(q.ask("Enter a value: ", q.is_int))
                if 50 <= num_records <= 200:
                    break
                else:
                    print("Invalid input. Please enter a value between 50 and 200.")
            except ValueError:
                print("Invalid input. Please enter a value between 50 and 200.")

        self.populate_table(
            cluster_id, database_name, user_name, json_file_path, num_records
        )

        print(DASHES)
        print("Query the Movies table by year. Enter a value between 2012-2014.")

        while True:
            movie_year = int(q.ask("Enter a year: ", q.is_int))
            if 2012 <= movie_year <= 2014:
                break
            else:
                print("Invalid input. Please enter a valid year between 2012 and
2014.")

        # Function to query database
        sql_id = self.query_movies_by_year(
            database_name, user_name, movie_year, cluster_id
        )

        print(f"The identifier of the statement is {sql_id}")
```

```
        print("Checking statement status...")
        self.wait_statement_finished(sql_id)
        result = self.redshift_data_wrapper.get_statement_result(sql_id)

        self.display_movies(result)

        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        print("Now you will modify the Redshift cluster.")
        q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")

        preferred_maintenance_window = "wed:07:30-wed:08:00"
        self.redshift_wrapper.modify_cluster(cluster_id,
preferred_maintenance_window)

        print(DASHES)

        print(DASHES)
        delete = q.ask("Do you want to delete the cluster? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno)

        if delete:
            print(f"You selected to delete {cluster_id}")
            q.ask("Press Enter to continue...")
            self.redshift_wrapper.delete_cluster(cluster_id)
        else:
            print(f"Cluster {cluster_id}cluster_id was not deleted")

        print(DASHES)
        print("This concludes the Amazon Redshift SDK Getting Started scenario.")
        print(DASHES)

    def create_table(self, cluster_id, database, username):
        self.redshift_data_wrapper.execute_statement(
            cluster_identifier=cluster_id,
            database_name=database,
            user_name=username,
            sql="CREATE TABLE Movies (statement_id INT PRIMARY KEY, title
VARCHAR(100), year INT)",
        )

        print("Table created: Movies")
```

```
    def populate_table(self, cluster_id, database, username, file_name, number):
        with open(file_name) as f:
            data = json.load(f)

        i = 0
        for record in data:
            if i == number:
                break

            statement_id = i
            title = record["title"]
            year = record["year"]
            i = i + 1
            parameters = [
                {"name": "statement_id", "value": str(statement_id)},
                {"name": "title", "value": title},
                {"name": "year", "value": str(year)},
            ]

            self.redshift_data_wrapper.execute_statement(
                cluster_identifier=cluster_id,
                database_name=database,
                user_name=username,
                sql="INSERT INTO Movies VALUES(:statement_id, :title, :year)",
                parameter_list=parameters,
            )

        print(f"{i} records inserted into Movies table")

    def wait_cluster_available(self, cluster_id):
        """
        Waits for a cluster to be available.

        :param cluster_id: The cluster identifier.

        Note: The cluster_available waiter can also be used.
        It is not used in this case to allow an elapsed time message.
        """
        cluster_ready = False
        start_time = time.time()

        while not cluster_ready:
            time.sleep(30)
```

```
            cluster = self.redshift_wrapper.describe_clusters(cluster_id)
            status = cluster[0]["ClusterStatus"]
            if status == "available":
                cluster_ready = True
            elif status != "creating":
                raise Exception(
                    f"Cluster {cluster_id} creation failed with status {status}."
                )

            elapsed_seconds = int(round(time.time() - start_time))
            minutes = int(elapsed_seconds // 60)
            seconds = int(elapsed_seconds % 60)

            print(f"Elapsed Time: {minutes}:{seconds:02d} - status {status}...")

            if minutes > 30:
                raise Exception(
                    f"Cluster {cluster_id} is not available after 30 minutes."
                )

    def query_movies_by_year(self, database, username, year, cluster_id):
        sql = "SELECT * FROM Movies WHERE year = :year"

        params = [{"name": "year", "value": str(year)}]

        response = self.redshift_data_wrapper.execute_statement(
            cluster_identifier=cluster_id,
            database_name=database,
            user_name=username,
            sql=sql,
            parameter_list=params,
        )

        return response["Id"]

    @staticmethod
    def display_movies(response):
        metadata = response["ColumnMetadata"]
        records = response["Records"]

        title_column_index = None
        for i in range(len(metadata)):
            if metadata[i]["name"] == "title":
                title_column_index = i
```

```
                break

        if title_column_index is None:
            print("No title column found.")
            return

        print(f"Found {len(records)} movie(s).")
        for record in records:
            print(f"   {record[title_column_index]['stringValue']}")

    def wait_statement_finished(self, sql_id):
        while True:
            time.sleep(1)
            response = self.redshift_data_wrapper.describe_statement(sql_id)
            status = response["Status"]
            print(f"Statement status is {status}.")

            if status == "FAILED":
                print(f"The query failed because {response['Error']}. Ending
program")
                raise Exception("The Query Failed. Ending program")
            elif status == "FINISHED":
                break
```

Main function showing scenario implementation.

```
def main():
    redshift_client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redshift_data_client = boto3.client("redshift-data")
    redshift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(redshift_client)
    redshift_data_wrapper = RedshiftDataWrapper(redshift_data_client)
    redshift_scenario = RedshiftScenario(redshift_wrapper, redshift_data_wrapper)
    redshift_scenario.redhift_scenario(
        f"{os.path.dirname(__file__)}/../../../resources/sample_files/movies.json"
    )
```

The wrapper functions used in the scenario.

```
    def create_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_identifier,
        node_type,
        master_username,
        master_user_password,
        publicly_accessible,
        number_of_nodes,
    ):
        """
        Creates a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The name of the cluster.
        :param node_type: The type of node in the cluster.
        :param master_username: The master username.
        :param master_user_password: The master user password.
        :param publicly_accessible: Whether the cluster is publicly accessible.
        :param number_of_nodes: The number of nodes in the cluster.
        :return: The cluster.
        """

        try:
            cluster = self.client.create_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                NodeType=node_type,
                MasterUsername=master_username,
                MasterUserPassword=master_user_password,
                PubliclyAccessible=publicly_accessible,
                NumberOfNodes=number_of_nodes,
            )
            return cluster
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_clusters(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Describes a cluster.
```

```
        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :return: A list of clusters.
        """
        try:
            kwargs = {}
            if cluster_identifier:
                kwargs["ClusterIdentifier"] = cluster_identifier

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
            clusters = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

            return clusters

        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def execute_statement(
        self, cluster_identifier, database_name, user_name, sql, parameter_list=None
    ):
        """
        Executes a SQL statement.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param database_name: The database name.
        :param user_name: The user's name.
        :param sql: The SQL statement.
        :param parameter_list: The optional SQL statement parameters.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """

        try:
            kwargs = {
                "ClusterIdentifier": cluster_identifier,
                "Database": database_name,
                "DbUser": user_name,
```

```
                "Sql": sql,
            }
            if parameter_list:
                kwargs["Parameters"] = parameter_list
            response = self.client.execute_statement(**kwargs)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't execute statement. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe_statement(self, statement_id):
        """
        Describes a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.describe_statement(Id=statement_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe statement. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_statement_result(self, statement_id):
        """
        Gets the result of a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            result = {
                "Records": [],
```

```
            }
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("get_statement_result")
            for page in paginator.paginate(Id=statement_id):
                if "ColumnMetadata" not in result:
                    result["ColumnMetadata"] = page["ColumnMetadata"]
                result["Records"].extend(page["Records"])
            return result
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get statement result. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def modify_cluster(self, cluster_identifier, preferred_maintenance_window):
        """
        Modifies a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param preferred_maintenance_window: The preferred maintenance window.
        """
        try:
            self.client.modify_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                PreferredMaintenanceWindow=preferred_maintenance_window,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't modify a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def list_databases(self, cluster_identifier, database_name, database_user):
        """
        Lists databases in a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param database_name: The database name.
        :param database_user: The database user.
```

```
        :return: The list of databases.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("list_databases")
            databases = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                Database=database_name,
                DbUser=database_user,
            ):
                databases.extend(page["Databases"])

            return databases
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list databases. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete_cluster(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Deletes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        """
        try:
            self.client.delete_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier, SkipFinalClusterSnapshot=True
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

- CreateCluster
- DescribeClusters
- DescribeStatement
- ExecuteStatement
- GetStatementResult
- ListDatabasesPaginator
- ModifyCluster

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def create_cluster(
        self,
        cluster_identifier,
        node_type,
        master_username,
```

```
        master_user_password,
        publicly_accessible,
        number_of_nodes,
    ):
        """
        Creates a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The name of the cluster.
        :param node_type: The type of node in the cluster.
        :param master_username: The master username.
        :param master_user_password: The master user password.
        :param publicly_accessible: Whether the cluster is publicly accessible.
        :param number_of_nodes: The number of nodes in the cluster.
        :return: The cluster.
        """

        try:
            cluster = self.client.create_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                NodeType=node_type,
                MasterUsername=master_username,
                MasterUserPassword=master_user_password,
                PubliclyAccessible=publicly_accessible,
                NumberOfNodes=number_of_nodes,
            )
            return cluster
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def delete_cluster(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Deletes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        """
        try:
            self.client.delete_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier, SkipFinalClusterSnapshot=True
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def describe_clusters(self, cluster_identifier):
        """
        Describes a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :return: A list of clusters.
        """
```

```
        try:
            kwargs = {}
            if cluster_identifier:
                kwargs["ClusterIdentifier"] = cluster_identifier

            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("describe_clusters")
            clusters = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(**kwargs):
                clusters.extend(page["Clusters"])

            return clusters

        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStatement`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftDataWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Redshift data."""

    def __init__(self, client):
        """
        :param client: A Boto3 RedshiftDataWrapper client.
        """
        self.client = client


    def describe_statement(self, statement_id):
        """
        Describes a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            response = self.client.describe_statement(Id=statement_id)
            return response
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe statement. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftDataWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift-data")
    redshift_data_wrapper = RedshiftDataWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see DescribeStatement in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetStatementResult`

The following code example shows how to use `GetStatementResult`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftDataWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon Redshift data."""

    def __init__(self, client):
        """
        :param client: A Boto3 RedshiftDataWrapper client.
        """
        self.client = client


    def get_statement_result(self, statement_id):
        """
        Gets the result of a SQL statement.

        :param statement_id: The SQL statement identifier.
        :return: The SQL statement result.
        """
        try:
            result = {
                "Records": [],
            }
            paginator = self.client.get_paginator("get_statement_result")
            for page in paginator.paginate(Id=statement_id):
                if "ColumnMetadata" not in result:
                    result["ColumnMetadata"] = page["ColumnMetadata"]
                result["Records"].extend(page["Records"])
            return result
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get statement result. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftDataWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift-data")
    redshift_data_wrapper = RedshiftDataWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see GetStatementResult in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ModifyCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyCluster`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RedshiftWrapper:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Redshift cluster operations.
    """

    def __init__(self, redshift_client):
        """
        :param redshift_client: A Boto3 Redshift client.
        """
        self.client = redshift_client


    def modify_cluster(self, cluster_identifier, preferred_maintenance_window):
        """
        Modifies a cluster.

        :param cluster_identifier: The cluster identifier.
        :param preferred_maintenance_window: The preferred maintenance window.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.client.modify_cluster(
                ClusterIdentifier=cluster_identifier,
                PreferredMaintenanceWindow=preferred_maintenance_window,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't modify a cluster. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

The following code instantiates the RedshiftWrapper object.

```
    client = boto3.client("redshift")
    redhift_wrapper = RedshiftWrapper(client)
```

- For API details, see ModifyCluster in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Rekognition.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`CompareFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `CompareFaces`.

For more information, see Comparing faces in images.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def compare_faces(self, target_image, similarity):
        """
        Compares faces in the image with the largest face in the target image.
```

```
        :param target_image: The target image to compare against.
        :param similarity: Faces in the image must have a similarity value greater
                           than this value to be included in the results.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of faces that match the
                 reference image. The second element is the list of faces that have
                 a similarity value below the specified threshold.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.compare_faces(
                SourceImage=self.image,
                TargetImage=target_image.image,
                SimilarityThreshold=similarity,
            )
            matches = [
                RekognitionFace(match["Face"]) for match in response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            unmatches = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in
response["UnmatchedFaces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s matched faces and %s unmatched faces.",
                len(matches),
                len(unmatches),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't match faces from %s to %s.",
                self.image_name,
                target_image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return matches, unmatches
```

- For API details, see CompareFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCollection`.

For more information, see Creating a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollectionManager:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Rekognition collection management functions.
    This class is a thin wrapper around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the collection manager object.

        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def create_collection(self, collection_id):
        """
        Creates an empty collection.

        :param collection_id: Text that identifies the collection.
        :return: The newly created collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.create_collection(
                CollectionId=collection_id
            )
            response["CollectionId"] = collection_id
            collection = RekognitionCollection(response, self.rekognition_client)
            logger.info("Created collection %s.", collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create collection %s.", collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return collection
```

- For API details, see CreateCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCollection`.

For more information, see Deleting a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
```

```
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def delete_collection(self):
        """
        Deletes the collection.
        """
        try:

self.rekognition_client.delete_collection(CollectionId=self.collection_id)
            logger.info("Deleted collection %s.", self.collection_id)
            self.collection_id = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete collection %s.", self.collection_id)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFaces`.

For more information, see Deleting faces from a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
```

```
        )


    def delete_faces(self, face_ids):
        """
        Deletes faces from the collection.

        :param face_ids: The list of IDs of faces to delete.
        :return: The list of IDs of faces that were deleted.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.delete_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id, FaceIds=face_ids
            )
            deleted_ids = response["DeletedFaces"]
            logger.info(
                "Deleted %s faces from %s.", len(deleted_ids), self.collection_id
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete faces from %s.", self.collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return deleted_ids
```

- For API details, see DeleteFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCollection`.

For more information, see Describing a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def describe_collection(self):
        """
        Gets data about the collection from the Amazon Rekognition service.

        :return: The collection rendered as a dict.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.describe_collection(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id
            )
            # Work around capitalization of Arn vs. ARN
            response["CollectionArn"] = response.get("CollectionARN")
            (
                self.collection_arn,
                self.face_count,
                self.created,
            ) = self._unpack_collection(response)
            logger.info("Got data for collection %s.", self.collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for collection %s.",
 self.collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return self.to_dict()
```

- For API details, see DescribeCollection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectFaces`.

For more information, see Detecting faces in an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
```

```
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_faces(self):
        """
        Detects faces in the image.

        :return: The list of faces found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_faces(
                Image=self.image, Attributes=["ALL"]
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["FaceDetails"]]
            logger.info("Detected %s faces.", len(faces))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect faces in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return faces
```

- For API details, see DetectFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting labels in an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_labels(self, max_labels):
        """
        Detects labels in the image. Labels are objects and people.

        :param max_labels: The maximum number of labels to return.
        :return: The list of labels detected in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_labels(
                Image=self.image, MaxLabels=max_labels
            )
            labels = [RekognitionLabel(label) for label in response["Labels"]]
            logger.info("Found %s labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.info("Couldn't detect labels in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return labels
```

- For API details, see DetectLabels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectModerationLabels`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectModerationLabels`.

For more information, see Detecting inappropriate images.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client
```

```
    def detect_moderation_labels(self):
        """
        Detects moderation labels in the image. Moderation labels identify content
        that may be inappropriate for some audiences.

        :return: The list of moderation labels found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_moderation_labels(
                Image=self.image
            )
            labels = [
                RekognitionModerationLabel(label)
                for label in response["ModerationLabels"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s moderation labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't detect moderation labels in %s.", self.image_name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return labels
```

- For API details, see DetectModerationLabels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectText`.

For more information, see Detecting text in an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def detect_text(self):
        """
        Detects text in the image.

        :return The list of text elements found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_text(Image=self.image)
            texts = [RekognitionText(text) for text in response["TextDetections"]]
            logger.info("Found %s texts in %s.", len(texts), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
```

```
            return texts
```

- For API details, see DetectText in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DisassociateFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateFaces`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

```
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import boto3
import logging

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
session = boto3.Session(profile_name='profile-name')
client = session.client('rekognition')

def disassociate_faces(collection_id, user_id, face_ids):
    """
    Disassociate stored faces within collection to the given user

    :param collection_id: The ID of the collection where user and faces are stored.
    :param user_id: The ID of the user that we want to disassociate faces from
    :param face_ids: The list of face IDs to be disassociated from the given user

    :return: response of AssociateFaces API
    """
    logger.info(f'Disssociating faces from user: {user_id}, {face_ids}')
    try:
        response = client.disassociate_faces(
            CollectionId=collection_id,
            UserId=user_id,
            FaceIds=face_ids
        )
        print(f'- disassociated {len(response["DisassociatedFaces"])} faces')
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Failed to disassociate faces from the given user")
        raise
    else:
        print(response)
```

```
        return response

def main():
    face_ids = ["faceId1", "faceId2"]
    collection_id = "collection-id"
    user_id = "user-id"
    disassociate_faces(collection_id, user_id, face_ids)

if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see DisassociateFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`IndexFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `IndexFaces`.

For more information, see Adding faces to a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
```

```
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def index_faces(self, image, max_faces):
        """
        Finds faces in the specified image, indexes them, and stores them in the
        collection.

        :param image: The image to index.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to index.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is a list of indexed faces.
                 The second element is a list of faces that couldn't be indexed.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.index_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                ExternalImageId=image.image_name,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
                DetectionAttributes=["ALL"],
            )
            indexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace({**face["Face"], **face["FaceDetail"]})
                for face in response["FaceRecords"]
            ]
```

```
            unindexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["FaceDetail"])
                for face in response["UnindexedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Indexed %s faces in %s. Could not index %s faces.",
                len(indexed_faces),
                image.image_name,
                len(unindexed_faces),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't index faces in image %s.", image.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return indexed_faces, unindexed_faces
```

- For API details, see IndexFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListCollections`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCollections`.

For more information, see Listing collections.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollectionManager:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Rekognition collection management functions.
    This class is a thin wrapper around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, rekognition_client):
```

```
        """
        Initializes the collection manager object.

        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def list_collections(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists collections for the current account.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of collections to return.
        :return: The list of collections for the current account.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.rekognition_client.list_collections(MaxResults=max_results)
            collections = [
                RekognitionCollection({"CollectionId": col_id},
self.rekognition_client)
                for col_id in response["CollectionIds"]
            ]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list collections.")
            raise
        else:
            return collections
```

- For API details, see ListCollections in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFaces`.

For more information, see Listing faces in a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
```

```
        )


    def list_faces(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists the faces currently indexed in the collection.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of faces in the collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.list_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id, MaxResults=max_results
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["Faces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in collection %s.", len(faces), self.collection_id
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list faces in collection %s.", self.collection_id
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces
```

- For API details, see ListFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`RecognizeCelebrities`

The following code example shows how to use `RecognizeCelebrities`.

For more information, see Recognizing celebrities in an image.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def recognize_celebrities(self):
        """
        Detects celebrities in the image.

        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of celebrities found in
                 the image. The second element is the list of faces that were
                 detected but did not match any known celebrities.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.rekognition_client.recognize_celebrities(Image=self.image)
            celebrities = [
                RekognitionCelebrity(celeb) for celeb in response["CelebrityFaces"]
            ]
            other_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["UnrecognizedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s celebrities and %s other faces in %s.",
                len(celebrities),
                len(other_faces),
                self.image_name,
            )
```

```
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect celebrities in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return celebrities, other_faces
```

- For API details, see RecognizeCelebrities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SearchFaces`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFaces`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (face ID).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
 self._unpack_collection(
```

```
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def search_faces(self, face_id, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match another face from the
        collection.

        :param face_id: The ID of the face in the collection to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of matching faces found in the collection. This list does
                 not contain the face specified by `face_id`.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                FaceId=face_id,
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in
response["FaceMatches"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in %s that match %s.",
                len(faces),
```

```
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces
```

- For API details, see SearchFaces in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SearchFacesByImage`

The following code example shows how to use `SearchFacesByImage`.

For more information, see Searching for a face (image).

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.

        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
```

```
                            create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def search_faces_by_image(self, image, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match the largest face in the
        reference image.

        :param image: The image that contains the reference face to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the face found in the reference
image.
                 The second element is the list of matching faces found in the
                 collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces_by_image(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
```

```
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            image_face = RekognitionFace(
                {
                    "BoundingBox": response["SearchedFaceBoundingBox"],
                    "Confidence": response["SearchedFaceConfidence"],
                }
            )
            collection_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in the collection that match the largest "
                "face in %s.",
                len(collection_faces),
                image.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
                image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_face, collection_faces
```

- For API details, see SearchFacesByImage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Build a collection and find faces in it

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon Rekognition collection.
- Add images to the collection and detect faces in it.
- Search the collection for faces that match a reference image.
- Delete a collection.

For more information, see Searching faces in a collection.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create classes that wrap Amazon Rekognition functions.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from rekognition_objects import RekognitionFace
from rekognition_image_detection import RekognitionImage

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_file(cls, image_file_name, rekognition_client, image_name=None):
        """
        Creates a RekognitionImage object from a local file.

        :param image_file_name: The file name of the image. The file is opened and
 its
                                bytes are read.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        :param image_name: The name of the image. If this is not specified, the
                           file name is used as the image name.
        :return: The RekognitionImage object, initialized with image bytes from the
                 file.
        """
        with open(image_file_name, "rb") as img_file:
            image = {"Bytes": img_file.read()}
        name = image_file_name if image_name is None else image_name
        return cls(image, name, rekognition_client)


class RekognitionCollectionManager:
    """
    Encapsulates Amazon Rekognition collection management functions.
    This class is a thin wrapper around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the collection manager object.

        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    def create_collection(self, collection_id):
        """
        Creates an empty collection.

        :param collection_id: Text that identifies the collection.
        :return: The newly created collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.create_collection(
                CollectionId=collection_id
```

```
            )
            response["CollectionId"] = collection_id
            collection = RekognitionCollection(response, self.rekognition_client)
            logger.info("Created collection %s.", collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create collection %s.", collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return collection


    def list_collections(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists collections for the current account.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of collections to return.
        :return: The list of collections for the current account.
        """
        try:
            response =
 self.rekognition_client.list_collections(MaxResults=max_results)
            collections = [
                RekognitionCollection({"CollectionId": col_id},
 self.rekognition_client)
                for col_id in response["CollectionIds"]
            ]
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list collections.")
            raise
        else:
            return collections



class RekognitionCollection:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition collection. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, collection, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes a collection object.
```

```
        :param collection: Collection data in the format returned by a call to
                           create_collection.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        """
        self.collection_id = collection["CollectionId"]
        self.collection_arn, self.face_count, self.created =
self._unpack_collection(
            collection
        )
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client

    @staticmethod
    def _unpack_collection(collection):
        """
        Unpacks optional parts of a collection that can be returned by
        describe_collection.

        :param collection: The collection data.
        :return: A tuple of the data in the collection.
        """
        return (
            collection.get("CollectionArn"),
            collection.get("FaceCount", 0),
            collection.get("CreationTimestamp"),
        )


    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders parts of the collection data to a dict.

        :return: The collection data as a dict.
        """
        rendering = {
            "collection_id": self.collection_id,
            "collection_arn": self.collection_arn,
            "face_count": self.face_count,
            "created": self.created,
        }
        return rendering


    def describe_collection(self):
        """
```

```
        Gets data about the collection from the Amazon Rekognition service.

        :return: The collection rendered as a dict.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.describe_collection(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id
            )
            # Work around capitalization of Arn vs. ARN
            response["CollectionArn"] = response.get("CollectionARN")
            (
                self.collection_arn,
                self.face_count,
                self.created,
            ) = self._unpack_collection(response)
            logger.info("Got data for collection %s.", self.collection_id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for collection %s.",
self.collection_id)
            raise
        else:
            return self.to_dict()


    def delete_collection(self):
        """
        Deletes the collection.
        """
        try:

self.rekognition_client.delete_collection(CollectionId=self.collection_id)
            logger.info("Deleted collection %s.", self.collection_id)
            self.collection_id = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete collection %s.", self.collection_id)
            raise


    def index_faces(self, image, max_faces):
        """
        Finds faces in the specified image, indexes them, and stores them in the
        collection.

        :param image: The image to index.
```

```
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to index.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is a list of indexed faces.
                 The second element is a list of faces that couldn't be indexed.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.index_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                ExternalImageId=image.image_name,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
                DetectionAttributes=["ALL"],
            )
            indexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace({**face["Face"], **face["FaceDetail"]})
                for face in response["FaceRecords"]
            ]
            unindexed_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["FaceDetail"])
                for face in response["UnindexedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Indexed %s faces in %s. Could not index %s faces.",
                len(indexed_faces),
                image.image_name,
                len(unindexed_faces),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't index faces in image %s.", image.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return indexed_faces, unindexed_faces


    def list_faces(self, max_results):
        """
        Lists the faces currently indexed in the collection.

        :param max_results: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of faces in the collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.list_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id, MaxResults=max_results
            )
```

```
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["Faces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in collection %s.", len(faces), self.collection_id
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't list faces in collection %s.", self.collection_id
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces


    def search_faces(self, face_id, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match another face from the
        collection.

        :param face_id: The ID of the face in the collection to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: The list of matching faces found in the collection. This list does
                 not contain the face specified by `face_id`.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                FaceId=face_id,
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in
response["FaceMatches"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in %s that match %s.",
                len(faces),
                self.collection_id,
                face_id,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
```

```
                face_id,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return faces


    def search_faces_by_image(self, image, threshold, max_faces):
        """
        Searches for faces in the collection that match the largest face in the
        reference image.

        :param image: The image that contains the reference face to search for.
        :param threshold: The match confidence must be greater than this value
                          for a face to be included in the results.
        :param max_faces: The maximum number of faces to return.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the face found in the reference
image.
                 The second element is the list of matching faces found in the
                 collection.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.search_faces_by_image(
                CollectionId=self.collection_id,
                Image=image.image,
                FaceMatchThreshold=threshold,
                MaxFaces=max_faces,
            )
            image_face = RekognitionFace(
                {
                    "BoundingBox": response["SearchedFaceBoundingBox"],
                    "Confidence": response["SearchedFaceConfidence"],
                }
            )
            collection_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face["Face"]) for face in response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s faces in the collection that match the largest "
                "face in %s.",
                len(collection_faces),
                image.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't search for faces in %s that match %s.",
                self.collection_id,
                image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return image_face, collection_faces


class RekognitionFace:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition face."""

    def __init__(self, face, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the face object.

        :param face: Face data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                     functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the face was detected, if the face was
                          detected in a video.
        """
        self.bounding_box = face.get("BoundingBox")
        self.confidence = face.get("Confidence")
        self.landmarks = face.get("Landmarks")
        self.pose = face.get("Pose")
        self.quality = face.get("Quality")
        age_range = face.get("AgeRange")
        if age_range is not None:
            self.age_range = (age_range.get("Low"), age_range.get("High"))
        else:
            self.age_range = None
        self.smile = face.get("Smile", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyeglasses = face.get("Eyeglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.sunglasses = face.get("Sunglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.gender = face.get("Gender", {}).get("Value", None)
        self.beard = face.get("Beard", {}).get("Value")
        self.mustache = face.get("Mustache", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyes_open = face.get("EyesOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.mouth_open = face.get("MouthOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.emotions = [
            emo.get("Type")
            for emo in face.get("Emotions", [])
            if emo.get("Confidence", 0) > 50
```

```
        ]
        self.face_id = face.get("FaceId")
        self.image_id = face.get("ImageId")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the face data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the face data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.bounding_box is not None:
            rendering["bounding_box"] = self.bounding_box
        if self.age_range is not None:
            rendering["age"] = f"{self.age_range[0]} - {self.age_range[1]}"
        if self.gender is not None:
            rendering["gender"] = self.gender
        if self.emotions:
            rendering["emotions"] = self.emotions
        if self.face_id is not None:
            rendering["face_id"] = self.face_id
        if self.image_id is not None:
            rendering["image_id"] = self.image_id
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        has = []
        if self.smile:
            has.append("smile")
        if self.eyeglasses:
            has.append("eyeglasses")
        if self.sunglasses:
            has.append("sunglasses")
        if self.beard:
            has.append("beard")
        if self.mustache:
            has.append("mustache")
        if self.eyes_open:
            has.append("open eyes")
        if self.mouth_open:
            has.append("open mouth")
        if has:
            rendering["has"] = has
        return rendering
```

Use the wrapper classes to build a collection of faces from a set of images and then search for faces in the collection.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Rekognition face collection demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    rekognition_client = boto3.client("rekognition")
    images = [
        RekognitionImage.from_file(
            ".media/pexels-agung-pandit-wiguna-1128316.jpg",
            rekognition_client,
            image_name="sitting",
        ),
        RekognitionImage.from_file(
            ".media/pexels-agung-pandit-wiguna-1128317.jpg",
            rekognition_client,
            image_name="hopping",
        ),
        RekognitionImage.from_file(
            ".media/pexels-agung-pandit-wiguna-1128318.jpg",
            rekognition_client,
            image_name="biking",
        ),
    ]

    collection_mgr = RekognitionCollectionManager(rekognition_client)
    collection = collection_mgr.create_collection("doc-example-collection-demo")
    print(f"Created collection {collection.collection_id}:")
    pprint(collection.describe_collection())

    print("Indexing faces from three images:")
    for image in images:
        collection.index_faces(image, 10)
    print("Listing faces in collection:")
    faces = collection.list_faces(10)
```

```
    for face in faces:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    print(
        f"Searching for faces in the collection that match the first face in the "
        f"list (Face ID: {faces[0].face_id}."
    )
    found_faces = collection.search_faces(faces[0].face_id, 80, 10)
    print(f"Found {len(found_faces)} matching faces.")
    for face in found_faces:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    print(
        f"Searching for faces in the collection that match the largest face in "
        f"{images[0].image_name}."
    )
    image_face, match_faces = collection.search_faces_by_image(images[0], 80, 10)
    print(f"The largest face in {images[0].image_name} is:")
    pprint(image_face.to_dict())
    print(f"Found {len(match_faces)} matching faces.")
    for face in match_faces:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    collection.delete_collection()
    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

Detect and display elements in images

The following code example shows how to:

- Detect elements in images by using Amazon Rekognition.
- Display images and draw bounding boxes around detected elements.

For more information, see Displaying bounding boxes.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create classes to wrap Amazon Rekognition functions.

```
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import requests

from rekognition_objects import (
    RekognitionFace,
    RekognitionCelebrity,
    RekognitionLabel,
    RekognitionModerationLabel,
    RekognitionText,
    show_bounding_boxes,
    show_polygons,
)

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class RekognitionImage:
    """
    Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition image. This class is a thin wrapper
    around parts of the Boto3 Amazon Rekognition API.
    """

    def __init__(self, image, image_name, rekognition_client):
        """
        Initializes the image object.

        :param image: Data that defines the image, either the image bytes or
                      an Amazon S3 bucket and object key.
        :param image_name: The name of the image.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
```

```
        """
        self.image = image
        self.image_name = image_name
        self.rekognition_client = rekognition_client


    @classmethod
    def from_file(cls, image_file_name, rekognition_client, image_name=None):
        """
        Creates a RekognitionImage object from a local file.

        :param image_file_name: The file name of the image. The file is opened and
its
                                bytes are read.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        :param image_name: The name of the image. If this is not specified, the
                           file name is used as the image name.
        :return: The RekognitionImage object, initialized with image bytes from the
                 file.
        """
        with open(image_file_name, "rb") as img_file:
            image = {"Bytes": img_file.read()}
        name = image_file_name if image_name is None else image_name
        return cls(image, name, rekognition_client)


    @classmethod
    def from_bucket(cls, s3_object, rekognition_client):
        """
        Creates a RekognitionImage object from an Amazon S3 object.

        :param s3_object: An Amazon S3 object that identifies the image. The image
                          is not retrieved until needed for a later call.
        :param rekognition_client: A Boto3 Rekognition client.
        :return: The RekognitionImage object, initialized with Amazon S3 object
data.
        """
        image = {"S3Object": {"Bucket": s3_object.bucket_name, "Name":
s3_object.key}}
        return cls(image, s3_object.key, rekognition_client)


    def detect_faces(self):
        """
```

```
        Detects faces in the image.

        :return: The list of faces found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_faces(
                Image=self.image, Attributes=["ALL"]
            )
            faces = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["FaceDetails"]]
            logger.info("Detected %s faces.", len(faces))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect faces in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return faces


    def detect_labels(self, max_labels):
        """
        Detects labels in the image. Labels are objects and people.

        :param max_labels: The maximum number of labels to return.
        :return: The list of labels detected in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_labels(
                Image=self.image, MaxLabels=max_labels
            )
            labels = [RekognitionLabel(label) for label in response["Labels"]]
            logger.info("Found %s labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.info("Couldn't detect labels in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return labels


    def recognize_celebrities(self):
        """
        Detects celebrities in the image.

        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of celebrities found in
                 the image. The second element is the list of faces that were
                 detected but did not match any known celebrities.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response =
self.rekognition_client.recognize_celebrities(Image=self.image)
            celebrities = [
                RekognitionCelebrity(celeb) for celeb in response["CelebrityFaces"]
            ]
            other_faces = [
                RekognitionFace(face) for face in response["UnrecognizedFaces"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s celebrities and %s other faces in %s.",
                len(celebrities),
                len(other_faces),
                self.image_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect celebrities in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return celebrities, other_faces



    def compare_faces(self, target_image, similarity):
        """
        Compares faces in the image with the largest face in the target image.

        :param target_image: The target image to compare against.
        :param similarity: Faces in the image must have a similarity value greater
                           than this value to be included in the results.
        :return: A tuple. The first element is the list of faces that match the
                 reference image. The second element is the list of faces that have
                 a similarity value below the specified threshold.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.compare_faces(
                SourceImage=self.image,
                TargetImage=target_image.image,
                SimilarityThreshold=similarity,
            )
            matches = [
                RekognitionFace(match["Face"]) for match in response["FaceMatches"]
            ]
```

```
            unmatches = [RekognitionFace(face) for face in
response["UnmatchedFaces"]]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s matched faces and %s unmatched faces.",
                len(matches),
                len(unmatches),
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't match faces from %s to %s.",
                self.image_name,
                target_image.image_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return matches, unmatches


    def detect_moderation_labels(self):
        """
        Detects moderation labels in the image. Moderation labels identify content
        that may be inappropriate for some audiences.

        :return: The list of moderation labels found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_moderation_labels(
                Image=self.image
            )
            labels = [
                RekognitionModerationLabel(label)
                for label in response["ModerationLabels"]
            ]
            logger.info(
                "Found %s moderation labels in %s.", len(labels), self.image_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't detect moderation labels in %s.", self.image_name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return labels
```

```
    def detect_text(self):
        """
        Detects text in the image.

        :return The list of text elements found in the image.
        """
        try:
            response = self.rekognition_client.detect_text(Image=self.image)
            texts = [RekognitionText(text) for text in response["TextDetections"]]
            logger.info("Found %s texts in %s.", len(texts), self.image_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text in %s.", self.image_name)
            raise
        else:
            return texts
```

Create helper functions to draw bounding boxes and polygons.

```
import io
import logging
from PIL import Image, ImageDraw

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def show_bounding_boxes(image_bytes, box_sets, colors):
    """
    Draws bounding boxes on an image and shows it with the default image viewer.

    :param image_bytes: The image to draw, as bytes.
    :param box_sets: A list of lists of bounding boxes to draw on the image.
    :param colors: A list of colors to use to draw the bounding boxes.
    """
    image = Image.open(io.BytesIO(image_bytes))
    draw = ImageDraw.Draw(image)
    for boxes, color in zip(box_sets, colors):
        for box in boxes:
            left = image.width * box["Left"]
            top = image.height * box["Top"]
            right = (image.width * box["Width"]) + left
```

```
            bottom = (image.height * box["Height"]) + top
            draw.rectangle([left, top, right, bottom], outline=color, width=3)
    image.show()



def show_polygons(image_bytes, polygons, color):
    """
    Draws polygons on an image and shows it with the default image viewer.

    :param image_bytes: The image to draw, as bytes.
    :param polygons: The list of polygons to draw on the image.
    :param color: The color to use to draw the polygons.
    """
    image = Image.open(io.BytesIO(image_bytes))
    draw = ImageDraw.Draw(image)
    for polygon in polygons:
        draw.polygon(
            [
                (image.width * point["X"], image.height * point["Y"])
                for point in polygon
            ],
            outline=color,
        )
    image.show()
```

Create classes to parse objects returned by Amazon Rekognition.

```
class RekognitionFace:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition face."""

    def __init__(self, face, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the face object.

        :param face: Face data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                     functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the face was detected, if the face was
                          detected in a video.
        """
```

```
        self.bounding_box = face.get("BoundingBox")
        self.confidence = face.get("Confidence")
        self.landmarks = face.get("Landmarks")
        self.pose = face.get("Pose")
        self.quality = face.get("Quality")
        age_range = face.get("AgeRange")
        if age_range is not None:
            self.age_range = (age_range.get("Low"), age_range.get("High"))
        else:
            self.age_range = None
        self.smile = face.get("Smile", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyeglasses = face.get("Eyeglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.sunglasses = face.get("Sunglasses", {}).get("Value")
        self.gender = face.get("Gender", {}).get("Value", None)
        self.beard = face.get("Beard", {}).get("Value")
        self.mustache = face.get("Mustache", {}).get("Value")
        self.eyes_open = face.get("EyesOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.mouth_open = face.get("MouthOpen", {}).get("Value")
        self.emotions = [
            emo.get("Type")
            for emo in face.get("Emotions", [])
            if emo.get("Confidence", 0) > 50
        ]
        self.face_id = face.get("FaceId")
        self.image_id = face.get("ImageId")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the face data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the face data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.bounding_box is not None:
            rendering["bounding_box"] = self.bounding_box
        if self.age_range is not None:
            rendering["age"] = f"{self.age_range[0]} - {self.age_range[1]}"
        if self.gender is not None:
            rendering["gender"] = self.gender
        if self.emotions:
            rendering["emotions"] = self.emotions
        if self.face_id is not None:
            rendering["face_id"] = self.face_id
```

```
        if self.image_id is not None:
            rendering["image_id"] = self.image_id
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        has = []
        if self.smile:
            has.append("smile")
        if self.eyeglasses:
            has.append("eyeglasses")
        if self.sunglasses:
            has.append("sunglasses")
        if self.beard:
            has.append("beard")
        if self.mustache:
            has.append("mustache")
        if self.eyes_open:
            has.append("open eyes")
        if self.mouth_open:
            has.append("open mouth")
        if has:
            rendering["has"] = has
        return rendering



class RekognitionCelebrity:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition celebrity."""

    def __init__(self, celebrity, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the celebrity object.

        :param celebrity: Celebrity data, in the format returned by Amazon
 Rekognition
                          functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the celebrity was detected, if the celebrity
                          was detected in a video.
        """
        self.info_urls = celebrity.get("Urls")
        self.name = celebrity.get("Name")
        self.id = celebrity.get("Id")
        self.face = RekognitionFace(celebrity.get("Face"))
        self.confidence = celebrity.get("MatchConfidence")
        self.bounding_box = celebrity.get("BoundingBox")
```

```
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the celebrity data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the celebrity data.
        """
        rendering = self.face.to_dict()
        if self.name is not None:
            rendering["name"] = self.name
        if self.info_urls:
            rendering["info URLs"] = self.info_urls
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionPerson:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition person."""

    def __init__(self, person, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the person object.

        :param person: Person data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                       functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the person was detected, if the person
                          was detected in a video.
        """
        self.index = person.get("Index")
        self.bounding_box = person.get("BoundingBox")
        face = person.get("Face")
        self.face = RekognitionFace(face) if face is not None else None
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the person data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the person data.
        """
        rendering = self.face.to_dict() if self.face is not None else {}
```

```
        if self.index is not None:
            rendering["index"] = self.index
        if self.bounding_box is not None:
            rendering["bounding_box"] = self.bounding_box
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionLabel:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition label."""

    def __init__(self, label, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the label object.

        :param label: Label data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                      functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the label was detected, if the label
                          was detected in a video.
        """
        self.name = label.get("Name")
        self.confidence = label.get("Confidence")
        self.instances = label.get("Instances")
        self.parents = label.get("Parents")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the label data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the label data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.name is not None:
            rendering["name"] = self.name
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionModerationLabel:
```

```
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition moderation label."""

    def __init__(self, label, timestamp=None):
        """
        Initializes the moderation label object.

        :param label: Label data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                      functions.
        :param timestamp: The time when the moderation label was detected, if the
                          label was detected in a video.
        """
        self.name = label.get("Name")
        self.confidence = label.get("Confidence")
        self.parent_name = label.get("ParentName")
        self.timestamp = timestamp

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the moderation label data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the moderation label data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.name is not None:
            rendering["name"] = self.name
        if self.parent_name is not None:
            rendering["parent_name"] = self.parent_name
        if self.timestamp is not None:
            rendering["timestamp"] = self.timestamp
        return rendering



class RekognitionText:
    """Encapsulates an Amazon Rekognition text element."""

    def __init__(self, text_data):
        """
        Initializes the text object.

        :param text_data: Text data, in the format returned by Amazon Rekognition
                          functions.
        """
        self.text = text_data.get("DetectedText")
```

```
        self.kind = text_data.get("Type")
        self.id = text_data.get("Id")
        self.parent_id = text_data.get("ParentId")
        self.confidence = text_data.get("Confidence")
        self.geometry = text_data.get("Geometry")

    def to_dict(self):
        """
        Renders some of the text data to a dict.

        :return: A dict that contains the text data.
        """
        rendering = {}
        if self.text is not None:
            rendering["text"] = self.text
        if self.kind is not None:
            rendering["kind"] = self.kind
        if self.geometry is not None:
            rendering["polygon"] = self.geometry.get("Polygon")
        return rendering
```

Use the wrapper classes to detect elements in images and display their bounding boxes. The images used in this example can be found on GitHub along with instructions and more code.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Rekognition image detection demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    rekognition_client = boto3.client("rekognition")
    street_scene_file_name = ".media/pexels-kaique-rocha-109919.jpg"
    celebrity_file_name = ".media/pexels-pixabay-53370.jpg"
    one_girl_url = "https://dhei5unw3vrsx.cloudfront.net/images/source3_resized.jpg"
    three_girls_url = "https://dhei5unw3vrsx.cloudfront.net/images/
target3_resized.jpg"
    swimwear_object = boto3.resource("s3").Object(
        "console-sample-images-pdx", "yoga_swimwear.jpg"
    )
    book_file_name = ".media/pexels-christina-morillo-1181671.jpg"
```

```
    street_scene_image = RekognitionImage.from_file(
        street_scene_file_name, rekognition_client
    )
    print(f"Detecting faces in {street_scene_image.image_name}...")
    faces = street_scene_image.detect_faces()
    print(f"Found {len(faces)} faces, here are the first three.")
    for face in faces[:3]:
        pprint(face.to_dict())
    show_bounding_boxes(
        street_scene_image.image["Bytes"],
        [[face.bounding_box for face in faces]],
        ["aqua"],
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    print(f"Detecting labels in {street_scene_image.image_name}...")
    labels = street_scene_image.detect_labels(100)
    print(f"Found {len(labels)} labels.")
    for label in labels:
        pprint(label.to_dict())
    names = []
    box_sets = []
    colors = ["aqua", "red", "white", "blue", "yellow", "green"]
    for label in labels:
        if label.instances:
            names.append(label.name)
            box_sets.append([inst["BoundingBox"] for inst in label.instances])
    print(f"Showing bounding boxes for {names} in {colors[:len(names)]}.")
    show_bounding_boxes(
        street_scene_image.image["Bytes"], box_sets, colors[: len(names)]
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    celebrity_image = RekognitionImage.from_file(
        celebrity_file_name, rekognition_client
    )
    print(f"Detecting celebrities in {celebrity_image.image_name}...")
    celebs, others = celebrity_image.recognize_celebrities()
    print(f"Found {len(celebs)} celebrities.")
    for celeb in celebs:
        pprint(celeb.to_dict())
    show_bounding_boxes(
        celebrity_image.image["Bytes"],
```

```
        [[celeb.face.bounding_box for celeb in celebs]],
        ["aqua"],
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    girl_image_response = requests.get(one_girl_url)
    girl_image = RekognitionImage(
        {"Bytes": girl_image_response.content}, "one-girl", rekognition_client
    )
    group_image_response = requests.get(three_girls_url)
    group_image = RekognitionImage(
        {"Bytes": group_image_response.content}, "three-girls", rekognition_client
    )
    print("Comparing reference face to group of faces...")
    matches, unmatches = girl_image.compare_faces(group_image, 80)
    print(f"Found {len(matches)} face matching the reference face.")
    show_bounding_boxes(
        group_image.image["Bytes"],
        [[match.bounding_box for match in matches]],
        ["aqua"],
    )
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    swimwear_image = RekognitionImage.from_bucket(swimwear_object,
rekognition_client)
    print(f"Detecting suggestive content in {swimwear_object.key}...")
    labels = swimwear_image.detect_moderation_labels()
    print(f"Found {len(labels)} moderation labels.")
    for label in labels:
        pprint(label.to_dict())
    input("Press Enter to continue.")

    book_image = RekognitionImage.from_file(book_file_name, rekognition_client)
    print(f"Detecting text in {book_image.image_name}...")
    texts = book_image.detect_text()
    print(f"Found {len(texts)} text instances. Here are the first seven:")
    for text in texts[:7]:
        pprint(text.to_dict())
    show_polygons(
        book_image.image["Bytes"], [text.geometry["Polygon"] for text in texts],
"aqua"
    )

    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
```

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a web application that lets you do the following:

- Upload photos to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze and label the photos.
- Use Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send email reports of image analysis.

This example contains two main components: a webpage written in JavaScript that is built with React, and a REST service written in Python that is built with Flask-RESTful.

You can use the React webpage to:

- Display a list of images that are stored in your S3 bucket.
- Upload images from your computer to your S3 bucket.
- Display images and labels that identify items that are detected in the image.
- Get a report of all images in your S3 bucket and send an email of the report.

The webpage calls the REST service. The service sends requests to AWS to perform the following actions:

- Get and filter the list of images in your S3 bucket.
- Upload photos to your S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze individual photos and get a list of labels that identify items that are detected in the photo.
- Analyze all photos in your S3 bucket and use Amazon SES to email a report.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_s3():
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an Amazon Simple Storage Service
    (Amazon S3) client and list the buckets in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.
    """

    # Create an S3 client.
    s3_client = boto3.client("s3")

    print("Hello, Amazon S3! Let's list your buckets:")

    # Create a paginator for the list_buckets operation.
    paginator = s3_client.get_paginator("list_buckets")

    # Use the paginator to get a list of all buckets.
    response_iterator = paginator.paginate(
        PaginationConfig={
            "PageSize": 50,  # Adjust PageSize as needed.
```

```
            "StartingToken": None,
        }
    )

    # Iterate through the pages of the response.
    buckets_found = False
    for page in response_iterator:
        if "Buckets" in page and page["Buckets"]:
            buckets_found = True
            for bucket in page["Buckets"]:
                print(f"\t{bucket['Name']}")

    if not buckets_found:
        print("No buckets found!")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_s3()
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import io
import os
import uuid

import boto3
from boto3.s3.transfer import S3UploadFailedError
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def do_scenario(s3_resource):
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    bucket_name = f"amzn-s3-demo-bucket-{uuid.uuid4()}"
    bucket = s3_resource.Bucket(bucket_name)
    try:
        bucket.create(
            CreateBucketConfiguration={
                "LocationConstraint": s3_resource.meta.client.meta.region_name
            }
        )
        print(f"Created demo bucket named {bucket.name}.")
    except ClientError as err:
        print(f"Tried and failed to create demo bucket {bucket_name}.")
        print(f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}")
        print(f"\nCan't continue the demo without a bucket!")
        return

    file_name = None
    while file_name is None:
        file_name = input("\nEnter a file you want to upload to your bucket: ")
        if not os.path.exists(file_name):
```

```
            print(f"Couldn't find file {file_name}. Are you sure it exists?")
            file_name = None

    obj = bucket.Object(os.path.basename(file_name))
    try:
        obj.upload_file(file_name)
        print(
            f"Uploaded file {file_name} into bucket {bucket.name} with key
 {obj.key}."
        )
    except S3UploadFailedError as err:
        print(f"Couldn't upload file {file_name} to {bucket.name}.")
        print(f"\t{err}")

    answer = input(f"\nDo you want to download {obj.key} into memory (y/n)? ")
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        data = io.BytesIO()
        try:
            obj.download_fileobj(data)
            data.seek(0)
            print(f"Got your object. Here are the first 20 bytes:\n")
            print(f"\t{data.read(20)}")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't download {obj.key}.")
            print(
                f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}"
            )

    answer = input(
        f"\nDo you want to copy {obj.key} to a subfolder in your bucket (y/n)? "
    )
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        dest_obj = bucket.Object(f"demo-folder/{obj.key}")
        try:
            dest_obj.copy({"Bucket": bucket.name, "Key": obj.key})
            print(f"Copied {obj.key} to {dest_obj.key}.")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't copy {obj.key} to {dest_obj.key}.")
            print(
                f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}"
            )
```

```
    print("\nYour bucket contains the following objects:")
    try:
        for o in bucket.objects.all():
            print(f"\t{o.key}")
    except ClientError as err:
        print(f"Couldn't list the objects in bucket {bucket.name}.")
        print(f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}")

    answer = input(
        "\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)? "
    )
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        try:
            bucket.objects.delete()
            bucket.delete()
            print(f"Emptied and deleted bucket {bucket.name}.\n")
        except ClientError as err:
            print(f"Couldn't empty and delete bucket {bucket.name}.")
            print(
                f"\t{err.response['Error']['Code']}:{err.response['Error']
['Message']}"
            )

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    do_scenario(boto3.resource("s3"))
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def copy(self, dest_object):
        """
        Copies the object to another bucket.

        :param dest_object: The destination object initialized with a bucket and
 key.
                            This is a Boto3 Object resource.
        """
        try:
            dest_object.copy_from(
                CopySource={"Bucket": self.object.bucket_name, "Key":
 self.object.key}
            )
            dest_object.wait_until_exists()
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Copied object from %s:%s to %s:%s.",
                self.object.bucket_name,
                self.object.key,
                dest_object.bucket_name,
                dest_object.key,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't copy object from %s/%s to %s/%s.",
                self.object.bucket_name,
                self.object.key,
                dest_object.bucket_name,
                dest_object.key,
            )
            raise
```

Copy an object using a conditional request.

```
class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)


    def copy_object_conditional(
        self,
        source_key: str,
        dest_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        dest_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
```

```
    ):
        """
        Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
request.

        :param source_key: The key of the source object to copy.
        :param dest_key: The key of the destination object.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param dest_bucket: The destination bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition to apply, e.g.
        'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            self.s3.copy_object(
                Bucket=dest_bucket,
                Key=dest_key,
                CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": source_key},
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional copy successful for key {dest_key} in bucket
{dest_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a bucket with default settings.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def create(self, region_override=None):
        """
        Create an Amazon S3 bucket in the default Region for the account or in the
        specified Region.

        :param region_override: The Region in which to create the bucket. If this is
                                not specified, the Region configured in your shared
                                credentials is used.
        """
        if region_override is not None:
            region = region_override
        else:
            region = self.bucket.meta.client.meta.region_name
        try:
            self.bucket.create(CreateBucketConfiguration={"LocationConstraint":
 region})

            self.bucket.wait_until_exists()
            logger.info("Created bucket '%s' in region=%s", self.bucket.name,
 region)
```

```
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't create bucket named '%s' in region=%s.",
                self.bucket.name,
                region,
            )
            raise error
```

Create a versioned bucket with a lifecycle configuration.

```
def create_versioned_bucket(bucket_name, prefix):
    """
    Creates an Amazon S3 bucket, enables it for versioning, and configures a
 lifecycle
    that expires noncurrent object versions after 7 days.

    Adding a lifecycle configuration to a versioned bucket is a best practice.
    It helps prevent objects in the bucket from accumulating a large number of
    noncurrent versions, which can slow down request performance.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to create.
    :param prefix: Identifies which objects are automatically expired under the
                   configured lifecycle rules.
    :return: The newly created bucket.
    """
    try:
        bucket = s3.create_bucket(
            Bucket=bucket_name,
            CreateBucketConfiguration={
                "LocationConstraint": s3.meta.client.meta.region_name
            },
        )
        logger.info("Created bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou":
            logger.warning("Bucket %s already exists! Using it.", bucket_name)
            bucket = s3.Bucket(bucket_name)
        else:
```

```
            logger.exception("Couldn't create bucket %s.", bucket_name)
            raise

    try:
        bucket.Versioning().enable()
        logger.info("Enabled versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't enable versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
        raise

    try:
        expiration = 7
        bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().put(
            LifecycleConfiguration={
                "Rules": [
                    {
                        "Status": "Enabled",
                        "Prefix": prefix,
                        "NoncurrentVersionExpiration": {"NoncurrentDays":
expiration},
                    }
                ]
            }
        )
        logger.info(
            "Configured lifecycle to expire noncurrent versions after %s days "
            "on bucket %s.",
            expiration,
            bucket.name,
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.warning(
            "Couldn't configure lifecycle on bucket %s because %s. "
            "Continuing anyway.",
            bucket.name,
            error,
        )

    return bucket
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the bucket. The bucket must be empty or an error is raised.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.delete()
            self.bucket.wait_until_not_exists()
            logger.info("Bucket %s successfully deleted.", self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete bucket %s.", self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketCors`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete_cors(self):
        """
        Delete the CORS rules from the bucket.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to update.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Cors().delete()
            logger.info("Deleted CORS from bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete CORS from bucket '%s'.",
 self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketLifecycle`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketLifecycle`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete_lifecycle_configuration(self):
        """
        Remove the lifecycle configuration from the specified bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted lifecycle configuration for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete lifecycle configuration for bucket '%s'.",
                self.bucket.name,
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketLifecycle in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def delete_policy(self):
        """
        Delete the security policy from the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Policy().delete()
            logger.info("Deleted policy for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete policy for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete an object.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes the object.
        """
        try:
            self.object.delete()
            self.object.wait_until_not_exists()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
            raise
```

Roll an object back to a previous version by deleting later versions of the object.

```
def rollback_object(bucket, object_key, version_id):
    """
    Rolls back an object to an earlier version by deleting all versions that
    occurred after the specified rollback version.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that holds the object to roll back.
    :param object_key: The object to roll back.
    :param version_id: The version ID to roll back to.
    """
    # Versions must be sorted by last_modified date because delete markers are
    # at the end of the list even when they are interspersed in time.
    versions = sorted(
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key),
        key=attrgetter("last_modified"),
        reverse=True,
    )

    logger.debug(
        "Got versions:\n%s",
        "\n".join(
            [
                f"\t{version.version_id}, last modified {version.last_modified}"
                for version in versions
            ]
        ),
    )

    if version_id in [ver.version_id for ver in versions]:
        print(f"Rolling back to version {version_id}")
```

```
        for version in versions:
            if version.version_id != version_id:
                version.delete()
                print(f"Deleted version {version.version_id}")
            else:
                break

        print(f"Active version is now {bucket.Object(object_key).version_id}")
    else:
        raise KeyError(
            f"{version_id} was not found in the list of versions for "
 f"{object_key}."
        )
```

Revive a deleted object by removing the object's active delete marker.

```
def revive_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Revives a versioned object that was deleted by removing the object's active
    delete marker.
    A versioned object presents as deleted when its latest version is a delete
 marker.
    By removing the delete marker, we make the previous version the latest version
    and the object then presents as *not* deleted.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to revive.
    """
    # Get the latest version for the object.
    response = s3.meta.client.list_object_versions(
        Bucket=bucket.name, Prefix=object_key, MaxKeys=1
    )

    if "DeleteMarkers" in response:
        latest_version = response["DeleteMarkers"][0]
        if latest_version["IsLatest"]:
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Object %s was indeed deleted on %s. Let's revive it.",
                object_key,
                latest_version["LastModified"],
            )
            obj = bucket.Object(object_key)
            obj.Version(latest_version["VersionId"]).delete()
            logger.info(
                "Revived %s, active version is now %s  with body '%s'",
                object_key,
                obj.version_id,
                obj.get()["Body"].read(),
            )
        else:
            logger.warning(
                "Delete marker is not the latest version for %s!", object_key
            )
    elif "Versions" in response:
        logger.warning("Got an active version for %s, nothing to do.", object_key)
    else:
        logger.error("Couldn't get any version info for %s.", object_key)
```

Create a Lambda handler that removes a delete marker from an S3 object. This handler can be used to efficiently clean up extraneous delete markers in a versioned bucket.

```
import logging
from urllib import parse
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
logger.setLevel("INFO")

s3 = boto3.client("s3")


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    """
    Removes a delete marker from the specified versioned object.

    :param event: The S3 batch event that contains the ID of the delete marker
```

```
                to remove.
    :param context: Context about the event.
    :return: A result structure that Amazon S3 uses to interpret the result of the
             operation. When the result code is TemporaryFailure, S3 retries the
             operation.
    """
    # Parse job parameters from Amazon S3 batch operations
    invocation_id = event["invocationId"]
    invocation_schema_version = event["invocationSchemaVersion"]

    results = []
    result_code = None
    result_string = None

    task = event["tasks"][0]
    task_id = task["taskId"]

    try:
        obj_key = parse.unquote(task["s3Key"], encoding="utf-8")
        obj_version_id = task["s3VersionId"]
        bucket_name = task["s3BucketArn"].split(":")[-1]

        logger.info(
            "Got task: remove delete marker %s from object %s.", obj_version_id,
obj_key
        )

        try:
            # If this call does not raise an error, the object version is not a
delete
            # marker and should not be deleted.
            response = s3.head_object(
                Bucket=bucket_name, Key=obj_key, VersionId=obj_version_id
            )
            result_code = "PermanentFailure"
            result_string = (
                f"Object {obj_key}, ID {obj_version_id} is not " f"a delete marker."
            )

            logger.debug(response)
            logger.warning(result_string)
        except ClientError as error:
            delete_marker = error.response["ResponseMetadata"]["HTTPHeaders"].get(
                "x-amz-delete-marker", "false"
```

```
            )
            if delete_marker == "true":
                logger.info(
                    "Object %s, version %s is a delete marker.", obj_key,
obj_version_id
                )
                try:
                    s3.delete_object(
                        Bucket=bucket_name, Key=obj_key, VersionId=obj_version_id
                    )
                    result_code = "Succeeded"
                    result_string = (
                        f"Successfully removed delete marker "
                        f"{obj_version_id} from object {obj_key}."
                    )
                    logger.info(result_string)
                except ClientError as error:
                    # Mark request timeout as a temporary failure so it will be
retried.
                    if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "RequestTimeout":
                        result_code = "TemporaryFailure"
                        result_string = (
                            f"Attempt to remove delete marker from  "
                            f"object {obj_key} timed out."
                        )
                        logger.info(result_string)
                    else:
                        raise
            else:
                raise ValueError(
                    f"The x-amz-delete-marker header is either not "
                    f"present or is not 'true'."
                )
    except Exception as error:
        # Mark all other exceptions as permanent failures.
        result_code = "PermanentFailure"
        result_string = str(error)
        logger.exception(error)
    finally:
        results.append(
            {
                "taskId": task_id,
                "resultCode": result_code,
                "resultString": result_string,
```

```
            }
        )
    return {
        "invocationSchemaVersion": invocation_schema_version,
        "treatMissingKeysAs": "PermanentFailure",
        "invocationId": invocation_id,
        "results": results,
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Delete a set of objects by using a list of object keys.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    @staticmethod
```

```
    def delete_objects(bucket, object_keys):
        """
        Removes a list of objects from a bucket.
        This operation is done as a batch in a single request.

        :param bucket: The bucket that contains the objects. This is a Boto3 Bucket
                       resource.
        :param object_keys: The list of keys that identify the objects to remove.
        :return: The response that contains data about which objects were deleted
                 and any that could not be deleted.
        """
        try:
            response = bucket.delete_objects(
                Delete={"Objects": [{"Key": key} for key in object_keys]}
            )
            if "Deleted" in response:
                logger.info(
                    "Deleted objects '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                    [del_obj["Key"] for del_obj in response["Deleted"]],
                    bucket.name,
                )
            if "Errors" in response:
                logger.warning(
                    "Could not delete objects '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                    [
                        f"{del_obj['Key']}: {del_obj['Code']}"
                        for del_obj in response["Errors"]
                    ],
                    bucket.name,
                )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete any objects from bucket %s.",
 bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

Delete all objects in a bucket.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                            that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    @staticmethod
    def empty_bucket(bucket):
        """
        Remove all objects from a bucket.

        :param bucket: The bucket to empty. This is a Boto3 Bucket resource.
        """
        try:
            bucket.objects.delete()
            logger.info("Emptied bucket '%s'.", bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't empty bucket '%s'.", bucket.name)
            raise
```

Permanently delete a versioned object by deleting all of its versions.

```
def permanently_delete_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Permanently deletes a versioned object by deleting all of its versions.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to delete.
    """
    try:
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key).delete()
        logger.info("Permanently deleted all versions of object %s.", object_key)
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete all versions of %s.", object_key)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketAcl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def get_acl(self):
        """
        Get the ACL of the bucket.

        :return: The ACL of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.bucket.Acl()
            logger.info(
```

```
                "Got ACL for bucket %s. Owner is %s.", self.bucket.name, acl.owner
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get ACL for bucket %s.", self.bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return acl
```

- For API details, see GetBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketCors`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def get_cors(self):
        """
        Get the CORS rules for the bucket.

        :return The CORS rules for the specified bucket.
```

```
        """
        try:
            cors = self.bucket.Cors()
            logger.info(
                "Got CORS rules %s for bucket '%s'.", cors.cors_rules,
 self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(("Couldn't get CORS for bucket %s.", self.bucket.name))
            raise
        else:
            return cors
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name
```

```
    def get_lifecycle_configuration(self):
        """
        Get the lifecycle configuration of the bucket.

        :return: The lifecycle rules of the specified bucket.
        """
        try:
            config = self.bucket.LifecycleConfiguration()
            logger.info(
                "Got lifecycle rules %s for bucket '%s'.",
                config.rules,
                self.bucket.name,
            )
        except:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get lifecycle rules for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return config.rules
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def get_policy(self):
        """
        Get the security policy of the bucket.

        :return: The security policy of the specified bucket, in JSON format.
        """
        try:
            policy = self.bucket.Policy()
            logger.info(
                "Got policy %s for bucket '%s'.", policy.policy, self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get policy for bucket '%s'.",
self.bucket.name)
            raise
        else:
            return json.loads(policy.policy)
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                           that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def get(self):
        """
        Gets the object.

        :return: The object data in bytes.
        """
        try:
            body = self.object.get()["Body"].read()
            logger.info(
                "Got object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get object '%s' from bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
            raise
        else:
            return body
```

Get an object using a conditional request.

```
class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)



    def get_object_conditional(
        self,
        object_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
    ):
        """
        Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to retrieve.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            response = self.s3.get_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket,
                Key=object_key,
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            sample_bytes = response["Body"].read(20)
            print(
                f"\tConditional read successful. Here are the first 20 bytes of the
object:\n"
            )
            print(f"\t{sample_bytes}")
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
```

```
                print("\tConditional read failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional read failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetObjectAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectAcl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def get_acl(self):
        """
        Gets the ACL of the object.

        :return: The ACL of the object.
```

```
        """
        try:
            acl = self.object.Acl()
            logger.info(
                "Got ACL for object %s owned by %s.",
                self.object.key,
                acl.owner["DisplayName"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get ACL for object %s.", self.object.key)
            raise
        else:
            return acl
```

- For API details, see GetObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetObjectLegalHold`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLegalHold`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object legal hold.

```
def get_legal_hold(s3_client, bucket: str, key: str) -> None:
    """
    Get the legal hold status of a specific file in a bucket.

    Args:
        s3_client: Boto3 S3 client.
        bucket: The name of the bucket containing the file.
        key: The key of the file to get the legal hold status of.
    """
```

```
    print()
    logger.info("Getting legal hold status of file [%s] in bucket [%s]", key,
 bucket)
    try:
        response = s3_client.get_object_legal_hold(Bucket=bucket, Key=key)
        legal_hold_status = response["LegalHold"]["Status"]
        logger.debug(
            "Legal hold status of file [%s] in bucket [%s] is [%s]",
            key,
            bucket,
            legal_hold_status,
        )
    except Exception as e:
        logger.error(
            "Failed to get legal hold status of file [%s] in bucket [%s]: %s",
            key,
            bucket,
            e,
        )
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get the object lock configuration.

```
def is_object_lock_enabled(s3_client, bucket: str) -> bool:
    """
    Check if object lock is enabled for a bucket.
```

```
    Args:
        s3_client: Boto3 S3 client.
        bucket: The name of the bucket to check.

    Returns:
        True if object lock is enabled, False otherwise.
    """
    try:
        response = s3_client.get_object_lock_configuration(Bucket=bucket)
        return (
            "ObjectLockConfiguration" in response
            and response["ObjectLockConfiguration"]["ObjectLockEnabled"] ==
 "Enabled"
        )
    except s3_client.exceptions.ClientError as e:
        if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ObjectLockConfigurationNotFoundError":
            return False
        else:
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`HeadBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadBucket`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
```

```
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def exists(self):
        """
        Determine whether the bucket exists and you have access to it.

        :return: True when the bucket exists; otherwise, False.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.meta.client.head_bucket(Bucket=self.bucket.name)
            logger.info("Bucket %s exists.", self.bucket.name)
            exists = True
        except ClientError:
            logger.warning(
                "Bucket %s doesn't exist or you don't have access to it.",
                self.bucket.name,
            )
            exists = False
        return exists
```

- For API details, see HeadBucket in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    @staticmethod
    def list(s3_resource):
        """
        Get the buckets in all Regions for the current account.

        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 S3 resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                            that contains collections and factory methods to create
                            other high-level S3 sub-resources.
        :return: The list of buckets.
        """
        try:
            buckets = list(s3_resource.buckets.all())
            logger.info("Got buckets: %s.", buckets)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get buckets.")
            raise
        else:
            return buckets
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                              that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    @staticmethod
    def list(bucket, prefix=None):
        """
        Lists the objects in a bucket, optionally filtered by a prefix.

        :param bucket: The bucket to query. This is a Boto3 Bucket resource.
        :param prefix: When specified, only objects that start with this prefix are
 listed.
        :return: The list of objects.
        """
        try:
            if not prefix:
                objects = list(bucket.objects.all())
            else:
                objects = list(bucket.objects.filter(Prefix=prefix))
            logger.info(
                "Got objects %s from bucket '%s'", [o.key for o in objects],
 bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get objects for bucket '%s'.", bucket.name)
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return objects
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutBucketAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketAcl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def grant_log_delivery_access(self):
        """
        Grant the AWS Log Delivery group write access to the bucket so that
        Amazon S3 can deliver access logs to the bucket. This is the only
 recommended
        use of an S3 bucket ACL.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.bucket.Acl()
```

```
            # Putting an ACL overwrites the existing ACL. If you want to preserve
            # existing grants, append new grants to the list of existing grants.
            grants = acl.grants if acl.grants else []
            grants.append(
                {
                    "Grantee": {
                        "Type": "Group",
                        "URI": "http://acs.amazonaws.com/groups/s3/LogDelivery",
                    },
                    "Permission": "WRITE",
                }
            )
            acl.put(AccessControlPolicy={"Grants": grants, "Owner": acl.owner})
            logger.info("Granted log delivery access to bucket '%s'",
 self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add ACL to bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketCors`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
```

```
                        that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def put_cors(self, cors_rules):
        """
        Apply CORS rules to the bucket. CORS rules specify the HTTP actions that are
        allowed from other domains.

        :param cors_rules: The CORS rules to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Cors().put(CORSConfiguration={"CORSRules": cors_rules})
            logger.info(
                "Put CORS rules %s for bucket '%s'.", cors_rules, self.bucket.name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't put CORS rules for bucket %s.",
self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def put_lifecycle_configuration(self, lifecycle_rules):
        """
        Apply a lifecycle configuration to the bucket. The lifecycle configuration
can
        be used to archive or delete the objects in the bucket according to
specified
        parameters, such as a number of days.

        :param lifecycle_rules: The lifecycle rules to apply.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().put(
                LifecycleConfiguration={"Rules": lifecycle_rules}
            )
            logger.info(
                "Put lifecycle rules %s for bucket '%s'.",
                lifecycle_rules,
                self.bucket.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't put lifecycle rules for bucket '%s'.", self.bucket.name
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def put_policy(self, policy):
        """
        Apply a security policy to the bucket. Policies control users' ability
        to perform specific actions, such as listing the objects in the bucket.

        :param policy: The policy to apply to the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.bucket.Policy().put(Policy=json.dumps(policy))
            logger.info("Put policy %s for bucket '%s'.", policy, self.bucket.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't apply policy to bucket '%s'.",
 self.bucket.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def put(self, data):
        """
        Upload data to the object.

        :param data: The data to upload. This can either be bytes or a string. When
 this
                     argument is a string, it is interpreted as a file name, which
 is
                     opened in read bytes mode.
        """
        put_data = data
        if isinstance(data, str):
            try:
                put_data = open(data, "rb")
            except IOError:
                logger.exception("Expected file name or binary data, got '%s'.",
 data)
                raise
```

```
        try:
            self.object.put(Body=put_data)
            self.object.wait_until_exists()
            logger.info(
                "Put object '%s' to bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't put object '%s' to bucket '%s'.",
                self.object.key,
                self.object.bucket_name,
            )
            raise
        finally:
            if getattr(put_data, "close", None):
                put_data.close()
```

Upload an object using a conditional request.

```
class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)



    def put_object_conditional(self, object_key: str, source_bucket: str, data:
 bytes):
        """
```

```
        Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
overwrite
        using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to upload.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param data: The data to upload.
        """
        try:
            self.s3.put_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket, Key=object_key, Body=data, IfNoneMatch="*"
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional write successful for key {object_key} in bucket
{source_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional write failed: Precondition failed")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutObjectAcl`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectAcl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class ObjectWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates S3 object actions."""

    def __init__(self, s3_object):
        """
        :param s3_object: A Boto3 Object resource. This is a high-level resource in
Boto3
                          that wraps object actions in a class-like structure.
        """
        self.object = s3_object
        self.key = self.object.key


    def put_acl(self, email):
        """
        Applies an ACL to the object that grants read access to an AWS user
identified
        by email address.

        :param email: The email address of the user to grant access.
        """
        try:
            acl = self.object.Acl()
            # Putting an ACL overwrites the existing ACL, so append new grants
            # if you want to preserve existing grants.
            grants = acl.grants if acl.grants else []
            grants.append(
                {
                    "Grantee": {"Type": "AmazonCustomerByEmail", "EmailAddress":
email},
                    "Permission": "READ",
                }
            )
            acl.put(AccessControlPolicy={"Grants": grants, "Owner": acl.owner})
            logger.info("Granted read access to %s.", email)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add ACL to object '%s'.", self.object.key)
            raise
```

- For API details, see PutObjectAcl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

PutObjectLegalHold

The following code example shows how to use PutObjectLegalHold.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object legal hold.

```
def set_legal_hold(s3_client, bucket: str, key: str) -> None:
    """
    Set a legal hold on a specific file in a bucket.

    Args:
        s3_client: Boto3 S3 client.
        bucket: The name of the bucket containing the file.
        key: The key of the file to set the legal hold on.
    """
    print()
    logger.info("Setting legal hold on file [%s] in bucket [%s]", key, bucket)
    try:
        before_status = "OFF"
        after_status = "ON"
        s3_client.put_object_legal_hold(
            Bucket=bucket, Key=key, LegalHold={"Status": after_status}
        )
        logger.debug(
            "Legal hold set successfully on file [%s] in bucket [%s]", key, bucket
        )
        _print_legal_hold_update(bucket, key, before_status, after_status)
    except Exception as e:
        logger.error(
            "Failed to set legal hold on file [%s] in bucket [%s]: %s", key, bucket,
 e
        )
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLegalHold in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutObjectLockConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectLockConfiguration`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put object lock configuration.

```
        s3_client.put_object_lock_configuration(
            Bucket=bucket,
            ObjectLockConfiguration={"ObjectLockEnabled": "Disabled", "Rule": {}},
        )
```

- For API details, see PutObjectLockConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`PutObjectRetention`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObjectRetention`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Put an object retention.

```
            s3_client.put_object_retention(
                Bucket=bucket,
                Key=key,
                VersionId=version_id,
                Retention={"Mode": "GOVERNANCE", "RetainUntilDate":
far_future_date},
                BypassGovernanceRetention=True,
            )
```

- For API details, see PutObjectRetention in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Generate a presigned URL that can perform an S3 action for a limited time. Use the Requests package to make a request with the URL.

```
import argparse
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
import requests

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def generate_presigned_url(s3_client, client_method, method_parameters, expires_in):
    """
```

```
    Generate a presigned Amazon S3 URL that can be used to perform an action.

    :param s3_client: A Boto3 Amazon S3 client.
    :param client_method: The name of the client method that the URL performs.
    :param method_parameters: The parameters of the specified client method.
    :param expires_in: The number of seconds the presigned URL is valid for.
    :return: The presigned URL.
    """
    try:
        url = s3_client.generate_presigned_url(
            ClientMethod=client_method, Params=method_parameters,
 ExpiresIn=expires_in
        )
        logger.info("Got presigned URL: %s", url)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't get a presigned URL for client method '%s'.", client_method
        )
        raise
    return url


def usage_demo():
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 presigned URL demo.")
    print("-" * 88)

    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser()
    parser.add_argument("bucket", help="The name of the bucket.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "key",
        help="For a GET operation, the key of the object in Amazon S3. For a "
        "PUT operation, the name of a file to upload.",
    )
    parser.add_argument("action", choices=("get", "put"), help="The action to
 perform.")
    args = parser.parse_args()

    s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
    client_action = "get_object" if args.action == "get" else "put_object"
    url = generate_presigned_url(
        s3_client, client_action, {"Bucket": args.bucket, "Key": args.key}, 1000
```

```
    )

    print("Using the Requests package to send a request to the URL.")
    response = None
    if args.action == "get":
        response = requests.get(url)
        if response.status_code == 200:
            with open(args.key.split("/")[-1], 'wb') as object_file:
                object_file.write(response.content)
    elif args.action == "put":
        print("Putting data to the URL.")
        try:
            with open(args.key, "rb") as object_file:
                object_text = object_file.read()
            response = requests.put(url, data=object_text)
        except FileNotFoundError:
            print(
                f"Couldn't find {args.key}. For a PUT operation, the key must be the
 "
                f"name of a file that exists on your computer."
            )

    if response is not None:
        print(f"Status: {response.status_code}\nReason: {response.reason}")

    print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    usage_demo()
```

Generate a presigned POST request to upload a file.

```
class BucketWrapper:
    """Encapsulates S3 bucket actions."""

    def __init__(self, bucket):
        """
        :param bucket: A Boto3 Bucket resource. This is a high-level resource in
 Boto3
                       that wraps bucket actions in a class-like structure.
        """
```

```
        self.bucket = bucket
        self.name = bucket.name


    def generate_presigned_post(self, object_key, expires_in):
        """
        Generate a presigned Amazon S3 POST request to upload a file.
        A presigned POST can be used for a limited time to let someone without an
AWS
        account upload a file to a bucket.

        :param object_key: The object key to identify the uploaded object.
        :param expires_in: The number of seconds the presigned POST is valid.
        :return: A dictionary that contains the URL and form fields that contain
                 required access data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.bucket.meta.client.generate_presigned_post(
                Bucket=self.bucket.name, Key=object_key, ExpiresIn=expires_in
            )
            logger.info("Got presigned POST URL: %s", response["url"])
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't get a presigned POST URL for bucket '%s' and object '%s'",
                self.bucket.name,
                object_key,
            )
            raise
        return response
```

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Detect entities in text extracted from an image

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in text extracted by Amazon Textract from an image that is stored in Amazon S3.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) in a Jupyter notebook to detect entities in text that is extracted from an image. This example uses Amazon Textract to extract text from an image stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in the extracted text.

This example is a Jupyter notebook and must be run in an environment that can host notebooks. For instructions on how to run the example using Amazon SageMaker AI, see the directions in TextractAndComprehendNotebook.ipynb.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Textract

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a web application that lets you do the following:

- Upload photos to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze and label the photos.
- Use Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send email reports of image analysis.

This example contains two main components: a webpage written in JavaScript that is built with React, and a REST service written in Python that is built with Flask-RESTful.

You can use the React webpage to:

- Display a list of images that are stored in your S3 bucket.
- Upload images from your computer to your S3 bucket.
- Display images and labels that identify items that are detected in the image.
- Get a report of all images in your S3 bucket and send an email of the report.

The webpage calls the REST service. The service sends requests to AWS to perform the following actions:

- Get and filter the list of images in your S3 bucket.
- Upload photos to your S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze individual photos and get a list of labels that identify items that are detected in the photo.
- Analyze all photos in your S3 bucket and use Amazon SES to email a report.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Make conditional requests

The following code example shows how to add preconditions to Amazon S3 requests.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario demonstrating Amazon S3 conditional requests.

```
"""
Purpose

Shows how to use AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get started using conditional
 requests for
Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3).

"""

import logging
import random
import sys
import datetime

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

from s3_conditional_requests import S3ConditionalRequests

# Add relative path to include demo_tools in this code example without need for
 setup.
sys.path.append("../../../..")
import demo_tools.question as q  # noqa

# Constants
FILE_CONTENT = "This is a test file for S3 conditional requests."
RANDOM_SUFFIX = str(random.randint(100, 999))

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
```

```
class ConditionalRequestsScenario:
    """Runs a scenario that shows how to use S3 Conditional Requests."""

    def __init__(self, conditional_requests, s3_client):
        """
        :param conditional_requests: An object that wraps S3 conditional request
 actions.
        :param s3_client: A Boto3 S3 client for setup and cleanup operations.
        """
        self.conditional_requests = conditional_requests
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    def setup_scenario(self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str, object_key: str):
        """
        Sets up the scenario by creating a source and destination bucket.
        Prompts the user to provide a bucket name prefix.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        :param object_key: The name of a test file to add to the source bucket.
        """

        # Create the buckets.
        try:
            self.s3_client.create_bucket(Bucket=source_bucket)
            self.s3_client.create_bucket(Bucket=dest_bucket)
            print(
                f"Created source bucket: {source_bucket} and destination bucket:
 {dest_bucket}"
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            logger.error(f"Error creating buckets: {error_code}")
            raise

        # Upload test file into the source bucket.
        try:
            print(f"Uploading file {object_key} to bucket {source_bucket}")
            response = self.s3_client.put_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket, Key=object_key, Body=FILE_CONTENT
            )
            object_etag = response["ETag"]
```

```
            return object_etag

        except Exception as e:
            logger.error(
                f"Failed to upload file {object_key} to bucket {source_bucket}: {e}"
            )


    def cleanup_scenario(self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str):
        """
        Cleans up the scenario by deleting the source and destination buckets.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        """
        self.cleanup_bucket(source_bucket)
        self.cleanup_bucket(dest_bucket)

    def cleanup_bucket(self, bucket_name: str):
        """
        Cleans up the bucket by deleting all objects and then the bucket itself.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            # Get list of all objects in the bucket.
            list_response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(Bucket=bucket_name)
            objs = list_response.get("Contents", [])
            for obj in objs:
                key = obj["Key"]
                self.s3_client.delete_object(Bucket=bucket_name, Key=key)
            self.s3_client.delete_bucket(Bucket=bucket_name)
            print(f"Cleaned up bucket: {bucket_name}.")
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "NoSuchBucket":
                logger.info(f"Bucket {bucket_name} does not exist, skipping
cleanup.")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Error deleting bucket: {error_code}")
                raise


    def display_buckets(self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str):
```

```
        """
        Display a list of the objects in the test buckets.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        """
        self.list_bucket_contents(source_bucket)
        self.list_bucket_contents(dest_bucket)

    def list_bucket_contents(self, bucket_name):
        """
        Display a list of the objects in the bucket.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            # Get list of all objects in the bucket.
            print(f"\t Items in bucket {bucket_name}")
            list_response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(Bucket=bucket_name)
            objs = list_response.get("Contents", [])
            if not objs:
                print("\t\tNo objects found.")
            for obj in objs:
                key = obj["Key"]
                print(f"\t\t object: {key} ETag {obj['ETag']}")
            return objs
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "NoSuchBucket":
                logger.info(f"Bucket {bucket_name} does not exist.")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Error listing bucket and objects: {error_code}")
                raise


    def display_menu(
        self, source_bucket: str, dest_bucket: str, object_key: str, etag: str
    ):
        """
        Displays the menu of conditional request options for the user.

        :param source_bucket: The name of the source bucket.
        :param dest_bucket: The name of the destination bucket.
        :param object_key: The key of the test object in the source bucket.
```

```
        :param etag: The etag of the test object in the source bucket.
        """

        actions = [
            "Print list of bucket items.",
            "Perform a conditional read.",
            "Perform a conditional copy.",
            "Perform a conditional write.",
            "Clean up and exit.",
        ]

        conditions = [
            "If-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should succeed.",
            "If-None-Match: using the object's ETag. This condition should fail.",
            "If-Modified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
succeed.",
            "If-Unmodified-Since: using yesterday's date. This condition should
fail.",
        ]

        condition_types = [
            "IfMatch",
            "IfNoneMatch",
            "IfModifiedSince",
            "IfUnmodifiedSince",
        ]
        copy_condition_types = [
            "CopySourceIfMatch",
            "CopySourceIfNoneMatch",
            "CopySourceIfModifiedSince",
            "CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince",
        ]

        yesterday_date = datetime.datetime.utcnow() - datetime.timedelta(days=1)

        choice = 0
        while choice != 4:
            print("-" * 88)
            print("Choose an action to explore some example conditional requests.")
            choice = q.choose("Which action would you like to take? ", actions)
            if choice == 0:
                print("Listing the objects and buckets.")
                self.display_buckets(source_bucket, dest_bucket)
            elif choice == 1:
```

```
                print("Perform a conditional read.")
                condition_type = q.choose("Enter the condition type : ", conditions)
                if condition_type == 0 or condition_type == 1:
                    self.conditional_requests.get_object_conditional(
                        object_key, source_bucket, condition_types[condition_type],
etag
                    )
                elif condition_type == 2 or condition_type == 3:
                    self.conditional_requests.get_object_conditional(
                        object_key,
                        source_bucket,
                        condition_types[condition_type],
                        yesterday_date,
                    )
            elif choice == 2:
                print("Perform a conditional copy.")
                condition_type = q.choose("Enter the condition type : ", conditions)
                dest_key = q.ask("Enter an object key: ", q.non_empty)
                if condition_type == 0 or condition_type == 1:
                    self.conditional_requests.copy_object_conditional(
                        object_key,
                        dest_key,
                        source_bucket,
                        dest_bucket,
                        copy_condition_types[condition_type],
                        etag,
                    )
                elif condition_type == 2 or condition_type == 3:
                    self.conditional_requests.copy_object_conditional(
                        object_key,
                        dest_key,
                        copy_condition_types[condition_type],
                        yesterday_date,
                    )
            elif choice == 3:
                print(
                    "Perform a conditional write using IfNoneMatch condition on the
object key."
                )
                print("If the key is a duplicate, the write will fail.")
                object_key = q.ask("Enter an object key: ", q.non_empty)
                self.conditional_requests.put_object_conditional(
                    object_key, source_bucket, b"Conditional write example data."
                )
```

```
            elif choice == 4:
                print("Proceeding to cleanup.")


    def run_scenario(self):
        """
        Runs the interactive scenario.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 conditional requests example.")
        print("-" * 88)

        print(
            f"""\
        This example demonstrates the use of conditional requests for S3 operations.
        You can use conditional requests to add preconditions to S3 read requests to
return or copy
        an object based on its Entity tag (ETag), or last modified date.
        You can use a conditional write requests to prevent overwrites by ensuring
        there is no existing object with the same key.

        This example will allow you to perform conditional reads
        and writes that will succeed or fail based on your selected options.

        Sample buckets and a sample object will be created as part of the example.
        """
        )

        bucket_prefix = q.ask("Enter a bucket name prefix: ", q.non_empty)
        source_bucket_name = f"{bucket_prefix}-source-{RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
        dest_bucket_name = f"{bucket_prefix}-dest-{RANDOM_SUFFIX}"
        object_key = "test-upload-file.txt"

        try:
            etag = self.setup_scenario(source_bucket_name, dest_bucket_name,
object_key)
            self.display_menu(source_bucket_name, dest_bucket_name, object_key,
etag)
        finally:
            self.cleanup_scenario(source_bucket_name, dest_bucket_name)

        print("-" * 88)
        print("Thanks for watching.")
        print("-" * 88)
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    scenario = ConditionalRequestsScenario(
        S3ConditionalRequests.from_client(), boto3.client("s3")
    )
    scenario.run_scenario()
```

A wrapper class that defines the conditional request operations.

```
import boto3
import logging

from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

# Configure logging
logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class S3ConditionalRequests:
    """Encapsulates S3 conditional request operations."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client):
        self.s3 = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)



    def get_object_conditional(
        self,
        object_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
```

```
    ):
        """
        Retrieves an object from Amazon S3 with a conditional request.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to retrieve.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition: 'IfMatch', 'IfNoneMatch',
'IfModifiedSince', 'IfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            response = self.s3.get_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket,
                Key=object_key,
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            sample_bytes = response["Body"].read(20)
            print(
                f"\tConditional read successful. Here are the first 20 bytes of the
object:\n"
            )
            print(f"\t{sample_bytes}")
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional read failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional read failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise



    def put_object_conditional(self, object_key: str, source_bucket: str, data:
bytes):
        """
        Uploads an object to Amazon S3 with a conditional request. Prevents
overwrite
        using an IfNoneMatch condition for the object key.

        :param object_key: The key of the object to upload.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param data: The data to upload.
```

```
        """
        try:
            self.s3.put_object(
                Bucket=source_bucket, Key=object_key, Body=data, IfNoneMatch="*"
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional write successful for key {object_key} in bucket
{source_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional write failed: Precondition failed")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise


    def copy_object_conditional(
        self,
        source_key: str,
        dest_key: str,
        source_bucket: str,
        dest_bucket: str,
        condition_type: str,
        condition_value: str,
    ):
        """
        Copies an object from one Amazon S3 bucket to another with a conditional
request.

        :param source_key: The key of the source object to copy.
        :param dest_key: The key of the destination object.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket of the object.
        :param dest_bucket: The destination bucket of the object.
        :param condition_type: The type of condition to apply, e.g.
        'CopySourceIfMatch', 'CopySourceIfNoneMatch', 'CopySourceIfModifiedSince',
'CopySourceIfUnmodifiedSince'.
        :param condition_value: The value to use for the condition.
        """
        try:
            self.s3.copy_object(
                Bucket=dest_bucket,
                Key=dest_key,
```

```
                CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": source_key},
                **{condition_type: condition_value},
            )
            print(
                f"\tConditional copy successful for key {dest_key} in bucket
{dest_bucket}."
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            error_code = e.response["Error"]["Code"]
            if error_code == "PreconditionFailed":
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Precondition failed")
            elif error_code == "304":  # Not modified error code.
                print("\tConditional copy failed: Object not modified")
            else:
                logger.error(f"Unexpected error: {error_code}")
                raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - GetObject
  - PutObject

Manage versioned objects in batches with a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to manage versioned S3 objects in batches with a Lambda function.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to manipulate Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) versioned objects in batches by creating jobs that call AWS Lambda functions to perform processing. This example creates a version-enabled bucket, uploads the stanzas from the poem *You Are Old, Father William* by Lewis Carroll, and uses Amazon S3 batch jobs to twist the poem in various ways.

Learn how to:

- Create Lambda functions that operate on versioned objects.
- Create a manifest of objects to update.
- Create batch jobs that invoke Lambda functions to update objects.

- Delete Lambda functions.
- Empty and delete a versioned bucket.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon S3

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that transfer files using several of the available transfer manager settings. Use a callback class to write callback progress during file transfer.

```
import sys
import threading

import boto3
from boto3.s3.transfer import TransferConfig


MB = 1024 * 1024
s3 = boto3.resource("s3")


class TransferCallback:
    """
    Handle callbacks from the transfer manager.
```

```
    The transfer manager periodically calls the __call__ method throughout
    the upload and download process so that it can take action, such as
    displaying progress to the user and collecting data about the transfer.
    """

    def __init__(self, target_size):
        self._target_size = target_size
        self._total_transferred = 0
        self._lock = threading.Lock()
        self.thread_info = {}

    def __call__(self, bytes_transferred):
        """
        The callback method that is called by the transfer manager.

        Display progress during file transfer and collect per-thread transfer
        data. This method can be called by multiple threads, so shared instance
        data is protected by a thread lock.
        """
        thread = threading.current_thread()
        with self._lock:
            self._total_transferred += bytes_transferred
            if thread.ident not in self.thread_info.keys():
                self.thread_info[thread.ident] = bytes_transferred
            else:
                self.thread_info[thread.ident] += bytes_transferred

            target = self._target_size * MB
            sys.stdout.write(
                f"\r{self._total_transferred} of {target} transferred "
                f"({(self._total_transferred / target) * 100:.2f}%)."
            )
            sys.stdout.flush()


def upload_with_default_configuration(
    local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, using the default
    configuration.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
```

```
        local_file_path, object_key, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def upload_with_chunksize_and_meta(
    local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key, file_size_mb, metadata=None
):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, setting a
    multipart chunk size and adding metadata to the Amazon S3 object.

    The multipart chunk size controls the size of the chunks of data that are
    sent in the request. A smaller chunk size typically results in the transfer
    manager using more threads for the upload.

    The metadata is a set of key-value pairs that are stored with the object
    in Amazon S3.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)

    config = TransferConfig(multipart_chunksize=1 * MB)
    extra_args = {"Metadata": metadata} if metadata else None
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path,
        object_key,
        Config=config,
        ExtraArgs=extra_args,
        Callback=transfer_callback,
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def upload_with_high_threshold(local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key,
 file_size_mb):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, setting a
    multipart threshold larger than the size of the file.

    Setting a multipart threshold larger than the size of the file results
    in the transfer manager sending the file as a standard upload instead of
    a multipart upload.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
```

```
    config = TransferConfig(multipart_threshold=file_size_mb * 2 * MB)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path, object_key, Config=config, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def upload_with_sse(
    local_file_path, bucket_name, object_key, file_size_mb, sse_key=None
):
    """
    Upload a file from a local folder to an Amazon S3 bucket, adding server-side
    encryption with customer-provided encryption keys to the object.

    When this kind of encryption is specified, Amazon S3 encrypts the object
    at rest and allows downloads only when the expected encryption key is
    provided in the download request.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    if sse_key:
        extra_args = {"SSECustomerAlgorithm": "AES256", "SSECustomerKey": sse_key}
    else:
        extra_args = None
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).upload_file(
        local_file_path, object_key, ExtraArgs=extra_args,
 Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_default_configuration(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, using the
    default configuration.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info
```

```
def download_with_single_thread(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, using a
    single thread.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    config = TransferConfig(use_threads=False)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, Config=config, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_high_threshold(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, setting a
    multipart threshold larger than the size of the file.

    Setting a multipart threshold larger than the size of the file results
    in the transfer manager sending the file as a standard download instead
    of a multipart download.
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)
    config = TransferConfig(multipart_threshold=file_size_mb * 2 * MB)
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, Config=config, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info


def download_with_sse(
    bucket_name, object_key, download_file_path, file_size_mb, sse_key
):
    """
    Download a file from an Amazon S3 bucket to a local folder, adding a
    customer-provided encryption key to the request.

    When this kind of encryption is specified, Amazon S3 encrypts the object
    at rest and allows downloads only when the expected encryption key is
    provided in the download request.
```

```
    """
    transfer_callback = TransferCallback(file_size_mb)

    if sse_key:
        extra_args = {"SSECustomerAlgorithm": "AES256", "SSECustomerKey": sse_key}
    else:
        extra_args = None
    s3.Bucket(bucket_name).Object(object_key).download_file(
        download_file_path, ExtraArgs=extra_args, Callback=transfer_callback
    )
    return transfer_callback.thread_info
```

Demonstrate the transfer manager functions and report results.

```
import hashlib
import os
import platform
import shutil
import time

import boto3
from boto3.s3.transfer import TransferConfig
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError
from botocore.exceptions import ParamValidationError
from botocore.exceptions import NoCredentialsError

import file_transfer

MB = 1024 * 1024
# These configuration attributes affect both uploads and downloads.
CONFIG_ATTRS = (
    "multipart_threshold",
    "multipart_chunksize",
    "max_concurrency",
    "use_threads",
)
# These configuration attributes affect only downloads.
DOWNLOAD_CONFIG_ATTRS = ("max_io_queue", "io_chunksize", "num_download_attempts")
```

```
class TransferDemoManager:
    """
    Manages the demonstration. Collects user input from a command line, reports
    transfer results, maintains a list of artifacts created during the
    demonstration, and cleans them up after the demonstration is completed.
    """

    def __init__(self):
        self._s3 = boto3.resource("s3")
        self._chore_list = []
        self._create_file_cmd = None
        self._size_multiplier = 0
        self.file_size_mb = 30
        self.demo_folder = None
        self.demo_bucket = None
        self._setup_platform_specific()
        self._terminal_width = shutil.get_terminal_size(fallback=(80, 80))[0]

    def collect_user_info(self):
        """
        Collect local folder and Amazon S3 bucket name from the user. These
        locations are used to store files during the demonstration.
        """
        while not self.demo_folder:
            self.demo_folder = input(
                "Which file folder do you want to use to store " "demonstration
 files? "
            )
            if not os.path.isdir(self.demo_folder):
                print(f"{self.demo_folder} isn't a folder!")
                self.demo_folder = None

        while not self.demo_bucket:
            self.demo_bucket = input(
                "Which Amazon S3 bucket do you want to use to store "
                "demonstration files? "
            )
            try:
                self._s3.meta.client.head_bucket(Bucket=self.demo_bucket)
            except ParamValidationError as err:
                print(err)
                self.demo_bucket = None
            except ClientError as err:
                print(err)
```

```
                print(
                    f"Either {self.demo_bucket} doesn't exist or you don't "
                    f"have access to it."
                )
                self.demo_bucket = None

    def demo(
        self, question, upload_func, download_func, upload_args=None,
download_args=None
    ):
        """Run a demonstration.

        Ask the user if they want to run this specific demonstration.
        If they say yes, create a file on the local path, upload it
        using the specified upload function, then download it using the
        specified download function.
        """
        if download_args is None:
            download_args = {}
        if upload_args is None:
            upload_args = {}
        question = question.format(self.file_size_mb)
        answer = input(f"{question} (y/n)")
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            local_file_path, object_key, download_file_path =
self._create_demo_file()

            file_transfer.TransferConfig = self._config_wrapper(
                TransferConfig, CONFIG_ATTRS
            )
            self._report_transfer_params(
                "Uploading", local_file_path, object_key, **upload_args
            )
            start_time = time.perf_counter()
            thread_info = upload_func(
                local_file_path,
                self.demo_bucket,
                object_key,
                self.file_size_mb,
                **upload_args,
            )
            end_time = time.perf_counter()
            self._report_transfer_result(thread_info, end_time - start_time)
```

```
            file_transfer.TransferConfig = self._config_wrapper(
                TransferConfig, CONFIG_ATTRS + DOWNLOAD_CONFIG_ATTRS
            )
            self._report_transfer_params(
                "Downloading", object_key, download_file_path, **download_args
            )
            start_time = time.perf_counter()
            thread_info = download_func(
                self.demo_bucket,
                object_key,
                download_file_path,
                self.file_size_mb,
                **download_args,
            )
            end_time = time.perf_counter()
            self._report_transfer_result(thread_info, end_time - start_time)

    def last_name_set(self):
        """Get the name set used for the last demo."""
        return self._chore_list[-1]

    def cleanup(self):
        """
        Remove files from the demo folder, and uploaded objects from the
        Amazon S3 bucket.
        """
        print("-" * self._terminal_width)
        for local_file_path, s3_object_key, downloaded_file_path in
self._chore_list:
            print(f"Removing {local_file_path}")
            try:
                os.remove(local_file_path)
            except FileNotFoundError as err:
                print(err)

            print(f"Removing {downloaded_file_path}")
            try:
                os.remove(downloaded_file_path)
            except FileNotFoundError as err:
                print(err)

            if self.demo_bucket:
                print(f"Removing {self.demo_bucket}:{s3_object_key}")
                try:
```

```
                    self._s3.Bucket(self.demo_bucket).Object(s3_object_key).delete()
                except ClientError as err:
                    print(err)

    def _setup_platform_specific(self):
        """Set up platform-specific command used to create a large file."""
        if platform.system() == "Windows":
            self._create_file_cmd = "fsutil file createnew {} {}"
            self._size_multiplier = MB
        elif platform.system() == "Linux" or platform.system() == "Darwin":
            self._create_file_cmd = f"dd if=/dev/urandom of={{}} " f"bs={MB}
count={{}}"
            self._size_multiplier = 1
        else:
            raise EnvironmentError(
                f"Demo of platform {platform.system()} isn't supported."
            )

    def _create_demo_file(self):
        """
        Create a file in the demo folder specified by the user. Store the local
        path, object name, and download path for later cleanup.

        Only the local file is created by this method. The Amazon S3 object and
        download file are created later during the demonstration.

        Returns:
        A tuple that contains the local file path, object name, and download
        file path.
        """
        file_name_template = "TestFile{}-{}.demo"
        local_suffix = "local"
        object_suffix = "s3object"
        download_suffix = "downloaded"
        file_tag = len(self._chore_list) + 1

        local_file_path = os.path.join(
            self.demo_folder, file_name_template.format(file_tag, local_suffix)
        )

        s3_object_key = file_name_template.format(file_tag, object_suffix)

        downloaded_file_path = os.path.join(
            self.demo_folder, file_name_template.format(file_tag, download_suffix)
```

```
        )

        filled_cmd = self._create_file_cmd.format(
            local_file_path, self.file_size_mb * self._size_multiplier
        )

        print(
            f"Creating file of size {self.file_size_mb} MB "
            f"in {self.demo_folder} by running:"
        )
        print(f"{'':4}{filled_cmd}")
        os.system(filled_cmd)

        chore = (local_file_path, s3_object_key, downloaded_file_path)
        self._chore_list.append(chore)
        return chore

    def _report_transfer_params(self, verb, source_name, dest_name, **kwargs):
        """Report configuration and extra arguments used for a file transfer."""
        print("-" * self._terminal_width)
        print(f"{verb} {source_name} ({self.file_size_mb} MB) to {dest_name}")
        if kwargs:
            print("With extra args:")
            for arg, value in kwargs.items():
                print(f'{"":4}{arg:<20}: {value}')

    @staticmethod
    def ask_user(question):
        """
        Ask the user a yes or no question.

        Returns:
        True when the user answers 'y' or 'Y'; otherwise, False.
        """
        answer = input(f"{question} (y/n) ")
        return answer.lower() == "y"

    @staticmethod
    def _config_wrapper(func, config_attrs):
        def wrapper(*args, **kwargs):
            config = func(*args, **kwargs)
            print("With configuration:")
            for attr in config_attrs:
                print(f'{"":4}{attr:<20}: {getattr(config, attr)}')
```

```
            return config

        return wrapper

    @staticmethod
    def _report_transfer_result(thread_info, elapsed):
        """Report the result of a transfer, including per-thread data."""
        print(f"\nUsed {len(thread_info)} threads.")
        for ident, byte_count in thread_info.items():
            print(f"{'':4}Thread {ident} copied {byte_count} bytes.")
        print(f"Your transfer took {elapsed:.2f} seconds.")


def main():
    """
    Run the demonstration script for s3_file_transfer.
    """
    demo_manager = TransferDemoManager()
    demo_manager.collect_user_info()

    # Upload and download with default configuration. Because the file is 30 MB
    # and the default multipart_threshold is 8 MB, both upload and download are
    # multipart transfers.
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload and download a {} MB file "
        "using the default configuration?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_default_configuration,
        file_transfer.download_with_default_configuration,
    )

    # Upload and download with multipart_threshold set higher than the size of
    # the file. This causes the transfer manager to use standard transfers
    # instead of multipart transfers.
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload and download a {} MB file "
        "as a standard (not multipart) transfer?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_high_threshold,
        file_transfer.download_with_high_threshold,
    )

    # Upload with specific chunk size and additional metadata.
    # Download with a single thread.
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload a {} MB file with a smaller chunk size and "
```

```
        "then download the same file using a single thread?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_chunksize_and_meta,
        file_transfer.download_with_single_thread,
        upload_args={
            "metadata": {
                "upload_type": "chunky",
                "favorite_color": "aqua",
                "size": "medium",
            }
        },
    )

    # Upload using server-side encryption with customer-provided
    # encryption keys.
    # Generate a 256-bit key from a passphrase.
    sse_key = hashlib.sha256("demo_passphrase".encode("utf-8")).digest()
    demo_manager.demo(
        "Do you want to upload and download a {} MB file using "
        "server-side encryption?",
        file_transfer.upload_with_sse,
        file_transfer.download_with_sse,
        upload_args={"sse_key": sse_key},
        download_args={"sse_key": sse_key},
    )

    # Download without specifying an encryption key to show that the
    # encryption key must be included to download an encrypted object.
    if demo_manager.ask_user(
        "Do you want to try to download the encrypted "
        "object without sending the required key?"
    ):
        try:
            _, object_key, download_file_path = demo_manager.last_name_set()
            file_transfer.download_with_default_configuration(
                demo_manager.demo_bucket,
                object_key,
                download_file_path,
                demo_manager.file_size_mb,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            print(
                "Got expected error when trying to download an encrypted "
                "object without specifying encryption info:"
            )
```

```
            print(f"{'':4}{err}")

    # Remove all created and downloaded files, remove all objects from
    # S3 storage.
    if demo_manager.ask_user(
        "Demonstration complete. Do you want to remove local files " "and S3
 objects?"
    ):
        demo_manager.cleanup()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        main()
    except NoCredentialsError as error:
        print(error)
        print(
            "To run this example, you must have valid credentials in "
            "a shared credential file or set in environment variables."
        )
```

Work with versioned objects

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a versioned S3 bucket.
- Get all versions of an object.
- Roll an object back to a previous version.
- Delete and restore a versioned object.
- Permanently delete all versions of an object.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions that wrap S3 actions.

```
def create_versioned_bucket(bucket_name, prefix):
    """
    Creates an Amazon S3 bucket, enables it for versioning, and configures a
 lifecycle
    that expires noncurrent object versions after 7 days.

    Adding a lifecycle configuration to a versioned bucket is a best practice.
    It helps prevent objects in the bucket from accumulating a large number of
    noncurrent versions, which can slow down request performance.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to create.
    :param prefix: Identifies which objects are automatically expired under the
                   configured lifecycle rules.
    :return: The newly created bucket.
    """
    try:
        bucket = s3.create_bucket(
            Bucket=bucket_name,
            CreateBucketConfiguration={
                "LocationConstraint": s3.meta.client.meta.region_name
            },
        )
        logger.info("Created bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou":
            logger.warning("Bucket %s already exists! Using it.", bucket_name)
            bucket = s3.Bucket(bucket_name)
        else:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create bucket %s.", bucket_name)
            raise

    try:
        bucket.Versioning().enable()
        logger.info("Enabled versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't enable versioning on bucket %s.", bucket.name)
        raise

    try:
```

```
        expiration = 7
        bucket.LifecycleConfiguration().put(
            LifecycleConfiguration={
                "Rules": [
                    {
                        "Status": "Enabled",
                        "Prefix": prefix,
                        "NoncurrentVersionExpiration": {"NoncurrentDays":
 expiration},
                    }
                ]
            }
        )
        logger.info(
            "Configured lifecycle to expire noncurrent versions after %s days "
            "on bucket %s.",
            expiration,
            bucket.name,
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.warning(
            "Couldn't configure lifecycle on bucket %s because %s. "
            "Continuing anyway.",
            bucket.name,
            error,
        )

    return bucket



def rollback_object(bucket, object_key, version_id):
    """
    Rolls back an object to an earlier version by deleting all versions that
    occurred after the specified rollback version.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that holds the object to roll back.
    :param object_key: The object to roll back.
    :param version_id: The version ID to roll back to.
    """
    # Versions must be sorted by last_modified date because delete markers are
```

```
    # at the end of the list even when they are interspersed in time.
    versions = sorted(
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key),
        key=attrgetter("last_modified"),
        reverse=True,
    )

    logger.debug(
        "Got versions:\n%s",
        "\n".join(
            [
                f"\t{version.version_id}, last modified {version.last_modified}"
                for version in versions
            ]
        ),
    )

    if version_id in [ver.version_id for ver in versions]:
        print(f"Rolling back to version {version_id}")
        for version in versions:
            if version.version_id != version_id:
                version.delete()
                print(f"Deleted version {version.version_id}")
            else:
                break

        print(f"Active version is now {bucket.Object(object_key).version_id}")
    else:
        raise KeyError(
            f"{version_id} was not found in the list of versions for "
 f"{object_key}."
        )



def revive_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Revives a versioned object that was deleted by removing the object's active
    delete marker.
    A versioned object presents as deleted when its latest version is a delete
 marker.
    By removing the delete marker, we make the previous version the latest version
    and the object then presents as *not* deleted.
```

```
    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.

    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to revive.
    """
    # Get the latest version for the object.
    response = s3.meta.client.list_object_versions(
        Bucket=bucket.name, Prefix=object_key, MaxKeys=1
    )

    if "DeleteMarkers" in response:
        latest_version = response["DeleteMarkers"][0]
        if latest_version["IsLatest"]:
            logger.info(
                "Object %s was indeed deleted on %s. Let's revive it.",
                object_key,
                latest_version["LastModified"],
            )
            obj = bucket.Object(object_key)
            obj.Version(latest_version["VersionId"]).delete()
            logger.info(
                "Revived %s, active version is now %s  with body '%s'",
                object_key,
                obj.version_id,
                obj.get()["Body"].read(),
            )
        else:
            logger.warning(
                "Delete marker is not the latest version for %s!", object_key
            )
    elif "Versions" in response:
        logger.warning("Got an active version for %s, nothing to do.", object_key)
    else:
        logger.error("Couldn't get any version info for %s.", object_key)



def permanently_delete_object(bucket, object_key):
    """
    Permanently deletes a versioned object by deleting all of its versions.

    Usage is shown in the usage_demo_single_object function at the end of this
 module.
```

```
    :param bucket: The bucket that contains the object.
    :param object_key: The object to delete.
    """
    try:
        bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=object_key).delete()
        logger.info("Permanently deleted all versions of object %s.", object_key)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete all versions of %s.", object_key)
        raise
```

Upload the stanza of a poem to a versioned object and perform a series of actions on it.

```
def usage_demo_single_object(obj_prefix="demo-versioning/"):
    """
    Demonstrates usage of versioned object functions. This demo uploads a stanza
    of a poem and performs a series of revisions, deletions, and revivals on it.

    :param obj_prefix: The prefix to assign to objects created by this demo.
    """
    with open("father_william.txt") as file:
        stanzas = file.read().split("\n\n")

    width = get_terminal_size((80, 20))[0]
    print("-" * width)
    print("Welcome to the usage demonstration of Amazon S3 versioning.")
    print(
        "This demonstration uploads a single stanza of a poem to an Amazon "
        "S3 bucket and then applies various revisions to it."
    )
    print("-" * width)
    print("Creating a version-enabled bucket for the demo...")
    bucket = create_versioned_bucket("bucket-" + str(uuid.uuid1()), obj_prefix)

    print("\nThe initial version of our stanza:")
    print(stanzas[0])

    # Add the first stanza and revise it a few times.
    print("\nApplying some revisions to the stanza...")
    obj_stanza_1 = bucket.Object(f"{obj_prefix}stanza-1")
```

```
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0], "utf-8"))
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0].upper(), "utf-8"))
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0].lower(), "utf-8"))
    obj_stanza_1.put(Body=bytes(stanzas[0][::-1], "utf-8"))
    print(
        "The latest version of the stanza is now:",
        obj_stanza_1.get()["Body"].read().decode("utf-8"),
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Versions are returned in order, most recent first.
    obj_stanza_1_versions = bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=obj_stanza_1.key)
    print(
        "The version data of the stanza revisions:",
        *[
            f"    {version.version_id}, last modified {version.last_modified}"
            for version in obj_stanza_1_versions
        ],
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Rollback two versions.
    print("\nRolling back two versions...")
    rollback_object(bucket, obj_stanza_1.key, list(obj_stanza_1_versions)
[2].version_id)
    print(
        "The latest version of the stanza:",
        obj_stanza_1.get()["Body"].read().decode("utf-8"),
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Delete the stanza
    print("\nDeleting the stanza...")
    obj_stanza_1.delete()
    try:
        obj_stanza_1.get()
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchKey":
            print("The stanza is now deleted (as expected).")
        else:
            raise

    # Revive the stanza
    print("\nRestoring the stanza...")
```

```
    revive_object(bucket, obj_stanza_1.key)
    print(
        "The stanza is restored! The latest version is again:",
        obj_stanza_1.get()["Body"].read().decode("utf-8"),
        sep="\n",
    )

    # Permanently delete all versions of the object. This cannot be undone!
    print("\nPermanently deleting all versions of the stanza...")
    permanently_delete_object(bucket, obj_stanza_1.key)
    obj_stanza_1_versions = bucket.object_versions.filter(Prefix=obj_stanza_1.key)
    if len(list(obj_stanza_1_versions)) == 0:
        print("The stanza has been permanently deleted and now has no versions.")
    else:
        print("Something went wrong. The stanza still exists!")

    print(f"\nRemoving {bucket.name}...")
    bucket.delete()
    print(f"{bucket.name} deleted.")
    print("Demo done!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteObject
  - ListObjectVersions
  - PutBucketLifecycleConfiguration

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
import json
import urllib.parse
import boto3

print('Loading function')

s3 = boto3.client('s3')


def lambda_handler(event, context):
    #print("Received event: " + json.dumps(event, indent=2))

    # Get the object from the event and show its content type
    bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
    key = urllib.parse.unquote_plus(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 encoding='utf-8')
    try:
        response = s3.get_object(Bucket=bucket, Key=key)
        print("CONTENT TYPE: " + response['ContentType'])
        return response['ContentType']
    except Exception as e:
        print(e)
        print('Error getting object {} from bucket {}. Make sure they exist and your
 bucket is in the same region as this function.'.format(key, bucket))
        raise e
```

S3 Directory Buckets examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with S3 Directory Buckets.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Set up a VPC and VPC Endpoint.
- Set up the Policies, Roles, and User to work with S3 directory buckets and the S3 Express One Zone storage class.
- Create two S3 Clients.
- Create two buckets.
- Create an object and copy it over.
- Demonstrate performance difference.
- Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
- Prompt the user to see if they want to clean up the resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario demonstrating the basics of Amazon S3 directory buckets and S3 Express One Zone.

```
class S3ExpressScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started with S3
 Express."""

    def __init__(
        self,
        cloud_formation_resource: ServiceResource,
        ec2_client: client,
        iam_client: client,
    ):
        self.cloud_formation_resource = cloud_formation_resource
        self.ec2_client = ec2_client
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        self.region = ec2_client.meta.region_name
        self.stack = None
        self.vpc_id = None
        self.vpc_endpoint_id = None
        self.regular_bucket_name = None
        self.directory_bucket_name = None
        self.s3_express_wrapper = None
        self.s3_regular_wrapper = None

    def s3_express_scenario(self):
        """
        Runs the scenario.
        """
        print("")
        print_dashes()
        print("Welcome to the Amazon S3 Express Basics demo using Python (Boto 3)!")
        print_dashes()
        print(
```

```
            """
Let's get started! First, please note that S3 Express One Zone works best when
 working within the AWS infrastructure,
specifically when working in the same Availability Zone. To see the best results in
 this example and when you implement
Directory buckets into your infrastructure, it is best to put your compute resources
 in the same AZ as your Directory
bucket.
    """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()

        # Create an optional VPC and create 2 IAM users.
        express_user_name, regular_user_name = self.create_vpc_and_users()

        # Set up two S3 clients, one regular and one express, and two buckets, one
 regular and one express.
        self.setup_clients_and_buckets(express_user_name, regular_user_name)

        # Create an S3 session for the express S3 client and add objects to the
 buckets.
        bucket_object = self.create_session_and_add_objects()

        # Demonstrate performance differences between regular and express buckets.
        self.demonstrate_performance(bucket_object)

        # Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference between
 regular and express buckets.
        self.show_lexicographical_differences(bucket_object)

        print("")
        print("That's it for our tour of the basic operations for S3 Express One
 Zone.")

        if q.ask(
            "Would you like to delete all the resources created during this demo (y/
n)? ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            self.cleanup()

    def create_vpc_and_users(self) -> None:
        """
        Optionally create a VPC.
```

```
        Create two IAM users, one with S3 Express One Zone permissions and one
 without.
        """
        # Configure a gateway VPC endpoint. This is the recommended method to allow
 S3 Express One Zone traffic without
        # the need to pass through an internet gateway or NAT device.
        print(
            """
1. First, we'll set up a new VPC and VPC Endpoint if this program is running in an
 EC2 instance in the same AZ as your
Directory buckets will be. Are you running this in an EC2 instance located in the
 same AZ as your intended Directory buckets?
"""
        )
        if q.ask("Do you want to setup a VPC Endpoint? (y/n) ", q.is_yesno):
            print(
                "Great! Let's set up a VPC, retrieve the Route Table from it, and
 create a VPC Endpoint to connect the S3 Client to."
            )
            self.setup_vpc()
            press_enter_to_continue()
        else:
            print("Skipping the VPC setup. Don't forget to use this in production!")
        print(
            """
2. Policies, users, and roles with CDK.
Now, we'll set up some policies, roles, and a user. This user will only have
 permissions to do S3 Express One Zone actions.
            """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        stack_name = f"cfn-stack-s3-express-basics--{uuid.uuid4()}"
        template_as_string = S3ExpressScenario.get_template_as_string()
        self.stack = self.deploy_cloudformation_stack(stack_name,
 template_as_string)
        regular_user_name = None
        express_user_name = None
        outputs = self.stack.outputs
        for output in outputs:
            if output.get("OutputKey") == "RegularUser":
                regular_user_name = output.get("OutputValue")
            elif output.get("OutputKey") == "ExpressUser":
                express_user_name = output.get("OutputValue")
        if not regular_user_name or not express_user_name:
```

```
            error_string = f"""
            Failed to retrieve required outputs from CloudFormation stack.
            'regular_user_name'={regular_user_name},
 'express_user_name'={express_user_name}
            """
            logger.error(error_string)
            raise ValueError(error_string)
        return express_user_name, regular_user_name

    def setup_clients_and_buckets(
        self, express_user_name: str, regular_user_name: str
    ) -> None:
        """
        Set up two S3 clients, one regular and one express, and two buckets, one
 regular and one express.
        :param express_user_name: The name of the user with S3 Express permissions.
        :param regular_user_name: The name of the user with regular S3 permissions.
        """
        regular_credentials = self.create_access_key(regular_user_name)
        express_credentials = self.create_access_key(express_user_name)
        # 3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express
 permissions.
        print(
            """
3. Create an additional client using the credentials with S3 Express permissions.
 This client is created with the
credentials associated with the user account with the S3 Express policy attached, so
 it can perform S3 Express operations.
"""
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        s3_regular_client = self.create_s3__client_with_access_key_credentials(
            regular_credentials
        )
        self.s3_regular_wrapper = S3ExpressWrapper(s3_regular_client)
        s3_express_client = self.create_s3__client_with_access_key_credentials(
            express_credentials
        )
        self.s3_express_wrapper = S3ExpressWrapper(s3_express_client)
        print(
            """
All the roles and policies were created and attached to the user. Then a new S3
 Client were created using
```

```
that user's credentials. We can now use this client to make calls to S3 Express
 operations. Keeping permissions in mind
(and adhering to least-privilege) is crucial to S3 Express.
 """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        # 4. Create two buckets.
        print(
            """
3. Create two buckets.
Now we will create a Directory bucket which is the linchpin of the S3 Express One
 Zone service. Directory buckets
behave in different ways from regular S3 buckets which we will explore here. We'll
 also create a normal bucket, put
an object into the normal bucket, and copy it over to the Directory bucket.
"""
        )

        # Create a directory bucket. These are different from normal S3 buckets in
 subtle ways.
        bucket_prefix = q.ask(
            "Enter a bucket name prefix that will be used for both buckets: ",
            q.re_match(r"[a-z0-9](?:[a-z0-9-\.]*)[a-z0-9]$"),
        )

        # Some availability zones are not supported for Directory buckets. We'll
 choose one that is supported.
        print(
            "Now, let's choose an availability zone for the Directory bucket. We'll
 choose one that is supported."
        )
        while True:
            availability_zone = self.select_availability_zone_id(self.region)
            # Construct the parts of a directory bucket name that is made unique
 with a UUID string.
            directory_bucket_suffix = f"--{availability_zone['ZoneId']}--x-s3"
            max_uuid_length = 63 - len(bucket_prefix) - len(directory_bucket_suffix)
 - 1
            bucket_uuid = str(uuid.uuid4()).replace("-", "")[:max_uuid_length]
            directory_bucket_name = (
                f"{bucket_prefix}-{bucket_uuid}{directory_bucket_suffix}"
            )
            regular_bucket_name = f"{bucket_prefix}-regular-{bucket_uuid}"
            configuration = {
```

```
                "Bucket": {
                    "Type": "Directory",
                    "DataRedundancy": "SingleAvailabilityZone",
                },
                "Location": {
                    "Name": availability_zone["ZoneId"],
                    "Type": "AvailabilityZone",
                },
            }
            press_enter_to_continue()
            print(
                "Now, let's create the actual Directory bucket, as well as a regular
bucket."
            )
            press_enter_to_continue()
            try:
                self.s3_express_wrapper.create_bucket(
                    directory_bucket_name, configuration
                )
                break
            except ClientError as client_error:
                if client_error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "InvalidBucketName":
                    print(
                        f"Bucket '{directory_bucket_name}' is invalid. This may be
because of selected availability zone."
                    )
                    if q.ask(
                        "Would you like to select a different availability zone? ",
                        q.is_yesno,
                    ):
                        continue
                    else:
                        raise
                else:
                    raise
        print(f"Created directory bucket, '{directory_bucket_name}'")
        self.directory_bucket_name = directory_bucket_name

        self.s3_regular_wrapper.create_bucket(regular_bucket_name)
        print(f"Created regular bucket, '{regular_bucket_name}'")
        self.regular_bucket_name = regular_bucket_name
        print("Great! Both buckets were created.")
        press_enter_to_continue()
```

```
    def create_session_and_add_objects(self) -> None:
        """
        Create a session for the express S3 client and add objects to the buckets.
        """
        print(
            """
5. Create an object and copy it over.
We'll create a basic object consisting of some text and upload it to the normal
 bucket. Next we'll copy the object
into the Directory bucket using the regular client. This works fine because copy
 operations are not restricted for
Directory buckets.
        """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        bucket_object = "basic-text-object"
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(
            self.regular_bucket_name, bucket_object, "Look Ma, I'm a bucket!"
        )
        self.s3_express_wrapper.create_session(self.directory_bucket_name)
        self.s3_express_wrapper.copy_object(
            self.regular_bucket_name,
            bucket_object,
            self.directory_bucket_name,
            bucket_object,
        )
        print(
            """
It worked! It's important to remember the user permissions when interacting with
 Directory buckets. Instead of validating
permissions on every call as normal buckets do, Directory buckets utilize the user
 credentials and session token to validate.
This allows for much faster connection speeds on every call. For single calls, this
 is low, but for many concurrent calls
this adds up to a lot of time saved.
"""
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
        return bucket_object

    def demonstrate_performance(self, bucket_object: str) -> None:
        """
        Demonstrate performance differences between regular and Directory buckets.
        :param bucket_object: The name of the object to download from each bucket.
```

```
        """
        print("")
        print("6. Demonstrate performance difference.")
        print(
            """
Now, let's do a performance test. We'll download the same object from each bucket
 'downloads' times
and compare the total time needed. Note: the performance difference will be much
 more pronounced if this
example is run in an EC2 instance in the same Availability Zone as the bucket.
"""
        )
        downloads = 1000
        print(
            f"The number of downloads of the same object for this example is set at
 {downloads}."
        )
        if q.ask("Would you like to download a different number? (y/n) ",
 q.is_yesno):
            max_downloads = 1000000
            downloads = q.ask(
                f"Enter a number between 1 and {max_downloads} for the number of
 downloads: ",
                q.is_int,
                q.in_range(1, max_downloads),
            )
        # Download the object 'downloads' times from each bucket and time it to
 demonstrate the speed difference.
        print("Downloading from the Directory bucket.")
        directory_time_start = time.time_ns()

        for index in range(downloads):
            if index % 10 == 0:
                print(f"Download {index} of {downloads}")

            self.s3_express_wrapper.get_object(
                self.directory_bucket_name, bucket_object
            )

        directory_time_difference = time.time_ns() - directory_time_start
        print("Downloading from the normal bucket.")
        normal_time_start = time.time_ns()

        for index in range(downloads):
```

```
            if index % 10 == 0:
                print(f"Download {index} of {downloads}")
            self.s3_regular_wrapper.get_object(self.regular_bucket_name,
 bucket_object)

        normal_time_difference = time.time_ns() - normal_time_start
        print(
            f"The directory bucket took {directory_time_difference} nanoseconds,
 while the normal bucket took {normal_time_difference}."
        )
        difference = normal_time_difference - directory_time_difference
        print(f"That's a difference of {difference} nanoseconds, or")
        print(f"{(difference) / 1000000000} seconds.")
        if difference < 0:
            print(
                "The directory buckets were slower. This can happen if you are not
 running on the cloud within a vpc."
            )
        press_enter_to_continue()

    def show_lexicographical_differences(self, bucket_object: str) -> None:
        """
        Show the lexicographical difference between Directory buckets and regular
 buckets.
        This is done by creating a few objects in each bucket and listing them to
 show the difference.
        :param bucket_object: The object to use for the listing operations.
        """
        print(
            """
7. Populate the buckets to show the lexicographical difference.
Now let's explore how Directory buckets store objects in a different manner to
 regular buckets. The key is in the name
"Directory". Where regular buckets store their key/value pairs in a flat manner,
 Directory buckets use actual
directories/folders. This allows for more rapid indexing, traversing, and therefore
 retrieval times! The more segmented
your bucket is, with lots of directories, sub-directories, and objects, the more
 efficient it becomes. This structural
difference also causes ListObjects to behave differently, which can cause unexpected
 results. Let's add a few more
objects with layered directories to see how the output of ListObjects changes.
        """
        )
```

```
        press_enter_to_continue()
        # Populate a few more files in each bucket so that we can use ListObjects
 and show the difference.
        other_object = f"other/{bucket_object}"
        alt_object = f"alt/{bucket_object}"
        other_alt_object = f"other/alt/{bucket_object}"
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(self.regular_bucket_name, other_object,
 "")
        self.s3_express_wrapper.put_object(self.directory_bucket_name, other_object,
 "")
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(self.regular_bucket_name, alt_object, "")
        self.s3_express_wrapper.put_object(self.directory_bucket_name, alt_object,
 "")
        self.s3_regular_wrapper.put_object(
            self.regular_bucket_name, other_alt_object, ""
        )
        self.s3_express_wrapper.put_object(
            self.directory_bucket_name, other_alt_object, ""
        )
        directory_bucket_objects = self.s3_express_wrapper.list_objects(
            self.directory_bucket_name
        )

        regular_bucket_objects = self.s3_regular_wrapper.list_objects(
            self.regular_bucket_name
        )

        print("Directory bucket content")
        for bucket_object in directory_bucket_objects:
            print(f"   {bucket_object['Key']}")
        print("Normal bucket content")
        for bucket_object in regular_bucket_objects:
            print(f"   {bucket_object['Key']}")
        print(
            """
Notice how the normal bucket lists objects in lexicographical order, while the
 directory bucket does not. This is
because the normal bucket considers the whole "key" to be the object identifier,
 while the directory bucket actually
creates directories and uses the object "key" as a path to the object.
            """
        )
        press_enter_to_continue()
```

```
    def cleanup(self) -> None:
        """
        Delete resources created by this scenario.
        """
        if self.directory_bucket_name is not None:
            self.s3_express_wrapper.delete_bucket_and_objects(
                self.directory_bucket_name
            )
            print(f"Deleted directory bucket, '{self.directory_bucket_name}'")
            self.directory_bucket_name = None

        if self.regular_bucket_name is not None:

self.s3_regular_wrapper.delete_bucket_and_objects(self.regular_bucket_name)
            print(f"Deleted regular bucket, '{self.regular_bucket_name}'")
            self.regular_bucket_name = None

        if self.stack is not None:
            self.destroy_cloudformation_stack(self.stack)
            self.stack = None

        self.tear_done_vpc()

    def create_access_key(self, user_name: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Creates an access key for the user.
        :param user_name: The name of the user.
        :return: The access key for the user.
        """
        try:
            access_key = self.iam_client.create_access_key(UserName=user_name)
            return access_key["AccessKey"]
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the access key. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def create_s3__client_with_access_key_credentials(
        self, access_key: dict[str, any]
    ) -> client:
        """
        Creates an S3 client with access key credentials.
```

```
        :param access_key: The access key for the user.
        :return: The S3 Express One Zone client.
        """
        try:
            s3_express_client = boto3.client(
                "s3",
                aws_access_key_id=access_key["AccessKeyId"],
                aws_secret_access_key=access_key["SecretAccessKey"],
                region_name=self.region,
            )
            return s3_express_client
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the S3 Express One Zone client. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def select_availability_zone_id(self, region: str) -> dict[str, any]:
        """
        Selects an availability zone.
        :param region: The region to select the availability zone from.
        :return: The availability zone dictionary.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_availability_zones(
                Filters=[{"Name": "region-name", "Values": [region]}]
            )
            availability_zones = response["AvailabilityZones"]
            zone_names = [zone["ZoneName"] for zone in availability_zones]
            index = q.choose("Select an availability zone: ", zone_names)
            return availability_zones[index]
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't describe availability zones. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def deploy_cloudformation_stack(
        self, stack_name: str, cfn_template: str
    ) -> ServiceResource:
        """
        Deploys prerequisite resources used by the scenario. The resources are
```

```
        defined in the associated `cfn_template.yaml` AWS CloudFormation script and
are deployed
        as a CloudFormation stack, so they can be easily managed and destroyed.

        :param stack_name: The name of the CloudFormation stack.
        :param cfn_template: The CloudFormation template as a string.
        :return: The CloudFormation stack resource.
        """
        print(f"Deploying CloudFormation stack: {stack_name}.")
        stack = self.cloud_formation_resource.create_stack(
            StackName=stack_name,
            TemplateBody=cfn_template,
            Capabilities=["CAPABILITY_NAMED_IAM"],
        )
        print(f"CloudFormation stack creation started: {stack_name}")
        print("Waiting for CloudFormation stack creation to complete...")
        waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
            "stack_create_complete"
        )
        waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
        stack.load()
        print("CloudFormation stack creation complete.")

        return stack

    def destroy_cloudformation_stack(self, stack: ServiceResource) -> None:
        """
        Destroys the resources managed by the CloudFormation stack, and the
CloudFormation
        stack itself.

        :param stack: The CloudFormation stack that manages the example resources.
        """
        try:
            print(
                f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' is being deleted. This may
take a few minutes."
            )
            stack.delete()
            waiter = self.cloud_formation_resource.meta.client.get_waiter(
                "stack_delete_complete"
            )
            waiter.wait(StackName=stack.name)
            print(f"CloudFormation stack '{stack.name}' has been deleted.")
```

```
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete the CloudFormation stack. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )

    @staticmethod
    def get_template_as_string() -> str:
        """
        Returns a string containing this scenario's CloudFormation template.
        """
        script_directory = os.path.dirname(os.path.abspath(__file__))
        template_file_path = os.path.join(script_directory,
 "s3_express_template.yaml")
        file = open(template_file_path, "r")
        return file.read()

    def setup_vpc(self):
        cidr = "10.0.0.0/16"
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc(CidrBlock=cidr)
            self.vpc_id = response["Vpc"]["VpcId"]

            waiter = self.ec2_client.get_waiter("vpc_available")
            waiter.wait(VpcIds=[self.vpc_id])
            print(f"Created vpc {self.vpc_id}")

        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the vpc. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        try:
            response = self.ec2_client.describe_route_tables(
                Filters=[{"Name": "vpc-id", "Values": [self.vpc_id]}]
            )
            route_table_id = response["RouteTables"][0]["RouteTableId"]
            service_name = f"com.amazonaws.
{self.ec2_client.meta.region_name}.s3express"

            response = self.ec2_client.create_vpc_endpoint(
                VpcId=self.vpc_id,
                RouteTableIds=[route_table_id],
```

```
                ServiceName=service_name,
            )
            self.vpc_endpoint_id = response["VpcEndpoint"]["VpcEndpointId"]
            print(f"Created vpc endpoint {self.vpc_endpoint_id}")

        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the vpc endpoint. Here's why: %s",
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def tear_done_vpc(self) -> None:
        if self.vpc_endpoint_id is not None:
            try:
                self.ec2_client.delete_vpc_endpoints(
                    VpcEndpointIds=[self.vpc_endpoint_id]
                )
                print(f"Deleted vpc endpoint {self.vpc_endpoint_id}.")
                self.vpc_endpoint_id = None
            except ClientError as client_error:
                logging.error(
                    "Couldn't delete the vpc endpoint %s. Here's why: %s",
                    self.vpc_endpoint_id,
                    client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
        if self.vpc_id is not None:
            try:
                self.ec2_client.delete_vpc(VpcId=self.vpc_id)
                print(f"Deleted vpc {self.vpc_id}")
                self.vpc_id = None
            except ClientError as client_error:
                logging.error(
                    "Couldn't delete the vpc %s. Here's why: %s",
                    self.vpc_id,
                    client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

A wrapper class for Amazon S3 Express SDK functions.

```
class S3ExpressWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Express One Zone actions using the client
 interface."""

    def __init__(self, s3_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the S3ExpressWrapper with an S3 client.

        :param s3_client: A Boto3 Amazon S3 client. This client provides low-level
                          access to AWS S3 services.
        """
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "S3ExpressWrapper":
        """
        Creates an S3ExpressWrapper instance with a default s3 client.

        :return: An instance of S3ExpressWrapper initialized with the default S3
 client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)


    def create_bucket(
        self, bucket_name: str, bucket_configuration: dict[str, any] = None
    ) -> None:
        """
        Creates a bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        :param bucket_configuration: The optional configuration for the bucket.
        """
        try:
            params = {"Bucket": bucket_name}
            if bucket_configuration:
                params["CreateBucketConfiguration"] = bucket_configuration

            self.s3_client.create_bucket(**params)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            # Do not log InvalidBucketName error because it is logged elsewhere.
            if client_error.response["Error"]["Code"] != "InvalidBucketName":
                logging.error(
```

```
                    "Couldn't create the bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                    bucket_name,
                    client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
            raise

    def delete_bucket_and_objects(self, bucket_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Deletes a bucket and its objects.
         :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            # Delete the objects in the bucket first. This is required for a bucket
to be deleted.
            paginator = self.s3_client.get_paginator("list_objects_v2")
            page_iterator = paginator.paginate(Bucket=bucket_name)
            for page in page_iterator:
                if "Contents" in page:
                    delete_keys = {
                        "Objects": [{"Key": obj["Key"]} for obj in page["Contents"]]
                    }
                    response = self.s3_client.delete_objects(
                        Bucket=bucket_name, Delete=delete_keys
                    )
                    if "Errors" in response:
                        for error in response["Errors"]:
                            logging.error(
                                "Couldn't delete object %s. Here's why: %s",
                                error["Key"],
                                error["Message"],
                            )

            self.s3_client.delete_bucket(Bucket=bucket_name)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't delete the bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )

    def put_object(self, bucket_name: str, object_key: str, content: str) -> None:
        """
        Puts an object into a bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
```

```
        :param object_key: The key of the object.
        :param content: The content of the object.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.put_object(Body=content, Bucket=bucket_name,
Key=object_key)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't put the object %s into bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                object_key,
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def list_objects(self, bucket: str) -> list[str]:
        """
        Lists objects in a bucket.
        :param bucket: The name of the bucket.
        :return: The list of objects in the bucket.
        """
        try:
            response = self.s3_client.list_objects_v2(Bucket=bucket)
            return response.get("Contents", [])
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't list objects in bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                bucket,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def copy_object(
        self,
        source_bucket: str,
        source_key: str,
        destination_bucket: str,
        destination_key: str,
    ) -> None:
        """
        Copies an object from one bucket to another.
        :param source_bucket: The source bucket.
        :param source_key: The source key.
        :param destination_bucket: The destination bucket.
```

```
        :param destination_key: The destination key.
        :return: None
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.copy_object(
                CopySource={"Bucket": source_bucket, "Key": source_key},
                Bucket=destination_bucket,
                Key=destination_key,
            )
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't copy object %s from bucket %s to bucket %s. Here's why:
%s",
                source_key,
                source_bucket,
                destination_bucket,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def create_session(self, bucket_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an express session.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.create_session(Bucket=bucket_name)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the express session for bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_object(self, bucket_name: str, object_key: str) -> None:
        """
        Gets an object from a bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        :param object_key: The key of the object.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.get_object(Bucket=bucket_name, Key=object_key)
```

```
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't get the object %s from bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                object_key,
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObject
  - GetObject
  - ListObjects
  - PutObject

Actions

`CreateSession`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSession`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class S3ExpressWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Express One Zone actions using the client
 interface."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, s3_client: Any) -> None:
        """
        Initializes the S3ExpressWrapper with an S3 client.

        :param s3_client: A Boto3 Amazon S3 client. This client provides low-level
                          access to AWS S3 services.
        """
        self.s3_client = s3_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls) -> "S3ExpressWrapper":
        """
        Creates an S3ExpressWrapper instance with a default s3 client.

        :return: An instance of S3ExpressWrapper initialized with the default S3
client.
        """
        s3_client = boto3.client("s3")
        return cls(s3_client)


    def create_session(self, bucket_name: str) -> None:
        """
        Creates an express session.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.s3_client.create_session(Bucket=bucket_name)
        except ClientError as client_error:
            logging.error(
                "Couldn't create the express session for bucket %s. Here's why: %s",
                bucket_name,
                client_error.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateSession in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

S3 Glacier examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with S3 Glacier.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateVault`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVault`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
```

```
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def create_vault(self, vault_name):
        """
        Creates a vault.

        :param vault_name: The name to give the vault.
        :return: The newly created vault.
        """
        try:
            vault = self.glacier_resource.create_vault(vaultName=vault_name)
            logger.info("Created vault %s.", vault_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create vault %s.", vault_name)
            raise
        else:
            return vault
```

- For API details, see CreateVault in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteArchive`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
```

```
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_archive(archive):
        """
        Deletes an archive from a vault.

        :param archive: The archive to delete.
        """
        try:
            archive.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted archive %s from vault %s.", archive.id, archive.vault_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteArchive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteVault`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVault`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
```

```
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_vault(vault):
        """
        Deletes a vault.

        :param vault: The vault to delete.
        """
        try:
            vault.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete vault %s.", vault.name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVault in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteVaultNotifications`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVaultNotifications`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def stop_notifications(notification):
        """
        Stops notifications to the configured Amazon SNS topic.

        :param notification: The notification configuration to remove.
        """
        try:
            notification.delete()
            logger.info("Notifications stopped.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't stop notifications.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVaultNotifications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource
```

```
    @staticmethod
    def get_job_status(job):
        """
        Gets the status of a job.

        :param job: The job to query.
        :return: The current status of the job.
        """
        try:
            job.load()
            logger.info(
                "Job %s is performing action %s and has status %s.",
                job.id,
                job.action,
                job.status_code,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get status for job %s.", job.id)
            raise
        else:
            return job.status_code
```

- For API details, see DescribeJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetJobOutput`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobOutput`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def get_job_output(job):
        """
        Gets the output of a job, such as a vault inventory or the contents of an
        archive.

        :param job: The job to get output from.
        :return: The job output, in bytes.
        """
        try:
            response = job.get_output()
            out_bytes = response["body"].read()
            logger.info("Read %s bytes from job %s.", len(out_bytes), job.id)
            if "archiveDescription" in response:
                logger.info(
                    "These bytes are described as '%s'",
response["archiveDescription"]
                )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get output for job %s.", job.id)
            raise
        else:
            return out_bytes
```

- For API details, see GetJobOutput in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetVaultNotifications`

The following code example shows how to use `GetVaultNotifications`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def get_notification(vault):
        """
        Gets the currently notification configuration for a vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :return: The notification configuration for the specified vault.
        """
        try:
            notification = vault.Notification()
            logger.info(
                "Vault %s notifies %s on %s events.",
                vault.name,
                notification.sns_topic,
                notification.events,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get notification data for %s.", vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return notification
```

- For API details, see GetVaultNotifications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`InitiateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `InitiateJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve a vault inventory.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def initiate_inventory_retrieval(vault):
        """
        Initiates an inventory retrieval job. The inventory describes the contents
        of the vault. Standard retrievals typically complete within 3–5 hours.
        When the job completes, you can get the inventory by calling get_output().

        :param vault: The vault to inventory.
        :return: The inventory retrieval job.
        """
        try:
            job = vault.initiate_inventory_retrieval()
            logger.info("Started %s job with ID %s.", job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start job on vault %s.", vault.name)
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return job
```

Retrieve an archive from a vault.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def initiate_archive_retrieval(archive):
        """
        Initiates an archive retrieval job. Standard retrievals typically complete
        within 3–5 hours. When the job completes, you can get the archive contents
        by calling get_output().

        :param archive: The archive to retrieve.
        :return: The archive retrieval job.
        """
        try:
            job = archive.initiate_archive_retrieval()
            logger.info("Started %s job with ID %s.", job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start job on archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise
        else:
            return job
```

- For API details, see InitiateJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def list_jobs(vault, job_type):
        """
        Lists jobs by type for the specified vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :param job_type: The type of job to list.
        :return: The list of jobs of the requested type.
        """
        job_list = []
        try:
            if job_type == "all":
                jobs = vault.jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "in_progress":
                jobs = vault.jobs_in_progress.all()
            elif job_type == "completed":
                jobs = vault.completed_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "succeeded":
                jobs = vault.succeeded_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "failed":
                jobs = vault.failed_jobs.all()
```

```
            else:
                jobs = []
                logger.warning("%s isn't a type of job I can get.", job_type)
            for job in jobs:
                job_list.append(job)
                logger.info("Got %s %s job %s.", job_type, job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s jobs from %s.", job_type, vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_list
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListVaults`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVaults`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def list_vaults(self):
        """
        Lists vaults for the current account.
        """
```

```
        try:
            for vault in self.glacier_resource.vaults.all():
                logger.info("Got vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list vaults.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListVaults in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SetVaultNotifications`

The following code example shows how to use `SetVaultNotifications`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def set_notifications(self, vault, sns_topic_arn):
        """
        Sets an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic as a target
        for notifications. Amazon S3 Glacier publishes messages to this topic for
        the configured list of events.

        :param vault: The vault to set up to publish notifications.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the topic that
                              receives notifications.
```

```
        :return: Data about the new notification configuration.
        """
        try:
            notification = self.glacier_resource.Notification("-", vault.name)
            notification.set(
                vaultNotificationConfig={
                    "SNSTopic": sns_topic_arn,
                    "Events": [
                        "ArchiveRetrievalCompleted",
                        "InventoryRetrievalCompleted",
                    ],
                }
            )
            logger.info(
                "Notifications will be sent to %s for events %s from %s.",
                notification.sns_topic,
                notification.events,
                notification.vault_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't set notifications to %s on %s.", sns_topic_arn, vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return notification
```

- For API details, see SetVaultNotifications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UploadArchive`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadArchive`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def upload_archive(vault, archive_description, archive_file):
        """
        Uploads an archive to a vault.

        :param vault: The vault where the archive is put.
        :param archive_description: A description of the archive.
        :param archive_file: The archive file to put in the vault.
        :return: The uploaded archive.
        """
        try:
            archive = vault.upload_archive(
                archiveDescription=archive_description, body=archive_file
            )
            logger.info(
                "Uploaded %s with ID %s to vault %s.",
                archive_description,
                archive.id,
                vault.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't upload %s to %s.", archive_description, vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return archive
```

- For API details, see UploadArchive in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Archive a file, get notifications, and initiate a job

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon S3 Glacier vault.
- Configure the vault to publish notifications to an Amazon SNS topic.
- Upload an archive file to the vault.
- Initiate an archive retrieval job.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps S3 Glacier operations.

```
import argparse
import logging
import os
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    def create_vault(self, vault_name):
```

```
        """
        Creates a vault.

        :param vault_name: The name to give the vault.
        :return: The newly created vault.
        """
        try:
            vault = self.glacier_resource.create_vault(vaultName=vault_name)
            logger.info("Created vault %s.", vault_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create vault %s.", vault_name)
            raise
        else:
            return vault


    def list_vaults(self):
        """
        Lists vaults for the current account.
        """
        try:
            for vault in self.glacier_resource.vaults.all():
                logger.info("Got vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list vaults.")
            raise


    @staticmethod
    def upload_archive(vault, archive_description, archive_file):
        """
        Uploads an archive to a vault.

        :param vault: The vault where the archive is put.
        :param archive_description: A description of the archive.
        :param archive_file: The archive file to put in the vault.
        :return: The uploaded archive.
        """
        try:
            archive = vault.upload_archive(
                archiveDescription=archive_description, body=archive_file
            )
            logger.info(
                "Uploaded %s with ID %s to vault %s.",
```

```
                archive_description,
                archive.id,
                vault.name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't upload %s to %s.", archive_description, vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return archive


    @staticmethod
    def initiate_archive_retrieval(archive):
        """
        Initiates an archive retrieval job. Standard retrievals typically complete
        within 3-5 hours. When the job completes, you can get the archive contents
        by calling get_output().

        :param archive: The archive to retrieve.
        :return: The archive retrieval job.
        """
        try:
            job = archive.initiate_archive_retrieval()
            logger.info("Started %s job with ID %s.", job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start job on archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise
        else:
            return job


    @staticmethod
    def list_jobs(vault, job_type):
        """
        Lists jobs by type for the specified vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :param job_type: The type of job to list.
        :return: The list of jobs of the requested type.
        """
        job_list = []
        try:
```

```
            if job_type == "all":
                jobs = vault.jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "in_progress":
                jobs = vault.jobs_in_progress.all()
            elif job_type == "completed":
                jobs = vault.completed_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "succeeded":
                jobs = vault.succeeded_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "failed":
                jobs = vault.failed_jobs.all()
            else:
                jobs = []
                logger.warning("%s isn't a type of job I can get.", job_type)
            for job in jobs:
                job_list.append(job)
                logger.info("Got %s %s job %s.", job_type, job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s jobs from %s.", job_type, vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_list


    def set_notifications(self, vault, sns_topic_arn):
        """
        Sets an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic as a target
        for notifications. Amazon S3 Glacier publishes messages to this topic for
        the configured list of events.

        :param vault: The vault to set up to publish notifications.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the topic that
                              receives notifications.
        :return: Data about the new notification configuration.
        """
        try:
            notification = self.glacier_resource.Notification("-", vault.name)
            notification.set(
                vaultNotificationConfig={
                    "SNSTopic": sns_topic_arn,
                    "Events": [
                        "ArchiveRetrievalCompleted",
                        "InventoryRetrievalCompleted",
                    ],
                }
```

```
            )
            logger.info(
                "Notifications will be sent to %s for events %s from %s.",
                notification.sns_topic,
                notification.events,
                notification.vault_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't set notifications to %s on %s.", sns_topic_arn, vault.name
            )
            raise
        else:
            return notification
```

Call functions on the wrapper class to create a vault and upload a file, then configure the vault to publish notifications and initiate a job to retrieve the archive.

```
def upload_demo(glacier, vault_name, topic_arn):
    """
    Shows how to:
    * Create a vault.
    * Configure the vault to publish notifications to an Amazon SNS topic.
    * Upload an archive.
    * Start a job to retrieve the archive.

    :param glacier: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
    :param vault_name: The name of the vault to create.
    :param topic_arn: The ARN of an Amazon SNS topic that receives notification of
                      Amazon S3 Glacier events.
    """
    print(f"\nCreating vault {vault_name}.")
    vault = glacier.create_vault(vault_name)
    print("\nList of vaults in your account:")
    glacier.list_vaults()
    print(f"\nUploading glacier_basics.py to {vault.name}.")
    with open("glacier_basics.py", "rb") as upload_file:
        archive = glacier.upload_archive(vault, "glacier_basics.py", upload_file)
    print(
        "\nStarting an archive retrieval request to get the file back from the "
        "vault."
```

```
    )
    glacier.initiate_archive_retrieval(archive)
    print("\nListing in progress jobs:")
    glacier.list_jobs(vault, "in_progress")
    print(
        "\nBecause Amazon S3 Glacier is intended for infrequent retrieval, an "
        "archive request with Standard retrieval typically completes within 3-5 "
        "hours."
    )
    if topic_arn:
        notification = glacier.set_notifications(vault, topic_arn)
        print(
            f"\nVault {vault.name} is configured to notify the "
            f"{notification.sns_topic} topic when {notification.events} "
            f"events occur. You can subscribe to this topic to receive "
            f"a message when the archive retrieval completes.\n"
        )
    else:
        print(
            f"\nVault {vault.name} is not configured to notify an Amazon SNS topic "
            f"when the archive retrieval completes so wait a few hours."
        )
    print("\nRetrieve your job output by running this script with the --retrieve
flag.")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateVault
  - InitiateJob
  - ListJobs
  - ListVaults
  - SetVaultNotifications
  - UploadArchive

Get archive content and delete the archive

The following code example shows how to:

- List jobs for an Amazon S3 Glacier vault and get job status.
- Get the output of a completed archive retrieval job.
- Delete an archive.
- Delete a vault.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps S3 Glacier operations.

```
import argparse
import logging
import os
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


class GlacierWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon S3 Glacier API operations."""

    def __init__(self, glacier_resource):
        """
        :param glacier_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
        """
        self.glacier_resource = glacier_resource


    @staticmethod
    def list_jobs(vault, job_type):
        """
        Lists jobs by type for the specified vault.

        :param vault: The vault to query.
        :param job_type: The type of job to list.
```

```
        :return: The list of jobs of the requested type.
        """
        job_list = []
        try:
            if job_type == "all":
                jobs = vault.jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "in_progress":
                jobs = vault.jobs_in_progress.all()
            elif job_type == "completed":
                jobs = vault.completed_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "succeeded":
                jobs = vault.succeeded_jobs.all()
            elif job_type == "failed":
                jobs = vault.failed_jobs.all()
            else:
                jobs = []
                logger.warning("%s isn't a type of job I can get.", job_type)
            for job in jobs:
                job_list.append(job)
                logger.info("Got %s %s job %s.", job_type, job.action, job.id)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get %s jobs from %s.", job_type, vault.name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_list


    @staticmethod
    def get_job_output(job):
        """
        Gets the output of a job, such as a vault inventory or the contents of an
        archive.

        :param job: The job to get output from.
        :return: The job output, in bytes.
        """
        try:
            response = job.get_output()
            out_bytes = response["body"].read()
            logger.info("Read %s bytes from job %s.", len(out_bytes), job.id)
            if "archiveDescription" in response:
                logger.info(
                    "These bytes are described as '%s'",
response["archiveDescription"]
```

```
                )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get output for job %s.", job.id)
            raise
        else:
            return out_bytes


    @staticmethod
    def delete_archive(archive):
        """
        Deletes an archive from a vault.

        :param archive: The archive to delete.
        """
        try:
            archive.delete()
            logger.info(
                "Deleted archive %s from vault %s.", archive.id, archive.vault_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete archive %s.", archive.id)
            raise


    @staticmethod
    def delete_vault(vault):
        """
        Deletes a vault.

        :param vault: The vault to delete.
        """
        try:
            vault.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted vault %s.", vault.name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete vault %s.", vault.name)
            raise
```

Call functions on the wrapper class to get archive content from a completed job, then delete the archive.

```
def retrieve_demo(glacier, vault_name):
    """
    Shows how to:
    * List jobs for a vault and get job status.
    * Get the output of a completed archive retrieval job.
    * Delete an archive.
    * Delete a vault.

    :param glacier: A Boto3 Amazon S3 Glacier resource.
    :param vault_name: The name of the vault to query for jobs.
    """
    vault = glacier.glacier_resource.Vault("-", vault_name)
    try:
        vault.load()
    except ClientError as err:
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "ResourceNotFoundException":
            print(
                f"\nVault {vault_name} doesn't exist. You must first run this script
 "
                f"with the --upload flag to create the vault."
            )
            return
        else:
            raise

    print(f"\nGetting completed jobs for {vault.name}.")
    jobs = glacier.list_jobs(vault, "completed")
    if not jobs:
        print("\nNo completed jobs found. Give it some time and try again later.")
        return

    retrieval_job = None
    for job in jobs:
        if job.action == "ArchiveRetrieval" and job.status_code == "Succeeded":
            retrieval_job = job
            break
    if retrieval_job is None:
        print(
            "\nNo ArchiveRetrieval jobs found. Give it some time and try again "
            "later."
        )
        return
```

```
    print(f"\nGetting output from job {retrieval_job.id}.")
    archive_bytes = glacier.get_job_output(retrieval_job)
    archive_str = archive_bytes.decode("utf-8")
    print("\nGot archive data. Printing the first 10 lines.")
    print(os.linesep.join(archive_str.split(os.linesep)[:10]))

    print(f"\nDeleting the archive from {vault.name}.")
    archive = glacier.glacier_resource.Archive(
        "-", vault.name, retrieval_job.archive_id
    )
    glacier.delete_archive(archive)

    print(f"\nDeleting {vault.name}.")
    glacier.delete_vault(vault)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - DeleteArchive
  - DeleteVault
  - GetJobOutput
  - ListJobs

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

- Scenarios

Actions

`BatchGetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetSecretValue`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class BatchGetSecretsWrapper:
    def __init__(self, secretsmanager_client):
        self.client = secretsmanager_client


    def batch_get_secrets(self, filter_name):
        """
        Retrieve multiple secrets from AWS Secrets Manager using the
 batch_get_secret_value API.
        This function assumes the stack mentioned in the source code README has been
 successfully deployed.
        This stack includes 7 secrets, all of which have names beginning with
 "mySecret".

        :param filter_name: The full or partial name of secrets to be fetched.
        :type filter_name: str
        """
        try:
            secrets = []
            response = self.client.batch_get_secret_value(
                Filters=[{"Key": "name", "Values": [f"{filter_name}"]}]
            )
            for secret in response["SecretValues"]:
                secrets.append(json.loads(secret["SecretString"]))
            if secrets:
                logger.info("Secrets retrieved successfully.")
```

```
            else:
                logger.info("Zero secrets returned without error.")
            return secrets
        except self.client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException:
            msg = f"One or more requested secrets were not found with filter:
 {filter_name}"
            logger.info(msg)
            return msg
        except Exception as e:
            logger.error(f"An unknown error occurred:\n{str(e)}.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see BatchGetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class GetSecretWrapper:
    def __init__(self, secretsmanager_client):
        self.client = secretsmanager_client


    def get_secret(self, secret_name):
        """
        Retrieve individual secrets from AWS Secrets Manager using the
 get_secret_value API.
        This function assumes the stack mentioned in the source code README has been
 successfully deployed.
        This stack includes 7 secrets, all of which have names beginning with
 "mySecret".
```

```
        :param secret_name: The name of the secret fetched.
        :type secret_name: str
        """
        try:
            get_secret_value_response = self.client.get_secret_value(
                SecretId=secret_name
            )
            logging.info("Secret retrieved successfully.")
            return get_secret_value_response["SecretString"]
        except self.client.exceptions.ResourceNotFoundException:
            msg = f"The requested secret {secret_name} was not found."
            logger.info(msg)
            return msg
        except Exception as e:
            logger.error(f"An unknown error occurred: {str(e)}.")
            raise
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a lending library REST API

The following code example shows how to create a lending library where patrons can borrow and return books by using a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with the Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) API and AWS Chalice to create a REST API backed by an Amazon Aurora database. The web service is fully serverless and represents a simple lending library where patrons can borrow and return books. Learn how to:

- Create and manage a serverless Aurora database cluster.
- Use AWS Secrets Manager to manage database credentials.
- Implement a data storage layer that uses Amazon RDS to move data into and out of the database.

- Use AWS Chalice to deploy a serverless REST API to Amazon API Gateway and AWS Lambda.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the web service.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- Aurora
- Lambda
- Secrets Manager

Amazon SES examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateReceiptFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptFilter`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def create_receipt_filter(self, filter_name, ip_address_or_range, allow):
        """
        Creates a filter that allows or blocks incoming mail from an IP address or
        range.

        :param filter_name: The name to give the filter.
        :param ip_address_or_range: The IP address or range to block or allow.
        :param allow: When True, incoming mail is allowed from the specified IP
                      address or range; otherwise, it is blocked.
        """
        try:
            policy = "Allow" if allow else "Block"
            self.ses_client.create_receipt_filter(
                Filter={
                    "Name": filter_name,
                    "IpFilter": {"Cidr": ip_address_or_range, "Policy": policy},
                }
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created receipt filter %s to %s IP of %s.",
                filter_name,
                policy,
```

```
                ip_address_or_range,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create receipt filter %s.", filter_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateReceiptRule`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptRule`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon S3 bucket where Amazon SES can put copies of incoming emails and create a rule that copies incoming email to the bucket for a specific list of recipients.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def create_bucket_for_copy(self, bucket_name):
        """
        Creates a bucket that can receive copies of emails from Amazon SES. This
        includes adding a policy to the bucket that grants Amazon SES permission
        to put objects in the bucket.
```

```
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to create.
        :return: The newly created bucket.
        """
        allow_ses_put_policy = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "AllowSESPut",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "ses.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "s3:PutObject",
                    "Resource": f"arn:aws:s3:::{bucket_name}/*",
                }
            ],
        }
        bucket = None
        try:
            bucket = self.s3_resource.create_bucket(
                Bucket=bucket_name,
                CreateBucketConfiguration={
                    "LocationConstraint":
self.s3_resource.meta.client.meta.region_name
                },
            )
            bucket.wait_until_exists()
            bucket.Policy().put(Policy=json.dumps(allow_ses_put_policy))
            logger.info("Created bucket %s to receive copies of emails.",
bucket_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create bucket to receive copies of emails.")
            if bucket is not None:
                bucket.delete()
            raise
        else:
            return bucket


    def create_s3_copy_rule(
        self, rule_set_name, rule_name, recipients, bucket_name, prefix
    ):
        """
        Creates a rule so that all emails received by the specified recipients are
        copied to an Amazon S3 bucket.
```

```
        :param rule_set_name: The name of a previously created rule set to contain
                              this rule.
        :param rule_name: The name to give the rule.
        :param recipients: When an email is received by one of these recipients, it
                           is copied to the Amazon S3 bucket.
        :param bucket_name: The name of the bucket to receive email copies. This
                            bucket must allow Amazon SES to put objects into it.
        :param prefix: An object key prefix to give the emails copied to the bucket.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.create_receipt_rule(
                RuleSetName=rule_set_name,
                Rule={
                    "Name": rule_name,
                    "Enabled": True,
                    "Recipients": recipients,
                    "Actions": [
                        {
                            "S3Action": {
                                "BucketName": bucket_name,
                                "ObjectKeyPrefix": prefix,
                            }
                        }
                    ],
                },
            )
            logger.info(
                "Created rule %s to copy mail received by %s to bucket %s.",
                rule_name,
                recipients,
                bucket_name,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create rule %s.", rule_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateReceiptRuleSet`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def create_receipt_rule_set(self, rule_set_name):
        """
        Creates an empty rule set. Rule sets contain individual rules and can be
        used to organize rules.

        :param rule_set_name: The name to give the rule set.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.create_receipt_rule_set(RuleSetName=rule_set_name)
            logger.info("Created receipt rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create receipt rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text + html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def create_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Creates an email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
```

```
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.create_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Created template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create template %s.", name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
```

```
    def delete_identity(self, identity):
        """
        Deletes an identity.

        :param identity: The identity to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_identity(Identity=identity)
            logger.info("Deleted identity %s.", identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete identity %s.", identity)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptFilter`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptFilter`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
```

```
    def delete_receipt_filter(self, filter_name):
        """
        Deletes a receipt filter.

        :param filter_name: The name of the filter to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_receipt_filter(FilterName=filter_name)
            logger.info("Deleted receipt filter %s.", filter_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete receipt filter %s.", filter_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptFilter in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptRule`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptRule`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
```

```
    def delete_receipt_rule(self, rule_set_name, rule_name):
        """
        Deletes a rule.

        :param rule_set_name: The rule set that contains the rule to delete.
        :param rule_name: The rule to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_receipt_rule(
                RuleSetName=rule_set_name, RuleName=rule_name
            )
            logger.info("Removed rule %s from rule set %s.", rule_name,
rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't remove rule %s from rule set %s.", rule_name,
rule_set_name
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRule in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteReceiptRuleSet`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
```

```
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def delete_receipt_rule_set(self, rule_set_name):
        """
        Deletes a rule set. When a rule set is deleted, all of the rules it contains
        are also deleted.

        :param rule_set_name: The name of the rule set to delete.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_receipt_rule_set(RuleSetName=rule_set_name)
            logger.info("Deleted rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text + html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def delete_template(self):
        """
        Deletes an email template.
        """
        try:

self.ses_client.delete_template(TemplateName=self.template["TemplateName"])
            logger.info("Deleted template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"])
            self.template = None
            self.template_tags = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"]
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

DescribeReceiptRuleSet

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeReceiptRuleSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def describe_receipt_rule_set(self, rule_set_name):
        """
        Gets data about a rule set.

        :param rule_set_name: The name of the rule set to retrieve.
        :return: Data about the rule set.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.describe_receipt_rule_set(
                RuleSetName=rule_set_name
            )
            logger.info("Got data for rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for rule set %s.", rule_set_name)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DescribeReceiptRuleSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def get_identity_status(self, identity):
        """
        Gets the status of an identity. This can be used to discover whether
        an identity has been successfully verified.

        :param identity: The identity to query.
        :return: The status of the identity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_identity_verification_attributes(
                Identities=[identity]
            )
            status = response["VerificationAttributes"].get(
                identity, {"VerificationStatus": "NotFound"}
            )["VerificationStatus"]
            logger.info("Got status of %s for %s.", status, identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get status for %s.", identity)
            raise
        else:
            return status
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text + html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)
```

```
    def get_template(self, name):
        """
        Gets a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved email template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_template(TemplateName=name)
            self.template = response["Template"]
            logger.info("Got template %s.", name)
            self._extract_tags(
                self.template["SubjectPart"],
                self.template["TextPart"],
                self.template["HtmlPart"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get template %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.template
```

- For API details, see GetTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def list_identities(self, identity_type, max_items):
        """
        Gets the identities of the specified type for the current account.

        :param identity_type: The type of identity to retrieve, such as
EmailAddress.
        :param max_items: The maximum number of identities to retrieve.
        :return: The list of retrieved identities.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_identities(
                IdentityType=identity_type, MaxItems=max_items
            )
            identities = response["Identities"]
            logger.info("Got %s identities for the current account.",
len(identities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list identities for the current account.")
            raise
        else:
            return identities
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListReceiptFilters`

The following code example shows how to use `ListReceiptFilters`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesReceiptHandler:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES receipt handling functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client, s3_resource):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource


    def list_receipt_filters(self):
        """
        Gets the list of receipt filters for the current account.

        :return: The list of receipt filters.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_receipt_filters()
            filters = response["Filters"]
            logger.info("Got %s receipt filters.", len(filters))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get receipt filters.")
            raise
        else:
            return filters
```

- For API details, see ListReceiptFilters in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTemplates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTemplates`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text + html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def list_templates(self):
        """
        Gets a list of all email templates for the current account.

        :return: The list of retrieved email templates.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_templates()
```

```
            templates = response["TemplatesMetadata"]
            logger.info("Got %s templates.", len(templates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get templates.")
            raise
        else:
            return templates
```

- For API details, see ListTemplates in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesMailSender:
    """Encapsulates functions to send emails with Amazon SES."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def send_email(self, source, destination, subject, text, html, reply_tos=None):
        """
        Sends an email.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.
```

```
        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the body of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the body of the email.
        :param reply_tos: Email accounts that will receive a reply if the recipient
                          replies to the message.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Message": {
                "Subject": {"Data": subject},
                "Body": {"Text": {"Data": text}, "Html": {"Data": html}},
            },
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent mail %s from %s to %s.", message_id, source, destination.tos
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send mail from %s to %s.", source, destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SendTemplatedEmail

The following code example shows how to use `SendTemplatedEmail`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesMailSender:
    """Encapsulates functions to send emails with Amazon SES."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def send_templated_email(
        self, source, destination, template_name, template_data, reply_tos=None
    ):
        """
        Sends an email based on a template. A template contains replaceable tags
        each enclosed in two curly braces, such as {{name}}. The template data
 passed
        in this function contains key-value pairs that define the values to insert
        in place of the template tags.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param template_name: The name of a previously created template.
        :param template_data: JSON-formatted key-value pairs of replacement values
                              that are inserted in the template before it is sent.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Template": template_name,
```

```
            "TemplateData": json.dumps(template_data),
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_templated_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent templated mail %s from %s to %s.",
                message_id,
                source,
                destination.tos,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send templated mail from %s to %s.", source,
 destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see SendTemplatedEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text + html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def update_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Updates a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.update_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Updated template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't update template %s.", name)
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`VerifyDomainIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyDomainIdentity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def verify_domain_identity(self, domain_name):
        """
        Starts verification of a domain identity. To complete verification, you must
        create a TXT record with a specific format through your DNS provider.

        For more information, see *Verifying a domain with Amazon SES* in the
        Amazon SES documentation:
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/DeveloperGuide/verify-domain-
procedure.html

        :param domain_name: The name of the domain to verify.
        :return: The token to include in the TXT record with your DNS provider.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.verify_domain_identity(Domain=domain_name)
```

```
            token = response["VerificationToken"]
            logger.info("Got domain verification token for %s.", domain_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't verify domain %s.", domain_name)
            raise
        else:
            return token
```

- For API details, see VerifyDomainIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`VerifyEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def verify_email_identity(self, email_address):
        """
        Starts verification of an email identity. This function causes an email
        to be sent to the specified email address from Amazon SES. To complete
        verification, follow the instructions in the email.

        :param email_address: The email address to verify.
        """
```

```
        try:
            self.ses_client.verify_email_identity(EmailAddress=email_address)
            logger.info("Started verification of %s.", email_address)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start verification of %s.", email_address)
            raise
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Copy email and domain identities across Regions

The following code example shows how to copy Amazon SES email and domain identities from one AWS Region to another. When domain identities are managed by Route 53, verification records are copied to the domain for the destination Region.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import argparse
import json
import logging
from pprint import pprint
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def get_identities(ses_client):
    """
    Gets the identities for the current Region. The Region is specified in the
    Boto3 Amazon SES client object.
```

```
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The list of email identities and the list of domain identities.
    """
    email_identities = []
    domain_identities = []
    try:
        identity_paginator = ses_client.get_paginator("list_identities")
        identity_iterator = identity_paginator.paginate(
            PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 20}
        )
        for identity_page in identity_iterator:
            for identity in identity_page["Identities"]:
                if "@" in identity:
                    email_identities.append(identity)
                else:
                    domain_identities.append(identity)
        logger.info(
            "Found %s email and %s domain identities.",
            len(email_identities),
            len(domain_identities),
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get identities.")
        raise
    else:
        return email_identities, domain_identities


def verify_emails(email_list, ses_client):
    """
    Starts verification of a list of email addresses. Verification causes an email
    to be sent to each address. To complete verification, the recipient must follow
    the instructions in the email.

    :param email_list: The list of email addresses to verify.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The list of emails that were successfully submitted for verification.
    """
    verified_emails = []
    for email in email_list:
        try:
            ses_client.verify_email_identity(EmailAddress=email)
            verified_emails.append(email)
```

```
            logger.info("Started verification of %s.", email)
        except ClientError:
            logger.warning("Couldn't start verification of %s.", email)
    return verified_emails


def verify_domains(domain_list, ses_client):
    """
    Starts verification for a list of domain identities. This returns a token for
    each domain, which must be registered as a TXT record with the DNS provider for
    the domain.

    :param domain_list: The list of domains to verify.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The generated domain tokens to use to completed verification.
    """
    domain_tokens = {}
    for domain in domain_list:
        try:
            response = ses_client.verify_domain_identity(Domain=domain)
            token = response["VerificationToken"]
            domain_tokens[domain] = token
            logger.info("Got verification token %s for domain %s.", token, domain)
        except ClientError:
            logger.warning("Couldn't get verification token for domain %s.", domain)
    return domain_tokens


def get_hosted_zones(route53_client):
    """
    Gets the Amazon Route 53 hosted zones for the current account.

    :param route53_client: A Boto3 Route 53 client.
    :return: The list of hosted zones.
    """
    zones = []
    try:
        zone_paginator = route53_client.get_paginator("list_hosted_zones")
        zone_iterator = zone_paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 20})
        zones = [
            zone for zone_page in zone_iterator for zone in zone_page["HostedZones"]
        ]
        logger.info("Found %s hosted zones.", len(zones))
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.warning("Couldn't get hosted zones.")
    return zones


def find_domain_zone_matches(domains, zones):
    """
    Finds matches between Amazon SES verified domains and Route 53 hosted zones.
    Subdomain matches are taken when found, otherwise root domain matches are taken.

    :param domains: The list of domains to match.
    :param zones: The list of hosted zones to match.
    :return: The set of matched domain-zone pairs. When a match is not found, the
             domain is included in the set with a zone value of None.
    """
    domain_zones = {}
    for domain in domains:
        domain_zones[domain] = None
        # Start at the most specific sub-domain and walk up to the root domain until
 a
        # zone match is found.
        domain_split = domain.split(".")
        for index in range(0, len(domain_split) - 1):
            sub_domain = ".".join(domain_split[index:])
            for zone in zones:
                # Normalize the zone name from Route 53 by removing the trailing
 '.'.
                zone_name = zone["Name"][:-1]
                if sub_domain == zone_name:
                    domain_zones[domain] = zone
                    break
            if domain_zones[domain] is not None:
                break
    return domain_zones


def add_route53_verification_record(domain, token, zone, route53_client):
    """
    Adds a domain verification TXT record to the specified Route 53 hosted zone.
    When a TXT record already exists in the hosted zone for the specified domain,
    the existing values are preserved and the new token is added to the list.

    :param domain: The domain to add.
    :param token: The verification token for the domain.
    :param zone: The hosted zone where the domain verification record is added.
```

```
    :param route53_client: A Boto3 Route 53 client.
    """
    domain_token_record_set_name = f"_amazonses.{domain}"
    record_set_paginator = route53_client.get_paginator("list_resource_record_sets")
    record_set_iterator = record_set_paginator.paginate(
        HostedZoneId=zone["Id"], PaginationConfig={"PageSize": 20}
    )
    records = []
    for record_set_page in record_set_iterator:
        try:
            txt_record_set = next(
                record_set
                for record_set in record_set_page["ResourceRecordSets"]
                if record_set["Name"][:-1] == domain_token_record_set_name
                and record_set["Type"] == "TXT"
            )
            records = txt_record_set["ResourceRecords"]
            logger.info(
                "Existing TXT record found in set %s for zone %s.",
                domain_token_record_set_name,
                zone["Name"],
            )
            break
        except StopIteration:
            pass
    records.append({"Value": json.dumps(token)})
    changes = [
        {
            "Action": "UPSERT",
            "ResourceRecordSet": {
                "Name": domain_token_record_set_name,
                "Type": "TXT",
                "TTL": 1800,
                "ResourceRecords": records,
            },
        }
    ]
    try:
        route53_client.change_resource_record_sets(
            HostedZoneId=zone["Id"], ChangeBatch={"Changes": changes}
        )
        logger.info(
            "Created or updated the TXT record in set %s for zone %s.",
            domain_token_record_set_name,
```

```
            zone["Name"],
        )
    except ClientError as err:
        logger.warning(
            "Got error %s. Couldn't create or update the TXT record for zone %s.",
            err.response["Error"]["Code"],
            zone["Name"],
        )


def generate_dkim_tokens(domain, ses_client):
    """
    Generates DKIM tokens for a domain. These must be added as CNAME records to the
    DNS provider for the domain.

    :param domain: The domain to generate tokens for.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    :return: The list of generated DKIM tokens.
    """
    dkim_tokens = []
    try:
        dkim_tokens = ses_client.verify_domain_dkim(Domain=domain)["DkimTokens"]
        logger.info("Generated %s DKIM tokens for domain %s.", len(dkim_tokens),
 domain)
    except ClientError:
        logger.warning("Couldn't generate DKIM tokens for domain %s.", domain)
    return dkim_tokens


def add_dkim_domain_tokens(hosted_zone, domain, tokens, route53_client):
    """
    Adds DKIM domain token CNAME records to a Route 53 hosted zone.

    :param hosted_zone: The hosted zone where the records are added.
    :param domain: The domain to add.
    :param tokens: The DKIM tokens for the domain to add.
    :param route53_client: A Boto3 Route 53 client.
    """
    try:
        changes = [
            {
                "Action": "UPSERT",
                "ResourceRecordSet": {
                    "Name": f"{token}._domainkey.{domain}",
```

```
                    "Type": "CNAME",
                    "TTL": 1800,
                    "ResourceRecords": [{"Value": f"{token}.dkim.amazonses.com"}],
                },
            }
            for token in tokens
        ]
        route53_client.change_resource_record_sets(
            HostedZoneId=hosted_zone["Id"], ChangeBatch={"Changes": changes}
        )
        logger.info(
            "Added %s DKIM CNAME records to %s in zone %s.",
            len(tokens),
            domain,
            hosted_zone["Name"],
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.warning(
            "Couldn't add DKIM CNAME records for %s to zone %s.",
            domain,
            hosted_zone["Name"],
        )


def configure_sns_topics(identity, topics, ses_client):
    """
    Configures Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) notifications for
    an identity. The Amazon SNS topics must already exist.

    :param identity: The identity to configure.
    :param topics: The list of topics to configure. The choices are Bounce,
 Delivery,
                   or Complaint.
    :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
    """
    for topic in topics:
        topic_arn = input(
            f"Enter the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the {topic} topic or press "
            f"Enter to skip: "
        )
        if topic_arn != "":
            try:
                ses_client.set_identity_notification_topic(
                    Identity=identity, NotificationType=topic, SnsTopic=topic_arn
```

```
                )
                logger.info("Configured %s for %s notifications.", identity, topic)
            except ClientError:
                logger.warning(
                    "Couldn't configure %s for %s notifications.", identity, topic
                )


def replicate(source_client, destination_client, route53_client):
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        f"Replicating Amazon SES identities and other configuration from "
        f"{source_client.meta.region_name} to
 {destination_client.meta.region_name}."
    )
    print("-" * 88)

    print(f"Retrieving identities from {source_client.meta.region_name}.")
    source_emails, source_domains = get_identities(source_client)
    print("Email addresses found:")
    print(*source_emails)
    print("Domains found:")
    print(*source_domains)

    print("Starting verification for email identities.")
    dest_emails = verify_emails(source_emails, destination_client)
    print("Getting domain tokens for domain identities.")
    dest_domain_tokens = verify_domains(source_domains, destination_client)

    # Get Route 53 hosted zones and match them with Amazon SES domains.
    answer = input(
        "Is the DNS configuration for your domains managed by Amazon Route 53 (y/n)?
 "
    )
    use_route53 = answer.lower() == "y"
    hosted_zones = get_hosted_zones(route53_client) if use_route53 else []
    if use_route53:
        print("Adding or updating Route 53 TXT records for your domains.")
        domain_zones = find_domain_zone_matches(dest_domain_tokens.keys(),
 hosted_zones)
        for domain in domain_zones:
            add_route53_verification_record(
```

```
                domain, dest_domain_tokens[domain], domain_zones[domain],
 route53_client
            )
    else:
        print(
            "Use these verification tokens to create TXT records through your DNS "
            "provider:"
        )
        pprint(dest_domain_tokens)

    answer = input("Do you want to configure DKIM signing for your identities (y/n)?
 ")
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        # Build a set of unique domains from email and domain identities.
        domains = {email.split("@")[1] for email in dest_emails}
        domains.update(dest_domain_tokens)
        domain_zones = find_domain_zone_matches(domains, hosted_zones)
        for domain, zone in domain_zones.items():
            answer = input(
                f"Do you want to configure DKIM signing for {domain} (y/n)? "
            )
            if answer.lower() == "y":
                dkim_tokens = generate_dkim_tokens(domain, destination_client)
                if use_route53 and zone is not None:
                    add_dkim_domain_tokens(zone, domain, dkim_tokens,
 route53_client)
                else:
                    print(
                        "Add the following DKIM tokens as CNAME records through your
 "
                        "DNS provider:"
                    )
                    print(*dkim_tokens, sep="\n")

    answer = input(
        "Do you want to configure Amazon SNS notifications for your identities (y/
n)? "
    )
    if answer.lower() == "y":
        for identity in dest_emails + list(dest_domain_tokens.keys()):
            answer = input(
                f"Do you want to configure Amazon SNS topics for {identity} (y/n)? "
            )
            if answer.lower() == "y":
```

```
                configure_sns_topics(
                    identity, ["Bounce", "Delivery", "Complaint"],
 destination_client
                )

    print(f"Replication complete for {destination_client.meta.region_name}.")
    print("-" * 88)


def main():
    boto3_session = boto3.Session()
    ses_regions = boto3_session.get_available_regions("ses")
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Copies email address and domain identities from one AWS Region
 to "
        "another. Optionally adds records for domain verification and DKIM "
        "signing to domains that are managed by Amazon Route 53, "
        "and sets up Amazon SNS notifications for events of interest."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "source_region", choices=ses_regions, help="The region to copy from."
    )
    parser.add_argument(
        "destination_region", choices=ses_regions, help="The region to copy to."
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    source_client = boto3.client("ses", region_name=args.source_region)
    destination_client = boto3.client("ses", region_name=args.destination_region)
    route53_client = boto3.client("route53")
    replicate(source_client, destination_client, route53_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - ListIdentities
  - SetIdentityNotificationTopic
  - VerifyDomainDkim
  - VerifyDomainIdentity

- VerifyEmailIdentity

Create a web application to track DynamoDB data

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon DynamoDB table and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in Amazon DynamoDB and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in a DynamoDB table.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example in the AWS Code Examples Repository on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon SES

Create an Aurora Serverless work item tracker

The following code example shows how to create a web application that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and uses Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send reports.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a REST service that tracks work items in an Amazon Aurora Serverless database and emails reports by using Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES). This example uses the Flask web framework to handle HTTP routing and integrates with a React webpage to present a fully functional web application.

- Build a Flask REST service that integrates with AWS services.
- Read, write, and update work items that are stored in an Aurora Serverless database.

- Create an AWS Secrets Manager secret that contains database credentials and use it to authenticate calls to the database.
- Use Amazon SES to send email reports of work items.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Aurora
- Amazon RDS
- Amazon RDS Data Service
- Amazon SES

Detect objects in images

The following code example shows how to build an app that uses Amazon Rekognition to detect objects by category in images.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows you how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create a web application that lets you do the following:

- Upload photos to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze and label the photos.
- Use Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) to send email reports of image analysis.

This example contains two main components: a webpage written in JavaScript that is built with React, and a REST service written in Python that is built with Flask-RESTful.

You can use the React webpage to:

- Display a list of images that are stored in your S3 bucket.
- Upload images from your computer to your S3 bucket.
- Display images and labels that identify items that are detected in the image.
- Get a report of all images in your S3 bucket and send an email of the report.

The webpage calls the REST service. The service sends requests to AWS to perform the following actions:

- Get and filter the list of images in your S3 bucket.
- Upload photos to your S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to analyze individual photos and get a list of labels that identify items that are detected in the photo.
- Analyze all photos in your S3 bucket and use Amazon SES to email a report.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Generate credentials to connect to an SMTP endpoint

The following code example shows how to generate credentials to connect to an Amazon SES SMTP endpoint.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
#!/usr/bin/env python3

import hmac
import hashlib
import base64
import argparse

SMTP_REGIONS = [
    "us-east-2",  # US East (Ohio)
    "us-east-1",  # US East (N. Virginia)
    "us-west-2",  # US West (Oregon)
    "ap-south-1",  # Asia Pacific (Mumbai)
    "ap-northeast-2",  # Asia Pacific (Seoul)
    "ap-southeast-1",  # Asia Pacific (Singapore)
    "ap-southeast-2",  # Asia Pacific (Sydney)
    "ap-northeast-1",  # Asia Pacific (Tokyo)
    "ca-central-1",  # Canada (Central)
    "eu-central-1",  # Europe (Frankfurt)
    "eu-west-1",  # Europe (Ireland)
    "eu-west-2",  # Europe (London)
    "eu-south-1",  # Europe (Milan)
    "eu-north-1",  # Europe (Stockholm)
    "sa-east-1",  # South America (Sao Paulo)
    "us-gov-west-1",  # AWS GovCloud (US)
    "us-gov-east-1",  # AWS GovCloud (US)
]

# These values are required to calculate the signature. Do not change them.
DATE = "11111111"
```

```
SERVICE = "ses"
MESSAGE = "SendRawEmail"
TERMINAL = "aws4_request"
VERSION = 0x04


def sign(key, msg):
    return hmac.new(key, msg.encode("utf-8"), hashlib.sha256).digest()


def calculate_key(secret_access_key, region):
    if region not in SMTP_REGIONS:
        raise ValueError(f"The {region} Region doesn't have an SMTP endpoint.")

    signature = sign(("AWS4" + secret_access_key).encode("utf-8"), DATE)
    signature = sign(signature, region)
    signature = sign(signature, SERVICE)
    signature = sign(signature, TERMINAL)
    signature = sign(signature, MESSAGE)
    signature_and_version = bytes([VERSION]) + signature
    smtp_password = base64.b64encode(signature_and_version)
    return smtp_password.decode("utf-8")


def main():
    parser = argparse.ArgumentParser(
        description="Convert a Secret Access Key to an SMTP password."
    )
    parser.add_argument("secret", help="The Secret Access Key to convert.")
    parser.add_argument(
        "region",
        help="The AWS Region where the SMTP password will be used.",
        choices=SMTP_REGIONS,
    )
    args = parser.parse_args()
    print(calculate_key(args.secret, args.region))


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

Verify an email identity and send messages

The following code example shows how to:

- Add and verify an email address with Amazon SES.
- Send a standard email message.
- Create a template and send a templated email message.
- Send a message by using an Amazon SES SMTP server.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Verify an email address with Amazon SES and send messages.

```
def usage_demo():
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Email Service (Amazon SES) email demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    ses_client = boto3.client("ses")
    ses_identity = SesIdentity(ses_client)
    ses_mail_sender = SesMailSender(ses_client)
    ses_template = SesTemplate(ses_client)
    email = input("Enter an email address to send mail with Amazon SES: ")
    status = ses_identity.get_identity_status(email)
    verified = status == "Success"
    if not verified:
        answer = input(
            f"The address '{email}' is not verified with Amazon SES. Unless your "
            f"Amazon SES account is out of sandbox, you can send mail only from "
            f"and to verified accounts. Do you want to verify this account for use "
            f"with Amazon SES? If yes, the address will receive a verification "
            f"email (y/n): "
        )
```

```
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            ses_identity.verify_email_identity(email)
            print(f"Follow the steps in the email to {email} to complete
 verification.")
            print("Waiting for verification...")
            try:
                ses_identity.wait_until_identity_exists(email)
                print(f"Identity verified for {email}.")
                verified = True
            except WaiterError:
                print(
                    f"Verification timeout exceeded. You must complete the "
                    f"steps in the email sent to {email} to verify the address."
                )

    if verified:
        test_message_text = "Hello from the Amazon SES mail demo!"
        test_message_html = "<p>Hello!</p><p>From the <b>Amazon SES</b> mail demo!</
p>"

        print(f"Sending mail from {email} to {email}.")
        ses_mail_sender.send_email(
            email,
            SesDestination([email]),
            "Amazon SES demo",
            test_message_text,
            test_message_html,
        )
        input("Mail sent. Check your inbox and press Enter to continue.")

        template = {
            "name": "doc-example-template",
            "subject": "Example of an email template.",
            "text": "This is what {{name}} will {{action}} if {{name}} can't display
 "
            "HTML.",
            "html": "<p><i>This</i> is what {{name}} will {{action}} if {{name}} "
            "<b>can</b> display HTML.</p>",
        }
        print("Creating a template and sending a templated email.")
        ses_template.create_template(**template)
        template_data = {"name": email.split("@")[0], "action": "read"}
        if ses_template.verify_tags(template_data):
            ses_mail_sender.send_templated_email(
```

```
                email, SesDestination([email]), ses_template.name(), template_data
            )
            input("Mail sent. Check your inbox and press Enter to continue.")

        print("Sending mail through the Amazon SES SMTP server.")
        boto3_session = boto3.Session()
        region = boto3_session.region_name
        credentials = boto3_session.get_credentials()
        port = 587
        smtp_server = f"email-smtp.{region}.amazonaws.com"
        password = calculate_key(credentials.secret_key, region)
        message = """
Subject: Hi there

This message is sent from the Amazon SES SMTP mail demo."""
        context = ssl.create_default_context()
        with smtplib.SMTP(smtp_server, port) as server:
            server.starttls(context=context)
            server.login(credentials.access_key, password)
            server.sendmail(email, email, message)
        print("Mail sent. Check your inbox!")

    if ses_template.template is not None:
        print("Deleting demo template.")
        ses_template.delete_template()
    if verified:
        answer = input(f"Do you want to remove {email} from Amazon SES (y/n)? ")
        if answer.lower() == "y":
            ses_identity.delete_identity(email)
    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

Create functions to wrap Amazon SES identity actions.

```
class SesIdentity:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES identity functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
```

```
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def verify_domain_identity(self, domain_name):
        """
        Starts verification of a domain identity. To complete verification, you must
        create a TXT record with a specific format through your DNS provider.

        For more information, see *Verifying a domain with Amazon SES* in the
        Amazon SES documentation:
            https://docs.aws.amazon.com/ses/latest/DeveloperGuide/verify-domain-
procedure.html

        :param domain_name: The name of the domain to verify.
        :return: The token to include in the TXT record with your DNS provider.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.verify_domain_identity(Domain=domain_name)
            token = response["VerificationToken"]
            logger.info("Got domain verification token for %s.", domain_name)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't verify domain %s.", domain_name)
            raise
        else:
            return token


    def verify_email_identity(self, email_address):
        """
        Starts verification of an email identity. This function causes an email
        to be sent to the specified email address from Amazon SES. To complete
        verification, follow the instructions in the email.

        :param email_address: The email address to verify.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.verify_email_identity(EmailAddress=email_address)
            logger.info("Started verification of %s.", email_address)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't start verification of %s.", email_address)
            raise
```

```
    def wait_until_identity_exists(self, identity):
        """
        Waits until an identity exists. The waiter polls Amazon SES until the
        identity has been successfully verified or until it exceeds its maximum
time.

        :param identity: The identity to wait for.
        """
        try:
            waiter = self.ses_client.get_waiter("identity_exists")
            logger.info("Waiting until %s exists.", identity)
            waiter.wait(Identities=[identity])
        except WaiterError:
            logger.error("Waiting for identity %s failed or timed out.", identity)
            raise


    def get_identity_status(self, identity):
        """
        Gets the status of an identity. This can be used to discover whether
        an identity has been successfully verified.

        :param identity: The identity to query.
        :return: The status of the identity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_identity_verification_attributes(
                Identities=[identity]
            )
            status = response["VerificationAttributes"].get(
                identity, {"VerificationStatus": "NotFound"}
            )["VerificationStatus"]
            logger.info("Got status of %s for %s.", status, identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get status for %s.", identity)
            raise
        else:
            return status


    def delete_identity(self, identity):
        """
        Deletes an identity.
```

```
        :param identity: The identity to remove.
        """
        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_identity(Identity=identity)
            logger.info("Deleted identity %s.", identity)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete identity %s.", identity)
            raise


    def list_identities(self, identity_type, max_items):
        """
        Gets the identities of the specified type for the current account.

        :param identity_type: The type of identity to retrieve, such as
 EmailAddress.
        :param max_items: The maximum number of identities to retrieve.
        :return: The list of retrieved identities.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_identities(
                IdentityType=identity_type, MaxItems=max_items
            )
            identities = response["Identities"]
            logger.info("Got %s identities for the current account.",
 len(identities))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't list identities for the current account.")
            raise
        else:
            return identities
```

Create functions to wrap Amazon SES template actions.

```
class SesTemplate:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SES template functions."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
```

```
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.template = None
        self.template_tags = set()

    def _extract_tags(self, subject, text, html):
        """
        Extracts tags from a template as a set of unique values.

        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The text version of the email.
        :param html: The html version of the email.
        """
        self.template_tags = set(re.findall(TEMPLATE_REGEX, subject + text + html))
        logger.info("Extracted template tags: %s", self.template_tags)


    def create_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Creates an email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.create_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Created template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create template %s.", name)
            raise


    def delete_template(self):
        """
```

```
        Deletes an email template.
        """
        try:

self.ses_client.delete_template(TemplateName=self.template["TemplateName"])
            logger.info("Deleted template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"])
            self.template = None
            self.template_tags = None
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't delete template %s.", self.template["TemplateName"]
            )
            raise


    def get_template(self, name):
        """
        Gets a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template to retrieve.
        :return: The retrieved email template.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.get_template(TemplateName=name)
            self.template = response["Template"]
            logger.info("Got template %s.", name)
            self._extract_tags(
                self.template["SubjectPart"],
                self.template["TextPart"],
                self.template["HtmlPart"],
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get template %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return self.template


    def list_templates(self):
        """
        Gets a list of all email templates for the current account.

        :return: The list of retrieved email templates.
        """
```

```
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.list_templates()
            templates = response["TemplatesMetadata"]
            logger.info("Got %s templates.", len(templates))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get templates.")
            raise
        else:
            return templates


    def update_template(self, name, subject, text, html):
        """
        Updates a previously created email template.

        :param name: The name of the template.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the email.
        :param html: The HTML version of the email.
        """
        try:
            template = {
                "TemplateName": name,
                "SubjectPart": subject,
                "TextPart": text,
                "HtmlPart": html,
            }
            self.ses_client.update_template(Template=template)
            logger.info("Updated template %s.", name)
            self.template = template
            self._extract_tags(subject, text, html)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't update template %s.", name)
            raise
```

Create functions to wrap Amazon SES email actions.

```
class SesDestination:
    """Contains data about an email destination."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, tos, ccs=None, bccs=None):
        """
        :param tos: The list of recipients on the 'To:' line.
        :param ccs: The list of recipients on the 'CC:' line.
        :param bccs: The list of recipients on the 'BCC:' line.
        """
        self.tos = tos
        self.ccs = ccs
        self.bccs = bccs

    def to_service_format(self):
        """
        :return: The destination data in the format expected by Amazon SES.
        """
        svc_format = {"ToAddresses": self.tos}
        if self.ccs is not None:
            svc_format["CcAddresses"] = self.ccs
        if self.bccs is not None:
            svc_format["BccAddresses"] = self.bccs
        return svc_format



class SesMailSender:
    """Encapsulates functions to send emails with Amazon SES."""

    def __init__(self, ses_client):
        """
        :param ses_client: A Boto3 Amazon SES client.
        """
        self.ses_client = ses_client


    def send_email(self, source, destination, subject, text, html, reply_tos=None):
        """
        Sends an email.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param subject: The subject of the email.
        :param text: The plain text version of the body of the email.
```

```
        :param html: The HTML version of the body of the email.
        :param reply_tos: Email accounts that will receive a reply if the recipient
                          replies to the message.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Message": {
                "Subject": {"Data": subject},
                "Body": {"Text": {"Data": text}, "Html": {"Data": html}},
            },
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent mail %s from %s to %s.", message_id, source, destination.tos
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send mail from %s to %s.", source, destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id


    def send_templated_email(
        self, source, destination, template_name, template_data, reply_tos=None
    ):
        """
        Sends an email based on a template. A template contains replaceable tags
        each enclosed in two curly braces, such as {{name}}. The template data
passed
        in this function contains key-value pairs that define the values to insert
        in place of the template tags.

        Note: If your account is in the Amazon SES  sandbox, the source and
        destination email accounts must both be verified.

        :param source: The source email account.
```

```
        :param destination: The destination email account.
        :param template_name: The name of a previously created template.
        :param template_data: JSON-formatted key-value pairs of replacement values
                              that are inserted in the template before it is sent.
        :return: The ID of the message, assigned by Amazon SES.
        """
        send_args = {
            "Source": source,
            "Destination": destination.to_service_format(),
            "Template": template_name,
            "TemplateData": json.dumps(template_data),
        }
        if reply_tos is not None:
            send_args["ReplyToAddresses"] = reply_tos
        try:
            response = self.ses_client.send_templated_email(**send_args)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Sent templated mail %s from %s to %s.",
                message_id,
                source,
                destination.tos,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't send templated mail from %s to %s.", source,
destination.tos
            )
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTemplate
  - DeleteIdentity
  - DeleteTemplate
  - GetIdentityVerificationAttributes
  - GetTemplate

- ListIdentities
- ListTemplates
- SendEmail
- SendTemplatedEmail
- UpdateTemplate
- VerifyDomainIdentity
- VerifyEmailIdentity

Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateContact`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContact`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


            try:
                # Create a new contact
                self.ses_client.create_contact(
                    ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME, EmailAddress=email
                )
                print(f"Contact with email '{email}' created successfully.")
```

```
                # Send the welcome email
                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")
                if self.sleep:
                    # 1 email per second in sandbox mode, remove in production.
                    sleep(1.1)
            except ClientError as e:
                # If the contact already exists, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                    print(f"Contact with email '{email}' already exists.
Skipping...")
                else:
                    raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContactList`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            self.ses_client.create_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            self.ses_client.create_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
            print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' created successfully.")
```

```
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email identity already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
```

```
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            template_content = {
                "Subject": "Weekly Coupons Newsletter",
                "Html": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.html"),
                "Text": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.txt"),
            }
            self.ses_client.create_email_template(
                TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME, TemplateContent=template_content
            )
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the template already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteContactList`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
```

```
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


            try:

 self.ses_client.delete_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' deleted
 successfully.")
            except ClientError as e:
```

```
                # If the email identity doesn't exist, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                    print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' does not exist.")
                else:
                    print(e)
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailTemplate`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
```

```
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_email_template(TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME)
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email template doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListContacts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContacts`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
```

```
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            contacts_response = self.ses_client.list_contacts(
                ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
                return
            else:
                raise e
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sends a message to all members of the contact list.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()




class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
```

```
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")
```

Sends a message to all members of the contact list using a template.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """

    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email_address]},
                    Content={
                        "Template": {
                            "TemplateName": TEMPLATE_NAME,
                            "TemplateData": coupon_items,
                        }
                    },
```

```
                    ListManagementOptions={"ContactListName": CONTACT_LIST_NAME},
                )
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Newsletter scenario

The following code example shows how to run the Amazon SES API v2 newsletter scenario.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def main():
    """
    The main function that orchestrates the execution of the workflow.
    """
    print(INTRO)
    ses_client = boto3.client("sesv2")
    workflow = SESv2Workflow(ses_client)
    try:
        workflow.prepare_application()
        workflow.gather_subscriber_email_addresses()
        workflow.send_coupon_newsletter()
        workflow.monitor_and_review()
    except ClientError as e:
        print_error(e)
    workflow.clean_up()



class SESv2Workflow:
    """
    A class to manage the SES v2 Coupon Newsletter Workflow.
    """
```

```
    def __init__(self, ses_client, sleep=True):
        self.ses_client = ses_client
        self.sleep = sleep


        try:
            self.ses_client.create_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e

            try:
                # Create a new contact
                self.ses_client.create_contact(
                    ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME, EmailAddress=email
                )
                print(f"Contact with email '{email}' created successfully.")

                # Send the welcome email
                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")
                if self.sleep:
                    # 1 email per second in sandbox mode, remove in production.
                    sleep(1.1)
            except ClientError as e:
```

```
                # If the contact already exists, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                    print(f"Contact with email '{email}' already exists.
Skipping...")
                else:
                    raise e

        try:
            contacts_response = self.ses_client.list_contacts(
                ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME
            )
        except ClientError as e:
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
                return
            else:
                raise e

                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email]},
                    Content={
                        "Simple": {
                            "Subject": {
                                "Data": "Welcome to the Weekly Coupons Newsletter"
                            },
                            "Body": {
                                "Text": {"Data": welcome_text},
                                "Html": {"Data": welcome_html},
                            },
                        }
                    },
                )
                print(f"Welcome email sent to '{email}'.")

                self.ses_client.send_email(
                    FromEmailAddress=self.verified_email,
                    Destination={"ToAddresses": [email_address]},
                    Content={
                        "Template": {
                            "TemplateName": TEMPLATE_NAME,
                            "TemplateData": coupon_items,
                        }
                    },
```

```
                    ListManagementOptions={"ContactListName": CONTACT_LIST_NAME},
                )

        try:
            self.ses_client.create_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
            print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email identity already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e

        try:
            template_content = {
                "Subject": "Weekly Coupons Newsletter",
                "Html": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.html"),
                "Text": load_file_content("coupon-newsletter.txt"),
            }
            self.ses_client.create_email_template(
                TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME, TemplateContent=template_content
            )
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' created successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the template already exists, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AlreadyExistsException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' already exists.")
            else:
                raise e

        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_contact_list(ContactListName=CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the contact list doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Contact list '{CONTACT_LIST_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)

            try:

self.ses_client.delete_email_identity(EmailIdentity=self.verified_email)
```

```
                print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' deleted
successfully.")
            except ClientError as e:
                # If the email identity doesn't exist, skip and proceed
                if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                    print(f"Email identity '{self.verified_email}' does not exist.")
                else:
                    print(e)

        try:
            self.ses_client.delete_email_template(TemplateName=TEMPLATE_NAME)
            print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' deleted successfully.")
        except ClientError as e:
            # If the email template doesn't exist, skip and proceed
            if e.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NotFoundException":
                print(f"Email template '{TEMPLATE_NAME}' does not exist.")
            else:
                print(e)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList
  - DeleteEmailIdentity
  - DeleteEmailTemplate
  - ListContacts
  - SendEmail.simple
  - SendEmail.template

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def create_topic(self, name):
        """
```

```
        Creates a notification topic.

        :param name: The name of the topic to create.
        :return: The newly created topic.
        """
        try:
            topic = self.sns_resource.create_topic(Name=name)
            logger.info("Created topic %s with ARN %s.", name, topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create topic %s.", name)
            raise
        else:
            return topic
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_topic(topic):
```

```
        """
        Deletes a topic. All subscriptions to the topic are also deleted.
        """
        try:
            topic.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def list_subscriptions(self, topic=None):
        """
        Lists subscriptions for the current account, optionally limited to a
        specific topic.

        :param topic: When specified, only subscriptions to this topic are returned.
```

```
        :return: An iterator that yields the subscriptions.
        """
        try:
            if topic is None:
                subs_iter = self.sns_resource.subscriptions.all()
            else:
                subs_iter = topic.subscriptions.all()
            logger.info("Got subscriptions.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get subscriptions.")
            raise
        else:
            return subs_iter
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def list_topics(self):
        """
```

```
        Lists topics for the current account.

        :return: An iterator that yields the topics.
        """
        try:
            topics_iter = self.sns_resource.topics.all()
            logger.info("Got topics.")
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get topics.")
            raise
        else:
            return topics_iter
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Publish a message with attributes so that a subscription can filter based on attributes.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
```

```
    def publish_message(topic, message, attributes):
        """
        Publishes a message, with attributes, to a topic. Subscriptions can be
 filtered
        based on message attributes so that a subscription receives messages only
        when specified attributes are present.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param message: The message to publish.
        :param attributes: The key-value attributes to attach to the message. Values
                           must be either `str` or `bytes`.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            att_dict = {}
            for key, value in attributes.items():
                if isinstance(value, str):
                    att_dict[key] = {"DataType": "String", "StringValue": value}
                elif isinstance(value, bytes):
                    att_dict[key] = {"DataType": "Binary", "BinaryValue": value}
            response = topic.publish(Message=message, MessageAttributes=att_dict)
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info(
                "Published message with attributes %s to topic %s.",
                attributes,
                topic.arn,
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

Publish a message that takes different forms based on the protocol of the subscriber.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
```

```
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def publish_multi_message(
        topic, subject, default_message, sms_message, email_message
    ):
        """
        Publishes a multi-format message to a topic. A multi-format message takes
        different forms based on the protocol of the subscriber. For example,
        an SMS subscriber might receive a short version of the message
        while an email subscriber could receive a longer version.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param subject: The subject of the message.
        :param default_message: The default version of the message. This version is
                                sent to subscribers that have protocols that are not
                                otherwise specified in the structured message.
        :param sms_message: The version of the message sent to SMS subscribers.
        :param email_message: The version of the message sent to email subscribers.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            message = {
                "default": default_message,
                "sms": sms_message,
                "email": email_message,
            }
            response = topic.publish(
                Message=json.dumps(message), Subject=subject,
MessageStructure="json"
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published multi-format message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SetSubscriptionAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetSubscriptionAttributes`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def add_subscription_filter(subscription, attributes):
        """
        Adds a filter policy to a subscription. A filter policy is a key and a
        list of values that are allowed. When a message is published, it must have
 an
        attribute that passes the filter or it will not be sent to the subscription.

        :param subscription: The subscription the filter policy is attached to.
        :param attributes: A dictionary of key-value pairs that define the filter.
        """
        try:
            att_policy = {key: [value] for key, value in attributes.items()}
            subscription.set_attributes(
                AttributeName="FilterPolicy", AttributeValue=json.dumps(att_policy)
            )
            logger.info("Added filter to subscription %s.", subscription.arn)
        except ClientError:
```

```
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't add filter to subscription %s.", subscription.arn
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see SetSubscriptionAttributes in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Subscribe

The following code example shows how to use Subscribe.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def subscribe(topic, protocol, endpoint):
        """
        Subscribes an endpoint to the topic. Some endpoint types, such as email,
        must be confirmed before their subscriptions are active. When a subscription
        is not confirmed, its Amazon Resource Number (ARN) is set to
        'PendingConfirmation'.

        :param topic: The topic to subscribe to.
```

```
        :param protocol: The protocol of the endpoint, such as 'sms' or 'email'.
        :param endpoint: The endpoint that receives messages, such as a phone number
                         (in E.164 format) for SMS messages, or an email address for
                         email messages.
        :return: The newly added subscription.
        """
        try:
            subscription = topic.subscribe(
                Protocol=protocol, Endpoint=endpoint, ReturnSubscriptionArn=True
            )
            logger.info("Subscribed %s %s to topic %s.", protocol, endpoint,
topic.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception(
                "Couldn't subscribe %s %s to topic %s.", protocol, endpoint,
topic.arn
            )
            raise
        else:
            return subscription
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
```

```
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    @staticmethod
    def delete_subscription(subscription):
        """
        Unsubscribes and deletes a subscription.
        """
        try:
            subscription.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted subscription %s.", subscription.arn)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete subscription %s.", subscription.arn)
            raise
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Create and publish to a FIFO topic

The following code example shows how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, subscribe Amazon SQS FIFO and standard queues to the topic, and publish a message to the topic.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to subscribe queues to a FIFO topic."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the `Subscribe queues to a FIFO topic` demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    sns = boto3.resource("sns")
    sqs = boto3.resource("sqs")
    fifo_topic_wrapper = FifoTopicWrapper(sns)
    sns_wrapper = SnsWrapper(sns)

    prefix = "sqs-subscribe-demo-"
    queues = set()
    subscriptions = set()
```

```
    wholesale_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "wholesale.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(wholesale_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {wholesale_queue.url}.")

    retail_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "retail.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(retail_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {retail_queue.url}.")

    analytics_queue = sqs.create_queue(QueueName=prefix + "analytics",
Attributes={})
    queues.add(analytics_queue)
    print(f"Created standard queue with URL: {analytics_queue.url}.")

    topic = fifo_topic_wrapper.create_fifo_topic("price-updates-topic.fifo")
    print(f"Created FIFO topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.add_access_policy(q, topic.attributes["TopicArn"])

    print(f"Added access policies for topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
        sub = fifo_topic_wrapper.subscribe_queue_to_topic(
            topic, q.attributes["QueueArn"]
        )
        subscriptions.add(sub)
```

```
    print(f"Subscribed queues to topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    input("Press Enter to publish a message to the topic.")

    message_id = fifo_topic_wrapper.publish_price_update(
        topic, '{"product": 214, "price": 79.99}', "Consumables"
    )

    print(f"Published price update with message ID: {message_id}.")

    # Clean up the subscriptions, queues, and topic.
    input("Press Enter to clean up resources.")
    for s in subscriptions:
        sns_wrapper.delete_subscription(s)

    sns_wrapper.delete_topic(topic)

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.delete_queue(q)

    print(f"Deleted subscriptions, queues, and topic.")

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)



class FifoTopicWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS FIFO topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource

    def create_fifo_topic(self, topic_name):
        """
        Create a FIFO topic.
        Topic names must be made up of only uppercase and lowercase ASCII letters,
        numbers, underscores, and hyphens, and must be between 1 and 256 characters
 long.
        For a FIFO topic, the name must end with the .fifo suffix.
```

```
        :param topic_name: The name for the topic.
        :return: The new topic.
        """
        try:
            topic = self.sns_resource.create_topic(
                Name=topic_name,
                Attributes={
                    "FifoTopic": str(True),
                    "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(False),
                    "FifoThroughputScope": "MessageGroup",
                },
            )
            logger.info("Created FIFO topic with name=%s.", topic_name)
            return topic
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create topic with name=%s!", topic_name)
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def add_access_policy(queue, topic_arn):
        """
        Add the necessary access policy to a queue, so
        it can receive messages from a topic.

        :param queue: The queue resource.
        :param topic_arn: The ARN of the topic.
        :return: None.
        """
        try:
            queue.set_attributes(
                Attributes={
                    "Policy": json.dumps(
                        {
                            "Version": "2012-10-17",
                            "Statement": [
                                {
                                    "Sid": "test-sid",
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {"AWS": "*"},
                                    "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": queue.attributes["QueueArn"],
                                    "Condition": {
```

```
                                        "ArnLike": {"aws:SourceArn": topic_arn}
                                    },
                                }
                            ],
                        }
                    )
                }
            )
            logger.info("Added trust policy to the queue.")
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add trust policy to the queue!")
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def subscribe_queue_to_topic(topic, queue_arn):
        """
        Subscribe a queue to a topic.

        :param topic: The topic resource.
        :param queue_arn: The ARN of the queue.
        :return: The subscription resource.
        """
        try:
            subscription = topic.subscribe(
                Protocol="sqs",
                Endpoint=queue_arn,
            )
            logger.info("The queue is subscribed to the topic.")
            return subscription
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't subscribe queue to topic!")
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def publish_price_update(topic, payload, group_id):
        """
        Compose and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param payload: The message to publish.
        :param group_id: The group ID for the message.
        :return: The ID of the message.
```

```
        """
        try:
            att_dict = {"business": {"DataType": "String", "StringValue":
"wholesale"}}
            dedup_id = uuid.uuid4()
            response = topic.publish(
                Subject="Price Update",
                Message=payload,
                MessageAttributes=att_dict,
                MessageGroupId=group_id,
                MessageDeduplicationId=str(dedup_id),
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise error
        return message_id


    @staticmethod
    def delete_queue(queue):
        """
        Removes an SQS queue. When run against an AWS account, it can take up to
        60 seconds before the queue is actually deleted.

        :param queue: The queue to delete.
        :return: None
        """
        try:
            queue.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted queue with URL=%s.", queue.url)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete queue with URL=%s!", queue.url)
            raise error
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish

- Subscribe

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Publish an SMS text message

The following code example shows how to publish SMS messages using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SnsWrapper:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource


    def publish_text_message(self, phone_number, message):
        """
        Publishes a text message directly to a phone number without need for a
        subscription.

        :param phone_number: The phone number that receives the message. This must
be
                             in E.164 format. For example, a United States phone
                             number might be +12065550101.
        :param message: The message to send.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            response = self.sns_resource.meta.client.publish(
                PhoneNumber=phone_number, Message=message
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published message to %s.", phone_number)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to %s.", phone_number)
            raise
        else:
            return message_id
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Use API Gateway to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by Amazon API Gateway.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to create and use an Amazon API Gateway REST API that targets an AWS Lambda function. The Lambda handler demonstrates how to route based on HTTP methods; how to get data from the query string, header, and body; and how to return a JSON response.

- Deploy a Lambda function.
- Create an API Gateway REST API.
- Create a REST resource that targets the Lambda function.
- Grant permission to let API Gateway invoke the Lambda function.
- Use the Requests package to send requests to the REST API.
- Clean up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Use scheduled events to invoke a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Lambda function invoked by an Amazon EventBridge scheduled event.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

This example shows how to register an AWS Lambda function as the target of a scheduled Amazon EventBridge event. The Lambda handler writes a friendly message and the full event data to Amazon CloudWatch Logs for later retrieval.

- Deploys a Lambda function.
- Creates an EventBridge scheduled event and makes the Lambda function the target.

- Grants permission to let EventBridge invoke the Lambda function.
- Prints the latest data from CloudWatch Logs to show the result of the scheduled invocations.
- Cleans up all resources created during the demo.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- CloudWatch Logs
- DynamoDB
- EventBridge
- Lambda
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for record in event['Records']:
```

```
        process_message(record)
    print("done")

def process_message(record):
    try:
        message = record['Sns']['Message']
        print(f"Processed message {message}")
        # TODO; Process your record here

    except Exception as e:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise e
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_queue(name, attributes=None):
    """
    Creates an Amazon SQS queue.

    :param name: The name of the queue. This is part of the URL assigned to the
 queue.
    :param attributes: The attributes of the queue, such as maximum message size or
                       whether it's a FIFO queue.
    :return: A Queue object that contains metadata about the queue and that can be
 used
             to perform queue operations like sending and receiving messages.
    """
    if not attributes:
        attributes = {}

    try:
        queue = sqs.create_queue(QueueName=name, Attributes=attributes)
        logger.info("Created queue '%s' with URL=%s", name, queue.url)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create queue named '%s'.", name)
        raise error
    else:
        return queue
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessage`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_message(message):
    """
    Delete a message from a queue. Clients must delete messages after they
    are received and processed to remove them from the queue.

    :param message: The message to delete. The message's queue URL is contained in
                    the message's metadata.
    :return: None
    """
    try:
        message.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted message: %s", message.message_id)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete message: %s", message.message_id)
        raise error
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Delete a batch of messages from a queue in a single request.

    :param queue: The queue from which to delete the messages.
    :param messages: The list of messages to delete.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and failed
             message deletions.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {"Id": str(ind), "ReceiptHandle": msg.receipt_handle}
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.delete_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info("Deleted %s",
 messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle)
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Could not delete %s",
 messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle
                )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete messages from queue %s", queue)
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def remove_queue(queue):
    """
    Removes an SQS queue. When run against an AWS account, it can take up to
    60 seconds before the queue is actually deleted.

    :param queue: The queue to delete.
    :return: None
    """
    try:
        queue.delete()
        logger.info("Deleted queue with URL=%s.", queue.url)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete queue with URL=%s!", queue.url)
        raise error
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_queue(name):
    """
    Gets an SQS queue by name.

    :param name: The name that was used to create the queue.
    :return: A Queue object.
    """
    try:
        queue = sqs.get_queue_by_name(QueueName=name)
        logger.info("Got queue '%s' with URL=%s", name, queue.url)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get queue named %s.", name)
        raise error
    else:
        return queue
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_queues(prefix=None):
    """
    Gets a list of SQS queues. When a prefix is specified, only queues with names
    that start with the prefix are returned.

    :param prefix: The prefix used to restrict the list of returned queues.
    :return: A list of Queue objects.
    """
```

```
    if prefix:
        queue_iter = sqs.queues.filter(QueueNamePrefix=prefix)
    else:
        queue_iter = sqs.queues.all()
    queues = list(queue_iter)
    if queues:
        logger.info("Got queues: %s", ", ".join([q.url for q in queues]))
    else:
        logger.warning("No queues found.")
    return queues
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def receive_messages(queue, max_number, wait_time):
    """
    Receive a batch of messages in a single request from an SQS queue.

    :param queue: The queue from which to receive messages.
    :param max_number: The maximum number of messages to receive. The actual number
                       of messages received might be less.
    :param wait_time: The maximum time to wait (in seconds) before returning. When
                      this number is greater than zero, long polling is used. This
                      can result in reduced costs and fewer false empty responses.
    :return: The list of Message objects received. These each contain the body
             of the message and metadata and custom attributes.
    """
```

```
    try:
        messages = queue.receive_messages(
            MessageAttributeNames=["All"],
            MaxNumberOfMessages=max_number,
            WaitTimeSeconds=wait_time,
        )
        for msg in messages:
            logger.info("Received message: %s: %s", msg.message_id, msg.body)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't receive messages from queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return messages
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SendMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessage`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def send_message(queue, message_body, message_attributes=None):
    """
    Send a message to an Amazon SQS queue.

    :param queue: The queue that receives the message.
    :param message_body: The body text of the message.
    :param message_attributes: Custom attributes of the message. These are key-value
                               pairs that can be whatever you want.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the assigned message ID.
    """
```

```
    if not message_attributes:
        message_attributes = {}

    try:
        response = queue.send_message(
            MessageBody=message_body, MessageAttributes=message_attributes
        )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Send message failed: %s", message_body)
        raise error
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`SendMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessageBatch`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def send_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Send a batch of messages in a single request to an SQS queue.
    This request may return overall success even when some messages were not sent.
    The caller must inspect the Successful and Failed lists in the response and
    resend any failed messages.

    :param queue: The queue to receive the messages.
    :param messages: The messages to send to the queue. These are simplified to
                     contain only the message body and attributes.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and failed
```

```
            messages.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {
                "Id": str(ind),
                "MessageBody": msg["body"],
                "MessageAttributes": msg["attributes"],
            }
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.send_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info(
                    "Message sent: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Failed to send: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Send messages failed to queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a messenger application

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.

- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Create and publish to a FIFO topic

The following code example shows how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SNS FIFO topic, subscribe Amazon SQS FIFO and standard queues to the topic, and publish a message to the topic.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to subscribe queues to a FIFO topic."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the `Subscribe queues to a FIFO topic` demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    sns = boto3.resource("sns")
    sqs = boto3.resource("sqs")
    fifo_topic_wrapper = FifoTopicWrapper(sns)
```

```
    sns_wrapper = SnsWrapper(sns)

    prefix = "sqs-subscribe-demo-"
    queues = set()
    subscriptions = set()

    wholesale_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "wholesale.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(wholesale_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {wholesale_queue.url}.")

    retail_queue = sqs.create_queue(
        QueueName=prefix + "retail.fifo",
        Attributes={
            "MaximumMessageSize": str(4096),
            "ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds": str(10),
            "VisibilityTimeout": str(300),
            "FifoQueue": str(True),
            "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(True),
        },
    )
    queues.add(retail_queue)
    print(f"Created FIFO queue with URL: {retail_queue.url}.")

    analytics_queue = sqs.create_queue(QueueName=prefix + "analytics",
Attributes={})
    queues.add(analytics_queue)
    print(f"Created standard queue with URL: {analytics_queue.url}.")

    topic = fifo_topic_wrapper.create_fifo_topic("price-updates-topic.fifo")
    print(f"Created FIFO topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.add_access_policy(q, topic.attributes["TopicArn"])

    print(f"Added access policies for topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")
```

```
    for q in queues:
        sub = fifo_topic_wrapper.subscribe_queue_to_topic(
            topic, q.attributes["QueueArn"]
        )
        subscriptions.add(sub)

    print(f"Subscribed queues to topic: {topic.attributes['TopicArn']}.")

    input("Press Enter to publish a message to the topic.")

    message_id = fifo_topic_wrapper.publish_price_update(
        topic, '{"product": 214, "price": 79.99}', "Consumables"
    )

    print(f"Published price update with message ID: {message_id}.")

    # Clean up the subscriptions, queues, and topic.
    input("Press Enter to clean up resources.")
    for s in subscriptions:
        sns_wrapper.delete_subscription(s)

    sns_wrapper.delete_topic(topic)

    for q in queues:
        fifo_topic_wrapper.delete_queue(q)

    print(f"Deleted subscriptions, queues, and topic.")

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)



class FifoTopicWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Amazon SNS FIFO topic and subscription functions."""

    def __init__(self, sns_resource):
        """
        :param sns_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SNS resource.
        """
        self.sns_resource = sns_resource

    def create_fifo_topic(self, topic_name):
```

```
        """
        Create a FIFO topic.
        Topic names must be made up of only uppercase and lowercase ASCII letters,
        numbers, underscores, and hyphens, and must be between 1 and 256 characters
long.
        For a FIFO topic, the name must end with the .fifo suffix.

        :param topic_name: The name for the topic.
        :return: The new topic.
        """
        try:
            topic = self.sns_resource.create_topic(
                Name=topic_name,
                Attributes={
                    "FifoTopic": str(True),
                    "ContentBasedDeduplication": str(False),
                    "FifoThroughputScope": "MessageGroup",
                },
            )
            logger.info("Created FIFO topic with name=%s.", topic_name)
            return topic
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't create topic with name=%s!", topic_name)
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def add_access_policy(queue, topic_arn):
        """
        Add the necessary access policy to a queue, so
        it can receive messages from a topic.

        :param queue: The queue resource.
        :param topic_arn: The ARN of the topic.
        :return: None.
        """
        try:
            queue.set_attributes(
                Attributes={
                    "Policy": json.dumps(
                        {
                            "Version": "2012-10-17",
                            "Statement": [
                                {
```

```
                                    "Sid": "test-sid",
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {"AWS": "*"},
                                    "Action": "SQS:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": queue.attributes["QueueArn"],
                                    "Condition": {
                                        "ArnLike": {"aws:SourceArn": topic_arn}
                                    },
                                }
                            ],
                        }
                    )
                }
            )
            logger.info("Added trust policy to the queue.")
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't add trust policy to the queue!")
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def subscribe_queue_to_topic(topic, queue_arn):
        """
        Subscribe a queue to a topic.

        :param topic: The topic resource.
        :param queue_arn: The ARN of the queue.
        :return: The subscription resource.
        """
        try:
            subscription = topic.subscribe(
                Protocol="sqs",
                Endpoint=queue_arn,
            )
            logger.info("The queue is subscribed to the topic.")
            return subscription
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't subscribe queue to topic!")
            raise error


    @staticmethod
    def publish_price_update(topic, payload, group_id):
        """
```

```
        Compose and publish a message that updates the wholesale price.

        :param topic: The topic to publish to.
        :param payload: The message to publish.
        :param group_id: The group ID for the message.
        :return: The ID of the message.
        """
        try:
            att_dict = {"business": {"DataType": "String", "StringValue":
"wholesale"}}
            dedup_id = uuid.uuid4()
            response = topic.publish(
                Subject="Price Update",
                Message=payload,
                MessageAttributes=att_dict,
                MessageGroupId=group_id,
                MessageDeduplicationId=str(dedup_id),
            )
            message_id = response["MessageId"]
            logger.info("Published message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't publish message to topic %s.", topic.arn)
            raise error
        return message_id


    @staticmethod
    def delete_queue(queue):
        """
        Removes an SQS queue. When run against an AWS account, it can take up to
        60 seconds before the queue is actually deleted.

        :param queue: The queue to delete.
        :return: None
        """
        try:
            queue.delete()
            logger.info("Deleted queue with URL=%s.", queue.url)
        except ClientError as error:
            logger.exception("Couldn't delete queue with URL=%s!", queue.url)
            raise error
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Detect people and objects in a video

The following code example shows how to detect people and objects in a video with Amazon Rekognition.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Use Amazon Rekognition to detect faces, objects, and people in videos by starting asynchronous detection jobs. This example also configures Amazon Rekognition to notify an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when jobs complete and subscribes an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue to the topic. When the queue receives a message about a job, the job is retrieved and the results are output.

This example is best viewed on GitHub. For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SES
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS

Send and receive batches of messages

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon SQS queue.
- Send batches of messages to the queue.
- Receive batches of messages from the queue.

- Delete batches of messages from the queue.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create functions to wrap Amazon SQS message functions.

```
import logging
import sys

import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

import queue_wrapper

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)
sqs = boto3.resource("sqs")

def send_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Send a batch of messages in a single request to an SQS queue.
    This request may return overall success even when some messages were not sent.
    The caller must inspect the Successful and Failed lists in the response and
    resend any failed messages.

    :param queue: The queue to receive the messages.
    :param messages: The messages to send to the queue. These are simplified to
                     contain only the message body and attributes.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and failed
             messages.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {
                "Id": str(ind),
                "MessageBody": msg["body"],
                "MessageAttributes": msg["attributes"],
```

```
            }
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.send_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info(
                    "Message sent: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Failed to send: %s: %s",
                    msg_meta["MessageId"],
                    messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])]["body"],
                )
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Send messages failed to queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return response



def receive_messages(queue, max_number, wait_time):
    """
    Receive a batch of messages in a single request from an SQS queue.

    :param queue: The queue from which to receive messages.
    :param max_number: The maximum number of messages to receive. The actual number
                       of messages received might be less.
    :param wait_time: The maximum time to wait (in seconds) before returning. When
                      this number is greater than zero, long polling is used. This
                      can result in reduced costs and fewer false empty responses.
    :return: The list of Message objects received. These each contain the body
             of the message and metadata and custom attributes.
    """
    try:
        messages = queue.receive_messages(
            MessageAttributeNames=["All"],
            MaxNumberOfMessages=max_number,
            WaitTimeSeconds=wait_time,
```

```
        )
        for msg in messages:
            logger.info("Received message: %s: %s", msg.message_id, msg.body)
    except ClientError as error:
        logger.exception("Couldn't receive messages from queue: %s", queue)
        raise error
    else:
        return messages



def delete_messages(queue, messages):
    """
    Delete a batch of messages from a queue in a single request.

    :param queue: The queue from which to delete the messages.
    :param messages: The list of messages to delete.
    :return: The response from SQS that contains the list of successful and failed
             message deletions.
    """
    try:
        entries = [
            {"Id": str(ind), "ReceiptHandle": msg.receipt_handle}
            for ind, msg in enumerate(messages)
        ]
        response = queue.delete_messages(Entries=entries)
        if "Successful" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Successful"]:
                logger.info("Deleted %s",
 messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle)
        if "Failed" in response:
            for msg_meta in response["Failed"]:
                logger.warning(
                    "Could not delete %s",
 messages[int(msg_meta["Id"])].receipt_handle
                )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete messages from queue %s", queue)
    else:
        return response
```

Use the wrapper functions to send and receive messages in batches.

```
def usage_demo():
    """
    Shows how to:
    * Read the lines from this Python file and send the lines in
      batches of 10 as messages to a queue.
    * Receive the messages in batches until the queue is empty.
    * Reassemble the lines of the file and verify they match the original file.
    """

    def pack_message(msg_path, msg_body, msg_line):
        return {
            "body": msg_body,
            "attributes": {
                "path": {"StringValue": msg_path, "DataType": "String"},
                "line": {"StringValue": str(msg_line), "DataType": "String"},
            },
        }

    def unpack_message(msg):
        return (
            msg.message_attributes["path"]["StringValue"],
            msg.body,
            int(msg.message_attributes["line"]["StringValue"]),
        )

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    queue = queue_wrapper.create_queue("sqs-usage-demo-message-wrapper")

    with open(__file__) as file:
        lines = file.readlines()

    line = 0
    batch_size = 10
    received_lines = [None] * len(lines)
    print(f"Sending file lines in batches of {batch_size} as messages.")
    while line < len(lines):
        messages = [
            pack_message(__file__, lines[index], index)
            for index in range(line, min(line + batch_size, len(lines)))
```

```
        ]
        line = line + batch_size
        send_messages(queue, messages)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
    print(f"Done. Sent {len(lines) - 1} messages.")

    print(f"Receiving, handling, and deleting messages in batches of {batch_size}.")
    more_messages = True
    while more_messages:
        received_messages = receive_messages(queue, batch_size, 2)
        print(".", end="")
        sys.stdout.flush()
        for message in received_messages:
            path, body, line = unpack_message(message)
            received_lines[line] = body
        if received_messages:
            delete_messages(queue, received_messages)
        else:
            more_messages = False
    print("Done.")

    if all([lines[index] == received_lines[index] for index in range(len(lines))]):
        print(f"Successfully reassembled all file lines!")
    else:
        print(f"Uh oh, some lines were missed!")

    queue.delete()

    print("Thanks for watching!")
    print("-" * 88)
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - DeleteMessage
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - ReceiveMessage

- SendMessage
- SendMessageBatch

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event, context):
    for message in event['Records']:
        process_message(message)
    print("done")

def process_message(message):
    try:
        print(f"Processed message {message['body']}")
        # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
    except Exception as err:
        print("An error occurred")
        raise err
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Python.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0

def lambda_handler(event, context):
    if event:
        batch_item_failures = []
        sqs_batch_response = {}

        for record in event["Records"]:
            try:
                # process message
            except Exception as e:
                batch_item_failures.append({"itemIdentifier": record['messageId']})

        sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
        return sqs_batch_response
```

Step Functions examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Step Functions.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Step Functions

The following code examples show how to get started using Step Functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3


def hello_stepfunctions(stepfunctions_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Step Functions client and
 list
    the state machines in your account. This list might be empty if you haven't
 created
    any state machines.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions Client object.
    """
    print("Hello, Step Functions! Let's list up to 10 of your state machines:")
    state_machines = stepfunctions_client.list_state_machines(maxResults=10)
    for sm in state_machines["stateMachines"]:
        print(f"\t{sm['name']}: {sm['stateMachineArn']}")
```

```
if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_stepfunctions(boto3.client("stepfunctions"))
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an activity.
- Create a state machine from an Amazon States Language definition that contains the previously created activity as a step.
- Run the state machine and respond to the activity with user input.
- Get the final status and output after the run completes, then clean up resources.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class StateMachineScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using Step
 Functions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, activity, state_machine, iam_client):
        """
        :param activity: An object that wraps activity actions.
        :param state_machine: An object that wraps state machine actions.
        :param iam_client: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) client.
        """
        self.activity = activity
        self.state_machine = state_machine
        self.iam_client = iam_client
        self.state_machine_role = None

    def prerequisites(self, state_machine_role_name):
        """
        Finds or creates an IAM role that can be assumed by Step Functions.
        A role of this kind is required to create a state machine.
        The state machine used in this example does not call any additional
services,
        so it needs no additional permissions.

        :param state_machine_role_name: The name of the role.
        :return: Data about the role.
        """
        trust_policy = {
            "Version": "2012-10-17",
            "Statement": [
                {
                    "Sid": "",
                    "Effect": "Allow",
                    "Principal": {"Service": "states.amazonaws.com"},
                    "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                }
            ],
        }
        try:
            role = self.iam_client.get_role(RoleName=state_machine_role_name)
            print(f"Prerequisite IAM role {state_machine_role_name} already
exists.")
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "NoSuchEntity":
                role = None
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get prerequisite IAM role %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                    state_machine_role_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        if role is None:
            try:
                role = self.iam_client.create_role(
                    RoleName=state_machine_role_name,
                    AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(trust_policy),
                )
            except ClientError as err:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create prerequisite IAM role %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    state_machine_role_name,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        self.state_machine_role = role["Role"]

    def find_or_create_activity(self, activity_name):
        """
        Finds or creates a Step Functions activity.

        :param activity_name: The name of the activity.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the activity.
        """
        print("First, let's set up an activity and state machine.")
        activity_arn = self.activity.find(activity_name)
        if activity_arn is None:
            activity_arn = self.activity.create(activity_name)
            print(
                f"Activity {activity_name} created. Its Amazon Resource Name (ARN)
is "
                f"{activity_arn}."
            )
        else:
            print(f"Activity {activity_name} already exists.")
        return activity_arn

    def find_or_create_state_machine(
        self, state_machine_name, activity_arn, state_machine_file
    ):
```

```
        """
        Finds or creates a Step Functions state machine.

        :param state_machine_name: The name of the state machine.
        :param activity_arn: The ARN of an activity that is used as a step in the
state
                             machine. This ARN is injected into the state machine
                             definition that's used to create the state machine.
        :param state_machine_file: The path to a file containing the state machine
                                   definition.
        :return: The ARN of the state machine.
        """
        state_machine_arn = self.state_machine.find(state_machine_name)
        if state_machine_arn is None:
            with open(state_machine_file) as state_machine_file:
                state_machine_def = state_machine_file.read().replace(
                    "{{DOC_EXAMPLE_ACTIVITY_ARN}}", activity_arn
                )
                state_machine_arn = self.state_machine.create(
                    state_machine_name,
                    state_machine_def,
                    self.state_machine_role["Arn"],
                )
            print(f"State machine {state_machine_name} created.")
        else:
            print(f"State machine {state_machine_name} already exists.")
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Here's some information about state machine {state_machine_name}:")
        state_machine_info = self.state_machine.describe(state_machine_arn)
        for field in ["name", "status", "stateMachineArn", "roleArn"]:
            print(f"\t{field}: {state_machine_info[field]}")
        return state_machine_arn

    def run_state_machine(self, state_machine_arn, activity_arn):
        """
        Run the state machine. The state machine used in this example is a simple
        chat simulation. It contains an activity step in a loop that is used for
user
        interaction. When the state machine gets to the activity step, it waits for
        an external application to get task data and submit a response. This
function
        acts as the activity application by getting task input and responding with
        user input.
```

```
        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine.
        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity used as a step in the state
machine.
        :return: The ARN of the run.
        """
        print(
            f"Let's run the state machine. It's a simplistic, non-AI chat simulator
"
            f"we'll call ChatSFN."
        )
        user_name = q.ask("What should ChatSFN call you? ", q.non_empty)
        run_input = {"name": user_name}
        print("Starting state machine...")
        run_arn = self.state_machine.start(state_machine_arn, json.dumps(run_input))
        action = None
        while action != "done":
            activity_task = self.activity.get_task(activity_arn)
            task_input = json.loads(activity_task["input"])
            print(f"ChatSFN: {task_input['message']}")
            action = task_input["actions"][
                q.choose("What now? ", task_input["actions"])
            ]
            task_response = {"action": action}
            self.activity.send_task_success(
                activity_task["taskToken"], json.dumps(task_response)
            )
        return run_arn

    def finish_state_machine_run(self, run_arn):
        """
        Wait for the state machine run to finish, then print final status and
output.

        :param run_arn: The ARN of the run to retrieve.
        """
        print(f"Let's get the final output from the state machine:")
        status = "RUNNING"
        while status == "RUNNING":
            run_output = self.state_machine.describe_run(run_arn)
            status = run_output["status"]
            if status == "RUNNING":
                print(
                    "The state machine is still running, let's wait for it to
finish."
```

```
                )
                wait(1)
            elif status == "SUCCEEDED":
                print(f"ChatSFN: {json.loads(run_output['output'])['message']}")
            else:
                print(f"Run status: {status}.")

    def cleanup(
        self,
        state_machine_name,
        state_machine_arn,
        activity_name,
        activity_arn,
        state_machine_role_name,
    ):
        """
        Clean up resources created by this example.

        :param state_machine_name: The name of the state machine.
        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine.
        :param activity_name: The name of the activity.
        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity.
        :param state_machine_role_name: The name of the role used by the state
machine.
        """
        if q.ask(
            "Do you want to delete the state machine, activity, and role created for
this "
            "example? (y/n) ",
            q.is_yesno,
        ):
            self.state_machine.delete(state_machine_arn)
            print(f"Deleted state machine {state_machine_name}.")
            self.activity.delete(activity_arn)
            print(f"Deleted activity {activity_name}.")
            self.iam_client.delete_role(RoleName=state_machine_role_name)
            print(f"Deleted role {state_machine_role_name}.")

    def run_scenario(self, activity_name, state_machine_name):
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the AWS Step Functions state machines demo.")
        print("-" * 88)

        activity_arn = self.find_or_create_activity(activity_name)
```

```
        state_machine_arn = self.find_or_create_state_machine(
            state_machine_name,
            activity_arn,
            "../../../resources/sample_files/chat_sfn_state_machine.json",
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        run_arn = self.run_state_machine(state_machine_arn, activity_arn)
        print("-" * 88)
        self.finish_state_machine_run(run_arn)
        print("-" * 88)
        self.cleanup(
            state_machine_name,
            state_machine_arn,
            activity_name,
            activity_arn,
            self.state_machine_role["RoleName"],
        )

        print("-" * 88)
        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
    try:
        stepfunctions_client = boto3.client("stepfunctions")
        iam_client = boto3.client("iam")
        scenario = StateMachineScenario(
            Activity(stepfunctions_client),
            StateMachine(stepfunctions_client),
            iam_client,
        )
        scenario.prerequisites("doc-example-state-machine-chat")
        scenario.run_scenario("doc-example-activity", "doc-example-state-machine")
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps state machine actions.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name, definition, role_arn):
        """
        Creates a state machine with the specific definition. The state machine
assumes
        the provided role before it starts a run.

        :param name: The name to give the state machine.
        :param definition: The Amazon States Language definition of the steps in the
                           the state machine.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that is assumed
by
                         Step Functions when the state machine is run.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created state machine.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_state_machine(
                name=name, definition=definition, roleArn=role_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["stateMachineArn"]


    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find a state machine by name. This requires listing the state machines until
        one is found with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the state machine to search for.
```

```
        :return: The ARN of the state machine if found; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_state_machines")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for state_machine in page.get("stateMachines", []):
                    if state_machine["name"] == name:
                        return state_machine["stateMachineArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list state machines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to look up.
        :return: The retrieved state machine data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def start(self, state_machine_arn, run_input):
        """
        Start a run of a state machine with a specified input. A run is also known
```

```
        as an "execution" in Step Functions.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to run.
        :param run_input: The input to the state machine, in JSON format.
        :return: The ARN of the run. This can be used to get information about the
run,
                 including its current status and final output.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.start_execution(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn, input=run_input
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["executionArn"]


    def describe_run(self, run_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine run, such as its current status or final
output.

        :param run_arn: The ARN of the run to look up.
        :return: The retrieved run data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_execution(
                executionArn=run_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                run_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
        else:
            return response


    def delete(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Delete a state machine and all of its run data.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

Define a class that wraps activity actions.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name):
        """
```

```
        Create an activity.

        :param name: The name of the activity to create.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_activity(name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["activityArn"]


    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find an activity by name. This requires listing activities until one is
found
        with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the activity to search for.
        :return: If found, the ARN of the activity; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_activities")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for activity in page.get("activities", []):
                    if activity["name"] == name:
                        return activity["activityArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list activities. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def get_task(self, activity_arn):
```

```
        """
        Gets task data for an activity. When a state machine is waiting for the
        specified activity, a response is returned with data from the state machine.
        When a state machine is not waiting, this call blocks for 60 seconds.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to get task data for.
        :return: The task data for the activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.get_activity_task(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get a task for activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response


    def send_task_success(self, task_token, task_response):
        """
        Sends a success response to a waiting activity step. A state machine with an
        activity step waits for the activity to get task data and then respond with
        either success or failure before it resumes processing.

        :param task_token: The token associated with the task. This is included in
the
                           response to the get_activity_task action and must be sent
                           without modification.
        :param task_response: The response data from the activity. This data is
                              received and processed by the state machine.
        """
        try:
            self.stepfunctions_client.send_task_success(
                taskToken=task_token, output=task_response
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send task success. Here's why: %s: %s",
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Delete an activity.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_activity(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateActivity
  - CreateStateMachine
  - DeleteActivity
  - DeleteStateMachine
  - DescribeExecution
  - DescribeStateMachine
  - GetActivityTask
  - ListActivities

- ListStateMachines
- SendTaskSuccess
- StartExecution
- StopExecution

Actions

`CreateActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateActivity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name):
        """
        Create an activity.

        :param name: The name of the activity to create.
        :return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_activity(name=name)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Couldn't create activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["activityArn"]
```

- For API details, see CreateActivity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStateMachine`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def create(self, name, definition, role_arn):
        """
        Creates a state machine with the specific definition. The state machine
 assumes
        the provided role before it starts a run.

        :param name: The name to give the state machine.
```

```
        :param definition: The Amazon States Language definition of the steps in the
                           the state machine.
        :param role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that is assumed
 by
                         Step Functions when the state machine is run.
        :return: The ARN of the newly created state machine.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.create_state_machine(
                name=name, definition=definition, roleArn=role_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response["stateMachineArn"]
```

- For API details, see CreateStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteActivity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteActivity`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
```

```
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def delete(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Delete an activity.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_activity(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteActivity in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStateMachine`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def delete(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Delete a state machine and all of its run data.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to delete.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.delete_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DeleteStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeExecution`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    def describe_run(self, run_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine run, such as its current status or final
output.

        :param run_arn: The ARN of the run to look up.
        :return: The retrieved run data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_execution(
                executionArn=run_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe run %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                run_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DescribeExecution in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeStateMachine`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStateMachine`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def describe(self, state_machine_arn):
        """
        Get data about a state machine.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to look up.
        :return: The retrieved state machine data.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.describe_state_machine(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DescribeStateMachine in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetActivityTask`

The following code example shows how to use `GetActivityTask`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def get_task(self, activity_arn):
        """
        Gets task data for an activity. When a state machine is waiting for the
        specified activity, a response is returned with data from the state machine.
        When a state machine is not waiting, this call blocks for 60 seconds.

        :param activity_arn: The ARN of the activity to get task data for.
        :return: The task data for the activity.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.get_activity_task(
                activityArn=activity_arn
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get a task for activity %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                activity_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetActivityTask in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListActivities`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find an activity by name. This requires listing activities until one is
 found
        with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the activity to search for.
        :return: If found, the ARN of the activity; otherwise, None.
        """
```

```
        try:
            paginator = self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_activities")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for activity in page.get("activities", []):
                    if activity["name"] == name:
                        return activity["activityArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list activities. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListActivities in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListStateMachines`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStateMachines`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Find a state machine by name by searching the list of state machines for the account.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client
```

```
    def find(self, name):
        """
        Find a state machine by name. This requires listing the state machines until
        one is found with a matching name.

        :param name: The name of the state machine to search for.
        :return: The ARN of the state machine if found; otherwise, None.
        """
        try:
            paginator =
self.stepfunctions_client.get_paginator("list_state_machines")
            for page in paginator.paginate():
                for state_machine in page.get("stateMachines", []):
                    if state_machine["name"] == name:
                        return state_machine["stateMachineArn"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list state machines. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListStateMachines in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SendTaskSuccess

The following code example shows how to use SendTaskSuccess.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class Activity:
```

```
    """Encapsulates Step Function activity actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def send_task_success(self, task_token, task_response):
        """
        Sends a success response to a waiting activity step. A state machine with an
        activity step waits for the activity to get task data and then respond with
        either success or failure before it resumes processing.

        :param task_token: The token associated with the task. This is included in
the
                           response to the get_activity_task action and must be sent
                           without modification.
        :param task_response: The response data from the activity. This data is
                              received and processed by the state machine.
        """
        try:
            self.stepfunctions_client.send_task_success(
                taskToken=task_token, output=task_response
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send task success. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see SendTaskSuccess in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartExecution`

The following code example shows how to use `StartExecution`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class StateMachine:
    """Encapsulates Step Functions state machine actions."""

    def __init__(self, stepfunctions_client):
        """
        :param stepfunctions_client: A Boto3 Step Functions client.
        """
        self.stepfunctions_client = stepfunctions_client


    def start(self, state_machine_arn, run_input):
        """
        Start a run of a state machine with a specified input. A run is also known
        as an "execution" in Step Functions.

        :param state_machine_arn: The ARN of the state machine to run.
        :param run_input: The input to the state machine, in JSON format.
        :return: The ARN of the run. This can be used to get information about the
 run,
                 including its current status and final output.
        """
        try:
            response = self.stepfunctions_client.start_execution(
                stateMachineArn=state_machine_arn, input=run_input
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't start state machine %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                state_machine_arn,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        else:
```

```
        return response["executionArn"]
```

- For API details, see StartExecution in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a messenger application

The following code example shows how to create an AWS Step Functions messenger application that retrieves message records from a database table.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS Step Functions to create a messenger application that retrieves message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table and sends them with Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS). The state machine integrates with an AWS Lambda function to scan the database for unsent messages.

- Create a state machine that retrieves and updates message records from an Amazon DynamoDB table.
- Update the state machine definition to also send messages to Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
- Start and stop state machine runs.
- Connect to Lambda, DynamoDB, and Amazon SQS from a state machine by using service integrations.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon SQS
- Step Functions

Orchestrate generative AI applications with Step Functions

The following code example shows how to build and orchestrate generative AI applications with Amazon Bedrock and Step Functions.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

The Amazon Bedrock Serverless Prompt Chaining scenario demonstrates how AWS Step Functions, Amazon Bedrock, and https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/agents.html can be used to build and orchestrate complex, serverless, and highly scalable generative AI applications. It contains the following working examples:

- Write an analysis of a given novel for a literature blog. This example illustrates a simple, sequential chain of prompts.
- Generate a short story about a given topic. This example illustrates how the AI can iteratively process a list of items that it previously generated.
- Create an itinerary for a weekend vacation to a given destination. This example illustrates how to parallelize multiple distinct prompts.
- Pitch movie ideas to a human user acting as a movie producer. This example illustrates how to parallelize the same prompt with different inference parameters, how to backtrack to a previous step in the chain, and how to include human input as part of the workflow.
- Plan a meal based on ingredients the user has at hand. This example illustrates how prompt chains can incorporate two distinct AI conversations, with two AI personas engaging in a debate with each other to improve the final outcome.
- Find and summarize today's highest trending GitHub repository. This example illustrates chaining multiple AI agents that interact with external APIs.

For complete source code and instructions to set up and run, see the full project on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Bedrock
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime
- Amazon Bedrock Agents
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime
- Step Functions

AWS STS examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token and use temporary credentials to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.

```
def list_buckets_from_assumed_role_with_mfa(
    assume_role_arn, session_name, mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp, sts_client
):
```

```
    """
    Assumes a role from another account and uses the temporary credentials from
    that role to list the Amazon S3 buckets that are owned by the other account.
    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    The assumed role must grant permission to list the buckets in the other account.

    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that
                            grants access to list the other account's buckets.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual MFA
                              device, this is an ARN.
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the role.
    """
    response = sts_client.assume_role(
        RoleArn=assume_role_arn,
        RoleSessionName=session_name,
        SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number,
        TokenCode=mfa_totp,
    )
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
    print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Listing buckets for the assumed role's account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

GetSessionToken

The following code example shows how to use `GetSessionToken`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get a session token by passing an MFA token and use it to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.

```
def list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp,
 sts_client):
    """
    Gets a session token with MFA credentials and uses the temporary session
    credentials to list Amazon S3 buckets.

    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual MFA
                              device, this is an Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the role.
    """
    if mfa_serial_number is not None:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token(
            SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number, TokenCode=mfa_totp
        )
    else:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token()
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Buckets for the account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Assume an IAM role that requires an MFA token

The following code example shows how to assume a role that requires an MFA token.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create an IAM role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets.
- Create an IAM user that has permission to assume the role only when MFA credentials are provided.
- Register an MFA device for the user.
- Assume the role and use temporary credentials to list S3 buckets.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user, register an MFA device, and create a role that grants permission to list S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role.

```
def setup(iam_resource):
    """
```

```
    Creates a new user with no permissions.
    Creates a new virtual MFA device.
    Displays the QR code to seed the device.
    Asks for two codes from the MFA device.
    Registers the MFA device for the user.
    Creates an access key pair for the user.
    Creates a role with a policy that lets the user assume the role and requires
MFA.
    Creates a policy that allows listing Amazon S3 buckets.
    Attaches the policy to the role.
    Creates an inline policy for the user that lets the user assume the role.

    For demonstration purposes, the user is created in the same account as the role,
    but in practice the user would likely be from another account.

    Any MFA device that can scan a QR code will work with this demonstration.
    Common choices are mobile apps like LastPass Authenticator,
    Microsoft Authenticator, or Google Authenticator.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) resource
                         that has permissions to create users, roles, and policies
                         in the account.
    :return: The newly created user, user key, virtual MFA device, and role.
    """
    user = iam_resource.create_user(UserName=unique_name("user"))
    print(f"Created user {user.name}.")

    virtual_mfa_device = iam_resource.create_virtual_mfa_device(
        VirtualMFADeviceName=unique_name("mfa")
    )
    print(f"Created virtual MFA device {virtual_mfa_device.serial_number}")

    print(
        f"Showing the QR code for the device. Scan this in the MFA app of your "
        f"choice."
    )
    with open("qr.png", "wb") as qr_file:
        qr_file.write(virtual_mfa_device.qr_code_png)
    webbrowser.open(qr_file.name)

    print(f"Enter two consecutive code from your MFA device.")
    mfa_code_1 = input("Enter the first code: ")
    mfa_code_2 = input("Enter the second code: ")
    user.enable_mfa(
```

```
        SerialNumber=virtual_mfa_device.serial_number,
        AuthenticationCode1=mfa_code_1,
        AuthenticationCode2=mfa_code_2,
    )
    os.remove(qr_file.name)
    print(f"MFA device is registered with the user.")

    user_key = user.create_access_key_pair()
    print(f"Created access key pair for user.")

    print(f"Wait for user to be ready.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    role = iam_resource.create_role(
        RoleName=unique_name("role"),
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {"AWS": user.arn},
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                        "Condition": {"Bool": {"aws:MultiFactorAuthPresent": True}},
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    print(f"Created role {role.name} that requires MFA.")

    policy = iam_resource.create_policy(
        PolicyName=unique_name("policy"),
        PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                        "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
                    }
                ],
            }
```

```
        ),
    )
    role.attach_policy(PolicyArn=policy.arn)
    print(f"Created policy {policy.policy_name} and attached it to the role.")

    user.create_policy(
        PolicyName=unique_name("user-policy"),
        PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                        "Resource": role.arn,
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    print(
        f"Created an inline policy for {user.name} that lets the user assume "
        f"the role."
    )

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device, role
```

Show that assuming the role without an MFA token is not allowed.

```
def try_to_assume_role_without_mfa(assume_role_arn, session_name, sts_client):
    """
    Shows that attempting to assume the role without sending MFA credentials results
    in an AccessDenied error.

    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role to assume.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the role.
```

```
    """
    print(f"Trying to assume the role without sending MFA credentials...")
    try:
        sts_client.assume_role(RoleArn=assume_role_arn,
 RoleSessionName=session_name)
        raise RuntimeError("Expected AccessDenied error.")
    except ClientError as error:
        if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
            print("Got AccessDenied.")
        else:
            raise
```

Assume the role that grants permission to list S3 buckets, passing the required MFA token, and show that buckets can be listed.

```
def list_buckets_from_assumed_role_with_mfa(
    assume_role_arn, session_name, mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp, sts_client
):
    """
    Assumes a role from another account and uses the temporary credentials from
    that role to list the Amazon S3 buckets that are owned by the other account.
    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.

    The assumed role must grant permission to list the buckets in the other account.

    :param assume_role_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the role that
                            grants access to list the other account's buckets.
    :param session_name: The name of the STS session.
    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual MFA
                              device, this is an ARN.
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the role.
    """
    response = sts_client.assume_role(
        RoleArn=assume_role_arn,
        RoleSessionName=session_name,
        SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number,
        TokenCode=mfa_totp,
    )
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
```

```
    print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Listing buckets for the assumed role's account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

Destroy the resources created for the demo.

```
def teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device, role):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.

    :param user: The demo user.
    :param role: The demo role.
    """
    for attached in role.attached_policies.all():
        policy_name = attached.policy_name
        role.detach_policy(PolicyArn=attached.arn)
        attached.delete()
        print(f"Detached and deleted {policy_name}.")
    role.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
    for user_pol in user.policies.all():
        user_pol.delete()
        print("Deleted inline user policy.")
    for key in user.access_keys.all():
        key.delete()
        print("Deleted user's access key.")
    for mfa in user.mfa_devices.all():
        mfa.disassociate()
    virtual_mfa_device.delete()
    user.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {user.name}.")
```

Run this scenario by using the previously defined functions.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        f"Welcome to the AWS Security Token Service assume role demo, "
        f"starring multi-factor authentication (MFA)!"
    )
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device, role = setup(iam_resource)
    print(f"Created {user.name} and {role.name}.")
    try:
        sts_client = boto3.client(
            "sts", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id,
 aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
        )
        try_to_assume_role_without_mfa(role.arn, "demo-sts-session", sts_client)
        mfa_totp = input("Enter the code from your registered MFA device: ")
        list_buckets_from_assumed_role_with_mfa(
            role.arn,
            "demo-sts-session",
            virtual_mfa_device.serial_number,
            mfa_totp,
            sts_client,
        )
    finally:
        teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device, role)
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Construct a URL for federated users

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role that grants read-only access to the current account's Amazon S3 resources.
- Get a security token from the AWS federation endpoint.
- Construct a URL that can be used to access the console with federated credentials.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a role that grants read-only access to the current account's S3 resources.

```
def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a role that can be assumed by the current user.
    Attaches a policy that allows only Amazon S3 read-only access.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) instance
                         that has the permission to create a role.
    :return: The newly created role.
    """
    role = iam_resource.create_role(
        RoleName=unique_name("role"),
        AssumeRolePolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Principal": {"AWS": iam_resource.CurrentUser().arn},
                        "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
```

```
    )
    role.attach_policy(PolicyArn="arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/AmazonS3ReadOnlyAccess")
    print(f"Created role {role.name}.")

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return role
```

Get a security token from the AWS federation endpoint and construct a URL that can be used to access the console with federated credentials.

```
def construct_federated_url(assume_role_arn, session_name, issuer, sts_client):
    """
    Constructs a URL that gives federated users direct access to the AWS Management
    Console.

    1. Acquires temporary credentials from AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) that
       can be used to assume a role with limited permissions.
    2. Uses the temporary credentials to request a sign-in token from the
       AWS federation endpoint.
    3. Builds a URL that can be used in a browser to navigate to the AWS federation
       endpoint, includes the sign-in token for authentication, and redirects to
       the AWS Management Console with permissions defined by the role that was
       specified in step 1.

    :param assume_role_arn: The role that specifies the permissions that are
 granted.
                            The current user must have permission to assume the
 role.
    :param session_name: The name for the STS session.
    :param issuer: The organization that issues the URL.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that can assume the role.
    :return: The federated URL.
    """
    response = sts_client.assume_role(
        RoleArn=assume_role_arn, RoleSessionName=session_name
    )
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]
    print(f"Assumed role {assume_role_arn} and got temporary credentials.")
```

```
    session_data = {
        "sessionId": temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        "sessionKey": temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        "sessionToken": temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    }
    aws_federated_signin_endpoint = "https://signin.aws.amazon.com/federation"

    # Make a request to the AWS federation endpoint to get a sign-in token.
    # The requests.get function URL-encodes the parameters and builds the query
string
    # before making the request.
    response = requests.get(
        aws_federated_signin_endpoint,
        params={
            "Action": "getSigninToken",
            "SessionDuration": str(datetime.timedelta(hours=12).seconds),
            "Session": json.dumps(session_data),
        },
    )
    signin_token = json.loads(response.text)
    print(f"Got a sign-in token from the AWS sign-in federation endpoint.")

    # Make a federated URL that can be used to sign into the AWS Management Console.
    query_string = urllib.parse.urlencode(
        {
            "Action": "login",
            "Issuer": issuer,
            "Destination": "https://console.aws.amazon.com/",
            "SigninToken": signin_token["SigninToken"],
        }
    )
    federated_url = f"{aws_federated_signin_endpoint}?{query_string}"
    return federated_url
```

Destroy the resources created for the demo.

```
def teardown(role):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.
```

```
    :param role: The demo role.
    """
    for attached in role.attached_policies.all():
        role.detach_policy(PolicyArn=attached.arn)
        print(f"Detached {attached.policy_name}.")
    role.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {role.name}.")
```

Run this scenario by using the previously defined functions.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(f"Welcome to the AWS Security Token Service federated URL demo.")
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    role = setup(iam_resource)
    sts_client = boto3.client("sts")
    try:
        federated_url = construct_federated_url(
            role.arn, "AssumeRoleDemoSession", "example.org", sts_client
        )
        print(
            "Constructed a federated URL that can be used to connect to the "
            "AWS Management Console with role-defined permissions:"
        )
        print("-" * 88)
        print(federated_url)
        print("-" * 88)
        _ = input(
            "Copy and paste the above URL into a browser to open the AWS "
            "Management Console with limited permissions. When done, press "
            "Enter to clean up and complete this demo."
        )
    finally:
        teardown(role)
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Get a session token that requires an MFA token

The following code example shows how to get a session token that requires an MFA token.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create an IAM role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets.
- Create an IAM user that has permission to assume the role only when MFA credentials are provided.
- Register an MFA device for the user.
- Provide MFA credentials to get a session token and use temporary credentials to list S3 buckets.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user, register an MFA device, and create a role that grants permission to let the user list S3 buckets only when MFA credentials are used.

```
def setup(iam_resource):
    """
    Creates a new user with no permissions.
    Creates a new virtual multi-factor authentication (MFA) device.
    Displays the QR code to seed the device.
    Asks for two codes from the MFA device.
```

```
    Registers the MFA device for the user.
    Creates an access key pair for the user.
    Creates an inline policy for the user that lets the user list Amazon S3 buckets,
    but only when MFA credentials are used.

    Any MFA device that can scan a QR code will work with this demonstration.
    Common choices are mobile apps like LastPass Authenticator,
    Microsoft Authenticator, or Google Authenticator.

    :param iam_resource: A Boto3 AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) resource
                         that has permissions to create users, MFA devices, and
                         policies in the account.
    :return: The newly created user, user key, and virtual MFA device.
    """
    user = iam_resource.create_user(UserName=unique_name("user"))
    print(f"Created user {user.name}.")

    virtual_mfa_device = iam_resource.create_virtual_mfa_device(
        VirtualMFADeviceName=unique_name("mfa")
    )
    print(f"Created virtual MFA device {virtual_mfa_device.serial_number}")

    print(
        f"Showing the QR code for the device. Scan this in the MFA app of your "
        f"choice."
    )
    with open("qr.png", "wb") as qr_file:
        qr_file.write(virtual_mfa_device.qr_code_png)
    webbrowser.open(qr_file.name)

    print(f"Enter two consecutive code from your MFA device.")
    mfa_code_1 = input("Enter the first code: ")
    mfa_code_2 = input("Enter the second code: ")
    user.enable_mfa(
        SerialNumber=virtual_mfa_device.serial_number,
        AuthenticationCode1=mfa_code_1,
        AuthenticationCode2=mfa_code_2,
    )
    os.remove(qr_file.name)
    print(f"MFA device is registered with the user.")

    user_key = user.create_access_key_pair()
    print(f"Created access key pair for user.")
```

```
    print(f"Wait for user to be ready.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    user.create_policy(
        PolicyName=unique_name("user-policy"),
        PolicyDocument=json.dumps(
            {
                "Version": "2012-10-17",
                "Statement": [
                    {
                        "Effect": "Allow",
                        "Action": "s3:ListAllMyBuckets",
                        "Resource": "arn:aws:s3:::*",
                        "Condition": {"Bool": {"aws:MultiFactorAuthPresent": True}},
                    }
                ],
            }
        ),
    )
    print(
        f"Created an inline policy for {user.name} that lets the user list buckets,
 "
        f"but only when MFA credentials are present."
    )

    print("Give AWS time to propagate these new resources and connections.", end="")
    progress_bar(10)

    return user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device
```

Get temporary session credentials by passing an MFA token, and use the credentials to list S3 buckets for the account.

```
def list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(mfa_serial_number, mfa_totp,
 sts_client):
    """
    Gets a session token with MFA credentials and uses the temporary session
    credentials to list Amazon S3 buckets.

    Requires an MFA device serial number and token.
```

```
    :param mfa_serial_number: The serial number of the MFA device. For a virtual MFA
                              device, this is an Amazon Resource Name (ARN).
    :param mfa_totp: A time-based, one-time password issued by the MFA device.
    :param sts_client: A Boto3 STS instance that has permission to assume the role.
    """
    if mfa_serial_number is not None:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token(
            SerialNumber=mfa_serial_number, TokenCode=mfa_totp
        )
    else:
        response = sts_client.get_session_token()
    temp_credentials = response["Credentials"]

    s3_resource = boto3.resource(
        "s3",
        aws_access_key_id=temp_credentials["AccessKeyId"],
        aws_secret_access_key=temp_credentials["SecretAccessKey"],
        aws_session_token=temp_credentials["SessionToken"],
    )

    print(f"Buckets for the account:")
    for bucket in s3_resource.buckets.all():
        print(bucket.name)
```

Destroy the resources created for the demo.

```
def teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device):
    """
    Removes all resources created during setup.

    :param user: The demo user.
    :param role: The demo MFA device.
    """
    for user_pol in user.policies.all():
        user_pol.delete()
        print("Deleted inline user policy.")
    for key in user.access_keys.all():
        key.delete()
        print("Deleted user's access key.")
```

```
    for mfa in user.mfa_devices.all():
        mfa.disassociate()
    virtual_mfa_device.delete()
    user.delete()
    print(f"Deleted {user.name}.")
```

Run this scenario by using the previously defined functions.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Drives the demonstration."""
    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        f"Welcome to the AWS Security Token Service assume role demo, "
        f"starring multi-factor authentication (MFA)!"
    )
    print("-" * 88)
    iam_resource = boto3.resource("iam")
    user, user_key, virtual_mfa_device = setup(iam_resource)
    try:
        sts_client = boto3.client(
            "sts", aws_access_key_id=user_key.id,
 aws_secret_access_key=user_key.secret
        )
        try:
            print("Listing buckets without specifying MFA credentials.")
            list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(None, None, sts_client)
        except ClientError as error:
            if error.response["Error"]["Code"] == "AccessDenied":
                print("Got expected AccessDenied error.")
        mfa_totp = input("Enter the code from your registered MFA device: ")
        list_buckets_with_session_token_with_mfa(
            virtual_mfa_device.serial_number, mfa_totp, sts_client
        )
    finally:
        teardown(user, virtual_mfa_device)
        print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see GetSessionToken in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Support examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Support.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Support

The following code examples show how to get started using Support.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import logging
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError

logger = logging.getLogger(__name__)


def hello_support(support_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Support client and count
    the available services in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
```

```
    and config files.

    :param support_client: A Boto3 Support Client object.
    """
    try:
        print("Hello, AWS Support! Let's count the available Support services:")
        response = support_client.describe_services()
        print(f"There are {len(response['services'])} services available.")
    except ClientError as err:
        if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
            logger.info(
                "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise Support
 "
                "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                "examples."
            )
        else:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't count services. Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


if __name__ == "__main__":
    hello_support(boto3.client("support"))
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Get and display available services and severity levels for cases.
- Create a support case using a selected service, category, and severity level.
- Get and display a list of open cases for the current day.
- Add an attachment set and a communication to the new case.
- Describe the new attachment and communication for the case.
- Resolve the case.
- Get and display a list of resolved cases for the current day.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class SupportCasesScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using AWS
 Support."""

    def __init__(self, support_wrapper):
        """
        :param support_wrapper: An object that wraps AWS Support actions.
        """
        self.support_wrapper = support_wrapper

    def display_and_select_service(self):
        """
        Lists support services and prompts the user to select one.

        :return: The support service selected by the user.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        services_list = self.support_wrapper.describe_services("en")
        print(f"AWS Support client returned {len(services_list)} services.")
        print("Displaying first 10 services:")
```

```
        service_choices = [svc["name"] for svc in services_list[:10]]
        selected_index = q.choose(
            "Select an example support service by entering a number from the
preceding list:",
            service_choices,
        )
        selected_service = services_list[selected_index]
        print("-" * 88)
        return selected_service

    def display_and_select_category(self, service):
        """
        Lists categories for a support service and prompts the user to select one.

        :param service: The service of the categories.
        :return: The selected category.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(
            f"Available support categories for Service {service['name']}
{len(service['categories'])}:"
        )
        categories_choices = [category["name"] for category in
service["categories"]]
        selected_index = q.choose(
            "Select an example support category by entering a number from the
preceding list:",
            categories_choices,
        )
        selected_category = service["categories"][selected_index]
        print("-" * 88)
        return selected_category

    def display_and_select_severity(self):
        """
        Lists available severity levels and prompts the user to select one.

        :return: The selected severity level.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        severity_levels_list = self.support_wrapper.describe_severity_levels("en")
        print(f"Available severity levels:")
        severity_choices = [level["name"] for level in severity_levels_list]
        selected_index = q.choose(
```

```
            "Select an example severity level by entering a number from the
preceding list:",
            severity_choices,
        )
        selected_severity = severity_levels_list[selected_index]
        print("-" * 88)
        return selected_severity

    def create_example_case(self, service, category, severity_level):
        """
        Creates an example support case with the user's selections.

        :param service: The service for the new case.
        :param category: The category for the new case.
        :param severity_level: The severity level for the new case.
        :return: The caseId of the new support case.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Creating new case for service {service['name']}.")
        case_id = self.support_wrapper.create_case(service, category,
severity_level)
        print(f"\tNew case created with ID {case_id}.")
        print("-" * 88)
        return case_id

    def list_open_cases(self):
        """
        List the open cases for the current day.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the open cases for the current day.")
        start_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date())
        end_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date() + timedelta(days=1))
        open_cases = self.support_wrapper.describe_cases(start_time, end_time,
False)
        for case in open_cases:
            print(f"\tCase: {case['caseId']}: status {case['status']}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def create_attachment_set(self):
        """
        Create an attachment set with a sample file.

        :return: The attachment set ID of the new attachment set.
```

```
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Creating attachment set with a sample file.")
        attachment_set_id = self.support_wrapper.add_attachment_to_set()
        print(f"\tNew attachment set created with ID {attachment_set_id}.")
        print("-" * 88)
        return attachment_set_id

    def add_communication(self, case_id, attachment_set_id):
        """
        Add a communication with an attachment set to the case.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case for the communication.
        :param attachment_set_id: The ID of the attachment set to
        add to the communication.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Adding a communication and attachment set to the case.")
        self.support_wrapper.add_communication_to_case(attachment_set_id, case_id)
        print(
            f"Added a communication and attachment set {attachment_set_id} to the
case {case_id}."
        )
        print("-" * 88)

    def list_communications(self, case_id):
        """
        List the communications associated with a case.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        :return: The attachment ID of an attachment.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the communications for our case.")
        attachment_id = ""
        communications =
self.support_wrapper.describe_all_case_communications(case_id)
        for communication in communications:
            print(
                f"\tCommunication created on {communication['timeCreated']} "
                f"has {len(communication['attachmentSet'])} attachments."
            )
            if len(communication["attachmentSet"]) > 0:
                attachment_id = communication["attachmentSet"][0]["attachmentId"]
```

```
        print("-" * 88)
        return attachment_id

    def describe_case_attachment(self, attachment_id):
        """
        Describe an attachment associated with a case.

        :param attachment_id: The ID of the attachment.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the communications for our case.")
        attached_file = self.support_wrapper.describe_attachment(attachment_id)
        print(f"\tAttachment includes file {attached_file}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def resolve_case(self, case_id):
        """
        Shows how to resolve an AWS Support case by its ID.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case to resolve.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print(f"Resolving case with ID {case_id}.")
        case_status = self.support_wrapper.resolve_case(case_id)
        print(f"\tFinal case status is {case_status}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def list_resolved_cases(self):
        """
        List the resolved cases for the current day.
        """
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Let's list the resolved cases for the current day.")
        start_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date())
        end_time = str(datetime.utcnow().date() + timedelta(days=1))
        resolved_cases = self.support_wrapper.describe_cases(start_time, end_time,
True)
        for case in resolved_cases:
            print(f"\tCase: {case['caseId']}: status {case['status']}.")
        print("-" * 88)

    def run_scenario(self):
        logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")
```

```
        print("-" * 88)
        print("Welcome to the AWS Support get started with support cases demo.")
        print("-" * 88)

        selected_service = self.display_and_select_service()
        selected_category = self.display_and_select_category(selected_service)
        selected_severity = self.display_and_select_severity()
        new_case_id = self.create_example_case(
            selected_service, selected_category, selected_severity
        )
        wait(10)
        self.list_open_cases()
        new_attachment_set_id = self.create_attachment_set()
        self.add_communication(new_case_id, new_attachment_set_id)
        new_attachment_id = self.list_communications(new_case_id)
        self.describe_case_attachment(new_attachment_id)
        self.resolve_case(new_case_id)
        wait(10)
        self.list_resolved_cases()

        print("\nThanks for watching!")
        print("-" * 88)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = SupportCasesScenario(SupportWrapper.from_client())
        scenario.run_scenario()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps support client actions.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_services(self, language):
        """
        Get the descriptions of AWS services available for support for a language.

        :param language: The language for support services.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of AWS service descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_services(language=language)
            services = response["services"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get Support services for language %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return services


    def describe_severity_levels(self, language):
        """
```

```
        Get the descriptions of available severity levels for support cases for a
language.

        :param language: The language for support severity levels.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of severity levels.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.support_client.describe_severity_levels(language=language)
            severity_levels = response["severityLevels"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get severity levels for language %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return severity_levels


    def create_case(self, service, category, severity):
        """
        Create a new support case.

        :param service: The service to use for the new case.
        :param category: The category to use for the new case.
        :param severity: The severity to use for the new case.
        :return: The caseId of the new case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.create_case(
```

```
                subject="Example case for testing, ignore.",
                serviceCode=service["code"],
                severityCode=severity["code"],
                categoryCode=category["code"],
                communicationBody="Example support case body.",
                language="en",
                issueType="customer-service",
            )
            case_id = response["caseId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return case_id


    def add_attachment_to_set(self):
        """
        Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does not
exist.

        :return: The attachment set ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.add_attachments_to_set(
                attachments=[
                    {
                        "fileName": "attachment_file.txt",
                        "data": b"This is a sample file for attachment to a support
case.",
                    }
```

```
                ]
            )
            new_set_id = response["attachmentSetId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add attachment. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return new_set_id


    def add_communication_to_case(self, attachment_set_id, case_id):
        """
        Add a communication and an attachment set to a case.

        :param attachment_set_id: The ID of an existing attachment set.
        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        """
        try:
            self.support_client.add_communication_to_case(
                caseId=case_id,
                communicationBody="This is an example communication added to a
support case.",
                attachmentSetId=attachment_set_id,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
```

```
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add communication. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise


    def describe_all_case_communications(self, case_id):
        """
        Describe all the communications for a case using a paginator.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        :return: The communications for the case.
        """
        try:
            communications = []
            paginator = self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_communications")
            for page in paginator.paginate(caseId=case_id):
                communications += page["communications"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe communications. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return communications


    def describe_attachment(self, attachment_id):
```

```
        """
        Get information about an attachment by its attachmentID.

        :param attachment_id: The ID of the attachment.
        :return: The name of the attached file.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_attachment(
                attachmentId=attachment_id
            )
            attached_file = response["attachment"]["fileName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get attachment description. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return attached_file


    def resolve_case(self, case_id):
        """
        Resolve a support case by its caseId.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case to resolve.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.resolve_case(caseId=case_id)
            final_status = response["finalCaseStatus"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
```

```
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't resolve case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return final_status


    def describe_cases(self, after_time, before_time, resolved):
        """
        Describe support cases over a period of time, optionally filtering
        by status.

        :param after_time: The start time to include for cases.
        :param before_time: The end time to include for cases.
        :param resolved: True to include resolved cases in the results,
            otherwise results are open cases.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            cases = []
            paginator = self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_cases")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                afterTime=after_time,
                beforeTime=before_time,
                includeResolvedCases=resolved,
                language="en",
            ):
                cases += page["cases"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
```

```
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe cases. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            if resolved:
                cases = filter(lambda case: case["status"] == "resolved", cases)
            return cases
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - AddAttachmentsToSet
  - AddCommunicationToCase
  - CreateCase
  - DescribeAttachment
  - DescribeCases
  - DescribeCommunications
  - DescribeServices
  - DescribeSeverityLevels
  - ResolveCase

Actions

`AddAttachmentsToSet`

The following code example shows how to use `AddAttachmentsToSet`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def add_attachment_to_set(self):
        """
        Add an attachment to a set, or create a new attachment set if one does not
 exist.

        :return: The attachment set ID.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.add_attachments_to_set(
                attachments=[
                    {
                        "fileName": "attachment_file.txt",
                        "data": b"This is a sample file for attachment to a support
 case.",
                    }
                ]
```

```
            )
            new_set_id = response["attachmentSetId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add attachment. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return new_set_id
```

- For API details, see AddAttachmentsToSet in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`AddCommunicationToCase`

The following code example shows how to use `AddCommunicationToCase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
```

```
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def add_communication_to_case(self, attachment_set_id, case_id):
        """
        Add a communication and an attachment set to a case.

        :param attachment_set_id: The ID of an existing attachment set.
        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        """
        try:
            self.support_client.add_communication_to_case(
                caseId=case_id,
                communicationBody="This is an example communication added to a
support case.",
                attachmentSetId=attachment_set_id,
            )
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't add communication. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
```

- For API details, see AddCommunicationToCase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateCase`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def create_case(self, service, category, severity):
        """
        Create a new support case.

        :param service: The service to use for the new case.
        :param category: The category to use for the new case.
        :param severity: The severity to use for the new case.
```

```
        :return: The caseId of the new case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.create_case(
                subject="Example case for testing, ignore.",
                serviceCode=service["code"],
                severityCode=severity["code"],
                categoryCode=category["code"],
                communicationBody="Example support case body.",
                language="en",
                issueType="customer-service",
            )
            case_id = response["caseId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't create case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return case_id
```

- For API details, see CreateCase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeAttachment`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAttachment`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_attachment(self, attachment_id):
        """
        Get information about an attachment by its attachmentID.

        :param attachment_id: The ID of the attachment.
        :return: The name of the attached file.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_attachment(
                attachmentId=attachment_id
            )
            attached_file = response["attachment"]["fileName"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
```

```
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get attachment description. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return attached_file
```

- For API details, see DescribeAttachment in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeCases`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCases`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_cases(self, after_time, before_time, resolved):
        """
        Describe support cases over a period of time, optionally filtering
        by status.

        :param after_time: The start time to include for cases.
        :param before_time: The end time to include for cases.
        :param resolved: True to include resolved cases in the results,
            otherwise results are open cases.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            cases = []
            paginator = self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_cases")
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                afterTime=after_time,
                beforeTime=before_time,
                includeResolvedCases=resolved,
                language="en",
            ):
                cases += page["cases"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe cases. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
```

```
                raise
        else:
            if resolved:
                cases = filter(lambda case: case["status"] == "resolved", cases)
            return cases
```

- For API details, see DescribeCases in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeCommunications`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeCommunications`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_all_case_communications(self, case_id):
```

```
        """
        Describe all the communications for a case using a paginator.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case.
        :return: The communications for the case.
        """
        try:
            communications = []
            paginator = self.support_client.get_paginator("describe_communications")
            for page in paginator.paginate(caseId=case_id):
                communications += page["communications"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't describe communications. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return communications
```

- For API details, see DescribeCommunications in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeServices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeServices`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_services(self, language):
        """
        Get the descriptions of AWS services available for support for a language.

        :param language: The language for support services.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of AWS service descriptions.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.describe_services(language=language)
            services = response["services"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
 Support "
```

```
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
 subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get Support services for language %s. Here's why: %s:
 %s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return services
```

- For API details, see DescribeServices in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeSeverityLevels`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSeverityLevels`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
```

```
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def describe_severity_levels(self, language):
        """
        Get the descriptions of available severity levels for support cases for a
language.

        :param language: The language for support severity levels.
        Currently, only "en" (English) and "ja" (Japanese) are supported.
        :return: The list of severity levels.
        """
        try:
            response =
self.support_client.describe_severity_levels(language=language)
            severity_levels = response["severityLevels"]
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't get severity levels for language %s. Here's why: %s:
%s",
                    language,
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return severity_levels
```

- For API details, see DescribeSeverityLevels in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ResolveCase`

The following code example shows how to use `ResolveCase`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SupportWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Support actions."""

    def __init__(self, support_client):
        """
        :param support_client: A Boto3 Support client.
        """
        self.support_client = support_client

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        Instantiates this class from a Boto3 client.
        """
        support_client = boto3.client("support")
        return cls(support_client)


    def resolve_case(self, case_id):
        """
        Resolve a support case by its caseId.

        :param case_id: The ID of the case to resolve.
        :return: The final status of the case.
        """
        try:
            response = self.support_client.resolve_case(caseId=case_id)
            final_status = response["finalCaseStatus"]
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            if err.response["Error"]["Code"] == "SubscriptionRequiredException":
                logger.info(
                    "You must have a Business, Enterprise On-Ramp, or Enterprise
Support "
                    "plan to use the AWS Support API. \n\tPlease upgrade your
subscription to run these "
                    "examples."
                )
            else:
                logger.error(
                    "Couldn't resolve case. Here's why: %s: %s",
                    err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                    err.response["Error"]["Message"],
                )
                raise
        else:
            return final_status
```

- For API details, see ResolveCase in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Systems Manager examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Systems Manager.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Systems Manager

The following code examples show how to get started using Systems Manager.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import boto3
from botocore.exceptions import ClientError


def hello_systems_manager(ssm_client):
    """
    Use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to create an AWS Systems Manager
    client and list the first 5 documents in your account.
    This example uses the default settings specified in your shared credentials
    and config files.

    :param ssm_client: A Boto3 AWS Systems Manager Client object. This object wraps
                           the low-level AWS Systems Manager service API.
    """
    print("Hello, AWS Systems Manager! Let's list some of your documents:\n")

    paginator = ssm_client.get_paginator("list_documents")
    page_iterator = paginator.paginate(PaginationConfig={"MaxItems": 5})
    for page in page_iterator:
        for document in page["DocumentIdentifiers"]:
            print(f"  {document['Name']}")


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        hello_systems_manager(boto3.client("ssm"))
    except ClientError as err:
        print("Hello systems manager had an error.")
        print(err.response["Error"]["Code"])
        print(err.response["Error"]["Message"])
```

- For API details, see ListDocuments in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a maintenance window.
- Modify the maintenance window schedule.
- Create a document.
- Send a command to a specified EC2 instance.
- Create an OpsItem.
- Update and resolve the OpsItem.
- Delete the maintenance window, OpsItem, and document.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run an interactive scenario at a command prompt.

```
class SystemsManagerScenario:
    """Runs an interactive scenario that shows how to get started using Amazon
 Systems Manager."""

    def __init__(self, document_wrapper, maintenance_window_wrapper,
 ops_item_wrapper):
        """
        :param document_wrapper: An object that wraps Systems Manager document
 functions.
```

```
        :param maintenance_window_wrapper: An object that wraps Systems Manager
 maintenance window functions.
        :param ops_item_wrapper: An object that wraps Systems Manager OpsItem
 functions.
        """
        self.document_wrapper = document_wrapper
        self.maintenance_window_wrapper = maintenance_window_wrapper
        self.ops_item_wrapper = ops_item_wrapper

    def run(self):
        """Demonstrates how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) to get started
 with Systems Manager."""
        try:
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                """
Welcome to the AWS Systems Manager SDK Getting Started scenario.
This program demonstrates how to interact with Systems Manager using the AWS SDK for
 Python (Boto3).
Systems Manager is the operations hub for your AWS applications and resources and a
 secure end-to-end management
solution. The program's primary functions include creating a maintenance window,
 creating a document, sending a
command to a document, listing documents, listing commands, creating an OpsItem,
 modifying an OpsItem, and deleting
Systems Manager resources. Upon completion of the program, all AWS resources are
 cleaned up.
Let's get started..."""
            )
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            print("-" * 88)
            print("Create a Systems Manager maintenance window.")
            maintenance_window_name = q.ask(
                "Please enter the maintenance window name (default is ssm-
maintenance-window):",
            )
            if not maintenance_window_name:
                maintenance_window_name = "ssm-maintenance-window"

            self.maintenance_window_wrapper.create(
                name=maintenance_window_name,
                schedule="cron(0 10 ? * MON-FRI *)",
                duration=2,
```

```
                cutoff=1,
                allow_unassociated_targets=True,
            )

            print("-" * 88)
            print("Modify the maintenance window by changing the schedule")
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.maintenance_window_wrapper.update(
                name=maintenance_window_name,
                schedule="cron(0 0 ? * MON *)",
                duration=24,
                cutoff=1,
                allow_unassociated_targets=True,
                enabled=True,
            )

            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                "Create a document that defines the actions that Systems Manager
 performs on your EC2 instance."
            )
            document_name = q.ask(
                "Please enter the document name (default is ssmdocument):"
            )

            if not document_name:
                document_name = "ssmdocument"

            self.document_wrapper.create(
                name=document_name,
                content="""
{
    "schemaVersion": "2.2",
    "description": "Run a simple shell command",
    "mainSteps": [
        {
            "action": "aws:runShellScript",
            "name": "runEchoCommand",
            "inputs": {
              "runCommand": [
                "echo 'Hello, world!'"
              ]
            }
```

```
        }
    ]
}
            """,
            )

            self.document_wrapper.wait_until_active()

            print(
                """
Now you have the option of running a command on an EC2 instance that echoes 'Hello,
 world!'.
In order to run this command, you must provide the instance ID of a Linux EC2
 instance. If you do
not already have a running Linux EC2 instance in your account, you can create one
 using the AWS console.
For information about creating an EC2 instance, see
https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AWSEC2/latest/UserGuide/ec2-launch-instance-wizard.html.
            """
            )

            if q.ask(
                "Would you like to run a command on an EC2 instance? (y/n)",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                instance_id = q.ask(
                    "Please enter the instance ID of the EC2 instance:", q.non_empty
                )
                command_id = self.document_wrapper.send_command(
                    instance_ids=[instance_id]
                )

                self.document_wrapper.wait_command_executed(
                    command_id=command_id, instance_id=instance_id
                )

                print("-" * 88)
                print(
                    "Lets get the time when the specific command was sent to the
 specific managed node"
                )
                q.ask("Please hit Enter")
```

```
 self.document_wrapper.list_command_invocations(instance_id=instance_id)

            print("-" * 88)
            print("-" * 88)
            print(
                """
Now we will create a  Systems Manager OpsItem.
An OpsItem is a feature provided by the Systems Manager service.
It is a type of operational data item that allows you to manage and track various
 operational issues,
events, or tasks within your AWS environment.

You can create OpsItems to track and manage operational issues as they arise.
For example, you could create an OpsItem whenever your application detects a
 critical error
or an anomaly in your infrastructure.
            """
            )
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.ops_item_wrapper.create(
                title="Disk Space Alert",
                description="Created by the Systems Manager Python (Boto3) API",
                source="EC2",
                category="Performance",
                severity="2",
            )

            print("-" * 88)
            print("-" * 88)
            print(f"Now we will update  the OpsItem {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}")
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.ops_item_wrapper.update(
                title="Disk Space Alert",
                description=f"An update to {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}",
            )

            print(
                f"Now we will get the status of the OpsItem
 {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}"
            )
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")
```

```
            # It may take a second for the ops item to be available
            counter = 0
            while not self.ops_item_wrapper.describe() and counter < 5:
                counter += 1
                time.sleep(1)

            print(f"Now we will resolve the OpsItem {self.ops_item_wrapper.id}")
            q.ask("Please hit Enter")

            self.ops_item_wrapper.update(status="Resolved")

            print("-" * 88)
            print("-" * 88)
            if q.ask(
                "Would you like to delete the Systems Manager resources? (y/n)",
                q.is_yesno,
            ):
                print("You selected to delete the resources.")
                self.cleanup()
            else:
                print("The Systems Manager resources will not be deleted")

            print("-" * 88)
            print("This concludes the Systems Manager SDK Getting Started
 scenario.")
            print("-" * 88)

        except Exception:
            self.cleanup()
            raise

    def cleanup(self):
        self.maintenance_window_wrapper.delete()
        self.ops_item_wrapper.delete()
        self.document_wrapper.delete()


if __name__ == "__main__":
    try:
        scenario = SystemsManagerScenario(
            DocumentWrapper.from_client(),
            MaintenanceWindowWrapper.from_client(),
            OpsItemWrapper.from_client(),
```

```
        )
        scenario.run()
    except Exception:
        logging.exception("Something went wrong with the demo.")
```

Define a class that wraps document and command actions.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, content, name):
        """
        Creates a document.

        :param content: The content of the document.
        :param name: The name of the document.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.create_document(
                Name=name, Content=content, DocumentType="Command"
            )
            self.name = name
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.DocumentAlreadyExists:
            print(f"Document {name} already exists.")
            self.name = name
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes an AWS Systems Manager document.
        """
        if self.name is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_document(Name=self.name)
            print(f"Deleted document {self.name}.")
            self.name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def send_command(self, instance_ids):
        """
        Sends a command to one or more instances.

        :param instance_ids: The IDs of the instances to send the command to.
        :return: The ID of the command.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=instance_ids, DocumentName=self.name,
TimeoutSeconds=3600
            )
            return response["Command"]["CommandId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send command to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def describe(self):
        """
        Describes the document.

        :return: Document status.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.describe_document(Name=self.name)
            return response["Document"]["Status"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't get %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def wait_until_active(self, max_attempts=20, delay=5):
        """
        Waits until the document is active.

        :param max_attempts: The maximum number of attempts for checking the status.
        :param delay: The delay in seconds between each check.
        """
        attempt = 0
        status = ""
        while attempt <= max_attempts:
            status = self.describe()
            if status == "Active":
                break
            attempt += 1
            time.sleep(delay)

        if status != "Active":
            logger.error("Document is not active.")
        else:
```

```
            logger.info("Document is active.")

    def wait_command_executed(self, command_id, instance_id):
        """
        Waits until the command is executed on the instance.

        :param command_id: The ID of the command.
        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance.
        """

        waiter = self.ssm_client.get_waiter("command_executed")
        waiter.wait(CommandId=command_id, InstanceId=instance_id)

    def list_command_invocations(self, instance_id):
        """
        Lists the commands for an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance.
        :return: The list of commands.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("list_command_invocations")
            command_invocations = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(InstanceId=instance_id):
                command_invocations.extend(page["CommandInvocations"])
            num_of_commands = len(command_invocations)
            print(
                f"{num_of_commands} command invocation(s) found for instance
{instance_id}."
            )

            if num_of_commands > 10:
                print("Displaying the first 10 commands:")
                num_of_commands = 10
            date_format = "%A, %d %B %Y %I:%M%p"
            for command in command_invocations[:num_of_commands]:
                print(
                    f"   The time of command invocation is
{command['RequestedDateTime'].strftime(date_format)}"
                )
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list commands for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps ops item actions.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, title, source, category, severity, description):
        """
        Create an OpsItem

        :param title: The OpsItem title.
        :param source: The OpsItem source.
        :param category: The OpsItem category.
        :param severity: The OpsItem severity.
        :param description: The OpsItem description.

        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_ops_item(
```

```
                Title=title,
                Source=source,
                Category=category,
                Severity=severity,
                Description=description,
            )
            self.id = response["OpsItemId"]
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.OpsItemLimitExceededException as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item because you have exceeded your open
OpsItem limit. "
                "Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise

    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the OpsItem.
        """
        if self.id is None:
            return
        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_ops_item(OpsItemId=self.id)
            print(f"Deleted ops item with id {self.id}")
            self.id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

```
    def describe(self):
        """
        Describe an OpsItem.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("describe_ops_items")
            ops_items = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                OpsItemFilters=[
                    {"Key": "OpsItemId", "Values": [self.id], "Operator": "Equal"}
                ]
            ):
                ops_items.extend(page["OpsItemSummaries"])

            for item in ops_items:
                print(
                    f"The item title is {item['Title']} and the status is
{item['Status']}"
                )
            return len(ops_items) > 0
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def update(self, title=None, description=None, status=None):
        """
        Update an OpsItem.

        :param title: The new OpsItem title.
        :param description: The new OpsItem description.
        :param status: The new OpsItem status.
        :return:
        """
        args = dict(OpsItemId=self.id)
        if title is not None:
            args["Title"] = title
        if description is not None:
```

```
            args["Description"] = description
        if status is not None:
            args["Status"] = status
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_ops_item(**args)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

Define a class that wraps maintenance window actions.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, name, schedule, duration, cutoff, allow_unassociated_targets):
        """
        Create an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
```

```
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
managed nodes, even
                                           if you haven't registered those nodes as
targets.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_maintenance_window(
                Name=name,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.window_id = response["WindowId"]
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Created maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to create maintenance window
%s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the associated AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.
        """
        if self.window_id is None:
            return

        try:
```

```
            self.ssm_client.delete_maintenance_window(WindowId=self.window_id)
            logger.info("Deleted maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
            print(f"Deleted maintenance window {self.name}")
            self.window_id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.window_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise


    def update(
        self, name, enabled, schedule, duration, cutoff, allow_unassociated_targets
    ):
        """
        Update an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param enabled: Whether the maintenance window is enabled to run on managed
nodes.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
managed nodes, even
                                           if you haven't registered those nodes as
targets.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_maintenance_window(
                WindowId=self.window_id,
                Name=name,
                Enabled=enabled,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Updated maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
```

```
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to update maintenance window
%s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateDocument
  - CreateMaintenanceWindow
  - CreateOpsItem
  - DeleteMaintenanceWindow
  - ListCommandInvocations
  - SendCommand
  - UpdateOpsItem

Actions

`CreateDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDocument`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, content, name):
        """
        Creates a document.

        :param content: The content of the document.
        :param name: The name of the document.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.create_document(
                Name=name, Content=content, DocumentType="Command"
            )
            self.name = name
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.DocumentAlreadyExists:
            print(f"Document {name} already exists.")
            self.name = name
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateDocument in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, name, schedule, duration, cutoff, allow_unassociated_targets):
        """
        Create an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
 managed nodes, even
                                           if you haven't registered those nodes as
 targets.
        """
        try:
```

```
            response = self.ssm_client.create_maintenance_window(
                Name=name,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.window_id = response["WindowId"]
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Created maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
                "Parameter validation error when trying to create maintenance window
%s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`CreateOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateOpsItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def create(self, title, source, category, severity, description):
        """
        Create an OpsItem

        :param title: The OpsItem title.
        :param source: The OpsItem source.
        :param category: The OpsItem category.
        :param severity: The OpsItem severity.
        :param description: The OpsItem description.

        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.create_ops_item(
                Title=title,
                Source=source,
                Category=category,
                Severity=severity,
                Description=description,
            )
            self.id = response["OpsItemId"]
        except self.ssm_client.exceptions.OpsItemLimitExceededException as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item because you have exceeded your open
 OpsItem limit. "
```

```
                "Here's why: %s: %s",
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't create ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                title,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see CreateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDocument`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
```

```
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def delete(self):
        """
        Deletes an AWS Systems Manager document.
        """
        if self.name is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_document(Name=self.name)
            print(f"Deleted document {self.name}.")
            self.name = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteDocument in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""
```

```
    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the associated AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.
        """
        if self.window_id is None:
            return

        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_maintenance_window(WindowId=self.window_id)
            logger.info("Deleted maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
            print(f"Deleted maintenance window {self.name}")
            self.window_id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.window_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteOpsItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def delete(self):
        """
        Delete the OpsItem.
        """
        if self.id is None:
            return
        try:
            self.ssm_client.delete_ops_item(OpsItemId=self.id)
            print(f"Deleted ops item with id {self.id}")
            self.id = None
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't delete ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
```

```
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DescribeOpsItems`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOpsItems`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def describe(self):
        """
```

```
        Describe an OpsItem.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("describe_ops_items")
            ops_items = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(
                OpsItemFilters=[
                    {"Key": "OpsItemId", "Values": [self.id], "Operator": "Equal"}
                ]
            ):
                ops_items.extend(page["OpsItemSummaries"])

            for item in ops_items:
                print(
                    f"The item title is {item['Title']} and the status is
{item['Status']}"
                )
            return len(ops_items) > 0
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't describe ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see DescribeOpsItems in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListCommandInvocations`

The following code example shows how to use `ListCommandInvocations`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def list_command_invocations(self, instance_id):
        """
        Lists the commands for an instance.

        :param instance_id: The ID of the instance.
        :return: The list of commands.
        """
        try:
            paginator = self.ssm_client.get_paginator("list_command_invocations")
            command_invocations = []
            for page in paginator.paginate(InstanceId=instance_id):
                command_invocations.extend(page["CommandInvocations"])
            num_of_commands = len(command_invocations)
            print(
                f"{num_of_commands} command invocation(s) found for instance
 {instance_id}."
            )

            if num_of_commands > 10:
                print("Displaying the first 10 commands:")
                num_of_commands = 10
            date_format = "%A, %d %B %Y %I:%M%p"
            for command in command_invocations[:num_of_commands]:
                print(
                    f"   The time of command invocation is
 {command['RequestedDateTime'].strftime(date_format)}"
                )
```

```
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't list commands for %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                instance_id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see ListCommandInvocations in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

SendCommand

The following code example shows how to use SendCommand.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DocumentWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager Document actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def send_command(self, instance_ids):
```

```
        """
        Sends a command to one or more instances.

        :param instance_ids: The IDs of the instances to send the command to.
        :return: The ID of the command.
        """
        try:
            response = self.ssm_client.send_command(
                InstanceIds=instance_ids, DocumentName=self.name,
 TimeoutSeconds=3600
            )
            return response["Command"]["CommandId"]
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't send command to %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see SendCommand in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateMaintenanceWindow`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateMaintenanceWindow`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class MaintenanceWindowWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager maintenance window actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
```

```
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.window_id = None
        self.name = None

    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def update(
        self, name, enabled, schedule, duration, cutoff, allow_unassociated_targets
    ):
        """
        Update an AWS Systems Manager maintenance window.

        :param name: The name of the maintenance window.
        :param enabled: Whether the maintenance window is enabled to run on managed
nodes.
        :param schedule: The schedule of the maintenance window.
        :param duration: The duration of the maintenance window.
        :param cutoff: The cutoff time of the maintenance window.
        :param allow_unassociated_targets: Allow the maintenance window to run on
managed nodes, even
                                           if you haven't registered those nodes as
targets.
        """
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_maintenance_window(
                WindowId=self.window_id,
                Name=name,
                Enabled=enabled,
                Schedule=schedule,
                Duration=duration,
                Cutoff=cutoff,
                AllowUnassociatedTargets=allow_unassociated_targets,
            )
            self.name = name
            logger.info("Updated maintenance window %s.", self.window_id)
        except ParamValidationError as error:
            logger.error(
```

```
                "Parameter validation error when trying to update maintenance window
 %s. Here's why: %s",
                self.window_id,
                error,
            )
            raise
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update maintenance window %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.name,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateMaintenanceWindow in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateOpsItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateOpsItem`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class OpsItemWrapper:
    """Encapsulates AWS Systems Manager OpsItem actions."""

    def __init__(self, ssm_client):
        """
        :param ssm_client: A Boto3 Systems Manager client.
        """
        self.ssm_client = ssm_client
        self.id = None
```

```
    @classmethod
    def from_client(cls):
        """
        :return: A OpsItemWrapper instance.
        """
        ssm_client = boto3.client("ssm")
        return cls(ssm_client)


    def update(self, title=None, description=None, status=None):
        """
        Update an OpsItem.

        :param title: The new OpsItem title.
        :param description: The new OpsItem description.
        :param status: The new OpsItem status.
        :return:
        """
        args = dict(OpsItemId=self.id)
        if title is not None:
            args["Title"] = title
        if description is not None:
            args["Description"] = description
        if status is not None:
            args["Status"] = status
        try:
            self.ssm_client.update_ops_item(**args)
        except ClientError as err:
            logger.error(
                "Couldn't update ops item %s. Here's why: %s: %s",
                self.id,
                err.response["Error"]["Code"],
                err.response["Error"]["Message"],
            )
            raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateOpsItem in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AnalyzeDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `AnalyzeDocument`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
```

```
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def analyze_file(
        self, feature_types, *, document_file_name=None, document_bytes=None
    ):
        """
        Detects text and additional elements, such as forms or tables, in a local
image
        file or from in-memory byte data.
        The image must be in PNG or JPG format.

        :param feature_types: The types of additional document features to detect.
        :param document_file_name: The name of a document image file.
        :param document_bytes: In-memory byte data of a document image.
        :return: The response from Amazon Textract, including a list of blocks
                 that describe elements detected in the image.
        """
        if document_file_name is not None:
            with open(document_file_name, "rb") as document_file:
                document_bytes = document_file.read()
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.analyze_document(
                Document={"Bytes": document_bytes}, FeatureTypes=feature_types
            )
            logger.info("Detected %s blocks.", len(response["Blocks"]))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text.")
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DetectDocumentText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDocumentText`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def detect_file_text(self, *, document_file_name=None, document_bytes=None):
        """
        Detects text elements in a local image file or from in-memory byte data.
        The image must be in PNG or JPG format.

        :param document_file_name: The name of a document image file.
        :param document_bytes: In-memory byte data of a document image.
        :return: The response from Amazon Textract, including a list of blocks
                 that describe elements detected in the image.
        """
        if document_file_name is not None:
            with open(document_file_name, "rb") as document_file:
                document_bytes = document_file.read()
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.detect_document_text(
                Document={"Bytes": document_bytes}
            )
            logger.info("Detected %s blocks.", len(response["Blocks"]))
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text.")
```

```
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetDocumentAnalysis`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDocumentAnalysis`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def get_analysis_job(self, job_id):
        """
        Gets data for a previously started detection job that includes additional
        elements.

        :param job_id: The ID of the job to retrieve.
        :return: The job data, including a list of blocks that describe elements
                 detected in the image.
```

```
        """
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.get_document_analysis(JobId=job_id)
            job_status = response["JobStatus"]
            logger.info("Job %s status is %s.", job_id, job_status)
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't get data for job %s.", job_id)
            raise
        else:
            return response
```

- For API details, see GetDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartDocumentAnalysis`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDocumentAnalysis`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start an asynchronous job to analyze a document.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource
```

```
    def start_analysis_job(
        self,
        bucket_name,
        document_file_name,
        feature_types,
        sns_topic_arn,
        sns_role_arn,
    ):
        """
        Starts an asynchronous job to detect text and additional elements, such as
        forms or tables, in an image stored in an Amazon S3 bucket. Textract
publishes
        a notification to the specified Amazon SNS topic when the job completes.
        The image must be in PNG, JPG, or PDF format.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
image.
        :param document_file_name: The name of the document image stored in Amazon
S3.
        :param feature_types: The types of additional document features to detect.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an Amazon SNS topic
                              where job completion notification is published.
        :param sns_role_arn: The ARN of an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
                             role that can be assumed by Textract and grants
permission
                             to publish to the Amazon SNS topic.
        :return: The ID of the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.start_document_analysis(
                DocumentLocation={
                    "S3Object": {"Bucket": bucket_name, "Name": document_file_name}
                },
                NotificationChannel={
                    "SNSTopicArn": sns_topic_arn,
                    "RoleArn": sns_role_arn,
                },
                FeatureTypes=feature_types,
            )
            job_id = response["JobId"]
            logger.info(
                "Started text analysis job %s on %s.", job_id, document_file_name
```

```
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't analyze text in %s.", document_file_name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_id
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`StartDocumentTextDetection`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDocumentTextDetection`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start an asynchronous job to detect text in a document.

```
class TextractWrapper:
    """Encapsulates Textract functions."""

    def __init__(self, textract_client, s3_resource, sqs_resource):
        """
        :param textract_client: A Boto3 Textract client.
        :param s3_resource: A Boto3 Amazon S3 resource.
        :param sqs_resource: A Boto3 Amazon SQS resource.
        """
        self.textract_client = textract_client
        self.s3_resource = s3_resource
        self.sqs_resource = sqs_resource


    def start_detection_job(
        self, bucket_name, document_file_name, sns_topic_arn, sns_role_arn
    ):
```

```
        """
        Starts an asynchronous job to detect text elements in an image stored in an
        Amazon S3 bucket. Textract publishes a notification to the specified Amazon
SNS
        topic when the job completes.
        The image must be in PNG, JPG, or PDF format.

        :param bucket_name: The name of the Amazon S3 bucket that contains the
image.
        :param document_file_name: The name of the document image stored in Amazon
S3.
        :param sns_topic_arn: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of an Amazon SNS topic
                              where the job completion notification is published.
        :param sns_role_arn: The ARN of an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
                             role that can be assumed by Textract and grants
permission
                             to publish to the Amazon SNS topic.
        :return: The ID of the job.
        """
        try:
            response = self.textract_client.start_document_text_detection(
                DocumentLocation={
                    "S3Object": {"Bucket": bucket_name, "Name": document_file_name}
                },
                NotificationChannel={
                    "SNSTopicArn": sns_topic_arn,
                    "RoleArn": sns_role_arn,
                },
            )
            job_id = response["JobId"]
            logger.info(
                "Started text detection job %s on %s.", job_id, document_file_name
            )
        except ClientError:
            logger.exception("Couldn't detect text in %s.", document_file_name)
            raise
        else:
            return job_id
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentTextDetection in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an Amazon Textract explorer application

The following code example shows how to explore Amazon Textract output through an interactive application.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Textract to detect text, form, and table elements in a document image. The input image and Amazon Textract output are shown in a Tkinter application that lets you explore the detected elements.

- Submit a document image to Amazon Textract and explore the output of detected elements.
- Submit images directly to Amazon Textract or through an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket.
- Use asynchronous APIs to start a job that publishes a notification to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when the job completes.
- Poll an Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) queue for a job completion message and display the results.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Cognito Identity
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS
- Amazon SQS
- Amazon Textract

Detect entities in text extracted from an image

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in text extracted by Amazon Textract from an image that is stored in Amazon S3.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) in a Jupyter notebook to detect entities in text that is extracted from an image. This example uses Amazon Textract to extract text from an image stored in Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and Amazon Comprehend to detect entities in the extracted text.

This example is a Jupyter notebook and must be run in an environment that can host notebooks. For instructions on how to run the example using Amazon SageMaker AI, see the directions in TextractAndComprehendNotebook.ipynb.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Textract

Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for Python (Boto3)

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) with Amazon Transcribe.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVocabulary`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def create_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None, table_uri=None
):
    """
    Creates a custom vocabulary that can be used to improve the accuracy of
    transcription jobs. This function returns as soon as the vocabulary processing
    is started. Call get_vocabulary to get the current status of the vocabulary.
    The vocabulary is ready to use when its status is 'READY'.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the custom vocabulary.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
                          For example, en-US or nl-NL.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in the
                      vocabulary.
    :return: Information about the newly created vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.create_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Created custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
```

```
        logger.exception("Couldn't create custom vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see CreateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a transcription job. This also deletes the transcript associated with
    the job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_transcription_job(TranscriptionJobName=job_name)
        logger.info("Deleted job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete job %s.", job_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`DeleteVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteVocabulary`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def delete_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Deleted vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see DeleteVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetTranscriptionJob`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets details about a transcription job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The retrieved transcription job.
    """
    try:
        response = transcribe_client.get_transcription_job(
            TranscriptionJobName=job_name
        )
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Got job %s.", job["TranscriptionJobName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job
```

- For API details, see GetTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`GetVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `GetVocabulary`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def get_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets information about a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: Information about the vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        response = transcribe_client.get_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Got vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response
```

- For API details, see GetVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListTranscriptionJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTranscriptionJobs`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_jobs(job_filter, transcribe_client):
    """
    Lists summaries of the transcription jobs for the current AWS account.

    :param job_filter: The list of returned jobs must contain this string in their
                       names.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The list of retrieved transcription job summaries.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.list_transcription_jobs(JobNameContains=job_filter)
        jobs = response["TranscriptionJobSummaries"]
        next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        while next_token is not None:
            response = transcribe_client.list_transcription_jobs(
                JobNameContains=job_filter, NextToken=next_token
            )
            jobs += response["TranscriptionJobSummaries"]
            next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        logger.info("Got %s jobs with filter %s.", len(jobs), job_filter)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get jobs with filter %s.", job_filter)
        raise
    else:
        return jobs
```

- For API details, see ListTranscriptionJobs in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`ListVocabularies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListVocabularies`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def list_vocabularies(vocabulary_filter, transcribe_client):
    """
    Lists the custom vocabularies created for this AWS account.

    :param vocabulary_filter: The returned vocabularies must contain this string in
                              their names.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The list of retrieved vocabularies.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(NameContains=vocabulary_filter)
        vocabs = response["Vocabularies"]
        next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        while next_token is not None:
            response = transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(
                NameContains=vocabulary_filter, NextToken=next_token
            )
            vocabs += response["Vocabularies"]
            next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        logger.info(
            "Got %s vocabularies with filter %s.", len(vocabs), vocabulary_filter
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't list vocabularies with filter %s.", vocabulary_filter
        )
        raise
    else:
        return vocabs
```

- For API details, see ListVocabularies in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

StartTranscriptionJob

The following code example shows how to use `StartTranscriptionJob`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def start_job(
    job_name,
    media_uri,
    media_format,
    language_code,
    transcribe_client,
    vocabulary_name=None,
):
    """
    Starts a transcription job. This function returns as soon as the job is started.
    To get the current status of the job, call get_transcription_job. The job is
    successfully completed when the job status is 'COMPLETED'.

    :param job_name: The name of the transcription job. This must be unique for
                     your AWS account.
    :param media_uri: The URI where the audio file is stored. This is typically
                      in an Amazon S3 bucket.
    :param media_format: The format of the audio file. For example, mp3 or wav.
    :param language_code: The language code of the audio file.
                          For example, en-US or ja-JP
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param vocabulary_name: The name of a custom vocabulary to use when transcribing
                            the audio file.
    :return: Data about the job.
    """
    try:
        job_args = {
            "TranscriptionJobName": job_name,
```

```
            "Media": {"MediaFileUri": media_uri},
            "MediaFormat": media_format,
            "LanguageCode": language_code,
        }
        if vocabulary_name is not None:
            job_args["Settings"] = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name}
        response = transcribe_client.start_transcription_job(**job_args)
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Started transcription job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't start transcription job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job
```

- For API details, see StartTranscriptionJob in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

`UpdateVocabulary`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateVocabulary`.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
def update_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None, table_uri=None
):
    """
    Updates an existing custom vocabulary. The entire vocabulary is replaced with
    the contents of the update.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to update.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
```

```
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in the
                      vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.update_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Updated custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update custom vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
```

- For API details, see UpdateVocabulary in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create and refine a custom vocabulary

The following code example shows how to:

- Upload an audio file to Amazon S3.
- Run an Amazon Transcribe job to transcribe the file and get the results.
- Create and refine a custom vocabulary to improve transcription accuracy.
- Run jobs with custom vocabularies and get the results.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Transcribe an audio file that contains a reading of Jabberwocky by Lewis Carroll. Start by creating functions that wrap Amazon Transcribe actions.

```
def start_job(
    job_name,
    media_uri,
    media_format,
    language_code,
    transcribe_client,
    vocabulary_name=None,
):
    """
    Starts a transcription job. This function returns as soon as the job is started.
    To get the current status of the job, call get_transcription_job. The job is
    successfully completed when the job status is 'COMPLETED'.

    :param job_name: The name of the transcription job. This must be unique for
                     your AWS account.
    :param media_uri: The URI where the audio file is stored. This is typically
                      in an Amazon S3 bucket.
    :param media_format: The format of the audio file. For example, mp3 or wav.
    :param language_code: The language code of the audio file.
                          For example, en-US or ja-JP
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param vocabulary_name: The name of a custom vocabulary to use when transcribing
                            the audio file.
    :return: Data about the job.
    """
    try:
        job_args = {
            "TranscriptionJobName": job_name,
            "Media": {"MediaFileUri": media_uri},
            "MediaFormat": media_format,
            "LanguageCode": language_code,
        }
        if vocabulary_name is not None:
            job_args["Settings"] = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name}
        response = transcribe_client.start_transcription_job(**job_args)
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Started transcription job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't start transcription job %s.", job_name)
        raise
```

```
    else:
        return job



def get_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets details about a transcription job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The retrieved transcription job.
    """
    try:
        response = transcribe_client.get_transcription_job(
            TranscriptionJobName=job_name
        )
        job = response["TranscriptionJob"]
        logger.info("Got job %s.", job["TranscriptionJobName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get job %s.", job_name)
        raise
    else:
        return job



def delete_job(job_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a transcription job. This also deletes the transcript associated with
    the job.

    :param job_name: The name of the job to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_transcription_job(TranscriptionJobName=job_name)
        logger.info("Deleted job %s.", job_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete job %s.", job_name)
        raise
```

```
def create_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None, table_uri=None
):
    """
    Creates a custom vocabulary that can be used to improve the accuracy of
    transcription jobs. This function returns as soon as the vocabulary processing
    is started. Call get_vocabulary to get the current status of the vocabulary.
    The vocabulary is ready to use when its status is 'READY'.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the custom vocabulary.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
                          For example, en-US or nl-NL.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in the
                      vocabulary.
    :return: Information about the newly created vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.create_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Created custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't create custom vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response



def get_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Gets information about a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to retrieve.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: Information about the vocabulary.
    """
    try:
```

```
        response = transcribe_client.get_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Got vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't get vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
    else:
        return response



def update_vocabulary(
    vocabulary_name, language_code, transcribe_client, phrases=None, table_uri=None
):
    """
    Updates an existing custom vocabulary. The entire vocabulary is replaced with
    the contents of the update.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to update.
    :param language_code: The language code of the vocabulary.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :param phrases: A list of comma-separated phrases to include in the vocabulary.
    :param table_uri: A table of phrases and pronunciation hints to include in the
                      vocabulary.
    """
    try:
        vocab_args = {"VocabularyName": vocabulary_name, "LanguageCode":
 language_code}
        if phrases is not None:
            vocab_args["Phrases"] = phrases
        elif table_uri is not None:
            vocab_args["VocabularyFileUri"] = table_uri
        response = transcribe_client.update_vocabulary(**vocab_args)
        logger.info("Updated custom vocabulary %s.", response["VocabularyName"])
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't update custom vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise



def list_vocabularies(vocabulary_filter, transcribe_client):
    """
    Lists the custom vocabularies created for this AWS account.

    :param vocabulary_filter: The returned vocabularies must contain this string in
```

```
                                their names.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    :return: The list of retrieved vocabularies.
    """
    try:
        response =
 transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(NameContains=vocabulary_filter)
        vocabs = response["Vocabularies"]
        next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        while next_token is not None:
            response = transcribe_client.list_vocabularies(
                NameContains=vocabulary_filter, NextToken=next_token
            )
            vocabs += response["Vocabularies"]
            next_token = response.get("NextToken")
        logger.info(
            "Got %s vocabularies with filter %s.", len(vocabs), vocabulary_filter
        )
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception(
            "Couldn't list vocabularies with filter %s.", vocabulary_filter
        )
        raise
    else:
        return vocabs



def delete_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client):
    """
    Deletes a custom vocabulary.

    :param vocabulary_name: The name of the vocabulary to delete.
    :param transcribe_client: The Boto3 Transcribe client.
    """
    try:
        transcribe_client.delete_vocabulary(VocabularyName=vocabulary_name)
        logger.info("Deleted vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
    except ClientError:
        logger.exception("Couldn't delete vocabulary %s.", vocabulary_name)
        raise
```

Call the wrapper functions to transcribe audio without a custom vocabulary and then with different versions of a custom vocabulary to see improved results.

```
def usage_demo():
    """Shows how to use the Amazon Transcribe service."""
    logging.basicConfig(level=logging.INFO, format="%(levelname)s: %(message)s")

    s3_resource = boto3.resource("s3")
    transcribe_client = boto3.client("transcribe")

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Welcome to the Amazon Transcribe demo!")
    print("-" * 88)

    bucket_name = f"jabber-bucket-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Creating bucket {bucket_name}.")
    bucket = s3_resource.create_bucket(
        Bucket=bucket_name,
        CreateBucketConfiguration={
            "LocationConstraint": transcribe_client.meta.region_name
        },
    )
    media_file_name = ".media/Jabberwocky.mp3"
    media_object_key = "Jabberwocky.mp3"
    print(f"Uploading media file {media_file_name}.")
    bucket.upload_file(media_file_name, media_object_key)
    media_uri = f"s3://{bucket.name}/{media_object_key}"

    job_name_simple = f"Jabber-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Starting transcription job {job_name_simple}.")
    start_job(
        job_name_simple,
        f"s3://{bucket_name}/{media_object_key}",
        "mp3",
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
    )
    transcribe_waiter = TranscribeCompleteWaiter(transcribe_client)
    transcribe_waiter.wait(job_name_simple)
    job_simple = get_job(job_name_simple, transcribe_client)
    transcript_simple = requests.get(
```

```
        job_simple["Transcript"]["TranscriptFileUri"]
    ).json()
    print(f"Transcript for job {transcript_simple['jobName']}:")
    print(transcript_simple["results"]["transcripts"][0]["transcript"])

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Creating a custom vocabulary that lists the nonsense words to try to "
        "improve the transcription."
    )
    vocabulary_name = f"Jabber-vocabulary-{time.time_ns()}"
    create_vocabulary(
        vocabulary_name,
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        phrases=[
            "brillig",
            "slithy",
            "borogoves",
            "mome",
            "raths",
            "Jub-Jub",
            "frumious",
            "manxome",
            "Tumtum",
            "uffish",
            "whiffling",
            "tulgey",
            "thou",
            "frabjous",
            "callooh",
            "callay",
            "chortled",
        ],
    )
    vocabulary_ready_waiter = VocabularyReadyWaiter(transcribe_client)
    vocabulary_ready_waiter.wait(vocabulary_name)

    job_name_vocabulary_list = f"Jabber-vocabulary-list-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Starting transcription job {job_name_vocabulary_list}.")
    start_job(
        job_name_vocabulary_list,
        media_uri,
        "mp3",
```

```
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        vocabulary_name,
    )
    transcribe_waiter.wait(job_name_vocabulary_list)
    job_vocabulary_list = get_job(job_name_vocabulary_list, transcribe_client)
    transcript_vocabulary_list = requests.get(
        job_vocabulary_list["Transcript"]["TranscriptFileUri"]
    ).json()
    print(f"Transcript for job {transcript_vocabulary_list['jobName']}:")
    print(transcript_vocabulary_list["results"]["transcripts"][0]["transcript"])

    print("-" * 88)
    print(
        "Updating the custom vocabulary with table data that provides additional "
        "pronunciation hints."
    )
    table_vocab_file = "jabber-vocabulary-table.txt"
    bucket.upload_file(table_vocab_file, table_vocab_file)
    update_vocabulary(
        vocabulary_name,
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        table_uri=f"s3://{bucket.name}/{table_vocab_file}",
    )
    vocabulary_ready_waiter.wait(vocabulary_name)

    job_name_vocab_table = f"Jabber-vocab-table-{time.time_ns()}"
    print(f"Starting transcription job {job_name_vocab_table}.")
    start_job(
        job_name_vocab_table,
        media_uri,
        "mp3",
        "en-US",
        transcribe_client,
        vocabulary_name=vocabulary_name,
    )
    transcribe_waiter.wait(job_name_vocab_table)
    job_vocab_table = get_job(job_name_vocab_table, transcribe_client)
    transcript_vocab_table = requests.get(
        job_vocab_table["Transcript"]["TranscriptFileUri"]
    ).json()
    print(f"Transcript for job {transcript_vocab_table['jobName']}:")
    print(transcript_vocab_table["results"]["transcripts"][0]["transcript"])
```

```
    print("-" * 88)
    print("Getting data for jobs and vocabularies.")
    jabber_jobs = list_jobs("Jabber", transcribe_client)
    print(f"Found {len(jabber_jobs)} jobs:")
    for job_sum in jabber_jobs:
        job = get_job(job_sum["TranscriptionJobName"], transcribe_client)
        print(
            f"\t{job['TranscriptionJobName']}, {job['Media']['MediaFileUri']}, "
            f"{job['Settings'].get('VocabularyName')}"
        )

    jabber_vocabs = list_vocabularies("Jabber", transcribe_client)
    print(f"Found {len(jabber_vocabs)} vocabularies:")
    for vocab_sum in jabber_vocabs:
        vocab = get_vocabulary(vocab_sum["VocabularyName"], transcribe_client)
        vocab_content = requests.get(vocab["DownloadUri"]).text
        print(f"\t{vocab['VocabularyName']} contents:")
        print(vocab_content)

    print("-" * 88)
    print("Deleting demo jobs.")
    for job_name in [job_name_simple, job_name_vocabulary_list,
job_name_vocab_table]:
        delete_job(job_name, transcribe_client)
    print("Deleting demo vocabulary.")
    delete_vocabulary(vocabulary_name, transcribe_client)
    print("Deleting demo bucket.")
    bucket.objects.delete()
    bucket.delete()
    print("Thanks for watching!")
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - CreateVocabulary
  - DeleteTranscriptionJob
  - DeleteVocabulary
  - GetTranscriptionJob
  - GetVocabulary

- ListVocabularies
- StartTranscriptionJob
- UpdateVocabulary

Transcribe audio and get job data

The following code example shows how to:

- Start a transcription job with Amazon Transcribe.
- Wait for the job to complete.
- Get the URI where the transcript is stored.

For more information, see Getting started with Amazon Transcribe.

SDK for Python (Boto3)

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import time
import boto3


def transcribe_file(job_name, file_uri, transcribe_client):
    transcribe_client.start_transcription_job(
        TranscriptionJobName=job_name,
        Media={"MediaFileUri": file_uri},
        MediaFormat="wav",
        LanguageCode="en-US",
    )

    max_tries = 60
    while max_tries > 0:
        max_tries -= 1
        job = transcribe_client.get_transcription_job(TranscriptionJobName=job_name)
        job_status = job["TranscriptionJob"]["TranscriptionJobStatus"]
```

```
        if job_status in ["COMPLETED", "FAILED"]:
            print(f"Job {job_name} is {job_status}.")
            if job_status == "COMPLETED":
                print(
                    f"Download the transcript from\n"
                    f"\t{job['TranscriptionJob']['Transcript']
['TranscriptFileUri']}."
                )
            break
        else:
            print(f"Waiting for {job_name}. Current status is {job_status}.")
        time.sleep(10)


def main():
    transcribe_client = boto3.client("transcribe")
    file_uri = "s3://test-transcribe/answer2.wav"
    transcribe_file("Example-job", file_uri, transcribe_client)


if __name__ == "__main__":
    main()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Python (Boto3) API Reference*.
  - GetTranscriptionJob
  - StartTranscriptionJob

Code examples for SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Ruby with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Ruby Developer Guide** – More about using Ruby with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- Aurora examples using SDK for Ruby
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Ruby
- CloudTrail examples using SDK for Ruby
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Ruby
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Ruby
- Elastic Beanstalk examples using SDK for Ruby
- EventBridge examples using SDK for Ruby
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for Ruby
- IAM examples using SDK for Ruby
- Kinesis examples using SDK for Ruby
- AWS KMS examples using SDK for Ruby
- Lambda examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon SES examples using SDK for Ruby

- Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Ruby
- AWS STS examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for Ruby
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for Ruby

Aurora examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Aurora.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds'

# Creates an Amazon RDS client for the AWS Region
rds = Aws::RDS::Client.new

puts 'Listing clusters in this AWS account...'

# Calls the describe_db_clusters method to get information about clusters
resp = rds.describe_db_clusters(max_records: 20)
```

```
# Checks if any clusters are found and prints the appropriate message
if resp.db_clusters.empty?
  puts 'No clusters found!'
else
  # Loops through the array of cluster objects and prints the cluster identifier
  resp.db_clusters.each do |cluster|
    puts "Cluster identifier: #{cluster.db_cluster_identifier}"
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Auto Scaling.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-autoscaling'
require 'logger'

# AutoScalingManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Auto Scaling operations
# such as listing all Auto Scaling groups in the current AWS account.
```

```
class AutoScalingManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Gets and prints a list of Auto Scaling groups for the account.
  def list_auto_scaling_groups
    paginator = @client.describe_auto_scaling_groups
    auto_scaling_groups = []
    paginator.each_page do |page|
      auto_scaling_groups.concat(page.auto_scaling_groups)
    end

    if auto_scaling_groups.empty?
      @logger.info('No Auto Scaling groups found for this account.')
    else
      auto_scaling_groups.each do |group|
        @logger.info("Auto Scaling group name: #{group.auto_scaling_group_name}")
        @logger.info("  Group ARN:             #{group.auto_scaling_group_arn}")
        @logger.info("  Min/max/desired:       #{group.min_size}/#{group.max_size}/
#{group.desired_capacity}")
        @logger.info("\n")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  autoscaling_client = Aws::AutoScaling::Client.new
  manager = AutoScalingManager.new(autoscaling_client)
  manager.list_auto_scaling_groups
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

CloudTrail examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with CloudTrail.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTrail`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudtrail' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
require 'aws-sdk-s3'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

def create_trail_example(s3_client, sts_client, cloudtrail_client, trail_name,
 bucket_name)
  resp = sts_client.get_caller_identity({})
  account_id = resp.account

  # Attach policy to an Amazon Simple Storage Service (S3) bucket.
  s3_client.create_bucket(bucket: bucket_name)
  begin
    policy = {
      'Version' => '2012-10-17',
      'Statement' => [
        {
          'Sid' => 'AWSCloudTrailAclCheck20150319',
          'Effect' => 'Allow',
```

```
          'Principal' => {
            'Service' => 'cloudtrail.amazonaws.com'
          },
          'Action' => 's3:GetBucketAcl',
          'Resource' => "arn:aws:s3:::#{bucket_name}"
        },
        {
          'Sid' => 'AWSCloudTrailWrite20150319',
          'Effect' => 'Allow',
          'Principal' => {
            'Service' => 'cloudtrail.amazonaws.com'
          },
          'Action' => 's3:PutObject',
          'Resource' => "arn:aws:s3:::#{bucket_name}/AWSLogs/#{account_id}/*",
          'Condition' => {
            'StringEquals' => {
              's3:x-amz-acl' => 'bucket-owner-full-control'
            }
          }
        }
      ]
    }.to_json

    s3_client.put_bucket_policy(
      bucket: bucket_name,
      policy: policy
    )
    puts "Successfully added policy to bucket #{bucket_name}"
  end

  begin
    cloudtrail_client.create_trail({
                                     name: trail_name, # required
                                     s3_bucket_name: bucket_name # required
                                   })

    puts "Successfully created trail: #{trail_name}."
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts "Got error trying to create trail #{trail_name}:\n #{e}"
    puts e
    exit 1
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateTrail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteTrail`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTrail`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  client.delete_trail({
                        name: trail_name # required
                      })
  puts "Successfully deleted trail: #{trail_name}"
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Got error trying to delete trail: #{trail_name}:"
  puts e
  exit 1
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteTrail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListTrails`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTrails`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudtrail' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
```

```
def describe_trails_example(client)
  resp = client.describe_trails({})
  puts "Found #{resp.trail_list.count} trail(s)."

  resp.trail_list.each do |trail|
    puts "Name:           #{trail.name}"
    puts "S3 bucket name: #{trail.s3_bucket_name}"
    puts
  end
```

- For API details, see ListTrails in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`LookupEvents`

The following code example shows how to use `LookupEvents`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudtrail' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# @param [Object] client
def lookup_events_example(client)
  resp = client.lookup_events
  puts "Found #{resp.events.count} events:"
  resp.events.each do |e|
    puts "Event name:   #{e.event_name}"
    puts "Event ID:     #{e.event_id}"
    puts "Event time:   #{e.event_time}"
    puts 'Resources:'

    e.resources.each do |r|
      puts "  Name:       #{r.resource_name}"
      puts "  Type:       #{r.resource_type}"
      puts ''
```

```
    end
  end
end
```

- For API details, see LookupEvents in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarms`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatch'

# Lists the names of available Amazon CloudWatch alarms.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
```

```
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @example
#   list_alarms(Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'))
def list_alarms(cloudwatch_client)
  response = cloudwatch_client.describe_alarms
  if response.metric_alarms.count.positive?
    response.metric_alarms.each do |alarm|
      puts alarm.alarm_name
    end
  else
    puts 'No alarms found.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about alarms: #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeAlarmsForMetric`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarmsForMetric`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @example
#   describe_metric_alarms(Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'))
def describe_metric_alarms(cloudwatch_client)
  response = cloudwatch_client.describe_alarms

  if response.metric_alarms.count.positive?
```

```
    response.metric_alarms.each do |alarm|
      puts '-' * 16
      puts "Name:           #{alarm.alarm_name}"
      puts "State value:    #{alarm.state_value}"
      puts "State reason:   #{alarm.state_reason}"
      puts "Metric:         #{alarm.metric_name}"
      puts "Namespace:      #{alarm.namespace}"
      puts "Statistic:      #{alarm.statistic}"
      puts "Period:         #{alarm.period}"
      puts "Unit:           #{alarm.unit}"
      puts "Eval. periods:  #{alarm.evaluation_periods}"
      puts "Threshold:      #{alarm.threshold}"
      puts "Comp. operator: #{alarm.comparison_operator}"

      if alarm.key?(:ok_actions) && alarm.ok_actions.count.positive?
        puts 'OK actions:'
        alarm.ok_actions.each do |a|
          puts "  #{a}"
        end
      end

      if alarm.key?(:alarm_actions) && alarm.alarm_actions.count.positive?
        puts 'Alarm actions:'
        alarm.alarm_actions.each do |a|
          puts "  #{a}"
        end
      end

      if alarm.key?(:insufficient_data_actions) &&
         alarm.insufficient_data_actions.count.positive?
        puts 'Insufficient data actions:'
        alarm.insufficient_data_actions.each do |a|
          puts "  #{a}"
        end
      end

      puts 'Dimensions:'
      if alarm.key?(:dimensions) && alarm.dimensions.count.positive?
        alarm.dimensions.each do |d|
          puts "  Name: #{d.name}, Value: #{d.value}"
        end
      else
        puts '  None for this alarm.'
      end
```

```
    end
  else
    puts 'No alarms found.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about alarms: #{e.message}"
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  region = ''

  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby cw-ruby-example-show-alarms.rb REGION'
    puts 'Example: ruby cw-ruby-example-show-alarms.rb us-east-1'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    region = 'us-east-1'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    region = ARGV[0]
  end

  cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: region)
  puts 'Available alarms:'
  describe_metric_alarms(cloudwatch_client)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarmsForMetric in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

DisableAlarmActions

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Disables an alarm in Amazon CloudWatch.
#
# Prerequisites.
#
# - The alarm to disable.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param alarm_name [String] The name of the alarm to disable.
# @return [Boolean] true if the alarm was disabled; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless alarm_actions_disabled?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'ObjectsInBucket'
#   )
def alarm_actions_disabled?(cloudwatch_client, alarm_name)
  cloudwatch_client.disable_alarm_actions(alarm_names: [alarm_name])
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error disabling alarm actions: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  alarm_name = 'ObjectsInBucket'
  alarm_description = 'Objects exist in this bucket for more than 1 day.'
  metric_name = 'NumberOfObjects'
  # Notify this Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic when
  # the alarm transitions to the ALARM state.
  alarm_actions = ['arn:aws:sns:us-
east-1:111111111111:Default_CloudWatch_Alarms_Topic']
  namespace = 'AWS/S3'
  statistic = 'Average'
```

```
dimensions = [
  {
    name: "BucketName",
    value: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  },
  {
    name: 'StorageType',
    value: 'AllStorageTypes'
  }
]
period = 86_400 # Daily (24 hours * 60 minutes * 60 seconds = 86400 seconds).
unit = 'Count'
evaluation_periods = 1 # More than one day.
threshold = 1 # One object.
comparison_operator = 'GreaterThanThreshold' # More than one object.
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon CloudWatch.
region = 'us-east-1'

cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: region)

if alarm_created_or_updated?(
  cloudwatch_client,
  alarm_name,
  alarm_description,
  metric_name,
  alarm_actions,
  namespace,
  statistic,
  dimensions,
  period,
  unit,
  evaluation_periods,
  threshold,
  comparison_operator
)
  puts "Alarm '#{alarm_name}' created or updated."
else
  puts "Could not create or update alarm '#{alarm_name}'."
end

if alarm_actions_disabled?(cloudwatch_client, alarm_name)
  puts "Alarm '#{alarm_name}' disabled."
else
  puts "Could not disable alarm '#{alarm_name}'."
```

```
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListMetrics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Lists available metrics for a metric namespace in Amazon CloudWatch.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param metric_namespace [String] The namespace of the metric.
# @example
#   list_metrics_for_namespace(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'SITE/TRAFFIC'
#   )
def list_metrics_for_namespace(cloudwatch_client, metric_namespace)
  response = cloudwatch_client.list_metrics(namespace: metric_namespace)

  if response.metrics.count.positive?
    response.metrics.each do |metric|
      puts "  Metric name: #{metric.metric_name}"
      if metric.dimensions.count.positive?
        puts '    Dimensions:'
        metric.dimensions.each do |dimension|
          puts "      Name: #{dimension.name}, Value: #{dimension.value}"
        end
      else
```

```
        puts 'No dimensions found.'
      end
    end
  else
    puts "No metrics found for namespace '#{metric_namespace}'. " \
      'Note that it could take up to 15 minutes for recently-added metrics ' \
      'to become available.'
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  metric_namespace = 'SITE/TRAFFIC'
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon CloudWatch.
  region = 'us-east-1'

  cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: region)

  # Add three datapoints.
  puts 'Continuing...' unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
    cloudwatch_client,
    metric_namespace,
    'UniqueVisitors',
    'SiteName',
    'example.com',
    5_885.0,
    'Count'
  )

  puts 'Continuing...' unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
    cloudwatch_client,
    metric_namespace,
    'UniqueVisits',
    'SiteName',
    'example.com',
    8_628.0,
    'Count'
  )

  puts 'Continuing...' unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
    cloudwatch_client,
    metric_namespace,
    'PageViews',
    'PageURL',
```

```
    'example.html',
    18_057.0,
    'Count'
  )

  puts "Metrics for namespace '#{metric_namespace}':"
  list_metrics_for_namespace(cloudwatch_client, metric_namespace)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates or updates an alarm in Amazon CloudWatch.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param alarm_name [String] The name of the alarm.
# @param alarm_description [String] A description about the alarm.
# @param metric_name [String] The name of the metric associated with the alarm.
# @param alarm_actions [Array] A list of Strings representing the
#   Amazon Resource Names (ARNs) to execute when the alarm transitions to the
#   ALARM state.
# @param namespace [String] The namespace for the metric to alarm on.
# @param statistic [String] The statistic for the metric.
# @param dimensions [Array] A list of dimensions for the metric, specified as
#   Aws::CloudWatch::Types::Dimension.
# @param period [Integer] The number of seconds before re-evaluating the metric.
# @param unit [String] The unit of measure for the statistic.
```

```
# @param evaluation_periods [Integer] The number of periods over which data is
#   compared to the specified threshold.
# @param theshold [Float] The value against which the specified statistic is
 compared.
# @param comparison_operator [String] The arithmetic operation to use when
#   comparing the specified statistic and threshold.
# @return [Boolean] true if the alarm was created or updated; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless alarm_created_or_updated?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'ObjectsInBucket',
#     'Objects exist in this bucket for more than 1 day.',
#     'NumberOfObjects',
#     ['arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:Default_CloudWatch_Alarms_Topic'],
#     'AWS/S3',
#     'Average',
#     [
#       {
#         name: 'BucketName',
#         value: 'amzn-s3-demo-bucket'
#       },
#       {
#         name: 'StorageType',
#         value: 'AllStorageTypes'
#       }
#     ],
#     86_400,
#     'Count',
#     1,
#     1,
#     'GreaterThanThreshold'
#   )
def alarm_created_or_updated?(
  cloudwatch_client,
  alarm_name,
  alarm_description,
  metric_name,
  alarm_actions,
  namespace,
  statistic,
  dimensions,
  period,
  unit,
  evaluation_periods,
```

```
  threshold,
  comparison_operator
)
  cloudwatch_client.put_metric_alarm(
    alarm_name: alarm_name,
    alarm_description: alarm_description,
    metric_name: metric_name,
    alarm_actions: alarm_actions,
    namespace: namespace,
    statistic: statistic,
    dimensions: dimensions,
    period: period,
    unit: unit,
    evaluation_periods: evaluation_periods,
    threshold: threshold,
    comparison_operator: comparison_operator
  )
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating alarm: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutMetricData`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricData`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatch'

# Adds a datapoint to a metric in Amazon CloudWatch.
```

```
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Aws::CloudWatch::Client]
#   An initialized CloudWatch client.
# @param metric_namespace [String] The namespace of the metric to add the
#   datapoint to.
# @param metric_name [String] The name of the metric to add the datapoint to.
# @param dimension_name [String] The name of the dimension to add the
#   datapoint to.
# @param dimension_value [String] The value of the dimension to add the
#   datapoint to.
# @param metric_value [Float] The value of the datapoint.
# @param metric_unit [String] The unit of measurement for the datapoint.
# @return [Boolean]
# @example
#   exit 1 unless datapoint_added_to_metric?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'SITE/TRAFFIC',
#     'UniqueVisitors',
#     'SiteName',
#     'example.com',
#     5_885.0,
#     'Count'
#   )
def datapoint_added_to_metric?(
  cloudwatch_client,
  metric_namespace,
  metric_name,
  dimension_name,
  dimension_value,
  metric_value,
  metric_unit
)
  cloudwatch_client.put_metric_data(
    namespace: metric_namespace,
    metric_data: [
      {
        metric_name: metric_name,
        dimensions: [
          {
            name: dimension_name,
            value: dimension_value
          }
        ],
        value: metric_value,
```

```
        unit: metric_unit
      }
    ]
  )
  puts "Added data about '#{metric_name}' to namespace " \
    "'#{metric_namespace}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error adding data about '#{metric_name}' to namespace " \
    "'#{metric_namespace}': #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

- For API details, see PutMetricData in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Cognito

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Cognito.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-cognitoidentityprovider'
require 'logger'

# CognitoManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Cognito operations
# such as listing all user pools in the current AWS account.
class CognitoManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all user pools associated with the AWS account.
  def list_user_pools
    paginator = @client.list_user_pools(max_results: 10)
    user_pools = []
    paginator.each_page do |page|
      user_pools.concat(page.user_pools)
    end

    if user_pools.empty?
      @logger.info('No Cognito user pools found.')
    else
      user_pools.each do |user_pool|
        @logger.info("User pool ID: #{user_pool.id}")
        @logger.info("User pool name: #{user_pool.name}")
        @logger.info("User pool status: #{user_pool.status}")
        @logger.info('---')
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  cognito_client = Aws::CognitoIdentityProvider::Client.new
  manager = CognitoManager.new(cognito_client)
  manager.list_user_pools
end
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Amazon Comprehend examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon Comprehend.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
```

```
  event['events'].each do |record|
    log_document_db_event(record)
  end
  'OK'
end

def log_document_db_event(record)
  event_data = record['event'] || {}
  operation_type = event_data['operationType'] || 'Unknown'
  db = event_data.dig('ns', 'db') || 'Unknown'
  collection = event_data.dig('ns', 'coll') || 'Unknown'
  full_document = event_data['fullDocument'] || {}

  puts "Operation type: #{operation_type}"
  puts "db: #{db}"
  puts "collection: #{collection}"
  puts "Full document: #{JSON.pretty_generate(full_document)}"
end
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello DynamoDB

The following code examples show how to get started using DynamoDB.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-dynamodb'
require 'logger'

# DynamoDBManager is a class responsible for managing DynamoDB operations
# such as listing all tables in the current AWS account.
class DynamoDBManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all DynamoDB tables in the current AWS account.
  def list_tables
    @logger.info('Here are the DynamoDB tables in your account:')

    paginator = @client.list_tables(limit: 10)
    table_names = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      page.table_names.each do |table_name|
        @logger.info("- #{table_name}")
        table_names << table_name
      end
    end

    if table_names.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any DynamoDB tables in your account.")
    else
      @logger.info("\nFound #{table_names.length} tables.")
    end
  end
end
```

```
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  dynamodb_client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new
  manager = DynamoDBManager.new(dynamodb_client)
  manager.list_tables
end
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that encapsulates a DynamoDB table.

```
  # Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
  # The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
  # title as the sort key.
  #
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to create.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Table] The newly created table.
  def create_table(table_name)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.create_table(
      table_name: table_name,
      key_schema: [
        { attribute_name: 'year', key_type: 'HASH' }, # Partition key
        { attribute_name: 'title', key_type: 'RANGE' } # Sort key
      ],
      attribute_definitions: [
        { attribute_name: 'year', attribute_type: 'N' },
        { attribute_name: 'title', attribute_type: 'S' }
      ],
      billing_mode: 'PAY_PER_REQUEST'
    )
    @dynamo_resource.client.wait_until(:table_exists, table_name: table_name)
    @table
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed create table #{table_name}:\n#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

Create a helper function to download and extract the sample JSON file.

```
  # Gets sample movie data, either from a local file or by first downloading it from
  # the Amazon DynamoDB Developer Guide.
  #
  # @param movie_file_name [String] The local file name where the movie data is
 stored in JSON format.
  # @return [Hash] The movie data as a Hash.
  def fetch_movie_data(movie_file_name)
    if !File.file?(movie_file_name)
      @logger.debug("Downloading #{movie_file_name}...")
      movie_content = URI.open(
        'https://docs.aws.amazon.com/amazondynamodb/latest/developerguide/samples/
moviedata.zip'
```

```
      )
      movie_json = ''
      Zip::File.open_buffer(movie_content) do |zip|
        zip.each do |entry|
          movie_json = entry.get_input_stream.read
        end
      end
    else
      movie_json = File.read(movie_file_name)
    end
    movie_data = JSON.parse(movie_json)
    # The sample file lists over 4000 movies. This returns only the first 250.
    movie_data.slice(0, 250)
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts("Failure downloading movie data:\n#{e}")
    raise
  end
```

Run an interactive scenario to create the table and perform actions on it.

```
  table_name = "doc-example-table-movies-#{rand(10**4)}"
  scaffold = Scaffold.new(table_name)
  dynamodb_wrapper = DynamoDBBasics.new(table_name)

  new_step(1, 'Create a new DynamoDB table if none already exists.')
  unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)
    puts("\nNo such table: #{table_name}. Creating it...")
    scaffold.create_table(table_name)
    print "Done!\n".green
  end

  new_step(2, 'Add a new record to the DynamoDB table.')
  my_movie = {}
  my_movie[:title] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter the title of a movie to add to the
table. E.g. The Matrix')
  my_movie[:year] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('What year was it released? E.g. 1989').to_i
  my_movie[:rating] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('On a scale of 1 - 10, how do you rate it?
E.g. 7').to_i
  my_movie[:plot] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter a brief summary of the plot. E.g. A
man awakens to a new reality.')
  dynamodb_wrapper.add_item(my_movie)
  puts("\nNew record added:")
```

```
 puts JSON.pretty_generate(my_movie).green
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(3, 'Update a record in the DynamoDB table.')
 my_movie[:rating] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask("Let's update the movie you added with a
new rating, e.g. 3:").to_i
 response = dynamodb_wrapper.update_item(my_movie)
 puts("Updated '#{my_movie[:title]}' with new attributes:")
 puts JSON.pretty_generate(response).green
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(4, 'Get a record from the DynamoDB table.')
 puts("Searching for #{my_movie[:title]} (#{my_movie[:year]})...")
 response = dynamodb_wrapper.get_item(my_movie[:title], my_movie[:year])
 puts JSON.pretty_generate(response).green
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(5, 'Write a batch of items into the DynamoDB table.')
 download_file = 'moviedata.json'
 puts("Downloading movie database to #{download_file}...")
 movie_data = scaffold.fetch_movie_data(download_file)
 puts("Writing movie data from #{download_file} into your table...")
 scaffold.write_batch(movie_data)
 puts("Records added: #{movie_data.length}.")
 print "Done!\n".green

 new_step(5, 'Query for a batch of items by key.')
 loop do
   release_year = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter a year between 1972 and 2018, e.g.
1999:').to_i
   results = dynamodb_wrapper.query_items(release_year)
   if results.any?
     puts("There were #{results.length} movies released in #{release_year}:")
     results.each do |movie|
       print "\t #{movie['title']}".green
     end
     break
   else
     continue = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask("Found no movies released in #{release_year}!
Try another year? (y/n)")
     break unless continue.eql?('y')
   end
 end
 print "\nDone!\n".green
```

```
  new_step(6, 'Scan for a batch of items using a filter expression.')
  years = {}
  years[:start] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter a starting year between 1972 and
 2018:')
  years[:end] = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Enter an ending year between 1972 and 2018:')
  releases = dynamodb_wrapper.scan_items(years)
  if !releases.empty?
    puts("Found #{releases.length} movies.")
    count = Question.ask(
      'How many do you want to see? ', method(:is_int), in_range(1, releases.length)
    )
    puts("Here are your #{count} movies:")
    releases.take(count).each do |release|
      puts("\t#{release['title']}")
    end
  else
    puts("I don't know about any movies released between #{years[:start]} "\
         "and #{years[:end]}.")
  end
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(7, 'Delete an item from the DynamoDB table.')
  answer = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask("Do you want to remove '#{my_movie[:title]}'? (y/n)
 ")
  if answer.eql?('y')
    dynamodb_wrapper.delete_item(my_movie[:title], my_movie[:year])
    puts("Removed '#{my_movie[:title]}' from the table.")
    print "\nDone!\n".green
  end

  new_step(8, 'Delete the DynamoDB table.')
  answer = CLI::UI::Prompt.ask('Delete the table? (y/n)')
  if answer.eql?('y')
    scaffold.delete_table
    puts("Deleted #{table_name}.")
  else
    puts("Don't forget to delete the table when you're done!")
  end
  print "\nThanks for watching!\n".green
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError
  puts('Something went wrong with the demo.')
rescue Errno::ENOENT
  true
```

```
end
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Read a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLBatch
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
```

```
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Selects a batch of items from a table using PartiQL
  #
  # @param batch_titles [Array] Collection of movie titles
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::BatchExecuteStatementOutput]
  def batch_execute_select(batch_titles)
    request_items = batch_titles.map do |title, year|
      {
        statement: "SELECT * FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=? and year=?",
        parameters: [title, year]
      }
    end
    @dynamodb.client.batch_execute_statement({ statements: request_items })
  end
```

Delete a batch of items using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLBatch
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Deletes a batch of items from a table using PartiQL
  #
  # @param batch_titles [Array] Collection of movie titles
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::BatchExecuteStatementOutput]
  def batch_execute_write(batch_titles)
    request_items = batch_titles.map do |title, year|
      {
        statement: "DELETE FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=? and year=?",
        parameters: [title, year]
      }
    end
    @dynamodb.client.batch_execute_statement({ statements: request_items })
  end
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Fills an Amazon DynamoDB table with the specified data. Items are sent in
  # batches of 25 until all items are written.
  #
  # @param movies [Enumerable] The data to put in the table. Each item must contain
 at least
  #                            the keys required by the schema that was specified
 when the
  #                            table was created.
  def write_batch(movies)
    index = 0
    slice_size = 25
    while index < movies.length
      movie_items = []
      movies[index, slice_size].each do |movie|
        movie_items.append({ put_request: { item: movie } })
      end
      @dynamo_resource.client.batch_write_item({ request_items: { @table.name =>
 movie_items } })
      index += slice_size
```

```
    end
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts(
      "Couldn't load data into table #{@table.name}. Here's why:"
    )
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end

  # Creates an Amazon DynamoDB table that can be used to store movie data.
  # The table uses the release year of the movie as the partition key and the
  # title as the sort key.
  #
```

```
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to create.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Table] The newly created table.
  def create_table(table_name)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.create_table(
      table_name: table_name,
      key_schema: [
        { attribute_name: 'year', key_type: 'HASH' }, # Partition key
        { attribute_name: 'title', key_type: 'RANGE' } # Sort key
      ],
      attribute_definitions: [
        { attribute_name: 'year', attribute_type: 'N' },
        { attribute_name: 'title', attribute_type: 'S' }
      ],
      billing_mode: 'PAY_PER_REQUEST'
    )
    @dynamo_resource.client.wait_until(:table_exists, table_name: table_name)
    @table
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed create table #{table_name}:\n#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
```

```
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Deletes a movie from the table.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to delete.
  # @param year [Integer] The release year of the movie to delete.
  def delete_item(title, year)
    @table.delete_item(key: { 'year' => year, 'title' => title })
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't delete movie #{title}. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
```

```
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end

  # Deletes the table.
  def delete_table
    @table.delete
    @table = nil
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't delete table. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end
```

```
  # Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
  # a member variable.
  #
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to check.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
  def exists?(table_name)
    @dynamo_resource.client.describe_table(table_name: table_name)
    @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} exists")
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ResourceNotFoundException
    @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} doesn't exist")
    false
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't check for existence of #{table_name}:\n")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Select a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
```

```
  end

  # Gets a single record from a table using PartiQL.
  # Note: To perform more fine-grained selects,
  # use the Client.query instance method instead.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to search.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def select_item_by_title(title)
    request = {
      statement: "SELECT * FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=?",
      parameters: [title]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

Update a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Updates a single record from a table using PartiQL.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to update.
  # @param year [Integer] The year the movie was released.
  # @param rating [Float] The new rating to assign the title.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def update_rating_by_title(title, year, rating)
    request = {
      statement: "UPDATE \"#{@table.name}\" SET info.rating=? WHERE title=? and
 year=?",
      parameters: [{ "N": rating }, title, year]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

Add a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Adds a single record to a table using PartiQL.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to update.
  # @param year [Integer] The year the movie was released.
  # @param plot [String] The plot of the movie.
  # @param rating [Float] The new rating to assign the title.
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def insert_item(title, year, plot, rating)
    request = {
      statement: "INSERT INTO \"#{@table.name}\" VALUE {'title': ?, 'year': ?,
 'info': ?}",
      parameters: [title, year, { 'plot': plot, 'rating': rating }]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

Delete a single item using PartiQL.

```
class DynamoDBPartiQLSingle
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamodb = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamodb.table(table_name)
  end

  # Deletes a single record from a table using PartiQL.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie to update.
  # @param year [Integer] The year the movie was released.
```

```
  # @return [Aws::DynamoDB::Types::ExecuteStatementOutput]
  def delete_item_by_title(title, year)
    request = {
      statement: "DELETE FROM \"#{@table.name}\" WHERE title=? and year=?",
      parameters: [title, year]
    }
    @dynamodb.client.execute_statement(request)
  end
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Gets movie data from the table for a specific movie.
  #
  # @param title [String] The title of the movie.
  # @param year [Integer] The release year of the movie.
  # @return [Hash] The data about the requested movie.
  def get_item(title, year)
    @table.get_item(key: { 'year' => year, 'title' => title })
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't get movie #{title} (#{year}) from table #{@table.name}:\n")
```

```
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Determine whether a table exists.

```
# Encapsulates an Amazon DynamoDB table of movie data.
class Scaffold
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table_name, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table_name = table_name
    @table = nil
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::DEBUG
  end

  # Determines whether a table exists. As a side effect, stores the table in
  # a member variable.
  #
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to check.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the table exists; otherwise, False.
  def exists?(table_name)
    @dynamo_resource.client.describe_table(table_name: table_name)
    @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} exists")
```

```
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ResourceNotFoundException
    @logger.debug("Table #{table_name} doesn't exist")
    false
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't check for existence of #{table_name}:\n")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Adds a movie to the table.
  #
  # @param movie [Hash] The title, year, plot, and rating of the movie.
  def add_item(movie)
    @table.put_item(
      item: {
        'year' => movie[:year],
        'title' => movie[:title],
```

```
        'info' => { 'plot' => movie[:plot], 'rating' => movie[:rating] }
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't add movie #{title} to table #{@table.name}. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Queries for movies that were released in the specified year.
  #
  # @param year [Integer] The year to query.
  # @return [Array] The list of movies that were released in the specified year.
  def query_items(year)
    response = @table.query(
      key_condition_expression: '#yr = :year',
      expression_attribute_names: { '#yr' => 'year' },
```

```
      expression_attribute_values: { ':year' => year }
    )
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't query for movies released in #{year}. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    response.items
  end
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Scans for movies that were released in a range of years.
  # Uses a projection expression to return a subset of data for each movie.
  #
  # @param year_range [Hash] The range of years to retrieve.
  # @return [Array] The list of movies released in the specified years.
  def scan_items(year_range)
    movies = []
```

```
    scan_hash = {
      filter_expression: '#yr between :start_yr and :end_yr',
      projection_expression: '#yr, title, info.rating',
      expression_attribute_names: { '#yr' => 'year' },
      expression_attribute_values: {
        ':start_yr' => year_range[:start], ':end_yr' => year_range[:end]
      }
    }
    done = false
    start_key = nil
    until done
      scan_hash[:exclusive_start_key] = start_key unless start_key.nil?
      response = @table.scan(scan_hash)
      movies.concat(response.items) unless response.items.empty?
      start_key = response.last_evaluated_key
      done = start_key.nil?
    end
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't scan for movies. Here's why:")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    movies
  end
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class DynamoDBBasics
```

```
  attr_reader :dynamo_resource, :table

  def initialize(table_name)
    client = Aws::DynamoDB::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @dynamo_resource = Aws::DynamoDB::Resource.new(client: client)
    @table = @dynamo_resource.table(table_name)
  end

  # Updates rating and plot data for a movie in the table.
  #
  # @param movie [Hash] The title, year, plot, rating of the movie.
  def update_item(movie)
    response = @table.update_item(
      key: { 'year' => movie[:year], 'title' => movie[:title] },
      update_expression: 'set info.rating=:r',
      expression_attribute_values: { ':r' => movie[:rating] },
      return_values: 'UPDATED_NEW'
    )
  rescue Aws::DynamoDB::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't update movie #{movie[:title]} (#{movie[:year]}) in table
#{@table.name}\n")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    response.attributes
  end
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scenarios

Query a table by using batches of PartiQL statements

The following code example shows how to:

- Get a batch of items by running multiple SELECT statements.
- Add a batch of items by running multiple INSERT statements.
- Update a batch of items by running multiple UPDATE statements.
- Delete a batch of items by running multiple DELETE statements.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs batch PartiQL queries.

```
table_name = "doc-example-table-movies-partiql-#{rand(10**4)}"
scaffold = Scaffold.new(table_name)
sdk = DynamoDBPartiQLBatch.new(table_name)

new_step(1, 'Create a new DynamoDB table if none already exists.')
unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)
  puts("\nNo such table: #{table_name}. Creating it...")
  scaffold.create_table(table_name)
  print "Done!\n".green
end

new_step(2, 'Populate DynamoDB table with movie data.')
download_file = 'moviedata.json'
puts("Downloading movie database to #{download_file}...")
movie_data = scaffold.fetch_movie_data(download_file)
puts("Writing movie data from #{download_file} into your table...")
scaffold.write_batch(movie_data)
puts("Records added: #{movie_data.length}.")
print "Done!\n".green

new_step(3, 'Select a batch of items from the movies table.')
puts "Let's select some popular movies for side-by-side comparison."
response = sdk.batch_execute_select([['Mean Girls', 2004], ['Goodfellas', 1977],
['The Prancing of the Lambs', 2005]])
puts("Items selected: #{response['responses'].length}\n")
print "\nDone!\n".green

new_step(4, 'Delete a batch of items from the movies table.')
sdk.batch_execute_write([['Mean Girls', 2004], ['Goodfellas', 1977], ['The
Prancing of the Lambs', 2005]])
print "\nDone!\n".green

new_step(5, 'Delete the table.')
```

```
  return unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)

  scaffold.delete_table
end
```

- For API details, see BatchExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Run a scenario that creates a table and runs PartiQL queries.

```
table_name = "doc-example-table-movies-partiql-#{rand(10**8)}"
scaffold = Scaffold.new(table_name)
sdk = DynamoDBPartiQLSingle.new(table_name)

new_step(1, 'Create a new DynamoDB table if none already exists.')
unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)
  puts("\nNo such table: #{table_name}. Creating it...")
  scaffold.create_table(table_name)
  print "Done!\n".green
end

new_step(2, 'Populate DynamoDB table with movie data.')
```

```
  download_file = 'moviedata.json'
  puts("Downloading movie database to #{download_file}...")
  movie_data = scaffold.fetch_movie_data(download_file)
  puts("Writing movie data from #{download_file} into your table...")
  scaffold.write_batch(movie_data)
  puts("Records added: #{movie_data.length}.")
  print "Done!\n".green

  new_step(3, 'Select a single item from the movies table.')
  response = sdk.select_item_by_title('Star Wars')
  puts("Items selected for title 'Star Wars': #{response.items.length}\n")
  print response.items.first.to_s.yellow
  print "\n\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(4, 'Update a single item from the movies table.')
  puts "Let's correct the rating on The Big Lebowski to 10.0."
  sdk.update_rating_by_title('The Big Lebowski', 1998, 10.0)
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(5, 'Delete a single item from the movies table.')
  puts "Let's delete The Silence of the Lambs because it's just too scary."
  sdk.delete_item_by_title('The Silence of the Lambs', 1991)
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(6, 'Insert a new item into the movies table.')
  puts "Let's create a less-scary movie called The Prancing of the Lambs."
  sdk.insert_item('The Prancing of the Lambs', 2005, 'A movie about happy
 livestock.', 5.0)
  print "\nDone!\n".green

  new_step(7, 'Delete the table.')
  return unless scaffold.exists?(table_name)

  scaffold.delete_table
end
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    return 'received empty event' if event['Records'].empty?

    event['Records'].each do |record|
      log_dynamodb_record(record)
    end

    "Records processed: #{event['Records'].length}"
  end

  def log_dynamodb_record(record)
    puts record['eventID']
    puts record['eventName']
    puts "DynamoDB Record: #{JSON.generate(record['dynamodb'])}"
  end
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    records = event["Records"]
    cur_record_sequence_number = ""

    records.each do |record|
      begin
        # Process your record
        cur_record_sequence_number = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
      rescue StandardError => e
        # Return failed record's sequence number
        return {"batchItemFailures" => [{"itemIdentifier" =>
 cur_record_sequence_number}]}
      end
    end

    {"batchItemFailures" => []}
  end
```

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon EC2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'
require 'logger'

# EC2Manager is a class responsible for managing EC2 operations
# such as listing all EC2 instances in the current AWS account.
class EC2Manager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all EC2 instances in the current AWS account.
  def list_instances
    @logger.info('Listing instances')

    instances = fetch_instances

    if instances.empty?
      @logger.info('You have no instances')
    else
      print_instances(instances)
    end
  end

  private

  # Fetches all EC2 instances using pagination.
  #
  # @return [Array<Aws::EC2::Types::Instance>] List of EC2 instances.
  def fetch_instances
```

```
    paginator = @client.describe_instances
    instances = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      page.reservations.each do |reservation|
        reservation.instances.each do |instance|
          instances << instance
        end
      end
    end

    instances
  end

  # Prints details of the given EC2 instances.
  #
  # @param instances [Array<Aws::EC2::Types::Instance>] List of EC2 instances to
 print.
  def print_instances(instances)
    instances.each do |instance|
      @logger.info("Instance ID: #{instance.instance_id}")
      @logger.info("Instance Type: #{instance.instance_type}")
      @logger.info("Public IP: #{instance.public_ip_address}")
      @logger.info("Public DNS Name: #{instance.public_dns_name}")
      @logger.info("\n")
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
  manager = EC2Manager.new(ec2_client)
  manager.list_instances
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates an Elastic IP address in Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC).
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @return [String] The allocation ID corresponding to the Elastic IP address.
# @example
#   puts allocate_elastic_ip_address(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def allocate_elastic_ip_address(ec2_client)
  response = ec2_client.allocate_address(domain: 'vpc')
  response.allocation_id
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error allocating Elastic IP address: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Associates an Elastic IP address with an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud
# (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The allocation ID corresponding to the Elastic IP address.
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param allocation_id [String] The ID of the allocation corresponding to
#   the Elastic IP address.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [String] The assocation ID corresponding to the association of the
#   Elastic IP address to the instance.
# @example
#   puts allocate_elastic_ip_address(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'eipalloc-04452e528a66279EX',
#     'i-033c48ef067af3dEX')
def associate_elastic_ip_address_with_instance(
  ec2_client,
  allocation_id,
  instance_id
)
  response = ec2_client.associate_address(
    allocation_id: allocation_id,
    instance_id: instance_id
  )
  response.association_id
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error associating Elastic IP address with instance: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This code example does the following:
# 1. Creates a key pair in Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
# 2. Displays information about available key pairs.
# 3. Deletes the key pair.

require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param key_pair_name [String] The name for the key pair and private
#   key file.
# @return [Boolean] true if the key pair and private key file were
#   created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless key_pair_created?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-key-pair'
#   )
def key_pair_created?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
  key_pair = ec2_client.create_key_pair(key_name: key_pair_name)
  puts "Created key pair '#{key_pair.key_name}' with fingerprint " \
    "'#{key_pair.key_fingerprint}' and ID '#{key_pair.key_pair_id}'."
  filename = File.join(Dir.home, "#{key_pair_name}.pem")
  File.open(filename, 'w') { |file| file.write(key_pair.key_material) }
  puts "Private key file saved locally as '#{filename}'."
  true
```

```
rescue Aws::EC2::Errors::InvalidKeyPairDuplicate
  puts "Error creating key pair: a key pair named '#{key_pair_name}' " \
    'already exists.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating key pair or saving private key file: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Displays information about available key pairs in
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @example
#   describe_key_pairs(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)
  result = ec2_client.describe_key_pairs
  if result.key_pairs.count.zero?
    puts 'No key pairs found.'
  else
    puts 'Key pair names:'
    result.key_pairs.each do |key_pair|
      puts key_pair.key_name
    end
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about key pairs: #{e.message}"
end

# Deletes a key pair in Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The key pair to delete.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param key_pair_name [String] The name of the key pair to delete.
# @return [Boolean] true if the key pair was deleted; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless key_pair_deleted?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-key-pair'
#   )
def key_pair_deleted?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
```

```
  ec2_client.delete_key_pair(key_name: key_pair_name)
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error deleting key pair: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  key_pair_name = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-key-pairs.rb KEY_PAIR_NAME REGION'
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-key-pairs.rb my-key-pair us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    key_pair_name = 'my-key-pair'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    key_pair_name = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts 'Displaying existing key pair names before creating this key pair...'
  describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Creating key pair...'
  unless key_pair_created?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
    puts 'Stopping program.'
    exit 1
  end

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Displaying existing key pair names after creating this key pair...'
  describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)

  puts '-' * 10
```

```
  puts 'Deleting key pair...'
  unless key_pair_deleted?(ec2_client, key_pair_name)
    puts 'Stopping program. You must delete the key pair yourself.'
    exit 1
  end
  puts 'Key pair deleted.'

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Now that the key pair is deleted, ' \
    'also deleting the related private key pair file...'
  filename = File.join(Dir.home, "#{key_pair_name}.pem")
  File.delete(filename)
  if File.exist?(filename)
    puts "Could not delete file at '#{filename}'. You must delete it yourself."
  else
    puts 'File deleted.'
  end

  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Displaying existing key pair names after deleting this key pair...'
  describe_key_pairs(ec2_client)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateRouteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRouteTable`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'
```

```
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A VPC in Amazon VPC.
# - A subnet in that VPC.
# - A gateway attached to that subnet.
#
# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized
#   Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource object.
# @param vpc_id [String] The ID of the VPC for the route table.
# @param subnet_id [String] The ID of the subnet for the route table.
# @param gateway_id [String] The ID of the gateway for the route.
# @param destination_cidr_block [String] The destination CIDR block
#   for the route.
# @param tag_key [String] The key portion of the tag for the route table.
# @param tag_value [String] The value portion of the tag for the route table.
# @return [Boolean] true if the route table was created and associated;
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless route_table_created_and_associated?(
#     Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'vpc-0b6f769731EXAMPLE',
#     'subnet-03d9303b57EXAMPLE',
#     'igw-06ca90c011EXAMPLE',
#     '0.0.0.0/0',
#     'my-key',
#     'my-value'
#   )
def route_table_created_and_associated?(
  ec2_resource,
  vpc_id,
  subnet_id,
  gateway_id,
  destination_cidr_block,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  route_table = ec2_resource.create_route_table(vpc_id: vpc_id)
  puts "Created route table with ID '#{route_table.id}'."
  route_table.create_tags(
    tags: [
      {
        key: tag_key,
        value: tag_value
      }
```

```
    ]
  )
  puts 'Added tags to route table.'
  route_table.create_route(
    destination_cidr_block: destination_cidr_block,
    gateway_id: gateway_id
  )
  puts 'Created route with destination CIDR block ' \
    "'#{destination_cidr_block}' and associated with gateway " \
    "with ID '#{gateway_id}'."
  route_table.associate_with_subnet(subnet_id: subnet_id)
  puts "Associated route table with subnet with ID '#{subnet_id}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating or associating route table: #{e.message}"
  puts 'If the route table was created but not associated, you should ' \
    'clean up by deleting the route table.'
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  vpc_id = ''
  subnet_id = ''
  gateway_id = ''
  destination_cidr_block = ''
  tag_key = ''
  tag_value = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-route-table.rb ' \
      'VPC_ID SUBNET_ID GATEWAY_ID DESTINATION_CIDR_BLOCK ' \
      'TAG_KEY TAG_VALUE REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-route-table.rb ' \
      'vpc-0b6f769731EXAMPLE subnet-03d9303b57EXAMPLE igw-06ca90c011EXAMPLE ' \
      "'0.0.0.0/0' my-key my-value us-west-2"
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    vpc_id = 'vpc-0b6f769731EXAMPLE'
    subnet_id = 'subnet-03d9303b57EXAMPLE'
    gateway_id = 'igw-06ca90c011EXAMPLE'
```

```
    destination_cidr_block = '0.0.0.0/0'
    tag_key = 'my-key'
    tag_value = 'my-value'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    vpc_id = ARGV[0]
    subnet_id = ARGV[1]
    gateway_id = ARGV[2]
    destination_cidr_block = ARGV[3]
    tag_key = ARGV[4]
    tag_value = ARGV[5]
    region = ARGV[6]
  end

  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)

  if route_table_created_and_associated?(
    ec2_resource,
    vpc_id,
    subnet_id,
    gateway_id,
    destination_cidr_block,
    tag_key,
    tag_value
  )
    puts 'Route table created and associated.'
  else
    puts 'Route table not created or not associated.'
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateRouteTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This code example does the following:
# 1. Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
# 2. Adds inbound rules to the security group.
# 3. Displays information about available security groups.
# 4. Deletes the security group.

require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Creates an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) security group.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A VPC in Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC).
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon EC2 client.
# @param group_name [String] A name for the security group.
# @param description [String] A description for the security group.
# @param vpc_id [String] The ID of the VPC for the security group.
# @return [String] The ID of security group that was created.
# @example
#   puts create_security_group(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-security-group',
#     'This is my security group.',
#     'vpc-6713dfEX'
#   )
def create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name, description, vpc_id)
  security_group = ec2_client.create_security_group(
    group_name: group_name,
    description: description,
    vpc_id: vpc_id
  )
```

```
  puts "Created security group '#{group_name}' with ID " \
    "'#{security_group.group_id}' in VPC with ID '#{vpc_id}'."
  security_group.group_id
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating security group: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end

# Adds an inbound rule to an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# security group.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The security group.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized Amazon EC2 client.
# @param security_group_id [String] The ID of the security group.
# @param ip_protocol [String] The network protocol for the inbound rule.
# @param from_port [String] The originating port for the inbound rule.
# @param to_port [String] The destination port for the inbound rule.
# @param cidr_ip_range [String] The CIDR IP range for the inbound rule.
# @return
# @example
#   exit 1 unless security_group_ingress_authorized?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'sg-030a858e078f1b9EX',
#     'tcp',
#     '80',
#     '80',
#     '0.0.0.0/0'
#   )
def security_group_ingress_authorized?(
  ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol, from_port, to_port, cidr_ip_range
)
  ec2_client.authorize_security_group_ingress(
    group_id: security_group_id,
    ip_permissions: [
      {
        ip_protocol: ip_protocol,
        from_port: from_port,
        to_port: to_port,
        ip_ranges: [
          {
            cidr_ip: cidr_ip_range
```

```
          }
        ]
      }
    ]
  )
  puts "Added inbound rule to security group '#{security_group_id}' for protocol " \
    "'#{ip_protocol}' from port '#{from_port}' to port '#{to_port}' " \
    "with CIDR IP range '#{cidr_ip_range}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error adding inbound rule to security group: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Refactored method to simplify complexity for describing security group permissions
def format_port_information(perm)
  from_port_str = perm.from_port == '-1' || perm.from_port == -1 ? 'All' :
 perm.from_port.to_s
  to_port_str = perm.to_port == '-1' || perm.to_port == -1 ? 'All' :
 perm.to_port.to_s
  { from_port: from_port_str, to_port: to_port_str }
end

# Displays information about a security group's IP permissions set in
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
def describe_security_group_permissions(perm)
  ports = format_port_information(perm)

  print "  Protocol: #{perm.ip_protocol == '-1' ? 'All' : perm.ip_protocol}"
  print ", From: #{ports[:from_port]}, To: #{ports[:to_port]}"

  print ", CIDR IPv6: #{perm.ipv_6_ranges[0].cidr_ipv_6}" if perm.key?
(:ipv_6_ranges) && perm.ipv_6_ranges.count.positive?

  print ", CIDR IPv4: #{perm.ip_ranges[0].cidr_ip}" if perm.key?(:ip_ranges) &&
 perm.ip_ranges.count.positive?
  print "\n"
end

# Displays information about available security groups in
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2).
def describe_security_groups(ec2_client)
  response = ec2_client.describe_security_groups
```

```
  if response.security_groups.count.positive?
    response.security_groups.each do |sg|
      display_group_details(sg)
    end
  else
    puts 'No security groups found.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about security groups: #{e.message}"
end

# Helper method to display the details of security groups
def display_group_details(sg)
  puts '-' * (sg.group_name.length + 13)
  puts "Name:        #{sg.group_name}"
  puts "Description: #{sg.description}"
  puts "Group ID:    #{sg.group_id}"
  puts "Owner ID:    #{sg.owner_id}"
  puts "VPC ID:      #{sg.vpc_id}"

  display_group_tags(sg.tags) if sg.tags.count.positive?
  display_group_permissions(sg)
end

def display_group_tags(tags)
  puts 'Tags:'
  tags.each do |tag|
    puts "  Key: #{tag.key}, Value: #{tag.value}"
  end
end

def display_group_permissions(sg)
  if sg.ip_permissions.count.positive?
    puts 'Inbound rules:'
    sg.ip_permissions.each do |p|
      describe_security_group_permissions(p)
    end
  end

  return if sg.ip_permissions_egress.empty?

  puts 'Outbound rules:'
  sg.ip_permissions_egress.each do |p|
    describe_security_group_permissions(p)
```

```
  end
end

# Deletes an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# security group.
def security_group_deleted?(ec2_client, security_group_id)
  ec2_client.delete_security_group(group_id: security_group_id)
  puts "Deleted security group '#{security_group_id}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error deleting security group: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage with refactored run_me to reduce complexity
def run_me
  group_name, description, vpc_id, ip_protocol_http, from_port_http, to_port_http, \
  cidr_ip_range_http, ip_protocol_ssh, from_port_ssh, to_port_ssh, \
  cidr_ip_range_ssh, region = process_arguments
  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  security_group_id = attempt_create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name,
 description, vpc_id)
  security_group_exists = security_group_id != 'Error'

  if security_group_exists
    add_inbound_rules(ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol_http,
 from_port_http, to_port_http, cidr_ip_range_http)
    add_inbound_rules(ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol_ssh, from_port_ssh,
 to_port_ssh, cidr_ip_range_ssh)
  end

  describe_security_groups(ec2_client)
  attempt_delete_security_group(ec2_client, security_group_id) if
 security_group_exists
end

def process_arguments
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    display_help
    exit 1
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    default_values
  else
```

```
    ARGV
  end
end

def attempt_create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name, description, vpc_id)
  puts 'Attempting to create security group...'
  security_group_id = create_security_group(ec2_client, group_name, description,
 vpc_id)
  puts 'Could not create security group. Skipping this step.' if security_group_id
 == 'Error'
  security_group_id
end

def add_inbound_rules(ec2_client, security_group_id, ip_protocol, from_port,
 to_port, cidr_ip_range)
  puts 'Attempting to add inbound rules to security group...'
  return if security_group_ingress_authorized?(ec2_client, security_group_id,
 ip_protocol, from_port, to_port,
                                               cidr_ip_range)

  puts 'Could not add inbound rule to security group. Skipping this step.'
end

def attempt_delete_security_group(ec2_client, security_group_id)
  puts "\nAttempting to delete security group..."
  return if security_group_deleted?(ec2_client, security_group_id)

  puts 'Could not delete security group. You must delete it yourself.'
end

def display_help
  puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-security-group.rb ' \
    'GROUP_NAME DESCRIPTION VPC_ID IP_PROTOCOL_1 FROM_PORT_1 TO_PORT_1 ' \
    'CIDR_IP_RANGE_1 IP_PROTOCOL_2 FROM_PORT_2 TO_PORT_2 ' \
    'CIDR_IP_RANGE_2 REGION'
  puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-security-group.rb ' \
    "my-security-group 'This is my security group.' vpc-6713dfEX " \
    "tcp 80 80 '0.0.0.0/0' tcp 22 22 '0.0.0.0/0' us-west-2"
end

def default_values
  [
    'my-security-group', 'This is my security group.', 'vpc-6713dfEX', 'tcp', '80',
 '80',
```

```
    '0.0.0.0/0', 'tcp', '22', '22', '0.0.0.0/0', 'us-west-2'
  ]
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateSubnet`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSubnet`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Creates a subnet within a virtual private cloud (VPC) in
# Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) and then tags
# the subnet.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A VPC in Amazon VPC.
#
# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized
#   Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource object.
# @param vpc_id [String] The ID of the VPC for the subnet.
# @param cidr_block [String] The IPv4 CIDR block for the subnet.
# @param availability_zone [String] The ID of the Availability Zone
#   for the subnet.
# @param tag_key [String] The key portion of the tag for the subnet.
# @param tag_vlue [String] The value portion of the tag for the subnet.
# @return [Boolean] true if the subnet was created and tagged;
#   otherwise, false.
```

```
# @example
#   exit 1 unless subnet_created_and_tagged?(
#     Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'vpc-6713dfEX',
#     '10.0.0.0/24',
#     'us-west-2a',
#     'my-key',
#     'my-value'
#   )
def subnet_created_and_tagged?(
  ec2_resource,
  vpc_id,
  cidr_block,
  availability_zone,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  subnet = ec2_resource.create_subnet(
    vpc_id: vpc_id,
    cidr_block: cidr_block,
    availability_zone: availability_zone
  )
  subnet.create_tags(
    tags: [
      {
        key: tag_key,
        value: tag_value
      }
    ]
  )
  puts "Subnet created with ID '#{subnet.id}' in VPC with ID '#{vpc_id}' " \
    "and CIDR block '#{cidr_block}' in availability zone " \
    "'#{availability_zone}' and tagged with key '#{tag_key}' and " \
    "value '#{tag_value}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating or tagging subnet: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  vpc_id = ''
  cidr_block = ''
```

```
availability_zone = ''
tag_key = ''
tag_value = ''
region = ''
# Print usage information and then stop.
if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
  puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-subnet.rb ' \
    'VPC_ID CIDR_BLOCK AVAILABILITY_ZONE TAG_KEY TAG_VALUE REGION'
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-subnet.rb ' \
    'vpc-6713dfEX 10.0.0.0/24 us-west-2a my-key my-value us-west-2'
  exit 1
# If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
elsif ARGV.count.zero?
  vpc_id = 'vpc-6713dfEX'
  cidr_block = '10.0.0.0/24'
  availability_zone = 'us-west-2a'
  tag_key = 'my-key'
  tag_value = 'my-value'
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  region = 'us-west-2'
# Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
else
  vpc_id = ARGV[0]
  cidr_block = ARGV[1]
  availability_zone = ARGV[2]
  tag_key = ARGV[3]
  tag_value = ARGV[4]
  region = ARGV[5]
end

ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)

if subnet_created_and_tagged?(
  ec2_resource,
  vpc_id,
  cidr_block,
  availability_zone,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  puts 'Subnet created and tagged.'
else
  puts 'Subnet not created or not tagged.'
```

```
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateSubnet in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateVpc`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateVpc`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Creates a virtual private cloud (VPC) in
# Amazon Virtual Private Cloud (Amazon VPC) and then tags
# the VPC.
#
# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized
#   Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) resource object.
# @param cidr_block [String] The IPv4 CIDR block for the subnet.
# @param tag_key [String] The key portion of the tag for the VPC.
# @param tag_value [String] The value portion of the tag for the VPC.
# @return [Boolean] true if the VPC was created and tagged;
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless vpc_created_and_tagged?(
#     Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     '10.0.0.0/24',
#     'my-key',
#     'my-value'
#   )
def vpc_created_and_tagged?(
```

```
  ec2_resource,
  cidr_block,
  tag_key,
  tag_value
)
  vpc = ec2_resource.create_vpc(cidr_block: cidr_block)

  # Create a public DNS by enabling DNS support and DNS hostnames.
  vpc.modify_attribute(enable_dns_support: { value: true })
  vpc.modify_attribute(enable_dns_hostnames: { value: true })

  vpc.create_tags(tags: [{ key: tag_key, value: tag_value }])

  puts "Created VPC with ID '#{vpc.id}' and tagged with key " \
    "'#{tag_key}' and value '#{tag_value}'."
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts e.message
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  cidr_block = ''
  tag_key = ''
  tag_value = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-vpc.rb ' \
      'CIDR_BLOCK TAG_KEY TAG_VALUE REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-create-vpc.rb ' \
      '10.0.0.0/24 my-key my-value us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    cidr_block = '10.0.0.0/24'
    tag_key = 'my-key'
    tag_value = 'my-value'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
```

```
    cidr_block = ARGV[0]
    tag_key = ARGV[1]
    tag_value = ARGV[2]
    region = ARGV[3]
  end

  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)

  if vpc_created_and_tagged?(
    ec2_resource,
    cidr_block,
    tag_key,
    tag_value
  )
    puts 'VPC created and tagged.'
  else
    puts 'VPC not created or not tagged.'
  end
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateVpc in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# @param ec2_resource [Aws::EC2::Resource] An initialized EC2 resource object.
```

```
# @example
#   list_instance_ids_states(Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_instance_ids_states(ec2_resource)
  response = ec2_resource.instances
  if response.count.zero?
    puts 'No instances found.'
  else
    puts 'Instances -- ID, state:'
    response.each do |instance|
      puts "#{instance.id}, #{instance.state.name}"
    end
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about instances: #{e.message}"
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-get-all-instance-info.rb REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-get-all-instance-info.rb us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    region = ARGV[0]
  end
  ec2_resource = Aws::EC2::Resource.new(region: region)
  list_instance_ids_states(ec2_resource)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeRegions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRegions`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @example
#   list_regions_endpoints(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_regions_endpoints(ec2_client)
  result = ec2_client.describe_regions
  # Enable pretty printing.
  max_region_string_length = 16
  max_endpoint_string_length = 33
  # Print header.
  print 'Region'
  print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - 'Region'.length)
  print "  Endpoint\n"
  print '-' * max_region_string_length
  print '  '
  print '-' * max_endpoint_string_length
  print "\n"
  # Print Regions and their endpoints.
  result.regions.each do |region|
    print region.region_name
    print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - region.region_name.length)
    print '  '
    print region.endpoint
    print "\n"
  end
end

# Displays a list of Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2)
# Availability Zones available to you depending on the AWS Region
```

```
# of the Amazon EC2 client.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @example
#   list_availability_zones(Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_availability_zones(ec2_client)
  result = ec2_client.describe_availability_zones
  # Enable pretty printing.
  max_region_string_length = 16
  max_zone_string_length = 18
  max_state_string_length = 9
  # Print header.
  print 'Region'
  print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - 'Region'.length)
  print '  Zone'
  print ' ' * (max_zone_string_length - 'Zone'.length)
  print "  State\n"
  print '-' * max_region_string_length
  print '  '
  print '-' * max_zone_string_length
  print '  '
  print '-' * max_state_string_length
  print "\n"
  # Print Regions, Availability Zones, and their states.
  result.availability_zones.each do |zone|
    print zone.region_name
    print ' ' * (max_region_string_length - zone.region_name.length)
    print '  '
    print zone.zone_name
    print ' ' * (max_zone_string_length - zone.zone_name.length)
    print '  '
    print zone.state
    # Print any messages for this Availability Zone.
    if zone.messages.count.positive?
      print "\n"
      puts '  Messages for this zone:'
      zone.messages.each do |message|
        print "    #{message.message}\n"
      end
    end
    print "\n"
  end
end
```

```
# Example usage:
def run_me
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-regions-availability-zones.rb REGION'
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-regions-availability-zones.rb us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    region = ARGV[0]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts 'AWS Regions for Amazon EC2 that are available to you:'
  list_regions_endpoints(ec2_client)
  puts "\n\nAmazon EC2 Availability Zones that are available to you for AWS Region
 '#{region}':"
  list_availability_zones(ec2_client)
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Releases an Elastic IP address from an
# Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - An Amazon EC2 instance with an associated Elastic IP address.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param allocation_id [String] The ID of the allocation corresponding to
#   the Elastic IP address.
# @return [Boolean] true if the Elastic IP address was released;
#   otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless elastic_ip_address_released?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'eipalloc-04452e528a66279EX'
#   )
def elastic_ip_address_released?(ec2_client, allocation_id)
  ec2_client.release_address(allocation_id: allocation_id)
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts("Error releasing Elastic IP address: #{e.message}")
  false
end
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Attempts to start an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was started; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_started?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'i-123abc'
#   )
def instance_started?(ec2_client, instance_id)
  response = ec2_client.describe_instance_status(instance_ids: [instance_id])

  if response.instance_statuses.count.positive?
    state = response.instance_statuses[0].instance_state.name
    case state
    when 'pending'
      puts 'Error starting instance: the instance is pending. Try again later.'
      return false
    when 'running'
      puts 'The instance is already running.'
      return true
    when 'terminated'
      puts 'Error starting instance: ' \
        'the instance is terminated, so you cannot start it.'
      return false
    end
  end

  ec2_client.start_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_running, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance started.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error starting instance: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

```
# Example usage:
def run_me
  instance_id = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-start-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'INSTANCE_ID REGION '
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-start-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'i-123abc us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    instance_id = 'i-123abc'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    instance_id = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Attempting to start instance '#{instance_id}' " \
    '(this might take a few minutes)...'
  return if instance_started?(ec2_client, instance_id)

  puts 'Could not start instance.'
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was stopped; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_stopped?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'i-123abc'
#   )
def instance_stopped?(ec2_client, instance_id)
  response = ec2_client.describe_instance_status(instance_ids: [instance_id])

  if response.instance_statuses.count.positive?
    state = response.instance_statuses[0].instance_state.name
    case state
    when 'stopping'
      puts 'The instance is already stopping.'
      return true
    when 'stopped'
      puts 'The instance is already stopped.'
      return true
    when 'terminated'
      puts 'Error stopping instance: ' \
        'the instance is terminated, so you cannot stop it.'
      return false
    end
  end
```

```
  ec2_client.stop_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_stopped, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance stopped.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error stopping instance: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  instance_id = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-stop-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'INSTANCE_ID REGION '
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-start-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'i-123abc us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    instance_id = 'i-123abc'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    instance_id = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Attempting to stop instance '#{instance_id}' " \
    '(this might take a few minutes)...'
  return if instance_stopped?(ec2_client, instance_id)

  puts 'Could not stop instance.'
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'

# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized EC2 client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was terminated; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_terminated?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'i-123abc'
#   )
def instance_terminated?(ec2_client, instance_id)
  response = ec2_client.describe_instance_status(instance_ids: [instance_id])

  if response.instance_statuses.count.positive? &&
     response.instance_statuses[0].instance_state.name == 'terminated'

    puts 'The instance is already terminated.'
    return true
  end

  ec2_client.terminate_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_terminated, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance terminated.'
```

```
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error terminating instance: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Example usage:
def run_me
  instance_id = ''
  region = ''
  # Print usage information and then stop.
  if ARGV[0] == '--help' || ARGV[0] == '-h'
    puts 'Usage:   ruby ec2-ruby-example-terminate-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'INSTANCE_ID REGION '
    # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
    puts 'Example: ruby ec2-ruby-example-terminate-instance-i-123abc.rb ' \
      'i-123abc us-west-2'
    exit 1
  # If no values are specified at the command prompt, use these default values.
  # Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon EC2.
  elsif ARGV.count.zero?
    instance_id = 'i-123abc'
    region = 'us-west-2'
  # Otherwise, use the values as specified at the command prompt.
  else
    instance_id = ARGV[0]
    region = ARGV[1]
  end

  ec2_client = Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Attempting to terminate instance '#{instance_id}' " \
    '(this might take a few minutes)...'
  return if instance_terminated?(ec2_client, instance_id)

  puts 'Could not terminate instance.'
end

run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Elastic Beanstalk examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Elastic Beanstalk.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeApplications`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeApplications`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Class to manage Elastic Beanstalk applications
class ElasticBeanstalkManager
  def initialize(eb_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @eb_client = eb_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists applications and their environments
  def list_applications
    @eb_client.describe_applications.applications.each do |application|
      log_application_details(application)
      list_environments(application.application_name)
    end
```

```
  rescue Aws::ElasticBeanstalk::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Elastic Beanstalk Service Error: #{e.message}")
  end

  private

  # Logs application details
  def log_application_details(application)
    @logger.info("Name:        #{application.application_name}")
    @logger.info("Description: #{application.description}")
  end

  # Lists and logs details of environments for a given application
  def list_environments(application_name)
    @eb_client.describe_environments(application_name:
 application_name).environments.each do |env|
      @logger.info("  Environment:  #{env.environment_name}")
      @logger.info("    URL:        #{env.cname}")
      @logger.info("    Health:     #{env.health}")
    end
  rescue Aws::ElasticBeanstalk::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing environments for application #{application_name}:
 #{e.message}")
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeApplications in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListAvailableSolutionStacks`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAvailableSolutionStacks`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Manages listing of AWS Elastic Beanstalk solution stacks
```

```
# @param [Aws::ElasticBeanstalk::Client] eb_client
# @param [String] filter - Returns subset of results based on match
# @param [Logger] logger
class StackLister
  # Initialize with AWS Elastic Beanstalk client
  def initialize(eb_client, filter, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @eb_client = eb_client
    @filter = filter.downcase
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists and logs Elastic Beanstalk solution stacks
  def list_stacks
    stacks = @eb_client.list_available_solution_stacks.solution_stacks
    orig_length = stacks.length
    filtered_length = 0

    stacks.each do |stack|
      if @filter.empty? || stack.downcase.include?(@filter)
        @logger.info(stack)
        filtered_length += 1
      end
    end

    log_summary(filtered_length, orig_length)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing solution stacks: #{e.message}")
  end

  private

  # Logs summary of listed stacks
  def log_summary(filtered_length, orig_length)
    if @filter.empty?
      @logger.info("Showed #{orig_length} stack(s)")
    else
      @logger.info("Showed #{filtered_length} stack(s) of #{orig_length}")
    end
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAvailableSolutionStacks in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`UpdateApplication`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateApplication`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Manages deployment of Rails applications to AWS Elastic Beanstalk
class RailsAppDeployer
  def initialize(eb_client, s3_client, app_name, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @eb_client = eb_client
    @s3_client = s3_client
    @app_name = app_name
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deploys the latest application version to Elastic Beanstalk
  def deploy
    create_storage_location
    zip_file_name = create_zip_file
    upload_zip_to_s3(zip_file_name)
    create_and_deploy_new_application_version(zip_file_name)
  end

  private

  # Creates a new S3 storage location for the application
  def create_storage_location
    resp = @eb_client.create_storage_location
    @logger.info("Created storage location in bucket #{resp.s3_bucket}")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to create storage location: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Creates a ZIP file of the application using git
  def create_zip_file
    zip_file_basename = SecureRandom.urlsafe_base64
    zip_file_name = "#{zip_file_basename}.zip"
```

```
    `git archive --format=zip -o #{zip_file_name} HEAD`
    zip_file_name
  end

  # Uploads the ZIP file to the S3 bucket
  def upload_zip_to_s3(zip_file_name)
    zip_contents = File.read(zip_file_name)
    key = "#{@app_name}/#{zip_file_name}"
    @s3_client.put_object(body: zip_contents, bucket: fetch_bucket_name, key: key)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to upload ZIP file to S3: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Fetches the S3 bucket name from Elastic Beanstalk application versions
  def fetch_bucket_name
    app_versions = @eb_client.describe_application_versions(application_name:
@app_name)
    av = app_versions.application_versions.first
    av.source_bundle.s3_bucket
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to fetch bucket name: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates a new application version and deploys it
  def create_and_deploy_new_application_version(zip_file_name)
    version_label = File.basename(zip_file_name, '.zip')
    @eb_client.create_application_version(
      process: false,
      application_name: @app_name,
      version_label: version_label,
      source_bundle: {
        s3_bucket: fetch_bucket_name,
        s3_key: "#{@app_name}/#{zip_file_name}"
      },
      description: "Updated #{Time.now.strftime('%d/%m/%Y')}"
    )
    update_environment(version_label)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to create or deploy application version: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the environment to the new application version
  def update_environment(version_label)
```

```
    env_name = fetch_environment_name
    @eb_client.update_environment(
      environment_name: env_name,
      version_label: version_label
    )
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to update environment: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Fetches the environment name of the application
  def fetch_environment_name
    envs = @eb_client.describe_environments(application_name: @app_name)
    envs.environments.first.environment_name
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to fetch environment name: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see UpdateApplication in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

EventBridge examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with EventBridge.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create and trigger a rule

The following code example shows how to create and trigger a rule in Amazon EventBridge.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Call the functions in the correct order.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sns'
require 'aws-sdk-iam'
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatchevents'
require 'aws-sdk-ec2'
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatch'
require 'aws-sdk-cloudwatchlogs'
require 'securerandom'
```

Checks whether the specified Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS) topic exists among those provided to this function.

```
# Checks whether the specified Amazon SNS
# topic exists among those provided to this function.
# This is a helper function that is called by the topic_exists? function.
#
# @param topics [Array] An array of Aws::SNS::Types::Topic objects.
# @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the topic to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the topic ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#   response = sns_client.list_topics
#   if topic_found?(
#     response.topics,
#     'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic'
#   )
#     puts 'Topic found.'
#   end
def topic_found?(topics, topic_arn)
  topics.each do |topic|
    return true if topic.topic_arn == topic_arn
  end
```

```
  false
end
```

Checks whether the specified topic exists among those available to the caller in Amazon SNS.

```
# Checks whether the specified topic exists among those available to the
# caller in Amazon SNS.
#
# @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] An initialized Amazon SNS client.
# @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the topic to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the topic ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless topic_exists?(
#     Aws::SNS::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic'
#   )
def topic_exists?(sns_client, topic_arn)
  puts "Searching for topic with ARN '#{topic_arn}'..."
  response = sns_client.list_topics
  if response.topics.count.positive?
    if topic_found?(response.topics, topic_arn)
      puts 'Topic found.'
      return true
    end
    while response.next_page?
      response = response.next_page
      next unless response.topics.count.positive?

      if topic_found?(response.topics, topic_arn)
        puts 'Topic found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Topic not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Topic not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a topic in Amazon SNS and then subscribe an email address to receive notifications to that topic.

```
# Creates a topic in Amazon SNS
# and then subscribes an email address to receive notifications to that topic.
#
# @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] An initialized Amazon SNS client.
# @param topic_name [String] The name of the topic to create.
# @param email_address [String] The email address of the recipient to notify.
# @return [String] The ARN of the topic that was created.
# @example
#   puts create_topic(
#     Aws::SNS::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic',
#     'mary@example.com'
#   )
def create_topic(sns_client, topic_name, email_address)
  puts "Creating the topic named '#{topic_name}'..."
  topic_response = sns_client.create_topic(name: topic_name)
  puts "Topic created with ARN '#{topic_response.topic_arn}'."
  subscription_response = sns_client.subscribe(
    topic_arn: topic_response.topic_arn,
    protocol: 'email',
    endpoint: email_address,
    return_subscription_arn: true
  )
  puts 'Subscription created with ARN ' \
    "'#{subscription_response.subscription_arn}'. Have the owner of the " \
    "email address '#{email_address}' check their inbox in a few minutes " \
    'and confirm the subscription to start receiving notification emails.'
  topic_response.topic_arn
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating or subscribing to topic: #{e.message}"
  'Error'
end
```

Check whether the specified AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role exists among those provided to this function.

```
# Checks whether the specified AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
# role exists among those provided to this function.
# This is a helper function that is called by the role_exists? function.
```

```
#
# @param roles [Array] An array of Aws::IAM::Role objects.
# @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the role ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#   response = iam_client.list_roles
#   if role_found?(
#     response.roles,
#     'arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
#     puts 'Role found.'
#   end
def role_found?(roles, role_arn)
  roles.each do |role|
    return true if role.arn == role_arn
  end
  false
end
```

Check whether the specified role exists among those available to the caller in IAM.

```
# Checks whether the specified role exists among those available to the
# caller in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).
#
# @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
# @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the role ARN was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless role_exists?(
#     Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
def role_exists?(iam_client, role_arn)
  puts "Searching for role with ARN '#{role_arn}'..."
  response = iam_client.list_roles
  if response.roles.count.positive?
    if role_found?(response.roles, role_arn)
      puts 'Role found.'
      return true
    end
    while response.next_page?
```

```
      response = response.next_page
      next unless response.roles.count.positive?

      if role_found?(response.roles, role_arn)
        puts 'Role found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Role not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Role not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a role in IAM.

```
# Creates a role in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM).
# This role is used by a rule in Amazon EventBridge to allow
# that rule to operate within the caller's account.
# This role is designed to be used specifically by this code example.
#
# @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
# @param role_name [String] The name of the role to create.
# @return [String] The ARN of the role that was created.
# @example
#   puts create_role(
#     Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
def create_role(iam_client, role_name)
  puts "Creating the role named '#{role_name}'..."
  response = iam_client.create_role(
    assume_role_policy_document: {
      'Version': '2012-10-17',
      'Statement': [
        {
          'Sid': '',
          'Effect': 'Allow',
          'Principal': {
            'Service': 'events.amazonaws.com'
```

```
          },
          'Action': 'sts:AssumeRole'
        }
      ]
    }.to_json,
    path: '/',
    role_name: role_name
  )
  puts "Role created with ARN '#{response.role.arn}'."
  puts 'Adding access policy to role...'
  iam_client.put_role_policy(
    policy_document: {
      'Version': '2012-10-17',
      'Statement': [
        {
          'Sid': 'CloudWatchEventsFullAccess',
          'Effect': 'Allow',
          'Resource': '*',
          'Action': 'events:*'
        },
        {
          'Sid': 'IAMPassRoleForCloudWatchEvents',
          'Effect': 'Allow',
          'Resource': 'arn:aws:iam::*:role/AWS_Events_Invoke_Targets',
          'Action': 'iam:PassRole'
        }
      ]
    }.to_json,
    policy_name: 'CloudWatchEventsPolicy',
    role_name: role_name
  )
  puts 'Access policy added to role.'
  response.role.arn
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating role or adding policy to it: #{e.message}"
  puts 'If the role was created, you must add the access policy ' \
    'to the role yourself, or delete the role yourself and try again.'
  'Error'
end
```

Checks whether the specified EventBridge rule exists among those provided to this function.

```
# Checks whether the specified Amazon EventBridge rule exists among
# those provided to this function.
# This is a helper function that is called by the rule_exists? function.
#
# @param rules [Array] An array of Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Types::Rule objects.
# @param rule_arn [String] The name of the rule to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the name of the rule was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   cloudwatchevents_client = Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#   response = cloudwatchevents_client.list_rules
#   if rule_found?(response.rules, 'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change')
#     puts 'Rule found.'
#   end
def rule_found?(rules, rule_name)
  rules.each do |rule|
    return true if rule.name == rule_name
  end
  false
end
```

Checks whether the specified rule exists among those available to the caller in EventBridge.

```
# Checks whether the specified rule exists among those available to the
# caller in Amazon EventBridge.
#
# @param cloudwatchevents_client [Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Client]
#   An initialized Amazon EventBridge client.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the rule to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the rule name was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless rule_exists?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change'
#   )
def rule_exists?(cloudwatchevents_client, rule_name)
  puts "Searching for rule with name '#{rule_name}'..."
  response = cloudwatchevents_client.list_rules
  if response.rules.count.positive?
    if rule_found?(response.rules, rule_name)
      puts 'Rule found.'
      return true
    end
```

```
    while response.next_page?
      response = response.next_page
      next unless response.rules.count.positive?

      if rule_found?(response.rules, rule_name)
        puts 'Rule found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Rule not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Rule not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a rule in EventBridge.

```
# Creates a rule in Amazon EventBridge.
# This rule is triggered whenever an available instance in
# Amazon EC2 changes to the specified state.
# This rule is designed to be used specifically by this code example.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A role in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) that is designed
#   to be used specifically by this code example.
# - A topic in Amazon SNS.
#
# @param cloudwatchevents_client [Aws::CloudWatchEvents::Client]
#   An initialized Amazon EventBridge client.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the rule to create.
# @param rule_description [String] Some description for this rule.
# @param instance_state [String] The state that available instances in
#   Amazon EC2 must change to, to
#   trigger this rule.
# @param role_arn [String] The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM role.
# @param target_id [String] Some identifying string for the rule's target.
# @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the Amazon SNS topic.
# @return [Boolean] true if the rule was created; otherwise, false.
# @example
```

```
#   exit 1 unless rule_created?(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     'Triggers when any available EC2 instance starts.',
#     'running',
#     'arn:aws:iam::111111111111:role/aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     'sns-topic',
#     'arn:aws:sns:us-east-1:111111111111:aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic'
#   )
def rule_created?(
  cloudwatchevents_client,
  rule_name,
  rule_description,
  instance_state,
  role_arn,
  target_id,
  topic_arn
)
  puts "Creating rule with name '#{rule_name}'..."
  put_rule_response = cloudwatchevents_client.put_rule(
    name: rule_name,
    description: rule_description,
    event_pattern: {
      'source': [
        'aws.ec2'
      ],
      'detail-type': [
        'EC2 Instance State-change Notification'
      ],
      'detail': {
        'state': [
          instance_state
        ]
      }
    }.to_json,
    state: 'ENABLED',
    role_arn: role_arn
  )
  puts "Rule created with ARN '#{put_rule_response.rule_arn}'."

  put_targets_response = cloudwatchevents_client.put_targets(
    rule: rule_name,
    targets: [
      {
```

```
        id: target_id,
        arn: topic_arn
      }
    ]
  )
  if put_targets_response.key?(:failed_entry_count) &&
     put_targets_response.failed_entry_count.positive?
    puts 'Error(s) adding target to rule:'
    put_targets_response.failed_entries.each do |failure|
      puts failure.error_message
    end
    false
  else
    true
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating rule or adding target to rule: #{e.message}"
  puts 'If the rule was created, you must add the target ' \
    'to the rule yourself, or delete the rule yourself and try again.'
  false
end
```

Check to see whether the specified log group exists among those available to the caller in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Checks to see whether the specified log group exists among those available
# to the caller in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group to find.
# @return [Boolean] true if the log group name was found; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless log_group_exists?(
#     Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def log_group_exists?(cloudwatchlogs_client, log_group_name)
  puts "Searching for log group with name '#{log_group_name}'..."
  response = cloudwatchlogs_client.describe_log_groups(
    log_group_name_prefix: log_group_name
  )
```

```
  if response.log_groups.count.positive?
    response.log_groups.each do |log_group|
      if log_group.log_group_name == log_group_name
        puts 'Log group found.'
        return true
      end
    end
  end
  puts 'Log group not found.'
  false
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Log group not found: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Create a log group in CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Creates a log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group to create.
# @return [Boolean] true if the log group name was created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless log_group_created?(
#     Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def log_group_created?(cloudwatchlogs_client, log_group_name)
  puts "Attempting to create log group with the name '#{log_group_name}'..."
  cloudwatchlogs_client.create_log_group(log_group_name: log_group_name)
  puts 'Log group created.'
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating log group: #{e.message}"
  false
end
```

Write an event to a log stream in CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Writes an event to a log stream in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
```

```
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
# - A log stream within the log group.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group.
# @param log_stream_name [String] The name of the log stream within
#   the log group.
# @param message [String] The message to write to the log stream.
# @param sequence_token [String] If available, the sequence token from the
#   message that was written immediately before this message. This sequence
#   token is returned by Amazon CloudWatch Logs whenever you programmatically
#   write a message to the log stream.
# @return [String] The sequence token that is returned by
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs after successfully writing the message to the
#   log stream.
# @example
#   puts log_event(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#     '2020/11/19/53f985be-199f-408e-9a45-fc242df41fEX',
#     "Instance 'i-033c48ef067af3dEX' restarted.",
#     '49542672486831074009579604567656788214806863282469607 3EX'
#   )
def log_event(
  cloudwatchlogs_client,
  log_group_name,
  log_stream_name,
  message,
  sequence_token
)
  puts "Attempting to log '#{message}' to log stream '#{log_stream_name}'..."
  event = {
    log_group_name: log_group_name,
    log_stream_name: log_stream_name,
    log_events: [
      {
        timestamp: (Time.now.utc.to_f.round(3) * 1_000).to_i,
        message: message
      }
    ]
```

```
  }
  event[:sequence_token] = sequence_token unless sequence_token.empty?

  response = cloudwatchlogs_client.put_log_events(event)
  puts 'Message logged.'
  response.next_sequence_token
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Message not logged: #{e.message}"
end
```

Restart an Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance and adds information about the related activity to a log stream in CloudWatch Logs.

```
# Restarts an Amazon EC2 instance
# and adds information about the related activity to a log stream
# in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - The Amazon EC2 instance to restart.
# - The log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs to add related activity
#   information to.
#
# @param ec2_client [Aws::EC2::Client] An initialized Amazon EC2 client.
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client]
#   An initialized Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the instance.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group.
# @return [Boolean] true if the instance was restarted and the information
#   was written to the log stream; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless instance_restarted?(
#     Aws::EC2::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'i-033c48ef067af3dEX',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def instance_restarted?(
  ec2_client,
  cloudwatchlogs_client,
  instance_id,
  log_group_name
```

```
)
  log_stream_name = "#{Time.now.year}/#{Time.now.month}/#{Time.now.day}/" \
    "#{SecureRandom.uuid}"
  cloudwatchlogs_client.create_log_stream(
    log_group_name: log_group_name,
    log_stream_name: log_stream_name
  )
  sequence_token = ''

  puts "Attempting to stop the instance with the ID '#{instance_id}'. " \
    'This might take a few minutes...'
  ec2_client.stop_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_stopped, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance stopped.'
  sequence_token = log_event(
    cloudwatchlogs_client,
    log_group_name,
    log_stream_name,
    "Instance '#{instance_id}' stopped.",
    sequence_token
  )

  puts 'Attempting to restart the instance. This might take a few minutes...'
  ec2_client.start_instances(instance_ids: [instance_id])
  ec2_client.wait_until(:instance_running, instance_ids: [instance_id])
  puts 'Instance restarted.'
  sequence_token = log_event(
    cloudwatchlogs_client,
    log_group_name,
    log_stream_name,
    "Instance '#{instance_id}' restarted.",
    sequence_token
  )

  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Error creating log stream or stopping or restarting the instance: ' \
    "#{e.message}"
  log_event(
    cloudwatchlogs_client,
    log_group_name,
    log_stream_name,
    "Error stopping or starting instance '#{instance_id}': #{e.message}",
    sequence_token
```

```
  )
  false
end
```

Display information about activity for a rule in EventBridge.

```
# Displays information about activity for a rule in Amazon EventBridge.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A rule in Amazon EventBridge.
#
# @param cloudwatch_client [Amazon::CloudWatch::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch client.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the rule.
# @param start_time [Time] The timestamp that determines the first datapoint
#   to return. Can also be expressed as DateTime, Date, Integer, or String.
# @param end_time [Time] The timestamp that determines the last datapoint
#   to return. Can also be expressed as DateTime, Date, Integer, or String.
# @param period [Integer] The interval, in seconds, to check for activity.
# @example
#   display_rule_activity(
#     Aws::CloudWatch::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     Time.now - 600, # Start checking from 10 minutes ago.
#     Time.now, # Check up until now.
#     60 # Check every minute during those 10 minutes.
#   )
def display_rule_activity(
  cloudwatch_client,
  rule_name,
  start_time,
  end_time,
  period
)
  puts 'Attempting to display rule activity...'
  response = cloudwatch_client.get_metric_statistics(
    namespace: 'AWS/Events',
    metric_name: 'Invocations',
    dimensions: [
      {
        name: 'RuleName',
```

```
        value: rule_name
      }
    ],
    start_time: start_time,
    end_time: end_time,
    period: period,
    statistics: ['Sum'],
    unit: 'Count'
  )

  if response.key?(:datapoints) && response.datapoints.count.positive?
    puts "The event rule '#{rule_name}' was triggered:"
    response.datapoints.each do |datapoint|
      puts "  #{datapoint.sum} time(s) at #{datapoint.timestamp}"
    end
  else
    puts "The event rule '#{rule_name}' was not triggered during the " \
      'specified time period.'
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting information about event rule activity: #{e.message}"
end
```

Display log information for all of the log streams in a CloudWatch Logs log group.

```
# Displays log information for all of the log streams in a log group in
# Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# Prerequisites:
#
# - A log group in Amazon CloudWatch Logs.
#
# @param cloudwatchlogs_client [Amazon::CloudWatchLogs::Client] An initialized
#   Amazon CloudWatch Logs client.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the log group.
# @example
#   display_log_data(
#     Amazon::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log'
#   )
def display_log_data(cloudwatchlogs_client, log_group_name)
  puts 'Attempting to display log stream data for the log group ' \
```

```
    "named '#{log_group_name}'..."
  describe_log_streams_response = cloudwatchlogs_client.describe_log_streams(
    log_group_name: log_group_name,
    order_by: 'LastEventTime',
    descending: true
  )
  if describe_log_streams_response.key?(:log_streams) &&
     describe_log_streams_response.log_streams.count.positive?
    describe_log_streams_response.log_streams.each do |log_stream|
      get_log_events_response = cloudwatchlogs_client.get_log_events(
        log_group_name: log_group_name,
        log_stream_name: log_stream.log_stream_name
      )
      puts "\nLog messages for '#{log_stream.log_stream_name}':"
      puts '-' * (log_stream.log_stream_name.length + 20)
      if get_log_events_response.key?(:events) &&
         get_log_events_response.events.count.positive?
        get_log_events_response.events.each do |event|
          puts event.message
        end
      else
        puts 'No log messages for this log stream.'
      end
    end
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Error getting information about the log streams or their messages: ' \
    "#{e.message}"
end
```

Display a reminder to the caller to manually clean up any associated AWS resources that they no longer need.

```
# Displays a reminder to the caller to manually clean up any associated
# AWS resources that they no longer need.
#
# @param topic_name [String] The name of the Amazon SNS topic.
# @param role_name [String] The name of the IAM role.
# @param rule_name [String] The name of the Amazon EventBridge rule.
# @param log_group_name [String] The name of the Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group.
# @param instance_id [String] The ID of the Amazon EC2 instance.
# @example
```

```
#   manual_cleanup_notice(
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-topic',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-events-rule-role',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-ec2-state-change',
#     'aws-doc-sdk-examples-cloudwatch-log',
#     'i-033c48ef067af3dEX'
#   )
def manual_cleanup_notice(
  topic_name, role_name, rule_name, log_group_name, instance_id
)
  puts '-' * 10
  puts 'Some of the following AWS resources might still exist in your account.'
  puts 'If you no longer want to use this code example, then to clean up'
  puts 'your AWS account and avoid unexpected costs, you might want to'
  puts 'manually delete any of the following resources if they exist:'
  puts "- The Amazon SNS topic named '#{topic_name}'."
  puts "- The IAM role named '#{role_name}'."
  puts "- The Amazon EventBridge rule named '#{rule_name}'."
  puts "- The Amazon CloudWatch Logs log group named '#{log_group_name}'."
  puts "- The Amazon EC2 instance with the ID '#{instance_id}'."
end
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - PutEvents
  - PutRule

AWS Glue examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-glue'
require 'logger'

# GlueManager is a class responsible for managing AWS Glue operations
# such as listing all Glue jobs in the current AWS account.
class GlueManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all Glue jobs in the current AWS account.
  def list_jobs
    @logger.info('Here are the Glue jobs in your account:')

    paginator = @client.get_jobs(max_results: 10)
    jobs = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      jobs.concat(page.jobs)
    end

    if jobs.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any Glue jobs.")
    else
      jobs.each do |job|
        @logger.info("- #{job.name}")
      end
    end
  end
```

```
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  glue_client = Aws::Glue::Client.new
  manager = GlueManager.new(glue_client)
  manager.list_jobs
end
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a class that wraps AWS Glue functions used in the scenario.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific crawler.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to retrieve information about.
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Crawler, nil] The crawler object if found, or nil if
 not found.
  def get_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.get_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::EntityNotFoundException
    @logger.info("Crawler #{name} doesn't exist.")
    false
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates a new crawler with the specified configuration.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the crawler.
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database where the crawler stores its
 metadata.
  # @param db_prefix [String] The prefix to be added to the names of tables that the
 crawler creates.
  # @param s3_target [String] The S3 path that the crawler will crawl.
  # @return [void]
  def create_crawler(name, role_arn, db_name, _db_prefix, s3_target)
    @glue_client.create_crawler(
      name: name,
      role: role_arn,
```

```
      database_name: db_name,
      targets: {
        s3_targets: [
          {
            path: s3_target
          }
        ]
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not create crawler: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Starts a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to start.
  # @return [void]
  def start_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.start_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Deletes a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.delete_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific database.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the database to retrieve information about.
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Database, nil] The database object if found, or nil
if not found.
  def get_database(name)
    response = @glue_client.get_database(name: name)
    response.database
```

```
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get database #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Retrieves a list of tables in the specified database.
  #
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database to retrieve tables from.
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::Table>]
  def get_tables(db_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_tables(database_name: db_name)
    response.table_list
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get tables #{db_name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates a new job with the specified configuration.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job.
  # @param description [String] The description of the job.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the job.
  # @param script_location [String] The location of the ETL script for the job.
  # @return [void]
  def create_job(name, description, role_arn, script_location)
    @glue_client.create_job(
      name: name,
      description: description,
      role: role_arn,
      command: {
        name: 'glueetl',
        script_location: script_location,
        python_version: '3'
      },
      glue_version: '3.0'
    )
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not create job #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Starts a job run for the specified job.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job to start the run for.
```

```
# @param input_database [String] The name of the input database for the job.
# @param input_table [String] The name of the input table for the job.
# @param output_bucket_name [String] The name of the output S3 bucket for the job.
# @return [String] The ID of the started job run.
def start_job_run(name, input_database, input_table, output_bucket_name)
  response = @glue_client.start_job_run(
    job_name: name,
    arguments: {
      '--input_database': input_database,
      '--input_table': input_table,
      '--output_bucket_url': "s3://#{output_bucket_name}/"
    }
  )
  response.job_run_id
rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
  @logger.error("Glue could not start job run #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
  raise
end

# Retrieves a list of jobs in AWS Glue.
#
# @return [Aws::Glue::Types::ListJobsResponse]
def list_jobs
  @glue_client.list_jobs
rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
  @logger.error("Glue could not list jobs: \n#{e.message}")
  raise
end

# Retrieves a list of job runs for the specified job.
#
# @param job_name [String] The name of the job to retrieve job runs for.
# @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::JobRun>]
def get_job_runs(job_name)
  response = @glue_client.get_job_runs(job_name: job_name)
  response.job_runs
rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
  @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
end

# Retrieves data for a specific job run.
#
# @param job_name [String] The name of the job run to retrieve data for.
# @return [Glue::Types::GetJobRunResponse]
```

```
  def get_job_run(job_name, run_id)
    @glue_client.get_job_run(job_name: job_name, run_id: run_id)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Deletes a job with the specified name.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_job(job_name)
    @glue_client.delete_job(job_name: job_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Deletes a table with the specified name.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the catalog database in which the
table resides.
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to be deleted.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_table(database_name, table_name)
    @glue_client.delete_table(database_name: database_name, name: table_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Removes a specified database from a Data Catalog.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the database to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_database(database_name)
    @glue_client.delete_database(name: database_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete database: \n#{e.message}")
  end

  # Uploads a job script file to an S3 bucket.
  #
  # @param file_path [String] The local path of the job script file.
  # @param bucket_resource [Aws::S3::Bucket] The S3 bucket resource to upload the
file to.
  # @return [void]
```

```
  def upload_job_script(file_path, bucket_resource)
    File.open(file_path) do |file|
      bucket_resource.client.put_object({
                                          body: file,
                                          bucket: bucket_resource.name,
                                          key: file_path
                                        })
    end
  rescue Aws::S3::Errors::S3UploadFailedError => e
    @logger.error("S3 could not upload job script: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

Create a class that runs the scenario.

```
class GlueCrawlerJobScenario
  def initialize(glue_client, glue_service_role, glue_bucket, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @glue_service_role = glue_service_role
    @glue_bucket = glue_bucket
    @logger = logger
  end

  def run(crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source, job_script, job_name)
    wrapper = GlueWrapper.new(@glue_client, @logger)
    setup_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source)
    query_database(wrapper, crawler_name, db_name)
    create_and_run_job(wrapper, job_script, job_name, db_name)
  end

  private

  def setup_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name, db_name, db_prefix, data_source)
    new_step(1, 'Create a crawler')
    crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
    unless crawler
      puts "Creating crawler #{crawler_name}."
      wrapper.create_crawler(crawler_name, @glue_service_role.arn, db_name,
 db_prefix, data_source)
      puts "Successfully created #{crawler_name}."
    end
```

```
    wrapper.start_crawler(crawler_name)
    monitor_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name)
  end

  def monitor_crawler(wrapper, crawler_name)
    new_step(2, 'Monitor Crawler')
    crawler_state = nil
    until crawler_state == 'READY'
      custom_wait(15)
      crawler = wrapper.get_crawler(crawler_name)
      crawler_state = crawler[0]['state']
      print "Crawler status: #{crawler_state}".yellow
    end
  end

  def query_database(wrapper, _crawler_name, db_name)
    new_step(3, 'Query the database.')
    wrapper.get_database(db_name)
    puts "The crawler created database #{db_name}:"
    puts "Database contains tables: #{wrapper.get_tables(db_name).map { |t|
 t['name'] }}"
  end

  def create_and_run_job(wrapper, job_script, job_name, db_name)
    new_step(4, 'Create and run job.')
    wrapper.upload_job_script(job_script, @glue_bucket)
    wrapper.create_job(job_name, 'ETL Job', @glue_service_role.arn, "s3://
#{@glue_bucket.name}/#{job_script}")
    run_job(wrapper, job_name, db_name)
  end

  def run_job(wrapper, job_name, db_name)
    new_step(5, 'Run the job.')
    wrapper.start_job_run(job_name, db_name, wrapper.get_tables(db_name)[0]['name'],
 @glue_bucket.name)
    job_run_status = nil
    until %w[SUCCEEDED FAILED STOPPED].include?(job_run_status)
      custom_wait(10)
      job_run = wrapper.get_job_runs(job_name)
      job_run_status = job_run[0]['job_run_state']
      print "Job #{job_name} status: #{job_run_status}".yellow
    end
  end
end
```

```
def main
  banner('../../helpers/banner.txt')
  puts 'Starting AWS Glue demo...'

  # Load resource names from YAML.
  resource_names = YAML.load_file('resource_names.yaml')

  # Setup services and resources.
  iam_role = Aws::IAM::Resource.new(region: 'us-
east-1').role(resource_names['glue_service_role'])
  s3_bucket = Aws::S3::Resource.new(region: 'us-
east-1').bucket(resource_names['glue_bucket'])

  # Instantiate scenario and run.
  scenario = GlueCrawlerJobScenario.new(Aws::Glue::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1'),
 iam_role, s3_bucket, @logger)
  random_suffix = rand(10**4)
  scenario.run("crawler-#{random_suffix}", "db-#{random_suffix}", "prefix-
#{random_suffix}-", 's3://data_source',
               'job_script.py', "job-#{random_suffix}")

  puts 'Demo complete.'
end
```

Create an ETL script that is used by AWS Glue to extract, transform, and load data during job runs.

```
import sys
from awsglue.transforms import *
from awsglue.utils import getResolvedOptions
from pyspark.context import SparkContext
from awsglue.context import GlueContext
from awsglue.job import Job

"""
These custom arguments must be passed as Arguments to the StartJobRun request.
    --input_database    The name of a metadata database that is contained in your
                        AWS Glue Data Catalog and that contains tables that
 describe
                        the data to be processed.
```

```
    --input_table       The name of a table in the database that describes the data
 to
                        be processed.
    --output_bucket_url An S3 bucket that receives the transformed output data.
"""
args = getResolvedOptions(
    sys.argv, ["JOB_NAME", "input_database", "input_table", "output_bucket_url"]
)
sc = SparkContext()
glueContext = GlueContext(sc)
spark = glueContext.spark_session
job = Job(glueContext)
job.init(args["JOB_NAME"], args)

# Script generated for node S3 Flight Data.
S3FlightData_node1 = glueContext.create_dynamic_frame.from_catalog(
    database=args["input_database"],
    table_name=args["input_table"],
    transformation_ctx="S3FlightData_node1",
)

# This mapping performs two main functions:
# 1. It simplifies the output by removing most of the fields from the data.
# 2. It renames some fields. For example, `fl_date` is renamed to `flight_date`.
ApplyMapping_node2 = ApplyMapping.apply(
    frame=S3FlightData_node1,
    mappings=[
        ("year", "long", "year", "long"),
        ("month", "long", "month", "tinyint"),
        ("day_of_month", "long", "day", "tinyint"),
        ("fl_date", "string", "flight_date", "string"),
        ("carrier", "string", "carrier", "string"),
        ("fl_num", "long", "flight_num", "long"),
        ("origin_city_name", "string", "origin_city_name", "string"),
        ("origin_state_abr", "string", "origin_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dest_city_name", "string", "dest_city_name", "string"),
        ("dest_state_abr", "string", "dest_state_abr", "string"),
        ("dep_time", "long", "departure_time", "long"),
        ("wheels_off", "long", "wheels_off", "long"),
        ("wheels_on", "long", "wheels_on", "long"),
        ("arr_time", "long", "arrival_time", "long"),
        ("mon", "string", "mon", "string"),
    ],
    transformation_ctx="ApplyMapping_node2",
```

```
)

# Script generated for node Revised Flight Data.
RevisedFlightData_node3 = glueContext.write_dynamic_frame.from_options(
    frame=ApplyMapping_node2,
    connection_type="s3",
    format="json",
    connection_options={"path": args["output_bucket_url"], "partitionKeys": []},
    transformation_ctx="RevisedFlightData_node3",
)

job.commit()
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Creates a new crawler with the specified configuration.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the crawler.
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database where the crawler stores its
 metadata.
  # @param db_prefix [String] The prefix to be added to the names of tables that the
 crawler creates.
  # @param s3_target [String] The S3 path that the crawler will crawl.
  # @return [void]
  def create_crawler(name, role_arn, db_name, _db_prefix, s3_target)
    @glue_client.create_crawler(
      name: name,
      role: role_arn,
      database_name: db_name,
```

```
      targets: {
        s3_targets: [
          {
            path: s3_target
          }
        ]
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not create crawler: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end
```

```
  # Creates a new job with the specified configuration.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job.
  # @param description [String] The description of the job.
  # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the IAM role to be used by the job.
  # @param script_location [String] The location of the ETL script for the job.
  # @return [void]
  def create_job(name, description, role_arn, script_location)
    @glue_client.create_job(
      name: name,
      description: description,
      role: role_arn,
      command: {
        name: 'glueetl',
        script_location: script_location,
        python_version: '3'
      },
      glue_version: '3.0'
    )
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not create job #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
```

```
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deletes a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.delete_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
```

```
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Removes a specified database from a Data Catalog.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the database to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_database(database_name)
    @glue_client.delete_database(name: database_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete database: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
```

```
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Deletes a job with the specified name.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to delete.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_job(job_name)
    @glue_client.delete_job(job_name: job_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
```

```
  end

  # Deletes a table with the specified name.
  #
  # @param database_name [String] The name of the catalog database in which the
 table resides.
  # @param table_name [String] The name of the table to be deleted.
  # @return [void]
  def delete_table(database_name, table_name)
    @glue_client.delete_table(database_name: database_name, name: table_name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not delete job: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end
```

```
  # Retrieves information about a specific crawler.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to retrieve information about.
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Crawler, nil] The crawler object if found, or nil if
 not found.
  def get_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.get_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::EntityNotFoundException
    @logger.info("Crawler #{name} doesn't exist.")
    false
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
```

```
  end

  # Retrieves information about a specific database.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the database to retrieve information about.
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::Database, nil] The database object if found, or nil
 if not found.
  def get_database(name)
    response = @glue_client.get_database(name: name)
    response.database
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get database #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end
```

```
  # Retrieves data for a specific job run.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job run to retrieve data for.
  # @return [Glue::Types::GetJobRunResponse]
  def get_job_run(job_name, run_id)
    @glue_client.get_job_run(job_name: job_name, run_id: run_id)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetJobRuns`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRuns`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves a list of job runs for the specified job.
  #
  # @param job_name [String] The name of the job to retrieve job runs for.
```

```
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::JobRun>]
  def get_job_runs(job_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_job_runs(job_name: job_name)
    response.job_runs
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get job runs: \n#{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves a list of tables in the specified database.
  #
  # @param db_name [String] The name of the database to retrieve tables from.
  # @return [Array<Aws::Glue::Types::Table>]
  def get_tables(db_name)
    response = @glue_client.get_tables(database_name: db_name)
```

```
    response.table_list
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not get tables #{db_name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Retrieves a list of jobs in AWS Glue.
  #
  # @return [Aws::Glue::Types::ListJobsResponse]
  def list_jobs
    @glue_client.list_jobs
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not list jobs: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
```

```
  end
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`StartCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Starts a crawler with the specified name.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the crawler to start.
  # @return [void]
  def start_crawler(name)
    @glue_client.start_crawler(name: name)
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start crawler #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`StartJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# The `GlueWrapper` class serves as a wrapper around the AWS Glue API, providing a
 simplified interface for common operations.
# It encapsulates the functionality of the AWS SDK for Glue and provides methods for
 interacting with Glue crawlers, databases, tables, jobs, and S3 resources.
# The class initializes with a Glue client and a logger, allowing it to make API
 calls and log any errors or informational messages.
class GlueWrapper
  def initialize(glue_client, logger)
    @glue_client = glue_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Starts a job run for the specified job.
  #
  # @param name [String] The name of the job to start the run for.
  # @param input_database [String] The name of the input database for the job.
  # @param input_table [String] The name of the input table for the job.
  # @param output_bucket_name [String] The name of the output S3 bucket for the job.
  # @return [String] The ID of the started job run.
  def start_job_run(name, input_database, input_table, output_bucket_name)
    response = @glue_client.start_job_run(
      job_name: name,
      arguments: {
        '--input_database': input_database,
        '--input_table': input_table,
        '--output_bucket_url': "s3://#{output_bucket_name}/"
      }
```

```
    )
    response.job_run_id
  rescue Aws::Glue::Errors::GlueException => e
    @logger.error("Glue could not start job run #{name}: \n#{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-iam'
require 'logger'
```

```
# IAMManager is a class responsible for managing IAM operations
# such as listing all IAM policies in the current AWS account.
class IAMManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all IAM policies in the current AWS account.
  def list_policies
    @logger.info('Here are the IAM policies in your account:')

    paginator = @client.list_policies
    policies = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      policies.concat(page.policies)
    end

    if policies.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any IAM policies.")
    else
      policies.each do |policy|
        @logger.info("- #{policy.policy_name}")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new
  manager = IAMManager.new(iam_client)
  manager.list_policies
end
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an IAM user and a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets. The user has rights only to assume the role. After assuming the role, use temporary credentials to list buckets for the account.

```
# Wraps the scenario actions.
class ScenarioCreateUserAssumeRole
  attr_reader :iam_client

  # @param [Aws::IAM::Client] iam_client: The AWS IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end
```

```
# Waits for the specified number of seconds.
#
# @param duration [Integer] The number of seconds to wait.
def wait(duration)
  puts('Give AWS time to propagate resources...')
  sleep(duration)
end

# Creates a user.
#
# @param user_name [String] The name to give the user.
# @return [Aws::IAM::User] The newly created user.
def create_user(user_name)
  user = @iam_client.create_user(user_name: user_name).user
  @logger.info("Created demo user named #{user.user_name}.")
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.info('Tried and failed to create demo user.')
  @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  @logger.info("\nCan't continue the demo without a user!")
  raise
else
  user
end

# Creates an access key for a user.
#
# @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user that owns the key.
# @return [Aws::IAM::AccessKeyPair] The newly created access key.
def create_access_key_pair(user)
  user_key = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user.user_name).access_key
  @logger.info("Created accesskey pair for user #{user.user_name}.")
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.info("Couldn't create access keys for user #{user.user_name}.")
  @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
else
  user_key
end

# Creates a role that can be assumed by a user.
#
# @param role_name [String] The name to give the role.
```

```
 # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user who is granted permission to assume the
role.
 # @return [Aws::IAM::Role] The newly created role.
 def create_role(role_name, user)
   trust_policy = {
     Version: '2012-10-17',
     Statement: [{
       Effect: 'Allow',
       Principal: { 'AWS': user.arn },
       Action: 'sts:AssumeRole'
     }]
   }.to_json
   role = @iam_client.create_role(
     role_name: role_name,
     assume_role_policy_document: trust_policy
   ).role
   @logger.info("Created role #{role.role_name}.")
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.info("Couldn't create a role for the demo. Here's why: ")
   @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
   raise
 else
   role
 end

 # Creates a policy that grants permission to list S3 buckets in the account, and
 # then attaches the policy to a role.
 #
 # @param policy_name [String] The name to give the policy.
 # @param role [Aws::IAM::Role] The role that the policy is attached to.
 # @return [Aws::IAM::Policy] The newly created policy.
 def create_and_attach_role_policy(policy_name, role)
   policy_document = {
     Version: '2012-10-17',
     Statement: [{
       Effect: 'Allow',
       Action: 's3:ListAllMyBuckets',
       Resource: 'arn:aws:s3:::*'
     }]
   }.to_json
   policy = @iam_client.create_policy(
     policy_name: policy_name,
     policy_document: policy_document
   ).policy
```

```
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role.role_name,
      policy_arn: policy.arn
    )
    @logger.info("Created policy #{policy.policy_name} and attached it to role
#{role.role_name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.info("Couldn't create a policy and attach it to role #{role.role_name}.
Here's why: ")
    @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates an inline policy for a user that lets the user assume a role.
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name to give the policy.
  # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user that owns the policy.
  # @param role [Aws::IAM::Role] The role that can be assumed.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::UserPolicy] The newly created policy.
  def create_user_policy(policy_name, user, role)
    policy_document = {
      Version: '2012-10-17',
      Statement: [{
        Effect: 'Allow',
        Action: 'sts:AssumeRole',
        Resource: role.arn
      }]
    }.to_json
    @iam_client.put_user_policy(
      user_name: user.user_name,
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document
    )
    puts("Created an inline policy for #{user.user_name} that lets the user assume
role #{role.role_name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.info("Couldn't create an inline policy for user #{user.user_name}.
Here's why: ")
    @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Creates an Amazon S3 resource with specified credentials. This is separated into
a
```

```
 # factory function so that it can be mocked for unit testing.
 #
 # @param credentials [Aws::Credentials] The credentials used by the Amazon S3
resource.
 def create_s3_resource(credentials)
   Aws::S3::Resource.new(client: Aws::S3::Client.new(credentials: credentials))
 end

 # Lists the S3 buckets for the account, using the specified Amazon S3 resource.
 # Because the resource uses credentials with limited access, it may not be able to
 # list the S3 buckets.
 #
 # @param s3_resource [Aws::S3::Resource] An Amazon S3 resource.
 def list_buckets(s3_resource)
   count = 10
   s3_resource.buckets.each do |bucket|
     @logger.info "\t#{bucket.name}"
     count -= 1
     break if count.zero?
   end
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   if e.code == 'AccessDenied'
     puts('Attempt to list buckets with no permissions: AccessDenied.')
   else
     @logger.info("Couldn't list buckets for the account. Here's why: ")
     @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
     raise
   end
 end

 # Creates an AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) client with specified
credentials.
 # This is separated into a factory function so that it can be mocked for unit
testing.
 #
 # @param key_id [String] The ID of the access key used by the STS client.
 # @param key_secret [String] The secret part of the access key used by the STS
client.
 def create_sts_client(key_id, key_secret)
   Aws::STS::Client.new(access_key_id: key_id, secret_access_key: key_secret)
 end

 # Gets temporary credentials that can be used to assume a role.
 #
```

```
 # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role that is assumed when these
credentials
 #                          are used.
 # @param sts_client [AWS::STS::Client] An AWS STS client.
 # @return [Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials] The credentials that can be used to assume
the role.
 def assume_role(role_arn, sts_client)
   credentials = Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials.new(
     client: sts_client,
     role_arn: role_arn,
     role_session_name: 'create-use-assume-role-scenario'
   )
   @logger.info("Assumed role '#{role_arn}', got temporary credentials.")
   credentials
 end

 # Deletes a role. If the role has policies attached, they are detached and
 # deleted before the role is deleted.
 #
 # @param role_name [String] The name of the role to delete.
 def delete_role(role_name)
   @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name:
role_name).attached_policies.each do |policy|
     @iam_client.detach_role_policy(role_name: role_name, policy_arn:
policy.policy_arn)
     @iam_client.delete_policy(policy_arn: policy.policy_arn)
     @logger.info("Detached and deleted policy #{policy.policy_name}.")
   end
   @iam_client.delete_role({ role_name: role_name })
   @logger.info("Role deleted: #{role_name}.")
 rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.info("Couldn't detach policies and delete role #{role.name}. Here's
why:")
   @logger.info("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
   raise
 end

 # Deletes a user. If the user has inline policies or access keys, they are deleted
 # before the user is deleted.
 #
 # @param user [Aws::IAM::User] The user to delete.
 def delete_user(user_name)
   user = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name).access_key_metadata
   user.each do |key|
```

```
      @iam_client.delete_access_key({ access_key_id: key.access_key_id, user_name:
 user_name })
      @logger.info("Deleted access key #{key.access_key_id} for user
 '#{user_name}'.")
    end

    @iam_client.delete_user(user_name: user_name)
    @logger.info("Deleted user '#{user_name}'.")
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
  end
end

# Runs the IAM create a user and assume a role scenario.
def run_scenario(scenario)
  puts('-' * 88)
  puts('Welcome to the IAM create a user and assume a role demo!')
  puts('-' * 88)
  user = scenario.create_user("doc-example-user-#{Random.uuid}")
  user_key = scenario.create_access_key_pair(user)
  scenario.wait(10)
  role = scenario.create_role("doc-example-role-#{Random.uuid}", user)
  scenario.create_and_attach_role_policy("doc-example-role-policy-#{Random.uuid}",
 role)
  scenario.create_user_policy("doc-example-user-policy-#{Random.uuid}", user, role)
  scenario.wait(10)
  puts('Try to list buckets with credentials for a user who has no permissions.')
  puts('Expect AccessDenied from this call.')
  scenario.list_buckets(
    scenario.create_s3_resource(Aws::Credentials.new(user_key.access_key_id,
 user_key.secret_access_key))
  )
  puts('Now, assume the role that grants permission.')
  temp_credentials = scenario.assume_role(
    role.arn, scenario.create_sts_client(user_key.access_key_id,
 user_key.secret_access_key)
  )
  puts('Here are your buckets:')
  scenario.list_buckets(scenario.create_s3_resource(temp_credentials))
  puts("Deleting role '#{role.role_name}' and attached policies.")
  scenario.delete_role(role.role_name)
  puts("Deleting user '#{user.user_name}', policies, and keys.")
  scenario.delete_user(user.user_name)
  puts('Thanks for watching!')
```

```
  puts('-' * 88)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts('Something went wrong with the demo.')
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
end

run_scenario(ScenarioCreateUserAssumeRole.new(Aws::IAM::Client.new)) if
 $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser
  - DeleteUserPolicy
  - DetachRolePolicy
  - PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
 #{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
 #{e.message}")
```

```
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
```

```
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`AttachUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachUserPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Attaches a policy to a user
#
# @param user_name [String] The name of the user
# @param policy_arn [String] The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the policy
# @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
def attach_policy_to_user(user_name, policy_arn)
  @iam_client.attach_user_policy(
    user_name: user_name,
    policy_arn: policy_arn
  )
  true
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error attaching policy to user: #{e.message}")
  false
end
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, deactivates, and deletes access keys.

```
# Manages access keys for IAM users
class AccessKeyManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'AccessKeyManager'
  end

  # Lists access keys for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  def list_access_keys(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name)
    if response.access_key_metadata.empty?
      @logger.info("No access keys found for user '#{user_name}'.")
    else
      response.access_key_metadata.map(&:access_key_id)
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: cannot find user '#{user_name}'.")
    []
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_access_key(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user_name)
    access_key = response.access_key
```

```
    @logger.info("Access key created for user '#{user_name}':
 #{access_key.access_key_id}")
    access_key
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::LimitExceeded
    @logger.error('Error creating access key: limit exceeded. Cannot create more.')
    nil
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating access key: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Deactivates an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def deactivate_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.update_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id,
      status: 'Inactive'
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deactivating access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def delete_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.delete_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccountAlias`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, create, and delete account aliases.

```
class IAMAliasManager
  # Initializes the IAM client and logger
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists available AWS account aliases.
  def list_aliases
    response = @iam_client.list_account_aliases

    if response.account_aliases.count.positive?
      @logger.info('Account aliases are:')
      response.account_aliases.each { |account_alias| @logger.info("
 #{account_alias}") }
    else
      @logger.info('No account aliases found.')
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing account aliases: #{e.message}")
  end
```

```
  # Creates an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was created; otherwise, false.
  def create_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.create_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to delete.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.delete_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see CreateAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
 #{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
 #{e.message}")
    raise
```

```
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
```

```
  end
end
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Creates a role and attaches policies to it.
 #
 # @param role_name [String] The name of the role.
 # @param assume_role_policy_document [Hash] The trust relationship policy
document.
 # @param policy_arns [Array<String>] The ARNs of the policies to attach.
 # @return [String, nil] The ARN of the new role if successful, or nil if an error
occurred.
 def create_role(role_name, assume_role_policy_document, policy_arns)
   response = @iam_client.create_role(
     role_name: role_name,
     assume_role_policy_document: assume_role_policy_document.to_json
   )
   role_arn = response.role.arn

   policy_arns.each do |policy_arn|
     @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
       role_name: role_name,
       policy_arn: policy_arn
     )
   end

   role_arn
```

```
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating role: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Creates a service-linked role
  #
  # @param service_name [String] The service name to create the role for.
  # @param description [String] The description of the service-linked role.
  # @param suffix [String] Suffix for customizing role name.
  # @return [String] The name of the created role
  def create_service_linked_role(service_name, description, suffix)
    response = @iam_client.create_service_linked_role(
      aws_service_name: service_name, description: description, custom_suffix:
suffix
    )
    role_name = response.role.role_name
    @logger.info("Created service-linked role #{role_name}.")
    role_name
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't create service-linked role for #{service_name}. Here's
why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates a user and their login profile
#
# @param user_name [String] The name of the user
# @param initial_password [String] The initial password for the user
# @return [String, nil] The ID of the user if created, or nil if an error occurred
def create_user(user_name, initial_password)
  response = @iam_client.create_user(user_name: user_name)
  @iam_client.wait_until(:user_exists, user_name: user_name)
  @iam_client.create_login_profile(
    user_name: user_name,
    password: initial_password,
    password_reset_required: true
  )
  @logger.info("User '#{user_name}' created successfully.")
  response.user.user_id
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::EntityAlreadyExists
  @logger.error("Error creating user '#{user_name}': user already exists.")
  nil
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error creating user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
  nil
end
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, deactivates, and deletes access keys.

```
# Manages access keys for IAM users
class AccessKeyManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'AccessKeyManager'
  end

  # Lists access keys for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  def list_access_keys(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name)
    if response.access_key_metadata.empty?
      @logger.info("No access keys found for user '#{user_name}'.")
    else
      response.access_key_metadata.map(&:access_key_id)
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: cannot find user '#{user_name}'.")
    []
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
```

```
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_access_key(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user_name)
    access_key = response.access_key
    @logger.info("Access key created for user '#{user_name}':
#{access_key.access_key_id}")
    access_key
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::LimitExceeded
    @logger.error('Error creating access key: limit exceeded. Cannot create more.')
    nil
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating access key: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Deactivates an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def deactivate_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.update_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id,
      status: 'Inactive'
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deactivating access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def delete_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.delete_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
```

```
    @logger.error("Error deleting access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteAccountAlias`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccountAlias`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, create, and delete account aliases.

```
class IAMAliasManager
  # Initializes the IAM client and logger
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists available AWS account aliases.
  def list_aliases
    response = @iam_client.list_account_aliases

    if response.account_aliases.count.positive?
      @logger.info('Account aliases are:')
      response.account_aliases.each { |account_alias| @logger.info("
 #{account_alias}") }
    else
      @logger.info('No account aliases found.')
    end
```

```
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing account aliases: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Creates an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was created; otherwise, false.
  def create_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.create_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to delete.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.delete_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccountAlias in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Deletes a role and its attached policies.
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role to delete.
  def delete_role(role_name)
    # Detach and delete attached policies
    @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name).each do |response|
      response.attached_policies.each do |policy|
        @iam_client.detach_role_policy({
                                          role_name: role_name,
                                          policy_arn: policy.policy_arn
                                        })
        # Check if the policy is a customer managed policy (not AWS managed)
        unless policy.policy_arn.include?('aws:policy/')
          @iam_client.delete_policy({ policy_arn: policy.policy_arn })
          @logger.info("Deleted customer managed policy #{policy.policy_name}.")
        end
      end
    end

    # Delete the role
    @iam_client.delete_role({ role_name: role_name })
    @logger.info("Deleted role #{role_name}.")
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't detach policies and delete role #{role_name}. Here's
why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServerCertificate`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, update, and delete server certificates.

```
class ServerCertificateManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'ServerCertificateManager'
  end

  # Creates a new server certificate.
  # @param name [String] the name of the server certificate
  # @param certificate_body [String] the contents of the certificate
  # @param private_key [String] the private key contents
  # @return [Boolean] returns true if the certificate was successfully created
  def create_server_certificate(name, certificate_body, private_key)
    @iam_client.upload_server_certificate({
                                            server_certificate_name: name,
                                            certificate_body: certificate_body,
                                            private_key: private_key
                                          })
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Failed to create server certificate: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Lists available server certificate names.
  def list_server_certificate_names
    response = @iam_client.list_server_certificates

    if response.server_certificate_metadata_list.empty?
      @logger.info('No server certificates found.')
      return
    end
```

```
    response.server_certificate_metadata_list.each do |certificate_metadata|
      @logger.info("Certificate Name:
 #{certificate_metadata.server_certificate_name}")
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing server certificates: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the name of a server certificate.
  def update_server_certificate_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_server_certificate(
      server_certificate_name: current_name,
      new_server_certificate_name: new_name
    )
    @logger.info("Server certificate name updated from '#{current_name}' to
 '#{new_name}'.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating server certificate name: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes a server certificate.
  def delete_server_certificate(name)
    @iam_client.delete_server_certificate(server_certificate_name: name)
    @logger.info("Server certificate '#{name}' deleted.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting server certificate: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes a service-linked role.
#
# @param role_name [String] The name of the role to delete.
def delete_service_linked_role(role_name)
  response = @iam_client.delete_service_linked_role(role_name: role_name)
  task_id = response.deletion_task_id
  check_deletion_status(role_name, task_id)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  handle_deletion_error(e, role_name)
end

private

# Checks the deletion status of a service-linked role
#
# @param role_name [String] The name of the role being deleted
# @param task_id [String] The task ID for the deletion process
def check_deletion_status(role_name, task_id)
  loop do
    response = @iam_client.get_service_linked_role_deletion_status(
      deletion_task_id: task_id
    )
    status = response.status
    @logger.info("Deletion of #{role_name} #{status}.")
    break if %w[SUCCEEDED FAILED].include?(status)

    sleep(3)
  end
end

# Handles deletion error
#
# @param e [Aws::Errors::ServiceError] The error encountered during deletion
# @param role_name [String] The name of the role attempted to delete
```

```
def handle_deletion_error(e, role_name)
  return if e.code == 'NoSuchEntity'

  @logger.error("Couldn't delete #{role_name}. Here's why:")
  @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes a user and their associated resources
#
# @param user_name [String] The name of the user to delete
def delete_user(user_name)
  user = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name).access_key_metadata
  user.each do |key|
    @iam_client.delete_access_key({ access_key_id: key.access_key_id, user_name:
user_name })
    @logger.info("Deleted access key #{key.access_key_id} for user
'#{user_name}'.")
  end

  @iam_client.delete_user(user_name: user_name)
  @logger.info("Deleted user '#{user_name}'.")
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error deleting user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Deletes a user and their associated resources
 #
 # @param user_name [String] The name of the user to delete
 def delete_user(user_name)
   user = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name).access_key_metadata
   user.each do |key|
     @iam_client.delete_access_key({ access_key_id: key.access_key_id, user_name:
user_name })
     @logger.info("Deleted access key #{key.access_key_id} for user
'#{user_name}'.")
   end

   @iam_client.delete_user(user_name: user_name)
   @logger.info("Deleted user '#{user_name}'.")
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.error("Error deleting user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
 end
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
```

```
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
```

```
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DetachUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachUserPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Detaches a policy from a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user
  # @param policy_arn [String] The ARN of the policy to detach
  # @return [Boolean] true if the policy was successfully detached, false otherwise
  def detach_user_policy(user_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_user_policy(
      user_name: user_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    @logger.info("Policy '#{policy_arn}' detached from user '#{user_name}'
 successfully.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
```

```
    @logger.error('Error detaching policy: Policy or user does not exist.')
    false
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
    false
  end
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Class to manage IAM account password policies
class PasswordPolicyManager
  attr_accessor :iam_client, :logger

  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'IAMPolicyManager'
  end

  # Retrieves and logs the account password policy
  def print_account_password_policy
    response = @iam_client.get_account_password_policy
    @logger.info("The account password policy is: #{response.password_policy.to_h}")
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.info('The account does not have a password policy.')
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't print the account password policy. Error: #{e.code} -
 #{e.message}")
```

```
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
 # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
 # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
 def get_policy(policy_arn)
   response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
   policy = response.policy
   @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
   policy
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
   @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not exist.")
   raise
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
   raise
 end
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

GetRole

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Gets data about a role.
#
# @param name [String] The name of the role to look up.
# @return [Aws::IAM::Role] The retrieved role.
def get_role(name)
  role = @iam_client.get_role({
                              role_name: name
                            }).role
  puts("Got data for role '#{role.role_name}'. Its ARN is '#{role.arn}'.")
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts("Couldn't get data for role '#{name}' Here's why:")
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
else
  role
end
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

GetUser

The following code example shows how to use `GetUser`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Retrieves a user's details
 #
 # @param user_name [String] The name of the user to retrieve
 # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::User, nil] The user object if found, or nil if an
error occurred
 def get_user(user_name)
   response = @iam_client.get_user(user_name: user_name)
   response.user
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
   @logger.error("User '#{user_name}' not found.")
   nil
 rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
   @logger.error("Error retrieving user '#{user_name}': #{e.message}")
   nil
 end
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListAccessKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccessKeys`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, deactivates, and deletes access keys.

```
# Manages access keys for IAM users
class AccessKeyManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'AccessKeyManager'
  end

  # Lists access keys for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  def list_access_keys(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_access_keys(user_name: user_name)
    if response.access_key_metadata.empty?
      @logger.info("No access keys found for user '#{user_name}'.")
    else
      response.access_key_metadata.map(&:access_key_id)
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: cannot find user '#{user_name}'.")
    []
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing access keys: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Creates an access key for a user
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_access_key(user_name)
    response = @iam_client.create_access_key(user_name: user_name)
    access_key = response.access_key
    @logger.info("Access key created for user '#{user_name}':
 #{access_key.access_key_id}")
    access_key
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::LimitExceeded
    @logger.error('Error creating access key: limit exceeded. Cannot create more.')
    nil
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating access key: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

```
  # Deactivates an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def deactivate_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.update_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id,
      status: 'Inactive'
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deactivating access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes an access key
  #
  # @param user_name [String] The name of the user.
  # @param access_key_id [String] The ID for the access key.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def delete_access_key(user_name, access_key_id)
    @iam_client.delete_access_key(
      user_name: user_name,
      access_key_id: access_key_id
    )
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting access key: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAccessKeys in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListAccountAliases`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAccountAliases`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, create, and delete account aliases.

```
class IAMAliasManager
  # Initializes the IAM client and logger
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists available AWS account aliases.
  def list_aliases
    response = @iam_client.list_account_aliases

    if response.account_aliases.count.positive?
      @logger.info('Account aliases are:')
      response.account_aliases.each { |account_alias| @logger.info("
 #{account_alias}") }
    else
      @logger.info('No account aliases found.')
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing account aliases: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Creates an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was created; otherwise, false.
  def create_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.create_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating account alias: #{e.message}")
```

```
    false
  end

  # Deletes an AWS account alias.
  #
  # @param account_alias [String] The name of the account alias to delete.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the account alias was deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_account_alias(account_alias)
    @iam_client.delete_account_alias(account_alias: account_alias)
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting account alias: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAccountAliases in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
```

```
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
```

```
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# A class to manage IAM operations via the AWS SDK client
class IamGroupManager
  # Initializes the IamGroupManager class
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An instance of the IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists up to a specified number of groups for the account.
  # @param count [Integer] The maximum number of groups to list.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Client::Response]
  def list_groups(count)
    response = @iam_client.list_groups(max_items: count)
    response.groups.each do |group|
      @logger.info("\t#{group.group_name}")
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't list groups for the account. Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example module lists, creates, attaches, and detaches role policies.

```
# Manages policies in AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM)
class RolePolicyManager
  # Initialize with an AWS IAM client
  #
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] An initialized IAM client
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'PolicyManager'
  end

  # Creates a policy
  #
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy
  # @param policy_document [Hash] The policy document
  # @return [String] The policy ARN if successful, otherwise nil
  def create_policy(policy_name, policy_document)
    response = @iam_client.create_policy(
      policy_name: policy_name,
      policy_document: policy_document.to_json
    )
    response.policy.arn
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error creating policy: #{e.message}")
    nil
  end

  # Fetches an IAM policy by its ARN
  # @param policy_arn [String] the ARN of the IAM policy to retrieve
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Types::GetPolicyResponse] the policy object if found
  def get_policy(policy_arn)
    response = @iam_client.get_policy(policy_arn: policy_arn)
    policy = response.policy
```

```
    @logger.info("Got policy '#{policy.policy_name}'. Its ID is:
#{policy.policy_id}.")
    policy
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::NoSuchEntity
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. The policy does not exist.")
    raise
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't get policy '#{policy_arn}'. Here's why: #{e.code}:
#{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Attaches a policy to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def attach_policy_to_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error attaching policy to role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end

  # Detaches a policy from a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @param policy_arn [String] The policy ARN
```

```
  # @return [Boolean] true if successful, false otherwise
  def detach_policy_from_role(role_name, policy_arn)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      role_name: role_name,
      policy_arn: policy_arn
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error detaching policy from role: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Lists policy ARNs attached to a role
  #
  # @param role_name [String] The name of the role
  # @return [Array<String>] List of policy ARNs
  def list_attached_policy_arns(role_name)
    response = @iam_client.list_attached_role_policies(role_name: role_name)
    response.attached_policies.map(&:policy_arn)
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing policies attached to role: #{e.message}")
    []
  end
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Lists IAM roles up to a specified count.
# @param count [Integer] the maximum number of roles to list.
# @return [Array<String>] the names of the roles.
def list_roles(count)
  role_names = []
  roles_counted = 0

  @iam_client.list_roles.each_page do |page|
    page.roles.each do |role|
      break if roles_counted >= count

      @logger.info("\t#{roles_counted + 1}: #{role.role_name}")
      role_names << role.role_name
      roles_counted += 1
    end
    break if roles_counted >= count
  end

  role_names
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Couldn't list roles for the account. Here's why:")
  @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class SamlProviderLister
  # Initializes the SamlProviderLister with IAM client and a logger.
  # @param iam_client [Aws::IAM::Client] The IAM client object.
  # @param logger [Logger] The logger object for logging output.
  def initialize(iam_client, logger = Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
  end

  # Lists up to a specified number of SAML providers for the account.
  # @param count [Integer] The maximum number of providers to list.
  # @return [Aws::IAM::Client::Response]
  def list_saml_providers(count)
    response = @iam_client.list_saml_providers
    response.saml_provider_list.take(count).each do |provider|
      @logger.info("\t#{provider.arn}")
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't list SAML providers. Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListServerCertificates`

The following code example shows how to use `ListServerCertificates`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, update, and delete server certificates.

```
class ServerCertificateManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'ServerCertificateManager'
  end

  # Creates a new server certificate.
  # @param name [String] the name of the server certificate
  # @param certificate_body [String] the contents of the certificate
  # @param private_key [String] the private key contents
  # @return [Boolean] returns true if the certificate was successfully created
  def create_server_certificate(name, certificate_body, private_key)
    @iam_client.upload_server_certificate({
                                            server_certificate_name: name,
                                            certificate_body: certificate_body,
                                            private_key: private_key
                                          })
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Failed to create server certificate: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Lists available server certificate names.
  def list_server_certificate_names
    response = @iam_client.list_server_certificates

    if response.server_certificate_metadata_list.empty?
```

```
      @logger.info('No server certificates found.')
      return
    end

    response.server_certificate_metadata_list.each do |certificate_metadata|
      @logger.info("Certificate Name:
 #{certificate_metadata.server_certificate_name}")
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing server certificates: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the name of a server certificate.
  def update_server_certificate_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_server_certificate(
      server_certificate_name: current_name,
      new_server_certificate_name: new_name
    )
    @logger.info("Server certificate name updated from '#{current_name}' to
 '#{new_name}'.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating server certificate name: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes a server certificate.
  def delete_server_certificate(name)
    @iam_client.delete_server_certificate(server_certificate_name: name)
    @logger.info("Server certificate '#{name}' deleted.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting server certificate: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see ListServerCertificates in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Lists all users in the AWS account
#
# @return [Array<Aws::IAM::Types::User>] An array of user objects
def list_users
  users = []
  @iam_client.list_users.each_page do |page|
    page.users.each do |user|
      users << user
    end
  end
  users
rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
  @logger.error("Error listing users: #{e.message}")
  []
end
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutUserPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Creates an inline policy for a specified user.
```

```
  # @param username [String] The name of the IAM user.
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy to create.
  # @param policy_document [String] The JSON policy document.
  # @return [Boolean]
  def create_user_policy(username, policy_name, policy_document)
    @iam_client.put_user_policy({
                                  user_name: username,
                                  policy_name: policy_name,
                                  policy_document: policy_document
                                })
    @logger.info("Policy #{policy_name} created for user #{username}.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Couldn't create policy #{policy_name} for user #{username}.
 Here's why:")
    @logger.error("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`UpdateServerCertificate`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateServerCertificate`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List, update, and delete server certificates.

```
class ServerCertificateManager
  def initialize(iam_client, logger: Logger.new($stdout))
    @iam_client = iam_client
    @logger = logger
    @logger.progname = 'ServerCertificateManager'
  end
```

```
  # Creates a new server certificate.
  # @param name [String] the name of the server certificate
  # @param certificate_body [String] the contents of the certificate
  # @param private_key [String] the private key contents
  # @return [Boolean] returns true if the certificate was successfully created
  def create_server_certificate(name, certificate_body, private_key)
    @iam_client.upload_server_certificate({
                                            server_certificate_name: name,
                                            certificate_body: certificate_body,
                                            private_key: private_key
                                          })
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Failed to create server certificate: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Lists available server certificate names.
  def list_server_certificate_names
    response = @iam_client.list_server_certificates

    if response.server_certificate_metadata_list.empty?
      @logger.info('No server certificates found.')
      return
    end

    response.server_certificate_metadata_list.each do |certificate_metadata|
      @logger.info("Certificate Name:
#{certificate_metadata.server_certificate_name}")
    end
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing server certificates: #{e.message}")
  end

  # Updates the name of a server certificate.
  def update_server_certificate_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_server_certificate(
      server_certificate_name: current_name,
      new_server_certificate_name: new_name
    )
    @logger.info("Server certificate name updated from '#{current_name}' to
'#{new_name}'.")
    true
```

```
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating server certificate name: #{e.message}")
    false
  end

  # Deletes a server certificate.
  def delete_server_certificate(name)
    @iam_client.delete_server_certificate(server_certificate_name: name)
    @logger.info("Server certificate '#{name}' deleted.")
    true
  rescue Aws::IAM::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error deleting server certificate: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end
```

- For API details, see UpdateServerCertificate in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`UpdateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateUser`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Updates an IAM user's name
  #
  # @param current_name [String] The current name of the user
  # @param new_name [String] The new name of the user
  def update_user_name(current_name, new_name)
    @iam_client.update_user(user_name: current_name, new_user_name: new_name)
    true
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("Error updating user name from '#{current_name}' to '#{new_name}':
 #{e.message}")
    false
```

```
end
```

- For API details, see UpdateUser in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Kinesis.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
```

```
  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue => err
      $stderr.puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      raise err
    end
  end
  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('UTF-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  # You can use Ruby's asynchronous programming tools like async/await or fibers
 here.
  return data
end
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'
```

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  batch_item_failures = []

  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue StandardError => err
      puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      # Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
      # Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards.
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record['kinesis']
['sequenceNumber'] }] }
    end
  end

  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
  { batchItemFailures: batch_item_failures }
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('utf-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  sleep(1)
  data
end
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with AWS KMS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create a AWS KMS key.
# As long we are only encrypting small amounts of data (4 KiB or less) directly,
# a KMS key is fine for our purposes.
# For larger amounts of data,
# use the KMS key to encrypt a data encryption key (DEK).

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new

resp = client.create_key({
                            tags: [
                              {
                                tag_key: 'CreatedBy',
                                tag_value: 'ExampleUser'
                              }
                            ]
                          })

puts resp.key_metadata.key_id
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Decrypt

The following code example shows how to use `Decrypt`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Decrypted blob

blob =
 '01020200785d68faeec386af1057904926253051eb2919d3c16078badf65b808b26dd057c101747cadf3593596
blob_packed = [blob].pack('H*')

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

resp = client.decrypt({
                        ciphertext_blob: blob_packed
                      })

puts 'Raw text: '
puts resp.plaintext
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Encrypt

The following code example shows how to use `Encrypt`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# ARN of the AWS KMS key.
#
# Replace the fictitious key ARN with a valid key ID

keyId = 'arn:aws:kms:us-
west-2:111122223333:key/1234abcd-12ab-34cd-56ef-1234567890ab'

text = '1234567890'

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

resp = client.encrypt({
                        key_id: keyId,
                        plaintext: text
                      })

# Display a readable version of the resulting encrypted blob.
puts 'Blob:'
puts resp.ciphertext_blob.unpack('H*')
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ReEncrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `ReEncrypt`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-kms' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Human-readable version of the ciphertext of the data to reencrypt.

blob =
 '01020200785d68faeec386af1057904926253051eb2919d3c16078badf65b808b26dd057c101747cadf3593596
sourceCiphertextBlob = [blob].pack('H*')

# Replace the fictitious key ARN with a valid key ID

destinationKeyId = 'arn:aws:kms:us-west-2:111122223333:key/0987dcba-09fe-87dc-65ba-
ab0987654321'

client = Aws::KMS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

resp = client.re_encrypt({
                           ciphertext_blob: sourceCiphertextBlob,
                           destination_key_id: destinationKeyId
                         })

# Display a readable version of the resulting re-encrypted blob.
puts 'Blob:'
puts resp.ciphertext_blob.unpack('H*')
```

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Lambda

The following code examples show how to get started using Lambda.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-lambda'

# Creates an AWS Lambda client using the default credentials and configuration
def lambda_client
  Aws::Lambda::Client.new
end

# Lists the Lambda functions in your AWS account, paginating the results if
 necessary
def list_lambda_functions
  lambda = lambda_client

  # Use a pagination iterator to list all functions
  functions = []
  lambda.list_functions.each_page do |page|
    functions.concat(page.functions)
```

```
  end

  # Print the name and ARN of each function
  functions.each do |function|
    puts "Function name: #{function.function_name}"
    puts "Function ARN: #{function.function_arn}"
    puts
  end

  puts "Total functions: #{functions.count}"
end

list_lambda_functions if __FILE__ == $PROGRAM_NAME
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Set up pre-requisite IAM permissions for a Lambda function capable of writing logs.

```
# Get an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role.
#
# @param iam_role_name: The name of the role to retrieve.
# @param action: Whether to create or destroy the IAM apparatus.
# @return: The IAM role.
def manage_iam(iam_role_name, action)
  case action
  when 'create'
    create_iam_role(iam_role_name)
  when 'destroy'
    destroy_iam_role(iam_role_name)
  else
    raise "Incorrect action provided. Must provide 'create' or 'destroy'"
  end
end

private

def create_iam_role(iam_role_name)
  role_policy = {
    'Version': '2012-10-17',
    'Statement': [
      {
        'Effect': 'Allow',
        'Principal': { 'Service': 'lambda.amazonaws.com' },
        'Action': 'sts:AssumeRole'
      }
    ]
  }
  role = @iam_client.create_role(
    role_name: iam_role_name,
    assume_role_policy_document: role_policy.to_json
  )
```

```
    @iam_client.attach_role_policy(
      {
        policy_arn: 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole',
        role_name: iam_role_name
      }
    )
    wait_for_role_to_exist(iam_role_name)
    @logger.debug("Successfully created IAM role: #{role['role']['arn']}")
    sleep(10)
    [role, role_policy.to_json]
  end

  def destroy_iam_role(iam_role_name)
    @iam_client.detach_role_policy(
      {
        policy_arn: 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole',
        role_name: iam_role_name
      }
    )
    @iam_client.delete_role(role_name: iam_role_name)
    @logger.debug("Detached policy & deleted IAM role: #{iam_role_name}")
  end

  def wait_for_role_to_exist(iam_role_name)
    @iam_client.wait_until(:role_exists, { role_name: iam_role_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  end
```

Define a Lambda handler that increments a number provided as an invocation parameter.

```
require 'logger'

# A function that increments a whole number by one (1) and logs the result.
# Requires a manually-provided runtime parameter, 'number', which must be Int
#
# @param event [Hash] Parameters sent when the function is invoked
# @param context [Hash] Methods and properties that provide information
# about the invocation, function, and execution environment.
```

```
# @return incremented_number [String] The incremented number.
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  log_level = ENV['LOG_LEVEL']
  logger.level = case log_level
                 when 'debug'
                   Logger::DEBUG
                 when 'info'
                   Logger::INFO
                 else
                   Logger::ERROR
                 end
  logger.debug('This is a debug log message.')
  logger.info('This is an info log message. Code executed successfully!')
  number = event['number'].to_i
  incremented_number = number + 1
  logger.info("You provided #{number.round} and it was incremented to
 #{incremented_number.round}")
  incremented_number.round.to_s
end
```

Zip your Lambda function into a deployment package.

```
  # Creates a Lambda deployment package in .zip format.
  #
  # @param source_file: The name of the object, without suffix, for the Lambda file
 and zip.
  # @return: The deployment package.
  def create_deployment_package(source_file)
    Dir.chdir(File.dirname(__FILE__))
    if File.exist?('lambda_function.zip')
      File.delete('lambda_function.zip')
      @logger.debug('Deleting old zip: lambda_function.zip')
    end
    Zip::File.open('lambda_function.zip', create: true) do |zipfile|
      zipfile.add('lambda_function.rb', "#{source_file}.rb")
    end
    @logger.debug("Zipping #{source_file}.rb into: lambda_function.zip.")
    File.read('lambda_function.zip').to_s
  rescue StandardError => e
    @logger.error("There was an error creating deployment package:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

Create a new Lambda function.

```
  # Deploys a Lambda function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
  # @param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function.
  # @param role_arn: The IAM role to use for the function.
  # @param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the function
code in .zip format.
  # @return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
  def create_function(function_name, handler_name, role_arn, deployment_package)
    response = @lambda_client.create_function({
                                                role: role_arn.to_s,
                                                function_name: function_name,
                                                handler: handler_name,
                                                runtime: 'ruby2.7',
                                                code: {
                                                  zip_file: deployment_package
                                                },
                                                environment: {
                                                  variables: {
                                                    'LOG_LEVEL' => 'info'
                                                  }
                                                }
                                              })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_active_v2, { function_name: function_name })
do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error creating #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

Invoke your Lambda function with optional runtime parameters.

```
  # Invokes a Lambda function.
```

```
  # @param function_name [String] The name of the function to invoke.
  # @param payload [nil] Payload containing runtime parameters.
  # @return [Object] The response from the function invocation.
  def invoke_function(function_name, payload = nil)
    params = { function_name: function_name }
    params[:payload] = payload unless payload.nil?
    @lambda_client.invoke(params)
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error executing #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

Update your Lambda function's configuration to inject a new environment variable.

```
  # Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param log_level: The log level of the function.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_configuration(function_name, log_level)
    @lambda_client.update_function_configuration({
                                                    function_name: function_name,
                                                    environment: {
                                                      variables: {
                                                        'LOG_LEVEL' => log_level
                                                      }
                                                    }
                                                  })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
 function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error updating configurations for #{function_name}:
\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

Update your Lambda function's code with a different deployment package containing different code.

```
  # Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
 contains
  # the code for the function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes in
  #                            .zip format.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_code(function_name, deployment_package)
    @lambda_client.update_function_code(
      function_name: function_name,
      zip_file: deployment_package
    )
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
 function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error updating function code for: #{function_name}:
\n #{e.message}")
    nil
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to update:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

List all existing Lambda functions using the built-in paginator.

```
  # Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
  def list_functions
    functions = []
    @lambda_client.list_functions.each do |response|
      response['functions'].each do |function|
        functions.append(function['function_name'])
      end
    end
    functions
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error listing functions:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

Delete a specific Lambda function.

```
# Deletes a Lambda function.
# @param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
def delete_function(function_name)
  print "Deleting function: #{function_name}..."
  @lambda_client.delete_function(
    function_name: function_name
  )
  print 'Done!'.green
rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
  @logger.error("There was an error deleting #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
end
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Deploys a Lambda function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the Lambda function.
  # @param handler_name: The fully qualified name of the handler function.
  # @param role_arn: The IAM role to use for the function.
  # @param deployment_package: The deployment package that contains the function
 code in .zip format.
  # @return: The Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the newly created function.
  def create_function(function_name, handler_name, role_arn, deployment_package)
    response = @lambda_client.create_function({
                                                role: role_arn.to_s,
                                                function_name: function_name,
                                                handler: handler_name,
                                                runtime: 'ruby2.7',
                                                code: {
                                                  zip_file: deployment_package
                                                },
                                                environment: {
                                                  variables: {
                                                    'LOG_LEVEL' => 'info'
                                                  }
                                                }
                                              })
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_active_v2, { function_name: function_name })
 do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
    response
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error creating #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
```

```
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Deletes a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to delete.
  def delete_function(function_name)
    print "Deleting function: #{function_name}..."
    @lambda_client.delete_function(
      function_name: function_name
    )
    print 'Done!'.green
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error deleting #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Gets data about a Lambda function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the function.
  # @return response: The function data, or nil if no such function exists.
  def get_function(function_name)
    @lambda_client.get_function(
      {
        function_name: function_name
      }
    )
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ResourceNotFoundException => e
    @logger.debug("Could not find function: #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
    nil
  end
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Invoke

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Invokes a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name [String] The name of the function to invoke.
  # @param payload [nil] Payload containing runtime parameters.
  # @return [Object] The response from the function invocation.
  def invoke_function(function_name, payload = nil)
    params = { function_name: function_name }
    params[:payload] = payload unless payload.nil?
    @lambda_client.invoke(params)
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error executing #{function_name}:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

ListFunctions

The following code example shows how to use ListFunctions.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Lists the Lambda functions for the current account.
  def list_functions
    functions = []
    @lambda_client.list_functions.each do |response|
      response['functions'].each do |function|
        functions.append(function['function_name'])
      end
    end
    functions
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error listing functions:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

UpdateFunctionCode

The following code example shows how to use UpdateFunctionCode.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Updates the code for a Lambda function by submitting a .zip archive that
 contains
  # the code for the function.
  #
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param deployment_package: The function code to update, packaged as bytes in
  #                            .zip format.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_code(function_name, deployment_package)
    @lambda_client.update_function_code(
      function_name: function_name,
      zip_file: deployment_package
    )
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
 function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error updating function code for: #{function_name}:
\n #{e.message}")
    nil
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
```

```
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to update:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
class LambdaWrapper
  attr_accessor :lambda_client, :cloudwatch_client, :iam_client

  def initialize
    @lambda_client = Aws::Lambda::Client.new
    @cloudwatch_client = Aws::CloudWatchLogs::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @iam_client = Aws::IAM::Client.new(region: 'us-east-1')
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
    @logger.level = Logger::WARN
  end

  # Updates the environment variables for a Lambda function.
  # @param function_name: The name of the function to update.
  # @param log_level: The log level of the function.
  # @return: Data about the update, including the status.
  def update_function_configuration(function_name, log_level)
    @lambda_client.update_function_configuration({
                                                   function_name: function_name,
                                                   environment: {
                                                     variables: {
                                                       'LOG_LEVEL' => log_level
                                                     }
                                                   }
                                                 })
```

```
    @lambda_client.wait_until(:function_updated_v2, { function_name:
 function_name }) do |w|
      w.max_attempts = 5
      w.delay = 5
    end
  rescue Aws::Lambda::Errors::ServiceException => e
    @logger.error("There was an error updating configurations for #{function_name}:
\n #{e.message}")
  rescue Aws::Waiters::Errors::WaiterFailed => e
    @logger.error("Failed waiting for #{function_name} to activate:\n #{e.message}")
  end
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Ruby.

```
# Ruby code here.

require 'aws-sdk-rds'
require 'json'
require 'mysql2'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  endpoint = ENV['DBEndpoint'] # Add the endpoint without https"
  port = ENV['Port']           # 3306
  user = ENV['DBUser']
  region = ENV['DBRegion']     # 'us-east-1'
  db_name = ENV['DBName']

  credentials = Aws::Credentials.new(
    ENV['AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID'],
    ENV['AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY'],
    ENV['AWS_SESSION_TOKEN']
  )
```

```
  rds_client = Aws::RDS::AuthTokenGenerator.new(
    region: region,
    credentials: credentials
  )

  token = rds_client.auth_token(
    endpoint: endpoint+ ':' + port,
    user_name: user,
    region: region
  )

  begin
    conn = Mysql2::Client.new(
      host: endpoint,
      username: user,
      password: token,
      port: port,
      database: db_name,
      sslca: '/var/task/global-bundle.pem',
      sslverify: true,
      enable_cleartext_plugin: true
    )
    a = 3
    b = 2
    result = conn.query("SELECT #{a} + #{b} AS sum").first['sum']
    puts result
    conn.close
    {
      statusCode: 200,
      body: result.to_json
    }
  rescue => e
    puts "Database connection failed due to #{e}"
  end
end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue => err
      $stderr.puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      raise err
    end
  end
  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('UTF-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  # You can use Ruby's asynchronous programming tools like async/await or fibers
 here.
  return data
end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    return 'received empty event' if event['Records'].empty?

    event['Records'].each do |record|
      log_dynamodb_record(record)
    end

    "Records processed: #{event['Records'].length}"
  end

  def log_dynamodb_record(record)
    puts record['eventID']
    puts record['eventName']
    puts "DynamoDB Record: #{JSON.generate(record['dynamodb'])}"
  end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['events'].each do |record|
    log_document_db_event(record)
  end
  'OK'
end

def log_document_db_event(record)
  event_data = record['event'] || {}
  operation_type = event_data['operationType'] || 'Unknown'
  db = event_data.dig('ns', 'db') || 'Unknown'
  collection = event_data.dig('ns', 'coll') || 'Unknown'
  full_document = event_data['fullDocument'] || {}

  puts "Operation type: #{operation_type}"
  puts "db: #{db}"
  puts "collection: #{collection}"
  puts "Full document: #{JSON.pretty_generate(full_document)}"
end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'base64'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  # Iterate through keys
  event['records'].each do |key, records|
    puts "Key: #{key}"

    # Iterate through records
    records.each do |record|
      puts "Record: #{record}"

      # Decode base64
      msg = Base64.decode64(record['value'])
      puts "Message: #{msg}"
    end
  end
end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'
require 'uri'
require 'aws-sdk'

puts 'Loading function'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  s3 = Aws::S3::Client.new(region: 'region') # Your AWS region
  # puts "Received event: #{JSON.dump(event)}"

  # Get the object from the event and show its content type
  bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
  key = URI.decode_www_form_component(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 Encoding::UTF_8)
  begin
    response = s3.get_object(bucket: bucket, key: key)
    puts "CONTENT TYPE: #{response.content_type}"
    return response.content_type
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts e.message
    puts "Error getting object #{key} from bucket #{bucket}. Make sure they exist
 and your bucket is in the same region as this function."
    raise e
  end
end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].map { |record| process_message(record) }
end

def process_message(record)
  message = record['Sns']['Message']
  puts("Processing message: #{message}")
rescue StandardError => e
  puts("Error processing message: #{e}")
  raise
end
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |message|
    process_message(message)
  end
  puts "done"
end

def process_message(message)
  begin
    puts "Processed message #{message['body']}"
    # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
  rescue StandardError => err
    puts "An error occurred"
    raise err
  end
end
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'aws-sdk'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  batch_item_failures = []

  event['Records'].each do |record|
    begin
      puts "Processed Kinesis Event - EventID: #{record['eventID']}"
      record_data = get_record_data_async(record['kinesis'])
      puts "Record Data: #{record_data}"
      # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new data
    rescue StandardError => err
      puts "An error occurred #{err}"
      # Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
      # Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards.
      return { batchItemFailures: [{ itemIdentifier: record['kinesis']
['sequenceNumber'] }] }
    end
  end

  puts "Successfully processed #{event['Records'].length} records."
  { batchItemFailures: batch_item_failures }
end

def get_record_data_async(payload)
  data = Base64.decode64(payload['data']).force_encoding('utf-8')
  # Placeholder for actual async work
  sleep(1)
  data
```

```
end
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
    records = event["Records"]
    cur_record_sequence_number = ""

    records.each do |record|
      begin
        # Process your record
        cur_record_sequence_number = record["dynamodb"]["SequenceNumber"]
      rescue StandardError => e
        # Return failed record's sequence number
        return {"batchItemFailures" => [{"itemIdentifier" =>
 cur_record_sequence_number}]}
      end
    end

    {"batchItemFailures" => []}
  end
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  if event
    batch_item_failures = []
    sqs_batch_response = {}

    event["Records"].each do |record|
      begin
        # process message
      rescue StandardError => e
        batch_item_failures << {"itemIdentifier" => record['messageId']}
      end
    end

    sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
    return sqs_batch_response
  end
end
```

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'base64'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  # Iterate through keys
  event['records'].each do |key, records|
    puts "Key: #{key}"

    # Iterate through records
    records.each do |record|
      puts "Record: #{record}"
```

```
      # Decode base64
      msg = Base64.decode64(record['value'])
      puts "Message: #{msg}"
    end
  end
end
```

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon Polly.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeVoices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVoices`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-polly' # In v2: require 'aws-sdk'

begin
  # Create an Amazon Polly client using
  # credentials from the shared credentials file ~/.aws/credentials
  # and the configuration (region) from the shared configuration file ~/.aws/config
  polly = Aws::Polly::Client.new

  # Get US English voices
  resp = polly.describe_voices(language_code: 'en-US')

  resp.voices.each do |v|
    puts v.name
    puts "  #{v.gender}"
    puts
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Could not get voices'
  puts 'Error message:'
  puts e.message
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListLexicons`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLexicons`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-polly' # In v2: require 'aws-sdk'
```

```
begin
  # Create an Amazon Polly client using
  # credentials from the shared credentials file ~/.aws/credentials
  # and the configuration (region) from the shared configuration file ~/.aws/config
  polly = Aws::Polly::Client.new

  resp = polly.list_lexicons

  resp.lexicons.each do |l|
    puts l.name
    puts "  Alphabet:#{l.attributes.alphabet}"
    puts "  Language:#{l.attributes.language}"
    puts
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Could not get lexicons'
  puts 'Error message:'
  puts e.message
end
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`SynthesizeSpeech`

The following code example shows how to use `SynthesizeSpeech`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-polly' # In v2: require 'aws-sdk'

begin
  # Get the filename from the command line
  if ARGV.empty?
    puts 'You must supply a filename'
```

```
    exit 1
  end

  filename = ARGV[0]

  # Open file and get the contents as a string
  if File.exist?(filename)
    contents = IO.read(filename)
  else
    puts "No such file: #{filename}"
    exit 1
  end

  # Create an Amazon Polly client using
  # credentials from the shared credentials file ~/.aws/credentials
  # and the configuration (region) from the shared configuration file ~/.aws/config
  polly = Aws::Polly::Client.new

  resp = polly.synthesize_speech({
                                    output_format: 'mp3',
                                    text: contents,
                                    voice_id: 'Joanna'
                                  })

  # Save output
  # Get just the file name
  #  abc/xyz.txt -> xyx.txt
  name = File.basename(filename)

  # Split up name so we get just the xyz part
  parts = name.split('.')
  first_part = parts[0]
  mp3_file = "#{first_part}.mp3"

  IO.copy_stream(resp.audio_stream, mp3_file)

  puts "Wrote MP3 content to: #{mp3_file}"
rescue StandardError => e
  puts 'Got error:'
  puts 'Error message:'
  puts e.message
end
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon RDS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon RDS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon RDS.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds'
require 'logger'

# RDSManager is a class responsible for managing RDS operations
# such as listing all RDS DB instances in the current AWS account.
class RDSManager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all RDS DB instances in the current AWS account.
  def list_db_instances
    @logger.info('Listing RDS DB instances')

    paginator = @client.describe_db_instances
    instances = []

    paginator.each_page do |page|
      instances.concat(page.db_instances)
    end
```

```
    if instances.empty?
      @logger.info('No instances found.')
    else
      @logger.info("Found #{instances.count} instance(s):")
      instances.each do |instance|
        @logger.info(" * #{instance.db_instance_identifier}
 (#{instance.db_instance_status})")
      end
    end
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  rds_client = Aws::RDS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
  manager = RDSManager.new(rds_client)
  manager.list_db_instances
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create a snapshot for an Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS)
# DB instance.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] The resource containing SDK logic.
# @param db_instance_name [String] The name of the Amazon RDS DB instance.
# @return [Aws::RDS::DBSnapshot, nil] The snapshot created, or nil if error.
def create_snapshot(rds_resource, db_instance_name)
  id = "snapshot-#{rand(10**6)}"
  db_instance = rds_resource.db_instance(db_instance_name)
  db_instance.create_snapshot({
                                db_snapshot_identifier: id
                              })
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't create DB instance snapshot #{id}:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instances.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return [Array, nil] List of all DB instances, or nil if error.
def list_instances(rds_resource)
  db_instances = []
```

```
  rds_resource.db_instances.each do |i|
    db_instances.append({
                          "name": i.id,
                          "status": i.db_instance_status
                        })
  end
  db_instances
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list instances:\n#{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) parameter groups.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return [Array, nil] List of all parameter groups, or nil if error.
def list_parameter_groups(rds_resource)
  parameter_groups = []
  rds_resource.db_parameter_groups.each do |p|
    parameter_groups.append({
                              "name": p.db_parameter_group_name,
                              "description": p.description
                            })
  end
  parameter_groups
```

```
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list parameter groups:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) parameter groups.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return [Array, nil] List of all parameter groups, or nil if error.
def list_parameter_groups(rds_resource)
  parameter_groups = []
  rds_resource.db_parameter_groups.each do |p|
    parameter_groups.append({
                              "name": p.db_parameter_group_name,
                              "description": p.description
                            })
  end
  parameter_groups
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list parameter groups:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DescribeDBSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-rds' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# List all Amazon Relational Database Service (Amazon RDS) DB instance
# snapshots.
#
# @param rds_resource [Aws::RDS::Resource] An SDK for Ruby Amazon RDS resource.
# @return instance_snapshots [Array, nil] All instance snapshots, or nil if error.
def list_instance_snapshots(rds_resource)
  instance_snapshots = []
  rds_resource.db_snapshots.each do |s|
    instance_snapshots.append({
                                "id": s.snapshot_id,
                                "status": s.status
                              })
  end
  instance_snapshots
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't list instance snapshots:\n #{e.message}"
end
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Ruby.

```
# Ruby code here.

require 'aws-sdk-rds'
require 'json'
require 'mysql2'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  endpoint = ENV['DBEndpoint'] # Add the endpoint without https"
  port = ENV['Port']           # 3306
  user = ENV['DBUser']
  region = ENV['DBRegion']     # 'us-east-1'
  db_name = ENV['DBName']

  credentials = Aws::Credentials.new(
    ENV['AWS_ACCESS_KEY_ID'],
    ENV['AWS_SECRET_ACCESS_KEY'],
    ENV['AWS_SESSION_TOKEN']
  )
  rds_client = Aws::RDS::AuthTokenGenerator.new(
    region: region,
    credentials: credentials
  )

  token = rds_client.auth_token(
    endpoint: endpoint+ ':' + port,
```

```
    user_name: user,
    region: region
  )

  begin
    conn = Mysql2::Client.new(
      host: endpoint,
      username: user,
      password: token,
      port: port,
      database: db_name,
      sslca: '/var/task/global-bundle.pem',
      sslverify: true,
      enable_cleartext_plugin: true
    )
    a = 3
    b = 2
    result = conn.query("SELECT #{a} + #{b} AS sum").first['sum']
    puts result
    conn.close
    {
      statusCode: 200,
      body: result.to_json
    }
  rescue => e
    puts "Database connection failed due to #{e}"
  end
end
```

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# frozen_string_literal: true

# S3Manager is a class responsible for managing S3 operations
# such as listing all S3 buckets in the current AWS account.
class S3Manager
  def initialize(client)
    @client = client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists and prints all S3 buckets in the current AWS account.
  def list_buckets
    @logger.info('Here are the buckets in your account:')

    response = @client.list_buckets

    if response.buckets.empty?
      @logger.info("You don't have any S3 buckets yet.")
    else
      response.buckets.each do |bucket|
        @logger.info("- #{bucket.name}")
      end
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Encountered an error while listing buckets: #{e.message}")
```

```
  end
end

if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  s3_client = Aws::S3::Client.new
  manager = S3Manager.new(s3_client)
  manager.list_buckets
end
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps the getting started scenario actions.
class ScenarioGettingStarted
  attr_reader :s3_resource

  # @param s3_resource [Aws::S3::Resource] An Amazon S3 resource.
  def initialize(s3_resource)
    @s3_resource = s3_resource
  end

  # Creates a bucket with a random name in the currently configured account and
  # AWS Region.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::Bucket] The newly created bucket.
  def create_bucket
    bucket = @s3_resource.create_bucket(
      bucket: "amzn-s3-demo-bucket-#{Random.uuid}",
      create_bucket_configuration: {
        location_constraint: 'us-east-1' # NOTE: only certain regions permitted
      }
    )
    puts("Created demo bucket named #{bucket.name}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts('Tried and failed to create demo bucket.')
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    puts("\nCan't continue the demo without a bucket!")
    raise
  else
    bucket
  end

  # Requests a file name from the user.
  #
  # @return The name of the file.
  def create_file
    File.open('demo.txt', w) { |f| f.write('This is a demo file.') }
  end

  # Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket object representing the upload
 destination
```

```
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object] The Amazon S3 object that contains the uploaded file.
  def upload_file(bucket)
    File.open('demo.txt', 'w+') { |f| f.write('This is a demo file.') }
    s3_object = bucket.object(File.basename('demo.txt'))
    s3_object.upload_file('demo.txt')
    puts("Uploaded file demo.txt into bucket #{bucket.name} with key
#{s3_object.key}.")
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't upload file demo.txt to #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    s3_object
  end

  # Downloads an Amazon S3 object to a file.
  #
  # @param s3_object [Aws::S3::Object] The object to download.
  def download_file(s3_object)
    puts("\nDo you want to download #{s3_object.key} to a local file (y/n)? ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      puts('Enter a name for the downloaded file: ')
      file_name = gets.chomp
      s3_object.download_file(file_name)
      puts("Object #{s3_object.key} successfully downloaded to #{file_name}.")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't download #{s3_object.key}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Copies an Amazon S3 object to a subfolder within the same bucket.
  #
  # @param source_object [Aws::S3::Object] The source object to copy.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object, nil] The destination object.
  def copy_object(source_object)
    dest_object = nil
    puts("\nDo you want to copy #{source_object.key} to a subfolder in your bucket
(y/n)? ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      dest_object = source_object.bucket.object("demo-folder/#{source_object.key}")
```

```
      dest_object.copy_from(source_object)
      puts("Copied #{source_object.key} to #{dest_object.key}.")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't copy #{source_object.key}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  else
    dest_object
  end

  # Lists the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to query.
  def list_objects(bucket)
    puts("\nYour bucket contains the following objects:")
    bucket.objects.each do |obj|
      puts("\t#{obj.key}")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't list the objects in bucket #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end

  # Deletes the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket and deletes the bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to empty and delete.
  def delete_bucket(bucket)
    puts("\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)? ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      bucket.objects.batch_delete!
      bucket.delete
      puts("Emptied and deleted bucket #{bucket.name}.\n")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't empty and delete bucket #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end

# Runs the Amazon S3 getting started scenario.
```

```
def run_scenario(scenario)
  puts('-' * 88)
  puts('Welcome to the Amazon S3 getting started demo!')
  puts('-' * 88)

  bucket = scenario.create_bucket
  s3_object = scenario.upload_file(bucket)
  scenario.download_file(s3_object)
  scenario.copy_object(s3_object)
  scenario.list_objects(bucket)
  scenario.delete_bucket(bucket)

  puts('Thanks for watching!')
  puts('-' * 88)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError
  puts('Something went wrong with the demo!')
end

run_scenario(ScenarioGettingStarted.new(Aws::S3::Resource.new)) if $PROGRAM_NAME ==
 __FILE__
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Copy an object.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectCopyWrapper
  attr_reader :source_object

  # @param source_object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object. This is
 used as the source object for
  #                                        copy actions.
  def initialize(source_object)
    @source_object = source_object
  end

  # Copy the source object to the specified target bucket and rename it with the
 target key.
  #
  # @param target_bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object is copied.
  # @param target_object_key [String] The key to give the copy of the object.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object, nil] The copied object when successful; otherwise,
 nil.
  def copy_object(target_bucket, target_object_key)
    @source_object.copy_to(bucket: target_bucket.name, key: target_object_key)
    target_bucket.object(target_object_key)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't copy #{@source_object.key} to #{target_object_key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  source_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1"
```

```
  source_key = "my-source-file.txt"
  target_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2"
  target_key = "my-target-file.txt"

  source_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(source_bucket_name)
  wrapper = ObjectCopyWrapper.new(source_bucket.object(source_key))
  target_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(target_bucket_name)
  target_object = wrapper.copy_object(target_bucket, target_key)
  return unless target_object

  puts "Copied #{source_key} from #{source_bucket_name} to
 #{target_object.bucket_name}:#{target_object.key}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Copy an object and add server-side encryption to the destination object.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectCopyEncryptWrapper
  attr_reader :source_object

  # @param source_object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object. This is
 used as the source object for
  #                                        copy actions.
  def initialize(source_object)
    @source_object = source_object
  end

  # Copy the source object to the specified target bucket, rename it with the target
 key, and encrypt it.
  #
  # @param target_bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket where the
 object is copied.
  # @param target_object_key [String] The key to give the copy of the object.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Object, nil] The copied object when successful; otherwise,
 nil.
  def copy_object(target_bucket, target_object_key, encryption)
    @source_object.copy_to(bucket: target_bucket.name, key: target_object_key,
 server_side_encryption: encryption)
```

```
    target_bucket.object(target_object_key)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't copy #{@source_object.key} to #{target_object_key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  source_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket1"
  source_key = "my-source-file.txt"
  target_bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket2"
  target_key = "my-target-file.txt"
  target_encryption = "AES256"

  source_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(source_bucket_name)
  wrapper = ObjectCopyEncryptWrapper.new(source_bucket.object(source_key))
  target_bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(target_bucket_name)
  target_object = wrapper.copy_object(target_bucket, target_key, target_encryption)
  return unless target_object

  puts "Copied #{source_key} from #{source_bucket_name} to
 #{target_object.bucket_name}:#{target_object.key} and "\
       "encrypted the target with #{target_object.server_side_encryption}
 encryption."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket actions.
class BucketCreateWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket

  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An Amazon S3 bucket initialized with a name.
 This is a client-side object until
  #                                 create is called.
  def initialize(bucket)
    @bucket = bucket
  end

  # Creates an Amazon S3 bucket in the specified AWS Region.
  #
  # @param region [String] The Region where the bucket is created.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the bucket is created; otherwise, false.
  def create?(region)
    @bucket.create(create_bucket_configuration: { location_constraint: region })
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't create bucket. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end

  # Gets the Region where the bucket is located.
  #
  # @return [String] The location of the bucket.
  def location
    if @bucket.nil?
      'None. You must create a bucket before you can get its location!'
    else
      @bucket.client.get_bucket_location(bucket: @bucket.name).location_constraint
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    "Couldn't get the location of #{@bucket.name}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  region = "us-west-2"
```

```
  wrapper = BucketCreateWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Bucket.new("amzn-s3-demo-bucket-
#{Random.uuid}"))
  return unless wrapper.create?(region)

  puts "Created bucket #{wrapper.bucket.name}."
  puts "Your bucket's region is: #{wrapper.location}"
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  # Deletes the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket and deletes the bucket.
  #
  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to empty and delete.
  def delete_bucket(bucket)
    puts("\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)? ")
    answer = gets.chomp.downcase
    if answer == 'y'
      bucket.objects.batch_delete!
      bucket.delete
      puts("Emptied and deleted bucket #{bucket.name}.\n")
    end
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts("Couldn't empty and delete bucket #{bucket.name}.")
    puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketCors`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket CORS configuration.
class BucketCorsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_cors

  # @param bucket_cors [Aws::S3::BucketCors] A bucket CORS object configured with an
 existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_cors)
    @bucket_cors = bucket_cors
  end

  # Deletes the CORS configuration of a bucket.
  #
  # @return [Boolean] True if the CORS rules were deleted; otherwise, false.
  def delete_cors
    @bucket_cors.delete
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't delete CORS rules for #{@bucket_cors.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Wraps an Amazon S3 bucket policy.
class BucketPolicyWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_policy

  # @param bucket_policy [Aws::S3::BucketPolicy] A bucket policy object configured
 with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_policy)
    @bucket_policy = bucket_policy
  end

  def delete_policy
    @bucket_policy.delete
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't delete the policy from #{@bucket_policy.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Deletes the objects in an Amazon S3 bucket and deletes the bucket.
#
# @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] The bucket to empty and delete.
def delete_bucket(bucket)
  puts("\nDo you want to delete all of the objects as well as the bucket (y/n)? ")
  answer = gets.chomp.downcase
  if answer == 'y'
    bucket.objects.batch_delete!
    bucket.delete
    puts("Emptied and deleted bucket #{bucket.name}.\n")
  end
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts("Couldn't empty and delete bucket #{bucket.name}.")
  puts("\t#{e.code}: #{e.message}")
  raise
end
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketCors`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket CORS configuration.
class BucketCorsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_cors

  # @param bucket_cors [Aws::S3::BucketCors] A bucket CORS object configured with an
 existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_cors)
    @bucket_cors = bucket_cors
  end

  # Gets the CORS configuration of a bucket.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::Type::GetBucketCorsOutput, nil] The current CORS configuration
 for the bucket.
  def cors
    @bucket_cors.data
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get CORS configuration for #{@bucket_cors.bucket.name}. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
    nil
  end

end
```

- For API details, see GetBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Wraps an Amazon S3 bucket policy.
class BucketPolicyWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_policy

  # @param bucket_policy [Aws::S3::BucketPolicy] A bucket policy object configured
 with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_policy)
    @bucket_policy = bucket_policy
  end

  # Gets the policy of a bucket.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::GetBucketPolicyOutput, nil] The current bucket policy.
  def policy
    policy = @bucket_policy.data.policy
    policy.respond_to?(:read) ? policy.read : policy
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get the policy for #{@bucket_policy.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    nil
  end

end
```

- For API details, see GetBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Get an object.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectGetWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Gets the object directly to a file.
  #
  # @param target_path [String] The path to the file where the object is downloaded.
  # @return [Aws::S3::Types::GetObjectOutput, nil] The retrieved object data if
 successful; otherwise nil.
  def get_object(target_path)
    @object.get(response_target: target_path)
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get object #{@object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object.txt"
  target_path = "my-object-as-file.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectGetWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name, object_key))
  obj_data = wrapper.get_object(target_path)
  return unless obj_data
```

```
  puts "Object #{object_key} (#{obj_data.content_length} bytes} downloaded to
 #{target_path}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Get an object and report its server-side encryption state.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectGetEncryptionWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Gets the object into memory.
  #
  # @return [Aws::S3::Types::GetObjectOutput, nil] The retrieved object data if
 successful; otherwise nil.
  def object
    @object.get
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't get object #{@object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectGetEncryptionWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name,
 object_key))
  obj_data = wrapper.get_object
  return unless obj_data

  encryption = obj_data.server_side_encryption.nil? ? 'no' :
 obj_data.server_side_encryption
```

```
  puts "Object #{object_key} uses #{encryption} encryption."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`HeadObject`

The following code example shows how to use `HeadObject`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectExistsWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Checks whether the object exists.
  #
  # @return [Boolean] True if the object exists; otherwise false.
  def exists?
    @object.exists?
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't check existence of object #{@object.bucket.name}:#{@object.key}.
 Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end
```

```
# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectExistsWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name, object_key))
  exists = wrapper.exists?

  puts "Object #{object_key} #{exists ? 'does' : 'does not'} exist."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see HeadObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 resource actions.
class BucketListWrapper
  attr_reader :s3_resource

  # @param s3_resource [Aws::S3::Resource] An Amazon S3 resource.
  def initialize(s3_resource)
    @s3_resource = s3_resource
  end

  # Lists buckets for the current account.
  #
```

```
  # @param count [Integer] The maximum number of buckets to list.
  def list_buckets(count)
    puts 'Found these buckets:'
    @s3_resource.buckets.each do |bucket|
      puts "\t#{bucket.name}"
      count -= 1
      break if count.zero?
    end
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't list buckets. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  wrapper = BucketListWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Resource.new)
  wrapper.list_buckets(25)
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket actions.
class BucketListObjectsWrapper
```

```
  attr_reader :bucket

  # @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket.
  def initialize(bucket)
    @bucket = bucket
  end

  # Lists object in a bucket.
  #
  # @param max_objects [Integer] The maximum number of objects to list.
  # @return [Integer] The number of objects listed.
  def list_objects(max_objects)
    count = 0
    puts "The objects in #{@bucket.name} are:"
    @bucket.objects.each do |obj|
      puts "\t#{obj.key}"
      count += 1
      break if count == max_objects
    end
    count
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't list objects in bucket #{bucket.name}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    0
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"

  wrapper = BucketListObjectsWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Bucket.new(bucket_name))
  count = wrapper.list_objects(25)
  puts "Listed #{count} objects."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutBucketCors`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketCors`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket CORS configuration.
class BucketCorsWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_cors

  # @param bucket_cors [Aws::S3::BucketCors] A bucket CORS object configured with an
 existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_cors)
    @bucket_cors = bucket_cors
  end

  # Sets CORS rules on a bucket.
  #
  # @param allowed_methods [Array<String>] The types of HTTP requests to allow.
  # @param allowed_origins [Array<String>] The origins to allow.
  # @returns [Boolean] True if the CORS rules were set; otherwise, false.
  def set_cors(allowed_methods, allowed_origins)
    @bucket_cors.put(
      cors_configuration: {
        cors_rules: [
          {
            allowed_methods: allowed_methods,
            allowed_origins: allowed_origins,
            allowed_headers: %w[*],
            max_age_seconds: 3600
          }
        ]
      }
    )
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't set CORS rules for #{@bucket_cors.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
```

```
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see PutBucketCors in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutBucketPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketPolicy`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Wraps an Amazon S3 bucket policy.
class BucketPolicyWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_policy

  # @param bucket_policy [Aws::S3::BucketPolicy] A bucket policy object configured
 with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_policy)
    @bucket_policy = bucket_policy
  end

  # Sets a policy on a bucket.
  #
  def policy(policy)
    @bucket_policy.put(policy: policy)
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't set the policy for #{@bucket_policy.bucket.name}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end

end
```

- For API details, see PutBucketPolicy in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutBucketWebsite`

The following code example shows how to use `PutBucketWebsite`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 bucket website actions.
class BucketWebsiteWrapper
  attr_reader :bucket_website

  # @param bucket_website [Aws::S3::BucketWebsite] A bucket website object
 configured with an existing bucket.
  def initialize(bucket_website)
    @bucket_website = bucket_website
  end

  # Sets a bucket as a static website.
  #
  # @param index_document [String] The name of the index document for the website.
  # @param error_document [String] The name of the error document to show for 4XX
 errors.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the bucket is configured as a website; otherwise,
 false.
  def set_website(index_document, error_document)
    @bucket_website.put(
      website_configuration: {
        index_document: { suffix: index_document },
        error_document: { key: error_document }
      }
    )
```

```
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't configure #{@bucket_website.bucket.name} as a website. Here's
 why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  index_document = "index.html"
  error_document = "404.html"

  wrapper = BucketWebsiteWrapper.new(Aws::S3::BucketWebsite.new(bucket_name))
  return unless wrapper.set_website(index_document, error_document)

  puts "Successfully configured bucket #{bucket_name} as a static website."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see PutBucketWebsite in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Upload a file using a managed uploader (Object.upload_file).

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
```

```
class ObjectUploadFileWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  # Uploads a file to an Amazon S3 object by using a managed uploader.
  #
  # @param file_path [String] The path to the file to upload.
  # @return [Boolean] True when the file is uploaded; otherwise false.
  def upload_file(file_path)
    @object.upload_file(file_path)
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't upload file #{file_path} to #{@object.key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-uploaded-file"
  file_path = "object_upload_file.rb"

  wrapper = ObjectUploadFileWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name,
 object_key))
  return unless wrapper.upload_file(file_path)

  puts "File #{file_path} successfully uploaded to #{bucket_name}:#{object_key}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Upload a file using Object.put.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
```

```
class ObjectPutWrapper
  attr_reader :object

  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  def put_object(source_file_path)
    File.open(source_file_path, 'rb') do |file|
      @object.put(body: file)
    end
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't put #{source_file_path} to #{object.key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-object-key"
  file_path = "my-local-file.txt"

  wrapper = ObjectPutWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name, object_key))
  success = wrapper.put_object(file_path)
  return unless success

  puts "Put file #{file_path} into #{object_key} in #{bucket_name}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Upload a file using Object.put and add server-side encryption.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'

# Wraps Amazon S3 object actions.
class ObjectPutSseWrapper
  attr_reader :object
```

```
  # @param object [Aws::S3::Object] An existing Amazon S3 object.
  def initialize(object)
    @object = object
  end

  def put_object_encrypted(object_content, encryption)
    @object.put(body: object_content, server_side_encryption: encryption)
    true
  rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
    puts "Couldn't put your content to #{object.key}. Here's why: #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-encrypted-content"
  object_content = "This is my super-secret content."
  encryption = "AES256"

  wrapper = ObjectPutSseWrapper.new(Aws::S3::Object.new(bucket_name,
 object_content))
  return unless wrapper.put_object_encrypted(object_content, encryption)

  puts "Put your content into #{bucket_name}:#{object_key} and encrypted it with
 #{encryption}."
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Scenarios

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-s3'
require 'net/http'

# Creates a presigned URL that can be used to upload content to an object.
#
# @param bucket [Aws::S3::Bucket] An existing Amazon S3 bucket.
# @param object_key [String] The key to give the uploaded object.
# @return [URI, nil] The parsed URI if successful; otherwise nil.
def get_presigned_url(bucket, object_key)
  url = bucket.object(object_key).presigned_url(:put)
  puts "Created presigned URL: #{url}"
  URI(url)
rescue Aws::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Couldn't create presigned URL for #{bucket.name}:#{object_key}. Here's why:
 #{e.message}"
end

# Example usage:
def run_demo
  bucket_name = "amzn-s3-demo-bucket"
  object_key = "my-file.txt"
  object_content = "This is the content of my-file.txt."

  bucket = Aws::S3::Bucket.new(bucket_name)
  presigned_url = get_presigned_url(bucket, object_key)
  return unless presigned_url

  response = Net::HTTP.start(presigned_url.host) do |http|
    http.send_request('PUT', presigned_url.request_uri, object_content,
 'content_type' => '')
  end

  case response
  when Net::HTTPSuccess
```

```
    puts 'Content uploaded!'
  else
    puts response.value
  end
end

run_demo if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
require 'json'
require 'uri'
require 'aws-sdk'

puts 'Loading function'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  s3 = Aws::S3::Client.new(region: 'region') # Your AWS region
  # puts "Received event: #{JSON.dump(event)}"

  # Get the object from the event and show its content type
  bucket = event['Records'][0]['s3']['bucket']['name']
```

```
  key = URI.decode_www_form_component(event['Records'][0]['s3']['object']['key'],
 Encoding::UTF_8)
  begin
    response = s3.get_object(bucket: bucket, key: key)
    puts "CONTENT TYPE: #{response.content_type}"
    return response.content_type
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts e.message
    puts "Error getting object #{key} from bucket #{bucket}. Make sure they exist
 and your bucket is in the same region as this function."
    raise e
  end
end
```

Amazon SES examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon SES.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetIdentityVerificationAttributes`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create client in us-west-2 region
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
client = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Get up to 1000 identities
ids = client.list_identities({
                              identity_type: 'EmailAddress'
                            })

ids.identities.each do |email|
  attrs = client.get_identity_verification_attributes({
                                                        identities: [email]
                                                      })

  status = attrs.verification_attributes[email].verification_status

  # Display email addresses that have been verified
  puts email if status == 'Success'
end
```

- For API details, see GetIdentityVerificationAttributes in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListIdentities`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentities`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Create client in us-west-2 region
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
client = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Get up to 1000 identities
ids = client.list_identities({
                              identity_type: 'EmailAddress'
                            })

ids.identities.each do |email|
  attrs = client.get_identity_verification_attributes({
                                                        identities: [email]
                                                      })

  status = attrs.verification_attributes[email].verification_status

  # Display email addresses that have been verified
  puts email if status == 'Success'
end
```

- For API details, see ListIdentities in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Replace sender@example.com with your "From" address.
# This address must be verified with Amazon SES.
sender = 'sender@example.com'

# Replace recipient@example.com with a "To" address. If your account
# is still in the sandbox, this address must be verified.
recipient = 'recipient@example.com'

# Specify a configuration set. To use a configuration
# set, uncomment the next line and line 74.
#   configsetname = "ConfigSet"

# The subject line for the email.
subject = 'Amazon SES test (AWS SDK for Ruby)'

# The HTML body of the email.
htmlbody =
  '<h1>Amazon SES test (AWS SDK for Ruby)</h1>'\
  '<p>This email was sent with <a href="https://aws.amazon.com/ses/">'\
  'Amazon SES</a> using the <a href="https://aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-ruby/">'\
  'AWS SDK for Ruby</a>.'

# The email body for recipients with non-HTML email clients.
textbody = 'This email was sent with Amazon SES using the AWS SDK for Ruby.'

# Specify the text encoding scheme.
encoding = 'UTF-8'

# Create a new SES client in the us-west-2 region.
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
ses = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')
```

```
# Try to send the email.
begin
  # Provide the contents of the email.
  ses.send_email(
    destination: {
      to_addresses: [
        recipient
      ]
    },
    message: {
      body: {
        html: {
          charset: encoding,
          data: htmlbody
        },
        text: {
          charset: encoding,
          data: textbody
        }
      },
      subject: {
        charset: encoding,
        data: subject
      }
    },
    source: sender
    # Uncomment the following line to use a configuration set.
    # configuration_set_name: configsetname,
  )

  puts "Email sent to #{recipient}"

# If something goes wrong, display an error message.
rescue Aws::SES::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Email not sent. Error message: #{e}"
end
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`VerifyEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifyEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-ses' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

# Replace recipient@example.com with a "To" address.
recipient = 'recipient@example.com'

# Create a new SES resource in the us-west-2 region.
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SES.
ses = Aws::SES::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

# Try to verify email address.
begin
  ses.verify_email_identity({
                              email_address: recipient
                            })

  puts "Email sent to #{recipient}"

# If something goes wrong, display an error message.
rescue Aws::SES::Errors::ServiceError => e
  puts "Email not sent. Error message: #{e}"
end
```

- For API details, see VerifyEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sesv2'
require_relative 'config' # Recipient and sender email addresses.

# Set up the SESv2 client.
client = Aws::SESV2::Client.new(region: AWS_REGION)

def send_email(client, sender_email, recipient_email)
  response = client.send_email(
    {
      from_email_address: sender_email,
      destination: {
```

```
        to_addresses: [recipient_email]
      },
      content: {
        simple: {
          subject: {
            data: 'Test email subject'
          },
          body: {
            text: {
              data: 'Test email body'
            }
          }
        }
      }
    }
  )
  puts "Email sent from #{SENDER_EMAIL} to #{RECIPIENT_EMAIL} with message ID:
 #{response.message_id}"
end

send_email(client, SENDER_EMAIL, RECIPIENT_EMAIL)
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This class demonstrates how to create an Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS)
 topic.
class SNSTopicCreator
  # Initializes an SNS client.
  #
  # Utilizes the default AWS configuration for region and credentials.
  def initialize
    @sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  end

  # Attempts to create an SNS topic with the specified name.
  #
  # @param topic_name [String] The name of the SNS topic to create.
  # @return [Boolean] true if the topic was successfully created, false otherwise.
  def create_topic(topic_name)
    @sns_client.create_topic(name: topic_name)
    puts "The topic '#{topic_name}' was successfully created."
    true
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    # Handles SNS service errors gracefully.
    puts "Error while creating the topic named '#{topic_name}': #{e.message}"
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  topic_name = 'YourTopicName' # Replace with your topic name
  sns_topic_creator = SNSTopicCreator.new
```

```
  puts "Creating the topic '#{topic_name}'..."
  unless sns_topic_creator.create_topic(topic_name)
    puts 'The topic was not created. Stopping program.'
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This class demonstrates how to list subscriptions to an Amazon Simple Notification
 Service (SNS) topic
class SnsSubscriptionLister
  def initialize(sns_client)
    @sns_client = sns_client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Lists subscriptions for a given SNS topic
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @return [Types::ListSubscriptionsResponse] subscriptions: The response object
  def list_subscriptions(topic_arn)
    @logger.info("Listing subscriptions for topic: #{topic_arn}")
    subscriptions = @sns_client.list_subscriptions_by_topic(topic_arn: topic_arn)
    subscriptions.subscriptions.each do |subscription|
      @logger.info("Subscription endpoint: #{subscription.endpoint}")
    end
```

```
    subscriptions
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error listing subscriptions: #{e.message}")
    raise
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  topic_arn = 'SNS_TOPIC_ARN' # Replace with your SNS topic ARN
  lister = SnsSubscriptionLister.new(sns_client)

  begin
    lister.list_subscriptions(topic_arn)
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts "Failed to list subscriptions: #{e.message}"
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sns' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'

def list_topics?(sns_client)
```

```
  sns_client.topics.each do |topic|
    puts topic.arn
  rescue StandardError => e
    puts "Error while listing the topics: #{e.message}"
  end
end

def run_me
  region = 'REGION'
  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Resource.new(region: region)

  puts 'Listing the topics.'

  return if list_topics?(sns_client)

  puts 'The bucket was not created. Stopping program.'
  exit 1
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Service class for sending messages using Amazon Simple Notification Service (SNS)
class SnsMessageSender
```

```
  # Initializes the SnsMessageSender with an SNS client
  #
  # @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] The SNS client
  def initialize(sns_client)
    @sns_client = sns_client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Sends a message to a specified SNS topic
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param message [String] The message to send
  # @return [Boolean] true if message was successfully sent, false otherwise
  def send_message(topic_arn, message)
    @sns_client.publish(topic_arn: topic_arn, message: message)
    @logger.info("Message sent successfully to #{topic_arn}.")
    true
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error while sending the message: #{e.message}")
    false
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  topic_arn = 'SNS_TOPIC_ARN' # Should be replaced with a real topic ARN
  message = 'MESSAGE'         # Should be replaced with the actual message content

  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  message_sender = SnsMessageSender.new(sns_client)

  @logger.info('Sending message.')
  unless message_sender.send_message(topic_arn, message)
    @logger.error('Message sending failed. Stopping program.')
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`SetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# Service class to enable an SNS resource with a specified policy
class SnsResourceEnabler
  # Initializes the SnsResourceEnabler with an SNS resource client
  #
  # @param sns_resource [Aws::SNS::Resource] The SNS resource client
  def initialize(sns_resource)
    @sns_resource = sns_resource
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Sets a policy on a specified SNS topic
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param resource_arn [String] The ARN of the resource to include in the policy
  # @param policy_name [String] The name of the policy attribute to set
  def enable_resource(topic_arn, resource_arn, policy_name)
    policy = generate_policy(topic_arn, resource_arn)
    topic = @sns_resource.topic(topic_arn)

    topic.set_attributes({
                           attribute_name: policy_name,
                           attribute_value: policy
                         })
    @logger.info("Policy #{policy_name} set successfully for topic #{topic_arn}.")
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Failed to set policy: #{e.message}")
  end

  private

  # Generates a policy string with dynamic resource ARNs
```

```
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param resource_arn [String] The ARN of the resource
  # @return [String] The policy as a JSON string
  def generate_policy(topic_arn, resource_arn)
    {
      Version: '2008-10-17',
      Id: '__default_policy_ID',
      Statement: [{
        Sid: '__default_statement_ID',
        Effect: 'Allow',
        Principal: { "AWS": '*' },
        Action: ['SNS:Publish'],
        Resource: topic_arn,
        Condition: {
          ArnEquals: {
            "AWS:SourceArn": resource_arn
          }
        }
      }]
    }.to_json
  end
end

# Example usage:
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  topic_arn = 'MY_TOPIC_ARN' # Should be replaced with a real topic ARN
  resource_arn = 'MY_RESOURCE_ARN' # Should be replaced with a real resource ARN
  policy_name = 'POLICY_NAME' # Typically, this is "Policy"

  sns_resource = Aws::SNS::Resource.new
  enabler = SnsResourceEnabler.new(sns_resource)

  enabler.enable_resource(topic_arn, resource_arn, policy_name)
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Subscribe

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sns'
require 'logger'

# Represents a service for creating subscriptions in Amazon Simple Notification
 Service (SNS)
class SubscriptionService
  # Initializes the SubscriptionService with an SNS client
  #
  # @param sns_client [Aws::SNS::Client] The SNS client
  def initialize(sns_client)
    @sns_client = sns_client
    @logger = Logger.new($stdout)
  end

  # Attempts to create a subscription to a topic
  #
  # @param topic_arn [String] The ARN of the SNS topic
  # @param protocol [String] The subscription protocol (e.g., email)
  # @param endpoint [String] The endpoint that receives the notifications (email
 address)
  # @return [Boolean] true if subscription was successfully created, false otherwise
  def create_subscription(topic_arn, protocol, endpoint)
    @sns_client.subscribe(topic_arn: topic_arn, protocol: protocol, endpoint:
 endpoint)
    @logger.info('Subscription created successfully.')
    true
  rescue Aws::SNS::Errors::ServiceError => e
    @logger.error("Error while creating the subscription: #{e.message}")
    false
```

```
  end
end

# Main execution if the script is run directly
if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
  protocol = 'email'
  endpoint = 'EMAIL_ADDRESS' # Should be replaced with a real email address
  topic_arn = 'TOPIC_ARN'    # Should be replaced with a real topic ARN

  sns_client = Aws::SNS::Client.new
  subscription_service = SubscriptionService.new(sns_client)

  @logger.info('Creating the subscription.')
  unless subscription_service.create_subscription(topic_arn, protocol, endpoint)
    @logger.error('Subscription creation failed. Stopping program.')
    exit 1
  end
end
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Ruby Developer Guide.
- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].map { |record| process_message(record) }
end

def process_message(record)
  message = record['Sns']['Message']
  puts("Processing message: #{message}")
rescue StandardError => e
  puts("Error processing message: #{e}")
  raise
end
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`ChangeMessageVisibility`

The following code example shows how to use `ChangeMessageVisibility`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
sqs = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

begin
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  queue_url = sqs.get_queue_url(queue_name: queue_name).queue_url

  # Receive up to 10 messages
  receive_message_result_before = sqs.receive_message({
                                                        queue_url: queue_url,
                                                        max_number_of_messages: 10
                                                      })

  puts "Before attempting to change message visibility timeout: received
 #{receive_message_result_before.messages.count} message(s)."

  receive_message_result_before.messages.each do |message|
    sqs.change_message_visibility({
                                     queue_url: queue_url,
                                     receipt_handle: message.receipt_handle,
                                     visibility_timeout: 30 # This message will not
 be visible for 30 seconds after first receipt.
                                   })
  end

  # Try to retrieve the original messages after setting their visibility timeout.
  receive_message_result_after = sqs.receive_message({
                                                        queue_url: queue_url,
                                                        max_number_of_messages: 10
                                                      })
```

```
  puts "\nAfter attempting to change message visibility timeout: received
 #{receive_message_result_after.messages.count} message(s)."
rescue Aws::SQS::Errors::NonExistentQueue
  puts "Cannot receive messages for a queue named '#{queue_name}', as it does not
 exist."
end
```

- For API details, see ChangeMessageVisibility in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
# This code example demonstrates how to create a queue in Amazon Simple Queue
 Service (Amazon SQS).

require 'aws-sdk-sqs'

# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_name [String] The name of the queue.
# @return [Boolean] true if the queue was created; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless queue_created?(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'my-queue'
#   )
def queue_created?(sqs_client, queue_name)
  sqs_client.create_queue(queue_name: queue_name)
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error creating queue: #{e.message}"
  false
```

```
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Creating the queue named '#{queue_name}'..."

  if queue_created?(sqs_client, queue_name)
    puts 'Queue created.'
  else
    puts 'Queue not created.'
  end
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs' # v2: require 'aws-sdk'
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
sqs = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2')

sqs.delete_queue(queue_url: URL)
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @example
#   list_queue_urls(Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'))
def list_queue_urls(sqs_client)
  queues = sqs_client.list_queues

  queues.queue_urls.each do |url|
    puts url
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error listing queue URLs: #{e.message}"
end

# Lists the attributes of a queue in Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
#
# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @example
#   list_queue_attributes(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
```

```
#   )
def list_queue_attributes(sqs_client, queue_url)
  attributes = sqs_client.get_queue_attributes(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    attribute_names: ['All']
  )

  attributes.attributes.each do |key, value|
    puts "#{key}: #{value}"
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error getting queue attributes: #{e.message}"
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts 'Listing available queue URLs...'
  list_queue_urls(sqs_client)

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)

  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  puts "\nGetting information about queue '#{queue_name}'..."
  list_queue_attributes(sqs_client, queue_url)
end
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

# Receives messages in a queue in Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS).
#
# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @param max_number_of_messages [Integer] The maximum number of messages
#   to receive. This number must be 10 or less. The default is 10.
# @example
#   receive_messages(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue',
#     10
#   )
def receive_messages(sqs_client, queue_url, max_number_of_messages = 10)
  if max_number_of_messages > 10
    puts 'Maximum number of messages to receive must be 10 or less. ' \
      'Stopping program.'
    return
  end

  response = sqs_client.receive_message(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    max_number_of_messages: max_number_of_messages
  )

  if response.messages.count.zero?
    puts 'No messages to receive, or all messages have already ' \
      'been previously received.'
    return
  end
```

```
  response.messages.each do |message|
    puts '-' * 20
    puts "Message body: #{message.body}"
    puts "Message ID:   #{message.message_id}"
  end
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error receiving messages: #{e.message}"
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  max_number_of_messages = 10

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)

  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Receiving messages from queue '#{queue_name}'..."

  receive_messages(sqs_client, queue_url, max_number_of_messages)
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @param message_body [String] The contents of the message to be sent.
# @return [Boolean] true if the message was sent; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless message_sent?(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue',
#     'This is my message.'
#   )
def message_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, message_body)
  sqs_client.send_message(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    message_body: message_body
  )
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error sending message: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  message_body = 'This is my message.'

  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)
```

```
  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Sending a message to the queue named '#{queue_name}'..."

  if message_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, message_body)
    puts 'Message sent.'
  else
    puts 'Message not sent.'
  end
end

# Example usage:
run_me if $PROGRAM_NAME == __FILE__
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

`SendMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessageBatch`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
require 'aws-sdk-sqs'
require 'aws-sdk-sts'

#
# @param sqs_client [Aws::SQS::Client] An initialized Amazon SQS client.
# @param queue_url [String] The URL of the queue.
# @param entries [Hash] The contents of the messages to be sent,
```

```
#   in the correct format.
# @return [Boolean] true if the messages were sent; otherwise, false.
# @example
#   exit 1 unless messages_sent?(
#     Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: 'us-west-2'),
#     'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue',
#     [
#       {
#         id: 'Message1',
#         message_body: 'This is the first message.'
#       },
#       {
#         id: 'Message2',
#         message_body: 'This is the second message.'
#       }
#     ]
#   )
def messages_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, entries)
  sqs_client.send_message_batch(
    queue_url: queue_url,
    entries: entries
  )
  true
rescue StandardError => e
  puts "Error sending messages: #{e.message}"
  false
end

# Full example call:
# Replace us-west-2 with the AWS Region you're using for Amazon SQS.
def run_me
  region = 'us-west-2'
  queue_name = 'my-queue'
  entries = [
    {
      id: 'Message1',
      message_body: 'This is the first message.'
    },
    {
      id: 'Message2',
      message_body: 'This is the second message.'
    }
  ]
```

```
  sts_client = Aws::STS::Client.new(region: region)

  # For example:
  # 'https://sqs.us-west-2.amazonaws.com/111111111111/my-queue'
  queue_url = "https://sqs.#{region}.amazonaws.com/
#{sts_client.get_caller_identity.account}/#{queue_name}"

  sqs_client = Aws::SQS::Client.new(region: region)

  puts "Sending messages to the queue named '#{queue_name}'..."

  if messages_sent?(sqs_client, queue_url, entries)
    puts 'Messages sent.'
  else
    puts 'Messages not sent.'
  end
end
```

- For API details, see SendMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  event['Records'].each do |message|
    process_message(message)
  end
  puts "done"
end

def process_message(message)
  begin
    puts "Processed message #{message['body']}"
    # TODO: Do interesting work based on the new message
  rescue StandardError => err
    puts "An error occurred"
    raise err
  end
end
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Ruby.

```
# Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
# SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
require 'json'

def lambda_handler(event:, context:)
  if event
    batch_item_failures = []
    sqs_batch_response = {}
```

```
    event["Records"].each do |record|
      begin
        # process message
      rescue StandardError => e
        batch_item_failures << {"itemIdentifier" => record['messageId']}
      end
    end

    sqs_batch_response["batchItemFailures"] = batch_item_failures
    return sqs_batch_response
  end
end
```

AWS STS examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for Ruby

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
 # Creates an AWS Security Token Service (AWS STS) client with specified
credentials.
 # This is separated into a factory function so that it can be mocked for unit
testing.
 #
 # @param key_id [String] The ID of the access key used by the STS client.
 # @param key_secret [String] The secret part of the access key used by the STS
client.
 def create_sts_client(key_id, key_secret)
   Aws::STS::Client.new(access_key_id: key_id, secret_access_key: key_secret)
 end

 # Gets temporary credentials that can be used to assume a role.
 #
 # @param role_arn [String] The ARN of the role that is assumed when these
credentials
 #                          are used.
 # @param sts_client [AWS::STS::Client] An AWS STS client.
 # @return [Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials] The credentials that can be used to assume
the role.
 def assume_role(role_arn, sts_client)
   credentials = Aws::AssumeRoleCredentials.new(
     client: sts_client,
     role_arn: role_arn,
     role_session_name: 'create-use-assume-role-scenario'
   )
   @logger.info("Assumed role '#{role_arn}', got temporary credentials.")
   credentials
 end
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Ruby API Reference*.

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon Textract.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.
- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend

- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for Ruby

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Ruby with Amazon Translate.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create an application to analyze customer feedback

The following code example shows how to create an application that analyzes customer comment cards, translates them from their original language, determines their sentiment, and generates an audio file from the translated text.

SDK for Ruby

This example application analyzes and stores customer feedback cards. Specifically, it fulfills the need of a fictitious hotel in New York City. The hotel receives feedback from guests in various languages in the form of physical comment cards. That feedback is uploaded into the app through a web client. After an image of a comment card is uploaded, the following steps occur:

- Text is extracted from the image using Amazon Textract.
- Amazon Comprehend determines the sentiment of the extracted text and its language.
- The extracted text is translated to English using Amazon Translate.

- Amazon Polly synthesizes an audio file from the extracted text.

The full app can be deployed with the AWS CDK. For source code and deployment instructions, see the project in GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Comprehend
- Lambda
- Amazon Polly
- Amazon Textract
- Amazon Translate

Code examples for SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Rust with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Rust Developer Guide** – More about using Rust with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- API Gateway examples using SDK for Rust
- API Gateway Management API examples using SDK for Rust

- Application Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Rust
- Aurora examples using SDK for Rust
- Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Cognito Sync examples using SDK for Rust
- Firehose examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Rust
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon EBS examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon ECS examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon EKS examples using SDK for Rust
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for Rust
- IAM examples using SDK for Rust
- AWS IoT examples using SDK for Rust
- Kinesis examples using SDK for Rust
- AWS KMS examples using SDK for Rust
- Lambda examples using SDK for Rust
- MediaLive examples using SDK for Rust
- MediaPackage examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Rust
- Route 53 examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Rust

- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for Rust
- Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Rust
- AWS STS examples using SDK for Rust
- Systems Manager examples using SDK for Rust
- Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for Rust

API Gateway examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with API Gateway.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- AWS community contributions

Actions

`GetRestApis`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRestApis`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Displays the Amazon API Gateway REST APIs in the Region.

```
async fn show_apis(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.get_rest_apis().send().await?;

    for api in resp.items() {
        println!("ID:          {}", api.id().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("Name:        {}", api.name().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("Description: {}", api.description().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("Version:     {}", api.version().unwrap_or_default());
        println!(
            "Created:     {}",
            api.created_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()?
        );
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetRestApis in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Rust

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Rust SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda

API Gateway Management API examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with API Gateway Management API.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PostToConnection`

The following code example shows how to use `PostToConnection`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn send_data(
    client: &aws_sdk_apigatewaymanagement::Client,
    con_id: &str,
    data: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_apigatewaymanagement::Error> {
    client
        .post_to_connection()
        .connection_id(con_id)
        .data(Blob::new(data))
```

```
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}

    let endpoint_url = format!(
        "https://{api_id}.execute-api.{region}.amazonaws.com/{stage}",
        api_id = api_id,
        region = region,
        stage = stage
    );

    let shared_config = aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
    let api_management_config = config::Builder::from(&shared_config)
        .endpoint_url(endpoint_url)
        .build();
    let client = Client::from_conf(api_management_config);
```

- For API details, see PostToConnection in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Application Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Application Auto Scaling.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeScalingPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingPolicies`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_policies(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let response = client
        .describe_scaling_policies()
        .service_namespace(ServiceNamespace::Ec2)
        .send()
        .await?;
    println!("Auto Scaling Policies:");
    for policy in response.scaling_policies() {
        println!("{:?}\n", policy);
    }
    println!("Next token: {:?}", response.next_token());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Aurora examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Aurora.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Aurora

The following code examples show how to get started using Aurora.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_sdk_rds::Client;

#[derive(Debug)]
struct Error(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for Error {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
impl std::error::Error for Error {}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let describe_db_clusters_output = client
        .describe_db_clusters()
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| Error(e.to_string()))?;
    println!(
        "Found {} clusters:",
        describe_db_clusters_output.db_clusters().len()
    );
    for cluster in describe_db_clusters_output.db_clusters() {
        let name = cluster.database_name().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let engine = cluster.engine().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let id = cluster.db_cluster_identifier().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let class = cluster.db_cluster_instance_class().unwrap_or("Unknown");
```

```
        println!("\tDatabase: {name}",);
        println!("\t  Engine: {engine}",);
        println!("\t      ID: {id}",);
        println!("\tInstance: {class}",);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom Aurora DB cluster parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB cluster that uses the parameter group.
- Create a DB instance that contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the DB cluster, then clean up resources.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A library containing the scenario-specific functions for the Aurora scenario.

```
use phf::{phf_set, Set};
use secrecy::SecretString;
use std::{collections::HashMap, fmt::Display, time::Duration};

use aws_sdk_rds::{
    error::ProvideErrorMetadata,

 operation::create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
    types::{DbCluster, DbClusterParameterGroup, DbClusterSnapshot, DbInstance,
 Parameter},
};
use sdk_examples_test_utils::waiter::Waiter;
use tracing::{info, trace, warn};

const DB_ENGINE: &str = "aurora-mysql";
const DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME: &str = "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup";
const DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_DESCRIPTION: &str =
    "Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example";
const DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER: &str = "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster";
const DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER: &str = "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance";

static FILTER_PARAMETER_NAMES: Set<&'static str> = phf_set! {
    "auto_increment_offset",
    "auto_increment_increment",
};

#[derive(Debug, PartialEq, Eq)]
struct MetadataError {
    message: Option<String>,
    code: Option<String>,
}

impl MetadataError {
    fn from(err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) -> Self {
        MetadataError {
            message: err.message().map(String::from),
            code: err.code().map(String::from),
        }
    }
}

impl Display for MetadataError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        let display = match (&self.message, &self.code) {
```

```
            (None, None) => "Unknown".to_string(),
            (None, Some(code)) => format!("({code})"),
            (Some(message), None) => message.to_string(),
            (Some(message), Some(code)) => format!("{message} ({code})"),
        };
        write!(f, "{display}")
    }
}

#[derive(Debug, PartialEq, Eq)]
pub struct ScenarioError {
    message: String,
    context: Option<MetadataError>,
}

impl ScenarioError {
    pub fn with(message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: None,
        }
    }

    pub fn new(message: impl Into<String>, err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) -> Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: Some(MetadataError::from(err)),
        }
    }
}

impl std::error::Error for ScenarioError {}
impl Display for ScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match &self.context {
            Some(c) => write!(f, "{}: {}", self.message, c),
            None => write!(f, "{}", self.message),
        }
    }
}

// Parse the ParameterName, Description, and AllowedValues values and display them.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct AuroraScenarioParameter {
```

```
    name: String,
    allowed_values: String,
    current_value: String,
}

impl Display for AuroraScenarioParameter {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(
            f,
            "{}: {} (allowed: {})",
            self.name, self.current_value, self.allowed_values
        )
    }
}

impl From<aws_sdk_rds::types::Parameter> for AuroraScenarioParameter {
    fn from(value: aws_sdk_rds::types::Parameter) -> Self {
        AuroraScenarioParameter {
            name: value.parameter_name.unwrap_or_default(),
            allowed_values: value.allowed_values.unwrap_or_default(),
            current_value: value.parameter_value.unwrap_or_default(),
        }
    }
}

pub struct AuroraScenario {
    rds: crate::rds::Rds,
    engine_family: Option<String>,
    engine_version: Option<String>,
    instance_class: Option<String>,
    db_cluster_parameter_group: Option<DbClusterParameterGroup>,
    db_cluster_identifier: Option<String>,
    db_instance_identifier: Option<String>,
    username: Option<String>,
    password: Option<SecretString>,
}

impl AuroraScenario {
    pub fn new(client: crate::rds::Rds) -> Self {
        AuroraScenario {
            rds: client,
            engine_family: None,
            engine_version: None,
            instance_class: None,
```

```
            db_cluster_parameter_group: None,
            db_cluster_identifier: None,
            db_instance_identifier: None,
            username: None,
            password: None,
        }
    }

    // Get available engine families for Aurora MySql.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') and build a set of the
'DBParameterGroupFamily' field values. I get {aurora-mysql8.0, aurora-mysql5.7}.
    pub async fn get_engines(&self) -> Result<HashMap<String, Vec<String>>,
ScenarioError> {
        let describe_db_engine_versions =
self.rds.describe_db_engine_versions(DB_ENGINE).await;
        trace!(versions=?describe_db_engine_versions, "full list of versions");

        if let Err(err) = describe_db_engine_versions {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to retrieve DB Engine Versions",
                &err,
            ));
        };

        let version_count = describe_db_engine_versions
            .as_ref()
            .map(|o| o.db_engine_versions().len())
            .unwrap_or_default();
        info!(version_count, "got list of versions");

        // Create a map of engine families to their available versions.
        let mut versions = HashMap::<String, Vec<String>>::new();
        describe_db_engine_versions
            .unwrap()
            .db_engine_versions()
            .iter()
            .filter_map(
                |v| match (&v.db_parameter_group_family, &v.engine_version) {
                    (Some(family), Some(version)) => Some((family.clone(),
version.clone())),
                    _ => None,
                },
            )
```

```
            .for_each(|(family, version)|
versions.entry(family).or_default().push(version));

        Ok(versions)
    }

    pub async fn get_instance_classes(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items = self
            .rds
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
                DB_ENGINE,
                self.engine_version
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("engine version for db instance options")
                    .as_str(),
            )
            .await;

        describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items
            .map(|options| {
                options
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|o| o.storage_type() == Some("aurora"))
                    .map(|o| o.db_instance_class().unwrap_or_default().to_string())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Could not get available instance
classes", &err))
    }

    // Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group.
rds.CreateDbClusterParameterGroup(DBParameterGroupFamily='aurora-mysql8.0')
    pub async fn set_engine(&mut self, engine: &str, version: &str) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
        self.engine_family = Some(engine.to_string());
        self.engine_version = Some(version.to_string());
        let create_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_DESCRIPTION,
                engine,
            )
            .await;
```

```
        match create_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput {
                db_cluster_parameter_group: None,
                ..
            }) => {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with(
                    "CreateDBClusterParameterGroup had empty response",
                ));
            }
            Err(error) => {
                if error.code() == Some("DBParameterGroupAlreadyExists") {
                    info!("Cluster Parameter Group already exists, nothing to do");
                } else {
                    return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Could not create Cluster Parameter Group",
                        &error,
                    ));
                }
            }
            _ => {
                info!("Created Cluster Parameter Group");
            }
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub fn set_instance_class(&mut self, instance_class: Option<String>) {
        self.instance_class = instance_class;
    }

    pub fn set_login(&mut self, username: Option<String>, password:
Option<SecretString>) {
        self.username = username;
        self.password = password;
    }

    pub async fn connection_string(&self) -> Result<String, ScenarioError> {
        let cluster = self.get_cluster().await?;
        let endpoint = cluster.endpoint().unwrap_or_default();
        let port = cluster.port().unwrap_or_default();
        let username = cluster.master_username().unwrap_or_default();
        Ok(format!("mysql -h {endpoint} -P {port} -u {username} -p"))
```

```
    }

    pub async fn get_cluster(&self) -> Result<DbCluster, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_db_clusters_output = self
            .rds
            .describe_db_clusters(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier")
                    .as_str(),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters_output {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new("Failed to get cluster", &err));
        }

        let db_cluster = describe_db_clusters_output
            .unwrap()
            .db_clusters
            .and_then(|output| output.first().cloned());

        db_cluster.ok_or_else(|| ScenarioError::with("Did not find the cluster"))
    }

    // Get the parameter group. rds.DescribeDbClusterParameterGroups
    // Get parameters in the group. This is a long list so you will have to
paginate. Find the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
(by ParameterName). rds.DescribeDbClusterParameters
    // Parse the ParameterName, Description, and AllowedValues values and display
them.
    pub async fn cluster_parameters(&self) -> Result<Vec<AuroraScenarioParameter>,
ScenarioError> {
        let parameters_output = self
            .rds
            .describe_db_cluster_parameters(DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME)
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = parameters_output {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to retrieve parameters for
{DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME}"),
                &err,
            ));
        }
```

```
        let parameters = parameters_output
            .unwrap()
            .into_iter()
            .flat_map(|p| p.parameters.unwrap_or_default().into_iter())
            .filter(|p|
FILTER_PARAMETER_NAMES.contains(p.parameter_name().unwrap_or_default()))
            .map(AuroraScenarioParameter::from)
            .collect::<Vec<_>>();

        Ok(parameters)
    }

    // Modify both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
in one call in the custom parameter group. Set their ParameterValue fields to a new
allowable value. rds.ModifyDbClusterParameterGroup.
    pub async fn update_auto_increment(
        &self,
        offset: u8,
        increment: u8,
    ) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        let modify_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value(format!("{offset}"))
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value(format!("{increment}"))
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ],
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(error) = modify_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to modify cluster parameter group",
                &error,
```

```
            ));
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
    // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group you created.
    // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
    // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine and engine
version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql', EngineVersion=).

    // Create a database instance in the cluster.
    // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check for
DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
    pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
{
        if self.password.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(
                "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
            ));
        }
        let create_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .create_db_cluster(
                DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
                DB_ENGINE,
                self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
                self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
                self.password
                    .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                    .expect("password"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
                &err,
            ));
```

```
        }

        self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
            .unwrap()
            .db_cluster
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
```

```
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() == Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;
```

```
            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    // Create a snapshot of the DB cluster. rds.CreateDbClusterSnapshot.
    // Wait for the snapshot to create. rds.DescribeDbClusterSnapshots until Status
== 'available'.
    pub async fn snapshot(&self, name: &str) -> Result<DbClusterSnapshot,
ScenarioError> {
        let id = self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().unwrap_or_default();
        let snapshot = self
            .rds
            .snapshot_cluster(id, format!("{id}_{name}").as_str())
            .await;
        match snapshot {
            Ok(output) => match output.db_cluster_snapshot {
                Some(snapshot) => Ok(snapshot),
                None => Err(ScenarioError::with("Missing Snapshot")),
            },
            Err(err) => Err(ScenarioError::new("Failed to create snapshot", &err)),
        }
    }

    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
```

```
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances = self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in {status}");
```

```
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
```

```
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group. rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }
```

```
        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }
}

#[cfg(test)]
pub mod tests;
```

Tests for the library using automocks around the RDS Client wrapper.

```
use crate::rds::MockRdsImpl;

use super::*;

use std::io::{Error, ErrorKind};

use assert_matches::assert_matches;
use aws_sdk_rds::{
    error::SdkError,
    operation::{
        create_db_cluster::{CreateDBClusterError, CreateDbClusterOutput},
        create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError,
        create_db_cluster_snapshot::{CreateDBClusterSnapshotError,
 CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput},
        create_db_instance::{CreateDBInstanceError, CreateDbInstanceOutput},
        delete_db_cluster::DeleteDbClusterOutput,
        delete_db_cluster_parameter_group::DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        delete_db_instance::DeleteDbInstanceOutput,
        describe_db_cluster_endpoints::DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput,
        describe_db_cluster_parameters::{
            DescribeDBClusterParametersError, DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput,
        },
        describe_db_clusters::{DescribeDBClustersError, DescribeDbClustersOutput},
        describe_db_engine_versions::{
            DescribeDBEngineVersionsError, DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
        },
        describe_db_instances::{DescribeDBInstancesError,
 DescribeDbInstancesOutput},
```

```
 describe_orderable_db_instance_options::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError,
        modify_db_cluster_parameter_group::{
            ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError, ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        },
    },
    types::{
        error::DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault, DbClusterEndpoint,
 DbEngineVersion,
        OrderableDbInstanceOption,
    },
};
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::http::{Response, StatusCode};
use aws_smithy_types::body::SdkBody;
use mockall::predicate::eq;
use secrecy::ExposeSecret;

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0").await;

    assert_eq!(set_engine, Ok(()));
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql"), scenario.engine_family.as_deref());
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql8.0"), scenario.engine_version.as_deref());
}
```

```
#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_not_create() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _|
 Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_param_group_exists() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|_, _, _| true)
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError::DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault(
                   DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault::builder().build(),
                ),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}
```

```
#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput::builder()
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1b")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f2")
                        .engine_version("f2a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(DbEngineVersion::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;

    assert_eq!(
        versions_map,
        Ok(HashMap::from([
            ("f1".into(), vec!["f1a".into(), "f1b".into()]),
            ("f2".into(), vec!["f2a".into()])
        ]))
    );
}
```

```
#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines_failed() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBEngineVersionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_engine_versions error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;
    assert_matches!(
        versions_map,
        Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message == "Failed to retrieve
 DB Engine Versions"
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
```

```
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Ok(vec![
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora-iopt1")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t2")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t3")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
            ])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario
        .set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0")
        .await
        .expect("set engine");

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_eq!(
        instance_classes,
        Ok(vec!["t1".into(), "t2".into(), "t3".into()])
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
```

```
 DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_orderable_db_instance_options_error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_family = Some("aurora-mysql".into());
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_matches!(
        instance_classes,
        Err(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if message == "Could not get
 available instance classes"
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_cluster() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let cluster = scenario.get_cluster().await;

    assert!(cluster.is_ok());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_cluster_missing_cluster() {
```

```
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let cluster = scenario.get_cluster().await;

    assert_matches!(cluster, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Did not find the cluster");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_cluster_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
```

```
                    "describe_db_clusters_error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let cluster = scenario.get_cluster().await;

    assert_matches!(cluster, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message
 == "Failed to get cluster");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_connection_string() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .endpoint("test_endpoint")
                        .port(3306)
                        .master_username("test_username")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let connection_string = scenario.connection_string().await;

    assert_eq!(
        connection_string,
        Ok("mysql -h test_endpoint -P 3306 -u test_username -p".into())
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
```

```
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(vec![DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput::builder()
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("a").build())
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("b").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("c").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("d").build())
                .build()])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());

    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await.expect("cluster params");
    let names: Vec<String> = params.into_iter().map(|p| p.name).collect();
    assert_eq!(
        names,
        vec!["auto_increment_offset", "auto_increment_increment"]
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
```

```
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClusterParametersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_cluster_parameters_error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await;
    assert_matches!(params, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to retrieve parameters for RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|name, params| {
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(
                params,
                &vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value("10")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value("20")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ]
            );
            true
        })
        .return_once(|_, _|
 Ok(ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));
```

```
    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    scenario
        .update_auto_increment(10, 20)
        .await
        .expect("update auto increment");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "modify_db_cluster_parameter_group_error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let update = scenario.update_auto_increment(10, 20).await;
    assert_matches!(update, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to modify cluster parameter group");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
```

```
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
```

```
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

```
#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));
```

```
    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message ==
 "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));
```

```
    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
```

```
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });
```

```
    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
```

```
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
```

```
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
```

```
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
```

```
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_snapshot() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_snapshot_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"), eq("MockCluster_MockSnapshot"))
        .times(1)
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster_snapshot(
                    DbClusterSnapshot::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
```

```
                        .db_cluster_snapshot_identifier("MockCluster_MockSnapshot")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("MockCluster".into());
    let create_snapshot = scenario.snapshot("MockSnapshot").await;
    assert!(create_snapshot.is_ok());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_snapshot_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_snapshot_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"), eq("MockCluster_MockSnapshot"))
        .times(1)
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterSnapshotError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create snapshot error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("MockCluster".into());
    let create_snapshot = scenario.snapshot("MockSnapshot").await;
    assert_matches!(create_snapshot, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to create snapshot");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_snapshot_invalid() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_snapshot_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"), eq("MockCluster_MockSnapshot"))
```

```
        .times(1)
        .return_once(|_, _| Ok(CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("MockCluster".into());
    let create_snapshot = scenario.snapshot("MockSnapshot").await;
    assert_matches!(create_snapshot, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if
 message == "Missing Snapshot");
}
```

A binary to run the scenario from front to end, using inquirer so that the user can make some decisions.

```
use std::fmt::Display;

use anyhow::anyhow;
use aurora_code_examples::{
    aurora_scenario::{AuroraScenario, ScenarioError},
    rds::Rds as RdsClient,
};
use aws_sdk_rds::Client;
use inquire::{validator::StringValidator, CustomUserError};
use secrecy::SecretString;
use tracing::warn;

#[derive(Default, Debug)]
struct Warnings(Vec<String>);

impl Warnings {
    fn new() -> Self {
        Warnings(Vec::with_capacity(5))
    }

    fn push(&mut self, warning: &str, error: ScenarioError) {
        let formatted = format!("{warning}: {error}");
        warn!("{formatted}");
        self.0.push(formatted);
    }

    fn is_empty(&self) -> bool {
        self.0.is_empty()
```

```
    }
}

impl Display for Warnings {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        writeln!(f, "Warnings:")?;
        for warning in &self.0 {
            writeln!(f, "{: >4}- {warning}", "")?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}

fn select(
    prompt: &str,
    choices: Vec<String>,
    error_message: &str,
) -> Result<String, anyhow::Error> {
    inquire::Select::new(prompt, choices)
        .prompt()
        .map_err(|error| anyhow!("{error_message}: {error}"))
}

// Prepare the Aurora Scenario. Prompt for several settings that are optional to the
 Scenario, but that the user should choose for the demo.
// This includes the engine, engine version, and instance class.
async fn prepare_scenario(rds: RdsClient) -> Result<AuroraScenario, anyhow::Error> {
    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(rds);

    // Get available engine families for Aurora MySql.
 rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') and build a set of the
 'DBParameterGroupFamily' field values. I get {aurora-mysql8.0, aurora-mysql5.7}.
    let available_engines = scenario.get_engines().await;
    if let Err(error) = available_engines {
        return Err(anyhow!("Failed to get available engines: {}", error));
    }
    let available_engines = available_engines.unwrap();

    // Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group.
 rds.CreateDbClusterParameterGroup(DBParameterGroupFamily='aurora-mysql8.0')
    let engine = select(
        "Select an Aurora engine family",
        available_engines.keys().cloned().collect::<Vec<String>>(),
        "Invalid engine selection",
```

```
    )?;

    let version = select(
        format!("Select an Aurora engine version for {engine}").as_str(),
        available_engines.get(&engine).cloned().unwrap_or_default(),
        "Invalid engine version selection",
    )?;

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine(engine.as_str(), version.as_str()).await;
    if let Err(error) = set_engine {
        return Err(anyhow!("Could not set engine: {}", error));
    }

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;
    match instance_classes {
        Ok(classes) => {
            let instance_class = select(
                format!("Select an Aurora instance class for {engine}").as_str(),
                classes,
                "Invalid instance class selection",
            )?;
            scenario.set_instance_class(Some(instance_class))
        }
        Err(err) => return Err(anyhow!("Failed to get instance classes for engine:
 {err}")),
    }

    Ok(scenario)
}

// Prepare the cluster, creating a custom parameter group overriding some group
 parameters based on user input.
async fn prepare_cluster(scenario: &mut AuroraScenario, warnings: &mut Warnings) ->
 Result<(), ()> {
    show_parameters(scenario, warnings).await;

    let offset = prompt_number_or_default(warnings, "auto_increment_offset", 5);
    let increment = prompt_number_or_default(warnings, "auto_increment_increment",
 3);

    // Modify both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
 in one call in the custom parameter group. Set their ParameterValue fields to a new
 allowable value. rds.ModifyDbClusterParameterGroup.
```

```
   let update_auto_increment = scenario.update_auto_increment(offset,
increment).await;

   if let Err(error) = update_auto_increment {
       warnings.push("Failed to update auto increment", error);
       return Err(());
   }

   // Get and display the updated parameters. Specify Source of 'user' to get just
the modified parameters. rds.DescribeDbClusterParameters(Source='user')
   show_parameters(scenario, warnings).await;

   let username = inquire::Text::new("Username for the database (default
'testuser')")
       .with_default("testuser")
       .with_initial_value("testuser")
       .prompt();

   if let Err(error) = username {
       warnings.push(
           "Failed to get username, using default",
           ScenarioError::with(format!("Error from inquirer: {error}")),
       );
       return Err(());
   }
   let username = username.unwrap();

   let password = inquire::Text::new("Password for the database (minimum 8
characters)")
       .with_validator(|i: &str| {
           if i.len() >= 8 {
               Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Valid)
           } else {
               Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Invalid(
                   "Password must be at least 8 characters".into(),
               ))
           }
       })
       .prompt();

   let password: Option<SecretString> = match password {
       Ok(password) => Some(SecretString::from(password)),
       Err(error) => {
           warnings.push(
```

```
                "Failed to get password, using none (and not starting a DB)",
                ScenarioError::with(format!("Error from inquirer: {error}")),
            );
            return Err(());
        }
    };

    scenario.set_login(Some(username), password);

    Ok(())
}

// Start a single instance in the cluster,
async fn run_instance(scenario: &mut AuroraScenario) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
    // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql database
 and uses the parameter group you created.
    // Create a database instance in the cluster.
    // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check for
 DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
    scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await?;

    let connection_string = scenario.connection_string().await?;

    println!("Database ready: {connection_string}",);

    let _ = inquire::Text::new("Use the database with the connection string. When
 you're finished, press enter key to continue.").prompt();

    // Create a snapshot of the DB cluster. rds.CreateDbClusterSnapshot.
    // Wait for the snapshot to create. rds.DescribeDbClusterSnapshots until Status
 == 'available'.
    let snapshot_name = inquire::Text::new("Provide a name for the snapshot")
        .prompt()
        .unwrap_or(String::from("ScenarioRun"));
    let snapshot = scenario.snapshot(snapshot_name.as_str()).await?;
    println!(
        "Snapshot is available: {}",
        snapshot.db_cluster_snapshot_arn().unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
    );

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
```

```
async fn main() -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);
    let rds = RdsClient::new(client);
    let mut scenario = prepare_scenario(rds).await?;

    // At this point, the scenario has things in AWS and needs to get cleaned up.
    let mut warnings = Warnings::new();

    if prepare_cluster(&mut scenario, &mut warnings).await.is_ok() {
        println!("Configured database cluster, starting an instance.");
        if let Err(err) = run_instance(&mut scenario).await {
            warnings.push("Problem running instance", err);
        }
    }

    // Clean up the instance, cluster, and parameter group, waiting for the instance
 and cluster to delete before moving on.
    let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
    if let Err(errors) = clean_up {
        for error in errors {
            warnings.push("Problem cleaning up scenario", error);
        }
    }

    if warnings.is_empty() {
        Ok(())
    } else {
        println!("There were problems running the scenario:");
        println!("{warnings}");
        Err(anyhow!("There were problems running the scenario"))
    }
}

#[derive(Clone)]
struct U8Validator {}
impl StringValidator for U8Validator {
    fn validate(&self, input: &str) -> Result<inquire::validator::Validation,
 CustomUserError> {
        if input.parse::<u8>().is_err() {
            Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Invalid(
                "Can't parse input as number".into(),
            ))
```

```
        } else {
            Ok(inquire::validator::Validation::Valid)
        }
    }
}

async fn show_parameters(scenario: &AuroraScenario, warnings: &mut Warnings) {
    let parameters = scenario.cluster_parameters().await;

    match parameters {
        Ok(parameters) => {
            println!("Current parameters");
            for parameter in parameters {
                println!("\t{parameter}");
            }
        }
        Err(error) => warnings.push("Could not find cluster parameters", error),
    }
}

fn prompt_number_or_default(warnings: &mut Warnings, name: &str, default: u8) -> u8
 {
    let input = inquire::Text::new(format!("Updated {name}:").as_str())
        .with_validator(U8Validator {})
        .prompt();

    match input {
        Ok(increment) => match increment.parse::<u8>() {
            Ok(increment) => increment,
            Err(error) => {
                warnings.push(
                    format!("Invalid updated {name} (using {default}
 instead)").as_str(),
                    ScenarioError::with(format!("{error}")),
                );
                default
            }
        },
        Err(error) => {
            warnings.push(
                format!("Invalid updated {name} (using {default}
 instead)").as_str(),
                ScenarioError::with(format!("{error}")),
            );
```

```
            default
        }
    }
}
```

A wrapper around the Amazon RDS service that allows automocking for tests.

```
use aws_sdk_rds::{
    error::SdkError,
    operation::{
        create_db_cluster::{CreateDBClusterError, CreateDbClusterOutput},
        create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError,
        create_db_cluster_parameter_group::CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        create_db_cluster_snapshot::{CreateDBClusterSnapshotError,
 CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput},
        create_db_instance::{CreateDBInstanceError, CreateDbInstanceOutput},
        delete_db_cluster::{DeleteDBClusterError, DeleteDbClusterOutput},
        delete_db_cluster_parameter_group::{
            DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupError, DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        },
        delete_db_instance::{DeleteDBInstanceError, DeleteDbInstanceOutput},
        describe_db_cluster_endpoints::{
            DescribeDBClusterEndpointsError, DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput,
        },
        describe_db_cluster_parameters::{
            DescribeDBClusterParametersError, DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput,
        },
        describe_db_clusters::{DescribeDBClustersError, DescribeDbClustersOutput},
        describe_db_engine_versions::{
            DescribeDBEngineVersionsError, DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
        },
        describe_db_instances::{DescribeDBInstancesError,
 DescribeDbInstancesOutput},

 describe_orderable_db_instance_options::DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError,
        modify_db_cluster_parameter_group::{
            ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError, ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
        },
    },
    types::{OrderableDbInstanceOption, Parameter},
    Client as RdsClient,
```

```
};
use secrecy::{ExposeSecret, SecretString};

#[cfg(test)]
use mockall::automock;

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockRdsImpl as Rds;
#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use RdsImpl as Rds;

pub struct RdsImpl {
    pub inner: RdsClient,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl RdsImpl {
    pub fn new(inner: RdsClient) -> Self {
        RdsImpl { inner }
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_engine_versions(
        &self,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
 SdkError<DescribeDBEngineVersionsError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_engine_versions()
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
        &self,
        engine: &str,
        engine_version: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<OrderableDbInstanceOption>,
 SdkError<DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(engine_version)
```

```
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
        family: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
SdkError<CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .description(description)
            .db_parameter_group_family(family)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_clusters(
        &self,
        id: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbClustersOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBClustersError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_clusters()
            .db_cluster_identifier(id)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_cluster_parameters(
        &self,
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput>,
SdkError<DescribeDBClusterParametersError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_cluster_parameters()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
```

```
            .into_paginator()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameters: Vec<Parameter>,
    ) -> Result<ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
SdkError<ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .set_parameters(Some(parameters))
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameter_group: &str,
        engine: &str,
        version: &str,
        username: &str,
        password: SecretString,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterOutput, SdkError<CreateDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(name)
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(parameter_group)
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(version)
            .master_username(username)
            .master_user_password(password.expose_secret())
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn create_db_instance(
        &self,
```

```
        cluster_name: &str,
        instance_name: &str,
        instance_class: &str,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<CreateDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_instance()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_name)
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_name)
            .db_instance_class(instance_class)
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_instance(
        &self,
        instance_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbInstancesOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBInstancesError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_instances()
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_identifier)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn snapshot_cluster(
        &self,
        db_cluster_identifier: &str,
        snapshot_name: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput,
SdkError<CreateDBClusterSnapshotError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_snapshot()
            .db_cluster_identifier(db_cluster_identifier)
            .db_cluster_snapshot_identifier(snapshot_name)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_instances(
        &self,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbInstancesOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBInstancesError>> {
        self.inner.describe_db_instances().send().await
```

```
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
        &self,
        cluster_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput,
SdkError<DescribeDBClusterEndpointsError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_identifier)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_instance(
        &self,
        instance_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_instance()
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster(
        &self,
        cluster_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
SdkError<DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
```

```
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .send()
            .await
    }
}
```

The Cargo.toml with dependencies used in this scenario.

```
[package]
name = "aurora-code-examples"
authors = [
  "David Souther <dpsouth@amazon.com>",
]
edition = "2021"
version = "0.1.0"

# See more keys and their definitions at https://doc.rust-lang.org/cargo/reference/
manifest.html

[dependencies]
anyhow = "1.0.75"
assert_matches = "1.5.0"
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-smithy-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-smithy-runtime-api = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-sdk-rds = { version = "1.3.0" }
inquire = "0.6.2"
mockall = "0.11.4"
phf = { version = "0.11.2", features = ["std", "macros"] }
sdk-examples-test-utils = { path = "../../test-utils" }
secrecy = "0.8.0"
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full", "test-util"] }
tracing = "0.1.37"
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateDBCluster
  - CreateDBClusterParameterGroup

- CreateDBClusterSnapshot
- CreateDBInstance
- DeleteDBCluster
- DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup
- DeleteDBInstance
- DescribeDBClusterParameterGroups
- DescribeDBClusterParameters
- DescribeDBClusterSnapshots
- DescribeDBClusters
- DescribeDBEngineVersions
- DescribeDBInstances
- DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
- ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBCluster`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
```

```
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine and engine
version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql', EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check for
DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
{
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
               self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
               self.password
                   .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                   .expect("password"),
           )
           .await;
       if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
               &err,
           ));
       }

       self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
           .unwrap()
           .db_cluster
           .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

       if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
       }

       info!(
```

```
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for ready");
                continue;
            }
```

```
            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() == Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));
```

```
            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameter_group: &str,
        engine: &str,
        version: &str,
        username: &str,
        password: SecretString,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterOutput, SdkError<CreateDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(name)
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(parameter_group)
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(version)
            .master_username(username)
            .master_user_password(password.expose_secret())
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
```

```
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
```

```
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
```

```
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
```

```
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message ==
 "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
```

```
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
```

```
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
```

```
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Select an engine family and create a custom DB cluster parameter group.
rds.CreateDbClusterParameterGroup(DBParameterGroupFamily='aurora-mysql8.0')
   pub async fn set_engine(&mut self, engine: &str, version: &str) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
       self.engine_family = Some(engine.to_string());
       self.engine_version = Some(version.to_string());
       let create_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
```

```
                DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_DESCRIPTION,
                engine,
            )
            .await;

        match create_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput {
                db_cluster_parameter_group: None,
                ..
            }) => {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with(
                    "CreateDBClusterParameterGroup had empty response",
                ));
            }
            Err(error) => {
                if error.code() == Some("DBParameterGroupAlreadyExists") {
                    info!("Cluster Parameter Group already exists, nothing to do");
                } else {
                    return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Could not create Cluster Parameter Group",
                        &error,
                    ));
                }
            }
            _ => {
                info!("Created Cluster Parameter Group");
            }
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn create_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
        family: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
SdkError<CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .description(description)
```

```
            .db_parameter_group_family(family)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0").await;

    assert_eq!(set_engine, Ok(()));
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql"), scenario.engine_family.as_deref());
    assert_eq!(Some("aurora-mysql8.0"), scenario.engine_version.as_deref());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_not_create() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(
            eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"),
            eq("Parameter Group created by Rust SDK Code Example"),
            eq("aurora-mysql"),
        )
```

```
        .return_once(|_, _, _|
 Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_set_engine_param_group_exists() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|_, _, _| true)
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 CreateDBClusterParameterGroupError::DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault(
                    DbParameterGroupAlreadyExistsFault::builder().build(),
                ),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let set_engine = scenario.set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0").await;

    assert!(set_engine.is_err());
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateDBClusterSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBClusterSnapshot`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine and engine
version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql', EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check for
DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
{
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
               self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
               self.password
                   .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                   .expect("password"),
           )
           .await;
       if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
```

```
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
            .unwrap()
            .db_cluster
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);
```

```
        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() == Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
```

```
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn snapshot_cluster(
        &self,
        db_cluster_identifier: &str,
        snapshot_name: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbClusterSnapshotOutput,
 SdkError<CreateDBClusterSnapshotError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_cluster_snapshot()
            .db_cluster_identifier(db_cluster_identifier)
            .db_cluster_snapshot_identifier(snapshot_name)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
```

```
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
```

```
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
```

```
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
```

```
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message ==
 "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
```

```
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
```

```
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBClusterSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine and engine
version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql', EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check for
DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
{
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
               self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
               self.password
                   .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                   .expect("password"),
           )
           .await;
       if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
               &err,
           ));
       }

       self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
           .unwrap()
           .db_cluster
```

```
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
```

```
                .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = cluster {
            warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for ready");
            continue;
        }

        let instance = self
            .rds
            .describe_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let instances_available = instance
            .unwrap()
            .db_instances()
            .iter()
            .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() == Some("Available"));

        let endpoints = self
            .rds
            .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = endpoints {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                &err,
            ));
```

```
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn create_db_instance(
        &self,
        cluster_name: &str,
        instance_name: &str,
        instance_class: &str,
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<CreateDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<CreateDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .create_db_instance()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_name)
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_name)
            .db_instance_class(instance_class)
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
```

```
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
```

```
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
```

```
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
```

```
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message ==
 "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
```

```
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
```

```
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
```

```
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteDBCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBCluster`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
```

```
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances = self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
```

```
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
```

```
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group. rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
```

```
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster(
        &self,
        cluster_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBClusterError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster()
            .db_cluster_identifier(cluster_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });
```

```
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
```

```
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
```

```
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

        // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
        let delete_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_instance(
                self.db_instance_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("instance identifier"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
            let identifier = self
                .db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance to delete
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_instances = self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                    .unwrap()
                    .db_instances()
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
```

```
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
```

```
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group. rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
```

```
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
 SdkError<DeleteDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
```

```
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
```

```
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
```

```
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
```

```
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
    let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

    // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
    let delete_db_instance = self
        .rds
        .delete_db_instance(
            self.db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .expect("instance identifier"),
        )
        .await;
    if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
        let identifier = self
            .db_instance_identifier
            .as_deref()
            .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
        let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
        clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
    } else {
        // Wait for the instance to delete
        let waiter = Waiter::default();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let describe_db_instances = self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
            if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                    &err,
                ));
                break;
            }
            let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
```

```
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
```

```
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group. rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
```

```
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
 DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn delete_db_instance(
        &self,
        instance_identifier: &str,
    ) -> Result<DeleteDbInstanceOutput, SdkError<DeleteDBInstanceError>> {
        self.inner
            .delete_db_instance()
            .db_instance_identifier(instance_identifier)
            .skip_final_snapshot(true)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
```

```
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));
```

```
    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
```

```
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
```

```
                    "describe db clusters error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeDBClusterParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusterParameters`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get the parameter group. rds.DescribeDbClusterParameterGroups
   // Get parameters in the group. This is a long list so you will have to
paginate. Find the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
(by ParameterName). rds.DescribeDbClusterParameters
   // Parse the ParameterName, Description, and AllowedValues values and display
them.
   pub async fn cluster_parameters(&self) -> Result<Vec<AuroraScenarioParameter>,
ScenarioError> {
       let parameters_output = self
           .rds
           .describe_db_cluster_parameters(DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME)
           .await;

       if let Err(err) = parameters_output {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               format!("Failed to retrieve parameters for
{DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME}"),
               &err,
           ));
       }

       let parameters = parameters_output
           .unwrap()
           .into_iter()
           .flat_map(|p| p.parameters.unwrap_or_default().into_iter())
```

```
            .filter(|p|
 FILTER_PARAMETER_NAMES.contains(p.parameter_name().unwrap_or_default()))
            .map(AuroraScenarioParameter::from)
            .collect::<Vec<_>>();

        Ok(parameters)
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_cluster_parameters(
        &self,
        name: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput>,
 SdkError<DescribeDBClusterParametersError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_cluster_parameters()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .into_paginator()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(vec![DescribeDbClusterParametersOutput::builder()
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("a").build())
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("b").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .build(),
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("c").build())
                .parameters(
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .build(),
```

```
                )
                .parameters(Parameter::builder().parameter_name("d").build())
                .build()])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());

    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await.expect("cluster params");
    let names: Vec<String> = params.into_iter().map(|p| p.name).collect();
    assert_eq!(
        names,
        vec!["auto_increment_offset", "auto_increment_increment"]
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_cluster_parameters_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_parameters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClusterParametersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_cluster_parameters_error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into());
    let params = scenario.cluster_parameters().await;
    assert_matches!(params, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to retrieve parameters for RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusterParameters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeDBClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBClusters`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get a list of allowed engine versions.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql', DBParameterGroupFamily=<the
family used to create your parameter group in step 2>)
   // Create an Aurora DB cluster database cluster that contains a MySql database
and uses the parameter group you created.
   // Wait for DB cluster to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDBClusters and check for
Status == 'available'.
   // Get a list of instance classes available for the selected engine and engine
version. rds.DescribeOrderableDbInstanceOptions(Engine='mysql', EngineVersion=).

   // Create a database instance in the cluster.
   // Wait for DB instance to be ready. Call rds.DescribeDbInstances and check for
DBInstanceStatus == 'available'.
   pub async fn start_cluster_and_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError>
{
       if self.password.is_none() {
           return Err(ScenarioError::with(
               "Must set Secret Password before starting a cluster",
           ));
       }
       let create_db_cluster = self
           .rds
           .create_db_cluster(
               DB_CLUSTER_IDENTIFIER,
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               DB_ENGINE,
               self.engine_version.as_deref().expect("engine version"),
               self.username.as_deref().expect("username"),
               self.password
                   .replace(SecretString::new("".to_string()))
                   .expect("password"),
```

```
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_cluster {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_cluster_identifier = create_db_cluster
            .unwrap()
            .db_cluster
            .and_then(|c| c.db_cluster_identifier);

        if self.db_cluster_identifier.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with("Created DB Cluster missing
Identifier"));
        }

        info!(
            "Started a db cluster: {}",
            self.db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing ARN")
        );

        let create_db_instance = self
            .rds
            .create_db_instance(
                self.db_cluster_identifier.as_deref().expect("cluster name"),
                DB_INSTANCE_IDENTIFIER,
                self.instance_class.as_deref().expect("instance class"),
                DB_ENGINE,
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = create_db_instance {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        self.db_instance_identifier = create_db_instance
            .unwrap()
```

```
            .db_instance
            .and_then(|i| i.db_instance_identifier);

        // Cluster creation can take up to 20 minutes to become available
        let cluster_max_wait = Duration::from_secs(20 * 60);
        let waiter = Waiter::builder().max(cluster_max_wait).build();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let cluster = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_clusters(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = cluster {
                warn!(?err, "Failed to describe cluster while waiting for ready");
                continue;
            }

            let instance = self
                .rds
                .describe_db_instance(
                    self.db_instance_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("instance identifier"),
                )
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = instance {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find instance for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let instances_available = instance
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
                .iter()
                .all(|instance| instance.db_instance_status() == Some("Available"));

            let endpoints = self
                .rds
```

```
                .describe_db_cluster_endpoints(
                    self.db_cluster_identifier
                        .as_deref()
                        .expect("cluster identifier"),
                )
                .await;

            if let Err(err) = endpoints {
                return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to find endpoint for cluster",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            let endpoints_available = endpoints
                .unwrap()
                .db_cluster_endpoints()
                .iter()
                .all(|endpoint| endpoint.status() == Some("available"));

            if instances_available && endpoints_available {
                return Ok(());
            }
        }

        Err(ScenarioError::with("timed out waiting for cluster"))
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_clusters(
        &self,
        id: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbClustersOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBClustersError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_clusters()
            .db_cluster_identifier(id)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
```

```
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
```

```
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instance()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance"))
        .return_once(|name| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_status("Available")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

.db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
        assert!(scenario
            .password
            .replace(SecretString::new("BAD SECRET".into()))
            .unwrap()
            .expose_secret()
            .is_empty());
        assert_eq!(
            scenario.db_cluster_identifier,
```

```
            Some("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster".into())
        );
    });
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBClusterError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to create DB Cluster with cluster group")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_cluster_create_missing_id() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().build())
```

```
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context:_ }) if message ==
 "Created DB Cluster missing Identifier");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_instance_create_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .return_once(|_, _, _, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                CreateDBInstanceError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "create db instance error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
```

```
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
    assert_matches!(create, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message ==
 "Failed to create Instance in DB Cluster")
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_start_cluster_and_instance_wait_hiccup() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster()
        .withf(|id, params, engine, version, username, password| {
            assert_eq!(id, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(params, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            assert_eq!(version, "aurora-mysql8.0");
            assert_eq!(username, "test username");
            assert_eq!(password.expose_secret(), "test password");
            true
        })
        .return_once(|id, _, _, _, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterOutput::builder()
                .db_cluster(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_instance()
        .withf(|cluster, name, class, engine| {
            assert_eq!(cluster, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster");
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBInstance");
            assert_eq!(class, "m5.large");
            assert_eq!(engine, "aurora-mysql");
            true
        })
```

```
        .return_once(|cluster, name, class, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbInstanceOutput::builder()
                .db_instance(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(cluster)
                        .db_instance_identifier(name)
                        .db_instance_class(class)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe cluster error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        })
        .with(eq("RustSDKCodeExamplesDBCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(DbCluster::builder().db_cluster_identifier(id).build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds.expect_describe_db_instance().return_once(|name| {
        Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
            .db_instances(
                DbInstance::builder()
                    .db_instance_identifier(name)
                    .db_instance_status("Available")
                    .build(),
            )
            .build())
    });
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_cluster_endpoints()
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClusterEndpointsOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_endpoints(DbClusterEndpoint::builder().status("available").build())
                .build())
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());
    scenario.instance_class = Some("m5.large".into());
    scenario.username = Some("test username".into());
    scenario.password = Some(SecretString::new("test password".into()));

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let create = scenario.start_cluster_and_instance().await;
        assert!(create.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Get available engine families for Aurora MySql.
rds.DescribeDbEngineVersions(Engine='aurora-mysql') and build a set of the
'DBParameterGroupFamily' field values. I get {aurora-mysql8.0, aurora-mysql5.7}.
   pub async fn get_engines(&self) -> Result<HashMap<String, Vec<String>>,
ScenarioError> {
       let describe_db_engine_versions =
self.rds.describe_db_engine_versions(DB_ENGINE).await;
       trace!(versions=?describe_db_engine_versions, "full list of versions");

       if let Err(err) = describe_db_engine_versions {
           return Err(ScenarioError::new(
               "Failed to retrieve DB Engine Versions",
               &err,
           ));
       };

       let version_count = describe_db_engine_versions
           .as_ref()
           .map(|o| o.db_engine_versions().len())
           .unwrap_or_default();
       info!(version_count, "got list of versions");

       // Create a map of engine families to their available versions.
       let mut versions = HashMap::<String, Vec<String>>::new();
       describe_db_engine_versions
           .unwrap()
           .db_engine_versions()
           .iter()
           .filter_map(
               |v| match (&v.db_parameter_group_family, &v.engine_version) {
                   (Some(family), Some(version)) => Some((family.clone(),
version.clone())),
                   _ => None,
               },
           )
           .for_each(|(family, version)|
versions.entry(family).or_default().push(version));

       Ok(versions)
   }

   pub async fn describe_db_engine_versions(
       &self,
```

```
        engine: &str,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput,
 SdkError<DescribeDBEngineVersionsError>> {
        self.inner
            .describe_db_engine_versions()
            .engine(engine)
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Ok(DescribeDbEngineVersionsOutput::builder()
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f1")
                        .engine_version("f1b")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(
                    DbEngineVersion::builder()
                        .db_parameter_group_family("f2")
                        .engine_version("f2a")
                        .build(),
                )
                .db_engine_versions(DbEngineVersion::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;
```

```
    assert_eq!(
        versions_map,
        Ok(HashMap::from([
            ("f1".into(), vec!["f1a".into(), "f1b".into()]),
            ("f2".into(), vec!["f2a".into()])
        ]))
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_engines_failed() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_engine_versions()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"))
        .return_once(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBEngineVersionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_db_engine_versions error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let versions_map = scenario.get_engines().await;
    assert_matches!(
        versions_map,
        Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _ }) if message == "Failed to retrieve
 DB Engine Versions"
    );
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn clean_up(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
    let mut clean_up_errors: Vec<ScenarioError> = vec![];

    // Delete the instance. rds.DeleteDbInstance.
    let delete_db_instance = self
        .rds
        .delete_db_instance(
            self.db_instance_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .expect("instance identifier"),
        )
        .await;
    if let Err(err) = delete_db_instance {
        let identifier = self
            .db_instance_identifier
            .as_deref()
            .unwrap_or("Missing Instance Identifier");
        let message = format!("failed to delete db instance {identifier}");
        clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
    } else {
        // Wait for the instance to delete
        let waiter = Waiter::default();
        while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
            let describe_db_instances = self.rds.describe_db_instances().await;
            if let Err(err) = describe_db_instances {
                clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to check instance state during deletion",
                    &err,
                ));
                break;
            }
            let db_instances = describe_db_instances
                .unwrap()
                .db_instances()
```

```
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|instance| instance.db_cluster_identifier ==
self.db_cluster_identifier)
                    .cloned()
                    .collect::<Vec<DbInstance>>();

                if db_instances.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete Instance waited and no instances were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_instances.first().unwrap().db_instance_status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but instances is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB instance");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster. rds.DeleteDbCluster.
        let delete_db_cluster = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster(
                self.db_cluster_identifier
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster identifier"),
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = delete_db_cluster {
            let identifier = self
                .db_cluster_identifier
                .as_deref()
                .unwrap_or("Missing DB Cluster Identifier");
            let message = format!("failed to delete db cluster {identifier}");
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(message, &err));
        } else {
            // Wait for the instance and cluster to fully delete.
rds.DescribeDbInstances and rds.DescribeDbClusters until both are not found.
```

```
            let waiter = Waiter::default();
            while waiter.sleep().await.is_ok() {
                let describe_db_clusters = self
                    .rds
                    .describe_db_clusters(
                        self.db_cluster_identifier
                            .as_deref()
                            .expect("cluster identifier"),
                    )
                    .await;
                if let Err(err) = describe_db_clusters {
                    clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                        "Failed to check cluster state during deletion",
                        &err,
                    ));
                    break;
                }
                let describe_db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.unwrap();
                let db_clusters = describe_db_clusters.db_clusters();
                if db_clusters.is_empty() {
                    trace!("Delete cluster waited and no clusters were found");
                    break;
                }
                match db_clusters.first().unwrap().status() {
                    Some("Deleting") => continue,
                    Some(status) => {
                        info!("Attempting to delete but clusters is in {status}");
                        continue;
                    }
                    None => {
                        warn!("No status for DB cluster");
                        break;
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the DB cluster parameter group. rds.DeleteDbClusterParameterGroup.
        let delete_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
            .rds
            .delete_db_cluster_parameter_group(
                self.db_cluster_parameter_group
                    .map(|g| {
                        g.db_cluster_parameter_group_name
```

```
                            .unwrap_or_else(||
 DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME.to_string())
                    })
                    .as_deref()
                    .expect("cluster parameter group name"),
            )
            .await;
        if let Err(error) = delete_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            clean_up_errors.push(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to delete the db cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ))
        }

        if clean_up_errors.is_empty() {
            Ok(())
        } else {
            Err(clean_up_errors)
        }
    }

    pub async fn describe_db_instances(
        &self,
    ) -> Result<DescribeDbInstancesOutput, SdkError<DescribeDBInstancesError>> {
        self.inner.describe_db_instances().send().await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
```

```
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
```

```
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_ok());
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_clean_up_errors() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_instance()
        .with(eq("MockInstance"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbInstanceOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_instances()
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Ok(DescribeDbInstancesOutput::builder()
                .db_instances(
                    DbInstance::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier("MockCluster")
                        .db_instance_status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
```

```
        })
        .with()
        .times(1)
        .returning(|| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBInstancesError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db instances error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .return_once(|_| Ok(DeleteDbClusterOutput::builder().build()));

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_db_clusters()
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|id| {
            Ok(DescribeDbClustersOutput::builder()
                .db_clusters(
                    DbCluster::builder()
                        .db_cluster_identifier(id)
                        .status("Deleting")
                        .build(),
                )
                .build())
        })
        .with(eq("MockCluster"))
        .times(1)
        .returning(|_| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                DescribeDBClustersError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe db clusters error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });
```

```
    mock_rds
        .expect_delete_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .with(eq("MockParamGroup"))
        .return_once(|_|
 Ok(DeleteDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.db_cluster_identifier = Some(String::from("MockCluster"));
    scenario.db_instance_identifier = Some(String::from("MockInstance"));
    scenario.db_cluster_parameter_group = Some(
        DbClusterParameterGroup::builder()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name("MockParamGroup")
            .build(),
    );

    tokio::time::pause();
    let assertions = tokio::spawn(async move {
        let clean_up = scenario.clean_up().await;
        assert!(clean_up.is_err());
        let errs = clean_up.unwrap_err();
        assert_eq!(errs.len(), 2);
        assert_matches!(errs.first(), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check instance state during deletion");
        assert_matches!(errs.get(1), Some(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if
 message == "Failed to check cluster state during deletion");
    });

    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Instances
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for first Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::advance(Duration::from_secs(1)).await; // Wait for second Describe
 Cluster
    tokio::time::resume();
    let _ = assertions.await;
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn get_instance_classes(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items = self
            .rds
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
                DB_ENGINE,
                self.engine_version
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("engine version for db instance options")
                    .as_str(),
            )
            .await;

        describe_orderable_db_instance_options_items
            .map(|options| {
                options
                    .iter()
                    .filter(|o| o.storage_type() == Some("aurora"))
                    .map(|o| o.db_instance_class().unwrap_or_default().to_string())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Could not get available instance
classes", &err))
    }

    pub async fn describe_orderable_db_instance_options(
        &self,
        engine: &str,
        engine_version: &str,
    ) -> Result<Vec<OrderableDbInstanceOption>,
SdkError<DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError>>
    {
```

```
        self.inner
            .describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
            .engine(engine)
            .engine_version(engine_version)
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_create_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _, _| {
            Ok(CreateDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder()

 .db_cluster_parameter_group(DbClusterParameterGroup::builder().build())
                .build())
        });

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Ok(vec![
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t1")
                    .storage_type("aurora-iopt1")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t2")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
                    .build(),
                OrderableDbInstanceOption::builder()
                    .db_instance_class("t3")
                    .storage_type("aurora")
```

```
                    .build(),
            ])
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario
        .set_engine("aurora-mysql", "aurora-mysql8.0")
        .await
        .expect("set engine");

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_eq!(
        instance_classes,
        Ok(vec!["t1".into(), "t2".into(), "t3".into()])
    );
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_get_instance_classes_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_describe_orderable_db_instance_options()
        .with(eq("aurora-mysql"), eq("aurora-mysql8.0"))
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(

 DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "describe_orderable_db_instance_options_error",
                )),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let mut scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);
    scenario.engine_family = Some("aurora-mysql".into());
    scenario.engine_version = Some("aurora-mysql8.0".into());

    let instance_classes = scenario.get_instance_classes().await;

    assert_matches!(
        instance_classes,
```

```
        Err(ScenarioError {message, context: _}) if message == "Could not get
 available instance classes"
    );
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   // Modify both the auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters
 in one call in the custom parameter group. Set their ParameterValue fields to a new
 allowable value. rds.ModifyDbClusterParameterGroup.
   pub async fn update_auto_increment(
       &self,
       offset: u8,
       increment: u8,
   ) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
       let modify_db_cluster_parameter_group = self
           .rds
           .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
               DB_CLUSTER_PARAMETER_GROUP_NAME,
               vec![
                   Parameter::builder()
                       .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                       .parameter_value(format!("{offset}"))
                       .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                       .build(),
                   Parameter::builder()
                       .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                       .parameter_value(format!("{increment}"))
                       .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
```

```
                        .build(),
                ],
            )
            .await;

        if let Err(error) = modify_db_cluster_parameter_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to modify cluster parameter group",
                &error,
            ));
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn modify_db_cluster_parameter_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        parameters: Vec<Parameter>,
    ) -> Result<ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput,
 SdkError<ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError>>
    {
        self.inner
            .modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
            .db_cluster_parameter_group_name(name)
            .set_parameters(Some(parameters))
            .send()
            .await
    }

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .withf(|name, params| {
            assert_eq!(name, "RustSDKCodeExamplesDBParameterGroup");
            assert_eq!(
                params,
                &vec![
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_offset")
                        .parameter_value("10")
```

```
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                    Parameter::builder()
                        .parameter_name("auto_increment_increment")
                        .parameter_value("20")
                        .apply_method(aws_sdk_rds::types::ApplyMethod::Immediate)
                        .build(),
                ]
            );
            true
        })
        .return_once(|_, _|
 Ok(ModifyDbClusterParameterGroupOutput::builder().build()));

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    scenario
        .update_auto_increment(10, 20)
        .await
        .expect("update auto increment");
}

#[tokio::test]
async fn test_scenario_update_auto_increment_error() {
    let mut mock_rds = MockRdsImpl::default();

    mock_rds
        .expect_modify_db_cluster_parameter_group()
        .return_once(|_, _| {
            Err(SdkError::service_error(
                ModifyDBClusterParameterGroupError::unhandled(Box::new(Error::new(
                    ErrorKind::Other,
                    "modify_db_cluster_parameter_group_error",
                ))),
                Response::new(StatusCode::try_from(400).unwrap(), SdkBody::empty()),
            ))
        });

    let scenario = AuroraScenario::new(mock_rds);

    let update = scenario.update_auto_increment(10, 20).await;
    assert_matches!(update, Err(ScenarioError { message, context: _}) if message ==
 "Failed to modify cluster parameter group");
}
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBClusterParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Auto Scaling examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Auto Scaling.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Auto Scaling

The following code examples show how to get started using Auto Scaling.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_groups(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_auto_scaling_groups().send().await?;

    println!("Groups:");

    let groups = resp.auto_scaling_groups();

    for group in groups {
        println!(
```

```
            "Name:  {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown")
        );
        println!(
            "Arn:   {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_arn().unwrap_or("unknown"),
        );
        println!("Zones: {:?}", group.availability_zones(),);
        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} group(s)", groups.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an Amazon EC2 Auto Scaling group with a launch template and Availability Zones, and get information about running instances.
- Enable Amazon CloudWatch metrics collection.
- Update the group's desired capacity and wait for an instance to start.
- Terminate an instance in the group.
- List scaling activities that occur in response to user requests and capacity changes.
- Get statistics for CloudWatch metrics, then clean up resources.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
[package]
name = "autoscaling-code-examples"
version = "0.1.0"
authors = ["Doug Schwartz <dougsch@amazon.com>", "David Souther
 <dpsouth@amazon.com>"]
edition = "2021"

# See more keys and their definitions at https://doc.rust-lang.org/cargo/reference/
manifest.html

[dependencies]
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-sdk-autoscaling = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-ec2 = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full"] }
clap = { version = "4.4", features = ["derive"] }
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }
anyhow = "1.0.75"
tracing = "0.1.37"
tokio-stream = "0.1.14"


use std::{collections::BTreeSet, fmt::Display};

use anyhow::anyhow;
use autoscaling_code_examples::scenario::{AutoScalingScenario, ScenarioError};
use tracing::{info, warn};

async fn show_scenario_description(scenario: &AutoScalingScenario, event: &str) {
    let description = scenario.describe_scenario().await;
    info!("DescribeAutoScalingInstances: {event}\n{description}");
}
```

```
#[derive(Default, Debug)]
struct Warnings(Vec<String>);

impl Warnings {
    pub fn push(&mut self, warning: &str, error: ScenarioError) {
        let formatted = format!("{warning}: {error}");
        warn!("{formatted}");
        self.0.push(formatted);
    }

    pub fn is_empty(&self) -> bool {
        self.0.is_empty()
    }
}

impl Display for Warnings {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        writeln!(f, "Warnings:")?;
        for warning in &self.0 {
            writeln!(f, "{: >4}- {warning}", "")?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();

    let shared_config = aws_config::from_env().load().await;

    let mut warnings = Warnings::default();

    // 1. Create an EC2 launch template that you'll use to create an auto scaling
 group. Bonus: use SDK with EC2.CreateLaunchTemplate to create the launch template.
    // 2. CreateAutoScalingGroup: pass it the launch template you created in step 0.
 Give it min/max of 1 instance.
    // 4. EnableMetricsCollection: enable all metrics or a subset.
    let scenario = match AutoScalingScenario::prepare_scenario(&shared_config).await
 {
        Ok(scenario) => scenario,
        Err(errs) => {
            let err_str = errs
                .into_iter()
```

```
                .map(|e| e.to_string())
                .collect::<Vec<String>>()
                .join(", ");
            return Err(anyhow!("Failed to initialize scenario: {err_str}"));
        }
    };

    info!("Prepared autoscaling scenario:\n{scenario}");

    let stable = scenario.wait_for_stable(1).await;
    if let Err(err) = stable {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem while waiting for group to be stable",
            err,
        );
    }

    // 3. DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that one instance has launched.
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "show that the group was created and one instance has launched",
    )
    .await;

    // 5. UpdateAutoScalingGroup: update max size to 3.
    let scale_max_size = scenario.scale_max_size(3).await;
    if let Err(err) = scale_max_size {
        warnings.push("There was a problem scaling max size", err);
    }

    // 6. DescribeAutoScalingGroups: the current state of the group
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "show the current state of the group after setting max size",
    )
    .await;

    // 7. SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
    let scale_desired_capacity = scenario.scale_desired_capacity(2).await;
    if let Err(err) = scale_desired_capacity {
        warnings.push("There was a problem setting desired capacity", err);
    }

    //   Wait for a second instance to launch.
```

```
    let stable = scenario.wait_for_stable(2).await;
    if let Err(err) = stable {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem while waiting for group to be stable",
            err,
        );
    }

    // 8. DescribeAutoScalingInstances: show that two instances are launched.
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "show that two instances are launched after setting desired capacity",
    )
    .await;

    let ids_before = scenario
        .list_instances()
        .await
        .map(|v| v.into_iter().collect::<BTreeSet<_>>())
        .unwrap_or_default();

    // 9. TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup: terminate one of the instances in the
group.
    let terminate_some_instance = scenario.terminate_some_instance().await;
    if let Err(err) = terminate_some_instance {
        warnings.push("There was a problem replacing an instance", err);
    }

    let wait_after_terminate = scenario.wait_for_stable(1).await;
    if let Err(err) = wait_after_terminate {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem waiting after terminating an instance",
            err,
        );
    }

    let wait_scale_up_after_terminate = scenario.wait_for_stable(2).await;
    if let Err(err) = wait_scale_up_after_terminate {
        warnings.push(
            "There was a problem waiting for scale up after terminating an
instance",
            err,
        );
    }
```

```
    let ids_after = scenario
        .list_instances()
        .await
        .map(|v| v.into_iter().collect::<BTreeSet<_>>())
        .unwrap_or_default();

    let difference = ids_after.intersection(&ids_before).count();
    if !(difference == 1 && ids_before.len() == 2 && ids_after.len() == 2) {
        warnings.push(
            "Before and after set not different",
            ScenarioError::with(format!("{difference}")),
        );
    }

    // 10. DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have occurred
for the group so far.
    show_scenario_description(
        &scenario,
        "list the scaling activities that have occurred for the group so far",
    )
    .await;

    // 11. DisableMetricsCollection
    let scale_group = scenario.scale_group_to_zero().await;
    if let Err(err) = scale_group {
        warnings.push("There was a problem scaling the group to 0", err);
    }
    show_scenario_description(&scenario, "Scenario scaled to 0").await;

    // 12. DeleteAutoScalingGroup (to delete the group you must stop all instances):
    // 13. Delete LaunchTemplate.
    let clean_scenario = scenario.clean_scenario().await;
    if let Err(errs) = clean_scenario {
        for err in errs {
            warnings.push("There was a problem cleaning the scenario", err);
        }
    } else {
        info!("The scenario has been cleaned up!");
    }

    if warnings.is_empty() {
        Ok(())
    } else {
```

```
        Err(anyhow!(
            "There were warnings during scenario execution:\n{warnings}"
        ))
    }
}

pub mod scenario;


use std::{
    error::Error,
    fmt::{Debug, Display},
    time::{Duration, SystemTime},
};

use anyhow::anyhow;
use aws_config::SdkConfig;
use aws_sdk_autoscaling::{
    error::{DisplayErrorContext, ProvideErrorMetadata},
    types::{Activity, AutoScalingGroup, LaunchTemplateSpecification},
};
use aws_sdk_ec2::types::RequestLaunchTemplateData;
use tracing::trace;

const LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME: &str =
 "SDK_Code_Examples_EC2_Autoscaling_template_from_Rust_SDK";
const AUTOSCALING_GROUP_NAME: &str =
 "SDK_Code_Examples_EC2_Autoscaling_Group_from_Rust_SDK";
const MAX_WAIT: Duration = Duration::from_secs(5 * 60); // Wait at most 25 seconds.
const WAIT_TIME: Duration = Duration::from_millis(500); // Wait half a second at a
 time.

struct Waiter {
    start: SystemTime,
    max: Duration,
}

impl Waiter {
    fn new() -> Self {
        Waiter {
            start: SystemTime::now(),
            max: MAX_WAIT,
        }
    }
```

```
    async fn sleep(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        if SystemTime::now()
            .duration_since(self.start)
            .unwrap_or(Duration::MAX)
            > self.max
        {
            Err(ScenarioError::with(
                "Exceeded maximum wait duration for stable group",
            ))
        } else {
            tokio::time::sleep(WAIT_TIME).await;
            Ok(())
        }
    }
}

pub struct AutoScalingScenario {
    ec2: aws_sdk_ec2::Client,
    autoscaling: aws_sdk_autoscaling::Client,
    launch_template_arn: String,
    auto_scaling_group_name: String,
}

impl Display for AutoScalingScenario {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        f.write_fmt(format_args!(
            "\tLaunch Template ID: {}\n",
            self.launch_template_arn
        ))?;
        f.write_fmt(format_args!(
            "\tScaling Group Name: {}\n",
            self.auto_scaling_group_name
        ))?;

        Ok(())
    }
}

pub struct AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
    group: Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError>,
    instances: Result<Vec<String>, anyhow::Error>,
    activities: Result<Vec<Activity>, anyhow::Error>,
}
```

```
impl Display for AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        writeln!(f, "\t      Group status:")?;
        match &self.group {
            Ok(groups) => {
                for status in groups {
                    writeln!(f, "\t\t- {status}")?;
                }
            }
            Err(e) => writeln!(f, "\t\t! - {e}")?,
        }
        writeln!(f, "\t         Instances:")?;
        match &self.instances {
            Ok(instances) => {
                for instance in instances {
                    writeln!(f, "\t\t- {instance}")?;
                }
            }
            Err(e) => writeln!(f, "\t\t! {e}")?,
        }

        writeln!(f, "\t        Activities:")?;
        match &self.activities {
            Ok(activities) => {
                for activity in activities {
                    writeln!(
                        f,
                        "\t\t- {} Progress: {}% Status: {:?} End: {:?}",
                        activity.cause().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                        activity.progress.unwrap_or(-1),
                        activity.status_code(),
                        // activity.status_message().unwrap_or_default()
                        activity.end_time(),
                    )?;
                }
            }
            Err(e) => writeln!(f, "\t\t! {e}")?,
        }

        Ok(())
    }
}
```

```
#[derive(Debug)]
struct MetadataError {
    message: Option<String>,
    code: Option<String>,
}

impl MetadataError {
    fn from(err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) -> Self {
        MetadataError {
            message: err.message().map(|s| s.to_string()),
            code: err.code().map(|s| s.to_string()),
        }
    }
}

impl Display for MetadataError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        let display = match (&self.message, &self.code) {
            (None, None) => "Unknown".to_string(),
            (None, Some(code)) => format!("({code})"),
            (Some(message), None) => message.to_string(),
            (Some(message), Some(code)) => format!("{message} ({code})"),
        };
        write!(f, "{display}")
    }
}

#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct ScenarioError {
    message: String,
    context: Option<MetadataError>,
}

impl ScenarioError {
    pub fn with(message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
            context: None,
        }
    }

    pub fn new(message: impl Into<String>, err: &dyn ProvideErrorMetadata) -> Self {
        ScenarioError {
            message: message.into(),
```

```
            context: Some(MetadataError::from(err)),
        }
    }
}

impl Error for ScenarioError {
    // While `Error` can capture `source` information about the underlying error,
 for this example
    // the ScenarioError captures the underlying information in MetadataError and
 treats it as a
    // single Error from this Crate. In other contexts, it may be appropriate to
 model the error
    // as including the SdkError as its source.
}
impl Display for ScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match &self.context {
            Some(c) => write!(f, "{}: {}", self.message, c),
            None => write!(f, "{}", self.message),
        }
    }
}

impl AutoScalingScenario {
    pub async fn prepare_scenario(sdk_config: &SdkConfig) -> Result<Self,
 Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let ec2 = aws_sdk_ec2::Client::new(sdk_config);
        let autoscaling = aws_sdk_autoscaling::Client::new(sdk_config);

        let auto_scaling_group_name = String::from(AUTOSCALING_GROUP_NAME);

        // Before creating any resources, prepare the list of AZs
        let availablity_zones = ec2.describe_availability_zones().send().await;
        if let Err(err) = availablity_zones {
            return Err(vec![ScenarioError::new("Failed to find AZs", &err)]);
        }

        let availability_zones: Vec<String> = availablity_zones
            .unwrap()
            .availability_zones
            .unwrap_or_default()
            .iter()
            .take(3)
            .map(|z| z.zone_name.clone().unwrap())
```

```
            .collect();

        // 1. Create an EC2 launch template that you'll use to create an auto
scaling group. Bonus: use SDK with EC2.CreateLaunchTemplate to create the launch
template.
        //   * Recommended: InstanceType='t1.micro', ImageId='ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300'
        let create_launch_template = ec2
            .create_launch_template()
            .launch_template_name(LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .launch_template_data(
                RequestLaunchTemplateData::builder()
                    .instance_type(aws_sdk_ec2::types::InstanceType::T1Micro)
                    .image_id("ami-0ca285d4c2cda3300")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(|err| vec![ScenarioError::new("Failed to create launch
template", &err)])?;

        let launch_template_arn = match create_launch_template.launch_template {
            Some(launch_template) =>
launch_template.launch_template_id.unwrap_or_default(),
            None => {
                // Try to delete the launch template
                let _ = ec2
                    .delete_launch_template()
                    .launch_template_name(LAUNCH_TEMPLATE_NAME)
                    .send()
                    .await;
                return Err(vec![ScenarioError::with("Failed to load launch
template")]);
            }
        };

        // 2. CreateAutoScalingGroup: pass it the launch template you created in
step 0. Give it min/max of 1 instance.
        //   You can use EC2.describe_availability_zones() to get a list of AZs (you
have to specify an AZ when you create the group).
        //   Wait for instance to launch. Use a waiter if you have one, otherwise
DescribeAutoScalingInstances until LifecycleState='InService'
        if let Err(err) = autoscaling
            .create_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
```

```
            .launch_template(
                LaunchTemplateSpecification::builder()
                    .launch_template_id(launch_template_arn.clone())
                    .version("$Latest")
                    .build(),
            )
            .max_size(1)
            .min_size(1)
            .set_availability_zones(Some(availability_zones))
            .send()
            .await
        {
            let mut errs = vec![ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to create autoscaling group",
                &err,
            )];

            if let Err(err) = autoscaling
                .delete_auto_scaling_group()
                .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                errs.push(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to clean up autoscaling group",
                    &err,
                ));
            }

            if let Err(err) = ec2
                .delete_launch_template()
                .launch_template_id(launch_template_arn.clone())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                errs.push(ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to clean up launch template",
                    &err,
                ));
            }
            return Err(errs);
        }

        let scenario = AutoScalingScenario {
```

```
            ec2,
            autoscaling: autoscaling.clone(), // Clients are cheap so cloning here
to prevent a move is ok.
            auto_scaling_group_name: auto_scaling_group_name.clone(),
            launch_template_arn,
        };

        let enable_metrics_collection = autoscaling
            .enable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
            .granularity("1Minute")
            .set_metrics(Some(vec![
                String::from("GroupMinSize"),
                String::from("GroupMaxSize"),
                String::from("GroupDesiredCapacity"),
                String::from("GroupInServiceInstances"),
                String::from("GroupTotalInstances"),
            ]))
            .send()
            .await;

        match enable_metrics_collection {
            Ok(_) => Ok(scenario),
            Err(err) => {
                scenario.clean_scenario().await?;
                Err(vec![ScenarioError::new(
                    "Failed to enable metrics collections for group",
                    &err,
                )])
            }
        }
    }

    pub async fn clean_scenario(self) -> Result<(), Vec<ScenarioError>> {
        let _ = self.wait_for_no_scaling().await;
        let delete_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .delete_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        // 14. Delete LaunchTemplate.
        let delete_launch_template = self
```

```
            .ec2
            .delete_launch_template()
            .launch_template_id(self.launch_template_arn.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        let early_exit = match (delete_group, delete_launch_template) {
            (Ok(_), Ok(_)) => Ok(()),
            (Ok(_), Err(e)) => Err(vec![ScenarioError::new(
                "There was an error cleaning the launch template",
                &e,
            )]),
            (Err(e), Ok(_)) => Err(vec![ScenarioError::new(
                "There was an error cleaning the scale group",
                &e,
            )]),
            (Err(e1), Err(e2)) => Err(vec![
                ScenarioError::new("Multiple error cleaning the scenario Scale
Group", &e1),
                ScenarioError::new("Multiple error cleaning the scenario Launch
Template", &e2),
            ]),
        };

        if early_exit.is_err() {
            early_exit
        } else {
            // Wait for delete_group to finish
            let waiter = Waiter::new();
            let mut errors = Vec::<ScenarioError>::new();
            while errors.len() < 3 {
                if let Err(e) = waiter.sleep().await {
                    errors.push(e);
                    continue;
                }
                let describe_group = self
                    .autoscaling
                    .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
                    .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
                    .send()
                    .await;
                match describe_group {
                    Ok(group) => match group.auto_scaling_groups().first() {
                        Some(group) => {
```

```
                            if group.status() != Some("Delete in progress") {
                                errors.push(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                                    "Group in an unknown state while deleting: {}",
                                    group.status().unwrap_or("unknown error")
                                )));
                                return Err(errors);
                            }
                        }
                        None => return Ok(()),
                    },
                    Err(err) => {
                        errors.push(ScenarioError::new("Failed to describe
autoscaling group during cleanup 3 times, last error", &err));
                    }
                }
                if errors.len() > 3 {
                    return Err(errors);
                }
            }
            Err(vec![ScenarioError::with(
                "Exited cleanup wait loop without retuning success or failing after
three rounds",
            )])
        }
    }

    pub async fn describe_scenario(&self) -> AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
        let group = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map(|s| {
                s.auto_scaling_groups()
                    .iter()
                    .map(|s| {
                        format!(
                            "{}: {}",
                            s.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                            s.status().unwrap_or("Unknown")
                        )
                    })
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
```

```
            })
            .map_err(|e| {
                ScenarioError::new("Failed to describe auto scaling groups for
scenario", &e)
            });

        let instances = self
            .list_instances()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| anyhow!("There was an error listing instances: {e}",));

        // 10. DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have
occurred for the group so far.
        //   Bonus: use CloudWatch API to get and show some metrics collected for
the group.
        //   CW.ListMetrics with Namespace='AWS/AutoScaling' and
Dimensions=[{'Name': 'AutoScalingGroupName', 'Value': }]
        //   CW.GetMetricStatistics with Statistics='Sum'. Start and End times must
be in UTC!
        let activities = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_scaling_activities()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<_>, _>>()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| {
                anyhow!(
                    "There was an error retrieving scaling activities: {}",
                    DisplayErrorContext(&e)
                )
            });

        AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
            group,
            instances,
            activities,
        }
    }

    async fn get_group(&self) -> Result<AutoScalingGroup, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_auto_scaling_groups = self
```

```
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = describe_auto_scaling_groups {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!(
                    "Failed to get status of autoscaling group {}",
                    self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
                )
                .as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let describe_auto_scaling_groups_output =
describe_auto_scaling_groups.unwrap();
        let auto_scaling_groups =
describe_auto_scaling_groups_output.auto_scaling_groups();
        let auto_scaling_group = auto_scaling_groups.first();

        if auto_scaling_group.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                "Could not find autoscaling group {}",
                self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
            )));
        }

        Ok(auto_scaling_group.unwrap().clone())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_no_scaling(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        let waiter = Waiter::new();
        let mut scaling = true;
        while scaling {
            waiter.sleep().await?;
            let describe_activities = self
                .autoscaling
                .describe_scaling_activities()
                .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
                .send()
                .await
```

```
                .map_err(|e| {
                    ScenarioError::new("Failed to get autoscaling activities for
group", &e)
                })?;
            let activities = describe_activities.activities();
            trace!(
                "Waiting for no scaling found {} activities",
                activities.len()
            );
            scaling = activities.iter().any(|a| a.progress() < Some(100));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_stable(&self, size: usize) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        self.wait_for_no_scaling().await?;

        let mut group = self.get_group().await?;
        let mut count = count_group_instances(&group);

        let waiter = Waiter::new();
        while count != size {
            trace!("Waiting for stable {size} (current: {count})");
            waiter.sleep().await?;
            group = self.get_group().await?;
            count = count_group_instances(&group);
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn list_instances(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError> {
        // The direct way to list instances is by using DescribeAutoScalingGroup's
instances property. However, this returns a Vec<Instance>, as opposed to a
Vec<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>.
        // Ok(self.get_group().await?.instances.unwrap_or_default().map(|i|
i.instance_id.clone().unwrap_or_default()).filter(|id| !id.is_empty()).collect())

        // Alternatively, and for the sake of example, DescribeAutoScalingInstances
returns a list that can be filtered by the client.
        self.autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_instances()
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
```

```
            .send()
            .try_collect()
            .await
            .map(|items| {
                items
                    .into_iter()
                    .filter(|i| {
                        i.auto_scaling_group_name.as_deref()
                            == Some(self.auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
                    })
                    .map(|i| i.instance_id.unwrap_or_default())
                    .filter(|id| !id.is_empty())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Failed to get list of auto scaling
instances", &err))
    }

    pub async fn scale_min_size(&self, size: i32) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .update_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .min_size(size)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failer to update group to min size ({size}))").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn scale_max_size(&self, size: i32) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // 5. UpdateAutoScalingGroup: update max size to 3.
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .update_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .max_size(size)
            .send()
            .await;
```

```
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to update group to max size ({size})").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn scale_desired_capacity(&self, capacity: i32) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
        // 7. SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
        //   Wait for a second instance to launch.
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .set_desired_capacity()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .desired_capacity(capacity)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to update group to desired capacity
({capacity}))").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn scale_group_to_zero(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // If this fails it's fine, just means there are extra cloudwatch metrics
events for the scale-down.
        let _ = self
            .autoscaling
            .disable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        // 12. DeleteAutoScalingGroup (to delete the group you must stop all
instances):
        //   UpdateAutoScalingGroup with MinSize=0
        let update_group = self
```

```
            .autoscaling
            .update_auto_scaling_group()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .min_size(0)
            .desired_capacity(0)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                "Failed to update group for scaling down&",
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let stable = self.wait_for_stable(0).await;
        if let Err(err) = stable {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                "Error while waiting for group to be stable on scale down: {err}"
            )));
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn terminate_some_instance(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // Retrieve a list of instances in the auto scaling group.
        let auto_scaling_group = self.get_group().await?;
        let instances = auto_scaling_group.instances();
        // Or use other logic to find an instance to terminate.
        let instance = instances.first();
        if let Some(instance) = instance {
            let instance_id = if let Some(instance_id) = instance.instance_id() {
                instance_id
            } else {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with("Missing instance id"));
            };
            let termination = self
                .ec2
                .terminate_instances()
                .instance_ids(instance_id)
                .send()
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = termination {
                Err(ScenarioError::new(
```

```
                    "There was a problem terminating an instance",
                    &err,
                ))
            } else {
                Ok(())
            }
        } else {
            Err(ScenarioError::with("There was no instance to terminate"))
        }
    }
}

fn count_group_instances(group: &AutoScalingGroup) -> usize {
    group.instances.as_ref().map(|i| i.len()).unwrap_or(0)
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateAutoScalingGroup
  - DeleteAutoScalingGroup
  - DescribeAutoScalingGroups
  - DescribeAutoScalingInstances
  - DescribeScalingActivities
  - DisableMetricsCollection
  - EnableMetricsCollection
  - SetDesiredCapacity
  - TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup
  - UpdateAutoScalingGroup

Actions

`CreateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn create_group(client: &Client, name: &str, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .create_auto_scaling_group()
        .auto_scaling_group_name(name)
        .instance_id(id)
        .min_size(1)
        .max_size(5)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created AutoScaling group");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn delete_group(client: &Client, name: &str, force: bool) -> Result<(), Error>
 {
```

```
    client
        .delete_auto_scaling_group()
        .auto_scaling_group_name(name)
        .set_force_delete(if force { Some(true) } else { None })
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Deleted Auto Scaling group");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingGroups`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_groups(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_auto_scaling_groups().send().await?;

    println!("Groups:");

    let groups = resp.auto_scaling_groups();

    for group in groups {
        println!(
            "Name:  {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown")
        );
        println!(
            "Arn:   {}",
            group.auto_scaling_group_arn().unwrap_or("unknown"),
```

```
        );
        println!("Zones: {:?}", group.availability_zones(),);
        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} group(s)", groups.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeAutoScalingInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAutoScalingInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn list_instances(&self) -> Result<Vec<String>, ScenarioError> {
       // The direct way to list instances is by using DescribeAutoScalingGroup's
instances property. However, this returns a Vec<Instance>, as opposed to a
Vec<AutoScalingInstanceDetails>.
       // Ok(self.get_group().await?.instances.unwrap_or_default().map(|i|
i.instance_id.clone().unwrap_or_default()).filter(|id| !id.is_empty()).collect())

       // Alternatively, and for the sake of example, DescribeAutoScalingInstances
returns a list that can be filtered by the client.
       self.autoscaling
           .describe_auto_scaling_instances()
           .into_paginator()
           .items()
           .send()
           .try_collect()
           .await
           .map(|items| {
```

```
                items
                    .into_iter()
                    .filter(|i| {
                        i.auto_scaling_group_name.as_deref()
                            == Some(self.auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
                    })
                    .map(|i| i.instance_id.unwrap_or_default())
                    .filter(|id| !id.is_empty())
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|err| ScenarioError::new("Failed to get list of auto scaling
instances", &err))
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeAutoScalingInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeScalingActivities`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeScalingActivities`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn describe_scenario(&self) -> AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
        let group = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map(|s| {
                s.auto_scaling_groups()
                    .iter()
                    .map(|s| {
                        format!(
                            "{}: {}",
```

```
                            s.auto_scaling_group_name().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                            s.status().unwrap_or("Unknown")
                        )
                    })
                    .collect::<Vec<String>>()
            })
            .map_err(|e| {
                ScenarioError::new("Failed to describe auto scaling groups for
scenario", &e)
            });

        let instances = self
            .list_instances()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| anyhow!("There was an error listing instances: {e}",));

        // 10. DescribeScalingActivities: list the scaling activities that have
occurred for the group so far.
        //   Bonus: use CloudWatch API to get and show some metrics collected for
the group.
        //   CW.ListMetrics with Namespace='AWS/AutoScaling' and
Dimensions=[{'Name': 'AutoScalingGroupName', 'Value': }]
        //   CW.GetMetricStatistics with Statistics='Sum'. Start and End times must
be in UTC!
        let activities = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_scaling_activities()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .into_paginator()
            .items()
            .send()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<_>, _>>()
            .await
            .map_err(|e| {
                anyhow!(
                    "There was an error retrieving scaling activities: {}",
                    DisplayErrorContext(&e)
                )
            });

        AutoScalingScenarioDescription {
            group,
            instances,
            activities,
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeScalingActivities in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DisableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        // If this fails it's fine, just means there are extra cloudwatch metrics
events for the scale-down.
        let _ = self
            .autoscaling
            .disable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;
```

- For API details, see DisableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`EnableMetricsCollection`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableMetricsCollection`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let enable_metrics_collection = autoscaling
            .enable_metrics_collection()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(auto_scaling_group_name.as_str())
            .granularity("1Minute")
            .set_metrics(Some(vec![
                String::from("GroupMinSize"),
                String::from("GroupMaxSize"),
                String::from("GroupDesiredCapacity"),
                String::from("GroupInServiceInstances"),
                String::from("GroupTotalInstances"),
            ]))
            .send()
            .await;
```

- For API details, see EnableMetricsCollection in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`SetDesiredCapacity`

The following code example shows how to use `SetDesiredCapacity`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn scale_desired_capacity(&self, capacity: i32) -> Result<(),
ScenarioError> {
        // 7. SetDesiredCapacity: set desired capacity to 2.
```

```
        //   Wait for a second instance to launch.
        let update_group = self
            .autoscaling
            .set_desired_capacity()
            .auto_scaling_group_name(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .desired_capacity(capacity)
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Err(err) = update_group {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!("Failed to update group to desired capacity
({capacity}))").as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see SetDesiredCapacity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn terminate_some_instance(&self) -> Result<(), ScenarioError> {
        // Retrieve a list of instances in the auto scaling group.
        let auto_scaling_group = self.get_group().await?;
        let instances = auto_scaling_group.instances();
        // Or use other logic to find an instance to terminate.
        let instance = instances.first();
        if let Some(instance) = instance {
            let instance_id = if let Some(instance_id) = instance.instance_id() {
                instance_id
```

```
            } else {
                return Err(ScenarioError::with("Missing instance id"));
            };
            let termination = self
                .ec2
                .terminate_instances()
                .instance_ids(instance_id)
                .send()
                .await;
            if let Err(err) = termination {
                Err(ScenarioError::new(
                    "There was a problem terminating an instance",
                    &err,
                ))
            } else {
                Ok(())
            }
        } else {
            Err(ScenarioError::with("There was no instance to terminate"))
        }
    }

    async fn get_group(&self) -> Result<AutoScalingGroup, ScenarioError> {
        let describe_auto_scaling_groups = self
            .autoscaling
            .describe_auto_scaling_groups()
            .auto_scaling_group_names(self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;

        if let Err(err) = describe_auto_scaling_groups {
            return Err(ScenarioError::new(
                format!(
                    "Failed to get status of autoscaling group {}",
                    self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
                )
                .as_str(),
                &err,
            ));
        }

        let describe_auto_scaling_groups_output =
describe_auto_scaling_groups.unwrap();
```

```
        let auto_scaling_groups =
 describe_auto_scaling_groups_output.auto_scaling_groups();
        let auto_scaling_group = auto_scaling_groups.first();

        if auto_scaling_group.is_none() {
            return Err(ScenarioError::with(format!(
                "Could not find autoscaling group {}",
                self.auto_scaling_group_name.clone()
            )));
        }

        Ok(auto_scaling_group.unwrap().clone())
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstanceInAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`UpdateAutoScalingGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateAutoScalingGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn update_group(client: &Client, name: &str, size: i32) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .update_auto_scaling_group()
        .auto_scaling_group_name(name)
        .max_size(size)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Updated AutoScaling group");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateAutoScalingGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios
- Anthropic Claude

Scenarios

Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary scenario and logic for the demo. This orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
#[derive(Debug)]
#[allow(dead_code)]
struct InvokeToolResult(String, ToolResultBlock);
struct ToolUseScenario {
    client: Client,
    conversation: Vec<Message>,
    system_prompt: SystemContentBlock,
    tool_config: ToolConfiguration,
}

impl ToolUseScenario {
    fn new(client: Client) -> Self {
        let system_prompt = SystemContentBlock::Text(SYSTEM_PROMPT.into());
        let tool_config = ToolConfiguration::builder()
            .tools(Tool::ToolSpec(
                ToolSpecification::builder()
                    .name(TOOL_NAME)
                    .description(TOOL_DESCRIPTION)
                    .input_schema(ToolInputSchema::Json(make_tool_schema()))
                    .build()
                    .unwrap(),
            ))
            .build()
            .unwrap();

        ToolUseScenario {
            client,
            conversation: vec![],
            system_prompt,
            tool_config,
        }
    }

    async fn run(&mut self) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        loop {
            let input = get_input().await?;
            if input.is_none() {
                break;
            }

            let message = Message::builder()
                .role(User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(input.unwrap()))
```

```
                .build()
                .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)?;
            self.conversation.push(message);

            let response = self.send_to_bedrock().await?;

            self.process_model_response(response).await?;
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    async fn send_to_bedrock(&mut self) -> Result<ConverseOutput,
ToolUseScenarioError> {
        debug!("Sending conversation to bedrock");
        self.client
            .converse()
            .model_id(MODEL_ID)
            .set_messages(Some(self.conversation.clone()))
            .system(self.system_prompt.clone())
            .tool_config(self.tool_config.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)
    }

    async fn process_model_response(
        &mut self,
        mut response: ConverseOutput,
    ) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut iteration = 0;

        while iteration < MAX_RECURSIONS {
            iteration += 1;
            let message = if let Some(ref output) = response.output {
                if output.is_message() {
                    Ok(output.as_message().unwrap().clone())
                } else {
                    Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
                        "Converse Output is not a message".into(),
                    ))
                }
            } else {
                Err(ToolUseScenarioError("Missing Converse Output".into()))
```

```
            }?;

            self.conversation.push(message.clone());

            match response.stop_reason {
                StopReason::ToolUse => {
                    response = self.handle_tool_use(&message).await?;
                }
                StopReason::EndTurn => {
                    print_model_response(&message.content[0])?;
                    return Ok(());
                }
                _ => (),
            }
        }

        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
            "Exceeded MAX_ITERATIONS when calling tools".into(),
        ))
    }

    async fn handle_tool_use(
        &mut self,
        message: &Message,
    ) -> Result<ConverseOutput, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut tool_results: Vec<ContentBlock> = vec![];

        for block in &message.content {
            match block {
                ContentBlock::Text(_) => print_model_response(block)?,
                ContentBlock::ToolUse(tool) => {
                    let tool_response = self.invoke_tool(tool).await?;
                    tool_results.push(ContentBlock::ToolResult(tool_response.1));
                }
                _ => (),
            };
        }

        let message = Message::builder()
            .role(User)
            .set_content(Some(tool_results))
            .build()?;
        self.conversation.push(message);
```

```
        self.send_to_bedrock().await
    }

    async fn invoke_tool(
        &mut self,
        tool: &ToolUseBlock,
    ) -> Result<InvokeToolResult, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        match tool.name() {
            TOOL_NAME => {
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mExecuting tool: {TOOL_NAME} with input: {:?}...
\x1b[0m",
                    tool.input()
                );
                let content = fetch_weather_data(tool).await?;
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mTool responded with {:?}\x1b[0m",
                    content.content()
                );
                Ok(InvokeToolResult(tool.tool_use_id.clone(), content))
            }
            _ => Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
                "The requested tool with name {} does not exist",
                tool.name()
            ))),
        }
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let mut scenario = ToolUseScenario::new(client);

    header();
    if let Err(err) = scenario.run().await {
        println!("There was an error running the scenario! {}", err.0)
    }
```

```
    footer();
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
const ENDPOINT: &str = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
async fn fetch_weather_data(
    tool_use: &ToolUseBlock,
) -> Result<ToolResultBlock, ToolUseScenarioError> {
    let input = tool_use.input();
    let latitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("latitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let longitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("longitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let params = [
        ("latitude", latitude),
        ("longitude", longitude),
        ("current_weather", "true"),
    ];

    debug!("Calling {ENDPOINT} with {params:?}");

    let response = reqwest::Client::new()
        .get(ENDPOINT)
        .query(&params)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error requesting weather:
 {e:?}")))?
        .error_for_status()
```

```
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Failed to request weather:
 {e:?}")))?;

    debug!("Response: {response:?}");

    let bytes = response
        .bytes()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error reading response:
 {e:?}")))?;

    let result = String::from_utf8(bytes.to_vec())
        .map_err(|_| ToolUseScenarioError("Response was not utf8".into()))?;

    Ok(ToolResultBlock::builder()
        .tool_use_id(tool_use.tool_use_id())
        .content(ToolResultContentBlock::Text(result))
        .build()?)
}
```

Utilities to print the Message Content Blocks.

```
fn print_model_response(block: &ContentBlock) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
    if block.is_text() {
        let text = block.as_text().unwrap();
        println!("\x1b[0;90mThe model's response:\x1b[0m\n{text}");
        Ok(())
    } else {
        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
            "Content block is not text ({block:?})"
        )))
    }
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use std::{collections::HashMap, io::stdin};

use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
    error::{BuildError, SdkError},
```

```
    operation::converse::{ConverseError, ConverseOutput},
    types::{
        ContentBlock, ConversationRole::User, Message, StopReason,
 SystemContentBlock, Tool,
        ToolConfiguration, ToolInputSchema, ToolResultBlock, ToolResultContentBlock,
        ToolSpecification, ToolUseBlock,
    },
    Client,
};
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::http::Response;
use aws_smithy_types::Document;
use tracing::debug;

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

const SYSTEM_PROMPT: &str = "You are a weather assistant that provides current
 weather data for user-specified locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates from
 the location yourself.
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it in
 your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest other
 options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
";

// The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
// This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
const MAX_RECURSIONS: i8 = 5;
```

```
const TOOL_NAME: &str = "Weather_Tool";
const TOOL_DESCRIPTION: &str =
    "Get the current weather for a given location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";
fn make_tool_schema() -> Document {
    Document::Object(HashMap::<String, Document>::from([
        ("type".into(), Document::String("object".into())),
        (
            "properties".into(),
            Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                (
                    "latitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String("Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.".into()),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
                (
                    "longitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String(
                                "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.".into(),
                            ),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
            ])),
        ),
        (
            "required".into(),
            Document::Array(vec![
                Document::String("latitude".into()),
                Document::String("longitude".into()),
            ]),
        ),
    ]))
}
```

```
#[derive(Debug)]
struct ToolUseScenarioError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Tool use error with '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
}
impl From<&str> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.into())
    }
}
impl From<BuildError> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: BuildError) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.to_string().clone())
    }
}
impl From<SdkError<ConverseError, Response>> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: SdkError<ConverseError, Response>) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(match value.as_service_error() {
            Some(value) => value.meta().message().unwrap_or("Unknown").into(),
            None => "Unknown".into(),
        })
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), BedrockConverseError> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let response = client
        .converse()
        .model_id(MODEL_ID)
        .messages(
            Message::builder()
                .role(ConversationRole::User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(USER_MESSAGE.to_string()))
                .build()
                .map_err(|_| "failed to build message")?,
        )
        .send()
        .await;

    match response {
        Ok(output) => {
            let text = get_converse_output_text(output)?;
            println!("{}", text);
            Ok(())
        }
        Err(e) => Err(e
            .as_service_error()
            .map(BedrockConverseError::from)
            .unwrap_or_else(|| BedrockConverseError("Unknown service
 error".into()))),
```

```
    }
}

fn get_converse_output_text(output: ConverseOutput) -> Result<String,
 BedrockConverseError> {
    let text = output
        .output()
        .ok_or("no output")?
        .as_message()
        .map_err(|_| "output not a message")?
        .content()
        .first()
        .ok_or("no content in message")?
        .as_text()
        .map_err(|_| "content is not text")?
        .to_string();
    Ok(text)
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
    operation::converse::{ConverseError, ConverseOutput},
    types::{ContentBlock, ConversationRole, Message},
    Client,
};

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const USER_MESSAGE: &str = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

#[derive(Debug)]
struct BedrockConverseError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for BedrockConverseError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Can't invoke '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
```

```
}
impl std::error::Error for BedrockConverseError {}
impl From<&str> for BedrockConverseError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseError(value.to_string())
    }
}
impl From<&ConverseError> for BedrockConverseError {
    fn from(value: &ConverseError) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseError::from(match value {
            ConverseError::ModelTimeoutException(_) => "Model took too long",
            ConverseError::ModelNotReadyException(_) => "Model is not ready",
            _ => "Unknown",
        })
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude and stream reply tokens, using Bedrock's ConverseStream API.

```
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), BedrockConverseStreamError> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
```

```
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let response = client
        .converse_stream()
        .model_id(MODEL_ID)
        .messages(
            Message::builder()
                .role(ConversationRole::User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(USER_MESSAGE.to_string()))
                .build()
                .map_err(|_| "failed to build message")?,
        )
        .send()
        .await;

    let mut stream = match response {
        Ok(output) => Ok(output.stream),
        Err(e) => Err(BedrockConverseStreamError::from(
            e.as_service_error().unwrap(),
        )),
    }?;

    loop {
        let token = stream.recv().await;
        match token {
            Ok(Some(text)) => {
                let next = get_converse_output_text(text)?;
                print!("{}", next);
                Ok(())
            }
            Ok(None) => break,
            Err(e) => Err(e
                .as_service_error()
                .map(BedrockConverseStreamError::from)
                .unwrap_or(BedrockConverseStreamError(
                    "Unknown error receiving stream".into(),
                ))),
        }?
    }

    println!();

    Ok(())
```

```
}

fn get_converse_output_text(
    output: ConverseStreamOutputType,
) -> Result<String, BedrockConverseStreamError> {
    Ok(match output {
        ConverseStreamOutputType::ContentBlockDelta(event) => match event.delta() {
            Some(delta) => delta.as_text().cloned().unwrap_or_else(|_| "".into()),
            None => "".into(),
        },
        _ => "".into(),
    })
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
    error::ProvideErrorMetadata,
    operation::converse_stream::ConverseStreamError,
    types::{
        error::ConverseStreamOutputError, ContentBlock, ConversationRole,
        ConverseStreamOutput as ConverseStreamOutputType, Message,
    },
    Client,
};

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

// Start a conversation with the user message.
const USER_MESSAGE: &str = "Describe the purpose of a 'hello world' program in one
 line.";

#[derive(Debug)]
struct BedrockConverseStreamError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Can't invoke '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
```

```
}
impl std::error::Error for BedrockConverseStreamError {}
impl From<&str> for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseStreamError(value.into())
    }
}

impl From<&ConverseStreamError> for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn from(value: &ConverseStreamError) -> Self {
        BedrockConverseStreamError(
            match value {
                ConverseStreamError::ModelTimeoutException(_) => "Model took too
 long",
                ConverseStreamError::ModelNotReadyException(_) => "Model is not
 ready",
                _ => "Unknown",
            }
            .into(),
        )
    }
}

impl From<&ConverseStreamOutputError> for BedrockConverseStreamError {
    fn from(value: &ConverseStreamOutputError) -> Self {
        match value {
            ConverseStreamOutputError::ValidationException(ve) =>
 BedrockConverseStreamError(
                ve.message().unwrap_or("Unknown ValidationException").into(),
            ),
            ConverseStreamOutputError::ThrottlingException(te) =>
 BedrockConverseStreamError(
                te.message().unwrap_or("Unknown ThrottlingException").into(),
            ),
            value => BedrockConverseStreamError(
                value
                    .message()
                    .unwrap_or("Unknown StreamOutput exception")
                    .into(),
            ),
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenario: Tool use with the Converse API

The following code example shows how to build a typical interaction between an application, a generative AI model, and connected tools or APIs to mediate interactions between the AI and the outside world. It uses the example of connecting an external weather API to the AI model so it can provide real-time weather information based on user input.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The primary scenario and logic for the demo. This orchestrates the conversation between the user, the Amazon Bedrock Converse API, and a weather tool.

```
#[derive(Debug)]
#[allow(dead_code)]
struct InvokeToolResult(String, ToolResultBlock);
struct ToolUseScenario {
    client: Client,
    conversation: Vec<Message>,
    system_prompt: SystemContentBlock,
    tool_config: ToolConfiguration,
}

impl ToolUseScenario {
    fn new(client: Client) -> Self {
        let system_prompt = SystemContentBlock::Text(SYSTEM_PROMPT.into());
        let tool_config = ToolConfiguration::builder()
            .tools(Tool::ToolSpec(
                ToolSpecification::builder()
                    .name(TOOL_NAME)
                    .description(TOOL_DESCRIPTION)
                    .input_schema(ToolInputSchema::Json(make_tool_schema()))
```

```
                    .build()
                    .unwrap(),
            ))
            .build()
            .unwrap();

        ToolUseScenario {
            client,
            conversation: vec![],
            system_prompt,
            tool_config,
        }
    }

    async fn run(&mut self) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        loop {
            let input = get_input().await?;
            if input.is_none() {
                break;
            }

            let message = Message::builder()
                .role(User)
                .content(ContentBlock::Text(input.unwrap()))
                .build()
                .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)?;
            self.conversation.push(message);

            let response = self.send_to_bedrock().await?;

            self.process_model_response(response).await?;
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    async fn send_to_bedrock(&mut self) -> Result<ConverseOutput,
ToolUseScenarioError> {
        debug!("Sending conversation to bedrock");
        self.client
            .converse()
            .model_id(MODEL_ID)
            .set_messages(Some(self.conversation.clone()))
            .system(self.system_prompt.clone())
```

```
            .tool_config(self.tool_config.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(ToolUseScenarioError::from)
    }

    async fn process_model_response(
        &mut self,
        mut response: ConverseOutput,
    ) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut iteration = 0;

        while iteration < MAX_RECURSIONS {
            iteration += 1;
            let message = if let Some(ref output) = response.output {
                if output.is_message() {
                    Ok(output.as_message().unwrap().clone())
                } else {
                    Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
                        "Converse Output is not a message".into(),
                    ))
                }
            } else {
                Err(ToolUseScenarioError("Missing Converse Output".into()))
            }?;

            self.conversation.push(message.clone());

            match response.stop_reason {
                StopReason::ToolUse => {
                    response = self.handle_tool_use(&message).await?;
                }
                StopReason::EndTurn => {
                    print_model_response(&message.content[0])?;
                    return Ok(());
                }
                _ => (),
            }
        }

        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(
            "Exceeded MAX_ITERATIONS when calling tools".into(),
        ))
    }
```

```
    async fn handle_tool_use(
        &mut self,
        message: &Message,
    ) -> Result<ConverseOutput, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        let mut tool_results: Vec<ContentBlock> = vec![];

        for block in &message.content {
            match block {
                ContentBlock::Text(_) => print_model_response(block)?,
                ContentBlock::ToolUse(tool) => {
                    let tool_response = self.invoke_tool(tool).await?;
                    tool_results.push(ContentBlock::ToolResult(tool_response.1));
                }
                _ => (),
            };
        }

        let message = Message::builder()
            .role(User)
            .set_content(Some(tool_results))
            .build()?;
        self.conversation.push(message);

        self.send_to_bedrock().await
    }

    async fn invoke_tool(
        &mut self,
        tool: &ToolUseBlock,
    ) -> Result<InvokeToolResult, ToolUseScenarioError> {
        match tool.name() {
            TOOL_NAME => {
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mExecuting tool: {TOOL_NAME} with input: {:?}...
\x1b[0m",
                    tool.input()
                );
                let content = fetch_weather_data(tool).await?;
                println!(
                    "\x1b[0;90mTool responded with {:?}\x1b[0m",
                    content.content()
                );
                Ok(InvokeToolResult(tool.tool_use_id.clone(), content))
```

```
            }
            _ => Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
                "The requested tool with name {} does not exist",
                tool.name()
            ))),
        }
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(CLAUDE_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let mut scenario = ToolUseScenario::new(client);

    header();
    if let Err(err) = scenario.run().await {
        println!("There was an error running the scenario! {}", err.0)
    }
    footer();
}
```

The weather tool used by the demo. This script defines the tool specification and implements the logic to retrieve weather data using from the Open-Meteo API.

```
const ENDPOINT: &str = "https://api.open-meteo.com/v1/forecast";
async fn fetch_weather_data(
    tool_use: &ToolUseBlock,
) -> Result<ToolResultBlock, ToolUseScenarioError> {
    let input = tool_use.input();
    let latitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("latitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
```

```
    let longitude = input
        .as_object()
        .unwrap()
        .get("longitude")
        .unwrap()
        .as_string()
        .unwrap();
    let params = [
        ("latitude", latitude),
        ("longitude", longitude),
        ("current_weather", "true"),
    ];

    debug!("Calling {ENDPOINT} with {params:?}");

    let response = reqwest::Client::new()
        .get(ENDPOINT)
        .query(&params)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error requesting weather:
 {e:?}")))?
        .error_for_status()
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Failed to request weather:
 {e:?}")))?;

    debug!("Response: {response:?}");

    let bytes = response
        .bytes()
        .await
        .map_err(|e| ToolUseScenarioError(format!("Error reading response:
 {e:?}")))?;

    let result = String::from_utf8(bytes.to_vec())
        .map_err(|_| ToolUseScenarioError("Response was not utf8".into()))?;

    Ok(ToolResultBlock::builder()
        .tool_use_id(tool_use.tool_use_id())
        .content(ToolResultContentBlock::Text(result))
        .build()?)
}
```

Utilities to print the Message Content Blocks.

```
fn print_model_response(block: &ContentBlock) -> Result<(), ToolUseScenarioError> {
    if block.is_text() {
        let text = block.as_text().unwrap();
        println!("\x1b[0;90mThe model's response:\x1b[0m\n{text}");
        Ok(())
    } else {
        Err(ToolUseScenarioError(format!(
            "Content block is not text ({block:?})"
        )))
    }
}
```

Use statements, Error utility, and constants.

```
use std::{collections::HashMap, io::stdin};

use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_sdk_bedrockruntime::{
    error::{BuildError, SdkError},
    operation::converse::{ConverseError, ConverseOutput},
    types::{
        ContentBlock, ConversationRole::User, Message, StopReason,
 SystemContentBlock, Tool,
        ToolConfiguration, ToolInputSchema, ToolResultBlock, ToolResultContentBlock,
        ToolSpecification, ToolUseBlock,
    },
    Client,
};
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::http::Response;
use aws_smithy_types::Document;
use tracing::debug;

// Set the model ID, e.g., Claude 3 Haiku.
const MODEL_ID: &str = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0";
const CLAUDE_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

const SYSTEM_PROMPT: &str = "You are a weather assistant that provides current
 weather data for user-specified locations using only
the Weather_Tool, which expects latitude and longitude. Infer the coordinates from
 the location yourself.
```

```
If the user provides coordinates, infer the approximate location and refer to it in
 your response.
To use the tool, you strictly apply the provided tool specification.

- Explain your step-by-step process, and give brief updates before each step.
- Only use the Weather_Tool for data. Never guess or make up information.
- Repeat the tool use for subsequent requests if necessary.
- If the tool errors, apologize, explain weather is unavailable, and suggest other
 options.
- Report temperatures in °C (°F) and wind in km/h (mph). Keep weather reports
 concise. Sparingly use
  emojis where appropriate.
- Only respond to weather queries. Remind off-topic users of your purpose.
- Never claim to search online, access external data, or use tools besides
 Weather_Tool.
- Complete the entire process until you have all required data before sending the
 complete response.
";

// The maximum number of recursive calls allowed in the tool_use_demo function.
// This helps prevent infinite loops and potential performance issues.
const MAX_RECURSIONS: i8 = 5;

const TOOL_NAME: &str = "Weather_Tool";
const TOOL_DESCRIPTION: &str =
    "Get the current weather for a given location, based on its WGS84 coordinates.";
fn make_tool_schema() -> Document {
    Document::Object(HashMap::<String, Document>::from([
        ("type".into(), Document::String("object".into())),
        (
            "properties".into(),
            Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                (
                    "latitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String("Geographical WGS84 latitude of the
 location.".into()),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
                (
```

```
                    "longitude".into(),
                    Document::Object(HashMap::from([
                        ("type".into(), Document::String("string".into())),
                        (
                            "description".into(),
                            Document::String(
                                "Geographical WGS84 longitude of the
 location.".into(),
                            ),
                        ),
                    ])),
                ),
            ])),
        ),
        (
            "required".into(),
            Document::Array(vec![
                Document::String("latitude".into()),
                Document::String("longitude".into()),
            ]),
        ),
    ]))
}

#[derive(Debug)]
struct ToolUseScenarioError(String);
impl std::fmt::Display for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "Tool use error with '{}'. Reason: {}", MODEL_ID, self.0)
    }
}
impl From<&str> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: &str) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.into())
    }
}
impl From<BuildError> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: BuildError) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(value.to_string().clone())
    }
}
impl From<SdkError<ConverseError, Response>> for ToolUseScenarioError {
    fn from(value: SdkError<ConverseError, Response>) -> Self {
        ToolUseScenarioError(match value.as_service_error() {
```

```
            Some(value) => value.meta().message().unwrap_or("Unknown").into(),
            None => "Unknown".into(),
        })
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`InvokeAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `InvokeAgent`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_config::{BehaviorVersion, SdkConfig};
use aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::{
```

```
    self as bedrockagentruntime,
    types::{error::ResponseStreamError, ResponseStream},
};
#[allow(unused_imports)]
use mockall::automock;

const BEDROCK_AGENT_ID: &str = "AJBHXXILZN";
const BEDROCK_AGENT_ALIAS_ID: &str = "AVKP1ITZAA";
const BEDROCK_AGENT_REGION: &str = "us-east-1";

#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use EventReceiverImpl as EventReceiver;
#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockEventReceiverImpl as EventReceiver;

pub struct EventReceiverImpl {
    inner: aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::primitives::event_stream::EventReceiver<
        ResponseStream,
        ResponseStreamError,
    >,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl EventReceiverImpl {
    #[allow(dead_code)]
    pub fn new(
        inner: aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::primitives::event_stream::EventReceiver<
            ResponseStream,
            ResponseStreamError,
        >,
    ) -> Self {
        Self { inner }
    }

    pub async fn recv(
        &mut self,
    ) -> Result<
        Option<ResponseStream>,
        aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::error::SdkError<
            ResponseStreamError,
            aws_smithy_types::event_stream::RawMessage,
        >,
    > {
        self.inner.recv().await
```

```
    }
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Box<bedrockagentruntime::Error>> {
    let result = invoke_bedrock_agent("I need help.".to_string(),
 "123".to_string()).await?;
    println!("{}", result);
    Ok(())
}

async fn invoke_bedrock_agent(
    prompt: String,
    session_id: String,
) -> Result<String, bedrockagentruntime::Error> {
    let sdk_config: SdkConfig = aws_config::defaults(BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .region(BEDROCK_AGENT_REGION)
        .load()
        .await;
    let bedrock_client = bedrockagentruntime::Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let command_builder = bedrock_client
        .invoke_agent()
        .agent_id(BEDROCK_AGENT_ID)
        .agent_alias_id(BEDROCK_AGENT_ALIAS_ID)
        .session_id(session_id)
        .input_text(prompt);

    let response = command_builder.send().await?;

    let response_stream = response.completion;

    let event_receiver = EventReceiver::new(response_stream);

    process_agent_response_stream(event_receiver).await
}

async fn process_agent_response_stream(
    mut event_receiver: EventReceiver,
) -> Result<String, bedrockagentruntime::Error> {
    let mut full_agent_text_response = String::new();

    while let Some(event_result) = event_receiver.recv().await? {
        match event_result {
```

```
            ResponseStream::Chunk(chunk) => {
                if let Some(bytes) = chunk.bytes {
                    match String::from_utf8(bytes.into_inner()) {
                        Ok(text_chunk) => {
                            full_agent_text_response.push_str(&text_chunk);
                        }
                        Err(e) => {
                            eprintln!("UTF-8 decoding error for chunk: {}", e);
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
            _ => {
                panic!("received an unhandled event type from Bedrock stream",);
            }
        }
    }
    Ok(full_agent_text_response)
}

#[cfg(test)]
mod test {

    use super::*;

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_process_agent_response_stream() {
        let mut mock = MockEventReceiverImpl::default();
        mock.expect_recv().times(1).returning(|| {
            Ok(Some(
                aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::ResponseStream::Chunk(
                    aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::PayloadPart::builder()
                        .set_bytes(Some(aws_smithy_types::Blob::new(vec![
                            116, 101, 115, 116, 32, 99, 111, 109, 112, 108, 101,
 116, 105, 111, 110,
                        ])))
                        .build(),
                ),
            ))
        });

        // end the stream
        mock.expect_recv().times(1).returning(|| Ok(None));
```

```
        let response = process_agent_response_stream(mock).await.unwrap();

        assert_eq!("test completion", response);
    }

    #[tokio::test]
    #[should_panic(expected = "received an unhandled event type from Bedrock
 stream")]
    async fn test_process_agent_response_stream_error() {
        let mut mock = MockEventReceiverImpl::default();
        mock.expect_recv().times(1).returning(|| {
            Ok(Some(
                aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::ResponseStream::Trace(

 aws_sdk_bedrockagentruntime::types::TracePart::builder().build(),
                ),
            ))
        });

        let _ = process_agent_response_stream(mock).await.unwrap();
    }
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListUserPools`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUserPools`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_pools(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let response = client.list_user_pools().max_results(10).send().await?;
    let pools = response.user_pools();
    println!("User pools:");
    for pool in pools {
        println!("  ID:              {}", pool.id().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("  Name:            {}", pool.name().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("  Lambda Config:   {:?}", pool.lambda_config().unwrap());
        println!(
            "  Last modified:   {}",
            pool.last_modified_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()?
        );
        println!(
            "  Creation date:   {:?}",
            pool.creation_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()
        );
        println!();
    }
    println!("Next token: {}", response.next_token().unwrap_or_default());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListUserPools in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Cognito Sync examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Cognito Sync.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListIdentityPoolUsage`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentityPoolUsage`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_pools(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let response = client
        .list_identity_pool_usage()
        .max_results(10)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let pools = response.identity_pool_usages();
    println!("Identity pools:");

    for pool in pools {
```

```
        println!(
            "  Identity pool ID:    {}",
            pool.identity_pool_id().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Data storage:        {}",
            pool.data_storage().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Sync sessions count: {}",
            pool.sync_sessions_count().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Last modified:       {}",
            pool.last_modified_date().unwrap().to_chrono_utc()?
        );
        println!();
    }

    println!("Next token: {}", response.next_token().unwrap_or_default());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListIdentityPoolUsage in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Firehose examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Firehose.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`PutRecordBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecordBatch`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn put_record_batch(
    client: &Client,
    stream: &str,
    data: Vec<Record>,
) -> Result<PutRecordBatchOutput, SdkError<PutRecordBatchError>> {
    client
        .put_record_batch()
        .delivery_stream_name(stream)
        .set_records(Some(data))
        .send()
        .await
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecordBatch in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon DocumentDB examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon DocumentDB.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::documentdb::{DocumentDbEvent, DocumentDbInnerEvent},
   };


// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<DocumentDbEvent>) ->Result<(), Error> {

    tracing::info!("Event Source ARN: {:?}", event.payload.event_source_arn);
    tracing::info!("Event Source: {:?}", event.payload.event_source);

    let records = &event.payload.events;

    if records.is_empty() {
```

```
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_document_db_event(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Document db records processed");

    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_document_db_event(record: &DocumentDbInnerEvent)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("Change Event: {:?}", record.event);

    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with DynamoDB.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Actions

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_table(
    client: &Client,
    table: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<CreateTableOutput, Error> {
    let a_name: String = key.into();
```

```
    let table_name: String = table.into();

    let ad = AttributeDefinition::builder()
        .attribute_name(&a_name)
        .attribute_type(ScalarAttributeType::S)
        .build()
        .map_err(Error::BuildError)?;

    let ks = KeySchemaElement::builder()
        .attribute_name(&a_name)
        .key_type(KeyType::Hash)
        .build()
        .map_err(Error::BuildError)?;

    let create_table_response = client
        .create_table()
        .table_name(table_name)
        .key_schema(ks)
        .attribute_definitions(ad)
        .billing_mode(BillingMode::PayPerRequest)
        .send()
        .await;

    match create_table_response {
        Ok(out) => {
            println!("Added table {} with key {}", table, key);
            Ok(out)
        }
        Err(e) => {
            eprintln!("Got an error creating table:");
            eprintln!("{}", e);
            Err(Error::unhandled(e))
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_item(
    client: &Client,
    table: &str,
    key: &str,
    value: &str,
) -> Result<DeleteItemOutput, Error> {
    match client
        .delete_item()
        .table_name(table)
        .key(key, AttributeValue::S(value.into()))
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(out) => {
            println!("Deleted item from table");
            Ok(out)
        }
        Err(e) => Err(Error::unhandled(e)),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_table(client: &Client, table: &str) -> Result<DeleteTableOutput,
 Error> {
    let resp = client.delete_table().table_name(table).send().await;

    match resp {
        Ok(out) => {
            println!("Deleted table");
            Ok(out)
        }
        Err(e) => Err(Error::Unhandled(e.into())),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_tables(client: &Client) -> Result<Vec<String>, Error> {
    let paginator = client.list_tables().into_paginator().items().send();
    let table_names = paginator.collect::<Result<Vec<_>, _>>().await?;
```

```
    println!("Tables:");

    for name in &table_names {
        println!("  {}", name);
    }

    println!("Found {} tables", table_names.len());
    Ok(table_names)
}
```

Determine whether table exists.

```
pub async fn table_exists(client: &Client, table: &str) -> Result<bool, Error> {
    debug!("Checking for table: {table}");
    let table_list = client.list_tables().send().await;

    match table_list {
        Ok(list) => Ok(list.table_names().contains(&table.into())),
        Err(e) => Err(e.into()),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn add_item(client: &Client, item: Item, table: &String) ->
 Result<ItemOut, Error> {
```

```
    let user_av = AttributeValue::S(item.username);
    let type_av = AttributeValue::S(item.p_type);
    let age_av = AttributeValue::S(item.age);
    let first_av = AttributeValue::S(item.first);
    let last_av = AttributeValue::S(item.last);

    let request = client
        .put_item()
        .table_name(table)
        .item("username", user_av)
        .item("account_type", type_av)
        .item("age", age_av)
        .item("first_name", first_av)
        .item("last_name", last_av);

    println!("Executing request [{request:?}] to add item...");

    let resp = request.send().await?;

    let attributes = resp.attributes().unwrap();

    let username = attributes.get("username").cloned();
    let first_name = attributes.get("first_name").cloned();
    let last_name = attributes.get("last_name").cloned();
    let age = attributes.get("age").cloned();
    let p_type = attributes.get("p_type").cloned();

    println!(
        "Added user {:?}, {:?} {:?}, age {:?} as {:?} user",
        username, first_name, last_name, age, p_type
    );

    Ok(ItemOut {
        p_type,
        age,
        username,
        first_name,
        last_name,
    })
}
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Find the movies made in the specified year.

```
pub async fn movies_in_year(
    client: &Client,
    table_name: &str,
    year: u16,
) -> Result<Vec<Movie>, MovieError> {
    let results = client
        .query()
        .table_name(table_name)
        .key_condition_expression("#yr = :yyyy")
        .expression_attribute_names("#yr", "year")
        .expression_attribute_values(":yyyy", AttributeValue::N(year.to_string()))
        .send()
        .await?;

    if let Some(items) = results.items {
        let movies = items.iter().map(|v| v.into()).collect();
        Ok(movies)
    } else {
        Ok(vec![])
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`Scan`

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_items(client: &Client, table: &str, page_size: Option<i32>) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    let page_size = page_size.unwrap_or(10);
    let items: Result<Vec<_>, _> = client
        .scan()
        .table_name(table)
        .limit(page_size)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .collect()
        .await;

    println!("Items in table (up to {page_size}):");
    for item in items? {
        println!("   {:?}", item);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Connect to a local instance

The following code example shows how to override an endpoint URL to connect to a local development deployment of DynamoDB and an AWS SDK.

For more information, see DynamoDB Local.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Lists your tables from a local DynamoDB instance by setting the SDK Config's
/// endpoint_url and test_credentials.
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();

    let config = aws_config::defaults(aws_config::BehaviorVersion::latest())
        .test_credentials()
        // DynamoDB run locally uses port 8000 by default.
        .endpoint_url("http://localhost:8000")
        .load()
        .await;
    let dynamodb_local_config =
 aws_sdk_dynamodb::config::Builder::from(&config).build();

    let client = aws_sdk_dynamodb::Client::from_conf(dynamodb_local_config);

    let list_resp = client.list_tables().send().await;
    match list_resp {
        Ok(resp) => {
            println!("Found {} tables", resp.table_names().len());
            for name in resp.table_names() {
                println!("  {}", name);
            }
        }
        Err(err) => eprintln!("Failed to list local dynamodb tables: {err:?}"),
    }
}
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Query a table using PartiQL

The following code example shows how to:

- Get an item by running a SELECT statement.
- Add an item by running an INSERT statement.
- Update an item by running an UPDATE statement.
- Delete an item by running a DELETE statement.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_table(
    client: &Client,
    table: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), SdkError<CreateTableError>> {
    let ad = AttributeDefinition::builder()
        .attribute_name(key)
        .attribute_type(ScalarAttributeType::S)
        .build()
        .expect("creating AttributeDefinition");

    let ks = KeySchemaElement::builder()
        .attribute_name(key)
        .key_type(KeyType::Hash)
        .build()
        .expect("creating KeySchemaElement");

    match client
        .create_table()
        .table_name(table)
        .key_schema(ks)
        .attribute_definitions(ad)
        .billing_mode(BillingMode::PayPerRequest)
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(e) => Err(e),
    }
}

async fn add_item(client: &Client, item: Item) -> Result<(),
 SdkError<ExecuteStatementError>> {
    match client
```

```
        .execute_statement()
        .statement(format!(
            r#"INSERT INTO "{}" VALUE {{
                "{}": ?,
                "acount_type": ?,
                "age": ?,
                "first_name": ?,
                "last_name": ?
        }} "#,
            item.table, item.key
        ))
        .set_parameters(Some(vec![
            AttributeValue::S(item.utype),
            AttributeValue::S(item.age),
            AttributeValue::S(item.first_name),
            AttributeValue::S(item.last_name),
        ]))
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(e) => Err(e),
    }
}

async fn query_item(client: &Client, item: Item) -> bool {
    match client
        .execute_statement()
        .statement(format!(
            r#"SELECT * FROM "{}" WHERE "{}" = ?"#,
            item.table, item.key
        ))
        .set_parameters(Some(vec![AttributeValue::S(item.value)]))
        .send()
        .await
    {
        Ok(resp) => {
            if !resp.items().is_empty() {
                println!("Found a matching entry in the table:");
                println!("{:?}", resp.items.unwrap_or_default().pop());
                true
            } else {
                println!("Did not find a match.");
                false
```

```
            }
        }
        Err(e) => {
            println!("Got an error querying table:");
            println!("{}", e);
            process::exit(1);
        }
    }
}

async fn remove_item(client: &Client, table: &str, key: &str, value: String) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .execute_statement()
        .statement(format!(r#"DELETE FROM "{table}" WHERE "{key}" = ?"#))
        .set_parameters(Some(vec![AttributeValue::S(value)]))
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Deleted item.");

    Ok(())
}

async fn remove_table(client: &Client, table: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client.delete_table().table_name(table).send().await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Save EXIF and other image information

The following code example shows how to:

- Get EXIF information from a a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file.
- Upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (labels) in the file.
- Add the EXIF and label information to an Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

SDK for Rust

Get EXIF information from a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file, upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (*labels* in Amazon Rekognition) in the file, and add the EXIF and label information to a Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord},
   };
```

```
// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->Result<(), Error> {

    let records = &event.payload.records;
    tracing::info!("event payload: {:?}",records);
    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_dynamo_dbrecord(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Dynamo db records processed");

    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_dynamo_dbrecord(record: &EventRecord)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);
    tracing::info!("EventName: {}", record.event_name);
    tracing::info!("DynamoDB Record: {:?}", record.change );
    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();
```

```
    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord, StreamRecord},
    streams::{DynamoDbBatchItemFailure, DynamoDbEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

/// Process the stream record
fn process_record(record: &EventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let stream_record: &StreamRecord = &record.change;

    // process your stream record here...
    tracing::info!("Data: {:?}", stream_record);

    Ok(())
}

/// Main Lambda handler here...
```

```
async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->
 Result<DynamoDbEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = DynamoDbEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    let records = &event.payload.records;

    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in records {
        tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);

        // Couldn't find a sequence number
        if record.change.sequence_number.is_none() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: Some("".to_string()),
            });
            return Ok(response);
        }

        // Process your record here...
        if process_record(record).is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.change.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!("Successfully processed {} record(s)", records.len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Rust

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Rust SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

Amazon EBS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon EBS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CompleteSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CompleteSnapshot`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn finish(client: &Client, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .complete_snapshot()
        .changed_blocks_count(2)
        .snapshot_id(id)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Snapshot ID {}", id);
    println!("The state is 'completed' when all of the modified blocks have been
 transferred to Amazon S3.");
    println!("Use the get-snapshot-state code example to get the state of the
 snapshot.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CompleteSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

PutSnapshotBlock

The following code example shows how to use PutSnapshotBlock.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn add_block(
    client: &Client,
    id: &str,
    idx: usize,
    block: Vec<u8>,
    checksum: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .put_snapshot_block()
        .snapshot_id(id)
        .block_index(idx as i32)
        .block_data(ByteStream::from(block))
        .checksum(checksum)
        .checksum_algorithm(ChecksumAlgorithm::ChecksumAlgorithmSha256)
        .data_length(EBS_BLOCK_SIZE as i32)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutSnapshotBlock in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

StartSnapshot

The following code example shows how to use StartSnapshot.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn start(client: &Client, description: &str) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let snapshot = client
        .start_snapshot()
        .description(description)
        .encrypted(false)
        .volume_size(1)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(snapshot.snapshot_id.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see StartSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_security_groups(client: &aws_sdk_ec2::Client, group_ids: Vec<String>)
 {
    let response = client
        .describe_security_groups()
        .set_group_ids(Some(group_ids))
        .send()
        .await;

    match response {
        Ok(output) => {
            for group in output.security_groups() {
                println!(
                    "Found Security Group {} ({}), vpc id {} and description {}",
                    group.group_name().unwrap_or("unknown"),
                    group.group_id().unwrap_or("id-unknown"),
                    group.vpc_id().unwrap_or("vpcid-unknown"),
                    group.description().unwrap_or("(none)")
                );
            }
        }
        Err(err) => {
            let err = err.into_service_error();
            let meta = err.meta();
            let message = meta.message().unwrap_or("unknown");
            let code = meta.code().unwrap_or("unknown");
            eprintln!("Error listing EC2 Security Groups: ({code}) {message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The EC2InstanceScenario implementation contains logic to run the example as a whole.

```
//! Scenario that uses the AWS SDK for Rust (the SDK) with Amazon Elastic Compute
 Cloud
//! (Amazon EC2) to do the following:
//!
//! * Create a key pair that is used to secure SSH communication between your
 computer and
//!   an EC2 instance.
//! * Create a security group that acts as a virtual firewall for your EC2 instances
 to
//!   control incoming and outgoing traffic.
//! * Find an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and a compatible instance type.
```

```
//! * Create an instance that is created from the instance type and AMI you select,
 and
//!   is configured to use the security group and key pair created in this example.
//! * Stop and restart the instance.
//! * Create an Elastic IP address and associate it as a consistent IP address for
 your instance.
//! * Connect to your instance with SSH, using both its public IP address and your
 Elastic IP
//!   address.
//! * Clean up all of the resources created by this example.

use std::net::Ipv4Addr;

use crate::{
    ec2::{EC2Error, EC2},
    getting_started::{key_pair::KeyPairManager, util::Util},
    ssm::SSM,
};
use aws_sdk_ssm::types::Parameter;

use super::{
    elastic_ip::ElasticIpManager, instance::InstanceManager,
 security_group::SecurityGroupManager,
    util::ScenarioImage,
};

pub struct Ec2InstanceScenario {
    ec2: EC2,
    ssm: SSM,
    util: Util,
    key_pair_manager: KeyPairManager,
    security_group_manager: SecurityGroupManager,
    instance_manager: InstanceManager,
    elastic_ip_manager: ElasticIpManager,
}

impl Ec2InstanceScenario {
    pub fn new(ec2: EC2, ssm: SSM, util: Util) -> Self {
        Ec2InstanceScenario {
            ec2,
            ssm,
            util,
            key_pair_manager: Default::default(),
            security_group_manager: Default::default(),
```

```
            instance_manager: Default::default(),
            elastic_ip_manager: Default::default(),
        }
    }

    pub async fn run(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.create_and_list_key_pairs().await?;
        self.create_security_group().await?;
        self.create_instance().await?;
        self.stop_and_start_instance().await?;
        self.associate_elastic_ip().await?;
        self.stop_and_start_instance().await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Creates an RSA key pair and saves its private key data as a .pem file in
secure
    ///    temporary storage. The private key data is deleted after the example
completes.
    /// 2. Optionally, lists the first five key pairs for the current account.
    pub async fn create_and_list_key_pairs(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        println!( "Let's create an RSA key pair that you can be use to securely
connect to your EC2 instance.");

        let key_name = self.util.prompt_key_name()?;

        self.key_pair_manager
            .create(&self.ec2, &self.util, key_name)
            .await?;

        println!(
            "Created a key pair {} and saved the private key to {:?}.",
            self.key_pair_manager
                .key_pair()
                .key_name()
                .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("No key name after creating key"))?,
            self.key_pair_manager
                .key_file_path()
                .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("No key file after creating key"))?
        );

        if self.util.should_list_key_pairs()? {
            for pair in self.key_pair_manager.list(&self.ec2).await? {
                println!(
```

```
                    "Found {:?} key {} with fingerprint:\t{:?}",
                    pair.key_type(),
                    pair.key_name().unwrap_or("Unknown"),
                    pair.key_fingerprint()
                );
            }
        }

        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Creates a security group for the default VPC.
    /// 2. Adds an inbound rule to allow SSH. The SSH rule allows only
    ///    inbound traffic from the current computer’s public IPv4 address.
    /// 3. Displays information about the security group.
    ///
    /// This function uses <http://checkip.amazonaws.com> to get the current public
IP
    /// address of the computer that is running the example. This method works in
most
    /// cases. However, depending on how your computer connects to the internet, you
    /// might have to manually add your public IP address to the security group by
using
    /// the AWS Management Console.
    pub async fn create_security_group(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        println!("Let's create a security group to manage access to your
instance.");
        let group_name = self.util.prompt_security_group_name()?;

        self.security_group_manager
            .create(
                &self.ec2,
                &group_name,
                "Security group for example: get started with instances.",
            )
            .await?;

        println!(
            "Created security group {} in your default VPC {}.",
            self.security_group_manager.group_name(),
            self.security_group_manager
                .vpc_id()
                .unwrap_or("(unknown vpc)")
        );
```

```
        let check_ip = self.util.do_get("https://checkip.amazonaws.com").await?;
        let current_ip_address: Ipv4Addr = check_ip.trim().parse().map_err(|e| {
            EC2Error::new(format!(
                "Failed to convert response {} to IP Address: {e:?}",
                check_ip
            ))
        })?;

        println!("Your public IP address seems to be {current_ip_address}");
        if self.util.should_add_to_security_group() {
            match self
                .security_group_manager
                .authorize_ingress(&self.ec2, current_ip_address)
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => println!("Security group rules updated"),
                Err(err) => eprintln!("Couldn't update security group rules:
{err:?}"),
            }
        }
        println!("{}", self.security_group_manager);

        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Gets a list of Amazon Linux 2 AMIs from AWS Systems Manager. Specifying
the
    ///    '/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest' path returns only the latest AMIs.
    /// 2. Gets and displays information about the available AMIs and lets you
select one.
    /// 3. Gets a list of instance types that are compatible with the selected AMI
and
    ///    lets you select one.
    /// 4. Creates an instance with the previously created key pair and security
group,
    ///    and the selected AMI and instance type.
    /// 5. Waits for the instance to be running and then displays its information.
    pub async fn create_instance(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let ami = self.find_image().await?;

        let instance_types = self
            .ec2
            .list_instance_types(&ami.0)
```

```
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find instance types"))?;
        println!(
            "There are several instance types that support the {} architecture of
the image.",
            ami.0
                .architecture
                .as_ref()
                .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!("Missing architecture in {:?}",
ami.0)))?
        );
        let instance_type = self.util.select_instance_type(instance_types)?;

        println!("Creating your instance and waiting for it to start...");
        self.instance_manager
            .create(
                &self.ec2,
                ami.0
                    .image_id()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Could not find image ID"))?,
                instance_type,
                self.key_pair_manager.key_pair(),
                self.security_group_manager
                    .security_group()
                    .map(|sg| vec![sg])
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Could not find security group"))?,
            )
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Scenario failed to create instance"))?;

        while let Err(err) = self
            .ec2
            .wait_for_instance_ready(self.instance_manager.instance_id(), None)
            .await
        {
            println!("{err}");
            if !self.util.should_continue_waiting() {
                return Err(err);
            }
        }

        println!("Your instance is ready:\n{}", self.instance_manager);

        self.display_ssh_info();
```

```
        Ok(())
    }

    async fn find_image(&mut self) -> Result<ScenarioImage, EC2Error> {
        let params: Vec<Parameter> = self
            .ssm
            .list_path("/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest")
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find parameters for available
images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .filter(|param| param.name().is_some_and(|name| name.contains("amzn2")))
            .collect();
        let amzn2_images: Vec<ScenarioImage> = self
            .ec2
            .list_images(params)
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .map(ScenarioImage::from)
            .collect();
        println!("We will now create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI");
        let ami = self.util.select_scenario_image(amzn2_images)?;
        Ok(ami)
    }

    // 1. Stops the instance and waits for it to stop.
    // 2. Starts the instance and waits for it to start.
    // 3. Displays information about the instance.
    // 4. Displays an SSH connection string. When an Elastic IP address is
associated
    //    with the instance, the IP address stays consistent when the instance stops
    //    and starts.
    pub async fn stop_and_start_instance(&self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        println!("Let's stop and start your instance to see what changes.");
        println!("Stopping your instance and waiting until it's stopped...");
        self.instance_manager.stop(&self.ec2).await?;
        println!("Your instance is stopped. Restarting...");
        self.instance_manager.start(&self.ec2).await?;
        println!("Your instance is running.");
        println!("{}", self.instance_manager);
        if self.elastic_ip_manager.public_ip() == "0.0.0.0" {
```

```
            println!("Every time your instance is restarted, its public IP address
changes.");
        } else {
            println!(
                "Because you have associated an Elastic IP with your instance, you
can connect by using a consistent IP address after the instance restarts."
            );
        }
        self.display_ssh_info();
        Ok(())
    }

    /// 1. Allocates an Elastic IP address and associates it with the instance.
    /// 2. Displays an SSH connection string that uses the Elastic IP address.
    async fn associate_elastic_ip(&mut self) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.elastic_ip_manager.allocate(&self.ec2).await?;
        println!(
            "Allocated static Elastic IP address: {}",
            self.elastic_ip_manager.public_ip()
        );

        self.elastic_ip_manager
            .associate(&self.ec2, self.instance_manager.instance_id())
            .await?;
        println!("Associated your Elastic IP with your instance.");
        println!("You can now use SSH to connect to your instance by using the
Elastic IP.");
        self.display_ssh_info();
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Displays an SSH connection string that can be used to connect to a running
    /// instance.
    fn display_ssh_info(&self) {
        let ip_addr = if self.elastic_ip_manager.has_allocation() {
            self.elastic_ip_manager.public_ip()
        } else {
            self.instance_manager.instance_ip()
        };
        let key_file_path = self.key_pair_manager.key_file_path().unwrap();
        println!("To connect, open another command prompt and run the following
command:");
        println!("\nssh -i {} ec2-user@{ip_addr}\n", key_file_path.display());
        let _ = self.util.enter_to_continue();
```

```
    }

    /// 1. Disassociate and delete the previously created Elastic IP.
    /// 2. Terminate the previously created instance.
    /// 3. Delete the previously created security group.
    /// 4. Delete the previously created key pair.
    pub async fn clean_up(self) {
        println!("Let's clean everything up. This example created these
 resources:");
        println!(
            "\tKey pair: {}",
            self.key_pair_manager
                .key_pair()
                .key_name()
                .unwrap_or("(unknown key pair)")
        );
        println!(
            "\tSecurity group: {}",
            self.security_group_manager.group_name()
        );
        println!(
            "\tInstance: {}",
            self.instance_manager.instance_display_name()
        );
        if self.util.should_clean_resources() {
            if let Err(err) = self.elastic_ip_manager.remove(&self.ec2).await {
                eprintln!("{err}")
            }
            if let Err(err) = self.instance_manager.delete(&self.ec2).await {
                eprintln!("{err}")
            }
            if let Err(err) = self.security_group_manager.delete(&self.ec2).await {
                eprintln!("{err}");
            }
            if let Err(err) = self.key_pair_manager.delete(&self.ec2,
 &self.util).await {
                eprintln!("{err}");
            }
        } else {
            println!("Ok, not cleaning up any resources!");
        }
    }
}
```

```
pub async fn run(mut scenario: Ec2InstanceScenario) {
    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");
    println!(
        "Welcome to the Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) get started with
 instances demo."
    );
    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");

    if let Err(err) = scenario.run().await {
        eprintln!("There was an error running the scenario: {err}")
    }

    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");

    scenario.clean_up().await;

    println!("Thanks for running!");
    println!
("--------------------------------------------------------------------------------");
}
```

The EC2Impl struct serves as a an automock point for testing, and its functions wrap the EC2 SDK calls.

```
use std::{net::Ipv4Addr, time::Duration};

use aws_sdk_ec2::{
    client::Waiters,
    error::ProvideErrorMetadata,
    operation::{
        allocate_address::AllocateAddressOutput,
 associate_address::AssociateAddressOutput,
    },
    types::{
        DomainType, Filter, Image, Instance, InstanceType, IpPermission, IpRange,
 KeyPairInfo,
        SecurityGroup, Tag,
    },
```

```
    Client as EC2Client,
};
use aws_sdk_ssm::types::Parameter;
use aws_smithy_runtime_api::client::waiters::error::WaiterError;

#[cfg(test)]
use mockall::automock;

#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use EC2Impl as EC2;

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockEC2Impl as EC2;

#[derive(Clone)]
pub struct EC2Impl {
    pub client: EC2Client,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl EC2Impl {
    pub fn new(client: EC2Client) -> Self {
        EC2Impl { client }
    }

    pub async fn create_key_pair(&self, name: String) -> Result<(KeyPairInfo,
 String), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating key pair {name}");
        let output = self.client.create_key_pair().key_name(name).send().await?;
        let info = KeyPairInfo::builder()
            .set_key_name(output.key_name)
            .set_key_fingerprint(output.key_fingerprint)
            .set_key_pair_id(output.key_pair_id)
            .build();
        let material = output
            .key_material
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Create Key Pair has no key material"))?;
        Ok((info, material))
    }

    pub async fn list_key_pair(&self) -> Result<Vec<KeyPairInfo>, EC2Error> {
        let output = self.client.describe_key_pairs().send().await?;
        Ok(output.key_pairs.unwrap_or_default())
    }
```

```
    pub async fn delete_key_pair(&self, key_name: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let key_name: String = key_name.into();
        tracing::info!("Deleting key pair {key_name}");
        self.client
            .delete_key_pair()
            .key_name(key_name)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn create_security_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
    ) -> Result<SecurityGroup, EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating security group {name}");
        let create_output = self
            .client
            .create_security_group()
            .group_name(name)
            .description(description)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(EC2Error::from)?;

        let group_id = create_output
            .group_id
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group id after
creation"))?;

        let group = self
            .describe_security_group(&group_id)
            .await?
            .ok_or_else(|| {
                EC2Error::new(format!("Could not find security group with id
{group_id}"))
            })?;

        tracing::info!("Created security group {name} as {group_id}");

        Ok(group)
    }
```

```
    /// Find a single security group, by ID. Returns Err if multiple groups are
found.
    pub async fn describe_security_group(
        &self,
        group_id: &str,
    ) -> Result<Option<SecurityGroup>, EC2Error> {
        let group_id: String = group_id.into();
        let describe_output = self
            .client
            .describe_security_groups()
            .group_ids(&group_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        let mut groups = describe_output.security_groups.unwrap_or_default();

        match groups.len() {
            0 => Ok(None),
            1 => Ok(Some(groups.remove(0))),
            _ => Err(EC2Error::new(format!(
                "Expected single group for {group_id}"
            ))),
        }
    }

    /// Add an ingress rule to a security group explicitly allowing IPv4 address
    /// as {ip}/32 over TCP port 22.
    pub async fn authorize_security_group_ssh_ingress(
        &self,
        group_id: &str,
        ingress_ips: Vec<Ipv4Addr>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Authorizing ingress for security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .authorize_security_group_ingress()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .set_ip_permissions(Some(
                ingress_ips
                    .into_iter()
                    .map(|ip| {
                        IpPermission::builder()
                            .ip_protocol("tcp")
                            .from_port(22)
```

```
                            .to_port(22)
                            .ip_ranges(IpRange::builder().cidr_ip(format!
("{ip}/32")).build())
                            .build()
                    })
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn delete_security_group(&self, group_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .delete_security_group()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn list_images(&self, ids: Vec<Parameter>) -> Result<Vec<Image>,
 EC2Error> {
        let image_ids = ids.into_iter().filter_map(|p| p.value).collect();
        let output = self
            .client
            .describe_images()
            .set_image_ids(Some(image_ids))
            .send()
            .await?;

        let images = output.images.unwrap_or_default();
        if images.is_empty() {
            Err(EC2Error::new("No images for selected AMIs"))
        } else {
            Ok(images)
        }
    }

    /// List instance types that match an image's architecture and are free tier
 eligible.
```

```
    pub async fn list_instance_types(&self, image: &Image) ->
Result<Vec<InstanceType>, EC2Error> {
        let architecture = format!(
            "{}",
            image.architecture().ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!(
                "Image {:?} does not have a listed architecture",
                image.image_id()
            )))?
        );
        let free_tier_eligible_filter = Filter::builder()
            .name("free-tier-eligible")
            .values("false")
            .build();
        let supported_architecture_filter = Filter::builder()
            .name("processor-info.supported-architecture")
            .values(architecture)
            .build();
        let response = self
            .client
            .describe_instance_types()
            .filters(free_tier_eligible_filter)
            .filters(supported_architecture_filter)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(response
            .instance_types
            .unwrap_or_default()
            .into_iter()
            .filter_map(|iti| iti.instance_type)
            .collect())
    }

    pub async fn create_instance<'a>(
        &self,
        image_id: &'a str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &'a KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&'a SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<String, EC2Error> {
        let run_instances = self
            .client
            .run_instances()
            .image_id(image_id)
```

```
            .instance_type(instance_type)
            .key_name(
                key_pair
                    .key_name()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing key name when launching
instance"))?,
            )
            .set_security_group_ids(Some(
                security_groups
                    .iter()
                    .filter_map(|sg| sg.group_id.clone())
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .min_count(1)
            .max_count(1)
            .send()
            .await?;

        if run_instances.instances().is_empty() {
            return Err(EC2Error::new("Failed to create instance"));
        }

        let instance_id = run_instances.instances()[0].instance_id().unwrap();
        let response = self
            .client
            .create_tags()
            .resources(instance_id)
            .tags(
                Tag::builder()
                    .key("Name")
                    .value("From SDK Examples")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match response {
            Ok(_) => tracing::info!("Created {instance_id} and applied tags."),
            Err(err) => {
                tracing::info!("Error applying tags to {instance_id}: {err:?}");
                return Err(err.into());
            }
        }
```

```
        tracing::info!("Instance is created.");

        Ok(instance_id.to_string())
    }

    /// Wait for an instance to be ready and status ok (default wait 60 seconds)
    pub async fn wait_for_instance_ready(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_status_ok()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to start.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs()
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn describe_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<Instance,
EC2Error> {
        let response = self
            .client
            .describe_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        let instance = response
            .reservations()
            .first()
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!("No instance reservations for
{instance_id}")))?
            .instances()
            .first()
            .ok_or_else(|| {
```

```
                EC2Error::new(format!("No instances in reservation for
{instance_id}"))
            })?;

        Ok(instance.clone())
    }

    pub async fn start_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Starting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .start_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        tracing::info!("Started instance.");

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn stop_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Stopping instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .stop_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        self.wait_for_instance_stopped(instance_id, None).await?;

        tracing::info!("Stopped instance.");

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn reboot_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Rebooting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .reboot_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
```

```
            .await?;

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_instance_stopped(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_stopped()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to stop.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn delete_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting instance with id {instance_id}");
        self.stop_instance(instance_id).await?;
        self.client
            .terminate_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        self.wait_for_instance_terminated(instance_id).await?;
        tracing::info!("Terminated instance with id {instance_id}");
        Ok(())
    }

    async fn wait_for_instance_terminated(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_terminated()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(Duration::from_secs(60))
```

```
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to terminate.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn allocate_ip_address(&self) -> Result<AllocateAddressOutput,
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .allocate_address()
            .domain(DomainType::Vpc)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(EC2Error::from)
    }

    pub async fn deallocate_ip_address(&self, allocation_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .release_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn associate_ip_address(
        &self,
        allocation_id: &str,
        instance_id: &str,
    ) -> Result<AssociateAddressOutput, EC2Error> {
        let response = self
            .client
            .associate_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .instance_id(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(response)
```

```
    }

    pub async fn disassociate_ip_address(&self, association_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .disassociate_address()
            .association_id(association_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
}

#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct EC2Error(String);
impl EC2Error {
    pub fn new(value: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        EC2Error(value.into())
    }

    pub fn add_message(self, message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        EC2Error(format!("{}: {}", message.into(), self.0))
    }
}

impl<T: ProvideErrorMetadata> From<T> for EC2Error {
    fn from(value: T) -> Self {
        EC2Error(format!(
            "{}: {}",
            value
                .code()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("unknown code".into()),
            value
                .message()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("missing reason".into()),
        ))
    }
}

impl std::error::Error for EC2Error {}

impl std::fmt::Display for EC2Error {
```

```
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
```

The SSM struct serves as a an automock point for testing, and its functions wraps SSM SDK calls.

```
use aws_sdk_ssm::{types::Parameter, Client};
use aws_smithy_async::future::pagination_stream::TryFlatMap;

use crate::ec2::EC2Error;

#[cfg(test)]
use mockall::automock;

#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use SSMImpl as SSM;

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockSSMImpl as SSM;

pub struct SSMImpl {
    inner: Client,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl SSMImpl {
    pub fn new(inner: Client) -> Self {
        SSMImpl { inner }
    }

    pub async fn list_path(&self, path: &str) -> Result<Vec<Parameter>, EC2Error> {
        let maybe_params: Vec<Result<Parameter, _>> = TryFlatMap::new(
            self.inner
                .get_parameters_by_path()
                .path(path)
                .into_paginator()
                .send(),
        )
        .flat_map(|item| item.parameters.unwrap_or_default())
```

```
        .collect()
        .await;
        // Fail on the first error
        let params = maybe_params
            .into_iter()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<Parameter>, _>>()?;
        Ok(params)
    }
}
```

The scenario uses several "Manager"-style structs to handle access to resources that are created and deleted throughout the scenario.

```
use aws_sdk_ec2::operation::{
    allocate_address::AllocateAddressOutput,
 associate_address::AssociateAddressOutput,
};

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

/// ElasticIpManager tracks the lifecycle of a public IP address, including its
/// allocation from the global pool and association with a specific instance.
#[derive(Debug, Default)]
pub struct ElasticIpManager {
    elastic_ip: Option<AllocateAddressOutput>,
    association: Option<AssociateAddressOutput>,
}

impl ElasticIpManager {
    pub fn has_allocation(&self) -> bool {
        self.elastic_ip.is_some()
    }

    pub fn public_ip(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(allocation) = &self.elastic_ip {
            if let Some(addr) = allocation.public_ip() {
                return addr;
            }
        }
        "0.0.0.0"
    }
```

```
    pub async fn allocate(&mut self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let allocation = ec2.allocate_ip_address().await?;
        self.elastic_ip = Some(allocation);
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn associate(&mut self, ec2: &EC2, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
 EC2Error> {
        if let Some(allocation) = &self.elastic_ip {
            if let Some(allocation_id) = allocation.allocation_id() {
                let association = ec2.associate_ip_address(allocation_id,
 instance_id).await?;
                self.association = Some(association);
                return Ok(());
            }
        }
        Err(EC2Error::new("No ip address allocation to associate"))
    }

    pub async fn remove(mut self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(association) = &self.association {
            if let Some(association_id) = association.association_id() {
                ec2.disassociate_ip_address(association_id).await?;
            }
        }
        self.association = None;
        if let Some(allocation) = &self.elastic_ip {
            if let Some(allocation_id) = allocation.allocation_id() {
                ec2.deallocate_ip_address(allocation_id).await?;
            }
        }
        self.elastic_ip = None;
        Ok(())
    }
}


use std::fmt::Display;

use aws_sdk_ec2::types::{Instance, InstanceType, KeyPairInfo, SecurityGroup};

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};
```

```
/// InstanceManager wraps the lifecycle of an EC2 Instance.
#[derive(Debug, Default)]
pub struct InstanceManager {
    instance: Option<Instance>,
}

impl InstanceManager {
    pub fn instance_id(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            if let Some(id) = instance.instance_id() {
                return id;
            }
        }
        "Unknown"
    }

    pub fn instance_name(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            if let Some(tag) = instance.tags().iter().find(|e| e.key() ==
 Some("Name")) {
                if let Some(value) = tag.value() {
                    return value;
                }
            }
        }
        "Unknown"
    }

    pub fn instance_ip(&self) -> &str {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            if let Some(public_ip_address) = instance.public_ip_address() {
                return public_ip_address;
            }
        }
        "0.0.0.0"
    }

    pub fn instance_display_name(&self) -> String {
        format!("{} ({})", self.instance_name(), self.instance_id())
    }

    /// Create an EC2 instance with the given ID on a given type, using a
    /// generated KeyPair and applying a list of security groups.
    pub async fn create(
```

```
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        image_id: &str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let instance_id = ec2
            .create_instance(image_id, instance_type, key_pair, security_groups)
            .await?;
        let instance = ec2.describe_instance(&instance_id).await?;
        self.instance = Some(instance);
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Start the managed EC2 instance, if present.
    pub async fn start(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.start_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Stop the managed EC2 instance, if present.
    pub async fn stop(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.stop_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn reboot(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.reboot_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_stopped(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_ready(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    /// Terminate and delete the managed EC2 instance, if present.
    pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
```

```
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.delete_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}

impl Display for InstanceManager {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        if let Some(instance) = &self.instance {
            writeln!(f, "\tID: {}", instance.instance_id().unwrap_or("(Unknown)"))?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tImage ID: {}",
                instance.image_id().unwrap_or("(Unknown)")
            )?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tInstance type: {}",
                instance
                    .instance_type()
                    .map(|it| format!("{it}"))
                    .unwrap_or("(Unknown)".to_string())
            )?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tKey name: {}",
                instance.key_name().unwrap_or("(Unknown)")
            )?;
            writeln!(f, "\tVPC ID: {}", instance.vpc_id().unwrap_or("(Unknown)"))?;
            writeln!(
                f,
                "\tPublic IP: {}",
                instance.public_ip_address().unwrap_or("(Unknown)")
            )?;
            let instance_state = instance
                .state
                .as_ref()
                .map(|is| {
                    is.name()
                        .map(|isn| format!("{isn}"))
                        .unwrap_or("(Unknown)".to_string())
                })
                .unwrap_or("(Unknown)".to_string());
```

```
            writeln!(f, "\tState: {instance_state}")?;
        } else {
            writeln!(f, "\tNo loaded instance")?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
}


use std::{env, path::PathBuf};

use aws_sdk_ec2::types::KeyPairInfo;

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

use super::util::Util;

/// KeyPairManager tracks a KeyPairInfo and the path the private key has been
/// written to, if it's been created.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct KeyPairManager {
    key_pair: KeyPairInfo,
    key_file_path: Option<PathBuf>,
    key_file_dir: PathBuf,
}

impl KeyPairManager {
    pub fn new() -> Self {
        Self::default()
    }

    pub fn key_pair(&self) -> &KeyPairInfo {
        &self.key_pair
    }

    pub fn key_file_path(&self) -> Option<&PathBuf> {
        self.key_file_path.as_ref()
    }

    pub fn key_file_dir(&self) -> &PathBuf {
        &self.key_file_dir
    }

    /// Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2 instance.
```

```
   /// The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
   /// again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.
   ///
   /// :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
   pub async fn create(
       &mut self,
       ec2: &EC2,
       util: &Util,
       key_name: String,
   ) -> Result<KeyPairInfo, EC2Error> {
       let (key_pair, material) =
ec2.create_key_pair(key_name.clone()).await.map_err(|e| {
           self.key_pair =
KeyPairInfo::builder().key_name(key_name.clone()).build();
           e.add_message(format!("Couldn't create key {key_name}"))
       })?;

       let path = self.key_file_dir.join(format!("{key_name}.pem"));

       // Save the key_pair information immediately, so it can get cleaned up if
write_secure fails.
       self.key_file_path = Some(path.clone());
       self.key_pair = key_pair.clone();

       util.write_secure(&key_name, &path, material)?;

       Ok(key_pair)
   }

   pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2, util: &Util) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
       if let Some(key_name) = self.key_pair.key_name() {
           ec2.delete_key_pair(key_name).await?;
           if let Some(key_path) = self.key_file_path() {
               if let Err(err) = util.remove(key_path) {
                   eprintln!("Failed to remove {key_path:?} ({err:?})");
               }
           }
       }
       Ok(())
   }

   pub async fn list(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<Vec<KeyPairInfo>, EC2Error> {
       ec2.list_key_pair().await
```

```
    }
}

impl Default for KeyPairManager {
    fn default() -> Self {
        KeyPairManager {
            key_pair: KeyPairInfo::builder().build(),
            key_file_path: Default::default(),
            key_file_dir: env::temp_dir(),
        }
    }
}


use std::net::Ipv4Addr;

use aws_sdk_ec2::types::SecurityGroup;

use crate::ec2::{EC2Error, EC2};

/// SecurityGroupManager tracks the lifecycle of a SecurityGroup for an instance,
/// including adding a rule to allow SSH from a public IP address.
#[derive(Debug, Default)]
pub struct SecurityGroupManager {
    group_name: String,
    group_description: String,
    security_group: Option<SecurityGroup>,
}

impl SecurityGroupManager {
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        group_name: &str,
        group_description: &str,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.group_name = group_name.into();
        self.group_description = group_description.into();

        self.security_group = Some(
            ec2.create_security_group(group_name, group_description)
                .await
                .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Couldn't create security group"))?,
        );
```

```
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn authorize_ingress(&self, ec2: &EC2, ip_address: Ipv4Addr) ->
 Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(sg) = &self.security_group {
            ec2.authorize_security_group_ssh_ingress(
                sg.group_id()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group ID"))?,
                vec![ip_address],
            )
            .await?;
        };

        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        if let Some(sg) = &self.security_group {
            ec2.delete_security_group(
                sg.group_id()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group ID"))?,
            )
            .await?;
        };

        Ok(())
    }

    pub fn group_name(&self) -> &str {
        &self.group_name
    }

    pub fn vpc_id(&self) -> Option<&str> {
        self.security_group.as_ref().and_then(|sg| sg.vpc_id())
    }

    pub fn security_group(&self) -> Option<&SecurityGroup> {
        self.security_group.as_ref()
    }
}

impl std::fmt::Display for SecurityGroupManager {
```

```
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match &self.security_group {
            Some(sg) => {
                writeln!(
                    f,
                    "Security group: {}",
                    sg.group_name().unwrap_or("(unknown group)")
                )?;
                writeln!(f, "\tID: {}", sg.group_id().unwrap_or("(unknown group
 id)"))?;
                writeln!(f, "\tVPC: {}", sg.vpc_id().unwrap_or("(unknown group
 vpc)"))?;
                if !sg.ip_permissions().is_empty() {
                    writeln!(f, "\tInbound Permissions:")?;
                    for permission in sg.ip_permissions() {
                        writeln!(f, "\t\t{permission:?}")?;
                    }
                }
                Ok(())
            }
            None => writeln!(f, "No security group loaded."),
        }
    }
}
```

The main entry point for the scenario.

```
use ec2_code_examples::{
    ec2::EC2,
    getting_started::{
        scenario::{run, Ec2InstanceScenario},
        util::UtilImpl,
    },
    ssm::SSM,
};

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();
    let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let ec2 = EC2::new(aws_sdk_ec2::Client::new(&sdk_config));
```

```
    let ssm = SSM::new(aws_sdk_ssm::Client::new(&sdk_config));
    let util = UtilImpl {};
    let scenario = Ec2InstanceScenario::new(ec2, ssm, util);
    run(scenario).await;
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances
  - TerminateInstances
  - UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn allocate_ip_address(&self) -> Result<AllocateAddressOutput,
EC2Error> {
       self.client
           .allocate_address()
           .domain(DomainType::Vpc)
           .send()
           .await
           .map_err(EC2Error::from)
   }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn associate_ip_address(
       &self,
       allocation_id: &str,
       instance_id: &str,
   ) -> Result<AssociateAddressOutput, EC2Error> {
       let response = self
           .client
```

```
            .associate_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .instance_id(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(response)
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /// Add an ingress rule to a security group explicitly allowing IPv4 address
    /// as {ip}/32 over TCP port 22.
    pub async fn authorize_security_group_ssh_ingress(
        &self,
        group_id: &str,
        ingress_ips: Vec<Ipv4Addr>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Authorizing ingress for security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .authorize_security_group_ingress()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .set_ip_permissions(Some(
                ingress_ips
                    .into_iter()
                    .map(|ip| {
                        IpPermission::builder()
                            .ip_protocol("tcp")
                            .from_port(22)
                            .to_port(22)
```

```
                            .ip_ranges(IpRange::builder().cidr_ip(format!
("{ip}/32")).build())
                            .build()
                    })
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Rust implementation that calls the EC2 Client's create_key_pair and extracts the returned material.

```
    pub async fn create_key_pair(&self, name: String) -> Result<(KeyPairInfo,
String), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating key pair {name}");
        let output = self.client.create_key_pair().key_name(name).send().await?;
        let info = KeyPairInfo::builder()
            .set_key_name(output.key_name)
            .set_key_fingerprint(output.key_fingerprint)
            .set_key_pair_id(output.key_pair_id)
            .build();
        let material = output
            .key_material
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Create Key Pair has no key material"))?;
        Ok((info, material))
```

```
    }
```

A function that calls the create_key impl and securely saves the PEM private key.

```
    /// Creates a key pair that can be used to securely connect to an EC2 instance.
    /// The returned key pair contains private key information that cannot be
retrieved
    /// again. The private key data is stored as a .pem file.
    ///
    /// :param key_name: The name of the key pair to create.
    pub async fn create(
        &mut self,
        ec2: &EC2,
        util: &Util,
        key_name: String,
    ) -> Result<KeyPairInfo, EC2Error> {
        let (key_pair, material) =
ec2.create_key_pair(key_name.clone()).await.map_err(|e| {
            self.key_pair =
KeyPairInfo::builder().key_name(key_name.clone()).build();
            e.add_message(format!("Couldn't create key {key_name}"))
        })?;

        let path = self.key_file_dir.join(format!("{key_name}.pem"));

        // Save the key_pair information immediately, so it can get cleaned up if
write_secure fails.
        self.key_file_path = Some(path.clone());
        self.key_pair = key_pair.clone();

        util.write_secure(&key_name, &path, material)?;

        Ok(key_pair)
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn create_security_group(
        &self,
        name: &str,
        description: &str,
    ) -> Result<SecurityGroup, EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Creating security group {name}");
        let create_output = self
            .client
            .create_security_group()
            .group_name(name)
            .description(description)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(EC2Error::from)?;

        let group_id = create_output
            .group_id
            .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing security group id after
creation"))?;

        let group = self
            .describe_security_group(&group_id)
            .await?
            .ok_or_else(|| {
                EC2Error::new(format!("Could not find security group with id
{group_id}"))
            })?;

        tracing::info!("Created security group {name} as {group_id}");

        Ok(group)
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateTags`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTags`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

This example applies the Name tag After creating an instance.

```
    pub async fn create_instance<'a>(
        &self,
        image_id: &'a str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &'a KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&'a SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<String, EC2Error> {
        let run_instances = self
            .client
            .run_instances()
            .image_id(image_id)
            .instance_type(instance_type)
            .key_name(
                key_pair
                    .key_name()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing key name when launching
instance"))?,
            )
            .set_security_group_ids(Some(
                security_groups
                    .iter()
                    .filter_map(|sg| sg.group_id.clone())
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .min_count(1)
            .max_count(1)
```

```
            .send()
            .await?;

        if run_instances.instances().is_empty() {
            return Err(EC2Error::new("Failed to create instance"));
        }

        let instance_id = run_instances.instances()[0].instance_id().unwrap();
        let response = self
            .client
            .create_tags()
            .resources(instance_id)
            .tags(
                Tag::builder()
                    .key("Name")
                    .value("From SDK Examples")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match response {
            Ok(_) => tracing::info!("Created {instance_id} and applied tags."),
            Err(err) => {
                tracing::info!("Error applying tags to {instance_id}: {err:?}");
                return Err(err.into());
            }
        }

        tracing::info!("Instance is created.");

        Ok(instance_id.to_string())
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTags in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Wrapper around delete_key that also removes the backing private PEM key.

```
pub async fn delete(self, ec2: &EC2, util: &Util) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
    if let Some(key_name) = self.key_pair.key_name() {
        ec2.delete_key_pair(key_name).await?;
        if let Some(key_path) = self.key_file_path() {
            if let Err(err) = util.remove(key_path) {
                eprintln!("Failed to remove {key_path:?} ({err:?})");
            }
        }
    }
    Ok(())
}
```

```
pub async fn delete_key_pair(&self, key_name: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
    let key_name: String = key_name.into();
    tracing::info!("Deleting key pair {key_name}");
    self.client
        .delete_key_pair()
        .key_name(key_name)
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn delete_security_group(&self, group_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting security group {group_id}");
        self.client
            .delete_security_group()
            .group_id(group_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSnapshot`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn delete_snapshot(client: &Client, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client.delete_snapshot().snapshot_id(id).send().await?;

    println!("Deleted");

    Ok(())
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn list_images(&self, ids: Vec<Parameter>) -> Result<Vec<Image>,
EC2Error> {
       let image_ids = ids.into_iter().filter_map(|p| p.value).collect();
       let output = self
           .client
           .describe_images()
           .set_image_ids(Some(image_ids))
           .send()
           .await?;

       let images = output.images.unwrap_or_default();
       if images.is_empty() {
           Err(EC2Error::new("No images for selected AMIs"))
       } else {
           Ok(images)
       }
   }
```

Using the list_images function with SSM to limit based on your environment. For more details on SSM, see https://docs.aws.amazon.com/systems-manager/latest/userguide/example_ssm_GetParameters_section.html.

```
   async fn find_image(&mut self) -> Result<ScenarioImage, EC2Error> {
```

```
        let params: Vec<Parameter> = self
            .ssm
            .list_path("/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest")
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find parameters for available
images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .filter(|param| param.name().is_some_and(|name| name.contains("amzn2")))
            .collect();
        let amzn2_images: Vec<ScenarioImage> = self
            .ec2
            .list_images(params)
            .await
            .map_err(|e| e.add_message("Could not find images"))?
            .into_iter()
            .map(ScenarioImage::from)
            .collect();
        println!("We will now create an instance from an Amazon Linux 2 AMI");
        let ami = self.util.select_scenario_image(amzn2_images)?;
        Ok(ami)
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeInstanceStatus`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceStatus`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_all_events(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_regions().send().await.unwrap();

    for region in resp.regions.unwrap_or_default() {
```

```
        let reg: &'static str = Box::leak(Box::from(region.region_name().unwrap()));
        let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::default_provider().or_else(reg);
        let config = aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
        let new_client = Client::new(&config);

        let resp = new_client.describe_instance_status().send().await;

        println!("Instances in region {}:", reg);
        println!();

        for status in resp.unwrap().instance_statuses() {
            println!(
                "  Events scheduled for instance ID: {}",
                status.instance_id().unwrap_or_default()
            );
            for event in status.events() {
                println!("    Event ID:     {}",
 event.instance_event_id().unwrap());
                println!("    Description:  {}", event.description().unwrap());
                println!("    Event code:   {}", event.code().unwrap().as_ref());
                println!();
            }
        }
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceStatus in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /// List instance types that match an image's architecture and are free tier
eligible.
   pub async fn list_instance_types(&self, image: &Image) ->
Result<Vec<InstanceType>, EC2Error> {
       let architecture = format!(
           "{}",
           image.architecture().ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!(
               "Image {:?} does not have a listed architecture",
               image.image_id()
           )))?
       );
       let free_tier_eligible_filter = Filter::builder()
           .name("free-tier-eligible")
           .values("false")
           .build();
       let supported_architecture_filter = Filter::builder()
           .name("processor-info.supported-architecture")
           .values(architecture)
           .build();
       let response = self
           .client
           .describe_instance_types()
           .filters(free_tier_eligible_filter)
           .filters(supported_architecture_filter)
           .send()
           .await?;

       Ok(response
           .instance_types
           .unwrap_or_default()
           .into_iter()
           .filter_map(|iti| iti.instance_type)
           .collect())
   }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve details for an EC2 Instance.

```
   pub async fn describe_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<Instance,
EC2Error> {
       let response = self
           .client
           .describe_instances()
           .instance_ids(instance_id)
           .send()
           .await?;

       let instance = response
           .reservations()
           .first()
           .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new(format!("No instance reservations for
{instance_id}")))?
           .instances()
           .first()
           .ok_or_else(|| {
               EC2Error::new(format!("No instances in reservation for
{instance_id}"))
           })?;

       Ok(instance.clone())
   }
```

After creating an EC2 instance, retrieve and store its details.

```
   /// Create an EC2 instance with the given ID on a given type, using a
   /// generated KeyPair and applying a list of security groups.
   pub async fn create(
       &mut self,
       ec2: &EC2,
```

```
        image_id: &str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        let instance_id = ec2
            .create_instance(image_id, instance_type, key_pair, security_groups)
            .await?;
        let instance = ec2.describe_instance(&instance_id).await?;
        self.instance = Some(instance);
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn list_key_pair(&self) -> Result<Vec<KeyPairInfo>, EC2Error> {
        let output = self.client.describe_key_pairs().send().await?;
        Ok(output.key_pairs.unwrap_or_default())
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeRegions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRegions`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_regions(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let rsp = client.describe_regions().send().await?;

    println!("Regions:");
    for region in rsp.regions() {
        println!("  {}", region.region_name().unwrap());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_security_groups(client: &aws_sdk_ec2::Client, group_ids: Vec<String>)
 {
    let response = client
        .describe_security_groups()
        .set_group_ids(Some(group_ids))
        .send()
```

```
        .await;

    match response {
        Ok(output) => {
            for group in output.security_groups() {
                println!(
                    "Found Security Group {} ({}), vpc id {} and description {}",
                    group.group_name().unwrap_or("unknown"),
                    group.group_id().unwrap_or("id-unknown"),
                    group.vpc_id().unwrap_or("vpcid-unknown"),
                    group.description().unwrap_or("(none)")
                );
            }
        }
        Err(err) => {
            let err = err.into_service_error();
            let meta = err.meta();
            let message = meta.message().unwrap_or("unknown");
            let code = meta.code().unwrap_or("unknown");
            eprintln!("Error listing EC2 Security Groups: ({code}) {message}");
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSnapshots`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Shows the state of a snapshot.

```
async fn show_state(client: &Client, id: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    let resp = client
        .describe_snapshots()
        .filters(Filter::builder().name("snapshot-id").values(id).build())
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "State: {}",
        resp.snapshots().first().unwrap().state().unwrap().as_ref()
    );

    Ok(())
}
```

```
async fn show_snapshots(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    // "self" represents your account ID.
    // You can list the snapshots for any account by replacing
    // "self" with that account ID.
    let resp = client.describe_snapshots().owner_ids("self").send().await?;
    let snapshots = resp.snapshots();
    let length = snapshots.len();

    for snapshot in snapshots {
        println!(
            "ID:          {}",
            snapshot.snapshot_id().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "Description: {}",
            snapshot.description().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!("State:       {}", snapshot.state().unwrap().as_ref());
        println!();
    }

    println!();
    println!("Found {} snapshot(s)", length);
    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn disassociate_ip_address(&self, association_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
       self.client
           .disassociate_address()
           .association_id(association_id)
           .send()
           .await?;
       Ok(())
   }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   pub async fn reboot(&self, ec2: &EC2) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
```

```
        if self.instance.is_some() {
            ec2.reboot_instance(self.instance_id()).await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_stopped(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
            ec2.wait_for_instance_ready(self.instance_id(), None)
                .await?;
        }
        Ok(())
    }
```

```
    pub async fn reboot_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Rebooting instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .reboot_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(())
    }
```

Waiters for instance to be in the stopped and ready states, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    /// Wait for an instance to be ready and status ok (default wait 60 seconds)
    pub async fn wait_for_instance_ready(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_status_ok()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to start.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs()
                )),
```

```
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }

    pub async fn wait_for_instance_stopped(
        &self,
        instance_id: &str,
        duration: Option<Duration>,
    ) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_stopped()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to stop.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn deallocate_ip_address(&self, allocation_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
```

```
        self.client
            .release_address()
            .allocation_id(allocation_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn create_instance<'a>(
        &self,
        image_id: &'a str,
        instance_type: InstanceType,
        key_pair: &'a KeyPairInfo,
        security_groups: Vec<&'a SecurityGroup>,
    ) -> Result<String, EC2Error> {
        let run_instances = self
            .client
            .run_instances()
            .image_id(image_id)
            .instance_type(instance_type)
            .key_name(
                key_pair
                    .key_name()
                    .ok_or_else(|| EC2Error::new("Missing key name when launching
instance"))?,
            )
```

```
            .set_security_group_ids(Some(
                security_groups
                    .iter()
                    .filter_map(|sg| sg.group_id.clone())
                    .collect(),
            ))
            .min_count(1)
            .max_count(1)
            .send()
            .await?;

        if run_instances.instances().is_empty() {
            return Err(EC2Error::new("Failed to create instance"));
        }

        let instance_id = run_instances.instances()[0].instance_id().unwrap();
        let response = self
            .client
            .create_tags()
            .resources(instance_id)
            .tags(
                Tag::builder()
                    .key("Name")
                    .value("From SDK Examples")
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match response {
            Ok(_) => tracing::info!("Created {instance_id} and applied tags."),
            Err(err) => {
                tracing::info!("Error applying tags to {instance_id}: {err:?}");
                return Err(err.into());
            }
        }

        tracing::info!("Instance is created.");

        Ok(instance_id.to_string())
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

StartInstances

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Start an EC2 Instance by instance ID.

```
pub async fn start_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
    tracing::info!("Starting instance {instance_id}");

    self.client
        .start_instances()
        .instance_ids(instance_id)
        .send()
        .await?;

    tracing::info!("Started instance.");

    Ok(())
}
```

Wait for an instance to be in the ready and status ok states, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
/// Wait for an instance to be ready and status ok (default wait 60 seconds)
pub async fn wait_for_instance_ready(
    &self,
    instance_id: &str,
    duration: Option<Duration>,
) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
    self.client
        .wait_until_instance_status_ok()
        .instance_ids(instance_id)
```

```
            .wait(duration.unwrap_or(Duration::from_secs(60)))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to start.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs()
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn stop_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Stopping instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .stop_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        self.wait_for_instance_stopped(instance_id, None).await?;

        tracing::info!("Stopped instance.");

        Ok(())
    }
```

Wait for an instance to be in the stopped state, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    pub async fn stop_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Stopping instance {instance_id}");

        self.client
            .stop_instances()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;

        self.wait_for_instance_stopped(instance_id, None).await?;

        tracing::info!("Stopped instance.");

        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn delete_instance(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(), EC2Error> {
        tracing::info!("Deleting instance with id {instance_id}");
        self.stop_instance(instance_id).await?;
        self.client
            .terminate_instances()
```

```
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .send()
            .await?;
        self.wait_for_instance_terminated(instance_id).await?;
        tracing::info!("Terminated instance with id {instance_id}");
        Ok(())
    }
```

Wait for an instance to be in the terminted state, using the Waiters API. Using the Waiters API requires `use aws_sdk_ec2::client::Waiters` in the rust file.

```
    async fn wait_for_instance_terminated(&self, instance_id: &str) -> Result<(),
EC2Error> {
        self.client
            .wait_until_instance_terminated()
            .instance_ids(instance_id)
            .wait(Duration::from_secs(60))
            .await
            .map_err(|err| match err {
                WaiterError::ExceededMaxWait(exceeded) => EC2Error(format!(
                    "Exceeded max time ({}s) waiting for instance to terminate.",
                    exceeded.max_wait().as_secs(),
                )),
                _ => EC2Error::from(err),
            })?;
        Ok(())
    }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon ECR examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon ECR.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeRepositories`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRepositories`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_repos(client: &aws_sdk_ecr::Client) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_ecr::Error>
 {
    let rsp = client.describe_repositories().send().await?;

    let repos = rsp.repositories();

    println!("Found {} repositories:", repos.len());

    for repo in repos {
        println!("  ARN:  {}", repo.repository_arn().unwrap());
        println!("  Name: {}", repo.repository_name().unwrap());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeRepositories in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListImages`

The following code example shows how to use `ListImages`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_images(
    client: &aws_sdk_ecr::Client,
    repository: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_ecr::Error> {
    let rsp = client
        .list_images()
        .repository_name(repository)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let images = rsp.image_ids();

    println!("found {} images", images.len());

    for image in images {
        println!(
            "image: {}:{}",
            image.image_tag().unwrap(),
            image.image_digest().unwrap()
        );
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListImages in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon ECS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon ECS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_cluster(client: &aws_sdk_ecs::Client, name: &str) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_ecs::Error> {
    let cluster = client.create_cluster().cluster_name(name).send().await?;
    println!("cluster created: {:?}", cluster);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn remove_cluster(
    client: &aws_sdk_ecs::Client,
    name: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_ecs::Error> {
    let cluster_deleted = client.delete_cluster().cluster(name).send().await?;
    println!("cluster deleted: {:?}", cluster_deleted);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeClusters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeClusters`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_clusters(client: &aws_sdk_ecs::Client) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_ecs::Error> {
    let resp = client.list_clusters().send().await?;

    let cluster_arns = resp.cluster_arns();
    println!("Found {} clusters:", cluster_arns.len());
```

```
    let clusters = client
        .describe_clusters()
        .set_clusters(Some(cluster_arns.into()))
        .send()
        .await?;

    for cluster in clusters.clusters() {
        println!("  ARN:  {}", cluster.cluster_arn().unwrap());
        println!("  Name: {}", cluster.cluster_name().unwrap());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeClusters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon EKS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon EKS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCluster`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_cluster(
    client: &aws_sdk_eks::Client,
    name: &str,
    arn: &str,
    subnet_ids: Vec<String>,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_eks::Error> {
    let cluster = client
        .create_cluster()
        .name(name)
        .role_arn(arn)
        .resources_vpc_config(
            VpcConfigRequest::builder()
                .set_subnet_ids(Some(subnet_ids))
                .build(),
        )
        .send()
        .await?;
    println!("cluster created: {:?}", cluster);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteCluster`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCluster`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn remove_cluster(
    client: &aws_sdk_eks::Client,
    name: &str,
) -> Result<(), aws_sdk_eks::Error> {
    let cluster_deleted = client.delete_cluster().name(name).send().await?;
    println!("cluster deleted: {:?}", cluster_deleted);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteCluster in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello AWS Glue

The following code examples show how to get started using AWS Glue.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let mut list_jobs = glue.list_jobs().into_paginator().send();
        while let Some(list_jobs_output) = list_jobs.next().await {
            match list_jobs_output {
                Ok(list_jobs) => {
                    let names = list_jobs.job_names();
                    info!(?names, "Found these jobs")
                }
                Err(err) => return Err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk(err)),
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.

- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create and run a crawler that crawls a public Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket and generates a metadata database that describes the CSV-formatted data it finds.

```
let create_crawler = glue
    .create_crawler()
    .name(self.crawler())
    .database_name(self.database())
    .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
    .targets(
        CrawlerTargets::builder()
            .s3_targets(S3Target::builder().path(CRAWLER_TARGET).build())
            .build(),
    )
    .send()
    .await;

match create_crawler {
    Err(err) => {
        let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
        match glue_err {
            aws_sdk_glue::Error::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                info!("Using existing crawler");
                Ok(())
            }
            _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
        }
    }
    Ok(_) => Ok(()),
}?;
```

```
        let start_crawler = glue.start_crawler().name(self.crawler()).send().await;

        match start_crawler {
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
            Err(err) => {
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::CrawlerRunningException(_) => Ok(()),
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
        }?;
```

List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.

```
        let database = glue
            .get_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?
            .to_owned();
        let database = database
            .database()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Could not find
 database".into()))?;

        let tables = glue
            .get_tables()
            .database_name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let tables = tables.table_list();
```

Create and run a job that extracts CSV data from the source Amazon S3 bucket, transforms it by removing and renaming fields, and loads JSON-formatted output into another Amazon S3 bucket.

```
        let create_job = glue
```

```
            .create_job()
            .name(self.job())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
            .command(
                JobCommand::builder()
                    .name("glueetl")
                    .python_version("3")
                    .script_location(format!("s3://{}/job.py", self.bucket()))
                    .build(),
            )
            .glue_version("3.0")
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job_name = create_job.name().ok_or_else(|| {
            GlueMvpError::Unknown("Did not get job name after creating job".into())
        })?;

        let job_run_output = glue
            .start_job_run()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .arguments("--input_database", self.database())
            .arguments(
                "--input_table",
                self.tables
                    .first()
                    .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing crawler
table".into()))?
                    .name(),
            )
            .arguments("--output_bucket_url", self.bucket())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job = job_run_output
            .job_run_id()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing run id from just started
job".into()))?
            .to_string();
```

Delete all resources created by the demo.

```
        glue.delete_job()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        for t in &self.tables {
            glue.delete_table()
                .name(t.name())
                .database_name(self.database())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
        }

        glue.delete_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        glue.delete_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase

- GetDatabases
- GetJob
- GetJobRun
- GetJobRuns
- GetTables
- ListJobs
- StartCrawler
- StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let create_crawler = glue
            .create_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .database_name(self.database())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
            .targets(
                CrawlerTargets::builder()
                    .s3_targets(S3Target::builder().path(CRAWLER_TARGET).build())
                    .build(),
            )
            .send()
            .await;

        match create_crawler {
            Err(err) => {
```

```
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                        info!("Using existing crawler");
                        Ok(())
                    }
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        }?;
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let create_job = glue
            .create_job()
            .name(self.job())
            .role(self.iam_role.expose_secret())
            .command(
                JobCommand::builder()
                    .name("glueetl")
                    .python_version("3")
                    .script_location(format!("s3://{}/job.py", self.bucket()))
                    .build(),
            )
            .glue_version("3.0")
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

```
        let job_name = create_job.name().ok_or_else(|| {
            GlueMvpError::Unknown("Did not get job name after creating job".into())
        })?;
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        glue.delete_crawler()
            .name(self.crawler())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        glue.delete_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        glue.delete_job()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        for t in &self.tables {
            glue.delete_table()
                .name(t.name())
                .database_name(self.database())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            let tmp_crawler = glue
                .get_crawler()
                .name(self.crawler())
                .send()
                .await
                .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let database = glue
            .get_database()
            .name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?
            .to_owned();
        let database = database
            .database()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Could not find
database".into()))?;
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let get_job_run = || async {
            Ok::<JobRun, GlueMvpError>(
                glue.get_job_run()
                    .job_name(self.job())
                    .run_id(job_run_id.to_string())
                    .send()
                    .await
                    .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?
                    .job_run()
                    .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Failed to get
job_run".into()))?
                    .to_owned(),
            )
        };

        let mut job_run = get_job_run().await?;
        let mut state =
job_run.job_run_state().unwrap_or(&unknown_state).to_owned();

        while matches!(
            state,
            JobRunState::Starting | JobRunState::Stopping | JobRunState::Running
        ) {
            info!(?state, "Waiting for job to finish");
            tokio::time::sleep(self.wait_delay).await;

            job_run = get_job_run().await?;
            state = job_run.job_run_state().unwrap_or(&unknown_state).to_owned();
        }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let tables = glue
            .get_tables()
            .database_name(self.database())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let tables = tables.table_list();
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let mut list_jobs = glue.list_jobs().into_paginator().send();
        while let Some(list_jobs_output) = list_jobs.next().await {
            match list_jobs_output {
                Ok(list_jobs) => {
                    let names = list_jobs.job_names();
                    info!(?names, "Found these jobs")
                }
```

```
                Err(err) => return Err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk(err)),
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

StartCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let start_crawler = glue.start_crawler().name(self.crawler()).send().await;

        match start_crawler {
            Ok(_) => Ok(()),
            Err(err) => {
                let glue_err: aws_sdk_glue::Error = err.into();
                match glue_err {
                    aws_sdk_glue::Error::CrawlerRunningException(_) => Ok(()),
                    _ => Err(GlueMvpError::GlueSdk(glue_err)),
                }
            }
        }?;
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

StartJobRun

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let job_run_output = glue
            .start_job_run()
            .job_name(self.job())
            .arguments("--input_database", self.database())
            .arguments(
                "--input_table",
                self.tables
                    .first()
                    .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing crawler
table".into()))?
                    .name(),
            )
            .arguments("--output_bucket_url", self.bucket())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(GlueMvpError::from_glue_sdk)?;

        let job = job_run_output
            .job_run_id()
            .ok_or_else(|| GlueMvpError::Unknown("Missing run id from just started
job".into()))?
            .to_string();
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with IAM.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello IAM

The following code examples show how to get started using IAM.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

From src/bin/hello.rs.

```
use aws_sdk_iam::error::SdkError;
use aws_sdk_iam::operation::list_policies::ListPoliciesError;
use clap::Parser;

const PATH_PREFIX_HELP: &str = "The path prefix for filtering the results.";

#[derive(Debug, clap::Parser)]
#[command(about)]
struct HelloScenarioArgs {
    #[arg(long, default_value="/", help=PATH_PREFIX_HELP)]
    pub path_prefix: String,
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let client = aws_sdk_iam::Client::new(&sdk_config);

    let args = HelloScenarioArgs::parse();
```

```
    iam_service::list_policies(client, args.path_prefix).await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

From src/iam-service-lib.rs.

```
pub async fn list_policies(
    client: iamClient,
    path_prefix: String,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let list_policies = client
        .list_policies()
        .path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .scope(PolicyScopeType::Local)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .try_collect()
        .await?;

    let policy_names = list_policies
        .into_iter()
        .map(|p| {
            let name = p
                .policy_name
                .unwrap_or_else(|| "Missing Policy Name".to_string());
            println!("{}", name);
            name
        })
        .collect();

    Ok(policy_names)
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Topics

- Basics

- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to create a user and assume a role.

> **Warning**
>
> To avoid security risks, don't use IAM users for authentication when developing purpose-built software or working with real data. Instead, use federation with an identity provider such as AWS IAM Identity Center.

- Create a user with no permissions.
- Create a role that grants permission to list Amazon S3 buckets for the account.
- Add a policy to let the user assume the role.
- Assume the role and list S3 buckets using temporary credentials, then clean up resources.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_config::meta::region::RegionProviderChain;
use aws_sdk_iam::Error as iamError;
use aws_sdk_iam::{config::Credentials as iamCredentials, config::Region, Client as
 iamClient};
use aws_sdk_s3::Client as s3Client;
use aws_sdk_sts::Client as stsClient;
use tokio::time::{sleep, Duration};
use uuid::Uuid;

#[tokio::main]
```

```
async fn main() -> Result<(), iamError> {
    let (client, uuid, list_all_buckets_policy_document, inline_policy_document) =
        initialize_variables().await;

    if let Err(e) = run_iam_operations(
        client,
        uuid,
        list_all_buckets_policy_document,
        inline_policy_document,
    )
    .await
    {
        println!("{:?}", e);
    };

    Ok(())
}

async fn initialize_variables() -> (iamClient, String, String, String) {
    let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::first_try(Region::new("us-west-2"));

    let shared_config = aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
    let client = iamClient::new(&shared_config);
    let uuid = Uuid::new_v4().to_string();

    let list_all_buckets_policy_document = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"s3:ListAllMyBuckets\",
                    \"Resource\": \"arn:aws:s3:::*\"}]
    }"
    .to_string();
    let inline_policy_document = "{
                \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\",
                    \"Resource\": \"{}\"}]
    }"
    .to_string();

    (
        client,
```

```
        uuid,
        list_all_buckets_policy_document,
        inline_policy_document,
    )
}

async fn run_iam_operations(
    client: iamClient,
    uuid: String,
    list_all_buckets_policy_document: String,
    inline_policy_document: String,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    let user = iam_service::create_user(&client, &format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_user_",
 uuid)).await?;
    println!("Created the user with the name: {}", user.user_name());
    let key = iam_service::create_access_key(&client, user.user_name()).await?;

    let assume_role_policy_document = "{
        \"Version\": \"2012-10-17\",
                \"Statement\": [{
                    \"Effect\": \"Allow\",
                    \"Principal\": {\"AWS\": \"{}\"},
                    \"Action\": \"sts:AssumeRole\"
                }]
            }"
    .to_string()
    .replace("{}", user.arn());

    let assume_role_role = iam_service::create_role(
        &client,
        &format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_role_", uuid),
        &assume_role_policy_document,
    )
    .await?;
    println!("Created the role with the ARN: {}", assume_role_role.arn());

    let list_all_buckets_policy = iam_service::create_policy(
        &client,
        &format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_policy_", uuid),
        &list_all_buckets_policy_document,
    )
    .await?;
    println!(
        "Created policy: {}",
```

```
        list_all_buckets_policy.policy_name.as_ref().unwrap()
    );

    let attach_role_policy_result =
        iam_service::attach_role_policy(&client, &assume_role_role,
&list_all_buckets_policy)
            .await?;
    println!(
        "Attached the policy to the role: {:?}",
        attach_role_policy_result
    );

    let inline_policy_name = format!("{}{}", "iam_demo_inline_policy_", uuid);
    let inline_policy_document = inline_policy_document.replace("{}",
assume_role_role.arn());
    iam_service::create_user_policy(&client, &user, &inline_policy_name,
&inline_policy_document)
        .await?;
    println!("Created inline policy.");

    //First, fail to list the buckets with the user.
    let creds = iamCredentials::from_keys(key.access_key_id(),
key.secret_access_key(), None);
    let fail_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(creds.clone())
        .load()
        .await;
    println!("Fail config: {:?}", fail_config);
    let fail_client: s3Client = s3Client::new(&fail_config);
    match fail_client.list_buckets().send().await {
        Ok(e) => {
            println!("This should not run. {:?}", e);
        }
        Err(e) => {
            println!("Successfully failed with error: {:?}", e)
        }
    }

    let sts_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(creds.clone())
        .load()
        .await;
    let sts_client: stsClient = stsClient::new(&sts_config);
    sleep(Duration::from_secs(10)).await;
```

```
    let assumed_role = sts_client
        .assume_role()
        .role_arn(assume_role_role.arn())
        .role_session_name(format!("iam_demo_assumerole_session_{uuid}"))
        .send()
        .await;
    println!("Assumed role: {:?}", assumed_role);
    sleep(Duration::from_secs(10)).await;

    let assumed_credentials = iamCredentials::from_keys(
        assumed_role
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .credentials
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .access_key_id(),
        assumed_role
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .credentials
            .as_ref()
            .unwrap()
            .secret_access_key(),
        Some(
            assumed_role
                .as_ref()
                .unwrap()
                .credentials
                .as_ref()
                .unwrap()
                .session_token
                .clone(),
        ),
    );

    let succeed_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(assumed_credentials)
        .load()
        .await;
    println!("succeed config: {:?}", succeed_config);
    let succeed_client: s3Client = s3Client::new(&succeed_config);
    sleep(Duration::from_secs(10)).await;
    match succeed_client.list_buckets().send().await {
```

```
        Ok(_) => {
            println!("This should now run successfully.")
        }
        Err(e) => {
            println!("This should not run. {:?}", e);
            panic!()
        }
    }

    //Clean up.
    iam_service::detach_role_policy(
        &client,
        assume_role_role.role_name(),
        list_all_buckets_policy.arn().unwrap_or_default(),
    )
    .await?;
    iam_service::delete_policy(&client, list_all_buckets_policy).await?;
    iam_service::delete_role(&client, &assume_role_role).await?;
    println!("Deleted role {}", assume_role_role.role_name());
    iam_service::delete_access_key(&client, &user, &key).await?;
    println!("Deleted key for {}", key.user_name());
    iam_service::delete_user_policy(&client, &user, &inline_policy_name).await?;
    println!("Deleted inline user policy: {}", inline_policy_name);
    iam_service::delete_user(&client, &user).await?;
    println!("Deleted user {}", user.user_name());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - AttachRolePolicy
  - CreateAccessKey
  - CreatePolicy
  - CreateRole
  - CreateUser
  - DeleteAccessKey
  - DeletePolicy
  - DeleteRole
  - DeleteUser

- DeleteUserPolicy
- DetachRolePolicy
- PutUserPolicy

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn attach_role_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    role: &Role,
    policy: &Policy,
) -> Result<AttachRolePolicyOutput, SdkError<AttachRolePolicyError>> {
    client
        .attach_role_policy()
        .role_name(role.role_name())
        .policy_arn(policy.arn().unwrap_or_default())
        .send()
        .await
}
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`AttachUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachUserPolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn attach_user_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    user_name: &str,
    policy_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .attach_user_policy()
        .user_name(user_name)
        .policy_arn(policy_arn)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see AttachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_access_key(client: &iamClient, user_name: &str) ->
 Result<AccessKey, iamError> {
```

```
    let mut tries: i32 = 0;
    let max_tries: i32 = 10;

    let response: Result<CreateAccessKeyOutput, SdkError<CreateAccessKeyError>> =
 loop {
        match client.create_access_key().user_name(user_name).send().await {
            Ok(inner_response) => {
                break Ok(inner_response);
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tries += 1;
                if tries > max_tries {
                    break Err(e);
                }
                sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
            }
        }
    };

    Ok(response.unwrap().access_key.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    policy_name: &str,
    policy_document: &str,
) -> Result<Policy, iamError> {
```

```
    let policy = client
        .create_policy()
        .policy_name(policy_name)
        .policy_document(policy_document)
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(policy.policy.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
    role_policy_document: &str,
) -> Result<Role, iamError> {
    let response: CreateRoleOutput = loop {
        if let Ok(response) = client
            .create_role()
            .role_name(role_name)
            .assume_role_policy_document(role_policy_document)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            break response;
        }
    };

    Ok(response.role.unwrap())
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_service_linked_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    aws_service_name: String,
    custom_suffix: Option<String>,
    description: Option<String>,
) -> Result<CreateServiceLinkedRoleOutput, SdkError<CreateServiceLinkedRoleError>> {
    let response = client
        .create_service_linked_role()
        .aws_service_name(aws_service_name)
        .set_custom_suffix(custom_suffix)
        .set_description(description)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_user(client: &iamClient, user_name: &str) -> Result<User,
 iamError> {
    let response = client.create_user().user_name(user_name).send().await?;

    Ok(response.user.unwrap())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_access_key(
    client: &iamClient,
    user: &User,
    key: &AccessKey,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    loop {
        match client
            .delete_access_key()
            .user_name(user.user_name())
```

```
            .access_key_id(key.access_key_id())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => {
                break;
            }
            Err(e) => {
                println!("Can't delete the access key: {:?}", e);
                sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
            }
        }
    }
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_policy(client: &iamClient, policy: Policy) -> Result<(),
 iamError> {
    client
        .delete_policy()
        .policy_arn(policy.arn.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_role(client: &iamClient, role: &Role) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    let role = role.clone();
    while client
        .delete_role()
        .role_name(role.role_name())
        .send()
        .await
        .is_err()
    {
        sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
    }
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_service_linked_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .delete_service_linked_role()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_user(client: &iamClient, user: &User) -> Result<(),
 SdkError<DeleteUserError>> {
    let user = user.clone();
```

```
    let mut tries: i32 = 0;
    let max_tries: i32 = 10;

    let response: Result<(), SdkError<DeleteUserError>> = loop {
        match client
            .delete_user()
            .user_name(user.user_name())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => {
                break Ok(());
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tries += 1;
                if tries > max_tries {
                    break Err(e);
                }
                sleep(Duration::from_secs(2)).await;
            }
        }
    };

    response
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_user_policy(
```

```
    client: &iamClient,
    user: &User,
    policy_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), SdkError<DeleteUserPolicyError>> {
    client
        .delete_user_policy()
        .user_name(user.user_name())
        .policy_name(policy_name)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn detach_role_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
    policy_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .detach_role_policy()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .policy_arn(policy_arn)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DetachUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachUserPolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn detach_user_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
    user_name: &str,
    policy_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), iamError> {
    client
        .detach_user_policy()
        .user_name(user_name)
        .policy_arn(policy_arn)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DetachUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetAccountPasswordPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetAccountPasswordPolicy`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn get_account_password_policy(
    client: &iamClient,
) -> Result<GetAccountPasswordPolicyOutput, SdkError<GetAccountPasswordPolicyError>>
 {
    let response = client.get_account_password_policy().send().await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see GetAccountPasswordPolicy in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetRole`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn get_role(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: String,
) -> Result<GetRoleOutput, SdkError<GetRoleError>> {
    let response = client.get_role().role_name(role_name).send().await?;
    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_attached_role_policies(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: String,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListAttachedRolePoliciesOutput, SdkError<ListAttachedRolePoliciesError>>
 {
    let response = client
        .list_attached_role_policies()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_groups(
    client: &iamClient,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListGroupsOutput, SdkError<ListGroupsError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_groups()
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_policies(
    client: iamClient,
    path_prefix: String,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, SdkError<ListPoliciesError>> {
    let list_policies = client
        .list_policies()
        .path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .scope(PolicyScopeType::Local)
        .into_paginator()
        .items()
        .send()
        .try_collect()
        .await?;

    let policy_names = list_policies
        .into_iter()
        .map(|p| {
            let name = p
                .policy_name
                .unwrap_or_else(|| "Missing Policy Name".to_string());
            println!("{}", name);
            name
        })
        .collect();

    Ok(policy_names)
}
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_role_policies(
    client: &iamClient,
    role_name: &str,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListRolePoliciesOutput, SdkError<ListRolePoliciesError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_role_policies()
        .role_name(role_name)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_roles(
    client: &iamClient,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListRolesOutput, SdkError<ListRolesError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_roles()
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
```

```
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListSAMLProviders`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSAMLProviders`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_saml_providers(
    client: &Client,
) -> Result<ListSamlProvidersOutput, SdkError<ListSAMLProvidersError>> {
    let response = client.list_saml_providers().send().await?;

    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListSAMLProviders in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_users(
    client: &iamClient,
    path_prefix: Option<String>,
    marker: Option<String>,
    max_items: Option<i32>,
) -> Result<ListUsersOutput, SdkError<ListUsersError>> {
    let response = client
        .list_users()
        .set_path_prefix(path_prefix)
        .set_marker(marker)
        .set_max_items(max_items)
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(response)
}
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

AWS IoT examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with AWS IoT.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeEndpoint`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_address(client: &Client, endpoint_type: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .describe_endpoint()
        .endpoint_type(endpoint_type)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Endpoint address: {}", resp.endpoint_address.unwrap());

    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeEndpoint in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListThings`

The following code example shows how to use `ListThings`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_things(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_things().send().await?;

    println!("Things:");

    for thing in resp.things.unwrap() {
        println!(
            "  Name:  {}",
            thing.thing_name.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  Type:  {}",
            thing.thing_type_name.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!(
            "  ARN:   {}",
            thing.thing_arn.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );
        println!();
    }

    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListThings in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Kinesis.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStream`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_stream(client: &Client, stream: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .create_stream()
        .stream_name(stream)
        .shard_count(4)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created stream");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStream`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn remove_stream(client: &Client, stream: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client.delete_stream().stream_name(stream).send().await?;

    println!("Deleted stream.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DescribeStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStream`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_stream(client: &Client, stream: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_stream().stream_name(stream).send().await?;

    let desc = resp.stream_description.unwrap();
```

```
    println!("Stream description:");
    println!("  Name:              {}:", desc.stream_name());
    println!("  Status:            {:?}", desc.stream_status());
    println!("  Open shards:       {:?}", desc.shards.len());
    println!("  Retention (hours): {}", desc.retention_period_hours());
    println!("  Encryption:        {:?}", desc.encryption_type.unwrap());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListStreams`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreams`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_streams(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_streams().send().await?;

    println!("Stream names:");

    let streams = resp.stream_names;
    for stream in &streams {
        println!("  {}", stream);
    }

    println!("Found {} stream(s)", streams.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`PutRecord`

The following code example shows how to use `PutRecord`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn add_record(client: &Client, stream: &str, key: &str, data: &str) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    let blob = Blob::new(data);

    client
        .put_record()
        .data(blob)
        .partition_key(key)
        .stream_name(stream)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Put data into stream.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::kinesis::KinesisEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        tracing::info!("EventId:
 {}",record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default());

        let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(&record.kinesis.data);

        match record_data {
            Ok(data) => {
                // log the record data
                tracing::info!("Data: {}", data);
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tracing::error!("Error: {}", e);
```

```
            }
        }
    });

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::kinesis::KinesisEvent,
    kinesis::KinesisEventRecord,
    streams::{KinesisBatchItemFailure, KinesisEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) ->
 Result<KinesisEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = KinesisEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in &event.payload.records {
        tracing::info!(
            "EventId: {}",
            record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );

        let record_processing_result = process_record(record);

        if record_processing_result.is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(KinesisBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.kinesis.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
```

```
    );

    Ok(response)
}

fn process_record(record: &KinesisEventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(record.kinesis.data.as_slice());

    if let Some(err) = record_data.err() {
        tracing::error!("Error: {}", err);
        return Err(Error::from(err));
    }

    let record_data = record_data.unwrap_or_default();

    // do something interesting with the data
    tracing::info!("Data: {}", record_data);

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

AWS KMS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with AWS KMS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKey`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_key(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.create_key().send().await?;

    let id = resp.key_metadata.as_ref().unwrap().key_id();

    println!("Key: {}", id);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`Decrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `Decrypt`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn decrypt_key(client: &Client, key: &str, filename: &str) -> Result<(),
 Error> {
    // Open input text file and get contents as a string
    // input is a base-64 encoded string, so decode it:
    let data = fs::read_to_string(filename)
        .map(|input| {
            base64::decode(input).expect("Input file does not contain valid base 64
 characters.")
        })
        .map(Blob::new);

    let resp = client
        .decrypt()
        .key_id(key)
        .ciphertext_blob(data.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await?;

    let inner = resp.plaintext.unwrap();
    let bytes = inner.as_ref();

    let s = String::from_utf8(bytes.to_vec()).expect("Could not convert to UTF-8");

    println!();
    println!("Decoded string:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Decrypt in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Encrypt

The following code example shows how to use `Encrypt`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn encrypt_string(
    verbose: bool,
    client: &Client,
    text: &str,
    key: &str,
    out_file: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let blob = Blob::new(text.as_bytes());

    let resp = client.encrypt().key_id(key).plaintext(blob).send().await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    let mut ofile = File::create(out_file).expect("unable to create file");
    ofile.write_all(s.as_bytes()).expect("unable to write");

    if verbose {
        println!("Wrote the following to {:?}", out_file);
        println!("{}", s);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Encrypt in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GenerateDataKey`

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateDataKey`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_key(client: &Client, key: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .generate_data_key()
        .key_id(key)
        .key_spec(DataKeySpec::Aes256)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    println!();
    println!("Data key:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateDataKey in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext`

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_key(client: &Client, key: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .generate_data_key_without_plaintext()
        .key_id(key)
        .key_spec(DataKeySpec::Aes256)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    println!();
    println!("Data key:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateDataKeyWithoutPlaintext in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GenerateRandom`

The following code example shows how to use `GenerateRandom`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_string(client: &Client, length: i32) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .generate_random()
        .number_of_bytes(length)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.plaintext.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);

    println!();
    println!("Data key:");
    println!("{}", s);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GenerateRandom in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListKeys`

The following code example shows how to use `ListKeys`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_keys(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_keys().send().await?;

    let keys = resp.keys.unwrap_or_default();

    let len = keys.len();

    for key in keys {
        println!("Key ARN: {}", key.key_arn.as_deref().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    println!();
    println!("Found {} keys", len);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListKeys in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ReEncrypt`

The following code example shows how to use `ReEncrypt`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn reencrypt_string(
    verbose: bool,
    client: &Client,
    input_file: &str,
    output_file: &str,
    first_key: &str,
    new_key: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    // Get blob from input file
    // Open input text file and get contents as a string
    // input is a base-64 encoded string, so decode it:
    let data = fs::read_to_string(input_file)
        .map(|input_file| base64::decode(input_file).expect("invalid base 64"))
        .map(Blob::new);

    let resp = client
        .re_encrypt()
        .ciphertext_blob(data.unwrap())
        .source_key_id(first_key)
        .destination_key_id(new_key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Did we get an encrypted blob?
    let blob = resp.ciphertext_blob.expect("Could not get encrypted text");
    let bytes = blob.as_ref();

    let s = base64::encode(bytes);
    let o = &output_file;

    let mut ofile = File::create(o).expect("unable to create file");
    ofile.write_all(s.as_bytes()).expect("unable to write");

    if verbose {
        println!("Wrote the following to {}:", output_file);
        println!("{}", s);
    } else {
        println!("Wrote base64-encoded output to {}", output_file);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ReEncrypt in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

AWS community contributions are examples that were created and are maintained by multiple teams across AWS. To provide feedback, use the mechanism provided in the linked repositories.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples
- AWS community contributions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.

- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The Cargo.toml with dependencies used in this scenario.

```
[package]
name = "lambda-code-examples"
version = "0.1.0"
edition = "2021"

# See more keys and their definitions at https://doc.rust-lang.org/cargo/reference/
manifest.html

[dependencies]
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-sdk-ec2 = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-iam = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-lambda = { version = "1.3.0" }
aws-sdk-s3 = { version = "1.4.0" }
aws-smithy-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
clap = { version = "4.4", features = ["derive"] }
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full"] }
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }
tracing = "0.1.37"
serde_json = "1.0.94"
anyhow = "1.0.71"
uuid = { version = "1.3.3", features = ["v4"] }
lambda_runtime = "0.8.0"
serde = "1.0.164"
```

A collection of utilities that streamline calling Lambda for this scenario. This file is src/ations.rs in the crate.

```
use anyhow::anyhow;
use aws_sdk_iam::operation::{create_role::CreateRoleError,
 delete_role::DeleteRoleOutput};
use aws_sdk_lambda::{
    operation::{
        delete_function::DeleteFunctionOutput, get_function::GetFunctionOutput,
        invoke::InvokeOutput, list_functions::ListFunctionsOutput,
        update_function_code::UpdateFunctionCodeOutput,
        update_function_configuration::UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutput,
    },
    primitives::ByteStream,
    types::{Environment, FunctionCode, LastUpdateStatus, State},
};
use aws_sdk_s3::{
    error::ErrorMetadata,
    operation::{delete_bucket::DeleteBucketOutput,
 delete_object::DeleteObjectOutput},
    types::CreateBucketConfiguration,
};
use aws_smithy_types::Blob;
use serde::{ser::SerializeMap, Serialize};
use std::{fmt::Display, path::PathBuf, str::FromStr, time::Duration};
use tracing::{debug, info, warn};

/* Operation describes  */
#[derive(Clone, Copy, Debug, Serialize)]
pub enum Operation {
    #[serde(rename = "plus")]
    Plus,
    #[serde(rename = "minus")]
    Minus,
    #[serde(rename = "times")]
    Times,
    #[serde(rename = "divided-by")]
    DividedBy,
}

impl FromStr for Operation {
    type Err = anyhow::Error;
```

```
    fn from_str(s: &str) -> Result<Self, Self::Err> {
        match s {
            "plus" => Ok(Operation::Plus),
            "minus" => Ok(Operation::Minus),
            "times" => Ok(Operation::Times),
            "divided-by" => Ok(Operation::DividedBy),
            _ => Err(anyhow!("Unknown operation {s}")),
        }
    }
}

impl Display for Operation {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        match self {
            Operation::Plus => write!(f, "plus"),
            Operation::Minus => write!(f, "minus"),
            Operation::Times => write!(f, "times"),
            Operation::DividedBy => write!(f, "divided-by"),
        }
    }
}

/**
 * InvokeArgs will be serialized as JSON and sent to the AWS Lambda handler.
 */
#[derive(Debug)]
pub enum InvokeArgs {
    Increment(i32),
    Arithmetic(Operation, i32, i32),
}

impl Serialize for InvokeArgs {
    fn serialize<S>(&self, serializer: S) -> Result<S::Ok, S::Error>
    where
        S: serde::Serializer,
    {
        match self {
            InvokeArgs::Increment(i) => serializer.serialize_i32(*i),
            InvokeArgs::Arithmetic(o, i, j) => {
                let mut map: S::SerializeMap = serializer.serialize_map(Some(3))?;
                map.serialize_key(&"op".to_string())?;
                map.serialize_value(&o.to_string())?;
                map.serialize_key(&"i".to_string())?;
```

```
                map.serialize_value(&i)?;
                map.serialize_key(&"j".to_string())?;
                map.serialize_value(&j)?;
                map.end()
            }
        }
    }
}

/** A policy document allowing Lambda to execute this function on the account's
 behalf. */
const ROLE_POLICY_DOCUMENT: &str = r#"{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Principal": { "Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com" },
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
        }
    ]
}"#;

/**
 * A LambdaManager gathers all the resources necessary to run the Lambda example
 scenario.
 * This includes instantiated aws_sdk clients and details of resource names.
 */
pub struct LambdaManager {
    iam_client: aws_sdk_iam::Client,
    lambda_client: aws_sdk_lambda::Client,
    s3_client: aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    lambda_name: String,
    role_name: String,
    bucket: String,
    own_bucket: bool,
}

// These unit type structs provide nominal typing on top of String parameters for
 LambdaManager::new
pub struct LambdaName(pub String);
pub struct RoleName(pub String);
pub struct Bucket(pub String);
pub struct OwnBucket(pub bool);
```

```
impl LambdaManager {
    pub fn new(
        iam_client: aws_sdk_iam::Client,
        lambda_client: aws_sdk_lambda::Client,
        s3_client: aws_sdk_s3::Client,
        lambda_name: LambdaName,
        role_name: RoleName,
        bucket: Bucket,
        own_bucket: OwnBucket,
    ) -> Self {
        Self {
            iam_client,
            lambda_client,
            s3_client,
            lambda_name: lambda_name.0,
            role_name: role_name.0,
            bucket: bucket.0,
            own_bucket: own_bucket.0,
        }
    }

    /**
     * Load the AWS configuration from the environment.
     * Look up lambda_name and bucket if none are given, or generate a random name
 if not present in the environment.
     * If the bucket name is provided, the caller needs to have created the bucket.
     * If the bucket name is generated, it will be created.
     */
    pub async fn load_from_env(lambda_name: Option<String>, bucket: Option<String>)
 -> Self {
        let sdk_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
        let lambda_name = LambdaName(lambda_name.unwrap_or_else(|| {
            std::env::var("LAMBDA_NAME").unwrap_or_else(|_|
 "rust_lambda_example".to_string())
        }));
        let role_name = RoleName(format!("{}_role", lambda_name.0));
        let (bucket, own_bucket) =
            match bucket {
                Some(bucket) => (Bucket(bucket), false),
                None => (
                    Bucket(std::env::var("LAMBDA_BUCKET").unwrap_or_else(|_| {
                        format!("rust-lambda-example-{}", uuid::Uuid::new_v4())
                    })),
                    true,
```

```
                ),
            };

        let s3_client = aws_sdk_s3::Client::new(&sdk_config);

        if own_bucket {
            info!("Creating bucket for demo: {}", bucket.0);
            s3_client
                .create_bucket()
                .bucket(bucket.0.clone())
                .create_bucket_configuration(
                    CreateBucketConfiguration::builder()

 .location_constraint(aws_sdk_s3::types::BucketLocationConstraint::from(
                            sdk_config.region().unwrap().as_ref(),
                        ))
                        .build(),
                )
                .send()
                .await
                .unwrap();
        }

        Self::new(
            aws_sdk_iam::Client::new(&sdk_config),
            aws_sdk_lambda::Client::new(&sdk_config),
            s3_client,
            lambda_name,
            role_name,
            bucket,
            OwnBucket(own_bucket),
        )
    }

    /**
     * Upload function code from a path to a zip file.
     * The zip file must have an AL2 Linux-compatible binary called `bootstrap`.
     * The easiest way to create such a zip is to use `cargo lambda build --output-
format Zip`.
     */
    async fn prepare_function(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: Option<String>,
```

```
    ) -> Result<FunctionCode, anyhow::Error> {
        let body = ByteStream::from_path(zip_file).await?;

        let key = key.unwrap_or_else(|| format!("{}_code", self.lambda_name));

        info!("Uploading function code to s3://{}/{}", self.bucket, key);
        let _ = self
            .s3_client
            .put_object()
            .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .key(key.clone())
            .body(body)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(FunctionCode::builder()
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(key)
            .build())
    }

    /**
     * Create a function, uploading from a zip file.
     */
    pub async fn create_function(&self, zip_file: PathBuf) -> Result<String,
anyhow::Error> {
        let code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, None).await?;

        let key = code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string();

        let role = self.create_role().await.map_err(|e| anyhow!(e))?;

        info!("Created iam role, waiting 15s for it to become active");
        tokio::time::sleep(Duration::from_secs(15)).await;

        info!("Creating lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let _ = self
            .lambda_client
            .create_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .code(code)
            .role(role.arn())
            .runtime(aws_sdk_lambda::types::Runtime::Providedal2)
            .handler("_unused")
```

```
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        self.lambda_client
            .publish_version()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(key)
    }

    /**
     * Create an IAM execution role for the managed Lambda function.
     * If the role already exists, use that instead.
     */
    async fn create_role(&self) -> Result<aws_sdk_iam::types::Role, CreateRoleError>
{
        info!("Creating execution role for function");
        let get_role = self
            .iam_client
            .get_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await;
        if let Ok(get_role) = get_role {
            if let Some(role) = get_role.role {
                return Ok(role);
            }
        }

        let create_role = self
            .iam_client
            .create_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .assume_role_policy_document(ROLE_POLICY_DOCUMENT)
            .send()
            .await;

        match create_role {
            Ok(create_role) => match create_role.role {
```

```
                Some(role) => Ok(role),
                None => Err(CreateRoleError::generic(
                    ErrorMetadata::builder()
                        .message("CreateRole returned empty success")
                        .build(),
                )),
            },
            Err(err) => Err(err.into_service_error()),
        }
    }

    /**
     * Poll `is_function_ready` with a 1-second delay. It returns when the function
is ready or when there's an error checking the function's state.
     */
    pub async fn wait_for_function_ready(&self) -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
        info!("Waiting for function");
        while !self.is_function_ready(None).await? {
            info!("Function is not ready, sleeping 1s");
            tokio::time::sleep(Duration::from_secs(1)).await;
        }
        Ok(())
    }

    /**
     * Check if a Lambda function is ready to be invoked.
     * A Lambda function is ready for this scenario when its state is active and its
LastUpdateStatus is Successful.
     * Additionally, if a sha256 is provided, the function must have that as its
current code hash.
     * Any missing properties or failed requests will be reported as an Err.
     */
    async fn is_function_ready(
        &self,
        expected_code_sha256: Option<&str>,
    ) -> Result<bool, anyhow::Error> {
        match self.get_function().await {
            Ok(func) => {
                if let Some(config) = func.configuration() {
                    if let Some(state) = config.state() {
                        info!(?state, "Checking if function is active");
                        if !matches!(state, State::Active) {
                            return Ok(false);
                        }
```

```
                    }
                    match config.last_update_status() {
                        Some(last_update_status) => {
                            info!(?last_update_status, "Checking if function is
ready");
                            match last_update_status {
                                LastUpdateStatus::Successful => {
                                    // continue
                                }
                                LastUpdateStatus::Failed |
LastUpdateStatus::InProgress => {
                                    return Ok(false);
                                }
                                unknown => {
                                    warn!(
                                        status_variant = unknown.as_str(),
                                        "LastUpdateStatus unknown"
                                    );
                                    return Err(anyhow!(
                                        "Unknown LastUpdateStatus, fn config is
{config:?}"
                                    ));
                                }
                            }
                        }
                        None => {
                            warn!("Missing last update status");
                            return Ok(false);
                        }
                    };
                    if expected_code_sha256.is_none() {
                        return Ok(true);
                    }
                    if let Some(code_sha256) = config.code_sha256() {
                        return Ok(code_sha256 ==
expected_code_sha256.unwrap_or_default());
                    }
                }
            }
            Err(e) => {
                warn!(?e, "Could not get function while waiting");
            }
        }
        Ok(false)
```

```
    }

    /** Get the Lambda function with this Manager's name. */
    pub async fn get_function(&self) -> Result<GetFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        info!("Getting lambda function");
        self.lambda_client
            .get_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }

    /** List all Lambda functions in the current Region. */
    pub async fn list_functions(&self) -> Result<ListFunctionsOutput, anyhow::Error>
{
        info!("Listing lambda functions");
        self.lambda_client
            .list_functions()
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }

    /** Invoke the lambda function using calculator InvokeArgs. */
    pub async fn invoke(&self, args: InvokeArgs) -> Result<InvokeOutput,
anyhow::Error> {
        info!(?args, "Invoking {}", self.lambda_name);
        let payload = serde_json::to_string(&args)?;
        debug!(?payload, "Sending payload");
        self.lambda_client
            .invoke()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .payload(Blob::new(payload))
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }

    /** Given a Path to a zip file, update the function's code and wait for the
update to finish. */
    pub async fn update_function_code(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
```

```
        key: String,
    ) -> Result<UpdateFunctionCodeOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        let function_code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, Some(key)).await?;

        info!("Updating code for {}", self.lambda_name);
        let update = self
            .lambda_client
            .update_function_code()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(function_code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        Ok(update)
    }

    /** Update the environment for a function. */
    pub async fn update_function_configuration(
        &self,
        environment: Environment,
    ) -> Result<UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        info!(
            ?environment,
            "Updating environment for {}", self.lambda_name
        );
        let updated = self
            .lambda_client
            .update_function_configuration()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .environment(environment)
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        Ok(updated)
    }
```

```
    /** Delete a function and its role, and if possible or necessary, its associated
code object and bucket. */
    pub async fn delete_function(
        &self,
        location: Option<String>,
    ) -> (
        Result<DeleteFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Result<DeleteRoleOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
    ) {
        info!("Deleting lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let delete_function = self
            .lambda_client
            .delete_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        info!("Deleting iam role {}", self.role_name);
        let delete_role = self
            .iam_client
            .delete_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        let delete_object: Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>> =
            if let Some(location) = location {
                info!("Deleting object {location}");
                Some(
                    self.s3_client
                        .delete_object()
                        .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
                        .key(location)
                        .send()
                        .await
                        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from),
                )
            } else {
                info!(?location, "Skipping delete object");
                None
            };
```

```
        (delete_function, delete_role, delete_object)
    }

    pub async fn cleanup(
        &self,
        location: Option<String>,
    ) -> (
        (
            Result<DeleteFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>,
            Result<DeleteRoleOutput, anyhow::Error>,
            Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
        ),
        Option<Result<DeleteBucketOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
    ) {
        let delete_function = self.delete_function(location).await;

        let delete_bucket = if self.own_bucket {
            info!("Deleting bucket {}", self.bucket);
            if delete_function.2.is_none() ||
 delete_function.2.as_ref().unwrap().is_ok() {
                Some(
                    self.s3_client
                        .delete_bucket()
                        .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
                        .send()
                        .await
                        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from),
                )
            } else {
                None
            }
        } else {
            info!("No bucket to clean up");
            None
        };

        (delete_function, delete_bucket)
    }
}

/**
 * Testing occurs primarily as an integration test running the `scenario` bin
 successfully.
```

```
 * Each action relies deeply on the internal workings and state of Amazon Simple
 Storage Service (Amazon S3), Lambda, and IAM working together.
 * It is therefore infeasible to mock the clients to test the individual actions.
 */
#[cfg(test)]
mod test {
    use super::{InvokeArgs, Operation};
    use serde_json::json;

    /** Make sure that the JSON output of serializing InvokeArgs is what's expected
 by the calculator. */
    #[test]
    fn test_serialize() {
        assert_eq!(json!(InvokeArgs::Increment(5)), 5);
        assert_eq!(
            json!(InvokeArgs::Arithmetic(Operation::Plus, 5, 7)).to_string(),
            r#"{"op":"plus","i":5,"j":7}"#.to_string(),
        );
    }
}
```

A binary to run the scenario from front to end, using command line flags to control some behavior. This file is src/bin/scenario.rs in the crate.

```
/*
## Service actions

Service actions wrap the SDK call, taking a client and any specific parameters
 necessary for the call.

* CreateFunction
* GetFunction
* ListFunctions
* Invoke
* UpdateFunctionCode
* UpdateFunctionConfiguration
* DeleteFunction

## Scenario
```

```
A scenario runs at a command prompt and prints output to the user on the result
 of each service action. A scenario can run in one of two ways: straight through,
 printing out progress as it goes, or as an interactive question/answer script.

## Getting started with functions

Use an SDK to manage AWS Lambda functions: create a function, invoke it, update its
 code, invoke it again, view its output and logs, and delete it.

This scenario uses two Lambda handlers:
_Note: Handlers don't use AWS SDK API calls._

The increment handler is straightforward:

1. It accepts a number, increments it, and returns the new value.
2. It performs simple logging of the result.

The arithmetic handler is more complex:
1. It accepts a set of actions ['plus', 'minus', 'times', 'divided-by'] and two
 numbers, and returns the result of the calculation.
2. It uses an environment variable to control log level (such as DEBUG, INFO,
 WARNING, ERROR).
It logs a few things at different levels, such as:
    * DEBUG: Full event data.
    * INFO: The calculation result.
    * WARN~ING~: When a divide by zero error occurs.
    * This will be the typical `RUST_LOG` variable.


The steps of the scenario are:

1. Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that meets the following
 requirements:
    * Has an assume_role policy that grants 'lambda.amazonaws.com' the
 'sts:AssumeRole' action.
    * Attaches the 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole' managed role.
    * _You must wait for ~10 seconds after the role is created before you can use
 it!_
2. Create a function (CreateFunction) for the increment handler by packaging it as a
 zip and doing one of the following:
    * Adding it with CreateFunction Code.ZipFile.
    * --or--
```

```
    * Uploading it to Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) and adding it with
 CreateFunction Code.S3Bucket/S3Key.
    * _Note: Zipping the file does not have to be done in code._
    * If you have a waiter, use it to wait until the function is active. Otherwise,
 call GetFunction until State is Active.
3. Invoke the function with a number and print the result.
4. Update the function (UpdateFunctionCode) to the arithmetic handler by packaging
 it as a zip and doing one of the following:
    * Adding it with UpdateFunctionCode ZipFile.
    * --or--
    * Uploading it to Amazon S3 and adding it with UpdateFunctionCode S3Bucket/
S3Key.
5. Call GetFunction until Configuration.LastUpdateStatus is 'Successful' (or
 'Failed').
6. Update the environment variable by calling UpdateFunctionConfiguration and pass
 it a log level, such as:
    * Environment={'Variables': {'RUST_LOG': 'TRACE'}}
7. Invoke the function with an action from the list and a couple of values. Include
 LogType='Tail' to get logs in the result. Print the result of the calculation and
 the log.
8. [Optional] Invoke the function to provoke a divide-by-zero error and show the log
 result.
9. List all functions for the account, using pagination (ListFunctions).
10. Delete the function (DeleteFunction).
11. Delete the role.

Each step should use the function created in Service Actions to abstract calling the
 SDK.
 */

use aws_sdk_lambda::{operation::invoke::InvokeOutput, types::Environment};
use clap::Parser;
use std::{collections::HashMap, path::PathBuf};
use tracing::{debug, info, warn};
use tracing_subscriber::EnvFilter;

use lambda_code_examples::actions::{
    InvokeArgs::{Arithmetic, Increment},
    LambdaManager, Operation,
};

#[derive(Debug, Parser)]
pub struct Opt {
    /// The AWS Region.
```

```
    #[structopt(short, long)]
    pub region: Option<String>,

    // The bucket to use for the FunctionCode.
    #[structopt(short, long)]
    pub bucket: Option<String>,

    // The name of the Lambda function.
    #[structopt(short, long)]
    pub lambda_name: Option<String>,

    // The number to increment.
    #[structopt(short, long, default_value = "12")]
    pub inc: i32,

    // The left operand.
    #[structopt(long, default_value = "19")]
    pub num_a: i32,

    // The right operand.
    #[structopt(long, default_value = "23")]
    pub num_b: i32,

    // The arithmetic operation.
    #[structopt(short, long, default_value = "plus")]
    pub operation: Operation,

    #[structopt(long)]
    pub cleanup: Option<bool>,

    #[structopt(long)]
    pub no_cleanup: Option<bool>,
}

fn code_path(lambda: &str) -> PathBuf {
    PathBuf::from(format!("../target/lambda/{lambda}/bootstrap.zip"))
}

fn log_invoke_output(invoke: &InvokeOutput, message: &str) {
    if let Some(payload) = invoke.payload().cloned() {
        let payload = String::from_utf8(payload.into_inner());
        info!(?payload, message);
    } else {
        info!("Could not extract payload")
```

```
    }
    if let Some(logs) = invoke.log_result() {
        debug!(?logs, "Invoked function logs")
    } else {
        debug!("Invoked function had no logs")
    }
}

async fn main_block(
    opt: &Opt,
    manager: &LambdaManager,
    code_location: String,
) -> Result<(), anyhow::Error> {
    let invoke = manager.invoke(Increment(opt.inc)).await?;
    log_invoke_output(&invoke, "Invoked function configured as increment");

    let update_code = manager
        .update_function_code(code_path("arithmetic"), code_location.clone())
        .await?;

    let code_sha256 = update_code.code_sha256().unwrap_or("Unknown SHA");
    info!(?code_sha256, "Updated function code with arithmetic.zip");

    let arithmetic_args = Arithmetic(opt.operation, opt.num_a, opt.num_b);
    let invoke = manager.invoke(arithmetic_args).await?;
    log_invoke_output(&invoke, "Invoked function configured as arithmetic");

    let update = manager
        .update_function_configuration(
            Environment::builder()
                .set_variables(Some(HashMap::from([(
                    "RUST_LOG".to_string(),
                    "trace".to_string(),
                )])))
                .build(),
        )
        .await?;
    let updated_environment = update.environment();
    info!(?updated_environment, "Updated function configuration");

    let invoke = manager
        .invoke(Arithmetic(opt.operation, opt.num_a, opt.num_b))
        .await?;
    log_invoke_output(
```

```
        &invoke,
        "Invoked function configured as arithmetic with increased logging",
    );

    let invoke = manager
        .invoke(Arithmetic(Operation::DividedBy, opt.num_a, 0))
        .await?;
    log_invoke_output(
        &invoke,
        "Invoked function configured as arithmetic with divide by zero",
    );

    Ok::<(), anyhow::Error>(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .without_time()
        .with_file(true)
        .with_line_number(true)
        .with_env_filter(EnvFilter::from_default_env())
        .init();

    let opt = Opt::parse();
    let manager = LambdaManager::load_from_env(opt.lambda_name.clone(),
 opt.bucket.clone()).await;

    let key = match manager.create_function(code_path("increment")).await {
        Ok(init) => {
            info!(?init, "Created function, initially with increment.zip");
            let run_block = main_block(&opt, &manager, init.clone()).await;
            info!(?run_block, "Finished running example, cleaning up");
            Some(init)
        }
        Err(err) => {
            warn!(?err, "Error happened when initializing function");
            None
        }
    };

    if Some(false) == opt.cleanup || Some(true) == opt.no_cleanup {
        info!("Skipping cleanup")
    } else {
```

```
        let delete = manager.cleanup(key).await;
        info!(?delete, "Deleted function & cleaned up resources");
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   /**
    * Create a function, uploading from a zip file.
    */
   pub async fn create_function(&self, zip_file: PathBuf) -> Result<String,
anyhow::Error> {
       let code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, None).await?;

       let key = code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string();

       let role = self.create_role().await.map_err(|e| anyhow!(e))?;
```

```
        info!("Created iam role, waiting 15s for it to become active");
        tokio::time::sleep(Duration::from_secs(15)).await;

        info!("Creating lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
        let _ = self
            .lambda_client
            .create_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .code(code)
            .role(role.arn())
            .runtime(aws_sdk_lambda::types::Runtime::Providedal2)
            .handler("_unused")
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        self.lambda_client
            .publish_version()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(key)
    }

    /**
     * Upload function code from a path to a zip file.
     * The zip file must have an AL2 Linux-compatible binary called `bootstrap`.
     * The easiest way to create such a zip is to use `cargo lambda build --output-
format Zip`.
     */
    async fn prepare_function(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<FunctionCode, anyhow::Error> {
        let body = ByteStream::from_path(zip_file).await?;

        let key = key.unwrap_or_else(|| format!("{}_code", self.lambda_name));

        info!("Uploading function code to s3://{}/{}", self.bucket, key);
```

```
        let _ = self
            .s3_client
            .put_object()
            .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .key(key.clone())
            .body(body)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(FunctionCode::builder()
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(key)
            .build())
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Delete a function and its role, and if possible or necessary, its associated
code object and bucket. */
    pub async fn delete_function(
        &self,
        location: Option<String>,
    ) -> (
        Result<DeleteFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Result<DeleteRoleOutput, anyhow::Error>,
        Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>>,
    ) {
        info!("Deleting lambda function {}", self.lambda_name);
```

```
        let delete_function = self
            .lambda_client
            .delete_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        info!("Deleting iam role {}", self.role_name);
        let delete_role = self
            .iam_client
            .delete_role()
            .role_name(self.role_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from);

        let delete_object: Option<Result<DeleteObjectOutput, anyhow::Error>> =
            if let Some(location) = location {
                info!("Deleting object {location}");
                Some(
                    self.s3_client
                        .delete_object()
                        .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
                        .key(location)
                        .send()
                        .await
                        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from),
                )
            } else {
                info!(?location, "Skipping delete object");
                None
            };

        (delete_function, delete_role, delete_object)
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Get the Lambda function with this Manager's name. */
    pub async fn get_function(&self) -> Result<GetFunctionOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        info!("Getting lambda function");
        self.lambda_client
            .get_function()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`Invoke`

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Invoke the lambda function using calculator InvokeArgs. */
    pub async fn invoke(&self, args: InvokeArgs) -> Result<InvokeOutput,
anyhow::Error> {
        info!(?args, "Invoking {}", self.lambda_name);
        let payload = serde_json::to_string(&args)?;
```

```
        debug!(?payload, "Sending payload");
        self.lambda_client
            .invoke()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .payload(Blob::new(payload))
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }

fn log_invoke_output(invoke: &InvokeOutput, message: &str) {
    if let Some(payload) = invoke.payload().cloned() {
        let payload = String::from_utf8(payload.into_inner());
        info!(?payload, message);
    } else {
        info!("Could not extract payload")
    }
    if let Some(logs) = invoke.log_result() {
        debug!(?logs, "Invoked function logs")
    } else {
        debug!("Invoked function had no logs")
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** List all Lambda functions in the current Region. */
    pub async fn list_functions(&self) -> Result<ListFunctionsOutput, anyhow::Error>
 {
```

```
        info!("Listing lambda functions");
        self.lambda_client
            .list_functions()
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    /** Given a Path to a zip file, update the function's code and wait for the
update to finish. */
    pub async fn update_function_code(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: String,
    ) -> Result<UpdateFunctionCodeOutput, anyhow::Error> {
        let function_code = self.prepare_function(zip_file, Some(key)).await?;

        info!("Updating code for {}", self.lambda_name);
        let update = self
            .lambda_client
            .update_function_code()
            .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(function_code.s3_key().unwrap().to_string())
            .send()
            .await
            .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;
```

```
        self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

        Ok(update)
    }

    /**
     * Upload function code from a path to a zip file.
     * The zip file must have an AL2 Linux-compatible binary called `bootstrap`.
     * The easiest way to create such a zip is to use `cargo lambda build --output-
format Zip`.
     */
    async fn prepare_function(
        &self,
        zip_file: PathBuf,
        key: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<FunctionCode, anyhow::Error> {
        let body = ByteStream::from_path(zip_file).await?;

        let key = key.unwrap_or_else(|| format!("{}_code", self.lambda_name));

        info!("Uploading function code to s3://{}/{}", self.bucket, key);
        let _ = self
            .s3_client
            .put_object()
            .bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .key(key.clone())
            .body(body)
            .send()
            .await?;

        Ok(FunctionCode::builder()
            .s3_bucket(self.bucket.clone())
            .s3_key(key)
            .build())
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/** Update the environment for a function. */
pub async fn update_function_configuration(
    &self,
    environment: Environment,
) -> Result<UpdateFunctionConfigurationOutput, anyhow::Error> {
    info!(
        ?environment,
        "Updating environment for {}", self.lambda_name
    );
    let updated = self
        .lambda_client
        .update_function_configuration()
        .function_name(self.lambda_name.clone())
        .environment(environment)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(anyhow::Error::from)?;

    self.wait_for_function_ready().await?;

    Ok(updated)
}
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Rust.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_credential_types::provider::ProvideCredentials;
use aws_sigv4::{
    http_request::{sign, SignableBody, SignableRequest, SigningSettings},
```

```
    sign::v4,
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use serde_json::{json, Value};
use sqlx::postgres::PgConnectOptions;
use std::env;
use std::time::{Duration, SystemTime};

const RDS_CERTS: &[u8] = include_bytes!("global-bundle.pem");

async fn generate_rds_iam_token(
    db_hostname: &str,
    port: u16,
    db_username: &str,
) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let config = aws_config::load_defaults(BehaviorVersion::v2024_03_28()).await;

    let credentials = config
        .credentials_provider()
        .expect("no credentials provider found")
        .provide_credentials()
        .await
        .expect("unable to load credentials");
    let identity = credentials.into();
    let region = config.region().unwrap().to_string();

    let mut signing_settings = SigningSettings::default();
    signing_settings.expires_in = Some(Duration::from_secs(900));
    signing_settings.signature_location =
 aws_sigv4::http_request::SignatureLocation::QueryParams;

    let signing_params = v4::SigningParams::builder()
        .identity(&identity)
        .region(&region)
        .name("rds-db")
        .time(SystemTime::now())
        .settings(signing_settings)
        .build()?;

    let url = format!(
        "https://{db_hostname}:{port}/?Action=connect&DBUser={db_user}",
        db_hostname = db_hostname,
        port = port,
        db_user = db_username
```

```
    );

    let signable_request =
        SignableRequest::new("GET", &url, std::iter::empty(),
 SignableBody::Bytes(&[]))
            .expect("signable request");

    let (signing_instructions, _signature) =
        sign(signable_request, &signing_params.into())?.into_parts();

    let mut url = url::Url::parse(&url).unwrap();
    for (name, value) in signing_instructions.params() {
        url.query_pairs_mut().append_pair(name, &value);
    }

    let response = url.to_string().split_off("https://".len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(handler)).await
}

async fn handler(_event: LambdaEvent<Value>) -> Result<Value, Error> {
    let db_host = env::var("DB_HOSTNAME").expect("DB_HOSTNAME must be set");
    let db_port = env::var("DB_PORT")
        .expect("DB_PORT must be set")
        .parse::<u16>()
        .expect("PORT must be a valid number");
    let db_name = env::var("DB_NAME").expect("DB_NAME must be set");
    let db_user_name = env::var("DB_USERNAME").expect("DB_USERNAME must be set");

    let token = generate_rds_iam_token(&db_host, db_port, &db_user_name).await?;

    let opts = PgConnectOptions::new()
        .host(&db_host)
        .port(db_port)
        .username(&db_user_name)
        .password(&token)
        .database(&db_name)
        .ssl_root_cert_from_pem(RDS_CERTS.to_vec())
        .ssl_mode(sqlx::postgres::PgSslMode::Require);
```

```
    let pool = sqlx::postgres::PgPoolOptions::new()
        .connect_with(opts)
        .await?;

    let result: i32 = sqlx::query_scalar("SELECT $1 + $2")
        .bind(3)
        .bind(2)
        .fetch_one(&pool)
        .await?;

    println!("Result: {:?}", result);

    Ok(json!({
        "statusCode": 200,
        "content-type": "text/plain",
        "body": format!("The selected sum is: {result}")
    }))
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a Kinesis stream. The function retrieves the Kinesis payload, decodes from Base64, and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Kinesis event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::kinesis::KinesisEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
```

```
async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        tracing::info!("EventId:
 {}",record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default());

        let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(&record.kinesis.data);

        match record_data {
            Ok(data) => {
                // log the record data
                tracing::info!("Data: {}", data);
            }
            Err(e) => {
                tracing::error!("Error: {}", e);
            }
        }
    });

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
```

```
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DynamoDB stream. The function retrieves the DynamoDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a DynamoDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord},
   };


// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->Result<(), Error> {

    let records = &event.payload.records;
    tracing::info!("event payload: {:?}",records);
    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
```

```
    }

    for record in records{
        log_dynamo_dbrecord(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Dynamo db records processed");

    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_dynamo_dbrecord(record: &EventRecord)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);
    tracing::info!("EventName: {}", record.event_name);
    tracing::info!("DynamoDB Record: {:?}", record.change );
    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from a Amazon DocumentDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from a DocumentDB change stream. The function retrieves the DocumentDB payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming a Amazon DocumentDB event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use lambda_runtime::{service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::documentdb::{DocumentDbEvent, DocumentDbInnerEvent},
   };


// Built with the following dependencies:
//lambda_runtime = "0.11.1"
//serde_json = "1.0"
//tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }
//aws_lambda_events = "0.15.0"

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<DocumentDbEvent>) ->Result<(), Error> {

    tracing::info!("Event Source ARN: {:?}", event.payload.event_source_arn);
    tracing::info!("Event Source: {:?}", event.payload.event_source);

    let records = &event.payload.events;

    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(());
    }

    for record in records{
        log_document_db_event(record);
    }

    tracing::info!("Document db records processed");
```

```
    // Prepare the response
    Ok(())

}

fn log_document_db_event(record: &DocumentDbInnerEvent)-> Result<(), Error>{
    tracing::info!("Change Event: {:?}", record.event);

    Ok(())

}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
    .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
    .with_target(false)
    .without_time()
    .init();

    let func = service_fn(function_handler);
    lambda_runtime::run(func).await?;
    Ok(())

}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::event::kafka::KafkaEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use base64::prelude::*;
use serde_json::{Value};
use tracing::{info};

/// Pre-Requisites:
/// 1. Install Cargo Lambda - see https://www.cargo-lambda.info/guide/getting-
started.html
/// 2. Add packages tracing, tracing-subscriber, serde_json, base64
///
/// This is the main body for the function.
/// Write your code inside it.
/// There are some code example in the following URLs:
/// - https://github.com/awslabs/aws-lambda-rust-runtime/tree/main/examples
/// - https://github.com/aws-samples/serverless-rust-demo/

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KafkaEvent>) -> Result<Value, Error> {

    let payload = event.payload.records;

    for (_name, records) in payload.iter() {

        for record in records {

         let record_text = record.value.as_ref().ok_or("Value is None")?;
         info!("Record: {}", &record_text);

         // perform Base64 decoding
         let record_bytes = BASE64_STANDARD.decode(record_text)?;
         let message = std::str::from_utf8(&record_bytes)?;

         info!("Message: {}", message);
        }

    }

    Ok(().into())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
```

```
    // required to enable CloudWatch error logging by the runtime
    tracing::init_default_subscriber();
    info!("Setup CW subscriber!");

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::s3::S3Event;
use aws_sdk_s3::{Client};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};


/// Main function
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();
```

```
    // Initialize the AWS SDK for Rust
    let config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let s3_client = Client::new(&config);

    let res = run(service_fn(|request: LambdaEvent<S3Event>| {
        function_handler(&s3_client, request)
    })).await;

    res
}

async fn function_handler(
    s3_client: &Client,
    evt: LambdaEvent<S3Event>
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing::info!(records = ?evt.payload.records.len(), "Received request from
 SQS");

    if evt.payload.records.len() == 0 {
        tracing::info!("Empty S3 event received");
    }

    let bucket = evt.payload.records[0].s3.bucket.name.as_ref().expect("Bucket name
 to exist");
    let key = evt.payload.records[0].s3.object.key.as_ref().expect("Object key to
 exist");

    tracing::info!("Request is for {} and object {}", bucket, key);

    let s3_get_object_result = s3_client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await;

    match s3_get_object_result {
        Ok(_) => tracing::info!("S3 Get Object success, the s3GetObjectResult
 contains a 'body' property of type ByteStream"),
        Err(_) => tracing::info!("Failure with S3 Get Object request")
    }

    Ok(())
```

```
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sns::SnsEvent;
use aws_lambda_events::sns::SnsRecord;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use tracing::info;

// Built with the following dependencies:
//  aws_lambda_events = { version = "0.10.0", default-features = false, features =
 ["sns"] }
//  lambda_runtime = "0.8.1"
//  tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//  tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//  tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SnsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    for event in event.payload.records {
        process_record(&event)?;
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

```
fn process_record(record: &SnsRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    info!("Processing SNS Message: {}", record.sns.message);

    // Implement your record handling code here.

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sqs::SqsEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
```

```
async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        // process the record
        tracing::info!("Message body: {}",
 record.body.as_deref().unwrap_or_default())
    });

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a Kinesis trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a Kinesis stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting Kinesis batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
```

```
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::kinesis::KinesisEvent,
    kinesis::KinesisEventRecord,
    streams::{KinesisBatchItemFailure, KinesisEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KinesisEvent>) ->
 Result<KinesisEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = KinesisEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    if event.payload.records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in &event.payload.records {
        tracing::info!(
            "EventId: {}",
            record.event_id.as_deref().unwrap_or_default()
        );

        let record_processing_result = process_record(record);

        if record_processing_result.is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(KinesisBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.kinesis.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!(
        "Successfully processed {} records",
        event.payload.records.len()
    );

    Ok(response)
```

```
}

fn process_record(record: &KinesisEventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let record_data = std::str::from_utf8(record.kinesis.data.as_slice());

    if let Some(err) = record_data.err() {
        tracing::error!("Error: {}", err);
        return Err(Error::from(err));
    }

    let record_data = record_data.unwrap_or_default();

    // do something interesting with the data
    tracing::info!("Data: {}", record_data);

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with a DynamoDB trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from a DynamoDB stream. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting DynamoDB batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::dynamodb::{Event, EventRecord, StreamRecord},
    streams::{DynamoDbBatchItemFailure, DynamoDbEventResponse},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

/// Process the stream record
fn process_record(record: &EventRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let stream_record: &StreamRecord = &record.change;

    // process your stream record here...
    tracing::info!("Data: {:?}", stream_record);

    Ok(())
}

/// Main Lambda handler here...
async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<Event>) ->
 Result<DynamoDbEventResponse, Error> {
    let mut response = DynamoDbEventResponse {
        batch_item_failures: vec![],
    };

    let records = &event.payload.records;

    if records.is_empty() {
        tracing::info!("No records found. Exiting.");
        return Ok(response);
    }

    for record in records {
        tracing::info!("EventId: {}", record.event_id);
```

```
        // Couldn't find a sequence number
        if record.change.sequence_number.is_none() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: Some("".to_string()),
            });
            return Ok(response);
        }

        // Process your record here...
        if process_record(record).is_err() {
            response.batch_item_failures.push(DynamoDbBatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.change.sequence_number.clone(),
            });
            /* Since we are working with streams, we can return the failed item
 immediately.
            Lambda will immediately begin to retry processing from this failed item
 onwards. */
            return Ok(response);
        }
    }

    tracing::info!("Successfully processed {} record(s)", records.len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::sqs::{SqsBatchResponse, SqsEvent},
    sqs::{BatchItemFailure, SqsMessage},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn process_record(_: &SqsMessage) -> Result<(), Error> {
    Err(Error::from("Error processing message"))
}

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) -> Result<SqsBatchResponse,
 Error> {
    let mut batch_item_failures = Vec::new();
    for record in event.payload.records {
        match process_record(&record).await {
            Ok(_) => (),
            Err(_) => batch_item_failures.push(BatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.message_id.unwrap(),
            }),
        }
    }

    Ok(SqsBatchResponse {
        batch_item_failures,
```

```
    })
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

AWS community contributions

Build and test a serverless application

The following code example shows how to build and test a serverless application using API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB

SDK for Rust

Shows how to build and test a serverless application that consists of an API Gateway with Lambda and DynamoDB using the Rust SDK.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda

MediaLive examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with MediaLive.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListInputs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListInputs`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your MediaLive input names and ARNs in the Region.

```
async fn show_inputs(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let input_list = client.list_inputs().send().await?;

    for i in input_list.inputs() {
        let input_arn = i.arn().unwrap_or_default();
        let input_name = i.name().unwrap_or_default();

        println!("Input Name : {}", input_name);
        println!("Input ARN : {}", input_arn);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListInputs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

MediaPackage examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with MediaPackage.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListChannels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListChannels`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List channel ARNs and descriptions.

```
async fn show_channels(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let list_channels = client.list_channels().send().await?;

    println!("Channels:");

    for c in list_channels.channels() {
        let description = c.description().unwrap_or_default();
        let arn = c.arn().unwrap_or_default();

        println!("  Description : {}", description);
        println!("  ARN :         {}", arn);
```

```
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListChannels in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListOriginEndpoints`

The following code example shows how to use `ListOriginEndpoints`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

List your endpoint descriptions and URLs.

```
async fn show_endpoints(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let or_endpoints = client.list_origin_endpoints().send().await?;

    println!("Endpoints:");

    for e in or_endpoints.origin_endpoints() {
        let endpoint_url = e.url().unwrap_or_default();
        let endpoint_description = e.description().unwrap_or_default();
        println!("  Description: {}", endpoint_description);
        println!("  URL :        {}", endpoint_url);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListOriginEndpoints in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon MSK examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon MSK.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon MSK trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving records from an Amazon MSK cluster. The function retrieves the MSK payload and logs the record contents.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an Amazon MSK event with Lambda using Rust.

```
use aws_lambda_events::event::kafka::KafkaEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, tracing, Error, LambdaEvent};
use base64::prelude::*;
use serde_json::{Value};
use tracing::{info};

/// Pre-Requisites:
/// 1. Install Cargo Lambda - see https://www.cargo-lambda.info/guide/getting-
started.html
/// 2. Add packages tracing, tracing-subscriber, serde_json, base64
///
/// This is the main body for the function.
```

```
/// Write your code inside it.
/// There are some code example in the following URLs:
/// - https://github.com/awslabs/aws-lambda-rust-runtime/tree/main/examples
/// - https://github.com/aws-samples/serverless-rust-demo/

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<KafkaEvent>) -> Result<Value, Error> {

    let payload = event.payload.records;

    for (_name, records) in payload.iter() {

        for record in records {

         let record_text = record.value.as_ref().ok_or("Value is None")?;
         info!("Record: {}", &record_text);

         // perform Base64 decoding
         let record_bytes = BASE64_STANDARD.decode(record_text)?;
         let message = std::str::from_utf8(&record_bytes)?;

         info!("Message: {}", message);
        }

    }

    Ok(().into())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {

    // required to enable CloudWatch error logging by the runtime
    tracing::init_default_subscriber();
    info!("Setup CW subscriber!");

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Amazon Polly examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Polly.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeVoices`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeVoices`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn list_voices(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_voices().send().await?;

    println!("Voices:");

    let voices = resp.voices();
    for voice in voices {
        println!("  Name:     {}", voice.name().unwrap_or("No name!"));
        println!(
            "  Language: {}",
            voice.language_name().unwrap_or("No language!")
        );
```

```
        println!();
    }

    println!("Found {} voices", voices.len());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeVoices in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListLexicons`

The following code example shows how to use `ListLexicons`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_lexicons(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_lexicons().send().await?;

    println!("Lexicons:");

    let lexicons = resp.lexicons();

    for lexicon in lexicons {
        println!("  Name:     {}", lexicon.name().unwrap_or_default());
        println!(
            "  Language: {:?}\n",
            lexicon
                .attributes()
                .as_ref()
                .map(|attrib| attrib
                    .language_code
                    .as_ref()
                    .expect("languages must have language codes"))
                .expect("languages must have attributes")
```

```
        );
    }

    println!();
    println!("Found {} lexicons.", lexicons.len());
    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListLexicons in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`PutLexicon`

The following code example shows how to use `PutLexicon`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_lexicon(client: &Client, name: &str, from: &str, to: &str) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    let content = format!("<?xml version=\"1.0\" encoding=\"UTF-8\"?>
    <lexicon version=\"1.0\" xmlns=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon
\" xmlns:xsi=\"http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance\"
    xsi:schemaLocation=\"http://www.w3.org/2005/01/pronunciation-lexicon http://
www.w3.org/TR/2007/CR-pronunciation-lexicon-20071212/pls.xsd\"
    alphabet=\"ipa\" xml:lang=\"en-US\">
    <lexeme><grapheme>{}</grapheme><alias>{}</alias></lexeme>
    </lexicon>", from, to);

    client
        .put_lexicon()
        .name(name)
        .content(content)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    println!("Added lexicon");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutLexicon in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`SynthesizeSpeech`

The following code example shows how to use `SynthesizeSpeech`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn synthesize(client: &Client, filename: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let content = fs::read_to_string(filename);

    let resp = client
        .synthesize_speech()
        .output_format(OutputFormat::Mp3)
        .text(content.unwrap())
        .voice_id(VoiceId::Joanna)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Get MP3 data from response and save it
    let mut blob = resp
        .audio_stream
        .collect()
        .await
        .expect("failed to read data");

    let parts: Vec<&str> = filename.split('.').collect();
    let out_file = format!("{}{}", String::from(parts[0]), ".mp3");
```

```
    let mut file = tokio::fs::File::create(out_file)
        .await
        .expect("failed to create file");

    file.write_all_buf(&mut blob)
        .await
        .expect("failed to write to file");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see SynthesizeSpeech in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Convert text to speech and back to text

The following code example shows how to:

- Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file.
- Upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Transcribe to convert the audio file to text.
- Display the text.

SDK for Rust

Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file, upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Transcribe to convert that audio file to text, and display the text.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Transcribe

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon RDS.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Serverless examples

Serverless examples

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that connects to an RDS database. The function makes a simple database request and returns the result.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Connecting to an Amazon RDS database in a Lambda function using Rust.

```
use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
use aws_credential_types::provider::ProvideCredentials;
use aws_sigv4::{
    http_request::{sign, SignableBody, SignableRequest, SigningSettings},
    sign::v4,
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use serde_json::{json, Value};
use sqlx::postgres::PgConnectOptions;
use std::env;
use std::time::{Duration, SystemTime};

const RDS_CERTS: &[u8] = include_bytes!("global-bundle.pem");
```

```
async fn generate_rds_iam_token(
    db_hostname: &str,
    port: u16,
    db_username: &str,
) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let config = aws_config::load_defaults(BehaviorVersion::v2024_03_28()).await;

    let credentials = config
        .credentials_provider()
        .expect("no credentials provider found")
        .provide_credentials()
        .await
        .expect("unable to load credentials");
    let identity = credentials.into();
    let region = config.region().unwrap().to_string();

    let mut signing_settings = SigningSettings::default();
    signing_settings.expires_in = Some(Duration::from_secs(900));
    signing_settings.signature_location =
 aws_sigv4::http_request::SignatureLocation::QueryParams;

    let signing_params = v4::SigningParams::builder()
        .identity(&identity)
        .region(&region)
        .name("rds-db")
        .time(SystemTime::now())
        .settings(signing_settings)
        .build()?;

    let url = format!(
        "https://{db_hostname}:{port}/?Action=connect&DBUser={db_user}",
        db_hostname = db_hostname,
        port = port,
        db_user = db_username
    );

    let signable_request =
        SignableRequest::new("GET", &url, std::iter::empty(),
 SignableBody::Bytes(&[]))
            .expect("signable request");

    let (signing_instructions, _signature) =
        sign(signable_request, &signing_params.into())?.into_parts();
```

```
    let mut url = url::Url::parse(&url).unwrap();
    for (name, value) in signing_instructions.params() {
        url.query_pairs_mut().append_pair(name, &value);
    }

    let response = url.to_string().split_off("https://".len());

    Ok(response)
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(handler)).await
}

async fn handler(_event: LambdaEvent<Value>) -> Result<Value, Error> {
    let db_host = env::var("DB_HOSTNAME").expect("DB_HOSTNAME must be set");
    let db_port = env::var("DB_PORT")
        .expect("DB_PORT must be set")
        .parse::<u16>()
        .expect("PORT must be a valid number");
    let db_name = env::var("DB_NAME").expect("DB_NAME must be set");
    let db_user_name = env::var("DB_USERNAME").expect("DB_USERNAME must be set");

    let token = generate_rds_iam_token(&db_host, db_port, &db_user_name).await?;

    let opts = PgConnectOptions::new()
        .host(&db_host)
        .port(db_port)
        .username(&db_user_name)
        .password(&token)
        .database(&db_name)
        .ssl_root_cert_from_pem(RDS_CERTS.to_vec())
        .ssl_mode(sqlx::postgres::PgSslMode::Require);

    let pool = sqlx::postgres::PgPoolOptions::new()
        .connect_with(opts)
        .await?;

    let result: i32 = sqlx::query_scalar("SELECT $1 + $2")
        .bind(3)
        .bind(2)
        .fetch_one(&pool)
```

```
        .await?;

    println!("Result: {:?}", result);

    Ok(json!({
        "statusCode": 200,
        "content-type": "text/plain",
        "body": format!("The selected sum is: {result}")
    }))
}
```

Amazon RDS Data Service examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon RDS Data Service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ExecuteStatement`

The following code example shows how to use `ExecuteStatement`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn query_cluster(
    client: &Client,
    cluster_arn: &str,
    query: &str,
    secret_arn: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let st = client
        .execute_statement()
        .resource_arn(cluster_arn)
        .database("postgres") // Do not confuse this with db instance name
        .sql(query)
        .secret_arn(secret_arn);

    let result = st.send().await?;

    println!("{:?}", result);
    println!();

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ExecuteStatement in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Rekognition examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Rekognition.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect faces in an image

The following code example shows how to:

- Save an image in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (such as smiling).
- Display those details.

SDK for Rust

Save the image in an Amazon S3 bucket with an **uploads** prefix, use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (smiling, etc.), and display those details.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Save EXIF and other image information

The following code example shows how to:

- Get EXIF information from a a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file.
- Upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (labels) in the file.
- Add the EXIF and label information to an Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

SDK for Rust

Get EXIF information from a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file, upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (*labels* in Amazon Rekognition) in the file, and add the EXIF and label information to a Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Route 53 examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Route 53.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListHostedZones`

The following code example shows how to use `ListHostedZones`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_host_info(client: &aws_sdk_route53::Client) -> Result<(),
 aws_sdk_route53::Error> {
    let hosted_zone_count = client.get_hosted_zone_count().send().await?;

    println!(
        "Number of hosted zones in region : {}",
        hosted_zone_count.hosted_zone_count(),
    );

    let hosted_zones = client.list_hosted_zones().send().await?;
```

```
    println!("Zones:");

    for hz in hosted_zones.hosted_zones() {
        let zone_name = hz.name();
        let zone_id = hz.id();

        println!("  ID :   {}", zone_id);
        println!("  Name : {}", zone_name);
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListHostedZones in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon S3

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon S3.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// S3 Hello World Example using the AWS SDK for Rust.
///
/// This example lists the objects in a bucket, uploads an object to that bucket,
/// and then retrieves the object and prints some S3 information about the object.
/// This shows a number of S3 features, including how to use built-in paginators
/// for large data sets.
///
/// # Arguments
///
/// * `client` - an S3 client configured appropriately for the environment.
/// * `bucket` - the bucket name that the object will be uploaded to. Must be
 present in the region the `client` is configured to use.
/// * `filename` - a reference to a path that will be read and uploaded to S3.
/// * `key` - the string key that the object will be uploaded as inside the bucket.
async fn list_bucket_and_upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    filepath: &Path,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    // List the buckets in this account
    let mut objects = client
        .list_objects_v2()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .into_paginator()
        .send();

    println!("key\tetag\tlast_modified\tstorage_class");
    while let Some(Ok(object)) = objects.next().await {
        for item in object.contents() {
            println!(
                "{}\t{}\t{}\t{}",
                item.key().unwrap_or_default(),
                item.e_tag().unwrap_or_default(),
```

```
                item.last_modified()
                    .map(|lm| format!("{lm}"))
                    .unwrap_or_default(),
                item.storage_class()
                    .map(|sc| format!("{sc}"))
                    .unwrap_or_default()
            );
        }
    }

    // Prepare a ByteStream around the file, and upload the object using that
 ByteStream.
    let body = aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(filepath)
        .await
        .map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
                "Failed to create bytestream for {filepath:?} ({err:?})"
            ))
        })?;
    let resp = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .body(body)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "Upload success. Version: {:?}",
        resp.version_id()
            .expect("S3 Object upload missing version ID")
    );

    // Retrieve the just-uploaded object.
    let resp = client.get_object().bucket(bucket).key(key).send().await?;
    println!("etag: {}", resp.e_tag().unwrap_or("(missing)"));
    println!("version: {}", resp.version_id().unwrap_or("(missing)"));

    Ok(())
}
```

S3ExampleError utilities.

```
/// S3ExampleError provides a From<T: ProvideErrorMetadata> impl to extract
/// client-specific error details. This serves as a consistent backup to handling
/// specific service errors, depending on what is needed by the scenario.
/// It is used throughout the code examples for the AWS SDK for Rust.
#[derive(Debug)]
pub struct S3ExampleError(String);
impl S3ExampleError {
    pub fn new(value: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(value.into())
    }

    pub fn add_message(self, message: impl Into<String>) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(format!("{}: {}", message.into(), self.0))
    }
}

impl<T: aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata> From<T> for S3ExampleError {
    fn from(value: T) -> Self {
        S3ExampleError(format!(
            "{}: {}",
            value
                .code()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("unknown code".into()),
            value
                .message()
                .map(String::from)
                .unwrap_or("missing reason".into()),
        ))
    }
}

impl std::error::Error for S3ExampleError {}

impl std::fmt::Display for S3ExampleError {
    fn fmt(&self, f: &mut std::fmt::Formatter<'_>) -> std::fmt::Result {
        write!(f, "{}", self.0)
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Code for the binary crate which runs the scenario.

```
#![allow(clippy::result_large_err)]

//!  Purpose
//!  Shows how to use the AWS SDK for Rust to get started using
//!  Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3). Create a bucket, move objects into
 and out of it,
//!  and delete all resources at the end of the demo.
//!
```

```
//!  This example follows the steps in "Getting started with Amazon S3" in the
 Amazon S3
//!  user guide.
//!  - https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/userguide/GetStartedWithS3.html

use aws_config::meta::region::RegionProviderChain;
use aws_sdk_s3::{config::Region, Client};
use s3_code_examples::error::S3ExampleError;
use uuid::Uuid;

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::first_try(Region::new("us-west-2"));
    let region = region_provider.region().await.unwrap();
    let shared_config = aws_config::from_env().region(region_provider).load().await;
    let client = Client::new(&shared_config);
    let bucket_name = format!("amzn-s3-demo-bucket-{}", Uuid::new_v4());
    let file_name = "s3/testfile.txt".to_string();
    let key = "test file key name".to_string();
    let target_key = "target_key".to_string();

    if let Err(e) = run_s3_operations(region, client, bucket_name, file_name, key,
 target_key).await
    {
        eprintln!("{:?}", e);
    };

    Ok(())
}

async fn run_s3_operations(
    region: Region,
    client: Client,
    bucket_name: String,
    file_name: String,
    key: String,
    target_key: String,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    s3_code_examples::create_bucket(&client, &bucket_name, &region).await?;
    let run_example: Result<(), S3ExampleError> = (async {
        s3_code_examples::upload_object(&client, &bucket_name, &file_name,
 &key).await?;
        let _object = s3_code_examples::download_object(&client, &bucket_name,
 &key).await;
```

```
        s3_code_examples::copy_object(&client, &bucket_name, &bucket_name, &key,
 &target_key)
            .await?;
        s3_code_examples::list_objects(&client, &bucket_name).await?;
        s3_code_examples::clear_bucket(&client, &bucket_name).await?;
        Ok(())
    })
    .await;
    if let Err(err) = run_example {
        eprintln!("Failed to complete getting-started example: {err:?}");
    }
    s3_code_examples::delete_bucket(&client, &bucket_name).await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

Common actions used by the scenario.

```
pub async fn create_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    region: &aws_config::Region,
) -> Result<Option<aws_sdk_s3::operation::create_bucket::CreateBucketOutput>,
 S3ExampleError> {
    let constraint =
 aws_sdk_s3::types::BucketLocationConstraint::from(region.to_string().as_str());
    let cfg = aws_sdk_s3::types::CreateBucketConfiguration::builder()
        .location_constraint(constraint)
        .build();
    let create = client
        .create_bucket()
        .create_bucket_configuration(cfg)
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .send()
        .await;

    // BucketAlreadyExists and BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou are not problems for this
 task.
    create.map(Some).or_else(|err| {
        if err
            .as_service_error()
```

```
            .map(|se| se.is_bucket_already_exists() ||
 se.is_bucket_already_owned_by_you())
            == Some(true)
        {
            Ok(None)
        } else {
            Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
        }
    })
}

pub async fn upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    file_name: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<aws_sdk_s3::operation::put_object::PutObjectOutput, S3ExampleError> {
    let body =
 aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(std::path::Path::new(file_name)).await;
    client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .key(key)
        .body(body.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(S3ExampleError::from)
}

pub async fn download_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<aws_sdk_s3::operation::get_object::GetObjectOutput, S3ExampleError> {
    client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(S3ExampleError::from)
}

/// Copy an object from one bucket to another.
```

```
pub async fn copy_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    source_bucket: &str,
    destination_bucket: &str,
    source_object: &str,
    destination_object: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let source_key = format!("{source_bucket}/{source_object}");
    let response = client
        .copy_object()
        .copy_source(&source_key)
        .bucket(destination_bucket)
        .key(destination_object)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "Copied from {source_key} to {destination_bucket}/{destination_object} with
 etag {}",
        response
            .copy_object_result
            .unwrap_or_else(||
 aws_sdk_s3::types::CopyObjectResult::builder().build())
            .e_tag()
            .unwrap_or("missing")
    );
    Ok(())
}

pub async fn list_objects(client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client, bucket: &str) -> Result<(),
 S3ExampleError> {
    let mut response = client
        .list_objects_v2()
        .bucket(bucket.to_owned())
        .max_keys(10) // In this example, go 10 at a time.
        .into_paginator()
        .send();

    while let Some(result) = response.next().await {
        match result {
            Ok(output) => {
                for object in output.contents() {
                    println!(" - {}", object.key().unwrap_or("Unknown"));
                }
```

```
            }
            Err(err) => {
                eprintln!("{err:?}")
            }
        }
    }

    Ok(())
}

/// Given a bucket, remove all objects in the bucket, and then ensure no objects
/// remain in the bucket.
pub async fn clear_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
) -> Result<Vec<String>, S3ExampleError> {
    let objects = client.list_objects_v2().bucket(bucket_name).send().await?;

    // delete_objects no longer needs to be mutable.
    let objects_to_delete: Vec<String> = objects
        .contents()
        .iter()
        .filter_map(|obj| obj.key())
        .map(String::from)
        .collect();

    if objects_to_delete.is_empty() {
        return Ok(vec![]);
    }

    let return_keys = objects_to_delete.clone();

    delete_objects(client, bucket_name, objects_to_delete).await?;

    let objects = client.list_objects_v2().bucket(bucket_name).send().await?;

    eprintln!("{objects:?}");

    match objects.key_count {
        Some(0) => Ok(return_keys),
        _ => Err(S3ExampleError::new(
            "There were still objects left in the bucket.",
        )),
    }
```

```
}

pub async fn delete_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let resp = client.delete_bucket().bucket(bucket_name).send().await;
    match resp {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(err) => {
            if err
                .as_service_error()
                .and_then(aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata::code)
                == Some("NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Ok(())
            } else {
                Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CompleteMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `CompleteMultipartUpload`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();

    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;
```

```
    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
```

```
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }
```

- For API details, see CompleteMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Copy an object from one bucket to another.
pub async fn copy_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    source_bucket: &str,
    destination_bucket: &str,
    source_object: &str,
    destination_object: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let source_key = format!("{source_bucket}/{source_object}");
    let response = client
        .copy_object()
        .copy_source(&source_key)
        .bucket(destination_bucket)
        .key(destination_object)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!(
        "Copied from {source_key} to {destination_bucket}/{destination_object} with
 etag {}",
        response
            .copy_object_result
            .unwrap_or_else(||
 aws_sdk_s3::types::CopyObjectResult::builder().build())
            .e_tag()
            .unwrap_or("missing")
    );
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn create_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    region: &aws_config::Region,
) -> Result<Option<aws_sdk_s3::operation::create_bucket::CreateBucketOutput>,
 S3ExampleError> {
    let constraint =
 aws_sdk_s3::types::BucketLocationConstraint::from(region.to_string().as_str());
    let cfg = aws_sdk_s3::types::CreateBucketConfiguration::builder()
        .location_constraint(constraint)
        .build();
    let create = client
        .create_bucket()
        .create_bucket_configuration(cfg)
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .send()
        .await;

    // BucketAlreadyExists and BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou are not problems for this
 task.
    create.map(Some).or_else(|err| {
        if err
            .as_service_error()
            .map(|se| se.is_bucket_already_exists() ||
 se.is_bucket_already_owned_by_you())
            == Some(true)
        {
            Ok(None)
        } else {
            Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
        }
```

```
    })
}
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateMultipartUpload`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateMultipartUpload`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;
```

```
    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
```

```
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }
```

```
    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();

    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

- For API details, see CreateMultipartUpload in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn delete_bucket(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let resp = client.delete_bucket().bucket(bucket_name).send().await;
    match resp {
        Ok(_) => Ok(()),
        Err(err) => {
            if err
                .as_service_error()
                .and_then(aws_sdk_s3::error::ProvideErrorMetadata::code)
                == Some("NoSuchBucket")
            {
                Ok(())
            } else {
                Err(S3ExampleError::from(err))
            }
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Delete an object from a bucket.
pub async fn remove_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    key: &str,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    client
        .delete_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    // There are no modeled errors to handle when deleting an object.

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
/// Delete the objects in a bucket.
pub async fn delete_objects(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    objects_to_delete: Vec<String>,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    // Push into a mut vector to use `?` early return errors while building object
 keys.
    let mut delete_object_ids: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::ObjectIdentifier> = vec![];
    for obj in objects_to_delete {
        let obj_id = aws_sdk_s3::types::ObjectIdentifier::builder()
            .key(obj)
            .build()
            .map_err(|err| {
                S3ExampleError::new(format!("Failed to build key for delete_object:
 {err:?}"))
            })?;
        delete_object_ids.push(obj_id);
    }

    client
        .delete_objects()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .delete(
            aws_sdk_s3::types::Delete::builder()
                .set_objects(Some(delete_object_ids))
                .build()
                .map_err(|err| {
                    S3ExampleError::new(format!("Failed to build delete_object input
 {err:?}"))
                })?,
        )
        .send()
        .await?;
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

GetBucketLocation

The following code example shows how to use GetBucketLocation.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_buckets(
    strict: bool,
    client: &Client,
    region: BucketLocationConstraint,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let mut buckets = client.list_buckets().into_paginator().send();

    let mut num_buckets = 0;
    let mut in_region = 0;

    while let Some(Ok(output)) = buckets.next().await {
        for bucket in output.buckets() {
            num_buckets += 1;
            if strict {
                let r = client
                    .get_bucket_location()
                    .bucket(bucket.name().unwrap_or_default())
                    .send()
                    .await?;

                if r.location_constraint() == Some(&region) {
                    println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
                    in_region += 1;
                }
            } else {
                println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
            }
        }
    }

    println!();
```

```
    if strict {
        println!(
            "Found {} buckets in the {} region out of a total of {} buckets.",
            in_region, region, num_buckets
        );
    } else {
        println!("Found {} buckets in all regions.", num_buckets);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetBucketLocation in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn get_object(client: Client, opt: Opt) -> Result<usize, S3ExampleError> {
    trace!("bucket:      {}", opt.bucket);
    trace!("object:      {}", opt.object);
    trace!("destination: {}", opt.destination.display());

    let mut file = File::create(opt.destination.clone()).map_err(|err| {
        S3ExampleError::new(format!(
            "Failed to initialize file for saving S3 download: {err:?}"
        ))
    })?;

    let mut object = client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(opt.bucket)
        .key(opt.object)
```

```
        .send()
        .await?;

    let mut byte_count = 0_usize;
    while let Some(bytes) = object.body.try_next().await.map_err(|err| {
        S3ExampleError::new(format!("Failed to read from S3 download stream:
 {err:?}"))
    })? {
        let bytes_len = bytes.len();
        file.write_all(&bytes).map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
                "Failed to write from S3 download stream to local file: {err:?}"
            ))
        })?;
        trace!("Intermediate write of {bytes_len}");
        byte_count += bytes_len;
    }

    Ok(byte_count)
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_buckets(
    strict: bool,
    client: &Client,
    region: BucketLocationConstraint,
) -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let mut buckets = client.list_buckets().into_paginator().send();
```

```
    let mut num_buckets = 0;
    let mut in_region = 0;

    while let Some(Ok(output)) = buckets.next().await {
        for bucket in output.buckets() {
            num_buckets += 1;
            if strict {
                let r = client
                    .get_bucket_location()
                    .bucket(bucket.name().unwrap_or_default())
                    .send()
                    .await?;

                if r.location_constraint() == Some(&region) {
                    println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
                    in_region += 1;
                }
            } else {
                println!("{}", bucket.name().unwrap_or_default());
            }
        }
    }

    println!();
    if strict {
        println!(
            "Found {} buckets in the {} region out of a total of {} buckets.",
            in_region, region, num_buckets
        );
    } else {
        println!("Found {} buckets in all regions.", num_buckets);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListObjectVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectVersions`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_versions(client: &Client, bucket: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_object_versions().bucket(bucket).send().await?;

    for version in resp.versions() {
        println!("{}", version.key().unwrap_or_default());
        println!("  version ID: {}", version.version_id().unwrap_or_default());
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectVersions in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn list_objects(client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client, bucket: &str) -> Result<(),
 S3ExampleError> {
    let mut response = client
        .list_objects_v2()
```

```
        .bucket(bucket.to_owned())
        .max_keys(10) // In this example, go 10 at a time.
        .into_paginator()
        .send();

    while let Some(result) = response.next().await {
        match result {
            Ok(output) => {
                for object in output.contents() {
                    println!(" - {}", object.key().unwrap_or("Unknown"));
                }
            }
            Err(err) => {
                eprintln!("{err:?}")
            }
        }
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
pub async fn upload_object(
    client: &aws_sdk_s3::Client,
    bucket_name: &str,
    file_name: &str,
    key: &str,
```

```
) -> Result<aws_sdk_s3::operation::put_object::PutObjectOutput, S3ExampleError> {
    let body =
 aws_sdk_s3::primitives::ByteStream::from_path(std::path::Path::new(file_name)).await;
    client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name)
        .key(key)
        .body(body.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await
        .map_err(S3ExampleError::from)
}
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`UploadPart`

The following code example shows how to use `UploadPart`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
```

```
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }
```

```
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;
```

```
    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();
```

```
    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

- For API details, see UploadPart in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Convert text to speech and back to text

The following code example shows how to:

- Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file.
- Upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Transcribe to convert the audio file to text.
- Display the text.

SDK for Rust

Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file, upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Transcribe to convert that audio file to text, and display the text.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Transcribe

Create a presigned URL

The following code example shows how to create a presigned URL for Amazon S3 and upload an object.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create presigning requests to GET S3 objects.

```
/// Generate a URL for a presigned GET request.
async fn get_object(
    client: &Client,
    bucket: &str,
    object: &str,
    expires_in: u64,
) -> Result<(), Box<dyn Error>> {
    let expires_in = Duration::from_secs(expires_in);
    let presigned_request = client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(object)
        .presigned(PresigningConfig::expires_in(expires_in)?)
        .await?;

    println!("Object URI: {}", presigned_request.uri());
    let valid_until = chrono::offset::Local::now() + expires_in;
    println!("Valid until: {valid_until}");

    Ok(())
}
```

Create presigning requests to PUT S3 objects.

```
async fn put_object(
    client: &Client,
```

```
    bucket: &str,
    object: &str,
    expires_in: u64,
) -> Result<String, S3ExampleError> {
    let expires_in: std::time::Duration =
 std::time::Duration::from_secs(expires_in);
    let expires_in: aws_sdk_s3::presigning::PresigningConfig =
        PresigningConfig::expires_in(expires_in).map_err(|err| {
            S3ExampleError::new(format!(
                "Failed to convert expiration to PresigningConfig: {err:?}"
            ))
        })?;
    let presigned_request = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(object)
        .presigned(expires_in)
        .await?;

    Ok(presigned_request.uri().into())
}
```

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB

- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Detect faces in an image

The following code example shows how to:

- Save an image in an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (such as smiling).
- Display those details.

SDK for Rust

Save the image in an Amazon S3 bucket with an **uploads** prefix, use Amazon Rekognition to detect facial details, such as age range, gender, and emotion (smiling, etc.), and display those details.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Get an object from a bucket if it has been modified

The following code example shows how to read data from an object in an S3 bucket, but only if that bucket has not been modified since the last retrieval time.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use aws_sdk_s3::{
    error::SdkError,
    primitives::{ByteStream, DateTime, DateTimeFormat},
    Client,
};
use s3_code_examples::error::S3ExampleError;
use tracing::{error, warn};

const KEY: &str = "key";
const BODY: &str = "Hello, world!";

/// Demonstrate how `if-modified-since` reports that matching objects haven't
/// changed.
///
/// # Steps
/// - Create a bucket.
/// - Put an object in the bucket.
/// - Get the bucket headers.
/// - Get the bucket headers again but only if modified.
/// - Delete the bucket.
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt::init();

    // Get a new UUID to use when creating a unique bucket name.
    let uuid = uuid::Uuid::new_v4();

    // Load the AWS configuration from the environment.
    let client = Client::new(&aws_config::load_from_env().await);

    // Generate a unique bucket name using the previously generated UUID.
    // Then create a new bucket with that name.
    let bucket_name = format!("if-modified-since-{uuid}");
    client
```

```
        .create_bucket()
        .bucket(bucket_name.clone())
        .send()
        .await?;

    // Create a new object in the bucket whose name is `KEY` and whose
    // contents are `BODY`.
    let put_object_output = client
        .put_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .body(ByteStream::from_static(BODY.as_bytes()))
        .send()
        .await;

    // If the `PutObject` succeeded, get the eTag string from it. Otherwise,
    // report an error and return an empty string.
    let e_tag_1 = match put_object_output {
        Ok(put_object) => put_object.e_tag.unwrap(),
        Err(err) => {
            error!("{err:?}");
            String::new()
        }
    };

    // Request the object's headers.
    let head_object_output = client
        .head_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .send()
        .await;

    // If the `HeadObject` request succeeded, create a tuple containing the
    // values of the headers `last-modified` and `etag`. If the request
    // failed, return the error in a tuple instead.
    let (last_modified, e_tag_2) = match head_object_output {
        Ok(head_object) => (
            Ok(head_object.last_modified().cloned().unwrap()),
            head_object.e_tag.unwrap(),
        ),
        Err(err) => (Err(err), String::new()),
    };
```

```
    warn!("last modified: {last_modified:?}");
    assert_eq!(
        e_tag_1, e_tag_2,
        "PutObject and first GetObject had differing eTags"
    );

    println!("First value of last_modified: {last_modified:?}");
    println!("First tag: {}\n", e_tag_1);

    // Send a second `HeadObject` request. This time, the `if_modified_since`
    // option is specified, giving the `last_modified` value returned by the
    // first call to `HeadObject`.
    //
    // Since the object hasn't been changed, and there are no other objects in
    // the bucket, there should be no matching objects.

    let head_object_output = client
        .head_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .if_modified_since(last_modified.unwrap())
        .send()
        .await;

    // If the `HeadObject` request succeeded, the result is a typle containing
    // the `last_modified` and `e_tag_1` properties. This is _not_ the expected
    // result.
    //
    // The _expected_ result of the second call to `HeadObject` is an
    // `SdkError::ServiceError` containing the HTTP error response. If that's
    // the case and the HTTP status is 304 (not modified), the output is a
    // tuple containing the values of the HTTP `last-modified` and `etag`
    // headers.
    //
    // If any other HTTP error occurred, the error is returned as an
    // `SdkError::ServiceError`.

    let (last_modified, e_tag_2) = match head_object_output {
        Ok(head_object) => (
            Ok(head_object.last_modified().cloned().unwrap()),
            head_object.e_tag.unwrap(),
        ),
        Err(err) => match err {
            SdkError::ServiceError(err) => {
```

```
                // Get the raw HTTP response. If its status is 304, the
                // object has not changed. This is the expected code path.
                let http = err.raw();
                match http.status().as_u16() {
                    // If the HTTP status is 304: Not Modified, return a
                    // tuple containing the values of the HTTP
                    // `last-modified` and `etag` headers.
                    304 => (
                        Ok(DateTime::from_str(
                            http.headers().get("last-modified").unwrap(),
                            DateTimeFormat::HttpDate,
                        )
                        .unwrap()),
                        http.headers().get("etag").map(|t| t.into()).unwrap(),
                    ),
                    // Any other HTTP status code is returned as an
                    // `SdkError::ServiceError`.
                    _ => (Err(SdkError::ServiceError(err)), String::new()),
                }
            }
            // Any other kind of error is returned in a tuple containing the
            // error and an empty string.
            _ => (Err(err), String::new()),
        },
    };

    warn!("last modified: {last_modified:?}");
    assert_eq!(
        e_tag_1, e_tag_2,
        "PutObject and second HeadObject had different eTags"
    );

    println!("Second value of last modified: {last_modified:?}");
    println!("Second tag: {}", e_tag_2);

    // Clean up by deleting the object and the bucket.
    client
        .delete_object()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .key(KEY)
        .send()
        .await?;

    client
```

```
        .delete_bucket()
        .bucket(bucket_name.as_str())
        .send()
        .await?;

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Save EXIF and other image information

The following code example shows how to:

- Get EXIF information from a a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file.
- Upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (labels) in the file.
- Add the EXIF and label information to an Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

SDK for Rust

Get EXIF information from a JPG, JPEG, or PNG file, upload the image file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Rekognition to identify the three top attributes (*labels* in Amazon Rekognition) in the file, and add the EXIF and label information to a Amazon DynamoDB table in the Region.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- DynamoDB
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3

Unit and integration test with an SDK

The following code example shows how to examples for best-practice techniques when writing unit and integration tests using an AWS SDK.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Cargo.toml for testing examples.

```
[package]
name = "testing-examples"
version = "0.1.0"
authors = [
  "John Disanti <jdisanti@amazon.com>",
  "Doug Schwartz <dougsch@amazon.com>",
]
edition = "2021"

[dependencies]
async-trait = "0.1.51"
aws-config = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["behavior-version-latest"] }
aws-credential-types = { version = "1.0.1", features = [ "hardcoded-
credentials", ] }
aws-sdk-s3 = { version = "1.4.0" }
aws-smithy-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
aws-smithy-runtime = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["test-util"] }
aws-smithy-runtime-api = { version = "1.0.1", features = ["test-util"] }
aws-types = { version = "1.0.1" }
clap = { version = "4.4", features = ["derive"] }
http = "0.2.9"
mockall = "0.11.4"
serde_json = "1"
tokio = { version = "1.20.1", features = ["full"] }
tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3.15", features = ["env-filter"] }

[[bin]]
name = "main"
```

```
path = "src/main.rs"
```

Unit testing example using automock and a service wrapper.

```
use aws_sdk_s3 as s3;
#[allow(unused_imports)]
use mockall::automock;

use s3::operation::list_objects_v2::{ListObjectsV2Error, ListObjectsV2Output};

#[cfg(test)]
pub use MockS3Impl as S3;
#[cfg(not(test))]
pub use S3Impl as S3;

#[allow(dead_code)]
pub struct S3Impl {
    inner: s3::Client,
}

#[cfg_attr(test, automock)]
impl S3Impl {
    #[allow(dead_code)]
    pub fn new(inner: s3::Client) -> Self {
        Self { inner }
    }

    #[allow(dead_code)]
    pub async fn list_objects(
        &self,
        bucket: &str,
        prefix: &str,
        continuation_token: Option<String>,
    ) -> Result<ListObjectsV2Output, s3::error::SdkError<ListObjectsV2Error>> {
        self.inner
            .list_objects_v2()
            .bucket(bucket)
            .prefix(prefix)
            .set_continuation_token(continuation_token)
            .send()
            .await
```

```
    }
}

#[allow(dead_code)]
pub async fn determine_prefix_file_size(
    // Now we take a reference to our trait object instead of the S3 client
    // s3_list: ListObjectsService,
    s3_list: S3,
    bucket: &str,
    prefix: &str,
) -> Result<usize, s3::Error> {
    let mut next_token: Option<String> = None;
    let mut total_size_bytes = 0;
    loop {
        let result = s3_list
            .list_objects(bucket, prefix, next_token.take())
            .await?;

        // Add up the file sizes we got back
        for object in result.contents() {
            total_size_bytes += object.size().unwrap_or(0) as usize;
        }

        // Handle pagination, and break the loop if there are no more pages
        next_token = result.next_continuation_token.clone();
        if next_token.is_none() {
            break;
        }
    }
    Ok(total_size_bytes)
}

#[cfg(test)]
mod test {
    use super::*;
    use mockall::predicate::eq;

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_single_page() {
        let mut mock = MockS3Impl::default();
        mock.expect_list_objects()
            .with(eq("test-bucket"), eq("test-prefix"), eq(None))
            .return_once(|_, _, _| {
                Ok(ListObjectsV2Output::builder()
```

```
                    .set_contents(Some(vec![
                        // Mock content for ListObjectsV2 response
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(5).build(),
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(2).build(),
                    ]))
                    .build())
            });

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(mock, "test-bucket", "test-prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Verify we got the correct total size back
        assert_eq!(7, size);
    }

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_multiple_pages() {
        // Create the Mock instance with two pages of objects now
        let mut mock = MockS3Impl::default();
        mock.expect_list_objects()
            .with(eq("test-bucket"), eq("test-prefix"), eq(None))
            .return_once(|_, _, _| {
                Ok(ListObjectsV2Output::builder()
                    .set_contents(Some(vec![
                        // Mock content for ListObjectsV2 response
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(5).build(),
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(2).build(),
                    ]))
                    .set_next_continuation_token(Some("next".to_string()))
                    .build())
            });
        mock.expect_list_objects()
            .with(
                eq("test-bucket"),
                eq("test-prefix"),
                eq(Some("next".to_string())),
            )
            .return_once(|_, _, _| {
                Ok(ListObjectsV2Output::builder()
                    .set_contents(Some(vec![
                        // Mock content for ListObjectsV2 response
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(3).build(),
```

```
                        s3::types::Object::builder().size(9).build(),
                    ]))
                    .build())
            });

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(mock, "test-bucket", "test-prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        assert_eq!(19, size);
    }
}
```

Integration testing example using StaticReplayClient.

```
use aws_sdk_s3 as s3;

#[allow(dead_code)]
pub async fn determine_prefix_file_size(
    // Now we take a reference to our trait object instead of the S3 client
    // s3_list: ListObjectsService,
    s3: s3::Client,
    bucket: &str,
    prefix: &str,
) -> Result<usize, s3::Error> {
    let mut next_token: Option<String> = None;
    let mut total_size_bytes = 0;
    loop {
        let result = s3
            .list_objects_v2()
            .prefix(prefix)
            .bucket(bucket)
            .set_continuation_token(next_token.take())
            .send()
            .await?;

        // Add up the file sizes we got back
        for object in result.contents() {
            total_size_bytes += object.size().unwrap_or(0) as usize;
        }
```

```
        // Handle pagination, and break the loop if there are no more pages
        next_token = result.next_continuation_token.clone();
        if next_token.is_none() {
            break;
        }
    }
    Ok(total_size_bytes)
}

#[allow(dead_code)]
fn make_s3_test_credentials() -> s3::config::Credentials {
    s3::config::Credentials::new(
        "ATESTCLIENT",
        "astestsecretkey",
        Some("atestsessiontoken".to_string()),
        None,
        "",
    )
}

#[cfg(test)]
mod test {
    use super::*;
    use aws_config::BehaviorVersion;
    use aws_sdk_s3 as s3;
    use aws_smithy_runtime::client::http::test_util::{ReplayEvent,
 StaticReplayClient};
    use aws_smithy_types::body::SdkBody;

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_single_page() {
        let page_1 = ReplayEvent::new(
                http::Request::builder()
                    .method("GET")
                    .uri("https://test-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/?list-
type=2&prefix=test-prefix")
                    .body(SdkBody::empty())
                    .unwrap(),
                http::Response::builder()
                    .status(200)
                    .body(SdkBody::from(include_str!("./testing/response_1.xml")))
                    .unwrap(),
            );
```

```
        let replay_client = StaticReplayClient::new(vec![page_1]);
        let client: s3::Client = s3::Client::from_conf(
            s3::Config::builder()
                .behavior_version(BehaviorVersion::latest())
                .credentials_provider(make_s3_test_credentials())
                .region(s3::config::Region::new("us-east-1"))
                .http_client(replay_client.clone())
                .build(),
        );

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(client, "test-bucket", "test-prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Verify we got the correct total size back
        assert_eq!(7, size);
        replay_client.assert_requests_match(&[]);
    }

    #[tokio::test]
    async fn test_multiple_pages() {
        let page_1 = ReplayEvent::new(
                http::Request::builder()
                    .method("GET")
                    .uri("https://test-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/?list-
type=2&prefix=test-prefix")
                    .body(SdkBody::empty())
                    .unwrap(),
                http::Response::builder()
                    .status(200)
                    .body(SdkBody::from(include_str!("./testing/
response_multi_1.xml")))
                    .unwrap(),
            );
        let page_2 = ReplayEvent::new(
                http::Request::builder()
                    .method("GET")
                    .uri("https://test-bucket.s3.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/?list-
type=2&prefix=test-prefix&continuation-token=next")
                    .body(SdkBody::empty())
                    .unwrap(),
                http::Response::builder()
                    .status(200)
```

```
                    .body(SdkBody::from(include_str!("./testing/
response_multi_2.xml")))
                    .unwrap(),
            );
        let replay_client = StaticReplayClient::new(vec![page_1, page_2]);
        let client: s3::Client = s3::Client::from_conf(
            s3::Config::builder()
                .behavior_version(BehaviorVersion::latest())
                .credentials_provider(make_s3_test_credentials())
                .region(s3::config::Region::new("us-east-1"))
                .http_client(replay_client.clone())
                .build(),
        );

        // Run the code we want to test with it
        let size = determine_prefix_file_size(client, "test-bucket", "test-prefix")
            .await
            .unwrap();

        assert_eq!(19, size);

        replay_client.assert_requests_match(&[]);
    }
}
```

Upload or download large files

The following code example shows how to upload or download large files to and from Amazon S3.

For more information, see Uploading an object using multipart upload.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
use std::fs::File;
```

```
use std::io::prelude::*;
use std::path::Path;

use aws_config::meta::region::RegionProviderChain;
use aws_sdk_s3::error::DisplayErrorContext;
use aws_sdk_s3::operation::{
    create_multipart_upload::CreateMultipartUploadOutput,
 get_object::GetObjectOutput,
};
use aws_sdk_s3::types::{CompletedMultipartUpload, CompletedPart};
use aws_sdk_s3::{config::Region, Client as S3Client};
use aws_smithy_types::byte_stream::{ByteStream, Length};
use rand::distributions::Alphanumeric;
use rand::{thread_rng, Rng};
use s3_code_examples::error::S3ExampleError;
use std::process;
use uuid::Uuid;

//In bytes, minimum chunk size of 5MB. Increase CHUNK_SIZE to send larger chunks.
const CHUNK_SIZE: u64 = 1024 * 1024 * 5;
const MAX_CHUNKS: u64 = 10000;

#[tokio::main]
pub async fn main() {
    if let Err(err) = run_example().await {
        eprintln!("Error: {}", DisplayErrorContext(err));
        process::exit(1);
    }
}

async fn run_example() -> Result<(), S3ExampleError> {
    let shared_config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let client = S3Client::new(&shared_config);

    let bucket_name = format!("amzn-s3-demo-bucket-{}", Uuid::new_v4());
    let region_provider = RegionProviderChain::first_try(Region::new("us-west-2"));
    let region = region_provider.region().await.unwrap();
    s3_code_examples::create_bucket(&client, &bucket_name, &region).await?;

    let key = "sample.txt".to_string();
    // Create a multipart upload. Use UploadPart and CompleteMultipartUpload to
    // upload the file.
    let multipart_upload_res: CreateMultipartUploadOutput = client
        .create_multipart_upload()
```

```
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let upload_id = multipart_upload_res.upload_id().ok_or(S3ExampleError::new(
        "Missing upload_id after CreateMultipartUpload",
    ))?;

    //Create a file of random characters for the upload.
    let mut file = File::create(&key).expect("Could not create sample file.");
    // Loop until the file is 5 chunks.
    while file.metadata().unwrap().len() <= CHUNK_SIZE * 4 {
        let rand_string: String = thread_rng()
            .sample_iter(&Alphanumeric)
            .take(256)
            .map(char::from)
            .collect();
        let return_string: String = "\n".to_string();
        file.write_all(rand_string.as_ref())
            .expect("Error writing to file.");
        file.write_all(return_string.as_ref())
            .expect("Error writing to file.");
    }

    let path = Path::new(&key);
    let file_size = tokio::fs::metadata(path)
        .await
        .expect("it exists I swear")
        .len();

    let mut chunk_count = (file_size / CHUNK_SIZE) + 1;
    let mut size_of_last_chunk = file_size % CHUNK_SIZE;
    if size_of_last_chunk == 0 {
        size_of_last_chunk = CHUNK_SIZE;
        chunk_count -= 1;
    }

    if file_size == 0 {
        return Err(S3ExampleError::new("Bad file size."));
    }
    if chunk_count > MAX_CHUNKS {
        return Err(S3ExampleError::new(
            "Too many chunks! Try increasing your chunk size.",
```

```
        ));
    }

    let mut upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart> = Vec::new();

    for chunk_index in 0..chunk_count {
        let this_chunk = if chunk_count - 1 == chunk_index {
            size_of_last_chunk
        } else {
            CHUNK_SIZE
        };
        let stream = ByteStream::read_from()
            .path(path)
            .offset(chunk_index * CHUNK_SIZE)
            .length(Length::Exact(this_chunk))
            .build()
            .await
            .unwrap();

        // Chunk index needs to start at 0, but part numbers start at 1.
        let part_number = (chunk_index as i32) + 1;
        let upload_part_res = client
            .upload_part()
            .key(&key)
            .bucket(&bucket_name)
            .upload_id(upload_id)
            .body(stream)
            .part_number(part_number)
            .send()
            .await?;

        upload_parts.push(
            CompletedPart::builder()
                .e_tag(upload_part_res.e_tag.unwrap_or_default())
                .part_number(part_number)
                .build(),
        );
    }

    // upload_parts: Vec<aws_sdk_s3::types::CompletedPart>
    let completed_multipart_upload: CompletedMultipartUpload =
CompletedMultipartUpload::builder()
        .set_parts(Some(upload_parts))
        .build();
```

```
    let _complete_multipart_upload_res = client
        .complete_multipart_upload()
        .bucket(&bucket_name)
        .key(&key)
        .multipart_upload(completed_multipart_upload)
        .upload_id(upload_id)
        .send()
        .await?;

    let data: GetObjectOutput =
        s3_code_examples::download_object(&client, &bucket_name, &key).await?;
    let data_length: u64 = data
        .content_length()
        .unwrap_or_default()
        .try_into()
        .unwrap();
    if file.metadata().unwrap().len() == data_length {
        println!("Data lengths match.");
    } else {
        println!("The data was not the same size!");
    }

    s3_code_examples::clear_bucket(&client, &bucket_name)
        .await
        .expect("Error emptying bucket.");
    s3_code_examples::delete_bucket(&client, &bucket_name)
        .await
        .expect("Error deleting bucket.");

    Ok(())
}
```

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon S3 trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by uploading an object to an S3 bucket. The function retrieves the S3 bucket name and object key from the event parameter and calls the Amazon S3 API to retrieve and log the content type of the object.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an S3 event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::s3::S3Event;
use aws_sdk_s3::{Client};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};


/// Main function
#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();

    // Initialize the AWS SDK for Rust
    let config = aws_config::load_from_env().await;
    let s3_client = Client::new(&config);

    let res = run(service_fn(|request: LambdaEvent<S3Event>| {
        function_handler(&s3_client, request)
    })).await;

    res
}

async fn function_handler(
    s3_client: &Client,
    evt: LambdaEvent<S3Event>
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing::info!(records = ?evt.payload.records.len(), "Received request from
 SQS");
```

```
    if evt.payload.records.len() == 0 {
        tracing::info!("Empty S3 event received");
    }

    let bucket = evt.payload.records[0].s3.bucket.name.as_ref().expect("Bucket name
 to exist");
    let key = evt.payload.records[0].s3.object.key.as_ref().expect("Object key to
 exist");

    tracing::info!("Request is for {} and object {}", bucket, key);

    let s3_get_object_result = s3_client
        .get_object()
        .bucket(bucket)
        .key(key)
        .send()
        .await;

    match s3_get_object_result {
        Ok(_) => tracing::info!("S3 Get Object success, the s3GetObjectResult
 contains a 'body' property of type ByteStream"),
        Err(_) => tracing::info!("Failure with S3 Get Object request")
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListNotebookInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `ListNotebookInstances`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_instances(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let notebooks = client.list_notebook_instances().send().await?;

    println!("Notebooks:");

    for n in notebooks.notebook_instances() {
        let n_instance_type = n.instance_type().unwrap();
        let n_status = n.notebook_instance_status().unwrap();
        let n_name = n.notebook_instance_name();

        println!("  Name :          {}", n_name.unwrap_or("Unknown"));
        println!("  Status :        {}", n_status.as_ref());
        println!("  Instance Type : {}", n_instance_type.as_ref());
        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListTrainingJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTrainingJobs`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_jobs(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let job_details = client.list_training_jobs().send().await?;

    println!("Jobs:");

    for j in job_details.training_job_summaries() {
        let name = j.training_job_name().unwrap_or("Unknown");
        let creation_time = j.creation_time().expect("creation
 time").to_chrono_utc()?;
        let training_end_time = j
            .training_end_time()
            .expect("Training end time")
            .to_chrono_utc()?;

        let status = j.training_job_status().expect("training status");
        let duration = training_end_time - creation_time;

        println!("  Name:               {}", name);
        println!(
            "  Creation date/time: {}",
            creation_time.format("%Y-%m-%d@%H:%M:%S")
        );
        println!("  Duration (seconds): {}", duration.num_seconds());
        println!("  Status:             {:?}", status);

        println!();
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListTrainingJobs in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Secrets Manager examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Secrets Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`GetSecretValue`

The following code example shows how to use `GetSecretValue`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_secret(client: &Client, name: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.get_secret_value().secret_id(name).send().await?;

    println!("Value: {}", resp.secret_string().unwrap_or("No value!"));

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetSecretValue in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon SES API v2 examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon SES API v2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateContact`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContact`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn add_contact(client: &Client, list: &str, email: &str) -> Result<(), Error>
 {
    client
        .create_contact()
        .contact_list_name(list)
        .email_address(email)
        .send()
```

```
        .await?;

    println!("Created contact");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateContact in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateContactList`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_list(client: &Client, contact_list: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    client
        .create_contact_list()
        .contact_list_name(contact_list)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Created contact list.");

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateContactList in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .create_email_identity()
            .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity created successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailIdentityError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email identity already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email identity: {}", e)),
            },
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`CreateEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEmailTemplate`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let template_html =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-newsletter.html".to_string());
        let template_text =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-newsletter.txt")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-newsletter.txt".to_string());

        // Create the email template
        let template_content = EmailTemplateContent::builder()
            .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
            .html(template_html)
            .text(template_text)
            .build();

        match self
            .client
            .create_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .template_content(template_content)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template created successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailTemplateError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email template already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email template: {}", e)),
            },
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteContactList`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteContactList`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .delete_contact_list()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact list deleted successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting contact list: {e}")),
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteContactList in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
            match self
                .client
                .delete_email_identity()
                .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
                .send()
```

```
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity deleted
successfully.")?,
                Err(e) => {
                    return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email identity: {}", e));
                }
            }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`DeleteEmailTemplate`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEmailTemplate`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .delete_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template deleted successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => {
                return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email template: {e}"));
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteEmailTemplate in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetEmailIdentity`

The following code example shows how to use `GetEmailIdentity`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Determines whether an email address has been verified.

```
async fn is_verified(client: &Client, email: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .get_email_identity()
        .email_identity(email)
        .send()
        .await?;

    if resp.verified_for_sending_status() {
        println!("The address is verified");
    } else {
        println!("The address is not verified");
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see GetEmailIdentity in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListContactLists`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContactLists`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_lists(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_contact_lists().send().await?;

    println!("Contact lists:");

    for list in resp.contact_lists() {
        println!("  {}", list.contact_list_name().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListContactLists in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListContacts`

The following code example shows how to use `ListContacts`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_contacts(client: &Client, list: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .list_contacts()
        .contact_list_name(list)
        .send()
```

```
        .await?;

    println!("Contacts:");

    for contact in resp.contacts() {
        println!("  {}", contact.email_address().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListContacts in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`SendEmail`

The following code example shows how to use `SendEmail`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Sends a message to all members of the contact list.

```
async fn send_message(
    client: &Client,
    list: &str,
    from: &str,
    subject: &str,
    message: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    // Get list of email addresses from contact list.
    let resp = client
        .list_contacts()
        .contact_list_name(list)
        .send()
        .await?;
```

```
    let contacts = resp.contacts();

    let cs: Vec<String> = contacts
        .iter()
        .map(|i| i.email_address().unwrap_or_default().to_string())
        .collect();

    let mut dest: Destination = Destination::builder().build();
    dest.to_addresses = Some(cs);
    let subject_content = Content::builder()
        .data(subject)
        .charset("UTF-8")
        .build()
        .expect("building Content");
    let body_content = Content::builder()
        .data(message)
        .charset("UTF-8")
        .build()
        .expect("building Content");
    let body = Body::builder().text(body_content).build();

    let msg = Message::builder()
        .subject(subject_content)
        .body(body)
        .build();

    let email_content = EmailContent::builder().simple(msg).build();

    client
        .send_email()
        .from_email_address(from)
        .destination(dest)
        .content(email_content)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Email sent to list");

    Ok(())
}
```

Sends a message to all members of the contact list using a template.

```
            let coupons = std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/
sample_coupons.json")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| r#"{"coupons":[]}"#.to_string());
            let email_content = EmailContent::builder()
                .template(
                    Template::builder()
                        .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                        .template_data(coupons)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build();

            match self
                .client
                .send_email()
                .from_email_address(self.verified_email.clone())

 .destination(Destination::builder().to_addresses(email.clone()).build())
                .content(email_content)
                .list_management_options(
                    ListManagementOptions::builder()
                        .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                        .build()?,
                )
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(output) => {
                    if let Some(message_id) = output.message_id {
                        writeln!(
                            self.stdout,
                            "Newsletter sent to {} with message ID {}",
                            email, message_id
                        )?;
                    } else {
                        writeln!(self.stdout, "Newsletter sent to {}", email)?;
                    }
                }
                Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error sending newsletter to {}: {}",
 email, e)),
            }
```

- For API details, see SendEmail in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Newsletter scenario

The following code example shows how to run the Amazon SES API v2 newsletter scenario.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        match self
            .client
            .create_contact_list()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact list created successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateContactListError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Contact list already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating contact list: {}", e)),
            },
        }

            match self
                .client
                .create_contact()
                .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                .email_address(email.clone())
                .send()
                .await
```

```
            {
                Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact created for {}", email)?,
                Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                    CreateContactError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Contact already exists for {}, skipping creation.",
                        email
                    )?,
                    e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating contact for {}: {}",
 email, e)),
                },
            }

        let contacts: Vec<Contact> = match self
            .client
            .list_contacts()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(list_contacts_output) => {
                list_contacts_output.contacts.unwrap().into_iter().collect()
            }
            Err(e) => {
                return Err(anyhow!(
                    "Error retrieving contact list {}: {}",
                    CONTACT_LIST_NAME,
                    e
                ))
            }
        };

            let coupons = std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/
sample_coupons.json")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| r#"{"coupons":[]}"#.to_string());
            let email_content = EmailContent::builder()
                .template(
                    Template::builder()
                        .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
                        .template_data(coupons)
                        .build(),
                )
                .build();
```

```
            match self
                .client
                .send_email()
                .from_email_address(self.verified_email.clone())

.destination(Destination::builder().to_addresses(email.clone()).build())
                .content(email_content)
                .list_management_options(
                    ListManagementOptions::builder()
                        .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
                        .build()?,
                )
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(output) => {
                    if let Some(message_id) = output.message_id {
                        writeln!(
                            self.stdout,
                            "Newsletter sent to {} with message ID {}",
                            email, message_id
                        )?;
                    } else {
                        writeln!(self.stdout, "Newsletter sent to {}", email)?;
                    }
                }
                Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error sending newsletter to {}: {}",
email, e)),
            }

        match self
            .client
            .create_email_identity()
            .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity created successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailIdentityError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email identity already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
```

```
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email identity: {}", e)),
            },
        }

        let template_html =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-
newsletter.html")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-newsletter.html".to_string());
        let template_text =
            std::fs::read_to_string("../resources/newsletter/coupon-newsletter.txt")
                .unwrap_or_else(|_| "Missing coupon-newsletter.txt".to_string());

        // Create the email template
        let template_content = EmailTemplateContent::builder()
            .subject("Weekly Coupons Newsletter")
            .html(template_html)
            .text(template_text)
            .build();

        match self
            .client
            .create_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .template_content(template_content)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template created successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => match e.into_service_error() {
                CreateEmailTemplateError::AlreadyExistsException(_) => {
                    writeln!(
                        self.stdout,
                        "Email template already exists, skipping creation."
                    )?;
                }
                e => return Err(anyhow!("Error creating email template: {}", e)),
            },
        }

        match self
            .client
            .delete_contact_list()
            .contact_list_name(CONTACT_LIST_NAME)
```

```
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Contact list deleted successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting contact list: {e}")),
        }

            match self
                .client
                .delete_email_identity()
                .email_identity(self.verified_email.clone())
                .send()
                .await
            {
                Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email identity deleted
successfully.")?,
                Err(e) => {
                    return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email identity: {}", e));
                }
            }

        match self
            .client
            .delete_email_template()
            .template_name(TEMPLATE_NAME)
            .send()
            .await
        {
            Ok(_) => writeln!(self.stdout, "Email template deleted successfully.")?,
            Err(e) => {
                return Err(anyhow!("Error deleting email template: {e}"));
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.
  - CreateContact
  - CreateContactList
  - CreateEmailIdentity
  - CreateEmailTemplate
  - DeleteContactList

- DeleteEmailIdentity
- DeleteEmailTemplate
- ListContacts
- SendEmail.simple
- SendEmail.template

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios
- Serverless examples

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_topic(client: &Client, topic_name: &str) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.create_topic().name(topic_name).send().await?;

    println!(
        "Created topic with ARN: {}",
        resp.topic_arn().unwrap_or_default()
    );

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_topics(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.list_topics().send().await?;

    println!("Topic ARNs:");

    for topic in resp.topics() {
        println!("{}", topic.topic_arn().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Publish

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn subscribe_and_publish(
    client: &Client,
    topic_arn: &str,
    email_address: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    println!("Receiving on topic with ARN: `{}`", topic_arn);

    let rsp = client
        .subscribe()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .protocol("email")
        .endpoint(email_address)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Added a subscription: {:?}", rsp);

    let rsp = client
        .publish()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .message("hello sns!")
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Published message: {:?}", rsp);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
async fn subscribe_and_publish(
    client: &Client,
    topic_arn: &str,
    email_address: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    println!("Receiving on topic with ARN: `{}`", topic_arn);

    let rsp = client
        .subscribe()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .protocol("email")
        .endpoint(email_address)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Added a subscription: {:?}", rsp);

    let rsp = client
        .publish()
        .topic_arn(topic_arn)
        .message("hello sns!")
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Published message: {:?}", rsp);
```

```
    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Scenarios

Create a serverless application to manage photos

The following code example shows how to create a serverless application that lets users manage photos using labels.

SDK for Rust

Shows how to develop a photo asset management application that detects labels in images using Amazon Rekognition and stores them for later retrieval.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

For a deep dive into the origin of this example see the post on AWS Community.

Services used in this example

- API Gateway
- DynamoDB
- Lambda
- Amazon Rekognition
- Amazon S3
- Amazon SNS

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SNS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SNS topic. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SNS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sns::SnsEvent;
use aws_lambda_events::sns::SnsRecord;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};
use tracing::info;

// Built with the following dependencies:
//  aws_lambda_events = { version = "0.10.0", default-features = false, features =
 ["sns"] }
//  lambda_runtime = "0.8.1"
//  tokio = { version = "1", features = ["macros"] }
//  tracing = { version = "0.1", features = ["log"] }
//  tracing-subscriber = { version = "0.3", default-features = false, features =
 ["fmt"] }

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SnsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    for event in event.payload.records {
        process_record(&event)?;
    }

    Ok(())
}

fn process_record(record: &SnsRecord) -> Result<(), Error> {
    info!("Processing SNS Message: {}", record.sns.message);

    // Implement your record handling code here.

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
```

```
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        .with_target(false)
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Serverless examples

Actions

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Retrieve the first Amazon SQS queue listed in the Region.

```
async fn find_first_queue(client: &Client) -> Result<String, Error> {
    let queues = client.list_queues().send().await?;
    let queue_urls = queues.queue_urls();
    Ok(queue_urls
        .first()
        .expect("No queues in this account and Region. Create a queue to proceed.")
        .to_string())
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn receive(client: &Client, queue_url: &String) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let rcv_message_output =
 client.receive_message().queue_url(queue_url).send().await?;

    println!("Messages from queue with url: {}", queue_url);

    for message in rcv_message_output.messages.unwrap_or_default() {
        println!("Got the message: {:#?}", message);
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

SendMessage

The following code example shows how to use SendMessage.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn send(client: &Client, queue_url: &String, message: &SQSMessage) ->
 Result<(), Error> {
    println!("Sending message to queue with URL: {}", queue_url);

    let rsp = client
        .send_message()
        .queue_url(queue_url)
        .message_body(&message.body)
        // If the queue is FIFO, you need to set .message_deduplication_id
        // and message_group_id or configure the queue for
 ContentBasedDeduplication.
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Send message to the queue: {:#?}", rsp);

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Serverless examples

Invoke a Lambda function from an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement a Lambda function that receives an event triggered by receiving messages from an SQS queue. The function retrieves the messages from the event parameter and logs the content of each message.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Consuming an SQS event with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::event::sqs::SqsEvent;
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) -> Result<(), Error> {
    event.payload.records.iter().for_each(|record| {
        // process the record
        tracing::info!("Message body: {}",
 record.body.as_deref().unwrap_or_default())
    });

    Ok(())
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    tracing_subscriber::fmt()
        .with_max_level(tracing::Level::INFO)
        // disable printing the name of the module in every log line.
        .with_target(false)
        // disabling time is handy because CloudWatch will add the ingestion time.
        .without_time()
        .init();

    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

Reporting batch item failures for Lambda functions with an Amazon SQS trigger

The following code example shows how to implement partial batch response for Lambda functions that receive events from an SQS queue. The function reports the batch item failures in the response, signaling to Lambda to retry those messages later.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the Serverless examples repository.

Reporting SQS batch item failures with Lambda using Rust.

```
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
use aws_lambda_events::{
    event::sqs::{SqsBatchResponse, SqsEvent},
    sqs::{BatchItemFailure, SqsMessage},
};
use lambda_runtime::{run, service_fn, Error, LambdaEvent};

async fn process_record(_: &SqsMessage) -> Result<(), Error> {
    Err(Error::from("Error processing message"))
}

async fn function_handler(event: LambdaEvent<SqsEvent>) -> Result<SqsBatchResponse,
 Error> {
    let mut batch_item_failures = Vec::new();
    for record in event.payload.records {
        match process_record(&record).await {
            Ok(_) => (),
            Err(_) => batch_item_failures.push(BatchItemFailure {
                item_identifier: record.message_id.unwrap(),
            }),
        }
    }

    Ok(SqsBatchResponse {
        batch_item_failures,
```

```
    })
}

#[tokio::main]
async fn main() -> Result<(), Error> {
    run(service_fn(function_handler)).await
}
```

AWS STS examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn assume_role(config: &SdkConfig, role_name: String, session_name:
 Option<String>) {
```

```
    let provider = aws_config::sts::AssumeRoleProvider::builder(role_name)
        .session_name(session_name.unwrap_or("rust_sdk_example_session".into()))
        .configure(config)
        .build()
        .await;

    let local_config = aws_config::from_env()
        .credentials_provider(provider)
        .load()
        .await;
    let client = Client::new(&local_config);
    let req = client.get_caller_identity();
    let resp = req.send().await;
    match resp {
        Ok(e) => {
            println!("UserID :               {}", e.user_id().unwrap_or_default());
            println!("Account:               {}", e.account().unwrap_or_default());
            println!("Arn    :               {}", e.arn().unwrap_or_default());
        }
        Err(e) => println!("{:?}", e),
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Systems Manager examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Systems Manager.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`DescribeParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeParameters`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn show_parameters(client: &Client) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client.describe_parameters().send().await?;

    for param in resp.parameters() {
        println!("  {}", param.name().unwrap_or_default());
    }

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeParameters in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`GetParameter`

The following code example shows how to use `GetParameter`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    pub async fn list_path(&self, path: &str) -> Result<Vec<Parameter>, EC2Error> {
```

```
        let maybe_params: Vec<Result<Parameter, _>> = TryFlatMap::new(
            self.inner
                .get_parameters_by_path()
                .path(path)
                .into_paginator()
                .send(),
        )
        .flat_map(|item| item.parameters.unwrap_or_default())
        .collect()
        .await;
        // Fail on the first error
        let params = maybe_params
            .into_iter()
            .collect::<Result<Vec<Parameter>, _>>()?;
        Ok(params)
    }
```

- For API details, see GetParameter in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

`PutParameter`

The following code example shows how to use `PutParameter`.

SDK for Rust

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
async fn make_parameter(
    client: &Client,
    name: &str,
    value: &str,
    description: &str,
) -> Result<(), Error> {
    let resp = client
        .put_parameter()
        .overwrite(true)
        .r#type(ParameterType::String)
```

```
        .name(name)
        .value(value)
        .description(description)
        .send()
        .await?;

    println!("Success! Parameter now has version: {}", resp.version());

    Ok(())
}
```

- For API details, see PutParameter in *AWS SDK for Rust API reference*.

Amazon Transcribe examples using SDK for Rust

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Rust with Amazon Transcribe.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Scenarios

Scenarios

Convert text to speech and back to text

The following code example shows how to:

- Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file.
- Upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
- Use Amazon Transcribe to convert the audio file to text.
- Display the text.

SDK for Rust

Use Amazon Polly to synthesize a plain text (UTF-8) input file to an audio file, upload the audio file to an Amazon S3 bucket, use Amazon Transcribe to convert that audio file to text, and display the text.

For complete source code and instructions on how to set up and run, see the full example on GitHub.

Services used in this example

- Amazon Polly
- Amazon S3
- Amazon Transcribe

Code examples for SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for SAP ABAP Developer Guide** – More about using SAP ABAP with AWS.
- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- CloudWatch examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Kinesis examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Lambda examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- SageMaker AI examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon Textract examples using SDK for SAP ABAP
- Amazon Translate examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Anthropic Claude
- Stable Diffusion

Anthropic Claude

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using the Invoke Model API.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text. This example uses features of /US2/CL_JSON which might not be available on some NetWeaver versions.

```
    "Claude V2 Input Parameters should be in a format like this:
*   {
*     "prompt":"\n\nHuman:\\nTell me a joke\n\nAssistant:\n",
*     "max_tokens_to_sample":2048,
*     "temperature":0.5,
*     "top_k":250,
*     "top_p":1.0,
*     "stop_sequences":[]
*   }

    DATA: BEGIN OF ls_input,
            prompt               TYPE string,
            max_tokens_to_sample TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            temperature          TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_float,
            top_k                TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            top_p                TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_float,
            stop_sequences       TYPE /aws1/rt_stringtab,
          END OF ls_input.

    "Leave ls_input-stop_sequences empty.
    ls_input-prompt = |\n\nHuman:\\n{ iv_prompt }\n\nAssistant:\n|.
    ls_input-max_tokens_to_sample = 2048.
    ls_input-temperature = '0.5'.
    ls_input-top_k = 250.
    ls_input-top_p = 1.

    "Serialize into JSON with /ui2/cl_json -- this assumes SAP_UI is installed.
    DATA(lv_json) = /ui2/cl_json=>serialize(
      data = ls_input
                pretty_name   = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-low_case ).
```

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_response) = lo_bdr->invokemodel(
          iv_body = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring( lv_json )
          iv_modelid = 'anthropic.claude-v2'
          iv_accept = 'application/json'
          iv_contenttype = 'application/json' ).

        "Claude V2 Response format will be:
*       {
*         "completion": "Knock Knock...",
*         "stop_reason": "stop_sequence"
*       }
        DATA: BEGIN OF ls_response,
                completion  TYPE string,
                stop_reason TYPE string,
              END OF ls_response.

        /ui2/cl_json=>deserialize(
          EXPORTING jsonx = lo_response->get_body( )
                    pretty_name = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-camel_case
          CHANGING  data  = ls_response ).

        DATA(lv_answer) = ls_response-completion.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 2 foundation model to generate text using L2 high level client.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_bdr_l2_claude) = /aws1/cl_bdr_l2_factory=>create_claude_2( lo_bdr ).
        " iv_prompt can contain a prompt like 'tell me a joke about Java
 programmers'.
        DATA(lv_answer) = lo_bdr_l2_claude->prompt_for_text( iv_prompt ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

Invoke the Anthropic Claude 3 foundation model to generate text using L2 high level client.

```
    TRY.
        " Choose a model ID from Anthropic that supports the Messages API -
 currently this is
        " Claude v2, Claude v3 and v3.5.  For the list of model ID, see:
        " https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-ids.html

        " for the list of models that support the Messages API see:
        " https://docs.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/latest/userguide/model-parameters-
anthropic-claude-messages.html
        DATA(lo_bdr_l2_claude) = /aws1/cl_bdr_l2_factory=>create_anthropic_msg_api(
          io_bdr = lo_bdr
          iv_model_id = 'anthropic.claude-3-sonnet-20240229-v1:0' ).  " choosing
 Claude v3 Sonnet
        " iv_prompt can contain a prompt like 'tell me a joke about Java
 programmers'.
        DATA(lv_answer) = lo_bdr_l2_claude->prompt_for_text( iv_prompt = iv_prompt
                                                             iv_max_tokens = 100 ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Stable Diffusion

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Stable Diffusion.

```
    "Stable Diffusion Input Parameters should be in a format like this:
*   {
*     "text_prompts": [
*       {"text":"Draw a dolphin with a mustache"},
*       {"text":"Make it photorealistic"}
*     ],
*     "cfg_scale":10,
*     "seed":0,
*     "steps":50
*   }
    TYPES: BEGIN OF prompt_ts,
             text TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
           END OF prompt_ts.

    DATA: BEGIN OF ls_input,
            text_prompts TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF prompt_ts,
            cfg_scale    TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            seed         TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
            steps        TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
          END OF ls_input.

    APPEND VALUE prompt_ts( text = iv_prompt ) TO ls_input-text_prompts.
    ls_input-cfg_scale = 10.
    ls_input-seed = 0. "or better, choose a random integer.
    ls_input-steps = 50.

    DATA(lv_json) = /ui2/cl_json=>serialize(
      data = ls_input
                pretty_name   = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-low_case ).

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_response) = lo_bdr->invokemodel(
          iv_body = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring( lv_json )
```

```
          iv_modelid = 'stability.stable-diffusion-xl-v1'
          iv_accept = 'application/json'
          iv_contenttype = 'application/json' ).

        "Stable Diffusion Result Format:
*       {
*         "result": "success",
*         "artifacts": [
*           {
*             "seed": 0,
*             "base64": "iVBORw0KGgoAAAANSUhEUgAAAgAAA....
*             "finishReason": "SUCCESS"
*           }
*         ]
*       }
        TYPES: BEGIN OF artifact_ts,
                 seed         TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_integer,
                 base64       TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
                 finishreason TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
               END OF artifact_ts.

        DATA: BEGIN OF ls_response,
                result    TYPE /aws1/rt_shape_string,
                artifacts TYPE STANDARD TABLE OF artifact_ts,
              END OF ls_response.

        /ui2/cl_json=>deserialize(
          EXPORTING jsonx = lo_response->get_body( )
                    pretty_name = /ui2/cl_json=>pretty_mode-camel_case
          CHANGING  data  = ls_response ).
        IF ls_response-artifacts IS NOT INITIAL.
          DATA(lv_image) =
 cl_http_utility=>if_http_utility~decode_x_base64( ls_response-artifacts[ 1 ]-
base64 ).
        ENDIF.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

Invoke the Stability.ai Stable Diffusion XL foundation model to generate images using L2 high level client.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_bdr_l2_sd) = /aws1/
cl_bdr_l2_factory=>create_stable_diffusion_xl_1( lo_bdr ).
        " iv_prompt contains a prompt like 'Show me a picture of a unicorn reading
 an enterprise financial report'.
        DATA(lv_image) = lo_bdr_l2_sd->text_to_image( iv_prompt ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_bdraccessdeniedex INTO DATA(lo_ex).
        WRITE / lo_ex->get_text( ).
        WRITE / |Don't forget to enable model access at https://
console.aws.amazon.com/bedrock/home?#/modelaccess|.

    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon Bedrock Agents Runtime.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`InvokeAgent`

The following code example shows how to use `InvokeAgent`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
DATA(lo_result) = lo_bdz->invokeagent(
  iv_agentid      = iv_agentid
    iv_agentaliasid = iv_agentaliasid
    iv_enabletrace  = abap_true
    iv_sessionid    = CONV #( cl_system_uuid=>create_uuid_c26_static( ) )
    iv_inputtext    = |Let's play "rock, paper, scissors".  I choose rock.| ).
DATA(lo_stream) = lo_result->get_completion( ).
TRY.
    " loop while there are still events in the stream
    WHILE lo_stream->/aws1/if_rt_stream_reader~data_available( ) = abap_true.
      DATA(lo_evt) = lo_stream->read( ).
      " each /AWS1/CL_BDZRESPONSESTREAM_EV event contains exactly one member
      " all others are INITIAL.  For each event, process the non-initial
      " member if desired
      IF lo_evt->get_chunk( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
        " Process a Chunk event
        DATA(lv_xstr) = lo_evt->get_chunk( )->get_bytes( ).
        DATA(lv_answer) = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>xstring_to_string( lv_xstr ).
        " the answer says something like "I chose paper, so you lost"
      ELSEIF lo_evt->get_files( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
        " process a Files event if desired
      ELSEIF lo_evt->get_returncontrol( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
        " process a ReturnControl event if desired
      ELSEIF lo_evt->get_trace( ) IS NOT INITIAL.
        " process a Trace event if desired
      ENDIF.
    ENDWHILE.
    " the stream of events can possibly contain an exception
    " which will be raised to break the loop
    " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZACCESSDENIEDEX.
    " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZINTERNALSERVEREX.
    " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZMODELNOTREADYEX.
    " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZVALIDATIONEX.
```

```
        " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZTHROTTLINGEX.
        " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZDEPENDENCYFAILEDEX.
        " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZBADGATEWAYEX.
        " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZRESOURCENOTFOUNDEX.
        " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZSERVICEQUOTAEXCDEX.
        " catch /AWS1/CX_BDZCONFLICTEXCEPTION.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see InvokeAgent in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

CloudWatch examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with CloudWatch.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DeleteAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAlarms`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->deletealarms(
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtresourcenotfound.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteAlarms in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeAlarms`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAlarms`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_cwt->describealarms(                 " oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes. "
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
```

```
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeAlarms in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DisableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `DisableAlarmActions`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Disables actions on the specified alarm. "
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->disablealarmactions(
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm actions disabled.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DisableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`EnableAlarmActions`

The following code example shows how to use `EnableAlarmActions`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Enable actions on the specified alarm."
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->enablealarmactions(
          it_alarmnames = it_alarm_names ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm actions enabled.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see EnableAlarmActions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListMetrics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListMetrics`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "The following list-metrics example displays the metrics for Amazon CloudWatch."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_cwt->listmetrics(            " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
```

```
        iv_namespace = iv_namespace ).
      DATA(lt_metrics) = oo_result->get_metrics( ).
      MESSAGE 'Metrics retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtinvparamvalueex.
      MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
  ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListMetrics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`PutMetricAlarm`

The following code example shows how to use `PutMetricAlarm`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  TRY.
      lo_cwt->putmetricalarm(
        iv_alarmname                = iv_alarm_name
        iv_comparisonoperator       = iv_comparison_operator
        iv_evaluationperiods        = iv_evaluation_periods
        iv_metricname               = iv_metric_name
        iv_namespace                = iv_namespace
        iv_statistic                = iv_statistic
        iv_threshold                = iv_threshold
        iv_actionsenabled           = iv_actions_enabled
        iv_alarmdescription         = iv_alarm_description
        iv_unit                     = iv_unit
        iv_period                   = iv_period
        it_dimensions               = it_dimensions ).
      MESSAGE 'Alarm created.' TYPE 'I'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtlimitexceededfault.
      MESSAGE 'The request processing has exceeded the limit' TYPE 'E'.
  ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutMetricAlarm in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with alarms

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an alarm.
- Disable alarm actions.
- Describe an alarm.
- Delete an alarm.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
DATA lt_alarmnames TYPE /aws1/cl_cwtalarmnames_w=>tt_alarmnames.
DATA lo_alarmname TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_cwtalarmnames_w.

"Create an alarm"
TRY.
    lo_cwt->putmetricalarm(
      iv_alarmname                = iv_alarm_name
      iv_comparisonoperator       = iv_comparison_operator
      iv_evaluationperiods        = iv_evaluation_periods
      iv_metricname               = iv_metric_name
      iv_namespace                = iv_namespace
      iv_statistic                = iv_statistic
      iv_threshold                = iv_threshold
      iv_actionsenabled           = iv_actions_enabled
      iv_alarmdescription         = iv_alarm_description
      iv_unit                     = iv_unit
      iv_period                   = iv_period
```

```
          it_dimensions                = it_dimensions ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm created' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtlimitexceededfault.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has exceeded the limit' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Create an ABAP internal table for the created alarm."
    lo_alarmname = NEW #( iv_value = iv_alarm_name ).
    INSERT lo_alarmname INTO TABLE lt_alarmnames.

    "Disable alarm actions."
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->disablealarmactions(
          it_alarmnames                = lt_alarmnames ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarm actions disabled' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_disablealarm_exception).
        DATA(lv_disablealarm_error) = |"{ lo_disablealarm_exception->av_err_code }"
 - { lo_disablealarm_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_disablealarm_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Describe alarm using the same ABAP internal table."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_cwt->describealarms(                       " oo_result is
 returned for testing purpose "
          it_alarmnames                = lt_alarmnames ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms retrieved' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_describealarms_exception).
        DATA(lv_describealarms_error) = |"{ lo_describealarms_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_describealarms_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_describealarms_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Delete alarm."
    TRY.
        lo_cwt->deletealarms(
          it_alarmnames = lt_alarmnames ).
        MESSAGE 'Alarms deleted' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_cwtresourcenotfound.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being access is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

- DeleteAlarms
- DescribeAlarms
- DisableAlarmActions
- PutMetricAlarm

DynamoDB examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    " Create an Amazon Dynamo DB table.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_session) = /aws1/cl_rt_session_aws=>create( cv_pfl ).
        DATA(lo_dyn) = /aws1/cl_dyn_factory=>create( lo_session ).
        DATA(lt_keyschema) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement=>tt_keyschema(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                              iv_keytype = 'HASH' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                              iv_keytype = 'RANGE' ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_attributedefinitions) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributedefn=>tt_attributedefinitions(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                           iv_attributetype = 'N' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                           iv_attributetype = 'S' ) ) ).

        " Adjust read/write capacities as desired.
        DATA(lo_dynprovthroughput)  = NEW /aws1/cl_dynprovthroughput(
          iv_readcapacityunits = 5
          iv_writecapacityunits = 5 ).
        DATA(oo_result) = lo_dyn->createtable(
          it_keyschema = lt_keyschema
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_attributedefinitions = lt_attributedefinitions
          io_provisionedthroughput = lo_dynprovthroughput ).
        " Table creation can take some time. Wait till table exists before
 returning.
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tableexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name && 'created.' TYPE 'I'.
      " It throws exception if the table already exists.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex INTO DATA(lo_resourceinuseex).
```

```
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_code }" -
 { lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Describe table
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_table) = lo_dyn->describetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        DATA(lv_tablename) = lo_table->get_table( )->ask_tablename( ).
        MESSAGE 'The table name is ' && lv_tablename TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Put items into the table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp_putitem) = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_putiteminputattributemap(
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 'Jaws' ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '1975' }| ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '7.5' }| ) ) )
          ) ).
        lo_resp_putitem = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_putiteminputattributemap(
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s = 'Star
 Wars' ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '1978' }| ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '8.1' }| ) ) )
          ) ).
```

```
        lo_resp_putitem = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_putiteminputattributemap(
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 'Speed' ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '1994' }| ) ) )
            ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_putiteminputattrmap_maprow(
              key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |
{ '7.9' }| ) ) )
          ) ).
        " TYPE REF TO ZCL_AWS1_dyn_PUT_ITEM_OUTPUT
        MESSAGE '3 rows inserted into DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Get item from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp_getitem) = lo_dyn->getitem(
          iv_tablename                = iv_table_name
          it_key                      = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_key(
           ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
             key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 'Jaws' ) ) )
           ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
             key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n =
 '1975' ) ) )
          ) ).
        DATA(lt_attr) = lo_resp_getitem->get_item( ).
        DATA(lo_title) = lt_attr[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        DATA(lo_year) = lt_attr[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        DATA(lo_rating) = lt_attr[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Query item from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lt_attributelist) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_attributevaluelist(
              ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = '1975' ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_keyconditions) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>tt_keyconditions(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>ts_keyconditions_maprow(
          key = 'year'
          value = NEW /aws1/cl_dyncondition(
            it_attributevaluelist = lt_attributelist
            iv_comparisonoperator = |EQ|
          ) ) ) ).
        DATA(lo_query_result) = lo_dyn->query(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_keyconditions = lt_keyconditions ).
        DATA(lt_items) = lo_query_result->get_items( ).
        READ TABLE lo_query_result->get_items( ) INTO DATA(lt_item) INDEX 1.
        lo_title = lt_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        lo_year = lt_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        lo_rating = lt_item[ key = 'rating' ]-value.
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Scan items from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_scan_result) = lo_dyn->scan( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        lt_items = lo_scan_result->get_items( ).
        " Read the first item and display the attributes.
        READ TABLE lo_query_result->get_items( ) INTO lt_item INDEX 1.
        lo_title = lt_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
        lo_year = lt_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        lo_rating = lt_item[ key = 'rating' ]-value.
        MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
        MESSAGE 'Movie rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Update items from table.
    TRY.
        DATA(lt_attributeupdates) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattrvalueupdate=>tt_attributeupdates(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattrvalueupdate=>ts_attributeupdates_maprow(
          key = 'rating' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattrvalueupdate(
            io_value  = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = '7.6' )
            iv_action = |PUT| ) ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_key) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_key(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
            key = 'year' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = '1975' ) ) )
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue=>ts_key_maprow(
            key = 'title' value = NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_s =
 '1980' ) ) ) ).
        DATA(lo_resp) = lo_dyn->updateitem(
          iv_tablename        = iv_table_name
          it_key              = lt_key
          it_attributeupdates = lt_attributeupdates ).
        MESSAGE '1 item updated in DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Delete table.
    TRY.
        lo_dyn->deletetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tablenotexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'DynamoDB Table deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The table cannot be deleted as it is in use' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lt_keyschema) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement=>tt_keyschema(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'year'
                                              iv_keytype = 'HASH' ) )
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynkeyschemaelement( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                              iv_keytype = 'RANGE' ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_attributedefinitions) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributedefn=>tt_attributedefinitions(
          ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'year'
```

```
                                          iv_attributetype = 'N' ) )
         ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributedefn( iv_attributename = 'title'
                                          iv_attributetype = 'S' ) ) ).

       " Adjust read/write capacities as desired.
       DATA(lo_dynprovthroughput)  = NEW /aws1/cl_dynprovthroughput(
         iv_readcapacityunits = 5
         iv_writecapacityunits = 5 ).
       oo_result = lo_dyn->createtable(
         it_keyschema = lt_keyschema
         iv_tablename = iv_table_name
         it_attributedefinitions = lt_attributedefinitions
         io_provisionedthroughput = lo_dynprovthroughput ).
       " Table creation can take some time. Wait till table exists before
returning.
       lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tableexists(
         iv_max_wait_time = 200
         iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
       MESSAGE 'DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name && 'created.' TYPE 'I'.
     " This exception can happen if the table already exists.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex INTO DATA(lo_resourceinuseex).
       DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_code }" -
{ lo_resourceinuseex->av_err_msg }|.
       MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
```

```
        DATA(lo_resp) = lo_dyn->deleteitem(
          iv_tablename                = iv_table_name
          it_key                      = it_key_input ).
        MESSAGE 'Deleted one item.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_dyn->deletetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
        " Wait till the table is actually deleted.
        lo_dyn->get_waiter( )->tablenotexists(
          iv_max_wait_time = 200
          iv_tablename     = iv_table_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Table ' && iv_table_name && ' deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table ' && iv_table_name && ' does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The table cannot be deleted since it is in use' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTable`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    oo_result = lo_dyn->describetable( iv_tablename = iv_table_name ).
    DATA(lv_tablename) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_tablename( ).
    DATA(lv_tablearn) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_tablearn( ).
    DATA(lv_tablestatus) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_tablestatus( ).
    DATA(lv_itemcount) = oo_result->get_table( )->ask_itemcount( ).
    MESSAGE 'The table name is ' && lv_tablename
        && '. The table ARN is ' && lv_tablearn
        && '. The tablestatus is ' && lv_tablestatus
        && '. Item count is ' && lv_itemcount TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
    MESSAGE 'The table ' && lv_tablename && ' does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTable in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    oo_item = lo_dyn->getitem(
      iv_tablename                = iv_table_name
      it_key                      = it_key ).
    DATA(lt_attr) = oo_item->get_item( ).
    DATA(lo_title) = lt_attr[ key = 'title' ]-value.
    DATA(lo_year) = lt_attr[ key = 'year' ]-value.
    DATA(lo_rating) = lt_attr[ key = 'rating' ]-value.
    MESSAGE 'Movie name is: ' && lo_title->get_s( )
      && 'Movie year is: ' && lo_year->get_n( )
      && 'Moving rating is: ' && lo_rating->get_n( ) TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
    MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
```

```
        oo_result = lo_dyn->listtables( ).
        " You can loop over the oo_result to get table properties like this.
        LOOP AT oo_result->get_tablenames( ) INTO DATA(lo_table_name).
          DATA(lv_tablename) = lo_table_name->get_value( ).
        ENDLOOP.
        DATA(lv_tablecount) = lines( oo_result->get_tablenames( ) ).
        MESSAGE 'Found ' && lv_tablecount && ' tables' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_resp) = lo_dyn->putitem(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_item      = it_item ).
        MESSAGE '1 row inserted into DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        " Query movies for a given year .
        DATA(lt_attributelist) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_attributevaluelist(
            ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |{ iv_year }| ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_key_conditions) = VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>tt_keyconditions(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>ts_keyconditions_maprow(
          key = 'year'
          value = NEW /aws1/cl_dyncondition(
          it_attributevaluelist = lt_attributelist
          iv_comparisonoperator = |EQ|
          ) ) ) ).
        oo_result = lo_dyn->query(
          iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_keyconditions = lt_key_conditions ).
        DATA(lt_items) = oo_result->get_items( ).
        "You can loop over the results to get item attributes.
        LOOP AT lt_items INTO DATA(lt_item).
          DATA(lo_title) = lt_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
          DATA(lo_year) = lt_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        ENDLOOP.
        DATA(lv_count) = oo_result->get_count( ).
        MESSAGE 'Item count is: ' && lv_count TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        " Scan movies for rating greater than or equal to the rating specified
        DATA(lt_attributelist) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dynattributevalue=>tt_attributevaluelist(
            ( NEW /aws1/cl_dynattributevalue( iv_n = |{ iv_rating }| ) ) ).
        DATA(lt_filter_conditions) = VALUE /aws1/
cl_dyncondition=>tt_filterconditionmap(
          ( VALUE /aws1/cl_dyncondition=>ts_filterconditionmap_maprow(
          key = 'rating'
          value = NEW /aws1/cl_dyncondition(
          it_attributevaluelist = lt_attributelist
          iv_comparisonoperator = |GE|
          ) ) ) ).
        oo_scan_result = lo_dyn->scan( iv_tablename = iv_table_name
          it_scanfilter = lt_filter_conditions ).
        DATA(lt_items) = oo_scan_result->get_items( ).
        LOOP AT lt_items INTO DATA(lo_item).
          " You can loop over to get individual attributes.
          DATA(lo_title) = lo_item[ key = 'title' ]-value.
          DATA(lo_year) = lo_item[ key = 'year' ]-value.
        ENDLOOP.
        DATA(lv_count) = oo_scan_result->get_count( ).
        MESSAGE 'Found ' && lv_count && ' items' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_output = lo_dyn->updateitem(
          iv_tablename        = iv_table_name
          it_key              = it_item_key
          it_attributeupdates = it_attribute_updates ).
        MESSAGE '1 item updated in DynamoDB Table' && iv_table_name TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyncondalcheckfaile00.
        MESSAGE 'A condition specified in the operation could not be evaluated.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dynresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The table or index does not exist' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_dyntransactconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Another transaction is using the item' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon EC2.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->allocateaddress( iv_domain = 'vpc' ).   " oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Allocated an Elastic IP address.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->associateaddress(                        " oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes. "
            iv_allocationid = iv_allocation_id
            iv_instanceid = iv_instance_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Associated an Elastic IP address with an EC2 instance.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->createkeypair( iv_keyname = iv_key_name ).
              " oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Amazon EC2 key pair created.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->createsecuritygroup(                 " oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes. "
          iv_description = 'Security group example'
          iv_groupname = iv_security_group_name
          iv_vpcid = iv_vpc_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Security group created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_ec2->deletekeypair( iv_keyname = iv_key_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Amazon EC2 key pair deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_ec2->deletesecuritygroup( iv_groupid = iv_security_group_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Security group deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeAddresses`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAddresses`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeaddresses( ).                       " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_addresses) = oo_result->get_addresses( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about Elastic IP addresses.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeAddresses in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeAvailabilityZones`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeAvailabilityZones`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeavailabilityzones( ).                       "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_zones) = oo_result->get_availabilityzones( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about Availability Zones.' TYPE 'I'.

      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeAvailabilityZones in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeinstances( ).                       " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
```

```
        " Retrieving details of EC2 instances. "
        DATA: lv_istance_id    TYPE /aws1/ec2string,
              lv_status        TYPE /aws1/ec2instancestatename,
              lv_instance_type TYPE /aws1/ec2instancetype,
              lv_image_id      TYPE /aws1/ec2string.
        LOOP AT oo_result->get_reservations( ) INTO DATA(lo_reservation).
          LOOP AT lo_reservation->get_instances( ) INTO DATA(lo_instance).
            lv_istance_id = lo_instance->get_instanceid( ).
            lv_status = lo_instance->get_state( )->get_name( ).
            lv_instance_type = lo_instance->get_instancetype( ).
            lv_image_id = lo_instance->get_imageid( ).
          ENDLOOP.
        ENDLOOP.
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about EC2 instances.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describekeypairs( ).                        " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_key_pairs) = oo_result->get_keypairs( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about key pairs.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeRegions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeRegions`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describeregions( ).                       " oo_result
 is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_regions) = oo_result->get_regions( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about Regions.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeRegions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        DATA lt_group_ids TYPE /aws1/cl_ec2groupidstrlist_w=>tt_groupidstringlist.
        APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2groupidstrlist_w( iv_value = iv_group_id ) TO
 lt_group_ids.
        oo_result = lo_ec2->describesecuritygroups( it_groupids = lt_group_ids ).
      " oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_security_groups) = oo_result->get_securitygroups( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved information about security groups.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`MonitorInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `MonitorInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
```

```
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to monitor
 the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->monitorinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to monitor this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to enable detailed monitoring completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to enable detailed monitoring. "
          lo_ec2->monitorinstances(
            it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
            iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Detailed monitoring enabled.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to monitor this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to enable detailed monitoring failed. User does not have
 the permissions to monitor the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see MonitorInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`RebootInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RebootInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to reboot
 the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->rebootinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to reboot this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to reboot instance completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to make a reboot request. "
          lo_ec2->rebootinstances(
             it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
             iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Instance rebooted.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to reboot this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to reboot instance failed. User does not have permissions
 to reboot the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see RebootInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_ec2->releaseaddress( iv_allocationid = iv_allocation_id ).
        MESSAGE 'Elastic IP address released.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    " Create tags for resource created during instance launch. "
    DATA lt_tagspecifications TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2tagspecification=>tt_tagspecificationlist.
    DATA ls_tagspecifications LIKE LINE OF lt_tagspecifications.
    ls_tagspecifications = NEW /aws1/cl_ec2tagspecification(
      iv_resourcetype = 'instance'
      it_tags = VALUE /aws1/cl_ec2tag=>tt_taglist(
        ( NEW /aws1/cl_ec2tag( iv_key = 'Name' iv_value = iv_tag_value ) )
      ) ).
    APPEND ls_tagspecifications TO lt_tagspecifications.

    TRY.
        " Create/launch Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (Amazon EC2) instance. "
        oo_result = lo_ec2->runinstances(                           " oo_result is
 returned for testing purposes. "
          iv_imageid = iv_ami_id
          iv_instancetype = 't3.micro'
          iv_maxcount = 1
          iv_mincount = 1
          it_tagspecifications = lt_tagspecifications
          iv_subnetid = iv_subnet_id ).
        MESSAGE 'EC2 instance created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to start
 the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->startinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to start this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to start instance completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to start instance. "
          oo_result = lo_ec2->startinstances(           " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
            it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
            iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Successfully started the EC2 instance.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to start this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to start instance failed. User does not have permissions
 to start the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

StopInstances

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_instance_ids TYPE /aws1/
cl_ec2instidstringlist_w=>tt_instanceidstringlist.
    APPEND NEW /aws1/cl_ec2instidstringlist_w( iv_value = iv_instance_id ) TO
 lt_instance_ids.

    "Perform dry run"
    TRY.
        " DryRun is set to true. This checks for the required permissions to stop
 the instance without actually making the request. "
        lo_ec2->stopinstances(
          it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
          iv_dryrun = abap_true ).
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        " If the error code returned is `DryRunOperation`, then you have the
 required permissions to stop this instance. "
        IF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'DryRunOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to stop instance completed.' TYPE 'I'.
          " DryRun is set to false to stop instance. "
          oo_result = lo_ec2->stopinstances(           " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
            it_instanceids = lt_instance_ids
            iv_dryrun = abap_false ).
          MESSAGE 'Successfully stopped the EC2 instance.' TYPE 'I'.
          " If the error code returned is `UnauthorizedOperation`, then you don't
 have the required permissions to stop this instance. "
        ELSEIF lo_exception->av_err_code = 'UnauthorizedOperation'.
          MESSAGE 'Dry run to stop instance failed. User does not have permissions
 to stop the instance.' TYPE 'E'.
        ELSE.
          DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
          MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
        ENDIF.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Kinesis examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Kinesis.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a stream and put a record in it.
- Create a shard iterator.
- Read the record, then clean up resources.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   DATA lo_stream_describe_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsdescrstreamoutput.
   DATA lo_stream_description TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsstreamdescription.
   DATA lo_sharditerator TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsgetsharditerator01.
   DATA lo_record_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_knsputrecordoutput.

   "Create stream."
   TRY.
       lo_kns->createstream(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
           iv_shardcount = iv_shard_count ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceeded
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in use.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Wait for stream to becomes active."
   lo_stream_describe_result = lo_kns->describestream( iv_streamname =
iv_stream_name ).
   lo_stream_description = lo_stream_describe_result->get_streamdescription( ).
   WHILE lo_stream_description->get_streamstatus( ) <> 'ACTIVE'.
     IF sy-index = 30.
       EXIT.               "maximum 5 minutes"
     ENDIF.
     WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.
     lo_stream_describe_result = lo_kns->describestream( iv_streamname =
iv_stream_name ).
     lo_stream_description = lo_stream_describe_result->get_streamdescription( ).
   ENDWHILE.

   "Create record."
   TRY.
       lo_record_result = lo_kns->putrecord(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
           iv_data       = iv_data
           iv_partitionkey = iv_partition_key ).
       MESSAGE 'Record created.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
       MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request quotas.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested data
is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Create a shard iterator in order to read the record."
   TRY.
       lo_sharditerator = lo_kns->getsharditerator(
         iv_shardid = lo_record_result->get_shardid( )
         iv_sharditeratortype = iv_sharditeratortype
         iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Shard iterator created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested data
is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Read the record."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_kns->getrecords(                    " oo_result is returned
for testing purposes. "
           iv_sharditerator   = lo_sharditerator->get_sharditerator( ) ).
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Shard iterator created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsexpirediteratorex.
        MESSAGE 'Iterator expired.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request quotas.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested data
is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Delete stream."
    TRY.
        lo_kns->deletestream(
            iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Stream deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceeded
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in use.'
TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateStream
  - DeleteStream

- GetRecords
- GetShardIterator
- PutRecord

Actions

`CreateStream`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateStream`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_kns->createstream(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
           iv_shardcount = iv_shard_count ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in use.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateStream in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteStream`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_kns->deletestream(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourceinuseex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because the resource is in use.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteStream in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeStream`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeStream`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_kns->describestream(
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name ).
       DATA(lt_stream_description) = oo_result->get_streamdescription( ).
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Streams retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeStream in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetRecords`

The following code example shows how to use `GetRecords`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_kns->getrecords(             " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
            iv_sharditerator = iv_shard_iterator ).
        DATA(lt_records) = oo_result->get_records( ).
        MESSAGE 'Record retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsexpirediteratorex.
        MESSAGE 'Iterator expired.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
        MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
        MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request quotas.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested data
is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetRecords in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListStreams`

The following code example shows how to use `ListStreams`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_kns->liststreams(        " oo_result is returned for testing
purposes. "
            "Set Limit to specify that a maximum of streams should be returned."
            iv_limit = iv_limit ).
        DATA(lt_streams) = oo_result->get_streamnames( ).
        MESSAGE 'Streams listed.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_knslimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing has failed because of a limit exceed
exception.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListStreams in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

PutRecord

The following code example shows how to use PutRecord.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_kns->putrecord(            " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
           iv_streamname = iv_stream_name
           iv_data       = iv_data
           iv_partitionkey = iv_partition_key ).
       MESSAGE 'Record created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this AWS KMS action.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsdisabledex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is disabled.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsinvalidstateex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is in an invalid state. ' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsnotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key used is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsoptinrequired.
       MESSAGE 'KMS key option is required.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knskmsthrottlingex.
       MESSAGE 'The rate of requests to AWS KMS is exceeding the request quotas.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'The request rate for the stream is too high, or the requested data
is too large for the available throughput.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutRecord in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`RegisterStreamConsumer`

The following code example shows how to use `RegisterStreamConsumer`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_kns->registerstreamconsumer(       " oo_result is returned
for testing purposes. "
           iv_streamarn = iv_stream_arn
           iv_consumername = iv_consumer_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Stream consumer registered.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_knsinvalidargumentex.
       MESSAGE 'The specified argument was not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see RegisterStreamConsumer in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       "Create an AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) role that grants AWS
Lambda permission to write to logs."
       DATA(lv_policy_document) = `{` &&
           `"Version":"2012-10-17",` &&
```

```
                  `"Statement": [` &&
                    `{` &&
                      `"Effect": "Allow",` &&
                      `"Action": [` &&
                        `"sts:AssumeRole"` &&
                      `],` &&
                      `"Principal": {` &&
                        `"Service": [` &&
                          `"lambda.amazonaws.com"` &&
                        `]` &&
                      `}` &&
                    `}` &&
                  `]` &&
                `}`.
        TRY.
            DATA(lo_create_role_output) = lo_iam->createrole(
                    iv_rolename = iv_role_name
                    iv_assumerolepolicydocument = lv_policy_document
                    iv_description = 'Grant lambda permission to write to logs' ).
            DATA(lv_role_arn) = lo_create_role_output->get_role( )->get_arn( ).
            MESSAGE 'IAM role created.' TYPE 'I'.
            WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.            " Make sure that the IAM role is ready
 for use. "
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamentityalrdyexex.
            DATA(lo_role) = lo_iam->getrole( iv_rolename = iv_role_name ).
            lv_role_arn = lo_role->get_role( )->get_arn( ).
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iaminvalidinputex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iammalformedplydocex.
            MESSAGE 'Policy document in the request is malformed.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        TRY.
            lo_iam->attachrolepolicy(
                iv_rolename  = iv_role_name
                iv_policyarn = 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole' ).
            MESSAGE 'Attached policy to the IAM role.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iaminvalidinputex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamnosuchentityex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource entity does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamplynotattachableex.
```

```
            MESSAGE 'Service role policies can only be attached to the service-
linked role for their service.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamunmodableentityex.
            MESSAGE 'Service that depends on the service-linked role is not
 modifiable.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Create a Lambda function and upload handler code. "
        " Lambda function performs 'increment' action on a number. "
        TRY.
            lo_lmd->createfunction(
                 iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                 iv_runtime = `python3.9`
                 iv_role = lv_role_arn
                 iv_handler = iv_handler
                 io_code = io_initial_zip_file
                 iv_description = 'AWS Lambda code example' ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function created.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
            MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Verify the function is in Active state "
        WHILE lo_lmd->getfunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name )-
>get_configuration( )->ask_state( ) <> 'Active'.
          IF sy-index = 10.
            EXIT.               " Maximum 10 seconds. "
          ENDIF.
          WAIT UP TO 1 SECONDS.
        ENDWHILE.

        "Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results."
        TRY.
            DATA(lv_json) = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring(
              `{`  &&
                `"action": "increment",`  &&
                `"number": 10` &&
              `}` ).
            DATA(lo_initial_invoke_output) = lo_lmd->invoke(
                       iv_functionname = iv_function_name
```

```
                        iv_payload = lv_json ).
            ov_initial_invoke_payload = lo_initial_invoke_output->get_payload( ).
        " ov_initial_invoke_payload is returned for testing purposes. "
            DATA(lo_writer_json) = cl_sxml_string_writer=>create( type =
 if_sxml=>co_xt_json ).
            CALL TRANSFORMATION id SOURCE XML ov_initial_invoke_payload RESULT XML
 lo_writer_json.
            DATA(lv_result) = cl_abap_codepage=>convert_from( lo_writer_json-
>get_output( ) ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function invoked.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvrequestcontex.
            MESSAGE 'Unable to parse request body as JSON.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdunsuppedmediatyp00.
            MESSAGE 'Invoke request body does not have JSON as its content type.'
 TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Update the function code and configure its Lambda environment with an
 environment variable. "
        " Lambda function is updated to perform 'decrement' action also. "
        TRY.
            lo_lmd->updatefunctioncode(
                  iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                  iv_zipfile = io_updated_zip_file ).
            WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.            " Make sure that the update is
 completed. "
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function code updated.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
            MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        TRY.
            DATA lt_variables TYPE /aws1/
cl_lmdenvironmentvaria00=>tt_environmentvariables.
            DATA ls_variable LIKE LINE OF lt_variables.
            ls_variable-key = 'LOG_LEVEL'.
```

```
            ls_variable-value = NEW /aws1/cl_lmdenvironmentvaria00( iv_value =
 'info' ).
            INSERT ls_variable INTO TABLE lt_variables.

            lo_lmd->updatefunctionconfiguration(
                  iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                  io_environment = NEW /aws1/cl_lmdenvironment( it_variables =
 lt_variables ) ).
            WAIT UP TO 10 SECONDS.            " Make sure that the update is
 completed. "
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function configuration/settings updated.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
            MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.'
 TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        "Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the
 execution log that's returned from the invocation."
        TRY.
            lv_json = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring(
              `{`  &&
                `"action": "decrement",`  &&
                `"number": 10` &&
              `}` ).
            DATA(lo_updated_invoke_output) = lo_lmd->invoke(
                        iv_functionname = iv_function_name
                        iv_payload = lv_json ).
            ov_updated_invoke_payload = lo_updated_invoke_output->get_payload( ).
        " ov_updated_invoke_payload is returned for testing purposes. "
            lo_writer_json = cl_sxml_string_writer=>create( type =
 if_sxml=>co_xt_json ).
            CALL TRANSFORMATION id SOURCE XML ov_updated_invoke_payload RESULT XML
 lo_writer_json.
            lv_result = cl_abap_codepage=>convert_from( lo_writer_json-
>get_output( ) ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function invoked.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvrequestcontex.
            MESSAGE 'Unable to parse request body as JSON.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdunsuppedmediatyp00.
            MESSAGE 'Invoke request body does not have JSON as its content type.'
 TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " List the functions for your account. "
        TRY.
            DATA(lo_list_output) = lo_lmd->listfunctions( ).
            DATA(lt_functions) = lo_list_output->get_functions( ).
            MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of Lambda functions.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Delete the Lambda function. "
        TRY.
            lo_lmd->deletefunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name ).
            MESSAGE 'Lambda function deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'W'.
        ENDTRY.

        " Detach role policy. "
        TRY.
            lo_iam->detachrolepolicy(
                iv_rolename  = iv_role_name
                iv_policyarn = 'arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/
AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole' ).
            MESSAGE 'Detached policy from the IAM role.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iaminvalidinputex.
            MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamnosuchentityex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource entity does not exist.' TYPE 'W'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamplynotattachableex.
            MESSAGE 'Service role policies can only be attached to the service-
linked role for their service.' TYPE 'E'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamunmodableentityex.
            MESSAGE 'Service that depends on the service-linked role is not
 modifiable.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.
```

```
        " Delete the IAM role. "
        TRY.
            lo_iam->deleterole( iv_rolename = iv_role_name ).
            MESSAGE 'IAM role deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamnosuchentityex.
            MESSAGE 'The requested resource entity does not exist.' TYPE 'W'.
          CATCH /aws1/cx_iamunmodableentityex.
            MESSAGE 'Service that depends on the service-linked role is not
modifiable.' TYPE 'E'.
        ENDTRY.

      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO lo_exception.
        DATA(lv_error) = lo_exception->get_longtext( ).
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction
  - GetFunction
  - Invoke
  - ListFunctions
  - UpdateFunctionCode
  - UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_lmd->createfunction(
           iv_functionname = iv_function_name
           iv_runtime = `python3.9`
           iv_role = iv_role_arn
           iv_handler = iv_handler
           io_code = io_zip_file
           iv_description = 'AWS Lambda code example' ).
       MESSAGE 'Lambda function created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodesigningcfgno00.
       MESSAGE 'Code signing configuration does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodeverification00.
       MESSAGE 'Code signature failed one or more validation checks for signature
mismatch or expiration.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidcodesigex.
       MESSAGE 'Code signature failed the integrity check.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
       MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       lo_lmd->deletefunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Lambda function deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
       MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.' TYPE
'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
       MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_lmd->getfunction( iv_functionname = iv_function_name ).
" oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'Lambda function information retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
       MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Invoke

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       DATA(lv_json) = /aws1/cl_rt_util=>string_to_xstring(
         `{`  &&
           `"action": "increment",`  &&
           `"number": 10` &&
         `}` ).
       oo_result = lo_lmd->invoke(                  " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
               iv_functionname = iv_function_name
               iv_payload = lv_json ).
       MESSAGE 'Lambda function invoked.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
       MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvrequestcontex.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to parse request body as JSON.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidzipfileex.
        MESSAGE 'The deployment package could not be unzipped.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdrequesttoolargeex.
        MESSAGE 'Invoke request body JSON input limit was exceeded by the request
payload.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdunsuppedmediatyp00.
        MESSAGE 'Invoke request body does not have JSON as its content type.' TYPE
'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_lmd->listfunctions( ).       " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_functions) = oo_result->get_functions( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of Lambda functions.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_lmd->updatefunctioncode(     " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
              iv_functionname = iv_function_name
              iv_zipfile = io_zip_file ).

        MESSAGE 'Lambda function code updated.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodesigningcfgno00.
        MESSAGE 'Code signing configuration does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodestorageexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Maximum total code size per account exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodeverification00.
        MESSAGE 'Code signature failed one or more validation checks for signature
mismatch or expiration.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidcodesigex.
        MESSAGE 'Code signature failed the integrity check.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_lmd->updatefunctionconfiguration(     " oo_result is returned
for testing purposes. "
              iv_functionname = iv_function_name
              iv_runtime = iv_runtime
              iv_description  = 'Updated Lambda function'
              iv_memorysize  = iv_memory_size ).

        MESSAGE 'Lambda function configuration/settings updated.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodesigningcfgno00.
        MESSAGE 'Code signing configuration does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdcodeverification00.
        MESSAGE 'Code signature failed one or more validation checks for signature
mismatch or expiration.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvalidcodesigex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Code signature failed the integrity check.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdinvparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The request contains a non-valid parameter.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourceconflictex.
        MESSAGE 'Resource already exists or another operation is in progress.' TYPE
'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdresourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The requested resource does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdserviceexception.
        MESSAGE 'An internal problem was encountered by the AWS Lambda service.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_lmdtoomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'The maximum request throughput was reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA(lo_session) = /aws1/cl_rt_session_aws=>create( cv_pfl ).
    DATA(lo_s3) = /aws1/cl_s3_factory=>create( lo_session ).

    " Create an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) bucket. "
    TRY.
        " determine our region from our session
        DATA(lv_region) = CONV /aws1/s3_bucketlocationcnstrnt( lo_session-
>get_region( ) ).
        DATA lo_constraint TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf.
        " When in the us-east-1 region, you must not specify a constraint
        " In all other regions, specify the region as the constraint
        IF lv_region = 'us-east-1'.
          CLEAR lo_constraint.
        ELSE.
          lo_constraint = NEW /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf( lv_region ).
        ENDIF.

        lo_s3->createbucket(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            io_createbucketconfiguration  = lo_constraint ).
        MESSAGE 'S3 bucket created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bucketalrdyexists.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bktalrdyownedbyyou.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket already exists and is owned by you.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

```
"Upload an object to an S3 bucket."
TRY.
    "Get contents of file from application server."
    DATA lv_file_content TYPE xstring.
    OPEN DATASET iv_key FOR INPUT IN BINARY MODE.
    READ DATASET iv_key INTO lv_file_content.
    CLOSE DATASET iv_key.

    lo_s3->putobject(
        iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
        iv_key = iv_key
        iv_body = lv_file_content ).
    MESSAGE 'Object uploaded to S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.

" Get an object from a bucket. "
TRY.
    DATA(lo_result) = lo_s3->getobject(
               iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
               iv_key = iv_key ).
    DATA(lv_object_data) = lo_result->get_body( ).
    MESSAGE 'Object retrieved from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
    MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.

" Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket. "
TRY.
    lo_s3->copyobject(
      iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
      iv_key = |{ iv_copy_to_folder }/{ iv_key }|
      iv_copysource = |{ iv_bucket_name }/{ iv_key }| ).
    MESSAGE 'Object copied to a subfolder.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
    MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

```
" List objects in the bucket. "
TRY.
    DATA(lo_list) = lo_s3->listobjects(
       iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
    MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of objects in S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
DATA text TYPE string VALUE 'Object List - '.
DATA lv_object_key TYPE /aws1/s3_objectkey.
LOOP AT lo_list->get_contents( ) INTO DATA(lo_object).
  lv_object_key = lo_object->get_key( ).
  CONCATENATE lv_object_key ', ' INTO text.
ENDLOOP.
MESSAGE text TYPE'I'.

" Delete the objects in a bucket. "
TRY.
    lo_s3->deleteobject(
        iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
        iv_key = iv_key ).
    lo_s3->deleteobject(
        iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
        iv_key = |{ iv_copy_to_folder }/{ iv_key }| ).
    MESSAGE 'Objects deleted from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.


" Delete the bucket. "
TRY.
    lo_s3->deletebucket(
        iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
    MESSAGE 'Deleted S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CopyObject

- CreateBucket
- DeleteBucket
- DeleteObjects
- GetObject
- ListObjectsV2
- PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    lo_s3->copyobject(
      iv_bucket = iv_dest_bucket
      iv_key = iv_dest_object
      iv_copysource = |{ iv_src_bucket }/{ iv_src_object }| ).
    MESSAGE 'Object copied to another bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
    MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        " determine our region from our session
        DATA(lv_region) = CONV /aws1/s3_bucketlocationcnstrnt( lo_session-
>get_region( ) ).
        DATA lo_constraint TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf.
        " When in the us-east-1 region, you must not specify a constraint
        " In all other regions, specify the region as the constraint
        IF lv_region = 'us-east-1'.
          CLEAR lo_constraint.
        ELSE.
          lo_constraint = NEW /aws1/cl_s3_createbucketconf( lv_region ).
        ENDIF.

        lo_s3->createbucket(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            io_createbucketconfiguration  = lo_constraint ).
        MESSAGE 'S3 bucket created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bucketalrdyexists.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_bktalrdyownedbyyou.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket already exists and is owned by you.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.

    lo_s3->deletebucket(
        iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
    MESSAGE 'Deleted S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
TRY.
    lo_s3->deleteobject(
        iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
        iv_key = iv_object_key ).
    MESSAGE 'Object deleted from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
  CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
    MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_s3->getobject(           " oo_result is returned for testing
purposes. "
                  iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
                  iv_key = iv_object_key ).
        DATA(lv_object_data) = oo_result->get_body( ).
        MESSAGE 'Object retrieved from S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchkey.
        MESSAGE 'Object key does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_s3->listobjectsv2(         " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
         iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name ).
       MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of objects in S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
       MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Get contents of file from application server."
   DATA lv_body TYPE xstring.
   OPEN DATASET iv_file_name FOR INPUT IN BINARY MODE.
   READ DATASET iv_file_name INTO lv_body.
   CLOSE DATASET iv_file_name.
```

```
    "Upload/put an object to an S3 bucket."
    TRY.
        lo_s3->putobject(
            iv_bucket = iv_bucket_name
            iv_key = iv_file_name
            iv_body = lv_body ).
        MESSAGE 'Object uploaded to S3 bucket.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_s3_nosuchbucket.
        MESSAGE 'Bucket does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

SageMaker AI examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with SageMaker AI.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateEndpoint`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lt_production_variants TYPE /aws1/
cl_sgmproductionvariant=>tt_productionvariantlist.
    DATA lo_production_variants TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmproductionvariant.
    DATA oo_ep_config_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcreateendptcfgout.

    "Create a production variant as an ABAP object."
    "Identifies a model that you want to host and the resources chosen to deploy for
 hosting it."
    lo_production_variants = NEW #( iv_variantname = iv_variant_name
                                    iv_modelname = iv_model_name
                                    iv_initialinstancecount =
 iv_initial_instance_count
                                    iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type ).

    INSERT lo_production_variants INTO TABLE lt_production_variants.

    "Create an endpoint configuration."
    TRY.
        oo_ep_config_result = lo_sgm->createendpointconfig(
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_endpoint_config_name
          it_productionvariants = lt_production_variants ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Create an endpoint."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->createendpoint(     " oo_result is returned for testing
 purposes. "
            iv_endpointconfigname = iv_endpoint_config_name
            iv_endpointname = iv_endpoint_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint created.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateEndpoint in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`CreateModel`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateModel`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lo_primarycontainer TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcontainerdefn.

    "Create an ABAP object for the container image based on input variables."
    lo_primarycontainer = NEW #( iv_image = iv_container_image
                                 iv_modeldataurl = iv_model_data_url ).

    "Create an Amazon SageMaker model."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->createmodel(        " oo_result is returned for testing
purposes. "
          iv_executionrolearn = iv_execution_role_arn
          iv_modelname = iv_model_name
          io_primarycontainer = lo_primarycontainer ).
        MESSAGE 'Model created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`CreateTrainingJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTrainingJob`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   DATA lo_hyperparameters_w TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmhyperparameters_w.
   DATA lt_hyperparameters TYPE /aws1/cl_sgmhyperparameters_w=>tt_hyperparameters.
   DATA lt_input_data_config TYPE /aws1/cl_sgmchannel=>tt_inputdataconfig.
   DATA lo_trn_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
   DATA lo_trn_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
   DATA lo_trn_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
   DATA lo_val_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
   DATA lo_val_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
   DATA lo_val_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
   DATA lo_algorithm_specification TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmalgorithmspec.
   DATA lo_resource_config  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmresourceconfig.
   DATA lo_output_data_config TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmoutputdataconfig.
   DATA lo_stopping_condition TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmstoppingcondition.

   "Create ABAP internal table for hyperparameters based on input variables."
   "These hyperparameters are based on the Amazon SageMaker built-in algorithm,
XGBoost."
   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_max_depth ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'max_depth' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eta ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eta' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eval_metric ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eval_metric' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_scale_pos_weight ).
```

```
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'scale_pos_weight' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO
TABLE lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_subsample ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'subsample' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_objective ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'objective' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_num_round ).
   INSERT VALUE #( key = 'num_round' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
lt_hyperparameters.

   "Create ABAP objects for training data sources."
   lo_trn_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_trn_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_trn_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_trn_data_s3uri ).

   lo_trn_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_trn_s3datasource ).

   lo_trn_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'train'
                           io_datasource = lo_trn_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_trn_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_trn_data_contenttype ).

   INSERT lo_trn_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Create ABAP objects for validation data sources."
   lo_val_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_val_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_val_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_val_data_s3uri ).

   lo_val_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_val_s3datasource ).

   lo_val_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'validation'
                           io_datasource = lo_val_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_val_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_val_data_contenttype ).

   INSERT lo_val_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.
```

```
   "Create an ABAP object for algorithm specification."
   lo_algorithm_specification = NEW #( iv_trainingimage = iv_training_image
                                       iv_traininginputmode =
iv_training_input_mode ).

   "Create an ABAP object for resource configuration."
   lo_resource_config = NEW #( iv_instancecount = iv_instance_count
                               iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type
                               iv_volumesizeingb = iv_volume_sizeingb ).

   "Create an ABAP object for output data configuration."
   lo_output_data_config = NEW #( iv_s3outputpath = iv_s3_output_path ).

   "Create an ABAP object for stopping condition."
   lo_stopping_condition = NEW #( iv_maxruntimeinseconds =
iv_max_runtime_in_seconds ).

   "Create a training job."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sgm->createtrainingjob(    " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
         iv_trainingjobname           = iv_training_job_name
         iv_rolearn                   = iv_role_arn
         it_hyperparameters           = lt_hyperparameters
         it_inputdataconfig           = lt_input_data_config
         io_algorithmspecification    = lo_algorithm_specification
         io_outputdataconfig          = lo_output_data_config
         io_resourceconfig            = lo_resource_config
         io_stoppingcondition         = lo_stopping_condition ).
       MESSAGE 'Training job created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTrainingJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`CreateTransformJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTransformJob`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   DATA lo_transforminput TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransforminput.
   DATA lo_transformoutput TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransformoutput.
   DATA lo_transformresources TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransformresources.
   DATA lo_datasource  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransformdatasrc.
   DATA lo_s3datasource  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmtransforms3datasrc.

   "Create an ABAP object for an Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) data
source."
   lo_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_tf_data_s3uri
                            iv_s3datatype = iv_tf_data_s3datatype ).

   "Create an ABAP object for data source."
   lo_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_s3datasource ).

   "Create an ABAP object for transform data source."
   lo_transforminput = NEW #( io_datasource = lo_datasource
                              iv_contenttype = iv_tf_data_contenttype
                              iv_compressiontype = iv_tf_data_compressiontype ).

   "Create an ABAP object for resource configuration."
   lo_transformresources = NEW #( iv_instancecount = iv_instance_count
                                  iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type ).

   "Create an ABAP object for output data configuration."
   lo_transformoutput = NEW #( iv_s3outputpath = iv_s3_output_path ).

   "Create a transform job."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sgm->createtransformjob(     " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
```

```
            iv_modelname = iv_tf_model_name
            iv_transformjobname = iv_tf_job_name
            io_transforminput = lo_transforminput
            io_transformoutput = lo_transformoutput
            io_transformresources = lo_transformresources ).
        MESSAGE 'Transform job created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
        MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTransformJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteEndpoint`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteEndpoint`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Delete an endpoint."
    TRY.
        lo_sgm->deleteendpoint(
            iv_endpointname = iv_endpoint_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_endpoint_exception).
        DATA(lv_endpoint_error) = |"{ lo_endpoint_exception->av_err_code }" -
{ lo_endpoint_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_endpoint_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Delete an endpoint configuration."
    TRY.
```

```
        lo_sgm->deleteendpointconfig(
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_endpoint_config_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_endpointconfig_exception).
        DATA(lv_endpointconfig_error) = |"{ lo_endpointconfig_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_endpointconfig_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_endpointconfig_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteEndpoint in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteModel`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteModel`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sgm->deletemodel(
                  iv_modelname = iv_model_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Model deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteModel in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DescribeTrainingJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTrainingJob`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->describetrainingjob(      " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_trainingjobname = iv_training_job_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved description of training job.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTrainingJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListAlgorithms`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAlgorithms`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listalgorithms(         " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of algorithms.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListAlgorithms in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListModels`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listmodels(           " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of models.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListModels in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListNotebookInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `ListNotebookInstances`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listnotebookinstances(        " oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of notebook instances.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListNotebookInstances in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListTrainingJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTrainingJobs`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sgm->listtrainingjobs(       " oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes. "
          iv_namecontains = iv_name_contains
          iv_maxresults = iv_max_results ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of training jobs.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_exception).
        DATA(lv_error) = |"{ lo_exception->av_err_code }" - { lo_exception-
>av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTrainingJobs in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with models and endpoints

The following code example shows how to:

- Start a training job and create a SageMaker AI model.
- Create an endpoint configuration.
- Create an endpoint, then clean up resources.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lo_hyperparameters_w TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmhyperparameters_w.
    DATA lo_trn_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
    DATA lo_trn_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
    DATA lo_trn_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
    DATA lo_val_channel TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmchannel.
    DATA lo_val_datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdatasource.
    DATA lo_val_s3datasource TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgms3datasource.
    DATA lo_algorithm_specification TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmalgorithmspec.
    DATA lo_resource_config  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmresourceconfig.
    DATA lo_output_data_config TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmoutputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_stopping_condition TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmstoppingcondition.
    DATA lo_primarycontainer TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcontainerdefn.
```

```
    DATA lo_production_variants TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmproductionvariant.
    DATA lo_ep_config_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmcreateendptcfgout.
    DATA lo_training_result TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_sgmdescrtrnjobrsp.
    DATA lt_production_variants TYPE /aws1/
cl_sgmproductionvariant=>tt_productionvariantlist.
    DATA lt_input_data_config TYPE /aws1/cl_sgmchannel=>tt_inputdataconfig.
    DATA lt_hyperparameters TYPE /aws1/cl_sgmhyperparameters_w=>tt_hyperparameters.
    DATA lv_model_data_url TYPE /aws1/sgmurl.

    lv_model_data_url = iv_s3_output_path && iv_training_job_name && '/output/
model.tar.gz'.

    "Create ABAP internal table for hyperparameters based on input variables."
    "These hyperparameters are based on Amazon SageMaker built-in algorithm -
 XGBoost"
    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_max_depth ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'max_depth' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eta ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eta' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_eval_metric ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'eval_metric' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_scale_pos_weight ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'scale_pos_weight' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO
 TABLE lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_subsample ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'subsample' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_objective ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'objective' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    lo_hyperparameters_w = NEW #( iv_value = iv_hp_num_round ).
    INSERT VALUE #( key = 'num_round' value = lo_hyperparameters_w )  INTO TABLE
 lt_hyperparameters.

    "Create ABAP internal table for data based on input variables."
```

```
   "Training data."
   lo_trn_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_trn_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_trn_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_trn_data_s3uri ).

   lo_trn_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_trn_s3datasource ).

   lo_trn_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'train'
                           io_datasource = lo_trn_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_trn_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_trn_data_contenttype ).
   INSERT lo_trn_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Validation data."
   lo_val_s3datasource = NEW #( iv_s3datatype = iv_val_data_s3datatype
                                iv_s3datadistributiontype =
iv_val_data_s3datadistribution
                                iv_s3uri = iv_val_data_s3uri ).

   lo_val_datasource = NEW #( io_s3datasource = lo_val_s3datasource ).

   lo_val_channel = NEW #( iv_channelname = 'validation'
                           io_datasource = lo_val_datasource
                           iv_compressiontype = iv_val_data_compressiontype
                           iv_contenttype = iv_val_data_contenttype ).
   INSERT lo_val_channel INTO TABLE lt_input_data_config.

   "Create an ABAP object for algorithm specification based on input variables."
   lo_algorithm_specification = NEW #( iv_trainingimage = iv_training_image
                                       iv_traininginputmode =
iv_training_input_mode ).

   "Create an ABAP object for resource configuration."
   lo_resource_config = NEW #( iv_instancecount = iv_instance_count
                               iv_instancetype = iv_instance_type
                               iv_volumesizeingb = iv_volume_sizeingb ).

   "Create an ABAP object for output data configuration."
   lo_output_data_config = NEW #( iv_s3outputpath = iv_s3_output_path ).

   "Create an ABAP object for stopping condition."
   lo_stopping_condition = NEW #( iv_maxruntimeinseconds =
iv_max_runtime_in_seconds ).
```

```
   TRY.
       lo_sgm->createtrainingjob(
         iv_trainingjobname           = iv_training_job_name
         iv_rolearn                   = iv_role_arn
         it_hyperparameters           = lt_hyperparameters
         it_inputdataconfig           = lt_input_data_config
         io_algorithmspecification    = lo_algorithm_specification
         io_outputdataconfig          = lo_output_data_config
         io_resourceconfig            = lo_resource_config
         io_stoppingcondition         = lo_stopping_condition ).
       MESSAGE 'Training job created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourceinuse.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is in use.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcenotfound.
       MESSAGE 'Resource being accessed is not found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
       MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.

   "Wait for training job to be completed."
   lo_training_result = lo_sgm->describetrainingjob( iv_trainingjobname =
iv_training_job_name ).
   WHILE lo_training_result->get_trainingjobstatus( ) <> 'Completed'.
     IF sy-index = 30.
       EXIT.               "Maximum 900 seconds."
     ENDIF.
     WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
     lo_training_result = lo_sgm->describetrainingjob( iv_trainingjobname =
iv_training_job_name ).
   ENDWHILE.

   "Create ABAP object for the container image based on input variables."
   lo_primarycontainer = NEW #( iv_image = iv_training_image
                                iv_modeldataurl = lv_model_data_url ).

   "Create an Amazon SageMaker model."
   TRY.
       lo_sgm->createmodel(
         iv_executionrolearn = iv_role_arn
         iv_modelname = iv_model_name
         io_primarycontainer = lo_primarycontainer ).
       MESSAGE 'Model created.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Create an endpoint production variant."
    lo_production_variants = NEW #( iv_variantname = iv_ep_variant_name
                                    iv_modelname = iv_model_name
                                    iv_initialinstancecount =
iv_ep_initial_instance_count
                                    iv_instancetype = iv_ep_instance_type ).
    INSERT lo_production_variants INTO TABLE lt_production_variants.

    TRY.
        "Create an endpoint configuration."
        lo_ep_config_result = lo_sgm->createendpointconfig(
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_ep_cfg_name
          it_productionvariants = lt_production_variants ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration created.' TYPE 'I'.

        "Create an endpoint."
        oo_ep_output = lo_sgm->createendpoint(        " oo_ep_output is returned for
testing purposes. "
            iv_endpointconfigname = iv_ep_cfg_name
            iv_endpointname = iv_ep_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sgmresourcelimitexcd.
        MESSAGE 'You have reached the limit on the number of resources.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Wait for endpoint creation to be completed."
    DATA(lo_endpoint_result) = lo_sgm->describeendpoint( iv_endpointname =
iv_ep_name ).
    WHILE lo_endpoint_result->get_endpointstatus( ) <> 'InService'.
      IF sy-index = 30.
        EXIT.               "Maximum 900 seconds."
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
      lo_endpoint_result = lo_sgm->describeendpoint( iv_endpointname = iv_ep_name ).
    ENDWHILE.

    TRY.
        "Delete an endpoint."
        lo_sgm->deleteendpoint(
            iv_endpointname = iv_ep_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint deleted' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
        "Delete an endpoint configuration."
        lo_sgm->deleteendpointconfig(
          iv_endpointconfigname = iv_ep_cfg_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Endpoint configuration deleted.' TYPE 'I'.

        "Delete model."
        lo_sgm->deletemodel(
                  iv_modelname = iv_model_name ).
        MESSAGE 'Model deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_service_generic INTO DATA(lo_endpointconfig_exception).
        DATA(lv_endpointconfig_error) = |"{ lo_endpointconfig_exception-
>av_err_code }" - { lo_endpointconfig_exception->av_err_msg }|.
        MESSAGE lv_endpointconfig_error TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateEndpoint
  - CreateEndpointConfig
  - CreateModel
  - CreateTrainingJob
  - DeleteEndpoint
  - DeleteEndpointConfig
  - DeleteModel
  - DescribeEndpoint
  - DescribeTrainingJob

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sns->createtopic( iv_name = iv_topic_name ). " oo_result is
returned for testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'SNS topic created' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snstopiclimitexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Unable to create more topics. You have reached the maximum number
of topics allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sns->deletetopic( iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn ).
        MESSAGE 'SNS topic deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->gettopicattributes( iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn ). "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_attributes) = oo_result->get_attributes( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved attributes/properties of a topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListSubscriptions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListSubscriptions`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sns->listsubscriptions( ).                " oo_result is
returned for testing purposes. "
       DATA(lt_subscriptions) = oo_result->get_subscriptions( ).
       MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of subscribers.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_generic.
       MESSAGE 'Unable to list subscribers.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListSubscriptions in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
```

```
        oo_result = lo_sns->listtopics( ).            " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
        DATA(lt_topics) = oo_result->get_topics( ).
        MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of topics.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_rt_generic.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to list topics.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`Publish`

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->publish(              " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
          iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn
          iv_message = iv_message ).
        MESSAGE 'Message published to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`SetTopicAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetTopicAttributes`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sns->settopicattributes(
            iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn
            iv_attributename  = iv_attribute_name
            iv_attributevalue = iv_attribute_value ).
        MESSAGE 'Set/updated SNS topic attributes.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see SetTopicAttributes in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`Subscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sns->subscribe(                      "oo_result is returned
for testing purposes."
                iv_topicarn = iv_topic_arn
```

```
                iv_protocol = 'email'
                iv_endpoint = iv_email_address
                iv_returnsubscriptionarn = abap_true ).
        MESSAGE 'Email address subscribed to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snssubscriptionlmte00.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create subscriptions. You have reached the maximum number
 of subscriptions allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sns->unsubscribe( iv_subscriptionarn = iv_subscription_arn ).
        MESSAGE 'Subscription deleted.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Subscription does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Subscription with "PendingConfirmation" status cannot be deleted/
unsubscribed. Confirm subscription before performing unsubscribe operation.' TYPE
 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios

Create and publish to a FIFO topic

The following code example shows how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a FIFO topic, subscribe an Amazon SQS FIFO queue to the topic, and publish a message to an Amazon SNS topic.

```
    " Creates a FIFO topic. "
    DATA lt_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>tt_topicattributesmap.
    DATA ls_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>ts_topicattributesmap_maprow.
    ls_tpc_attributes-key = 'FifoTopic'.
    ls_tpc_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snstopicattrsmap_w( iv_value = 'true' ).
    INSERT ls_tpc_attributes INTO TABLE lt_tpc_attributes.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_create_result) = lo_sns->createtopic(
               iv_name = iv_topic_name
               it_attributes = lt_tpc_attributes ).
        DATA(lv_topic_arn) = lo_create_result->get_topicarn( ).
        ov_topic_arn = lv_topic_arn.                                    "
 ov_topic_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'FIFO topic created' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snstopiclimitexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create more topics. You have reached the maximum number
 of topics allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Subscribes an endpoint to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic. "
    " Only Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) FIFO queues can be subscribed to
 an SNS FIFO topic. "
```

```
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_subscribe_result) = lo_sns->subscribe(
               iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
               iv_protocol = 'sqs'
               iv_endpoint = iv_queue_arn ).
        DATA(lv_subscription_arn) = lo_subscribe_result->get_subscriptionarn( ).
        ov_subscription_arn = lv_subscription_arn.                      "
 ov_subscription_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue was subscribed to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snssubscriptionlmte00.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create subscriptions. You have reached the maximum number
 of subscriptions allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Publish message to SNS topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA lt_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>tt_messageattributemap.
        DATA ls_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>ts_messageattributemap_maprow.
        ls_msg_attributes-key = 'Importance'.
        ls_msg_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snsmessageattrvalue( iv_datatype =
 'String'
                                                                    iv_stringvalue =
 'High' ).
        INSERT ls_msg_attributes INTO TABLE lt_msg_attributes.

        DATA(lo_result) = lo_sns->publish(
             iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
             iv_message = 'The price of your mobile plan has been increased from $19
 to $23'
             iv_subject = 'Changes to mobile plan'
             iv_messagegroupid = 'Update-2'
             iv_messagededuplicationid = 'Update-2.1'
             it_messageattributes = lt_msg_attributes ).
        ov_message_id = lo_result->get_messageid( ).                    "
 ov_message_id is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Message was published to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an Amazon SQS standard queue.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->createqueue( iv_queuename = iv_queue_name ).        "
 oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuedeldrecently.
        MESSAGE 'After deleting a queue, wait 60 seconds before creating another
 queue with the same name.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuenameexists.
        MESSAGE 'A queue with this name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

Create an Amazon SQS queue that waits for a message to arrive.

```
    TRY.
        DATA lt_attributes TYPE /aws1/cl_sqsqueueattrmap_w=>tt_queueattributemap.
        DATA ls_attribute TYPE /aws1/
cl_sqsqueueattrmap_w=>ts_queueattributemap_maprow.
        ls_attribute-key = 'ReceiveMessageWaitTimeSeconds'.               " Time in
 seconds for long polling, such as how long the call waits for a message to arrive
 in the queue before returning. "
        ls_attribute-value = NEW /aws1/cl_sqsqueueattrmap_w( iv_value =
 iv_wait_time ).
        INSERT ls_attribute INTO TABLE lt_attributes.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->createqueue(                  " oo_result is returned
 for testing purposes. "
                iv_queuename = iv_queue_name
                it_attributes = lt_attributes ).
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue created.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuedeldrecently.
        MESSAGE 'After deleting a queue, wait 60 seconds before creating another
 queue with the same name.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuenameexists.
        MESSAGE 'A queue with this name already exists.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        lo_sqs->deletequeue( iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url ).
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue deleted' TYPE 'I'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetQueueUrl`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueUrl`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->getqueueurl( iv_queuename = iv_queue_name ).        "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'Queue URL retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsqueuedoesnotexist.
        MESSAGE 'The requested queue does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetQueueUrl in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sqs->listqueues( ).        " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'Retrieved list of queues.' TYPE 'I'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue.

```
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_sqs->receivemessage( iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url ).    "
oo_result is returned for testing purposes. "
```

```
        DATA(lt_messages) = oo_result->get_messages( ).
        MESSAGE 'Message received from SQS queue.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsoverlimit.
        MESSAGE 'Maximum number of in-flight messages reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

Receive a message from an Amazon SQS queue using long-poll support.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->receivemessage(           " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
                iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url
                iv_waittimeseconds = iv_wait_time ).    " Time in seconds for long
polling, such as how long the call waits for a message to arrive in the queue
before returning. " ).
        DATA(lt_messages) = oo_result->get_messages( ).
        MESSAGE 'Message received from SQS queue.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsoverlimit.
        MESSAGE 'Maximum number of in-flight messages reached.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`SendMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `SendMessage`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_sqs->sendmessage(              " oo_result is returned for
testing purposes. "
           iv_queueurl = iv_queue_url
```

```
            iv_messagebody = iv_message ).
        MESSAGE 'Message sent to SQS queue.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsinvalidmsgconts.
        MESSAGE 'Message contains non-valid characters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_sqsunsupportedop.
        MESSAGE 'Operation not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see SendMessage in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios

Create and publish to a FIFO topic

The following code example shows how to create and publish to a FIFO Amazon SNS topic.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create a FIFO topic, subscribe an Amazon SQS FIFO queue to the topic, and publish a message to an Amazon SNS topic.

```
    " Creates a FIFO topic. "
    DATA lt_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>tt_topicattributesmap.
    DATA ls_tpc_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snstopicattrsmap_w=>ts_topicattributesmap_maprow.
    ls_tpc_attributes-key = 'FifoTopic'.
    ls_tpc_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snstopicattrsmap_w( iv_value = 'true' ).
    INSERT ls_tpc_attributes INTO TABLE lt_tpc_attributes.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_create_result) = lo_sns->createtopic(
               iv_name = iv_topic_name
               it_attributes = lt_tpc_attributes ).
        DATA(lv_topic_arn) = lo_create_result->get_topicarn( ).
```

```
        ov_topic_arn = lv_topic_arn.                                        "
 ov_topic_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'FIFO topic created' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snstopiclimitexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create more topics. You have reached the maximum number
 of topics allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Subscribes an endpoint to an Amazon Simple Notification Service (Amazon SNS)
 topic. "
    " Only Amazon Simple Queue Service (Amazon SQS) FIFO queues can be subscribed to
 an SNS FIFO topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA(lo_subscribe_result) = lo_sns->subscribe(
               iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
               iv_protocol = 'sqs'
               iv_endpoint = iv_queue_arn ).
        DATA(lv_subscription_arn) = lo_subscribe_result->get_subscriptionarn( ).
        ov_subscription_arn = lv_subscription_arn.                          "
 ov_subscription_arn is returned for testing purposes. "
        MESSAGE 'SQS queue was subscribed to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
        MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_snssubscriptionlmte00.
        MESSAGE 'Unable to create subscriptions. You have reached the maximum number
 of subscriptions allowed.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    " Publish message to SNS topic. "
    TRY.
        DATA lt_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>tt_messageattributemap.
        DATA ls_msg_attributes TYPE /aws1/
cl_snsmessageattrvalue=>ts_messageattributemap_maprow.
        ls_msg_attributes-key = 'Importance'.
        ls_msg_attributes-value = NEW /aws1/cl_snsmessageattrvalue( iv_datatype =
 'String'
                                                                    iv_stringvalue =
 'High' ).
        INSERT ls_msg_attributes INTO TABLE lt_msg_attributes.

        DATA(lo_result) = lo_sns->publish(
             iv_topicarn = lv_topic_arn
```

```
            iv_message = 'The price of your mobile plan has been increased from $19
to $23'
            iv_subject = 'Changes to mobile plan'
            iv_messagegroupid = 'Update-2'
            iv_messagededuplicationid = 'Update-2.1'
            it_messageattributes = lt_msg_attributes ).
       ov_message_id = lo_result->get_messageid( ).                    "
ov_message_id is returned for testing purposes. "
       MESSAGE 'Message was published to SNS topic.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_snsnotfoundexception.
       MESSAGE 'Topic does not exist.' TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - CreateTopic
  - Publish
  - Subscribe

Amazon Textract examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon Textract.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AnalyzeDocument`

The following code example shows how to use `AnalyzeDocument`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Detects text and additional elements, such as forms or tables,"
   "in a local image file or from in-memory byte data."
   "The image must be in PNG or JPG format."


   "Create ABAP objects for feature type."
   "Add TABLES to return information about the tables."
   "Add FORMS to return detected form data."
   "To perform both types of analysis, add TABLES and FORMS to FeatureTypes."

   DATA(lt_featuretypes) = VALUE /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w=>tt_featuretypes(
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'FORMS' ) )
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'TABLES' ) ) ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_document) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocument( io_s3object = lo_s3object ).

   "Analyze document stored in Amazon S3."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_tex->analyzedocument(      "oo_result is returned for testing
purposes."
         io_document        = lo_document
         it_featuretypes    = lt_featuretypes ).
```

```
      LOOP AT oo_result->get_blocks( ) INTO DATA(lo_block).
        IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
          MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
        ENDIF.
      ENDLOOP.
      MESSAGE 'Analyze document completed.' TYPE 'I'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
      MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
      MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
      MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texhlquotaexceededex.
      MESSAGE 'Human loop quota exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
      MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
      MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.

    CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
      MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
      MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
      MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
      MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
  ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see AnalyzeDocument in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`DetectDocumentText`

The following code example shows how to use `DetectDocumentText`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Detects text in the input document."
   "Amazon Textract can detect lines of text and the words that make up a line of
 text."
   "The input document must be in one of the following image formats: JPEG, PNG,
 PDF, or TIFF."

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon S3 object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_document) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocument( io_s3object = lo_s3object ).
   "Analyze document stored in Amazon S3."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_tex->detectdocumenttext( io_document = lo_document ).
 "oo_result is returned for testing purposes."
       LOOP AT oo_result->get_blocks( ) INTO DATA(lo_block).
         IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
           MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
         ENDIF.
       ENDLOOP.
       DATA(lo_metadata) = oo_result->get_documentmetadata( ).
       MESSAGE 'The number of pages in the document is ' && lo_metadata-
>ask_pages( ) TYPE 'I'.
       MESSAGE 'Detect document text completed.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
       MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
       MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
       MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DetectDocumentText in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`GetDocumentAnalysis`

The following code example shows how to use `GetDocumentAnalysis`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Gets the results for an Amazon Textract"
    "asynchronous operation that analyzes text in a document."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = iv_jobid ).
"oo_result is returned for testing purposes."
        WHILE oo_result->get_jobstatus( ) <> 'SUCCEEDED'.
          IF sy-index = 10.
            EXIT.               "Maximum 300 seconds.
          ENDIF.
          WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
          oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = iv_jobid ).
        ENDWHILE.

        DATA(lt_blocks) = oo_result->get_blocks( ).
        LOOP AT lt_blocks INTO DATA(lo_block).
          IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
            MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
          ENDIF.
        ENDLOOP.
        MESSAGE 'Document analysis retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidjobidex.
        MESSAGE 'Job ID is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
        MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see GetDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`StartDocumentAnalysis`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDocumentAnalysis`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Starts the asynchronous analysis of an input document for relationships"
   "between detected items such as key-value pairs, tables, and selection
elements."

   "Create ABAP objects for feature type."
   "Add TABLES to return information about the tables."
   "Add FORMS to return detected form data."
   "To perform both types of analysis, add TABLES and FORMS to FeatureTypes."

   DATA(lt_featuretypes) = VALUE /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w=>tt_featuretypes(
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'FORMS' ) )
```

```
      ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'TABLES' ) ) ).
    "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon S3 object."
    DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
      iv_name   = iv_s3object ).
    "Create an ABAP object for the document."
    DATA(lo_documentlocation) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocumentlocation( io_s3object =
lo_s3object ).

    "Start async document analysis."
    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_tex->startdocumentanalysis(      "oo_result is returned for
testing purposes."
          io_documentlocation     = lo_documentlocation
          it_featuretypes         = lt_featuretypes ).
        DATA(lv_jobid) = oo_result->get_jobid( ).

        MESSAGE 'Document analysis started.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
        MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texidempotentprmmis00.
        MESSAGE 'Idempotent parameter mismatch exception.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
        MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
        MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
        MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texlimitexceededex.
        MESSAGE 'An Amazon Textract service limit was exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
        MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
        MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentAnalysis in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`StartDocumentTextDetection`

The following code example shows how to use `StartDocumentTextDetection`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Starts the asynchronous detection of text in a document."
   "Amazon Textract can detect lines of text and the words that make up a line of
text."

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon S3 object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).
   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_documentlocation) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocumentlocation( io_s3object =
lo_s3object ).
   "Start document analysis."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_tex->startdocumenttextdetection( io_documentlocation =
lo_documentlocation ).
       DATA(lv_jobid) = oo_result->get_jobid( ).             "oo_result is returned
for testing purposes."
       MESSAGE 'Document analysis started.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
       MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texidempotentprmmis00.
       MESSAGE 'Idempotent parameter mismatch exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
       MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
      MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
      MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
      MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texlimitexceededex.
      MESSAGE 'An Amazon Textract service limit was exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
      MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
      MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
    CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
      MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
  ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartDocumentTextDetection in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with document analysis

The following code example shows how to:

- Start asynchronous analysis.
- Get document analysis.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
  "Create ABAP objects for feature type."
  "Add TABLES to return information about the tables."
  "Add FORMS to return detected form data."
```

```
   "To perform both types of analysis, add TABLES and FORMS to FeatureTypes."

   DATA(lt_featuretypes) = VALUE /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w=>tt_featuretypes(
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'FORMS' ) )
     ( NEW /aws1/cl_texfeaturetypes_w( iv_value = 'TABLES' ) ) ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3)
object."
   DATA(lo_s3object) = NEW /aws1/cl_texs3object( iv_bucket = iv_s3bucket
     iv_name   = iv_s3object ).

   "Create an ABAP object for the document."
   DATA(lo_documentlocation) = NEW /aws1/cl_texdocumentlocation( io_s3object =
lo_s3object ).

   "Start document analysis."
   TRY.
       DATA(lo_start_result) = lo_tex->startdocumentanalysis(
         io_documentlocation     = lo_documentlocation
         it_featuretypes         = lt_featuretypes ).
       MESSAGE 'Document analysis started.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texaccessdeniedex.
       MESSAGE 'You do not have permission to perform this action.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texbaddocumentex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon Textract is not able to read the document.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texdocumenttoolargeex.
       MESSAGE 'The document is too large.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texidempotentprmmis00.
       MESSAGE 'Idempotent parameter mismatch exception.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinternalservererr.
       MESSAGE 'Internal server error.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidkmskeyex.
       MESSAGE 'AWS KMS key is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalidparameterex.
       MESSAGE 'Request has non-valid parameters.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texinvalids3objectex.
       MESSAGE 'Amazon S3 object is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texlimitexceededex.
       MESSAGE 'An Amazon Textract service limit was exceeded.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texprovthruputexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'Provisioned throughput exceeded limit.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texthrottlingex.
       MESSAGE 'The request processing exceeded the limit.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_texunsupporteddocex.
```

```
        MESSAGE 'The document is not supported.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Get job ID from the output."
    DATA(lv_jobid) = lo_start_result->get_jobid( ).

    "Wait for job to complete."
    oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = lv_jobid ).     " oo_result
is returned for testing purposes. "
    WHILE oo_result->get_jobstatus( ) <> 'SUCCEEDED'.
      IF sy-index = 10.
        EXIT.               "Maximum 300 seconds."
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
      oo_result = lo_tex->getdocumentanalysis( iv_jobid = lv_jobid ).
    ENDWHILE.

    DATA(lt_blocks) = oo_result->get_blocks( ).
    LOOP AT lt_blocks INTO DATA(lo_block).
      IF lo_block->get_text( ) = 'INGREDIENTS: POWDERED SUGAR* (CANE SUGAR,'.
        MESSAGE 'Found text in the doc: ' && lo_block->get_text( ) TYPE 'I'.
      ENDIF.
    ENDLOOP.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - GetDocumentAnalysis
  - StartDocumentAnalysis

Amazon Translate examples using SDK for SAP ABAP

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for SAP ABAP with Amazon Translate.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`DescribeTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Gets the properties associated with an asynchronous batch translation job."
   "Includes properties such as name, ID, status, source and target languages, and
input/output Amazon Simple Storage Service (Amazon S3) buckets."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is returned
for testing purposes."
         iv_jobid        = iv_jobid ).
       MESSAGE 'Job description retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see DescribeTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`ListTextTranslationJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTextTranslationJobs`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Gets a list of the batch translation jobs that you have submitted."

   DATA lo_filter TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8textxlationjobfilt.

   "Create an ABAP object for filtering using jobname."
   lo_filter = NEW #( iv_jobname = iv_jobname ).

   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->listtexttranslationjobs(      "oo_result is returned for
testing purposes."
         io_filter        = lo_filter ).
       MESSAGE 'Jobs retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidfilterex.
       MESSAGE 'The filter specified for the operation is not valid. Specify a
different filter.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
       MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see ListTextTranslationJobs in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

StartTextTranslationJob

The following code example shows how to use `StartTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Starts an asynchronous batch translation job."
    "Use batch translation jobs to translate large volumes of text across multiple
 documents at once."

    DATA lo_inputdataconfig  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8inputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_outputdataconfig TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8outputdataconfig.
    DATA lt_targetlanguagecodes TYPE /aws1/
cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00=>tt_targetlanguagecodestrlist.
    DATA lo_targetlanguagecodes TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00.

    "Create an ABAP object for the input data config."
    lo_inputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_input_data_s3uri
                                iv_contenttype = iv_input_data_contenttype ).

    "Create an ABAP object for the output data config."
    lo_outputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_output_data_s3uri ).

    "Create an internal table for target languages."
    lo_targetlanguagecodes = NEW #( iv_value = iv_targetlanguagecode ).
    INSERT lo_targetlanguagecodes  INTO TABLE lt_targetlanguagecodes.

    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_xl8->starttexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is returned for
 testing purposes."
          io_inputdataconfig = lo_inputdataconfig
            io_outputdataconfig = lo_outputdataconfig
            it_targetlanguagecodes = lt_targetlanguagecodes
            iv_dataaccessrolearn = iv_dataaccessrolearn
            iv_jobname = iv_jobname
            iv_sourcelanguagecode = iv_sourcelanguagecode ).
        MESSAGE 'Translation job started.' TYPE 'I'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
        MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The value of the parameter is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
        MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8unsuppedlanguage00.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Translate does not support translation from the language of
the source text into the requested target language.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StartTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`StopTextTranslationJob`

The following code example shows how to use `StopTextTranslationJob`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    "Stops an asynchronous batch translation job that is in progress."

    TRY.
        oo_result = lo_xl8->stoptexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is returned for
testing purposes."
          iv_jobid        = iv_jobid ).
        MESSAGE 'Translation job stopped.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
        MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
```

```
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see StopTextTranslationJob in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

`TranslateText`

The following code example shows how to use `TranslateText`.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
   "Translates input text from the source language to the target language."
   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->translatetext(      "oo_result is returned for testing
purposes."
         iv_text        = iv_text
           iv_sourcelanguagecode = iv_sourcelanguagecode
           iv_targetlanguagecode = iv_targetlanguagecode ).
       MESSAGE 'Translation completed.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8detectedlanguage00.
       MESSAGE 'The confidence that Amazon Comprehend accurately detected the
source language is low.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
       MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8serviceunavailex.
       MESSAGE 'The Amazon Translate service is temporarily unavailable.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8textsizelmtexcdex.
       MESSAGE 'The size of the text you submitted exceeds the size limit. ' TYPE
'E'.
```

```
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8unsuppedlanguage00.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Translate does not support translation from the language of
 the source text into the requested target language. ' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see TranslateText in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.

Scenarios

Get started with translate jobs

The following code example shows how to:

- Start an asynchronous batch translation job.
- Wait for the asynchronous job to complete.
- Describe the asynchronous job.

SDK for SAP ABAP

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
    DATA lo_inputdataconfig  TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8inputdataconfig.
    DATA lo_outputdataconfig TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8outputdataconfig.
    DATA lt_targetlanguagecodes TYPE /aws1/
cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00=>tt_targetlanguagecodestrlist.
    DATA lo_targetlanguagecodes TYPE REF TO /aws1/cl_xl8tgtlanguagecodes00.

    "Create an ABAP object for the input data config."
    lo_inputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_input_data_s3uri
                                iv_contenttype = iv_input_data_contenttype ).
```

```
    "Create an ABAP object for the output data config."
    lo_outputdataconfig = NEW #( iv_s3uri = iv_output_data_s3uri ).

    "Create an internal table for target languages."
    lo_targetlanguagecodes = NEW #( iv_value = iv_targetlanguagecode ).
    INSERT lo_targetlanguagecodes  INTO TABLE lt_targetlanguagecodes.

    TRY.
        DATA(lo_translationjob_result) = lo_xl8->starttexttranslationjob(
          io_inputdataconfig = lo_inputdataconfig
            io_outputdataconfig = lo_outputdataconfig
            it_targetlanguagecodes = lt_targetlanguagecodes
            iv_dataaccessrolearn = iv_dataaccessrolearn
            iv_jobname = iv_jobname
            iv_sourcelanguagecode = iv_sourcelanguagecode ).
        MESSAGE 'Translation job started.' TYPE 'I'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
        MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invparamvalueex.
        MESSAGE 'The value of the parameter is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8invalidrequestex.
        MESSAGE 'The request that you made is not valid.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
        MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
        MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time. '
 TYPE 'E'.
      CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8unsuppedlanguage00.
        MESSAGE 'Amazon Translate does not support translation from the language of
 the source text into the requested target language.' TYPE 'E'.
    ENDTRY.

    "Get the job ID."
    DATA(lv_jobid) = lo_translationjob_result->get_jobid( ).

    "Wait for translate job to complete."
    DATA(lo_des_translation_result) = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob( iv_jobid =
 lv_jobid ).
    WHILE lo_des_translation_result->get_textxlationjobproperties( )-
>get_jobstatus( ) <> 'COMPLETED'.
      IF sy-index = 30.
        EXIT.               "Maximum 900 seconds."
      ENDIF.
      WAIT UP TO 30 SECONDS.
```

```
      lo_des_translation_result = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob( iv_jobid =
lv_jobid ).
   ENDWHILE.

   TRY.
       oo_result = lo_xl8->describetexttranslationjob(      "oo_result is returned
for testing purposes."
         iv_jobid        = lv_jobid ).
       MESSAGE 'Job description retrieved.' TYPE 'I'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8internalserverex.
       MESSAGE 'An internal server error occurred. Retry your request.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8resourcenotfoundex.
       MESSAGE 'The resource you are looking for has not been found.' TYPE 'E'.
     CATCH /aws1/cx_xl8toomanyrequestsex.
       MESSAGE 'You have made too many requests within a short period of time.'
TYPE 'E'.
   ENDTRY.
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for SAP ABAP API reference*.
  - DescribeTextTranslationJob
  - StartTextTranslationJob

Code examples for SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to use the AWS SDK for Swift with AWS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Some services contain additional example categories that show how to leverage libraries or functions specific to the service.

More resources

- **SDK for Swift Developer Guide** – More about using Swift with AWS.

- **AWS Developer Center** – Code examples that you can filter by category or full-text search.
- **AWS SDK Examples** – GitHub repo with complete code in preferred languages. Includes instructions for setting up and running the code.

Services

- Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Swift
- DynamoDB examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Swift
- AWS Glue examples using SDK for Swift
- IAM examples using SDK for Swift
- Lambda examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Swift
- AWS STS examples using SDK for Swift
- Amazon Transcribe Streaming examples using SDK for Swift

Amazon Bedrock examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon Bedrock.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon Bedrock

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon Bedrock.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import Foundation

import AWSBedrock

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "ListFoundationModels",
        abstract: """
        This example demonstrates how to retrieve a list of the available
        foundation models from Amazon Bedrock.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Construct a string listing the specified modalities.
    ///
    /// - Parameter modalities: An array of the modalities to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string with a human-readable list of modalities.
    func buildModalityList(modalities: [BedrockClientTypes.ModelModality]?) ->
 String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if modalities == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }
```

```
        for modality in modalities! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += modality.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Construct a string listing the specified customizations.
    ///
    /// - Parameter customizations: An array of the customizations to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string listing the customizations.
    func buildCustomizationList(customizations:
[BedrockClientTypes.ModelCustomization]?) -> String {
        var first = true
        var str = ""

        if customizations == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for customization in customizations! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += customization.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Construct a string listing the specified inferences.
    ///
    /// - Parameter inferences: An array of inferences to list.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string listing the specified inferences.
    func buildInferenceList(inferences: [BedrockClientTypes.InferenceType]?) ->
String {
        var first = true
```

```
        var str = ""

        if inferences == nil {
            return "<none>"
        }

        for inference in inferences! {
            if !first {
                str += ", "
            }
            first = false
            str += inference.rawValue
        }

        return str
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        // Always use the Region "us-east-1" to have access to the most models.
        let config = try await BedrockClient.BedrockClientConfiguration(region: "us-
east-1")
        let bedrockClient = BedrockClient(config: config)

        let output = try await bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(
            input: ListFoundationModelsInput()
        )

        guard let summaries = output.modelSummaries else {
            print("No models returned.")
            return
        }

        // Output a list of the models with their details.
        for summary in summaries {
            print("==========================================")
            print(" Model ID: \(summary.modelId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("------------------------------------------")
            print(" Name: \(summary.modelName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Provider: \(summary.providerName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Input modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.inputModalities))")
            print(" Output modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.outputModalities))")
```

```
            print(" Supported customizations:
 \(buildCustomizationList(customizations: summary.customizationsSupported ))")
            print(" Supported inference types: \(buildInferenceList(inferences:
 summary.inferenceTypesSupported))")
            print("-----------------------------------------\n")
        }

        print("\(summaries.count) models available.")
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`ListFoundationModels`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFoundationModels`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSBedrock

        // Always use the Region "us-east-1" to have access to the most models.
        let config = try await BedrockClient.BedrockClientConfiguration(region: "us-
east-1")
        let bedrockClient = BedrockClient(config: config)

        let output = try await bedrockClient.listFoundationModels(
            input: ListFoundationModelsInput()
        )

        guard let summaries = output.modelSummaries else {
            print("No models returned.")
            return
        }

        // Output a list of the models with their details.
        for summary in summaries {
            print("==========================================")
            print(" Model ID: \(summary.modelId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("------------------------------------------")
            print(" Name: \(summary.modelName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Provider: \(summary.providerName ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(" Input modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.inputModalities))")
            print(" Output modalities: \(buildModalityList(modalities:
 summary.outputModalities))")
            print(" Supported customizations:
 \(buildCustomizationList(customizations: summary.customizationsSupported ))")
            print(" Supported inference types: \(buildInferenceList(inferences:
 summary.inferenceTypesSupported))")
            print("------------------------------------------\n")
        }
```

- For API details, see ListFoundationModels in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Bedrock Runtime examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon Bedrock Runtime.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Amazon Nova
- Amazon Nova Canvas
- Amazon Nova Reel
- Anthropic Claude
- Meta Llama

Amazon Nova

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send
// a text message to Amazon Nova.

import AWSBedrockRuntime
```

```
func converse(_ textPrompt: String) async throws -> String {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-micro-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseInput to send to the model
    let input = ConverseInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseInput to the model
    let response = try await client.converse(input: input)

    // Extract and return the response text.
    if case let .message(msg) = response.output {
        if case let .text(textResponse) = msg.content![0] {
            return textResponse
        } else {
            return "No text response found in message content"
        }
    } else {
        return "No message found in converse output"
```

```
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Amazon Nova, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send a text message
// to Amazon Nova and print the response stream

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func printConverseStream(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-lite-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
```

```
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters.
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseStreamInput to send to the model.
    let input = ConverseStreamInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseStreamInput to the model.
    let response = try await client.converseStream(input: input)

    // Extract the streaming response.
    guard let stream = response.stream else {
        print("No stream available")
        return
    }

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for try await event in stream {
        switch event {
        case .messagestart(_):
            print("\nNova Lite:")

        case .contentblockdelta(let deltaEvent):
            if case .text(let text) = deltaEvent.delta {
                print(text, terminator: "")
            }

        default:
            break
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Nova Canvas

InvokeModel

The following code example shows how to invoke Amazon Nova Canvas on Amazon Bedrock to generate an image.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas.

```
// Use the native inference API to create an image with Amazon Nova Canvas

import AWSBedrockRuntime
import AWSSDKIdentity
import Foundation

struct NovaImageOutput: Decodable {
    let images: [Data]
}

func generateImage(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {
    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    config.awsCredentialIdentityResolver = try SSOAWSCredentialIdentityResolver()

    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
```

```
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-canvas-v1:0"

    //  Format the request payload using the model's native structure.
    let input = InvokeModelInput(
        accept: "application/json",
        body: """
            {
                "textToImageParams": {
                    "text": "\(textPrompt)"
                },
                "taskType": "TEXT_IMAGE",
                "imageGenerationConfig": {
                    "seed": 42,
                    "quality": "standard",
                    "width": 512,
                    "height": 512,
                    "numberOfImages": 1
                }
            }
            """.data(using: .utf8),
        modelId: modelId
    )

    // Invoke the model with the request.
    let response = try await client.invokeModel(input: input)

    // Decode the response body.
    let output = try JSONDecoder().decode(NovaImageOutput.self, from:
 response.body!)

    // Extract the image data.
    guard let data = output.images.first else {
        print("No image data found")
        return
    }

    // Save the generated image to a local folder.
    let fileURL = URL.documentsDirectory.appending(path: "nova_canvas.png")
    print(fileURL)
    try data.write(to: fileURL)
    print("Image is saved at \(fileURL)")
}
```

- For API details, see InvokeModel in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Nova Reel

Text-to-video

The following code example shows how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a text prompt.

```
// This example demonstrates how to use Amazon Nova Reel to generate a video from a
 text prompt.
// It shows how to:
// - Set up the Amazon Bedrock runtime client
// - Configure a text-to-video request
// - Submit an asynchronous job for video generation
// - Poll for job completion status
// - Access the generated video from S3

import AWSBedrockRuntime
import Foundation
import Smithy

func startTextToVideoGenerationJob(
    bedrockRuntimeClient: BedrockRuntimeClient, prompt: String, outputS3Uri: String
) async throws -> String? {
    // Specify the model ID for text-to-video generation
    let modelId = "amazon.nova-reel-v1:0"

    // Configure the video generation request with additional parameters
    let modelInputSource: [String: Any] = [
```

```
        "taskType": "TEXT_VIDEO",
        "textToVideoParams": [
            "text": "\(prompt)"
        ],
        "videoGenerationConfig": [
            "durationSeconds": 6,
            "fps": 24,
            "dimension": "1280x720",
        ],
    ]

    let modelInput = try Document.make(from: modelInputSource)

    let input = StartAsyncInvokeInput(
        modelId: modelId,
        modelInput: modelInput,
        outputDataConfig: .s3outputdataconfig(
            BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.AsyncInvokeS3OutputDataConfig(
                s3Uri: outputS3Uri
            )
        )
    )

    // Invoke the model asynchronously
    let output = try await bedrockRuntimeClient.startAsyncInvoke(input: input)
    return output.invocationArn
}

func queryJobStatus(
    bedrockRuntimeClient: BedrockRuntimeClient,
    invocationArn: String?
) async throws -> GetAsyncInvokeOutput {
    try await bedrockRuntimeClient.getAsyncInvoke(
        input: GetAsyncInvokeInput(invocationArn: invocationArn))
}

func main() async throws {
    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)
```

```
    // Specify the S3 location for the output video
    let bucket = "s3://REPLACE-WITH-YOUR-S3-BUCKET-NAM"

    print("Submitting video generation job...")
    let invocationArn = try await startTextToVideoGenerationJob(
        bedrockRuntimeClient: client,
        prompt: "A pomegranate juice in a railway station",
        outputS3Uri: bucket
    )
    print("Job started with invocation ARN: \(String(describing:invocationArn))")

    // Poll for job completion
    var status: BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.AsyncInvokeStatus?
    var isReady = false
    var hasFailed = false

    while !isReady && !hasFailed {
        print("\nPolling job status...")
        status = try await queryJobStatus(
            bedrockRuntimeClient: client, invocationArn: invocationArn
        ).status
        switch status {
        case .completed:
            isReady = true
            print("Video is ready\nCheck S3 bucket: \(bucket)")
        case .failed:
            hasFailed = true
            print("Something went wrong")
        case .inProgress:
            print("Job is in progress...")
            try await Task.sleep(nanoseconds: 15 * 1_000_000_000)  // 15 seconds
        default:
            isReady = true
        }
    }
}

do {
    try await main()
} catch {
    print("An error occurred: \(error)")
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - GetAsyncInvoke
  - StartAsyncInvoke

Anthropic Claude

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send
// a text message to Anthropic Claude.

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func converse(_ textPrompt: String) async throws -> String {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"
```

```
    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseInput to send to the model
    let input = ConverseInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseInput to the model
    let response = try await client.converse(input: input)

    // Extract and return the response text.
    if case let .message(msg) = response.output {
        if case let .text(textResponse) = msg.content![0] {
            return textResponse
        } else {
            return "No text response found in message content"
        }
    } else {
        return "No message found in converse output"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Anthropic Claude, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send a text message
// to Anthropic Claude and print the response stream

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func printConverseStream(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "anthropic.claude-3-haiku-20240307-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters.
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )
```

```
    // Create the ConverseStreamInput to send to the model.
    let input = ConverseStreamInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseStreamInput to the model.
    let response = try await client.converseStream(input: input)

    // Extract the streaming response.
    guard let stream = response.stream else {
        print("No stream available")
        return
    }

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for try await event in stream {
        switch event {
        case .messagestart(_):
            print("\nAnthropic Claude:")

        case .contentblockdelta(let deltaEvent):
            if case .text(let text) = deltaEvent.delta {
                print(text, terminator: "")
            }

        default:
            break
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Meta Llama

Converse

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send
// a text message to Meta Llama.

import AWSBedrockRuntime

func converse(_ textPrompt: String) async throws -> String {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseInput to send to the model
```

```
    let input = ConverseInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseInput to the model
    let response = try await client.converse(input: input)

    // Extract and return the response text.
    if case let .message(msg) = response.output {
        if case let .text(textResponse) = msg.content![0] {
            return textResponse
        } else {
            return "No text response found in message content"
        }
    } else {
        return "No message found in converse output"
    }
}
```

- For API details, see Converse in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

ConverseStream

The following code example shows how to send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Send a text message to Meta Llama, using Bedrock's Converse API and process the response stream in real-time.

```
// An example demonstrating how to use the Conversation API to send a text message
// to Meta Llama and print the response stream.

import AWSBedrockRuntime
```

```
func printConverseStream(_ textPrompt: String) async throws {

    // Create a Bedrock Runtime client in the AWS Region you want to use.
    let config =
        try await BedrockRuntimeClient.BedrockRuntimeClientConfiguration(
            region: "us-east-1"
        )
    let client = BedrockRuntimeClient(config: config)

    // Set the model ID.
    let modelId = "meta.llama3-8b-instruct-v1:0"

    // Start a conversation with the user message.
    let message = BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.Message(
        content: [.text(textPrompt)],
        role: .user
    )

    // Optionally use inference parameters.
    let inferenceConfig =
        BedrockRuntimeClientTypes.InferenceConfiguration(
            maxTokens: 512,
            stopSequences: ["END"],
            temperature: 0.5,
            topp: 0.9
        )

    // Create the ConverseStreamInput to send to the model.
    let input = ConverseStreamInput(
        inferenceConfig: inferenceConfig, messages: [message], modelId: modelId)

    // Send the ConverseStreamInput to the model.
    let response = try await client.converseStream(input: input)

    // Extract the streaming response.
    guard let stream = response.stream else {
        print("No stream available")
        return
    }

    // Extract and print the streamed response text in real-time.
    for try await event in stream {
        switch event {
```

```
        case .messagestart(_):
            print("\nMeta Llama:")

        case .contentblockdelta(let deltaEvent):
            if case .text(let text) = deltaEvent.delta {
                print(text, terminator: "")
            }

        default:
            break
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ConverseStream in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon Cognito Identity.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`CreateIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateIdentityPool`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Create a new identity pool and return its ID.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///     - name: The name to give the new identity pool.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the newly created pool's ID, or `nil`
    ///   if an error occurred.
    ///
    func createIdentityPool(name: String) async throws -> String? {
        do {
            let cognitoInputCall = CreateIdentityPoolInput(developerProviderName:
 "com.exampleco.CognitoIdentityDemo",
                                                           identityPoolName: name)

            let result = try await cognitoIdentityClient.createIdentityPool(input:
 cognitoInputCall)
            guard let poolId = result.identityPoolId else {
                return nil
            }

            return poolId
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createIdentityPool:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Swift developer guide.
- For API details, see CreateIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteIdentityPool`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteIdentityPool`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Delete the specified identity pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - id: The ID of the identity pool to delete.
    ///
    func deleteIdentityPool(id: String) async throws {
        do {
            let input = DeleteIdentityPoolInput(
                identityPoolId: id
            )

            _ = try await cognitoIdentityClient.deleteIdentityPool(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteIdentityPool:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Swift developer guide.
- For API details, see DeleteIdentityPool in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListIdentityPools`

The following code example shows how to use `ListIdentityPools`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Return the ID of the identity pool with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the identity pool whose ID should be returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the specified identity pool
    ///   or `nil` on error or if not found.
    ///
    func getIdentityPoolID(name: String) async throws -> String? {
        let listPoolsInput = ListIdentityPoolsInput(maxResults: 25)
        // Use "Paginated" to get all the objects.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'nextToken' field in
 "ListIdentityPoolsOutput".
        let pages = cognitoIdentityClient.listIdentityPoolsPaginated(input:
 listPoolsInput)

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let identityPools = page.identityPools else {
                    print("ERROR: listIdentityPoolsPaginated returned nil
 contents.")
                    continue
                }

                /// Read pages of identity pools from Cognito until one is found
                /// whose name matches the one specified in the `name` parameter.
                /// Return the matching pool's ID.

                for pool in identityPools {
                    if pool.identityPoolName == name {
                        return pool.identityPoolId!
```

```
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getIdentityPoolID:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }

        return nil
    }
```

Get the ID of an existing identity pool or create it if it doesn't already exist.

```
import AWSCognitoIdentity


    /// Return the ID of the identity pool with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the identity pool whose ID should be returned
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the specified identity pool.
    ///   Returns `nil` if there's an error or if the pool isn't found.
    ///
    public func getOrCreateIdentityPoolID(name: String) async throws -> String? {
        // See if the pool already exists. If it doesn't, create it.

        do {
            guard let poolId = try await getIdentityPoolID(name: name) else {
                return try await createIdentityPool(name: name)
            }

            return poolId
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getOrCreateIdentityPoolID:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For more information, see AWS SDK for Swift developer guide.
- For API details, see ListIdentityPools in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Cognito Identity Provider examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon Cognito Identity Provider.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`AdminGetUser`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminGetUser`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider
```

```
/// Get information about a specific user in a user pool.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - cipClient: The Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client to use.
///   - userName: The user to retrieve information about.
///   - userPoolId: The user pool to search for the specified user.
///
/// - Returns: `true` if the user's information was successfully
///   retrieved. Otherwise returns `false`.
func adminGetUser(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, userName: String,
                  userPoolId: String) async -> Bool {
    do {
        let output = try await cipClient.adminGetUser(
            input: AdminGetUserInput(
                userPoolId: userPoolId,
                username: userName
            )
        )

        guard let userStatus = output.userStatus else {
            print("*** Unable to get the user's status.")
            return false
        }

        print("User status: \(userStatus)")
        return true
    } catch {
        return false
    }
}
```

- For API details, see AdminGetUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

AdminInitiateAuth

The following code example shows how to use `AdminInitiateAuth`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Begin an authentication session.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID to use.
    ///   - userName: The username to check.
    ///   - password: The user's password.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to use.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The session token associated with this authentication
    ///   session.
    func initiateAuth(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
                      userName: String, password: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> String? {
        var authParams: [String: String] = [:]

        authParams["USERNAME"] = userName
        authParams["PASSWORD"] = password

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminInitiateAuth(
                input: AdminInitiateAuthInput(
                    authFlow:
 CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AuthFlowType.adminUserPasswordAuth,
                    authParameters: authParams,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
            )

            guard let challengeName = output.challengeName else {
```

```
                print("*** Invalid response from the auth service.")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Response challenge is \(challengeName)")

            return output.session
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return nil
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred.")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminInitiateAuth in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`

The following code example shows how to use `AdminRespondToAuthChallenge`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Respond to the authentication challenge received from Cognito after
    /// initiating an authentication session. This involves sending a current
    /// MFA code to the service.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
```

```
   ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
   ///   - userName: The user's username.
   ///   - clientId: The app client ID.
   ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to sign into.
   ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit MFA code currently displayed by the user's
   ///     authenticator.
   ///   - session: The authentication session to continue processing.
   func adminRespondToAuthChallenge(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
userName: String,
                                    clientId: String, userPoolId: String, mfaCode:
String,
                                    session: String) async {
       print("=====> SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated...")

       var challengeResponsesOb: [String: String] = [:]
       challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
       challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

       do {
           let output = try await cipClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
               input: AdminRespondToAuthChallengeInput(
                   challengeName:
CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.ChallengeNameType.softwareTokenMfa,
                   challengeResponses: challengeResponsesOb,
                   clientId: clientId,
                   session: session,
                   userPoolId: userPoolId
               )
           )

           guard let authenticationResult = output.authenticationResult else {
               print("*** Unable to get authentication result.")
               return
           }

           print("=====> Authentication result (JWTs are redacted):")
           print(authenticationResult)
       } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
           print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
           return
       } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
           print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
           return
       } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
```

```
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch let error as NotAuthorizedException {
            print("*** Unauthorized access. Reason: \(error.properties.message ??
 "<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error responding to the MFA challenge.")
            return
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AdminRespondToAuthChallenge in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`AssociateSoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateSoftwareToken`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Request and display an MFA secret token that the user should enter
    /// into their authenticator to set it up for the user account.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - authSession: The authentication session to request an MFA secret
    ///     for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the MFA secret token that should be
```

```
    ///   entered into the authenticator software.
    func getSecretForAppMFA(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, authSession:
String?) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.associateSoftwareToken(
                input: AssociateSoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: authSession
                )
            )

            guard let secretCode = output.secretCode else {
                print("*** Unable to get the secret code")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Enter this token into Google Authenticator:
\(secretCode)")
            return output.session
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred getting the secret for the app's
MFA.")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateSoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ConfirmSignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `ConfirmSignUp`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Submit a confirmation code for the specified user. This is the code as
    /// entered by the user after they've received it by email or text
    /// message.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID the user is signing up for.
    ///   - userName: The username of the user whose code is being sent.
    ///   - code: The user's confirmation code.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the code was successfully confirmed; otherwise `false`.
    func confirmSignUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
                       userName: String, code: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.confirmSignUp(
                input: ConfirmSignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    confirmationCode: code,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            print("=====> \(userName) has been confirmed.")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("=====> \(userName)'s code was entered incorrectly.")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ConfirmSignUp in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        do {
            let output = try await cognitoClient.listUsers(
                input: ListUsersInput(
                    userPoolId: poolId
                )
            )

            guard let users = output.users else {
                print("No users found.")
                return
            }

            print("\(users.count) user(s) found.")
            for user in users {
                print("  \(user.username ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
        } catch _ as NotAuthorizedException {
            print("*** Please authenticate with AWS before using this command.")
            return
        } catch _ as ResourceNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified User Pool was not found.")
            return
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected type of error occurred.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ResendConfirmationCode`

The following code example shows how to use `ResendConfirmationCode`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Requests a new confirmation code be sent to the given user's contact
    /// method.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The application client ID.
    ///   - userName: The user to resend a code for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if a new code was sent successfully, otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func resendConfirmationCode(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId:
 String,
                                userName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.resendConfirmationCode(
                input: ResendConfirmationCodeInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let deliveryMedium = output.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium
 else {
                print("*** Unable to get the delivery method for the resent code.")
                return false
            }

            print("=====> A new code has been sent by \(deliveryMedium)")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to resend the confirmation code to user \(userName).")
```

```
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ResendConfirmationCode in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`SignUp`

The following code example shows how to use `SignUp`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Create a new user in a user pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The ID of the app client to create a user for.
    ///   - userName: The username for the new user.
    ///   - password: The new user's password.
    ///   - email: The new user's email address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful; otherwise `false`.
    func signUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
 userName: String, password: String, email: String) async -> Bool {
        let emailAttr = CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AttributeType(
            name: "email",
            value: email
        )

        let userAttrsList = [emailAttr]
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.signUp(
                input: SignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    password: password,
                    userAttributes: userAttrsList,
                    username: userName
                )

            )

            print("=====> User \(userName) signed up.")
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.UsernameExistsException {
            print("*** The username \(userName) already exists. Please use a
different one.")
            return false
        } catch let error as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.InvalidPasswordException {
            print("*** Error: The specified password is invalid. Reason:
\(error.properties.message ?? "<none available>").")
            return false
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.ResourceNotFoundException {
            print("*** Error: The specified client ID (\(clientId)) doesn't exist.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error: \(error)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see SignUp in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`VerifySoftwareToken`

The following code example shows how to use `VerifySoftwareToken`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

    /// Confirm that the user's TOTP authenticator is configured correctly by
    /// sending a code to it to check that it matches successfully.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongnitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - session: An authentication session previously returned by an
    ///     `associateSoftwareToken()` call.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator, as provided by the user.
    func verifyTOTP(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, session: String?,
 mfaCode: String?) async {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.verifySoftwareToken(
                input: VerifySoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: session,
                    userCode: mfaCode
                )
            )

            guard let tokenStatus = output.status else {
                print("*** Unable to get the token's status.")
                return
            }
            print("=====> The token's status is: \(tokenStatus)")
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
```

```
            print("*** The specified username doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch {
            print("*** Error verifying the MFA token!")
            return
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see VerifySoftwareToken in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios

Sign up a user with a user pool that requires MFA

The following code example shows how to:

- Sign up and confirm a user with a username, password, and email address.
- Set up multi-factor authentication by associating an MFA application with the user.
- Sign in by using a password and an MFA code.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription
```

```
let package = Package(
    name: "cognito-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "cognito-scenario",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSCognitoIdentityProvider", package: "aws-sdk-
swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift code file.

```
// An example demonstrating various features of Amazon Cognito. Before running
// this Swift code example, set up your development environment, including
// your credentials.
//
// For more information, see the following documentation:
```

```
// https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sdk-for-kotlin/latest/developer-guide/setup.html
//
// TIP: To set up the required user pool, run the AWS Cloud Development Kit
// (AWS CDK) script provided in this GitHub repo at
// resources/cdk/cognito_scenario_user_pool_with_mfa.
//
// This example performs the following functions:
//
// 1. Invokes the signUp method to sign up a user.
// 2. Invokes the adminGetUser method to get the user's confirmation status.
// 3. Invokes the ResendConfirmationCode method if the user requested another
//    code.
// 4. Invokes the confirmSignUp method.
// 5. Invokes the initiateAuth to sign in. This results in being prompted to
//    set up TOTP (time-based one-time password). (The response is
//    “ChallengeName”: “MFA_SETUP”).
// 6. Invokes the AssociateSoftwareToken method to generate a TOTP MFA private
//    key. This can be used with Google Authenticator.
// 7. Invokes the VerifySoftwareToken method to verify the TOTP and register
//    for MFA.
// 8. Invokes the AdminInitiateAuth to sign in again. This results in being
//    prompted to submit a TOTP (Response: “ChallengeName”:
//    “SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA”).
// 9. Invokes the AdminRespondToAuthChallenge to get back a token.

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation

import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSCognitoIdentityProvider

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Argument(help: "The application clientId.")
    var clientId: String
    @Argument(help: "The user pool ID to use.")
    var poolId: String
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "cognito-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Demonstrates various features of Amazon Cognito.
        """,
```

```
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Prompt for an input string of at least a minimum length.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: The prompt string to display.
    ///   - minLength: The minimum number of characters to allow in the
    ///     response. Default value is 0.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The entered string.
    func stringRequest(_ prompt: String, minLength: Int = 1) -> String {
        while true {
            print(prompt, terminator: "")
            let str = readLine()

            guard let str else {
                continue
            }
            if str.count >= minLength {
                return str
            } else {
                print("*** Response must be at least \(minLength) character(s)
long.")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Ask a yes/no question.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: A prompt string to print.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user answered "Y", otherwise `false`.
    func yesNoRequest(_ prompt: String) -> Bool {
        while true {
            let answer = stringRequest(prompt).lowercased()
            if answer == "y" || answer == "n" {
                return answer == "y"
            }
        }
    }

    /// Get information about a specific user in a user pool.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The Amazon Cognito Identity Provider client to use.
    ///   - userName: The user to retrieve information about.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to search for the specified user.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user's information was successfully
    ///   retrieved. Otherwise returns `false`.
    func adminGetUser(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, userName: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminGetUser(
                input: AdminGetUserInput(
                    userPoolId: userPoolId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let userStatus = output.userStatus else {
                print("*** Unable to get the user's status.")
                return false
            }

            print("User status: \(userStatus)")
            return true
        } catch {
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Create a new user in a user pool.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The ID of the app client to create a user for.
    ///   - userName: The username for the new user.
    ///   - password: The new user's password.
    ///   - email: The new user's email address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful; otherwise `false`.
    func signUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
userName: String, password: String, email: String) async -> Bool {
        let emailAttr = CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AttributeType(
            name: "email",
```

```
            value: email
        )

        let userAttrsList = [emailAttr]

        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.signUp(
                input: SignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    password: password,
                    userAttributes: userAttrsList,
                    username: userName
                )

            )

            print("=====> User \(userName) signed up.")
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.UsernameExistsException {
            print("*** The username \(userName) already exists. Please use a
different one.")
            return false
        } catch let error as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.InvalidPasswordException {
            print("*** Error: The specified password is invalid. Reason:
\(error.properties.message ?? "<none available>").")
            return false
        } catch _ as AWSCognitoIdentityProvider.ResourceNotFoundException {
            print("*** Error: The specified client ID (\(clientId)) doesn't exist.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error: \(error)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Requests a new confirmation code be sent to the given user's contact
    /// method.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The application client ID.
    ///   - userName: The user to resend a code for.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: `true` if a new code was sent successfully, otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func resendConfirmationCode(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId:
String,
                                userName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.resendConfirmationCode(
                input: ResendConfirmationCodeInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            guard let deliveryMedium = output.codeDeliveryDetails?.deliveryMedium
else {
                print("*** Unable to get the delivery method for the resent code.")
                return false
            }

            print("=====> A new code has been sent by \(deliveryMedium)")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to resend the confirmation code to user \(userName).")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Submit a confirmation code for the specified user. This is the code as
    /// entered by the user after they've received it by email or text
    /// message.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID the user is signing up for.
    ///   - userName: The username of the user whose code is being sent.
    ///   - code: The user's confirmation code.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the code was successfully confirmed; otherwise `false`.
    func confirmSignUp(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
                       userName: String, code: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await cipClient.confirmSignUp(
                input: ConfirmSignUpInput(
                    clientId: clientId,
```

```
                    confirmationCode: code,
                    username: userName
                )
            )

            print("=====> \(userName) has been confirmed.")
            return true
        } catch {
            print("=====> \(userName)'s code was entered incorrectly.")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Begin an authentication session.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID to use.
    ///   - userName: The username to check.
    ///   - password: The user's password.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to use.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The session token associated with this authentication
    ///   session.
    func initiateAuth(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, clientId: String,
                      userName: String, password: String,
                      userPoolId: String) async -> String? {
        var authParams: [String: String] = [:]

        authParams["USERNAME"] = userName
        authParams["PASSWORD"] = password

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminInitiateAuth(
                input: AdminInitiateAuthInput(
                    authFlow:
CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.AuthFlowType.adminUserPasswordAuth,
                    authParameters: authParams,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
            )

            guard let challengeName = output.challengeName else {
```

```
                print("*** Invalid response from the auth service.")
                return nil
            }

            print("=====> Response challenge is \(challengeName)")

            return output.session
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return nil
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Request and display an MFA secret token that the user should enter
    /// into their authenticator to set it up for the user account.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - authSession: The authentication session to request an MFA secret
    ///     for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the MFA secret token that should be
    ///   entered into the authenticator software.
    func getSecretForAppMFA(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, authSession:
String?) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.associateSoftwareToken(
                input: AssociateSoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: authSession
                )
            )

            guard let secretCode = output.secretCode else {
                print("*** Unable to get the secret code")
                return nil
            }
```

```
            print("=====> Enter this token into Google Authenticator:
\(secretCode)")
            return output.session
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return nil
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred getting the secret for the app's
MFA.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Confirm that the user's TOTP authenticator is configured correctly by
    /// sending a code to it to check that it matches successfully.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CongnitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - session: An authentication session previously returned by an
    ///     `associateSoftwareToken()` call.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator, as provided by the user.
    func verifyTOTP(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient, session: String?,
mfaCode: String?) async {
        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.verifySoftwareToken(
                input: VerifySoftwareTokenInput(
                    session: session,
                    userCode: mfaCode
                )
            )

            guard let tokenStatus = output.status else {
                print("*** Unable to get the token's status.")
                return
            }
            print("=====> The token's status is: \(tokenStatus)")
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
```

```
            print("*** The specified username doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch {
            print("*** Error verifying the MFA token!")
            return
        }
    }

    /// Respond to the authentication challenge received from Cognito after
    /// initiating an authentication session. This involves sending a current
    /// MFA code to the service.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - cipClient: The `CognitoIdentityProviderClient` to use.
    ///   - userName: The user's username.
    ///   - clientId: The app client ID.
    ///   - userPoolId: The user pool to sign into.
    ///   - mfaCode: The 6-digit MFA code currently displayed by the user's
    ///     authenticator.
    ///   - session: The authentication session to continue processing.
    func adminRespondToAuthChallenge(cipClient: CognitoIdentityProviderClient,
userName: String,
                                     clientId: String, userPoolId: String, mfaCode:
String,
                                     session: String) async {
        print("=====> SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA challenge is generated...")

        var challengeResponsesOb: [String: String] = [:]
        challengeResponsesOb["USERNAME"] = userName
        challengeResponsesOb["SOFTWARE_TOKEN_MFA_CODE"] = mfaCode

        do {
            let output = try await cipClient.adminRespondToAuthChallenge(
                input: AdminRespondToAuthChallengeInput(
                    challengeName:
CognitoIdentityProviderClientTypes.ChallengeNameType.softwareTokenMfa,
                    challengeResponses: challengeResponsesOb,
                    clientId: clientId,
                    session: session,
                    userPoolId: userPoolId
                )
```

```
            )

            guard let authenticationResult = output.authenticationResult else {
                print("*** Unable to get authentication result.")
                return
            }

            print("=====> Authentication result (JWTs are redacted):")
            print(authenticationResult)
        } catch _ as SoftwareTokenMFANotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified user pool isn't configured for MFA.")
            return
        } catch _ as CodeMismatchException {
            print("*** The specified MFA code doesn't match the expected value.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified username, \(userName), doesn't exist.")
            return
        } catch _ as UserNotConfirmedException {
            print("*** The user \(userName) has not been confirmed.")
            return
        } catch let error as NotAuthorizedException {
            print("*** Unauthorized access. Reason: \(error.properties.message ??
"<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error responding to the MFA challenge.")
            return
        }
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await
CognitoIdentityProviderClient.CognitoIdentityProviderClientConfiguration(region:
region)
        let cipClient = CognitoIdentityProviderClient(config: config)

        print("""
              This example collects information about a user, then creates that user
in the
              specified user pool. Then, it enables Multi-Factor Authentication
(MFA) for that
              user by associating an authenticator application (such as Google
Authenticator
```

```
             or a password manager that supports TOTP). Then, the user uses a code
from their
             authenticator application to sign in.

             """)

       let userName = stringRequest("Please enter a new username: ")
       let password = stringRequest("Enter a password: ")
       let email = stringRequest("Enter your email address: ", minLength: 5)

       // Submit the sign-up request to AWS.

       print("==> Signing up user \(userName)...")
       if await signUp(cipClient: cipClient, clientId: clientId,
                       userName: userName, password: password,
                       email: email) == false {
           return
       }

       // Check the user's status. This time, it should come back "unconfirmed".

       print("==> Getting the status of user \(userName) from the user pool (should
be 'unconfirmed')...")
       if await adminGetUser(cipClient: cipClient, userName: userName, userPoolId:
poolId) == false {
           return
       }

       // Ask the user if they want a replacement code sent, such as if the
       // code hasn't arrived yet. If the user responds with a "yes," send a
       // new code.

       if yesNoRequest("==> A confirmation code was sent to \(userName). Would you
like to send a new code (Y/N)? ") {
           print("==> Sending a new confirmation code...")
           if await resendConfirmationCode(cipClient: cipClient, clientId:
clientId, userName: userName) == false {
               return
           }
       }

       // Ask the user to enter the confirmation code, then send it to Amazon
       // Cognito to verify it.
```

```
        let code = stringRequest("==> Enter the confirmation code sent to
\(userName): ")
        if await confirmSignUp(cipClient: cipClient, clientId: clientId, userName:
userName, code: code) == false {
            // The code didn't match. Your application may wish to offer to
            // re-send the confirmation code here and try again.
            return
        }

        // Check the user's status again. This time it should come back
        // "confirmed".

        print("==> Rechecking status of user \(userName) in the user pool (should be
'confirmed')...")
        if await adminGetUser(cipClient: cipClient, userName: userName, userPoolId:
poolId) == false {
            return
        }
        // Check the challenge mode. Here, it should be "mfaSetup", indicating
        // that the user needs to add MFA before using it. This returns a
        // session that can be used to register MFA, or nil if an error occurs.

        let authSession = await initiateAuth(cipClient: cipClient, clientId:
clientId,
                                             userName: userName, password:
password,
                                             userPoolId: poolId)
        if authSession == nil {
            return
        }

        // Ask Cognito for an MFA secret token that the user should enter into
        // their authenticator software (such as Google Authenticator) or
        // password manager to configure it for this user account. This
        // returns a new session that should be used for the new stage of the
        // authentication process.

        let newSession = await getSecretForAppMFA(cipClient: cipClient, authSession:
authSession)
        if newSession == nil {
            return
        }

        // Ask the user to enter the current 6-digit code displayed by their
```

```
        // authenticator. Then verify that it matches the value expected for
        // the session.

        let mfaCode1 = stringRequest("==> Enter the 6-digit code displayed in your
 authenticator: ",
                                     minLength: 6)
        await verifyTOTP(cipClient: cipClient, session: newSession, mfaCode:
 mfaCode1)

        // Ask the user to authenticate now that the authenticator has been
        // configured. This creates a new session using the user's username
        // and password as already entered.

        print("\nNow starting the sign-in process for user \(userName)...\n")

        let session2 = await initiateAuth(cipClient: cipClient, clientId: clientId,
                                     userName: userName, password: password,
 userPoolId: poolId)
        guard let session2 else {
            return
        }

        // Now that we have a new auth session, `session2`, ask the user for a
        // new 6-digit code from their authenticator, and send it to the auth
        // session.

        let mfaCode2 = stringRequest("==> Wait for your authenticator to show a new
 6-digit code, then enter it: ",
                                     minLength: 6)
        await adminRespondToAuthChallenge(cipClient: cipClient, userName: userName,
                                          clientId: clientId, userPoolId: poolId,
                                          mfaCode: mfaCode2, session: session2)
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
```

```
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - AdminGetUser
  - AdminInitiateAuth
  - AdminRespondToAuthChallenge
  - AssociateSoftwareToken
  - ConfirmDevice
  - ConfirmSignUp
  - InitiateAuth
  - ListUsers
  - ResendConfirmationCode
  - RespondToAuthChallenge
  - SignUp
  - VerifySoftwareToken

DynamoDB examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with DynamoDB.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics

- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a table that can hold movie data.
- Put, get, and update a single movie in the table.
- Write movie data to the table from a sample JSON file.
- Query for movies that were released in a given year.
- Scan for movies that were released in a range of years.
- Delete a movie from the table, then delete the table.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

A Swift class that handles DynamoDB calls to the SDK for Swift.

```
import AWSDynamoDB
import Foundation

/// An enumeration of error codes representing issues that can arise when using
/// the `MovieTable` class.
enum MoviesError: Error {
    /// The specified table wasn't found or couldn't be created.
    case TableNotFound
    /// The specified item wasn't found or couldn't be created.
    case ItemNotFound
    /// The Amazon DynamoDB client is not properly initialized.
    case UninitializedClient
    /// The table status reported by Amazon DynamoDB is not recognized.
    case StatusUnknown
```

```
    /// One or more specified attribute values are invalid or missing.
    case InvalidAttributes
}

/// A class representing an Amazon DynamoDB table containing movie
/// information.
public class MovieTable {
    var ddbClient: DynamoDBClient?
    let tableName: String

    /// Create an object representing a movie table in an Amazon DynamoDB
    /// database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - region: The optional Amazon Region to create the database in.
    ///   - tableName: The name to assign to the table. If not specified, a
    ///     random table name is generated automatically.
    ///
    /// > Note: The table is not necessarily available when this function
    /// returns. Use `tableExists()` to check for its availability, or
    /// `awaitTableActive()` to wait until the table's status is reported as
    /// ready to use by Amazon DynamoDB.
    ///
    init(region: String? = nil, tableName: String) async throws {
        do {
            let config = try await DynamoDBClient.DynamoDBClientConfiguration()
            if let region = region {
                config.region = region
            }

            self.ddbClient = DynamoDBClient(config: config)
            self.tableName = tableName

            try await self.createTable()
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Initializing Amazon DynamoDBClient
 client"))
            throw error
        }
    }

    ///
    /// Create a movie table in the Amazon DynamoDB data store.
    ///
```

```
    private func createTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = CreateTableInput(
                attributeDefinitions: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName: "year",
attributeType: .n),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName: "title",
attributeType: .s)
                ],
                billingMode: DynamoDBClientTypes.BillingMode.payPerRequest,
                keySchema: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "year",
keyType: .hash),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "title",
keyType: .range)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.createTable(input: input)
            if output.tableDescription == nil {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Check to see if the table exists online yet.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the table exists, or `false` if not.
    ///
    func tableExists() async throws -> Bool {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DescribeTableInput(
```

```
                tableName: tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.describeTable(input: input)
            guard let description = output.table else {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }

            return description.tableName == self.tableName
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: tableExists:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    ///
    /// Waits for the table to exist and for its status to be active.
    ///
    func awaitTableActive() async throws {
        while try (await self.tableExists() == false) {
            do {
                let duration = UInt64(0.25 * 1_000_000_000) // Convert .25 seconds
to nanoseconds.
                try await Task.sleep(nanoseconds: duration)
            } catch {
                print("Sleep error:", dump(error))
            }
        }

        while try (await self.getTableStatus() != .active) {
            do {
                let duration = UInt64(0.25 * 1_000_000_000) // Convert .25 seconds
to nanoseconds.
                try await Task.sleep(nanoseconds: duration)
            } catch {
                print("Sleep error:", dump(error))
            }
        }
    }


    ///
    /// Deletes the table from Amazon DynamoDB.
    ///
```

```
    func deleteTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteTableInput(
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteTable(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Get the table's status.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The table status, as defined by the
    ///   `DynamoDBClientTypes.TableStatus` enum.
    ///
    func getTableStatus() async throws -> DynamoDBClientTypes.TableStatus {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DescribeTableInput(
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.describeTable(input: input)
            guard let description = output.table else {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }
            guard let status = description.tableStatus else {
                throw MoviesError.StatusUnknown
            }
            return status
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getTableStatus:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Populate the movie database from the specified JSON file.
    ///
    /// - Parameter jsonPath: Path to a JSON file containing movie data.
    ///
    func populate(jsonPath: String) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Create a Swift `URL` and use it to load the file into a `Data`
            // object. Then decode the JSON into an array of `Movie` objects.

            let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: jsonPath)
            let jsonData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)

            var movieList = try JSONDecoder().decode([Movie].self, from: jsonData)

            // Truncate the list to the first 200 entries or so for this example.

            if movieList.count > 200 {
                movieList = Array(movieList[...199])
            }

            // Before sending records to the database, break the movie list into
            // 25-entry chunks, which is the maximum size of a batch item request.

            let count = movieList.count
            let chunks = stride(from: 0, to: count, by: 25).map {
                Array(movieList[$0 ..< Swift.min($0 + 25, count)])
            }

            // For each chunk, create a list of write request records and populate
            // them with `PutRequest` requests, each specifying one movie from the
            // chunk. Once the chunk's items are all in the `PutRequest` list,
            // send them to Amazon DynamoDB using the
            // `DynamoDBClient.batchWriteItem()` function.

            for chunk in chunks {
                var requestList: [DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest] = []

                for movie in chunk {
```

```
                    let item = try await movie.getAsItem()
                    let request = DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest(
                        putRequest: .init(
                            item: item
                        )
                    )
                    requestList.append(request)
                }

                let input = BatchWriteItemInput(requestItems: [tableName:
requestList])
                _ = try await client.batchWriteItem(input: input)
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: populate:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Add a movie specified as a `Movie` structure to the Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    ///
    /// - Parameter movie: The `Movie` to add to the table.
    ///
    func add(movie: Movie) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Get a DynamoDB item containing the movie data.
            let item = try await movie.getAsItem()

            // Send the `PutItem` request to Amazon DynamoDB.

            let input = PutItemInput(
                item: item,
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.putItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: add movie:", dump(error))
            throw error
```

```
        }
    }


    /// Given a movie's details, add a movie to the Amazon DynamoDB table.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title as a `String`.
    ///   - year: The release year of the movie (`Int`).
    ///   - rating: The movie's rating if available (`Double`; default is
    ///     `nil`).
    ///   - plot: A summary of the movie's plot (`String`; default is `nil`,
    ///     indicating no plot summary is available).
    ///
    func add(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil,
             plot: String? = nil) async throws
    {
        do {
            let movie = Movie(title: title, year: year, rating: rating, plot: plot)
            try await self.add(movie: movie)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: add with fields:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Return a `Movie` record describing the specified movie from the Amazon
    /// DynamoDB table.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The movie's release year (`Int`).
    ///
    /// - Throws: `MoviesError.ItemNotFound` if the movie isn't in the table.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `Movie` record with the movie's details.
    func get(title: String, year: Int) async throws -> Movie {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = GetItemInput(
```

```
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.getItem(input: input)
            guard let item = output.item else {
                throw MoviesError.ItemNotFound
            }

            let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
            return movie
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: get:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Get all the movies released in the specified year.
    ///
    /// - Parameter year: The release year of the movies to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing each matching movie.
    ///
    func getMovies(fromYear year: Int) async throws -> [Movie] {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = QueryInput(
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year"
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y": .n(String(year))
                ],
                keyConditionExpression: "#y = :y",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            // Use "Paginated" to get all the movies.
```

```
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'lastEvaluatedKey' property in
"QueryOutput".

            let pages = client.queryPaginated(input: input)

            var movieList: [Movie] = []
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Convert the found movies into `Movie` objects and return an array
                // of them.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Return an array of `Movie` objects released in the specified range of
    /// years.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - firstYear: The first year of movies to return.
    ///   - lastYear: The last year of movies to return.
    ///   - startKey: A starting point to resume processing; always use `nil`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing the matching movies.
    ///
    /// > Note: The `startKey` parameter is used by this function when
    ///   recursively calling itself, and should always be `nil` when calling
    ///   directly.
    ///
    func getMovies(firstYear: Int, lastYear: Int,
```

```
                    startKey: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]? =
nil)
        async throws -> [Movie]
    {
        do {
            var movieList: [Movie] = []

            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = ScanInput(
                consistentRead: true,
                exclusiveStartKey: startKey,
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year" // `year` is a reserved word, so use `#y` instead.
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y1": .n(String(firstYear)),
                    ":y2": .n(String(lastYear))
                ],
                filterExpression: "#y BETWEEN :y1 AND :y2",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )

            let pages = client.scanPaginated(input: input)

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Build an array of `Movie` objects for the returned items.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList

        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies with scan:", dump(error))
```

```
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Update the specified movie with new `rating` and `plot` information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The title of the movie to update.
    ///   - year: The release year of the movie to update.
    ///   - rating: The new rating for the movie.
    ///   - plot: The new plot summary string for the movie.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of mappings of attribute names to their new
    ///   listing each item actually changed. Items that didn't need to change
    ///   aren't included in this list. `nil` if no changes were made.
    ///
    func update(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil, plot: String? =
nil) async throws
        -> [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]?
    {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Build the update expression and the list of expression attribute
            // values. Include only the information that's changed.

            var expressionParts: [String] = []
            var attrValues: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [:]

            if rating != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.rating=:r")
                attrValues[":r"] = .n(String(rating!))
            }
            if plot != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.plot=:p")
                attrValues[":p"] = .s(plot!)
            }
            let expression = "set \(expressionParts.joined(separator: ", "))"

            let input = UpdateItemInput(
                // Create substitution tokens for the attribute values, to ensure
```

```
                // no conflicts in expression syntax.
                expressionAttributeValues: attrValues,
                // The key identifying the movie to update consists of the release
                // year and title.
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                returnValues: .updatedNew,
                tableName: self.tableName,
                updateExpression: expression
            )
            let output = try await client.updateItem(input: input)

            guard let attributes: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]
= output.attributes else {
                throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
            }
            return attributes
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: update:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Delete a movie, given its title and release year.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title.
    ///   - year: The movie's release year.
    ///
    func delete(title: String, year: Int) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
```

```
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: delete:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
}
```

The structures used by the MovieTable class to represent movies.

```
import Foundation
import AWSDynamoDB

/// The optional details about a movie.
public struct Details: Codable {
    /// The movie's rating, if available.
    var rating: Double?
    /// The movie's plot, if available.
    var plot: String?
}

/// A structure describing a movie. The `year` and `title` properties are
/// required and are used as the key for Amazon DynamoDB operations. The
/// `info` sub-structure's two properties, `rating` and `plot`, are optional.
public struct Movie: Codable {
    /// The year in which the movie was released.
    var year: Int
    /// The movie's title.
    var title: String
    /// A `Details` object providing the optional movie rating and plot
    /// information.
    var info: Details

    /// Create a `Movie` object representing a movie, given the movie's
    /// details.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The year in which the movie was released (`Int`).
    ///   - rating: The movie's rating (optional `Double`).
```

```
    ///   - plot: The movie's plot (optional `String`)
    init(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil, plot: String? = nil) {
        self.title = title
        self.year = year

        self.info = Details(rating: rating, plot: plot)
    }

    /// Create a `Movie` object representing a movie, given the movie's
    /// details.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The year in which the movie was released (`Int`).
    ///   - info: The optional rating and plot information for the movie in a
    ///     `Details` object.
    init(title: String, year: Int, info: Details?){
        self.title = title
        self.year = year

        if info != nil {
            self.info = info!
        } else {
            self.info = Details(rating: nil, plot: nil)
        }
    }

    ///
    /// Return a new `MovieTable` object, given an array mapping string to Amazon
    /// DynamoDB attribute values.
    ///
    /// - Parameter item: The item information provided to the form used by
    ///   DynamoDB. This is an array of strings mapped to
    ///   `DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue` values.
    init(withItem item: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]) throws  {
        // Read the attributes.

        guard let titleAttr = item["title"],
              let yearAttr = item["year"] else {
            throw MoviesError.ItemNotFound
        }
        let infoAttr = item["info"] ?? nil

        // Extract the values of the title and year attributes.
```

```
        if case .s(let titleVal) = titleAttr {
            self.title = titleVal
        } else {
            throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
        }

        if case .n(let yearVal) = yearAttr {
            self.year = Int(yearVal)!
        } else {
            throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
        }

        // Extract the rating and/or plot from the `info` attribute, if
        // they're present.

        var rating: Double? = nil
        var plot: String? = nil

        if infoAttr != nil, case .m(let infoVal) = infoAttr {
            let ratingAttr = infoVal["rating"] ?? nil
            let plotAttr = infoVal["plot"] ?? nil

            if ratingAttr != nil, case .n(let ratingVal) = ratingAttr {
                rating = Double(ratingVal) ?? nil
            }
            if plotAttr != nil, case .s(let plotVal) = plotAttr {
                plot = plotVal
            }
        }

        self.info = Details(rating: rating, plot: plot)
    }

    ///
    /// Return an array mapping attribute names to Amazon DynamoDB attribute
    /// values, representing the contents of the `Movie` record as a DynamoDB
    /// item.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The movie item as an array of type
    ///   `[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]`.
    ///
    func getAsItem() async throws ->
[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]  {
```

```
        // Build the item record, starting with the year and title, which are
        // always present.

        var item: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [
            "year": .n(String(self.year)),
            "title": .s(self.title)
        ]

        // Add the `info` field with the rating and/or plot if they're
        // available.

        var details: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [:]
        if (self.info.rating != nil || self.info.plot != nil) {
            if self.info.rating != nil {
                details["rating"] = .n(String(self.info.rating!))
            }
            if self.info.plot != nil {
                details["plot"] = .s(self.info.plot!)
            }
        }
        item["info"] = .m(details)

        return item
    }
 }
```

A program that uses the MovieTable class to access a DynamoDB database.

```
import ArgumentParser
import ClientRuntime
import Foundation

import AWSDynamoDB


@testable import MovieList

extension String {
    // Get the directory if the string is a file path.
    func directory() -> String {
        guard let lastIndex = lastIndex(of: "/") else {
            print("Error: String directory separator not found.")
```

```
            return ""
        }
        return String(self[...lastIndex])
    }
}

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Argument(help: "The path of the sample movie data JSON file.")
    var jsonPath: String = #file.directory() + "../../../../../resources/
sample_files/movies.json"

    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion: String?

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    /// Configuration details for the command.
    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "basics",
        abstract: "A basic scenario demonstrating the usage of Amazon DynamoDB.",
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to use Amazon DynamoDB to perform a series of
        common database activities on a simple movie database.
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to asynchronously run the AWS example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        print("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Swift basic scenario for Amazon
 DynamoDB!")

        //======================================================================
```

```
        // 1. Create the table. The Amazon DynamoDB table is represented by
        //    the `MovieTable` class.
        //===================================================================

        let tableName = "ddb-movies-sample-\(Int.random(in: 1 ... Int.max))"

        print("Creating table \"\(tableName)\"...")

        let movieDatabase = try await MovieTable(region: awsRegion,
                                                 tableName: tableName)

        print("\nWaiting for table to be ready to use...")
        try await movieDatabase.awaitTableActive()

        //===================================================================
        // 2. Add a movie to the table.
        //===================================================================

        print("\nAdding a movie...")
        try await movieDatabase.add(title: "Avatar: The Way of Water", year: 2022)
        try await movieDatabase.add(title: "Not a Real Movie", year: 2023)

        //===================================================================
        // 3. Update the plot and rating of the movie using an update
        //    expression.
        //===================================================================

        print("\nAdding details to the added movie...")
        _ = try await movieDatabase.update(title: "Avatar: The Way of Water", year:
2022,
                                           rating: 9.2, plot: "It's a sequel.")

        //===================================================================
        // 4. Populate the table from the JSON file.
        //===================================================================

        print("\nPopulating the movie database from JSON...")
        try await movieDatabase.populate(jsonPath: jsonPath)

        //===================================================================
        // 5. Get a specific movie by key. In this example, the key is a
        //    combination of `title` and `year`.
        //===================================================================
```

```
        print("\nLooking for a movie in the table...")
        let gotMovie = try await movieDatabase.get(title: "This Is the End", year:
2013)

        print("Found the movie \"\(gotMovie.title)\", released in
\(gotMovie.year).")
        print("Rating: \(gotMovie.info.rating ?? 0.0).")
        print("Plot summary: \(gotMovie.info.plot ?? "None.")")

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. Delete a movie.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nDeleting the added movie...")
        try await movieDatabase.delete(title: "Avatar: The Way of Water", year:
2022)

        //=====================================================================
        // 7. Use a query with a key condition expression to return all movies
        //    released in a given year.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nGetting movies released in 1994...")
        let movieList = try await movieDatabase.getMovies(fromYear: 1994)
        for movie in movieList {
            print("    \(movie.title)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 8. Use `scan()` to return movies released in a range of years.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nGetting movies released between 1993 and 1997...")
        let scannedMovies = try await movieDatabase.getMovies(firstYear: 1993,
lastYear: 1997)
        for movie in scannedMovies {
            print("    \(movie.title) (\(movie.year))")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 9. Delete the table.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nDeleting the table...")
```

```
        try await movieDatabase.deleteTable()
    }
}

@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - BatchWriteItem
  - CreateTable
  - DeleteItem
  - DeleteTable
  - DescribeTable
  - GetItem
  - PutItem
  - Query
  - Scan
  - UpdateItem

Actions

`BatchGetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchGetItem`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Gets an array of `Movie` objects describing all the movies in the
    /// specified list. Any movies that aren't found in the list have no
    /// corresponding entry in the resulting array.
    ///
    /// - Parameters
    ///     - keys: An array of tuples, each of which specifies the title and
    ///       release year of a movie to fetch from the table.
    ///
    /// - Returns:
    ///     - An array of `Movie` objects describing each match found in the
    ///     table.
    ///
    /// - Throws:
    ///     - `MovieError.ClientUninitialized` if the DynamoDB client has not
    ///     been initialized.
    ///     - DynamoDB errors are thrown without change.
    func batchGet(keys: [(title: String, year: Int)]) async throws -> [Movie] {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MovieError.ClientUninitialized
            }

            var movieList: [Movie] = []
            var keyItems: [[Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]] = []

            // Convert the list of keys into the form used by DynamoDB.

            for key in keys {
                let item: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [
                    "title": .s(key.title),
                    "year": .n(String(key.year))
```

```
            ]
            keyItems.append(item)
        }

        // Create the input record for `batchGetItem()`. The list of requested
        // items is in the `requestItems` property. This array contains one
        // entry for each table from which items are to be fetched. In this
        // example, there's only one table containing the movie data.
        //
        // If we wanted this program to also support searching for matches
        // in a table of book data, we could add a second `requestItem`
        // mapping the name of the book table to the list of items we want to
        // find in it.
        let input = BatchGetItemInput(
            requestItems: [
                self.tableName: .init(
                    consistentRead: true,
                    keys: keyItems
                )
            ]
        )

        // Fetch the matching movies from the table.

        let output = try await client.batchGetItem(input: input)

        // Get the set of responses. If there aren't any, return the empty
        // movie list.

        guard let responses = output.responses else {
            return movieList
        }

        // Get the list of matching items for the table with the name
        // `tableName`.

        guard let responseList = responses[self.tableName] else {
            return movieList
        }

        // Create `Movie` items for each of the matching movies in the table
        // and add them to the `MovieList` array.

        for response in responseList {
```

```
                try movieList.append(Movie(withItem: response))
            }

            return movieList
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: batchGet", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchGetItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`BatchWriteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `BatchWriteItem`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Populate the movie database from the specified JSON file.
    ///
    /// - Parameter jsonPath: Path to a JSON file containing movie data.
    ///
    func populate(jsonPath: String) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Create a Swift `URL` and use it to load the file into a `Data`
            // object. Then decode the JSON into an array of `Movie` objects.

            let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: jsonPath)
```

```
            let jsonData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)

            var movieList = try JSONDecoder().decode([Movie].self, from: jsonData)

            // Truncate the list to the first 200 entries or so for this example.

            if movieList.count > 200 {
                movieList = Array(movieList[...199])
            }

            // Before sending records to the database, break the movie list into
            // 25-entry chunks, which is the maximum size of a batch item request.

            let count = movieList.count
            let chunks = stride(from: 0, to: count, by: 25).map {
                Array(movieList[$0 ..< Swift.min($0 + 25, count)])
            }

            // For each chunk, create a list of write request records and populate
            // them with `PutRequest` requests, each specifying one movie from the
            // chunk. Once the chunk's items are all in the `PutRequest` list,
            // send them to Amazon DynamoDB using the
            // `DynamoDBClient.batchWriteItem()` function.

            for chunk in chunks {
                var requestList: [DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest] = []

                for movie in chunk {
                    let item = try await movie.getAsItem()
                    let request = DynamoDBClientTypes.WriteRequest(
                        putRequest: .init(
                            item: item
                        )
                    )
                    requestList.append(request)
                }

                let input = BatchWriteItemInput(requestItems: [tableName:
requestList])
                _ = try await client.batchWriteItem(input: input)
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: populate:", dump(error))
            throw error
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see BatchWriteItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateTable`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTable`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    ///
    /// Create a movie table in the Amazon DynamoDB data store.
    ///
    private func createTable() async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = CreateTableInput(
                attributeDefinitions: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName: "year",
 attributeType: .n),
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeDefinition(attributeName: "title",
 attributeType: .s)
                ],
                billingMode: DynamoDBClientTypes.BillingMode.payPerRequest,
                keySchema: [
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "year",
 keyType: .hash),
```

```
                    DynamoDBClientTypes.KeySchemaElement(attributeName: "title",
 keyType: .range)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.createTable(input: input)
            if output.tableDescription == nil {
                throw MoviesError.TableNotFound
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateTable in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteItem`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteItem`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Delete a movie, given its title and release year.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title.
    ///   - year: The movie's release year.
    ///
    func delete(title: String, year: Int) async throws {
```

```
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: delete:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    ///
    /// Deletes the table from Amazon DynamoDB.
    ///
    func deleteTable() async throws {
```

```
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = DeleteTableInput(
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.deleteTable(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteTable:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetItem`

The following code example shows how to use `GetItem`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Return a `Movie` record describing the specified movie from the Amazon
    /// DynamoDB table.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The movie's title (`String`).
    ///   - year: The movie's release year (`Int`).
    ///
    /// - Throws: `MoviesError.ItemNotFound` if the movie isn't in the table.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `Movie` record with the movie's details.
    func get(title: String, year: Int) async throws -> Movie {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = GetItemInput(
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            let output = try await client.getItem(input: input)
            guard let item = output.item else {
                throw MoviesError.ItemNotFound
            }

            let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
            return movie
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: get:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListTables`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTables`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Get a list of the DynamoDB tables available in the specified Region.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings listing all of the tables available
    ///   in the Region specified when the session was created.
    public func getTableList() async throws -> [String] {
        let input = ListTablesInput(
        )
        return try await session.listTables(input: input)
    }
```

- For API details, see ListTables in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`PutItem`

The following code example shows how to use `PutItem`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Add a movie specified as a `Movie` structure to the Amazon DynamoDB
    /// table.
    ///
    /// - Parameter movie: The `Movie` to add to the table.
    ///
    func add(movie: Movie) async throws {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }
```

```
            // Get a DynamoDB item containing the movie data.
            let item = try await movie.getAsItem()

            // Send the `PutItem` request to Amazon DynamoDB.

            let input = PutItemInput(
                item: item,
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            _ = try await client.putItem(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: add movie:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }


    ///
    /// Return an array mapping attribute names to Amazon DynamoDB attribute
    /// values, representing the contents of the `Movie` record as a DynamoDB
    /// item.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The movie item as an array of type
    ///   `[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]`.
    ///
    func getAsItem() async throws ->
[Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]  {
        // Build the item record, starting with the year and title, which are
        // always present.

        var item: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [
            "year": .n(String(self.year)),
            "title": .s(self.title)
        ]

        // Add the `info` field with the rating and/or plot if they're
        // available.

        var details: [Swift.String:DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [:]
        if (self.info.rating != nil || self.info.plot != nil) {
            if self.info.rating != nil {
                details["rating"] = .n(String(self.info.rating!))
            }
```

```
            if self.info.plot != nil {
                details["plot"] = .s(self.info.plot!)
            }
        }
        item["info"] = .m(details)

        return item
    }
```

- For API details, see PutItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`Query`

The following code example shows how to use `Query`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Get all the movies released in the specified year.
    ///
    /// - Parameter year: The release year of the movies to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing each matching movie.
    ///
    func getMovies(fromYear year: Int) async throws -> [Movie] {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = QueryInput(
                expressionAttributeNames: [
```

```
                    "#y": "year"
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y": .n(String(year))
                ],
                keyConditionExpression: "#y = :y",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )
            // Use "Paginated" to get all the movies.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'lastEvaluatedKey' property in
"QueryOutput".

            let pages = client.queryPaginated(input: input)

            var movieList: [Movie] = []
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Convert the found movies into `Movie` objects and return an array
                // of them.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Query in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scan

The following code example shows how to use `Scan`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Return an array of `Movie` objects released in the specified range of
    /// years.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - firstYear: The first year of movies to return.
    ///   - lastYear: The last year of movies to return.
    ///   - startKey: A starting point to resume processing; always use `nil`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `Movie` objects describing the matching movies.
    ///
    /// > Note: The `startKey` parameter is used by this function when
    ///   recursively calling itself, and should always be `nil` when calling
    ///   directly.
    ///
    func getMovies(firstYear: Int, lastYear: Int,
                   startKey: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]? =
 nil)
        async throws -> [Movie]
    {
        do {
            var movieList: [Movie] = []

            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            let input = ScanInput(
                consistentRead: true,
                exclusiveStartKey: startKey,
                expressionAttributeNames: [
                    "#y": "year" // `year` is a reserved word, so use `#y` instead.
```

```
                ],
                expressionAttributeValues: [
                    ":y1": .n(String(firstYear)),
                    ":y2": .n(String(lastYear))
                ],
                filterExpression: "#y BETWEEN :y1 AND :y2",
                tableName: self.tableName
            )

            let pages = client.scanPaginated(input: input)

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let items = page.items else {
                    print("Error: no items returned.")
                    continue
                }

                // Build an array of `Movie` objects for the returned items.

                for item in items {
                    let movie = try Movie(withItem: item)
                    movieList.append(movie)
                }
            }
            return movieList

        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getMovies with scan:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Scan in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`UpdateItem`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateItem`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSDynamoDB


    /// Update the specified movie with new `rating` and `plot` information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - title: The title of the movie to update.
    ///   - year: The release year of the movie to update.
    ///   - rating: The new rating for the movie.
    ///   - plot: The new plot summary string for the movie.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of mappings of attribute names to their new
    ///   listing each item actually changed. Items that didn't need to change
    ///   aren't included in this list. `nil` if no changes were made.
    ///
    func update(title: String, year: Int, rating: Double? = nil, plot: String? =
 nil) async throws
        -> [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]?
    {
        do {
            guard let client = self.ddbClient else {
                throw MoviesError.UninitializedClient
            }

            // Build the update expression and the list of expression attribute
            // values. Include only the information that's changed.

            var expressionParts: [String] = []
            var attrValues: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue] = [:]

            if rating != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.rating=:r")
                attrValues[":r"] = .n(String(rating!))
            }
```

```
            if plot != nil {
                expressionParts.append("info.plot=:p")
                attrValues[":p"] = .s(plot!)
            }
            let expression = "set \(expressionParts.joined(separator: ", "))"

            let input = UpdateItemInput(
                // Create substitution tokens for the attribute values, to ensure
                // no conflicts in expression syntax.
                expressionAttributeValues: attrValues,
                // The key identifying the movie to update consists of the release
                // year and title.
                key: [
                    "year": .n(String(year)),
                    "title": .s(title)
                ],
                returnValues: .updatedNew,
                tableName: self.tableName,
                updateExpression: expression
            )
            let output = try await client.updateItem(input: input)

            guard let attributes: [Swift.String: DynamoDBClientTypes.AttributeValue]
 = output.attributes else {
                throw MoviesError.InvalidAttributes
            }
            return attributes
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: update:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateItem in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon EC2 examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon EC2.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon EC2

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon EC2.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "hello-ec2",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
```

```
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "hello-ec2",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSEC2", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The `entry.swift` file.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a simple
// operation using Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation

import AWSEC2

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
```

```
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "hello-ec2",
        abstract: """
        Demonstrates a simple operation using Amazon EC2.
        """,
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to make a call to Amazon EC2 using the AWS SDK for
Swift.
        """
    )

    /// Return an array of strings giving the names of every security group
    /// the user is a member of.
    ///
    /// - Parameter ec2Client: The `EC2Client` to use when calling
    ///   `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings giving the names of every security
    ///   group the user is a member of.
    func getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: EC2Client) async -> [String] {
        let pages = ec2Client.describeSecurityGroupsPaginated(
            input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput()
        )

        var groupNames: [String] = []

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.securityGroups else {
                    print("*** Error: No groups returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for group in groups {
                    groupNames.append(group.groupName ?? "<unknown>")
```

```
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }

        return groupNames
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let ec2Config = try await EC2Client.EC2ClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ec2Client = EC2Client(config: ec2Config)

        let groupNames = await getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: ec2Client)

        print("Found \(groupNames.count) security group(s):")

        for group in groupNames {
            print("    \(group)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a key pair and security group.
- Select an Amazon Machine Image (AMI) and compatible instance type, then create an instance.
- Stop and restart the instance.
- Associate an Elastic IP address with your instance.
- Connect to your instance with SSH, then clean up resources.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "ec2-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
```

```
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.4.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "ec2-scenario",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSEC2", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "AWSSSM", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The `entry.swift` file.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a variety
// of operations using Amazon Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation
import AWSEC2

// Allow waiters to be used.

import class SmithyWaitersAPI.Waiter
```

```
import struct SmithyWaitersAPI.WaiterOptions

import AWSSSM

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "ec2-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Performs various operations to demonstrate the use of Amazon EC2 using the
        AWS SDK for Swift.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let ssmConfig = try await SSMClient.SSMClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ssmClient = SSMClient(config: ssmConfig)

        let ec2Config = try await EC2Client.EC2ClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let ec2Client = EC2Client(config: ec2Config)

        let example = Example(ec2Client: ec2Client, ssmClient: ssmClient)
```

```
        await example.run()
    }
}

class Example {
    let ec2Client: EC2Client
    let ssmClient: SSMClient

    // Storage for AWS EC2 properties.

    var keyName: String? = nil
    var securityGroupId: String? = nil
    var instanceId: String? = nil
    var allocationId: String? = nil
    var associationId: String? = nil

    init(ec2Client: EC2Client, ssmClient: SSMClient) {
        self.ec2Client = ec2Client
        self.ssmClient = ssmClient
    }

    /// The example's main body.
    func run() async {
        //=====================================================================
        // 1. Create an RSA key pair, saving the private key as a `.pem` file.
        //    Create a `defer` block that will delete the private key when the
        //    program exits.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating an RSA key pair...")

        keyName = self.tempName(prefix: "ExampleKeyName")
        let keyUrl = await self.createKeyPair(name: keyName!)

        guard let keyUrl else {
            print("*** Failed to create the key pair!")
            return
        }

        print("Created the private key at: \(keyUrl.absoluteString)")

        // Schedule deleting the private key file to occur automatically when
        // the program exits, no matter how it exits.
```

```
        defer {
            do {
                try FileManager.default.removeItem(at: keyUrl)
            } catch {
                print("*** Failed to delete the private key at
\(keyUrl.absoluteString)")
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. List the key pairs by calling `DescribeKeyPairs`.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Describing available key pairs...")
        await self.describeKeyPairs()

        //=====================================================================
        // 3. Create a security group for the default VPC, and add an inbound
        //    rule to allow SSH from the current computer's public IPv4
        //    address.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating the security group...")

        let secGroupName = self.tempName(prefix: "ExampleSecurityGroup")
        let ipAddress = self.getMyIPAddress()

        guard let ipAddress else {
            print("*** Unable to get the device's IP address.")
            return
        }

        print("IP address is: \(ipAddress)")

        securityGroupId = await self.createSecurityGroup(
            name: secGroupName,
            description: "An example security group created using the AWS SDK for
Swift"
        )

        if securityGroupId == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }
```

```
        print("Created security group: \(securityGroupId ?? "<unknown>")")

        if !(await self.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupId: securityGroupId!,
ipAddress: ipAddress)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 4. Display security group information for the new security group
        //    using DescribeSecurityGroups.
        //=====================================================================

        if !(await self.describeSecurityGroups(groupId: securityGroupId!)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 5. Get a list of Amazon Linux 2023 AMIs and pick one (SSM is the
        //    best practice), using path and then filter the list after the
        //    fact to include "al2023" in the Name field
        //    (ssm.GetParametersByPath). Paginate to get all images.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Searching available images for Amazon Linux 2023 images...")

        let options = await self.findAMIsMatchingFilter("al2023")

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. The information in the AMI options isn't great, so make a list
        //    of the image IDs (the "Value" field in the AMI options) and get
        //    more information about them from EC2. Display the Description
        //    field and select one of them (DescribeImages with ImageIds
        //    filter).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Images matching Amazon Linux 2023:")

        var imageIds: [String] = []
        for option in options {
            guard let id = option.value else {
                continue
```

```
            }
            imageIds.append(id)
        }

        let images = await self.describeImages(imageIds)

        // This is where you would normally let the user choose which AMI to
        // use. However, for this example, we're just going to use the first
        // one, whatever it is.

        let chosenImage = images[0]

        //=====================================================================
        // 7. Get a list of instance types that are compatible with the
        //    selected AMI's architecture (such as "x86_64") and are either
        //    small or micro. Select one (DescribeInstanceTypes).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting the instance types compatible with the selected image...")

        guard let arch = chosenImage.architecture else {
            print("*** The selected image doesn't have a valid architecture.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        let imageTypes = await self.getMatchingInstanceTypes(architecture: arch)

        for type in imageTypes {
            guard let instanceType = type.instanceType else {
                continue
            }
            print("    \(instanceType.rawValue)")
        }

        // This example selects the first returned instance type. A real-world
        // application would probably ask the user to select one here.

        let chosenInstanceType = imageTypes[0]

        //=====================================================================
        // 8. Create an instance with the key pair, security group, AMI, and
        //    instance type (RunInstances).
        //=====================================================================
```

```
        print("Creating an instance...")

        guard let imageId = chosenImage.imageId else {
            print("*** Cannot start image without a valid image ID.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }
        guard let instanceType = chosenInstanceType.instanceType else {
            print("*** Unable to start image without a valid image type.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        let instance = await self.runInstance(
            imageId: imageId,
            instanceType: instanceType,
            keyPairName: keyName!,
            securityGroups: [securityGroupId!]
        )

        guard let instance else {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        instanceId = instance.instanceId
        if instanceId == nil {
            print("*** Instance is missing an ID. Canceling.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 9. Wait for the instance to be ready and then display its
        //    information (DescribeInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Waiting a few seconds to let the instance come up...")

        do {
            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(20))
        } catch {
            print("*** Error pausing the task.")
```

```
        }
        print("Success! Your new instance is ready:")

        //=====================================================================
        // 10. Display SSH connection info for the instance.
        //=====================================================================

        var runningInstance = await self.describeInstance(instanceId: instanceId!)

        if (runningInstance != nil) && (runningInstance!.publicIpAddress != nil) {
            print("\nYou can SSH to this instance using the following command:")
            print("ssh -i \(keyUrl.path) ec2-user@
\(runningInstance!.publicIpAddress!)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 11. Stop the instance and wait for it to stop (StopInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Stopping the instance...")

        if !(await self.stopInstance(instanceId: instanceId!, waitUntilStopped:
 true)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 12. Start the instance and wait for it to start (StartInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        print("Starting the instance again...")

        if !(await self.startInstance(instanceId: instanceId!, waitUntilStarted:
 true)) {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 13. Display SSH connection info for the instance. Note that it's
        //     changed.
        //=====================================================================
```

```
        runningInstance = await self.describeInstance(instanceId: instanceId!)
        if (runningInstance != nil) && (runningInstance!.publicIpAddress != nil) {
            print("\nYou can SSH to this instance using the following command.")
            print("This is probably different from when the instance was running
 before.")
            print("ssh -i \(keyUrl.path) ec2-user@
\(runningInstance!.publicIpAddress!)")
        }

        //======================================================================
        // 14. Allocate an elastic IP and associate it with the instance
        //     (AllocateAddress and AssociateAddress).
        //======================================================================

        allocationId = await self.allocateAddress()

        if allocationId == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        associationId = await self.associateAddress(instanceId: instanceId!,
 allocationId: allocationId)

        if associationId == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //======================================================================
        // 15. Display SSH connection info for the connection. Note that the
        //     public IP is now the Elastic IP, which stays constant.
        //======================================================================

        runningInstance = await self.describeInstance(instanceId: instanceId!)
        if (runningInstance != nil) && (runningInstance!.publicIpAddress != nil) {
            print("\nYou can SSH to this instance using the following command.")
            print("This has changed again, and is now the Elastic IP.")
            print("ssh -i \(keyUrl.path) ec2-user@
\(runningInstance!.publicIpAddress!)")
        }

        //======================================================================
        // Handle all cleanup tasks
```

```
        //=====================================================================

        await cleanUp()
    }

    /// Clean up by discarding and closing down all allocated EC2 items:
    ///
    /// * Elastic IP allocation and association
    /// * Terminate the instance
    /// * Delete the security group
    /// * Delete the key pair
    func cleanUp() async {
        //=====================================================================
        // 16. Disassociate and delete the Elastic IP (DisassociateAddress and
        //     ReleaseAddress).
        //=====================================================================

        if associationId != nil {
            await self.disassociateAddress(associationId: associationId!)
        }

        if allocationId != nil {
            await self.releaseAddress(allocationId: allocationId!)
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 17. Terminate the instance and wait for it to terminate
        //     (TerminateInstances).
        //=====================================================================

        if instanceId != nil {
            print("Terminating the instance...")
            _ = await self.terminateInstance(instanceId: instanceId!,
waitUntilTerminated: true)
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 18. Delete the security group (DeleteSecurityGroup).
        //=====================================================================

        if securityGroupId != nil {
            print("Deleting the security group...")
            _ = await self.deleteSecurityGroup(groupId: securityGroupId!)
        }
```

```
        //=====================================================================
        // 19. Delete the key pair (DeleteKeyPair).
        //=====================================================================

        if keyName != nil {
            print("Deleting the key pair...")
            _ = await self.deleteKeyPair(keyPair: keyName!)
        }
    }

    /// Create a new RSA key pair and save the private key to a randomly-named
    /// file in the temporary directory.
    ///
    /// - Parameter name: The name of the key pair to create.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the newly created `.pem` file or `nil` if unable
    ///   to create the key pair.
    func createKeyPair(name: String) async -> URL? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createKeyPair(
                input: CreateKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: name
                )
            )

            guard let keyMaterial = output.keyMaterial else {
                return nil
            }

            // Build the URL of the temporary private key file.

            let fileURL = URL.temporaryDirectory
                                 .appendingPathComponent(name)
                                 .appendingPathExtension("pem")

            do {
                try keyMaterial.write(to: fileURL, atomically: true, encoding:
String.Encoding.utf8)
                return fileURL
            } catch {
                print("*** Failed to write the private key.")
                return nil
            }
```

```
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the key pair.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Describe the key pairs associated with the user by outputting each key
    /// pair's name and fingerprint.
    func describeKeyPairs() async {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeKeyPairs(
                input: DescribeKeyPairsInput()
            )

            guard let keyPairs = output.keyPairs else {
                print("*** No key pairs list available.")
                return
            }

            for keyPair in keyPairs {
                print(keyPair.keyName ?? "<unknown>", ":", keyPair.keyFingerprint ??
"<unknown>")
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: Unable to obtain a key pair list.")
        }
    }

    /// Delete an EC2 key pair.
    ///
    /// - Parameter keyPair: The name of the key pair to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the key pair is deleted successfully; otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func deleteKeyPair(keyPair: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteKeyPair(
                input: DeleteKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: keyPair
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
```

```
            print("*** Error deleting the key pair: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Return a list of AMI names that contain the specified string.
    ///
    /// - Parameter filter: A string that must be contained in all returned
    ///   AMI names.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of the parameters matching the specified substring.
    func findAMIsMatchingFilter(_ filter: String) async ->
[SSMClientTypes.Parameter] {
        var parameterList: [SSMClientTypes.Parameter] = []
        var matchingAMIs: [SSMClientTypes.Parameter] = []

        do {
            let pages = ssmClient.getParametersByPathPaginated(
                input: GetParametersByPathInput(
                    path: "/aws/service/ami-amazon-linux-latest"
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let parameters = page.parameters else {
                    return matchingAMIs
                }

                for parameter in parameters {
                    parameterList.append(parameter)
                }
            }

            print("Found \(parameterList.count) images total:")
            for parameter in parameterList {
                guard let name = parameter.name else {
                    continue
                }
                print("    \(name)")

                if name.contains(filter) {
                    matchingAMIs.append(parameter)
                }
            }
```

```
        } catch {
            return matchingAMIs
        }

        return matchingAMIs
    }

    /// Return a list of instance types matching the specified architecture
    /// and instance sizes.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - architecture: The architecture of the instance types to return, as
    ///     a member of `EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues`.
    ///   - sizes: An array of one or more strings identifying sizes of
    ///     instance type to accept.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo` records
    ///   describing the instance types matching the given requirements.
    func getMatchingInstanceTypes(architecture: EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues =
EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues.x8664,
                          sizes: [String] = ["*.micro", "*.small"]) async
                          -> [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] {
        var instanceTypes: [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] = []

        let archFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
            name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
            values: [architecture.rawValue]
        )
        let sizeFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
            name: "instance-type",
            values: sizes
        )

        do {
            let pages = ec2Client.describeInstanceTypesPaginated(
                input: DescribeInstanceTypesInput(
                    filters: [archFilter, sizeFilter]
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let types = page.instanceTypes else {
                    return []
                }
```

```
                instanceTypes += types
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image types: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return instanceTypes
    }

    /// Get the latest information about the specified instance and output it
    /// to the screen, returning the instance details to the caller.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to provide details about.
    ///   - stateFilter: The state to require the instance to be in.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The instance's details as an `EC2ClientTypes.Instance` object.
    func describeInstance(instanceId: String,
                          stateFilter: EC2ClientTypes.InstanceStateName? =
EC2ClientTypes.InstanceStateName.running) async
                          -> EC2ClientTypes.Instance? {
        do {
            let pages = ec2Client.describeInstancesPaginated(
                input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: [instanceId]
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let reservations = page.reservations else {
                    continue
                }

                for reservation in reservations {
                    guard let instances = reservation.instances else {
                        continue
                    }

                    for instance in instances {
                        guard let state = instance.state else {
                            print("*** Instance is missing its state...")
                            continue
```

```
                        }
                        let instanceState = state.name

                        if stateFilter != nil && (instanceState != stateFilter) {
                            continue
                        }

                        let instanceTypeName: String
                        if instance.instanceType == nil {
                            instanceTypeName = "<N/A>"
                        } else {
                            instanceTypeName = instance.instanceType?.rawValue ??
"<N/A>"
                        }

                        let instanceStateName: String
                        if instanceState == nil {
                            instanceStateName = "<N/A>"
                        } else {
                            instanceStateName = instanceState?.rawValue ?? "<N/A>"
                        }

                        print("""
                        Instance: \(instance.instanceId ?? "<N/A>")
                                • Image ID: \(instance.imageId ?? "<N/A>")
                                • Instance type: \(instanceTypeName)
                                • Key name: \(instance.keyName ?? "<N/A>")
                                • VPC ID: \(instance.vpcId ?? "<N/A>")
                                • Public IP: \(instance.publicIpAddress ?? "N/A")
                                • State: \(instanceStateName)
                        """)

                        return instance
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error retrieving instance information to display:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }

        return nil
    }
```

```
    /// Stop the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to stop.
    ///   - waitUntilStopped: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has stopped. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance stops
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully stopped (or is left to
    ///   stop asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't stop.
    func stopInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStopped: Bool = false) async ->
Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.stopInstances(
                input: StopInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStopped {
                print("Waiting for the instance to stop. Please be patient!")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceStopped(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )

                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to stop the instance: \(error.localizedDescription)")
```

```
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Start the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to start.
    ///   - waitUntilStarted: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has started. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance starts
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully started (or is left to
    ///   start asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't start.
    func startInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStarted: Bool = false) async ->
Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.startInstances(
                input: StartInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStarted {
                print("Waiting for the instance to start...")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 60.0)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceRunning(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
```

```
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to start the instance: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Terminate the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to terminate.
    ///   - waitUntilTerminated: Whether or not to wait until the instance is
    ///     terminated before returning.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if terminated successfully. `false` if not or if an
    ///   error occurs.
    func terminateInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilTerminated: Bool = false)
 async -> Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.terminateInstances(
                input: TerminateInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilTerminated {
                print("Waiting for the instance to terminate...")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600.0)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceTerminated(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )

                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
```

```
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to terminate the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Return an array of `EC2ClientTypes.Image` objects describing all of
    /// the images in the specified array.
    ///
    /// - Parameter idList: A list of image ID strings indicating the images
    ///   to return details about.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of the images.
    func describeImages(_ idList: [String]) async -> [EC2ClientTypes.Image] {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeImages(
                input: DescribeImagesInput(
                    imageIds: idList
                )
            )

            guard let images = output.images else {
                print("*** No images found.")
                return []
            }

            for image in images {
                guard let id = image.imageId else {
                    continue
                }
                print("   \(id): \(image.description ?? "<no description>")")
            }

            return images
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image descriptions:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Create and return a new EC2 instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - imageId: The image ID of the AMI to use when creating the instance.
    ///   - instanceType: The type of instance to create.
    ///   - keyPairName: The RSA key pair's name to use to secure the instance.
    ///   - securityGroups: The security group or groups to add the instance
    ///     to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The EC2 instance as an `EC2ClientTypes.Instance` object.
    func runInstance(imageId: String, instanceType: EC2ClientTypes.InstanceType,
                     keyPairName: String, securityGroups: [String]?) async ->
EC2ClientTypes.Instance? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.runInstances(
                input: RunInstancesInput(
                    imageId: imageId,
                    instanceType: instanceType,
                    keyName: keyPairName,
                    maxCount: 1,
                    minCount: 1,
                    securityGroupIds: securityGroups
                )
            )

            guard let instances = output.instances else {
                print("*** Unable to create the instance.")
                return nil
            }

            return instances[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the instance: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Return the device's external IP address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the device's IP address.
    func getMyIPAddress() -> String? {
        guard let url = URL(string: "http://checkip.amazonaws.com") else {
            print("Couldn't create the URL")
            return nil
```

```
        }

        do {
            print("Getting the IP address...")
            return try String(contentsOf: url, encoding:
String.Encoding.utf8).trim()
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to get your public IP address.")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Create a new security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the group to create.
    ///   - groupDescription: A description of the new security group.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ID string of the new security group.
    func createSecurityGroup(name groupName: String, description groupDescription:
String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createSecurityGroup(
                input: CreateSecurityGroupInput(
                    description: groupDescription,
                    groupName: groupName
                )
            )

            return output.groupId
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Authorize ingress of connections for the security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupId: The group ID of the security group to authorize access for.
    ///   - ipAddress: The IP address of the device to grant access to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if access is successfully granted; otherwise `false`.
```

```
    func authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupId: String, ipAddress: String) async ->
Bool {
        let ipRange = EC2ClientTypes.IpRange(cidrIp: "\(ipAddress)/0")
        let httpPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 80,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 80
        )

        let sshPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 22,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 22
        )

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(
                input: AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressInput(
                    groupId: groupId,
                    ipPermissions: [httpPermission, sshPermission]
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error authorizing ingress for the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    func describeSecurityGroups(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeSecurityGroups(
                input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput(
                    groupIds: [groupId]
                )
            )

            guard let securityGroups = output.securityGroups else {
                print("No security groups found.")
                return true
```

```
            }

            for group in securityGroups {
                print("Group \(group.groupId ?? "<unknown>") found with VPC
\(group.vpcId ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting security group details:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Delete a security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupId: The ID of the security group to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` on successful deletion; `false` on error.
    func deleteSecurityGroup(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteSecurityGroup(
                input: DeleteSecurityGroupInput(
                    groupId: groupId
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }

    /// Allocate an Elastic IP address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the Elastic IP.
    func allocateAddress() async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.allocateAddress(
                input: AllocateAddressInput(
                    domain: EC2ClientTypes.DomainType.vpc
                )
```

```
            )

            guard let allocationId = output.allocationId else {
                return nil
            }

            return allocationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to allocate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Associate the specified allocated Elastic IP to a given instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to associate the Elastic IP with.
    ///   - allocationId: The ID of the allocated Elastic IP to associate with
    ///     the instance.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The association ID of the association.
    func associateAddress(instanceId: String?, allocationId: String?) async ->
String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.associateAddress(
                input: AssociateAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId,
                    instanceId: instanceId
                )
            )

            return output.associationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to associate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter associationId: The ID of the association to end.
    func disassociateAddress(associationId: String?) async {
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.disassociateAddress(
                input: DisassociateAddressInput(
                    associationId: associationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to disassociate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Release an allocated Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter allocationId: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to
    ///   release.
    func releaseAddress(allocationId: String?) async {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.releaseAddress(
                input: ReleaseAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to release the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Generate and return a unique file name that begins with the specified
    /// string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prefix: Text to use at the beginning of the returned name.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing a unique filename that begins with the
    ///   specified `prefix`.
    ///
    /// The returned name uses a random number between 1 million and 1 billion to
    /// provide reasonable certainty of uniqueness for the purposes of this
    /// example.
    func tempName(prefix: String) -> String {
        return "\(prefix)-\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))"
    }
```

```
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - AllocateAddress
  - AssociateAddress
  - AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress
  - CreateKeyPair
  - CreateSecurityGroup
  - DeleteKeyPair
  - DeleteSecurityGroup
  - DescribeImages
  - DescribeInstanceTypes
  - DescribeInstances
  - DescribeKeyPairs
  - DescribeSecurityGroups
  - DisassociateAddress
  - ReleaseAddress
  - RunInstances
  - StartInstances
  - StopInstances

- TerminateInstances
- UnmonitorInstances

Actions

`AllocateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AllocateAddress`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Allocate an Elastic IP address.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing the ID of the Elastic IP.
    func allocateAddress() async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.allocateAddress(
                input: AllocateAddressInput(
                    domain: EC2ClientTypes.DomainType.vpc
                )
            )

            guard let allocationId = output.allocationId else {
                return nil
            }

            return allocationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to allocate the IP address:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AllocateAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`AssociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `AssociateAddress`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Associate the specified allocated Elastic IP to a given instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to associate the Elastic IP with.
    ///   - allocationId: The ID of the allocated Elastic IP to associate with
    ///     the instance.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The association ID of the association.
    func associateAddress(instanceId: String?, allocationId: String?) async ->
 String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.associateAddress(
                input: AssociateAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId,
                    instanceId: instanceId
                )
            )

            return output.associationId
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to associate the IP address:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`

The following code example shows how to use `AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Authorize ingress of connections for the security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupId: The group ID of the security group to authorize access for.
    ///   - ipAddress: The IP address of the device to grant access to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if access is successfully granted; otherwise `false`.
    func authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(groupId: String, ipAddress: String) async ->
 Bool {
        let ipRange = EC2ClientTypes.IpRange(cidrIp: "\(ipAddress)/0")
        let httpPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 80,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
            toPort: 80
        )

        let sshPermission = EC2ClientTypes.IpPermission(
            fromPort: 22,
            ipProtocol: "tcp",
            ipRanges: [ipRange],
```

```
            toPort: 22
        )

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.authorizeSecurityGroupIngress(
                input: AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngressInput(
                    groupId: groupId,
                    ipPermissions: [httpPermission, sshPermission]
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error authorizing ingress for the security group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateKeyPair`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Create a new RSA key pair and save the private key to a randomly-named
    /// file in the temporary directory.
    ///
    /// - Parameter name: The name of the key pair to create.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: The URL of the newly created `.pem` file or `nil` if unable
    ///   to create the key pair.
    func createKeyPair(name: String) async -> URL? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createKeyPair(
                input: CreateKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: name
                )
            )

            guard let keyMaterial = output.keyMaterial else {
                return nil
            }

            // Build the URL of the temporary private key file.

            let fileURL = URL.temporaryDirectory
                                 .appendingPathComponent(name)
                                 .appendingPathExtension("pem")

            do {
                try keyMaterial.write(to: fileURL, atomically: true, encoding:
String.Encoding.utf8)
                return fileURL
            } catch {
                print("*** Failed to write the private key.")
                return nil
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the key pair.")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Create a new security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the group to create.
    ///   - groupDescription: A description of the new security group.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ID string of the new security group.
    func createSecurityGroup(name groupName: String, description groupDescription:
 String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.createSecurityGroup(
                input: CreateSecurityGroupInput(
                    description: groupDescription,
                    groupName: groupName
                )
            )

            return output.groupId
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the security group:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteKeyPair`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteKeyPair`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Delete an EC2 key pair.
    ///
    /// - Parameter keyPair: The name of the key pair to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the key pair is deleted successfully; otherwise
    ///   `false`.
    func deleteKeyPair(keyPair: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteKeyPair(
                input: DeleteKeyPairInput(
                    keyName: keyPair
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the key pair: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteKeyPair in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteSecurityGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteSecurityGroup`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Delete a security group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupId: The ID of the security group to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` on successful deletion; `false` on error.
    func deleteSecurityGroup(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.deleteSecurityGroup(
                input: DeleteSecurityGroupInput(
                    groupId: groupId
                )
            )

            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the security group:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteSecurityGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeImages`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeImages`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Return an array of `EC2ClientTypes.Image` objects describing all of
    /// the images in the specified array.
    ///
    /// - Parameter idList: A list of image ID strings indicating the images
    ///   to return details about.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of the images.
    func describeImages(_ idList: [String]) async -> [EC2ClientTypes.Image] {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeImages(
                input: DescribeImagesInput(
                    imageIds: idList
                )
            )

            guard let images = output.images else {
                print("*** No images found.")
                return []
            }

            for image in images {
                guard let id = image.imageId else {
                    continue
                }
                print("   \(id): \(image.description ?? "<no description>")")
            }

            return images
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image descriptions:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeImages in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeInstanceTypes`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeInstanceTypes`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Return a list of instance types matching the specified architecture
    /// and instance sizes.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - architecture: The architecture of the instance types to return, as
    ///     a member of `EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues`.
    ///   - sizes: An array of one or more strings identifying sizes of
    ///     instance type to accept.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo` records
    ///   describing the instance types matching the given requirements.
    func getMatchingInstanceTypes(architecture: EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues =
 EC2ClientTypes.ArchitectureValues.x8664,
                          sizes: [String] = ["*.micro", "*.small"]) async
                          -> [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] {
        var instanceTypes: [EC2ClientTypes.InstanceTypeInfo] = []

        let archFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
            name: "processor-info.supported-architecture",
            values: [architecture.rawValue]
        )
        let sizeFilter = EC2ClientTypes.Filter(
```

```
            name: "instance-type",
            values: sizes
        )

        do {
            let pages = ec2Client.describeInstanceTypesPaginated(
                input: DescribeInstanceTypesInput(
                    filters: [archFilter, sizeFilter]
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let types = page.instanceTypes else {
                    return []
                }

                instanceTypes += types
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting image types: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return instanceTypes
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeInstanceTypes in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeKeyPairs`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeKeyPairs`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2
```

```
    /// Describe the key pairs associated with the user by outputting each key
    /// pair's name and fingerprint.
    func describeKeyPairs() async {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeKeyPairs(
                input: DescribeKeyPairsInput()
            )

            guard let keyPairs = output.keyPairs else {
                print("*** No key pairs list available.")
                return
            }

            for keyPair in keyPairs {
                print(keyPair.keyName ?? "<unknown>", ":", keyPair.keyFingerprint ??
 "<unknown>")
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: Unable to obtain a key pair list.")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeKeyPairs in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeSecurityGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeSecurityGroups`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Using pagination with `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.

```
import AWSEC2
```

```
    /// Return an array of strings giving the names of every security group
    /// the user is a member of.
    ///
    /// - Parameter ec2Client: The `EC2Client` to use when calling
    ///   `describeSecurityGroupsPaginated()`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of strings giving the names of every security
    ///   group the user is a member of.
    func getSecurityGroupNames(ec2Client: EC2Client) async -> [String] {
        let pages = ec2Client.describeSecurityGroupsPaginated(
            input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput()
        )

        var groupNames: [String] = []

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.securityGroups else {
                    print("*** Error: No groups returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for group in groups {
                    groupNames.append(group.groupName ?? "<unknown>")
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error: \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }

        return groupNames
    }
```

Without pagination.

```
import AWSEC2

    func describeSecurityGroups(groupId: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.describeSecurityGroups(
                input: DescribeSecurityGroupsInput(
                    groupIds: [groupId]
```

```
                )
            )

            guard let securityGroups = output.securityGroups else {
                print("No security groups found.")
                return true
            }

            for group in securityGroups {
                print("Group \(group.groupId ?? "<unknown>") found with VPC
\(group.vpcId ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
            return true
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting security group details:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeSecurityGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DisassociateAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `DisassociateAddress`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Disassociate an Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter associationId: The ID of the association to end.
    func disassociateAddress(associationId: String?) async {
        do {
```

```
            _ = try await ec2Client.disassociateAddress(
                input: DisassociateAddressInput(
                    associationId: associationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to disassociate the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DisassociateAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ReleaseAddress`

The following code example shows how to use `ReleaseAddress`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Release an allocated Elastic IP.
    ///
    /// - Parameter allocationId: The allocation ID of the Elastic IP to
    ///   release.
    func releaseAddress(allocationId: String?) async {
        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.releaseAddress(
                input: ReleaseAddressInput(
                    allocationId: allocationId
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to release the IP address:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ReleaseAddress in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`RunInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `RunInstances`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Create and return a new EC2 instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - imageId: The image ID of the AMI to use when creating the instance.
    ///   - instanceType: The type of instance to create.
    ///   - keyPairName: The RSA key pair's name to use to secure the instance.
    ///   - securityGroups: The security group or groups to add the instance
    ///     to.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The EC2 instance as an `EC2ClientTypes.Instance` object.
    func runInstance(imageId: String, instanceType: EC2ClientTypes.InstanceType,
                         keyPairName: String, securityGroups: [String]?) async ->
 EC2ClientTypes.Instance? {
        do {
            let output = try await ec2Client.runInstances(
                input: RunInstancesInput(
                    imageId: imageId,
                    instanceType: instanceType,
                    keyName: keyPairName,
                    maxCount: 1,
                    minCount: 1,
                    securityGroupIds: securityGroups
```

```
                )
            )

            guard let instances = output.instances else {
                print("*** Unable to create the instance.")
                return nil
            }

            return instances[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the instance: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see RunInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`StartInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StartInstances`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Start the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to start.
    ///   - waitUntilStarted: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has started. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance starts
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully started (or is left to
```

```
    ///   start asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't start.
    func startInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStarted: Bool = false) async ->
Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.startInstances(
                input: StartInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStarted {
                print("Waiting for the instance to start...")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 60.0)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceRunning(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to start the instance: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`StopInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `StopInstances`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Stop the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The ID of the instance to stop.
    ///   - waitUntilStopped: If `true`, execution waits until the instance
    ///     has stopped. Otherwise, execution continues and the instance stops
    ///     asynchronously.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the image is successfully stopped (or is left to
    ///   stop asynchronously). `false` if the instance doesn't stop.
    func stopInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilStopped: Bool = false) async ->
 Bool {
        let instanceList = [instanceId]

        do {
            _ = try await ec2Client.stopInstances(
                input: StopInstancesInput(
                    instanceIds: instanceList
                )
            )

            if waitUntilStopped {
                print("Waiting for the instance to stop. Please be patient!")

                let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600)
                let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceStopped(
                    options: waitOptions,
                    input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                        instanceIds: instanceList
                    )
                )
```

```
                switch output.result {
                case .success:
                    return true
                case .failure:
                    return false
                }
            } else {
                return true
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to stop the instance: \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StopInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`TerminateInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `TerminateInstances`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSEC2

    /// Terminate the specified instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceId: The instance to terminate.
    ///   - waitUntilTerminated: Whether or not to wait until the instance is
    ///     terminated before returning.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if terminated successfully. `false` if not or if an
    ///   error occurs.
```

```
   func terminateInstance(instanceId: String, waitUntilTerminated: Bool = false)
async -> Bool {
       let instanceList = [instanceId]

       do {
           _ = try await ec2Client.terminateInstances(
               input: TerminateInstancesInput(
                   instanceIds: instanceList
               )
           )

           if waitUntilTerminated {
               print("Waiting for the instance to terminate...")

               let waitOptions = WaiterOptions(maxWaitTime: 600.0)
               let output = try await ec2Client.waitUntilInstanceTerminated(
                   options: waitOptions,
                   input: DescribeInstancesInput(
                       instanceIds: instanceList
                   )
               )

               switch output.result {
               case .success:
                   return true
               case .failure:
                   return false
               }
           } else {
               return true
           }
       } catch {
           print("*** Unable to terminate the instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
           return false
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see TerminateInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

AWS Glue examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with AWS Glue.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a crawler that crawls a public Amazon S3 bucket and generates a database of CSV-formatted metadata.
- List information about databases and tables in your AWS Glue Data Catalog.
- Create a job to extract CSV data from the S3 bucket, transform the data, and load JSON-formatted output into another S3 bucket.
- List information about job runs, view transformed data, and clean up resources.

For more information, see Tutorial: Getting started with AWS Glue Studio.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "glue-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "glue-scenario",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSGlue", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "AWSS3", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift code file, `entry.swift`.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to demonstrate
// creating and using crawlers and jobs using AWS Glue.
//
// 0. Upload the Python job script to Amazon S3 so it can be used when
//    calling `startJobRun()` later.
// 1. Create a crawler, pass it the IAM role and the URL of the public Amazon
//    S3 bucket that contains the source data:
//    s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv.
// 2. Start the crawler. This takes time, so after starting it, use a loop
//    that calls `getCrawler()` until the state is "READY".
// 3. Get the database created by the crawler, and the tables in the
//    database. Display them to the user.
// 4. Create a job. Pass it the IAM role and the URL to a Python ETL script
//    previously uploaded to the user's S3 bucket.
// 5. Start a job run, passing the following custom arguments. These are
//    expected by the ETL script, so must exactly match.
//    * `--input_database: <name of the database created by the crawler>`
//    * `--input_table: <name of the table created by the crawler>`
//    * `--output_bucket_url: <URL to the scaffold bucket created for the
//      user>`
// 6. Loop and get the job run until it returns one of the following states:
//    "SUCCEEDED", "STOPPED", "FAILED", or "TIMEOUT".
// 7. Output data is stored in a group of files in the user's S3 bucket.
//    Either direct the user to their location or download a file and display
//    the results inline.
// 8. List the jobs for the user's account.
// 9. Get job run details for a job run.
// 10. Delete the demo job.
// 11. Delete the database and tables created by the example.
// 12. Delete the crawler created by the example.

import ArgumentParser
import AWSS3
import Foundation
import Smithy

import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS IAM role to use for AWS Glue calls.")
    var role: String
```

```
    @Option(help: "The Amazon S3 bucket to use for this example.")
    var bucket: String

    @Option(help: "The Amazon S3 URL of the data to crawl.")
    var s3url: String = "s3://crawler-public-us-east-1/flight/2016/csv"

    @Option(help: "The Python script to run as a job with AWS Glue.")
    var script: String = "./flight_etl_job_script.py"

    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"

    @Option(help: "A prefix string to use when naming tables.")
    var tablePrefix = "swift-glue-basics-table"

    @Option(
        help: ArgumentHelp("The level of logging for the Swift SDK to perform."),
        completion: .list([
            "critical",
            "debug",
            "error",
            "info",
            "notice",
            "trace",
            "warning"
        ])
    )
    var logLevel: String = "error"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "glue-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Demonstrates various features of AWS Glue.
        """,
        discussion: """
        An example showing how to use AWS Glue to create, run, and monitor
        crawlers and jobs.
        """
    )

    /// Generate and return a unique file name that begins with the specified
    /// string.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prefix: Text to use at the beginning of the returned name.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing a unique filename that begins with the
    ///   specified `prefix`.
    ///
    /// The returned name uses a random number between 1 million and 1 billion to
    /// provide reasonable certainty of uniqueness for the purposes of this
    /// example.
    func tempName(prefix: String) -> String {
        return "\(prefix)-\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))"
    }

    /// Upload a file to an Amazon S3 bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - s3Client: The S3 client to use when uploading the file.
    ///   - path: The local path of the source file to upload.
    ///   - toBucket: The name of the S3 bucket into which to upload the file.
    ///   - key: The key (name) to give the file in the S3 bucket.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the file is uploaded successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func uploadFile(s3Client: S3Client, path: String, toBucket: String, key: String)
 async -> Bool {
        do {
            let fileData: Data = try Data(contentsOf: URL(fileURLWithPath: path))
            let dataStream = ByteStream.data(fileData)
            _ = try await s3Client.putObject(
                input: PutObjectInput(
                    body: dataStream,
                    bucket: toBucket,
                    key: key
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred uploading the script to the
 Amazon S3 bucket \"\(bucket)\".")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Create a new AWS Glue crawler.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: An AWS Glue client to use for the crawler.
    ///   - crawlerName: A name for the new crawler.
    ///   - iamRole: The name of an Amazon IAM role for the crawler to use.
    ///   - s3Path: The path of an Amazon S3 folder to use as a target location.
    ///   - cronSchedule: A `cron` schedule indicating when to run the crawler.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of an AWS Glue database to operate on.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is created successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func createCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, crawlerName: String, iamRole: String,
                       s3Path: String, cronSchedule: String, databaseName: String)
async -> Bool {
        let s3Target = GlueClientTypes.S3Target(path: s3url)
        let targetList = GlueClientTypes.CrawlerTargets(s3Targets: [s3Target])

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createCrawler(
                input: CreateCrawlerInput(
                    databaseName: databaseName,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Scenario Example
for AWS Glue.",
                    name: crawlerName,
                    role: iamRole,
                    schedule: cronSchedule,
                    tablePrefix: tablePrefix,
                    targets: targetList
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AlreadyExistsException {
            print("*** A crawler named \"\(crawlerName)\" already exists.")
            return false
        } catch _ as OperationTimeoutException {
            print("*** The attempt to create the AWS Glue crawler timed out.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred creating the AWS Glue crawler:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

```
    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteCrawler(
                input: DeleteCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Start running an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use when starting the crawler.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to start running.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is started successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func startCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.startCrawler(
                input: StartCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred starting the crawler.")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Get the state of the specified AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler whose state should be returned.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState` value describing the
    ///   state of the crawler.
    func getCrawlerState(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getCrawler(
                input: GetCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )

            // If the crawler or its state is `nil`, report that the crawler
            // is stopping. This may not be what you want for your
            // application but it works for this one!

            guard let crawler = output.crawler else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            guard let state = crawler.state else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            return state
        } catch {
            return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
        }
    }

    /// Wait until the specified crawler is ready to run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to wait for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is ready, `false` if the client is
    ///   stopping (and will therefore never be ready).
    func waitUntilCrawlerReady(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        while true {
            let state = await getCrawlerState(glueClient: glueClient, name: name)

            if state == .ready {
                return true
            } else if state == .stopping {
                return false
            }

            // Wait four seconds before trying again.
```

```
            do {
                try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(4))
            } catch {
                print("*** Error pausing the task.")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Create a new AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name to give the new job.
    ///   - role: The IAM role for the job to use when accessing AWS services.
    ///   - scriptLocation: The AWS S3 URI of the script to be run by the job.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is created successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func createJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, role: String,
                   scriptLocation: String) async -> Bool {
        let command = GlueClientTypes.JobCommand(
            name: "glueetl",
            pythonVersion: "3",
            scriptLocation: scriptLocation
        )

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createJob(
                input: CreateJobInput(
                    command: command,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Glue basic
scenario example.",
                    glueVersion: "3.0",
                    name: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    role: role,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

```
/// Return a list of the AWS Glue jobs listed on the user's account.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
///   - maxJobs: The maximum number of jobs to return (default: 100).
///
/// - Returns: An array of strings listing the names of all available AWS
///   Glue jobs.
func listJobs(glueClient: GlueClient, maxJobs: Int = 100) async -> [String] {
    var jobList: [String] = []
    var nextToken: String?

    repeat {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.listJobs(
                input: ListJobsInput(
                    maxResults: maxJobs,
                    nextToken: nextToken
                )
            )

            guard let jobs = output.jobNames else {
                return jobList
            }

            jobList = jobList + jobs
            nextToken = output.nextToken
        } catch {
            return jobList
        }
    } while (nextToken != nil)

    return jobList
}

/// Delete an AWS Glue job.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
///   - jobName: The name of the job to delete.
///
/// - Returns: `true` if the job is successfully deleted, otherwise `false`.
func deleteJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String) async -> Bool {
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteJob(
                input: DeleteJobInput(jobName: jobName)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Create an AWS Glue database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name to give the new database.
    ///   - location: The URL of the source data to use with AWS Glue.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the database is created successfully, otherwise
`false`.
    func createDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name databaseName: String, location:
String) async -> Bool {
        let databaseInput = GlueClientTypes.DatabaseInput(
            description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Glue basic scenario
example.",
            locationUri: location,
            name: databaseName
        )

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createDatabase(
                input: CreateDatabaseInput(
                    databaseInput: databaseInput
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Get the AWS Glue database with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
```

```
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the database to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `GlueClientTypes.Database` object describing the
    ///   specified database, or `nil` if an error occurs or the database
    ///   isn't found.
    func getDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
GlueClientTypes.Database? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getDatabase(
                input: GetDatabaseInput(name: name)
            )

            return output.database
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Returns a list of the tables in the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database whose tables are to be
    ///     returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.Table` objects, each
    ///   describing one table in the named database. An empty array indicates
    ///   that there are either no tables in the database, or an error
    ///   occurred before any tables could be found.
    func getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, databaseName: String) async ->
[GlueClientTypes.Table] {
        var tables: [GlueClientTypes.Table] = []
        var nextToken: String?

        repeat {
            do {
                let output = try await glueClient.getTables(
                    input: GetTablesInput(
                        databaseName: databaseName,
                        nextToken: nextToken
                    )
                )
```

```
                guard let tableList = output.tableList else {
                    return tables
                }

                tables = tables + tableList
                nextToken = output.nextToken
            } catch {
                return tables
            }
        } while nextToken != nil

        return tables
    }

    /// Delete the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database to delete.
    ///   - deleteTables: A Bool indicating whether or not to delete the
    ///     tables in the database before attempting to delete the database.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the database (and optionally its tables) are
    ///   deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name databaseName: String,
                        withTables deleteTables: Bool = false) async -> Bool {
        if deleteTables {
            var tableNames: [String] = []

            // Get a list of the names of all of the tables in the database.

            let tableList = await self.getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: glueClient,
databaseName: databaseName)
            for table in tableList {
                guard let name = table.name else {
                    continue
                }
                tableNames.append(name)
            }

            // Delete the tables. If there's only one table, use
            // `deleteTable()`, otherwise, use `batchDeleteTable()`. You can
            // use `batchDeleteTable()` for a single table, but this
            // demonstrates the use of `deleteTable()`.
```

```
            if tableNames.count == 1 {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting table...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.deleteTable(
                        input: DeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            name: tableNames[0]
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the table.")
                }
            } else {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting tables...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.batchDeleteTable(
                        input: BatchDeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            tablesToDelete: tableNames
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the tables.")
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the database itself.

        do {
            print("    Deleting the database itself...")
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteDatabase(
                input: DeleteDatabaseInput(name: databaseName)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to delete the database.")
            return false
        }
        return true
    }

    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to run.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the AWS Glue database to run the job against.
    ///   - tableName: The name of the table in the database to run the job against.
    ///   - outputURL: The AWS S3 URI of the bucket location into which to
    ///     write the resulting output.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job run is started successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func startJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, databaseName:
String,
                     tableName: String, outputURL: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.startJobRun(
                input: StartJobRunInput(
                    arguments: [
                        "--input_database": databaseName,
                        "--input_table": tableName,
                        "--output_bucket_url": outputURL
                    ],
                    jobName: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )

            guard let id = output.jobRunId else {
                return nil
            }

            return id
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Return a list of the job runs for the specified job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job for which to return its job runs.
    ///   - maxResults: The maximum number of job runs to return (default:
    ///     1000).
    ///
```

```
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` objects describing
    ///   each job run.
    func getJobRuns(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, maxResults: Int? =
 nil) async -> [GlueClientTypes.JobRun] {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRuns(
                input: GetJobRunsInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    maxResults: maxResults
                )
            )

            guard let jobRuns = output.jobRuns else {
                print("*** No job runs found.")
                return []
            }

            return jobRuns
        } catch is EntityNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified job name, \(jobName), doesn't exist.")
            return []
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error getting job runs:")
            dump(error)
            return []
        }
    }

    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to return job run data for.
    ///   - id: The run ID of the specific job run to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` object describing the state of
    ///   the job run, or `nil` if an error occurs.
    func getJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, id: String) async -
> GlueClientTypes.JobRun? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRun(
                input: GetJobRunInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    runId: id
```

```
                )
            )

            return output.jobRun
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        // A name to give the Python script upon upload to the Amazon S3
        // bucket.
        let scriptName = "jobscript.py"

        // Schedule string in `cron` format, as described here:
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/glue/latest/dg/monitor-data-warehouse-
schedule.html
        let cron = "cron(15 12 * * ? *)"

        let glueConfig = try await GlueClient.GlueClientConfiguration(region:
 awsRegion)
        let glueClient = GlueClient(config: glueConfig)

        let s3Config = try await S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration(region: awsRegion)
        let s3Client = S3Client(config: s3Config)

        // Create random names for things that need them.

        let crawlerName = tempName(prefix: "swift-glue-basics-crawler")
        let databaseName = tempName(prefix: "swift-glue-basics-db")

        // Create a name for the AWS Glue job.

        let jobName = tempName(prefix: "scenario-job")

        // The URL of the Python script on S3.

        let scriptURL = "s3://\(bucket)/\(scriptName)"

        print("Welcome to the AWS SDK for Swift basic scenario for AWS Glue!")

        //======================================================================
        // 0. Upload the Python script to the target bucket so it's available
```

```
        //    for use by the Amazon Glue service.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Uploading the Python script: \(script) as key \(scriptName)")
        print("Destination bucket: \(bucket)")
        if !(await uploadFile(s3Client: s3Client, path: script, toBucket: bucket,
key: scriptName)) {
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 1. Create the database and crawler using the randomized names
        //    generated previously.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating database \"\(databaseName)\"...")
        if !(await createDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
location: s3url)) {
            print("*** Unable to create the database.")
            return
        }

        print("Creating crawler \"\(crawlerName)\"...")
        if !(await createCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, crawlerName: crawlerName,
                                 iamRole: role, s3Path: s3url, cronSchedule: cron,
                                 databaseName: databaseName)) {
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. Start the crawler, then wait for it to be ready.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Starting the crawler and waiting until it's ready...")
        if !(await startCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)) {
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        if !(await waitUntilCrawlerReady(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName))
{
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
        }
```

```
        //=====================================================================
        // 3. Get the database and table created by the crawler.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting the crawler's database...")
        let database = await getDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName)

        guard let database else {
            print("*** Unable to get the database.")
            return
        }
        print("Database URI: \(database.locationUri ?? "<unknown>")")

        let tableList = await getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: glueClient,
databaseName: databaseName)

        print("Found \(tableList.count) table(s):")
        for table in tableList {
            print("  \(table.name ?? "<unnamed>")")
        }

        if tableList.count != 1 {
            print("*** Incorrect number of tables found. There should only be one.")
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        guard let tableName = tableList[0].name else {
            print("*** Table is unnamed.")
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 4. Create a job.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating a job...")
        if !(await createJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName, role: role,
                             scriptLocation: scriptURL)) {
```

```
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 5. Start a job run.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Starting the job...")

        // Construct the Amazon S3 URL for the job run's output. This is in
        // the bucket specified on the command line, with a folder name that's
        // unique for this job run.

        let timeStamp = Date().timeIntervalSince1970
        let jobPath = "\(jobName)-\(Int(timeStamp))"
        let outputURL = "s3://\(bucket)/\(jobPath)"

        // Start the job run.

        let jobRunID = await startJobRun(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName,
                                         databaseName: databaseName,
                                         tableName: tableName,
                                         outputURL: outputURL)

        guard let jobRunID else {
            print("*** Job run ID is invalid.")
            _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 6. Wait for the job run to indicate that the run is complete.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Waiting for job run to end...")

        var jobRunFinished = false
        var jobRunState: GlueClientTypes.JobRunState
```

```
        repeat {
            let jobRun = await getJobRun(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName, id:
jobRunID)
            guard let jobRun else {
                print("*** Unable to get the job run.")
                _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)
                _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
withTables: true)
                _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
                return
            }
            jobRunState = jobRun.jobRunState ?? .failed

            //=====================================================================
            // 7. Output where to find the data if the job run was successful.
            //    If the job run failed for any reason, output an appropriate
            //    error message.
            //=====================================================================

            switch jobRunState {
                case .succeeded:
                    print("Job run succeeded. JSON files are in the Amazon S3
path:")
                    print("    \(outputURL)")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .stopped:
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .error:
                    print("*** Error: Job run ended in an error.
\(jobRun.errorMessage ?? "")")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .failed:
                    print("*** Error: Job run failed. \(jobRun.errorMessage ?? "")")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                case .timeout:
                    print("*** Warning: Job run timed out.")
                    jobRunFinished = true
                default:
                    do {
                        try await Task.sleep(for: .milliseconds(250))
                    } catch {
                        print("*** Error pausing the task.")
                    }
```

```
            }
        } while jobRunFinished != true

        //=====================================================================
        // 7.5. List the job runs for this job, showing each job run's ID and
        // its execution time.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting all job runs for the job \(jobName):")
        let jobRuns = await getJobRuns(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)

        if jobRuns.count == 0 {
            print("    <no job runs found>")
        } else {
            print("Found \(jobRuns.count) job runs... listing execution times:")
            for jobRun in jobRuns {
                print("    \(jobRun.id ?? "<unnamed>"): \(jobRun.executionTime)
seconds")
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 8. List the jobs for the user's account.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nThe account has the following jobs:")
        let jobs = await listJobs(glueClient: glueClient)

        if jobs.count == 0 {
            print("    <no jobs found>")
        } else {
            for job in jobs {
                print("    \(job)")
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 9. Get the job run details for a job run.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Information about the job run:")
        let jobRun = await getJobRun(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName, id:
jobRunID)
```

```
        guard let jobRun else {
            print("*** Unable to retrieve the job run.")
            _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)
            _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
 withTables: true)
            _ = await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)
            return
        }

        let startDate = jobRun.startedOn ?? Date(timeIntervalSince1970: 0)
        let endDate = jobRun.completedOn ?? Date(timeIntervalSince1970: 0)
        let dateFormatter: DateFormatter = DateFormatter()
        dateFormatter.dateStyle = .long
        dateFormatter.timeStyle = .long

        print("    Started at: \(dateFormatter.string(from: startDate))")
        print("  Completed at: \(dateFormatter.string(from: endDate))")

        //=====================================================================
        // 10. Delete the job.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nDeleting the job...")
        _ = await deleteJob(glueClient: glueClient, name: jobName)

        //=====================================================================
        // 11. Delete the database and tables created by this example.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Deleting the database...")
        _ = await deleteDatabase(glueClient: glueClient, name: databaseName,
 withTables: true)

        //=====================================================================
        // 12. Delete the crawler.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Deleting the crawler...")
        if !(await deleteCrawler(glueClient: glueClient, name: crawlerName)) {
            return
        }
    }
}
```

```
/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateCrawler
  - CreateJob
  - DeleteCrawler
  - DeleteDatabase
  - DeleteJob
  - DeleteTable
  - GetCrawler
  - GetDatabase
  - GetDatabases
  - GetJob
  - GetJobRun
  - GetJobRuns
  - GetTables
  - ListJobs
  - StartCrawler
  - StartJobRun

Actions

`CreateCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateCrawler`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Create a new AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: An AWS Glue client to use for the crawler.
    ///   - crawlerName: A name for the new crawler.
    ///   - iamRole: The name of an Amazon IAM role for the crawler to use.
    ///   - s3Path: The path of an Amazon S3 folder to use as a target location.
    ///   - cronSchedule: A `cron` schedule indicating when to run the crawler.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of an AWS Glue database to operate on.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is created successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func createCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, crawlerName: String, iamRole: String,
                       s3Path: String, cronSchedule: String, databaseName: String)
 async -> Bool {
        let s3Target = GlueClientTypes.S3Target(path: s3url)
        let targetList = GlueClientTypes.CrawlerTargets(s3Targets: [s3Target])

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createCrawler(
                input: CreateCrawlerInput(
                    databaseName: databaseName,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Scenario Example
 for AWS Glue.",
                    name: crawlerName,
                    role: iamRole,
```

```
                    schedule: cronSchedule,
                    tablePrefix: tablePrefix,
                    targets: targetList
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AlreadyExistsException {
            print("*** A crawler named \"\(crawlerName)\" already exists.")
            return false
        } catch _ as OperationTimeoutException {
            print("*** The attempt to create the AWS Glue crawler timed out.")
            return false
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred creating the AWS Glue crawler:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateJob`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateJob`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Create a new AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
```

```
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name to give the new job.
    ///   - role: The IAM role for the job to use when accessing AWS services.
    ///   - scriptLocation: The AWS S3 URI of the script to be run by the job.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is created successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func createJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, role: String,
                   scriptLocation: String) async -> Bool {
        let command = GlueClientTypes.JobCommand(
            name: "glueetl",
            pythonVersion: "3",
            scriptLocation: scriptLocation
        )

        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.createJob(
                input: CreateJobInput(
                    command: command,
                    description: "Created by the AWS SDK for Swift Glue basic
scenario example.",
                    glueVersion: "3.0",
                    name: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    role: role,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateJob in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

DeleteCrawler

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteCrawler`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Delete an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if successful, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteCrawler(
                input: DeleteCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteDatabase`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDatabase`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Delete the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database to delete.
    ///   - deleteTables: A Bool indicating whether or not to delete the
    ///     tables in the database before attempting to delete the database.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the database (and optionally its tables) are
    ///   deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name databaseName: String,
                        withTables deleteTables: Bool = false) async -> Bool {
        if deleteTables {
            var tableNames: [String] = []

            // Get a list of the names of all of the tables in the database.

            let tableList = await self.getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: glueClient,
 databaseName: databaseName)
            for table in tableList {
                guard let name = table.name else {
                    continue
                }
                tableNames.append(name)
            }

            // Delete the tables. If there's only one table, use
            // `deleteTable()`, otherwise, use `batchDeleteTable()`. You can
            // use `batchDeleteTable()` for a single table, but this
            // demonstrates the use of `deleteTable()`.
```

```
            if tableNames.count == 1 {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting table...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.deleteTable(
                        input: DeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            name: tableNames[0]
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the table.")
                }
            } else {
                do {
                    print("    Deleting tables...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.batchDeleteTable(
                        input: BatchDeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            tablesToDelete: tableNames
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the tables.")
                }
            }
        }

        // Delete the database itself.

        do {
            print("    Deleting the database itself...")
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteDatabase(
                input: DeleteDatabaseInput(name: databaseName)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to delete the database.")
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDatabase in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteJob`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteJob`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Delete an AWS Glue job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to delete.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job is successfully deleted, otherwise `false`.
    func deleteJob(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.deleteJob(
                input: DeleteJobInput(jobName: jobName)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteJob in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteTable`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTable`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

                do {
                    print("    Deleting table...")
                    _ = try await glueClient.deleteTable(
                        input: DeleteTableInput(
                            databaseName: databaseName,
                            name: tableNames[0]
                        )
                    )
                } catch {
                    print("*** Unable to delete the table.")
                }
```

- For API details, see DeleteTable in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `GetCrawler`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
```

```
import AWSGlue

    /// Get the state of the specified AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler whose state should be returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState` value describing the
    ///   state of the crawler.
    func getCrawlerState(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
 GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getCrawler(
                input: GetCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )

            // If the crawler or its state is `nil`, report that the crawler
            // is stopping. This may not be what you want for your
            // application but it works for this one!

            guard let crawler = output.crawler else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            guard let state = crawler.state else {
                return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
            }
            return state
        } catch {
            return GlueClientTypes.CrawlerState.stopping
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

GetDatabase

The following code example shows how to use `GetDatabase`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Get the AWS Glue database with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the database to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `GlueClientTypes.Database` object describing the
    ///   specified database, or `nil` if an error occurs or the database
    ///   isn't found.
    func getDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async ->
 GlueClientTypes.Database? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getDatabase(
                input: GetDatabaseInput(name: name)
            )

            return output.database
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetDatabase in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `GetJobRun`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Get information about a specific AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to return job run data for.
    ///   - id: The run ID of the specific job run to return.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` object describing the state of
    ///   the job run, or `nil` if an error occurs.
    func getJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, id: String) async -
> GlueClientTypes.JobRun? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRun(
                input: GetJobRunInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    runId: id
                )
            )

            return output.jobRun
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRun in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

GetJobRuns

The following code example shows how to use GetJobRuns.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Return a list of the job runs for the specified job.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job for which to return its job runs.
    ///   - maxResults: The maximum number of job runs to return (default:
    ///     1000).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.JobRun` objects describing
    ///   each job run.
    func getJobRuns(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, maxResults: Int? =
 nil) async -> [GlueClientTypes.JobRun] {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.getJobRuns(
                input: GetJobRunsInput(
                    jobName: jobName,
                    maxResults: maxResults
                )
            )

            guard let jobRuns = output.jobRuns else {
                print("*** No job runs found.")
                return []
            }

            return jobRuns
        } catch is EntityNotFoundException {
            print("*** The specified job name, \(jobName), doesn't exist.")
```

```
            return []
        } catch {
            print("*** Unexpected error getting job runs:")
            dump(error)
            return []
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetJobRuns in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetTables`

The following code example shows how to use `GetTables`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Returns a list of the tables in the specified database.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the database whose tables are to be
    ///     returned.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `GlueClientTypes.Table` objects, each
    ///   describing one table in the named database. An empty array indicates
    ///   that there are either no tables in the database, or an error
    ///   occurred before any tables could be found.
    func getTablesInDatabase(glueClient: GlueClient, databaseName: String) async ->
 [GlueClientTypes.Table] {
        var tables: [GlueClientTypes.Table] = []
        var nextToken: String?
```

```
        repeat {
            do {
                let output = try await glueClient.getTables(
                    input: GetTablesInput(
                        databaseName: databaseName,
                        nextToken: nextToken
                    )
                )

                guard let tableList = output.tableList else {
                    return tables
                }

                tables = tables + tableList
                nextToken = output.nextToken
            } catch {
                return tables
            }
        } while nextToken != nil

        return tables
    }
```

- For API details, see GetTables in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListJobs`

The following code example shows how to use `ListJobs`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue
```

```
/// Return a list of the AWS Glue jobs listed on the user's account.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
///   - maxJobs: The maximum number of jobs to return (default: 100).
///
/// - Returns: An array of strings listing the names of all available AWS
///   Glue jobs.
func listJobs(glueClient: GlueClient, maxJobs: Int = 100) async -> [String] {
    var jobList: [String] = []
    var nextToken: String?

    repeat {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.listJobs(
                input: ListJobsInput(
                    maxResults: maxJobs,
                    nextToken: nextToken
                )
            )

            guard let jobs = output.jobNames else {
                return jobList
            }

            jobList = jobList + jobs
            nextToken = output.nextToken
        } catch {
            return jobList
        }
    } while (nextToken != nil)

    return jobList
}
```

- For API details, see ListJobs in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`StartCrawler`

The following code example shows how to use `StartCrawler`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Start running an AWS Glue crawler.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use when starting the crawler.
    ///   - name: The name of the crawler to start running.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the crawler is started successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func startCrawler(glueClient: GlueClient, name: String) async -> Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await glueClient.startCrawler(
                input: StartCrawlerInput(name: name)
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** An unexpected error occurred starting the crawler.")
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see StartCrawler in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`StartJobRun`

The following code example shows how to use `StartJobRun`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSGlue

    /// Start an AWS Glue job run.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - glueClient: The AWS Glue client to use.
    ///   - jobName: The name of the job to run.
    ///   - databaseName: The name of the AWS Glue database to run the job against.
    ///   - tableName: The name of the table in the database to run the job against.
    ///   - outputURL: The AWS S3 URI of the bucket location into which to
    ///     write the resulting output.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the job run is started successfully, otherwise `false`.
    func startJobRun(glueClient: GlueClient, name jobName: String, databaseName:
 String,
                     tableName: String, outputURL: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await glueClient.startJobRun(
                input: StartJobRunInput(
                    arguments: [
                        "--input_database": databaseName,
                        "--input_table": tableName,
                        "--output_bucket_url": outputURL
                    ],
                    jobName: jobName,
                    numberOfWorkers: 10,
                    workerType: .g1x
                )
            )

            guard let id = output.jobRunId else {
                return nil
            }
```

```
            return id
        } catch {
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see StartJobRun in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

IAM examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with IAM.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AttachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `AttachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
```

```
import AWSS3


    public func attachRolePolicy(role: String, policyArn: String) async throws {
        let input = AttachRolePolicyInput(
            policyArn: policyArn,
            roleName: role
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.attachRolePolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: Attaching a role policy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AttachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateAccessKey`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createAccessKey(userName: String) async throws ->
 IAMClientTypes.AccessKey {
        let input = CreateAccessKeyInput(
            userName: userName
        )
        do {
```

```
            let output = try await iamClient.createAccessKey(input: input)
            guard let accessKey = output.accessKey else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.keyError
            }
            return accessKey
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createAccessKey:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreatePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `CreatePolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createPolicy(name: String, policyDocument: String) async throws ->
 IAMClientTypes.Policy {
        let input = CreatePolicyInput(
            policyDocument: policyDocument,
            policyName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await iamClient.createPolicy(input: input)
            guard let policy = output.policy else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchPolicy
```

```
            }
            return policy
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreatePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateRole`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createRole(name: String, policyDocument: String) async throws ->
 String {
        let input = CreateRoleInput(
            assumeRolePolicyDocument: policyDocument,
            roleName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.createRole(input: input)
            guard let role = output.role else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            guard let id = role.roleId else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
```

```
            }
            return id
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateServiceLinkedRole`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateServiceLinkedRole`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createServiceLinkedRole(service: String, suffix: String? = nil,
 description: String?)
                    async throws -> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        let input = CreateServiceLinkedRoleInput(
            awsServiceName: service,
            customSuffix: suffix,
            description: description
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.createServiceLinkedRole(input: input)
            guard let role = output.role else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            return role
        } catch {
```

```
            print("ERROR: createServiceLinkedRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateServiceLinkedRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateUser`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateUser`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func createUser(name: String) async throws -> String {
        let input = CreateUserInput(
            userName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.createUser(input: input)
            guard let user = output.user else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchUser
            }
            guard let id = user.userId else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchUser
            }
            return id
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: createUser:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteAccessKey`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteAccessKey`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deleteAccessKey(user: IAMClientTypes.User? = nil,
                                key: IAMClientTypes.AccessKey) async throws
    {
        let userName: String?

        if user != nil {
            userName = user!.userName
        } else {
            userName = nil
        }

        let input = DeleteAccessKeyInput(
            accessKeyId: key.accessKeyId,
            userName: userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteAccessKey(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteAccessKey:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteAccessKey in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeletePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeletePolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deletePolicy(policy: IAMClientTypes.Policy) async throws {
        let input = DeletePolicyInput(
            policyArn: policy.arn
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deletePolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deletePolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeletePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteRole`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteRole`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deleteRole(role: IAMClientTypes.Role) async throws {
        let input = DeleteRoleInput(
            roleName: role.roleName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteRole(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteUser`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUser`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func deleteUser(user: IAMClientTypes.User) async throws {
        let input = DeleteUserInput(
            userName: user.userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteUser(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteUser:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteUserPolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    func deleteUserPolicy(user: IAMClientTypes.User, policyName: String) async
 throws {
        let input = DeleteUserPolicyInput(
            policyName: policyName,
            userName: user.userName
```

```
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteUserPolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteUserPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DetachRolePolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `DetachRolePolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func detachRolePolicy(policy: IAMClientTypes.Policy, role:
 IAMClientTypes.Role) async throws {
        let input = DetachRolePolicyInput(
            policyArn: policy.arn,
            roleName: role.roleName
        )

        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.detachRolePolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: detachRolePolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DetachRolePolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `GetPolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func getPolicy(arn: String) async throws -> IAMClientTypes.Policy {
        let input = GetPolicyInput(
            policyArn: arn
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getPolicy(input: input)
            guard let policy = output.policy else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchPolicy
            }
            return policy
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetPolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

GetRole

The following code example shows how to use `GetRole`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func getRole(name: String) async throws -> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        let input = GetRoleInput(
            roleName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getRole(input: input)
            guard let role = output.role else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchRole
            }
            return role
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getRole:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

GetUser

The following code example shows how to use `GetUser`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func getUser(name: String? = nil) async throws -> IAMClientTypes.User {
        let input = GetUserInput(
            userName: name
        )
        do {
            let output = try await iamClient.getUser(input: input)
            guard let user = output.user else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchUser
            }
            return user
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: getUser:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see GetUser in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListAttachedRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListAttachedRolePolicies`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3



    /// Returns a list of AWS Identity and Access Management (IAM) policies
    /// that are attached to the role.
    ///
    /// - Parameter role: The IAM role to return the policy list for.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `IAMClientTypes.AttachedPolicy` objects
    ///   describing each managed policy that's attached to the role.
    public func listAttachedRolePolicies(role: String) async throws ->
 [IAMClientTypes.AttachedPolicy] {
        var policyList: [IAMClientTypes.AttachedPolicy] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the attached role polices.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in
 "ListAttachedRolePoliciesOutput".
        let input = ListAttachedRolePoliciesInput(
            roleName: role
        )
        let output = client.listAttachedRolePoliciesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in output {
                guard let attachedPolicies = page.attachedPolicies else {
                    print("Error: no attached policies returned.")
                    continue
                }
                for attachedPolicy in attachedPolicies {
                    policyList.append(attachedPolicy)
                }
            }
```

```
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listAttachedRolePolicies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }

        return policyList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListAttachedRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `ListGroups`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listGroups() async throws -> [String] {
        var groupList: [String] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the groups.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' property in
 "ListGroupsOutput".
        let input = ListGroupsInput()

        let pages = client.listGroupsPaginated(input: input)
        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let groups = page.groups else {
                    print("Error: no groups returned.")
                    continue
                }
```

```
                for group in groups {
                    if let name = group.groupName {
                        groupList.append(name)
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listGroups:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
        return groupList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListPolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListPolicies`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listPolicies() async throws -> [MyPolicyRecord] {
        var policyList: [MyPolicyRecord] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the policies.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListPoliciesOutput".
        let input = ListPoliciesInput()
        let output = client.listPoliciesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
```

```
            for try await page in output {
                guard let policies = page.policies else {
                    print("Error: no policies returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for policy in policies {
                    guard let name = policy.policyName,
                          let id = policy.policyId,
                          let arn = policy.arn
                    else {
                        throw ServiceHandlerError.noSuchPolicy
                    }
                    policyList.append(MyPolicyRecord(name: name, id: id, arn: arn))
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listPolicies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }

        return policyList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListPolicies in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListRolePolicies`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRolePolicies`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3
```

```
    public func listRolePolicies(role: String) async throws -> [String] {
        var policyList: [String] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the role policies.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListRolePoliciesOutput".
        let input = ListRolePoliciesInput(
            roleName: role
        )
        let pages = client.listRolePoliciesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let policies = page.policyNames else {
                    print("Error: no role policies returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for policy in policies {
                    policyList.append(policy)
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listRolePolicies:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
        return policyList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRolePolicies in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListRoles`

The following code example shows how to use `ListRoles`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listRoles() async throws -> [String] {
        var roleList: [String] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the roles.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListRolesOutput".
        let input = ListRolesInput()
        let pages = client.listRolesPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let roles = page.roles else {
                    print("Error: no roles returned.")
                    continue
                }

                for role in roles {
                    if let name = role.roleName {
                        roleList.append(name)
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: listRoles:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
        return roleList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListRoles in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListUsers`

The following code example shows how to use `ListUsers`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    public func listUsers() async throws -> [MyUserRecord] {
        var userList: [MyUserRecord] = []

        // Use "Paginated" to get all the users.
        // This lets the SDK handle the 'isTruncated' in "ListUsersOutput".
        let input = ListUsersInput()
        let output = client.listUsersPaginated(input: input)

        do {
            for try await page in output {
                guard let users = page.users else {
                    continue
                }
                for user in users {
                    if let id = user.userId, let name = user.userName {
                        userList.append(MyUserRecord(id: id, name: name))
                    }
                }
            }
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: listUsers:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
       return userList
    }
```

- For API details, see ListUsers in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`PutUserPolicy`

The following code example shows how to use `PutUserPolicy`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSIAM
import AWSS3


    func putUserPolicy(policyDocument: String, policyName: String, user:
 IAMClientTypes.User) async throws {
        let input = PutUserPolicyInput(
            policyDocument: policyDocument,
            policyName: policyName,
            userName: user.userName
        )
        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.putUserPolicy(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: putUserPolicy:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutUserPolicy in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Lambda examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Lambda.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create an IAM role and Lambda function, then upload handler code.
- Invoke the function with a single parameter and get results.
- Update the function code and configure with an environment variable.
- Invoke the function with new parameters and get results. Display the returned execution log.
- List the functions for your account, then clean up resources.

For more information, see Create a Lambda function with the console.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Define the first Lambda function, which simply increments the specified value.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
//
```

```
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "increment",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/swift-server/swift-aws-lambda-runtime.git",
            branch: "main"),
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "increment",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSLambdaRuntime", package: "swift-aws-lambda-
runtime"),
            ],
            path: "Sources"
        )
    ]
)

import Foundation
import AWSLambdaRuntime

/// Represents the contents of the requests being received from the client.
/// This structure must be `Decodable` to indicate that its initializer
/// converts an external representation into this type.
struct Request: Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The number to act upon.
    let number: Int
```

```
}

/// The contents of the response sent back to the client. This must be
/// `Encodable`.
struct Response: Encodable, Sendable {
    /// The resulting value after performing the action.
    let answer: Int?
}


/// The Lambda function body.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - event: The `Request` describing the request made by the
///     client.
///   - context: A `LambdaContext` describing the context in
///     which the lambda function is running.
///
/// - Returns: A `Response` object that will be encoded to JSON and sent
///   to the client by the Lambda runtime.
let incrementLambdaRuntime = LambdaRuntime {
        (event: Request, context: LambdaContext) -> Response in
    let action = event.action
    var answer: Int?

    if action != "increment" {
        context.logger.error("Unrecognized operation: \"\(action)\". The only
 supported action is \"increment\".")
    } else {
        answer = event.number + 1
        context.logger.info("The calculated answer is \(answer!).")
    }

    let response = Response(answer: answer)
    return response
}

// Run the Lambda runtime code.

try await incrementLambdaRuntime.run()
```

Define the second Lambda function, which performs an arithmetic operation on two numbers.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "calculator",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/swift-server/swift-aws-lambda-runtime.git",
            branch: "main"),
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "calculator",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSLambdaRuntime", package: "swift-aws-lambda-
runtime"),
            ],
            path: "Sources"
        )
    ]
)

import Foundation
import AWSLambdaRuntime

/// Represents the contents of the requests being received from the client.
/// This structure must be `Decodable` to indicate that its initializer
/// converts an external representation into this type.
```

```
struct Request: Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The first number to act upon.
    let x: Int
    /// The second number to act upon.
    let y: Int
}

/// A dictionary mapping operation names to closures that perform that
/// operation and return the result.
let actions = [
    "plus": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x + y
    },
    "minus": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x - y
    },
    "times": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x * y
    },
    "divided-by": { (x: Int, y: Int) -> Int in
        return x / y
    }
]

/// The contents of the response sent back to the client. This must be
/// `Encodable`.
struct Response: Encodable, Sendable {
    /// The resulting value after performing the action.
    let answer: Int?
}


/// The Lambda function's entry point. Called by the Lambda runtime.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - event: The `Request` describing the request made by the
///     client.
///   - context: A `LambdaContext` describing the context in
///     which the lambda function is running.
///
/// - Returns: A `Response` object that will be encoded to JSON and sent
///   to the client by the Lambda runtime.
```

```
let calculatorLambdaRuntime = LambdaRuntime {
        (_ event: Request, context: LambdaContext) -> Response in
    let action = event.action
    var answer: Int?
    var actionFunc: ((Int, Int) -> Int)?

    // Get the closure to run to perform the calculation.

    actionFunc = await actions[action]

    guard let actionFunc else {
        context.logger.error("Unrecognized operation '\(action)\'")
        return Response(answer: nil)
    }

    // Perform the calculation and return the answer.

    answer = actionFunc(event.x, event.y)

    guard let answer else {
        context.logger.error("Error computing \(event.x) \(action) \(event.y)")
    }
    context.logger.info("\(event.x) \(action) \(event.y) = \(answer)")

    return Response(answer: answer)
}

try await calculatorLambdaRuntime.run()
```

Define the main program that will invoke the two Lambda functions.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
// Copyright Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates. All Rights Reserved.
// SPDX-License-Identifier: Apache-2.0
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "lambda-basics",
```

```
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "lambda-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSLambda", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "AWSIAM", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources"
        )
    ]
)

//
/// An example demonstrating a variety of important AWS Lambda functions.

import ArgumentParser
import AWSIAM
import SmithyWaitersAPI
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

/// Represents the contents of the requests being received from the client.
/// This structure must be `Decodable` to indicate that its initializer
/// converts an external representation into this type.
```

```
struct IncrementRequest: Encodable, Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The number to act upon.
    let number: Int
}

struct Response: Encodable, Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The resulting value after performing the action.
    let answer: Int?
}

struct CalculatorRequest: Encodable, Decodable, Sendable {
    /// The action to perform.
    let action: String
    /// The first number to act upon.
    let x: Int
    /// The second number to act upon.
    let y: Int
}

let exampleName = "SwiftLambdaRoleExample"
let basicsFunctionName = "lambda-basics-function"

/// The ARN of the standard IAM policy for execution of Lambda functions.
let policyARN = "arn:aws:iam::aws:policy/service-role/AWSLambdaBasicExecutionRole"

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    // -MARK: Command arguments
    @Option(help: "Name of the IAM Role to use for the Lambda functions")
    var role = exampleName
    @Option(help: "Zip archive containing the 'increment' lambda function")
    var incpath: String
    @Option(help: "Zip archive containing the 'calculator' lambda function")
    var calcpath: String
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon S3 Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "lambda-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example demonstrates several common operations using AWS Lambda.
        """,
        discussion: """
```

```
        """
    )

    /// Returns the specified IAM role object.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - iamClient: `IAMClient` to use when looking for the role.
    ///   - roleName: The name of the role to check.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `IAMClientTypes.Role` representing the specified role.
    func getRole(iamClient: IAMClient, roleName: String) async throws
                 -> IAMClientTypes.Role {
        do {
            let roleOutput = try await iamClient.getRole(
                input: GetRoleInput(
                    roleName: roleName
                )
            )

            guard let role = roleOutput.role else {
                throw ExampleError.roleNotFound
            }
            return role
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.roleNotFound
        }
    }

    /// Create the AWS IAM role that will be used to access AWS Lambda.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - iamClient: The AWS `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - roleName: The name of the AWS IAM role to use for Lambda.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.roleCreateError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `IAMClientTypes.Role` struct that describes the new role.
    func createRoleForLambda(iamClient: IAMClient, roleName: String) async throws ->
IAMClientTypes.Role {
        let output = try await iamClient.createRole(
            input: CreateRoleInput(
                assumeRolePolicyDocument:
                """
                {
```

```
                    "Version": "2012-10-17",
                    "Statement": [
                        {
                            "Effect": "Allow",
                            "Principal": {"Service": "lambda.amazonaws.com"},
                            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole"
                        }
                    ]
                }
                """,
                roleName: roleName
            )
        )

        guard let role = output.role else {
            throw ExampleError.roleCreateError
        }

        // Wait for the role to be ready for use.

        _ = try await iamClient.waitUntilRoleExists(
            options: WaiterOptions(
                maxWaitTime: 20,
                minDelay: 0.5,
                maxDelay: 2
            ),
            input: GetRoleInput(roleName: roleName)
        )

        return role
    }

    /// Detect whether or not the AWS Lambda function with the specified name
    /// exists, by requesting its function information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the AWS Lambda function to find.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the Lambda function exists. Otherwise `false`.
    func doesLambdaFunctionExist(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, name: String) async ->
Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.getFunction(
```

```
                input: GetFunctionInput(functionName: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        return true
    }

    /// Create the specified AWS Lambda function.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to create.
    ///   - roleArn: The ARN of the role to apply to the function.
    ///   - path: The path of the Zip archive containing the function.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the AWS Lambda was successfully created; `false`
    ///   if it wasn't.
    func createFunction(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String,
                                roleArn: String?, path: String) async throws -> Bool
{
        do {
            // Read the Zip archive containing the AWS Lambda function.

            let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
            let zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)

            // Create the AWS Lambda function that runs the specified code,
            // using the name given on the command line. The Lambda function
            // will run using the Amazon Linux 2 runtime.

            _ = try await lambdaClient.createFunction(
                input: CreateFunctionInput(
                    code: LambdaClientTypes.FunctionCode(zipFile: zipData),
                    functionName: functionName,
                    handler: "handle",
                    role: roleArn,
                    runtime: .providedal2
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating Lambda function:")
            dump(error)
```

```
            return false
        }

        // Wait for a while to be sure the function is done being created.

        let output = try await lambdaClient.waitUntilFunctionActiveV2(
            options: WaiterOptions(
                maxWaitTime: 20,
                minDelay: 0.5,
                maxDelay: 2
            ),
            input: GetFunctionInput(functionName: functionName)
        )

        switch output.result {
            case .success:
                return true
            case .failure:
                return false
        }
    }

    /// Update the AWS Lambda function with new code to run when the function
    /// is invoked.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to update.
    ///   - path: The pathname of the Zip file containing the packaged Lambda
    ///     function.
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.zipFileReadError`
    /// - Returns: `true` if the function's code is updated successfully.
    ///   Otherwise, returns `false`.
    func updateFunctionCode(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String,
                            path: String) async throws -> Bool {
        let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
        let zipData: Data

        // Read the function's Zip file.

        do {
            zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.zipFileReadError
```

```
        }

        // Update the function's code and wait for the updated version to be
        // ready for use.

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionCode(
                input: UpdateFunctionCodeInput(
                    functionName: functionName,
                    zipFile: zipData
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        let output = try await lambdaClient.waitUntilFunctionUpdatedV2(
            options: WaiterOptions(
                maxWaitTime: 20,
                minDelay: 0.5,
                maxDelay: 2
            ),
            input: GetFunctionInput(
                functionName: functionName
            )
        )

        switch output.result {
            case .success:
                return true
            case .failure:
                return false
        }
    }

    /// Tell the server-side component to log debug output by setting its
    /// environment's `LOG_LEVEL` to `DEBUG`.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to enable debug
    ///     logging for.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError`,
```

```
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`
    func enableDebugLogging(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String) async
throws {
        let envVariables = [
            "LOG_LEVEL": "DEBUG"
        ]
        let environment = LambdaClientTypes.Environment(variables: envVariables)

        do {
            let output = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionConfiguration(
                input: UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput(
                    environment: environment,
                    functionName: functionName
                )
            )

            guard let response = output.environment else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError
            }

            if response.error != nil {
                throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
            }

            guard let retVariables = response.variables else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError
            }

            for envVar in retVariables {
                if envVar.key == "LOG_LEVEL" && envVar.value != "DEBUG" {
                    print("*** Log level is not set to DEBUG!")
                    throw ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError
                }
            }
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
        }
    }

    /// Returns an array containing the names of all AWS Lambda functions
    /// available to the user.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Parameter lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.listFunctionsError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of lambda function name strings.
    func getFunctionNames(lambdaClient: LambdaClient) async throws -> [String] {
        let pages = lambdaClient.listFunctionsPaginated(
            input: ListFunctionsInput()
        )

        var functionNames: [String] = []

        for try await page in pages {
            guard let functions = page.functions else {
                throw ExampleError.listFunctionsError
            }

            for function in functions {
                functionNames.append(function.functionName ?? "<unknown>")
            }
        }

        return functionNames
    }

    /// Invoke the Lambda function to increment a value.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - number: The number to increment.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.noAnswerReceived`, `ExampleError.invokeError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An integer number containing the incremented value.
    func invokeIncrement(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, number: Int) async throws ->
 Int {
        do {
            let incRequest = IncrementRequest(action: "increment", number: number)
            let incData = try! JSONEncoder().encode(incRequest)

            // Invoke the lambda function.

            let invokeOutput = try await lambdaClient.invoke(
```

```
                input: InvokeInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function",
                    payload: incData
                )
            )

            let response = try! JSONDecoder().decode(Response.self,
from:invokeOutput.payload!)

            guard let answer = response.answer else {
                throw ExampleError.noAnswerReceived
            }
            return answer

        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.invokeError
        }
    }

    /// Invoke the calculator Lambda function.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - action: Which arithmetic operation to perform: "plus", "minus",
    ///     "times", or "divided-by".
    ///   - x: The first number to use in the computation.
    ///   - y: The second number to use in the computation.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.noAnswerReceived`, `ExampleError.invokeError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: The computed answer as an `Int`.
    func invokeCalculator(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, action: String, x: Int, y:
Int) async throws -> Int {
        do {
            let calcRequest = CalculatorRequest(action: action, x: x, y: y)
            let calcData = try! JSONEncoder().encode(calcRequest)

            // Invoke the lambda function.

            let invokeOutput = try await lambdaClient.invoke(
                input: InvokeInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function",
                    payload: calcData
                )
```

```
            )

            let response = try! JSONDecoder().decode(Response.self,
from:invokeOutput.payload!)

            guard let answer = response.answer else {
                throw ExampleError.noAnswerReceived
            }
            return answer

        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.invokeError
        }

    }

    /// Perform the example's tasks.
    func basics() async throws {
        let iamClient = try await IAMClient(
            config: IAMClient.IAMClientConfiguration(region: region)
        )

        let lambdaClient = try await LambdaClient(
            config: LambdaClient.LambdaClientConfiguration(region: region)
        )

        /// The IAM role to use for the example.
        var iamRole: IAMClientTypes.Role

        // Look for the specified role. If it already exists, use it. If not,
        // create it and attach the desired policy to it.

        do {
            iamRole = try await getRole(iamClient: iamClient, roleName: role)
        } catch ExampleError.roleNotFound {
            // The role wasn't found, so create it and attach the needed
            // policy.

            iamRole = try await createRoleForLambda(iamClient: iamClient, roleName:
role)

            do {
                _ = try await iamClient.attachRolePolicy(
```

```
                    input: AttachRolePolicyInput(policyArn: policyARN, roleName:
role)
                )
            } catch {
                throw ExampleError.policyError
            }
        }

        // Give the policy time to attach to the role.

        sleep(5)

        // Look to see if the function already exists. If it does, throw an
        // error.

        if await doesLambdaFunctionExist(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, name:
basicsFunctionName) {
            throw ExampleError.functionAlreadyExists
        }

        // Create, then invoke, the "increment" version of the calculator
        // function.

        print("Creating the increment Lambda function...")
        if try await createFunction(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, functionName:
basicsFunctionName,
                                    roleArn: iamRole.arn, path: incpath) {
            print("Running increment function calls...")
            for number in 0...4 {
                do {
                    let answer = try await invokeIncrement(lambdaClient:
lambdaClient, number: number)
                    print("Increment \(number) = \(answer)")
                } catch {
                    print("Error incrementing \(number): ",
error.localizedDescription)
                }
            }
        } else {
            print("*** Failed to create the increment function.")
        }

        // Enable debug logging.
```

```
        print("\nEnabling debug logging...")
        try await enableDebugLogging(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, functionName:
basicsFunctionName)

        // Change it to a basic arithmetic calculator. Then invoke it a few
        // times.

        print("\nReplacing the Lambda function with a calculator...")

        if try await updateFunctionCode(lambdaClient: lambdaClient, functionName:
basicsFunctionName,
                                        path: calcpath) {
            print("Running calculator function calls...")
            for x in [6, 10] {
                for y in [2, 4] {
                    for action in ["plus", "minus", "times", "divided-by"] {
                        do {
                            let answer = try await invokeCalculator(lambdaClient:
lambdaClient, action: action, x: x, y: y)
                            print("\(x) \(action) \(y) = \(answer)")
                        } catch {
                            print("Error calculating \(x) \(action) \(y): ",
error.localizedDescription)
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        }

        // List all lambda functions.

        let functionNames = try await getFunctionNames(lambdaClient: lambdaClient)

        if functionNames.count > 0 {
            print("\nAWS Lambda functions available on your account:")
            for name in functionNames {
                print("  \(name)")
            }
        }

        // Delete the lambda function.

        print("Deleting lambda function...")
```

```
        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.deleteFunction(
                input: DeleteFunctionInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function"
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("Error: Unable to delete the function.")
        }

        // Detach the role from the policy, then delete the role.

        print("Deleting the AWS IAM role...")

        do {
            _ = try await iamClient.detachRolePolicy(
                input: DetachRolePolicyInput(
                    policyArn: policyARN,
                    roleName: role
                )
            )
            _ = try await iamClient.deleteRole(
                input: DeleteRoleInput(
                    roleName: role
                )
            )
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.deleteRoleError
        }
    }
}

// -MARK: - Entry point

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.basics()
        } catch {
```

```
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}


/// Errors thrown by the example's functions.
enum ExampleError: Error {
    /// An AWS Lambda function with the specified name already exists.
    case functionAlreadyExists
    /// The specified role doesn't exist.
    case roleNotFound
    /// Unable to create the role.
    case roleCreateError
    /// Unable to delete the role.
    case deleteRoleError
    /// Unable to attach a policy to the role.
    case policyError
    /// Unable to get the executable directory.
    case executableNotFound
    /// An error occurred creating a lambda function.
    case createLambdaError
    /// An error occurred invoking the lambda function.
    case invokeError
    /// No answer received from the invocation.
    case noAnswerReceived
    /// Unable to list the AWS Lambda functions.
    case listFunctionsError
    /// Unable to update the AWS Lambda function.
    case updateFunctionError
    /// Unable to update the function configuration.
    case updateFunctionConfigurationError
    /// The environment response is missing after an
    /// UpdateEnvironmentConfiguration attempt.
    case environmentResponseMissingError
    /// The environment variables are missing from the EnvironmentResponse and
    /// no errors occurred.
    case environmentVariablesMissingError
    /// The log level is incorrect after attempting to set it.
    case logLevelIncorrectError
    /// Unable to load the AWS Lambda function's Zip file.
    case zipFileReadError

    var errorDescription: String? {
```

```
        switch self {
        case .functionAlreadyExists:
            return "An AWS Lambda function with that name already exists."
        case .roleNotFound:
            return "The specified role doesn't exist."
        case .deleteRoleError:
            return "Unable to delete the AWS IAM role."
        case .roleCreateError:
            return "Unable to create the specified role."
        case .policyError:
            return "An error occurred attaching the policy to the role."
        case .executableNotFound:
            return "Unable to find the executable program directory."
        case .createLambdaError:
            return "An error occurred creating a lambda function."
        case .invokeError:
            return "An error occurred invoking a lambda function."
        case .noAnswerReceived:
            return "No answer received from the lambda function."
        case .listFunctionsError:
            return "Unable to list the AWS Lambda functions."
        case .updateFunctionError:
            return "Unable to update the AWS lambda function."
        case .updateFunctionConfigurationError:
            return "Unable to update the AWS lambda function configuration."
        case .environmentResponseMissingError:
            return "The environment is missing from the response after updating the
 function configuration."
        case .environmentVariablesMissingError:
            return "While no error occurred, no environment variables were returned
 following function configuration."
        case .logLevelIncorrectError:
            return "The log level is incorrect after attempting to set it to DEBUG."
        case .zipFileReadError:
            return "Unable to read the AWS Lambda function."
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateFunction
  - DeleteFunction

- GetFunction
- Invoke
- ListFunctions
- UpdateFunctionCode
- UpdateFunctionConfiguration

Actions

`CreateFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateFunction`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

        do {
            // Read the Zip archive containing the AWS Lambda function.

            let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
            let zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)

            // Create the AWS Lambda function that runs the specified code,
            // using the name given on the command line. The Lambda function
            // will run using the Amazon Linux 2 runtime.

            _ = try await lambdaClient.createFunction(
                input: CreateFunctionInput(
                    code: LambdaClientTypes.FunctionCode(zipFile: zipData),
                    functionName: functionName,
                    handler: "handle",
```

```
                    role: roleArn,
                    runtime: .providedal2
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating Lambda function:")
            dump(error)
            return false
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateFunction in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteFunction`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteFunction`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.deleteFunction(
                input: DeleteFunctionInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function"
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("Error: Unable to delete the function.")
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteFunction in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

GetFunction

The following code example shows how to use `GetFunction`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Detect whether or not the AWS Lambda function with the specified name
    /// exists, by requesting its function information.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - name: The name of the AWS Lambda function to find.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the Lambda function exists. Otherwise `false`.
    func doesLambdaFunctionExist(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, name: String) async ->
 Bool {
        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.getFunction(
                input: GetFunctionInput(functionName: name)
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }

        return true
    }
```

- For API details, see GetFunction in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Invoke

The following code example shows how to use `Invoke`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Invoke the Lambda function to increment a value.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///   - number: The number to increment.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.noAnswerReceived`, `ExampleError.invokeError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An integer number containing the incremented value.
    func invokeIncrement(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, number: Int) async throws ->
 Int {
        do {
            let incRequest = IncrementRequest(action: "increment", number: number)
            let incData = try! JSONEncoder().encode(incRequest)

            // Invoke the lambda function.

            let invokeOutput = try await lambdaClient.invoke(
                input: InvokeInput(
                    functionName: "lambda-basics-function",
                    payload: incData
                )
            )

            let response = try! JSONDecoder().decode(Response.self,
 from:invokeOutput.payload!)
```

```
            guard let answer = response.answer else {
                throw ExampleError.noAnswerReceived
            }
            return answer

        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.invokeError
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see Invoke in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListFunctions`

The following code example shows how to use `ListFunctions`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Returns an array containing the names of all AWS Lambda functions
    /// available to the user.
    ///
    /// - Parameter lambdaClient: The `IAMClient` to use.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.listFunctionsError`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of lambda function name strings.
    func getFunctionNames(lambdaClient: LambdaClient) async throws -> [String] {
        let pages = lambdaClient.listFunctionsPaginated(
            input: ListFunctionsInput()
        )
```

```
        var functionNames: [String] = []

        for try await page in pages {
            guard let functions = page.functions else {
                throw ExampleError.listFunctionsError
            }

            for function in functions {
                functionNames.append(function.functionName ?? "<unknown>")
            }
        }

        return functionNames
    }
```

- For API details, see ListFunctions in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`UpdateFunctionCode`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionCode`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

        let zipUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
        let zipData: Data

        // Read the function's Zip file.

        do {
            zipData = try Data(contentsOf: zipUrl)
        } catch {
```

```
            throw ExampleError.zipFileReadError
        }

        // Update the function's code and wait for the updated version to be
        // ready for use.

        do {
            _ = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionCode(
                input: UpdateFunctionCodeInput(
                    functionName: functionName,
                    zipFile: zipData
                )
            )
        } catch {
            return false
        }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionCode in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`UpdateFunctionConfiguration`

The following code example shows how to use `UpdateFunctionConfiguration`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSLambda
import Foundation

    /// Tell the server-side component to log debug output by setting its
    /// environment's `LOG_LEVEL` to `DEBUG`.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - lambdaClient: The `LambdaClient` to use.
    ///   - functionName: The name of the AWS Lambda function to enable debug
```

```
    ///     logging for.
    ///
    /// - Throws: `ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError`,
    ///   `ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError`
    func enableDebugLogging(lambdaClient: LambdaClient, functionName: String) async
throws {
        let envVariables = [
            "LOG_LEVEL": "DEBUG"
        ]
        let environment = LambdaClientTypes.Environment(variables: envVariables)

        do {
            let output = try await lambdaClient.updateFunctionConfiguration(
                input: UpdateFunctionConfigurationInput(
                    environment: environment,
                    functionName: functionName
                )
            )

            guard let response = output.environment else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentResponseMissingError
            }

            if response.error != nil {
                throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
            }

            guard let retVariables = response.variables else {
                throw ExampleError.environmentVariablesMissingError
            }

            for envVar in retVariables {
                if envVar.key == "LOG_LEVEL" && envVar.value != "DEBUG" {
                    print("*** Log level is not set to DEBUG!")
                    throw ExampleError.logLevelIncorrectError
                }
            }
        } catch {
            throw ExampleError.updateFunctionConfigurationError
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see UpdateFunctionConfiguration in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon RDS examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon RDS.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a custom DB parameter group and set parameter values.
- Create a DB instance that's configured to use the parameter group. The DB instance also contains a database.
- Take a snapshot of the instance.
- Delete the instance and parameter group.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
// swift-tools-version: 5.9
//
// The swift-tools-version declares the minimum version of Swift required to
// build this package.

import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "rds-scenario",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.4.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "rds-scenario",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSRDS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
```

```
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The Swift code file, `entry.swift`.

```
// An example that shows how to use the AWS SDK for Swift to perform a variety
// of operations using Amazon Relational Database Service (RDS).
//

import ArgumentParser
import Foundation
import AWSRDS

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "The AWS Region to run AWS API calls in.")
    var awsRegion = "us-east-1"
    @Option(help: "The username to use for the database administrator.")
    var dbUsername = "admin"
    @Option(help: "The password to use for the database administrator.")
    var dbPassword: String

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "rds-scenario",
        abstract: """
        Performs various operations to demonstrate the use of Amazon RDS Instances
        using the AWS SDK for Swift.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let example = try await Example(region: awsRegion, username: dbUsername,
 password: dbPassword)

        await example.run()
    }
```

```
}

class Example {
    let rdsClient: RDSClient

    // Storage for AWS RDS properties

    let dbUsername: String
    let dbPassword: String
    var dbInstanceIdentifier: String
    var dbSnapshotIdentifier: String
    var dbParameterGroupName: String
    var dbParameterGroup: RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup?
    var selectedEngineVersion: String?

    init(region: String, username: String, password: String) async throws{
        let rdsConfig = try await RDSClient.RDSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        rdsClient = RDSClient(config: rdsConfig)

        dbUsername = username
        dbPassword = password
        dbParameterGroupName = ""
        dbInstanceIdentifier = ""
        dbSnapshotIdentifier = ""
    }

    /// The example's main body.
    func run() async {
        var parameterGroupFamilies: Set<String> = []

        //======================================================================
        // 1. Get available database engine families for MySQL.
        //======================================================================

        let engineVersions = await getDBEngineVersions(engineName: "mysql")

        for version in engineVersions {
            if version.dbParameterGroupFamily != nil {
                parameterGroupFamilies.insert(version.dbParameterGroupFamily!)
            }
        }

        if engineVersions.count > 0 {
            selectedEngineVersion = engineVersions.last!.engineVersion
```

```
        } else {
            print("*** Unable to find a valid database engine version. Canceling
operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        print("Found \(parameterGroupFamilies.count) parameter group families:")
        for family in parameterGroupFamilies {
            print("    \(family)")
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 2. Select an engine family and create a custom DB parameter group.
        //    We select a family by sorting the set of family names, then
        //    choosing the last one.
        //=====================================================================

        let sortedFamilies = parameterGroupFamilies.sorted()

        guard let selectedFamily = sortedFamilies.last else {
            print("*** Unable to find a database engine family. Canceling
operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        print("Selected database engine family \(selectedFamily)")

        dbParameterGroupName = tempName(prefix: "rds-example")
        print("Creating a database parameter group named \(dbParameterGroupName)
using \(selectedFamily)")
        dbParameterGroup = await createDBParameterGroup(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName,
                                                        familyName: selectedFamily)

        //=====================================================================
        // 3. Get the parameter group's details.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Getting the database parameter group list...")
        let dbParameterGroupList = await describeDBParameterGroups(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName)
        guard let dbParameterGroupList else {
```

```
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        print("Found \(dbParameterGroupList.count) parameter groups...")
        for group in dbParameterGroupList {
            print("    \(group.dbParameterGroupName ?? "<unknown>")")
        }
        print()

        //=====================================================================
        // 4. Get a list of the parameter group's parameters. This list is
        //    likely to be long, so use pagination. Find the
        //    auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment parameters.
        //=====================================================================

        let parameters = await describeDBParameters(groupName: dbParameterGroupName)

        //=====================================================================
        // 5. Parse and display each parameter's name, description, and
        //    allowed values.
        //=====================================================================

        for parameter in parameters {
            let name = parameter.parameterName
            guard let name else {
                print("*** Unable to get parameter name!")
                continue
            }

            if name == "auto_increment_offset" || name ==
"auto_increment_increment" {
                print("Parameter \(name):")
                print("          Value: \(parameter.parameterValue ??
"<undefined>")")
                print("      Data type: \(parameter.dataType ?? "<unknown>")")
                print("    Description: \(parameter.description ?? "")")
                print(" Allowed values: \(parameter.allowedValues ??
"<unspecified")")
                print(String(repeating: "=", count: 78))
            }
        }

        //=====================================================================
```

```
        // 6. Modify both the auto_increment_offset and
        //    auto_increment_increment parameters in one call in the custom
        //    parameter group. Set their parameterValue fields to a new
        //    permitted value.
        //======================================================================

        print("Setting auto_increment_offset and auto_increment_increment both to
5...")
        await modifyDBParameters(groupName: dbParameterGroupName)

        //======================================================================
        // 7. Get and display the updated parameters, specifying a source of
        //    "user" to get only the modified parameters.
        //======================================================================

        let updatedParameters = await describeDBParameters(groupName:
dbParameterGroupName, source: "user")

        for parameter in updatedParameters {
            let name = parameter.parameterName
            guard let name else {
                print("*** Unable to get parameter name!")
                continue
            }

            print("Parameter \(name):")
            print("          Value: \(parameter.parameterValue ?? "<undefined>")")
            print("      Data type: \(parameter.dataType ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("    Description: \(parameter.description ?? "")")
            print(" Allowed values: \(parameter.allowedValues ?? "<unspecified")")
            print(String(repeating: "=", count: 78))
        }

        //======================================================================
        // 8. Get a list of allowed engine versions using
        //    DescribeRDSEngineVersions.
        //======================================================================

        await listAllowedEngines(family: selectedFamily)

        //======================================================================
        // 9. Get a list of micro instance classes available for the selected
        //    engine and engine version.
        //======================================================================
```

```
        let dbInstanceClass = await chooseMicroInstance(engine: "mysql",
engineVersion: selectedEngineVersion)
        guard let dbInstanceClass else {
            print("Did not get a valid instance class. Canceling operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 10. Create an RDS database that contains a MySQL database and uses
        //     the parameter group we created.
        //=====================================================================

        print("Creating the database instance...")

        guard let instanceClass = dbInstanceClass.dbInstanceClass else {
            print("Instance class name is unknown. Canceling operations.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        dbInstanceIdentifier = tempName(prefix: "sample-identifier")
        let dbInstanceArn = await createDBInstance(
            name: "SampleDatabase\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))",
            instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier,
            parameterGroupName: dbParameterGroupName,
            engine: "mysql",
            engineVersion: selectedEngineVersion!,
            instanceClass: instanceClass,
            username: dbUsername,
            password: dbPassword
        )

        if dbInstanceArn == nil {
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 11. Wait for the database instance to be ready by calling
        //     DescribeDBInstances repeatedly until it reports
        //     dbInstanceStatus as "available". This can take upwards of 10
        //     minutes, let the user know that.
```

```
        //=====================================================================

        guard let endpoint = await waitUntilDBInstanceReady(instanceIdentifier:
dbInstanceIdentifier) else {
            print("\nDid not get a valid endpoint from AWS RDS.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        guard let endpointAddress = endpoint.address else {
            print("\nNo endpoint address returned.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }
        guard let endpointPort = endpoint.port else {
            print("\nNo endpoint port returned.")
            await cleanUp()
            return
        }

        //=====================================================================
        // 12. Display connection information for the database instance.
        //=====================================================================

        print("\nTo connect to the new database instance using 'mysql' from the
shell:")
        print("    mysql -h \(endpointAddress) -P \(endpointPort) -u
\(self.dbUsername)")

        //=====================================================================
        // 13. Create a snapshot of the database instance.
        //=====================================================================

        dbSnapshotIdentifier = tempName(prefix: "sample-snapshot")
        await createDBSnapshot(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier,
snapshotIdentifier: dbSnapshotIdentifier)

        //=====================================================================
        // 14. Wait for the snapshot to be ready.
        //=====================================================================

        await waitUntilDBSnapshotReady(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier,
snapshotIdentifier: dbSnapshotIdentifier)
```

```
        // That's it! Clean up and exit!

        print("Example complete! Cleaning up...")
        await cleanUp()
    }

    /// Clean up by discarding and closing down all allocated EC2 items.
    func cleanUp() async {
        print("Deleting the database instance \(dbInstanceIdentifier)...")
        await deleteDBInstance(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier)
        await waitUntilDBInstanceDeleted(instanceIdentifier: dbInstanceIdentifier)

        print("Deleting the database parameter group \(dbParameterGroupName)...")
        await deleteDBParameterGroup(groupName: dbParameterGroupName)
    }

    /// Get all the database engine versions available for the specified
    /// database engine.
    ///
    /// - Parameter engineName: The name of the database engine to query.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion` structures,
    ///   each describing one supported version of the specified database.
    func getDBEngineVersions(engineName: String) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion] {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(
                input: DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput(
                    engine: engineName
                )
            )

            return output.dbEngineVersions ?? []
        } catch {
            return []
        }
    }

    /// Create a new database parameter group with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the new parameter group.
    ///   - familyName: The name of the parameter group family.
    /// - Returns:
```

```
   func createDBParameterGroup(groupName: String, familyName: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup? {
       do {
           let output = try await rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(
               input: CreateDBParameterGroupInput(
                   dbParameterGroupFamily: familyName,
                   dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                   description: "Created using the AWS SDK for Swift"
               )
           )
           return output.dbParameterGroup
       } catch {
           print("*** Error creating the parameter group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
           return nil
       }
   }

   /// Get descriptions of the database parameter groups matching the given
   /// name.
   ///
   /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to describe.
   ///
   /// - Returns: An array of [RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup] objects
   ///   describing the parameter group.
   func describeDBParameterGroups(groupName: String) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup]? {
       do {
           let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(
               input: DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput(
                   dbParameterGroupName: groupName
               )
           )
           return output.dbParameterGroups
       } catch {
           print("*** Error getting the database parameter group's details:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
           return nil
       }
   }

   /// Returns the detailed parameter list for the specified database
   /// parameter group.
   ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the parameter group to return parameters for.
    ///   - source: The types of parameters to return (`user`, `system`, or
    ///     `engine-default`).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RdSClientTypes.Parameter` objects, each
    ///   describing one of the group's parameters.
    func describeDBParameters(groupName: String, source: String? = nil) async ->
[RDSClientTypes.Parameter] {
        var parameterList: [RDSClientTypes.Parameter] = []

        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeDBParametersPaginated(
                input: DescribeDBParametersInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    source: source
                )
            )

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let parameters = page.parameters else {
                    return []
                }

                parameterList += parameters
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting database parameters:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return parameterList
    }

    /// Demonstrates modifying two of the specified database parameter group's
    /// parameters.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to change
    ///   parameters for.
    func modifyDBParameters(groupName: String) async {
        let parameter1 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_offset",
```

```
            parameterValue: "5"
        )
        let parameter2 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_increment",
            parameterValue: "5"
        )

        let parameterList = [parameter1, parameter2]

        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(
                input: ModifyDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    parameters: parameterList
                )
            )

            print("Successfully modified the parameter group \(groupName).")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error modifying the parameter group \(groupName):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Output a list of the database engine versions supported by the
    /// specified family.
    ///
    /// - Parameter family: The family for which to list allowed database
    ///   engines.
    func listAllowedEngines(family: String?) async {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(
                input: DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput(
                    dbParameterGroupFamily: family,
                    engine: "mysql"
                )
            )

            guard let engineVersions = output.dbEngineVersions else {
                print("No engine versions returned.")
                return
            }
```

```
            print("Found \(engineVersions.count) database engine versions:")
            for version in engineVersions {
                print("    \(version.engineVersion ?? "<unknown>"):
\(version.dbEngineDescription ?? "")")
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting database engine version list:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return
        }
    }

    /// Print a list of available database instances with "micro" in the class
    /// name, then return one of them to be used by other code.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - engine: The database engine for which to list database instance
    ///     classes.
    ///   - engineVersion: The database version for which to list instances.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An `RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption` describing
    ///   the selected instance type.
    func chooseMicroInstance(engine: String = "mysql", engineVersion: String? = nil)
async -> RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption? {
        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginated(
                input: DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput(
                    engine: engine,
                    engineVersion: engineVersion
                )
            )

            var optionsList: [RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption] = []

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let orderableDBInstanceOptions =
page.orderableDBInstanceOptions else {
                    continue
                }

                for dbInstanceOption in orderableDBInstanceOptions {
                    guard let className = dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass else {
                        continue
                    }
```

```
                    if className.contains("micro") {
                        optionsList.append(dbInstanceOption)
                    }
                }
            }

            print("Found \(optionsList.count) database instances of 'micro' class
types:")
            for dbInstanceOption in optionsList {
                print("    \(dbInstanceOption.engine ??
"<unknown>") \(dbInstanceOption.engineVersion ?? "<unknown>")
(\(dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass ?? "<unknown class>"))")
            }

            return optionsList[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting a list of orderable instance options:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Create a new database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the database to create.
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier to give the new database
    ///     instance.
    ///   - parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group to associate
    ///     with the new database instance.
    ///   - engine: The database engine to use.
    ///   - engineVersion: The version of the database given by `engine` to
    ///     use.
    ///   - instanceClass: The memory and compute capacity of the database
    ///     instance, such as `db.m5.large``.
    ///   - username: The admin user's username to establish for the new
    ///     instance.
    ///   - password: The password to use for the specified user's access.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string indicating the ARN of the newly created database
    ///   instance, or nil if the instance couldn't be created.
    func createDBInstance(name: String, instanceIdentifier: String,
parameterGroupName: String,
```

```
                        engine: String, engineVersion: String, instanceClass:
String,
                        username: String, password: String) async -> String? {
       do {
           let output = try await rdsClient.createDBInstance(
               input: CreateDBInstanceInput(
                   allocatedStorage: 100,
                   dbInstanceClass: instanceClass,
                   dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                   dbName: name,
                   dbParameterGroupName: parameterGroupName,
                   engine: engine,
                   engineVersion: engineVersion,
                   masterUserPassword: password,
                   masterUsername: username,
                   storageType: "gp2"
               )
           )

           guard let dbInstance = output.dbInstance else {
               print("*** Unable to get the database instance.")
               return nil
           }

           return dbInstance.dbInstanceArn
       } catch {
           print("*** An error occurred while creating the database instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
           return nil
       }
   }

   /// Wait until the specified database is available to use.
   ///
   /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The database instance identifier of the
   ///   database to wait for.
   func waitUntilDBInstanceReady(instanceIdentifier: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.Endpoint? {
       do {
           putString("Waiting for the database instance to be ready to use. This
may take 10 minutes or more...")
           while true {
               let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBInstances(
                   input: DescribeDBInstancesInput(
```

```
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier
                    )
                )

                guard let instanceList = output.dbInstances else {
                    continue
                }

                for instance in instanceList {
                    let status = instance.dbInstanceStatus

                    guard let status else {
                        print("\nUnable to determine the status.")
                        continue
                    }

                    if status.contains("available") {
                        return instance.endpoint
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to wait until the database is ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }

    /// Create a snapshot of the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database instance to
    ///     snapshot.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: A unique identifier to give the newly-created
    ///     snapshot.
    func createDBSnapshot(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier: String)
async {
```

```
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(
                input: CreateDBSnapshotInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                )
            )

            guard let snapshot = output.dbSnapshot else {
                print("No snapshot returned.")
                return
            }

            print("The snapshot has been created with ID \(snapshot.dbiResourceId ??
"<unknown>")")
        } catch {
            print("*** Unable to create the database snapshot named
\(snapshotIdentifier): \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Wait until the specified database snapshot is available to use.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database for which the
    ///     snapshot was taken.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: The identifier of the snapshot to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBSnapshotReady(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier:
String) async {
        var snapshotReady = false

        putString("Waiting for the snapshot to be ready...")

        do {
            while !snapshotReady {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBSnapshots(
                    input: DescribeDBSnapshotsInput(
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                        dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                    )
                )

                guard let snapshotList = output.dbSnapshots else {
                    return
```

```
                }

                for snapshot in snapshotList {
                    guard let snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status else {
                        return
                    }

                    if snapshotReadyStr.contains("available") {
                        snapshotReady = true
                        print()
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("\n*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("\n*** Unable to wait for the database snapshot to be ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Delete the specified database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database
    ///   instance to delete.
    func deleteDBInstance(instanceIdentifier: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(
                input: DeleteDBInstanceInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    deleteAutomatedBackups: true,
                    skipFinalSnapshot: true
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database instance \(instanceIdentifier):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

```
   /// Wait until the specified database instance has been deleted.
   ///
   /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database
   ///   instance to wait for.
   func waitUntilDBInstanceDeleted(instanceIdentifier: String) async {
       putString("Waiting for the database instance to be deleted. This may take a
few minutes...")
       do {
           var isDatabaseDeleted = false
           var foundInstance = false

           while !isDatabaseDeleted {
               let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBInstances(input:
DescribeDBInstancesInput())
               guard let instanceList = output.dbInstances else {
                   return
               }

               foundInstance = false

               for instance in instanceList {
                   guard let foundInstanceIdentifier =
instance.dbInstanceIdentifier else {
                       continue
                   }

                   if instanceIdentifier == foundInstanceIdentifier {
                       foundInstance = true
                       break
                   } else {
                       putString(".")
                       do {
                           try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                       } catch {
                           print("\n*** Error pausing the task!")
                       }
                   }
               }
               if !foundInstance {
                   isDatabaseDeleted = true
                   print()
               }
           }
```

```
        } catch {
            print("\n*** Error waiting for the database instance to be deleted:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Delete the specified database parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to delete.
    func deleteDBParameterGroup(groupName: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(
                input: DeleteDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database parameter group \(groupName):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }

    /// Generate and return a unique file name that begins with the specified
    /// string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prefix: Text to use at the beginning of the returned name.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string containing a unique filename that begins with the
    ///   specified `prefix`.
    ///
    /// The returned name uses a random number between 1 million and 1 billion to
    /// provide reasonable certainty of uniqueness for the purposes of this
    /// example.
    func tempName(prefix: String) -> String {
        return "\(prefix)-\(Int.random(in: 1000000..<1000000000))"
    }

    /// Print a string to standard output without a trailing newline, and
    /// without buffering.
    ///
    /// - Parameter str: The string to output.
    func putString(_ str: String = "") {
        if str.length >= 1 {
```

```
            let data = str.data(using: .utf8)
            guard let data else {
                return
            }
            FileHandle.standardOutput.write(data)
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateDBInstance
  - CreateDBParameterGroup
  - CreateDBSnapshot
  - DeleteDBInstance
  - DeleteDBParameterGroup
  - DescribeDBEngineVersions
  - DescribeDBInstances
  - DescribeDBParameterGroups
  - DescribeDBParameters
  - DescribeDBSnapshots
  - DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions
  - ModifyDBParameterGroup

Actions

`CreateDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBInstance`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Create a new database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: The name of the database to create.
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier to give the new database
    ///     instance.
    ///   - parameterGroupName: The name of the parameter group to associate
    ///     with the new database instance.
    ///   - engine: The database engine to use.
    ///   - engineVersion: The version of the database given by `engine` to
    ///     use.
    ///   - instanceClass: The memory and compute capacity of the database
    ///     instance, such as `db.m5.large``.
    ///   - username: The admin user's username to establish for the new
    ///     instance.
    ///   - password: The password to use for the specified user's access.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A string indicating the ARN of the newly created database
    ///   instance, or nil if the instance couldn't be created.
    func createDBInstance(name: String, instanceIdentifier: String,
 parameterGroupName: String,
                          engine: String, engineVersion: String, instanceClass:
 String,
                          username: String, password: String) async -> String? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBInstance(
                input: CreateDBInstanceInput(
```

```
                    allocatedStorage: 100,
                    dbInstanceClass: instanceClass,
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    dbName: name,
                    dbParameterGroupName: parameterGroupName,
                    engine: engine,
                    engineVersion: engineVersion,
                    masterUserPassword: password,
                    masterUsername: username,
                    storageType: "gp2"
                )
            )

            guard let dbInstance = output.dbInstance else {
                print("*** Unable to get the database instance.")
                return nil
            }

            return dbInstance.dbInstanceArn
        } catch {
            print("*** An error occurred while creating the database instance:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS
```

```
    /// Create a new database parameter group with the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the new parameter group.
    ///   - familyName: The name of the parameter group family.
    /// - Returns:
    func createDBParameterGroup(groupName: String, familyName: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.createDBParameterGroup(
                input: CreateDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupFamily: familyName,
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    description: "Created using the AWS SDK for Swift"
                )
            )
            return output.dbParameterGroup
        } catch {
            print("*** Error creating the parameter group:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateDBSnapshot`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateDBSnapshot`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS
```

```
   /// Create a snapshot of the specified name.
   ///
   /// - Parameters:
   ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database instance to
   ///     snapshot.
   ///   - snapshotIdentifier: A unique identifier to give the newly-created
   ///     snapshot.
   func createDBSnapshot(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier: String)
async {
       do {
           let output = try await rdsClient.createDBSnapshot(
               input: CreateDBSnapshotInput(
                   dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                   dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
               )
           )

           guard let snapshot = output.dbSnapshot else {
               print("No snapshot returned.")
               return
           }

           print("The snapshot has been created with ID \(snapshot.dbiResourceId ??
"<unknown>")")
       } catch {
           print("*** Unable to create the database snapshot named
\(snapshotIdentifier): \(error.localizedDescription)")
       }
   }
```

- For API details, see CreateDBSnapshot in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteDBInstance`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBInstance`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Delete the specified database instance.
    ///
    /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database
    ///   instance to delete.
    func deleteDBInstance(instanceIdentifier: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBInstance(
                input: DeleteDBInstanceInput(
                    dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                    deleteAutomatedBackups: true,
                    skipFinalSnapshot: true
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database instance \(instanceIdentifier):
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBInstance in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Delete the specified database parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to delete.
    func deleteDBParameterGroup(groupName: String) async {
        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.deleteDBParameterGroup(
                input: DeleteDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
        } catch {
            print("*** Error deleting the database parameter group \(groupName):
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeDBEngineVersions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBEngineVersions`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Get all the database engine versions available for the specified
    /// database engine.
    ///
    /// - Parameter engineName: The name of the database engine to query.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion` structures,
    ///   each describing one supported version of the specified database.
    func getDBEngineVersions(engineName: String) async ->
 [RDSClientTypes.DBEngineVersion] {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBEngineVersions(
                input: DescribeDBEngineVersionsInput(
                    engine: engineName
                )
            )

            return output.dbEngineVersions ?? []
        } catch {
            return []
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBEngineVersions in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeDBInstances`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBInstances`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS
```

```
   /// Wait until the specified database is available to use.
   ///
   /// - Parameter instanceIdentifier: The database instance identifier of the
   ///   database to wait for.
   func waitUntilDBInstanceReady(instanceIdentifier: String) async ->
RDSClientTypes.Endpoint? {
       do {
           putString("Waiting for the database instance to be ready to use. This
may take 10 minutes or more...")
           while true {
               let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBInstances(
                   input: DescribeDBInstancesInput(
                       dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier
                   )
               )

               guard let instanceList = output.dbInstances else {
                   continue
               }

               for instance in instanceList {
                   let status = instance.dbInstanceStatus

                   guard let status else {
                       print("\nUnable to determine the status.")
                       continue
                   }

                   if status.contains("available") {
                       return instance.endpoint
                   } else {
                       putString(".")
                       do {
                           try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                       } catch {
                           print("*** Error pausing the task!")
                       }
                   }
               }
           }
       } catch {
           print("*** Unable to wait until the database is ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
           return nil
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBInstances in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeDBParameterGroups`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameterGroups`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Get descriptions of the database parameter groups matching the given
    /// name.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to describe.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of [RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup] objects
    ///   describing the parameter group.
    func describeDBParameterGroups(groupName: String) async ->
 [RDSClientTypes.DBParameterGroup]? {
        do {
            let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBParameterGroups(
                input: DescribeDBParameterGroupsInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName
                )
            )
            return output.dbParameterGroups
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting the database parameter group's details:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
```

```
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameterGroups in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeDBParameters`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBParameters`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Returns the detailed parameter list for the specified database
    /// parameter group.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - groupName: The name of the parameter group to return parameters for.
    ///   - source: The types of parameters to return (`user`, `system`, or
    ///     `engine-default`).
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of `RdSClientTypes.Parameter` objects, each
    ///   describing one of the group's parameters.
    func describeDBParameters(groupName: String, source: String? = nil) async ->
 [RDSClientTypes.Parameter] {
        var parameterList: [RDSClientTypes.Parameter] = []

        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeDBParametersPaginated(
                input: DescribeDBParametersInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    source: source
                )
            )
```

```
            for try await page in pages {
                guard let parameters = page.parameters else {
                    return []
                }

                parameterList += parameters
            }
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting database parameters:
 \(error.localizedDescription)")
            return []
        }

        return parameterList
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBParameters in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeDBSnapshots`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeDBSnapshots`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Wait until the specified database snapshot is available to use.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - instanceIdentifier: The identifier of the database for which the
    ///     snapshot was taken.
    ///   - snapshotIdentifier: The identifier of the snapshot to wait for.
    func waitUntilDBSnapshotReady(instanceIdentifier: String, snapshotIdentifier:
 String) async {
```

```
        var snapshotReady = false

        putString("Waiting for the snapshot to be ready...")

        do {
            while !snapshotReady {
                let output = try await rdsClient.describeDBSnapshots(
                    input: DescribeDBSnapshotsInput(
                        dbInstanceIdentifier: instanceIdentifier,
                        dbSnapshotIdentifier: snapshotIdentifier
                    )
                )

                guard let snapshotList = output.dbSnapshots else {
                    return
                }

                for snapshot in snapshotList {
                    guard let snapshotReadyStr = snapshot.status else {
                        return
                    }

                    if snapshotReadyStr.contains("available") {
                        snapshotReady = true
                        print()
                    } else {
                        putString(".")
                        do {
                            try await Task.sleep(for: .seconds(15))
                        } catch {
                            print("\n*** Error pausing the task!")
                        }
                    }
                }
            }
        } catch {
            print("\n*** Unable to wait for the database snapshot to be ready:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeDBSnapshots in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`

The following code example shows how to use `DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS

    /// Print a list of available database instances with "micro" in the class
    /// name, then return one of them to be used by other code.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - engine: The database engine for which to list database instance
    ///     classes.
    ///   - engineVersion: The database version for which to list instances.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An `RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption` describing
    ///   the selected instance type.
    func chooseMicroInstance(engine: String = "mysql", engineVersion: String? = nil)
 async -> RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption? {
        do {
            let pages = rdsClient.describeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsPaginated(
                input: DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptionsInput(
                    engine: engine,
                    engineVersion: engineVersion
                )
            )

            var optionsList: [RDSClientTypes.OrderableDBInstanceOption] = []

            for try await page in pages {
                guard let orderableDBInstanceOptions =
 page.orderableDBInstanceOptions else {
                    continue
                }

                for dbInstanceOption in orderableDBInstanceOptions {
```

```
                    guard let className = dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass else {
                        continue
                    }
                    if className.contains("micro") {
                        optionsList.append(dbInstanceOption)
                    }
                }
            }

            print("Found \(optionsList.count) database instances of 'micro' class
types:")
            for dbInstanceOption in optionsList {
                print("    \(dbInstanceOption.engine ??
"<unknown>") \(dbInstanceOption.engineVersion ?? "<unknown>")
(\(dbInstanceOption.dbInstanceClass ?? "<unknown class>"))")
            }

            return optionsList[0]
        } catch {
            print("*** Error getting a list of orderable instance options:
\(error.localizedDescription)")
            return nil
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DescribeOrderableDBInstanceOptions in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ModifyDBParameterGroup`

The following code example shows how to use `ModifyDBParameterGroup`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSRDS
```

```
    /// Demonstrates modifying two of the specified database parameter group's
    /// parameters.
    ///
    /// - Parameter groupName: The name of the parameter group to change
    ///   parameters for.
    func modifyDBParameters(groupName: String) async {
        let parameter1 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_offset",
            parameterValue: "5"
        )
        let parameter2 = RDSClientTypes.Parameter(
            applyMethod: RDSClientTypes.ApplyMethod.immediate,
            parameterName: "auto_increment_increment",
            parameterValue: "5"
        )

        let parameterList = [parameter1, parameter2]

        do {
            _ = try await rdsClient.modifyDBParameterGroup(
                input: ModifyDBParameterGroupInput(
                    dbParameterGroupName: groupName,
                    parameters: parameterList
                )
            )

            print("Successfully modified the parameter group \(groupName).")
        } catch {
            print("*** Error modifying the parameter group \(groupName):
\(error.localizedDescription)")
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ModifyDBParameterGroup in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon S3 examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon S3.

Basics are code examples that show you how to perform the essential operations within a service.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Basics
- Actions
- Scenarios

Basics

Learn the basics

The following code example shows how to:

- Create a bucket and upload a file to it.
- Download an object from a bucket.
- Copy an object to a subfolder in a bucket.
- List the objects in a bucket.
- Delete the bucket objects and the bucket.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3
```

```
import Foundation
import AWSS3
import Smithy
import ClientRuntime

/// A class containing all the code that interacts with the AWS SDK for Swift.
public class ServiceHandler {
    let configuration: S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration
    let client: S3Client

    enum HandlerError: Error {
        case getObjectBody(String)
        case readGetObjectBody(String)
        case missingContents(String)
    }

    /// Initialize and return a new ``ServiceHandler`` object, which is used to
 drive the AWS calls
    /// used for the example.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A new ``ServiceHandler`` object, ready to be called to
    ///            execute AWS operations.
    public init() async throws {
        do {
            configuration = try await S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration()
         //   configuration.region = "us-east-2" // Uncomment this to set the region
 programmatically.
            client = S3Client(config: configuration)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Initializing S3 client"))
            throw error
        }
    }


    /// Create a new user given the specified name.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - name: Name of the bucket to create.
    /// Throws an exception if an error occurs.
    public func createBucket(name: String) async throws {
        var input = CreateBucketInput(
            bucket: name
```

```
        )

        // For regions other than "us-east-1", you must set the locationConstraint
 in the createBucketConfiguration.
        // For more information, see LocationConstraint in the S3 API guide.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/
API_CreateBucket.html#API_CreateBucket_RequestBody
        if let region = configuration.region {
            if region != "us-east-1" {
                input.createBucketConfiguration =
 S3ClientTypes.CreateBucketConfiguration(locationConstraint:
 S3ClientTypes.BucketLocationConstraint(rawValue: region))
            }
        }

        do {
            _ = try await client.createBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch let error as BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou {
            print("The bucket '\(name)' already exists and is owned by you. You may
 wish to ignore this exception.")
            throw error
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Creating a bucket"))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Delete a bucket.
    /// - Parameter name: Name of the bucket to delete.
    public func deleteBucket(name: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a bucket"))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
    /// Upload a file from local storage to the bucket.
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket to upload the file to.
    ///   - key: Name of the file to create.
    ///   - file: Path name of the file to upload.
    public func uploadFile(bucket: String, key: String, file: String) async throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: file)
        do {
            let fileData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)
            let dataStream = ByteStream.data(fileData)

            let input = PutObjectInput(
                body: dataStream,
                bucket: bucket,
                key: key
            )

            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Create a file in the specified bucket with the given name. The new
    /// file's contents are uploaded from a `Data` object.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket to create a file in.
    ///   - key: Name of the file to create.
    ///   - data: A `Data` object to write into the new file.
    public func createFile(bucket: String, key: String, withData data: Data) async
throws {
        let dataStream = ByteStream.data(data)

        let input = PutObjectInput(
            body: dataStream,
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
```

```
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Download the named file to the given directory on the local device.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket that contains the file to be copied.
    ///   - key: The name of the file to copy from the bucket.
    ///   - to: The path of the directory on the local device where you want to
    ///     download the file.
    public func downloadFile(bucket: String, key: String, to: String) async throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: to).appendingPathComponent(key)

        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to read
data.")
            }

            try data.write(to: fileUrl)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Downloading a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Read the specified file from the given S3 bucket into a Swift
    /// `Data` object.
    ///
```

```
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket containing the file to read.
    ///   - key: Name of the file within the bucket to read.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A `Data` object containing the complete file data.
    public func readFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws -> Data {
        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to read
 data.")
            }

            return data
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Reading a file."))
            throw error
        }
   }


    /// Copy a file from one bucket to another.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sourceBucket: Name of the bucket containing the source file.
    ///   - name: Name of the source file.
    ///   - destBucket: Name of the bucket to copy the file into.
    public func copyFile(from sourceBucket: String, name: String, to destBucket:
 String) async throws {
        let srcUrl = ("\(sourceBucket)/
\(name)").addingPercentEncoding(withAllowedCharacters: .urlPathAllowed)

        let input = CopyObjectInput(
            bucket: destBucket,
```

```
            copySource: srcUrl,
            key: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.copyObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Copying an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Deletes the specified file from Amazon S3.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: Name of the bucket containing the file to delete.
    ///   - key: Name of the file to delete.
    ///
    public func deleteFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }

    /// Returns an array of strings, each naming one file in the
    /// specified bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameter bucket: Name of the bucket to get a file listing for.
    /// - Returns: An array of `String` objects, each giving the name of
    ///            one file contained in the bucket.
    public func listBucketFiles(bucket: String) async throws -> [String] {
        do {
            let input = ListObjectsV2Input(
                bucket: bucket
            )
```

```
            // Use "Paginated" to get all the objects.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'continuationToken' in
 "ListObjectsV2Output".
            let output = client.listObjectsV2Paginated(input: input)
            var names: [String] = []

            for try await page in output {
                guard let objList = page.contents else {
                    print("ERROR: listObjectsV2Paginated returned nil contents.")
                    continue
                }

                for obj in objList {
                    if let objName = obj.key {
                        names.append(objName)
                    }
                }
            }


            return names
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Listing objects."))
            throw error
        }
    }
}
```

```
import AWSS3

import Foundation
import ServiceHandler
import ArgumentParser

/// The command-line arguments and options available for this
/// example command.
struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Argument(help: "Name of the S3 bucket to create")
    var bucketName: String
```

```
    @Argument(help: "Pathname of the file to upload to the S3 bucket")
    var uploadSource: String

    @Argument(help: "The name (key) to give the file in the S3 bucket")
    var objName: String

    @Argument(help: "S3 bucket to copy the object to")
    var destBucket: String

    @Argument(help: "Directory where you want to download the file from the S3
bucket")
    var downloadDir: String

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "s3-basics",
        abstract: "Demonstrates a series of basic AWS S3 functions.",
        discussion: """
        Performs the following Amazon S3 commands:

        * `CreateBucket`
        * `PutObject`
        * `GetObject`
        * `CopyObject`
        * `ListObjects`
        * `DeleteObjects`
        * `DeleteBucket`
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to do the actual running of the AWS
    /// example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let serviceHandler = try await ServiceHandler()

        // 1. Create the bucket.
        print("Creating the bucket \(bucketName)...")
        try await serviceHandler.createBucket(name: bucketName)

        // 2. Upload a file to the bucket.
        print("Uploading the file \(uploadSource)...")
        try await serviceHandler.uploadFile(bucket: bucketName, key: objName, file:
uploadSource)

        // 3. Download the file.
```

```
        print("Downloading the file \(objName) to \(downloadDir)...")
        try await serviceHandler.downloadFile(bucket: bucketName, key: objName, to:
 downloadDir)

        // 4. Copy the file to another bucket.
        print("Copying the file to the bucket \(destBucket)...")
        try await serviceHandler.copyFile(from: bucketName, name: objName, to:
 destBucket)

        // 5. List the contents of the bucket.

        print("Getting a list of the files in the bucket \(bucketName)")
        let fileList = try await serviceHandler.listBucketFiles(bucket: bucketName)
        let numFiles = fileList.count
        if numFiles != 0 {
            print("\(numFiles) file\((numFiles > 1) ? "s" : "") in bucket
 \(bucketName):")
            for name in fileList {
                print("  \(name)")
            }
        } else {
            print("No files found in bucket \(bucketName)")
        }

        // 6. Delete the objects from the bucket.

        print("Deleting the file \(objName) from the bucket \(bucketName)...")
        try await serviceHandler.deleteFile(bucket: bucketName, key: objName)
        print("Deleting the file \(objName) from the bucket \(destBucket)...")
        try await serviceHandler.deleteFile(bucket: destBucket, key: objName)

        // 7. Delete the bucket.
        print("Deleting the bucket \(bucketName)...")
        try await serviceHandler.deleteBucket(name: bucketName)

        print("Done.")
    }
}

//
// Main program entry point.
//
@main
struct Main {
```

```
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CopyObject
  - CreateBucket
  - DeleteBucket
  - DeleteObjects
  - GetObject
  - ListObjectsV2
  - PutObject

Actions

`CopyObject`

The following code example shows how to use `CopyObject`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3
```

```
    public func copyFile(from sourceBucket: String, name: String, to destBucket:
 String) async throws {
        let srcUrl = ("\(sourceBucket)/
\(name)").addingPercentEncoding(withAllowedCharacters: .urlPathAllowed)

        let input = CopyObjectInput(
            bucket: destBucket,
            copySource: srcUrl,
            key: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.copyObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Copying an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CopyObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`CreateBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateBucket`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func createBucket(name: String) async throws {
        var input = CreateBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )
```

```
        // For regions other than "us-east-1", you must set the locationConstraint
 in the createBucketConfiguration.
        // For more information, see LocationConstraint in the S3 API guide.
        // https://docs.aws.amazon.com/AmazonS3/latest/API/
API_CreateBucket.html#API_CreateBucket_RequestBody
        if let region = configuration.region {
            if region != "us-east-1" {
                input.createBucketConfiguration =
 S3ClientTypes.CreateBucketConfiguration(locationConstraint:
 S3ClientTypes.BucketLocationConstraint(rawValue: region))
            }
        }

        do {
            _ = try await client.createBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch let error as BucketAlreadyOwnedByYou {
            print("The bucket '\(name)' already exists and is owned by you. You may
 wish to ignore this exception.")
            throw error
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Creating a bucket"))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see CreateBucket in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteBucket`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteBucket`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func deleteBucket(name: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteBucketInput(
            bucket: name
        )
        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteBucket(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a bucket"))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteBucket in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteObject`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObject`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func deleteFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws {
        let input = DeleteObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteObject(input: input)
        }
```

```
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Deleting a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteObjects`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteObjects`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func deleteObjects(bucket: String, keys: [String]) async throws {
        let input = DeleteObjectsInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            delete: S3ClientTypes.Delete(
                objects: keys.map { S3ClientTypes.ObjectIdentifier(key: $0) },
                quiet: true
            )
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.deleteObjects(input: input)
        } catch {
            print("ERROR: deleteObjects:", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see DeleteObjects in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetObject`

The following code example shows how to use `GetObject`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func downloadFile(bucket: String, key: String, to: String) async throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: to).appendingPathComponent(key)

        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to read
 data.")
            }

            try data.write(to: fileUrl)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Downloading a file."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
import AWSS3

    public func readFile(bucket: String, key: String) async throws -> Data {
        let input = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )
        do {
            let output = try await client.getObject(input: input)

            guard let body = output.body else {
                throw HandlerError.getObjectBody("GetObjectInput missing body.")
            }

            guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                throw HandlerError.readGetObjectBody("GetObjectInput unable to read
 data.")
            }

            return data
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Reading a file."))
            throw error
        }
   }
```

- For API details, see GetObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListBuckets`

The following code example shows how to use `ListBuckets`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    /// Return an array containing information about every available bucket.
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of ``S3ClientTypes.Bucket`` objects describing
    ///   each bucket.
    public func getAllBuckets() async throws -> [S3ClientTypes.Bucket] {
        return try await client.listBuckets(input: ListBucketsInput())
    }
```

- For API details, see ListBuckets in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListObjectsV2`

The following code example shows how to use `ListObjectsV2`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3

    public func listBucketFiles(bucket: String) async throws -> [String] {
        do {
            let input = ListObjectsV2Input(
                bucket: bucket
            )
```

```
            // Use "Paginated" to get all the objects.
            // This lets the SDK handle the 'continuationToken' in
"ListObjectsV2Output".
            let output = client.listObjectsV2Paginated(input: input)
            var names: [String] = []

            for try await page in output {
                guard let objList = page.contents else {
                    print("ERROR: listObjectsV2Paginated returned nil contents.")
                    continue
                }

                for obj in objList {
                    if let objName = obj.key {
                        names.append(objName)
                    }
                }
            }


            return names
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Listing objects."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see ListObjectsV2 in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`PutObject`

The following code example shows how to use `PutObject`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSS3
import Smithy

    public func uploadFile(bucket: String, key: String, file: String) async throws {
        let fileUrl = URL(fileURLWithPath: file)
        do {
            let fileData = try Data(contentsOf: fileUrl)
            let dataStream = ByteStream.data(fileData)

            let input = PutObjectInput(
                body: dataStream,
                bucket: bucket,
                key: key
            )

            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

```
import AWSS3
import Smithy

    public func createFile(bucket: String, key: String, withData data: Data) async
 throws {
        let dataStream = ByteStream.data(data)

        let input = PutObjectInput(
            body: dataStream,
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            _ = try await client.putObject(input: input)
        }
        catch {
            print("ERROR: ", dump(error, name: "Putting an object."))
            throw error
```

```
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see PutObject in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios

Download stream of unknown size

The following code example shows how to download a stream of unknown size from an Amazon S3 object.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSS3
import Foundation
import Smithy
import SmithyHTTPAPI
import SmithyStreams


    /// Download a file from the specified bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket name to get the file from.
    ///   - key: The name (or path) of the file to download from the bucket.
    ///   - destPath: The pathname on the local filesystem at which to store
    ///     the downloaded file.
    func downloadFile(bucket: String, key: String, destPath: String?) async throws {
        let fileURL: URL

        // If no destination path was provided, use the key as the name to use
```

```
        // for the file in the downloads folder.

        if destPath == nil {
            do {
                try fileURL = FileManager.default.url(
                    for: .downloadsDirectory,
                    in: .userDomainMask,
                    appropriateFor: URL(string: key),
                    create: true
                ).appendingPathComponent(key)
            } catch {
                throw TransferError.directoryError
            }
        } else {
            fileURL = URL(fileURLWithPath: destPath!)
        }

        let config = try await S3Client.S3ClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let s3Client = S3Client(config: config)

        // Create a `FileHandle` referencing the local destination. Then
        // create a `ByteStream` from that.

        FileManager.default.createFile(atPath: fileURL.path, contents: nil,
attributes: nil)
        let fileHandle = try FileHandle(forWritingTo: fileURL)

        // Download the file using `GetObject`.

        let getInput = GetObjectInput(
            bucket: bucket,
            key: key
        )

        do {
            let getOutput = try await s3Client.getObject(input: getInput)

            guard let body = getOutput.body else {
                throw TransferError.downloadError("Error: No data returned for
download")
            }

            // If the body is returned as a `Data` object, write that to the
            // file. If it's a stream, read the stream chunk by chunk,
```

```
            // appending each chunk to the destination file.

            switch body {
            case .data:
                guard let data = try await body.readData() else {
                    throw TransferError.downloadError("Download error")
                }

                // Write the `Data` to the file.

                do {
                    try data.write(to: fileURL)
                } catch {
                    throw TransferError.writeError
                }
                break

            case .stream(let stream as ReadableStream):
                while (true) {
                    let chunk = try await stream.readAsync(upToCount: 5 * 1024 *
1024)
                    guard let chunk = chunk else {
                        break
                    }

                    // Write the chunk to the destination file.

                    do {
                        try fileHandle.write(contentsOf: chunk)
                    } catch {
                        throw TransferError.writeError
                    }
                }

                break
            default:
                throw TransferError.downloadError("Received data is unknown object
type")
            }
        } catch {
            throw TransferError.downloadError("Error downloading the file:
\(error)")
        }
```

```
        print("File downloaded to \(fileURL.path).")
    }
```

Upload stream of unknown size

The following code example shows how to upload a stream of unknown size to an Amazon S3 object.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSS3
import Foundation
import Smithy
import SmithyHTTPAPI
import SmithyStreams


    /// Upload a file to the specified bucket.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - bucket: The Amazon S3 bucket name to store the file into.
    ///   - key: The name (or path) of the file to upload to in the `bucket`.
    ///   - sourcePath: The pathname on the local filesystem of the file to
    ///     upload.
    func uploadFile(sourcePath: String, bucket: String, key: String?) async throws {
        let fileURL: URL = URL(fileURLWithPath: sourcePath)
        let fileName: String

        // If no key was provided, use the last component of the filename.

        if key == nil {
            fileName = fileURL.lastPathComponent
```

```
        } else {
            fileName = key!
        }

        let s3Client = try await S3Client()

        // Create a FileHandle for the source file.

        let fileHandle = FileHandle(forReadingAtPath: sourcePath)
        guard let fileHandle = fileHandle else {
            throw TransferError.readError
        }

        // Create a byte stream to retrieve the file's contents. This uses the
        // Smithy FileStream and ByteStream types.

        let stream = FileStream(fileHandle: fileHandle)
        let body = ByteStream.stream(stream)

        // Create a `PutObjectInput` with the ByteStream as the body of the
        // request's data. The AWS SDK for Swift will handle sending the
        // entire file in chunks, regardless of its size.

        let putInput = PutObjectInput(
            body: body,
            bucket: bucket,
            key: fileName
        )

        do {
            _ = try await s3Client.putObject(input: putInput)
        } catch {
            throw TransferError.uploadError("Error uploading the file: \(error)")
        }

        print("File uploaded to \(fileURL.path).")
    }
```

Amazon SNS examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon SNS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SNS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SNS.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The Package.swift file.

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "sns-basics",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
```

```
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "sns-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSSNS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
)
```

The main Swift program.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "sns-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to list all of your available Amazon SNS topics.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )
```

```
    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        var topics: [String] = []
        let outputPages = snsClient.listTopicsPaginated(
            input: ListTopicsInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let topicList = output.topics else {
                print("Unable to get a page of Amazon SNS topics.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the topics listed on this page, adding their ARNs
            // to the `topics` array.

            for topic in topicList {
                guard let arn = topic.topicArn else {
                    print("Topic has no ARN.")
                    return
                }
                topics.append(arn)
            }
        }

        print("You have \(topics.count) topics:")
        for topic in topics {
            print("   \(topic)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())
```

```
        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateTopic`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.createTopic(
            input: CreateTopicInput(name: name)
        )
```

```
        guard let arn = output.topicArn else {
            print("No topic ARN returned by Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateTopic in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteTopic`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteTopic`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        _ = try await snsClient.deleteTopic(
            input: DeleteTopicInput(topicArn: arn)
        )
```

- For API details, see DeleteTopic in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListTopics`

The following code example shows how to use `ListTopics`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        var topics: [String] = []
        let outputPages = snsClient.listTopicsPaginated(
            input: ListTopicsInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let topicList = output.topics else {
                print("Unable to get a page of Amazon SNS topics.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the topics listed on this page, adding their ARNs
            // to the `topics` array.

            for topic in topicList {
                guard let arn = topic.topicArn else {
                    print("Topic has no ARN.")
                    return
                }
                topics.append(arn)
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListTopics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Publish

The following code example shows how to use `Publish`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.publish(
            input: PublishInput(
                message: message,
                topicArn: arn
            )
        )

        guard let messageId = output.messageId else {
            print("No message ID received from Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }

        print("Published message with ID \(messageId)")
```

- For API details, see Publish in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Subscribe

The following code example shows how to use `Subscribe`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Subscribe an email address to a topic.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                endpoint: email,
                protocol: "email",
                returnSubscriptionArn: true,
                topicArn: arn
            )
        )

        guard let subscriptionArn = output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("No subscription ARN received from Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }

        print("Subscription \(subscriptionArn) created.")
```

Subscribe a phone number to a topic to receive notifications by SMS.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                endpoint: phone,
```

```
                protocol: "sms",
                returnSubscriptionArn: true,
                topicArn: arn
            )
        )

        guard let subscriptionArn = output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("No subscription ARN received from Amazon SNS.")
            return
        }

        print("Subscription \(subscriptionArn) created.")
```

- For API details, see Subscribe in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`Unsubscribe`

The following code example shows how to use `Unsubscribe`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSNS

        let config = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: config)

        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(
                subscriptionArn: arn
            )
        )

        print("Unsubscribed.")
```

- For API details, see Unsubscribe in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "queue-scenario",
        abstract: """
        This example interactively demonstrates how to use Amazon Simple
        Notification Service (Amazon SNS) and Amazon Simple Queue Service
        (Amazon SQS) together to publish and receive messages using queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        Supports filtering using a "tone" attribute.
```

```
        """
    )

    /// Prompt for an input string. Only non-empty strings are allowed.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: The prompt to display.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string input by the user.
    func stringRequest(prompt: String) -> String {
        var str: String?

        while str == nil {
            print(prompt, terminator: "")
            str = readLine()

            if str != nil && str?.count == 0 {
                str = nil
            }
        }

        return str!
    }

    /// Ask a yes/no question.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: A prompt string to print.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user answered "Y", otherwise `false`.
    func yesNoRequest(prompt: String) -> Bool {
        while true {
            let answer = stringRequest(prompt: prompt).lowercased()
            if answer == "y" || answer == "n" {
                return answer == "y"
            }
        }
    }

    /// Display a menu of options then request a selection.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt string to display before the menu.
    ///   - options: An array of strings giving the menu options.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The index number of the selected option or 0 if no item was
```

```
///   selected.
func menuRequest(prompt: String, options: [String]) -> Int {
    let numOptions = options.count

    if numOptions == 0 {
        return 0
    }

    print(prompt)

    for (index, value) in options.enumerated() {
        print("(\(index)) \(value)")
    }

    repeat {
        print("Enter your selection (0 - \(numOptions-1)): ", terminator: "")
        if let answer = readLine() {
            guard let answer = Int(answer) else {
                print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
                continue
            }

            if answer >= 0 && answer < numOptions {
                return answer
            } else {
                print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
            }
        }
    } while true
}

/// Ask the user too press RETURN. Accepts any input but ignores it.
///
/// - Parameter prompt: The text prompt to display.
func returnRequest(prompt: String) {
    print(prompt, terminator: "")
    _ = readLine()
}

var attrValues = [
    "<none>",
    "cheerful",
    "funny",
    "serious",
```

```
        "sincere"
    ]

    /// Ask the user to choose one of the attribute values to use as a filter.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - message: A message to display before the menu of values.
    ///   - attrValues: An array of strings giving the values to choose from.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string corresponding to the selected option.
    func askForFilter(message: String, attrValues: [String]) -> String? {
        print(message)
        for (index, value) in attrValues.enumerated() {
            print("  [\(index)] \(value)")
        }

        var answer: Int?
        repeat {
            answer = Int(stringRequest(prompt: "Select an value for the 'tone'
attribute or 0 to end: "))
        } while answer == nil || answer! < 0 || answer! > attrValues.count + 1

        if answer == 0 {
            return nil
        }
        return attrValues[answer!]
    }

    /// Prompts the user for filter terms and constructs the attribute
    /// record that specifies them.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A mapping of "FilterPolicy" to a JSON string representing
    ///   the user-defined filter.
    func buildFilterAttributes() -> [String:String] {
        var attr: [String:String] = [:]
        var filterString = ""

        var first = true

        while let ans = askForFilter(message: "Choose a value to apply to the 'tone'
attribute.",
                                     attrValues: attrValues) {
            if !first {
                filterString += ","
```

```
            }
            first = false

            filterString += "\"\(ans)\""
        }

        let filterJSON = "{ \"tone\": [\(filterString)]}"
        attr["FilterPolicy"] = filterJSON

        return attr
    }
    /// Create a queue, returning its URL string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt to ask for the queue name.
    ///   - isFIFO: Whether or not to create a FIFO queue.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the queue.
    func createQueue(prompt: String, sqsClient: SQSClient, isFIFO: Bool) async
throws -> String? {
        repeat {
            var queueName = stringRequest(prompt: prompt)
            var attributes: [String: String] = [:]

            if isFIFO {
                queueName += ".fifo"
                attributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
            }

            do {
                let output = try await sqsClient.createQueue(
                    input: CreateQueueInput(
                        attributes: attributes,
                        queueName: queueName
                    )
                )
                guard let url = output.queueUrl else {
                    return nil
                }

                return url
            } catch _ as QueueDeletedRecently {
                print("You need to use a different queue name. A queue by that name
was recently deleted.")
```

```
                continue
            }
        } while true
    }

    /// Return the ARN of a queue given its URL.
    ///
    /// - Parameter queueUrl: The URL of the queue for which to return the
    ///   ARN.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ARN of the specified queue.
    func getQueueARN(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async throws -> String?
{
        let output = try await sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(
            input: GetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributeNames: [.queuearn],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )

        guard let attributes = output.attributes else {
            return nil
        }

        return attributes["QueueArn"]
    }

    /// Applies the needed policy to the specified queue.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - queueArn: The ARN of the queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - topicArn: The topic that should have access via the policy.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from the SQS `SetQueueAttributes` action.
    func setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                        queueArn: String, topicArn: String) async throws {
        _ = try await sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(
            input: SetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributes: [
                    "Policy":
                        """
                        {
```

```
                            "Statement": [
                                {
                                    "Effect": "Allow",
                                    "Principal": {
                                        "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                                    },
                                    "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                                    "Resource": "\(queueArn)",
                                    "Condition": {
                                        "ArnEquals": {
                                            "aws:SourceArn": "\(topicArn)"
                                        }
                                    }
                                }
                            ]
                        }
                        """

                ],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )
    }

    /// Receive the available messages on a queue, outputting them to the
    /// screen. Returns a dictionary you pass to DeleteMessageBatch to delete
    /// all the received messages.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue on which to receive messages.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.receiveMessage()`
    ///
    /// - Returns: An array of SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
    ///   items, each describing one received message in the format needed to
    ///   delete it.
    func receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async throws
                                -> [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] {
        let output = try await sqsClient.receiveMessage(
            input: ReceiveMessageInput(
                maxNumberOfMessages: 10,
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
```

```
        )

        guard let messages = output.messages else {
            print("No messages received.")
            return []
        }

        var deleteList: [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] = []

        // Print out all the messages that were received, including their
        // attributes, if any.

        for message in messages {
            print("Message ID:     \(message.messageId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Receipt handle: \(message.receiptHandle ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Message JSON:   \(message.body ?? "<body missing>")")

            if message.receiptHandle != nil {
                deleteList.append(
                    SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry(
                        id: message.messageId,
                        receiptHandle: message.receiptHandle
                    )
                )
            }
        }

        return deleteList
    }

    /// Delete all the messages in the specified list.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue to delete messages from.
    ///   - deleteList: A list of `DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry` objects
    ///     describing the messages to delete.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.deleteMessageBatch()`.
    func deleteMessageList(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                           deleteList:
[SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry]) async throws {
        let output = try await sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(
            input: DeleteMessageBatchInput(entries: deleteList, queueUrl: queueUrl)
```

```
        )

        if let failed = output.failed {
            print("\(failed.count) errors occurred deleting messages from the
queue.")
            for message in failed {
                print("---> Failed to delete message \(message.id ?? "<unknown ID>")
with error: \(message.code ?? "<unknown>") (\(message.message ?? "..."))")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let rowOfStars = String(repeating: "*", count: 75)

        print("""
              \(rowOfStars)
              Welcome to the cross-service messaging with topics and queues example.
              In this workflow, you'll create an SNS topic, then create two SQS
              queues which will be subscribed to that topic.

              You can specify several options for configuring the topic, as well as
              the queue subscriptions. You can then post messages to the topic and
              receive the results on the queues.
              \(rowOfStars)\n
              """
        )

        // 0. Create SNS and SQS clients.

        let snsConfig = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let snsClient = SNSClient(config: snsConfig)

        let sqsConfig = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: sqsConfig)

        // 1. Ask the user whether to create a FIFO topic. If so, ask whether
        //    to use content-based deduplication instead of requiring a
        //    deduplication ID.

        let isFIFO = yesNoRequest(prompt: "Do you want to create a FIFO topic (Y/N)?
")
        var isContentBasedDeduplication = false
```

```
        if isFIFO {
            print("""
                  \(rowOfStars)
                  Because you've chosen to create a FIFO topic, deduplication is
                  supported.

                  Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are
automatically
                  generated from the content using a hash function.

                  If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any
                  message published and found to have the same deduplication ID
                  (within a five-minute deduplication interval), is accepted but
                  not delivered.

                  For more information about deduplication, see:
                  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.
                  """
            )

            isContentBasedDeduplication = yesNoRequest(
                prompt: "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
deduplication ID (Y/N)? ")
            print(rowOfStars)
        }

        var topicName = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter the name of the topic to
create: ")

        // 2. Create the topic. Append ".fifo" to the name if FIFO was
        //    requested, and set the "FifoTopic" attribute to "true" if so as
        //    well. Set the "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute to "true" if
        //    content-based deduplication was requested.

        if isFIFO {
            topicName += ".fifo"
        }

        print("Topic name: \(topicName)")

        var attributes = [
            "FifoTopic": (isFIFO ? "true" : "false")
        ]
```

```
        // If it's a FIFO topic with content-based deduplication, set the
        // "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute.

        if isContentBasedDeduplication {
            attributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
        }

        // Create the topic and retrieve the ARN.

        let output = try await snsClient.createTopic(
            input: CreateTopicInput(
                attributes: attributes,
                name: topicName
            )
        )

        guard let topicArn = output.topicArn else {
            print("No topic ARN returned!")
            return
        }

        print("""
              Topic '\(topicName) has been created with the
              topic ARN \(topicArn)."
              """
        )

        print(rowOfStars)

        // 3. Create an SQS queue. Append ".fifo" to the name if one of the
        //    FIFO topic configurations was chosen, and set "FifoQueue" to
        //    "true" if the topic is FIFO.

        print("""
              Next, you will create two SQS queues that will be subscribed
              to the topic you just created.\n
              """
        )

        let q1Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the first
queue: ",
                                          sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)
        guard let q1Url else {
```

```
            print("Unable to create queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 4. Get the SQS queue's ARN attribute using `GetQueueAttributes`.

        let q1Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url)

        guard let q1Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 1!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 1 ARN: \(q1Arn)")

        // 5. Attach an AWS IAM policy to the queue using
        //    `SetQueueAttributes`.

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
                                 queueArn: q1Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        // 6. Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic. Set the topic ARN in
        //    the request. Set the protocol to "sqs". Set the queue ARN to the
        //    ARN just received in step 5. For FIFO topics, give the option to
        //    apply a filter. A filter allows only matching messages to enter
        //    the queue.

        var q1Attributes: [String:String]? = nil

        if isFIFO {
            print(
                """

                If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
messages will
                be received in the queue. For information about message filtering,
see
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html
                For this example, you can filter messages by a 'tone' attribute.

                """
            )

            let subPrompt = """
```

```
                Would you like to filter messages for the first queue's subscription
to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q1Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub1Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q1Attributes,
                endpoint: q1Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q1SubscriptionArn = sub1Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 7. Repeat steps 3-6 for the second queue.

        let q2Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the second
queue: ",
                                  sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)

        guard let q2Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 2!")
            return
        }

        let q2Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url)

        guard let q2Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 2!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 2 ARN: \(q2Arn)")

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
                                 queueArn: q2Arn, topicArn: topicArn)
```

```
        var q2Attributes: [String:String]? = nil

        if isFIFO {
            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the second queue's
subscription to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q2Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub2Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q2Attributes,
                endpoint: q2Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q2SubscriptionArn = sub2Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 8. Let the user publish messages to the topic, asking for a message
        //    body for each message. Handle the types of topic correctly (SEE
        //    MVP INFORMATION AND FIX THESE COMMENTS!!!

        print("\n\(rowOfStars)\n")

        var first = true

        repeat {
            var publishInput = PublishInput(
                topicArn: topicArn
            )

            publishInput.message = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter message text to
publish: ")
```

```
            // If using a FIFO topic, a message group ID must be set on the
            // message.

            if isFIFO {
                if first {
                    print("""
                        Because you're using a FIFO topic, you must set a message
                        group ID. All messages within the same group will be
                        received in the same order in which they were published.\n
                        """
                    )
                }
                publishInput.messageGroupId = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter a message
group ID for this message: ")

                if !isContentBasedDeduplication {
                    if first {
                        print("""
                              Because you're not using content-based deduplication,
you
                              must enter a deduplication ID. If other messages with
the
                              same deduplication ID are published within the same
                              deduplication interval, they will not be delivered.
                              """
                        )
                    }
                    publishInput.messageDeduplicationId = stringRequest(prompt:
"Enter a deduplication ID for this message: ")
                }
            }

            // Allow the user to add a value for the "tone" attribute if they
            // wish to do so.

            var messageAttributes: [String:SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue] =
[:]
            let attrValSelection = menuRequest(prompt: "Choose a tone to apply to
this message.", options: attrValues)

            if attrValSelection != 0 {
                let val = SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue(dataType: "String",
stringValue: attrValues[attrValSelection])
                messageAttributes["tone"] = val
```

```
            }

            publishInput.messageAttributes = messageAttributes

            // Publish the message and display its ID.

            let publishOutput = try await snsClient.publish(input: publishInput)

            guard let messageID = publishOutput.messageId else {
                print("Unable to get the published message's ID!")
                return
            }

            print("Message published with ID \(messageID).")
            first = false

            // 9. Repeat step 8 until the user says they don't want to post
            //    another.

        } while (yesNoRequest(prompt: "Post another message (Y/N)? "))

        // 10. Display a list of the messages in each queue by using
        //     `ReceiveMessage`. Show at least the body and the attributes.

        print(rowOfStars)
        print("Contents of queue 1:")
        let q1DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q1Url)
        print("\n\nContents of queue 2:")
        let q2DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q2Url)
        print(rowOfStars)

        returnRequest(prompt: "\nPress return to clean up: ")

        // 11. Delete the received messages using `DeleteMessageBatch`.

        print("Deleting the messages from queue 1...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
deleteList: q1DeleteList)
        print("\nDeleting the messages from queue 2...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
deleteList: q2DeleteList)
```

```
        // 12. Unsubscribe and delete both queues.

        print("\nUnsubscribing from queue 1...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q1SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Unsubscribing from queue 2...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q2SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 1...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q1Url)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 2...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q2Url)
        )

        // 13. Delete the topic.

        print("Deleting the SNS topic...")
        _ = try await snsClient.deleteTopic(
            input: DeleteTopicInput(topicArn: topicArn)
        )
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
```

```
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

Amazon SQS examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon SQS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Get started

Hello Amazon SQS

The following code examples show how to get started using Amazon SQS.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

The `Package.swift` file.

```
import PackageDescription

let package = Package(
    name: "sqs-basics",
    // Let Xcode know the minimum Apple platforms supported.
    platforms: [
        .macOS(.v13),
        .iOS(.v15)
    ],
    dependencies: [
        // Dependencies declare other packages that this package depends on.
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/awslabs/aws-sdk-swift",
            from: "1.0.0"),
        .package(
            url: "https://github.com/apple/swift-argument-parser.git",
            branch: "main"
        )
    ],
    targets: [
        // Targets are the basic building blocks of a package, defining a module or
 a test suite.
        // Targets can depend on other targets in this package and products
        // from dependencies.
        .executableTarget(
            name: "sqs-basics",
            dependencies: [
                .product(name: "AWSSQS", package: "aws-sdk-swift"),
                .product(name: "ArgumentParser", package: "swift-argument-parser")
            ],
            path: "Sources")

    ]
```

```
)
```

The Swift source code, `entry.swift`.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "sqs-basics",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to list all of your available Amazon SQS queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
    func runAsync() async throws {
        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        var queues: [String] = []
        let outputPages = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginated(
            input: ListQueuesInput()
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let urls = output.queueUrls else {
                print("No queues found.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the queue URLs listed on this page, adding them
            // to the `queues` array.
```

```
            for queueUrl in urls {
                queues.append(queueUrl)
            }
        }

        print("You have \(queues.count) queues:")
        for queue in queues {
            print("   \(queue)")
        }
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`CreateQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `CreateQueue`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await sqsClient.createQueue(
            input: CreateQueueInput(
                queueName: queueName
            )
        )

        guard let queueUrl = output.queueUrl else {
            print("No queue URL returned.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see CreateQueue in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteMessageBatch`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteMessageBatch`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS
```

```
        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        // Create the list of message entries.

        var entries: [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] = []
        var messageNumber = 1

        for handle in handles {
            let entry = SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry(
                id: "\(messageNumber)",
                receiptHandle: handle
            )
            entries.append(entry)
            messageNumber += 1
        }

        // Delete the messages.

        let output = try await sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(
            input: DeleteMessageBatchInput(
                entries: entries,
                queueUrl: queue
            )
        )

        // Get the lists of failed and successful deletions from the output.

        guard let failedEntries = output.failed else {
            print("Failed deletion list is missing!")
            return
        }
        guard let successfulEntries = output.successful else {
            print("Successful deletion list is missing!")
            return
        }

        // Display a list of the failed deletions along with their
        // corresponding explanation messages.

        if failedEntries.count != 0 {
            print("Failed deletions:")
```

```
            for entry in failedEntries {
                print("Message #\(entry.id ?? "<unknown>") failed:
\(entry.message ?? "<unknown>")")
            }
        } else {
            print("No failed deletions.")
        }

        // Output a list of the message numbers that were successfully deleted.

        if successfulEntries.count != 0 {
            var successes = ""

            for entry in successfulEntries {
                if successes.count == 0 {
                    successes = entry.id ?? "<unknown>"
                } else {
                    successes = "\(successes), \(entry.id ?? "<unknown>")"
                }
            }
            print("Succeeded: ", successes)
        } else {
            print("No successful deletions.")
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteMessageBatch in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`DeleteQueue`

The following code example shows how to use `DeleteQueue`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS
```

```
        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        do {
            _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
                input: DeleteQueueInput(
                    queueUrl: queueUrl
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AWSSQS.QueueDoesNotExist {
            print("Error: The specified queue doesn't exist.")
            return
        }
```

- For API details, see DeleteQueue in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`GetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `GetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(
            input: GetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributeNames: [
                    .approximatenumberofmessages,
                    .maximummessagesize
                ],
                queueUrl: url
```

```
            )
        )

        guard let attributes = output.attributes else {
            print("No queue attributes returned.")
            return
        }

        for (attr, value) in attributes {
            switch(attr) {
            case "ApproximateNumberOfMessages":
                print("Approximate message count: \(value)")
            case "MaximumMessageSize":
                print("Maximum message size: \(value)kB")
            default:
                continue
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see GetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ListQueues`

The following code example shows how to use `ListQueues`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        var queues: [String] = []
        let outputPages = sqsClient.listQueuesPaginated(
            input: ListQueuesInput()
```

```
        )

        // Each time a page of results arrives, process its contents.

        for try await output in outputPages {
            guard let urls = output.queueUrls else {
                print("No queues found.")
                return
            }

            // Iterate over the queue URLs listed on this page, adding them
            // to the `queues` array.

            for queueUrl in urls {
                queues.append(queueUrl)
            }
        }
```

- For API details, see ListQueues in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`ReceiveMessage`

The following code example shows how to use `ReceiveMessage`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        let output = try await sqsClient.receiveMessage(
            input: ReceiveMessageInput(
                maxNumberOfMessages: maxMessages,
                queueUrl: url
```

```
            )
        )

        guard let messages = output.messages else {
            print("No messages received.")
            return
        }

        for message in messages {
            print("Message ID:     \(message.messageId ?? "<unknown>")")
            print("Receipt handle: \(message.receiptHandle ?? "<unknown>")")
            print(message.body ?? "<body missing>")
            print("---")
        }
```

- For API details, see ReceiveMessage in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

`SetQueueAttributes`

The following code example shows how to use `SetQueueAttributes`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSQS

        let config = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
        let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: config)

        do {
            _ = try await sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(
                input: SetQueueAttributesInput(
                    attributes: [
                        "MaximumMessageSize": "\(maxSize)"
                    ],
```

```
                    queueUrl: url
                )
            )
        } catch _ as AWSSQS.InvalidAttributeValue {
            print("Invalid maximum message size: \(maxSize) kB.")
        }
```

- For API details, see SetQueueAttributes in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios

Publish messages to queues

The following code example shows how to:

- Create topic (FIFO or non-FIFO).
- Subscribe several queues to the topic with an option to apply a filter.
- Publish messages to the topic.
- Poll the queues for messages received.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSSNS
import AWSSQS
import Foundation

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon Region to use")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
```

```
        commandName: "queue-scenario",
        abstract: """
        This example interactively demonstrates how to use Amazon Simple
        Notification Service (Amazon SNS) and Amazon Simple Queue Service
        (Amazon SQS) together to publish and receive messages using queues.
        """,
        discussion: """
        Supports filtering using a "tone" attribute.
        """
    )

    /// Prompt for an input string. Only non-empty strings are allowed.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: The prompt to display.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string input by the user.
    func stringRequest(prompt: String) -> String {
        var str: String?

        while str == nil {
            print(prompt, terminator: "")
            str = readLine()

            if str != nil && str?.count == 0 {
                str = nil
            }
        }

        return str!
    }

    /// Ask a yes/no question.
    ///
    /// - Parameter prompt: A prompt string to print.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `true` if the user answered "Y", otherwise `false`.
    func yesNoRequest(prompt: String) -> Bool {
        while true {
            let answer = stringRequest(prompt: prompt).lowercased()
            if answer == "y" || answer == "n" {
                return answer == "y"
            }
        }
    }
```

```
/// Display a menu of options then request a selection.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - prompt: A prompt string to display before the menu.
///   - options: An array of strings giving the menu options.
///
/// - Returns: The index number of the selected option or 0 if no item was
///   selected.
func menuRequest(prompt: String, options: [String]) -> Int {
    let numOptions = options.count

    if numOptions == 0 {
        return 0
    }

    print(prompt)

    for (index, value) in options.enumerated() {
        print("(\(index)) \(value)")
    }

    repeat {
        print("Enter your selection (0 - \(numOptions-1)): ", terminator: "")
        if let answer = readLine() {
            guard let answer = Int(answer) else {
                print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
                continue
            }

            if answer >= 0 && answer < numOptions {
                return answer
            } else {
                print("Please enter the number matching your selection.")
            }
        }
    } while true
}

/// Ask the user too press RETURN. Accepts any input but ignores it.
///
/// - Parameter prompt: The text prompt to display.
func returnRequest(prompt: String) {
    print(prompt, terminator: "")
```

```
        _ = readLine()
    }

    var attrValues = [
        "<none>",
        "cheerful",
        "funny",
        "serious",
        "sincere"
    ]

    /// Ask the user to choose one of the attribute values to use as a filter.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - message: A message to display before the menu of values.
    ///   - attrValues: An array of strings giving the values to choose from.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The string corresponding to the selected option.
    func askForFilter(message: String, attrValues: [String]) -> String? {
        print(message)
        for (index, value) in attrValues.enumerated() {
            print("  [\(index)] \(value)")
        }

        var answer: Int?
        repeat {
            answer = Int(stringRequest(prompt: "Select an value for the 'tone'
attribute or 0 to end: "))
        } while answer == nil || answer! < 0 || answer! > attrValues.count + 1

        if answer == 0 {
            return nil
        }
        return attrValues[answer!]
    }

    /// Prompts the user for filter terms and constructs the attribute
    /// record that specifies them.
    ///
    /// - Returns: A mapping of "FilterPolicy" to a JSON string representing
    ///   the user-defined filter.
    func buildFilterAttributes() -> [String:String] {
        var attr: [String:String] = [:]
        var filterString = ""
```

```
        var first = true

        while let ans = askForFilter(message: "Choose a value to apply to the 'tone'
attribute.",
                                     attrValues: attrValues) {
            if !first {
                filterString += ","
            }
            first = false

            filterString += "\"\(ans)\""
        }

        let filterJSON = "{ \"tone\": [\(filterString)]}"
        attr["FilterPolicy"] = filterJSON

        return attr
    }
    /// Create a queue, returning its URL string.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - prompt: A prompt to ask for the queue name.
    ///   - isFIFO: Whether or not to create a FIFO queue.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The URL of the queue.
    func createQueue(prompt: String, sqsClient: SQSClient, isFIFO: Bool) async
throws -> String? {
        repeat {
            var queueName = stringRequest(prompt: prompt)
            var attributes: [String: String] = [:]

            if isFIFO {
                queueName += ".fifo"
                attributes["FifoQueue"] = "true"
            }

            do {
                let output = try await sqsClient.createQueue(
                    input: CreateQueueInput(
                        attributes: attributes,
                        queueName: queueName
                    )
                )
```

```
                guard let url = output.queueUrl else {
                    return nil
                }

                return url
            } catch _ as QueueDeletedRecently {
                print("You need to use a different queue name. A queue by that name
was recently deleted.")
                continue
            }
        } while true
    }

    /// Return the ARN of a queue given its URL.
    ///
    /// - Parameter queueUrl: The URL of the queue for which to return the
    ///   ARN.
    ///
    /// - Returns: The ARN of the specified queue.
    func getQueueARN(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async throws -> String?
{
        let output = try await sqsClient.getQueueAttributes(
            input: GetQueueAttributesInput(
                attributeNames: [.queuearn],
                queueUrl: queueUrl
            )
        )

        guard let attributes = output.attributes else {
            return nil
        }

        return attributes["QueueArn"]
    }

    /// Applies the needed policy to the specified queue.
    ///
    /// - Parameters:
    ///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
    ///   - queueUrl: The queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - queueArn: The ARN of the queue to apply the policy to.
    ///   - topicArn: The topic that should have access via the policy.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from the SQS `SetQueueAttributes` action.
```

```
func setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                    queueArn: String, topicArn: String) async throws {
    _ = try await sqsClient.setQueueAttributes(
        input: SetQueueAttributesInput(
            attributes: [
                "Policy":
                    """
                    {
                        "Statement": [
                            {
                                "Effect": "Allow",
                                "Principal": {
                                    "Service": "sns.amazonaws.com"
                                },
                                "Action": "sqs:SendMessage",
                                "Resource": "\(queueArn)",
                                "Condition": {
                                    "ArnEquals": {
                                        "aws:SourceArn": "\(topicArn)"
                                    }
                                }
                            }
                        ]
                    }
                    """

            ],
            queueUrl: queueUrl
        )
    )
}

/// Receive the available messages on a queue, outputting them to the
/// screen. Returns a dictionary you pass to DeleteMessageBatch to delete
/// all the received messages.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue on which to receive messages.
///
/// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.receiveMessage()`
///
/// - Returns: An array of SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry
///   items, each describing one received message in the format needed to
```

```
///   delete it.
func receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String) async throws
                            -> [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] {
    let output = try await sqsClient.receiveMessage(
        input: ReceiveMessageInput(
            maxNumberOfMessages: 10,
            queueUrl: queueUrl
        )
    )

    guard let messages = output.messages else {
        print("No messages received.")
        return []
    }

    var deleteList: [SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry] = []

    // Print out all the messages that were received, including their
    // attributes, if any.

    for message in messages {
        print("Message ID:     \(message.messageId ?? "<unknown>")")
        print("Receipt handle: \(message.receiptHandle ?? "<unknown>")")
        print("Message JSON:   \(message.body ?? "<body missing>")")

        if message.receiptHandle != nil {
            deleteList.append(
                SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry(
                    id: message.messageId,
                    receiptHandle: message.receiptHandle
                )
            )
        }
    }

    return deleteList
}

/// Delete all the messages in the specified list.
///
/// - Parameters:
///   - sqsClient: The Amazon SQS client to use.
///   - queueUrl: The SQS queue to delete messages from.
///   - deleteList: A list of `DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry` objects
```

```
   ///     describing the messages to delete.
   ///
   /// - Throws: Errors from `SQSClient.deleteMessageBatch()`.
   func deleteMessageList(sqsClient: SQSClient, queueUrl: String,
                          deleteList:
[SQSClientTypes.DeleteMessageBatchRequestEntry]) async throws {
       let output = try await sqsClient.deleteMessageBatch(
           input: DeleteMessageBatchInput(entries: deleteList, queueUrl: queueUrl)
       )

       if let failed = output.failed {
           print("\(failed.count) errors occurred deleting messages from the
queue.")
           for message in failed {
               print("---> Failed to delete message \(message.id ?? "<unknown ID>")
with error: \(message.code ?? "<unknown>") (\(message.message ?? "..."))")
           }
       }
   }

   /// Called by ``main()`` to run the bulk of the example.
   func runAsync() async throws {
       let rowOfStars = String(repeating: "*", count: 75)

       print("""
             \(rowOfStars)
             Welcome to the cross-service messaging with topics and queues example.
             In this workflow, you'll create an SNS topic, then create two SQS
             queues which will be subscribed to that topic.

             You can specify several options for configuring the topic, as well as
             the queue subscriptions. You can then post messages to the topic and
             receive the results on the queues.
             \(rowOfStars)\n
             """
       )

       // 0. Create SNS and SQS clients.

       let snsConfig = try await SNSClient.SNSClientConfiguration(region: region)
       let snsClient = SNSClient(config: snsConfig)

       let sqsConfig = try await SQSClient.SQSClientConfiguration(region: region)
       let sqsClient = SQSClient(config: sqsConfig)
```

```
        // 1. Ask the user whether to create a FIFO topic. If so, ask whether
        //    to use content-based deduplication instead of requiring a
        //    deduplication ID.

        let isFIFO = yesNoRequest(prompt: "Do you want to create a FIFO topic (Y/N)?
")
        var isContentBasedDeduplication = false

        if isFIFO {
            print("""
                  \(rowOfStars)
                  Because you've chosen to create a FIFO topic, deduplication is
                  supported.

                  Deduplication IDs are either set in the message or are
automatically
                  generated from the content using a hash function.

                  If a message is successfully published to an SNS FIFO topic, any
                  message published and found to have the same deduplication ID
                  (within a five-minute deduplication interval), is accepted but
                  not delivered.

                  For more information about deduplication, see:
                  https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/fifo-message-dedup.html.
                  """
            )

            isContentBasedDeduplication = yesNoRequest(
                prompt: "Use content-based deduplication instead of entering a
deduplication ID (Y/N)? ")
            print(rowOfStars)
        }

        var topicName = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter the name of the topic to
create: ")

        // 2. Create the topic. Append ".fifo" to the name if FIFO was
        //    requested, and set the "FifoTopic" attribute to "true" if so as
        //    well. Set the "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute to "true" if
        //    content-based deduplication was requested.

        if isFIFO {
```

```
            topicName += ".fifo"
        }

        print("Topic name: \(topicName)")

        var attributes = [
            "FifoTopic": (isFIFO ? "true" : "false")
        ]

        // If it's a FIFO topic with content-based deduplication, set the
        // "ContentBasedDeduplication" attribute.

        if isContentBasedDeduplication {
            attributes["ContentBasedDeduplication"] = "true"
        }

        // Create the topic and retrieve the ARN.

        let output = try await snsClient.createTopic(
            input: CreateTopicInput(
                attributes: attributes,
                name: topicName
            )
        )

        guard let topicArn = output.topicArn else {
            print("No topic ARN returned!")
            return
        }

        print(""""
              Topic '\(topicName) has been created with the
              topic ARN \(topicArn)."
              """
        )

        print(rowOfStars)

        // 3. Create an SQS queue. Append ".fifo" to the name if one of the
        //    FIFO topic configurations was chosen, and set "FifoQueue" to
        //    "true" if the topic is FIFO.

        print(""""
              Next, you will create two SQS queues that will be subscribed
```

```
              to the topic you just created.\n
              """
        )

        let q1Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the first
queue: ",
                                          sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)
        guard let q1Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 4. Get the SQS queue's ARN attribute using `GetQueueAttributes`.

        let q1Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url)

        guard let q1Arn else {
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 1!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 1 ARN: \(q1Arn)")

        // 5. Attach an AWS IAM policy to the queue using
        //    `SetQueueAttributes`.

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
                                 queueArn: q1Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        // 6. Subscribe the SQS queue to the SNS topic. Set the topic ARN in
        //    the request. Set the protocol to "sqs". Set the queue ARN to the
        //    ARN just received in step 5. For FIFO topics, give the option to
        //    apply a filter. A filter allows only matching messages to enter
        //    the queue.

        var q1Attributes: [String:String]? = nil

        if isFIFO {
            print(
                """

                If you add a filter to this subscription, then only the filtered
messages will
                be received in the queue. For information about message filtering,
see
```

```
                https://docs.aws.amazon.com/sns/latest/dg/sns-message-filtering.html
                For this example, you can filter messages by a 'tone' attribute.

                """
            )

            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the first queue's subscription
to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q1Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub1Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q1Attributes,
                endpoint: q1Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q1SubscriptionArn = sub1Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 7. Repeat steps 3-6 for the second queue.

        let q2Url = try await createQueue(prompt: "Enter the name of the second
queue: ",
                                  sqsClient: sqsClient, isFIFO: isFIFO)

        guard let q2Url else {
            print("Unable to create queue 2!")
            return
        }

        let q2Arn = try await getQueueARN(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url)

        guard let q2Arn else {
```

```
            print("Unable to get ARN of queue 2!")
            return
        }
        print("Got queue 2 ARN: \(q2Arn)")

        try await setQueuePolicy(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
                                 queueArn: q2Arn, topicArn: topicArn)

        var q2Attributes: [String:String]? = nil

        if isFIFO {
            let subPrompt = """
                Would you like to filter messages for the second queue's
subscription to the
                topic \(topicName) (Y/N)?
                """
            if (yesNoRequest(prompt: subPrompt)) {
                q2Attributes = buildFilterAttributes()
            }
        }

        let sub2Output = try await snsClient.subscribe(
            input: SubscribeInput(
                attributes: q2Attributes,
                endpoint: q2Arn,
                protocol: "sqs",
                topicArn: topicArn
            )
        )

        guard let q2SubscriptionArn = sub2Output.subscriptionArn else {
            print("Invalid subscription ARN returned for queue 1!")
            return
        }

        // 8. Let the user publish messages to the topic, asking for a message
        //    body for each message. Handle the types of topic correctly (SEE
        //    MVP INFORMATION AND FIX THESE COMMENTS!!!

        print("\n\(rowOfStars)\n")

        var first = true

        repeat {
```

```
            var publishInput = PublishInput(
                topicArn: topicArn
            )

            publishInput.message = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter message text to
publish: ")

            // If using a FIFO topic, a message group ID must be set on the
            // message.

            if isFIFO {
                if first {
                    print("""
                        Because you're using a FIFO topic, you must set a message
                        group ID. All messages within the same group will be
                        received in the same order in which they were published.\n
                        """
                    )
                }
                publishInput.messageGroupId = stringRequest(prompt: "Enter a message
group ID for this message: ")

                if !isContentBasedDeduplication {
                    if first {
                        print("""
                              Because you're not using content-based deduplication,
you
                              must enter a deduplication ID. If other messages with
the
                              same deduplication ID are published within the same
                              deduplication interval, they will not be delivered.
                              """
                        )
                    }
                    publishInput.messageDeduplicationId = stringRequest(prompt:
"Enter a deduplication ID for this message: ")
                }
            }

            // Allow the user to add a value for the "tone" attribute if they
            // wish to do so.

            var messageAttributes: [String:SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue] =
[:]
```

```
            let attrValSelection = menuRequest(prompt: "Choose a tone to apply to
this message.", options: attrValues)

            if attrValSelection != 0 {
                let val = SNSClientTypes.MessageAttributeValue(dataType: "String",
stringValue: attrValues[attrValSelection])
                messageAttributes["tone"] = val
            }

            publishInput.messageAttributes = messageAttributes

            // Publish the message and display its ID.

            let publishOutput = try await snsClient.publish(input: publishInput)

            guard let messageID = publishOutput.messageId else {
                print("Unable to get the published message's ID!")
                return
            }

            print("Message published with ID \(messageID).")
            first = false

            // 9. Repeat step 8 until the user says they don't want to post
            //    another.

        } while (yesNoRequest(prompt: "Post another message (Y/N)? "))

        // 10. Display a list of the messages in each queue by using
        //     `ReceiveMessage`. Show at least the body and the attributes.

        print(rowOfStars)
        print("Contents of queue 1:")
        let q1DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q1Url)
        print("\n\nContents of queue 2:")
        let q2DeleteList = try await receiveAndListMessages(sqsClient: sqsClient,
queueUrl: q2Url)
        print(rowOfStars)

        returnRequest(prompt: "\nPress return to clean up: ")

        // 11. Delete the received messages using `DeleteMessageBatch`.
```

```
        print("Deleting the messages from queue 1...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q1Url,
 deleteList: q1DeleteList)
        print("\nDeleting the messages from queue 2...")
        try await deleteMessageList(sqsClient: sqsClient, queueUrl: q2Url,
 deleteList: q2DeleteList)

        // 12. Unsubscribe and delete both queues.

        print("\nUnsubscribing from queue 1...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q1SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Unsubscribing from queue 2...")
        _ = try await snsClient.unsubscribe(
            input: UnsubscribeInput(subscriptionArn: q2SubscriptionArn)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 1...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q1Url)
        )

        print("Deleting queue 2...")
        _ = try await sqsClient.deleteQueue(
            input: DeleteQueueInput(queueUrl: q2Url)
        )

        // 13. Delete the topic.

        print("Deleting the SNS topic...")
        _ = try await snsClient.deleteTopic(
            input: DeleteTopicInput(topicArn: topicArn)
        )
    }
}

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())
```

```
        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.runAsync()
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see the following topics in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.
  - CreateQueue
  - CreateTopic
  - DeleteMessageBatch
  - DeleteQueue
  - DeleteTopic
  - GetQueueAttributes
  - Publish
  - ReceiveMessage
  - SetQueueAttributes
  - Subscribe
  - Unsubscribe

AWS STS examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with AWS STS.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions

Actions

`AssumeRole`

The following code example shows how to use `AssumeRole`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
import AWSSTS

    public func assumeRole(role: IAMClientTypes.Role, sessionName: String)
        async throws -> STSClientTypes.Credentials
    {
        let input = AssumeRoleInput(
            roleArn: role.arn,
            roleSessionName: sessionName
        )
        do {
            let output = try await stsClient.assumeRole(input: input)

            guard let credentials = output.credentials else {
                throw ServiceHandlerError.authError
            }

            return credentials
        } catch {
            print("Error assuming role: ", dump(error))
            throw error
        }
    }
```

- For API details, see AssumeRole in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Amazon Transcribe Streaming examples using SDK for Swift

The following code examples show you how to perform actions and implement common scenarios by using the AWS SDK for Swift with Amazon Transcribe Streaming.

Actions are code excerpts from larger programs and must be run in context. While actions show you how to call individual service functions, you can see actions in context in their related scenarios.

Scenarios are code examples that show you how to accomplish specific tasks by calling multiple functions within a service or combined with other AWS services.

Each example includes a link to the complete source code, where you can find instructions on how to set up and run the code in context.

Topics

- Actions
- Scenarios

Actions

`StartStreamTranscription`

The following code example shows how to use `StartStreamTranscription`.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

```
        let client = TranscribeStreamingClient(
            config: try await
TranscribeStreamingClient.TranscribeStreamingClientConfiguration(
                region: region
            )
        )

        // Start the transcription running on the audio stream.
```

```
        let output = try await client.startStreamTranscription(
            input: StartStreamTranscriptionInput(
                audioStream: try await createAudioStream(),
                languageCode: TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.LanguageCode(rawValue:
 lang),
                mediaEncoding: encoding,
                mediaSampleRateHertz: sampleRate
            )
        )
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.

Scenarios

Transcribe an audio file

The following code example shows how to generate a transcription of a source audio file using Amazon Transcribe streaming.

SDK for Swift

> **Note**
>
> There's more on GitHub. Find the complete example and learn how to set up and run in the AWS Code Examples Repository.

Use Amazon Transcribe streaming to transcribe the spoken language in an audio file.

```
/// An example that demonstrates how to watch an transcribe event stream to
/// transcribe audio from a file to the console.

import ArgumentParser
import AWSClientRuntime
import AWSTranscribeStreaming
import Foundation

/// Identify one of the media file formats supported by Amazon Transcribe.
enum TranscribeFormat: String, ExpressibleByArgument {
    case ogg = "ogg"
```

```
    case pcm = "pcm"
    case flac = "flac"
}

// -MARK: - Async command line tool

struct ExampleCommand: ParsableCommand {
    // -MARK: Command arguments
    @Flag(help: "Show partial results")
    var showPartial = false
    @Option(help: "Language code to transcribe into")
    var lang: String = "en-US"
    @Option(help: "Format of the source audio file")
    var format: TranscribeFormat
    @Option(help: "Sample rate of the source audio file in Hertz")
    var sampleRate: Int = 16000
    @Option(help: "Path of the source audio file")
    var path: String
    @Option(help: "Name of the Amazon S3 Region to use (default: us-east-1)")
    var region = "us-east-1"

    static var configuration = CommandConfiguration(
        commandName: "tsevents",
        abstract: """
        This example shows how to use event streaming with Amazon Transcribe.
        """,
        discussion: """
        """
    )

    /// Create and return an Amazon Transcribe audio stream from the file
    /// specified in the arguments.
    ///
    /// - Throws: Errors from `TranscribeError`.
    ///
    /// - Returns: `AsyncThrowingStream<TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream,
 Error>`
    func createAudioStream() async throws
                -> AsyncThrowingStream<TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream,
 Error> {

        let fileURL: URL = URL(fileURLWithPath: path)
        let audioData = try Data(contentsOf: fileURL)
```

```
        // Properties defining the size of audio chunks and the total size of
        // the audio file in bytes. You should try to send chunks that last on
        // average 125 milliseconds.

        let chunkSizeInMilliseconds = 125.0
        let chunkSize = Int(chunkSizeInMilliseconds  / 1000.0 * Double(sampleRate) *
2.0)
        let audioDataSize = audioData.count

        // Create an audio stream from the source data. The stream's job is
        // to send the audio in chunks to Amazon Transcribe as
        // `AudioStream.audioevent` events.

        let audioStream =
AsyncThrowingStream<TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream,
                                Error> { continuation in
            Task {
                var currentStart = 0
                var currentEnd = min(chunkSize, audioDataSize - currentStart)

                // Generate and send chunks of audio data as `audioevent`
                // events until the entire file has been sent. Each event is
                // yielded to the SDK after being created.

                while currentStart < audioDataSize {
                    let dataChunk = audioData[currentStart ..< currentEnd]

                    let audioEvent =
TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.AudioStream.audioevent(
                        .init(audioChunk: dataChunk)
                    )
                    let yieldResult = continuation.yield(audioEvent)
                    switch yieldResult {
                        case .enqueued(_):
                            // The chunk was successfully enqueued into the
                            // stream. The `remaining` parameter estimates how
                            // much room is left in the queue, but is ignored here.
                            break
                        case .dropped(_):
                            // The chunk was dropped because the queue buffer
                            // is full. This will cause transcription errors.
                            print("Warning: Dropped audio! The transcription will be
incomplete.")
                        case .terminated:
```

```
                            print("Audio stream terminated.")
                            continuation.finish()
                            return
                        default:
                            print("Warning: Unrecognized response during audio
streaming.")
                    }

                    currentStart = currentEnd
                    currentEnd = min(currentStart + chunkSize, audioDataSize)
                }

                // Let the SDK's continuation block know the stream is over.

                continuation.finish()
            }
        }

        return audioStream
    }

    /// Run the transcription process.
    ///
    /// - Throws: An error from `TranscribeError`.
    func transcribe(encoding: TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.MediaEncoding) async
throws {
        // Create the Transcribe Streaming client.

        let client = TranscribeStreamingClient(
            config: try await
TranscribeStreamingClient.TranscribeStreamingClientConfiguration(
                region: region
            )
        )

        // Start the transcription running on the audio stream.

        let output = try await client.startStreamTranscription(
            input: StartStreamTranscriptionInput(
                audioStream: try await createAudioStream(),
                languageCode: TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.LanguageCode(rawValue:
lang),
                mediaEncoding: encoding,
                mediaSampleRateHertz: sampleRate
```

```
            )
        )

        // Iterate over the events in the returned transcript result stream.
        // Each `transcriptevent` contains a list of result fragments which
        // need to be concatenated together to build the final transcript.
        for try await event in output.transcriptResultStream! {
            switch event {
            case .transcriptevent(let event):
            for result in event.transcript?.results ?? [] {
                guard let transcript = result.alternatives?.first?.transcript else {
                    continue
                }

                // If showing partial results is enabled and the result is
                // partial, show it. Partial results may be incomplete, and
                // may be inaccurate, with upcoming audio making the
                // transcription complete or by giving more context to make
                // transcription make more sense.

                if (result.isPartial && showPartial) {
                    print("[Partial] \(transcript)")
                }

                // When the complete fragment of transcribed text is ready,
                // print it. This could just as easily be used to draw the
                // text as a subtitle over a playing video, though timing
                // would need to be managed.

                if !result.isPartial {
                    if (showPartial) {
                        print("[Final  ] ", terminator: "")
                    }
                    print(transcript)
                }
            }
            default:
                print("Error: Unexpected message from Amazon Transcribe:")
            }
        }
    }

    /// Convert the value of the `--format` command line option into the
    /// corresponding Transcribe Streaming `MediaEncoding` type.
```

```
    ///
    /// - Returns: The `MediaEncoding` equivalent of the format specified on
    ///   the command line.
    func getMediaEncoding() -> TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.MediaEncoding {
        let mediaEncoding: TranscribeStreamingClientTypes.MediaEncoding

        switch format {
        case .flac:
            mediaEncoding = .flac
        case .ogg:
            mediaEncoding = .oggOpus
        case .pcm:
            mediaEncoding = .pcm
        }

        return mediaEncoding
    }
}

// -MARK: - Entry point

/// The program's asynchronous entry point.
@main
struct Main {
    static func main() async {
        let args = Array(CommandLine.arguments.dropFirst())

        do {
            let command = try ExampleCommand.parse(args)
            try await command.transcribe(encoding: command.getMediaEncoding())
        } catch let error as TranscribeError {
            print("ERROR: \(error.errorDescription ?? "Unknown error")")
        } catch {
            ExampleCommand.exit(withError: error)
        }
    }
}

/// Errors thrown by the example's functions.
enum TranscribeError: Error {
    /// No transcription stream available.
    case noTranscriptionStream
    /// The source media file couldn't be read.
    case readError
```

```
    var errorDescription: String? {
        switch self {
        case .noTranscriptionStream:
            return "No transcription stream returned by Amazon Transcribe."
        case .readError:
            return "Unable to read the source audio file."
        }
    }
}
```

- For API details, see StartStreamTranscription in *AWS SDK for Swift API reference*.